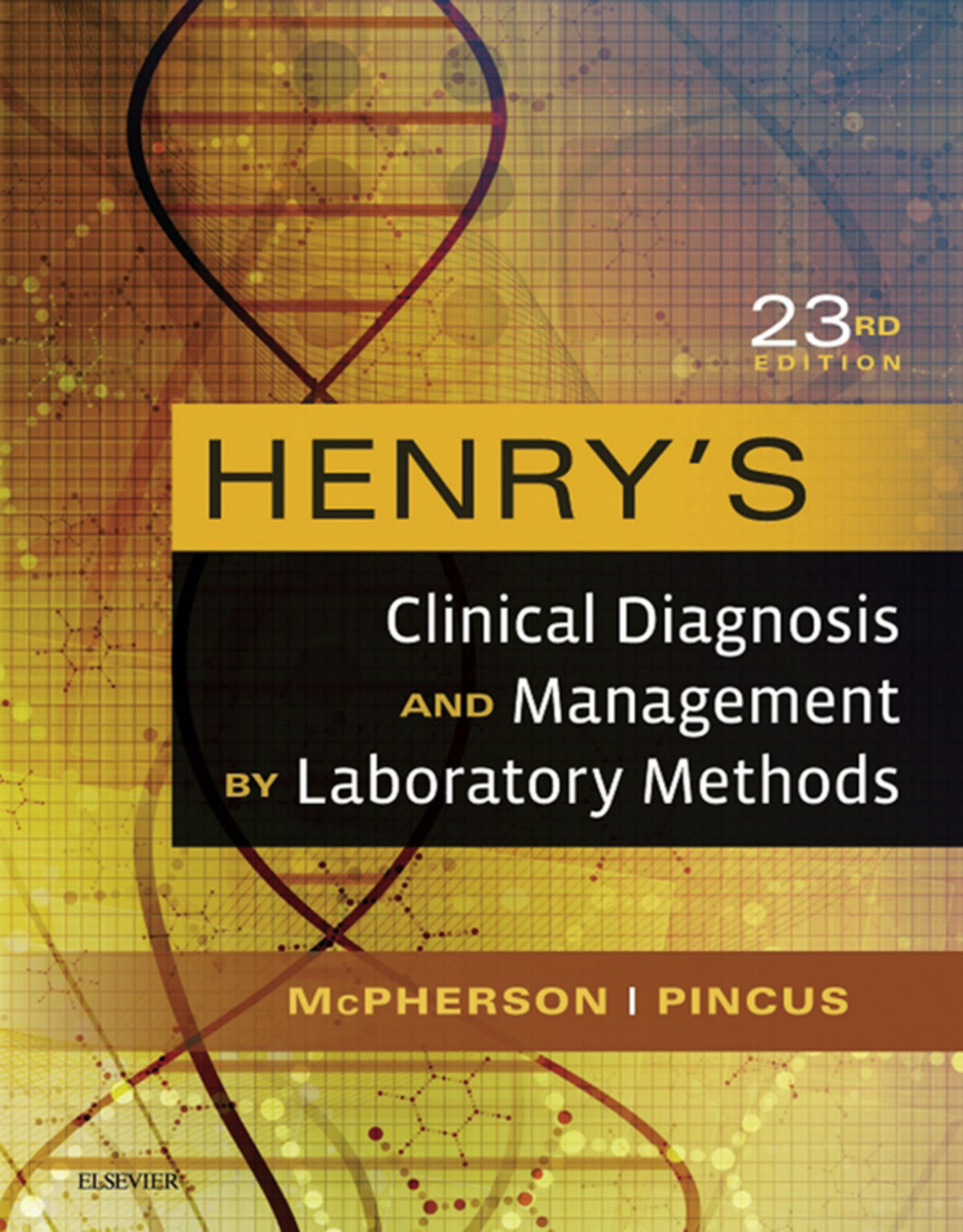

23RD EDITION
HENRY'S
Clinical Diagnosis AND Management BY Laboratory Methods
McPHERSON | PINCUS
ELSEVIER

Expert CONSULT Built with inkling | E books

Any screen. Any time. Anywhere.

Activate the eBook version of this title at no additional charge.

Expert Consult eBooks give you the power to browse and find content, view enhanced images, share notes and highlights—both online and offline.

Unlock your eBook today.

1. Visit **expertconsult.inkling.com/redeem**
2. Scratch off your code
3. Type code into "Enter Code" box
4. Click "Redeem"
5. Log in or Sign up
6. Go to "My Library"

It's that easy!

Scan this QR code to redeem your eBook through your mobile device:

Place Peel Off Sticker Here

For technical assistance:
email expertconsult.help@elsevier.com
call 1-800-401-9962 (inside the US)
call +1-314-447-8200 (outside the US)

ELSEVIER

Use of the current edition of the electronic version of this book (eBook) is subject to the terms of the nontransferable, limited license granted on expertconsult.inkling.com. Access to the eBook is limited to the first individual who redeems the PIN, located on the inside cover of this book, at expertconsult.inkling.com and may not be transferred to another party by resale, lending, or other means.

2015v1.0

HENRY'S

Clinical Diagnosis AND Management BY Laboratory Methods

ASSOCIATE EDITORS

Martin H. Bluth, MD, PhD
Professor, Department of Pathology
Wayne State University School of Medicine
Associate Director, Transfusion Service
Detroit Medical Center
Detroit, Michigan

Jay L. Bock, MD, PhD
Professor and Vice Chair for Clinical Pathology
Director of Laboratories
Department of Pathology
Stony Brook Medicine
Stony Brook, New York

Wilbur B. Bowne, MD
Associate Professor of Surgery
Associate Professor of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology
Department of Surgery
Drexel University College of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Robert E. Hutchison, MD
Director of Hematopathology and Clinical Pathology
Department of Pathology
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Donald S. Karcher, MD
Professor of Pathology
Chair, Department of Pathology
Director of Laboratories and Chief, Flow Cytometry and Clinical Chemistry Services
George Washington University Medical Center
Washington, DC

Mark S. Lifshitz, MD
Director, Clinical Laboratories
New York University Langone Medical Center
Clinical Professor, Department of Pathology
New York University School of Medicine
New York, New York

H. Davis Massey, DDS, MD, PhD
Chief, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
H.H. McGuire VA Medical Center
Associate Professor of Pathology
Virginia Commonwealth University
Richmond, Virginia

A. Koneti Rao, MBBS
Sol Sherry Professor of Medicine
Professor, Department of Clinical Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Director, Benign Hematology, Hemostasis, and Thrombosis
Co-Director, Sol Sherry Thrombosis Research Center
Temple University School of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Elizabeth R. Unger, MD, PhD
Chief, Chronic Viral Diseases Branch
Division of High-Consequence Pathogens and Pathology
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention,
Atlanta, Georgia

Gail L. Woods, MD
Professor, Department of Pathology
University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences
Chief of Pediatric Pathology, Department of Pathology
Arkansas Children's Hospital
Little Rock, Arkansas

23RD EDITION

HENRY'S

Clinical Diagnosis AND Management BY Laboratory Methods

Richard A. McPherson, MD, MSc
Professor of Pathology, Retired
Virginia Commonwealth University
Richmond, Virginia

Matthew R. Pincus, MD, PhD
Professor of Pathology
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York
Chief, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
New York Harbor VA Medical Center
New York, New York

ELSEVIER

ELSEVIER

3251 Riverport Lane
St. Louis, Missouri 63043

HENRY'S CLINICAL DIAGNOSIS AND MANAGEMENT BY LABORATORY METHODS, 23e

ISBN: 978-0-323-29568-0

Copyright © 2017 by Elsevier Inc.
Martin H. Bluth retains copyright for his editorial and original contributions.
Elizabeth R. Unger's contribution is in the public domain.
Previous editions copyrighted 2011, 2007, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1984, 1979, 1974, 1969, 1962, 1953, 1948, 1943, 1939, 1935, 1931, 1927, 1923, 1918, 1914, 1912, and 1908.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies, and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency can be found at our website: www.elsevier.com/permissions.

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

Notices

Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

With respect to any drug or pharmaceutical products identified, readers are advised to check the most current information provided (i) on procedures featured or (ii) by the manufacturer of each product to be administered, to verify the recommended dose or formula, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of practitioners, relying on their own experience and knowledge of their patients, to make diagnoses, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient, and to take all appropriate safety precautions.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: McPherson, Richard A., editor. | Pincus, Matthew R., editor.
Title: Henry's clinical diagnosis and management by laboratory methods / [edited by] Richard A. McPherson, Matthew R. Pincus.
Other titles: Clinical diagnosis and management by laboratory methods
Description: Edition 23. | St. Louis, Missouri : Elsevier, [2017] | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2016000370 | ISBN 9780323295680 (hardcover : alk. paper)
Subjects: | MESH: Clinical Laboratory Techniques | Clinical Laboratory Services
Classification: LCC RB37 | NLM QY 25 | DDC 616.07/56–dc23 LC record available at http://lccn.loc.gov/2016000370

Executive Content Strategist: William Schmitt
Content Development Manager: Kathryn DeFrancesco
Publishing Services Manager: Catherine Jackson
Senior Project Manager: Clay S. Broeker
Design Direction: Margaret Reid

Printed in China

Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Working together to grow libraries in developing countries
www.elsevier.com • www.bookaid.org

CONTENTS

PART 1 The Clinical Laboratory

EDITED BY | Mark S. Lifshitz, Matthew R. Pincus

1 General Concepts and Administrative Issues 2
Tim Hilbert, Anthony Kurec, Mark S. Lifshitz

2 Optimizing Laboratory Workflow and Performance 11
Mark S. Lifshitz

3 Preanalysis 20
Mark S. Lifshitz

4 Analysis: Principles of Instrumentation 33
Matthew R. Pincus, Mark S. Lifshitz, Jay L. Bock

5 Analysis: Clinical Laboratory Automation 60
Timothy E. Caragher, Mark S. Lifshitz, Robert DeCresce

6 Point-of-Care Testing and Physician Office Laboratories 66
Lauren McVoy, Mark S. Lifshitz

7 Postanalysis: Medical Decision Making 73
Jeffrey S. Jhang, Mark S. Lifshitz

8 Interpreting Laboratory Results 84
Matthew R. Pincus, Naif Z. Abraham Jr.

9 Laboratory Statistics 102
Richard A. McPherson

10 Quality Control 112
W. Greg Miller

11 Clinical Laboratory Informatics 130
Paul Tranchida, Mark S. Lifshitz, Martin H. Bluth

12 Financial Management 137
Mark S. Lifshitz, Robert DeCresce

13 Biological, Chemical, and Nuclear Terrorism: Role of the Laboratory 149
Philip M. Tierno Jr., Mark S. Lifshitz

PART 2 Clinical Chemistry

EDITED BY | Jay L. Bock, Martin H. Bluth, Matthew R. Pincus

14 Evaluation of Renal Function, Water, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Balance 162
Man S. Oh, Gary Briefel

15 Biochemical Markers of Bone Metabolism 188
Katrin M. Klemm, Michael J. Klein

16 Carbohydrates 205
Prashant Nadkarni, Ruth S. Weinstock

17 Lipids and Dyslipoproteinemia 221
Xueying Chen, Liye Zhou, M. Mahmood Hussain

18 Cardiac Injury, Atherosclerosis, and Thrombotic Disease 244
Jay L. Bock

19 Specific Proteins 253
Richard A. McPherson

20 Clinical Enzymology 267
Robert P. Carty, Matthew R. Pincus, Ehsan Sarafraz-Yazdi

21 Evaluation of Liver Function 289
Matthew R. Pincus, Philip M. Tierno Jr., Elizabeth Gleeson, Wilbur B. Bowne, Martin H. Bluth

22 Laboratory Diagnosis of Gastrointestinal and Pancreatic Disorders 306
Haseeb A. Siddiqi, Martin J. Salwen, Mohammad F. Shaikh, Wilbur B. Bowne

23 Toxicology and Therapeutic Drug Monitoring 324
Matthew R. Pincus, Martin H. Bluth, Naif Z. Abraham Jr.

24 Evaluation of Endocrine Function 362
Helena A. Guber, Amal F. Farag

25 Reproductive Function and Pregnancy 400
Roohi Jeelani, Martin H. Bluth

26 Vitamins and Trace Elements 416
Martin J. Salwen

27 Chemical Basis for Analyte Assays and Common Interferences 428
Matthew R. Pincus, Jay L. Bock, Ralph Rossi, Donghong Cai

PART 3 Urine and Other Bodily Fluids

EDITED BY | Donald S. Karcher, Richard A. McPherson, Matthew R. Pincus

28 Basic Examination of Urine 442
Roger S. Riley, Richard A. McPherson

29 Cerebrospinal, Synovial, Serous Body Fluids, and Alternative Specimens 481
Donald S. Karcher, Richard A. McPherson

PART 4 Hematology and Transfusion Medicine

EDITED BY | Robert E. Hutchison, Richard A. McPherson, Martin H. Bluth

30 Basic Examination of Blood and Bone Marrow 510
Neerja Vajpayee, Susan S. Graham, Sylva Bem

31 Hematopoiesis 540
Sharad C. Mathur, Robert E. Hutchison, Golam Mohi

32 Erythrocytic Disorders 559
M. Tarek Elghetany, Katherine I. Schexneider, Katalin Banki

33 Leukocytic Disorders 606
Robert E. Hutchison, Katherine I. Schexneider

34 The Flow Cytometric Evaluation of Hematopoietic Neoplasia 659
Brent L. Wood, Sindhu Cherian, Michael J. Borowitz

35 Immunohematology 680
Laura Cooling, Theresa Downs

36 Transfusion Medicine 735
Matthew Elkins, Robertson Davenport, Paul D. Mintz

37 Hemapheresis 751
Emily Rupp Patterson, Jeffrey L. Winters

38 Tissue Banking and Progenitor Cells 783
Nicholas J. Greco, Matthew Elkins

PART 5 Hemostasis and Thrombosis

EDITED BY | A. Koneti Rao, Matthew R. Pincus

39 Coagulation and Fibrinolysis 794
Mariasanta Napolitano, Alvin H. Schmaier, Craig M. Kessler

40 Platelet Disorders and von Willebrand Disease 812
Jonathan L. Miller, A. Koneti Rao

41 Laboratory Approach to Thrombotic Risk 834
John V. Mitsios, Jacob H. Rand

42 Antithrombotic Therapy 842
Thomas L. Ortel

PART 6 Immunology and Immunopathology

EDITED BY | H. Davis Massey, Richard A. McPherson

43 Overview of the Immune System and Immunologic Disorders 856
Richard A. McPherson, H. Davis Massey

44 Immunoassays and Immunochemistry 862
Katsumi Aoyagi, Yoshihiro Ashihara, Yasushi Kasahara

45 Laboratory Evaluation of the Cellular Immune System 890
Roger S. Riley

46 Laboratory Evaluation of Immunoglobulin Function and Humoral Immunity 913
Richard A. McPherson, Roger S. Riley, H. Davis Massey

47 Mediators of Inflammation: Complement, Cytokines, and Adhesion Molecules 929
H. Davis Massey, Richard A. McPherson, Sally A. Huber, Nancy S. Jenny

48 Mediators of Inflammation: Cytokines and Adhesion Molecules 944
Nancy S. Jenny, Sally A. Huber, Michael R. Lewis

49 Human Leukocyte Antigen: The Major Histocompatibility Complex of Man 955
Omar Roberto Fagoaga

50 The Major Histocompatibility Complex and Disease 973
Attila Kumánovics, Julio C. Delgado

51 Immunodeficiency Disorders 983
Patrick Michael Long, Kimberly W. Sanford, Martin H. Bluth

52 Clinical and Laboratory Evaluation of Systemic Rheumatic Diseases 993
Carlos Alberto von Mühlen, Marvin J. Fritzler, Edward K. L. Chan

53 Vasculitis 1016
J. Charles Jennette, Eric T. Weimer, Jason Kidd

54 Organ-Specific Autoimmune Diseases 1032
William E. Winter, Neil S. Harris, Kimberly L. Merkel, Amy L. Collinsworth, William L. Clapp

55 Allergic Diseases 1057
Henry A. Homburger, Robert G. Hamilton

PART 7 Medical Microbiology

EDITED BY | Gail L. Woods, Richard A. McPherson

56 Viral Infections 1072
Lech J. Mazur, Michael Costello

57 Chlamydial, Rickettsial, and Mycoplasmal Infections 1099
Juan P. Olano, David H. Walker, Gail L. Woods

58 Medical Bacteriology 1114
Geraldine S. Hall, Gail L. Woods

59 In Vitro Testing of Antimicrobial Agents 1153
Angella Charnot-Katsikas, Kathleen G. Beavis

60 Spirochete Infections 1171
P. Rocco LaSala, Michael Loeffelholz

61 Mycobacteria 1187
Gail L. Woods

62 Mycotic Diseases 1198
Peter C. Iwen

63 Medical Parasitology 1231
Thomas Richard Fritsche, Bobbi S. Pritt

64 Specimen Collection and Handling for Diagnosis of Infectious Diseases 1284
Kathleen G. Beavis, Angella Charnot-Katsikas

PART 8 Molecular Pathology

EDITED BY | Martin H. Bluth, Elizabeth R. Unger, Matthew R. Pincus

65 Introduction to Molecular Pathology 1300
Elizabeth R. Unger, Martin H. Bluth, Matthew R. Pincus

66 Molecular Diagnostics: Basic Principles and Techniques 1303
Martin Steinau, Margaret Piper, Elizabeth R. Unger

67 Polymerase Chain Reaction and Other Nucleic Acid Amplification Technology 1316
Frederick S. Nolte, Julie Woolworth Hirschhorn, Charles E. Hill

68 Hybridization Array Technologies 1328
Martin H. Bluth

69 Applications of Cytogenetics in Modern Pathology 1337
Constance K. Stein

70 Establishing a Molecular Diagnostics Laboratory 1360
Michael Weindel, Martin H. Bluth

71 Molecular Diagnosis of Genetic Diseases 1377
Wayne W. Grody

72 Identity Analysis: Use of DNA Analysis in Parentage, Forensic, and Missing Persons Testing 1396
Rhonda K. Roby

73 Pharmacogenomics and Personalized Medicine 1407
Jing Li, Martin H. Bluth

PART 9 Molecular Pathology

EDITED BY | Matthew R. Pincus, Martin H. Bluth, Richard A. McPherson, Wilbur B. Bowne

74 Diagnosis and Management of Cancer Using Serologic and Other Body Fluid Markers 1432
Shilpa Jain, Matthew R. Pincus, Martin H. Bluth, Richard A. McPherson, Wilbur B. Bowne, Peng Lee

75 Oncoproteins and Early Tumor Detection 1450
Matthew R. Pincus, Paul W. Brandt-Rauf, Martin H. Bluth, Elizabeth Gleeson, Mohammad F. Shaikh, Wilbur B. Bowne, Charles LaDoulis

76 Molecular Diagnosis of Hematopoietic Neoplasms 1465
Ali Gabali, Martin H. Bluth

77 Molecular Genetic Pathology of Solid Tumors 1492
Shilpa Jain, David Y. Zhang, Ruliang Xu, Matthew R. Pincus, Peng Lee

78 High-Throughput Genomic and Proteomic Technologies in the Postgenomic Era 1520
Martin H. Bluth

Index 1535

CONTRIBUTORS

Naif Z. Abraham Jr., MD, PhD
Director, Division of Clinical Pathology
Assistant Professor of Pathology
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Katsumi Aoyagi, PhD
General Manager
New Product Development and Product Lifecycle Management Department
Fujirebio Inc.
Tokyo, Japan

Yoshihiro Ashihara, PhD
Senior Managing Director
Board Member
Fujirebio Inc.
Tokyo, Japan

Katalin Banki, MD
Associate Professor
Department of Pathology
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Kathleen G. Beavis, MD
Interim Director of Laboratories
Director, Microbiology and Immunology Laboratories
Department of Pathology
University of Chicago Medicine
Chicago, Illinois

Sylva Bem, MD
Assistant Professor of Pathology
Upstate University Hospital
State University of New York
Syracuse, New York

Martin H. Bluth, MD, PhD
Professor, Department of Pathology
Wayne State University School of Medicine
Associate Director, Transfusion Service
Detroit Medical Center
Detroit, Michigan

Jay L. Bock, MD, PhD
Professor and Vice Chair for Clinical Pathology
Director of Laboratories
Department of Pathology
Stony Brook Medicine
Stony Brook, New York

Michael J. Borowitz, MD, PhD
Professor of Pathology and Oncology
Executive Deputy Director, Department of Pathology
Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions
Baltimore, Maryland

Wilbur B. Bowne, MD
Associate Professor of Surgery
Associate Professor of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology
Department of Surgery
Drexel University College of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Paul W. Brandt-Rauf, MD, ScD, DrPH
Dean
School of Public Health
University of Illinois at Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

Gary Briefel, MD
Clinical Associate Professor of Medicine
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York

Donghong Cai, MD
Clinical Assistant Instructor, Department of Pathology
State University of New York Health Sciences Center at Brooklyn
Brooklyn, New York

Timothy E. Caragher, PhD
Assistant Professor, Pathology and Clinical Laboratory Sciences
Rush University Medical Center
Chicago, Illinois

Robert P. Carty, PhD
Associate Professor, Department of Biochemistry
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York

Edward K. L. Chan, PhD
University of Florida Research Foundation Professor
Professor of Oral Biology
Professor of Anatomy and Cell Biology
University of Florida
Gainesville, Florida

Angella Charnot-Katsikas, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology
Assistant Director, Clinical Microbiology and Immunology Labs
University of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

Xueying Chen, MD, PhD
Visiting Scholar, Department of Cell Biology
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York
Attending Physician, Department of Cardiology
Zhongshan Hospital, Fudan University
Shanghai, China

Sindu Cherian, MD
Associate Professor, Laboratory Medicine
University of Washington,
Seattle, Washington

William L. Clapp, MD
Professor of Pathology, Department of Pathology, Immunology, and Laboratory Medicine
University of Florida College of Medicine
Gainesville, Florida

Amy L. Collinsworth, MD
Clinical Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology, Immunology, and Laboratory Medicine
University of Florida
Gainesville, Florida

Laura Cooling, MD, MS
Associate Professor, Department of Pathology
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan

Michael Costello, PhD
Technical Director, Microbiology
ACL Central Lab
Rosemont, Illinois

Robertson Davenport, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pathology
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, Michigan

Robert DeCresce, MD
Harriet Borland Professor and Chair
Department of Pathology
Rush Medical College
Chicago, Illinois

Julio C. Delgado, MD, MS
Associate Professor of Pathology
University of Utah School of Medicine
Chief Medical Director, Immunology Division
ARUP Laboratories
Director, Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics Laboratory
University of Utah School of Medicine
Salt Lake City, Utah

Theresa Downs, BS
Administrative Manager, Blood Bank and Transfusion Service
University of Michigan Hospitals
Ann Arbor, Michigan

M. Tarek Elghetany, MD
Professor of Pathology and Immunology and Pediatrics
Baylor College of Medicine
Texas Children's Hospital
Houston, Texas

Matthew Elkins, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Omar Roberto Fagoaga, MS, PhD, D(ABHI)
Associate Professor, Department of Pathology
Wayne State University Medical School
Transplant Immunology Director
Detroit Medical Center and Henry Ford Health Systems
Detroit, Michigan

Amal F. Farag, MD
Endocrine Consultant
Clinical Assistant Professor, Department of Medicine/College of Medicine
State University of New York
Brooklyn, New York

Thomas Richard Fritsche, MS, MD, PhD
Director, Division of Laboratory Medicine and Pathology
Marshfield Clinic
Marshfield, Wisconsin
Adjunct Professor, Department of Microbiology
University of Wisconsin
La Crosse, Wisconsin

Marvin J. Fritzler, MD, PhD
Professor, Department of Medicine
Cumming School of Medicine
University of Calgary
Calgary, Alberta, Canada

Ali Gabali, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Head of Hematopathology Division
Director of Hematopathology Fellowship Program
Department of Pathology
Wayne State University School of Medicine
Detroit, Michigan

Elizabeth Gleeson, MD, MPH
Surgical Resident
Department of Surgery
Drexel University College of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Susan S. Graham, MS, MT(ASCP)SH
Associate Professor and Chair, Department of Clinical Laboratory Science
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Nicholas J. Greco, BS, PhD
Executive Director and Tissue Bank Director
Faculty, Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Pathology
Upstate Cord Blood Bank
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Wayne W. Grody, MD, PhD
Professor, Departments of Pathology & Laboratory Medicine, Pediatrics, and Human Genetics
UCLA School of Medicine
Los Angeles, California

Helena A. Guber, MD
Assistant Professor of Medicine
Chief, Department of Endocrinology
Veterans Health Administration
NY Harbor Healthcare System, Brooklyn Campus
Brooklyn, New York

Geraldine S. Hall, PhD
Retired, Clinical Microbiology
Forestville, New York

Robert G. Hamilton, PhD, D(ABMLI)
Professor of Medicine and Pathology
Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine
Director
Johns Hopkins Dermatology, Allergy and Clinical Immunology Reference Laboratory
Baltimore, Maryland

Neil S. Harris, MBChB, MD
Clinical Associate Professor, Department of Pathology, Immunology, and Laboratory Medicine
University of Florida College of Medicine
Gainesville, Florida

Tim Hilbert, MD, PhD, JD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology
Medical Director, Blood Bank
New York University Langone Medical Center
New York, New York

Charles E. Hill, MD, PhD
Director, Molecular Diagnostics Laboratory
Emory University Hospital
Associate Professor of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Emory University School of Medicine
Atlanta, Georgia

Julie Woolworth Hirschhorn, PhD
Associate Director of Molecular Pathology
Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Medical University of South Carolina
Charleston, South Carolina

Henry A. Homburger, MD, FCAP
Professor (emeritus), Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathology
Mayo Clinic College of Medicine and Mayo Graduate School of Medicine
Rochester, Minnesota

Sally A. Huber, PhD
Professor, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
University of Vermont College of Medicine
Colchester, Vermont

M. Mahmood Hussain, MD
Professor, Department of Cell Biology
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York

Robert E. Hutchison, MD
Director of Hematopathology and Clinical Pathology
Department of Pathology
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Peter C. Iwen, MS, PhD, D(ABMM)
Professor, Department of Pathology and Microbiology
University of Nebraska Medical Center
Director
Nebraska Public Health Laboratory
Omaha, Nebraska

Shilpa Jain, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology and Immunology
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Roohi Jeelani, MD
Obstetrician and Gynecologist
Fellow, Wayne State University
Royal Oak, Michigan

J. Charles Jennette, MD
Kenneth M. Brinkhous Distinguished Professor and Chair, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
School of Medicine
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill
Chief of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine Services
UNC Hospitals
Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Nancy S. Jenny, PhD
Associate Professor, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
University of Vermont College of Medicine
Colchester, Vermont

Jeffrey S. Jhang, MD
Director, Blood Bank and Transfusion Services
Mount Sinai Hospital
Associate Professor, Department of Pathology
Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai
New York, New York

Donald S. Karcher, MD
Professor of Pathology
Chair, Department of Pathology
Director of Laboratories and Chief, Flow Cytometry and Clinical Chemistry Services
George Washington University Medical Center
Washington, DC

Yasushi Kasahara, PhD, DMSc
Visiting Professor, Department of Clinical Pathology
School of Medicine, Showa University
Scientific Advisor, Research Laboratories
Fujirebio Inc.
Tokyo, Japan

Craig M. Kessler, MD
Professor of Medicine and Pathology
Director, Division of Coagulation
Lombardi Comprehensive Cancer Center
Georgetown University Medical Center
Washington, DC

Jason Kidd, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Nephrology
VCU Medical Center
Richmond, Virginia

Michael J. Klein, MD
Pathologist-in-Chief
Hospital for Special Surgery
Professor of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Weill Cornell School of Medicine
New York, New York

Katrin M. Klemm, MD
Medical Laboratory Director and Staff Pathologist
East Alabama Medical Center
Medical Laboratory Director
Aperian Laboratory Solutions
Opelika, Alabama

Attila Kumánovics, MD
Assistant Professor of Pathology
University of Utah School of Medicine
Assistant Medical Director of Immunology and Co-Director of Immunogenetics
ARUP Laboratories
Salt Lake City, Utah

Anthony Kurec, MS, H(ASCP)DLM
Clinical Associate Professor Emeritus, Department of Clinical Laboratory Science
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Charles LaDoulis, MD
Chairman Emeritus, Department of Pathology
Maimonides Medical Center
Consultant in Pathology
Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
New York Harbor VA Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York

P. Rocco LaSala, MD
Director of Clinical Microbiology
Associate Professor of Pathology
West Virginia University
Morgantown, West Virginia

Peng Lee, MD, PhD
Professor of Pathology and Urology
New York University Langone Medical Center and School of Medicine
Director, Molecular Pathology
New York Harbor Healthcare System
New York, New York

Michael R. Lewis, MD, MBA
Associate Professor, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Medical Director, Flow Cytometry Laboratory
Division Chief, Laboratory Medicine
University of Vermont Medical Center
Burlington, Vermont

Jing Li, PhD
Associate Professor
Director, Pharmacology Core
Karmanos Cancer Institute
Department of Oncology
Wayne State University School of Medicine
Detroit, Michigan

Mark S. Lifshitz, MD
Director, Clinical Laboratories
New York University Langone Medical Center
Clinical Professor, Department of Pathology
New York University School of Medicine
New York, New York

Michael Loeffelholz, PhD
Professor, Department of Pathology
Director, Clinical Microbiology Division
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

Patrick Michael Long, PhD
Associate Professor, Pathology
Wayne State School of Medicine
Technical Director, Immunodiagnostics
DMC University Laboratory
Detroit, Michigan

H. Davis Massey, DDS, MD, PhD
Chief, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
H.H. McGuire VA Medical Center
Associate Professor of Pathology
Virginia Commonwealth University
Richmond, Virginia

Sharad C. Mathur, MD
Chief, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine Service
VA Medical Center
Kansas City, Missouri
Associate Professor, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
University of Kansas
Kansas City, Kansas

Lech J. Mazur, MS, MLS(ASCP)
Technical Director, Department of Molecular Pathology
ACL Laboratories
Rosemont, Illinois

Richard A. McPherson, MD, MSc
Professor of Pathology, Retired
Virginia Commonwealth University
Richmond, Virginia

Lauren McVoy, MD, PhD, D(ABMM)
Assistant Director, Clinical Laboratories
Clinical Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology
New York University School of Medicine
New York, New York

Kimberly L. Merkel, MD
Assistant Chief, Dermatology Section
North Florida/South Georgia Veterans Health System
Gainesville, Florida

Jonathan L. Miller, MD, PhD
Clinical Professor, Department of Pathology
Medical Director, Coagulation Laboratory
University of Chicago
Chicago, Illinois

W. Greg Miller, PhD
Professor, Department of Pathology
Director of Clinical Chemistry
Director of Pathology Information Systems
Virginia Commonwealth University Medical Center
Richmond, Virginia

Paul D. Mintz, MD
Director, Division of Hematology Clinical Review
Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research
Food and Drug Administration
Silver Spring, Maryland

John V. Mitsios, PhD
Assistant Professor of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Weill Cornell Medical College, New York Presbyterian Hospital
New York, New York

Golam Mohi, PhD
Associate Professor, Department of Pharmacology
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Prashant Nadkarni, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Medicine
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Mariasanta Napolitano, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor of Hematology, Hematology Unit
Reference Regional Center for Thrombosis and Haemostasis
Università degli studi di Palermo
Palermo, Italy

Frederick S. Nolte, PhD, D(ABMM), F(AAM)
Professor, Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Vice-Chair, Laboratory Medicine
Director, Clinical Laboratories
Medical University of South Carolina
Charleston, South Carolina

Man S. Oh, MD
Professor of Medicine, Division of Nephrology
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York

Juan P. Olano, MD
Professor, Department of Pathology
Director, Residency Training Program
University of Texas Medical Branch
Galveston, Texas

Thomas L. Ortel, MD, PhD
Professor, Department of Medicine
Duke University Medical Center
Durham, North Carolina

Emily Rupp Patterson, MD
Surgical Pathology Fellow
Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathology
Mayo Clinic
Rochester, Minnesota

Matthew R. Pincus, MD, PhD
Professor of Pathology
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York
Chief, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
New York Harbor VA Medical Center
New York, New York

Margaret Piper, PhD, MPH
Research Associate III
Kaiser Permanente Center for Health Research
Portland, Oregon

Bobbi S. Pritt, MD, MSc, (D)TMH
Director, Clinical Parasitology and Microbiology Initial Processing and Media Laboratories
Associate Professor of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Division of Clinical Microbiology
Mayo Clinic
Rochester, Minnesota

Jacob H. Rand, MD
Director of Clinical Laboratories
New York Presbyterian Hospital, Weill Cornell Campus
Professor, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Weill Cornell Medical College
New York, New York

A. Koneti Rao, MBBS
Sol Sherry Professor of Medicine
Professor, Department of Clinical Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
Director, Benign Hematology, Hemostasis, and Thrombosis
Co-Director, Sol Sherry Thrombosis Research Center
Temple University School of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Roger S. Riley, MD, PhD
Professor of Pathology
Virginia Commonwealth University School of Medicine
Richmond, Virginia

Rhonda K. Roby, PhD, MPH
Associate Professor, Department of Forensic and Investogative Genetics
Project Coordinator
Center for Human Identification
Institute of Investigative Genetics
University of North Texas Health Science Center
Fort Worth, Texas

Ralph Rossi, PhD
Director, Division of Clinical Chemistry
Veterans Affairs New York Harbor Healthcare System
Brooklyn, New York

Martin J. Salwen, MD
Distinguished Service Professor Emeritus
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York

Kimberly W. Sanford, MD
Assistant Professor
Medical Director, Transfusion Medicine
Department of Pathology
Virginia Commonwealth University
Richmond, Virginia

Ehsan Sarafraz-Yazdi, PhD
Assistant Professor, Division of Gynecologic Oncology
State University of New York Health Science Center,
Brooklyn, New York

Katherine I. Schexneider, MD
Medical Director, Transfusion Services
Department of Laboratory Medicine
Walter Reed National Military Medical Center
Associate Professor of Pathology
Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences
Bethesda, Maryland

Alvin H. Schmaier, MD
Robert W. Kellermeyer Professor of Hematology and Oncology
Department of Medicine
Case Western Reserve University
University Hospitals Case Medical Center
Cleveland, Ohio

Mohammad F. Shaikh, MD
Surgical Resident, Department of Surgery
Drexel University College of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Haseeb A. Siddiqi, PhD
Professor, Departments of Cell Biology, Medicine, and Pathology
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York

Constance K. Stein, PhD
Professor, Department of Pathology
Director of Cytogenetics
Associate Director of Molecular Diagnostics, Department of Clinical Pathology
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Martin Steinau, PhD
Senior Scientist, Chronic Viral Diseases Branch
Division of High-Consequence Pathogens and Pathology
National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Atlanta, Georgia

Philip M. Tierno Jr., PhD
Professor, Department of Microbiology & Pathology
New York University School of Medicine
New York, New York

Paul Tranchida, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology
Wayne State University
Detroit, Michigan

Elizabeth R. Unger, MD, PhD
Chief, Chronic Viral Diseases Branch
Division of High-Consequence Pathogens and Pathology
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention,
Atlanta, Georgia

Neerja Vajpayee, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Pathology
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

Carlos Alberto von Mühlen, MD, PhD
President, Brazilian Society of Autoimmunity
Full Professor of Internal Medicine and Rheumatology, Retired
Pontifical Catholic University School of Medicine
Porto Alegre, Brazil

David H. Walker, MD
Professor, Department of Pathology
University of Texas Medical Branch
Executive Director, Center for Biodefense and Emerging Infectious Diseases
Galveston, Texas

Eric T. Weimer, PhD, D(ABMLI)
Assistant Professor, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill School of Medicine
Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Michael Weindel, MD
Pathology Fellow, Department of Pathology and Immunology
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

Ruth S. Weinstock, MD, PhD
State University of New York Distinguished Service Professor,
Department of Medicine
Chief, Endocrinology, Diabetes, and Metabolism
Medical Director, Clinical Research Unit
State University of New York Upstate Medical University
Syracuse, New York

William E. Winter, MD
Professor, Departments of Pathology, Immunology and Laboratory Medicine, Pediatrics, and Molecular Genetics and Microbiology
University of Florida
Gainesville, Florida

Jeffrey L. Winters, MD
Professor, Laboratory Medicine and Pathology
Medical Director, Therapeutic Apheresis Treatment Unit
Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathology
Division of Transfusion Medicine
Mayo Clinic
Rochester, Minnesota

Brent L. Wood, MD, PhD
Professor, Laboratory Medicine and Pathology
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington

Gail L. Woods, MD
Professor, Department of Pathology
University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences
Chief of Pediatric Pathology, Department of Pathology
Arkansas Children's Hospital
Little Rock, Arkansas

Ruliang Xu, MD, PhD
Associate Professor
Director, Gastrointestinal and Liver Pathology
Department of Pathology
New York University Langone Medical Center
New York, New York

David Y. Zhang, MD, PhD
Professor
Director, Molecular Pathology Laboratory
Department of Pathology
Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai
New York, New York

Liye Zhou, MS
School of Graduate Studies, Molecular and Cell Biology Program
Departments of Cell Biology and Pediatrics
State University of New York Downstate Medical Center
Brooklyn, New York

PREFACE

Clinical laboratory measurements form the scientific basis upon which medical diagnosis and management of patients is established. These results constitute the largest section of the medical record of patients, and laboratory examinations will only continue to grow in number as new procedures are offered and well-established ones are ordered more frequently in the future. The modern concept of an electronic health record encompasses information from a patient's birth through that individual's entire life, and laboratory testing is a significant component of that record from prenatal and newborn screening through childhood, adulthood, and geriatric years. Traditional areas of testing are well established in clinical chemistry, hematology, coagulation, microbiology, immunology, and transfusion medicine. Genetic testing for hereditary disease risk assessment is becoming a reality, beginning with individual disease testing that is expected to be followed by whole genome screening for a multitude of conditions. The rapid pace in the introduction of new testing procedures demands that laboratory practitioners be experts in several divergent aspects of this profession. The environment of clinical laboratories is extremely well suited for translation of research procedures into diagnostic assays because of their traditional involvement in basic analysis, quality control, professional competencies, and cost-effective strategies of operation. All of these applications are made stronger for occurring under regulations of federal and state governments as well as the standards of accreditation of professional pathology organizations. Clinical laboratories excel in these tasks, and they are now responding to pressures for even greater accomplishments in areas of informatics, advanced analytic methods, interpretation of complex data, and communication of medical information in a meaningful way to physician colleagues and even directly to patients in some health care models. The most successful practitioners of laboratory medicine will incorporate all of these approaches into their daily lives and will be leaders in their institutions for developing initiatives to promote outstanding health care in a fiscally responsible endeavor. This textbook strives to provide the background knowledge by which trainees can be introduced to these practices and to serve as a resource for pathologists and other laboratory personnel to update their knowledge to solve problems that they encounter daily.

This twenty-third edition marks more than 100 years since *A Manual of Clinical Diagnosis*, authored by James Campbell Todd, was introduced in 1908. In its current format as *Henry's Clinical Diagnosis and Management by Laboratory Methods*, this textbook remains the authoritative source of information for residents, students, and other trainees in the disciplines of clinical pathology and laboratory medicine, and for physicians and laboratory practitioners. The current edition continues the tradition of partnership between laboratory examinations and the formulation and confirmation of clinical diagnoses followed by monitoring of body functions, therapeutic drug levels, other results of medical treatments, and risk assessment for disease. Beginning with the twenty-first edition, color illustrations have been used throughout the book to accurately and realistically depict clinical laboratory test findings and their analysis. The overriding mission of this book is to incorporate new discoveries and their clinical diagnostic applications alongside the wealth of information that forms the core knowledge base of clinical pathology and laboratory medicine. Our contributing authors, who are experts in their specialties, present to the reader the essential basic and new information that is central to clinical laboratory practice.

Part 1, The Clinical Laboratory, covers the organization, purposes, and practices of analysis, interpretation of results, and management of the clinical laboratory from quality control through informatics and finances. The general structure of this section includes general management principles, with emphasis on preanalytic, analytic, and postanalytic components of laboratory analysis as well as oversight functions. Administrative concepts for the laboratory are considered in Chapter 1, with optimization of workflow presented in Chapter 2. Preanalytic factors such as variations arising from specimen collection, transport, and handling and other variables are discussed in Chapter 3. The principles of analysis, instrumentation, and automation are presented in Chapters 4 and 5. The growing arena of near-patient laboratory services beyond central hospital laboratories in the format of point-of-care testing is presented in Chapter 6 along with presentation on this application in the military. Postanalysis processes of result reporting, medical decision making, and interpretation of results are presented in Chapter 7, while selection of laboratory testing and interpretation for the most cost-effective and efficient information gathering for medical problem solving by clinical laboratory testing is discussed in Chapter 8. A key component to all phases of laboratory processes, interpretation of results, and decision making is statistical analysis, which is introduced in Chapter 9. Explicit applications of statistics are in quality control and proficiency testing for oversight of the entire analytic process (Chapter 10). Maintaining order for the complexities of laboratory test result ordering and reporting and the management of clinical information are possible only through sophisticated information systems that are essential to all clinical laboratories (Chapter 11). Management decisions in the clinical laboratory involve the choice of analytic instrumentation, automation to process and deliver specimens to analytic stations, and computer systems to coordinate all of the preanalytic, analytic, and postanalytic processes to meet the mission of the institution. These choices determine the productivity that a laboratory can achieve (especially its ability to respond to increased volumes of testing and complexity of measurements and examinations as the standards of practice advance). Paramount is the manner in which the laboratory can muster its resources in equipment, personnel, reagent supplies, and ingenuity of its leadership to respond to the needs of health care providers and patients in terms of access, timeliness, cost, and quality of test results. New challenges continue to emerge for the laboratory to provide excellent quality services at a fiscally responsible expense; the changing models of reimbursement for medical and laboratory services demand that pathologists and laboratory leaders develop and maintain a strong understanding of the principles of financial management and be well aware of mechanisms that laboratories can utilize for responding to these new approaches to reimbursement (Chapter 12). Laboratory organization should also include preparedness for threats to our security through bioterrorism and related activities (Chapter 13).

Part 2, Clinical Chemistry, is organized to present laboratory examinations according to organ systems and their disorders. Some of the most commonly ordered laboratory tests are directed at the evaluation of renal function, water, electrolytes, metabolic intermediates and nitrogenous wastes, and acid-base balance, all of which are critically important for monitoring acutely ill patients and in the management of patients with kidney and pulmonary disorders (Chapter 14). The important field of bone metabolism and bone diseases, stemming from the enormous public interest in osteoporosis of our aging population, is covered in Chapter 15. The significance of carbohydrate measurements, with particular emphasis on diabetes mellitus, the overall hormonal regulation of glucose metabolism, and disorders of other sugars, is reviewed in Chapter 16. Chapter 17 covers the extremely important topic of lipids and disorders in their metabolism and highlights the critical patterns in lipoprotein profiles that indicate disposition to atherosclerosis and cardiac malfunction, especially myocardial infarction. In Chapter 18, the serodiagnostic markers for cardiac injury evaluation and the related disorders of stroke are elaborated. The clinical significance of specific proteins and their analysis, with emphasis on electrophoresis of blood and body fluids, is covered in Chapter 19. The field of clinical enzymology, with applications to assessment of organ injury, is covered in Chapter 20. The principles of enzymology (e.g., transition state theory) have been used directly in the design of new effective drugs against specific diseases such as hypertension and AIDS. Laboratory assessment of liver function is presented in Chapter 21 (which now includes new treatments for hepatitis C) and that of gastrointestinal and pancreatic disorders in Chapter 22. Toxicological analysis and therapeutic drug monitoring are covered in Chapter 23, with applications of both immunoassays and mass spectroscopy emerging in endocrinology (Chapter 24) and

pregnancy and perinatal testing as well (Chapter 25). Nutritional analysis, with examination of vitamins and trace metals, is presented in Chapter 26. Chapter 27 elaborates the chemical principles of analysis, which is crucial to the understanding of virtually all laboratory measurements and the common interferences encountered with blood and biological fluids.

Part 3, Urine and Other Body Fluids, reviews the utility and methods for examining fluids other than blood. Chapter 28 presents the basic examination of urine, with extensive discussions of both chemical testing and microscopic examination of urine sediment. A special area for consideration is body fluid analysis, which has received national attention recently in terms of standardizing the approach to testing of typical fluids and other alternative specimens (Chapter 29). A large range of specimen types is considered in this discussion, with extensive coverage of both microscopic and chemical examinations.

Part 4, Hematology, Coagulation, and Transfusion Medicine, introduces techniques for the basic examination of blood and bone marrow (Chapter 30) and provides a wealth of background on the physiological processes involved in hematopoiesis (Chapter 31). Erythrocytic disorders and leukocytic disorders and their diagnosis are covered in Chapters 32 and 33, respectively. Modern techniques for use of flow cytometry for diagnosis of hematopoietic neoplasias are presented in Chapter 34 to round out the approaches to diagnosis in this rapidly changing field. Immunohematology, which is so important for the understanding of erythrocyte antibodies and their impact on transfusion, is covered in Chapter 35. Blood component manufacture and utilization are covered in Chapter 36 along with transfusion reactions. Chapters 37 and 38 deal with the rapidly expanding areas of apheresis, with its applications to therapy of multiple blood disorders as well as the collection, processing, and dispensing of hematopoietic progenitor cells (adult stem cells) from bone marrow, peripheral blood, and cord blood for treatment of both malignant and non-malignant diseases.

Part 5, Hemostasis and Thrombosis covers the vast increase in our knowledge of the pathways involved in clotting and in fibrinolysis and the panoply of new testing and therapeutic modalities that have evolved as a result. This section continues to reflect the impact of our growing knowledge of coagulation and fibrinolysis (Chapter 39) plus that of platelet function disorders, with emphasis on von Willebrand disease (Chapter 40). Advances in the diagnosis and monitoring of thrombotic disorders are covered extensively in Chapter 41, with particular interest in the prediction of thromboembolic risk. Along with our better understanding of thrombosis have come new drugs for treatment of patients with vascular occlusive disorders, particularly ischemic events in the heart or brain. Principles of antithrombotic therapy and the laboratory's role in its monitoring are covered in Chapter 42. Also discussed in this section is the major advance in pharmacogenomics (fully discussed later in Chapter 73) as it impacts anticoagulant therapies for individual patients.

Part 6, Immunology and Immunopathology, presents a framework both for classifying disorders of the immune system and for the role of laboratory testing in diagnosing those diseases (Chapter 43). Measurements based on immunoassays have long been the essential components of understanding a multitude of disorders; an excellent account of the principles of immunoassay and immunochemistry is included in Chapter 44. Evaluation of the cellular immune system for diagnosing and monitoring immune defects is described in Chapter 45, which is newly updated. Humoral immunity and the examination of immunoglobulins in disease are covered in Chapter 46, with particular emphasis on the evaluation of monoclonal disorders in the blood. Material on complement and its role in inflammation is presented in Chapter 47. Chapter 48 is a new presentation on cytokines and adhesion molecules that are vital to inflammation and have become targets for therapeutic interventions. Also brought up to date are Chapter 49 on the major histocompatibility complex (MHC), with its significant applications to organ transplantation, and Chapter 50, which looks at MHC and disease associations. The evaluation of immunodeficiency disorders includes many standard examinations for protein and cellular functions plus new genetic tests for specific abnormalities (Chapter 51). The assessment of autoimmune diseases is presented for the systemic rheumatic diseases (Chapter 52), with new chapters covering the vasculitides (Chapter 53) and organ-specific diseases (Chapter 54). Allergic diseases, with their ever-increasing laboratory evaluations, are presented in Chapter 55.

Part 7, Medical Microbiology, covers an enormous spectrum of infectious diseases and related topics that include viral infections (Chapter 56); chlamydial, rickettsial, and mycoplasmal infections (Chapter 57); classical medical bacteriology (Chapter 58); and susceptibility testing of antimicrobial agents (Chapter 59). Other major topics and infectious organisms of special note are spirochete infections (Chapter 60); mycobacteria (Chapter 61), with immense concern about emergence of resistant strains; mycotic diseases (Chapter 62), with a wide array of photographs of cultures and photomicrographs; and medical parasitology (Chapter 63), with a worldwide significance that is growing as large numbers of people move between countries and continents. In line with the importance of achieving maximum diagnostic benefit from the laboratory, specimen collection and handling for diagnosis of infectious disease are detailed in Chapter 64. Although classic techniques have consisted of culturing microbiological organisms with identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing through functional bioassays, modern methods of nucleic acid amplification and detection are now becoming widespread for each type of microbiological organism; these applications are described in each chapter about the various organisms.

Part 8, Molecular Pathology, covers some of the most rapidly changing and exciting areas of clinical laboratory testing. Chapter 65 provides an introduction to the role of molecular diagnostics, with an updated discussion of the principles and techniques of the field in Chapter 66. Similar updates are provided for the vital molecular diagnostic techniques of polymerase chain reaction and other amplification methods (Chapter 67) and newer approaches to nucleic acid hybridization (Chapter 68). The application of cytogenetics, with modern methods of karyotyping, including fluorescent in situ hybridization and examination for chromosomal abnormalities, is covered in Chapter 69. Translation of research techniques to the molecular diagnostic laboratory is presented in Chapter 70, which also deals with procedures for establishing a molecular diagnostics laboratory that follows all of the expectations for well-standardized testing and is fully compliant with regulations and good laboratory practices. This section is rounded out with excellent presentations on the application of molecular diagnostics to genetic diseases, for which screening is becoming more important (Chapter 71), and to identity testing as used in parentage testing and forensic analysis (Chapter 72). Finally, an entirely new presentation on pharmacogenomics (Chapter 73) provides an understanding of how molecular analysis of selected genes crucial for response to therapeutic drugs or for the metabolism of drugs can be used to optimize individualized treatment plans, also known as personalized or precision medicine.

Part 9, Clinical Pathology of Cancer, is a further outgrowth of this section that was new in the twenty-first edition. Because of the explosion of new diagnostic information as a result of the successful sequencing of the human genome, genetic profiles of different forms of cancers are now available. Specific forms of cancer are beginning to be diagnosed using microchips containing gene arrays in which patterns of gene expression and mutation are evaluated. In addition, new methods of proteomics (i.e., determination of the patterns of expression of multiple proteins in patients' body fluids and tissues) allow for cancer detection, monitoring, and treatment. Thus there has been a vast increase in information about the principles and applications of laboratory methods for diagnosis and monitoring of malignancies in just the past few years. Chapter 74 deals with the important protein markers for cancer in blood and tissues that are commonly used for the diagnosis and management of malignant diseases. Chapter 75 extends this discussion through exciting new applications of oncoproteins and growth factors and their receptors in the assessment of malignancies and modification of therapies. A broad spectrum of molecular and cytogenetic markers is now commonly used for the initial evaluation of hematopoietic neoplasms (Chapter 76) that could well become a model for assessment of most, if not all, malignancies. Because the methods in molecular pathology used in diagnosing cancer in body fluids are the same as in solid-tissue diagnosis, breaking down the barriers between anatomic and clinical pathology, we have now included a new chapter on the evaluation of solid tumors by these methods in Chapter 77.

The prospects for early detection, prognosis, and implementation of treatment regimens for cancer based on specific alterations in the genome have never been more apparent. These chapters on cancer diagnostics emphasize genome-based approaches and other new methods such as proteomics, which has the potential to identify patterns of protein alterations that can be used both for discovery of new targets for examination and for direct detection of clinical abnormalities. Many of these technologies have been developed in the past few years, and many more versions of them are sure to appear as the competitive advantage of rapid and inexpensive genomic analysis emerges. We think it is vital for pathologists to understand the bases of molecular diagnostics, the power of this type of analysis for clinical decision making, and the paths such testing is likely to take in the future. To this end, the final chapter (Chapter 78) presents the diagnostic and prognostic impact of high-throughput genomic and proteomic technologies and the role they can play in the present and future practice of pathology.

The fundamental task for trainees in laboratory medicine is to achieve a sound understanding of analytic principles and the power and limitations of laboratory examinations so that they can interpret whether abnormal results are due to a patient's physical condition or to other potential interferences such as altered physiological state, drug interactions, or abnormalities introduced by specimen mishandling. Based on mastery of these technical aspects of test performance and interpretation, pathologists should be able to recommend strategies to provide the appropriate level of care for multiple purposes: to screen for disease, to confirm a diagnosis, to establish a prognosis, to monitor the effects of treatment, and (more recently) to assess the future risk of disease. National practice recommendations from the American Medical Association and the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services have led to the formulation of standardized panels of multiple individual tests that are targeted to several organ systems, such as the basic metabolic panel and comprehensive metabolic panel (Appendix 7, available online with the other appendices). These panels consist of individual tests that are highly automated and can be conveniently and inexpensively delivered through most hospital laboratories. Such convenience was not always the case when the assays for basic constituents such as potassium, sodium, chloride, bicarbonate, calcium, bilirubin, and all the various metabolites, proteins, and enzyme activities were performed manually, as documented in previous editions of this textbook. Beyond those relatively simple tests, immunoassays have also undergone a similar transformation. A mere 35 years ago, the rapid assay for thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) required 2 days, whereas today a third-generation TSH measurement can be completed in 20 minutes or less. Conversion from highly complex and operator-interactive testing to immediately available and inexpensive assays will almost certainly occur with procedures that are now at the cutting edge of technology and require elaborate instrumentation and special expertise to perform. These include tandem mass spectrometry for small molecules such as hormones, vitamins, and drugs; whole genome sequencing for assessing the risk of developing hereditary disorders and diagnosing malignancies; and proteomics for screening a wide array of proteins in blood, body fluids, and tissues for disease detection and evidence of progression. The configuration of these assays will consolidate multiple analyses onto miniature platforms such as chip technologies. Although these new technologies will likely be expensive to implement initially, the hope is that they will reduce costs in other parts of the health care system through initiating prevention or treatment earlier than would be possible without such complex and intimate information about a patient's disease state or propensity to develop a disease.

Within this context, it is clear that the role of the clinical laboratory in the future will involve more than simply providing numeric results for physicians to glance at during rounds or after clinic duty. The complexity and enormity of the test results that will be routinely available will require entirely new approaches to data presentation and interpretation to provide useful information for clinical diagnosis and management. The challenge to laboratories and clinicians alike is to develop "meaningful uses" in which electronic health records can store and present all of this information about a patient—from cradle through an entire life—into which several segments are integrated: genetic background, environmental factors, previous diagnostic and monitoring tests, and contemporaneous monitoring tests. All of these aspects of a patient's history have the potential to be meaningful in the most rigorous sense to provide personalized medical treatments.

This textbook provides grounding in the practice of modern laboratory medicine, and it points the way to new disciplines that will contribute to the evolution of strategies for creating, analyzing, and presenting medical information in the future. We hope that the discussions in this textbook will stimulate our colleagues at all levels to embrace new diagnostic laboratory technologies (in addition to those that are now standard) and to retain the most valuable from each of these into practices of the future. The legacy of this book over the past century has been to provide a clear and useful account of laboratory tests that generate the solid scientific information upon which medical decisions are based. Building on that foundation, we enthusiastically anticipate new diagnostic capabilities, and we hope that this textbook will be a stimulus to their development.

It is a privilege and an honor to serve as editors for this twenty-third edition.

Richard A. McPherson, MD, MSc
Matthew R. Pincus, MD, PhD
February 2016

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We gratefully acknowledge the outstanding contributions made by our expert colleagues and collaborators who served as associate editors: Martin H. Bluth, MD, PhD; Jay L. Bock, MD, PhD; Wilbur B. Bowne, MD; Robert E. Hutchison, MD; Donald S. Karcher, MD; Mark S. Lifshitz, MD; H. Davis Massey, DDS, MD, PhD; A. Koneti Rao, MBBS; Elizabeth R. Unger, MD, PhD; and Gail L. Woods, MD. They all have made extensive contributions to the quality of this book, both through development of textual matter and through the exercise of practiced review of the chapters under their guidance. We deeply appreciate their efforts in this edition.

We gratefully acknowledge the participation in previous editions of Dr. Jonathan Miller, Professor of Pathology and Vice Chairman of the Department of Pathology at the University of Chicago Medical Center, under whose guidance Part 5, Hemostasis and Thrombosis, was developed in the twenty-first edition of this book, and who first discovered platelet-type von Willibrand disease; David J. Bylund, MD: David R. Czuchlewski, MD; Thomas J. Dilts, MT(ASCP), MBPA; Andrea Ferreira-Gonzalez, PhD; Louis Fink, MD; Richard S. Larson, MD, PhD; Richard A. Marlar, PhD; Rex M. McCallum, MD; Ankoor Shah, MD; Gregory A. Threatte, MD; David S. Viswanatha, MD; and David S. Wilkinson, MD, PhD. We also acknowledge our gratitude to them for the opportunity to revise their prior chapters from the twenty-second edition for this, the twenty-third one.

It is with sadness that we note the passing of Herbert F. Polesky, MD, a world-renowned expert in identity testing, who authored chapters in multiple editions of this book. We also recognize Robert F. Nakamura, MD, who died just prior to the twenty-second edition; he is remembered for his expertise and leadership in immunopathology.

All of our students, residents, and colleagues have for decades contributed enormously to the development of our knowledge of human disease and the use of laboratories for diagnosis and patient management. We are grateful for all of their questions and the stimulus they have provided to our professional growth. We are especially grateful for the mentorship and encouragement provided in our careers by Alfred Zettner, MD; Cecil Hougie, MD; Abraham Braude, MD; Charles Davis, MD; James A. Rose, MD; Robert P. Carty, PhD; Donald West King, MD; George Teebor, MD; Phillip Prose, MD; Fred Davey, MD; and Gerald Gordon, MD. We will always remember them and the standards for excellence they set.

The development of this edition, with its myriad details, would not have been possible without the outstanding professional efforts of our editors at Elsevier: William R. Schmitt, Kathryn DeFrancesco, and Clay Broeker, each of whom added tremendously to this enterprise. We are sincerely grateful to them and to all the staff of Elsevier. They have made this endeavor a happy one. We also send very special thanks to Anne Erickson, who has drawn many of the illustrations in the twenty-first, twenty-second, and twenty-third editions with a fine eye to beauty in presentation and ease of comprehension.

We are grateful to all of the authors for accepting the challenge to participate in the education of future and present laboratorians and physicians in all fields of medicine by distilling the essential information from each of their fields of expertise and creating a readable and authoritative text for our audience. Special thanks to the authors who have created wholly new chapters on molecular pathology and cancer diagnostics for this edition.

We also remember with perpetual gratitude the inspiration provided to us by John Bernard Henry, MD. He provided leadership for seven editions of this book. Moreover, he encouraged us, guided us, and demanded excellence from us in our profession.

Upon the completion of this twenty-third edition, we humbly thank all the individuals who have played roles in making it possible. It is not possible to name all of the individuals who have contributed to this textbook. To those mentioned here and to those not explicitly named, we thank you for your prodigious efforts and support.

Richard A. McPherson, MD, MSc
Matthew R. Pincus, MD, PhD

This page intentionally left blank

PART 1

The Clinical Laboratory

EDITED BY

Mark S. Lifshitz
Matthew R. Pincus

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL CONCEPTS AND ADMINISTRATIVE ISSUES

Tim Hilbert, Anthony Kurec, Mark S. Lifshitz

LEADERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT, 2
Strategic Planning, 3
Quality Systems Management, 3
Human Resource Management, 5

LABORATORY DESIGN AND SERVICE MODELS, 5

REGULATION, ACCREDITATION, AND LEGISLATION, 6

SAFETY, 7
Biological Hazards, 8
Chemical Hazards, 9
Ergonomic Hazards, 10

SELECTED REFERENCES, 10

KEY POINTS

- Effective laboratory management requires leaders to provide direction and managers to get things done. Strategic planning, marketing, human resource management, and quality management are all key elements of a laboratory organization.
- Most laboratory errors occur in the preanalytic and postanalytic stages. Six Sigma and Lean are tools that can be used to reduce laboratory errors and increase productivity.
- Laboratory services are provided in many different ways and can be thought of as placed on a continuum from point-of-care tests producing immediate answers to highly complex laboratory tests that require sophisticated technology and skilled staff.
- Clinical laboratories are highly regulated; many laboratory practices are the direct result of federal or state/local legislation. At the federal level, laboratory activities are regulated through the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act of 1988.
- Biological, chemical, ergonomic, and fire hazards cannot be completely eliminated from the laboratory, but they can be minimized through the use of engineering controls (i.e., safety features built into the overall design of equipment and supplies), personal protective equipment, and work practice controls (such as hand washing).

The laboratory plays a central role in health care. How critical is the laboratory? By one estimate, 70% of all medical decisions are based on laboratory results (Silverstein, 2003), although laboratory costs account for only 2.3% of total health care dollars (Terry, 2009). The laboratory is a $55.1 billion industry that offers high clinical value at relatively low cost. While laboratory testing currently seems to be a relative bargain, a 2012 study by the UnitedHealth Group's Center for Health Reform and Modernization suggests that laboratory spending has the potential to grow significantly over the next decade, especially due to the increased availability of expensive genetic tests (UnitedHealth Center for Health Reform & Modernization, 2012). As a nation, we spent over $5 billion on genetic testing in 2010, but estimates suggest that this segment of laboratory spending could reach between $15 billion and $25 billion by 2021. This greater expense will likely increase the pressure on laboratory leadership to control costs and guide appropriate test utilization (Hanson & Plumhoff, 2012).

The purpose of the laboratory is to provide physicians and other health care professionals with information to (1) detect disease or predisposition to disease; (2) confirm or reject a diagnosis; (3) establish prognosis; (4) guide patient management; and (5) monitor efficacy of therapy (Kurec, 2000). The laboratory also plays a leading role in education and research, information technology design and implementation, and quality improvement. To successfully achieve its goal, a laboratory must use (1) medical, scientific, and technical expertise; (2) resources such as personnel, laboratory and data processing equipment, supplies, and facilities; and (3) organization, management, and communication skills. The goal of this chapter is to provide a fundamental understanding of general administrative concepts and issues that are the basis of sound laboratory practices. Crucial to a well-managed laboratory that generates accurate and timely laboratory reports is sound leadership with skills to guide staff in performing their daily tasks. A more detailed discussion of these topics is available elsewhere (Snyder & Wilkinson, 1998; Nigon, 2000).

LEADERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT

An organization is only as good as its people, and people are guided by leaders and managers. The terms *leadership* and *management* are often used interchangeably but represent different qualities (Table 1-1). Leadership provides the direction of where one (or an organization) is going, whereas management provides the "road" to get there. The adage "If you don't know where you are going, any road will get you there" illustrates why leadership must be visionary and must set clear goals with strategic objectives. Effective management uses certain talents to work with people to get things done. It requires an optimal mix of skilled personnel, dedicated people, and task-oriented leaders to achieve these goals. These skills fall under four primary management functions: planning and prompt decision making, organizing, leading, and controlling.

Leadership is a pattern of behaviors used to engage others to complete tasks in a timely and productive manner. One model of leadership describes four key leadership styles: supporting, directing, delegating, and coaching. A supportive leader provides physical and personal resources so that an individual can accomplish his or her duties. A directive leader presents rules, orders, or other defined instructions to the individual. The former approach offers flexibility and encourages creative problem solving, whereas the latter approach offers concise and detailed instructions on how to complete a task. Other styles are also defined by these qualities: A delegating leader provides low support and direction, whereas a coaching leader provides high support and direction. A leader may adopt any behavior style periodically to suit a situation, but in general, one style usually dominates.

Good management uses, in the most efficient and effective manner, the human, financial, physical, and information resources available to an organization. Some basic managerial responsibilities are listed in Box 1-1. Managers can be stratified as first-line managers (supervisors, team leaders, chief technologists), middle managers (operations managers, division heads), and top managers (laboratory directors, chief executive officers [CEOs], chief financial officers [CFOs], chief information officers [CIOs]). Each managerial level dictates the daily activities and skill sets required for that position. Top-level managers concentrate on strategizing and planning for the next 1 to 5 years, while first-line managers are more concerned about completing the day's work. A top-level manager may or may not possess technical skills that a first-line manager uses every day. Middle managers may straddle both areas to some degree by engaging in a variety of activities that may be strategic as well as tactical.

TABLE 1-1
Leader Versus Manager Traits

Leader	Manager
Administrator	Implementer
Organizer and developer	Maintains control
Risk taker	Thinks short term
Inspiration	Asks *how* and *when*
Thinks long term	Watches bottom line
Asks *what* and *why*	Accepts status quo
Challenges status quo	Is a good soldier
Does the right thing	Does things right

Adapted from Ali M, Brookson S, Bruce A, et al. *Managing for excellence.* London: DK Publishing; 2001, pp 86–149.

BOX 1-1
Basic Management Responsibilities

Operations Management
Quality assurance
Policies and procedures
Strategic planning
Benchmarking
Productivity assessment
Legislation/regulations/HIPAA compliance
Medicolegal concerns
Continuing education
Staff meetings

Human Resource Management
Job descriptions
Recruitment and staffing
Orientation
Competency assessment
Personnel records
Performance evaluation/appraisals
Discipline and dismissal

Financial Management
Departmental budgets
Billing
CPT coding
ICD-10 coding
Compliance regulations
Test cost analysis
Fee schedule maintenance

Marketing Management
Customer service
Outreach marketing
Advertising
Website development
Client education

CPT, Current Procedural Terminology; *HIPAA,* Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act; *ICD-10, International Classification of Diseases*, Tenth Revision.

BOX 1-2
SWOT Analysis for a New Hospital Outreach Program

Strengths
1. Use current technology/instrumentation
2. Have excess technical capacity
3. Increased test volume will decrease cost per test
4. Strong leadership support
5. Financial resources available

Opportunities
1. Opening of a new physician health care facility
2. Department of Health mandates lead testing on all children younger than 2 years old
3. Have access to hospital marketing department
4. Hospital X is bankrupt; laboratory will close

Weaknesses
1. Staffing shortage
2. Morale issues
3. Inadequate courier system
4. Need to hire additional pathologist
5. Limited experience in providing multihospital/client LIS services
6. Turnaround times are marginal

Threats
1. Competition from other local hospital laboratories
2. Competition from national reference laboratories
3. Reimbursement decreasing
4. Three local hospitals have consolidated their services, including laboratory
5. Several new patient service centers (phlebotomy stations) already opened

LIS, Laboratory information system.

STRATEGIC PLANNING

Technology has moved the science of laboratory medicine from using numerous manual methods to applying highly automated ones. This has leveled the playing field of laboratory science to a point where testing can be done in the clinic, in the physician's office, and even in the home by nontraditional laboratorians. This makes the laboratory a commodity that must engage in competitive business practices. To survive and even thrive in a competitive environment, a laboratory must constantly reevaluate its goals and services and adapt to market forces (e.g., fewer qualified laboratory personnel, reduced budgets, stricter regulatory mandates, lower reimbursements, new sophisticated technologies). This requires a leader to carefully make strategic decisions that can have an impact on the laboratory for years.

The process by which high-level decisions are made is called *strategic planning* and can be defined as (1) deciding on the objectives of the organization and the need to modify existing objectives if appropriate; (2) allocating resources to attain these objectives; and (3) establishing policies that govern the acquisition, use, and disposition of these resources (Lifshitz & De Cresce, 1996). Strategic planning is usually based on long-term projections and a global view that can have an impact on all levels of a laboratory's operations. It is different from tactical planning, which consists of the detailed, day-to-day operations needed to meet the immediate needs of the laboratory and works toward meeting the long-term strategic goals that have been set. For example, a global strategy to develop an outreach business may prompt addressing issues such as bringing more reference work in-house; developing new technologies; the need for state-of-the-art instrumentation and/or automation; enhancing information technology tools; and adequate staffing to satisfy service expectations. Risk can be involved in initiating a specific strategy. A wrong decision may burden a laboratory with unnecessary costs, unused equipment, and/or overstaffing, making it that much harder to change course in response to future market forces or new organizational strategies. Yet, not taking a risk may result in loss of opportunities to grow business and/or improve services.

Successful strategic planning requires appropriate data collection by observing current and projected conditions in the following areas: Social, Technological, Economic, Environmental, and Political (or STEEP) (Kurec, 2014a). This process is not the result of a single individual's creation but rather is derived from a committee. Managers spend a significant amount of time in meetings that often are nonproductive if not organized efficiently. A variety of techniques can be used to facilitate the strategic planning process; these include histograms/graphs/scattergrams, brainstorming, fishbone diagrams, storyboarding, Pareto analyses, and Delphi analyses (Kurec, 2004). Another way to evaluate the risks associated with new strategies is the Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities, and Threats (SWOT) analysis. Generally, environmental factors internal to the laboratory are classified as strengths and weaknesses, and external environmental factors are opportunities and threats. This process is a particularly useful tool for guiding a marketing strategy (Box 1-2) and can be used in developing such a program (Table 1-2). Successful strategic planning requires preplanning, organization, well-defined goals, communication, and a firm belief in what is to be accomplished.

QUALITY SYSTEMS MANAGEMENT

A key management goal is to ensure that quality laboratory services are provided. To accomplish this, every laboratory should strive to obtain modern equipment, to hire well-trained staff, to ensure a well-designed

TABLE 1-2
Issues to Consider When Establishing a Marketing Program

Environmental assessment	Remember the four Ps of marketing: • Product • Price • Place • Promotion What are the customer needs? Who is the competition? Do you have the right testing menu, equipment, and facilities? Do you have enough personnel? Do you have adequate financial resources? Do you know what it costs to do a laboratory test (test cost analysis)?
Define your customer segments	Physicians, nurses, dentists, other health care providers Other hospital laboratories, physician office laboratories (POLs) Insurance companies Colleges, universities, and other schools Nursing homes, home health agencies, and clinics Veterinarians and other animal health care facilities Researchers, pharmaceutical companies, clinical trials Identify unique socioeconomic and/or ethnic groups. Look for population shifts and location (urban, rural, suburban).
Process	Develop a sales/marketing plan and team. Set goals. Ensure infrastructure (courier service, LIS capabilities, customer service personnel, etc.) is adequate. Develop additional test menu items. Educate laboratory personnel in customer service. Support and maintain existing client services. Find advertising/public relations resources.
How to market	Review test menu for comprehensive services (niche testing, esoteric testing, other unique services that could be provided to an eclectic group). Place advertisements. Develop brochures, specimen collection manuals, and other customer-related material. Develop website. Attend/participate in community health forums. Identify specific target customers: • Other hospital laboratories, independent laboratories, reference laboratories • College/school infirmaries, health clinics, county laboratory facilities (preemployment, drug screening) • Nursing homes, extended care facilities, drug/alcohol rehabilitation centers, correctional facilities • Physician offices, groups, and specialties (pediatrics, dermatology, family medicine, etc.)

LIS, Laboratory information system.

TABLE 1-3
Quality Management: Traditional Versus TQM Thinking

Traditional Thinking	TQM Thinking
Acceptable quality	Error-free quality
Department focused	Organization focused
Quality as expense	Quality as means to lower costs
Defects by workers	Defects by system
Management-controlled worker	Empowered worker
Status quo	Continuous quality improvement
Manage by intuition	Manage by fact
Intangible quality	Quality defined
We versus they relationship	Us relationship
End-process focus	System process
Reactive systems	Proactive systems

and safe physical environment, and to create a good management team. A key study from 1999 by the IOM (Institute of Medicine, 2000) is often referred to when quality health care issues and medical error rates are addressed. This study concluded that 44,000 to as many as 98,000 Americans die each year because of medical errors (Kohn et al, 1999; Silverstein, 2003). Among those errors, 50% were failure to use appropriate tests, and of those, 32% were failure to act on test findings and 55% were due to avoidable delays in rendering a diagnosis. The frequency of laboratory error varies across the vast number of laboratory tests performed annually. In one study, error rates were reported to range from 0.05% to 0.61%, and the distribution of errors among the testing stages was similar, with most (32%-75%) occurring in the preanalytic stage and far fewer (13%-32%) in the analytic stage (Bonini et al, 2002). Preanalytic errors included hemolyzed, clotted, or insufficient samples; incorrectly identified or unlabeled samples; and wrong collection tube drawn and improper specimen storage. Analytic errors included calibration error and instrument malfunction. Postanalytic errors included reports sent to the wrong physician, long turnaround time, and missing reports. Concerted efforts by various governmental regulatory agencies and professional associations have resulted in mandated programs that focus on ways to identify errors and to prevent them.

Total quality management (TQM) and *continuous quality improvement* (CQI) have been standard approaches to quality leadership and management for over 30 years (Deming, 1986; Juran, 1988). TQM is a systems approach that focuses on teams, processes, statistics, and delivery of services/products that meet or exceed customer expectations (Brue, 2002). CQI is an element of TQM that strives to continually improve practices and not just meet established quality standards. Table 1-3 compares traditional quality thinking versus TQM. TQM thinking strives to continually look for ways to reduce errors ("defect prevention") by empowering employees to assist in solving problems and getting them to understand their integral role within the greater system ("universal responsibility").

Two other tools often used to improve quality throughout the health care industry are Six Sigma and Lean. While these processes developed independently, the key ideas and techniques are often combined in the methodology of Lean Six Sigma. Six Sigma is a performance improvement program, the goal of which can be summarized by the mantra "improvement by eliminating process variation": improved performance, improved quality, improved bottom line, improved customer satisfaction, and improved employee satisfaction. Six Sigma is a structured process based upon statistics and quantitative measurements through which process defects or errors are analyzed, potential causes are identified, and improvements are implemented. A defect is anything that does not meet customer requirements—for example, a laboratory result error, a delay in reporting, or a quality control problem. The sigma (σ), or standard deviation, expresses how much variability exists in products or services. By decreasing process variation and thus shrinking the standard deviation or sigma, you can increase the number of sigma that fit between the mean and a predetermined performance limit or between the upper and lower performance limits of a process. Thus a 6σ process is characterized by less variation than a 4σ or 1σ process; it is more tightly controlled and more likely to produce satisfactory results that fall within established performance limits.

Within the Six Sigma process, defects are generally measured per million opportunities (DPMO). If a laboratory sends out 1000 reports and finds that 10 are reported late, it has a 1% defect rate; this is equivalent to 10,000 DPMO. The goal of Six Sigma is to reduce the number of defects to near zero. Thus one sigma represents 691,463 DPMO, or a yield (i.e., percentage of products without defects) of only 30.854%, whereas the goal of Six Sigma is to reach 3.4 DPMO, or a 99.9997% yield (Brue, 2002). Most organizations operate at or near four sigma (6210 DPMO). To put this in perspective, per the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act (CLIA) of 1988 guidelines, most proficiency testing (PT) requires an 80% accuracy rate. This translates to 200,000 defects per million tests, or 2.4 sigma. Six Sigma practices can be applied to patient care and safety, providing a tool for meeting process improvement needs (Riebling & Tria, 2008). Examples, based on College of American Pathologists (CAP) Q-Probes and Q-Tracks programs, show the outcomes of applying Six Sigma to some common performance quality indicators. In these studies, the median variance (50th percentile) for test order accuracy was 2.3%, or 23,000 DPMO; patient wristband error was 3.13%, or 31,000 DPMO; blood culture contamination was 2.83%, or 28,300 DPMO; and the pathology discrepancy rate was 5.1%, or 51,000 DPMO (Berte, 2004). By lowering defects, quality of care is improved and cost savings are realized by eliminating waste (e.g., supplies and materials for reruns), unnecessary steps, and/or staff time (Sunyog, 2004). By some estimates, the cost of doing business is

TABLE 1-4
Six Sigma Steps

Six Sigma Step	Example
Define project goal or other deliverable that is critical to quality.	Emergency department results in less than 30 minutes from order
Measure baseline performance and related variables.	Baseline performance: 50% of time results are within 30 minutes, 70% within 1 hour, 80% within 2 hours, etc. Variables: Staffing on each shift, order-to-laboratory receipt time, receipt-to-result time, etc.
Analyze data using statistics and graphs to identify and quantify root cause.	Order-to-receipt time is highly variable because samples are not placed in sample transport system immediately and samples delivered to laboratory are not clearly flagged as emergency.
Improve performance by developing and implementing a solution.	Samples from emergency department are uniquely colored to make them easier to spot among routine samples.
Control factors related to the improvement, verify impact, validate benefits, and monitor over time.	New performance: Results available 90% of time within 30 minutes

BOX 1-3
Quality System Essentials

1. Organization
2. Personnel
3. Documents and records
4. Facilities and safety
5. Equipment
6. Purchasing and inventory
7. Information management
8. Occurrence management
9. Assessments—internal/external
10. Process improvement
11. Customer service
12. Process control

CLSI, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

reduced by 25% to 40% in moving from 3 sigma to 6 sigma performance. An example of the Six Sigma process is provided in Table 1-4.

Lean is a system for reducing waste ("nonvalued activities") in production or manufacturing processes. Developed from principles used by the Toyota Corporation, to improve quality and efficiency in automobile production, the Lean system has been applied to production methods in a wide variety of industries, including the clinical laboratory. Lean utilizes a variety of techniques, including 5S (Sort, Set in order, Shine, Standardize, and Sustain), and PDCA (Plan, Do, Check, and Act) to reduce costs by identifying daily work activities that do not directly add to the delivery of laboratory services in the most efficient or cost-effective ways. A Lean laboratory utilizes fewer resources, reduces costs, enhances productivity, promotes staff morale, and improves the quality of patient care (Rutledge, 2010). Lean directly addresses the age-old concept of "that's the way we always did it" and looks for ways to improve the process. Lean practices can be very broad in nature or unique to a single laboratory work area by focusing on work flow actions in performing specific tasks, procedures, or other activities accomplished by critically reviewing each step in the process to determine where inefficiencies can be eliminated. Some changes require minimal resources and can be accomplished relatively quickly. Examples include relocating analytic equipment to an area that would require fewer steps, thus improving turnaround time; consolidating test menus to fewer instruments, eliminating the expense of maintaining multiple instruments and supplies; placing pipettes, culture plates, and so on in easy-to-access areas; and reallocating staff to maximize use and minimize wasteful downtime. While some Lean and Six Sigma projects can rapidly improve performance, sustained gains generally require changes in organizational culture, future monitoring, and efforts to reinforce systemic changes (Zarbo, 2012).

Many laboratories are taking a more focused and stringent approach to quality system management. In a cooperative effort, the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) established guidelines that reflect the highest level of quality. The ISO 15189:2007 has been adopted by CAP in an effort to improve patient care through quality laboratory practices. A laboratory that meets or exceeds these guidelines can be CAP-certified, indicating a high level of confidence in the quality of services provided by that laboratory. In a similar fashion, the CLSI has created 12 Quality System Essentials (Box 1-3) based on ISO standards. Each of these 12 areas serves as a starting point in establishing a quality system that covers pretesting, testing, and posttesting operations. Quality Systems Management ultimately dispels the concept of "good enough" and promotes one of "it can always be done better."

HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGEMENT

Recruiting, hiring, training, and retaining qualified personnel have become major challenges for today's manager. Over the past 20 to 30 years, almost 70% of accredited Medical Technology programs have closed, resulting in a 22% reduction in the number of graduating students. In recent surveys, the average vacancy rate for staff medical technologists was 4% to 8% (Garcia et al, 2013), with an anticipated employment growth rate of 22% (U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, 2014). The need to compete with other professions has necessitated implementation of more creative recruitment incentives such as offering competitive salaries and comprehensive benefits and ensuring a nonhostile work environment. Today's job market is volatile and draws from around the world; thus a greater understanding of cultural, ethnic, and gender-related traits is necessary to properly evaluate and attract a pool of competent employees who will meet the needs of the laboratory and contribute to accomplishing anticipated goals (Kurec, 2014b).

Labor accounts for 50% to 70% of a laboratory's costs, so any new or replacement position must be justified. It is appropriate to review the authority level, experience and education required, and responsibilities of a position and compare them with any related changes in technology, required skills, or other factors. To ensure that the position is still necessary and covers responsibilities at an appropriate level, ask the question "If the position remained unfilled or downgraded, how would that impact the department or the hospital?" For example, could a particular position be refilled by an entry-level technologist or a laboratory aide without compromising patient care or creating other staffing hardships?

Once the justification review is complete, a criterion-based job description should be developed (Kurec, 2014b). The criterion-based job description should focus on roles and not on specific tasks, because the latter may require frequent changes, depending on operations. A criterion-based job description includes title, grade, and qualifications (including certification or licensure) and clearly identifies responsibilities, accountability, and internal and external organizational relationships. This provides a clear guide to expectations for both employee and employer.

The recruiting and hiring process requires understanding current and potential future needs of the laboratory, finding a qualified individual, and being aware of current local and federal hiring guidelines. During the interview process, an employer must restrict questions to what can be legally asked, yet still be able to gain insight as to whether the position is the right fit for both parties. Also important is developing a sensitivity toward gender and generational or cultural differences that may be misinterpreted or misunderstood during the selection process (Kurec, 2011).

LABORATORY DESIGN AND SERVICE MODELS

Laboratory services are provided in many different ways and can be thought of as a continuum from point-of-care tests producing immediate answers to highly sophisticated laboratory tests that may take days to complete. Ease of Internet access has added a level of transparency to how health care is provided to the public and, in particular, provides a better understanding of laboratory testing through websites such as www.webmd.com and www.labtestsonline.org. This has increased awareness of what tests are available and what they mean and has increased the expectancy that laboratories will provide high-quality and timely services. To meet this demand, laboratories have been redesigned for efficiency, accessibility, safety, and reliability. Laboratories have changed their internal design from a very compartmentalized environment to a more centralized one, where traditional laboratory sections have been consolidated. When appropriate, regionalized laboratories have been developed to

perform specialty or complex testing, thus capitalizing on expertise, equipment, and materials. In many institutions, laboratory testing has been pushed out to point-of-care testing (POCT) to shorten turnaround time for critical results and enhance convenience for both patients and caregivers. These internal and external organizational changes have fostered a greater awareness of the importance of laboratory services and how they contribute to the continuum of care.

The *functional design of a laboratory* and its relationship to other testing sites within a facility have evolved from one with discrete hematology, chemistry, microbiology, and blood bank sections to one where boundaries have been obscured. In an effort to lower costs and respond more rapidly to clinical needs, laboratories have employed both highly automated "core" facilities and distributed testing at peripheral stat laboratories and/or POCT sites. Based on current technology, tests that once were performed in separate laboratory sections are now performed on a single testing platform (single analyzer), on a workcell (two or more linked instruments), or with the use of total laboratory automation (workcell with preanalytic and postanalytic processing). In conjunction with improved preanalytic sample handling (e.g., bar coding, automated centrifuges, decapper), use of highly accurate analyzers and timely postanalytic activities (e.g., reporting laboratory results via networked computer systems, the Internet, autofaxing) further contributes to enhancing the quality of services provided. These configurations are discussed further in Chapters 2 and 5.

Regionalization is a consolidation process on a grand scale. In the "hub and spoke" model, a single, core laboratory serves as the hub, providing high-volume, routine testing. One or more other laboratories act as the spokes, thus consolidating certain functions into one highly specialized laboratory. For example, a single laboratory may focus on providing just microbiology, virology, parasitology, mycology, or other related services. In constructing such a unique site, the redundancy of procuring technical expertise, expensive biohazard hoods, negative pressure rooms, clinical and molecular testing equipment, and other materials can be minimized. Similar opportunities may exist for other laboratory sections such as cytogenetics, molecular diagnostics, cytology, or histocompatibility. Establishing regionalized laboratory systems can require significant up-front resources, appropriate space requirements, and commitment from senior personnel from all institutions involved to make this work. In hospital settings, a stat or rapid-response laboratory would be necessary to handle urgent test requests. Challenges to consider in implementing and succeeding with this model include timely specimen transportation, resistance to change, personnel issues, morale issues, "lost identity" of the laboratory, and union problems.

The design of facilities is important regardless of the type of laboratory and may best be accomplished by implementing Six Sigma/Lean techniques to ensure the highest level of productivity. Location of the specimen processing area, patient registration and data entry, specimen testing workflow, short- and long-term storage, and laboratory information system (LIS) connectivity requirements must be considered. Spatial requirements in relationship to other hospital services (proximity to emergency department, intensive care units, and surgical operating suite) should be viewed as a multidisciplinary process. Robotics, pneumatic tubes, computers, handheld devices, and fax machines are the new tools used in modern laboratories and must be accounted for in the design plans. Electrical power, temperature/humidity controls, access to water (distilled/deionized), drainage sources, and air circulation/ventilation issues must be considered for access and adequate quantity. Regulatory compliance codes must be reviewed carefully and implemented appropriately to ensure that safety, ergonomic, and comfort needs are met (Box 1-4). Recently, concerns about reducing environmental impact have come into play (Kurec, 2009). Many municipalities and hospitals offer strong incentives, or even mandates, to "go green" by purchasing alternative, nontoxic chemicals, recycling used electronic products, integrating paperless reporting, and generally raising staff awareness of energy-wasting practices. To ensure that one meets local, state, and federal codes, a qualified architect who has had experience in designing clinical laboratories should be consulted at the beginning of relocation or renovation designs. This minimizes costly change orders and maximizes on-time start-up of the new facility.

BOX 1-4

Laboratory Physical Design Considerations

In developing a needs assessment, identify space for offices, personal facilities, storage, conference/library area, and students.

Routinely review all floor plans and elevations for appropriate usage, and ensure space and function are related; handicapped accessibility may be required.

Develop and use a project scheduler to ensure on-time progress.

Fume hoods and biological safety cabinets must be located away from high-traffic areas and doorways that might cause unwanted air current drafts.

Modular furniture allows for flexibility in moving or reconfiguration of the laboratory according to current and anticipated needs; conventional laboratory fixtures may be considered in building depreciation, whereas modular furniture may not.

Consider HVAC requirements to ensure proper temperature (68° F to 76° F), humidity (20% to 60%), air flow (12 air exchanges/hour); extremes in any one area can adversely affect patients, staff, and equipment.

Base cabinets (under laboratory counters) provide 20% to 30% more storage space than suspended cabinets.

Noise control in open laboratories may be obtained by installing a drop ceiling. Installation of utilities above a drop ceiling adds to flexibility in their placement.

In general, space requirements are 150 to 200 net square feet (excludes hallways, walls, custodial closets, etc.) per FTE, or 27 to 40 net square feet per hospital bed.

Rooms larger than 100 square feet must have two exits; corridors used for patients must be 8 feet wide, and those not used for patients must be 3 feet 8 inches wide.

An eyewash unit must be within 100 feet of work areas; hands-free units are preferred.

Suggested standard dimensions in planning and designing a laboratory:

- Laboratory counter width: 2 feet 6 inches
- Laboratory counter-to-wall clearance: 4 feet
- Laboratory counter-to-counter clearance: 7 feet
- Desk height: 30 inches
- Keyboard drawer height: 25 to 27 inches
- Human body standing: 4 square feet
- Human body sitting: 6 square feet
- Desk space: 3 square feet

Data from Painter, 1993; Mortland, 1997.
FTE, Full-time equivalent; *HVAC,* heating, ventilating, and air conditioning.

REGULATION, ACCREDITATION, AND LEGISLATION

Clinical laboratories are among the most highly regulated health care entities (Table 1-5). Understanding these laws is necessary to avoid legal or administrative repercussions that may limit a laboratory's operations or shut it down completely. To operate (and receive reimbursement for services), laboratories must be licensed and often accredited under federal and/or state requirements. Although all pathologists must be state-licensed physicians, 13 states currently require laboratory personnel licensure—a key consideration when attempting to hire technical staff (Box 1-5).

At the federal level, laboratory activities are regulated under CLIA '88 (42 CFR 493; http://www.cms.hhs.gov/clia/). The CLIA program and its standards are administered by the Division of Laboratory Services within the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS). Before CLIA '88, no consistent federal regulatory standards had been provided for most laboratories, only sporadic state initiatives that carried various levels of authority and oversight of laboratory activities. CLIA '88 was enacted in response to concerns about the lack of national laboratory quality standards. Minimum standards are enforced by the federal government or by their designees that have received "deemed status," reflecting standards equivalent to or stricter than those put forth by CLIA. Most of the clinical laboratories in the United States are CLIA-certified to perform testing on human samples, indicating that the laboratory meets personnel, operational, safety, and quality standards based on test complexity (Box 1-6). Detailed, current guidelines may be found at http://wwwn.cdc.gov/clia/regs/toc.aspx.

The Laboratory Compliance Program was mandated by Congress (*Federal Register* 63[163], Aug. 24, 1998) in response to concerns from the CMS about fraud and abuse of payments. This program requires that laboratories that receive payment for services from any federal agency must have policies addressing the medical necessity for tests ordered, ensuring accurate billing for testing, and promoting a standard of conduct to be adopted by laboratory employees. Failure to have an active program could cause a laboratory to be excluded from participating with CMS and could lead to significant financial and legal penalties. Consider, for example, the patient mix that may be encountered over the next decade or so. The largest population segment at this time will be the baby-boomer generation (about 78 million). It has been estimated that those 65 years and older will utilize five times as many laboratory tests per year as are currently

TABLE 1-5
Laboratory Regulations and Their Significance

1983	**Prospective Payment System** for Medicare patients established payment based on diagnosis-related groups (DRGs). Hospitals are paid a fixed amount per DRG, regardless of actual cost, thereby creating an incentive to discharge patients as soon as medically possible. For inpatients, laboratories become cost centers instead of revenue centers (Social Security Amendments P.L. 98-21).
1984	**Deficit Reduction Act** (P.L. 93-369): Established outpatient laboratory fee schedule to control costs; froze Part B fee schedule.
1988	**Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act of 1988 (CLIA '88)** (amended 1990, 1992): Established that all laboratories must be certified by the federal government with mandated quality assurance, personnel, and proficiency testing standards based on test complexity. Until this time, the federal government regulated only the few laboratories conducting interstate commerce or independent or hospital laboratories that wanted Medicare reimbursement. CLIA applies to all sites where testing is done, including physicians' offices and clinics.
1989	**Physician Self-Referral Ban** (Stark I; P.L. 101-239): Prevents physicians from referring Medicare patients to self-owned laboratories. **Ergonomic Safety and Health Program Management Guidelines:** Establish OSHA guidelines for employee safety.
1990	**Three-Day Rule** initiated by CMS: Payment for any laboratory testing done 3 calendar days before admission as an inpatient is not reimbursed because testing is considered to be part of the hospital stay (Omnibus Reconciliation Act); directs HHS to develop an outpatient DRG system. **Occupational Exposure to Hazardous Chemicals in Laboratories:** Establishes OSHA guidelines to limit unnecessary exposure to hazardous chemicals.
1992	**Occupational Exposure to Blood-Borne Pathogens:** Establishes OSHA guidelines to limit unnecessary exposure to biological hazards.
1996	**Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act:** Directs how health care information is managed. This law protects patients from inappropriate dispersion (oral, written, or electronic) of personal information and is the basis for many of the privacy standards currently in place.
1997	**OIG Compliance Guidelines** for clinical laboratories: Help laboratories develop programs that promote high ethical and lawful conduct, especially regarding billing practices and fraud and abuse.
2001	**CMS National Coverage Determinations:** Replaced most local medical review policies used to determine whether certain laboratory tests are medically necessary and therefore reimbursable. Before this, each Medicare intermediary had its own medical necessity guidelines.
2003	**Hazardous Material Regulations:** Deal with shipment of blood and other potentially biohazardous products (DOT).
2009	**HITECH Act:** Contains incentives related to adoption of health care information technology and the electronic health record (EHR); set goal of "meaningful use" for EHR adoption; improves privacy and security protections available under HIPAA, as well as enforcement and penalties for noncompliance.

CMS, Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services; *DOT,* U.S. Department of Transportation; *HHS,* U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; *HIPAA,* Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act; *OIG,* Office of Inspector General; *OSHA,* Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

BOX 1-5
States Requiring Laboratory Personnel Licensure

California	Hawaii
Georgia	Montana
Louisiana	New York
Nevada	Puerto Rico
North Dakota	Tennessee
Rhode Island	West Virginia
Florida	

BOX 1-6
CLIA Categories Included and Excluded

Test categories (based on analyst/operator and complexity to run test)
- Waived (e.g., blood glucose, urine pregnancy)
- Moderate complexity
- High complexity

Not categorized (because they do not produce a result)
- Quality control materials
- Calibrators
- Collection kits (for HIV, drugs of abuse, etc.)

Not currently regulated (by CLIA)
- Noninvasive testing (e.g., bilirubin)
- Breath tests (e.g., alcohol, *Helicobacter pylori*)
- Drugs of abuse testing in the workplace
- Continuous monitoring/infusion devices (e.g., glucose/insulin)

Data from Sliva, 2003.
CLIA, Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus.

used (Terry, 2009). This will have an impact not only on test volume requirements but also on the kind of testing appropriate for this age set. Physicians must now select the most appropriate tests and avoid the "shotgun" approach to test-ordering practices. Ordering the right tests must be justified as medically necessary and must meet evidence-based medicine protocols (Wians, 2009).

The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) was enacted in 1996, providing standards that protect the confidentiality of health information, while allowing interchange of information in appropriate circumstances (45 CFR 164). Various rules have been implemented that have a direct impact on the laboratory and include the use and disclosure of protected health information (PHI). PHI includes any oral, written, electronic, or recorded information such as date of birth, Social Security number, address, phone number, or other patient identifier. Access to this information is restricted on a "need-to-know" basis as described in an employee's job description/title. Failure to adhere to these rules can result in significant fines and, in blatant cases of abuse, prison time. The HITECH Act, enacted under the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009, enhanced some of the privacy and security requirements established in HIPAA, as well as penalties for noncompliance. HITECH also included new rules for public notification following data breaches involving PHI and for accounting of PHI disclosures. In October 2014, an additional modification of HIPAA requirements became effective. While in the past, CLIA-regulated labs were not permitted to provide patients direct access to their lab results, HIPAA-covered entities that are laboratories are now subject to the same obligations as other health care providers with respect to providing patients access to their PHI. Generally access must be provided within 30 days of the request and provided for as long as the information is maintained.

A variety of other government agencies and nongovernment organizations directly or indirectly influence laboratory operations. These agencies address laboratory issues and other business practices and provide regulations concerning human resource practices, transportation of specimens, environmental protection, and interstate commerce, to name just a few (Tables 1-6 and 1-7). The responsibilities assumed by these agencies represent federal, state, and professional guidelines that are designed to protect the public and employees from shoddy laboratory testing practices or unnecessary exposure to biological, chemical, or radioactive hazards. These guidelines also ensure the availability of quality blood products, access to laboratory testing as needed, and a safe work environment for employees. Professional associations play an important part in establishing guidelines and often lobby for their acceptance as standard of care practice by governmental agencies. For example, Table 1-8 provides suggested time limits for record and specimen retention based on CAP guidelines.

SAFETY

The clinical laboratory exposes staff, and potentially the public, to a variety of hazards, including infectious patients, infectious patient specimens, and potentially hazardous chemicals and equipment. All health care facilities should have policies that address routine job-related exposures to biological, chemical, and radiation hazards, as well as ergonomic/environmental hazards, fire safety, act-of-God occurrences (tornadoes,

TABLE 1-6
Laboratory-Related Governmental Agencies

CDC	**Centers for Disease Control and Prevention** is under the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) and provides oversight of public health and safety, including the laboratory (www.cdc.gov).
CMS	**Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services** (formerly known as HCFA) oversees the largest health care program in the United States, processing more than 1 billion claims per year. Medicare (see Chapter 12) provides coverage to approximately 40 million Americans over the age of 65, some people with disabilities, and patients with end-stage renal disease, with a budget of $309 billion (2004). Medicaid provides coverage to approximately 50 million low-income individuals through a state–federal partnership that costs $277 billion (2004). CMS sets quality standards and reimbursement rates that apply to the laboratory and are often used by other third-party payers (www.cms.hhs.gov).
DOT	**U.S. Department of Transportation** has the responsibility of regulating biohazardous materials that include blood and other human products. Laboratory specimens sent to reference laboratories must be packaged per guidelines set by this agency (www.dot.gov).
EPA	**Environmental Protection Agency** sets and enforces standards for disposal of hazardous laboratory materials, such as formalin, xylene, and other potential carcinogens (www.epa.gov).
EEOC	**Equal Employment Opportunity Commission** oversees and enforces Title VIII dealing with fair employment practices related to the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and the Equal Employment Opportunity Act of 1972. Hiring of laboratory staff falls under the same rules as most businesses (www.eeoc.gov).
FDA	**U.S. Food and Drug Administration** is part of HHS and regulates the manufacture of biologics (such as blood donor testing and component preparation) and medical devices (such as laboratory analyzers) and test kits through its Office of In-Vitro Diagnostic Device Evaluation and Safety. FDA inspects blood donor and/or component manufacturing facilities irrespective of other regulatory agencies and/or accrediting organizations (www.fda.gov).
HHS	**U.S. Department of Health and Human Services** oversees CMS, OIG, and FDA.
NARA	**National Archives and Records Administration** provides a number of databases, including access to the *Federal Register,* where laboratory and other regulations are published (www.gpoaccess.gov/fr/index.html).
NRC	**Nuclear Regulatory Commission** develops and enforces federal guidelines that ensure the proper use and operation of nonmilitary nuclear facilities. Laboratory tests that use radioactive materials (like radioimmunoassays) must adhere to guidelines set by this agency (www.nrc.gov).
NIDA	**National Institute on Drug Abuse** regulates standards for performing and maintaining appropriate quality control for drugs of abuse testing (www.nida.nih.gov).
NIOSH	**National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health** is a part of HHS and provides research, information, education, and training in the field of occupational safety and health. NIOSH makes recommendations regarding safety hazards but has no authority to enforce them (www.cdc.gov/niosh/homepage.html).
NIH	**National Institutes of Health** is an agency of HHS and is a world leader in medical research. It publishes a variety of clinical practice guidelines, some of which are applicable to the laboratory, such as those for diabetes and lipid testing (www.nih.gov).
NIST	**National Institute of Standards and Technology** is a branch of the Commerce Department and has contributed to the development of many health care products. In addition, it has developed standards for calibration, weights and measures, and the International System of Units (www.nist.gov).
OIG	**Office of the Inspector General** is part of HHS and is responsible for auditing, inspecting, and identifying fraud and abuse in CMS programs such as laboratory testing. The focus of OIG is usually noncompliance with reimbursement regulations such as medical necessity (www.oig.hhs.gov).
OSHA	**Occupational Safety and Health Administration** is part of the U.S. Department of Labor and develops and enforces workplace standards to protect employees' safety and health. Recommendations from OSHA include guidelines addressing blood-borne pathogens, chemical safety, phlebotomies, latex gloves, ergonomics, and any other potentially hazardous situation that may be found in the workplace (www.osha.gov).
State Departments of Health	**State Departments of Health** vary in the extent to which they regulate laboratories. Some states, like New York, license all laboratories and oversee mandatory proficiency testing and laboratory inspection programs; others do neither. New York and Washington, D.C., have Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act "deemed status."
DHS	**Department of Homeland Security:** Identifies, regulates, and may inspect high-risk chemical facilities and radiation sources (including blood irradiators) that may be risks for terrorism; may require certification for non-U.S. citizens working in the laboratory.

hurricanes, floods, etc.), and epidemic emergency preparedness plans. Laboratories are obligated to identify hazards, implement safety strategies to contain the hazards, and continually audit existing practices to determine whether new ones are needed. Situations such as the H1N1 flu outbreak of 2009 and the Ebola crisis of 2014 required plans to meet personnel and patient safety, staffing shortages, and to manage the infected patient population (Satyadi, 2009; Sharp, 2015). Frequent safety reviews and disaster drills and general employee awareness help maintain a safe work environment.

Good safety practices benefit patients and employees and the bottom line of the laboratory. Injuries and harmful exposures can negatively affect the laboratory financially, by reputation due to bad press, and through potential lawsuits, lost workdays and wages, damage to equipment, and poor staff morale. An injured person may be absent for an indefinite period and often cannot work at peak efficiency upon return. During this time off, the workload has to be absorbed by existing staff or through additional temporary services. Careful planning and compliance with the laws will minimize undesired outcomes. Although inexperience may be a cause for some accidents, others result from ignoring known risks, pressure to do more, carelessness, fatigue, or mental preoccupation (failure to focus attention or to concentrate on what is at hand). A number of strategies may be used to contain hazards, including the use of work practice controls, engineering controls, and personal protective equipment (Table 1-9). The most effective safety programs use all three strategies.

BIOLOGICAL HAZARDS

Biological hazards expose an unprotected individual to bacteria, viruses, parasites, or other biological entities that can result in injury. Exposure occurs from ingestion, inoculation, tactile contamination, or inhalation of

TABLE 1-7
Laboratory-Related Nongovernmental Organizations

AABB	Formerly known as **American Association of Blood Banks**, AABB is a peer professional group that offers a blood bank accreditation program that can substitute for (but coordinate with) a CAP inspection. It has CLIA deemed status (www.aabb.org).
ASCP	**American Society for Clinical Pathology** is the largest organization for laboratory professionals and offers certification for various specialties (www.ascp.org).
CAP	**College of American Pathologists** offers the largest proficiency survey program in the United States and has a peer-surveyed laboratory accreditation program that has CLIA deemed status. CAP accreditation is recognized by The Joint Commission as meeting its laboratory standards (www.cap.org).
CLSI	**Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute** (formerly NCCLS) is a peer professional group that develops standardized criteria regarding laboratory practices; accrediting and licensing entities often adopt these as standards (e.g., procedure manual format) (www.clsi.org).
COLA	COLA (originally the **Commission on Office Laboratory Accreditation**) is a nonprofit organization sponsored by the American Academy of Family Physicians, the American College of Physicians, the American Medical Association, the American Osteopathic Association, and CAP. It has CLIA deemed status, and its accreditation is recognized by The Joint Commission. It was originally organized to provide assistance to physician office laboratories (POLs), but it has recently expanded its product line to other services (www.cola.org).
TJC	**The Joint Commission** (formerly known as Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations) is an independent, not-for-profit entity that accredits nearly 17,000 health care organizations and programs in the United States based on a comprehensive set of quality standards. It has CLIA deemed status and may substitute for federal Medicare and Medicaid surveys; it also fulfills licensure requirements in some states and general requirements of many insurers. TJC usually surveys the laboratory as part of an overall health care facility survey (www.jointcommission.org/).

CLIA, Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act.

TABLE 1-8
Suggested Guidelines for Record and Specimen Retention*

Record/Specimen Type	Retention
Requisitions	2 years
Accession logs	2 years
Maintenance/instrument logs	2 years
Quality control records	2 years
Blood bank donor/receipt records	10 years
Blood bank deferred donor records	Indefinitely
Blood bank patient records	10 years
Blood bank employee signatures/initials	10 years
Blood bank QC records	5 years
Clinical pathology test records	2 years
Serum/CSF/body fluids	48 hours
Urine	24 hours
Blood/fluid smears	7 days
Microbiology stained slides	7 days
Wet tissue	2 weeks
Surgical pathology (bone marrow) slides	10 years
Paraffin blocks/slides	10 years
Cytology slides	5 years
FNA slides	10 years
Reports (surgical/cytology/nonforensic)	10 years
Cytogenetic slides	3 years
Cytogenetic reports/images	20 years
Flow cytometry plots/histograms	10 years
Retired Laboratory Procedures	2 years

*College of American Pathologists, Northfield, Ill. (March 2009) and/or CLIA regulations (42 CFR 293); check with other organizations (like AABB) or local regulatory agencies for current requirements that may differ from those above.

infectious material from patients or their body fluids/tissues, supplies or materials they have been in contact with or contaminated needles, or by aerosol dispersion. The potential also exists for inadvertent exposure to the public through direct contact with aerosolized infectious materials, improperly processed blood products, and inappropriately disposed of waste products.

The spread of hepatitis B virus (HBV), hepatitis C virus (HCV), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and tuberculosis (TB) has focused the responsibility on each health care organization to protect its employees, patients, and the general public from infection. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) have provided guidelines for safe handling of body fluids and human tissues for all patients, beginning with Universal Precautions in the 1980s (CDC Recommendations and Reports, 1989). OSHA defines *occupational exposure* as "reasonably anticipated skin, eye, mucous membrane, or percutaneous contact with blood or other potentially infectious materials that may result from the performance of an employee's duties" (29 CFR, 1910.1030, 1992). Blood, all other body fluids, and any unfixed tissue samples are considered potentially infectious for various blood-borne pathogens. In the laboratory, individuals should avoid mouth pipetting; consumption of food; smoking; applying cosmetics; potential needlestick situations; and leaving unprotected any skin, membranes, or open cuts. Aerosol contamination may be due to inoculating loops (flaming a loop), spills on laboratory counters, expelling a spray from needles, and centrifugation of infected fluids. The CDC has refined its recommendations for Universal Precautions on several occasions, including in 1987 with a set of rules known as Body Substance Isolation (Siegel et al, 2007), and in 1996, with an approach known as Standard Precautions; yet, as recent experience with Ebola demonstrates, laboratory safety, especially with respect to biologic hazards, requires constant vigilance and the flexibility to adopt evolving recommendations.

Although many laboratories require the wearing of gloves when performing phlebotomies, OSHA strongly recommends that gloves be used routinely as a barrier protection, especially when the health care worker has cuts or other open wounds on the skin, anticipates hand contamination (biological or chemical), performs skin punctures, or is receiving phlebotomy training (OSHA, 1991). All other phlebotomy access procedures may require the use of gloves as determined by local or institutional policy. Employees must wash their hands after removal of gloves, after any contact with blood or body fluids, and between patients. Gloves should not be washed and reused because microorganisms that adhere to gloves are difficult to remove (Doebbeling et al, 1988). Masks, protective eyewear, or face shields must be worn to prevent exposure from splashes to the mouth, eyes, or nose. All protective equipment that has the potential for coming into contact with infectious material, including laboratory coats, must be removed before leaving the laboratory area and must never be taken home or outside the laboratory (such as during lunch or personal breaks). Laboratory coats must be cleaned onsite or by a professional. It is helpful for all employees to know what areas (offices, conference rooms, lounges, etc.) and equipment (telephones, keyboards, copy machines, etc.) are designated as laboratory work areas because they can be potentially contaminated. Avoid contamination by not wearing soiled gloves when in these areas or when using nonlaboratory equipment. Use of medical safety devices will help reduce the 600,000 to 800,000 needlestick injuries each year (NIOSH, 1999; Sharma et al, 2009). Box 1-7 outlines some common materials that can be used for decontamination (CLSI, 2005).

CHEMICAL HAZARDS

All clinical laboratories are mandated by OSHA to develop and actively follow plans that protect laboratory workers from potential exposure to hazardous chemicals. To minimize the incidence of chemically related occupational illnesses and injuries in the workplace, OSHA published its *Hazard Communication Standard* (29 CFR 1910.1200, 2012) and *Chemical Hygiene Plan* (29 CFR 1910.1450, 1993), requiring the manufacturers of chemicals to evaluate the hazards of the chemicals they produce and to develop hazard communication programs for employees and other users who are exposed to hazardous chemicals (Box 1-8). These OSHA standards are based on the premise that employees have the right to know what chemical hazards they are potentially exposed to and what protective measures the employer needs to take to minimize hazardous exposure. Many

TABLE 1-9
Laboratory Hazard Prevention Strategies

Work practice controls (general procedures/ policies that mandate measures to reduce or eliminate exposure to hazard)	Hand washing after each patient contact Cleaning surfaces with disinfectants Avoiding unnecessary use of needles and sharps and not recapping Red bag waste disposal Immunization for hepatitis Job rotation to minimize repetitive tasks Orientation, training, and continuing education No eating, drinking, or smoking in laboratory Warning signage
Engineering controls (safety features built into the overall design of a product)	Puncture-resistant containers for disposal and transport of needles and sharps Safety needles that automatically retract after removal Biohazard bags Splash guards Volatile liquid carriers Centrifuge safety buckets Biological safety cabinets and fume hoods Mechanical pipetting devices Computer wrist/arm pads Sensor-controlled sinks or foot/knee/ elbow-controlled faucets
Personal protective equipment (PPE; barriers that physically separate the user from a hazard)	Nonlatex gloves Isolation gowns Masks, including particulate respirators Face shields Protective eyewear (goggles, safety glasses)
Emergency equipment	Chemical-resistant gloves; subzero (freezer) gloves; thermal gloves Hearing protection (earplugs or earmuffs) Eyewash station Safety shower Fire extinguisher Laboratory spill kit First aid kit

BOX 1-7
Common Decontamination Agents

Heat (250° C for 15 minutes)
Ethylene oxide (450-500 mg/L @ 55° C to 60° C)
2% Glutaraldehyde
10% Hydrogen peroxide
10% Formalin
5.25% Hypochlorite (10% bleach)
Formaldehyde
Detergents
Phenols
Ultraviolet radiation
Ionizing radiation
Photo-oxidation

states have developed individual guidelines and regulations mandating that employers develop and implement safety and toxic chemical information programs for their workers that are reviewed with all employees each year (e.g., the Right-to-Know Law in New York State [State of New York, 12 NYCRR 820]).

BOX 1-8
Chemical Hazard Communications Plan

1. Develop written hazard communication program.
2. Maintain inventory of all chemicals with chemical and common names, if appropriate.
3. Manufacturer must assess and supply information about chemical or physical hazards (flammability, explosive, aerosol, flashpoint, etc.).
4. Employers must maintain Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) in English.
5. MSDS must list all ingredients of a substance greater than 1%, except for known carcinogens if greater than 0.1%.
6. Employers must make MSDS available to employees upon request.
7. Employers must ensure that labels are not defaced or removed and must post appropriate warnings.
8. Employers must provide information and training ("right-to-know").
9. Employers must adhere to Occupational Safety and Health Administration permissible exposure limit, threshold limit, or other exposure limit value.
10. Designate responsible person(s) for the program.

ERGONOMIC HAZARDS

OSHA presented guidelines (29 CFR 1910.1030, 1992) to address ergonomic hazards in the workplace and to assist employers in developing a program to prevent work-related problems that primarily include cumulative trauma disorders. This is a collective group of injuries involving the musculoskeletal and/or nervous system in response to long-term repetitive twisting, bending, lifting, or assuming static postures for an extended period of time. These injuries may evolve from environmental factors such as constant or excessive repetitive actions, mechanical pressure, vibrations, or compressive forces on the arms, hands, wrists, neck, or back. Human error may also be a causative factor when individuals push themselves beyond their limits or when productivity limits are set too high. Although the ergonomics program standard was passed into law, the regulation was removed from the CFR in 2001, in lieu of industry-specific guidelines promulgated by OSHA. In the absence of a laboratory-specific guideline, employers retain a responsibility to provide a hazard-free workplace under the general duty clause of United States Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 U.S.C. § 654, 5(a)1).

Among laboratory personnel, cumulative trauma disorders are usually related to repetitive pipetting, keyboard use, or resting their wrists/arms on sharp edges, such as a laboratory counter. These actions can cause carpal tunnel syndrome (compression and entrapment of nerve from wrist to hand), tendonitis (inflammation of tendon), or tenosynovitis (inflammation or injury to synovial sheath) (Scungio & Gile, 2014). Awareness and prevention are essential in managing these disorders. Work practice and engineering controls, in addition to various hand, arm, leg, back, and neck exercises, may reduce these problems (Prinz-Lubbert & Giddens, 1996). The costs of implementing programs to help employees understand and avoid ergonomic hazards can be financially justified. Back injuries are the second most common cause for employee absenteeism after the common cold and can cost employers up to $16,000 per episode (Prinz-Lubbert & Giddens, 1996).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Bonini P, Plebani M, Ceriotti F, et al: Errors in laboratory medicine, *Clin Chem* 48:691–698, 2002.
A review on the literature on laboratory errors, including an analysis of the types and/or volume of preanalytic, analytic, and postanalytic errors, and transfusion errors.

Garcia LS: *Clinical laboratory management*, ed 2, Washington, 2014, ASM Press.
A comprehensive review of laboratory management practices, including financial, operational, human resources, and marketing management.

Lifshitz MS, De Cresce RP: Strategic planning for automation. In Kost GJ, editor: *Clinical automation, robotics, and optimization*, New York, 1996, John Wiley & Sons, pp 471–496.
An overview of the laboratory strategic planning process, with special emphasis on how to assess the environment, define objectives, and audit operations and technology.

Nigon DL: *Clinical laboratory management*, New York, 2000, McGraw-Hill.
Covers fundamental principles of laboratory management and provides many practical examples and case studies that help illustrate concepts.

Snyder J, Wilkinson DS: *Management in laboratory medicine*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1998, Lippincott.
Comprehensive reference dealing with all aspects of laboratory management, including leadership, human resource management, marketing, safety, and so on.

REFERENCES

Berte LM: Patient safety: Getting there from here—Quality management is the best patient safety program, *Clin Leadersh Manag Rev* 18(6):311–315, 2004.

Brue G: *Six Sigma for managers*, New York, 2002, McGraw-Hill, pp 1–50.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Recommendations and reports: Guidelines for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis B virus to health care and public-safety workers, *MMWR* 38(S-6), 1989.

42 CFR 493, Title 42—Public Health, Chapter IV—Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, Department of Health and Human Services Part 493—Laboratory requirements (Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act), 1990.

29 CFR 1910.1030, Occupational safety and health standards: Subpart, toxic and hazardous substances, bloodborne pathogens, 1992.

29 CFR 1910.1450, Occupational safety and health standards: Subpart, toxic and hazardous substances, occupational exposure to hazardous chemicals in laboratories, 1993.

29 CFR 1910.1200, Occupational safety and health standards: Subpart, toxic and hazardous substances, hazard communication standard, 2012.

45 CFR 164, Title 45 Public welfare: Subtitle A: Department of Health and Human Services, Security and Privacy, 2015.

CLSI: Protection of laboratory workers from occupationally acquired infections; approved guideline. 3rd ed. CLSI document M29-A3. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2005.

Deming EW: *Out of crisis*, Cambridge, Mass., 1986, MIT, Center for Advanced Engineering Study.

Doebbeling BN, Pfaller MA, Houston AK, et al: Removal of nosocomial pathogens from the contaminated glove, *Ann Intern Med* 109:394, 1988.

Federal Register 63 (163): Laboratory compliance program, Aug. 26, 1998.

Garcia E, Ali A, Choudhry S: The American Society for Clinical Pathology's 2012 vacancy survey of clinical laboratories in the United States, *Lab Med* 44(1):e1–e18, 2013.

Hanson C, Plumhoff E: Test utilization and the clinical laboratory, Mayo Clinic: Mayo Medial Laboratories, 2012, http://www.mayomedicallaboratories.com/articles/communique/2012/05.html.

Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health (HITECH) Act, Title XIII of Division A and Title IV of Division B of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 (ARRA), P.L. No. 111-5, 123 Stat. 226 (Feb. 17, 2009), codified at 42 U.S.C. §§ 300jj et seq.; §§ 17901 et seq.

Institute of Medicine (IOM): *Medicare laboratory payment policy*, 2000, National Academy of Sciences, pp 1–57.

Juran J: *Juran on planning for quality*, New York, 1988, The Free Press.

Kohn LT, Corrigan JM, Donaldson MS, editors: *To err is human. Building a safer health system*. Committee on Quality of Health Care in America. Institute of Medicine, Washington, DC, 1999, National Academy Press.

Kurec AS: The role and function of the clinical laboratory. In Kurec AS, Schofield S, Watters MC, editors: *The CLMA guide to managing a clinical laboratory*, ed 3, Wayne, Pa., 2000, CLMA, pp 1–20.

Kurec AS: Don't waste my time. A guide to commonsense meetings, *Clin Leadersh Manag Rev* 18:273–281, 2004.

Kurec AS: It's not easy being green, *Clin Leader Manage Rev* 23(2):E1–E6, 2009.

Kurec AS: The new laboratory manager—Recruiting & retaining staff, *Clin Leader Manage Rev* 25(1):16–21, 2011.

Kurec AS: Employee selection. In Garza LS, editor: *Clinical laboratory management*, Washington, DC, 2014a, ASM Press, pp 295–308.

Kurec AS: Strategic planning without strategic thinking will fail, *Clin Leader Manage Rev* 28(1):16–21, 2014b.

Mortland KK: Facility redesign for your future laboratory requirements, *Clin Lab Manage Rev* 11(3):145–152, 1997.

NIOSH Alert: *Preventing needlestick injuries in health care settings*, Washington, DC, 1999, NIOSH. Pub 2000-108.

12 NYCRR 820, State of New York, Official compilation of codes, rules, and regulations of the state of New York: Toxic substances information, training, and education, 2004.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration regulations CPL 2.244B, Glove wearing, 1991.

Painter P: Laboratory design workshop, Clinical Laboratory Management Association annual meeting, 1993.

Prinz-Lubbert P, Giddens J: Working smarter with ergonomics, *Adv Admin Lab* 5:18–24, 1996.

Riebling NB, Tria N: Laboratory toolbox for process improvement. Six Sigma at North Shore–Long Island Jewish Health System, *Lab Med* 39(1):7–14, 2008.

Rutledge J: Application of the Toyota production system improves core laboratory operations, *Am J Clin Pathol* 133:23–31, 2010.

Satyadi C: Is your healthcare institution ready for 2009 H1N1 flu this winter? Factor considerations in the institution flu preparedness plan for 2009 H1N1 virus, *Clin Leader Manage Rev* 23(3):E1–E7, 2009.

Scungio D, Gile TJ: *Complete guide to laboratory safety*, Marblehead, Mass., 2014, HCPro.

Sharma GK, Gilson MM, Nathan H, et al: Needlestick injuries among medical students: Incidence and implications, *Acad Med* 84(12):1815–1821, 2009.

Sharp SE: ASM offers "enhanced precautions" for handling specimens from suspected Ebola patients, *Med Lab Observ* 47(1):30–31, 2015.

Siegel JD, Rhinehart E, Jackson M, et al, and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee: 2007 Guideline for isolation precautions: Preventing transmission of infectious agents in healthcare settings. http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/pdf/isolation2007.pdf.

Silverstein MD: *An approach to medical errors and patient safety in laboratory sciences—A white paper*, Atlanta, 2003, Quality Institute Conference, April 13–15, pp 1–23.

Sliva C: Update 2003: FDA and CLIA. IND roundtable 510(k) workshop, April 22, 2003.

Sunyog M: Lean management and Six-Sigma yield big gains in hospital's immediate response laboratory, *Clin Leader Manage Rev* 18:255–258, 2004.

Terry M, editor: *Lab industry strategic outlook: Market trends & analysis 2009*, Washington G2, 2009, Newark, N.J., pp 5–97.

UnitedHealth Center for Health Reform & Modernization: Personalized medicine: Trends and prospects for the new science of genetic testing and molecular diagnostics, working paper 7, March 2012. http://www.unitedhealthgroup.com/~/media/uhg/pdf/2012/unh-working-paper-7.ashx.

U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics: Occupational outlook handbook, 2008-09 edition: Clinical laboratory technologists and technicians. http://www.bls.gov/oco/ocos096.htm#outlook. (last accessed 11/20/09). 2014.

29 U.S.C. § 654, Title 15: Occupational safety and health: Duties of employers and employees.

Wians FH: Clinical laboratory tests: Which, why, and what do the results mean?, *Lab Med* 40(2):105–113, 2009.

Zarbo RJ: Creating and sustaining a lean culture of continuous process improvement, *Am J Clin Pathol* 138: 321–326, 2012.

CHAPTER 2

OPTIMIZING LABORATORY WORKFLOW AND PERFORMANCE

Mark S. Lifshitz

UNDERSTANDING WORKFLOW, 11
Data Collection Techniques, 11
Workflow Analysis, 14

UNDERSTANDING TECHNOLOGY, 16
The Role of Technology: Principles and Pitfalls, 16

OPTIMIZING PERFORMANCE, 17

SELECTED REFERENCES, 19

KEY POINTS

- An effective testing process requires integration of preanalytic, analytic, and postanalytic steps.
- An understanding of workflow is a fundamental prerequisite to any performance optimization strategy.
- A variety of techniques should be used to collect workflow data. These include sample and test mapping, tube analysis, workstation analysis, staff interviews, and task (process) mapping.
- Though technology is a critical component of every laboratory, it is only a tool to reach a goal. Technology alone does not improve performance and workflow; its success or failure depends on how it is implemented and whether it was truly needed.
- Consolidation, standardization, and integration are key strategies that can optimize workflow using concepts such as Six Sigma to achieve Lean processes. Managing test utilization may also change overall operational needs and workflow patterns.

The clinical laboratory is a complex operation that must smoothly integrate all three phases of the testing process: preanalysis, analysis, and postanalysis. Preanalysis refers to all the activities that take place before testing, such as test ordering and sample collection. The analysis stage consists of the laboratory activities that actually produce a result, such as running a sample on an automated analyzer. Postanalysis comprises patient reporting and result interpretation. Collectively, all of the interrelated laboratory steps in the testing process describe its workflow; this, in turn, occurs within the overall design of a laboratory operation as described in its policies and procedures.

The steps in the testing process can be generally categorized according to testing phase, role (responsibility), or laboratory technology (Fig. 2-1). Note that the testing process and the grouping of steps vary somewhat from one facility to another. Depending on the laboratory service model and technology used, some steps may fall into one category or another. For example, centrifugation may be performed in a physician office (preanalysis) or in the laboratory as part of a total automation workcell (analysis). Depending on the technology selected, a laboratory may automate some or many of the steps identified in Figure 2-1. Information technology is the essential "glue" that binds these steps. A more detailed discussion of each testing phase is presented in Chapters 3 to 7. This chapter explores the interrelationship of laboratory workflow, technology, and performance.

UNDERSTANDING WORKFLOW

To fully understand a laboratory's workflow, one must audit all phases of the testing process. Only then can one determine how to optimize performance and to what degree technologic or nontechnologic solutions are needed. Table 2-1 provides some of the issues to consider.

Data are of paramount importance in any workflow analysis. Although laboratory data are rather easy to produce because they are readily available from automated analyzers and information systems, they may not be complete, valid, or in the format required. Because laboratory data play a central role in laboratory decision making (e.g., determining which analyzer to acquire), they have to be accurate; otherwise, one may make wrong downstream decisions that can have a negative impact on operations. One must understand how data are collected by each of these systems and whether they are valid. For instance, do the test statistics pulled from an analyzer provide information on how many patient reportable tests are done, or do they count how many total tests are done (with quality control, repeats, etc.)? Are panel constituents counted individually, is only the panel counted, or are both counted? Are the "collect" times accurate on turnaround time reports that measure "collect to result"? Or are samples indicated as "collected" on a patient floor before they are actually collected, thereby making the turnaround time appear longer than it really is? Ultimately, there is no substitute for carefully reviewing data to determine whether they make sense. Sometimes, this requires manually verifying data collected electronically or directly observing a work area. For example, it may be necessary to observe when samples arrive in the laboratory to determine how long a delay exists before staff assign a receipt time in the computer. By doing so, one can determine the accuracy of the sample receipt time.

DATA COLLECTION TECHNIQUES

Many types of data can be used to assess workflow. Although some of the fundamental data analysis techniques are described in this chapter, they may have to be supplemented with additional data collection to analyze unique characteristics of a laboratory's operation. It is always useful (some would say imperative) to check that the data collected reflect actual laboratory experience rather than anomalies created by unusual workflow patterns or laboratory information system (LIS) programs or definitions.

Sample and Test Mapping

One fundamental data collection technique is to analyze the distribution of samples and tests over time (Fig. 2-2). Depending on what is mapped, the time interval can be a day (e.g., hour increments for frequently ordered tests like those in general chemistry) or a week (e.g., daily increments for tests batched several times a week). The goal is to identify overall workload patterns to assess whether resources are appropriately matched to needs and whether turnaround time or other performance indicators can be improved. It is important that the workload measured reflects actual experience. For example, if phlebotomists remotely mark specimens "received" or the laboratory actually orders tests in the LIS, the measured workload distribution may not accurately reflect the underlying processes. As part of the exercise, it is also important to map routine samples versus stat ones and to map locations that may have special needs, such as the emergency department. In addition to sample mapping, one should map key tests and the number or "density" of tests per sample. This is of special interest in the chemistry section. Outpatient samples typically have greater test density than inpatient ones, so an equal number of inpatient and outpatient samples may be associated with different inpatient and outpatient workloads. In automated chemistry, sample mapping more closely reflects staffing needs in that much of the labor is associated with handling and processing tubes rather than actually performing the assays. In contrast, test mapping more closely reflects instrument needs (i.e., the test throughput it needs to complete its workload in a timely manner). By mapping samples and tests and relating them to turnaround time and staffing, a

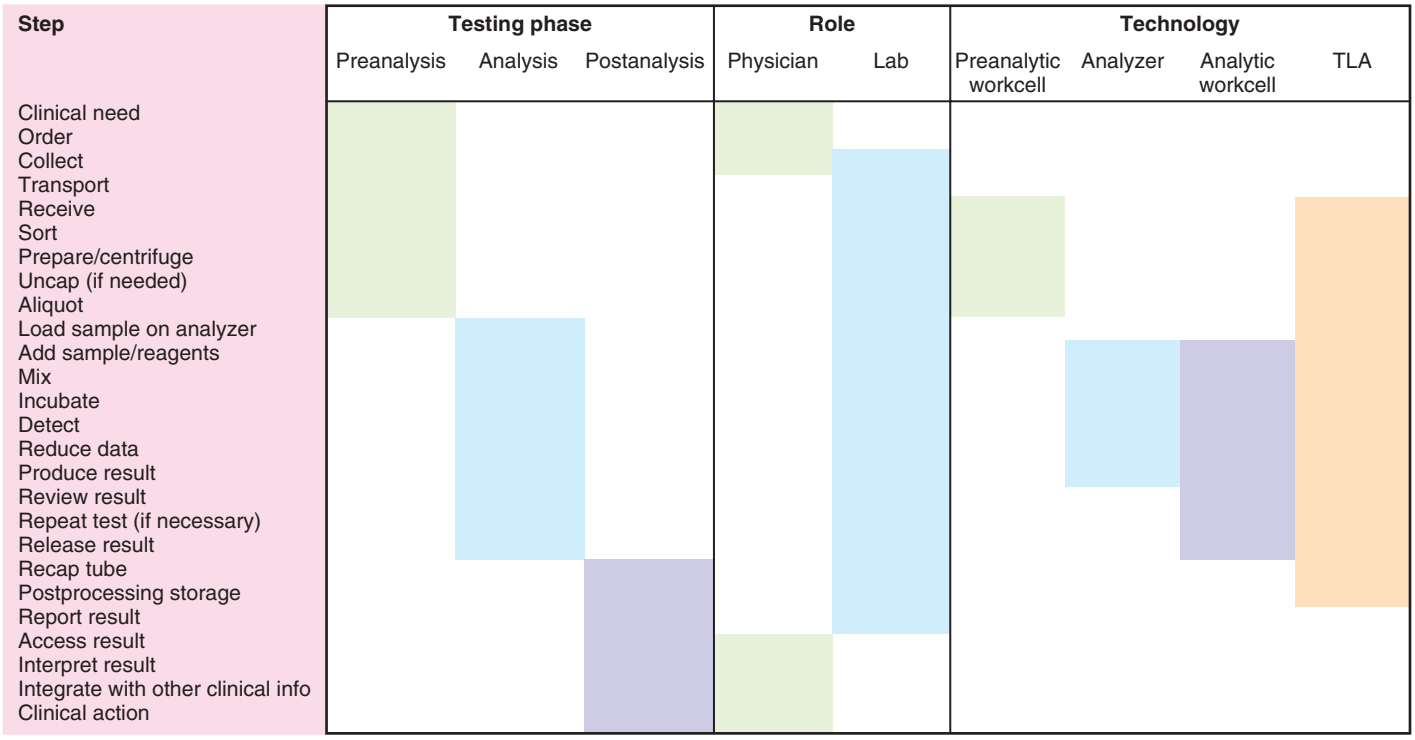


Figure 2-1 **Laboratory testing process.** Note that the steps can be categorized according to testing phase, role (responsibility), or laboratory technology, as indicated by the shading. *TLA,* Total laboratory automation.

TABLE 2-1
Issues to Consider When Auditing Operations

Test ordering	Where are orders placed—in the laboratory, patient unit, or office? Are inpatient orders handled differently from outpatient ones? Is there a paper or electronic requisition?
Sample collection	Who collects the samples—laboratory or physician? When are they collected—all hours or just in the AM? Are samples bar coded at the site of collection or in the laboratory? How are the labels generated? Is there a positive patient ID system? Does the label contain all the information needed to process the sample?
Transportation	How are samples delivered—by messenger, automatic carrier transport, or a combination? Do all laboratories participate? Are all patient care areas served? How are stats handled? What is their impact? Is there a separate system for emergency department and intensive care units?
Sample receipt	Is there a central receiving area? How are samples distributed to each laboratory? Does physical layout promote efficient sample flow? How are stat samples distinguished from routine ones? How are problem samples handled? Are samples sorted by workstation or department?
Sample processing	Are samples centrifuged centrally or in distributed locations? Are stats handled differently? Are samples aliquoted? If so, where? Is a separate sample drawn for each workstation?
Testing	How many workstations are used? How does capacity relate to need? How are samples stored and retrieved? How long are samples kept? When and why are samples repeated? Are repeat criteria appropriate?
Reporting	How are results reported? Electronically? By remote printer? How are stat and critical values reported, and are criteria appropriate? How many calls for reports does the laboratory receive, and why? How are point-of-care tests reported?

laboratory can identify production bottlenecks and alter workflow to achieve better outcomes. Very frequently, laboratories discover that delays are less the result of instrument issues per se and more the result of workflow patterns that are not matched to instrument capabilities.

Tube Analysis

Part of the laboratory's daily work is related to processing collection tubes or containers. "Tube labor" includes sorting and centrifuging; aliquoting; racking, unracking, loading, and unloading samples on analyzers; retrieving tubes for add-on tests; performing manual dilutions or reruns (depending on instrument); and storing tubes. Although the time needed to perform a tube task may seem insignificant, it has to be repeated many times per day, and this can add up to a substantial amount of time. For example, at an average of 10 seconds per tube, it will take a laboratory 3.3 hours to sort 1200 tubes per day. Automation can often reduce this labor, but redesigning the workflow may be a less expensive and more efficient alternative. To the extent that a laboratory reduces the number of tubes and/or the number of tasks associated with each tube, it can reduce tube labor and positively influence workflow and staffing needs. Reducing tube labor is one of the main goals of consolidating chemistry and immunodiagnostic tests into a single analyzer or workcell. Sample mapping provides information about how many containers are received within a specified interval; tube analysis helps to analyze how many additional "tube-related" tasks have to be done. Tube analysis includes the number of containers other than tubes (e.g., fingerstick collections that may require special processing or aliquoting) and the number of reruns (i.e., repeats) needed as the result of instrument flags and/or laboratory policies (Table 2-2).

Workstation Analysis

A typical laboratory is divided into stations for allocating work and scheduling staff. Some workstations consist of a variety of tasks or tests that are grouped together for the purpose of organizing work for one or more staff. For example, all manual or semiautomated chemistry tests may be grouped into a workstation, even though testing might actually be performed at different sites or using different equipment around the laboratory. More typically, a workstation is one physical location (e.g., a fully automated

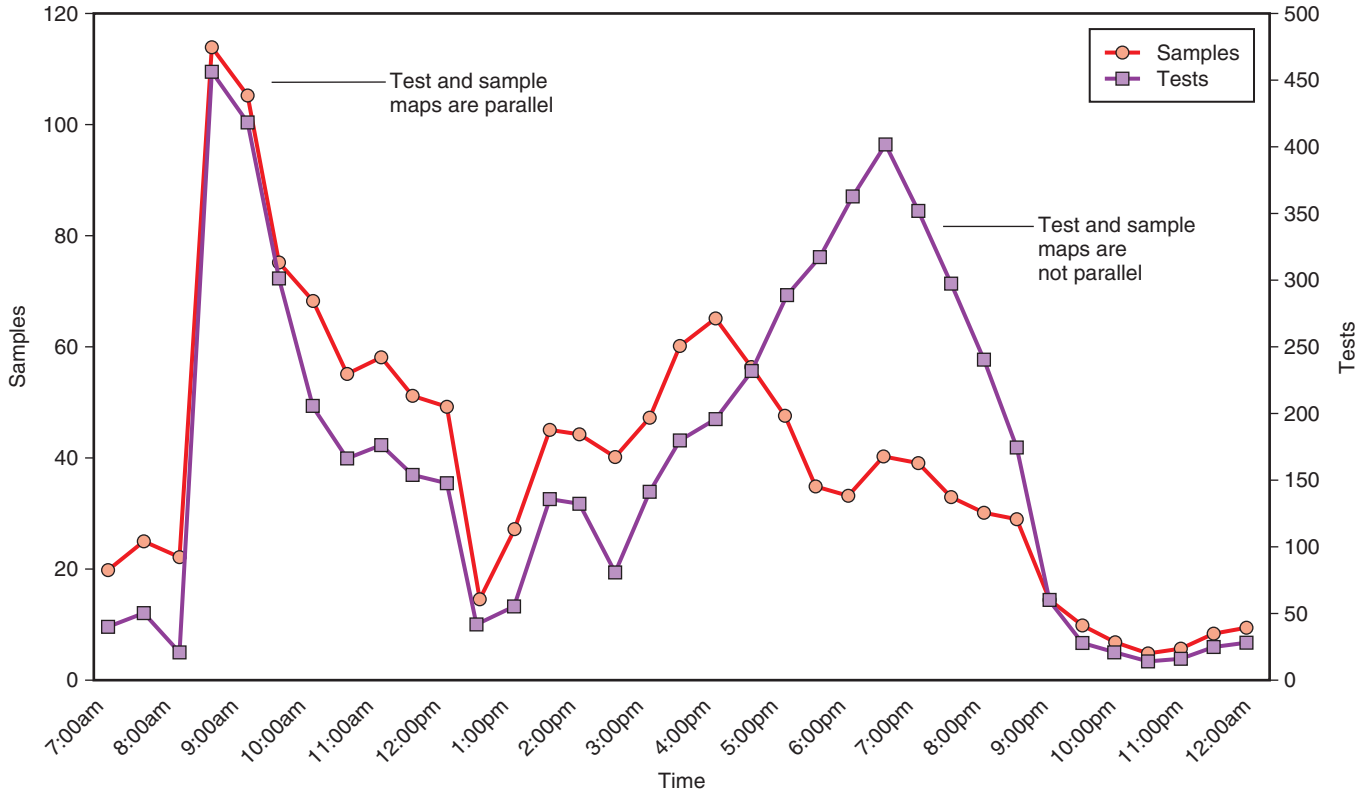


Figure 2-2 **Sample and test mapping.** Note that the morning volume peak is due to inpatients, and the density is roughly four tests per sample. The evening peak is largely due to outpatients, and density is far greater—about 10 tests per sample. Test density fluctuates during the day; thus both sample mapping and test mapping are necessary to accurately evaluate workload.

TABLE 2-2
Chemistry Tube Analysis

	Analyzer A	Analyzer B
Total tubes run	**500**	**500**
Mechanical error	13	15
Dilution	7	20
Clot/low volume	20	30
Total instrument-related reruns	*40 (32% of total reruns)*	*65 (65% of total reruns)*
Delta check	62	21
Panic value	23	14
Total laboratory criteria–related reruns	*85 (68% of total reruns)*	*35 (35% of total reruns)*
Total reruns	**125**	**100**
% reruns	**25%**	**20%**

Chemistry "reruns" are caused by different factors and can be a source of nonproductive technologist time and/or turnaround time delays. Most Analyzer A reruns are related to overly tight limits for delta checks and panic values that flag too many test results for technologist review and rerun. Most Analyzer B reruns are related to instrument flags caused by a narrow linear range for many methods and a large sample volume requirement per test. A nontechnologic solution (i.e., altering laboratory rerun/review criteria to reduce the number of tubes flagged for rerun) benefits Analyzer A; however, only a technologic solution (i.e., a new analyzer) can lower the number of reruns in Analyzer B.

BOX 2-1
Instrument Audit

- Instrument model
- Vendor
- Date acquired
- Method of acquisition
- Purchased
- Leased
- Reagent rental
- Service cost per year
- Supplies cost per year
- Reagents
- Controls, calibrators
- Consumables
- Total test volume per year
- Patient samples
- Controls and calibrators
- Test menu
- Hours of operation
- Days
- Shifts
- Number of staff trained
- Operating mode
- Batch versus continuous
- Primary system versus backup

analyzer or group of analyzers such as hematology cell counters, a chemistry workcell or an automated track that includes preanalytic processing, analytic modules and postanalytic storage). Regardless of how a laboratory is organized, it is important to understand where, when, and how the work is performed. This is the goal of a workstation analysis.

Instrument Audit

A key component of any workstation is equipment. By performing an instrument audit (Box 2-1), one can better understand how each analyzer is used, its associated costs, and what potential opportunities might exist to improve performance. The operating characteristics of each instrument should be detailed as part of this process. Examples include the maximum number of samples that can be processed per hour, the number of samples that can be loaded at a single time, and the number of reagent containers and assays that can be stored onboard. Instrument throughput (tests/hour) should also be studied by conducting timing studies and reviewing various statistical reports that can be extracted from the instrument and the LIS. Most chemistry analyzers are test-based systems—that is, they perform a specific number of tests per hour, irrespective of how many tests are ordered on each sample. On the other hand, some of these systems are affected by test mix (e.g., the relative proportion of electrolytes, general chemistries, and immunoassays), and this is the major reason that actual throughput experienced in the laboratory may be lower than what is claimed by the vendor. The latter may assume an ideal test mix that cannot be achieved in a given laboratory. It is important to understand how test mix affects an analyzer's throughput and whether work can be redistributed in a way that enhances throughput. An instrument that was well suited for the laboratory's test mix and volume when initially acquired may no longer provide adequate throughput given a change in test mix. It is

important to ensure that a vendor's throughput analysis is based on the laboratory's actual test mix and not on a standard used by the vendor. It may turn out that the number of instruments proposed may not meet the laboratory's needs.

It is equally important to receive a clear and concise definition of up-time from the vendor for the instrument(s). This definition should be simple. If the laboratory cannot report patient results, the instrument is down. Some vendors consider an instrument down only if the vendor is called for service. This may mean the percent of up-time by the vendor may be valued higher than the actual up-time experienced by the laboratory. It is important to include this definition in a contract if a laboratory expects a vendor to uphold desired operational performance levels necessary to consistently maintain patient care support.

Last, labor considerations should not be ignored. Must the instrument be attended at all times, or does it have walkaway capability? This information can be very useful in identifying processing bottlenecks and redesigning workflow.

Test Menu

A careful review of the laboratory's test offerings should be done during a workstation analysis. Are the tests performed appropriate for the facility, given the volume and frequency of test analysis? Just because a laboratory can perform a test does not mean that it should. For example, if a test is performed only once or twice a week and requires considerable equipment, training, or labor input, it may make more sense to send it to a reference laboratory where it is performed more frequently. Sometimes, the best way to improve turnaround time and lower the cost of a test is not to perform it. Unfortunately, this option can be easily overlooked if one focuses only on how to improve the way existing tests are performed, instead of analyzing how to best meet clinician needs.

Processing Mode and Load Balancing. These can affect both the cost and the timeliness of testing. Samples can be processed in batches or run continuously as they arrive in the laboratory. When grouped into batches, samples are run at specific intervals (e.g., once a shift, once a day, every other day) or whenever the batch grows to a certain size (e.g., every 20 samples). Batch processing is often less expensive than continuous processing because the setup costs (quality control, labor, etc.) are spread over many specimens (see Table 12-2); however, batch processing produces less timely results. Sometimes, batch processing is a limitation of the instrument that is used. A batch analyzer cannot be interrupted during operation; thus a newly arrived sample cannot be processed immediately if the instrument is already in use. Most currently available general chemistry and immunoassay analyzers are random access analyzers that continuously process samples. These analyzers can randomly access samples and reagents and can accommodate an emergency sample at any time. Automation is discussed more fully in Chapter 5. Continuous processing is facilitated by load balancing, a technique that distributes work evenly among analyzers and spreads testing over a longer period to better match instrumentation throughput. For example, outpatient work, which does not require a rapid turnaround time, can be sequenced into the workflow during off hours. This improves testing efficiency, reduces the labor content of individual tests, and reduces throughput requirements (and capital cost) of instruments. In addition, if significant outreach testing (which does not typically require a rapid turnaround) is performed, some or all of this volume can be shifted to times that the laboratory is not as busy. The feasibility of load balancing can be evaluated only if accurate test mapping and tube analysis are performed.

Interviews

Data collection is not complete without interviewing staff. This exercise provides an opportunity for staff to participate in analyzing workflow and improving performance. It also identifies issues that would not be readily apparent from data collection alone. For example, many hospitals require electronic order entry on patient care units. Although this practice may eliminate paper requisitions, laboratory staff members may still be placing orders for "add-on" tests that are called into the laboratory (or added electronically), processing special requests, and troubleshooting incorrect orders, unacceptable samples, or misaligned bar code labels applied by nonlaboratory staff during sample collection. This residual work is likely to be transparent because it probably will not appear on reports, logs, or computer printouts. Thus "computer-generated orders" may still be associated with considerable manual laboratory labor that may be identified only through interviews.

Interviews are particularly valuable in understanding what occurs outside the laboratory. Test ordering patterns or habits can have a significant impact on a laboratory's ability to meet clinician needs. Visits to patient care units and discussions with nursing unit staff can identify preprocessing improvements that cost little to implement but save considerable money downstream.

Early patient discharge can be a challenging task for hospitals trying to shorten length of stay. A full understanding of the discharge process requires interviewing all related staff. One issue that sometimes emerges is the sample collection time for patients awaiting discharge pending a laboratory result. To avoid delays in providing results for discharge patients, some facilities develop elaborate "stat" systems to collect, identify, and process these samples, as well as report results, during the busiest time of the day: the early morning. Sometimes, dedicated (stat instrument) or new technology (point-of-care device) is used for this purpose. However, one can ensure that results are available in the chart during early-morning clinical rounds by simply collecting laboratory samples from patients on the evening before discharge (Sorita et al, 2014). Thus not all solutions require technology. A careful mix of workflow restructuring and appropriate technology is usually the correct approach and the most cost-effective solution.

Task Mapping

No workflow study is complete without mapping the tasks or processes involved in performing a test (Middleton & Mountain, 1996). A rigorous review will detail every specimen-handling step, each decision point, and redundant activities. Task mapping can be applied to any segment of a laboratory's workflow, whether technical or clerical. A full understanding of the tasks involved usually requires thorough staff interviews, as discussed previously. Task mapping should be an ongoing activity and should also be undertaken whenever one contemplates adding a workstation, test, new technology, or any significant change to a laboratory process. When implementing change, it is important to avoid unnecessary or additional steps that are inadvertently added in the name of "efficiency"; task mapping helps identify these steps. Mapping also helps compare processes before and after change (Fig. 2-3, *A* and *B*).

WORKFLOW ANALYSIS

Workflow analysis assimilates all of the previously discussed data and transforms them into valuable information. This step can be done manually or, as will be described later, using commercially available software for part of the analysis. A comprehensive workstation analysis should identify bottlenecks and highlight areas where improvements are necessary.

How is this done? The easiest way, and one that does not require computer support, is to follow the path of a specimen or group of specimens through the entire process. This should begin at or near the bedside to see how physicians are ordering tests and should proceed to specimen acquisition and delivery to the laboratory. A flow sheet, which follows the sample from initial order to arrival in the laboratory, should be created. A separate task force is usually assigned to the prelaboratory phase because multiple departments and staff are usually involved; the laboratory often has little or no direct control over this critical portion of workflow, especially when nonlaboratory staff collect samples.

Specimen transit through the laboratory should then be documented, noting areas where batch processing occurs. For example, one should identify minimum and maximum centrifugation times for applicable specimens (such as those that have to be aliquoted). If specimens require 10 minutes for loading and spinning, this should not be assumed to be the average time because a sample queue may form during peak periods. Using the sample arrival mapping done in data collection, an average time can be assigned by time of day. If this is done manually, it is best to select a number of key times and average them, if possible. Similarly, one should note whether loading specimens on the analyzer is delayed. Many other examples of physical bottlenecks need to be identified and quantified. It is not always possible to completely eliminate bottlenecks, but it is possible to mitigate their impact through new technology, alternative processing modes (e.g., random access vs. batch processing), and workflow redesign.

Nonphysical bottlenecks should also be identified and quantified. A classic example is the mode of result verification. Batching results for a technologist to review and accept is every bit as much a bottleneck as is waiting for a centrifuge to process a sample. In contrast, LIS autoverification (where results are automatically released on the basis of preset criteria) can reduce test turnaround time without requiring a major reorganization of the laboratory. However, the degree to which autoverification enhances workflow depends on the manner in which it is implemented and the algorithms defined to qualify a result for this feature. This, in turn, may depend on the LIS used.

Many vendors who want to sell automated equipment systems to the laboratory will provide free workflow analysis. They usually have

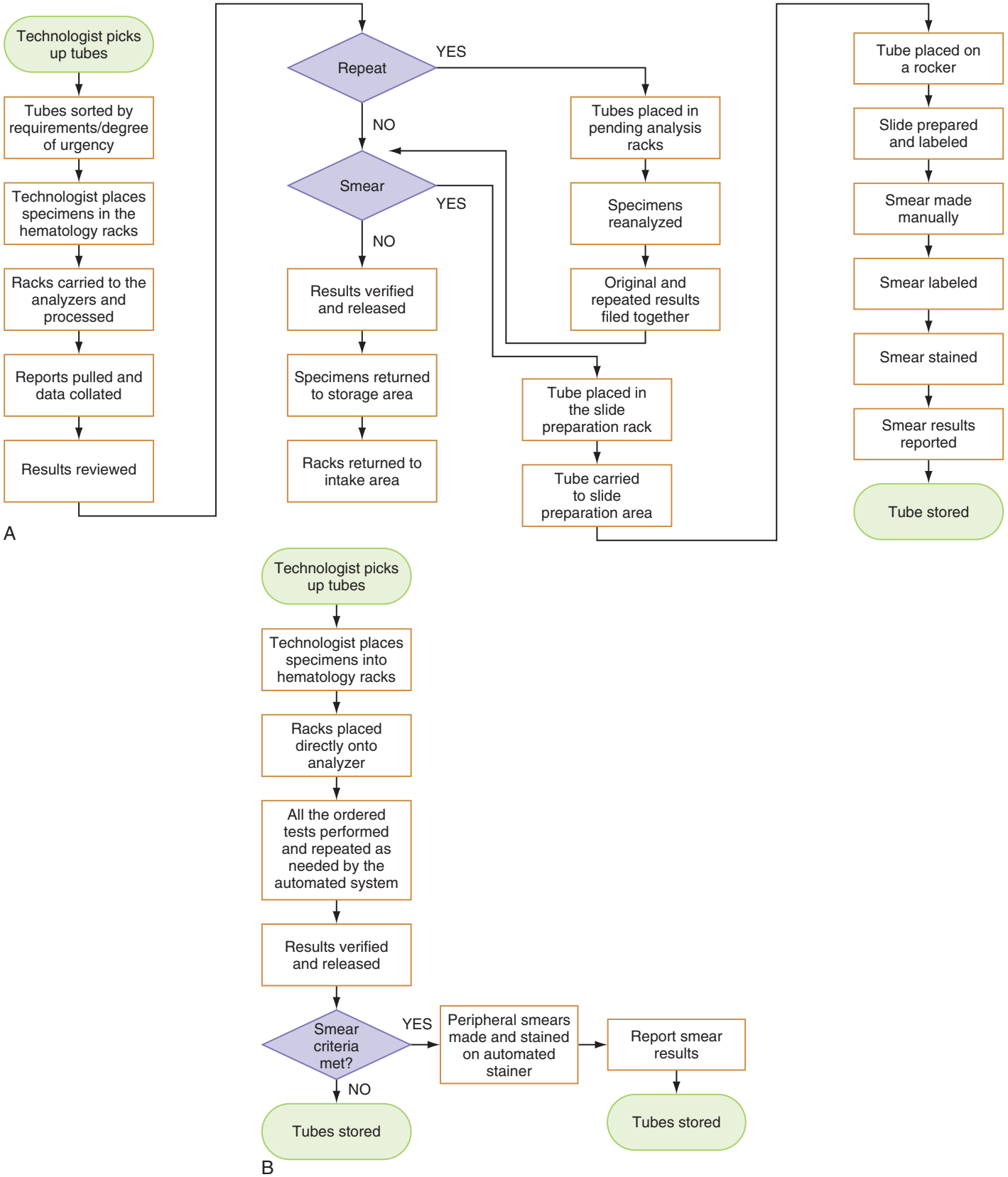


Figure 2-3 **A,** Task mapping: Original workflow for hematology cell counting. **B,** Task mapping: Improved workflow for hematology cell counting subsequent to workcell implementation. Note the reduction in steps as compared with part **A.**

experienced technical staff who do this, and the information can be very helpful. The laboratory will need to provide the necessary data or access to the laboratory for data collection. Together, the vendor and laboratory leadership need to analyze the workflow to identify opportunities to improve operations, which may well involve the vendor's automated system.

Workflow Modeling

Although the analyses discussed earlier are critical to understanding current and proposed workflow designs, they usually provide a somewhat static picture (i.e., each describes a single data element and often how it changes over time). In practice, however, workflow consists of many interrelated variables, and it is difficult to understand (or to evaluate in the

BOX 2-2

Interrelated Variables Simulated by Workflow Software Models

Equipment configuration
Facility design
Labor by shift and day
Throughput
Routine maintenance
Downtime
Sample volume (distribution and peak demand)
Sample container type
Review policy and rerun rates
Batch size

laboratory) how a change in one variable affects another. Further, although workflow studies can be very beneficial, they consume resources that may not be available in every laboratory. To address this need, technology vendors have developed workflow simulations. By using sophisticated workflow modeling software, one can analyze these complex interrelationships to better predict the outcome of a given workflow design (Box 2-2). Workflow modeling can help identify bottlenecks and the impact of staffing changes or different equipment configurations on cost and turnaround time. It can also be used to gain a better understanding of how a given analyzer responds to changes in test volume and test mix. For example, one can simulate the impact of increasing routine test volume on an instrument's turnaround time for stat samples (Mohammad et al, 2004). As with all workflow analyses, however, software modeling must be based on accurate data collection techniques.

Because most simulation programs are proprietary products, they may not allow modeling of all available instruments. Workflow simulation is still a powerful tool, and inferences can be drawn about more efficient processing and testing regardless of the model instrument involved. More important, these programs readily highlight deficiencies in a laboratory's current operations and can point to specific areas where the greatest improvements are achievable.

Pneumatic Tube Transport of Specimens

Many laboratories, especially those in large hospital facilities, use pneumatic tube systems for specimen transport to the laboratory. They can greatly decrease transport time and thus total turnaround time for test results. Some of these systems can be extensive, especially the branching systems that can reach most parts of a hospital. Once a laboratory has a tube system, it becomes very dependent on it, requiring a good service and support system to maintain it. Usually the plant operations or engineering department of the hospital maintains the system on a daily basis. In addition, enough specimen carriers must be available to supply all areas of the hospital in need of specimen transport to the laboratory. It is important to monitor the number of carriers in the system and to order new carriers when existing supplies wear out or "disappear" (it is not uncommon for locations to "stockpile" carriers, at the expense of other locations, to ensure their availability).

UNDERSTANDING TECHNOLOGY

No discussion of workflow is complete without examining the role of technology (De Cresce & Lifshitz, 1988). Laboratory technology refers largely to three functional areas: testing equipment (i.e., analyzers), preanalytic processors, and information technology (IT). Although the former two areas are specific to the laboratory, IT is not, and its design and role are often determined by factors outside the laboratory. For example, the manner in which a laboratory information system is used for data retrieval and reporting (i.e., whether or not physicians directly access the LIS to view results) depends on whether a hospital information system is available to serve this purpose. In the latter case, laboratory data are accessed and reported through a secondary system. Also, the laboratory system may be part of a broader approach or a single IT vendor solution within the health care center and not a standalone product to be selected by the laboratory. Under these circumstances, the technology selected, although optimal for the general institution, may not be optimal for the laboratory. Changes in hospital-wide systems are rarely made to accommodate efficiencies in ancillary services like the laboratory. These systems are primarily geared toward easy access to clinical information by caregivers and accurate billing by the hospital finance department.

BOX 2-3

Breakthrough Technology

Changes fundamental workflow
Consolidates workstations
Saves labor
Improves service
Sets new performance standard
Leads to premium pricing

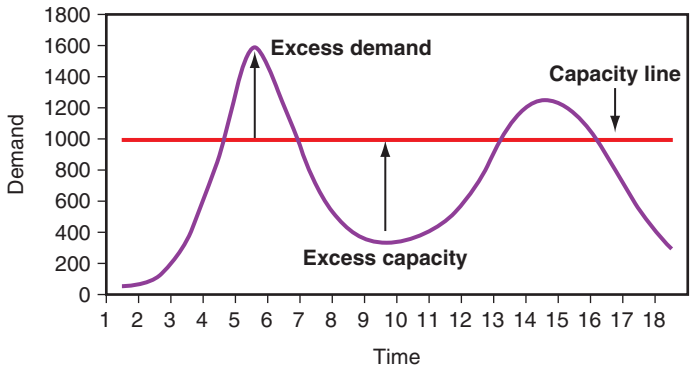


Figure 2-4 Test demand versus instrument capacity. Note that demand exceeds capacity during peak periods, thereby creating backlogs. In many facilities, short backlogs are acceptable. If they are not clinically acceptable, the laboratory should explore ways to more evenly match capacity and demand—for example, by altering blood collection schedules or introducing new work from additional clients. New technology should be the last approach that is considered.

THE ROLE OF TECHNOLOGY: PRINCIPLES AND PITFALLS

Technology has radically changed the clinical laboratory over the past 30 years and continues to be the driving force behind many new developments. Periodically, a breakthrough technology is introduced that revolutionizes laboratory medicine (Box 2-3). Examples include the random access chemistry analyzer, the automated immunodiagnostics system, the chemistry and immunodiagnostics integrated workcell with preanalytic automation, point-of-care testing, and molecular diagnostics. Each change profoundly alters how a laboratory functions and the type of information it provides clinicians. Although breakthrough technologies offer a large potential benefit, they cost more. Over time, a breakthrough technology is adopted by multiple vendors, competition develops, prices fall, and its use becomes widespread among laboratories; in other words, it becomes a current or derivative technology. Early adopters of breakthrough technology often pay more and receive less benefit than those who wait until it becomes a current technology. By thoroughly understanding the role of technology, one can determine how to best use it in the clinical laboratory. The following issues should be considered when evaluating technology.

Is technology needed? Technology is an integral part of a modern laboratory; however, it is not the solution to every problem. Often a nontechnologic solution provides a faster, better, and less expensive workflow approach than a technologic one. Knowing when to introduce a nontechnologic solution instead of a technologic one can mean the difference between a targeted, cost-effective solution and an expensive one that does not fully address the initial problem, provides unnecessary functionality, or provides necessary functionality but at an unnecessary cost. For example, a laboratory may experience a sharp morning spike in samples, thereby creating workflow backlogs (Fig. 2-4). Instead of purchasing more equipment to provide additional capacity during peak periods, the laboratory should look for ways to distribute work more evenly during the shift. The key is to avoid delivering large sample batches to the laboratory. Outreach samples can be more evenly distributed because the turnaround time is usually not critical. One approach might be to rearrange phlebotomy draw schedules so that blood draws begin earlier and are spread out over a longer period (Sunyog, 2004). Another approach is to have phlebotomists send samples to the laboratory after every few patients instead of waiting to collect a large batch from an entire floor. One consideration is to have the inpatient nursing unit staff perform specimen collection. This may control the number of inappropriate stat orders because nursing units are more familiar than a laboratory phlebotomist with the status of the patient. This

requires consistent phlebotomy training for all nursing unit staff that collect specimens to prevent specimen integrity problems. Thus one should analyze and reengineer processes to the greatest possible degree before embarking on a technology solution; this approach may yield an inexpensive solution that is quicker and easier to implement. Sometimes, nontechnologic solutions, although preferable, are out of the direct control of the laboratory staff and consequently do not receive the attention they deserve. Thus a technology solution is selected because it can be implemented without the support of other departments.

Technology is a means to an end, not an end. Technology alone does not improve performance and workflow; it is only a tool to reach a goal. Ultimately, new technology succeeds or fails according to how it is implemented. This, in turn, depends on people and their ability to clearly analyze how technology and workflow can be optimally integrated into their setting. What works for one location may not work for another. Sometimes, this means changing long-standing practices or staff schedules. For example, if four chemistry analyzers are consolidated into two, staff need to be reallocated to take into account fewer workstations and/or peak testing needs. Similarly, batching certain tests on a new high-throughput analyzer does not take full advantage of its continuous processing capabilities and in some instances may yield a lower throughput than the analyzer it replaces. Last, manually transcribing physician orders from paper requisitions into an information system provides far less functionality and error reduction capability than is provided by direct electronic order entry by physicians. Because technology has to be "customized" for each site, laboratories implement the same technology in different ways and experience different outcomes. It should never be assumed that improvements and results seen at another facility will automatically occur in one's own facility. The most successful implementations require a total workflow reassessment to evaluate how best to integrate technology. By critically evaluating existing practices, one can avoid perpetuating inefficient processes, even with new equipment.

Overbuying—the cardinal sin. More than anything else, overbuying increases costs that burden an operation over the life of the technology. Although it is tempting to overbuy "just in case" capacity needs grow (such as with new outreach work), these needs may not materialize or may occur slowly over time, allowing for an incremental and more cost-effective approach. A new instrument in the laboratory rarely, if ever, directly translates into new testing volume. The market demand for testing is generally independent of the laboratory's capacity to test, although greater capacity may allow the laboratory to more aggressively market services. Different types of overbuying may occur. For example, one may buy three analyzers instead of two or an analyzer that performs 1000 tests per hour instead of a device that runs 500 tests per hour. Alternatively, a total laboratory automation solution may be implemented instead of one based on several smaller workcells or standalone analyzers. In all instances, overbuying increases costs. All of the previous examples increase depreciation costs, require more service and maintenance, and can lead to ineffective labor utilization and suboptimal workflow. Buying more analyzers than necessary can also increase reagent costs in that each instrument has to be calibrated, controlled, and cross-correlated with other devices running the same test. Reagent waste (due to outdating) may also increase if low-volume tests are set up on all of the analyzers.

Overbuying should not be confused with excess capacity that is sometimes unavoidable when necessary backup systems are implemented. Ultimately, it is the laboratory service model that determines whether backup is needed. For some tests (e.g., cardiac markers), the laboratory may need a backup system; for others (e.g., tumor markers), it may not. Also, a stat laboratory's backup needs will differ from those of a reference laboratory. A well-designed workflow can balance a laboratory's need for some backup without unnecessary overbuying. For a laboratory that needs a 1000 test/hour capacity, this may mean selecting two 500 test/hour analyzers instead of two running 1000 tests/hour. Alternatively, it may mean selecting one 1000 test/hour analyzer and using a laboratory nearby (that is interfaced to the first laboratory's information system) for backup. Last, it may mean selecting two 1000 test/hour analyzers but running one at a time. This last solution is rarely successful because it duplicates expensive technology and increases maintenance costs. A simple analogy to the family car is often instructive: People rarely buy two automobiles to do what one can do most of the time. Instead, they rely on alternative sources such as renting, public transportation, or taxis to fill occasional needs. One must be sure not to underbuy as well. Many times the number of analyzers is dependent not only on volume throughput but also on stability (uptime). If instrumentation is down a significant amount of time and the effort to bring it back online will take hours or days, a backup instrument is critical for continued testing support. Many large laboratory operations have extensive automation in chemistry and hematology that require constant availability of service support by the vendor to make sure the instrumentation is always in working order. In some cases, a vendor will actually have a service engineer routinely present onsite during weekday hours to maintain the automation system and to help train staff to do the same. Because of staffing shortages on a national level, automation has helped laboratories do more with less, but only if the automation stays consistently functional. Ultimately, the goal is to "right buy"—that is, to avoid overbuying or underbuying technology.

Do you understand what you are buying? There is a difference between "buying" technology and being "sold" technology by vendors. The former approach requires an analysis by the laboratory to identify what it needs and a thorough understanding of the technology under consideration, whereas the latter relies more heavily on the vendor to provide a solution to the laboratory. The risk of being "sold" a technology is that it might not be the optimal solution. Most instruments work and do what they are advertised to do. Unfortunately, "what they do" may not be "what you need them to do."

The type of technology is also important. Current technology is generally easier to understand and offers a less risky strategy than breakthrough technology, although it might also provide less reward. Breakthrough technology is, by definition, a new technology, and it may be difficult to fully understand whether it is appropriate in a given laboratory setting, how best to implement it, or how significant a financial impact it will make.

Other issues to consider relate to the technology itself and whether it currently offers all the features required by a laboratory. A vendor may promote certain enhancements or capabilities scheduled for the future, especially when marketing analyzers. These may include tests in development, instrument or computer hardware improvements, new versions of software, or automatic upgrades to a next-generation system. Although these future enhancements may seem attractive, they may not materialize, so they should not be a primary reason for choosing technology. A better approach is to delay purchasing the system until it can offer the laboratory the capabilities it needs. Another potential mistake is overestimating a technology's lifetime or usefulness because this will underestimate its true cost. In the end, the question each laboratorian should ask is not "Does this technology work?" but rather "Does this technology work for me?"

OPTIMIZING PERFORMANCE

Optimizing performance refers to the process by which workflow (including laboratory design) and technology are integrated to yield an operation that best meets the clinical needs and financial goals of the organization: high quality at low cost. In practice, there are times when workflow changes improve service levels and reduce cost. For example, consolidating chemistry systems may lower capital and operating costs and may improve turnaround time. At other times, there is a tradeoff between cost and quality. For example, a phlebotomy staff reduction, while lowering costs, may lengthen the time necessary to complete morning blood collection. This, in turn, may delay when test results become available, but this may not be significant if results are not needed until later in the day. On the other hand, if a patient's discharge is contingent on reviewing the result in the morning, a testing delay could increase length of stay. Ultimately, these decisions need to be analyzed within the framework of the overall institution, taking into account the downstream impact of these actions and their effects on other departments.

Optimizing performance is an ongoing process that requires one to constantly assess and reassess workflow and needs. This requires periodic data collection and analysis. Table 2-3 provides examples of workflow metrics that are useful to monitor. Ultimately, the degree to which any of these reports is useful depends on the accuracy of the data. Many different approaches may be taken to optimizing performance; some of the more common ones are discussed here and in Table 2-4.

Consolidation, integration, and standardization are three key interrelated strategies that have assumed increasing importance in recent years as laboratories have become affiliated with one another through large health care networks. These concepts are also relevant to a single facility.

Consolidation. Testing can be consolidated from multiple sites or workstations in a single facility, or selected tests from many facilities can be centralized in one or more locations. Consolidation creates larger sample batches or runs; this improves testing efficiency in that fixed quality control and calibration costs are distributed over more samples. This, in turn, lowers per-unit costs. Consolidation may yield larger reference laboratory test volume. A "make versus buy" analysis can determine whether it is economically feasible to insource tests previously sent to a reference laboratory (Kisner, 2003). Consolidation may also improve turnaround

TABLE 2-3
Workflow Metric Examples

Metric	Comments
Turnaround Time (TAT) Studies	
Collection to receipt	Is collection time correct? How long does it take for samples to reach laboratory? Is tube transport system functioning properly? Are messenger pickups reliable?
Receipt to result	How long does testing take once the laboratory receives a sample? Is it held in a central receiving area before it is brought to the technologist? Is the receipt to result time accurate—that is, is there a delay between physical receipt and electronic sample receipt acknowledgment in LIS (Stotler & Kratz, 2012)?
Order (or collection) to result	This is what the physician perceives as total turnaround time. Is it accurate? How long does it take for a released laboratory result to appear in the hospital information system? Do networking issues external to the laboratory delay the appearance of results?
Stat and routine TAT by hour	Is stat TAT longer in the AM when routine samples from morning collection arrive? What is the difference in TAT for routine and stats? Are some tests affected more than others?
Monthly Volume Statistics	
"Billable" tests	How many orderable tests are performed? What is the trend? Has total volume or a specific test's volume changed enough to warrant a reevaluation of workflow or testing capacity? Should any tests be sent to a reference laboratory rather than be performed in-house?
"Exploded" tests	Exploding chemistry panels into individual components provides a more accurate assessment of general testing "load" on analyzers and reagent usage than orderable tests alone. Has volume changed? Is it related to a specific location or a new service?
By location	Has testing volume changed in specific nursing units or outpatient settings? Has the volume of inpatient and outpatient testing changed?
Reference laboratory tests	Are certain tests increasing in volume; if so, why and at what cost? Are total monthly costs changing? (Tests with the highest cost/year are not always the highest volume ones.) Should certain tests be screened for appropriateness? Does it make sense to perform any of these tests in-house ("buy versus make" decision)?
Sample and Test Mapping	
Tubes per hour	Tube handling in chemistry has a direct impact on staff (or automation) and includes centrifugation, aliquoting, and storage.
Tests per hour by department or workstation	This is needed to compare "testing demand" versus "instrument capacity" and can help determine optimal instrument configuration.

time by making it cost-effective to perform tests more frequently or to use a more automated technology. Some tests may not be appropriate to consolidate. For example, blood gases and other point-of-care tests may have to be performed at multiple sites in a hospital to provide the necessary turnaround time demanded by clinicians. Similarly, little benefit may be derived from performing routine hospital complete blood counts (CBCs) at a central off-site location instead of at the main hospital rapid response laboratory. In contrast, it may be beneficial to consolidate across facilities those tests that are less time-sensitive (e.g., tumor markers) or that require special skills and/or dedicated equipment at each site (e.g., various microbiology or molecular tests, or electrophoresis). To successfully consolidate tests from multiple facilities, a central site must control new costs (by minimizing additional staff or equipment to perform the tests) and provide better or comparable quality and service to what had been provided (Carter et al, 2004). It must also foster a collaborative approach to ensure that all of the sending facility's needs are met, including common physician concerns such as longer turnaround time and limited ability to access information or interact with a remote laboratory. A successful consolidation should be transparent to the clinician.

Standardization. Standardized policies, methods, and equipment benefit laboratories in several ways. Direct benefits, like lower costs, can be realized when the laboratory aggressively negotiates with one vendor to supply all chemistry or hematology equipment and reagents. Indirect benefits are due to the simplified operations that result from standardization and make it easier to cross-train staff or implement policies and procedures. Standardization is a gradual process that can take several years to complete. Rapid transition usually is not possible because of vendor contract lock-ins; a buyout of an existing contract is usually too expensive and can partially or completely offset any intended savings from a new contract. Sometimes, the unique needs of a location may preclude standardization with other laboratories, or a single vendor may not offer a product line that is suitable for each facility. In these instances, it is still possible to significantly lower costs and/or improve performance albeit using a more varied or limited approach.

Integration. Integration is the process by which services at one location are coordinated, shared, and/or connected to those at another to provide a seamless operation. Although integration is often a by-product of consolidation and standardization, the latter two strategies are not a prerequisite to successful integration. For example, consider a laboratory information system that links several facilities. Although a single seamless operation can be created with a single vendor's system, it is also possible to network systems from different vendors, albeit with greater difficulty and possibly less functionality. Other integration examples include cross-training staff among different laboratory sections or facilities and interfacing point-of-care laboratory data to the main laboratory system.

Six Sigma and Lean. Six Sigma is a management concept that was first introduced by Motorola in 1979 (Gras & Philippe, 2007). The ultimate goal is to reduce defects to fewer than 3.4 per million procedures. Lean is a management concept that reduces waste and streamlines an operation (Sunyog, 2004). It was used to describe the automaker Toyota's business process in the 1980s. (See Chapter 1 for a complete discussion of Six Sigma and Lean.)

Managing utilization. Thus far, strategies to optimize performance have focused on ways to do work better and at lower cost. Although this is important, it does not address the most basic question: Is the work—that is, the test—necessary? After all, the least expensive test is the test that is not done. Lowering test volume may change overall operational needs and workflow patterns. Keep in mind that inpatient laboratory work generally is not reimbursed (see Chapter 12), so each laboratory test is an added cost for the hospital. Thus lowering inpatient utilization has a direct impact on costs. In contrast, outpatient testing generally is reimbursed by a third-party payer or by the patient. Despite this, the amount reimbursed may not be sufficient to cover the cost of the test. This is especially true for expensive new reference laboratory tests for which the laboratory may receive only 20 to 30 cents for each dollar spent. So selectively controlling outpatient utilization can be financially beneficial. Appropriate utilization of tests does not only mean lowering utilization. In some instances, tests that should be ordered may not be ordered; this could have an impact on patient care and could lengthen stay.

A laboratory may use different strategies to manage utilization. A successful test utilization program requires a broad-based effort. Expert clinicians, pathology leadership, administration, and information technology support are critical elements) (Kim et al, 2011; Warren, 2013). Over the years, laboratories have realized large cost savings through productivity improvements. As a result, it is far easier and less costly to run a 10-cent test than to determine whether each one is appropriate. Although this is

TABLE 2-4
Strategies to Optimize Performance

Strategy	Example
Consolidate	One facility: Run stat and routine samples together on the same analyzer; run routine and specialty tests on the same platform; collapse number of analyzers and workstations and use workcell, if applicable. Consolidation can reduce "tube labor." Multiple facilities: Centralize selected low-volume, high-cost tests/services at a single location (e.g., molecular diagnostics [HIV viral load], blood donor collection).
Standardize	Equipment: All equipment purchased from one vendor yields larger volume discounts and lower costs for reagents and analyzers, especially in chemistry and immunodiagnostics. Method: Uniform reference range for all laboratories promotes seamless testing environment for inpatients and outpatients with data comparability and trending results across laboratories; it also provides system backup without excess redundancy. Policies: Simplify procedure manuals and compliance documents so they can be shared. Staff: Standardized operations make it easier to share staff among facilities. LIS: Database management is simplified.
Integrate	Computer: Network LIS system with other data systems to promote seamless flow (e.g., sending point-of-care results into the LIS).
Strategic growth	Courier: Use single service to deliver samples among multiple sites. Evaluate excess capacity and feasibility of increasing testing workload: Assess outreach infrastructure (couriers, client/sales staff, billing), incremental testing costs, potential revenue, and core mission to determine whether to expand business.
Strategic sourcing	Long-term strategy: Competitively bid equipment, supplies, reference laboratory services, etc., taking into account payment terms, delivery charges, value-added services, and product costs.
Rapid repricing	Short-term strategy: Renegotiate pricing with existing vendors.
"Make versus buy"	Review all send-out tests and low-volume in-house tests to identify which tests to "buy" (i.e., send out or outsource) and which to "make" (i.e., do in-house) based on cost and turnaround time. Also, review services such as couriers.
Review laboratory policies and tasks	Critically review laboratory policies and procedures to determine their relevance and appropriateness: Can delta check limits be narrowed or eliminated to reduce the numbers of test repeats and verifications without compromising quality? Do critical values need to be repeated before they are reported (Lehman et al, 2014)? Are critical call values clinically appropriate, or do they generate unnecessary calls to physicians? Can nonurgent expensive tests be batched twice weekly instead of every day? Do clinicians need certain tests daily that are available only several times a week? Are quality control and maintenance procedures excessive?
Make maximum use of simple and/or existing IT solutions	The rule-based autoverification process eliminates the need for the technologist to manually release each result (Crolla & Westgard, 2003); sample racking storage system eliminates most of the time spent looking for samples.
Cross-train staff	Train technologists to perform automated chemistry and hematology tests instead of chemistry or hematology alone.
Adjust skill mix	Adjust skill level (and compensation) of staff to match task performed: Use laboratory helpers instead of technologists to centrifuge samples or load samples on analyzers.
Adjust staff scheduling	Use part-time phlebotomists to supplement peak blood collection periods instead of full-time phlebotomists who are underutilized once morning collection is finished.
Change laboratory layout	Design open laboratory that allows all automated testing to run in the same location and promotes cross-training of staff.
Manage utilization	Require pathologist or director approval to order select costly reference laboratory tests and/or restrict usage of various tests to specialists.

HIV, Human immunodeficiency virus; *IT,* information technology; *LIS,* laboratory information system.

true for many high-volume tests (like CBCs and basic metabolic panels), it is not true for many new, complex, and costly reference laboratory tests such as cancer diagnostics and viral genotyping. Thus a different strategy is needed to manage utilization of costly reference laboratory tests than to manage CBCs. For example, reference laboratory utilization (for certain tests) can be managed by reviewing each order and its cost with the clinician according to guidelines developed with the clinical services. This cost avoidance strategy not only ensures that clinical indications are met, but it also educates physicians about the cost of a test and challenges each one to evaluate the cost-benefit of ordering it. In contrast, high-volume tests such as a CBC require a broader strategy that restricts or guides ordering frequency electronically through various clinical pathways or guideline-based decision support systems (van Wijk et al, 2002). For example, a comprehensive or basic metabolic panel might be limited to one order per admission if the patient is stable. Little can be saved by eliminating one low-cost laboratory test from a panel of five other tests. The most significant cost savings is realized when a phlebotomy is eliminated. This usually requires rethinking the frequency of laboratory orders across all clinical services and changing practice patterns to reduce the number of times a patient's blood is collected. Test repetition is a common component of overall test utilization and is costly (van Walraven & Raymond, 2003); it can be reduced using a clinical decision support tool (Procop et al, 2014).

A laboratory-based diagnostic algorithm can assist with medical decision making and reduce test utilization. With this approach, a physician requests the laboratory to perform a diagnostic workup (e.g., thyroid function evaluation) instead of ordering specific tests. Thus the laboratory determines the appropriate tests to run and in what order (Yang et al, 1996).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

De Cresce RP, Lifshitz MS: Integrating automation into the clinical laboratory. In Lifshitz MS, De Cresce RP, editors: *Perspectives on clinical laboratory automation*, New York, 1988, WB Saunders, pp 759–774.
General overview of how to analyze workflow and evaluate technology, including many practical considerations.

Middleton S, Mountain P: Process control and on-line optimization. In Kost GJ, editor: *Handbook of clinical automation, robotics and optimization*, New York, 1996, John Wiley & Sons, pp 515–540.
Provides an overview of task and process mapping using flow diagrams. Also discusses how to integrate automation, information systems, and staff to optimize performance.

REFERENCES

Carter E, Stubbs JR, Bennett B: A model for consolidation of clinical microbiology laboratory services within a multihospital health-care system, *Clin Leadersh Manag Rev* 18:211–215, 2004.

Crolla LJ, Westgard JO: Evaluation of rule-based autoverification protocols, *Clin Leadersh Manag Rev* 17:268–272, 2003.

Gras JM, Philippe M: Application of the six sigma concept in clinical laboratories: a review, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 45(6):789–796, 2007.

Kim JY, Dzik WH, Dighe AS, et al: Utilization management in a large urban academic medical center. A 10-year experience, *Am J Clin Pathol* 135:108–118, 2011.

Kisner HJ: Make versus buy: A financial perspective, *Clin Leadersh Manag Rev* 17:328–330, 2003.

Lehman CM, Howanitz PJ, Souers R, et al: Utility of repeat testing of critical values. A q-probes analysis of 86 clinical laboratories, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 138:788–793, 2014.

Mohammad AA, Elefano EC, Leigh D, et al: Use of computer simulation to study impact of increasing routine test volume on turnaround times of STAT samples on ci8200 integrated chemistry and immunoassay analyzer (abstract), *Clin Chem* 50:1952–1955, 2004.

Procop GW, Yerian LM, Wyllie R, et al: Duplicate laboratory test reduction using a clinical decision support tool, *Am J Clin Pathol* 141:718–723, 2014.

Sorita A, Patterson A, Landazuri P, et al: The feasibility and impact of midnight routine blood draws on laboratory orders and processing time, *Am J Clin Pathol* 141:805–810, 2014.

Stotler BA, Kratz A: Determination of turnaround time in the clinical laboratory. "Accessioning-to-result" time does not always accurately reflect laboratory performance, *Am J Clin Pathol* 138:724–729, 2012.

Sunyog M: Lean management and six-sigma yield big gains in hospital's immediate response laboratory, *Clin Leadersh Manag Rev* 18:255–258, 2004.

van Walraven C, Raymond M: Population-based study of repeat laboratory testing, *Clin Chem* 49:1997–2005, 2003.

van Wijk MAM, van der Lei J, Mosseveld M, et al: Compliance of general practitioners with a guideline-based decision support system for ordering blood tests, *Clin Chem* 48:55–60, 2002.

Warren JS: Laboratory test utilization program. Structure and impact in a large academic medical center, *Am J Clin Pathol* 139:289–297, 2013.

Yang JM, Laposata M, Lewandrowski KB: Algorithmic diagnosis. In Kost GJ, editor: *Handbook of clinical automation, robotics and optimization*, New York, 1996, John Wiley & Sons, pp 911–928.

CHAPTER 3

PREANALYSIS

Mark S. Lifshitz

PRECOLLECTION VARIABLES, 20
Physiologic Factors, 20
Common Interferences, 21
Special Issues That May Impact Analysis, 22

SPECIMEN COLLECTION, 23
The Test Order, 23
Time of Collection, 23
Specimen Acceptability and Identification Issues, 24

BLOOD COLLECTION OVERVIEW, 24
Anticoagulants and Additives, 24
Blood Collection Devices, 25
Blood Storage and Preservation, 26
Importance of Policies and Procedures, 26

BLOOD COLLECTION TECHNIQUES, 27
Arterial Puncture, 27
Finger or Heel Skin Puncture, 27
Central Venous Access Devices, 28

URINE AND OTHER BODY FLUIDS COLLECTION, 28
Urine, 28
Other Body Fluids, 29

SPECIMEN TRANSPORT, 30

SPECIMEN PROCESSING, 31
Precentrifugation Phase, 31
Centrifugation Phase, 31

SELECTED REFERENCES, 31

KEY POINTS

- Errors and variables in the preanalysis stage can affect test results.
- Patient variables include physical activity, diet, age, sex, circadian variations, posture, stress, obesity, smoking, and medication.
- Strict adherence to proper technique and site selection can minimize collection variables such as hemolysis, hemoconcentration, clots, and other causes for sample rejection or erroneous results.
- Blood collection containers are color-coded based on additive or preservative, and each is suitable only for specific tests. Failure to use the proper tubes or filling tubes in the wrong sequence can produce erroneous results.
- Blood collection staff must be adequately trained in safety and confidentiality issues.
- Blood, urine, and other body fluid constituents can change during transport and storage. The extent of these changes varies by analyte.
- The most common reasons for specimen rejection are clotted blood for hematology or coagulation tests; insufficient volume in a tube for coagulation tests; and hemolysis, icterus, and lipemia in serum or plasma that can cause interference in chemistry testing.

Preanalysis refers to all the complex steps that must take place before a sample can be analyzed. Over the years, a series of studies identified that 32% to 75% of all testing errors occur in the preanalytic phase (Lapworth & Teal, 1994; Stahl & Lund, 1998; Hofgartner & Tait, 1999; Bonini et al, 2002; Plebani, 2010), and technologic advances and quality assurance procedures have significantly reduced the number of analytic-based errors. This has exposed the preanalysis stage as a major source of residual "error" and/or variables that can affect test results. Preanalytic factors include patient-related variables (diet, age, sex, etc.), specimen collection and labeling techniques, specimen preservatives and anticoagulants, specimen transport, and processing and storage. Potential sources of error or failure in this process include improperly ordered tests, sample misidentification, improper timing, improper fasting, improper anticoagulant/blood ratio, improper mixing, incorrect order of draw, and hemolyzed or lipemic specimens. The most frequent preanalytic errors include improperly filling the sample tube, placing specimens in the wrong containers or preservatives, and selecting the incorrect test (Plebani, 2010). Table 3-1 lists the most common errors associated with specimen collection, including those that occur before specimen collection (e.g., patient ID error), during collection (e.g., incorrect tube or order of draw), and after collection (e.g., improper transport or centrifugation).

Errors in the preanalytic stage create extra work or additional investigation that may cause unnecessary procedures for patients and costs to the health care system (Stankovic & DeLauro, 2010). Preanalytic issues have downstream impact on the use of laboratory resources, hospital costs, and overall quality of care. By some estimates, specimen collection errors cost the average 400-bed hospital about $200,000/year in recollection costs. The estimated average costs of a preanalytical error in North American institutions were estimated at $208, with costs representing between 0.23% and 1.2% of total hospital operating costs (Green, 2013). Proper collection technique is also essential to minimize injury to the phlebotomist and the patient. Treatment for an injury related to a traumatic needlestick can cost $500 to $3000, and poor technique can result in patient injury, such as nerve and arterial damage, subcutaneous hemorrhage, infection, and even death. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that 385,000 needlestick injuries occur per year (CDC, 2004). Many go unreported. This chapter discusses the preanalytic process, with special emphasis on the clinical impact of variables and sources of failure.

PRECOLLECTION VARIABLES

In preparing a patient for phlebotomy, care should be taken to minimize physiologic factors related to activities that might influence laboratory determinations. These include diurnal variation, exercise, fasting, diet, ethanol consumption, tobacco smoking, drug ingestion, and posture (Haverstick, 2015).

PHYSIOLOGIC FACTORS

Diurnal variation. This may be encountered when testing for hormones, iron, acid phosphatase, and urinary excretion of most electrolytes such as sodium, potassium, and phosphate (Dufour, 2003). Table 3-2 presents several tests affected by diurnal variations, posture, and stress.

Exercise. Physical activity has transient and long-term effects on laboratory determinations. Transient changes may include an initial decrease followed by an increase in free fatty acids, and lactate may increase by as much as 300%. Exercise may elevate creatine phosphokinase (CK), aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and lactate dehydrogenase (LD) and may activate coagulation, fibrinolysis, and platelets (Garza & Becan-McBride, 2014). These changes are related to increased metabolic activities for energy purposes and usually return to preexercise levels soon after exercise cessation. Long-term effects of exercise may increase CK, aldolase, AST, and LD values. Chronic aerobic exercise is associated with lesser increases in plasma concentration of muscle enzymes such as CK, AST, alanine aminotransferase (ALT), and LD. Decreased levels of serum gonadotropin and sex steroid concentrations are seen in long-distance athletes, while prolactin levels are elevated (Dufour, 2003).

TABLE 3-1
Common Preanalytical Errors

Phase	Error
Before Collection	1. Incorrect test ordered 2. Inadequate patient preparation (e.g., not fasting, recent heavy meal—lipemia) or improper timing (e.g., trough drug level drawn too early) 3. Misidentification of patient
During Collection	1. Wrong container/wrong additive 2. Short draws/wrong anticoagulant/blood ratio 3. Hemoconcentration from prolonged tourniquet time 4. Hemolysis due to incorrect technique (e.g., forcing blood through needle, draw via intravenous line)
After Collection	1. Inadequate mixing/clots 2. Mislabeling of specimen 3. Improper transport to lab: Exposure to light/extreme temperatures or delayed delivery 4. Processing errors: Incomplete centrifugation, incorrect log-in, improper storage or aliquoting prior to analysis

TABLE 3-2
Tests Affected by Diurnal Variation, Posture, and Stress

Cortisol	Peaks 4-6 AM; lowest 8 PM–12 AM; 50% lower at 8 PM than at 8 AM; increased with stress
Adrenocorticotropic hormone	Lower at night; increased with stress
Plasma renin activity	Lower at night; higher standing than supine
Aldosterone	Lower at night
Insulin	Lower at night
Growth hormone	Higher in afternoon and evening
Acid phosphatase	Higher in afternoon and evening
Thyroxine	Increases with exercise
Prolactin	Higher with stress; higher levels at 4 and 8 AM and at 8 and 10 PM
Iron	Peaks early to late morning; decreases up to 30% during the day
Calcium	4% decrease supine

Diet. An individual's diet can greatly affect laboratory test results. The effect is transient and is easily controlled. Glucose and triglycerides, absorbed from food, increase after eating (Dufour, 2003). After 48 hours of fasting, serum bilirubin concentrations may increase. Fasting for 72 hours decreases plasma glucose levels in healthy women to 45 mg/dL (2.5 mmol/L), while men show an increase in plasma triglycerides, glycerol, and free fatty acids, with no significant change in plasma cholesterol. When determining blood constituents such as glucose, triglycerides, cholesterol, and electrolytes, collection should be done in the basal state (Garza & Becan-McBride, 2014). Eating a meal, depending on fat content, may elevate plasma potassium, triglycerides, alkaline phosphatase, and 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5-HIAA). Stool occult blood tests, which detect heme, are affected by the intake of meat, fish, iron, and horseradish, a source of peroxidase, causing a false-positive occult blood reaction (Dufour, 2003). In addition, consumption of bismuth-containing antacids such as Pepto-Bismol also renders false-positive results. Physiologic changes may include hyperchylomicronemia, thus increasing turbidity of the serum or plasma and potentially interfering with instrument readings.

Certain foods or diet regimens may affect serum or urine constituents. Long-time vegetarian diets are reported to cause decreased concentrations of low-density lipoproteins (LDLs), very-low-density lipoproteins (VLDLs), total lipids, phospholipids, cholesterol, and triglycerides. Vitamin B_{12} deficiency can also occur, unless supplements are taken (Young, 2007). A high-meat or other protein-rich diet may increase serum urea, ammonia, and urate levels. High-protein, low-carbohydrate diets, such as the Atkins diet, greatly increase ketones in the urine and increase the serum blood urea nitrogen (BUN). Foods with a high unsaturated-to-saturated fatty acid ratio may show decreased serum cholesterol, while a diet rich in purines will show an increased urate value. Foods such as bananas, pineapples, tomatoes, and avocados are rich in serotonin. When ingested, elevated urine excretion of 5-HIAA may be observed. Beverages rich in caffeine elevate plasma free fatty acids and cause catecholamine release from the adrenal medulla and brain tissue. Ethanol ingestion increases plasma lactate, urate, and triglyceride concentrations. Elevated high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol, γ-glutamyl transferase (GGT), urate, and mean corpuscular volume (MCV) have been associated with chronic alcohol abuse.

Serum concentrations of cholesterol, triglycerides, and apoB lipoproteins are correlated with obesity. Serum LD activity, cortisol production, and glucose increase in obesity. Plasma insulin concentration is also increased, but glucose tolerance is impaired. In obese men, testosterone concentration is reduced (Young, 2007).

Stress. Mental and physical stresses induce the production of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), cortisol, and catecholamines. Total cholesterol has been reported to increase with mild stress, and HDL cholesterol to decrease by as much as 15% (Dufour, 2003). Hyperventilation affects acid-base balance and elevates leukocyte counts, serum lactate, or free fatty acids.

Posture. Posture of the patient during phlebotomy can have an effect on various laboratory results. An upright position increases hydrostatic pressure, causing a reduction of plasma volume and increased concentration of proteins. Albumin and calcium levels may become elevated as one changes position from supine to upright. Elements that are affected by postural changes are albumin, total protein, enzymes, calcium, bilirubin, cholesterol, triglycerides, and drugs bound to proteins. Incorrect application of the tourniquet and fist exercise can result in erroneous test results. Using a tourniquet to collect blood to determine lactate concentration may result in falsely increased values. Prolonged tourniquet application may also increase serum enzymes, proteins, and protein-bound substances, including cholesterol, calcium, and triglycerides, as the result of hemoconcentration when plasma water leaves the vein because of back pressure. After bed rest in the hospital, a patient's hemoglobin (Hb) can decrease from the original admitting value enough to falsely lead a physician to suspect internal hemorrhage or hemolysis (Dufour, 2003). This effect can be amplified by intravenous fluid administration. Patients should be advised to avoid changes in their diet, consumption of alcohol, and strenuous exercise 24 hours before having their blood drawn for laboratory testing.

Age. Age of the patient has an effect on serum constituents. Young defines four age groups: newborn, childhood to puberty, adult, and elderly adult (Young, 2007). In the newborn, much of the Hb is Hb F, not Hb A, as seen in the adult. Bilirubin concentration rises after birth and peaks at about 5 days. In cases of hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN), bilirubin levels continue to rise. This often causes difficulty in distinguishing between physiologic jaundice and HDFN. Infants have a lower glucose level than adults because of their low glycogen reserve. With skeletal growth and muscle development, serum alkaline phosphatase and creatinine levels, respectively, also increase. The high uric acid level seen in a newborn decreases for the first 10 years of life, then increases, especially in boys, until the age of 16 (Young, 2007). Most serum constituents remain constant during adult life until the onset of menopause in women and middle age in men. Increases of about 2 mg/dL (0.05 mmol/L) per year in total cholesterol and 2 mg/dL (0.02 mmol/L) per year in triglycerides until midlife have been reported. The increase in cholesterol seen in postmenopausal women has been attributed to a decrease in estrogen levels. Uric acid levels peak in men in their 20s but do not peak in women until middle age. The elderly secrete less triiodothyronine, parathyroid hormone, aldosterone, and cortisol. After age 50, men experience a decrease in secretion rate and concentration of testosterone, and women have an increase in pituitary gonadotropins, especially follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) (Young, 2007).

Gender. After puberty, men generally have higher alkaline phosphatase, aminotransferase, creatine kinase, and aldolase levels than women; this is due to the larger muscle mass of men. Women have lower levels of magnesium, calcium, albumin, Hb, serum iron, and ferritin. Menstrual blood loss contributes to the lower iron values (Young, 2007).

COMMON INTERFERENCES

In Vivo

Tobacco Smoking

Tobacco smokers have high blood carboxyhemoglobin levels, plasma catecholamines, and serum cortisol. Changes in these hormones often result

TABLE 3-3
Changes in Serum Concentration (or Activities) of Selected Constituents Due to Lysis of Erythrocytes (RBCs)

Constituent	Ratio of Concentration (or Activity) in RBC to Concentration (or Activity) in Serum	Percent Change of Concentration (or Activity) in Serum after Lysis of 1% RBC, Assuming a Hematocrit of 0.50
Lactate dehydrogenase	16:1	+272.0
Aspartate aminotransferase	4:1	+220.0
Potassium	23:1	+24.4
Alanine aminotransferase	6.7:1	+55.0
Glucose	0.82:1	–5.0
Inorganic phosphate	0.78:1	+9.1
Sodium	0.11:1	–1.0
Calcium	0.10:1	+2.9

Modified from Caraway WT, Kammeyer CW. Chemical interference by drug and other substances with clinical laboratory test procedures. *Clin Chem Acta* 1972; 41:395; and Laessig RH, Hassermer DJ, Paskay TA, et al. The effects of 0.1 and 1.0 percent erythrocytes and hemolysis on serum chemistry values. *Am J Clin Pathol* 1976; 66:639–644, with permission.

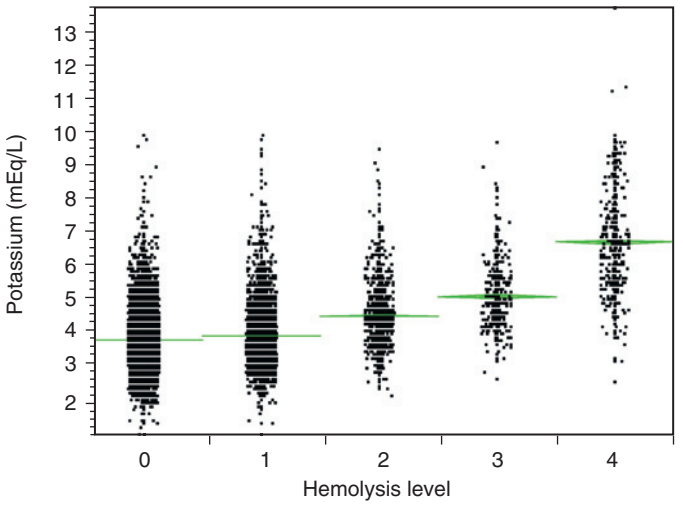


Figure 3-1 Relationship between hemolysis and potassium in 60,989 serum and plasma specimens grouped according to level of hemolysis. The mean values of potassium were 4.12, 4.23, 4.80, 5.36, and 6.93 mEq/L for levels of hemolysis from 0 through 4, respectively.

in decreased numbers of eosinophils, while neutrophils, monocytes, and plasma free fatty acids increase. Chronic effects of smoking lead to increased Hb concentration, erythrocyte (RBC) count, MCV, and leukocyte (WBC) count. Increased plasma levels of lactate, insulin, epinephrine, and growth hormone and urinary secretion of 5-HIAA are also seen. Vitamin B_{12} levels may be substantially decreased and have been reported to be inversely proportional to serum thiocyanate levels. Smoking also affects the body's immune response. Immunoglobulin (Ig)A, IgG, and IgM are lower in smokers, and IgE levels are higher. Decreased sperm counts and motility and increased abnormal morphology have been reported in male smokers when compared with nonsmokers (Young, 2007).

In Vitro

Collection-Associated Variables

On occasion, when there is a problem finding a vein for phlebotomy, the specimen may be hemolyzed as the result of sheer forces on the red blood cells. Hemolysis can also be caused by using a needle that is too small, pulling a syringe plunger back too fast, expelling the blood vigorously into a tube, shaking or mixing the tubes vigorously, or performing blood collection before the alcohol has dried at the collection site. Hemolysis is present when the serum or plasma layer is pink. Hemolysis can falsely increase blood constituents such as potassium, magnesium, iron, LD, phosphorus, ammonium, and total protein (Garza, 2014). Table 3-3 shows changes in serum concentrations (or activities) of selected constituents caused by lysis of RBCs.

Because of the extremely important role of potassium in cardiac excitation, elevations due to hemolysis can be problematic, especially for emergency room patients who are at risk of hemolysis during frantic blood collection. The relationship between level of hemolysis and potassium (as determined on a Siemens ADVIA 1650 chemistry analyzer [Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics, Deerfield, Ill.]) in serum and plasma specimens is shown in Figure 3-1. Even with no hemolysis, the range of potassium concentrations can be broad in a combination of healthy and sick individuals. Low levels of hemolysis cause only minor elevations, but very strong hemolysis can raise the potassium level by 2 to 3 mEq/L into a critical range.

Another special case where pseudohyperkalemia can occur is in patients with extremely high blast counts in acute or accelerated phase leukemias. Those blasts can be fragile and may lyse during standard phlebotomy, releasing potassium. In contrast, specimens with very high WBC counts that are collected gently can show pseudohypokalemia when potassium is taken up by highly metabolically active leukemic cells along with glucose; such specimens can be transported on ice to slow this enzymatically mediated uptake.

Normally platelets release potassium during clotting, so serum has a slightly higher value of potassium than plasma from the same individual; this difference is accentuated when the platelet count is extremely elevated.

To avoid problems with hemoconcentration and hemodilution, the patient should be seated in a supine position for 15 to 20 minutes before the blood is drawn (Young, 2007). Extended application of the tourniquet can cause hemoconcentration, which increases the concentrations of analytes and cellular components. When blood collection tubes that contain various anticoagulants/additives are used, it is important to follow the proper order of draw and to thoroughly mix an anticoagulated tube of blood after it has been filled. Failure to mix a tube containing an anticoagulant will result in failure to anticoagulate the entire blood specimen, and small clots may be formed. Erroneous cell counts can result. If a clot is present, it may also occlude or otherwise interfere with an automated analyzer. It is very important that the proper anticoagulant be used for the test ordered. Using the wrong anticoagulant will greatly affect the test results.

Icteric or lipemic serum provides additional challenges in laboratory analysis. When serum bilirubin approaches 430 mmol/L (25 mg/L), interference may be observed in assays for albumin (4-hydroxyazobenzene-2-carboxylic acid [HABA] procedure), cholesterol (using ferric chloride reagents), and total protein (Biuret procedure). Artifactually induced values in some laboratory determinations result when triglyceride levels are elevated (turbidity) on the basis of absorbance of light of various lipid particles. Lipemia occurs when serum triglyceride levels exceed 4.6 mmol/L (400 mg/dL). Inhibition of assays for amylase, urate, urea, CK, bilirubin, and total protein may be observed. To correct for artifactual absorbance readings, "blanking" procedures (the blank contains serum but lacks a crucial element to complete the assay) or dual-wavelength methods may be used. A blanking process may not be effective in some cases of turbidity, and ultracentrifugation may be necessary to clear the serum or plasma of chylomicrons.

SPECIAL ISSUES THAT MAY IMPACT ANALYSIS

In addition to the preanalytical variables discussed above, there are a variety of special conditions and interferences that may impact sample analysis.

Immunoassays

A variety of substances can interfere with immunoassays, and this, in turn, can lead to the misinterpretation of a patient's results. Endogenous substances, human antianimal species, or autoantibodies can interfere with the reaction between analyte and reagent antibodies. Manufacturers usually add blocking agents to immunoassay reagents to inhibit or neutralize the interference (Tate & Ward, 2004). Immunoassays use antibodies derived from a variety of species—for example, mouse antibody. Human antimouse antibodies (HAMAs) can arise following antigenic stimulation from

therapeutic mouse monoclonal antibodies that are administered to alter immune responses (e.g., anti–T cell antibody), to bind and remove toxic levels of drugs (e.g., digoxin), or to attack tumors. Some individuals with HAMAs have no history of therapeutic exposures but could conceivably have had incidental exposure to mouse proteins through contaminated food or other environmental sources. The effect of HAMAs in immunoassays can be to cross-link capture and signal antibodies in a sandwich that mimics true antigen (Klee, 2000). For example, an immunoassay for thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) that has separate antibodies against α and β subunits might yield an astonishingly high false-positive result in a euthyroid person with HAMA; in this case, the other thyroid function tests could be completely normal. The presence of HAMA can be confirmed by direct measurement (usually sent to a reference laboratory) and can also be inferred by adsorption of the HAMA onto special tubes coated with mouse antibodies, followed by repeat measurement of the analyte to look for reduction in signal strength in the treated specimen (Madry et al, 1997).

Specimen Matrix Effects

Common biochemical analytes such as electrolytes, small molecules, enzymes, and so on, are generally distributed in the water phase of plasma or serum. Consequently, specimens with reduced water phase due to hyperproteinemia (e.g., from very high concentrations of a myeloma protein) or hyperlipidemia (e.g., high chylomicron content) can have reduced content of those solvent analytes even though other properties such as ionic activities in those specimens may be within normal physiologic range. This phenomenon is termed the *solvent exclusion effect*, referring to the exclusion of water and small molecules in the aqueous phase when more volume within a specimen is occupied by protein or lipid that excludes water. The content of small molecules per volume is the osmolarity (which is the measurement that can be erroneous), whereas the physiologically important aspect such as ionic activities is the osmolality. If excess lipids are the cause, they may be removed by ultracentrifugation. If interference is due to excess protein, an alternative mode of analysis such as ion-selective electrode in undiluted specimen can be employed to yield correct electrolyte activity (i.e., equivalent of osmolality).

Matrix effects from very high or very low concentrations of proteins and other constituents may be problematic when dealing with other body fluids, especially when the specimens are highly viscous or otherwise atypical (see Chapter 29). In those situations, it may be necessary to qualify results in the report to indicate the site of the body fluid and possible limitations in accuracy of measurement.

Molecular Diagnostics

Laboratory manipulations of nucleic acids are susceptible to interferences at various stages, including specimen collection and processing. Introduction of inhibitory substances and contamination with false-positive signals are among the significant interferences. Blood specimens for nucleic acid testing are generally collected into EDTA anticoagulant to inhibit enzymes that might break them down. Heparin is a poor choice for anticoagulant in this application because it can be coextracted with DNA and inhibits DNA polymerase in polymerase chain reactions (PCRs). Hemin from hemolysis in plasma or serum can also inhibit DNA polymerase. RNA is labile in blood or tissues, so these specimens must be stored appropriately by rapid freezing in liquid nitrogen if the extraction will be delayed.

Extraction of nucleic acids from clinical specimens such as plasma (e.g., for viral load measurement), blood cells (e.g., for genetic testing), or tissues (e.g., for analyzing mutations in tumors) entails lysing cells and separating nucleic acids from proteins and lipids. Reagents for extraction include salts, proteases, and phenol-chloroform to denature the substances complexed with nucleic acids. This process must be optimized for specimen type to recover high-quality nucleic acids with good quantitative yield (see Chapter 66). Care must be taken to avoid contamination of specimens with target nucleic acids from other specimens or with amplified targets from specimens that have been analyzed previously in that vicinity. Accordingly, laboratories practicing nucleic acid amplification, especially polymerase chain reaction (PCR), should have separate preamplification, amplification, and postamplification areas with strict rules about personnel movements between them (see Chapters 66 and 70).

Effects of Drugs

Analytic methods that are based on oxidation–reduction reactions may be influenced positively or negatively by ingested substances such as ascorbic acid (vitamin C). This interference is observed in chemical testing of serum on automated analyzers (Meng et al, 2005), and it can also occur in urine testing for glucose (positive interference for reducing substance method; negative interference with enzymatic method). In stool testing for occult blood, peroxidases from meats (myoglobin) or vegetables (horseradish) in the diet can yield a false-positive result with guaiac-based methods, as can topical iodine or chlorine used as a disinfectant.

Drugs can have unanticipated reactions with the reagents intended for specific chemical tests. The list of potential interfering drugs is extremely long, and some methods for a particular analyte may be strongly affected, whereas other methods may not be affected at all. A voluminous compendium of drug interactions has been developed by Dr. Donald S. Young (Young, 2007). In addition to assisting with recognition of potential interferences, this source can be used to evaluate a different method that is unaffected by a particular drug to confirm the accuracy of measurement in cases of suspected interference. These interferences are separated into those whose effects are manifested directly in the assay in vitro and those that are due to drug actions in vivo, whereby physiologic functions are changed (e.g., prolonged prothrombin time with Coumadin; lower potassium in blood with some diuretics).

SPECIMEN COLLECTION

THE TEST ORDER

One of the most frequent preanalytic errors involves selecting the wrong laboratory test or panel of tests, leading to inappropriate interpretation of results (Bonini et al, 2002). Laboratory tests are usually ordered electronically (e.g., computer) or in writing (e.g., paper requisition used to transcribe orders into an information system). Online computer input is the most error-free means of requesting laboratory tests. Verbal requests are made in emergency situations and should be documented on a standard form; after the blood is drawn, an official laboratory request or computerized order should be placed. Physician direct order entry and result retrieval provide prompt and accurate patient care. Patient demographics include patient name, sex, age, date of birth (DOB), date of admission (for inpatients), date of test order, location, and physician. Computerized laboratory information systems (LISs), common in today's laboratories, are used to generate requisitions and specimen labels. Some systems also generate requisitions with the number of tubes and the types of tubes required for collection.

Most laboratories facilitate test ordering by providing access to an electronic laboratory reference manual that lists available tests, types of specimens required, collection methods, color of blood collection tubes used, amounts of blood/body fluid required, turnaround time, reference intervals, test codes, costs, diagnostic information, and so forth. All specimens must be clearly labeled. Preprinted bar code labels applied after proper patient identification, and after the specimen is collected, avoid preanalytic transcription errors. Frequently, the laboratory receives a request for an "add-on test." This is an additional test requested on a previously collected sample. Problems are encountered when the specimen is not the proper type for the add-on requested test, the residual volume is not sufficient to perform the test, or storage conditions result in deterioration of the analyte (e.g., bicarbonate). This is usually due to the presence or absence of a particular anticoagulant or additive. All add-on requests must be documented.

Medicolegal concerns include proper identification of the patient, proper labeling of the specimen, patient consent issues, patient privacy issues, and chain of custody. Laboratories should have clearly written policies for these issues. In addition, policies should describe what to do when a patient refuses to have blood drawn, what to do if the patient was unable to be drawn, what to do if a patient is unavailable, and how to deal with a combative patient, as well as emergency measures for patients who become ill or faint during phlebotomy. The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) ensures the security and privacy of health data and protects the confidentiality of all patient record information, including all laboratory data. Employees must be trained to comply with HIPAA.

TIME OF COLLECTION

Sometimes, samples have to be collected at a specific time. Failure to follow the planned time schedule can lead to erroneous results and misinterpretation of a patient's condition. The most common tests in this category are the ASAP and stat collections. *ASAP* means "as soon as possible," and *stat* is an American medical term meaning "immediately" (from the Latin *statim*). The exact definitions of these terms vary from one laboratory to another. Stat specimens are collected and analyzed immediately. They are given the highest priority and are usually ordered from the emergency department and critical care units (Strasinger & DiLorenzo, 2011). Timed

specimens are ordered for a variety of reasons, usually to monitor changes in a patient's condition, to determine the level of a medication, or to measure how well a substance is metabolized. For example, a physician may want to monitor a cardiac marker to determine if it is rising or decreasing. In therapeutic drug monitoring, trough and peak levels of a drug may be ordered. Trough specimens reflect the lowest level in the blood and are generally drawn 30 minutes before the drug is administered. The peak specimen is drawn shortly after the medication is given; the actual collection time varies by medication. Drug manufacturers specify the length of time that must pass between trough and peak collection times.

SPECIMEN ACCEPTABILITY AND IDENTIFICATION ISSUES

All specimens must be collected, labeled, transported, and processed according to established procedures that include sample volume, special handling needs, and container type. Failure to follow specific procedures can result in specimen rejection. Inappropriate specimen type, wrong preservative, hemolysis, lipemia, clots, and so on, are reasons for rejection. Specimen rejection is costly and time-consuming.

An incorrect sample collection may harm the patient, especially when the blood sample in the tube is mislabeled. The first goal of The Joint Commission 2015 Laboratory National Patient Safety Goals is to "identify patients correctly" (http://www.jointcommission.org/standards_information/npsgs.aspx). Patient wristbands that include bar codes or radiofrequency technology promote positive patient identification. A fully integrated, information technology–based preanalytical process has also been described (Barak & Jaschek, 2014). Misidentification of patients during sample collection for transfusion or at the time of transfusion can be a life-threatening medical error. The incidence of patient misidentification at the time of specimen collection has been reported to be approximately 1 in 1000, with 1 in 12,000 patients receiving a unit of blood that was not intended for that individual (Linden et al, 2000; Dzik et al, 2003). Trained phlebotomists appear to have fewer Wrong Blood in Tube (WBIT) errors (1.1 per 1000) than nondedicated staff (2.7 per 1000) (Bolton-Maggs et al, 2015). As a result, the College of American Pathologists requires laboratories to have a plan to reduce the risk of mistransfusion and suggests as options collecting two samples at separate phlebotomy events or utilizing an electronic identification verification system such as an electronic bar code reader for patient identification wristbands (CAP TRM.30575). It is therefore essential to thoroughly train all medical staff in all aspects of patient identification, specimen collection, transportation, and processing. Box 3-1 lists various reasons for specimen rejection.

BLOOD COLLECTION OVERVIEW

Venipuncture is performed using a needle/adapter assembly attached to an evacuated glass/plastic test tube with a rubber/plastic stopper. Blood may also be collected in a syringe and transferred to the appropriate specimen container (evacuated tube system). A syringe may be helpful when procuring a specimen from the hand or ankle or from small children. In addition, patients with small or poor veins may experience collapse of veins with use of an evacuated tube system. AccuVein (AccuVein LLC, Huntington, N.Y.) is a handheld medical device that helps medical staff visualize veins before phlebotomy. The device emits infrared light and is held about 7 inches over the potential phlebotomy site. Hb in the blood absorbs infrared light and projects an image map of the veins onto the patient's overlying skin. The device is able to distinguish between Hb in the veins and surrounding tissue. This device assists the phlebotomist in determining the best site for needle placement, especially for challenging patients such as the elderly, the obese, burn victims, oncology patients, and patients with other chronic diseases requiring many diagnostic or therapeutic procedures (http://www.accuvein.com).

Blood collection tubes have color-coded stoppers that distinguish the presence of a specific anticoagulant or additive, how the tube is chemically cleaned (e.g., for lead or iron determinations), or if the tube does not contain any additives. Table 3-4 lists the most frequently used anticoagulants/additives based on color-coded tube stoppers. Tubes also come in various sizes for adult and pediatric patient populations. Draw volume is determined by the internal vacuum within the sealed tubes (e.g., 3.5, 4.0, 4.5, or 8.5 mL). By using anticoagulants, plasma (obtained by centrifugation) or whole blood can be analyzed. Plasma contains fibrinogen, which is missing from serum. Many laboratories have converted from glass to plastic collection tubes to minimize exposure to biohazardous material (e.g., blood) and broken glass; to lower biohazard waste disposal costs; and to comply with Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) guidelines mandating substitution. This change from glass to plastic has required a modification in the order of draw. Glass or plastic tubes with additives, including gel tubes, are drawn after the citrate tube (blue top) to avoid interference with coagulation measurements (Box 3-2). Glass or plastic serum tubes, without a clot activator or gel separator, may be drawn before the coagulation tubes are drawn, consistent with Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) guidelines (GP41-A6) (Ernst & Calam, 2004).

ANTICOAGULANTS AND ADDITIVES

Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) is the anticoagulant of choice for hematology cell counts and cell morphology. It is available in lavender-top tubes as a liquid or is spray-dried in the dipotassium or tripotassium salt form (K_2EDTA in plastic, spray-dried, and K_3EDTA in liquid form in glass tubes). K_3EDTA is a liquid and will dilute the sample about 1% to 2%. K_2EDTA is spray-dried on the walls of the tube and will not dilute the sample. Pink-top tubes also contain EDTA. The EDTA is spray-dried K_2EDTA. Pink tubes are used in immunohematology for ABO grouping, Rh typing, and antibody screening. These tubes have a special cross-match label for information required by the American Association of Blood Banks (AABB) and are approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for blood bank collections. White-top tubes also contain EDTA and gel. They are used most often for molecular diagnostic testing of plasma.

For coagulation testing, a light blue–top tube containing 0.105 M or 0.129 M (3.2% or 3.8%, respectively) sodium citrate is commonly used because it preserves the labile coagulation factors. Coagulation tests require the correct ratio of blood and anticoagulant; thus containers should be adequately filled. An insufficient blood collection volume yields excess citrate in plasma and falsely elevated clotting times. This interference is also important in polycythemia, when the hematocrit is abnormally high and the volume of plasma (where citrate distributes) is small. Thus even in an apparently correctly filled tube, polycythemia can lead to falsely prolonged PT and PTT unless the amount of citrate anticoagulant in the tube is reduced proportionally to the decrease in plasma volume. A discard tube (i.e., a partially filled tube that is discarded prior to collecting the one used for testing) is normally only needed when the sample is drawn from a winged set or intravenous catheter; this is because the air space in these collection systems leads to underfilling the first tube (Favaloro et al, 2012). Black-top tubes also contain buffered sodium citrate and are generally used for Westergren sedimentation rates, as are lavender-top tubes. They differ from light blue–top tubes in that the ratio of blood to anticoagulant is 4:1 in the black-top tubes and 9:1 in the light blue–top tubes.

Heparin, a mucoitin polysulfuric acid, is an effective anticoagulant in small quantities without significant effect on many determinations. Heparin was originally isolated from liver cells by scientists looking for an anticoagulant that could work safely in humans. Heparin is available as lithium heparin (LiHep) and sodium heparin (NaHep) in green-top tubes. Heparin accelerates the action of antithrombin III, neutralizing thrombin

BOX 3-1

Reasons for Specimen Rejection

Hemolysis/lipemia
Clots present in an anticoagulated specimen
Nonfasting specimen when test requires fasting
Improper blood collection tube
Short draws, wrong volume
Improper transport conditions (ice for blood gases)
Discrepancies between requisition and specimen label
Unlabeled or mislabeled specimen
Contaminated specimen/leaking container

BOX 3-2

Order of Draw: Evacuated Tube and Syringe

1. Blood-culture tubes (yellow)
2. Coagulation sodium citrate tube (blue stopper)
3. Serum tubes with or without clot activator or gel separator
4. Heparin tubes with or without gel (green stopper)
5. Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid tubes (lavender stopper)
6. Glycolytic inhibitor tubes (gray stopper)

TABLE 3-4
Tube Color and Anticoagulant/Additive

Stopper Color	Anticoagulant/Additive	Specimen Type/Use	Mechanism of Action
Red (glass)	None	Serum/chemistry and serology	N/A
Red (plastic/Hemogard)	Clot activator	Serum/chemistry and serology	Silica clot activator
Lavender (glass)	K_3EDTA in liquid form	Whole blood/hematology	Chelates (binds) calcium
Lavender (plastic)	K_2EDTA/spray-dried	Whole blood/hematology	Chelates (binds) calcium
Pink	Spray-dried K_2EDTA	Whole blood/blood bank and molecular diagnostics	Chelates (binds) calcium
White	EDTA and gel	Plasma/molecular diagnostics	Chelates (binds) calcium
Light blue	Sodium citrate	Plasma/coagulation	Chelates (binds) calcium
Light blue	Thrombin and soybean trypsin inhibitor	Plasma/coagulation	Fibrin degradation products
Black	Sodium citrate	Plasma/sed rates—hematology	Chelates (binds) calcium
Light green/black	Lithium heparin and gel	Plasma/chemistry	Inhibits thrombin formation
Green	Sodium heparin, lithium heparin	Plasma/chemistry	Inhibits thrombin formation
Royal blue	Sodium heparin, K_2EDTA	Plasma/chemistry/toxicology	Heparin inhibits thrombin formation Na_2EDTA binds calcium
Gray	Sodium fluoride/potassium oxalate	Plasma/glucose testing	Inhibits glycolysis
Yellow	Sterile containing sodium polyanetholesulfonate	Serum/microbiology culture	Aids in bacterial recovery by inhibiting complement, phagocytes, and certain antibiotics
Yellow	Acid citrate dextrose	Plasma/blood bank, HLA phenotyping, and paternity testing	WBC preservative
Tan (glass)	Sodium heparin	Plasma/lead testing	Inhibits thrombin formation
Tan (plastic)	K_2EDTA	Plasma/lead testing	Chelates (binds) calcium
Yellow/gray and orange	Thrombin	Serum/chemistry	Clot activator
Red/gray and gold	Clot activator separation gel	Serum/chemistry	Silica clot activator

EDTA, Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; *HLA,* human leukocyte antigen; *K_2EDTA,* dipotassium form of EDTA; *K_3EDTA,* tripotassium form of EDTA; *N/A,* not applicable; *Na_2EDTA,* disodium EDTA; *WBC,* white blood cell.

and preventing the formation of fibrin. Heparin has an advantage over EDTA as an anticoagulant, in that it does not affect levels of ions such as calcium. However, heparin can interfere with some immunoassays. Heparin should not be used for coagulation or hematology testing. Heparinized plasma is preferred for potassium measurements to avoid an elevation due to the release of potassium from platelets as the blood clots (Garza, 2014). Lithium heparin may be used for most chemistry tests except for lithium and folate levels; for lithium, a serum specimen can be used instead. Sodium heparin cannot be used for assays measuring sodium levels, but it is recommended for trace elements, leads, and toxicology. Sodium heparin is the injectable form used for anticoagulant therapy.

Gray-top tubes are generally used for glucose measurements because they contain a preservative or antiglycolytic agent, such as sodium fluoride, which prevents glycolysis for 3 days (Strasinger & DiLorenzo, 2011). In bacterial septicemia, fluoride inhibition of glycolysis is neither adequate nor effective in preserving glucose concentration. Red-top tubes have no additive, so blood collected in these tubes clots.

Red-top tubes can be used for most chemistry, blood bank, and immunology assays. Integrated serum separator tubes are available for isolating serum from whole blood. During centrifugation, blood is forced into a thixotropic gel material located at the base of the tube. The gel undergoes a temporary change in viscosity during centrifugation and lodges between the packed cells and the top serum layer (Strasinger & DiLorenzo, 2011). Pediatric-sized tubes are also available. Advantages of serum separator tubes include (1) ease of use, (2) shorter processing time through clot activation, (3) higher serum yield, (4) minimal liberation of potentially hazardous aerosols, (5) only one centrifugation step, (6) use of single tube (same one as patient specimen), and (7) ease of a single label. A unique advantage is that centrifuged specimens can be transported without disturbing the separation. Some silica gel serum separation tubes may give rise to minute particles that can cause flow problems during analysis. Filtering the serum solves the problem.

A few specialized tubes exist. Red/gray- and gold-top tubes contain a clot activator and a separation gel. These tubes are referred to as *serum separator tubes* (SSTs) and are used most often for chemistry tests. Therapeutic drug monitoring specimens should not be collected in tubes that contain gel separators because some gels absorb certain drugs, causing a falsely lowered result. Significant decreases in phenytoin, phenobarbital, lidocaine, quinidine, and carbamazepine have been reported when stored in Vacutainer SST tubes (Becton, Dickinson and Company [BD], Franklin Lakes, N.J.), while no changes were noted in theophylline and salicylate levels. Storage in standard red-top Vacutainer collection tubes without barrier gels did not affect measured levels of the above therapeutic drugs (Dasgupta et al, 1994). Studies indicate that this absorption is time dependent, and therefore speed in processing minimizes absorption. Acrylic-based gels do not exhibit the absorption problems associated with silicone and polyester gels (Garza, 2014).

Tubes containing gels are not used in the blood bank or for immunologic testing because the gel may interfere with the immunologic reactions (Strasinger & DiLorenzo, 2011). Clotting time for tubes using gel separators is approximately 30 minutes, and tubes that have clot activators, such as thrombin, will clot in 5 minutes. Plain red-stoppered tubes with no additives take about 60 minutes to clot completely (Strasinger & DiLorenzo, 2011).

Anticoagulants may affect the transport of water between cell and plasma, thereby altering cell size and constituent plasma concentration. Oxalate anticoagulants may shrink red cells; thus blood anticoagulated with oxalate cannot be used to measure hematocrit. Combined ammonium/potassium oxalate does not have the same effect of shrinking cells.

EDTA, citrate, and oxalate chelate calcium, thereby lowering calcium levels. Fluoride, used for glucose determinations, prevents glycolysis by forming an ionic complex with Mg^{++}, thereby inhibiting the Mg^{++}-dependent enzyme, enolase (Young, 2007). Table 3-5 lists anticoagulants/additives and their effects on various blood tests.

Sample transfer between tubes. A serious error that is sometimes encountered in sample collection occurs when a portion of a sample in the EDTA-containing lavender-top tube for hematological analysis is poured into a red-top tube for clinical chemistry analysis. EDTA is a potassium salt, artificially increasing the potassium concentration of the sample to values around 25 meq/L, a value that would be incompatible with life. EDTA itself is an ion exchanger that exchanges potassium for calcium. Calcium levels are therefore greatly reduced in the red-top tube sample to values as low as 0. Very low calcium levels and very high potassium levels in red-top tube samples should be taken as a flag for an error due to EDTA contamination.

BLOOD COLLECTION DEVICES

The most common blood collection system uses a vacuum to pull blood into a container; it consists of a color-coded evacuated collection tube, a

TABLE 3-5
Anticoagulant/Additive Effect on Blood Tests

Additive	Test	Effect
EDTA	Alkaline phosphatase	Inhibits
	Creatine kinase	Inhibits
	Leucine aminopeptidase	Inhibits
	Calcium and iron	Decrease
	PT and PTT	Increase
	Sodium and potassium	Increase
	Platelet aggregation	Prevents
Oxalate	Acid phosphatase	Inhibits
	Alkaline phosphatase	Inhibits
	Amylase	Inhibits
	LD	Inhibits
	Calcium	Decreases
	Sodium and potassium	Increase
	Cell morphology	Distorts
Citrate	ALT and AST	Inhibit
	Alkaline phosphatase	Inhibits
	Acid phosphatase	Stimulates
	Amylase	Decreases
	Calcium	Decreases
	Sodium and potassium	Increase
	Labile coagulation factors	Preserve
Heparin	Triiodothyronine	Increases
	Thyroxine	Increases
	PT and PTT	Increase
	Wright's stain	Causes blue background
	Lithium (LiHep tubes only)	Increases
	Sodium (NaHep tubes only)	Increases
Fluorides	Acid phosphatase	Decreases
	Alkaline phosphatase	Decreases
	Amylase	Decreases
	Creatine kinase	Decreases
	ALT and AST	Decrease
	Cell morphology	Distorts

ALT, Alanine aminotransferase; *AST,* aspartate aminotransferase; *EDTA,* ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase; *LiHep,* lithium heparin; *NaHep,* sodium heparin; *PT,* prothrombin time; *PTT,* partial thromboplastin time.

double-headed needle, and an adapter/holder. Small tubes are available for pediatric and geriatric collections. The blood collection holder accommodates various sizes (gauge) of blood collection needles. Needles vary from large (16 gauge) to small (23 gauge). Several types of holders have been designed to eject the needle after use. OSHA policies require that the adapters be discarded with the used needle (OSHA, 2002). Pediatric inserts are available for adapters and accommodate the smaller-diameter pediatric blood collection tubes. Also available are a variety of safety needles that cover the needle after use or retract the needle before it is discarded.

Winged infusion sets (butterfly needles) can be used when blood has to be collected from a very small vein. Butterfly needles come in 21, 23, and 25 gauge. These needles have plastic wings attached to the end of the needle that aid in insertion of the needle into the small vein. Tubing is attached to the back end of the needle, which terminates with an adapter for attachment to a syringe or evacuated collection holder. A retractable needle design has significantly reduced needlestick injuries (Hotaling, 2009).

Blood collected in a syringe can be transferred to an evacuated tube. Special syringe safety shield devices are available to avoid unnecessary contact with the blood sample. If blood requires anticoagulation, speed becomes an important factor, and the blood must be transferred before clot formation begins. Once the blood has been transferred, the anticoagulated tube must be thoroughly mixed to avoid small clot formation.

Several additional pieces of phlebotomy equipment are necessary. A tourniquet, usually a flat latex strip or piece of tubing, is wrapped around the arm to occlude the vein before blood collection and is discarded after each phlebotomy. OSHA guidelines state that gloves should be worn when performing phlebotomy and should be changed between patients. Gloves are available in various sizes and are made of various materials to avoid latex sensitivity as experienced by some individuals. Other supplies include gauze pads, alcohol or iodine wipes for disinfection of the puncture site, and a Band-Aid (Johnson & Johnson, New Brunswick, N.J.) to prevent bleeding after completion of the phlebotomy.

BLOOD STORAGE AND PRESERVATION

During storage, the concentration of a blood constituent in the specimen may change as a result of various processes, including adsorption to glass or plastic tubes, protein denaturation, evaporation of volatile compounds, water movement into cells resulting in hemoconcentration of serum and plasma, and continuing metabolic activities of leukocytes and erythrocytes. These changes occur, although to varying degrees, at ambient temperature and during refrigeration or freezing. Storage requirements vary widely by analyte.

Stability studies have shown that clinically significant analyte changes occur if serum or plasma remains in prolonged contact with blood cells. After separation from blood cells, analytes have the same stability in plasma and serum when stored under the same conditions. Glucose concentration in unseparated serum and plasma decreases rapidly in the first 24 hours and more slowly thereafter. This decrease is more pronounced in plasma. Two approaches have been used to minimize this effect. First, the serum or plasma may be rapidly separated from the red cells, or the specimen may be collected in a fluoride tube to inhibit glycolysis of the red blood cells, thereby stabilizing the glucose level during transport and storage. Fluoride has little effect on reducing glycolysis within the first hour of storage and may not reach complete inhibition until 4 hours of storage. One study has demonstrated a reduction in glucose concentration by 0.39 mmol/L in specimens collected in fluoride that are not immediately separated. These authors suggest that specimens collected in fluoride have a negative bias in blood glucose levels (Shi et al, 2009). Lactate levels increase, and a greater rise is seen in plasma than in serum. Chloride and total carbon dioxide (CO_2) show a steady decrease over 56 hours, with the degree of change more pronounced in plasma. K^+ is reported to be stable for up to 24 hours, after which a rapid increase takes place. The degree of change is slightly more pronounced in plasma. Unseparated serum and plasma yield clinically significant increases in total bilirubin, sodium, urea, nitrogen, albumin, calcium, magnesium, and total protein. These changes are attributed to movement of water into cells after 24 hours, resulting in hemoconcentration (Boyanton & Blick, 2002). Other studies found potassium, phosphorus, and glucose to be the analytes that were least stable in serum not removed from the clot within 30 minutes. Albumin, bicarbonate, chloride, C-peptide, HDL-cholesterol, iron, LDL-cholesterol, and total protein were found to be unstable after 6 hours when the serum was not separated from the clot (Zhang et al, 1998).

When serum and plasma are not removed from the cells, lipids (such as cholesterol) and some enzymes increase over time, with the change more pronounced in plasma than in serum. LD activity continuously increases over 56 hours. AST, ALT, and CK were found to be stable over 56 hours. GGT activity in plasma, with and without prolonged contact with cells, was found to be 27% lower than in serum at 0.5 hours; however, plasma GGT activity steadily increases with prolonged exposure to cells. Creatinine can increase by 110% in plasma and by 60% in serum after 48 to 56 hours (Boyanton & Blick, 2002).

Serum and plasma may yield significantly different results for an analyte. For example, when serum and EDTA plasma results for parathyroid hormone (PTH) are compared from specimens frozen within 30 minutes of collection, EDTA plasma results are significantly higher (>19%) than those obtained from serum (Omar et al, 2001). The effect of freeze–thaw cycles on constituent stability is an important consideration. In plasma or serum specimens, the ice crystals formed cause shear effects that are disruptive to molecular structure(s), particularly to large protein molecules. Slow freezing allows larger crystals to form, causing more serious degradative effects. Thus quick freezing is recommended for optimal stability.

IMPORTANCE OF POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

It is essential to establish institution-specific phlebotomy policies and procedures that include personnel standards with qualifications; dress code and evaluation procedures; safety protocols, including immunization recommendations; universal precautions; needlestick and sharps information; personal protective equipment; test order procedures; patient identification; confidentiality and preparation; documentation of problems encountered during blood collection; needlestick site selection and areas to be avoided (mastectomy side, edematous area, burned/scarred areas, etc.); anticoagulants required and tube color; order of draw; special requirements for patient isolation units; and specimen transport. The laboratory should have available all CDC, College of American Pathologists (CAP), Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI), OSHA, and The Joint Commission (TJC) guidelines, as well as other government regulations

pertaining to laboratory testing. All employees must be trained about safety procedures, and a written blood-borne pathogen exposure control plan must be available. See Chapter 1 for a more complete discussion of safety.

The OSHA Bloodborne Pathogens Standard concluded that the best practice for prevention of needlestick injury following phlebotomy is the use of a sharp with engineered sharps injury protection (SESIP) attached to the blood tube holder and immediate disposal of the entire unit after each patient's blood is drawn (OSHA, 2001). Information on exposure prevention can be found on the Exposure Prevention Information Network (EPINet), a database coordinated by the International Healthcare Worker Safety Center at the University of Virginia (http://www.healthsystem.virginia.edu/internet/epinet/). OSHA further mandates that employers make available closable, puncture-resistant, leak-proof sharps containers that are labeled and color-coded. The containers must have an opening that is large enough to accommodate disposal of the entire blood collection assembly (i.e., blood tube, holder, and needle). These containers must be easily accessible to employees in the immediate area of use, and if employees travel from one location to another (one patient room to another), they must be provided with a sharps container that is conveniently placed at each location/facility. Employers must maintain a sharps injury log to record percutaneous injuries from contaminated sharps, while at the same time protecting the confidentiality of the injured employee.

BLOOD COLLECTION TECHNIQUES

Box 3-3 summarizes the technique for obtaining blood from a vein (CLSI GP41-A6, 2007).

BOX 3-3

Venous Puncture Technique

1. Verify that computer-printed labels match requisitions. Check patient identification band against labels and requisition forms. Ask the patient for his or her full name, address, identification number, and/or date of birth.
2. If a fasting specimen or a dietary restriction is required, confirm patient has fasted or eliminated foods from diet as ordered by physician.
3. Position the patient properly. Assemble equipment and supplies.
4. Apply a tourniquet and ask the patient to make a fist without vigorous hand pumping. Select a suitable vein for puncture.
5. Put on gloves with consideration of latex allergy for the patient.
6. Cleanse the venipuncture site with 70% isopropyl alcohol. Allow the area to dry.
7. Anchor the vein firmly.
8. Enter the skin with the needle at approximately a 30-degree angle or less to the arm, with the bevel of the needle up:
   a. Follow the geography of the vein with the needle.
   b. Insert the needle smoothly and fairly rapidly to minimize patient discomfort.
   c. If using a syringe, pull back on the barrel with a slow, even tension as blood flows into the syringe. Do not pull back too quickly to avoid hemolysis or collapsing the vein.
   d. If using an evacuated system, as soon as the needle is in the vein, ease the tube forward in the holder as far as it will go, firmly securing the needle holder in place. When the tube has filled, remove it by grasping the end of the tube and pulling gently to withdraw, and gently invert tubes containing additives.
9. Release the tourniquet when blood begins to flow. Never withdraw the needle without removing the tourniquet.
10. Withdraw the needle, and then apply pressure to the site. Apply adhesive bandage strip over a cotton ball or gauze to adequately stop bleeding and to avoid a hematoma.
11. Mix and invert tubes with anticoagulant; do not shake the tubes. Check condition of the patient. Dispose of contaminated material in designated containers (sharps container) using Universal Precautions.
12. Label the tubes before leaving patient's side with:
    a. patient's first and last name
    b. identification number
    c. date of collection
    d. time of collection
    e. identification of person collecting specimen
13. Deliver tubes of blood for testing to appropriate laboratory section or central receiving and processing area.

ARTERIAL PUNCTURE

Arterial punctures are technically more difficult to perform than venous punctures. Increased pressure in the arteries makes it more difficult to stop bleeding, with the undesired development of a hematoma. In order of preference, the radial, brachial, and femoral arteries can be selected.

Before blood is collected from the radial artery in the wrist, one should do a modified Allen test (Box 3-4) to determine whether the ulnar artery can provide collateral circulation to the hand after the radial artery puncture. The femoral artery is relatively large and easy to puncture, but one must be especially careful in older individuals because the femoral artery can bleed more than the radial or brachial. Because the bleeding site is hidden by bedcovers, it may not be noticed until bleeding is massive. The radial artery is more difficult to puncture, but complications occur less frequently. The major complications of arterial puncture include thrombosis, hemorrhage, and possible infection. When performed correctly, no significant complications are reported except for possible hematomas.

Unacceptable sites are those that are irritated, edematous, near a wound, or in an area of an arteriovenous (AV) shunt or fistula (McCall & Tankersley, 1993). Arterial spasm is a reflex constriction that restricts blood flow with possible severe consequences for circulation and tissue perfusion. Radial artery puncture can be painful and is associated with symptoms such as aching, throbbing, tenderness, sharp sensation, and cramping. At times, it may be impractical or impossible to obtain arterial blood from a patient for blood gas analysis. Under these circumstances, another source of blood can be used, with the recognition that arterial blood provides a more accurate result. Although venous blood is more readily obtained, it usually reflects the acid-base status of an extremity—not the body as a whole.

Arterial Puncture Technique

The artery to be punctured is identified by its pulsations, and the overlying skin is cleansed with 70% aqueous isopropanol solution followed by iodine. A nonanesthetized arterial puncture provides an accurate measurement of resting pH and partial pressure of carbon dioxide (pCO_2) in spite of possible theoretical error caused by patient hyperventilation resulting from the pain of the arterial puncture. The use of butterfly infusion sets is not recommended. Using 19-gauge versus 25-gauge needles does not vary the pCO_2 or the partial pressure of oxygen (pO_2) by more than 1 mm Hg. The amount of anticoagulant should be 0.05 mL liquid heparin (1000 IU/mL) for each milliliter of blood. Using too much heparin is probably the most common preanalytic error in blood gas measurement (Garza, 2014). Box 3-5 lists the procedure for arterial puncture (CLSI GP43-A4, 2004).

FINGER OR HEEL SKIN PUNCTURE

For routine assays requiring small amounts of blood, skin puncture is a simple method by which to collect blood samples in pediatric patients. In the neonate, skin puncture of the heel is the preferred site to collect a blood sample; in older children, the finger is the preferred site. The large amount of blood required for repeated venipunctures may cause iatrogenic anemia, especially in premature infants. Venipuncture of deep veins in pediatric patients may rarely cause cardiac arrest, hemorrhage, venous thrombosis, reflex arteriospasm followed by gangrene of an extremity, damage to organs or tissues accidentally punctured, infection, and injury caused by restraining an infant or child during collection. Accessible veins in sick infants must be reserved exclusively for parenteral therapy. Skin puncture is useful in adults with extreme obesity, severe burns, and thrombotic tendencies, with point-of-care testing or with patients performing

BOX 3-4

Modified Allen Test

1. Have the patient make a fist and occlude both the ulnar (opposite the thumb side) and the radial arteries (closest to the thumb) by compressing with two fingers over each artery.
2. Have the patient open his or her fist, and observe if the patient's palm has become bleached of blood.
3. Release the pressure on the ulnar artery (farthest from the thumb) only, and note if blood return is present. The palm should become perfused with blood. Adequate perfusion is a positive test indicating that arterial blood may be drawn from the radial artery. Blood should not be taken if the test is negative. Serious consequences may occur if this procedure is not followed, which may result in loss of the hand or its function.

BOX 3-5

Arterial Puncture Procedure

1. Prepare the arterial blood gas syringe according to established procedures. The needle (18-20 gauge for brachial artery) should pierce the skin at an angle of approximately 45 to 60 degrees (90 degrees for femoral artery) in a slow and deliberate manner. Some degree of dorsiflexion of the wrist is necessary with the radial artery, for which a 23- to 25-gauge needle is used. The pulsations of blood into the syringe confirm that it will fill by arterial pressure alone.
2. After the required blood is collected, place dry gauze over the puncture site, and quickly withdraw the needle and the collection device.
3. Compress the puncture site quickly, expel air from the syringe, and activate the needle safety feature; discard into sharps container.
4. Mix specimen thoroughly by gently rotating or inverting the syringe to ensure anticoagulation.
5. Place in ice water (or other coolant that will maintain a temperature of 1°C to 5°C) to minimize leukocyte consumption of oxygen.
6. Continue compression with a sterile gauze pad for a minimum of 3 to 5 minutes (timed). Apply an adhesive bandage.

BOX 3-6

Skin Puncture Technique

1. Select an appropriate puncture site.
   a. For infants younger than 12 months old, this is most usually the lateral or medial plantar heel surface.
   b. For infants older than 12 months, children, and adults, the palmar surface of the last digit of the second, third, or fourth finger may be used.
   c. The thumb and fifth finger must not be used, and the site of puncture must not be edematous or a previous puncture site because of accumulated tissue fluid.
2. Warm the puncture site with a warm, moist towel no hotter than 42°C; this increases the blood flow through arterioles and capillaries and results in arterial-enriched blood.
3. Cleanse the puncture site with 70% aqueous isopropanol solution. Allow the area to dry. Do not touch the swabbed area with any nonsterile object.
4. Make the puncture with a sterile lancet or other skin-puncturing device, using a single deliberate motion nearly perpendicular to the skin surface. For a heel puncture, hold the heel with the forefinger at the arch and the thumb proximal to the puncture site at the ankle. If using a lancet, the blade should not be longer than 2 mm to avoid injury to the calcaneus (heel bone).
5. Discard the first drop of blood by wiping it away with a sterile pad. Regulate further blood flow by gentle thumb pressure. Do not milk the site, as this may cause hemolysis and introduce excess tissue fluid.
6. Collect the specimen in a suitable container by capillary action. Closed systems are available for collection of nonanticoagulated blood and with additives for whole blood analysis. Open-ended, narrow-bore disposable glass micropipettes are most often used up to volumes of 200 µL. Both heparinized and nonheparinized micropipettes are available. Use the appropriate anticoagulant for the test ordered. Mix the specimen as necessary.
7. Apply pressure and dispose of the puncture device.
8. Label the specimen container with date and time of collection and patient demographics.
9. Indicate in the report that test results are from skin puncture.

tests at home (blood glucose). Skin puncture is often preferred in geriatric patients because the skin is thinner and less elastic; thus a hematoma is more likely to occur from a venipuncture.

In newborns, skin puncture of the heel is frequently used to collect a sample for newborn screening tests for inherited metabolic disorders. A deep heel prick is made at the distal edge of the calcaneal protuberance following a 5- to 10-minute exposure period to prewarmed water. The best method for blood gas collection in the newborn remains the indwelling umbilical artery catheter. Box 3-6 lists the steps for a skin puncture (CLSI GP42-A6, 2008).

CENTRAL VENOUS ACCESS DEVICES

Central venous access devices (CVADs) provide ready access to the patient's circulation, eliminating multiple phlebotomies, and are especially useful in critical care and surgical situations. Indwelling catheters are surgically inserted into the cephalic vein or into the internal jugular, subclavian, or femoral vein and can be used to draw blood, administer drugs or blood products, and provide total parenteral nutrition. Continuous, real-time, intraarterial monitoring of blood gases and acid-base status has been accomplished with fiberoptic channels containing fluorescent and absorbent chemical analytes (Smith et al, 1992).

BOX 3-7

Order of Draw from Catheter Lines

1. Draw 3 to 5 mL in a syringe and discard.
2. Blood for blood culture
3. Blood for anticoagulated tubes (lavender, green, light blue, etc.)
4. Blood for clot tubes (red, SST, etc.)

SST, Serum separator tube.

CVA Collection Technique

Blood specimens drawn from catheters may be contaminated with whatever was administered or infused via the catheter. The solution (usually heparin) used to maintain patency of the vein must be cleared before blood for analysis is collected. Sufficient blood (minimum of 2-5 mL) must be withdrawn to clear the line, so laboratory data are reliable. Specialized training is therefore necessary before a catheter line is used to collect blood specimens. To obtain a blood specimen from the indwelling catheter, 5 mL of intravenous fluid is first drawn and discarded. In a separate syringe, the amount of blood required for the requested laboratory procedure(s) is then drawn. Strict aseptic technique must be followed to avoid site and/or catheter contamination. Coagulation measurements such as prothrombin time (PT), activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT), and thrombin time (TT) are extremely sensitive to heparin interference, so even larger volumes of presample blood must be withdrawn before laboratory results are acceptable for these tests. The appropriate volume to be discarded should be established by each laboratory.

The laboratory is sometimes asked to perform blood culture studies on blood drawn from indwelling catheters. Because the indwelling catheters are in place for a few days, this procedure is not recommended because organisms that grow on the walls of the catheter can contaminate the blood specimen. Lines, such as central venous pressure (CVP) lines, are specifically inserted and used for immediate blood product infusion and are less likely to become contaminated. Determination of catheter contamination requires special handling and careful analysis of multiple samples from the catheter and peripheral blood. Box 3-7 lists the order of draw from catheter lines.

URINE AND OTHER BODY FLUIDS COLLECTION

URINE

Collection and preservation of urine for analytic testing must follow a carefully prescribed procedure to ensure valid results. Laboratory testing of urine generally falls into three categories: chemical, bacteriologic, and microscopic examinations. Several kinds of collection are used for urine specimens: random, clean catch, timed, 24 hour, and catheterized. Random specimens may be collected at any time, but a first-morning-voided aliquot is optimal for constituent concentration, because it is usually the most concentrated and has a lower pH caused by decreased respiration during sleep. Random urine specimens should be collected in a chemically clean receptacle, either glass or plastic. A clean-catch midstream specimen is most desirable for bacteriologic examinations. Proper collection of a clean-catch specimen requires that the patient first clean the external genitalia with an antiseptic wipe; the patient next begins urination, stops midstream, and discards this first portion of urine, then collects the remaining urine in a sterile container. The vessel is tightly sealed, is labeled with the patient's name and date of collection, and is submitted for analysis. A urine transfer straw kit for midstream specimens (BD Vacutainer) can be used to remove an aliquot from the sterile collection container, which then can be transported to the laboratory. The system consists of an adapter that attaches to a yellow evacuated sterile tube. The vacuum draws the urine into the sterile tube. The adapter assembly must be treated like a needle assembly system and be discarded into a biohazard container. A similar product is available for cultures; it uses a sterile gray-top tube containing 6.7 mg/L of boric acid and 3.335 mg/L of sodium formate, along with the adapter device described previously (BD Vacutainer).

Timed specimens are obtained at designated intervals, starting from "time zero." Collection time is noted on each subsequent container. Urine specimens for a 24-hour total volume collection are most difficult to obtain and require patient cooperation. Incomplete collection is the most frequent problem. In some instances, too much sample is collected. In-hospital collection is usually supervised by nurses and generally is more reliable than outpatient collection. Pediatric collections require special attention to avoid stool contamination. One can avoid problems in collecting 24-hour specimens by giving patients complete written and verbal instructions with a warning that the test can be invalidated by incorrect collection technique. The preferred container is unbreakable, measures 4 L (approximately), is plastic, and is chemically clean, with the correct preservative already added. One should remind the patient to discard the first morning specimen, record the time, and collect every subsequent voiding for the next 24 hours. An easy approach is to instruct the patient to start with an empty bladder and to end with an empty bladder. Overcollection occurs if the first morning specimen is included in this routine. The total volume collected is measured and recorded on the request form, the entire 24-hour specimen is thoroughly mixed, and a 40-mL aliquot is submitted for analysis.

It is difficult to determine whether a collection is complete. If results appear clinically invalid, this is cause for suspicion. Because creatinine excretion is based on muscle mass, and because a patient's muscle mass is relatively constant, creatinine excretion is also reasonably constant. Therefore, one can measure creatinine on several 24-hour collections to assess the completeness of the specimen and keep this as part of the patient's record. One- and 2-hour timed collection specimens may suffice in some instances, depending on the analyte being measured. Urobilinogen is subject to diurnal variation, with the highest levels reached in the afternoon. Commonly, urine is collected from 2 to 4 PM, when a quantification of urobilinogen is requested.

Special Urine Collection Techniques

Catheterization of the urethra and bladder may cause infection but is necessary in some patients (e.g., for urine collection when patients are unable to void or control micturition). Ureteral catheters can also be inserted via a cystoscope into the ureter. Bladder urine is collected first, followed by a bladder washing. Ureteral urine specimens are useful in differentiating bladder from kidney infection or for differential ureteral analysis, and may be obtained separately from each kidney pelvis (labeled left and right). First morning urine is optimal for cytologic examination.

Urine Storage and Preservation

Preservation of a urine specimen is essential to maintain its integrity. Unpreserved urine specimens are subject both to microbiologic decomposition and to inherent chemical changes. Table 3-6 lists common changes that occur as urine decomposes. To prevent growth of microbes, the specimen should be refrigerated promptly after collection and, when necessary, should contain the indicated chemical preservative. For some determinations, the addition of a chemical preservative may be best to maintain analytes when performing 24-hour urine collections. If a preservative is added to the empty collection bottle, particularly if acid preservatives are used, a warning label is placed on the bottle. The concentrated acid adds a risk of potential chemical burns; the patient should be warned about this potential danger, and the container labeled accordingly. In this scenario, the clinician must assess the patient's risk of exposure to the preservative; therefore, refrigeration may be more appropriate, and the preservative may be added upon submission to the laboratory. Light-sensitive compounds, such as bilirubin, are protected in amber plastic bottles. Precipitation of calcium and phosphates occurs unless the urine is acidified adequately before analysis.

It is particularly important to use freshly voided and concentrated urine to identify casts and red and white blood cells, as these undergo decomposition upon storage at room temperature or with decreased concentration (<1.015 specific gravity). They disappear rapidly in hypotonic and alkaline urine. Bilirubin and urobilinogen decrease, especially after exposure to light. Glucose and ketones may be consumed, while bacterial contamination and loss of CO_2 lead to increase of pH, formation of turbidity with precipitates, and change in color. Ideally specimens should be delivered to the laboratory and analyzed within 1 hour of collection.

Urine may be frozen in aliquots to be assayed at a later date for chemical analysis only. When repeat testing is expected, the specimen should be stored in multiple aliquots to circumvent specimen degradation as a result of repeated freeze–thawing of a single specimen. Preservatives may also be added, depending on the substance to be tested. Sodium fluoride can be added to 24-hour urine for glucose determinations to inhibit bacterial growth and cell glycolysis but not growth of yeast. About 0.5 g of sodium fluoride is added to a 3- to 4-L container. Sodium fluoride may inhibit reagent (enzyme-embedded) glucose strip tests. Tablets containing formaldehyde, mercury, and benzoate (95-mg tablet/20 mL urine) have also been used; however these preservatives elevate specific gravity (0.002/1 tablet/20 mL). Boric acid in a concentration of 1 g/dL preserves urine elements such as estriol and estrogen for up to 7 days. Boric acid maintains the pH at about 6.0 and preserves protein and formed elements well without interfering with routine testing except for pH. Boric acid is a bacteriostatic preservative, not a bactericidal, and it does not inhibit the growth of yeasts. Boric acid has been reported to interfere with drug and hormone analysis (Strasinger & DiLorenzo, 2001). For catecholamines, vanillylmandelic acid (VMA), or 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5-HIAA) collections, 10 mL of 6N HCl is added to a 3- to 4-L container. The HCl establishes a pH of approximately less than 3.0, which is good for chemical testing. However, the low pH destroys formed elements and enhances uric acid precipitation. Table 3-7 lists preservatives commonly used for 24-hour urine specimens. The CLSI-approved guidelines for urinalysis and collection, transportation, and preservation of urine specimens provide useful information on various preservatives recommended for 24-hour urine collections (CLSI, 2009).

TABLE 3-6
Changes in Urine with Delayed Testing

Result	Reason
Changes in color	Breakdown or alteration of chromogen or other urine constituent (e.g., hemoglobin, melanin, homogentisic acid, porphyrins)
Changes in odor	Bacterial growth, decomposition
Increased turbidity	Increased bacteria, crystal formation, precipitation of amorphous material
Falsely low pH	Glucose converted to acids and alcohols by bacteria producing ammonia; carbon dioxide (CO_2) lost
Falsely elevated pH	Breakdown of urea by bacteria, forming ammonia
False-negative glucose	Utilization by bacteria (glycolysis)
False-negative ketone	Volatilization of acetone; breakdown of acetoacetate by bacteria
False-negative bilirubin	Destroyed by light; oxidation to biliverdin
False-negative urobilinogen	Destroyed by light
False-positive nitrite	Nitrite produced by bacteria after specimen is voided
False-negative nitrite	Nitrite converts to nitrogen and evaporates.
Increased bacteriuria	Bacteria multiply in specimen before analysis.
Disintegration of cells/casts	Unstable environment, especially in alkaline urine, hypotonic urine, or both

OTHER BODY FLUIDS

Cerebrospinal Fluid

Lumbar punctures (LPs) are performed to collect cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) for laboratory evaluation to establish a diagnosis of infection (bacterial, fungal, mycobacterial, or amebic meningitis), malignancy, subarachnoid hemorrhage, multiple sclerosis, or demyelinating disorders. The most common site for lumbar puncture is between the third and fourth lumbar vertebrae or between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae. A serious complication of an LP is cerebellar tonsillar herniation in patients with elevated intracranial pressure, and it should be avoided unless CSF findings are expected to improve treatment or outcome. Patients with spinal cord tumors with paresis may progress to paralysis following LP. Patients with sepsis in the lumbar region (skin infection, cellulitis, or epidural abscess) should not have an LP performed, to avoid introduction of infection. Other complications of LP include asphyxiation in infants due to hyperextending the head forward, thus occluding the trachea, paresthesia, headache, and, rarely, hematomas. CSF is also collected by cisternal puncture.

TABLE 3-7
24-Hour Urine Collection Preservatives

Preservative	Tests
None (refrigerate)	Amino acids, amylase, calcium, citrate, chloride, copper, creatinine, delta ALA, glucose, 5-HIAA, heavy metals (arsenic, lead, mercury), histamine, immunoelectrophoresis, lysozyme, magnesium, methylmalonic acid, microalbumin, mucopolysaccharides, phosphorus, porphobilinogen, porphyrins, potassium, protein, protein electrophoresis, sodium, urea, uric acid, xylose tolerance
10 g boric acid	Aldosterone, cortisol
10 mL 6N HCl	Catecholamines, cystine, homovanillic acid, hydroxyproline, metanephrines, oxalate, VMA
0.5 g sodium fluoride	Glucose
If processing delayed longer than 24 hours: equal amounts of 50% alcohol, Saccomanno's fixative, and SurePath or Preserve CT	Cytologic examination

ALA, Alanine aminotransferase; *5-HIAA,* 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid; *VMA,* vanillylmandelic acid.

A needle is inserted into the cisternal subarachnoidea, or small space, that serves as a reservoir for CSF between the atlas and the occipital bone in the back of the head or by lateral cervical puncture (Kjeldsberg & Knight, 1993). Specimens can also be collected from ventricular cannulas (shunts) when present.

Before CSF is collected, the pressure should be between 90 and 180 mm Hg; this is measured by allowing fluid to rise in a sterile, graduated manometer. Holding one's breath, abdominal compression, congestive heart failure, inflammation of the meninges, obstruction of intracranial venous sinuses, mass lesions, or cerebral edema may cause the pressure to be elevated (>180 mm Hg). When pressure is normal, 20 mL of specimen may be removed. On closing, the pressure should be between 10 and 30 mm Hg. A marked decrease in pressure following this procedure suggests cerebellar herniation or spinal cord compression; thus no additional CSF should be collected. Patients with partial or complete spinal block may have low pressure (<80 mm Hg), falling to zero after removal of only 1 mL. Again, no additional fluid should be removed. No more than 2 mL can be removed when the pressure is greater than 200 mm Hg. Three aliquots are generally collected in separate, sterile tubes labeled appropriately with name, date, and sequential tube collection number and distributed. Hospital policies differ as to which tube is distributed to which laboratory for analysis. It is generally recommended that Tube #1 goes to chemistry for glucose and protein analysis or to immunology/serology; Tube #2 goes to microbiology for culture and Gram stain; and Tube #3 goes to hematology for cell counts. Tube #3 is the least likely to be contaminated by a bloody tap at collection. Expansion of tests ordered on CSF to include molecular diagnostic procedures has placed even greater demand on proper utilization of the entire volume of CSF collected, with special efforts to conserve specimens in each laboratory section so that additional tests may be performed.

Synovial Fluid

Synovial fluid found in the joint cavities is an ultrafiltrate of plasma that is passed through fenestrations of the subsynovial capillary endothelium into the synovial cavity. Once in the cavity, it is combined with hyaluronic acid, a glycosaminoglycan secreted by the synovial lining cells. Synovial fluid differs from the other serous fluids in that it contains hyaluronic acid (mucin) and may contain crystals. Synovial fluid is collected by arthrocentesis, an aspiration of the joint using a syringe, moistened with an anticoagulant, usually 25 units of sodium heparin per mL of synovial fluid. Oxalate, powdered EDTA, and lithium heparin should not be used, because they can produce crystalline structures similar to monosodium urate (MSU) crystals. Once removed, the synovial fluid is usually transferred to three tubes—one sterile, one containing EDTA or heparin, and one red-top tube; 5 to 10 mL of fluid is added to each. The sterile tube is sent to microbiology, the anticoagulated tube is sent to hematology, and the red-top tube, after centrifugation, is used for chemical analysis. Some hospitals transfer synovial fluid to aerobic and anaerobic blood culture bottles for microbiologic culture.

Pleural Fluid, Pericardial Fluid, and Peritoneal Fluid

Pleural fluid is an ultrafiltrate of the blood plasma. It is formed continuously in the pleural cavity. This cavity, normally containing 1 to 10 mL of fluid, is formed by the parietal pleura lining the chest wall and the visceral pleura covering the lung. Each lung is enveloped by this double membrane of contiguous mesothelial layers. Pleural fluid acts as a natural lubricant for contraction and expansion of the lungs during respiration. It is reabsorbed by the lymphatics and the venules in the pleura (Miller, 1999).

Thoracentesis is a surgical procedure to drain fluid (effusions) from the thoracic cavity and is helpful in diagnosing inflammation or neoplastic disease in the lung or pleura. *Pericardiocentesis* and *peritoneocentesis* refer to the collection of fluid from the pericardium (effusion) and the peritoneal cavities (ascites), respectively. These cavities normally contain less than 50 mL of fluid.

The patient, sitting in an upright position with arms and head extended on an overbed table, is prepared with a local anesthetic after appropriate cleansing of the site. A 50-mL syringe is fitted with a stopcock and rubber tubing to assist in the aseptic collection process. Specimens are obtained for chemical, microbiologic, and cytologic examination and are transferred to collection tubes with appropriate additive(s). For most chemical evaluations, no additive is used, and the specimen is allowed to clot. Bacteriologic and cytologic specimens may be collected in EDTA or sterile sodium heparin (without preservatives). Special studies for *Mycobacterium*, anaerobic bacteria, or viruses may require special handling procedures. Special handling procedures must be reviewed before collection is begun.

SPECIMEN TRANSPORT

Transport of blood, urine, body fluids, and tissue specimens from the collection site to the laboratory is an important component of processing. For blood samples, it accounts for approximately one third of the total turnaround time (TAT) (Howanitz et al, 1992). Excessive agitation of blood specimens must be avoided to minimize hemolysis. Specimens should be protected from direct exposure to light, which causes breakdown of certain analytes (e.g., bilirubin). For analysis of unstable constituents such as ammonia, plasma renin activity, and acid phosphatase, specimens must be kept at 4° C immediately after collection and transported on ice. Routine urine is collected in a sterile, disposable, 200-mL plastic container. Pediatric urine collectors are flexible polyethylene bags, which may be sealed for transportation. All laboratory specimens must be transported in a safe and convenient manner to prevent biohazard exposure or contamination of the specimen. Broken or leaking specimens are a biohazard to those who may come in contact with them and require collection of a new specimen; this can delay treatment of the patient and add to the cost.

The stability of the constituents must be determined before specimens are transported. The laboratory usually provides this information along with instructions for specimen preparation and shipping. Polystyrene or other high-impact plastic-type containers are commonly used. Specimens requiring refrigeration must be maintained at between 2° C and 10° C and can be appropriately carried in an insulated container. Large-volume urine specimens should be collected in a leak-proof, 3- to 4-L container. Stool specimens are transported in a cardboard container and placed in a polyethylene bag. To mail a specimen in the frozen state, solid carbon dioxide (dry ice) may be packed in a polystyrene container with the specimen, which can be kept frozen at temperatures as low as −70° C.

The OSHA Bloodborne Pathogens Standard (OSHA: 1910.1030) requires specimens of blood or other potentially infectious materials (OPIM) to be placed in a container that prevents leakage during collection, handling, processing, storage, transport, and/or shipping. This container must be labeled or color-coded according to specific standards (OSHA: 1910.1030[g][1][i]). Furthermore, according to the standard, if contamination of the outside of the primary container occurs, or if the specimen could puncture the primary container, the primary container must be placed in a secondary container that is puncture-resistant in addition to having the previous characteristics (OSHA: 1910.1030[d][2][xiii]).

Labeling is required on all containers used to store, transport, ship, or dispose of blood or other potentially infectious materials, except as noted in the OSHA standard. For example, if individual containers of blood or

OPIM are placed in a larger container during storage, transport, shipment, or disposal, and that larger container is labeled with the OSHA "BIOHAZARD" label or is color-coded, the individual containers are exempt from the labeling requirement. OSHA accepts the Department of Transportation's (DOT's) "INFECTIOUS SUBSTANCE" label in lieu of the "BIOHAZARD" label on packages where the DOT requires its label on shipped containers but requires the "BIOHAZARD" label where OSHA regulates a material but DOT does not. If the DOT-required label is the only label used on the outside of the transport container, the OSHA-mandated label must be applied to any internal containers containing blood or OPIM. The accepted "BIOHAZARD" label is fluorescent orange.

For local, onsite transport, pneumatic tube systems provide a rapid, efficient, and cost-effective way of transporting laboratory specimens to a specific location. For laboratory use, blood specimens are placed in a carrier with liners to prevent leakage and padding to ensure that specimen containers remain intact. The advantages of a pneumatic tube system are improved TAT; reliability; minimal training; low maintenance; availability 24 hours/day, 7 days/week; and improved staff utilization. Studies have shown that most routine chemical and hematologic evaluations, including blood gases, red cell packs, coagulation tests, and LD values, are not substantially affected by rapid transport (Hardin et al, 1990; Keshgegian & Bull, 1992).

SPECIMEN PROCESSING

Processing of specimens includes three distinct phases: precentrifugation, centrifugation, and postcentrifugation. Continuing appraisal of all specimen handling activities is an important preanalytic component of total quality control. Appropriate guidelines must be established and adhered to by laboratory personnel in each phase of specimen handling to ensure the generation of reliable and medically meaningful measurement and examination results.

PRECENTRIFUGATION PHASE

Ideally, all measurements should be performed within 45 minutes to 1 hour after collection. If this is not practical, the specimen should be processed to a point at which it can be properly stored to preclude alteration of constituents to be measured. With the exception of blood gases and ammonia determinations, plasma or serum is preferred for most biochemical determinations. In clinical chemistry, serum and plasma are interchangeable except for a few measurements. Serum is required for protein electrophoresis and immunofixation assays, just as plasma is necessary for fibrinogen and other coagulation measurements. Serum is most commonly the specimen of choice, owing to its simplicity in collection and handling. Additionally, interference from anticoagulants is obviated. Plasma may be used in medical emergencies because samples do not have to clot before centrifugation. Usually, a greater volume of plasma than serum is obtained from a given volume of whole blood owing to the clot formation process. Hospitalized patients are likely to be receiving heparin (especially under critical care), which can delay clotting in blood collection tubes even with activators and lead to fibrin strands that can clog up aspiration probes on instrumentation. Accordingly, it is good practice to collect blood from hospitalized patients into tubes with heparin anticoagulant to obtain plasma for chemical tests.

Blood should be stoppered in the original container until ready for separation. For plasma preparation, centrifuge blood within 1 hour after collection, for 10 minutes at a relative centrifugal force (RCF) of 850 to 1000× gravity (g), keeping the container stoppered to prevent evaporation of plasma or serum water. Adequate time for clotting must be allowed to prevent latent fibrin formation, which may cause undesirable clogging of automated chemistry analyzers. Loosening the clot by "trimming" or "ringing" the tube may cause some hemolysis and should be avoided. When glass tubes are used, they should be centrifuged in an aerosol-contained vessel. Serum or plasma must be stored at 4° C to 6° C if analysis is to be delayed for longer than 4 hours. One study suggests that this may not be necessary (Melanson et al, 2004). Many laboratories store samples for 7 days in case a test is added.

CENTRIFUGATION PHASE

A centrifuge uses centrifugal force to separate phases of suspensions by different densities. It is most frequently used in processing blood to derive plasma or serum fractions. Urine and other body fluids may be centrifuged to concentrate particulate matter as sediment to be examined and to minimize interference with other determinations from the same material. Conditions for centrifugation should specify both the time and the centrifugal force. In selecting a centrifuge, one should look for the highest possible centrifugal force and not the rotational speed. The RCF in g units—that is, multiples of the gravitational force—may be calculated by using the following formula:

$$RCF = 1.118 \times 10^{-5} \times r \times (rpm)^2$$

where 1.118×10^{-5} is a constant; r is the radius, expressed in centimeters, between the axis of rotation and the center of the centrifuge tube; and rpm is the speed in revolutions per minute. The RCF can also be obtained from a nomogram that gives the RCF without the need to calculate it from the previous formula.

Several principles must be observed to avoid damage to the centrifuge, or the specimen, and danger to personnel. Tubes, carriers, or shields of equal weight, shape, and size should be placed in opposing positions in the centrifuge head to achieve appropriate balance. Tubes must be balanced across the center of rotation, and each bucket must be balanced with respect to its pivotal axis (Seamonds & Elizabeth, 2001). Specimens must be placed with regard for a geometrically symmetrical arrangement, using water-filled tubes to attain balance.

Recentrifugation of gel separator tubes has been associated with pseudohyperkalemia. One study demonstrated that after initial centrifugation, a new serum layer develops under the gel within the cellular layer. During storage, potassium leaks from the cellular layer into the new serum layer, creating hyperkalemia in this layer. When the tube is recentrifuged, the new serum layer will move above the gel layer and cause a pseudohyperkalemia in the serum for analysis. The same authors also demonstrated that a pseudonormokalemia in patients with true hypokalemia may be erroneously reported after recentrifugation (Hira et al, 2001; 2004).

Equipment

A wide variety of centrifuges and accessories are available to meet specific needs in the clinical laboratory. These include tabletop, general laboratory centrifuges; horizontal head, fixed-angle, or angle-head; high-speed centrifuges; portable floor models, undercounter models; microcentrifuges; refrigerated and unrefrigerated types; and ultracentrifuge models. Ultracentrifuges are high speed and capable of reaching a centrifugal force of 165,000 times gravity. These centrifuges require refrigeration chambers to compensate for the considerable heat produced. Ultracentrifuges are used to clear serum of chylomicrons, which is necessary to avoid interference with clinical testing (Bermes & Young, 2001). An example of a centrifuge designed for fast speed and quick turnaround time is the StatSpin Express 3 (StatSpin, 2014), a microprocessor-controlled, high-speed, bench-top centrifuge designed to rapidly separate blood in evacuated tubes. This centrifuge accelerates rapidly and brakes very fast, decreasing specimen processing time. The centrifuge operates at a fixed speed of 8500 rpm, produces an RCF of 4440 × (g), and can be operated with a 120- or 180-second spin cycle.

Centrifuge capacities vary with model type and centrifuge head. Specimen volume (per tube), number of tubes to be centrifuged, speed required for adequate separation, and durability of equipment should be considered. For every laboratory procedure requiring centrifuge operation, a written specification identifying centrifuge type, temperature, g forces, and length of centrifugation time is required. Calibration of the centrifuge must be part of the quality assurance process. Speed settings must be calibrated using rpm, and RCFs must be calculated using the earlier formula or a nomogram. Any significant changes will indicate deterioration effects, such as wearing of brushes or bearing problems. Timers must be checked for accuracy.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Boyanton L, Blick K: Stability studies of twenty-four analytes in human plasma and serum, *Clin Chem* 48(12):2242–2247, 2002.

This article studies plasma and serum analyte stability over 56 hours in samples removed from cells and allowed to remain on cells. No significant changes were found in the serum and plasma specimens removed from the cells within 30 minutes of collection. The article provides an excellent historical bibliography of the major studies performed on this topic.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Workbook for designing, implementing, and evaluating a sharps injury prevention program, introduction. Division of Healthcare Quality Promotion—(DHQP Home) privacy policy—Accessibility. Published date: June 4, 2004. Reviewed date: July 27, 2010. Online. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/sharpssafety/resources.html.

This excellent Internet publication available for free download includes an overview of sharps risks and prevention, organizational steps for development of prevention programs, recommendations for selection of sharps injury prevention devices, and education and training materials. The appendices contain useful worksheets for all aspects of sharps injury and prevention documentation.

Garza D, Becan-McBride K: *Phlebotomy handbook: Blood specimen collection from basic to advanced*, ed 9, Upper Saddle River, N.J., 2014, Prentice Hall.

This handbook presents a complete discussion of all aspects related to phlebotomy. Included are safety procedures, equipment, step-by-step procedures, and management and legal issues. It contains an excellent, basic discussion of the circulatory system with colored diagrams.

Haverstick DM, Groszbach AR: Specimen collection, processing and other preanalytical variables. In Burtis CA, Bruns DE, editors: *Tietz fundamentals of clinical chemistry and molecular disgnostics*, ed 7, St. Louis, 2015, Elsevier Saunders, pp 72–88.

This chapter contains many important preanalysis factors that affect laboratory results.

Strasinger SK, DiLorenzo MS: *The phlebotomy textbook*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2011, FA Davis.

This text contains a comprehensive presentation of all aspects of phlebotomy. It is an excellent teaching guide and discusses state-of-the-art equipment and techniques. The book is divided into four parts: regulatory, safety, and health care information; techniques for blood collection; medical terminology, anatomy, and physiology; and additional techniques. It also includes a CD with videos demonstrating proper technique. Contained within the various chapters are excellent summary tables and quick reference charts. It also provides an extensive description of the various blood collection tubes and anticoagulants/additives they contain and information on preanalytic factors affecting laboratory results.

Young DS: *Effects of preanalytic variables on clinical laboratory tests*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2007, AACC Press.

This is the preeminent resource for interference in laboratory tests that covers the effects of drugs, as well as other contributing conditions. An online database (see www.clinfx.com) is also available.

REFERENCES

AccuVein website. http://accuvein.com/ Online. Available May 6, 2010.

Barak M, Jaschek R: A new and effective way for preventing pre-analytical laboratory errors, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 52(2):e5–e8, 2014.

BD Vacutainer Systems, Franklin Lakes, N.J. Online. Available: http://www.bd.com.

Bermes EW, Young DS: General laboratory techniques, procedures, and safety. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz fundamentals of clinical chemistry*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2001, WB Saunders, pp 2–29.

Bolton-Maggs PHB, Wood EM, Wiersum-Osselton JC: Wrong blood in tube—potential for serious outcomes: can it be prevented? *Br J Haematol* 168(1):3–13, 2015.

Bonini P, Plebani M, Ceriotti F, et al: Errors in laboratory medicine, *Clin Chem* 48:691–698, 2002.

Caraway WT, Kammeyer CW: Chemical interference by drug and other substances with clinical laboratory test procedures, *Clin Chem Acta* 41:395, 1972.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Procedures for the collection of arterial blood specimens: Approved standard*, ed 4, Document GP43-A4, Wayne, Pa, 2004, NCCLS.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Procedures for the collection of diagnostic blood specimens by venipuncture: Approved standard*, ed 6, Document GP41-A6, Wayne, Pa, 2007, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Procedures and devices for the collection of diagnostic capillary blood specimens: Approved standard*, ed 5, Document GP42-A6, Wayne, Pa, 2008, NCCLS.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Urinalysis: Approved guideline*, ed 3, Document GP16-A3, Wayne, Pa., 2009.

Dasgupta A, Dean R, Saldana S, et al: Absorption of therapeutic drugs by barrier gels in serum separator blood collection tubes. Volume and time dependent reduction in total and free drug concentrations, *Am J Clin Pathol* 101(4):456–461, 1994.

Dufour DR: Sources and control of preanalytical variation. In Kaplan LA, Pesce AJ, Kazmierczak SC, editors: *Clinical chemistry: Theory, analysis, correlation*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2003, Mosby, pp 64–82.

Dzik WH, Murphy MF, Andreu G, et al: An international study of the performance of patient sample collection, *Vox Sang* 85:40–47, 2003.

Ernst DJ, Calam R: NCCLA simplifies the order of draw: A brief history, *MLO* 36:26–27, 2004.

Favaloro EJ, (Adcock) Funk DM, Lippi G: Pre-analytical variables in coagulation testing associated with diagnostic errors in hemostasis, *Lab Med* 43:1–10, 2012.

Green SF: The cost of poor blood specimen quality and errors in preanalytical processes, *Clin Biochem* 46(13–14):1175–1179, 2013.

Hardin G, Quick G, Ladd DJ: Emergency transport of AS-1 cell units by pneumatic tube system, *J Trauma* 30:346–348, 1990.

Hira K, Noriaki A, Fukui T: Pseudonormokalaemia caused by recentrifugation of blood samples after storage in gel-separator tubes, *Ann Clin Biochem* 41:82–83, 2004.

Hira K, Ohtani Y, Rahman M, et al: Pseudohyperkalaemia caused by recentrifugation of blood samples after storage in gel separator tubes, *Ann Clin Biochem* 38:386–390, 2001.

Hofgartner WT, Tait JF: Frequency of problems during clinical molecular-genetic testing, *Am J Clin Pathol* 112:14–21, 1999.

Hotaling M: A Retractable Winged Steel (Butterfly) Needle Performance Improvement Project, *JCAHO* 35:100–105, 2009.

Howanitz PJ, Steindel SJ, Cembrowski GS, et al: Emergency department stat test turnaround times. A College of American Pathologists' Q-Probes study for potassium and hemoglobin, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 116:122–128, 1992.

Keshgegian AA, Bull GE: Evaluation of a soft-handling computerized pneumatic tube specimen delivery system, *Am J Clin Pathol* 97:535–540, 1992.

Kjeldsberg CR, Knight AK: *Cerebral spinal fluid in body fluids*, ed 3, Chicago, 1993, American Society of Clinical Pathology, p 65.

Klee GG: Human anti-mouse antibodies, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 124:921–923, 2000.

Laessig RH, Hassermer DJ, Paskay TA, et al: The effects of 0.1 and 1.0 percent erythrocytes and hemolysis on serum chemistry values, *Am J Clin Pathol* 66:639–644, 1976.

Lapworth R, Teal TK: Laboratory blunders revisted, *Ann Clin Biochem* 31:78–84, 1994.

Linden JV, Wagner K, Voytovich QE, et al: Transfusion errors in New York State: An analysis of 10 years' experience, *Transfusion* 40:1207, 2000.

Madry N, Auerbach B, Schelp C: Measures to overcome HAMA interferences in immunoassays, *Anticancer Res* 17(4B):2883–2886, 1997.

McCall RE, Tankersley CM: *Phlebotomy essentials*, Philadelphia, 1993, JB Lippincott Company, pp 202–206.

Melanson SF, Hsieh B, Flood J, et al: Evaluation of add-on testing in the clinical chemistry laboratory of a large academic medical center, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 128:885–889, 2004.

Meng QH, Irwin WC, Fesser J, et al: Interference of ascorbic acid with chemical analytes, *Ann Clin Biochem* 42:475–477, 2005.

Miller HJ: Pleural effusions. In Davis B, Bishop M, Mass D, editors: *Principles of laboratory utilization and consultation*, Philadelphia, 1999, WB Saunders.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA). Occupational safety bloodborne pathogens standard 29 CFR 1910.1030. 2001. Online. Available: http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/bloodbornepathogens/index.html.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA). Occupational Safety Bloodborne Needlestick Safety Prevention Act, OSHA. Revised standards 2002.

Omar H, Chamberlin A, Walker V, et al: Immulite 2000 parathyroid hormone assay: Stability of parathyroid hormone in EDTA blood kept at room temperature for 48 hours, *Ann Clin Biochem* 38(Pt 5):561–563, 2001.

Plebani M: The detection and prevention of error in laboratory medicine, *Ann Clin Biochem* 47:101–110, 2010.

Seamonds B, Elizabeth AB: Basic laboratory principles and techniques. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz fundamentals of clinical chemistry*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2001, WB Saunders, pp 3–44.

Shi RZ, Seeley ES, Bowen R, et al: Rapid blood separation is superior to fluoride for preventing in vitro reductions in measured blood glucose concentration, *J Clin Pathol* 62:752–753, 2009.

Smith BE, King PH, Schlain L: Clinical evaluation: continuous real-time intra-arterial blood gas monitor during anesthesia and surgery by fibro-optic sensor, *Int J Clin Monit Comput* 9:45–52, 1992.

Stahl M, Lund ED, Bandslund I: Reasons for a laboratory's inability to report results for requested analytical tests, *Clin Chem* 44:2195–2197, 1998.

Stankovic AK, DeLauro E: Quality improvements in the preanalytical phase: Focus on urine specimen workflow, *Med Lab Obs* 42:20, 22, 24–27, 2010.

StatSpin operator's manual. StatSpin express 3 centrifuge. Westwood, Mass. IRIS sample processing, division of IRIS International Inc. http://www.statspin.com, 2014.

Strasinger SK, DiLorenzo MS: *Urinalysis and body fluids*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2001, FA Davis, pp 23–32.

Tate J, Ward G: Interferences in immunoassay, *Clin Biochem Rev* 25(2):105–120, 2004.

Zhang DJ, Elswick RK, Miller WG, et al: Effect of serum-clot contact time on clinical chemistry laboratory results, *Clin Chem* 44:1325–1333, 1998. http://www.jointcommission.org/standards_information/npsgs.aspx. Accessed January 19, 2015.

CHAPTER 4

ANALYSIS: PRINCIPLES OF INSTRUMENTATION

Matthew R. Pincus, Mark S. Lifshitz, Jay L. Bock

PRINCIPLES OF INSTRUMENTATION, 33
Spectrophotometry, 33
Reflectometry, 41
Molecular Luminescence Spectroscopy (Fluorometry), 42
Nephelometry and Turbidimetry, 43
Refractometry, 43
Osmometry, 43
Flow Cytometry, 44
Electrochemistry, 44
Conductance, 46
Impedance, 46
Electrophoresis and Densitometry, 46
Isoelectric Focusing, 47
Chromatography, 47
Mass Spectrometry, 49
Scintillation Counter, 51
Capillary Electrophoresis, 52
Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy, 53
GENERAL ANALYTIC METHODS AND ISSUES, 53
Chemicals, 53
Water, 54
Measurement of Mass, 54
Laboratory Glassware and Plasticware, 55
Volumetric Laboratoryware, 56
Thermometry, 56
Water Baths, 57
Heating Blocks, Dry-Bath Incubators, and Ovens, 57
Mixing, 57
Aqueous Solution, 58
SELECTED REFERENCES, 59

KEY POINTS

- Many analytic determinations made in clinical laboratories are based on measurements of radiant energy that is absorbed or transmitted. The devices used to measure absorbed or transmitted light energy are photometers and spectrophotometers.
- The basic components of spectrophotometers include radiant energy source, wavelength selector, cuvette holder, photodetector, signal processors, and readout devices.
- A reflectometer is used to measure analytes by measuring the quantity of light reflected by a liquid sample that has been dispensed onto a grainy or fibrous solid support.
- Nephelometers are used to detect light that is scattered at various angles, whereas turbidimetry measures a reduction in light transmission due to particle formation.
- A flow cytometer measures light patterns produced as particles pass single file through a laser light beam. The flow cytometer is used to count and sort cells. It is also a key component of hematology analyzers and a technology used to differentiate white blood cells.
- Electrochemical principles are used to measure numerous analytes in biologic fluids. Specific electrochemical techniques include potentiometry, amperometry, coulometry, conductivity, and anodic stripping voltammetry.
- Analytes measured by electrochemical techniques include electrolytes, blood gases, pH, metabolites (e.g., glucose, urea nitrogen), ionized calcium, lead, and chloride in sweat.
- Chromatography is a separation technique based on the different interactions of specimen compounds with a mobile phase and a stationary phase, as the compound travels through a support medium.
- Mass spectrometers have become increasingly important clinical instruments, especially in emerging fields such as proteomics. Mass spectrometry is based on fragmentation and ionization of molecules. The relative abundance of each of the ions yields a characteristic mass spectrum of the parent molecule. The basic components of a mass spectrometer include an ion source, a mass analyzer, and an ion detector.

A fundamental understanding of the principles of instrumentation used in clinical laboratories is essential. These instruments must provide the clinician with the best possible data to be of value to the patient. Without a thorough understanding of the necessary principles associated with an analyzer, operators will be ill equipped to perform maintenance procedures and calibrations and to troubleshoot problems that may arise.

The goal of this chapter is to provide the reader with a brief and broad description of the essential principles of analytic instruments in the clinical laboratory. For a more comprehensive review of this topic, the reader is referred to references on clinical instrumentation at the end of this chapter.

PRINCIPLES OF INSTRUMENTATION

SPECTROPHOTOMETRY

Absorption spectroscopy has provided scientists with a means to use both qualitative and quantitative methods of measuring analytes in body fluids. Bouguer initially developed the principles of absorption spectroscopy in the early 1700s. Two other scientists, Lambert and Beer, continued to develop the fundamental principles of absorption spectroscopy, commonly known as Beer's law. Before reviewing the laws of spectroscopy, it is prudent to gain an understanding of light and the effects of its interactions with matter.

Diverse spectrophotometric methods use electromagnetic radiation (EMR), which can take several forms, the most recognizable being light and radiant heat. Other types of EMR include gamma (γ) rays and x-rays, as well as microwaves, radiofrequency radiation, and ultraviolet radiation. The energies involved with specific regions of the electromagnetic spectrum (EMS) and their corresponding wavelengths change dramatically from radio waves to γ radiation.

Some properties of EMR can be described by means of a classical sinusoidal wave model. Parameters associated with this waveform include wavelength, frequency, velocity, and amplitude, as shown in Figure 4-1, *B*. EMR requires no supporting medium for its transmission and passes readily through a vacuum.

The sine wave model does not provide the total picture when discussing the absorption and emission of radiant energy. EMR also exists as a stream of discrete particles, or packets, of energy called photons. The energy of the photons is proportional to the frequency of the radiation. This dual nature of EMR is considered complementary and applies to the behavior of streams of electrons, protons, and other elementary particles.

The wave model allows us to represent EMR as both an electrical and a magnetic field that can undergo in-phase, sinusoidal oscillation at right

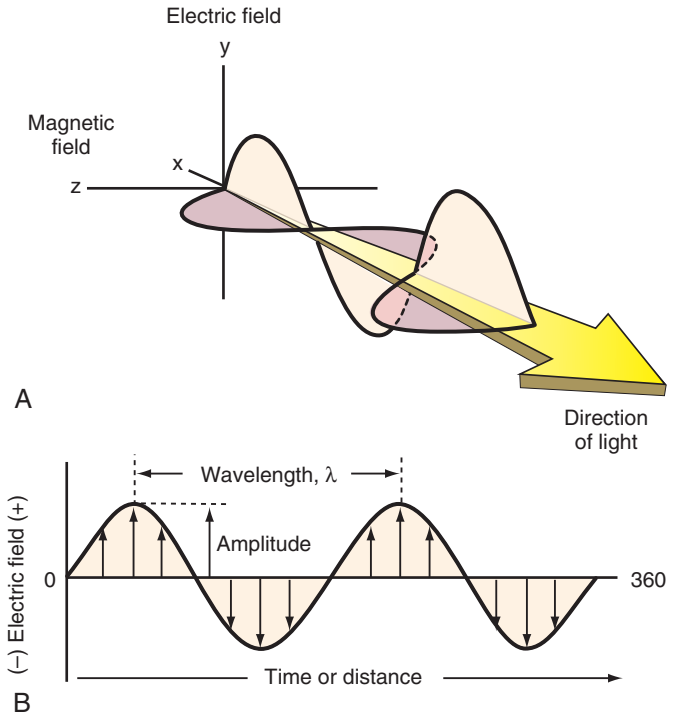


Figure 4-1 **Diagram of a beam of monochromatic, plane-polarized light. A,** Magnetic (*y*-axis) and electrical (*x*-axis) field vectors at right angles to each other. **B,** Two-dimensional view of the electrical vector.

BOX 4-1

Units for Expression of Wavelength

1 nm = 10^{-9} m = 10^{-7} cm; other units sometimes used include the following:
1 μm = 10^{-6} m = 10^{-4} cm
1 Å = 10^{-10} m = 10^{-8} cm

angles both to each other and to the direction of propagation. The electrical and magnetic fields for a monochromatic beam of plane-polarized light (with oscillation of either the electric or magnetic fields within a single plane)* in a specific direction of propagation are shown in Figure 4-1, *A* (Skoog et al, 1998). The electrical vector or component of the waveform is shown in two-dimensional format. Remember that a vector has both magnitude and direction. The electrical field vector at a certain point in time and space is proportional to its own magnitude.

Time or distance of wave propagation is plotted on the abscissa. Most of the instrument principles widely used in the laboratory involve the electrical component of radiation and will represent the focus of discussion throughout this chapter. An exception will be nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR). With this technique, the magnetic component produces the desired effect.

Several wave parameters will be described. *Amplitude* of the sine wave is shown as the length of the electronic vector at maximum peak height. A *period*, *p*, is defined as the time in seconds required for the passage of successive maxima or minima through a fixed point in space. The number of oscillations of the waveform in a second is called *frequency*, *v*. The unit of frequency is hertz (Hz), which corresponds to one cycle per second. Frequency is also equal to 1/*p*. A *wavelength*, λ, is the linear distance between any two equivalent points on a successive wave (Box 4-1). A widely used unit for wavelength in the visible spectrum is the nanometer, nm (10^{-9} m). Electromagnetic radiation in the x-rays or gamma region may be expressed in terms of angstrom units, Å (10^{-10} m). Finally, because of its much longer wavelength, EMR in the infrared region may have units corresponding to the micrometer, μm (10^{-6} m).

*Unpolarized radiation has waves in many planes.

BOX 4-2

Example: Velocity of Propagation

What is the wavelength in nm for EMR having a frequency of 1.58×10^{15} Hz?

Solution

$\lambda = c/v$

$\lambda\ (\text{nm}) = \dfrac{3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}}{1.58 \times 10^{15}\ \text{Hz}}$

$\lambda\ (\text{nm}) = 190$

Velocity of Propagation

Velocity of propagation, v_i in meters per second, is determined by multiplying frequency by wavelength. Thus:

$$v_i = \upsilon\lambda_i \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-1)}$$

The frequency of light is determined by the source and does not change, whereas the velocity depends on the composition of the medium through which it passes. Therefore, Equation 4-1 implies that the wavelength of radiation is also dependent on the medium.

The velocity of light traveling through a vacuum is independent of wavelength and is at its maximum. This velocity is represented by the symbol c and is equivalent to 2.99792×10^{8} m/s. Equation 4-1 can then be rewritten as follows:

$$c = v\lambda = 3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s} = 3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \text{m/s}^{1} = 3.00 \times 10^{10}\ \text{cm/s} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-2)}$$

In any medium containing matter, the propagation of radiation is slowed by the interaction between the EMR field of the radiation and the electrons bound in the atoms of that matter. Because the radiant frequency does not vary and is fixed by the source, the wavelength must decrease as radiation passes from air to a slower medium (Box 4-2).

Energy of EMR

One should note the following safety concern: Optical devices that emit high-frequency EMR generate very high energies and can damage the eyes. Examples include deuterium and xenon lamps.

Wavelength and frequency are related to the energy of a photon, *E*, by Planck's* constant *h*, 6.626×10^{-34} J s, and *c*, the velocity of light in a vacuum (3.00×10^{8} ms^{-1}):

$$E = h\upsilon = hc/\lambda \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-3)}$$

where:

E = energy of a photon in joules or eV
h = Planck's constant (6.626×10^{-34} J s)
v = frequency in Hz (cycles/s)

Quite often the energies of photons are stated in terms of an electron volt (eV). An eV is defined as the energy acquired by an electron that has been accelerated through a potential of 1 volt. The conversion factors between joules and eV are as follows:

$1\ \text{J} = 6.24 \times 10^{18}\ \text{eV}$

$1\ \text{eV} = 1.602 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{J}$

To illustrate the difference in energies of photons in the EMS, compare the energy of photons in the ultraviolet (UV) region versus the visible region of the EMS (Box 4-3).

The relationship of frequency, wavelength, and photon energy throughout the EMS can be seen in Figure 4-2. This graphic illustrates, for example, that very-high-energy gamma photons have extremely short wavelengths and very high frequencies (Rubinson & Rubinson, 2000). The converse is true for television and radio wave parameters.

Scattering of Radiation

Transmission of radiation in matter can be viewed as a momentary retention of the radiant energy by atoms, ions, or molecules followed by reemission of the radiation in all directions as particles return to their original state. Destructive interference removes most but not all of the reemitted radiation involving atomic or molecular particles that are small relative to the wavelength of the radiation. The exception is radiation that travels in

*Also expressed in units 6.626×10^{-27} erg s.

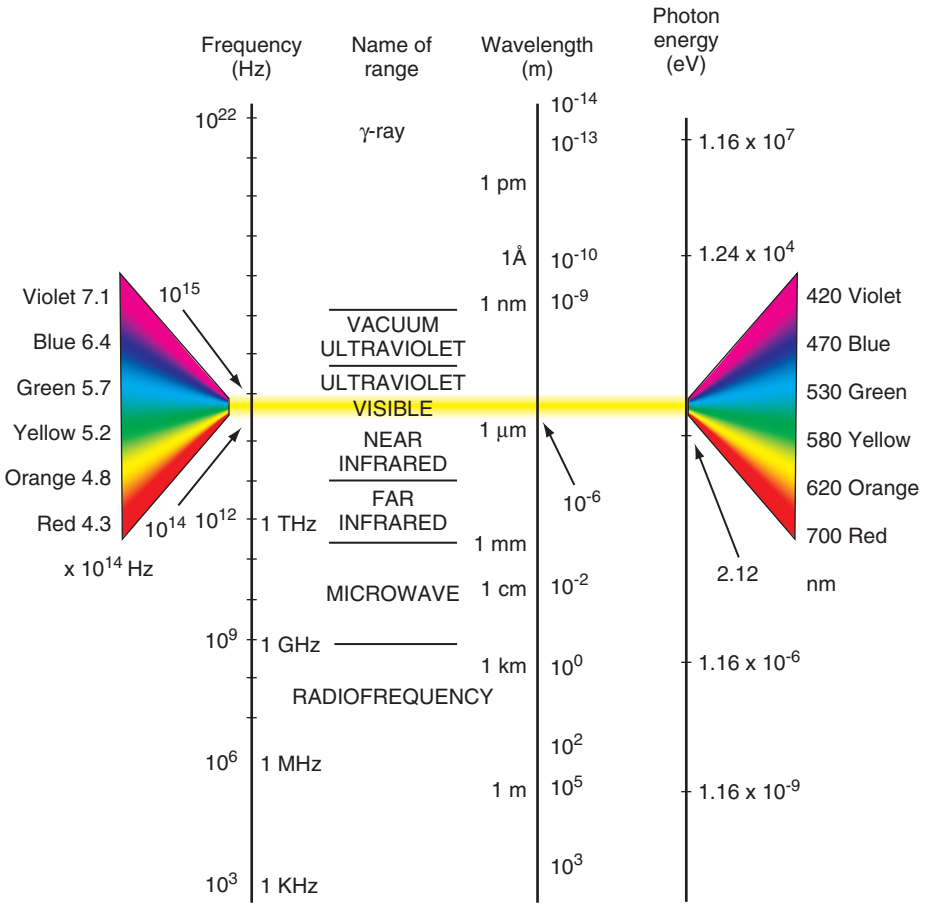


Figure 4-2 **A diagram of the names, frequencies, wavelengths, and photon energies of electromagnetic radiation (EMR).** Both visible and ultraviolet light are widely used in analytic methods.

BOX 4-3

Example: Energy of EMR

What is the energy in joules and eV of EMR equivalent to (a) 190 nm? (b) 520 nm?

Solution

(a)

$E = hc/\nu$

$$E = \frac{(6.626\times10^{-34}\ \text{J s})(3.0\times10^{8}\ \text{m/s})}{190\ \text{nm}\,(10^{-9}\ \text{m/nm})}$$

$E = 1.046 \times 10^{-18}$ J

Or to convert to eV, use the conversion of 1 J = 6.24×10^{18} eV. Therefore, the number of eVs is 6.53.

(b)

$E = hc/\nu$

$$E = \frac{(6.626\times10^{-34}\ \text{J s})(3.0\times10^{8}\ \text{m/s})}{520\ \text{nm}\,(10^{-9}\ \text{m/nm})}$$

$E = 3.82 \times 10^{-19}$ J or 2.38 eV

the original direction of the beam; the path of the beam appears to be unaltered because of the interaction. It has been shown that a very small fraction of the radiation is transmitted at all angles from the original path and that the intensity of this scattered radiation increases with particle size.

Rayleigh Scattering

Scattering by molecules or aggregates of molecules with dimensions significantly smaller than the wavelength of the radiation is referred to as *Rayleigh scattering*. The intensity is proportional to the inverse fourth power of the wavelength, the square of the polarizability of the particles, and the dimensions of the scattering particles. In Rayleigh scattering, the wavelengths of absorbed and emitted photons are the same. An example of Rayleigh scattering is the blue color of the sky, which results from increased scattering of the shorter wavelength of the visible spectrum.

Tyndall Effect

The Tyndall effect occurs with particles of colloidal dimensions and can be seen with the naked eye. Measurements of scattered radiation are used to determine the size and shape of polymer molecules and colloidal particles.

Raman Scattering

Raman scatter involves absorption of photons producing vibrational excitation. Emission or scatter occurs at longer wavelengths. Raman scatter always varies from the excitation energy by a constant energy difference.

Beer-Lambert Law

If monochromatic EMR (P_o) is directed toward a cuvet containing an absorbing species, the amount of light (P) transmitted (T) is equal to:

$$T = P/P_o \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-4)}$$

and percent transmittance is equal to 100T.

Lambert proved that for monochromatic radiation that passes through an absorber of constant concentration, a logarithmic decrease is seen in the radiant power as the path length increases arithmetically. The absorbance (A) of a solution was determined to be equivalent to:

$$A = \log P_o/P \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-5)}$$

The relationship between transmittance, T, or percent transmittance ($P/P_o \times 100$), and absorbance is shown in Figure 4-3. Absorbance and percent transmittance (Box 4-4) are inversely related as given by the following:

$$A = 2 - \log \%T \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-6)}$$

Beer followed with studies on the relationship between radiant power and concentration. His approach was to keep the path length and

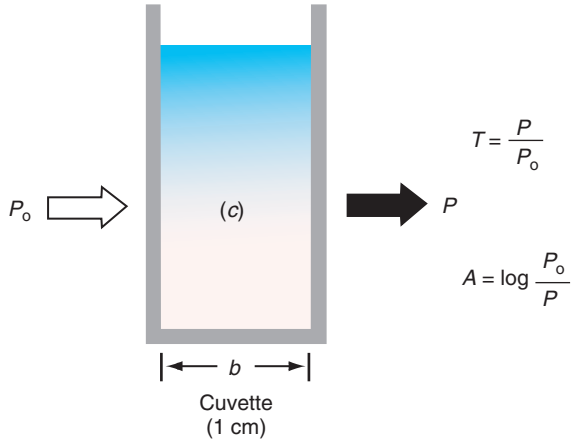


Figure 4-3 Attenuation of monochromatic light by an absorbing solution.

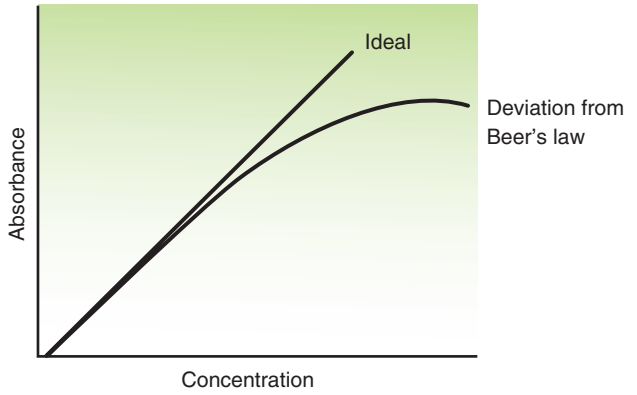


Figure 4-4 A plot of absorbance versus concentration illustrating deviation from Beer's law.

BOX 4-4

Example: Beer-Lambert Law

What is the absorbance of a solution whose transmittance is 10%?

Solution

$A = 2 - \log \%T$

$A = 2 - \log 10\%T = 2 - 1 = 1$

wavelength constant, while determining the relationship of radiant power, *P*, and concentrations of the absorbing species. Based on previous work by Lambert, Beer discovered that for monochromatic radiation, absorbance is directly proportional to the path length, *b*, through the medium and the concentration, *c*, of the absorbing species. The work culminated in the Beer-Lambert law, or, simply, Beer's law.

The principles established are represented by the following:

$$A = -\log T = \log P_o / P = abc \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-7)}$$

where:

a = absorptivity in L g^{-1} cm^{-1}
b = path length of 1 cm
c = concentration in units of g/L

When the concentration in Equation 4-7 is expressed in moles per liter and the path length in centimeters, the term applied is *molar absorptivity*, given the symbol ε, epsilon, and is equivalent to the extinction coefficient ("*a*") times gram molecular weight of the absorbing species.

$$A = \varepsilon bc \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-8)}$$

where units for ε are L mol^{-1} cm^{-1}.

The graph of absorbance versus concentration shows the intercept at zero and a linear plot with a slope equivalent to "*ab*." Absorption spectroscopy is used best for solutions whose absorbance values are less than 2.0. Absorbance values greater than 2.0 may yield erroneous results because of other interactions of light with matter (e.g., variations in the refractive index of a solution). This may cause a deviation from Beer's law, resulting in bending of the linear plot as shown in Figure 4-4.

Deviations from Beer's law may be caused by changes in instrument functions or chemical reactions. Instrument deviation is commonly a result of the finite bandpass of the filter or monochromator. Beer's law assumes monochromatic radiation, but truly monochromatic radiation is best achieved using only unique line emission sources. If absorptivity is constant over the instrument bandpass, then Beer's law is followed within close limits.

Deviations from Beer's law become apparent at higher concentration (i.e., higher absorbance). In Figure 4-4, the curved line bends toward the concentration axis as opacity is approached. This lack of adherence to Beer's law in a negative direction is undesirable because of the somewhat large increase in the relative concentration error.

Deviation from Beer's law can occur with shifts or changes in chemical or physical equilibrium involving the absorbing species. Changes in solution pH, ionic strength, and temperature can result in such deviations.

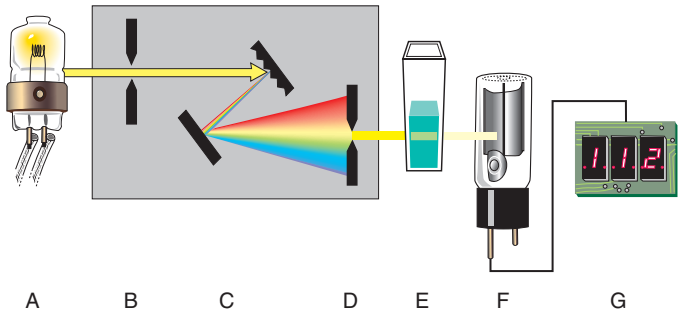


Figure 4-5 **Components of a single-beam spectrophotometer. A,** Exciter lamp. **B,** Entrance slit. **C,** Monochromator. **D,** Exit slit. **E,** Cuvet. **F,** Photodetector. **G,** Light-emitting diode (LED) display.

Components of a Spectrophotometer

A typical photometer or spectrophotometer contains six basic components in a single- or double-beam configuration. These components include a stable source of radiant energy; a filter that isolates a specific region of the electromagnetic spectrum; a sample holder; a radiation detector; a signal processor; and a readout device. Each component of a typical photometer is shown in Figure 4-5.

The following steps outline the function of each component in any absorption-type photometer as it detects light and provides information to the operator:

1. The light source provides the energy that the sample will modify or attenuate by absorption. The light is polychromatic (i.e., all visible wavelengths are present).
2. A wavelength selector or filter isolates a portion of the spectrum emitted by the source and focuses it on the sample.
3. The sample in a suitable container (e.g., a cuvet) absorbs a fraction of the incident light and transmits the remainder.
4. The light that passes through the cuvet and sample strikes the cathode of a photodetector and generates an electrical signal.
5. The electrical signal is processed electronically (e.g., amplified, digitized).
6. The processed signal is electronically coupled to the display unit (e.g., light-emitting diode [LED], X-Y strip chart recorder, meter).

Radiant Energy Sources

Radiant energy sources or lamps provide polychromatic light and must generate sufficient radiant energy or power to measure the analyte of interest. A regulated power supply is required to provide a stable and constant source of voltage for the lamp. Radiant energy sources are of two types: *continuum* and *line*. A continuum source emits radiation that changes in intensity very slowly as a function of wavelength. Line sources emit a limited number of discrete lines or bands of radiation, each of which spans a limited range of wavelengths.

Continuum sources find wide applications in the laboratory. Examples of continuum sources include tungsten, deuterium, and xenon. For testing in the visible region of the EMS, tungsten or tungsten-halogen lamps are widely used. The filament in the tungsten-halogen lamp is maintained at

a higher temperature than in the normal tungsten lamp. This takes advantage of the Wien and Sefan relationship to provide a source with a maximum wavelength near the center of the visible spectrum (whiter), and with a greater energy output (brighter). Introducing a halogen gas into the lamp envelope counteracts the problem of increased atom vaporization from the high-temperature filament.

The deuterium lamp is routinely used to provide UV radiation in analytic spectrometers. The voltage applied is typically about 100 volts, which gives the electrons enough energy to excite the deuterium atoms in a low-pressure gas to emit photons across the full UV range.

The strong atomic interaction in a high-pressure xenon discharge lamp produces a continuous source of radiation, which covers both the UV and the visible range. The discharge light is normally pulsed for short periods with a frequency that determines the average intensity of the light from the source and also its lifetime.

In atomic emission line sources, electrons move between atomic energy levels. If the atom is free of any interaction with other atoms, the amount of energy liberated can be very precise, and all of the photons share a very clearly defined wavelength. This is the characteristic sharp "line" emission from an electronic discharge in a low-pressure gas. Line sources that emit a few discrete lines find wide use in atomic absorption, molecular, and fluorescent spectroscopy. Mercury and sodium vapor lamps provide sharp lines in the ultraviolet and visible regions and are used in several spectrophotometers. For atomic absorption spectroscopy applications, the hollow cathode lamp provides atomic emission from free metal atoms by using the heat of a gaseous discharge (e.g., in neon) to vaporize metal atoms into the discharge. Typically, each lamp is specific to a particular metal. However, some lamps use two, three, or more metals, although the emission from each of these is reduced.

A laser source is very useful in analytic instrumentation because of its high intensity and narrow bandwidth and the coherent nature of its outputs. Several specific uses of lasers include high-resolution spectroscopy, kinetic studies of processes with lifetimes in the range of 10^{-9} to 10^{-12} s, as light sources for nephelometers, and as ionization inducers in the MALDI and SELDI mass spectrometric techniques (see later).

Wavelength Selectors

A critical component of all spectrometers is the device used to select the appropriate wavelength. Several types of wavelength selectors are available, including filters, prisms, grating monochromators, and holographic gratings. The quality of these selectors is described by their nominal wavelengths, spectral bandwidths, and bandpass. *Nominal wavelength* represents the wavelength in nanometers at peak transmittance. Spectral bandwidth is the range of wavelengths above one-half peak transmittance. It is sometimes called the *half power point* or *full width at half peak maximum* (FWHM). The total range of wavelengths transmitted is the *bandpass*. Figure 4-6 summarizes these characteristics of wavelength selectors. This figure also summarizes the difference in wavelength selectivity between interference (*A*, left) and absorbance filters (*B*, right), as we now discuss.

Filters

An important component of the spectrophotometer is the wavelength filter. Its purpose is to isolate monochromatic light, or at least as narrow a range of wavelengths of light as possible, and direct it to the sample or to the photodetector. Remember, the purpose of absorption spectroscopy is to detect how much light is absorbed by the sample. This is a measure of the absorbance of an analyte in a sample that is directly proportional to concentration (see Beer's law above). The percent transmittance is the ratio of the amount of light transmitted through the sample to the amount of light transmitted in the absence of the sample (e.g., buffer or solvent without the sample). Theoretically, it should be possible to determine this ratio without any filter at all. However, under these circumstances, most of the light that enters the sample in the cuvet will not be absorbed, so to determine absorbance, it would be necessary to measure a small difference between two large numbers (i.e., the amount of light transmitted in the absence [control] and the presence of the sample). Therefore, to obviate this condition, it becomes necessary to filter out as much "extraneous" light as possible to enable accurate measurements of absorbance.

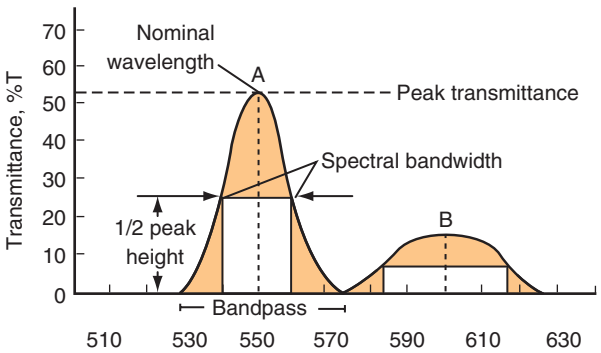


Figure 4-6 **Comparison of spectral characteristics of two types of filters. A,** Interference filter. **B,** Absorption filter. The spectral bandwidth of filter A is much less than filter B and therefore allows fewer wavelengths of light through.

Two approaches may be taken to filtering light waves. The first is to limit the wavelengths of light that enter the sample with appropriate filters, so-called presample filters. The second is to allow multiwavelength light to pass through the sample and then to break up this light into its component wavelengths using a high-resolution prism and focus each of these component wavelengths on specific detectors, essentially one for each of the component wavelengths. If a sample absorbs light at one wavelength, then the ratio of the light transmittance of this wavelength of the sample to that for the control can be used to compute the percent transmittance and absorbance. This arrangement is termed *postsample filtering*.

Presample Filters (Bender, 1987). Fundamentally, two types of these filters are used: absorption and interference filters. Absorption filters simply absorb regions of the electromagnetic spectrum and allow only a limited domain of this spectrum to pass through to the sample cuvet. The simplest sort of absorption filters consists of different forms of glass. One form of glass allows transmission only of wavelengths of light greater than 400 nm, while a second form allows transmission only of wavelengths of light less than 600 nm. If both glasses are arranged serially, they allow for transmission of light of wavelengths of only between 400 and 600 nm, with a peak at 500 nm. As a refinement of this approach, the older spectrophotometers utilize colored glass or transparent plastic materials. These colors are arranged in a circle or wheel so that light of a relatively narrow range of wavelengths is transmitted when each colored sector is in the light path. For example, if light in the green portion of the visible spectrum is desired, the wheel is turned so that the green filter is placed in the light path. The spectral bandwidth of these absorption filters ranges from about 30 to 50 nm (see Fig. 4-6).

This bandwidth is rather large but is adequate for determining the concentration of compounds in solution; absorbance filters are less adequate for scanning the absorption spectra of individual compounds and macromolecules or for accurately determining low concentrations of molecules. To achieve the latter goals, it becomes necessary to use interference filters.

In the simplest interference filter, light on the path to the sample cuvet enters a magnesium fluoride chamber that is coated with micro-mirrors on the interior. As shown in Figure 4-7, *A*, light enters evenly spaced ports or slits on the left. Only light that enters each slit can continue; the rest is absorbed by the chamber. Light entering a slit, at an angle to the horizontal, travels across the chamber and is reflected back to the opposite wall. In Figure 4-7, *A*, if the path length *ab* equals *bc*, and the path length equals the desired wavelength of light, it can be shown from the theory of optics that the light whose wavelength equals that of the path length or integral multiples of this path length will undergo constructive interference (i.e., the waves will add to one another exactly) with incoming light at slits above it. For example, in Figure 4-7, *A*, light of wavelength $L = ab$, reflected from *b* to *c*, will be exactly in phase with light of wavelength *L* or integral multiples of *L*, entering the slit at *c*; all other wavelengths will destructively interfere with light entering slit *c*. The light is then reflected again at *c* to *d* and back again to *e*, where, again, it will add to (constructively interfere with) only light waves of the same wavelength or integral multiples of it. Eventually, only light at the desired wavelength will be transmitted through the opposite wall at slits *f* and *h*.

It is important to note that because integral multiples of the wavelengths of incident light will constructively interfere with transmitted light in the chamber, more than one wavelength of light can be transmitted from the chamber. The actual quantitative relationship between the wavelengths (*L*) transmitted by the chamber; the angle of incidence, *q*, of the light entering a slit; the refractive index, *R*, of MgF_2 (1.38); and the distance, *d*, across the chamber is as follows:

$$ML = 2dR\sin(q) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-9, A)}$$

where *M* is any integer. Note that this equation predicts that for any given distance, *d*, many wavelengths of integral multiples to the fundamental

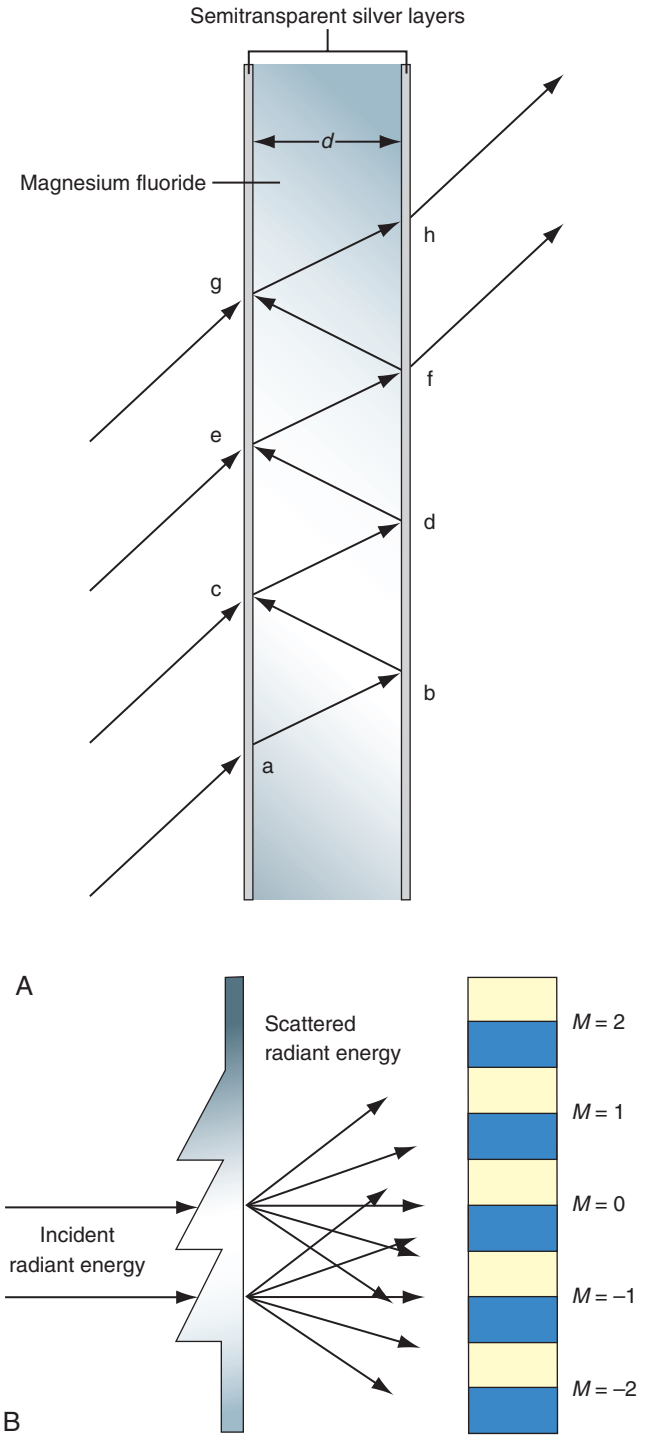


Figure 4-7 **A,** An interference MgF_2 filter. Light enters the filter at regularly spaced apertures at the same angle of incidence at each aperture. Going from the bottom of the figure, the light entering at *a* travels to *b*, where a mirror is reflecting it to *c*. Path lengths *ab* = *bc*. If these, in turn, are equal to the desired wavelength (or integral multiples of it), light of the desired wavelength arriving at *c* will be exactly in phase with light from the light source of that wavelength, and this will result in constructive interference. It will be out of phase with all other wavelengths and will therefore destructively interact with them. This summation process takes place multiple times until only light of the desired wavelength escapes through exit apertures such as at *f* and *h* (after Bender, 1987). **B,** A diffraction filter. When light enters multiple apertures, as in part A, each of which is equidistant from its two neighbors, light of each of the wavelengths interferes both constructively and destructively with itself, giving rise to light *(yellow)* and dark *(blue)* bands or fringes that can be observed on a screen. The position and spacing of these bands depend only on the wavelength and the angle of incidence. As shown in this figure, if apertures are placed only at the points where light *(yellow)* fringes occur in the figure, only light of a specific wavelength will pass through this exit aperture.

wavelength where $M = 1$ can be transmitted. In practice, many of these other wavelengths can be excluded by using such techniques as placing appropriate glass filters in series with the interference chamber.

The above arrangement successfully transmits (close to) monochromatic light at a particular wavelength. However, it does not allow for scanning of wavelengths to obtain the absorption spectra of different samples. To accomplish this, another, similar, arrangement is used. In this case, however, advantage is taken of another principle from the theory of optics: the principle of light diffraction. As shown in Figure 4-7, *B*, when monochromatic light is allowed to enter two slits on one surface of a chamber, very much like the one shown in Figure 4-7, *A*, except that there is no material (MgF_2) in the chamber, the two light waves interfere with each other such that if a screen is placed on the opposite surface of the chamber, discrete regions of light and dark bands will be seen (Bender, 1987). The light bands are from light waves that have added constructively to one another and are transmitted; the dark bands result from destructive interference of the light waves, and no light waves are transmitted. The position of the bands and the distance between the bands depend on the wavelength of light that enters the two apertures and on the angle of incidence of both beams. Because, for a given angle of incidence, the position of the light bands for transmitted monochromatic light depends exclusively on the wavelength of light, if exit apertures are placed on the opposite surface only where the light bands occur for light of a desired wavelength, only light of that wavelength will be emitted from the chamber. This effect can be enhanced by placing multiple entry apertures next to one another in a sawtooth or grating pattern, such that adjacent apertures are at a fixed distance, *d*, from one another, as shown in Figure 4-7, *B*.

Now, polychromatic light is composed of multiple different monochromatic wavelengths of light. When polychromatic light is allowed to pass through the two apertures, as in Figure 4-7, *B*, each of the wavelengths will constructively and destructively interfere with itself, as described earlier. Two different wavelengths of light will interfere only destructively with each other unless they are integral multiples of each other, as discussed in the previous case of the MgF_2 chamber. This allows us to "trap" the light of the desired wavelength by placing the exit apertures where the light bands are known to occur on the opposite surface for that monochromatic wavelength. A limiting factor for selecting truly monochromatic light is the size of the aperture that can allow some "stray" light from adjacent light bands for very close wavelengths to exit.

As with the MgF_2 interference chamber described previously, another source of contaminating light can occur from light of wavelengths that are integral multiples of the desired wavelength. The relationship that describes the wavelength as a function of the distance is similar to that for the MgF_2 chamber—that is,

$$ML = d\sin(q) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-9, B)}$$

Here, however, *d* is the distance between two adjacent entry slits on the near surface (toward the light source), *not* the distance across the chamber as with the MgF_2 chamber. Note that for a given distance, *d*, and angle of incidence, *q*, this equation has multiple solutions. For example, if the desired wavelength is 800 nm, $d\sin(q) = 800$. But this is for $M = 1$, $L = 800$ nm. Another solution is $M = 2$, $L = 400$ nm, and another $M = 3$, $L = 266.67$ nm, and so on. As with the MgF_2 chamber, these other wavelengths can be filtered out by the use of appropriate glass or other filters.

Note that the system shown in Figure 4-7, *B*, allows for continuous scanning of the absorption spectrum for any analyte. Wavelengths can be continuously changed, most often using electronic devices, by changing the position of the aperture on the exit side of the chamber or by changing the angle of incidence of the entering light by altering the angle of the near surface of the chamber. Filters that have this capacity are called *monochromators*. Both interference systems in Figure 4-7 have spectral bandwidths of approximately 1.5% of the wavelength at peak transmittance, much lower than the absorption filters illustrated in Figure 4-6.

Postsample Filters. A different approach to obtaining monochromatic light and an accurate determination of absorbance is simply to allow the light to pass through the sample unfiltered. The light is then passed through a prism, where it is broken into its constituent wavelengths. The action of a prism depends on refraction of radiation by the prism material. The dispersive power depends on the variation of the refractive index with wavelength. A ray of radiation that enters a prism at an angle of incidence is bent toward the normal (vertical to the prism face), and at the prism–air interface, it is bent away from the vertical. As we describe in the section on photomultipliers that follows, each wavelength is focused onto a photodiode array such that each photodiode responds to only a specific set of wavelengths. The amount of transmitted light in the presence of the sample is compared with that in the absence of the sample. Photodiode

arrays are examples of devices that convert photon energy into electrical currents in a system where photons excite the outer electrons in metal to move in the so-called conduction band, generating a current.

Sample Containers (Cuvets)

Sample containers (i.e., cells or cuvets) are used to hold samples and must be made of material that is transparent to radiation in the spectral region of interest. In the ultraviolet region of the electromagnetic spectrum (below 350 nm), cuvets are made from fused silica or quartz. Silicate glasses can be used in the region between 350 and 2000 nm. Plastic containers have also found application in the visible region. Generally, the path length of cuvets is 1 cm, although much smaller path lengths are used in automated systems. However, to increase sensitivity, some cuvets are designed to have path lengths of 10 cm, increasing the absorbance for a given solution by a factor of 10 (Beer's law; Equation 4-7).

Many double-beam spectrophotometers are designed with two cuvet holders: one for the sample and the other for the solvent. If two cuvets are used, they should be optically matched for more accurate results. Matched pairs of cuvets are obtainable from a manufacturer, but their optical performance should be verified before use by measuring the absorbance of identical solutions and comparing their values. One cell should then be reserved for the sample solution and the other for solvent. Cells should be scrupulously cleaned before and after each use.

Photodetectors

It is necessary to determine how much light passes through the sample in the cuvet. To accomplish this task, advantage is taken of the photoelectric effect that forms the basis of the quantum theory. Photons of specific wavelength excite the outer shell electrons of metals at their resonance frequencies to high-energy states in which they move through the so-called "conduction band," where electrons move through the outer shells of the metal, thereby causing a current. This current, the magnitude of which is directly related to the intensity of the incident light, can then be detected and digitized.

Photomultiplier Tubes (PMTs). Perhaps the most common type of photon detector is the photomultiplier. Photomultiplier tubes are commonly used when radiant power is very low, which is characteristic of very-low-analyte concentrations. The operating principle is similar to the phototube, with one significant difference. Some PMTs are designed to provide an amplified signal nearly 1 million times larger than their phototube counterparts. This is accomplished by using multiple dynodes positioned throughout the PMT. The response of the PMT begins when incoming photons strike a photocathode. Electrons are ejected from the surface of the photocathode. A PMT has several additional electrodes called *dynodes*, each having a potential that is approximately 90 V higher than the previous one. Upon striking a dynode, each photoelectron causes emission of several additional electrons; these, in turn, are accelerated toward a second dynode, which is 90 V more positive than the previous dynode, which further amplifies the incident signal. This process, shown in Figure 4-8, continues within the PMT until all electrons are collected at the anode, where the resulting current is passed to an electronic amplifier.

Photomultiplier tubes are highly sensitive to ultraviolet and visible radiation. They also have very fast response times. These tubes are limited to measuring low-power radiation because intense light causes irreversible damage to the photoelectric surface.

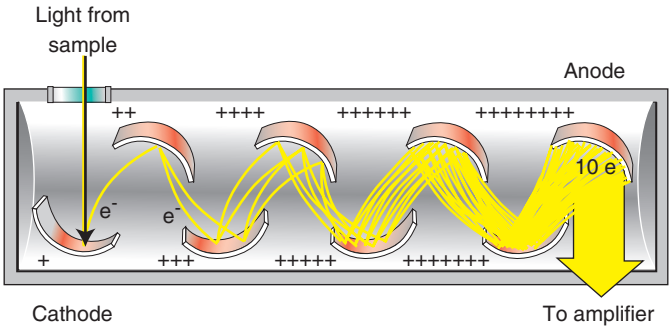


Figure 4-8 Schematic of a photomultiplier tube. In this diagram, a tenfold amplification of the initial signal is produced at the anode. (Redrawn from Simonson MG: In Kaplan LA, Pesce AJ, editors. *Nonisotopic alternatives to radioimmunoassay.* New York, 1981, Marcel Dekker.)

Photovoltaic or Barrier Layer Cell. A variant method of detecting photon-induced current is the photovoltaic cell. This is a basic phototransducer that is used for detecting and measuring radiation in the visible region. This cell typically has a maximum sensitivity at about 550 nm, and the response falls off to about 10% of the maximum at 350 and 750 nm. It consists of a flat copper or iron electrode upon which is deposited a layer of semiconductor material, such as selenium. The outer surface of the semiconductor is coated with a thin, transparent metallic film of gold or silver, which serves as the second or collector electrode. When radiation of sufficient energy reaches the semiconductor, covalent bonds are broken, with the result that conduction electrons and holes are formed. The electrons migrate toward the metallic film and the holes toward the base upon which the semiconductor is deposited. The liberated electrons are free to migrate through the external circuit to interact with these holes. The result is an electrical current of a magnitude that is proportional to the number of photons that strike the semiconductor surface and a photocurrent that is directly proportional to the intensity of the radiation that strikes the cells.

These types of photodetectors are rugged and low cost, and they require no external source of electrical energy. Low sensitivity and fatigue are two distinct disadvantages of these cells. For routine analyses at optimum wavelengths, these photocells provide reliable analytic data.

Vacuum Phototubes. A vacuum phototube has a semicylindrical cathode and a wire anode sealed inside an evacuated transparent envelope. The concave surface of the electrode supports a layer of photoemissive material that tends to emit electrons when it is irradiated. When a potential is applied across the electrode, the emitted electrons flow to the wire anode, generating a photocurrent that is generally about one tenth as great as the photocurrent associated with photovoltaic cells for a given radiant intensity. The number of electrons ejected from a photoemissive surface is directly proportional to the radiant power of the beam that strikes the surface. All of the electrons are collected at the anode. Several types of photoemissive surfaces are used in commercial phototubes. These include highly sensitive bialkali materials made up of potassium, cesium, and antimony; red-sensitive material using multialkalis—for example, Na/K/Cs/Sb; ultraviolet sensitive with UV transparent windows; and flat response-type substances using Ga/As compositions.

Silicon Diode Transducers. Silicon diode transducers are more sensitive than vacuum phototubes but less sensitive than the PMTs described above. Photodiodes have spectral ranges from about 190 to 1100 nm. These devices contain positively (P) and negatively (N) charged semiconductive materials adjoining one another embedded on a silicon chip. A power supply is attached to this arrangement so that its positive pole connects to the *N*-type and its negative pole to the *P*-type material. This arrangement results in a depletion layer that reduces the conductance of the junction to nearly zero. If radiation is allowed to impinge on the chip, holes and electrons formed in the depletion layer are swept through the device to produce a current that is proportional to radiant power (Skoog et al, 1998). This process is shown in Figure 4-9.

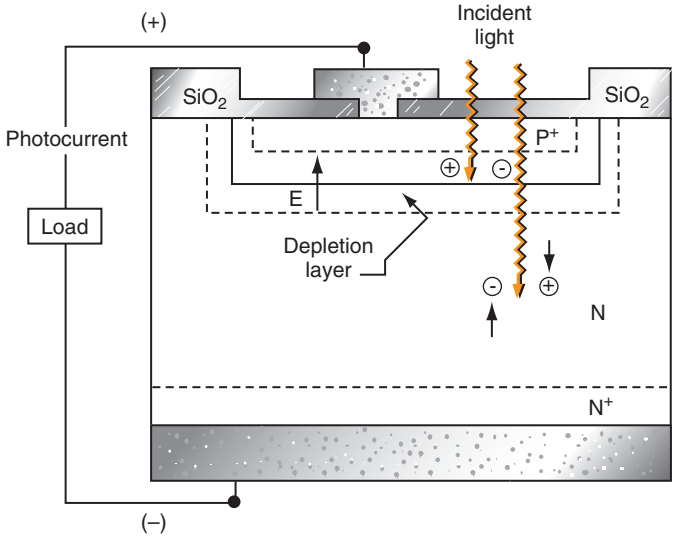


Figure 4-9 Schematic of a semiconductor photodiode used as a detector in many spectrometers.

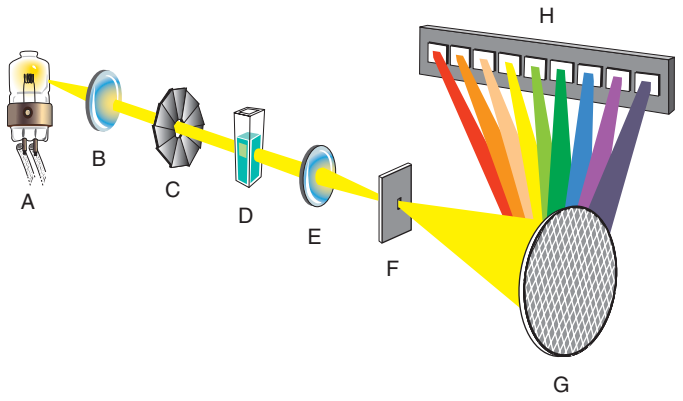


Figure 4-10 **Photodiode array. A,** Lamp. **B,** Lens. **C,** Shutter. **D,** Cell. **E,** Lens. **F,** Slit. **G,** Grating. **H,** Photodiode array.

Multichannel Photon Transducers. In the discussion of postsample filters, it was noted that unfiltered light emerging from the sample could be broken up into its constituent wavelengths using prisms; these different wavelengths are then directed to electronic detectors such that the intensity of light of each of the constituent wavelengths can be quantitated. Here, we describe some of these multiwavelength photodetectors.

A multichannel transducer consists of an array of small photoelectric-sensitive elements arranged linearly or in a two-dimensional pattern on a single semiconductor chip. The chip, which is usually silicon and typically has dimensions of a few millimeters on a side, also contains electronic circuitry that makes it possible to determine the electrical output signal from each of the photosensitive elements sequentially or simultaneously. The alignment of a multichannel transducer is generally in the focal plane of a spectrometer, so various elements of the dispersed spectrum can be converted and measured simultaneously. Several types of multichannel transducers currently are used; they may include photodiode arrays (PDAs), charge-injection devices (CIDs), and charge-coupled devices (CCDs).

Photodiode Arrays. By using the modern fabrication techniques of microelectronics, it is now possible to produce a linear (one-dimensional) array of several hundred photodiodes set side-by-side on a single integrated circuit (IC), or "chip" (Fig. 4-10). Each diode is capable of recording the intensity at one point along the line, and together they provide a linear profile of the light variation along the array.

A multiplex method is used to sort all of the signals received from the PDA. It records each signal individually and then feeds the signals sequentially to a single amplifier. The output of the PDA is a histogram profile, along the array, of the charge leaked by each photodiode. This mirrors the variation of light intensity across the array. Thus the PDA detection occurs in three main stages:

1. Initialization
2. Accumulation of charge at each pixel-integration time
3. Read-out signals

In comparison with the PMT, the PDA has a lower dynamic range and higher noise. It is most useful as a simultaneous multichannel detector (Skoog et al, 1998).

Charge-Transfer Devices. Recent developments in solid-state detection techniques have now produced very effective two-dimensional array detectors that operate on a charge-transfer process as an alternative to photodiodes. A *charge-transfer device* (CTD) is a detection system in which a photon, striking the IC semiconductor material, releases electrons from their bound state into a mobile state. The released charge, consisting of negative electrons and positive holes, then drifts to, and accumulates at, surface electrodes. An array of these surface electrodes divides the detector into separate, light-sensitive "pixels." The charge that accumulated at each electrode is proportional to the integrated light intensity falling on that particular pixel.

Two distinct classes of CTDs are known: charge-injection devices (CIDs) and charge-coupled devices (CCDs). In a CCD, all of the charge packets are moved "in-step" along the array row from one pixel to the next, as in a "bucket chain." At the end of the row, the charge packets are fed sequentially into an *on-chip* low-noise amplifier, which then converts the charge into a voltage signal. The overall signal profile across the two-dimensional array is recorded one row at a time, thus giving a series of voltage signals corresponding to all of the pixels in the detection area.

In a CID, the charge accumulated in each pixel can be measured independently and nondestructively by using a network of "sensing" electrodes, which can monitor the presence of the accumulated charge. This is an important factor that differentiates CID systems from CCD and PDA systems, in which the whole of the detection area is "read" destructively in a single process.

Signal Processors and Readout

The processing of an electrical signal received from a transducer is accomplished by a device that amplifies, rectifies AC to DC (or the reverse), alters the phase of the signal, and filters it to remove unwanted components. In addition, the signal processor may need to perform mathematical operations on the signal such as differential calculations, integration, or conversion to a logarithm. Several readout devices have been used and include digital meters, d'Arsonval meters, recorders, light-emitting diodes (LEDs), cathode-ray tubes (CRTs), and liquid crystal displays (LCDs).

Quality Assurance in Spectrophotometry

Several photometric parameters must be monitored periodically by users. Monitoring these parameters is recommended by most regulatory agencies and accrediting organizations. The parameters routinely monitored include wavelength or photometric accuracy, absorbance check, linearity, and stray light.

Accuracy is the closeness of a measurement to its true value. *Wavelength accuracy* implies that a photometer is measuring at the wavelength that it is set to. *Photometric accuracy* can be assessed easily using special glass-type optical filters. Two examples of commonly used filters include didymium and holmium oxide. Didymium glass has a broad absorption peak around 600 nm, and holmium oxide has multiple absorption peaks with a sharp peak occurring at 360 nm.

An *absorbance check* is performed using glass filters or solutions that have known absorbance values for a specific wavelength. The operator simply measures the absorbance of each solution at a specified wavelength and compares the results with the stated values. Each user should establish a tolerance for the measurements based on accepted criteria.

Linearity is defined as the ability of a photometric system to yield a linear relationship between the radiant power incident upon its detector and the concentration (i.e., Beer's law). The linearity of a spectrometer can be determined using optical filters or solutions that have known absorbance values for a given wavelength. Linearity measurements should be evaluated for both slope and intercept.

Stray light is described as any light that impinges upon the detector that does not originate from a polychromatic light source. Stray light can have a significant impact on any measurement made. Stray light effect can be evaluated by using special cutoff filters.

Types of Photometric Instruments

Several instrument designs and configurations may be used for absorption photometry. Each has unique terminology associated with its design. The terminology is not universal among users but is presented here as a guide. A *spectroscope* is an optical instrument used for visual identification of atomic emission lines. It has a monochromator, usually a prism or diffraction grating, in which the exit slit is replaced by an eyepiece that can be moved along the focal plane. The wavelength of an emission line can then be determined from the angle between the incident and dispersed beam when the line is centered on the eyepiece.

A *colorimeter* uses the human eye as the detector. The user compares the observed color of the unknown sample against a standard or a series of colored standards of known concentrations. *Photometers* consist of a light source, a filter, and a photoelectric transducer, as well as a signal processor and readout. Some manufacturers use the term *colorimeter* or *photoelectric colorimeter* for a photometer. These photometers use filters for isolation of specific wavelengths, not gratings or prisms.

A *spectrometer* is an instrument that provides information about the intensity of radiation as a function of wavelength or frequency. Spectrophotometers are spectrometers equipped with one or more exit slits and photoelectron transducers that permit determination of the ratio of the power of two beams as a function of wavelength, as in absorption spectroscopy. Most spectrophotometers use a grating monochromator to break up the light into a spectrum, as discussed earlier in the section on presample filters.

Single-beam spectrophotometers are the simplest types of absorption spectrometers. These instruments are designed to make one measurement at a time at one specified wavelength. The absorption maximum of the analyte must be known in advance when a single-beam instrument is used. The wavelength is then set to this value. The reference material (solvent

blank) is transferred into a suitable cuvet and is placed in the path of the monochromatic light. The spectrometer is adjusted to read 0%T when a shutter is placed to block all radiation from the detector and is adjusted to read 100%T when the shutter is removed. After these adjustments have been made, the sample is placed in the light path, the absorbance is measured, and the concentration is determined using calculations based on Beer's law or by constructing a calibration curve for the analyte.

A double-beam spectrophotometer splits or chops the monochromatic beam of radiation into two components. One beam passes through the sample, and the other passes through a reference solution or blank. In this design, the radiant power in the reference beam varies with the source energy, monochromator transmission, reference material transmission, and detector response, making the difference between the sample and the reference beam largely a function of the sample. The output of the reference beam can be kept constant, and the absorbance of the sample can be recorded directly as the electrical output of the sample beam.

Two fundamental instrument designs are used for double-beam spectrophotometers: double beam in space and double beam in time. A double beam in space design uses two photodetectors: one for the sample beam and the other for the reference beam. The two signals generated are directed to a differential amplifier, which then passes on the difference between the signals to the readout device. A schematic of the double beam in space system is shown in Figure 4-11.

A double beam in time instrument uses one photodetector and alternately passes the monochromatic radiation through the sample cuvet and then to the reference cuvet, using a *chopper*. A chopper is the term used for a device such as a rotating sector mirror that breaks up or rotates radiation beams. Each beam, consisting of a pulse of radiation separated in time by a dark interval, is then directed onto an appropriate detector. A schematic of the double beam in time system is shown in Figure 4-12.

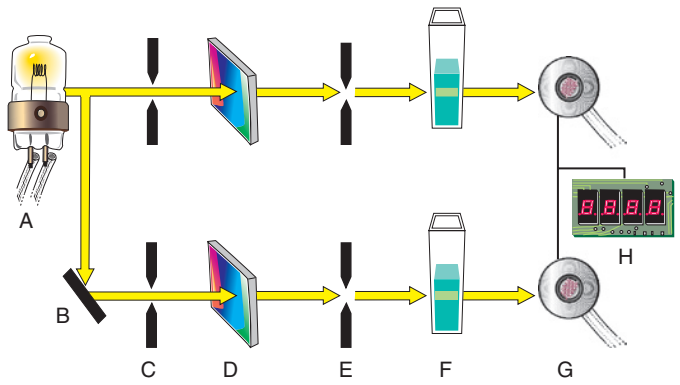


Figure 4-11 **Double beam in space design of spectrophotometer. A,** Exciter lamp. **B,** Mirror. **C,** Entrance slits. **D,** Monochromators. **E,** Exit slits. **F,** Cuvettes. **G,** Photodetectors. **H,** Light-emitting diode (LED).

A scanning double-beam system includes a double-beam spectrophotometer and a recorder that can provide an X-Y plot of absorbance versus wavelength for a given test sample. This type of configuration is ideal for determining the wavelength spectrum of an analyte in solution. The spectrophotometer has an automatically driven wavelength cam that can rotate at a predetermined speed. The recorder can be calibrated to the wavelength of the monochromator to facilitate the identification of each peak maxima.

REFLECTOMETRY

Measurement of analytes in biologic fluids using reflectometry has been used for decades. Two clinical applications include urine dipstick analysis and dry slide chemical analysis. The instruments used for these applications include a reflectometer. A reflectometer is a filter photometer that measures the quantity of light reflected by a liquid sample that has been dispensed onto a grainy or fibrous solid support.

The two types of reflectance are specular and diffuse. Specular reflectance occurs on a polished surface where the angle of incidence of the radiant energy is equal to the angle of reflection. Polished surfaces—for example, a mirror—can be used to direct and manage radiant energy but not to determine concentration. Diffuse reflectance occurs on nonpolished surfaces (i.e., a grainy or fibrous surface), as noted earlier. The reflected radiant energy tends to go in many directions. Diffuse reflection occurs within the layers and depends on the properties and characteristics of the layers themselves. A colored substance absorbs the wavelength of its color and reflects all other wavelengths at many different angles. Therefore, the amount of a substance present can be measured as an indirect function of the reflected light.

A typical reflectometer used in a clinical laboratory detects only a constant fraction of the diffuse reflected light. Thus the reflectance of a sample is represented by the following:

$$R_{(\text{diffuse reflectance})} = \frac{R'_{(\text{fraction of diffuse reflectance of sample})}}{R'_{(\text{fraction of diffuse reflectance of a standard})}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-10, A)}$$

The amount of light reflected by a solution dispensed onto a white granular or grainy surface is inversely related to the concentration of the sample, as given by the following:

$$R_{\text{density}} = -\log\left(\frac{R_{\text{sample}} - R_{\text{black}}}{(R_{\text{standard}})}\right) \times R_{\text{white}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-10, B)}$$

where:

R_{density} = corrected reflectance density of the sample
R_{sample} = measured reflectance of the sample
R_{black} = reflectance of a black reference
R_{white} = reflectance of a white reference
R_{standard} = reflectance of a standard solution

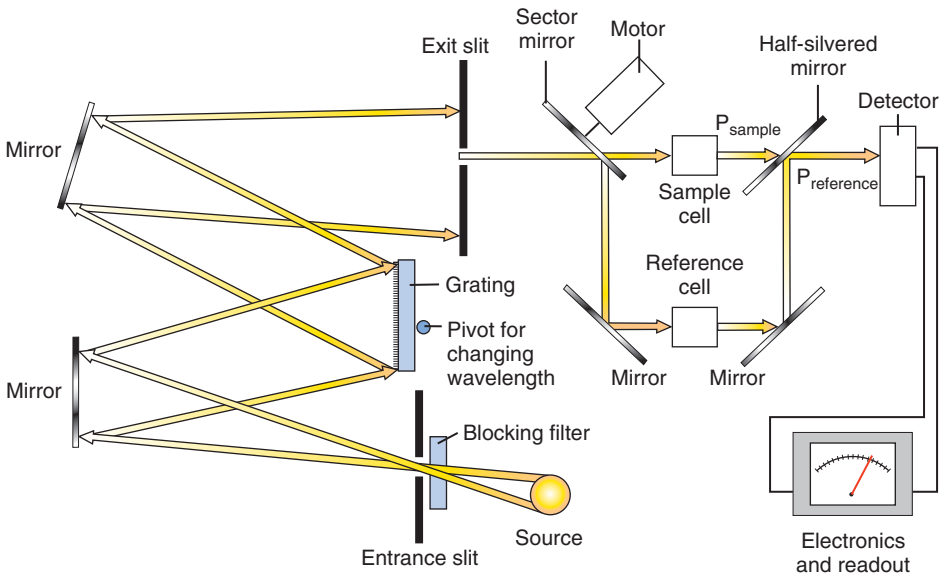


Figure 4-12 **Double beam in time design of spectrophotometer.**

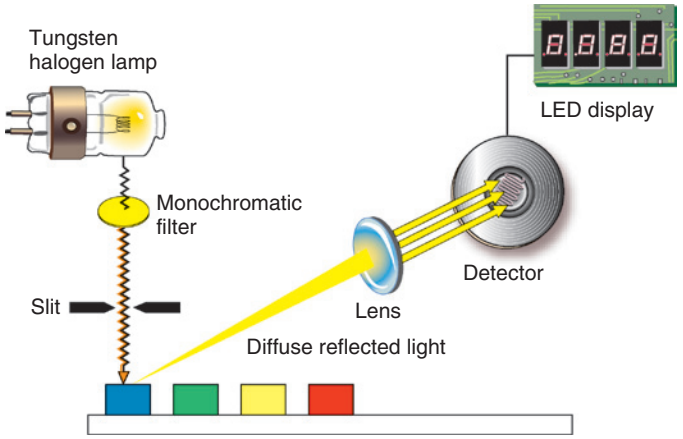


Figure 4-13 Components in a typical reflectometer used to measure analytes on urine dipstick. The different-colored blocks represent different tests performed in urinalysis; the *blue* represents the quantitation of analyte using reflectance (i.e., the reflectance of light focused on the sample and reflected at an angle *[yellow beam],* where it is detected).

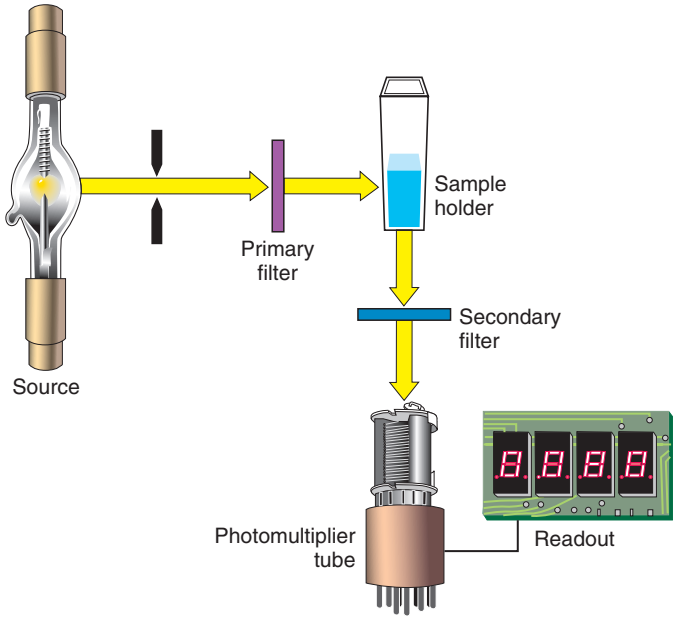


Figure 4-14 Components of a fluorometer. (From Bishop ML, Duben-Engelkirk JL, Fody EP: *Clinical chemistry: Principles, procedures, correlations.* Philadelphia, 1992, JB Lippincott Company; with permission.)

The ideal reflectance value of a pure white standard of ceramic material is *one* (i.e., all light is reflected), and conversely, the ideal reflectance value of pure black material is *zero* (i.e., all light is absorbed).

The relationship of percent reflectance and concentration of an analyte is nonlinear. Several algorithms have been developed for linearizing this relationship. The specific algorithm used depends on the reflection characteristics of the composition material of the pad or film, the nature of the illumination, and the geometry of the instrument.

Reflectometers

The components of a reflectometer are very similar to those of a photometer, as shown in Figure 4-13. A tungsten–quartz halide lamp serves as a source of polychromatic radiation. A monochromator (e.g., stationary filter or filter wheel for multiple analytes) is used to isolate the wavelength of interest. Next, the monochromatic light passes through a slit and is directed onto the surface of a urine dipstick pad or dry slide, depending on the instrumentation used. Solid-state photodiodes are typically used to detect reflected radiant energy. Special optical devices—for example, fiberoptics or ellipsoidal mirrors—can be used to direct radiant energy onto the detector. A computer or microprocessor is used to convert nonlinear reflectance signals into direct readout concentration units.

MOLECULAR LUMINESCENCE SPECTROSCOPY (FLUOROMETRY)

Principle

Luminescence is based on an energy exchange process that occurs when certain compounds absorb electromagnetic radiation, become excited, and return to an energy level lower than or equal to their original level. Because some energy is lost before emission from the excited state by collision with the solvent or other molecules, the wavelength of the emitted light is longer than that of the exciting light. Most uncharged molecules contain even numbers of electrons in the ground state. These electrons fill molecular orbits in pairs with their spins in opposite directions. No electron energies can be detected by application of a magnetic field to such spin patterns, and this electronic state is called the singlet state. Similarly, if an electron becomes excited by electromagnetic radiation and its spin remains paired with the ground state, this creates a singlet excited state. The lifetime of the excited state is the average length of time the molecule remains excited before emission of light. For a singlet excited state, the lifetime of the excited state is on the order of 10^{-9} to 10^{-6} s. The light emission from a singlet excited state is called *fluorescence*. When the spins of the electrons in the excited state are unpaired, the electron energy levels will be split if a magnetic field is applied, and this electronic state is called a triplet state. Triplet state lifetimes range from 10^{-4} to 10 s (Willard et al, 1988). Light emission from an excited triplet state is called *phosphorescence*.

Luminescence is widely used because of its high sensitivity; the signal-to-noise ratio is very high because light is measured against a nearly dark background. High specificity is a function of using two spectra, the excitation and emission spectra, and the possibility of measuring the lifetime of the fluorescent state. Two compounds that are excited at the same wavelength but emit at different wavelengths are readily differentiated with this technique.

Components of Fluorometers and Spectrophotofluorometers

Instruments designed for fluorescence measurement have the following basic components: a light source, an excitation (primary) monochromator, a cuvet, an emission (secondary) monochromator, and a photodetector (Fig. 4-14). The exciter lamp is a high-intensity light source such as a mercury vapor lamp or a xenon arc lamp. Simple instruments use mercury vapor lamps that do not require any special power supply. Mercury vapor lamps produce discrete and intense resonance lines that are not ideal for compounds with absorption bands at wavelengths not coinciding with these emission bands. For such compounds, xenon arc lamps producing an intense continuous spectrum between 300 and 1300 nm are appropriate. These lamps are used in nearly all commercial spectrophotofluorometers. In fluorescence measurements, the emitted light is detected at a right angle to the incident light to eliminate potential interference by the excitation signal. Phototubes or photomultiplier tubes (PMTs) are required for fluorescence measurements because the signals are generally of low intensity. Newer fluorometers on the market today use diode array and CTDs, which allow the rapid recording of both excitation and emission spectra and are particularly useful in chromatography and electrophoresis.

Time-resolved fluorescence assays minimize problems inherent in other fluorescent assays such as overlapping excitation or emission spectra of compounds present in the sample with the fluorophore. The label most commonly used is a chelate of europium (Eu^{3+}). Energy is absorbed by the organic ligand, leading to an excited state as the electrons migrate from the ground state singlet to the excited singlet state. The excitation may lead to any vibrational multiplet of the excited state S_1. The molecule rapidly returns to the lowest energy levels in S_1 by a nonradiative process. The energy is transferred to the metal ion, which becomes excited and subsequently emits characteristic radiation. The radiative transition of excited Eu^{3+} after an energy transfer from triplet state results in an emission wavelength of 613 nm. The fluorescence lifetime of Eu^{3+} chelate is 10 to 1000 μs compared with nanoseconds for the most commonly used fluorophore. Therefore, Eu^{3+} with its longer emission lifetime makes it more attractive to use over a fluorophore like fluorescein with a lifetime of 4.5 ns. Time-resolved fluorescence instruments are similar to a typical fluorometer, except that time-resolved fluorometers use a time-gated measure on only a portion of the total emission spectra.

Chemiluminescence applications have increased dramatically owing to the increased sensitivity over fluorescence. (In chemiluminescence, the light signal is measured against a completely dark background because no excitation light is required.) The primary application has been in the area of immunoassays where several chemiluminescence compounds have been

used as antigen labels. Chemiluminescence differs from fluorescence and phosphorescence in that the emission of light is created from a chemical or electrochemical reaction and not from absorption of electromagnetic energy. The chemical reaction yields an electronically excited compound that emits light as it returns to its ground state or that transfers its energy to another compound, which then produces emission. Chemiluminescence involves the oxidation of an organic compound (e.g., dioxetane, luminol, acridinium ester) by an oxidant (hydrogen peroxide, hypochlorite, or oxygen). These oxidation reactions may occur in the presence of catalysts, such as enzymes (alkaline phosphatase, horseradish peroxidase, or microperoxidase), metal ions (Cu^{2+} or Fe^{3+} phthalocyanine complex), and hemin. The excited products formed in the oxidation reaction produce chemiluminescence on return to the singlet state. A luminometer is used to detect chemiluminescence; it contains a PMT that provides a very strong electrical output signal. A typical signal from a chemiluminescent compound rises rapidly with time and reaches a maximum when reagent and analyte are completely mixed. An exponential decay of the signal follows until baseline is reached.

NEPHELOMETRY AND TURBIDIMETRY

Nephelometry and turbidimetry are used to measure the concentrations of large particles (such as antigen–antibody complexes, prealbumin, and other serum proteins) that because of their size cannot be measured by absorption spectroscopy. Nephelometry detects light that is scattered at various angles; scattered light yields a small signal that must be amplified. In contrast, turbidimetry measures a reduction in light transmission due to particle formation; thus it detects a small decrease in a large signal (Fig. 4-15).

Principle

Nephelometry and turbidimetry are based on the scattering of radiation by particles in suspension. When a collimated light beam strikes a particle in suspension, portions of the light are absorbed, reflected, scattered, and transmitted. Nephelometry is the measurement of the light scattered by a particulate solution. Three types of light scatters occur according to the relative size of the light wavelength (Gauldie, 1981). If the wavelength (λ) of light is much larger than the diameter (*d*) of the particle ($d < 0.1\lambda$), the light scatter is symmetrical around the particle. Minimum light scatter occurs at 90 degrees to the incident beam and was described by Rayleigh (Rayleigh, 1885). If the wavelength of light is much smaller than the particle diameter ($d < 0.1\lambda$), then the light scatters forward owing to destructive out-of-phase backscatter, as described by the Mie theory. If the wavelength of light is approximately the same as the particle size, more light scatters in the forward direction than in other directions, as defined by the Rayleigh-Debye theory. A common application of nephelometry is the measurement of antigen–antibody reactions. Because most antigen–antibody complexes have a diameter of 250 to 1500 nm, and the wavelengths used are 320 to 650 nm, light is scattered forward (Rayleigh-Debye type).

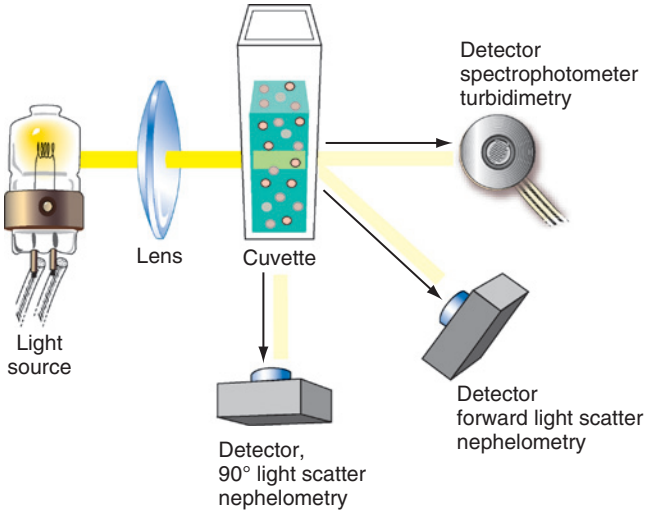


Figure 4-15 Optical arrangements of nephelometry and turbidimetry. Note that nephelometry detects (right-angle or forward) scattered light, and turbidimetry measures a reduction of light transmitted in the forward direction. (Modified from Bishop ML, Duben-Engelkirk JL, Fody EP: *Clinical chemistry: Principles, procedures, correlations.* Philadelphia, 1992, JB Lippincott Company; with permission.)

Nephelometer

A typical nephelometer consists of a light source, a collimator, a monochromator, a sample cuvet, a stray light trap, and a photodetector. Light scattered by particles is measured at an angle, typically 15 to 90 degrees to the beam incident on the cuvet (see Fig. 4-15). Light scattering depends on the wavelength of incident light and particle size. For macromolecules with size close to or larger than the light wavelength, measurement of forward light scatter increases the sensitivity of nephelometry. Light sources include a mercury-arc lamp, a tungsten-filament lamp, a light-emitting diode, and a laser.

Lasers produce stable, nearly ideal monochromatic light of narrow bandwidth and emit radiant energy that is coherent, parallel, and polarized. A laser beam can be maintained as a very slim cylinder only a few micrometers in cross section. A typical helium-neon laser lamp consists of a helium-pumping electrode (cathode) and a hollow glass laser core surrounded by a laser plasma tube (anode). Both the plasma tube and the core are filled with free helium and neon gases. The electrical discharge between the cathode and the anode is confined to the hollow glass core to keep it concentrated for maximum energy transfer. Two mirrors are positioned at the ends of the laser tube. One of them is fully reflective and the other partially transparent. When the electrode is charged, the helium atoms are excited to a higher energy state and then transfer this energy to the neon atoms by collision. In turn, the excited neon atoms emit photons. Photons bounce back and forth between the two end mirrors, stimulating other atoms to emit additional photons, resulting in an amplification process. The amplified light eventually emerges as a laser beam through the partially transparent mirror. With the high-intensity monochromatic beam, a substantial increase in sensitivity has been seen with lasers over conventional light sources. Disadvantages of laser sources include cost, safety and cooling requirements, and limited availability of wavelengths.

Turbidimetry

The measurement of the reduction in light transmission caused by particle formation is termed *turbidimetry*. Light transmitted in the forward direction is detected. The amount of light absorbed by a suspension of particles depends on the specimen concentration and on the particle size. Solutions requiring quantitation by turbidimetry are measured using visible photometers or visible spectrophotometers. Higher sensitivity has been achieved using photodetectors that can detect small changes in photon signals. Sensitivity comparable with nephelometry can be attained using low wavelengths and high-quality spectrophotometers. Many clinical applications exist for turbidimetry. Various microbiology analyzers measure the turbidity of samples to detect bacterial growth in broth cultures. Turbidimetry is routinely used to measure the antibiotic sensitivities from such cultures. In coagulation analyzers, turbidimetric measurements detect clot formation in the sample cuvets. Turbidimetric assays have long been available in clinical chemistry to quantify protein concentration in biologic fluids, such as urine and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

REFRACTOMETRY

Refractometry is based on light refraction. When light passes from one medium into another, the light beam changes its direction at the boundary surface if its speed in the second medium is different from that in the first. The ability of a substance to bend light is called *refractivity*, and it is measured as a difference between the *angle of incidence* and the *angle of refraction*. The refractivity of a liquid depends on the wavelength of the incident light, the temperature, the nature of the liquid medium, and the concentration of the solute dissolved in the medium. If the first three factors are held constant, the refractivity of a solution is an indirect measurement of total solute concentration. Refractometry can be used to measure protein concentration, specific gravity of urine, and column effluent of high-performance liquid chromatography analysis.

OSMOMETRY

Osmometry is the measurement of the osmolality of an aqueous solution such as serum, plasma, or urine. As osmotically active particles (e.g., glucose, urea nitrogen, sodium) are added to a solution, causing its osmolality to increase, four other properties of the solution are also affected. These properties are osmotic pressure, boiling point, freezing point, and vapor pressure. They are called *colligative properties* of the solution because they can be related to one another and to the osmolality. As the osmolality of a solution increases, (1) the osmotic pressure increases, (2) the boiling point is elevated, (3) the freezing point is depressed, and (4) the vapor

pressure is depressed. Osmometry is based on measuring changes in the colligative properties of solutions that occur owing to variations in particle concentration. Freezing-point depression osmometry is the most commonly used method for measuring the changes in colligative properties of a solution. It is based on the principle that the addition of solute molecules lowers the temperature at which a solution freezes.

Principle of Freezing-Point Osmometry

The freezing point is the temperature at which water and ice are in equilibrium and is related to solute concentration. It is described by the following equation:

$$\rho T_f = K_f m \quad \textbf{(Eq. 4-11)}$$

where:

ρT_f = change in freezing-point temperature
K_f = freezing-point constant of the solvent
m = molality

A 1.0-mOsm/kg solution has a freezing point depression of 0.00186° C when compared with pure solvent (water). Thus blood plasma, with an osmolality of about 285 mOsm/kg, has a freezing point of about –0.53° C.

Freezing-Point Osmometer

A freezing-point osmometer consists of a sample chamber containing a stirrer and a thermistor (temperature-sensing device) connected to a readout device. The sample is rapidly supercooled to several degrees below its freezing point in a refrigeration chamber containing, for example, ethylene glycol. The sample is then agitated with the stirrer to initiate freezing. As ice crystals form, heat is released from the solution; this raises the temperature of the sample. The rate at which this heat of fusion is released from the ice being rapidly formed reaches equilibrium with the rate of heat removed by the colder temperature of the sample chamber. This equilibrium temperature, known as the freezing point of the solution, stays constant for several minutes once it is reached. This freezing point is detected by the thermistor, and the osmolality of the sample is converted to units of milliosmoles per kilogram of water.

FLOW CYTOMETRY

A flow cytometer measures multiple properties of cells suspended in a moving fluid medium. As each particle passes single file through a laser light source, it produces a characteristic light pattern that is measured by multiple detectors for scattered light (forward and 90 degrees) and fluorescent light (if the cell is stained with a fluorochrome). Flow cytometry is used to count and sort cells, as well as viral particles, DNA fragments, bacteria, and latex beads. It is a core component of hematology cell counters and the technology used to differentiate white blood cells.

In flow cytometry, the term *particle* describes any object flowing through the instrument. An *event* is anything that is interpreted by the instrument to be a single particle. An event may be determined correctly or incorrectly by a flow cytometer. Methods have been developed to compensate for measurement of unwanted events. An example is the correction for measuring the simultaneous passing of two particles. Particles must be in suspension as single cells to be analyzed. If not, they can be made suitable for flow cytometry by the use of mechanical disruption or enzymatic digestion. Size restrictions also apply; cells or particles must be from 1 to 30 µm in diameter. Specialized flow cytometers are designed to handle smaller particles such as DNA fragments or bacteria.

Instrument Components

The system shown in Figure 4-16 has all of the design features of a flow cytometer with cell-sorting capabilities. The cell suspension aliquots are introduced into the flow chamber using air pressure. As cells pass through the flow chamber, a low-pressure sheath fluid surrounds them. This outer fluid stream creates a laminar flow that forces the specimen to the center and results in a single-file alignment of the individual cells. This process is called *hydrodynamic focusing*. A laser beam passes through each cell as it flows through the chamber. Forward light scatter is proportional to cell size, and 90-degree or right-angle scatter is related to cell granularity and nuclear irregularity. If the cells are labeled with appropriate fluorochromes, fluorescent signals proportional to the amount of bound label can be measured. Green fluorescence usually means that the dye fluorescein was used as a marker; red fluorescence usually means that a dye such as phycoerythrin was used as the contrasting marker. These dyes are usually attached to antibodies to specifically target selective antigens on cells or particles.

Forward light scatter is directed to the forward scatter photodetector. At right angles to the laser beam are mirrors that divide the right-angle light scatter among the remaining photodetectors (e.g., a right-angle scatter detector and two fluorescence detectors). Across the forward lens is an obscuration bar that blocks the laser beam after it passes through the stream. Only light from the laser that has been refracted or scattered as it strikes a particle in the stream is diverted enough from its original direction to avoid the obscuration bar and strike the forward positioned lens and the photodiode behind it. Granulocytes, monocytes, and lymphocytes are separated on the basis of size and granularity patterns, as determined by simultaneously analyzing forward and right-angle light scatter. For example, granulocytes with irregular nuclei scatter more light to the side than do lymphocytes with their spherical nuclei. Cell subpopulations can be identified by using electronic gating and analyzing fluorescence patterns (based on labels used for specific cells).

FACS, an acronym for *fluorescence-activated cell sorter*, describes the ability of a flow cytometer to physically sort cells in a liquid suspension. To do so, the instrument design has to be modified to electrically charge cells of interest. This is done by first vibrating the sheath stream to break it into drops. The stream of drops flows past two charge (high-voltage) plates, where the cells of interest are electrically charged with a voltage pulse. Then the flow stream enters an electrical field, where the charged cells are deflected into suitable collection containers. Unwanted cells are not charged and are not deflected upon passing through the field.

ELECTROCHEMISTRY

Electrochemistry involves measurement of the current or voltage generated by the activity of specific ions. Analytic techniques include potentiometry, coulometry, voltammetry, and amperometry.

Potentiometry

The measurement of potential (voltage) between two electrodes in a solution forms the basis for a variety of procedures for measuring analyte concentration. Electrical potentials are produced at the interface between a metal and ions of that metal in a solution. Such potentials also exist when a membrane semipermeable to that ion separates different concentrations of an ion. To measure the electrode potential, a constant-voltage source is needed as the reference potential. The electrode with a constant voltage is called the reference electrode, whereas the measuring electrode is called the indicator electrode. Concentration of ions in a solution can be calculated from the measured potential difference between the two electrodes. The measured cell potential is related to the molar concentration by the Nernst equation:

$$E = E^{o} - RT/nF \ln a_{red}/a_{ox} = E^{o} - 2.302RT/nF \log a_{red}/a_{ox} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 4-12)}$$

where:

E = cell potential measured
E^{o} = standard reduction potential
n = number of electrons involved in the reaction
a_{red} = activity of the reduced species
a_{ox} = activity of the oxidized species
F = Faraday (96,485 C/mol)
T = absolute temperature
R = molar gas constant

Substituting molar concentration for activity and common logarithm for natural log:

$$E = E^{o} - (0.0592/n) \log C_{red}/C_{ox} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 4-13)}$$

where:

C_{red} = concentration of reduced species
C_{ox} = concentration of oxidized species

The Nernst equation is useful for predicting the electrochemical cell potential given the concentrations of oxidized and reduced species for a given electrode system.

Reference Electrodes

In many electroanalytic applications (e.g., measuring pH), it is desirable that the half-cell potential of one electrode be known, constant, and completely insensitive to the composition of the solution under study. An electrode that fits this description is called a *reference electrode*.

An ideal reference electrode should (1) conform to the Nernst equation, (2) exhibit a potential that is constant with time, (3) return to its original potential after being subjected to small currents, and (4)

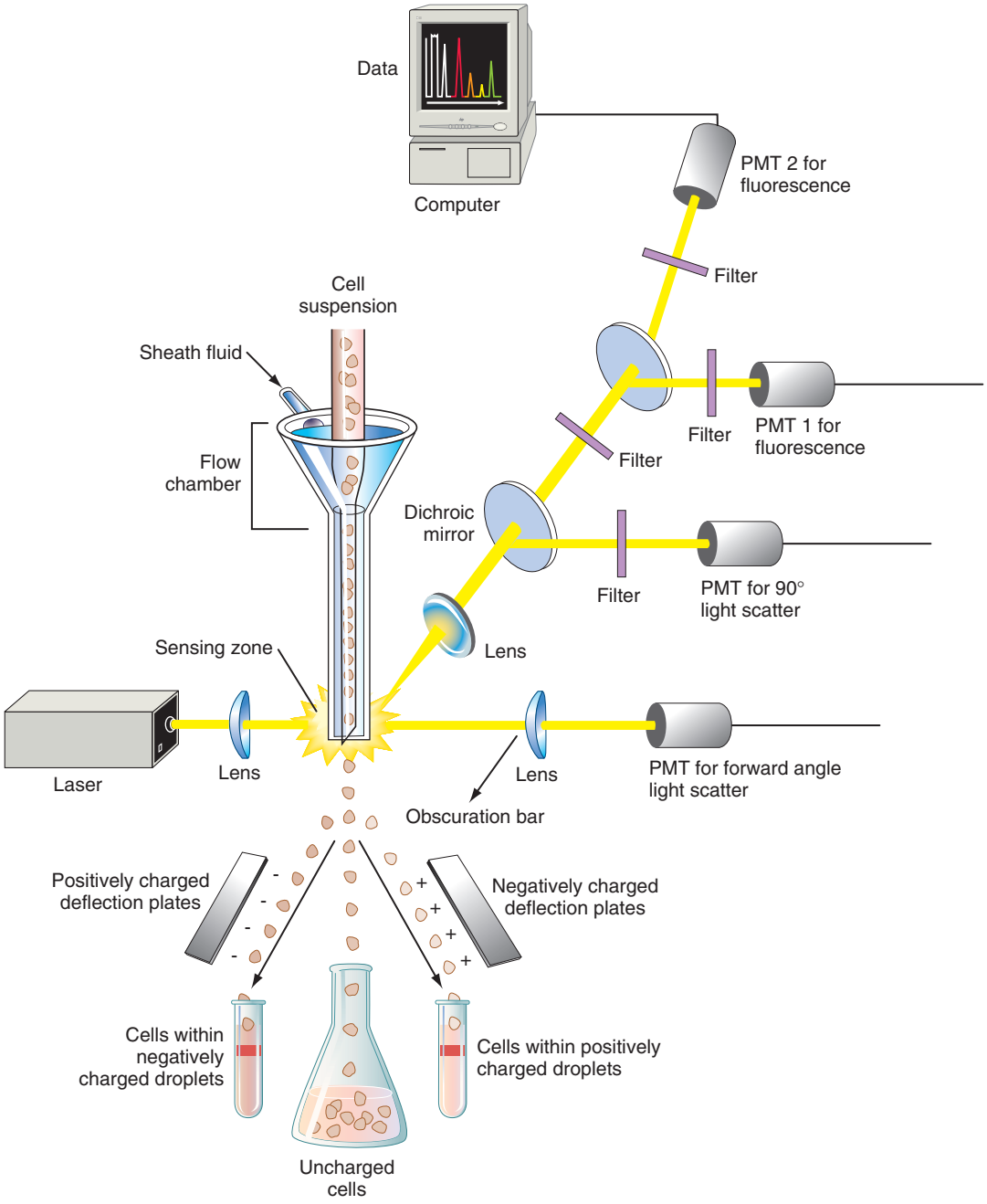


Figure 4-16 **Components of a flow cytometer and a cell sorter.** (Redrawn from Ward KM, Lehmann CA, Leiken AM: *Clinical laboratory instrumentation and automation: Principles, applications, and selection.* Philadelphia, 1994, WB Saunders; with permission.)

exhibit little hysteresis (i.e., lags with temperature cycling). The standard hydrogen electrode (SHE) exhibits many of these qualities but is not practical to use in clinical laboratory instrumentation. Thus the calomel and silver/silver chloride reference electrodes are widely used for clinical measurements.

The calomel electrode (saturated calomel electrode [SCE]) consists of mercury in contact with a solution that is saturated with mercury (I) chloride (calomel) and that also contains a known concentration of potassium chloride. The silver/silver chloride electrode consists of a silver electrode immersed in a solution of potassium chloride that has been saturated with silver chloride. Silver/silver chloride electrodes can be used at temperatures greater than 60° C, whereas calomel electrodes cannot. Mercury (II) ions, however, react with fewer sample components than do silver ions (which can react with proteins, for example); such reactions can lead to plugging of the junction between the electrode and the analyte solution.

Ion-Selective Electrode

An ion-selective electrode (ISE) is an electrochemical transducer capable of responding to one specific ion. An ISE is very sensitive and selective for the ion it measures. It consists of a membrane or other barrier separating a reference solution and a reference electrode from the solution to be analyzed. The complexity of ion-selective electrode design depends on the membrane/barrier composition that determines its ionic selectivity. Many types of ISEs are available, including glass electrodes, liquid membrane electrodes, precipitate-impregnated membrane electrodes, solid-state electrodes, gas electrodes, and enzyme electrodes.

pH Electrode

Glass electrodes were the first and are still the most common electrodes for measuring hydrogen ion activity (pH or negative log of the hydrogen ion concentration). A pH electrode consists of a small bulb made of layers of hydrated and nonhydrated glass, which contains a chloride ion buffer solution. The buffer has a known hydrogen ion concentration. An internal electrode, usually silver/silver chloride, serves as an internal reference electrode. A saturated calomel electrode is used as an external reference electrode. One theory suggests that the sodium ions in the hydrated glass layer drift out. Sodium ions have a large ionic radius. Specimens containing hydrogen ions, which have a smaller ionic radius, replace the

sodium ions. The result is a net increase in the external membrane potential. This potential propagates through the thin, dry membrane to the inner hydrated surface of the glass. Chloride ions in the inner buffer solution respond by migrating to the internal glass layer. Potentials generated at the pH electrode are referenced to the external reference electrode (saturated calomel), and the difference or change is displayed as pH units.

pCO_2 Electrode

The pCO_2 electrode is a pH electrode contained within a plastic jacket. This plastic jacket is filled with a sodium bicarbonate buffer and has a gas-permeable membrane (Teflon or silicone) across its opening. When whole blood containing dissolved carbon dioxide (CO_2) contacts the Teflon membrane, CO_2 from the blood passes through and mixes with the buffer. The equilibrium reaction shown in Equation 4-14 shifts, depending on the number of carbon dioxide molecules in a sample. The hydrogen ion activity is measured by a potentiometric pH indicator system.

$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^- + H^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-14)}$$

Coulometry

Coulometry measures the quantity of electricity (in coulombs) needed to convert an analyte to a different oxidation state. By definition, a coulomb is the quantity of electricity or charge that is transported in 1 second by a constant current of 1 ampere. For a constant current of 1 ampere for t seconds, the number of coulombs (Q) is given by the expression:

$$Q = It \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-15)}$$

A Faraday is the charge in coulombs associated with 1 mole of electrons. The charge of the electron is 1.6018×10^{-19} C, so 1 Faraday is equal to 96,485 C/mol.

Coulometry is used to measure chloride ion in serum, plasma, CSF, and sweat samples. In measuring chloride with coulometry, a constant current is applied across the two silver electrodes, which liberate silver ions into the specimen at a constant rate. Chloride ions in the sample combine with released silver ions to produce insoluble silver chloride. A pair of indicator and reference electrodes senses the excess silver ions and stops the titration. The number of silver ions released by ionization, which is exactly equal to that of chloride ions in the sample, can be calculated from Faraday's law:

$$Q = It = znF \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-16)}$$

where:

z = number of electrons involved in the reaction
n = number of moles of analyte in the sample
F = Faraday's constant (96,485 C/mol of electrons)

Amperometry

Amperometry is the measurement of the current flow produced by an oxidation–reduction reaction. Several immobilized enzyme electrodes use this principle, as do pO_2 electrodes (discussed later) and chloride titrators. The measurement of chloride in samples involves the use of two electrochemical methods: coulometry (discussed earlier) and amperometry. In the chloride titrator, a pair of silver electrodes serves as the indicator electrodes. When all of the chloride has been consumed, the silver appears in excess, causing an increase in current. This signals the endpoint of the reaction.

pO_2 Gas-Sensing Electrode

A widely used oxygen-sensing electrode (to determine partial pressure of oxygen in blood) incorporated in blood gas analyzers uses an amperometric or current-sensing electrolytic cell as the indicator electrode.

The pO_2 electrode uses a gas-permeable membrane, usually polypropylene, which allows dissolved oxygen to pass through. This membrane also prevents other blood constituents (that may interfere with the electrode) from passing through. Once the oxygen permeates the membrane, it reacts with a polarized platinum cathode according to the following reaction:

$$\begin{aligned} O_2 + 4e' &\rightarrow 2O^- \\ 2O^- + 2H_2O &\rightarrow 4OH^- \end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-17)}$$

This, in turn, produces a change in the current through the cell, and the change is directly proportional to the partial pressure of oxygen present in the specimen.

Voltammetry

Voltammetry is a method in which a potential is applied to an electrochemical cell and the resulting current is measured. The most important advantages of voltammetry are sensitivity and the capability for multielement measurements. Analytes can be detected in the parts-per-billion range. With careful selection of testing conditions and methods, several analytes can be measured simultaneously in a single voltammetric study. Voltammetry consumes minimal analyte, unlike coulometry, which converts all of the analyte to another state. *Anodic stripping voltammetry* is an electrochemical technique used to measure heavy metals such as lead. The measurement of lead in blood occurs in basically two steps. First, free lead is electroplated (deposited) onto the platinum cathodes at a characteristic voltage. Second, the lead is stripped off of the platinum cathode, and the current is monitored over time. The current value is proportional to the amount of lead in the blood sample. This technique allows the sample to be preconcentrated at the electrode, which enables the method to detect very low analyte levels.

CONDUCTANCE

The principles of conductance have several applications associated with clinical laboratory procedures. Examples include monitoring water purity, measuring analytes in blood such as urea, and serving as components of detectors used in high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), gas chromatography (GC), cell counters, and capillary electrophoresis.

Electrolytic conductivity is a measure of the ability of a solution to carry an electrical current. Solutions of electrolytes conduct an electrical current by migration of ions under the influence of a potential gradient. The ions move at a rate dependent on their charge and size, the microscopic viscosity of the medium, and the magnitude of the potential gradient. Thus for an applied potential, E, maintained constant but at a value that exceeds the deposition potential of the electrolyte, the current, I, that flows between the electrodes immersed in the electrolyte, varies inversely with the resistance of the electrolytic solution, R. The reciprocal of resistance, $1/R$, is called the conductance, G, and is expressed in reciprocal ohms, or mhos.

IMPEDANCE

Electrical impedance measurement is based on the change in electrical resistance across an aperture when a particle in conductive liquid passes through this aperture. Electrical impedance is used primarily in the hematology laboratory to enumerate leukocytes, erythrocytes, and platelets. In a typical electrical impedance instrument, as originally developed by Wallace Coulter, aspirated blood is divided into two separate volumes for measurements. One volume is mixed with diluent and is delivered to the cell bath, where erythrocyte and platelet counts are performed. As a cell passes through the aperture, partially occluding it, the electrical impedance increases, producing a voltage pulse, the size of which is proportional to the cell size. The number of pulses is directly related to the cell count. Particles measuring between 2 and 20 fL are counted as platelets, whereas those measuring greater than 36 fL are counted as erythrocytes. The other blood volume is mixed with diluent and a cytochemical-lytic reagent that lyses only the red blood cells. A leukocyte count is performed as the remaining cells pass through an aperture. Particles greater than 35 fL are recorded as leukocytes.

ELECTROPHORESIS AND DENSITOMETRY

Electrophoresis is the separation of charged compounds based on their electrical charge. When a voltage is applied to a salt solution (usually sodium chloride), an electrical current is produced by the flow of ions: cations toward the cathode and anions toward the anode. Conductivity of a solution increases with its total ionic concentration. The greater the net charges of a dissolved compound, the faster it moves through the solution toward the oppositely charged electrode. The net charge of a compound, in turn, depends on the solution pH. Electrophoresis separations often require high voltages (50-200 V DC); therefore, the power supply should supply a constant DC voltage at these levels. The buffer solution must have a carefully controlled ionic strength. A dilute buffer causes heat to be generated in the cell, and a high ionic strength does not allow good separation of the fractions. Common support media for electrophoresis in clinical work include cellulose acetate, agarose, and polyacrylamide gels. Total volume of specimen applied depends on the sensitivity of the detection method. For clinical work, 1 µL of serum may be applied. Once the electrophoresis is completed, the support medium is treated with a dye to identify the separated fractions. The most common dyes used for the visualization step include Amido Black, Ponceau S, Fat Red 7B, and Sudan Black B. To obtain a quantitative profile of the

separated fractions, densitometry is performed on the stained support medium.

A densitometer measures the absorbance of the stain on a support medium. The basic components of a densitometer include a light source, a monochromator and a movable carriage to scan the medium over the entire area, an optical system, and a photodetector. Signals detected by the photodetector are related to the absorbance of the sample stain on the support, which is proportional to the specimen concentration. The support medium is moved through the light beam at a fixed rate, so a graph may be constructed that represents multiple density readings taken at different points. Most densitometers have a built-in integrator to find the area under the curve, so all sample fractions can be quantified.

ISOELECTRIC FOCUSING

Proteins are polymers of amino acids that can be anions or cations, depending on the pH environment. At a specific pH, a protein will have a net charge of zero when the positive charge and the negative charge of its amino acids cancel each other out. At this pH value, known as the protein's isoelectric point (pI), the protein is isoelectric. Isoelectric focusing (IEF) techniques are performed similarly to other electrophoresis methods, except that the separating molecules migrate through a pH gradient. This pH gradient is created by adding acid to the anodic area of the electrolyte cell and adding base to the cathode area (Fig. 4-17). A solution of ampholytes (mixtures of small amphoteric ions with different pIs) is placed between the two electrodes. These ampholytes have high buffering capacity at their respective isoelectric points. The ampholytes close to the anode carry a net positive charge, and those close to the cathode carry a net negative charge. When an electrical voltage is applied, each ampholyte will rapidly migrate to the area where the pH is equal to its isoelectric point. With their high buffering capacity, the ampholytes create stable pH zones for the more slowly migrating proteins. The advantage of isoelectric focusing techniques lies in their ability to resolve mixtures of proteins. Using narrow-range ampholytes, macromolecules differing in isoelectric point by only 0.02 pH units can be identified. Isoelectric focusing has been useful in measuring serum acid phosphatase isoenzymes. Its application has also been extended to detect oligoclonal immunoglobulin bands in CSF and isoenzymes of creatine kinase and alkaline phosphatase in serum.

CHROMATOGRAPHY

Chromatography is a separation method based on different interactions of the specimen compounds with the mobile phase and with the stationary phase as the compounds travel through a support medium. Compounds interacting more strongly with the stationary phase are retained longer in the medium than those that favor the mobile phase. Chromatographic techniques may be classified according to their mobile phase: gas chromatography and liquid chromatography. Figure 4-18 shows a typical chromatogram representing the concentration of each detectable compound

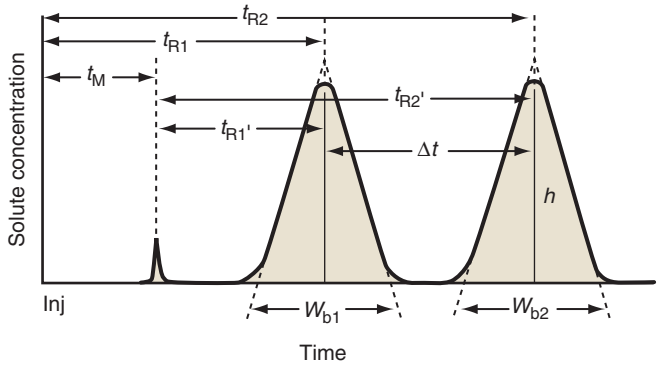


Figure 4-18 Chromatogram for the separation of two compounds. Note that the uncorrected retention time (t_{R1} and t_{R2}) is from injection (Inj) to peak; the corrected time ($t_{R1'}$ and $t_{R2'}$) takes into account the retention time of a nonretained compound (tM). (Redrawn from Ravindranath B: *Principles and practice of chromatography*. New York, 1989, John Wiley & Sons; with permission.)

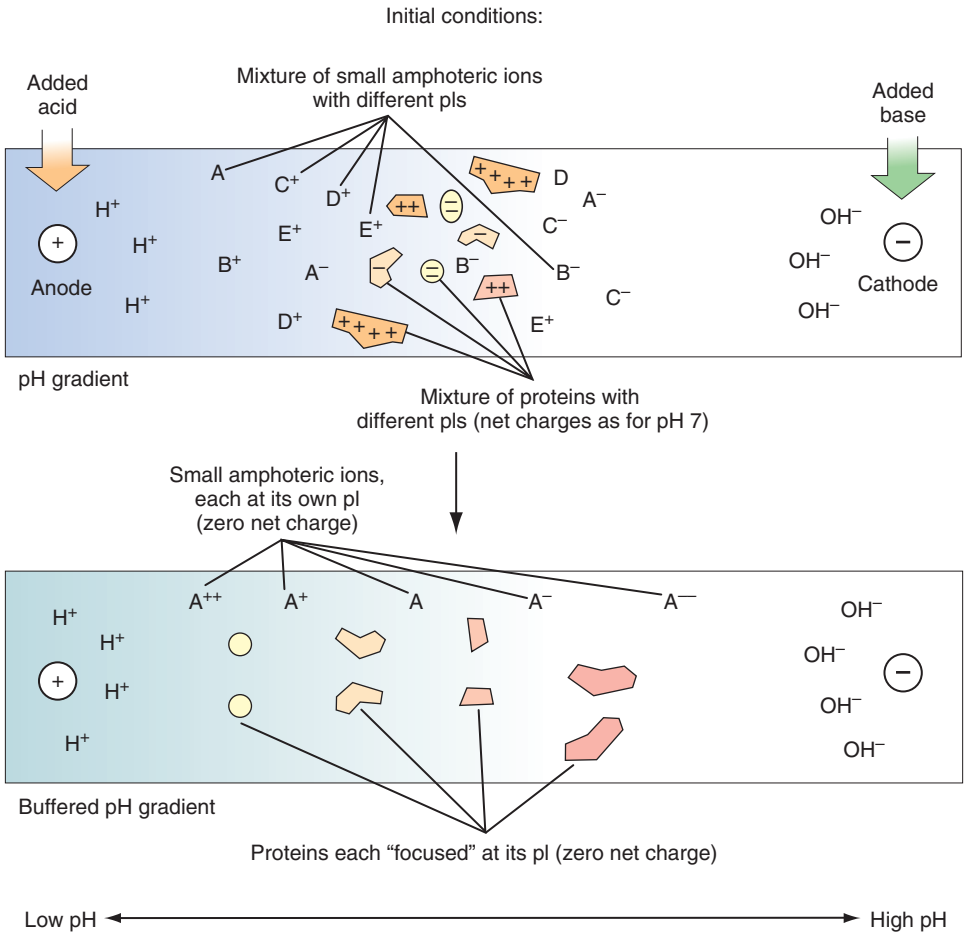


Figure 4-17 Isoelectric focusing (see text). (Redrawn from Schoeff LE, Williams RH: *Principles of laboratory instruments.* St. Louis, 1993, Mosby; with permission.)

eluting from the column as a function of time. Retention time (t_R) is the time it takes a compound to elute. This value is characteristic of a compound and is related to the strength of its interaction with the stationary phase and the mobile phase. The retention time therefore can be used to determine a compound's identity. In this example, two compounds are separated, and their retention times are represented by (t_{R1}) and (t_{R2}). These are uncorrected retention times and are measured from the injection time, $t = 0$. A column's ability to separate two compounds depends on several factors, which include the difference in retention of the compounds or capacity factor, k'; the selectivity factor, α; and the number of theoretical plates.

The value of k' can be calculated by the following equation:

$$k' = (t_{R1} - t_m)/t_m \quad \text{or} \quad t_{R1'}/t_m \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-18)}$$

where:

t_m = retention time of an unretained compound
$t_{R1'}$ = corrected retention time

Another measurement derived from the calculated capacity factor is the selectivity factor (α) or relative retention of two solutes. A ratio of both capacity factors is used to calculate the selectivity factor. To measure the width of each peak, draw tangents along the sides of the peak to the baseline. W_b represents the distance between the two intersected lines. Another useful concept is theoretical plates. This describes the process by which the sample is transported down the column. In each "plate," the sample equilibrates between stationary and mobile phases. The analyte moves down the column as the equilibrated mobile phase transfers sample from one plate to another. To calculate the number of theoretical plates (N), use the following equation:

$$N = 16(t_R/W_b)^2 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-19)}$$

A plate number has no units, and the larger the value of N for a column, the greater is its separation efficiency. The combined effects of solvent efficiency and column efficiency are expressed in the resolution (R_s) of the column:

$$R_s = (t_{R2} - t_{R1})/0.5(W_{b1} + W_{b2}) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 4-20)}$$

The concentration of unknown compound can be derived by integration of peak areas or by using the method of internal standardization.

Gas Chromatography

Gas chromatography (GC) is useful for compounds that are naturally volatile or can be easily converted into a volatile form. GC has been a widely used method for decades owing to its high resolution, low detection limits, accuracy, and short analytic time. Applications involve various organic molecules, including many drugs (see Chapter 23). Retention of a compound in GC is determined by its vapor pressure and volatility, which, in turn, depends on its interaction with the stationary phase. Two types of stationary phases commonly used in GC are solid absorbent (gas–solid chromatography [GSC]) and liquids coated on solid supports (gas–liquid chromatography [GLC]). In GSC, the same material (usually alumina, silica, or activated carbon) acts as both the stationary phase and the support phase. Although this was the first type of stationary phase developed, it is not as widely used as other types, primarily because of the strong retention of polar and low volatile solutes by the column (Ravindranath, 1989). GLC uses liquid phases such as polymers, hydrocarbons, fluorocarbons, liquid crystals, and molten organic salts to coat the solid support material. Calcine diatomaceous earth graded into appropriate-size ranges is often used as a stationary phase because it is a stable inorganic substance. The use of fused silica capillary columns in which the stationary phase is chemically bonded onto the inner surface of the column has become very popular with chromatographers. The advantage of this type of column is that the stationary phase does not leave the solid support and bleed into the detector, and a uniform monomolecular layer of the stationary phase is obtained through the bonding procedure.

Components of a typical GC system are illustrated in Figure 4-19. Its basic design consists of five components: a gas cylinder as a mobile phase source, a sample injector, a column, a detector, and a computer for data acquisition. These systems may be automated to provide the user with a more precise and efficient separation. Carrier gases (mobile phase), which must be chemically inert, include helium, hydrogen, and nitrogen. Other substances used as mobile phases include steam and supercritical fluids. Examples of these are carbon dioxide, nitrous oxide, and ammonia. The carrier gas should be of high purity, and the flow must be tightly controlled to ensure optimum column efficiency and reproducibility of test results. Samples are manually introduced into the GC using a syringe pipet or an automated syringe pipet system. A pipet tip pierces a plastic septum located in the injector port. Each injection port is heated to very high temperatures. Samples are vaporized and swept onto the column. If the molecule of interest is not volatile enough for direct injection, it is necessary to derivatize it into a more volatile form. Most derivatization reactions belong to one of three groups: silylation, alkylation, and acylation. Silylation is the most common technique that replaces active hydrogens on the compounds with alkylsilyl groups. This substitution results in a more volatile form that is also less polar and more thermally stable.

Retention of compounds in a GC column can also be adjusted by changing the column temperature. The column temperature affects the volatility of the compounds and thus the degree of their interaction with the stationary phase. By proper selection of the starting temperature and temperature gradient during the procedure, good resolution of both weakly and strongly retained compounds may be achieved. The GC column, enclosed in a temperature-controlled oven, can be a packed column or a capillary column. Packed columns are usually 1 to 5 m long and 2 to 4 mm in diameter and are filled with a stationary phase. Capillary columns range from 5 to 100 m in length and from 0.1 to 0.8 mm in diameter and have a stationary phase located on their interior surface (Bartle, 1993). Capillary columns generally have higher efficiency and better detection limits. However, packed columns have a larger specimen or sample capacity, making them more useful in purification work. Examples of detectors used in GC include a flame ionization detector, a thermal

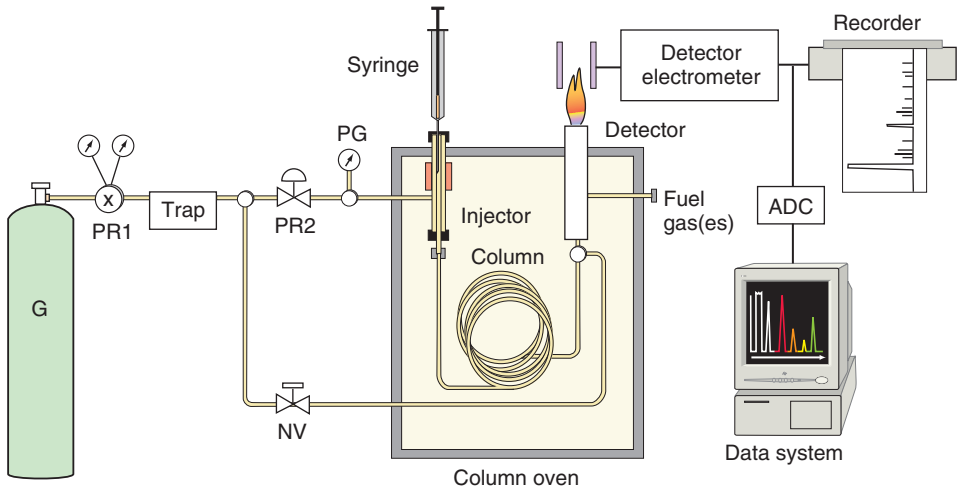


Figure 4-19 Components of a gas chromatographic system. *G,* Gas cylinder. *NV,* Valve for adjusting the gas flow rate. *PG,* Pressure gauge. *PR1* and *PR2,* Regulators. (Redrawn from Ravindranath B: *Principles and practice of chromatography.* New York, 1989, John Wiley & Sons; with permission.)

conductivity detector, a nitrogen-phosphorus detector, an electron capture detector, a flame photometric detector, and a mass spectrometric detector. Flame ionization detectors (FIDs) are commonly used and are capable of detecting a wide variety of organic compounds and many inorganic compounds. This type of detector measures the ions produced by the compounds when burned in a hydrogen-air flame. An electrode collects the ions, and the magnitude of the resulting electrical current is proportional to the amount of substance (Tipler, 1993). FIDs can be modified to make them especially sensitive to molecules, including many drugs that contain either nitrogen or phosphorus (the so-called nitrogen-phosphorus detector, or NPD).

Liquid Chromatography

GC as a separation technique has some restrictions that make liquid chromatography a suitable alternative. Many organic compounds are too unstable or are insufficiently volatile to be assayed by GC without prior chemical derivatization. Liquid chromatography techniques use lower temperatures for separation, thereby achieving better separation of thermolabile compounds. These two factors allow liquid chromatography to separate compounds that cannot be separated by GC. Finally, it is easier to recover a sample in liquid chromatography than in gas chromatography. The mobile phase can be removed, and the sample can be processed further or reanalyzed under different conditions.

Many forms of liquid chromatography are available, and the selection of an appropriate form depends on a variety of factors. These factors include analysis time, type of compound, and detection limits. Paper, thin-layer, ion-exchange, and exclusion liquid chromatography often result in poor efficiency and a very long analysis time owing to low mobile phase flow rates. High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) emerged in the late 1960s as a viable form of liquid chromatography that provided advantages over other forms of liquid chromatography and gas chromatography. HPLC uses small, rigid supports and special mechanical pumps, producing high pressure to pass the mobile phase through the column. HPLC columns can be used many times without regeneration. The resolution achieved with HPLC columns is superior to that of other forms of liquid chromatography, analysis times are usually much shorter, and reproducibility is greatly improved. All of these attributes of HPLC render it a better method of separation over other forms of liquid chromatography.

Five separation techniques are commonly used in liquid chromatography. They include adsorption, partition, ion-exchange, affinity, and size exclusion. Each is characterized by a unique combination of stationary phase and mobile phase. In *adsorption (liquid–solid) chromatography*, the compounds are adsorbed to a solid support such as silica or alumina. Although this was the first type of column liquid chromatography developed, it is not widely used owing to the strong retention of many compounds by the supports, making them difficult to elute from the column. *Partition (liquid–liquid) chromatography* separates compounds based on their partition between a liquid mobile phase and a liquid stationary phase coated on a solid support. Partition chromatography includes normal-phase liquid chromatography, which uses a polar liquid stationary phase, and reverse-phase liquid chromatography, which uses a nonpolar stationary phase. *Ion-exchange chromatography* uses column packing material that has charge-bearing functional groups attached to a polymer matrix. The mechanism in this type of chromatography is the exchange of sample ions and mobile-phase ions with the charged group of the stationary phase. *Affinity chromatography* uses immobilized biochemical ligands as the stationary phase to separate a few solutes from other unretained solutes. This type of separation uses the so-called lock-and-key binding that is widely present in biologic systems. *Size-exclusion* chromatography separates molecules according to differences in their size. The support material has a certain range of pore sizes. As solutes travel through, the small molecules can enter the pores, whereas the larger ones cannot and will elute first from the column.

Liquid chromatography is similar in many aspects to GC, and therefore the instrumentation is similar. A typical liquid chromatography system consists of a liquid mobile phase, a sample injector (manual or automatic), a mechanical pump, a column, a detector, and a data recorder (Fig. 4-20). The liquid mobile phase is pumped from a solvent reservoir through the column. A mechanical pump must provide precise and accurate flow, often working at high pressures (typically up to 6000 PSI). The pump must have low internal volume and be constructed of material that does not react with the solvent. Sample injection is achieved using a syringe and depositing the sample into a loop. The injection may be performed manually or automatically using a microprocessor control autosampler. Most analytic separations are performed using packed columns. Many types of packing materials are available. Selection of the appropriate packing material is largely dependent on the type of compound(s) to be separated. In liquid chromatography, the physical properties of the sample and the mobile phase are often very similar. Two basic types of detectors have been developed. One is based on the differential measurement of a physical property common to both the sample and the mobile phase; examples include refractive index, conductivity, and electrochemical detectors. The other is based on the measurement of a physical property that is specific to the sample, either with or without the mobile phase; examples include absorbance and fluorescent detectors.

A widely used clinical application of HPLC is the separation and quantitation of various hemoglobins associated with specific diseases (e.g., thalassemia). Whole blood measurement of glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA_{1c}) can be accomplished using HPLC with complete analysis within 5 minutes.

MASS SPECTROMETRY

Mass spectrometry (MS) is based on fragmentation and ionization of molecules using a suitable source of energy. The resulting fragment masses and their relative abundance yield a characteristic mass spectrum of the parent molecule. Before a compound can be detected and quantified by mass spectrometry, it must be isolated by another method: GC or HPLC. Mass spectrometry typically involves the following major steps: (1) conversion of the parent molecule into a stream of ions (usually singly charged positive ions); (2) separation of the ions by mass/charge ratio (*m/z*), where

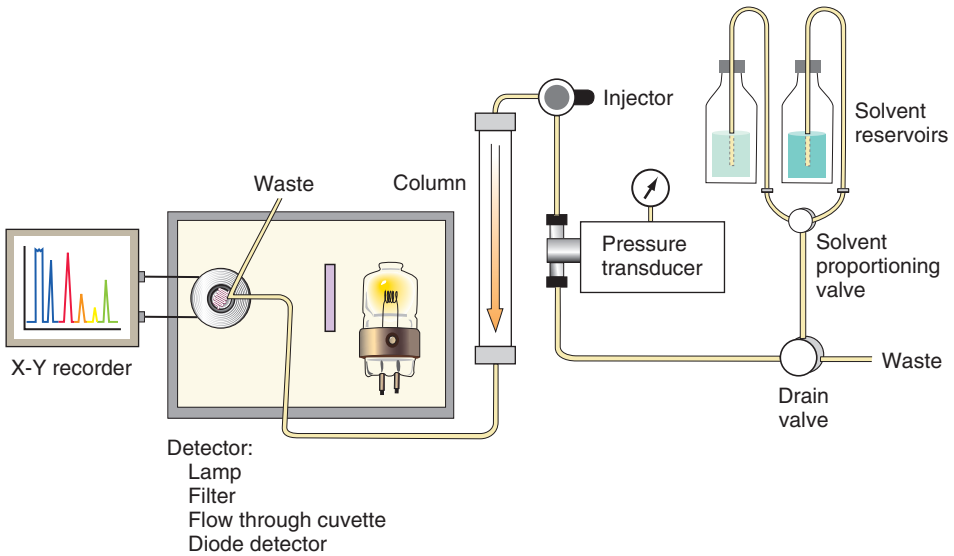


Figure 4-20 Components of a high-performance liquid chromatograph.

BOX 4-5

Example: Atomic Weights

What are the masses in Da for $^{12}C^{1}H_4$ and $^{13}C^{1}H_4$?

Solution

$^{12}C^{1}H_4$

$m = 12.000 \times 1 + 1.007825 \times 4 = 16.031$ Da

$^{13}C^{1}H_4$

$m = 13.00335 \times 1 + 1.007825 \times 4 = 17.035$ Da

BOX 4-6

Example: Mass/Charge Ratio

$^{12}C^{1}H_4^{+}$

$m/z = 16.035/1 = 16.035$

$^{13}C^{1}H_4^{2+}$

$m/z = 17.035/2 = 8.518$

m is the mass of the ion in atomic mass units and z is its charge; and (3) counting of the number of ions of each type or measurement of current produced when the ions strike a transducer. Because most of the ions formed are singly charged, the m/z is usually simply the mass of the ion. MS is also described in Chapter 23 (see especially Figs. 23-5 and 23-6) as a technique for drug-of-abuse testing. MS techniques are available for proteomics, which is discussed in Chapter 77.

Atomic Weights (amu and Da)

Atomic and molecular weight are generally expressed in terms of atomic mass units (amu) or daltons (Da). The amu or Da is based upon a relative scale in which the reference is the carbon isotope $^{12}_{6}C$, which is assigned a mass of exactly 12 amu. Therefore, the amu or Da is defined as $\frac{1}{12}$ of the mass of one neutral $^{12}_{6}C$ atom. From this definition, we derive the following equality:

$$1\ \text{amu} = 1\ \text{Da} = 1.66054 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg/atom}\ ^{12}C$$

Also, 1 mole of $^{12}_{6}C$ weight 12.0000 g (Box 4-5).

Mass/Charge Ratio

Mass/charge ratio (m/z) is obtained by dividing the atomic or molecular mass of anion m by the number of charges z that the ion bears (Box 4-6). Many ions produced in mass spectrometers are singly charged; thus the term *mass/charge ratio* is often shortened to the more convenient term *mass*. Strictly speaking, this abbreviation is incorrect, but it is widely used in mass spectrometry literature. This term also represents the x-axis for MS spectrums of molecules plotted against their relative abundance (y-axis).

Basic Components

All mass spectrometers have three basic components: an ion source, a mass analyzer, and an ion detector. The inlet unit admits samples to the mass spectrometer. When the instrument is part of a GC/MS arrangement, the inlet unit must be heated to maintain the volatile compounds in the vapor state upon coming into the ion source unit. It must also strip away most of the carrier gas to adapt to the high-vacuum condition required for mass spectrometry operation.

Ion Source Unit

The ion source unit is maintained at high temperature and vacuum to provide adequate conditions for ionizing the vaporized sample molecules. Several types of energy sources are available to ionize the sample molecules in mass spectrometry. One commonly used source is a beam of electrons produced by a heated filament. The process of bombarding the sample with electrons is called *electron-impact ionization*. Other processes of ionization include *chemical ionization*, in which the sample molecules are ionized by a reagent gas that has been ionized by an electron beam, and *fast atom bombardment*, in which a solid sample is ionized by a beam of atoms such as argon.

Most laboratorians are familiar with the use of mass spectrometers for drug and other low-molecular-weight-compound analysis. Two examples are confirmation of positive drug screens (see Chapter 23) and amino acid analysis. These techniques conventionally couple a gas chromatograph and a mass spectrometer (GC/MS). This conventional approach had several limiting factors, including the need to separate analyte from specimen matrix and the need to make stable volatile derivatives, amenable to ionization by electron impact (EI) or chemical ionization (CI). Although these conventional techniques produced highly specific and sensitive analyses, they were also technically demanding and lacked the ruggedness required for the clinical laboratory. However, the increased focus on protein analysis, molecular diagnostics, and genetic-related testing has ushered in a new wave of mass spectrometers possessing the capabilities of evaluating complex compounds such as proteins.

The *matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI)* source consists of a solid mixture of analyte and matrix (including organic chromophore) on a sample plate, along with a laser light and ion optics (Fig. 4-21, *A*). (This technique is further described in Chapter 76.) When the chromophore absorbs the laser light, it vaporizes and lifts the analyte ions from the surface into a gas phase directly above the target plate and into the analyzer. The MALDI technique is considered an offline ionization technique because the sample is purified, deposited, and dried on the sample plate before analysis (Skoog et al, 1998). Surface-enhanced laser desorption ionization (SELDI) is a technique that measures proteins from complex biologic specimens such as serum, plasma, intestinal fluids, urine, cell lysates, and cellular secretion products (see also Chapter 76). Proteins are captured by adsorption, partition, electrostatic interaction, or affinity chromatography on a solid-phase protein chip surface. A laser ionizes samples that have been co-crystallized with a matrix on a target surface. The protein chip chromatographic surfaces in SELDI are uniquely designed to retain proteins from complex mixtures according to their specific properties. After the addition of a matrix solution, proteins can be ionized with a nitrogen laser and their molecular masses measured by time-of-flight (TOF) MS (Fig. 4-21, *B*) (see also Fig. 23-5). The protein chip arrays are the heart of the SELDI-TOF MS technology and distinguish it from other MS-based systems. Each array is composed of different chromatographic surfaces that, unlike HPLC or GC, are designed to retain, not elute, proteins of interest. The protein chip arrays have an aluminum base with several spots composed of a chemical (anionic, cationic, hydrophobic, hydrophilic, or metal ion) or biochemical (immobilized antibody, receptor, DNA, enzymes, etc.) active surface. Each surface is designed to retain proteins according to a general or specific physicochemical property of the proteins. Chemically active surfaces retain whole classes of proteins, and surfaces to which a biochemical agent, such as an antibody or other type of affinity reagent, is coupled are designed to interact specifically with a single target protein (Skoog et al, 1998).

Mass Spectrometer Analyzer Unit

The output of the ion source is a stream of positive or negative gaseous ions that are then accelerated into the mass analyzer, which sorts the parent molecular ions and their fragment ions according to their mass/charge ratio. This is accomplished in several different ways. A *time-of-flight* (*TOF*) analyzer consists of a metal flight tube, and the m/z ratios of the ions are determined by accurately and precisely measuring the time it takes the ions to travel from the MALDI or SELDI sources to the detector. Given that all ions of different m/z receive the same kinetic energy, low-m/z ions will reach the detector sooner than high-m/z ions. In the *quadrupole mass spectrometer* (Fig. 4-22, *A*, and Fig. 23-5), direct electrical current and radiofrequency voltages of selected magnitudes are applied to two pairs of metallic rods. Only ions of specific mass/charge ratio can pass undeflected to the end of the rods, where they are detected. All other ions have unstable trajectories along the path and are deflected toward the rods, never reaching the detector. An advantage of this design is that this system can perform tandem mass spectrometry scan modes in the same analyzer. The *ion-trap mass spectrometer* (Fig. 4-22, *B*) functions as a mass analyzer and as an ion source unit. Three electrodes, in a ring shape and two end caps, produce ions in the cavity until selectively ejected to the ion detector as the scanning radiofrequency voltage on the ring electrode varies. A major advantage of the ion-trap analyzer is its ability to get full mass spectra at very low sample concentrations (Karasek & Clement, 1988). In the *magnetic sector mass spectrometer*, a very high voltage accelerates the ions out of the ion source unit onto a magnetic field. The exiting path curvature of an ion depends on its mass/charge ratio, magnetic field strength, and applied voltage. The magnetic field or the voltage can be varied to allow selective ions to exit the magnetic field.

Ion Detector

The ion detector in a mass spectrometer is usually an electron multiplier or an ion–photon conversion detector. In an *electron multiplier*, the ions strike the detector's first dynode, which triggers the release of secondary electrons. A cascade of electrons occurs similarly to that in a

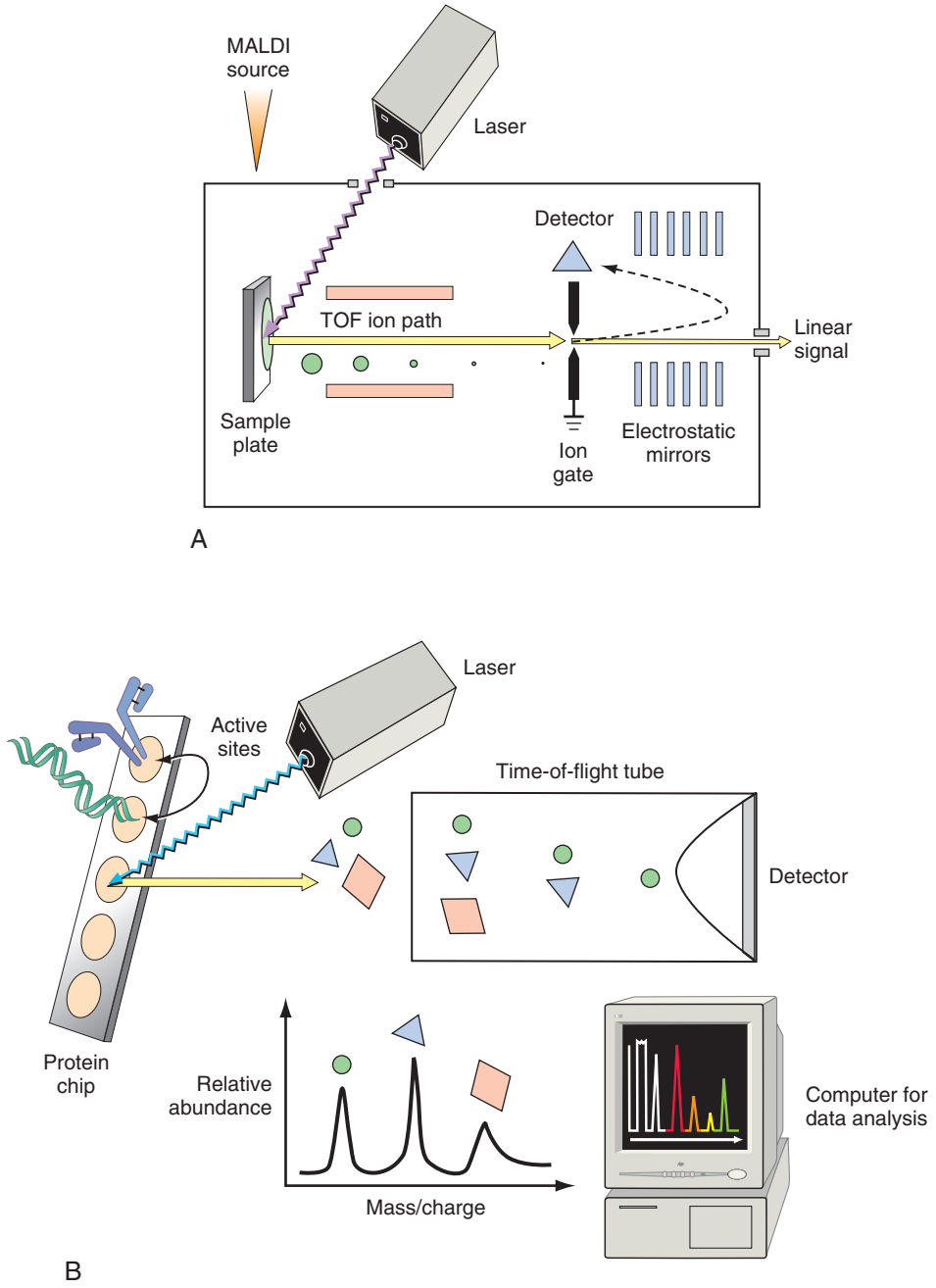


Figure 4-21 **Diagrams of two systems widely used for proteomic research. A,** Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI) time-of-flight mass spectrometer. **B,** Surface-enhanced laser desorption ionization (SELDI) time-of-flight mass spectrometer.

photomultiplier tube, resulting in amplification of about a millionfold. In an *ion–photon conversion detector*, the ions strike a phosphor that emits a photon for each corresponding ion. A conventional photomultiplier tube then amplifies the signal in the usual fashion. The computerized data unit controls the multiple operating parameters of the instrument components and stores and analyzes a vast quantity of acquired data. The built-in libraries of reference mass spectra for known compounds can be searched by computer and compared with the sample spectrum for identification. As emphasized in Chapter 23, each compound or macromolecule has a unique mass spectrum—a "fingerprint" of the molecule. A typical mass spectrum is shown in Figure 23-6.

Modern mass spectrometers are extremely powerful and versatile instruments that can be interfaced to liquid chromatographs (LC) (eliminating the need to make volatile derivatives) and can perform separations in tandem (i.e., a gentle ionization step allows separation of parent ions, which can then be identified by their individual fragmentation patterns). Such LC/MS/MS techniques are finding increased application in the clinical laboratory, although mainly in reference laboratories.

SCINTILLATION COUNTER

Scintillations are flashes of light that occur when gamma rays or charged particles interact with matter. Chemicals used to convert their energy into light energy are called scintillators. If gamma rays or ionizing particles are absorbed in a scintillator, some energy absorbed by the scintillator is emitted as a pulse of visible light or near-UV radiation. A photomultiplier tube detects light directly or through an internally reflecting optic fiber. A scintillation counter is an instrument that detects scintillations using a photomultiplier tube and counts the electrical impulses produced by the scintillations. An application for scintillation counting is radioimmunoassay (RIA). Two types of scintillation methods exist: crystal scintillation and liquid scintillation.

Crystal scintillation generally is used to detect gamma radiation. When a gamma ray penetrates the sodium iodide (NaI) crystal, which contains 1% thallium, it excites the electrons of iodide atoms and raises them to higher energy states. When the electrons return to ground state, energy is emitted as UV radiation. The UV radiation is promptly absorbed by the thallium atoms and emitted as photons in the visible or near-UV range.

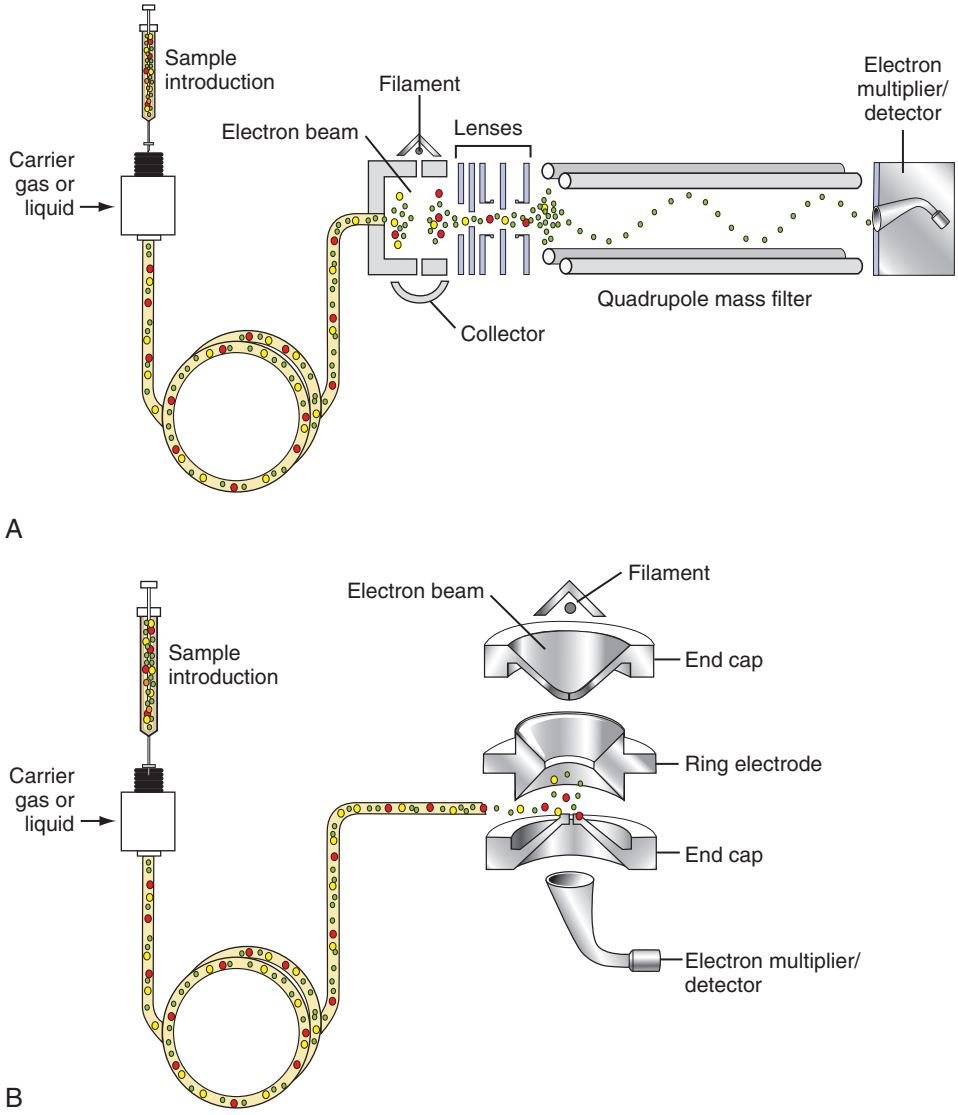


Figure 4-22 **Mass spectrometer. A,** Quadrupole type. **B,** Ion-trap type. (Redrawn from Schoeff LE, Williams RH: *Principles of laboratory instruments.* St. Louis, 1993, Mosby; with permission.)

The photons pass through the crystal and are detected by a photomultiplier tube. A pulse-height analyzer sorts out the pulse signals from the photomultiplier tube according to their pulse height and allows only those within a restricted range to reach the rate meter for counting.

Liquid scintillation is primarily used to count radionuclides that emit beta particles. A sample is suspended in a solution or "cocktail" consisting of a solvent such as toluene, a primary scintillator such as 2,5-diphenyloxazole (PPO), and a secondary scintillator such as 2,2′-p-phenylenebis (5-phenyloxazole) (POPOP). Beta particles from the radioactive sample ionize the primary scintillator of the solvent. A secondary scintillator absorbs the photons emitted by the primary scintillator and reemits them at a longer wavelength. The secondary scintillator facilitates more effective energy transmission from the beta particles, especially when a large amount of quenching is present. Quenching is a process that results in a reduction of the photon output from the sample. This phenomenon may be due to chemical quenching, in which impurities in the sample compete with the scintillators for energy transfer, or color quenching, in which colored substances such as hemoglobin absorb the light photons produced by scintillation. The light photons produced in the sample are detected and amplified by the photomultiplier tubes in the same manner as for the crystal scintillation counter.

CAPILLARY ELECTROPHORESIS

Capillary electrophoresis (CE) represents another alternative in separation techniques. A typical capillary electrophoresis system, as shown in Figure 4-23, consists of a fused silica capillary, two electrolyte buffer reservoirs, a high-voltage power supply, and a detector linked to a data

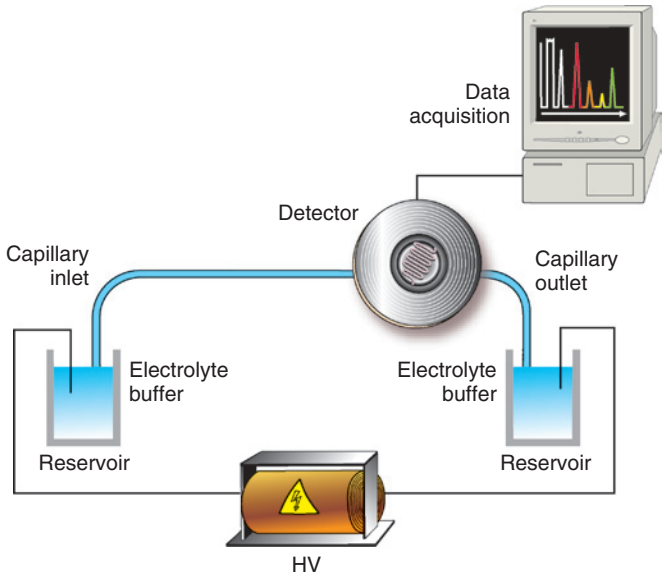


Figure 4-23 **Capillary electrophoresis system.** *HV,* High-voltage source. (Redrawn from Ward KM, Lehmann CA, Leiken AM: *Clinical laboratory instrumentation and automation: Principles, applications, and selection.* Philadelphia, 1994, WB Saunders; with permission.)

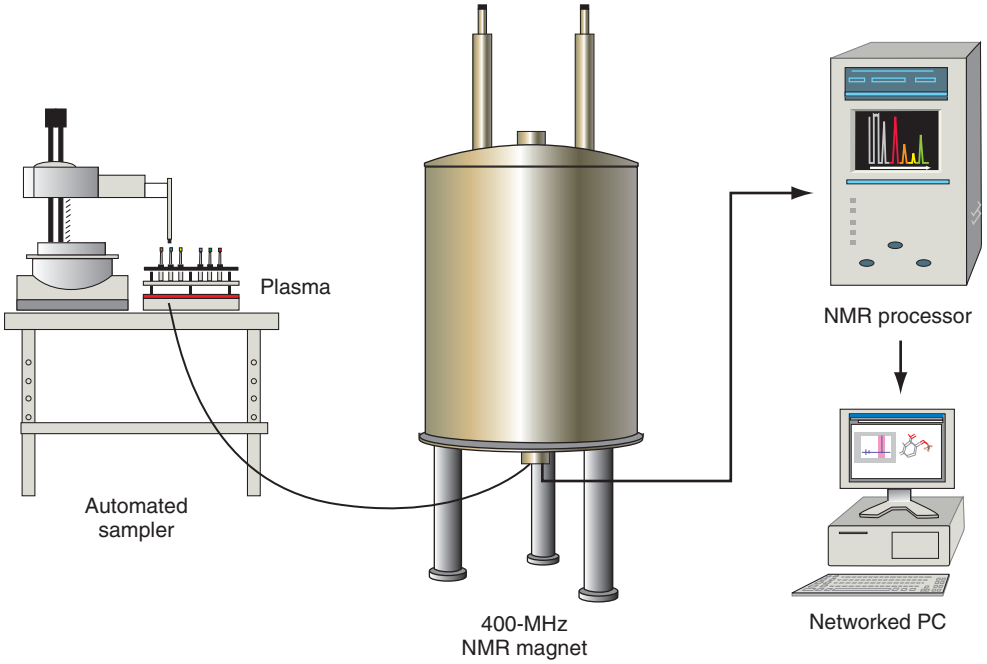


Figure 4-24 Schematic of an automated nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) system using an automated flow-injector sampler.

acquisition unit. The sample is introduced into the capillary inlet. When a high voltage is applied across the capillary ends, the sample molecules are separated by electro-osmotic flow, a bulk flow resulting from excess positive ions at the inner capillary surface moving toward the cathode. The positive ions in the specimen emerge early at the capillary outlet because the electro-osmotic flow and the ion movement are in the same direction. Negative ions in the specimen also move toward the capillary outlet but at a slower rate. As the sample ions migrate toward the capillary outlet, different types of detectors, including optical, conductivity, electrochemical, mass spectroscopy, or radioactivity detectors, are used to detect and measure them. Advantages of CE over conventional electrophoresis and HPLC are its short analytic time, improved resolving power, and micro-sample volumes (Love & Ward, 1994). Using nanoliter quantities of specimen, complex mixtures of molecules can be separated with a theoretical plate number approaching 1 million. Separations may be completed in less than 10 minutes by applying very high voltage. The application of high voltage is made possible by the capillary's high surface/volume ratio, which allows for efficient heat transfer through the capillary wall. Applications of capillary electrophoresis include separation of serum proteins and hemoglobin variants.

NUCLEAR MAGNETIC RESONANCE SPECTROSCOPY

Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy (NMR) is a technique for determining the structure of organic compounds. Unlike mass spectroscopy (MS), NMR is nondestructive, although it does require a larger sample volume than MS. Although NMR is widely used as a diagnostic imaging technique, it has been adapted for only a limited number of clinical laboratory analyses, the most popular being lipoprotein particle measurements (see Chapter 17). It also has the unique capability of performing chemical analysis in vivo.

Nuclear magnetic resonance is a phenomenon that occurs when the nuclei of certain atoms are immersed in a static magnetic field and are exposed to a second oscillating magnetic field (i.e., the magnetic component of electromagnetic radiation [EMR]). Some nuclei experience this phenomenon and others do not, depending on whether they possess a property called spin. A single proton, or hydrogen nucleus, possesses spin, and because hydrogen atoms occur very frequently, they are useful in determining structure.

When EMR is used to bombard molecules, the hydrogen atoms present will absorb photons of different energies, depending on the location of the hydrogen atom. For example, in compounds containing hydrogen and chloride, the proton near two chloride atoms produces a different NMR signal than the proton located near a single chloride and a single hydrogen. The energy absorbed by the spinning nuclei can be plotted versus the frequency of the applied EMR to obtain an NMR spectrum of the molecule.

In lipoprotein subclass measurements, the NMR signal originates in the protons of the terminal methyl groups of the lipid carried in the particles (primarily the cholesterol ester and triglyceride of the particle core, and the phospholipids of the particle shell). Signals from these different lipids combine to produce one signal with a characteristic frequency and shape related to particle size (i.e., the diameter of the phospholipid shell), excluding the influence of the apolipoprotein attached to the particle.

Basic components of an automated NMR spectrometer designed to provide fast, simultaneous subclass quantitative analysis of VLDL, LDL, and HDL are presented in Figure 4-24. The automated sampler provides a micro-sample probe that aspirates an aliquot of serum or plasma from a tray and transfers it to the NMR probe in a flow injection mode. Each sample passes through the 400-MHz magnet. The magnetic property of lipoproteins that gives them a characteristic resonance is a difference in their magnetic behavior induced by the degree of orientation of phospholipids in the shell surrounding the neutral lipid core. The equation describing this effect reveals that all lipoprotein particles of different diameters should have a different lipid NMR signature. This is displayed on the NMR processor.

The signature patterns are relayed to a networked PC, which provides access to high-quality spectral data from isolated subclasses of lipoproteins incorporated into proprietary analysis software. The information is contained in a reference library that is accessible with permission from the vendor.

GENERAL ANALYTIC METHODS AND ISSUES

Perhaps the most fundamental aspect of the analytic process is the preparation of high-quality reagents that will be used in the analytic procedure. In this process, the quality of water, the purity of the chemical, the selection of correct glassware or plasticware, and the correct preparations of reagents are all important for the proper operation of laboratory equipment and the performance of testing procedures. In this section, several topics will be presented that relate to analytic process and will ultimately have an impact on the results of a test performed on a patient's specimen.

CHEMICALS

The chemicals used to prepare reagents for chemical testing exist in varying degrees of purity. Proper selection of chemicals is important so the desired results may be attained. Chemicals acquired for reagent

preparation are characterized by a grading system. The grading of any chemical is greatly influenced by its purity. The types and quantities of impurities are usually stated on the label affixed to the chemical container. Less pure grades of chemicals include practical grade, technical grade, and commercial grade. These grades of chemicals are unsuitable for use in most quantitative assays performed in a clinical laboratory.

Most qualitative and quantitative procedures performed in the clinical laboratory require the use of chemicals that meet the specifications of the American Chemical Society (ACS). These chemicals are classified as analytic grade or reagent grade. Examples of other designations of chemicals that meet high standards of purity include spectrograde, nanograde, and HPLC grade. These are often referred to as ultrapure chemicals.

Pharmaceutical chemicals are produced to meet the specifications defined in *The United States Pharmacopeia* (USP), *The National Formulary*, and *The Food Chemical Index*. These specifications define impurity tolerances that are not injurious to health.

The International Union for Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) has developed standards and purity levels for certain chemicals. These include atomic weight standard (grade A), ultimate standard (grade B), primary standard (grade C), working standard (grade D), and secondary substances (grade E).

A very good source of highly purified chemicals, especially reference materials, is the National Institute of Standards and Testing (NIST) (Gaithersburg, Md.). NIST defines its chemical and physical properties for each compound and provides a certificate documenting their measurements. NIST also provides Standard Reference Materials (SRMs) in solid, liquid, or gaseous form. The solids may be crystalline, powder, or lyophilized.

Two professional organizations can provide laboratory staff with guidelines for proper chemical selection and reagent preparation. They are the College of American Pathologists (CAP; Northfield, Ill.) and the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI), formerly the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS) (Wayne, Pa.).

WATER

Water has numerous uses in the clinical laboratory. Water is used to prepare reagents, as diluent for controls and calibrators, to flush and clean internal components of analyzers, to serve as a heating bath for cuvets, and to wash and rinse laboratory glassware. For most of these uses, the water must be of the highest purity, whereas the water required for rinsing glassware may be of a lesser purity.

Types of Water Purity

CLSI and CAP have defined three grades of water purity: types I, II, and III. The criteria for each type are outlined in the CLSI guidelines (CLSI, 2006). When selecting a water purification system, the purchaser must pay strict attention to these criteria so that all of the appropriate filters and components necessary to produce type I water are included. Also, special attention must be given to the "feed-water," which is usually the laboratory tap water. The feed-water may contain unique contaminants or may have a high mineral content (hardness), which will often require the inclusion of additional components in the water processing system.

Purification

Many laboratories produce or purify their own water. Several means are available by which to produce reagent-grade water. Most water filtration systems use a prefilter to begin the process. This prefilter has feed-water running through it to trap any particulates before sending it on to the next component. At this point in the water filtration process, water may be distilled or passed through a reverse osmosis filter. Distillation is the process by which a liquid is vaporized and condensed and is used to purify or concentrate a substance or separate a volatile substance from a less volatile substance. Water that has been distilled does not meet the specific resistivity requirements of CAP type I water. Reverse osmosis (RO) is a process by which water is forced through a semipermeable membrane that acts as a molecular filter. The RO filter removes 95% to 99% of organic compounds, bacteria, and other particulate matter, and about 95% of all ionized and dissolved minerals, but not as many gaseous impurities. Reverse osmosis alone does not produce type I water, but, like distillation, if additional filters such as ion-exchange and carbon particulate filters are added to the system, type I water may be produced.

Ion-exchange filters remove ions to produce mineral-free deionized water. Deionization is accomplished by passing water through insoluble resin polymers that contain anion- or cation-exchange resins. These exchange resins replace H^+ and OH^- ions for impurities present in ionized form in the water. Another type of material used is a mixed bed resin that contains both anion and cation-exchange materials. Deionizers are capable of producing water that has specific resistance exceeding 1 to 10 Mohm·cm (MΩ·ccm).

Carbon filters containing activated charcoal may be added to the water purification system to help remove several types of organic compounds that may still be in the water. When these filters are used, CLSI/CAP considers the end product to contain minimal organic material.

A particulate filter may be added to the end of the system. This filter with a mean pore size down to about 0.22 μm will serve to trap any remaining particulates as large as or larger than the pore size.

Monitoring Water Purity

Because water is such an integral part of laboratory analysis, its purity must be monitored on a consistent basis. The frequency of water testing is dependent on many factors, including the composition of the feed-water, the availability of staff to perform water testing, and the amount of water the laboratory uses during a given period of time. At the very least, resistivity and bacterial content of the water should be monitored on a regular basis. In addition, pH, silica content, and organic contaminants may be determined. Depending on the laboratory's resources, some or all of these parameters should be checked on a periodic basis.

Most water filtration systems will have an in-line resistivity meter available. Resistivity measurements are used to assess the ionic content of purified water. The higher the ion concentration in water, the lower the resistivity value will be. CLSI/CAP requires that type I water have a resistivity greater than 10 MΩ·cm.

Bacterial contamination can be monitored easily. The water should be allowed to run for at least 1 minute to flush the system. Next, an aliquot of water is taken, depending on the procedure used, and is plated on appropriate media. After an appropriate incubation time, the number of colony-forming units on the agar plate is determined. The most commonly found organisms in water after the purification process is complete are gram-negative rods.

Once Your System Has Been Installed

Most water purification systems are designed for easy access to end-product type I water. Therefore, it is advisable to use only type I water for most applications in the laboratory. Type II or III water could be used for rinsing glassware and cleaning exterior surfaces. If a procedure—for example, heavy metal testing or HPLC—requires the use of specially prepared water, then type I water should not be used. Ultra-pure water can be purchased from NERL Diagnostics Corporation (East Providence, R.I.).

MEASUREMENT OF MASS

Mass is the quantity of matter contained within an object. The weight of a body is the gravitational acceleration exerted on it, and unlike mass, it varies with altitude. The weight is equal to mass times gravity. In the laboratory, we are measuring the mass of an object.

Types of Balances

Several different types of balances are available, depending on what needs to be weighed. For example, to weigh a fecal fat specimen, an appropriate balance to use would be a top-loading precision balance capable of accurately weighing kilogram amounts. Preparation of standards for toxicology assays requires microgram quantities, so a single-pan microbalance would be appropriate.

Unequal-Arm Substitution Balances

Unequal-arm substitution balances are typically single-pan types and are commonly used in laboratories, although almost all of these balances are being replaced by electronic-type balances. The single-pan, mechanical, unequal-arm balance operates on the principle of removing weights rather than adding them. A fixed mass counterweight is used to balance the combined mass of the pan and the removable weights across two arms of unequal weight. When a sample is placed on the weighing pan, internal weights in 1-g or 10-g increments are moved one at a time by the operator turning a set of knobs. This is continued until the system returns to equilibrium, at which time the sum of the weights removed is equal to the weight of the object.

Magnetic Force Restoration Balance

Another widely used balance is the single-pan balance that relies on magnetic force restoration. The restoring force is the force required to put the balance back into equilibrium. The unknown mass is placed on the pan, and this system goes out of equilibrium. The operator who adjusts the

internal weights restores partial equilibrium. The null detector optics circuit senses when equilibrium is near and provides a signal to the sensor motor to generate a restoring current until equilibrium is reached. At this time, the unknown mass is equal to the mass of the weights removed plus the value of the restoring current.

Top-Loading Balances

Single-pan top-loading balances operate on the same principle as single-pan analytic balances (i.e., weighing by substitution). Damping is accomplished by magnetic rather than an air-release mechanism. These balances are especially suitable for rapidly weighing larger masses (up to 10,000 g) that do not require as much analytic precision, such as large-volume reagent preparation.

Electronic Balances

Several electronic balance designs are available. One design uses a strain gauge load cell. This is a small, thin device that changes electrical resistance when it is stretched or compressed. Typically, several strain gauges are used in a Wheatstone bridge arrangement, and they are glued onto the load cell in a protected location. A load cell is usually in the shape of a beam or plate. When the beam or plate is displaced, it bends a tiny amount, and this tiny bending is detected by the strain gauges. The amount of bending might be only a thousandth of an inch, but that is enough for a strain gauge to measure.

Another electronic balance design operates on the principle of electromagnetic force (EMF) compensation. A coil, placed between the poles of a cylindrical electromagnet, is mechanically connected to a weighing pan. Mass placed on the pan produces a force that displaces the coil within the magnetic field. A regulator generates a compensation current just sufficient to return the coil to its original position. The more mass that is placed on the pan, the larger the deflecting force, and the stronger the current required to correct the deflection of the coil. The measuring principle is based on a strict linear relationship between compensation current and force produced by the load placed on the pan.

Several additional features may be available on some models of electronic balances. For example, some electronic balances include an electronic vibration damper. Any excess vibration can be detected when variation of the pointer or oscillation of the number in the last decimal place of the digital display is observed. Another feature available in some models is built-in taring. This allows the weight of the weighing container to be "zeroed." Also, electronic balances can be interfaced with computers to provide calculations such as weight averaging and statistical analysis of multiple weighing. The fundamental design of electronic balances allows for faster weighing, which is advantageous when doing multiple readings (e.g., pipet calibrations).

Calibration

Laboratory balances require calibration at regular intervals. The NIST states that there is no fixed calibration interval for scientific applications. Calibration intervals should coincide with the requirements of the laboratory's licensing and accrediting organizations.

The mass standard and test weight accuracy classes for weights used in calibrating balances have been updated and replace the older requirements specified by National Bureau of Standards (NBS) class S and class S1 weights. The new mass standards and test weight accuracy classes appropriate for laboratory balances include the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) classes 1 and 2. Reference should also be made to ASTM E617-13 for specific information regarding range, readability, and best uncertainty applicable to these classes.

NIST class 1 weights (extra-fine accuracy) are available up to 250 mg and may be used for high-precision (e.g., single-pan and electronic) balances that are precise to four decimal places. The range of weight for class 2 balances may be in excess of 1000 g.

Handling Weights Used for Testing Accuracy

Meticulous care must be used when handling class 1 or 2 weights. The operator must avoid direct contact with the weights by using clean gloves or special lifting tools (e.g., forceps). Hand contact with the weights can cause corrosion. The weights should not be dragged across any surface, including the stainless steel weighing pan. Usually the weights are sent in a covered box and should always be stored in that box.

Environmental Concerns for Best Weighing Accuracy

Several aspects of the environment may have an impact on the performance of a laboratory balance. They include temperature, air drafts, floor vibrations, table instability, and static electricity. The effects of the environment on your weighing procedures can often be minimized easily. For example, if air drafts are present in the room, a shroud or enclosure can be placed around the balance. A marble table can be used to reduce table vibrations or instability.

Balance Specifications

An operator should be knowledgeable about several important specifications related to balances. They include the following:

- Capacity—which represents the maximum load one can weigh
- Accuracy—which is dependent on the smallest mass one will be weighing
- Linearity—the ability of a balance to provide accurate output over its full range
- Resolution (readability)—the smallest increment of weight that may be discernible

Laboratory accrediting agencies require verification of accuracy of balances at various time intervals. Several sources are available to guide the laboratory through this requirement.

LABORATORY GLASSWARE AND PLASTICWARE

Types of Glassware

The most common type of glassware encountered in volume measurements is borosilicate glass. This glass is characterized by a high degree of thermal resistance, has low alkali content, and is free from the magnesium-lime-zinc group of elements, heavy metals, arsenic, and antimony. Commercial brands are known as Pyrex (Corning, Corning, N.Y.) and Kimax (Kimble, Vineland, N.J.). The caustic conditions involved in storing concentrated alkaline solutions in borosilicate glass will etch or dissolve the glass and destroy the calibration. Borosilicate glassware with heavy walls, such as bottles, jars, and even larger beakers, should not be heated with a direct flame or hotplate. Glass should not be heated above its strain point (for Pyrex, 515°C) because rapid cooling strains and cracks glass easily when it is heated again. In the case of volumetric glassware, heating can destroy the calibration.

Corex (Corning, N.Y.) brand glassware is a special alumina-silicate glass strengthened chemically rather than thermally. Corex is six times stronger than borosilicate glass (e.g., Corex pipets have a typical strength of 30,000 psi, compared with 2000 to 5000 psi for borosilicate pipets) and will outlast conventional glassware by tenfold. Corex also resists clouding and scratching better.

Low-actinic glassware is a glass of high thermal resistance with an amber or red color added as an integral part of the glass. The density of the red color is adjusted to permit adequate visibility of the contents, yet give maximum protection to light-sensitive materials, such as bilirubin standards. Low-actinic glass is commonly used in containers used to store control material and reagents.

Types of Plasticware

Several types of plasticware are used in clinical laboratories—for example, pipet tips, beakers, flasks, cylinders, and cuvets. Polypropylene, polyethylene, Teflon, polycarbonate, and polystyrene are all examples of types of plastics used for laboratory plasticware.

Plastic pipet tips are made primarily of polypropylene. This type of plastic may be flexible or rigid, is chemically resistant, and can be autoclaved. These pipet tips are translucent and come in a variety of sizes. Polypropylene is also used in several tube designs, including specimen tubes and test tubes. Specially formulated polypropylene is used for cryogenic procedures and can withstand temperatures down to –190°C.

Polyethylene is widely used in plasticware, too, including test tubes, bottles, graduated tubes, stoppers, disposable transfer pipets, volumetric pipets, and test tube racks. Polyethylene may bind or absorb proteins, dyes, stains, and picric acid.

Polycarbonate is used in tubes for centrifugation, graduated cylinders, and flasks. The usable temperature range is broad: –100°C to +160°C. It is a very strong plastic but is not suitable for use with strong acids, bases, and oxidizing agents. Polycarbonate may be autoclaved but with limitations (refer to furnished instructions).

Polystyrene is a rigid, clear type of plastic that should not be autoclaved. It is used in an assortment of tubes, including capped graduated tubes and test tubes. Polystyrene tubes will crack and splinter when crushed. This type of plastic is not resistant to most hydrocarbons, ketones, and alcohols.

Teflon is widely used for manufacturing stirring bars, tubing, cryogenic vials, and bottle cap liners. Teflon is almost chemically inert and is suitable

for use at temperatures ranging from –270°C to +255°C. This type of plastic is resistant to a wide range of chemical classes, including acids, bases, alcohol, and hydrocarbons.

VOLUMETRIC LABORATORYWARE

Pipets

Many kinds of pipets are available for use in a clinical laboratory, each intended to serve a specific function. They are used for reconstituting controls and calibrators, preparing serum or plasma dilutions, and aliquoting specimens. Thus a high degree of accuracy and precision is required. Manual pipets fall into two general categories: transfer (volumetric) and measuring. Three subclassifications include to contain (TC), to deliver (TD), and to deliver/blow-out (TD/blow-out).

Class A Designation

Volumetric glassware designated as Class A has been manufactured to Class A tolerances as established by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) E694 (West Conshohocken, Pa.) for volumetric apparatus. Other standards include ASTME 542 for calibration of volumetric apparatus and ASTME 288 for volumetric flasks.

Types of Pipets

Pipets designed to contain (TC) are often referred to as *rinse-out pipets* because they must be refilled or rinsed out with the appropriate solvent after the initial liquid has been drained from the pipet. TC pipets contain an exact amount of liquid that must be completely transferred for accurate measurement. Examples of TC pipets are Sahli hemoglobin and Long-Levy pipets. These pipets do not meet Class A certification criteria.

To deliver (TD) pipets are designed to drain by gravity. TD pipets must be held vertically and the tip placed against the side of the container and must not touch the liquid in it. The stated volume is obtained when draining stops. This type of pipet should not be blown out. Examples of TD pipets include Mohr, serological, and volumetric transfer pipets. These pipets are designed to meet the requirements of Class A–type pipets.

Volumetric TD pipets have an open-ended bulb that holds the bulk of the liquid. On one side of the pipet is a long glass tube with a line indicating the extent to which the pipet is to be filled. The other end is tapered for smooth delivery of liquid. These pipets should be allowed to drain freely and not be shaken or hit against the container. Any disruption of the free-flowing liquid may result in an inaccurate delivery of the liquid.

Some TD pipets are designed so that most of the contents are allowed to drain freely, after which the remaining fluid in the tip is blown out. These pipets are not rinsed out. Examples of pipets designed to be blow-out–type pipets include Ostwald-Folin and serological pipets. TD/blow-out pipets are identified by the presence of one or two frosted bands near the mouthpiece of the pipet. It is vital to remember that one should never pipet or blow out solutions by mouth. It is always necessary to use an appropriate pipetting aid—for example, a bulb.

Serologic glass or plastic pipets are long tubes with uniform diameters. They have volume graduations extending to the delivery tip of the pipet. The last volume of liquid blown out is included in the delivery volume. The design of the Mohr TD pipet is different from that of the serological pipet. Mohr pipets are not graduated to the tip. The accuracy of the Mohr pipets is valid only when the pipet is filled. If smaller volumes are dispensed, the accuracy decreases proportionally.

Micropipets

The two most widely used types of micropipets are the air displacement and positive displacement. These pipets are capable of delivering liquid volumes from 1 to 1000 µL. Some micropipets are designed to deliver a fixed volume, while others can deliver variable amounts of sample.

Air-displacement pipets are piston-operated devices. A disposable, one-time use polypropylene tip is attached to the pipet barrel. The pipet tip is placed into the liquid to be aspirated and drawn into and dispensed from this tip.

Positive-displacement pipets use a capillary tip that may be siliconized glass, glass, or plastic. This type of pipet is useful if a reagent reacts to plastics. Positive-displacement pipets use a Teflon-tipped plunger that fits tightly inside the capillary. These capillary tips are reusable and carryover is negligible if the pipet is properly maintained. Some procedures require a washing or flushing step in between samples.

Pipet Calibration

Monitoring the performance of pipetting devices is not only mandatory in most states that issue licenses to laboratories that perform diagnostic testing, but it is also very wise. Micropipets should be verified for accuracy and precision before they are put into use and monitored during the course of the year. The frequency of verification depends in part on the amount of use and requirements by the licensing and/or accrediting agency. Proper maintenance of air-displacement pipets is very important. This type of pipet has a fixed stroke length that must be maintained. These pipets also have seals to prevent air from leaking into the pipet when the piston is moved. These seals require periodic greasing to maintain their integrity.

Positive-displacement micropipets need to have their spring checked and the Teflon tip replaced periodically. A slide wire is used to quickly check the plunger setting. This check does not replace the scheduled precision and accuracy checks.

There are several procedures used by laboratories to verify precision and accuracy of micropipets. Most of these procedures are time-consuming, especially the procedures that require the weighing of water. At any rate, this verification procedure must be done to ensure proper performance of the laboratory micropipets.

CLSI has provided an acceptable procedure for determining pipet accuracy and precision (I8-P, NCCLS, 1984). This gravimetric procedure is labor intensive but does provide a low-cost means of complying with the regulations set forth by the various accrediting agencies.

More expensive procedures for calibrating micropipets include the following:

- Commercial photometric pipet calibration products
- Calibration services providers
- Pipet Tracker™ (Labtronics Inc., Canada)

One of the major concerns when considering the cost attributed to pipet calibration procedures is technologist time. The technologist time required for the photometric procedures is often 50% to 60% less than the inexpensive manual weighing techniques.

Volumetric Flasks

Volumetric flasks represent a special type of glassware in the laboratory. These flasks are often used to prepare standards for quantitative procedures. Therefore, the accuracy must be optimal. Volumetric flasks used for the preparation of standards and other solutions requiring optimal accuracy must meet Class A specifications as defined by NIST. These specifications are imprinted on the flasks. Volumetric flasks are used to contain (TC) an exact volume when the flask is filled to the mark. A Teflon or ground-glass stopper should be used to seal the flask. Volumetric flasks should not be used for reagent storage.

Calibration of Volumetric Glassware

According to the strictest of standards, every piece of volumetric glassware in the clinical laboratory should be coded and a record kept of its calibration. Any piece of glassware that does not meet Class A tolerance should be rejected. To prepare a piece of glassware for calibration, thoroughly wash and dry it using appropriate cleaning procedures. CLSI can provide the laboratory with an appropriate procedure to calibrate volumetric flasks.

THERMOMETRY

Thermometers and other types of temperature-sensing devices are used in the laboratory to monitor the temperatures in refrigerators, freezers, water baths, heating blocks, and incubators. Special applications of thermometry include osmometry, refrigerated centrifuges, refrigerated reagent compartments of automated analyzers, warming compartments of automated analyzers, and circulating waters baths for cuvet compartments in automated analyzers. All of these temperature-monitoring applications have the same requirements, which are accurate measurements and a constant temperature.

Appropriate quality control procedures must be carried out and documented routinely for all of these temperature-monitoring devices. Any temperature-sensitive device that fails to perform within established tolerances must be replaced. Because many assays performed in the laboratory are enzymatic in nature, even the slightest deviation from the optimal temperature required to perform the assay may yield an erroneous result.

Types of Thermometers

The two types of liquid-in-glass thermometers most widely used are total immersion and partial immersion. A total immersion thermometer requires that the bulb and entire column of liquid be immersed into the medium measured. These thermometers are used to monitor freezers and refrigerators. Partial immersion thermometers must have the bulb and stem immersed to the immersion line or defined depth on the thermometer. This type of thermometer is often used for water baths and heating blocks.

Special Applications of Temperature-Sensing Devices

Thermistors are used in several types of instruments found in the laboratory, including freezing-point depression osmometers. A thermistor is a transducer that converts changes in temperature (heat) to resistance. It consists of a small bead constructed of a fused mixture of metal oxides, attached to two leads and encapsulated in glass. The metal oxide mixture has a large negative temperature coefficient of resistance. Thus a small decrease in temperature causes a relatively large increase in the resistance of the thermistor.

A thermocouple is a sensor that consists of two dissimilar metals joined together at one end. When the junction of the two metals is heated or cooled, a voltage is produced that can be correlated back to the temperature. Thermocouples come in several designs, including beaded wire, probes, and surface probes. An important feature of most thermocouples used in laboratory analyzers is their fast response times. The response time of a thermocouple is defined as the time required by a sensor to reach 63.2% of a step change in temperature under a specified set of conditions. Five time constants are required for the sensor to approach 100% of the step change value.

Laboratory applications for thermocouple use include gas and liquid chromatography, surface temperature measurements in heating compartments in automated analyzers, thermo-cuvets, and circulating water baths in chemistry analyzers

Mercury-Free Laboratories

There are initiatives nationwide to make laboratories mercury-free. For example, in June 1998, a landmark agreement was put together between the American Hospital Association (AHA) and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) (JCAHO, 2002). A memo of understanding was signed between the two organizations in an effort to decrease and eventually eliminate hospital pollution practices over a 5- to 10-year period. One of the goals is to eliminate mercury waste.

Mercury is contained in numerous chemical reagents used by the laboratory and, of course, in mercury thermometers. The cost associated with proper disposal of mercury and the impact of mercury in the environment make replacing mercury thermometers a sound idea. Several alternatives exist for replacement thermometers that provide the necessary accuracy for laboratories procedures, including the following:

- Thermometers containing an organic red-spirit and pressurized with nitrogen gas
- Thermometers containing blue biodegradable liquid (isoamyl benzoate and dye)
- A red liquid thermometer filled with kerosene
- Bimetal digital thermometers
- Digital thermometers with stainless-steel stems

Thermometer Calibration

Monitoring the temperature accuracy of thermometers is necessary to ensure the reliability of procedures requiring temperature regulation. Thermometers may be purchased with a certificate to indicate traceability to standards provided by NIST. Also, many commercially available thermometers meet or exceed NIST and American National Standards Institute (United States)/Scientific Apparatus Makers Association (United Kingdom) (ANSI/SAMA) tolerance for accuracy.

Noncertified thermometers can be calibrated by using a NIST SRM® 934 thermometer or a NIST SRM® 1968 gallium melting point cell. The SRM® 934 clinical laboratory thermometer is calibrated per specifications by International Temperature Scale 1990 (ITS-90) at 0°C, 25°C, 30°C, and 37°C. A gallium melting point cell consists of about 25g of very pure (99.99999%) gallium metal that has a single fixed melting point at 29.7646°C (as defined by ITS-90). The gallium is sealed in an inert plastic crucible and surrounded in a stainless-steel envelope (Strouse et al, 1997).

Temperature monitoring devices should be verified for accuracy at 6- or 12-month intervals. Guidelines and procedures for proper monitoring and tolerances are available (NCCLS approved standard I2-A2, 1990).

WATER BATHS

For general clinical laboratory use, constant temperature water baths must offer variable temperature control from +5°C above ambient temperature to 100°C, with accurate control to ±0.2°C. Water baths can be circulating or noncirculating. The circulating water baths provide the best temperature control. Another important consideration in the selection of a constant temperature bath is that the model be large enough to accommodate the desired working volume.

Maintenance

Maintenance of a constant temperature water bath is improved by filling it with type II (or type I) water. This prevents the accumulation of mineral deposits from regular tap water, which can affect the temperature-sensing elements and generally lead to poor heat transfer. However, if an accumulation of these minerals does occur, a weak hydrochloric acid solution will dissolve the deposits. Frequent cleaning and fresh water will prevent overgrowth of bacteria and algae. Also a 1:1000 dilution of thimerosal (Merthiolate) can be added to help prevent bacterial growth. Overheating and subsequent damage can occur if the bath goes dry. At higher temperatures, the bath should be covered, both to maintain proper temperature control and to prevent rapid evaporation to dryness.

Quality Control

A thermometer calibrated against another certified by NIST must be a component of any water bath. The temperature should be noted and recorded for each assay. This function by the operator ensures that indeed the temperature of the bath is the same as the reading of the thermometer.

HEATING BLOCKS, DRY-BATH INCUBATORS, AND OVENS

Heating blocks and dry-bath incubators are commonly used for incubating liquids at higher temperatures. Most incubators are constructed of an aluminum alloy that is capable of distributing the heat in a uniform manner. Their heating efficiency is less than a circulating water bath but will maintain a constant temperature within ±0.5°C. A certified thermometer or NIST-calibrated thermometer must be present in the heating block to monitor the temperature.

Heating ovens are used in chromatography procedures, to dry chemicals, to assist in extraction, and to dry membrane or gels in electrophoresis. Several different designs are available, depending on the desired temperature and purpose. Oven designs include programmable, vacuum, or standard laboratory types. Temperature control is usually within ±1°C. The oven must have a certified thermometer or NIST-calibrated thermometer available to monitor the interior temperature.

MIXING

Mixing is an operation intended to form a homogeneous mass or create a uniform heterogeneous system. Mixing is used to bring solids into solution; to bring phases into intimate contact—for instance, in extraction procedures; to wash suspended solids; to homogenize liquid phases; and to perform many other operations. A serious consequence of inadequate mixing can be failure to completely resuspend protein that settles out under long-term frozen storage of serum controls, resulting in invalid data. In some instances, excessive mixing may cause denaturation of protein or hemolysis. A phase separation occurs when serum (or plasma) specimens stand for a period of time and must be thoroughly mixed before analysis. The concentration of even small molecules in such a system will be heterogeneous as proteins settle and become more concentrated, so effective water concentration decreases in this layer. This produces a water concentration gradient throughout the system and, consequently, a concentration gradient of all components.

Single-Tube Mixers

A vortex mixer is capable of a variable-speed oscillation that results in a swirling motion to liquid contents of a test tube or other container. The angle of contact and degree of pressure can be regulated for optimal mixing action. A very effective mixing action is created by a multiple touch sequence (i.e., touching and withdrawing the tube from the neoprene oscillating cup of the mixer). The operator must be careful not to fill the container too full or to mix the liquid contents too fast, because spillage can occur.

Multiple-Tube Mixers

Various mixers are available that handle a number of tubes and tube sizes and have different types of mixing motions. A Thermolyne Maxi-Mix (Sybron Corporation, Dubuque, Iowa) can conveniently be used for vortex mixing one tube or several tubes at one time. Changing the pressure of the container against the replaceable foam rubber top varies mixing action. Circular motion on a tilted disk provides continuous inversion of contents in tubes, which are clip-mounted at the circumference of the rotating disk. Rotational speed can be varied to provide gentle or more vigorous mixing.

Control sera are conveniently reconstituted on this type of mixer. Tube shakers that operate by tilting back and forth at variable speeds provide thorough mixing of whole blood samples.

AQUEOUS SOLUTION

The concentration of a solution may be expressed as molarity (M), normality (N), and, less frequently, molality (m). Accurate preparation of reagents requires fundamental knowledge of solution chemistry, basic mathematics, and techniques.

Molarity

Molarity (M) is equal to the number of moles of solute per liter of solution. A *mole* of a substance is the number of grams equal to the atomic or molecular weight of the substance. The atomic or molecular weight of a substance is the actual mass of the chemical particle (atom or molecule) relative to the mass of the carbon atom. One mole of any substance will contain approximately 6.02×10^{23} particles (Avogadro's number). Thus a 1 molar solution contains 1 mole of solute per liter of solution (Box 4-7). Therefore, the procedure is to weigh out 29.25g of NaCl, transfer it to a 1-L volumetric flask, and then add water to the 1-L mark on the flask.

Millimoles

When small concentrations are used, they are frequently expressed in millimoles per liter (1000 mmol = 1 mol). For example, to prepare 10 mL of a 10-mmol (0.01 moles) NaOH solution, 4 mg NaOH is diluted to 10 mL.

Normality

Normality (N) is equal to the number of gram equivalents of solute per liter of solution and is dependent on the type of reaction involved (e.g., acid-base, oxidation). One-gram equivalent weight of an element or compound equals the gram molecular weight divided by the number of replaceable hydrogens or hydroxyls (also valence; Boxes 4-8 through 4-10):

$$\text{Gram equivalent weight} = \frac{\text{GMW}}{\text{Number of replaceable hydrogens, hydroxyls, or valence}}$$

$$1\ \text{N} = \text{Number of gram equivalents of solute/L of solution}$$

Molal

In the laboratory, the physical properties of solutions are sometimes measured—for example, when the osmolality of serum or urine is measured. The molality of the solution is determined instead of the molarity. A molal solution is 1 mole of solute in 1 kilogram of solvent. Molal solutions are based on weight, not volume. Because the density of water at room temperature is approximately 1 gram per milliliter, 1000 grams of water occupies about 1 liter. Therefore, a 1-molal aqueous solution is approximately the same as a 1-molar solution (Box 4-11).

Dilutions

Dilution procedures are not performed as frequently as in the past, owing to improvements in computers and instruments whereby the system performs the dilution automatically. But, on occasion, a dilution has to be prepared. A brief review follows.

A laboratory procedure may involve the addition of one substance to another to reduce the concentration of one of the substances. This mixture is called a *dilution*. Laboratory staff often confuse the terminology associated with dilutions and ratios. The term *ratio* is more general and refers to an amount of one thing relative to an amount of something else with no other implications. *Dilution*, as the term is used in laboratories, is more specific. It refers to the number of parts of a substance in the total number of parts of mixture containing the substance. The implication is how the mixture was made or how it is going to be made. The following are examples of ratios followed by dilutions (Box 4-12):

Ratios

1. The serum/saline ratio is 1:9.
2. The saline/serum ratio is 9:1.
3. The serum/total volume ratio is 1:10.

Note that a colon is used as the ratio symbol.

BOX 4-7

Example: Molarity

How many grams of NaCl are required to prepare 1 liter of a 0.5-M solution? The gram molecular weight (GMW) of NaCl is 58.5.

Solution

GMW × M = g/L
58.5 × 0.5 = 29.25 g/L

BOX 4-8

Example 1: Normality

What is the gram equivalent weight of $Ca(OH)_2$ (GMW = 74)?

Solution

Gram equivalent weight = 74/2 = 37
1 mole = 2 equivalents

BOX 4-9

Example 2: Normality

What is the gram equivalent weight of H_2SO_4 (GMW = 98)?

Solution

Gram equivalent weight = 98/2 = 49
1 mole = 2 equivalents

BOX 4-10

Example 3: Normality

How many milliliters of concentrated H_2SO_4 (specific gravity, 1.84; percent purity, 96.2%) are required to prepare 1 liter of a 1 normal solution?

Solution

Step 1: Compute GEW H_2SO_4 = 98/2 = 49.
Step 2: Compute the number of grams of H_2SO_4 in 1 liter = 98 g/L.
Step 3: Compute the number of grams of H_2SO_4 per milliliter of solution = SG × % assay = 1.84 × 96.2 = 1.77.
Step 4: Compute the number of milliliters of concentrated H_2SO_4 required when preparing 1 liter of a 1 normal solution:

$$\frac{1.77\ \text{g}}{1\ \text{mL}} = \frac{49\ \text{g}}{X\ \text{mL}}$$

$X = 27.6$ mL

BOX 4-11

Example: Molal Solutions

How many grams of NaOH are needed to make a 2.00 molal solution?

Solution

Step 1: Determine the GMW of NaOH = 40 g.
Step 2: Compute the number of grams of NaOH required to prepare the solution by using the following formula:

$$\text{Molality} = \frac{\text{Grams of solute/GMW of solute}}{1.0\ \text{kg of solvent}}$$

$$2\ \text{Molal} = \frac{X\ \text{g of NaOH}/40.00\ \text{g}}{1.0\ \text{kg of solvent}}$$

$X = 80$ g of NaOH

BOX 4-12

Example: Dilutions

Prepare a 1 mL/10 mL dilution of a serum sample.

Solution

Pipet 1.0 mL of serum and add 9.0 mL of saline for a total volume of 10 mL.

Dilutions

1. Make a 1:10 dilution of serum in saline.
2. Make a 1:10 dilution of serum in saline.
3. Make a 1:10 dilution of serum with saline.

A clinical application may involve the dilution of a patient serum sample because the bilirubin result exceeds the upper limit of linearity. The technologist decides to make a 1:2 dilution of the sample and assay the diluted sample. To prepare the dilution, the technologist pipets 100 µL of patient serum and adds 100 µL of water, for a total volume of 200 µL. The sample is assayed for bilirubin, and the analyzer prints out a value of 12 mg/dL. Before reporting the patient's bilirubin result, the technologist must multiply the analyzer value times 2 (the dilution factor) and then report the value of 24 mg/dL.

Acids, Alkalis, and pH

An acid molecule yields hydrogen ions (protons) in aqueous solutions; an alkali accepts these. At room temperature in pure water:

$$[H^+] = [OH^-] = 1 \times 10^{-7} \text{ molar}$$

In all aqueous solutions, both acid and alkaline:

$$Kw = [H^+] \times [OH^-] = 10^{-14}$$

In an acid solution, $[H^+]$ is greater than 1010^{-7} mol. In an alkaline solution, $[H^+]$ is less than 1010^{-7} mol. pH is the exponent that must be applied to 10 to give the value of $1/H^+$—that is:

$$pH = \log_{10} 1/H^+$$

When pH is	1	H^+ is	10^{-1}	and OH^- is	10^{-13}
	2		10^{-2}		10^{-12}
	4		10^{-4}		10^{-10}
	6		10^{-6}		10^{-8}
	10		10^{-10}		10^{-4}
	13		10^{-13}		10^{-1}

A change of one pH unit indicates a tenfold change in H^+ concentration.

Buffer Solution. The theory of buffers and their preparation can be found in Appendix 1. For most commonly used buffers, the quantities of salts of the acids and bases have been predetermined and may be found in reference books (e.g., Bates, 1973, which contains a very good discussion of the theoretical aspects of buffers and extensive information on how to prepare several buffer solutions).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

ASTM: E288-10 Standard specification for laboratory glass volumetric flasks. ASTM International. Online. Available at http://www.astm.org.

ASTM: E542-01 (Reapproved 2012) Standard practice for calibration of laboratory volumetric apparatus. ASTM International. Online. Available at http://www.astm.org.

ASTM: E694-99 (Reapproved 2010) Standard specification for laboratory glass volumetric apparatus. ASTM International. Online. Available at http://www.astm.org.

For referenced ASTM standards, visit the ASTM website, or contact ASTM Customer Service at service@astm.org. For annual book of ASTM standards volume information, refer to the standard's document summary page on the ASTM website.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI), formerly the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS) (Wayne, Pa.).

Provides comprehensive guidelines and procedures for basic laboratory methods.

Skoog DA, Holler FJ, Nieman TA: *Principles of instrumental analysis*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 1998. Harcourt Brace.

Provides a comprehensive explanation of instrument principles for nearly all clinical laboratory equipment.

REFERENCES

ASTM. E617-13: Standard specification for laboratory weights and precision mass standards. ASTM International. Online. http://www.astm.org.

Bartle KD: Introduction to the theory of chromatographic separations with reference to gas chromatography. In Baugh PJ, editor: *Gas chromatography: A practical approach*, ed 1, New York, 1993, Oxford University Press, pp 9–10.

Bates RG: *Determination of pH—theory and practice*, ed 2, New York, 1973, John Wiley and Sons.

Bender GT: *Principles of chemical instrumentation*, Philadelphia, 1987, WB Saunders.

CLSI Determining performance of volumetric equipment, Proposed Standard I8-P, Wayne, Pa., 1984, CLSI.

CLSI Preparation and testing of reagent water in the clinical laboratory, Approved Guideline GP40-A4-AMD, ed 4, Wayne, Pa., 2006, CLSI.

Gauldie J: Principles and clinical applications of nephelometry. In Kaplan LA, Pesce AJ, editors: *Nonisotopic alternatives to radioimmunoassays*, New York, 1981, Marcel Dekker Inc, pp 289–291.

Joint Commission on Accreditation of Health Care Organizations (JCAHO): Eliminating mercury in hospitals. Environmental best practices for health care facilities. US Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Karasek FW, Clement RE: *Basic gas chromatography—mass spectrometry: Principles and techniques*, Amsterdam, 1988, Elsevier.

Love JE, Ward KM: Electrophoretic instrumentation systems. In Ward KM, Lehmann CA, Leiken AM, editors: *Clinical laboratory instrumentation and automation: Principles, applications, and selection*, Philadelphia, 1994, WB Saunders, pp 173–174.

Ravindranath B: *Principles and practice of chromatography*, Chichester, England, 1989, Ellis Horwood, pp 89–127.

Rayleigh LB: On waves propagated along the plane surface of an elastic solid, *Proc London Math Soc* xviv:4–11, 1885.

Rubinson KA, Rubinson JF: *Contemporary instrumental analysis*, Upper Saddle River, N.J., 2000, Prentice Hall.

Schoeff LE, Williams RH: *Principles of laboratory instruments*, St. Louis, 1993, Mosby.

Strouse GF, Furukawa GT, Mangum BW, et al: *NIST standard reference materials for use as thermometric fixed points*, Gaithersburg, Md., 1997, NIST.

Tipler A: Gas chromatography instrumentation, operation, and experimental considerations. In Baugh PJ, editor: *Gas chromatography: A practical approach*, ed 1, New York, 1993, Oxford University Press, pp 63–67.

Willard HH, Merritt LL, Dean JA, et al: *Instrumental methods of analysis*, Belmont, Calif., 1988, Wadsworth.

CHAPTER 5

ANALYSIS: CLINICAL LABORATORY AUTOMATION

Timothy E. Caragher, Mark S. Lifshitz, Robert DeCresce

EVOLUTION OF AUTOMATION, 60

PREANALYTIC AND POSTANALYTIC AUTOMATION, 61
Automated Delivery, 61
Automated Specimen Processing, 61
Postanalytic Processing, 61

EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES IN PREANALYTIC AND POSTANALYTIC PROCESSING, 62
Automated Specimen Inspection, 62
Radio-Frequency Identification, 62

THE AUTOMATED CHEMISTRY ANALYZER: CORE COMPONENTS, 62
Sampling, 62
Reagent Handling, 62
Mixing and Incubation, 63
Detection, 63
Data Processing and Real-Time Monitoring, 63

THE CONTINUUM OF CHEMISTRY AUTOMATION, 63
Workstation, 63
Workcell, 63
Total Laboratory Automation, 63

LABORATORY AUTOMATION IN OTHER SECTIONS OF THE LAB, 64
Hematology, 64
Microbiology, 64

PLANNING FOR LABORATORY AUTOMATION, 64

SELECTED REFERENCES, 65

KEY POINTS

- Laboratory testing has undergone revolutionary changes over the past decade so that all routine chemistry and hematology testing is completely automated.
- Automated solutions are available for preanalytic, analytic, and postanalytic stages of laboratory testing. The degree of automation implemented in a laboratory should match its needs and can vary from a freestanding analyzer to a workcell or totally automated solution.
- Preanalytic automation is heavily dependent on uniquely identifying (often with a bar code) the primary collection container. Analyzers automatically perform many tasks and when integrated with other automated modules can significantly reduce hands-on time, thereby enabling staff to concentrate on exception processing, problem solving, and quality oversight.
- A continuum of automation strategies has been developed to meet scalable needs and to offset staff shortages; other key benefits are shorter turnaround time, fewer errors, safer staff working environment, and focus on value-based testing.

What is automation? In the context of the clinical laboratory, it can be described as the process by which an instrument automatically performs tasks that would otherwise have to be performed manually by laboratory staff. In recent years, *laboratory automation* has also been used to describe a broader process wherein multiple devices, often linked together, are capable of automating preanalytic, analytic, and postanalytic stages of testing (see Chapter 2). Thus in addition to performing tests, automation now includes solutions for specimen sorting, processing, transport, sample introduction, and storage. At the core of these configurations is a sophisticated information system that monitors and controls these tasks, optimizes performance, self-monitors analytic performance, and interfaces with the laboratory information system (LIS). This chapter discusses the fundamental concepts of automation as it relates to both of the preceding definitions, with specific emphasis on clinical chemistry.

EVOLUTION OF AUTOMATION

Prior to the introduction of automation in the 1950s, laboratory testing was a completely manual process that required technologists to hand-pipette specimen and reagent into glass test tubes, incubate, read reaction changes in a spectrophotometer, and extrapolate values from a calibration curve that was plotted on paper. These tasks are still performed today—only on automated platforms that eliminate manual intervention and thus significantly improve the reproducibility, accuracy, flexibility, and turnaround time of testing, while lowering costs, eliminating errors, and enhancing patient safety through robust sample identification and test reporting technologies (Battisto, 2004).

The first automated analyzers were based on continuous-flow technology (i.e., reagents would continuously flow through the channels); they sequentially analyzed each sample in a single or multiple parallel channel configuration. The same group of tests was performed on each sample irrespective of which tests were ordered; in other words, there was no test selectivity. These devices were followed by variable profile analyzers that could perform a subset of tests from the master profile or suppress those that were not ordered. The one characteristic shared by these analyzers was that their operating cycles were sample-based—that is, they processed a set number of samples per hour irrespective of the number of tests ordered per sample. Another approach to testing was the batch analyzer (e.g., centrifugal analyzer), which could perform a single test on a large number of samples. These devices were "run-based" systems; once the batch testing began, it could not be interrupted to add a new sample. By the early 1980s, the inflexibility of these designs started to be addressed with the introduction of a totally new concept: the random access analyzer.

Unlike its predecessors, the random access analyzer selects sample and reagent randomly without regard to placement on the analyzer. This type of operation implies several unique characteristics that differentiate it from other instruments:

1. It has a single analytic pathway for all testing instead of dedicated channels for each test.
2. Tests are initiated sequentially based on what is ordered—that is, tests are not batched.
3. It has a flexible configuration to process each test's unique parameters (e.g., wavelength, number of readings, reagent additions).
4. It performs tests discretely, each in its own cuvette.
5. Throughput is based on the number of tests run per hour, not the number of samples per hour. Virtually all of today's automated chemistry systems are based on random access design. This flexible design has allowed many tests that previously were performed on a variety of platforms to be consolidated into one.

Although the random access analyzer was originally introduced for general chemistry and homogeneous immunoassay testing, many of its

operating characteristics were adapted in the 1990s to heterogeneous immunoassay testing. These tests typically require more flexible assay parameters, such as variable incubation times, reagent additions and wash steps, and unique detection systems (e.g., luminometer) that require testing to be performed in a specially designed unit. Because of these testing requirements, immunoassay throughput is significantly lower than that of a general chemistry analyzer. Although immunoassay analyzers were originally introduced as standalone units, they are also typically available as an integrated subsystem within a single chemistry/immunoassay platform.

After great strides occurred in automating sample analysis, more attention was focused on the preanalytic processes that increasingly accounted for errors and workflow delays. These included sample labeling (or relabeling with bar codes), loading and unloading centrifuges, manual aliquoting (e.g., splitting samples to be used at several workstations or transferring samples into another container to be sent out for testing or used in in-house instruments), and sorting samples for different workstations. Each step could potentially lead to an error, such as a misidentified sample resulting in an incorrect report. Finally, the uncapping and capping of samples posed biohazard risks due to aerosol exposure and contact with blood and body fluids. In response to these issues, preanalytic automation was introduced in the form of standalone units or preanalytic processing modules integrated into an automated laboratory configuration.

In addition to refining the capabilities of automated analyzers, in the past 10 to 15 years, the laboratory community has primarily focused on automating the entire testing process from collection to reporting, including a major emphasis on integrating these activities and optimizing preanalytic tasks and sample storage. Total laboratory automation (TLA) is the culmination of this design strategy (Sarkozi et al, 2003), one that uses intralaboratory sample transportation systems such as conveyors or tracks to move samples between analyzers and into and out of processing stations that centrifuge, decap/cap, and store sample containers. TLA is discussed in greater detail below.

As we enter a new era in health care, with enhanced emphasis on value-based management, the diversity of laboratory automation solutions is well positioned to meet the needs of small-, medium-, and high-volume clinical laboratories (Burtis & Bruns, 2014). Some of the factors that will continue to drive automation are presented in Box 5-1.

PREANALYTIC AND POSTANALYTIC AUTOMATION

AUTOMATED DELIVERY

The preanalytic stage focuses on sample collection and processing (see Chapter 3). The first processing step begins with the delivery of samples from the collection location. For decades, specimens drawn within a facility were transported to the laboratory by phlebotomists or other staff. If the specimens were obtained from outside the facility, a courier service was often used. Both of these batch processes were usually based on scheduled pick-ups. One of the earliest automated transport systems to be introduced—and still the most popular one today—is the pneumatic tube (e.g., TransLogic® Pneumatic Tube System, Swisslog, Denver, Colo.); it rapidly transports 4- or 6-inch-diameter high-impact polycarbonate carriers from one point (or carrier station) in a facility to another. Each station is uniquely identified, and carriers are programmed to travel to a specific station. Thus the sender can load blood collection tubes into a carrier and program it to go to the laboratory, and blood units from transfusion services or medications from pharmacies can be delivered to patient care units. Pneumatic tube carriers are lined with foam to cushion contents and reduce the potential for breakage. These systems are also designed to prevent hemolysis by avoiding significant elevation of *g* forces during acceleration and deceleration.

Other automated delivery systems have also been developed for use predominantly in the laboratory and, in some instances, outside it. Electrical track vehicles can transport a larger number of specimens than pneumatic tubes; they require a station for loading and unloading specimens, and this may pose a problem in facilities with limited space. They can also transport ice or refrigerated packs with samples because of their larger carrying capacity. Mobile robots offer another transportation option: They can deliver samples directly to the workstation. These devices either follow a line in the floor or use a more sophisticated, flexible, and expensive guidance system. Mobile robots are batch delivery systems, and they require staff to load and unload samples at each stop. Conveyors or track systems are used in some laboratory facilities, especially if the laboratory receives a very large number of samples. Conveyor or track systems are designed to transport specimens horizontally (i.e., across the floor) and vertically (i.e., to a different floor).

AUTOMATED SPECIMEN PROCESSING

Automated specimen processing minimizes non-value-added steps in the laboratory testing process (e.g., aliquoting, sorting tubes) and improves quality by reducing manual handling errors; it also addresses reproducibility and throughput issues. Automation enhances worker safety: It reduces operator exposure to potentially hazardous biologic material and eliminates repetitive stress injuries. Box 5-2 lists common specimen handling steps; some or all of these tasks have been included in front-end automation systems. Standalone units (with or without centrifugation) selectively target a group of preanalytic or postanalytic steps. For example, a unit may include sample sorting, sample uncapping, and aliquoting. After processing, samples are manually transported to a workstation. In contrast to this *targeted automation* approach, these tasks can also be integrated into a larger, fully automated modular design that is connected to an analytic and storage (postanalytic) component and eliminates any handling after initial loading. One example of a standalone automated unit is the Automate™ 800 (Beckman Coulter Inc., Brea, Calif.); it can perform sample receipt, sorting, centrifugation, decapping, sample volume detection, and aliquotting functions).

POSTANALYTIC PROCESSING

Standalone systems are also available to archive and retrieve bar-coded specimens; samples are scanned and placed in numbered positions in numbered racks. Specimens are retrieved by entering the patient's sample accession number or a medical record number into the archival system's database. The rack number and sample position are displayed for the user. Some systems include a refrigerator for sample storage and automatic disposal of samples at predetermined times. The Cobas p 701 (Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis, Ind.) is an example of a postanalytic unit that can be used as a freestanding device or be connected to a preanalytic

BOX 5-1

Factors That Drive Laboratory Automation

Turnaround time (TAT) demands
Specimen integrity issues
Staff shortages
Economic factors
Need to lower maintenance
Need to reduce calibration
Need to reduce downtime
Faster start-up times
24/7 uptime
Throughput
Computer and software technology
Primary tube sampling
Increasing the number of different analytes on one system
Increasing the number of different methods on one system
Reducing laboratory errors
Number of specimens
Types of fluids
Safety
Environmental concerns (i.e., biohazard risks)

BOX 5-2

Automation: Preanalytic and Postanalytic Steps

Primary tube ID/labeling (if not done remotely)
LIS Receiving
Sorting (and prioritizing stats)
Centrifuging
Decapping
Secondary tube labeling
Volume checks/clot detection
Aliquoting
Destination sorting into analyzer racks
Recapping
Sample storage and retrieval

system. It can store up to 27,000 tubes in a walk-in refrigerator; samples are automatically disposed based on user-defined short- and long-term storage time frames.

EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES IN PREANALYTIC AND POSTANALYTIC PROCESSING

AUTOMATED SPECIMEN INSPECTION

Automated specimen inspection can potentially address two of the most significant preanalytic concerns: identifying sample identification errors and sample integrity issues. Ideally, an automated device could sort a random collection of different-sized containers with different additives and assess each one for proper labeling, adequate volume, and interference from icterus, lipemia, or hemolysis. This recently described invention uses optical character recognition to identify potentially mislabeled samples (Hawker et al, 2014).

RADIO-FREQUENCY IDENTIFICATION

Radio-frequency identification (RFID) can significantly change how laboratory samples are tracked from collection to final disposition and can do so passively—that is, without active human intervention. This can reduce errors and misplaced samples (Shim et al, 2011). Compared to traditional labels, RFID tags have several advantages:

1. *No line of sight reading*—that is, all of the RFID tagged samples in a closed transport container can be read without having to open the container or delivery package.
2. *Dynamic data storage*—data encoded on the sample container's read-write chip can be modified from a distance to reflect updated information like add-on tests.
3. *Not affected by cold storage*—ice and frost accumulated during freezer storage do not obscure an RFID tag, unlike with traditional labels.

Although RFID technology has the potential to radically change how specimens are tracked, it has yet to be commercialized on a large scale in the clinical laboratory, in part owing to its greater cost as compared to existing approaches. On the other hand, RFID technology is being introduced by instrument vendors as a simple and automated approach to manage reagent inventory.

THE AUTOMATED CHEMISTRY ANALYZER: CORE COMPONENTS

The automated analyzer is central to the operation of the clinical laboratory. Chapter 4 discusses many of the testing principles used by these devices. This section discusses various physical operating characteristics and design features that enable these devices to function in an automated manner (Box 5-3).

SAMPLING

All fully automated general chemistry analyzers are capable of sampling directly from the collection tube. Direct tube sampling along with bar code reading has eliminated the need to transfer samples into another container, reduced errors, and minimized technologist exposure to potentially biohazardous materials. Tubes are typically decapped before sampling; however, some chemistry systems such as the UniCell analyzers (Beckman Coulter Inc., Brea, Calif.) offer cap-piercing technology. The analyzer uses a blade to slit the stopper, and the sample probe pierces the stopper to withdraw an aliquot of sample. Note that cap-piercing technology is available on all high-throughput hematology analyzers.

BOX 5-3

Automation: Analytic Steps

Sample introduction and transport to cuvet or dilution cup
Addition of reagent
Mixing of sample and reagent
Incubation
Detection
Calculations
Readout and result reporting

Automatic sampling may be accomplished in different ways. The peristaltic pump is an example of an older technology that is still used in some instrument designs (e.g., electrolyte measurements). More commonly, positive liquid displacement pipettes are used to transfer sample from cups or tubes to the analytic module. These pipettes dispense sample into the reaction container, or they flush out sample together with diluent. Computer-controlled stepper motors can precisely control the amount of liquid that is aspirated and dispensed. A similar configuration is used for reagent dispensing.

In most analyzers, samples are aspirated and dispensed using a thin, stainless-steel probe. In some analyzers, the probe pierces a rubber stopper, and in others it passes directly into a test tube or a cup. A potential problem is the formation of a sample clot that adheres to the probe. The clot may plug the probe, preventing further use; occupy sample volume, thereby leading to a "short sample" measurement error; or adhere to the sample probe, thereby leading to an instrument malfunction and/or sample probe misalignment. Most sample probe designs can detect clots and reject the sample. Liquid level sensors detect the presence of an inadequate or short sample; they typically travel a specified distance into the sample container to determine whether liquid is present.

Reusable pipette probes are subject to carryover—that is, contamination of one sample by the previous sample. This can create spurious results. Several instrument modifications have been used to reduce carryover. One approach is to aspirate a wash solution between pipetting cycles. Another technique is to back-flush the probe using a wash solution. The wash solution flows through the probe in a direction opposite to that of the aspiration into a waste container. This technique minimizes the risk of pulling a small clot deeper into the system. To completely eliminate carryover, some devices use disposable plastic pipette tips to transfer each sample, although this slightly increases consumable costs.

REAGENT HANDLING

Automated analyzers need to address how reagents are stored, handled, prepared, proportioned, and dispensed. Most laboratories use bulk reagents that are ready to use with little or no preparation. If the reagent is lyophilized, most analyzers will automatically reconstitute the contents with diluent. Some analyzers use unit test reagents (i.e., reagent is present for the performance of a single test). In dry technology, reagents are impregnated on a solid phase strip or slide. Another type of unit test reagent is a container or test tube with premeasured liquid or powdered material to which water, buffer, or sample is added.

Reagents are stored in (environmentally controlled) compartments, and inventory is monitored in real time. Most of the methods used in the laboratory require only a single reagent, but some require two or more. When a reagent becomes depleted, the computer alerts the operator to replace the empty container with a new one. Onboard reagent storage compartments are refrigerated to maintain reagent stability.

Bar code labels uniquely identify each reagent container so multiple containers of a high-volume reagent can be loaded and the analyzer will sequentially use the contents of each. The bar code label may contain additional information such as expiration dates, lot numbers, and volume of reagent (or number of tests) in the container. Some analyzers may couple a liquid level sensor onto the reagent probe, which confirms reagent aspiration and also measures remaining test inventory in the container.

For all tests, the bar-coded reagent label stores calibration information such as concentration, expected detector responses, calibration curve algorithms, and tolerances for acceptability of calibration. This information is often referred to as *master lot* or *master calibration*.

Automated analyzers are categorized as *open* or *closed* reagent systems, a distinction that may influence purchasing decisions. An open reagent system can accommodate reagents from third-party (i.e., noninstrument manufacturer) vendors and allows the operator to modify test parameters to implement these tests. *Open* reagent systems provide users with greater flexibility and adapt easily to new methods and analytes. As a note of caution, many of the instruments do not allow full access to all of the functions and calculations that the manufacturer uses, and third-party methods often cannot be optimized. A *closed* reagent system can only use the instrument manufacturer's reagents and therefore may not offer a new or proprietary test that is available only from an external vendor. Although reagents may cost more in a closed system, reagent handling and identification are usually more tightly integrated with the analyzer operation, thereby leading to hidden benefits. Most laboratories predominantly use reagents from their instrument vendor. Even "closed" systems sometimes have some limited ability to accommodate third-party reagents.

MIXING AND INCUBATION

Many unique approaches are used to mix sample and reagent in automated systems. They include magnetic stirring, rotating paddles, forceful dispensing, the use of ultrasonic energy, and vigorous lateral displacement. Dry slide analyzers do not require sample and reagent mixing because sample need only flow through the reagent layers to accomplish this task.

An incubator must provide a constant and accurate temperature for the reaction; this is achieved by using circulating air or water baths or heated metal blocks. Electronic thermocouples and thermistors monitor and maintain required temperatures.

DETECTION

An automated analyzer may typically include several detection systems, depending on the test menu offered. For example, general chemistry assays may be measured by absorption or reflectance spectroscopy; electrolytes may be measured by ion-selective electrodes; and immunoassays may be based on chemiluminescence and thus require a luminometer. These technologies are discussed in Chapter 4. Most of the chemistry analyzers marketed today incorporate several measuring subsystems. Typically, they are dedicated chemistry, dedicated immunoassay, or chemistry/immunoassay integrated platforms.

DATA PROCESSING AND REAL-TIME MONITORING

The instrument computer controls signal processing, data handling, and process control. Signal processing coverts an analog signal from the detector to a digital signal that is usable by all communication devices. Data processing can transform nonlinear input signals into linear calibration plots, thereby enabling nonlinear assays (e.g., those based on reflectance spectrophotometry) to be automated. Within the analyzer, the computer controls electromechanical processes so they are uniform, repeatable, and in the correct sequence. These operations include activating pipetting devices, moving cuvets from one point to another, moving sample tubes, and dispensing reagents. User-friendly software can display Levey-Jennings QC charts and calibration curves, and online troubleshooting can be accessed along with "how to" videos that help guide users through instrument training and maintenance. Real-time monitoring (using Internet connectivity) has allowed vendors to continuously analyze instrument subsystems and identify components that could potentially fail before they actually do. Based on these data, vendors can schedule service and avoid potential unscheduled downtime during off-hours.

THE CONTINUUM OF CHEMISTRY AUTOMATION

Laboratory vendors offer a variety of automation solutions designed to meet the needs of laboratories of all sizes. Often, these solutions are scalable, allowing the same technology to be used across a network of laboratories, albeit implemented in different configurations. What follows is a brief description of these configurations. Automation is a constantly evolving technology, with new solutions often introduced by vendors, so it is important to review the latest offerings and competitive differences when new automation is considered. Currently, the major vendors in core chemistry and immunodiagnostics are Abbott Diagnostics, Lake Forest, Ill.; Beckman Coulter Inc., Brea, Calif.; Ortho Clinical Diagnostics, Rochester, N.Y.; Roche Diagnostics U.S. Headquarters, Indianapolis, Ind.; and Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics, Inc., Tarrytown, N.Y.

WORKSTATION

The most basic unit of automation is the workstation, which is typically an automated clinical analyzer (described above). The analyzer may be dedicated to general chemistry testing, immunoassay testing, or a single platform that integrates both technologies. Although samples have to be manually loaded and unloaded, this standalone device automates the entire testing process. The instrument operator usually initiates calibration, quality control, and daily maintenance activities and replenishes reagents. Typically, bar-coded samples and bidirectional LIS interfaces allow analyzers to automatically determine which tests to run on each sample and automatically upload (and autoverify) results. Provided the analyzer can accommodate a sufficient number of samples and reagents, the operator can "walk away" for a period of time. However, all instrument alerts appear on the local device and need to be reviewed. Another drawback of this approach is that the operator must manually gauge how to "load balance" the daily routine work and stat requests to achieve optimal throughput and performance across several freestanding workstations.

BOX 5-4

Process Control Software Functions

1. Calculate number of aliquots and volume needed for each workstation
2. Route samples to analyzers in most optimal way
3. Recap sample
4. Autoretrieval of samples for reflex or repeat testing
5. Autoverification of results

WORKCELL

To further enhance productivity, vendors have developed integrated groups of analyzers that can function as a single unit and can be monitored by a single technologist. A "virtual" workcell is a cluster of such devices—for example, chemistry analyzers, hematology cell counters, or coagulation instruments—that is not physically connected by a track, but in which the devices are interfaced to one another through common software known as middleware. A "physical" workcell is a similar cluster of devices that is connected by a track and thus has a single sample loading and unloading station. The middleware is a central hub that can consolidate most of the user interaction emanating from all the devices and present it to the technologist on a single display. For example, it can display the status of all the samples processed on each system, the pending list of stat samples, the error messages from different systems, and the samples that require reruns (and that may have to be manually reloaded); it can also autoverify samples that meet the preset criteria. Also, it can "load balance" by either indicating to the technologist where to load a sample on the virtual workcell or by automatically doing so on the physical one.

TOTAL LABORATORY AUTOMATION

The idea of totally automating a clinical laboratory has its roots in Japan, and the concept was first introduced in the early 1980s. Early designs used one-arm robots, conveyor belts, and modifications to existing chemistry analyzers to perform as many preanalytic and analytic tasks as possible with no human intervention (Olsen, 2012). Each laboratory workstation was coupled to the conveyor belts so the samples could be moved from one workstation to another. Continued research and modifications to these earlier systems led to the development of commercial total laboratory automation (TLA) systems designed for hospital-based laboratories.

In a TLA design, multiple analyzers are coupled to a specimen management and transportation system; process control software (middleware) coordinates the activities of the various automation modules (Box 5-4) and is interfaced to the LIS. These systems are typically designed for laboratories that process 1000 to 10,000 samples per day—for example, a core laboratory within a health system's network of laboratories. TLA can include a wide variety of modules, including analytic units to perform chemistry, hematology, coagulation, and immunochemistry tests, as well as preanalytic/postanalytic units such as centrifuges, specimen sorting modules, specimen decappers and recappers, specimen aliquot modules, and refrigerated storage units.

TLA benefits include a decrease in labeling and other preanalytic errors, shorter turnaround times, and a reduction in full-time equivalents (FTEs) necessary to process a given test volume—that is, increased productivity. The latter is of special interest given the current shortage of laboratory technologists. Laboratories using a high degree of automation thus have the ability to introduce new assays and/or process additional testing volume without adding staff. Staff savings from automated testing can be reassigned to other areas or projects, such as increasing the frequency of testing for tests currently run on a limited schedule or implementing new tests in-house that were previously sent to a reference lab.

The major limitations of TLA include the need for substantial financial investment and increased floor space. Initial investment may reach millions of dollars, and floor space requirements may exceed 4000 square feet. Another factor that requires the attention of planners because of the complex nature of TLA is the need for highly technical personnel to operate and troubleshoot the system. Other challenges to TLA include infrastructure remodeling, personnel team building, and software

interfacing. In addition, some systems may not be able to easily interrupt workflow to analyze emergency (stat) samples (Battisto, 2004).

Most TLA vendors assist (when requested) in the planning, budgeting, implementation, and optimization of their system. For example, the vendor will often perform a Six Sigma/Lean analysis of the laboratory to develop a proposed layout and determine the optimal configuration of preanalytic, analytic, and storage units. After implementation, the vendors will typically review performance to assess and suggest minor modifications.

LABORATORY AUTOMATION IN OTHER SECTIONS OF THE LAB

In addition to the major advances in chemistry automation discussed above, transformational changes have also occurred and continue to evolve in other laboratory sections. What follows is a brief overview of some of these changes, the technology of which is discussed in greater detail in other chapters.

HEMATOLOGY

Hematology analyzers use a variety of technologies (e.g., electrical impedance, flow cytometry, light scatter, and absorbance) to count and classify red cells, white cells, and platelets and to identify morphologic abnormalities. (These principles are discussed in Chapter 30.) Recent trends in hematology have focused on automating all aspects of cell counting, including manual review of the WBC differential and automating unrelated tests that typically could be run on the same EDTA collection container (e.g., hemoglobin A1C).

Hematology automation is available as a standalone workcell or as a component of a larger track system that includes chemistry and preanalytic modules. For most users, a compact workcell provides most of the functionality that can be realized from hematology automation. In either configuration, the system is typically comprised, at a minimum, of multiple cell counters, a slide maker stainer, and a tube sorter; these devices are usually physically connected by a track. Devices can also be virtually connected; this requires samples to be loaded and unloaded from each module. As with chemistry systems, middleware connects the modules, balances testing load among analyzers, and determines which samples require staining or other follow-up. More sophisticated versions may also include a module for automated slide microscopy (e.g., CellaVision Inc., Durham, N.C.) and/or A1C testing (by HPLC method). Thus all tasks historically performed on an EDTA tube can be automated with minimal operator intervention. Compact analytic units and concentrated reagents that are automatically reconstituted onboard have significantly downsized the footprint of these systems and have decreased the space needed to store off-line reagents. User interaction and manual slide reviews are kept to a minimum. One example of scalable hematology automation is the Sysmex XN-9000™ (Sysmex Corporation, Kobe City, Hyogo Prefecture, Japan) (Fig. 5-1); it can include up to nine analytic modules, along with the capability to connect slide preparation units, tube sorters, HbA1c testing, and automated microscopy. The system is driven by Sysmex's proprietary WAM™ middleware, which enables multisite connectivity and systemwide rules that can yield autovalidation rates greater than 88%.

MICROBIOLOGY

Although continuous-monitoring blood culture systems and automated microbial identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing systems have been widely implemented for many years, microbiology sample processing and workup have largely been manual, time-consuming tasks. Samples need to be plated on culture media, incubated, and then monitored at periodic intervals. This entails much hands-on time, and plates are constantly shuffled between workstations and incubators. Until recently, microbiology lagged behind chemistry and hematology in its ability to automate manual tasks. However, with the introduction of new technologies to address these long-standing issues, the microbiology laboratory is at the cusp of a transformational change. These core changes are driven by sophisticated specimen-processing devices that can address the unique intricacies of this discipline and laboratory automation solutions that can integrate the various workstations (including plating, incubation, identification, and susceptibility testing) into a single unit. As the microbiology laboratory continues to introduce non-growth-dependent techniques (e.g., molecular diagnostics), coupled with sophisticated automation, it is likely that the boundaries between this discipline and others will continue to erode (Bourbeau & Ledeboer, 2013).

PLANNING FOR LABORATORY AUTOMATION

An understanding of laboratory workflow and the role of technology is a key prerequisite to developing a performance optimization strategy. This is more fully discussed in Chapter 2. The application of these concepts is particularly important in TLA, where project costs are measured in millions of dollars. Objectives need to be clearly defined, and decisions must be based on accurate data. For example, one must fully understand the capabilities of the LIS and its limitations; the current result turnaround time; the laboratory layout to determine if automation will fit (and if there is sufficient space to support existing operations during construction); specimen and test mapping; and the current cost and test volume to share with vendors in the request for proposal (RFP). Ultimately, vendors will propose solutions based on these data. To adequately evaluate and compare bids, one must understand what they are based on.

The RFP outlines the laboratory's strategies, service needs, and goals (Melanson et al, 2007). It also provides a standardized framework and a deadline for vendors to respond. Table 5-1 provides examples of the type of information requested in an RFP.

After the RFP has been distributed, vendors can be invited to present their analysis of the laboratory's current and future needs/goals, along with a proposed solution and project timeline. Vendors also provide useful information about the competitive advantages of their system and the drawbacks of others; this may highlight issues that may not otherwise be apparent. Subsequent to these presentations, it is useful to conduct customer phone interviews to clarify potential concerns about a specific issue that may have surfaced during the vendor presentation or to validate that performance expectations are met. Box 5-5 provides examples of questions that can be used to probe customer experience.

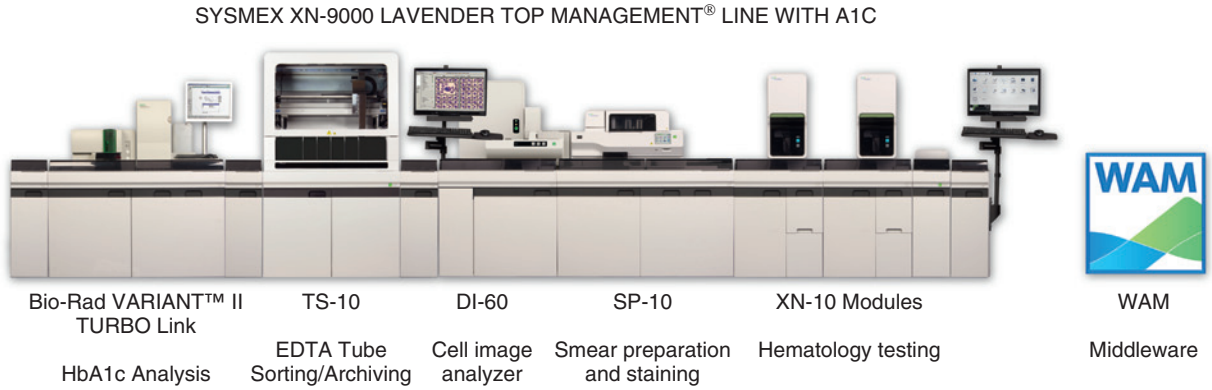


Figure 5-1 Sysmex XN-9000™ (Sysmex Corporation). The Sysmex XN-9000 has features such as slide preparation units, tube sorters, HbA1c testing, and automated microscopy. (From Sysmex Corporation, with permission.)

TABLE 5-1

Laboratory Automation RFP: Examples of Needs, Goals, and Terms to Consider

Laboratory turnaround time	90th percentile for test completion: general chemistry (30 minutes), immunoassay (45 minutes), CBC (20 minutes), basic coagulation (30 minutes) Ability to prioritize stats
Throughput	During peak periods, throughput adequate to meet TAT and grow business by 20% with existing configuration
Method	Proposed test menu and (current) volume with ability to add open (user-defined) channels
Specimen management	Operator alerts for sample integrity issues (like hemolysis, icterus), insufficient sample, label error System should be able to store, locate, and retrieve sample for add-on or repeat tests
LIS Needs	Seamless and bidirectional interface Can operate independent of TLA
Financial impact and contract terms	Budget neutral; with reallocation of staff Contract length; fixed reagent and consumable pricing over contract period versus annual adjustment Service included for life of contract versus initial 2 years
Environment and safety	Will not generate excessive heat or noise System will minimize workplace exposure to hazards
Downtime and service	Dedicated service engineer for first 2 months 24/7 on-call service thereafter with 2-hour response time Minimal downtime
References	Contact information for at least two current customers using the proposed or a similar configuration

BOX 5-5

Stategic Planning for Automation: Site Visit and Customer Questions

Why did you choose to automate?
Why did you pick your current manufacturer?
How did your lab function before automation?
Do you ever have downtime?
How is the service response?
Are there any recurrent problems?
How did the staff react to the new automation?
What LIS do you have?
What kind of remodeling did your lab perform?
Are there any expectations that were never met?
What were your ultimate goals after the automation?
Did you realize all your goals?
Would you buy this product again?
What is the one idea or "words of wisdom" that you would give us?

In the last phase of the process, the vendor selection team identifies two or three final candidates based on RFP responses, vendor presentations, and customer feedback. This is an optimal time to visit customer sites and see the proposed system in operation. Typically, these vendors are also invited back to present their final financial proposal and system configuration. After selecting a vendor, the final contractual terms are negotiated by the legal and purchasing experts, and an implementation plan is developed. It is a good idea to assess the expected results of the implemented automation about 6 months after the installation.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Armbruster DA, Overcash DR, Reyes J: Clinical chemistry laboratory automation in the 21st century—amat victoria curam (victory loves careful preparation), *Clin Biochem Rev* 35(3):143–153, 2014.
Provides overview of laboratory automation and history of automation.

Burtis CA, Bruns DE: *Tietz: Fundamentals of clinical chemistry and molecular diagnostics*, ed 7, St. Louis, 2014, Elsevier.
Provides substantial detailed information on all aspects of the preanalytic, analytic, and postanalytic stages in automation and clinical testing.

Melanson SEF, Lindeman NI, Jarolim P: Selecting automation for the clinical chemistry laboratory, *Arch Pathology Lab Med* 131:1063, 2007.
Lists the topics and tasks needed to prepare for automation.

Sarkozi L, Simson E, Ramanathan L: The effects of total laboratory automation on the management of a clinical chemistry laboratory: Retrospective analysis of 36 years, *Clin Chim Acta* 329(1–2):89–94, 2003.
Shows the results of a consolidation project serving a multihospital system.

REFERENCES

Battisto DG: Hospital clinical laboratories are in a constant state of change, *Clin Leadersh Manag Rev* 18(2):86–99, 2004.

Bourbeau PP, Ledeboer NA: Automation in clinical microbiology, *J Clin Micro* 51(6):1658–1665, 2013.

Hawker CD, McCarthy W, Cleveland D, et al: Invention and validation of an automated camera system that uses optical character recognition to identify patient name mislabeled samples, *Clin Chem* 60:463–467, 2014.

Olsen K: The first 110 years of laboratory automation: Technologies, applications, and the creative scientist, *J Lab Autom* 17:469, 2012.

Shim H, Young U, Seung L, et al: A new specimen management system using RFID technology, *J Med Syst* 35(6):1403–1412, 2011.

CHAPTER 6

POINT-OF-CARE TESTING AND PHYSICIAN OFFICE LABORATORIES

Lauren McVoy, Mark S. Lifshitz

INTRODUCTION: DEFINITION OF POINT-OF-CARE TESTING, 66

REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS, 66

LABORATORY DIRECTORSHIP, 67

COMPLIANCE, 68

TYPES OF POINT-OF-CARE TESTING, 68

Hematology, 68

Chemistry, 68

Microbiology, 69

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF POINT-OF-CARE TESTING, 69

CONNECTIVITY AND DATA MANAGEMENT, 69

IMPLEMENTATION OF A POINT-OF-CARE TESTING PROGRAM, 70

Physician Offices, 70

Hospitals and Medical Centers, 70

Policies and Procedures, 71

MAINTENANCE OF A POINT-OF-CARE TESTING PROGRAM, 72

Quality Assurance Program, 72

CONCLUSIONS, 72

SELECTED REFERENCES, 72

KEY POINTS

- Point-of-care testing refers to the scope of laboratory tests that are performed where patient care is delivered. This includes physician office testing as well as various hospital locations outside the laboratory, such as the emergency department, operating room, and intensive care unit.
- When performed in a physician office, simple tests (such as urine dipstick and whole blood glucose meters) are exempt from most regulations involving personnel, proficiency testing, and rigorous quality assurance requirements. These are referred to as "waived" tests under the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act. In hospitals, these tests fall under the laboratory certificate of the parent hospital or health care facility and generally are subject to stricter requirements.
- Special personnel requirements are necessary (including those for laboratory director) if a physician office laboratory performs moderate-complexity testing.
- Key components of a hospital point-of-care testing program include method validation, training of nonlaboratory staff, and clear policies and procedures to establish who is responsible for each part of the program. Laboratory oversight is mandatory.
- Current technology of select tests in hematology, chemistry, and microbiology is reviewed, and limitations are discussed.

INTRODUCTION: DEFINITION OF POINT-OF-CARE TESTING

Point-of-care testing (POCT) is laboratory testing that is performed outside the central or core laboratory and generally at the site of clinical care or close to the patient. In most settings, POCT is performed by clinical staff rather than laboratorians. Some POCT is also performed by the patient at home. This is the case for home glucose monitoring for diabetics and home coagulation testing for people on warfarin.

Because POCT is mainly performed by nonlaboratorians, there are many challenges to ensuring that testing is performed in an appropriate and accurate manner. Regulatory requirements are available to help guide outpatient locations in the implementation and maintenance of important components of POCT, such as training, creating procedure manuals, performance of quality control, test validation, and documentation of results. Because testing is generally performed by people who are not trained in laboratory sciences and do not have a background in quality assurance and error reduction in laboratory testing, device manufacturers have built-in features to reduce the possibility of errors. These features include passwords for individual users with lock-out if training is not up-to-date, requirements for external and internal quality control prior to patient testing, and electronic transmission of results.

Some of the clinical settings where POCT is performed include emergency rooms or urgent care settings, where often quick decisions need to be made; inpatient settings to maintain tight glucose control; physicians' offices; health fairs; cancer centers that perform infusions; radiology sites prior to contrast administration; presurgical testing; nursing homes; and blood drives. This variety of settings involves a diverse group of health care workers who perform different types of tests. Depending on the type of testing, the clinical setting, and the test categorization (mandated by the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act, or CLIA), testing may be performed by nurses, medical assistants, physicians, or office assistants. This diversity of clinical roles and levels of education means that training and testing responsibilities must be tailored to the individuals' backgrounds as appropriate. For instance, a medical assistant may be trained to perform urine dipsticks in an outpatient setting, but a nurse may be responsible for reviewing daily quality control. Similarly, a physician or medical director on the CLIA certificate may be responsible for writing the procedure manual and oversight of training.

Oversight of POCT programs can be very complex and challenging due to the mix of tests and devices, the number of people performing the tests, and the focus on clinical care over laboratory testing. Testing in a clinical laboratory is generally performed by a relatively small number of people trained in laboratory sciences whose primary focus is lab testing. Testing is also generally performed on only a few laboratory analyzers. This is in contrast to POCT, which is performed in a clinical site by health care providers who have other responsibilities besides POCT. They are generally trained in patient care, not clinical laboratory sciences. Also, POCT is frequently distributed over a larger number of devices, with each performing a relatively low volume of testing, requiring more validation, calibration, quality control, and so on.

REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

The Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act of 1988 (CLIA 88) set basic standards for laboratories to follow to ensure the accuracy of patient test results regardless of the setting in which they are performed (Code of Federal Regulations, Part 493). These standards apply to central or core laboratories performing testing on samples received from inpatient and outpatient locations; they also apply to any other site performing testing, including POCT and provider-performed microscopy procedures (PPMP). CLIA defines four different categories of tests based upon the following factors: level of training and education required to perform the test,

BOX 6-1

Types of CLIA Certificates

Certificate of Waiver

Certificate issued to a laboratory to perform only waived tests
Certificate for provider-performed microscopy procedures
Certificate issued to a laboratory in which a physician, midlevel practitioner, or dentist performs no tests other than the microscopy procedures; permits the laboratory to also perform waived tests

Certificate of Registration

Certificate issued to a laboratory that enables the entity to conduct moderate- or high-complexity laboratory testing, or both, until the entity is determined by survey to be in compliance with CLIA regulations

Certificate of Compliance

Certificate issued to a laboratory after an inspection that finds the laboratory to be in compliance with all applicable CLIA requirements

Certificate of Accreditation

Certificate issued to a laboratory on the basis of the laboratory's accreditation by an accreditation organization approved by the Health Care Finance Administration

Data from Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. *CLIA: How to obtain a CLIA certificate of waiver.* Obtained at http://www.cms.gov/CLIA/downloads/HowObtainCertificateofWaiver.pdf. Accessed February 24, 2015.

TABLE 6-1

Waived Tests

Chemistry	Albumin, amylase, ALT, AST, GGT, alkaline phosphatase, total protein, bilirubin (total), carbon dioxide, glucose, sodium, potassium, calcium (ionized), calcium (total), phosphorous, urea (BUN), creatinine, uric acid, brain natriuretic peptide (BNP), glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c), fructosamine, cholesterol, LDL, HDL, triglyceride, creatine kinase (CK), lactic acid, ketones, lead, collagen type 1 N-telopeptides
Endocrinology	TSH, FSH, LH, ovulation tests (LH) by visual color comparison, estrone 3-glucuronide
Drugs	Alcohol (saliva), barbiturates, benzodiazepines, buprenorphine, cannabinoids (THC), cocaine metabolites, methadone, methamphetamines/amphetamines, MDMA, morphine, oxycodone, nicotine, opiates, PCP, propoxyphene, tricyclic antidepressants, lithium
Hematology	Hemoglobin, hematocrit, ESR (nonautomated), platelet aggregation (VerifyNow), prothrombin time (PT)
Microbiology	*H. pylori* antibodies, HIV 1 and 2 antigens/antibodies, adenovirus antigens, RSV, *Treponema pallidum* antibodies, influenza A and B, group A streptococcus, trichomonas antigen, Lyme antibodies, vaginal aerobes/anaerobes, hepatitis C virus antibody, infectious mononucleosis antibodies
Urine	pH, glucose, ketone, protein, nitrite, urobilinogen, bilirubin, leukocyte esterase, catalase, hCG, albumin, microalbumin, specific gravity, leukocytes, ascorbic acid
Miscellaneous	Vaginal pH, matrix metalloproteinase-9 (MMP-9), glucose (fluid), gastric pH, semen, osmolality (tears), fecal occult blood, gastric occult blood, bladder tumor–associated antigen

Data from U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Obtained at http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfClia/analyteswaived.cfm. Accessed February 24, 2015.

BOX 6-2

Provider-Performed Microscopy Procedures

Wet mounts, including preparations of vaginal, cervical, or skin specimens
Potassium hydroxide (KOH) preparations
Pinworm examinations
Fern test
Postcoital direct, qualitative examinations of vaginal or cervical mucus
Urinalysis with microscopy
Fecal leukocyte examination
Semen analysis; presence and/or motility of sperm
Nasal smears for eosinophils

Data from Centers for Disease Control. Obtained at http://wwwn.cdc.gov/CLIA/Resources/TestComplexities.aspx. Accessed February 24, 2015.

reliability and stability of the reagents, complexity of operational steps, availability and stability of quality control and proficiency testing materials, requirements for maintenance of the test system, and the level of judgment and interpretation required to perform the test and compile the results. The levels of complexity are waived testing, provider-performed microscopy, moderate-complexity, and high-complexity testing. The Centers for Disease Control (CDC) determines the level of complexity based on the preceding criteria (http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/DeviceRegulationandGuidance/IVDRegulatoryAssistance/ucm393229.htm). Waived testing is testing that requires minimal training and education to perform and/or would theoretically cause minimal harm if the results were not accurate (Box 6-1). Many point-of-care tests are waived, including any tests approved for home use. Testing such as urine dipsticks, qualitative hCG, and glucose are generally waived. Some point-of-care INR devices are waived, and the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has recently granted the first ever CLIA waiver to a nucleic acid–based influenza diagnostic test (FDA, 2015). Provider-performed microscopy procedures are a discrete set of tests in which specimens that are time-dependent are examined under a microscope at the point of care (Table 6-1). PPMP can only be performed by licensed professionals like physicians and dentists, as well as nurse practitioners and physician assistants under the direction of a physician, depending on the state in which they practice. Moderate- and high-complexity testing is usually performed in larger and more advanced laboratory settings, including hospital and reference laboratories.

A CLIA certificate must be issued for a site to perform laboratory testing. Five different types of certificates are issued: Certificate of Waiver, Certificate for Provider-Performed Microscopy Procedures, Certificate of Registration, Certificate of Compliance, and Certificate of Accreditation (Box 6-2). Some examples of accreditation organizations are The Joint Commission and the College of American Pathologists (CAP). When a hospital laboratory is issued a certificate, all testing that is performed in that building or any contiguous buildings falls under the laboratory's certificate. Any testing that is performed at a separate location, even if it is overseen by the hospital laboratory and has the same laboratory director, must have its own certificate.

CLIA 88 established the laboratory requirements for testing personnel, supervisory personnel, laboratory directors, testing facilities, test validation, procedure manuals, personnel training and competency, quality control, proficiency testing, and reporting results. Some states, including New York, California, and Florida, have more stringent laboratory regulations than those mandated by CLIA. Also, laboratories that choose to be accredited by CAP face some more stringent requirements.

LABORATORY DIRECTORSHIP

Laboratories that perform under a Certificate of Waiver or with a certificate for PPMP can perform waived testing without the overhead of having personnel who meet established qualifications in training, experience, job performance, and competency. However, if any moderate-complexity tests or measurements are performed, CLIA requires that the laboratory be directed by a laboratory director and/or a laboratory consultant with appropriate credentials. This director is to be responsible for determining the qualifications of individuals performing and reporting test results, as well as ensuring compliance with all applicable regulations. The director is also responsible for the analytic performance of all assays and must monitor ongoing proficiency, accuracy, and precision. If more than one individual in the practice qualifies as a laboratory director, the laboratory is required to designate one as being responsible. It must be demonstrated that the laboratory director is providing effective direction for the operation of the laboratory, and if he or she does not provide onsite direction, he or she must provide consultation by phone or delegate to qualified personnel with specific responsibility as required by regulation. Online courses are available that allow physicians to qualify as director of a moderately complex laboratory by obtaining 20 hours of continuing education credit.

For POCT, a separate certification is usually not necessary when it is performed under the supervision of the laboratory director responsible for laboratory services in a health care facility. POCT that occurs within a health care facility, at sites that are located in contiguous buildings on the same campus, and under common direction can be performed under the certificate of the parent organization. When assays and procedures are performed in a situation such as this, the terms *waived* and *complexity* no longer apply. The test menu is no longer restricted to waived testing, but more frequent inspections and higher scrutiny are received in return. Because the parent organization typically has a certificate that allows testing at all levels of complexity, it is the responsibility of the laboratory director to ensure that the test method used at the POCT site is appropriate for the skills and training of those performing the test. What inspectors do not tolerate could be called "rogue testing." This occurs when a clinic or service sets up a test without the knowledge and supervision of the laboratory director. With the tracer method used by accrediting agencies such as the Joint Commission, if an inspector finds a lab result and traces it back to a laboratory that is not adequately supervised by the laboratory director, a citation may be issued to the discredit of the health care facility.

COMPLIANCE

In addition to CLIA, all laboratories must adhere to regulatory procedures, particularly in the outpatient setting. First, all testing for which Medicare is billed must be medically necessary. Screening tests and other measures of wellness generally are not covered. Medical necessity determination is implemented by Medicare, Medicaid, and other insurance carriers through Current Procedural Terminology (CPT) codes used in conjunction with International Classification of Disease (ICD) codes. When the ICD-10 code does not warrant the CPT-4 code, payment is rejected. Even worse, if it is determined that a laboratory deliberately added codes to obtain a higher payment than it deserves or payment for work that it has not done, it can be charged with fraud, which is a felony, and the laboratory will be subjected to fines. Errors are assumed to be deliberate unless a compliance program is in place that actively seeks to uncover billing errors.

Another potential pitfall is Stark regulations. The Stark laws, which are named after their original sponsor, Representative Fortney Pete Stark (D-Calif.), were intended to prevent unnecessary self-referrals intended to boost revenue. Under Stark, physicians are prohibited from referring Medicare patients to laboratories in which the physician (or a close family member) has a financial interest. Because this prohibition would be detrimental to most POLs, it is important to understand the "safe harbors" that allow legitimate self-referral.

CLIA 88 created standards for POLs and POCT in the United States that predated similar measures on the international scene. However, an international working group has proposed and adopted ISO 22870-2006 as an international standard for POCT. These standards are more extensive than current CLIA requirements; however, CLIA is a minimum federal requirement, and states and other accrediting agencies can impose standards that are more rigorous. An evolution of accreditation expectations may occur over the next few years to meet these international standards. Thomas has published a summary of these international standards with cross-referencing to current College of American Pathologists accreditation standards (Thomas, 2008).

TYPES OF POINT-OF-CARE TESTING

Many different analytes can be used for point-of-care tests. Some of these tests are single-use cartridges, such as rapid HIV tests and urine pregnancy tests, and manual tests that require testing personnel to record a result, such as a urine dipstick or fecal occult blood testing. Other tests are performed on portable multiuse devices that may require a blood draw or fingerstick. These include many glucometers, coagulation monitoring devices, blood gas analyzers, and point-of-care chemistry analyzers (Table 6-2).

HEMATOLOGY

POCT in hematology is generally limited to hemoglobin and hematocrit on a blood gas or chemistry device and prothrombin time and INR for monitoring patients on warfarin. What is missing in the hematology realm of POCT is the ability to perform white cell counts and differentials. Some manufacturers produce small instruments that are capable of performing CBC and a three- or five-part differential. However, because this testing is all moderate complexity, a moderate-complexity laboratory must be installed at the site where the testing is to be performed. This lack of point-of-care CBC can be a hindrance to patient care in emergency settings as well as cancer centers. In an emergency room or urgent care center, a rapid CBC and differential can help the clinician determine whether a patient is suffering from a viral or bacterial infection and whether he or she needs admission and antibiotics. In a cancer center, some treatment decisions are based on the white blood cell count. If the CBC had to be sent to the central laboratory for testing, the delay could hold up the patient's treatment and cause inefficiencies in productivity for the cancer center.

TABLE 6-2
Examples of Common Point-of-Care Tests

Test	Clinical Setting
Glucose	Home monitoring for diabetics, inpatient monitoring for glycemic control
Blood gases	Critical care units, operating rooms
Cardiac markers	Emergency rooms
Urinalysis	Physicians' offices
Creatinine	Radiology suites prior to contrast administration
PT/INR	Coagulation clinics, cardiology practices, home monitoring
Infectious diseases (HIV, RSV, influenza, etc.)	Outpatient and emergency settings for treatment decisions and cohorting or isolation
Drug screening	Emergency rooms, outpatient treatment programs, workplace testing

Point-of-care coagulation monitoring for patients on warfarin is well established. This testing may be performed in a coagulation clinic, a cardiology practice, a primary care setting, or at home by the patient. Many of these devices are waived, but some are moderate complexity, which would necessitate meeting all the requirements of a moderate complexity laboratory. In a CAP Q Probes survey of quality control performance for POCT on PT/INR and activated clotting times (ACT) at 87 institutions, 95.6% of expected quality control was performed. However, only 79.5% of out-of-range quality control was associated with corrective action, and 9.6% of the time, patient testing was performed even though no corrective action was taken. Additionally, for the sites performing routine INR comparisons with the central laboratory, 10% of the time there was a difference of greater than 0.5 units (Meier & Jones, 1999). This study highlights some of the common quality issues facing POCT programs, such as failure to perform quality control, lack of follow-up on missing or inaccurate quality control, and potential discrepancies among testing methods. These are issues that every POCT program should strive to avoid and/or improve through proper laboratory oversight, user training, and well-defined procedures.

CHEMISTRY

By far, the most ubiquitous POCT performed is glucose testing. Point-of-care glucose testing is performed at home by diabetic patients, in physician offices and nursing homes, and in inpatient settings. Glucose testing devices were originally designed for home monitoring in diabetic patients to maintain glycemic control. Many studies have demonstrated the patient benefits of this approach, including reduction in morbidity and mortality and decreases in retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy, and cardiovascular disease. To achieve tight glycemic control (TGC), these home use devices were later adopted in inpatient settings, such as critical care and postoperative units, as well as general inpatient units. However, these devices were never intended for use in these patient populations, nor were they validated in them. Recently, the FDA has indicated that these devices should be redefined as moderate complexity owing to their use with critically ill patients. This would significantly increase the regulatory burden on hospitals. Currently, POCT performed in an inpatient setting is considered "off-label" use, placing the burden on the manufacturers or the hospital to validate the devices in the appropriate patient populations. However, no clear definition of a critically ill patient exists. Therefore, it is unclear how to approach validating these devices. This current attempt to improve patient safety in the context of point-of-care glucose testing demonstrates the difference between home testing devices and those used for inpatients. In an inpatient setting, a patient's state of health ranges from a well patient

admitted for elective surgery to a critically ill patient with multiorgan failure who is on many medications. Recently, Nova Biomedical received FDA clearance for intensive care use after performing extensive validations in critically ill patients. How the other manufacturers' devices perform in these patient populations will be determined as they are validated for such use. This issue demonstrates the need to define appropriate use for these devices in different patient populations and settings.

Point-of-care measurement of hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c) is increasingly being performed in outpatient settings to monitor glucose control in diabetics. This allows a physician to determine whether any changes in medications or lifestyle need to be made. Thus the patient does not have to return for a follow-up visit or wait for a phone call from the doctor's office. Also, if any new prescriptions need to be issued, it can be done immediately. So while point-of-care HbA1c testing does not necessarily provide critical clinical information, it does help improve patient care, because important clinical decisions can be made at the visit without waiting a day or more for the lab results to be available. This decreases the burden on the physician's staff and potentially improves adherence to treatment changes as well as patient satisfaction. Thus the cost, labor, and expertise involved in implementing POCT for HbA1c must be weighed against the benefits to the patient and the provider.

Another area of chemistry that is rapidly changing involves creatinine and cardiac markers in EDs. Creatinine measurements and pregnancy tests are used to determine whether patients can be appropriately referred for radiologic procedures. Nichols and colleagues (2007) questioned the accuracy of two POCT creatinine assays. In these situations, however, when values near the decision points for creatinine are obtained, the specimen can be referred to the central lab for confirmation, while the remaining patients can be moved on more rapidly increasing throughput. With pregnancy testing, an assay with high sensitivity should be selected to yield a high predictive value for a negative result.

In a review of the literature on the use of POCT for serum markers of cardiac necrosis in terms of the process and outcomes of patient care in the ED, Storrow and colleagues (2009) found general agreement that POCT led to significantly decreased turnaround time for cardiac marker results reporting to the ordering physician. In addition, improvements in other ED efficiency measures (e.g., time to therapy and total ED length of stay) were seen. However, investigators could find no evidence that POCT for cardiac biomarkers had any effect on clinical outcomes of patients evaluated for acute coronary syndrome. In a multicenter, randomized, controlled study comparing laboratory and point-of-care cardiac marker testing strategies, Ryan and colleagues (2009) found similar reductions in turnaround time, but effects on ED length of stay varied among institutions. Across all sites, POCT did not decrease time to disposition for admitted or discharged patients (Ryan et al, 2009).

MICROBIOLOGY

Given the long turnaround times experienced with most microbiology testing, the availability of effective POCT could radically change practice in infectious disease. This can be seen quite clearly with the advent of effective POCT for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Performance characteristics of the available POCT HIV assays have been reviewed and were found to have comparable sensitivity and specificity to conventional enzyme immunoassays (Campbell & Fedoriw, 2009). In early infection, however, these assays were found to be less sensitive than nucleic acid amplification testing. Appiah and colleagues (2009) compared point-of-care HIV testing in a voluntary counseling and testing (VCT) clinic and in a tuberculosis (TB) clinic in Ghana and found that in both clinics, 100% of patients offered POCT accepted it, but only 93% of VCT clients and 40% of TB patients had accepted a standard HIV test offered 6 months earlier. Moreover, all patients attending the VCT or TB clinics who tested positive for HIV with the point-of-care test returned to the HIV clinic for care, but only 64% and 95%, respectively, of patients who tested positive in the previous cohort had returned for follow-up, indicating a strong change in patient behavior when access to POCT and immediate results is provided (Appiah et al, 2009).

Other infectious disease POCT is not quite so effective. Rapid group A streptococcal antigen testing is relatively insensitive, with sensitivity estimates ranging from 60% to 90%, making the recommendation necessary for backup blood agar culturing for all negative POCT antigen results. Waived testing for respiratory viruses is limited to respiratory syncytial viruses and influenza A and B viruses with similar sensitivities. Recent experience with the novel H1N1 outbreak, where all point-of-care tests indicating influenza A were assumed to be positive for H1N1, was less than satisfactory.

BOX 6-3

Advantages and Disadvantages of Point-of-Care Testing

Advantages

Decreased turnaround time
Decreased time to treatment
Decreased length of stay
Fewer follow-up visits or calls
Improved patient and provider satisfaction
Less traumatic sample collection
Collaboration between laboratory and clinical staff

Disadvantages

Increased cost, direct and indirect
Increased regulatory burden
Increased work for clinical staff
Increased oversight for laboratory
Greater potential for error
Results may not correlate with central laboratory

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF POINT-OF-CARE TESTING

POCT has many advantages, including improved turnaround time, convenience, shorter length of stay, and improved patient satisfaction (Box 6-3). However, whether these benefits are realized can be challenging to quantify. Crocker and colleagues (2014) showed some benefits to implementing POCT in an outpatient setting, including fewer follow-up tests, fewer phone calls and repeat visits, and reduced cost of care. However, these advantages have to be weighed against the disadvantages, including the higher cost of testing, regulatory requirements, consequences of erroneous results, and differences in technology compared to the central laboratory.

The pros and cons of implementing POCT vary, depending on the clinical setting and need. For instance, in an inpatient setting, point-of-care glucose testing is practically a necessity. That number of glucose tests regularly performed in an inpatient setting would rapidly overwhelm the central laboratory and slow down everything from accessioning to processing. Also, it would add to the workload of the nursing staff responsible for drawing the specimens and sending them to the laboratory. Finally, the patient would require more blood draws and could even develop iatrogenic anemia. In an emergency room, time is of the essence. Rapid turnaround times guide decisions for treatment, further testing, and admission or discharge. For a patient presenting with symptoms of acute coronary syndrome (ACS) without classic EKG changes, the cardiac markers help the clinicians decide whether the patient needs an intervention such as cardiac catheterization or thrombolysis. Many studies have shown that the time to intervention is critical to salvaging precious cardiac muscle (Ryan et al, 2009). In an outpatient, POCT may be considered when treatment decisions can be guided by the test results at the visit. This is the case for INR monitoring for patients on warfarin. However, erroneous results can lead to improper dosage adjustments, and any questionable results should be confirmed by the laboratory. Testing for HbA1c is a good example of a noncritical test that may improve patient care in an outpatient visit. Having the test results at the office visit allows the clinician to adjust treatment and counsel the patient appropriately to improve glycemic control in the future. Finally, home monitoring is appropriate for insulin-dependent diabetics to properly adjust their dose. Home INR monitoring frees a patient from coming to the physician's office for a fingerstick or blood draw on a regular basis. However, patients still need to consult with their clinicians when adjustments are appropriate.

CONNECTIVITY AND DATA MANAGEMENT

Data management in POCT can be quite extensive. Test results must be recorded in the patient's chart, whether electronic or on paper, and appropriate units of measure and reference ranges must be included with the report. Other data that must be maintained by the site are records of validation of devices; validation and tracking of new lots of reagent; quality control data, including proficiency testing results that must be performed; all testing personnel; and operator training and competency. To meet regulatory requirements, it must be possible to link each patient result to

a specific operator, device, and lot of reagent and quality control. For an outpatient practice, this documentation may not be too cumbersome. For a hospital or health care system with many types of devices, tests, and operators, however, this documentation can quickly become overwhelming.

To make maintenance of these data easier, many device vendors have implemented certain features for result reporting and data management (Table 6-3). In addition to device-specific information processing features, middleware systems can electronically connect with multiple types of devices to manage patient and QA/QC data. Thus in a complex health care system using multiple POCT devices, there can be one central repository for the data. Interfaces with the laboratory information system (LIS) and the electronic medical record (EMR) further improve functionality, reduce errors, and transmit patient data very rapidly. Many devices now have wireless transmission of data, so the device does not even need to be docked to send the patient's results across an interface to an LIS or EMR.

The CLSI has developed standards for transmitting POCT data based on the specifications of the Connectivity Industry Consortium (CIC) (Dunka et al, 2014). The CIC is a group of 49 health care institutions, point-of-care diagnostic vendors, diagnostic test system vendors, and system integrators. This document describes two types of interfaces: the device interface and the observation reporting interface (Figure 6-1). It sets standards for the POCT industry to maintain some level of uniformity among vendors and promotes cost-effective and easy-to-implement data management.

TABLE 6-3
Point-of-Care Testing Device Software Features

Feature	Details
System lockouts	Quality control out of range or not performed, no patient ID, no operator training
Calibration	
Security access	Different levels for users and managers
Reference ranges	May transmit to LIS
Quality control ranges	
Bar code scanner	For patient identification, reagent and quality control identification
Data management	Patient results, quality control records, maintenance and calibration documentation
Connectivity	Data manager or middleware, LIS

IMPLEMENTATION OF A POINT-OF-CARE TESTING PROGRAM

PHYSICIAN OFFICES

POCT programs differ significantly, depending on the scope of testing and the setting where it will be performed. In an outpatient physician office setting where only waived testing will be performed, establishing a program may be relatively simple. A physician or the medical director for the practice will generally serve as the director on the Certificate of Waiver. It will be his or her responsibility to develop policies and procedures and lead the practice in deciding what testing to perform and what methods to use. However, the director should solicit feedback from other practitioners, nurses, and clinical staff who will play a role in the testing. After clinical need, the most important factors in test selection are usually ease of use and cost per test. A system for initial training and subsequent competency will need to be established. The practice should follow the manufacturer's recommendations for quality control procedures, specimen collection, and testing procedures. Appropriate logs with patient information and lots of reagent and quality control material should be maintained if electronic reporting is not performed.

HOSPITALS AND MEDICAL CENTERS

Point-of-Care Committee and Management Team

A first step in implementing a POCT program at a hospital or medical center is to establish a Point-of-Care Committee. This committee should consist of representatives from the clinical laboratory, particularly the medical director responsible for POCT, the point-of-care manager and/or administrator from the medical laboratory, and medical staff from departments who frequently use POCT. These could include the emergency department, the intensive care units, outpatient clinics, and so on. Nurses should play a critical role in the committee because they will be overseeing training, verifying correct use of tests, and ensuring proper storage of reagents, kits, and quality control materials. They may also be performing the tests, depending on the situation. Hospital administration should have a role on the committee because they can provide information about future growth and addition of new sites and technologies that will help guide the committee. A member from the hospital regulatory team might also be involved to ensure regulatory compliance and keep the committee apprised of impending inspections, new regulations, or deficiencies noted in mock inspections. Finally, representation of the information technology department is critical because more and more devices have the capability to report electronically. Many devices can now report results wirelessly, an important consideration in a fast-paced setting where a device may not be docked between patients.

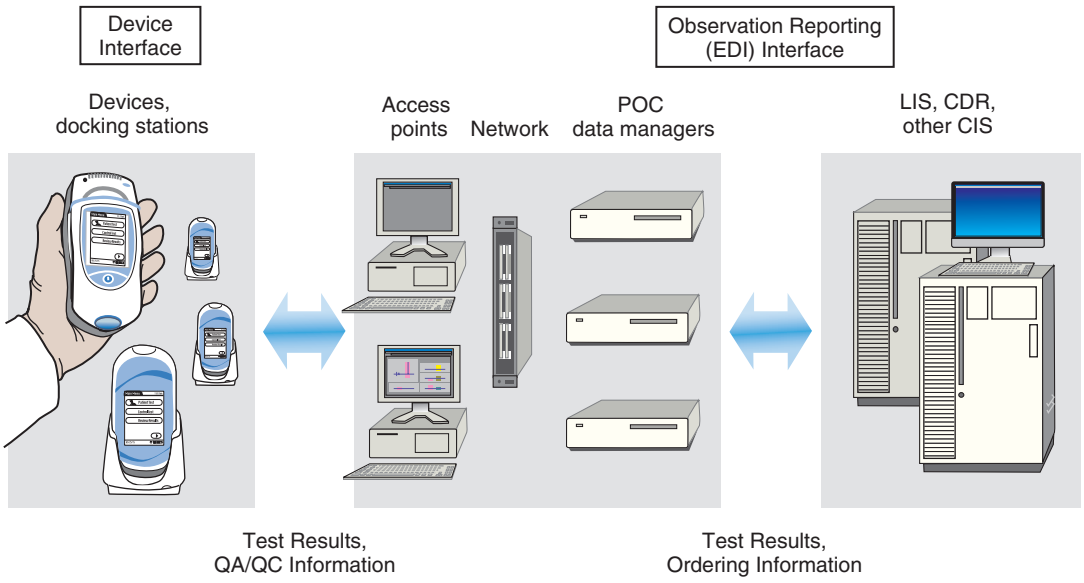


Figure 6-1 **Point-of-care testing interfaces.** (From CLSI: *Point-of-care connectivity; approved standard*, ed 2, CLSI document POCT01-A2. Wayne, Pa., 2006, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2006. Redrawn with permission.)

In addition to a Point-of-Care Committee, it may be necessary to have a point-of-care team as part of the clinical laboratory staff. This depends on the number of sites that are performing testing and the diversity of devices and tests in use. In a smaller community hospital where only point-of-care glucose testing is done, it may be adequate to have one laboratory technologist run the program. However, in a large medical center where many inpatient and outpatient locations perform POCT (e.g., rehabilitation, cancer centers, same-day surgery, cardiac catheterization suites, radiology, and endoscopy), it is important to have a laboratory team that can meet the many needs of these different locations. A clinical staff member who is responsible for the site should be present at all times. This person would ensure that quality control was being performed and was acceptable, that new employees received training, and that procedures were being followed. The laboratory staff member might visit once a month to make sure that documentation was in order; devices were in good working order; reagents, kits, and quality control materials were labeled and stored correctly; and that any necessary calibrations and instrument comparisons were performed. This lab representative should also make sure that proficiency testing materials were being handled and tested appropriately, although the PT must be performed at the site by the staff normally performing patient testing. The number of people on the point-of-care laboratory team will depend on the number of sites and the complexity of testing. These should be technologists who are organized, competent to perform validations on new instruments and analyze the data, and can help troubleshoot problems with instruments. Also, the ability to communicate clearly with clinical staff at the different locations is an important attribute.

Selection of Appropriate Tests

After instituting the Point-of-Care Committee, it is important to survey the institution to determine what testing is currently performed. This will involve talking to clinicians and nurses, as well as actually visiting testing locations to observe what is being done. Reagents and other testing materials may be discovered by laboratory representatives by visiting inpatient floors and outpatient testing locations. Some locations may not report all the testing they are doing. For instance, on labor and delivery, physicians may not realize that the microscopy they do for ferning is a PPMP that requires an appropriate CLIA certificate. Other locations may be performing fecal occult blood testing and not realize that it is a laboratory test requiring appropriate procedures, training, and documentation of results. Once the survey is complete, it is important to assess the needs of each location performing the testing. Some locations may not need all of the testing they are performing or may be able to scale back on the number of devices and/or tests. Other locations may have a valid clinical need to add more testing.

When a location wants to add a new point-of-care test, some basic information should be collected for review by the Point-of-Care Committee. This information includes testing to be added, anticipated volume of testing, reason for performing the testing on-site rather than sending it to the clinical laboratory, number of personnel who will be performing testing and their qualifications, person who will be the site manager and his or her qualifications, and person who will be the medical director and his or her qualifications. Perhaps the most important consideration is the reason for the testing to be performed as a point-of-care test. Some important factors are impact on the number of patient visits, length of stay, treatment initiation, morbidity and mortality, patient/clinician satisfaction, and compliance with therapy (CLSI POCT09-A). A standard form could be used for this purpose, followed by a visit from a laboratory representative, either the medical director for POCT or the administrator/manager, depending on the request. Once this information has been collected, it should be presented to the Point-of-Care Committee for review. Criteria for accepting the request might include clinical need, cost considerations, complexity of testing (waived or moderate), and the location's track record with other POCT.

Selection of Appropriate Testing Devices and Methods

During the initial survey to determine what POCT is being performed, it is important to start moving toward standardization of equipment as well as manual tests such as urine dipsticks and urine pregnancy. This approach has several advantages. One is that policies and procedures can be uniform for all locations. Sometimes inpatient policies may differ slightly from outpatient policies if, for instance, an outpatient will be sent to the emergency department for a critical result. Training and competency can also be the same for all locations, for the most part. Reagents, quality control, and any other material can be bought in larger quantities by the central lab and distributed appropriately. This way, the laboratory can be sure the correct materials are being used. It also ensures appropriate storage of reagents requiring specific storage conditions. It may also help to keep costs down and can be a tremendous help with lot-to-lot changes in reagents and quality control because these comparisons can be performed centrally, if required. Any other documentation can be consolidated, such as logs for quality control and temperature and humidity logs.

Selection of which manufacturer's tests and devices to use is an important function of the Point-of-Care Committee. Vendors may be invited to give a presentation to the Committee and provide a demonstration. Other clinical sites that are using the test under consideration can be contacted for input and feedback on their experiences. Considerations such as ease of use, frequency of quality control, electronic quality control, lockouts for unacceptable quality control results, lockouts for users whose training has expired, electronic data transmission to a middleware product or LIS, wireless downloads, and robust construction of the device are all important. Other important considerations include complexity of testing, cost of device, cost and stability of reagent/cartridges/kits, and validation procedures. From an analytical perspective, the accuracy and precision, analytic sensitivity and specificity, reportable range, and comparison to laboratory methods in use at the institution are important considerations (Zucker et al, 2014). Ultimately, input from the laboratory professionals on the committee is important because they will be responsible for overseeing the testing and ensuring the quality of the results. Also, laboratory professionals are familiar with the process of assessing new equipment and determining which equipment best suits the testing needs for the situation. However, it is also important that the end users are comfortable with device selection and that the testing, quality control, calibration, and other maintenance are relatively easy to perform.

POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

Test procedures should adhere to Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) guidelines and adhere to the manufacturer's instructions. The procedure should act as a reference for the person performing testing and contain institution- or practice-specific information such as critical values, reference ranges, and acceptable specimen types. Procedures should be reviewed annually and signed by the director on the CLIA certificate or his or her designee. Procedures should be uniform for all locations using the same device or manual test. The procedure is generally written by the laboratory point-of-care team in a hospital or medical center. However, input from nursing or other clinical users may be appropriate to be sure that the procedure actually fits the testing workflow. Also, because nursing frequently bears much of the responsibility for training, they should be familiar with the procedures and comfortable with training on them.

Method Validations

Prior to implementation, point-of-care tests must be validated and approved by the director. Validation may be a simple procedure for a manual test, such as a urine dipstick, where results can be compared to those run on a laboratory analyzer. Ten to 20 specimens are usually adequate as long as all components have normal and abnormal results. Additionally, some simple precision studies using normal and abnormal quality control material should be performed. More complex validations are required for point-of-care devices reporting analytes such as blood gases, chemistries, and cardiac markers. CLSI guidelines should be followed for these validations with method comparison to the main laboratory analyzer(s). Precision studies and reference range verifications may be warranted. When multiple devices are being validated at once, it is acceptable to compare one device to the laboratory method and then compare other devices to that one. This can streamline the process and decrease the burden on the central laboratory when implementing new POCT throughout a large institution.

Oversight of Training and Competency

Regulatory requirements must be considered when developing training and competency programs and documents for new POCT. Generally, oversight of training and competency is a shared responsibility between nursing and the point-of-care team in the clinical laboratory. The point-of-care team may set up logins and passwords for devices and coordinate with vendors for training large groups of employees. Many devices require a login that can automatically lock an employee out when training is not up-to-date. Nursing keeps records of who has been trained and is due for competency, as well as makes sure that new employees receive the appropriate training.

MAINTENANCE OF A POINT-OF-CARE TESTING PROGRAM

QUALITY ASSURANCE PROGRAM

Once the POCT program has been established, including the Point-of-Care Committee, point-of-care management team, and standardization and implementation of appropriate tests, ongoing work is necessary to maintain the program. Each inpatient and outpatient location should have a clinical staff member who is responsible for the daily operations. This includes maintaining appropriate inventory, reviewing quality control, and ensuring that staff are trained and following procedures. Devices also need to be checked regularly for damage that may affect function, and reagents should be properly labeled in a temperature-controlled environment. This also may include retraining when necessary and following up on critical and erroneous results. The laboratory point-of-care team member should visit each location on a routine basis to ensure compliance with policies and procedures, spot check the site for any problems, and discuss issues with the clinical staff.

Hospital-based programs in which POCT falls under the laboratory's certificate are obliged to perform regular proficiency testing. While the proficiency testing may be overseen by the laboratory, the testing itself must be performed by the staff that regularly perform patient testing. An attempt should be made to rotate proficiency testing throughout the staff. This can also be used as evidence of competency because it demonstrates the accuracy of test results. The laboratory point-of-care team will generally review the results and perform root cause analysis for any unacceptable results. Ultimately, this will be reviewed and signed off by the laboratory director.

Inventory management can be challenging in a complex organization with many POCT sites. Inventory may be maintained by the central laboratory and distributed as needed. Alternatively, a lot mortgage may be sequestered by the vendor or distributor to maintain uniformity across all testing sites of an organization. In this situation, individual locations are responsible for ordering their own supplies but may order only what has been approved by the laboratory. The advantage of keeping the entire hospital or medical center on the same lot of reagent is that the lab point-of-care team can perform lot-to-lot studies where appropriate and does not have to worry about remote locations complying with this requirement. This control over inventory also prevents ordering the wrong reagent, strip, or quality control materials.

Maintenance of devices, periodic calibration, and instrument comparisons also must be performed. These tasks are generally performed or at least coordinated by the laboratory point-of-care team because they may require a more in-depth understanding of laboratory processes and coordination with the central laboratory. Once the data for the method comparisons are compiled, the director must review and approve them. The point-of-care team may also maintain a few backup devices that will be available in the event that devices are damaged or require maintenance.

Finally, the point-of-care team and the information technology department are responsible for the appropriate results reporting, implementing and maintaining any middleware products or data repositories, and installing any software upgrades or other technology changes. The point-of-care manager or administrator should make sure that any data in the middleware are reviewed for errors or problems, such as critical high or low values or out-of-range values. If the procedure states that a sample should be sent to the laboratory under these circumstances, the point-of-care manager can verify that this was done. Noncompliant users can be retrained and, if the issue persists, testing privileges revoked. Middleware databases also may track proper patient identification in the case where a wristband is scanned or patient number is entered. Improper use of generic numbers that do not link to a patient can be tracked down and prevented in the future.

CONCLUSIONS

POCT is a rapidly expanding and evolving area of laboratory medicine. With new technologies and tests becoming available on a regular basis, as well as expansion of routine POCT to more locations, it is a constant challenge to maintain a program that delivers accurate results and maintains regulatory compliance. Wireless connectivity and middleware products facilitate order and result transmission, as well as documentation of quality control, testing personnel, and problematic results. Data management is a constant challenge for POCT programs, including training and competency, QC, calibrations, and validations. Electronic options for maintaining this information have become a critical component of a POCT program for a large hospital or medical center. Perhaps the most important consideration when implementing a new point-of-care test should be whether the benefit to the patient and/or provider outweighs the cost, including the added expenses related to maintaining testing (personnel, quality control, proficiency testing, etc.). As our health care system focuses more on resource management and test utilization, it will be interesting to see how this impacts POCT.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Appiah LT, Havers F, Gibson J, et al: Efficacy and acceptability of rapid, point-of-care HIV testing in two clinical settings in Ghana, *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 23:365–369, 2009.
Demonstrates improved patient behavior with immediacy of POCT.

Campbell S, Fedoriw Y: Point-of-care human immunodeficiency virus testing, *Point Care* 8:32–35, 2009.
Reviews sensitivities of POCT HIV assays.

Crocker JB, Lee-Lewandrowski E, Lewandrowski N, et al: Implementation of point-of-care testing in an ambulatory practice in an academic medical center, *Am J Clin Pathol* 142:64–646, 2014.
Benefits of implementation POCT in an outpatient setting.

Meier FA, Jones BA: *Q-Probes: Point-of-care coagulation testing (99-04)*; College of American Pathologists, 1999; 1–15.
Survey of coagulation POCT at 87 sites.

Ryan RJ, Lindsell CJ, Hollander JE, et al: A multicenter randomized controlled trial comparing central laboratory and point-of-care cardiac marker testing strategies: The disposition impacted by serial point-of-care markers in acute coronary syndromes (DISPO-ACS) trial, *Ann Emerg Med* 53:321–328, 2009.
Analyzes outcomes when POCT is available.

Storrow AB, Lyon JA, Porter MW, et al: A systematic review of emergency department point-of-care cardiac markers and efficiency measures, *Point Care* 8:121–125, 2009.

Thomas MA: Quality assurance and accreditation in point-of-care testing, *Point Care* 7:227–232, 2008.
Compares CLIA and international standards.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration: *FDA grants first CLIA waiver for nucleic acid–based flu diagnostic test*. 2015. http://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm429127.htm.
Guidelines for standardization of POCT connectivity and data management.

Zucker ML, Anderson R, et al: *POCT09-A. Selection criteria for point-of-care testing devices; Approved guideline*. Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute; 2014.
Guidelines for selecting POCT devices.

REFERENCES

Code of Federal Regulation: *Title 42, Vol 5, Part 493—Laboratory Requirements*; 2011:516–536.

Dunka L, Allen B, et al: *POCT01-A2. Point of care connectivity*, ed 2, 2014, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

Nichols JH, Bartholomew C, Bonzagi A, et al: Evaluation of the IRMA TRUpoint and i-STAT creatinine assays, *Clin Chim Acta* 377:201–205, 2007.

CHAPTER 7

POSTANALYSIS: MEDICAL DECISION MAKING

Jeffrey S. Jhang, Mark S. Lifshitz

ASSESSMENT OF ANALYTIC CORRECTNESS OF RESULTS, 73
Alarms and Flags, 73
Delta Checks, 74

ASSESSMENT OF CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF RESULTS, 74
Critical Values, 74
Reference Ranges, 74

GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR THE INTERPRETATION OF LABORATORY RESULTS, 75
Diagnostic Accuracy, 75
Bayes Theorem, 78
Likelihood Ratio, 79
Receiver Operator Characteristic Curves, 80
Positivity Criterion, 80

EVIDENCE-BASED MEDICINE, 81

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS OF CLINICAL EFFECTIVENESS RESEARCH AND CLINICAL PRACTICE GUIDELINES, 82
Systematic Reviews, 82
Clinical Practice Guidelines, 82

SELECTED REFERENCES, 83

KEY POINTS

- Laboratory results must undergo a two-step postanalytic review for analytic correctness (using delta checks, linearity ranges, etc.) and for clinical significance for the patient (applying critical values, reference ranges, pretest and posttest probability, etc.).
- Reference intervals are most commonly defined as the range of values into which 95% of nondiseased individuals will fall; this definition implies that 5% of nondiseased individuals can have laboratory results outside the reference range.
- The ability of a test to discriminate disease from no disease is described by the sensitivity and specificity of the test. Sensitivity is the probability of a positive result in a person with the disease (true-positive rate). Specificity is the probability of a negative result in a person without disease (true-negative rate).
- Screening tests require high sensitivity so that no case is missed. Confirmatory tests require high specificity to be certain of the diagnosis.
- Altering a test cutoff has a reciprocal effect on sensitivity and specificity. A cutoff can be lowered to include all patients with disease (100% sensitivity), but this reduces the specificity (i.e., increases false-positives).
- Receiver operator characteristic (ROC) curves plot the true-positive rate (sensitivity) versus the false-positive rate (1-specificity) and graphically present the range of sensitivities and specificities at all test cutoffs. If two tests are compared, the more accurate test is closer to the upper-left-hand corner of the ROC curve.
- The likelihood ratio of a test refers to the ratio of the probability of a given test result in the disease state over the probability of the same result in the nondisease state. The likelihood ratio of a test changes as the cutoff value defining disease and nondisease is varied.
- Predictive value describes the probability of disease or no disease for a positive or negative result, respectively. The predictive value of a positive test increases with disease prevalence.
- Bayes theorem uses information about test characteristics (sensitivity and specificity) and disease prevalence (pretest probability) to obtain the posttest probability of disease, given a positive test. Similarly, it can be used to determine the posttest probability of no disease, given a negative test.
- Evidence-based medicine is a process by which medical decisions can be made using as many objective tools as possible; it integrates the most current and the best medical evidence with clinical expertise and patient preferences.
- Clinical practice guidelines (CPG) can be used to decrease practice variability, establish monitoring parameters, improve health, increase safety, and decrease cost.
- Systematic reviews of clinical effectiveness are transparent, scientifically rigorous, and reliable syntheses of literature that evaluate specific medical interventions and are often used to inform groups developing CPGs.

Every time a clinical laboratory produces a test result, the value must undergo a two-step postanalytic evaluation process. The result needs to be assessed for analytic correctness and for clinical significance. It is often assumed that these two tasks can be easily divided between the performing laboratory, which is responsible for determining analytic correctness, and the clinical team, which is responsible for evaluating the clinical meaning of the results. However, significant overlap is seen in the responsibilities for these tasks. Although the laboratory performs most of the review of laboratory results for analytic reliability by using techniques such as delta checks, flagging of questionable results, moving averages, and linear ranges, it is incumbent upon the clinician to review every laboratory result with regard to the patient's clinical situation and to question the analytic reliability of implausible results. When evaluating the clinical significance of a laboratory result, one of the most important factors to consider is the reference range. In most settings, the laboratory determines reference ranges, with varying degrees of input from the clinical staff. Postanalytic decision making is therefore a shared responsibility of the laboratory and the clinical staff, and it behooves both groups to maintain close communication to optimize every part of the process. The purpose of this chapter is to discuss postanalytic review of laboratory data and its use in medical decision making and to provide tools that can be used to objectively interpret results.

ASSESSMENT OF ANALYTIC CORRECTNESS OF RESULTS

ALARMS AND FLAGS

Modern diagnostic laboratories often analyze large numbers of samples using highly automated instruments. Many results are released into patients' electronic medical records without prior review by a laboratory employee (e.g., autoverification). To prevent the release of erroneous results, most laboratories utilize a variety of "flags" or alarms. Automated analyzers can flag specimens that require additional or repeat testing before results are released (i.e., reported) by specialized middleware or by the laboratory information system. Flags can indicate a problem with the specimen (e.g., the presence of an interfering substance) or an issue with the result (e.g., a numeric value outside the analytic range of the method, or the need for confirmation by an additional assay).

Flags for Problem Specimens

Many automated instruments can measure the amount of sample present in a collection tube and flag samples that contain amounts that are inadequate for a reliable analysis. The laboratory will have to identify another tube containing an adequate sample volume or will request the collection of a new sample. Another frequent cause of inadequate samples is the presence of high concentrations of interfering substances in the specimen, most commonly lipids (lipemia), hemoglobin (Hb) (hemolysis), paraproteins (gammopathies), or bilirubin (icterus). The mechanism for this interference is dependent on the substance and the analytic method. For example, in spectrophotometric assays, lipids interfere mainly by increasing light scatter (turbidity); in assays using ion-specific electrodes for measurement, lipids will affect results by solvent exclusion. A more detailed discussion of interference mechanisms is provided elsewhere in this text. Most commercial assays will list concentrations of interfering substances, above which assay results are no longer valid. Visual inspection is often an adequate means of assessing the presence of unacceptable concentrations of interfering substances. A technologist may immediately flag samples that are grossly hemolyzed or icteric as inappropriate for analysis. However, automated analyzers are also able to detect troublesome levels of interfering substances, even when they are not apparent to the laboratorian at the macroscopic level. Automated systems can measure the concentrations of bilirubin, lipid, and hemoglobin in samples and can report the degree of interference as an index (Kroll & Elin, 1994; Vermeer et al, 2005). If the index exceeds a given threshold, then the sample is flagged as problematic and should be rejected or rerun after sample treatment to remove the interfering substance. Serum bilirubin and Hb levels have been shown to correlate very closely with interference indices, but because of the chemical heterogeneity of serum lipids, lipemia indices do not correlate as well (Fossati & Prencipe, 1982).

Flags for Specimens That Require Additional Analysis with Another Method

Some laboratory technologies are screening methods used to analyze large numbers of samples, rapidly report results on most samples, and identify potentially abnormal samples that require retesting with a more labor-intensive method. Automated cell counters are the paradigm of such instruments. These instruments can often analyze more than 100 samples per hour in a highly automated fashion; samples that are normal or that show only quantitative abnormalities (e.g., increased or decreased percentage of lymphocytes, low platelet counts, low red cell counts) can be reported immediately, and samples that could potentially contain qualitative abnormalities (e.g., atypical lymphocytes, platelet clumps, red cell fragments) are flagged for preparation of a blood smear and further evaluation. The flags are generally based on forward- and side-scatter and impedance measurements that provide information about size and nuclear complexity/granularity of the cells, and on special stains that help identify the potential presence of immature cells (Fujimoto, 1999). The sensitivities and specificities of these flags show poor discriminatory power, and clinical judgment is needed if suspicion of an underlying hematologic abnormality is high (Thalhammer-Scherrer et al, 1997; Briggs et al, 1999; Ruzicka et al, 2001).

Flags for Problematic Results

An analyte concentration outside the validated linear range is another common problem affecting samples. Generally, package inserts of commercial assays will provide end users with an estimated range within which an increase in signal is linearly related to an increase in the analyte concentration. The laboratory may validate this range or may establish its own acceptable linear range when the assay is introduced. Analyzers, middleware, or the laboratory information system will identify and flag samples in which the measured analyte values fall outside the linear range. If the analyte falls above the linear range, many instruments can automatically dilute and reanalyze the sample. In some cases, a manual dilution may be necessary, or the information that the result is higher than a certain value may be sufficient for the requesting clinician. For example, patients in diabetic ketoacidosis will have glucose measurements over 1000 mg/dL, far exceeding the linearity of most analyzers. These samples will be flagged, diluted by a predetermined factor, and then rerun before reporting. If an analyte concentration falls below the linear range, the sample is usually reported as "less than the limit of detection."

DELTA CHECKS

Advances in computer technology have facilitated the storage of data from large numbers of patients and increasingly complex calculations in laboratory information systems. This has made it possible to use patient data for quality control purposes in real time. For example, most laboratories routinely submit the results of certain laboratory assays to "delta checks" before releasing them into the patient record. Delta checks are defined as comparing a current laboratory result with results obtained on a previous specimen from the same patient. Parameters chosen for delta checks should not be subject to large intraindividual variations; for example, many laboratories have delta checks in place for the mean corpuscular volume of red cells. Suggested assays, thresholds, and time intervals between measurements can be found in the literature (Ladenson, 1975). Some studies have suggested the comparison of multiple test parameters to decrease the false-positive rate of the delta check; however, few laboratories have implemented such delta checks. Delta checks can detect preanalytic (e.g., mislabeling of specimens) and analytic issues (e.g., aspiration of insufficient sample volume by the instrument sample probe) (Kazmierczak, 2003). Laboratories should define procedures for samples that have been flagged by delta checks; protocols usually incorporate repeating the assay, reviewing the specimen identification, and notifying the clinical staff of the possibility of a mislabeled specimen.

ASSESSMENT OF CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF RESULTS

CRITICAL VALUES

A critical value (also known as a panic value) is a laboratory result that may represent a life-threatening situation that may not otherwise be readily detectable; it must be reported immediately to a health care provider who can provide necessary medical interventions. Federal law, regulatory agencies, and The Joint Commission require rapid communication of such results; it is one of the most common, recurring Joint Commission Laboratory National Patient Safety Goals (The Joint Commission, 2015). To be sure results are correctly communicated, regulations require the health care provider to read back the critical value and the patient name. The laboratory then has to document the event, including the name and title of the caregiver who is notified, the time and date of notification, and the read-back by the care provider.

No universally accepted guidelines indicate which assays should have critical values, what the thresholds should be, whether critical values should be repeated before reporting, and what is an acceptable time from result availability to caregiver notification. Although it is generally established that critical values must be called to a caregiver who has the ability to act upon the information, there is no universal agreement regarding the types of caregivers (e.g., physician's assistant, registered nurse) who fulfill this definition. This has caused significant variation in procedures related to critical values at different institutions. It is ultimately the responsibility of the medical director of the laboratory to work with clinical colleagues to develop a critical values policy that meets the needs of patients and staff served by the laboratory.

REFERENCE RANGES

Definition of Reference Intervals

Comparison of a laboratory result versus a reference or "normal" range is often one of the most important aspects of medical decision making. Reference intervals are usually defined as the range of values into which 95% of nondiseased ("normal") individuals will fall; the corollary of this definition is that 2.5% of nondiseased individuals will have laboratory results below the reference range, and 2.5% of nondiseased individuals will have laboratory results above the reference range (CLSI, 2008). For some analytes, the reference range is defined as "less than" or "greater than" a certain value; for example, a prostate-specific antigen (PSA) level of 4 ng/mL is often used to distinguish patients who require no further follow-up ("normal") from those who require a prostate biopsy ("abnormal"). Some reference ranges have been defined by professional organizations without adherence to the 95% rule. A paradigm of this is the recommendation of American and European cardiology associations: "An increased cardiac troponin concentration is defined as a value exceeding the 99th percentile of a normal reference population" (upper reference limit; [URL])" (Jaffe, 2013). For other analytes (e.g., cholesterol/lipids), laboratories frequently provide therapeutic target ranges that represent recommendations based on clinical trials and/or epidemiologic studies (Grundy et al, 2004). Finally, it is common practice to provide therapeutic and/or toxic ranges for drug measurements.

In the future, the efforts to standardize methods should minimize the effects of site-to-site differences in the implementation of methods. With

such standardization, each laboratory would not need to establish its own reference intervals unless its patient population was clearly distinct and exhibited a unique range of values—for example, the protein differences seen in various Asian populations (Myron et al, 2004). The Joint Committee for Traceability in Laboratory Medicine has established a process for standardization by identifying, reviewing against agreed criteria, and publishing list(s) of Higher Order Certified Reference Materials and Reference Measurement Procedures. One effort made by all U.S. manufacturers of in vitro diagnostics is to reduce interlaboratory variability by calibrating and using materials traceable to the isotope dilution mass spectrometry (IDMS) reference measurement procedure (Myers et al, 2006). This allows for comparability of estimated glomerular filtration (eGFR) and calculated creatinine clearance rates across laboratories (Levey et al, 1999).

Factors That Influence Reference Ranges

A variety of factors can influence reference ranges. Different laboratory methods often yield significantly different results and therefore require different reference ranges. This phenomenon is best documented and understood for methods in which measurement of the analyte is based on one or more antibody–antigen interactions, but it can affect all analytic methods. Because of differences in age, genetic background, or exposure to environmental factors, different populations may need different reference ranges for certain laboratory analytes. Many other factors can affect reference ranges, including sample collection container (e.g., glass vs. plastic tubes), sample transport (e.g., by messenger or pneumatic tube), the time between specimen collection and analysis, and sample storage before analysis (Bowen et al, 2005; Victor et al, 2011; Zhao & Lv, 2013).

Determination of Reference Ranges

Because many factors can affect reference ranges, laboratories are strongly encouraged to perform their own studies to establish reference ranges for all analytes they report, usually by testing at least 120 samples from nondiseased individuals in each "partition" (e.g., gender, age group). If this is not possible, the laboratory can verify a reference interval that it has previously established for a different method by transference (i.e., demonstrating that the new method yields identical results to the previous method). The laboratory can verify another laboratory's or the manufacturer's reference interval if the analyte was not previously tested for in the laboratory (CLSI, 2008).

Variability of Laboratory Results

Interindividual variation of laboratory results often occurs because of factors specific to individual patients. For example, creatine kinase (CK) levels are proportional to muscle mass. Thus a population of normal subjects will express a range of CK values according to each individual's muscle mass, but an individual patient will have a unique set value that is "normal" for that individual. In clinical practice, this unique value, if known, is the best "reference value" for a particular individual. Comparison of test results from a patient versus such an individualized reference value has to take into account random variability. Random variability is the sum of analytic and intraindividual variability. Analytic variability is the result of assay imprecision. It is usually determined during validation studies for a new method by running the same sample multiple times and is expressed quantitatively as the coefficient of variation (CV). Intraindividual variability is due to biologic changes that cause analyte levels to fluctuate over time. Well-known examples of this phenomenon include diurnal variations in cortisol levels, estrogen levels that vary with the menstrual cycle, and seasonal variations of vitamin D. Many other analytes show some biologic variability, including changes related to exercise or food intake. Table 7-1 provides estimates of interindividual and intraindividual biologic variation for common analytes. As expected, intraindividual variation is generally less than interindividual variation. The index of individuality is the ratio of intraindividual CV to interindividual CV. A low index (<0.6) means that results from a given individual fluctuate within a narrow range of the reference interval. In such instances, serial changes in an individual's analyte may be more useful in detecting disease than in comparing each of the measurements versus the reference interval (Lacher et al, 2005). Table 7-1 also shows that the method CV or degree of analytic variability is usually much lower than the biologic variability and thus is much less of a factor in affecting the overall random variability of measurements. For some analytes, guidelines have been published as to what constitutes a clinically significant difference between two consecutive patient sample results. As an example, Table 7-2 provides this information for various thyroid function tests (Baloch et al, 2003).

GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR THE INTERPRETATION OF LABORATORY RESULTS

DIAGNOSTIC ACCURACY

Truth Table

Clinicians often find it helpful and intuitive to dichotomize a continuous test result into a binary one by applying a threshold value for the analyte. Although the reference range can be used to separate normal from abnormal values, clinically validated thresholds are also commonly used for disease classification. For example, the reference range for HBA1c in a laboratory may be 4.0% to 6.0%, but the clinically established threshold to classify a patient as diabetic is 6.5%. This means that a patient's result can be outside the reference range without meeting the threshold for diabetes.

A test with perfect diagnostic accuracy could determine the presence or absence of disease with certainty, and the established cutoff point would perfectly separate diseased from non diseased populations (Galen & Gambino, 1975) (Fig. 7-1). However, nearly all laboratory tests are imperfect, and overlap is seen between populations at both low and high cutoffs (Fig. 7-2).

The diagnostic accuracy of a test is determined by comparing the test's ability to discern true disease from nondisease as determined by a diagnostic gold standard (i.e., truth). Based on results from the test and the gold standard, patients can be classified into four groups in a 2×2 table (see Fig. 7-2 and Table 7-3). Patients correctly classified as abnormal are called true-positives (TPs) and those correctly classified as normal are called true-negatives (TNs). These true results are the nonoverlapping areas of the two patient distributions. False results occur because the two populations overlap (i.e., because a test cannot completely discriminate all abnormal patients from normal ones). Patients incorrectly classified as normal are false-negatives (FNs), and those incorrectly classified as abnormal are false-positives (FPs). As seen in Figure 7-3, where for ease of illustration a single cutoff is used to discriminate disease from normal populations, varying the cutoff changes the numbers of true and false results in a given population. False results can also be produced when an analyte has two relevant cutoffs (e.g., thyroid-stimulating hormone), with overlapping populations at both the low end and the high end.

Sensitivity and Specificity

Sensitivity and specificity are measures of the diagnostic accuracy of a test; they are indicators of a test's ability to distinguish between disease and

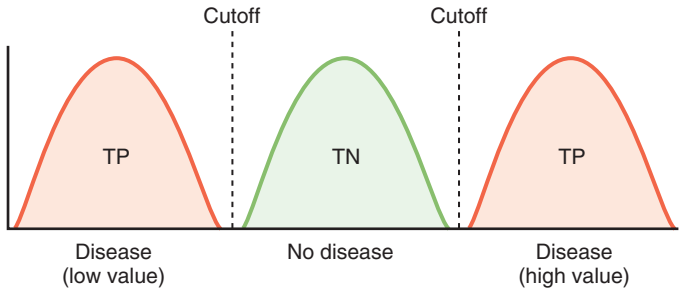


Figure 7-1 Distribution of test results from nonoverlapping populations of patients with and without disease (see Table 7-3). *TN,* True-negative; *TP,* true-positive.

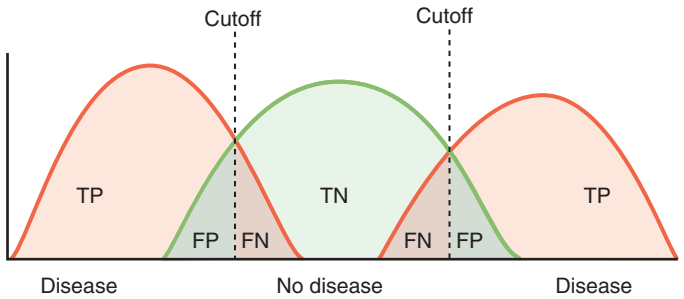


Figure 7-2 Distribution of test results from overlapping populations of patients with and without disease (see Table 7-3). *FN,* False-negative; *FP,* false-positive; *TN,* true-negative; *TP,* true-positive.

TABLE 7-1

Interindividual and Intraindividual Biologic Variability for Common Analytes

Analyte Individual	Interindividual CV, %	Intraindividual CV, %	Index of CV, %	Method
Alanine aminotransferase	50.2	23.7	0.47	3.2
Albumin	8.9	2.8	0.31	3.4
Alkaline phosphatase	33.4	4.4	0.13	6.5
Apolipoprotein A	17.8	7.0	0.39	4.8
Apolipoprotein B	27.6	9.5	0.34	2.7
Aspartate aminotransferase	29.1	15.1	0.52	3.4
β-Carotene	67.4	24.2	0.36	7.4
Bicarbonate	13.3	11.0	0.83	2.4
Bilirubin, total	43.9	24.6	0.56	3.0
C-peptide	65.7	28.4	0.43	7.2
Calcium, ionized	3.6	2.4	0.67	1.4
Calcium, total	4.7	3.3	0.70	2.2
Chloride	3.1	1.9	0.61	1.0
Cholesterol, total	22.3	8.2	0.37	2.3
Creatinine	18.7	6.8	0.36	1.0
Creatinine, urine	61.3	43.0	0.70	2.2
Fibrinogen, plasma	25.6	16.2	0.63	3.9
Folate	64.3	22.6	0.35	3.6
γ-Glutamyl transferase	59.8	16.2	0.27	1.7
Glucose, plasma	12.5	8.3	0.66	1.7
Glycohemoglobin, blood	9.6	1.5	0.16	3.1
HDL cholesterol	28.3	12.4	0.44	2.5
Homocysteine	36.6	18.0	0.49	6.0
Insulin, plasma	55.9	25.2	0.45	13.0
Iron	41.6	29.0	0.70	3.2
Iron binding capacity, total	15.5	6.9	0.45	3.3
Lactate dehydrogenase	21.6	7.9	0.37	6.0
Phosphorus	15.8	9.2	0.58	2.0
Potassium	7.7	5.4	0.70	0.5
Protein, total	6.2	3.5	0.56	0.9
Selenium	13.2	5.1	0.39	4.8
Sodium	1.6	1.3	0.81	0.7
Triglycerides	56.8	28.8	0.51	4.7
Urea nitrogen	32.1	18.0	0.56	3.7
Uric acid	27.1	9.0	0.33	0.7
Varicella antibody	43.2	13.7	0.32	6.7
Vitamin A	30.7	9.5	0.31	2.5
Vitamin B_{12}	41.6	13.4	0.32	6.2
Vitamin E	35.1	11.3	0.32	2.9

Data from Lacher DA, Hughes JP, Carroll MD: Estimate of biologic variation of laboratory analytes based on the third national health and nutrition examination survey, *Clin Chem* 51(2):450–452, 2005.
CV, Coefficient of variation; *HDL,* high-density lipoprotein.

TABLE 7-2

Clinically Significant Difference between Two Consecutive Patient Results

Analyte	Change
Total T_4	2.2 µg/dL
Free T_4	0.5 ng/dL
Total T_3	35 ng/dL
Free T_3	0.1 ng/dL
TSH	0.75 mIU/L
Thyroglobulin	1.5 ng/mL

Data from Baloch Z, Carayon P, Conte-Devolx B, et al: Laboratory medicine practice guidelines: laboratory support for the diagnosis and monitoring of thyroid disease, *Thyroid* 13(1):3–126, 2003.
T_3, Triiodothyronine; *T_4,* thyroxine; *TSH,* thyroid-stimulating hormone.

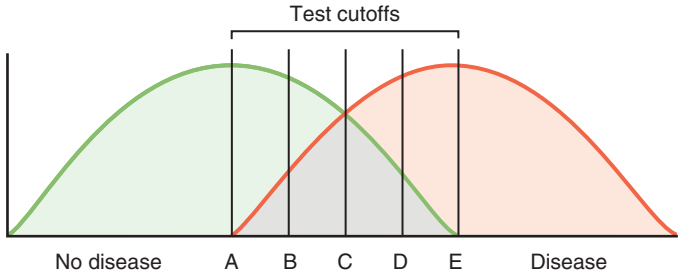


Figure 7-3 **Effects of varying the test cutoff on overlapping populations of patients with and without disease.**

absence of disease at a chosen cutoff. Sensitivity and specificity therefore are not fixed characteristics of a test and must be calculated from a different 2 × 2 table for each cutoff chosen.

Sensitivity is the ability of a test to detect disease and is expressed as the proportion of persons with disease in whom the test is positive (see Tables 7-3 and 7-4). It may also be thought of as the probability of a positive test given a true disease state as defined by the gold standard. A test that is 90% sensitive will give positive results in 90% of diseased patients (TP) and negative results in 10% of diseased patients (FN). Specificity is the ability to detect the absence of disease and is expressed as the proportion of persons without disease in whom the test is negative (see Tables 7-3 and 7-4). It may be thought of as the probability of a negative test, given no disease as defined by the gold standard. Thus a test that is 90% specific will give negative results in 90% of patients without disease (TN) and positive results in 10% of patients without disease (FP). A test with a higher sensitivity identifies a greater proportion of persons with disease, and a test with a higher specificity excludes a greater proportion of persons without disease.

Sensitivity is also the TP rate, and the inverse (1 – sensitivity) is the FN rate. If the sensitivity is 95%, 5 of 100 individuals with the disease will test negative. Specificity is the TN rate, and the inverse (1 – specificity) is the FP rate. If the specificity is 95%, 5 of 100 individuals without disease will test positive.

Effect of Altering the Test Cutoff

When a test cutoff is altered, an inverse relationship between sensitivity and specificity is noted, and a tradeoff between the numbers of FP and FN results can be seen. Altering a cutoff changes a test's sensitivity and specificity because it relates to overlapping normal and abnormal patient distributions along the test value continuum (see Fig. 7-3). For tests where high values indicate disease, lowering the cutoff (i.e., moving the cutoff line to the left) will lead to more diseased patients being classified as abnormal. Thus in Figure 7-3, changing the cutoff from C to B increases sensitivity. If the cutoff is moved to A, then all diseased persons will have a positive test, and the sensitivity will be 100%. However, increased sensitivity is associated with decreased specificity, and the number of nondiseased persons with a positive test (FPs) increases as the cutoff is moved from C to B to A. If the cutoff is raised (i.e., the cutoff line is moved to the right), more nondiseased patients are classified correctly, and specificity increases. If the cutoff is moved to E, then all nondiseased persons will have a negative test, and the specificity will be 100%. However, this will be accompanied by concomitant decreased sensitivity and additional FN results.

TABLE 7-3
Truth (2 × 2) Table: Classifying Patients

Result	Disease	No Disease	Total
Positive	TP	FP	TP + FP
Negative	FN	TN	FN + TN
Total	TP + FN	FP + TN	TP + FP + FN + TN

$$\text{Sensitivity \%} = 100 \times \left(\frac{TP}{TP+FN}\right)$$

$$\text{Specificity (\%)} = 100 \times \left(\frac{TP}{TP+FN}\right)$$

$$\text{Positive predictive value (\%)} = 100 \times \left(\frac{TP}{TP+FP}\right)$$

$$\text{Negative predictive value (\%)} = 100 \times \left(\frac{TN}{TN+FN}\right)$$

FN, False-negative; *FP,* false-positive; *TN,* true-negative; *TP,* true-positive.

TABLE 7-4
Example Truth (2 × 2) Table

Result	Disease	No Disease	Total
Positive	196	20	116
Negative	4	180	184
Total	200	200	400

$$\text{Sensitivity \%} = 100 \times \left(\frac{196}{196+4}\right) = 98\%$$

$$\text{Specificity (\%)} = 100 \times \left(\frac{180}{180+20}\right) = 90\%$$

$$\text{Positive predictive value (\%)} = 100 \times \left(\frac{196}{196+20}\right) = 91\%$$

$$\text{Negative predictive value (\%)} = 100 \times \left(\frac{180}{180+4}\right) = 98\%$$

In this evaluation study of a hypothetical cardiac marker, 200 patients with acute myocardial infarction (AMI) and 200 healthy subjects are recruited for a study designed to mimic a prevalence of 50%. The assay is performed and is compared with a "gold standard" test for AMI, and the 2 × 2 truth table shown here is generated. Measures of diagnostic accuracy are determined according to the formulas outlined in Table 7-3.

The Need for High Sensitivity versus High Specificity

FP and FN results can lead to misdiagnosis and inappropriate clinical management with adverse clinical and financial consequences. For example, an FP result may cause the unnecessary admission of a patient, needless additional testing, and invasive procedures. Similarly, an FN result may lead to a patient's release from the emergency department despite a life-threatening disorder. Enhanced assays that provide improved sensitivity and specificity and thereby allow better discrimination between diseased and nondiseased populations continue to be developed. However, it is nearly impossible to eliminate false results entirely because some overlap between diseased and nondiseased persons is always evident. In most situations, the cost of an FP or an FN result supersedes the other, and the cutoff that delineates normal from abnormal can be shifted to reduce the more significant of the two consequences.

In general, the sensitivity of a test used to screen a population for a serious disease should be high to capture the majority of cases for confirmation by a gold standard. When PSA is used to screen for prostate cancer, a low threshold is used to capture all potential cases. Many men without a malignancy (e.g., prostatitis, nodular hyperplasia) will also have a positive result and need to undergo an invasive procedure for a definitive diagnosis. These "unnecessary" prostate biopsies, which are performed to confirm the true cases of prostate cancer, are the FP cost of this sensitive, but not specific, screening test. In contrast, high specificity is required when the definitive diagnosis of a serious condition will be based on a positive result; initiation of toxic or costly therapy can be based only on a test with the ability to "rule in" the disease with high confidence. A highly specific test excludes persons without disease (eliminates FPs). In a test where higher values indicate disease, specificity can be increased by increasing the cutoff, thereby excluding all persons without the disease; however, this will also exclude some persons with the disease (see Fig. 7-3).

Less expensive and less labor-intensive screening procedures with high sensitivity are often used in combination with more complex, highly specific tests for confirmation. For example, an immunoassay is used as an initial test to screen for drugs of abuse and may cross-react with substances other than the analyte of interest, thereby producing a false-positive (FP) result. These FP individuals can be identified with a highly specific, albeit expensive, follow-up test, such as gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS). In many combinations of screening and confirmatory tests, the confirmatory test is both highly specific and highly sensitive, but it is inappropriate to use as a screening test because of cost or test complexity.

Predictive Value and Prevalence of Disease

The predictive value of a positive test (sometimes referred to as positive predictive value) may be understood as the probability that a positive test indicates disease. It is the proportion of persons with a positive test who truly have the disease (see Tables 7-3 and 7-4). The predictive value of a negative test (sometimes referred to as negative predictive value) is the probability that a negative test indicates absence of disease. It is the proportion of persons with a negative test who are truly without disease (see Tables 7-3 and 7-4).

The diagnostic accuracy of a test tends to diminish as the test becomes more widely used in a population. Initial validation studies are often performed on a small group of individuals in whom disease is clearly absent or present. Those who lack the disease are often selected from a population of subjects in overall good health. In practice, however, patients exhibit a spectrum of illness, including early or mild disease, which overlaps with nondiseased individuals, including those with other diseases, some cases of which might cause an abnormal test result. Thus the proportion of false test results is often higher in clinical practice than is claimed by the manufacturer from more limited studies in healthy individuals.

The predictive value of a positive test is highly dependent on the prevalence of the disease being tested. The higher the prevalence, or

pretest probability, the higher the posttest probability, or predictive value of a positive test. Consider a test with a sensitivity of 90% and a specificity of 90% for a disease with a prevalence of 0.1%. Based on the formula, the predictive value of a positive result (PV+) would be 0.9%. If the prevalence increases to 5.0%, the PV+ increases to 32%. Thus the predictive value of a positive test increases as the prevalence increases. This effect of prevalence on predictive value is shown in Table 7-5.

The impact of prevalence on predictive value theory has a practical application in that it enables one to derive a higher predictive value from results of a test performed in a high-prevalence setting as compared with a low-prevalence setting (Table 7-6). For example, consider the serum antiheparin/platelet factor (PF4) immunoassay for suspected heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT). The positive predictive value of antiheparin/PF4 antibodies in a patient suspected of HIT is 40%, and the negative predictive value is 100% (Bakchoul et al, 2009). However, if a clinical scoring system were used to stratify patients based on several clinical criteria (e.g., thrombocytopenia, time course of thrombocytopenia, thrombosis), then the positive predictive value would be higher if testing were performed only on patients with a high probability of HIT using the clinical scoring system. We can also examine this situation from a pretest probability point of view. The clinical suspicion of HIT, or the pretest probability, is significantly higher when the clinical score is high. Because pretest probability determines posttest probability, the stronger pretest suspicion translates into stronger prediction of disease (see Bayes theorem below).

For a disease with low prevalence, even a test with high sensitivity and specificity will yield a low predictive value because most positive test results will be FPs. For example, consider a disease with a prevalence of 1 in 10,000 and a test that is 99% sensitive and 99% specific. The PV+ will be only about 1% because 99 of every 100 who test positive have a FP result. One can see that the accuracy of tests for rare conditions must be very high to reliably predict disease. Thus besides requiring near perfect sensitivity, tests that are used to screen for rare diseases have greater utility in selected populations that offer a higher pretest probability.

On the other hand, the predictive value of a negative test decreases as the prevalence of disease increases. However, the effect is small, especially when sensitivity and specificity are high. Prevalence influences the predictive value of a negative test to a noticeable extent only when the starting prevalence is high.

TABLE 7-5

Positive Predictive Value Decreases with Decreasing Disease Prevalence

Result	Disease	No Disease	Total
Positive	49	95	144
Negative	1	855	856
Total	50	950	1000

$$\text{Positive predictive value (\%)} = 100 \times \left(\frac{49}{49+95}\right) = 34\%$$

$$\text{Negative predictive value (\%)} = 100 \times \left(\frac{855}{855+1}\right) = 100\%$$

In this study, a population of 1000 hospitalized patients is studied. Fifty (50) patients are determined to have an acute myocardial infarction (AMI), and 950 patients do not have an AMI according to a "gold standard" (prevalence = 5%). If the cardiac marker described in Table 7-4 is performed on this population, we would expect a TP rate of 49 (50 AMI patients × sensitivity = 50 × 0.98) and a FN rate of 1 (FN = total AMI – TP = 49 – 1); a TN rate of 855 (950 non-AMI × specificity = 950 × 0.90) and an FP rate of 95 (total non-AMI – TN = 950 – 855). The positive predictive value of the test decreases with a lower prevalence.
FN, False-negative; *FP,* false-positive; *TN,* true-negative, *TP,* true-positive.

TABLE 7-6

Predictive Value of a Positive Test: The Effect of Prevalence and Accuracy

	PREDICTIVE VALUE OF A POSITIVE TEST	
Prevalence, %	Sensitivity, 90% Specificity, 90%	Sensitivity, 99% Specificity, 99%
0.01	0.09	0.9
0.1	0.9	9
5	32.1	83.9
50	90.0	99

Predictive Value and Accuracy

Improved accuracy (i.e., sensitivity and specificity) enhances the predictive value of a test. The formula for predictive value (see Table 7-3) from Bayes theorem shows that sensitivity and specificity influence the predictive value. Further, Table 7-6 shows that the predictive value of a positive test increases with increasing prevalence and improved accuracy. Specificity has the biggest impact on the predictive value of a positive test, whereas sensitivity determines the predictive value of a negative test. This is also appreciated from Table 7-5, where the number of FPs directly influences the predictive value of a positive test, whereas the number of FNs has the same effect on a negative test.

When a test cutoff changes, its accuracy (sensitivity/specficity) and predictive value also change. As an example, D-dimer testing is used to exclude deep vein thrombosis in patients who present to the emergency department. In the reference population, a value greater than 400 U/mL is considered abnormal and indicative of thrombosis. For a patient in the emergency department with symptoms suggestive of thrombosis, an even lower D-dimer value will predict thrombosis to the same extent as the greater than 400 U/mL value in the general population. (Recall that posttest probability is dependent on pretest probability.) Because a cutoff of 400 U/mL is not 100% sensitive, it excludes some patients with thrombosis, thereby yielding FNs. Because one cannot risk neglecting a possible case of thrombosis, a lower value of 200 U/mL could be selected to improve sensitivity, decrease the proportion of FNs, and greatly improve the predictive value of a negative test. A negative test could then be used to exclude thrombosis and obviate the need for additional costly diagnostic studies such as radiologic scans or lower extremity Doppler.

BAYES THEOREM

Clinical assessment and diagnostic tests are inherently flawed, and these uncertainties must be considered when medical decisions are made. Sensitivity and specificity represent a summary of the diagnostic accuracy of a test, but they do not indicate the probability that an individual patient has a disease after the test result is obtained. It would be useful to know how the test result changes the probability of disease (i.e., posttest probability), given certain assay characteristics and disease prevalence (i.e., pretest probability). Alternatively, it is useful to know that a condition can be ruled out given a negative test if the probability of disease after a negative test is very low. To determine this information, one must consider predictive value theory, also known as Bayes theorem. Bayes theorem describes the relationship between posttest and pretest probability of disease or no disease based on the sensitivity and specificity of the test. $P(D)$ is the probability of disease before the test result is obtained; this is also known as clinical suspicion, prevalence, or pretest probability. $P(D \mid T)$ is the probability of the disease after the test result is known; this is the posttest probability. $P(D \mid T)$ is the probability that the test is positive when the disease is present, or the TP rate. $P(\bar{D})$ is the probability of not having the disease. $P(T \mid \bar{D})$ is the FP rate. The probability (posttest) of disease or no disease is calculated; examples are shown in Table 7-7.

$$P(D \mid T) = \frac{P(T \mid D) \times P(D)}{P(T \mid D) \times P(D) + P(T \mid \bar{D}) \times P(\bar{D})}$$

$$\textit{Posttest probability} = \frac{\textit{sensitivity} \times \textit{pretest probability}}{(\textit{sensitivity} \times \textit{pretest probability}) + (FP \times [1 - \textit{pretest probability}])}$$

The theorem applies population data and test characteristics directly to an individual subject and calculates the probability of the presence of a disease for a particular patient after a positive test result is obtained and, alternatively, the probability of the absence of disease given a negative test. Although sensitivity and specificity describe a test at a particular cutoff value (e.g., what percent of diseased patients have abnormal results?), the predictive value describes the state of the patient (e.g., how likely is it that a given patient's positive result indicates disease?). The predictive value depends on sensitivity, specificity, and prevalence of the disease being tested. Table 7-6 illustrates how disease prevalence, test accuracy, and predictive value of a test are interrelated (Bayes theorem).

This approach requires information about the individual patient and clinical suspicion of disease, which includes prevalence of the disease in different populations, to establish the pretest probability of a patient having a disease. For example, if nothing is known about a patient other

TABLE 7-7

Posttest Probability (Predictive Value) from Bayes Theorem

Posttest probability of disease (predictive value) depends on diagnostic accuracy and disease prevalence. A test for rheumatoid factor is positive in 95 of 100 patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA) (sensitivity of 95%), but it is also positive in 10 of 100 non-RA patients (specificity of 90%). The RA pretest probability (prevalence) is 5% in a rheumatology practice.

$$\textbf{\textit{Posttest probability}} = \frac{sensitivity \times pretest\ probability}{(sensitivity \times pretest\ probability) + ([1 - specificity] \times [1 - pretest\ probability])}$$

$$\textbf{\textit{Posttest probability}} = \frac{0.95 \times 0.05}{(0.95 \times 0.05) + (0.1 \times 0.95)} = 33\%$$

Posttest probability of no disease for the same test characteristics.

$$\textbf{\textit{Posttest probability}} = \frac{(1 - pretest\ probability) \times specificity}{([1 - pretest\ probability] \times specificity) + ([1 - sensitivity] \times [1 - pretest\ probability])}$$

$$\textbf{\textit{Posttest probability}} = \frac{0.95 \times 0.9}{(0.95 \times 0.9) + (0.05 \times 0.05)} = 99.7\%$$

than the test result, then the pretest probability of disease would be the prevalence of the disease in the population. Clinical suspicion may raise this pretest probability to 50% based on a thorough clinical history and physical examination, the clinician's personal experience, and knowledge of relevant literature. Pretest probability, or a priori probability, is the prevalence of disease in the patient's clinical setting. For example, the prevalence of myocardial damage among subjects with chest pain is higher in the CCU than it is in the emergency department.

The pretest probability is used in conjunction with the characteristics of diagnostic accuracy as summarized in the sensitivity and specificity of the test. Posttest probability, or a posteriori probability, is the probability of disease in the posttest situation and is commonly referred to as the predictive value of the test. As described earlier, pretest probability and posttest probability are related through Bayes theorem (see Table 7-7). Additionally, posttest probability = posttest odds/(posttest odds + 1). The value of posttest odds is equal to the pretest probability × the likelihood ratio (LR). The LR is used to change the probability based on test characteristics, as described below.

LIKELIHOOD RATIO

The LR is a convenient measure that combines sensitivity and specificity into a single number (Table 7-8). Similar to these other measures of test accuracy (sensitivity and specificity), the LR is an assessment of test performance, and not of disease status, in the patient being tested. The likelihood ratio of a positive test (LR+) is the ratio of two probabilities: the probability of a positive test result when disease is present (TP) divided by the probability of the same test result when disease is absent (FP). In other words, the calculation gives the likelihood that a test result will occur in a diseased patient as opposed to a healthy one. For example, serum lipase is used to detect acute pancreatitis; it may be elevated (higher than the cutoff of 200 U/L) in 90 of 100 individuals with acute pancreatitis, but it may be similarly elevated in 10 of 100 individuals with other causes of abdominal pain. The LR+ at the 200 U/L cutoff is 9, which means that an abnormal lipase is nine times more likely in individuals with pancreatitis than in those without, or nine times as many patients with pancreatitis than with other abdominal diseases will have an elevated lipase. The LR refers to the likelihood of the test result, given the disease. This is not the same as the likelihood of pancreatitis being nine times greater, given an abnormal lipase. The latter would be the predictive value of a positive lipase. Alternatively, the likelihood ratio of a negative test (LR–) is the probability that an individual with the disease will have a negative test divided by the probability that an individual without the disease will have a negative test. Additional advantages of the LR are that it is not influenced by disease prevalence, and the LR can be calculated for multiple test cutoffs. Thus a result's degree of abnormality can be taken into account, and medical decisions can be made at a point where fewer FN and FP results are seen.

The LR may also be used, along with pretest probability (prevalence), to calculate posttest probability (predictive value). Although the concept is similar to Bayes theorem, LR is used to calculate posterior probabilities in terms of odds and not direct probabilities, making it less intuitive than Bayes method. This is illustrated in the examples in Table 7-9. For a

TABLE 7-8

Likelihood Ratio

Definition

$$LR = \frac{\text{probability of test result in persons with disease}}{\text{probability of same result in persons with no disease}}$$

Example

$$LR+ = \frac{sensitivity}{1 - specificity}$$

From Table 7-7, using the test for rheumatoid factor (RF) that is positive in 95 of 100 rheumatoid arthritis (RA) patients (sensitivity of 95%) but also positive in 10 of 100 non-RA patients (specificity of 90%)

$$LR+ = \frac{\frac{95}{100}}{\frac{10}{100}} = 9.5$$

$$LR- = \frac{1 - sensitivity}{specificity}$$

The same test for RF is negative in 90 of 100 non-RA patients but is also negative in 5 of 100 RA patients.

$$LR- = \frac{\left(\frac{5}{100}\right)}{\left(\frac{90}{100}\right)} = 0.06$$

TABLE 7-9

Likelihood Ratio and Probability of Disease

The likelihood ratio and pretest probability (prevalence) can be used to calculate posttest probability (predictive value). This is best understood by expressing probability in terms of odds.

Definitions

$$Pretest\ odds = \frac{pretest\ probability}{1 - pretest\ probability}$$

Step 1. Pretest probability is converted to pretest odds to calculate posttest odds of disease or no disease (see examples).

$$Posttest\ odds = pretest\ odds \times LR$$

Step 2. Posttest odds are calculated. Note: As LR of a positive or negative result increases, so do the odds that the result will predict disease or no disease, respectively.

$$Posttest\ probability = \frac{posttest\ odds}{(1 + posttest\ odds)}$$

Step 3. Odds are converted back into probability to calculate the posttest probability (predictive value) of a positive or negative test.

Example 1

From Table 7-7, the rheumatoid arthritis pretest probability (prevalence) is 5% in a rheumatology practice. From Table 8-8, the LR of a positive rheumatoid factor test is 9.5. Note that the probability of disease increases from 5% (pretest) to 33% (posttest) because of the positive test result.

$$Pretest\ odds = \frac{pretest\ probability}{1 - pretest\ probability} = \frac{0.05}{1 - 0.05} = 0.053$$

$$Posttest\ odds = pretest\ odds \times LR+ = 0.053 \times 9.5 = 0.5$$

$$Posttest\ probability = \frac{posttest\ odds}{(1 + posttest\ odds)} = \frac{0.5}{(1 + 0.5)} = 0.33\ or\ 33\%$$

Example 2

From Table 7-8, the LR of a negative rheumatoid factor test is 0.06. Although the probability of disease increases from 5% (pretest) to 33% (posttest) because of the positive test result (Example 1), the probability of disease decreases from 5% (pretest) to 0.3% (posttest) because of the negative test result.

$$Pretest\ odds = \frac{pretest\ probability}{1 - pretest\ probability} = \frac{0.05}{1 - 0.05} = 0.053$$

$$Posttest\ odds = pretest\ odds \times LR+ = 0.053 \times 0.06 = 0.003$$

$$Posttest\ probability = \frac{posttest\ odds}{(1 + posttest\ odds)} = \frac{003}{1 + 0.003} = 0.3\%$$

positive test, an LR+ higher than 1 will increase the posttest probability. The larger the LR, the greater the difference between pretest and posttest probabilities. Regardless of prevalence, a high LR increases the probability that a positive test result predicts disease. The converse applies for a negative test result, for which any LR– less than 1 will decrease the posttest probability. Thus tests likely to be useful in clinical practice are those for which a positive result has a high LR and a negative result has a low LR.

RECEIVER OPERATOR CHARACTERISTIC CURVES

Because diagnostic tests are not perfect, there is always a tradeoff between sensitivity and specificity, making it difficult to determine an optimal cutoff. The receiver operator characteristic (ROC) curve is a useful tool for identifying the optimal cutoff for a diagnostic test by calculating the sensitivity and specificity combinations across the entire range of cutoff values. In addition, the ROC curves of two or more tests can be compared to identify the one with the greatest discriminating ability (Zweig & Campbell, 1993).

An ROC curve is constructed by calculating sensitivity and specificity across the entire range of cutoffs for the diagnostic test being evaluated. Sensitivity is plotted on the *y*-axis, and 1– specificity (or the FP rate) is plotted on the *x*-axis; construction of the curve shows the tradeoff between sensitivity and specificity at each cutoff. The ROC curve for a test with no ability to predict disease (i.e., random chance) is a 45-degree line drawn through the origin. As the discriminatory ability of a test increases, the curve progresses outward toward the upper-left-hand corner. The area under the ROC curve (AUC) is a single measure of the overall discriminating ability of a test; the minimum AUC is 0.5, which is the area under the 45-degree line, and the maximum AUC is 1.0 for a perfect diagnostic test. Because diagnostic tests are not absolutely perfect, the AUC will range from 0.5 to 1.0; the higher the AUC, the greater the overall discriminating ability of the test. In general, an AUC that is greater than 0.8 suggests that the diagnostic test has good discriminatory power.

Point A on the ROC curve in Figure 7-4 has the highest sensitivity but has low specificity. Increasing the specificity to point B trades the higher specificity for lower sensitivity. The optimal cutoff is identified by the coordinate that maximizes discriminatory power, which, in this example, is point C. Point C is also the location on the ROC curve with the farthest distance perpendicular from the 45-degree line. The second useful application for the ROC curve is to compare two or more diagnostic methods by calculating the area under the curve. If the area under the curve is similar, then no difference is observed between the two tests. However, if one ROC curve has a greater AUC than a comparison test, it has better sensitivity and specificity at all cutoffs. For example, in Figure 7-5, Test 1 is better than Test 2 at all cutoffs and therefore would be the better test. However, curves may cross, indicating that performance depends on the desired use of the test (i.e., whether a higher sensitivity or specificity is required for clinical use). In the example in Figure 7-6, Test B has a lower FP rate than Test A at high sensitivity, which makes it a better screening test; Test A would be the better confirmatory test because it has greater sensitivity at high specificities.

POSITIVITY CRITERION

The LR may be used to select the optimal cutoff for an assay that best separates disease from nondisease. As was previously discussed, the LR, like sensitivity and specificity, varies with the cutoff. To select the optimal discriminatory cutoff, one might simply pick the cutoff resulting in the greatest LR for a positive test. However, this approach does not take into account the clinical impact of the test result. The clinical consequences of an FP test (e.g., unnecessary surgery) or an FN test (e.g., a missed chance to treat) need to be weighed when the optimal cutoff is determined. The *positivity criterion* is a method that allows one to assess the optimal cutoff with numeric estimates for clinical impact, or consequences, of test results.

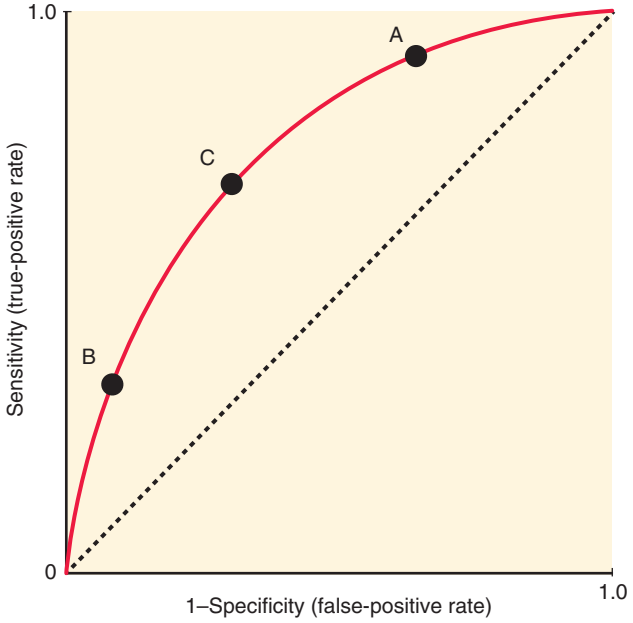


Figure 7-4 **Receiver operator characteristic curve: effect of varying the cutoff value for separating disease from no disease (also see Fig. 7-3).**

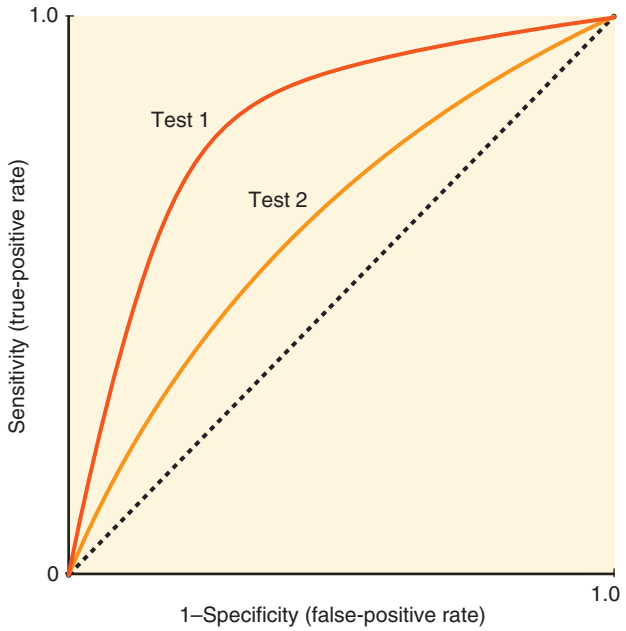


Figure 7-5 **Receiver operator characteristic curves for two tests.** Note that Test 1 is always superior to Test 2 because it has higher sensitivity than Test 2 (i.e., it is always above and to the left of Test 2).

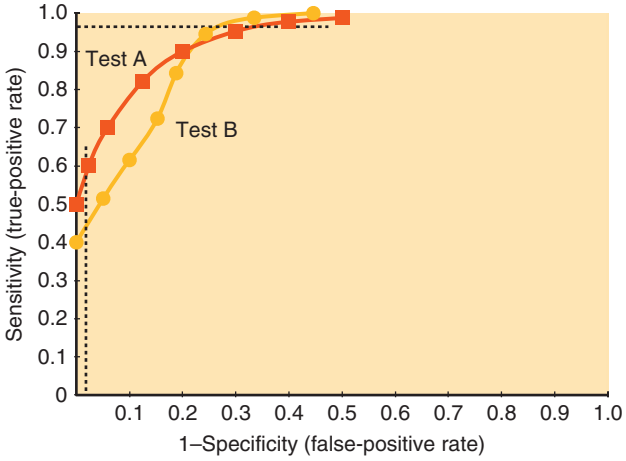


Figure 7-6 **Receiver operator characteristic curves for two tests.** Note that the curves cross. See text for interpretation.

TABLE 7-10
Positivity Criterion

Cutoff	% Disease with This Value or Greater on Assay	% Without Disease with This Value or Greater on Assay	LR-Positive Test
R1—barely positive	5	30	0.17
R2—weakly positive	20	40	0.5
R3—intermediate positive	20	15	1.33
R4—strongly positive	25	10	2.50
R5—very strongly positive	30	5	6.00

The characteristics of a theoretical test for a disease with a prevalence of 10% are shown. Possible cutoff values for this assay ranging from a barely positive reading to a very strongly positive reading are denoted as R1 to R5, respectively. The percentage of patients with and without disease at or above each cutoff is also provided. The likelihood ratio (LR) for a positive test for R1–R5 is calculated from the information in the table (see explanation in text).

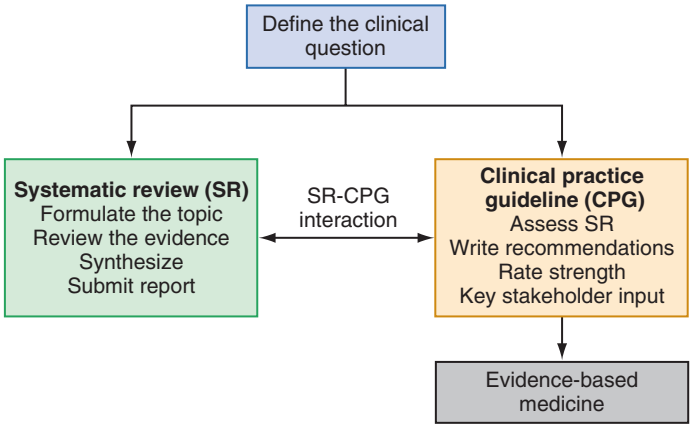


Figure 7-7 Flowchart showing the process of evidence-based medicine. The development of systematic reviews (SR) informs the group developing the clinical practice guidelines (CPGs). The SRs may be developed independently or specifically to inform the CPG group.

In determining which cutoff will serve as the positivity criterion, a finite list of possible cutoffs is generated, and an LR for a positive test is calculated for each cutoff value. Next, the consequences of each of the four possible testing outcomes (TP, TN, FP, and FN) are assigned numeric estimates with respect to some outcome (e.g., morbidity, mortality, cost). For example, the clinical consequence of missing propionic acidemia on newborn screening by tandem mass spectroscopy is an increased risk of metabolic decompensation before diagnosis, with resultant developmental delay and long-term disability. One might estimate the consequence of this FN as 0.1; quality of life (QOL) lived in this state of misdiagnosis has 10% of the QOL lived without disease. It is important to note that the consequence of TP may not always be 100%, or equivalent to healthy life. Indeed, for propionic acidemia, even neonatal diagnosis may not completely alleviate the burden of disease. A possible estimate of the consequence of a TP on morbidity would be 80%. Similar estimates are determined for the remaining two outcomes. Values for the estimated consequences, as well as prevalence estimates of the disease, are then used in the equation that follows, where *c*TN, cFP, *c*TP, and cFN are the estimated consequences of each diagnostic category, and $P(D)$ is disease prevalence and $P(\bar{D})$ is 1 – prevalence. The $LR_{threshold}$ is the optimal assay cutoff.

$$LR_{tbresbold} = \frac{P(\bar{D})}{P(D)} \times \frac{cTN - cFP}{cTP - cFN}$$

From the list of possible analyte concentrations, one can now select the cutoff that most closely approximates the $LR_{threshold}$. In this way, one may select a test cutoff that not only optimizes the discriminatory power of the assay but also fits the clinical need that the test is meant to address.

Consider a theoretical test for a disease shown in Table 7-10 with a prevalence (pretest probability) of 10%. R1 to R5 represent possible assay cutoffs, where R1 represents a barely positive result and R5 a strong positive test result. Table 7-10 shows the percentage of diseased patients (defined by a "gold standard") with a test result greater than the cutoffs defined as R1 to R5. In addition, the percentage of patients without disease at each cutoff is shown. As the value for the cutoff increases from R1 to R5, the percentage of patients with disease increases. Using this information, an LR for a positive test can be calculated for each cutoff level.

Next we consider the consequences of an FN/FP and TP/TN result on the assay in terms of QOL. It is important to note that consequences can be estimated in terms of a variety of outcomes, including cost, excess mortality, or even cost-benefit, and each of these will result in a different positivity criterion. Assume that a missed diagnosis (FN) results in a QOL that is 70% that of a healthy person. Furthermore, assume that an FP result will lead to an unnecessary workup and anxiety, with a QOL that is 93% that of a healthy person. Finally, QOL for a TP living with a correctly diagnosed disease may be considered as 80% the QOL of a healthy person. Finally, a TN person experiences 95% the QOL as a fully healthy, untested person. Values for consequences are generally estimated from the literature or from expert opinion. By plugging the values for consequences into the above formula for $LR_{threshold}$, we obtain a value of 1.8. In other words, the assay is most efficient, in terms of maximized quality of life, at an LR+ of 1.8. From Table 7-10, the positivity criterion for this assay should be between R3 and R4, and closer to R3.

EVIDENCE-BASED MEDICINE

Historically, medical decisions have relied heavily on clinical experience, expert opinions, and other subjective or uncontrolled sources of information. This has also been true in laboratory medicine, where often an inadequate foundation of evidence is found to support existing practices (Price, 2000; 2003). There may be no clear understanding of why a test is ordered or what clinical question it is trying to answer. Alternatively, there may be no information on whether or how a test affects morbidity, mortality, cost, patient satisfaction, risk, and quality of life (Bruns, 2001). For example, it is not clear whether point-of-care testing improves patient diagnosis and discharge in the emergency department (Kendall et al, 1998; Bruns, 2001; Asha et al, 2014). Studies of clinical effectiveness in the clinical laboratory are hard to find because they are expensive and difficult to design (Price, 2000; McQueen, 2001). In addition, laboratory consultation is often based on the tradition of clinical and laboratory experience and less on a systematic approach to determining the current best evidence. In contrast to traditional approaches, evidence-based medicine (EBM) is a process by which medical decisions can be made by using as many objective tools as possible. This, in turn, can help reduce the uncertainty of medical decision making. EBM is a systematic practice that integrates the most current and best evidence with clinical expertise and patient preferences when making medical decisions (Sackett et al, 2000). EBM places emphasis on critically analyzing information from the literature and developing knowledge for medical practice (Sackett, 1983; Sackett et al, 1991; Elstein, 2004; Ludmerer, 2004). EBM encourages the cultivation of continuous learning and sharing of medical knowledge at all levels of training from medical student to attending physician (Ludmerer, 2004). Since the time of its introduction, EBM has grown to become a key tool for all health care providers.

Practicing EBM consists of five steps (Price, 2000, 2003; Fig. 7-7): ask a clinical question based on a patient encounter; acquire information by searching resources; analyze and critically evaluate the information and reach a conclusion that answers the clinical question; apply the information to individual patients; and audit effectiveness and monitor the literature.

A clinical encounter of a patient with a health care provider generally results in a clinical question that necessitates one or more laboratory tests—whether for screening, diagnosis, prognosis, or monitoring of treatment. The question that is developed should be specific to a decision that must be made for that patient. The question compares an intervention such as ordering a diagnostic test versus accepted practice. The clinical question can be described in four parts and summarized with the acronym PICO (Sackett, 2000; Elstein, 2004):

Problem (P): What is the problem of interest for the specific patient?
Intervention (I): What intervention is being considered?
Comparison (C): To what alternatives can the intervention be compared?
Outcome (O): Is there a quantifiable clinical outcome that can be measured?

For example, a laboratory director is asked to provide instrumentation for diabetes screening at an employee health fair. The clinical question can be summarized as follows:

Problem: Is a portable glucometer and fingerstick blood sample appropriate for population screening for diabetes? (Sturgeon & Diamandis, 2010)
Intervention/Test: Portable fingerstick glucose
Comparison: Glucose measurement on venous plasma in an accredited laboratory
Outcome: Predictive value of fingerstick glucose in screening for diabetes

A second example might be the following: A 58-year-old man with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) undergoes liver resection.

Problem: Should serum alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) be routinely monitored after liver resection for HCC recurrence? (National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry, 2011)
Intervention: Serum AFP measured after liver resection
Comparison: Serum AFP not measured after liver resection
Outcome: Predictive value of serum AFP to detect HCC recurrence and survival rates

The strategy for answering these questions must be determined before searching the resources to prevent the introduction of selection bias. Information sources include textbooks, journals, electronic textbooks, and summary journals. Journal articles provide more up-to-date information than textbooks, but they can also be outdated by the time the articles have been written, accepted, and published. Randomized clinical controlled trials (RCTs) that are double-blinded are the most valuable of the journal articles because they are the least biased. However, RCTs are still highly dependent on the methods employed in the blinding and treatment of subjects (Lijmer et al, 1999).

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS OF CLINICAL EFFECTIVENESS RESEARCH AND CLINICAL PRACTICE GUIDELINES

Patients assume that their physician bases his or her diagnostic testing and treatment recommendations on EBM. However, practitioners cannot stay abreast of the rapidly expanding literature, which can be of variable quality, and the labor-intensive steps required answering each clinical question using EBM. Therefore, practitioners are increasingly turning to systematic reviews (SRs) for a summary of the current best evidence and to clinical practice guidelines (CPGs) for diagnostic testing and treatment recommendations. However, how does a clinician determine which SRs and CPGs are trustworthy? The quality of SRs can be variable due to developer bias, lack of scientific rigor, and subsequent incorrect conclusions. CPGs can be affected by the quality of the SRs used to inform the CPGs, particularly with respect to strength of the evidence and recommendation appraisals; unmanaged conflicts of interest (COI); and overall failure to use rigorous methodologies in CPG development. Thus, the Medicare Improvements for Patients and Providers Act of 2008 called for the Institute of Medicine of the National Academies (IOM) to conduct a study to identify the standards for conducting SRs of clinical effectiveness research. The goal was to ensure the publication of trustworthy, objective, transparent, and scientifically valid SRs. In addition, IOM was tasked to identify the best methods for developing CPGs to ensure that CPG development groups are objective and use scientifically valid methods. Based on the IOM studies, a common set of standards addressing the group structure, transparent process, scientific rigor, and reporting of SRs and CPGs was published. In other words, the IOM published a "guideline for guidelines" (IOM, 2011).

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS

SRs identify, select, assess, and synthesize the findings of the relevant literature and clarify what is known and not known about the potential benefits and harms of medical interventions. They are increasingly being used to guide clinicians who want to practice EBM. Professional medical societies and other organizations that develop CPGs rely on SRs to inform their recommendations. An SR of comparative effectiveness research (CER) is a specific type of SR that analyzes the two or more medical interventions (e.g., fingerstick vs. plasma glucose) for the same disease. For example, an SR of CER in transfusion medicine may compare plasma versus four factor prothrombin complex concentrates for the treatment of intracranial bleeding in a patient requiring warfarin reversal.

The IOM standards for producing an SR (IOM, 2011) are shown in Box 7-1. After formulating the question of the SR, a multidisciplinary team consisting of the relevant experts and key stakeholders (e.g., professional organizations) is assembled. Management of conflicts of interest must begin at the start of the process with full transparency. After having defined searching methods, the studies are analyzed and synthesized using a qualitative, or preferably a quantitative, method such as meta-analysis (a statistical technique to integrate results from multiple studies). The group then publishes the SR for peer review and then may publish it as a standalone document, or it can be used to specifically inform a group developing a CPG. The Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine (http://www.cebm.net), the Cochrane Collaboration/Cochrane Library (http://www.cochrane.org), and Up-to-Date (http://www.uptodate.com/) are sources that present summarized information. The Evidence-Based Medicine (ebm.bmjjournals.com) series of journals are also an excellent resource for up-to-date SRs.

CLINICAL PRACTICE GUIDELINES

Clinical practice guidelines are statements, usually by a governmental agency or professional organization, that include recommendations intended to optimize patient care, make clinical practice more uniform, establish performance measures, improve patient outcomes, improve patient safety, and reduce medical costs. They are usually informed by one or more SRs. The number of CPGs has been rapidly growing; the National Guideline Clearinghouse (NGC) database now lists 2727 CPGs (www.guideline.gov). The mission of the NGC, an initiative of the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, is to provide health care practitioners, hospitals, and insurers with an accessible location for the dissemination of CPGs. Similar to SRs, CPGs have highly variable quality. The IOM published Standards for CPGs are shown in Box 7-2 (Institute of Medicine, 2011).

The process of developing a CPG starts with selecting a group of experts and key stakeholders who will develop the CPG. It is important to

BOX 7-1

IOM Key Standards for Systematic Reviews

- Establish a team with appropriate expertise and experience.
- Ensure end user and stakeholder input.
- Manage bias and conflict of interest.
- Formulate the topic.
- Develop a systematic review protocol.
- Conduct a comprehensive systematic search for evidence.
- Screen and select studies; critically appraise.
- Use a prespecified method to evaluate the body of evidence.
- Conduct a qualitative and/or quantitative analysis (e.g., meta-analysis).
- Prepare a draft, obtain peer reviews, and publish with free public access.

From IOM (2011).

BOX 7-2

IOM Key Standards for Clinical Practice Guidelines

- Establish transparency of how the CPG is going to be developed and funded.
- Manage conflicts of interest.
- CPG development group should be composed of a variety of methodological experts, clinicians, and patients served.
- Use systematic reviews that meet the IOM standards for SRs.
- Establish the foundations for and rating strength of recommendations.
- Provide recommendations in a standardized form; clinical flexibility should be built in.
- Prepare a draft, obtain peer reviews, and publish with free public access.
- Regularly update as new literature is published.

From IOM (2011).

BOX 7-3

Rating Schemes for Systematic Reviews and Clinical Practice Guidelines

Example of Rating Scheme for Level of Evidence

I. Evidence from a single high-powered, prospective-controlled study that is specifically designed to test marker data or evidence from a meta-analysis, pooled analysis, or overview of level II or III studies
II. Evidence from a study in which marker data are determined in relation to prospective therapeutic trials that are performed to test therapeutic hypotheses but not specifically designed to test marker utility
III. Evidence from large prospective studies
IV. Evidence from small retrospective studies
V. Evidence from small pilot studies

Example of Rating Scheme for Strength of Recommendation

A. High: Further research is very unlikely to change the panel's confidence in the estimate of effect.
B. Moderate: Further research is likely to have an important impact on the panel's confidence in the estimate of effect and is likely to change the estimate.
C. Low: Further research is very likely to have an important effect on the panel's confidence in the estimate of effect and is likely to change the estimate.
D. Very Low: Any estimate of effect is very uncertain.

Level of evidence from Sturgeon & Diamandis (2010); strength of recommendation from National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry (2011).

manage conflicts of interest within the CPG group and the SR group, if one is specifically selected to inform the CPG. It is indisputable that a trustworthy CPG should be based on high-quality SRs based on the IOM standards. The summary of the CPG should include the scope of the CPG (e.g., objective, interventions considered, major outcomes considered), methodology (e.g., ratings for strength of evidence, ratings for strength of recommendations), major recommendations, and the risk benefits of implementing the recommendations. For example, the *Guidelines on the Use of Therapeutic Apheresis in Clinical Practice* provides the details of the systematic approach for the SR and CPG, uniform criteria to assign a category for the indications for therapeutic apheresis (i.e., Categories I through IV), and an assignment of the strength of the recommendation (i.e., 1A-C or 2A-C) (Schwartz et al, 2013). In the use of tumor markers in liver, bladder, cervical, and gastric cancers, the strength of the evidence and the strength of the recommendations are well described (Sturgeon & Diamandis, 2010) (Box 7-3). Finally, there should be a comment period, and it should be published, ideally with free access.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Defining, establishing, and verifying reference intervals in the clinical laboratory—Approved guideline, 3rd ed. CLSI document C280A3c.* Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, 940 West Valley Road, Suite 1400, Wayne, Pennsylvania 19087-1898, 2008.

A reference procedure for determining the reference range for a clinical laboratory test.

Galen RS, Gambino SR: *Beyond normality: The predictive value and efficiency of medical diagnoses*, New York, 1975, John Wiley & Sons.

This book serves as an introduction to understanding the interpretation of a laboratory test. The basics of diagnostic test accuracy and the predictive value of tests are well outlined.

Institute of Medicine of the National Academies: *Clinical practice guidelines we can trust. Standards for developing trustworthy clinical practice guidelines (CPGs)*, 2011. Retrieved from http://iom.edu/cpgstandards.

The published standards by the Institute of Medicine for the Systematic Review of Clinical Effectiveness Research and Clinical Practice Guidelines. These standards are important for determining whether an SR or a CPG is trustworthy.

The Joint Commission: *2015 Laboratory National Patient Safety Goals*. Retrieved from http://www.jointcommission.org/assets/1/6/2015_LAB_NPSG_ER.pdf.

Joint Commission requires that laboratories and hospitals address the National Patient Safety Goals, which are revised every year.

McQueen MJ: Overview of evidence-based medicine: Challenges for evidence-based laboratory medicine, *Clin Chem* 47(8):1536–1546, 2001.

General overview of the practice of EBM as it relates to the laboratory, including examples and useful resources.

Myron JA, Hyloft PP, Whicher JT, et al, on behalf of the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry and Laboratory Medicine Committee on Plasma Proteins: Reference intervals for serum proteins: Similarities and differences between adult Caucasian and Asian Indian males in Yorkshire, UK, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 42:792–799, 2004.

An example of different reference ranges between two reference populations.

National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry (NACB): *Guidelines and recommendation for laboratory analysis in the diagnosis and management of diabetes mellitus*, Washington, D.C., 2011, National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry (NACB), p 104.

Example of the development of a clinical practice guideline according to IOM standards for the laboratory aspects of testing for types I and II diabetes.

Sackett DL, Straus SE, Richardson WS, et al: *Evidence-based medicine: How to practice and teach EBM*, ed 2, London, 2000, Churchill Livingstone.

Comprehensive, easy-to-read primer on all facets of EBM that includes many examples.

Schwartz J, Winters JL, Padmanabhan A, et al: Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice: Evidence-based approach from the writing committee of the American Society of Apheresis—The sixth special issue, *J Clin Apher* 28:145–284, 2013.

Example of the development of a clinical practice guideline according to IOM standards for the treatment of diseases with apheresis.

Sturgeon CM, Diamandis E, editors: *Use of tumor markers in liver, bladder, cervical and gastic cancers*, Washington, D.C., 2010, National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry (NACB), p 57.

Example of the development of a clinical practice guideline according to IOM standards for the laboratory aspects of tumor marker testing.

Zweig MH, Campbell G: Receiver-operating characteristic (ROC) plots: A fundamental evaluation tool in clinical medicine, *Clin Chem* 39(4):561–577, 1993.

An in-depth article on the concept, use, and application of ROC curves in clinical testing. A comparison with other measures of test accuracy is part of the discussion.

REFERENCES

Asha SE, Chan AC, Walter E, et al: Impact of point-of-care devices on emergency department patient processing times compared with central laboratory testing of blood samples: A randomized controlled trial and cost-effectiveness analysis, *Emerg Med* 31:714–719, 2014.

Bakchoul T, Giptner A, Najaoui A, et al: Prospective evaluation of PF4/heparin immunoassays for the diagnosis of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *J Thromb Haemost* 7:1260–1265, 2009.

Baloch Z, Carayon P, Conte-Devolx B, et al: Laboratory medicine practice guidelines. Laboratory support for the diagnosis and monitoring of thyroid disease, *Thyroid* 13(1):3–126, 2003.

Bowen R, Chan Y, Coehn HA, et al: Effect of blood collection tubes on total triiodothyronine and other laboratory assays, *Clin Chem* 51(2):424–433, 2005.

Briggs CHP, Grant D, Staves J, et al: Performance evaluation of the Sysmex XE-2100TM, automated haematology analyser, *Sysmex Journal International* 9:113–119, 1999.

Bruns DE: Laboratory-related outcomes in healthcare, *Clin Chem* 47(8):1547–1552, 2001.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Defining, establishing, and verifying reference intervals in the clinical laboratory: Approved guideline*, ed 3, Wayne, PA, 2008, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, p 59.

Elstein AS: On the origins and development of evidence-based medicine and medical decision making, *Inflamm Res* 53(Suppl 2):S184–S189, 2004.

Fossati P, Prencipe L: Serum triglycerides determined colorimetrically with an enzyme that produces hydrogen peroxide, *Clin Chem* 28(10):2077–2080, 1982.

Fujimoto K: Principles of measurement in hematology analyzers manufactured by Sysmex Corporation, *Sysmex Journal International* 9:31–40, 1999.

Grundy SM, Cleeman JI, Merz CN, et al: Implications of recent clinical trials for the National Cholesterol Education Program Adult Treatment Panel III guidelines, *Circulation* 110(2):227–239, 2004.

Institute of Medicine of the National Academies: *Finding what works in health care. Standards for systematic reviews*, 2011. Retrieved from http://iom.edu/srstandards.

Jaffe AS: Third universal definition of myocardial infarction, *Clin Biochem* 46(1–2):1–4, 2013.

Kazmierczak SC: Laboratory quality control: Using patient data to assess analytical performance, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 41(5):617–627, 2003.

Kendall J, Reeves B, Clancy M: Point of care testing: Randomised controlled trial of clinical outcome, *BMJ* 316(7137):1052–1057, 1998.

Kroll MH, Elin RJ: Interference with clinical laboratory analyses, *Clin Chem* 40(11 Pt 1):1996–2005, 1994.

Lacher DA, Hughes JP, Carroll MD: Estimate of biological variation of laboratory analytes based on the third national health and nutrition examination survey, *Clin Chem* 51(2):450–452, 2005.

Ladenson JH: Patients as their own controls: Use of the computer to identify "laboratory error", *Clin Chem* 21(11):1648–1653, 1975.

Levey AS, Bosch JP, Lewis JB, et al: A more accurate method to estimate glomerular filtration rate from serum creatinine: A new prediction equation, *Ann Int Med* 130(6):461–470, 1999.

Lijmer JG, Mol BW, Heisterkamp S, et al: Empirical evidence of design-related bias in studies of diagnostic tests, *JAMA* 282(11):1061–1066, 1999.

Ludmerer KM: Learner-centered medical education, *N Engl J Med* 351(12):1163–1164, 2004.

Myers GL, Miller WG, Coresh J, et al: Recommendations for improving serum creatinine measurement: A report from the laboratory working group of the National Kidney Disease Education Program, *Clin Chem* 52(1):5–18, 2006.

National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry (NACB): *Guidelines and recommendation for laboratory analysis in the diagnosis and management of diabetes mellitus*, Washington, D.C., 2011, National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry (NACB), p 104.

Price CP: Evidence-based laboratory medicine: Supporting decision making, *Clin Chem* 46(8 Pt 1):1041–1050, 2000.

Price CP: Application of the principles of evidence-based medicine to laboratory medicine, *Clin Chim Acta* 333(2):147–154, 2003.

Ruzicka K, Veitl M, Thalhammer-Scherrer R, et al: The new hematology analyzer Sysmex XE-2100: Performance evaluation of a novel white blood cell differential technology, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 125(3):391–396, 2001.

Sackett DL: Interpretation of diagnostic data: 1. How to do it with pictures, *Can Med Assoc J* 129(5):429–432, 1983.

Sackett DL, Haynes RB, Tugwell P, et al: *Clinical epidemiology: A basic science for clinical medicine*, ed 2, Boston/Toronto/London, 1991, Little and Brown.

Schwartz J, Winters JL, Padmanabhan A, et al: Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice—Evidence-based approach from the writing committee of the American Society of Apheresis: The sixth special issue, *J Clin Apher* 28:145–284, 2013.

Sturgeon CM, Diamandis E, editors: *Use of tumor markers in liver, bladder, cervical and gastric cancers*, Washington, D.C., 2010, National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry (NACB), p 57.

Thalhammer-Scherrer R, Knobl P, Korninger L, et al: Automated five-part white blood cell differential counts: Efficiency of software-generated white blood cell suspect flags of the hematology analyzers Sysmex SE-9000, Sysmex NE-8000, and Coulter STKS, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 121(6):573–577, 1997.

Vermeer HJ, Thomassen E, de Jonge N: Automated processing of serum indices used for interference detection by the laboratory information system, *Clin Chem* 51(1):244–247, 2005.

Victor JV, Patole S, Joseph HJH, et al: Agreement between paired blood gas values in samples transported either by a pneumatic tube system or by human courier, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 49(8):1303–1309, 2011.

Zhao Y, Lv G: Influence of temperature and storage duration on measurement of activated partial thromboplastin time, D-dimers, fibrinogen, prothrombin time, and thrombin time in citrate-anticoagulated whole blood specimens, *Int J Lab Hematol* 35(5):566–570, 2013.

CHAPTER 8

INTERPRETING LABORATORY RESULTS

Matthew R. Pincus, Naif Z. Abraham Jr.

INTERPRETING AND CORRELATING ABNORMAL LABORATORY VALUES, 84
General Considerations, 84
Fundamental Principles in Interpretation of Values, 84

ABNORMALITIES IN THE HEMATOLOGY PROFILE, 85
Anemias, 85
Quantitative White Blood Cell Abnormalities, 88
Coagulation Disorders, 89

ABNORMALITIES IN CLINICAL CHEMISTRY: CHEMICAL PATHOLOGY, 90
Electrolyte Abnormalities, 90
Renal Disease, 92
Blood Gas Abnormalities, 93
Glucose Abnormalities, 94
Other Abnormal Laboratory Findings in Diabetes Mellitus, 95
Liver Function Tests, 95
Cardiac Function Tests, 96
Skeletal Muscle Function, 97
Pancreatic Function Tests, 97
Markers for Inflammatory Conditions, 97
Endocrine Function Testing, 97

EXAMPLES OF CLINICAL CASES WITH CLINICOPATHOLOGICAL CORRELATIONS, 99
Case A: Electrolyte Disorder, 99
Case B: Complex Electrolyte Disorder, 99
Case C: Disorders Related to Liver Failure, 100
Case D: Severe Rhabdomyolysis, 100

SELECTED REFERENCES, 101

KEY POINTS

- Accurate differential diagnoses can be made from a systematic study of the laboratory profiles of patients in a large majority of cases.
- There are basically four types of anemia: iron deficiency, anemia of chronic disease, hemolytic anemia, and macrocytic/nutritionally deficient anemia. These can be readily distinguished from one another both by the hematologic profile and simple laboratory testing.
- By examining the urinary sodium, potassium, and osmolarity, the causes of hyponatremia and hypernatremia can be readily determined.
- Liver function tests can distinguish among six different diseases of the liver: hepatitis, cirrhosis, biliary disease, space-occupying lesions of the liver, passive congestion, and fulminant hepatic failure.
- Renal failure can be readily diagnosed by observing elevated BUN (urea) and creatinine; it is possible to pinpoint the site of renal failure—that is, glomerular or tubular—from the ratio of serum to urine osmolality.
- Blood gas results allow determination of the causes of metabolic versus respiratory acidosis or alkalosis; there is a critical relationship between the partial pressure of oxygen and carbon dioxide such that, in respiratory diseases, high levels of carbon dioxide block oxygenation of venous blood, leading to respiratory crisis.
- Elevation of cardiac troponin in serum, in the proper clinical context, is diagnostic of myocardial infarction.
- Elevations of serum C-reactive protein indicate inflammatory disease.
- Elevations of serum amylase and lipase point to acute pancreatitis.
- Two types of endocrine disease are discussed: thyroid and adrenal. Serum levels of T4 (or, better, free T4) and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) can be used to diagnose primary or secondary hypothyroidism or hyperthyroidism; serum levels of cortisol and adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) can be used to diagnose primary or secondary hypoadrenalism or hyperadrenalism.

INTERPRETING AND CORRELATING ABNORMAL LABORATORY VALUES

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The major purpose of performing analyte determinations in the clinical laboratory is to aid in the diagnosis and management of disease and in health assessment. In this regard, the clinical pathologist is often called upon as a consultant to explain abnormal laboratory values, especially those that do not seem to correlate with one another, and to recommend or even to order laboratory tests that may lead to the correct diagnosis in the workup of patients for particular medical problems. In addition, evaluation of laboratory test results on individual patients by the clinical pathologist cannot only reveal the (infrequent) occurrence of laboratory errors but can help in the selection of appropriate, cost-effective tests from a wide variety of increasingly complex test choices (Witte et al, 1997; Dighe et al, 2001; Bonini et al, 2002).

For evaluation of test results, the laboratory computer is an invaluable aid. Virtually all such systems perform daily checks for patient values that lie significantly outside of their established reference intervals or that have undergone large changes over a 24-hour period. These are often reported as "failed delta checks." Thus patients with significant laboratory findings can be identified.

This chapter presents an approach to the interpretation of laboratory values that will enable laboratorians to aid in the establishment of clinical diagnoses and to assist in clinical management. This discussion is by no means comprehensive and cannot possibly cover every conceivable illness afflicting patients. Rather, this presentation is concerned with general approaches to interpreting abnormal values and discussion of the most common causes of such findings, so that the reader has a framework for interpreting abnormal values.

The reader may prefer to complete the Clinical Chemistry (Part 2) and Hematology (Part 4) sections of this book before reading this chapter, which gives an overview of both of these vital diagnostic areas. Alternatively, the reader may decide to read this chapter before the several chapters on chemistry and hematology to benefit from the overview here.

FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES IN INTERPRETATION OF VALUES

Before embarking on a discussion of specific conditions giving rise to abnormal values, certain precepts should always be followed:

1. Never rely on a single out-of-reference range value to make a diagnosis. It is vital to establish a trend in values. A single sodium value of, for example, 130 mEq/L does not necessarily indicate hyponatremia. This single abnormal value may be spurious and may reflect such factors as improper phlebotomy technique, laboratory variability, and so on. Rather, a series of low sodium values in successive serum samples from a given patient does indicate this condition. Thus it is vital to follow trends in particular values.
2. Osler's rule. Especially if the patient is under the age of 60 years, try to attribute all abnormal laboratory findings to a single cause. Only if there is no possible way to correlate all abnormal findings should the possibility of multiple diagnoses be entertained.

ABNORMALITIES IN THE HEMATOLOGY PROFILE

Often, in laboratory reports, the first section contains the hematology profile, including the CBC or complete blood count. Comprehensive discussions of clinical hematopathology are given in Part 4. Here, we discuss very basic patterns of abnormalities to provide an overall reference frame for interpreting values and for the ordering of further examinations. Though this part of the book is concerned with clinical chemistry or chemical pathology, we discuss the hematology profile because the interpretation of hematopathologic results often depends on the results of quantitative determinations performed in clinical chemistry.

ANEMIAS

Anemia, a common hematologic disorder, is defined pathophysiologically as a decrease in the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood. All oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood is due to the binding of oxygen to hemoglobin contained uniquely in red blood cells. Because anemia can cause tissue hypoxia, it often produces such symptoms as fainting, fatigue, pallor, and difficulty in breathing.

Practically, the best indicator for this condition is a low red blood cell count or number of red blood cells per volume of whole blood. Although the reference range for the red cell count varies with age, sex, and population, it encompasses values from around 4 to 6×10^6 red blood cells per cubic millimeter (cu mm) or microliter. This range may change somewhat depending on population. Red blood cell counts below the lower limit of the reference range suggest the presence of anemia. In addition, red blood cells occupy a well-defined range in terms of the percent of the volume that they occupy of whole blood or the hematocrit. Generally, normal adult hematocrit values range from about 36% to 45% (normal values for females are generally slightly lower than those for males). In addition, the concentration of hemoglobin in whole blood is about 12 to 15 g/dL or approximately 33 to 36 g/dL in red blood cells—that is, the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration. Normal values are also dependent on patient age and altitude of residence. Normally, the hematocrit is about three times the value of the hemoglobin concentration, which, in turn, is about three times the value of the red blood cell count.

If anemia has been diagnosed, it is then mandatory to determine the cause of the anemia. An excellent history and physical examination are required for appropriate test selection, diagnosis, and the best possible patient care and treatment. In addition, a review of the peripheral blood film with respect to red and white cell morphology is often helpful.

To narrow further the differential diagnosis and to facilitate appropriate test selection, a number of classification schemes for anemia have been developed, with no single ideal scheme available. A particularly useful approach utilizes the common red cell indices of mean corpuscular volume (MCV), measured in femtoliters (fL), or 1×10^{-15} L, in conjunction with the red cell distribution width (RDW) and the reticulocyte count (percent reticulocytosis) or reticulocyte production index (RPI). A further aid in diagnosis is the chromicity of the red cells—that is, the intensity of the red color of the cells due to intracellular hemoglobin. The chromicity is measured quantitatively by the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration or MCHC. Taken together, these indices help to form a working hypothesis for the underlying cause of the anemia.

Electronic determination of MCV directly from red cell distribution data allows for classification on the basis of red blood cell size as macrocytic (MCV generally >100 fL), microcytic (MCV generally <80 fL), or normocytic (MCV generally between 80 and 100 fL). The sizes (volumes) of red cells vary within a certain range in which the number of cells of particular volumes form a bell-shaped or Gaussian distribution (see Chapter 9); the standard deviation of the cell volumes divided by the mean cell volume gives what is called the red cell distribution width, or RDW, measured as a percent. As it happens, the RDW is a parameter that helps to further classify an anemia because it reflects the variation of red blood cell size. RDW generally varies between about 12 and 17 and is dependent on the patient's age, sex, and ethnic subgroup. It can be helpful in differentiating causes of microcytosis, because moderate to severe iron deficiency anemia is associated with an increased RDW, whereas thalassemia and anemia of chronic disease (ACD) are associated with a normal RDW.

Peripheral blood reticulocytosis is a measure of bone marrow response in the face of anemia. A similar measure, the reticulocyte proliferation index, or RPI, corrects the reticulocyte count with respect to the proportion of reticulocytes present in a patient without anemia and the premature release of reticulocytes into the peripheral circulation. Bone marrow response to anemia may be appropriate (hyperproliferative), with an RPI over 3 generally indicating marrow red cell hyperproliferation; however, the anemia may be due to defective red blood cell production or marrow failure (hypoproliferative), which is generally indicated by an RPI less than 2. Thus, although these red cell indices are not pathognomonic of the cause of a particular type of anemia, the combination of MCV, RDW, and RPI examined together will often significantly narrow the differential diagnosis and facilitate further test selection. Table 8-1 illustrates common examples of anemia and their diagnostic workup using these red cell indices as well as other helpful analytic abnormalities.

TABLE 8-1
Common Types of Anemias and Their Diagnostic Workups*

Anemia	Cause	Common Analyte Abnormality
1. Hypoproliferative, microcytic	Iron deficiency	Low ferritin Increased IBC Decreased serum iron Reduced Fe/TIBC ratio Generally increased RDW
2. Hypoproliferative, microcytic	Anemia of chronic disease	Generally high ferritin Normal IBC Decreased serum iron Normal Fe/TIBC ratio Generally normal RDW
3. Hyperproliferative, normocytic	Hemolytic anemia	Schistocytosis Increased reticulocytes Low haptoglobin Elevated carboxyhemoglobin Elevated LD and potassium Elevated indirect bilirubin Generally increased RDW
4. Hypoproliferative, normocytic	Aplastic anemia	Leukopenia Thrombocytopenia Hypocellular bone marrow Generally normal RDW
5. Hypoproliferative, normocytic	Renal failure	Elevated BUN and creatinine Low erythropoietin Burr cells may be present Generally normal RDW
6. Hypoproliferative, macrocytic		
A. Megaloblastic	Vitamin B_{12} and/or folate deficiency	Low vitamin B_{12} and/or folate Hyperlobulated polymorphonuclear leukocytes Macro-ovalocytes Increased RDW
B. Nonmegaloblastic	Hypothyroidism	Elevated TSH Normal RDW

*Low is equivalent to depressed, and high is equivalent to elevated. Ferritin, haptoglobin, LD, bilirubin, BUN, creatinine, erythropoietin, TSH, and T4 are all expressed as concentrations. All of these analytes are measured in serum.
IBC, Iron-binding capacity; *TIBC,* total IBC; *RDW,* red cell distribution width; *Fe,* iron; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase; *BUN,* blood urea nitrogen; *TSH,* thyroid-stimulating hormone.

Microcytic Anemia

Common microcytic anemias include iron deficiency anemia (IDA) and the thalassemias. Some hemoglobinopathies and the anemia of chronic disease (ACD) may also be microcytic. In our discussion, we focus on iron deficiency anemia and the anemia of chronic disease, a common differential diagnosis for patients with microcytic anemia. Both anemias appear to be disorders involving iron metabolism.

In IDA, there is a primary deficiency of iron available to the red cell (usually due to blood loss, but other causes include dietary deficiency, malabsorption, and pregnancy); chronic blood loss should always lead to further investigation because it is commonly associated with malignancy. ACD, however, appears to be due to defective iron utilization/metabolism

and is associated with chronic nonhematologic disorders such as chronic infections, connective tissue disorders, malignancy, and renal, thyroid, and pituitary disorders. Because iron levels in red cells are low, hemoglobin levels are also low in both of these conditions. Thus the MCHC mentioned above tends to be low, giving rise to what is termed a hypochromic (low red color in red cells or low MCHC), microcytic (low MCV) anemia.

To distinguish between IDA and ACD, a number of different laboratory measurements are very useful in addition to the RDW. The diagnosis is typically made using additional serum or whole blood laboratory tests. However, because IDA is always accompanied by loss of iron that is stored bound to the protein ferritin in bone marrow macrophages, the diagnosis can always in principle be made with a bone marrow biopsy with an iron stain—that is, nitroprusside—that shows the absence of marrow iron. This procedure is, of course, invasive and should only be performed as a last resort.

Serum Ferritin Levels

Normally, there is an equilibrium between intracellular and extracellular ferritin. The lower the stored iron becomes, the lower the intracellular ferritin is, and, consequently, the lower the extracellular ferritin becomes. The level of extracellular ferritin can be directly measured by determining the serum ferritin level, which is readily and accurately performed on serum aliquots, using ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) techniques, described in Chapter 43. Overall, therefore, serum ferritin levels give an excellent measure of available iron stores, noninvasively. Because, in ACD, iron stores are abundant, serum ferritin levels are characteristically normal to elevated. In contrast, in IDA, in which iron stores become depleted, serum ferritin levels are characteristically decreased. Thus serum ferritin level is one assay that can be used in differentiating IDA from ACD.

One caveat in using serum ferritin values to provide this distinction is the fact that ferritin also happens to be an acute phase reactant. Acute phase reactants are proteins (discussed in Chapter 19) that rise in response to an acute process, usually an acute inflammatory condition. So if a patient has an acute infection, the serum ferritin level may be spuriously elevated. The net effect may be a ferritin in the reference interval. Usually, in IDA, accompanied by an acute process, this level is in the low reference range.

Use of Serum Iron and Iron-Binding Capacity

In addition to ferritin levels, serum iron and serum iron-binding capacity (IBC) can be measured. On average, serum iron is, of course, reduced in iron deficiency anemia and normal or sometimes low in the anemia of chronic disease. The IBC is a direct measure of the protein transferrin, which transports iron from the gut to iron storage sites in bone marrow. In iron deficiency anemia, the serum iron is reduced, and the IBC increases.

However, both serum iron and transferrin are subject to wide fluctuations because of such factors as diet, and they do not always reliably reflect iron stores. Also, transferrin is a beta-protein—that is, it migrates in the beta-region in serum protein electrophoresis—and is an acute-phase reactant—that is, its serum levels change (usually decrease, as a so-called "negative acute phase reactant") in inflammatory conditions. There is considerable overlap between serum levels of iron and iron-binding capacity in iron deficiency anemia and the anemia of chronic disease. A somewhat more reliable discriminating measure of iron deficiency anemia is the ratio of serum iron to the IBC, known as the transferrin saturation (TS). This ratio is around 1:3 for normal individuals, while in iron deficiency anemia it is significantly reduced to values of around 1:5 or lower. Again, there is considerable overlap even in this ratio for patients with iron deficiency anemia and the anemia of chronic disease, so the values should always be interpreted with care.

Use of Red Blood Cell Distribution Width

Finally, use of automated procedures for determination of cell counts and indices enables us to obtain average erythrocyte sizes and size distributions. In iron deficiency anemia, there is a marked dispersion in cell volumes (sizes) so that the red cell distribution width (RDW) increases, whereas it generally remains within normal limits in the anemia of chronic disease. Normal RDWs occur in the range of 12% to 17%. Unfortunately, the standard deviations for normal subjects and for patients with iron deficiency anemia or the anemia of chronic disease can overlap significantly, tending to limit the validity of using the RDW exclusively for distinguishing between these conditions.

The major laboratory findings that distinguish IDA from ACD are summarized as entries 1 and 2 in Table 8-1. Note that most of the major tests used to distinguish these two conditions are performed in the clinical chemistry laboratory. This emphasizes the strong interdependence of both of these services in obtaining definitive diagnoses through laboratory measurements.

Normocytic Anemia

In these anemias, the red cells show normal MCVs and MCHCs—that is, they are normocytic and normochromic. Common causes of normocytic anemia include acute hemorrhage, hemolytic anemia, marrow hypoplasia, renal disease, and ACD. It may seem paradoxical that acute hemorrhage presents as normocytic anemia because it involves major blood loss that is associated with loss of iron stores. However, iron depletion requires time to develop; acutely, major blood loss presents as normocytic anemia.

A very useful measurement in determining the cause of normocytic anemia is the reticulocyte count. Reticulocytes are newly formed red blood cells that have recently lost their nuclei but retain high levels of cytosolic mRNA dedicated to the synthesis of hemoglobin. This RNA reacts with the dye, methylene blue, to give a bright green color, making it possible to perform reticulocyte counts. In addition, reticulocytes and other red blood cell precursors react with the Wright stain to give dark-staining cytoplasm, in contrast to the cytoplasm of mature red blood cells. This darker staining of the cytoplasm of precursors is termed *polychromasia*. In cases, prominently in hemolytic anemia, where there is a loss of red blood cells due to peripheral destruction of these cells, there is an increased synthesis in bone marrow of red blood cells and an early release of red blood cell precursors, especially reticulocytes.

Hyperproliferative Normocytic Anemias

Hyperproliferative normocytic anemias, associated with an increased reticulocyte count, include both hemolytic anemia and the anemia associated with acute blood loss, while hypoproliferative anemias, associated with a decreased reticulocyte count, include such causes as renal disease, ACD, and, variably, bone marrow aplasia/hypoplasia. Renal disease can affect juxtaglomerular cells that are involved in the synthesis of erythropoietin, the growth factor that induces differentiation of bone marrow hematopoietic stem cells into the red cell line. Bone marrow aplasia/hypoplasia can give rise to low reticulocyte counts if caused by agents, such as chemotherapeutic agents, that kill bone marrow hematopoietic stem cells. In such conditions as myelofibrosis, clonal expansion of cancer cells such as occurs in leukemia, lymphoma, myeloma, and metastatic cancer, there may be a release of early red and white blood cell precursors from bone marrow (the leukoerythroblastic picture discussed below), leading to increased nucleated red blood cell and reticulocyte counts.

As mentioned above, a history and a complete physical, as well as an examination of the patient's peripheral blood film, are helpful in establishing a differential diagnosis. In this section we focus on the most common causes of normocytic anemia: hemolytic anemia, aplastic anemia, and the anemia associated with renal disease.

Hemolytic Anemia

Hemolysis is defined as the destruction of the red cell membrane, causing hemoglobin release. This may occur slowly as a normal physiological process or may be accelerated in pathologic states. Many different underlying causes exist for the decrease in survival/increase in destruction of red blood cells. These include membrane defects (e.g., hereditary spherocytosis), enzyme defects (e.g., glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase [G6PD] deficiency), hemoglobinopathies (e.g., sickle cell disease or beta-thalassemia), immune destruction (e.g., autoimmune hemolytic anemia or hemolytic transfusion reaction), and nonimmune destruction. Immune and nonimmune destruction include destruction due to infectious agents, toxic agents/drugs, physical agents, hypersplenism, and microangiopathic hemolytic anemias. Microangiopathic hemolytic anemias are caused by the mechanical destruction of red blood cells, mainly in bone marrow where they are synthesized, from such factors as fibrin deposition in the blood vessels of the bone marrow microvasculature, fibrosis, or malignancies such as leukemia, lymphoma, and metastatic cancer. In addition, mechanical destruction can result from extramedullary causes such as prosthetic heart valves.

Hemolytic anemia can be recognized from hemoglobin in plasma/serum and breakdown products of heme. Specific laboratory measurements that readily confirm the diagnosis of hemolytic anemia are based on the natural events that occur subsequent to hemolysis. After erythrocyte membrane breakdown, hemoglobin is extruded. Thus plasma and urine may contain free hemoglobin or its degradation products. Free hemoglobin may be present acutely in the plasma (hemoglobinemia) or urine (hemoglobinuria), while hemosiderin may be present in the urine (hemosiderinuria) in more chronic episodes of hemolysis. Extruded hemoglobin becomes bound to the alpha-2 fraction protein, haptoglobin. The

hemoglobin–haptoglobin complex becomes catabolized by macrophages that engulf these complexes by receptor-mediated endocytosis. Thus an excellent indicator for hemolytic anemia is a *low haptoglobin value*. Extremely sensitive and rapid ELISA tests for haptoglobin are available for this purpose.

Because the red cell contents are extruded into the plasma, besides hemoglobin, there are other indicators of red cell damage: high serum potassium because intracellular potassium concentration is much higher in red cells than in the extracellular fluid, and serum elevations of the enzyme lactate dehydrogenase (LD). As discussed in Chapters 18 and 20, this enzyme has five major isozymes, labeled LD1 through LD5. Peculiarly, the predominant isozyme of LD in red cells is LD-1 that occurs predominantly in cardiac tissue.

Carbon monoxide and unconjugated bilirubin become elevated in blood in hemolytic anemia. When hemoglobin is extruded, large amounts of it become oxidized to methemoglobin. The heme portion dissociates and then becomes oxidized ultimately to bilirubin. The first step in this process is the oxidative opening of the porphyrin ring of heme with the attendant liberation of carbon monoxide (CO). CO may be measured easily by gas chromatographic techniques, or even more conveniently by co-oximetry, based on spectrophotometry (see Chapter 4), as carboxyhemoglobin (see Chapter 29). Elevated CO levels in normochromic, normocytic anemias are an excellent indicator of hemolytic anemia.

Because there is an increased production of bilirubin, which is unconjugated (see Chapter 21), there will be at least a transient elevation of serum indirect bilirubin. This elevation, in the presence of normal liver function, will be modest, usually in the range of about 2 to 2.5 mg/dL. (The upper limit of normal is around 1.2 mg/dL.)

Hemolytic anemia is almost always accompanied by an increased reticulocyte count and by evidence of red cell damage. As mentioned above, the reticulocyte count will be elevated (increase in polychromasia on the blood film), with erythroid hyperplasia present in the bone marrow, indicative of increased red cell production. In addition, the peripheral blood film may show evidence of the particular type of red cell damage associated with the particular type of hemolytic anemia (e.g., sickle cells in sickle cell disease or schistocytes/helmet cells in microangiopathic hemolytic anemia). There is also a noticeable difference in red cell size (anisocytosis) and shape (poikilocytosis) due to the presence of damaged and/or young cells. Because of the often-marked changes in size and/or shape, the RDW is usually elevated. A number of nucleated red blood cells may also be identified.

Other findings in hemolytic anemia can identify the cause. A direct antiglobulin test (DAT)/direct Coombs test can be used to detect immunoglobulin attached to the red cell surface that identifies immune hemolytic anemia as the cause of red cell destruction. In this case, red cells are incubated with antihuman immunoglobulin. If the red cells are coated with antibody, they will agglutinate in the presence of the antihuman immunoglobulin, but if not coated with antibody, they will not agglutinate. A positive test suggests an autoantibody or alloantibody may be responsible for the anemia. A positive screening test for G6PD deficiency will identify this enzyme deficiency as the cause of the hemolytic anemia. The selection of these tests will be dependent on the clinical evaluation as well as the preliminary laboratory data.

Laboratory findings that are diagnostic of hemolytic anemia are summarized in entry 3 in Table 8-1. Note that virtually all of the quantitative diagnostic testing for hemolytic anemia—that is, serum and urine hemoglobin, haptoglobin, carboxyhemoglobin, indirect bilirubin, and LD—are performed in the clinical chemistry laboratory, again emphasizing the strong interdependence of the clinical chemistry and hematology laboratories.

Microangiopathic Hemolytic Anemia

As previously mentioned, red cell fragments (schistocytes) may be present on peripheral blood films due to mechanical (e.g., prosthetic heart valve) or thermal (severe burns) destruction. Mechanical rupture of red cells within the microvasculature may also occur by physical damage to red cells in the microvasculature of bone marrow. This may be due to space-occupying lesions, such as metastatic tumors or leukemia or lymphoma, to myelofibrosis, or to the intravascular deposition of fibrin strands upon endothelial cell surfaces. Because red blood cells are damaged and destroyed, this process leads to so-called microangiopathic (i.e., lesions in the microvasculature) hemolytic anemia (MHA).

Besides space-occupying lesions, other causes of this type of anemia include disease states in which fibrin is deposited on endothelial surfaces, also resulting in the shearing and fragmentation of newly synthesized red blood cells, as in disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC) (discussed more later and in Chapter 38). In this condition, there is an abnormal activation of the coagulation process in which fibrin-platelet clots form intravascularly and embolize to virtually any tissue. These clots block the microvasculature of tissues, including that of bone marrow, resulting in the destruction of newly synthesized red cells. In addition, other disease states may give rise to microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, in which there may be an immunologic component—that is, antibodies to determinants on endothelial cells or on other structures in the microvasculature, resulting in immune complex deposits with or without fibrin deposits.

In thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), the microvascular disease is caused by platelet thrombi. A prominent cause of this condition is dysfunction due to the absence of a critical chymotrypsin-like protease known as ADAMTS13 (A Disintegrin And Metalloproteinase with a Thrombospondin type 1 motif, member 13) that hydrolyzes large multimer forms of von Willebrand factor (vWF) into lower molecular mass forms; the high molecular mass forms promote platelet aggregation, leading to this condition. However, this condition can also arise, rarely, in patients with no known abnormality of ADAMTS13 in cases of acquired TTP. Because the microvasculature is blocked in this condition, there is multiple system pathology—prominently renal failure—evidenced by high serum levels of creatinine and BUN (blood urea nitrogen), as described in the Abnormalities in Clinical Chemistry section, neural signs and symptoms due to cerebral infarctions and thrombocytopenia, and widespread purpura from local hemorrhaging.

In the closely related condition called the hemolytic anemic/uremic syndrome (HUS), which occurs mainly in children, bacterial infection by certain toxin-producing strains of organisms such as *E. coli*, *S. pneumoniae*, and *Shigella* induce platelet aggregation. This is believed to arise in part from toxin-induced inhibition of ADAMST13, although the full pathophysiology of this condition still remains unexplained. Here, as in TTP, there is renal failure anemia, and, though less prominent than in TTP, neural symptoms.

MHA may also occur with other immune-mediated disorders—for example, connective tissue disorders such as disseminated lupus erythematosus, where endothelial damage from the attachment of immune complexes and complement produces fibrin deposition on endothelial surfaces. More important, because microangiopathic hemolytic anemia results from traumatic destruction of newly formed red blood cells in the microvasculature where both red and white blood cell precursors are being formed, often both red and white blood cell precursors are released into the circulation. Thus all of the findings of hemolytic anemia are present, in addition to which a significant number of precursor cells are seen in the peripheral blood, such as nucleated red blood cells, myelocytes, and metamyelocytes, a pattern termed the leukoerythroblastic picture.

As discussed below, in DIC and occasionally in TTP, laboratory findings include thrombocytopenia and increased prothrombin time, activated partial thromboplastin time, thrombin time, fibrin degradation products, and D-dimer levels (described below); fibrinogen levels, however, are low. As discussed above, BUN and creatinine are also elevated.

Hypoproliferative Normocytic Anemias

Bone Marrow Hypoplasia/Aplastic Anemia

This is a hypoproliferative anemia, with MCV and RDW usually within normal limits, that typically affects all peripheral blood elements (red cells, white cells, and platelets; see below). Immature white cells and red cells are not usually present on peripheral blood films. Bone marrow biopsy is commonly performed to obtain the diagnosis and typically shows severely hypoplastic/aplastic marrow with severe depletion of all hematopoietic marrow precursors. Aplastic anemia may be primary/inherited or secondary/acquired, with the latter due to chemotherapy, chemical toxins, infection, radiation, or immune dysfunction. Serum iron may be elevated due to lack of erythropoiesis. The typical hematologic findings in this condition are summarized in entry 4 in Table 8-1. More important, *none of the quantitative serum diagnostic tests for hemolytic anemia, such as haptoglobin, carboxyhemoglobin, and indirect bilirubin elevation, are positive in this condition.*

Myelodysplastic Syndrome

Another less common condition, but nonetheless an important cause of hypoproliferative normocytic anemia, is myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS). This syndrome, which often presents as a normocytic anemia, although it can also on occasion present as a mildly macrocytic or microcytic anemia, is refractory to treatment such as transfusions of packed red blood cells. It may present simply as a refractory anemia in its early stages and is thought to progress then to refractory anemia with ringed sideroblasts and eventually to so-called preleukemic stages, in particular refractory anemia with an excess of blasts in bone marrow (generally in the myeloid or lymphoid

lines) and an excess of blasts in transformation. The condition may also present initially as a refractory cytopenia that involves all three (erythroid, granulocytic, megakaryocytic) hematopoietic cell lines. As might be surmised from this latter observation, MDS appears to be a clonal stem cell disorder that is characterized by ineffective hematopoiesis. Further discussion of this fascinating disease can be found in Chapter 32.

Anemia of Renal Failure

Another normocytic, hypoproliferative anemia is the anemia of chronic renal failure. Loss of the kidneys' excretory function produces an increase in BUN and creatinine, as discussed below, as well as a buildup of metabolic by products. The resulting uremia appears to be responsible for changes in red cell shape, with burr cells (echinocytes) and ellipsoidal cells commonly present on peripheral blood films. Identification of burr cells on peripheral blood films during the course of illness may signal the development of renal dysfunction. In addition to a decreased excretory function, there is a decrease in the kidneys' ability to produce erythropoietin, resulting in impaired erythropoiesis, such that the marrow's response to hypoxia becomes inadequate. Distinguishing this condition from aplastic anemia (entry 4 in Table 8-1), white cell and platelet counts usually remain within normal limits. The typical findings in this condition are summarized in entry 5 in Table 8-1. Again, as in bone marrow hypoplasia/aplastic anemia (entry 4, Table 8-1), none of the quantitative serum diagnostic tests for hemolytic anemia (e.g., haptoglobin, carboxyhemoglobin, indirect bilirubin elevation), are positive in this condition.

Macrocytic Anemia

Macrocytic anemia can be diagnosed from the hemogram from a low red blood cell count and a high mean corpuscular volume (MCV), often exceeding 100 fL. By far the most common cause of macrocytic anemia is nutritional deficiency, such as vitamin B_{12} and/or folate deficiency. Lack of either factor is thought to disrupt DNA synthesis but not RNA synthesis, such that the nucleus and cytoplasm of the cell no longer mature in synchrony. Morphologically, the cell cytoplasm matures, while the nucleus remains immature, and the cell appears megaloblastic. This lack of synchrony produces hypersegmented neutrophils (five-lobed nuclei in more than 5% of the neutrophils or any neutrophil with six or more lobes) and large, oval-shaped red cells termed macroovalocytes, both of which are present on blood films of patients with megaloblastic anemia. In addition, the RDW is typically increased, and the reticulocyte count is decreased.

If macrocytic anemia is diagnosed, the first serum analytes whose concentrations should be determined are B_{12} and folate, for which rapid and accurate ELISA tests are performed. If these analytes are both found to be within the reference range, assays for thyroid function should be performed because hypothyroidism is a cause of macrocytosis. As discussed below in the endocrine function testing section, elevated thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) with low or normal thyroxine (T4) serum levels confirm the diagnosis of primary hypothyroidism. Because certain therapeutic drugs, particularly azathymidine (AZT) used in the treatment of acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), are known also to induce macrocytic anemia, it is important to ascertain whether a patient is being treated with such drugs.

In this era of the automated complete blood count (CBC), it is possible also that red cell precursor forms, such as nucleated red blood cells, may be counted as mature erythrocytes. Therefore, in a patient with a "macrocytic" anemia with normal B_{12}, folate, and thyroid hormone levels, it is important to check the reticulocyte and nucleated red blood cell count to determine if these are significantly elevated. If so, the possibility of a hemolytic anemia should be considered. Thus the diagnostic workup for hemolytic anemia described in the preceding section should be instituted.

Other possible causes of macrocytic anemia include posthemorrhagic states (differentiated by an elevation of the reticulocyte count and polychromasia), alcoholism (associated with folate deficiency), liver disease, and myelodysplasia. Note again that the definitive tests for determining the cause of macrocytic anemia—that is, B_{12}, folate, and thyroid function tests—are often performed in the clinical chemistry section.

Major clinical laboratory findings for macrocytic anemia are summarized as entries 6A and B in Table 8-1. Note that macrocytic anemias are divided into megaloblastic (entry 6A), typical of B_{12} and folate deficiency, and nonmegaloblastic (entry 6B), typical of hypothyroidism. Whether the macrocytic anemia is megaloblastic can be determined only by bone marrow biopsy. This procedure is not necessary in most cases because the cause of the macrocytosis can be determined by the assays described above.

Table 8-1 summarizes some of the pertinent findings and specific determinations used to distinguish and diagnose common anemias previously discussed. Note that this table is a guide as to what specific tests should be ordered and, by implication, what tests need not be ordered. For example, a microcytic anemia should be worked up with orders for ferritin levels, IBC, and Fe/IBC ratios, but generally there is no need to order B_{12} and folate levels. Conversely, there is no need to order ferritin, IBC, and so on for a macrocytic anemia, for which B_{12} and folate levels should be ordered.

QUANTITATIVE WHITE BLOOD CELL ABNORMALITIES

The white blood cell count (WBC) encompasses several types of commonly circulating nucleated cells: granulocytes (principally mature neutrophils, basophils, and eosinophils), lymphocytes, and monocytes. It should be noted that absolute concentrations (and not percentages) of these cells are significant in interpreting the WBC. An increase above the normal physiologic level in the WBC, termed leukocytosis, may primarily involve any of these white cells, depending on which cell type is chiefly elevated (i.e., neutrophilia, basophilia, eosinophilia, monocytosis, and lymphocytosis). Occasionally, plasma cells may be found in the peripheral blood. Likewise, a decrease in the WBC, termed leukopenia, may also center on a single cell series (i.e., neutropenia, monocytopenia, and lymphocytopenia). Absolute decreases in the eosinophils and basophils are difficult to identify because of the low numbers present normally. Certain differential diagnoses are commonly associated with certain WBC changes (e.g., infection and/or inflammation with neutrophilia; allergic reactions and parasitic infections with eosinophilia). In addition, elevations may be due to a benign process (e.g., infection) or a malignant process (e.g., leukemia). Here, we note several quantitative patterns and their associations that correlate with abnormal chemical findings.

Again, clinical history and physical findings are important in diagnosis and management of the patient. In addition, the complete blood count (CBC) and white cell differential are important laboratory findings used, in conjunction with the clinical impression, to formulate the differential diagnosis. In adults, the reference range for the WBC is approximately 4000 to 7000 white cells/μL; approximately two thirds of the white cells are neutrophils, and slightly less than one third are lymphocytes.

Infection

Infection is the most common cause of an elevated WBC. An elevated WBC of between about 10,000 and 20,000/μL commonly points to an infectious/reactive process. In general, neutrophilia is associated with infection (bacterial, fungal, viral), inflammatory states (trauma, surgery), certain drugs (e.g., corticosteroids), and myeloproliferative conditions. Exceptions to the neutrophilia seen in bacterial infections are tuberculosis; brucellosis; pertussis, where the predominant cells are lymphocytes; and infections, mainly in newborns, with *Listeria monocytogenes*, for which a monocytic response is predominant.

Eosinophilia is commonly associated with allergic reactions, parasitic infections, and hematologic malignancies (Brito-Babapulle, 2003; Fischbach et al, 2008; Brigden & Graydon, 1997; Rothenberg, 1998). Basophilia is also commonly associated with hematologic malignancies (e.g., chronic myelogenous leukemia [CML]), but it may be seen in some inflammatory states and allergic reactions. Lymphocytosis is commonly associated with acute viral infections, such as infectious mononucleosis (EBV infection); chronic infections, such as tuberculosis, brucellosis, and pertussis; and hematologic disease and immune stimulation. Monocytosis is commonly associated with hematologic disease, such as acute monocytic leukemia (M5 by the French-American-British, or FAB, classification system), acute myelomonocytic leukemia (M4, in the FAB system), or chronic myelomonocytic leukemia, as well as with some infectious processes, such as tuberculosis, rickettsia, and listeria.

Elevated WBC Due to Leukemoid Reaction

In patients who do not have leukemia, very high white blood cell counts (generally $>50 \times 10^3/\mu L$) may produce a peripheral blood film appearance similar to leukemia. This is termed a *leukemoid reaction*. The more common type of leukemoid reaction is granulocytic, although lymphocytic reactions may also occur. The granulocytic type usually reveals reactive neutrophils present in the peripheral blood film, with a left shift in the neutrophil series (i.e., immature forms such as bands, metamyelocytes, and myelocytes). Changes in the cells' cytoplasmic appearance, such as toxic granulation and Döhle body production (see Chapter 32), are also commonly present. Causes of the granulocytic type of reaction include bacterial infection (e.g., diphtheria), malignancy (Hodgkin's disease), and reactive conditions such as rebound granulocytosis. Although these changes are helpful, C-reactive protein (CRP), an acute phase plasma protein, rapidly rises and falls with the onset and resolution of inflammation. CRP appears to be an earlier and

more sensitive indicator of acute inflammation and infection (Seebach et al, 1997; Dantzer et al, 2008) and can now be quickly measured using present-day analyzers. Leukemoid reaction must be distinguished from chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) and other myeloproliferative conditions. More important, the enzyme *neutrophil alkaline phosphatase* will be normal or elevated in a granulocytic leukemoid reaction but is decreased in CML.

Elevated WBC Due to Chronic Myelogenous Leukemia

At present, definitive diagnosis of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML) rests on the demonstration of the Philadelphia chromosome (i.e., the BCR/c-abl translocation between chromosomes #9 and #22) by either cytogenetics or molecular techniques (e.g., see George & Arber, 2003; Hughes & Branford, 2003; Sattler & Griffin, 2003; Silver, 2003; Ross & Hughes, 2008; see Chapters 33, 68, and 75). Detection of molecular or cytogenetic abnormalities is also of diagnostic (and can be of prognostic) significance in other hematologic diseases, including acute myeloid leukemia, acute lymphoblastic leukemia, T cell leukemia/lymphoma, and myelodysplasia (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Molecular techniques are also currently utilized to detect very early stages of disease, as well as to detect minimal residual disease—that is, disease that may only be apparent at the molecular level. For example, quantitative polymerase chain reaction can be used to monitor BCR/c-abl translocation levels in CML patients being treated with the kinase inhibitor imatinib (Gleevec) (Ross & Hughes, 2008).

Elevated WBC Due to Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia

When the lymphocytes appear normal but are significantly increased in number in an older individual, the possibility of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) must be considered. Again, molecular techniques, such as flow cytometric, immunophenotypic, and cytogenetic/fluorescence in situ hybridization analysis (Oscier et al, 2004; Shanafelt & Call, 2004) can help establish the diagnosis. In CLL, the neoplastic B lymphocytes will be found to express an unusual (but characteristic) human leukocyte differentiation antigen designated CD5, which is typical for this disease. Other CD antigens can also be detected by flow cytometry and have become useful in resolving other hematologic diagnostic problems.

Leukocytosis Due to Acute Leukemias

Both acute myeloid and lymphoid leukemias present often as markedly elevated white cell counts. In lymphoblastic leukemia, numerous lymphoblasts are seen on the peripheral smear. The myeloid leukemias can present in a myriad of forms, including myeloblastic, promyelocytic, monoblastic/monocytic, myelomonocytic, erythroblastic, and megakaryoblastic. Again, flow cytometric, immunophenotypic, and karyotypic/molecular analysis can help establish the diagnosis, as well as define prognosis (Winton & Langston, 2004). These are discussed fully in Chapters 33 and 75. Here, we point out that blast forms of any kind on a peripheral blood smear raise the strong diagnostic possibility of an acute leukemia.

Low White Cell Counts

Aplastic Anemia

Low WBCs, if accompanied by marrow hypoplasia and two out of three of anemia (with corrected reticulocyte count <1%), neutropenia (neutrophil count <500/μL), and thrombocytopenia (platelet count <20,000/μL) may be part of generalized pancytopenia secondary to marrow failure (Guinan, 1997; Marsh et al, 2003; Marsh, 2005). Also known as aplastic anemia, this condition may be primary/inherited or acquired/secondary. Known causes of the acquired type include chemotherapy, drugs/toxins, infections (including hepatitis), radiation, and immune dysfunction (Gordon-Smith et al, 2002). Cytogenetic study may be utilized to rule out myelodysplasia; if unsuccessful, molecular techniques such as fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) may be necessary for chromosome analysis (Guinan, 1997). The primary/inherited types may not always be present at birth (i.e., congenital), and diagnosis of this type of marrow failure relies heavily on clinical assessment in conjunction with appropriate laboratory evaluation (Alter, 1999; 2002).

Gram-Negative Sepsis as a Cause of Leukopenia

Leukopenia may also be seen in other conditions, including gram-negative sepsis. Interestingly, gram-negative sepsis with a low WBC is often accompanied by a cholestatic pattern in the liver (i.e., a mild rise in bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase), discussed below and in Chapter 21.

COAGULATION DISORDERS

This vast and complex topic is discussed in Part 5. For our review, we focus on four hematologic parameters that may be important in correlation with test results in chemistry determinations: the platelet count; the bleeding time; the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT), reflecting the function of the intrinsic coagulation system; and the prothrombin time (PT), reflecting the function of the extrinsic coagulation system. Diminished values of the platelet count and/or abnormalities in platelet aggregation can lead to abnormal bleeding times. Elevated PTs and/or APTTs are not generally associated with abnormal bleeding times except mainly in factor VIII deficiency with concomitant deficiency of von Willebrand factor. This latter factor is needed for platelet aggregation.

Bleeding Time Measures Platelet Function. Historically, the bleeding time (BT) was utilized as a screening test for platelet function. It should be noted that the BT is not felt to correlate accurately with or to predict bleeding (DeCaterina et al, 1994; Gerwirtz et al, 1996) and is now uncommonly used to screen for platelet function abnormalities (Kottke-Marchant & Corcoran, 2002; Posan et al, 2003).

Major Causes of Increased PT or aPTT. The anticoagulant heparin, which accelerates the inactivation of thrombin and other coagulation factors (such as factor Xa), preferentially blocks the intrinsic system, leading to prolonged APTTs but not significant elevations in PTs. On the other hand, the vitamin K antagonist Coumadin preferentially blocks factor VII in the extrinsic system, leading to prolonged PTs but not APTTs.

International Normalized Ratios for Patients Being Treated with Coumadin. The PTs of patients who are being anticoagulated on Coumadin must be followed carefully to ensure that the therapeutic effect is occurring but that the effective levels of Coumadin are not sufficiently elevated as to initiate hemorrhage. Thus it is important to establish a therapeutic range for PTs for patients on Coumadin. Because different methods for determining PTs exist, somewhat different reference ranges for PTs among different laboratories have resulted, making it difficult on occasion to compare PT results from different laboratories for a given patient. To attempt to correct for these differences, the PT values are used in a formula that standardizes these "raw" values. This formula takes the ratio of the observed PT to the mean value for the PT reference range of the particular laboratory and then raises the resulting ratio to the power of what is termed the ISI or international standardized index. This index is determined from the slope of a correlation plot of the logarithm of a laboratory's PTs for blood samples that contain different Coumadin concentrations against the logarithm of the PTs determined by a reference ("gold standard") method. Thus the international normalized ratio (INR) is $(PTpat/PTmean)^{isi}$, where PTpat is the measured PT for the patient and PTmean is the mean value for the laboratory's reference range (Kamath & Kim, 2009). In most circumstances, INR values of 2 to 3 are considered to be therapeutic for patients who have atrial fibrillation and 3 to 4 for patients with prosthetic heart valves, while values over 4 are considered to require lowering of the Coumadin dose or temporary cessation of treatment. Note that INRs are appropriate principally for patients who are being treated with Coumadin.

The Other Cause of Isolated PT or aPTT Is Coagulation Factor Deficiency. If the PT or APTT becomes elevated, in the absence of treatment with heparin or Coumadin, and the platelet count is normal, it is important to perform mixing studies of the patient's plasma with normal plasma to determine if the coagulation time normalizes—that is, whether there is a factor deficiency. A not infrequent cause of factor deficiency is liver failure, discussed subsequently and in Chapter 21. Thus liver function measurements should also be checked in these instances. If mixing studies do not completely correct the prolonged coagulation times, the presence of coagulation inhibitors, such as *circulating lupus anticoagulant* or *antifactor antibodies*, should be suspected.

The Major Cause of Elevated PT and aPTT Is DIC. If the platelet count diminishes and the APTT and PT both rise, the diagnosis of disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) should be entertained. This diagnosis is confirmed by the finding of elevated D-dimer, discussed in Chapter 39, the D–D fragment of fibrin that results from the proteolytic action of plasmin upon the fibrin clot that forms during intravascular coagulation. D-dimer is detected in an assay utilizing a very specific monoclonal antibody to this cross-linked fibrin degradation product. This method has largely replaced the less specific assay for fibrin split products (FSP), which are likewise elevated in this condition. DIC is an extremely dangerous condition and must be diagnosed rapidly, as indicated above

In this condition, there is an abnormal activation of both coagulation cascades and a consumption of platelets. This activation may be caused by gram-negative sepsis (activation of the cascades may be from bacterial endotoxins), cancer, chronic inflammatory states such as in collagen vascular diseases, leukemia (especially acute promyelocytic leukemia), complications of pregnancy, blood transfusion complications, liver failure, and

physical trauma such as burns, drowning, and CNS injuries. DIC causes the formation of microemboli that can result in widespread tissue infarction or ischemia with attendant abnormal chemical values—for example, elevated liver function enzymes; elevated BUN and creatinine, suggestive of renal failure; and even elevation of cardiac troponin, indicating myocardial damage. Thus low platelet counts, elevated APTT and PT, together with chemical abnormalities suggestive of multisystem dysfunction, strongly suggest DIC. Anticoagulant therapy must be instituted rapidly to block further embolization and tissue destruction.

ABNORMALITIES IN CLINICAL CHEMISTRY: CHEMICAL PATHOLOGY

ELECTROLYTE ABNORMALITIES

This topic is treated at length in Chapter 14 and in Oh (2003). Here we present an overview of the regulation of the serum levels of critical electrolytes to enable accurate formulation of the possible causes of abnormalities in their serum levels. Figure 8-1 summarizes the basic mechanisms by which the kidneys control electrolyte and water balance. Functionally, keep in mind that the purpose of the kidneys is to conserve fluids or, tantamount to this, to concentrate the urine. The mechanism by which this conservation of fluids is effected is by the building up of high-sodium chloride gradients in the interstitial space between the descending and ascending limbs of the loop of Henle, using the countercurrent multiplier mechanism. In this mechanism, sodium chloride is extruded into the interstitial space such that NaCl concentrations become greater toward the tip of the loop of Henle. The ascending limb of the loop of Henle is impermeable to water, as are the distal convoluted tubules and collecting ducts. However, under the effect of antidiuretic hormone (ADH), the collecting ducts are made permeable to water, allowing it to flow into the interstitial space and to penetrate the vasa recta. The entire driving force for this process is the high concentrations of NaCl in the interstitium. Any interference with the countercurrent multiplier will block reabsorption of water because the ion gradients are eliminated.

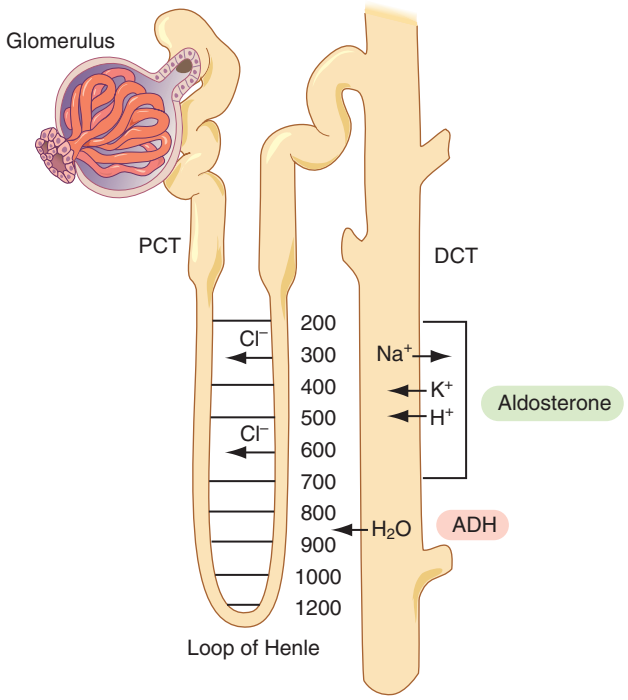


Figure 8-1 A schematic representation of a nephron showing the fundamental mechanism of water and salt conservation by the kidneys. Filtration occurs at the glomerulus (upper left, showing capillaries in red), and the filtrate passes through the proximal convoluted tubule (PCT), where about 70% of the total filtered sodium is reabsorbed. In the loop of Henle, the countercurrent multiplier mechanism is operative. Chloride ion (Cl^-) is extruded from the ascending limb into the interstitial space (shown in the upper middle part of the figure). Sodium ion passively follows. The cells of the ascending limb of the loop of Henle are impermeable to water, and the cells of the descending limb are impermeable to chloride ions. The result of this system is that high concentrations of NaCl are built up at the tip of the loop of Henle. The numbers beside the loop of Henle are osmolalities at different levels along the loop that, in humans, reach a maximum of 1200 mOsm/kg, as shown in the figure. At the top of the loop, the filtrate becomes isotonic (where the 300 mOsm/kg mark occurs) and then hypotonic due to the continuous extrusion of chloride ion. The hypertonic interstitium allows water to diffuse in from the collecting ducts provided that antidiuretic hormone (ADH, labeled and highlighted in color in the figure) is secreted. More sodium ion can be conserved in the distal convoluted tubule (DCT), provided aldosterone (labeled and highlighted in color) is secreted, resulting in the one-to-one exchange of Na^+ for K^+ and H^+.

As also shown in Figure 8-1, sodium ion, 70% of which is reabsorbed in the proximal convoluted tubule, can be further reabsorbed in the distal convoluted tubules and collecting ducts under the effect of aldosterone from the zona glomerulosa of the adrenal cortex. This hormone promotes the 1:1 exchange of sodium for potassium or hydrogen ion. Sodium levels in serum depend almost completely on the interplay between aldosterone and ADH. With these simple considerations in mind, the most common causes of hyponatremia and hypernatremia are now summarized with an explanation of how to identify them. It should be kept in mind that normal renal function is assumed. If renal failure occurs, the kidneys ultimately fail to be able to concentrate the urine so that hyponatremia will result, as is discussed in the Renal Disease section below.

Hyponatremia

The four most common causes of hyponatremia are given in Table 8-2, together with a fifth, rare, cause: Bartter's syndrome. A sixth, metabolic cause, diabetes mellitus, is also presented in this table. In all forms of hyponatremia, the chloride ion concentration is also generally low because chloride is the chief counterion for sodium.

Basic Principle. All confirmed serum sodium abnormalities must be followed up with urinalysis on the patient who should be fluid restricted. This urinalysis should include the urine sodium and urine osmolality. For conditions 1 and 2 in Table 8-2, the serum sodium tends to correct over a 24-hour period when the patient is fluid restricted.

Overhydration. In this condition, the most common cause of which is the consumption of large amounts of water or hypotonic fluids due to such causes as psychogenic polydipsia, serum sodium is reduced below 135 mEq/L. Because the consumed water is excreted by the kidneys, the urine is also dilute in this ion. In fact, the osmolality of urine will be low—that is, less than 300 mOsm/kg. Often accompanying hyponatremia in overhydration are low values of the hematocrit and low values of BUN, discussed subsequently. This triad of findings strongly suggests overhydration as the cause. Urinalysis in the fluid-restricted patient will reveal urinary sodium of less than 25 mEq/L and low osmolalities. The potassium may also be low, although it often remains within the reference range. Because mainly water is excreted in urine in this condition, the total 24-hour sodium excretion will be low (cause number 1 in Table 8-2).

Use and/or Abuse of Diuretics. Loop diuretics block the chloride pump in the loop of Henle, thereby blocking the formation of the ion gradients via the countercurrent multiplier, necessary for water conservation. Thus water is lost. Also, because sodium is no longer retained because it follows chloride in the loop, it also is depleted from serum. Thus, unlike in overhydration, the total 24-hour sodium excretion is high (compare 24-hour UNa for entries 1 and 2 in Table 8-2). Except for this difference, the pattern for diuretics resembles overhydration (dilute serum and urine), except that loop diuretics cause severe potassium depletion unless the diuretic is combined with a potassium-sparing diuretic like triamterene. Combined hyponatremia and hypokalemia with a high urinary sodium and potassium 24-hour excretion point to diuretic use. Of course, a history will generally also reveal use of diuretics.

Syndrome of Inappropriate ADH (SIADH) Secretion (entry 3, Table 8-2). In this condition, secondary to head trauma, seizures, other CNS diseases, and neoplastic conditions, especially lung, breast, and ovarian cancers that secrete ADH-like hormones, the serum sodium is depressed due to the excess retention of water in the collecting ducts. This results in depletion of water in the renal tubules, thereby concentrating the urine. Therefore, while the serum is dilute in sodium (hypotonic), the urine is concentrated to levels of over 40 mEq/L and the urine osmolality exceeds 300 mOsm/kg, while the serum osmolality is less than 280 mOsm/kg. This pattern clearly is diagnostic of SIADH.

Aldosterone Deficit (entry 4, Table 8-2). This condition is secondary to Addison disease and AIDS-related hypoadrenalism. Without aldosterone, the Na^+–K^+ and Na^+–H^+ exchange in the distal convoluted tubules and collecting ducts does not occur. Therefore, serum sodium concentration is reduced, while serum potassium concentration increases, and there is a mild metabolic acidosis. Urinary sodium increases but not

TABLE 8-2
Common Causes of Hyponatremia and Electrolyte Patterns in Serum and Urine with Normal Renal Function*

Cause	Serum Na	Urine Na (UNa)	Urine Osmolality	Serum K	24-Hour UNa
1. Overhydration	Low	Low	Low	Normal or low	Low
2. Diuretics	Low	Low	Low	Low	High
3. SIADH†	Low	High	High	Normal or low	High
4. Adrenal failure	Low	Mildly elevated	Normal	High	High
5. Bartter's syndrome	Low	Low	Low	Low	High
6. Diabetic hyperosmolarity‡	Low	Normal	Normal	High	Normal

*All Na and K values are concentrations, except for 24-hour UNa, which is the total number of milliequivalents of Na excreted in 24 hours in the urine.
†Secretion of inappropriate levels of antidiuretic hormone.
‡In this condition, serum glucose is markedly elevated.

TABLE 8-3
Common Causes of Hypernatremia and Electrolyte Patterns in Serum and Urine with Normal Renal Function*

Cause	Serum Na	Urine Na (UNa)	Urine Osmolality	Serum K	24-Hour UNa
1. Dehydration	High	High	High	Normal	Varies
2. Diabetes insipidus	High	Low	Low	Normal	Low
3. Cushing's disease or syndrome	High	Low	Normal	Low	Low

*All Na and K values are concentrations, except for 24-hour UNa, which is the total number of milliequivalents of Na excreted in 24 hours in the urine.

to the high levels seen in SIADH, and the osmolality of urine is also not so elevated as in SIADH.

Bartter's Syndrome (entry 5, Table 8-2). This rare condition resembles diuretic use, except that the hyponatremia is not corrected with fluid restriction. This syndrome is actually a complex of diseases, each of which is caused by deleterious mutations of genes that encode ion transporter proteins in the thick portion of the ascending loop of Henle. There are two forms of neonatal Bartter's syndrome, caused by absence or mutations of the Na-K-2Cl symporter protein (*SLC12A2* or NKCC2 gene) or the ROMK/KCNJ1-encoded potassium channel protein. In so-called classic Bartter's syndrome, the CLCNKB gene–encoded chloride channel protein is defective. In a form of Bartter's syndrome that is associated with hearing loss (sensorimotor loss–associated Bartter's syndrome), the BSND gene–encoded accessory chloride channel protein is dysfunctional. In another Bartter's variant, the CASR (calcium-sensing receptor) gene–encoded calcium transporter protein is defective, leading to Bartter's syndrome with superimposed hypocalcemia. In Gitelman's syndrome, which parallels Bartter's syndrome but is a milder form of disease, mutations in the NCC gene–encoded sodium-chloride symporter protein, also termed the thiazide-sensitive Na^+-Cl^- cotransporter protein (Pedersen et al, 2010), cause malfunction of reabsorption of sodium and chloride ions from the tubular fluid into the cells of the distal convoluted tubule. In all forms of this disease, as in diuretic use, there is a high 24-hour sodium and potassium excretion.

Diabetic Hyperosmolar State (entry 6, Table 8-2). In patients with diabetes mellitus, if they are in a hyperosmolar state—that is, where the serum glucose is markedly elevated (say, around 700 mg/dL)—the hyperosmolarity of serum causes efflux of cellular water, with a consequent osmotic dilution of serum sodium. Roughly, for each 100 mg/dL increase in serum glucose, there is a 1.6 mEq/L decrease in the serum Na^+ concentration. Because transport of glucose into cells is accompanied by concurrent transport of potassium into cells, low insulin levels also cause high serum potassium. So the net effect of diabetic hyperosmolar states is a low serum sodium and a high serum potassium. This resembles hypoaldosteronism (entry 4 in Table 8-1), but the presence of abnormally high glucose levels signals the possibility of diabetes mellitus as the cause.

Pseudohyponatremia

This condition is usually caused by the presence of excess lipids in serum. No sodium ions are dissolved in lipids, which can take up a considerable volume of serum. If the absolute amount of sodium in a given volume of serum is determined, as is performed when using such methods of sodium determination as flame photometry, this value is divided by the sample volume to get the concentration. But part of this volume is lipid that has no sodium, so a falsely low value of sodium can be obtained. This artifact is eliminated by the use of ion-selective electrodes that directly determine the concentration of sodium and do not depend on knowledge of the volume of serum. Note that, although most modern, high-throughput chemistry analyzers measure serum sodium using ion-selective electrodes, they perform a predilution (dilution prior to analysis) of the specimen (so-called *indirect* potentiometry), and thus the measurement is relative to volume and *is* susceptible to pseudohyponatremia.

Hypernatremia

Table 8-3 summarizes the three basic causes of hypernatremia. Note that each cause is the counterpart of a cause for hyponatremia. These causes are summarized as follows.

Dehydration (entry 1, Table 8-3). This can be caused by excess renal loss with high positive free water clearance (i.e., loss of water in excess of NaCl), excess sweating, and low water intake. The serum sodium is elevated, as is the hematocrit (possibly masking a true anemia), and the urine sodium is also high due to increased renal excretion of NaCl.

Diabetes Insipidus (DI) (entry 2, Table 8-3). DI may be central (neurogenic) (i.e., due to decreased vasopressin secretion) or nephrogenic (i.e., due to decreased renal response). Functionally, this condition is the reverse of SIADH—that is, water retention in the tubules is not adequate. Although this condition is not completely understood, and may be multifactorial, current research suggests that either mutation and/or changes in protein expression of "water channel molecules" (renal aquaporins) and/or the vasopressin V2 renal collecting tubule cell receptor may play a role in both pathologic water loss, such as in nephrogenic DI, and pathologic water retention, such as in SIADH (Nielsen et al, 2002; Brown, 2003; Oh, 2003; Schrier & Cadnapaphornchai, 2003; Nguyen et al, 2003). The pattern is elevated serum sodium but dilute urinary sodium due to the functionally inadequate levels of ADH.

Hyperaldosteronism (entry 3, Table 8-3). This condition may result from adrenal hyperplasia, Cushing's syndrome, and Cushing's disease (see endocrine section below). The levels of circulating aldosterone are inappropriately high, causing excessive reabsorption of Na^+ and excretion of K^+ and H^+ ions. The patient will be hypernatremic and hypokalemic and exhibit a mild metabolic alkalosis.

Hypokalemia

Many of the causes of hypokalemia overlap with those of hyponatremia, including overhydration; use of loop diuretics; SIADH; and Bartter's syndrome, as discussed above. In addition to these causes overlapping with those of hyponatremia, the following states lead uniquely to hypokalemia:

1. Infusion of insulin to diabetics. This results in rather large influxes of potassium into cells, lowering it in serum.
2. Alkalosis. Red blood cells are themselves excellent buffers. They are capable of exchanging potassium for hydrogen ions. Thus in acidosis, H^+ ions enter red cells in exchange for K^+ ions. Conversely, in alkalosis, H^+ ions leave red cells (to neutralize excess base), while K^+ ions enter the red cells.

3. Vomiting. The major loss is both H^+ and K^+ from the stomach. Loss of K^+ in gastric fluid may be less important than the overall fluid loss, which causes activation of aldosterone and renal wasting of K^+.

Hyperkalemia

Among the major causes are those that also cause hypernatremia—for example, dehydration and diabetes insipidus—acidosis and diabetes mellitus (as discussed above), and hemolysis. Any kind of cell damage, such as rhabdomyolysis, and especially hemolysis of erythrocytes, can cause hyperkalemia. In hemolysis, all of the intracellular K^+ is extruded into plasma. Another analyte that is concentrated in red cells that rises with K^+ in hemolysis is lactate dehydrogenase (LD). Concomitant elevations of potassium and LD in serum should be taken as indications of hemolysis either artifactually after a blood sample has been taken from the patient or, less commonly, hemolysis from an underlying hemolytic condition.

RENAL DISEASE

The four analytes that aid in the diagnosis of this condition are BUN, creatinine, calcium, and phosphate. It is amazing that neither BUN nor creatinine has any inherent relationship to kidney function, but both fortuitously are excellent indicators of renal condition (Schnermann & Sayegh, 1998; Oh, 2003).

BUN and Creatinine

BUN is blood urea nitrogen. Urea nitrogen is generally measured in plasma or serum, but it has historically been referred to as BUN. The formula for urea is $H_2N—CO—NH_2$. There are two moles of nitrogen per mole of urea. This is the end product of NH_3 metabolism in the liver, as discussed in Chapter 21. Urea is excreted by the renal tubules at a rate that is roughly proportional to the glomerular filtration rate (GFR). Note, therefore, that the retained urea—that is, plasma or serum urea or BUN—is approximately inversely proportional to the GFR—that is,

$$\text{BUN} \propto 1/\text{GFR} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 8-1)}$$

Creatinine is secreted but is also reabsorbed to an approximately equal extent over a rather wide range for the GFR so that the net effect is that the amount filtered is the amount excreted. The total amount of creatinine filtered then is its urinary concentration, Ucr × the volume of urine, V, over a given time. The total plasma that delivered this quantity of creatinine to the glomerulus is the total amount of creatinine filtered divided by the plasma concentration, Pcr. This quantity is also the creatinine clearance, Ccr. So the glomerular filtration rate is:

$$\text{GFR} = \text{Ccr} = \text{Ucr} \times \text{V}/\text{Pcr} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 8-2)}$$

Prerenal Disease. Suppose the BUN is abnormally high (reference range = 10-20 mg/mL). There are two possible reasons for this. The first is prerenal, where renal plasma flow is reduced from such lesions as renal artery stenosis, renal vein thrombosis, and the like. This causes a reduction in the GFR. From Equation 8-1, the BUN will then rise. However, the serum creatinine levels (Pcr in Equation 8-2), reference range about 0.5 to 1.0 mg/dL, will generally remain within normal limits or may be mildly elevated because, from Equation 8-2, low GFR will result in lower urine flow (V in Equation 8-2). Pcr and Ucr will remain generally within normal limits. Thus there will be a disproportionate rise in BUN over creatinine. The normal BUN/creatinine ratio is 10:1 to 20:1, and in prerenal disease, it rises to well above 20:1.

Renal and Postrenal Disease. The second cause of elevated BUN is true renal disease. Here again there will be a rise in BUN due to low GFR. Now, however, creatinine filtration will be compromised so that its serum level will rise correspondingly. Thus in true renal disease, both BUN and creatinine rise together, maintaining the BUN/creatinine at 10:1 to 20:1 (Oh, 2003). This pattern also occurs in so-called postrenal disease, i.e., obstructive uropathy due to renal or ureteral stones (nephro- or urolithiasis), prostatic enlargement from benign prostatic hypertrophy or prostatic carcinoma, urinary tract infection, bladder stasis and urothelial carcinomas.

Pinpointing the Lesion. Suppose a patient is found to have a BUN of 60 mg/dL and a creatinine of 3.5 mg/dL. True renal failure can therefore be diagnosed. Now consider the kidney to be two compartments, one a filtration compartment (glomerulus) and the other a concentration compartment (renal tubules). If renal failure is present, where is the lesion—in the filtration or concentration compartment? As discussed previously, the function of the kidneys is to conserve fluids or to concentrate the urine. Therefore, if a patient is on a fluid-restricted diet, the osmolality of urine (Uosm) should be significantly higher than the osmolality of plasma (Posm). In fact, Uosm/Posm is higher than 1.2 for normal individuals. If a 24-hour urine specimen collection from the above patient on a fluid-restricted diet is measured for Uosm, we can determine where the lesion has occurred. If Uosm/Posm is less than 1.2, then the urine is not being concentrated, so there must be a tubular lesion. On the other hand, if there is a normal ratio, then the lesion must be glomerular. Confirmation of glomerular lesions can be performed by urinalysis, as described in Chapter 28. The presence of albumin and/or globulins in urine suggests compromise of the filtration function of the glomerulus. Causes of glomerular lesions are many: glomerulonephritis, pyelonephritis, diabetes, and infarction number among these; tubular lesions also have many causes, including pyelonephritis, diabetes, papillary necrosis, acute tubular necrosis (ATN), infarction, shock, and ischemia, among others. It is remarkable that from a blood specimen of only 100 µL and several urine aliquots, not only can we determine the presence of renal failure, but we can localize the lesion, and all of this virtually noninvasively.

Calcium and Phosphate

The kidneys play an important role in the regulation of calcium levels. In renal failure, calcium levels tend to fall, while phosphate levels correspondingly tend to rise. The topic of calcium and phosphorus metabolism is discussed in detail in the context of bone metabolism (see Chapter 15) and the endocrine system (see Chapter 24). Here, we discuss these two analytes for diagnostic purposes.

Remember that calcium is the most abundant cation in the body, most of it stored in bone as a calcium hydroxyphosphate in hydroxyapatite crystal. Calcium complexes with phosphate in several different forms, depending on the ionization state of phosphate—that is,

$$H_3PO_4 \leftrightarrow H_2PO_4^- + H^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 8-3)}$$

$$H_2PO_4^- \leftrightarrow HPO_4^{2-} + H^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 8-4)}$$

$$HPO_4^{2-} \leftrightarrow PO_4^{3-} + H^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 8-5)}$$

The most insoluble calcium phosphate forms are those with the most basic phosphates (i.e., those in Equation 8-5). Thus alkaline conditions promote calcium deposition in bone, while acidic conditions promote leaching of calcium from bone. Therefore, alkalosis promotes hypocalcemia, while acidosis promotes hypercalcemia.

Note also that there is an equilibrium between soluble calcium phosphate and insoluble calcium phosphate in bone. We represent this equilibrium as:

$$\text{Ca} + \text{P} \leftrightarrow (\text{CaP})\text{insoluble} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 8-6)}$$

where P represents all ionic phosphate forms and where the left side is all soluble calcium phosphate salts and the right side is the insoluble salt forms. The equilibrium constant, Ksp, for this equilibrium is:

$$\text{Ksp} = (\text{Ca}) \times (\text{P})/(\text{CaP})\text{insoluble} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 8-7)}$$

Because (CaP) insoluble is constant in concentration, the product of soluble Ca × soluble P is a constant, called the solubility constant or Ksp. Thus there is an inverse relationship between Ca and P. Hypocalcemic states are almost always accompanied by hyperphosphatemic states and vice versa. Of the soluble calcium, in the numerator of Equation 8-7, there are two forms, calcium bound to albumin and globulin, and small molecules in chelate form, and so-called ionized or nonchelated calcium. Biologically active calcium is in the ionized form. Therefore, serum levels of ionized calcium are considered to be the best measure of hypocalcemia, normocalcemia, or hypercalcemia.

Causes of Hypocalcemia. The kidneys are vital in calcium metabolism and regulate calcium levels in two ways. First, parathyroid hormone stimulates the renal tubules to excrete phosphate. By Equation 8-7, the serum calcium level must then rise. Also, the kidneys are vital to the formation of active vitamin D in the synthesis of 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol, which is necessary for the absorption of calcium in the gut. In renal disease, where there is tubular failure, phosphate excretion is inhibited due to the nonresponsiveness of the tubules to parathyroid hormone. Therefore, phosphate levels rise, while calcium levels fall. In addition, active vitamin D production is reduced, lowering absorbed calcium. Hypocalcemia and hyperphosphatemia, in the face of elevated BUN and creatinine, indicative of renal disease, strongly suggest tubular failure.

Other Causes of Hypocalcemia. Besides alkalosis and renal failure, hypocalcemia may be caused by hypoparathyroidism, also leading to hyperphosphatemia. Rarely, such as in medullary thyroid carcinomas and other APUD (amine precursor uptake and decarboxylase activity) cell tumors, the elaboration of calcitonin, a well-known calcium-lowering

hormone, may lead to decreased serum calcium levels. In addition, vitamin D levels may be low, resulting in diminished reabsorption of calcium for the gut. These causes may be encapsulated in the acronym CHARD (Calcitonin, Hypoparathyroidism, Alkalosis, Renal failure, and vitamin D deficit).

Causes of Hypercalcemia. Besides acidosis, the possible causes of this condition may be summarized by Bakerman's "CHIMPS" mnemonic (Bakerman & Strausbauch, 1994), or Cancer, Hyperthyroidism, Iatrogenic causes, Multiple myeloma, Hyperparathyroidism, and Sarcoidosis.

Calcium and Albumin

About half of calcium circulating in blood is bound to serum protein, mainly albumin; the remainder is either chelated in tight complexes with ions such as citrate and oxalate or is in ionic complexes with counterions such as chloride, so-called "free" calcium. As is true for most hormones in the body, serum levels of PTH are determined by the levels of the free target of the hormone, in this case, free calcium. Also, virtually all of the effects of calcium in the body are induced by free calcium. Free or ionized calcium can be measured directly by an ion selective electrode method. However, most laboratories measure total serum calcium using appropriate chelating dye methods; the concentrations of the calcium-dye complexes can be measured spectrophotometrically. Several formulas, none too reliable, have been developed to compute serum free-calcium concentration from the total calcium ion concentration and serum albumin concentration (Larsson & Magnusson, 2003). More relevant is the computation of the "corrected" calcium concentration, most usually in hypocalcemia (Labriola et al, 2009). Generally, even if serum albumin concentrations fluctuate substantially, resulting in changes in total calcium levels, the ionized calcium levels in serum may remain relatively stable. If a patient has a total serum calcium that is lower than the lowest value for the reference range, and if the serum albumin level is concurrently low, a correction formula is used in which the total calcium is computed as the observed total calcium in mg/dL plus a correction factor. There are several different correction factors, perhaps the most commonly used of which is $0.8 \times$ (4 g/dL—serum albumin concentration in g/dL). This correction is based on the ratio of bound calcium to albumin and the mean "normal" albumin value of 4 g/dL. If the corrected value results in total calcium in the reference range, then it is assumed that the free calcium is in the normal range. In other words, the "lost" calcium was all bound to albumin, so no free calcium was lost. Conversely, dehydration or hemoconcentration may elevate serum albumin, resulting in a falsely elevated total serum calcium. In this case the correction will be a negative one because the albumin levels are elevated above 4 g/dL.

BLOOD GAS ABNORMALITIES

We have discussed the effects of acidosis and alkalosis on serum calcium levels. The actual diagnosis of acidosis or alkalosis, however, depends on measurement of the pH of arterial blood. This topic is discussed in depth in Chapter 14. Here we focus on how to interpret abnormal results and to correlate them with other laboratory findings.

Blood gas determinations refer to the quantitative measurement of the pH of arterial blood, the PCO_2, the bicarbonate, the PO_2, oxygen saturation, and base excess. Three of these quantities are interdependent—the PCO_2, the bicarbonate, and the pH—by the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation—that is,

$$pH = 6.1 + \log[(HCO_3^-)/(H_2CO_3)] \quad \textbf{(Eq. 8-8)}$$

Because the H_2CO_3 concentration in blood is directly proportional to the PCO_2—that is, at room temperature, $H_2CO_3 = 0.03 = PCO_2$—Equation 8-8 can be written as:

$$pH = 6.1 + \log[(HCO_3^-)/(0.03 \times PCO_2)] \quad \textbf{(Eq. 8-9)}$$

Note that if bicarbonate, in the numerator of Equation 8-9, decreases due to HCO_3^- consumption, as occurs in metabolic acidosis, the respiratory rate will increase, thereby decreasing the PCO_2, causing the denominator of this equation to fall, resulting in compensation. If the PCO_2 increases as in respiratory acidosis, the kidneys retain bicarbonate so that both numerator and denominator increase so as to maintain the ratio relatively constant.

In interpreting blood gas results, the first number to note is the pH. Regardless of the values of the bicarbonate and PCO_2, if the pH is less than 7.4, the patient is acidotic; that is, the hydrogen ion concentration in the blood is elevated, which must reflect acidosis—excessive production or retention of acid. If the pH is greater than 7.4, the patient is alkalemic—that is, there is an abnormally low H^+ ion concentration in the blood. If the pH is close or equal to 7.4, the patient is neither acidemic nor alkalemic but could still have compensating processes of acidosis and alkalosis. Once the diagnosis of acidosis or alkalosis is made, then the bicarbonate and the PCO_2 can be used to decide whether it is of metabolic or respiratory origin.

TABLE 8-4
Patterns of pH, PCO_2, and Bicarbonate in Different Conditions

Condition	pH	Bicarbonate	PCO_2	Typical Causes
1. Metabolic acidosis	<7.40	Low	Low	Diabetic ketoacidosis; lactic acidosis
2. Metabolic alkalosis	>7.40	High	High	Vomiting
3. Respiratory acidosis	<7.40	High	High	COPD; paralysis of respiratory muscles
4. Respiratory alkalosis	>7.40	Low	Low	Anxiety; acute pain

COPD, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

Table 8-4 summarizes the four basic abnormal states: metabolic and respiratory acidosis and metabolic and respiratory alkalosis. In metabolic acidosis, the primary problem is production of acid as in diabetic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis (e.g., from gram-negative sepsis), and renal failure. This acid is buffered by bicarbonate, which is therefore consumed. To compensate for the bicarbonate loss, the breathing rate increases to lower the PCO_2. So a low pH combined with a low bicarbonate and a low PCO_2 point to metabolic acidosis, as shown in condition 1 in Table 8-4.

As shown in condition 2 in Table 8-4, the opposite condition, metabolic alkalosis, results in reversal of the levels shown in condition 1. The most common cause of metabolic alkalosis is vomiting, with a loss of HCl from the stomach and an attendant rise in bicarbonate.

When CO_2 is abnormally retained by the lungs, as in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), the denominator of Equation 8-9 increases, causing the pH of blood to fall. To compensate, the kidneys retain bicarbonate, thus increasing the numerator of this equation. If the blood pH is below 7.4 and the CO_2 and bicarbonate are both increased (condition 3 in Table 8-4), the acidosis is of respiratory origin. Note the mirror image condition (opposite levels) for respiratory alkalosis in condition 4 of this table. Besides COPD, major causes of respiratory acidosis include diseases like myasthenia gravis, in which there is partial paralysis of the accessory muscles of breathing; pneumonia; and central nervous system diseases affecting the brainstem in areas involved in respiratory control. Respiratory alkalosis is due mainly to hyperventilation, often of psychogenic origin. Here, the PCO_2 is reduced because of the rapidity of breathing.

The pH of blood can affect the levels of electrolytes in serum. In acidosis, besides bicarbonate buffering, red cells also buffer the excess H^+ ions by exchanging these for intracellular K^+ ions, the net effect being a mild hyperkalemia. An attendant hypokalemia occurs in alkalosis. Remember also that acidosis can cause a mild hypercalcemia; alkalosis can cause a mild hypocalcemia.

Anion Gap

All sodium ions must be neutralized by counterions, most of which, in blood, are constituted by chloride and bicarbonate ions, and, to a lesser degree, by phosphate, sulfate, and protein carboxylate groups. Normal serum sodium is about 140 mEq/L, chloride is usually around 100 mEq/L, and bicarbonate is around 2 mEq/L. The anion gap is defined as $Na^+ - (Cl^- + HCO_3^-)$, which, for normal individuals, is around 16. This 16 mEq/L really comprises the other counterions that neutralize sodium but are not measured in serum.

If an individual has a metabolic acidosis, in which the rise in H^+ ion concentration is accompanied by a corresponding rise in Cl^- ions, the acid will be buffered by bicarbonate (converted to H_2CO_3). The bicarbonate value will therefore decrease, but there will be a 1:1 increase in chloride ion. Thus there will be no change in the anion gap. If the metabolic acidosis is due to the presence of an acid whose counterion is not Cl^-, such as acetoacetic acid (in diabetic acidosis) or lactic acid as in sepsis or hypoperfusion, then bicarbonate is reduced, as above, but there is no corresponding increase in Cl^-. Therefore, there is an increase in the anion gap that can reach values of 25 to 30 mEq/L. The presence of a widened anion gap signifies the presence of a metabolic acidosis due to a non-chloride-containing acid.

Low Anion Gaps. Consistently low anion gaps, typically in the range of 1 to 3 mEq/L, signify the presence of high levels of basic protein, often a monoclonal paraprotein as occurs in plasma cell dyscrasias. Basic protein contains ammonium ions, the counterions for which are chloride. Now the "invisible" ion is ammonium, while there is a measurable increase in chloride ion. This tends to decrease the anion gap. Persistently low anion gaps are a serious sign of possible malignancy—for example, multiple myeloma.

Oxygenation

Blood gases also give an excellent measurement of tissue perfusion through measurement of the PO_2 and the oxygen saturation of hemoglobin. Normal PO_2 values should be 90 to 100 mmHg, while O_2 saturation should be 100%. Low values of either or both of these numbers flag underlying pathology. The major causes of low values for these measurements are myocardial infarction, pulmonary embolus, severe pulmonary interstitial disease (e.g., interstitial pneumonia), and tissue anoxic states secondary to hypoperfusion as in septicemia and severe congestive heart failure. In pulmonary embolus, there is blockage of the pulmonary circulation by the embolus, despite adequate ventilation, giving rise to ventilation/perfusion inequalities. The hallmark of pulmonary embolus is a marked drop in the PO_2.

Hypercarbia as a Cause of Hypoxia. Another major cause of hypoxic states in arterial blood is CO_2 retentive states as in severe COPD. This occurs because as CO_2 builds up in alveoli, it reduces the volume of O_2 in the air space. At PCO_2 values of over 50 mmHg, the effect on alveolar PO_2, represented as PAO_2, becomes important, as illustrated in Figure 8-2. Oxygen, unlike CO_2, is not soluble in water or membranes, so there is a difference of about 10 to 15 mmHg pressure between alveolar and arterial O_2 (represented as PaO_2), called the A–a gradient. Thus the PaO_2 is even lower than the decreased PAO_2. It is important to remember that the total oxygen breathed in, called the PIO_2, is partitioned, therefore, between the alveolar sac and the arterial blood. This relationship may be written as:

$$PIO_2 = PAO_2 + PaO_2 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 8-10)}$$

For each mole of O_2 consumed, approximately 0.8 mole of CO_2 is produced. The ratio of CO_2 produced to O_2 consumed is called the respiratory quotient or the RQ. The PaO_2 may therefore be written as $PaCO_2/RQ$. Overall, Equation 8-10 can be rewritten as:

$$PAO_2 = PIO_2 - PaCO_2/RQ \quad \textbf{(Eq. 8-11)}$$

For an RQ of 0.8:

$$PAO_2 = PIO_2 - 1.25 \times PaCO_2 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 8-12)}$$

This equation states that, for each increment in the $PaCO_2$, there will be a more than one-to-one decrease in the PAO_2. This will result in severe oxygen deficits.

Figure 8-3 is the oxygen–hemoglobin dissociation curve. Note that the curve is sigmoidal due to the allosteric nature of the binding of oxygen to hemoglobin. For PO_2 values between 70 and 100 mmHg, the saturation of hemoglobin is close to 100%. But at PO_2 values of less than 70 mmHg, there is a steep drop in the saturation fraction so that small drops in PO_2 lead to large decreases in percent saturation. Compounding this effect is the disproportionate decrease in PO_2 whenever PCO_2 increases, as described previously. While these detrimental events transpire, tissue perfusion severely diminishes because of the diminished oxygen saturation of arterial blood. The result is tissue acidosis (mainly from lactic acid as a result of anaerobic metabolism). Acidosis shifts the oxygen–hemoglobin dissociation to the right, as in Figure 8-3, causing even lower saturation for a given PO_2, causing further diminished tissue perfusion and more tissue acidosis. This vicious circle can be corrected by placing the patient on a respirator to cause increased expiration of CO_2.

The pattern of arterial blood gas determinations for this type of patient will be low arterial blood pH, low PO_2, low oxygen saturation, high PCO_2, and low bicarbonate. This pattern is not typical of the four basic patterns given in Table 8-4 because, on top of a fundamental respiratory acidosis (high PCO_2), there is a superimposed tissue metabolic lactic acidosis, causing low bicarbonate. These findings, together with the low PO_2, indicate the immediate need for ventilation of the patient on a respirator.

Unlike the two conditions—myocardial infarction and pulmonary embolus—the treatment of the acute hypercarbic state is not to administer oxygen unless the patient is being adequately ventilated. Hypercarbia causes a CO_2-induced inhibition of the respiratory centers in the pons and the medulla oblongata in the brainstem. In fact, the only impetus to breathe is the hypercarbia-induced hypoxia, causing chemoreceptors in the aortic arch to send signals to the respiratory center in the brain to continue breathing. Administration of oxygen to patients with this condition without ventilation can cause cessation of respiration and the acute demise of the patient.

GLUCOSE ABNORMALITIES

The normal reference interval for fasting serum glucose is generally between 70 and 110 mg/dL. Recently there has been discussion of lowering the upper limit to 100 mg/dL (Nathan, 2009; American Diabetes Association, 2013). As described in Chapter 16, the two basic abnormalities that occur with serum glucose levels are hyperglycemia, almost always associated with diabetes mellitus, and hypoglycemia due to iatrogenic (overdose with insulin in the diabetic patient) or other underlying causes (such as reactive hypoglycemia due to "hypersensitivity" to insulin,

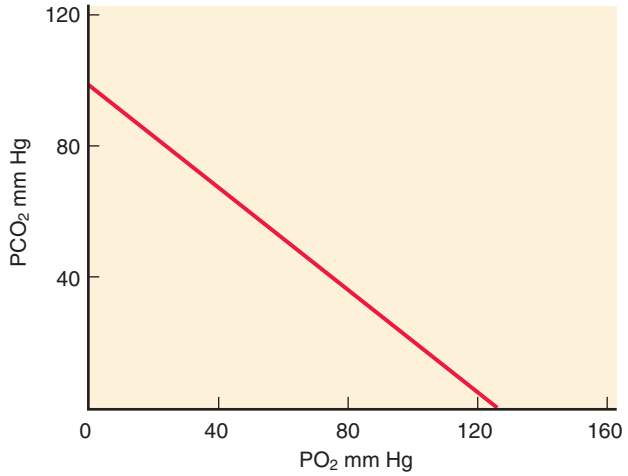


Figure 8-2 The effect of increased PCO_2 on the PO_2 in the alveolus and in arterial blood. This figure demonstrates that as the PCO_2 increases, there is greater than a one-to-one decrease of PO_2.

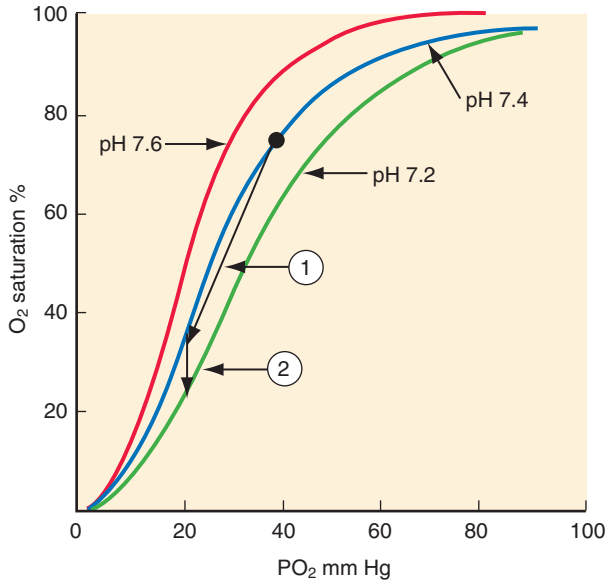


Figure 8-3 The effects of decreasing PO_2 in the allosteric zone of the oxygen–hemoglobin dissociation curve. On the pH 7.4 (middle, blue) curve, if the PO_2 drops from 80 to 60 mmHg, there is little effect on the oxygen saturation. However, a drop from 40 to 20 mmHg results in a large drop in oxygen saturation from about 80% to 30% (arrow 1 in the figure). With this low oxygen saturation, there is a marked tissue lactic acidosis from anaerobic metabolism. The increased acidosis results in a drop in blood pH to 7.2, shifting the oxygen–hemoglobin dissociation to the right (pH 7.2, green curve). Now, for a PO_2 of 20 mmHg, the oxygen saturation drops even further (arrow 2 in the figure) to about 20%, setting a vicious cycle in motion.

insulinoma, etc.). To establish hyperglycemia, it is vital to determine whether the patient has (1) a fasting serum glucose level greater than or equal to 126 mg/dL, (2) a random serum glucose level greater than or equal to 200 mg/dL, or (3) a 2-hour postload plasma glucose concentration greater than or equal to 200 mg/dL during an oral glucose tolerance test (Nathan, 2009; American Diabetes Association, 2013). Any one of the above findings is diagnostic if it can be confirmed by repeat testing on a subsequent day (Nathan, 2009; American Diabetes Association, 2013).

In the glucose tolerance test (see Chapter 16), after giving the patient, who has not eaten for 12 hours overnight, a well-defined amount of glucose orally, the blood and urine glucose levels are followed. Normally, serum glucose levels rise and then fall within about a 2-hour period. If the glucose levels remain elevated, however, the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus may again be made. Also, if glucose is detected in the urine at any point, evidence for this condition is also obtained, although absence of urinary glucose does not in any way rule out diabetes mellitus.

Glucose reacts covalently with the α-amino group of the beta chain of hemoglobin to form a Schiff base that is then reduced. This covalent reaction product is called hemoglobin A1c or glycosylated hemoglobin. Levels of glycosylated hemoglobin change slowly over time and therefore constitute a stable and reliable indicator of serum glucose levels over the past 2 to 3 months. Glycosylated hemoglobin levels are measured as a percentage of total hemoglobin; percentage levels that are greater than 6.5% are considered to be indicative of diabetes mellitus (Nathan, 2009; American Diabetes Association, 2013), and efficacy of treatment is gauged by whether this serum level is reduced to less than 6.5%. Of all of the methods for diagnosing, and especially for monitoring treatment of, diabetes mellitus, measurement of glycosylated hemoglobin levels is perhaps the most accurate and should be measured in conjunction with blood glucose determinations (Blincko & Edwards, 2001; Krishnamurti & Steffes, 2001; Kilpatrick, 2004; Nathan, 2009; American Diabetes Association, 2013).

OTHER ABNORMAL LABORATORY FINDINGS IN DIABETES MELLITUS

As discussed in the electrolyte section above, under the influence of insulin, whenever glucose is transported into the cell, it is accompanied by potassium. In diabetes, in the absence of insulin, blood glucose is elevated, as is potassium. Due to increased metabolism of fats, there is a buildup of acetoacetic acid, leading to metabolic acidosis. In diabetes where the blood glucose becomes exceptionally elevated—for example, over 300 mg/dL—serum osmolality becomes dangerously high and can cause nonketotic, hyperosmolar coma. In this condition, red (and white) cell water flows from the cells into the vascular volume, tending to dilute analytes such as sodium. Thus the nonketotic, hyperosmolar coma patient may have a hyperosmolar serum, hyperglycemia, hyperkalemia, and hyponatremia. In ketotic states, the patient will have, additionally, a metabolic acidosis and a large anion gap.

Serum glucose levels of higher than 60 mg/dL on a series of random fasting serum specimens strongly suggest hypoglycemia. The low glucose values should be associated with adrenergic and/or neuroglycopenic symptoms, which are relieved upon administration of glucose (Whipple's triad). Glucose tolerance tests show that after an initial sharp rise of serum glucose levels, there is an abnormally rapid drop to levels substantially below 60 mg/dL. If hypoglycemia is suspected, it is advisable to give the patient a 5-hour glucose tolerance test because the hypoglycemic "dip" often is not seen until after 3 hours. Glucose tolerance tests on patients with suspected hypoglycemia should be performed with great caution because the procedure can induce severe reactive hypoglycemia causing loss of consciousness and even shock.

LIVER FUNCTION TESTS

Liver function is discussed in depth in Chapter 21. Here we summarize a set of principles that will enable the reader to formulate differential diagnoses of liver disease from the pattern of the so-called liver function tests. The liver may be considered as three systems:

1. A chemical metabolic system
2. A reticuloendothelial system based on Kupffer cells (macrophages) that line the sinusoids in the vascular system of the liver that are concerned with metabolism of hemoglobin released from red blood cells
3. A metabolic system for the secretion of bilirubin, a hemoglobin metabolite, into the biliary tract

The functioning of the first system can be tested by measuring the serum levels of two critical amino transferases or transaminases: aspartate amino transferase (AST) and alanine amino transferase (ALT). High serum levels of these enzymes occur most commonly in acute hepatitis and/or mechanical damage to the liver. The liver is the site of extensive metabolic processes, including the Krebs cycle and glycolysis that occur in hepatocytes, and a prominent metabolic enzyme is lactate dehydrogenase (LDH). In hepatitis or in other conditions resulting in hepatocytic injury, including mass lesions of the liver, LDH levels increase.

Because the liver is the site for the synthesis of over 90% of the proteins in the body, including all of the albumin, levels of total protein and albumin also reflect liver function. Unlike with the two amino transferases, however, liver pathology is recognized by *decreases* in the serum levels of total protein and albumin. These decreases do not occur unless 80% or more of liver tissue is destroyed, as in cirrhosis and fulminant hepatic failure.

The liver is the only tissue in the body that can metabolize ammonia, the end product of amino and nucleic acid metabolism via the Krebs-Hennseleit cycle, in which ammonia is converted to urea. When more than 80% of liver tissue is destroyed, as in the above-mentioned conditions, serum ammonia rises to toxic levels.

The functioning of the second system is concerned with circulating hemoglobin from lysed red blood cells. In Kupffer cells, the iron of heme is oxidized to the ferric state, and the heme is released from its complex with globin. The porphyrin ring of heme is opened into a straight chain compound with release of CO (carbon monoxide) called biliverdin that is then further oxidized to bilirubin.

In the third system, bilirubin enters the hepatocyte, where it undergoes conjugation to glucuronic acid, and is then transported to the interface between the hepatocyte and the epithelial cell of the bile canaliculus, where it is secreted into the canaliculus and then into the bile ductules. Two enzymes are strongly associated with the canalicular system in the liver: on the hepatic surface is gamma-glutamyltransferase (GGT) and on the canalicular surface is the enzyme alkaline phosphatase (AP). Also useful in diagnosis is the enzyme 5′-nucleotidase (5′-N). In cases where there is obstruction of the flow of conjugated bilirubin into the canaliculus, there is an increase in serum bilirubin, most of it conjugated or direct bilirubin, and a rise generally in both alkaline phosphatase and gamma-glutamyltransferase.

Six patterns of liver function tests are useful in diagnosing the major diseases affecting liver tissue (Table 8-5).

Hepatitis and acute injuries and/or necrotic lesions in the liver cause primarily a marked rise in the levels of the aminotransferases, aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and alanine aminotransferase (ALT). Cell injury and necrosis also cause the rise of other enzymes such as lactate dehydrogenase (LD). These include acute hepatitis (e.g., infectious and chemically induced), infarction, and trauma. The biliary tract is always affected so that direct bilirubin rises from interference with bile flow. Because of biliary tract injury, the enzyme alkaline phosphatase (AP) rises

TABLE 8-5
Six Fundamental Patterns of Liver Function Tests

Condition	AST	ALT	LD	AP	TP	Albumin	Bilirubin	Ammonia
1. Hepatitis	H	H	H	H	N	N	H	N
2. Cirrhosis	N	N	N	N–sl H	L	L	H	H
3. Biliary obstruction	N	N	N	H	N	N	H	N
4. Space-occupying lesion	N or H	N or H	H	H	N	N	N–H	N
5. Passive congestion	Sl H	sl H	sl H	N–sl H	N	N	N–sl H	N
6. Fulminant failure	Very H	H	H	H	L	L	H	H

H, High; *N,* normal; *L,* low; *sl,* slightly; *AST,* aspartate aminotransferase; *ALT,* alanine aminotransferase; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase; *AP,* alkaline phosphatase; *TP,* total protein.

along with gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT) and 5′-nucleotidase (5′-N). Hepatocyte injury causes loss of conjugation of transported bilirubin, so that indirect (unconjugated) bilirubin also rises.

Because, generally, in hepatitis, much less than 80% of the liver is destroyed, total regeneration will occur, and enough tissue is present to enable adequate levels of protein synthesis and ammonia fixation as urea. Therefore, the total protein and albumin and ammonia levels remain normal. These typical results are summarized in condition 1 in Table 8-5.

Cirrhosis of the liver is characterized by two cardinal features: fibrosis, preventing regeneration of liver tissue wherever this has occurred, and nodules of regenerating liver tissue, which are the only source of any kind of hepatocytic function. Thus in cirrhosis, as shown in condition 2 in Table 8-5, almost the reverse pattern occurs from the one seen in condition 1 in Table 8-5 for hepatitis. Because in panhepatic cirrhosis there is destruction of more than 80% of liver tissue, with no regeneration of damaged liver tissue, the AST/ALT aminotransferases and LD levels (all from the regenerating nodules) tend to be normal or low, or occasionally mildly elevated. However, the total protein and albumin are both abnormally low. Because the liver is the sole site of ammonia detoxification via the urea cycle and because, in this condition, there is loss of hepatocytic function, serum ammonia levels are elevated. Because there is insufficient viable liver tissue remaining, and because fibrosis destroys the cholangioles, both unconjugated (indirect) and conjugated (direct) bilirubin tend to be elevated.

Acute biliary obstruction caused by stones in the biliary tree or by neoplasms that block bile excretion results in elevations in direct bilirubin and biliary tract AP, along with the enzymes GGT and 5′-N (see above). All other liver function test results are normal. For simple biliary obstruction, therefore, the pattern is as shown in condition 3 in Table 8-5.

Space-occupying lesions of the liver are characterized, for reasons that are not well understood, by isolated elevations of the enzymes AP and LD. This pattern is shown in condition 4 in Table 8-5. The most common causes of this condition are metastatic carcinoma to the liver and hepatocellular carcinoma.

Passive congestion of the liver is characterized by a mild elevation of aminotransferases (AST/ALT) and LD and, in more severe cases, elevations of total bilirubin and AP. This pattern is also seen in infectious mononucleosis, where the rise in bilirubin may be marked. The general passive congestion pattern is shown in condition 5 in Table 8-5.

Acute fulminant hepatic failure from a variety of causes, which include Reye's syndrome, hepatitis C (Gill & Sterling, 2001; Schiodt & Lee, 2003), pan-hepatitic hepatitis (mainly from hepatitis B-delta), severe hypoperfusion states, cirrhosis, and multiple abdominal surgeries, is discussed in Chapter 21. This condition is total liver failure. The overall pattern (Sunheimer et al, 1994) is shown in condition 6 in Table 8-5. It appears as a combination of hepatitis and cirrhosis. Here, AST and ALT reach exceptionally high values, often in excess of 10,000 IU/L. At the same time, total protein and albumin are markedly reduced, and the ammonia levels are abnormally elevated, causing hepatic encephalopathy. LD, AP, and bilirubin are also elevated. Besides the marked rise in AST and ALT, combined with hyperammonemia, there is a characteristic disproportional rise of AST over ALT, further confirming the diagnosis. It is vital to recognize this pattern because the underlying condition is a medical emergency that must be treated promptly.

Correlations of Liver Function Test Results with Other Laboratory Findings

In severe liver failure, secondary to cirrhosis or to fulminant hepatic failure, it is not uncommon to find electrolyte abnormalities and abnormalities in renal function tests and in the coagulation profile. Patients with either condition 2 or 6 in Table 8-5 often have ascites, with marked third space fluid loss. This results in increased levels of both ADH and aldosterone to retain intravascular water. Depending on which levels "win out," the patient may become hyponatremic or hypernatremic.

Severe liver failure can also cause hepatorenal syndrome—that is, renal dysfunction secondary to hepatic failure. This disease is characterized by the typical patterns shown in conditions 2 and 6 in Table 8-5. As discussed in the renal section above, renal failure results in elevations in BUN and creatinine with a 10:1 to 20:1 ratio, indicative of renal failure. The Uosm/Posm ratio is less than 1.2:1, indicating tubular dysfunction.

Severe coagulopathies with elevated APTTs and PTs may be seen due to the absence of production of coagulation factors. Not infrequently, DIC will accompany liver failure. This condition must be distinguished from low coagulation factor production combined with hepatosplenomegaly due to portal hypertension, as in cirrhosis. The splenomegaly may result in sequestration of platelets, so the overall pattern may resemble DIC but not be true DIC. To clinch the diagnosis of DIC, there should be elevations of D-dimer levels. Because in DIC emboli occur in the microvasculature of different tissues, including bone marrow, bone marrow–induced hemolytic anemia may develop, in which schistocytes, burr cells, and fragmented forms appear in the peripheral blood smear. In addition, nucleated red cells and myeloid precursor cells, such as myelocytes and metamyelocytes, may also be seen in the blood smear—the so-called leuko-erythroblastic picture referred to in the Coagulation section above. Also, in severe liver failure, abnormal red cell forms, called target cells, may be seen in the peripheral blood smear.

Patients with cirrhosis and acute fulminant hepatic failure tend to be immunocompromised. Many of these patients have defective T cell function but produce an excess of (ineffective) immunoglobulin. Thus these patients tend to have low serum albumin levels from diminished albumin synthesis but elevated serum immunoglobulins.

CARDIAC FUNCTION TESTS

Diagnosis of Myocardial Infarction and Acute Coronary Syndrome

Myocardial infarction (MI) and acute coronary syndrome are discussed at length in Chapter 18. Because acute MI (AMI) requires rapid and accurate diagnosis, especially now that new treatment options with thrombolytic agents are available, the clinical laboratory has been called upon to provide serum diagnostic tests that can make this diagnosis at an early stage. Until recently, laboratory diagnosis was based on serial determinations of the MB fraction of creatine phosphokinase (CK-MB). Confirmation of the diagnosis was provided by the so-called "flipped ratio" of the isozymes of lactate dehydrogenase (LD) 24 to 36 hours after the initial acute event and/or by observation of the characteristic time courses for elevations of the three enzymes: CK, aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and LD.

These approaches have been replaced mainly by two other analytes—cardiac troponin (cTn) (Aviles et al, 2002) and myoglobin (MY)—that provide more rapid and specific diagnostic capabilities (Morrow et al, 2007). MY is an oxygen-binding/transport protein found in both cardiac and skeletal muscle. Its relatively small size and function allow for early release from irreversibly damaged cells. However, current methods of measurement cannot distinguish MY's tissue of origin. Therefore, its use is confined to screening patients for possible AMI; positive results suggest further workup for AMI.

Troponin is a regulatory protein complex in muscle tissue; it comprises three subunits designated troponin I (TnI), troponin T (TnT), and troponin C (TnC). Different genes encode TnI in skeletal and cardiac muscle, giving rise to isoforms that differ significantly in sequence. In addition, cardiac TnI contains an additional 31 amino acid residues on its N-terminal. Rapid, sensitive, and accurate immunoassays for cardiac TnT and cardiac TnI have been developed (Thygesen et al, 2012). The most useful assays appear to be for TnI because they are specific for the cardiac form, and TnT may be elevated in patients with renal failure without MI (Diris et al, 2004). In AMI, cardiac TnI becomes elevated 4 to 8 hours after onset of chest pain, reaches a peak at about 12 to 16 hours, and remains elevated for 5 to 9 days. Values at or above 1.5 ng/mL are considered to be suggestive of AMI. However, because different assays (all immunoassays) measure different domains of TnT and TnI, reference ranges differ, depending on the antibodies used in the assays. Because cTn levels rise relatively rapidly and remain elevated for prolonged times, troponin determinations have replaced the so-called "flipped ratio" of the two isozymes of LD, LD1, and LD2 (LD2:LD1 ratio rises to >0.75 and often exceeds 1.0), which occurs only about 36 hours after the onset of symptoms.

CK-MB is another biomarker that can be used in diagnosing AMI. This is an isozyme of creatine phosphokinase (CK) that has three isozymes composed of two chains (called the M and B chains): MM, MB, and BB. The MB fraction is predominantly found in cardiac muscle (Roberts, 1997). To diagnose AMI from CK-MB serum levels, it is important to show both a rise in the concentration of CK-MB and in the ratio of CK-MB to total CK (also called the cardiac index) (Thompson et al, 1988; Woo et al, 1992). Because there is a small amount of CK-MB in skeletal muscle, diseases of skeletal muscle that cause the level of CK-MM to rise to high values will also cause the levels of CK-MB to rise to high absolute concentrations in serum, which can cause false-positive values for CK-MB. In addition, to increase both the sensitivity and specificity of CK-MB in the diagnosis of acute AMI, it has been found necessary to perform serial determinations of MB fraction (at 3- to 4-hour intervals over a 12- to 16-hour period) that show a progressive rise that reaches a peak, followed by a fall to low levels. This pattern is virtually 100% diagnostic of myocardial infarction (Lott, 1984; Wu et al, 1999). More important, CK-MB generally rises 4 to 6 hours, and sometimes only 2 hours, after the onset

of chest pain, and it peaks within 12 hours. Therefore, MY and CK-MB were recommended (Wu et al, 1999; Alpert et al, 2000; Fromm & Roberts, 2001; Lewandrowski et al, 2002) for use as early markers of AMI. However, elevated TnT and TnI levels are more specific for cardiac injury than are elevated CK-MB levels. Like CK-MB, they rise within 4 to 6 hours, and sometimes within 2 hours, after the onset of chest pain.

Current protocols for the laboratory diagnosis of AMI vary and are evolving as assays for cTn improve (see Chapter 18). In some medical centers TnI or TnT is used exclusively, while in other centers, both troponin and CK-MB are used together.

Diagnosis of Congestive Heart Failure

Until recently, this condition was diagnosed strictly on the basis of symptomatology and/or as a result of procedures such as echocardiography, but more recently a biomarker for this condition is the brain form or B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP), which has been approved as a definitive test for this condition and appears to be an excellent marker for early heart failure. This test may also be both diagnostically and prognostically significant in patients presenting with acute dyspnea and chest pain. The differential diagnosis in these patients includes dyspnea caused by chronic heart failure (signs and symptoms of which are typically nonspecific) versus other causes of acute dyspnea (e.g., pneumonia, carcinoma, effusion, asthma). Normal levels (i.e., a high negative predictive value for this test) appear useful in excluding a cardiac etiology in these patients. Levels of BNP may also be an independent predictor of arrhythmia, stroke, and death (Clerico & Emdin, 2004; Clerico et al, 2012; Ishii et al, 2003; Mueller et al, 2004; Prahash & Lynch, 2004; Wang et al, 2004; Winter & Elin, 2004; Novo et al, 2009). Studies suggest that serum BNP levels are useful in evaluating the efficacy of treatment of congestive heart failure (Novo et al, 2009).

SKELETAL MUSCLE FUNCTION

As noted in the Cardiac Function Tests section above, an elevated serum CK-MB is a useful marker for myocardial disease. The MB fraction is one of three possible isozyme dimer states of the M and B chains. The MM fraction is by far the most prominent of the three isozymes; this isozyme of CK is found in skeletal muscle. Thus diseases affecting skeletal muscle are often accompanied by substantial serum elevations of this CK isozyme. The most common cause of skeletal muscle disease is myositis, a general inflammation of skeletal muscle fibers affecting the sarcolemma. This condition has many causes, including viral causes, especially coxsackie B viral infections that predominantly affect skeletal muscle, autoimmune conditions, and drugs. One of the most common causes of drug-induced myositis is the statin class of cholesterol-lowering drugs such as lovastatin. Another closely related condition is rhabdomyolysis, which is the breakdown of skeletal muscle due to such causes as trauma, drug abuse (especially intravenous drug abuse from needle damage to skeletal muscle), severe, generalized myositis due to viral infections, and third-degree burns. Thus serum CK levels should always be obtained in patients complaining of generalized muscle pain. If these levels are elevated, efficacy of treatment may be followed by serial levels of total CK.

As noted in the Cardiac Function Tests section above, both cardiac and skeletal muscle contain the oxygen transport protein myoglobin. In conditions of acute myositis of skeletal muscle, myoglobin is released from damaged muscle cells, giving elevated levels of this protein in serum. Because this protein has a relative low molecular mass, it is filtered in the kidneys and excreted in the urine, causing myoglobinuria. Because myoglobin is toxic to renal tubules, high serum concentrations of myoglobin can cause renal failure, a potentially serious complication of myositis and especially of rhabdomyolysis (Melli et al, 2005; Ouyang et al, 2009).

PANCREATIC FUNCTION TESTS

Elevations in serum pancreatic amylase and lipase are definitive markers for pancreatic disease. The most common cause for such increases in the serum levels of these enzymes is pancreatitis. In acute pancreatitis, both enzymes are elevated. Because amylase can also be produced by the salivary glands, amylase is less specific than lipase as a marker for pancreatitis. Elevations in the latter enzyme are definitive for pancreatic disease.

MARKERS FOR INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS

As discussed previously in the hematology section, increases in the white blood cell count, especially with a predominance of neutrophils, indicate acute infection. In most acute inflammatory conditions, as noted previously, acute phase reactant proteins are also found to be increased. These proteins occur in the alpha (including alpha-1-antitrypsin, alpha-2-macroglobulin) and beta (including ferritin and C-reactive protein) regions of the serum protein electrophoretogram, as discussed in Chapter 19 on serum protein electrophoresis. In this regard, quantitative determinations for serum C-reactive protein (CRP) are very helpful in recognizing acute inflammatory states. Recently, specific antibodies to CRP have allowed for highly sensitive measurement of CRP (termed high-sensitivity CRP or hs-CRP) at lower concentrations than were previously measurable (Roberts et al, 2000). Currently, elevated levels of hs-CRP appear to serve as an early marker of inflammation and may have utility in assessing cardiovascular risk for stroke and MI (Abrams, 2003; Ridker, 2003; Libby & Ridker, 2004).

Fibrinogen, also an acute phase reactant, may additionally increase. Often, the platelet count tends to rise, and platelets themselves have been considered as "acute phase reactants." In addition, in both acute and chronic inflammatory conditions, erythrocytes exhibit increased mobilities. Thus there is an increase in the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR). Recent studies suggest that the best marker for inflammation, especially as a guide to therapeutic efficacy, is CRP (Crowson et al, 2009).

Finally, one common cause of acute inflammation is gout—that is, hyperuricemia, or elevations of uric acid in serum. Uric acid crystals cause a severe, acute arthritic condition (gout). Serum levels of uric acid over 7.5 mg/dL are indicative of this condition. Less constant findings are the presence of uric acid crystals in the urinary sediment (see Chapter 27) or in joint fluid (see Chapter 28).

ENDOCRINE FUNCTION TESTING

We noted that abnormal functioning of the thyroid and adrenal cortex can give rise to important abnormal laboratory findings. Hypothyroidism, for example, can give rise to macrocytic anemia, while hypoadrenalism gives rise to electrolyte abnormalities—that is, hyponatremia and hyperkalemia and an acidosis. Hyperadrenalism produces the opposite effect—that is, hypernatremia, hypokalemia, and an alkalosis. It is therefore important to confirm that these endocrine glands are malfunctioning. The important topic of endocrine function testing is discussed in Chapter 24. Here we present simple principles for the laboratory diagnosis and identification of the site of origin of thyroid, adrenal, and parathyroid conditions.

Principle

All endocrine systems involve a stimulating hormone that is synthesized and secreted into the blood from one tissue, such as the pituitary, parathyroid glands, and so on. These hormones are delivered to their targets, which may be the thyroid gland, adrenal glands, or a nonendocrine target such as the renal tubules, in the case of the parathyroid glands. In all cases, for normally functioning endocrine systems, elevations of the hormones or, in the case of the parathyroid glands, elevations in serum ionized calcium levels, will result in decreased levels of the primary hormones. Conversely, decreased levels of the target, such as thyroxin (T4) or ionized calcium, will result in increased levels of the stimulating hormones. For example, high levels of circulating thyroxine or T4 will result in low levels of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), a condition called primary hyperthyroidism, and, conversely, low levels of T4 will result in high levels of TSH, a condition called primary hypothyroidism. In contrast, if the pituitary gland secretes an excess of TSH due to an adenoma or other pathological condition, this increase in TSH will result in elevated T4. This condition is also referred to as secondary hyperthyroidism. Thus if both T4 and TSH levels are elevated, a diagnosis of pituitary disease, —that is, pituitary adenoma in which there is hypersecretion of TSH—can be made. Conversely, decreases of both TSH and T4 point to pituitary hyposecretive states, also referred to as secondary hypothyroidism. These considerations may be summed up as the following principle: C*hanges in opposite directions of the stimulating and target hormones (e.g., T4) or effectors (e.g., ionized calcium) point to endocrine target (e.g., thyroid gland) disease, while changes of the two hormones in the same direction point to stimulating hormone gland (e.g., pituitary) disease.*

Thyroid Function

Thyroid function tests are the most commonly ordered tests for endocrine function. It is important to note that in a hospital population (as opposed to an ambulatory population), thyroid screening tests may be diagnostically misleading. This is due to endocrine stress responses (as well as medications) that may affect hormone levels (Van den Berghe, 2003). As discussed in Chapter 24, the thyroid gland synthesizes thyroid hormone, tetraiodothyronine, or T4, with four iodines, which requires iodine uptake by the gland. This activity is strongly stimulated by the peptide hormone TSH from the pituitary. In the periphery, T4 is converted to T3 (three iodines). Over 99% of T4 is bound to serum proteins—that is, thyroid-binding

TABLE 8-6
Patterns of Serum Levels of TSH and T4 in Different Thyroid Gland Conditions

Condition	T4 (Most Accurate, Free T4)	TSH	Site of Disease
Euthyroid	Normal	Normal	None
Primary hypothyroidism	Low	High	Thyroid gland
Secondary hypothyroidism	Low	Low to normal	Pituitary
Primary hyperthyroidism	High	Low	Thyroid
Secondary hyperthyroidism	High	High	Pituitary

globulin (TBG) and albumin. However, it is the free T4 (<1% of total T4) that exerts all biologic effects. Accurate methods exist that directly measure serum free T4. While, most commonly, both total and free T4 rise and fall together in serum, there are circumstances in which total T4 may be elevated but T4-binding proteins may also be elevated so that free T4 levels are normal. This results in a euthyroid state in which TSH levels are also normal. Of prime importance, high T4 (more correctly, high free T4) causes inhibition of TSH secretion, while low T4 (more correctly, low free T4) causes elevation of TSH. In primary hypothyroidism (primary thyroid gland disease), T4 is present at low serum levels, while TSH becomes elevated. More important, often, in subclinical hypothyroidism, T4 can be within the reference range, but TSH is elevated. In ambulatory patients, elevated TSH in the presence of low levels of T4 is diagnostic of primary hypothyroidism. In secondary hypothyroidism, TSH is low due to pituitary failure, resulting in low T4.

In primary hyperthyroidism (primary thyroid gland disease), excess T4 is secreted by the thyroid gland, which is the source of the problem. As a result, TSH is decreased, and T4 is elevated. If, however, there is a primary lesion in the pituitary gland—for example, hyperplasia or adenoma—then TSH is oversecreted. Because TSH is elevated, T4 secretion is elevated. This is secondary hyperthyroidism (secondary to pituitary disease). These conditions and the patterns of T4 and TSH levels that occur in them are summarized in Table 8-6.

Adrenal Function

As discussed in depth in Chapter 24, the adrenal gland is divided anatomically into two endocrine glands: the adrenal cortex and the adrenal medulla. Adrenal cortical hormones are steroid hormones of three basic types: mineralocorticoids, like aldosterone, that regulate sodium and potassium ions in the distal convoluted tubule, as discussed above; the glucocorticoids, like cortisol, that are gluconeogenic; and the sex hormones—that is, the estrogens and the androgens. The adrenal medulla is a neuroendocrine gland that secretes epinephrine and norepinephrine that act on the sympathetic nervous system. By far the most commonly ordered serum analyte used to measure adrenal cortical function is cortisol. Cortisol secretion by the adrenal cortex is stimulated by the pituitary hormone adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH). ACTH secretion, in turn, is stimulated by the hypothalamic hormone corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH). Its serum levels are under diurnal control such that serum ACTH levels peak at about 200 pg/mL in the morning hours (about 7:00 AM), while they decline to their lowest values of around 100 pg/mL at midnight. Cortisol secretion follows ACTH secretion such that its serum levels are highest at around 8:00 to 9:00 AM. Cortisol inhibits ACTH secretion by the pituitary gland both by directly blocking pituitary ACTH secretion and by inhibiting CRH secretion by the hypothalamus.

Therefore, if the adrenal cortex hypersecretes cortisol secondary to such conditions as adrenal hyperplasia, adenoma, or carcinoma, serum cortisol levels increase and block ACTH secretion. This condition is called primary hyperadrenalism. Serum cortisol levels are elevated (Cushing's syndrome), but ACTH levels decrease.

On the other hand, as with thyroid hormone secretion, if ACTH levels are elevated by an ACTH pituitary tumor (Cushing's disease) or as ectopic ACTH secretion—for example, by a nonpituitary tumor—cortisol levels will also rise, producing secondary hyperadrenalism. Both cortisol and ACTH are elevated in this condition. Here, notice that both cortisol and ACTH change in the same direction (both are elevated), pointing to pituitary, not adrenal, disease. In cases of Cushing's disease or syndrome, the diurnal variation of serum ACTH is absent.

In addition to measurements of serum cortisol, it is often desirable to measure urinary free cortisol in cases of hypercortisolemia. Normally, almost all cortisol is bound to serum protein, mainly transcortin, while, in hypercortisol states, cortisol exceeds the capacity of transcortin to bind to it and is consequently filtered by the kidneys. The reference range for morning serum cortisol is approximately 10 to 25 µg/dL, and for urinary free cortisol, it is approximately 24 to 108 µg/24hours for healthy males.

In cases of hypercortisolism, especially where ACTH levels may remain in the reference range or have "borderline" high or low values, it is often desirable to perform the dexamethasone suppression test. Dexamethasone is a potent glucocorticoid that strongly suppresses normal pituitary ACTH secretion. This can be accomplished with low-dose dexamethasone. If low-dose dexamethasone results in diminished serum cortisol levels and low values for urinary free cortisol, pituitary function is most likely normal while the adrenals are hypersecreting cortisol—that is, primary hyperadrenalism. This test may further be used to distinguish the possible source of primary hyperadrenalism—that is, hyperplasia versus adenoma or carcinoma. High-dose dexamethasone will generally lower serum cortisol levels in adrenal hyperplasia, while it will have no effect in adrenal adenoma or carcinoma.

Conversely, in pituitary failure, serum ACTH levels decrease, as do serum cortisol levels, because ACTH stimulation of the adrenal gland decreases. This condition is referred to as secondary hypoadrenalism. If the adrenal gland function is compromised (primary adrenal insufficiency), serum cortisol levels decrease, resulting in less inhibition of pituitary secretion of ACTH and, consequently, in elevated serum levels of ACTH. This condition is referred to as primary hypoadrenalism or Addison's disease. These conditions and the patterns of serum cortisol and ACTH levels in these conditions, including dexamethasone suppression test results, where relevant, are summarized in Table 8-7.

Parathyroid Hormone and Vitamin D

In the renal section above, it was noted that parathyroid hormone (PTH) induces elevated serum calcium levels by causing increased secretion of phosphate in the renal tubules and by promoting increased calcium ion absorption in the gut. Hypocalcemia with elevated PTH points to causes having to do with calcium metabolism—for example, alkalotic states, decreased albumin, low dietary calcium and/or lack of absorption of calcium from the gut, and low vitamin D levels. Hypocalcemia with low serum PTH levels points to parathyroid gland dysfunction. In rare instances, hypocalcemia that is not responsive to calcium infusions and vitamin D supplements can be caused by secretion of high levels of calcitonin, a serum calcium–lowering peptide that blocks osteoclastic resorption of bone, thereby blocking release of calcium in the circulation. Calcitonin is synthesized and secreted from the medullary cells of the thyroid. In medullary thyroid carcinoma, high levels of calcitonin are sometimes secreted. At high levels of calcitonin, hypocalcemia will result.

Hypercalcemia with low PTH again points to primary calcium metabolic causes, as in the "CHIMPS" mnemonic mentioned in the renal section above and acidotic states, while hypercalcemia with elevated PTH indicates parathyroid diseases such as adenoma (most commonly) or carcinoma (uncommonly). These conditions and the patterns of serum calcium and parathyroid hormone levels in serum in these conditions are summarized in Table 8-8.

Vitamin D

Vitamin D induces absorption of calcium from the gut by acting on vitamin D receptors in the cells lining the gut. It is produced from 7-dehydrocholesterol in skin by ultraviolet (UV) light that induces the synthesis of cholecalciferol. In the liver, cholecalciferol is converted to 25-hydroxycholecalciferol, which has a half-life of several weeks. This form is further hydroxylated in the kidneys to 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol, the active form of vitamin D. The half-life of active vitamin D is on the order of hours. Thus in serum assays for vitamin D, the analyte whose serum level best reflects vitamin D levels is the precursor, 25-hydroxycholecalciferol (Zerwekh, 2008). This may give falsely elevated levels of vitamin D in cases of renal failure where conversion of the precursor to active vitamin D is impaired. However, 25-hydroxycholecalciferol itself has some effects on calcium reabsorption, although its affinity for the vitamin D receptor is only about one-one thousandth of that for the fully active form. The reference range for serum 25-hydroxycholecalciferol, also called 25-hydroxy vitamin D, is 30 to 100 ng/mL, although this is method-dependent (Yates et al, 2008).

Over the past few years, there has been a large increase in requests for serum vitamin D levels, especially in the pediatric and geriatric populations. This is due at least in part to the availability of reliable

TABLE 8-7
Patterns of Serum Levels of ACTH and Cortisol in Different Adrenal Gland Conditions

Condition	Cortisol	ACTH	Dexamethasone Suppression, Low Dose	Dexamethasone Suppression, High Dose	Site of Disease
Normal adrenal	Normal	Normal	N/A	N/A	None
Primary hypoadrenalism	Low	High	N/A	N/A	Adrenal gland
Secondary hypoadrenalism	Low	Low	N/A	N/A	Pituitary
Primary hyperadrenalism—high cortisol, low ACTH	High	Low	N/A	N/A	Adrenal
Primary hyperadrenalism—high cortisol, borderline low ACTH	High	Borderline low	Positive	N/A	Adrenal
Primary hyperadrenalism due to adrenal hyperplasia—high cortisol, borderline low ACTH	High	Borderline low	Negative	Positive	Adrenal
Primary hyperadrenalism due to adrenal adenoma/carcinoma—high cortisol, borderline low ACTH	High	Borderline low	Negative	Negative	Adrenal
Secondary hyperadrenalism	High	High	N/A	N/A	Pituitary

TABLE 8-8
Patterns of Serum Levels of Calcium and PTH in Different Conditions

Condition[a]	Ionized Calcium	PTH	Cause of Disease
Normocalcemia	Normal	Normal	None
"Primary" hypocalcemia	Low	High	CHARD[b]
"Secondary" hypocalcemia	Low	Low	Parathyroid glands
"Primary" hypercalcemia	High	Low	CHIMPS[c]
"Secondary" hypercalcemia	High	High	Parathyroid glands (e.g., adenoma, carcinoma)

[a]The terms *primary* and *secondary* are not usually employed for hypocalcemia and hypercalcemia. They are used here to emphasize the site of the disease to keep consistent with the conditions described in Tables 8-6 and 8-7.
[b]Mnemonic for **C**alcitonin, **H**ypoparathyroidism, **A**lkalosis, **R**enal failure, and vitamin **D** deficit.
[c]Mnemonic for **C**ancer, **H**yperthyroidism, **I**atrogenic causes, **M**ultiple myeloma, hyper**P**arathyroidism, and **S**arcoidosis

chromatographic, mass spectroscopic, and immunochemical methods that quantitate serum vitamin D levels. In the pediatric population, vitamin D levels are determined and followed for the diagnosis and treatment of vitamin D–dependent rickets. In the elderly, vitamin D levels are determined in the treatment of such diseases as osteoporosis and osteomalcia, because vitamin D supplements have been found to diminish the extent and severity of these diseases.

The discovery that many cells, besides epithelial cells of the gut—the principal site of vitamin D activity—have abundant receptors for vitamin D suggests that this vitamin has effects that go beyond regulation of calcium homeostasis (Bilke, 2009). Indeed, it has been found that vitamin D induces apoptosis in breast cancer and other malignant cells and has been used to treat such diseases as multiple sclerosis, heart failure, psoriasis, asthma, Crohn's disease, and many other conditions. Thus there has been an increased demand for vitamin D levels for patients with a wide variety of conditions.

EXAMPLES OF CLINICAL CASES WITH CLINICOPATHOLOGICAL CORRELATIONS

Given the above overview of many salient features of the causes of the more common abnormal laboratory findings, the laboratory results from a number of different patients are now presented to illustrate how analyte levels change in different disease states and how these analyte concentrations are used to diagnose these conditions.

CASE A: ELECTROLYTE DISORDER

A 64-year-old white male was found unconscious in his home after suffering a cerebrovascular accident (CVA) and brought to the emergency medicine department. His hematocrit was 44%, but his red blood cell count was 4.3 million/μL (lower limit of normal, 4.6 million/μL), with an MCV of 104 fL; a series of serum sodium values ranged from 164 to 175 mEq/L; admission BUN was 33 mg/dL; and creatinine was 1.5 mg/dL. The total serum osmolality was 357 mOsm/kg (upper limit of normal, 290 mOsm/kg), while the urine osmolality was 1008 mOsm/kg (upper limit of normal, 1000 mOsm/kg); the random urine sodium was 228 mEq/L.

A liver panel showed a marginally elevated AST at 41 IU/L (upper limit of normal, 39 IU/L), elevated but continually decreasing LD (admission value of 426 IU/L; upper limit of normal, 200 IU/L), GGT of 72 U/L (upper limit of normal, 43 IU/L), total protein of 7.8 g/dL (normal), and a low albumin of 2.8 g/dL (normal 3.5-5.0 g/dL). Lipase was mildly elevated at 127 IU/L (upper limit of normal, 60 IU/L). Occult blood was found in his stool, which was found positive for *Clostridium difficile*. Urine was nitrite positive (indicative of bacteriuria) and was markedly positive for hemoglobin, red cells, and white cells. After infusion of half-normal saline, the hematocrit was reduced to 34% but then rose to 38% with a persistently elevated MCV. The sodium and the BUN were reduced to within the reference range.

Evaluation

The basic diagnosis of this patient's condition is hypernatremia. This patient was dehydrated, as shown by the markedly elevated serum sodium (average value of 169 mEq/L), high normal hematocrit, and elevated BUN. Note that the diagnosis of dehydration was confirmed by the finding of a high serum and urinary (228 mEq/L) sodium and a high urinary osmolality of 1008 mOsm/kg (see Table 8-3). The red blood cell count was low, which seems to contradict the high normal hematocrit. This apparent discrepancy may be explained by the macrocytosis, causing each erythrocyte to occupy a greater than normal volume. Yet, the total number of cells was reduced. The low red cell count indicates a true anemia. The macrocytosis was caused by a nutritional (vitamin B_{12}) deficiency. All of these findings may be attributed to malnutrition and insufficient fluid consumption, a not uncommon finding in the elderly, especially in this stroke victim.

Note that the BUN and creatinine were mildly elevated in a pattern with a ratio of over 20:1, suggesting a prerenal (low perfusion) etiology. The renal tubules were evidently functioning well, as evidenced by the high urine-to-serum osmolality ratio (1008/357 = 2.8, which is greater than 1.2:1). Hypoperfusion may have also caused the mild abnormalities found in some of the liver function tests and the elevated pancreatic lipase.

Note also that the total protein was normal even though the albumin, the most abundant serum protein, was low. Because of possibly two infectious diseases identified in urine and stool examinations, the patient may have produced elevated levels of immunoglobulins. Accompanying the CVA was a peptic ulcer, so-called Cushing's ulcer, known to be associated with this condition—hence the occult blood in this patient's stool. *C. difficile* is known to infect patients with chronic debilitating disease. The urinary tract infection was responsible for the high red cell count and hemoglobin in this patient's urine.

CASE B: COMPLEX ELECTROLYTE DISORDER

A 31-year-old white male patient with known type 1 diabetes mellitus, end-stage renal disease secondary to diabetic nephropathy, and a history

of alcoholism was admitted with acute abdominal pain in the midepigastrium, with a serum glucose of 736 mg/dL that rose as high as 933 mg/dL at one point. Serum sodium was 134 mEq/L, which decreased to as low as 124 mEq/L. Potassium was 7.1 mEq/L, BUN was 64 mg/dL, and creatinine was 18 mg/dL. These values were confirmed and found to follow a consistent trend. Serum osmolality was 316 mOsm/kg. Blood gas values on admission were pH of 7.58, PO_2 of 121 mmHg, O_2 saturation of 99%, PCO_2 of 20 mmHg, and bicarbonate of 20 mEq/L. The anion gap rose in one day from 13 (high end of normal) to 20. Serum lipase was elevated at 469 IU/L (upper limit of normal is 60 IU/L). There was no urine output, and the patient was subjected to peritoneal dialysis.

Evaluation

This diabetic patient was evidently in a hyperosmolar state due to abnormally elevated glucose levels. The low serum sodium and high serum potassium might appear to be due to low circulating aldosterone or renal tubular failure. However, there was no urine output, so no filtration could occur. The end-stage renal disease is reflected in the BUN and especially in the creatinine value (18 mg/dL). The BUN/creatinine ratio of about 4 confirms the diagnosis of true renal failure.

As noted in the discussions above on sodium and glucose, in diabetes mellitus with high serum glucose levels, there is an efflux of cell water that causes dilution of serum analytes such as sodium. Whenever glucose is transported into cells under the influence of insulin, it is accompanied by potassium. Low insulin levels can therefore result in hyperkalemia. This mechanism was operative in this patient. Though the anion gap increased after admission, it was normal on admission. Thus this patient was in a nonketotic, hyperosmolar state but subsequently became ketotic. The admission blood gas picture suggests a respiratory alkalosis because the arterial blood pH was 7.57 (alkalosis), but the PCO_2 was low at 20 mmHg, and the bicarbonate was low at 20 mEq/L (condition 4 in Table 8-4). This is an unusual finding in a patient with diabetes mellitus, in whom a finding of metabolic acidosis is more frequently encountered.

An explanation for this finding may be found in the serum lipase, which was markedly elevated, denoting pancreatitis, a common finding in patients with a history of alcoholism. The sharp epigastric pain caused increased respiration (respiratory rate on admission was 25/min) precipitating a lowering of the PCO_2, which was partially compensated by a lowering of the bicarbonate.

Treatment of this patient with dialysis, hydration, and insulin corrected the abnormal laboratory findings, and the patient was discharged on chronic dialysis.

CASE C: DISORDERS RELATED TO LIVER FAILURE

A 38-year-old white female with a past medical history of multiple abdominal surgical procedures over a 7-year period, sporadic alcohol abuse, pancreatitis, and a 30 pack/year history of smoking was brought to the emergency department in shock and acute abdominal distress. Significant laboratory values included white blood cell count of $12.1 \times 10^3/\mu L$, red cell count of $3.0 \times 10^6/\mu L$, hematocrit of 34.6%, and red cell indices that showed macrocytosis and hypochromia (low mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration). Vitamin B_{12} and folate levels were normal. The peripheral blood smear showed a leukoerythroblastic pattern. Serum glucose was low at 38 mg/dL; total protein was 4.3 g/dL and albumin was 1.5 g/dL. Lactate levels were elevated. The AP was elevated at 241 IU/L (upper limit of normal, 129 IU/L), and the bilirubin was mildly elevated at 1.6 mg/dL (upper limit of normal, 1.2 mg/dL). Serum ammonia was found to be elevated at 146 µmol/L (upper limit of normal, 30 µM). Screens for hepatitis A, B, and C were all negative. The patient was placed on broad-spectrum antibiotics. Multiple blood, urine, and throat cultures were negative. Exploratory laparotomy revealed abdominal adhesions and cholestasis. Postoperatively, the patient became encephalopathic; her liver function deteriorated, as evidenced by dramatic elevations of AST and ALT from normal levels to 1660 and 545 IU/L, respectively; of LD to 2190 IU/L; bilirubin to 14.5 mg/dL; and ammonia to 177 µM, despite lactulose administration. A liver-spleen scan performed on the fifth hospital day showed no dye uptake in the liver, consistent with functional liver failure. The serum sodium, normal on admission, increased within 5 days to 166 mEq/L, together with chloride levels that rose to 123 mEq/L, a pattern that persisted throughout the hospital course despite aggressive intravenous infusion of half-normal saline. Serum potassium was consistently less than 3.5 mEq/L. The BUN and creatinine both rose to abnormally high levels, with a ratio of over 20:1, suggesting renal failure. Plasma aldosterone was elevated at 13.2 ng/dL (upper limit of normal, 8.5 ng/dL). The platelet count dropped rapidly, while the APTT and PT rose to values at least twice those of the corresponding normal controls; her level of fibrin split products (FSP) (this evaluation occurred prior to the standard use of D-dimer) became abnormally elevated. Her condition worsened, and the patient expired on the eighth hospital day.

Evaluation

Although a complex patient presentation, the fundamental problem with this patient lay in the dramatically abnormal liver function test profile. Note how there was an acute elevation in the aminotransferases (transaminases), with the AST/ALT ratios significantly greater than 1. There were concurrent rapid elevations in the bilirubin and the LD. At the same time, the total protein and albumin were abnormally low. The ammonia levels rose rapidly (despite high doses of lactulose). The pattern is that of fulminant hepatic failure shown in condition 6 in Table 8-5. This condition is a medical emergency and is associated with fatal encephalopathy and severe disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC), as evidenced by the low platelet counts, elevated PT and APTT, and FSP levels. This condition can cause multiple system infarcts, resulting in multiple organ failure.

The patient's peripheral blood picture showed a macrocytosis but, concurrently, a leukoerythroblastic picture. This pattern suggests that the macrocytosis was caused by an increased number of erythrocyte precursor forms. This condition was most likely caused by DIC that causes microangiopathic hemolytic anemia with a leukoerythroblastic picture. It is also possible that with the persistently elevated white cell count and the elevated lactate levels, gram-negative sepsis affecting bone marrow may have contributed to the leukoerythroblastic picture. Though cultures were consistently negative, the patient was being treated with broad-spectrum antibiotics, the effects of which may have blocked growth of the organism(s) in culture. As noted previously, patients with liver failure from either cirrhosis or acute fulminant hepatic failure are generally immunocompromised. In both panhepatic cirrhosis and fulminant hepatic failure, there is severe third-space fluid loss associated with ascites that invariably develops. We noted previously that to retain vascular volume, both aldosterone and ADH rise. It appears that aldosterone became elevated to markedly high values, causing abnormal sodium retention and potassium loss in this patient. Almost always accompanying both cirrhosis and acute fulminant hepatic failure is renal failure, generally manifested by the hepatorenal syndrome. In fulminant hepatic failure, an additional possible cause is acute tubular necrosis (Sunheimer et al, 1994). Also associated with this condition is hypoglycemia (serum glucose was 38 mg/dL), thought to be due to the absence of glycogen stores in liver caused by the massive necrosis of hepatocytes and the resultant absence of enzymes involved in gluconeogenesis.

CASE D: SEVERE RHABDOMYOLYSIS

A 25-year-old previously healthy African American male in the U.S. Navy collapsed while performing running exercises as part of his military training. He reported that he had developed severe bilateral calf and thigh pain prior to this episode. His medical history was significant for sickle trait, and the only medication he had been taking was an over-the-counter "performance-enhancing" dietary supplement, ephedra. In the emergency room, the patient became hypotensive and showed signs of respiratory distress. He reported increasing bilateral lower extremity pain. A provisional diagnosis of anterior compartment syndrome—that is, muscle tissue necrosis on the anterior aspect of the lower extremities—was made. An electrocardiogram showed sinus tachycardia, inferolateral ischemia, and left ventricular hypertrophy. Arterial blood gas revealed a blood pH of 7.16, a PCO_2 of 33.5 mmHg (lower limit, 35.0 mmHg), a pO_2 of 245 mmHg while the patient was receiving 40% O_2, and a low serum bicarbonate (6.0 mEq/L; lower limit, 24 mEq/L).These findings suggested metabolic acidosis (low blood pH, low bicarbonate, and a modestly decreased pCO_2). Further significant findings were elevated creatine kinase (total CK) of 269 IU/L (upper limit, 174 IU/L), elevated creatinine (2.1 mg/dL; upper limit, 1.2 mg/dL), elevated AST (73 IU/L; upper limit, 42 IU/L) and ALT (84 IU/L; upper limit, 40 IU/L), and a high anion gap of 33 mOsm (upper limit, 11 mOsm). Blood lactate was elevated at 11.7 mM (upper limit, 1.5 mM) and reached its highest level of 21 mM on the 26th hospital day. Serum glucose was found to be elevated at 233 mg/dL (upper limit, 115 g/dL). CBC showed elevated white blood cell count ($16.6 \times 10^3/\mu L$; upper limit, 11×10^3 µL) and red cell count of 4.4×10^6 (lower limit, 4.5×10^6), hematocrit 37.3 (lower limit, 40), and normal MCV and MCHC. Troponin I was found to be elevated at 4.72 ng/mL (positive >0.78 ng/mL), which is strongly suggestive of acute MI. Over several hours, the AST was found to increase to 2035 IU/L, the ALT to 728 IU/L, and the CK to 95,775 IU/L. The serum total protein (lower

limit, 6.4 mg/dL) and albumin (lower limit, 3.8 mg/dL) were low, reaching levels as low as 3.8 and 1.9 mg/dL, respectively. The serum sodium concentration was 133 mEq/L (lower limit, 135 mEq/L), and the potassium increased to 7.5 mEq/L. Urinalysis showed severe myoglobinuria, proteinuria, glucosuria, bacteriuria, and elevated white cell count. The patient was transferred to the medical intensive care unit (MICU), where it was further found that the platelet count dropped to $97 \times 10^3/\mu L$ (lower limit, $150 \times 10^3/\mu L$). The PT and aPTT were both found to be elevated at 21.3 sec (upper limit, 13.8) and 59.1 sec (upper limit, 38.4 sec), respectively. The D-dimer level was found to be elevated at greater than 5000 ng/mL (upper limit, 230 ng/mL). On the second hospital day, in the MICU, the red cell count dropped to $2.1 \times 10^6/\mu L$, with normal MCV and MCHC values. The patient was intubated and placed on mechanical ventilation, with aggressive hydration therapy. In addition, he was treated with anticoagulant therapy and transfusions of packed red blood cells and fresh frozen plasma. In view of the elevated white blood cell count and a persistent fever, the patient was placed on a broad-spectrum antibiotic regimen. On the twelfth hospital day, cultures of the patient's femoral catheter tip and a urethral swab showed *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Enterococcus faecium*. By the seventeenth hospital day, chest x-ray showed cardiomegaly and BNP values that increased from 86 ng/mL (upper limit, 100 ng/mL) 1 week after admission to 422 ng/mL on hospital day 23 and 6300 ng/mL on day 25. The AST and ALT levels increased to as high as 11,443 and 5949 IU/L, respectively, accompanied by large rises in bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase, and LDH; the CK level was as high as 98,000 IU/L. BUN and creatinine increased to as high as 108 and 5.7 mg/dL, respectively, indicative of severe renal failure. After persistent treatment and a bilateral lower extremity fasciotomy to relieve compartment syndrome, the patient improved symptomatically, but after about 1 week, he relapsed, became septic from *Acinebacter baumanii*, and expired on the twenty-fifth hospital day.

Evaluation

Based on this patient's history—compartment syndrome/rhabdomyolysis—the laboratory results in this complex case are diagnostic of this condition. As with Case C above, there is a key abnormality that can explain the other findings: the initial elevated CK followed by a massive increase of this enzyme level over a short time period. The initial value of CK in the emergency room might have been attributed to acute myocardial infarction, as confirmed by troponin and ECG, but the subsequent values could not have been attributed to this condition alone. Values of CK in the thousands and ten thousands are clearly indicative of severe muscle tissue breakdown, as occurs in rhabdomyolysis and polymyositis. In this condition, as discussed in the section on CK, damaged myocytes release myoglobin into the circulation. This small protein is filtered by the glomerulus and enters the tubules, where it induces tubular damage and tubular necrosis. This results in (often severe) renal disease, thus the rise in BUN and creatinine as was observed in this case. Another major consequence of massive muscle tissue necrosis is the release of potassium, the chief intracellular cation, into the circulation, causing severe hyperkalemia, which is cardiotoxic and was life-threatening to this patient because he already appears to have suffered a myocardial infarction and had an arrhythmia. The patient was therefore treated with insulin, which induces glucose and potassium transport across the cell membranes of viable cells. In this patient, not only did this lower the serum potassium but the serum glucose as well, a beneficial effect because the serum glucose was abnormally elevated.

Massive tissue necrosis also releases tissue fragments that activate the coagulation cascades. As a result, coagulation factors are consumed, as are platelets in the formation of microemboli that often block the microvasculature, causing further tissue necrosis. This condition of DIC can cause microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, which could explain the normochromic, normocytic anemia. As discussed in the section on elevated PT and aPTT, in this condition, the PT and aPTT are elevated, as is D-dimer, and the platelet count is low, as occurred in this case. Because oxygenation of tissues is compromised by the microemboli, metabolism in these tissues becomes anaerobic, leading to a buildup of lactic acid. This is compounded by rhabdomyolysis that releases large quantities of lactic acid from stressed muscle tissue. This condition gives rise to severe lactic acidosis. In this patient, lactate levels reached as high as 21 mM.

Accompanying the rise in CK early in this patient's hospital stay was a dramatic rise in the AST and ALT levels to the point that the AST levels were much higher than the corresponding ALT levels. In addition, there were concomitant increases in bilirubin, LDH, and alkaline phosphatase and major decreases in total protein and albumin. From entry 5 in Table 8-6 and Case C, this pattern of liver function tests suggests acute hepatic failure. Liver failure in this case may have been caused by the drop in systemic blood pressure experienced by this patient, leading to severe liver hypoperfusion (so-called "shock liver"), a known cause of this condition and/or the DIC, causing microemboli in the microcapillaries of the liver.

This patient's condition involved three unusual complications: acute myocardial infarction documented by significantly elevated serum levels of troponin and positive ECG findings (i.e., elevated ST wave elevations), severe congestive heart failure documented by severely elevated serum levels of BNP and positive chest x-ray findings, and recurrent bacterial infection and septicemia. The first two findings are rare complications of acute rhabdomyolysis. They suggest that the patient's sickle trait may have contributed to the overall pathophysiology of this disease. The extreme level of military exercise, exacerbated by the use of the drug ephedra, which is now prohibited, given its severe adrenogenic effects, may have precipitated a sickle crisis due to the severe oxygen demand, simulating the events that might transpire in sickle trait patients at high altitudes where oxygen pressures are low. Sickling may have further added to blockade of the microvasculature, including the coronary circulation.

With respect to bacterial infections, a total of three different gram-negative organisms were cultured from this patient, two—*P. aeruginosa* and *E. faecium*—from a catheter tip and a urethral swab and one—*Acinebacter baumanii*—from blood cultures. Recurrent infections over a short time span suggest the possibility of an immunosuppressive state, due likely to massive tissue necrosis and protein loss, and fulminant hepatic failure as in Case C, although the patient was able to mount a strong white cell response, as indicated by the elevated white blood cell count. An unusual accompaniment of gram-negative sepsis is the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome in which there are petechial hemorrhages on body surfaces and in the adrenal glands, leading to adrenal failure. A sign of this condition is hyponatremia (sodium of 133 mEq and lower values during the course of hospitalization) and hyperkalemia due to low production of aldosterone. Because the patient was found to have both hyponatremia and hyperkalemia, though most of the elevated potassium was most likely due to rhabdomyolysis, the possibility of gram-negative sepsis–induced adrenal failure must be considered. Gram-negative sepsis from *A. baumanii* is thought to be acquired in immunosuppressed patients in intensive care units.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Bakerman S, Strausbauch P: *ABC's of interpretive laboratory data*, ed 2, Myrtle Beach, SC, 1994, Interpretive Laboratory Data.
This is an excellent review of not only the use of laboratory testing but also of the underlying methodology.

Bonini P, Plebani M, Ceriotti F, et al: Errors in laboratory medicine, *Clin Chem* 48:691–698, 2002.
This is an important review of laboratory errors and how to recognize them.

Nathan D (corresponding author for the International Expert Committee, American Diabetes Association): International Expert Committee Report on the Role of the A1C Assay in the Diagnosis of Diabetes, *Diabetes Care* 32:1327–1334, 2009.
This summarizes the current standards for diagnosis of diabetes mellitus.

Oh M: *Acid-base, electrolytes*, Old Westbury, NY, 2003, OHCO, LLC.
This is an excellent, concise discussion of renal physiology, electrolyte regulation, and acid-base balance.

Sunheimer R, Capaldo G, Kashanian F, et al: Serum analyte pattern characteristic of fulminant hepatic failure, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 24:101–109, 1994.
This paper summarizes serum liver function analyte patterns that have been found to occur in this uncommon but fatal disease. It correlates analyte patterns with tissue pathological findings.

REFERENCES

Abrams J: C-reactive protein, inflammation, and coronary risk: An update, *Cardiol Clin* 21:327–331, 2003.

Alpert JS, Thygesen K, Antman E, et al: Myocardial infarction redefined—A consensus document of the Joint European Society of Cardiology/American College of Cardiology Committee for the Redefinition of Myocardial Infarction, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 36:959–969, 2000.

Alter BP: Bone marrow failure syndromes, *Clin Lab Med* 19:113–133, 1999.

Alter BP: Bone marrow failure syndromes in children, *Pediatr Clin North Am* 49:973–988, 2002.

American Diabetes Association: Standards of medical care in diabetes—2013, *Diabetes Care* 36:S11–S66, 2013.

Aviles RJ, Askari AT, Lindahl B, et al: Troponin T levels in patients with acute coronary syndromes, with or without renal dysfunction, *N Engl J Med* 346:2047–2052, 2002.

Bilke D: Nonclassic actions of vitamin D, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1:26–34, 2009.

Blincko S, Edwards R: Current issues in glycated haemoglobin measurement, *Clin Lab* 47:377–385, 2001.

Brigden M, Graydon C: Eosinophilia detected by automated blood cell counting in ambulatory North American outpatients: Incidence and clinical significance, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 121:963–967, 1997.

Brito-Babapulle F: The eosinophilias, including the idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome, *Br J Haematol* 121:203–223, 2003.

Brown D: The ins and outs of aquaporin-2 trafficking, *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 284:F893–F901, 2003.

Clerico A, Emdin M: Diagnostic accuracy and prognostic relevance of the measurement of cardiac natriuretic peptides: A review, *Clin Chem* 50:33–50, 2004.

Clerico A, Zaninotto M, Prontera C, et al: State of the art of BNP and NT-proBNP immunoassays: The CardioOrmoCheck study, *Clin Chim Acta* 414:112–119, 2012.

Crowson CS, Rahman MU, Matteson EL: Which measure of inflammation to use? A comparison of erythrocyte sedimentation rate and C-reactive protein measurements from randomized clinical trials of golimumab in rheumatoid arthritis, *J Rheum* 36:1606–1610, 2009.

Dantzer R, Capuron L, Irwin MR, et al: Identification and treatment of symptoms associated with inflammation in medically ill patients, *Psychoneuroendocrinology* 33:18–29, 2008.

DeCaterina R, Lanza M, Manca G, et al: Bleeding time and bleeding: An analysis of the relationship of the bleeding time test with parameters of surgical bleeding, *Blood* 84:3363–3370, 1994.

Dighe AS, Soderberg BL, Laposata M: Narrative interpretations for the clinical laboratory evaluations: An overview, *Am J Clin Pathol* 116(Suppl 1):S123–S128, 2001.

Diris JH, Hackeng CM, Kooman JP, et al: Impaired renal clearance explains elevated troponin T fragments in hemodialysis patients, *Circulation* 109:23–25, 2004.

Fischbach F, et al: *A manual of laboratory and diagnostic tests*, Philadelphia, Pa., 2008, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Fromm RE Jr, Roberts R: Sensitivity and specificity of new serum markers for mild cardionecrosis, *Curr Probl Cardiol* 26:246–284, 2001.

George TI, Arber DA: Pathology of the myeloproliferative diseases, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 17:1101–1127, 2003.

Gerwirtz AS, Miller ML, Keys TF: The clinical usefulness of the preoperative bleeding time, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 120:353–356, 1996.

Gill RQ, Sterling RK: Acute liver failure, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 33:191–198, 2001.

Gordon-Smith EC, Marsh JC, Gibson FM: Views on the pathophysiology of aplastic anemia, *Int J Hematol* 76(Suppl 2):163–166, 2002.

Guinan EC: Clinical aspects of aplastic anemia, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 11:1025–1044, 1997.

Hughes T, Branford S: Molecular monitoring of chronic myeloid leukemia, *Semin Hematol* 40(Suppl 2):62–68, 2003.

Ishii J, Cui W, Kitagawa F, et al: Prognostic value of combination of cardiac troponin T and B-type natriuretic peptide after initiation of treatment in patients with chronic heart failure, *Clin Chem* 49:2020–2026, 2003.

Kamath PS, Kim WR: *The International Normalized Ratio of prothrombin time in the model for end-stage liver disease score: A reliable measure in clinics in liver disease*, Philadelphia, 2009, WB Saunders, pp 63–68.

Kilpatrick ES: HbA1c measurement, *J Clin Pathol* 57:344–345, 2004.

Kottke-Marchant K, Corcoran G: The laboratory diagnosis of platelet disorders: An algorithmic approach, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 126:133–146, 2002.

Krishnamurti U, Steffes MW: Glycohemoglobin: A primary predictor of the development or reversal of complications of diabetes mellitus, *Clin Chem* 47:1157–1165, 2001.

Labriola L, Wallemacq P, Gulbis B, et al: The impact of the assay for measuring albumin on corrected ("adjusted") calcium concentrations, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 24:1834–1838, 2009.

Larsson L, Magnusson P: Ionized calcium or corrected total calcium? *J Bone Miner Res* 18:1554–1555, 2003.

Lewandrowski K, Chen A, Januzzi J: Cardiac markers for myocardial infarction, *Am J Clin Pathol* 118(Suppl 1):S93–S99, 2002.

Libby P, Ridker PM: Inflammation and atherosclerosis: Role of C-reactive protein in risk assessment, *Am J Med* 116(Suppl 6A):9S–16S, 2004.

Lott JA: Serum enzyme determinations in the diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction: An update, *Hum Pathol* 15:706–716, 1984.

Marsh JC: Bone marrow failure syndromes, *Clin Med* 5:332–336, 2005.

Marsh JC, Ball SE, Darbyshire P, et al: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of acquired aplastic anemia, *Br J Haematol* 123:782–801, 2003.

Melli G, Chaudhry V, Cornblath DR: Rhabdomyolysis: An evaluation of 475 hospitalized patients, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 84:377–385, 2005.

Morrow DA, Cannon CP, Jesse RL, et al: National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry Laboratory Medicine Practice Guidelines: Clinical characteristics and utilization of biochemical markers in acute coronary syndromes, *Circulation* 115:e356–e375, 2007.

Mueller C, Scholer A, Laule-Kilian K, et al: Use of B-type natriuretic peptide in the evaluation and management of acute dyspnea, *N Engl J Med* 350:647–654, 2004.

Nguyen MK, Nielsen S, Kurtz I: Molecular pathogenesis of nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, *Clin Exp Nephrol* 7:9–17, 2003.

Nielsen S, Froklar J, Marples D, et al: Aquaporins in the kidney: From molecules to medicine, *Physiol Rev* 82:205–244, 2002.

Novo G, Amoroso GR, Fazio G, et al: Biomarkers in heart failure, *Front Biosci* 14:2484–2493, 2009.

Oscier D, Fegan C, Hillmen P, et al: Guidelines on the diagnosis and management of chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Br J Haematol* 125:294–317, 2004.

Ouyang J, Dalal Dalal S, Blumenthal D, et al: Unusual complications of exertional rhabdomyolysis in a patient with sickle-cell trait, *Fed Pract* (April):14–26, 2009.

Pedersen NB, Hofmeister MV, Rosenbaek LL, et al: Vasopressin induces phosphorylation of the thiazide-sensitive sodium chloride cotransporter in the distal convoluted tubule, *Kidney Int* 78:160–169, 2010.

Posan E, McBane RD, Grill DE, et al: Comparison of PFA-100 testing and the bleeding time for detecting platelet hypofunction and von Willebrand disease in clinical practice, *Thromb Haemost* 90:483–490, 2003.

Prahash A, Lynch T: B-type natriuretic peptide: A diagnostic, prognostic, and therapeutic tool in heart failure, *Am J Crit Care* 13:46–53, 2004.

Ridker PM: High-sensitivity C-reactive protein and cardiovascular risk: Rationale for screening and primary prevention, *Am J Cardiol* 92(Suppl):17K–22K, 2003.

Roberts R: Rapid MB CK subform assay and the early diagnosis of myocardial infarction, *Clin Lab Med* 17:669–683, 1997.

Roberts WL, Sedrick R, Moulton L, et al: Evaluation of four automated high-sensitivity C-reactive protein methods: Implications for clinical and epidemiological applications, *Clin Chem* 46:461–468, 2000.

Ross DM, Hughes TP: Current and emerging tests for the laboratory monitoring of chronic myeloid leukaemia and related disorders, *Pathology* 40:231–246, 2008.

Rothenberg ME: Eosinophilia, *N Engl J Med* 338:1592–1600, 1998.

Sattler M, Griffin JD: Molecular mechanisms of transformation by the BCR-ABL oncogene, *Semin Hematol* 40(Suppl 2):4–10, 2003.

Schiodt FV, Lee WM: Fulminant liver disease, *Clin Liver Dis* 7:331–349, 2003.

Schnermann JB, Sayegh SI: *Kidney physiology*, New York, 1998, Lippincott-Raven.

Schrier RW, Cadnapaphornchai MA: Renal aquaporin water channels: From molecules to human disease, *Prog Biophys Mol Biol* 81:117–131, 2003.

Seebach JD, Morant R, Ruegg R, et al: The diagnostic value of the neutrophil left shift in predicting inflammation and infectious disease, *Am J Clin Pathol* 107:582–591, 1997.

Shanafelt TD, Call TG: Current approach to diagnosis and management of chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Mayo Clin Proc* 79:388–398, 2004.

Silver RT: Chronic myeloid leukemia, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 17:1159–1173, 2003.

Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, et al, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of hematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, Lyon, 2008, International Agency for Research on Cancer.

Thompson WG, Mahr RG, Yohannan W, et al: Use of creatine kinase MB isoenzyme for diagnosing myocardial infarction when total creatine kinase activity is high, *Clin Chem* 34:2208–2210, 1988.

Thygesen K, Mair J, Giannitsis E, et al: How to use high-sensitivity cardiac troponins in acute cardiac care, *Eur Heart J* 33:2252–2257, 2012.

Van den Berghe G: Endocrine evaluation of patients with critical illness, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 32:385–410, 2003.

Wang TJ, Larson MG, Levy D, et al: Plasma natriuretic peptide levels and the risk of cardiovascular events and death, *N Engl J Med* 350:655–663, 2004.

Winter WE, Elin RJ: The role and assessment of ventricular peptides in heart failure, *Clin Lab Med* 24:235–274, 2004.

Winton EF, Langston AA: Update in acute leukemia 2003: A risk adapted approach to acute myeloblastic leukemia in adults, *Semin Oncol* 31(Suppl 4):80–86, 2004.

Witte DL, VanNess SA, Angstadt DS, et al: Errors, mistakes, blunders, outliers, or unacceptable results: How many? *Clin Chem* 43:1352–1356, 1997.

Woo J, Zaman S, Patel L: The diagnostic value of specific CK-MB assay in acute myocardial infarction. In Miyai K, Kanno T, Ishikawa E, editors: *Progress in clinical biochemistry*, London, 1992, Elsevier, pp 243–246.

Wu AH, Apple FS, Gibler WB, et al: National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry standards of laboratory practice: Recommendations for the use of cardiac markers in coronary artery diseases, *Clin Chem* 45:1104–1121, 1999.

Yates AM, Bowron A, Calton L, et al: Interlaboratory variation in 25-hydroxyvitamin D2 and 25-hydroxyvitamin D3 is significantly improved if common calibration material is used, *Clin Chem* 54:2082–2084, 2008.

Zerwekh J: Blood biomarkers of vitamin D status, *Am J Clin Nutr* 87:1087S–1091S, 2008.

CHAPTER 9

LABORATORY STATISTICS

Richard A. McPherson

DEFINITIONS, 102

VARIABLES, 103

PREPARING TO ANALYZE DATA, 103

DESCRIPTIVE STATISTICS, 103
Central Tendency, 103
Gaussian (Normal) Distribution, 104
Dispersion, 104
Nonparametric Measures, 105

COMPARATIVE STATISTICS, 105
Student *t*-Test, 105
Nonparametric Tests, 107

ANALYZING DISCRETE DATA: TESTING PROPORTIONS, 107
Chi-Square Test, 107

TREND EVALUATION AND CORRELATIVE STATISTICS, 108
Linear Regression, 108
Method Comparisons, 109
Analysis of Variance, 109
Analysis Involving Multiple Variables, 110

METHOD VALIDATION AND PROCESS CONTROL, 110
Reference Ranges, 110
Accuracy, 110
Precision, 110
Analytic Sensitivity, 111
Analytic Specificity, 111
Acceptability of a Method, 111

RESOURCES FOR STATISTICAL ANALYSIS, 111

SELECTED REFERENCES, 111

KEY POINTS

- For statistical analyses, nominal variables can take on only a limited number of values (or categories), whereas continuous variables are used to report quantitative data.
- Independent variables are considered input (cause), and dependent variables are considered output (effect).
- Distributions of continuous data are described by a measure of central tendency (e.g., mean or median) and dispersion (standard deviation). Gaussian distributions derive from a mathematical formula and thus are parametric. A common application of descriptive statistics is to establish reference ranges.
- Statistical tests such as comparisons of different groups of data points may be parametric (i.e., assume Gaussian distributions; example is Student *t*-test) or nonparametric (i.e., make no assumption of distributions; example is test based on rank order).
- Confidence intervals are preferable over point estimates to express level of certainty in the calculation of any statistical parameter.
- Nominal data are conveniently analyzed with proportions using the chi-square test.
- The effects of multiple factors in a model system can be assessed through analysis of variance.
- Regression analysis between two continuous variables is usually done by least squares fit to a straight line. Applications of regression analysis are common when different analytic methods for validation are compared in clinical laboratories.

The quantification of information in meaningful summaries and comparisons is the domain of statistical analysis. The first task in analysis is to provide a description of the magnitude of the observations and how close the different measurements are to one another. Descriptive statistics provides a consistent framework for calculating or estimating the central tendency of continuous data in the familiar forms of mean, median, and mode. The variation in data is generally described by the mathematical calculations of variances and standard deviations, or by the simple allocation of data points into a range of percentiles (e.g., interquartile range). These approaches are everyday phenomena in clinical laboratories for the monitoring of all quantitative assays. Reference ranges are initially set up with these techniques. Methods of quality control for precision and proficiency testing for accuracy also are based on these principles. For data that are not continuous but take on only two or a few discrete values (e.g., positive or negative), the analysis might consist of counting the number in each category and looking at the proportions of all values by category.

Comparison of data typically asks the question whether one group is different from another group. These comparisons are usually done by *t*-test or by analysis of variance, depending on whether two or more groups of continuous data are compared. If the data are discrete, comparison is done by chi-square analysis. When data can take on a range of different values, it is convenient to do a correlation between two different data sets with a straight line fit. The newcomer to statistical analysis frequently poses the question "Which statistical test is best?" The question of which test to use depends largely on whether the data are continuous or discrete and whether continuous data follow particular distributions. However, statistics is based on convention, so the investigator should try very diligently to understand the importance of differences between tests and whether possible findings and conclusions are likely to reflect accurately the nature and significance of the question being asked. In contrast to the investigator who is interested in finding the right test for data already collected, the statistician is more interested in helping the investigator plan the experiment and collect data so statistical tests are most valid. This chapter relies heavily on common clinical laboratory examples for which specific statistical tests are applied to demonstrate some useful choices.

DEFINITIONS

- *Variables:* The things that we measure, count, or otherwise delineate are termed *variables* because the values they can assume vary. Variables are usually considered to fall into one of the following scales:
  - *Nominal scale* is where a variable can take on only a limited number of values, usually called categories (or characters). Examples of nominal variables are gender (male or female) and risk factors (e.g., smoker or nonsmoker).
  - *Ordinal scale* is where the variable takes on specific values that have some inherent order such as magnitude but without equivalent distances between categories (e.g., trace amount, 1+, 2+, etc., of protein in urine).
  - *Interval scale* is where a variable takes on values in a quantitative range with defined differences between points. It is conventional to treat most numeric laboratory measurements as continuous variables, even though they may be reported as discrete values (e.g., glucose values of 123 or 124 mg/dL, but not 123.857… mg/dL).
- *Coefficient of variation (CV)* is the standard deviation of a set of data points divided by the mean result expressed as a percentage or as a decimal fraction.
- *Confidence interval (CI)* is the interval that is computed to include a parameter such as the mean with a stated probability (e.g., commonly 90%, 95%, 99%) that the true value falls into that interval.
- *Degrees of freedom (df)* is a parameter related to the sample size (n). df indicates the number of quantities free to vary and is usually n – 1 for applications such as the *t*-test. For the chi-square test, it is the number

of rows minus one times the number of columns minus one. df is employed in calculating the *p* value for a statistical test.

- *Gaussian (normal) distribution* is a spread of data in which elements are distributed symmetrically around the mean, with most values close to the center. It is explicitly described by a mathematical equation and so is a parametric distribution. Random scatter or random selection of a population often results in a Gaussian normal distribution. This type of distribution is often a criterion for completely valid application of many parametric tests.
- *Linear regression* is the mathematical process for calculating the best straight line to fit the relationship observed between two variables measured on the same items. *Simple* or *least squares linear regression* yields the best fit for x and y data sets by minimizing the sum of the squared *y*-axis (vertical distance) differences between each data point *(x, y)* and the line. This approach assumes the *x*-axis data to be nearly perfect or without error. Uneven distribution of data points across the entire range may significantly alter the reliability of linear regression. *Deming linear regression* does not assume the *x*-axis data to be free of error, but instead uses the weighted sum of squared *y*-axis and *x*-axis differences between the data points and the line. The *correlation coefficient (r)* describes how well the line fits the data (*r* ranges from −1 to 1).
- *Mean* is the sum of all results divided by the number of results. Also related are the *median*, which is the middle value that divides the distribution of data points into upper and lower halves (also called the 50th percentile), and the *mode*, which is the most common value. The mean, median, and mode are all measures of central tendency. The *geometric mean* is calculated as the *n*th root of the product of a distribution of *n* numbers; its use for estimating central tendency minimizes the effects from extreme values such as are found in a log-normal distribution.
- *Parametric statistics* are statistical measures that are calculated based on the assumption that the data points follow a Gaussian distribution and include parameters such as mean, variance, and standard deviation. *Nonparametric statistics* are based on rank or order of data.
- *Null hypothesis (H_0)* is the proposal that there is no difference in a comparison. The alternative hypothesis is that there is a difference. When the critical value of a statistic is exceeded, rejection of the null hypothesis occurs, thereby favoring the acceptability of the alternative hypothesis.
- *Significance level (p or α)* is the probability that a difference between groups occurred by chance alone, by convention set at less than 0.05.
- *Statistical power ($1 - \beta$)* is the probability that a difference between groups will be detected by the study, generally set to at least 80%.
- *Standard deviation (SD)* is the square root of the sum of the squared differences of each data point from the mean divided by $n - 1$ for samples (divided by *n* for populations). The SD is a predictable measure of dispersion from the mean in a Gaussian normal distribution.
- *Standard deviation index (SDI)* is the difference between the value of a data point and the mean value divided by the group's SD. The *z-transformation* is the expression of a result from the mean in SD units. The *Z*-value is the probability of a result being *z* SDs from the mean value. The SDI is commonly used in reporting performance in proficiency testing for an individual laboratory compared with peers.
- *Student* t-*test* is a statistical test for comparing means between two sample groups. The test can be paired (e.g., two separate measurements on the same individuals before and after some intervention) or unpaired. Values of *t* and *df* yield a level of statistical significance (*p* value).
- *Type I error (alpha error, α)* is incorrectly rejecting the null hypothesis and stating that two groups are statistically different when they really are not.
- *Type II error (beta error, β)* is incorrectly failing to reject the null hypothesis and stating that two groups are not statistically different when they really are.

VARIABLES

Statistical questions are often posed in terms of input versus output, cause and effect, or correlation between two or more variables. The input or cause is considered an *independent variable* because it is already determined and so is not influenced by other factors. Examples of independent variables are age, gender, temperature, and time. In contrast, *dependent variables* are those things that might change in response to the independent variable. Examples of dependent variables are blood glucose concentration, enzyme activities, and the presence or absence of malignancy. Of course, we can change our thinking and switch which is the independent and which is the dependent variable if the experimental question changes. For graphical display, the independent variable is plotted along the horizontal *(x)* axis or abscissa, while dependent variables are plotted along the vertical *(y)* axis or ordinate. With a single independent variable (e.g., time) on the *x*-axis, more than one dependent variable can be plotted on the *y*-axis to demonstrate different relationships simultaneously. The relationship observed between an independent variable and dependent variables is used to predict future outcomes of the dependent ones based on what values the independent variable assumes.

PREPARING TO ANALYZE DATA

Most statistical calculations today are done automatically by computer with software programs that present multiple sophisticated options for analysis and even graphical displays of the data. To prepare data for these automated analyses, it is always necessary to enter them into readable format for the program. This process can entail automated transfer from one electronic data set to the statistical program or manual entry from printed sheets of data. Manual entry is obviously fraught with opportunity for typographic errors, but even automated transfer of data can result in erroneous entries, especially when translating older data sets that have been stored on media that might have been corrupted (e.g., magnetic tapes reexamined decades later). Even converting data strings to columns and rows of data points can leave some values in the wrong places. Consequently, it is always good practice to examine the data set for accuracy before performing the statistical analysis. This examination could be done by proofreading every entry or by double entry of each value and automatic comparison for discrepancies, although both of these approaches may be impractical when the data sets contain hundreds, thousands, or more values. At the very least, visual examination of the plotted values provides a quick idea of whether some serious data entry errors have occurred. For example, an incorrectly entered value of 50.0 for potassium (instead of 5.0) can be immediately identified by scanning all values on a graphic plot. The person preparing to perform statistical analyses should do this visual test to identify and correct the most obvious errors and to search for any systematic errors that might have arisen in data transfer and entry.

DESCRIPTIVE STATISTICS

When multiple data points are collected, it is useful to provide a summary of those results that makes them easier to understand rather than simply listing all values. The methods used to summarize data are termed *descriptive statistics* because they describe what the magnitude of results is and how the data points differ from one another. In the case of categorical variables, this description can be a simple count of discrete values (e.g., how many men and how many women had blood drawn in a clinic). For continuous variables, it is conventional to use some measure of *central tendency* about which the data points cluster and a measure of how far apart they are *dispersed* from one another (e.g., what are the ages of the patients who had blood drawn).

CENTRAL TENDENCY

The most widely recognized measure of central tendency is probably the mean or average value (also referred to as the *arithmetic mean*), which is calculated by adding the values of all the individual data points and dividing that sum by the total number of data points, expressed mathematically as follows:

$$Mean = \bar{x} = (x_1 + x_2 + \ldots x_n) \div n = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-1)}$$

Because this technique derives the mean value from a defined formula, it is termed a *parametric method*. An alternative measure of central tendency is the *median*, which divides all data points exactly in half, with one half being higher and one half lower. The median is also called the 50th percentile. It is not calculated from a formula because it is taken from a straight count of the data points, so it is termed a *nonparametric method*. The third commonly used measure of central tendency is the *mode*, which is the most common value (i.e., the value of the variable that has the greatest number of data points). The mode is not a very useful measure for describing or comparing data sets, but it does have a role in understanding when a data set consists of two or more different populations that result in more than one mode. If two separate subpopulations are present, it is called a bimodal population.

Another measure of central tendency is the *geometric mean*, which has the feature of minimizing the influence from extreme values in a distribution. The geometric mean is calculated as the *n*th root of the product of all *n* values from a population, or:

$$\text{Geometric mean} = \sqrt[n]{x_1 \times x_2 \times \cdots x_n} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-2, A)}$$

The following transformation is more convenient for calculating the geometric mean:

$$\log \text{Geometric mean} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{\log x_i}{n} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-2, B)}$$

Thus the log of the geometric mean equals the mean of the logarithm of all observations, and taking the antilog of this summation yields the value of the geometric mean.

Consider the following distribution of values, which is heavily weighted toward the lower end but with some high values:

3, 3, 4, 4, 4, 5, 5, 5, 6, 6, 8, 9, 10, 15, 21

The arithmetic mean for these values is 7.2, whereas the geometric mean is 6.09, which better reflects the preponderance of values at the lower end than does the arithmetic mean.

In general, parametric methods allow numerous additional calculations for application of many different statistical tests that are based on specific formulas. The advantage of nonparametric methods is that they do not assume or require that the data points must follow any particular distribution for them to be applicable. Parametric methods can be applied to data sets that deviate from preferred distributions, but those calculations and conclusions may not be fully warranted if the deviations are extreme.

GAUSSIAN (NORMAL) DISTRIBUTION

The Gaussian (also called normal) distribution is a symmetrical, bell-shaped curve centered about the mean value (Fig. 9-1). It is described by the following mathematical formula:

$$P(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-\left(\frac{(x-\bar{x})^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)}, \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-3)}$$

where σ is the standard deviation of the ideal Gaussian population (Dawson-Saunders & Trapp, 1994). It corresponds to the distance from the mean to the *x* value at which the curve has an inflection point.

The area under this curve within ±1 σ from the mean is approximately 68.2% of the total area, meaning that 68.2% of data points from a Gaussian distribution should fall within ±1 σ of the mean. Similarly, 95.5% of the data points will be within ±2 σ of the mean, and 99.7% will be within ±3 σ of the mean.

DISPERSION

A common parametric measure (based on the Gaussian distribution) of the dispersion of data points about the mean value of a population under examination is the standard deviation, mathematically calculated as:

$$SD = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i - \bar{x})^2}{n-1}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-4)}$$

The quantity under the square root sign is termed *variance*. Use of the SD assumes that the data follow a bell-shaped curve that can be described mathematically by the formula for a normal or Gaussian distribution. To the extent that the data are normally distributed, the SD is a good estimate of the dispersion.

Two additional terms derive from the SD. One is the *coefficient of variation (CV)*, which is calculated as the SD divided by the mean. The CV is often expressed as a percentage, although it can also be expressed as a decimal fraction less than 1. For a situation where the mean = 25 and the SD = 5, the CV = 20%, or 0.20. The other term is the *standard deviation index (SDI)*, which is the distance that an individual data point is away from the mean value divided by the SD. The main use for the SDI is in such applications as proficiency testing, where performance of any one laboratory is standardized according to the dispersion of data in the performance by all laboratories.

A common clinical laboratory application of the normal distribution is to calculate the central 95% of values obtained from a healthy population when trying to establish the reference range for an analyte. This range, of course, is easily calculated as mean ±2 SD for a truly Gaussian normal population. An example of this application is calculation of the central 95% of values of the white blood cell (WBC) count in a group of 85 healthy medical students (Fig. 9-2). The bar graph plot is roughly bell-shaped and symmetrical, although there is a slight asymmetry that can probably be ignored. The mean value is 6.60×10^9 cells/L, with an SD of 1.457×10^9 cells/L, and the calculated central 95% range is from 3.69 to 9.52×10^9 cells/L. This is a small group of individuals compared with what might be used for actual reference range calculations, but it does show a few persons with WBCs higher than this range and some lower, so this estimate of central 95% appears appropriate.

Another way of thinking about these calculations is that the persons tested represent only a sample of all persons to whom we are interested in generalizing these findings (Daniel, 1999). The mean value actually observed would probably be somewhat different if another group of 85 healthy people were tested. Based on the values observed and their spread, a confidence interval can be placed around the mean such that we can be certain by a desired percent that the true mean of WBCs from all healthy persons falls in that range. The confidence limit is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Confidence interval} = \bar{x} \pm z\frac{SD}{\sqrt{n}}, \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-5)}$$

where the critical factor *z* derives from transformation of the problem to a standard normal distribution. The quantity $\frac{SD}{\sqrt{n}}$ is termed the *standard error of the mean*. In this example, let the confidence interval be 95%, for which $z = 1.96$. The 95% confidence interval around the mean value is:

$$6.60 \pm 1.96 \times \frac{1.457}{\sqrt{85}} \text{ or } 6.295 - 6.914 \times 10^9 \text{ cells/L}$$

Note that this range is the 95% confidence interval on the mean value alone, whereas the earlier calculations yielded the central 95% of all data points. Confidence intervals are used to give an idea of the broadness of the estimate of something. This can be made more certain by using 99% confidence intervals (i.e., 99% confident that the true mean falls in the

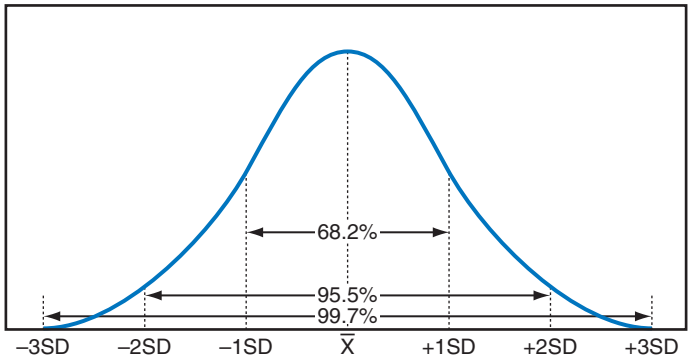


Figure 9-1 Idealized Gaussian (normal) distribution showing areas under the curve corresponding to mean ±1, 2, and 3 standard deviations (SD).

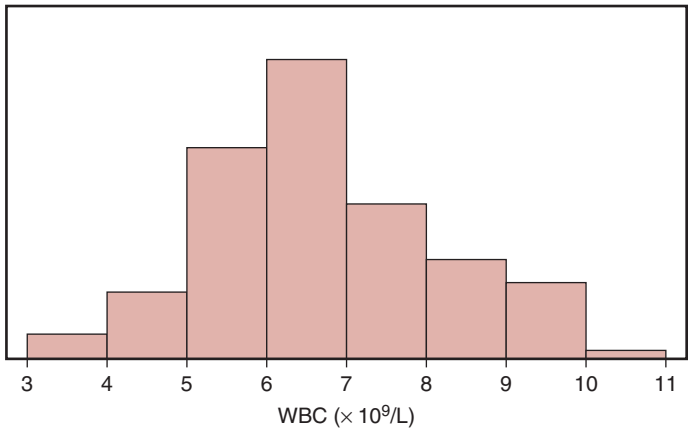


Figure 9-2 Distribution of white blood cells (WBCs) in the blood of 85 healthy individuals.

interval), in which case $z = 2.575$ for the calculation, and the 99% confidence interval is broader at:

$$6.60 \pm 2.575 \times \frac{1.457}{\sqrt{85}} \text{ or } 6.193 - 7.007 \times 10^9 \text{ cells/L}$$

NONPARAMETRIC MEASURES

The median value of WBC for this group of healthy persons is 6.4×10^9 cells/L, which is roughly the same as the mean value. For a perfectly Gaussian normal distribution, values of the mean, median, and mode are exactly the same. Delineation of the range from the 2.5-percentile to the 97.5-percentile also gives an estimate of the central 95% range (for the example of WBC, it is 3.94 to 9.89×10^9 cells/L, which is really the exact range for this specific population). This is a nonparametric estimate of the range because it does not use a calculation but only divides the data points according to their order. Many applications of median use the central 50% of data points from the 25th percentile to the 75th percentile (also called interquartile range) to describe central tendency by the nonparametric method.

Sometimes the parametric method of mean ±2 SD produces an erroneous estimate of the central 95% range. An example of this situation arises with the distribution of alanine aminotransferase (ALT) activities in the serum of apparently healthy individuals (Fig. 9-3). In this population, the mean value is 30.1 U, the SD is 12.69 U, and the calculated reference range (mean ±2 SD) is 4.73 to 55.48 U. This range is not appropriate because the actual lowest value observed in the group was much higher (12 U). This estimate of the lower end of the range (4.73 U) is far too low. Similarly, the estimate of the upper end (55.48 U) is too low and excludes about 10% of the data points instead of only 2.5%. Another clue that the parametric method may not work here is that the median value is 27.0 U, which is somewhat different from the mean. The reason for this discrepancy is apparent upon looking at the distribution, which is skewed to the right with many values tailing off at the upper end. In this case, a much more useful estimate of the central 95% can be obtained simply from the 2.5-percentile to the 97.5-percentile range. It is 15.2 to 68.0 U. The form of this distribution for ALT is sometimes termed *log-normal*, because it can be converted to a normal distribution by using the values of log ALT instead.

Many laboratory measurements show distinctly non-Gaussian normal distributions. Values of 25-OH vitamin D in 12,434 serum specimens from 2000 through 2008 showed a skewed distribution, with lowest value 0.5 ng/mL and highest value 260.0 ng/mL (Fig. 9-4, *A*). The arithmetic mean of these values is 25.55 ng/mL, and the median is 20.90 ng/mL, reflecting the nonnormal distribution. Plotting log 25-OH vitamin D shows a nearly normal distribution with mean value 1.3130 (Fig. 9-4, *B*). Then the geometric mean is $10^{1.3130} = 20.56$ ng/mL, which appears to be a better measure of central tendency for 25-OH vitamin D than the arithmetic mean.

COMPARATIVE STATISTICS

One of the questions frequently asked by statistical means is whether one group is different from another group in some characteristic. The question boils down to a comparison of the central tendency of one group versus that of the other and the scatter that each group exhibits about the central values. If the scatter of data is extreme, then calculated differences between mean values of two groups might not be important but rather the result of adding in the extreme values. Another way to think about these comparisons is that of signal/noise ratio. If there is little noise (scatter of data), then the difference in the signal from each group is more believable.

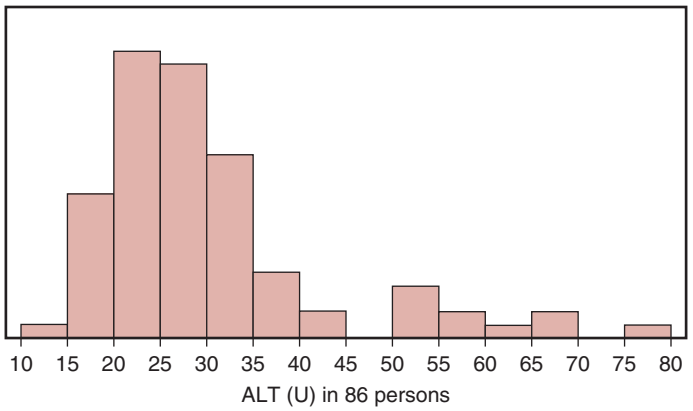


Figure 9-3 Distribution of alanine aminotransferase (ALT) in the serum of 86 healthy individuals.

STUDENT *t*-TEST

The most common method for comparison of a continuous variable between groups is probably the Student *t*-test (Dawson-Saunders & Trapp, 1994). The pseudonym *Student* was used by William Gosset, a statistician working for the Guinness brewery, who wanted to keep his work for optimizing productivity unrecognized by competing companies. The *t*-test is based on a parametric calculation of the *t* statistic as follows:

$$t = \frac{\bar{x}_1 - \bar{x}_2}{SD_{12}\sqrt{\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2}}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-6)}$$

where:

$\bar{x}_1$ = mean value in group 1
n_1 = number of values in group 1
$\bar{x}_2$ = mean value in group 2
n_2 = number of values in group 2
SD_{12} = standard deviation of groups 1 and 2 combined

Fortunately, the calculation of *t* statistics is conveniently performed by computers in modern times, so the analyst now has the responsibility of vouching for the accuracy of data input and the correct choice of statistical tests and their validity for the situation.

Some specific assumptions about the data sets are also necessary for applicability. For example, it is necessary to have sufficient numbers of data points in each group to make a valid comparison with approximately equal numbers in each. The spread of the data points should be equivalent (usually assessed by whether the variances of the groups are equivalent). The selection of data points should be independent of one another; for example, it would be inappropriate to include the same patient twice in one group. The issue of independence is usually handled experimentally by a random selection of subjects or patients. Randomization of treatments is an exacting process for important research such as clinical trials. For laboratory use, it is more likely that data come from patients who present themselves to the hospital or clinic for testing, rather than being a random sample of all people in a city or from a country. The more random the selection process, the more likely it is that results can be generalized to a much larger target population for which inference is desired.

The statistical question for consideration is reduced to two mutually exclusive hypotheses that include all the possible situations. The null hypothesis (H_0) states that there is no difference between groups. The alternative hypothesis (H_{alt}) is that the difference between mean values is significant. If the *t* statistic has a sufficiently high value, we can reject the null hypothesis and consequently must accept the alternative hypothesis that there is a significant difference. If the *t* value is on the low side, we cannot reject the null hypothesis, but neither can we accept it. This decision is somewhat like that of the verdict from a trial in which the possible outcomes are "guilty" and "not guilty." The innocence of the defendant is never established, and similarly the null hypothesis is never proven. We could end up thinking that the null hypothesis is correct (particularly because the alternative hypothesis now seems unlikely), but the test we performed did not strictly lead to that conclusion.

Consider the distribution of hemoglobin (Hb) values in the whole blood of 36 healthy males and 49 healthy females (Fig. 9-5, *A* and *B*). Visual inspection of the bar graphs for Hb shows that the females generally have lower values (mean 13.2 g/dL, SD 0.80 g/dL) than the males (mean 15.1 g/dL, SD 0.96 g/dL). Only a portion of the males and females overlap one another in Hb values. In this example, the value of $t = 9.898$. One other factor must be taken into account—the degrees of freedom, which is obtained from the total number of data points minus 2 or $df = n_1 + n_2 - 2 = 36 + 49 - 2 = 83$.

Significance

The value of the *t* statistic is assessed for significance according to the degrees of freedom. One way to approach the assessment is to look up the value of *t* for which the degrees of freedom yield a probability (*p*) value that is to be applied for significance using a table of values. More often the software does this calculation automatically. Generally, *p* values of 0.05 or less are required to claim statistical significance. A *p* value of 0.05 (also

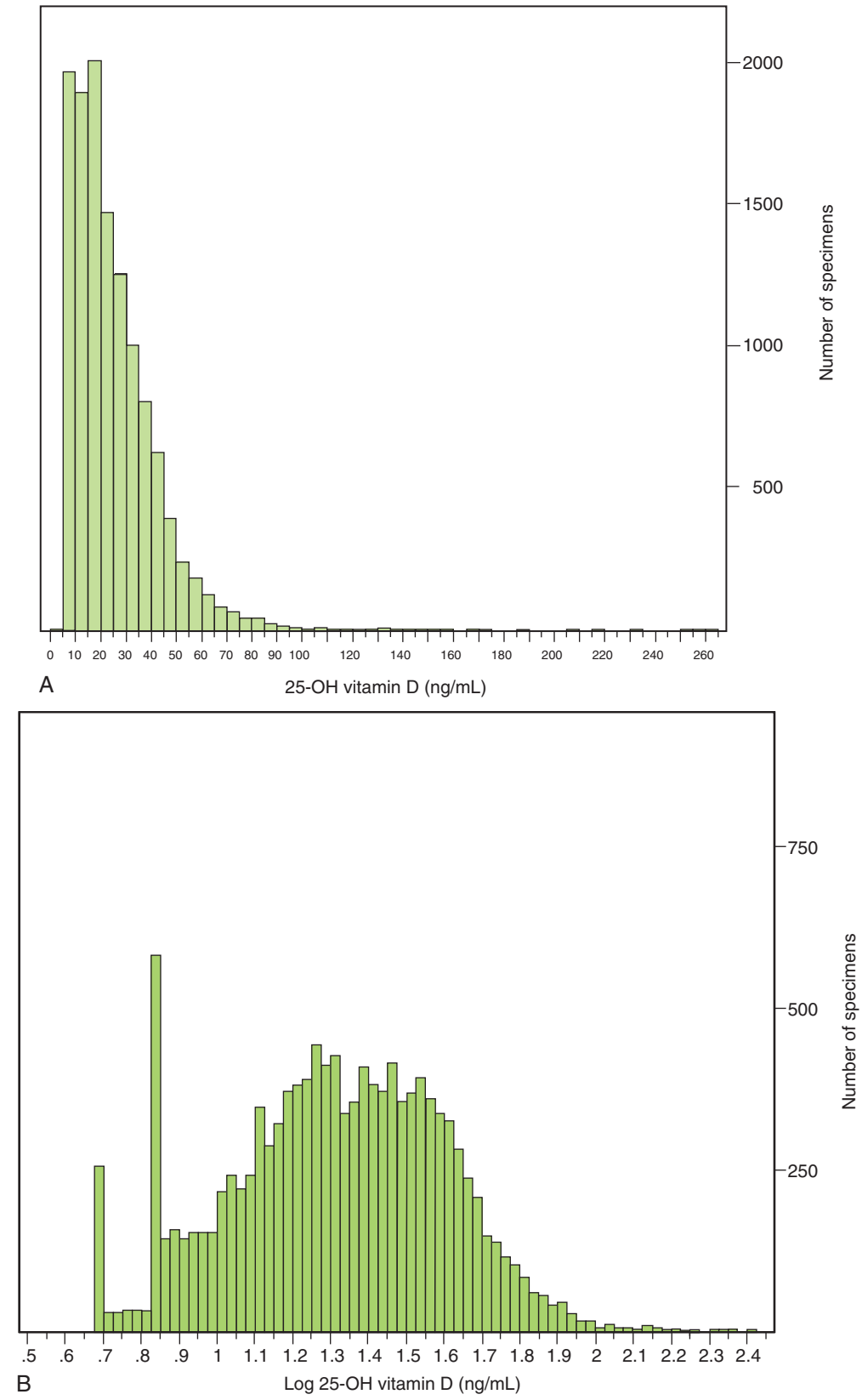


Figure 9-4 **A,** Distribution of 25-OH vitamin D in 12,434 serum specimens showing skewness to the right at higher values. **B,** Plotting log 25-OH vitamin D shows normal distribution following logarithmic transformation.

called alpha) means that the difference observed between the two groups could have occurred one time in 20 with the particular spread of data actually observed. The value of alpha is also thought of as the risk that we are willing to take to conclude falsely that there is a significant difference when in fact none exists (type I error). The use of alpha = 0.05 is merely an arbitrary convention, but it is ingrained in the minds of reviewers and protocols for evaluating studies. Of course, if the *p* value is much smaller, such as 0.01 or 0.001, then the statistical significance of a difference between group means is that much more credible.

Even though an observed difference between groups might have an extraordinarily impressive *p* value ($p = 0.001$ means that the result should happen by chance only 1 in 1000 times), it is incumbent upon the

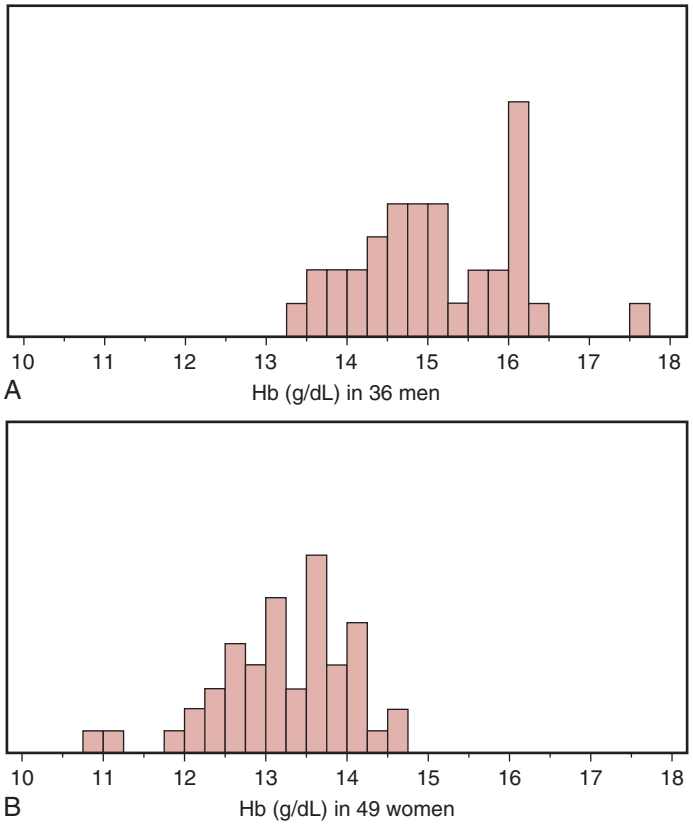


Figure 9-5 Distribution of hemoglobin (Hb) in the blood of **(A)** healthy men and **(B)** healthy women.

investigator to conclude whether the observation is clinically significant. The statistical significance of any difference can always be amplified, no matter how insignificant it is for decision making, simply by increasing the number of data points (see the formula for calculating *t*, Equation 9-6).

A potential problem arises when a large number of comparisons are done in studies where no clear hypothesis is stated, but instead the data are mined for whatever might fall out upon examination. In this case, the minimal level of significance should be adjusted to reflect the large number of tests that could conceivably discover "significant results" by chance alone. After all, if a *p* value of 0.05 is used, then by doing 20 different comparisons, one should find on average some comparison with a statistically significant difference regularly. The Bonferroni correction is done to lower the risk of such false discovery. It consists of dividing the usually accepted *p* value by the number of comparisons. Thus for five different comparisons, the correction is *p* value = 0.05/5 = 0.01 as the acceptable threshold value for significance.

For this particular example, comparing Hb values between males and females, the *p* value is less than 0.0001, so we can reject the null hypothesis and can conclude that there is a significant difference between groups. Most statisticians would not report this level but would be satisfied with saying that the *p* value was less than 0.001. Another condition to denote is whether this test is two-sided or one-sided, meaning that the question being asked is whether one group is simply different from the other (two-sided) as opposed to the question of whether one group is only higher than the other group (one-sided). Most journals require the use of two-sided *t*-tests because they are more demanding.

Sample Size

Suppose the two groups being compared showed a difference that was not quite statistically significant, with a *p* value of 0.06. One way to achieve statistical significance is to increase the number of subjects studied. This will be the case if the difference remains the same, because the *t*-value will be increased by a greater *n*. A pilot study can be done in a clinical trial to establish roughly the difference between groups and the scatter of the data. These pieces of information are then used in a formula to calculate the sample size necessary to bring the results to statistical significance. Calculation of sample size also takes into account another factor called beta, which is the risk one has of missing a true effect by chance (type II error). The power of the study is 1 – beta. When beta is set to 0.20, the power of the study is 0.80, which says that the number of subjects calculated for use will yield a statistically significant result 80% of the time with the specified difference between groups and scatter of data.

The *t*-test used for this example was unpaired because the comparison was between different individuals. If the experimental design included a comparison of values on the same individuals before and after treatment, then it is appropriate to use a paired *t*-test. A paired test is potentially a more powerful mathematical tool because it looks only at the change between the values within each person and is not influenced by variation in background values between individuals.

TABLE 9-1
Observed Values of Contamination in Blood Cultures

Result	Baseline Period	Post Training
Number of cultures contaminated	53	32
Number of cultures not contaminated	978	891

NONPARAMETRIC TESTS

If the assumption about normality of the data is not valid, other nonparametric tests can be used to compare distributions between groups. The *Wilcoxon signed-ranks test* is such a technique. By this method, all values for both groups are given a numeric rank according to their magnitude. In the case of ties for the same value, both are assigned the intermediate rank (e.g., if 4th and 5th places are tied, then both are given the rank 4.5). All ranks are summed in each group and divided by the number of data points in each group. The difference between the rank scores is then given a probability. This technique is easily done by computer software and may be quite useful when assumptions required for a parametric method are not met by a data set.

ANALYZING DISCRETE DATA: TESTING PROPORTIONS

Analysis of discrete data takes on a different form from that of continuous variables that can be expressed as distributions. With discrete data, answers are typically dichotomous: Something is present or absent, patient gender is male or female, the patient lived or died. Consider the fictitious example of an intervention to lower contamination rates in blood culture collection. (This is a universal problem in all laboratories, but these data are only hypothetical.) Before the intervention, baseline information over a 2-month period showed that 53 cultures were considered contaminated and 978 were not. After training and implementation of the new collection process, a second 2-month period showed 32 contaminated cultures and 891 that were not. These nominal data are conveniently expressed in a 2 × 2 display termed a contingency table of observed values (Table 9-1). These data consist of simple counts in one category or another. The question to be asked is whether the proportion of contaminated cultures was significantly different in the two time periods.

CHI-SQUARE TEST

The statistical test to be used is the chi-square test. It is calculated as:

$$\chi^2 = \sum \frac{(observed - expected)^2}{expected} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-7, A)}$$

where the observed values are as listed earlier and the expected values are calculated from the overall assortment of counts (Dawson-Saunders & Trapp, 1994). In this example, the expected number of contaminated cultures in the baseline period is the total number of cultures done in that period (53 + 978 = 1031) times the proportion of contaminated cultures in both time periods together (proportion calculated as [53 + 32]/[53 + 978 + 32 + 891] = 0.0435), or 1031 × 0.0435 = 44.8. Calculation of the other expected values follows similarly, resulting in a contingency table of expected values (Table 9-2). Then calculation of the χ^2 value is done by summing the squares of the differences (this converts all differences to positive values) between expected and observed values and dividing by the expected value in each cell of the table. In this example,

$$\chi^2 = \frac{(53-44.8)^2}{44.8} + \frac{(978-986.2)^2}{986.2} + \frac{(32-40.2)^2}{40.2} + \frac{(891-882.8)^2}{882.8} = 3.3$$

(Eq. 9-7, B)

TABLE 9-2
Expected Values of Contamination in Blood Cultures

Result	Baseline Period	Post Training
Number of cultures contaminated	44.8	40.2
Number of cultures not contaminated	986.2	882.8

With one degree of freedom ([number of rows – 1][number of columns – 1]), the *p* value is 0.07, which does not meet the universal threshold of at least 0.05 for statistical significance. It is fair to say that a trend toward less contamination was observed after the intervention but that it was not quite statistically significant. It is important to keep in mind that for χ^2 testing to be valid, each cell must have a minimum value of five observations.

TREND EVALUATION AND CORRELATIVE STATISTICS

The relationship between an independent variable and a dependent variable is demonstrated by plotting them on a scattergram or a plot with the independent (input) variable on the *x*-axis and the dependent (output) variable on the *y*-axis. If there is no relationship between the two variables, the data scatter randomly over the graph. If there is a relationship, it can be described mathematically by finding a line that is the best fit through all the data points. This line can be calculated by the least squares approach in which the vertical distances from each point to the calculated line are minimized for the entire population of values. This statistical method is referred to as *linear regression* (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards, 2003).

LINEAR REGRESSION

The general form for the equation of a straight line is:

$$y = a + bx \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-8)}$$

in which the slope (*b*) indicates how the value of *y* changes when *x* changes. When $b = 1$, the relationship of change between *x* and *y* is one-to-one. The intercept (*a*) indicates how the relationship between *x* and *y* is offset or biased by a constant factor. The calculation is easily done by any of several statistical programs that also provide information about the goodness of fit of the line. This approach is commonly used when comparing an existing method (A) with a new method (B) for the same analyte (Fig. 9-6, *A*). This example shows a strong correlation between method A and method B because the data points fall very close to the line, which is described by the equation: *Method B* = 0.62 + 0.99 × *Method A*. The slope of 0.99 is almost perfect, and the intercept of 0.62 is quite small on the scale of possible values. In fact, the 95% confidence limits on *b* are –0.47 to 1.72, which includes the value 0, indicating that the intercept is not significantly different from 0.

The vertical (*y*-axis) distances from each data point to the best-fit line are termed the *residuals*. The most valid line fits are associated with relatively constant values of the residuals over the entire range of values. If the residuals grow larger at one end of the graph, then the line fit is less certain in that portion of the range. The *standard error of regression* (also called standard *error of the estimate*), denoted $S_{y.x}$, is used to estimate the variation that could be expected from doing the regression again with another sample of data points. The $S_{y.x}$ is calculated as the square root of the sum of residuals squared, divided by n – 2. It is important that data points from patient specimens be spread over the entire analytic range to yield the most valid comparison of methods unbiased by overrepresentation or underrepresentation of data in any region (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards, 2002).

In laboratory practice, regression or correlation analysis is frequently used to compare the performance of a new method versus an old method. In this situation, the old method could have worse precision than the new one, so it would not be appropriate to base a judgment just on how the new method compares with the old one as a "gold standard." A common approach to this issue is Deming regression analysis, named for W. Edwards Deming (1900-1993), a mathematician influential in principles of quality improvement. In Deming regression, the best line is obtained by minimizing the sum of squares of both *x* and *y* distances from the data points to the line (Cornbleet & Gochman, 1979). In addition, Deming regression applies a weighting factor (λ) that incorporates the relative variances of both *x* and *y* data. The result is more heavily weighted in favor of the data set with better precision.

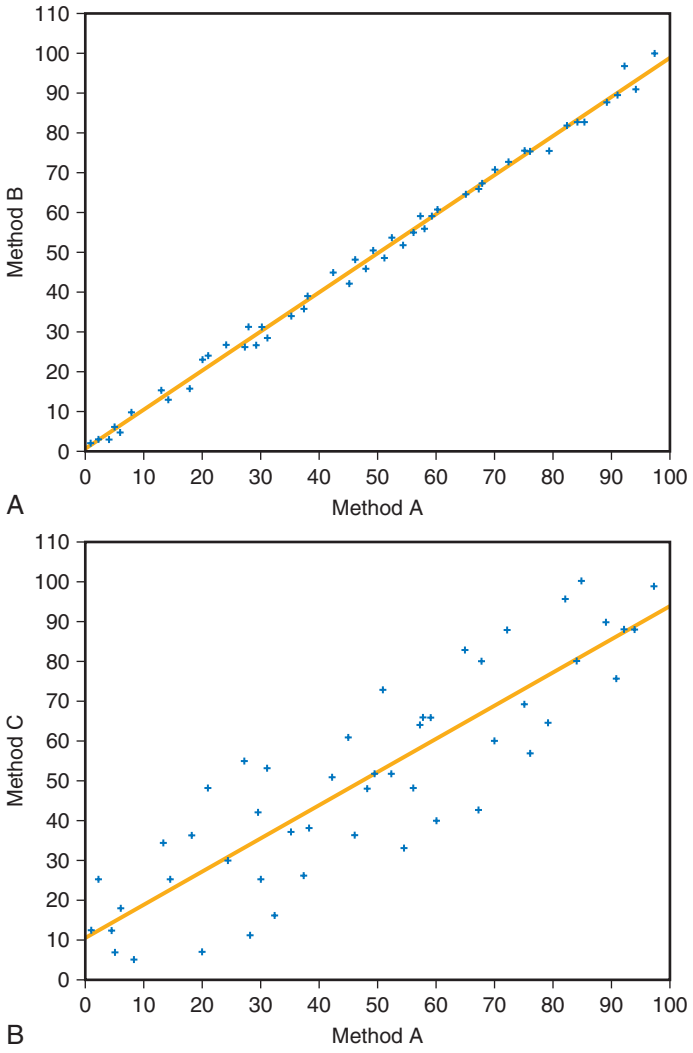


Figure 9-6 **A,** Regression analysis between method A and method B; strong correlation. **B,** Regression analysis between method A and method C; weaker correlation.

The relationship between method A and method B is further described by the *correlation coefficient (r)*, which can range in value from –1 to +1. A value of 0 indicates no relationship, and a value of 1 indicates a perfect relationship (–1 is also a perfect but inverse relationship). Other values between –1 and +1 indicate intermediate relationships. The square of the correlation coefficient is termed the coefficient of determination (r^2), which describes the amount of variation observed in the dependent variable that is due to the relationship between the two variables. In this example, $r = 0.9976$ and $r^2 = 0.9952$, both of which are very high values that show an extremely strong relationship between method A and method B that accounts for 99.52% of the variation. The *p* value on this correlation is less than 0.0001.

In contrast with the very good correlation between method A and method B, the performance of method C versus method A (Fig. 9-6, *B*) is not nearly as good. By simple visual examination, the data points are scattered farther from the line, and the line is shifted upward. The value of $r = 0.8757$ is somewhat less than between method A and method B, but it still shows a strong correlation with *p* value less than 0.0001. The value of $r^2 = 0.7668$, so 76.68% of the variation can be accounted for by the relationship between method C and method A. The equation for this line is *Method C* = 10.2 + 0.84 × *Method A*, so the change in values using method C compared with method A is slightly less (slope of 0.84). A significant upward bias is seen by method C (intercept of 10.2 with 95% confidence limits of 2.8 to 17.6). A special example of regression analysis termed *logistic regression* is employed when the outcome is a dichotomous or binary variable for continuous independent (predictor) variables.

METHOD COMPARISONS

These two examples show somewhat different relationships, although both are statistically significant. It is up to the person assessing the performance to determine which is sufficient for the application. The comparison of method A versus method B is extraordinarily strong both by visual review and by statistical analysis, so it can comfortably be said that these methods are equivalent for the purposes of replacing one with the other in clinical practice. On the other hand, the comparison of method A with method C is messier because of the larger amount of data scatter. The smaller slope suggests that the two methods do not react equivalently with the analyte, and furthermore there is a positive bias by method C. With expectations for excellent precision and accuracy on modern instrumentation, method C would probably be rejected if method B were a viable alternative. And yet the level of correlation observed between method A and method C might be very welcome to researchers trying to ask a different question related to cause and effect between biological processes that have inherently high levels of variation.

In clinical laboratory applications for method evaluation, the question to be asked is not how certain we are that two things are different but rather how certain we are that a new method yields results comparable to those from an existing method. The Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute provides the software titled StatisPro, which does such analysis for method comparability with input from the user about tolerances for differences between methods at low and high values and correlation, bias, and scatter of the data that are acceptable for a particular analyte. StatisPro incorporates standard measures of quality control and also regulatory requirements for documenting assay performance in formats that are readily accepted for laboratory inspections. Instead of analyzing for differences between methods, this approach is for their trueness to one another (Fig. 9-7).

ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE

When the mean values of more than two different groups are to be compared, the process is termed *analysis of variance (ANOVA)* (Dawson-Saunders & Trapp, 1994). This analysis can be thought of as extending the *t*-test beyond two independent samples to three or more. The null hypothesis in this situation is that the mean values of all groups are the same. The alternative hypothesis is that not all the means are equal (some could be the same, but others different). The test statistic is the *F*-ratio of the mean squares among all groups (MS_A) to the error mean square (MS_E):

$$F\text{-ratio} = \frac{MS_A}{MS_E} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-9)}$$

It compares the variance of the group means versus the mean of all the data (numerator) and the variance of individual data points within each group (denominator). If the group means differ from one another (signal) more than the variation within groups (noise), then the *F*-ratio will exceed a critical value for significance.

An example of ANOVA is the comparison of serum albumin values from patients at two inpatient sites, an outpatient clinic, and a student health clinic (Fig. 9-8). One hundred consecutive specimens from each site were recorded. The horizontal line shows the grand mean of all 400 values of 3.17 g/dL. Within each group, the diamonds indicate group means (midline) and 95% confidence intervals on those means (upper and lower vertices). The *F*-ratio is 279, for which the *p* value is less than 0.0001, so the null hypothesis can be rejected with the conclusion that at least some of the means are different. This approach is more conservative and realistic than comparing each group with every other group using a series of different *t*-tests (with four groups, six comparisons could be made). The problem with too many comparisons is the possibility of "accidentally finding significance" that is not true. To extend ANOVA, comparisons of group means by such procedures as Tukey's honestly significant difference (HSD) can be done. In this example, Tukey's HSD indicates that IP1 and IP2 are not different from each other but that OP and SH are both different from all other groups. At this stage, the investigator is free to elaborate on potential reasons for these observed differences without putting further statistical significance on the individual differences.

Some conditions should be met for parametric ANOVA to be completely valid mathematically:

- The data were collected using random sampling where all observations are independent of one another.
- The data in each group are normally distributed.
- Each group has an equal number of data points.
- Each group has equal variances.

If this set of ideal criteria is not met, other methods are available for comparisons. The Mann-Whitney test can be used to compare medians. The Wilcoxon and Kruskal-Wallis tests for rank sums are nonparametric alternatives. This example of serum albumin shows greater variances for the inpatient groups than for the outpatients, so nonparametric analysis could be more appropriate. (The Wilcoxon test also showed significant differences among the groups of this example.) This case dealt with one variable, so it was one-way ANOVA. To deal with two variables, the procedure can be extended to two-way ANOVA.

Linear regression might be used in error to analyze continuous outcome data when the independent variable has the appearance of being continuous but is actually categorical. Such a situation is seen with tumor grade (1 through 4) as an independent variable. Tumor grade is not continuous but rather consists of discrete categories that are not necessarily evenly spaced along a dimension. Although statistical programs would permit

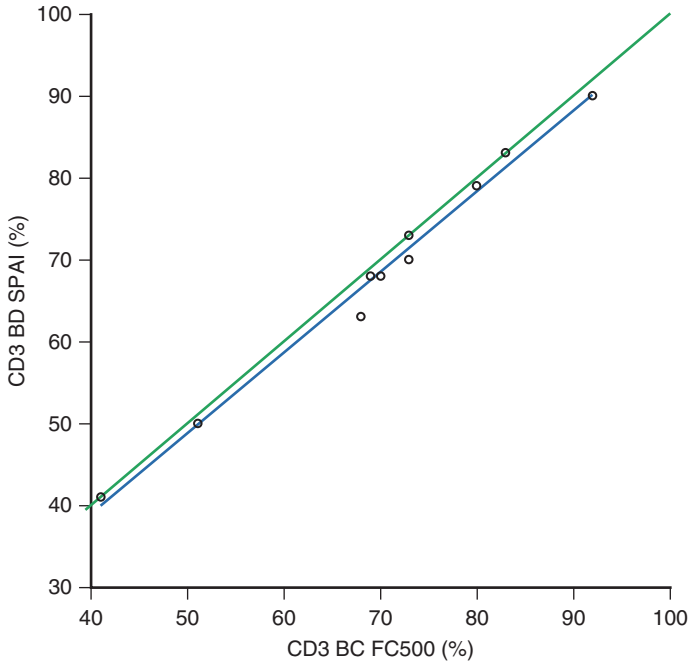


Figure 9-7 StatisPro analysis of two flow cytometric methods for percent CD3 cells in whole blood. The correlation coefficient is excellent ($r = 0.994$; 95% confidence interval = 0.897 to 1.069), with an acceptable slightly downward plot (blue line) compared with the line of identity (green line) that has the small value for intercept of 0.33% (95% confidence interval = –6.46% to 5.80%).

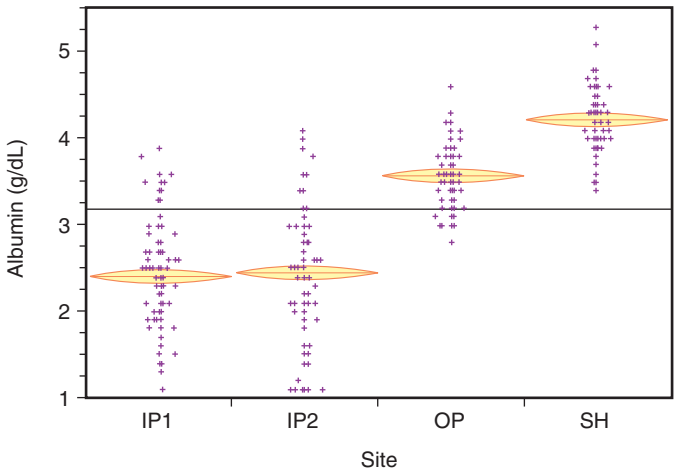


Figure 9-8 Analysis of variance. Serum albumin at different patient sites. *IP1, IP2,* Inpatient wards 1 and 2; *OP,* outpatient; *SH,* student health.

calculation of a regression on tumor grade, the proper approach would be one-way ANOVA to look for differences in the dependent variable (e.g., survival time) among groups (e.g., tumor grade).

ANALYSIS INVOLVING MULTIPLE VARIABLES

Two-way analysis of variance (two-way ANOVA) is used when the experimental design has two categorical independent variables (input) and a continuous dependent variable (output). An example is the effects of both gender and different (fixed) drug levels on a physiologic measurement such as blood pressure. In addition to the one-way effects of gender on blood pressure and of drug level on blood pressure, it is necessary to investigate a possible interaction of gender and drug level in two-way ANOVA. If such an interaction is significant, then response to drug level might be different in men versus women. These interactions are conveniently displayed graphically (e.g., a plot of response to drug in men and one for women; noninteraction results in parallel lines; intersection of the lines indicates an interaction).

Multiple analysis of variance (MANOVA) applies to a model with multiple categorical independent variables and two or more continuous dependent variables. Sometimes the way a comparison is set up by selection of subjects into different groups can lead to a confounding effect from another variable besides the variable of primary interest. In this case, it is revealing to perform *analysis of covariance (ANCOVA)* to account for potential influence from the covariable. The intention of ANCOVA is to use statistical methods to eliminate effects arising from confounding variables that were not accounted for by random assignment in the original selection of subjects. Typically these effects might be due to an imbalance of subjects with certain characteristics in the experimental group compared with the control group (e.g., the treatment group might have 75% smokers and the control group only 25%; without adjusting for this potential confounding factor, one could not be certain that results from treatment were not in fact merely due to different proportions of smokers in each group).

As a laboratory example of ANCOVA, consider the comparison of serum calcium measurements in 61 male and 41 female healthy adults to establish whether different reference ranges of calcium would be necessary for males and females. Simple one-way ANOVA similar to that in Figure 9-8 yielded a statistically significant ($p = 0.0045$) difference between the group means of calcium (males 9.3 mg/dL, females 9.1 mg/dL). (Performing ANOVA with only two groups is equivalent to an unpaired *t*-test.) This finding was consistent with those of previous studies, so it probably is appropriate to have gender-specific reference ranges for serum calcium, but does this make sense from a physiologic view? It is also well recognized that serum albumin influences total calcium levels by binding some of the calcium. A linear regression for these subjects confirmed this relationship. The effects of gender and of the covariable albumin on calcium are sorted out by ANCOVA. In this example, the effect on calcium from gender was completely accounted for by the effect of albumin on calcium and the different distribution of albumin in males versus females. ANCOVA can be enlightening to discover and eliminate by statistical analysis those covariables that might not be known and planned for in the design of an experiment. Further discussion of ANCOVA can be found in more advanced texts on statistics (Matthews & Farewell, 1988).

When multiple continuous independent variables (x_1, x_2, x_3, etc.) are tested to predict a continuous dependent variable (y) as outcome, *multiple regression analysis* is used to calculate the weighting factors (b_i) for a linear combination as follows:

$$y = a + b_1x_1 + b_2x_2 + b_3x_3 + \cdots \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 9-10)}$$

This analysis also allows use of nominal independent variables with so-called "dummy variables" that are arbitrarily given values of 1 or 0 (e.g., 1 for female and 0 for male). Thus if x_1 is gender, the coefficient b_1 is multiplied by 1 for females in calculating the values of y; however, for males, b_1 is multiplied by 0. This dummy coding permits convenient use of nominal variables in regression analysis.

Structural equation modeling (SEM) is a method for evaluating linear relationships among multiple variables, with the added value of taking measurement error into account simultaneously instead of linearly. SEM has been used extensively for multivariate analysis in psychological research because it allows for the introduction of latent variables that are not directly observed, although they might have causal relationships with observed outcomes. SEM has the potential to analyze complex relationships among variables and estimate the strength of their correlations. Applications in medicine include epidemiology and genetics (Beran & Violato, 2010). A common platform for SEM analysis is the LISREL (Linear Structural Relationships) software.

METHOD VALIDATION AND PROCESS CONTROL

Statistical analysis is integral to the validation of new laboratory methods and to the monitoring of analytic and workflow processes in clinical laboratories (Lott, 1998).

REFERENCE RANGES

The examples depicted in Figures 9-2, 9-3, 9-4, and 9-5 demonstrate some of the issues encountered when reference ranges are established through application of descriptive statistics. The basic aim is to establish a range of values within which the majority of healthy people will fall, while excluding individuals with disease. The simplest approach is to use the central 95% of data points from healthy individuals by calculating mean ±2 SD whenever the distribution is normal or bell-shaped, as for WBC in Figure 9-2. This parametric approach fails to provide a complete reference range when the data are skewed, as for ALT in Figure 9-3. In this case, the central 95% can be determined nonparametrically by using the range 2.5-percentile to 97.5-percentile, which excludes 2.5% at both the upper and lower ends. The distribution of ALT actually appears to have two subpopulations in these healthy people. Consequently, basing reference ranges solely on observed ranges in apparently healthy persons might not be the best approach. In fact, some new recommendations for ALT set the upper range much lower than wide-based population studies would suggest. The new guidelines try to eliminate persons who might have mild, asymptomatic liver changes such as steatosis (Prati et al, 2002). This approach is similar to the strategy used for setting desirable or healthy levels of cholesterol and lipid fractions (National Cholesterol Education Program, 2002) and of glucose (Report of the Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus, 2003). In the future, recommendations from other consensus groups or professional organizations will probably be even more useful in setting desirable ranges for other analytes in place of population-based reference ranges.

Finally, healthy subgroups of people should be recognized by separate reference ranges whenever major differences occur according to factors such as age or gender (see Fig. 9-5).

ACCURACY

The performance of a new method can be assessed for accuracy (e.g., the ability to correctly detect and quantify an analyte) by assaying patient specimens or interlaboratory survey materials with known values. The example of a strong correlation between methods in Figure 9-6, *A* indicates that the analyte reacts in a nearly one-to-one manner by each method (slope ≈ 1) with essentially no bias (intercept ≈ 0). In contrast, the correlation depicted in Figure 9-6, *B*, has a slope different from 1, indicating that the analyte reacts differently with the two methods. One explanation for this type of discrepancy is found when tumor markers are measured by two immunoassays that employ different antibodies that potentially recognize different epitopes. A bias such as that shown by method C versus method A in Figure 9-6, *B* also suggests a basic methodologic difference that has an impact on accuracy, albeit in a predictable way that could be compensated for with calibration adjustment.

The accuracy of any assay depends heavily on the calibrators—that is, how they are originally constituted, how they remain stable over time, and how they compare with calibrators from other vendors (see Chapter 10). The best situation is to have an assay calibrated against internationally distributed standards such as from the World Health Organization or other professional group. By using calibrators with such traceability and standardized units of measurement, it is feasible to use values from different assays interchangeably for the same patient or to compare outcomes in different groups of patients being monitored with different methods.

After implementation of a method, periodic proficiency survey testing of unknown specimens is usually reported in terms of SDIs away from the mean of all laboratories. For example, if the mean of creatinine measurements is 11 mg/dL for all participants with SD of 2 mg/dL, then a laboratory reporting a value of 8 mg/dL would have SDI = (8 − 11)/2 = −1.5.

PRECISION

The reproducibility of an assay is conveniently expressed with the CV that allows the observed SD to be normalized by the magnitude of the

signal being measured. It should be kept in mind that assays typically have different CVs for different ranges of analyte values. Therefore, it is good practice to establish CVs for an assay at high-, low-, and midrange values.

ANALYTIC SENSITIVITY

The lowest value that an assay can reliably detect is termed the analytic sensitivity. A common approach to making this judgment is to measure a zero standard multiple times (e.g., 10 times) and calculate the SD of the signal detected, which is noise. Then set the lowest reliable detection threshold at three or four times the value of the SD. This approach is often individualized within laboratories. This characteristic is also termed the detection limit. Another use of the term *analytic sensitivity* refers to the change in response of an assay for a given change in the amount or concentration of the analyte (Giacomo, 1984). In this respect, a highly sensitive assay has the characteristic of readily detecting small changes in analyte at concentrations in the midrange of measurement.

ANALYTIC SPECIFICITY

The major interferents in laboratory measurements are hemolysis, icterus, and lipemia, due either to interference with optical absorbances (or light scattering) or to actual chemical interactions (e.g., peroxidase activity of Hb in many immunoassays that use horseradish peroxidase as an indicator). Beyond these endogenous interferents, drugs can also interact with various chemical or immunologic assays. The magnitude of these interactions (or lack thereof) is typically documented by the addition of known, large amounts of the substances to serum samples that are tested for recovery of the analyte in the serum.

ACCEPTABILITY OF A METHOD

The final decision of whether to accept a method as valid depends on a combination of factors. Do the statistical tests show a new method to perform analytically as it should with good accuracy and precision? Does the new method provide useful medical information that is not otherwise available? Is the method feasible to do (easy to perform, low cost, rapid)? Does the maximum error fall within medically acceptable limits? The final decision is a professional judgment based on all of these items.

RESOURCES FOR STATISTICAL ANALYSIS

Calculation of descriptive statistics and performance of statistical tests are now widely done using statistical software on computers. In the scientific realm, a few software packages are particularly popular, although applications from other vendors are also available. One of the most popular in the biomedical sciences is from the SAS (originally Statistical Analysis System) Institute, Inc., in Cary, North Carolina. SAS also provides JMP Software that has graphics linked to the statistics for ready visualization of results. Another well-established statistical software product is the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences (SPSS), which is now a part of IBM (SPSS Inc., Chicago, Ill.). SPSS is still recognized for its prominence in the social sciences. Microsoft Excel also can provide statistical analyses along with expanded graphical capabilities.

An alternative software package for scientific data analysis is the free open-source program named R for the first names of its creators Ross Ihaka and Robert Gentleman from the University of Auckland in New Zealand. While R requires programming abilities, it has the advantage of transparency in its written code for which many users have posted applications on the Internet for others to use at no cost. Statistical analysis using R programs has gained considerable popularity with graduate students as well as with users of standard procedures in pathology (Cuff & Higgins, 2012).

Resources for performing statistical calculations directly online are available with simple searching. One such site is Martindale's Calculators On-Line Center at http://www.martindalecenter.com/Calculators2A_1_Cou.html#STAT-ALL. A listing of similar sites is available on "Web Pages that Perform Statistical Calculations!" at http://www.statpages.org/.

When planning statistical analysis of data, in fact, even before planning the experimental design of a project, it is appropriate to consult with a biostatistician to ensure the most efficient design and one that is most likely to provide statistically sound results. A simple review of which statistical tests to employ for different combinations of categorical and continuous variables as independent (input) and dependent (output) variables can be found at The Decision Tree for Statistics at http://www.microsiris.com/Statistical%20Decision%20Tree/.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Daniel WW: *Biostatistics: A foundation for analysis in the health sciences*, ed 7, New York, 1999, John Wiley & Sons.

This book is a more rigorous text on the use of statistical analysis in medicine and life sciences.

Dawson-Saunders B, Trapp RG: *Basic & clinical biostatistics*, ed 2, Norwalk, Conn., 1994, Appleton & Lange.

This very readable book provides excellent descriptions of statistical procedures applied to multiple examples in the life sciences and medicine.

Lott JA: Process control and method evaluation. In: Snyder JR, Wilkinson DS, editors: *Management in laboratory medicine*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1998, Lippincott, pp 293–325.

This book is a comprehensive source for all aspects of management in the clinical laboratory.

National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards: *Evaluation of the linearity of quantitative measurement procedures: A statistical approach—Approved guideline. Document EP6-A*, Wayne, Pa., 2003, NCCLS.

This and all the NCCLS guidelines have been developed through a consensus process involving international representatives from industry, government, and user laboratories to yield recommendations that can be applied worldwide. In January 2005, the NCCLS changed its name to the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI).

REFERENCES

Beran TN, Violato C: Structural equation modeling in medical research: A primer, *BMC Research Notes* 3:267–276, 2010.

Cornbleet PJ, Gochman N: Incorrect least-squares regression coefficients in method-comparison analysis, *Clin Chem* 25:432–438, 1979.

Cuff J, Higgins JPT: Statistical analysis of surgical pathology data using the R program, *Adv Anat Pathol* 19:131–139, 2012.

Giacomo P: *International vocabulary of basic and general terms in metrology*, Geneva, Switzerland, 1984, International Organization for Standardization, pp 4–40.

Matthews DE, Farewell VT: *Using and understanding medical statistics*, ed 2, Basel, Switzerland, 1988, Karger.

National Cholesterol Education Program: Detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (Adult Treatment Panel III), final report. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md; 2002.

National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards: *Method comparison and bias estimation using patient samples; approved guideline. Document EP9-A2*, Wayne, Pa., 2002, NCCLS. ISBN 1-56238-472-4.

Prati D, Taioli E, Zanella A, et al: Updated definitions of healthy ranges for serum alanine aminotransferase levels, *Ann Inn Med* 137:1–10, 2002.

Report of the expert committee on the diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus, *Diabetes Care* 26(Suppl 1):S5–S20, 2003.

CHAPTER 10

QUALITY CONTROL

W. Greg Miller

ANALYTIC BIAS AND IMPRECISION, 112

CALIBRATION CONSIDERATIONS IN QUALITY CONTROL, 113
Calibration and Verification of Calibration, 113
Calibration Traceability to a Reference System and Commutability Considerations, 114

OVERVIEW OF QUALITY CONTROL PROCEDURES, 114

IMPLEMENTING QUALITY CONTROL PROCEDURES, 115
Selection of Quality Control Materials, 115
Frequency to Assay Quality Control Samples, 115
Establishing Quality Control Target Value and Standard Deviation That Represent a Stable Measurement Operating Condition, 116
Performance of a Measurement Procedure for Its Intended Medical Use, 118
Establishing Rules to Evaluate Quality Control Results, 119
Corrective Action When a Quality Control Result Indicates a Measurement Problem, 120
Reviewing Quality Control Data, 121

VERIFYING QUALITY CONTROL EVALUATION PARAMETERS FOLLOWING A REAGENT LOT CHANGE, 122

VERIFYING METHOD PERFORMANCE FOLLOWING USE OF A NEW LOT OF CALIBRATOR, 123

USING PATIENT DATA IN QUALITY CONTROL PROCEDURES, 123
Delta Check with a Previous Result for a Patient, 123
Verify Consistency of Results between More than One Instrument or Method, 124
Using Patient Data for Statistical Quality Control, 124

PROFICIENCY TESTING, 125
Noncommutability of Proficiency Testing Materials and Peer Group Grading, 125
Reporting Proficiency Testing Results When One Method Is Adjusted to Agree with Another Method, 126
Interpretation of Proficiency Testing Results, 126
Accuracy-Based Proficiency Testing Programs, 127

QUALITY MANAGEMENT, 129

SELECTED REFERENCES, 129

KEY POINTS

- Quality control samples are assayed on a regular schedule to verify that a laboratory procedure is performing correctly.
- Interpretation of quality control results is based on acceptance criteria that will identify bias, trend in bias, or imprecision that exceeds expected method performance attributes.
- In the event of an unacceptable quality control result, corrective action is taken to fix the method problem, and all patient results from the time of the previous acceptable quality control result are repeated.
- Because of commutability limitations, quality control samples should not be used to verify that two methods, or two different lots of reagents, produce the same results for patient samples.
- Proficiency testing provides external evaluation that a laboratory is using a method correctly and in conformance to the manufacturer's specifications.

The purpose of a clinical laboratory test is to evaluate the pathophysiologic condition of an individual patient to assist with diagnosis, to guide or monitor therapy, or to assess risk for a disease or for progression of a disease. To have value for clinical decision making, an individual laboratory test result must have total error small enough to reflect the biological condition being evaluated. The total error of a measured result is influenced by the following:

- Preanalytic variability in sample collection, transportation, processing, and storage
- Analytic variability in test performance
- Interfering substances such as drugs or metabolic components

Quality control (QC, also called internal quality control or statistical process control) is a process to periodically examine a measurement procedure to verify that it is performing according to preestablished specifications. This chapter addresses QC of an analytic measurement procedure using QC sample materials intended to simulate patient samples. Such QC sample materials are called surrogate samples. The QC samples are measured periodically in the same manner as clinical samples, and their results are examined to determine that the measurement procedure meets performance requirements appropriate for patient care. Techniques for using results from patient samples in the QC program are also included. This chapter is organized as follows:

- Analytical bias and imprecision
- Calibration considerations in quality control
- Overview of quality control procedures
- Implementing quality control procedures
- Reagent and calibrator lot changes
- Using patient data in quality control procedures
- Proficiency testing
- Quality management

ANALYTIC BIAS AND IMPRECISION

Figures 10-1 and 10-2 illustrate the meaning of bias and imprecision for a measurement. In Figure 10-1, the horizontal axis represents the numeric value for an individual result, and the vertical axis represents the number of repeated measurements with the same value made on aliquots of a QC material. The red line shows the dispersion of results for repeated measurements of aliquots of the same QC material, which is the random imprecision of the measurement. Assuming that the dispersion follows a Gaussian (normal) distribution, it can be described by the standard deviation (SD). The SD is a measure of expected imprecision in a measurement procedure when it is performing correctly. Note that results near the mean (average value) occur more frequently than results farther away from the mean. An interval of ±1 SD includes 68% of the measured values, and an interval of ±2 SD includes 95% of the values. A result that is more than 2 SD from the mean is expected to occur 5% of the time (100% – 95%) in a positive or a negative direction from the mean value. Correct calibration of a method eliminates systematic bias (within uncertainty limits), so

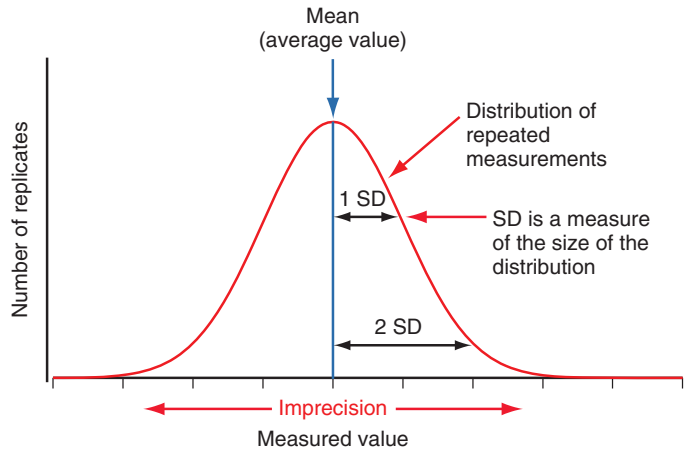


Figure 10-1 **Illustration of results distribution showing the mean value and expected imprecision for repeated measurements of a quality control sample.** *SD,* Standard deviation.

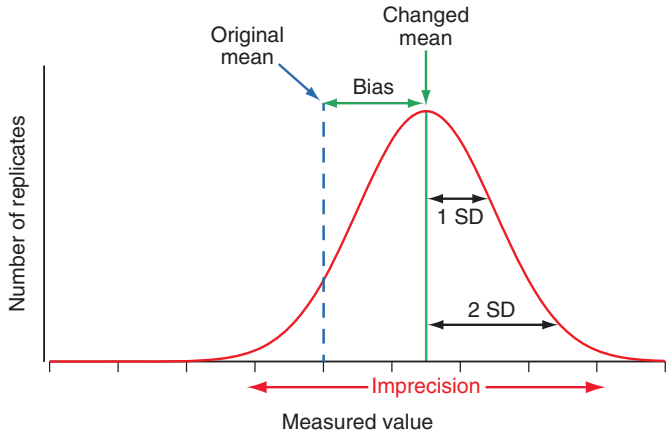


Figure 10-2 **Illustration of systematic bias when a change in calibration has occurred.** *SD,* Standard deviation.

the mean of repeated measurements of a QC sample becomes the expected value for that QC sample when the method is performing within specifications.

Figure 10-2 illustrates that if the calibration changes for any reason, a systematic bias is introduced into the results. The systematic bias is the difference between the observed mean and the expected value for a QC material. Note that the imprecision of an incorrectly calibrated method is the same as when correctly calibrated. All methods have an inherent imprecision. The primary purpose of measuring QC samples is to statistically evaluate the measurement process to verify that the method continues to perform within the specifications consistent with acceptable systematic bias and imprecision or to identify that a change in performance occurred that needs to be corrected. QC result acceptance criteria, discussed in a later section, are based on the probability for an individual QC result to be different from the variability in results expected when the method is performing correctly.

The term *accuracy* is used for an individual result and is the combination of systematic bias and imprecision that occurred for that specific measurement. An individual QC sample result can evaluate the combined errors caused by systematic bias in calibration and imprecision of the measurement procedure. The result for an individual patient sample can also be influenced by interfering substances that may be present in that sample. Total error for a patient sample measurement is the sum of systematic bias, imprecision, and sample specific bias caused by any interfering substances that may be present. Statistical QC does not evaluate possible interfering substances that may affect results from patient samples. However, the imprecision observed in QC results provides a measure of the variability expected for individual patient results caused by the inherent imprecision of the method.

The term *trueness* is used to refer to an average systematic bias that may be present in a given method. Trueness is an attribute of a method

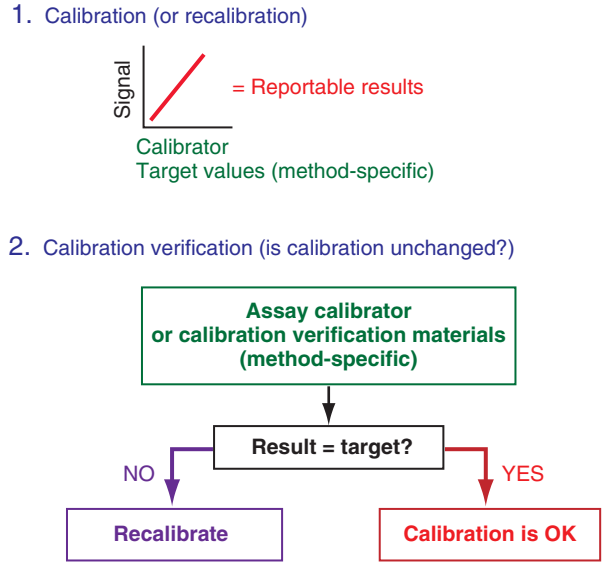


Figure 10-3 Calibration (1), and calibration verification (2) using method-specific calibrators (or other method-specific calibration verification materials).

that reflects how correctly the calibration of that method is traceable to a reference system and is discussed further in the next section.

CALIBRATION CONSIDERATIONS IN QUALITY CONTROL

Calibration of the analytic measurement procedure is a key component in achieving quality results. Part 1 of Figure 10-3 shows calibration of a method, which establishes the relationship between the signal measured and the quantitative value of analyte in the calibrator materials. This relationship is used to convert the measurement signal from a patient sample into a reportable concentration for the analyte. Specific techniques for calibration are unique to individual methods and will not be covered here. However, some general principles for implementing calibration procedures can contribute to the stability and clinical reliability of laboratory results.

CALIBRATION AND VERIFICATION OF CALIBRATION

Method calibration is most often performed by the laboratory using calibrator materials provided by the method or instrument manufacturer. In some cases (e.g., point-of-care devices), methods are calibrated during the manufacturing process, and the laboratory performs a verification of that calibration. In either situation, traceability of result accuracy to the highest-order reference system is provided by the method manufacturer. The method manufacturer's calibrator material(s) and assigned target value(s) are designed to produce accurate results with clinical patient samples assayed using that particular manufacturer's routine method. One manufacturer's product calibrator is not intended for use with other methods, and laboratories should not use calibrator materials intended for one method with any other method. Use of a calibrator with a method for which it was not specifically intended can produce miscalibration and erroneous patient results (see next section).

In principle, a measurement procedure should be calibrated only when evidence indicates that the current calibration is no longer valid. A recalibration event may introduce a small change in the relationship between analytic system response and sample concentration that contributes to overall long-term variability in method performance. Evidence that a recalibration is needed could come from QC sample results that demonstrate a shift or trend in bias over a time period. However, QC results have random variability that may make identification of a trend in bias difficult to detect. Consequently, it is common practice to recalibrate methods on a time schedule that is established based on experience with the sources of drift that are important for a given technology. In vitro device (IVD) manufacturers frequently specify calibration intervals.

The U.S. Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act (CLIA) regulations, section 493.1255, require calibration or calibration verification at least every 6 months, or more frequently if recommended by the method manufacturer (Department of Health and Human Services, 2003). When no change in method performance parameters has occurred, it is acceptable to verify that the current calibration has not changed (calibration verification), rather than perform a recalibration.

Part 2 in Figure 10-3 shows that a method's current calibration can be verified not to have changed rather than performing a recalibration. One common procedure to verify calibration is to assay the method calibrator materials as "unknowns." Recovery of target values for the calibrators indicates that the measurement system calibration has not changed (i.e., the current calibration is verified to be correct), and there is no reason to perform a recalibration to reestablish the same relationship between measurement signal and calibrator concentration that is already in use. The laboratory must establish criteria for agreement with the calibrator target value for calibration verification. Conservative criteria for agreement, such as ±1 SD from the target value, should be considered to avoid misinterpretation of calibration status.

CALIBRATION TRACEABILITY TO A REFERENCE SYSTEM AND COMMUTABILITY CONSIDERATIONS

Whenever possible, calibration of routine methods should be traceable to a higher-order reference measurement procedure or international reference material (ISO, 2003; Vesper & Thienpont, 2009; Miller et al, 2014). For commercially available methods cleared by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), the IVD manufacturer provides product calibrators that provide calibration traceable to the applicable reference system for an analyte (or measurand when fully specified to include sample type and molecular substance measured).

It is important to recognize that IVD manufacturer-provided calibrators typically have matrix characteristics and target values that are intended only for use with that specific method and cannot be used with any other manufacturer's methods. An IVD manufacturer can assign a target value to a method-specific calibrator that corrects for any matrix-related bias that may be present so results for clinical samples are correctly traceable to the reference system for an analyte. However, if such a method-specific calibrator is used with a different method, it will cause miscalibration, because it does not compensate for a different matrix-related bias with that different method (i.e., the calibrator is not commutable with clinical samples when used with a different method; see later).

A clinical laboratory may wish to verify that a method's calibration conforms to a method manufacturer's claim for traceability to the reference system used for a given analyte. Some method manufacturers provide calibration verification materials specifically intended for this purpose. Such materials may be provided as method-specific QC materials. As for method-specific calibrators, such method manufacturer–provided QC materials typically have matrix characteristics and target values that are intended only for use with the specific methods claimed in the instructions for use and cannot be used with any other manufacturers' methods. Such method-specific calibration verification materials may have target values that are specific for stated reagent lots or may have values certified by the manufacturer to be suitable for all reagent lots.

National and international reference materials are available for some analytes. In most cases, these reference materials are intended for use with higher-order reference measurement procedures and may not be suitable for use with routine clinical laboratory methods. Laboratories should not use national or international reference materials to calibrate a routine method (or to verify calibration of a routine method) unless the reference material's commutability with patient samples has been verified for the specific routine method used by a laboratory. A commutable reference material has a numeric relationship between two or more methods that closely agrees with the relationship observed for a panel of clinical patient samples (CLSI, 2010; Miller & Myers, 2013; Miller et al, 2014). Consequently, a commutable reference material (or calibrator) reacts in a measurement procedure to give a numeric result that would be in close agreement to that observed for a patient sample with the same amount of analyte. Differences in matrix-related bias between a reference material (or calibrator) and clinical patient samples cause a noncommutable relationship between the reference material (or calibrator) and the patient samples. Note that noncommutability is an important limitation of QC and PT materials discussed in later sections.

A reference material's certificate of analysis should be reviewed for commutability documentation. If a reference material is commutable with patient samples for a given method, it can be used for calibration or verification of calibration traceability to the reference system. Use of a noncommutable reference material for calibration will cause the routine method to be miscalibrated and produce erroneous patient results (Franzini & Ceriotti, 1998; Vesper et al, 2007; Miller & Myers, 2013; Miller et al, 2014). Similarly, use of a noncommutable reference material for calibration verification will give incorrect information regarding the calibration status of a method. Many higher-order reference materials have not been evaluated for commutability with patient samples measured using clinical laboratory methods. If a reference material's commutability status is unknown, it must be assumed not to be commutable with patient samples.

Third-party QC materials (i.e., those provided by a manufacturer other than the routine method's manufacturer) are not suitable to verify calibration traceability. These materials are not validated for commutability with clinical samples for different routine methods, and they do not have target values that are traceable to higher-order reference measurement procedures. Such QC materials are designed to be used as QC samples for statistical process control, with target values and SD values assigned as described later in the Implementing Quality Control Procedures section. When third-party QC materials are used in an interlaboratory method comparison program with method-specific peer group mean values, these values can be used to confirm that a laboratory is using a specific method in conformance with other users of the same method (see Proficiency Testing section, later).

OVERVIEW OF QUALITY CONTROL PROCEDURES

Statistical QC is a component of a quality management system as shown in Figure 10-4. Statistical QC evaluates a measurement procedure by periodically assaying a QC sample for which the expected result is known in advance. If the QC result is within acceptable limits of the known value, the measurement procedure is verified to be stable, which means it is performing as expected, and results for patient samples can be reported with good probability that they are suitable for clinical use. If a QC result is not within acceptable limits, the measurement procedure is not performing correctly, results for patient samples are not reported, and corrective action is necessary. Following corrective action, the patient sample measurements are repeated along with QC samples. Good laboratory practice requires verification that a method is performing correctly at the time patient results are measured.

Statistical QC is part of the process management component of the quality system that integrates good laboratory practices to ensure correct patient results. Written standard operating procedures (SOPs) are required for all aspects of laboratory operation, including statistical quality control. The SOP for QC should include all aspects of the program, including the selection of QC materials, how to determine statistical parameters to describe method performance, criteria for acceptability of QC results, how frequently to measure the QC materials, corrective action when problems are identified, and documentation and review processes. The SOP should include who is authorized to establish acceptable control limits and interpretive rules for release of results; who should review performance parameters, including statistical quality control results; and who can authorize exceptions to or modify an established QC policy or procedure.

Figure 10-5 shows a Levey-Jennings (Levey, 1950), also called Shewhart (Shewhart, 1931), plot, which is the most common presentation for evaluating QC results. This format shows each QC result sequentially over time and allows a quick visual assessment of method performance, including trend detection. Assuming the method is performing in a stable condition consistent with its specifications, the mean value represents the target (or expected) value for the result, and the SD lines represent the expected imprecision for the method. Assuming a Gaussian (normal) distribution of imprecision, the results are distributed uniformly around the mean, with results observed more frequently closer to the mean than near the extremes of the distribution. Note that a few results are greater than 2 SD, and two results slightly exceed 3 SD, which is expected on the basis of a Gaussian distribution of imprecision. For a large number of repeated measurements, the number of results expected within the SD intervals is as follows:

- ±1 SD = 68.3% of observations
- ±2 SD = 95.4% of observations
- ±3 SD = 99.7% of observations

Interpretation of an individual QC result is based on its probability to be part of the expected distribution of results for the method when the method is performing correctly. A later section provides details regarding

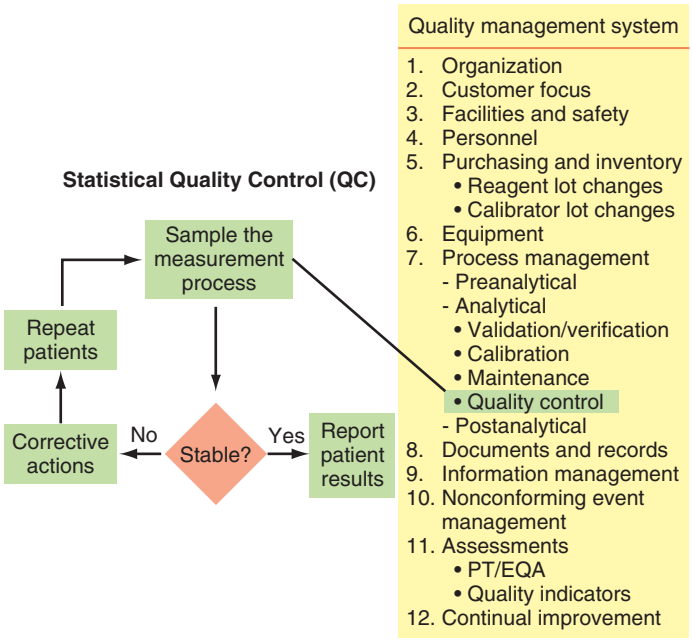


Figure 10-4 Overview of statistical quality control and its integration into a quality management system. *EQA,* External quality assessment; *PT,* proficiency testing.

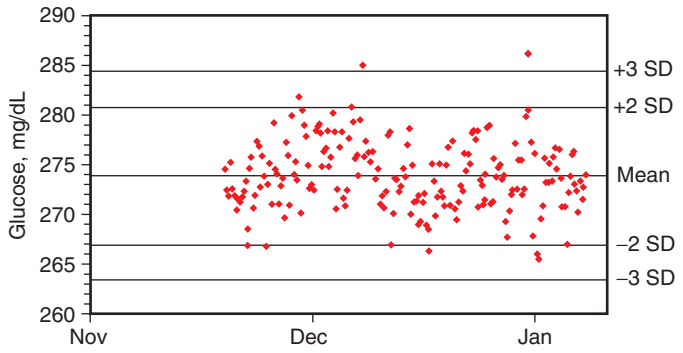


Figure 10-5 Levey-Jennings plot of quality control (QC) results (N = 199) for a single lot of QC material used for a 49-day period. *SD,* Standard deviation.

interpretive rules for evaluation of QC results. Note that evaluation of individual QC results may be performed by computer algorithms. However, the underlying logic of such algorithms is illustrated by the Levey-Jennings chart example.

IMPLEMENTING QUALITY CONTROL PROCEDURES

SELECTION OF QUALITY CONTROL MATERIALS

Generally, two different concentrations are necessary for adequate statistical QC. For quantitative methods, QC materials should be selected to provide analyte concentrations that monitor the analytic measurement range of the method. In practice, laboratories are frequently limited by concentrations available in commercial QC products. When possible, it is important to confirm that method performance is stable near the limits of its analytic measurement range, because defects may affect these concentrations before others. Many quantitative measurement procedures have a linear response over the analytic measurement range, and it is reasonable to assume that their performance over the range is acceptable if the results near the assay limits are acceptable. In the case of non–linear method response, it may be necessary to use additional controls at intermediate concentrations. Critical concentrations for clinical decisions (e.g., glucose, therapeutic drugs, thyroid-stimulating hormone, prostate-specific antigen, troponin) may also warrant QC monitoring. In the case of analytes that have poor precision at low concentrations, such as troponin or bilirubin, the concentration should be chosen to provide adequate SD for practical evaluation. For procedures with extraction or other pretreatment, controls must be used in the extraction or pretreatment step.

This chapter is primarily focused on QC procedures for quantitative methods. However, the principles can be adapted to most qualitative procedures with allowances for the lack of numeric results. For tests based on qualitative interpretation of quantitative measurements (e.g., drugs of abuse, human chorionic gonadotropin), the same principles of QC assessment can be applied to the numeric results, and the negative and positive controls should be selected to have concentrations relatively near the threshold to adequately control for discrimination between negative and positive. For qualitative procedures with graded responses (e.g., dipstick urinalysis), negative, positive, and graded response controls are required. For qualitative tests based on other properties (e.g., electrophoretic procedures, stain adequacy, immunofluorescence, organism identification), it is necessary to ensure that the QC procedure will appropriately discriminate normal from pathologic conditions.

The QC materials selected must be manufactured to provide a stable product that can be used for an extended time period, preferably 1 or more years for stable analytes. Use of a single lot for an extended period allows reliable interpretive criteria to be established that will permit efficient identification of an assay problem, avoid false alerts due to poorly defined expected ranges for the QC results, and minimize limitations in interpreting values following reagent and calibrator lot changes.

Limitations of Quality Control Materials

Limitations are inherent in currently available QC materials. One limitation is that the QC material is frequently noncommutable with clinical patient samples. A commutable QC material (or other reference material such as a method calibrator or proficiency testing [PT] material) is one that reacts in a measurement system to give a result that would closely agree with that expected for an authentic patient sample with the same amount of analyte. QC and PT materials are typically noncommutable with clinical patient samples because the serum or other biological fluid matrix is usually altered from that of a patient sample (Franzini & Ceriotti, 1998; Miller, 2003; Thienpont et al, 2003; Miller et al, 2005; Miller et al, 2008; Miller et al, 2011a). The matrix alteration is due to processing of the biological fluid during product manufacturing, use of partially purified human and nonhuman analyte additives to achieve desired concentrations, and various stabilization processes that alter proteins, cells, and other components. The impact of the matrix alteration on the recovery of an analyte in an assay system is not predictable and is frequently different for different lots of QC material, for different lots of reagent within a given analytical method, and for different analytical methods. Because of the noncommutability limitation, special procedures are required (discussed in later sections) when changing lots of reagent or comparing QC results among two or more methods.

A second limitation of QC materials is deterioration of the analyte during storage. Analyte stability during unopened storage is generally excellent, but slow deterioration eventually limits the shelf life of a product and can introduce a gradual drift into monitoring data. Analyte stability after reconstitution, thawing, or vial opening can be an important source of variability in QC results and can vary substantially among analytes in the same vial. User variables to be controlled are the time spent at room temperature and the time spent uncapped with the potential for evaporation. An expiration time after opening is provided by the product manufacturer but may need to be established by a laboratory for each QC material under the conditions of use in that laboratory and may be different for different analytes in the same QC product. For QC materials reconstituted by adding a diluent, vial-to-vial variability can be minimized by standardizing the pipetting procedure (e.g., using the same pipet or filling device [preferably an automated device] and having the same person prepare the controls) whenever practical.

Another limitation is that analyte concentrations in multiconstituent control materials may not be at levels optimal for all assays. This limitation may be caused by solubility considerations or potential interactions between different constituents, particularly at higher concentrations. It may be necessary to use supplementary QC materials to adequately monitor the analytic measurement range.

FREQUENCY TO ASSAY QUALITY CONTROL SAMPLES

The frequency to assay QC samples is a function of several parameters:

- Analytic stability of the measurement procedure

- Risk of harm to a patient from clinical action being taken before a significant error is detected
- Number of patient results produced in a period of time when an error condition existed but was not yet detected
- Events such as recalibration or maintenance that may alter the current performance condition of the measurement system
- Training and competency of the test operator, particularly for manual or semiautomated methods
- Risk of failure of the measuring device

Analytic Stability of the Measurement Procedure

The stability of the measurement procedure is a fundamental determinant of how frequently a QC sample needs to be assayed. The more stable the system, the less frequently a statistical QC evaluation needs to be performed. The minimum requirement, consistent with CLIA regulations, section 493.1256 (Department of Health and Human Services, 2003), is to assay controls at least once per 24 hours, or more frequently if specified by the method manufacturer, or if the laboratory determines that more frequent QC assays are necessary for the performance characteristics of a method. Some types of tests have more stringent requirements. For example, CLIA section 493.1267 requires that at least one control be assayed every 8 hours (including both high and low concentrations over a period of 24 hours) for blood gas measurements; in addition, a control must be run with each patient sample unless the instrument automatically calibrates at least every 30 minutes.

Risk of Harm to a Patient and Number of Patients Who May Be at Risk

The risk of clinical action being taken before a significant measurement error is detected is an important consideration for more frequent QC sampling than one based strictly on method stability characteristics or on regulatory minimum requirements. More frequent QC sampling is appropriate to avoid the situation of discovering a methodologic problem many hours after a physician has performed a clinical intervention based on an erroneous result. For example, QC sampling performed on a 24-hour cycle might be performed at 9 AM. If QC results indicate a method problem, the erroneous condition could have started at any time during the previous 24 hours. If the problem had occurred at 3 PM the previous day, potentially erroneous results would have been reported for 18 hours, likely putting a large number of patients at risk of an inappropriate care decision. Parvin (2008) reported an assessment of the frequency of QC testing and the number of potentially incorrect patient results that could be reported before errors of different magnitudes were detected.

The medical risk of harm to a patient from erroneous results must be considered and the frequency of QC testing established to minimize risk. From a practical perspective, the cost of a medical error, or simply the cost of repeating questionable patient samples since the last acceptable QC results, could be more expensive than a more frequent QC sampling schedule that would detect an error condition in a more timely manner.

CLSI has published a guideline EP23 addressing risk-based QC procedures (CLSI, 2011a). The document provides guidance to clinical laboratories on how to develop a QC plan based on evaluation of risk of harm to a patient and assessment of the effectiveness of risk mitigation procedures using information from the manufacturer and from other sources, combined with the clinical requirements of the local health care setting and conditions in the laboratory.

In general terms, the laboratory director is responsible for ensuring that a result has a high probability to be correct at the time it is reported for clinical use. To make this judgment, the laboratory director needs to understand the risks that can cause a measurement technology to perform incorrectly, needs to evaluate the effectiveness of built-in control processes to mitigate those risks, and needs to ensure that adequate control procedures are in place to confirm that a result is correct at the time it is reported. A combination of built-in and external monitoring procedures using surrogate QC samples can be utilized to ensure that all risks have been appropriately mitigated and/or monitored at a frequency commensurate with the risk of malfunction and the risk of harm to a patient if an incorrect result was reported.

Individualized Quality Control Plan

The option for Equivalent Quality Control (EQC) was introduced in the CLIA quality control requirements Survey Procedures and Interpretive Guidelines for Laboratories and Laboratory Services (Appendix C, 2003). Equivalent Quality Control was intended to justify less frequent QC for measurement systems that utilized built-in control procedures to monitor various aspects of the measurement process. Unfortunately, there was no scientific evidence to support the validity of the arbitrarily defined EQC options, and the EQC option will not be allowed after January 1, 2016. The Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services introduced a new option called an Individualized Quality Control Plan (IQCP) in 2014 (Department of Health and Human Services, 2013). The IQCP is an alternate QC option allowed by the CLIA 88 quality control policy in 42CFR493.1250. After January 1, 2016, the QC requirements as written in the 2003 CLIA quality control requirements (Department of Health and Human Services, 2003) or the IQCP option will be allowed in U.S. laboratories. Note that no change in QC practices is required, and it is voluntary if a laboratory implements an IQCP.

The IQCP option was derived from the CLSI guideline EP23 that introduced a risk-based process for developing a quality control plan in 2011 (CLSI, 2011a). The IQCP option is applicable to any measurement procedure but is primarily intended for measurement systems that have been designed with sophisticated built-in control procedures to mitigate the risk that an erroneous result may be produced. Built-in control procedures may include QC materials integrated with reagent packaging and sensors that monitor electronic components and the measurement process with algorithms that prevent a result from being produced if any monitored conditions fail to meet criteria. Some of these measurement systems may be sufficiently stable and self-monitored to justify reduced frequency of traditional surrogate QC sample testing. The approach to risk assessment is qualitative in the CMS IQCP and in the CLSI EP23 guideline. This chapter includes risk assessment in developing a QC plan, particularly for the frequency to perform QC and the criteria to accept a QC value to confirm acceptable method performance. However, this chapter does not specifically address all components of the IQCP or EP23 recommendations.

Event-Based Quality Control Sample Assay

It is necessary to assay QC samples before scheduled events that may alter the current performance condition such as recalibration or maintenance. Each of these operations is intended to restore the measurement conditions to optimal specifications and to correct for any calibration drift or component deterioration that may have occurred. It is necessary to assay QC samples before these operations to verify that no significant errors in results have occurred since the last time QC samples were assayed and before recalibration or maintenance alters the condition of the measurement system. It is also necessary to assay QC samples after these events to verify correct method performance before restarting to assay patient samples.

ESTABLISHING QUALITY CONTROL TARGET VALUE AND STANDARD DEVIATION THAT REPRESENT A STABLE MEASUREMENT OPERATING CONDITION

QC target values and acceptable performance limits are established to optimize the probability to detect a measurement defect that is large enough to have an impact on clinical care, while minimizing the frequency of "false alerts" due to statistical limitations of the criteria used to evaluate QC results. The measurement system must be correctly calibrated and operating within acceptable performance specifications before the statistical parameters to establish QC interpretive rules can be established. Some sources of measurement variability that are expected to occur during typical operation of a measurement procedure are listed in Table 10-1. Measurement variability includes sources with short time interval frequencies, many of which can be described by Gaussian error distributions, and intermittent and longer time interval sources, which can cause cyclic fluctuations over several days or weeks, gradual drift over weeks or months, and more abrupt small shifts in results. The SD used in QC interpretive rules needs to adequately account for all sources of variability in results that are consistent with the measurement system performing to specifications.

A QC material must have a reliable target value that represents the condition when systematic bias is as small as possible. This condition requires the method to be calibrated correctly and adequate replicate measurements to be obtained over a sufficient time interval to include the typical sources of measurement variability that will ensure that a representative mean value is calculated from the data. For practical reasons, this objective is rarely met for the longer-term variability components in Table 10-1; consequently, the target value has some uncertainty and may need

TABLE 10-1
Common Sources of Measurement Variability

Source	Time Interval for Fluctuation	Likely Statistical Distribution
Pipette volume	Short	Gaussian
Pipette seal deterioration	Long	Drift
Instrument temperature control	Short or long	Gaussian or other
Electronic noise in the measuring system	Short	Gaussian
Calibration cycles	Short to long	Gaussian or periodic shift
Reagent deterioration in storage	Long	Drift
Reagent deterioration after opening	Intermediate	Cyclic, periodic drift/shift
Calibrator deterioration in storage	Long	Drift
Calibrator deterioration after opening	Intermediate	Cyclic, periodic drift/shift
Control material deterioration in storage	Long	Drift
Control material deterioration after opening	Intermediate	Cyclic, periodic drift/shift
Environmental temperature and humidity	Variable	Variable
Reagent lot changes	Long	Periodic shift
Calibrator lot changes	Long	Periodic shift
Instrument maintenance	Variable	Cyclic or periodic shift
Deterioration of instrument components	Variable	Drift, cyclic or periodic shift

to be refined if measurement conditions fluctuate but remain within performance specifications. The generally accepted minimum protocol for target value assignment is to use the mean value from assaying a QC material a minimum of 10 times, on 10 different days (CLSI, 2015a). If a 10-day protocol is not possible—for example, if an emergency replacement of a lot of QC material is necessary—a provisional target value can be established with fewer data but should be updated when additional replicate results are available. When applicable, more than one calibration should be represented in the 10-day period to include this source of variability in the target value. If a QC material will be used for longer than 1 day, a single vial should be stored correctly and assayed on as many days as the material is planned to be used to allow any variability caused by deterioration of the analyte to be averaged into the target value.

Some QC materials are provided by the method manufacturer with preassigned target values and ranges intended to confirm that the method meets the manufacturer's specifications. Such assigned values may be used initially by the laboratory. It is recommended that both the target value and the SD should be reevaluated and adjusted by the laboratory after adequate replicate results have been obtained because the QC interpretive rules used in a single laboratory should reflect performance for the method in that laboratory. The acceptability limits (product insert ranges) suggested by a manufacturer typically are based on data collected from several laboratories. These acceptability limits will inevitably account for sources of variability, such as between instruments, between reagent lots, and between calibrator lots, that will be greater than the variability expected for a method used in an individual laboratory. Use of product insert ranges that are too large will reduce a laboratory's ability to detect an erroneous measurement condition.

QC materials with assigned target values are also available from third-party manufacturers (i.e., manufacturers not affiliated with the method manufacturer). Caution should be used with target values assigned by third-party QC material providers because the target values may have been assigned using reagent and calibrator lots that are no longer available (see the section on Verifying Quality Control Evaluation Parameters Following a Reagent Lot Change). On the other hand, reliable peer group target values may be obtained from an interlaboratory comparison program with large numbers of laboratories using the same method.

In addition to a target value, an SD is estimated for a QC material that represents the typical imprecision of the method when it is performing according to its design specifications. Considering the sources of measurement variability in Table 10-1, a minimum of 20 observations is recommended for the initial SD estimate (CLSI, 2015a). It is desirable to have as many of the events that contribute to measurement variability, in particular calibration and maintenance, included during the time interval over which the SD is estimated. The initial estimate of SD will likely not include contributions from all expected sources of variability and will need to be updated when additional data are available. CLSI document EP05 provides guidance on establishing the SD for a measurement procedure but does not include longer term components of variability (CLSI, 2014b).

It is recommended to determine the SD for stable measurement performance from the cumulative SD over a 6- to 12-month period for a single lot of QC material. This approach is likely to include most expected sources of variation. (See an important limitation when determining a cumulative SD, described later in the section Verifying Quality Control Evaluation Parameters Following a Reagent Lot Change). Figure 10-6 illustrates (with actual data for a glucose method) the fluctuation in SD that occurs when calculated for monthly intervals compared with the relatively stable value observed for the cumulative SD after a period of 6 months. Note that the cumulative SD is not the average of the monthly values but is the SD determined from all individual results obtained over a time interval since the lot of QC material was first used. Different sources of long-term variability occur at different times during the use of a method. The monthly SD does not adequately reflect the longer-term components of variability. Consequently, the cumulative SD will typically be larger than the monthly values and will better represent the actual variability of the method. If the imprecision expected during normal stable operation is underestimated, the acceptable range for QC results will be too small, and the false alert rate will be unacceptably high. If imprecision for the stable condition is overestimated, the acceptable range will be too large, and a significant measurement error might go undetected.

SD is the conventional way to express method variability and assumes the QC data can be described by a Gaussian (normal) distribution even though non-Gaussian components of variability influence the QC results. The statistical QC packages in instrument and laboratory computer systems are designed with the assumption that the SD for a Gaussian distribution is used for the QC rules criteria. Because there are non-Gaussian components to measurement variability over time, it is very important that they be represented in the data used to estimate an SD. We use an estimate of SD to make conclusions regarding the acceptability of an individual QC value so the SD must be as realistic as possible to represent the variability expected for a method when its performance meets its specifications.

It is important to include all valid QC results in the calculation of SD to ensure that the SD correctly represents expected method variability. A valid QC result is one that was, or would have been in the case of preliminary value assignment, used to verify acceptable assay performance and reporting of patient results. Only QC results that were, or would have been, responsible for not releasing patient results should be excluded from summary calculations. If inappropriate editing of QC results occurs, the method SD may be inappropriately small, which will produce inappropriately small evaluation limits and an increase in false QC alerts, with concomitant reduction in the effectiveness of statistical QC evaluation.

When a method has been established in a laboratory, and a new lot of QC material is being introduced, the target value for the new lot of QC material is used along with the well-established SD from the previous lot. This practice is appropriate because in most cases measurement imprecision is a property of the method and equipment used and is unlikely to change with a different lot of QC material. If target values for the old and new lots are substantially different, a different SD may occur, and adjustment to the SD may be necessary as additional experience with the new lot is accumulated.

If a new method is introduced for which no historical performance information is available, the SD for stable performance must be established using data available from the method validation and target value assignment of the QC materials. In this case, the initial SD is likely to be too small, and evaluation criteria will need to be monitored closely and adjustments made as additional experience allows measurement imprecision from all sources to be reflected in the cumulative SD.

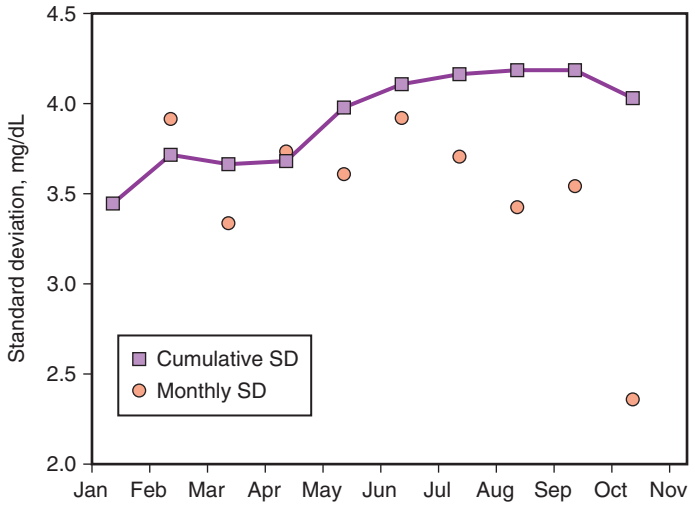


Figure 10-6 Cumulative standard deviation (SD) versus single monthly values calculated from the data in Figure 10-9.

PERFORMANCE OF A MEASUREMENT PROCEDURE FOR ITS INTENDED MEDICAL USE

It is important to understand how a test's performance impacts clinical decision making in order to determine the optimal QC frequency and criteria used to assess acceptability. The sigma metric is commonly used to assess how well a method performs relative to the medical requirement. Sigma is the Greek letter used to denote standard deviation. The sigma scale compares the variability in a measurement process in standard deviations to the variability that is acceptable because it will not cause an error in diagnosis or treatment of a patient.

For laboratory measurements, the sigma metric is calculated as:

$$(TE_a - |bias|)/SD$$

where TE_a is the total error allowed based on medical interpretation requirements, and the absolute value of bias and SD refer to performance characteristics of the laboratory method. The SD is estimated from the QC data as previously described. It is critically important that the SD estimate uses QC data that represent all or most components of variability that occur over an extended time period. It is difficult for a laboratory to estimate true bias because it requires comparison with a reference method that is not usually a feasible approach. In practice, QC results are used to determine if a change in bias has occurred compared to the condition established by calibration of a method. Consequently, the bias is usually assumed to be zero for calculating sigma.

TE_a can be estimated in several ways. The preferred way to set the TE_a is from laboratory practice guidelines. For example, the National Cholesterol Education Program recommends that total cholesterol be measured with a TE_a of 9% or less (National Institutes of Health, 1990), and the National Kidney Disease Education Program recommends that creatinine be measured with a TE_a of less than approximately 0.10 mg/dL in the concentration range 1 to 1.5 mg/dL (Myers et al, 2006). When practice guidelines are not available, the recommended way to estimate the TE_a is to consult clinicians to determine the magnitude of change in a laboratory result that will prompt a patient care decision. Another approach is to base the TE_a on a fraction of the within and between individual biologic variations for an analyte (Fraser, 2001; Lund et al, 2014). Tables of optimal, desirable, and minimal TE_a based on biological variation are available (Perich et al, 2014). However, biological variation–based estimates of TE_a should be used with caution because the estimates of biological variation in many cases are based on minimal data, and the experimental designs of the estimates and the process to select the listed estimates have been challenged (Roraas et al, 2012; Aarsand et al, 2014). For example, reports of biological variation for AST, ALT, and GGT varied between 11% and 58%, 3% and 32%, and 4% and 14%, respectively, among different studies (Carobene et al, 2013). In addition, the biological variability has typically been derived from data for nondiseased individuals and may be different for pathological conditions.

Because sigma assumes a Gaussian or normal distribution for repeated measurements, the probability of a defect—that is, an erroneous laboratory result—can be predicted as shown in Table 10-2. The sigma metric represents the probability that a given number of erroneous results—which could cause risk of harm to a patient—are expected to occur when the test method is performing to its specifications. The phrase "six sigma" refers to a condition when the variability in the measurement process is sufficiently smaller than the medical requirement that erroneous results are very uncommon. A "four sigma" method would be less robust and have a higher probability that erroneous results could be produced but still at a fairly low frequency. A "two sigma" method would produce enough erroneous results even though it met its performance specifications that it would not be very reliable for patient care.

Figure 10-7 shows how the sigma metric describes the performance of a laboratory test. Part A shows the performance of a "six sigma" test that has the TE_a limits six SD away from the center point of the expected distribution of variability in measurements when the test procedure is performing to its analytic specifications. In the "six sigma" situation, some bias or increased imprecision will have little influence on the number of erroneous results produced, and less stringent QC will be appropriate because the risk of producing an erroneous result even with some loss of performance is very low. Part B shows the performance of a "three sigma" test that has the TE_a limits three SD away from the center point of the

TABLE 10-2
Probability of Acceptable or Erroneous Results Based on the Sigma Scale

Sigma Value	Percent of Results within Specification	Percent of Results with an Error (Defect)	Errors (Defects) Per Million Opportunities
1	68	32	317,311
2	95.5	4.5	45,500
3	99.7	0.3	2,700
4	99.994	0.006	63
5	99.99994	0.00006	0.6
6	99.9999998	0.0000002	0.002

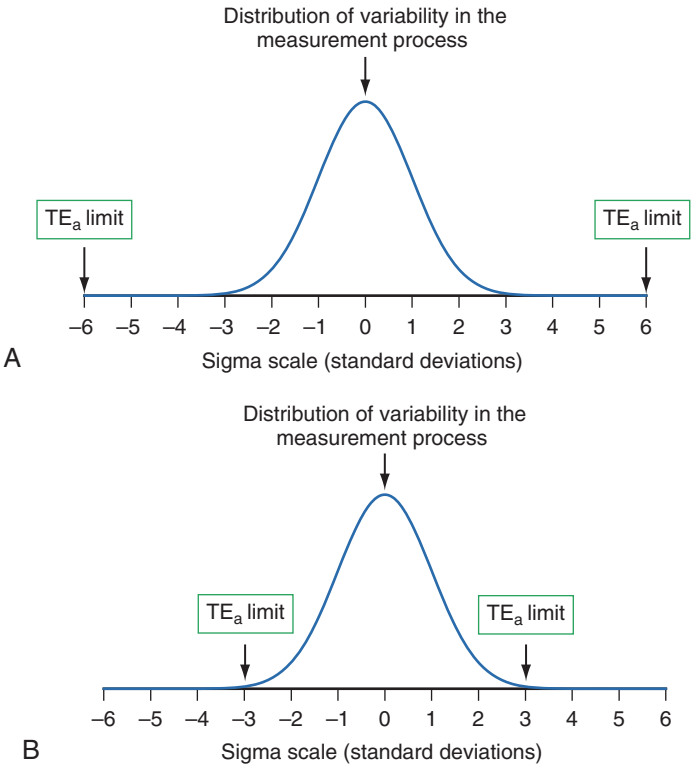


Figure 10-7 **Test performance relative to the sigma scale to describe how well performance meets medical requirements.** Part **A** shows a "six sigma" method, and part **B** shows a "three sigma" method. Note that the measurement SD is the same in both cases, but the fraction of the TEa consumed by the SD is different. *TE_a*, Allowable total error.

TABLE 10-3
Abbreviation Nomenclature for Quality Control Evaluation Rules

Rule	Meaning	Detects
1_{2S}	One observation exceeds 2 SD from the target value. The 1_{2S} rule is not recommended because it has an excessive false alert rate.	Not recommended except for "low sigma" methods
1_{3S}	One observation exceeds 3 SD from the target value.	Imprecision or systematic bias
2_{2S} ($2_{2.5S}$)	Two sequential observations, or observations for two QC samples in the same run, exceed 2 SD (or 2.5 SD) from the target value in the same direction.	Bias
R_{4S}	Range between observations for two QC samples in the same run, or for two sequential observations of the same QC sample, exceeds 4 SD.	Imprecision
10_x or 10_m	Ten sequential observations for the same QC sample are on the same side of the target value (x or mean). The 10_x rule is not recommended because it has an excessive false alert rate.	Not recommended
8_{1S} ($8_{1.5S}$)	Eight sequential observations for the same QC sample exceed 1 SD (or 1.5 SD) in the same direction from the target value.	Bias trend
CUSUM	Cumulative sum of SDI for a specified number of previous results.	Bias trend
EWMA	Exponentially weighted moving average with newer results having more influence (weight).	Bias trend

CUSUM, Cumulative sum; *EWMA*, exponentially weighted moving averages; *QC*, quality control; *SD*, standard deviation; *SDI*, standard deviation interval.

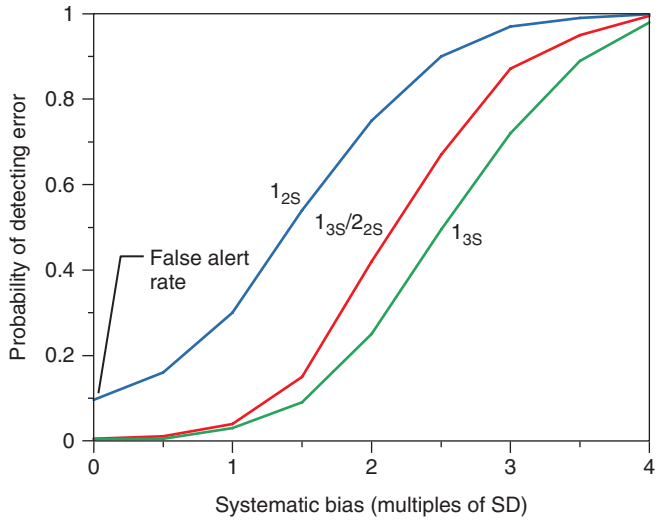


Figure 10-8 Power function graphs for the ability of different quality control interpretive rules to detect systematic error using two controls. Systematic error is expressed as number of standard deviations (SDs) from the target value. (Adapted from Westgard JO, Groth T: Power functions for statistical control rules, *Clin Chem* 25:863–9, 1979; used with permission.)

expected distribution of variability in measurements when the test procedure is performing to its analytic specifications. In the "three sigma" situation, a small amount of bias or increased imprecision will cause the number of erroneous results to increase substantially, and more stringent QC is needed to identify when such an error condition occurs. Note that no amount of QC will improve the performance of a marginal measurement procedure. However, more frequent QC and more stringent acceptance criteria will allow the laboratory to identify when small changes in performance occur so they can be corrected to minimize the risk of harm to a patient from erroneous results being acted on to make clinical care decisions.

ESTABLISHING RULES TO EVALUATE QUALITY CONTROL RESULTS

The acceptable range and rules for interpreting QC results are based on the probability of detecting a significant analytic error condition with an acceptably small false alert rate. The desired process control performance characteristics must be established for each analyte before the appropriate QC rules can be selected.

The conventional way to express QC interpretive rules is by using an abbreviation nomenclature popularized among clinical laboratories by Westgard and colleagues (1981) and summarized in Table 10-3. Note that fractional standard deviation intervals are permissible, as in the $2_{2.5S}$ example. Statistical procedures such as cumulative sum (CUSUM) or exponentially weighted moving averages (EWMA) are preferred to monitor for bias trends (Ryan, 1989). It is recommended to use one of these more advanced trend detection procedures if supported by an available computer system because they are more powerful than the 8_{1S}, or similar approaches based on sequential observations exceeding a specified bias from the target value. EWMA and CUSUM must be carefully implemented to avoid being too sensitive to small changes that may cause an excessive frequency of false alerts.

Power function graphs have been used to express the probability that a QC interpretive rule will detect an analytic error of a given magnitude (Westgard & Groth, 1979). Westgard's statistical model assumed Gaussian (normal) error distributions and, despite the fact that non-Gaussian error distributions exist in measurement systems, has provided useful guidance for selecting rules to interpret QC results. Other literature reports have addressed rule selection criteria using other statistical models and assumptions regarding distribution of errors (Linnet, 1989; Parvin, 1997; Parvin and Gronowski, 1997).

Figure 10-8 shows a power function graph that plots the probability to detect a measurement error (*y*-axis), which is the probability that a result will exceed a particular interpretive rule, versus a systematic bias of known magnitude in a result (*x*-axis) with a fixed random imprecision of 1 SD when there are two QC samples being measured along with the group of patient samples. The three lines in Figure 10-8 represent the probabilities of different interpretive rules to detect systematic biases of various magnitudes. For example, for the 1_{2S} rule, a result with a systematic bias of 1 SD (*x*-axis) has a 0.35 (35%) probability (*y*-axis) of violating the rule (i.e., of having a result more than 2 SD from the target value). Note that this figure shows only systematic bias as SD on the *x*-axis, and a result with 1 SD systematic bias will also have an imprecision component that may cause the 1_{2S} rule to be exceeded. Thus a 1_{2S} interpretive rule has a 35% probability to detect a systematic error that is 1 SD in magnitude. Similar graphs can be created for other interpretive rules for both systematic bias and imprecision error conditions.

Note in Figure 10-8 that none of these interpretive rules has a 100% probability to detect a systematic bias until the error becomes relatively large. The 1_{2S} rule has a good probability of detecting errors (e.g., almost 90% probability of detecting a 2.5 SD bias) but has a high false alert rate, as indicated by the *y*-intercept (because of imprecision, the probability of indicating an error condition for zero bias is approximately 10%). Because of this high false alert rate, it is generally not recommended to use a 1_{2S} rule unless the assay has marginal performance (i.e., is a "low sigma" method) and the laboratory desires to identify small biases that could cause inappropriate risk for a patient care decision. The 1_{3S} rule has a low false alert rate but a lower probability to detect an error (e.g., a 50% probability to detect a 2.5 SD bias). It is recommended to improve the efficiency of QC interpretive rules by combining two or more rules and applying them simultaneously as multirule criteria. For example, the $1_{3S}/2_{2S}$ multirule identifies an error condition if one control exceeds ±3 SD from the target value, or if two controls exceed ±2 SD in the same direction from the target value. The $1_{3S}/2_{2S}$ multirule has a low false alert rate similar to the 1_{3S} rule but improved probability to detect an error (e.g., a 65% probability to detect a 2.5 SD bias and a 90% probability to detect a 3.2 SD bias). In this multirule example, the 1_{3S} component is sensitive to imprecision or large systematic bias, while the 2_{2S} component is sensitive to systematic bias.

TABLE 10-4
Empirical Multirule for the Quality Control Data in Figure 10-9

Multirule Components	Type of Variability Detected
1_{3S}	Imprecision or bias
$2_{2.5S}$	Bias
R_{4S}	Imprecision
$8_{1.5S}$	Bias trend

A challenge in selecting interpretive rules for evaluating QC results is that the different sources of variation listed in Table 10-1 occur in most contemporary automated assay systems but at various frequencies that cause longer-term cyclic and step fluctuations in performance to occur at different times in the course of using an assay system. These types of variability are not adequately described by Gaussian models for rules selection. At certain periods of time, the short-term SD will be noticeably smaller than the long-term cumulative value (see Fig. 10-6). One must avoid concluding that the SD used for evaluation is too large because over time the cumulative value will be more consistent with method performance as periodic sources of variability are encountered.

Figure 10-9 shows how non-Gaussian error sources influenced results for a single lot of QC material used over a 10-month period for an automated glucose method. The glucose method stability and performance over the 10 months were considered acceptable for clinical use. Data for the first 49 days are the same as in Figure 10-5 and represent the initial experience with this lot of QC material. Examination of these data shows several fluctuations that cannot be described by a Gaussian statistical model. The first reagent lot change caused a step shift to higher values that was too small to initiate a change in target value (see later section on Verifying Quality Control Evaluation Parameters Following a Reagent Lot Change). The second reagent lot change had no effect on QC results. Between March and April, a transition to lower values occurred that did not correspond to any maintenance, reagent lot change, or calibration events. Throughout the 10-month period, intervals of several weeks' duration occurred when the imprecision was better or worse than at other time periods (also see Fig. 10-6 calculated from the same data).

In practice, empirical judgment is frequently used to establish acceptance criteria (rules) to evaluate QC results based on data acquired over a long enough time to adequately quantify the expected variability when a method is working correctly. It is recommended not to select QC rules based only on Gaussian models of imprecision because the rules will not correctly accommodate all the types of variability observed for many analytic systems.

Table 10-4 gives an example of an empirically developed multirule based on the data in Figure 10-9. This multirule had 0.6% false alerts when applied to the data in Figure 10-9, using the mean from the November to January (see Fig. 10-4) period as the target value and the SD for the 10-month period to represent overall imprecision. If a 2_{2S} rule was used instead of a $2_{2.5S}$ rule, the false alert rate would increase to 1.2%, but the rule would detect slightly smaller biases. An $8_{1.5S}$ rule was used to provide detection of bias trends because it had a 0% false alert rate (compared with 0.5% for an 8_{1S} rule) and was adequate to detect a developing trend before it became clinically important because the SD was small, 4.0 mg/dL, at a concentration of 274 mg/dL. If a 10% TE_a is considered acceptable for glucose at this concentration, then the sigma for this method is 6.8, suggesting that it has a very low error rate and these QC rules with a low false alert rate will be suitable to alert the laboratory to an error condition that might affect patient care decisions. At other clinical concentration ranges, or for other analytes, $a2_{2S}$, 8_{1S}, or $6_{1.5S}$ rule may be more appropriate. A 10_x rule was not used because it would have increased the false alert rate to 11%. A 10_x rule generally is not recommended because this condition does not infer a problem with clinical interpretation of patient results when the magnitude of the difference from the target value is small.

Whatever statistical approach is used, the balance between false alerts and the probability of detecting an error is improved when multiple rules are used in combination. When establishing rules to interpret QC results, it is important to remember that statistical process control can only verify at a point in time that a measurement system is producing results that conform to the expected variability when the system is performing in a stable operating condition. It is important to remember that periodic measurement of QC samples does not identify random events

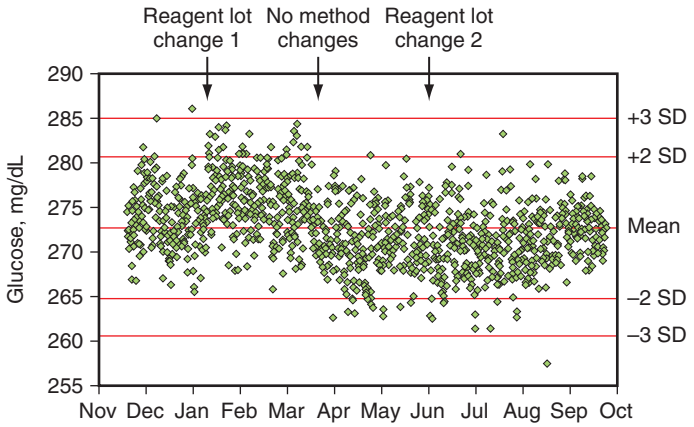


Figure 10-9 Levey-Jennings plot of quality control (QC) results (N = 1232) for a single lot of QC material used over a 10-month period. *SD,* Standard deviation. (Reprinted with permission from Miller WG, Nichols JH: Quality control. In Clarke WA, editor: *Contemporary practice in clinical chemistry*, ed 2, Washington DC, 2010, AACC Press.)

(e.g., a temporary clot in a sample pipette, a random reagent pipette error) that do not persist until the next QC sample is measured. QC rules are chosen to detect changes in calibration and changes in imprecision that are significant enough to require correction before patient results are reported.

It may be determined in the process of reviewing statistical parameters for QC data that a method's performance is marginal or inadequate to meet medical requirements. Determining the sigma metric is helpful to make this assessment because the sigma value gives a prediction of the number of erroneous results expected. If the method performance cannot be improved and a better method is not available, the laboratory can either discontinue the test if the performance is inadequate or apply more stringent QC practices when the performance is marginal. In addition, the method limitations should be communicated to patient care providers.

More stringent QC practices include selecting rules that will give an alert at smaller error conditions, using additional rules in a multirule set, assaying QC more frequently, using more than two QC samples, and not releasing patient results until QC assessment is complete for the time interval during which patient samples were measured. For lower sigma methods, the more stringent QC rules will cause more QC alerts, some of which will be false alerts, in order to detect error conditions that could affect interpretation of a patient result. It is important to recognize that more stringent QC will not improve method performance but is intended to identify smaller changes in method performance that could affect patient care decisions based on the results.

A plan for statistical QC using surrogate samples specifies the number of controls, the concentration levels of the controls, the acceptance rules, and the frequency to test the QC samples. The choice of the parameters will depend on the performance characteristics of the measurement procedure, the number of potentially erroneous patient results that could occur before the next QC event, and the risk of harm to a patient if potentially erroneous results were used in clinical care decisions. The relationship between these components of a QC strategy has been reviewed by Yundt-Pacheco and Parvin (2013).

CORRECTIVE ACTION WHEN A QUALITY CONTROL RESULT INDICATES A MEASUREMENT PROBLEM

A QC alert occurs when a QC result fails an evaluation rule, which indicates that an analytic problem may exist. A QC alert means there is a high probability that the assay is producing results unreliable for patient care. When this condition occurs, it is necessary to take corrective action to investigate the cause of the QC alert. Figure 10-10 presents a generalized troubleshooting sequence. Repeating the QC measurement on the same QC sample is not recommended because, with properly designed control rules, it is more likely that a measurement system problem exists than the QC result was a statistical outlier. However, QC materials can deteriorate after opening caused by improper handling and storage or because of unstable analytes. Thus repeating the measurement on a new sample of the QC material is a useful step to determine if the alert was caused by

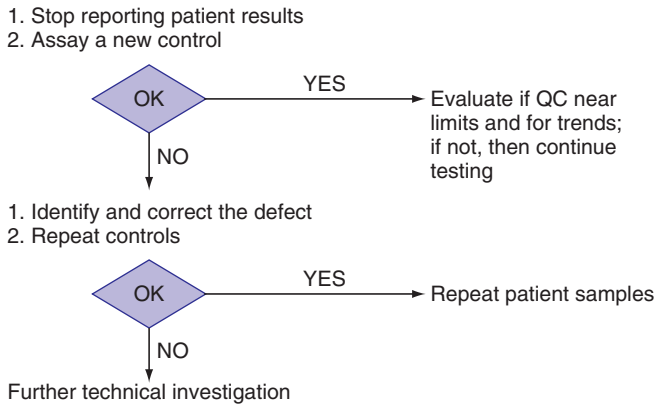


Figure 10-10 Generalized troubleshooting sequence following an unacceptable quality control result. (Reprinted with permission from Miller WG, Nichols JH: Quality control. In Clarke WA, editor: *Contemporary practice in clinical chemistry*, ed 2, Washington DC, 2010, AACC Press.)

deteriorated QC material rather than by a method problem. In this situation, if the result for the new QC sample is acceptable, testing of patient samples can resume. If the repeat result is near acceptability limits, it is important to consider that the repeat and original results may be essentially of the same magnitude. In this situation, the probability is fairly high that a measurement problem exists, and this possibility should be investigated. In addition, current and preceding QC results should be examined for a trend in bias that indicates a measurement issue that needs to be corrected. These precautions in evaluating repeat results for a new QC sample can be challenging or impossible for automated evaluation by computer systems, thus requiring the laboratory technologist to be vigilant in reviewing results.

When repeat testing of a new QC sample does not resolve the alert situation, the instrument and reagents should be inspected for component deterioration, empty reagent containers, mechanical problems, and so on. In many cases, it will be necessary to recalibrate (or verify calibration). When the problem is identified and corrected, QC samples should be assayed to verify the correction, and all patient samples since the time of the last acceptable QC results should be reassayed. The laboratory director must establish acceptable criteria to determine if the repeat results agree adequately to permit reporting of original results without issuing a corrected report. Otherwise, corrected results must be reported. As an example, Table 10-5 lists empirical criteria used in the author's laboratory for this purpose. The criteria for acceptability of repeated tests are based on method performance characteristics, population served, and clinical requirements of the medical services.

In some cases, sample volume may not be adequate (quantity not sufficient [QNS]) for repeat testing. In these situations, no results can be reported unless it is documented that the impact of the method defect on the original results was small enough to have minimal effect on clinical interpretation. A protocol to evaluate the clinical impact of the methodological problem is to repeat those samples that have adequate volume. The repeated samples must represent the concentration range of the QNS samples, must represent the time span since the previous acceptable QC results, and should include a substantial proportion of the total samples originally assayed while the method was in the unacceptable condition. If the repeat results for this sample group are within established criteria for repeat testing of patient samples, the original results for the QNS samples can be reported. Otherwise, the original results for the QNS samples are considered erroneous; no results can be reported, and the original results already reported need to be corrected to a "no result" condition.

REVIEWING QUALITY CONTROL DATA

The immediate impact of QC data is to determine if patient results can be reported and used for clinical decision making. In addition, QC data must be reviewed by laboratory management on a regular schedule. Typical review schedules are weekly by senior technologists and/or supervisors and at least monthly by the laboratory director. The weekly review process should determine that correct follow-up of any QC alerts was conducted, that all patient samples that may have had erroneous results were repeated, and that the process was properly documented in QC records. The monthly review should include any issues identified by the weekly review process, as well as examination of the Levey-Jennings chart or other tool to identify trends or changes in assay performance that may need to be addressed. Note that automated systems to assist in the review of QC data are acceptable, and individual Levey-Jennings charts do not need to be examined every month. A report that compares the mean and SD for QC results over a defined time interval, such as 1 month, to the expected values consistent with stable assay performance can be useful to focus the review on assays that may need attention. For example, the report might identify QC statistical values that deviate more than a specified amount, such as a mean over 1 SD from the target value or an SD that exceeds its expected value. QC values that are identified as needing further examination can then be followed up with review of a Levey-Jennings chart or other records of method conditions such as maintenance, calibration, and reagent change. The monthly review should also include consistency of reagent lot changes, calibrator lot changes, and any patient data–based QC procedures described in the following sections.

The QC review process serves two major functions: It verifies that test procedures are stable and meet performance specifications, and it identifies test procedures that may need intervention to address trends in performance deterioration. In addition, other adjustments can be made, such as QC frequency, QC acceptance criteria, calibration and maintenance frequency, and so on. Quality indicators from the quality management program such as number of QC failures, number of result corrections, or number of patient samples that are repeated due to QC issues can be very helpful in determining if changes may be needed to the QC plan. The QC review is an opportunity to examine any aspect of assay performance that is relevant for a given measurement procedure to provide results that meet the requirements for clinical care decisions.

TABLE 10-5

Example for Selected Chemistry Analytes of Empirical Criteria for Patient Test Result Agreement between Repeated Assays and for Agreement among Results for a Single Patient Sample Measured on Multiple Instruments

Analyte	Acceptance Criteria (Difference between Results)
Albumin	0.4 g/dL
ALP	10 U/L or 10%*
ALT	10 U/L or 10%*
Amylase	15 U/L or 10%*
AST	10 U/L or 10%*
Bilirubin, total	0.3 or 10%*
Calcium, total	0.5 mg/dL
Chloride	4 mmol/L
Cholesterol	5%
CK	10 U/L or 10%*
CO_2	4 mmol/L
Creatinine	0.2 mg/dL or 10%*
GGT	10 U/L or 10%*
Glucose	6 mg/dL or 5%*
Iron	10 µg/dL or 10%*
Lactate	0.32 mmol/L
LD	10 U/L or 10%*
Lipase	10 U/L or 10%*
Magnesium	0.3 mg/dL
Phosphorus	0.4 mg/dL
Potassium	0.3 mmol/L
Protein, total	0.4 g/dL
Sodium	4 mmol/L
Triglycerides	10%
Urea nitrogen (BUN)	3 mg/dL or 10%*
Uric acid	0.4 mg/dL

ALP, Alkaline phosphatase; *ALT*, alanine aminotransferase; *AST*, aspartate aminotransferase; *BUN*, blood urea nitrogen; *CK*, creatine kinase; CO_2, carbon dioxide; *GGT*, γ-glutamyl transferase; *LD*, lactate dehydrogenase.
*Whichever is greater.

VERIFYING QUALITY CONTROL EVALUATION PARAMETERS FOLLOWING A REAGENT LOT CHANGE

Changing reagent lots can have an unexpected impact on QC results. Careful reagent lot crossover evaluation of QC target values is necessary. Because the matrix-related interaction between a QC material and a reagent can change with a different reagent lot, QC results may not be a reliable indicator of a method's performance for patient samples following a reagent lot change. In a large study of 661 reagent lot changes for 8 QC materials assayed for 82 analytes using 7 different instrument platforms, 41% of 1483 QC material–reagent lot combinations had significant differences in QC values between the reagent lots that were not observed for patient samples (Miller et al, 2011b). In the example in Figure 10-11, QC values for the high concentration control shifted following the change to a new lot of reagents, but there was no change in results for the low control. A comparison of results for a panel of patient samples assayed using the new and old reagent lots, as shown in Figure 10-12, verified that patient results were the same when either lot of reagents was used. Patient results spanned the analytic measurement range and had nearly identical values, as indicated by the slope of 1.00 and the small intercept of −3 mg/dL. Consequently, the change in QC values for the high concentration material was due to a difference in matrix-related bias between the QC material and each of the reagent lots.

It is necessary to use clinical patient samples to verify the consistency of results between old and new lots of reagents because of the unpredictability of a matrix-related bias being present for QC materials. Figure 10-13 presents a procedure to verify or adjust QC material target values following a reagent lot change. A group of patient samples and the QC samples are assayed using both the current (old) and new reagent lots. The first step is to verify that results for a group of patient samples assayed with the new reagent lot are consistent with results from the current (old) lot. The patient sample results, not the QC results, provide the basis for verifying that the new reagent lot is acceptable for use. If a problem is identified, the calibration of the new reagent lot must be investigated and corrected, or the new reagent lot may be defective and should not be used. When evaluating the patient results, keep in mind that the calibration of the old reagent lot may have drifted and should be verified before concluding that the new reagent lot is not giving acceptable results for the patient samples.

The number of patient samples to use for verifying the performance of a new reagent lot will depend on the analytic measurement range, the imprecision of an assay, and the concentrations at which key clinical decisions are made. CLSI document EP26 (CLSI, 2013) recommends a minimum of 3 patient samples and possibly more, depending on the number of key clinical decision concentrations and the imprecision of an assay. This CLSI guideline includes a statistical analysis to determine if a difference in patient results is less than a critical difference that would represent risk for an inappropriate patient care decision based on a particular laboratory test result. An alternate approach is to select 10 or more patient samples that span the analytic measurement range and use Deming regression analysis (Cornbleet & Gochman, 1979; Linnet, 1993) that allows assessment of average performance over the range of concentrations represented by the patient samples.

There are no well-established clinical acceptance criteria for agreement between results; consequently, the laboratory must establish acceptance criteria consistent with the relatively small number of samples used, the analytic capability of a method, and the clinical requirements for interpreting results. As an example, empirical acceptance criteria used in the author's laboratory for assessment of individual results are provided in Table 10-5.

Once the results for patients are acceptable, the second step in Figure 10-13 evaluates results for each QC material to determine if its target value is correct for use with the new lot of reagent(s). If the target value has changed, it must be adjusted to correct for the change in matrix-related bias between old and new lots of reagent(s). This adjustment keeps the expected variability centered around the QC target value so that QC interpretive rules will remain valid. Failure to make a target value adjustment will introduce an artifactual bias in subsequent QC results, causing both an increased false alert rate and a decreased ability to detect some error conditions. These effects are illustrated in Figure 10-14, where the shift in target value would cause some of the results shown by green symbols to exceed the old upper 1-3S threshold, when in reality there is no defect in patient results because the QC results are artifactually increased due to the matrix-related bias with the new reagent lot. Similarly, the increased magnitude of the gap to the old lower 1-3S limit will permit a low-bias condition, as shown by the last two green points, to be undetected until the low bias becomes larger than the QC rule is intended to detect.

The SD used to evaluate QC results will not typically change when a new lot of reagent(s) is put into service. The SD represents expected variability when the method is stable and is performing according to specifications. In most cases, the variability of a method will be the same with any lot of reagent(s). However, occasional exceptions may occur—for example, if the new reagent lot is a reformulation, it may be necessary to adjust the SD after additional numbers of QC results are accumulated with the new reagent lot. A reagent lot verification is typically performed on a single day and will likely provide only a few QC results from which to evaluate

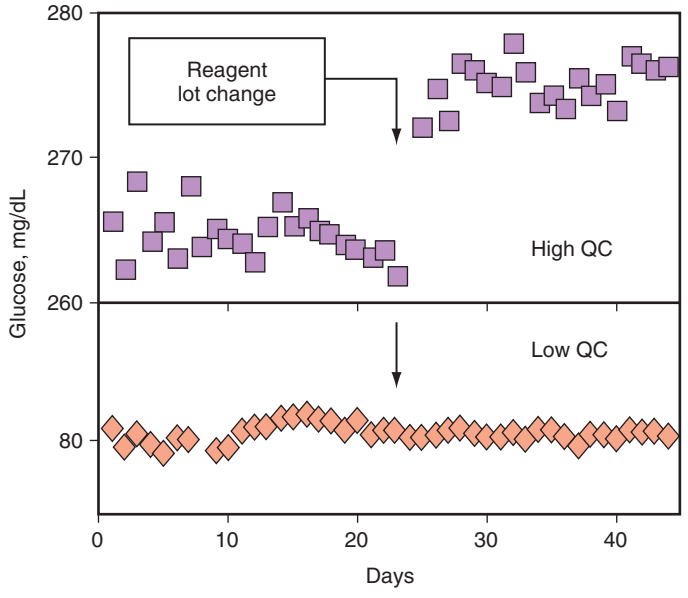


Figure 10-11 **Levey-Jennings plot showing impact of a reagent lot change on matrix bias with quality control (QC) samples.** (Reprinted with permission from Miller WG, Nichols JH: Quality control. In Clarke WA, editor: *Contemporary practice in clinical chemistry,* ed 2, Washington DC, 2010, AACC Press.)

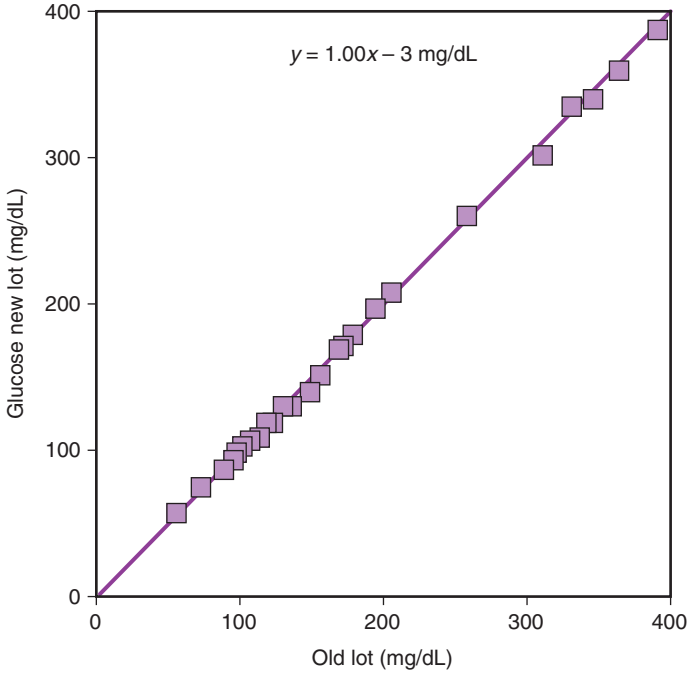


Figure 10-12 **Deming regression analysis of results from a patient sample comparison between the same old and new lots of reagent shown in Figure 10-11 for quality control samples.**

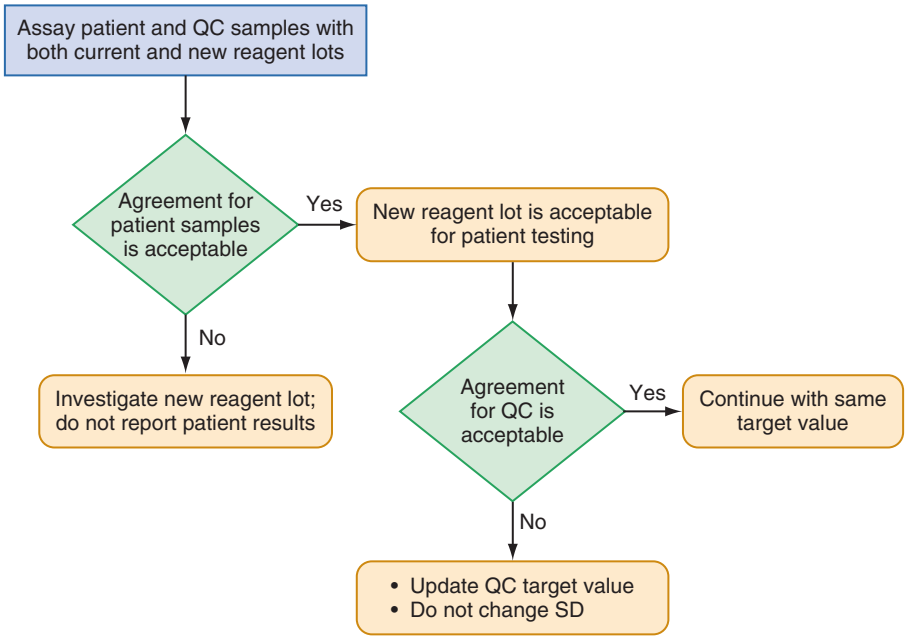


Figure 10-13 **Process for assessment of potential matrix impact on quality control (QC) target values following a reagent lot change.** *SD,* Standard deviation.

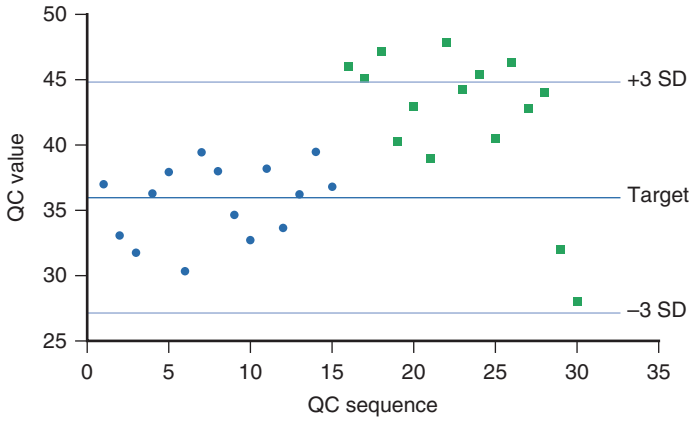


Figure 10-14 **Influence on the failure rate for a quality control (QC) rule when failing to adjust the target value for a matrix-related shift.** A new reagent lot was introduced at sequence number 16. *SD,* Standard deviation.

if the target value has changed. Consequently, it is necessary to carefully monitor QC results as more data are acquired using the new reagent lot and, if needed, to further refine the new target value.

Note that a reagent lot–induced matrix-related change in the numeric values for the QC results will cause an artifactual increase in the cumulative SD such that the cumulative SD may be larger than the inherent measurement variability and not suitable for use in QC rules. For this reason, it is recommended to use the cumulative SD from a single reagent lot or from reagent lots that did not have a matrix-related change in QC target value when determining the SD to use for interpreting QC rules.

Experience in clinical laboratories has shown that there are changes, other than reagent lot changes, in measurement systems that can also affect the QC values but not the results for patient samples. Such changes could be caused by maintenance, component replacement, or other causes. In theory, there should be an assignable cause for such effects, but such a cause is not always identifiable. In practice, any condition that affects QC results but does not affect patient results is treated in the same manner as described for reagent lot changes. The important quality control principle is that if the results for patient samples are consistent between the two conditions, then the target value for the QC sample should be adjusted, if necessary, to reflect its value under the new condition. Failure to adjust the QC target value will cause inappropriate acceptability criteria to be used for evaluating the QC results.

VERIFYING METHOD PERFORMANCE FOLLOWING USE OF A NEW LOT OF CALIBRATOR

When a new lot of calibrator is used, with no change in reagents, there is no change in matrix interaction between the QC material and the reagents. In this situation, QC results provide a reliable indication of calibration status with the new lot of calibrator. If the QC results indicate a bias following use of a new lot of calibrator, the calibration has changed and needs to be corrected to ensure consistent results for patient samples.

Some methods are packaged as kits that include reagents, calibrators, and QC materials. In this case, QC results could fail to identify a calibration shift when a new kit lot is used, and it is necessary to assay patient samples with the old and new kit lots to verify consistency of patient results. When possible, it is recommended to use QC materials that are independent of the kit lot and to avoid changing lots of QC material at the same time as changing lots of reagent or calibrators. Assaying patient samples always provides a reliable approach to verify the consistency of results following changes in lots of reagents or calibrators.

USING PATIENT DATA IN QUALITY CONTROL PROCEDURES

Results from patient samples are used in four principal ways to support the QC processes in a laboratory:

- To verify consistency of patient results when changing lots of reagent or calibrators for a method (discussed in the previous section)
- To identify inconsistent results using a delta check with a previous result for a patient
- To verify consistency of patient results when an analyte is measured using more than one instrument or method in a health care system
- To verify method performance using results from patient samples in a statistical QC scheme

DELTA CHECK WITH A PREVIOUS RESULT FOR A PATIENT

Some types of laboratory errors can be identified by comparing a patient's current test result to a previous result for the same analyte. This comparison is called a *delta check*. The previous result is taken from a specified time interval in the past during which the result is not likely to have changed physiologically. This limitation restricts the analytes that can be effectively monitored with a delta check. Delta checks are most useful to detect

TABLE 10-6
Example Delta Check Criteria Intended to Identify Samples That Are Potentially Mislabeled or Contaminated with IV Fluids Due to Incorrect Collection

Test	Delta Criteria
Sodium	5% change within previous 48 hours
Urea nitrogen	60% change within previous 48 hours
Creatinine	50% change within previous 48 hours
Calcium	25% change within previous 48 hours
Osmolality	5% change within previous 48 hours

mislabeled samples and samples altered by dilution with IV fluid during collection from a patient. Consequently, an effective delta check process can be established using a limited number of analytes. The difference between results that causes a delta check alert must be sufficiently large to avoid excessive numbers of false alerts and adequate to allow identification of samples that may be compromised and require follow-up investigation. Table 10-6 shows, as an example, the delta check parameters for automated chemistry used in the author's laboratory designed to identify compromised patient samples.

Delta checks can detect analytic errors; however, the threshold values necessary to identify analytic errors will be fairly small compared to physiologic changes and may cause a large number of false alerts that reduce the efficiency of laboratory workflow. A well-designed statistical QC plan will be more effective to detect analytic errors. However, delta checks might be useful to identify an interfering substance—for example, from a new drug—that may appear in a patient's sample. Kazmierczak (2003) has reviewed and presented recommendations for using delta check and other patient data–based quality control procedures. CLSI has published guideline EP33 for using delta checks in the clinical laboratory (CLSI, 2015b).

VERIFY CONSISTENCY OF RESULTS BETWEEN MORE THAN ONE INSTRUMENT OR METHOD

Another common use of patient results in a QC process is to verify consistency of patient results when an analyte is measured using more than one instrument or method within the same health delivery system. Good laboratory medicine requires that multiple instruments or methods for the same analyte be calibrated to produce the same results for patient samples whenever possible. It may be necessary to modify the calibration settings of one measurement system to match another system's results. This strategy allows a common reference interval to be used, provides continuity in results between different laboratory testing locations, and avoids clinical confusion regarding interpretation of laboratory results.

As illustrated in Figure 10-15, consistency of patient results is verified by assaying clinical patient sample aliquots using each of two or more methods (or analyzers) to evaluate and if necessary adjust the calibration as needed to achieve agreement in results for patient samples. Such an analysis design is called a *round robin*. One method/analyzer may be chosen to represent the primary method to which others will be adjusted to achieve equivalent results. The primary method should be chosen based on quality and reliability of results with consideration of its calibration traceability to national or international standards, its performance stability, its analytic specificity for the analyte, and its susceptibility to interfering substances. An alternate approach is to evaluate each method for agreement with the mean of all methods and to adjust the calibration of any methods/analyzers as necessary to produce equivalent results among the group. When like analyzers in a group are compared, if results for one analyzer are different from results for the others, that analyzer's calibration is adjusted to conform to that of the group.

There are no well-established guidelines regarding the number of samples to use for a round robin exchange. The laboratory needs to establish the frequency of evaluation and the number of samples based on the stability of the methods, the frequency of reagent and calibrator lot changes, and the clinical requirements of the health delivery system. Common practices include a round robin exchange of one or more individual patient samples or a pool prepared from several samples on a weekly basis for high-volume methods; on a monthly or quarterly basis for lower-volume or very stable methods; or the regulatory minimum of every 6 months. CLIA regulations, section 493.1281, require that the relationship between test results from different methods or from multiple locations should be evaluated at least twice a year (Department of Health and Human Services, 2003). For frequent comparisons with one or two samples, concentrations should be chosen to evaluate the analytic measurement range over a period of several examinations. For less frequent comparisons, a larger number of samples is recommended to cover the analytic measurement range. When establishing interpretation criteria, the laboratory needs to consider the limited statistical power for the number of results available. CLSI document EP31, *Verification of Comparability of Patient Results within One Healthcare System*, provides a statistical approach suitable for using one to five samples in a comparison (CLSI, 2012).

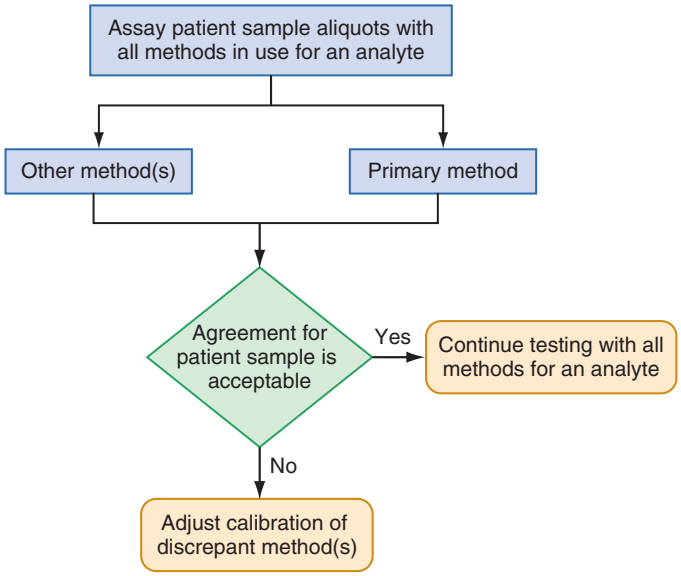


Figure 10-15 **Process used to evaluate agreement between methods and to adjust calibration, if necessary, to achieve equivalent results from different methods.**

Table 10-5 provides, as an example, empirical criteria used in the author's laboratory for evaluation of agreement among results for a single patient sample assayed weekly among multiple analyzers. These criteria were established based on the expected imprecision of the methods used and the clinical impact of discrepant results. To allow for the limitations of a single measurement of a single sample in a comparison, a result outside a criterion is typically not acted on unless the magnitude of a difference is much larger than the criterion or the situation persists for 2 or more weeks.

It is recommended to use patient samples to verify agreement between multiple methods or analyzers. Results for QC materials should not be used for the purpose of verifying consistency of results for patient samples assayed using different methods or analyzers. As discussed in an earlier section, QC materials are not validated to be commutable with patient samples between different methods. Even when more than one method/analyzer from the same manufacturer is used, differences may be seen in the measured value for QC materials between different reagent lots. In principle, if more than one of the same model analyzer with the same reagent lots are used, all should have the same results for the same lot of QC material. In practice, differences in measurement details among different analyzers cause small differences in QC results. The acceptance criteria can be set to allow for such differences. However, more reliable conclusions will be drawn when patient samples are used to evaluate agreement among different analyzers.

USING PATIENT DATA FOR STATISTICAL QUALITY CONTROL

Patient results can be used in a statistical QC process to monitor method performance. For a sufficiently large number of results, the mean (or preferably median) value may be sufficiently stable to be used as an indicator of method consistency over time. This approach can be used on a periodic basis by extracting data for a specified time period (e.g., 1 month), calculating the mean and SD for the distribution of results, and comparing one time period versus another to determine whether any changes have occurred. This type of periodic evaluation can identify changes in calibration stability or in overall imprecision for a method. The mean and SD can also be compared for consistency among multiple methods for the same analyte.

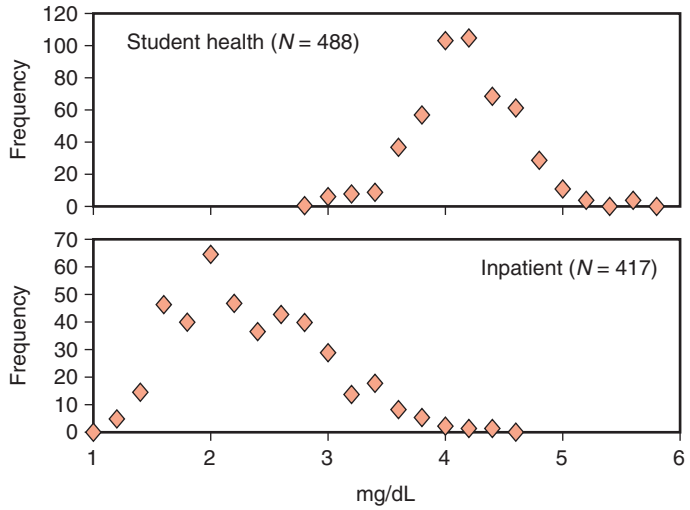


Figure 10-16 **Histograms for distribution of sequential patient results for albumin from a student health outpatient clinic and a hospital general medicine inpatient unit.**

An important limitation for using patient data to evaluate consistency within a single method, or between different methods for the same analyte, is the physiologic homogeneity of results. Important considerations include parameters likely to influence the reference interval, such as disease status, pediatric versus adult, gender, and ethnic differences. Figure 10-16 shows an example of the potential impact of a nonhomogeneous sample of patients on distribution of albumin results for hospital general medicine inpatients compared with a student health outpatient clinic. The histograms are very different because the two patient groups differ in severity of disease and in recumbent versus supine position for blood collection, which influences vascular water volume and the concentration of albumin.

Automated approaches to determine the mean (or median) for groups of sequential patient results used as a continuous process control parameter have been described. These methods are called *average of normals (AON)* or *moving average* techniques and are suitable for use in higher-volume assays in chemistry and hematology (Cembrowski et al, 1984; Smith & Kroft, 1996; Westgard et al, 1996; Ye et al, 2000; Kazmierczak, 2003). In general, these approaches evaluate sequential patient results over time intervals, such as several hours to 1 or more days. The time interval that can be confidently used depends on the number of results in the time interval and the relative homogeneity of the clinical conditions represented in the patients. For some analytes, patients may need to be partitioned to obtain subgroups whose results are expected to be homogeneous. Consideration of influences for partitioning includes age, gender, ethnicity, and disease conditions. Some approaches have arbitrarily trimmed abnormal results in an attempt to restrict results to more normal health conditions. Trimming approaches must be used with caution because excessive trimming will create an artificial subset of results that may not reflect a method's calibration condition. The median is not influenced by extreme values and is recommended as the most robust estimate for tracking method stability over time based on patient results.

The median, mean, or other statistical parameter for a group of results is tracked over sequential time intervals to monitor method performance. Statistical procedures such as cumulative sum or exponentially weighted moving average are used to monitor trends in method calibration status. These approaches can be useful for supplementing traditional statistical QC techniques to monitor a method's calibration stability and to monitor calibration uniformity between multiple methods in higher-volume settings. However, patient-based monitoring procedures have not been widely adopted because of lack of consensus guidelines for their use and lack of computer support from instrument and laboratory information system suppliers.

PROFICIENCY TESTING

Proficiency testing (PT) (or external quality assessment) is a program to evaluate method performance by comparison of results versus those of other laboratories for the same set of samples (Miller et al, 2011a). PT providers circulate a set of samples among a group of laboratories. Each laboratory assays the PT samples as if they were patient samples and reports the results for the PT samples to the PT provider for evaluation. The PT provider assigns a target value to the PT samples and determines if the results for an individual laboratory are in close enough agreement with the target value to be consistent with acceptable method performance. PT allows a laboratory to verify that its results are consistent with those of other laboratories and to verify that it is using a method in conformance with the manufacturer's specifications.

PT is not available for some analytes because a particular test may be new to the clinical laboratory or is not commonly performed or because analyte stability makes it difficult to include in a PT material. In these situations, the laboratory should use an alternate approach to periodically verify acceptable performance of the method. CLSI has a guideline GP27 that provides approaches for verifying method performance when formal PT is not available (CLSI, 2015c).

QC material manufacturers may provide a data analysis service that compares results from different laboratories using the same QC material by calculating group statistics for performance evaluation. As with PT evaluation, this type of interlaboratory QC data analysis allows a laboratory to verify that it is producing QC results that are consistent with those of other laboratories using the same method. This information can be helpful for troubleshooting method issues and for assessing performance of a new method being introduced to a laboratory.

NONCOMMUTABILITY OF PROFICIENCY TESTING MATERIALS AND PEER GROUP GRADING

The materials commonly used for PT samples are derived from blood or urine but are altered in the process to manufacture PT samples such that the matrix is modified and the samples do not have the same measurement characteristics as observed for unaltered clinical patient samples (Miller et al, 1993; Ross et al, 1998; Miller, 2003; Miller et al, 2005; Miller et al, 2008; Miller et al, 2011a). In addition, some PT samples—for example, cerebrospinal fluid or blood gas—are prepared as synthetic materials that are not derived from patient fluids. Consequently, many PT samples, as for QC samples, are noncommutable with authentic patient samples. A commutable PT sample will have a relationship between results for the PT sample measured by different methods that is in close agreement to the relationship observed for results from patient samples. The results for a noncommutable PT sample will have a different relationship in their numeric values among different methods than would be observed for patient samples.

Because PT samples are frequently noncommutable with patient samples, it is a common practice for PT providers to organize results into "peer groups" of methods that represent similar technology expected to have the same result for a PT sample. The mean value of the peer group results is the target value. Because the peer group mean value may be influenced by a matrix-related bias, that value can only be used to evaluate labs using the same method(s) and cannot be used to evaluate laboratories using other methods or to evaluate if different methods agree with one another. Figure 10-17 illustrates the effects of noncommutable materials on interpretation of PT results and demonstrates why "peer group" evaluation is used. In this older but still valid example, pooled patient sera and PT samples were assayed by the duPont Dimension Analyzer and by the Abell-Kendall reference method for cholesterol (Naito et al, 1993). The Abell-Kendall method was shown to be unaffected by matrix-induced changes in PT samples (Ellerbe et al, 1990). The patient samples showed excellent agreement between the two methods (average bias = 0.2%). However, the PT samples had a large negative bias (–9.5%) between methods, caused by a matrix-related bias with the duPont method that was not present with the reference method (Kroll & Chesler, 1990).

In this example, the routine method was correctly calibrated and produced results for patient samples that were traceable to the reference method. However, PT results gave an incorrect impression of the method's calibration relationship to the reference method. If the routine method's calibration had been erroneously adjusted on the basis of PT results, the results for patient samples would then be incorrect. PT results were useful for evaluating the performance of all laboratories using the duPont method, because the matrix-related bias was uniform within this peer group. Consequently, if an individual laboratory's results agreed with those of the peer group, the individual laboratory could conclude that the method was performing in conformance with the manufacturer's specifications. In general, an individual laboratory depends on the manufacturer to correctly calibrate a clinical laboratory routine method to be traceable to the reference system for an analyte.

REPORTING PROFICIENCY TESTING RESULTS WHEN ONE METHOD IS ADJUSTED TO AGREE WITH ANOTHER METHOD

It is good laboratory practice (and consistent with CLIA regulations section 493.1281) to adjust the calibration of different methods for the same analyte used within a health delivery system, so the results for patient samples are consistent, irrespective of which method is used. Such harmonization of results is important for uniform use of reference intervals and decision thresholds within a health delivery system. In this situation, it is important to report PT results such that they can be properly evaluated against the peer group target value. The peer group target value will reflect the method calibration established by the method manufacturer. For an individual laboratory's PT result to be evaluated against the peer group mean, that individual result must be reported to the PT provider after removing any calibration adjustments so the reported result is consistent with the manufacturer's nonadjusted calibration. The most convenient way to remove a calibration adjustment is to first assay PT samples with the method calibration adjustment applied to the measurement system, as would be the usual assay process for patient samples. After the assay, adjust the PT results "in reverse" by mathematically removing the calibration adjustment factors and report the results with any adjustment factors removed. One should not recalibrate the instrument with a new set of calibrators for the purpose of assaying PT samples, because this practice would violate regulations requiring the PT material to be assayed in the same manner as patient samples.

For example, a laboratory has performed a patient sample comparison between Method A used in the main laboratory and Method B used in a satellite laboratory, as illustrated in Figure 10-15. Method B consistently gave 10% higher results. Method B was adjusted to agree with Method A by putting the adjustment factor 0.9091 (calculated as 1/1.10) in the Method B instrument to automatically multiply each measured result by 0.9091 to lower the reported result by 10%. When PT results from Method B are reported, it is necessary to remove the 0.9091 factor to allow the reported result to be compared with the peer group mean of results from all laboratories using Method B. Removing the 0.9091 factor is accomplished by multiplying the reported PT result from Method B by the factor 1.100 (calculated as 1/0.9091) to increase its numeric value by 10% to the nonadjusted value that was actually measured by the instrument according to the manufacturer's defined calibration procedure. This process allows the PT result measured by Method B to be appropriately evaluated in comparison with its peer group mean, which will reflect the manufacturer's established calibration. This process permits the PT sample to be assayed in the same manner as patient samples and the numeric result reported to the PT provider to reflect the actual measured result using the manufacturer's recommended calibration settings.

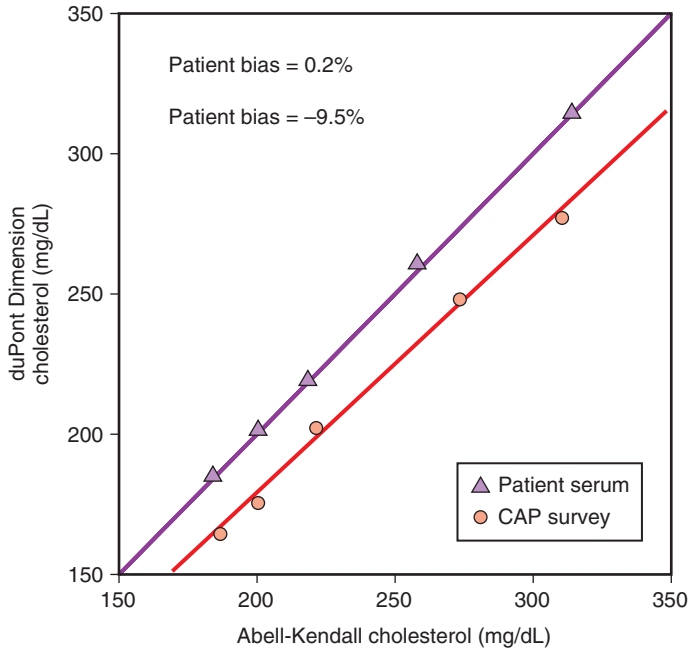


Figure 10-17 Example of noncommutable results between proficiency testing materials and pooled patient samples for a specific method. (Adapted from Naito HK, Kwak YS, Hartfiel JL, et al: Matrix effects on proficiency testing materials: Impact on accuracy of cholesterol measurement in laboratories in the nation's largest hospital system, *Arch Pathol Lab* Med 117:345–351, 1993; used with permission.)

INTERPRETATION OF PROFICIENCY TESTING RESULTS

Many countries have regulations (e.g., CLIA in the United States) requiring PT and specifying the evaluation criteria for acceptable performance. When criteria are not set by regulations, the PT provider sets evaluation criteria on the basis of clinically acceptable performance and/or the analytic capability of the methods in use. PT evaluation criteria are designed to evaluate the total error of a single measurement. The acceptability limits for PT include bias and imprecision components considered clinically acceptable for an analyte, plus other error components that are unique to PT samples, such as between-laboratories variation in calibration; homogeneity of the PT material vials; stability variability in the PT material both in storage/shipping and after reconstitution or opening in the laboratory; and variable matrix–related bias with different lots of reagent within a peer group. Consequently, the acceptability limits for PT samples are frequently larger than what might be expected for clinically acceptable total error with patient samples.

Figure 10-18 is an example of a typical evaluation report sent to a participating laboratory. Each reported result is compared with the mean result for the peer group using the same method. The report also includes the SD for the distribution of results in the peer group, the number of

Proficiency Testing Participant Evaluation Report
Shipment date: 10/13/2003
Evaluation date: 11/21/2003

Test units method	Specimen	Reported result	Mean	SD	N labs	SDI	LIMITS OF ACCEPTABILITY Lower	Upper
Calcium	1	9.6	9.92	0.23	587	–1.4	8.9	11.0
mg/dL	2	8.8	8.86	0.26	592	–0.2	7.8	9.9
Arsenazo	3	7.5	7.65	0.23	587	–0.7	6.6	8.7
dye	4	8.2	8.43	0.23	590	–1.0	7.4	9.5
Vitros 950	5	10.8	10.87	0.25	589	–0.3	9.8	11.9
Iron	1	190	192.5	7.0	397	–0.4	154	232
mcg/dL	2	65	65.0	3.4	394	0.0	51	78
Pyridyl azo	3	74	69.2	3.2	395	+1.5	55	83
dye	4	124	107.9	4.6	395	+3.5	86	130
Vitros 950	5	277	260.9	8.8	396	+1.8	208	314

Figure 10-18 Example of an external proficiency testing evaluation report sent to a participating laboratory. *SD,* Standard deviation; *SDI,* standard deviation interval.

laboratories in the peer group, and the SDI (also called a *z-score*), which expresses the reported result as the number of SDs it is from the mean value [SDI = (result – mean)/SD]. The limits of acceptability are shown. Acceptability criteria may be a number of standard deviations from the mean value, a fixed percent from the mean value, or a fixed concentration from the mean value. In Figure 10-18, calcium acceptability criteria are ±1 mg/dL from the mean value, and iron criteria are ±20% from the mean value.

Peer group evaluation allows a laboratory to verify that it is using a method according to the manufacturer's specifications and is producing patient results that are consistent with those of other laboratories using the same method (Miller et al, 2011a). In Figure 10-18, the calcium results are in close agreement with the peer group mean (SDI ranges from –0.2 to –1.4). However, the iron results show greater variability, with one result +3.5 SDI. Although that iron result is within the acceptability criteria, it is recommended to investigate the method, as discussed in the next paragraph.

If an unacceptable PT result is identified, the method must be investigated for possible causes and any necessary corrective action taken. Even when a PT result is within acceptability criteria, it is good laboratory practice to investigate PT results that are more than approximately 2.5 SDI from the peer group mean. When the SDI is 2.5, there is only a 0.6% probability that the result will be within the expected distribution for the peer group; consequently, the probability is reasonable that a method problem may need to be corrected. In addition, PT results that have been near the failure limit for more than one PT event, even if the results have passed the PT acceptance criteria, should initiate a review of systematic problems with the method. These practices support identification of potential problems before they progress to more serious situations. When results are investigated, a limitation of SD-based grading criteria should be considered. Very precise methods may have a very small SD, and a result may be outside an SD limit when the magnitude in reporting units is small and may be of no concern regarding the use of results for clinical care decisions.

Common causes for PT failure are listed in Box 10-1. Incorrect handling and reporting are frequently unique to PT events and may not reflect the same process used in the laboratory for patient samples. Nonetheless, these situations reflect attention to detail, which is a necessary attribute for quality laboratory testing. Occasionally, the PT material may have a defect that causes it to perform inappropriately for all or a subgroup of methods. In this case, the PT provider should identify the situation and not grade participants for that sample.

PT results are usually received several weeks after the date of testing. Consequently, investigation of unacceptable results requiring review of quality control, reagent, calibration, and maintenance records for the date of the test and the preceding several weeks or months is necessary. It is common practice to save any remaining PT samples for use to investigate an unacceptable result. Care must be taken to store the residual PT samples to preserve the stability of the analytes. In some cases, the analyte will not be stable for storage. In addition, when reassaying stored samples, degradation may have occurred during storage, or possibly before storage while still being used in the laboratory for the PT event, and may affect any remeasured value. If review of these records suggests a stable operating condition and review of the PT material handling and documentation does not identify a cause for the erroneous PT result, it may be concluded that the PT failure was a random event. Investigative steps, data reviewed, and conclusions from the review must be documented in a written report of the unacceptable PT result and reviewed by the laboratory director.

BOX 10-1

Classification of Potential Problems Identified When Investigating Unacceptable PT/EQA Results

1. Clerical errors:
   - Incorrectly transcribed PT result from the instrument readout to the report form
   - The PT sample was mislabeled in the laboratory
   - Incorrect instrument or method was reported on the results submission form
   - Incorrect units were reported
   - Decimal point was misplaced
2. Methodological problems:
   - Inadequate standard operating procedure
   - Problem with manufacture or preparation of reagents or calibrators (e.g., unstable)
   - Lot-to-lot variation in reagents or calibrators
   - Incorrect value assignment of calibrators
   - Method lacks adequate specificity for the measurand
   - Method lacks adequate sensitivity to measure the concentration
   - Carryover from a previous sample
   - Inadequate QC procedures used
3. Equipment problems:
   - Obstruction of instrument tubing/orifice by clot
   - Misalignment of instrument probes
   - Incorrect instrument data processing functions
   - Incorrect instrument setting
   - Automatic pipettor not calibrated to acceptable precision and accuracy
   - Equipment component malfunction (e.g., light source, membrane, fluidics, detector)
   - Incorrect instrument conditions (e.g., water quality, surrounding temperature)
   - Instrument maintenance not performed appropriately
4. Technical problems caused by personnel errors:
   - Did not operate equipment correctly or did not conform to method standard operating procedure
   - Incorrect storage, preparation, or handling of reagents or calibrators
   - Delay causing evaporation or deterioration of the PT sample
   - Failure to follow recommended instrument function checks or maintenance
   - Pipetting or dilution error
   - Calculation error
   - Misinterpretation of test result
5. A problem with the PT material, such as:
   - Incorrect storage, preparation, or handling of PT materials
   - Differences between PT samples and patient samples (e.g., matrix, additives, stabilizers)
   - Sample deteriorated in transit or during laboratory storage
   - Sample had weak or borderline reaction
   - Sample contained interfering factors (that may be method-specific)
   - Sample was not homogeneous among vials

[a]This classification scheme assists in developing an appropriate corrective action plan. Reprinted with permission from Miller WG, Jones GRD, Horowitz GL, et al: Proficiency testing/external quality assessment: Current challenges and future directions, *Clin Chem* 57:1670–80, 2011.

Limitations in Interpreting Proficiency Testing Results

PT providers also prepare a summary report, which includes the mean and SD for all peer groups represented by the participants' results. Similar reports are available from interlaboratory QC programs. Summary reports are very useful but must be interpreted with consideration of the limitations of noncommutable samples. The peer group mean and SD are useful for evaluating the uniformity of results between laboratories using the same method, to confirm that an individual laboratory is using the method correctly as designed by the manufacturer, and to evaluate the consistency of an individual laboratory's method performance relative to the peer group over time intervals from one PT event to the next (trend monitoring). Summary information also allows evaluation of the imprecision of various method groups, and the number of users in each method group reveals which methods are commonly used.

The frequent occurrence of noncommutability of PT materials makes it incorrect to use PT summary reports to compare an individual laboratory's result with the peer group mean for another method group, to compare method peer group mean values to each other, or to compare an individual method peer group value to a value from a reference measurement procedure. The noncommutability limitation prevents PT (or QC) results from being used to infer agreement, or lack of agreement, for patient results among different methods for the same analyte.

ACCURACY-BASED PROFICIENCY TESTING PROGRAMS

In some cases, PT providers use commutable samples in PT programs (Miller et al, 2011a). Commutable samples are typically prepared by pooling clinical patient samples with minimal processing or additives to avoid any alteration of the sample matrix. To achieve samples with abnormal values for analytes, donors are identified with known pathologic conditions, or blood and serum units from a general donor population can be prescreened for selected analytes. Supplementing patient samples or pools with purified analytes may be acceptable in some cases but has not been rigorously evaluated. When commutable PT samples can be prepared, the results reflect what would be expected if patient samples were sent to each of the different laboratories. Thus agreement among different laboratories and methods (called harmonization) can be correctly evaluated.

TABLE 10-7
Examples of Quality Indicators (Metrics)

Quality Indicator (Metric)	Threshold	Total Number Reviewed	Example Data	Analysis and Action Plan
Result Reporting				
Gram stain correlation with culture (% disagreement)	≤1%	1513	0%	
Blood culture contamination	≤3%	2468	2.7%	
Percent bone marrow cases reviewed in consensus conference	≥10%	146	28.8%	
Number of bone marrow cases with disagreements	2	146	0	
PT reports; number flagged unacceptable (list by laboratory section)	0			
POCT: Glucose meters, QC failures	≤3%	9058	2.3%	
POCT: Glucose meter, critical value not confirmed by repeating on meter	≤5%	439	2.5%	
Turnaround times in minutes for 90% completed (shown as in-laboratory/total); examples shown, recommend for all applicable work shifts; threshold is for in-laboratory				
Potassium, stat, day shift	45 min	1477	47/91	Reviewed, no action indicated
Troponin I, ED, stat, day shift	60 min	476	60/121	
Hb, stat, day shift	45 min	520	40/81	
PT, stat, day shift	60 min	528	41/94	
Urinalysis pH, stat, day shift	60 min	240	56/106	
Bacterial vaginosis, ED, Gram stains	60 min	231	40/91	
Critical value callback delay; minutes for 90% completed; examples shown				
Critical value delay, hemoglobin, inpatient	30 min	215	14	
Critical values not called Hematology	0	2474	4	SOP reviewed with medical technologist
Result corrections (list by laboratory sections)				
Specimens rejected/corrected at log-in (list by receiving location and type of problem; examples shown)				
Lost/not received	<5	109,851	5	
Incomplete label or form	<20	109,851	25	
Hemolyzed	<50	109,851	19	
Clotted	<100	109,851	289	
QNS	<100	109,851	204	
Exceeds time limit	<20	109,851	8	
Improper collection, container, specimen	<20	109,851	32	
Improperly ordered	<20	109,851	16	
Interfering substance		109,851	25	
Mislabeled specimens (identified by delta check or by notification from clinical staff; list by receiving location)	<20	109,851	83	
Blood bank: Emergency units not accounted for in ED and OR	0	35	0	
Sweat chloride QNS specimens, %	≤5%	18	0%	
Customer Satisfaction				
Client services: % calls lost	≤5%	5932	7%	See below
Client services: Calls answered within 60 seconds	≥90%	5932	89%	Consider if additional staff needed
Service delivery reports from clinical units (number received/number laboratory responsible)	0		10/7	See attached report (each incident has an individual review)
Personnel				
Safety (number of incidents)				
Infectious agent exposure	0		1	See attached report
Chemical exposure	0		0	
Job-related injury/illness	0		2	See attached report
On-call utilization (number of instances a person was called in; list by laboratory section)				
Overtime utilization (hours paid; list by laboratory section)				
Vacancies and staff in training status (graph by laboratory section)				
Continuing education (total hours CE received/number staff receiving CE/total number staff); list by laboratory section)				

CE, Continuing education; *ED*, emergency department; *Hb*, hemoglobin; *OR*, operating room; *POCT*, point-of-care testing; PT, prothrombin time; *QC*, quality control; *QNS*, quantity not sufficient; *SOP*, standard operating procedure.

The agreement between an individual laboratory result and a reference measurement result (accuracy) and the agreement between a method group mean value and the reference measurement result (called trueness) can be evaluated when a reference measurement procedure is available for an analyte.

For example, the College of American Pathologists glycohemoglobin survey for many years has used pooled, freshly collected whole blood from both normal and diabetic donors. The target values for the pooled blood are assigned by reference measurement procedures for hemoglobin A_{1c}. In this survey, the accuracy of individual laboratory results and the trueness of method group means versus the reference measurement procedure values can be evaluated because the PT samples are commutable with clinical patient samples. Method group trueness can be used by the respective method manufacturers to monitor the effectiveness of their calibration processes.

Preparing commutable materials for use in large PT programs has been challenging. However, use of commutable materials adds substantial value to the information obtained from the results (Miller et al, 2011a). Procedures have been developed to validate the commutability of QC, PT, and reference materials (CLSI, documents EP30-A, 2010, and EP14-A3, 2014a).

QUALITY MANAGEMENT

Quality management (QM) refers to the overall process used to ensure that laboratory results meet the requirements for health care services to patients. The components of a QM system shown in Figure 10-4 were derived from the CLSI document QMS01-A4, *Quality Management System: A Model for Laboratory Services* (CLSI, 2011b), and are consistent with the ISO document 15189:2012, *Medical Laboratories—Requirements for Quality and Competence* (ISO, 2012). Laboratories are required to develop procedures to monitor and ensure quality in all aspects of laboratory services. A QM program is an accreditation requirement, and good documentation of the metrics, the review process, and the improvements made is necessary.

Statistical quality control and proficiency testing, covered in detail in this chapter, are two important components of a QM program that address measurement procedures. Metrics related to QC activities may be evaluated as part of monitoring the performance of a measurement system. The following may be useful indicators of method performance issues:

- Frequency of QC alerts
- Frequency of recalibration based on QC alerts
- Number of reagent changes due to QC alerts
- Number of times controls were repeated because of QC alerts
- Frequency of unscheduled maintenance due to QC alerts
- Number of patient samples repeated based on QC alerts
- Frequency that patient samples are repeated based on QC alerts
- Number of patient results corrected

Directly related to the quality of test results are preanalytic components such as patient preparation; sample collection, transportation, storage, and preparation for testing; and postanalytic components such as result reporting, critical value notification, and provision of interpretive information. All of the quality system essentials listed in Figure 10-4 are important to ensure that quality laboratory results are available for patient care. In some cases, the quality requirements extend outside the laboratory and require cooperation with health care partners who order laboratory tests and act on the results.

A QM program defines data-based quality indicators or metrics that are monitored at regular recurring intervals to provide information on the adequacy of important influences on laboratory quality. The CLSI document QMS01-A4 includes an appendix with examples of quality indicators for all of the quality system essentials. An IFCC working group has also recommended a number of specific quality indicators for laboratory testing (Plebani et al, 2014). A QM committee oversees the development of metrics and their regular review and initiates quality improvement actions in response to metrics that indicate a need for improved performance in a particular aspect of laboratory management. A QM committee is typically chaired by a laboratory director or section director and includes senior-level representation from all service areas, including the laboratory information system. Monthly meetings to review data collected from the previous month are typical. However, automation of data management can make some metrics available close to real time for more immediate monitoring and intervention. For example, turnaround time from specimen receipt to result reporting can be monitored continuously with a scrolling computer display report to assist medical technologists in tracking stat requests.

Table 10-7 provides a list of some typical quality indicator metrics that could be included in a QM program. In addition to the metrics, thresholds for acceptable values are defined for most metrics. Thresholds are established on the basis of what is considered good laboratory practice and may be different in different situations. Metrics that meet thresholds confirm that the laboratory is meeting its quality goals for those service requirements. Metrics that exceed thresholds require analysis and a plan for corrective and preventive action. The example thresholds in Table 10-7 are illustrative and should not be taken as recommendations. It is not possible to have zero mistakes in laboratory service; consequently, thresholds need to be realistic and can be changed as quality improvement programs are applied to reduce and prevent errors of various types. The total number of observations examined by a metric should be recorded, along with the data for a given reporting interval.

It is recommended that the metrics be reported to allow trends to be identified—for example, by showing data for 6 or more months on a page. Graphic presentation is very effective to monitor trends and can easily include 1 or more years on a single graph. Many metrics are useful to track indefinitely to document that laboratory service continues to meet performance expectations, and to have an alert mechanism if a change in the environment has adversely affected laboratory service. Data cannot be collected for all possible metrics, and the QM committee needs to determine which aspects of laboratory performance are most critical or in need of improvement and should develop suitable metrics to drive a quality improvement process. Specific interventions should be documented with a written report that describes the quality issue, the data used to understand the issue, the improvements made, and the data that document the effectiveness of the improvement.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

CLSI: *Laboratory quality control based on risk management; approved guideline EP23-A*, Wayne, Pa, 2011a, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

Guidance on developing a quality control plan based on assessment and management of risk of harm to a patient if an erroneous result was reported.

CLSI: *Statistical quality control for quantitative measurements: principles and definitions; approved guideline C24-A4*, Wayne, Pa., 2015a, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

Consensus document describing the principles and implementation guidelines for a statistical quality control system.

Department of Health and Human Services: 42 CFR Part 493, Medicare, Medicaid, and CLIA programs: Laboratory requirements relating to quality systems and certain personnel qualifications; final rule, *Fed Regist* 68:3639–3714, 2003.

Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act of 1988; final rule containing the regulatory requirements for quality practices in laboratories in the United States.

Kazmierczak SC: Laboratory quality control: Using patient data to assess analytical performance, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 41:617–627, 2003.

Review of the strengths and limitations of patient sample–based QC and the usefulness of several patient data–based QC practices.

Miller WG, Myers GL: Commutability still matters, *Clin Chem* 59:1291–1293, 2013.

Editorial describing the importance of commutable reference materials and the errors that can occur when commutability is ignored.

Miller WG, Jones GRD, Horowitz GL, et al: Proficiency testing/external quality assessment: Current challenges and future directions, *Clin Chem* 57:1670–1680, 2011a.

Review of proficiency testing, including the value of commutable PT materials and the limitations when using noncommutable PT materials.

Miller WG, Tate JR, Barth JH, et al: Harmonization: The sample, the measurement, and the report, *Ann Lab Med* 34:187–197, 2014.

Review of calibration traceability, including commutability of reference materials and pre- and postmeasurement considerations.

Yundt-Pacheco J, Parvin CA: Validating the performance of QC procedures, *Clin Lab Med* 33:75–88, 2013.

Review of the QC process, including guidance on acceptance criteria and frequency to assay QC materials with consideration of risk of harm to a patient if an erroneous result was reported.

REFERENCES

Aarsand AK, Rorass T, Sandberg S: Biological variation—reliable data is essential, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2014. accepted.

Appendix C: Survey procedures and interpretive guidelines for laboratories and laboratory services, CMS-2226-F: 42 CFR 493 Medicare, Medicaid, and CLIA programs; laboratory requirements relating to quality systems and certain personnel qualifications; final rule on January 24, 2003.

Carobene A, Braga F, Roraas T, et al: A systematic review of data on biological variation for alanine aminotransferase, aspartate aminotransferase and g-glutamyl transferase, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 51:1997–2007, 2013.

Cembrowski GS, Chandler EP, Westgard JO: Assessment of "average of normals" quality control procedures and guidelines for implementation, *Am J Clin Pathol* 81:492–499, 1984.

CLSI: *Characterization and qualification of commutable reference materials for laboratory medicine; approved guideline EP30-A*, Wayne, Pa, 2010, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

CLSI: *Quality management system: A model for laboratory services; approved guideline QMS01-A4*, Wayne, PA, 2011b, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

CLSI: *Verification of Comparability of Patient Results within One Healthcare System; approved guideline EP31-A-IR*, Wayne, PA, 2012, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

CLSI: *User evaluation of between-reagent lot variation; approved guideline EP26-A*, Wayne, PA, 2013, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

CLSI: *Evaluation of commutability of processed samples; approved guideline EP14-A3*, Wayne, PA, 2014a, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

CLSI: *Evaluation of precision of quantitative measurement procedures; approved guideline EP05-A3*, Wayne, PA, 2014b, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

CLSI: *Delta checks; approved guideline EP33-A*, Wayne, PA, 2015b, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

CLSI: *Using proficiency testing to improve the clinical laboratory; approved guideline GP27-A3*, Wayne, PA, 2015c, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

Cornbleet PJ, Gochman N: Incorrect least-squares regression coefficients in method comparison analysis, *Clin Chem* 25:432–438, 1979.

Department of Health and Human Services: Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, IQCP announcement letter for CLIA CoC and PPM laboratories, September 30, 2013. http://www.cms.gov/Regulations-and-Guidance/Legislation/CLIA/Individualized_Quality_Control_Plan_IQCP.html (Accessed 12/1/2014).

Ellerbe P, Myers GL, Cooper GR, et al: Comparison of results for cholesterol in human serum obtained by the reference method and by the definitive method of the National Reference System for cholesterol, *Clin Chem* 36:370–375, 1990.

Franzini C, Ceriotti F: Impact of reference materials on accuracy in clinical chemistry, *Clin Biochem* 31:449–457, 1998.

Fraser CG: *Biological variation: From principles to practice. American Association for Clinical Chemistry*, 2001, AACC Press. ISBN 1-890883-49-2.

ISO 17511:2003: *In vitro diagnostic medical devices—Measurement of quantities in biological samples—Metrological traceability of values assigned to calibrators and control materials*, Geneva, Switzerland, 2003, ISO.

ISO 15189:2012: *Medical laboratories—Requirements for quality and competence*, Geneva, Switzerland, 2012, ISO.

Kroll MH, Chesler R: Effect of serum lyophilization on the rate constants of enzymatic methods for measuring cholesterol, *Clin Chem* 36:534–537, 1990.

Levey S, Jennings ER: The use of control charts in the clinical laboratory, *Am J Clin Pathol* 20:1059–1066, 1950.

Linnet K: Choosing quality-control systems to detect maximum clinically allowable errors, *Clin Chem* 35: 284–288, 1989.

Linnet K: Evaluation of regression procedures for methods comparison studies, *Clin Chem* 39:424–432, 1993.

Lund F, Peterson PH, Fraser CG, et al: Calculation of limits for significant bidirectional changes in two or more serial results of a biomarker based on a computer simulation model, *Ann Clin Biochem* 0004563214555163, first published on September 23, 2014 as doi: 10.1177/0004563214555163.

Miller WG: Specimen materials, target values and commutability for external quality assessment (proficiency testing) schemes, *Clin Chim Acta* 327:25–37, 2003.

Miller WG, Erek A, Cunningham TD, et al: Commutability limitations influence quality control results with different reagent lots, *Clin Chem* 57:76–83, 2011b.

Miller WG, Kaufman H, McLendon WW: College of American Pathologists Conference XXIII: Matrix effects and accuracy assessment in clinical chemistry, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 117:343–436, 1993.

Miller WG, Myers GL, Ashwood ER, et al: Creatinine measurement: State of the art in accuracy and inter-laboratory harmonization, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 129:297–304, 2005.

Miller WG, Myers GL, Ashwood ER, et al: State of the art in trueness and inter-laboratory harmonization for 10 analytes in general clinical chemistry, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 132:838–846, 2008.

Myers GL, Miller WG, Coresh J, et al: Recommendations for improving serum creatinine measurement: A report from the laboratory working group of the national kidney disease education program, *Clin Chem* 52:5–18, 2006.

Naito HK, Kwak YS, Hartfiel JL, et al: Matrix effects on proficiency testing materials: Impact on accuracy of cholesterol measurement in laboratories in the nation's largest hospital system, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 117:345–351, 1993.

National Institutes of Health: *Recommendations for improving cholesterol measurement: A report from the Laboratory Standardization Panel of the National Cholesterol Education Program*, Bethesda, MD, 1990, National Institutes of Health. NIH publication no: 90-2964.

Parvin CA: Quality-control (QC) performance measures and the QC planning process, *Clin Chem* 43:602–607, 1997.

Parvin CA: Assessing the impact of the frequency of quality control testing on the quality of reported patient results, *Clin Chem* 54:2049–2054, 2008.

Parvin CA, Gronowski AM: Effect of analytical run length on quality-control (QC) performance and the QC planning process, *Clin Chem* 43:2149–2154, 1997.

Perich C, Minchinela J, Ricos C, et al: Biological variation database: Structure and criteria used for generation and update, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2014. pii: /j/cclm.ahead-of-print/cclm-2014-0739/cclm-2014-0739.xml. doi: 10.1515/cclm-2014-0739. [Epub ahead of print].

Plebani M, Astion ML, Barth JH, et al: Harmonization of quality indicators in laboratory medicine—A preliminary consensus, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 57:951–958, 2014.

Roraas T, Petersen PH, Sandberg S: Confidence intervals and power calculations for within-person biological variation: Effect of analytical imprecision, number of replicates, number of samples, and number of individuals, *Clin Chem* 58:1306–1313, 2012.

Ross JW, Miller WG, Myers GL, et al: The accuracy of laboratory measurements in clinical chemistry—A study of 11 routine chemistry analytes in the College of American Pathologists chemistry survey with fresh frozen serum, definitive methods, and reference methods, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 122:587–608, 1998.

Ryan TP: *Statistical methods for quality control*, New York, 1989, John Wiley & Sons.

Shewhart WA: *Economic control of quality of manufactured product*, New York, 1931, Van Nostrand.

Smith FA, Kroft SH: Exponentially adjusted moving mean procedure for quality control—An optimized patient sample control procedure, *Am J Clin Pathol* 105:44–51, 1996.

Thienpont LM, Stockl D, Friedecky B, et al: Trueness verification in European external quality assessment schemes: Time to care about the quality of the samples, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 63:195–201, 2003.

Vesper HW, Miller WG, Myers GL: Reference materials and commutability, *Clin Biochem Rev* 28:139–147, 2007.

Vesper HW, Thienpont LM: Traceability in laboratory medicine, *Clin Chem* 55:1067–1075, 2009.

Westgard JO, Barry PL, Hunt MR: A multi-rule Shewhart chart for quality control in clinical chemistry, *Clin Chem* 27:493–501, 1981.

Westgard JO, Groth T: Power functions for statistical control rules, *Clin Chem* 25:863–869, 1979.

Westgard JO, Smith FA, Mountain PJ, et al: Design and assessment of average of normals (AON) patient data algorithms to maximize run lengths for automatic process control, *Clin Chem* 42:1683–1688, 1996.

Ye JJ, Ingels SC, Parvin CA: Performance evaluation and planning for patient-based quality control procedures, *Am J Clin Pathol* 113:240–248, 2000.

CHAPTER 11

CLINICAL LABORATORY INFORMATICS

Paul Tranchida, Mark S. Lifshitz, Martin H. Bluth

BASIC INFORMATICS CONCEPTS AND TECHNOLOGY, 130
Hardware and Software, 130
Networks and Security, 131
Databases, 132

LABORATORY INFORMATION SYSTEMS, 132
Legal Requirements, 132
Communications Standards, 133

INFORMATION FLOW, 133
Patient Registration/Identification, 133
Test Orders, 134
Sample Collection and Labeling, 134
Performing Tests, 134
Releasing Results, 134
Reporting Results, 134

BIOINFORMATICS, 134

ISSUES REGARDING IMPLEMENTATION, 135

EDUCATION, 136

THE FUTURE OF INFORMATICS, 136

SELECTED REFERENCES, 136

KEY POINTS

- Certain concepts and terms specific to informatics should be familiar to pathologists working in an ever-modernizing laboratory environment.
- The laboratory information system (LIS) is typically part of a hospital or health care system network of clinical, registration, patient management, and financial systems that exchange information with one another.
- The LIS supports workflow and information flow in all steps of the laboratory testing process, including patient registration, test ordering, sample collection, testing, and reporting.
- Informatics plays a key role in assisting physicians to manage laboratory orders (e.g., clinical pathways and decision support systems) and results (e.g., clinical alerts, interpretive reports, and reflex tests). Together, these approaches maximize the usefulness of the laboratory to clinicians.
- Data exchange among diverse applications in health care depends on coding protocols for identifying procedures and medical conditions, as well as a communication language. At present, Current Procedural Terminology (CPT) is widely used to identify laboratory tests and other medical procedures, but Logical Observation Identifier Names and Codes (LOINC) is a more powerful nomenclature standard for laboratory tests. The International Classification of Diseases (ICD) is most commonly used for coding disease states, whereas the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (SNOMED) is also widely used in pathology and is being greatly enhanced in a new version known as SNOMED-CT. Health Level Seven (HL7) is the most prevalent communication standard in health care.
- The role of the pathologist will likely change as the field of computational pathology continues to evolve. It is focused on incorporating multiple sources of data, analyzing the information, and then presenting actionable knowledge to maximize the benefits of medical decision making.
- The website for the Association for Pathology Informatics (www.pathologyinformatics.org) describes the field of pathology informatics as "[involving] collecting, examining, reporting, and storing large complex sets of data derived from tests performed in clinical laboratories, anatomic pathology laboratories, or research laboratories in order to improve patient care and enhance our understanding of disease-related processes." The high-volume, detailed, and time-sensitive nature of the workflow in the clinical laboratory has helped push the implementation of computing technology to assist in information management.

BASIC INFORMATICS CONCEPTS AND TECHNOLOGY

Before addressing the issues that pertain to each step in the information flow, certain basic definitions are warranted to facilitate comprehension of the technology on which this field is based. The following section is only intended to provide a brief summary of some pathology informatics concepts. Readers interested in expanding their knowledge about this field are advised to consult references that will provide a more comprehensive discussion of these topics (Pantanowitz et al, 2012).

HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE

A *computer* is a device that follows instructions to work with electronic data based on user input. *Hardware* refers to the physical components of an information system. *Software* refers to programs (which are essentially sets of instructions) that allow computers or other devices to perform tasks.

A *file* is a collection of data identified by a specific name and grouped related to a specific purpose. The two main types are *applications* (also referred to as "executable" files) and *data* files (e.g., image, text/document, sound). A *folder* (or *directory*) simply refers to a collection of files.

A *bit* (derived from "binary digit") is the basic unit of digital information, and the *byte* is the most common unit of measurement used and almost always refers to 8 bits. ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) is the standard dictionary for combinations of bits that represent the common letters, numbers, and symbols by which characters are represented on a computer screen or paper printout.

A *central processing unit* (CPU) refers to the circuitry that serves as the main information processor and is driven by clock pulses; the speed is most commonly measured in gigahertz (1 GHz = 1 billion clock pulses per second). *Memory* refers to the physical chips on the motherboard that hold programs and data for rapid access by CPU. The two types are read-only memory (ROM), which is permanent, and random-access memory (RAM), which is volatile (i.e., the contents of these chips are lost when the computer is turned off).

Storage refers to the physical media that store data permanently. It can be internal (hard drive) or removable (CD-ROM, USB drive). Many labs utilize drive arrays that are multiple hard drives configured to look like a single-system drive. A common type of drive array is the RAID (redundant array of independent [formerly inexpensive] disks), which simultaneously uses two or more hard disk drives to achieve greater levels of performance, reliability, and/or larger data volume sizes. Mirrored drive arrays refer to arrays where copies of files are written to each drive in the array. Different parts of the file are read simultaneously from different disks and "assembled" for delivery. This system is redundant: If one drive fails, a file can be read from the other intact drive(s).

Recently, "cloud" storage systems have been developed where data are saved via an Internet connection (see below) to an off-site storage system maintained by a third-party provider; this data can then be retrieved from the same or a different location or device as long as it also has Internet access.

The *operating system* of a device—whether a computer or analyzer—refers to a set of programs responsible for the management and coordination of activities and the sharing of resources. In the case of a computer, the operating system acts as a host for application programs. The applications are created within programming languages, which are artificial languages used to control behavior of a computer. Programming languages can be specific for a hardware platform (e.g., BASIC, FORTRAN), or hardware-independent (e.g., Java). In addition, the computer needs small specialized files called drivers that are specific to an operating system, which allow identification and utilization of various external peripherals and other devices. It can be an onerous task to ensure hardware and software compatibility with all the different electronic systems in a laboratory, especially if some of the equipment was introduced prior to an operating system upgrade of the predominant computing platform in the laboratory.

NETWORKS AND SECURITY

A *network* is an interconnected group of computers that share information and resources, and as it pertains to the laboratory, it refers to the ability to obtain orders from and send results to other information systems. Most computers need a card or adapter to connect to a network, and Ethernet is the most common type of networking standard. There are a variety of network types: *local area network* (LAN), which covers a small geographic area, and *wide area network* (WAN), which covers a broad area. The concept of *bandwidth* refers to the rate of data transmission. The different components of a network are listed in Table 11-1 and illustrated in Figure 11-1.

Networking involves two parts: a *client* and a *server*. The client is the computer/device that performs a task or with which the end user interacts. The different client types are "thin" and "thick" or "fat"; the difference between the two is that in the former, all application logic executes on the client server, whereas in the latter, the client performs most of the data processing operations. The traditional incarnation of the client–server relationship consisted of *mainframes* and *terminals* that fulfilled the roles of the servers and thin clients, respectively. An older LIS that still has this type of configuration generally cannot replace the old terminals once they begin to fail and therefore needs to run a program called a *terminal emulator*, which acts like a terminal but can be run on more modern hardware.

The *Internet* refers to a worldwide, publicly accessible series of interconnected computer networks. The data are transmitted by packet switching using the standard *Internet Protocol* (*IP*). The *World Wide Web* (*WWW*) refers to a hypertext-based data system that uses the Internet as its transportation (hypertext is text on a computer that will lead the user to other related information on demand). The language used is most commonly *HyperText Markup Language* (*HTML*), which specifies appearance of a web page when interpreted by a web browser. An *intranet* refers to a private network that uses the aforementioned Internet protocols to share information within an organization, as opposed to between separate entities.

Data security is of paramount importance for all networks. One way of ensuring secure data is *encryption*, which refers to the conversion of data via an algorithm that rearranges bits that cannot be deciphered without decryption. A common way of engaging in safe networking is through a *virtual private network* (VPN), which is a method by which a user can access an organization's internal network over the Internet in a secure manner. It provides users who are not on that internal network secure access to resources inside it. This is done by applying a software layer on top of an existing network, essentially creating virtual "tunnels" that wrap data packets destined for the internal network and then encrypting those packets to send them across the Internet.

TABLE 11-1
Common Network Components

Component	Function
Modem ("modulator-demodulator")	Modulates an analog carrier signal to encode digital information
Router	Routes and forwards information
Server	Accepts connections to service requests by sending back responses
Client	Application or system that accesses the server
Firewall	Device and/or software that inspects network traffic passing through it and denies or permits passage based on a set of rules

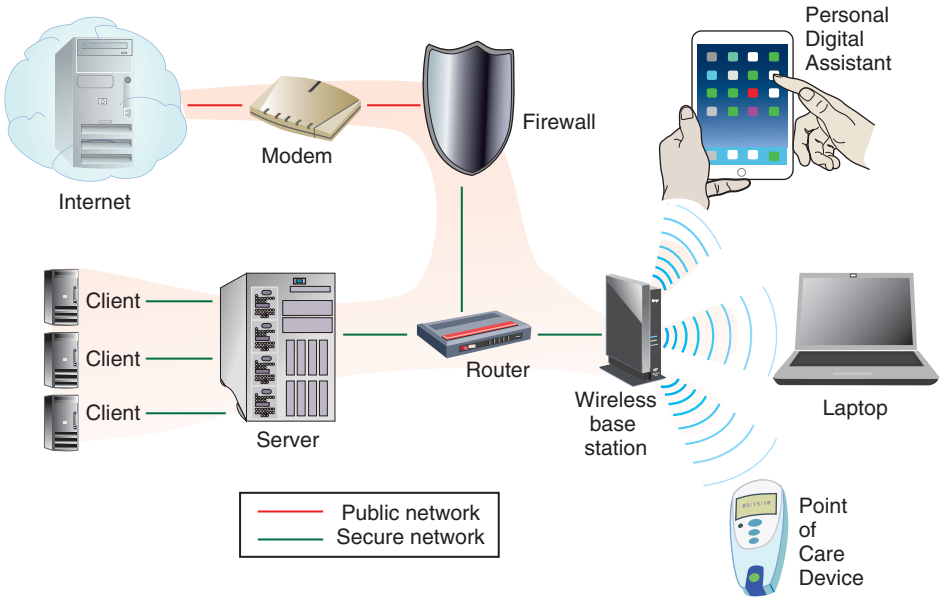


Figure 11-1 **Example of a computer network.** The red and green lines represent physically cabled connections (e.g., Ethernet), while the waves represent wireless connections.

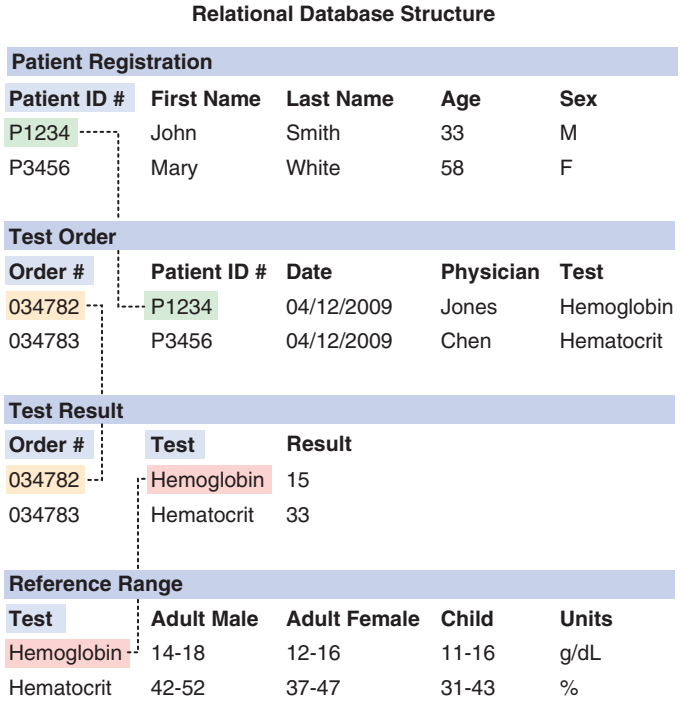


Figure 11-2 Sample relational database.

TABLE 11-2
Common Health Care Enterprise Information Systems

System	Functionality
Admission, discharge, and transfer (ADT)	Runs the entire patient care workflow, from the registration of patient information to bed tracking and discharge
Electronic clinical information system (CIS)	Contains patient information from all the inpatient and outpatient systems in an enterprise and is used for reviewing patient data
Laboratory information system (LIS)	Electronic data processing and information management functions necessary for laboratory operations
Electronic medical record (EMR)	A chronologically ordered paperless chart that summarizes the clinical history with diagnostic test results
Enterprise data warehouse (EDW)	Similar to the CIS, except the information is utilized for research through using databases and data analysis tools to uncover hidden patterns and relationships in data ("data mining")
Billing	Receives information on charges and/or tests performed to calculate charges to patient insurance

DATABASES

At their core, the building blocks of information systems (IS) are databases, which are structured collections of records comprised of data fields. They need to be managed by a set of programs called a database management system (DBMS). The two types of databases are *flat file* and *relational*. A flat file database is a single, two-dimensional array of data elements, similar to an electronic spreadsheet. In contrast, in a relational database, the data are organized in tables. In a table, each record (row) contains a unique instance of data for the fields (columns), and tables are related by a single field (the *primary key*) between common fields. Figure 11-2 provides a simplified example of a relational database for clinical laboratory data, comprised of three linked tables: Patients (containing patient registration data), Orders (containing individual test orders and the test results), and Tests (containing generic information about the tests, such as reference range). The virtue of this structure is that redundancy is eliminated—a concept known as *normalization*. For example, demographic data about each patient are given only once, in the Patients table. Other tables then link to that information using only the unique PatientID identifier. If instead other tables included both PatientID and, say, the patient's name, there would be an opportunity for inconsistencies to arise, and it would be more difficult to make updates such as correcting the spelling of the name. The modest penalty for the normalized, relational architecture is that useful reports must typically integrate information from several tables, rather than simply printing records from a single table. This can, however, be readily accomplished using a powerful, generic language known as Structured Query Language (SQL).

LABORATORY INFORMATION SYSTEMS

An *information system (IS)* refers empirically to the hardware, software, and connectivity designed to perform data management functions. Different types of ISs are listed in Table 11-2. The laboratory information system (LIS) was classically a standalone insulated system that generated results for manual reporting by the laboratory personnel or for viewing by the clinician. The LIS was used to communicate with analyzers and external systems like the larger clinical information systems (CISs) and/or billing systems. Today, it is frequently a major part of a health care system network, with communication with the patient registration and billing systems and electronic medical records (EMRs). The LIS exchanges information with all of these systems, and the effectiveness of this exchange is dependent on successful hardware and software implementation. To exchange information with different systems, an LIS uses an interface, which is a combination of software and connections that translate electronic messages. The types of interfaces are instrument interfaces and application (other systems) interfaces. If the systems are not compatible, a laboratory may engage in ad hoc development of software known as *middleware* to enable communication between them. Middleware can also be developed and deployed to address functionalities often not included in a hospital system's LIS to help improve different aspects of the laboratory workflow, such as preanalytic error detection (Baron et al., 2012), centralized local rule control (Tate, 2012), and establishing a pathologist interpretation service to reduce unnecessary tests (Van Cott, 2014). If multiple systems need to exchange information, the use of an application known as an *interface engine* reduces the number of individual interfaces.

The LIS is a database that establishes and maintains standard definitions and information processing procedures. All LIS systems utilize *dictionaries* (also referred to as *maintenance tables*) that provide logical framework for laboratory operations and workflow. Dictionaries structure and standardize procedures and standardize laboratory and LIS terminology. They define allowable entries for data fields in addition to the content and format of elements that appear on reports. The different worksheets and workstations that are available in the laboratory are specified in the LIS tables, and part of a test definition is assignment of the test to laboratory workstation/instrument or laboratory location. Test orders are routed to LIS worksheets that are associated with given workstations; essentially, worksheets define the workflow in the laboratory because they define which tests are performed at different workstations. An emerging and popular feature of the LIS is the ability to perform *autoverification* in LIS, which refers to release of results from automated analyzers directly to LIS without prior human review. The autoverification criteria are defined and detailed in LIS tables and specify things like allowable numeric result ranges and delta checks (comparison to previous results).

Because of the great variation in types of data handled by different parts of the laboratory, LIS systems are typically comprised of several modules, which may even be entirely disparate systems from different vendors. A general laboratory module might include tests in the area of chemistry, hematology, and serology, where test results are usually discrete—in other words, they consist of a single number or short string of text. The general LIS module serves many functions, some of which are listed in Table 11-3. Other areas of the lab may require very different functionality and can differ from lab to lab, depending on specific needs.

LEGAL REQUIREMENTS

There are a number of regulatory/accrediting bodies pertinent to LIS systems. In the U.S. government, they include the Center for Medicare/Medicaid Services (CMS), Food and Drug Administration (FDA), Computer/Electronic Accommodations Program (CAP), The Joint

TABLE 11-3
Laboratory Information System Functions

Preanalysis	Patient registration (if not received from external system) Test ordering Customized requisitions (e.g., outreach clients) Phlebotomy draw lists Bar-coded collection labels and aliquot labels Specimen tracking/racking system
Analysis	Instrument work list (via interface and automatic download) Manual work list Manual results entry Automated results entry via interface Result validation and manual or automatic release Quality control
Postanalysis	Requisition-based patient reports (final, partial) Cumulative patient reports Corrected report Results inquiry Electronic reporting to external interfaced systems (e.g., CIS, billing)
Management	Pending (incomplete) list Turnaround time reports Workload statistics Ad hoc report writer CIS and instrument integrity monitoring tools

Commission (TJC), and American Association of Blood Banks (AABB). The legal requirements for LISs involve issues such as unique specimen and patient identification, date of specimen collection, date and time of specimen receipt in the lab, records and dates of all specimen testing, personnel who performed the test(s), and the name and address of the laboratory where the test was performed, among others. The CAP Laboratory General Checklist requires periodic verification of data sent from an LIS to other computer systems.

The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA) requires all health plans to accept electronically filed claims in a standard format (EDI). Security measures must be in place to protect health information. There are limits on the use/disclosure of health information, and reasonable safeguards must be used to protect against accidental disclosure. HIPAA also addresses issues of consent with respect to protected health information (PHI), which refers to anything that could be used to identify an individual and relates to health care or payment. A patient's consent is required to use or disclose PHI for treatment, payment, or health care operations (TPO). The law requires minimum necessary use or disclosure of PHI.

The recently passed Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA) aims to institute a series of changes to standardize billing and require health plans to begin adopting and implementing rules for the secure, confidential, electronic exchange of health information. In comparison to traditional paper records, electronic health records can reduce paperwork and administrative burdens, cut costs, reduce medical errors, and, most important, improve the quality of health care (http://www.hhs.gov/healthcare/facts/timeline/timeline-text.html).

COMMUNICATION STANDARDS

The use of conventions and definitions to standardize information exchange between different systems is a less complex and time-consuming strategy than the traditional creation of custom interfaces between such applications. Originally the major need for electronic transmission of these data was to bill the federal government (Medicare) and other payors for individual services provided. For this purpose, coding of laboratory procedures using CPT and coding medical conditions using ICD have been the norm. A widely adopted standard developed by the health care industry is Health Level 7 (HL7) (www.hl7.org), which is a protocol for electronic data exchange and specifies syntax and rules for messaging. As of this writing, the most current version of HL7 (HL7 Version 3) utilizes a messaging syntax based on XML (Extensible Markup Language). XML is a method to describe data, structure information, and format documents, and it accomplishes this by using markup tags that describe the data marked by the tag; see the example given in Figure 11-3. Another standard

```
<Patients>

<Patient>
<PatientID>P1234</PatientID>
<FirstName>John</FirstName>
<LastName>Smith</LastName>
<Age>33</Age>
<Sex>M</Sex>
</Patient>

<Patient>
<PatientID>P3456</PatientID>
<FirstName>Mary</FirstName>
<LastName>White</LastName>
<Age>58</Age>
<Sex>F</Sex>
</Patient>

</Patients>
```

Figure 11-3 Example of an XML database. This XML code contains the data in the Patients table shown in Figure 11-2. This text can be read into, for example, Microsoft Excel, which can then generate a spreadsheet to display the data.

is Logical Observation Identifiers Names and Codes (LOINC) (www.loinc.org), which is a set of universal identifiers for laboratory test code data fields within HL7 messages and in databases (McDonald et al, 2003). It provides a structured naming convention for describing laboratory tests and has fewer limitations than CPT. The ASTM (American Society for Testing and Materials) specifies protocols and formats for instrument interfaces, bar codes (e.g., Code 39, Code 128), and other systems and components. The SNOMED-CT system (Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine—Clinical Terms) is a very elaborate nomenclature for medical conditions and related concepts, containing more than 300,000 unique clinical concepts. Originally developed by the College of American Pathologists, it is now maintained by the International Healthcare Terminology Standards Development Organization, which was formed in 2006. A receiving system may not recognize certain codes as written, so a *translation table* relates a code to its equivalent in the receiving system.

INFORMATION FLOW

The flow of information as it pertains to the LIS is generally uniform across different laboratories and is summarized in Table 11-4 and Figure 11-4, although there are obviously variations for different institutions. The critical issues of this workflow concern patient safety and confidentiality, capture of the clinically meaningful data, unambiguous identification of data elements, and synchronization of information among different systems within the health care institution (Aller, 2001). This section provides an overview of the information exchange steps, as well as the key issues that pertain to each.

PATIENT REGISTRATION/IDENTIFICATION

A critical first step in any workflow is to register the patient and assign a unique identification number (ID); this is often assigned in the admission, discharge, and transfer (ADT) system. A unique laboratory encounter number may also be generated at the time and then again for subsequent encounters for the patient. No tests can be ordered until the patient record is created.

The patient ID and demographic data include name, birth date, sex, race, address, phone number, Social Security number, medical record number, insurance and billing information, and other information as needed. Because the patient ID must be unique, the Social Security number or an institution-generated number exclusive to the registration system should be utilized.

No tests can be ordered until the patient record is created. Bar coding may be utilized to ensure correct patient identification when obtaining samples. The radio-frequency identification (RFID) system is a new technology that provides hands-off, zero-error identification (Westra, 2009). It consists of a patient tag and a computerized scanner or reader. The "smart" label or tag contains human-readable information, a bar code, and an integrated circuit (IC) chip with memory. A small amount of radio-frequency energy ("excitation signal") is released from the scanner, energizing the RFID tag, which then emits a radio-frequency signal ("return

TABLE 11-4
Key Steps in Laboratory Information Flow for a Hospital Patient

Step	Description
Register patient	Patient record (e.g., ID number, name, sex, age, location) must be created in LIS before tests can be ordered. LIS usually automatically receives these data from a hospital registration system (when the patient is admitted).
Order tests	Physician orders tests on a patient to be drawn as part of the laboratory's morning blood collection rounds. The order is entered into the CIS and electronically sent to the LIS.
Collect sample	Before morning blood collection, the LIS prints a list of all patients who have to be drawn and the appropriate number of sample bar-code labels for each patient order. Each bar code has a patient ID, sample container type (e.g., red-top tube), and laboratory workstation (that can be used to sort the tube once it reaches the laboratory). Another and increasingly popular approach is for patient caregivers or nurses to collect the blood sample. Immediately prior to collection, sample bar-code labels can be printed (on demand) at the nursing station on an LIS printer or portable bedside printer.
Receive sample	When samples arrive in the laboratory, their status has to be updated in the LIS from "collected" to "received." This can be done by scanning each sample container's bar-code ID into the LIS. Once the sample is "received," the LIS transmits the test order to the analyzer who will perform the test.
Run sample	The sample is loaded onto the analyzer, and the bar code is read. Having already received the test order from the LIS, the analyzer knows which tests to perform on the patient. No work list is needed. For manually performed tests, the technologist prints a work list from the LIS. The work list contains the names of the patients and the tests ordered on each. Next to each test is a space to record the result.
Review results	The analyzer produces the results and sends them to the LIS. These results are only viewable to technologists because they have not been released for general viewing. The LIS can be programmed to flag certain results—for example, critical values—so the technologist can easily identify what needs to be repeated or further evaluated.
Release results	The technologist releases the results. (Unflagged results are usually reviewed and released at the same time.) The LIS can also be programmed to automatically review and release normal results or results that fall within a certain range. The latter approach reduces the number of tests that a technologist has to review. Upon release, the results are automatically transmitted to the CIS.
Report results	The physician can view the results on the CIS screen. Reports are printed when needed from the LIS.

signal") transmitting the patient's ID. Though several issues (e.g., data encryption and protocol standardization) are not completely resolved, RFID technology offers several benefits: passive operation and dynamic data storage, features that favor its use in sample collection and tracking, bedside testing, drug management, and infection control.

TEST ORDERS

After the patient is identified, tests are ordered either manually with paper forms or electronically through the CIS, with the orders then being electronically sent to the LIS. Having the physician at the point of care directly enter laboratory orders electronically is an effective way to reduce the possibility of introducing errors that is inherent in having to rekey the requested tests from the paper form. Computerized pathology test order entry has also been shown to reduce laboratory turnaround time (Westbrook et al, 2006). The important data pertaining to the request (date/time/location of collection, storage medium, etc.) can be automatically generated at this time as well. The electronic nature of both the patient's clinical data and the test ordering system allows for the use of logic operations to ensure patient safety and optimal test utilization.

SAMPLE COLLECTION AND LABELING

A patient sample is either collected by the lab after an order is received or directly sent to the lab with a request. For inpatient samples, the LIS prints the list of patients who need to be drawn. At this point labels can also be printed identifying the necessary tubes and/or containers. The label printing can also take place at the patient's bedside, using portable printers connected wirelessly to the LIS to confirm correct patient identification immediately after bar coding the patient's wristband. When the sample is received, the LIS indicates receipt of the sample by changing its status from the previous value of "to be collected." The collected sample is then run on an analyzer.

PERFORMING TESTS

The analyzers of a clinical laboratory can communicate with the LIS unidirectionally or bidirectionally. Unidirectional analyzer communication typically refers to the reporting of the results to the LIS with no input from the latter during the testing process. Alternatively, analyzers that bidirectionally communicate with the LIS are able to receive orders from the LIS and then send results back. Certain analyzers may have the ability to read bar codes off specimen containers to identify which samples are about to be processed and send corresponding specimen status updates to the LIS.

RELEASING RESULTS

Regardless of whether the results are manually entered or automatically transferred, the computer performs a validity check on the results once they are received. Panic values can be flagged by the LIS once a valid result is determined to fall into a critical range. Autovalidation protocols can be used to automatically release results without review by the technologist or pathologist.

REPORTING RESULTS

Laboratory results can be electronically reported to a variety of clinical systems, including the Health Information System, the Electronic Data Repository (EDR), the EMR, and state or federal public health agencies (White, 1999). The proliferation of different communication technologies allows a number of ways of reporting results to physicians, especially time-sensitive critical values. Computerized alerts can assist in improving the timeliness of reporting and clinicians' responses to laboratory values (Staes et al, 2008). For routine test results, the World Wide Web allows a physician to review at his or her convenience a patient's results on the CIS screen and print them out as needed. The HTML code in web pages can generate new content automatically in response to user feedback. Data in the EDR can be transferred in batches to an enterprise data warehouse (EDW), where algorithms can be performed to determine general patterns and enhance interpretation of laboratory values, such as the development of more clinically useful reference ranges for certain analytes (Bock et al, 2003).

BIOINFORMATICS

Bioinformatics most commonly refers to the division of informatics that studies how information is stored in biological systems, from the molecular to the macromolecular level, with a large part of the focus being on DNA, RNA, and protein sequences (Sinard, 2006). As Batley and Edwards (2009) have noted, the numerous improvements in DNA sequencing technology have led to a corresponding marked increase in the amount of sequence data generated, which provides a challenge for bioinformatics in terms of its management, storage, and visualization. Implemented properly, informatics can facilitate patient registration, specimen tracking, tissue cataloguing, quality assurance, and specimen availability (Qualman et al, 2003). Research is currently underway that would eventually allow a patient's genetic profile to be handled by, or communicated to, the EMR. In turn, the EMR could then provide a valuable role in using the information contained in the patient's bioinformatics profile to help pathologists

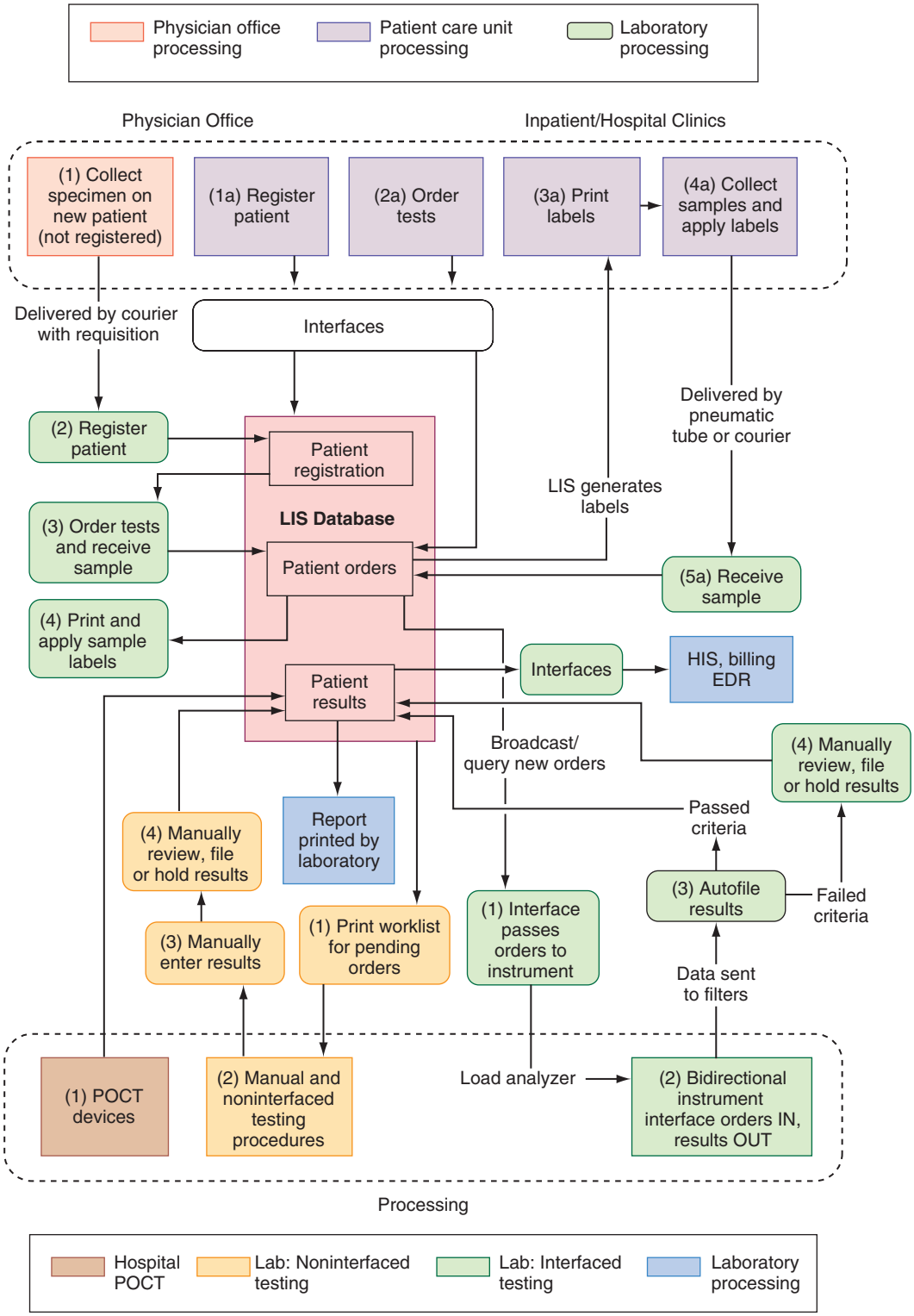


Figure 11-4 **The role of the LIS in ADT and processing orders and results.** *POCT,* Point-of-care testing.

and clinicians determine the optimal diagnostic tests and/or therapeutic measures, respectively.

ISSUES REGARDING IMPLEMENTATION

Although the opportunities to streamline workflow offered by computing technology are numerous, there are still many potential pitfalls and opportunities for error of which the diligent informatician should be aware. When deciding to purchase hardware or software for the laboratory, a request for proposal (RFP) should be submitted to the vendor. The main component of an RFP is a detailed listing of required functionality and features. The RFP asks the vendor to indicate whether specified capabilities are present, corporate information, pricing, and other attributes of the system. The RFP responses become part of the final contract. A different model is the application service provider (ASP) model, which is composed of a contractual agreement: The provider delivers a service remotely over a network, and the vendor manages everything (hardware, software, security, upgrades). Often there is a fixed subscription fee, either per transaction or a flat rate. Another type is the service level agreement (SLA), which is a contract that defines the technical and business parameters of the relationship between the IT vendor and the client, particularly for an ASP arrangement. The key terms of the SLA are *responsibility* (who does what), *performance*, and *remediation* for resolving problems. Quantifiable metrics need to be specified, such as system uptime (%), system

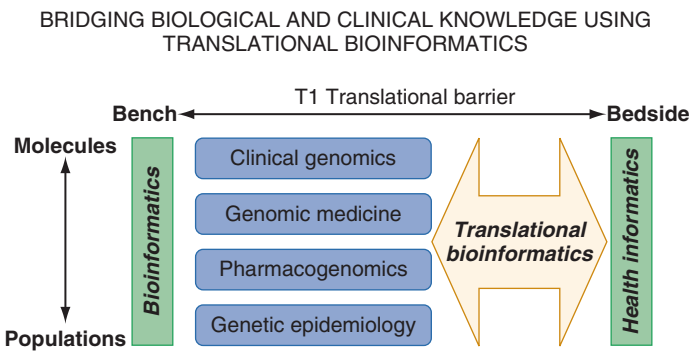


Figure 11-5 Translational Bioinformatics. Bioinformatics approaches, focused on areas from molecules to populations (e.g., clinical genomics, genomic medicine ("personalized medicine"), pharmacogenomics, and genetic epidemiology), form the foundation of approaches that are used by Translational Bioinformatics (TBI; large bidirectional arrow). TBI thus bridges knowledge acquired from both the biological (using bioinformatics) and health (using health informatics) domains. Accordingly, the success of TBI will result in the crossing of the T1 translational barrier and thus link innovations from bench to bedside. (Reproduced with permission from Sarkar NI, et al. Translational Bioinformatics: Linking knowledge across biological and clinical realms. *J Am Med Inform Assoc* 18:354–357, 2011.)

response time, and time to address problem calls. Lack of appropriate attention to these issues can cause considerable logistical and operational problems down the road.

One of the most critical features of an information system is receiving assurance that the data that are transferred from one system to another are accurate and valid. The CAP Laboratory General Checklist Questionnaire requires periodic verification of data sent from LIS to other computer systems. Absence of proof of fulfilling this requirement is a Phase II violation.

Because many pathology practices evaluate patient samples from independent private physician offices in addition to those from their own institutions, these patients will need a unique identifier generated by the clinical information system. The CIS must also be able to store and link together all identifiers generated for the same patient if and when he or she submits additional specimens within the hosting institution.

Security is also of paramount concern when it comes to transferring patient data many times over a network. To comply with HIPAA, all laboratories should have safeguards in place to ensure that patient data are accessed only by the appropriate individuals in the appropriate circumstances. This is essential not just with transfer of data between information systems but also with electronic correspondence (e.g., e-mail), which laboratory personnel frequently use.

EDUCATION

The significant advances in network speed and the increased graphics capabilities of most computers, especially portable ones, allow pathologists to learn about a variety of topics in both the clinical and anatomic fields and obtain credit for it. In addition to the proprietary courses offered by various pathology societies, some educational resources are available free of charge in the form of *wikis*, which are websites that contain information on a particular subject and allow visitors to make changes, contributions, or corrections to the text. The field of pathology informatics, for example, has a dedicated web page to help interested students learn or instructors to develop a curriculum for teaching various topics in different informatics-related categories (http://pathinformatics.wikispaces.com).

THE FUTURE OF INFORMATICS

With the emergence of new technologies, especially in the realm of bioinformatics, the roles of pathologists and the laboratory will undoubtedly be redefined over time. Microfluidic instrumentation is being applied to common laboratory techniques, essentially providing a "lab-on-a-chip" solution that allows a patient-centric approach to testing and may eventually perform at levels comparable to centralized analyzers (Yager et al, 2006). The efforts of Patel and colleagues (2007) in creating an informatics model for sharing information involving tissue banks from different institutions demonstrate how standardized communication protocols and shared common data elements allow free exchange of information to assist with research projects, thus enabling any laboratory to have a role in real-time collaboration in research. As society in general continues to become more knowledgeable about information technology as well, many patients may entrust private companies to safeguarding their personal health information, and laboratories will have to communicate with these facilities.

Recently, the term *computational pathology* was proposed to define an approach to diagnosis that incorporates multiple sources of raw data, such as electronic medical records, laboratory data, and imaging; extracts biologically and clinically relevant information from those data; uses mathematical models at the levels of molecules, individuals, and populations to generate diagnostic inferences and predictions; and presents that clinically actionable knowledge to customers through dynamic and integrated reports and interfaces, enabling physicians, patients, laboratory personnel, and other health care system stakeholders to make the best possible medical decisions (Louis et al, 2014). Furthermore, the advent of multiplex data sets generated from clinically related "omics" (genomics, proteomics, metabolomics, lipomics, etc.) medicine (often referred to as components of personalized medicine) and epidemiology is prompting the maturation of a related gestalt called *translational bioinformatics (TBI)* (Figure 11-5). This holds promise as a way to link applied knowledge obtained from both biological and health domains toward clinical utility (Sarkar et al, 2011). As such, with the appropriate tools and training, the role of the pathologist can change from its traditional one of observation to one that is more far reaching and long lasting for patients.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

McDonald CJ, Huff SM, Suico JG, et al: LOINC, a universal standard for identifying laboratory observations: A 5-year update, *Clin Chem* 49:624–633, 2003.
A valuable summary of LOINC, with a list of helpful resources for further education.

Pantanowitz L, Tuthill JM, Balis UGJ: *Pathology informatics: Theory and practice*, Chicago, 2012, ASCP Press.
A current and comprehensive review of informatics.

Yager P, Edwards T, Fu E, et al: Microfluidic diagnostic technologies for global public health, *Nature* 442(7101):412–418, 2006. Review.
Informative overview of "lab-on-a-chip"-type diagnostic systems and their potential benefit for developing countries.

REFERENCES

Aller RD: Connectivity from source to action, *Clin Chemistry* 47(8):1521–1525, 2001.

Baron JM, Mermel CH, Lewandrowski KB, et al: Detection of preanalytic laboratory testing errors using a statistically guided protocol, *Am J Clin Pathol* 138(3):406–413, 2012.

Batley J, Edwards D: Genome sequence data: Management, storage, and visualization, *Biotechniques* 46(5):333–334, 336, 2009.

Bock BJ, Dolan CT, Miller GC, et al: The data warehouse as a foundation for population-based reference intervals, *Am J Clin Pathol* 120(5):662–670, 2003.

Louis DN, Gerber GK, Baron JM, et al: Computational pathology: An emerging definition, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 138(9):1133–1138, 2014.

Patel AA, Gilbertson JR, Showe LC, et al: A novel cross-disciplinary multi-institute approach to translational cancer research: Lessons learned from Pennsylvania Cancer Alliance Bioinformatics Consortium (PCABC), *Cancer Inform.* 3:255–274, 2007.

Qualman SJ, Bowen J, Brewer-Swartz S, et al: The role of tumor banking and related informatics in molecular research. In Ladanyi M, Gerald W, editors: *Expression profiling of human tumors: Diagnostic and research applications*, Totowa, NJ, 2003, Humana Press Inc, pp 103–117.

Sarkar IN, Butte AJ, Lussier YA, et al: Translational bioinformatics: Linking knowledge across biological and clinical realms, *J Am Med Inform Assoc* 18:354–357, 2011.

Sinard JH: *Practical pathology informatics: Demystifying informatics for the practicing anatomic pathologist*, London, 2006, Springer-Verlag, p 380.

Staes CJ, Evans RS, Rocha BH, et al: Computerized alerts improve outpatient laboratory monitoring of transplant patients, *J Am Med Inform Assoc* 15(3):324–332, 2008.

Tate A: Middleware: Don't rule it out, *MLO Med Lab Obs* 44(10):20, 2012.

Van Cott EM: Laboratory test interpretations and algorithms in utilization management, *Clin Chim Acta* 427:188–192, 2014.

Westbrook JI, Georgiou A, Dimos A, et al: Computerised pathology test order entry reduces laboratory turnaround times and influences tests ordered by hospital clinicians: A controlled before and after study, *J Clin Pathol* 59(5):533–536, 2006. [Epub 2006 Feb 3].

Westra BL: Radio frequency identification, *Am J Nurs* 109:34–36, 2009.

White MD: Evaluation of vocabularies for electronic laboratory reporting to public health agencies, *J Am Med Inform Assoc* 6:185–194, 1999.

CHAPTER 12

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Mark S. Lifshitz, Robert DeCresce

INDUSTRY OVERVIEW, 137

DEFINING AND IDENTIFYING COSTS, 137

REVENUE, 139

PAYERS AND REIMBURSEMENT, 139
Private Insurance, 139
Government Payers, 141

REIMBURSEMENT CODING SYSTEMS, 141
Why Accurate Coding Is Important, 142
Medicare Reimbursement, 142

FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE AND MONITORING, 144
Budgeting, 144
Variance Analysis, 145
Financial Reporting and Statements, 145
Benchmarking and Productivity Measures, 145

EVALUATING A CAPITAL PROJECT, 146
Payback Period, 147
Breakeven Point, 147
Return on Investment, 147
Net Present Value, 147
Internal Rate of Return, 147
Interpretation of Financial Calculations, 147

CAPITAL ACQUISITION METHODS, 147

SELECTED REFERENCES, 148

KEY POINTS

- Costs can be described in different ways, depending on how they relate to laboratory operations (direct/indirect), change with test volume (variable/fixed), pertain to staffing (salary/nonsalary), or are associated with the useful life of supplies or equipment (operating/capital). Cost per reportable result is a key indicator.
- Reimbursement for laboratory services comes mostly from third-party payers such as Medicare (government) and insurance companies (nongovernment/private insurance), and payments are almost always less than charges.
- Inpatient laboratory testing charges are usually not reimbursed directly; they are considered part of a per diem rate (i.e., general hospital daily room reimbursement rate) or a case rate, such as diagnosis-related group rate (i.e., set rate for the entire hospital stay, regardless of actual length of stay). Thus inpatient laboratory testing is usually considered a "cost center." In contrast, outpatient laboratory charges are reimbursed directly; therefore, outpatient testing is usually considered a "revenue center."
- For reimbursement purposes, Current Procedural Terminology codes describe tests, and *International Classification of Diseases, Tenth Revision* (*ICD-10*), codes describe the diagnosis. Medical necessity requirements may limit reimbursement to those tests associated with specific predefined diagnoses.
- Budgeting is the process of planning, forecasting, controlling, and monitoring the financial resources of an organization.
- A variety of financial tools are used to evaluate a capital project, such as purchasing a chemistry analyzer. These measure how long it takes to recoup an investment (payback) and how much it generates in today's dollars (net present value) and its rate of return (internal rate of return).
- Laboratory equipment can be acquired in different ways, including purchase, lease, and per-test payment. Each has pros and cons.

Every organization, no matter the products or services it provides, must be concerned with the management, oversight, and accounting of its monetary resources. To sustain a viable, competitive entity, an organization not only must recoup the cost of operations but must have a positive net income to reinvest in itself. The laboratory is no exception. To be successful in the financial management of the laboratory, the director/manager must be able to identify and categorize costs, understand the relationships between revenue and reimbursement, become familiar with the budget process, and use financial ratios and information to make sound decisions. Credibility with administrators and colleagues demands that the director/manager be comfortable and confident when explaining financial issues and when justifying the need for additional resources.

INDUSTRY OVERVIEW

Most industries in the United States are subject to traditional free-market competition. However, this principle does not fully apply to health care because relatively few people who use health care pay directly for it. Most people are beneficiaries of some form of health insurance. This, in combination with the increasing numbers of uninsured and underinsured, has led to a system that provides services even when no one pays adequately for them. Most medical claims are paid by a third party such as the government (Medicare, Medicaid) or a private insurance company. Thus someone other than the patient usually pays the provider of health care services (Snyder & Wilkinson, 1998).

The health care industry is one of the largest industries in the United States and continues to be a growing sector of the gross domestic product, having increased from 5.1% ($27 billion) in 1960 to 17.4% ($2.9 trillion or $9255 per person) in 2013 (Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services [CMS], 2014b). Hospitals continue to be a driving force behind escalating health care costs. Most U.S. hospitals are tax exempt, not-for-profit entities. Though "not-for-profit" suggests that no profit is made, it actually means that profits are not distributed to owners or shareholders; instead, profits are reinvested in the organization. Historically, not-for-profit status led hospital administrators to be less profit conscious than counterparts in other businesses. However, today's hospitals are having a difficult time just covering operating costs, given dwindling reimbursement and increasing supply and labor costs. With scarce money left for capital reinvestment in equipment, buildings, facilities, and technology, hospitals are aggressively seeking new ways to produce a profit to invest for the future.

DEFINING AND IDENTIFYING COSTS

A cost (expense) is the supply, labor, and overhead money spent on a product or service (Travers, 1997). It is important to understand costs to accurately price tests and other services, to determine when and how to offer new tests, and to determine whether to acquire new outreach client business or a managed care contract. Costs can be classified in different ways (Table 12-1).

Direct costs are expenses that can easily be traced directly to an end product. In the laboratory setting, the end product is a billable test. Examples are reagents, consumables, and hands-on technologist time. In contrast, *indirect costs* are not directly related to a billable test but are necessary for its production. Indirect costs are often referred to as overhead. Examples are proficiency testing and utility expenses.

Variable costs change proportionately with the volume of tests. As test volume grows, so do reagent costs. If the reagent cost per test is $1.00,

TABLE 12-1
Cost Classification

	Direct	Indirect	Variable	Fixed	Salary	Nonsalary	Operating	Capital
Reagents	■		■			■	■	
Proficiency testing		■		■		■	■	
Analyzer service	■			■		■	■	
Analyzer	■			■		■		■
Testing staff	■			■	■		■	
Management staff		■		■	■		■	
Rent		■		■		■	■	

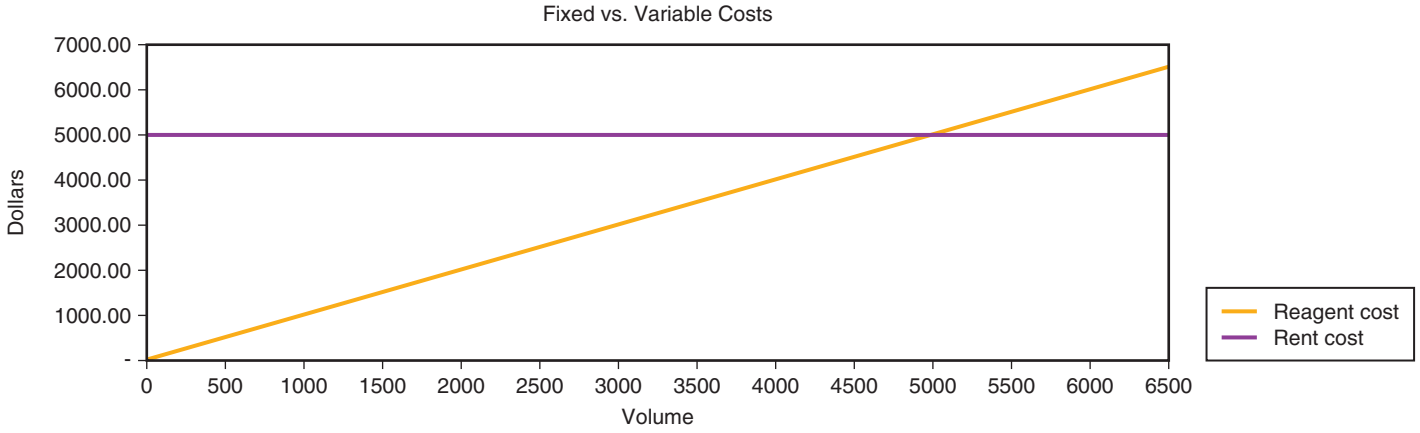


Figure 12-1 **Fixed costs such as rent remain constant.** Variable costs such as reagents are directly proportional to test volume.

when 1000 tests are performed, the reagent cost is $1000; when 20,000 tests are performed, the reagent cost is $20,000. *Fixed costs* do not change with the volume of tests performed. If a laboratory pays $5000 per month to rent its space, this expense remains the same if the laboratory produces 1000 or 20,000 tests per month (Fig. 12-1).

Because fixed costs do not vary with activity, the goal is to produce as much as possible from fixed costs to achieve economies of scale. The more that is produced, the lower the *fixed cost per activity*. In the preceding scenario, if the laboratory produced 1000 tests, the fixed cost per test is $5.00; with 20,000 tests, the fixed cost per test falls to $0.25. Note that even some fixed costs have a variable component. For example, if an instrument's capacity is 20,000 tests per month and the volume increases beyond that, another instrument will have to be purchased, increasing the fixed costs per test. Fixed costs that change with increments of volume are called *step costs*.

Salary costs need to be looked at differently from *nonsalary costs* because salary costs have fringe benefits associated with them. Salary expenses account for approximately 50% to 70% of the laboratory budget. Because salary expenses are generally fixed, it is important to strive for economies of scale. The hourly pay or salaried wage of an employee is not the entire cost of employment. Fringe benefits such as Social Security, health insurance, tuition reimbursement, pension plans, and life insurance can represent an additional 16% to 28% expense above the base salary. Costs are also associated with the recruitment, interview, and selection process. Once an employee is hired, orientation, training, and ongoing growth and development costs are incurred.

Operating costs are the expenses incurred to produce a product or service. Many items have only a one-time use, and once used, the item has no further value. Examples of one-time operating costs include reagents, electricity, disposable pipettes, and the salary expense in the production of a test. Other items, such as analytic equipment, computers, and the physical plant, have a useful life greater than one production cycle. These items are capital items. To qualify as a *capital* item, the item must meet three criteria: time, price, and purpose. To meet the time criterion, the item must have a useful life of longer than 1 year. The institution must designate a minimum dollar amount, usually $1000 to $5000, that qualifies an item as capital. The purpose of acquiring capital items is usually to replace older equipment with safer and more efficient models or to add new equipment to support new products or services. With time, capital equipment loses its value. The annual loss of a capital item's value is called *depreciation* and is an annual expense that is deducted from the revenue of a business. Depreciation is not a cash expense (i.e., you do not "pay it" each year), but it is a real expense in that it recognizes the "wearing out" of an asset that was acquired with cash and eventually will have to be replaced. If an analyzer has not yet been fully depreciated, it still has "book value." Note that operating and capital costs are budgeted separately (see later).

The cost of producing a test can be derived in different ways. *Microcosting* determines the total direct labor and supply costs of producing a test, and it is the starting point for determining the fully loaded cost and ultimately the price for a test. Most testing in the clinical laboratory is performed in batches or continuous "runs" of many samples during one or more shifts. A run can be a group of tests that are performed once or many times during a shift or an entire 24-hour period. A run includes all quality control and calibration costs needed to produce patient results. When microcosting a test, it is important to consider how a test is performed because labor and supply costs vary according to workflow and laboratory policy for quality control and repeats. The *cost per reportable result* (CPRR) distributes the total direct costs of a run over the patient "reportable" results for that run. Testing efficiency is defined as the total reportable patient results/total test results. Thus the more repeats and controls performed, the lower the efficiency and the higher the CPRR. As testing efficiency increases, the CPRR decreases. The *incremental cost* is the cost of producing one additional test that, typically, does not require additional salary or capital. For example, the incremental cost of running a chemistry test is usually the cost of dispensing reagent for one additional test, assuming there are no sample collection costs. Other associated costs, like technologist time, equipment, or quality control, are fixed costs that are

incurred irrespective of the additional test. The incremental cost is usually the lowest possible cost incurred to produce a result. It is best used to assess how much it costs to produce small increments in test volume. As volume grows, a laboratory may need additional staff and equipment, and these costs would have to be included in the incremental costing analysis. Incremental costing is especially useful when one is trying to determine whether additional outreach work is profitable or not. The *fully loaded cost* for a test is the sum of direct and indirect costs. The allocation of indirect costs is usually done using a formula. The goal of allocating indirect costs is to apply the costs based on the strongest correlation between the indirect cost and to what it is being applied. For example, utilities could be based on departmental square footage, while human resources costs could be based on the number of employees in the department. *Make-versus-buy* decisions should be based on the fully loaded cost to produce the test compared with the price offered by a commercial or reference laboratory. If it costs more to produce a test than to buy it from another supplier, the test should be considered for outsourcing. However, when make-versus-buy decisions are made, cost is only one factor to consider. Medically necessary turnaround time, methods, and reliability of the potential alternative supplier should also be considered. The price charged for a test needs to be marked up (increased) from the fully loaded cost to realize a profit. One must also take into consideration the expected collection rate, relative to charge. The *contribution margin* is the balance remaining after the fully loaded costs are deducted from the price charged for a test. Table 12-2 demonstrates various ways to determine the cost of a test and how to establish its charge.

The *total cost of ownership* (TCO) for a laboratory is the life cycle cost of its capital assets. It focuses attention on the sum of all costs of owning and maintaining all assets for a specific service or product, as opposed to the initial capital or operating costs. In the laboratory, TCO includes acquisition, setup (construction, training), support (ordering supplies, dealing with back orders), ongoing maintenance (scheduled and unscheduled downtime), service, and operating expenses (reagents, controls, repeat testing, inventory control, proficiency testing, testing personnel, supervisory personnel) of a specific workbench and its associated testing instrumentation. TCO is useful in considering make-versus-buy decisions, but determining an accurate TCO can be very difficult.

REVENUE

Revenue is the total price of services rendered or products sold (Harmening, 2007). It is the money a business is entitled to receive for the services and products it produces. In health care, revenue should not be confused with reimbursement or cash collected. *Gross patient revenue* consists of the total charges at a facility's full-established rates (list price) for provision of inpatient and outpatient care before deductions from revenue are applied. *Net patient revenue* is the gross inpatient and outpatient revenue minus all related deductions. *Deductions* from revenue include contractual adjustments, provision for bad debts, charity care, and other adjustments and allowances that reduce gross patient revenue. *Contractual adjustments* account for the difference between billings at full-established rates and amounts received or receivable from third-party payers under formal contract agreements. For example, if the list price of a test is $10 but the contracted payment from the insurance company is $6, the adjustment is $4. If all deductions and contractual allowances are correct, net patient revenue should equal cash collected, or $6 in the above example.

In health care, it is important to distinguish between inpatient and outpatient care because they are reimbursed differently. Inpatient laboratory testing charges usually are not reimbursed separately; they are considered to be part of a per diem rate (i.e., general hospital daily room reimbursement rate) or diagnosis-related group (DRG) rate (i.e., set rate for the entire hospital stay, regardless of actual length of stay). Thus inpatient laboratory testing is considered a "cost center." The hospital is paid the same rate regardless of how many tests are provided. In contrast, outpatient laboratory testing has historically been a revenue center because each test is separately reimbursed, usually by a third party (Table 12-3). Thus there has been a financial disincentive to perform inpatient tests and an incentive to perform outpatient tests. However, because new reimbursement models focus on accountable care, shared risk, and bundled payments, incentives to perform outpatient testing are likely to change.

PAYERS AND REIMBURSEMENT

Hospitals in early America served a different purpose from those of today. A visiting physician usually provided health care in the patient's home, and care was administered by family members, midwives, and servants. Early hospitals were founded to shelter older adults, the dying, orphans, those with mental illness, and vagrants, and to protect the citizens of a community from contagious diseases and the dangerously insane. Many of today's county, municipal, or religious order hospitals were originally a combination of these almshouses and isolation hospitals (Sultz & Young, 2009).

The transformation of hospitals from charitable institutions to complex technical organizations came about with the passage of the Hill-Burton Hospital Construction Act of 1946 and the growth of private hospital insurance. The Hill-Burton Act provided federal money to the states to plan and construct new facilities. The first private health insurance policy was formed by a group of teachers and Baylor Hospital in Dallas to provide coverage for certain hospital expenses. This arrangement created the model for the development of what was to become Blue Cross Insurance. The development of health insurance to provide reimbursement for routine medical care carried gigantic implications. The original concept of any insurance was to guard against the low risk of a rare occurrence such as premature death or accident. Today's health insurance provides for coverage of routine, predictable services, and unforeseen illnesses and injuries (Sultz & Young, 2009).

PRIVATE INSURANCE

Private health insurance falls into two main categories: indemnity and managed care. Indemnity plans, also known as fee-for-service, are traditional insurance plans that give patients absolute freedom to choose their physicians and medical facilities. Insurance companies usually require the beneficiaries to fulfill a yearly deductible, usually between $300 and $500 per person per year. After the deductible is fulfilled, the insurance company pays a certain coinsurance rate of the usual and customary charge (UCC). The UCC (or fee schedule) is set by the payer and is usually less than the actual billed charge, in which case the patient may be responsible for the balance. Generally, the coinsurance is split 70%/30% or 80%/20%, where the insurance company pays the higher percentage and the insured the lower. Indemnity plans were the mainstay of the health insurance world before the 1980s. Today, managed care is the norm. Some employers still offer indemnity plans despite their high premium payments to allow their employees the freedom to choose medical services.

As an alternative to indemnity health insurance, managed care was introduced in 1973 with the passage of the Health Maintenance Organization Act. This act encouraged and funded the development of health maintenance organizations (HMOs) as a strategy to contain the rising cost of health care (Sultz & Young, 2009). HMOs utilized managed care features that coupled health care reimbursement with delivery of service and allowed payers significant economic control over how, where, and what services were delivered. In managed care, specific physicians and hospitals are selected to care for members; referrals from a case manager are usually necessary for specialty or inpatient services; and providers share in the financial risk through capitation agreements and per diem rates.

Capitation agreements pay the service provider (e.g., physician) a fixed dollar amount per member per month (PMPM). From this amount, the provider agrees to cover all care for plan members. For example, if a laboratory signs a capitation agreement to accept $1.50 PMPM for the outpatient testing needs of 2000 HMO members, the laboratory receives $3000 per month and $36,000 per year. If it costs the laboratory more than $36,000/year to provide the services, it realizes a financial loss; if it costs less than $36,000, it realizes a profit. In a capitation testing agreement, a laboratory assumes the risk of spending more than it is paid. One key to managing this risk is gaining access to test utilization of plan members and accurately assessing laboratory costs.

Per diem rates are negotiated with hospitals to provide all necessary care and services for managed members requiring inpatient care. Reimbursement for any laboratory testing during the inpatient stay is included in the per diem amount. As with capitation, if it costs more to provide inpatient services than the per diem rate, the hospital is at financial risk.

Sometimes, a service is separately negotiated (i.e., it is not included as part of the capitation or per diem rate). This is called a "carve out." Expensive esoteric tests (e.g., certain molecular and genetic tests) should be carved out of the outpatient laboratory capitation agreement. A negotiated fee-for-service price for these tests is appropriate. By excluding these tests from capitation, one can avoid huge financial losses due to unexpectedly high utilization of these costly services.

TABLE 12-2
Test Cost Analysis*

Test: Prostate-Specific Antigen

A. Microcosting: Instrument Run of One Reportable Test

Direct Labor

Determine the total "hands-on" time in minutes required to perform an instrument "run" of one patient test. Assume labor cost is $20 per hour.

	Minutes	Expense
Prepare specimen	5	
Prepare reagents	10	
Prepare instrument	10	
Computer and/or worksheet setup	5	
Documentation of results/quality control/maintenance	10	
Cleanup	10	
Total direct labor	50	$16.67

Direct Supplies

List all consumables needed to perform the test. Note that four tests (one sample and three controls) are needed to produce one patient reportable result. Calibration costs should be added if they are required with each run.

	Unit cost	Units	Expense
Reagent ($700 kit/100 tests)	$7	4	$28.00
Disposable pipettes ($10/100 pipettes)	$0.10	4	$0.40
Disposable reagent cups ($10/200 cups)	$0.05	4	$0.20
Low-, medium-, and high-control material (0.05 mL/test @ $20/mL)	$1	3	$3.00
Total direct supplies			$31.60
Total direct costs			$48.27
Cost per reportable (total direct cost/reportable results)	$48.27/1		$48.27
Testing efficiency (reportable patient results/tests)	1 result/4 tests		25%

B. Microcosting: Instrument Run of 15 Reportable Tests

Direct Labor

For a group of tests run on automated analyzers, use direct labor expense from microcosting. For manual batch testing, direct labor costs may apply to each batch; additional labor time studies may be necessary to derive accurate data.

	Minutes	Expense
Total direct labor per batch (same as microcosting in this example)	50	$16.67

Direct Supplies

Note: 18 tests (15 samples and 3 controls) are needed to produce 15 reportable results. Fixed costs (controls) are spread over more than 1 sample, in contrast to first example.

	Unit cost	Units	Expense
Reagent ($700 kit/100 tests)	$7	18	$126.00
Disposable pipettes ($10/100 pipettes)	$0.10	18	$1.80
Disposable reagent cups ($10/200 cups)	$0.05	18	$0.90
Low-, medium-, and high-control material (0.05 mL/test @ $20/mL)	$1	3	$3.00
Total direct supplies			$131.70
Total direct costs			$148.37
Cost per reportable (total direct cost/reportable results)	$148.37/15		$9.89
Testing efficiency (reportable patient results/tests)	15 results/18 tests	83%	

C. Incremental Cost: Cost for One More Test

	Units	Expense
Reagent ($700 kit/100 tests)	1	$7
Disposable pipettes ($10/100 pipettes)	1	$0.10
Disposable reagent cups ($10/200 cups)	1	$0.05
Total		$7.15

	Unit cost	Units	Expense
D. Fully Loaded Cost			
Direct cost (cost per reportable result for typical size run) from Example B above	$9.89		
Indirect cost (estimated by typical hospital as 2.5 × direct costs)	$24.73		
Fully loaded cost			$34.62
E. Contribution Margin			
Example of Charging a 20% Markup for Laboratory Tests			
Fully loaded cost plus 20% mark-up (test charge at list price)	$34.62 × 1.2		$41.54
Fully loaded cost from Example D above			($34.62)
Contribution margin			$6.92

*This analysis is for illustration purposes only.

TABLE 12-3
Reimbursement Comparison for PSA* by Payer Type

	List Price	Reimbursement Terms	Amount Paid	Contractual Allowance
Inpatient				
Managed care (HMO)	$41.54	No separate reimbursement for laboratory tests because they are included in the contracted per diem rate	0	N/A
Medicare	$41.54	No separate reimbursement for laboratory tests because they are included in the DRG rate	0	N/A
Outpatient				
Indemnity insurance	$41.54	Usual and customary charge (UCC) is $38; insurance pays 80% of UCC.	$30.40	$11.14
Managed care (PPO)	$41.54	Contract pays 110% of Medicare fee schedule ($25.70 for PSA).	$28.27	$13.27
Managed care (HMO)	$41.54	No separate reimbursement for laboratory tests because of capitation arrangement: Laboratory receives per member per month payment irrespective of usage	N/A	N/A
Medicare	$41.54	Medicare fee schedule	$25.09	$16.45

DRG, Diagnosis-related group; *HMO,* health maintenance organization; *N/A,* not applicable; *PPO,* preferred provider organization; *PSA,* prostate-specific antigen.
*Reimbursement amounts are for illustrative purposes only and may not accurately reflect current Medicare reimbursement.

GOVERNMENT PAYERS

Medicare is federal health insurance for individuals age 65 and older, individuals who are permanently disabled, and those with end-stage renal disease who have met the specified waiting period. Medicare was established in 1965 by Title XVIII of the Social Security Act. It is administered by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS), a division of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). Coverage is provided under Parts A, B, C, and D. Claims are processed by CMS-approved contractors. These contractors are usually private companies that serve as fiscal intermediaries (generally processing Part A claims) and carriers (generally processing Part B claims). However, CMS is moving to a new model, whereby the Medicare Administrative Contractor (MAC) will administer both Part A and Part B claims via 15 MAC jurisdictions. For a clinical laboratory to qualify for Medicare/Medicaid reimbursement, the laboratory must maintain Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act of 1988 certification (CMS, 2014e).

Medicare Part A covers inpatient hospitalization, hospice care, skilled nursing care, and home health care. Coverage is automatic for those who are eligible. Before the Tax Equity and Fiscal Responsibility Act of 1982 (TEFRA), inpatient hospitalization was reimbursed on a retrospective cost-based system. This system paid hospitals for all costs incurred during an inpatient stay. After TEFRA, the system switched to a prospective payment system (PPS), which reimbursed hospitals on the basis of preset payments for services provided to patients with similar diagnoses. With this DRG payment system, hospitals are reimbursed the same amount for a specific DRG no matter how many discrete units of services are provided. Thus hospitals can earn a profit or realize a loss on each inpatient stay, depending on whether their costs are lower or higher than the DRG payment. The aim of the PPS, with its fixed DRG reimbursements, was to force hospitals to contain costs by reducing the length of stay and eliminating unnecessary and/or overutilized services (Sultz & Young, 2009).

Medicare Part B covers outpatient laboratory tests, physician professional services, and other medical services and devices. Coverage is not automatic. Eligible beneficiaries must enroll for Part B coverage and pay premiums. Beneficiaries must pay an annual deductible and a 20% copayment for all Part B services, except for clinical laboratory testing, which is covered in full, provided certain conditions are met (see later).

The Part B fee schedule plays an important role in reimbursement because it is a baseline that nongovernment payers use to establish their own rates. For example, a private insurance company may set its fee schedule at 110% of the Part B fee schedule.

Medicare Part C (also known as Medicare Advantage) is an alternative to the traditional Part B fee-for-service program. It is designed to reduce patient "out-of-pocket" costs by providing services through health maintenance organizations and other managed care service models. *Medicare Part D* provides prescription drug coverage.

Medicaid is a federal program that offers health care coverage for select low-income families. It was authorized in 1965 as a federal/state-sponsored program designed to pay medical costs for certain families with low income or inadequate resources. Eligibility extends to people who are aged, blind, or disabled, and those in families with dependent children. Although Medicaid is a federal program, it is under the jurisdiction of each individual state. This means that each state determines who is eligible, the range of health services offered, and how they are reimbursed. It is a common misconception that Medicaid covers health care costs for all low-income persons. Medicaid does not provide paid medical assistance to every single poor person. To receive medical assistance, a person must meet eligibility requirements.

REIMBURSEMENT CODING SYSTEMS

To be paid, a medical claim must document the patient's medical condition (or diagnosis) and must list the services (or tests) provided. This information is conveyed via a standardized coding system, recognized by all government and private payers: *H*ealthcare *C*ommon *P*rocedure *C*oding *S*ystem (*HCPCS*) codes describe the test or service (AMA, 2014b), and *International Classification of Diseases, Tenth Revision, Clinical Modification* (*ICD-10-CM*), codes describe the patient's condition or diagnosis (*ICD-10-CM*, 2015). These coding standards allow data to be accurately communicated among physicians, patients, and third-party payers.

HCPCS was developed in 1983 and consists of two levels of codes. Level I is the *C*urrent *P*rocedural *T*erminology (*CPT*) coding system, and it is used to identify nearly all clinical laboratory tests and most medical services (AMA, 2015a). CPT codes are assigned by the American Medical Association (AMA) and are reviewed and updated annually to keep current with changes in technology and medical practice. Each CPT code consists of five digits and a description of the test or service. For example, the CPT code for a total prostate-specific antigen (PSA) test is 84153.

Level II HCPCS codes are assigned by CMS. CPT does not contain all the codes needed to report services or to describe special circumstances that may apply to Medicare. CMS developed this second level of codes to fill the gap. HCPCS Level II codes begin with a single letter (A through V), followed by four digits. These codes are updated annually by CMS. An example of Level II coding is prostate-specific antigen for cancer screening, G0103. Note that CMS treats this test differently than the PSA CPT code described earlier, even though the tests are identical to those of the laboratory. This allows CMS to assign different criteria for reimbursement, based on why a test is ordered.

The ICD was originally developed by the World Health Organization (WHO) as a classification system for reporting of mortality and morbidity statistics by physicians throughout the world. The *ICD-10-CM* is a U.S. clinically modified revision of the WHO *ICD-10*. This modification is maintained and updated by the National Center for Health Statistics. These modifications assist health care providers to index patient records, retrieve case data for clinical studies, and submit claims for health care services. HHS has set a deadline of October 1, 2015, for complete adoption of *ICD-10* in the United States. In contrast to *ICD-9*, *ICD-10* provides much greater detail, precisely defines location (including laterality), and provides changes in terminology and expanded concepts for injuries and other related factors. As a result, *ICD-10* is comprised of about 68,000

codes (three to seven characters long), in contrast to *ICD-9*'s approximately 13,000 codes (three to five characters long) (AMA, 2012).

WHY ACCURATE CODING IS IMPORTANT

Correct coding is important for three reasons. First, one should be paid for services rendered. Insufficient or incorrect coding may yield lower reimbursement than is rightfully due. Second, one must not receive more reimbursement than is rightfully due. Coding for services not provided or assigning a code that recoups more reimbursement (this practice is known as "up-coding") is illegal and constitutes fraud. Third, one must comply with *medical necessity* requirements established by CMS for Medicare patients. These policies define under what conditions a test is considered "medically necessary" and thus reimbursable. Certain tests are considered "medically necessary" only if they are associated with specific diagnoses. Thus reimbursement depends on whether the diagnosis or medical condition code (*ICD-10* code) supports the test code (HCPCS code). For example, "malignant neoplasm of the prostate" supports the medical necessity of doing a PSA test, so Medicare would pay for the test; in contrast, "congestive heart failure" is not considered a medically necessary reason for a PSA test, so the test would not be reimbursed. Note that a physician (or other provider) can order any test on a patient, even if it is not "medically necessary," but it will not be reimbursed.

Most laboratory fee schedules are set by the local Medicare contractor (fiscal intermediary or carrier). Historically, each contractor established separate guidelines for determining which tests were subject to medically necessary diagnosis codes. *Local medical review policies* and local coverage decisions differ from one carrier to another, making it very difficult to submit and process claims. In some instances, a diagnosis code that is valid for a test from one carrier may not be considered medically necessary by another carrier. In an effort to standardize all carrier reimbursement guidelines for specific outpatient laboratory tests, 23 tests have been assigned *national coverage determinations* (*NCDs*); these medical necessity guidelines apply to all carriers in the country. Table 12-4 lists the NCD tests (CMS, 2014a).

Coding at any level should be as specific as possible. Medicare contractors employ the national Correct Coding Initiative to ensure correct coding practices based on the codes defined in the AMA's CPT code set (CMS, 2014f). These software edits flag inappropriate code combinations that should not be billed together for the same patient on the same day of service. Medicare has also added a system of medically unlikely edits (MUEs) that limit the units of service payable for a particular CPT code per patient, per provider, per day of service. Claims that exceed the MUE are rejected. Most analytes or tests have a specific CPT, similar to that of PSA. However, sometimes a new test does not have its own code. When that happens, the test must be identified by the method used to perform the analysis (e.g., 82486—Gas/liquid chromatography, or 83520—Immunoassay, quantitative). A method code is usually reimbursed at a lower rate than a CPT code for a specific analyte.

Certain tests that are performed together (i.e., as a panel) must be coded correctly. Ten panels have been approved by the AMA (Table 12-5) (though only eight of them are considered covered services by Medicare, the exceptions being the General Health and Obstetrics panels). When these ten panels are performed, they must be coded with the unique panel code and not by each individual test's CPT code. Reimbursement is much lower for a panel than it is for the sum total reimbursement of each test. Coding for each individual test component as opposed to one panel code is considered "unbundling," which is a fraudulent billing practice.

Professional pathology physician services (e.g., test interpretation, slide review) are not included in the laboratory fee schedule. They are paid by the Medicare physician fee schedule, which uses a resource-based relative value scale to determine the payment based on a service's relative value unit. These amounts are adjusted to reflect local economic factors. Unlike the laboratory fee schedule, these professional services are subject to the annual deductible and the 20% copayment.

MEDICARE REIMBURSEMENT

Medicare is the largest insurance program in the country. In many hospitals, it accounts for 25% to 40% of all revenue. Outpatient services are reimbursed differently from inpatient ones.

Medicare Inpatients

DRGs make up a patient classification system that is used to reimburse inpatient (Part A) hospital costs for Medicare patients. Although the costs associated with inpatient clinical laboratory tests are included in the DRG, it does not cover physician services (Part B). After a Medicare patient has been discharged from the hospital, the patient's medical record is reviewed by health information management coders and is assigned appropriate *ICD-10-CM* and HCPCS codes for one or more diagnoses and procedures for the inpatient stay. These codes, along with the patient's demographic information, are grouped by decision trees (this process is computerized) into a specific DRG. Currently, more than 500 DRGs are used. CMS assigns a weight to each DRG based on the severity of the diagnoses, the types of procedures performed, the number of laboratory tests, the volume and type of drugs administered, and the presence of complications or comorbidity conditions. CMS assigns each hospital a specific rate that is calculated on the basis of the type of facility (community hospital vs. teaching hospital), the setting (urban vs. rural), and the location (West Coast vs. Midwest). The CMS-assigned rate for the DRG is multiplied by the hospital's assigned rate to determine reimbursement for the hospital stay. This amount is payment-in-full for the inpatient hospitalization. If it costs the hospital more than the reimbursed amount to treat the patient, the hospital must absorb the cost. The patient cannot be billed for any non-reimbursed Part A services (Sultz & Young, 2009).

TABLE 12-4
National Coverage Determinations for Laboratory Testing

General Testing Category	CPT Codes Included
Alpha-fetoprotein	82105
Blood counts	85004, 85007, 85008, 85013, 85014, 85018, 85025, 85027, 85032, 85045, 85049
Blood glucose testing	82947, 82948, 82962
Carcinoembryonic antigen	82378
Collagen crosslinks, any method	82523
Digoxin therapeutic drug assay	80162
Fecal occult blood test	82270
Gamma-glutamyl transferase	82977
Glycated hemoglobin/glycated protein	82985, 83036
Hepatitis panel/acute hepatitis panel	80074
Human chorionic gonadotropin	84702
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) testing (diagnosis)	86689, 86701, 86702, 86703, 87390, 87391, 87534, 87535, 87637, 87538
HIV testing (prognosis, including monitoring)	87536, 87539
Lipids	80061, 82465, 83715, 83716, 83718, 83721, 84478
Partial thromboplastin time	85730
Prostate-specific antigen	84153
Prothrombin time	85610
Serum iron studies	82728, 83540, 83550, 84466
Thyroid testing	84436, 84439, 84443, 84479
Tumor antigen by immunoassay CA 125	86304
Tumor antigen by immunoassay CA 15-3 (CA 27.29)	86300
Tumor antigen by immunoassay CA 19-9	86301
Urine culture, bacterial	87086, 87088, 87184, 87186

From CMS (2014a).

Medicare Outpatients

For many years after the enactment of DRGs, each outpatient service continued to be reimbursed individually (Harmening, 2007). However, the reimbursement system changed when CMS started to implement an outpatient prospective payment system with the introduction of the Ambulatory Payment Classification (APC) system in 2000. Under this system, virtually all hospital-based outpatient services (e.g., emergency department and clinic visits, oncology treatment, and surgery) provided to Medicare patients are reimbursed on a prospective basis according to a preset rate, similar to DRGs. Clinical diagnostic laboratory tests are not currently included in the APC and are still reimbursed individually on the basis of the CMS fee schedule, with some exceptions.

TABLE 12-5

AMA Organ or Disease-Oriented Panels

CPT	Panel	Required Components	
80047	Basic metabolic panel (calcium, ionized)	Calcium, ionized	(82330)
		Carbon dioxide	(82374)
		Chloride	(82435)
		Creatinine	(82565)
		Glucose	(82947)
		Potassium	(84132)
		Sodium	(84295)
		Urea nitrogen, blood (BUN)	(84520)
80048	Basic metabolic panel (calcium, total)	Calcium, total	(82310)
		Carbon dioxide	(82374)
		Chloride	(82435)
		Creatinine	(82565)
		Glucose	(82947)
		Potassium	(84132)
		Sodium	(84295)
		BUN	(84520)
80050	General health panel	Comprehensive metabolic panel	(80053)
		Blood count, complete (CBC)	(85025) or (85027) and (85004)
		or	
		CBC	(85027) and (85007) or (85009)
		Thyroid-stimulating hormone	(84443)
80051	Electrolyte panel	Carbon dioxide	(82374)
		Chloride	(82435)
		Potassium	(84132)
		Sodium	(84295)
80053	Comprehensive metabolic panel	Albumin	(82040)
		Bilirubin, total	(82247)
		Calcium	(82310)
		Carbon dioxide	(82374)
		Chloride	(82435)
		Creatinine	(82565)
		Glucose	(82947)
		Phosphatase, alkaline	(84075)
		Potassium	(84132)
		Protein, total	(84155)
		Sodium	(84295)
		Transferase, alanine amino	(84460)
		Transferase, aspartate amino	(84450)
		BUN	(84520)
80055	Obstetric panel	CBC	(85025) or (85027) and (85004)
		or	
		CBC	(85027) and (85007) or (85009)
		Hepatitis B surface antigen	(87340)
		Antibody, rubella	(86762)
		Syphilis test, qualitative	(86592)
		Antibody screen, RBC	(86850)
		Blood typing, ABO	(86900)
		Blood typing, Rh	(86901)
80061	Lipid panel	Cholesterol, total	(85465)
		HDL cholesterol	(83718)
		Triglycerides	(84478)
80069	Renal function panel	Albumin	(82040)
		Calcium	(82310)
		Carbon dioxide	(82374)
		Chloride	(82435)
		Creatinine	(82565)
		Glucose	(82947)
		Phosphorus, inorganic	(84100)
		Potassium	(84132)
		Sodium	(84295)
		BUN	(84520)
80074	Acute hepatitis panel	Hepatitis A antibody, IgM	(86709)
		Hepatitis B core antibody, IgM	(86705)
		Hepatitis B surface antigen	(87340)
		Hepatitis C antibody	(86803)
80076	Hepatic function panel	Albumin	(82040)
		Bilirubin, total	(82247)
		Bilirubin, direct	(82248)
		Phosphatase, alkaline	(84075)
		Protein, total	(84155)
		Transferase, alanine amino	(84460)
		Transferase, aspartate amino	(84450)

ABO, Blood group; *HDL,* high-density lipoprotein; *IgM,* immunoglobulin M; *RBC,* red blood cell.
From AMA (2015a).

Under certain conditions, Medicare does not pay for laboratory tests (Table 12-6). If a laboratory expects Medicare to deny payment because a test does not meet medical necessity requirements, it must inform the patient before the service is provided. An *advanced beneficiary notice (ABN)* is used to document that the beneficiary was told the test might not be covered by Medicare, the reason(s) for the possible denial, and the decision by the patient to pay for the test if Medicare does not reimburse or to refuse the test entirely (CMS, 2014d).

An important consideration for hospitals that have laboratories that perform outpatient testing on Medicare patients is the *72-hour rule* (CMS, 2014c). This rule states that a hospital cannot bill an outpatient claim for laboratory tests performed within 72 hours of an inpatient admission. Outpatient testing that is performed 72 hours before the admission must be included with the inpatient claim and is reimbursed according to the assigned DRG for that stay. Hospital laboratories must identify outpatient Medicare services that are affected by this rule and must make sure they are not billed separately. A nonhospital independent laboratory is not subject to the 72-hour rule. Thus preadmission tests performed 3 days before hospitalization are not reimbursed if performed in the admitting hospital's laboratory but are reimbursed if done in an independent laboratory. Postdischarge testing may also be bundled into the DRG if the test/service is ordered by the patient's physician less than 14 days following the date of the patient's discharge from the hospital (42 CFR § 414.510).

TABLE 12-6
National Coverage Determinations (NCDs) for Laboratory Testing

Category	Medicare Coverage	ABN Necessary?
LMRP or NCD tests	Provider paid according to outpatient fee schedule, if medical necessity met	No, unless test is not "medically necessary"
FDA cleared or "homebrew" tests not included above	Provider paid according to outpatient fee schedule, if medical necessity met	No, unless test is not "medically necessary"
Investigational use only or research tests (i.e., not FDA cleared)	Not covered, no payment	Yes
Health and wellness screening	Not covered, with few exceptions: PAP smears covered every 2 years for all women and every year for those with high cancer risk or abnormal smear; PSA covered every year for men older than 50	Yes, unless it is one of the allowable exceptions

ABN, Advanced beneficiary nutrition; *FDA,* U.S. Food and Drug Administration; *LMRP,* local medical review policies; *PAP,* Papanicolaou smear; *PSA,* prostate-specific antigen.
From CMS (2014a).

FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE AND MONITORING

BUDGETING

Budgeting is the process of planning, forecasting, controlling, and monitoring the financial resources of an organization (Garcia, 2004). The *operational budget* provides a target of day-to-day revenues and expenditures that are to be achieved in the forthcoming year.

Different budget-planning strategies are used based on the type and seasonality of the business; however, all use a method to forecast and project what will occur in the next budget cycle. Projections are made for the expected increases and decreases in revenues and expenses based on historical information and adjustments for inflation, loss of business, new business, and new product lines. The laboratory typically uses a *pro forma* budget. It provides in a pro forma or "predetermined set form" the expected annual revenue and expense based on various projections and assumptions, including test volume. It uses actual costs, ratios, and percent calculations to extrapolate from historical data what the new budget will be. Table 12-7 presents an example of a pro forma budget.

In contrast to the pro forma budget, which uses baseline data from 1 year to develop data for the next, a *zero-based budget* has no baseline. A zero-based budget requires management to annually evaluate all services and products to determine which should be funded or eliminated. Each department manager must justify its budget as if all of its activities are new. It assumes that no existing program is entitled to automatic budget approval but rather must prove its financial merit when compared with the organization's other programs. Programs are ranked and funded by merit priority to the level of the organization's available funds. Laboratories use a zero-based approach to propose a new service (e.g., blood donor program, outpatient blood collection center) or laboratory section (e.g., mycology) or test (polymerase chain reaction assay) (Travers, 1997).

The *capital budget* is used to fund large capital projects such as acquiring an instrument or information system or remodeling the laboratory (Garcia, 2004). These projects may cost thousands or millions of dollars and require several years to plan or implement. The laboratory's proposed projects must compete with those of other hospital departments for limited capital dollars. Each project is evaluated (see later) and ranked on the basis of a variety of financial and clinical factors. The operational budget must be linked to the capital budget, because it is the revenues generated by operations that are used to fund needed capital items and projects. Operational budgets must generate surplus revenue to fund capital projects; a business must reinvest in itself to remain competitive.

TABLE 12-7
Pro Forma Laboratory Budget

Category	Current Year	Assumptions	Change	Projection for New Year
Revenue	$3,000,000	4% growth	$120,000	$3,120,000
Total tests	370,000	4% growth	14,800	384,800
Revenue/test	$8.11			$8.11
Expenses				
Salaries	$950,000	3% cost of living increase	$28,500	$978,500
Laboratory supplies	$421,000	4% growth (no price increase)	$16,840	$437,840
Reference lab fees	$250,000	4% growth	$10,000	$262,600
		1% price increase (on projected $260,000)	$2600	
Phlebotomy supplies	$35,500	4% growth	$1420	$36,920
Maintenance contracts	$40,000	No change		$40,000
Total expense	$1,696,500		$59,360	$1,755,860
Cost per test	$4.59			$4.56

TABLE 12-8
Cost Center: Microbiology

		Current Month			Year to Date		
		REVENUE					
Account number	**Account name**	**Actual**	**Budget**	**Variance**	**Actual**	**Budget**	**Variance**
20100	Inpatient revenue	$1,414,245	$1,403,172	$11,073	$2,892,427	$2,764,597	$127,830
20200	Outpatient revenue	$906,343	$894,405	$11,938	$1,699,418	$1,748,169	$(48,751)
Total revenue		$2,320,588	$2,297,577	$23,011	$4,591,845	$4,512,766	$79,079
		EXPENSES					
40100	Salary, management	$22,045	$21,811	$234	$43,310	$43,622	$(312)
40200	Salary, technical	$85,161	$105,410	$(20,249)	$170,437	$210,820	$(40,383)
40201	Overtime	$3385	$3907	$(522)	$6713	$7814	$(1101)
Total salary expense		$110,591	$131,128	$(20,537)	$220,460	$262,256	$(41,796)
41580	Laboratory supplies	$109,961	$96,114	$13,847	$193,102	$188,461	$4641
41590	Medical-surgical supplies	$1682	$1715	$(33)	$3964	$3362	$602
41890	Service contracts	$75	$355	$(280)	$150	$710	$(560)
42010	Minor equipment	$1112	$1083	$29	$2568	$2166	$402
45300	Sendout test expense	$14,973	$13,750	$1223	$28,812	$27,500	$1312
46300	Accreditation expense	$—	$100	$(100)	$—	$200	$(200)
Total nonsalary expense		$127,803	$113,117	$14,686	$228,596	$222,399	$6197
Total expense		$238,394	$244,245	$(5851)	$449,056	$484,655	$(35,599)

VARIANCE ANALYSIS

The operational budget should be reviewed periodically, usually monthly, to determine how closely the projected budget matches actual revenues and expenses (Garcia, 2004). A variance is the difference between the projected budget and the actual revenue and expenses (Budget – Actual = Variance). Both favorable variances (more than expected revenue or less than expected expenses) and unfavorable variances (less than expected revenue or more than expected expenses) need to be analyzed. By analyzing a variance, one can identify whether or not it can be controlled. Once the cause is determined, one can take necessary action to improve performance and more accurately prepare future budgets.

If revenues (and expected test volume) are within budget, but laboratory supplies show an unfavorable variance, one must investigate the reason for the discrepancy. For example, technologists may be repeating tests too frequently, running too many controls, or scheduling work inefficiently, in many small batches. This is an example of a variance that can be controlled by the laboratory if it changes its practices. Actions to consider include increasing the frequency of instrument maintenance to reduce problems that require repeats and controls, providing staff education to reinforce policies on when repeats and controls are needed, and rescheduling work into more efficient batch sizes.

An example of an uncontrollable variance occurs if a hospital decides to eliminate the cardiac chest pain service. In this scenario, a favorable reagent expense variance (i.e., less money spent on reagents than expected) would be related to doing fewer cardiac marker tests. A laboratory manager can do nothing to correct this variance. However, this does not absolve the manager from a duty to review it. One must verify the amount of the variance and must determine if it is appropriate for the amount of lost business. When forecasting for the next budget cycle, one should decrease projected revenues and expenses attributed to the loss of cardiac services.

FINANCIAL REPORTING AND STATEMENTS

Managerial accounting is used to prepare and monitor budgets. Revenue and expenses are organized into logical groupings known as cost centers that represent a laboratory section (such as microbiology, core lab, blood bank) or function (phlebotomy). Each cost center is subdivided into a variety of expense and revenue categories. Salary and nonsalary expense categories are grouped separately. Periodic review, at least monthly, of the cost center's accounts is needed to monitor the variances and put corrective action in place to keep the organization on its expected financial plan. Table 12-8 provides an example of a laboratory cost center's accounts.

Financial accounting is a system used to report business information to external entities such as the Internal Revenue Service or stockholders. Generally accepted accounting principles are used to standardize this information. Balance sheets, income statements, and statements of cash flows are the financial statements most commonly used to assess an organization's financial position. Banks and investors rely heavily on these statements to determine whether to lend money to a business or to purchase shares of stock.

The *balance sheet* is the statement of an organization's financial position at a specific point in time. This statement is usually generated at the end of an organization's fiscal year or at the end of the calendar year. It records the organization's assets (what it owns), its liabilities (what it owes), and its equity or net worth (what is left after subtracting what it owes from what it owns). From this statement is derived the fundamental accounting equation: Assets = Liabilities + Equity (net worth). This statement is used to assess an organization's level of indebtedness to what it owns.

The *income statement*, also known as the statement of profit and loss, summarizes the organization's revenues and expenses over an accounting period, usually quarterly or annually. The income statement records all of a laboratory's gross patient revenue, less allowances for a given period, and deducts the expenses for that same period to arrive at net income before taxes. Taxes are paid only if the organization is for-profit. Net income is realized when net revenues exceed expenses. A net loss is realized when expenses exceed net revenues. Note that revenue does not necessarily equate to cash generated. Many times a test is performed and recorded as income, although the payment (cash) may not be received for several months. The income statement records the organization's ability to make a profit; it does not reflect its cash position.

The *statement of cash flows* shows the amount of cash generated by an organization over a period of time, usually a calendar or fiscal year. Cash outflows (cash paid out) are subtracted from cash inflows (cash received) to calculate the net change in cash for the period. Excess cash in a given period can be reinvested in the organization, used to make additional debt payments, or placed in easily liquidated securities for emergency use. If the net cash position for a period is negative, the organization must meet its cash obligations by using cash reserves from previous periods. If this trend is not reversed, the organization eventually will run out of cash.

BENCHMARKING AND PRODUCTIVITY MEASURES

Benchmarking and productivity measures go hand in hand. It does no good to collect productivity data if they are not compared with a standard or evaluated for trends over time. Benchmarking is the measurement of an organization's products or services against specific standards for

comparison and improvement (Wallace & Klosinski, 1998). Benchmarking can be internal or external.

Internal benchmarking trends an organization's productivity over time. Productivity is the relationship between input (labor and supplies) and output (product or service) (Travers, 1997). It is usually expressed as a ratio of the product or service to the various inputs used for the production of the product or service. Table 12-9 provides the common productivity ratios used in the laboratory. The purpose of trending internal productivity is to determine if internal standards are being met, exceeded, or not met. If adjustments to workflow or personnel are made, the next period's benchmarking data can be used to determine if the adjustments were the probable cause for improvements or for decreased productivity.

External benchmarking compares a laboratory's productivity with that of other laboratories. Its purpose is to identify top performers in a particular field. Top performers can be contacted to find out what processes or resources have been used to achieve high productivity. This information may guide a laboratory to make similar changes that could result in higher productivity. Professional organizations such as the College of American Pathologists or the University Healthsystem Consortium offer external laboratory-specific benchmarking programs. Caution should always be used when interpreting external benchmarking information. Although clinical laboratories are similar, no two are exactly alike, and, despite best efforts, sometimes data are collected and reported differently. A laboratory may never be able to achieve productivity as high as its peers because of factors beyond the laboratory's control. Labor availability, the disease and acuity mix of patients, and access to technology and automation will each have an effect on how productive a laboratory is and how much more productive it can become.

EVALUATING A CAPITAL PROJECT

A hospital has limited capital; it cannot fund all requested projects, so it must prioritize them according to a variety of factors, including clinical need, patient or employee safety, and financial impact. Whether or not money is borrowed to finance these projects, it may be necessary for the project or investment to pay for itself and even generate excess cash to fund other projects. The following section discusses different ways to evaluate a capital project to answer the question "Is it a good investment?" Table 12-10 compares these methods.

TABLE 12-9
Common Productivity Measures for Clinical Laboratories

Productivity Measure	Target*	Quarter 1	Quarter 2
Billable tests/paid FTE	>3680	3798	3500
Billable tests/worked FTE	>4000	4128	4080
Worked FTE/paid FTE	>92%	95.2%	90%
Labor cost/billable test	<$5.00	$4.68	$5.01
Supply cost/billable test	<$1.00	$0.99	$1.01
Overtime/worked straight time	<3%	2.7%	3.5%

FTE, Full-time equivalent or 2080 paid hours in a year; *paid FTE,* all salaries paid (benefit time plus worked time).
*Target is for illustration purposes only. It should not be considered a laboratory standard.

TABLE 12-10
Financial Evaluation of a New Automated Analyzer

Given		
Investment (cost of analyzer)		$200,000
Discount rate (rate of inflation or interest rate of borrowed money)		10.00%
Useful life of analyzer	5 years	
Annual depreciation expense	$200,000/5 years	$40,000
Annual revenue	100,000 tests at $5.00/test	$500,000
Annual labor expense	100,000 tests at $2.50/test	$250,000
Annual supply expense	100,000 tests at $2.00/test	$200,000
Annual net revenue (Annual revenue – Annual expense)	$500,000 – ($250,000 + $200,000)	$50,000
Net revenue per test (Test revenue – Test expense)	$5.00 – ($2.50 + $2.00)	$0.50
Calculations		
PAYBACK PERIOD = Investment/Annual net revenue	$200,000/$50,000	4 years
BREAKEVEN per year = Depreciation/Net revenue per test	$40,000/$0.50	80,000 tests
Life of analyzer = Investment/Net revenue per test	$200,000/$0.50	400,000 tests
RETURN ON INVESTMENT (ROI) = Annual net revenue/Investment	$50,000/$200,000	25% per year
NET PRESENT VALUE (NPV) = Present value of the sum of future net revenue (cash flows) minus investment. *Note:* Present value interest factor (PVIF) for each year based on 10% discount rate is multiplied by net revenue to determine present value. PVIF is available from any financial data resource. NPV can also be calculated with financial calculator.		
Today's investment	($200,000)	
Year 1 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.9091 = $45,455	
Year 2 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.8264 = $41,320	
Year 3 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.7513 = $37,565	
Year 4 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.6830 = $34,150	
Year 5 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.6209 = $31,045	
Present value of sum of future NPV net revenue	$189,535	$(10,465)
INTERNAL RATE OF RETURN (IRR) = Discounted interest rate at which NPV = 0. *Note:* Financial calculator is used to determine IRR by entering cash flow and discount rate.		
Today's investment	($200,000)	
Year 1 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.9265 = $46,326	
Year 2 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.8585 = $42,923	
Year 3 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.7954 = $39,769	
Year 4 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.7369 = $36,847	
Year 5 Net revenue × PVIF	$50,000 × 0.6828 = $34,140	
Present value of sum of future net revenue	$200,000	
NPV		$0
IRR		8%

PAYBACK PERIOD

The payback period is commonly used to evaluate a capital project. The payback is the length of time required for an investment's net revenue to cover the cost of the initial investment (Brigham & Houston, 2015). Because laboratory equipment or technology can become obsolete in a very short period of time, it is important to recover the investment cost as soon as possible. Many institutions want to see a payback in 3 years or less. Once the initial investment is recovered, net revenue (Revenue—Expense) from this investment represents a profit to the organization. The sooner a capital project's payback period is reached, the sooner an organization can realize a profit from the investment.

BREAKEVEN POINT

The breakeven point of a capital project is reached when the volume of sales is such that total revenue equals total costs (fixed and variable), and therefore profit is zero. Before the breakeven point is reached, the project is operating at a loss; after it is reached, the project is realizing a profit (Brigham & Houston, 2015). As with the payback period, the sooner the breakeven point is reached, the better it is for the organization.

RETURN ON INVESTMENT*

The rate of return on an investment (ROI) for a capital project is the ratio of net income it generates to the total investment of the project (Travers, 1997). ROI is a standard for evaluating how wisely management uses its capital dollars, whether from its own cash reserves or from borrowing activities. The higher the rate of return is, the better the capital dollars are used. ROI is the formal means of expressing the phrase "better bang for your buck." Some institutions have automated the ROI process. Most information can be pulled from the financial data banks of the hospital computer system after a limited amount of information is provided by the laboratory. An ROI is pretty much a standard requirement of most facilities for any capital project.

NET PRESENT VALUE*

Money loses its value over time; $10,000 today is more valuable than $10,000 3 years from now. This concept is known as the time value of money. The payback period and return on investment calculations do not consider the time value of money. They assume that the value of future cash flows remains constant. To address this shortcoming, the *net present value (NPV)* calculation is used to determine whether a project's cash flows (i.e., cash it generates in the future) are sufficient to repay the original investment, taking into account that money loses value over time. Thus cash received in the future has to be *discounted* (i.e., the value has to be reduced) to determine how much it is worth in today's dollars. The discount rate is usually the inflation rate (if no money was borrowed to finance the project) or the interest rate on a loan used to fund the project. NPV is defined as the present value of future cash flows, which have been discounted at the interest rate used to fund the capital project (Brigham & Houston, 2015).

When the NPV is a positive number, the project will generate enough cash to pay for the original investment. When the NPV is a negative number, the project cost is not recouped and/or the future cash flows are not sufficient to cover the interest costs for borrowing the money.

INTERNAL RATE OF RETURN*

The internal rate of return (IRR) also discounts cash flow into today's value. It determines the actual rate of return that the investment earns. The IRR is the discount rate at which the present value of a capital project's expected cash inflows equals the present value of its costs, or in other words, when the NPV equals zero.

Identifying a project's IRR is necessary to ensure that its rate is higher than the cost of the capital borrowed for the project. The higher the IRR, the faster the project pays for itself. Hospitals and corporations use the IRR as one way to rank projects.

*Note: Financial calculators and financial software packages are programmed to calculate ROI, NPV, and IRR. The NPV and IRR are very tedious calculations requiring multiple steps and the use of discount tables. It is not recommended to do these calculations manually.

INTERPRETATION OF FINANCIAL CALCULATIONS

Although the preceding calculations are important tools, an organization should not make its capital decisions based strictly on the outcome of the equations. As with all budgeting activities, there is an element of the unknown in assumptions. Predicting future cash flows for replacement instrumentation is usually more reliable than predicting it for new product lines or technology. Assigning an expected life to a piece of capital equipment is also an educated estimate. Having a good sense of how reliable predictions are will determine how much credence should be given to the calculations.

If only the payback period, breakeven analysis, and ROI were considered when evaluating the example in Table 12-10, the project would look acceptable. However, when the NPV and IRR are also considered, it does not look as good. The NPV is unfavorable, and the IRR is much less than the ROI because the cost of capital is high (10%). Does this mean the project should not go forward? Not necessarily. Depending on other issues, it may be determined that this new chemistry analyzer is absolutely essential to support the mission of the organization.

These calculations have other inherent drawbacks. As mentioned earlier, some of the calculations take into account the time value of money, and others do not. The time value of money is a very important consideration when the cost of capital is high (as in the example in Table 12-10) or during periods of high inflation. The rate of return calculations yield a percentage, but the actual dollars they represent are not immediately apparent. A capital project that yields an ROI of 15% might look better initially than one that yields 10%. However, the size of the projects may differ considerably. For example, in the former, an initial investment of $10,000 could produce $1500 in net revenue, but in the latter project, an initial investment of $200,000 produces $20,000 in net revenue. None of these financial calculations should be considered in isolation, but they should be used in aggregate to assist in the analysis of capital projects.

CAPITAL ACQUISITION METHODS

When a capital project is evaluated, the method for acquiring the equipment is also an important consideration. Table 12-11 summarizes the advantages and disadvantages of acquisition methods: purchase, leasing, and renting. Just as there is not a single best financial calculation when evaluating a project, there is not a single best acquisition method. The method selected depends on individual needs, characteristics and financial philosophy of the organization, and availability of capital dollars.

The concept of purchasing needed equipment is easy to understand, but is it the wisest use of an organization's money? If the capital (money) needed to fund the project is currently invested in a security that is earning a higher interest rate than the rate needed to borrow money, it makes financial sense to borrow the needed capital. Conversely, if capital earns a lower interest rate than the borrowing rate, it makes sense to use the organization's capital.

Once the equipment is purchased, it is an asset of the organization and is depreciated by a method appropriate for such a piece of equipment. Most laboratory equipment is depreciated over a 5-year period using the straight line depreciation method. The depreciation expense is noted in the income statement but probably will not be included in the monthly operational budget documents. It will depend on each organization as to whether depreciation is listed on the monthly budget reports. The operational expense for the equipment will consist of the supplies, maintenance, and labor needed to support it.

TABLE 12-11
Capital Acquisition Options

	Advantages	Disadvantages
Purchase	Ownership	Risk of obsolescence; opportunity cost
Operating (true) lease	Hedging obsolescence; flexibility in financing; cancelable	Nonownership; interest/financing cost
Financial lease	Ownership; flexibility in financing	Noncancelable; interest/financing cost
Rental	Hedging obsolescence; flexibility in length of use	High cost; nonownership

Many different variations and contract terms may be associated with a leasing agreement. Being certain to "read the fine print" never rings truer than when an equipment leasing arrangement is considered. Nonetheless, no matter how complicated the terms of a leasing contract are, there are only two types of leases.

An *operating lease* (also known as a "true" lease) allows an organization (lessee) full use of the equipment for a predetermined time. The time period is usually 1 to 3 years, but it is always less than the useful life of the equipment. A termination clause could be included in the agreement. Equipment maintenance is included in an operating lease. The lessee has no right to ownership during or after the lease period. No equity is established during the term. The owner (lessor) retains full ownership of the equipment and full responsibility for it. The leasing agreement may or may not contain an option to allow the lessee to purchase the equipment at the end of the term. This is only an option, however, and should not be misinterpreted as established equity over the course of the agreement. If a purchase option is provided, it is usually for the equipment's fair market value at the end of the lease period. If the original lessee decides not to purchase the equipment at the end of the lease term, the lessor could release it to the original lessee or to another organization, because the equipment still has useful life (Brigham & Houston, 2015).

The other lease type is a financial lease. With a *financial lease* (also known as a capital lease or lease-purchase), the lessee eventually gains ownership of the equipment. The lease period corresponds to the economic life of the equipment. Through lease payments, the lessor recovers the cost of the equipment plus an interest factor to ensure a return on its investment. A financial lease is not cancelable, and equipment maintenance is not included (Brigham & Houston, 2015).

Renting equipment is not the same as leasing it. The major differentiators are that renting does not carry an option for later purchase, renting has no predetermined specified length of time, renting can be terminated at any time, and maintenance and repairs are the responsibilities of the owner, not the renter (Travers, 1997). A reagent rental agreement is a misnomer; it is not a rental but a lease. These agreements require the lessee to purchase reagents that are specific for a particular piece of equipment. The price of the reagents is marked up by a certain amount to cover the "rent" of the equipment. The markup is a lease payment to cover the cost of the capital. Whether or not the equipment will be owned at the end of the reagent rental agreement will determine if the agreement was a financial lease. Recent federal legislation requires vendors to clearly state the proportion of annual payments that are allocated to the capital portion of the lease. This simplifies the analysis of competing lease agreements.

Regardless of which method of capital acquisition is utilized, you should always have the vendor or lessor break out the agreement into cost of equipment, cost of service agreement, and costs of reagents and supplies. This way, you can see and negotiate the cost of each. It is prudent to include someone from the institution's purchasing department to help with negotiations.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

American Medical Association: *CPT 2014 professional edition*, Chicago, 2015a, American Medical Association.

This AMA publication is the authoritative listing of accepted CPT codes.

American Medical Association: *HCPCS 2014 level II, professional edition*, Chicago, 2014b, American Medical Association.

This AMA publication is the authoritative listing of HCPCS 2014 Level II codes.

American Medical Association: *International Classification of Diseases, Tenth Revision, Clinical Modification (ICD-10-CM)*, Chicago, 2015, American Medical Association.

This AMA publication is the authoritative listing of ICD-10-CM codes.

Brigham EF, Houston JF: *Fundamentals of financial management*, ed 14, Mason, Ohio, 2015, Cengage Learning.

An introduction to finance textbook written for the undergraduate business student.

CMS (Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services): Clinical Labs Center. http://www.cms.gov/Center/Provider-Type/Clinical-Labs-Center.html. Accessed December 24, 2014a.

This website contains the most comprehensive collection of lab-related information, including fee schedules, coverage explanations, legislation, policies, and coding.

CMS (Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services): National health expenditure data. U.S. Department of Health & Human Services. Available at: http://www.cms.hhs.gov/nationalhealthexpenddata. Accessed December 22, 2014b.

This CMS web page contains an overview of health care spending in the United States.

CMS (Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services): Medicare claims processing manual: Inpatient hospital billing. U.S. Department of Health & Human Services. Available at: http://www.cms.gov/Regulations-and-Guidance/Guidance/Manuals/downloads/clm104c03.pdf. Accessed December 23, 2014c.

This CMS web page contains a copy of the Medicare Claims Processing Manual, Chapter 3, Inpatient Hospital Billing.

Garcia LS, editor: *Clinical laboratory management*, Washington, DC, 2004, ASM Press.

A multiauthored textbook with comprehensive coverage of all aspects of laboratory management.

Harmening DM: *Laboratory management: Principles and processes*, St. Petersburg, Fla., 2007, D.H. Publishing & Consulting.

A textbook designed to balance theory and practical applications of laboratory management.

Snyder JS, Wilkinson DS: *Management in laboratory medicine*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1998, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

A textbook developed to prepare medical technology students and pathology residents for the basic through intermediate levels of management.

Sultz HA, Young KM: *Health care USA: Understanding its organization and delivery*, ed 6, Sudbury, Mass., 2009, Jones & Bartlett.

A text describing the changing roles of the components of the health care system, in addition to the technical, economic, political, and social forces responsible for these changes.

Travers EM: *Clinical laboratory management*, Baltimore, MD, 1997, Williams & Wilkins.

A comprehensive basic textbook for training health care professionals for clinical laboratory management roles.

Wallace MA, Klosinski DD: *Clinical laboratory science education & management*, Philadelphia, 1998, WB Saunders.

A textbook presenting the basic tenets of education and management for practical application in the field of laboratory medicine.

REFERENCES

American Medical Association: Fact sheet 2. Preparing for the *ICD-10* Code Set. September 25, 2012. www.ama-assn.org/go/ICD-10.

CMS (Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services): Advanced beneficiary notice of noncoverage (ABN), ed 4, 2014d. http://www.cms.gov/Outreach-and-Education/Medicare-Learning-Network-MLN/MLNProducts/downloads/abn_booklet_icn006266.pdf.

CMS (Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services): Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA), July 2014e. http://www.cms.gov/Outreach-and-Education/Medicare-Learning-Network-MLN/MLNProducts/Downloads/CLIABrochure.pdf.

CMS (Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services): National correct coding initiative edits, December 12, 2014f. http://www.cms.gov/Medicare/Coding/NationalCorrectCodInitEd/index.html.

CHAPTER 13

BIOLOGICAL, CHEMICAL, AND NUCLEAR TERRORISM: ROLE OF THE LABORATORY

Philip M. Tierno Jr., Mark S. Lifshitz

BIOTERRORISM, 149
Overview, 149
Role of Level A Laboratory, 150
Biologic Agents/Diseases, 150
CHEMICAL TERRORISM, 157
History and Background, 157
Role of Level A Laboratory: Chemical Terrorism, 159
NUCLEAR TERRORISM, 159
History and Background of Nuclear Weapons, 159
Role of Level A Laboratory: Nuclear Terrorism, 160
SELECTED REFERENCES, 160

KEY POINTS

- Level A laboratories, also known as sentinel laboratories, may be the first to identify an unusual organism or cluster of isolates that may signal a bioterrorism event.
- The responsibility of a Level A laboratory is to rule out suspected biological agents rather than perform complete identification or highly complex analyses.
- Suspect samples must be handled safely and legally (using chain of custody).
- Specific protocols (and presumptive identification criteria) must be applied for each biologic agent.
- Category A (highest priority) biological agents are easily disseminated, can cause high mortality, and can generate public panic. They include bacterial (anthrax, plague, tularemia), viral (smallpox, viral hemorrhagic fever) and toxin-mediated (botulism) agents.
- Level A laboratories play mostly a supportive role in the management of hospitalized patients who are victims of a chemical terror attack.

BIOTERRORISM

OVERVIEW

On September 11, 2001, following the unimaginable terrorist attacks on New York City and Washington, D.C., the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommended that health care professionals increase surveillance for any unusual disease occurrences, or clusters of disease, asserting that these may be sentinel indicators of bioterrorist attack. As predicted, anthrax cases were reported in several states, thereby justifying the CDC's suspicions that a bioterrorist was at large. Over the years, it has become clear that germ warfare is as equally attractive to terrorist cells, organizations, and even disgruntled individuals as it is to countries. It delivers the greatest impact for the smallest amount of money, and it is relatively easy to carry out. It also comes with a big bonus: It has a dramatic psychological effect on the population. Compared with nuclear weapons or conventional armaments, biological weapons are relatively cheap and easy to make. For anyone with a rudimentary understanding of microbiology and the requisite materials, making biological agents of death in quantity is little more technically demanding than brewing beer. The microorganisms involved are often readily obtainable in nature, like the anthrax bacillus that abounds in soil throughout most of the world, or can be easily acquired from other sources such as a country's pharmaceutical and agricultural industries, or academic institutions. Toxic ricin, for example, which strikes at the central nervous system, can be extracted from the same castor beans that are the source of castor oil.

The U.S. Department of Defense and the CDC have published a list of the most likely biological weapons (NATO, 1996). They fall into three categories. The first includes deadly bacteria such as anthrax and plague. The second comprises viruses, such as those that cause smallpox, encephalitis, and hemorrhagic fevers like Ebola, Lassa, and Rift Valley fever. The last group is made up of toxins that attack the central nervous system, such as botulinum, fungal toxins, and ricin.

An effective national strategy to detect, prevent, and limit bioterrorism should consider the following:

- A coordinated plan is needed to network all federal, state, and municipal antibioterrorism programs. All first responders must be adequately educated and equipped to deal with any biowarfare or bioterrorism event.
- Military and law enforcement personnel and medical and health practitioners, especially first responders, should be vaccinated whenever possible so they can more effectively carry out their respective missions.
- Research and development of new wave (subparticle) vaccines, blocking agents, and antibiotics are needed to prevent and treat disease caused by biological weapons.
- Vaccination programs for the general public should be instituted to protect against the likeliest biological weapons.
- The public should be kept informed about germ warfare and should be instructed to report unusual neighborhood activities to local authorities. "Bioterrorism watches" could be introduced on the model of "neighborhood crime watches."
- All physicians and health care providers should be familiar with the symptoms and treatment of diseases caused by the likeliest biological warfare agents. All hospitals and medical facilities should develop emergency preparedness plans and should establish disaster policies to deal with any bioterror event or other disaster. Included in such plans is the development of a clinical laboratory preparedness and response plan.
- A nationwide epidemiologic surveillance program should link all medical facilities with the CDC or another assigned federal, state, or local agency to identify clusters of cases (sentinel events). Small clusters may signal a terrorist practicing before a larger-scale act is carried out.

The keynote to all of this is vigilance. Any complacency or overconfidence will surely prove fatal, sooner or later. The bottom line is that we must remain on alert for animal and human epidemics and must keep searching for better ways to respond to them, whether they are of natural or unnatural origin (Tierno, 2004).

This chapter explains how a Level A laboratory responds to a bioterror event as part of a health facility's larger emergency preparedness plan. This chapter excludes some common potential bioterror agents such as *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Escherichia coli* 0157, *Campylobacter*, *Vibrio*, and so on, because they are well known and are routinely cultured by Level A laboratories (see Part 7, Medical Microbiology). Instead, it focuses on several more likely bioterror agents with which a Level A laboratory may be less familiar.

ROLE OF LEVEL A LABORATORY

The Laboratory Response Network (LRN) is a new laboratory testing and referral system formed as an outgrowth of the CDC's Health Alert Network. Its purpose is to prepare for and provide a coordinated, rapid response to bioterrorism and other public health emergencies. The LRN consists of four types of laboratories, designated Levels A, B, C, and D.

Safety Issues

Level A laboratories must always operate in compliance with accepted biological safety level 2 (BSL-2) requirements, including regulations, policies, and procedures for handling blood-borne pathogens (Box 13-1). When handling any potential pathogen, all Level A laboratories should utilize BSL-3 practices for all culture manipulations that might produce aerosols. Level B laboratories operate in compliance with all BSL-2 requirements and always practice BSL-3 safety procedures. Level C laboratories operate in compliance with all BSL-3 safety requirements and are certified as BSL-3 facilities. Their staff is specially trained to handle highly pathogenic and potentially lethal agents.

It is of paramount importance to practice good laboratory safety. For example, staff who process viral cell cultures are at risk of contracting unsuspected bioterror agents, such as smallpox or hemorrhagic fever viruses (BSL-4 agents). To minimize exposure, staff must practice universal precautions and use biological safety cabinets to set up cultures (Gilchrist et al, 2000; CDC, 2001; NCCLS, 2001).

Laboratory Designations

Level A facilities are also known as sentinel laboratories, in that they may identify an unusual organism that may be highly suspect and therefore may be first to signal that a bioterrorism event has occurred. Alternatively, the Level A laboratory might report a cluster of isolates of the same organism for a number of patients that may be unusual and thus signal an event. Most clinical laboratories fall into this category. The cardinal responsibility of a Level A laboratory is to rule out suspected agents of bioterror rather than perform complete identification or highly complex analyses. Once a Level A laboratory reports a finding to a state or municipal public laboratory, it may be instructed to forward the microbe to a Level B or C laboratory so it can be "confirmed" using advanced methods. For example, if an agent is suspected of being *Bacillus anthracis*, but this cannot be ruled out by the Level A laboratory, it must be shipped out to a Level B or C facility.

Level D laboratories are even more advanced and may help develop and evaluate new tests for future use in Level B and C laboratories. They can usually type confirmed bioterror agents or may perform more sophisticated molecular testing on strains. Level D laboratories also archive organisms for future studies or reference (Gilchrist et al, 2000; CDC, 2001; NCCLS, 2001).

Once a Level A laboratory decides it cannot rule out an agent, it is common policy for the laboratory to notify the infection control officer or hospital epidemiologist, who, in turn, notifies the local health department. The laboratory should be prepared to follow instructions for shipping the suspect agent according to the *Infectious Substance Guidelines* provided by the Department of Transportation or the International Air Transport Association. It is not the responsibility of the Level A laboratory to declare that a bioterrorist event has taken place. Such responsibility rests with the state and/or federal authorities.

Because environmental specimens usually become evidence in a legal case, these specimens require full chain of custody management that is the domain of Levels B and C laboratories. Such *environmental* samples may also pose a hazard for patients in a hospital setting; therefore, in no case should Level A laboratories accept or process environmental specimens. It is the FBI's responsibility to manage the investigation of environmental samples that are submitted to Levels B and C laboratories.

Law Enforcement Issues

The Level A laboratory may play a role in a criminal investigation. If a specimen is suspected or known to possess a biological threat, it is important to preserve the original specimen, plates, cultures, and so on. If the laboratory is contacted by the FBI or other law enforcement agencies, the Level A laboratory must notify state health authorities, as well as the hospital infection control officer or epidemiologist. Any information relevant to analysis of potential evidence cannot be released to the public and should be conveyed only to the appropriate law enforcement officials and health authorities.

Chain of custody is a legal document that describes how evidence is handled from the time it is acquired and through all subsequent examinations and storage. The laboratory should have a written chain of custody policy and should appoint one person to serve as an "evidence custodian"—that is, the one who controls storage of evidence and documents access to it on a chain of custody form that is securely stored under lock and key. The LRN suggests completing a "receipt of property" form each time the laboratory receives evidence. This form should contain a unique identifier, the quality and quantity of each item, a description of each item, and as much information as possible regarding the submitter (Gilchrist et al, 2000; CDC/NIH, 2001; NCCLS, 2001).

BOX 13-1

Biological Safety Level (BSL) Practices

BSL-1 Practices: For Work with Agents of Minimal Hazard

Restrict or limit access when working.
Prohibit eating, drinking, and smoking.
Prohibit mouth pipetting.
Needles and sharps precautions

BSL-2 Practices: For Agents of Moderate Hazard

BSL-1 practices plus:
Use Biological Safety Cabinet (BSC)-Class II
Type A1: 30% air exhausted to room
Type A2: 30% air exhausted to outside
Type B1: 70% air exhausted to outside
Type B2: 100% air exhausted to outside
Use leakproof containers.

BSL-3 Practices: For Agents of Serious or Potential Lethal Hazard

BSL-2 practices plus:
Use BSC-Class II 100% air exhausted to outside through double high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration or HEPA plus incineration. Cabinet is gas tight and sealed, with operation performed through rubber gloves.
Use PPE (personal protective equipment).

BIOLOGICAL AGENTS/DISEASES

The CDC and other government agencies list biological agents/diseases in three categories (A, B, and C) according to priority of risk and ease of ability to disseminate to the population. Some representative examples in each category are listed in Tables 13-1, 13-2, and 13-3 (Gilchrist et al, 2000; USAMRIID, 2001; Tierno, 2002). Table 13-4 summarizes diagnosis and treatment issues related to the bioterror agents discussed later. The role of the Level A laboratory is described in Tables 13-5 through 13-13 for each agent discussed in this chapter.

Anthrax

History and Background

Bacillus anthracis, the etiologic agent of anthrax (Table 13-5), is a rod-shaped, gram-positive bacterium that produces a spore. Ordinarily, these bacteria grow in a vegetative form, but when conditions are not ideal for growth, they sporulate. Thus they can survive even under adverse conditions. The vegetative forms are relatively easy to kill with simple

TABLE 13-1

Category A Agents

HIGHEST PRIORITY OF AGENTS THAT POSE A NATIONAL SECURITY RISK

Characteristics	Agents
Easily disseminated and/or transmitted from person to person	Anthrax (*Bacillus anthracis*) Botulism (*Clostridium botulinum*) Plague (*Yersinia pestis*)
Can result in high mortality rates with a major public health impact	Smallpox (variola major) Tularemia (*Francisella tularensis*) Viral hemorrhagic fevers—filoviruses (i.e., Ebola, Marburg) and arenaviruses (i.e., Lassa, Machupo)
Might cause public panic	

TABLE 13-2
Category B Agents

Characteristics	Agents
Moderately easy to disseminate	Brucellosis (*Brucella* species) Epsilon toxin of *Clostridium perfringens*
Moderate morbidity and low mortality	Food safety threats (i.e., *Salmonella* sp., *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, *Shigella*)
May require enhanced Centers for Disease Control and Prevention diagnostic capacity	Glanders (*Burkholderia malleri*) Melioidosis (*Burkholderia pseudomallei*) Psittacosis (*Chlamydia psittaci*) Q fever (*Coxiella burnetii*) Ricin toxin from *Ricinus communis* (castor beans) Staphylococcal enterotoxin B Typhus fever (*Rickettsia prowazekii*) Viral encephalitis (alphaviruses: Venezuelan equine encephalitis, eastern and western equine encephalitis) Water safety threats (i.e., *Vibrio cholerae, Cryptosporidium parvum*)

TABLE 13-3
Category C Agents

Characteristics	Agents
Availability	Hantavirus
Ease of production and dissemination	Nipah virus
Potential for high morbidity and mortality	Other emerging pathogens that could be engineered for mass dissemination
Potential major health impact	

germicides, such as alcohol or peroxide, or even heat, but spores are very resistant to both chemicals and heat. *B. anthracis* spores survive for decades. This is a key point because spores cause infection. In nature, anthrax is usually associated with grazing animals such as sheep, goats, cattle, and wildlife that acquire spores as they feed on vegetation or meat from infected animals. *B. anthracis* is present in soil throughout the world; in the United States, it is found mostly along old cattle trails in Texas, Louisiana, Mississippi, Arkansas, New Mexico, Oklahoma, and some midwestern states. However, anthrax is rare in the United States because it is controlled in animal populations by vaccination programs. Spores occur when the pH of a richly organic soil is higher than 6.0 and rainfall gives way to drought conditions. When herbivorous animals contract the infection, they can transmit the infection to humans by direct contact with animal products such as hair, wool, hides, bones, and so on. Individuals in certain occupations, such as animal handlers, agricultural workers, and veterinarians, are at increased risk for contracting anthrax. About 90% of all human anthrax cases reportedly occur in millworkers handling imported goat hair. Humans can be infected three ways: via the skin (cutaneous) through scratches or abrasions, by inhalation of spores, or by eating contaminated, insufficiently cooked meat or meat products. The word *anthracis* comes from the Greek word meaning "coal," and the bacterium was so named because the microbe can cause a black scab (eschar) to form on the skin of cutaneous anthrax victims. For the same reason, it is sometimes called the "black carbuncle" (Tierno, 2002).

Anthrax is the single greatest biowarfare threat because it is easy to cultivate spores, although production of a weaponized spore is not so simple. The media sometimes refer to "weapons grade" anthrax versus "nonweapons grade." Criteria for weapons grade include small spore size, usually 1 to 3 microns; lack of clumping (usually accomplished by adding a polymer that prevents the natural tendency of spores to clump); the quantity of spores present; and an effective delivery system. By this description, the anthrax unleashed on the United States in the fall of 2001 was near weapons grade because it fulfilled two of the four criteria. The spores were small and dispersed well in the air, but particles were present in limited quantities and were delivered via the mail. If enough product had been made, and if it had been delivered effectively, it would have been considered weapons grade.

In nature, spores in soil tend to clump together, making it very difficult for a person to contract inhalation anthrax naturally. For a terrorist to weaponize anthrax spores, he must first prevent clumping of particles and then must deliver the weapon in sufficient quantity. Clearly, both of these tasks are very difficult. Even a crop duster would have to be retrofitted quite extensively to deliver spores effectively. To be an effective weapon, the anthrax spores must remain airborne in a concentration that is high enough to be inhaled deep into the lungs. Based on available data, it appears that number varies from about 8000 to 40,000 spores. A few studies suggest that inhalation of small numbers of spores, around 500 over an 8-hour period, did not make goat mill workers develop disease. Although *B. anthracis* can cause three types of infection (skin, inhalation, and gastrointestinal), a bioterrorist would be most interested in causing inhalation anthrax because of the high mortality rate associated with it. In nature, however, approximately 95% of human cases of anthrax are cutaneous infections (Lew, 2000; Tierno, 2002).

Anthrax spores can survive inside macrophages, eventually vegetating and growing to such numbers that they cause the cells to burst and release bacilli into the bloodstream. These bacteria produce four virulence factors; three are toxins that cause systemic symptoms: protective antigen toxin, the lethal factor, and the edema factor. Last, anthrax produces a capsule that protects it from destruction by the body's leukocytes. Once systemic symptoms occur, antibiotics are useless because they have no effect on the circulating toxins (Tierno, 2002).

Clinical Features

Inhalation Anthrax. This form is a biphasic disease. The *initial* phase is characterized by mild flu-like symptoms (e.g., malaise, fatigue, low-grade fever), followed by a period of apparent wellness for about a day. This is immediately followed by the *acute* phase, which eventually leads to more serious symptoms (e.g., acute respiratory distress). The incubation period can vary from 1 to 5 days, depending on the number of spores inhaled, but it can be as long as 60 days. Shock and death usually occur 24 to 36 hours after the onset of respiratory distress. The fatality rate of inhalation anthrax approaches 90%, even with antibiotic therapy. However, this figure will probably change for the better owing to the availability of newer antibiotics and superior intensive care treatment facilities. Inhalation anthrax is not spread via person-to-person transmission.

Cutaneous Anthrax. This skin form of anthrax occurs after spores are introduced beneath the skin by inoculation or contamination of a preexisting lesion or break in the skin. The incubation period is 2 to 7 days (rarely after 1 day) but more often lasts between 2 and 5 days. Lesions begin as small, painless pimples on exposed skin and progress to vesicles and eventually an ulceration that develops a black scab (eschar) at the center (within 2 to 6 days). Untreated cutaneous anthrax can have a fatality rate of up to 20%, but fatalities are rare (1%) with proper antibiotic treatment. Although anthrax is not transmitted person-to-person, secondary lesions can develop from direct exposure to vesicle secretions.

Gastrointestinal Anthrax. This form of anthrax occurs by ingesting contaminated meat, in particular raw or undercooked, from infected animals. It has recently been reported in association with animal-hide drumming events in New England (CDC, 2010).

The incubation period is 2 to 7 days. Two types of GI anthrax are characterized by different symptoms: intestinal (e.g., nausea, vomiting, diarrhea) and oropharyngeal (e.g., neck swelling, difficulty swallowing). Shock and toxemia can characterize both forms of the disease, especially in the terminal stages. The fatality rate is 25% to 60%. Inhalation, cutaneous, and GI anthrax can be complicated by meningitis, which occurs in about 5% of cases (Lew, 2000).

Practical Considerations

- Hand washing is the single most important protective measure. Spores are effectively removed with soap and water.
- Any article suspected of being contaminated with spores should be sanitized with a 1:10 dilution of household bleach. Let bleach remain in contact for at least 30 minutes before rinsing. If heavy spore contamination is suspected, use concentrated bleach to decontaminate the article.
- N95 respirator masks are protective against spore aerosols.
- Any cut, scratch, or abrasion should be covered with a dressing that has been coated with 1% tincture of iodine. If the cut or abrasion is not too extensive, apply tincture of iodine to its surface. Iodine is an

TABLE 13-4
Bioterrorism Agents: Diagnosis and Treatment

Agent	Diagnosis	Tests and Specimens	Treatment
Anthrax	Clinical evaluation and laboratory findings	*Culture:* Blood, CSF, wounds (definitive) *Nasal culture:* Determines extent of spore spread in population *Immunohistochemical (IHC):* Tissue *PCR*: Can confirm diagnosis if culture is negative *Serology:* ELISA, IFA	Antibiotics, including penicillin, quinolones, tetracycline. Treat inhalation anthrax for 60 days. Can combine antibiotics (30 days) and vaccine (3 doses at 0, 14, and 28 days). Full vaccination regimen is 6 doses at 0, 2, and 4 weeks and 6, 12, and 18 months followed by yearly boosters.
Plague	Clinical evaluation and laboratory findings	*Culture:* Sputum, blood, lymph *Direct FA:* Respiratory secretions *Serology:* F1–V antigen (fusion protein) assay	Antibiotics, including tetracycline; quinolones, streptomycin, gentamicin, and chloramphenicol for 10 to 14 days. *Prophylaxis:* Medication for 7 days. Formalin-killed vaccine given 0, 1, and 4 to 7 months Boosters every 1 to 2 years
Brucella	Difficult with many rule-outs; laboratory required	*Culture:* Nasal, sputum, respiratory specimens (can also use PCR); blood culture is definitive test *Serology:* IFA, ELISA, and microagglutination (gold standard) to detect antibodies	*Combination antibiotics (6 weeks):* Doxycycline and rifampin or quinolone and rifampin. Prophylaxis requires 3 weeks. Numerous vaccines (both killed or live attenuated) available with no proven success.
Tularemia	Difficult with many rule-outs; laboratory required *Key symptom:* Pneumonia with nonproductive cough	General laboratory tests not helpful *Culture:* Bacterium does not grow on ordinary media, needs cysteine blood or chocolate agar *Capsular AG detection or PCR:* Whole unclotted blood *Direct FA and PCR:* Nasal, induced respiratory specimens *IHC:* Tissue sometimes helpful *Serology:* ELISA AB	*Treatment:* Antibiotics like gentamicin, streptomycin, ciprofloxacin *Prophylaxis:* Doxycycline *Vaccine:* Live attenuated available
Botulism	Clinical evaluation; routine laboratory tests are of no value; toxin assay may be useful if toxin present in serum	*PCR and toxin assay:* Use nasal induced respiratory secretions and blood	*Supportive treatment:* Antitoxin can be administered up to 24 hours after exposure: two types, trivalent and pentavalent. Also available is a pentavalent toxoid vaccine.
Smallpox	Clinical findings (exanthems)	*Cell or chick embryo culture:* Skin lesions ideal; nasal swabs, respiratory secretions, serum specimens can also be cultured *Electron microscopy*: Identifies virus *PCR:* Use same specimens as earlier *Agar gel precipitation:* Skin lesions *Serology:* Tests are available	VIG must be used in conjunction with vaccinia vaccine if exposure occurs beyond a 3-day time frame. Within 3 days, only vaccinia vaccine need be given by scarification. Cidofovir offers promise.
VEE	Difficult with many rule-outs; laboratory required	*PCR or culture in cells/suckling mice:* Nasal induced respiratory secretions and serum *Serology:* ELISA, IFA, and hemagglutination inhibition; detect AB	Some drugs show promise. At present, no specific therapy. Treatment geared toward relieving symptoms. Some vaccines show promise (i.e., TC-84).
VHF	Clinical evaluation; key finding is vascular involvement (i.e., petechiae, bleeding, postural hypotension, edema, etc.)	*General:* Leukopenia, thrombocytopenia; elevated AST *Serology:* ELISA, IFA, and PCR; detect different VHFs	Management of hypotension and fluid loss. Aggressive supportive care needed. Ribavirin and immune globulin therapy show some promise. Several vaccines under development.

AB, Antibody; *AG,* antigen; *AST,* aspartate aminotransferase; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *FA,* fluorescent antibody; *IFA,* indirect fluorescent antibody; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *VEE,* Venezuelan equine encephalitis; *VHF,* viral hemorrhagic fever, *VIG,* vaccinia immune globulin.

outstanding antiseptic and can be sporicidal. No contusion is too small to warrant attention.

- Homes that have central air conditioning fitted with high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) will remove more than 99.97% of particles 0.3 microns or larger. Because anthrax spores tend to clump, they will be efficiently trapped by HEPA filters. Alternatively, an air purifier outfitted with a HEPA filter will serve to keep a "safe-room" free of spores.

Plague

History and Background

The "Black Death" or the "plague" (Table 13-6) that befell Europe in the fourteenth century killed more than 25 million people, or about 25% of the population. This period is called the "second" pandemic. The first of three pandemics started in AD 541 and continued through to the eighth century, with an estimated 40 million deaths. The third and last pandemic began in China in the 1860s and spread to Africa, Europe, and the Americas. The plague is a zoonotic disease that primarily infects rodents and is caused by the bacterium *Yersinia pestis*, transmitted by a rat flea (*Xenopsylla cheopis*, the oriental flea, or *Pulex irritans*, the human flea). In the past, human epidemics originated by contact with fleas of infected rodents. The great plagues spread from rats to humans in crowded, unsanitary urban areas. People are only incidental to the usual cycle of rodent to flea to rodent. In the United States, most naturally occurring human cases of plague (about 12/year) are concentrated in the Southwest and Pacific states (Perry & Fetherson, 1997; Tierno, 2002).

In a biowarfare scenario, the plague bacillus could be delivered by contaminated fleas as vectors causing the bubonic plague or could more likely be spread by an aerosol that would cause pneumonic plague. In nature, a rat flea regurgitates the bacterium upon biting its host. Cats are

TABLE 13-5

Bacillus anthracis: Level A Laboratory Role

Presumptively identify based on criteria below, and then submit culture to a Level B or C laboratory for final identification.	
Direct smears	Samples such as blood, CSF, and skin (eschar) show encapsulated gram-positive rods, single or in chains. Generally, spores not seen.
Culture smears	Large gram-positive bacilli (1-1.5 by 3-5 µm), which may be gram-variable after 72 hours; spores can be found in culture, especially under non-CO_2 atmosphere but are nonswollen and are terminal or subterminal.
Colonies on sheep blood agar plates	Rapidly growing 2 to 5 mm (overnight at 35°C), nonhemolytic, nonpigmented, dry "ground-glass" surface colonies with irregular edges having comma-shaped projections (Medusa head). The colony has a sticky (tenacious) consistency when teased with a loop.
Other criteria	Nonmotile, catalase-positive, urease-negative, nitrate-positive, encapsulated bacillus that can be lysed by gamma phage (gamma phage typing is usually performed by Level B or C laboratory).

CO_2, Carbon dioxide; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid.

TABLE 13-6

Yersinia pestis: Level A Laboratory Role

Presumptively identify based on criteria below, and then submit culture to a Level B or C laboratory for final identification.	
Direct smears	More likely to see bipolar staining ("safety pin") from clinical specimens (blood, sputum, aspirates, etc.) than from cultures. Bipolarity is better seen using Wayson or Wright-Giemsa stain. Beware that bipolar staining is not always observed and is not unique to *Y. pestis.*
Culture smears	Plump gram-negative rods (1-2 by 0.5 µm), single or in short chains.
Colonies on sheep blood agar plates	Grow at 35°C (faster at room temperature) as gray-white, nonhemolytic, translucent, pinpoint colonies at 24 hours, but by 48 hours, colonies are 1 to 2 mm in diameter, becoming yellowish with age. Growth occurs with or without carbon dioxide. Colonies can appear as "fried egg" or with "hammered copper" shiny surface. On MacConkey, grow as pinpoint non–lactose-fermenting colonies after 24 hours; slightly larger at 48 hours.
Other criteria	The bacterium is nonmotile at 35°C to 37°C and at room temperature (*Y. pestis* is the only *Yersinia* that is nonmotile at room temperature). It is oxidase and urease negative and catalase positive; growth in broth is flocculent and is described as "stalactite"; clumps at side and bottom of tube.

also susceptible and can transmit the pneumonic plague to humans. Unlike anthrax, which cannot be transmitted person-to-person, pneumonic plague can be transmitted via large aerosol droplets from a coughing patient.

Yersinia pestis can be killed by polymorphonuclear cells, but they can survive in monocytes, where they produce a capsule to resist phagocytosis. These bacteria can then rapidly reach the lymph system and bloodstream and be disseminated to all organs, causing hemorrhage and necrosis.

Fewer than 100 organisms are necessary to cause human infection. Studies have shown that the bacterium can remain alive for up to 1 year in soil and up to 270 days in live tissue. The bacterium is killed after heat exposure (15 minutes at 72°C/160°F) and within several hours of exposure to sunlight (Tierno, 2002).

Clinical Features

Plague occurs in three clinical forms: bubonic, which is characterized by swelling of the lymph nodes (buboes); pneumonic, in which the lungs are extensively involved; and septicemic, in which the bloodstream is infected with *Yersinia pestis*. The mortality rate of untreated pneumonic plague is 100%, and that of untreated bubonic plague is about 50%.

Bubonic Plague. The incubation period of 2 to 10 days is characterized by malaise, high fever, and tender lymph nodes (buboes) that enlarge and eventually necrose. Septicemia may occur, and bacteria can spread to the central nervous system, the lungs (this produces the pneumonic disease, which can then be spread person-to-person), and the rest of the body, eventually causing death.

Pneumonic Plague. The 1- to 3-day incubation period is shorter than that of bubonic plague. Symptoms include high fever, cough, chest pain, and bloody sputum; pneumonia can lead to respiratory and circulatory collapse (Perry & Fetherson, 1997).

Practical Considerations

- Pneumonic plague patients transmit infection through large particle droplets (greater than 5 microns) generated by coughing, talking, or sneezing. A simple surgical-type mask can protect workers or family members. Droplet Precautions should be maintained for 3 complete days of antibiotic therapy, after which a person is no longer contagious.
- Because "droplets" occur only within 3 to 5 feet of a patient, central air conditioning systems do not need to be fitted with HEPA filters (i.e., they do not need to provide bacteria- and particle-free air).
- If an outbreak occurs, it is important to control fleas, rats, and other animals such as cats. Insecticides and repellents are widely available.
- Hand washing is an essential prevention strategy.
- Because *Y. pestis* does not have a spore form, surfaces can be decontaminated with a simple germicide, such as 10% bleach solution. Skin can be decontaminated by using any germicidal soap product. Alcohol-based hand sanitizers such as Purell can also be effective.
- Clothing should be washed with a germicidal detergent and hot water (155°F), even though exposure is unlikely to occur from reaerosolization of bacteria from contaminated clothing.
- Stand clear (farther than 3 to 5 feet) of individuals taking a coughing fit or producing sputum with or without blood.

TABLE 13-7

Brucella species: Level A Laboratory Role

Presumptively identify based on criteria below, and then submit culture to a Level B or C laboratory for final identification and/or confirmation, although most Level A laboratories are able to completely identify *Brucella.*	
Direct smears	Blood and/or bone marrow most often submitted. *Brucella* appears as faintly staining, small gram-negative coccobacilli (0.5-0.7 by 0.6-1.5 µm), mostly seen as single cells appearing like "fine sand."
Culture smears	Similar to above.
Colonies on sheep blood (SBA) and chocolate (CA) agars	Usually not visible or are pinpoint at 24 hours; at 48 hours, colonies are tiny, nonpigmented, and smooth with an entire edge, and are nonhemolytic on SBA. Growth of some strains is enhanced by carbon dioxide tension. Some strains grow on MacConkey; Thayer-Martin can be used as a selective medium. Blood cultures are held for 21 days for suspect cases.
Other criteria	These coccobacilli are catalase, urease, and oxidase positive (*B. canis* is variable). They are nonmotile and do not require X and V factors. Brucellosis is one of the most commonly reported laboratory-acquired infections. Automated systems are not useful, nor are they recommended for identification. Remember that sniffing culture plates of *Brucella* can result in infection.

Brucellosis

History and Background

Brucellosis (Table 13-7) is a systemic zoonotic disease caused by *Brucella melitensis*, *B. suis*, *B. abortus*, and *B. canis*. These bacteria ordinarily cause disease in domestic animals, such as goats, sheep, and camels (*B. melitensis*); cattle (*B. abortus*); and pigs (*B. suis*). The primary pathogen of dogs, *B. canis*

rarely causes disease in humans. Natural infection in humans occurs when bacteria are inhaled as aerosols; ingested in raw, unpasteurized, infected milk or meat; or introduced into abrasions in skin or through contact with conjunctival surfaces. Human disease is called undulant fever, Malta fever, Bang's disease, Gibraltar fever, and Mediterranean fever and occurs worldwide. In developed countries, human infection is associated with the meat-packing and dairy industries. Several studies report that human brucellosis is underdiagnosed and underreported. By some estimates, 25 to 30 cases go unrecognized for every reported case. As a biological warfare agent, brucellae would likely be delivered via the aerosol route. Brucellae are intracellular bacteria; they are able to survive phagocytosis and thus can be carried from lymph tissue to blood and deposited in numerous organs. Inside the phagocytes, the bacteria grow, and eventually their host cells are killed, and a new crop of bacteria are released. The "undulant" fever pattern observed with this disease corresponds to the release of bacteria into the blood, thereby causing fever. As these bacteria are eliminated, the fever subsides, only to recur when another crop of bacteria are released. Relapses are common. *Brucella* species have two morphologically different colony types: smooth and rough. The smooth form is more pathogenic because of the presence of a capsule that protects the bacterium from phagocytosis and destruction. *B. melitensis* and *B. suis* are more virulent than the other two species and have better intracellular survival. On the other hand, *B. abortus* and *B. canis* have an insidious onset but cause milder disease and fewer complications (Shapiro et al, 1998; Shapiro & Wong, 1999; Tierno, 2002).

Clinical Features

The incubation period can be 1 to 8 weeks, but it is usually 3 to 4 weeks. Onset is insidious, with malaise, fever, chills, sweats, headache, fatigue, myalgias, and arthralgias. Fever usually rises in the afternoon and then falls during the night and is accompanied by drenching sweat. Swollen lymph, spleen, and liver may also be present. The undulant fever can occur over weeks, months, or even years. Yet, there are many days when a patient has no fever and feels relatively well, only to experience another cycle of waxing and waning fever. Patients are often diagnosed with a fever of unknown origin. Cough occurs in about 20% of cases, but the radiograph appears normal. The mortality rate is about 6% for *B. melitensis* but 1% for the other species. Most deaths are associated with endocarditis or meningitis. Gastrointestinal symptoms occur in up to 70% of adult cases, although less frequently in children.

Practical Considerations

- Although *Brucella* species have a long incubation period and a slow onset, the characteristic undulant fever syndrome helps make a diagnosis, so treatment can start.
- *Brucella* has such a low fatality rate (especially with proper antibiotic therapy) that it is not a very effective biological weapon.
- Brucellosis cannot be transmitted person-to-person, so patient isolation is not required. However, contact precautions are indicated if a draining lesion is present.
- *Brucella* species have no spore form, so they are readily killed with any common germicide. Pasteurization (at 155° F) kills bacteria in contaminated food.
- Brucellosis is contracted through eye contact (i.e., rubbing or touching your eyes), so hand washing with germicidal soap or alcohol-based hand sanitizers is an important protective strategy.

Tularemia

History and Background

The causative agent of tularemia (also known as "rabbit fever") (Table 13-8) is *Francisella tularensis*. These bacteria are gram-negative bacilli that are nonmotile and have no spore form. Humans acquire this zoonotic disease through contact with animals, usually through the inoculation of skin or their mucous membranes with blood or tissue fluids of infected animals or bites from infected ticks, mosquitoes, or flies. A less common method of acquiring infection is through inhalation of contaminated dusts or ingestion of contaminated foods or water. A bioterrorist would likely use an aerosol to deliver *Francisella* because it causes typhoidal (systemic) tularemia, a disease with a higher than 10% fatality rate.

Because the bacterium is highly contagious, as few as 25 inhaled organisms or as few as 10 organisms administered subcutaneously can cause infection. The smallest break in the skin can serve as a portal of entry. The bacterium is so contagious that numerous cases of tularemia have resulted from laboratory accidents during processing of infected clinical or research samples. *Francisella* is distributed worldwide. In the United States, the disease has been reported primarily in the southern and south central states.

TABLE 13-8

Francisella tularensis: Level A Laboratory Role

Presumptively identify based on criteria below, and then submit culture to a Level B or C laboratory for final identification.	
Direct smears	Gram stain of blood, biopsy material, scrapings, or aspirates may be difficult to interpret because bacteria are tiny, pleomorphic, poorly staining gram-negative coccobacilli seen mostly as single cells.
Culture smear	Very tiny (0.2-0.5 by 0.7-1.0 µm), poorly staining, pleomorphic, gram-negative coccobacilli. They are smaller than *Haemophilus influenzae* and *Brucella* spp. Their minuscule size should raise awareness.
Colonies on sheep blood (SBA), chocolate (CA), and blood cysteine (BCA) agars	Grow poorly and slowly on SBA as 1 to 2 mm gray-white, nonhemolytic colonies after 48 to 72 hours. On CA and BCA, colonies are slightly larger, 1 to 3 mm, gray-white to bluish-gray with an entire edge and smooth flat surface. Colonies do not subculture well to SBA (viability is usually lost). Subcultures should be made onto CA, BCA, or Thayer-Martin agar. Carbon dioxide is not required for growth. No growth occurs on MacConkey or eosin methylene blue agar.
Other criteria	*F. tularensis* is nonmotile and oxidase and urease negative; catalase can be weakly positive or negative. X and V factors are not required. Slow growth in thioglycollate broth with a dense band near top, which eventually diffuses downward with time.

F. tularensis produces a capsule that allows the organism to avoid immediate destruction by the body's phagocytes. It can survive as an intracellular parasite within cells of the lymph system.

Clinical Features

Six major syndromes are associated with tularemia; they differ by mode of infection.

1. *Ulceroglandular tularemia* (70% to 85% of cases) typically presents with a skin ulcer, usually as the result of a tick bite, and swollen lymph nodes, fever, chills, headache, sweating, and coughing.
2. *Glandular tularemia* (5% to 12% of cases) is characterized by fever and swollen lymph nodes but no obvious skin lesion.
3. *Typhoidal tularemia* (7% to 14% of cases) presents with acute onset of fever, chills, headache, vomiting, and diarrhea. Usually no skin lesions or swollen lymph nodes are present, but the condition is associated with primary or secondary pneumonia. This form has the highest mortality rate and is the most likely bioterror form.
4. *Oculoglandular tularemia* (1% to 2% of cases) presents with severe conjunctivitis and swollen lymph nodes, usually as the result of self-inoculating the organism into the conjunctivae.
5. *Oropharyngeal tularemia* occurs in patients who have a primary lesion in the oropharynx. Patients present with severe headache and bilateral tonsillitis or severe streptococcal-type sore throat. Persistent swollen lymph nodes in the neck appear after 1 to 2 weeks.
6. *Pneumonic tularemia* (8% to 13% of cases) is primarily a complication of the other forms, especially typhoidal tularemia. It is also acquired by inhaling of infectious aerosols or as a result of blood-borne dissemination. Lymph nodes in the lungs are enlarged. Sometimes, the pneumonia is not evident (Wong & Shapiro, 1999).

In all tularemia syndromes, lymph nodes may remain enlarged for a long time and eventually may become necrotic and drain. Fever (usually low grade) is accompanied by malaise, headache, and pain in the regional lymph nodes.

Practical Considerations

- Hand washing with germicidal soap or alcohol-based hand sanitizers is the most important protective strategy. Any aerosolized bioterrorist attack would contaminate the surrounding environment and could lead to secondary exposure through direct contact with skin and mucous

membranes. Simple germicides such as bleach destroy the bacterium on contaminated surfaces.
- Because there are no spore forms, only vegetative ones, bacteria are easily killed by heat (30 minutes at 145°F). The relatively low fatality rate does not make it a very effective biological weapon. Infected patients rapidly improve on adequate (10 to 14 days) antibiotic therapy.
- Because tularemia can be transmitted by contact with household pets such as cats and dogs, it is important to observe any changing habits and the health status of pets. They can be the sentinel event to warn you of an impending disaster, much like the canary in the mine.
- *Francisella* is rarely transmitted by food or water; nevertheless, it is important to be alert to that possibility. Cooking food renders the bacterium harmless, as does filtering or heating water.

Botulinum Toxins

History and Background

Clostridia are anaerobic, gram-positive, spore-forming bacilli that elaborate toxins (Table 13-9). The most pathogenic species are *Clostridium perfringens* (agent of gas gangrene), *C. tetani* (agent of tetanus), and *C. botulinum* (agent of botulism). The aforementioned diseases are the result of exposure to the protein toxins that the bacteria produce, the most powerful of which is the botulinum toxin. Seven *C. botulinum* toxins are known: A, B, C, D, E, F, and G. Human illness is caused by four of the seven toxins: types A, B, E, and F. The toxins bind to synaptic vesicles of cholinergic nerves, preventing release of acetylcholinesterase at peripheral nerve endings (including neuromuscular junctions). Patients develop acute flaccid descending paralysis. By blocking neurotransmission, the toxins cause palsies and skeletal muscle weakness, which are common clinical features. *C. botulinum* toxins are among the most toxic substances known to man. A lethal human dose is only one-millionth of a gram (Angulo & Louis, 1998; Tierno, 2002).

Several forms of botulism occur in humans. The classic type is food-borne botulism, which typically occurs in adults and is caused by ingestion of toxins present in contaminated food. *C. botulinum* grows in food and produces its toxin. The usual foods involved are canned alkaline foods that are eaten without cooking, and smoked and vacuum-packed foods. Under anaerobic conditions, *C. botulinum* spores grow into vegetative forms that produce toxin. Wound botulism, the rarest form, occurs when bacteria gain access to a wound site and then produce toxins in vivo. Infant botulism, the most common type, occurs when a child consumes food contaminated with *C. botulinum* rather than consuming preformed toxins. Toxin is produced in the infant's gut, de novo, and poisons from within. Some botulism patients do not have an obvious food or wound source; they fall into the "classification undetermined" group.

TABLE 13-9

Botulinum Toxin Exposure: Level A Laboratory Role

Submit specimens immediately to public health laboratory for evaluation and referral, even if criminal activity is not suspected. Level A laboratories should not manipulate specimens, culture, identify, or perform toxin assays. Level A laboratory responsibility is limited to advising the medical staff on specimen selection, packing, shipping, and notifying the recipient laboratory about specimens from a suspected case.

	Specimen	Transport
Suspect food samples	25 to 50 g of food should be submitted in original containers that have been placed in a leakproof, sealed system.	4°C
Nasal swabs	If aerosolized release is suspected, collect nasal swabs for toxin testing and/or polymerase chain reaction analysis.	Room temperature
Stool, enema fluid	Collect 25 to 50 g of stool into sterile leakproof containers.	4°C
Serum	Collect approximately 10 mL for serologic assays.	4°C
Other	Collect environmental and/or other samples on swabs.	4°C

Note: Level A laboratory responsibility for other suspected toxins such as staphylococcal toxins, mycotoxin, saxitoxin, ricin, and so on should be treated in a similar manner.

As a bioterror weapon, botulinum toxin may be purified from large stores of toxin-producing *C. botulinum*. It then can be delivered as an aerosol that causes symptoms like those of food-borne botulism. Another approach might be to sabotage food supplies with toxin, although the latter is not an efficient delivery system (USAMRIID, 2001; Tierno, 2002). We know that botulinum toxins can be weaponized because the Iraqi government admitted to a United Nations inspection team in August 1991 that it had done research on these toxins before the Persian Gulf War. It is possible to weaponize any of the seven known botulinum toxins because they all would have the same effect.

Clinical Features

Symptoms usually begin 18 to 24 hours after ingestion or inhalation of toxin, although this may take several days. Initial symptoms include double vision, lack of coordination of eye muscles, inability to swallow, speech difficulty, generalized weakness, and dizziness. These are followed by descending progressive weakness of the extremities and weakness of the respiratory muscles. No fever is present, and the patient may be totally alert and oriented. Neurologic examination shows flaccid muscle weakness of the tongue, larynx, respiratory muscles, and extremities. A patient remains fully conscious until shortly before death from respiratory paralysis or cardiac arrest. Mortality rate is high. Patients who recover do not develop antitoxin in the blood. Suppression of antibody production is probably caused by the toxins, in much the same way that toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 produced by *Staphylococcus aureus* prevents antibody production. In infants, signs of paralysis are called "floppy baby" syndrome (Tierno, 2002).

Practical Considerations

- Antitoxins and vaccines are available for treatment and prophylaxis.
- Botulinum toxin is *less* toxic and lethal when delivered by inhalation than by a food-borne assault.
- Soap and water can be very effective at removing most toxins from skin, clothing, and equipment, so that decontamination of a toxin is *not* as critical as decontamination of an infectious microbe. A very mild bleach solution (1 part bleach in 9 parts water) effectively inactivates most protein toxins.
- A protective N95 mask, if worn properly, is effective against toxin aerosols. However, it is important that a tight fit be achieved because even a small leak could result in significant exposure. Bearded individuals would not be able to achieve a tight fit but nevertheless would reduce their exposure with a mask.
- Because botulinum toxin does not permeate the skin, special protective clothing is not as important as it would be for other agents, including chemical attacks.

Smallpox

History and Background

Smallpox (Table 13-10) has the distinct honor of being the greatest single killer in recorded history; it is estimated that this virus has killed about 500 million people. The smallpox virus, variola, is a member of the Orthopoxvirus group of viruses. Two variants of smallpox are known: variola major, which is associated with a higher mortality rate of 15% to 40%, and variola minor, which causes a milder disease and is associated with a mortality rate of only 1%. Smallpox is the human type of poxvirus. Other poxviruses naturally infect animals but also can cause incidental infection in humans (zoonoses). These viruses share common antigens with smallpox, thus allowing them to be used as vaccines for humans. Thus vaccinia virus has been the historically chosen animal virus for vaccine production. As the incidence of smallpox has waned, more complications related to the vaccinations have occurred than smallpox cases. Some of these complications were severe and included encephalitis and fatal reactions in immunocompromised patients who were vaccinated, sometimes inadvertently. Vaccinia viruses spread easily among unvaccinated immunocompromised patients in close contact. This still would be the case if a massive national vaccination program were to be considered. A large group of immunocompromised patients simply would not be candidates for the vaccine (Tierno, 2002).

In 1967, the World Health Organization introduced a worldwide campaign to eradicate smallpox. At the time, 33 countries had endemic smallpox, and about 15 million cases were reported per year. By 1979, smallpox was eradicated. Smallpox virus currently exists in only two laboratories: one in the United States and the other in Russia. The fate of these remaining stocks is debated. Destroying the stocks will preclude further research in the event of an outbreak. Similar to the plague, smallpox is very

TABLE 13-10
Smallpox: Level A Laboratory Role

Smallpox is highest-level emergency; submit specimens immediately to public health laboratory. Virus is highly infectious; avoid manipulation; if necessary use Biological Safety Level-3 practices. Responsibility of Level A laboratories is limited to advising medical staff on specimen selection, packing and shipping sample, and communicating with reference laboratory. Level A laboratories should not culture, sample, or perform assays on specimens suspected of containing the virus. Clinical diagnosis is confirmed by Level D laboratory techniques.

	Specimen	Transport	Storage
Biopsy	Aseptically place two to four portions of tissue into sterile, leakproof, freezable container.	≤6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C
Scabs	Aseptically place scrapings/material into sterile, leakproof, freezable container.	≤6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C
Vesicular fluid	Collect fluid from separate lesions onto separate sterile swabs. Always include material from base of each vesicle.	≤6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C

TABLE 13-11
VEE or Other Encephalitides: Level A Laboratory Role

Submit samples immediately to public health laboratory for evaluation and referral. Level A laboratory responsibility is limited to advising medical staff on specimen selection, packing and shipping sample, and communicating with reference laboratory.

	Specimen	Transport	Storage
Serum	For culture, PCR, or serologies (ELISA, FA, etc.)	<6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C
CSF	For culture, PCR, or serologies	<6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C
Nasal, respiratory (including induced samples)	For culture and PCR	<6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C
Other	Biopsy, autopsy, stool, etc., for pathology, culture, hematology/chemistry analysis, etc.	<6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *FA,* fluorescent antibody (direct); *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

contagious from human to human. It is currently assumed that an aerosol infective dose is low and presumably ranges from 10 to 100 organisms (Tierno, 2002).

How would smallpox be weaponized? Smallpox can be spread in two ways: aerosol dispersal and contact. Because smallpox is highly contagious and is efficiently spread through air, an aerosol delivery system poses the greatest threat and exposes the greatest number of people. However, as learned with anthrax, this is not so easy to do. Smallpox can also be delivered by direct contact. One way would be to self-contaminate a group of volunteers, who would then interact with the general population, infecting people over days or weeks as they came in contact with them. If a smallpox outbreak is detected in an area, the CDC and other health authorities would be able to contain the outbreak by immediately vaccinating all individuals surrounding the index case or cases. Postexposure immunization with smallpox vaccine (vaccinia virus) is effective and is recommended if given within 3 days of exposure. However, even if more than 3 days elapse, vaccination and vaccinia immune globulin may provide protection. It is necessary to establish a ring of immunity around index cases. This is precisely the method used to eradicate smallpox worldwide and should be just cause for some optimism.

Clinical Features

The entry portal for smallpox virus is the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract. Smallpox is transmitted by large or small respiratory droplets and by contact with skin lesions or secretions. Patients are considered more infectious if they are actively coughing. The incubation period is typically 12 days, with a range of 10 to 12 days. Clinical illness begins with a 2- to 3-day period of vague symptoms such as malaise, fever, headache, chills, and backache. The fever can last as long as 5 days or may be as short as 1 day. After the fever, an exanthem (eruption of skin or rash) appears that undergoes papular, pustular, and crustular stages. The latter falls off 2 to 4 weeks after the initial lesion and leaves a pink scar. An important characteristic of smallpox is that lesions in affected areas appear in the same state. This differs from chickenpox, where lesions are not synchronous and occur in crops. Smallpox lesions are distributed centrifugally (more numerous on the face and extremities than on the trunk), unlike chickenpox. Hence, the smallpox exanthem is very characteristic and is a useful diagnostic tool. The fatality rate is 15% to 40% in unvaccinated patients and less than 1% in those vaccinated.

Patients with smallpox are infectious as soon as a rash occurs and remain infectious until scabs fall off, approximately 3 weeks later. A rare form of smallpox called "hemorrhagic variola" is very pathogenic and has a very high mortality rate.

Practical Considerations

- If a major outbreak of smallpox occurs, prepare to stay indoors for a few days or weeks to reduce contact with those contaminated; this will contain the epidemic. Households should be stocked with adequate food supplies.
- Generally, respiratory droplets become infectious earlier than skin lesions. In hospitals, both airborne and contact precautions are required to prevent contagion. In contrast with plague precautions, a simple surgical mask is insufficient protection. A special respirator mask, N95 (certified to have at least 95% filter efficiency), is recommended and must be worn for such protection. Smallpox patients should be quarantined from the time the rash first appears until the scab finally falls off (about 3 weeks).
- If a household member contracts smallpox, all clothing, bed linens, or other materials that contacted the patient must be decontaminated with a germicide such as a 1 : 10 bleach solution, steam, or heat.
- Hand washing with germicidal soap is essential after any contact with a smallpox patient or his or her environment.

Venezuelan Equine Encephalitis

History and Background

Venezuelan equine encephalitis (VEE) (Table 13-11) is clinically indistinguishable from other encephalitis viruses such as St. Louis encephalitis, eastern and western equine encephalitis, Japanese B-type encephalitis, Russian Far East encephalitis, and even West Nile encephalitis virus. The first question to consider is why other such agents are not high on the list as potential bioterror weapons. Many can be, but the attack rate—that is, the number of people who would probably get the disease after being exposed to the agent—is much lower than for VEE. VEE has an attack rate of about 100% (pretty hard to beat). This is precisely the reason the U.S. government weaponized it in the 1950s and 1960s before terminating its offensive biowarfare program. However, it remains a potential weapon and one likely to serve as a surrogate virus to deliver more pathogens. Nevertheless, Level A laboratory responsibility is similar for all encephalitis viruses such as VEE (USAMRIID, 2001; Tierno, 2002). VEE can be weaponized in liquid or dry form for aerosol dispersal. It can be transmitted in three ways: via mosquitoes, although the naturally occurring incidence of VEE is low; via aerosol, either liquid or dry form; and via secondary spread from person to person (although this has not yet been conclusively demonstrated).

In nature, VEE is a mosquito-borne viral disease that is neurotrophic, causing encephalitis in equine animals and an unremarkable febrile illness in humans. More than 50% of equines that become infected develop encephalitis, and among humans, almost 100% of those exposed develop an influenza-like illness. In naturally contracted disease, only 2% to 4% of patients develop signs of central nervous system involvement, and less than 1% die (Tierno, 2002).

In the United States, VEE is a rare disease. The disease was first reported in Venezuela in 1936. VEE is prevalent in South and Central

America, Trinidad, Mexico, and Panama. In the case of the West Nile encephalitis virus, a sentinel animal (birds) indicated the presence of disease before human infection occurred. In the case of VEE, that would have been horses, but because we vaccinate them, no sentinel animal system is available to warn us that a VEE virus attack has occurred. On the other hand, because we have eradicated VEE from the United States, any human with the disease would likely signal bioterrorism (Tierno, 2002).

VEE is an arthropod-borne alphavirus that has been incidentally associated with human disease. Eight serologically distinct viruses exist, but only two are important pathogens for humans: variants A/B and C (Tierno, 2002). Most encephalitis viruses are destroyed by heat and are easily killed by ordinary disinfectants.

Clinical Features

The incubation period is 1 to 5 days, after which there is rapid onset of fever (usually high), headache, dizziness, lethargy, depression, anorexia, chills, myalgia, photophobia, nausea, vomiting, cough, sore throat, and sometimes diarrhea. VEE is indistinguishable from other viruses that cause encephalitis. The acute phase of the disease lasts from 1 to 3 days and is followed by a prolonged period (up to 2 weeks) of lethargy. Full recovery usually occurs after 2 weeks. It is estimated that inoculation with 10 to 100 viruses can cause infection. In a naturally occurring epidemic, less than 5% of patients have a neurologic manifestation, one characterized by convulsions, coma, and paralysis.

Practical Considerations

- VEE has very low lethality and in most victims might manifest only as a flu-like disease. *Note:* Bioterrorists may use any encephalitis virus as a surrogate for a more pathogenic weapon via genetic engineering.
- If an outbreak occurs, the mosquito population must be controlled, similar to the approach used for West Nile virus.
- Hand washing can prevent the otherwise rare person-to-person transmission (via contact spread).
- Simple germicides such as a 10% bleach solution or Lysol and heat (165°F) easily destroy the VEE virus.
- Contaminated clothing can be washed with any detergent.

Crimean Congo and Other Hemorrhagic Fevers

History and Background

Crimean Congo hemorrhagic fever (CCHF) is only one of many illnesses referred to as viral hemorrhagic fevers (VHFs) (Table 13-12). These agents and their natural mode of transmission are listed in Table 13-13. Any one of these hemorrhagic viruses, except dengue (which is transmissible only via mosquito), can be weaponized via aerosol delivery (USAMRIID, 2001; Tierno, 2002). In general, VHFs are very difficult to weaponize because there is no real carrier state.

CCHF is transmitted by ticks. Several reports describe person-to-person spread of CCHF in hospitals. As few as 1 to 10 viral particles can cause infection (USAMRIID, 2001). Rift Valley fever (RVF) is transmitted by mosquitoes as well as by aerosols; an inactivated vaccine is available for prevention, and RVF virus is susceptible to the antiviral drug ribavirin. The Ebola and Marburg viruses are transmitted by direct contact with blood, secretions, organs, or semen of infected patients. Argentine, Bolivian, and Hantavirus hemorrhagic fevers are also spread by dried rodent excreta (USAMRIID, 2001).

Clinical Features

The general clinical syndrome associated with all of the aforementioned viruses is similar and is called "viral hemorrhagic fever," or VHF. The most common presenting symptoms are fever, myalgia, low blood pressure, flushing, and ecchymoses anywhere on the body. Typically, the onset of CCHF occurs 3 to 12 days after tick exposure or inhalation of an aerosol. Extensive gastrointestinal bleeding and extensive ecchymoses may occur. Other symptoms include headache, back pain, nausea, vomiting, delirium, jaundice, and hepatomegaly. Mortality for CCHF is 15% to 30%, but some hemorrhagic fevers, such as Ebola, can have a death rate near 90% (Tierno, 2002).

Practical Considerations

- Any individual who may have been exposed to blood, body fluids, secretions, or excretions from a patient with suspected VHF should immediately and thoroughly wash skin surfaces with soap and water; a shower is preferable.

TABLE 13-12

Crimean Congo and Other Hemorrhagic Fevers: Level A Laboratory Role

Submit samples immediately to public health laboratory for evaluation and referral. Some viruses are highly infectious; avoid manipulation; if necessary, use Biological Safety Level-3 practices. Level A laboratory responsibility is limited to advising medical staff on specimen selection, packing and shipping sample, and communicating with reference laboratory.

	Specimen	Transport	Storage
Serum	For culture, PCR, or serologies (ELISA, HI, FA, etc.)	<6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C
Other	Biopsy, autopsy, etc., for pathology, culture, hematology/chemistry analysis, etc.	<6 hours/4°C	–20°C to –70°C

ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *FA,* fluorescent antibody (direct); *HI,* hemagglutination inhibition; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

TABLE 13-13

Viral Hemorrhagic Fever Means of Transmission

VHF Agent	Natural Means of Transmission
Ebola	Contact
Marburg	Contact
Lassa fever	Contact
Argentine (Junin)	Contact and aerosol
Bolivian (Machupo)	Contact and aerosol
Crimean Congo	Ticks and contact
Hantavirus	Contact and aerosol
Rift Valley fever	Mosquito and aerosol
Dengue	Mosquito
Yellow fever	Mosquito

- In hospitals, contact precautions should be instituted to prevent contagion. An N95 mask is recommended and should be worn for protection. Infected patients should be quarantined for the duration of the illness.
- Anyone caring for (or visiting during convalescence) a patient who is stricken with VHF must practice strict "barrier nursing" techniques (in other words, must completely protect self from the infected patient by dressing in gown, gloves, mask, eye protection, hat, booties, etc.), because evidence indicates that large droplets or even fomites (inanimate objects) may act as mediators of virus transmission.
- Any contamination of mucous membranes must be immediately diluted with copious quantities of water. If contaminated, eyes can be irrigated with saline or products like Visine.
- Clorox (10% solution) can be used to decontaminate surfaces, equipment, or other articles.
- Deceased individuals should be sealed in leakproof material for prompt burial or cremation.
- Heavily soiled clothing should be discarded, or washed with bleach or a strong germicide-containing detergent.

CHEMICAL TERRORISM

HISTORY AND BACKGROUND

Chemical weapons were first used in modern warfare during World War I. On April 22, 1915, outside the Belgian village of Ypres, the German army released about 60 tons of chlorine gas from about 6000 pressurized gas cylinders into the winds, which carried clouds of chlorine gas over the Allied forces. A second attack using chlorine gas occurred 2 days later. The end result of both attacks was the grotesque choking death of approximately 10,000 troops. By the end of 1915, a more deadly gas agent, phosgene, was introduced by the Germans; it was 10 times more effective than chlorine. Both gases are considered chemical weapons that affect the lungs; thus they are called "pulmonary agents." They damage the membranes

that separate air sacs (alveoli) from capillary blood vessels. Fluid (plasma) leaks into the air sacs, accumulates, and prevents air exchange. The victim is usually unable to get enough oxygen and eventually suffocates to death after an agonizing 2- to 24-hour period. Victims initially have shortness of breath with coughing fits, which can be quite severe. The production of large amounts of yellowish (chlorine) to clear (phosgene) frothy sputum occurs before death. Significant irritation of the eyes and nose and burning in the throat are reported (Byrnes et al, 2003).

By the time the Germans introduced phosgene, they were becoming very proficient at producing chemical weapons of various types and were equally proficient at delivering them. Great Britain quickly followed in kind with the use of chemical weapons against the German army. Great skill was needed to deliver gas weapons because if wind direction changed or if the weapon was inappropriately delivered, poison gas could fall on one's own troops. This did happen often, especially during the early use of such chemical weapons. By the summer of 1917, the Germans introduced a new type of gas called mustard. Mustard gas is a chemical weapon that belongs to a group of agents called "blistering agents." As the name implies, one of the symptoms is a blistering of the skin and internal organs. The skin, eyes, lungs, gastrointestinal tract, mucous membranes, bone marrow, and some organs can be severely damaged.

These early weapons forced armies to defend themselves by using gas masks, as well as protective suits or outer coverings, both of which hampered efficient fighting on the battlefield. Nevertheless, by the end of the war, more than 110,000 tons of chemical weapons were used by both sides, and the number of casualties measured over a million, including about 100,000 dead.

The Geneva Protocol

Because of the agonizing deaths and horrendous suffering that were inflicted by chemical weapons during World War I, an effort was made to ban their use after the war. The League of Nations met at Geneva and developed a protocol to eliminate chemical weapons during warfare. The *Protocol for the Prohibition of the Use in War of Asphyxiating, Poisonous, or Other Gases, and of Bacteriological Methods of Warfare* was signed by 38 nations in 1925 (Byrnes et al, 2003), although it had many loopholes and no provision to punish nations that violated the pact. During World War II, it was surprising that no chemical weapons were used in battle, even though the Germans had developed new chemical weapons, "nerve agents," including tabun, sarin, and soman. Nerve agents are a particularly potent class of chemical weapons that share some interesting properties. The mechanism of action of nerve agents such as sarin is that they disrupt nerve communication with the organs that they stimulate. In other words, the nerve is normal, but transmission of the nerve impulse to the muscle or other organ is faulty, usually causing overactivity. This interferes with basic bodily functions, and death can occur as soon as 1 to 10 minutes after inhalation. If a nerve agent is in liquid form, it is characteristically heavier than water. The vapors are also heavier than air, and they therefore tend to sink toward the ground or the basement of a building. Although nerve agent vapor affects victims within a very short period of time, the range of these effects will vary greatly, depending on the degree of exposure. Exposure to nerve agents will initially affect airways and the portions of the face that come into contact with the agent: the eyes, nose, and mouth. The pupils become small (pinpoint), the eyes redden, and vision becomes blurred. Some patients also experience eye pain, headache, and nausea and vomiting. Rhinorrhea may be an important feature, as is excessive salivation. If a nerve agent is inhaled, airways can become constricted, and coughing fits or shortness of breath may be induced. If a sufficient quantity of the agent is inhaled, sudden loss of consciousness may be followed by convulsions. Within a few minutes, a victim stops breathing and becomes flaccid. Even a very small amount of a nerve agent like sarin can produce fasciculations (muscular twitching). Nausea and vomiting may accompany exposure. In cases of greater exposure, involuntary defecation and urination may also occur (Byrnes et al, 2003).

Many new "nerve agent" chemical weapons were developed from ordinary insecticides and/or pesticides. (People actually use weaker forms of nerve agents every time they tend their garden with insecticides. For example, insecticides such as malathion or carbaryl [Sevin] and dozens of others are actually nerve agents. They do the exact same thing to humans that sarin or other more potent nerve agents do, although they require much larger doses and longer contact time to have a similar effect.) In the early 1950s, Great Britain made what was considered a breakthrough discovery of a new nerve agent that was magnitudes greater in its lethal abilities than any other known substance at the time. The agent was called by its code name: VX. This agent not only was more lethal, but it was also more persistent (because it remains a liquid for longer than 24 hours) and could enter the body by inhalation or directly via the skin. Entry through the skin was possible because this agent is nonvolatile and is persistent. The United States cooperated with Great Britain on this project, eventually taking over the large-scale production of agent VX. Production and stockpiling of VX continued into the 1960s, until an accidental release of VX occurred at the manufacturing facility in Dugway, Utah, killing more than 6000 sheep. Probably the most infamous U.S. chemical agent, used primarily during the Vietnam War in the 1960s, was Agent Orange, a herbicide used to defoliate vegetation that offered cover to the enemy. Agent Orange contained varying quantities of dioxin (tetrachlorodibenzodioxin), which was later considered to be so dangerous that in 1986, the Environmental Protection Agency prohibited its use anywhere. Animal studies have linked the chemical to non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, sarcomas, and carcinomas, as well as a host of other diseases (Byrnes et al, 2003).

Chemical weapons such as nerve agents and blistering agents are less convenient than toxins or poisons. For example, ricin is very convenient because it is a highly potent protein toxin derived from the mash left over from processing castor beans for their oil. Such processing is a worldwide activity, and the poison (toxin) is easily produced. The castor plant, *Ricinus communis*, received attention in the 1978 "umbrella murder case," when Bulgarian intelligence operations assassinated Bulgarian dissident George Markov in London, using an umbrella to deliver a ricin-containing pellet (Tierno, 2002). Markov died a day after the attack of ricin poisoning. Ricin blocks protein synthesis and is very toxic to cells, eventually killing them. Ricin can be delivered by aerosol, and within 8 hours after inhalation, severe respiratory symptoms occur, leading to respiratory failure. If the toxin is ingested (food or water), severe gastrointestinal symptoms will occur, followed by vascular collapse and death. If injected, ricin can cause multiorgan failure and death (Tierno, 2002). Numerous other toxic poisons, such as mycotoxins and saxitoxins, produce similar outcomes.

The 1972 Convention on Prohibition of Biologic and Chemical Weapons

Throughout recent decades, efforts have been made to limit or ban the use of toxic weapons (both chemical and biological). In 1972, more than 140 countries, including the United States, signed the *Convention on the Prohibition of the Development, Production, and Stockpiling of Biologic and Toxic Weapons and Their Destruction*, which theoretically limited further development and use of biological or chemical weapons (Byrnes et al, 2003). Unfortunately, numerous breaches have been made in that accord. To take two relatively recent examples of an ongoing trend, in 1988, Libya built a chemical weapons plant in the guise of a pharmaceutical factory. Often this occurs with the cooperation of companies that sell so-called dual-use technology to countries such as Iraq and Libya. A plant for making pesticides can readily be turned into one for making chemical weapons. Iraq used mustard gas in its long war with Iran and has used both mustard gas and toxic nerve agents against its own dissident Kurdish population. The 1980s saw the use of chemical warfare agents in Afghanistan, Cambodia, Iran, Iraq, and Laos (Tierno, 2002; Byrnes et al, 2003).

In March 1995, a Japanese religious cult, Aum Shinriyko, released sarin nerve gas in the Tokyo subway system (Tierno, 2002). Thousands were injured, and 11 people were killed. This recent use of chemical weapons on the civilian population underscores the relative availability and ease of use of such weapons and raises public and governmental awareness.

Weaponization and Delivery of Chemical Agents

Any chemical agent must be weaponized before its delivery. In general, the process of weaponization involves numerous steps. First, an agent must be made in sufficient quantity and temporarily stored and stabilized to prevent evaporation or degradation. Thickeners are added to increase the viscosity of liquid agents, and a carrier agent is required to improve dispersion of the chemical. Next, the chemical agent must be inserted into an appropriate delivery device such as explosive, pneumatic, or mechanical munitions or a dissemination device. Regardless of the approach, the goal is to aerosolize the chemical agent to a particulate size of 1 to 7 microns. This can be accomplished by using very sophisticated delivery systems such as munitions devices, usually only available to governments, or unsophisticated devices like aerosol generators, such as underarm deodorants or garden sprayers, which can serve as an effective dissemination system. The important caveat here is that these unsophisticated devices are readily available to the public. Numerous other factors might affect the weaponization and delivery of a chemical weapon, such as the following:

- *Temperature (air and ground):* Generally, higher temperatures cause faster evaporation.

- *Humidity:* High humidity may cause enlargement of particle size, reducing effectiveness.
- *Precipitation:* Heavy rain can dilute and disperse a chemical weapon; snow increases the persistence of a chemical weapon.
- *Wind speed:* Wind can disperse vapors, aerosols, and liquids, affecting the target area.
- *Nature of buildings:* Buildings may absorb or adsorb agents; they can also offer protection.
- *Nature of terrain:* Woodlands and hills can create greater turbulence of low-lying clouds of the agent.

Categories of Chemical Weapons

Literally hundreds of chemical agents and poisonous gases can be used in an attack, along with potentially new ones under development using newly described genetic engineering methods. Government agencies classify chemical weapons in various categories (Table 13-14).

ROLE OF LEVEL A LABORATORY: CHEMICAL TERRORISM

It goes without saying that timely detection of the relatively quick-acting chemical agents that a terrorist might use, such as nerve agents (i.e., sarin and VX), is critical not only for the patient (casualty) but also for the first responder or hazardous material (HAZMAT) unit member responding to an event. Rapid detection of the type of agent, as well as its concentration after a terror incident, can allow for effective treatment of the victim, including proper antidote selection, and can allow for an appropriate protective response to ensure the safety of the public at large. As such, it may be obvious, but the most appropriate entity to detect such agents is not the clinical laboratory; instead, it is the bailiwick of the first responder unit or HAZMAT team. These teams use a wide variety of commercially available equipment manufactured for the rapid detection of hazardous chemicals, including the agents of chemical terrorism. Likewise, the military has provided a number of devices that can be used to detect such chemical agents or their vapors. The most portable chemical vapor detector is the chemical agent monitor. It uses ion mobility spectroscopy to detect nerve, blister, and blood agents. The simplest and most rapid liquid detectors are also products of the military—namely, the M8 and M9 papers that can be used to detect mustard or nerve agents. These are mostly rapid screening devices that may show false-positive reactions (Byrnes et al, 2003). However, colorimetric tubes are the most common detection technology used by HAZMAT teams. Their analytic capabilities are broad and usually include tests for chlorine and phosgene gas (pulmonary agents), cyanide (blood agents), and organophosphates (nerve agents). In addition, HAZMAT teams possess a wide variety of some newer post-9/11 technologies, enabling their members to detect virtually *all* necessary chemical agents in a relatively rapid time frame (Byrnes et al, 2003).

Although the role of Level A clinical laboratories may be a secondary one, they nevertheless can still provide some support for detecting chemical agents used in an attack or their degradation products in victims, which can be useful for triage or treatment of incoming hospital patients. For practical purposes, we can divide the potential chemical agents that a clinical chemistry laboratory may offer in their analytic repertoire into four major categories: nerve agents, blood agents (cyanide), blister agents (vesicants), and pulmonary agents. The laboratory can also be useful in detecting toxins such as ricin or saxitoxins. These can be detected by specialized enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay methods, polymerase chain reaction assays that detect nucleic acid from the relevant plant source, or sensitive mass spectrometric methods.

Most modern clinical chemistry laboratories currently have the capacity to provide some specific and useful analytic data to support hospitalized victims of a chemical attack. For example, several automated chemistry analyzers can measure increased cholinesterase activity, which would be a hallmark of patients exposed to nerve agents. This information is used to measure the progress and recovery of victims exposed to nerve agents. Gas chromatography–mass spectrometry has been used to detect metabolites of vesicants such as mustard gas or lewisite (Byrnes et al, 2003) and is useful for measuring the progress of a patient's recovery after exposure. Unfortunately for patients exposed to pulmonary agents such as chlorine or phosgene, the laboratory's role is limited to supportive monitoring such as blood gas analysis (for measuring partial pressure of oxygen [PO_2]). This also applies to patients exposed to a blood agent such as cyanide. Gaseous cyanide is lethal in seconds, and patients who ingest cyanide need an antidote immediately to prevent anoxia and respiratory arrest. Therefore, the HAZMAT team may do the best job of analyzing and identifying such agents and then providing antidotes to poisoned patients in the field, well before they reach a hospital. In short, Level A laboratories play mostly a supportive role in the management of hospitalized patients who are victims of a chemical terror attack.

NUCLEAR TERRORISM

HISTORY AND BACKGROUND OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS

In 1895, Ernest Roentgen discovered penetrating radiations that produced fluorescence; he named them x-rays. The following year, Henri Becquerel identified that these penetrating radiations (later classified as alpha, beta, and gamma rays) are emitted by uranium. In 1905, Albert Einstein formulated his now famous equation $E = mc^2$, which concluded that matter could be converted to energy. These discoveries provided the scientific framework used to eventually harness nuclear energy, although this did not occur until World War II. In 1942, Los Alamos, New Mexico, was selected as the central site for a laboratory to research the physics and design of atomic weapons. In approximately 30 months, the Manhattan Project (the name ascribed to the program that resulted in the production of the first atomic weapon) had achieved its goal of producing a nuclear weapon. By 1945, Germany had surrendered, but Japan continued its war effort. On July 26,

TABLE 13-14
Chemical Weapons

Category	Example(s)	Comments
Nerve agents	Sarin, tabun, soman, VX, malathion, carbaryl (Sevin)	Interfere with transmission of message from nerve to organ or muscle
Blood agents	Hydrogen cyanide, cyanogen chloride	Usually absorbed after inhalation; in the bloodstream cause lethal damage by acting on the cytochrome oxidase enzyme responsible for cellular respiration. Oxygen starvation occurs because cells are unable to use oxygen. (See Chapter 23.)
Blister agents	Nitrogen and sulfur mustards, lewisite	Cause blistering of skin as well as internal organs and tissues. This destroys the tissue and also causes massive numbers of mutations by crosslinking DNA and RNA.
Heavy metals	Arsenic	Metallic elements form poisonous compounds, disrupting cellular metabolic processes.
Pulmonary agents	Chlorine gas, phosgene	Damage the membranes of the lungs, causing fluid buildup and oxygen deprivation and eventually suffocation.
Dioxins	Tetrachlorodibenzodioxine	Associated with lymphomas, sarcomas, carcinomas, chloracne, and a host of other diseases. (A major long-term complication is type 2 diabetes.)
Incapacitating or psychotomimetic agents	Quinuclidinylbenzylate, phencyclidine	Cause pseudopsychotic disorders; affect ability to make decisions; cause disorientation, any of which could incapacitate an individual. Death due to respiratory arrest can occur with high doses.
Corrosive acids and bases	Sulfuric acid, sodium hydroxide	Cause severe burning and destruction of tissue in exposed areas.

1945, the Potsdam Declaration was issued, wherein President Harry Truman, Chiang Kai-Shek of China, and Winston Churchill of Great Britain advised the Japanese government to proclaim an unconditional surrender of all Japanese armed forces, cautioning against the alternative. The Japanese government rejected the declaration on July 29, 1945 (Byrnes et al, 2003). On the morning of August 6, 1945, a U.S. aircraft named *Enola Gay* dropped "Little Boy," an enriched uranium bomb, on Hiroshima, Japan (15 kilotons). Several days later, "Fat Man" was dropped on Nagasaki. The nuclear age had arrived.

The Potential Threat of Nuclear Terrorism

Since the end of World War II, the United States has manufactured more than 70,000 nuclear weapons, although many have since been retired. Today's weapons are larger (1000 kilotons, or 1 megaton) and far more destructive than the 15-kiloton Hiroshima bomb. Although the Cold War with Russia has officially ended and efforts have been made to reduce the number of nuclear weapons, other countries already possess or are trying to develop nuclear capabilities. There is concern that such weapons may fall into the hands of terrorists or might be used by rogue nations. Although it is possible that terrorists may gain access to nuclear weapons of mass destruction, it is much more likely that they will construct *dirty bombs*—a combination of conventional explosives and radioactive materials. Dirty bombs are relatively simple to build and detonate. The main purpose of a dirty bomb is not to kill people so much as it is to create widespread panic and psychological fear. The amount of radioactivity a dirty bomb yields depends on the radioactive material used in the device. However, even a small amount of radiation from such a device has the potential to cause a relatively large decontamination cost.

ROLE OF LEVEL A LABORATORY: NUCLEAR TERRORISM

The clinical laboratory is not actively involved in detecting radiation contamination. This is more likely done in a hospital emergency department with the use of one or more handheld radiation survey instruments, such as the Ludlum Model 3/Model 44-9 combo Geiger-Mueller detector (Ludlum Measurements, Inc., Sweetwater, Tex.), which is able to detect alpha-, beta-, and gamma-emitting radionuclides. Routine HAZMAT and other first responder teams have such analytic capabilities and are the likely entity to first identify or detect a nuclear event. Clinical chemistry and hematology laboratories merely play a support role for any patients who may require hospitalization.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Byrnes ME, King DA, Tierno PM: *Nuclear chemical and biological terrorism*, Boca Raton, Fla., 2003, CRC Press.

This text provides a comprehensive review of the various weapons of mass destruction, along with sound advice and simple actions that can be taken by emergency responders or the general public to reduce risks and avoid panic in the event of a terrorist attack.

Centers for Disease Control and Protection: Gastrointestinal anthrax after an animal-hide drumming event in New Hampshire and Massachusetts in 2009, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 59:872–877, 2010.

Tierno PM: *Protect yourself against bioterrorism*, New York, 2002, Pocket Books.

This pocket guide to bioterrorism provides concise information on the 18 most common biological agents, including background, history, and clinical features. It discusses preexposure and postexposure management information, as well as numerous protective response strategies.

USAMRIID: *Medical management of biological casualties handbook*, ed 4, Fort Detrick, Md., 2001, United States Army Medical Research Institute for Infectious Diseases.

This is the U.S. Army's concise handbook on effective medical countermeasures against the likeliest bacterial, viral, and toxic agents to be used as bioterror weapons. It is designed as a quick ready reference and overview rather than a complete resource.

REFERENCES

Angulo FJ, St Louis ME: Botulism. In Evans AS, Brachman PS, editors: *Bacterial infections of humans*, New York, 1998, Plenum, pp 131–153.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: NYC DOH response to terrorist attack September 11, 2001, *MMWR* 50:941–948, 2001.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/National Institutes of Health: *Biosafety in microbiological and biomedical laboratories*, ed 2, Wayne, Pa., 2001, NCCLS.

Gilchrist MJR, McKinney WP, Miller JM, et al: *Cumitech 33, laboratory safety, management and diagnosis of biological agents associated with bioterrorism*, Washington, DC, 2000, ASM Press.

Lew DP: Bacillus anthracis. In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles of infectious diseases*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2000, Churchill Livingstone, pp 2215–2220.

NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization): *Handbook of medical aspects of NBC defensive operations, Amed P-6(B) Part II Biological*, 1996, Depts of the Army, Navy, and Air Force.

NCCLS (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards): *Protection of laboratory workers from instrument hazards*, Villanova, Pa., 2001, NCCLS.

Perry RD, Fetherson JD: *Yersinia pestis*—the etologic agent of plague, *Clin Microl Rev* 10:35–66, 1997.

Shapiro RL, Hatheway C, Swerdlow DL: Botulism in the United States: A clinical and epidemiologic review, *Ann Intern Med* 129:221–228, 1998.

Shapiro DS, Wong JD: Brucella. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 7, Washington, DC, 1999, ASM Press, pp 625–631.

Tierno PM: *The secret life of germs*, ed 2, New York, 2004, Simon & Schuster.

Wong JD, Shapiro DS: Francisella. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 7, Washington, DC, 1999, ASM Press, pp 647–651.

PART 2

Clinical Chemistry

EDITED BY

Jay L. Bock
Martin H. Bluth
Matthew R. Pincus

CHAPTER 14

EVALUATION OF RENAL FUNCTION, WATER, ELECTROLYTES, AND ACID-BASE BALANCE

Man S. Oh, Gary Briefel

INTRODUCTION, 162

VOLUME AND OSMOLALITY OF BODY FLUID, 163
Measurement of Body Fluid Volumes, 163
Body Fluid Volumes, 163
Composition of the Body Fluid, 164
Measurement of Plasma Osmolality, 165

REGULATION OF EXTRACELLULAR VOLUME, 166
Nonrenal Control of Water and Electrolyte Balance, 167

MEASUREMENT OF RENAL FUNCTION, 167
Concept of Clearance, 167
Measurement of Glomerular Filtration Rate, 168
Urea Clearance and Urea/Creatinine Ratio in Serum, 171
Glomerular Filtration Rate (GFR), Renal Plasma Flow (RPF), and Filtration Fraction (FF), 171
Fractional Excretion (FE), 172
Renal Failure Index (RFI), 172
Fractional Reabsorption (FR), 172
Free Water Clearance and Negative Free Water Clearance, 172

BIOMARKERS OF ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY, 172
Kidney Injury Molecule-1 (KIM-1), 173
Neutrophil Gelatinase-Associated Lipocalin (NGAL), 173
Interleukin-18 (IL-18), 173
Fatty Acid–Binding Protein (FABP), 173

DISORDERS OF POTASSIUM, 174
Control of Transcellular Flux of Potassium, 174
Control of Renal Excretion of Potassium, 174
Plasma Renin Activity (PRA), Plasma Aldosterone Concentration (PA), and Abnormalities in Potassium Metabolism, 175
Causes and Pathogenesis of Hypokalemia, 175
Differential Diagnosis of Hypokalemia, 176
Causes and Pathogenesis of Hyperkalemia, 176
Differential Diagnosis of Hyperkalemia, 177

DISORDERS OF WATER, SODIUM, AND ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE (ADH) METABOLISM, 178
Regulation of Thirst and ADH Release, 178
Urine Concentration and Dilution, 178
Polyuria, 179
Causes and Pathogenesis of Hyponatremia, 180
Causes and Pathogenesis of Hypernatremia, 181

ACID-BASE DISORDERS, 181
Bicarbonate and CO_2 Buffer System, 181
Definitions of Acid and Base, 181
Whole-Body Acid-Base Balance, 181
Metabolic Acidosis, 182
Serum Anion Gap (AG), 184
Metabolic Alkalosis, 185
Respiratory Acidosis, 185
Respiratory Alkalosis, 186
Mixed Acid-Base Disorders, 186

SELECTED REFERENCES, 187

KEY POINTS

- Normal volumes and composition of electrolytes in various body fluid compartments are essential for maintenance of life.
- The kidney is the most important organ in the maintenance of normal fluid volume and composition.
- The most important function of the kidney is elimination of the waste products of metabolism, and this function is best represented by the glomerular filtration rate.
- Glomerular filtration rate can be measured using exogenous or endogenous markers. The most important exogenous marker is creatinine. Glomerular filtration rate can be estimated from a determination of creatinine clearance, which requires measurement of creatinine in both plasma and a timed urine specimen. For many patients, however, a better estimate is obtained from an equation such as the Modification of Diet in Renal Disease, which requires only a measurement of plasma creatinine.
- Causes of abnormal potassium concentration include laboratory artifacts, cellular redistribution, renal failure, alterations in the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis drugs, poor intake, and various acquired or inherited disorders affecting renal excretion of potassium.
- Causes of abnormal sodium concentration include laboratory artifacts, dehydration, disorders of thirst and antidiuretic hormone, renal disorders, water redistribution due to osmotically active substances such as glucose, drugs, and endocrine disorders.
- Causes of abnormal hydrogen ion concentration (i.e., acid-base disorders) include hypoventilation and hyperventilation, ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis, and toxic ingestions.

INTRODUCTION

Laboratory tests for evaluation of disorders of renal, water, electrolyte, and acid-base status are the most common procedures performed in clinical chemistry laboratories. Screening tests in most laboratories are often grouped together in a basic metabolic panel, because disorders of acid-base and electrolytes are seen in a high percentage of hospitalized individuals, and electrolyte disorders are frequent complications of treatment for a variety of common conditions. Furthermore, renal disease is one of the major sequelae of common disorders such as diabetes and hypertension. Hence, proper interpretation of laboratory tests of renal, electrolyte, and acid-base disorders requires an understanding of the pathophysiology of these systems. Most central to the understanding of these disorders is knowledge of renal function and how the kidneys regulate extracellular volume.

The reader is expected to learn normal volumes and composition of electrolytes in various body fluid compartments, and the mechanisms by which normal values are maintained, with particular emphasis on the role of the kidney in these processes. Physiologic processes involved in the maintenance of normal proton concentration (i.e., pH) will also be discussed. Before discussing abnormal states of electrolyte balance, normal physiology and common laboratory tests that are used to evaluate abnormal renal function will be discussed. Discussion of disorders of fluid and electrolytes in this chapter will include disorders of the concentrations of sodium and potassium and acid-base disorders. Discussions on multivalent ions are not included in this chapter.

VOLUME AND OSMOLALITY OF BODY FLUID

The body fluid is an aqueous solution containing electrolytes and nonelectrolytes, and its compartment consists of intracellular and extracellular compartments. The intracellular compartment is not a single compartment, but each cell has its own separate environment, communicating with other cells only via interstitial fluid and plasma. Consequently, difference exists among cells in various tissues in their solute composition and concentrations. Because cell membranes are permeable to water through the ubiquitous presence of aquaporins (water channels), osmotic equilibrium is maintained so that the osmolality of all cells is the same as that of extracellular fluid (Agre et al, 2002; Nielsen et al, 2002; Frigeri et al, 2004).

Before the discovery of aquaporins, it was believed, erroneously, that all cell membranes are readily permeable to water. Now we know that cell membranes are virtually impermeable to all substances, large and small. That a molecule as small as water (18 Da) needs aquaporins to cross the membrane is an example of this principle. Even after the discovery of aquaporins, it was widely believed that small gaseous substances such as CO_2 can diffuse across cell membranes readily. Apparently, this is not the case either. It seems that CO_2 cannot diffuse across cell membranes easily in the absence of aquaporins. For example, the apical membrane of the gastric mucosa is impermeable to CO_2 because of the absence of aquaporins, whereas the basolateral membrane of the same cell allows ready diffusion of CO_2 owing to the presence of aquaporin (Prasad et al, 1998). The same appears true of the colonic mucosa (Endeward & Gros, 2005).

Operation of normal metabolic functions of the body requires maintenance of an optimal ionic strength of its environment, primarily the intracellular fluid, where most metabolic activities occur. The main functions of homeostatic mechanisms of the body are to provide such an environment. Because the extracellular fluid is not the site of major metabolic activity, substantial alteration in its ionic strength may occur without adverse effects on body function. The main function of the extracellular fluid is to serve as a conduit among cells and among organs. The plasma is a route of rapid transit, and the interstitial fluid serves as a slow supply zone. The ability of the extracellular fluid to function efficiently as a conduit requires maintenance of optimal volume, particularly of vascular volume. An additional important function of the extracellular fluid is regulation of intracellular volume and its ionic strength. Because osmotic equilibrium exists between the cells and the extracellular fluid, any alteration in extracellular osmolality is followed by an identical change in intracellular osmolality, which is accompanied by a reciprocal change in cell volume (Carroll & Oh, 1989).

Although cells and organs can be supplied with substrate and relieved of metabolic products with a much slower circulation, normal circulation is required to supply sufficient oxygen for the body's metabolic needs. Normal plasma volume is a prerequisite for maintenance of normal circulation. Because plasma is in equilibrium with the interstitial fluid, the maintenance of normal vascular volume requires normal extracellular volume. A low extracellular volume results in impaired organ perfusion, with insufficient oxygen delivery, and an excessive extracellular volume leads to vascular congestion and pulmonary edema.

Transfer of fluid between the vascular space and the interstitial space is regulated by the Starling forces. The ultimate purpose of maintaining adequate intravascular volume is to maintain adequate hydrostatic pressure, which is necessary for diffusion of fluid from the vascular space into the interstitial space. Movement of fluid, nutrients, and electrolytes occurs in systemic capillaries through the vascular endothelial fenestrae. On the other hand, movement of the solutes and water across the capillaries of the brain is entirely transcellular through endothelial cells, because the intercellular gap (endothelial fenestrae) of the brain capillary endothelium is tightly closed. This is termed the *blood-brain barrier* (Ballabh et al, 2004). For the brain, perfusion is what matters, not perfusion pressure. The position of the brain in relation to the heart is such that when blood pressure is too low, perfusion of the brain will cease before that of other organs.

MEASUREMENT OF BODY FLUID VOLUMES

Total body water can be determined by dilution of various substances including deuterium, tritium, and antipyrine. The gold standard of the measurement is that using either tritiated water or deuterium oxide (Lichtenbelt et al, 1994; Brans et al, 1990). The former is a radioactive isotope (Lister, 1962), and the latter requires a complicated method for its measurement. Both are very expensive. Furthermore, deuterium hydrogen is also known to equilibrate with H atoms besides those found in water molecules, and as a result total body water obtained with D_2O was shown to be slightly higher. Another nonradioactive isotope used for the measurement of total body water is H_2O with ^{18}O isotope, which, unlike D_2O, does not equilibrate with O atoms outside of H_2O (Davies et al, 1988). Consequently, total body water measured with D_2O is about 3% larger than that measured with $H_2{}^{18}O$. As a cheap alternative, antipyrine has been introduced, and was used extensively in the 1940s and 1950s (Soberman et al, 1949). However, subsequent studies indicated that antipyrine is not a very reliable dilution marker. It is metabolized in the liver, and therefore the equilibrium concentration at time zero must be obtained by interpolating the results (Brans et al, 1990).

More recently, the measurement of body fluid volumes by bioelectrical impedance analysis has become very popular. However, the results are not as accurate as the dilution methods, and the technology is still evolving. The main advantages of this method are easy applicability, noninvasiveness, and portability of measurements. The portability allows measurements of body fluid volumes in outpatient clinics and at the bedside (Woodrow, 2007). The method is based on the principle that the body is an electrical conductor with a certain amount of resistance to flow (impedance), and resistance (R) is proportional to its length and inversely proportional to the cross-sectional area (A) (Kyle et al, 2004). Hence, R (resistance) = $\rho L/A$, where ρ is the resistivity of the conducting material (i.e., the body). Since $V = AL$, $V = \rho L2/R$. The body fluid offers two types of resistance to an electrical flow: resistive resistance and capacitive resistance. The former is simply called *resistance*, whereas the latter is called *reactance*. Impedance of the body to an electrical flow is a combination of these two types of resistance. The cell membrane, which is made of lipid, acts like capacitance, and is the cause of capacitive resistance. At zero or low frequency, the electrical current does not penetrate the cell membrane and therefore flows only through the extracellular fluid. At a very high frequency, the electrical current flows through both the extracellular and intracellular fluid compartment (Davies et al, 1988; Kyle et al, 2004).

The term *bioelectrical impedance analysis* is used when single or multiple frequencies of up to 8 frequencies are used, whereas the term *bioelectrical spectroscopy* is used when 256 or more multiple frequencies are used (Gudivaka et al, 1999). Bioelectrical impedance analysis has been used to measure fat free mass, extracellular and intracellular fluid volume, and total body water. In bioelectrical spectroscopy, mathematical modeling and mixture equations are used to generate the relationship between R and body fluid volumes.

A mathematical model widely used is called the *Xitron equation* (De Lorenzo et al, 1995), which has been further modified (Kyle et al, 2004). Another model using different assumptions, called the *body composition spectroscopy equation*, has been developed subsequently. Comparison of the two methods in dialysis patients, whose change in total body water can be determined from the ultrafiltration volume during dialysis, indicated that the latter method was more accurate (Kyle et al, 2004).

BODY FLUID VOLUMES

Total body water measured with antipyrine in hospitalized adults without fluid and electrolyte disorders is about 54% of the body weight (Carroll & Oh, 1989). The fractional water content is higher in infants and children, and it decreases progressively with aging. The water content also depends on the body content of fat; women and obese persons, because of their higher fat content, have less water for a given weight. A useful shortcut for the calculation of total body water, using the fact that 54% of body weight in kg is body water and 1 kg is 2.2 lbs, is:

$$\text{Total body water (L)} = \text{body weight (lb)}/4 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-1)}$$

For an obese subject, subtract 10% from the calculated body water, and for a lean person, add 10%. For a very obese person, subtract 20%. Women have about 10% less body water than men for the same body weight.

Extracellular volume is measured directly, and the intracellular volume is estimated as the difference between total body water and extracellular volume. The measurement of total body water is reliable, but the measurement of extracellular volume is not. Although many different markers have been used to measure the extracellular volume, no ideal marker has been found. Markers that have been used to measure extracellular volume include sodium, chloride, bromide, mannitol, inulin, sucrose, sulfate, thiosulfate, and thiocyante (Gamble et al, 1953). Markers such as sodium, chloride, and bromide are not located exclusively in the extracellular compartment, but penetrate the cells to varying extents, whereas other markers

such as mannitol, inulin, sucrose, sulfate, thiosulfate, and thiocyanate do not penetrate certain parts of the extracellular fluid. Extracellular volume has also been estimated indirectly by the degree of dilution of serum Na following administration of mannitol, on the principle that mannitol in the extracellular fluid would cause osmotic withdrawal of water from the cell (Manninen et al, 1987). Thus, depending on the type of marker used, the extracellular fluid volume could vary from 27% to 53% of total body water (Carroll & Oh, 1989).

Extracellular volume measured with chloride and expressed as percent of total body water varies from 42% to 53% and is greater in older subjects and women. Extracellular volume measured with inulin or sulfate is smaller, about 30% to 33% of total body water (Carroll & Oh, 1989). For discussion in this chapter, a value of 40% of total body water will be considered to represent extracellular volume. Extracellular volume is further divided into three fractions: interstitial (space between cells) volume (28% of total body water), plasma volume (8%), and transcellular water volume (4%) (Box 14-1). Transcellular water includes luminal fluid of the gastrointestinal tract, the fluids of the central nervous system, and fluid in the eye as well as the lubricating fluids at the serous surface.

COMPOSITION OF THE BODY FLUID

Extracellular Composition

The concentrations of electrolytes in plasma are easily measured and their values well known. These concentrations increase by about 7% when expressed in plasma water, because about 7% of plasma is solids (Nguyen et al, 2007). Thus, plasma sodium is 140 mmol/L, but the concentration in plasma water is about 150 mmol/L. The concentrations of electrolytes in interstitial fluid are different from those in the plasma because of differences in protein concentrations between plasma and interstitial fluid. The differences in electrolyte concentrations between plasma and interstitial fluid can be predicted by the Donnan equilibrium (Table 14-1) (Oh & Carroll, 1995). With normal plasma protein concentrations, the concentrations of diffusible cations are higher in plasma water than in interstitial water by about 4%, whereas the concentrations of diffusible anions are lower in the plasma than in the interstitial fluid by about 4%. The concentrations of calcium and magnesium in the interstitial fluid are lower than the values predicted by the Donnan equilibrium, because they are substantially protein-bound.

The extracellular fluid space is not merely the site of passive passageway for the movement of nutrients and metabolites between the plasma and the cells and the exchange of oxygen and CO_2. The extracellular space contains many different molecules known as the *extracellular matrix*, which provides structural integrity and support for the surrounding cells but also participates in signaling transduction to the cells. The main molecules contained in the extracellular space are many different types of fibrous proteins such as collagen, elastin, laminin, and fibronectin; glycoproteins; and hyaluronic acid, also known as hyaluronan. Glycoproteins consist of sulfated glycosaminoglycan attached covalently to protein, and examples include heparan sulfate, dermatan sulfate, and chondroitin sulfate. Hyaluronic acid is one form of glycosaminoglycan, which is neither sulfated nor attached to protein, and is the most abundant glycosaminoglycan in the extracellular space (Stern, 2004; Stern et al, 2006). Both hyaluronic acid and sulfated glycoproteins are highly anionic and are surrounded by many water molecules in a gel-like state. This space excludes distribution of proteins. In the other part, proteins diffuse freely and communicate with lymphatics. Interspersed within the interstitial space is elastin, which provides the elastic property of the interstitial tissue; this property is necessary for generation of a normal negative pressure of the interstitial space and a positive pressure with the development of edema (Reed & Laurent, 1992; Aukland & Reed, 1993; Burton, 1988).

The fact that extracellular matrix proteins participate in cellular signaling is shown by the findings that many extracellular matrix proteins such as collagen, laminin, fibronectin, and vitronectin are ligands for the transmembrane receptor proteins such as integrin.

Intracellular Composition

While sodium, chloride, and bicarbonate are the main solutes in the extracellular fluid, potassium, magnesium, phosphate, and proteins are the main solutes in the cell. The intracellular concentrations of sodium and chloride cannot be measured with accuracy, and is estimated by subtracting the amount that is extracellular from the total tissue value. Since concentrations of electrolytes in the extracellular fluid are high, a small error in extracellular water volume measurement will cause a large error in the measurement of intracellular concentration of these ions. The concentration of bicarbonate is calculated from cell pH, and the bicarbonate concentration shown in Table 14-1 is based on the assumption that the average cell pH is 7.0.

The electrolyte composition of intracellular fluid is not identical throughout the tissues. For example, the concentration of chloride in muscle is very low, about 3 to 4 mmol/L (Graham, 1970), but it is about 75 mmol/L in erythrocytes. A very low chloride concentration in skeletal muscle is attributed to the strongly negative resting membrane potential, about –90 mV. In contrast, the electrical potential of the red blood cell is about –10 mV (Zavodnik et al, 1997). Distribution of chloride across muscle estimated from the Nernst equation would predict a concentration of 3.5 mmol/L when the electrical potential is –90 mV in the cell, and 72 mmol/L when the potential is –10 mV. Slightly higher values can be

BOX 14-1

Volumes of Body Fluid Compartments*

Intracellular volume: 24 L (60%)
Extracellular volume: 16 L (40%)
Interstitial volume: 11.2 L (28%)
Plasma volume: 3.2 L (8%)
Transcellular volume: 1.6 L (4%)

*A normal man weighing 73 kg (160 lbs) with 40 liters of total body water is used as a model.

TABLE 14-1

Electrolyte Concentrations in Extracellular and Intracellular Fluids

	PLASMA		INTERSTITIAL FLUID		PLASMA WATER		CELL WATER (MUSCLE)	
	(mmol/L)	(mmol/L)	(mmol/L)	(mmol/L)	(mmol/L)	(mmol/L)	(mmol/L)	(mmol/L)
Na^+	140	140	145.3	145.3	149.8	149.8	13	13
K^+	4.5	4.5	4.7	4.7	4.8	4.8	140	140
Ca^{++}	5.0	2.5	2.8	1.4	5.3	5.3	10^{-7}	0.5×10^{-7}
Mg^{++}	1.7	0.85	1.0	0.5	1.8	0.9	7.0	3.5
Cl^-	104	104	114.7	114.7	111.4	111.4	3	3
HCO_3^-	24	24	26.5	26.5	25.7	25.7	10	10
SO_4^{2-}	1.0	0.5	1.2	0.6	1.1	0.55	–	–
P	2.1	1.2+	2.1++	1.2+	2.2	1.25+	107	57+++
Protein	15	1	8	0.5	16	1	40	2.5*
Organic anion	5	5	5.6	5.6	5.3	5.3	–	–

+The calculation is based on the assumption that the pH of the extracellular fluid is 7.4 and the pK of inorganic $H_2PO_4^-$ is 6.8.
++The concentration of P in the interstitial fluid would be increased by the Donnan effect, but reduced by the lower protein-bound phosphate, and these two opposing effects keep interstitial phosphate concentration about equal to that of plasma.
+++The intracellular molal concentration of phosphate is calculated with the assumption that the pK of organic phosphates in the cell is 6.1 and the intracellular pH 7.0.
*The calculation is based on the assumption that each mmol of intracellular protein has an average of 15 mEq.

explained by secondarily active transporters such as sodium-potassium-chloride transporters (NKCC). The concentration of potassium in the muscle cell is about 140 mmol/L but in the platelets is only about 118 mmol/L, and the lower potassium concentration is also explained by lower membrane potential of about –70 mV (Pipili, 1985).

The concentration of sodium in the cell cannot be predicted by the membrane potential since the values are far from the equilibrium predicted by the Nernst equation. If it were, the intracellular concentration of sodium has to be much greater than that of the extracellular fluid. The much lower concentration of sodium in the cell than predicted can be explained by Na^+-K^+-ATPase that pumps sodium out of the cell constantly. The concentration of sodium in the muscle and red blood cell is about 13 mmol/L, but in leukocytes it is about 34 mmol/L. The main phosphate in the red blood cell is 2,3-DPG, but in the muscle ATP and creatinine phosphate are the main phosphates. Because the muscle represents the bulk of the body cell mass, it is customary to use the electrolyte concentration of the muscle cells as representative of the intracellular electrolyte concentration. A substantial part of the anions inside the cell are polyvalent ions such as phosphate and protein, and consequently, the total ionic concentration in the cell in mmol/L is higher than that of the extracellular fluid in order to maintain osmotic equilibrium with the extracellular fluid.

Even then, the total solute concentration of electrolytes in the cell is less than the total solute concentration of electrolytes in the extracellular fluid, and the difference is explained by the accumulation of organic solutes in the cell at concentrations that are much higher than those in the extracellular fluid. These organic solutes include sorbitol, myoinositol, taurine, betaine, and glycerophosphocholine (Burg & Ferraris, 2008). These solutes participate in the regulation of cell volumes in the presence of changes in extracellular tonicity (Burg, 2008). For example, in the presence of hypertonicity, the intracellular concentrations of these solutes increase either by increased synthesis or by increased cellular uptake (Burg, 2008). The concentration of sorbitol in the cell with hypertonicity increases by the increased production by activating the enzyme aldose reductase while reducing its metabolism to fructose. Similarly, the concentration of glycerophosphocholine (GPC) increases by the increased activity of the main synthetic enzyme, NTE (neuropathy target esterase). On the other hand, the increased cellular concentrations of betaine, myoinositol, and taurine are achieved by the increased number of transporters, namely BGT1 (betaine-GABA transporter), SMIT (sodium myoinositol transporter), and TauT (taurine transporter) (Burg, 2008). Regulation of production of these various chemicals is orchestrated by the tonicity-responsive enhancer-binding protein (TonEBP), a transcription factor that promotes cellular accumulation of organic osmolytes mainly in the hypertonic renal medulla by promotion of expression of genes involved in organic solute accumulation (Johnson et al, 2014) described earlier.

MEASUREMENT OF PLASMA OSMOLALITY

Osmolarity refers to the number of moles of solute in a liter of solution, whereas osmolality refers to the number of moles of solute in a kilogram of water (solvent). Osmolality is the preferred term, since measurements of both osmolarity and osmolality are based on colligative property, which is based on the number of particles dissolved in a given number of water molecules. Examples of colligative property, which depends on the number of solute particles, include freezing point, boiling point, and vapor pressure. The mass of water represents the number of water molecules more accurately than the volume, because water volume changes with temperature, but the mass does not. One should note, however, that 1 kg of water occupies 1 liter at 4° C. However, the terms *osmolality* and *osmolarity* are often used interchangeably, because changes in the volume of liquid water with temperature are negligible.

One mole of NaCl in solution contains 2 osmoles because NaCl is dissociated to Na^+ and Cl^-. One mole of D-glucose in solution contains 1 osmole since glucose does not dissociate. One mole of Na_3PO_4 in solution contains 4 osmoles, since it will dissociate into 3 Na^+ ions and one PO_4^{3-} ion. To calculate the osmolality of a solution whose solute dissociates into more than one particle, the following equation is used:

$$M \times a = Osm/L \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-2)}$$

where M is molarity, and a is the number of particles into which a molecule of the substance dissociates.

When the osmolal concentration of the extracellular fluid increases by accumulation of solutes that are restricted to the extracellular fluid (effective osmols) (e.g., glucose, mannitol, and sodium), osmotic equilibrium is reestablished as water shifts from the cell to the extracellular fluid (ECF), increasing intracellular osmolality to the same level as the extracellular osmolality (Hill, 1990; Oh & Carroll, 1995; Weisberg, 1978). When the extracellular osmolality increases by accumulation of solutes that can enter the cell freely (ineffective osmols) (e.g., urea and alcohol), the osmotic equilibrium is achieved by entry of those solutes into the cell. Since most of the solutes normally present in the extracellular fluid are effective osmols, loss of extracellular water (e.g., insensible losses) will increase effective osmolality, and hence cause a shift of water from the cells. Reduction in extracellular osmolality either by loss of normal extracellular solutes or by retention of water reduces effective osmolality for the same reasons, and hence causes a shift of water into the cells.

Osmolality of serum or plasma can be measured directly with an osmometer, as described in Chapter 4, on the principles of instrumentation or estimated as the sum of the concentration of all the solutes in the plasma. Because an osmometer does not distinguish between effective and ineffective osmols, effective osmolality can only be estimated. As it happens, urea is the only ineffective osmol that has substantial concentration in the normal plasma, 5 mOsm/L. In the normal plasma, therefore, total osmolality is nearly equal to effective osmolality. Plasma osmolality is estimated as follows:

$$\text{Serum osmolality} = \{\text{serum } Na^+ \text{ (mmol/L)} \times 2\} + \{\text{glucose (mg/dL)}/18\} + \{\text{urea nitrogen (mg/dL)}/2.8\} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-3)}$$

In the use of the formula in Equation 14-3, osmolality of sodium and accompanying anions are overestimated by not considering the osmotic coefficient and assuming that all serum anions are univalent. On the other hand, osmolality is underestimated by ignoring nonsodium cations and their accompanying anions. At normal serum glucose and urea concentrations, osmolality almost equals serum $Na^+ \times 2$, because the opposing errors cancel each other. It should be noted that for the contribution of urea and glucose for serum osmolality, their values in mg/dL are divided by one tenth of each (2.8 and 18) of their molecular weights (28 and 180), because osmolality is expressed as mOsm/L, not mOsm/dL.

Many of the solutes that may accumulate in the body in certain abnormal states are anions of an acid (e.g., salicylate, glycolate, formate, lactate, beta-hydroxybutyrate). These substances should not be added in estimating plasma osmolality since they are largely balanced by sodium and therefore already accounted for when plasma sodium is multiplied by 2. Nonelectrolyte solutes that accumulate abnormally in the serum (e.g., ethanol, ethylene glycol, methanol, and mannitol) will cause the measured osmolality to exceed the calculated osmolality, producing an osmolal gap (Gennari, 1984). This osmolal gap is a useful clinical clue to the presence of the toxic substances listed earlier. Accumulation of neutral and cationic amino acids also causes a serum osmolal gap.

Effect of Hyperglycemia on Serum Na^+

The permeability of a membrane for a given solute varies with the cell type. For example, glucose does not accumulate in the muscle. It does not enter the muscle cell freely, and when it enters the cell with the help of insulin, it is quickly metabolized. Thus, glucose is an effective osmol for the muscle cell (e.g., hyperglycemia will cause a shift of water from the muscle cell). On the other hand, glucose is an ineffective osmol for the red blood cells, liver, kidney cells, and most brain cells because it enters these cells freely. Glucose is generally categorized as an effective osmol mainly because the muscle cells represent the largest body cell mass, as noted previously in this chapter. Accumulation of glucose or mannitol in the extracellular fluid is a well-known cause of hyponatremia because, as discussed in Chapter 8, glucose is osmotically active and induces diffusion of water from the cells to the extracellular fluid, diluting its electrolytes. The fluid shift affects concentrations of all extracellular electrolytes, but its absolute effect is greatest on serum sodium because of its higher concentration. The relationship between change in serum sodium and change in glucose concentration in a normal adult is about 1.6 mmol/L of Na^+ for 100 mg/dL of glucose (Katz, 1973). However, the correction factor is not linear. When hyperglycemia is more severe, the change in serum sodium for a given change in glucose tends to be less, approaching 1.4 at serum glucose concentrations of 1000 mg/dL (Moran & Jamison, 1985). In sharp contrast, Hillier and colleagues, on the basis of experiments on normal subjects, concluded that the correction factor was much larger, a 2.4 mmol/L change in serum sodium for every 100 mg/dL change in glucose (Hillier et al, 1999). A problem with this experiment and the conclusion was that the authors disregarded the effect of water contained in intravenous glucose and urine output on serum sodium. Furthermore, infusion of somatostatin during induction of hyperglycemia would have

increased serum potassium, and infusion of insulin during treatment of hyperglycemia would have had an opposite effect on serum potassium concentration. Changes in serum potassium would have the opposite effect on serum sodium concentration.

These figures suggested by various formulas are valid, however, only when the volume of distribution of glucose is between 40% and 50% of total body water. Volume of distribution of glucose refers to a theoretical volume into which glucose would be evenly distributed when none of the administered glucose is excreted and none metabolized. For example, if 10 g (10,000 mg) of glucose is given to a person, and the serum concentration were to increase by 1000 mg/L (100 mg/dL) (with the assumption that none was metabolized and none excreted), the volume of distribution would be 10 liters. Normally, the volume of distribution of glucose is slightly greater than the extracellular volume because some cells allow free diffusion of glucose. As the volume of distribution of glucose in relation to total body water is increased, the effect of glucose on serum sodium decreases. Decreased volume of distribution of glucose has an opposite effect. The change in serum Na caused by hyperglycemia can be estimated with the following formula (Oh & Carroll, 1995):

$$\Delta Na^+ \text{ (mmol/L)} = (5.6 - 5.6a)/2 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-4)}$$

where ΔNa is a reduction in serum Na^+ in mmol/L for each 100 mg/dL increase in glucose, and a is the fraction of the volume of glucose distribution over total body water.

In conditions with marked expansion of extracellular volume (e.g., congestive heart failure and other edema-forming states), the volume of distribution of glucose represents a much greater fraction of total body water, and hence a fall in serum sodium caused by hyperglycemia would be much less than usual. For example, when the volume of distribution of glucose is 80% of total body water (0.8), the decrease in serum Na^+ for a 100 mg/dL rise in glucose would be only 0.56 mmol/L (5.6 – 5.6 × 0.8)/2 = 0.56. When the volume of distribution of glucose is 20% of total body water, ΔNa^+ would be 2.2 mmol/L for a 100 mg/dL increase in glucose.

Tonicity

The concept of tonicity of a solution is based on the effect of a particular solution on the volume of cells. A hypertonic solution is one that shrinks the cells, while a hypotonic solution is one that causes swelling of the cells. An isotonic solution is one that does not induce any volume change in the cells. A solution of 0.9% saline (154 mM solution of sodium chloride) is isotonic in relation to normal body fluid. When the term *tonicity* is applied to a fluid in vitro, as in the urine, it is used almost interchangeably with total osmolality. Thus, urine with a high concentration of urea is called *hypertonic* (Pradella et al, 1988).

Osmolality and Specific Gravity

The specific gravity of a solution is the mass of the solution divided by the volume of the solution. Whereas osmolality of fluid depends on the osmolal concentration of its solute, specific gravity is determined by the weight of the solute relative to the volume it displaces in solution. Plasma protein contributes little to osmolality because of its low molal concentration despite its great weight, but is the major factor determining specific gravity of plasma. Urinary specific gravity and osmolality usually change in parallel, but discrepancy occurs between the two with heavy proteinuria and severe glycosuria (Carroll & Oh, 1989). The main determinant of specific gravity of plasma is protein, much more than NaCl and glucose, not because it has greater effect than the latter, but because the normal protein concentration at 70 g/L dominates over all other solutes. The normal plasma concentration of NaCl is a mere 9 g/L and that of glucose only 1 g/L. Consequently, iso-osmotic plasma has a specific gravity of 1.020 to 1.030 (Trudnowski & Roco, 1974), whereas iso-osmotic urine has a specific gravity of about 1.010.

REGULATION OF EXTRACELLULAR VOLUME

As discussed later, the extracellular volume depends primarily on its sodium concentration, which is closely regulated by two hormones: antidiuretic hormone (ADH), which promotes water retention, and aldosterone, which promotes sodium retention, causing water to be retained with it, as discussed in Chapter 8. Because the extracellular sodium concentration is maintained within a fairly narrow range through the regulation of ADH release, the extracellular volume depends primarily on its sodium content. In most clinical situations, the extracellular volume correlates well with the vascular volume, which in turn usually correlates positively with the effective vascular volume. Effective vascular volume is an imaginary volume that reflects cardiac output in relation to the tissue's demand for oxygen (Oh et al, 1995). Sometimes, effective vascular volume does not correlate well with vascular volume or extracellular volume.

Effective vascular volume, rather than the extracellular volume or vascular volume, is the chief determinant of how much extracellular fluid is retained. The location and type of sensors that perceive changes in effective vascular volume is not well known. Most physiologists consider the baroreceptors, located in the atria of the heart and the aortic arch, to be likely candidates that send neural signals to the central nervous system resulting in increases or decreases of ADH and altered sympathetic tone. However, the preponderance of evidence argues against effectiveness of such receptors in chronic states of altered effective vascular volume. For example, in a hypertensive patient with congestive heart failure, both atrial low pressure and arterial high pressure baroreceptors would sense a higher than normal pressure. Yet, the neurohumoral responses (e.g., high ADH, high catecholamines, and high renin and angiotensin concentrations) in such states suggest that the body senses low effective vascular volume. In such conditions, the kidney responds appropriately by reducing urinary excretion of sodium and chloride. These physiologic responses to low effective vascular volume sometimes lead to a pathologic retention of salt. For example, salt is retained in congestive heart failure despite markedly expanded extracellular volume and vascular volume, because effective vascular volume is decreased.

Theoretically, there are two ways to alter the salt content of the body: to alter the intake of salt or to alter renal salt output. There is no well-developed mechanism that influences salt intake in response to changes in effective vascular volume. Thus, alterations in salt content of the body are achieved primarily through changes in renal salt output. Changes in renal salt output can be achieved through physical and humoral factors. The physical factors for renal salt regulation work through changes in the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and in peritubular capillary oncotic and hydrostatic pressures. When other factors that influence renal salt output are kept unchanged, the greater the GFR, the greater the amount of sodium filtered and the greater the amount of sodium excreted. In general, however, tubular reabsorption rather than glomerular filtration plays the major role in the regulation of renal excretion of sodium. In advanced renal failure, GFR may be 10% of normal, but patients with renal failure excrete their usual amount of sodium intake as in normal people.

Tubular reabsorption of sodium is regulated by humoral factors and physical factors. The latter's influence on sodium reabsorption is limited mainly to the proximal tubule, where a great deal of sodium reabsorption occurs passively through the paracellular (between cells) pathway. Increased hydrostatic pressure on the peritubular capillary retards passive fluid reabsorption through the paracellular pathway while it promotes passive back diffusion of fluid into the tubular lumen. Increased oncotic pressure has the opposite effects. For example in congestive heart failure, peritubular hydrostatic pressure is reduced because of the increased renal vascular resistance caused by constriction of both afferent and efferent arterioles. Constriction of afferent arterioles would tend to reduce glomerular capillary hydrostatic pressure. However, the glomerular pressure does not decrease much because the constriction of efferent arterioles is even greater than that of afferent arterioles. The maintenance of the glomerular filtration pressure helps to minimize a fall in GFR in volume-depletion states. The result is an increase in filtration fraction (the ratio of GFR to renal plasma flow). Since protein is not filtered, its concentration increases, causing an increased oncotic pressure including in the blood leaving the glomerular capillary through the efferent arterioles to a greater extent than usual. Because the blood in the efferent arterioles flows into the peritubular capillaries, the oncotic pressure of the peritubular capillary would be higher than usual. A lower than usual hydrostatic pressure and a higher than usual oncotic pressure of the peritubular capillary blood in volume-depletion states tend to favor reabsorption of salt and water through the paracellular pathway of the proximal tubule, the tubular segment in which passive reabsorption of salt through the paracellular pathway plays a big role in the overall renal tubular salt transport. Normally, the oncotic pressure of the peritubular capillary plasma in the proximal tubule is about 20% higher than the peripheral blood plasma because the filtration fraction is 0.2. In states of volume depletion, the value could be 25% or 30% higher than that of the peripheral plasma.

Humoral factors that influence tubular reabsorption of sodium include angiotensin II, aldosterone, the atrial natriuretic peptide family of hormones, and catecholamines. Angiotensin II directly increases proximal tubular sodium reabsorption through its effect on the sodium-hydrogen exchanger-3 (NHE-3), and also indirectly by increasing aldosterone secretion, which in turn increases sodium reabsorption in the cortical collecting duct. Catecholamines influence sodium reabsorption mainly through their

effects on renal blood flow, but may have some direct tubular effect in the proximal nephron.

Different types of natriuretic peptide hormones exist (see Chapter 18). The most widely known ones are ANP, BNP, CNP, and urodilatin (Volpe, 2014; Ntalapascha et al, 2009; Moyes et al, 2014). ANP is produced mainly by the atrium of the heart, and BNP, despite its original name, *brain natriuretic peptide*, is produced mainly by the ventricles. Although BNP is now used widely as a marker of heart failure as its levels increase with dilatation of the ventricles, its physiologic relevance as the regulator of renal sodium excretion is doubtful. Despite a marked increase in ANP and BNP in congestive heart failure, there is a marked increase in sodium reabsorption by the kidney in patients with congestive heart failure. The most important natriuretic peptide hormone for the renal excretion of sodium appears to be urodilatin (Vesely, 2007).

The role of ADH in the regulation of extracellular volume is modest, because of the overwhelming importance of osmolality as the main regulator of ADH secretion. For this reason, *salt content of the body is the main determinant of the extracellular volume*. When sodium is retained, a proportionate amount of water is retained in order to maintain normal serum osmolality. Only when the effective vascular volume depletion is very great will ADH secretion occur despite hyponatremia.

In the presence of primary water retention as in the syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion, extracellular volume could theoretically increase in the absence of sodium retention. However, massive water retention without sodium retention will cause only a modest increase in extracellular volume. For example, if a person with 40 liters of total body water gains 10 liters of water without a change in sodium content, serum sodium would decrease from 140 mmol/L to 112 mmol/L ($140 \times 40/50 = 112$), a value that would cause severe morbidity or even death. This would increase the extracellular volume only by 4 liters, since the bulk (60%) of retained water would enter the cell. On the other hand, the same fluid volume retained with salt would remain almost exclusively in the extracellular space. In other words, the amount of water that can be retained without salt is limited by severe and fatal hyponatremia. This is the reason why a massive increase in extracellular volume as in severe congestive heart failure is possible only with massive sodium retention.

The ultimate source of energy for reabsorption of sodium at various nephron segments is Na^+-K^+-ATPase, located on the basolateral membrane, which transports 3 Na^+ out of the cell in exchange for 2 K^+ transported into the cell. The resulting reduction in intracellular sodium concentration and the negative cellular electrical potential allow passive diffusion of Na^+ into the cell through the luminal membrane. Four major sites of sodium reabsorption in the nephron utilize four different mechanisms of luminal sodium entry (Fig. 14-1). Among humoral factors that have been proven or suggested as participating in the regulation of renal salt output, those with well-proven physiologic effects are aldosterone, catecholamines, angiotensin II, and perhaps ADH and prostaglandins (Oh et al, 1995; Biggi et al, 1995).

Some of the humoral substances that influence renal sodium excretion have an indirect effect on renal sodium output. For example, adenosine is currently the best candidate for the regulation of GFR through the tubuloglomerular feedback mechanism (Thomson & Blantz, 2008). Increased production of adenosine in response to a high NaCl concentration at the macula densa results in constriction of afferent arterioles, resulting in reduced GFR. The ultimate effect is reduced excretion of sodium. Likewise, constriction of efferent arterioles by angiotensin II can secondarily increase tubular reabsorption of NaCl, as the increased filtration fraction results in a higher peritubular oncotic pressure and a lower hydrostatic pressure (Thomson & Blantz, 2008).

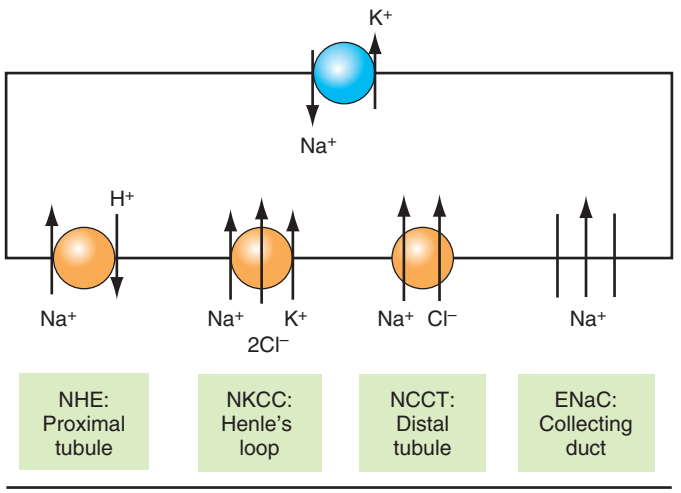


Figure 14-1 Mechanisms of sodium reabsorption at different nephron segments. The main source of energy for sodium reabsorption at all nephron segments is the basolateral Na^+-K^+-ATPase, which transports 3 Na^+ out of the cell in exchange for 2 K^+ into the cell. This pump creates a low intracellular sodium concentration and negative cellular potential, which allow passive diffusion of Na^+ into the cell through the luminal membrane. In the proximal tubule, Na^+ entry is accompanied by exit of H^+ through sodium-hydrogen exchanger type 3 (NHE-3). In the thick ascending limb of Henle, Na^+ enters along with K^+ and 2 Cl^- through the sodium-potassium-chloride cotransporter (NKCC). In the distal convoluted tubule, Na^+ enters with Cl^- through the sodium chloride cotransporter (NCCT), and in the cortical collecting duct, Na^+ enters through the epithelial sodium channel (ENaC).

NONRENAL CONTROL OF WATER AND ELECTROLYTE BALANCE

Insensible Loss of Water from the Skin

Water is lost from the skin primarily as a means of eliminating heat. Water loss from the skin without sweat is called *insensible perspiration*. Sweat contains about 50 mmol/L of sodium and 5 mmol/L of potassium. The maintenance of low NaCl concentration in the sweat requires the normal functioning of CFTR (cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator), and hence the loss of NaCl is greater in those with cystic fibrosis. Because the main purpose of water loss from the skin is elimination of heat, water loss from the skin depends mainly on the amount of heat generated in the body:

Water loss from the skin = 30 mL per 100 calories **(Eq. 14-5)**

Caloric expenditure depends on the basal metabolic rate, and the rate of skin water loss may be sharply reduced in a cachectic malnourished person, especially an anuric person with impaired mental state (Carroll & Oh, 1989).

Loss of Respiratory Water

The water content of inspired air is less than that of the expired air, and hence water is lost during normal ventilation. Because the ventilatory volume is determined by the amount of CO_2 production, which is in turn determined by the caloric expenditure, ventilatory water loss in normal environmental conditions depends also on caloric expenditure:

Respiratory water loss = 13 mL per 100 calories at normal pCO_2 **(Eq. 14-6)**

By coincidence, the quantity of water lost during normal respiration is about equal to the metabolic water production. Hence, in calculating water balance, respiratory water loss may be ignored in the measurement of insensible water loss, provided that metabolic water gain is also ignored. Respiratory water loss increases with hyperventilation or fever disproportionately to metabolic water production (Carroll & Oh, 1989).

Loss of Water in the Gastrointestinal Tract

The net activity of the gastrointestinal tract to the level of the jejunum is secretion of water and electrolytes. The net activity from the jejunum to the colon is reabsorption. Most of the fluid entering the small intestine is absorbed in the small intestine, and the remainder by the colon, leaving only about 100 mL of water to be excreted daily in the feces. The contents of the gastrointestinal tract are isotonic or slightly hypotonic to plasma, and any fluid that enters the gastrointestinal tract becomes isotonic. Thus, the loss of fluid from the gastrointestinal tract never causes hyponatremia in the absence of water ingestion.

MEASUREMENT OF RENAL FUNCTION

CONCEPT OF CLEARANCE

Renal clearance relates the rate of urinary excretion of material to the plasma concentration of that material. It is defined as the volume of plasma that would theoretically have to be "cleared" of the substance in order to account for the amount of the substance excreted in the urine during a given period. In order to calculate clearance, one must first know the amount of the substance excreted in the urine, which is simply calculated from the urine concentration (U_x) and volume (V). The next step is then

http://basicbook.net

to know the plasma concentration of the substance (P_x) in order to determine the volume of plasma needed to account for the material excreted. For example, if a person excreted 1500 mg of creatinine in 1 day, he or she would need 150 liters of plasma to account for that 1500 mg of creatinine if the plasma concentration were 10 mg/L (1 mg/dL); creatinine clearance (C_{creat}) then, would be 150 L/day. At a plasma concentration of 100 mg/L (10 mg/dL), only 15 liters of plasma would be needed to account for the same 1500 mg of creatinine; C_{creat} in this case would be 15 L/day. Customarily, clearance is expressed in mL/min, but any volume and time unit can be used. Thus, a clearance of 150 L/day is equal to 6.25 L/hour and 104 mL/min. The formal equation for clearance is:

$$C_x = (U_x V)/P_x \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-7)}$$

where C_x is clearance of a substance x, U_x and P_x are concentrations of the substance in urine and plasma, respectively, and V the volume of urine per unit time.

In estimating clearance, concentration and volume units must be consistent. For example, if urine creatinine concentration is 70 mg/dL and volume is 2000 mL/day, urine creatinine must also be expressed in mg/mL, not mg/dL. So the total amount excreted is: 0.7 mg/mL × 2000 mL/day = 1400 mg/day.

A clearance in mL/24 hours can be converted to a clearance in mL/min by dividing the value by 1440, since 24 hours equals 1440 minutes.

Quick Formulas for the Calculation of Clearance

When calculating a 24-hour clearance in mL/min, urine creatinine excretion may be expressed in g/24 hours instead of mg/24 hours while expressing the plasma creatinine as mg/dL instead of mg/mL, as long as the incorrect use of these units is corrected by multiplying the final result by 1000 (for using g instead of mg) and then by 100 (for using mg/dL instead of mg/mL). A further correction requires dividing the value by 1440 in order to convert a 24-hour clearance value to a value in mL/min as follows (Carroll & Oh, 1989):

$$C_x = U_x V\ (g/24\ hours)/P_x\ (mg/dL) \times 100{,}000 \times 1/1440 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-8)}$$

$$\text{Since } 100{,}000/1440 = 70$$
$$C_x\ (mL/min) = 70 \times \{U_x\ (g/day)/P_x\ (mg/dL\} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-9)}$$

Conversion of Clearance in L/week to mL/min

The conventional unit for clearance is mL/min, but in certain situations, different units are more useful. For example, when one compares clearances of peritoneal dialysis in a patient on a CAPD (continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis) program with hemodialysis, the clearance unit often used is L/week. A patient on CAPD treatment typically has 2 liters of dialysate exchanged every 6 hours. Since the volume drained is usually about 2.5 liters (a slightly higher volume because of transudation of fluid from the blood to the peritoneal cavity), creatinine clearance is about 10 liters per day or 70 liters per week. As a comparison, hemodialysis provides about 48 liters of creatinine clearance with each treatment, or 144 liters of clearance per week since usually three treatments are given each week. If weekly clearance in L/week is to be converted to mL/min, the following shortcut may be useful:

$$L/week = 1000\ mL/week = 1000\ mL/(7 \times 24 \times 60)\ minutes$$
$$= 1000/10{,}080 = 0.1\ mL/min \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-10)}$$

In other words, weekly clearance in L/week/10 = minute clearance in mL/min. For example, 70 L/week of clearance is equal to 7 mL/min of clearance.

MEASUREMENT OF GLOMERULAR FILTRATION RATE

Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is generally considered the best overall indicator of the level of kidney function (Smith, 1951). Two different approaches have been utilized for the measurement of GFR. One approach has been to use an endogenous substance, and the other to use an exogenous substance. It is important that whatever molecular marker is used to determine GFR, the substance is minimally reabsorbed and minimally secreted by the renal tubules.

Measurement of GFR with Exogenous Substances

Inulin clearance is widely regarded as the gold standard for measuring glomerular filtration rate (Smith, 1951). Inulin clearance in healthy young adults has a mean value of 127 mL/min/1.73 m^2 in men and 118 mL/min/1.73 m^2 in women. GFR declines with age. After 20 to 30 years of age, GFR decreases by approximately 1.0 mL/min/1.73 m^2 per year. The classic method of inulin clearance requires an intravenous infusion and timed urine collections over many hours. Inulin is expensive and the procedure is very time-consuming and not performed clinically.

Consequently, a number of alternative measures for estimating GFR have been introduced (Price & Finney, 2000; Gaspari et al, 1997). The urinary clearance of exogenous radioactive markers such as ^{125}I-iothalamate and ^{99m}Tc-DTPA (metastable technetium^{99} labeled diethylene triamine pentaacetic acid) provides good measures of GFR (Biggi et al, 1995; Brochner-Mortensen et al, 1969; Christensen & Groth, 1986; Fleming et al, 1991). Plasma disappearance of exogenous substances such as iohexol and ^{51}Cr-EDTA has also been used to estimate GFR, and an advantage of this method is that it does not require urine collection (Krutzen & Back, 1984; Russel, 1985; Agarwal, 2003). However, plasma clearance methods are not as accurate as those that require urine collection. GFR has also been measured with non–radio-labeled iothalamate in blood and urine, and an obvious advantage of this method is avoidance of radioactive materials (Rule et al, 2004).

Measurement of GFR with Endogenous Substances

Endogenous substances that are widely used to determine GFR include urea, creatinine, cystatin C, beta trace protein, beta-2 microglobulin, and tryptophan glycoconjugate. The first two are widely used in clinical practice mainly because of their ready availability, but cystatin C is gaining popularity.

Creatinine as a Measure of Renal Function

Creatinine is an endogenous substance with a molecular weight of 113 Da. It is produced by the muscle from creatine and creatine phosphate by a nonenzymatic dehydration process. The rate of production of creatinine is proportionate to the creatine–creatine phosphate pool, which in turn is proportionate to the muscle mass (Oh, 1993). An additional source of creatinine is creatine contained in ingested meat (or dietary supplements). The rate of in vitro conversion of creatine to creatinine in meat is dependent on temperature and acidity; high temperature and low pH increase conversion (Oh, 1993). Creatinine is the most widely used marker of GFR for several reasons. First, it is an endogenous substance with a fairly constant rate of production. Second, creatinine is not bound to plasma proteins, and therefore is filtered freely by the glomerulus. It is not reabsorbed by the renal tubules, and only a small amount is secreted by the tubules.

In the use of creatinine clearance, the inconvenience of urine collection and uncertainty of its completeness can be avoided by estimating the excretion rate. When renal function is normal and stable, creatinine excretion is almost equal to its production, which depends primarily on muscle mass (Oh, 1993). Muscle mass varies with sex, age, and body weight. The creatinine production rate is estimated as age (A):

$$\text{Creatinine production (mg/kg/day)}: 28 - 0.2A\ \text{(men)} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-11, A)}$$

$$\text{Creatinine production (mg/kg/day)}: 23.8 - 0.17A\ \text{(women)} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-11, B)}$$

In obese patients and wasted patients, the above formula will overestimate creatinine production. Normally, creatinine excretion in urine is slightly less than its production, because some creatinine is broken down by the colonic bacteria. The discrepancy increases progressively with decreasing renal function, because of the nonrenal clearance of creatinine, which is about 0.04 L/kg/day (Oh, 1993). However, the metabolism of creatinine by the colonic bacteria is inducible, and is increased more in chronic renal failure than in acute renal failure (Owens et al, 1979). Normally, a 70-kg man would have an extrarenal creatinine clearance of 2.8 L/day or 2 mL/min, less than 2% of the normal renal clearance. However, at a renal clearance of 4 mL/min, 2 mL/min of extrarenal clearance would represent one third of the total plasma clearance of creatinine.

However, there are several drawbacks to the use of creatinine as a measure of GFR. First, although the rate of production is fairly constant, it has a substantial individual variation, depending mainly on the muscle mass (Oh, 1993). In the presence of severe muscle wasting, production of creatinine could be reduced to less than 25% of the amount predicted from the body weight (Kaizu et al, 2002). Second, creatinine is also derived from the dietary meat, and the quantity of meat ingestion can substantially influence the total daily production. Third, creatinine measurement has been commonly performed by the alkaline picrate method (see later for a more detailed discussion), which is subject to many

http://basicbook.net

interferences, although more specific enzymatic methods are now being widely adopted. Finally, creatinine is partially secreted by the proximal tubules via the organic cation transport pathway, and the tubular secretion is blocked by various drugs including cimetidine, trimethoprim, pyrimethamine, and salicylate (Hilbrands et al, 1991; Van Acker et al, 1992). The extent of tubular secretion varies with individuals, and variation is much greater in the presence of renal dysfunction; tubular secretion could be as much as 50% of the amount excreted in the urine in advanced renal failure. In order to obviate the errors due to tubular secretion, creatinine clearance has been obtained with the simultaneous administration of cimetidine, which inhibits tubular secretion of creatinine. However, suppression of creatinine secretion by cimetidine is not complete, and also has wide individual variations.

Creatinine Measurement

The most widely used method of creatinine measurement has been based on the Jaffe reaction, described more than 100 years ago, which is a reaction of creatinine with trinitrophenol, also known as *picric acid* or *picrate* (Mitchell, 1973; Perrone et al, 1992). The alkaline solution enhances the reaction, and hence the term *alkaline picrate method.* The method of Hare involves the isolation of creatinine by absorption into Lloyd's reagent and discarding the plasma containing interfering chromogens (Perrone et al, 1992). This method is difficult to manipulate and is often messy. Increasingly, creatinine is measured enzymatically by the use of creatinine amidohydrolase or creatinine iminohydrolase (Suzuki & Yoshida, 1984; Fossati et al, 1994). Creatinine is hydrolyzed by creatinine iminohydrolase to ammonia and *N*-methylhydantoin. The ammonia then combines with 2-oxoglutarate and NADH in the presence of glutamate dehydrogenase to produce glutamate and NAD^+ (see Chapter 27). The consumption of NADH measured as decrease in absorbance at 340 nm is used to measure the concentration of creatinine. Creatinine can also be measured by converting creatinine to creatine by creatinine amidohydrolase. Creatine is then hydrolysed by iminohydrolase and sarcosine oxidase to produce hydrogen peroxide. In the presence of horseradish peroxidase, 2,4-dichlorophenolsulfonate is converted to a colorless polymer by hydrogen peroxide, and the concentration of the polymer is then measured at 510 nm.

Several substances such as ketones, glucose, fructose, protein, urea, and ascorbic acid also react with picrate, and falsely increase creatinine concentration (Perrone et al, 1992). Interference by glucose on creatinine measurement becomes significant when glucose concentration is very high as in diabetic ketoacidosis or hyperglycemic coma (Sjoland & Marcher, 2003). Glucose concentration is extremely high in dialysate fluid used in peritoneal dialysis, and a correction for the high glucose is needed when creatinine concentration is measured in the effluent of peritoneal dialysate. The magnitude of glucose interference of creatinine measurement has been shown not only on the glucose concentration but also on the creatinine concentration (Mak et al, 1997). The interference by glucose in creatinine measurement does not occur in the enzymatic methods. Bilirubin and hemoglobin also interfere with the alkaline picrate method, resulting in falsely low values (Schoenmakers et al, 1993). Cephalosporin antibiotics also positively interfere with the alkaline picrate method, resulting in falsely elevated values (Swain & Biggs, 1977; Kroll, 1983).

The most definitive method for creatinine measurement is isotope dilution mass spectrometry (IDMS). Although much too cumbersome and expensive for routine use, this method is the basis of calibration of modern creatinine assays (Peake & Whiting, 2006).

Without removing noncreatinine chromogens, the upper limit of normal measured by the Jaffe reaction is 1.6 to 1.9 mg/dL for adults. The upper limit of normal for serum creatinine measured after removing the chromogens is 1.2 to 1.4 mg/dL. Values for women are 0.1 to 0.2 mg/dL lower. When serum creatinine is very high, noncreatinine chromogens contribute proportionally less to the total reaction. With normal renal function, noncreatinine chromogens make up 14% (range 4.5% to 22.3%) of the total, but in advanced renal dysfunction, it contributes only about 5%.

Cimetidine-Enhanced Creatinine Clearance

Tubular secretion of creatinine results in falsely elevated values in creatinine clearance, especially in renal insufficiency, and measurements of creatinine clearance with inhibition of tubular secretion with cimetidine substantially improves the creatinine clearance estimate of GFR in patients with mild to moderate renal impairment (Hilbrands et al, 1991; Van Acker et al, 1992; Hellerstein et al, 1998). However, tubular secretion of creatinine is not completely blocked by cimetidine, and hence the method still overestimates glomerular filtration rate.

The Effect of Drugs on Serum Creatinine

In addition to cimetidine, a number of other drugs also interfere with tubular secretion of creatinine by inhibiting organic cation transporters. These include trimethoprim, pentamidine, and amiloride (Dumitras et al, 2013).

Formulas to Estimate Creatinine Clearance as an Estimate of GFR

With the realization that accurate urine collection is a major limitation in the creatinine clearance as a measure of GFR, attempts have been made to mathematically transform serum creatinine to estimate glomerular filtration rate. In part because of the convenience, these methods are widely used in clinical practice. An older formula, the Cockcroft-Gault formula, has been used to estimate creatinine clearance. More recently, GFR has been estimated using the MDRD and the CKD-EPI formulas.

The Cockcroft-Gault formula (mL/min) (Cockcroft & Gault, 1976) is as follows:

$$([140 - \text{Age}] \times [\text{IBW}])/(72 \times \text{SCr}), \text{ multiply by 0.85 if female} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-12)}$$

where IBW is ideal body weight and SCr is serum creatinine concentration. IBW is calculated by the following formula:

$$\text{Males: IBW} = 50 \text{ kg} + 2.3 \text{ kg for each inch over 5 feet} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-13, A)}$$

$$\text{Females: IBW} = 45.5 \text{ kg} + 2.3 \text{ kg for each inch over 5 feet} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-13, B)}$$

The Cockcroft-Gault formula reduces the variability of serum creatinine estimates of GFR caused by difference in creatinine production due to differences in muscle mass based on sex and age. However, because the formula does not take into account for differences in creatinine production due to variation in muscle mass caused by disease states, it systematically overestimates glomerular filtration rate in individuals who have relatively low muscle mass in relation to their body weight such as obese, edematous, or chronically debilitated subjects. Moreover, it does not take into account for variations caused by extrarenal elimination and tubular secretion.

In the Modification of Diet in Renal Disease (MDRD) study, Levey and colleagues measured GFR by I^{125}-iodothalamate to derive a formula for estimating glomerular filtration rate using six variables: age, sex, serum urea nitrogen, serum creatinine, and serum albumin concentration (Levey et al, 1999). In 2000, the same investigators produced a simplified MDRD formula based on four variables, serum creatinine, age, race, and sex.

The MDRD formula (mL/min/1.73 m^3) is as follows:

$$\text{GFR} = 170 \times \text{Cr}^{-0.999} \times \text{age}^{-0.176} \times (0.762 \text{ if female}) \times (1.180 \text{ if black}) \times \text{BUN}^{-0.170} \times \text{Alb}^{0.318} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-14, A)}$$

The simplified MDRD formula (mL/min/1.73 m^3) based on four variables (serum creatinine, age, race, and sex) is as follows:

$$\text{GFR} = 175 \times \text{Cr}^{-1.154} \times \text{age}^{-0.203} \times 1.212 \text{ (for black)} \times 0.742 \text{ (for women)}. \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-14, B)}$$

Cr = serum creatinine (mg/dL) (measured by a method traceable to IDMS); Wt = body weight (kg); BUN = blood urea nitrogen (mg/dL); Alb = serum albumin (g/dL).

Whereas the Cockcroft-Gault formula includes body weight, the MDRD formula does not include body weight, because the result of the latter is expressed in mL/min/1.73 m^3 rather than an absolute value. The same errors resulting from variations in creatinine production rate caused by disease states arise in both the Cockcroft-Gault and MDRD calculations, and the formulas are not applicable to children, obese or bedridden patients, or amputees. Following are the formulas used most often for estimating creatinine clearance for children (Schwartz et al, 1976; Counahan et al, 1976; Leger et al, 2002; Pierrat et al, 2003):

Schwartz formula:

$$\text{GFR} = 0.55 \times \text{height (cm)}/\text{serum creatinine (mg/dL)} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-15, A)}$$

$$\text{GFR} = 43 \times \text{height (cm)}/\text{serum creatinine (}\mu\text{mol/L)} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-15, B)}$$

Counahan-Barrett formula:

$$\text{GFR} = 40 \times \text{height (cm)}/\text{serum creatinine (}\mu\text{mol/L)} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-16)}$$

In 2009, Schwartz and colleagues further modified their formula to estimate GFR more accurately in children (Schwartz, 2009). The new formula is very similar to the MDRD equation in that it uses multiple

http://basicbook.net

exponential functions; the use of the formula requires knowing values of serum creatinine, height, BUN, and serum cystatin C. Like the MDRD formula, a computer program is usually needed to use the formula.

Modified Schwartz formula:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{GFR (mL/min per 1.73 m}^2) = {} & 39.1[\text{height (m)}/\text{SCr (mg/dL)}]^{0.516} \\ & \times [1.8/\text{cystatin C (mg/L)}]^{0.294} \\ & [30/\text{BUN (mg/dL)}]^{0.169} \\ & [1.099]^{\text{male}}[\text{height (m)}/1.4]^{0.188}\end{aligned}$$

(Eq. 14-17)

It has been shown that GFR estimated from these various formulas is not very accurate. However, creatinine clearance values estimated from the formulas are still more accurate than those from direct measurements mainly because of the inaccurate urine collections and variations in plasma creatinine concentration in the latter. Consequently, KDOQI (Kidney Disease Outcomes Quality Initiative) guidelines have recommended the use of these formulas in calculating creatinine clearance instead of direct measurements (Levey et al, 1999).

All of these formulas are useful in the estimation of GFR in chronic states when creatinine production is assumed to be equal to the amount excreted in the urine. In acute renal failure when serum creatinine rises rapidly during the development of renal failure and falls rapidly during the recovery phase, such assumption is invalid, and hence the estimation of GFR by either method is invalid. Measurement of creatinine in the urine with timed urine collection is more useful in determining creatinine clearance in acute renal failure.

Most recently, the CKD-EPI (Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration) equation for GFR has been increasingly used, and it seems to be more accurate in some patient populations (Levey et al, 2009). The formula is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{GFR} = {} & 141 \times \min(\text{SCr}/\kappa, 1)^{\alpha} \times \max(\text{SCr}/\kappa, 1) \\ & -1.209 \times 0.993^{\text{Age}} \times 1.018\,[\text{if female}] \times 1.159\,[\text{if black}]\end{aligned}$$

where κ is 0.7 for females and 0.9 for males, α is –0.329 for females and –0.411 for males, min indicates the minimum of SCr/κ or 1, and max indicates the maximum of SCr/κ or 1.

Urea as Measure of Renal Function

Urea is the main waste product of nitrogen-containing chemicals in the body. It has a molecular weight of 60 Da. However, by custom the concentration of urea is expressed only by the nitrogen content of urea. For this reason, the term *serum* or *urine urea nitrogen* is widely used in place of *serum* or *urine urea*. Because a molecule of urea contains two nitrogen atoms, the molecular weight of urea nitrogen is 28 Da.

Serum urea is widely used as a measure of renal dysfunction, but its value as a measure of GFR is not very good for several reasons. First, urea concentration in the serum depends not only on the renal function but also on the rate of urea production, which depends largely on the protein intake. The rate of protein intake varies widely from individual to individual.

Urea is freely filtered at the glomerulus, but is reabsorbed substantially in the proximal convoluted tubule and the inner medullary collecting duct. Reabsorption of urea in the proximal tubule occurs passively through the lipid membrane without the help of urea transporters (Quigley et al, 2001), whereas in the inner medullary collecting duct, urea reabsorption is mediated by urea transporters (Pallone, 2007). Some of the urea reabsorbed from the inner medullary collecting duct then reenters the tubule in the thin descending limb of the cortical nephrons, which also express urea transporters (Pallone, 2007). The amount of urea reabsorbed in the proximal tubule varies greatly depending on the status of effective vascular volume; reabsorption is markedly increased in states of volume depletion because the luminal concentration of urea is high owing to the increased fractional reabsorption of salt and water. The amount reabsorbed in the inner medullary collecting duct is increased when urine osmolality is high because of the high urea concentration. For these reasons, urea clearance does not reflect GFR very accurately, but serum urea nitrogen is still widely used as a measure of renal dysfunction. In the presence of the normal renal function without volume depletion, urea clearance is about 50% of creatinine clearance, but in the presence of severe volume depletion, its clearance could be as little as 10% of creatinine clearance. In advanced renal failure, urea clearance approaches unity with GFR, and it is better than creatinine clearance as a measure of GFR (Schück & Lácha, 1990).

Measurement of Urea

Essentially there are three methods for the measurement of urea. The gold standard, which is used only as a reference method because of its high cost, is isotope dilution mass spectrometry (Kessler & Siekmann, 1999). In clinical laboratories, urea is measured either by the colorimetric method based on a reaction of urea with diacetyl monoxime or by enzymatic methods (Barbour & Welch, 1992; Natelson et al, 1951; Passey et al, 1980). In the former, urea reacts directly with diacetyl monoxime under strong acidic conditions to give a yellow condensation product. The reaction is intensified by the presence of ferric ions and thiosemicarbazide. The intense red color formed is measured at 540 nm.

The initial reaction in all enzymatic methods is hydrolysis of urea by urease, which produces ammonia and CO_2. Ammonia and CO_2 produced are measured by various methods to calculate the concentration of urea in the original sample. Measurement of ammonia is most often used. In one of these methods, ammonia produced by urease converts glutamate and ATP to glutamine and ADP. The ADP so produced is consumed in reactions catalyzed sequentially by pyruvate kinase and pyruvate oxidase to generate hydrogen peroxide (Lespinas et al, 1989). The hydrogen peroxide is then measured as an indirect estimate of urea concentration. In another enzymatic method, as in the one used for creatinine described in the preceding section, ammonia produced from urea hydrolysis reacts with alpha-keto-glutarate and NADH to produce glutamic acid and NAD^+ by glutamate dehydrogenase (Fawcett & Scott, 1960). The amount of NADH consumed is measured photometrically to determine the urea concentration. Another urease method involves the indophenol method, in which ammonium produced by urease reacts with hypochlorite to form monochloramine (Higashi & Morizono, 2000). In the presence of phenol and an excess of hypochlorite, the monochloramine forms a blue colored compound, indophenol, the concentration of which is determined spectrophotometrically at 630 nm. In yet another enzymatic method, CO_2 produced by urease is measured by thermal conductivity gas chromatography.

Other Measures of GFR

Cystatin C

Cystatin C is a 122–amino acid protein with a molecular weight of 13,000 Da, and it is an inhibitor of cysteine proteinase. The substance is produced by all nucleated cells, and its production rate is relatively constant from 4 months to 70 years of age. (Massey, 2004; Laterza et al, 2002; Ylinen et al, 1999). The rate of production is not affected by muscle mass, sex, or race. Because of its small size (small for a protein) and a positive net charge, it is freely filtered at the glomerulus at the same concentration as in the plasma. It is completely reabsorbed by the proximal tubule, and in the absence of proximal tubular defect, none is excreted in the urine. Hence, the appearance of cystatin C signifies proximal tubular damage (Soto et al, 2010).

A common assumption in the use of cystatin C as a marker of GFR is that the production rate of cystatin C is constant. However, this is probably not true. It is now known that cystatin C production is regulated by interleukin 10, and that high IL-10 inhibits its production (Xu et al, 2011). There is evidence that glucocorticoids reduce production of cystatin C (Risch et al, 2001), and this might result in overestimation of renal function in renal transplantation patients, who are regularly given glucocorticoids (Yamawaki et al, 2013). Nevertheless, a number of studies compared serum creatinine and serum cystatin C as an indicator of renal function, and the general consensus is that cystatin C is better than creatinine. However, cystatin C is not widely used clinically because measurements are difficult and expensive (Massey, 2004). It must be noted that cystatin C renal clearance cannot be measured because normally it is completely reabsorbed, and none excreted in the urine. For this reason, changes in serum concentration of cystatin C are used as indirect estimates of GFR. An equation to estimate GFR using plasma cystatin C concentrations has been developed, and the results were found to be better than those by MDRD equation and the Schwartz formula for estimation of GFR (Grubb et al, 2011).

Modified cystatin C equation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{GFR}\,[\text{mL} \times \text{min}^{-1} \times (1.73\ \text{m}^2)^{-1}] = {} & 84.69 \times \text{cystatin C (mg/L)}^{-1.680} \\ & \times 1.384\ (\text{if a child} < 14\ \text{years})\end{aligned}$$

(Eq. 14-18)

Equations using both cystatin C and creatinine concentrations have also been developed.

http://basicbook.net

Beta-2 Microglobulin

Beta-2 microglobulin, a polypeptide with a molecular weight of 11.6 kDa with a length of 99 amino acids, is a component of the MHC (major histocompatibility complex) class I molecule. It is present in all nucleated cells and is needed for production of CD8 cells. Its production is increased in multiple myeloma and lymphoma. Because of the low molecular weight, beta-2 microglobulin is freely filtered at the glomerulus, and then reabsorbed and metabolized completely by the proximal tubule. Like cystatin C and beta trace protein, the plasma level increases in renal failure. The protein appears in the urine when reabsorption is incomplete because of the proximal tubular damage as in acute kidney injury. The protein has a tendency to fold into a beta-sheet configuration, resulting in amyloid formation; it is a common cause of dialysis-associated amyloidosis (Schwalbe et al, 1997; Bianchi et al, 2001).

Beta Trace Protein

Beta trace protein (BTP) is a low molecular weight glycoprotein with 168 amino acids. The molecular weight varies between 23,000 and 29,000 Da, depending on the degree of glycosylation. BTP belongs to the lipocalin protein family, and functions as prostaglandin D synthase. Because prostaglandin D is the major prostaglandin in the brain, BTP is isolated primarily from cerebrospinal fluid. Plasma BTP originates from the brain and is freely filtered at the glomerulus and then reabsorbed completely by the proximal tubule and catabolized there. The plasma level is increased in patients with renal disease because of the reduced filtration in the presence of constant production. White and colleagues (2007, 2009) and Pöge and colleagues (2005, 2008) developed formulas to estimate GFR on the basis of plasma concentration of BTP and urea or creatinine. They claimed that the results were better than those by MDRD equation and serum cystatin C measurements. However, others showed that BTP was less sensitive than cystatin C (Abbink et al, 2008).

White formula using beta trace protein:

$$GFR1 = 112.1 \times BTP^{-0.662} \times urea^{-0.280} \times (0.880 \text{ if female}) \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-19, A)}$$

$$GFR2 = 167.8 \times BTP^{-0.758} \times creatinine^{-0.204} \times (0.871 \text{ if female}) \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-19, B)}$$

Poge formula using BTP:

$$GFR1 = 89.85 \times BTP^{-0.5541} \times urea^{-0.3018} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-20, A)}$$

$$GFR2 = 974.31 \times BTP^{-0.2594} \times creatinine^{-0.647} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-20, B)}$$

GFR in mL per min per 1.73 m^2; BTP in mg/dL; urea in mmol/L; creatinine in µmol/L.

Tryptophan Glycoconjugate

MPT (mannopyranosyl-L-tryptophan) is as substance normally produced in the body by glyco-conjugation of tryptophan, and filtered at the glomerulus freely and not reabsorbed. There is a strong linear correlation between clearances of MPT and inulin in rats (r = 0.97) and humans (r = 0.87), indicating that renal handling of MPT is similar to that of inulin. The current limitation for the use of MPT for renal function estimation is that it can be measured only by the HPLC method, which is time-consuming and expensive. Serum level of MPT increases progressively with declining renal function, but unlike creatinine, serum MPT concentration is not affected by muscle mass. It is not known whether dietary intake of tryptophan affects serum concentration (Takahira et al, 2001).

UREA CLEARANCE AND UREA/CREATININE RATIO IN SERUM

In the absence of renal dysfunction and severe dehydration, urea clearance is about 50% of creatinine clearance, and hence about 50% of GFR, because about 50% of the filtered urea is reabsorbed. The bulk of urea reabsorption occurs in the proximal tubule, about 40% of the filtered load. Among the distal nephron sites, the inner medullary collecting duct reabsorbs urea extensively along a concentration gradient when urine is being concentrated. Some of the urea reabsorbed from the inner medulla reenters the tubule at the descending thin limb; this reentry represents intrarenal recycling of urea (Pallone, 2007). Urea reentry occurs mainly in the short loop of Henle. Some of the urea reabsorbed from the inner medullary collecting duct is carried away from the medulla by the ascending vasa recta; this amount represents about 10% of the filtered load with normal urine flow, but with marked urine concentration the amount can increase greatly (Lyman, 1986).

A marked reduction in urea clearance occurs when the proximal reabsorption of urea is greatly increased by a reduction in effective vascular volume. Reabsorption of urea in the proximal tubule is passive and depends on a favorable urea concentration gradient. This gradient is created by reabsorption of water in the proximal tubule. Normally, about two thirds of the filtered water is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule as a result of reabsorption of salt (mainly sodium chloride). Loss of two thirds of the water in the tubule increases urea concentration in the tubule threefold, creating a favorable gradient for urea diffusion out of the tubule. When the water reabsorption is 90% of the filtered load, the urea concentration increases to 10 times the plasma concentration. Volume depletion and decreased renal plasma flow without volume depletion (e.g., renal artery stenosis) also reduces glomerular filtration rate, thereby reducing clearance of both creatinine and urea. Volume depletion decreases creatinine clearance only by reduced filtration, and urea clearance by both reduced filtration and increased reabsorption. Hence, in volume depletion urea clearance decreases more than creatinine clearance does. Normally the ratio of plasma urea nitrogen to plasma creatinine is about 10 to 1, but in volume depletion the ratio is usually greater than 20 to 1.

The prediction of volume status by the urea/creatinine ratio is based on the assumption of constancy of urea and creatinine production, which is often not the case. Glucocorticoids and a high protein diet increase urea production, whereas chronic protein malnutrition decreases it. Creatinine production also varies considerably; marked muscle wasting may reduce its production to less than one fifth of a usual value. Nowadays, the main cause of a high BUN/creatinine ratio in the hospital is not dehydration, but adequate protein intake (often by a tube feeding) in a patient with severe muscle wasting. Thus, fractional excretion of urea (see later) would be a more reliable index of volume status than plasma urea/creatinine ratio (Carvounis et al, 2002). The mechanism by which low effective vascular volume increases the proximal reabsorption of salt and water are explained in the Regulation of Extracellular Volume section earlier in the chapter.

As stated earlier, because about 50% of filtered urea is reabsorbed, normally urea clearance underestimates GFR greatly, whereas creatinine clearance slightly overestimates GFR. As the renal function declines, the fraction of urea reabsorbed declines progressively, whereas the tubular secretion of creatinine increases progressively (Herrera & Rodriguez-Iturbe, 1998). As a result, urea clearance is a better predictor of GFR than creatinine clearance in the presence of advanced renal dysfunction (Schück & Lácha, 1990).

GLOMERULAR FILTRATION RATE (GFR), RENAL PLASMA FLOW (RPF), AND FILTRATION FRACTION (FF)

As discussed in the preceding section, because inulin is filtered freely at the glomerulus but is neither reabsorbed nor secreted by the tubules, its clearance equals GFR, which is the rate (mL/min) of plasma filtered by the glomerulus from the blood into the tubular system. The clearance of para-aminohippurate (PAH) measures another aspect of renal function. As it happens, whatever PAH that is not filtered at the glomerulus is almost all secreted into the proximal tubule, thereby allowing PAH clearance to be a measure of renal plasma flow, which is the total quantity of plasma perfusing the glomerular capillary. The quantity of plasma filtered as a fraction of the total quantity perfusing the glomerular capillary is the filtration fraction (Smith, 1951). Because inulin clearance represents glomerular filtration rate and PAH clearance the quantity of plasma perfusing the glomerulus,

$$\text{Filtration fraction (FF)} = C_{IN}/C_{PAH} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-21)}$$

where C_{IN} is inulin clearance and C_{PAH} is PAH clearance.

The filtration fraction in man is normally about 0.2. As discussed earlier, low effective vascular volume as in heart failure decreases renal perfusion, but GFR decreases to a lesser degree because glomerular capillary pressure is maintained by increased efferent arteriolar tone. The result is an increase in filtration fraction. An increase in glomerular filtration for a given plasma flow (i.e., increased filtration fraction) increases the concentration of plasma proteins by concentrating the nonfilterable plasma constituents. This increases the oncotic pressure of peritubular capillary blood, resulting in increased fluid movement from the tubular interstitium

http://basicbook.net

to the capillary. This in turn helps to increase fluid reabsorption from the proximal tubule into the interstitial space. Similarly, increased tone of efferent arterioles, in an attempt to maintain a high glomerular capillary pressure, tends to reduce the peritubular capillary hydrostatic pressure. This also contributes to increased salt reabsorption by the proximal tubule.

The expanded effective vascular volume decreases the filtration fraction because the increase in renal plasma flow is greater than the increase in GFR. Changes in oncotic pressure and hydrostatic pressure in the peritubular capillary blood and their effects on proximal salt and water reabsorption are the opposite of those encountered in conditions of reduced effective vascular volume (Oh & Carroll, 1995).

FRACTIONAL EXCRETION (FE)

The fractional excretion is the quantity of a substance excreted in the urine expressed as a fraction of the filtered load of the same substance.

$F_x = P_x \cdot GFR$ (16), where F_x is the amount of a substance × filtered.

$F_x = P_x \cdot C_{creat}$ $(GFR = C_{creat}) = P_x \cdot (U_{creat} V / P_{creat})$

$E_x = V \cdot U_x$, where E_x is the amount excreted in the urine and U_x the urine concentration of substance x.

Hence,

$$FE = [(V \times U_x)]/[P_x \times (V \times U_{creat}/P_{creat})] \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-22)}$$

When V is canceled on both sides, the equation is simplified as:

$$FE = (U_x/P_x)/(U_{creat}/P_{creat})\,(20) \text{ or}$$
$$FE = (U_x/P_x) \times (P_{creat}/U_{creat}) \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-23)}$$

Thus, the measurement of fractional excretion can be obtained in a spot urine sample. When the substance excreted in the urine has a clearance less than the creatinine clearance, fractional excretion is less than 1. When FE is multiplied by 100, the result is %FE. The FE of sodium is often used to distinguish between acute tubular necrosis (acute kidney injury) and prerenal azotemia. An FE of sodium value less than 0.01 (<1%) suggests prerenal azotemia, while a value greater than 0.01 suggests acute tubular necrosis (acute kidney injury).

RENAL FAILURE INDEX (RFI)

The renal failure index is another formula that is used for the differential diagnosis of acute renal failure. It is expressed as $U_{Na+}/(U_{creat}/P_{creat}) \times Na^+$. The renal failure index is different from the fractional excretion of sodium by the exclusion of plasma Na^+ concentration in the formula. Hence, the value of the renal failure index will be 140 times the value of the fractional excretion of Na^+ when the serum Na^+ concentration is 140 mmol/L. When the fractional excretion of Na^+ is expressed as a percent value, the equation is as follows:

$$\%FE_{Na+} \times 1.4 = \text{renal failure index} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-24)}$$

A word of caution: Both the FE of Na^+ and the renal failure index are used only in the differential diagnosis of acute renal failure (acute kidney injury) with oliguria. For example, the usual fractional excretion of Na^+ on regular salt intake in a normal person is usually less than 0.01, but this does not indicate the presence of prerenal azotemia.

FRACTIONAL REABSORPTION (FR)

Fractional reabsorption (FR) is the quantity of a substance reabsorbed expressed as a fraction of the filtered load. It is estimated from the fractional excretion as follows:

$$FR = 1 - FE \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-25)}$$

FREE WATER CLEARANCE AND NEGATIVE FREE WATER CLEARANCE

Free water is the volume of water excreted in excess of the amount necessary to keep the urine isotonic to plasma. In other words, it is the volume of water that would have to be removed to make the urine isotonic. Free water clearance, like all other clearances, is expressed as volume per unit time, usually as mL/min. To determine the free water clearance, first determine the total amount of solute in the urine (mOsm), which is measured from urine osmolality and urine volume ($U_{osm} \times V$), and then determine the amount of water required to hold that quantity of solute at the same osmolality as plasma, which is called *osmolar clearance*. Free water clearance is the difference between osmolar clearance and urine volume (Carroll & Oh, 1989).

$$\text{Osmolar clearance } (C_{osm}) = (U_{osm} \times V)/P_{osm} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-26)}$$

$$\text{Free water clearance } (C_{H2O}) = V - C_{osm} \text{ or } C_{H2O}$$
$$= V - (Uosm \times V/Posm) \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-27)}$$

If the urine is more concentrated than the plasma, then in a sense free water has been removed from isotonic urine, and the term *negative free water clearance* is used. In other words, it is the amount of water that would have to be added to make the urine isotonic.

$$\text{Negative free water clearance } (Tc_{H2O}) = C_{osm} - V \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-28)}$$

The calculation of free water excretion is used to determine the effects of the excretion of water and solutes on plasma osmolality, which is mainly a function of the plasma Na concentration (see Equation 14-3). Thus an "electrolyte-free" water excretion can be computed as follows:

$$\text{Electrolyte clearance } (C_{Elec}) = (U_{Na+K} \times V)/P_{Na}$$
$$\text{Electrolyte free water clearance } (CE_{H2O})$$
$$= V - C_{Elec} \text{ or } C_{H2O} = V - (U_{Na+K} \times V/P_{Na})$$

In the presence of normal renal function, the kidneys usually concentrate the urine, and therefore Uosm is greater than Posm, resulting in a negative value for C_{H2O}. On the other hand, loop diuretics block reabsorption of sodium chloride in the loop of Henle, interfering with both concentration and dilution of urine, and thus the urine is approximately isotonic with little free water or negative free water.

BIOMARKERS OF ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY (AKI)

Although many clinicians use *acute kidney injury (AKI)* and *acute renal failure (ARF)* almost interchangeably, the former term is used mainly when the actual injury occurs to the kidney, either biochemically or histologically, whereas the latter term encompasses all causes of acute renal failure including prerenal azotemia and obstructive uropathy. This transition in terminology has called attention to a spectrum of disease much broader than previously emphasized. With the realization that kidney injury exists along a continuum, ranging from minor injury with no change in serum creatinine or urine output to end-stage renal disease requiring dialysis treatment (Honore et al, 2007). Furthermore, some authors use the term *acute kidney injury* to mean only acute tubular necrosis, which is a subset of causes of acute renal failure that include all causes of intrinsic renal disease resulting in acute renal dysfunction, including acute glomerulonephritis and acute interstitial diseases.

The Acute Kidney Injury Network (AKIN) was formed recently in an effort to improve care of patients who are in AKI or at risk for developing AKI (Bellomo et al, 2004; Mehta et al, 2007). This group defined AKI as "functional or structural abnormalities or markers of kidney damage including abnormalities in blood, urine, or tissue tests or imaging studies present for less than 3 months." AKI is associated with the retention of creatinine, urea, and other metabolic waste products that are normally excreted by the kidney. Although severe AKI may result in oliguria or even anuria, urine volume may be normal or even increased. Nevertheless, the committee defined AKI on the basis of increases in serum creatinine and changes in urine output. Initially, AKI was classified into five categories (Table 14-2), and subsequently it was simplified into three categories (Table 14-3).

Various biomarkers of AKI that are in clinical use include chemical components of serum or urine, imaging studies, and any other quantifiable parameter. The urine has yielded the most promising markers for the early detection of AKI (Ichimura et al, 2004). These urinary markers are either produced by the kidney due to kidney injury or filtered by the glomerulus but not well reabsorbed by the tubules because of the injury to the tubules. Increased renal excretion occurs in part because some of these chemicals are produced in increasing amounts because of the renal injury or conditions associated with renal injury. An advantage of these biomarkers over the conventional markers of acute kidney injury such as serum creatinine and serum urea nitrogen is that the levels often increase long before any change in serum creatinine, urea nitrogen, or urine output (Lassning et al, 2004; Dennen & Parikh, 2007; Han et al, 2008). Earlier detection of renal injury can prepare for better care of patients in anticipation of clinically

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 14-2
RIFLE Criteria for Acute Kidney Injury

	GFR and Serum Creatinine Changes	Urine Volume Changes
R (Risk)	Increase in SCreat >1.5× Decrease in GFR >25%	Urine volume <0.5 mL/kg/hr >6 hr
I (Injury)	Increase in SCreat >2× Decrease in GFR >50%	Urine volume <0.5 mL/kg/hr >12 hr
F (Failure)	Increase in SCreat >3× Decrease in GFR >75% SCreat >4 mg/dL	Urine volume <0.3 mL/kg/hr >24 hr Anuria >12 hr
L (Loss)	Complete loss of kidney function >4 weeks	
E (ESRD)	End-stage kidney disease >3 months	

SCreat, Serum creatinine.

TABLE 14-3
New Classification for Acute Kidney Injury (AKI) Criteria

Stage	Serum Creatinine Criteria	Urine Output Criteria
1	>0.3 mg/dL (26.4 µmol/L) or >150% to 200%	<0.5 mL/kg for >6 hr
2	>200% to 300%	<0.5 mL/kg for >12 hr
3	>300%, 4 mg/dL (354 µmol/L) or acute increase of >0.5 mg/dL	<0.3 mL/kg for >24 hr or anuria >12 hr

overt acute kidney injury or perhaps allow physicians to intervene by employing certain therapeutic measures and thereby prevent progression to overt acute kidney injury (Honore et al, 2007; Vaidya et al, 2008; Devarajan, 2008a).

Thus, biomarkers of acute kidney injury help diagnose acute kidney injury before changes in serum creatinine. The biomarkers also help to identify the primary location of injury (i.e., proximal tubule, distal tubule, interstitium, or vasculature) to distinguish among different subtypes of AKI (e.g., prerenal, intrinsic renal, or postrenal) and delineate etiologies of AKI, (e.g., ischemia, toxins, sepsis, or a combination) (Devarajan, 2008b). Urine is likely to contain biomarkers of renal origin, and therefore urinary biomarkers are most widely used. On the other hand, urine samples are more prone to protein degradation, and their concentrations may be affected by urine flow rate. Serum samples are readily available, and serum biomarkers more stable, but serum biomarkers may reflect the systemic response to a disease process rather than specific organ involvement.

Conventional urinary biomarkers such as casts and fractional excretion of sodium are shown to be insensitive and nonspecific for the early recognition of AKI. Other traditional urinary biomarkers such as filtered high molecular mass proteins and tubular proteins or enzymes suffer from the lack of specificity. The application of innovative technologies has uncovered several new candidates that are promising biomarkers of AKI. Several of these candidates have now progressed through the first three stages of the biomarker development process and have entered Phase IV of drug trials. There are more than 20 biomarkers of AKI that have been extensively studied, but we will discuss the four most promising biomarkers. These are neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL), IL-18, kidney injury molecule-1 (KIM-1), and liver-type fatty acid–binding protein (L-FABP). It seems that among these biomarkers, NGAL and L-FABP are likely the earliest biomarkers of AKI (Negishi et al, 2007), and KIM-1 and IL-18 are later biomarkers that improve specificity (Honore et al, 2007).

KIDNEY INJURY MOLECULE-1 (KIM-1)

Kidney injury molecule-1 (KIM-1) is a type I cell membrane glycoprotein containing an immunoglobulin-like domain and a mucin domain in its extracellular region. KIM-1 mRNA levels increase more than any other known gene after kidney injury. The ectodomain of KIM-1 is shed into the urine after proximal tubular injury. In preclinical and clinical studies using several different models of kidney injury, urinary KIM-1 serves as an earlier diagnostic indicator of kidney injury when compared with any of the conventional biomarkers (e.g., plasma creatinine, BUN) (Han et al, 2008; Vaidya et al, 2008).

NGAL (discussed later) appears to be the most sensitive at the earliest time points, but KIM-1 potentially adds specificity at later time points because expression of KIM-1 is limited to the kidney, and no systemic source of KIM-1 has been detected (Han et al, 2008; Ichimura et al, 2004). KIM-1 is induced in the kidney and upregulated in the urine by a large number of nephrotoxins, including cyclosporin, cisplatin, cadmium, gentamicin, mercury, and chromium (Orfeas et al, 2009).

NEUTROPHIL GELATINASE-ASSOCIATED LIPOCALIN (NGAL)

Human neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL) is a 25-kDa protein initially identified bound to gelatinase in granules of the neutrophil. Other names for NGAL are lipocalin 2 (LCN2) and human neutrophil lipocalin (HNL).

NGAL is synthesized during a narrow window of granulocyte maturation in the bone marrow, but also may be induced in epithelial cells in the setting of inflammation or malignancy. NGAL is upregulated and can be detected in the kidney and urine of mice 3 hours after cisplatin administration (Mishra et al, 2003, 2004, 2006; Ronco, 2007), and it has been proposed as an early biomarker for diagnosing AKI. A prospective study of pediatric and adult patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass for cardiac corrective surgery found urinary NGAL to be a powerful early marker of AKI, showing increased concentrations within 2 to 6 hours of the insult, preceding any increases in serum creatinine by 1 to 3 days (Bennet et al, 2008; Dent et al, 2007; Mishra et al, 2006; Devarajan, 2008b). However, serum NGAL levels are known to increase in the setting of a number of inflammatory and infective conditions, and more studies are needed to determine specificity of urinary NGAL for AKI in the setting of sepsis. NGAL has also been evaluated as a biomarker of AKI after contrast-induced nephropathy (Hirsch et al, 2007).

INTERLEUKIN-18 (IL-18)

Interleukin-18 (IL-18) is a cytokine, which is an interferon γ (IFN-γ)–inducing factor. IL-18 activity has been described in a number of inflammatory diseases across a broad range of tissues. Renal IL-18 mRNA levels have been shown to be significantly upregulated in the proximal tubule following ischemia-reperfusion injury, inflammatory/autoimmune nephritis, and cisplatin-induced nephrotoxicity. Urinary IL-18 levels are elevated in patients with AKI and delayed graft function (Parikh et al, 2006), compared with normal subjects and patients with prerenal azotemia, UTI, chronic renal insufficiency, and nephrotic syndrome. Increased urinary IL-18 was found to be an early marker of AKI, preceding changes in serum creatinine by 1 to 2 days, and was an independent predictor of death (Washburn et al, 2008).

FATTY ACID–BINDING PROTEIN (FABP)

Fatty acid–binding proteins (FABPs) are 14- to 15-kDa cytoplasmic proteins abundantly expressed in all tissues and particularly in the proximal convoluted and straight tubule of the kidney (Maatman et al, 1992; Negishi et al, 2009). Urinary L-FABP has been identified in preclinical and clinical models of acute kidney injury, and it has been found to be a potential biomarker in a number of pathologic conditions, including chronic kidney disease, diabetic nephropathy, IgA nephropathy, and contrast nephropathy. In a model of cisplatin-induced AKI, there was increased shedding of urinary L-FABP within the first 24 hours, whereas a rise in serum creatinine was not detectable until after 72 hours of cisplatin treatment. Urinary L-FABP levels were significantly increased before the increase in serum creatinine only in those patients who developed AKI post contrast dye. In a recent study involving 12 living-related kidney transplant patients, a significant direct correlation was found between urinary L-FABP level and both peritubular capillary blood flow and the ischemic time of the transplanted kidney. In AKI following cardiac surgery, increases in serum creatinine occurred 2 to 3 days postsurgery, whereas urine L-FABP levels increased at 4 hours after surgery (Yamamoto et al, 2007; Portilla et al, 2008).

Recently, the FDA has approved NephroCheck, which is a point-of-care assay for urinary biomarkers predicting the risk for AKI. The

http://basicbook.net

biomarkers used in this assay are insulin-like growth factor binding protein 7 (IGFBP7) and tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases (TIMP-2). These biomarkers were selected from among 340 putative biomarkers in a study of patients with AKI and were validated in two subsequent studies. TIMP-2 and IGFBP7 are expressed in renal tubular cells and act to induce a state of G_1 cell cycle arrest, which is thought to be a response to cell injury that is important for cell repair. In the most recent validation study performed in 420 critically ill patients in whom 17% reached the clinical endpoint of moderate to severe AKI within 12 hours, the test was 92% sensitive using a cutoff of 0.3 $(ng/mL)^2/1000$ and identified a group that was 7 times more likely to develop AKI than using clinical indicators alone (Bihorac et al, 2014).

The above discussion concerns the overall mechanisms by which the kidneys control extracellular volume and how measurements of specific chemicals, like BUN and creatinine, in serum and urine are used to measure renal function. The kidneys regulate extracellular volume by regulating the concentrations of ions that are retained in blood. Disorders of renal function result frequently in electrolyte imbalances, and disorders of electrolytes can often be at least partially corrected by normal functioning kidneys.

The following sections discuss three common disorders of electrolytes and acid-base balances, namely disorders of potassium; disorders of sodium, water, and ADH; and finally disorders of acid-base equilibrium.

DISORDERS OF POTASSIUM

Total body K^+ in hospitalized adults is about 43 mEq/kg of body weight, and only about 2% of this is found in the extracellular fluid. When potassium concentrations across the cell membrane are in electrochemical equilibrium, the transcellular gradient of K^+ is the main determinant of, and is also predicted by the membrane potential (Em) according to the Nernst equation (Veech et al, 1995; Goldman, 1943):

$$Em\ (mV) = -61 \log(\text{intracellular } K^+ / \text{extracellular } K^+) \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-29)}$$

The normal ratio of (intracellular K^+/extracellular K^+) for the skeletal muscle is about 35, and normal Em is about –90 mV. Hence, most cells are slightly less negatively charged than the concentration ratio would predict. As a result, the increased permeability of the cell membrane to potassium tends to cause hyperpolarization as potassium diffuses out of the cell. Conversely, inhibition of the K permeability causes depolarization. The membrane potential tends to increase with hypokalemia and to decrease with hyperkalemia. In hypokalemia, both intracellular and extracellular K^+ tend to decrease, but the extracellular concentration tends to decrease proportionately more than the intracellular concentration. Hence, the ratio of (intracellular K^+/extracellular K^+) tends to increase. In hyperkalemia, the membrane potential tends to decrease because an increase in the extracellular K^+ is proportionately greater than that in the intracellular K^+. However, in dogs with severe chronic hypokalemia, the resting membrane potential of the skeletal muscle is actually reduced rather than increased, indicating that the permeability of the membrane to potassium may change with severe hypokalemia (Bilbrey et al, 1973).

CONTROL OF TRANSCELLULAR FLUX OF POTASSIUM

Transmembrane electrical gradients cause diffusion of cellular K^+ out of cells and Na^+ into cells. Because the Na^+-K^+ pump, which reverses this process, is stimulated by insulin (Benziane & Chibalin, 2008) and catecholamines (through beta-2-adrenergic receptors) (Putcha & Allon, 2007), alterations in these hormone levels can affect K^+ transport and its serum levels (Meister et al, 1993; Feraille et al, 1999; Sweeney et al, 1998; Goguen et al, 1993; Putcha & Allon, 2007).

Cells can act as buffers. In acidosis, cells can take up H^+ ions in exchange for K^+ ions, and, in alkalosis, cells extrude H^+ ions in exchange for K^+ ions. These effects are summarized in Figure 14-2. Although there is no direct exchange of K^+ for H^+, a change in the extracellular pH can influence K^+ movement across the cell membrane through the Na^+-H^+exchanger. When the H^+ concentration in the ECF falls (alkaline pH), exchange of Na^+ for H^+ will result in a higher Na^+ concentration in the cell, which secondarily stimulates Na^+-K^+-ATPase, causing intracellular shift of K^+. The effect of acidosis and alkalosis on transcellular K^+ flux depends not only on the pH but also on the type of anion that accumulates. In general, metabolic acidosis causes greater K^+ efflux than respiratory acidosis. Metabolic acidosis due to inorganic acids (e.g., sulfuric acid and hydrochloric acid) causes greater K^+ efflux than that due to organic acids (e.g., lactic acid and keto acids). The reason is that organic anions

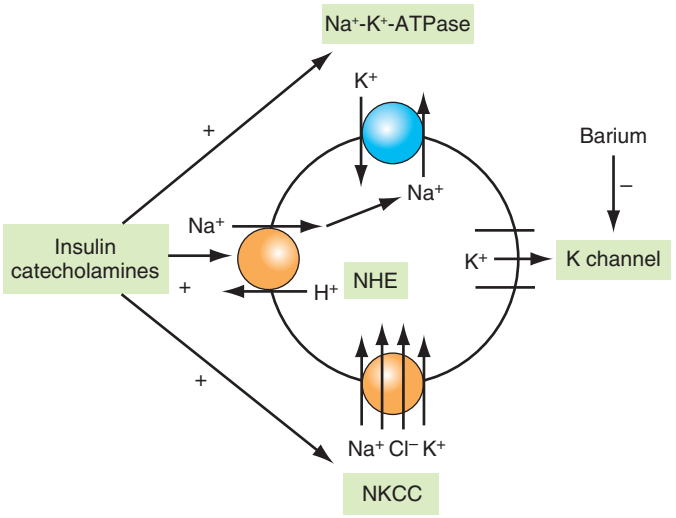


Figure 14-2 Control of transcellular movement of potassium. Potassium enters the cell through Na^+-K^+-ATPase (stimulated by beta-adrenergic agents or insulin) or through NKCC (Na-K-Cl cotransporter), which is stimulated by insulin and catecholamines. Stimulation of NHE by a high extracellular pH, catecholamines, or insulin increases intracellular sodium concentration, which in turn stimulates Na^+-K^+-ATPase and thereby increases intracellular movement of potassium. Barium inhibits the K channel, while high intracellular (IC) Ca can activate the K channel.

accumulate substantially in the cell as well as in the ECF, whereas inorganic anions, such as chloride and sulfate, accumulate mainly in the ECF. Acidosis causes efflux of K^+ from the cell because of shift of H^+ into the cell in exchange for K^+. A modifying factor appears to be the anion accumulation in the cells. In organic acidosis, much of H^+ entering the cell is balanced by organic anions, and therefore efflux of K^+ is prevented. In respiratory acidosis, the anion that accumulates in the cell to balance the incoming H^+ is bicarbonate (Perez et al, 1981). This explains why there is little K efflux from the cell in respiratory acidosis. Alkalosis tends to lower serum K^+ because, as noted earlier, H^+ leaves cells, in exchange for K^+, which enters the cells. As with acidosis, K^+ influx varies with the type of alkalosis. In respiratory alkalosis, with its lower pCO_2 and attendant lower intracellular bicarbonate by cellular buffering, K^+ influx is not as much as in metabolic alkalosis. When pH is kept normal with proportionately increased concentrations of bicarbonate and pCO_2, K^+ tends to move into the cells; accumulation of bicarbonate in the cell must be accompanied by Na^+ and K^+. Similarly, when pH is kept normal with proportionately low bicarbonate and low pCO_2, K^+ tends to move out of the cells.

Inhibition of K^+ diffusion across the cell would cause decreased plasma K^+ concentration, and barium, chloroquine, and hydrochloroquine are examples of K^+ channel inhibitors (Clemessy et al, 1995).

CONTROL OF RENAL EXCRETION OF POTASSIUM

About 90% of the daily K^+ intake (60 to 100 mmol) is excreted in the urine and 10% in the stool. Potassium filtered at the glomerulus is mostly (70% to 80%) reabsorbed by active and passive mechanisms in the proximal tubule. In the ascending limb of Henle's loop, K^+ is reabsorbed together with Na^+ and Cl^- by the sodium potassium chloride cotransporter (NKCC). Because the quantities of Na^+ and Cl^- are far greater than K^+, most of the reabsorbed K^+ diffuses back to the lumen in order to maintain the reabsorption of Na^+ and Cl^-, but there is still net reabsorption of K^+ in the thick ascending limb of Henley's loop. The concentration of K^+ at the beginning of the distal convoluted tubule is about 1 mmol/L with fluid volume of about 25 L. Thus, K^+ excreted in the urine is largely what is secreted into the cortical collecting duct by mechanisms shown in Figure 14-3. Na^+-K^+-ATPase located on the basolateral side of the cortical collecting duct pumps K^+ into the cell while it pumps Na^+ out of the cell. The luminal Na^+ enters the cell through the ENaC (epithelial sodium channel), providing a continuous supply of Na^+. The reabsorption of Na^+ through these steps is an absolute requirement of secretion of potassium in the cortical collecting duct. Aldosterone is the main regulator of the expression of ENaC on the luminal membrane through its genomic effect on the activity of serum and glucocorticoid-regulated kinase 1 (SGK-1) (Verrey et al, 2008; Fakitsas et al, 2007; Zhang et al, 2007), and therefore the main determinant of renal excretion of potassium. The negative luminal potential that develops as a result of sodium reabsorption through ENaC causes

http://basicbook.net

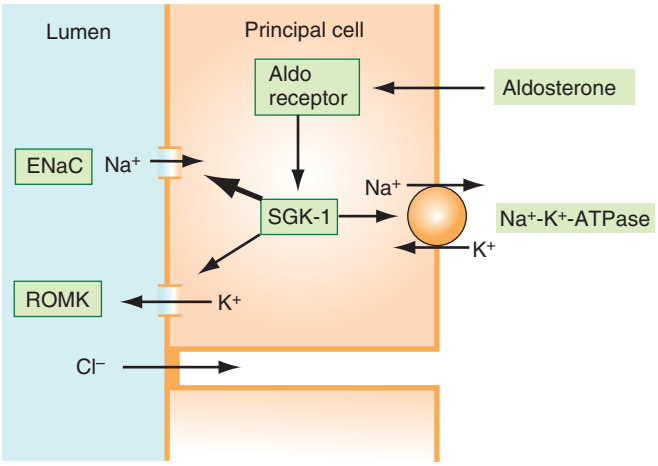


Figure 14-3 Control of potassium secretion at the cortical collecting duct. Sodium enters from the lumen into the cell through ENaC (epithelial Na channel) and is transported out of the cell through Na^+-K^+-ATPase on the basolateral membrane, which creates the negative luminal potential in relation to the peritubular fluid. The negative luminal potential causes paracellular reabsorption of chloride, and allows secretion of potassium into the lumen through the ROMK (Renal Outer Medullary K channel), a potassium channel. Binding of aldosterone to its receptor results in upregulation of SGK1 (serum and glucocorticoid regulated kinase 1), which, in turn, results in increased expression of ENaC as well as ROMK and Na^+-K^+-ATPase. All three effects help to increase potassium secretion.

reabsorption of Cl^- through the paracellular channels. Because Na^+ reabsorption is not followed one to one by $C1^-$ reabsorption, the charge imbalance occurs and is corrected by secretion of K^+ through a specialized K^+ channel, the ROMK (renal outer medullar K channel) (Giebisch, 2002; Yue et al, 2009; Wang & Giebisch, 2009). Thus, aldosterone increases K^+ secretion by increasing passive entry of Na^+ from the lumen to the cell through increased expression of ENaC on the luminal membrane. The resulting increase in cellular concentration of sodium indirectly stimulates Na^+-K^+-ATPase, but aldosterone also directly stimulates Na^+-K^+-ATPase and ROMK activities (Yue et al, 2009). The peritubular K^+ concentration and pH also influence K^+ secretion through their effects on Na^+-K^+-ATPase activity. High serum K^+ concentration and alkaline pH stimulate the enzyme activity, and low serum K^+ and acidic pH inhibit the activity.

When Na^+ is accompanied by anions that are less permeable than $C1^-$, luminal negativity is increased, resulting in enhanced K^+ secretion. Examples of such anions include sulfate, bicarbonate, and anionic antibiotics such as penicillin and carbenecillin. Bicarbonate in the tubular fluid enhances K^+ secretion not only through its effect as a poorly reabsorbable anion but also by enhancing ROMK activity. An increase in renal K^+ excretion in patients who vomit and develop metabolic alkalosis may be explained by this mechanism. ADH also increases the luminal K^+ channel activity. K^+ secretion is increased by rapid urine flow by maintaining a low luminal K^+ concentration. Renal K^+ wasting during osmotic diuresis could be explained by this mechanism. The more Na^+ presented to the distal nephron, the more can be absorbed and more K^+ secreted "in exchange." The increased Na^+ delivery to the collecting duct also increases renal K^+ excretion by its effect on urine flow (Giebisch, 1998; Halperin & Kamel, 1998; Wang & Giebisch, 2009). A higher urine flow allows greater secretion of potassium into the luminal fluid while reducing back-diffusion of potassium into the tubular cells because the luminal concentration would be lower for a given amount of potassium secreted (Oh & Oh, 2003).

PLASMA RENIN ACTIVITY (PRA), PLASMA ALDOSTERONE CONCENTRATION (PA), AND ABNORMALITIES IN POTASSIUM METABOLISM

Because abnormalities in PRA and PA are frequently either responsible for or caused by abnormalities in K^+ metabolism, it is important to understand their relationships (Bock et al, 1992; Hollenberg, 2000; Laragh, 1995; Hall, 1991). The general principles are: 1) expansion of effective arterial volume caused by primary increase in aldosterone (primary aldosteronism) or by other mineralocorticoids will cause suppression of PRA. When mineralocorticoids other than aldosterone are present in excess, they induce retention of salt and water, and the resulting volume expansion leads to suppression of both PRA and PA; 2) a primary increase in PRA will always lead to an increase in PA (secondary aldosteronism). On the other hand, a primary defect in aldosterone secretion will cause volume depletion and secondarily increase PRA. PRA may be high because of the following:

- Volume depletion secondary to renal or extrarenal salt loss
- Abnormality in renin secretion, for example, reninoma (hemangiopericytoma of afferent arteriole), malignant hypertension, and renal artery stenosis
- Increased renin substrate production (e.g., oral contraceptives)

Elevation in serum K^+ can directly stimulate the adrenal cortex to release aldosterone. When renin is deficient primarily, aldosterone is always low (e.g., hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism).

BOX 14-2

Causes of Hypokalemia

Intracellular Shift

Alkalosis
Hypokalemic periodic paralysis
Beta-2-adrenergic agonists
Barium poisoning
Chloroquine and hydroxychloroquine poisoning
Insulin
Administration of carbohydrates
Nutritional recovery state

Poor Intake

Gastrointestinal Loss

Vomiting
Diarrhea
Intestinal drainage
Laxative abuse

Excessive Renal Loss

Primary aldosteronism (adrenal adenoma or hyperplasia); PRA is suppressed
Secondary aldosteronism (increase in aldosterone is secondary to increase in renin)
- Malignant hypertension
- Renal artery stenosis
- Reninoma
- Diuretics
- Bartter's syndrome
- Gitelman's syndrome

Excess mineralocorticoids other than aldosterone (e.g., Cushing's syndrome, ACTH-producing tumor, licorice, 11-deoxycorticosterone–producing adrenal adenoma)
Chronic metabolic acidosis
Delivery of poorly reabsorbed anions to the distal tubule (e.g., bicarbonate, ketone anions, carbenecillin)
Miscellaneous causes: magnesium deficiency, acute leukemia, Liddle's syndrome

CAUSES AND PATHOGENESIS OF HYPOKALEMIA

Hypokalemia occurs by one of three main mechanisms: intracellular shift, reduced intake, and increased loss (Box 14-2). Because the intracellular K^+ concentration greatly exceeds the extracellular concentration, K^+ shift into the cell can cause severe hypokalemia with little change in its intracellular concentration (Clemessy et al, 1995; Matsumura et al, 2000; Rakhmanina et al, 1998; Jordan et al, 1999; Ogawa & Kamikubo, 1999; Cannon, 2002; Jurkat-Rott et al, 2000; Bradberry and Vaile, 1995; Steen, 1981). Alkalosis, insulin, and beta-2- agonists can cause hypokalemia by stimulating Na^+-K^+-ATPase activity (Matsumura et al, 2000; Putcha & Allon, 2007). Defective activity of dihydropyridine-responsive Ca^{++} channels and potassium channels has been documented in some patients (Jurkat-Rott et al, 2000; Bradberry & Vale, 1995; Fontaine, 2008). A defect in the sodium channel is also known to cause hypokalemic periodic paralysis, but a defect in the sodium channel sometimes causes hyperkalemic or normokalemic paralysis (Fontaine, 2008). In barium poisoning, K^+ accumulates in the cell and hypokalemia develops because of the inhibition of the K^+ channel by barium, resulting in inhibition of K^+ efflux from the cell (Bradberry & Vale, 1995) in the face of continuous cellular uptake of K^+ through the action of Na^+-K^+-ATPase. Poisoning with chloroquine or hydrochloroquine produces hypokalemia by the same mechanism as barium (Fung et al, 2007; Isbister et al, 2002). Both drugs are cationic, like

http://basicbook.net

barium, and can inhibit the K channel (Clemessy et al, 1995). K^+ accumulates in the cell along with anions as the cell mass increases during nutritional recovery, because K^+ is the main intracellular cation.

Poor intake of K^+ by itself is rarely a cause of hypokalemia, because it is usually accompanied by poor caloric intake, which causes catabolism and release of K^+ from the tissues (Steen, 1981). Vomiting and diarrhea are common causes of hypokalemia (Steen, 1981). Diarrhea causes direct K^+ loss in the stool, but in vomiting, hypokalemia is mainly the result of K^+ loss in the urine rather than in the vomitus, since vomiting causes metabolic alkalosis, and the subsequent renal excretion of bicarbonate leads to renal K^+ wasting.

Renal loss of K^+ is by far the most common cause of hypokalemia. With rare exceptions, hypokalemia due to increased renal wasting of potassium can be attributed to an increased activity of aldosterone or other mineralocorticoids. Increased aldosterone could be a primary disorder as in primary hyperaldosteronism or due to increased renin secretion as in secondary hyperaldosteronism. Even with increased aldosterone, renal K^+ wasting occurs only if it is accompanied by adequate distal delivery of Na^+ (Torpy et al, 1998; Stowasser et al, 1995; Abdelhamid et al, 1995; Litchfield et al, 1997a, 1997b; Vargas-Poussou et al, 2002; Finer et al, 2003; Kunchaparty et al, 1999; Seyberth et al, 1985; Krozowski et al, 1999; Heilmann et al, 1999). In primary aldosteronism, distal delivery of Na^+ is increased because increased NaCl reabsorption in the cortical collecting duct by the action of aldosterone inhibits salt reabsorption in the proximal tubule because of the volume expansion. In secondary aldosteronism, hypokalemia occurs only in conditions that are accompanied by increased distal Na^+ delivery. Examples of secondary hyperaldosteronism that result in hypokalemia include renal artery stenosis, diuretic therapy, and malignant hypertension, and congenital defects in renal salt transport such as Bartter's syndrome and Gitelman's syndrome. It must be noted that, in the absence of extrarenal salt loss, renal salt excretion ultimately equals salt intake even in conditions of increased aldosterone or aldosterone deficiency, since prolonged imbalance between the intake and output is impossible; without eventual balance, an individual could not survive volume excess or volume depletion. However, when salt reabsorption is increased at the mineralocorticoid active site (i.e., the cortical collecting duct), the amount of salt delivered to this site must be increased when the final salt output eventually equals the intake; when balance is achieved, an increased amount is delivered to the site and an increased amount is reabsorbed, so that the normal amount equaling the intake is excreted; ultimate balance is possible only when the amount entering the body equals the amount leaving the body. This is the mechanism by which salt delivery to the aldosterone site is increased in primary hyperaldosteronism as well as in all cases of secondary hyperaldosteronism that are associated with hypokalemia (Oh & Oh, 2003).

Bartter's syndrome is caused by defective NaCl reabsorption in the thick ascending limb of Henley's loop (Sakakida & Araki, 2003; Finer et al, 2003; Kunchaparty et al, 1999; Seyberth et al, 1985; Schultheis et al, 1998), whereas in Gitelman's syndrome the defect in NaCl reabsorption is in the distal convoluted tubule (Schultheis et al, 1998). Reabsorption of NaCl in the thick ascending limb is mediated by NKCC, which reabsorbs one Na^+ and one K^+ accompanied by two Cl^-. The continuous reabsorption of these electrolytes requires constant leak-back of K^+ into the lumen through ROMK channels, while Na^+ entering the cell is transported out of the cell by Na^+-K^+-ATPase, and Cl^- entering the cell diffuses out of the cell through the chloride channel, CLCKB. The process stops when any one or more of these steps are impaired, and thus Bartter's syndrome may be due to a defect in NKCC, a defect in ROMK, or a defect in CLCKB (Kurtz, 1998).

Defective Na^+ reabsorption proximal to the aldosterone effective site in these conditions results in increased delivery of Na^+ to the cortical collecting duct and hence in hypokalemia. Heart failure does not lead to hypokalemia despite secondary hyperaldosteronism unless distal delivery of Na^+ is increased by diuretic therapy.

Substances that are not aldosterone but have mineralocorticoid activity include corticosterone, deoxycorticosterone (DOC), and synthetic mineralocorticoid such as 9-α-fludrocortisone (Florinef). With licorice intake, mineralocorticoid activity is increased because cortisol, which is normally a potent mineralocorticoid but has a negligible concentration in the cortical collecting duct cells owing to the rapid breakdown by the enzyme 11-β-hydroxy steroid dehydrogenase, maintains a high intracellular concentration as the glycyrrhizic acid in licorice inhibits the enzyme (Krozowski et al, 1999; Heilmann et al, 1999).

A rare cause of renal potassium wasting that is not accompanied by increased mineralocorticoid activity is Liddle's syndrome. Liddle's syndrome is a congenital disorder that is characterized by increased ENaC activity in the collecting duct in the absence of increased aldosterone, resulting in increased sodium reabsorption and enhanced potassium secretion; aldosterone secretion is reduced because salt retention due to the increased ENaC activity leads to physiologic suppression of renin secretion (Warnock, 2001). In chronic metabolic acidosis, hypokalemia develops probably because reduced proximal reabsorption of NaCl allows increased delivery of NaCl to the distal nephron. Direct stimulation of aldosterone secretion by metabolic acidosis (Györke et al, 1991) appears to be an additional mechanism that contributes to hypokalemia.

Stimulation of aldosterone secretion by the acidic pH is the pH-sensitive K^+ channel, which is inhibited by the low intracellular pH. Inhibition of the K^+ channel causes membrane depolarization, which, in turn, activates voltage-dependent Ca^{++} channels. Activation of Ca^{++} channels is ultimately responsible for the increased aldosterone secretion (Choi et al, 2011).

One of the most exciting new developments in the area of aldosterone pathophysiology is the mechanism of development of adrenal aldosterone-producing adenomas. Two gene mutations in the G-protein–coupled receptor–associated potassium channel protein, called *KCNJ5*, have been identified in a cohort of 8 of 22 patients with adrenal adenomas. Both of these result in amino acid substitutions in KCNJ5 that cause the loss of selectivity of the KCNJ5 for potassium (i.e., loss-of-function mutations). This results in an influx of sodium into these cells, causing membrane depolarization and activation of the voltage-dependent calcium channel. The resulting calcium ion influx is responsible for the stimulation of aldosterone secretion and, concurrently, induces cell proliferation (Choi et al, 2011). These findings have been confirmed in a number of studies worldwide. Importantly, angiotensin II normally stimulates aldosterone secretion by binding to the same receptor, which results in inhibition of the K channel (Scholl & Lifton, 2013). Subsequently, many reports of other mutations that cause aldosterone-producing adrenal adenomas are appearing, and the final pathway appears to be the membrane depolarization resulting in activation of Ca^{++} channels (Scholl & Lifton, 2013).

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF HYPOKALEMIA

The first step in the differential diagnosis is to measure urinary excretion of K^+. If urinary K^+ excretion is low (<20 mmol/day or <0.01 mmol/mg of creatinine), the cause is low intake, extrarenal loss of K^+, or intracellular shift. Superacute development of hypokalemia usually suggests intracellular shift as the mechanism. The most common cause of extrarenal loss is diarrhea, which can be suspected by history and a low or negative urine anion gap (urine $Na^+ + K^+ -$ urine Cl^-); the normal urine anion gap is about 40 mmol/24 hours. Intracellular shift is suggested by the history and clinical findings. If urinary excretion is normal or increased (urine K^+ >30 mmol/day or 0.02 mmol/mg of creatinine), the cause is renal loss. Once a real cause is suspected, the next step should be the measurement of PRA and plasma aldosterone.

High PRA and high aldosterone suggest secondary hyperaldosteronism, which include diuretic therapy, renal artery stenosis, malignant hypertension, renin-producing tumors, and hereditary defects in renal salt transport (Bartter's syndrome and Gitelman's syndrome). Blood pressure is normal in subjects with Bartter's syndrome or Gitelman's syndrome, and in a normotensive person on diuretic therapy. Blood pressure would be high in all other conditions and in a hypertensive subject on diuretic therapy. Low PRA and high plasma aldosterone suggest primary hyperaldosteronism, which is caused by adrenal adenoma or bilateral hyperplasia. If PRA and plasma aldosterone are low, the likely conditions include Liddle's syndrome, apparent mineralocorticoid excess states (both hereditary and drug-induced), 11-hydroxylase deficiency, and 17-hydroxylase deficiency. Reduction in renal K^+ excretion will be achieved with spironolactone in all these conditions except for Liddle's syndrome, which will respond to ENaC blockers such as triamterene and amiloride (Oh & Oh, 2003).

CAUSES AND PATHOGENESIS OF HYPERKALEMIA

Hyperkalemia may be caused by one of three mechanisms: 1) a shift of potassium from the cells to the extracellular fluid (Wasserman et al, 1997; Perazella & Biswas, 1999; McIvor et al, 1985; McIvor, 1987; Emser, 1982); 2) increased potassium intake; and 3) reduced renal potassium excretion (see Table 14-3). Hyperkalemic familial periodic paralysis, administration of succinylcholine in paralyzed patients (Fontaine, 2008; Cooperman, 1970; Gronert & They, 1975; Larach et al, 1997), administration of cationic amino acids such as arginine and lysine, epsilon-aminocaproic acid (this chemical is neutral in its charge, but becomes a cationic amino acid in the cell after attachment of an amine group), rhabdomyolysis

http://basicbook.net

or hemolysis, and acute acidosis all cause hyperkalemia by extracellular potassium shift. Rhabdomyolysis and hemolysis cause hyperkalemia only when they are accompanied by renal failure. Although hyperkalemia is not as predictable with organic acidosis as with inorganic acidosis in experimental situations, hyperkalemia is common in diabetic ketoacidosis and phenformin-induced lactic acidosis. The more frequent occurrence of hyperkalemia in clinical organic acidosis may be explained by the longer duration of acidosis and the presence of other factors such as dehydration and renal failure and insulin deficiency in diabetic ketoacidosis (Perez et al, 1981).

Hyperkalemia occurs quite regularly during vigorous muscular exercise, and the likely mechanism is extracellular shift of potassium due to depolarization of the cell membrane. A transient rise in intracellular pH at the start of exercise as conversion of creatine phosphate to creatine and phosphate has been suggested as the mechanism of hyperkalemia (Wasserman et al, 1997), but this is an unlikely mechanism since conversion of creatine phosphate to creatine is triggered by a falling pH, not a rise in pH (Sahlin et al, 1975).

Hyperkalemia can also occur in severe digitalis intoxication by extracellular shift of potassium as digitalis inhibits the Na^+-K^+-ATPase pump. Some drugs have digitalis-like activity, and intoxication with these drugs such as bufogenins, bufadiennolides, or bufotoxins are contained in toad skin bufo marinus. The same chemical is contained in Chinese medicine as chansu, and hyperkalemia due to chansu has been reported (Gowda et al, 2003; Cheng et al, 2006; Hyun et al, 2007).

Fluoride poisoning is mainly known as a cause of severe hypocalcemia, but it can also cause hyperkalemia by the extracellular shift of potassium caused by activation of K^+ channels. As fluoride causes an intracellular shift of Ca^{++} in the cell causing hypocalcemia, the high intracellular Ca^{++} stimulates Ca^{++}-activated K^+ channels resulting in hyperkalemia (Hawkins, 2002; Su et al, 2003).

The kidney's ability to excrete potassium is so great that hyperkalemia rarely occurs solely on the basis of increased intake of potassium. Thus, hyperkalemia is almost always due to impaired renal excretion. There are three major mechanisms of diminished renal potassium excretion: reduced aldosterone or aldosterone responsiveness, renal failure, and reduced distal delivery of sodium. Aldosterone deficiency may be part of a generalized deficiency of adrenal hormones (e.g., Addison's disease), or it may represent a selective process (e.g., hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism). Hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism is the most common cause of all aldosterone deficiency states, and by far the commonest cause of chronic hyperkalemia among nondialysis patients (Oh et al, 1974; Phelps et al, 1980b). Selective hypoaldosteronism can also occur with heparin therapy, which inhibits steroid production in the zona glomerulosa (Phelps, 1980b). In patients with reduced aldosterone secretion, any agent that limits the supply of renin or angiotensin II may provoke hyperkalemia—for example, ACE (angiotensin-converting enzyme) inhibitors, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents, and beta blockers. The latter compound interferes with potassium transport into cells. Renal tubular unresponsiveness to aldosterone (pseudohypoaldosteronism) may be congenital, but it is more often an acquired defect. This defect may involve only potassium secretion (pseudohypoaldosteronism type II) or sodium reabsorption as well as potassium secretion (pseudohypoaldosteronism type I) (Wilson et al, 2001, 2003; Sebastian et al, 1981; Brautbar et al, 1978). Most cases of so-called "salt-losing nephritis" represent the latter defect (Uribarri et al, 1983). Severe volume depletion may cause hyperkalemia despite secondary hyperaldosteronism because volume depletion causes a marked reduction in delivery of sodium to the cortical collecting duct.

Pseudohyperkalemia is defined as an increase in potassium concentration only in the local blood vessel or in vitro, and has no physiologic consequences (Stewart & Ellory, 1985; Stewart et al, 1979; Kim et al, 1990; Zaltzman & Bezwoda, 1982; Bellevue & Dosik, 1975; Iolascon et al, 1999; Hayward et al, 1999; Delaunay et al, 1999; Don et al, 1990). Prolonged use of a tourniquet with fist exercises can increase the serum potassium level by as much as 1 mmol/L. Thrombocytosis and severe leukocytosis (Bellevue & Dosik, 1975) cause pseudohyperkalemia through potassium release from the platelets and white blood cells, respectively, during blood clotting (Box 14-3).

In vitro hemolysis is by far the most common cause of pseudohyperkalemia, and the destruction of red blood cells occurs when blood is injected into a vacuum tube through a narrow needle. When hemolysis occurs, the common practice is to repeat the measurement, hoping hemolysis would not recur. An easier way is to measure free hemoglobin concentration in the serum if the sample is saved, and to calculate the likely addition of potassium to serum by red blood cell lysis on the basis that the ratio of released K^+ is proportionate to released hemoglobin (Jay & Provasck, 1993). It has been shown, however, that there are wide individual variations in the ratio between released K^+ and hemoglobin ranging from 2.1 mEq/g of hemoglobin to 5 mEq/g (Mansou et al, 2009). The difference exists probably because the quantities of K^+ and hemoglobin released from partially lysed red blood cells differ.

BOX 14-3

Causes of Hyperkalemia

Pseudohyperkalemia

Thrombocytosis, severe leukocytosis, use of tourniquet with fist exercise, in vitro hemolysis

True Hyperkalemia

Due to extracellular shift:

- Acute acidosis (more with inorganic acidosis)
- Catabolic states
- Periodic paralysis
- Succinylcholine (especially in those with muscular dystrophy)
- Cationic amino acids (epsilon amino caproic acid)
- Vigorous exercise
- Digitalis intoxication, digitalis-like chemicals (herb chansu, bufotoxins)
- Fluoride poisoning

Due to excessive ingestion: rare if renal excretion of K^+ is normal.

Decreased renal excretion:

- Hypoaldosteronism: Addison's disease; selective hypoaldosteronism (hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism, heparin, congenital adrenal enzyme deficiencies, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors)
- Tubular unresponsiveness to aldosterone (pseudohypoaldosteronism types I and II): congenital and acquired salt-losing nephropathy
- Potassium-sparing diuretics: spironolactone, amiloride, triamterene
- Antibiotics with ENaC-blocking effects: pentamidine, trimethoprim
- Antirejection medications: cyclosporine, tacrolimus
- Severe dehydration

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF HYPERKALEMIA

The first step in the differential diagnosis of hyperkalemia should be to rule out pseudohyperkalemia (Stewart et al, 1979; Stewart & Ellory, 1985). ECG abnormalities of hyperkalemia are absent in pseudohyperkalemia, but the absence of ECG changes does not rule out true hyperkalemia because ECG changes are often absent with severe hyperkalemia when the condition is chronic. Pseudohyperkalemia should be suspected when conditions known to cause pseudohyperkalemia, such as thrombocytosis or in vitro hemolysis (pink serum) exist (Bellevue & Dosik, 1975). In pseudohyperkalemia due to thrombocytosis, both serum and plasma K^+ should be obtained simultaneously, and the higher serum K, which is always the case, is due to the release of K from platelets during clotting. Once pseudohyperkalemia is ruled out, the next step is to differentiate among the three major causes of hyperkalemia: increased K^+ intake, shift of K^+ from the cell, and impaired renal excretion. Measurement of a 24-hour urine K^+ will distinguish increased intake from the other two causes. Although hyperkalemia due to a shift of K^+ from the cell would result in an increased urinary excretion of K^+, renal excretion of K^+ is often not increased because conditions that impair renal excretion of K^+ often coexist. A careful dietary history is necessary to rule out hyperkalemia due to increased intake, unless the patient is deliberately trying to deceive the physician.

An important principle is that extracellular shift is never a cause of chronic hyperkalemia, since the amount of potassium that can be released from the cell is always very limited. Once net movement of potassium from the cell stops, the plasma K^+ concentration will depend on the factors that affect renal K^+ excretion. This explains why in types I and II RTA hypokalemia is a common finding despite systemic acidemia.

Chronic hyperkalemia is almost always due to impaired renal excretion, and a 24-hour urine K^+ measurement is rarely needed to prove impaired renal excretion of K^+ as the cause of hyperkalemia. Among the renal causes of hyperkalemia, acute renal failure is the most common cause of acute hyperkalemia, and this is obvious from serum creatinine and BUN. For differential diagnosis of chronic hyperkalemia of renal causes, the first step is to measure plasma renin activity, plasma aldosterone, and urinary excretion of Na^+ and K^+. A very low urinary Na^+ and a low K^+ in the absence of polyuria suggest that the aldosterone effect is normal; in this setting, K^+ excretion is impaired because of the reduced availability of Na^+ and a marked reduction in collecting duct urine flow. Markedly increased proximal reabsorption of Na^+ due to low effective vascular volume, such as in

http://basicbook.net

severe congestive heart failure, can cause hyperkalemia by such a mechanism. If urinary Na^+ is adequate (>20 mmol/L), plasma renin activity and aldosterone should be measured.

Low PRA and low aldosterone suggest hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism, whereas high PRA and low aldosterone suggest a primary defect in aldosterone secretion such as Addison's disease, heparin therapy (Phelps et al, 1980a), and aldosterone biosynthetic defect. When PRA and aldosterone are both increased, likely culprits are pseudohypoaldosteronism, very low Na^+ delivery to the cortical collecting duct, and drugs that impair the ENaC function or the aldosterone action such as potassium-sparing diuretics (e.g., amiloride, triamterene, spironolactone, and certain antibiotics, such as trimethoprim and pentamidine) (Oh & Oh, 2003). The presence of low PRA and high aldosterone in the setting of hyperkalemia is not a very likely combination, but has been observed occasionally in a patient with a genetic defect of an enzyme WNK kinase, called *pseudohypodosalteronism type II* (also known as *Gordon's syndrome*). The defect in WNK kinase causes increased NaCl transport in the distal convoluted tubule resulting in hypertension and also a defect in potassium secretion (Goldbang et al, 2005; Yang et al, 2007; San-Cristobal et al, 2008). The condition is a mirror image of Gitelman's syndrome and is characterized by low PRA (due to volume expansion caused by hyperabsorption of NaCl) and low aldosterone resulting in hyperkalemia. A variant of the condition is characterized by a separate severe defect in K^+ secretion, resulting in hyperkalemia despite normal or sometimes high aldosterone. In such a patient, a high plasma aldosterone occurs in response to hyperkalemia, but renin is low because of volume expansion. By far, the commonest cause of chronic hyperkalemia due to impaired renal excretion of potassium is hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism, which is caused by chronic renal insufficiency of primarily tubulo-interstitial diseases (Phelps, 1980b). The suggested mechanism is primary renal salt retention caused by the renal disease, which leads to physiologic suppression of renin secretion and hence of aldosterone, ultimately resulting in hyperkalemia often accompanied by hypertension (Oh et al, 1974).

DISORDERS OF WATER, SODIUM, AND ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE (ADH) METABOLISM

REGULATION OF THIRST AND ADH RELEASE

A rise in effective osmolality shrinks the hypothalamic osmoreceptor cells, which then stimulate the thirst center in the cerebral cortex and stimulate antidiuretic hormone (ADH) production in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei. Conversely, a decline in effective osmolality causes swelling of the osmoreceptor cells, resulting in inhibition of ADH production. ADH produced in the hypothalamus is carried through long axons and is secreted from the posterior pituitary gland (McKinley et al, 1998; Ibata et al, 1999). Stimulation and inhibition of osmoreceptor cells affect both production by the hypothalamus and secretion of ADH by the pituitary gland.

Regulation of ADH secretion by a change in effective osmolality is extremely sensitive. It was thought that ADH secretion in response to a change in effective osmolality was so sensitive that a change of only 2% to 3% stimulates ADH secretion sufficiently to result in a maximally concentrated urine, and decline in plasma osmolality of only 2% to 3% produces maximally dilute urine (<100 mOsm/L) (Bourque & Oliet, 1997; Olsson, 1983). However, a more recent study has shown that changes in serum sodium concentration by 2% to 3% in venous blood is accompanied by a much greater change in arterial serum sodium concentrations when oral intake of water is rapid. For example, drinking 20 mL/kg of water in 15 minutes reduced arterial serum sodium by about 8 mmol/L, and resulted in rapid water diuresis, but the same amount given by slow sipping did not produce water diuresis. With rapid intake of water, venous sodium concentration was about 4 mmol/L higher than that of venous blood. The osmoreceptors, of course, would respond to the arterial rather than the venous sodium concentration (Shafiee et al, 2005).

ADH release is also regulated by nonosmotic factors. Low effective vascular volume provokes thirst and ADH release, and high effective vascular volume has the reverse effect (Wells, 1998; Aguilera & Rabadan-Diehl, 2000; Nielsen et al, 2002; Schrier et al, 1979). These effects are mediated through baroreceptors as well as some humoral factors. Alpha catecholamines suppress and beta catecholamines enhance ADH output. Prostaglandins inhibit the effect of ADH on the kidney. Angiotensin II stimulates thirst and ADH release. Lack of glucocorticoid enhances ADH action on the kidney and also increases ADH release. ADH in the pituitary gland acts like corticotropin-releasing hormone and stimulates ACTH production. Cortisol in turn inhibits the release of ADH (Bahr et al, 2006). Physical and emotional stress (e.g., major surgery, increased ADH output), possibly in part through emetic stimuli, are common complications of major surgery and are attributed to the effects of anesthesia and surgical trauma. Many drugs affect ADH release or its action; ethanol inhibits the output of ADH. Lithium and demeclocycline inhibit the antidiuretic effect of ADH on the kidney. Chlorpropamide increases the action of ADH on the kidney. Some drugs may operate through the emetic stimulus, which is one of the most potent physiologic stimuli to ADH release. The urine may become osmotically concentrated in the absence of ADH, if effective vascular volume is very low. The combination of reduced GFR and enhanced proximal reabsorption of filtrate reduces urine flow to the collecting duct so greatly that even the limited permeability of the membrane permits withdrawal of sufficient amounts of water to concentrate urine.

There are three classes of ADH receptors: V1 receptors cause a rise in vasomotor tone and have certain metabolic effects; V2 receptors are associated with antidiuresis; and V3 receptors cause stimulation of ACTH secretion in the anterior pituitary gland (Ma et al, 1999; Mouri et al, 1993; Bahr et al, 2006). The antidiuretic effect of ADH is mediated by promoting the expression of aquaporin 2 on the luminal membrane of the collecting duct to make the tubule permeable to water, and by stimulating reabsorption of salt on the outer medullary thick ascending limb of Henle's loop (Knepper & Inoue 1997). Vasopressinase, which normally breaks down ADH, may be increased in pregnancy and may cause polyuria (Molitch, 1998). DDAVP, a synthetic analogue of arginine vasopressin, which resists vasopressinase, is useful in polyuria of pregnancy.

URINE CONCENTRATION AND DILUTION

About 180 L of water are filtered daily; 150 L are reabsorbed in the proximal tubule and about 5 L in the descending limb of Henle of cortical nephrons. About 25 L of dilute urine are delivered to the ascending limb of Henle. Since the tubules from this point to the beginning of cortical collecting duct is water impermeable, the volume remains unchanged at 25 liters, but the osmolality decreases progressively to about 60 to 80 mOsm/L. Because of the conditional expression of aquaporin 2 on the luminal membrane of collecting ducts, which depends on the action of ADH, no water reabsorption occurs in the cortical and outer medullary collecting ducts when ADH is absent (Fig. 14-4). However, a small amount of water (about 3 to 5 L during water diuresis) is reabsorbed in the terminal

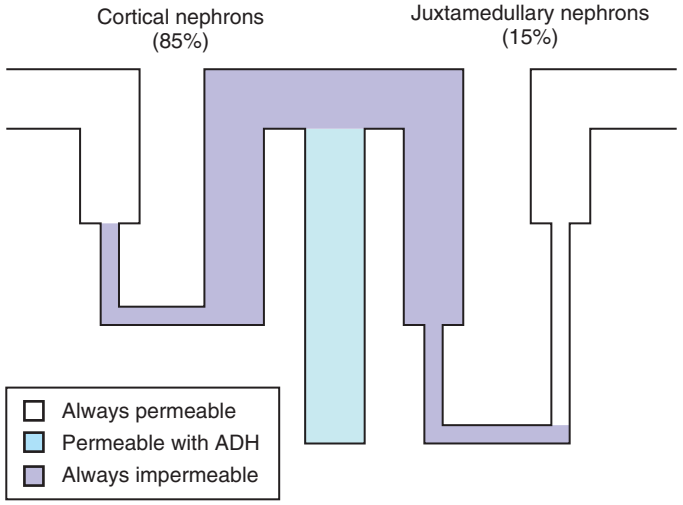


Figure 14-4 Transport of water at various nephron sites. The proximal tubules are always water permeable because aquaporins are constitutively expressed at these sites. The descending thin limbs of juxtamedullary nephrons (15% of all nephrons) also have expression of aquaporins and are therefore water permeable, but the descending thin limb of cortical nephrons (85%) lack aquaporins, and is water impermeable. This view is not widely accepted, and the majority view is that the entire thin descending limb of Henle of both cortical and juxtamedullary nephrons is water-permeable. The ascending thin limb and ascending thick limb of Henle, the distal convoluted tubule, and the connecting tubule do not express aquaporins, and are always water impermeable. The collecting duct is water permeable when ADH action allows expression of aquaporins.

http://basicbook.net

portion of the inner medullary collecting duct, even when ADH is absent (Halperin et al, 2010). Aquaporins may be present constitutively in this part of the nephron, or membrane may be permeable to water without ADH. During maximal water diuresis, the combined effect of further salt reabsorption in the collecting duct and small additional reabsorption of water in the inner medullary collecting duct allow final excretion of about 20 L of dilute urine at an osmolality of about 40 mOsm/L. It must be noted that the maximal urine output during water diuresis depends greatly on the salt intake, because the maximal urine output can never exceed the amount delivered into the ascending limb of Henle. Even with a mild salt restriction (e.g., 2 g per day), the resulting mild volume depletion increases reabsorption of salt and water in the proximal tubule sufficiently to reduce the volume delivery to the ascending limb of Henle's loop to 12 to 15 L/day, and the final maximal urine output to 10 to 12 L/day.

In the presence of maximal ADH, urine can be concentrated to as high as 1200 mOsm/L as water is reabsorbed in the cortical and medullary collecting duct, with urine volume as low as 0.5 L/day (see Fig. 14-4). The osmolality of urine as it enters the ADH effective site (i.e., the cortical collecting duct) is the same during water diuresis and during antidiuresis, and the value is quite low, about 60 mOsm/L. The urine osmolality is reduced by continuous salt reabsorption without water reabsorption in the ascending thin and thick limbs of Henle and the distal convoluted tubule and connecting table. The concentration of urine is achieved by reabsorption of water in the collecting duct through transcellular reabsorption of water through the cells of the collecting duct; water first enters the cell through the luminal membrane, and then leaves the cell through the basolateral membranes. Diffusion of water through each membrane requires expression of aquaporins. Aquaporin 3 is constitutively expressed in the basolateral membrane of the cortical collecting duct and aquaporin 4 in the basolateral membrane of the medullary collecting duct. Entry of water in the collecting duct, both cortical and medullary, from the lumen into the cell requires the expression of aquaporin 2 on the luminal membrane, and this is an ADH-mediated process.

Increase in urine osmolality from a very low value at the beginning of the cortical collecting duct to an isotonic value at the corticomedullary junction requires the presence of ADH and the tubular responsiveness to ADH, since the interstitium of the cortex is always isotonic. However, the reabsorption of water in the medullary collecting duct requires not only ADH action but also the hypertonicity of the medullary interstitium. Maintenance of medullary hypertonicity is achieved by the countercurrent multiplication mechanism. In short, the medullary interstitial fluid becomes progressively hypertonic starting at the isotonic level at the corticomedullary junction, increasing to a level of about 1200 mOsm/L at the tip of the papilla. Medullary hypertonicity in the outer medullary area is achieved by the active reabsorption of salt in the thick ascending limb of Henle that is not accompanied by water reabsorption. In the inner medulla, salt reabsorption in the thin ascending limb of Henle (the inner medulla lacks the thick ascending limb of Henle) is passive, and occurs with the help of urea that diffuses from the inner medullary collecting duct. The mechanism by which urea contributes to the concentration of urine is still hotly debated, and is beyond the scope of this discussion. The achievement of medullary hypertonicity is attributed to the countercurrent mechanism, which had been traditionally explained in the following manner: 1) selective reabsorption of salt from the ascending limbs of Henle without water reabsorption, 2) selective reabsorption of water from the descending limb of Henle, and 3) the countercurrent arrangement of the descending and ascending limbs of Henle by bending of the tubule at the tip of Henle's loop (Hogg et al, 1986; Pallone et al, 2003; de Rouffignac, 1975; Oh & Halperin, 1997; Sands & Kokko, 1996; Burg, 1995; Schmidt-Nielson, 1977; Knepper, 1983; Hogg & Kokko, 1978; Greger et al, 1983).

It is now clear, however, that the above sequence of events to achieve the progressive hypertonicity of the fluid in the descending thin limb of Henle is applicable only to a small fraction of the nephrons, namely the juxtamedullary nephrons, which represent only 15% of the total nephron population (Zhai et al, 2007). The cortical nephrons representing 85% of the nephron populations in humans do not express aquaporins on the thin descending limb of Henle, and therefore those tubular segments are water impermeable. The progressive urine concentration that occurs along the descending limb of Henle occurs instead by sodium and chloride entry (Halperin & Kamel, 2008). This would create a wasted effort in that sodium entering the descending limb will have to be reabsorbed again in the ascending limb, but the absence of water permeability of the descending limb of Henle allows relatively constant urine flow rates entering the distal convoluted tubule during water diuresis and antidiuresis (Halperin & Kamel, 2008; Cheema-Dhadli et al, 2010).

POLYURIA

Polyuria is arbitrarily defined as urine volume in excess of 2.5 L/day. There are two types of polyuria: osmotic diuresis and water diuresis (Carroll & Oh, 1989).

Osmotic Diuresis

Osmotic diuresis is defined as increased urine output due to an excessive rate of solute excretion; the commonly accepted level of solute excretion for osmotic diuresis is a rate in excess of 60 mOsm/hr or 1440 mOsm/day in the adult (Carroll & Oh, 1989). Urine osmolality is usually greater than that of plasma, but it may be lower than plasma osmolality when it coexists with water diuresis. Solutes commonly responsible for osmotic diuresis are glucose, urea, mannitol, radiopaque media, and NaCl. Marked increase in urine output following the administration of a diuretic, such as intravenous furosemide, is a form of osmotic diuresis; the increased urine output is in response to increased excretion of a solute in the form of NaCl.

Water Diuresis

Water diuresis is characterized by excretion of a large volume of dilute urine. The polyuria is caused by reduced reabsorption of water in the collecting duct. Reasons for reduced water reabsorption in the collecting duct are lack of ADH (Vokes et al, 1988; Leggett et al, 1999; Siggaard et al, 1999; Rutishauser et al, 1999; Ito et al, 1997; Halperin et al, 2001) or unresponsiveness to ADH (nephrogenic diabetes insipidus). Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (DI) can be either congenital or acquired (Boone & Deene, 2009). Congenital nephrogenic DI is due to either a defective ADH receptor or an aquaporin defect (Weir, 1992; Lam et al, 2000; Nielsen et al, 2002; Spruce et al, 1984; Canada et al, 2003; Marples et al, 1995).

The lack of ADH, which could be congenital or acquired (Levine et al, 1987; Vokes et al, 1988; Leggett et al, 1999; Siggaard et al, 1999; Rutishauser et al, 1999; Ito et al, 1997) is either due to primary deficiency (central diabetes insipidus) or physiologic suppression by low serum osmolality (primary polydipsia, dipsogenic diabetes insipidus) (Levine et al, 1987; Rendell et al, 1978; Hariprassad et al, 1980). The deficiency of ADH could be mild, moderate, or severe. When ADH deficiency is partial, urine osmolality may be fairly close to normal. In rare instances, ADH is made, but cannot be released in response to a rise in body fluid osmolality because of a defect involving the osmoreceptor cells (e.g., hypothalamic lesions) (Leggett et al, 1999; Siggaard et al, 1999; Rutishauser et al, 1999; Ito et al, 1997; Loh & Verbalis, 2008). In such instances, ADH may be released in response to hypovolemia or to drugs. During pregnancy, ADH deficiency may be caused by excessive production of vasopressinase (gestational DI) (Molitch, 1998). Causes of polyuria including central and nephrogenic DI are listed in Box 14-4.

Primary polydipsia is defined as increased water drinking that is not caused by physiologically stimulated thirst (i.e., hyperosmolality or volume depletion) (Hariprassad et al, 1980; Levine et al, 1987). Primary polydipsia is usually psychogenic in origin, hence the term psychogenic polydipsia. In contrast, polydipsia in patients with diabetes insipidus or diabetic patients with severe glycosuria is secondary polydipsia, which is due to thirst stimulation in response to hyperosmolality. In primary polydipsia, increased urine output is due to physiologic suppression of ADH secretion, and, hence, serum Na^+ is usually at the low range of normal. In

BOX 14-4

Causes of Polyuria Due to Water Diuresis

Lack of ADH

Central diabetes insipidus (DI): congenital or acquired (idiopathic cell degeneration, tumors and granulomas, surgery, trauma, infarction, and infection of the pituitary gland or hypothalamus)
Dipsogenic: psychogenic, organic brain disease, iatrogenic
Gestational DI: Excess vasopressinase

Failure of the Kidney to Respond to ADH (Nephrogenic DI)

Congenital nephrogenic DI: a defect in ADH receptor, a defect in aquaporin expression.
Chronic renal failure.
Acquired nephrogenic DI: lithium toxicity, demeclocycline toxicity, methoxyflurane toxicity, amyloidosis, light chain nephropathy, hypercalcemia, hypokalemia, obstructive uropathy

http://basicbook.net

contrast, in secondary polydipsia, as in central or nephrogenic DI, serum sodium is in the high-normal range. Serum sodium is frankly low in severe primary polydipsia, indicating that the capacity of the GI tract to absorb water exceeds the capacity of the kidney to excrete water.

CAUSES AND PATHOGENESIS OF HYPONATREMIA

Hyponatremia, the most common electrolyte disorder, is defined as a reduced plasma sodium concentration to a value less than 135 mmol/L (Box 14-5). Generally, clinical concern arises when the concentration is less than 130 mmol/L.

The term pseudohyponatremia, as discussed in Chapter 8, is applied to a spurious reduction in serum sodium concentration due to an error in measurement. The commonest, yet not widely appreciated, cause of pseudohyponatremia is in vitro hemolysis, a well-known cause of pseudohyperkalemia (Oh & Oh, 2003). Since cell lysis does not change osmolality of the plasma, any rise in serum potassium must be met by a reciprocal decrease in serum sodium. However, the reduction in serum Na^+ from hemolysis is somewhat greater than the increase in serum K^+, by a factor of 1.3, because hemoglobin released from the red blood cells causes additional reduction in serum Na^+ as in hyperproteinemia; this error occurs because hemoglobin has the same effect as hyperproteinemia in displacing plasma water. This additional error by the effect of released hemoglobin occurs only when samples are diluted before the measurement of serum sodium.

Other causes of pseudohyponatremia include hyperlipidemia, hyperproteinemia, and increased viscosity of the plasma (Weisberg, 1989; Milionis et al, 2002). The error in measurement in pseudohyponatremia due to hyperproteinemia and hyperlipidemia results from the dilution of the sample. Measurements of serum sodium with a flame photometer always result in this type of error because the sample is always diluted before measurement (Weisberg, 1989). The same error may occur even with an ion-specific electrode method, if the sample is diluted (indirect method). In pseudohyponatremia, plasma osmolality, which is customarily measured without dilution, is normal. However, a low plasma sodium concentration with a normal plasma osmolality often does not indicate pseudohyponatremia; true hyponatremia may be accompanied by a normal plasma osmolality because of the accumulation of some abnormal osmols or abnormal concentrations of non-sodium osmols such as alcohol, urea, and glucose. In hypergammaglobulinemic states such as in multiple myeloma, serum sodium may be falsely low because of displacement of serum water by gamma globulins, but the sodium concentration is also truly low because cationic charges of gamma globulins, which are balanced by chloride, displace sodium to maintain electrical neutrality (Weisberg, 1978, 1989). Hyponatremia induced by acute hyperglycemia is not pseudohyponatremia, since sodium concentration in the extracellular fluid is truly low; this occurs as a result of water shift from the cell caused by hyperglycemia. Serum sodium decreases by 1.6 mmol/L for every 100 mg/dL rise in serum glucose, as discussed earlier (Katz, 1973).

The immediate mechanisms responsible for a reduction in extracellular sodium concentration are: (1) shift of water from the cell caused by accumulation of extracellular solutes, such as glucose, other than sodium salts (Agraharkar & Agraharkar, 1997; Akan et al, 1996; Agarwal & Emmett, 1994; Nguyen & Nelson, 2014); (2) retention of excess water in the body; (3) loss of sodium (Gowrishankar et al, 1998; Sonnenblick et al, 1993); and (4) shift of sodium into the cells. The appropriate physiologic response to hypotonicity is suppression of ADH release, which leads to rapid excretion of excess water and correction of hyponatremia. Persistence of hyponatremia therefore indicates the failure of this compensatory mechanism. In most instances, hyponatremia is maintained because the kidney fails to produce water diuresis, but sometimes ingestion of water in excess of the limits of normal renal excretion is responsible. The reasons for inability of the kidney to excrete water include: (1) renal failure, (2) reduced delivery of glomerular filtrate to the distal nephron, and (3) the inappropriate presence of ADH.

The mechanism for impaired water excretion in renal failure is obvious and needs no further explanation. Reduced distal delivery of filtrate results from low glomerular filtration rate and enhanced proximal tubular reabsorption of salt and water when effective vascular volume is reduced.

In most cases of hyponatremia, the main reason for the fall of serum sodium is abnormal retention of water, which is either ingested as such or administered as hypotonic fluids. However, in certain clinical settings, reduction in serum sodium can occur without the administration or ingestion of hypotonic fluid. The latter phenomenon occurs when urine is excreted containing sodium and potassium at concentrations that exceed the sum of serum concentrations of the two ions; for example, if urine contains sodium at 140 mmol/L and potassium at 100 mmol/L, the combined concentration would be 240 mmol/L, which is far greater than the sum of serum sodium and potassium. The physiologic requirement for the excretion of hypertonic urine is an increased amount of ADH in the presence of sodium diuresis (Halperin et al, 2001; Halperin & Kamel, 2008; Decaux & Musch, 2008). Clinical examples include: (1) a patient who receives a large amount of isotonic fluid in the immediate postoperative period, (2) a patient with secretion of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone who is treated with isotonic fluid, and (3) a patient who receives a thiazide diuretic (Gowrishankar et al, 1998; Sonnenblick et al, 1993). It must be noted that development of hyponatremia with excretion of hypertonic urine occurs only when hypertonicity of urine is caused by increased excretion of sodium or potassium. Hypertonic urine by increased excretion of urea would not produce hyponatremia for obvious reasons. Loss of potassium has a very similar effect on serum sodium, as loss of sodium, because loss of potassium from the cell is accompanied either by entry of sodium into the cell or exit of water from the cell in order to maintain osmotic balance and electrical neutrality.

The normal dilution of urine requires delivery of adequate amounts of fluid to the diluting segment and the reabsorption of solute without water at that segment. An increased body fluid tonicity causes release of ADH, which allows reabsorption of water in the collecting duct, helping to restore the body fluid tonicity. The response is considered appropriate when ADH is released in response to hypertonicity of the body fluid. However, release of ADH in the presence of hyponatremia is also considered appropriate if the effective vascular volume is reduced. The term *syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH)* is therefore reserved for ADH secretion that occurs despite hyponatremia and a normal or increased effective vascular volume.

Causes of SIADH include tumors, pulmonary diseases such as tuberculosis and pneumonia, central nervous system diseases, and drugs (Bartter & Schwartz, 1967; Ajaelo et al, 1998; Fallon et al, 1998; Gold et al, 1983; Hensen et al, 1995; North, 2000; Arlt et al, 1997; Johnson et al, 1997; Argani et al, 1997; Ferlito et al, 1997; Friedmann et al, 1994; Leadbetter & Shutty, 1994). Hyponatremia in clinical states associated with reduced effective vascular volume such as congestive heart failure and cirrhosis of the liver is caused by a combination of reduced delivery of fluid to the distal nephron and increased secretion of ADH. Salt restriction and

BOX 14-5

Classification of Hyponatremia by Pathogenesis

Due to Renal Na^+ Loss

Thiazide diuretics in the presence of ADH
Saline infusion in the presence of ADH

Due to Water Retention

Excessive water intake: primary polydipsia
Advanced renal failure with water intake
Appropriate ADH secretion: Edema-forming states (CHF, nephritic syndrome, ascites), salt-depletion states (GI loss, diuretic therapy, aldosterone deficiency, hypothyroidism)
Inappropriate ADH secretion

- Tumors: Cancers of the lung, pancreas, duodenum, ureter, bladder, prostate; lymphoma; thymoma; mesothelioma; Ewing's sarcoma
- Intrathoracic causes: Bacterial and viral pneumonia, tuberculosis, lung abscess, aspergillosis, asthma, positive pressure breathing, pneumothorax, cystic fibrosis.
- CNS abnormalities: Encephalitis, meningitis, brain tumors and abscess, head trauma, subdural hematoma, cerebrovascular accidents, Guillain-Barré syndrome, acute intermittent porphyria, brain atrophy, schizophrenia, hydrocephalus, acute psychosis, multiple sclerosis, cavernous vein thrombosis, lupus cerebritis, Shy-Drager syndrome, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, delirium tremens, seizure disorder
- Drugs: Arginine vasopressin and its analogs, sulfonylureas, tricyclic antidepressants, clofibrate, carbamazepine, vinca alkaloids, cyclophosphamide, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, opiates, phenothiazines, haloperidol
- Surgical and emotional stress
- Emesis
- Endocrine causes: glucocorticoid deficiency and myxedema

http://basicbook.net

diuretics increase severity of hyponatremia. ADH secretion may be increased despite hyponatremia in myxedema (Macaron & Famuyiwa, 1978) and glucocorticoid deficiency states. ADH secretion in these conditions, however, may be considered appropriate, since both are characterized by clinical evidence of volume depletion. Finally, mild hyponatremia may be caused by "resetting of the osmostat" at an osmolality lower than the usual level. In such cases, urine dilution occurs normally when the plasma osmolality is reduced below the reset level. Resetting of the osmostat is a form of SIADH (Robertson, 2006; Decaux & Musch, 2008), since ADH secretion occurs inappropriately at hyponatremic levels in the absence of reduced effective vascular volume. Patients with chronic debilitating diseases such as pulmonary tuberculosis often manifest this phenomenon (Hill et al, 1990).

Some authorities believe in the existence of a cerebral salt wasting syndrome, which is defined as renal loss of salt caused by humoral substances released in response to cerebral disorders such as acute subarachnoid hemorrhage. These patients are thought to manifest volume depletion that results in hyponatremia (Maesaka et al, 2009). However, a careful analysis of the existing data does not support the existence of such an entity, and those cases labeled as cerebral salt wasting syndrome probably represent SIADH (Oh & Carroll, 1999).

CAUSES AND PATHOGENESIS OF HYPERNATREMIA

Hypernatremia is defined as an increased sodium concentration in plasma water, and is generally diagnosed at serum sodium levels >145 mmol/L. Whereas hyponatremia may not be accompanied by hypoosmolality, hypernatremia is always associated with an increased effective plasma osmolality and hence with a reduced cell volume. However, the extracellular volume in hypernatremia may be normal, decreased, or increased.

Hypernatremia is caused by loss of water, gain of sodium, or both (Box 14-6). Loss of water could be due to increased loss or reduced intake, and gain of sodium is due either to increased intake or to reduced renal excretion. Increased loss of water can occur through the kidney (e.g., in diabetes insipidus or osmotic diuresis), the gastrointestinal tract (e.g., gastric suction or osmotic diarrhea), or the skin. Reduced water intake occurs most commonly in comatose patients or in those with a defective thirst mechanism. Less frequent causes of reduced water intake include continuous vomiting, lack of access to water, and mechanical obstruction to the esophagus (e.g., esophageal tumor or stricture). Gain of sodium in a conscious person does not result in hypernatremia because a proportional amount of water is retained to maintain normal body fluid osmolality, as long as the person has a normal perception of thirst, is able to drink water, and has access to water. Whereas the main physiologic defense against hyponatremia is increased renal water excretion, the most effective physiologic defense against hypernatremia is increased water drinking in response to thirst. Because thirst is such an effective and sensitive defense mechanism against hypernatremia, it is virtually impossible to increase serum sodium by more than a few mmol/L if the water-drinking mechanism is intact. Therefore, in a patient with hypernatremia, there will always be reasons for reduced water intake. These reasons include defective thirst mechanism, inability to drink water, and unavailability of water (Marazuela et al, 2007). The excess gain of sodium leading to hypernatremia is usually iatrogenic, such as from hypertonic saline infusion, accidental entry into maternal circulation during abortion with hypertonic saline, or administration of hypertonic sodium bicarbonate during cardiopulmonary resuscitation or treatment of lactic acidosis. Reduced renal sodium excretion leading to sodium gain and hypernatremia is usually in response to dehydration caused by primary water deficit. Water depletion due to diabetes insipidus, osmotic diuresis, or insufficient water intake leads to secondary sodium retention through volume-mediated activation of sodium-retaining mechanisms. Consequently, in chronic hypernatremia, sodium retention plays a more important role than water loss (Carroll & Oh, 1989; Oh & Oh, 2003). Of course, net sodium retention is possible only if sodium is ingested or given.

Whether hypernatremia is due to sodium retention or water loss can be determined by examination of the patient's volume status. For example, if a patient with a serum sodium concentration of 170 mmol/L has no obvious evidence of dehydration, one must conclude that hypernatremia is caused by water loss as well as salt retention. Increasing the serum sodium to 170 mmol/L by water deficit alone would require a loss of more than 20% of total body water.

BOX 14-6

Causes of Hypernatremia

Reduced Water Intake

Defective thirst due to altered mental state or thirst center defect
Inability to drink water
Lack of access to water

Increased Water Loss (Water Intake Must Be Impaired)

Gastrointestinal loss: vomiting, osmotic diarrhea
Cutaneous loss: sweating and fever
Respiratory loss: hyperventilation and fever
Renal loss: diabetes insipidus, osmotic diuresis

Increased Sodium Content of the Body (Water Intake Must Be Impaired)

Increased oral or intravenous intake of sodium chloride
Hypertonic saline or sodium bicarbonate infusion
Ingestion of sea water
Renal salt retention; usually in response to primary water deficit

ACID-BASE DISORDERS

BICARBONATE AND CO_2 BUFFER SYSTEM

All body buffers are in equilibrium with protons (H^+) and therefore with pH, as shown in the following equation (Ramsay, 1965):

$$pH = pK + \log A^- / HA \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-30)}$$

where A^- is a conjugate base of an acid HA.

Because HCO_3^- and CO_2 are the major buffers of the body, pH is typically expressed as a function of their ratio and is shown in the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation:

$$pH = 6.1 + \log HCO_3^- / pCO_2 \times 0.03 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-31)}$$

where 6.1 is the pK of the HCO_3^- and CO_2 buffer system, and 0.03 is the solubility coefficient of CO_2.

The equation can be further simplified by combining the two constants, pK and solubility coefficient of CO_2: $pH = 6.1 + \log HCO_3^-/pCO_2 \times 0.03 = 6.1 + \log 1/0.03 + \log HCO_3^-/pCO_2 = 7.62 + \log HCO_3^-/pCO_2$ (Carroll & Oh, 1989). Hence,

$$pH = 7.62 - \log pCO_2/HCO_3^- = 7.62 + \log HCO_3^- - \log pCO_2 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-32)}$$

When H^+ is expressed in nM instead of a negative log value (pH), pCO_2 can be related to HCO_3^- in the following equation:

$$H\,(nM) = 24 \times pCO_2\,(mmHg)/HCO_3^-\,(mM) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-33)}$$

The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation indicates that pH depends on the ratio of HCO_3^-/pCO_2. pH increases when the ratio increases (alkalosis), and pH decreases when the ratio decreases (acidosis). The ratio may be increased by an increase in HCO_3^- (metabolic alkalosis) or by a decrease in pCO_2 (respiratory alkalosis). The ratio may be decreased by a decrease in HCO_3^- (metabolic acidosis) or by an increase in pCO_2 (respiratory acidosis).

DEFINITIONS OF ACID AND BASE

Arrhenius's definition is as follows: An acid is a substance that increases the concentration of hydrogen ion (H^+) when dissolved in water, and a base is a substance that increases the concentration of hydroxyl ion (OH^-) when dissolved in water.

Bronsted and Lowry's definition is as follows: An acid is a substance that donates a proton in a reaction, while a base is a substance that accepts a proton in a reaction.

Lewis's definition is as follows: An acid is a molecule or ion that accepts a pair of electrons to form a covalent bond, and a base is a molecule that donates a pair of electrons for a covalent bond. The Bronsted-Lowry definition is the most widely accepted and the most clinically relevant.

WHOLE-BODY ACID-BASE BALANCE

Metabolic acidosis occurs either because net acid production is increased or net acid excretion is reduced. Because a typical modern diet results in acid production, the normal function of the kidney is to excrete acid in order to remain in acid-base balance. For these reasons, proper understanding of disorders of acid-base balance requires knowledge of the

http://basicbook.net

sources of acid production as well as the mechanisms by which acids are disposed of.

Net Acid Production

In a typical American diet, the daily production of nonvolatile acid is about 90 mmol/day. The main acids are sulfuric acid (about 40 mmol/day), which originates from metabolism of sulfur-containing amino acids such as methionine and cysteine, and incompletely metabolized organic acids (about 50 mmol/day) (Oh & Carroll, 1992). The source of sulfuric acid is protein, but the sulfate content varies greatly with the types of protein that are ingested (Lemann & Relman, 1959). In general, proteins of animal sources (meat, fish, milk, and egg) contain higher amounts of sulfate for a given amount of protein than proteins of plant origin (cereal, beans, and nuts). The sulfur content is much greater in fruits, vegetables, and potatoes, but these food groups are not important sources of protein in the amounts usually eaten. The total amount of acid/alkali content depends not only on the sulfur content but also on the alkali content of food, which is present mainly as salts of organic acids. When both factors are considered, milk has a net alkali value, whereas meat and fish have a net acid value. As a whole, fruits and vegetables contain a large amount of net alkali because they contain large amounts of organic anions. The total amount of organic acids produced normally is much more than 50 mmol/day, but the bulk of organic acids produced in the body is metabolized; only a small amount is lost in the urine as organic anions that escape metabolism (e.g. citrate) or as a metabolic end-product (e.g., urate). In typical American diets, the amount of alkali absorbed from the GI tract is about 30 mEq/day (Lemann & Relman, 1959; Oh & Carroll, 1992). Thus, the net amount of acid produced daily can be estimated as follows:

$$\text{Net acid production} = (\text{urine sulfate} + \text{urine organic anions}) - \text{net alkali absorbed from GI tract} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-34)}$$

An assumption in the use of the above equation has been that urinary sulfate originates entirely from the metabolism of sulfur-containing amino acids via sulfuric acid. This assumption is probably not accurate in view of the fact that modern diet contains a fair amount of oxidized sulfur in the form of sulfate additive, such as in wine (Florin et al, 1991). Thus, measurement of net acid excretion by Equation 14-34 would overestimate net acid production.

Determination of the net alkali (or acid) content of diet is based on the metabolic fates of the chemicals in diet after absorption into the body rather than its in vitro states. For example, citric acid in food is considered neutral, because it would be metabolized to CO_2 and water in the body, whereas K^+ citrate is an alkali because it would be converted to K^+ bicarbonate after metabolism. Similarly, arginine Cl^- is an acid, because metabolism of arginine in the body would result in the formation of HCl (Lemann & Relman, 1959). Thus, the net alkali value of diet is best determined by the total amount of noncombustible cations (Na^+, K^+, Ca^{++}, and Mg^{++}) in comparison with the total amount of noncombustible anions (Cl^- and P):

$$\text{Net alkali content} = (Na^+ + K^+ + Ca^{++} + Mg^{++}) - (Cl^- + 1.8\,P) \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-35)}$$

All units are expressed as mmol/day except for P, which is expressed as mmol/day multiplied by 1.8, because phosphate valence depends on pH, and at pH 7.4 the average valence of phosphate is 1.8. Only the above six ions are considered in the equation because other noncombustible ions are present in negligible amounts in normal food. Sulfate is not included here because sulfate is derived almost entirely from the metabolism of sulfur-containing amino acids, and not ingested as such. The amount of alkali absorbed from food is not equal to the amount present in food, because the absorption of divalent noncombustible ions, Ca^{++}, Mg^{++}, and P, is incomplete. Hence, traditionally the measurement of the net GI alkali absorption required analysis of the food as well as the stool, which necessitated prolonged collection of stool (Relman et al, 1961). Thus, the net GI alkali absorption is expressed as:

$$\text{Net GI alkali absorbed} = \text{net alkali of food} - \text{net alkali of stool} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-36)}$$

The analysis of food for the measurement of net alkali content is cumbersome, and the analysis of stool is even more cumbersome. Such analyses typically require admitting the patient to a special metabolic unit. An alternative method has been developed to measure net GI alkali absorption. In this method, urine electrolytes, instead of diet and stool electrolytes, are measured (Oh, 1989, Oh, 1991). This method is based on the principle that noncombustible ions absorbed from the GI tract would eventually be excreted in the urine and therefore that the individual amounts of these electrolytes excreted in the urine would equal those absorbed from the GI tract. Hence,

$$\text{Net GI alkali absorption} = \text{urine}\,(Na^+ + K^+ + Ca^{++} + Mg^{++}) - \text{urine}\,(Cl^- + 1.8\,P) \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-37)}$$

Twenty-four–hour urine can be collected in outpatient settings, while the subjects are eating their usual diets. The amount of net alkali absorbed in the typical American diet stated earlier (30 mEq/day) was measured by the analysis of urine electrolytes using the formula in Equation 14-37 (Oh & Carroll, 1992). An assumption in this equation as well as the diet and stool analysis of net alkali content has been that only six electrolytes are nonmetabolizable electrolytes contained in the normal diet, and the presence of sulfate in the diet would therefore result in overestimation of net alkali content of diet. However, the overestimation of net acid production by ignoring dietary sulfate would be exactly equal to the overestimation of the net alkali content of the diet by ignoring dietary sulfate content. The presence of dietary sulfate would not affect the overall whole-body acid-base balance.

Net Acid Excretion

The most important function of the kidney in acid-base homeostasis is excretion of acid, which is tantamount to generation of alkali. Acid is excreted in the form of NH_4^+ and titratable acid. Another important function of the kidney is excretion of HCO_3^-. Usually, the main function of renal excretion of HCO_3^- is prevention of metabolic alkalosis, but a small amount of bicarbonate is normally excreted in the urine (about 10 mmol/day). Thus, net acid excretion, which is tantamount to net renal production of alkali, can be determined by subtracting HCO_3^- excretion from acid excretion (Lemann & Relman, 1959).

$$\text{Net acid excretion} = \text{acid excretion} - HCO_3^- \text{ excretion} = NH_4^+ + \text{titratable acid} - HCO_3^- \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-38)}$$

Normally, about two thirds of acid excretion occurs in the form of NH_4^+, but in acidosis NH_4^+ excretion may increase as much as 10-fold. Excretion of titratable acid is usually modest because of the limited amount of buffer that produces titratable acid (i.e., phosphate, creatinine, and urate), but it may be increased markedly in disease states (e.g., beta-hydroxybutyrate in diabetic ketoacidosis). Maintenance of acid-base balance requires that net acid production equals net acid excretion. Metabolic acidosis develops when net acid production exceeds net acid excretion, and metabolic alkalosis develops when net acid excretion exceeds net acid production.

METABOLIC ACIDOSIS

Classification

All metabolic acidoses result from reduction in bicarbonate content of the body with two minor exceptions: acidosis resulting from dilution of the body fluid by administration of a large amount of saline solution that does not contain alkali (dilution acidosis), and acidosis that results from a shift of H^+ from the cell. Reduction in bicarbonate content may be due to a primary increase in acid production **(extrarenal acidosis)** or due to a primary reduction in net acid excretion **(renal acidosis)** (Box 14-7). In this classification, nonrenal loss of bicarbonate or an alkali precursor is considered as part of increased acid production. In extrarenal acidosis, net acid excretion is increased as the kidney compensates to correct the acidic pH. On the other hand, net acid excretion may be restored to normal in chronic renal acidosis as acidosis stimulates renal H^+ excretion. Normal net acid excretion in the presence of acidic pH suggests a defect in renal acid excretion, and therefore renal acidosis. If the renal acid excretion capacity is normal, net acid excretion should be increased in the presence of extrarenal acidosis (Gennari & Weise, 2008; Goulet et al, 2009).

Renal Acidosis

Renal acidosis is further classified into two types: uremic acidosis and renal tubular acidosis (RTA). In uremic acidosis, reduced net acid excretion results from reduced nephron mass or generalized renal dysfunction (i.e., chronic or acute renal failure), whereas in renal tubular acidosis reduction in net acid excretion results from a specific tubular dysfunction in acid excretory function. Because development of renal acidosis depends on the rate of net acid excretion as well as the rate of net acid production, and

http://basicbook.net

BOX 14-7

Causes of Metabolic Acidosis by Net Acid Excretion

Renal Acidosis: Absolute or Relative Reduction in Net Acid Excretion

Uremic acidosis

Renal tubular acidosis
- Distal renal tubular acidosis (type I)
- Proximal renal tubular acidosis (type II)
- Aldosterone deficiency or unresponsiveness (type IV)

Extrarenal Acidosis: Increase in Net Acid Excretion

Gastrointestinal loss of bicarbonate

Ingestion of acids or acid precursors: ammonium chloride, sulfur-containing compounds

Acid precursors or toxins: salicylate, ethylene glycol, methanol, toluene, acetaminophen, paraldehyde

Organic acidosis
- L-lactic acidosis
- D-lactic acidosis
- Ketoacidosis
- Pyroglutamic acidosis

BOX 14-8

Causes of L-Lactic Acidosis

Type A Lactic Acidosis Due to Tissue Hypoxia

Circulatory shock
Severe hypoxemia
Heart failure
Severe anemia
Grand mal seizure

Type B Lactic Acidosis, No Tissue Hypoxia

Acute alcoholism
Drugs and toxins (e.g., metformin, antiretroviral drugs, salicylate intoxication)
Diabetes mellitus
Leukemia
Deficiency of thiamin or riboflavin
Idiopathic

the latter varies greatly according to the diet of individuals, the level of renal failure at which uremic acidosis develops depends on the dietary intake of acid. On a usual diet, uremic acidosis typically develops when GFR falls below 20% of normal (Bommer et al, 1996; Oh & Carroll, 1992).

There are three types of RTA. Type I RTA, also called *classic RTA* or *distal RTA*, is characterized by an inability to reduce urine pH below 5.5. Since acidification of urine to a very low urine pH occurs at the collecting duct, the site of defect is the collecting duct, which is part of the distal nephron, hence the term *distal RTA*. Because H^+ secretion in the collecting duct is also impaired in type IV RTA, some authors consider both type I and type IV RTA a form of distal RTA. More often, the terms *type I RTA* and *distal RTA* are used synonymously. Type I RTA can develop as a primary disorder or secondary to drug toxicity, tubulointerstitial renal diseases, or other renal diseases (Rodriguez-Soriano, 2002).

Type II RTA, also called *proximal RTA*, has defective proximal bicarbonate reabsorption characterized by reduced renal bicarbonate threshold. Urine can be made free of bicarbonate and acidified normally when serum bicarbonate decreases to a sufficiently low level. Most patients with proximal RTA have evidence of generalized proximal tubular dysfunction (i.e., Fanconi's syndrome), which is manifested by bicarbonaturia, aminoaciduria, glycosuria, phosphaturia, and uricosuria. Of these, renal glycosuria (glycosuria in the presence normal blood glucose) is most useful in diagnosing Fanconi's syndrome. Type II RTA may be a primary disorder or secondary to genetic or acquired renal dysfunction. A common cause of type II RTA nowadays is toxicity of antiretroviral drugs (Mathew & Knaus, 2006). Hypokalemia is a characteristic finding of both type I and type II RTA, but tends to be more severe in type I than in type II. The mechanism of hypokalemia in chronic metabolic acidosis was discussed earlier in potassium disorders. *Type III RTA*, a term used to describe a hybrid form of types I and II RTA, is no longer in use.

Type IV RTA is caused by aldosterone deficiency or tubular unresponsiveness to aldosterone, resulting in impaired renal tubular potassium secretion and hence hyperkalemia. Although reduced H^+ secretion in the collecting duct plays a role, the major mechanism of acidosis in type IV RTA is hyperkalemia-induced impairment in ammonia production in the proximal tubule. Type IV RTA is far more common than either type I or type II RTA, and the most common cause of type IV RTA is hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism. Diabetic nephropathy is the most common cause of hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism leading to type IV RTA (Oh et al, 1974; Phelps et al, 1980b).

Organic Acidosis

Among external causes of acidosis, overproduction of endogenous acids, especially lactic acid and ketoacids, is the most important mechanism. Only a marked overproduction, well in excess of 1000 mEq/day of lactic acid, leads to acidosis because of the enormous capacity to metabolize organic acids. When organic acids react with bicarbonate, organic anions and CO_2 are formed. Retention of organic anions results in an increased anion gap. The retained organic anions are potential bicarbonate; when they are metabolized, bicarbonate is regenerated. However, renal excretion of organic anions results in hyperchloremic acidosis with a normal anion gap. Thus, loss of organic anions in the urine is tantamount to loss of bicarbonate. If an organic anion produced from organic acid is entirely retained, subsequent metabolism of the entire amount will result in the complete recovery of the lost alkali. Characteristically, organic acidosis is rapid in onset and in recovery.

Lactic Acidosis

Lactic acid is produced from pyruvic acid by the action of the enzyme LDH and the cofactor NADH. Metabolism of lactic acid requires its conversion back to pyruvic acid, using the same enzyme and NAD^+ as a cofactor. For this reason, both production and metabolism of lactic acid depend on the same enzyme but different cofactors, NADH for the former and NAD for the latter. Increased concentration of pyruvic acid and increased ratio of $NADH/NAD^+$ increase lactic acid production and reduce its metabolism. Consequently, in most cases of lactic acidosis lactic acid production is increased, while its metabolism is reduced. By far the most common cause of lactic acidosis is tissue hypoxia, which results from circulatory shock, severe anemia, severe heart failure, acute pulmonary edema, cardiac arrest, carbon monoxide poisoning, seizures, vigorous muscular exercise, and so on (Carroll & Oh, 1989; Oh & Oh, 2003; Arenas-Pinto et al, 2003; Luft, 2001). Lactic acidosis in the absence of tissue hypoxia is called *type B lactic acidosis*, whereas that associated with tissue hypoxia is called *type A lactic acidosis*. Currently, the two most common causes of type B lactic acidosis are antiretroviral drugs and metformin (Strack, 2008; McGuire et al, 2006; Falcó et al, 2003). Impaired metabolism of lactic acid is the cause of lactic acidosis in acute alcoholism and severe liver disease (Box 14-8).

D-Lactic Acidosis

Lactic acidosis, unless specified, refers to acidosis caused by L-lactic acid, which is the isomer produced in the human body because the enzyme LDH is an L-isomer. The accumulation of D-lactic acid causes D-lactic acidosis. The condition is characterized by severe acidosis–accompanied neurologic manifestations such as mental confusion and staggering gait, mimicking ethanol intoxication without elevated plasma levels of ethanol. The mechanism of D-lactic acidosis is the colonic overproduction of D-lactic acid by bacteria (Oh et al, 1979; Day & Abbott, 1999). Necessary requirements for overproduction of D-lactic acid in the colon are delivery of a large amount of carbohydrate to the colon (i.e., malabsorption syndrome) and proliferation of D-LDH–forming bacteria in the colon (Uribarri et al, 1998; Oh et al, 1979). Treatment of D-lactic acidosis includes oral administration of poorly absorbable antibiotics such as neomycin and measures to alter the colonic bacterial flora (Uribarri et al, 1998).

Ketoacidosis

Ketoacids, acetoacetic acid, and betahydroxy butyric acid are produced in the liver from free fatty acids (FFA) and metabolized by the extrahepatic tissues. Increased production of keto acids is the main mechanism for keto acid accumulation, although decreased utilization of keto acids by the brain with the patient in a coma may accelerate the keto acid accumulation. Increased production requires a high concentration of FFA and their conversion to ketoacids in the liver. Insulin deficiency is responsible for increased mobilization of FFA from the adipose tissue, and glucagon excess and insulin deficiency stimulate conversion of FFA to ketoacids in the liver. The initial step in ketoacid production from FFA is the entry of FFA into the mitochondria, which requires acyl-carnitine transferase. This step is

http://basicbook.net

stimulated by glucagon excess. The next step is metabolism of FFA to acetyl-CoA, and then finally to ketoacids. Diversion of acetyl-CoA to fatty acid resynthesis requires the enzyme acetyl-CoA caboxylase, and inhibition of this enzyme by insulin deficiency, glucagon excess, and excess of stress-induced hormones such as catecholamines further contribute to increased ketoacid synthesis.

The clinical diagnosis of ketoacidosis was for many years commonly made by testing urine or serum with a sodium nitroprusside reagent, which forms a purple color in the presence of acetoacetate (AA) but not beta-hydroxybutyrate (BB). Both of these acids are usually elevated in ketoacidosis, but the usual ratio of BB/AA is about 2.5 to 3.0 and may be higher, especially in alcoholic ketoacidosis (Delaney et al, 2000; Oh & Carroll, 1977; Falcó et al, 2003). BB can be readily quantified by a simple enzymatic reaction.

SERUM ANION GAP (AG)

Serum anion gap is estimated as: $Na^+ - (Cl^- + HCO_3^-)$ or $(Na^+ + K^+) - (Cl^- + HCO_3^-)$. Since normal serum potassium concentration is quantitatively a minor component of serum electrolytes, the fluctuation in its concentration affects the overall result very little, and hence the first of the two equations is more commonly used to estimate the anion gap. The normal value is about 12 mmol/L (8 to 16 mmol/L). Although the term *anion gap* implies that there is a gap between cation and anion concentrations, the total concentration of all cations in the serum is exactly equal to the total concentration of all anions. The anion gap, $Na^+ - (Cl^- + HCO_3^-)$, is 12 mmol/L because the total concentration of unmeasured anions (i.e., all anions other than chloride and bicarbonate) is about 23 mmol/L, and the total concentration of unmeasured cations (i.e., all cations other than sodium) is about 11 mmol/L.

Let us assume that total serum cations = Na^+ + unmeasured cations (UC), and that total serum anions = Cl^- + HCO_3^- + unmeasured anions (UA). Since total serum cations = total serum anions, $Na^+ + UC = (Cl^- + HCO_3^-) + UA$. Hence, $Na^+ - (Cl^- + HCO_3^-) = UA - UC$. Since the anion gap = $Na^+ - (Cl^- + HCO_3^-)$, the anion gap = UA – UC (Fig. 14-5) (Oh & Carroll, 1977).

It is apparent that a change in the anion gap must involve changes in unmeasured anions or unmeasured cations, unless there is a laboratory error involving the measurement of Na^+, Cl^-, or HCO_3^-. The anion gap can be increased by increased UA or decreased UC or by a laboratory error resulting in a false increase in serum Na^+ or a false decrease in serum Cl^- or HCO_3^-. AG can be decreased by decreased UA or increased UC or by a laboratory error resulting in a false decrease in serum Na^+ or a false increase in serum Cl^- or HCO_3^-. The equation also predicts that a change in UA may not change AG if UC is also changed by the same extent in the same direction.

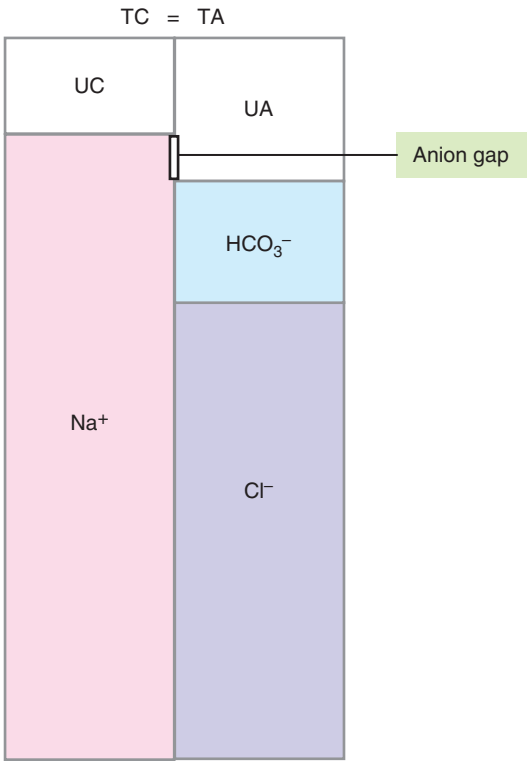


Figure 14-5 **The anatomy of anion gap.** When UC is defined as all serum cations other than Na^+, and UA as all serum anions other than Cl^- or bicarbonate, the serum anion gap can be stated as UA minus UC.

Decreased AG is most commonly due to a reduction in serum albumin concentration, while increased AG is most often due to an accumulation of anions of acids, such as sulfate, lactate, and ketoacids. Although bromide is an unmeasured anion, bromide intoxication is accompanied by a low serum anion gap because bromide causes a false increase in serum Cl^-. A change in serum Na^+ usually does not cause a change in AG because serum Cl^- usually changes in the same direction. For the same reason, HCO_3^- concentrations cannot be used to predict a change in AG. For example, when the serum HCO_3^- concentration increases in metabolic alkalosis, Cl^- concentration usually decreases reciprocally in order to maintain electrical neutrality, so the anion gap is unchanged. When HCO_3^- concentration decreases, Cl^- concentration may remain unchanged or be increased. If bicarbonate is replaced by another anion, Cl^- concentration remains unchanged, resulting in normochloremic acidosis with increased anion gap. Examples are organic acidosis, uremic acidosis, and acidosis due to toxic alcohols (Kraut & Kurtz, 2008). When bicarbonate concentration decreases without another anion replacing it, electrical neutrality is maintained by a higher Cl^- concentration, resulting in hyperchloremic acidosis with a normal anion gap. Proper interpretation of serum anion gap requires the knowledge of the existence of conditions that influence anion gap, even though they may have no direct effect on metabolic acidosis. For example, if a person with hypoalbuminemia develops lactic acidosis, the anion gap could be normal because the low albumin and the lactate accumulation have opposite effects on the anion gap (Kraut & Madias, 2007). Similarly, hypermagnesemia (increased unmeasured cation) does not decrease the anion gap if it is accompanied by increased sulfate (unmeasured anion) as in magnesium sulfate intoxication (Oh & Carroll, 1977). Sometimes, anion gap is increased with magnesium sulfate intoxication because the increase in sulfate exceeds the increase in magnesium (Tofil et al, 2005). The likely explanation is that sulfate, being mainly an extracellular electrolyte, has a smaller volume of distribution than magnesium, which has a higher concentration in the cell than in the ECF.

It has been suggested that in pure high anion gap metabolic acidosis, the decrease in serum bicarbonate is about equal to the increase in serum anion gap. A concentration of serum bicarbonate higher than expected has been taken as evidence for the presence of complicating metabolic alkalosis. However, this rule often does not apply in individual cases (Kraut & Madias, 2007; Rastegar, 2007).

Differential Diagnosis

One approach to the differential diagnosis of metabolic acidosis is to calculate the serum anion gap. An increased anion gap suggests organic acidosis, uremic acidosis, and acidosis due to various toxic alcohols (Kraut & Kurtz, 2008; Fenves et al, 2006; Judge, 2005; Schwerk et al, 2007; Zar et al, 2007) (Box 14-9). A normal anion gap suggests renal tubular acidosis and acidosis due to diarrheal loss of bicarbonate. Most cases of uremic acidosis are accompanied by a normal anion gap; the anion gap is increased only in advanced chronic and acute renal failure. Furthermore, the vast majority of patients with ketoacidosis pass through a phase of hyperchloremic acidosis (normal anion gap) during the recovery phase (Oh et al, 1990).

Another approach to the differential diagnosis of metabolic acidosis is to classify the acidosis into renal and extrarenal acidosis. Three major causes of extrarenal acidosis are organic acidosis, diarrheal loss of bicarbonate, and acidosis due to exogenous toxins. The presence of organic acidosis is usually obvious from clinical findings (e.g., evidence of tissue hypoxia in lactic acidosis, or hyperglycemia, ketonuria, and ketonemia in ketoacidosis). History of drug ingestion and acute onset suggest acidosis due to exogenous toxins (Judge, 2005).

Diarrhea as the cause of metabolic acidosis is first suspected from history, but history is often misleading because the severity of diarrhea cannot be easily determined. The measurement of urine anion gap is useful in determining the severity of diarrhea. Urine anion gap, which is measured as urine $(Na^+ + K^+)$ – urine Cl^-, is reduced or negative when diarrhea is severe. The low urine anion gap in diarrhea is explained by the preferential loss of $Na^+ + K^+$ in excess of Cl^- because diarrheal fluid contains more $Na^+ + K^+$ than Cl^-, as some of these cations are balanced by bicarbonate and organic anions. In other types of metabolic acidosis, urine anion gap is not altered as long as there is no extrarenal loss of electrolytes that are components of urine anion gap (Oh & Carroll, 2002a).

http://basicbook.net

BOX 14-9

Classification of Metabolic Acidosis by Anion Gap

Metabolic Acidosis with Increased Anion Gap (Normochloremic Acidosis)

Ketoacidosis.
L-Lactic acidosis
D-lactic acidosis
Beta-hydroxybutyric acidosis
Uremic acidosis
Ingestion of toxins: salicylate, methanol, ethylene glycol, acetaminophen

Metabolic Acidosis with Normal Anion Gap (Hyperchloremic Acidosis)

Renal tubular acidosis
Uremic acidosis (early)
Acidosis following respiratory alkalosis
Intestinal loss of bicarbonate
Administration of chloride-containing acid: HCl, NH_4Cl
Ketoacidosis during recovery phase
Toluene intoxication (occasionally it causes high anion gap acidosis)

BOX 14-10

Mechanisms and Causes of Increased Extracellular Bicarbonate Concentration

Loss of HCl from the stomach (e.g., gastric suctioning, vomiting)
Administration of bicarbonate or bicarbonate precursors (e.g., sodium lactate, sodium acetate, sodium citrate)
Shift of H^+ into the cell (e.g., K^+ depletion, refeeding alkalosis)
Rapid contraction of extracellular volume without loss of bicarbonate (e.g., contraction alkalosis by the use of loop diuretics)
Increased renal excretion of acid (e.g., diuretic therapy, high aldosterone state, potassium depletion, high pCO_2, secondary hypoparathyroidism)

BOX 14-11

Causes of Respiratory Acidosis

Lung diseases: chronic obstructive lung disease, advanced interstitial lung disease, acute asthma
Thoracic deformity or airway obstruction
Diseases of respiratory muscle and nerve: myasthenia gravis, hypokalemia paralysis, botulism, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Guillain-Barré syndrome
Depression of the respiratory center: barbiturate intoxication, stroke, myxedema

Once extrarenal acidosis is excluded, renal acidosis is the only alternative diagnosis. Of the two types of renal acidosis, uremic acidosis can be readily ruled out by normal values of serum creatinine and BUN. If renal acidosis is confirmed but uremic acidosis is ruled out, the diagnosis must be renal tubular acidosis. Among the three types of RTA, type IV RTA is suspected by the presence of hyperkalemia. Hypokalemia suggests either type I or type II RTA. If spontaneous urine pH is below 5.5, type I RTA is ruled out. If urine pH is higher than 5.5, urine pH should be measured after oral administration of 40 mg of furosemide or 10 mg of torsemide. The latter drug has a higher sensitivity and specificity (Han et al, 2005). If the urine pH remains above 5.5, the likely diagnosis is type I RTA. The evidence of Fanconi's syndrome (the best evidence is renal glycosuria) suggests type II RTA.

Compensation

Compensation of metabolic acidosis is achieved by hyperventilation, which results in decreased pCO_2. The compensation is moderately effective in restoring the normal pH, and the maximal compensation is completed within 12 to 24 hours. The formula that predicts the expected decrease in pCO_2 (ΔpCO_2) is as follows:

$$\Delta pCO_2 = \Delta HCO_3^- \times 1.2 \pm 2 \; (\Delta HCO_3^- \text{ a given decrease in a serum } HCO_3^- \text{ concentration}) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-39)}$$

METABOLIC ALKALOSIS

Causes and Pathogenesis

At normal serum bicarbonate concentrations, bicarbonate filtered at the glomerulus is almost completely reabsorbed. As serum bicarbonate concentrations rise above the normal level, bicarbonate reabsorption is incomplete and bicarbonaturia begins. A slight increase in serum bicarbonate above 24 mmol/L causes marked bicarbonaturia. Hence, when renal tubular bicarbonate handling and GFR are normal, maintenance of a high plasma bicarbonate concentration is extremely difficult unless an enormous amount of bicarbonate is given. Therefore, maintenance of metabolic alkalosis requires two conditions: a mechanism to increase plasma bicarbonate and a mechanism to maintain an increased concentration. A bicarbonate concentration may be increased by net gain of alkali by one of the following mechanisms: administration of alkali, gastric loss of HCl through vomiting or nasogastric suction, or by renal generation of bicarbonate (Box 14-10). Maintenance of high plasma bicarbonate concentration occurs in advanced renal failure or when renal threshold for bicarbonate is increased (Palmer & Alpern, 1997). The two most common causes for increased renal bicarbonate threshold are volume depletion and K^+ depletion. Potassium deficiency reduces the intracellular pH of the proximal tubules, and this stimulates bicarbonate reabsorption. Increased reabsorption of potassium in exchange for proton by K^+-H^+-ATPase in the collecting duct also contributes to metabolic alkalosis in potassium deficiency states (Codina & DuBoce, 2006). Metabolic alkalosis corrected by administration of chloride-containing fluid (e.g., NaCl or KCl solution) is called *chloride-responsive metabolic alkalosis* (e.g., vomiting-induced alkalosis). Patients with chloride-responsive metabolic alkalosis are typically volume depleted (Oh & Carroll, 2002b). However, in edema-forming conditions, administration of Cl^- may not improve metabolic alkalosis even though the mechanism of high renal bicarbonate threshold is volume depletion, because administered chloride is retained in the edema fluid. Parathyroid hormone (PTH) normally interferes with bicarbonate reabsorption in the proximal tubule, and the renal tubular bicarbonate threshold tends to be increased in a low PTH state, such as primary and secondary hypoparathyroidism (Khanna & Kurtzman, 2006).

Compensation

Compensation of metabolic alkalosis is achieved by hypoventilation that results in increased pCO_2. Partly because hypoxemia is inevitable with hypoventilation in the absence of oxygen supplement, compensation is least effective in metabolic alkalosis among the four types of acid-base disorders. The formula that predicts the expected increase in pCO_2 (ΔpCO_2) is as follows:

$$\Delta pCO_2 = \Delta HCO_3^- \times 0.7 \pm 5 \; (\Delta HCO_3^- \text{ is a given decrease in a serum } HCO_3^- \text{ concentration}) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-40)}$$

The maximal compensation is completed within 12 to 24 hours. Observations have shown that no matter how severe the metabolic alkalosis, pCO_2 rarely exceeds 60 mmHg unless a complicating independent respiratory disorder that compromises ventilation coexists (Oh & Oh, 2003).

RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

Causes and Pathogenesis

The causes of respiratory acidosis are usually quite apparent. They include diseases of the lung (by far the most common causes), respiratory muscle, respiratory nerve, thoracic cage, and airways, and suppression of the respiratory center by stroke, drugs such as phenobarbital, or severe hypothyroidism (Box 14-11).

Compensation

The normal compensatory response to respiratory acidosis is to increase HCO_3^- concentration in an attempt to minimize the reduction in pH. This occurs in two distinct stages, first by tissue buffering of CO_2, and second by increased renal excretion of acid.

Tissue Buffering

This phase of compensation is extremely fast, and it occurs within 1 second. The chemical reaction is as follows:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow H_2CO_3 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-41)}$$

$$H_2CO_3 + KBuff \rightarrow HBuff + KHCO_3 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 14-42)}$$

KBuff is a non-HCO_3^- buffer, and the reaction proceeds to the right because of the rising pCO_2. Because extracellular fluid has little non-HCO_3^- buffers, most of this buffering occurs in the cell. The increased

http://basicbook.net

concentration of cellular HCO_3^- in red blood cells causes an extracellular shift of HCO_3^- in exchange for Cl^- through the ubiquitous anion exchanger on the red blood cell membrane. The relationship between the increase in pCO_2 (ΔpCO_2) and the increase in serum levels of HCO_3^- (ΔHCO_3^-) in acute respiratory acidosis is shown in the following equation:

$$\Delta HCO_3^- \text{ (mmol/L)} = \Delta pCO_2 \text{ (mmHg)} \times 0.07 \pm 1.5 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-43)}$$

Renal Compensation

Renal compensation for respiratory acidosis is delayed, but it increases the HCO_3^- concentration to a much higher level. The increased concentration of HCO_3^- is achieved by increased net acid excretion, primarily in the form of NH_4^+. Maximal compensation requires 5 days but is 90% complete in 3 days. Increased excretion of NH_4^+ is accompanied by Cl^-. As new HCO_3^- is retained, Cl^- is lost. Therefore, it follows that when respiratory acidosis is corrected, excretion of HCO_3^- must be accompanied by retention of Cl^-, which is possible only if Cl^- is taken in. Restriction of NaCl intake during the recovery phase of chronic respiratory acidosis results in the maintenance of a high serum HCO_3^-. Such a condition is called *posthypercapnic metabolic alkalosis*.

The relationship between the increase in pCO_2 (ΔpCO_2) and the increase in HCO_3^- (ΔHCO_3^-) in chronic fully compensated respiratory acidosis is shown in the following equation:

$$\Delta HCO_3^- \text{ (mmol/L)} = \Delta pCO_2 \text{ (mmHg)} \times 0.4 \pm 3 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-44)}$$

RESPIRATORY ALKALOSIS

Causes and Pathogenesis

With the exception of respiratory-induced alkalosis and voluntary hyperventilation, respiratory alkalosis is the result of stimulation of the respiratory center. The two most common causes of respiratory alkalosis are hypoxic stimulation of the peripheral respiratory center, namely carotid body and aortic arch chemoreceptors, and stimulation of the pulmonary receptors caused by various disorders of the lung, such as pneumonia, pulmonary congestion, and pulmonary embolism (Widdicombe, 2006).

Certain drugs (e.g., salicylate and progesterone) stimulate the respiratory center directly (Saaresranta et al, 1999; Bayliss & Millhorn, 1992). High progesterone levels are responsible for chronic respiratory alkalosis of pregnancy (Wise et al, 2006). Respiratory alkalosis is also common in gram-negative sepsis and liver disease through unknown mechanisms (Ahya et al, 2006). Blood pH tends to be extremely high when respiratory alkalosis is caused by psychogenic stimulation of the respiratory center because the condition is usually superacute and therefore there is no time for compensation. Causes of respiratory alkalosis are listed in Box 14-12.

Compensation

Two types of compensation lower plasma HCO_3^- and minimize the increase in blood pH in respiratory alkalosis: tissue buffering and renal compensation.

Tissue Buffering

Compensation by buffering of HCO_3^- is completed within 1 second with the reactions (Carroll & Oh, 1989):

$$HBuff + HCO_3^- \rightarrow H_2CO_3 + Buff \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-45)}$$

$$H_2CO_3 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-46)}$$

The reactions proceed to the right because CO_2 is lost by hyperventilation. The magnitude of reduction in HCO_3^- content depends on the amount of cellular acid buffers (HBuff) that react with HCO_3^-. As cellular HCO_3^- is consumed in the buffer reaction, extracellular HCO_3^- enters the cell in exchange for cellular Cl^- that enters the extracellular fluid. An additional mechanism of tissue buffering is increased production of lactic acid and other organic acids (Hood & Tannen, 1998). Increased lactic acid production is explained in part by the stimulatory effect of alkaline pH on phosphofructokinase, a rate-limiting enzyme for glycolysis. The magnitude of reduction in plasma HCO_3^- concentration by acute compensation is predicted using the following equation:

$$\Delta HCO_3^- \text{ (mmol/L)} = \Delta pCO_2 \text{ (mmHg)} \times 0.2 \pm 2.5 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-47)}$$

(ΔHCO_3^- (mmol/L) is the expected decrease in plasma HCO_3^- for a given decrease in pCO_2 (ΔpCO_2) in mmHg).

Renal Compensation

Renal compensation of respiratory alkalosis is achieved by reduction in net acid excretion (Carroll & Oh, 1989; Oh & Oh, 2003). This is achieved initially by increased excretion of HCO_3^-, but later by reduced excretion of NH_4^+ and titratable acid. The magnitude of reduction in plasma HCO_3^- concentration due to renal compensation can be predicted using the following equation:

$$\Delta HCO_3^- \text{ (mmol/L)} = \Delta pCO_2 \text{ (mmHg)} \times 0.2 \pm 2.5 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 14-48)}$$

(ΔHCO_3^- (mmol/L) is the expected decrease in plasma HCO_3^- for a given decrease in pCO_2 (ΔpCO_2) in mmHg.)

Among the four types of acid-base disorders, compensation is most effective in respiratory alkalosis; pH after compensation sometimes returns to normal levels. The process is completed within 2 to 3 days. When complete compensation does occur, one should look for evidence of complicating metabolic acidosis.

MIXED ACID-BASE DISORDERS

The term *mixed acid-base disorder* refers to a clinical condition in which two or more primary acid-base disorders coexist. They generally present with one obvious disturbance with what appears to be an inappropriate (excessive or inadequate) compensation. The "inappropriateness" of the compensatory process is probably the result of a separate primary disorder. The appropriate degrees of compensation for primary acid-base disorders have been determined by analysis of data from a large number of patients, and they are expressed in the form of equations in Box 14-13. When two disorders influence the blood pH in opposite directions, the blood pH will be determined by the dominant disorder. If disorders cancel out each other's effects, blood pH can be normal. When there is any degree of compensation for acid-base disorders, both pCO_2 and HCO_3^- change in the same direction (i.e., both are high or both are low). If pCO_2 and HCO_3^- have changed in opposite directions (e.g., pCO_2 is high and HCO_3^- is low or pCO_2 is low and HCO_3^- is high), the presence of a mixed acid-base disorder is certain. Appropriateness of compensation can be determined by consulting Box 14-13. Compensation could be excessive, insufficient, or appropriate. One can also have an approximate idea about the appropriateness of compensation from the degree of pH deviation without consulting the formula for normal compensation.

BOX 14-12

Causes of Respiratory Alkalosis

Diseases of the lung: any intrapulmonary pathology such as pneumonia, pulmonary fibrosis, pulmonary congestion, pulmonary embolism
Hypoxemia
CNS lesions
Gram-negative sepsis
Liver disease
Drugs: salicylate, progesterone

BOX 14-13

Formulas for Predicting Normal Acid-Base Compensation

Metabolic acidosis: $\Delta pCO_2 = \Delta HCO_3^- \times 1.2 \pm 2$
Metabolic alkalosis*: $\Delta pCO_2 = \Delta HCO_3^- \times 0.7 \pm 5$
Acute respiratory acidosis: $\Delta HCO_3^- = \Delta pCO_2 \times 0.07 \pm 1.5$
Chronic respiratory acidosis: $\Delta HCO_3^- = \Delta pCO_2 \times 0.4 \pm 3$
Acute respiratory alkalosis: $\Delta HCO_3^- = \Delta pCO_2 \times 0.2 \pm 2.5$
Chronic respiratory alkalosis: $\Delta HCO_3^- = \Delta pCO_2 \times 0.5 \pm 2.5$
ΔHCO_3^- and ΔpCO_2 represent the difference between normal and actual values in bicarbonate and pCO_2, respectively

*No matter how high the serum HCO_3^- rises, pCO_2 rarely rises above 60 mmHg in metabolic alkalosis.

http://basicbook.net

In general, compensation is most effective in respiratory alkalosis (pH is often normalized), the next best is respiratory acidosis (pH may become normal), and the third best is metabolic acidosis. Compensation is least effective in metabolic alkalosis, probably because hypoxemia, an inevitable consequence of hypoventilation, stimulates ventilation. If a patient has a low pCO_2 and a low HCO_3^- with a normal pH, the likely diagnosis is compensated respiratory alkalosis rather than compensated metabolic acidosis (Carroll & Oh, 1989; Oh & Oh, 2003).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Aukland K, Reed RK: Interstitial lymphatic mechanisms in the control of extra cellular fluid volume, *Physiol Rev* 73:1–78, 1993.

Carroll HJ, Oh MS: *Water, electrolyte, and acid-base metabolism*, Philadelphia, 1989, Lippincott, p 1989.

Frantz C, Stewart KM, Weaver BM: The extracellular matrix at a glance, *J Cell Sci* 123:4195–4200, 2010.

Gennari FJ: Current concepts. Serum osmolality. Uses and limitations, *N Engl J Med* 310:102–105, 1984.

Giebisch GH: A trail of research on potassium, *Kidney Int* 62:1498–1512, 2002.

Gietz R, Mohammadi M: Exploring the mechanisms of FGF signaling through the lens of structural biology, *Nature Rev Mol Cell Biol* 14:166–180, 2013.

Halperin ML, Kamel KS, Oh MS: Mechanisms to concentrate the urine: an opinion, *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens* 17:416–422, 2008.

Kraut JA, Madias NE: Serum anion gap: its uses and limitations in clinical medicine, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 2:162–174, 2007.

Kyle UG, Bosaeusb I, De Lorenzo AD, et al: Bioelectrical impedance analysis—part I: review of principles and methods, *Clin Nutr* 23:1226–1243, 2004.

Mehta R, Kellum JA, Shah S, et al, for the Acute Kidney Injury Network: Acute Kidney Injury Network: report of an initiative to improve outcomes in acute kidney injury, *Crit Care* 11:R31, 2007.

Moore F: *The body cell mass and its supporting environment*, Philadelphia, 1963, Saunders.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ: The anion gap, *N Engl J Med* 297:814–817, 1977.

Oh MS: Does serum creatinine rise faster in rhabdomyolysis? *Nephron* 63:255–257, 1993.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ: Regulation of intracellular and extracellular volume. In Arieff AI, DePronzo RA, editors: *Fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base disorders*, ed 2, New York, 1995, Churchill Livingstone.

Oh MS: *Acid-base, electrolytes*, New York, 2003, OHCO, LLC.

Relman AS, Lennon EJ, Lemann J Jr: Endogenous production of fixed acid and the measurement of the net balance of acid in normal subjects, *J Clin Invest* 40:1621–1630, 1961.

Rose BD: New approach to disturbances in the plasma sodium concentration, *Am J Med* 81:1033–1040, 1986.

Smith HW: *The kidney: structure and function in health and disease*, New York, 1951, Oxford University Press, pp 231–238.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Abbink F, Laarman C, Braam K, et al Beta-trace protein is not superior to cystatin C for the estimation of GFR in patients receiving corticosteroids, *Clin Biochem* 41:299–305, 2008.

Abdelhamid S, Lewicka S, Vecsei P, et al: A new subset of mineralocorticoid hypertension with excess of 21-deoxyaldosterone and Kelly's-M1 steroid: clinical and morphological findings, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 80:737–744, 1995.

Agarwal R, Emmett M: The post-transurethral resection of prostate syndrome: therapeutic proposals, *Am J Kidney Dis* 24:108–111, 1994.

Agarwal RA: Ambulatory GFR measurement with cold iothalamate in adults with chronic kidney disease, *Am J Kidney Dis* 41:752–759, 2003.

Agre P, King LS, Yasui M, et al: Water transport controversies—an overview, *J Physiol* 542:3–16, 2002.

Agraharkar M, Agraharkar A: Posthysteroscopic hyponatremia: evidence for a multifactorial cause, *Am J Kidney Dis* 30:717–719, 1997.

Aguilera G, Rabadan-Diehl C: Regulation of vasopressin V1b receptors in the anterior pituitary gland of the rat, *Exp Physiol* 85:19S–26S, 2000.

Ahya SN, José Soler M, Levitsky J, et al: Acid-base and potassium disorders in liver disease, *Semin Nephrol* 26:466–470, 2006.

Akan H, Sargin S, Turkseven F, et al: Comparison of three different irrigation fluids used in transurethral prostatectomy based on plasma volume expansion and metabolic effects, *Br J Urol* 78:224–227, 1996.

Ajaelo I, Koenig K, Snoey E: Severe hyponatremia and inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion following ecstasy use, *Acad Emerg Med* 5:839–840, 1998.

Arenas-Pinto A, Grant AD, Edwards S, et al: Lactic acidosis in HIV infected patients: a systematic review of published cases, *Sex Transm Infect* 79:340–343, 2003.

Argani P, Erlandson RA, Rosai J: Thymic neuroblastoma in adults: report of three cases with special emphasis on its association with the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, *Am J Clin Pathol* 108:537–543, 1997.

Arlt W, Dahia PL, Callies F, et al: Ectopic ACTH production by a bronchial carcinoid tumor responsive to desmopressin in vivo and in vitro, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 47:623–627, 1997.

Bahr V, Franzen N, Oelkers W, et al: Severe hyponatremia due to hypopituitarism with adrenal insufficiency: report on 28 cases, *Eur J Endocrinol* 155:845–848, 2006.

Ballabh P, Braun A, Nedergaard M: The blood-brain barrier: an overview: structure, regulation, and clinical implications, *Neurobiol Dis* 16:1–13, 2004.

Barbour HM, Welch C: Development and evaluation of a kinetic diacetyl monoxime method for urine urea, *Ann Clin Biochem* 29:101–104, 1992.

Bartter FC, Schwartz WB: A syndrome of renal sodium loss and hyponatremia probably resulting from inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, *Am J Med* 42:790–799, 1967.

Bayliss DA, Millhorn DE: Central neural mechanisms of progesterone action: application to the respiratory system, *J Appl Physiol* 73:393–404, 1992.

Bellevue R, Dosik H, Spergel G, et al: Pseudohyperkalemia and extreme leukocytosis, *J Lab Clin Med* 85:660–664, 1975.

Bellomo R, Ronco C, Kellum JA: ADQI workgroup. Acute renal failure—definition, outcome measures, animal models, fluid therapy and information technology needs: the Second International Consensus Conference of the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative (ADQI) Group, *Crit Care* 8:R204–R212, 2004.

Bennet M, Dent C, Ma Q: Urine NGAL predicts severity of acute kidney injury after cardiac surgery: a prospective study, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 3:665–673, 2008.

Benziane B, Chibalin AV: Frontiers: Skeletal muscle sodium pump regulation: a translocation paradigm, *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 295:E553–E558, 2008.

Bianchi C, Donadio C, Tramonti G, et al: Reappraisal of serum beta2-microglobulin as marker of GFR, *Ren Fail* 23:419–429, 2001.

Biggi A, Vigletti A, Farinelli MC, et al: Estimation of glomerular filtration rate using chromium-51 ethylene diamine tetra-acetic acid and technetium-99m diethylene triamine penta-acetic acid, *Eur J Nucl Med* 22:532–536, 1995.

Bihorac A, Chawla LS, Shaw AD, et al: Validation of cell-cycle arrest biomarkers for acute kidney injury using clinical adjudication, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 189:932–939, 2014.

Bilbrey GL, Herbin L, Norman W, et al: Skeletal muscle resting membrane potential in potassium deficiency, *Clin Invest* 52:3011–3018, 1973.

Bock HA, Hermle M, Brunner FP, et al: Pressure dependent modulation of renin release in isolated perfused glomeruli, *Kidney Int* 41:275–280, 1992.

Bommer J, Keller C, Gehlen F, et al: Acidosis in uremic patients, *Clin Nephrol* 46:280–285, 1996.

Boone M, Deen PM: Congenital nephrogenic diabetes insipidus: what can we learn from mouse models? *Exp Physiol* 94:186–190, 2009.

Bradberry SM, Vale JA: Disturbances of potassium homeostasis in poisoning, *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol* 33:295–310, 1995.

Brans YW, Kazzi NJ, Andrew DS, et al: Simultaneous estimation of neonatal total body water by antipyrine and $H_2{}^{18}O$ dilution, *Biol Neonate* 58:137–144, 1990.

Bourque CW, Oliet SH: Osmoreceptors in the central nervous system, *Annu Rev Physiol* 59:601–619, 1997.

Brautbar N, Levi J, Rosler A, et al: Familial hyperkalemia, hypertension and hyporeninemia with normal aldosterone levels. A tubular defect in potassium handling, *Arch Intern Med* 138:607–610, 1978.

Brochner-Mortensen J, Giese J, Rossing N: Renal inulin clearance versus total plasma clearance of ^{51}Cr-EDTA, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 23:301–305, 1969.

Burg MB: Molecular basis of osmotic regulation, *Am J Physiol* 268:F983–F989, 1995.

Burg MB, Ferraris JD: Intracellular organic osmols: function and regulation, *J Biol Chem* 283:7309–7313, 2008.

Burton RF: The protein content of extracellular fluids and its relevance to the study of ionic regulation: net charge and colloid osmotic pressure, *Comp Biochem Physiol* 90:11–16, 1988.

Canada TW, Weavind LM, Augustin KM: Possible liposomal amphotericin B–induced nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, *Ann Pharmacother* 37:70–73, 2003.

Cannon SC: An expanding view for the molecular basis of familial periodic paralysis, *Neuromuscul Disord* 12:533–543, 2002.

Carvounis CP, Nisar S, Guro-Razuman S: Significance of the fractional excretion of urea in the differential diagnosis of acute renal failure, *Kidney Int* 62:2223–2229, 2002.

Cheema-Dhadli S, Chong CK, Kim NH, et al: Importance of residual water permeability on the excretion of water during water diuresis in rats, *Electrolyte Blood Press* 8:1–9, 2010.

Cheng C-J, Lin C-S, Chang L-W, et al: Perplexing hyperkalemia, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 21:3320–3323, 2006.

Choi M, Scholl UI, Yue P, et al: K+ channel mutations in adrenal aldosterone-producing adenomas and hereditary hypertension, *Science* 331:768–772, 2011.

Clemessy JL, Favier C, Borron SW, et al: Hypokalemia related to acute chloroquine ingestion, *Lancet* 346:877–880, 1995.

Cockcroft DW, Gault MH: Prediction of creatinine clearance from serum creatinine, *Nephron* 16:31–41, 1976.

Codina J, DuBose TD Jr: Molecular regulation and physiology of the H+,K+-ATPases in kidney, *Semin Nephrol* 26:345–351, 2006.

Counahan R, Chantler C, Ghazali S, et al: Estimation of glomerular filtration rate from plasma creatinine concentration in children, *Arch Dis Child* 51:875–878, 1976.

Christensen AB, Groth S: Determination of 99mTc-DTPA clearance by a single plasma sample method, *Clin Physiol* 6:579–588, 1986.

Cooperman LH: Succinylcholine-induced hyperkalemia in neuromuscular disease, *JAMA* 213:1867–1871, 1970.

Davies PS, Preece MA, Hicks CJ, et al: The prediction of total body water using bioelectrical impedance in children and adolescents, *Ann Hum Biol* 15:237–240, 1988.

Day AS, Abbott GD: D-lactic acidosis in short bowel syndrome, *N Z Med J* 112:277–278, 1999.

Decaux G, Musch W: Hyponatremia secondary to the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 3:1175–1184, 2008.

Delaney MF, Zisman A, Kettyle WM: Ketoacidosis and hyperglycemic hyperosmolar nonketotic syndrome, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 29:683–705, 2000.

Delaunay J, Stewart G, Iolascon A: Hereditary dehydrated and overhydrated stomatocytosis: recent advances, *Curr Opin Hematol* 6:110–114, 1999.

De Lorenzo A, Candeloro N, Andreoli A, et al: Determination of intracellular water by multifrequency bioelectrical impedance, *Ann Nutr Metab* 39:177–184, 1995.

Dennen P, Parikh CR: Biomarkers of acute kidney injury: can we replace serum creatinine? *Clin Nephrol* 68:269–278, 2007.

Dent CL, Ma Q, Dastrala S, et al: Plasma neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin predicts acute kidney injury, morbidity and mortality after pediatric cardiac surgery: a prospective uncontrolled cohort study, *Crit Care* 11:R127, 2007.

de Rouffignac C: Recent data on mechanisms of urine concentration and dilution, *J Physiol (Paris)* 71:181A–255A, 1975.

Devarajan P: Neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL): a new marker of kidney disease, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest Suppl* 241:89–94, 2008a.

Devarajan P: Emerging urinary biomarkers in the diagnosis of acute kidney injury, *Expert Opin Med Diagn* 2:387–398, 2008b.

Don BR, Sebastian A, Cheitlin M, et al: Pseudohyperkalemia caused by fist clenching during phlebotomy, *N Engl J Med* 322:1290–1292, 1990.

Dumitras S, Sechaud R, Drollmann A, et al: Effect of cimetidine, a model drug for inhibition of the organic cation transport (OCT2/MATE1) in the kidney, on the pharmacokinetics of glycopyrronium, *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther* 51:771–779, 2013.

Emser W: Hypermagnesemic periodic paralysis: treatment with digitalis and lithium carbonate, *Arch Neurol* 39:727–730, 1982.

Endeward V, Gros G: Low carbon dioxide permeability of the apical epithelial membrane of guinea-pig colon, *J Physiol-London* 567:253–265, 2005.

Fakitsas P, Adam G, Daidié D, et al: Early aldosterone-induced gene product regulates the epithelial sodium channel by deubiquitylation, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 18:1084–1092, 2007.

Falcó V, Crespo M, Ribera E: Lactic acidosis related to nucleoside therapy in HIV-infected patients, *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 4:1321–1329, 2003.

Fallon JK, Kicman AT, Hutt AJ, et al: Vasopressin and oxytocin secretion in response to the consumption of ecstasy in a clubbing population, *Lancet* 351:1784, 1998.

Fawcett JK, Scott JE: A rapid and precise method for the determination of urea, *J Clin Pathol* 13:156–159, 1960.

Fenves A, Kirkpatrick HM 3rd, Patel VV, et al: Increased anion gap metabolic acidosis as a result of 5-oxoproline (pyroglutamic acid): a role for acetaminophen, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 1:441–447, 2006.

Feraille E, Carranza ML, Gonin S, et al: Insulin-induced stimulation of Na^+,K^+-ATPase activity in kidney proximal tubule cells depends on phosphorylation of the alpha-subunit at Tyr-10, *Mol Biol Cell* 10:2847–2859, 1999.

Ferlito A, Rinaldo A, Devaney KO: Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion associated with head neck cancers: review of the literature, *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 106:878–883, 1997.

Finer G, Shalev H, Birk OS, et al: Transient neonatal hyperkalemia in the antenatal (ROMK defective) Bartter syndrome, *J Pediatr* 142:318–323, 2003.

Fleming JS, Wilkinson J, Oliver RM, et al: Comparison of radionuclide estimation of glomerular filtration rate using technetium-99m diethylene-triamine-penta-acetic acid and chromium^{51} ethylene-diamine-tetraacetic acid, *Eur J Nuc Med* 18:391–395, 1991.

Florin T, Neale G, Gibson GR, et al: Metabolism of dietary sulphate: absorption and excretion in humans, *Gut* 32:766–773, 1991.

Fontaine B: Periodic paralysis, *Adv Genet* 63:3–23, 2008.

Fossati P, Ponti M, Passoni G, et al: A step forward in enzymatic measurement of creatinine, *Clin Chem* 40:130–137, 1994.

Friedmann AS, Malott KA, Memoli VA, et al: Products of vasopressin in small-cell carcinoma of the lung, *Br J Cancer* 69:260–263, 1994.

Frigeri A, Nicchia GP, Balena R, et al: Aquaporins in skeletal muscle: reassessment of the functional role of aquaporin-4, *FASEB J* 18:905–907, 2004.

Fung HT, Lam KK, Wong OF, et al: A case of fatal hydroxychloroquine overdose, *Hong Kong J Emerg Med* 14:53–57, 2007.

http://basicbook.net

Gamble JL, Robertson JS, Hannigan CA: Chloride, bromide, sodium, and sucrose space in man, *J Clin Invest* 32:483–489, 1953.

Gaspari F, Perico N, Remuzzi G: Measurement of glomerular filtration rate, *Kidney Int Suppl* 63:S151–S154, 1997.

Gennari FJ, Weise WJ: Acid-base disturbances in gastrointestinal disease, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 3:1861–1868, 2008.

Giebisch G: Renal potassium transport: mechanisms and regulation, *Am J Physiol* 274:F817–F833, 1998.

Goguen JM, Halperin ML: Can insulin administration cause an acute metabolic acidosis in vivo? An experimental study in dogs, *Diabetologia* 36:813–816, 1993.

Gold PW, Robertson GL, Ballenger JC, et al: Carbamazepine diminishes the sensitivity of the plasma arginine vasopressin response to osmotic stimulation, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 57:952–957, 1983.

Goldbang A, Murphy M, Hamad A, et al: A new kindred with pseudohypoaldosteronism type II and a novel mutation (564D>H) in the acidic motif of the WNK4 gene, *Hypertension* 46:295–300, 2005.

Goldman DE: Potential, impedance, and rectification in membranes, *J Gen Phyiol* 27:37–60, 1943.

Goulet O, Colomb-Jung V, Joly F: Role of the colon in short bowel syndrome and intestinal transplantation, *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 48:S66–S71, 2009.

Gowda RM, Cohen RA, Khan IA: Toad venom poisoning: resemblance to digoxin toxicity and therapeutic implications, *Heart* 89:e14, 2003.

Gowrishankar M, Lin SH, Mallie JP, et al: Acute hyponatremia in the perioperative period: insights into its pathophysiology and recommendations for management, *Clin Nephrol* 50:352–360, 1998.

Graham JA: Muscle water and electrolytes in pyloric stenosis, *Lancet* 295:386–389, 1970.

Greger R, Schlatter E, Lang F: Evidence for electroneutral sodium chloride cotransport in the cortical thick ascending limb of Henle's loop of rabbit kidney, *Pflugers Arch* 396:308–314, 1983.

Gronert GA, Theye RA: Pathophysiology of hyperkalemia induced by succinylcholine, *Anesthesiology* 43:89–99, 1975.

Grubb A: Diagnostic value of analysis of cysC and protein HC in biological fluids, *Clin Nephrol* 38:S20–S27, 1992.

Grubb A, Bjork J, Lindstrom B: Cystatin C, a marker of successful aging and glomerular filtration rate, is not influenced by inflammation, *Scan J Clin Lab Invest* 71:145–149, 2011.

Gudivaka R, Schoeller DA, Kushner RF, et al: Single- and multifrequency models for bioelectrical impedance analysis of body water compartments, *J Appl Physiol* 87:1087–1096, 1999.

Györke ZS, Sulyok E, Guignard JP: Ammonium chloride metabolic acidosis and the activity of renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system in children, *Eur J Pediatr* 150:547–549, 1991.

Hall JE: The renin-angiotensin system: renal actions and blood pressure regulation, *Compr Ther* 17:8–17, 1991.

Halperin ML, Kamel KS: Potassium, *Lancet* 352:135–140, 1998.

Halperin ML, Bichet DG, Oh MS: Integrative physiology of basal water permeability in the distal nephron: implications for the syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, *Clin Nephrol* 56:339–345, 2001.

Halperin ML, Oh MS, Kamel KS: Integrating effects of aquaporins, vasopressin, distal delivery of filtrate and residual water permeability on the magnitude of water diuresis, *Nephron Physiol* 114:11–17, 2010.

Han SW, Kim HJ, Oh MS: Comparison of the urine acidification tests of torsemide vs furosemide in healthy volunteers, *Nephrol Dialysis Transplant* 20:2582–2583, 2005.

Han WK, Waikar SS, Johnson A, et al: Urinary biomarkers in the early diagnosis of acute kidney injury, *Kidney Int* 73:863–869, 2008.

Hariprassad MK, Eisinger RP, Nadler IM, et al: Hyponatremia in psychogenic polydipsia, *Arch Intern Med* 140:1639–1642, 1980.

Hawkins R: Variability in potassium/hemoglobin ratios for hemolysis correction, *Clin Chem* 48:796–799, 2002.

Hayward LJ, Sandoval GM, Cannon SC: Defective slow inactivation of sodium channels contributes to familial periodic paralysis, *Neurology* 52:1447–1453, 1999.

Heilmann P, Heide J, Hundertmark S, et al: Administration of glycyrrhetinic acid: significant correlation between serum levels and the cortisol/cortisone-ratio in serum and urine, *Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes* 107:370–378, 1999.

Hellerstein S, Berenbom M, Uri S, et al: Creatinine clearance following cimetidine for estimation of glomerular filtration rate, *Pediatr Nephrol* 12:49–54, 1998.

Hensen J, Haenelt M, Gross P: Water retention after oral chlorpropamide is associated with an increase in renal papillary arginine vasopressin receptors, *Eur J Endocrinol* 132:459–464, 1995.

Herrera J, Rodriguez-Iturbe B: Stimulation of tubular secretion of creatinine in health and in conditions associated with reduced nephron mass. Evidence for a tubular functional reserve, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 13:623–629, 1998.

Hilbrands LB, Artz M, Wetzels JFM, et al: Cimetidine improves the reliability of creatinine as a marker of glomerular filtration, *Kidney Int* 40:1171–1176, 1991.

Higashi A, Morizono T: Artificially low serum urea caused by antibodies to bacteria urease, *Clin Chem* 46:297–299, 2000.

Hill LL: Body composition, normal electrolyte concentrations, and the maintenance of normal volume, tonicity, and acid-base metabolism, *Pediatr Clin North Am* 37:241–256, 1990.

Hill AR, Uribarri J, Mann J, et al: Altered water metabolism in tuberculosis: role of vasopressin, *Am J Med* 88:357–364, 1990.

Hillier TA, Abbott RD, Barrett EJ: Hyponatremia: evaluating the correction factor for hyperglycemia—correlation studies in 100 patients, *Am J Med* 106:399–403, 1999.

Hirsch R, Dent C, Pfriem H, et al: NGAL is an early predictive biomarker of contrast-induced nephropathy in children, *Pediatr Nephrol* 22:2089–2095, 2007.

Hogg RJ, Kokko JP: Comparison between the electrical potential profile and the chloride gradients in the thin ascending limb of Henle, *Kidney Int* 14:428–436, 1978.

Hogg RJ, Kokko JP: Urine concentrating and diluting mechanisms in mammalian kidneys. In Brenner BM, Rector FC, editors: *Kidney*, Philadelphia, 1986, Saunders, pp 251–279.

Hollenberg NK: Implications of species difference for clinical investigation. studies on the renin-angiotensin system, *Hypertension* 35:150–154, 2000.

Honore PM, Joannes-Boyau O, Boer W: The early biomarker of acute kidney injury: in search of the Holy Grail, *Intensive Care Med* 33:1866–1868, 2007.

Hood VL, Tannen RL: Protection of acid-base balance by pH regulation of acid production, *N Engl J Med* 339:819–826, 1998.

Hyun DW, Kwon TG, Kim KY, et al: Toad venom poisoning resembling digitalis intoxication and hyperkalemia: a case report, *Korean Circ J* 37:283–286, 2007.

Ibata Y, Okamura H, Tanaka M, et al: Functional morphology of the suprachiasmatic nucleus, *Front Neuroendocrinol* 20:241–268, 1999.

Ichimura T, Hung CC, Yang SA, et al: Kidney injury molecule-1: a tissue and urinary biomarker for nephrotoxin-induced renal injury, *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 286:F552–F563, 2004.

Iolascon A, Stewart GW, Ajetunmobi JF, et al: Familial pseudohyperkalemia maps to the same locus as dehydrated hereditary stomatocytosis (hereditary xerocytosis), *Blood* 93:3120–3123, 1999.

Isbister GK, Dawson A, Whyte IM: Hydroxychloroquine overdose: a prospective case series, *Am J Emerg Med* 20:377–378, 2002.

Ito M, Jameson JL, Ito M: Molecular basis of autosomal dominant neurohypophyseal diabetes insipidus. Cellular toxicity caused by the accumulation of mutant vasopressin precursors within the endoplasmic reticulum, *J Clin Invest* 99:1897–1905, 1997.

Jay DW, Provasck D: Characterization and mathematical correction of hemolysis interference in selected Hitachi 717 assay, *Clin Chem* 39:1804–1810, 1993.

Johnson BE, Chute JP, Rushin J, et al: A prospective study of patients with lung cancer and hyponatremia of malignancy, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 156:1669–1678, 1997.

Johnson ZI, Shapiro IM, Risbud MV: Extracellular osmolarity regulates matrix homeostasis in the intervertebral disc and articular cartilage: Evolving role of TonEBP, *Matrix Biol* 40:10–16, 2014.

Jordan P, Brookes JG, Nikolic G, et al: Hydroxychloroquine overdose: toxicokinetics and management, *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol* 37:861–864, 1999.

Judge BS: Metabolic acidosis: differentiating the causes in the poisoned patient, *Med Clin North Am* 89:1107–1124, 2005.

Jurkat-Rott K, Mitrovic N, Hang C, et al: Skeletal muscle sodium current is reduced in hypokalemic periodic paralysis, *Proc Natl Acad Sci* 97:9832–9833, 2000.

Kaizu Y, Ohkawa S, Kumagai H: Muscle mass index in haemodialysis patients: a comparison of indices obtained by routine clinical examinations, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 17:442–448, 2002.

Katz MA: Hyperglycemia-induced hyponatremia: calculation of expected serum sodium depression, *N Engl J Med* 289:843–844, 1973.

Kessler A, Siekmann L: Measurement of urea in human serum by isotope dilution mass spectrometry: a reference procedure, *Clin Chem* 45:1523–1529, 1999.

Kim HJ, Chung CH, Moon CO, et al: Determinants of magnitude of pseudohyperkalemia in thrombocytosis, *Korean J Intern Med* 5:97–100, 1990.

Khanna A, Kurtzman NA: Metabolic alkalosis, *J Nephrol* 19(Suppl 9):S86–S96, 2006.

Knepper MA: Urea transport in isolated thick ascending limbs and collecting ducts from rats, *Am J Physiol* 245:F634, 1983.

Knepper M, Inoue T: Regulation of aquaporin-2 water channel trafficking by vasopressin, *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 9:560–564, 1997.

Kraut JA, Madias NE: Serum anion gap: its uses and limitations in clinical medicine, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 2:162–174, 2007.

Krozowski Z, Li KX, Koyama K, et al: The type I and type II 11beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase enzymes, *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 69:391–401, 1999.

Krutzen E, Back SE: Plasma clearance of a new contrast agent, iohexol: a method for the assessment of glomerular filtration rate, *J Lab Clin Med* 104:955–961, 1984.

Kunchaparty S, Palcso M, Berkman J, et al: Defective processing and expression of thiazide-sensitive Na-Cl cotransporter as a cause of Gitelman's syndrome, *Am J Physiol* 277:F643–F649, 1999.

Kurtz I: Molecular pathogenesis of Bartter's and Gitelman's syndrome, *Kidney Int* 54:1396–1410, 1998.

Lam GS, Asplin JR, Halperin ML: Does a high concentration of calcium in the urine cause an important renal concentrating defect in human subjects? *Clin Sci* 98:313–319, 2000.

Larach MG, Rosenberg H, Gronert GA, et al: Hyperkalemic cardiac arrest during anesthesia in infants and children with occult myopathies, *Clin Pediatr* 36:9–16, 1997.

Laragh JH: Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system for blood pressure and electrolyte homeostasis and its involvement in hypertension, in congestive heart failure and in associated cardiovascular damage (myocardial infarction and stroke), *J Hum Hypertens* 9:385–390, 1995.

Lassning A, Schmidlin D, Mouhieddine M, et al: Minimal changes of serum creatinine predict prognosis in patients after cardiothoracic surgery: a prospective cohort study, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 15:1597–1605, 2004.

Laterza OF, Price CP, Scott MG: Cystatin C: an improved estimator of glomerular filtration rate? *Clin Chem* 48:699–707, 2002.

Leadbetter RA, Shutty MS Jr: Differential effects of neuroleptic and clozapine on polydipsia and intermittent hyponatremia, *J Clin Psych* 55(Suppl B):110–113, 1994.

Leger F, Bouissou F, Coulais Y, et al: Estimation of glomerular filtration rate in children, *Pediatr Nephrol* 17:903–907, 2002.

Leggett DA, Hill PT, Anderson RJ: "Stalkitis" in a pregnant 32-year-old woman: a rare cause of diabetes insipidus, *Australas Radiol* 43:104–107, 1999.

Levey AS, Bosch JP, Lewis JB, et al: A more accurate method to estimate glomerular filtration rate from serum creatinine: a new prediction equation, *Ann Intern Med* 130:461–470, 1999.

Levey AS, Stevens LA, Schmid CH, et al: CKD-EPI (Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration). A new equation to estimate glomerular filtration rate, *Ann Intern Med* 150:604–612, 2009.

http://basicbook.net

Lemann J Jr, Relman AS: The relation of sulfur metabolism to acid-base balance and electrolyte excretion: the effects of DL-methionine in normal man, *J Clin Invest* 38:2215–2223, 1959.

Lespinas F, Dupuy G, Revol F, et al: Enzymic urea assay: a new colorimetric method based on hydrogen peroxide measurement, *Clin Chem* 35:654–658, 1989.

Levine S, McManus BM, Blackbourne BD, et al: Fatal water intoxication, schizophrenia, and diuretic therapy for systemic hypertension, *Am J Med* 82:153–155, 1987.

Litchfield WR, Coolidge C, Silva P, et al: Impaired potassium-stimulated aldosterone production: a possible explanation for normokalemic glucocorticoid-remediable aldosteronism, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 82:1507–1510, 1997a.

Litchfield WR, New MI, Coolidge C, et al: Evaluation of the dexamethasone suppression test for the diagnosis of glucocorticoid-remediable aldosteronism, *J Clin Endocrinol Metabol* 82:3570–3573, 1997b.

Lichtenbelt WVM, Westerterp KR, Wouters L: Deuterium dilution as a method for determining total body water: effect of test protocol and sampling time, *Brit J Nutr* 72:491–497, 1994.

Lister J: Body water estimation in the newborn using tritiated water, *Arch Dis Child* 37:195–197, 1962.

Loh JA, Verbalis JG: Disorders of water and salt metabolism associated with pituitary disease, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 37:213–234, 2008.

Luft FC: Lactic acidosis update for critical care clinicians, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 12(Suppl 17):S15–S19, 2001.

Lyman JL: Blood urea nitrogen and creatinine, *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 4:223–233, 1986.

Ma XM, Aguilera G, Ma XM, et al: Differential regulation of corticotropin-releasing hormone and vasopressin transcription by glucocorticoids, *Endocrinol* 140:5642–5650, 1999.

Maatman RGHJ, Van de Westerlo EMA, Van Kuppevelt THMSM, et al: Molecular identification of the liver- and the heart-type fatty acid-binding protein in human and rat kidney. Use of the reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction, *Biochem J* 288:285–290, 1992.

Macaron C, Famuyiwa O: Hyponatremia of hypothyroidism. Appropriate suppression of antidiuretic hormone levels, *Arch Intern Med* 138:820–832, 1978.

Maesaka JK, Imbriano LJ, Ali NM, et al: Is it cerebral or renal salt wasting? *Kidney Int* 76:934–938, 2009.

Mak TWL, Cheung CK, Cheung CMF, et al: Interference of creatinine measurement in CAPD fluid is dependent on glucose and creatinine concentration, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 12:184–186, 1997.

Manninen PH, Lam AM, Gelb AW, et al: The effect of high dose mannitol on serum and urine electrolytes and osmolality in neurosurgical patients, *Can J Anesth* 34:442–446, 1987.

Mansou MM, Azzazy HM, Kazmierczak SC: Correction factors for estimating potassium concentrations in samples with in vitro hemolysis. A detriment to patient safety, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 133:960–966, 2009.

Marazuela M, López-Gallardo G, López-Iglesias M, et al: Hypodipsic hypernatremia after hypothalamic infarct, *Horm Res* 67(Suppl 1):180–183, 2007.

Marples D, Christensen S, Christensen EI, et al: Lithium-induced down-regulation of aquaporin-2 water channel expression in rat kidney medulla, *J Clin Invest* 95:1838–1845, 1995.

Massey D: Commentary: clinical diagnostic use of cystatin C, *J Clin Lab Anal* 18:55–60, 2004.

Mathew G, Knaus SJ: Acquired Fanconi's syndrome associated with tenofovir therapy, *J Gen Interm Med* 21:C3–C5, 2006.

Matsumura M, Nakashima A, Tofuku Y: Electrolyte disorders following massive insulin overdose in a patient with type 2 diabetes, *Intern Med* 39:55–57, 2000.

McGuire LC, Cruickshank AM, Munro PT: Alcoholic ketoacidosis, *Emerg Med J* 23:417–420, 2006.

McKinley MJ, Allen AM, Burns P, et al: Interaction of circulating hormones with the brain: The roles of the subfornical organ and the organum vasculosum of the lamina terminalis, *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol Suppl* 25:S61–S67, 1998.

McIvor ME, Cummings CC, Mower MM, et al: The manipulation of potassium efflux during fluoride intoxication: implications for therapy, *Toxicol* 37:233–239, 1985.

McIvor ME: Delayed fatal hyperkalemia in a patient with acute fluoride intoxication, *Ann Emerg Med* 16:1165–1167, 1987.

Meister B, Aperia A: Molecular mechanisms involved in catecholamine regulation of sodium transport, *Semin Nephrol* 13:41–49, 1993.

Milionis HJ, Liamis GL, Elisaf MS: The hyponatremic patient: a systematic approach to laboratory diagnosis, *CMAJ* 166:1056–1062, 2002.

Mishra J, Ma Q, Prada A, et al: Identification of neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin as a novel early urinary biomarker for ischemic renal injury, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 4:2534–2543, 2003.

Mishra J, Mori K, Ma Q, et al: Neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin:a novel early urinary biomarker for cisplatin nephrotoxicity, *Am J Nephrol* 24:307–315, 2004.

Mishra J, Ma Q, Kelly C, et al: Kidney NGAL is a novel early marker of acute injury following transplantation, *Pediatr Nephrol* 21:856–863, 2006.

Mitchell RJ: Improved method for specific determination of creatinine in serum and urine, *Clin Chem* 19:408–410, 1973.

Molitch ME: Pituitary diseases in pregnancy, *Semin Perinatol* 22:457–470, 1998.

Moran SM, Jamison RL: The variable hyponatremic response to hyperglycemia, *West J Med* 142:49–53, 1985.

Mouri T, Itoi K, Takahashi K, et al: Colocalization of corticotropin-releasing factor and vasopressin in the paraventricular nucleus of the human hypothalamus, *Neuroendocrinol* 57:34–39, 1993.

Moyes AJ, Khambata RS, Villar I, et al: Endothelial C-type natriuretic peptide maintains vascular homeostasis, *J Clin Invest* 124:4039–4051, 2014.

Natelson S, Scott ML, Beffa C: A rapid method for the estimation of urea in biologic fluids, *Am J Clin Pathol* 21:275–281, 1951.

Negishi K, Noiri E, Sugaya T, et al: A role of liver fatty acid binding protein in cisplatin-induced acute renal failure, *Kidney Int* 72:348–358, 2007.

Negishi K, Noiri E, Doi K, et al: Monitoring of urinary L-type fatty acid-binding protein predicts histological severity of acute kidney injury, *Am J Pathol* 174:1154–1159, 2009.

Nielsen S, Frokiaer J, Marples D, et al: Aquaporins in the kidney: from molecules to medicine, *Physiol Rev* 82:205–244, 2002.

Nguyen V, Nelson LS: Case studies in toxicology: a common procedure, an uncommon complication, *Emerg Med* 46:455–458, 2014.

Nguyen MK, Ornekian V, Butch AW, et al: A new method for determining plasma water content: application in pseudohyponatremia, *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 292:F1652–F1656, 2007.

North WG: Gene regulation of vasopressin and vasopressin receptors in cancer, *Exp Physiol* 85:27S–40S, 2000.

Ntalapascha M, Daniil Z, Zakynthinos E: Biosynthesis, physiology and main diagnostic and therapeutic potentials of cardiac natriuretic peptides, *Internat J Med Medical Sci* 1:473–494, 2009.

Ogawa T, Kamikubo K: Hypokalemic periodic paralysis associated with hypophosphatemia in a patient with hyperinsulinemia, *Am J Med Sci* 318:69–75, 1999.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ, Clemmons JE, et al: A mechanism of hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism in chronic renal disease, *Metabolism* 23:1157–1166, 1974.

Oh MS, Phelps KR, Traube M, et al: D-lactic acidosis in a man with the short bowel syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 301:249–252, 1979.

Oh MS: A new method for the measurement of net G-I absorption of alkali, *Kidney Int* 36:915–917, 1989.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ, Uribarri J: Mechanism of normochloremic and hyperchloremic acidosis in diabetic ketoacidosis, *Nephron* 54:1–6, 1990.

Oh MS: Irrelevance of bone buffering to acid-base homeostasis in chronic metabolic acidosis, *Nephron* 59:7–10, 1991.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ: Cerebral salt wasting syndrome: we need a better proof of its existence, *Nephron* 82:110–114, 1999.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ: Regulation of intra and extracellular volume. In Arieff AI, DeFronzo RA, editors: *Fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base disorders*, ed 2, New York, 1995, Churchill-Livingston.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ: Whole body acid-base balance, *Contrb Nephrol* 100:89–104, 1992.

Oh MS, Halperin ML: The mechanism of urine concentration in the inner medulla, *Nephron* 75:3–7, 1997.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ: Value and determinants of urine anion gap, *Nephron* 90:252–255, 2002a.

Oh MS, Carroll HJ: Pathogenesis of chloride-depletion metabolic alkalosis, *Nephron* 91:379–382, 2002b.

Olsson K: Central control of vasopressin release and thirst, *Acta Paediatr Scand Suppl* 305:36–39, 1983.

Orfeas L, Tighiouart H, Hocine T, et al: Comparative analysis of urinary biomarkers for early detection of acute kidney injury following cardiopulmonary bypass, *Biomarkers* 14:423–431, 2009.

Owens CW, Albuquerque ZP, Tomlinson GM: In vitro metabolism of creatinine, methylamine and amino acids by intestinal contents of normal and uraemic subjects, *Gut* 20:568–574, 1979.

Pallone TL, Turner MR, Edwards A, et al: Countercurrent exchange in the renal medulla, *Am J Physiol* 284:R1153–R1175, 2003.

Pallone T: Urea transporters, and renal vascular bundles, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 18:2798–2800, 2007.

Palmer BF, Alpern RJ: Metabolic alkalosis, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 8:1462–1469, 1997.

Parikh CR, Jani A, Mishra J, et al: Urine NGAL and IL-18 are predictive biomarkers for delayed graft function following kidney transplantation, *Am J Transplant* 6:1639–1645, 2006.

Passey RB, Gillum RL, Fuller JB, et al: Evaluation of three methods for the measurement of urea nitrogen in serum as used on six instruments, *Am J Clin Pathol* 73:362–368, 1980.

Peake M, Whiting M: Measurement of serum creatinine—current status and future goals, *Clin Biochem Rev* 27:173–184, 2006.

Perazella MA, Biswas P: Acute hyperkalemia associated with intravenous epsilon-aminocaproic acid therapy, *Am J Kidney Dis* 33:782–785, 1999.

Perrone RD, Madias NE, Levey AS: Serum creatinine as an index of renal function: new insights into old concepts, *Clin Chem* 38:1933–1953, 1992.

Perez GO, Oster JR, Vaamonde CA: Serum potassium concentration in acidemic states, *Nephron* 27:233–243, 1981.

Phelps KR, Oh MS, Carroll HJ: Heparin-induced hyperkalemia: report of a case, *Nephron* 25:254–258, 1980a.

Phelps KR, Lieberman RL, Oh MS, et al: Pathophysiology of the syndrome of hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism, *Metabolism* 29:186–199, 1980b.

Pierrat A, Gravier E, Saunders C, et al: Predicting GFR in children and adults: a comparison of the Cockcroft-Gault, Schwartz, and modification of diet in renal disease formulas, *Kidney Int* 64:1425–1436, 2003.

Pipili E: Platelet membrane potential: simultaneous measurement of diSC3 fluorescence and optical density, *Thromb Haemost* 54:645–649, 1985.

Portilla D, Dent C, Sugaya T: Liver fatty acid-binding protein as a biomarker of acute kidney injury after cardiac surgery, *Kidney Int* 73:465–472, 2008.

Pöge U, Gerhardt TM, Stoffel-Wagner B, et al: Beta-trace protein is an alternative marker for glomerular filtration rate in renal transplantation patients, *Clin Chem* 51:1531–1533, 2005.

Pöge U, Gerhardt T, Stoffel-Wagner B, et al: Beta-trace protein-based equations for calculation of GFR in renal transplant recipients, *Am J Transplant* 8:608–615, 2008.

Prasad GV, Coury LA, Finn F, et al: Reconstituted aquaporin 1 water channels transport CO_2 across membranes, *J Biol Chem* 273:33123–33126, 1998.

Putcha N, Allon M: Management of hyperkalemia in dialysis patients, *Semin Dial* 20:431–439, 2007.

Quigley R, Lisec A, Baum M: Ontogeny of rabbit proximal tubule urea permeability, *Am J Regul Integr Comp Physiol* 280:R1713–R1718, 2001.

Pradella M, Dorizzi RM, Rigolin F: Relative density of urine. Methods and clinical significance, *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci* 26:195–242, 1988.

Price CP, Finney H: Developments in the assessment of glomerular filtration rate, *Clin Chim Acta* 297:55–66, 2000.

Rakhmanina NY, Kearns GL, Farrar HC 3rd.: Hypokalemia in an asthmatic child from abuse of albuterol metered dose inhaler, *Pediatr Emerg Care* 14:145–147, 1998.

Ramsay AG: Clinical application of the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, *Appl Ther* 7:730–736, 1965.

Rastegar A: Use of the Delta AG/Delta HCO_3 ratio in the diagnosis of mixed acid-base disorders, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 18:2429–2431, 2007.

http://basicbook.net

Reed RK, Laurent UB: Turnover of hyaluronan in the microcirculation, *Am Rev Respir Dis* 146:S37–S39, 1992.

Rendell M, McGrane D, Cuesta M: Fatal compulsive water drinking, *JAMA* 240:2557–2559, 1978.

Risch L, Herklotz R, Blumberg A, et al: Effects of glucocorticoid immunosuppression on serum cystatin C concentrations in renal transplant patients, *Clin Chem* 47:2055–2059, 2001.

Robertson GL: Regulation of arginine vasopressin in the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuresis, *Am J Med* 119(7 Suppl 1):S36–S42, 2006.

Rodriguez-Soriano J: Renal tubular acidosis: the clinical entity, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 13:2160–2170, 2002.

Ronco C: N-GAL: diagnosing AKI as soon as possible, *Crit Care* 11:173, 2007.

Rule AD, Larson TS, Bergstralh E, et al: Using serum creatinine to estimate glomerular filtration rate: accuracy in good health and in chronic kidney disease, *Ann Intern Med* 141:929–937, 2004.

Russel C: Quality control of 99mTc-DTPA: correlation of analytic test with in vivo protein binding in man, *J Nucl Med* 25:1243–1247, 1985.

Rutishauser J, Kopp P, Gaskill MB, et al: Autosomal dominant neurohypophyseal diabetes insipidus in a Swiss family, *Mol Genet Metab* 67:89–92, 1999.

Saaresranta T, Polo-Kantola P, Helenius H, et al: Respiratory insufficiency in postmenopausal women: successful improvement in gas exchange with short-term medroxyprogesterone acetate, *Chest* 115:1581–1587, 1999.

Sakakida M, Araki E: Atypical Bartter syndrome with sensorineural deafness with G47R mutation, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:781–786, 2003.

Sahlin K, Harris RC, Hultman E: Creatine kinase equilibrium and lactate content compared with muscle pH in tissue samples obtained after isometric exercise, *Biochem J* 152:173–180, 1975.

San-Cristobal P, de los Heros P, Ponce-Coria J, et al: WNK kinases, renal ion transport and hypertension, *Am J Nephrol* 28:860–870, 2008.

Sands JM, Kokko JP: Current concepts of the countercurrent multiplication system, *Kidney Int Suppl* 57:S93–S99, 1996.

Schmidt-Nielson B: Excretion in mammals: role of the renal pelvis in the modification of the urinary concentration and composition, *Fed Prod* 36:2493, 1977.

Schoenmakers CH, Kuller T, Lindemans J, et al: Automated enzymatic methods for creatinine measurement with special attention to bilirubin interference, *Eur J Clin Chem Clin Biochem* 31:861–868, 1993.

Scholl U, Lifton RP: New insights into aldosterone-producing adenomas and hereditary aldosteronism: mutations in the K^+ channel KCNJ5, *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens* 22:141–147, 2013.

Schrier RW, Berl T, Anderson RJ: Osmotic and nonosmotic control of vasopressin release, *Am J Physiol* 236:F321–F332, 1979.

Schück O, Lácha J: Urea clearance and measurement of glomerular filtration in patients with chronic renal insufficiency, *Cas Lek Cesk* 129:298–300, 1990.

Schultheis PJ, Lorenz JN, Meneton P, et al: Phenotype resembling Gitelman's syndrome in mice lacking the apical Na^+-Cl^- cotransporter of the distal convoluted tubule, *J Biol Chem* 273:29150–29155, 1998.

Schwartz GJ, Haycock GB, Edelman CM, et al: A simple estimate of glomerular filtration rate in children derived from body length and plasma creatinine, *Pediatrics* 58:259–263, 1976.

Schwartz GJ: New equations to estimate GFR in children with CKD, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 20:629–637, 2009.

Schwalbe S, Holzhauer M, Schaeffer J, et al: Beta 2-microglobulin associated amyloidosis: a vanishing complication of long-term hemodialysis? *Kidney Int* 52:1077–1083, 1997.

Schwerk N, Desel H, Schulz M, et al: Successful therapy of paediatric ethylene glycol poisoning: a case report and annual survey by a regional poison center, *Acta Paediatr* 96:461–463, 2007.

Sebastian A, Rector FC Jr, Schambelan M: Mineralocorticoid-resistant renal hyperkalemia without salt wasting (type II pseudohypoaldosteronism): role of increased renal chloride reabsorption, *Kidney Int* 19:716–727, 1981.

Seyberth HW, Rascher W, Schweer H, et al: Congenital hypokalemia with hypercalciuria in preterm infants: a hyperprostaglandinuric tubular syndrome different from Bartter syndrome, *J Pediatr* 107:694–701, 1985.

Shafiee MA, Charest AF, Cheema-Dhadli S, et al: Defining conditions that lead to the retention of water: the importance of the arterial sodium concentration, *Kidney Int* 67:613–621, 2005.

Sheen MR, Kim JA, Lim SW, et al: Interstitial tonicity controls TonEBP expression in the renal medulla, *Kidney Int* 75:518–525, 2009.

Siggaard C, Rittig S, Corydon TJ, et al: Clinical and molecular evidence of abnormal processing and trafficking of the vasopressin preprohormone in a large kindred with familial neurohypophyseal diabetes insipidus due to a signal peptide mutation, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 84:2933–2934, 1999.

Sjoland JA, Marcher KS: Creatinine concentration measurement in glucose based peritoneal dialysate, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 63:203–206, 2003.

Soberman R, Brodie BB, Levy BB, et al: The use of antipyrine for the measurement of total body water in man, *J Biol Chem* 179:31–42, 1949.

Sonnenblick M, Friedlander Y, Rosin AJ: Diuretics-induced severe hyponatremia: review and analysis of 129 reported patients, *Chest* 103:601–660, 1993.

Soto K, Coelho S, Rodrigues B, et al: Cystatin C as a marke of acute kidney injury in the emergency department, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 5:1745–1754, 2010.

Spruce BA, Baylis PH, Kerr DN, et al: Idiopathic hypergammaglobulinaemia associated with nephrogenic diabetes insipidus and distal renal tubular acidosis, *Postgrad Med J* 60:493–494, 1984.

Steen B: Hypokalemia—clinical spectrum and etiology, *Acta Med Scand Suppl* 647:61–66, 1981.

Stern R: Hyaluronan catabolism: a new metabolic pathway, *Eur J Cell Biol* 83:317–325, 2004.

Stern R, Asari AA, Sugahara KN: Hyaluronan fragments: an information-rich system, *Eur J Cell Biol* 85:699–715, 2006.

Stewart GW, Ellory JC: A family with mild hereditary xerocytosis showing high membrane cation permeability at low temperatures, *Clin Sci* 69:309–319, 1985.

Stewart GW, Corrall RJ, Fyffe JA, et al: Familial pseudohyperkalaemia. A new syndrome, *Lancet* 2:175–177, 1979.

Stowasser M, Bachmann AW, Jonsson JR, et al: Clinical, biochemical and genetic approaches to the detection of familial hyperaldosteronism type I, *J Hypertens* 13:1610–1613, 1995.

Strack T: Metformin: a review, *Drugs Today (Barc)* 44:303–314, 2008.

Su M, Chu J, Howland MA, et al: Amiodarone attenuates fluoride-induced hyperkalemia in vitro, *Acad Emerg Med* 10:105–109, 2003.

Suzuki M, Yoshida M: A new enzymatic serum creatinine measurement based on an endogenous creatine-eliminating system, *Clin Chim Acta* 143:147–155, 1984.

Swain RR, Biggs SL: Positive interference with the Jaffé reaction by cephalosporin antibiotics, *Clin Chem* 23:1340–1342, 1977.

Sweeney G, Klip A: Regulation of the Na^+/K^+-ATPase by insulin: why and how? *Mol Cell Biochem* 182:121–133, 1998.

Takahira R, Yonemura K, Yonekawa O, et al: Tryptophan glycoconjugate as a novel marker of renal function, *Am J Med* 110:192–197, 2001.

Thomson SC, Blantz RC: Glomerulotubular balance, tubuloglomerular feedback, and salt homeostasis, *J Amer Soc Nephrol* 19:2272–2275, 2008.

Tofil NM, Benner KW, Winkler MK: Fatal hypermagnesemia caused by an epsom salt enema: a case illustration, *South Med J* 98:253–256, 2005.

Torpy DJ, Gordon RD, Lin JP, et al: Familial hyperaldosteronism type II: description of a large kindred and exclusion of the aldosterone synthase (CYP11B2) gene, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:3214–3218, 1998.

Trudnowski RJ, Roco RC: Specific gravity of blood and plasma at 4 and 37 degrees C, *Clin Chem* 20:615–616, 1974.

Uribarri J, Oh MS, Carroll HJ: Salt-losing nephropathy. Clinical presentation and mechanisms, *Am J Nephrol* 3:193–198, 1983.

Uribarri J, Oh MS, Carroll HJ: D-lactic acidosis. A review of clinical presentation, biochemical features, and pathophysiologic mechanisms, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 77:73–82, 1998.

Vaidya VS, Ferguson MA, Bonventre JV: Biomarkers of acute kidney injury, *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 48:463–493, 2008.

Van Acker BA, Koomen GC, Koopman MG, et al: Creatinine clearance during cimetidine administration for measurement of glomerular filtration rate, *Lancet* 34:1326–1329, 1992.

Vargas-Poussou R, Huang C, Hulin P, et al: Functional characterization of a calcium-sensing receptor mutation in severe autosomal dominant hypocalcemia with a Bartter-like syndrome, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 13:2259–2266, 2002.

Veech RL, Kashiwaya Y, King MT: The resting membrane potential of cells are measures of electrical work, not of ionic currents, *Integr Physiol Behav Sci* 30:283–307, 1995.

Verrey F, Fakitsas P, Adam G, et al: Early transcriptional control of ENaC (de)ubiquitylation by aldosterone, *Kidney Int* 73:691–696, 2008.

Vesely DL: Urodilatin: a better natriuretic peptide? *Curr Heart Fail Rep* 4:147–152, 2007.

Vokes TJ, Gaskill MB, Robertson GL: Antibodies to vasopressin in patients with diabetes insipidus. Implications for diagnosis and therapy, *Ann Intern Med* 108:190–195, 1988.

Volpe M: Natriuretic peptides and cardio-renal disease, *Internat J Cardiol* 176:630–639, 2014.

Wang W, Giebisch G: Regulation of potassium (K) handling in the renal collecting duct, *Pflugers Arch* 458:157–168, 2009.

Warnock DG: Liddle's syndrome. Genetics and mechanisms of Na^+ channel defects, *Contrib Nephrol* 136:1–10, 2001.

Washburn KK, Zappitelli M, Arikan AA, et al: Urinary interleukin-18 is an acute kidney injury biomarker in critically ill children, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 23:566–572, 2008.

Wasserman K, Stringer WW, Casaburi R, et al: Mechanism of the exercise hyperkalemia: an alternate hypothesis, *J Appl Physiol* 83:631–643, 1997.

Weir B: Pituitary tumors and aneurysms: case report and review, *Neurosurg* 30:585–591, 1992.

Weisberg LS: Pseudohyponatremia: a reappraisal, *Am J Med* 86:315–318, 1989.

Weisberg HF: Osmotic pressure of the serum proteins, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 8:155–164, 1978.

Wells T: Vasopressin secretion and aquaporin-4: a new mechanism for osmoreception? *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 136:103–107, 1998.

White CA, Akbari A, Doucette S, et al: A novel equation to estimate glomerular filtration rate using beta-trace protein, *Clin Chem* 53:1965–1968, 2007.

White C, Akbari A, Doucette S, et al: Estimating GFR using serum beta trace protein: accuracy and validation in kidney transplant and pediatric populations, *Kidney Int* 76:784–791, 2009.

Widdicombe J: Reflexes from the lungs and airways: historical perspective, *J Applied Physiol* 101:628–634, 2006.

Wilson FH, Disse-Nicodeme S, Choate KA, et al: Human hypertension caused by mutations in WNK kinases, *Science* 293:1107–1112, 2001.

Wilson FH, Kahle KT, Sabath E, et al: Molecular pathogenesis of inherited hypertension with hyperkalemia: the Na-Cl cotransporter is inhibited by wild-type but not mutant WNK4, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100:680–684, 2003.

Wise RA, Polito AJ, Krishnan V: Respiratory physiologic changes in pregnancy, *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 26:1–12, 2006.

Ylinen EA, Ala-Houhala M, Harmoinen AP, et al: Cystatin C as a marker for glomerular filtration rate in pediatric patients, *Pediatr Nephrol* 13:506–509, 1999.

Woodrow G: Body composition analysis techniques in adults and pediatric patients: how reliable are they: how useful are they clinically? *Perit Dial Int* 27(Suppl 2):245–249, 2007.

Xu Y, Schnorrer P, Proietto A, et al: IL-10 controls cystatin C synthesis and blood concentration in response to inflammation through IFN regulatory factor 8 expression, *J Immunol* 186:3666–3673, 2011.

Yamamoto T, Noiri E, Ono Y, et al: Renal L-type fatty acid-binding protein in acute ischemic injury, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 18:2894–2902, 2007.

Yamawaki C, Takashashi M, Takara K, et al: Effect of dexamethasone on extracellular secretion of cystatin C in cancer cell lines, *Biomed Rep* 1:115–118, 2013.

Yang S, Tetsuji Morimoto T, Tatemitsu Rai T, et al: Molecular pathogenesis of pseudohypoaldosteronism type II: generation and analysis of a Wnk4D561A/+ knockin mouse model, *Cell Metab* 5:331–344, 2007.

http://basicbook.net

Yue P, Lin D, Pan C, et al: Src family protein tyrosine kinase (PTK) modulates the effect of SGK1 and WNK4 on ROMK channels, *PNAS* 106:15061–15066, 2009.
Zaltzman M, Bezwoda WR: Hyperkalaemia in prolymphocytic leukaemia—a sometimes spurious result. A case report, *S Afr Med J* 61:209–210, 1982.
Zar T, Graeber C, Perazella MA: Recognition, treatment, and prevention of PG toxicity, *Semin Dial* 20:217–219, 2007.
Zavodnik IB, Piasecka A, Szosland K, et al: Human red blood cell membrane potential and fluidity in glucose solutions, *Scan J Clin Lab Invest* 57:59–63, 1997.
Zhai X, Fenton RA, Andreasen A, et al: Aquaporin-1 is not expressed in descending thin limbs of short-loop nephrons, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 18:2937–2944, 2007.
Zhang W, Xia X, Reisenauer M: Aldosterone-induced Sgk1 relieves Dot1a-Af9–mediated transcriptional repression of epithelial Na^+ channel α, *J Clin Invest* 117:773–783, 2007.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 15

BIOCHEMICAL MARKERS OF BONE METABOLISM

Katrin M. Klemm, Michael J. Klein

MINERAL AND BONE METABOLISM, 188
Calcium, 188
Phosphorus, 190
Magnesium, 191
Hormones Regulating Mineral Metabolism, 192

DISORDERS OF MINERAL METABOLISM, 195
Hypercalcemia, 195
Hypocalcemia, 197
Hyperphosphatemia, 199
Hypophosphatemia, 199
Hypermagnesemia, 199
Hypomagnesemia, 199

BIOCHEMICAL MARKERS OF BONE REMODELING, 200
Bone Resorption Markers, 200
Bone Formation Markers, 201

METABOLIC BONE DISEASE, 201
Osteoporosis, 201
Osteomalacia and Rickets, 202
Renal Osteodystrophy, 203
Paget's Disease, 203

SELECTED REFERENCES, 204

KEY POINTS

- The plasma concentration of calcium, phosphate, and magnesium is dependent on the net balance of bone mineral deposition and resorption, intestinal absorption, and renal excretion. The principal hormones regulating these processes are parathyroid hormone (PTH), calcitonin, 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, and FGF-23.
- The most common causes of hypercalcemia are primary hyperparathyroidism (elevated PTH) and malignant neoplasms (decreased PTH and usually elevated PTH-related peptide). They account for 80% to 90% of all patients with hypercalcemia.
- The most common causes of hypocalcemia are chronic renal failure, hypomagnesemia, hypoparathyroidism, pseudohypoparathyroidism, vitamin D deficiency, and acute pancreatitis.
- Bio-intact PTH measures biologically active PTH; it is useful in patients with impaired renal function when various metabolites accumulate and interfere with traditional PTH assays.
- In patients undergoing surgery for primary hyperparathyroidism, intraoperative PTH measurements are useful in identifying whether the abnormal tissue is completely removed.
- Osteoporosis is the most common metabolic disease of bone and is characterized by decreased organic bone matrix. Serial bone resorption marker measurements can predict early response to therapy.
- Osteomalacia is failure to mineralize newly formed organic matrix (osteoid) in the mature skeleton.
- Phosphatonins comprise a newly described cascade of hormones, enzymes, and proteins related to phosphate metabolism.

MINERAL AND BONE METABOLISM

The skeleton is a metabolically active organ that undergoes continuous remodeling throughout life. This remodeling is necessary both to maintain the structural integrity of the skeleton and to fulfill its metabolic functions as a storehouse of calcium and phosphorus. Skeletal remodeling can be triggered by changes in mechanical forces or microdamage and by hormonal response to changes in circulating calcium and phosphorus levels. The skeleton also serves as the second line of defense against acidosis, and it is able to liberate buffers in the form of inorganic phosphates (Raisz, 1999).

Bone can be classified into two types: cortical or compact bone, and cancellous or trabecular bone (Fig. 15-1, *A* and *B*). Cortical bone plays an important role in the supportive, protective, and mechanical functions of the skeleton; it comprises the shafts of long bones and the outer envelope of all bones. It constitutes approximately 80% of skeletal mass, and it is 90% bone and 10% space (vascular canals, osteocyte lacunae, and canaliculi) by volume. Cancellous bone, which constitutes the remaining 20% of skeletal mass, is 25% bone and 75% space by volume. It is present at the ends of long and short tubular bones, within carpal and tarsal bones, and in the medullary cavities of vertebral bodies and flat bones. It is arranged in highly perforated vertical plates interconnected by horizontal struts and has a honeycombed appearance. It serves as a repository for hematopoietic cells and provides a large surface area for short-term mineral exchange (Watts, 1999). Even though cancellous bone represents only 20% of the total skeletal mass, it provides such a large surface area—one that equals that of cortical bone because of its honeycombed structure—that it accounts for 50% of active bone turnover at any given time (Erikson et al, 1994). Both compact and cancellous bones are composed primarily of inorganic minerals (calcium and phosphorus) and an organic matrix. Approximately 90% to 95% of this organic matrix is type I collagen, and the remaining 5% to 10% consists of noncollagenous proteins, including osteocalcin, osteopontin, osteonectin, thrombospondin, sialoproteins, and other less well–characterized proteins. Osteoclasts actively resorb bone by producing hydrogen ions to mobilize the minerals and proteolytic enzymes to hydrolyze the organic matrix. Osteoblasts synthesize the organic matrix and control the mineralization of the newly synthesized matrix (Endres & Rude, 1999).

The plasma concentration of calcium, phosphate, and magnesium is dependent on the net balance of bone mineral deposition and resorption, intestinal absorption, and renal excretion. The principal hormones regulating these processes are PTH, calcitonin, and 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D. Much of bone metabolism reflects the body's effort to maintain serum calcium and phosphorus levels.

CALCIUM

Physiology

Distribution

Calcium is the fifth most common element and is the most prevalent cation in the human body. A healthy adult contains approximately 1 to 1.3 kg of calcium, and 99% of this is in the form of hydroxyapatite in the skeleton. The remaining 1% is contained in the extracellular fluid (ECF) and soft tissues. Additionally, less than 1% of the skeletal content of calcium is in bone fluid and exchanges freely with the ECF (Mundy & Guise, 1999).

Serum (plasma) calcium exists in three distinct forms: free or ionized calcium, which is the physiologically active form, accounting for approximately 50% of the total serum calcium; complexed calcium, which is bound tightly to a variety of anions, including bicarbonate, lactate, phosphate, and citrate, accounting for approximately 10%; and plasma protein-bound calcium, accounting for approximately 40%. Both ionized calcium

http://basicbook.net

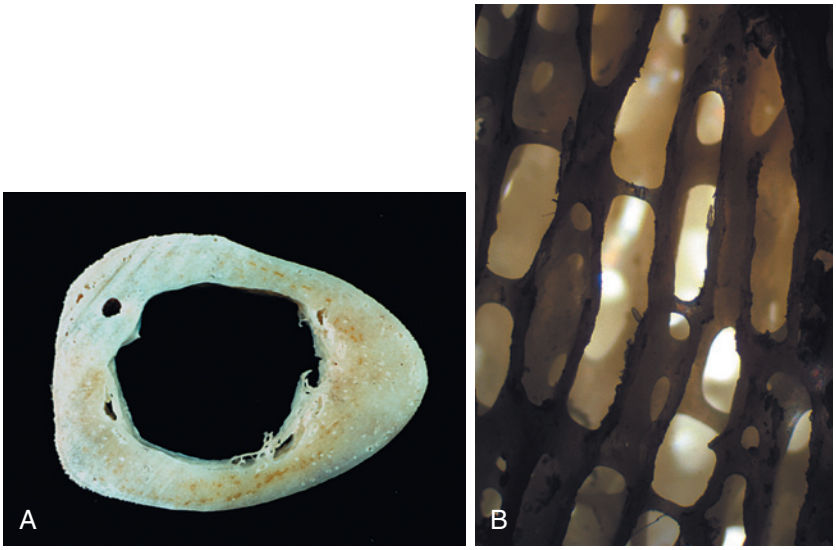


Figure 15-1 **A,** Compact bone, long bone, cross section. The compact bone of the cortex of the femur in this 30-year-old male is continuous and solid, and the vascular spaces are not grossly visible. The hollow medullary cavity is filled with fatty marrow in vivo. **B,** Cancellous bone, longitudinal section. The cancellous bone is arranged in highly perforated vertical plates interconnected by delicate horizontal struts (braces). Most of its volume appears to be empty space once the marrow has been removed.

and the calcium complexes are freely dialyzable. Approximately 80% of the protein-bound calcium fraction is associated with albumin.

Because ionized calcium binds to negatively charged sites on the protein molecules, there is competition with hydrogen ions for binding sites on albumin and other calcium-binding proteins, and its binding is pH dependent. Although total serum calcium levels may remain unchanged, the relative distribution of the three forms is altered as a result of pH changes in ECF. Alkalosis promotes increased protein binding, with a subsequent decrease in free calcium, whereas acidosis decreases protein binding, causing an increase in free calcium levels. Because calcium is bound to proteins, total calcium levels are also altered by plasma protein concentration.

Function

In addition to its obvious importance in skeletal mineralization, calcium plays a vital role in such basic physiologic processes as blood coagulation, neural transmission, plasma buffering capacity and enzyme activity, and in the maintenance of normal muscle tone and excitability of skeletal and cardiac muscle. It is an activator of intracellular signal transduction processes and is essential for DNA and RNA biosynthesis. Calcium is also involved in glandular synthesis and in regulation of exocrine and endocrine glands, as well as in the preservation of cell membrane integrity and permeability, particularly in terms of sodium and potassium exchange.

The average dietary intake of calcium for most adults in the United States is approximately 15 to 20 mmol/day (600 to 800 mg/day), most of which is derived from milk or other dairy products. The National Osteoporosis Foundation recommends that all adults have a daily intake of at least 1200 mg of elemental calcium with diet plus supplements. Lactating females and postmenopausal females not given exogenous estrogen therapy should probably have at least 1500 mg/day (Lewiecki, 2004).

Calcium is absorbed in the duodenum and upper jejunum via an active transport process. Less than half of dietary calcium is absorbed in adults. However, calcium absorption increases during periods of rapid growth in children, in pregnancy, and during lactation. It decreases with advancing age. The major stimulus to calcium absorption is vitamin D (see later). Calcium absorption is also enhanced by growth hormone, an acid medium in the intestines, and by increased dietary protein. The ratio of calcium to phosphorus in the intestinal contents is also important, because a ratio greater than 2:1 results in the formation of insoluble calcium phosphates and tends to inhibit calcium absorption. Phytic acid, derived from various cereal grains, can also form insoluble calcium compounds, as can dietary oxalate and fatty acids. Cortisol and excessive alkalinity of the intestinal contents are both inhibitory to calcium absorption.

Estimates of daily calcium excretion in sweat vary widely—from 15 mg to more than 100 mg. The loss can greatly exceed this range during extreme environmental conditions. The major net loss of calcium occurs via urinary excretion and varies between 2.5 and 10 mmol/day (100 and 200 mg/day). In normal individuals, wide variations in dietary calcium intake have little effect on urinary calcium. Urinary calcium excretion is enhanced by hypercalcemia, phosphate deprivation, acidosis, and glucocorticoids. PTH, certain diuretics, and probably vitamin D diminish urinary calcium excretion. The physiology of calcium, its regulating hormones, and alterations of calcium homeostasis in disease have been extensively reviewed (Boden & Kaplan, 1990).

Calcium Homeostasis

Ionized calcium concentration of the ECF is kept constant within a narrow range of approximately 1.25 mmol/L (Fig. 15-2). It is the ionized calcium concentration of the ECF that is the primary determinant of the hormonal influences that exert effects on ECF calcium levels. These effects are sometimes achieved at the expense of bone integrity. Adjustment of the ionized calcium concentration of the ECF is achieved mainly by the actions of PTH and active 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D_3 ($1,25[OH]_2D_3$), and calcitonin plays a smaller, yet significant, role. The principal target organs of these hormones are bone, kidney, and intestine. When plasma-ionized calcium concentration decreases, the parathyroid glands sense the change via a membrane-bound calcium sensor protein and secrete PTH immediately. Although parathyroid hormone has no direct effect on osteoclasts, it stimulates osteoblasts and their precursors to produce RANKL (the receptor activator of nuclear factor κB ligand). This substance, a member of the tumor necrosis factor superfamily, activates its receptor, RANK, which is expressed on osteoclasts and their precursors. This, in turn, promotes osteoclast formation and activity and prolongs osteoclast survival by suppressing apoptosis (Hsu et al, 1999). This explains why bone formation and bone resorption are coupled in normal bone physiology. The resorption of bone matrix releases calcium and phosphate into the ECF. At the same time, PTH also acts on the kidney to stimulate increased urine phosphate excretion and some calcium reabsorption in the distal nephron, returning the ionized calcium concentration to normal. It has been suggested that sufficient action of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ is mandatory for these steps to work appropriately. The kidney is almost exclusively responsible for this vitamin D activation (Kurokawa & Fukagawa, 1999). Calcitonin may play a role in the regulating process, although its significance in humans is controversial. Other hormones that affect calcium metabolism but whose secretions are not primarily affected by changes in plasma calcium and phosphate include thyroid hormone, growth hormone, adrenal glucocorticoids, and gonadal steroids.

Analytic Techniques

Total calcium measurements include protein-bound calcium and ionized calcium; alternatively, ionized calcium alone can be measured. The total calcium measurement is easier to perform in the laboratory, but this result must be interpreted in clinical context. For example, patients with malignancies often exhibit hypoalbuminemia, a condition that may result in

http://basicbook.net

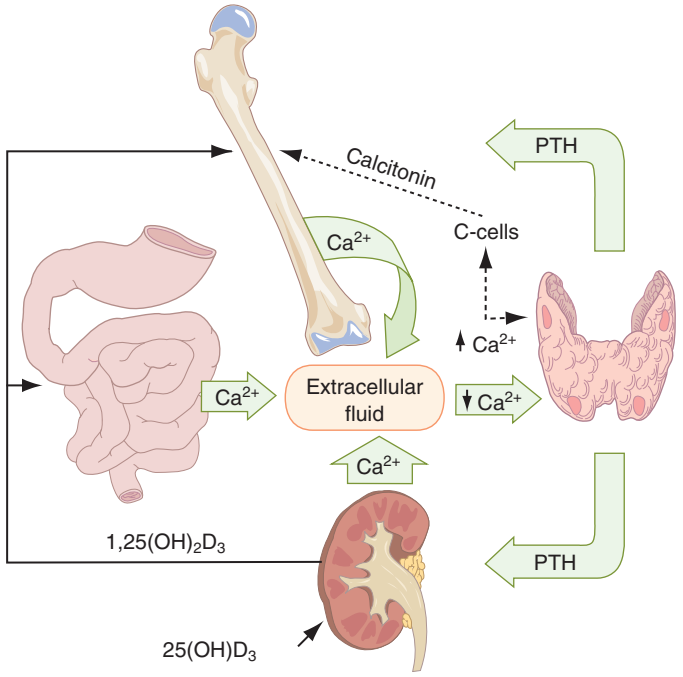


Figure 15-2 **Calcium homeostasis.** *Solid arrows* and *block arrows* indicate effects that increase serum calcium levels; *dashed arrows* indicate negative effects that decrease serum calcium.

misleadingly low total calcium levels. When this occurs, the total calcium level (expressed in mg/dL) can be corrected with the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{Total calcium (mg/dL) corrected for hypoalbuminemia}\\&= \text{Total calcium (measured)}\\&\quad + [(\text{Normal albumin} - \text{Patient's albumin}) \times 0.8]\end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 15-1)}$$

An albumin of about 4.4 is typically used as the normal value in the previous formula. This corrected value is a more accurate assessment of the patient's calcium status. Because albumin is the primary protein that binds calcium, variations in this protein are clinically significant. Only a small percentage of calcium binds to other proteins such as γ-globulins. Therefore, clinical states such as hypogammaglobulinemia are unlikely to drastically alter the total calcium levels.

Total and Ionized Calcium

Although many total calcium procedures have been reported, only three methods are commonly used: colorimetric analysis with metallochromic indicators, atomic absorption spectrometry (AAS), and indirect potentiometry. Total calcium is most widely measured by spectrophotometric determination of the colored complex when various metallochromic indicators or dyes bind calcium. Orthocresolphthalein complexone (O-CPC) and arsenazo III are the most widely used indicators. The structures of both of these dyes are shown in Chapter 27. O-CPC reacts with calcium to form a red color in alkaline solution, which is measured at near 580 nm. Interference by magnesium ions is reduced by the addition of 8-hydroxyquinoline. Arsenazo III reacts with calcium to form a calcium-indicator complex, usually measured at near 650 nm. The stable reagent exhibits high specificity for calcium at slightly acidic pH. These reactions are also discussed in Chapter 27.

Atomic absorption spectrophotometry is the reference method for determining calcium in serum. Despite its greater accuracy and precision compared with other methods, very few laboratories continue to use AAS for routine determination of total calcium. This may be because laboratories performing large numbers of sample determinations rely on automated methods that are not widely available for this technique. In addition, the level of equipment maintenance required in this technique is difficult for high-volume laboratories.

In indirect potentiometry, an electrode selective for calcium measures a sample that is also measured against a sodium-selective electrode, and calcium concentrations are proportional to the difference in potential between the electrodes.

Instruments with calcium-selective electrodes (see Chapter 27) provide accurate, precise, and automatic determinations of free (ionized) calcium. Calcium ion-selective electrodes (ISEs) consist of a calcium-selective membrane enclosing an inner reference solution of $CaCl_2$, AgCl, and other ions, as well as a reference electrode. Ion-selective electrodes are discussed in Chapters 4 and 27. In Chapter 27, use of ISEs to measure total calcium is also discussed.

Reference Interval

The reference interval for total calcium in normal adults ranges between 8.8 and 10.3 mg/dL (2.20 and 2.58 mmol/L). Serum is the preferred specimen for total calcium determination, although heparinized plasma is also acceptable. Citrate, oxalate, and ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) interfere with commonly used methods. Other factors that have been reported to interfere with the colorimetric methods include hemolysis, icterus, lipemia, paraproteins, and magnesium.

The reference interval for *ionized (free) calcium* in normal adults is 4.6 to 5.3 mg/dL (1.16 to 1.32 mmol/L). Whole blood, heparinized plasma, or serum may be used. Specimens should be collected anaerobically, transported on ice, and stored at 4° C to prevent loss of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and glycolysis and to stabilize pH (because pH changes alter the ionized calcium fraction). Proper collection technique is important to ensure accurate ionized calcium results; a tourniquet left on too long can lower pH at the site of collection and falsely elevate levels.

The reference interval for *urinary calcium* varies with diet. Individuals on an average diet excrete up to 300 mg/day (7.49 mmol/day). Urine specimens should be collected with appropriate acidification to prevent calcium salt precipitation.

PHOSPHORUS

Physiology

Distribution

The total body phosphorus content in normal adults is around 700 to 800 grams. Approximately 80% to 85% is present in the skeleton; the remaining 15% is present in the ECF in the form of inorganic phosphate, and intracellularly in the soft tissues as organic phosphates such as phospholipids, nucleic acids, and adenosine triphosphate (ATP). The skeleton contains primarily inorganic phosphate, predominantly as hydroxyapatite and calcium phosphate.

In blood, organic phosphate is located primarily in erythrocytes, with the plasma containing mostly inorganic phosphate. Approximately two thirds of blood phosphorus is organic, while only about 3 to 4 mg/dL of the total of 12 mg/dL represents the inorganic form. Inorganic phosphate in serum exists as both divalent (HPO_4^{2-}) and monovalent ($H_2PO_4^-$) phosphate anions, both of which represent important buffers. The ratio of $H_2PO_4^-$:HPO_4^{2-} is pH dependent and varies between 1:1 in acidosis, 1:4 at pH of 7.4, and 1:9 in alkalosis. Approximately 10% of the serum phosphorus is bound to proteins; 35% is complexed with sodium, calcium, and magnesium; and the remaining 55% is free. Only inorganic phosphorus is measured in routine clinical settings.

Function. In addition to its role in the skeleton, phosphate has important intracellular and extracellular functions. Phosphate is an important constituent of nucleic acids in that both RNA and DNA represent complex phosphodiesters. In addition, phosphorus is contained in phospholipids and phosphoproteins. It forms high-energy compounds (ATP) and cofactors (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate [NADPH]) and is involved in intermediary metabolism and various enzyme systems (adenylate cyclase). Phosphorus is essential for normal muscle contractility, neurologic function, electrolyte transport, and oxygen carrying by hemoglobin (2,3-diphosphoglycerate).

Phosphorus Homeostasis

Most blood phosphate is derived from diet, but some is derived from bone metabolism. Phosphorus is present in virtually all foods. The average dietary intake for adults is about 800 to 1400 mg, most of which is derived from dairy products, cereals, eggs, and meat. About 60% to 80% of ingested phosphate is absorbed in the gut, mainly by passive transport. However, there is also an active energy-dependent process, which is stimulated by $1,25(OH)_2D_3$. Serum calcium and phosphorus generally maintain a reciprocal relationship. Phosphorus is freely filtered in the glomerulus. More than 80% of the filtered phosphorus is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule, and a small amount is reabsorbed in the distal tubule. Proximal reabsorption occurs by passive transport coupled to sodium (Na–P cotransport). Phosphorus intake and PTH mainly regulate this cotransport. Phosphorus restriction increases reabsorption, and intake decreases it. PTH induces phosphaturia by inhibition of Na–P cotransport. The effect is exerted mainly in the proximal tubule. The hormone binds to specific

http://basicbook.net

receptors in the basolateral membrane, resulting in the activation of two pathways—the adenylate cyclase/cyclic adenosine monophosphate/protein kinase A and the phospholipase C/calcium/protein kinase C systems—both of which are involved in inhibition of Na–P cotransport (Bellorin-Font et al, 1990).

Although PTH lowers serum phosphate, serum levels of phosphate are increased by administration of vitamin D and growth hormone. Vitamin D increases intestinal absorption and renal reabsorption of phosphorus. Growth hormone is a main regulator of skeletal growth. Its presence in the bloodstream reduces renal excretion of phosphates, thereby increasing serum levels.

Recently, a regulation cascade comprising a hormone, fibroblast growth factor 23 (FGF-23), an enzyme termed PHEX (phosphate-regulating gene with homologies to endopeptidases) thought to be involved in the metabolism of FGF-23, and a protein (matrix extracellular glycoprotein [MEPE]) has been elucidated (Quarles, 2003). This cascade is thought to be involved in phosphate homeostasis but remains only partially understood. FGF-23 is normally produced by osteocytes and osteoblasts, as well as in marrow pericytes, thymus, and lymph nodes; however, current data support that most of FGF-23 is derived from bone in response to phosphate levels (Lu & Quarles, 2007) and provide the first evidence of an independent hormonal regulation of phosphate levels. Elevated levels of FGF-23 result in hyperphosphaturia, primarily by inhibiting sodium-dependent phosphate resorption channels; FGF-23 also inhibits intestinal phosphorus absorption by inhibiting 25OH-vitamin D 1-α-hydroxylase in the renal proximal tubules (Lu & Quarles, 2007). Mutations involving FGF-23, PHEX, and MEPE have been implicated in phosphate wasting by the kidneys and have been associated with various mineralization abnormalities, including hereditary hypophospatemic rickets and hyperphosphatemic familial tumoral calcinosis (Quarles, 2003, 2012).

Analytic Techniques

Most commonly used methods for determination of inorganic phosphate are based on the reaction of phosphate with ammonium molybdate to form phosphomolybdate complex (see Chapter 44). Direct ultraviolet (UV) measurement of the colorless unreduced complex by absorption at 340 nm, as originally described by Daly and Ertinghausen in 1972, has been adapted for use on most of the automated analyzers. Alternatively, the phosphomolybdate complex can be reduced by a wide variety of agents (e.g., aminonaphtholsulfonic acid, ascorbic acid, methyl-*p*-aminophenol sulfate, ferrous sulfate) to produce molybdenum blue, which can be measured at 600 to 700 nm. The formation of phosphomolybdate complex is pH dependent, and the rate of its formation is influenced by protein concentration. Measurements of unreduced complexes have the advantages of being simple, fast, and stable. An enzymatic method has also been described whereby phosphorus undergoes successive enzymatic reactions catalyzed by glycogen phosphorylase, phosphoglucomutase, and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase. The NADPH produced can be quantitated fluorometrically or spectrophotometrically. The reaction takes place at neutral pH, thus permitting the measurement of inorganic phosphorus in the presence of unstable organic phosphate.

Serum is preferred because most anticoagulants, except heparin, interfere with results and yield falsely low values. Phosphorus levels are increased by prolonged storage with cells at room temperature. Hemolyzed specimens are unacceptable because erythrocytes contain high levels of organic esters, which are hydrolyzed to inorganic phosphate during storage and thus yield elevated levels.

Reference Interval

In normal adults, serum phosphorus varies between 2.8 and 4.5 mg/dL (0.89 and 1.44 mmol/L). Higher phosphorus levels occur in growing children (between 4.0 and 7.0 mg/dL, or 1.29 and 2.26 mmol/L). Serum phosphate is best measured in fasting morning specimens because of diurnal variation, with higher levels in the afternoon and evening, as well as a reduction in serum phosphate after meals. Levels are influenced by dietary intake, meals, and exercise.

MAGNESIUM

Physiology

Distribution

Magnesium is the fourth most abundant cation in the body after calcium, sodium, and potassium; it is the second most prevalent intracellular cation. The normal body magnesium content in an adult is approximately 1000 mmol, or 22.66 g, of which 50% to 60% is in bone, and the remaining 40% to 50% is in the soft tissues. One third of skeletal magnesium is exchangeable and probably serves as a reservoir for maintaining a normal extracellular magnesium concentration.

Only 1% of the total body magnesium (TBMg) is in extracellular fluid. In serum, about 55% of magnesium is ionized or free magnesium (Mg^{++}), 30% is associated with proteins (primarily albumin), and 15% is complexed with phosphate, citrate, and other anions. The interstitial fluid concentration is approximately 0.5 mmol/L. In cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 55% of the magnesium is free or ionized, and the remaining 45% is complexed with other compounds (Elin, 1988).

Approximately 99% of the TBMg is in bone matrix or is intracellular. About 60% of this total is within bone matrix, and the other 40% is within skeletal muscle, within blood cells, or in the cells of other tissues. Intracellular magnesium concentration is approximately 1 to 3 mmol/L (2.4 to 7.3 mg/dL). Within the cell, magnesium is compartmentalized, and most of it is bound to proteins and negatively charged molecules; approximately 80% of cytosolic magnesium is bound to ATP. Significant amounts of magnesium are found in the nucleus, mitochondria, and endoplasmic reticulum. Free magnesium accounts for 0.5% to 5.0% of the total cellular magnesium, and it is the fraction that is probably important as a cofactor supporting enzyme activity.

Function

Magnesium is essential for the function of more than 300 cellular enzymes, including those related to the transfer of phosphate groups, all reactions that require ATP, and every step related to the replication and transcription of DNA and the translation of mRNA. This cation is also required for cellular energy metabolism and has an important role in membrane stabilization, nerve conduction, ion transport, and calcium channel activity. In addition, magnesium plays a critical role in the maintenance of intracellular potassium concentration by regulating potassium movement through the membranes of the myocardial cells. Thus, magnesium deficiency can result in a variety of metabolic abnormalities and clinical consequences, including refractory plasma electrolyte abnormalities (especially depressed potassium) and cardiac arrhythmias, most often observed after stress such as cardiac surgery (Weisinger & Bellorin-Font, 1998).

Magnesium Homeostasis

Total body magnesium depends mainly on gastrointestinal absorption and renal excretion. The average dietary intake of magnesium fluctuates between 300 and 350 mg/day, and intestinal absorption is inversely proportional to the ingested amount. The factors controlling the intestinal absorption of magnesium remain poorly understood.

The kidney is the principal organ involved in magnesium regulation. Renal excretion is about 120 to 140 mg/24 hours for a person on a normal diet. Approximately 70% to 80% of the plasma magnesium is filtered through the glomerular membrane. Tubular reabsorption of Mg^{++} is different from that for other ions because the proximal tubule has a limited role, and 60% to 70% of the reabsorption of Mg^{++} takes place within the thick ascending loop of Henle (Quamme, 1989). Even though the distal tubules reabsorb only 10% of the filtered Mg^{++}, they are the major sites of magnesium regulation. Many factors, both hormonal and nonhormonal (e.g., parathyroid hormone, calcitonin, glucagon, vasopressin, magnesium restriction, acid-base changes, potassium depletion), influence both Henle's loop and distal tubule reabsorption. However, the major regulator of reabsorption is the plasma concentration of Mg^{++} itself. Increased Mg^{++} concentration inhibits loop transport, whereas decreased concentration stimulates transport, regardless of whether or not there is magnesium depletion. The mechanisms appear to be regulated by the Ca^{++}/Mg^{++}-sensing receptor, located on the capillary side of the thick-ascending-limb cells, which senses the changes in Mg^{++} (Quamme, 1997). Other factors that may play a role in magnesium regulation include calcium concentration and rate of sodium chloride reabsorption.

In magnesium deficiency, serum levels decrease, and this leads to reduced urinary excretion. Later, bone stores of magnesium are affected as the process of equilibration with bone stores takes place over several weeks.

Because serum contains only about 1% of total body magnesium, it may not accurately reflect total stores. In general, a low serum level indicates deficiency, and a high level indicates adequate stores. However, the most common result—a normal level—should be interpreted with caution because it does not exclude an underlying deficiency. The most accurate assessment of magnesium status is generally considered to be the loading test, wherein magnesium is given intravenously. Magnesium-deficient individuals retain a greater proportion of the load and excrete less in the urine than normal individuals (Papazachariou et al, 2000). However, the test is not commonly used because it is difficult to administer.

http://basicbook.net

Analytic Techniques

Total Magnesium

Serum is preferred over plasma for magnesium determination because anticoagulant interferes with most procedures. Serum magnesium is usually measured by photometry. The reference method for total magnesium is atomic absorption spectrophotometry. Most clinical laboratories use a photometric method on an automated analyzer. These methods use metallochromic indicators or dyes that change color upon selectively binding magnesium from the sample. Some of the chromophores used include calmagite, methylthymol blue, formazan dye, and magon (see Chapter 27). In the calmagite photometric method, which is the one most commonly used, calmagite, whose structure is shown in Chapter 27 (see Fig. 27-8), forms a colored complex with magnesium in alkaline solution. This complex is stable for over 30 minutes, and its absorbance at 520 nm is directly proportional to the magnesium concentration in the specimen aliquot. Some of these measurements are affected by increased serum bilirubin levels, which can result in a significant underestimation of Mg in the sample.

Ionized (Free) Magnesium. Ionized magnesium can be measured with magnesium ISEs that have been incorporated into several commercial clinical analyzers (Huijgen et al, 1999). These ISEs employ neutral carrier ionophores that are selective for Mg^{++}. However, in addition to Mg^{++}, these ISEs measure Ca^{++}, thus requiring a chemometric correction to calculate the true free magnesium levels in the sample. Studies have shown significant differences in the measured ionized magnesium on different analyzers that were attributed to interference from free calcium in the sample, as well as to insufficient specificity and lack of standardization of the calibrators (Hristova et al, 1995; Cecco et al, 1997). Further improvements in the method for ISEs for ionized magnesium will improve the performance and increase the availability of Mg^{++} determination in the clinical laboratory.

As with ionized calcium determinations, ionized magnesium measurements are affected by pH. The rate of change of ionized magnesium measurements is not as significant as that seen in ionized calcium determinations. Changes in magnesium in relation to alterations of pH are similar to those in ionized calcium, although less well characterized. With an increase in pH, ionized magnesium is decreased, and with a decrease in pH, it is increased (Wang et al, 2002).

Reference Interval

The reference interval for serum total magnesium in normal adults ranges between 0.75 and 0.95 mmol/L (1.7 and 2.2 mg/dL, or 1.5 and 1.9 mEq/L). There appear to be no significant sex or age differences. Erythrocyte magnesium is about three times that of serum. The magnesium concentration in CSF is 2.0 to 2.7 mg/dL (1.0 to 1.4 mmol/L). The reference interval for ionized magnesium depends on the analyzer used for its measurement and varies from 0.44 to 0.60 mmol/L (Hristova et al, 1995).

HORMONES REGULATING MINERAL METABOLISM

The three principal hormones regulating mineral and bone metabolism are parathyroid hormone (PTH), 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D_3 ($1,25[OH]_2D_3$), and calcitonin. PTH and $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ are the primary hormones that exert an effect, whereas calcitonin is less prominent in the cycle that maintains mineral metabolism. In addition, the metabolic effects of calcitonin are less well understood.

Parathyroid Hormone

Physiology

Synthesis. PTH is synthesized and secreted by the chief cells of the parathyroid gland. Intact PTH is a single-chain polypeptide consisting of 84 amino acids with a molecular mass of 9500 Da. It is derived from a larger precursor, pre-pro-PTH, of 115 amino acids, which undergoes two successive cleavages, both at the amino-terminal sequences. This yields, first, an intermediate precursor, pro-PTH, and then the hormone itself. Any pro-PTH that reaches the circulation is immediately converted to PTH and other products.

Secretion. Multiple factors control the release of PTH from the parathyroid glands, but only a small number are known to be physiologically important. PTH secretion is regulated on a time scale of seconds by extracellular ionized calcium and represents a simple negative-feedback loop. Extracellular signals are detected by a calcium-sensing receptor, located on the plasma membrane of the parathyroid chief cell. Stimulation of this receptor leads to suppression of the rate of PTH secretion via intracellular signals (inositol triphosphate and diacylglycerol) generated by the active receptor. The receptor is present in parathyroid glands, the calcitonin-secreting cells of the thyroid, brain, and kidney. This G-protein–linked receptor is mutated in the disorders of familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia, neonatal severe hyperparathyroidism, and autosomal dominant hypocalcemia (Mundy & Guise, 1999).

Ionized magnesium has also been shown to influence the secretion of PTH. Hypocalcemic patients with low serum magnesium concentration often require administration of magnesium to increase serum PTH levels before the serum calcium concentration can be restored to the desired interval. Chronic severe hypomagnesemia such as that seen in alcoholism has been associated with impaired PTH secretion, whereas an acute decrease in the serum magnesium concentration can lead to an increased PTH.

Other levels of PTH control include regulation of PTH gene transcription and parathyroid chief cell mass by vitamin D and extracellular calcium. 1,25-Dihydroxyvitamin D_3 chronically suppresses the synthesis of PTH by interacting with vitamin D receptors in the parathyroid gland.

Function. The primary physiologic function of PTH is to maintain the concentration of ionized calcium in the ECF, which is achieved by the following mechanisms: (1) stimulation of osteoclastic bone resorption and release of calcium and phosphate from bone; (2) stimulation of calcium reabsorption and inhibition of phosphate reabsorption from the renal tubules; and (3) stimulation of renal production of $1,25-(OH)_2D_3$, which increases intestinal absorption of calcium and phosphate. The amino-terminal end of the PTH molecule binds to the PTH receptor, which modulates adenylate cyclase and phospholipase C. Activating mutations in this receptor may cause the hypercalcemia and epiphyseal disorganization seen in Jansen's chondrodysplasia (Bastepe et al, 2004).

The net effects of PTH actions on bone, kidney, and indirectly on intestine include increased serum total and ionized calcium concentrations and decreased serum phosphate. Its immediate effects on the kidney are to increase renal plasma flow and cause a diuresis. At the level of the distal convoluted tubule, it causes increased reabsorption of calcium and chloride with the exchange of phosphate into the urine. These effects are mediated through its activation of renal adenyl cyclase. As a result, urinary cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) and urinary phosphate are increased with a mild secondary hyperchloremic acidosis. In the absence of disease, the increase in serum calcium reduces PTH secretion through a negative-feedback loop, thus maintaining calcium homeostasis. If this negative-feedback loop is sufficiently interrupted by an autonomously functioning parathyroid gland to increase resting calcium to abnormally high levels, the capacity of the distal tubules to reabsorb calcium is exceeded, and hypercalciuria results.

Heterogeneity. PTH metabolism is complex and produces several fragments of varying biologic and immunologic reactivity. The intact PTH is the biologically active form and has a half-life in the circulation of less than 4 minutes. The kidney and liver clear intact PTH rapidly. In the liver, intact PTH is cleaved into discrete fragments and smaller peptides that are released into the circulation. The released inactive carboxy-terminal fragments circulate considerably longer than the intact hormone, mainly because they are cleared exclusively by glomerular filtration (Mundy & Guise, 1999).

Analytic Techniques

Historically, PTH immunoassays were developed to measure midregion, N-terminal, and C-terminal regions. However, these assays cross-reacted with amino acid sequences present in both midregion and carboxyl fragments of the intact hormone and measured mostly inactive fragments because they are present in greater concentration than the intact molecule. Because the kidney clears inactive PTH fragments, results from these assays were difficult to interpret, especially in patients with impaired renal function. PTH intact is measured by noncompetitive immunometric (sandwich) assays (see Chapter 44), which, depending on the type of detection system used, are divided into immunoradiometric assay (IRMA), when radiolabeled, and immunochemiluminometric assay, when labeled with a chemiluminescent compound. Most automated systems use immunochemiluminometric assays. These immunometric assays have several advantages over earlier assays: increased sensitivity and specificity through the use of sequence-specific and affinity-purified antibodies, extended assay concentration range, and decreased incubation time; also, they do not utilize radioactive compounds.

http://basicbook.net

Reference Interval

The reference interval for intact PTH in normal adults is 10 to 65 pg/mL (ng/L) when a two-site immunometric method is used. Studies have demonstrated that intact PTH is secreted in episodic or pulsatile fashion, with an overall circadian rhythm characterized by a nocturnal rise in intact PTH. Serum is the preferred specimen for measurement of PTH. Prolonged storage of the specimen aliquot causes falsely decreased levels.

Bio-Intact PTH

Physiology

Traditional tests for intact PTH detect and measure both the biologically intact 84 amino acid PTH molecule (1-84) and its minimally active to inactive metabolites. Recall that the intact, biologically active molecule is cleaved within minutes to the many metabolites that have a longer half-life, and of which there is a much higher concentration in the circulation at any given time. One of these cleavage products, the 7-84 PTH breakdown fragment, is a weak antagonist to PTH activity and may actually lower patient serum calcium levels. It is therefore important to distinguish between intact PTH and breakdown products in the setting of patients with chronic renal failure (Brossard et al, 2000). In uremic patients, the metabolites, including the 7-84 breakdown fragment, accumulate as the result of decreased renal clearance and can therefore give the impression of an elevated PTH (Quarles et al, 1992).

Recent advances have made available a test for only the biologically active, intact PTH. This third-generation test eliminates interference by the metabolites and is of great clinical utility in patients with impaired renal function. The bio-intact PTH test specifically measures the (1-84) molecule via a two-site chemiluminescent assay. This assay yields a higher specificity than second-generation tests for the biologically active intact PTH, but cost and availability considerations make this a second-line test that is used primarily in following metabolic bone status in patients with renal insufficiency.

Normal ranges for this test show seasonal variation, in part because of lower serum 25(OH)D during the wintertime in the healthy population. Normal values for this test range from 8 to 50 pg/mL (Nichols Advantage, 2004).

Intraoperative PTH

Historically, parathyroid surgery has consisted of bilateral neck exploration in an attempt to identify enlarged parathyroid glands. In recent years, clinical practice has moved away from this costly and invasive procedure, which often requires an overnight hospital stay, to minimally invasive parathyroidectomy with or without the use of a handheld gamma probe. This procedure consists of preoperative administration of technetium-99m sestamibi 2 hours preoperatively followed by performance of a parathyroid scan. The parathyroid adenoma, with its increased numbers of cytoplasmic mitochondria, selectively absorbs large amounts of this radioactive substance, which then allows identification of the adenoma(s) with a handheld gamma probe. This method of identifying the enlarged gland allows for removal of only the hyperfunctional parathyroid gland in cases of parathyroid adenoma. Cases of parathyroid hyperplasia still require bilateral neck exploration. Depending on the size of these enlarged glands, they may or may not be identified on the preoperative parathyroid scan (Sofferman et al, 1998; Goldstein et al, 2000; Sokoll et al, 2000).

Once the hyperfunctioning parathyroid gland is identified via sestamibi scan, and only a single parathyroid gland has been shown to be involved, patients are taken to surgery for minimally invasive parathyroidectomy. This approach has reduced surgical and hospital costs, as well as admission time (Goldstein et al, 1991).

Before surgery, a baseline PTH value is obtained. Following incision, dissection to the radioactive parathyroid gland is guided by the use of a gamma probe. Once identified, the parathyroid gland is removed. After removal, the surgeon waits about 10 to 20 minutes and then obtains a postremoval PTH value. This postremoval PTH value should decrease to at least 50% to 75% below the preoperative level or should have a "significant" trend toward normal in patients with markedly elevated preoperative PTH levels. The decrease in PTH levels reassures the surgeon that the adenomatous gland has been removed. If no or minimal decrease is noted in the intraoperative PTH level, the surgeon is obligated to resume neck exploration for additional abnormal glands, and multiple adenomas or hyperplasia is suggested as the underlying process. Intraoperative PTH testing is recommended for patients undergoing surgery for primary hyperparathyroidism, reoperative hyperparathyroidism, and venous/tumor localization presurgery in the angiography suite (Sokoll et al, 2004).

Analytic Techniques

The intraoperative technique for intact PTH customarily requires blood collected in an EDTA tube (plasma) or a red-top tube (serum). The sample is maintained at a cold temperature to minimize breakdown, and it is then submitted for rapid PTH testing. These immunochemiluminometric assays provide rapid results by modifying certain test parameters on the standard assay. Specifically, increased incubation temperature, continuous shaking of the reaction contents, and alterations in sample and reagent volumes are used to expedite antibody–antigen reactions. The end result is a more rapid assay, albeit one that is more costly, less sensitive, and more imprecise than the standard assay. These assays correlate well with standard assays and are totally acceptable for measuring large drops in PTH concentration during surgery.

Parathyroid Hormone–Related Peptide

Physiology

Parathyroid hormone–related peptide (PTH-rP) was first discovered in tumors derived from lung, breast, kidney, and other solid tissues. It has since been described as a hormone with paracrine and autocrine functions. PTH-rP is composed of 141 amino acids and shows significant homology with PTH in the first 13 amino acids. It is the product of a large gene on chromosome 12 that is syngeneic to the PTH gene on chromosome 11. This peptide shares the same receptor as PTH. Its actions include binding to and activating the PTH receptor, thus simulating the PTH biologic effects on bone, kidney, and intestine. Similar to PTH, PTH-rP increases bone resorption by stimulating osteoclasts and promotes renal tubular reabsorption of calcium. The net effect is elevated serum calcium concentration. It is now known that PTH-rP is produced by approximately 50% of primary breast cancers, and its production may be enhanced by bone-derived factors such as transforming growth factor-β (Yin et al, 1999; see Chapter 74 for a description of this growth factor). Other malignant tumors also elaborate this peptide. PTH-rP has been implicated as the agent responsible for humoral hypercalcemia in patients with malignancy.

Elevation of PTH-rP has been observed in approximately 50% to 90% of patients with malignancy-associated hypercalcemia. Increased PTH-rP is seen in squamous cell carcinomas of the lung, esophagus, cervix, and skin, as well as in other malignancies (e.g., islet cell carcinomas, T-cell and B-cell lymphomas, multiple myeloma). PTH-rP levels are normal in patients with primary hyperparathyroidism, hypoparathyroidism, chronic renal failure, and other conditions with hypercalcemia.

Some benign hyperplasias, including massive mammary hypertrophy, vasoactive intestinal peptide-secreting tumors, pheochromocytomas, and lactational changes of the breast, may elaborate this peptide (Strewler, 1997).

A more recent study demonstrated that PTH-rP has therapeutic potential in the treatment of postmenopausal osteoporosis; PTH-rP increased bone mineral density by nearly 5%—a rate that exceeds those of current therapeutic approaches (Horwitz et al, 2003).

Analytic Technique and Reference Interval

PTH-rP is measured by immunometric assay (usually IRMA), in which antibodies to different sequences of the PTH-rP molecule are used as capture antibodies and radiolabeled signal antibodies. The limit of detection of these assays is between 0.1 and 1.0 pmol/L (Endres et al, 1999). The reference interval for PTH-rP is method dependent. In normal individuals, PTH-rP levels range from undetectable to around 2 pmol/L, whereas the mean concentration of PTH-rP in patients with humoral hypercalcemia of malignancy has been reported to be 22.2 pmol/L. Recent studies have shown that most patients (95%) with a PTH level over 26 ng/mL had no increased PTH-rP, a number that increased to 100% when only patients with hypercalcemia were evaluated. This study suggests that testing for PTH-rP in patients with low or low normal PTH may not be of clinical utility (Fritchie et al, 2009).

Calcitonin

Physiology

Synthesis and Metabolism. Calcitonin is synthesized and secreted by specialized C cells (parafollicular cells) of the thyroid gland and acts on the bones, kidneys, and gastrointestinal tract. Circulating immunoreactive calcitonin is derived from a larger precursor, and the monomeric form is the only biologically active entity. Calcitonin monomer is a 32 amino acid peptide with a molecular mass of 3500 Da. The ionized calcium concentration is the most important regulator of calcitonin secretion. Increases in ionized calcium lead to an increase in calcitonin secretion. Other potent

http://basicbook.net

calcitonin secretagogues include the gastrointestinal peptide hormones and gastrin in particular (Care et al, 1971). The latter could explain the presence of a mild postprandial increase in calcitonin concentration.

The calcitonin receptor is structurally similar to PTH/PTH-rP and secretin receptors; it exists in several isoforms, and its expression seems to be influenced by ambient concentrations of calcitonin itself (Mundy & Guise, 1999). Calcitonin is metabolized within minutes of secretion, primarily by the kidney.

Physiologic Role and Clinical Use. Although calcitonin has been viewed as a major calcium-regulating factor because of its calcium-lowering and phosphorus-lowering properties, its precise physiologic role is still unclear. Calcitonin directly inhibits osteoclastic bone resorption by directly binding to osteoclasts. The effect of this binding action is observed within minutes after calcitonin administration. This inhibition is transient and likely has little role in overall calcium homeostasis, although it may be important in the short-term control of calcium loads. Calcitonin also inhibits the action of PTH and vitamin D. Although some clinical studies suggest that serum calcium does not appear to be affected in patients with total thyroidectomy, other studies suggest that medullary thyroid carcinoma and an excess of calcitonin can give rise to marked hypocalcemia. In the kidney, calcitonin causes increased clearance of calcium and phosphate. The mechanisms of its action on the GI tract have not been elucidated entirely.

In addition to evaluation of calcitonin in the setting of bony abnormalities, testing for calcitonin is an important adjunct in the evaluation of the patient with nodular thyroid disease and is often performed in the hope of identifying the patient with early medullary thyroid carcinoma, which may be seen in the setting of type II multiple endocrine adenomatosis (MEN II), as described in Chapter 24. Therapeutic success in medullary thyroid carcinoma hinges on its early identification, and slight elevations of calcitonin with subsequent surgical exploration of the thyroid may identify this lesion in its early, nonpalpable stage of development. It is well known that the therapeutic efficacy is poor in cases that are identified as well-developed palpable tumors because many such patients already have metastatic disease (Rieu et al, 1995; Horvit & Gagel, 1997). Until recently, routine testing for calcitonin in patients with nodular thyroid disease was not considered cost-effective in the United States. Studies in Europe, however, have shown this to be cost-effective. A recent cost-effectiveness analysis performed in the United States concluded that routine calcitonin testing in patients with nodular thyroid disease is, in fact, of comparable cost-effectiveness as other screening tests, such as those for thyroid-stimulating hormone, breast cancer (mammography), and colon cancer (colonoscopy) (Cheung et al, 2008). Diagnostic sensitivity for medullary thyroid carcinoma is increased by pentagastrin stimulation before calcitonin level testing. A high index of suspicion for this aggressive neoplasm should exist in patients with plasma or serum calcitonin levels over 100 pg/nL (Vierhapper et al, 1997).

Therapeutic applications of calcitonin have been explored and include its use in the treatment of osteoporosis and in the treatment of Paget's disease, the early stages of which are characterized by increased bone resorption.

Analytic Technique and Reference Interval

In the past, serum calcitonin was measured primarily by radioimmunoassay (RIA). However, differences in assay specificity and sensitivity, matrix and nonspecific serum effects, and heterogeneity of the circulating calcitonin have contributed to contradicting results and discrepancies in reference values for the hormone. At present, a number of highly sensitive (limit of detection as low as 2 pg/mL), two-site immunometric methods (electroimmunoassays and IRMAs) for serum calcitonin are available. These tests are now regarded as the most reliable methods of testing for serum calcitonin.

The reference interval for serum calcitonin in normal adults is less than 25 pg/mL for males and less than 20 pg/mL for females. Gender, age, growth, pregnancy, lactation, and ingestion of food have been reported to affect the levels of calcitonin.

Vitamin D and Metabolites

Physiology

Synthesis and Metabolism. (See also Chapters 8 and 26.)

The steroid hormone $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ is the major biologically active metabolite of the vitamin D sterol family. The vitamin D precursor (cholecalciferol or vitamin D_3) may be ingested in the diet or synthesized in the skin from 7-dehydrocholesterol (provitamin D_3) through exposure to sunlight. The plant-derived form of vitamin D is called vitamin D_2 or ergosterol. Neither form of vitamin D has any significant biologic activity; both must be metabolized to hormonally active forms. This activation occurs in two steps, the first of which takes place in the liver and the second of which takes place in the kidney. Cholecalciferol is transported to the liver bound to a specific α_1-globulin. In the liver, vitamin D undergoes hydroxylation to produce 25-hydroxyvitamin D (calcidiol), a metabolite with limited biologic activity. Because the liver only loosely regulates this step, circulating levels of 25-hydroxyvitamin D mirror the amounts of vitamin D that may be ingested or synthesized by the skin. The 25-hydroxyvitamin D is then bound by the vitamin D–binding protein and is transported to the kidney, where it undergoes further hydroxylation by 1-α-hydroxylase in the proximal tubular mitochondria to form the more potent metabolite $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ (calcitriol). Renal hydroxylation of 25-hydroxyvitamin D is the major controlling point in vitamin D metabolism—a step that is regulated by serum phosphate, calcium, and circulating PTH concentrations. PTH and phosphate depletion act independently to increase $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ production by inducing 1-α-hydroxylase activity, with PTH being the more potent stimulus. Decreased blood calcium stimulates the parathyroid glands to secrete PTH, which in turn increases production of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ in the renal proximal tubules. Conversely, a rise in blood calcium suppresses PTH secretion, which lowers the production of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$. The only other known important extrarenal sites of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ production are the placenta and the granulomatous tissue. In humans, the half-life of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ in the circulation is approximately 5 hours. It is excreted as urinary and fecal metabolites (Mundy & Guise, 1999). Several other vitamin D metabolites are produced in the kidney; most of these have been shown to be biologically inert. The most notable of these is 24,25-dihydroxyvitamin D_3, produced by the action of 24-α-hydroxylase in the kidney; it is activated when PTH levels are low or when inorganic phosphate levels are elevated (Fig. 15-3).

Physiologic Role. $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ bound to a vitamin D–binding protein is delivered to the intestine, where the free form is taken up by the cells and transported to a specific nuclear receptor protein. Although the receptor binds several forms of vitamin D, its affinity for 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D_3 is about 1000 times that of 25-hydroxyvitamin D_3, thus accounting for why the former is so much more biologically active than the latter. As a result of this interaction in the intestine, calcium-binding protein is synthesized. In bone, osteocalcin, osteopontin, and alkaline phosphatase are produced. In the intestine, the net effect of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ is to transport calcium and phosphate from the lumen of the small intestine into the circulation by stimulating the expression of calcium-carrying proteins, thus increasing plasma calcium and phosphate concentrations. It also increases bone resorption and enhances the effects of PTH in the nephron to promote renal tubular calcium reabsorption. $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ is a powerful differentiating agent for committed osteoclast precursors, causing their maturation to form multinucleated cells that are capable of resorbing bone. These pathways enable $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ to provide a supply of calcium and phosphate available at bone surfaces for the formation of normal mineralized bone (Mundy & Guise, 1999).

The demonstration that the sites of action of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ are not limited to its target tissues—namely, the intestine, bone, and kidney—has expanded the therapeutic function of vitamin D. Administration of vitamin D hormone has been shown to be effective in the therapeutic management and prevention of postmenopausal and age-related osteoporosis. A recent study showed that higher-than-recommended (700 to 800 vs. the recommended 600 IU) doses of vitamin D in nursing home residents reduced the number of patients with falls and the total number of falls in nursing home residents (Kerry et al, 2007). Another study showed that a similar dose acts to prevent fracture in a comparable population (Bischoff-Ferrari et al, 2005). Evidence suggests that, besides exhibiting calciotropic properties, vitamin D may be a developmental hormone. As discussed in Chapters 8 and 26, vitamin D has been found to exhibit antitumor growth activity.

Analytic Techniques

Of the more than 35 metabolites of vitamin D_2 and vitamin D_3, only $25(OH)D$ and $1,25(OH)_2D$ measurements are clinically important. $25(OH)D$ is a better marker than vitamin D for evaluation of vitamin D status because of its longer half-life (2 to 3 weeks vs. 5 to 8 hours) (Papapoulos et al, 1982), more limited fluctuation with exposure to sunlight and dietary intake, larger concentration, and ease of measurement. Measurement of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ is useful in detecting certain states of inadequate or excessive hormone production in the evaluation of hypercalcemia, hypercalciuria, and hypocalcemia, as well as in bone and mineral disorders. Because both vitamin D_2 and vitamin D_3 are metabolized to compounds of similar if not equal biologic activity, for clinical purposes the assays should measure $25(OH)D_2$ and $25(OH)D_3$ or $1,25(OH)_2D_2$ and $1,25(OH)_2D_3$, respectively.

http://basicbook.net

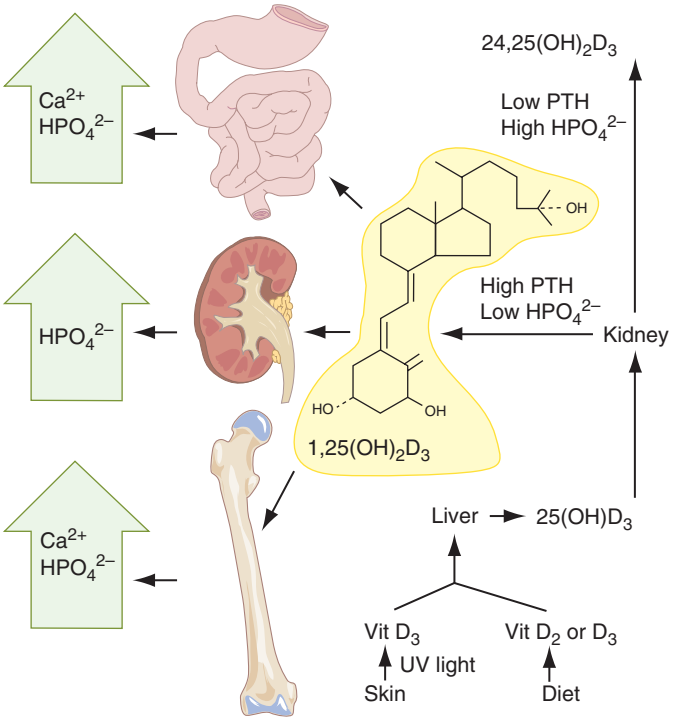


Figure 15-3 Pathways of vitamin D synthesis and their end-organ effects. The *large green arrows* indicate increases in calcium and phosphate induced by vitamin D (dihydroxycholecalciferol).

At present, the reference method for the assay of 25(OH)D_2 and 25(OH)D_3 is dual mass spectrometry. Most other assays for vitamin D metabolites are measured by RIA or chemiluminescent immunoassay.

Reference Interval

The reference interval for 25(OH)D in serum is approximately 10 to 50 ng/mL (25 to 125 nmol/L), and for 1,25$(OH)_2$D is 15 to 60 pg/mL (36 to 144 pmol/L) (Endres & Rude, 1999). Levels for 25(OH)D are influenced by sunlight exposure, latitude, skin pigmentation, sunscreen use, and hepatic function. 25(OH)D levels also exhibit seasonal variation. Winter values may be 40% to 50% lower than summer values because of reduced UV radiation exposure. Concentrations of vitamin D metabolites vary with age and are increased in pregnancy.

Phosphatonins

Phosphatonins represent a new group of phosphate-regulating factors that remain incompletely understood, yet have thus far shed much light on the many disorders of phosphate and calcium metabolism. These factors include FGF-23, MEPE, and frizzled related protein 4 (sFRP4). These substances act to reduce renal inorganic phosphate reabsorption both directly by their action on the renal tubules and indirectly through the inhibition of 25-hydroxyvitamin D_1 α-hydroxylase, causing a reduction in 1α25$(OH)_2$D formation that results in decreased inorganic phosphate absorption and reduced calcium absorption. Both mechanisms produce decreased serum inorganic phosphate levels, resulting in rickets in children and osteomalacia in adults. Increased levels of these factors, as well as the previously discussed PHEX, have been causally implicated in tumor-induced osteomalacia, X-linked hypophosphatemic rickets, and autosomal dominant hypophosphatemic rickets (ADHR). X-linked hypophosphatemic rickets is associated with varied mutations of the *PHEX* gene, and ADHR is due to activating mutations of FGF-23 (Schiavi & Kumar, 2004; Roetzer et al, 2007; Ichikawa et al, 2008; Pettifor, 2008; Gaucher et al, 2009). All of these entities are clinically characterized by reduced serum phosphate, increased urinary phosphate levels, and aberrant bone mineralization. In addition, these entities are customarily seen in the setting of normal serum calcium.

Although the previous entities result largely from increased FGF-23, mutations in FGF-23 resulting in a net reduced level of effective FGF-23 have also been described at multiple loci. They produce disease through a common mechanism of reduced phosphaturic activity, creating the clinical picture of hyperphosphatemic tumoral calcinosis (Araya et al, 2005; Larsson et al, 2005; Masi et al, 2009). Another factor implicated in the hyperphosphatemic form of this disease is UDP-*N*-acetyl-α-D galactosamine/polypeptide *N*-acetylgalactosaminyltransferase 3. Inactivating mutations of this gene result in accelerated degradation of FGF-23 into inactive metabolites (Jueppner, 2007). FGF23 is of interest to nephrologists and endocrinologists alike for its predictive abilities for adverse events in chronic renal disease and as a measurable substance useful in identifying tumors associated with oncogenic osteomalacia.

Analytic Techniques

These growth factors have been evaluated experimentally via polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and more recently by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for intact FGF-23 and the processed fragments (18 and 12 kDa). In addition, reverse transcriptase-PCR (RT-PCR) for FGF-23 has been performed on formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue in the setting of phosphaturic mesenchymal tumors of the mixed connective tissue type with high sensitivity and specificity (Bahrami et al, 2009). More recently, an immunometric sandwich enzyme assay was developed that is now being utilized for testing commercially. The results of these tests for FGF23 must be interpreted in the context of serum calcium, phosphate, magnesium, PTH, 1,25$(OH)_2$D, and 25(OH)D (Fukumoto 2014). Tumor-induced osteomalacia may be suspected in patients with normal serum calcium, magnesium, and PTH; with low to very low serum phosphorus; and increased urine phosphorus and magnesium. 1,25$(OH)_2$D will be low to low normal in these patients, while 25(OH)D is usually normal to low normal. In this clinical setting, serum FGF23 measurements are indicated and may be of assistance in identifying oncogenic osteomalacia (Fukumoto & Yamashita, 2003). This test may also assist in follow-up for patients who have had tumors removed. The half-life of FGF23 is very short, requiring rapid turnaround. This feature may also be of assistance in identifying small or occult tumors via systemic venous sampling, whereby the location of a tumor is established by venous sampling from different areas of the body and comparing the levels of FGF23.

Reference Interval

FGF23 values can be markedly increased (>900 RU/mL) in infants less than 3 months of age. Thereafter, the values are reduced to 230 RU/mL or less in patients 3 months to 17 years of age, and 180 RU/mL or less in those 18 years of age and older. While values in patients with oncogenic osteomalacia are often at least twice the normal upper limit of the reference interval, making this a useful test in that setting, there is some concern about the use of FGF23 testing in patients with chronic kidney disease, where it is utilized to predict the development of secondary hyperparathyroidism and adverse outcomes, because there is some variation as to test analytes and lack of reproducible cutoff points (Wesseling-Perry, 2011).

DISORDERS OF MINERAL METABOLISM

HYPERCALCEMIA

Increased serum calcium is associated with anorexia, nausea, vomiting, constipation, hypotonia, depression, high-voltage T waves on electrocardiography, and occasionally lethargy and coma. Persistent hypercalcemia or persistently elevated calcium–phosphorus ionic activity product may cause ectopic depositions of calcium in tissues throughout the body. This may take the form of ectopically calcified blood vessel walls associated with necrotic skin lesions in calciphylaxis. It may also lead to calcifications in viable tissues (metastatic calcification/tumoral calcinosis), particularly those developing pH gradients with localized relative alkalosis (e.g., pulmonary alveolar walls, renal medullary pyramids, deep gastric mucosa). The most common causes of hypercalcemia are primary hyperparathyroidism and malignant neoplasms, which account for 80% to 90% of all patients with hypercalcemia. Less frequent causes include renal failure, diuretics, vitamins A and D intoxication, lithium therapy, milk–alkali syndrome, immobilization, hyperthyroidism and other nonparathyroid endocrinopathies, and familial hypercalciuric hypercalcemia (Box 15-1). Recently, mutations in *FGF-23* and in another gene encoding the so-called N-terminal sterile α motif protein (*SAMD9* gene) have also been implicated in tumoral calcinosis. Mutations in *FGF-23* characteristically cause hyperphosphatemic tumoral calcinosis, while mutations in *SAMD9* cause normophosphatemic tumoral calcinosis. The tumoral calcinosis caused by both is familial (Araya et al, 2005; Larsson et al, 2005; Chefetz et al, 2005; 2008; Topaz et al, 2006; Masi et al, 2009). Disease due to *SAMD9* mutations appears to affect Yemenite Jews predominantly. *Primary hyperparathyroidism* (PHPT) is characterized by excessive secretion of PTH in the absence of an appropriate physiologic stimulus and with no response to

http://basicbook.net

the physiologic negative-feedback loop of hypercalcemia. This results in a generalized disorder of calcium, phosphate, and bone metabolism. Approximately 100,000 cases of PHPT occur each year in the United States, and the incidence increases with age. The disease affects women twice as frequently as it affects men. Most cases are caused by solitary parathyroid adenomas. Other causes include multiple parathyroid adenomas, hyperplasia, and, rarely, parathyroid carcinoma. Hypercalcemia in PHPT is characteristically associated with decreased serum phosphate due to PTH-induced phosphate diuresis and is frequently accompanied by mild acidosis from decreased renal reabsorption of bicarbonate. The hypercalcemia is attributed to the direct action of PTH on bone, causing increased resorption; PTH-activated renal tubular reabsorption; and PTH-stimulated increased renal biosynthesis of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$, which increases intestinal absorption of calcium (Boden & Kaplan, 1990). Half or more of patients with PHPT are asymptomatic. Symptomatic patients usually present with recurrent nephrolithiasis, chronic constipation, mental depression, neuromuscular dysfunction, recurrent chronic pancreatitis, or peptic ulcer, and less frequently with unexplained or premature osteopenia (Deftos et al, 1993).

The unique bone manifestation of PHPT is osteitis fibrosa cystica generalizata. This is characterized by diffuse skeletal radiolucency with focal cystic bone lesions, subperiosteal bone resorption most pronounced in the digits, and osseous deformities on routine radiographs. Histologically, paratrabecular fibrosis and marrow hypervascularity are accompanied by increased numbers of osteoclasts, causing trabecular scalloping (Howship's lacunae) as a result of accelerated bone resorption (Fig. 15-4, *A* and *B*). As the disease progresses, the marrow cavity is gradually replaced by fibrous tissue. The process is even more pronounced in compact bone, where large aggregates of osteoclasts demonstrate wedge-shaped "tunneling" resorption that enlarges Haversian canals (cutting cones). Tunneling resorption is also seen in cancellous bone, and its presence is almost always indicative of hyperparathyroidism. When these changes are widespread and chronic, they result in radiographic alterations including the so-called "salt and pepper" appearance of the skull and subperiosteal resorption pattern of the fingers. Fractures that develop through this altered bone tend to heal poorly and result in space-occupying lesions filled with fibrous tissue, multinucleated giant cells, hemorrhage, and hemosiderin; these are sometimes referred to as "brown tumors" even though they are not neoplastic. Generalized osteitis fibrosa cystica is now very uncommon because serum calcium and phosphate screening usually reveal early parathyroid hyperfunction long before signs or symptoms develop. However, even in advanced cases, bony changes are often reversible with successful removal of the tumor.

PHPT may be inherited as an autosomal dominant trait and may present as a part of MEN. MEN 1 consists of hyperparathyroidism and tumors of the pituitary gland and pancreas. It is often associated with Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, characterized by islet cell tumors with gastrin hypersecretion and peptic ulcer disease. MEN 2A consists of hyperparathyroidism, pheochromocytoma, and medullary carcinoma of the thyroid. Studies have identified the molecular defects in hyperparathyroidism. A gene locus on chromosome 11 has been associated with MEN 1. The same locus appears to be lost in approximately 25% of solitary parathyroid adenomas, implying that the defect responsible for MEN 1 can also cause the sporadic disease.

Secondary hyperparathyroidism is present when there is resistance to the metabolic actions of PTH, as occurs in patients with renal failure, vitamin D deficiency (osteomalacia), and pseudohypoparathyroidism. This leads to parathyroid gland hyperplasia and excessive production of PTH. The pathogenesis varies somewhat, depending on the nature and severity of renal disease. However, decreased renal excretion of phosphate as a consequence of impaired glomerular filtration is paramount. In such patients, there is an initial tendency toward hypocalcemia because as phosphate levels rise, calcium levels decrease, because their ionic activity product constant makes their serum concentrations inversely related (see Chapter 8 for a discussion of the solubility product constant). In addition, chronic renal failure includes reduced production of $1,25(OH)_2D$ by the kidney. Decreased $1,25(OH)_2D$ causes a reduced response of the skeleton to PTH and decreased calcium absorption from the intestine, contributing to hypocalcemia. Because of the decreased serum ionic calcium, there is positive feedback to increase parathyroid hormone secretion; this causes parathyroid gland hyperplasia. Initial clinical manifestations include low to normal serum calcium and hyperphosphatemia. Later, in cases with severe secondary hyperparathyroidism, both hypercalcemia and hyperphosphatemia develop. In addition, bone pain, ectopic calcifications, and pruritus may be seen. The complex bone disease occurring in secondary hyperparathyroidism and renal failure is usually termed renal osteodystrophy (Fig. 15-5) and is discussed in greater detail later. Autonomous hyperparathyroidism may sometimes supervene in the setting of chronic

BOX 15-1

Causes of Hypercalcemia

Parathyroid Hormone (PTH)-Mediated

Primary hyperparathyroidism (most common)
Sporadic
Multiple endocrine neoplasia (types 1 and 2)
Familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia
Ectopic secretion of PTH by neoplasms (rare)?

Non–PTH-Mediated

Malignancy associated (most common)
Vitamin D mediated
Vitamin D intoxication
Increased generation of $1,25(OH)_2D$
Other endocrinopathies
Thyrotoxicosis
Hypoadrenalism
Immobilization with increased bone turnover
Milk–alkali syndrome
Sarcoidosis
Multiple myeloma

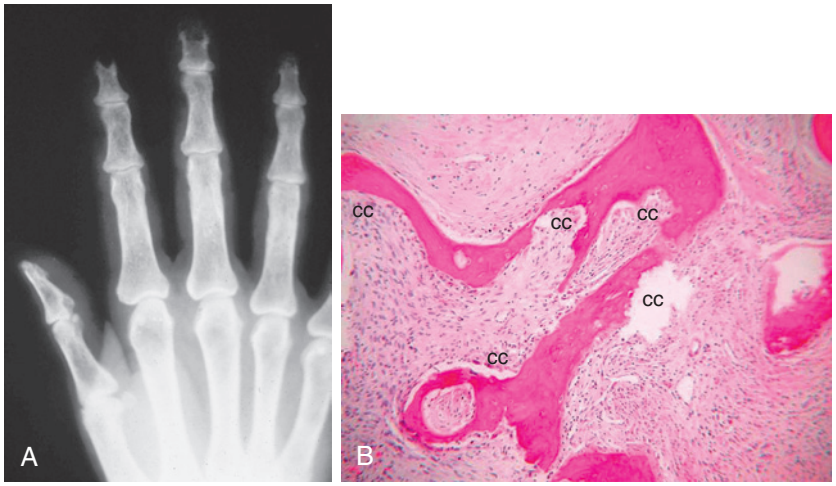


Figure 15-4 **Hyperparathyroid bone disease (osteitis fibrosa cystica). A,** The hand radiograph demonstrates scalloped cortical resorption on the radial *(left)* side of the phalanges and radiolucency of the terminal phalangeal tufts. **B,** Biopsy of compact bone with advanced hyperparathyroid disease demonstrates conversion of compact to cancellous bone with internal resorption of Haversian systems by osteoclastic cutting cones (CC) and paratrabecular fibrosis (100 ×).

http://basicbook.net

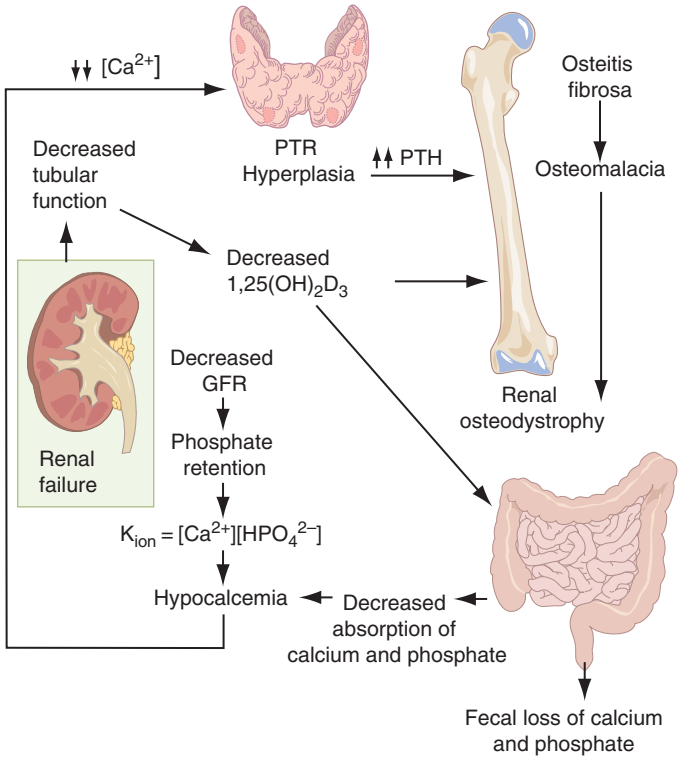


Figure 15-5 **Relationships leading to renal osteodystrophy in chronic renal failure.**

parathyroid stimulation. Typical patients are those with chronic renal failure or with some other disease that chronically lowers serum ionized calcium levels and stimulates long-term parathyroid hormone secretion. This chronic parathyroid stimulation results in increased parathyroid mass and diffuse parathyroid hyperplasia. If increased levels of parathyroid hormone are not diminished by hypercalcemia, whether it occurs in the setting of continued calcium wasting or if the calcium level is corrected (e.g., after renal transplantation), the clinical syndrome is sometimes referred to as *tertiary hyperparathyroidism*. Patients with this syndrome may have parathyroid adenomas, parathyroid hyperplasia, and even parathyroid carcinomas. There is also a tendency for these patients to develop metastatic calcifications in soft tissues, blood vessels, and organs because their transiently increased calcium and phosphate levels may exceed the ionic activity product for these ions and cause precipitation of the excess.

Malignant tumors are the most frequent cause of hypercalcemia in the hospital inpatient population. *Malignancy-associated hypercalcemia* can be divided into cases with or without bony metastases. Radiolucent bone lesions indicative of metastatic disease are frequently seen in patients with hematologic malignancies (multiple myeloma, lymphomas, and leukemias), lung carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma, and thyroid carcinoma. Several possible mechanisms have been implicated in the development of malignancy-associated hypercalcemia, including direct tumor lysis, secretion of osteoclast-activating factor by tumor cells, and secretion of lymphokines with osteoclast potentiating activity such as interleukin-1 and tumor necrosis factor. Conventional bone radiographs and bone scanning can detect most bony metastases. Hypercalcemia without bony metastases is also known as *humoral hypercalcemia of malignancy* (HHM). Diagnosis in these cases, in general, is more difficult because the primary tumor may be occult. A variety of tumor types have been associated with this syndrome, including renal carcinoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, carcinomas of the head and neck, lung carcinomas, and islet cell tumors of the pancreas. The most common cause of HHM is secretion of PTH-rP by the tumor. The diagnosis is highly suggestive when urinary cAMP excretion (typically seen in hyperparathyroidism) is increased in the setting of reduced or normal PTH.

Vitamin D intoxication is another cause of hypercalcemia and is usually the result of excessive intake of vitamin supplements over a prolonged period of time. Excess vitamin D causes increased calcium absorption by the intestines, enhanced bone resorption, and hypercalciuria. PTH is suppressed, but the frequent development of renal failure may make it difficult to exclude hyperparathyroidism; 25(OH)D has been implicated as the major metabolite responsible for the syndrome. The diagnosis is supported by careful history taking, measurements of 25(OH)D, and a prompt response following steroid administration. Clinically, vitamin D intoxication is manifest by weakness, irritability, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Soft tissue calcification is a common feature because serum phosphorus tends to be elevated. Intoxication may persist for months because of storage of vitamin D in adipose tissue.

Hypercalcemia associated with *granulomatous disorders* is seen commonly in patients with sarcoidosis and less frequently in patients with tuberculosis, silicone-induced granulomas, and fungal diseases such as coccidioidomycosis and candidiasis. Renal failure, soft tissue calcification, nephrolithiasis, and severe hypercalcemia are potential manifestations. Different mechanisms in the development of hypercalcemia have been implicated, including enhanced sensitivity to vitamin D, increased concentration of vitamin D metabolites, and unregulated generation of $1,25(OH)_2D$ by macrophages in granulomatous tissue.

Milk–alkali syndrome was first reported in patients with peptic ulcer disease taking large amounts of milk and absorbable alkali (e.g., calcium carbonate). Recently, a rise in the incidence of the syndrome has been reported; this may be due to the widespread use of calcium carbonate preparations in the treatment and prophylaxis of osteoporosis. The syndrome is manifest by hypercalcemia, hypocalciuria, alkalosis, azotemia, and soft tissue calcifications.

Laboratory testing in the differential diagnosis of hypercalcemia includes measurements of serum total and ionized calcium, urine calcium, serum and urine phosphorus, alkaline phosphatase, albumin, intact PTH, PTH-rP, and urine cAMP. Determination of various other analytes (e.g., growth hormone, cortisol, cortisone suppression test, selective venous catheterization with measurement of local PTH concentration, measurements of vitamin D metabolites) can provide valuable information in selected cases. Meaningful interpretation of relevant laboratory data often requires various special studies in addition to a complete history and physical examination. Renal function tests and studies of acid-base balance may be indicated. Histopathologic examination of bone biopsy specimens from appropriate sites can be of unique value in selected cases.

HYPOCALCEMIA

Chronic hypocalcemia presents with neuromuscular and neurologic manifestations, including muscle spasms, carpopedal spasm, peripheral and perioral paresthesias, cardiac arrhythmias, lengthening of the QT interval and low-voltage T waves on the electrocardiogram, and, in severe cases, laryngeal spasm and convulsions. Respiratory arrest may occur. Severe hypocalcemia will eventually result in tetany. Hypocalcemia has many causes, which can be divided into several major categories: deficiencies in PTH production or secretion, resistance to PTH action, deficiency of vitamin D or vitamin D metabolites, and deficiencies in bone mineralization with normal metabolism of PTH and vitamin D (Box 15-2). The most common causes of hypocalcemia are chronic renal failure, hypomagnesemia, hypoparathyroidism, pseudohypoparathyroidism, vitamin D deficiency, and acute pancreatitis. Less frequently, low plasma calcium may be seen in critically ill patients with sepsis, burns, and acute renal failure. Transient hypocalcemia can be observed after administration of a number of drugs, including heparin, glucagon, and protamine, as well as after massive transfusions of citrated blood products.

Hypoparathyroidism, hereditary or acquired, is characterized by diminished or absent PTH production by the parathyroid glands, which leads to a fall in plasma calcium and corresponding hyperphosphatemia. In addition, these patients have absent or low levels of $1,25(OH)_2D$. In the past, acquired hypoparathyroidism secondary to neck surgeries and thyroidectomies, in particular, was more common than hereditary hypoparathyroidism. With improvement in surgical techniques, however, its incidence has diminished dramatically. Hereditary hypoparathyroidism can occur as an isolated entity with a variable pattern of inheritance (idiopathic hypoparathyroidism), in association with defective development of both the thymus and the parathyroid glands (DiGeorge syndrome or branchial dysgenesis), or as part of a complex hereditary autoimmune syndrome involving failure of the adrenals, ovaries, and parathyroids, usually referred to as autoimmune polyglandular deficiency. Hereditary hypoparathyroidism is often manifested within the first decade of life. In addition to low or absent PTH and hypocalcemia, certain skin manifestations, such as alopecia and candidiasis, occur frequently.

Pseudohypoparathyroidism (PHP), also known as Albright's hereditary osteodystrophy, is a rare genetic disorder characterized by ineffective PTH action rather than failure of parathyroid gland hormone production.

http://basicbook.net

BOX 15-2

Causes of Hypocalcemia

Parathyroid Hormone (PTH)-Mediated

PTH deficiency
Permanent
Acquired
Postsurgical
Hereditary
Idiopathic hypoparathyroidism
DiGeorge syndrome (branchial dysgenesis)
Polyglandular autoimmune syndromes
Reversible
Severe hypomagnesemia
Long-standing hypercalcemia
PTH resistance
Pseudohypoparathyroidism

Vitamin D–Mediated

Vitamin D deficiency
25(OH)D deficiency
$1,25(OH)_2$ deficiency
Reversible inhibition of 1-hydroxylase
Intrinsic renal defects (chronic renal failure, tubulopathies, Fanconi's syndrome)
Defective response to $1,25(OH)_2D$
Mutations of vitamin D receptor

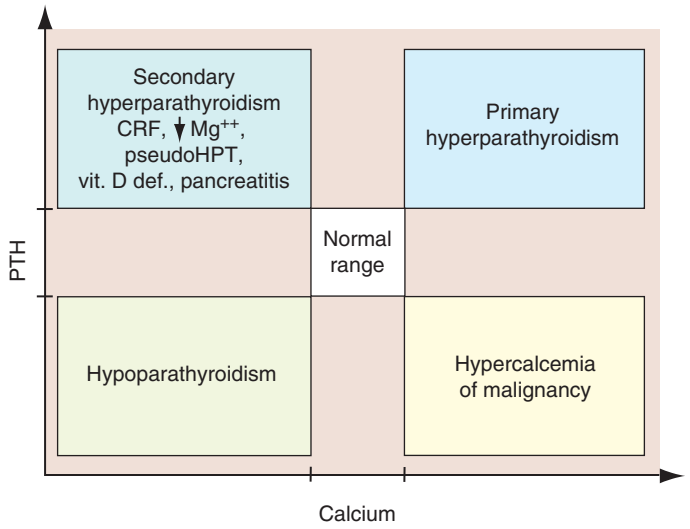


Figure 15-6 Graph correlating alterations in serum calcium levels and parathyroid hormone levels with the diseases most frequently causing these alterations.

TABLE 15-1

Serum Calcium, Phosphate, and Vitamin D Levels in Various Disorders

Disorder	Calcium	25(OH)D	1,25(OH)D	Phosphate
25(OH)D intoxication	High	High	Low, normal	Normal, high
Primary hyperparathyroidism	High	Normal	Normal, high	Low
Secondary hyperparathyroidism	Low	Low, normal, high	Low, normal, high	Low, normal, high
Tertiary hyperparathyroidism	Normal, high*	Low, normal, high	Low, normal, high	Low, normal, high
Malignancy	High	Normal	Low, normal	Low
Vitamin D deficiency	Low	Low	Low, normal, high	Low
Renal failure	Low	Normal	Low	High
Hyperphosphatemia	Low	Normal	Low	High
Vitamin D rickets type I, II	Low	Normal, high	Low, normal, high	Low
Granulomatous diseases (sarcoid/TB)	High	Low, normal, high	High	Normal, high
Postmenopausal osteoporosis	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal
Senile osteoporosis	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal
Osteomalacia	Low, normal	Low, normal	Low	Low, normal, high

*Calcium may be normal in the setting of concurrent $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ deficiency.

Clinically, PHP presents with some of the features of hypoparathyroidism, such as extraosseous calcifications, extrapyramidal symptoms and signs such as choreoathetotic movements and dystonia, chronic changes in fingernails and hair, lenticular cataracts, and increased intracranial pressure with papilledema. Serum calcium is depressed despite an increased concentration of PTH, suggesting resistance to PTH. Moreover, whereas infusion of PTH in patients with hypoparathyroidism generally results in a marked increase in both urinary cAMP and phosphaturia, patients with PHP usually respond with subnormal urinary phosphate excretion and cAMP production. This is due to a defect in the stimulatory G-protein of adenylate cyclase that is necessary for the action of PTH.

Hypocalcemia associated with hypomagnesemia may be the result of deficient PTH release from the parathyroid glands or impaired responsiveness to the hormone. Hypocalcemia associated with hypovitaminosis D may occur as a result of inadequate production of vitamin D_3 in the skin, insufficient dietary supplementation, inability of the small intestine to absorb adequate amounts of the vitamin from the diet, and resistance to the effects of vitamin D. The latter may be due to deficient or defective receptors for $1,25(OH)_2D$ or to the use of drugs that antagonize vitamin D action. Hypovitaminosis D is associated with disturbances in mineral metabolism and secretion of PTH and mineralization defects in the skeleton such as rickets in children and osteomalacia in adults (see later). Decreased levels of vitamin D lead to insufficient intestinal absorption of calcium and hypocalcemia, followed by increased secretion of PTH (secondary hyperparathyroidism). Increased PTH stimulates calcium release from bone and decreases calcium clearance by the kidney, thus increasing calcium levels in the circulation. If hypovitaminosis D persists, severe hypocalcemia may occur.

An inherited disorder, characterized by defective production of $1,25(OH)_2D$ in the kidney, has been described. In this syndrome, known as pseudovitamin D–deficient rickets or vitamin D–dependent rickets type I, there is a deficiency in renal 25(OH)D-1α-hydroxylase activity, which results in low production of $1,25(OH)_2D$ and decreased levels in the circulation, but with a normal response to physiologic doses of calcitriol. In vitamin D–dependent rickets type II, mutations impair the function of the $1,25(OH)_2D$ receptor by altering the binding of the hormone to the receptor, causing elevated levels of circulating $1,25(OH)_2D$. Although administration of high doses of calcitriol produces further increases in the levels of $1,25(OH)_2D$, no physiologic response occurs. Another inherited disease associated with impaired vitamin D metabolism is X-linked hypophosphatemic rickets. This condition is characterized by a functional defect in 25(OH)D-1α-hydroxylase, hypophosphatemia, and normal or low serum levels of $1,25(OH)_2D$. Figure 15-6 summarizes the more common causes of abnormal calcium levels, along with their differential diagnoses. Tables 15-1 and 15-2 summarize serum calcium, phosphate, vitamin D levels, and other laboratory values in altered metabolic states.

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 15-2
Laboratory Values in Various Altered States of Calcium Metabolism

	Primary Hyperparathyroidism	Humoral Hypercalcemia of Malignancy	Secondary Hyperparathyroidism	Tertiary Hyperparathyroidism	Familial Hypocalciuric Hypercalcemia
Urine calcium	High	High	Normal, high	Normal, high	Low
Serum phosphate	Low	Low	Low, normal, high	Low, normal, high	Low
Urine phosphate	High	High	High	High	High
1,25(OH)D	Normal, high	Low, normal	Low, normal, high	Low, normal, high	Normal, high
PTH intact	High	Low	High	High	High
PTH-r protein	Normal	High	Normal	Normal	Normal

PTH, Parathyroid hormone; *PTH-r,* parathyroid hormone related.

HYPERPHOSPHATEMIA

Hyperphosphatemia is usually caused by decreased renal excretion in acute and chronic renal failure; increased intake with excessive oral, rectal, or intravenous administration; or an increased extracellular load due to a transcellular shift in acidosis. Less common causes include increased tubular reabsorption in hypoparathyroidism; pseudohypoparathyroidism; and increased extracellular load due to cell lysis in rhabdomyolysis, intravascular hemolysis, leukemia, lymphoma, and cytotoxic therapy. In addition, hyperphosphatemia may be seen secondary to overmedication with vitamin D and production of vitamin D by granulomatous diseases such as sarcoidosis and tuberculosis.

No direct symptoms result from hyperphosphatemia. When high levels are maintained for long periods, however, mineralization is enhanced, and calcium phosphate may be deposited in abnormal sites. Ectopic calcification is a frequent complication in patients with chronic renal failure receiving supplements of vitamin D when correction of hyperphosphatemia is inadequate (Weisinger & Bellorin-Font, 1998).

HYPOPHOSPHATEMIA

Hypophosphatemia is observed in 0.25% to 2.15% of general hospital admissions. Alcohol abuse is the most common cause of severe hypophosphatemia, probably as the result of poor food intake, vomiting, antacid use, and marked phosphaturia. It is also caused by ingestion of large amounts of nonabsorbable antacids that bind phosphate. Hypophosphatemia is induced by several mechanisms, including internal redistribution, increased urinary excretion, decreased intestinal absorption, or a combination of these abnormalities. The most common cause is a shift of phosphorus from extracellular fluid into cells, which can be observed in acute respiratory alkalosis associated with sepsis, salicylate poisoning, alcohol withdrawal, heatstroke, hepatic coma, increased insulin during glucose administration, recovery from diabetic ketoacidosis, and refeeding of malnourished patients. Increased urinary excretion is usually secondary to hyperparathyroidism; renal tubular defects, as in Fanconi's syndrome and familial hypophosphatemia; X-linked vitamin D–resistant rickets; aldosteronism; glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid administration; and diuretic therapy. Hypophosphatemia due to urinary losses is observed in osmotic diuresis, acute volume expansion, and up to 30% of patients with malignant neoplasms such as certain leukemias and lymphomas. In oncogenic hypophosphatemia with osteomalacia, also referred to as tumor-induced osteomalacia, mesenchymal tumors, which are more often benign than malignant, produce hyperphosphaturia by a mechanism in which overproduction of FGF-23 has been implicated (Nelson et al, 2003; Folpe et al, 2004). Increased intestinal loss is due to vomiting, diarrhea, and use of phosphate-binding antacids. Decreased intestinal absorption is observed in malabsorption, vitamin D deficiency, and steatorrhea (Box 15-3).

Symptomatic hypophosphatemia is usually observed when plasma phosphorus falls below 0.32 mmol/L. Clinical manifestations include proximal weakness, anorexia, dizziness, myopathy, dysphagia, ileus, respiratory failure due to weakness of the respiratory muscles, impairment of cardiac contractility due to depletion of ATP in myocardial cells, and metabolic encephalopathy.

HYPERMAGNESEMIA

Hypermagnesemia (i.e., plasma Mg^{++} concentration >0.9 mmol/L) is rare and usually iatrogenic. Those most at risk are the elderly and patients with bowel disorders or renal insufficiency. Clinical manifestations of hypermagnesemia include hypotension, bradycardia, respiratory depression, depressed mental status, and electrocardiographic abnormalities (Weisinger & Bellorin-Font, 1998).

BOX 15-3
Causes of Abnormal Phosphate Levels

Elevated

Hypoparathyroidism and pseudohypoparathyroidism
Renal failure
Hypervitaminosis D
Cytolysis
Pyloric obstruction

Decreased

Alcohol abuse
Primary hyperparathyroidism
Acute respiratory alkalosis
Myxedema
Exogenous/endogenous steroids
Diuretic therapy
Renal tubular defects
Oncogenic phosphaturia
Diabetic coma

HYPOMAGNESEMIA

Magnesium deficiency is found in approximately 11% of hospitalized patients. The usual reason is loss of magnesium from the gastrointestinal (GI) tract or the kidney. Depletion by GI tract occurs during acute and chronic diarrhea, malabsorption, and steatorrhea after extensive bowel resection, and in patients with the rare inborn error of metabolism, primary intestinal hypomagnesemia. Na^+ resorption may serve as the basis for magnesium depletion in the kidney because of a sodium-dependent magnesium efflux pathway in the same tubular segment (Ikari et al, 2003) or because of a primary defect in renal tubular reabsorption of Mg^{++}. Factors that can cause Mg^{++} losses from the urine include thiazide and loop diuretics, increased sodium excretion and volume expansion (parenteral fluid therapy), hypercalcemia and hypercalciuria (hyperthyroidism or malignancy), and nephrotoxic drugs (aminoglycoside antibiotics, cisplatin, amphotericin B, cyclosporine). Diabetes mellitus is a common cause of hypomagnesemia, probably secondary to glycosuria and osmotic diuresis. Another important and very common cause of magnesium deficiency is alcohol; this is found in approximately 30% of alcoholic patients admitted to the hospital. Sustained and extensive stress, including that seen with varied surgical procedures and acute illnesses, may be associated with depressed serum magnesium levels (Box 15-4).

Signs and symptoms of magnesium depletion do not usually appear until extracellular levels have fallen to 0.5 mmol/L or less. Manifestations of significant magnesium depletion are largely due to the associated hypocalcemia and include neuromuscular hyperexcitability characterized by carpopedal spasm, seizures, muscular weakness, depression, and psychosis; metabolic abnormalities (carbohydrate intolerance, hyperinsulinism); and cardiac arrhythmias.

http://basicbook.net

BOX 15-4
Causes of Hypomagnesemia

Decreased Intake/Absorption
Protein-calorie malnutrition
Starvation
Alcoholism
Prolonged intravenous therapy
Inadequate parenteral supplementation
Malabsorption (e.g., celiac sprue)
Neonatal gut immaturity
Excessive GI losses
Prolonged gastric suction
Laxatives
Intestinal or biliary fistula
Severe diarrhea

Excessive Renal Losses
Diuretics
Acute tubular necrosis—diuretic phase
Acute renal failure—diuresis
Primary aldosteronism
Hypercalcemia
Renal tubular acidosis
Idiopathic renal wasting
Chronic renal failure with wasting

Miscellaneous
Idiopathic
Acute pancreatitis
Porphyria with syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH)
Multiple transfusions with citrated blood
Endocrine
Hyperthyroidism
Hyperparathyroidism
Diabetes mellitus with diabetic ketoacidosis
Hyperaldosteronism
Medications (e.g., cisplatin, cyclosporine, gentamicin, ticarcillin)

BIOCHEMICAL MARKERS OF BONE REMODELING

The skeleton constantly undergoes a process of remodeling that is essential for bone health. Bone remodeling is a coupled process that begins with resorption of old bone by osteoclasts, a process that takes approximately 50 days, followed by formation of new bone by osteoblasts, which takes another 150 days, for a total turnover cycle lasting approximately 200 days (Erikson et al, 1994). Beginning at middle age or earlier, net bone loss occurs because resorption exceeds formation, a fact that was identified more than 60 years ago by Fuller Albright, the father of metabolic bone disease. He noted that postmenopausal women had elevated urinary calcium levels and deduced that this reflects a negative calcium balance that can result in osteoporotic fractures. Estrogen deficiency and many other diseases and conditions accentuate bone resorption (Watts, 1999).

Three major diagnostic procedures are available to monitor bone turnover and evaluate metabolic bone disease: bone imaging techniques, bone biopsy, and biochemical markers of bone turnover. Although bone density measurement is an important diagnostic tool in osteoporosis, it is difficult for the test to detect increased bone turnover in its early stages or to monitor acute changes. Also, bone densitometry gives a summated measure of mineralized bone matrix; it does not define abnormal distribution of bone loss. Bone biopsy can define the distribution of bone mass and can answer questions about bone mineralization that cannot be answered with bone densitometry. However, bone biopsy is invasive, and, in the absence of mineralization defects, it provides a relatively static glimpse into long and slowly developing processes; thus, it is not useful in routine clinical management of osteoporosis. In osteoporosis, net bone loss is caused by only a slight imbalance of bone resorption over formation, so conventional markers, such as calcium and PTH, are usually normal. In contrast, bone turnover markers are more sensitive to subtle change and can be used to noninvasively detect and monitor the progression of metabolic bone disease. Laboratory assessment of these markers has been the focus of much attention in recent years (Ju et al, 1997; Souberbielle et al, 1999).

BONE RESORPTION MARKERS

Bone tissue has three components: an organic matrix (called osteoid), bone mineral, and bone cells. Bone resorption markers have included constituents of bone matrix such as calcium and collagen degradation products such as hydroxyproline, pyridinium cross-links, and telopeptides, as well as cellular products involved with degradation of the mineralized matrix such as tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase (TRAP). Urinary calcium is affected by diet and renal function; thus, it is not sensitive or specific for assessment of bone remodeling (Watts, 1999). Tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase, a lysosomal enzyme found in osteoclasts, is not considered a useful test. Measurement of the amino acids hydroxyproline and glycosylated (galactosyl and glucosyl-galactosyl) hydroxylysine is not specific for skeletal collagen and has been found to correlate poorly with bone resorption, as determined by bone histomorphometry and calcium kinetics. The most useful tests measure pyridinium cross-links and cross-linked telopeptides. Bone resorption markers have a diurnal rhythm, making the timing of sample collection critical, and serial samples that are to be utilized for monitoring response to antiresorptive medications should be collected at the same time of day. Values are highest in the mornings, thus collection of the sample during this time is indicated.

Recently, serum cathepsin K, the primary enzyme involved in proteolysis of bone type I collagen by osteoclasts, has been implicated as a possible valuable marker of bone resorption. However, the data are incomplete with respect to its efficacy as a useful clinical marker. Several other bone metabolism regulators, such as RANK, RANKL, and even osteoprotegerin, a decoy receptor of nuclear factor kappa, may be of interest. None of these have been evaluated to the extent where they have proven efficacy in following bone metabolism clinically. In fact, conflicting reports have described the utility of determining an osteoprotegerin/RANKL ratio, with some suggesting that this ratio in patients beginning therapy for rheumatoid arthritis was the single most important predictor of joint erosion measured 11 years later (van Tuyl et al, 2010). Another study with shorter follow-up did not show that this ratio predicted disease progression.

Pyridinium Cross-Links (Pyridinoline and Deoxypyridinoline)

Collagen fibrils consist of many cross-linked amino acids that effectively stabilize the mature collagen molecule. These include pyridinoline (Pyr), a cross-linked polymer formed from three hydroxylysine residues, and deoxypyridinoline (DPyr), which is formed from two hydroxylysine residues and one lysine residue. These cross-links are found in collagen types I, II, and III. Although these cross-links are not unique to bone, they are found in a unique ratio in the bone, a fact that makes these substances ideal candidates as markers for bone breakdown. In the collagen of most other tissues, the ratio of Pyr/DPyr is 10:1, while in bone it is 3 to 3.5:1. This difference means that DPyr is more pronounced in bone and metabolic bone disease. DPyr is essentially specific for bone, in that it is found in relatively significant amounts only in bone and has been shown to correlate well with bone turnover (Robins, 1995). An additional characteristic that makes evaluation of pyridinium cross-links ideal is that they are neither metabolized upon their release nor absorbed from the diet. They are excreted in urine in free form (40%) and in peptide-bound form (60%). Because cross-link molecules are found only in mature collagen, their excretion in the urine reflects breakdown of mature collagen and is not an expression of newly synthesized bone collagen (Watts, 1999). Thus, their presence in urine suggests active bone resorption. Excretion of Pyr and DPyr is increased after menopause and can be utilized to study the effects of hormone replacement therapy on bone turnover (Fledelius et al, 1994). The clinical applications of measuring these substances include identification of individuals at risk for bone loss and fracture, assessment of metabolic bone disease, prediction of bone metastases, subsequent skeletal complications, and even outcome in cancer patients afflicted by solid tumors (prostate, breast, and lung most commonly) and primary bone tumors, as well as management of antiresorptive therapy. Pyr and DPyr are measured in urine by high-pressure liquid chromatography (HPLC) (see Chapter 23 for a discussion of HPLC) or immunoassays. Care must be taken to account for the marked diurnal variation that is seen with urinary pyridinolines, with a peak late at night and early in the morning. Although a 24-hour urine collection avoids this issue and does not require correction for the creatinine concentration, an early-morning fasting sample corrected for creatinine concentration is a more sensitive marker of bone turnover (Bettica et al, 1992).

http://basicbook.net

Cross-Linked Telopeptides

During bone resorption, only 40% of cross-links are released as free pyridinium cross-links; the remaining 60% are peptide-attached cross-links (Risteli & Risteli, 1993). Type I collagen has two sites with attached cross-links. These are called telopeptides, and they occur in the amino-terminal and carboxy-terminal regions of the collagen molecule. These telopeptides are released into the circulation as collagen is degraded; they are then excreted into the urine. Amino-telopeptides (NTx) and carboxy-telopeptides (CTx) are excreted in the urine and can be measured by immunoassay. Testing for these cross-links is widely available.

Cross-linked telopeptides have been utilized in estimating relative risks of hip fracture in postmenopausal women and show promise in predicting such complications of osteoporosis (Chapurlat et al, 2000; Swaminathan, 2001).

Although baseline levels of cross-linked telopeptides do not necessarily correlate with baseline bone mineral density, their serial measurement has shown the capacity to predict early response to therapy (Fink et al, 2000). Studies have shown reductions of urinary CTx and NTx in the range of 50% to 60% with 3 to 6 months of antiresorptive therapy (Eastell et al, 2003) and correlation of these reductions with the prediction of long-term bone mass response (Ravn et al, 2003).

BONE FORMATION MARKERS

Bone formation markers include alkaline phosphatase and three by products of bone matrix synthesis, including osteocalcin and amino- and carboxy-terminal procollagen I extension peptides.

Alkaline Phosphatase

(See Chapter 20.)

Bone alkaline phosphatase (ALP-B), an osteoblast membrane-bound enzyme, is released into the circulation by phosphatidylinositol glycanase activity and formation of membrane vesicles. Studies have shown that the amount of ALP-B activity in osteoblasts and in bone is proportional to collagen formation; thus, it can provide an index of the rate of bone formation. Human serum contains a variable mixture of ALP isoenzymes from liver, intestine, kidney, and bone. During pregnancy, alkaline phosphatase may be derived from the placenta (Farley et al, 1994). Certain malignant tumors may also produce a heat-stable ALP isoenzyme. The function of ALP is unknown; however, it has been postulated that ALP probably has a role in the mineralization of newly formed bone. Measurements of total serum ALP are useful to follow disease activity when the amount of bone isoenzyme is exceptionally high, as in Paget's disease or osteosarcoma.

The two major circulating ALP isoenzymes, bone and liver, are difficult to distinguish because they are the products of a single gene and differ only by posttranslational glycosylation. Separation of the skeletal ALP can be achieved by heat inactivation, wheat germ agglutinin precipitation, electrophoresis, isoelectric focusing, and two-site immunoradiometric assays. At present, immunoassay is the method of choice because of high specificity and satisfactory precision.

Osteocalcin

Osteocalcin is the major noncollagenous protein of the bone matrix and is produced by osteoblasts, odontoblasts, and even chondrocytes. It is a 49 amino acid polypeptide that is rich in glutamic acid. Its function is incompletely understood, but it may serve as a site of deposition for hydroxyapatite crystals. In addition, recent studies suggest that osteocalcin has effects on energy metabolism by affecting the production and even the action of insulin (Lee et al, 2007). During bone matrix synthesis, some osteocalcin is released into the circulation and is rapidly cleared by the kidneys. Osteocalcin can be measured by immunoassay in plasma or serum. However, assays for osteocalcin are not yet standardized because different antibodies recognize different fragments. Antibodies that recognize both the intact molecule and the large amino-terminal midmolecule fragment appear to provide the best clinical information (Watts, 1999). Recent studies have shown that although vitamin K does not affect the amount of osteocalcin concentration, it does affect the amount of carboxylation. Undercarboxylated osteocalcin has been suggested to be a better predictor of certain outcomes such as fracture (Vergnaud et al, 1997). Osteocalcin is metabolized mainly in the kidneys and, to a lesser extent, in the liver; the half-life in the circulation is about 5 minutes. Osteocalcin is increased when there is high bone turnover, as occurs in hyperparathyroidism, acromegaly, and Paget's disease. It is decreased in hypoparathyroidism and hypothyroidism and in patients on glucocorticoid therapy. Osteocalcin reference intervals are approximately 1.1 to 11 ng/mL (adult male) and 0.7 to 6.5 ng/mL (adult female), and testing is not routinely available.

Procollagen Type I N-Terminal and C-Terminal Peptides

Procollagen type I N-terminal peptide and procollagen type I C-terminal peptide are the precursor peptides that are removed from procollagen type I to produce type I collagen. Upon cleavage, these peptides are released into the circulation, where they can be measured, thus serving as markers of collagen type I synthesis. Of the two markers, procollagen type I N-terminus is more stable and thus is a more reliable marker. Incidentally, the procollagen type I C-terminal peptide has also been implicated as a potentially useful marker in predicting the extent and severity of disease in systemic sclerosis (Kikuchi et al, 1994).

METABOLIC BONE DISEASE

Metabolic bone disease may be defined as a general disease of metabolism that affects the entire skeleton. Because the disease is generalized, by definition every bone is involved. Consequently, a biopsy of any bone in the body should reflect these metabolic alterations to some extent. Although a very few metabolic disorders (e.g., fluorosis, vitamin A toxicity) may increase bone density, a vast majority of metabolic bone diseases are clinical problems resulting in decreased bone density. The result may be bones with decreased organic matrix with normal mineralization (e.g., osteoporosis), bones with decreased mineral content without a significant decrease in organic matrix (e.g., osteomalacia), or bones with both diminished organic matrix and decreased mineral content (e.g., renal osteodystrophy).

OSTEOPOROSIS

Osteoporosis is the most common metabolic disease of bone (Box 15-5). It is a systemic skeletal disorder characterized by decreased organic bone matrix and microarchitectural deterioration of bone tissue, with a subsequent increase in bone fragility and susceptibility to fracture (Ferrari et al, 1999). Although this may be expressed as low bone mineral density as measured by dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA), the abnormality in no way reflects abnormal mineralization in that the mineral is normal in both structure and content. Rather, total bone mass is decreased in osteoporosis primarily because of a decrease in bone collagen.

Bone mass and strength are related to volumetric density, bone size, microarchitecture, and intrinsic tissue quality. These factors are likely to change during bone growth and bone loss, with selective modifications according to the skeletal site. Postmenopausal white and Asian women who are thin or small and have a positive family history are at greatest risk. Other risk factors include cigarette smoking, alcohol abuse, a sedentary lifestyle, and consumption of too little calcium. Strong evidence indicates that genetic and lifestyle factors are important determinants of peak bone mass.

As bone becomes less dense, it becomes more radiolucent; this appearance may be due to decreased collagen and/or decreased mineral. Collectively, this state is called *osteopenia*, a radiographic term that does not discriminate between the various sorts of metabolic bone disease. This term should not be confused with its use in bone densitometry studies, wherein osteopenia refers to a significant loss of bone density that is about one standard deviation less than is defined as osteoporosis. Radiologic loss of bone mass is due to loss of compact and cancellous bone, but the most common skeletal problems associated with osteoporosis arise from the loss of cancellous bone. This is as much due to the arrangement of each bone type as it is to actual decreased bone mass.

As long as the bony cortex forms a continuous ring, the strength of the shaft of a long bone is proportional to the distance from the center of the medullary cavity to the outside of the cortex raised to the third power; its stiffness is proportional to this distance raised to the fourth power. Because resorption of compact bone is primarily an endosteal event caused by osteoclasts, this means that as compact bones become more osteoporotic, their shafts become more hollow. Hollowing of the shafts is somewhat compensated for by intramembranous ossification on the cortical surface. Consequently, when the medullary cavity enlarges by endosteal osteoclasis, the diameter of the cortex also enlarges. This enlargement means that the radius from medullary midpoint to outer cortex increases. Because the strength of the intact bone is proportional to this distance raised to the third power, a small increase in appositional bone can biomechanically compensate for a relatively large loss of endosteal bone (Fig. 15-7).

Cancellous (trabecular) bone, on the other hand, is affected earlier by osteoporosis not only because it has less mass but because of

http://basicbook.net

BOX 15-5

Deficiencies in Organic Bone Matrix

Primary Osteoporosis

Idiopathic (children and young adults)
Postmenopausal
Senile

Secondary Osteoporosis

Hyperparathyroidism
Hyperadrenocorticism
Hypogonadism
Thyrotoxicosis
Immobilization
Calcium deficiency
Prolonged heparin administration
Miscellaneous (alcoholism, malnutrition, liver disease, rheumatoid arthritis, malabsorption)

Disorders of Connective Tissue

Osteogenesis imperfecta
Ehlers-Danlos syndrome
Marfan syndrome

Figure 15-8 **Osteoporosis of lumbar vertebra.** There is generalized loss of bone. The vertical plates have become more perforated and the number of horizontal cross-braces is decreased markedly in proportion to the vertical plates (compare to Fig. 15-1, B).

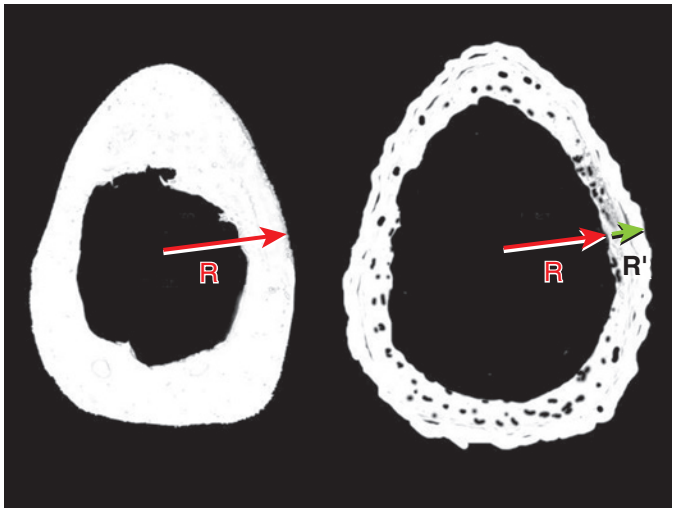


Figure 15-7 Schematic comparison of femoral cortex in a 30-year-old male *(left)* and a 75-year-old male *(right)*. Note that the proportionate strength of the bone shaft on the right is greater than that on the left.

its architecture. Cancellous bone is arranged in thin, highly perforated, vertically oriented parallel plates braced laterally by even thinner horizontal struts. Only 25% of the cancellous bone compartment is bone by volume; the remaining intertrabecular spaces are filled with fat and marrow (see Fig. 15-1, *B*). Compared with the cortex, the surface/volume ratio in the cancellous bone is very high, giving all bone cells free access to the delicate surfaces of the trabeculae; so cancellous bone is resorbed more rapidly than cortical bone. Furthermore, if osteoclastic resorption progresses at an equal rate in all parts of cancellous bone, the horizontal struts that serve to brace and reinforce the vertical plates are lost earlier because they began with significantly less bone mass than the vertical plates. Resorption of these horizontal braces contributes proportionately more to the morbidity of osteoporosis than the diffuse loss of bone mass. As these struts disappear, the vertical trabeculae form longer and longer vertical line segments that are subject to progressively increased bending forces (Fig. 15-8). Increasing the length of each of these vertical trabecular line segments increases their susceptibility to fatigue fracture by a factor of the incremental length squared. So if the unprotected length of a vertical plate is doubled, it is four times more likely to fracture. It is not surprising that pain, skeletal deformities, and fractures are common sequelae.

Osteoporosis may be divided etiologically into primary and secondary types. In primary osteoporosis, there are typical complex associations and patient ages, but the exact cause of bone loss is not known. The most common type of primary osteoporosis is postmenopausal osteoporosis, which occurs in the setting of hormonal decrease, has its maximal loss of bone mass in the first menopausal decade, and seems to be associated with increased osteoclastic activity. It is manifest mainly as a loss of cancellous bone. So-called senile osteoporosis manifests a decade or more later than the postmenopausal variety and is associated with a decline in osteoblast number proportionate to the demand for their activity; it affects mainly compact bone (Manolagas & Jilka, 1995). Idiopathic juvenile osteoporosis occurs in the peripubertal period and is associated with increased osteoclastic activity. Unlike the postmenopausal and senile varieties, it is usually self-limited, and the skeleton may regain much of its bone mass.

In secondary osteoporosis, there is a known reason for the loss of bone mass, which may sometimes be preventable or even reversed. Etiologies include hyperparathyroidism and other endocrinopathies, space-occupying marrow lesions causing increased pressure in the marrow cavity, calcium deficiency, malabsorption, administration of steroids or heparin, and immobilization. Certain connective tissue disorders such as osteogenesis imperfecta, Marfan syndrome, and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome also result in structural or functional osteoporosis.

Current treatment efforts are aimed at preventing resorption or stimulating new bone production. Current antiresorptive treatments include estrogens, selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs), vitamin D, calcitonin, and bisphosphonates, and the only anabolic agent is parathyroid hormone. Of these modalities, a more rapid effect is noted with antiresorptive medications; anabolic medications require a longer time to produce a measurable effect.

OSTEOMALACIA AND RICKETS

Osteomalacia and rickets are disorders of calcification. Osteomalacia is a failure to mineralize newly formed organic matrix (osteoid) in the mature skeleton. Osteoid formation continues, but the bones gradually become softer as the ratio of osteoid to mineralized bone increases over time. Weakness, skeletal pain and deformities, and fractures can occur as the disease progresses. Roentgenographic examination reveals a generalized decrease in skeletal radiodensity. Although the skeleton becomes less radiodense, this does not discriminate between absolute loss of mineralization and loss of mineralized organic matrix (osteoporosis).

Rickets, a disease of children, is the designation for osteomalacia that occurs before cessation of growth—that is, before closure of the epiphyseal plates of long bones. The skeletal deformities in rickets are accentuated as a consequence of compensatory overgrowth of epiphyseal cartilage, wide bands of which remain unmineralized and unresorbed. In severe cases of rickets, decreased growth can be associated with such evident deformities as swelling of the costochondral junctions of the ribs (rachitic rosary), a protuberant sternum, costodiaphragmatic depression (Harrison's sulcus), delayed closure of the anterior fontanelle with frontal bossing, and visibly widened metaphyses of the long bones.

Optimal mineralization requires (1) an adequate supply of calcium and phosphate ions from the extracellular fluid, (2) an appropriate pH (≈7.6),

http://basicbook.net

(3) bone matrix of normal chemical composition and rate of synthesis, and (4) control of inhibitors of mineralization. The major categories of diseases that produce osteomalacia or rickets are vitamin D deficiency states, phosphate depletion, systemic acidosis, and inhibitors of mineralization.

Vitamin D deficiency is particularly important in childhood and may be caused by inadequate dietary intake, intestinal malabsorption, diminished synthesis of active metabolites, increased catabolism, or peripheral resistance to vitamin D action. Dietary deficiency is very uncommon in the United States because of the widespread use of fortified milk and bread and vitamin supplements. When vitamin D deficiency occurs in adults, it is usually a consequence of malabsorption. Because vitamin D is a fat-soluble vitamin, its absorption is impaired in celiac disease (nontropical sprue), biliary and pancreatic disease, or steatorrhea from other causes. Systemic resistance to vitamin D can be of major importance in the osteomalacia that accompanies chronic renal disease. On the other hand, hereditary resistance to $1,25(OH)_2D_3$, often called vitamin D–dependent rickets type II, is a rare disorder caused by a variety of defects in the vitamin D receptor.

RENAL OSTEODYSTROPHY

Renal osteodystrophy refers to the spectrum of bone abnormalities that occur in patients with end-stage renal disease (ESRD), predominantly osteitis fibrosa cystica, osteomalacia, or a combination of the two (see Fig. 15-5). Osteitis fibrosa cystica is characterized by increased bone turnover due to secondary hyperparathyroidism, a consequence of decreased levels of $1,25(OH)_2D_3$ and ionized calcium. (In general, bone dissolution is accelerated and bone formation decreased.) Osteomalacia is characterized by poor mineralization of bone resulting in the accumulation of surface osteoid (unmineralized bone). Osteoclasts cannot penetrate (resorb) these osteoid surfaces because they are attracted only to mineralized surfaces. Thus, osteoclasts dig cutting cones through the few remaining mineralized surfaces into the mineralized cores of old trabeculae. This phenomenon is histologically referred to as tunneling resorption because of the manner in which osteoclasts gain access to mineralized bone (Fig. 15-9).

The defective mineralization process in osteomalacia of ESRD patients can be attributed to low serum calcium levels, the accumulation of aluminum in bone, or other as yet unexplained factors. Renal failure patients who are treated orally with aluminum-containing phosphate binders to control hyperphosphatemia, or who undergo hemodialysis using aluminum-containing dialysates, can experience osteomalacia because aluminum ion can interfere with normal hydroxyapatite lattice formation. Undecalcified bone biopsies stained for aluminum can distinguish between this and the more usual types of osteomalacia (Fig. 15-10, *A* and *B*).

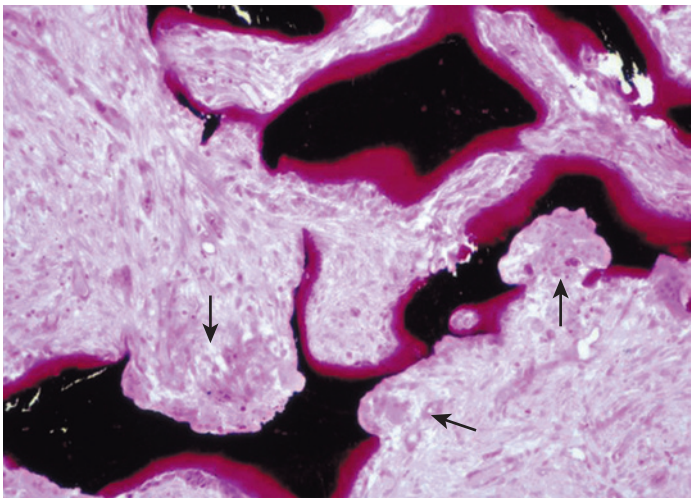


Figure 15-9 Renal osteodystrophy with hyperparathyroidism and osteomalacia. This undecalcified section is stained by the Von Kossa method, which stains mineralized bone black and osteoid with Alizarin red. The *thick red areas* represent seams of newly formed osteoid resulting from renal failure (see Fig. 15-10, *A*). The *solid black arrows* point to the cutting cones of osteoclasts tunneling into the mineralized substance of the bone trabeculae. Note that these scalloped resorption surfaces occur only in the black areas. The red areas are devoid of osteoclasts and are smooth (250 ×).

PAGET'S DISEASE

Paget's disease of bone (osteitis deformans) is a chronic disorder of bone that may be unifocal or multifocal. Although it resembles a metabolic disease because involved bones are structurally and functionally abnormal, it is not a true metabolic disease because uninvolved bones are normal. The cause of Paget's disease is currently unknown; however, it has been suspected to be of viral origin because paramyxovirus-like particles have been identified in the nuclei of osteoclasts from affected bone. A family history of the disorder is sometimes identified. Regardless of its origin, the disease displays uncoupling of osteoclast and osteoblast function, with osteoclastic activity predominating early in the disease and osteoblastic activity predominating late in the disease. The osteoclasts are often large and bizarre, with 50 or more nuclei; trabecular scalloping with multiple Howship's lacunae, paratrabecular fibrosis, and marrow hypervascularity may occur. The early histologic picture resembles osteitis fibrosa of hyperparathyroidism. As osteoblastic new bone production takes place, Howship's lacunae are filled in by irregular patches of mature and immature bone; the outlines of the original delimitations of osteoclast resorption are preserved as irregularly disposed reversal cement lines, and the resulting bone comes to resemble a tile mosaic. This results in structurally weak bone that is prone to both deformities and fractures. Patients with extensive bone lesions who have underlying heart disease may develop high-output cardiac failure as a complication. Approximately 1% of patients eventually develop bone sarcomas, usually with osteosarcomatous differentiation. Laboratory findings are of some interest. Although serum calcium and inorganic phosphorus concentrations are typically normal, they may occasionally become elevated. Serum calcium levels may, in fact, become very elevated if an extensive area of Paget's disease

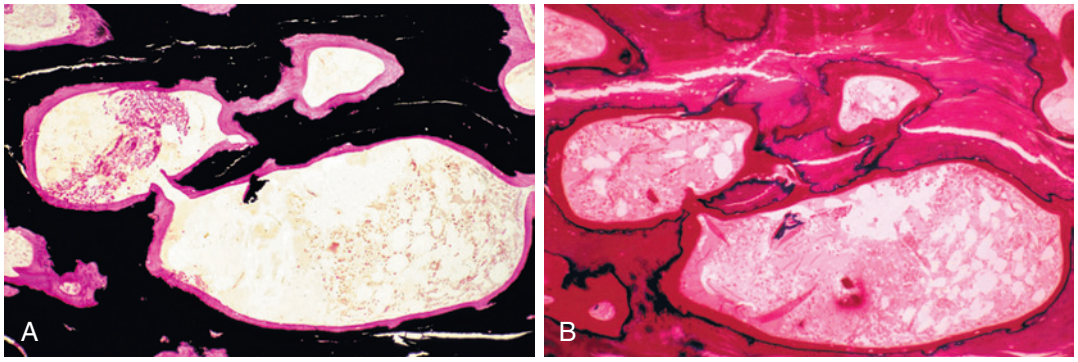


Figure 15-10 Osteomalacia in renal osteodystrophy. A, Von Kossa stain shows previously formed bone in black; newly synthesized, unmineralized osteoid stains magenta. Note that all surfaces are covered with thick magenta osteoid seams (125 ×). **B,** The same field of the same biopsy stained with solochrome azurine to detect aluminum. Note that the lines corresponding to the demarcation between black and magenta in the Von Kossa section are stained with a dark blue line. This corresponds to aluminum derived from dietary phosphate binders that has been incorporated into the hydroxyapatite matrix of the bone and interferes with further mineralization (125 ×).

http://basicbook.net

is immobilized. Once osteoblast activity begins, serum alkaline phosphatase increases and may be used to follow the activity of the bone-synthesizing phase of the disease. Alkaline phosphatase levels rise further if a patient with Paget's disease develops osteosarcoma. Urinary excretion of calcium and phosphorus is normal or increased, whereas excretion of hydroxyproline is usually significantly increased. Paget's disease frequently responds both clinically and pathologically to therapeutic administration of calcitonin.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Mundy GR, Guise TA: Hormonal control of calcium homeostasis, *Clin Chem* 45:1347–1352, 1999.

Overview of calcium physiology and pathophysiology, including roles of PTH, vitamin D, PTH-related peptide, and calcitonin. Also presents physiologic defenses against hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia.

Sokoll L, Remaley A, Sena S, et al: National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry Laboratory Medicine Practice Guidelines: Evidence-based practice for POCT. Intraoperative PTH. Draft 2, October 15, 2004.

This comprehensive evidence-based review proposes practice guidelines for all intraoperative PTH-related issues, including clinical indications, timing of draws, method, locations of testing, and financial impact. Guidelines are organized in clear question-and-answer format.

Watts NB: Clinical utility of biochemical markers of bone remodeling, *Clin Chem* 45:1359–1368, 1999.

This is a thorough overview of bone resorption and formation markers, including biological and assay variability issues and clinical uses. The latter are presented in a useful clinical question-and-answer format, such as "Is the patient responding to treatment?"

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Araya K, Fukumoto S, Backenroth R, et al: A novel mutation in fibroblast growth factor 23 gene as a cause of tumoral calcinosis, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 90:5523–5527, 2005.

Bahrami A, Weiss S, Montgomery E, et al: RT-PCR Analysis for FGF32 using paraffin sections in the diagnosis of phosphaturic mesenchymal tumors with and without known tumor induced osteomalacial, *Am J Surg Pathol* 33:1348–1354, 2009.

Bastepe M, Raas-Rothschild A, Silver J, et al: A form of Jansen's metaphyseal chondrodysplasia with limited metabolic and skeletal abnormalities is caused by a novel activating parathyroid hormone (PTH)/PTH-related peptide receptor mutation, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 89(7):3595–3600, 2004.

Bellorin-Font E, Starosta R, Milanes CL, et al: Effect of acidosis on PTH-dependent renal adenylate cyclase in phosphorus deprivation: Role of G proteins, *Am J Physiol* 258:F1640–F1649, 1990.

Bettica P, Moro L, Robins SP, et al: Bone-resorption markers galactosyl hydroxylysine, pyridinium cross-links, and hydroxyproline compared, *Clin Chem* 38:2313–2318, 1992.

Bischoff-Ferrari HA, Willett WC, Wong JB, et al: Fracture prevention with vitamin D supplementation: A metaanalysis of randomized controlled trials, *JAMA* 293:2257–2264, 2005.

Boden SD, Kaplan FS: Calcium homeostasis, *Orthop Clin North Am* 21(1):31–42, 1990.

Brossard JH, Lepage R, Cardinal H, et al: Influence of glomerular filtration on non-(1–84) parathyroid hormone (PTH) detected by intact PTH assays, *Clin Chem* 46:697–703, 2000.

Care AD, Bruce JB, Boelkins LJ, et al: Role of pancreozymin-cholecystokinin and structurally related compounds as calcitonin secretagogues, *Endocrinology* 89(1):262–271, 1971.

Cecco SA, Hristova EN, Rehak NN, et al: Clinically important intermethod differences for physiologically abnormal ionized magnesium results, *Am J Clin Pathol* 108:564–569, 1997.

Chapurlat RD, Garnero P, Brart G, et al: Serum type I collagen breakdown product (SerumCTX) predicts hip fracture risk in elderly women: The EPIDOS study, *Bone* 27:283–286, 2000.

Chefetz I, Amitai DB, Browning S, et al: Normophosphatemic familial tumoral calcinosis is caused by deleterious mutations in SAMD9, encoding a TNF-α responsive protein, *J Invest Dermatol* 128:1423–1429, 2008.

Chefetz I, Heller R, Galli-Tsinopoulou A, et al: A novel homozygous missense mutation in FGF23 causes familial tumoral calcinosis associated with disseminated visceral calcification, *Hum Genet* 118(2):261–266, 2005.

Cheung K, Roman SA, Wang TS, et al: Calcitonin measurement in the evaluation of thyroid nodules in the US: A cost-effectiveness and decision analysis, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 93(6):2173–2180, 2008.

Deftos LJ, Parethemore JG, Stabile BE: Management of primary hyperparathyroidism, *Annu Rev Med* 44:19–26, 1993.

Eastell R, Barton I, Hannon RA, et al: Relationship of early changes in bone resorption to the reduction in fracture risk with risedronate, *J Bone Miner Res* 18(6):1051–1056, 2003.

Elin RJ: Magnesium metabolism in health and disease, *Dis Mon* 34:161–218, 1988.

Endres DB, Rude RK: Mineral and bone metabolism. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1999, WB Saunders, pp 1395–1457.

Erikson EF, Axelrod DW, Melsen F: *Bone histomorphometry*, New York, 1994, Raven Press.

Farley JR, Hall SL, Ilacas D, et al: Quantification of skeletal alkaline phosphatase in osteoporotic serum by wheat germ agglutinin precipitation, heat inactivation, and two-site immunoradiometric assay, *Clin Chem* 40:1749–1756, 1994.

Ferrari S, Rizzoli R, Bonjour JP: Genetic aspects of osteoporosis, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 11:294–300, 1999.

Fink E, Cormier C, Steinmetz P, et al: Differences in the capacity of several biochemical markers to assess high bone turnover in early menopause and response to alendronate therapy, *Osteoporos Int* 11(4):295–303, 2000.

Fledelius C, Riis BJ, Overgaard K, et al: The diagnostic validity of urinary free pyridinolines to identify women at risk of osteoporosis, *Calcif Tissue Int* 54:381–384, 1994.

Folpe AL, Fanburg-Smith JC, Billings SD, et al: Most osteomalacia-associated mesenchymal tumors are a single histopathologic entity: An analysis of 32 cases and a comprehensive review of the literature, *Am J Surg Pathol* 28(1):1–30, 2004.

Fritchie K, Zadek D, Grenache D: The clinical utility of parathyroid hormone related peptide in the assessment of hypercalcemia, *Clin Chim Acta* 402(1–2):146–149, 2009.

Fukumoto S: Diagnostic modalities for FGF23 producing tumors in patients with tumor induced osteomalacia, *Endocrinol Metab (Seoul)* 29(2):136–143, 2014.

Fukumoto S, Yamashita T in letter to the editor in response to Jonsson KB, Zahradnik R, Larsson T, et al: Fibroblast Growth Factor 23 in oncogenic osteomalacia and X-linked hyperphospatemia, *N Engl J Med* 349:505–506, 2003.

Gaucher C, Walrant-Debray O, Nguyen TM, et al: PHEX analysis in 118 pedigrees reveals new genetic clues in hypophosphatemic rickets, *Hum Genet* 125(4):401–411, 2009.

Goldstein RE, Blevins L, Delbeke D, et al: Efficacy of minimally invasive radioguided parathyroidectomy on efficacy, length of stay, and costs in the management of primary hyperparathyroidism, *Ann Surg* 15:716–723, 1991.

Goldstein RE, Blevins L, Delbeke D, et al: Effect of minimally invasive radioguided parathyroidectomy on efficacy, length of stay, and costs in the management of primary hyperparathyroidism, *Ann Surg* 231(5):732–742, 2000.

Horvit PK, Gagel RF: The goitrous patient with an elevated serum calcitonin—What to do? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 82(2):335–337, 1997.

Horwitz MJ, Tedesco MB, Gundberg C, et al: Short-term high-dose parathyroid hormone-related protein as a skeletal anabolic agent for the treatment of postmenopausal osteoporosis, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88(2):569–575, 2003.

Hristova EN, Cecco S, Niemela JE, et al: Analyzer-dependent differences in results for ionized calcium, ionized magnesium, sodium, and pH, *Clin Chem* 41:1649–1653, 1995.

Hsu H, Lacey DL, Dunstan CR, et al: Tumor necrosis factor receptor family member RANK mediates osteoclast differentiation and activation induced by osteoprotegerin ligand, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 96(7):3540–3545, 1999.

Huijgen HJ, Sanders R, Cecco SA, et al: Serum ionized magnesium: Comparison of results obtained with three ion-selective analyzers, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 37:465–470, 1999.

Ichikawa S, Traxler EA, Estwck SA, et al: Mutational survey of the PHEX gene in patients with X-linked hypophosphatemic rickets, *Bone* 43(4):663–666, 2008.

Ikari A, Nakajima K, Suketa Y, et al: Arachidonic acid-activated Na+-dependent Mg2+ efflux in rat renal epithelial cell, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1618(1):1–7, 2003.

Ju HSJ, Leung S, Brown B, et al: Comparison of analytical performance and biological variability of three bone resorption assays, *Clin Chem* 43:1570–1576, 1997.

Jueppner H: Novel regulators of phosphate homeostasis and bone metabolism, *Ther Apher Dial* 11(Suppl 1):S3–S22, 2007.

Kerry E, Broe M, Tai C, et al: A higher dose of vitamin D reduces the risk of falls in nursing home residents: A randomized, multiple dose study, *J Am Geriatr Soc* 55(2):234–239, 2007.

Kikuchi K, Ihn H, Sato S, et al: Serum concentration of procollagen type I carboxyterminal propeptide in systemic sclerosis, *Arch Dermatol Res* 286(2):77–80, 1994.

Kurokawa K, Fukagawa M: Introduction to renal osteodystrophy: Calcium metabolism in health and uremia, *Am J Med Sci* 317:355–356, 1999.

Larsson T, Yu X, Davis SI, et al: A novel recessive mutation in fibroblast growth factor-23 causes familial tumoral calcinosis, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 90:2424–2427, 2005.

Lee NK, Sowa H, Hinoi E, et al: Endocrine regulation of energy metabolism by the skeleton, *Cell* 130:456–469, 2007.

Lewiecki EM: Management of osteoporosis, *Clin Mol Allergy* 2:9, 2004.

Lu S, Quarles D: How fibroblast growth factor 23 works, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 18:1637–1647, 2007.

Manolagas SC, Jilka RL: Mechanisms of disease: Bone marrow, cytokines, and bone remodeling—Emerging insights into the pathophysiology of osteoporosis, *N Engl J Med* 332:305–311, 1995.

Masi L, Gozzini A, Franchi A, et al: A novel recessive mutation of fibroblast growth factor-23 in tumoral calcinosis, *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 91:1190–1198, 2009.

Nelson AE, Bligh RC, Mirams M, et al: Clinical case seminar. Fibroblast growth factor 23: A new clinical marker for oncogenic osteomalacia, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88(9):4088–4094, 2003.

Nichols Advantage BIO-INTACT PTH assay directional insert, ADS document 7040, 2004.

Papapoulos SE, Clemens TL, Sandler LM, et al: The effect of renal function on changes in circulating concentrations of 1,25 dihydroxycholecalciferol after an oral dose, *Clin Sci* 62(4):427–429, 1982.

Papazachariou IM, Martinez-Isla A, Efthimiou E, et al: Magnesium deficiency in patients with chronic pancreatitis identified by an intravenous loading test, *Clin Chim Acta* 302(1–2):145–154, 2000.

Pettifor JM: What's new in hypophospataemic rickets? *Eur J Pediatr* 167:493–499, 2008.

Quamme GA: Control of magnesium transport in the thick ascending limb, *Am J Physiol* 256:F197–F210, 1989.

Quamme GA: Renal magnesium handling: new insights in understanding old problems, *Kidney Int* 52:1180–1195, 1997.

Quarles LD: FGF23, PHEX, and MEPE regulation of phosphate homeostasis and skeletal mineralization, *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 285(1):E1–E9, 2003.

Quarles LD, Lobaugh B, Murphy G: Intact parathyroid hormone overestimates the presence and severity of parathyroid mediated osseous abnormalities in uremia, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 75:145–150, 1992.

Quarles LD: Role of FGF23 in vitamin D and phosphate metabolism: Implications in chronic kidney disease, *Exp Cell Res* 318(9):1040–1048, 2012.

Raisz LG: Physiology and pathophysiology of bone remodeling, *Clin Chem* 45:1353–1358, 1999.

Ravn P, Thompson DE, Ross PD, et al: Biochemical markers for prediction of 4-year response in bone mass during bisphosphonate treatment for prevention of postmenopausal osteoporosis, *Bone* 33(1):150–158, 2003.

Rieu M, Lame MC, Richard A, et al: Prevalence of sporadic medullary thyroid carcinoma: The importance of routine measurement of serum calcitonin in the diagnostic evaluation of thyroid nodules, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 42:453–460, 1995.

Risteli L, Risteli J: Biochemical markers of bone metabolism, *Ann Med* 25:385–393, 1993.

Robins SP: Collagen cross-links in metabolic bone disease, *Acta Orthop Scand* 66(Suppl 266):171–175, 1995.

Roetzer KM, Varga F, Zwettier E: Novel PHEX mutation associated with hypophosphatemic rickets, *Nephron Physiol* 106(1):8–12, 2007.

Schiavi SC, Kumar R: The phosphatonin pathway: New insights in phosphate homeostasis, *Kidney Int* 65:1–14, 2004.

Sofferman RA, Standage J, Tang ME: Minimal-access parathyroid surgery using intraoperative parathyroid hormone assay, *Laryngoscope* 108:1497–1503, 1998.

Sokoll LJ, Drew H, Udelsman R: Intraoperative parathyroid hormone analysis: A study of 200 consecutive cases, *Clin Chem* 46:1662–1668, 2000.

Souberbielle JC, Cormier C, Kindermans C: Bone markers in clinical practice, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 11:312–319, 1999.

Strewler GJ: Hypercalcemia of malignancy and parathyroid hormone-related protein. In Clark OH, Duh Q-Y, editors: *Textbook of endocrine surgery*, Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders, pp 426–431.

Swaminathan R: Biochemical markers of bone turnover, *Clin Chim Acta* 313:95–105, 2001.

Topaz O, Indelman M, Chefetz I, et al: A deleterious mutation in SAMD9 causes normophosphatemic familial tumoral calcinosis, *Am J Hum Genet* 79(4):759–764, 2006.

van Tuyl LH, Voskuyl AE, Boers M, et al: Baseline RANKL/OPG-ratio and markers of bone and cartilage degradation predict annual radiological progression over 11 years in rheumatoid arthritis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 69(9):1623–1628, 2010.

http://basicbook.net

Vergnaud P, Garnero P, Meunier PJ, et al: Undercarboxylated osteocalcin measured with a specific immunoassay predicts hip fracture in elderly women: The EPIDOS study, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 82:719–724, 1997.

Vierhapper H, Raber W, Bieglmayer C, et al: Routine measurement for plasma calcitonin in nodular thyroid diseases, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 82:1589–1593, 1997.

Wang S, McDonnell EH, Sedor FA, et al: pH effects on measurements of ionized calcium and ionized magnesium in blood, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 126(8):947–950, 2002.

Weisinger JR, Bellorin-Font E: Magnesium and phosphorus, *Lancet* 352:391–396, 1998.

Wesseling-Perry K: FGF23: Is it ready for prime time? *Clin Chem* 57(11):1476–1477, 2011.

Yin JJ, Chirgwin JM, Dallas M, et al: Blockage of TGF-β signaling inhibits PTH-rP secretion by breast cancer cells and the development of bone metastasis, *J Clin Invest* 103:197–206, 1999.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 16

CARBOHYDRATES

Prashant Nadkarni, Ruth S. Weinstock

FUNCTION OF THE ENDOCRINE PANCREAS, 206
Insulin, 206
Glucagon, 207
Incretins, 207
Somatostatin, 207

GLUCOSE MEASUREMENTS, 208
Specimen Considerations, 208
Glucose Measurement Methods, 208

DIABETES MELLITUS, 209
Type 1 Diabetes, 210
Type 2 Diabetes, 211
Measures of Glycemic Control, 212
Ketone Testing, 213

HYPOGLYCEMIA, 214
Drug-Induced Hypoglycemia, 214
Severe Medical Illnesses, 215
Hormone Deficiencies, 215
Non–Beta Cell Tumors, 215
Endogenous Hyperinsulinism, 215
Autoimmune-Related Hypoglycemia, 215
Hypoglycemia in Infancy and Childhood, 216
Congenital Hyperinsulinism, 216
Alimentary Hypoglycemia, 216

INBORN ERRORS OF CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM, 216
Defects in Galactose Metabolism, 218
Defects in Fructose Metabolism, 218

LACTIC ACIDOSIS, 219

SELECTED REFERENCES, 220

KEY POINTS

- Normal fasting plasma glucose is less than 100 mg/dL (5.6 mmol/L), and normal glucose levels 2 hours post glucose load are less than 140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L).
- The diagnosis of diabetes requires a fasting plasma glucose of 126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L) or greater on at least two occasions or a casual plasma glucose level (or 2 hours post glucose load level) of 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) or greater.
- Glycated hemoglobin (HbA_{1c}) of 6.5% or greater on at least two occasions can be used to diagnose diabetes using a method that is National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program certified and standardized to the DCCT (Diabetes Control and Complications Trial) assay.
- Impaired fasting glucose (100-125 mg/dL), a 2-hour plasma glucose value of 140 to 199 mg/dL after a 75-g glucose load, or HbA_{1c} of 5.7% to 6.4% indicates increased risk for diabetes.
- Oral glucose tolerance tests, with pregnancy-specific cutoff levels, should be performed to diagnose gestational diabetes.
- Whole blood capillary glucose values obtained with point-of-care devices and continuous glucose monitoring systems that measure interstitial glucose are useful for the detection of hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia in individuals with diabetes, and help to monitor and direct therapy. They should not be used to diagnose diabetes or hypoglycemic disorders. To establish these diagnoses, confirmation with laboratory measures of plasma glucose is essential because of their greater accuracy.
- HbA_{1c} levels should be performed every 3 to 6 months in individuals with diabetes to monitor glycemic control using a certified method, traceable to the DCCT reference method. Reliability and accuracy are diminished in the presence of shortened red blood cell survival, lower mean blood cell age, or need for transfusions, as seen with certain hemoglobinopathies and hemolytic conditions, as well as with uremia.
- Direct methods for measuring β-hydroxybutyrate in blood are available in point-of-care devices as well as in the laboratory. These tests are replacing the strips and tablets for urine ketone testing that use sodium nitroprusside, which do not detect β-hydroxybutyrate. Because β-hydroxybutyrate levels are high in diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) and fall with treatment, whereas acetoacetic acid and acetone levels rise with treatment, these strips are not useful for monitoring therapy. Calculation of the anion gap is also commonly used to monitor recovery from DKA.
- Circulating pancreatic autoantibodies may be present before and after the onset of autoimmune type 1 diabetes. These include antibodies to glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD65), insulinoma-associated protein 2 (IA-2 and IA-2 beta), the zinc transporter ZnT8, and insulin. These tests should not be used for routine screening of asymptomatic nondiabetic individuals, except in a research setting. When performed, assays should be used that have been shown by the Diabetes Antibody Standardization Program to have the best performance.
- Hypoglycemic symptoms with a plasma glucose level of 55 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L) or less in an individual who is not receiving medications for diabetes warrant further evaluation. A careful drug and medical history and measurements of insulin, C-peptide, proinsulin, insulin autoantibodies, β-hydroxybutyrate, and drug levels (sulfonylureas, repaglinide, nateglinide) during the hypoglycemic episode are recommended to determine the diagnosis.
- Glycogen storage diseases that primarily affect the liver usually manifest with hypoglycemia and hepatomegaly, whereas those affecting muscle commonly cause muscle cramps, weakness, fatigue, and exercise intolerance.

Carbohydrates are major constituents of physiologic systems. They are organic compounds composed of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen $[C_x(H_2O)_y]$, which, along with lipids and proteins, provide energy and contribute to the structure of organisms. Complex carbohydrates are digested into simple sugars, principally glucose, which are used primarily as energy sources or are stored as glycogen. The most important dietary hexoses (six carbon-containing carbohydrates) are D-glucose, D-galactose, and D-fructose, but the principal sugar circulating in the bloodstream is glucose. Lactose (glucose and galactose) and sucrose (glucose and fructose) are important disaccharides. Carbohydrates are needed for specific cellular functions (such as ribose in nucleic acids) and can modify proteins and their function by glycosylation. Carbohydrates are measured in whole blood, serum, or plasma. In addition, measurements of glucose in urine, cerebrospinal fluid, and other body fluids are important clinically.

The concentration of glucose in blood is normally controlled within narrow limits by many hormones, the most significant of which, insulin, is produced by the endocrine pancreas. Diabetes mellitus is the most common disease of carbohydrate metabolism. Most individuals with diabetes have either type 1 (beta cell destruction with absolute insulin deficiency) or type 2 (insulin resistance and defective insulin secretion).

http://basicbook.net

Measurements of glycemic control are increasingly important in diabetes, because the development and progression of microvascular and macrovascular complications are associated with hyperglycemia. This chapter reviews the aspects of carbohydrate metabolism most critical to the practice of medicine.

FUNCTION OF THE ENDOCRINE PANCREAS

The pancreas functions as both an endocrine and an exocrine organ in the control of carbohydrate metabolism. As an exocrine gland, it produces and secretes amylase responsible for the breakdown of ingested complex carbohydrates. Further digestion leads to the production of monosaccharides. Once absorbed, the monosaccharides signal the endocrine pancreas, which regulates hormones involved in energy homeostasis. Enteroendocrine cells in the gastrointestinal tract are also stimulated by nutrients to secrete incretins, peptide hormones that affect pancreatic function, gastric emptying, appetite, and intestinal motility.

The endocrine pancreas secretes four hormones from different cells residing in the islets of Langerhans. Insulin is produced by the beta cells, glucagon by the alpha cells, somatostatin by the delta cells, and pancreatic polypeptide (PP) by the PP cells. In insulin-sensitive tissues such as skeletal muscle, fat, and liver, insulin stimulates glucose uptake and the formation of glycogen and inhibits glucose production. Glucagon acts primarily in the liver, where it stimulates glucose production and, over time, ketogenesis. Somatostatin, on the other hand, inhibits insulin and glucagon secretion, as well as the secretion of several other hormones. Nutrient ingestion, through vagal-cholinergic stimulation, increases PP secretion. The PP family also includes peptide YY and neuropeptide Y, which are found in the gastrointestinal tract and nervous system and affect gastrointestinal function, food intake, and satiety. In the rare reported cases of islet cell tumors producing excess PP, or in PP hyperplasia, some patients are asymptomatic, whereas other cases are associated with watery diarrhea syndrome (Tomita et al, 1980; Bellows et al, 1998; Pasieka & Hershfield, 1999).

The ratio of insulin to glucagon is important in the regulation of carbohydrate metabolism. Anabolism is favored when there is a relative increase in the insulin-to-glucagon ratio as in the postprandial state; catabolism is favored with a relative decrease in this ratio as in the fasting state. The ratio of insulin to glucagon is influenced by somatostatin, neural input, intestinal peptides, and the concentrations of glucose and other metabolites. The ratio of insulin to glucagon is tightly regulated to keep blood glucose concentrations within the normal range.

In addition to the hormones mentioned above, the pancreatic beta cell secretes a 37 amino acid protein called islet amyloid polypeptide (IAPP), or amylin. First discovered in 1987, amylin is colocalized and cosecreted with insulin in response to stimulation with nutrients. Amylin slows gastric emptying and inhibits postprandial glucagon secretion. The overall result is a lowering of postprandial hyperglycemia. Oligomeric forms are associated with an increase in beta cell apoptosis. Amylin is first synthesized as a larger precursor peptide that is processed within the beta cell. High levels of amylin have been observed in hyperinsulinemic, insulin-resistant states, such as impaired glucose tolerance and early type 2 diabetes, and low levels are seen in type 1 diabetes and insulin-requiring type 2 diabetes. Amyloid deposits, fibroid material derived from IAPP, are observed in islets in type 2 diabetes. Amylin levels can also be elevated in pancreatic cancer. Amylin assays are not used in clinical practice, but amylin analogs may be helpful in diabetes management by limiting postprandial glucose excursions and promoting satiety. A synthetic analog of amylin, pramlintide acetate, is available for use by injection before major meals in patients with insulin-requiring diabetes.

INSULIN

Insulin is a peptide hormone with a mass of approximately 5800 daltons (Da), secreted by the beta cells in the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas. It has a 21 amino acid A chain and a 30 amino acid B chain that are linked by two disulfide bonds. Insulin is synthesized initially as a longer single-chain peptide precursor hormone, preproinsulin. Proinsulin (≈9000 Da), the immediate precursor of insulin, is processed into insulin in the secretory granules of the beta cells by enzymatic removal of the 31 amino acid peptide segment that connects the A and B chains, known as C-peptide (Figs. 16-1 and 16-2). This proteolytic processing is catalyzed by proprotein convertases PC2 and PC1/PC3, which first convert proinsulin into the intermediate metabolites 32,33 split proinsulin and 65,66 split proinsulin, and then, after cleavage by carboxypeptidase H, to des-31,32 split proinsulin and des-64,65 split proinsulin. In adults, small amounts of intact

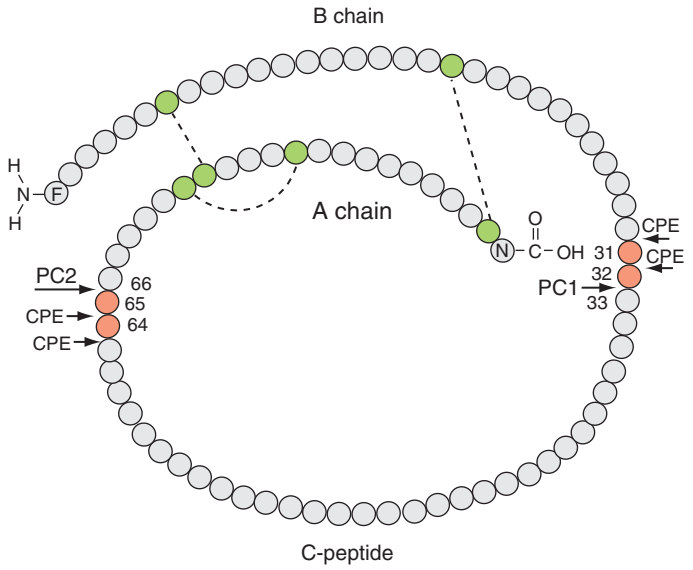


Figure 16-1 Human proinsulin, with cleavage sites for the proprotein convertases PC1 and PC2 and for carboxypeptidase H (CPE). *Orange circles* represent the two pairs of basic amino acids used for proteolytic processing, and *green circles* represent cysteine residues that participate in disulfide bonding. (Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. Copyright © 2004 American Diabetes Association. From Mackin RB. Proinsulin: Recent observations and controversies. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 54:696–702, 1998, with permission.)

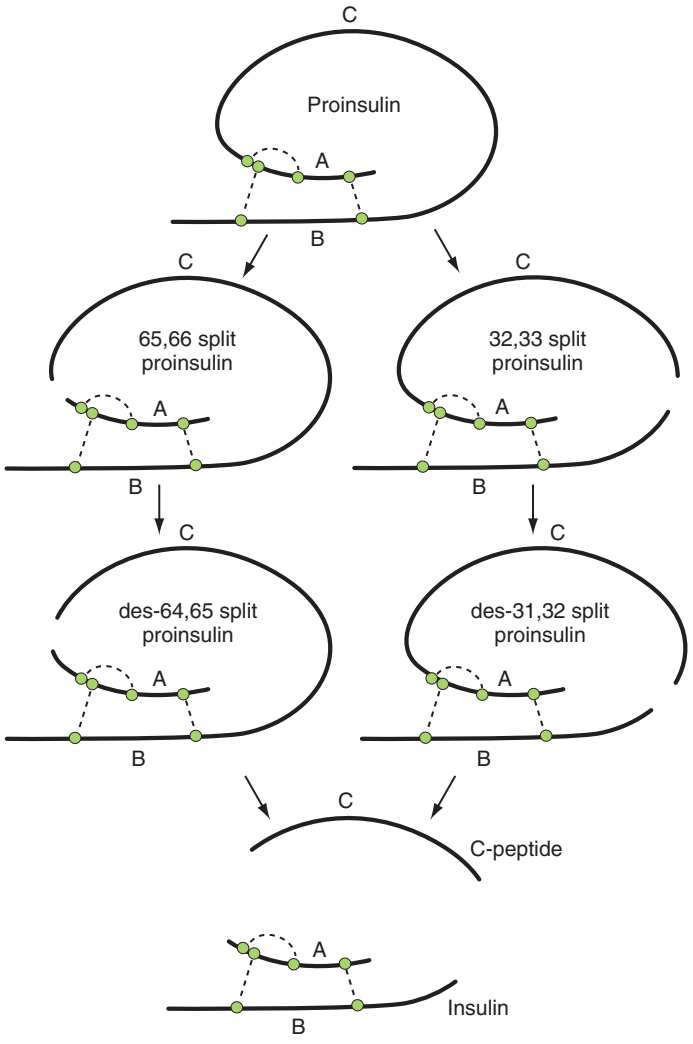


Figure 16-2 Processing of proinsulin to insulin. *Green circles* represent cysteine residues that participate in disulfide bonding. (Copyright John Wiley and Sons Ltd; reproduced with permission from Temple R, Clark PM, Hales CN. Measurement of insulin secretion in type 2 diabetes: Problems and pitfalls. *Diabetic Med* 9:503–512, 1992.)

http://basicbook.net

proinsulin and these metabolically active conversion intermediates, especially des-31,32 split proinsulin, are cosecreted with insulin. Healthy infants and preterm neonates have higher proinsulin and 32,33 split proinsulin levels than adults. Proinsulin and its metabolites may cross-react with insulin in some insulin radioimmunoassays. This can be significant, especially because the half-life of proinsulin is at least three times as long as that of insulin. In vivo studies of proinsulin have shown that it has 10% to 15% of the biologic activity of insulin.

Elevated proinsulin levels (intact and partially processed proinsulin) and high proinsulin : insulin ratios have been found in type 2 diabetes. This is associated with reduced PC1/PC3 activity and decreased ability of the beta cells to secrete insulin (Roder et al, 1998; Ozawa et al, 2014). An increase in proinsulin : insulin levels has also been observed in recent-onset type 1 diabetes, and after partial pancreatectomy (Seaquist et al, 1996), where there are reductions in beta cell function and increases in secretory demand. Less common conditions associated with high proinsulin levels include insulinomas. Familial hyperproinsulinemia is a rare condition caused by mutations in the proinsulin gene. In affected families, these genetic abnormalities can be associated with impaired glucose tolerance or type 2 diabetes (Nishi & Nanjo, 2011). C-peptide and insulin are secreted in equimolar amounts into the portal vein, but the ratio in serum is about 5:1 (fasting) to 15 : 1. The molar concentration of C-peptide in blood is higher than that of insulin, primarily because of the hepatic clearance of insulin. Approximately 50% of insulin is rapidly removed by its initial passage through the liver, but hepatic extraction of C-peptide is negligible. In cirrhosis, hyperinsulinemia is observed as the result of decreased hepatic insulin clearance. In healthy individuals, the half-life of both C-peptide and proinsulin is approximately 30 minutes, whereas it is only 4 to 9 minutes for insulin. There is evidence that C-peptide has significant biologic activity (Pietropaolo, 2013).

Disease states occur when insulin concentrations are inappropriate for given blood glucose levels. Insulin deficiency, either absolute or relative, leads to diabetes mellitus. Serum insulin levels should be measured with a concomitant glucose level because insulin secretion is regulated primarily by glucose. Whereas a high insulin level in the presence of a low glucose level suggests inappropriate secretion or administration of insulin, high insulin levels can be observed in insulin-resistant individuals who need to secrete additional insulin to keep blood glucose levels normal.

Unregulated excess insulin secretion causes hypoglycemia. This is seen in insulin-secreting tumors, especially insulinomas, where patients have low serum glucose levels (<50 mg/dL), and elevated insulin and proinsulin levels with hypoglycemic symptoms (e.g., shakiness, palpitations, diaphoresis, confusion). C-peptide levels are measured in hypoglycemic states to help identify the cause of the hypoglycemia. Sera from insulinoma patients have high insulin and C-peptide levels, whereas hypoglycemia from injected or exogenous insulin is characterized by high insulin levels and low C-peptide levels. Commercially available insulin preparations are free of C-peptide and proinsulin. Because C-peptide is less stable than insulin, serum samples should be separated quickly and frozen.

In people with diabetes mellitus, C-peptide and glucose can be measured after an overnight 8-hour fast and after stimulation by an oral mixed meal or after glucagon stimulation to provide information concerning beta cell secretory capacity. Urine C-peptide:creatinine has also been used to assess beta cell function (Besser et al, 2011). Low C-peptide levels are characteristic of the absolute insulin deficiency of type 1 diabetes. C-peptide measurements during the mixed meal tolerance test are commonly used in clinical trials of type 1 diabetes for the evaluation of preservation of beta cell function (Greenbaum et al, 2008). C-peptide measurement can also be useful in follow-up evaluations after pancreatectomy and postpancreatic transplantation. Unlike insulin, both C-peptide and proinsulin are primarily degraded in the kidneys, so levels are elevated in renal failure.

Many commercial immunoassays for insulin, C-peptide, and proinsulin are available. Progress has been made concerning the standardization of these assays, and ultrasensitive immunoassays are available (Miller et al, 2009; Wang et al, 2012). It is recommended that all assays be standardized to one reference method. Manufacturers are encouraged to publish data concerning the performance of their assays, including accuracy, recovery, precision, specificity, linearity, and lowest measurable concentration statistically different from zero/limits of quantitation. Laboratory certification is also encouraged. In the United States, an external quality assessment program for insulin and C-peptide measurements is available through the College of American Pathologists (Northfield, Ill.).

Serum insulin measurements may be falsely low in the presence of hemolysis. An insulin-degrading enzyme found in red blood cells, as well as in other tissues, is responsible for this problem. C-peptide and proinsulin measurements appear to be less affected by hemolysis. Insulin antibodies will also interfere with insulin immunoassays, with both falsely elevated and suppressed levels reported.

GLUCAGON

Proglucagon is synthesized in the pancreatic alpha cells and the L cells of the distal small bowel. Through differential processing, the glucagon family of gene products is formed. This includes the production of glucagon in the pancreatic alpha cells and the incretin glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) in the L cells of the intestines.

Fasting plasma glucagon concentrations are normally 25 to 50 pg/mL. Pancreatic glucagon stimulates glucose production. It is an important regulator of hepatic glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis, and ketogenesis. In type 1 diabetes, over time, progressive glucagon deficiency develops. This deficiency of glucagon results in increased glycemic fluctuations and difficulty recovering from hypoglycemia. In type 2 diabetes, inappropriately elevated postprandial levels of glucagon are observed.

Serum glucagon concentrations are rarely measured in clinical practice. Glucagonomas are rare islet cell tumors that produce excessive glucagon. Clinically, glucagonomas present with a characteristic necrotizing migratory erythematous rash, stomatitis, glossitis, weight loss, anemia, and mild diabetes mellitus. These tumors are usually associated with fasting glucagon levels greater than 120 pg/mL, but levels can range from 900 to 7800 pg/mL. The processing of proglucagon is impaired, and large molecular weight forms can be seen. Mild elevations in blood glucagon levels are seen in patients with multifunctional neuroendocrine tumors. Glucagon levels can also be mildly elevated in cirrhosis, Cushing's syndrome, pancreatitis, acromegaly, and renal insufficiency. In familial hyperglucagonemia, an autosomal dominant disorder, glucagon levels are high in the absence of tumor. Family history is helpful in making this diagnosis.

INCRETINS

Oral nutrients stimulate the release of incretins from the intestines. The incretin effect refers to the greater and earlier insulin response to the oral administration of glucose compared with intravenous glucose. The most important incretins in the regulation of insulin secretion are GLP-1 and glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide (gastric inhibitory polypeptide; GIP), both of which are members of the glucagon superfamily (Drucker, 2013). GLP-1 (7-37), the most common active form, has a half-life of only 2 to 3 minutes. It is rapidly cleaved by circulating aminopeptidases to the inactive GLP-1 (9-37). This inactive form represents 80% of the circulating GLP-1. Both forms of GLP-1 are short-lived and cleared by the kidneys. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4), a serine peptidase present on the surface of endothelial cells, inactivates GLP-1 by removing two N-terminal amino acids.

GLP-1 rapidly stimulates insulin secretion, suppresses glucagon secretion, and slows gastric emptying in response to a meal. GLP-1 may also reduce appetite and promote weight loss. In vitro and animal studies indicate that GLP-1 can inhibit beta cell apoptosis, stimulate beta cell proliferation and neogenesis from precursor duct cells, and decrease alpha cell mass (Drucker, 2013). C-cell hyperplasia and medullary cancer of the thyroid have been observed in rodents after prolonged administration of GLP-1 receptor agonists, but increased tumor formation has not been observed in human trials.

Plasma meal-stimulated GLP-1 levels are decreased in type 2 diabetes mellitus (Toft-Nielsen et al, 2001). Oral inhibitors of DPP-4 are used for the treatment of type 2 diabetes. Long-acting GLP-1 receptor agonists are available for use by injection in patients with type 2 diabetes.

SOMATOSTATIN

Somatostatin, a tetradecapeptide with a disulfide bond, was originally discovered as a hypothalamic hormone that inhibited growth hormone secretion, but the discovery of somatostatin in the islets of Langerhans prompted further investigation of its function in the endocrine pancreas. Subsequently, somatostatin was found in the gastrointestinal tract and nervous system. It inhibits pituitary (growth hormone and thyrotropin) and pancreatic (insulin, glucagon, PP) hormones, as well as GIP, gastrin, secretin, vasoactive intestinal peptide, cholecystokinin, motilin, arginine vasopressin, acetylcholine, epidermal growth hormone, neurotensin, and serotonin. Nonendocrine functions include inhibition of gastric acid secretion; gastrointestinal motility, including gastric emptying time; gallbladder contractions; and pancreatic enzyme release. The first isolated somatostatin

http://basicbook.net

peptide had 14 amino acids and is called somatostatin-14. Subsequently, somatostatin-28, which contains an N-terminal extension, was isolated and is a more potent inhibitor of islet hormones.

In the pancreatic islets, somatostatin is produced in the delta cells, which are 5% to 10% of the islet cells. Rare islet cell tumors, somatostatinomas, secrete high levels of somatostatin, causing diabetes mellitus, diarrhea, and gallstones. Elevated somatostatin levels can also be seen in small cell lung cancer, medullary thyroid cancer, and pheochromocytoma. Somatostatin has a very short half-life and is rarely measured in clinical practice. Long-acting somatostatin analogs, octreotide and lanreotide, which bind primarily to the somatostatin receptor subtype 2 (SSTR2), are used to treat pituitary tumors (acromegaly, ACTH and TSH-producing tumors), as well as carcinoid syndrome, VIPomas, glucagonomas, insulinomas, pancreatic fistulas, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, HIV-associated diarrhea, and other disorders of the gastrointestinal tract (the only labeled indications are for acromegaly, VIPomas, and metastatic carcinoid tumors). Octreotide scintigraphy has also been used for the diagnosis, localization, detection of metastatic disease, and prediction for success of treatment with somatostatin analogs for gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumors.

GLUCOSE MEASUREMENTS

SPECIMEN CONSIDERATIONS

Measurements of glucose are critical to the diagnosis and management of diseases affecting carbohydrate metabolism. Glucose is measured in whole blood, plasma, serum, cerebrospinal fluid, pleural fluid, and urine for a variety of diagnostic and management purposes. In addition, devices can measure glucose from interstitial fluid for continuous monitoring of glucose levels in people with diabetes. How and when specimens are collected and handled and the sites of collection affect the clinical interpretation of the analytic result.

The standard clinical laboratory analysis of glucose is performed on plasma or serum derived from a phlebotomy specimen. Glycolysis causes plasma glucose to decline over time while the plasma is in contact with cells. The decline can be several milligrams per deciliter per hour, depending on cell counts and other factors. A specimen is appropriate for glucose analysis if serum or plasma is separated from the cells within 30 minutes. If plasma is in contact with cells for much longer than 30 minutes, a preservative such as sodium fluoride that inhibits glycolysis should be added (Weissman & Klein, 1958; Chan et al, 1989). However, even with the use of fluoride, plasma glucose will decline in the first hour after blood collection.

GLUCOSE MEASUREMENT METHODS

Most measurements of glucose employ enzymatic methods. These methods provide specificity and can be packaged to furnish point-of-care determinations. Enzyme systems that have been commonly used to measure glucose are glucose dehydrogenase, glucose oxidase, and hexokinase. These reactions produce an electrical current that is proportional to the initial glucose concentration, or a product that measured spectrophotometrically is proportional to the initial glucose concentration. The assays can be initial rate-of-change assays, where the velocity of the reaction is dependent on the initial glucose, or end-point assays.

The most accurate method is isotope dilution gas chromatography/mass spectrometry. The YSI glucose analyzer, which measures glucose in plasma, serum, or blood using an immobilized enzyme electrode, produces more accurate results than the point-of-care home blood glucose monitoring devices. In the United States, three point-of-care devices use cartridges instead of strips, but they are more costly, use higher sample volume, have longer analysis times, and have not been proven to be more accurate.

When glucose is measured using a glucose dehydrogenase method, glucose is reduced to produce a chromophore that is measured spectrophotometrically (Equation 16-1) or an electrical current (Equation 16-2) (Kost et al, 1998).

$$\alpha\text{-D-glucose} \rightarrow (\text{mutoarotase}) \rightarrow \beta\text{-D-glucose} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 16-1)}$$

$$\beta\text{-D-glucose} + \text{NAD} \rightarrow (\text{glucose dehydrogenase}) \rightarrow \text{D-gluconolactone} + \text{NADH}$$
$$\text{MTT} + \text{NADH} \rightarrow (\text{diaphorase}) \rightarrow \text{MTTH (blue color)} + \text{NAD}$$
$$\text{Glucose} + \text{Pyrroloquinoline quinone (PQQ)} \rightarrow (\text{glucose dehydrogenase}) \rightarrow \text{Gluconolactone} + \text{PQQH}_2$$
$$\text{PQQH}_2 + 2[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{3-} \rightarrow \text{PQQ} + 2[\text{Fe(CN)6}]^{4-} + 2\text{H}^+$$
$$2[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{4-} \rightarrow 2[\text{Fe(CN)}_6]^{3-} + 2\text{e}^- \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 16-2)}$$

Glucose oxidase, a flavoenzyme, catalyzes the reactions shown in Equation 16-3. The peroxidase reaction can be measured spectrophotometrically and can be inhibited by high concentrations of uric acid, ascorbic acid, bilirubin, glutathione, creatinine, L-cysteine, L-dopa, dopamine, methyldopa, and citric acid (Zaloga, 1997). In addition, the glucose oxidase reaction can be coupled to the ferricyanide/ferricyanide couple to produce an electrical current, as shown in Equation 16-4. This system is dependent on the partial pressure of O_2 because oxygen will compete in the reaction to form hydrogen peroxide, so the higher the partial pressure of O_2, the lower the electrically measured glucose (Kurahashi et al, 1997). Glucose oxidase can be used in another electrical system, as shown in Equation 16-5.

$$\beta\text{-D-glucose} + \text{O}_2 \rightarrow (\text{glucose oxidase}) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 16-3)}$$
$$\text{D-gluconolactone} + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2$$
$$\text{gluconolactone} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{gluconic acid}$$
$$\text{H}_2\text{O}_2 + \text{chromogenic oxygen acceptor (ortho-diansidine, 4-aminophenazone ortho-tolidine)} \rightarrow (\text{peroxidase}) \rightarrow \text{color chromogen} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$
$$\beta\text{-D-glucose} + 2[\text{Fe(CN}_6)]^{3-} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow (\text{glucose oxidase}) \rightarrow \text{D-gluconic acid} + 2[\text{Fe(CN}_6)]^{4-} + 2\text{H}^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 16-4)}$$
$$2[\text{Fe(CN}_6)]^{4-} \rightarrow 2[\text{Fe(CN}_6)]^{3-} + 2\text{e}^-$$
$$\beta\text{-D-glucose} + \text{O}_2 \rightarrow (\text{glucose oxidase}) \rightarrow \text{D-gluconolactone} + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 16-5)}$$
$$\text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{H}^+ + \text{O}_2 + 2\text{e}^-$$

In the hexokinase system assay, the glucose concentration is proportional to the rate of production of reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH), which is followed spectrophotometrically (Equation 16-6). Depending on the source of the glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, the enzyme can require specificity for NADP, or from some sources, it can use NAD as well. Hemolyzed samples can be problematic in that contents released from the erythrocytes may interfere with the stoichiometric relationship between glucose and NAD(P)H accumulation.

$$\text{Glucose} + \text{MgATP} \rightarrow (\text{hexokinase}) \rightarrow \text{glucose-6-phosphate (G-6-P)} + \text{MgADP} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 16-6)}$$
$$\text{G-6-P} + \text{NA(P)}^+ \rightarrow (\text{glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase}) \rightarrow \text{6-phosphogluconolactone} + \text{NADPH} + \text{H}^+$$

Whole Blood Glucose

Whole blood glucose specimens, analyzed with point-of-care monitoring devices, are used in the home, in the physician's office, or at the bedside in the hospital to monitor for hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. Most of these devices have been calibrated to give results similar to plasma levels and can report plasma or whole blood readings. Whole blood tends to give approximately 10% to 15% lower glucose readings than plasma, but the percentage varies on the basis of hematocrit, analysis technique, and sample timing (fasting vs. postglucose load). Capillary blood is the source for most of these whole blood glucose measuring devices. Capillary blood glucose is similar to arterial glucose but can vary markedly from venous samples, depending on timing relative to food ingestion. For example, a postprandial specimen is higher in the capillary sample than in the venous sample. Capillary glucose tests, using point-of-care devices, should not be used to diagnose diabetes or hypoglycemic disorders. To establish these diagnoses, confirmation with laboratory measurements of plasma glucose is essential because of their greater accuracy.

Home blood glucose monitoring devices help people with diabetes to better self-manage their disease. A wide variety of devices are available for home measurements. Proper training of patients in the use of individual meters is critical in avoiding operator errors, which, in one study, were reported in 12% of users (Schrot et al, 1999). Errors that may contribute to inaccurate readings in certain devices include the application of an insufficient volume of blood, milking the finger to acquire sufficient blood, use of outdated test strips, use of alternative sites, environmental factors (humidity, heat, altitude), use of a malfunctioning meter, use of a dirty meter, hypertriglyceridemia, hypotension, measurements outside of the hematocrit or temperature range, and other factors (Schmid et al, 2013). Some blood glucose monitoring devices are influenced by high levels of salicylate, acetaminophen, levodopa, vitamin C, uric acid, bilirubin, lipids,

http://basicbook.net

or low oxygen levels, and others are altered by touching the reaction area. These devices are commonly used in the hospital; this use is considered "off-label" due to concerns about accuracy. Results can be misleading when samples are obtained from critically ill patients with poor perfusion and edema. Oxygen pressure can also affect accuracy in systems that use glucose oxidase.

The accuracy of point-of-care home blood glucose monitoring devices varies, especially at very high and low glucose concentrations. Accuracy is critical, because patients, caregivers, and providers use results to direct therapy and avoid serious hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 1197 accuracy standards changed in 2013. Under the old standards (2003), 95% of glucose values were expected to be ±15 mg/dL when reference glucose was less than 75 mg/dL and within 20% when glucose levels were greater than 75 mg/dL. Testing on only one lot of strips was required. The 2013 standards require that 95% or more of glucose levels must be ±15 mg/dL when reference glucose is less than 100 mg/dL, within 15% for glucose of 100 mg/dL or higher, and 99% within zone A or B (little or no effect on clinical outcome) of Parkes Consensus Error Grid for type 1 diabetes. Testing on three lots of strips is now required. Compliance with these standards is not mandatory, and many devices do not meet these standards (Freckmann et al, 2012).

Desirable features of home blood glucose monitoring devices, aside from performance characteristics (precision and accuracy), include ease of use, requirement of a small volume of blood, low maintenance, large print readout, rapid testing, appropriate alarms, minimal interfering substances, and memory storage and download capabilities. Some meters permit alternative site testing (such as forearm, upper arm, thigh), but results from alternative sites may be less accurate when rapid changes in glucose levels occur. Others incorporate insulin dose calculators and electronic logbooks for recording events, insulin doses, and carbohydrate intake. This information can be downloaded to a computer or smart phone to present the data in several displays such as logbooks, graphs, charts, and summary statistics. Wireless communication between home blood glucose monitoring devices and insulin pumps is also available.

Interstitial Glucose

Interstitial glucose measuring devices have been developed for continuous monitoring of glucose levels in people with diabetes. Most of these devices use electrochemical methods to automatically and frequently measure glucose levels in the interstitial fluid of dermis or subcutaneous fat tissue and require repeated calibration to plasma or whole blood glucose levels. Currently available continuous glucose monitoring systems use a subcutaneous tissue sensor that provides glucose measurements every 1 to 5 minutes. They are used independently or connected to insulin pumps. The sensor is changed every 6 days. Interstitial glucose is in slow (5-30 min) equilibrium with capillary blood glucose and therefore is not equal to blood glucose, except in stable systems (Zierler, 1999; Cheyne et al, 2002). Particularly during times when glucose levels are rapidly changing, such as after meal ingestion or recovery from hypoglycemia, interstitial fluid readings will lag behind fingerstick glucose levels. Although the precision and accuracy of currently available portable continuous glucose monitors are improving, they are not as high as for home blood glucose monitoring devices. They are therefore recommended to supplement but not replace conventional home blood glucose monitoring. Technologies currently under development for noninvasive glucose monitoring include impedance spectroscopy, thermal emission spectroscopy, near infrared spectroscopy, far infrared spectroscopy, ellipsometry, magnetic resonance imaging, and methods using electromagnetic waves.

Examination of data from continuous glucose monitoring systems provides information about glucose patterns over hours to days. This glucose "trend analysis" can reveal useful findings, such as unsuspected nocturnal hypoglycemia or postprandial hyperglycemia, which are used for modifying treatment. Hypoglycemia can occur at low or high HbA_{1c} levels and can be discovered through continuous glucose monitoring.

Devices also "alarm," warning the patient of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. Communication between insulin pumps and accurate continuous glucose monitoring systems is essential for the development of an artificial pancreas. There is currently an FDA-approved insulin pump/continuous glucose monitoring system that has incorporated a low–glucose threshold suspend feature. Insulin infusion is temporarily stopped when glucose levels fall below the threshold suspend level, reducing time in hypoglycemia (Bergenstal et al, 2013). Early studies of a bionic pancreas (an automated wearable insulin and glucagon subcutaneous infusion system that communicates with a continuous glucose monitor and uses an automated adaptive algorithm) are promising (Russell et al, 2014).

DIABETES MELLITUS

Diabetes mellitus is a group of diseases in which blood glucose levels are elevated. Diabetes is the most common set of disorders of carbohydrate metabolism, affecting approximately 29.1 million Americans in 2012, 9.3% of the total population and 25.9% of those 65 years of age and older (CDC, 2014). This is projected to increase to 44 million in 2034 (Huang et al, 2009), with the prediction of an estimated 33% of males and 39% females born in 2000 in the United States being diagnosed with diabetes during their lifetime (Narayan et al, 2003). This chronic disease is responsible for significant morbidity, mortality, and cost. Diabetes is the leading cause of treated end-stage renal disease, the most common cause of nontraumatic amputations, and the foremost cause of new blindness in adults ages 20 to 74 years. Nerve damage, known as diabetic neuropathy, occurs in 60% to 70% of people with diabetes. Most diabetes-related deaths, however, are related to the increased risk of developing atherosclerotic disease. People with diabetes are at least two to four times more likely to have heart disease and cerebrovascular disease than those without diabetes. In 2012, it was estimated that diabetes in the United States cost $245 billion (CDC, 2014). Fortunately, in recent years, associated with better glycemic and blood pressure control, use of angiotensin converting enzymes inhibitors or angiotensin receptor blockers for renoprotection, use of statin drugs to lower LDL-cholesterol, and better foot care, complication rates have been falling (Gregg et al, 2014).

The Expert Committee on the Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus revised the criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes in 1997, with later modifications by the American Diabetes Association (ADA, 2010). A fasting plasma glucose level of 126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L) or higher on at least two occasions is diagnostic of diabetes (Table 16-1). The fasting glucose level should be obtained after an 8-hour fast. Symptoms of hyperglycemia (e.g., polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia, unexplained weight loss) with a casual plasma glucose level of 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) or higher or hemoglobin A_{1c} (HbA_{1c}) of 6.5% or higher on two different days is sufficient to diagnose diabetes. If the patient has discordant results from two different tests, then the test for which the result is above the diagnostic cut point should be repeated.

Prediabetes designates conditions in which glucose homeostasis is abnormal, but serum glucose levels are not high enough to be classified as diabetes. This group includes individuals with impaired fasting glucose and impaired glucose tolerance (see Table 16-1). They are also at increased risk for cardiovascular and cerebrovascular diseases.

Formal oral glucose tolerance tests are not generally recommended for routine clinical use in the diagnosis of diabetes. If used, the procedure described by the World Health Organization (1985) utilizing a 75-gram glucose load should be followed. For children, 1.75 grams glucose/kg up to 75 grams is recommended. The exception is for the diagnosis of diabetes during pregnancy. Pregnant women with risk factors for type 2 diabetes should be screened using an oral glucose tolerance test at their initial prenatal visit. Other women should be screened between 24 and 28 weeks' gestation.

There is ongoing debate concerning the optimal screening method for diagnosing gestational diabetes (ADA, 2014). The "one-step" method, based on the International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study

TABLE 16-1
Diagnosis of Prediabetes and Diabetes Mellitus

	FASTING PLASMA GLUCOSE		2-HOUR PLASMA GLUCOSE LEVEL (AFTER 75 g GLUCOSE LOAD)		HbA_{1c}
	mg/dL	mmol/L	mg/dL	mmol/L	%
Normal	<100	<5.6	<140	<7.8	
Prediabetes					5.7-6.4
Impaired fasting glucose	100-125	5.6-6.9			
Impaired glucose tolerance			140-199	7.8-11.0	
Diabetes mellitus	≥126	≥7.0	≥200	≥11.1	≥6.5

From American Diabetes Association (2010).
HbA_{1c}, Hemoglobin A_{1c}.

http://basicbook.net

Groups [IADPSG] consensus meeting, uses a 75-gram oral glucose tolerance test, measuring glucose levels after fasting and at 1 and 2 hours (Table 16-2). Cutoff glucose concentrations are based on those values associated with a 1.75-fold increase in the risk of neonatal complications in the Hyperglycaemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcomes (HAPO) study. The other method (National Institutes of Health consensus) uses the "two-step" protocol shown in Table 16-2. The use of this protocol avoids a large increase in the prevalence of gestational diabetes without clear benefit. A third, compromise alternative has recently been proposed (Cosson et al, 2014) and is based on glucose values associated with a twofold increase in the risk of neonatal complications (fasting glucose of 95 mg/dL or higher, or a 1-hour glucose value after a 75-gram oral glucose tolerance test of 191 mg/dL or higher, or a 2-hour glucose value of 162 mg/dL or higher).

TABLE 16-2

Diagnosis of Gestational Diabetes Mellitus

"One-Step" (IADPSG Consensus)

Perform a 75-g OGTT, with plasma glucose measurement fasting and at 1 and 2 h, at 24-28 weeks of gestation in women not previously diagnosed with overt diabetes.

The OGTT should be performed in the morning after an overnight fast of at least 8 h.

The diagnosis of GDM is made when any of the following plasma glucose values are exceeded:

- Fasting: ≥92 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L)
- 1 h: ≥180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L)
- 2 h: ≥ 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L)

"Two-Step" (NIH Consensus)

Perform a 50-g GLT (nonfasting), with plasma glucose measurement at 1 h (Step 1), at 24-28 weeks of gestation in women not previously diagnosed with overt diabetes.

If the plasma glucose level measured 1 h after the load is ≥140 mg/dL* (7.8 mmol/L), proceed to 100-g OGTT (Step 2). The 100-g OGTT should be performed when the patient is fasting.

The diagnosis of GDM is made when at least two of the following four plasma glucose levels (measured fasting, 1 h, 2 h, 3 h after the OGTT) are met or exceeded:

	Carpenter/Coustan	NDDG
Fasting	95 mg/dL (5.3 mmol/L)	105 mg/dL (5.8 mmol/L)
1 h	180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L)	190 mg/dL (10.6 mmol/L)
2 h	155 mg/dL (8.6 mmol/L)	165 mg/dL (9.2 mmol/L)
3 h	140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L)	145 mg/dL (8.0 mmol/L)

NDDG, National Diabetes Data Group.

*The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) recommends a lower threshold of 135 mg/dL (7.5 mmol/L) in high-risk ethnic minorities with higher prevalence of GDM; some experts also recommend 130 mg/dL (7.2 mmol/L)

From American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes—2014. *Diabetes Care* 2014 Jan; 37 Suppl 1: S14–S80.

Before an oral glucose tolerance test is performed, individuals should ingest at least 150 g/day of carbohydrates for the 3 days preceding the test without limitation in physical activity, and the test should be performed after an overnight 8- to 14-hour fast. The individual should not eat food; drink tea, coffee, or alcohol; or smoke cigarettes during the test, and he or she should be seated. Venous glucose samples are preferably collected in gray-top tubes containing fluoride and an anticoagulant.

Metabolic syndrome is highly prevalent in the United States, present in 34.3% of all adults (Ford et al, 2010). Of great concern is the increasing prevalence of the metabolic syndrome in U.S. adolescents, affecting 9.5% of eighth-grade students in 2008 (STOPP-T2D, 2008). The metabolic syndrome is associated with increased risk of cardiovascular disease and of developing diabetes. Criteria defining the metabolic syndrome according to the Third Report of the National Cholesterol Education Program Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults include the presence of three or more of the following: impaired fasting glucose or diabetes; blood pressure of 130/85 mm Hg or higher, or taking medication for hypertension; waist circumference of more than 102 cm in men and more than 88 cm in women; serum triglycerides of 150 mg/dL (1.7 mmol/L) or higher, or taking lipid-lowering medication; and high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol of lower than 40 mg/dL (1.0 mmol/L) in men and lower than 50 mg/dL (1.3 mmol/L) in women. Most commonly, these individuals are insulin resistant and have smaller, denser, more atherogenic low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol particles.

The classification of diabetes is shown in Box 16-1 (ADA, 2010). The most common forms of diabetes are type 1 and type 2 (Table 16-3). Type 1 diabetes, characterized by absolute insulin deficiency and beta cell destruction, used to be called juvenile-onset diabetes or insulin-dependent diabetes. Although this disease is most commonly diagnosed in young people, its onset can occur at any age. Because people with other forms of diabetes also use insulin therapy, the term *insulin-dependent* is confusing and should not be used. Type 2 diabetes, characterized by insulin resistance and insulin secretory defects, has been referred to in the past as adult-onset or non-insulin-dependent diabetes. These terms also should no longer be used. Although the onset of type 2 diabetes is most common in older adults, it can occur at any age, including childhood. Many patients with type 2 diabetes use insulin therapy, so it should not be referred to as non-insulin-dependent diabetes. Uncommon causes of diabetes include genetic defects involving beta cell function or insulin action, pancreatic diseases, endocrinopathies such as Cushing's syndrome, acromegaly and pheochromocytoma, and certain drugs, chemicals, and infections (see Box 16-1).

TYPE 1 DIABETES

Type 1 diabetes mellitus represents approximately 10% of all cases of diabetes. There usually is an autoimmune destruction of insulin-producing beta cells in the islets of the pancreas, causing an absolute deficiency in insulin production. The genetic susceptibility to develop type 1 diabetes is related, at least in part, to the inheritance of specific immune response genes associated with HLA-DR/DQ on chromosome 6, as well as other genes and genetic markers. It is then hypothesized that a precipitating event occurs, such as a viral infection, toxin exposure, or other

TABLE 16-3

Characteristics of Type 1 and Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

	Type 1 Diabetes	Type 2 Diabetes
Frequency	5% to 10%	90% to 95%
Age of onset	Any, but most common in children and young adults	More common with advancing age, but can occur in children and adolescents
Risk factors	Genetic, autoimmune, environmental	Genetic, obesity, sedentary lifestyle, race/ethnicity, hypertension, dyslipidemia, polycystic ovarian syndrome
Pathogenesis	Destruction of pancreatic beta cells, usually autoimmune	No autoimmunity Insulin resistance and progressive insulin deficiency
C-peptide levels	Very low or undetectable	Detectable
Prediabetes	Autoantibodies (GAD65, IA-2, IAA, ZnT8) may be present.	Autoantibodies absent
Medication therapy	Insulin absolutely necessary; multiple daily injections or insulin pump	Oral agents and/or noninsulin injectable hypoglycemic drugs Insulin commonly needed
Therapy to prevent or delay onset of diabetes	None known Clinical trials in progress	Lifestyle (weight loss and increased physical activity) Oral medications (metformin, acarbose) may be helpful.

http://basicbook.net

BOX 16-1

Classification of Diabetes Mellitus

I. Type 1 diabetes (beta cell destruction, usually leading to absolute insulin deficiency)
   A. Immune mediated
   B. Idiopathic
II. Type 2 diabetes (may range from predominantly insulin resistance with relative insulin deficiency to a predominantly secretory defect with insulin resistance)
III. Other specific types
   A. Genetic defects of beta cell function
      1. Chromosome 12, HNF-1α (MODY3)
      2. Chromosome 7, glucokinase (MODY2)
      3. Chromosome 20, HNF-4α (MODY1)
      4. Chromosome 13, insulin promoter factor-1 (IPF-1; MODY4)
      5. Chromosome 17, HNF-1β (MODY5)
      6. Chromosome 2, NeuroD1 (MODY6)
      7. Mitochondrial DNA
      8. Others
   B. Genetic defects in insulin action
      1. Type A insulin resistance
      2. Leprechaunism
      3. Rabson-Mendenhall syndrome
      4. Lipoatrophic diabetes
      5. Others
   C. Diseases of the exocrine pancreas
      1. Pancreatitis
      2. Trauma/pancreatectomy
      3. Neoplasia
      4. Cystic fibrosis
      5. Hemochromatosis
      6. Fibrocalculous pancreatopathy
      7. Others
   D. Endocrinopathies
      1. Acromegaly
      2. Cushing's syndrome
      3. Glucagonoma
      4. Pheochromocytoma
      5. Hyperthyroidism
      6. Somatostatinoma
      7. Aldosteronoma
      8. Others
   E. Drug or chemical induced
      1. Vacor
      2. Pentamidine
      3. Nicotinic acid
      4. Glucocorticoids
      5. Thyroid hormone
      6. Diazoxide
      7. β-Adrenergic agonists
      8. Thiazides
      9. Dilantin
      10. γ-Interferon
      11. Others
   F. Infections
      1. Congenital rubella
      2. Cytomegalovirus
      3. Others
   G. Uncommon forms of immune-mediated diabetes
      1. "Stiff-man" syndrome
      2. Anti-insulin receptor antibodies
      3. Others
   H. Other genetic syndromes sometimes associated with diabetes
      1. Down syndrome
      2. Klinefelter's syndrome
      3. Turner's syndrome
      4. Wolfram's syndrome
      5. Friedreich's ataxia
      6. Huntington's chorea
      7. Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome
      8. Myotonic dystrophy
      9. Porphyria
      10. Prader-Willi syndrome
      11. Others
IV. Gestational diabetes mellitus

environmental influence, which triggers the autoimmune destruction of the beta cells. It is only after most of the beta cells are destroyed that hyperglycemia develops.

Antibody markers of beta cell destruction are commonly present before and at the time of onset of diabetes and can be useful for prediction and diagnosis and for research on the treatment and prevention of type 1 diabetes. These include antibodies to antigens for which recombinant autoantibody assays are available: antibodies to the 65 kDa isoform of glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD65), insulin autoantibodies (IAAs), autoantibodies to insulinoma-associated protein 2 (IA-2), and autoantibodies to zinc transporter 8 (ZnT8). IA-2 is a tyrosine phosphatase–related protein. The tyrosine phosphatase IA-2β (phogrin) is a separate but partially homologous antigen to IA-2. Older assays measured islet cell antigen 512 autoantibodies (ICA512), which were autoantibodies to parts of the IA-2 antigen. IA-2 autoantibody assays are used more frequently than assays for IA-2β autoantibodies; IA-2β antibodies generally react with IA-2. The ZnT8 is found in the membrane of pancreatic islet beta cell secretory granules. Although the presence of antibodies may help in the differentiation of type 1 diabetes from other types of diabetes early in the course of the disease, the absence of antibodies does not exclude this diagnosis.

Those individuals at greatest risk of developing type 1 diabetes have high titers of multiple autoantibodies. In family as well as in population studies, the detection of at least two autoantibodies is associated with increased risk of developing type 1 diabetes. Composite levels from assays for autoantibodies to GAD, IA-2, insulin, and ZnT8 increase prediction (Sosenko, 2013). GAD65 has the highest sensitivity (91%) as a single screening marker for detecting multiple antibody-positive individuals (Krischer et al, 2003). IAAs are more common in young children who develop type 1 diabetes, whereas GAD65 is more common in adults. Prediction for the development of type 1 diabetes is enhanced by use of the Diabetes Prevention Trial-Type 1 risk score that includes parameters related to glycemia, age, body mass index (BMI) and C-peptide levels (Sosenko et al, 2014).

In the past, the autoantibody assays have not been well standardized, and the cutoff values for these assays were not firmly established. Quality control programs are important, in that almost 50% of blinded samples that are considered "low positive" were found to be negative on repeat testing of a blinded duplicate aliquot (Eisenbarth, 2003). The Diabetes Antibody Standardization Program, a collaboration between the Immunology of Diabetes Society and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, has established a Proficiency Testing Service, with the goal of evaluation and improvement of assays for type 1 diabetes–associated autoantibodies, the provision of standard reference samples, and validation of novel candidate autoantibody antigens. Proficiency evaluations have been reported for different assays of GAD65, IA-2, IAA, and ZnT8 autoantibodies (Bingley et al, 2003; Törn et al, 2008). The "prediabetes" period of gradual and progressive beta cell destruction can last for months, years, or decades. During this period, the acute insulin response to intravenous glucose, called the first-phase insulin release, becomes depressed or absent. The absence of first-phase insulin response is also found in other forms of diabetes. Eventually, in most people with type 1 diabetes, most or all of the beta cells are destroyed, resulting in inadequate or absent insulin secretion. C-peptide levels and endogenous insulin levels therefore are very low or undetectable. People with untreated type 1 diabetes develop diabetic ketoacidosis. Insulin therapy is required for all patients with type 1 diabetes.

TYPE 2 DIABETES

Type 2 diabetes is the most common type of diabetes, affecting approximately 90% of Americans with diabetes. This disease is familial, but the underlying genetic defects for most of those affected have yet to be determined. Risk factors include overweight (BMI ≥25 kg/m^2), sedentary lifestyle, family history of diabetes, advanced age (≥45 years), ethnicity (African Americans, Latinos, Native Americans, Asian Americans, and Pacific Islanders), and polycystic ovary disease, as well as history of gestational diabetes or delivery before diabetes of a baby weighing more than 9 pounds, hypertension, vascular disease or dyslipidemia (HDL-cholesterol ≤35 mg/dL [0.90 mmol/L] and/or triglyceride level ≥250 mg/dL [2.82 mmol/L]), HbA_{1c} of 5.7% or greater, impaired fasting glucose or impaired glucose tolerance, and other conditions associated with insulin resistance (i.e., acanthosis nigricans). This is not an autoimmune disease, so antibody testing is not worthwhile. C-peptide levels are measurable in type 2 diabetes, with a reduction in beta cell mass over time. Unlike undiagnosed type 1 diabetes, in which patients are usually symptomatic, people

http://basicbook.net

with new-onset type 2 diabetes can be free of symptoms. It is not unusual to diagnose type 2 diabetes after the onset of complications. Routine screening for high-risk individuals is therefore recommended.

The American Diabetes Association (ADA, 2010) recommends screening for type 2 diabetes by the individual's health care provider if one or more risk factors are present. Testing for diabetes should be considered in any overweight or obese adult. In general, it is recommended that adults ages 45 and older be screened for diabetes every 3 years, but screening should be performed earlier and more frequently if the individual is at high risk. The preferred test is a fasting plasma glucose or HbA_{1c} level. If a random plasma glucose level is 160 mg/dL (8.9 mmol/L) or higher, a fasting plasma glucose, HbA_{1c}, or 2-hour 75-g OGTT should be performed (see Table 16-1). It should be remembered that whole blood glucose values, which are measured on some home blood glucose monitoring devices, are 10% to 15% lower than plasma glucose values. These devices should not be used to diagnose diabetes. If, however, an individual does have a capillary glucose test on one of these machines that reads 140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L) or higher, he or she should be rescreened with a fasting plasma glucose, HbA_{1c}, or OGTT, using venous samples (see Table 16-1). Point-of-care HbA_{1c} assays are not recommended for use for diagnosis.

In recent years, type 2 diabetes has been diagnosed in younger individuals, including children. The American Diabetes Association (ADA, 2010) recommends screening children and adolescents, beginning at age 10 or at onset of puberty, who are overweight (BMI >85th percentile or weight >120% of ideal) with two of the following risk factors: family history (type 2 diabetes in first- and second-degree relatives), high-risk race/ethnicity (Native Americans, African Americans, Hispanic Americans, Asians/South Pacific Islanders), signs of insulin resistance (acanthosis nigricans, hypertension, dyslipidemia, polycystic ovary syndrome, or small for gestational age birth weight), or maternal history of diabetes or gestational diabetes during the child's gestation.

Most people with type 2 diabetes are insulin resistant, obese, and have a relative or absolute deficiency in insulin secretion. Inappropriately high hepatic glucose production occurs, along with impaired glucose utilization peripherally. Decreased glucose transport can be demonstrated in muscle and adipose tissue. For glucose tolerance to remain normal, the pancreas must secrete enough insulin. If the pancreas is unable to secrete sufficient insulin, impaired glucose tolerance or type 2 diabetes results. Hyperglycemia is toxic to beta cell function and further impairs insulin secretion. Over time, beta cell failure is usually progressive, and the beta cells produce lesser amounts of insulin, contributing to increasing insulin deficiency. Although many people with type 2 diabetes can be effectively treated with diet, exercise, and oral glycemic control agents, others require insulin therapy.

MEASURES OF GLYCEMIC CONTROL

It has been established that improved glycemic control is associated with preventing or delaying the progression of microvascular complications in diabetes. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) demonstrated that lowering glucose levels in patients with type 1 diabetes slows or prevents the development of retinopathy, neuropathy, and nephropathy (DCCT Research Group, 1993). A 50% to 75% decrease in complications was observed in the intensively treated group, in which an HbA_{1c} of 7.2% was achieved (compared with 9.0% in the conventionally treated group). In the DCCT follow-up Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications study, reduction in cardiovascular disease was also found in the groups that had been intensively treated (Nathan et al, 2005). Reduction in microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes was reported in the United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS), as well as in a smaller Japanese study (Ohkubo et al, 1995; United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study Group, 1998a; 1998b). In the UKPDS, microvascular complications were decreased by 25% in intensively treated patients by lowering the HbA_{1c} from 7.9% to 7.0%. In the UKPDS follow-up study, macrovascular disease was reduced as well. The standard of care is to measure HbA_{1c} levels every 3 to 6 months to monitor glycemic control (American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, 2007; ADA, 2014). Glycemic goals are shown in Table 16-4.

Glycosylated hemoglobin (GHb) is formed nonenzymatically by the two-step reaction shown in Figure 16-3. The first reaction is rapid, reversible, and dependent on the ambient glucose concentration, and it produces a labile aldimine or Schiff base. Over time, the aldimine slowly undergoes Amadori rearrangement and is converted to a stable ketoamine, glycosylated hemoglobin. Most HbA_{1c} assays measure this stable ketoamine, not the labile product, which is more prone to be influenced by recent dietary intake.

TABLE 16-4
Glycemic Goals in Adults*

	Hemoglobin A_{1c} (%)	PREPRANDIAL GLUCOSE		POSTPRANDIAL GLUCOSE**	
		mg/dL	mmol/L	mg/dL	mmol/L
ADA†: Adults	<7.0‡	80-130	4.4-7.2	<180	<10.0
Pregnant adults	<6.0	60-99	3.3-5.5	100-129	5.6-7.2
Older adults:					
Healthy	<7.5	90-130	5.0-7.2	90-150	5.0-8.3
Intermediate	<8.0	90-150	5.0-8.3	100-180	5.6-10.0
Poor health	<8.5	100-180	5.6-10.0	110-200	6.1-11.1
AACE§,¶	≤6.5	≤110	≤6.1	≤140	<7.8

*Youth <18 years of age: goal hemoglobin A_{1c} <7.5%.
**1 to 2 hours after beginning a meal for adults, except bedtime for older adults.
†American Diabetes Association (2015); Chiang et al (2014).
‡Lower goals may be appropriate for selected individuals if this can be accomplished safely (without significant hypoglycemia). Higher goals may be appropriate in some individuals (e.g., with a history of severe hypoglycemia, limited life expectancy, advanced complications, extensive comorbid conditions, or long-standing diabetes in whom the goal is difficult to achieve with appropriate education, monitoring, and therapies, including insulin).
§AACE, American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, 2015.
¶For patients without concurrent serious illness and at low hypoglycemia risk.

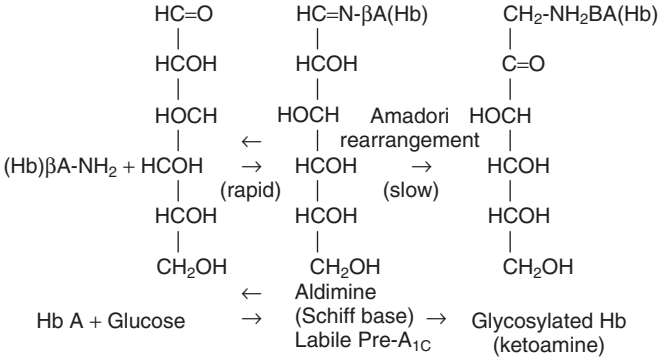


Figure 16-3 Formation of glycosylated hemoglobin (GHb).

HbA_{1c} is defined by the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry Working Group on HbA_{1c} as the hemoglobin A that is irreversibly glycosylated at one or both N-terminal valines of the β-chains of the tetrameric hemoglobin molecule, including hemoglobin that may also (but not solely) be glycosylated on lysine residues. HbA_{1c} testing provides an index of average blood glucose levels over the past 2 to 4 months. Although the life span of red blood cells is approximately 120 days, HbA_{1c} levels represent a "weighted" average of glucose levels, with the youngest erythrocytes contributing to a greater extent than older ones. Approximately 50% of the HbA_{1c} level is determined by plasma glucose levels over the previous month and 75% during the previous 2 months (Tahara & Shima, 1993). Testing methods have been standardized to the HbA_{1c} assay, which is now the preferred test to use to assess glycemic control. To avoid confusion for the general public, the American Diabetes Association, the American College of Endocrinology, and the National Diabetes Education Program recommend using the term A_{1c} testing when referring to HbA_{1c} equivalent (GHb) or HbA_{1c} results.

The National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program (NGSP) began in 1996, with the goal of standardizing GHb tests to the high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) method reported as HbA_{1c} or HbA_{1c} equivalent, as used in the DCCT. Several types of certified methods are available for measuring hemoglobin A_{1c}: immunoassay, ion-exchange HPLC, electrophoresis, boronate affinity HPLC, and enzyme methods. Reliable benchtop point-of-care analyzers, such as the one that uses a cassette-based immunoassay method, also are available. Most U.S. laboratories use a certified method and the College of American Pathologists' proficiency testing program, which utilizes whole blood and lyophilized samples (Little et al, 2011).

To obtain and retain a "Certificate of Traceability to the DCCT Reference Method" in the NGSP, the laboratory must annually satisfy precision criteria (CV ≤5%; ≤3% for Level 1 laboratories), bias criteria (95% confidence interval [CI] of differences between test method and Secondary

http://basicbook.net

Reference Laboratories [SRL] must fall within ±1% GHb of the SRL [±0.70% GHb for Level 1 laboratories]), and outlier criteria (greater than mean +3 standard deviation of absolute differences between pairs). Level 1 laboratories are usually large and involved in research studies. The NGSP website contains certification criteria and information on how to obtain certification and on assay interferences and hemoglobin variants (http://www.ngsp.org/prog/index3.html).

HbA_{1c} assays vary in reliability in the presence of a variety of factors. Interference by carbamylated hemoglobin can occur with uremia, hypertriglyceridemia, and hyperbilirubinemia, and salicylates can cause interference by acetylated species. Hemoglobinopathies (HbSS, HbSC, HbCC) associated with high red blood cell turnover and the need for transfusions will adversely affect accuracy, as will chronic alcohol or opiate use, iron deficiency, and lead poisoning (Hoberman & Chiodo, 1982; Tarim et al, 1999). Vitamins C and E can falsely lower levels by inhibiting glycosylation, but vitamin C can also increase levels for some assays (Ceriello et al, 1991; Davie et al, 1992). Sample storage effects may occur. Conditions associated with shortened red blood cell survival or lower mean red blood cell age, such as hemolysis, recovery from acute blood loss, transfusions, or splenectomy, will lower the HbA_{1c} level as the result of reduced exposure to plasma glucose. Hyperglycemia has been associated with a decrease in erythrocyte survival, suggesting that HbA_{1c} levels in poorly controlled patients may underestimate their mean plasma glucose concentration (Virtue et al, 2004). In 2007, a consensus statement on the international standardization of HbA_{1c} assays was issued by the American Diabetes Association, the European Association for the Study of Diabetes, the International Federation of Clinical Chemistry and Laboratory Medicine (IFCC), and the International Diabetes Federation (Consensus Committee, 2007). HbA_{1c} assays should be calibrated using the reference measurement system developed by the IFCC that measures only HbA_{1c} (not non-A_{1c} components). The Consensus Committee also recommended that results be reported in a standardized manner (A_{1c} [%]; A_{1c} [mmol/mol], and estimated average glucose [eAG]). The United States reports NGSP numbers (% HbA_{1c} and eAG) but not IFCC numbers (mmol/mol). IFCC units can be converted to NGSP units as follows: NGSP = (0.915 × IFCC) + 2.15 (Little et al, 2011; Hoelzel et al, 2004).

The correlation between HbA_{1c} and estimated average plasma glucose levels is shown in Table 16-5 (Nathan et al, 2008). This is based on data from the International A1c Derived Average Glucose trial, but there is uncertainty about the accuracy of this correlation in children and African Americans. There is evidence that the relationship between A1c and mean blood glucose may vary in different racial and ethnic groups due to differences in hemoglobin glycation and/or other factors that are not well understood (Herman & Cohen, 2012).

For patients in whom A1c/eAG and measured blood glucose appears to be discordant, clinicians should consider the possibility of interfering factors discussed above. In the presence of abnormal red cell turnover, such as with pregnancy, recent blood loss, or transfusions, only blood glucose criteria should be used to diagnose diabetes. For patients with an abnormal hemoglobin but normal red cell turnover, such as sickle cell trait, an HbA_{1c} assay without interference from abnormal hemoglobin should be used. An updated list is available at www.ngsp.org/interf.asp.

TABLE 16-5
Correlation between Hemoglobin A_{1c} and Plasma Glucose Levels

	APPROXIMATE MEAN PLASMA GLUCOSE	
Hemoglobin A_{1c} (%)	**mg/dL**	**mmol/L**
5	97	5.4
6	126	7.0
7	154	8.6
8	183	10.2
9	212	11.8
10	240	13.4
11	269	14.9
12	298	16.5

From Nathan et al (2008).
See http://professional.diabetes.org/eAG for a calculator to convert hemoglobin A1c (%) to estimated mean glucose level.

The turnover time of serum proteins, primarily albumin, is much shorter than that of erythrocytes (14-20 days), so their glycosylation reflects glycemic control over narrower periods of time. The nonenzymatic glycation of these serum proteins occurs similarly to that of hemoglobin, with the formation of ketoamine-linked glucose protein. Several methods are available for measuring glycosylated proteins or glycosylated albumin, including affinity chromatography, immunoassays, and enzymatic methods. Fructosamine and glycated albumin assays may be useful in patients for whom HbA_{1c} assays are inaccurate, such as those with hemoglobinopathies, advanced chronic kidney disease, and hemolytic anemias, but unlike HbA_{1c} levels, their clinical utility has not been firmly established.

Fructosamine assays are the most widely used to assess short-term (3- to 6-week) glycemic control because the average half-life of the proteins is 2 to 3 weeks. These assays have the advantage of using serum samples and automated equipment, so they are simple to perform and low in cost. They are more reliable than other glycosylated protein assays but can be affected by alterations in serum protein levels that are present during acute illnesses and liver disease. Whether fructosamine values should be corrected for serum protein or albumin concentrations is controversial. The assay should not be performed if the serum albumin level is 3.0 mg/dL or lower. High uric acid, triglyceride, and bilirubin levels and the presence of heparin or hemolysis can also affect the assay. Another approach under investigation for the assessment of glycemic status is the measurement of glycated protein in saliva. If successful, this may provide a truly noninvasive test with vast clinical implications. Neither HbA_{1c} nor fructosamine values capture the magnitude of glycemic exursions. There is evidence that wide glycemic fluctuations contribute to vascular damage independent of mean glucose concentrations. Tests providing information about glycemic excursions may be useful for risk stratification. One such test is 1,5-anhydroglucitol (1,5-AG), the results of which reflect postprandial glycemia and short-term (1- to 2-week) hyperglycemia. 1,5-anhydroglucitol, a dietary monosaccharide, is filtered in the glomerulus and competes with glucose for reabsorption in the renal tubules. Hyperglycemia decreases 1,5-AG blood concentrations. Several small studies have suggested an association between 1,5-AG and microvascular complications. Abnormal renal function will interfere with the accuracy of this test (Lawler & Mora, 2014).

KETONE TESTING

The ketone bodies β-hydroxybutyric acid, acetoacetic acid, and acetone are products of fatty acid degradation. β-hydroxybutyric acid and acetoacetic acid are normally present in a 1:1 ratio at concentrations of 0.5 to 1.0 mmol/L each. Ketone testing, using urine or blood, is particularly important for individuals with type 1 diabetes mellitus to detect ketosis. Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) is a serious and potentially fatal hyperglycemic condition requiring urgent treatment. It is frequently associated with nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, electrolyte disturbances, and severe dehydration. Type 2 diabetes patients who are poorly controlled, particularly in the presence of extreme stress or severe acute illness, can also develop DKA. Ketone testing may be useful in pregnancy and in determining the cause of hypoglycemic disorders.

The ratio of β-hydroxybutyric acid to acetoacetic acid is greatly increased in DKA as a result of the altered redox state and elevated levels of NADH in the hepatic mitochondria. The most commonly used strips and tablets use sodium nitroprusside (sodium nitroferricyanide) and turn purple in the presence of elevated levels of acetoacetic acid. Acetone is detected in the presence of glycine. False-negative results can occur with old strips and with strips that have had excessive contact with air and after ingestion of large amounts of vitamin C. False-positive results have been observed with the use of sulfhydryl-containing medications such as captopril (but not other angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors not containing the sulfhydryl group), acetylcysteine, penicillamine, and mesna. β-hydroxybutyric acid is not detected by these methods. Because β-hydroxybutyric acid levels fall and acetoacetic acid and acetone levels rise during the treatment of DKA, these tests are not useful for the monitoring of therapy. Because of these shortcomings and the availability of direct measurement of β-hydroxybutyrate in serum (by laboratories by and ambulatory patients and caregivers using point-of-care devices), direct measurement of β-hydroxybutyrate is replacing older nitroprusside-based tests.

β-hydroxybutyric acid can be measured in serum by enzymatic, electrochemical, chromatographic, electrophoretic, and colorimetric methods. Reference intervals of β-hydroxybutyrate vary among assay methods, but concentrations in healthy individuals who have fasted overnight are generally less than 0.5 mmol/L. Patients with well-documented DKA (i.e.,

http://basicbook.net

HCO_3 <17, arterial pH <7.3, plasma glucose >250 mg/dl) generally have β-hydroxybutyrate of over 2.0 mmol/L (ADA, 2011).

For the monitoring of recovery from DKA in the hospital setting, serial measurements of serum electrolytes, including bicarbonate with calculation of the anion gap, are used commonly. Serial measurement of β-hydroxybutyric acid provides an additional tool to monitor improvement in DKA. This can be especially useful in patients with DKA in the presence of a concomitant additional acid-base abnormality interfering with proper interpretation of bicarbonate concentrations and the anion gap, such as seen in renal failure. Assessment of ketone levels by breath testing is also under investigation (Blaikie et al, 2014).

HYPOGLYCEMIA

Hypoglycemia results from an imbalance between glucose utilization (by brain, erythrocytes, muscle tissue, and kidneys) and production (endogenous glucose production by liver and kidneys and from ingestion of carbohydrates) in such a manner that the rate of glucose utilization exceeds the rate at which glucose is being produced (Guettier & Gordon, 2006). The symptoms of hypoglycemia can be divided into two categories: neurogenic and neuroglycopenic. Neurogenic symptoms are triggered by the autonomic nervous system. Tremulousness, palpitations, and anxiety are catecholamine mediated, and diaphoresis, hunger, and paresthesias are related to acetylcholine release. The neuroglycopenic symptoms are due to diminished glucose supply to the central nervous system and include dizziness, tingling, difficulty concentrating, blurred vision, confusion, behavioral changes, seizure, and coma (Schwartz et al, 1987; Mitrakou et al, 1991; Towler et al, 1993). Severe hypoglycemia if not corrected in a timely fashion can be fatal (Cryer, 2007).

Treatment of diabetes mellitus with insulin or agents that increase insulin secretion (insulin secretagogue drugs) such as sulfonylureas is the major cause of hypoglycemia. A number of drugs and medical conditions can also cause hypoglycemia (Box 16-2). Pancreatic hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia can be diagnosed by demonstrating that insulin secretion is not suppressed normally when the individual develops hypoglycemia. Measurements of insulin, C-peptide, proinsulin, insulin and insulin receptor autoantibodies, β-hydroxybutyrate, and drugs (i.e., sulfonylurea/meglitinide levels) are recommended to determine the correct diagnosis. Insulin and proinsulin autoantibodies may interfere with the immunoassays for insulin, proinsulin, and C-peptide.

"Whipple's triad," initially proposed by Whipple for the diagnosis of hypoglycemic disorders, continues to be an important tool in assessing patients with episodes suggestive of low plasma glucose levels. Whipple's triad refers to symptoms consistent with hypoglycemia associated with a documented low plasma glucose level and relief of symptoms with correction of hypoglycemia (Whipple, 1938). Further evaluation is indicated if a person who is in good health presents with symptoms of hypoglycemia and a laboratory plasma glucose level of 55 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L) or lower in the absence of treatment of diabetes mellitus (Cryer et al, 2009). A blood glucose level of 50 mg/dL (2.8 mmol/L) or less in infants is considered abnormal and warrants diagnostic assessment (Haymond, 1989; Sperling & Menon, 2004).

DRUG-INDUCED HYPOGLYCEMIA

Several drugs can cause hypoglycemia that may manifest as altered mental status. Most cases of drug-induced hypoglycemia have been described in patients with diabetes mellitus who are on glucose-lowering medications such as insulin and insulin secretagogue drugs (sulfonylureas, repaglinide, and nateglinide). Elevated insulin with low C-peptide values is observed when exogenous insulin has been administered. High insulin and C-peptide levels with a positive drug screen for an insulin secretagogue would be expected when these oral agents have been used surreptitiously. It is important that these blood tests be drawn during the hypoglycemic episode. The assays for sulfonylureas and meglitinides should be sent to a laboratory that has the capability to measure very low levels of these drugs, because assays using higher detection limits can lead to an inaccurate diagnosis (Manning et al, 2003).

Pentamidine used for the treatment of *Pneumocystis* pneumonia causes hypoglycemia by damaging pancreatic beta cells. Hypoglycemia can occur within a few hours to days of administration of pentamidine. Plasma insulin levels are high despite low glucose concentrations, indicating excessive insulin leakage (Bouchard et al, 1982; Assan et al, 1995). Sulfonamide-induced hypoglycemia is also associated with increased insulin and C-peptide levels in susceptible individuals (Hekimsoy et al, 1997). Salicylate-induced hypoglycemia may be due to increased peripheral

Box 16-2
Clinical Classification of Hypoglycemia

Drugs
Insulin
Sulfonylureas
Benzoic acid derivatives (repaglinide)
Nateglinide
Alcohol
Pentamidine
Beta-blockers
Quinine
Salicylates
Sulfonamides
Haloperidol
Propoxyphene
Paraaminobenzoic acid
Cibenzoline
Gatifloxacin
Indomethacin
Lithium
Clinafloxacin
Glucagon
Artesunate
Artemisin
Artemether
Chloroquineoxaline sulfonamide
Insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1)

Critical Illnesses
Hepatic failure
Renal failure
Cardiac failure
Sepsis
Malnutrition

Hormonal Deficiencies
Glucagon
Epinephrine
Cortisol
Growth hormone

Endogenous Hyperinsulinism
Pancreatic beta cell disorders
Tumor (insulinoma)
Nontumor (nesidioblastosis or diffuse hyperplasia of the islets)

Autoimmune Hypoglycemia
Insulin antibodies
Insulin receptor antibodies

Non–Beta Cell Tumors
Mesenchymal: Fibrosarcoma, mesothelioma, rhabdomyosarcoma, leiomyosarcoma, liposarcoma, lymphosarcoma, hemangiopericytoma
Carcinomas: Hepatomas, adrenocortical tumors, hypernephroma, Wilms' tumor
Neurologic and neuroendocrine tumors: Pheochromocytoma, carcinoid tumor, neurofibroma
Hematologic: Leukemias, lymphoma, myeloma

Hypoglycemia of Infancy and Childhood
Hyperinsulinism
Transient: Erythroblastosis fetalis, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, uncontrolled diabetes (mother)
Persistent: Hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia of infancy
Glycogen storage diseases
Hereditary fructose intolerance
Galactosemia
Defects in gluconeogenesis
Reye's syndrome
Deficiency of glucose transporters
Impaired ketogenesis
Carnitine deficiency
Defects in mitochondrial function

Alimentary Hypoglycemia
Postgastric bypass surgery

Idiopathic (Functional) Postprandial Hypoglycemia

Adapted from Lteif & Schwenk (1999); Cryer et al (2009); Murad et al (2009).

http://basicbook.net

glucose utilization secondary to uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation, decreased hepatic glyconeogenesis, and increased insulin release (Marks & Teale, 1999). Beta blockers such as propranolol can cause hypoglycemia by antagonizing catecholamine-mediated glycogenolysis (Chavez et al, 1999).

Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)–sensitive potassium (K_{ATP}) channels play a major role in the regulation of insulin secretion from pancreatic beta cells. Blockage of these channels causes depolarization of the beta cell membrane, opening of voltage-dependent calcium channels, and increased influx of calcium that causes release of insulin from the beta cell and lowering of blood glucose. Gatifloxacin, a fluoroquinolone, causes hypoglycemia by blocking the ATP-sensitive potassium channels of pancreatic islet cells, leading to increased insulin release. The K_{ATP} channel consists of eight subunits (four Kir6.0 and four SUR). Saraya and colleagues (2004) showed that the Kir6.2 subunit of the pancreatic beta cell is blocked by gatifloxacin and to a lesser extent by levofloxacin and temafloxacin (Park-Wyllie et al, 2006). Gatifloxacin has been withdrawn.

Alcohol consumption can inhibit hepatic gluconeogenesis and increase glycogen phosphorylase activity, depleting hepatic glycogen stores and resulting in hypoglycemia. Alcohol-induced hypoglycemia is usually seen in the setting of a history of alcohol intake of 50 to 300 grams without food intake for the preceding 6 to greater than 36 hours. Alcohol can be detected in the blood or breath. Plasma β-hydroxybutyrate levels are elevated, and plasma insulin and C-peptide levels are low during the hypoglycemic episode (Arky, 1989; Marks & Teale, 1999).

SEVERE MEDICAL ILLNESSES

Widespread hepatic disease and severe cardiac failure can result in hypoglycemia. Pathogenic mechanisms can include impaired gluconeogenesis, hepatic congestion with decreased oxygen delivery to hepatocytes, impaired insulin degradation, and shunting of portal blood into the systemic circulation (Khoury et al, 1998). A decrease in glycogen reserves coupled with failure of gluconeogenesis and enhanced glucose utilization may be the cause of hypoglycemia in patients with severe sepsis (Miller et al, 1980). In addition, patients with very low muscle mass, such as those with spinal muscular atrophy and congenital myopathy, are at risk for hypoglycemia during prolonged fasting (23 hours), presumably related to poor availability of the gluconeogenic substrate alanine. Low plasma insulin and high plasma glucagon levels are observed during the hypoglycemia (Orngreen et al, 2003).

Hypoglycemia in end-stage renal disease (ESRD) can be related to defective gluconeogenesis, as well as impaired hepatic glycogenolysis due to poor nutritional status (Arem, 1989). Alcohol use, use of insulin or sulfonylurea drugs, sepsis, malnutrition, liver disease, and cardiac failure can increase the likelihood of hypoglycemic events in a patient with renal failure (Haviv et al, 2000). Gabapentin has been associated with hypoglycemia in a patient with ESRD on peritoneal dialysis. Plasma insulin and C-peptide levels were elevated during the hypoglycemic episode (Penumalee et al, 2003).

HORMONE DEFICIENCIES

Glucose counterregulation, mediated by glucagon, catecholamines, cortisol, and growth hormone, is important in preventing hypoglycemia. Glucagon initially stimulates glycogenolysis and later gluconeogenesis to increase plasma glucose levels. Catecholamines increase glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis, and lipolysis; decrease insulin-mediated glucose uptake; and inhibit insulin release. Both growth hormone and cortisol decrease insulin-mediated tissue glucose uptake and increase release of glucose into the circulation. A deficiency in the secretion of these counterregulatory hormones can contribute to low blood glucose levels. Hypoglycemia in adults is rarely attributable to deficiencies of glucagon or catecholamines, but poor glucagon and epinephrine responses to hypoglycemia are common in patients with long-standing diabetes mellitus and are associated with prolonged hypoglycemic episodes. Infants and children with a deficiency of cortisol and growth hormone are prone to develop hypoglycemia, especially during an acute illness. Adults with glucocorticoid or growth hormone deficiency can also develop hypoglycemia, usually after a prolonged fast (Smallridge et al, 1980; Zuker et al, 1995; Bunch et al, 2002).

NON–BETA CELL TUMORS

Non–islet cell tumor hypoglycemia (NICTH) originates from non–beta cell tumors, which cause hypoglycemia without producing insulin. Tumors of mesenchymal origin (mesothelioma, hemangiopericytoma, solitary fibrous tumors) and epithelial origin (hepatocellular, gastrointestinal stromal tumor) are commonly associated with NICTH. These tumors are associated with increased paraneoplastic production of insulin-like growth factor-II (IGF-II). Normally, IGF-II is produced by the liver and is relatively independent of growth hormone (GH) action. The primary transcription product is pre-proIGF-II. Posttranslational processing of pre-proIGF-II leads to the formation of proIGF-II that is cleaved to form IGF-II. The intermediate product proIGF-II may be secreted. Non–islet cell tumor hypoglycemia is associated with aberrant paraneoplastic production of proIGF-II, also known as "big" IGF-II (Fukuda et al, 2006; de Groot et al, 2007). It is believed that elevated levels of IGF-II increase glucose utilization and suppress endogenous glucose production (Chung & Henry, 1996; Daughaday, 1989). The diagnosis of NICTH can usually be made by the presence of fasting hypoglycemia, low insulin, proinsulin, and C-peptide levels; an elevated IGF-II–to–IGF-I ratio; and low growth hormone and β-hydroxybutyrate levels. The glucagon level is usually within the normal range despite hypoglycemia because of the suppressive effect of "big" IGF-II on glucagon secretion. Hypokalemia is frequently associated with hypoglycemia due to insulin-like activity of big IGF-II. Levels of "big" IGF-II and IGF-BP 2 (IGF binding protein 2) can be determined by immunometric assays and are usually elevated (van Doorn et al, 2002). Size-exclusion acid chromatography is considered the gold standard method for detecting "big" IGF-II in NICTH. However, this is a time-consuming procedure. Determination of "big" IGF-II by immunoblot analysis after 16.5% tricine sodium dodecyl sulfate-polyacrylamide gels is a rapid, reproducible, and sensitive method (Miraki-Moud et al, 2005). The tumor is usually detected on physical examination and is confirmed by radiologic diagnostic studies.

ENDOGENOUS HYPERINSULINISM

Hypoglycemia from endogenous insulin secretion can be due to (1) insulin-secreting beta cell tumors (insulinomas), (2) congenital hyperinsulinism (also called nesidioblastosis/islet hypertrophy or noninsulinoma pancreatogenous hypoglycemia syndrome), and (3) autoantibodies to insulin in patients who have never been treated with insulin (Hirata & Uchigata, 1994). A supervised 72-hour fast is recommended for the diagnosis of insulinoma with frequent clinical and biochemical monitoring for signs of hypoglycemia. During the hypoglycemic episode, blood is drawn for glucose, insulin, proinsulin, C-peptide, and β-hydroxybutyrate levels. Blood or urine screening tests for sulfonylurea/meglitinide drugs are also performed.

Insulinomas are the most common tumors of islet cells, with an incidence of two to four patients per million of the population per year (Oberg & Eriksson, 2005). The diagnostic criteria for an insulinoma are the presence of signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia, with plasma glucose level of 55 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L) or less; insulin level of 3 μU/mL (18 pmol/L) or greater by immunochemiluminometric assay; C-peptide concentration of 0.6 ng/mL (0.2 nmol/L) or greater; proinsulin concentration of 5.0 pmol/L or greater; β-hydroxybutyrate of 2.7 mmol/L or less; an increase in the plasma glucose concentration of at least 25 mg/dL (1.4 mmol/L) in response to a 1-mg glucagon injection given intravenously; and a negative sulfonylurea/meglitinide blood/urine screen (Cryer et al, 2009). Those patients who are found to have endogenous hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia with negative screening for oral antihyperglycemic agents and no evidence of insulin antibodies need further diagnostic tests to localize the insulinoma. These tests may include computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), as well as transabdominal and endoscopic ultrasonography (USG). Selective pancreatic arterial calcium injections with measurement of hepatic venous insulin levels can be used when conventional noninvasive means (CT, MRI, USG) have failed to localize the insulin-producing islet cell tumors (Guettier et al, 2009).

AUTOIMMUNE-RELATED HYPOGLYCEMIA

Hypoglycemia can be due to antibodies directed against endogenous insulin or the insulin receptor. Hypoglycemia associated with autoantibodies to insulin in patients who have not received insulin injections is a rare condition called the autoimmune insulin syndrome (AIS). Individuals with autoimmune diseases or recent ingestion of sulfhydryl-containing medications (i.e., methimazole, penicillamine, captopril, imipenem, hydralazine, procainamide, isoniazid, penicillin G) are at increased risk for AIS. These patients commonly experience episodes of postprandial hypoglycemia. In some patients, fasting hypoglycemia, as well as hypoglycemia precipitated by increased physical activity, has been reported. Excessive amounts of insulin secreted after a meal are bound to

http://basicbook.net

antibodies, and as a result, insulin becomes unavailable to target tissues. Hours later, insulin dissociates from the antibodies, resulting in hyperinsulinemia and hypoglycemia. Insulin levels are extremely elevated and distinctly higher than in insulinoma. C-peptide levels are incompletely suppressed, and a high insulin–to–C-peptide molar ratio is present. Serum insulin antibodies are elevated (Hirata & Uchigata, 1994; Dozio et al, 1998; Lidar et al, 1999; Cavaco et al, 2001; Vogeser et al, 2001; Yaturu et al, 2004; Lupsa et al, 2009).

Antibodies directed against the insulin receptor can cause hypoglycemia or hyperglycemia with extreme insulin resistance (type B insulin resistance). Type B insulin resistance is a rare condition that occurs in the third to fifth decades of life. It is more common in women and in persons of African heritage. Hyperglycemia may be the initial metabolic derangement in 80% of these patients; however, 20% may present with hypoglycemia. Hypoglycemia may develop some time later in 14% of patients who initially present with hyperglycemia (Fareau et al, 2007). Other autoimmune diseases, such as systemic lupus erythematosus and Hashimoto's thyroiditis, may also be present in these patients (Bao et al, 2007; Kato et al, 2008; Qing et al, 2009). In this condition, insulin receptor antibodies block insulin from attaching to the insulin receptor. In some patients, hyperglycemia is due to receptor degradation or downregulation, leading to insulin resistance. Hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia sometimes can be seen in the same patient. Plasma glucose, β-hydroxybutyrate, and proinsulin levels are low, and insulin and the insulin–to–C-peptide ratio are inappropriately high. Insulin receptor antibodies can be detected by immunoprecipitation assays (Taylor et al, 1989; Redmon & Nuttall, 1999). Mutations in the insulin receptor gene are another rare cause of hypoglycemia.

HYPOGLYCEMIA IN INFANCY AND CHILDHOOD

Endocrine adaptive responses at birth help ensure neonatal nutrition. These include a decrease in insulin levels and an increase in glucagon and catecholamine levels. Glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis, lipolysis, and beta-oxidation of fatty acids occur during this period of metabolic transition in early neonates. Blood glucose concentrations are usually lower than those observed in older infants and children. However, because of increased production and use of alternative fuels such as lactate and ketone bodies and differences in functional and metabolic requirements of the neonatal brain, this "transitional hypoglycemia" is not associated with adverse effects. Hypoglycemia can be detrimental during the neonatal phase if the production of alternate fuels is impaired. Neonatal hyperinsulinism seen in infants of women with poorly controlled diabetes mellitus increases the risk of hypoglycemia during the few days after birth. A blunted glucagon surge (possibly mediated by intravenous glucose or formula feeds) or insufficient catecholamine release (due to maternal beta-blocker medication use) can lead to hypoglycemia, requiring treatment (Hawdon, 2008). Other possible causes of hypoglycemia in infants include pituitary and adrenal disorders. Ketogenic hypoglycemia can be seen in children between 18 months and 5 years of age. Alanine, a gluconeogenic substrate, is found to be low in these patients. Usually, an episode of illness or prolonged fasting is associated with the hypoglycemia (Haymond & Pagliara, 1983).

CONGENITAL HYPERINSULINISM

Congenital hyperinsulinism (CHI) is associated with inappropriate secretion of insulin in relation to blood glucose concentration, leading to hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia (HH). Genetic mutations in beta cells have been identified that result in dysregulated insulin release. Mutations in ATP-binding cassette, subfamily C, member 8; potassium inwardly rectifying channel, subfamily J, member 11; glutamate dehydrogenase; glucokinase; hydroxyacyl–coenzyme A dehydrogenase; solute carrier family 16, member 1; and hepatocyte nuclear factor 4 alpha have been linked to HH seen in CHI. Hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia is characterized by a low blood glucose level with inappropriate insulin and C-peptide concentrations (Hussain, 2008; Kapoor et al, 2009).

The enzyme glucokinase (GCK) functions as a glucose sensor in the pancreatic beta cell and mediates glucose-stimulated insulin secretion. Activating mutations of GCK are inherited in an autosomal dominant manner and have been associated with familial hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia. The hypoglycemia is usually mild (as compared with the autosomal recessive form) and is not limited to infancy. De novo mutations in the GCK gene resulting in hypoglycemia have also been described. In the hyperinsulinism hyperammonia syndrome, hypoglycemia is caused by an activating mutation of the glutamate dehydrogenase gene *(GLUD1)* located on chromosome 10. It is an autosomal dominant disorder characterized by hypoglycemia and elevated ammonia levels (three to eight times normal). Less severe hypoglycemia has been reported in sporadic cases (Stanley et al, 1998; Straub et al, 2001; Sunehag & Haymond, 2002; Cuesta-Munoz et al, 2004). Hypoglycemia and lactic acidosis have been described in a child with mutation in a subunit of the mitochondrial respiratory chain complex III (Haut et al, 2003). In addition, mutations in enzymes involved in mitochondrial fatty acid oxidation can cause hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia (Molven et al, 2004). Elevated plasma levels of hydroxybutyrylcarnitine and urinary 3-hydroxyglutarate are seen in hydroxyacyl–coenzyme A dehydrogenase (HADH) deficiency (Clayton et al, 2001).

The noninsulinoma pancreatogenous hypoglycemia syndrome reported in adults is not associated with mutations in the *SUR1* or *Kir6.2* gene. These patients usually present with postprandial hypoglycemia. Serum insulin and C-peptide levels are elevated, and the drug screen for sulfonylureas and meglitinides is negative (Service et al, 1999).

ALIMENTARY HYPOGLYCEMIA

Alimentary (reactive) hypoglycemia occurs usually within 4 hours after eating a meal. The oral glucose tolerance test is unreliable in diagnosing this condition. Individuals who have had gastric surgery are at risk. The dumping syndrome is characterized by vasomotor symptoms such as sweating, dizziness, and weakness, which usually occur less than an hour after ingestion of a meal. Hypoglycemia is not a characteristic of early dumping syndrome.

Hypoglycemia has been reported in patients who have undergone bariatric surgery for obesity (Service et al, 2005). Hypoglycemia in the setting of gastric bypass surgery may be caused by elevations in peptides such as GLP-1 that can cause endogenous hyperinsulinemia (Gebhard et al, 2001). These patients usually have a history of "spells" of postprandial hypoglycemia that fulfill Whipple's triad. An insulin level of greater than 3.0 μU/mL (18 pmol/L), with C-peptide of greater than 0.6 ng/mL (0.2 nmol/L) in the presence of plasma glucose of less than 55 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L) and negative sulfonylurea/meglinitide screen with normal adrenal, pituitary, and thyroid functions is important for diagnosis. Imaging studies are negative for pancreatic tumor.

Some individuals without gastrointestinal pathology report spontaneous symptoms suggestive of hypoglycemia 1 to 4 hours after intake of carbohydrate-rich meals but have a normal laboratory evaluation. These patients are believed to have idiopathic reactive hypoglycemia. The oral glucose tolerance test is also not useful for the diagnosis of this condition (Lefebvre et al, 1988). Increased insulin sensitivity has been seen in some patients exhibiting features of postprandial hypoglycemia (Tamburrano et al, 1989). Contributing factors may also include delayed release of insulin in response to a meal and concomitant alcohol ingestion (Flanagan et al, 1998).

INBORN ERRORS OF CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM

Normal plasma glucose levels are maintained by absorption of glucose from the diet, synthesis of glucose during gluconeogenesis, and the release of glucose from glycogen, the principal storage form of glucose. Glycogen storage diseases or glycogenoses result from defects in glycogen metabolism. These diseases are the consequence of inherited deficiencies of enzymes that control the synthesis or breakdown of glycogen. Abnormal quality or quantity of glycogen is found in these disorders. Liver and muscle are most commonly affected by defects in glycogen metabolism, because these tissues have abundant quantities of glycogen. Glycogen storage diseases that primarily affect the liver (hepatic glycogenoses) usually manifest with hypoglycemia and hepatomegaly. Muscle cramps, exercise intolerance, fatigue, and weakness are common complaints in glycogen storage diseases affecting muscles (muscle glycogenoses). Glycogen storage disease types I (glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency), III (debrancher deficiency), IV (brancher deficiency), VI (liver phosphorylase deficiency), IX (phosphorylase kinase deficiency), and 0 (glycogen synthase deficiency) and glucose transporter-2 (GLUT-2) deficiency mainly affect the liver. Diagnostic testing can include examination of liver and/or muscle biopsies and genetic testing. Table 16-6 shows the various characteristics of hepatic glycogenoses (Wolfsdorf et al, 1999; Chen, 2001). Muscle glycogenoses or glycogen storage diseases affecting the muscles (Table 16-7) include type V (muscle phosphorylase deficiency), type VII (muscle phosphofructokinase deficiency), and glycogen storage diseases secondary to defects in phosphoglycerate kinase, phosphoglycerate mutase, lactate dehydrogenase, fructose 1,6-biphosphate aldolase A, pyruvate kinase,

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 16-6
Hepatic Glycogenoses

Type (GSD)	Defect	Clinical Features	Laboratory Findings	Treatment	Genetics
Ia/von Gierke disease	Glucose-6-phosphatase	• Thin extremities, short stature, protuberant abdomen, skin xanthomas, retinal changes, hepatomegaly, hypoglycemic seizures, growth retardation • Long-term complications: Growth failure, pulmonary hypertension, osteoporosis, renal disease, hepatic adenomas that can result in hepatocellular carcinoma (Franco et al, 2005)	• Hypoglycemia, lactic acidosis, hyperuricemia, dyslipidemia • Diagnosis: Liver biopsy to demonstrate glucose-6-phosphatase activity in both intact and fully disrupted microsomes • Targeted gene-based mutation analysis: Noninvasive method of diagnosis for most patients	• High complex carbohydrate feeds during the day, total parenteral nutrition, nocturnal nasogastric or gastrostomy tube infusion of glucose at night, uncooked starch • Restrict fructose and galactose • Treatment of other manifestations as and when indicated (e.g., gout, dyslipidemia) • Liver transplantation may be considered in patients who do not respond to dietary therapy or in those who develop hepatic adenomas (Faivre et al, 1999).	Autosomal recessive
Ib	Glucose-6-phosphatase translocase	• As for Ia, plus recurrent bacterial infections	• As for Ia, plus neutropenia and inflammatory bowel disease	• As for Ia, plus granulocyte and granulocyte/macrophage colony-stimulating factor for neutropenia	Autosomal recessive
IIIa (also called "Cori" or Forbes' disease)	Glycogen debranching enzyme (in both liver and muscle)	• Childhood: Hepatomegaly, hypoglycemia, growth retardation • Adult: Muscle atrophy, weakness, cardiomyopathy	• Childhood: Dyslipidemia, hypoglycemia, ↑ hepatic transaminases, fasting ketosis, normal lactate, and uric acid • Adult: EMG shows myopathy • Diagnosis: Demonstration of abnormal glycogen and abnormal enzyme activity on liver and muscle biopsy • Gene-based mutation analysis is a noninvasive method of diagnosis.	• Childhood: Same as Ia, plus high-protein diet. No dietary restriction of fructose and galactose • Adult: No effective treatment of myopathy	Autosomal recessive
IIIb	Glycogen debranching enzyme in liver (normal muscle debranching enzyme)	• Same as in IIIa, with no muscle symptoms	• Same as in IIIa, with no muscle findings	• Same as in IIIa	Autosomal recessive

IV (also called Anderson's disease, amylopectinosis)	Glycogen branching enzyme	• Hepatosplenomegaly, failure to thrive, liver cirrhosis, portal hypertension, ascites, esophageal varices, and fatal by 5 years of age Hypoglycemia rare but may occur in liver cirrhosis
		• Neuromuscular form:
		  • Neonate: Hypotonia, muscle atrophy
		  • Childhood: Myopathy or cardiomyopathy
		  • Adulthood: Diffuse central and peripheral nervous system dysfunction (adult polyglucosan body disease)
			• Tissue deposition of amylopectin-like material
			• Deficiency of branching enzyme in liver
			• Adult polyglucosan body disease: Deficient branching enzyme in leukocytes or nerve biopsy
				• No specific treatment
				• Maintenance of normoglycemia
				• Liver transplantation in selected cases
					Autosomal recessive

VI (also called Hers disease)	Glycogen phosphorylase (in liver)	• Hepatomegaly, growth retardation in early childhood, benign course • Hepatomegaly improves with age.	• Mild hypoglycemia, dyslipidemia, ketosis • Normal uric acid and lactic acid • Diagnosis: Abnormal enzyme activity in biopsy of affected tissues • Molecular genetic testing: *PYGL* is the only gene associated with GSD VI and can be detected by sequence analysis.	• High-carbohydrate diet, frequent feedings • No specific treatment in most patients	Autosomal recessive

Continued

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 16-6
Hepatic Glycogenoses—cont'd

Type (GSD)	Defect	Clinical Features	Laboratory Findings	Treatment	Genetics
IXa	Phosphorylase kinase (in liver)	• Hepatomegaly, protuberant abdomen, growth retardation, delay in motor development	• Mild dyslipidemia, mildly elevated liver transaminases, fasting ketosis, mild hypoglycemia • Diagnosis: Abnormal enzyme activity in biopsy of affected tissues	• High-carbohydrate diet, frequent feeds • Course usually benign	X-linked
IXb	Phosphorylase deficiency (in liver and muscle)	• Hepatomegaly, growth retardation, muscle hypotonia (in some patients)	Same as in IXa	Same as in IXa	Autosomal recessive
0	Glycogen synthase	• Hypoglycemic symptoms in morning; no hepatomegaly • Mild growth delay (in few cases)	• Fasting hypoglycemia, hyperketonemia • Hyperglycemia and elevated lactate level after meals • Diagnosis: Mutation analysis of the hepatic glycogen synthase gene	• Uncooked starch feeding during night • Frequent feedings during day with high protein content	Autosomal recessive
XI (also called Fanconi-Bickel syndrome)	GLUT 2	• Protuberant abdomen due to hepatomegaly and renomegaly, rickets, failure to thrive	• Glucosuria, phosphaturia, aminoaciduria, bicarbonate wasting, hypophosphatemia, elevated alkaline phosphatase level • Mild fasting hypoglycemia and dyslipidemia • Rickets on radiologic studies	• No specific therapy • Symptomatic replacement of water, electrolytes, vitamin D • Restriction of galactose • Frequent small meals with corn starch supplement	Autosomal recessive

Adapted from Wolfsdorf et al (1999); Chen (2001); Weinstein & Wolfsdorf (2002).
GSD, Glycogen storage disease.

muscle phosphorylase kinase, lysosomal acid alpha-glucosidase (type II, Pompe disease), and cardiac-specific phosphorylase kinase (Tsujino et al, 2000; Chen, 2001; Weinstein & Wolfsdorf, 2002).

DEFECTS IN GALACTOSE METABOLISM

Galactose is a monosaccharide constituent, together with glucose, of the disaccharide lactose. Milk and milk products are the main sources of galactose. Enzymatic defects of galactokinase, galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase, and uridine diphosphate galactose-4-epimerase result in the defective metabolism and accumulation of galactose and its metabolites, causing galactosemia (Holton et al, 2001).

Galactosemia with Uridyl Transferase Deficiency

Galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase (GALT) deficiency (classic galactosemia) has an autosomal recessive mode of inheritance. The most common mutation of the *GALT* gene is the *Q188R* mutation on chromosome 9. GALT deficiency presents early in infancy with symptoms of hypoglycemia, vomiting, diarrhea, irritability, feeding difficulties, and failure to thrive. These infants may have jaundice, hepatomegaly, and easy bruisability. Initial diagnostic tests may reveal hyperbilirubinemia, elevated liver transaminases, metabolic acidosis, galactosuria, glycosuria, hypoglycemia, and abnormal clotting measurements. These patients are at risk of developing cerebral edema. Vitreous hemorrhage and *Escherichia coli* sepsis have also been reported in affected individuals. Long-term complications in GALT deficiency include impaired cognition, ovarian failure in females, and ataxic neurologic disease. Microbiologic and fluorometric assays are used in the screening of the newborn to detect galactosemia. A fluorescent spot screening test for GALT activity (Beutler test) is available. An abnormal test is followed by biochemical or molecular confirmation of the diagnosis. The quantitative assays can give false-negative results after blood transfusion. A milder form of galactosemia known as the "Duarte variant" is also caused by a mutation within the *GALT* gene and is characterized by decreased red cell enzyme activity, which generally is of no clinical significance. Treatment of GALT deficiency consists of restriction of galactose in the diet (Holton et al, 2001; Leslie, 2003).

Galactokinase Deficiency

In galactokinase (GALK) deficiency, galactose cannot be converted into galactose-1-phosphate, and this leads to cataract formation. Pseudotumor cerebri is another rare complication observed in this disorder. The diagnosis is made by demonstrating an elevated blood galactose level with normal uridyl transferase activity and absence of galactokinase activity in erythrocytes. A galactose-free diet can reverse cataracts if started in early infancy (Holton et al, 2001; Bosch et al, 2002).

Uridine Diphosphate Galactose-4-Epimerase Deficiency

The benign form is associated with enzyme deficiency limited to erythrocytes and leukocytes. These affected individuals are healthy, and no treatment is required. In the severe form, clinical findings are similar to those seen in GALT deficiency, with additional findings of hypotonia and sensorineural deafness. Treatment consists of dietary restriction of galactose (Walter et al, 1999; Holton et al, 2001).

DEFECTS IN FRUCTOSE METABOLISM

Essential fructosuria, hereditary fructose intolerance, and fructose-1,6-diphosphatase deficiency are the clinical conditions resulting from defects in fructose metabolism.

Essential Fructosuria

This autosomal recessive disorder results from fructokinase deficiency. Fructokinase catalyzes the conversion of fructose to fructose-1-phosphate. The condition is asymptomatic and usually is diagnosed incidentally by the detection of fructose in urine as a reducing substance. No treatment is necessary.

Hereditary Fructose Intolerance

A defect of fructose-1,6-biphosphate aldolase B activity in the liver, kidney, and intestine results in failure of conversion of fructose-1-phosphate and fructose-1,6-biphosphate into dihydroxyacetone phosphate, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate, and glyceraldehydes. Fructose intake leads to accumulation of fructose-1-phosphate and causes symptoms of hypoglycemia and nausea, followed by vomiting. Symptoms occur only when fructose-containing foods are ingested. Prolonged exposure to fructose-containing foods can cause frequent hypoglycemic episodes, hepatomegaly, irritability, lethargy, seizures, and proximal tubular dysfunction. Hepatic dysfunction can result in prolonged clotting time, elevated transaminases with elevated bilirubin levels, and hypoalbuminemia. The diagnosis is supported by clinical suspicion followed by an intravenous fructose tolerance test. Definitive diagnosis can be made by assay of aldolase B activity in a liver biopsy specimen.

Fructose-1,6-Biphosphatase Deficiency

This autosomal recessive defect in fructose-1,6-biphosphatase results in failure of hepatic glucose generation by gluconeogenic precursors such as

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 16-7
Muscle Glycogenoses

Type	Defect	Clinical Features	Laboratory Findings	Treatment
V (McArdle disease)	Muscle phosphorylase	• Exercise intolerance, muscle cramps • Dark red urine after intense exercise • Usually presents in 2nd or 3rd decade	• Myoglobinuria, ↑ creatinine kinase at rest and increases after exercise, ↑ ammonia and ↑ uric acid with exercise • Diagnosis: enzymatic evaluation of muscle or mutation analysis	• ↑ Exercise tolerance by aerobic training, or by ingestion of sucrose, glucose, or fructose immediately prior to exercise. Low-dose creatine supplementation (Quinlivan et al, 2008)
VII (Tarui disease)	Phosphofructokinase	• Same as in type V plus: • Severe exercise intolerance or myopathy in childhood, compensated hemolytic anemia, more hyperuricemia than type V, acute exercise intolerance post carbohydrate-rich meals	• ↑ Creatine kinase and ↑ bilirubin, reticulocytosis, hyperuricemia • Diagnosis: biochemical or histochemical demonstration of enzyme defect	• Avoid strenuous exercise for prevention of muscle cramps and myoglobinuria.
Phosphoglycerate kinase deficiency	Phosphoglycerate kinase	• Same as in type V plus hemolytic anemia, CNS dysfunction, and/or myopathy	• ↑ Creatine kinase (not always) • Abnormal enzyme assays in muscles	Same as in type VII
Phosphoglycerate mutase deficiency	Phosphoglycerate mutase M subunit	Same as in type V	↑ Serum creatine kinase level	Same as type VII
LD deficiency	Lactic acid dehydrogenase M subunit	Same as in type V plus erythematous rash, difficulties in childbirth (uterine stiffness)	↑ Creatine kinase level (not always)	Same as type VII
Fructose-1,6-biphosphate aldolase A deficiency	Fructose-1,6-biphosphate aldolase A	Same as type V plus muscle weakness, hemolytic anemia	↑ Creatine kinase (not always)	Same as type VII
Pyruvate kinase deficiency	Pyruvate kinase muscle isozyme	Muscle cramps, fixed muscle weakness	↑ Creatine kinase (not always)	Same as type VII
Muscle phosphorylase kinase deficiency	Muscle phosphorylase kinase (muscle specific)	Same as type V plus muscle weakness and atrophy	↑ Creatine kinase (not always)	Same as type VII
II/Pompe disease	Lysosomal acid alpha glucosidase (GAA) (acid maltase)	• Infant: Muscle weakness, feeding problems, macroglossia, hepatomegaly, cardiomyopathy • Late childhood: Proximal muscle weakness, swallowing difficulties, respiratory muscle weakness • Adult: Proximal muscle weakness with pelvic girdle, paraspinal and diaphragm muscles affected seriously	• ↑ Creatine kinase, ↑ aspartate transaminase, LD • Diagnosis: decreased or absent acid alpha-glucosidase (GAA) activity in muscle or cultured skin fibroblasts • Molecular genetic testing: GAA is the only gene associated with GSD11 and can be detected by sequence analysis or deletion/duplication analysis (Montalvo et al, 2006; Pittis et al, 2008).	• Infant: Enzyme replacement therapy with Myozyme (alglucosidase alfa) by slow intravenous infusion every 2 weeks should be initiated as soon as the diagnosis is established (Kishnani et al, 2007). • Late childhood and adult: High-protein diet • Ventilatory support

Adapted from Tsujino et al (2000); Chen (2001).
LD, Lactate dehydrogenase.

lactate, glycerol, and alanine. Life-threatening episodes of hypoglycemia, hyperventilation, lactic acidosis, convulsions, and coma can be seen in affected patients. The diagnosis is established by demonstrating enzyme deficiency in a liver or intestinal biopsy specimen. Correction of hypoglycemia and acidosis by intravenous fluids is the treatment of choice during acute attacks. Prolonged fasting can cause symptoms in affected individuals if glycogen stores are depleted. Fructose and sucrose need to be limited in the diet (Steinman et al, 2001).

LACTIC ACIDOSIS

Lactic acid is a product of pyruvic acid metabolism. Approximately 1400 mmol of lactic acid is produced daily in healthy individuals, most of which is derived from glucose via the glycolytic pathway and deamination of alanine (Kreisberg, 1980; Marko et al, 2004). This enormous amount of lactic acid is eliminated by several mechanisms, including buffering by extracellular buffers and removal by the liver and kidneys. Under normal circumstances, the rates of lactate entry and exit from the blood are in equilibrium, and net lactate accumulation is zero. Excessive accumulation of L-lactic acid is caused by overproduction and/or underutilization of L-lactate (the levorotary form of lactic acid).

Selected causes of lactic acidosis are shown in Box 16-3. Lactic acid production increases during ischemia, seizures, vigorous exercise, and some leukemic conditions. High levels of lactic acid produced during strenuous exercise are rapidly cleared by both renal and hepatic mechanisms, as well as by aerobic metabolism in muscle (half-life approximately 60 minutes). A decrease in lactic acid utilization can also lead to accumulation of lactic acid. This is generally seen in diseases of the liver and kidneys. Defects in the removal of lactic acid have been associated with hepatic insufficiency, specific enzymatic defects, and severe acidosis. Metformin, which is widely prescribed for the treatment of type 2 diabetes, rarely causes lactic acidosis. Risk factors for metformin-related lactic acidosis include congestive heart failure, tissue hypoxia, renal insufficiency, and sepsis (Salpeter et al, 2003; Misbin, 2004). Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors used in the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus infection can also induce lactic acidosis (John & Mallal, 2002; Ogedegbe et al, 2003).

Lactic acidosis is diagnosed by the presence of high blood lactate levels (>45 mg/dL or >5.0 mmol/L), an elevated anion gap, and a low blood pH (<7.35). For accurate measurements of lactate, tourniquet use should be minimal, and the patient should not clench his or her fist at the time of the blood draw. A gray-top tube containing fluoride oxalate should be used for sample collection, because it blocks further glycolysis.

Treatment of lactic acidosis consists of correction of underlying conditions that initiated the disruption in normal lactate metabolism. Tissue oxygenation, improved fluid status, amplification of cardiac status, and

http://basicbook.net

BOX 16-3

Selected Causes of L-Lactic Acidosis

Tissue Hypoxia
Septic shock
Cardiogenic shock
Hemorrhagic shock
Acute hypoxemia
Carbon monoxide poisoning

Metabolic/Medical Conditions
Uncontrolled diabetes mellitus
Hepatic insufficiency
Renal insufficiency

Tumors
Leukemia
Lymphoma

Drugs/Toxic Substances
Zidovudine
Metformin
Ethanol
Salicylates
Isoniazid
Cyanide
Methanol
Ethylene glycol

Inborn Errors of Metabolism
Type 1a glycogen storage disease (von Gierke disease)
Fructose-1,6-biphosphatase deficiency
Pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency
Organic acidurias: Propionic acidemia, methylmalonic acidemia

Mitochondrial Diseases
KSS (Kearns-Sayre syndrome)
PEO (progressive external ophthalmoplegia)
PS (Pearson's syndrome)
MERRF (myoclonic epilepsy with ragged-red fibers)
MELAS (mitochondrial encephalopathy, lactic acidosis, and stroke-like episodes)
MILS (maternally inherited Leigh's syndrome)

treatment of sepsis play important roles in the treatment of lactic acidosis. Dialysis is sometimes necessary for removal of lactate. D-Lactic acidosis results from excessive accumulation of D-lactic acid (the dextrorotary form of lactic acid). It has been described in patients with jejunoileal bypass or small bowel resection. In these conditions, glucose and other carbohydrates are converted into D-lactic acid in the colon by bacteria. The D-lactic acid is absorbed into the systemic circulation and is slowly metabolized. Affected patients present with episodes of metabolic acidosis and encephalopathy. D-Lactate levels can be measured using D-lactate dehydrogenase enzymatic assays (Luft & Schwenk, 2001; Zhang et al, 2003).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

American Diabetes Association: Glycemic targets 2015, *Diabetes Care* 38(Suppl 1):S33–S40, 2015.

American Diabetes Association: Standards of medical care in patients with diabetes 2014, *Diabetes Care* 37(Suppl 1):S14–S80, 2014.
Summarizes the criteria for the classification and diagnosis of diabetes, and provides recommendations for assessment of glycemic control, management goals, and strategies to prevent complications.

Bingley PJ, Bonifacio E, Mueller PW, and participating laboratories: Diabetes Antibody Standardization Program: First assay proficiency evaluation, *Diabetes* 52:1128–1136, 2003; and Lampasona V, Schlosser M, Mueller PW, et al: Diabetes Antibody Standardization Program: First proficiency evaluation of assays for autoantibodies to zinc transporter 8. First assay proficiency evaluation. *Clin Chem* 57:1693–1702, 2011.
A report of the first proficiency evaluation of the Diabetes Antibody Standardization Program, which includes information concerning the performance of different assays for GAD, IA-2, and insulin autoantibodies, and a report of the first proficiency evaluation of ZnT8 antibodies.

Chiang JL, Kirkman MS, Laffel LM, et al: Type 1 diabetes through the life span: A position statement of the American Diabetes Association, *Diabetes Care* 37(7):2034–2054, 2014.
Provides age-stratified recommendations for glycemic goals and management.

Cryer PE, Axelrod L, Grossman AB, et al: Evaluation and management of adult hypoglycemic disorders: An Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 94:709–728, 2009.
Reviews hypoglycemic disorders, with detailed clinical classification and a description of diagnostic testing, including a protocol for performing the 72-hour fast, mixed meal diagnostic tests, and management strategies.

Handelsman Y, Bloomgarden Z, Grunberger G, et al, and American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology: Clinical practice guidelines for developing a diabetes mellitus comprehensive care plan—2015, *Endocr Pract* 21(Suppl 1):1–87, 2015.
Describes the diabetes monitoring and management guidelines endorsed by the American College of Endocrinology.

Little RR, Rohlfing CL, Sacks DB, et al: Status of hemoglobin A1c measurement and goals for improvement: From chaos to order for improving diabetes care, *Clin Chem* 57(2):205–214, 2011.
Summarizes the National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program and progress in standardization nationally and internationally.

Sacks DB, Arnold M, Bakris GL, et al: Guidelines and recommendations for laboratory analysis in the diagnosis and management of diabetes mellitus, *Diabetes Care* 34:e61–e99, 2011.
Provides recommendations for laboratory testing in diabetes.

Sosenko JM, Skyler JS, Mahon J, et al: Use of the Diabetes Prevention Trial—Type 1 Risk Score (DPTRS) for improving the accuracy of the risk classification of type 1 diabetes, *Diabetes Care* 37(4):979–984, 2014.

Sosenko JM1, Skyler JS, Palmer JP, et al: The prediction of type 1 diabetes by multiple autoantibody levels and their incorporation into an autoantibody risk score in relatives of type 1 diabetic patients, *Diabetes Care* 36(9):2615–2620, 2013.
Review the use of pancreatic autoantibodies and other factors in the prediction of type 1 diabetes.

Weinstein DA, Wolfsdorf JI: Glycogen storage diseases: A primer for clinicians, *Endocrinologist* 12:531–538, 2002.
Reviews in detail the major glycogen storage diseases.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

American Diabetes Association: Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus, *Diabetes Care* 33(Suppl 1):S62–S69, 2010.

Arem R: Hypoglycemia associated with renal failure, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 18(1):103–121, 1989.

Arky RA: Hypoglycemia associated with liver disease and ethanol, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 18(1):75–90, 1989.

Assan R, Perronne C, Assan D, et al: Pentamidine-induced derangements of glucose homeostasis. Determinant roles of renal failure and drug accumulation: A study of 128 patients, *Diabetes Care* 18(1):47–55, 1995.

Bao S, Root C, Jagasia S: Type B insulin resistance syndrome associated with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Endocr Pract* 13(1):51–55, 2007.

Bellows C, Haque S, Jaffe B: Pancreatic polypeptide islet cell tumor: Case report and review of the literature, *J Gastrointest Surg* 2(6):526–532, 1998.

Bergenstal RM, Klonoff DC, Garg SK, et al: Threshold-based insulin-pump interruption for reduction of hypoglycemia, *N Engl J Med* 369(3):224–232, 2013.

Besser RE, Ludvigsson J, Jones AG, et al: Urine C-peptide creatinine ratio is a noninvasive alternative to the mixed-meal tolerance test in children and adults with type 1 diabetes, *Diabetes Care* 34(3):607–609, 2011.

Blaikie TPJ, Edge JA, Hancock G, et al: Comparison of breath gases, including acetone, with blood glucose and blood ketones in children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes, *J Breath Res* 8(4):046010, 2014.

Bosch AM, Bakker HD, van Gennip AH, et al: Clinical features of galactokinase deficiency: A review of the literature, *J Inherit Metab Dis* 25(8):629–634, 2002.

Bouchard P, Sai P, Reach G, et al: Diabetes mellitus following pentamidine-induced hypoglycemia in humans, *Diabetes* 31(1):40–45, 1982.

Bunch TJ, Dunn WF, Basu A, et al: Hyponatremia and hypoglycemia in acute Sheehan's syndrome, *Gynecol Endocrinol* 16(5):419–423, 2002.

Cavaco B, Uchigata Y, Porto T, et al: Hypoglycaemia due to insulin autoimmune syndrome: Report of two cases with characterization of HLA alleles and insulin autoantibodies, *Eur J Endocrinol* 145(3):311–316, 2001.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National Diabetes Statistics Report, 2014. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pubs/statsreport14.htm. Accessed on June 20, 2014.

Ceriello A, Guigliano D, Quatraro A, et al: Vitamin E reduction of protein glycosylation in diabetes. New prospect for prevention of diabetes complications?, *Diabetes Care* 14:68–72, 1991.

Chan AY, Swaminathan R, Cockram CS: Effectiveness of sodium fluoride as a preservation of glucose in blood, *Clin Chem* 35:315–317, 1989.

Chavez H, Ozolins D, Losek JD: Hypoglycemia and propranolol in pediatric behavioral disorders, *Pediatrics* 103(6):1290–1292, 1999.

Chen YT: Glycogen storage diseases. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WS, et al, editors: *The metabolic and molecular bases of inherited disease*, ed 8, New York, 2001, McGraw-Hill, pp 1521–1551.

Cheyne EH, Cavan DA, Kerr D: Performance of a continuous glucose monitoring system during controlled hypoglycaemia in healthy volunteers, *Diabetes Technolo Ther* 4(5):607–613, 2002.

Chung J, Henry RR: Mechanisms of tumor-induced hypoglycemia with intraabdominal hemangiopericytoma, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 81(3):919–925, 1996.

Clayton PT, Eaton S, Aynsley-Green A, et al: Hyperinsulinism in short-chain L-3-hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency reveals the importance of beta-oxidation in insulin secretion, *J Clin Invest* 108: 457–465, 2001.

Consensus Committee: Consensus statement on the worldwide standardization of the HbA_{1c} measurement, *Diabetes Care* 30:2399–2400, 2007.

Cosson E, Valensi P, Carbillon L: Screening for dysglycaemia during pregnancy: Proposals conciliating International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Group (IADPSG) and US National Institutes of Health (NIH) panels, *Diabetes Metab* 2014. pii: S1262-3636(14)00133-5 doi: 10.1016/j.diabet.2014.08.001. [Epub ahead of print].

Cryer PE: Hypoglycemia, functional brain failure, and brain death, *J Clin Invest* 117:868–870, 2007.

Cuesta-Munoz AL, Huopio H, Otonkoski T, et al: Severe persistent hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia due to a de novo glucokinase mutation, *Diabetes* 53(8): 2164–2168, 2004.

Daughaday WH: Hypoglycemia in patients with non-islet cell tumors, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 18(1): 91–101, 1989.

Davie SJ, Gould BJ, Yudkin JS: Effect of vitamin C on glycosylation of proteins, *Diabetes* 41:167–173, 1992.

de Groot JW, Rikhof B, van Doorn J, et al: Non-islet cell tumour-induced hypoglycaemia: A review of the literature including two new cases, *Endocr Relat Cancer* 14(4):979–993, 2007.

Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group: The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *N Engl J Med* 329:977–986, 1993.

Dozio N, Scavini M, Beretta A, et al: Imaging of the buffering effect of insulin antibodies in the autoimmune hypoglycemic syndrome, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83(2):643–648, 1998.

Drucker DJ: Incretin action in the pancreas: potential promise, possible perils, and pathological pitfalls, *Diabetes* 62:3316–3323, 2013.

Eisenbarth GS: Insulin autoimmunity: Immunogenetics/immunopathogenesis of type 1A diabetes, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1005:109–118, 2003.

Faivre L, Houssin D, Valayer J, et al: Long-term outcome of liver transplantation in patients with glycogen storage disease type Ia, *J Inherit Metab Dis* 22:723–732, 1999.

Fareau GG, Maldonado M, Oral E, et al: Regression of acanthosis nigricans correlates with disappearance of anti-insulin receptor autoantibodies and achievement of euglycemia in type B insulin resistance syndrome, *Metabolism* 56(5):670–675, 2007.

Flanagan D, Wood P, Sherwin R, et al: Gin and tonic and reactive hypoglycemia: What is important—the gin, the tonic, or both?, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83(3): 796–800, 1998.

Ford ES, Li C, Zhao G: Prevalence and correlates of metabolic syndrome based on a harmonious definition among adults in the U.S., *J Diabetes* 2(3):180–193, 2010.

Franco LM, Krishnamurthy V, Bali D, et al: Hepatocellular carcinoma in glycogen storage disease type Ia: A case series, *J Inherit Metab Dis* 28:153–162, 2005.

Freckmann G, Schmid C, Baumstark A, et al: System accuracy evaluation of 43 blood glucose monitoring systems for self-monitoring of blood glucose according to DIN EN ISO 15197, *J Diabetes Sci Technol* 6:1060–1075, 2012.

Fukuda I, Hizuka N, Ishikawa Y, et al: Clinical features of insulin-like growth factor-II producing non-islet-cell tumor hypoglycemia, *Growth Horm IGF Res* 16:211–216, 2006.

Gebhard B, Holst JJ, Biegelmayer C, et al: Postprandial GLP-1 norepinephrine, and reactive hypoglycemia in dumping syndrome, *Dig Dis Sci* 46(9):1915–1923, 2001.

Greenbaum CJ, Mandrup-Poulsen T, McGee PF, et al: Mixed-meal tolerance test versus glucagon stimulation test for the assessment of beta-cell function in therapeutic trials in type 1 diabetes, *Diabetes Care* 31(10):1966–1971, 2008.

Gregg EW, Li Y, Wang J, et al: Changes in diabetes related complications in the United States, 1990-2010, *N Engl J Med* 370:1514–1523, 2014.

Guettier JM, Gordon P: Hypoglycemia, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 35(4):753–766, 2006.

Guettier JM, Kam A, Chang R, et al: Localization of insulinomas to regions of the pancreas by intra-arterial calcium stimulation: The NIH experience, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 94(4):1074–1080, 2009.

Haut S, Brivet M, Touati G, et al: A deletion in the human QP-C gene causes a complex III deficiency resulting in hypoglycaemia and lactic acidosis, *Hum Genet* 113:118–122, 2003.

Haviv YS, Sharkia M, Safadi R: Hypoglycemia in patients with renal failure, *Ren Fail* 22(2):219–223, 2000.

Hawdon JM: Investigation and management of impaired metabolic adaptation presenting as neonatal hypoglycemia, *Paediatrics and Child Health* 18(4):161–165, 2008.

Haymond MW: Hypoglycemia in infants and children, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 18(1):211–252, 1989.

Haymond MW, Pagliara AS: Ketotic hypoglycaemia, *Clin Endocrinol Metab* 12(2):447–462, 1983.

Hekimsoy Z, Biberoglu S, Comlekci A, et al: Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole-induced hypoglycemia in a malnourished patient with severe infection, *Eur J Endocrinol* 136(3):304–306, 1997.

Herman WH, Cohen RM: Racial and ethnic differences in the relationship between HbA_{1c} and blood glucose: Implications for the diagnosis of diabetes, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 97(4):1067–1072, 2012.

Hirata Y, Uchigata Y: Insulin autoimmune syndrome in Japan, *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 24(Suppl):S153–S157, 1994.

Hoberman HD, Chiodo SM: Elevation of the hemoglobin A1 fraction in alcoholism, *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 16:260–266, 1982.

Hoelzel W, Weykamp C, Jeppsson JO, et al: IFCC reference system for measurement of hemoglobin A1c in human blood and the national standardization schemes in the United States, Japan, and Sweden: A method comparison study, *Clin Chem* 50:166–174, 2004.

Holton JB, Walter JH, Tyfield LA: Galactosemia. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WS, et al, editors: *The metabolic and molecular bases of inherited disease*, ed 8, New York, 2001, McGraw-Hill, pp 1553–1587.

Huang ES, Basu A, O'Grady M, et al: Projecting the future diabetes population size and related costs for the U.S, *Diabetes Care* 32:2225–2229, 2009.

Hussain K: Diagnosis and management of hyperinsulinaemic hypoglycaemia of infancy, *Horm Res* 69:2–13, 2008.

John M, Mallal S: Hyperlactatemia syndromes in people with HIV infection, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 15(1):23–29, 2002.

Kapoor RR, Flanagan SE, James C, et al: Hyperinsulinaemic hypoglycaemia, *Arch Dis Child* 94(6):450–457, 2009.

Kato Y, Ichiki Y, Kitajima Y: A case of systemic lupus erythematosus presenting as hypoglycemia due to anti-insulin receptor antibodies, *Rheumatol Int* 29(1): 103–105, 2008.

Khoury H, Daugherty T, Ehsanipoor K: Spontaneous hypoglycemia associated with congestive heart failure attributable to hyperinsulinism, *Endocr Pract* 4(2):94–95, 1998.

Kishnani PS, Corzo D, Nicolino M, et al: Recombinant human acid α-glucosidase: Major clinical benefits in infantile-onset Pompe disease, *Neurology* 68:99–109, 2007.

Kost GJ, Vu HT, Lee JH, et al: Multicenter study of oxygen-insensitive handheld glucose point-of-care testing in critical care/hospital/ambulatory patients in the United States and Canada, *Crit Care Med* 26(3): 581–590, 1998.

Kreisberg RA: Lactate homeostasis and lactic acidosis, *Ann Intern Med* 92:227–237, 1980.

Krischer JP, Cuthbertson DD, Yu L, et al: Screening strategies for the identification of multiple antibody-positive relatives of individuals with type 1 diabetes, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88(1):103–108, 2003.

Kurahashi K, Maruta H, Usuda Y, et al: Influence of blood sample oxygen tension on blood glucose concentration measured using an enzyme-electrode method, *Crit Care Med* 25(2):231–235, 1997.

Lawler P, Mora S: Moving beyond mean glycemia: 1,5-Anhydroglucitol and microvascular complications of diabetes, *Clin Chem* 60:11–1359-61, 2014.

Lefebvre PJ, Andreani D, Marks V, et al: Statement on postprandial hypoglycemia, *Diabetes Care* 11(5):439–440, 1988.

Leslie ND: Insights into the pathogenesis of galactosemia, *Ann Rev Nutr* 23:59–80, 2003.

Lidar M, Rachmani R, Half E, et al: Insulin autoimmune syndrome after therapy with imipenem, *Diabetes Care* 22(3):524–525, 1999.

Lteif AN, Schwenk WF: Hypoglycemia in infants and children, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 28(3):619–646, 1999.

Luft AN, Schwenk WF: Lactic acidosis update for critical care clinicians, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 12(Suppl 17): S15–S19, 2001.

Lupsa BC, Chong AY, Cochran EK, et al: Autoimmune forms of hypoglycemia, *Medicine* 88(3):141–153, 2009.

Mackin RB: Proinsulin: Recent observations and controversies, *Cell Mol Life Sci* 54:696–702, 1998.

Manning PJ, Espiner EA, Yoon K, et al: An unusual cause of hyperinsulinaemic hypoglycaemia syndrome, *Diabet Med* 20(9):772–776, 2003.

http://basicbook.net

Marko P, Gabrielli A, Caruso LJ: Too much lactate or too little liver?, *J Clin Anesth* 16(5):389–395, 2004.

Marks V, Teale JD: Drug-induced hypoglycemia, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 28(3):555–577, 1999.

Miller WG, Thienpont LM, Van Uytfanghe K, et al: The Insulin Standardization Work Group: Toward standardization of insulin immunoassays, *Clin Chem* 55:1011–1018, 2009.

Miller SI, Wallace RJ Jr, Musher DM, et al: Hypoglycemia as a manifestation of sepsis, *Am J Med* 68(5):649–654, 1980.

Miraki-Moud F, Grossman AB, Besser M, et al: A rapid method for analyzing serum pro-insulin-like growth factor-II in patients with non-islet cell tumor hypoglycemia, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 90(7):3819–3823, 2005.

Misbin RI: The phantom of lactic acidosis due to metformin in patients with diabetes, *Diabetes Care* 27(7): 1791–1793, 2004.

Mitrakou A, Ryan C, Veneman T, et al: Hierarchy of glycemic thresholds for counterregulatory hormone secretion, symptoms, and cerebral dysfunction, *Am J Physiol* 260(1 Pt 1):E67–E74, 1991.

Molven A, Matre GE, Duran M, et al: Familial hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia caused by a defect in the SCHAD enzyme of mitochondrial fatty acid oxidation, *Diabetes* 53:221–227, 2004.

Montalvo AL, Bembi B, Donnarumma M, et al: Mutation profile of the GAA gene in 40 Italian patients with late onset glycogen storage disease type II, *Hum Mutat* 27:999–1006, 2006.

Murad HA, Coto-Yglesias F, Wang AT, et al: Drug-induced hypoglycemia: A systematic review, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 94(3):741–745, 2009.

Narayan KM, Boyle JP, Thompson TJ, et al: Lifetime risk for diabetes mellitus in the United States, *JAMA* 290(14):1884–1890, 2003.

Nathan DM, Cleary PA, Backlund JY, et al: Intensive diabetes treatment and cardiovascular disease in patients with type 1 diabetes, *N Engl J Med* 353:2643–2653, 2005.

Nathan DM, Kuenen J, Borg R, et al: Translating the A1C assay into estimated average glucose values, *Diabetes Care* 31:1–6, 2008.

Nishi H, Nanjo K: Insulin gene mutations and diabetes, *J Diabetes Investig* 2:92–100, 2011.

Oberg K, Eriksson B: Endocrine tumours of the pancreas, *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 19:753–781, 2005.

Ogedegbe AE, Thomas DL, Diehl AM: Hyperlactataemia syndromes associated with HIV therapy, *Lancet Infect Dis* 3(6):329–337, 2003.

Ohkubo Y, Kishikawa H, Araki E, et al: Intensive insulin therapy prevents the progression of diabetic microvascular complications in Japanese patients with non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus: A randomized prospective 6-year study, *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 28:103–117, 1995.

Orngreen MC, Zacho M, Hebert A, et al: Patients with severe muscle wasting are prone to develop hypoglycemia during fasting, *Neurology* 61:997–1000, 2003.

Ozawa S, Katsuta H, Suzuki K, et al: Estimated proinsulin processing activity of prohormone convertase (PC) 1/3 rather than PC2 is decreased in pancreatic β-cells of type 2 diabetic patients, *Endocrine J* 61:607–614, 2014.

Park-Wyllie LY, Juurlink DN, Kopp A, et al: Outpatient gatifloxacin therapy and dysglycemia in older adults, *N Engl J Med* 354(13):1352–1361, 2006.

Pasieka JL, Hershfield N: Pancreatic polypeptide hyperplasia causing watery diarrhea syndrome: A case report, *Can J Surg* 42(1):55–58, 1999.

Penumalee S, Kissner PZ, Migdal SD: Gabapentin-induced hypoglycemia in a long-term peritoneal dialysis patient, *Am J Kidney Dis* 42(6):E3–E5, 2003.

Pietropaolo M: Persistent C-peptide: What does it mean?, *Curr Opin Endocinol Diabetes Obes* 20:279–284, 2013.

Pittis MG, Donnarumma M, Montalvo AL, et al: Molecular and functional characterization of eight novel GAA mutations in Italian infants with Pompe disease, *Hum Mutat* 29:E27–E36, 2008.

Qing Y, Zhou J-G, Yuan G: Systemic lupus erythematosus presenting as hypoglycaemia with insulin receptor antibodies and insulin autoantibodies, *Lupus* 18(5): 457–459, 2009.

Quinlivan R, Beynon RJ, Martinuzzi A: Pharmacological and nutritional treatment for McArdle disease (Glycogen Storage Disease type V), *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* CD003458, 2008.

Redmon JB, Nuttall FQ: Autoimmune hypoglycemia, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 28(3):603–618, 1999.

Roder ME, Porte D Jr, Schwartz RS, et al: Disproportionately elevated proinsulin levels reflect the degree of impaired B cell secretory capacity in patients with noninsulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83(2):604–608, 1998.

Russell SJ, El-Khatib FH, Sinha M, et al: Outpatient glycemic control with a bionic pancreas in type 1 diabetes, *N Engl J Med* 371:313–325, 2014.

Salpeter SR, Greyber E, Pasternak GA, et al: Risk of fatal and nonfatal lactic acidosis with metformin use in type 2 diabetes mellitus: Systematic review and meta-analysis, *Arch Intern Med* 163(21):2594–2602, 2003.

Saraya A, Yokokura M, Gonoi T, et al: Effects of fluoroquinolones on insulin secretion and beta-cell ATP-sensitive K+ channels, *Eur J Pharmacol* 497:111–117, 2004.

Schmid C, Haug C, Heinemann L, et al: System accuracy of blood glucose monitoring systems: Impact of use by patients and ambient conditions, *Diabetes Technol Ther* 15(10):889–896, 2013.

Schrot RJ, Foulis PR, Morrison AD, et al: A computerized model for home glucose monitoring proficiency testing: Efficacy of an innovative testing program, *Diabetes Educator* 25(1):48–55, 1999.

Schwartz NS, Clutter WE, Shah SD, et al: Glycemic thresholds for activation of glucose counterregulatory systems are higher than the threshold for symptoms, *J Clin Invest* 79(3):777–781, 1987.

Seaquist ER, Kahn SE, Clark PM, et al: Hyperproinsulinemia is associated with increased beta cell demand after hemipancreatectomy, *J Clin Invest* 97(2):455–460, 1996.

Service FJ, Natt N, Thompson GB, et al: Noninsulinoma pancreatogenous hypoglycemia: A novel syndrome of hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia in adults independent of mutations in Kir6.2 and SUR1 genes, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 84(5):1582–1589, 1999.

Service GJ, Thompson GB, Service FJ, et al: Hyperinsulinemic hypoglycemia with nesidioblastosis after gastric-bypass surgery, *N Engl J Med* 353:249–254, 2005.

Smallridge RC, Corrigan DF, Thomason AM, et al: Hypoglycemia in pregnancy. Occurrence due to adrenocorticotropic hormone and growth hormone deficiency, *Arch Intern Med* 140(4):564–565, 1980.

Sperling MA, Menon RK: Differential diagnosis and management of neonatal hypoglycemia, *Pediatr Clin N Amer* 51(3):703–723, 2004.

Stanley CA, Lieu YK, Hsu BY, et al: Hyperinsulinism and hyperammonemia in infants with regulatory mutations of the glutamate dehydrogenase gene, *N Engl J Med* 338(19):1352–1357, 1998.

Steinman B, Gitzelman R, Van den Berghe G: Disorders of fructose metabolism. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WS, et al, editors: *The metabolic and molecular bases of inherited disease*, ed 8, New York, 2001, McGraw-Hill, pp 1489–1520.

STOPP-T2D (Studies to Treat or Prevent Pediatric Type 2 Diabetes Prevention Study Group): Prevalence of the metabolic syndrome among a racially/ethnically diverse group of U.S. eighth-grade adolescents and associations with fasting insulin and homeostasis model assessment of insulin resistance levels, *Diabetes Care* 31:2020–2025, 2008.

Straub SG, Cosgrove KE, Ammala C, et al: Hyperinsulinism of infancy: The regulated release of insulin by KATP channel-independent pathways, *Diabetes* 50(2): 329–339, 2001.

Sunehag AL, Haymond MW: Glucose extremes in newborn infants, *Clin Perinatol* 29(2):245–260, 2002.

Tahara Y, Shima K: The response of GHb to stepwise plasma glucose change over time in diabetic patients, *Diabetes Care* 16:1313–1314, 1993.

Tamburrano G, Leonetti F, Sbraccia P, et al: Increased insulin sensitivity in patients with idiopathic reactive hypoglycemia, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 69(4):885–890, 1989.

Tarim O, Kucukerdogan A, Gunay U, et al: Effects of iron deficiency anemia on hemoglobin A1c in type 1 diabetes mellitus, *Pediatr Int* 41:357–362, 1999.

Taylor SI, Barbetti F, Accili D, et al: Syndromes of autoimmunity and hypoglycemia. Autoantibodies directed against insulin and its receptor, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 18(1):123–143, 1989.

Toft-Nielsen MB, Damholt MB, Madsbad S, et al: Determinants of the impaired secretion of glucagon-like peptide-1 in type 2 diabetic patients, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 86:3717–3723, 2001.

Tomita T, Kimmel JR, Friesen SR, et al: Pancreatic polypeptide cell hyperplasia with and without watery diarrhea syndrome, *J Surg Oncol* 14(1):11–20, 1980.

Torn C, Mueller PW, Schlosser M, et al: Diabetes Antibody Standardization Program: Evaluation of assays for autoantibodies to glutamic acid decarboxylase and islet antigen-2, *Diabetologia* 51:846–852, 2008.

Towler DA, Havlin CE, Craft S, et al: Mechanism of awareness of hypoglycemia. Perception of neurogenic (predominantly cholinergic) rather than neuroglycopenic symptoms, *Diabetes* 42(12):1791–1798, 1993.

Tsujino S, Nonaka I, DiMauro S: Glycogen storage myopathies, *Neurol Clin* 18(1):125–150, 2000.

United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study Group: Effect of intensive blood glucose control with metformin on complications in overweight patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 34), *Lancet* 352(9131):854–865, 1998a.

United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study Group: Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33), *Lancet* 352(9131):837–853, 1998b.

van Doorn J, Hoogerbrugge CM, Koster JG, et al: Antibodies directed against the E region of pro-insulin-like growth factor-II used to evaluate non-islet cell tumor-induced hypoglycemia, *Clin Chem* 48:1739–1750, 2002.

Virtue MA, Furne JK, Nuttall FQ, et al: Relationship between GHb concentration and erythrocyte survival determined from breath carbon monoxide concentration, *Diabetes Care* 27:931–935, 2004.

Vogeser M, Parhofer KG, Furst H, et al: Autoimmune hypoglycemia presenting as seizure one week after surgery, *Clin Chem* 47(4):795–796, 2001.

Walter JH, Roberts RE, Besley GT, et al: Generalised uridine diphosphate galactose-4-epimerase deficiency, *Arch Dis Child* 80(4):374–376, 1999.

Wang L, Lovejoy NF, Faustman DL: Persistence of prolonged c-peptide production in type 1 diabetes as measured by an ultrasensitive c-peptide assay, *Diabetes Care* 35:465–470, 2012.

Weissman M, Klein B: Evaluation of glucose determinations in untreated serum samples, *Clin Chem* 4:420, 1958.

Whipple AE: The surgical therapy of hyperinsulinism, *J Int Chir* 3:237–276, 1938.

Wolfsdorf JI, Holm IA, Weinstein DA: Glycogen storage diseases: Phenotypic, genetic, and biochemical characteristics, and therapy, *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Amer* 28(4):801–823, 1999.

World Health Organization. *Diabetes mellitus: Report of a WHO study group*. (Technical Report Series, No. 727). Geneva, Switzerland, 1985, WHO.

Yaturu S, DePrisco C, Lurie A: Severe autoimmune hypoglycemia with insulin antibodies necessitating plasmapheresis, *Endocr Pract* 10(1):49–54, 2004.

Zaloga GP: Beware of errors in blood glucose measurement, *Crit Care Med* 25(2):212, 1997.

Zhang DL, Jiang ZW, Jiang J, et al: D-lactic acidosis secondary to short bowel syndrome, *Postgrad Med J* 79(928):110–112, 2003.

Zierler K: Whole body glucose metabolism, *Am J Physiol* 276(3 Pt 1):E409–E426, 1999.

Zuker N, Bissessor M, Korber M, et al: Acute hypoglycaemic coma—A rare, potentially lethal form of early onset Sheehan syndrome, *Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol* 35(3):318–320, 1995.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 17

LIPIDS AND DYSLIPOPROTEINEMIA

Xueying Chen, Liye Zhou, M. Mahmood Hussain

OVERVIEW, 221

LIPOPROTEINS APOLIPOPROTEINS, AND RELATED PROTEINS, 223
Major Lipoproteins, 223
Minor and Abnormal Lipoproteins, 224
Important Proteins in Lipoprotein Metabolism, 225

LIPID TRANSPORT AND LIPOPROTEIN METABOLISM, 225

LIPID AND LIPOPROTEIN MEASUREMENT, 228
Blood Sampling and Storage, 229
Estimation of Plasma Lipids, 230
Estimation of Lipoproteins and Lipoprotein Cholesterol, 232
Additional Methods in the Study of Dyslipidemia, 234

GUIDELINES FOR CHOLESTEROL TESTING AND MANAGEMENT, 235
Reliability of Measurements, 235
Metabolic Syndrome, 235
Hypertriglyceridemia, 237
Estimating Risk Factors, 237
High Cholesterol in Children, 237

LIPIDS, LIPOPROTEINS, AND DISEASE, 237
High Cholesterol with High LDL-C, 237
High Triglycerides with Normal Cholesterol, 241
High Cholesterol with High Triglycerides, 241
Low Total Cholesterol and Triglyceride, 242
Isolated Low HDL-C, 242
Isolated High HDL-C, 243

SELECTED REFERENCES, 243

KEY POINTS

- Although ultracentrifugation and electrophoretic techniques are of historical significance, most useful lipid and lipoprotein testing methods are now enzymatic.
- Low-density lipoprotein cholesterol can be measured directly but is usually calculated using the Friedewald formula. Calculated values require evaluation of fasting samples.
- Low-density lipoprotein cholesterol is currently considered the most important value in assessing cardiac risk and directing therapy.
- The profile currently recommended for initial screening in adults, age 20 or older, includes total cholesterol, low- and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol, and triglycerides. Testing should be repeated at least once every 5 years.
- Other tests, including apolipoprotein levels and lipoprotein subclasses, may prove valuable in fine-tuning risk assessment and evaluating response to therapy.
- New guidelines elevate the perceived atherosclerotic risk of diabetes and support aggressive intervention in diabetic patients and patients with metabolic syndrome.

OVERVIEW

Disorders of lipid metabolism play a major role in atherosclerosis and coronary heart disease (CHD). A clear-cut relationship is evident between elevated serum cholesterol and myocardial infarction. At the tissue level, cholesterol deposits occur in areas of endothelial cell damage and are a prominent part of atherosclerotic lesions. Although cholesterol may be considered "bad" because of the previous association, it is actually a vital structural component of cell membranes and a precursor of steroid hormones and bile acids. Another lipid, triglyceride, is a major source of energy for cells. Cholesterol and triglycerides are the most important lipids in the study and management of CHD risk.

Lipids are soluble in nonpolar organic solvents, such as chloroform and ether, but relatively insoluble in polar solvents such as water. Thus, cholesterol and triglycerides travel in plasma not as free-floating molecules but as part of water-soluble complexes called *lipoproteins*. These particles contain cholesterol in two forms: free cholesterol, a polar nonesterified alcohol (about 30%), and cholesterol ester, a hydrophobic form wherein cholesterol is linked to a fatty acid (about 70%). The lipoprotein is arranged like a micelle (Fig. 17-1). The most hydrophobic lipids, such as cholesterol esters and triglycerides, are located in the core of the particle. Lipids with some hydrophilicity, such as free cholesterol and phospholipids, are arranged on the surface with polar groups pointing outward. *Apolipoproteins* (apo) the protein moiety of lipoproteins, are also arrayed on the surface. They show amphiphilic characteristics; hydrophobic residues interact with the hydrophobic core, whereas hydrophilic residues interact outside the aqueous environment.

Four major lipoprotein classes have been identified: chylomicrons (CM), very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL), low-density lipoprotein (LDL), and high-density lipoprotein (HDL). The classification is based on the buoyant density of the particles (see later). Several minor lipoproteins have also been identified, including intermediate-density lipoprotein (IDL) and lipoprotein(a) (Lp[a]) (Tables 17-1 and 17-2). Lipoproteins can be differentiated by density, particle size, chemical composition, and electrophoretic mobility. These physical properties are due to differences in protein, triglyceride, and cholesterol content and reflect the role of each lipoprotein in lipid metabolism (see later). Each lipoprotein is associated with specific apos that play important roles in lipid transport, such as activating or inhibiting the enzymes involved in lipid metabolism, and binding lipoproteins to cell surface receptors. The apo composition of the lipoprotein classes is summarized in Table 17-1.

Lipoproteins are commonly differentiated from one another on the basis of their buoyant density and electrophoretic mobility (Fig. 17-2). Ultracentrifugation separates lipoproteins by buoyant density. Lipids and proteins have average densities of 1.0 and 1.4 g/mL, respectively. If centrifuged in solutions of different densities, these particles band at characteristic densities. The density of a lipoprotein particle is determined mostly by its protein and triglyceride content. As illustrated in Figure 17-2, the higher the lipid content, the less dense the lipoprotein particle; therefore, the closer they migrate to the top of the tube. Lipoproteins with high triglyceride and low protein content (CM and VLDL) are less dense than those with high protein and low triglyceride content (HDL). LDL and IDL are more dense than VLDL but less dense than HDL. When plasma lipoproteins are separated by agarose gel electrophoresis, CM remains at the origin and HDL migrates fastest in the α-region, followed by VLDL in the "pre-β" region and IDL and LDL in the β region.

Based on the presence and absence of apoB, lipoproteins can be classified as apoB-containing (CM, VLDL, IDL, LDL) and non–apoB-containing (HDL) lipoproteins. This classification is important because apoB is a nonexchangeable apolipoprotein, and only one molecule of apoB is present per lipoprotein. ApoB-containing lipoproteins may or may not contain additional apolipoproteins such as apoA1, apoC, and apoE. ApoB serves as a structural protein for these lipoproteins and is always associated with these particles. They are synthesized mainly by hepatocytes and enterocytes.

http://basicbook.net

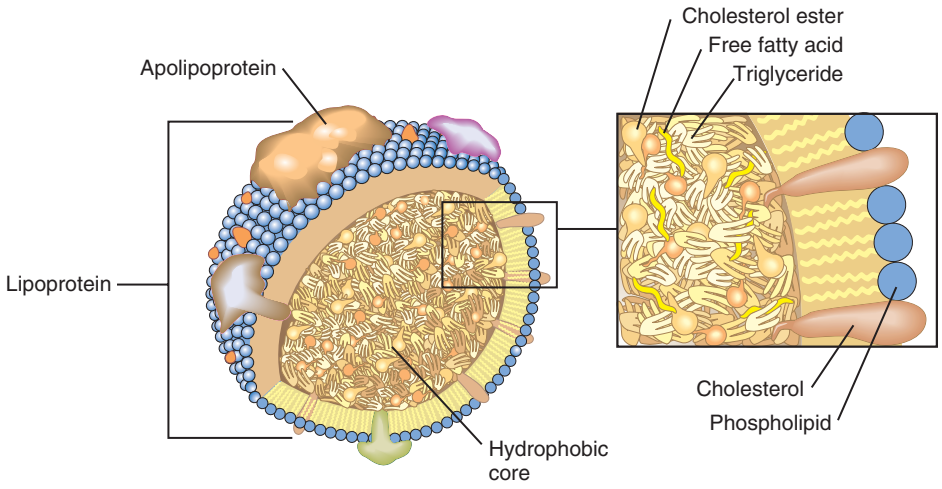


Figure 17-1 Lipoprotein structure. Lipoproteins are spherical particles with a hydrophobic core and an amphiphilic surface. The surface consists of a single layer of phospholipids. This surface layer also contains proteins and free cholesterol. The hydrophobic core mainly contains triglycerides and cholesterol esters.

TABLE 17-1
Major Classes of Human Plasma Lipoproteins: Physicochemical Characteristics

Particle	Electrophoretic Mobility*	Major Apolipoproteins	Diameter (Å)	Density (kg/L)	Sf†
Chylomicrons	Origin	ApoA-I, A-IV, B-48, C-I, C-II, C-III, E	750-12,000	<0.95	>400
VLDL	Pre-β	ApoB-100, C-I, C-II, C-III, E	300-700	0.95-1.006	20-400
IDL	β or pre-β	ApoB-100, E1.006–1.019	12-20		
LDL	B	ApoB-100	180-300	1.019-1.063	0-12
HDL_2	A	ApoA-I, A-II, E	50-120	1.063-1.125	
HDL_3	A	ApoA-II, A-I, E	50-120	1.125-1.210	
Lp(a)	Pre-β	ApoB-100, Apo(a)		1.045-1.080	

HDL_2, Ultracentrifugation subclass of high-density lipoprotein; *HDL_3,* ultracentrifugation subclass of high-density lipoprotein; *IDL,* intermediate-density lipoprotein; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein; *Lp(a),* lipoprotein A; *VLDL,* very-low-density lipoprotein.
*Agarose gel electrophoresis.
†Svedberg flotation rate.

TABLE 17-2
Chemical Composition of Major Classes of Plasma Lipoproteins

	Protein (%)*	Free Cholesterol (%)	Cholesterol Esters (%)	Triglyceride (%)	Phospholipid (%)
Chylomicrons	1-2	1-3	2-4	80-95	3-6
VLDL	6-10	4-8	16-22	45-65	15-20
IDL	Intermediate between VLDL and LDL				
LDL	18-22	6-8	45-50	4-8	18-24
HDL	45-55	3-5	15-20	2-7	26-32

HDL, High-density lipoprotein; *IDL,* intermediate-density lipoprotein; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein; *VLDL,* very-low-density lipoprotein.
*Percentage of dry weight.
Data from Albers (1974), Gaubatz et al (1983), Fless et al (1984), Gotto et al (1986), Gries et al (1988), and Hegele (2009).

This group of lipoproteins is mainly involved in delivering lipids to tissues for storage or use in energy production. CM (formed in the intestine from dietary fat) and VLDL (formed in the liver) are triglyceride-rich particles that are metabolized after entering the circulation. Through the action of lipoprotein lipase (LPL), these particles shed triglycerides and cholesterol esters and are transformed into denser lipoproteins with a higher percentage of cholesterol. LDL is the densest of these particles, and elevated serum LDL-cholesterol (LDL-C) is a primary cardiac risk factor. Treatment of CHD-causing dyslipidemia is generally aimed at lowering LDL.

One way to understand heterogeneity in apoB-containing lipoproteins is to view them as a metabolic progression in which CM and VLDL release free fatty acids to tissues via interaction with LPL. As a result of this interaction, CM and VLDL become triglyceride depleted, denser, and relatively protein and cholesterol rich, giving rise to CM remnants and LDL. These particles are internalized and metabolized by cells—CM remnants by the liver and bone marrow cells and LDL by liver cells and by other cells throughout the body. LDL serves as the major source of cholesterol for tissues. This metabolic progression is presented in Figure 17-3.

A block in any step of the pathway leads to the accumulation of one or more lipoproteins. The number over each step in the pathway represents the functional hyperlipoproteinemia (originally described by Fredrickson [1967]) caused by a block between two intermediates. For example, a block in the progression from CM to CM remnants results in the accumulation of CM—Type 1 or 5 disease—and presents with high triglycerides and normal cholesterol. A block in the conversion of VLDL to IDL and LDL results in Type 4 disease (i.e., VLDL accumulation with elevated triglycerides and frequently elevated cholesterol). Often the cause of Types 1, 5, and 4 disease is LPL deficiency and the resulting inability to break down triglycerides. Type 2 disease results from a block in LDL metabolism and may have a genetic basis: a defective apoB protein that does not bind to

http://basicbook.net

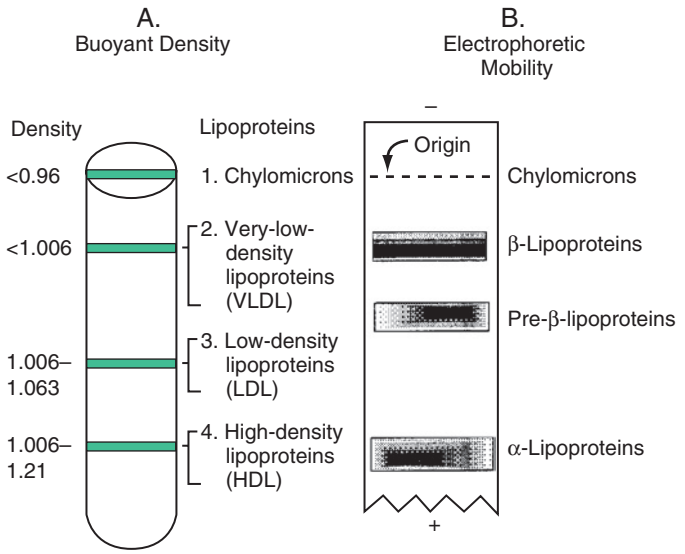


Figure 17-2 Lipoprotein classification. Lipoproteins are classified on the basis of buoyant density **(A)** or electrophoretic mobility **(B)**. Separation of lipoproteins based on buoyant density depends on the ratio between lipids and proteins present in them. Lipoproteins that contain higher amounts of lipids have lower buoyant density and are collected on top of the centrifuge tube. Separations based on electrophoretic mobility are based on the number of charges present on lipoproteins and are independent of their size and buoyant density.

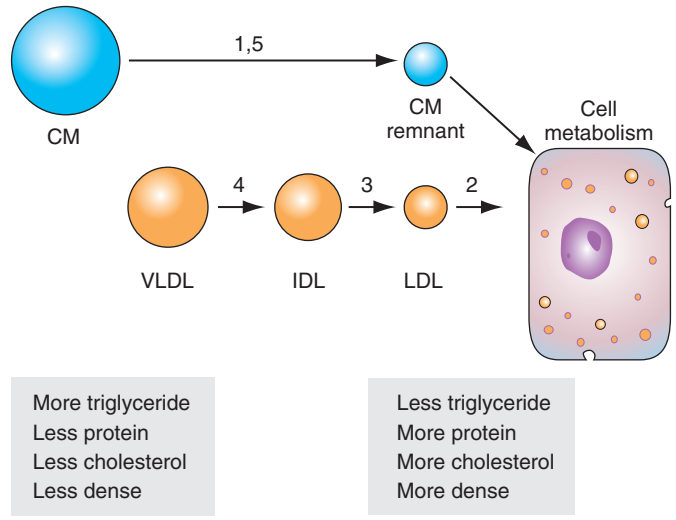


Figure 17-3 Metabolism of lipoprotein particles. The figure depicts successive shrinkage in the size of lipoproteins as a consequence of the lipolysis of triglycerides present in the particles. The number over each step in the pathway represents the functional hyperlipoproteinemia caused by a block between two intermediates (see Table 17-3). *CM,* Chylomicron; *IDL,* intermediate-density lipoprotein; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein; *VLDL,* very-low-density lipoprotein.

the LDL receptor (LDLR) or a mutant LDLR that does not recognize apoB. Type 2 is further subcategorized on the basis of triglyceride level. Note that other studies (see later) may be necessary to distinguish Type 2B and Type 3 because both present with elevated cholesterol and triglycerides. This functional classification is presented in Table 17-3. No ideal system is known for classifying lipid disorders. They can be categorized in many different ways: primary versus secondary, hereditary versus acquired, and by lipoprotein fraction phenotypes. In general, each category is heterogeneous with respect to genetic, clinical, and pathologic factors. These are discussed in greater detail at the end of the chapter.

The major protein present in non–apoB-containing HDL is apoA-I, which makes up about 70% of the HDL protein. HDL is formed in the liver and small intestine. HDL plays a key role in reverse cholesterol transport, the process by which excess cholesterol is returned from tissues to the liver, where it is reused or excreted in bile. Besides apoA-I, HDL contains several apos. In addition to reverse cholesterol transport, other functions of HDL have been described on the basis of in vitro assays, including anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, antithrombotic, and nitric oxide–inducing mechanisms. Although the role of reverse cholesterol transport has been suggested as a protective mechanism against atherosclerosis, these other properties of HDL might also contribute to the "protective" effect. Consequently, such protection may stem from HDL function rather than from increased plasma levels of HDL. Nonetheless, therapies targeting increased HDL levels in plasma remain an active area of research.

LIPOPROTEINS, APOLIPOPROTEINS, AND RELATED PROTEINS

Lipoprotein particles are dynamic entities that acquire and shed protein and lipid components as they circulate in the body. As mentioned earlier, CM and VLDL particles lose triglycerides and become smaller as they are metabolized. Thus young VLDL and CM particles are larger and less dense than their more mature counterparts. For this reason, it is best to view each of the lipoprotein classes not as a collection of identical particles but as a heterogeneous group. In fact, distinct lipoprotein subfractions or subclasses have been well described.

MAJOR LIPOPROTEINS

Chylomicrons

CMs are large particles produced by the intestine that transport lipids of dietary origin to the tissues of the body. They are very rich in triglycerides but relatively poor in free cholesterol, phospholipids, and protein. These particles are secreted into mesenteric lymphatics and reach circulation at the thoracic duct. These lipoproteins acquire apoC-II, a cofactor for lipoprotein lipase, from plasma. The interaction of CM with lipoprotein lipase at the luminal surface of capillary endothelium results in the depletion of triglycerides and surface elements. The resulting smaller particles, called CM remnants, are removed from circulation by the liver (Hussain et al, 1996), primarily through the interaction of apoE with receptors such as proteoglycans, the LDLR, and the LDLR-related protein (LRP). The half-life of the CM in human circulation is short—only minutes. Because of the very high lipid/protein ratio, CM are considerably less dense than water and float without centrifugation. When present at high levels, CM result in "milky" plasma and accumulate as a floating creamy layer when left undisturbed for several hours. The apolipoproteins in CM include apoB-48, apoA-I, apoA-IV, apoC-I, apoC-II, apoC-III, and apoE. In metabolism of CMs, apoC-II serves as an activator of lipoprotein lipase.

Very-Low-Density Lipoproteins

VLDL particles are produced by the liver and supply the tissues of the body with triglycerides of endogenous, primarily hepatic, origin and cholesterol. As compared with CMs, VLDL particles are smaller and produce turbid plasma when present in excessive amounts. They are rich in triglycerides, although to a lesser extent than CMs, and have a higher buoyant density because of their lower lipid/protein ratio. By mass, VLDL particles contain approximately 50% triglyceride, 40% cholesterol and phospholipid, and 10% protein, mostly apoB-100 and apoC-I, apoC-II, and apoC-III, but also apoE. VLDL particles vary widely in size and chemical composition. Larger particles are rich in triglycerides and apoC. Smaller particles have less of these two components. Lipoprotein lipase hydrolyzes VLDL, and this produces highly atherogenic, smaller triglyceride and surface material–depleted particles called VLDL remnants and IDL. LDLRs on hepatocytes recognize apoE in CM remnant and VLDL in order to remove them from plasma.

Low-Density Lipoproteins

LDL is produced through the metabolism of VLDL in circulation and constitutes about 50% of the total lipoprotein mass in human plasma. The particles are much smaller than the triglyceride-rich lipoproteins (VLDL and CM) and do not scatter light or alter the clarity of plasma even at greatly increased concentrations. LDL consists of approximately 50% cholesterol, mostly esterified; 25% protein, mostly apoB-100 with traces of apoC; 20% phospholipid; and some triglycerides. Although each VLDL and LDL particle is thought to contain only one apoB-100 molecule, the extraordinary size of this protein allows it to be the largest protein component of these particles. The liver takes up most of the LDL in circulation (approximately 75%), with apoB-100 serving as a ligand for the hepatic receptor. The remaining LDL is delivered to other tissues. Some LDL is modified and is removed from the circulation by scavenger cells such as those found in atheromatous plaque. Small, dense LDL contains less cholesterol ester

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 17-3
Classic Hyperlipidemia Phenotypes

WHO ICD and OMIM Numbers	Type	Particle	Triglycerides	Cholesterol	Comments
E78.3 238600	1 (familial chylomicronemia or LPL deficiency)	CM	High	Normal	Low cardiac risk; hereditary, found mostly in pediatric patients and young adults; autosomal recessive mutation in *LPL* or *APOC2; APOA5, LMF-1,* and *GPIHBP1* mutations are linked to this phenotype.
E78.0 143890	2A (heterozygous and homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia)	LDL	Normal	High	High cardiac risk; mostly polygenic disease; about 10% are monogenic; heterozygous form is due to mutations in *LDLR, APOB,* or *PCSK9*; homozygous form is due to mutations in *LDLR* or *LDLRAP1* (ARH).
E78.4 144250	2B (combined hyperlipoproteinemia)	VLDL, LDL	High	High	High cardiac risk; polygenic disease; links to mutations in *USF1, APOB,* and *LPL*
E78.2 107741	3 (dysbetalipoproteinemia)	IDL	High	High	High cardiac risk; mutations in *APOE* gene or homozygous for E2 allele of *APOE*
E78.1 144600, 145750	4 (primary hypertriglyceridemia)	VLDL	High	Normal	Lower cardiac risk than type 2 or 3; polygenic disease
E78.3 144650	5 (mixed hyperlipidemia)	VLDL, CM	High	High	Low cardiac risk; polygenic disease; 10% of patients have mutations in *LPL, APOC2,* and *APOA5*; mutations in *APOE, TRIB1, CHREBP, GALNT2, GCKR,* and *ANGPTL3* are thought to contribute to this disease.

ANGPTL3, Angiopoietin-like 3; *APOA5,* apolipoprotein A-V; *APOB,* apolipoprotein B; *APOC2,* apolipoprotein C-II; *APOE,* apolipoprotein E; *CHREBP,* carbohydrate response element binding protein (or *MLXIPL*); *CM,* chylomicron; *GALNT2,* UDP-N′-acetyl-alpha-D-galactosamine-polypeptide *N*-acetylgalactosaminyltransferase 2; *GCKR,* glucokinase regulator; *ICD,* International Classification of Diseases; *IDL,* intermediate-density lipoprotein; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein; *LDLRAP1,* LDLR adaptor protein 1 (also known as ARH); *OMIM,* Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man; *TRIB1,* tribbles homologue 1; *USF1,* upstream transcription factor 1; *VLDL,* very-low-density lipoprotein; *WHO,* World Health Organization.

and has a lower cholesterol/apoB ratio and is believed to be atherogenic. Increased amounts of the small particles have been found in patients with several common forms of dyslipoproteinemia that are associated with CHD. People with high levels of small, dense LDL are at high risk of a CHD event, which is independent of total LDL concentration.

High-Density Lipoprotein

HDL is a small particle, consisting mostly of protein, cholesterol, and phospholipids, with only traces of triglycerides. ApoA-I is the major apolipoprotein for HDL, which is synthesized in the liver and small intestine. Different from apoB-containing lipoproteins, most of HDL particles have more than one apoA-I molecule. Produced by the liver and intestine, HDL is involved in reverse cholesterol transport. In vitro studies suggest that HDL is involved in anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, antithrombotic, and nitric oxide–inducing mechanisms. The major site for the clearance of HDL cholesterol is the liver, and the best-understood mechanism is the selective uptake of cholesterol esters from HDL by the SR-B1 receptor expressed in the liver. In the selective uptake process, SR-B1 promotes cholesterol uptake without apoA-I degradation. Cholesterol esters are removed from the internalized HDL particles, and cholesterol-depleted HDLs are resecreted. Mouse models that lack SR-B1 exhibit increased plasma HDL, slower HDL uptake by the liver, and increased atherosclerosis. Reverse cholesterol transport is reduced. In contrast, mouse models overexpressing SR-B1 in the liver show increased reverse cholesterol transport with reduced HDL plasma levels; however, these same mice also exhibit reduced atherosclerosis. In studies done on humans who maintain normal lipid profiles, the contribution of SR-B1 to HDL uptake is minimal. The cholesterol ester transfer protein (CETP) pathway is considered to be an alternative pathway for HDL metabolism. CETP transfers triglycerides from apoB lipoproteins in exchange for cholesterol esters in HDL. The result is an HDL particle depleted of cholesterol esters but enriched with triglycerides. Cholesterol transferred to apoB-lipoproteins is then cleared by LDLRs.

Lipid-poor apoA-I is catabolized mainly by the kidney through the renal glomerulus. Patients with kidney disease exihibit impaired cholesterol efflux capacity and are at high risk of cardiovascular disease (Moore and Fisher, 2013).

HDLs are also heterogeneous particles. Discrete HDL particle subpopulations have been identified on the basis of differences in size or charge, including two major ultracentrifugation subclasses, HDL_2 and HDL_3 (MacKenzie et al, 1973; Sundaram et al, 1974; Blanche et al, 1981). HDL_3 is smaller than HDL_2.The distinction is significant because HDL_2 is thought to be more cardioprotective than HDL_3, and people with low levels of HDL_2 are thought to be at increased risk for premature CHD. By surface charge, HDL is divided into three different subpopulations, from small to large: pre-β, pre-α, and α. Pre-βHDL is also called lipid-poor ApoA-I. Each pre-βHDL contains one apoA-I molecule, three to four phospholipid molecules, and one to two cholesterol molecules. A Japanese group developed an immunoassay that can specifically quantify pre-beta HDL in human plasma. A significantly higher pre-beta HDL level and lower LCAT enzyme activity were observed with the hyperlipidemic population and ischemic heart disease, which is independent of HDL-cholesterol concentration (Miyazaki et al, 2000). Additionally, HDL has been subfractionated into particles that contain apoA-I but not apoA-II, and those that contain both apoA-I and apoA-II (Fruchart & Ailhaud, 1992). ApoA-I is present on virtually all HDL particles and makes up 70% of the protein content. ApoA-II makes up about 20% of the HDL lipoprotein and is present on about two thirds of all HDL particles in humans. The physiologic function of apoA-II is not fully understood; however, both apoA-I and apoA-II are required for normal HDL biosynthesis and metabolism. In a study with 306 individuals from 25 families with CHD family history, the apoA-II plasma level is significantly correlated with the serum free fatty acid level. In a mouse model, human apoA-II inhibits hepatic lipase activity on hydrolysis of HDL triglyceride (Warden et al, 1993). ApoA-II plays an important role in maintaining HDL particle size and levels of HDL in plasma. It is also known that apoA-II is associated with insulin resistance and increased body fat (Corella et al, 2011). ApoE also associates with HDL particles. Laboratory measurement of such particles eventually may prove clinically useful.

MINOR AND ABNORMAL LIPOPROTEINS

Intermediate-Density Lipoproteins

Formed through the metabolism of VLDL in circulation, IDL can be removed from circulation quickly through interaction with the LDLR, or it can be further metabolized to LDL. As expected, the lipid content, size, and density of IDL are intermediate between VLDL and LDL. Concentrations of IDL also contribute to the development of CHD, together with VLDL and LDL in humans.

Lipoprotein(a)

Lp(a) is similar to LDL in terms of density and overall composition, and it can be thought of as an LDL particle to which a large glycoprotein,

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 17-4
Significant Human Apolipoproteins

Apolipoprotein	Major Lipoproteins	Mr* (kDa)	Amino Acids	Chromosome	PLASMA CONCENTRATION mmol/L	PLASMA CONCENTRATION mg/dL
A-I	HDL	29	243-245	11	32-46	90-130
A-II	HDL	17.4	154	1	18-29	30-50
A-IV	HDL, LDL	44.5	396	11		
(a)	Lp(a)	350-700	Variable	6		
B-100	VLDL, IDL, LDL	512.7	4536	2	1.5-1.8	80-100
B-48	CM	240.8	2152	2	<0.2	<5
C-I	CM, LDL	6.6	57	19	6.1-10.8	4-7
C-II	CM, LDL	8.9	78 or 79	19	3.4-9.1	3-8
C-III	CM	8.8	79	11	9.1-17.1	8-15
D	HDL	19	169	3		
E	CM, LDL, IDL	34.1	299	19	0.8-1.6	3-6
F	HDL, LDL, VLDL	29	162	12		8.35
H	VLDL	50	326	17		20
J	HDL	80	449	8		
L	HDL	39-42	383	22	Not present in plasma	
M	HDL, LDL, VLDL, CM	26	188	6		2-15
O	HDL, LDL, VLDL	22.3	198	X		

*Relative molecular mass.
CM, Chylomicron; *HDL,* high-density lipoprotein; *IDL,* intermediate-density lipoprotein; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein; *Lp(a),* lipoprotein A; *VLDL,* very-low-density lipoprotein.

apo(a), has been linked to apoB-100 via a disulfide bond (Gaubatz et al, 1983; Fless et al, 1984; 1985). The electrophoretic mobility of Lp(a) is usually pre-β but can vary between that of LDL (β) and albumin (pre-α). Lp(a) is generally present in much lower concentrations than LDL; however, in normal subjects, values can range from less than 20 to 1500 mg/L or more. Increased levels can be familial, showing an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance, and have been associated with an increased risk of CHD, cerebrovascular disease, and stroke. When concentrations in the plasma are increased to above 200 to 300 mg/L, Lp(a) appears electrophoretically as a lipid-staining pre-β band in the plasma fraction containing lipoproteins of density greater than 1.006 g/mL.

Lp(a) is synthesized in the liver, but the details of its metabolism are not well understood. It binds to the LDLR by virtue of its apoB-100 component, albeit with lower affinity than LDL (Floren et al, 1981). The removal of apo(a) from Lp(a) increases the affinity of the residual apoB-containing particle for the LDLR (Armstrong et al, 1985), and it has been suggested that apo(a) may interfere with the uptake of apoB-100–containing particles (Scanu, 1988). At present, neither the function of Lp(a) nor its atherogenic properties are well understood. It has been speculated that Lp(a) or apo(a) might interfere with normal thrombolysis by virtue of their similarity to plasminogen. In vitro, it competes with plasminogen and tissue-type plasminogen activator for fibrin binding (Loscalzo et al, 1990). Human apo(a) transgenic mice are resistant to tissue plasminogen activator–mediated thrombolysis. Lp(a) has been detected accumulating in atherosclerotic lesions from guinea pigs (Rath & Pauling, 1990).

LpX Lipoprotein

LpX is an abnormal lipoprotein found in patients with obstructive biliary disease and in patients with familial lecithin/cholesterol acyltransferase (LCAT) deficiency. Lipids account for more than 90% of its weight (mostly phospholipids: phosphatidylcholine, unesterified cholesterol, and very little esterified cholesterol). Proteins, primarily apoC and smaller amounts of albumin, constitute less than 10% of LpX by weight. A study has shown that LpX formation associates with a high level of hepatic cholesterol synthesis, but it is independent of LCAT acitivity, as well as ABCA1 and SR-BI expression (Bravo et al, 2007).

β-VLDL ("Floating β" Lipoprotein)

β-VLDL (floating β lipoprotein) is an abnormal lipoprotein that accumulates in type 3 hyperlipoproteinemia. It is richer in cholesterol than VLDL and apparently results from the defective catabolism of VLDL. The particle is found in the VLDL density range but migrates electrophoretically with or near LDL. β-VLDL is enriched in apoE. Cholesterol-fed animals accumulate β-VLDL in plasma. Uptake of cholesterol ester-rich β-VLDL by macrophages induces foam cell formation.

IMPORTANT PROTEINS IN LIPOPROTEIN METABOLISM

Apolipoproteins

As mentioned previously, apos constitute the major protein component of lipoproteins. They are commonly referred to using the nomenclature introduced by Alaupovic (1971). Some significant properties of the apos are outlined in Tables 17-4 and 17-5.

Lipolytic Enzymes and Other Proteins

The major enzymatic systems that are known to participate in plasma lipoprotein metabolism are the LCAT and the lipolytic enzymes, lipoprotein lipase (LPL), hepatic triglyceride lipase (HL), and endothelial lipase (EL). Many other proteins are also involved in lipoprotein metabolism. Some significant attributes of these proteins are summarized in Table 17-6.

LIPID TRANSPORT AND LIPOPROTEIN METABOLISM

Triglycerides and cholesterol enter circulation as part of triglyceride-rich lipoprotein particles, CMs produced in the intestine, and VLDLs produced primarily by the liver. Their synthesis requires an intracellular chaperone microsomal triglyceride transfer protein (MTP) that transfers different lipids in in vitro systems (Hussain et al, 2003, 2012). In addition, MTP physically interacts with apoB. These two properties of MTP play a critical role in the biosynthesis of apoB-containing lipoproteins. It is believed that MTP physically associates with nascent apoB in endoplasmic reticulum and lipidates it, forming a lipoprotein particle that is further matured and secreted. Enterocytes synthesize chylomicrons under postprandial conditions. In fasting conditions, they synthesize VLDL and smaller lipoproteins (Hussain et al, 1996). These lipoproteins are concentrated into mesenteric lymphatics and are delivered to blood at the thoracic duct. Hepatocytes synthesize VLDL and directly secrete into the circulation. Their synthesis is also dependent on MTP activity. The main function of apoB-containing lipoproteins is to deliver cholesterol and triglyceride to different tissues. CMs are primarily involved in the

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 17-5
Apolipoprotein Functions and Significant Characteristics

Apolipoprotein	Main Distribution	Function (If Known)	Comments
A-I	HDL	Activates LCAT that esterifies cholesterol in plasma Ligand for *ABCA1*	Synthesized in liver and intestine; HDL biosynthesis
A-II	HDL		May inhibit lipoprotein and hepatic lipases and increases plasma triglyceride
A-IV	HDL, CM, and free in plasma		May be a cofactor for LCAT; increased during fat absorption; HDL biosynthesis
B-100	VLDL and LDL	Carboxy-terminal recognition signal targets LDL to the LDL (apoB, E) receptor	Very large structural protein, synthesized in liver with lipids of endogenous origin (i.e., not chylomicrons)
B-48	CM	Not recognized by LDLR	Synthesized in intestine, encoded by same gene and same amino terminus as apoB-100. Differential production of the two proteins involves RNA editing.
C-I	CM and VLDL		May inhibit hepatic uptake of VLDL and cholesterol ester transfer protein
C-II	CM and VLDL	Activates lipoprotein lipase	Deficiency causes reduced clearance of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins.
C-III	VLDL, HDL	Inhibits lipolysis of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins; decreases clearance rate of remnant particles	Deficiency causes reduced clearance of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins.
D	HDL	Activates LCAT	
E	CM, VLDL, IDL, remnants and HDL	Recognition factor that targets CM and VLDL remnants to hepatic receptor; also binds to cell surface LDL receptors and proteoglycans	E-2, E-3, and E-4 isoforms; E-4 is associated with high LDL-C, higher risk of CHD and Alzheimer's disease; E-2 associated with type 3 hyperlipoproteinemia
F	HDL, LDL, VLDL	Regulates CETP function	
H	VLDL	Related to activation of LPL; triglyceride metabolism	Antibodies against apoH or β_2-glycoprotein-I are a subset of antiphospholipid antibodies, and may be associated with hyperthrombosis and stroke.
J		Cell-aggregating factor in Sertoli cells; inhibitor of the C5b*7 complement complex; beta-amyloid clearance in glial cells; cholesterol trafficking in brain	Involved in apoptosis; linked to neurologic diseases like Pick's and Alzheimer's; also known as clusterin
L	HDL		May be linked to reverse cholesterol transport
M	HDL, CM, LDL, VLDL		May be linked to HDL remodeling
Apo(a)	Lp(a)		Homologous to plasminogen, may be prothrombotic; bound to apoB-100 by disulfide linkage

ABCA1, ATP-binding cassette transporter; *CETP,* cholesterol ester transfer protein pathway; *CHD,* congenital heart disease; *CM,* chylomicron; *HDL,* high-density lipoprotein; *IDL,* intermediate-density lipoprotein; *LCAT,* lecithin/cholesterol acyltransferase; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein; *LDL-C,* low-density lipoprotein cholesterol; *Lp(a),* lipoprotein A; *LPL,* lipoprotein lipase; *VLDL,* very-low-density lipoprotein.

absorption and delivery of dietary fat and fat-soluble vitamins, whereas VLDLs deliver endogenous lipids to other tissues.

Only one *APOB* gene is present in the human genome. Nevertheless, enterocytes and hepatocytes make two different forms of apoB to synthesize CMs and VLDL, respectively. In both tissues, the human *APOB* gene is transcribed into mRNA that is 15 kilobases long. This transcript is translated into a single polypeptide in the liver, called apoB-100. In the intestine, however, *APOB* mRNA undergoes a posttranscriptional change. One cytosine residue (at position 6666) is deaminated to a uracil. This changes a glutamine codon into a stop codon. Translation of the edited mRNA gives rise to a polypeptide of 2152 amino acids that is 48% of the apoB-100 (synthesized by the liver). This editing enzyme is not expressed in the liver; therefore, the liver synthesizes only full-length apoB-100.

These lipoprotein particles begin to undergo intravascular change almost immediately after entry into the circulation through the action of LPL. This enzyme hydrolyzes triglycerides and diglycerides, releasing fatty acids and monoglycerides, which are taken up by cells and used as a source of energy. ApoC-II stimulates the hydrolysis of triglycerides. In addition to losing triglycerides by LPL-mediated hydrolysis, CM loses surface lipids and apos by transfer of these components to HDL. Overall, CMs lose significant mass in the form of triglyceride and the A and C apolipoproteins. The depleted CM remnant particle contains apoB-48 and apoE as its major apolipoproteins. These particles are rapidly removed from plasma and are sequestered in the space of Disse by binding to proteoglycans or taken by hepatocyte after binding to the LDLRs. The sequestered particles can undergo further hydrolysis by hepatic lipase and are enriched with apoE. Eventually, they are internalized and degraded by means of a rapid and specific receptor-mediated endocytic process involving LDLRs, LDLR-related protein, and proteoglycans. C apos inhibit the uptake of CMs, allowing them to remain in the circulation long enough to complete the hydrolysis of triglycerides. In the fasting state, the intestine continues to make apoB and secretes "intestinal VLDL" (small CMs). These particles may constitute up to 10% or 20% of the circulating "VLDL," but they are probably metabolized as CMs (Byers & Friedman, 1960; Cenedella & Crouthamel, 1974; Risser et al, 1978; Green & Glickman, 1981).

VLDL is synthesized in the liver. Similar to CM, VLDL is catabolized upon entry into the circulation, in part by lipoprotein lipase, and is converted to cholesterol-enriched VLDL remnants. Some of these remnants are removed from circulation by the liver via receptor-mediated endocytosis; others are further catabolized to LDL (Bachorik & Kwiterovich, 1988). LDL carries most of the circulating cholesterol and transports cholesterol to hepatic and extrahepatic tissues, where it is taken up by LDLR-mediated endocytosis (Brown et al, 1981). LDL binds to the LDLR (i.e., via apoB-100) and is subsequently internalized and directed to the lysosome, where apoB-100 is degraded and cholesteryl ester and other lipids are hydrolyzed. LDLRs are recycled back to the cell membrane (Fig. 17-4).

The unesterified cholesterol produced via lysosomal hydrolysis becomes available for membrane, hormone, and bile acid synthesis. Excess cholesterol is reesterified by the microsomal enzyme acyl:cholesterol acyl transferase (ACAT) and is stored until it is needed. High cellular free cholesterol downregulates the expression of LDLR on the cell surface, leading to reductions in LDL uptake. About two thirds of LDL is removed from plasma via hepatic LDLRs. Although most tissues use cholesterol only for membrane synthesis or store it as cholesteryl ester, the liver can utilize

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 17-6

Enzymes and Other Proteins Important for Lipoprotein Metabolism

Enzyme	Gene Location	Function	Deficiency	Tissue Expression
ABCG5	2p21	Forms heterodimers with ABCG8 to pump out plant sterols back into the intestinal lumen	Increased plant sterol levels in plasma that can disrupt cell membranes and cause sitosterolemia; influences cholesterol levels in plasma	Tissue expression in liver, colon, and intestines
ABCG8	2p21	Forms heterodimers with ABCG5 to pump out plant sterols back into intestinal lumen; also associated with cholesterol and sterol excretion in bile	Increased plant sterol levels in plasma that can disrupt cell membranes and cause sitosterolemia; influences cholesterol levels in plasma	Tissue expression in the liver, intestines, and gallbladder
ABCA1	9q22-31	Efflux of cholesterol from peripheral cells into HDL	Tangier disease, with very low HDL and accumulation of lipids in peripheral cells	Many cell types, prominently in the liver, testis, and adrenal
CETP	16q21	Transfers CE, PL, and TG among lipoproteins, esp. the transfer of CE from HDL to apoB-100–containing lipoproteins in exchange for TG	Deficiency results in large cholesterol-laden HDL	Produced in liver and circulates with HDL
EL	18q21.1	Hydrolysis of PL and TG in lipoproteins, esp. PL in HDL. Homologous to LPL and EL and pancreatic lipase	Increased levels of HDL_2, and large buoyant LDL. Overexpression in mice, decreased TC, PL, and HDL-C	Expressed in many tissues, including liver. Synthesized by endothelium
HL	15q22-23	Hydrolysis of TG and PL, esp. from HDL_2, and may be necessary for HDL metabolism. Also active on lipids in VLDL remnants and IDL. Not very active on newly released VLDL or CM	Increased TC, TG, and HDL-C in deficiency	Associates with nonparenchymal liver cells
LCAT	16q22.1	Catalyzes the esterification of cholesterol, esp. in HDL, by promoting transfer of fatty acids from lecithin to cholesterol. Enables HDL to accumulate cholesterol as CE. Activated by apoA-I	Deficiency results in decreased HDL.	Produced in liver and circulates with HDL
LPL	8q22	Hydrolysis of TG in lipoproteins (esp. VLDL and CM), releasing free fatty acids and glycerol to tissues. ApoC-II are essential cofactors.	Large CM and VLDL with very high TG levels	Present on surface of capillary endothelial cells in adipose tissue and skeletal and heart muscle, but not produced by endothelial cells
LDLR	19p13.2	Binds apoE and apoB-100 and mediates endocytosis of lipoproteins, mostly LDL, but also VLDL, IDL, and CM remnants	Familial hypercholesterolemia results primarily in elevated LDL	Expressed on most cell types, but hepatic receptors clear 70% of LDL
MTP	4q24	Lipidates and regulates secretion of ApoB particles from the liver and intestines	Deficiency of MTP function leads to abetalipoproteinemia where ApoB lipoproteins are virtually undetectable in plasma.	Expression is seen in liver, intestines, heart, kidney, and eye
PLTP	20q12	Transfer of PL to and from HDL. Important for HDL growth and remodeling	Deficiency in mice results in low HDL.	Expressed on many cell types
PCSK9	1p32.3	Influences the number of LDLRs expressed on cell surface	Depending on mutation—either gain of function or loss of function—the presence of PCSK9 affects availability of LDLR on cell surface and, consequently, the levels of LDL in plasma; gain of function leads to more LDL in plasma; loss of function associates with increased LDLR expression and thus less LDL in plasma.	Secreted protein by the liver cells; expressed in pancreatic islet beta cells and neuronal cells
SR-B1	12q24.31	Binds HDL on cell surface. Plays a role in selective uptake of CE from HDL in liver and steroidogenic tissues. May also enable macrophages to bind oxidized LDL	Accumulation of large CE-rich HDL, and accelerated atherosclerosis in mice	Macrophage, adrenal, liver and testis

ABCA1, ATP-binding cassette protein A1; *Apo,* apolipoprotein; *CE,* capillary electrophoresis; *CETP,* cholesterol ester transfer protein; *CM,* chylomicron; *EL,* endothelial lipase; *HDL,* high-density lipoprotein; *HDL_2,* ultracentrifugation subclass of HDL; *HDL-C,* high-density lipoprotein cholesterol; *HL,* hepatic lipase; *IDL,* intermediate-density lipoprotein; *LCAT,* lecithin cholesterol acyltransferase; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein; *LDLR,* LDL receptor; *LPL,* lipoprotein lipase; *MTP,* microsomal triglyceride transfer protein; *PL,* phospholipid; *PLTP,* phospholipid transfer protein; *SR-B1,* scavenger receptor class B, member 1; *TC,* total cholesterol; *TG,* triglycerides; *VLDL,* very-low-density lipoprotein.

http://basicbook.net

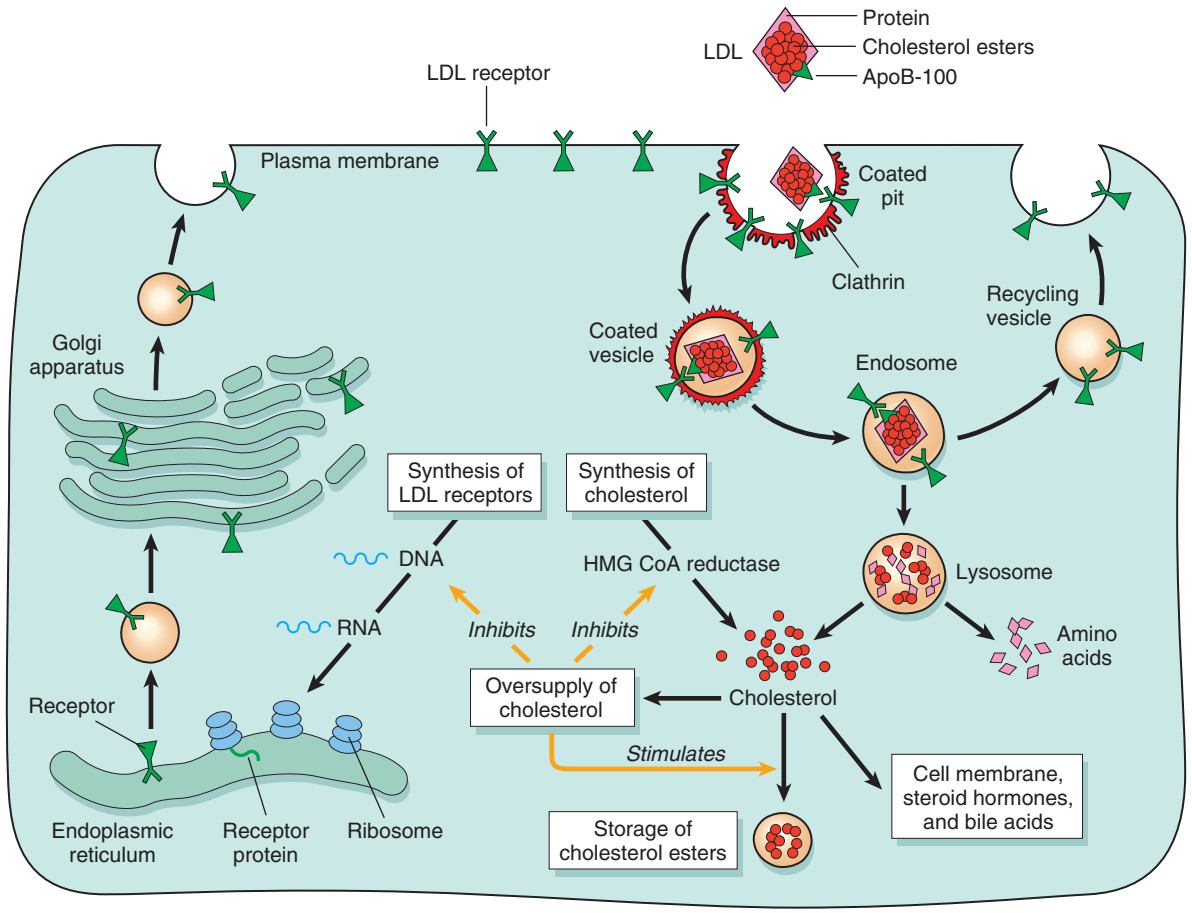


Figure 17-4 The low-density lipoprotein (LDL) receptor pathway and regulation of cholesterol metabolism.

cholesterol in other ways. The liver excretes cholesterol into the bile both as unesterified cholesterol and after conversion to bile acids, and it reuses cholesterol for lipoprotein synthesis, as when it secretes VLDL into the circulation. Steroid-secreting tissues use cholesterol as a precursor of the steroid hormones.

LDL and CM remnants deliver lipids to the tissues. In contrast, HDL is thought to be the vehicle for reverse cholesterol transport, the process by which excess cholesterol is removed from peripheral tissues and transported back to the liver. HDL is secreted from both the liver and the intestine as nascent, disk-shaped particles that contain apos, cholesterol, and phospholipid (Havel, 1980; Scanu et al, 1982; Oram, 1986; Oppenheimer et al, 1987). The formation of nascent HDL particles is almost exclusively dependent on the synthesis and release of apoA-I. HDL also arises de novo in circulation from excess surface material (e.g., free cholesterol, apoA-I, apoA-II, apoC, phospholipid) removed from the triglyceride-rich lipoproteins as they are catabolized. In peripheral tissues, excess cholesterol is exported from cells (including macrophages), in part through the action of the protein ATP-binding cassette transporter 1 (ABCA1). This free cholesterol is accumulated by nascent HDL particles and esterified by LCAT. As cholesterol esters move into the hydrophobic core, the particle becomes spherical and larger, developing eventually into HDL_3 and then HDL_2. Two plasma proteins are involved in the remodeling of HDL: phospholipid transfer protein (PLTP) and cholesterol ester transfer protein (CETP). CETP catalyzes the transfer of cholesterol esters to apoB-100–containing particles in exchange for triglycerides (Tall, 1990). PLTP facilitates the transfer of phospholipids from other lipoproteins to HDL, allowing the particle to grow by acquiring surface phospholipid as it accumulates esterified cholesterol and triglyceride in its core. Once formed, HDL delivers excess lipids, especially cholesterol, to the liver and other tissues (Glass et al, 1983; Stein et al, 1984; Bachorik et al, 1987). This may occur directly when HDL is taken up by the hepatocytes, mainly via Scavenger receptor class B member 1 (SR-B1) or through the action of cell surface receptors and lipases (HL and EL) that deplete phospholipid and triglyceride without internalizing the HDL particles. Lipids may also return to the liver indirectly or be directed to peripheral tissues via apoB-lipoproteins to which they are transferred from HDL by CETP.

Although HDL particles may return to the liver soon after formation, the bulk of HDL seems to remain in circulation for several days, continuously exchanging lipids and apos with other lipoprotein particles, retrieving additional cholesterol from peripheral tissues, and delivering those lipids to the liver and steroid-producing tissues. This is supported by the fact that apoA-I has a half-life of several days in circulation. Eventually, mature HDL is internalized by the liver SR-BI, or small lipid-depleted HDL may be catabolized in the kidney following filtration and cubulin-mediated reuptake in the proximal tubule.

LIPID AND LIPOPROTEIN MEASUREMENT

Lipoprotein concentrations have been measured and described in several ways. Some of these measurements, including particle mass and mass concentration (the mass of each lipoprotein particle as solute per liter of solution), are not easily applied for screening or routine clinical purposes. Fortunately, other methods may be used to describe the lipoprotein content of blood. Because the cholesterol composition of each lipoprotein class is similar from individual to individual, lipoprotein cholesterol is commonly used to evaluate lipoprotein concentration. For example, it is easier to determine the amount of LDL-C in a specimen than it is to determine the mass of LDL (cholesterol + triglyceride + protein) in solution, yet both measurements provide similar information about the LDL content of plasma. Lipoprotein-cholesterol concentrations correlate well with analytic ultracentrifugation values. Also, because these values have been used in most population studies of cardiovascular risk, they have documented predictive value.

When various methods of lipid analysis are considered, several issues should be kept in mind. First, the more complicated the analytic procedures, the greater the variability of the analyses (Bookstein et al, 1990; Brown et al, 1990). For example, the measurement of plasma lipoproteins usually requires two steps: separating lipoprotein classes and measuring the class of interest. Both steps contribute to the error in the measurements. Consistent with this, lipoprotein cholesterol analyses are generally more variable than total cholesterol (TC) analyses because of the additional manipulations required in preparing the lipoprotein-containing

http://basicbook.net

fractions. Second, in addition to analytic sources of error, significant preanalytic variables may affect measured lipid and lipoprotein levels. In fact, plasma lipoprotein concentrations can change dramatically as a result of normal physiologic variation. In this section, issues of sampling and storage are considered, along with methods for measuring lipids and lipoproteins.

BLOOD SAMPLING AND STORAGE

Variation and error can be introduced before or during venipuncture, or when the samples are handled and stored before analysis. Therefore, it is important to standardize conditions under which blood specimens are drawn and prepared for analysis.

Biologic Variation

Physiologic variations in cholesterol, triglyceride, and lipoproteins have been examined in a number of studies (Warnick et al, 1979; Demacker et al, 1982; Bookstein et al, 1990; Brown et al, 1990; Kafonek, 1992). For cholesterol, the coefficient of physiologic variation within an individual averages about 6.5%, but it can be higher in certain individuals (Table 17-7). When measured in serial samples from the same person, cholesterol levels in 95% of the samples will vary by about 13% above or below that person's mean level. As a result, physiologic variation can be several times greater than analytic error, and measurements must be made in several blood samples taken at least a week apart to establish the individual's usual lipoprotein concentration.

A variety of biologic factors can affect lipid and lipoprotein levels. Cholesterol levels rise with age, starting in early adulthood, in both sexes. Women have lower levels than men, except in childhood and after the early fifties. Age-related variation forms the basis for the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) recommendation that cholesterol screening should be repeated every 5 years. Seasonal variation also occurs, such that cholesterol levels are slightly higher in the winter (Robinson et al, 1992). Also, dietary intake of saturated fat and cholesterol significantly influences plasma lipid levels. The effects of dietary modification take several weeks to become apparent; thus before individuals' cholesterol levels are ascertained, it is important that they be on their usual diet for 2 weeks and are neither gaining nor losing weight. Several common medications, including oral contraceptives, postmenopausal estrogens, and some antihypertensive drugs, significantly alter lipid levels. Medical disorders that lead to secondary dyslipoproteinemia include thyroid, hepatic, and kidney disease (see Table 17-12). In such cases, management of hyperlipidemia is predominantly a function of treating the underlying disorder. Lifestyle and biological factors that produce short-term deviations from baseline lipid values include alcohol consumption, fasting, posture, venous occlusion, anticoagulants, recent myocardial infarction, stroke, cardiac catheterization, trauma, acute infection, and pregnancy. It is recommended that lipoprotein measurements be made no sooner than 8 weeks after any form of trauma or acute bacterial or viral infection, and 3 to 4 months after childbirth.

Fasting

Ideally, patients should fast for 12 hours before venipuncture. CMs are usually present in postprandial plasma and, depending on the type and amount of food ingested, can markedly increase the plasma triglyceride (TG) concentration. Concentrations of LDL- and HDL-cholesterol (LDL-C and HDL-C) also decline transiently after eating, in part as a consequence of CETP-mediated compositional changes that occur during the catabolism of CMs (Cohn et al, 1988). CMs are almost completely cleared within 6 to 9 hours, and their presence after a 12-hour fast is considered abnormal. Generally, TC and HDL-C levels can be measured in nonfasting individuals, greatly facilitating screening and monitoring. Fasting has little effect on plasma TC levels, and although nonfasting HDL-C levels can be a few mg/dL lower than fasting levels, this should not lead to misclassification of patients with low HDL levels. When TG and LDL-C are being measured, fasting becomes a requirement. The postprandial appearance of CMs and compositional changes in LDL lead to the underestimation of LDL-C and can result in the misclassification of truly affected patients. The NCEP Adult Treatment Panel III (ATP III) (NCEP, 2002) has recommended that patients fast for at least 9 hours before blood specimens are taken for lipid and lipoprotein analysis. This is an accommodation for patients who may be unable or unwilling to fast for 12 hours. The shorter fasting period should produce only minor and clinically insignificant errors in the estimation of the patient's usual TG, LDL-C, and HDL-C levels. A 12-hour fasting period is still considered appropriate when lipoprotein measurements are made in clinical and epidemiologic studies.

TABLE 17-7
Physiologic Variation of Plasma Lipids, Lipoproteins, and Apolipoproteins

Component	CVP (%)*	CVP (%)†
Total cholesterol	5.0	6.4
Triglycerides	17.8	23.7
LDL-cholesterol	7.8	8.2
HDL-cholesterol	7.1	7.5
ApoA-I	7.1	—
ApoB	6.4	—

CVP, Coefficient of physiologic variation; *HDL,* high-density lipoprotein; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein.
*Data from patients of a lipid clinic (Kafonek et al, 1992).
†Data from the National Cholesterol Education Program 1995 Working Group on Lipoprotein Measurement.

Posture

When a standing patient reclines, extravascular water transfers to the vascular system and dilutes nondiffusible plasma constituents. Decreases of as much as 10% in the concentrations of TC, LDL-C, HDL-C, apoA-I, and apoB (Miller et al, 1992) have been observed after a 20-minute period of recumbence. The decrease in TG is about 50% greater, suggesting that factors other than simple hemodilution may also operate. These effects are about half as great in a standing subject who sits (Miller et al, 1992). Postural changes are reversible when the patient resumes the standing position. The position of the patient therefore should be standardized for venipuncture, preferably to the sitting position, which is most commonly used. Current NCEP guidelines recommend that patients be seated for 5 minutes before sampling to prevent hemoconcentration. If it is necessary to use the recumbent position, this position should be used each time the patient is sampled to minimize postural change. Prolonged venous occlusion can lead to hemoconcentration and cholesterol increases of 10% to 15%. Tourniquets should not be applied for longer than a minute or two, if possible.

Venous Versus Capillary Samples

Although it is generally assumed that venous and capillary samples are equivalent, the available information at present is limited and somewhat contradictory. Some investigators have found that cholesterol measurements in the two kinds of samples agreed in about 4% (Koch et al, 1987) or less (Lunz et al, 1987; Law et al, 1997), but others have reported differences of 8% to 12% (Bachorik et al, 1990). In general, measurements in capillary blood samples seem to be a little lower than in venous samples. Additionally, measurements in fingerstick samples tend to be more variable than in venous samples obtained at the same time, probably as the result of preanalytic sources of error. Estimates for the biologic component of within-subject variations have been made for lipid and lipoprotein in venous and fingerstick samples and are similar in both kinds of samples for cholesterol, TG, HDL, and LDL (Kafonek et al, 1996). Although the use of capillary samples may be unavoidable under some conditions, it is good to keep in mind first that the epidemiologic data from which risk levels for lipids and lipoproteins are derived are based on measurements in venous samples, and second, that for various physiologic and methodologic reasons, the measurements in the two kinds of samples may differ.

Plasma Versus Serum

Plasma or serum can be used when only cholesterol, TG, and HDL-C are measured, and LDL-C is calculated from these three measurements (see later); however, plasma is preferred when the lipoproteins are measured by ultracentrifugal or electrophoretic methods because the samples can be cooled to 4° C immediately to retard changes that can occur in the lipoproteins at room temperature. When plasma is to be used, blood is cooled in an ice bath as soon as it is drawn, and the cells are removed as soon as possible, generally within 3 hours. The plasma is then stored at 4° C until it is analyzed. Plasma should not remain in contact with the cells overnight. Even in the presence of the anticoagulant, protein aggregation can occur in plasma that is stored in the refrigerator for a few days or frozen for longer periods. This can make it difficult to obtain a homogeneous aliquot for analysis and can interfere with the flow of sample in automated

http://basicbook.net

analyzers, resulting in inaccurate or variable results. Protein aggregation occurs less frequently in serum.

The choice of anticoagulant is also important. Some anticoagulants, such as citrate, exert rather large osmotic effects that result in falsely low plasma lipid and lipoprotein concentrations. Heparin, because of its relatively high molecular weight, has little effect on plasma volume but can alter the electrophoretic mobilities of the lipoproteins. Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) is the preferred anticoagulant even though cholesterol and triglyceride concentrations in EDTA plasma are about 3% lower than in serum (Laboratory Methods Committee of the Lipid Research Clinics Program, 1977). This anticoagulant retards certain kinds of oxidative and enzymatic alterations that occur in the lipoproteins during storage.

Storage

Generally, TC, triglycerides, and HDL-C can be satisfactorily analyzed in frozen samples, and LDL-C concentrations can be estimated with the Friedewald equation (Friedewald et al, 1972). Apolipoproteins can also be measured in frozen samples (see later). Frozen samples are not appropriate for ultracentrifugal analysis because the triglyceride-rich lipoproteins do not withstand freezing. HDL free cholesterol and VLDL free fatty acid decrease by about 35%, and LDL cholesterol ester increases by 35% upon single freeze and thaw (Zivkovic et al, 2009). When serum or plasma must be stored for long periods, it should be maintained at temperatures of –70° C or lower. For short-term storage (up to 1 or 2 months), the samples can be kept at –20° C, but they should not be stored in a self-defrosting freezer. The temperature in a self-defrosting freezer actually cycles between about –20° C and 2° C during the defrost cycle and effectively subjects the samples to daily freeze–thaw cycles, which can hasten their deterioration and cause the lipid and lipoprotein measurements to become variable (i.e., less reproducible). Quantification of lipid and apos are not affected within three freeze and thaw cycles. In most lipid classes, the effect of storage temperature over 1 week is minimal between 4°C, –20°C, and –80°C (Zivkovic et al. 2009).

ESTIMATION OF PLASMA LIPIDS

Cholesterol and triglycerides are the plasma lipids of greatest interest in the diagnosis and management of lipoprotein disorders. Phospholipid analyses generally provide little additional information and are seldom required. Occasionally, they may be requested in cases of obstructive liver disease or disorders associated with abnormally low lipoprotein levels.

Cholesterol

Cholesterol accounts for almost all of the sterol in plasma. It exists as a mixture of unesterified (30% to 40%) and esterified (60% to 70%) forms; the proportion of the two forms is fairly constant among normal individuals. TC and lipoprotein-cholesterol concentrations are usually expressed in terms of the sterol nucleus without distinguishing the esterified and unesterified fractions. In general, it is not necessary to distinguish the two forms, except in cases where the contribution of the fatty acid moiety to cholesteryl ester mass must be accounted for or when the cholesterol/cholesteryl ester mass ratio is of interest.

This discussion considers primarily the enzymatic methods of cholesterol quantification, which have virtually replaced the chemical methods that were used for most clinical and research purposes (Bachorik et al, 1976; Wood et al, 1980; Lipid Research Clinics Program, 1982). However, one chemical method, a modification of the Abell-Kendall method (Abell et al, 1952), continues as the reference method for cholesterol used by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and a network of secondary reference laboratories (Myers et al, 1989). In the Abell-Kendall method, cholesteryl esters are hydrolyzed with alcoholic potassium hydroxide (KOH), and the unesterified cholesterol is extracted with petroleum ether and measured with the Liebermann-Burchard reagent using purified cholesterol standards. This method can be accurate within about 0.5% of true value.

Enzymatic Methods

These methods measure TC directly in plasma or serum through a series of reactions in which cholesteryl esters are hydrolyzed. The 3-OH group of cholesterol is oxidized, and hydrogen peroxide, one of the reaction products, is quantified enzymatically:

$$\text{Cholesteryl ester} + H_2O \xrightarrow[\text{esterase}]{\text{Cholesteryl}} \text{Cholesterol} + \text{Free fatty acid} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 17-1)}$$

$$\text{Cholesterol} + O_2 \xrightarrow[\text{oxidase}]{\text{Cholesterol}} \text{Cholest-4-en-3-one} + H_2O_2 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 17-2)}$$

$$2H_2O_2 + \text{Phenol} + \text{4-aminoantipyrine} \xrightarrow{\text{Peroxidase}} \text{Quinoneimine dye} + 4H_2O \quad \textbf{(Eq. 17-3)}$$

To complete the enzymatic measurement of TC, there must be a way to quantify the by products of the reaction. One method is the measurement of oxygen consumption; a benefit of this method is that interference by some components within serum/plasma is minimized (Rifai et al, 2000). Interference will be discussed further later. However, oxygen consumption methods are not easily automated and generally require a lot of cholesterol oxidase. For this reason, this method has not been widely used.

Another approach is to measure cholest-4-en-3-one during the dehydrogenase reaction (Equation 17-2). This compound can be measured at 240 nm. However, the procedure to measure the compound is time-consuming and very difficult to perform, and therefore has fallen out of favor for use clinically or in a purely research setting (Rifai et al, 2000). Currently, the most common method of quantifying the cholesterol oxidase reaction is to measure the amount of hydrogen peroxide produced (Equation 17-3). The hydrogen peroxide produced in the cholesterol oxidase reaction can be oxidatively coupled to two chromogenic substrates by catalysis with a peroxidase, most commonly horseradish peroxidase (HRP). The chromogens used are usually phenol and 4-aminoantipyrine. When coupled with hydrogen peroxide, they produce a quinoneimine dye that can be read photometrically at 500 nm. The catalytic properties of HRP are very nonspecific; therefore, this step is most subject to interference from other components of serum/plasma.

Interfering Substances

Enzymatic methods are less subject to interference by nonsterol substances that react in the chemical methods; however, they are not absolutely specific for cholesterol. Cholesterol oxidase (Equation 17-2) can react with sterols other than cholesterol that are present in plasma such as plant sterols, which are present in appreciable concentrations in the circulation of patients with β-sitosterolemia. These sterols also contribute to the cholesterol values measured via most chemical methods. Another type of interfering agent is ascorbic acid. Ascorbic acid is known for its properties as a reducing agent. These properties allow it to compete with the chromogenic substrates of Equation 17-3 for hydrogen peroxide. Therefore, plasma/serum samples with elevated levels of ascorbic acid can result in lower measured levels of TC. It is currently accepted that ascorbic acid levels over 30 mg/dL should be accounted for in TC measurements, although levels that high are infrequent (Rifai et al, 2000). Another interfering agent that acts in a similar manner is bilirubin. Bilirubin can interfere with TC measurements because of its own spectral properties; bilirubin absorbs light at 500 nm (Rifai et al, 2000). This tends to increase measured cholesterol values. However, bilirubin is also oxidized by H_2O_2, and as a result loses its absorbance at 500 nm. This complicates the application of a serum blank to correct for bilirubin absorbance. On the whole, interference by bilirubin seems to be significant only at concentrations exceeding 5 mg/dL, at which level it has been reported to decrease apparent cholesterol values by 5% to 15% (Pesce & Bodourian, 1977; Deacon & Dawson, 1979; Naito & David, 1984). Sample turbidity as a result of hypertriglyceridemia can also interfere with enzymatic methods (Pesce & Bodourian, 1977). Hemoglobin is another possible interfering agent in the measurement of TC. It has a pseudo-peroxidase activity that can consume the hydrogen peroxide produced in Equation 17-2. More important, however, is that hemoglobin has an inherent color that can falsely elevate TC levels. Just as hemoglobin is a product of red blood cell hemolysis, other products of hemolysis, such as catalase, can compete with the peroxidase for hydrogen peroxide. However, hemolyzed products do not significantly affect cholesterol measurements even at abnormally high plasma concentrations (Pesce & Bodourian, 1977; Deacon & Dawson, 1979).

In addition to their relative resistance to interference, enzymatic methods have other significant benefits. They consume only microliter quantities of sample and do not require a preliminary extraction step. They are rapid, and if the cholesteryl ester hydrolase step is omitted, they can be used to measure unesterified cholesterol. Finally, enzymatic methods are precise, with coefficients of variation generally in the range of 1% to 2%. For the most part, they use stabilized pure cholesterol standards or serum calibration standards for which the stated values are traceable to the CDC reference method for cholesterol (Pesce & Bodourian, 1977). Enzymatic values generally agree with reference values within 1% to 2% when

http://basicbook.net

measured in a laboratory setting with modern equipment. Serum-based calibrators are inherently preferable to pure cholesterol, because they are subject to all analytic reactions undergone by patient samples.

Triglycerides

A wide variety of methods have been used to measure plasma triglycerides, but the methods most commonly used for clinical or epidemiologic purposes are based on the hydrolysis of triglycerides and the measurement of glycerol that is released in the reaction:

$$\text{Triglyceride} + 3H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{Lipase}} \text{Glycerol} + \text{Fatty acid} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-4)}$$

Because each glycerol molecule is calculated to represent a triglyceride molecule, TG concentrations are often overestimated if endogenous unesterified glycerol is not subtracted. Even so, TG levels will still remain an overestimation because of the presence of monoglyceride and diglyceride molecules. Despite this knowledge and the availability of reagents and methods to correct for endogenous glycerol, only about 5% of American clinical laboratories actually correct for endogenous glycerol. The reason for this is that in most normal individuals, endogenous glycerol levels are negligible.

TG measurements are almost universally performed enzymatically; as with cholesterol, the enzymatic methods have replaced earlier chemical methods (Kessler & Lederer, 1966; Lipid Research Clinics Program, 1982).

One chemical method still used is the CDC reference method for triglycerides. The CDC reference method uses a chloroform extraction procedure followed by silicic acid chromatography to isolate TG. Glycerol is released by saponification (alkaline hydrolysis of triglycerides) and is oxidized with sodium periodate:

$$\text{Glycerol} + NaIO_4 \rightarrow \text{Formaldehyde} + \text{Formic acid} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-5)}$$

The formaldehyde produced is measured by reaction with a sulfuric acid solution of chromotropic acid to produce a pink chromophore. This method is not specific for glycerol. Formaldehyde is also produced indirectly from glycerol-containing phospholipids; however, these and other interfering substances are removed during the extraction (with chloroform) and adsorption (silicic acid chromatography) steps and do not interfere with TG measurements made using the CDC reference method.

Enzymatic Methods

Enzymatic methods (Bucolo & David, 1973) are now universally used for TG analysis in the clinical laboratory. They are relatively specific, rapid, and easy to use. The analyses are performed directly in plasma or serum and are not subject to interference by phospholipids or glucose.

Common to most enzymatic methods is the hydrolysis of triglycerides to free fatty acids and glycerol, followed by the phosphorylation of glycerol to glycerophosphate.

$$\text{Triglycerides} \xrightarrow{\text{Lipase}} \text{Glycerol} + \text{Fatty acids} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-6)}$$

$$\text{Glycerol} + \text{ATP} \xrightarrow{\text{Glycerokinase}} \text{Glycerophosphate} + \text{ADP} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-7)}$$

However, several methods may be used to quantify the amount of glycerol formed and thus the amount of triglyceride in plasma. In one approach, glycerophosphate reacts as follows:

$$\text{Glycerophosphate} + \text{NAD} \xrightarrow[\text{dehydrogenase}]{\text{Glycerophosphate}} \text{Dihydroxyacetone phosphate} + \text{NADH} + H_4 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-8)}$$

$$\text{NADH} + \text{Tetrazolium dye} \xrightarrow{\text{Diaphorase}} \text{Formazan} + \text{NAD}^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-9)}$$

NADH formation can be measured spectrophotometrically at 340 nm. In other methods, Equation 17-9 has been added so that absorbance readings can be made in the 500- to 600-nm region of the spectrum, using instruments that are more commonly available in the clinical laboratory.

In a common variation, the glycerophosphate formed in Equation 17-7 is oxidized by the action of glycerophosphate oxidase:

$$\text{Glycerophosphate} + O_2 \xrightarrow[\text{oxidase}]{\text{Glycerophosphate}} \text{Dihydroxyacetone} + H_2O_2 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-10)}$$

The resulting H_2O_2 is measured as described previously for cholesterol methods (Equation 17-3).

In a third approach, adenosine diphosphate (ADP) rather than glycerophosphate is formed in Equation 7-7, and is quantified:

$$\text{ADP} + \text{Phosphoenol pyruvate} \xrightarrow[\text{kinase}]{\text{Pyruvate}} \text{ATP} + \text{Pyruvate} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-11)}$$

$$\text{Pyruvate} + \text{NADH} + H^+ \xrightarrow[\text{dehydrogenase}]{\text{Lactate}} \text{Lactate} + \text{NAD}^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-12)}$$

In this method, the disappearance of NADH is measured at 340 nm.

Enzymatic TG methods generally perform well. The reagents are available commercially as lyophilized preparations that need only to be reconstituted before use. Based on recent College of American Pathologists (CAP) surveys, the interlaboratory coefficients of variation (CVs) for TG measurement using a variety of enzymatic methods were on the order of 5% to 6%. It is prudent before selecting an enzymatic method to evaluate its accuracy and precision over the range of triglyceride concentrations likely to be encountered most frequently (1.299 to 12.987 mmol/L; 50 to 500 mg/dL).

Triglyceride Blanks

Enzymatic measurements of triglyceride involve the generation and measurement of glycerol. Although phospholipids and glucose do not interfere with enzymatic methods, free glycerol does. Glycerol is normally present in plasma in concentrations below 0.163 mmol/L (1.5 mg/dL) equivalent to a triglyceride concentration of about 14 mg/dL. However, concentrations can be higher in the following circumstances: after extremely vigorous exercise; in patients with uncontrolled diabetes; after chance contamination with the glycerol lubricant used on the stoppers of some blood collection tubes; after recent ingestion of glycerol-containing medications; or in a relatively rare disorder, hyperglycerolemia, which arises secondary to a mutation in the glycerol kinase gene on chromosome Xp21.3. A blank assay, without the addition of lipase, provides a measure of preexisting glycerol. Increased readings in the blank indicate the presence of glycerol, and measured TG values can be corrected accordingly. In an alternative procedure, free glycerol is consumed in a preliminary reaction before triglyceride hydrolysis is initiated. In this case, the measured value is the equivalent of a blanked triglyceride.

The blanking procedures described earlier are satisfactory for correcting spurious measurements that arise from many glycerol sources but not for those that result from partial glycerides (diglycerides and monoglycerides). Partial glycerides are generally present at very low concentrations in fresh plasma or serum but can form through the slow hydrolysis of triglycerides when samples are stored. It is not clear whether partial glycerides in fresh plasma should be subtracted, but those that form during storage probably should not be subtracted because they arise from triglycerides that were originally present in the sample.

Fortunately, as complex as the blanking problem is, it is usually of little practical importance. Blanks are not determined routinely in many laboratories, and their use continues to be a matter of uncertainty. When measured, the magnitude of the blanks encountered in most fresh samples is on the order of 0.056 to 0.112 mmol/L (5 to 10 mg/dL), expressed as triglyceride, although they can be higher in samples with high triglyceride concentrations. However, blanks can assume importance in the standardization and quality control of triglyceride measurements because they can be on the order of 0.226 to 0.339 mmol/L (20 to 30 mg/dL) or greater in serum pools used for these purposes. This is probably a result of the partial hydrolysis of triglycerides during preparation of the pools.

Interfering Substances

As with cholesterol measurement interference, TG measurement is subjected to similar interference by the same substances. Plasma ascorbic acid is an antioxidant that can interfere with the oxidation/reduction reactions involved in the measurement of TG. Bilirubin can also cause interference, both spectrally and chemically. Significant plasma hemolysis can spectrally interfere with TG measurements and may cause the dilution of lipid constituents.

Phospholipids

Most of the phospholipid in human plasma is phosphatidylcholine (70% to 75%) or sphingomyelin (18% to 20%). Remaining phospholipids include phosphatidylserine, phosphatidylethanolamine (3% to 6%), and lysophosphatidylcholine (4% to 9%). Phospholipid measurement is not routinely performed in the clinical laboratory. The reason for this is that phospholipid analysis usually provides little additional information in cases of dyslipoproteinemia. Another reason is that the phospholipid concentration in plasma is not altered as markedly as that of cholesterol and TG in various pathologic conditions. However, estimation of lipoprotein phospholipids provides information that at times can be more important than cholesterol or TG concentrations. For example, only 10% to 20% of the

http://basicbook.net

total weight of HDL is cholesterol, but almost 25% to 30% of it is phospholipid, making it a far more accurate reflection of HDL content (Rifai et al, 2000). Furthermore, the phospholipid content of HDL is more important than cholesterol or even apolipoprotein A-I in reverse cholesterol transport; abnormalities in HDL phospholipid composition have been noted to have a greater effect on HDL function than cholesterol concentration. Phospholipids are also important substrates for a number of lipoprotein metabolizing enzymes (e.g., LCAT, LPL, HL); therefore, changes in the composition could adversely affect the function of these enzymes. Most important, the dietary status of essential fatty acids is more accurately assessed by the fatty acid composition of phospholipids rather than total lipids. It has also been noted that the saturated fatty acid content of plasma phospholipids is reported to be an independent risk factor for atherosclerosis.

The only unique structural feature common to all phospholipids is the presence of lipid-bound phosphate. Therefore, most of the methods originally designed to determine plasma phospholipids depend on the estimation of lipid phosphorus. Lipids are extracted from the sample and are oxidized completely to convert phospholipid phosphorus to inorganic phosphate, which is then determined colorimetrically. These procedures are reproducible and sensitive and can be adapted to measure total phospholipid phosphorus in 100 µL or less of plasma or serum. Each mole of phosphorus contributes about 4% to the total phospholipid mass; thus phospholipid mass can be determined by multiplying the phospholipid phosphorus concentration (expressed in mg/dL) by 25.

Serum or plasma phospholipids can also be measured enzymatically using commercially available methods. In the method available from WAKO Pure Chemical Industries, Ltd. (Osaka, Japan), lecithin (phosphatidylcholine), sphingomyelin, and lysolecithin are hydrolyzed using phospholipase D, and the choline liberated is oxidized.

$$\text{Phospholipid} \xrightarrow{\text{Phospholipase D}} \text{Choline} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-13)}$$

$$\text{Choline} \xrightarrow[\text{oxidase}]{\text{Choline}} \text{Betaine} + H_2O_2 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 17-14)}$$

The resulting H_2O_2 produced is measured in a manner similar to that shown in Equation 17-3. Analysis of individual phospholipid classes is seldom required for evaluation of dyslipoproteinemia and is not discussed in this chapter.

ESTIMATION OF LIPOPROTEINS AND LIPOPROTEIN CHOLESTEROL

Because lipoproteins share common lipid and apolipoprotein components, the central problem in lipoprotein analysis is the separation of different lipoprotein classes from one another. Many methods have been applied to lipoprotein separation, including ultracentrifugation, adsorption, gel filtration, affinity chromatography, electrophoresis in various media, polyanion and alcohol precipitation, immunochemical procedures, and various combinations of methods. Some of these methods require special skills and equipment and are not easily adapted for clinical or epidemiologic purposes. This discussion is limited to several procedures that have been used by clinical laboratories.

Ultracentrifugation Methods

These take advantage of two properties of the lipoproteins. First, by virtue of their lipid content, lipoproteins have lower densities than other plasma macromolecules. Second, each class of lipoproteins has a different density. Thus lipoproteins can be readily separated on the basis of their densities by using ultracentrifugation techniques. The proportion of lipids, in particular TG, associated with appropriate proteins determines the density of a particular lipoprotein class. VLDL and chylomicrons are the most lipid-rich lipoprotein classes in human blood. This fact leaves them as the most buoyant in plasma. These lipoproteins have a density of lerss than 1.006 kg/L (density measurement). LDL particles are smaller in size and in lipid content, causing their density to range from 1.006 to 1.063 kg/L. HDL, the densest lipoprotein, ranges from 1.063 to 1.210 kg/L (Rifai et al, 2000). Ultracentrifugation methods are largely considered the best means to compare lipoprotein classes; however, the technique is difficult, time-consuming, and expensive, leaving it for research settings rather than clinical measurement.

Electrophoretic Methods

In the past, electrophoresis was widely used in the clinical laboratory to separate and measure lipoproteins. However, because the method has significant limitations (described later), it generally is not required for the diagnosis of dyslipoproteinemia, and its use in routine clinical practice has diminished in recent years. In general, the cost of the procedure, in terms of both time and money, is rarely justified by the information provided.

The most commonly used support medium for lipoprotein electrophoresis is agarose gel because of its speed, sensitivity, and ability to resolve the lipoprotein classes. Chylomicrons, if present, remain at the origin. Of the remaining major lipoproteins, HDL migrates the fastest, LDL the slowest, and VLDL at a rate intermediate between HDL and LDL. The electrophoretically separated lipoproteins have been named according to their mobilities: HDL (α-lipoprotein) moves with the α_1-globulins; LDL (β-lipoprotein) migrates with the β-globulins, and VLDL (pre-β lipoprotein) migrates with the β_2-globulins. Different properties of lipoproteins form the basis for electrophoretic and ultracentrifugal separation, and analogous fractions separated by the two techniques may not be identical. For example, β-VLDL (found in type 3 hyperlipidemia; see later) is isolated with VLDL by ultracentrifugation but moves electrophoretically with LDL. In the absence of additional information, a sample containing β-VLDL would appear to have an elevated VLDL concentration by ultracentrifugation and an increased LDL concentration by electrophoresis. Another example is that Lp(a) is isolated in the LDL–HDL density range by ultracentrifugation, but it has an electrophoretic mobility similar to that of VLDL. This dichotomy is responsible for naming Lp(a) "sinking pre-β-lipoprotein."

Electrophoresis can be performed using unfractionated plasma or in plasma fractions that contain other serum proteins. Lipoprotein electrophoretograms are usually visualized with a lipid-staining dye such as Oil Red O, Fat Red 7B, or Sudan Black B. These lipid stains react primarily with the ester bonds in triglycerides and cholesteryl esters. Lipoproteins rich in free cholesterol and phospholipids (such as LpX) stain very poorly and thus are grossly underestimated by electrophoretic techniques.

Attempts have been made to quantify the lipoproteins by densitometry. Lipoprotein levels have been expressed in terms of the percentage distribution of lipid-staining material in β-, pre-β, and α-lipoproteins, or have been converted to lipoprotein–cholesterol concentrations according to calculations that incorporate assumptions about cholesterol content and dye uptake of the lipoproteins. In general, these approaches have not been successful for reasons that include incomplete resolution of β- and pre-β-lipoproteins, the presence of minor or unusual lipoproteins, and differences in the intensity of staining. Electrophoresis has been used most successfully in conjunction with other methods.

Polyanion Precipitation Methods

Some lipoproteins are precipitated with polyanions such as heparin sulfate, dextran sulfate, phosphotungstate, and others in the presence of divalent cations such as Ca^{++}, Mg^{++}, and Mn^{++}. Conditions have been established in which the major classes of lipoproteins can be precipitated in stepwise fashion beginning with the lower-density, lipid-rich lipoproteins (Burstein & Legmann, 1982). The more dissimilar the lipoproteins are from one another, the better the separation. Thus it is easier to separate apoB-containing lipoproteins from HDL than it is to separate VLDL from LDL or HDL_2 from HDL_3. Historically, polyanion precipitation was most commonly used to remove apoB-containing lipoproteins before analysis of HDL-C. This requires a sample pretreatment that is not fully automated. Most clinical laboratories have replaced precipitation techniques with automated homogeneous assays for HDL-C and LDL-C.

Determining HDL-C Values

The NCEP recognizes HDL-C as an independent risk factor for CHD and recommends its measurement in conjunction with TC measurements. An HDL-C concentration of less than 35 mg/dL is considered high risk for CHD, while levels over 60 mg/dL are considered protective. Historically, HDL-C has been measured in the supernatant of samples following the precipitation of apoB-containing lipoproteins by polyanion-divalent cations. Several combinations of polyanion-divalent cations have been used, and not all of them give precisely the same results. HDL-C values determined with heparan sulfate–Mn^{++} procedures agree closely with those obtained using analytic or preparative ultracentrifugation (Bachorik et al, 1976; Warnick et al, 1979). This method was widely used in epidemiologic studies. Dextran sulfate (relative molecular mass 50,000 Da)–Mg^{++} and sodium phosphotungstate–Mg^{++} methods gained popularity because they do not interfere with enzymatic cholesterol studies. However, they give results about 5% lower than ultracentrifugation. Heparin-Ca^{++} appears to give results that are about 10% higher. And the use of different concentrations of cation may give different estimates of

http://basicbook.net

HDL-C. These differences arise, in part, from the underprecipitation of apoB-containing lipoproteins, which leads to overestimation of HDL-C, or the overprecipitation of HDL, which can lead to underestimation of HDL-C. Increased triglycerides interfere with precipitation methods and overestimate HDL-C. Attempts were made to simplify precipitation methods by using dextran sulfate–coated magnetic beads to achieve selective separation of HDL from the apoB-containing lipoproteins (Naito & Kwak, 1995).

Currently, homogeneous assays are the most popular method for measuring HDL-C. Unlike precipitation methods, these fully automated two-reagent procedures do not require off-line pretreatment and separation (hence the term *homogeneous*) and can be adapted to most chemistry analyzers. Thus they reduce hands-on time and overall assay costs. Test kits distributed in the United States are based on a variety of methods. Usually, the first reagent forms a stable complex with non-HDL lipoproteins, preventing them from participating in the reaction, and the second reagent releases HDL-C that is then measured enzymatically. According to CAP 2005 surveys, the most common method uses a synthetic polymer together with a polyanion to block non-HDL lipoproteins, followed by a selective detergent to release HDL-C (Genzyme Diagnostics, Cambridge, Mass.; Beckman Coulter, Inc., Brea, Calif.). Other methods use polyethylene glycol–modified enzyme (Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis) or immunoinhibition (Wako Chemicals USA, Inc., Richmond, Va.) to block non-HDL lipoproteins. A fourth method (Polymedco Inc., Cortlandt Manor, N.Y.) uses a special reagent to selectively eliminate cholesterol in non-HDL lipoproteins, followed by a second reagent that releases cholesterol from HDL (Denka Seiken Co., Niigata, Japan). These methods generally are not affected by high triglycerides, bilirubin, and globulins.

In a comprehensive review (Warnick et al, 2001), multiple HDL-C homogeneous assays were compared with traditional precipitation and ultracentrifugation procedures. The authors concluded that the new procedures simplify the determination of HDL-C and are accurate, precise, and meet NCEP criteria for total error. However, atypical lipoproteins evaluated by homogeneous assay may show discrepant results when compared with the established precipitation method. These differences are seen in patients with hyperlipidemia or liver or kidney disease when abnormal lipoprotein forms occur. Laboratories that encounter a high proportion of atypical lipoproteins (e.g., lipid clinics or research settings) should thoroughly validate a homogeneous assay for use with their patient population.

LDL-C Measurement

LDL cholesterol plays a causal role in the development of atherosclerosis. LDL-C of over 160 mg/dL with no risk factors is an indication for therapy (Rifai et al, 2000). With two or more CHD risk factors, the upper limit is lowered to 130 mg/dL for initiation of therapy. Several methods have been used to measure LDL-C. The first, a reference laboratory procedure, involves ultracentrifugation to separate LDL from other lipoproteins, followed by analysis as described previously to measure cholesterol. This method is not extensively discussed here. A much more common second method uses the Friedewald formula to calculate LDL-C. Finally, more recently developed homogeneous methods for measuring LDL-C are now available.

Friedewald Calculation

LDL-C can be determined by using the Friedewald formula, originally described by Friedewald, Levy, and Fredrickson (Friedewald et al, 1972). Generally, in fasting plasma samples, LDL contains the cholesterol that is not present in HDL or VLDL. Thus LDL-C can be determined by the following equation in which concentrations are expressed in mmol/L, and the term [Plasma TG]/2.175 is used to represent VLDL-C:

$$[\text{LDL-cholesterol}] = [\text{Total cholesterol}] - [\text{HDL-cholesterol}] - [\text{Plasma TG}]/2.175$$

The term [Plasma TG]/5 is used when concentrations are expressed in mg/dL. In this method, the plasma TC, TG, and HDL-C concentrations are determined as described. Because VLDL carries most plasma triglyceride, VLDL-C concentration is estimated from the ratio of triglyceride to cholesterol in VLDL:

$$\text{VLDL-C} = \text{Plasma TG}/2.175$$

It has been reported that the factor [Plasma TG]/2.825 gives a more accurate estimate of VLDL-C (DeLong et al, 1986). This is equivalent to Plasma TG/6.5, when concentrations are expressed in mg/dL. However, the factor that gives the best estimate of VLDL-C, and therefore the best estimate of LDL-C, varies among populations and depends on the triglyceride method used; the NCEP Working Group on Lipoprotein Measurement prefers the unmodified Friedewald equation (NCEP Working Group on Lipoprotein Measurement, 1995).

The Friedewald formula has significant limitations (Sniderman et al, 2003). These limitations arise largely from two assumptions on which the method is based. First, the calculation assumes that essentially all plasma triglycerides are carried in VLDL. Second, the method assumes that the triglyceride/cholesterol ratio of VLDL is invariant. Neither assumption is entirely true; as a result, this method is unsuitable for nonfasting samples that contain chylomicrons or samples that contain β-VLDL. As compared with VLDL, the ratio of triglycerides to cholesterol in chylomicrons is much higher. Thus when CM is present, the use of the factor TG/2.175 to account for non-HDL, non-LDL cholesterol can overestimate the amount of cholesterol in VLDL, leading to underestimation of LDL-C. Similarly the ratio of triglyceride to cholesterol in β-VLDL is much lower than in VLDL; use of the factor TG/2.175 in the presence of β-VLDL can underestimate VLDL-C and thus overestimate LDL-C. A patient with type 3 hyperlipoproteinemia can be misclassified as having an elevated LDL-C. It is important to distinguish the two conditions because their treatments differ.

Even in CM-free samples, the ratio of VLDL-C to triglyceride changes as triglyceride levels increase, and this can lead to errors in estimates of VLDL-C. Because VLDL generally carries only about 25% of the TC in plasma, resulting errors in LDL-C are usually less than 5 to 10 mg/dL (0.130 to 0.260 mmol/L). However, the calculation is not suitable for samples with high triglyceride concentrations. Errors in LDL-C become noticeable at triglyceride levels over 2.26 mmol/L (200 mg/dL) and become unacceptably large at triglyceride levels over 4.52 mmol/L (400 mg/dL). The accuracy of LDL-C calculation also suffers at low LDL-C levels, indicating that calculated LDL-C values may not provide the best assessment of cardiac risk in patients who already are receiving cholesterol-lowering therapy (Sniderman et al, 2003). Provided that its limitations are appreciated, the Friedewald equation has broad utility, both as a screening tool and for following patients.

Another issue to consider is non-LDL lipoproteins. Generally, LDL contributes most of the cholesterol to the measurement, and IDL and Lp(a) contribute only a few mg/dL each. However, these lipoproteins can contribute significantly to cholesterol measurements in some hyperlipidemia patients. Because Lp(a) levels are not lowered by a number of treatments that effectively lower LDL levels, Lp(a) measurements can, in some circumstances, reveal why a patient does not respond well to LDL-lowering therapy.

Selective Chemical Precipitation

LDL-C is calculated as the difference between TC and the amount remaining after precipitation of LDL-C. Such methods are reasonably accurate if TG concentrations are low enough. However, this method allows only for the separation of apoB-containing lipoproteins, separating HDL from non-HDL particles.

Beta Quantification

Beta quantification assumes that virtually all cholesterol is contained in the three major lipoprotein classes (i.e., VLDL, LDL, and HDL). In this method, plasma is ultracentrifuged for at least 18 hours at 105 $K \times g$ VLDL and CMs accumulate as a floating layer, leaving predominantly LDL and HDL in solution (Rifai et al, 2000). The solution is measured for cholesterol and is precipitated for LDL lipoproteins. LDL-C is calculated according to the difference between these two measurements. Because TG-rich lipoproteins are removed from this sample, measurement of LDL-C is more reflective of actual concentration. The resulting difference also reflects contributions of IDL-C and Lp(a) cholesterol, both of which are considered pro-atherogenic. Therefore, measurement of LDL-C by this method represents the amount of cholesterol being transported in pro-atherogenic particles (Rifai et al, 2000).

Direct LDL-C Measurement

To a large extent, the ability to calculate LDL-C has eliminated the need for direct measurements. However, homogeneous direct LDL-C methods are useful when triglycerides are elevated because they are not subject to interference by triglycerides even at relatively high concentrations (600 mg/dL) (Bachorik, 2000). Direct assays have been adapted for use on a variety of analyzers and have been extensively reviewed elsewhere (Nauck et al, 2002; Miller et al, 2002). Although these methods differ significantly, in general, they use a combination of two reagents. The first reagent

http://basicbook.net

usually selectively removes non-LDL lipoproteins (and/or stabilizes or inhibits LDL from reacting with enzymes), and the second reagent releases cholesterol from LDL so that it can be measured enzymatically.

In one method (Equal Diagnostics, Exton, Pa.; Genzyme Diagnostics), the first reagent uses a detergent polymer mixture to disrupt non-LDL lipoproteins, releasing their cholesterol. The cholesterol is then deesterified and reacts with cholesterol oxidase to generate hydrogen peroxide, which reacts to form a colorless compound. The second reagent contains a detergent that releases cholesterol from LDL. After deesterification, the LDL-C proceeds through a similar set of reactions, except that the final step generates a colored compound. The intensity of the color is proportional to the concentration of LDL-C. Another method (Roche Diagnostics) is based on selective micellary solubilization of LDL by a nonionic detergent, as well as the interaction of a sugar compound with HDL, VLDL, and chylomicrons to inhibit participation in the measurement assay (Sugiuchi et al, 1998). A third method exploits the fact that reactivity of cholesterol in the different lipoproteins is affected by the hydrophile : lipophile balance (HLB) of solubilizing detergents. In this method, non–LDL-C is reacted with cholesterol esterase and cholesterol oxidase in conditions where LDL-C is inhibited, and the resulting peroxide is eliminated by catalase. A second reagent then alters the HLB of the detergent, creating conditions where LDL-C reacts. This reagent also contains an azide that inhibits catalase and allows the colorimetric detection of peroxide (see Equation 17-3) (Polymedco Inc.; Reference Diagnostics, Bedford, Mass.). In a fourth method, the first reagent contains amphoteric surfactants that protect LDL, allowing the elimination of non–LDL-C and resulting peroxide as described earlier. The second reagent contains nonionic surfactants that displace the protecting surfactants and allow measurement of LDL-C (Sigma Diagnostics, St. Louis, Mo.).

Although these methods are precise, they produce discrepancies in comparison with the reference ultracentrifugation procedures in a number of circumstances, including the presence of abnormal lipoproteins. When the triglyceride level is less than 400 mg/dL, homogeneous methods perform no better than the Friedewald calculation for classifying patients into treatment groups (Miller et al, 2002). However, unlike the calculation, homogeneous assays can provide clinically useful results when triglycerides are over 400 mg/dL. Another potential benefit is the convenience of measuring LDL-C in nonfasting individuals, although some have recommended against this practice (Miller et al, 2002). ATP III recommendations do not favor replacing calculated LDL-C with direct LDL-C because the constituents of the calculation have to be measured in any case. Running direct LDL-C would only add to the expense.

ADDITIONAL METHODS IN THE STUDY OF DYSLIPIDEMIA

Measurement of Lipoprotein Particle Number

Each apoB-containing lipoprotein has one apoB molecule; therefore, serum concentration of apoB reflects the LDL particle number closer than LDL-C level. It has been claimed that serum apoB concentration is a stronger indicator for CHD prediction. In contrast, serum apoA-I concentration does not reflect the HDL particle number (HDL-P). HDL-P shows stronger association with CVD risk compared to apoA-I levels. The most popular method in measuring LDL- and HDL-P is nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy.

Measurement of Lipoprotein Subclasses

Subpopulations or subclasses have been identified in VLDL, LDL, and HDL by techniques such as analytic ultracentrifugation, gradient gel electrophoresis, and NMR spectroscopy (Krauss, 1987; Krauss & Blanche, 1992; Otvos et al, 1992). Some subclass distinctions are of clinical significance, yet the number of subclasses identified varies among methods of separation, and the nomenclature for subclasses is less than uniform. For example, when NMR technology is used to identify lipoprotein subclasses, particle subclass numbers tend to increase with increasing particle size; thus LDL particles of the L2 subclass are larger than L1 particles. When electrophoresis or ultracentrifugation is used, the opposite is true, and particles tend to decrease in size with higher numbers. Thus in segmented gradient gel electrophoresis, LDL subclass IV (or LDL4) particles are smaller than subclass II (LDL2) particles; in gradient ultracentrifugation, subclass LDL4 particles are smaller than LDL3 particles.

Recent interest has focused on the role of subclasses in the development of atherosclerosis, specifically the smallest and least dense LDL particles. This fraction is thought to be more atherogenic than large LDL. Small HDL and large VLDL subclasses have also been associated with an increased incidence of atherosclerosis. The NMR Lipoprofile (LipoScience, Raleigh, N.C.) allows the quantification of lipoprotein particles by subclass based on their unique NMR-spectral characteristics. This profile provides information about CHD risk by quantifying the subclass distribution of lipoprotein particles (Otvos, 2002). At least partially, the appeal of this technique arises from the idea that the migration of LDL particles into the artery wall is gradient driven based on the LDL particle number. When large numbers of small LDL particles are present, LDL-C measurements tend to underestimate the number of LDL particles, and thus the atherosclerotic effects of LDL. Triglyceride levels over 100 mg/dL and HDL-C less than 60 mg/dL are associated with high levels of small LDL particles; when these conditions are present, NMR profiling may be a useful technique for assessing CHD risk. Sensitive electrophoretic methods should provide similar results. These methods are not currently viewed as screening tools. They are more appropriate for refining risk assessment and treatment in patients with previously identified CHD risk: those under treatment and patients who have LDL-C values at or close to treatment goals. This is consistent with most accepted guidelines that stress the importance of LDL-C as the primary goal of therapy in most types of dyslipidemia.

HDL is also highly heterogeneous. HDL_2 and HDL_3 are defined according to density and particle size by sequential ultracentrifugation. NMR divides them into large, intermediate, and small HDL. In two-dimentional electrophoresis, HDL is separated into several subpopulations, such as α1, α2, α3, α4, pre-β1, pre-β2, and pre-β3. Different subpopulations of HDL exhibit different functionalities. For example, small, dense HDL is potent in cholesterol efflux via ABCA1, and large HDL is potent in cholesterol efflux via ABCG1 and SR-B1. Small, dense HDL plays a major role in antioxidative activity (Kontush & Chapman, 2006).

Standing Plasma Test

Chylomicrons, if present in appreciable quantities, are detected using the "standing plasma" test. An aliquot of plasma (2 mL) is placed into a 10 × 75-mm test tube and allowed to stand in the refrigerator at 4° C undisturbed overnight. Chylomicrons accumulate as a floating "cream" layer and can be detected visually. The presence of chylomicrons in fasting plasma is considered to be abnormal. A plasma sample that remains turbid after standing overnight contains excessive amounts of VLDL; if a floating "cream" layer also forms, chylomicrons are present as well.

Detection of β-VLDL and Lp(a)

As mentioned earlier, the abnormal lipoprotein β-VLDL has the density of VLDL but migrates electrophoretically with LDL in the β-region. It can be detected when the ultracentrifugal fraction of d < 1.006 kg/L is examined electrophoretically. In practice, unfractionated plasma and both ultracentrifugal fractions (< and >1.006 kg/L) are examined at the same time; each sample thus serves as its own control to establish the relative migration of the lipoprotein bands. In normal plasma, the β (LDL and IDL), pre-β (VLDL), and α (HDL) lipoprotein bands are visible in unfractionated plasma; only the pre-β band is present in the d < 1.006 kg/L fraction, and the β- and α-lipoprotein bands are seen in the d > 1.006 kg/L fraction. When present, β-VLDL is observed as a band with β-mobility in the d < 1.006 kg/L fraction. Its presence is abnormal and is usually associated with dysbetalipoproteinemia (type 3 hyperlipoproteinemia), although occasionally it is seen in other disorders. Chylomicrons, which often are seen in type 3 patients, remain at the origin on agarose gel.

Lp(a) has a density similar to LDL, but it migrates similarly to VLDL on electrophoresis. Thus it can be detected when the d > 1.006 g/mL protein is examined electrophoretically. When Lp(a) is present in concentrations exceeding 20 to 30 mg/dL (i.e., when it contributes more than about 10 mg/dL to the LDL-C measurement), an additional band with pre-β mobility is observed in the d > 1.006 kg/L fraction (hence the name "sinking pre-β-lipoprotein"). Under these conditions, the physician may wish to request a quantitative Lp(a) measurement. Lp(a) can now be measured using immunoturbidimetric methods. When the Lp(a) level is very high, it may be necessary to correct LDL-C for the contribution of Lp(a)-cholesterol. The following relationship has been used to estimate the contribution of Lp(a)-cholesterol to the measured LDL-C value, where the values are given in mg/dL:

$$\text{Lp(a)-cholesterol} = 0.3 \times [\text{Lp(a) mass}]$$

$$\text{LDL-C} = \text{TC} - [\text{HDL-cholesterol}] - [\text{Plasma TG}]/5 - (0.3[\text{Lp(a) mass}])$$

http://basicbook.net

VLDL-C/Plasma Triglyceride Ratio

The ratio of VLDL-C to plasma triglycerides may be useful in the evaluation of type 3 hyperlipoproteinemia. This ratio, expressed in mol/mol or (mass/mass), is generally in the range of 0.230 to 0.575 (0.1 to 0.25) in samples without β-VLDL, depending on the relative amounts of VLDL, LDL, and HDL present, and on the errors inherent in the VLDL-C and plasma triglyceride measurements. Type 3 subjects have ratios greater than 0.689 (0.3), usually in the range of 0.689 to 0.919 (0.3 to 0.4), and higher ratios can be observed. Again, because of errors in the measurements, the observation of a ratio of 0.689 (0.3) on a single occasion may or may not be significant. Overt type 3 patients manifest both β-VLDL and a VLDL-C/plasma triglyceride ratio of 0.689 (0.3) or greater. Occasionally, a lipid disorder treatment clinic may request the assessment of apoE phenotype to supplement the diagnosis of type 3 hyperlipoproteinemia (see later), because homozygosity for apoE-2 is associated with this disorder. However, not all homozygous patients have type 3 hyperlipoproteinemia, and ultracentrifugation is still required for assessing the presence of β-VLDL.

Apolipoprotein Analysis

Studies have indicated that apoA-I and apoB may be better discriminators of atherosclerotic disease than lipid or lipoprotein determinations. Because apoA-I is present primarily in HDL, while apoB (in fasting samples) is present in VLDL, IDL, and LDL, it stands to reason that low apoB and high apoA-I levels, as well as a low apoB–to–apoA-I ratio, would be a good thing. In general, the evidence for this has been more consistent for apoB than for apoA-I, but the reason for this is not clear. A large-scale, placebo-controlled intervention trial, AFCAPS (Gotto et al, 2000), found that apoB was the best single lipid, lipoprotein, or apolipoprotein measurement to predict both baseline and on-treatment CAD risk, followed by apoA-I. ApoB–to–A-I ratios may also be useful in assessing risk.

Apolipoproteins are usually measured by immunoassay, such as immunonephelometry. These techniques rely on measurement of the turbidity caused by apolipoprotein–antibody complexes (Lopes-Virella et al, 1980). A potential limitation of this method stems from the inherent turbidity of lipemic samples or even nonlipemic samples after repeated freezing and thawing. To some extent, automated systems can correct for such turbidity.

Modified Lipoprotein

Researchers first noted the enrichment of oxidized lipoproteins in atherosclerosis lesions from both human and animal models decades ago. Native LDL does not accumulate in macrophages. Also, when the intracellular cholesterol level is high, LDLR and the key enzyme in cholesterol biosynthesis, HMG-CoA reductase, will be downregulated as a negative feedback regulation to keep the intracellular cholesterol level under control. It is believed that oxidized LDL is taken up by scavenger receptors in macrophage, which causes lipid accumulation, as the early stage of foam cell formation. Reactive oxygen species (ROS)–induced lipid peroxidation and lipoxygenase expressed in cells might be the main source of oxLDL. It is well accepted that the plasma level of oxLDL is a marker for CHD risk. Sensitive ELISA with monoclonal antibodies specific to oxLDL has been developed to quantify its concentration in plasma. In chow diet–fed apoE knockout mice, the plasma level of oxLDL showed a transient peak before the onset of atherosclerosis (Kato et al, 2009). Oxidized HDL is commonly considered as dysfunctional because native HDL is protective to atherosclerosis. HDL isolated from human atherosclerotic lesions is rich in nitrotyrosine- and chlorotyrosine-containing apoA-I (Bergt et al, 2004; Zheng et al, 2004). Both these modifications of tyrosine in apoA-I are produced by a heme-containing enzyme myeloperoxidase (MPO), which is present in inflammatory conditions (Mohiuddin et al, 2006). Modified HDL shows reduced ABCA1-mediated cholesterol efflux capacity from macrophages. One population study shows that fasting plasma glucose significantly and positively associates with the oxHDL level in plasma (Kotani et al, 2012). Therefore, the measurement of oxidized lipoproteins might be a useful marker of CHD.

GUIDELINES FOR CHOLESTEROL TESTING AND MANAGEMENT

The Third Report of the NCEP Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III, or ATP III) was published in 2002 (NCEP, 2002). It presents the updated NCEP evidence-based guidelines for cholesterol testing and management and provides detailed information on other topics, including the classification of lipids and lipoprotein particles, CHD risk assessment, lifestyle intervention, drug treatment, specific dyslipidemias, and treatment adherence issues (Grundy et al, 2004). In 2013, the American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association (ACC/AHA) issued guidelines to use the intensity of statin therapy as the treatment goal rather than LDL-C or non–HDL-C targets, as in previous guidelines, to reduce atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) risk (Andrus & Lacaille, 2014) (Table 17-8 and Box 17-1). The guideline classifies statin therapy as high-intensity (lowers LDL-C by an average of ≥50%), moderate-intensity (lowers LDL-C by an average of 30% to 50%), and low-intensity (lowers LDL-C by an average <30%). Strong evidence indicates four groups of individuals should receive moderate- or high-intensity statin therapy to reduce ASCVD risk: with clinical ASCVD; with primary elevations of LDL-C of 190 mg/dL or higher; age 40 to 75 with diabetes, LDL-C 70 to 189 mg/dL without clinical ASCVD; and without clinical ASCVD or diabetes, age 40 to 75, LDL-C 70 to 189 mg/dL, an estimated 10-year ASCVD risk of 7.5% or greater (this requires a clinician-patient discussion).

RELIABILITY OF MEASUREMENTS

NCEP guidelines have shifted the focus from recognizing abnormal and normal cholesterol values to assessing overall cardiovascular risk based on cutoffs for cholesterol, triglycerides, HDL-C, and LDL-C. The adoption of a single set of cutoffs imposes a mandate on clinical laboratories to measure lipids and lipoproteins accurately and precisely. The Laboratory Standardization Panel of NCEP (NCEP, 1995) guidelines are presented in Table 17-9. Note that each test has a single maximum acceptable value for total error that includes assay bias (i.e., a measure of accuracy) and CV (i.e., a measure of imprecision). Total error is calculated as follows:

$$\% \text{ total error} = \% \text{ bias} + 1.96\ (\%CV)$$

For each test, Table 17-9 provides an example of a target bias and CV that, when considered together, would yield the maximum acceptable total error. Note that by using total error, a laboratory can slightly exceed the limit for bias, provided that the CV is sufficiently small to maintain the total error within the guideline (the opposite is also true). For example, cholesterol has a target bias of 3% and a target CV of 3%. A laboratory with a bias of 3.5% and a CV of 2% exceeds the target for bias, even though it still meets the target for CV. However, the total error of 7.5% (i.e., $3.5\% + 1.96 \times 2\%$) is acceptable because it is less than the 9% target.

METABOLIC SYNDROME

This physiologic syndrome is characterized by a constellation of known and emerging risk factors for CHD. Several organizations, including the

TABLE 17-8
High-, Moderate-, and Low-Intensity Statin Therapy

Statin Therapy	High-Intensity (Daily Dose Lowers LDL-C Levels by an Average of ≥50%)	Moderate-Intensity (Daily Dose Lowers LDL-C Levels by an Average of 30% to <50%)	Low-Intensity (Daily Dose Lowers LDL-C Levels by an Average of <30%)
Atorvastatin	40-80 mg	10 (20) mg	—
Rosuvastatin	20 (40) mg	(5) 10 mg	—
Simvastatin	—	20-40 mg	10 mg
Pravastatin	—	40 (80) mg	10-20 mg
Lovastatin	—	40 mg	20 mg
Fluvastatin	—	80 mg (Fluvastatin XL) 40 mg twice daily	—
Pitavastatin	—	2-4 mg	1 mg

http://basicbook.net

BOX 17-1

2013 ACC/AHA Summary of Key Recommendations for the Treatment of Blood Cholesterol to Reduce ASCVD Risk in Adults

A. Heart-healthy lifestyle habits should be encouraged for all individuals.
B. The appropriate intensity of statin therapy should be initiated or continued:
   1. Clinical ASCVD*
      a. Age 75 years or less and no safety concerns: high-intensity statin (class I, level A)
      b. Age 75 years or safety concerns: moderate-intensity statin (class I, level A)
   2. Primary prevention: primary LDL-C 190 mg/dL or greater
      a. Rule out secondary causes of hyperlipidemia (class I, level B)
      b. Age 21 years or older: high-intensity statin (class I, level B)
      c. Achieve at least a 50% reduction in LDL-C (class IIa, level B)
      d. LDL-C lowering nonstatin therapy may be considered to further reduce LDL-C (class IIb, level C)
   3. Primary prevention: diabetes 40 to 75 years of age and LDL-C 70 to 189 mg/dL
      a. Moderate-intensity statin (class I, level A)
      b. Consider high-intensity statin when 7.5% or greater 10-year ASCVD risk using the Pooled Cohort Equations† (class IIa, level B)
   4. Primary prevention: no diabetes 40 to 75 years of age and LDL-C 70 to 189 mg/dL
      a. Estimate 10-year ASCVD risk using the Risk Calculator based on the Pooled Cohort Equations† in those *not* receiving a statin; estimate risk every 4 to 6 years (class I, level B)
      b. To determine whether to initiate a statin, engage in a clinician–patient discussion of the potential for ASCVD risk reduction, adverse effects, drug-drug interactions, and patient preferences
      c. Reemphasize heart-healthy lifestyle habits and address other risk factors (class IIa, level C)
         i. 7.5% or greater 10-year ASCVD risk: moderate- or high-intensity statin (class I, level A)
         ii. 5% to 7.5% 10-year ASCVD risk: consider moderate-intensity statin (class IIa, level B)
         iii. Other factors may be considered‡: LDL-C 160 mg/dL or greater, family history of premature ASCVD, hs-CRP 2.0 mg/L or greater, CAC score 300 Agatston units or greater, ABI less than 0.9, or lifetime ASCVD risk (class IIb, level C)
   5. Primary prevention when LDL-C is less than 190 mg/dL and age is less than 40 or more than 75 years, or less than 5% 10-year ASCVD risk
      a. Statin therapy may be considered in selected individuals‡ (class IIb, level C)
   6. Statin therapy is not routinely recommended for individuals with NYHA class II-IV heart failure or who are receiving maintenance hemodialysis
C. Regularly monitor adherence to lifestyle and drug therapy with lipid and safety assessments
   1. Assess adherence, response to therapy, and adverse effects within 4 to 12 weeks following statin initiation or change in therapy (class I, level A)
      a. Measure a fasting lipid panel (class I, level A)
      b. Do not routinely monitor ALT or CK unless symptomatic (class IIa, level C)
      c. Screen and treat type 2 diabetes according to current practice guidelines. Heart-healthy lifestyle habits should be encouraged to prevent progression to diabetes (class I, level B)
      d. Anticipated therapeutic response: approximately 50% or greater reduction in LDL-C from baseline for high-intensity statin and 30% to 50% for moderate-intensity statin (class IIa, level B)
         i. Insufficient evidence for LDL-C or non–HDL-C treatment targets from RCTs
         ii. For those with unknown baseline LDL-C, an LDL-C less than 100 mg/dL was observed in RCTs of high-intensity statin therapy
      e. Less than anticipated therapeutic response:
         i. Reinforce improved adherence to lifestyle and drug therapy (class I, level A)
         ii. Evaluate for secondary causes of hyperlipidemia if indicated (class I, level A)
         iii. Increase statin intensity, or if on maximally tolerated statin intensity, consider addition of nonstatin therapy in selected high-risk individuals§ (class IIb, level C)
      f. Regularly monitor adherence to lifestyle and drug therapy every 3 to 12 months once adherence has been established. Continue assessment of adherence for optimal ASCVD risk reduction and safety (class I, level A)
D. In individuals intolerant of the recommended intensity of statin therapy, use the maximally tolerated intensity of statin (class I, level B)

If there are muscle or other symptoms, establish that they are related to the statin (class IIa, level B)

ABI, ankle-brachial index; *ACC*, American College of Cardiology; *AHA*, American Heart Association; *ALT*, alanine aminotransferase, a test of hepatic function; *ASCVD*, atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease; *CAC*, coronary artery calcium; *CHD*, coronary heart disease; *CK*, creatine kinase, a test of muscle injury; *HDL-C*, high-density lipoprotein cholesterol; *hs-CRP*, high-sensitivity C-reactive protein; *LDL-C*, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol; *NHLBI*, National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; *NYHA*, New York Heart Association; *RCTs*, randomized controlled trials; and *TIA*, transient ischemic attack.

*Clinical ASCVD includes acute coronary syndromes, history of MI, stable or unstable angina, coronary or other arterial revascularization, stroke, TIA, or peripheral arterial disease presumed to be of atherosclerotic origin.

†Estimated 10-year or "hard" ASCVD risk includes first occurrence of nonfatal MI, CHD death, and nonfatal and fatal stroke as used by the Risk Assessment Work Group in developing the Pooled Cohort Equations on the basis of age, sex, smoking status, total cholesterol level, HDL-C level, systolic blood pressure, and the use of antihypertensive therapy.

‡These factors may include primary LDL-C of 160 mg/dL or greater or other evidence of genetic hyperlipidemias; family history of premature ASCVD with onset at less than 55 years of age in a first-degree male relative or less than 65 years of age in a first-degree female relative; hs-CRP 2 mg/L or greater; CAC score 300 Agatston units or greater or 75th percentile for age, sex, and ethnicity or greater; ABI less than 0.9; or lifetime risk of ASCVD. Additional factors that might aid in individual risk assessment could be identified in the future.

§High-risk individuals include those with clinical ASCVD, an untreated LDL-C 190 mg/dL or greater, suggesting genetic hypercholesterolemia, or individuals with diabetes 40 to 75 years of age and LDL-C 70 to 189 mg/dL.

From 2013 ACC/AHA Guidelines on the Treatment of Blood Cholesterol to Reduce Atherosclerotic Cardiovascular Risk in Adults: A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 63(25 Pt B):2889–2934, 2014.

TABLE 17-9

NCEP Guidelines for Acceptable Measurement Error

Analyte	Total Error	Bias	CV*
Cholesterol	≤9%	≤3%	≤3%
Triglyceride	≤15%	≤5%	≤5%
HDL-cholesterol	≤13%	≤5%	≤4%†
LDL-cholesterol	≤12%	≤4%	≤4%

HDL, High-density lipoprotein; *LDL*, low-density lipoprotein.

*Coefficient of variation defined as standard deviation/mean × 100.

†Precision criteria applied to HDL-cholesterol levels of 42 mg/dL (1.09 mmol/L) and higher. At lower levels, CV is not used; rather, standard deviation should not exceed 1.7 mg/dL (0.044 mmol/L).

World Health Organization (WHO) and NCEP, have proposed different definitions for this syndrome; however, risk factors generally include abdominal obesity, atherogenic dyslipidemia (elevated triglycerides, small LDL particles, and low HDL-C), raised blood pressure, insulin resistance (with or without glucose intolerance), and prothrombotic and proinflammatory states. First described as "syndrome X" in the late 1980s, this condition may be present in 20% to 25% of adult Americans. In patients with metabolic syndrome, LDL-C is the primary target of therapy; however, these patients are usually candidates for more intensive cholesterol-lowering therapy than might be suggested by their LDL-C alone. Other objectives include treatment of the underlying causes (i.e., obesity and physical inactivity) and treatment of associated nonlipid and lipid risk factors (Garber, 2004).

http://basicbook.net

HYPERTRIGLYCERIDEMIA

Triglyceride levels are classified as normal (<150 mg/dL), borderline high (150-199 mg/dL), high (200-499 mg/dL), or very high (≥500 mg/dL), based on measurement after a 12-hour fast. The 2011 AHA scientific statement on triglycerides and cardiovascular disease (CVD) reaffirms that triglyceride is an important biomarker of CVD risk rather than a directly atherogenic factor (Miller et al, 2011). Causes of very high triglycerides that may be associated with pancreatitis include genetic disorders (LPL deficiency, apolipoprotein C-II deficiency, apolipoprotein A-V deficiency, GPIHBP1 deficiency, Marinesco-Sjögren syndrome, familial hypertriglyceridemia); acquired disorders of the metabolism (hypothyroidism, pregnancy, poorly controlled insulinopenic diabetes); drugs (α-interferon, atypical antipsychotics, β-blockers such as atenolol, bile acid resins, L-asparaginase, estrogens [oral, not transcutaneous]); protease inhibitors; raloxifene; retinoic acid drugs; sirolimus; steroids; tamoxifen; thiazides; diet (alcohol excess, especially with a high–saturated fat diet); and other diseases (autoimmune chylomicronemia [e.g., antibodies to LPL, SLE], chronic idiopathic urticaria, renal disease). Measurement of non–HDL-C, apoB, or both may be especially useful in those with obviously abnormal triglyceride/HDL because LDL-C measurements may underestimate atherosclerotic vascular risk. Use of triglyceride-lowering drugs to treat individuals with triglyceride levels of 500 mg/dL or higher is justified to prevent pancreatitis in conjunction with therapeutic lifestyle change. As monotherapy, fibrates can reduce triglyceride levels by 30% to 50%, immediate-release niacin by 20% to 50%, omega-3 methyl esters by 20% to 50%, extended-release niacin by 10% to 30%, statins by 10% to 30%, and ezetimibe by 5% to 10%. Additional clinical outcome trials are necessary to establish whether these medications can improve CVD outcomes beyond proven therapies (e.g., statins).

ESTIMATING RISK FACTORS

The 2013 ACC/AHA guidelines developed new equations to estimate the 10-year risk of developing a first ASCVD event (CHD death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, and fatal or nonfatal stroke), using the best available data from community-based cohorts of adults. The Work Group used state-of-the-art statistical methods to derive and internally validate the Pooled Cohort Equations, which provide sex- and race-specific estimates of the 10-year risk of ASCVD for African American and Caucasian men and women aged from 40 to 79. The variables included in the equations are age, TC, HDL-C, systolic BP (including treated or untreated), diabetes, and current smoking status. If a risk-based treatment decision is uncertain by the equations, assessment of one or more of the following is recommended: family history of premature CVD; hs-CRP 2 mg/L or greater; coronary artery calcium (CAC) score 300 Agatston units or greater or 75th percentile for age, sex, and ethnicity; or ankle-brachial index (ABI) less than 0.9.

HIGH CHOLESTEROL IN CHILDREN

Current evidence indicates that atherosclerotic lesions can begin in childhood; children with high blood cholesterol levels typically maintain high blood cholesterol through adulthood. In an effort to intervene early in children with an atherosclerotic predisposition, guidelines for assessing CHD risk in children and adolescents have been promulgated by organizations such as the NCEP (NCEP Expert Panel on Children and Adolescents) (NCEP, 1992) and the American Heart Association (Kavey et al, 2003). Current recommendations support selective screening (starting at 2 years of age) of children and adolescents with a family history of premature cardiovascular disease or those with at least one parent with high blood cholesterol. Table 17-10 classifies these children by total and LDL-C levels. These recommendations do not support the universal laboratory screening of children and adolescents.

Intervention aimed at reducing risk is recommended when the averaged results of three fasting lipid profiles are above the cutoffs for TC and LDL described earlier, with elevated triglycerides (>150 mg/dL) or decreased HDL-C (<35 mg/dL). As in adults, intervention focuses on a search for medical causes of lipid abnormalities, TLC, and pharmacologic intervention when necessary.

TABLE 17-10

Classification of Total and LDL-Cholesterol in Children: Targeted Fasting Screen in Children over Age 2 with Family History of Dyslipidemia or Premature CHD

Category	Total Cholesterol (mg/dL)	LDL-Cholesterol (mg/dL)
Acceptable	<170	<110
Borderline	171-199	111-129
High	≥200	≥130

CHD, Coronary heart disease; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein.
From Kavey et al (2003).

LIPIDS, LIPOPROTEINS, AND DISEASE

Lipoprotein and lipid levels are used to predict CHD and form the basis of the NCEP guidelines discussed earlier. However, for many years, the Fredrickson Classification (alluded to in Table 17-3) was used to characterize lipid disorders (Hansen, 1998). The Fredrickson Classification used electrophoresis and a standing plasma test for CM to correlate clinical disease syndromes with laboratory phenotypes (Fredrickson et al, 1967). Note that each phenotype is not a specific disease but rather a variety of disorders that affect the same lipoproteins and therefore express the same lipid pattern. Thus treatment is usually the same for all disorders falling within the same phenotype. One limitation of this system is that it does not consider low HDL as a risk factor for CHD. In recent years, the Fredrickson Classification has proved less useful given modern analytic techniques and an evolving understanding of the genetics of these disorders. Nevertheless, the nomenclature for a few pathognomonic syndromes (e.g., Type 1 and Type 3 hyperlipidemias) has remained in use. Some pertinent details of the Fredrickson Classification are presented in Table 17-11.

As our understanding of lipids, lipoprotein metabolism, and genetics has evolved, far more complex systems for describing clinical lipid disorders have been conceived. Presently, no ideal scheme to categorize these disorders is available. They can arise from lifestyle or secondary causes, as well as from mutations in genes encoding apolipoproteins, apolipoprotein receptors, or enzymes of lipoprotein metabolism. Some genes (e.g., apoA-I, apoC-III, apoA-IV) are in close proximity and share similar response elements, allowing a single mutation to alter multiple aspects of lipoprotein metabolism. The following disorders of lipoprotein metabolism are categorized on the basis of laboratory findings. Lifestyle factors affecting lipid profiles and causes of secondary hyperlipidemia are listed in Table 17-12 in association with their most common laboratory presentation. As with the genetic dyslipidemias, these factors can produce overlapping and somewhat variable lipoprotein profiles. In Figures 17-5 and 17-6, some of the disorders described later are incorporated into the schemes of forward and reverse cholesterol transport, so their cause and pathogenesis may be more readily understood.

HIGH CHOLESTEROL WITH HIGH LDL-C

These disorders share one feature, hyperbetalipoproteinemia (Fredrickson Type 2A), which is characterized by elevated LDL-C and normal triglycerides. It is associated with a high cardiac risk that is not surprising given the elevations in LDL, a highly atherogenic particle. This is a commonly encountered laboratory presentation.

Polygenic (Nonfamilial) Hypercholesterolemia

Polygenic (nonfamilial) hypercholesterolemia is a general term used to describe individuals for whom the cause of hypercholesterolemia is likely multifactorial (Soutar, 1998). Although some of the causative factors in this disease are thought to be genetic, before a patient's hypercholesterolemia is labeled "polygenic," secondary and familial hypercholesterolemia (autosomal dominant) must be ruled out. Approximately 85% of the hypercholesterolemia in the population may fall into this category. Some clinicians use this term to describe patients who develop age-related increases in cholesterol that do not respond to lifestyle modification.

Familial Hypercholesterolemia

Familial hypercholesterolemia (FH), with severely elevated serum cholesterol levels, is caused by a group of inherited genetic defects. LDLR gene mutations (deletion, missense, nonsense, and insertion) are the most common cause of FH, resulting in loss of LDLR activity in the clearance of LDL-C from circulation. Patients can be LDLR negative (little to no LDLR activity) or receptor defective (LDLR isotypes with reduced affinity

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 17-11
Pertinent Details of the Fredrickson Classification

Type	Refrigerator Test	Gel Electrophoresis	Clinical Presentation
1	Positive; clear plasma	Normal	Eruptive xanthoma; acute, recurrent pancreatitis in early childhood; lipids improve on low-fat diet
2a	Negative; clear plasma	Increased β band	Xanthelasma, tendon xanthoma; premature coronary disease; autosomal dominant familial inheritance; commonly known as familial hypercholesterolemia
2b	Negative; cloudy plasma; increased β and pre-β band	Isolated xanthelasma may be present; premature coronary disease; autosomal dominant pattern; affected family members must have varied patterns (e.g., isolated hypertriglyceridemia, isolated hypercholesterolemia, combined hyperlipidemia) to meet diagnostic criteria for familial combined hyperlipidemia	
3	Occasional cloudy plasma; increased pre-β band; eruptive xanthoma and palmar xanthoma; premature coronary disease; autosomal recessive pattern; a secondary cause of dyslipidemia, such as hypothyroidism, can unmask type 3, and treatment of the secondary condition can return lipids to normal		
4	Negative; cloudy plasma; increased α_2 band	May or may not be associated with premature coronary disease	
5	Positive; cloudy plasma; increased α_2 band	Eruptive xanthoma; may be associated with pancreatitis; may be associated with premature coronary disease	

TABLE 17-12
Lifestyle Factors and Causes of Secondary Dyslipidemia

Lipoprotein Profile	Secondary Causes	Lifestyle Factors
High cholesterol and high LDL-C with or without low HDL-C	Hypothyroidism and nephrotic syndrome Medications such as thiazide diuretics and steroids Chronic obstructive liver disease Cholestatic liver disease (primary biliary cirrhosis and related diseases)	Obesity Excess dietary cholesterol and/or saturated fat ApoE-4 may increase susceptibility
High triglycerides with normal total and LDL-C with or without low HDL-C	Medications such as thiazide diuretics, estrogens, corticosteroids, retinoids, cyclosporine, and beta-blockers (without intrinsic sympathomimetic) Insulin resistance/diabetes Chronic renal failure and nephrotic syndrome Antipsychotic drugs (clozapine/olanzapine)	Obesity Physical inactivity Cigarette smoking Excess alcohol intake High-carbohydrate diets
High cholesterol and high triglycerides with or without low HDL-C	Medications, notably high-dose steroids or cyclosporine Severe hypothyroidism, diabetes/insulin resistance, and nephrotic syndrome	Obesity HIV antiretroviral drugs
Isolated low HDL-C	Medications such as isotretinoin, probucol, anabolic steroids, beta blockers, and certain progestogens	Physical inactivity Increased body weight High-carbohydrate, low-fat diets
Isolated high HDL-C	Medications such as phenytoin, phenobarbital, rifampicin, griseofulvin, and estrogens	Alcohol intake

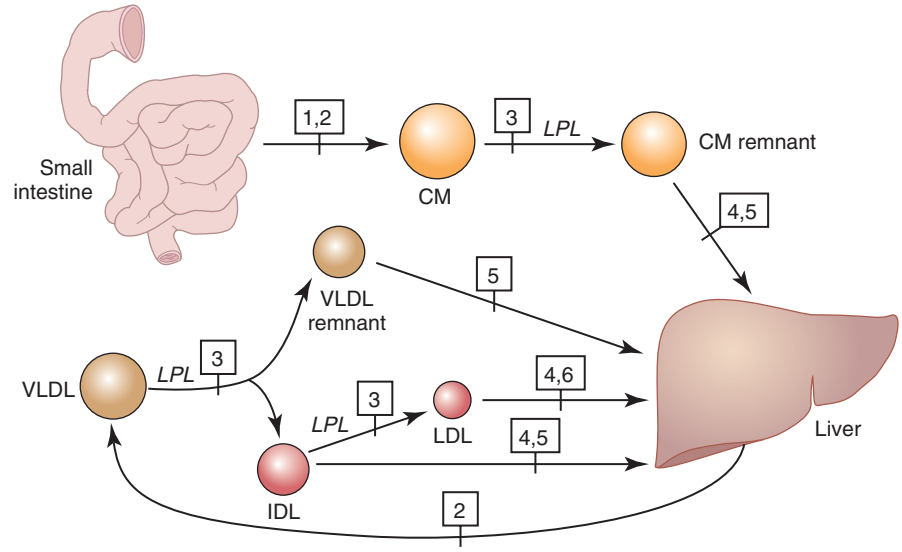
HDL-C, High-density lipoprotein cholesterol; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *LDL-C,* low-density lipoprotein cholesterol.

for LDL on the hepatocyte surface). These are the five major classes of LDLR defects:

Class I: LDLR is not synthesized at all.
Class II: LDLR is not properly transported from the endoplasmic reticulum to the Golgi apparatus for expression on the cell surface.
Class III: LDLR does not properly bind LDL on the cell surface because of a defect in either apoB-100 (R3500Q) or in the LDLR.
Class IV: LDLR bound to LDL does not properly cluster in clathrin-coated pits for receptor-mediated endocytosis.
Class V: LDLR is not recycled back to the cell surface.

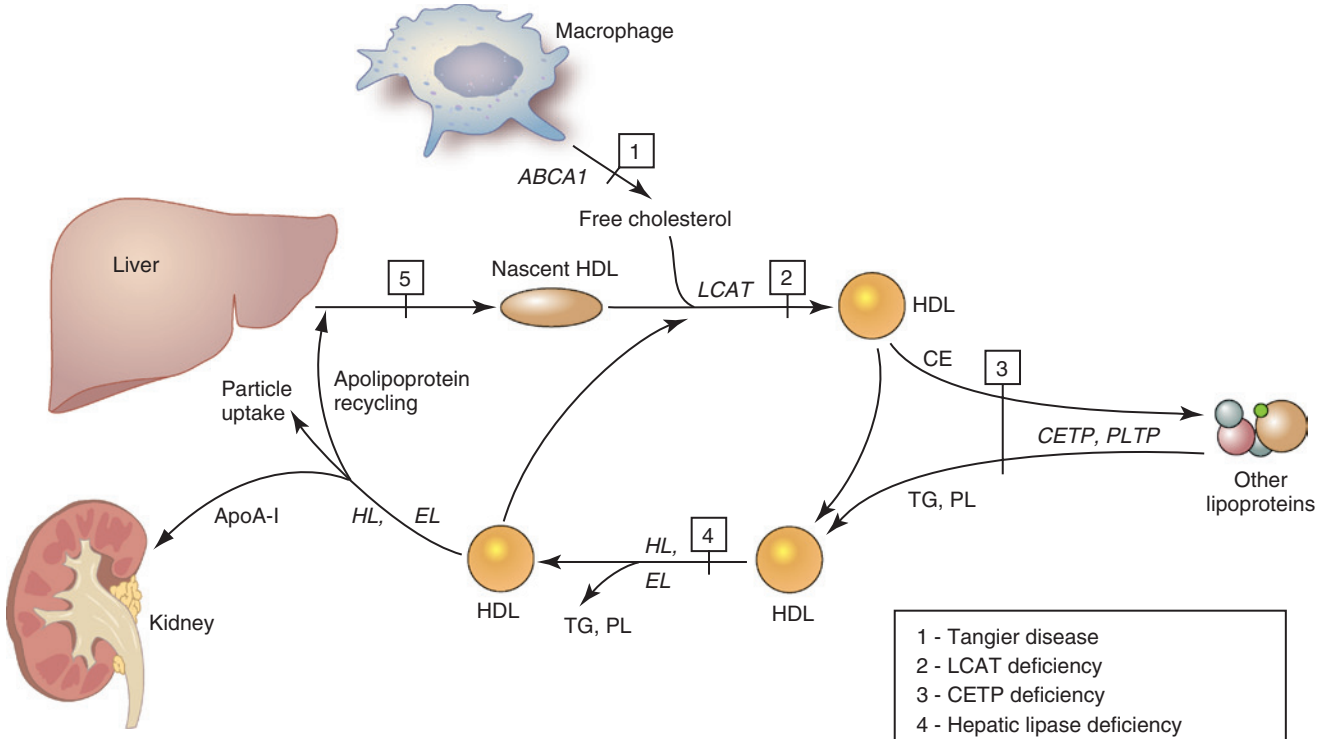
Familial hypercholesterolemia (FH) is an autosomal dominant disorder caused by one of several mutations in the LDLR gene on chromosome 19. The resulting defective receptors cannot bind or clear LDL from the circulation (Hobbs et al, 1992). Several hundred mutations have been identified in the LDLR gene, and they affect most aspects of receptor synthesis, transport, and function (Fig. 17-7). This genetic heterogeneity has led to variability in presentation and responsiveness to therapy. Heterozygous FH occurs in 1 in 500 individuals and is associated with premature atherosclerotic disease. Affected heterozygous men usually present in their fourth decade and women 10 to 15 years later. Untreated LDL-C levels are typically over 220 mg/dL. Further, FH heterozygotes exhibit LDL-C levels that vary with environmental factors and genetics. Homozygous FH presents in childhood with LDL levels over 400 mg/dL. Vascular deposition of lipid results in premature symptomatic CHD. In addition, homozygotes are less affected by environmental factors in terms

http://basicbook.net



1 - Chylomicron retention (Apo B-48 defect)
2 - Hypobetalipoproteinemia/Abetalipoproteinemia
3 - LPL deficiency/Apo C II deficiency
4 - Familial hypercholesterolemia
5 - Dysbetalipoproteinemia (Type III hyperlipoproteinemia, associated with Apo-E-2)
6 - Familial defective Apo B

Figure 17-5 **Disorders associated with the transport of lipids.** *Apo,* Apolipoprotein; *CM,* chylomicron; *IDL,* intermediate-density lipoprotein; *LPL,* lipoprotein lipase; *VLDL,* very-low-density lipoprotein.

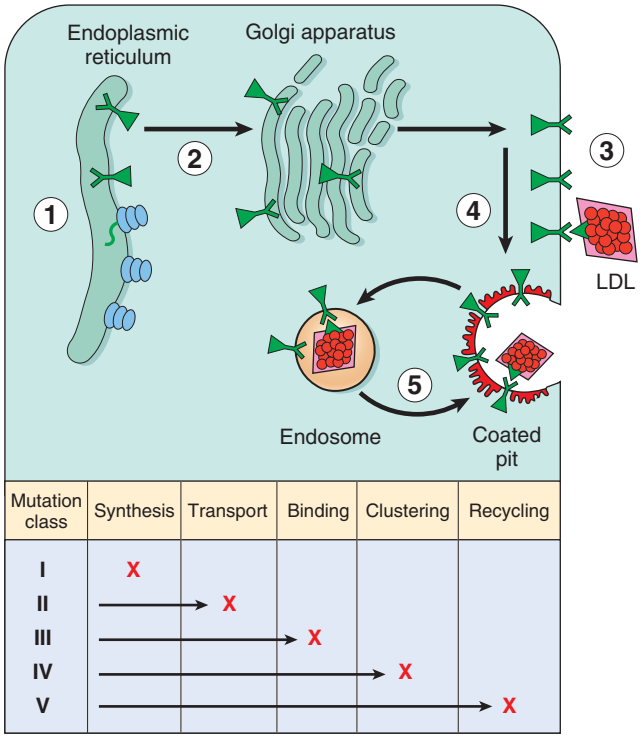


1 - Tangier disease
2 - LCAT deficiency
3 - CETP deficiency
4 - Hepatic lipase deficiency
5 - Familial hypoalphalipoproteinemia

Figure 17-6 **Disorders associated with the reverse transport of lipids.** *ABCA1,* Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)-binding cassette protein A-1; *Apo,* apolipoprotein; *CE,* cholesterol ester; *CETP,* cholesterol ester transfer protein; *EL,* endothelial lipase; *HDL,* high-density lipoprotein; *HL,* hepatic lipase; *LCAT,* lecithin:cholesterol acyltransferase; *PL,* phospholipids; *PLTP,* phospholipid transfer protein; *TG,* triglycerides.

of LDL-C levels. Large valvular and supravalvular cholesterol deposits can produce symptomatic aortic stenosis. Other stigmata of the disease include corneal arcus, tendinous xanthomata, and xanthelasma. These stigmata generally develop in early childhood in homozygotes, and by adulthood in heterozygotes. Statins, which inhibit 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-CoA (HmG-CoA) reductase, may be effective; however, because these drugs may act indirectly by increasing LDLR activity, not all heterozygous patients will normalize their LDL-C despite receiving maximum doses of statins. Homozygous patients have two abnormal LDLR genes, making statin drugs ineffective unless combined with apheresis (Ose, 1999).

http://basicbook.net



Mutation class	Synthesis	Transport	Binding	Clustering	Recycling
I	X				
II	→	X			
III	→	→	X		
IV	→	→	→	X	
V	→	→	→	→	X

Figure 17-7 Classification of low-density lipoprotein (LDL) receptor mutations based on abnormal function of the mutant protein. These mutations disrupt the receptor's synthesis in the endoplasmic reticulum, transport to the Golgi complex, binding of apoprotein ligands, clustering in coated pits, and recycling in endosomes. Each class is heterogeneous at the DNA level. (Modified with permission from Hobbs HH, Russell DW, Brown MS, Goldstein JL: The LDL receptor locus in familial hypercholesterolemia: Mutational analysis of a membrane protein. *Annu Rev Genet* 24:133–170, 1990.)

Patients with homozygous FH are classified into two groups on the basis of tests for LDLR activity in skin fibroblasts: patients with less than 2% of normal LDLR activity are receptor-negative; patients with 2% to 25% of normal LDLR activity are receptor-defective. Receptor-negative patients rarely live past the second decade; receptor-defective patients often develop significant atherosclerotic disease by the age of 30 years.

FH should be suspected when adults (≥20 years) have LDL-C of 190 mg/dL or greater or non–HDL-C of 220 mg/dL or greater (Goldberg et al, 2011). In children, adolescents and young adults (<20 years), LDL-C of 160 mg/dL or greater or non–HDL-C of 190 mg/dL or greater indicates FH. Signs of the disease include corneal arcus, tendinous xanthomata, and xanthelasma. Adult FH patients should receive initial treatment with higher potency statins (atorvastatin, rosuvastatin, pitavastatin, simvastatin) titrated to achieve an LDL-C reduction of 50% or more from baseline. Heterozygous FH patients with 50% functional LDLRs respond well to statin therapy. Generally, homozygous FH patients with LDLR defective mutations cannot achieve LDL-C goal by statins. But some FH homozygotes having sufficient LDLR activity respond to statin therapy well. If an individual with FH cannot achieve the LDL-C goal with the maximum and tolerable dose of statin, other kinds of medications such as ezetimibe, niacin, or a bile acid sequestrant should be combined with the statins. If diet modification and maximum drug therapy after 6 months are inadequate for LDL-C reduction or are not tolerated or contraindicated, LDL apheresis may be considered for the following individuals: functional homozygous FH patients with LDL-C of 300 mg/dL or greater (or non–HDL-C ≥330 mg/dL); functional heterozygous FH patients with LDL-C of 300 mg/dL or greater (or non–HDL-C ≥330 mg/dL) and no or only one risk factor; functional heterozygous FH patients with LDL-C of 200 mg/dL or greater (or non–HDL-C ≥230 mg/dL) and high-risk characteristics such as two or more risk factors or high Lp(a) of 50 mg/dL or greater; and functional heterozygotes with LDL-C of 160 mg/dL or greater (or non–HDL-C ≥190 mg/dL) and very-high-risk characteristics (established CHD, other cardiovascular disease, or diabetes).

Given the limited treatment options and the severe morbidity and mortality of homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia (HoFH), two new drugs have been approved recently by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA): lomitapide and mipomersen. Lomitapide inhibits MTP and thus decreases LDL production. Lomitapide was initially targeted for hypercholesterolemic patients, but because of substantial side effects such as frequent elevations of liver enzymes and liver steatosis, the FDA only approved it to treat patients with HoFH. Mipomersen is an antisense oligonucleotide that inhibits production of apoB-100. It is administered as a subcutaneous injection once a week. Mipomersen also was initially developed for patients with lipid disorders but was ultimately targeted to HoFH patients because of adverse effects and safety concerns, such as hepatic steatosis, interactions with CYP3A4 inhibitory drugs, inflammatory injection site reactions, and a potential for malignancy (including hepatocellular carcinoma).

Familial Defective ApoB

Familial defective ApoB is an autosomal dominant disorder of the apoB gene on chromosome 2 that interferes with the recognition of apoB-100 by the LDLR (Hansen, 1998). The disease results from a missense mutation *(Arg3500Gln)* in the LDLR-binding domain of ApoB-100, although other mutations that occur less frequently can cause this disease. Estimated frequency in the population is 1 in 750. Patients with familial defective apoB have similar physical stigmata to those of FH: tendinous xanthomata, xanthelasma, and premature coronary disease. Untreated LDL-C levels can overlap those seen in FH but tend to be slightly lower. Further, patients with familial defective ApoB have levels of plasma LDL-C comparable with those in FH heterozygotes. Statin drugs are effective.

Sitosterolemia

Sitosterolemia is an extremely rare autosomal recessive disorder where phytosterols (plant sterols) are absorbed and accumulate in plasma and peripheral tissues. This disease results from mutations in the *ABCG8* or *ABCG5* gene, both of which are located at chromosome 2p21. Mutations in these genes disrupt the ABCG5 or 8 proteins from forming the proper channel to pump back absorbed plant sterols into the intestinal lumen, as well as the ability of liver to secrete absorbed phytosterols into bile. Most patients identified with sitosterolemia have had high plasma LDL-C levels during childhood. Tendon xanthomas or tuberous xanthomas can occur in childhood at heels, knees, elbows and buttocks (Niu et al, 2010). Premature atherosclerosis is present and can lead to angina, aortic valve involvement, myocardial infarction, and sudden death. Hemolytic anemia, abnormally shaped erythrocytes (stomatocytes), and large platelets (macrothrombocytopenia) can be the initial presentation or the only clinical feature of the disorder (Wang et al, 2011). Cholesterol levels may be normal or elevated. A distinctive clinical presentation of sitosterolemia is the occurrence of low-level hemolysis. Red blood cells may be incorporating the plant sterols into their membranes. Diagnosis of sitosterolemia should be considered if the patient presents with xanthomatosis and hypercholesterolemia, yet has parents who have normal levels of cholesterol. In untreated individuals with sitosterolemia, the sitosterol concentration can be increased 30- to 100-fold—that is, as high as 10 to 65 mg/dL (Kidambi & Patel, 2008). Plasma concentrations of sitosterol greater than 1 mg/dL are diagnosed as sitosterolemia (except in infants, in whom further testing may be necessary). Treatment goals are to reduce plasma concentration of plant sterols (ideally <1 mg/dL), to control plasma concentration of cholesterol, and to prevent xanthoma formation and/or to reduce the size and number of xanthomas. Main therapy is a diet low in sterols and use of ezetimibe, a sterol absorption inhibitor (Tsubakio-Yamamoto et al, 2010). If patients do not respond to ezetimibe, the use of cholestyrramine and/or partial ileal bypass surgery is recommended.

Autosomal Dominant Hypercholesterolemia

Autosomal dominant hypercholesterolemia (ADH) is an autosomal dominant disorder of the *PCSK9* gene on chromosome 1 that is involved in cholesterol homeostasis in the liver (Abifadel et al, 2003). Mutations in this gene may lead to a gain of function. Individuals with gain-of-function mutations present clinically with increased plasma levels of LDL-C and exhibit a higher risk of coronary heart disease. Relatively little is known about the frequency of ADH since the discovery of the mutation in three families in 2003. However, more gain-of-function *PCSK9* patients have been reported *(D374Y)*. *PCSK9* is a member of the proprotein convertase family of proteins. It is secreted into plasma and binds to LDLR on the cell surface. This leads to endocytosis and intracellular degradation of the LDLR. Consequently, gain of function of *PCSK9* decreases levels of LDLR protein. In addition to the gain-of-function mutations, loss-of-function mutations have been found. These missense *(R46L)* and nonsense (*Y142X* and *C697X*) mutations have led to hypocholesterolemia in patients.

http://basicbook.net

Autosomal Recessive Hypercholesterolemia

Autosomal recessive hypercholesterolemia (ARH) involves the ARH gene found on chromosome 1. ARH is also known as *LDLRAP1*. In these patients, LDLR expression is normal, but LDL clearance rates are low and comparable with those of patients with homozygous FH. ARH is thought to express a protein that is involved in internalization of the LDLR–LDL complex. Plasma levels of LDL-C in ARH patients tend to be between FH heterozygotes and FH homozygotes. The onset of atherosclerotic disease presents later than in homozygous FH patients. ARH patients can present with large, bulky xanthomas. Patients with ARH respond to lipid-lowering medications. However, most ARH patients are maintained on LDL apheresis as part of their treatment.

HIGH TRIGLYCERIDES WITH NORMAL CHOLESTEROL

These disorders are related to elevations of triglyceride-rich particles—namely, chylomicrons or VLDL (Fredrickson types 1 and 4). This commonly encountered laboratory presentation is usually due to hyperprebetalipoproteinemia (VLDL) and may be due to secondary causes such as excess alcohol or a high-carbohydrate diet. LDL and LDL-C are typically normal.

Diabetic Dyslipidemia

Diabetic dyslipidemia consists of atherogenic dyslipidemia (high triglycerides; low HDL; and small, dense LDL) in persons with type 2 diabetes. Current evidence supports the treatment of LDL-C as the primary target in patients with this disorder. Patients with diabetes who are 40 to 75 years of age and have LDL-C of 70 to 189 mg/dL are recommended to take moderate-intensity statins (class I, level A) as a primary prevention to reduce ASCVD risk.

Familial Hypertriglyceridemia

Familial hypertriglyceridemia occurs along with other lipoprotein abnormalities as part of a number of familial hyperlipidemia syndromes. Isolated hypertriglyceridemia (or Type 4 hyperlipidemia) is a relatively common autosomal dominant disorder, having a population prevalence of 5% to 10%, and is defined by the familial occurrence of isolated high VLDL levels with triglyceride values most commonly in the 200- to 500-mg/dL range. The pathophysiology remains elusive, but VLDL triglyceride production is increased in the setting of normal apoB production, resulting in the formation of "fluffy," triglyceride-rich VLDL particles. Some kindreds have premature CHD; however, it is unclear whether the CHD results from hypertriglyceridemia or from the frequently coexisting exacerbating factors: obesity and insulin resistance (Brunzell, 1983). The increased prevalence of the metabolic syndrome alone could account for the elevated CVD risk associated with familial hypertriglyceridemia. Thus the growing prevalence of both obesity and metabolic syndrome appears to increase the frequency, onset of expression, and severity of genetic triglyceride syndromes (Hopkins et al, 2003).

Lipoprotein Lipase Deficiency (Hyperlipoproteinemia Type 1 or Hyperchylomicronemia)

Lipoprotein lipase deficiency is a rare, autosomal recessive disorder that presents in childhood with abdominal pain and pancreatitis. Defective or absent LPL creates an inability to clear chylomicrons, creating the classic "type 1" chylomicronemia syndrome (see Tables 17-3 and 17-11). Fasting triglyceride levels may be over 100 mg/dL and may rise to over 10,000 mg/dL postprandially. Patients with LPL deficiency do not develop premature CHD, implying that chylomicrons themselves are not atherogenic. Treatment with a low-fat diet to reduce chylomicron input is effective, fat-soluble vitamins should be supplemented, and drug therapy can be considered to lower endogenous VLDL production (Brunzell, 1995). Heterozygotes have half-normal LPL activity and occur in the general population at a frequency of 1 in 500. It has been speculated that heterozygous individuals with the defective *LPL* gene constitute a subset of families with familial combined hyperlipidemia (Babirak et al, 1989).

ApoC-II Deficiency

ApoC-II is an activating cofactor for LPL. Thus the absence of apoC-II creates a functional LPL deficiency, which presents similarly to LPL deficiency as a rare autosomal recessive form of familial hyperchylomicronemia. The disorder presents in children and young adults as recurrent bouts of abdominal pain and pancreatitis. Several defects in the apoC-II gene have been described (Fojo & Brewer, 1992). Patients can be treated with plasma transfusions during severe hypertriglyceridemia providing apoC-II, which will activate endogenous LPL.

ApoC-III Excess

ApoC-III excess interferes with the activity of lipoprotein lipase and binds to the carboxy-terminal portion of apolipoprotein B, preventing the binding of lipoproteins to the LDLR. Excess apoC-III, especially within the apoB-containing lipoproteins LDL and VLDL, may be an independent risk factor for CHD (Ooi et al, 2008). ApoC-III levels can be increased in patients with diabetes type 2, hyperbilirubinemia, kidney deficiency, and thyroid dysfunction; further, genetic mutations in the apoC-III gene are known. In addition to genetic factors, serum apoC-III is affected by age and alcohol consumption in men and women; oral contraceptive use in women has also been associated with high levels of apoC-III. For males and females in their youth, postpubescent status and oral contraceptive use have been shown to affect apoC-III levels. Several genetic polymorphisms of the apoC-III gene are known (Li et al, 1995). They include point mutations at -641T/C, -482C/T, -455T/C, 1100C/T, 3175C/G, and 3026T/G of the start site of the apoC-III gene. The mutations at -455T/C and 1100C/T are more common in Caucasian adult males and boys. It is thought that the point mutation at -455T/C affects a transcription factor–binding site associated with insulin response. Consequently, lack of response to insulin at the apoC-III promoter, which downregulates apoC-III transcription, is thought to contribute to high levels of triglycerides in plasma. Meta-analysis showed ApoC-III Sst I and T-455C polymorphisms, other than C-482T and C1100T, might be associated with CHD risk (Lin et al, 2014). Genetic mutations at other genes such as *APOA4* or carrying APOE E4 alleles have been suggested to influence serum apoC-III levels as well.

ApoA-V

ApoA-V is a highly hydrophobic protein that has a preference for binding to lipids and HDL particles. The function of ApoA-V has been hypothesized as being involved in VLDL assembly; in addition, it has been postulated that ApoA-V may be involved in activation of LPL-mediated triglyceride hydrolysis. Consequently, low levels of ApoA-V may promote hypertriglyceridemia, whereas high levels of ApoA-V would have the opposite effect. One variant of ApoA-V has been found in humans that has a strong correlation with hypertriglyceridemic patients. The actual function of ApoA-V and its role in triglyceride metabolism require further investigation.

HIGH CHOLESTEROL WITH HIGH TRIGLYCERIDES

These disorders are related to elevations of LDL and triglycerides (Fredrickson types 2B and 3). Familial combined hyperlipidemia (2B) is the most common primary hyperlipoproteinemia and presents with a variety of lipoprotein phenotypes within a family. The relatively rare dysbetalipoproteinemia (Type 3) is characterized by an abnormal LDL (IDL) that appears as a broad beta electrophoretic band and distinguishes it from familial combined hyperlipidemia. These disorders are associated with increased cardiac risk because of the elevated LDL.

Familial Combined Hyperlipidemia (Type 2B)

Familial combined hyperlipidemia (type 2B) is a relatively common disorder where affected individuals may have simple hypercholesterolemia, simple hypertriglyceridemia, or a mixed defect. Because of the disorder's phenotypic heterogeneity and the lack of a definitive biochemical marker for the disorder, considerable overlap and confusion with other forms of hyperlipidemia have occurred. Estimated frequency in the population is 1 in 100. Affected families must have more than one pattern of lipid disorder to meet diagnostic criteria for familial combined hyperlipidemia.

Acquired Combined Hyperlipidemia

Acquired combined hyperlipidemia is common in patients who have metabolic syndrome. As the name suggests, the disease stems from a syndrome of conditions that include type 2 diabetes mellitus, hypertension, central obesity, and coronary heart disease. It is thought that the liver increases the production of VLDL through high levels of free fatty acids in plasma. As a result, the increased VLDL levels mature to LDL until this process is saturated. When LDL levels get high enough, VLDL levels follow, causing both hypercholesterolemia and hypertriglyceridemia.

http://basicbook.net

Dysbetalipoproteinemia (Type 3)

ApoE is present on chylomicrons, VLDL, IDL, and chylomicron remnants. By binding to the LDLR, and probably other receptors, apoE helps to clear these lipoproteins from circulation. Three common electrophoretic isoforms of apoE are known, each form attributable to several different genetic mutations. The most common isoform is E-3, followed by E-4 and E-2. ApoE-2 has lower affinity for the LDLR (less than 2% of binding ability of E-3), so lipoprotein particles accumulate in the blood of patients who are homozygous for E-2. However, although individuals with this genotype are relatively common in the Caucasian population (1 in 100), expression of an overt Type 3 phenotype occurs in 1 to 5 per 5000 individuals. Thus the manifestation of the Type 3 hyperlipidemia phenotype is thought to contribute to the disease. Secondary factors implicated in the manifestation of disease include obesity, diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, and medications such as protease inhibitors.

Type 3 hyperlipidemia primarily affects adults and is more common in men than in women (Mahley & Rall, 1995). Symptomatic individuals typically have roughly equal elevations of cholesterol and triglycerides; presence of β-VLDL or cholesterol-enriched remnants of intestinal chylomicrons and hepatic VLDL; xanthomas; and premature vascular disease such as coronary heart disease and peripheral artery disease. Type 3 has a pathognomonic feature: a broad abnormal band between VLDL and LDL known as "abnormally migrating beta lipoprotein," or β-VLDL. The cholesterol content in VLDL is also increased, and measurement of the VLDL-C:triglyceride ratio is a useful screen. Normally, the VLDL-C/triglyceride ratio is 0.2; typical Type 3 patients have a ratio over 0.3. Day-to-day variation in lipid levels is more pronounced than usual. Other clinical stigmata include palmar xanthoma and tuberoeruptive xanthoma on elbows, knees, and buttocks. Premature atherosclerosis is highly prevalent and, unlike familial hypercholesterolemia, more often involves abdominal and femoral arteries. The atherosclerosis appears reversible with treatment of the lipid disorder (Kuo et al, 1988). Patients are responsive to low-fat diets, weight loss, and most classes of lipid-lowering drugs.

Hepatic Lipase Deficiency

Generally resulting from mutations of the HL gene, this rare familial disorder is associated with combined hyperlipidemia characterized by TC levels of 250 to 1500 mg/dL and TG levels of 400 to 8000 mg/dL. Levels of HDL-C are normal or increased. Physical stigmata include palmar and tuberoeruptive xanthoma; the risk of atherosclerosis is thought to be increased. In contrast to Type 3 hyperlipidemia, although β-VLDL is increased, the TC/TG ratio is not increased. The triglyceride content of all lipoproteins is increased three- to fivefold. Families with compound heterozygous mutations have been described (Connelly & Hegele, 1998). Patients with hepatic lipase deficiency are able to convert large VLDL to smaller VLDL particles; however, they are unable to convert VLDL to IDL and also LDL from IDL. HDL and LDL particles from hepatic lipase deficiency patients are large and enriched with triglycerides.

Cholesterol 7-Alpha-Hydroxylase Deficiency

Cholesterol 7-alpha-hydroxylase deficiency is a recessive disorder of the *CYP7A1* gene that encodes cholesterol 7-alpha-hydroxylase protein. *CYP7A1* encodes an enzyme that is involved in the first step of the classical pathway for bile acid biosynthesis. The few patients who present with this rare disease exhibit not only high cholesterol but also high triglycerides in plasma. Very little is known about the disease. However, it has been reported that the few patients diagnosed with this disease are resistant to statin therapy, although the same patients managed to lower their plasma cholesterol with atorvastatin and niacin therapy. Lack of cholesterol 7-alpha-hydroxylase is thought to reduce hepatic LDLR activity; however, because so few patients have been identified with this condition, more information and patients will be necessary to confirm the relationship between the deficiency and its clinical presentation.

LOW TOTAL CHOLESTEROL AND TRIGLYCERIDE

These uncommon disorders are associated with defective apoB synthesis or metabolism, leading to low or nonexistent levels of apo-B lipoproteins such as CM, VLDL, and LDL. Triglycerides and cholesterol are low. Fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies are common.

Abetalipoproteinemia

Abetalipoproteinemia (also known as Bassen-Kornzweig syndrome) is a rare, autosomal recessive disorder involving mutations in the *MTTP* gene located on chromosome 4. *MTTP* encodes an 894 amino acid protein called MTP, or microsomal triglyceride transfer protein (MTP). MTP protein forms a heterodimer with a chaperone protein called protein disulfide isomerase (PDI) in the endoplasmic reticulum. Mutations in *MTTP* affect its binding to PDI and its ability to transfer lipids. Clinically, abetalipoproteinemia patients present with undetectable plasma apoB containing lipoproteins. During apoB translation, MTP incorporates lipids onto the nascent apoB protein and prevents it from proteasomal degradation. Consequently, the lack of functional MTP still allows for apoB protein production; however, the protein ends up misfolded and destroyed by endoplasmic reticulum (ER)-associated degradation mechanisms. Neither apoB-48 nor apoB-100 is present in plasma. Patients present in childhood or early adolescence with fat malabsorption, hypolipidemia, retinitis pigmentosa, cerebellar ataxia, and acanthocytosis. Laboratory testing usually shows decreased apoB, triglycerides, and TC (typically <50 mg/dL). Patients develop fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies caused by malabsorption of vitamins A, K, and E. Vitamin D does not require chylomicrons for absorption and therefore is typically not deficient. Because both vitamins A and K have transport systems independent of lipoproteins, clinical deficiency is not as severe as that seen with vitamin E, which not only depends on chylomicrons for absorption but relies on VLDL and LDL for delivery to tissues. Children with this disorder respond to a low-fat diet rich in medium-chain fatty acids and supplemented with high-dose fat-soluble vitamins, especially vitamin E. Replacing vitamin E stores improves the retinal and peripheral neuropathic symptoms. Heterozygotes have no symptoms and no evidence of abnormal plasma lipid levels.

Hypobetalipoproteinemia

Hypobetalipoproteinemia is an autosomal dominant disorder explained by nonsense or missense mutations in the *apoB* gene, leading to synthesis of various truncated forms of apoB. Severity of disease depends on the type of apoB synthesized. Generally, patients have very low LDL-C levels (Wu et al, 1999). The familial form is associated with a decreased risk for cardiovascular disease. Homozygous individuals have TC levels less than 50 mg/dL and present at an early age with fat malabsorption and low plasma cholesterol levels. Heterozygous individuals are usually asymptomatic and have low plasma LDL concentrations. They develop progressive neurologic degenerative disease, retinitis pigmentosa, and acanthocytosis, similar to patients with abetalipoproteinemia. Complications from vitamin E deficiency can be prevented by treatment with very high doses of vitamin E (100 to 300 mg/kg/day). Heterozygous individuals have LDL-C levels approximately half that of age- and sex-matched controls but are otherwise asymptomatic.

Chylomicron Retention Disease

Chylomicron retention disease (Anderson's disease) presents in childhood with fat malabsorption and low levels of plasma lipids. This syndrome is distinct from abetalipoproteinemia, because only apoB-48 appears to be affected. Further, the disease is characterized by hypocholesterolemia, chronic diarrhea, failure to thrive, and deficiency of fat-soluble vitamins (vitamin E in particular); the latter can lead to neurologic deficits. The genetic abnormality associated with this disorder is linked to the *SARA2* gene on chromosome 5q3 that encodes the Sar1 GTPase protein. This protein belongs to a family of GTPases that govern the intracellular trafficking of proteins in protein-coated vesicles (Jones et al, 2003). Sar1 GTPase most likely plays a role in the steps involving intracellular trafficking of newly synthesized apoB-48–containing lipoproteins in the enterocytes. After proper folding and lipidation in the ER by the MTP, apoB-48 lipoproteins leave the ER through prechylomicron transfer vesicles (PCTVs). These vesicles fuse with a recipient Golgi membrane and are ultimately secreted. The precise role of Sar1 GTPase in intracellular trafficking has not been elucidated.

ISOLATED LOW HDL-C

Low HDL levels are associated with CHD, presumably because insufficient HDL is available to participate in reverse cholesterol transport, the process by which cholesterol is eliminated from peripheral tissues.

Familial Hypoalphalipoproteinemia

Familial hypoalphalipoproteinemia is a common autosomal dominant disorder that occurs in 1 in 400 people. Affected men have HDL-C levels less than 30 mg/dL, and women have HDL-C levels less than 40 mg/dL. The criteria for familial hypoalphalipoproteinemia include (1) low HDL cholesterol in the presence of normal VLDL cholesterol and LDL cholesterol levels; (2) absence of diseases or factors that lead to secondary effects of hypoalphalipoproteinemia; and (3) the presence of a similar

http://basicbook.net

lipoprotein pattern in a first-degree relative. Half of affected families appear to have hepatic lipase or apoA-I/C-III/A-IV gene defects (Breslow, 1995). Mutations in the *ABCA1* gene, the same gene that is mutated in Tangier disease, have been associated with some cases of hypoalphalipoproteinemia. Premature CHD is typically present.

ApoA-I Deficiency and ApoC-III Deficiency

ApoA-I deficiency with ApoC-III deficiency is a rare autosomal recessive condition characterized by a reduction in the formation of HDL. It has been linked to point mutations in the *apoA-I* gene and to deletions/gene rearrangements at the *apoA-I/C-III/A-IV* gene locus on the long arm of chromosome 11 (Assman et al, 1995). HDL-C levels are less than 5 mg/dL; both corneal opacification and premature coronary disease are seen in some patients.

ApoA-I Variants

ApoA-I variants are rare, specific amino acid substitutions in the *apoA-I* gene. They have been shown to increase catabolism of HDL and apoA-I (Breslow, 1995). Homozygous patients generally present with autosomal recessive inheritance of low HDL-C levels (approximately 10 mg/dL), corneal opacifications, xanthomata, and premature coronary disease. Heterozygous individuals may present with low HDL-C. One mutation, *apoA-I-Milano*, shows autosomal dominant inheritance and is associated with low HDL-C levels but is not associated with premature coronary disease (Calabresi & Franceschini, 1997).

Tangier Disease

Tangier disease is a rare autosomal recessive disorder characterized by complete absence of HDL due to a mutation in the *ABCA1* gene on chromosome 9. The mutation leads to an inability to effectively transfer cholesterol and phospholipids from within the cell onto nascent apoA1 proteins in plasma. The resulting buildup of cholesterol within the cell becomes toxic. LDL cholesterol is reduced. In the homozygous state, patients present with low or undetectable HDL in plasma, hepatosplenomegaly, peripheral neuropathy, orange tonsils, and premature coronary disease (Rust et al, 1999). In normal cells, the ABCA1 protein enables cholesterol to exit the cell, upon which it combines with apoA-I to form the HDL. The small amount of HDL that is present in patients with this disorder differs qualitatively from normal HDL.

Lecithin : Cholesterol Acyltransferase Deficiency

Lecithin : cholesterol acyltransferase (LCAT) deficiency is characterized by corneal opacities, normochromic anemia, and renal failure in young adults. It is a very rare autosomal recessive disorder. The disease occurs in two forms: a classic (or complete) familial LCAT deficiency and a milder partial deficiency phenotype known as fish-eye disease (Peelman et al, 1999). In complete deficiency, HDL-C levels are typically less than 10 mg/dL, but total cholesterol levels are normal or high. Without LCAT, most cholesterol remains unesterified, and HDL synthesis is impeded. Patients with complete LCAT deficiency have anemia, increased proteinuria, and renal failure. Diagnosis is made by LCAT quantification and cholesterol esterification activity in the plasma. Partial LCAT deficiency exhibits progressive corneal opacification, low plasma HDL levels (<10 mg/dL), and variable hypertriglyceridemia (also seen in complete LCAT deficiency). Premature CHD has been reported even in cases of partial LCAT deficiency (Kuivenhoven et al, 1997). No treatment can be given to raise LCAT levels; however, therapies for this condition involve dietary restriction of fat and management of complications from this disease.

ISOLATED HIGH HDL-C

Cholesteryl Ester Transfer Protein Gene Defects

HDL is involved in the reverse transport of cholesterol from peripheral tissues to the liver. An important step in this process involves CETP, the plasma protein that facilitates the transfer of cholesteryl esters from HDL to apoB-100–rich proteins (VLDL and LDL) in exchange for triglycerides. CETP deficiency is an autosomal recessive disorder in which the transfer of cholesterol esters is inhibited. As a result, HDL particles are large and laden with cholesterol ester, and apoA-I is increased, as is HDL-C (typically >100 mg/dL). The association of higher HDL-C plasma levels with risk of coronary heart disease is still unclear based on genetic studies of humans with *CETP* mutations. Heterozygotes have moderately increased HDL-C levels. Inhibition of CETP is an active area of research given the potential to raise HDL-C levels.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

National Cholesterol Education Program Expert Panel: Third Report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III): final report, *Circulation* 106:3143–3421, 2002.

A comprehensive monograph that includes the latest recommendations for screening, evaluating, and treating hyperlipidemia.

Nauck M, Warnick GR, Rifai N: Methods for measurement of LDL-cholesterol: A critical assessment of direct measurement by homogenous assays versus calculation, *Clin Chem* 48(2):236–254, 2002.

A comprehensive review of current LDL-C methods, including the advantages and disadvantages of each, performance characteristics, and an explanation of the chemistry and technology upon which the assay is based.

Warnick GR, Nauck M, Rifai N: Evolution of methods for measurement of HDL-cholesterol: From ultracentrifugation to homogeneous assays, *Clin Chem* 47:1579–1596, 2001.

A comprehensive review of all methods used to measure HDL-C, with particular emphasis on the new homogeneous assays. It discusses the pros and cons of each assay and its accuracy and precision and clinical usefulness, as well as the chemistry or technology upon which each is based.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Abell LL, Levy BB, Brodie BB, et al: A simplified method for the estimation of total cholesterol in serum and demonstration of its specificity, *J Biol Chem* 195:357–366, 1952.

Abifadel M, Varret M, Rabes JP, et al: Mutations in PCSK9 cause autosomal dominant hypercholesterolemia, *Nat Genet* 34:154–156, 2003.

Alaupovic P: Apolipoproteins and lipoproteins, *Atherosclerosis* 13:141–146, 1971.

Albers JJ, Hazzard WR: Immunochemical quantification of human plasma Lp(a) lipoprotein, *Lipids* 9:15–26, 1974.

Andrus B, Lacaille D: 2013 ACC/AHA guideline on the assessment of cardiovascular risk, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 63(25 Pt A):2886, 2014.

Armstrong VW, Walli AK, Seidel D: Isolation, characterization, and uptake in human fibroblasts of an apo(a)-free lipoprotein obtained on reduction of lipoprotein (a)1, *J Lipid Res* 26:1314–1323, 1985.

Assman G, von Eckardstein A, Brewer HB: Familial high-density lipoprotein deficiency: Tangier's disease. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly SW, editors: *The metabolic basis of inherited disease*, ed 7, New York, 1995, McGraw-Hill, pp 2053–2072.

Babirak SP, Iverius PH, Fujimoto WY, et al: Detection and characterization of the heterozygote state for lipoprotein lipase deficiency, *Arteriosclerosis* 9:326–334, 1989.

Bachorik PS: Measurement of low density lipoprotein cholesterol. In Rifai N, Warnick GR, Dominiczak MH, editors: *Handbook of lipoprotein testing*, Washington, DC, 2000, AACC Press.

Bachorik PS, Kwiterovich PO Jr: Apolipoprotein measurements in clinical biochemistry and their utility vis-a-vis conventional assays, *Clin Chim Acta* 178:1–34, 1988.

Bachorik PS, Rock R, Cloey T, et al: Cholesterol screening: Comparative evaluation of on-site and laboratory-based measurements, *Clin Chem* 36:255–260, 1990.

Bachorik PS, Virgil DG, Kwiterovich PO: Effect of apolipoprotein E-free high-density lipoproteins on cholesterol metabolism in cultured pig hepatocytes, *J Biol Chem* 262:13636–13645, 1987.

Bachorik PS, Wood PDS, Albers JJ, et al: Plasma high-density lipoprotein cholesterol concentrations determined after removal of other lipoproteins by heparin/manganese precipitation or by ultracentrifugation, *Clin Chem* 22:1828–1834, 1976.

Bergt C, Pennathur S, Fu X, et al: The myeloperoxidase product hypochlorous acid oxidizes HDL in the human artery wall and impairs ABCA1-dependent cholesterol transport, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 101(35):13032–13037, 2004.

Blanche PJ, Gong EL, Forte TM, et al: Characterization of human high-density lipoproteins by gradient gel electrophoresis, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 665:408–419, 1981.

Bookstein L, Gidding SS, Donovan M, et al: Day-to-day variability of serum cholesterol, triglyceride and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol levels, *Arch Intern Med* 150:1653–1657, 1990.

Bravo I, Amigo L, Cohen DE, et al: Role of plasma and liver cholesterol- and lipoprotein-metabolism determinants in LpX formation in the mouse, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1770(6):979–988, 2007.

Breslow JL: Familial disorders of high-density lipoprotein metabolism. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WS, et al, editors: *The metabolic basis of inherited disease*, 7th ed, New York, 1995, McGraw-Hill, pp 2031–2052.

Brown SA, Boerwinkle E, Kashanian FK, et al: Variation in concentrations of lipids, lipoprotein lipids, and apolipoproteins A-I and B in plasma from healthy women, *Clin Chem* 36:207–210, 1990.

Brown MS, Kovanen PT, Goldstein JL: Regulation of plasma cholesterol by lipoprotein receptors, *Science* 212:628–635, 1981.

Brunzell JD: Familial lipoprotein lipase deficiency and other causes of the chylomicronemia syndrome. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WS, et al, editors: *The metabolic basis of inherited disease*, ed 7, New York, 1995, McGraw-Hill, pp 1913–1932.

Brunzell JD, Albers JJ, Chait AI, et al: Plasma lipoprotein in familial combined hyperlipidaemia and monogenic familial hypertriglyceridaemia, *J Lipid Res* 24:147–155, 1983.

Bucolo G, David H: Quantitative determination of serum triglycerides by the use of enzymes, *Clin Chem* 19:476–482, 1973.

Burstein M, Legmann P: Lipoprotein precipitation. In Clarkson TB, Kritchevsky D, Pollak OJ, editors: *Monographs on atherosclerosis* (vol II), Basel S, 1982, Karger AG.

Byers SO, Friedman M: Site of origin of plasma triglyceride, *Am J Physiol* 198:629–631, 1960.

Calabresi L, Franceschini G: High-density lipoprotein and coronary heart disease: Insights from mutations leading to low high-density lipoprotein, *Curr Opin Lipidol* 8:219–224, 1997.

Cenedella RJ, Crouthamel WG: Intestinal versus hepatic contribution to circulating triglyceride levels, *Lipids* 9:35–42, 1974.

Cohn JS, McNamara JR, Schaefer EJ: Lipoprotein cholesterol concentrations in plasma of human subjects as measured in the fed and fasted states, *Clin Chem* 34:2456–2459, 1988.

Connelly PW, Hegele RA: Hepatic lipase deficiency, *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci* 35:547–572, 1998.

Corella D, Tai ES, Sorli JV, et al: Association between the APOA2 promoter polymorphism and body weight in Mediterranean and Asian populations: Replication of a gene-saturated fat interaction, *Int J Obes (Lond)* 35(5):666–675, 2011.

Deacon AC, Dawson PJG: Enzymic assay of total cholesterol involving chemical or enzymic hydrolysis—A a comparison of methods, *Clin Chem* 25:976–984, 1979.

DeLong DM, DeLong ER, Wood PD, et al: A comparison of methods for the estimation of plasma low- and very-low-density lipoprotein cholesterol. The Lipid Research Clinics Prevalence Study, *JAMA* 256:2372–2377, 1986.

Demacker PNM, Schade RWB, Jansen RTP, et al: Intra-individual variation of serum cholesterol, triglycerides, and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol in normal humans, *Artherosclerosis* 45:259–266, 1982.

Fless GM, Rolih CQ, Scanu AM: Heterogeneity of human plasma lipoprotein(a). Isolation and characterization of the lipoprotein subspecies and their apoproteins, *J Biol Chem* 259:11470–11478, 1984.

Fless GM, ZumMallen ME, Scanu AM: Isolation of apolipoprotein(a) from lipoprotein(a), *J Lipid Res* 26:1224–1229, 1985.

Floren C-H, Albers JJ, Bierman EL: Uptake of Lp(a) lipoprotein by cultured fibroblasts, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 102:636, 1981.

Fojo SS, Brewer HB: Hypertriglyceridaemia due to genetic defects in lipoprotein lipase and apolipoprotein C-II, *J Intern Med* 231:669–677, 1992.

Fredrickson DS, Levy RI, Lees RS: Fat transport in lipoproteins—An integrated approach to mechanisms and disorders, *N Engl J Med* 276:34–42, 94–103, 148–156, 215–225, 273–281, 1967.

Friedewald WT, Levy RI, Fredrickson DS: Estimation of the concentration of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol in plasma without use of the preparative ultracentrifuge, *Clin Chem* 18:499–502, 1972.

Fruchart JC, Ailhaud G: Apolipoprotein A-containing particles: Physiological role, quantification and clinical significance, *Clin Chem* 38:793–797, 1992.

Garber AJ: The metabolic syndrome, *Med Clin North Am* 88(4):837–846, 2004.

Gaubatz JW, Heideman C, Gotto AM Jr, et al: Human plasma lipoprotein(a). Structural properties, *J Biol Chem* 258:4582–4589, 1983.

Glass C, Pittman RC, Weinstein DB, et al: Dissociation of tissue uptake of cholesterol ester from that of apoprotein A-I of rat plasma high-density lipoprotein: Selective delivery of cholesterol ester to liver, adrenal and gonad, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 80:5435–5439, 1983.

Goldberg AC, Hopkins PN, Toth PP, et al: Familial hypercholesterolemia: Screening, diagnosis and management of pediatric and adult patients: Clinical guidance from the National Lipid Association Expert Panel on Familial Hypercholesterolemia, *J Clin Lipidol* 5(3):133–140, 2011.

Gotto AM Jr, Pownall HJ, Havel RJ: Introduction to the plasma lipoproteins, *Meth Enzymol* 128:3–41, 1986.

Gotto AM, Whitney E, Stein EA, et al: The relation between baseline and on-treatment lipid parameters and first acute major coronary events in the Air Force/Texas Coronary Artery Prevention Study (AFCAPS/TEXCAPS), *Circulation* 101:477–484, 2000.

Green PHR, Glickman RM: Intestinal lipoprotein metabolism, *J Lipid Res* 22:1153–1173, 1981.

Gries A, Fievet C, Marcovina S, et al: Interaction of LDL, Lp(a), and reduced Lp(a) with monoclonal antibodies against apoB, *J Lipid Res* 29:1–8, 1988.

Grundy SM, Cleeman JI, Merz CN, et al, and Coordinating Committee of the National Cholesterol Education Program: Implications of recent clinical trials for the National Cholesterol Education Program Adult Treatment Panel III Guidelines, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 44(3):720–732, 2004.

Hansen PS: Familial defective apolipoprotein B-100, *Danish Med Bull* 45:370–382, 1998.

Havel RJ: Lipoprotein biosynthesis and metabolism, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 348:16–29, 1980.

Hegele RA: Plasma lipoproteins: Genetic influences and clinical implications, *Nat Rev Genet* 10:109–121, 2009.

Hobbs HH, Brown MS, Goldstein JL: Molecular genetics of the LDL-receptor gene in familial hypercholesterolemia, *Hum Mutation* I:445–466, 1992.

Hopkins PN, Heiss G, Ellison RC, et al: Coronary artery disease risk in familial combined hyperlipidemia and familial hypertriglyceridemia: A case-control comparison from the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Family Heart Study, *Circulation* 108:519–523, 2003.

Hussain MM, Kancha RK, Zhou Z, et al: Chylomicron assembly and catabolism: Role of apolipoproteins and receptors, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1300:151–170, 1996.

Hussain MM, Rava P, Walsh M, et al: Multiple functions of microsomal triglyceride transfer protein, *Nutr Metab (Lond)* 9:14, 2012.

Hussain MM, Shi J, Dreizen P: Microsomal triglyceride transfer protein and its role in apoB-lipoprotein assembly, *J Lipid Res* 44:22–32, 2003.

Jones B, Jones EL, Bonney SA, et al: Mutations in a Sar1 GTPase of COPII vesicles are associated with lipid absorption disorders, *Nat Genet* 34:29–31, 2003.

Kafonek SD, Derby CA, Bachorik PS: Biological variability of lipoproteins and apoliproteins in patients referred to a lipid clinic, *Clin Chem* 38:864–872, 1992.

Kafonek SD, Donovan L, Lovejoy KL, et al: Biological variation of lipids and lipoproteins in fingerstick blood, *Clin Chem* 42:2002–2007, 1996.

Kato R, Mori C, Kitazato K, et al: Transient increase in plasma oxidized LDL during the progression of atherosclerosis in apolipoprotein E knockout mice, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 29(1):33–39, 2009.

Kavey RE, Daniels SR, Lauer RM, et al: American Heart Association guidelines for primary prevention of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease beginning in childhood, *J Ped* 142(4):368–372, 2003.

Kessler G, Lederer H: Fluorometric measurement of triglycerides. In Skeggs LT, editor: *Automation in clinical chemistry*, Technicon Symposia, New York, 1966, Mediad.

Kidambi S, Patel SB: Sitosterolaemia: pathophysiology, clinical presentation and laboratory diagnosis, *J Clin Pathol* 61:588–594, 2008.

Koch TR, Mehta U, Lee H, et al: Bias and precision of cholesterol analysis of physician's office analyzers, *Clin Chem* 33:2262–2267, 1987.

Kontush A, Chapman MJ: Antiatherogenic small, dense HDL—Guardian angel of the arterial wall?, *Nat Clin Pract Cardiovasc Med* 3(3):144–153, 2006.

Kotani K, Sakane N, Ueda M, et al: Oxidized high-density lipoprotein is associated with increased plasma glucose in non-diabetic dyslipidemic subjects, *Clin Chim Acta* 414:125–129, 2012.

Krauss RM: Relationship of intermediate and low-density lipoprotein subspecies to risk of coronary heart disease, *Am Heart J* 113:578–582, 1987.

Krauss RM, Blanche PJ: Detection and quantitation of LDL subfractions, *Curr Opin Lipidol* 3:377–383, 1992.

Kuivenhoven JA, Pritchard H, Hill J, et al: The molecular pathology of lecithin:cholesterol acyltransferase (LCAT) deficiency syndromes, *J Lipid Res* 38:191–205, 1997.

Kuo PT, Wilson AC, Kostis JB: Treatment of type III hyperlipoproteinemia with gemfibrozil to retard progression of coronary artery disease, *Am Heart J* 116:85–90, 1988.

http://basicbook.net

Laboratory Methods Committee of the Lipid Research Clinics Program: Cholesterol and triglyceride concentrations in serum/plasma pairs, *Clin Chem* 23:60, 1977.

Law WT, Doshi S, McGeehan J, et al: Whole-blood testing for total cholesterol by a self-metering, self-timing disposable device with built in quality control, *Clin Chem* 43:384–389, 1997.

Li WW, Dammerman MM, Smith JD, et al: Common genetic variation in the promoter of the human apo CIII gene abolishes regulation by insulin and may contribute to hypertriglyceridemia, *J Clin Invest* 96:2601–2605, 1995.

Lin B, Huang Y, Zhang M, et al: Association between apolipoprotein C3 Sst I, T-455C, C-482T and C1100T polymorphisms and risk of coronary heart disease, *BMJ Open* 4(1):e004156, 2014.

Lipid Research Clinics Program: *Manual of laboratory operations. Lipid and lipoprotein analysis.* U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Publication No. (NIH) 75. Revised September, 1982.

Lopes-Virella MFL, Virella G, Evangs G, et al: Immunocephelometric assay of human apoliprotein A, *J Clin Chem* 26:1205–1208, 1980.

Loscalzo J, Weinfeld M, Fless GM, et al: Lipoprotein(a), fibrin binding, and plasminogen activation, *Arteriosclerosis* 10(2):240–245, 1990.

Lunz ME, Castleberry BM, James K, et al: The impact of the quality of laboratory staff on the accuracy of laboratory results, *JAMA* 258:361–363, 1987.

MacKenzie SL, Sundaram GS, Sodhi HS: Heterogeneity of human high-density lipoprotein (HDL2), *Clin Chim Acta* 43:223–229, 1973.

Mahley RW, Rall SC: Type III hyperlipoproteinaemia (dysbetalipoproteinemia): The role of apolipoprotein E in normal and abnormal lipoprotein metabolism. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WS, et al, editors: *The metabolic basis of inherited disease*, ed 7, New York, 1995, McGraw-Hill, pp 1953–1986.

Miller M, Bachorik PS, Cloey TA: Normal variation of plasma lipoproteins: Postural effects on plasma concentrations of lipids, lipoproteins and apolipoproteins, *Clin Chem* 38:569–574, 1992.

Miller M, Stone NJ, Ballantyne C, et al: Triglycerides and cardiovascular disease: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association, *Circulation* 123:2292–2333, 2011.

Miller WG, Waymack PP, Anderson FP, et al: Performance of four homogenous direct methods for LDL-cholesterol, *Clin Chem* 48(3):489–498, 2002.

Miyazaki O, Kobayashi J, Fukamachi I, et al: A new sandwich enzyme immunoassay for measurement of plasma pre-beta1-HDL levels, *J Lipid Res* 41(12):2083–2088, 2000.

Mohiuddin I, Chai H, Lin PH, et al: Nitrotyrosine and chlorotyrosine: Clinical significance and biological functions in the vascular system, *J Surg Res* 133(2):143–149, 2006.

Moore KJ, Fisher EA: Dysfunctional HDL takes its toll in chronic kidney disease, *Immunity* 38(4):628–630, 2013.

Myers GL, Cooper GR, Winn CL, et al: The Centers for Disease Control–National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute Lipid Standardization Program. An approach to accurate and precise lipid measurements, *Clin Lab Med* 9:105–135, 1989.

Naito HK, David JA: Laboratory considerations: determination of cholesterol, triglyceride, phospholipid, and other lipids in blood and tissues. In Story JA, editor: *Lipid research methodology*, New York, 1984, Alan R Liss.

Naito HK, Kwak YS: The evaluation of a new high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) technology; selective separation of lipoproteins by magnetic separation, *Clin Chem* 41:S135, 1995.

National Cholesterol Education Program: Highlights of the report of the Expert Panel on Blood Cholesterol Levels in Children and Adolescents, *Pediatrics* 89:495–501, 1992.

National Cholesterol Education Program Working Group on Lipoprotein Measurement: *Recommendations on lipoprotein measurement*, Bethesda, Md., 1995, NIH. Publication No. 95-3044.

Niu DM, Chong KW, Hsu JH, et al: Clinical observations, molecular genetic analysis, and treatment of sitosterolemia in infants and children, *J Inherit Metab Dis* 33:437–443, 2010.

Ooi EM, Barrett PH, Chan DC, et al: Apolipoprotein C-III: Understanding an emerging cardiovascular risk factor, *Clin Sci (Lond)* 114:611–624, 2008.

Oppenheimer MJ, Oram JF, Bierman EL: Downregulation of high-density lipoprotein receptor activity of cultured fibroblasts by platelet-derived growth factor, *Arteriosclerosis* 7:325–332, 1987.

Oram JF: Receptor-mediated transport of cholesterol between cultured cells and high-density lipoproteins, *Meth Enzymol* 129:645–659, 1986.

Ose L: An update on familial hypercholesterolaemia, *Ann Med* 31(Suppl 1):13–18, 1999.

Otvos J, Jeyarajah E, Bennett DW, et al: Development of a proton nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopic method for determining plasma lipoprotein concentrations and subspecies distributions from a single, rapid measurement, *Clin Chem* 39:1632–1638, 1992.

Otvos JD: Measurement of lipoprotein subclass profiles by nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy, *Clin Lab* 48(3–4):171–180, 2002.

Peelman F, Verschelde JL, Vanloo B, et al: Effects of natural mutations in lecithin:cholesterol acyltransferase on the enzyme structure and activity, *J Lipid Res* 40:59–69, 1999.

Pesce MA: Bodourian SH. Interference with the enzymatic measurement of cholesterol in serum by use of five reagent kits, *Clin Chem* 23:757–760, 1977.

Rath M, Pauling L: Immunological evidence for the accumulation of lipoprotein(a) in the atherosclerotic lesion of the hypoascorbemic guinea pig, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 87(23):9388–9390, 1990.

Rifai N, Warnick GR, Dominiczak MH: Handbook of lipoprotein testing, *Am Assoc Clin Chem* 2000.

Risser TR, Reaven GM, Reaven EP: Intestinal contribution to secretion of very-low-density lipoproteins into plasma, *Am J Physiol* 234:E277–E281, 1978.

Robinson D, Bevan EA, Hinohara S, et al: Seasonal variation in serum cholesterol levels—Evidence from the UK and Japan, *Atherosclerosis* 95:15–24, 1992.

Rust S, Rosier M, Funke H, et al: Tangier disease is caused by mutations in the gene encoding ATP-binding cassette transporter 1, *Nat Genet* 22: 352–355, 1999.

Scanu AM: Lipoprotein(a). A potential bridge between the fields of atherosclerosis and thrombosis, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 112:1045–1047, 1988.

Scanu AM, Byrne RE, Mihovilovic M: Functional roles of plasma high-density lipoproteins, *CRC Crit Rev Biochem* 13:109–140, 1982.

Sniderman AD, Blank D, Zakarian R, et al: Triglycerides and small dense LDL: The twin Achilles heels of the Friedewald formula, *Clin Biochem* 36:499–504, 2003.

Soutar AK: Update on low-density lipoprotein receptor mutations, *Curr Opin Lipidol* 9:141–147, 1998.

Stein O, Stein Y, Coetzee GA, et al: Metabolic fate of low-density lipoprotein and high-density lipoprotein labeled with an ether analogue of cholesteryl ester, *Klin Wochenschr* 62:1151–1156, 1984.

Sugiuchi H, Irie T, Uji Y, et al: Homogenous assay for measuring low-density lipoprotein cholesterol in serum with triblock co-polymer and alpha-cyclodextrin sulfate, *Clin Chem* 44:522–531, 1998.

Sundaram GS, MacKenzie SL, Sodhi HS: Preparative isoelectric focusing of human serum high-density lipoprotein (HPL3), *Biochem Biophys Acta* 337:196–203, 1974.

Tall AR: Plasma high-density lipoproteins: Metabolism and relationship to atherogenesis, *J Clin Invest* 86:379–384, 1990.

Tsubakio-Yamamoto K, Nishida M, Nakagawa-Toyama Y, et al: Current therapy for patients with sitosterolemia—Effect of ezetimibe on plant sterol metabolism, *J Atheroscler Thromb* 17:891–900, 2010.

Varret M, Abifadel M, Rabes JP, et al: Genetic heterogeneity of autosomal dominant hypercholesterolemia, *Clin Genet* 73:1–13, 2008.

Wang G, Wang Z, Liang J, et al: A phytosterolemia patient presenting exclusively with macrothrombocytopenia and stomatocytic hemolysis, *Acta Haematol* 126:95–98, 2011.

Warden CH, Daluiski A, Bu X, et al: Evidence for linkage of the apolipoprotein A-II locus to plasma apolipoprotein A-II and free fatty acid levels in mice and humans, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 90(22):10886–10890, 1993.

Warnick GR, Cheung MC, Albers JJ: Comparison of current methods for high-density lipoprotein cholesterol quantitation, *Clin Chem* 25:596–604, 1979.

Wood PD, Bachorik PS, Albers JJ, et al: An investigation of the effects of sample aging on total cholesterol values determined by the automated ferric chloride-sulfuric acid and Liebermann–Burchard procedures, *Clin Chem* 26:592–597, 1980.

Wu J, Kim J, Li Q, et al: Known mutations of apoB account for only a small minority of hypobetalipoproteinemia, *J Lipid Res* 40:955–959, 1999.

Zheng L, Nukuna B, Brennan ML, et al: Apolipoprotein A-I is a selective target for myeloperoxidase-catalyzed oxidation and functional impairment in subjects with cardiovascular disease, *J Clin Invest* 114(4):529–541, 2004.

Zivkovic AM, Wiest MM, Nguyen UT, et al: Effects of sample handling and storage on quantitative lipid analysis in human serum, *Metabolomics* 5(4):507–516, 2009.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 18

CARDIAC INJURY, ATHEROSCLEROSIS, AND THROMBOTIC DISEASE

Jay L. Bock

OVERVIEW, 244

BACKGROUND, 244

MARKERS OF MYOCARDIAL DAMAGE, 246
Historical Development, 246
Cardiac Troponin, 246
Other Markers, 247
Assay Procedures, 247
Clinical Protocols, 247

MARKERS OF CORONARY RISK, 248
C-Reactive Protein, 249
Homocysteine, 249

MARKERS OF CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE, 250
Cardiac Natriuretic Peptides, 250

OTHER CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH ATHEROSCLEROSIS OR THROMBOSIS, 252

SELECTED REFERENCES, 252

KEY POINTS

- The most important disease affecting the heart is coronary heart disease (CHD), which is atherosclerosis affecting the coronary arteries. CHD can lead to thrombotic occlusion of coronary blood flow, causing an acute coronary syndrome (ACS). ACS with frank necrosis of any amount of myocardium is known as myocardial infarction (MI).
- The primary tests for diagnosing ACS are electrocardiography and laboratory measurement of cardiac markers. Cardiac markers are proteins released into the circulation from damaged heart muscle. The most important cardiac marker today is cardiac troponin (cTn), which derives only from heart muscle.
- Troponin is a complex of three proteins, two of which are suitable as specific cardiac marker tests: cTnI and cTnT. These two proteins have different properties, but their clinical applications are similar. Clinically, MI is now essentially defined as an ACS that causes release of troponin.
- There is a delay of a few hours following MI before cTn is detected in the circulation; it peaks in about 24 hours and then declines over several days.
- Patients presenting to an emergency department with symptoms suggesting ACS must be processed rapidly and precisely to provide life-saving interventions as needed, yet avoid wasting resources. Rapid measurements of cTn, and possibly other laboratory markers, play a critical role.
- The clinical laboratory also measures risk factors associated with the development and progression of CHD. Significant laboratory markers of risk include lipids (cholesterol, triglycerides, and specific lipoprotein fractions—see Chapter 17), homocysteine (Hcy), and C-reactive protein (CRP). Hcy is an amino acid that exacerbates thrombosis. CRP is an inflammatory marker that appears to reflect the severity of CHD and may contribute to its pathogenesis.
- CHD and other heart diseases can impair the heart's ability to pump blood, causing the clinical syndrome of heart failure (HF). B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP), a 32 amino acid peptide secreted by the cardiac ventricles in response to wall-stretch stimuli, is a marker of the presence and severity of HF. BNP testing is particularly useful for aiding the differential diagnosis of patients who present to an emergency department with shortness of breath.
- Atherosclerosis affecting the carotid arteries or brain vasculature can lead to ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke. Some biomarkers show promise for the diagnosis or evaluation of stroke, but none are sufficiently discriminatory for routine use at present.
- Measurement of D-dimer, a degradation product of fibrin, has good sensitivity but poor specificity for the diagnosis of pulmonary embolism and venous thrombotic disease in general.

OVERVIEW

Heart disease is an affliction intimately tied to high technology. Technology has had a causal role, in part by allowing people to live longer and in part by enabling a sedentary and overly consumptive lifestyle. During the twentieth century, heart disease rose from obscurity to become the leading cause of morbidity and mortality in developed nations (Box 18-1). Diagnosis and treatment of heart disease also depend heavily on advanced technology, including electrophysiologic, imaging, catheterization, surgical, and clinical laboratory modalities. The following major laboratory applications are the subject of this chapter:

1. Measurement of proteins present in cardiac myocytes indicates recent damage to cardiac muscle. These tests are used mainly for the diagnosis and management of ischemic events (acute coronary syndromes). Although many different markers of ischemic damage have been used in the past, at the time of this writing the most important markers by far are *cardiac troponin I* and *cardiac troponin T.*
2. Measurement of substances that are damaging to the coronary arteries, or at least have proven association with coronary heart disease, is used to assess risk and select appropriate preventive measures. The most important laboratory risk factors are lipids, which are discussed in Chapter 17. Of the many other substances that could be discussed, this chapter focuses on two: homocysteine (Hcy) and C-reactive protein (CRP).
3. Measurement of natriuretic peptides released from myocardium, particularly *B-type natriuretic peptide* (BNP) and the related inactive fragment, *NT-pro-BNP,* reflects the presence and severity of heart failure.
4. Laboratory testing has been less applicable to cerebrovascular disease, but some new biomarkers may be considered promising. Measurement of D-dimer is useful in ruling out pulmonary embolus.

BACKGROUND

It is ironic that for the heart, an organ that pumps several liters of blood each minute, the most important disease process is ischemia—the lack of an adequate blood supply (Table 18-1). This is so because heart muscle depends on constant nutrition through a system of coronary arteries, which are highly vulnerable to the process of atherosclerosis. Atherosclerosis is a chronic process involving damage to endothelium and the buildup of vessel-occluding lesions called plaque. In the early stages of atherosclerosis, as coronary blood flow is gradually reduced, there are typically no symptoms or laboratory evidence of cardiac injury. Once the diameter of a coronary artery is reduced to less than 10% to 20% of its original size, chest pain (angina pectoris) often develops when demand for oxygen increases, particularly during exercise (exertional angina). More rapid reduction in blood flow can occur when plaque stimulates formation of a thrombus in a coronary artery, leading to an acute coronary syndrome (ACS). When a thrombus completely cuts off blood flow, the supplied muscle will develop irreversible ischemic damage, and the syndrome is a

http://basicbook.net

BOX 18-1

Heart Disease Statistics for the United States

- An estimated 83.6 million American adults (over 1 in 3) have some form of cardiovascular disease (including hypertension).
- 15.4 million Americans have a history of CHD; of these, 7.6 million have had an MI, and 7.8 million have had angina pectoris.
- 5.1 million Americans have HF.
- 6.8 million Americans have experienced a stroke.
- The estimated annual direct and indirect cost of cardiovascular disease in 2010 was $315.4 billion.
- Although some trends in cardiovascular disease are favorable, other factors, including an alarming increase in the prevalence of obesity and type 2 diabetes, will fuel the epidemic for many years to come.

From Go AS, Mozaffarian D, Roger VL, et al: Heart disease and stroke statistics—2014 update: A report from the American Heart Association, *Circulation* 129:e28–e292, 2014.

CHD, Coronary heart disease; *HF,* heart failure; *MI,* myocardial infarction.

TABLE 18-1

Clinical Abbreviations

ACS	Acute coronary syndrome
CHD	Coronary heart disease (also referred to as ischemic heart disease [IHD], atherosclerotic heart disease [ASHD])
HF	(Congestive) heart failure
MI	(Acute) myocardial infarction
NSTEMI	Non–ST-elevation myocardial infarction
STEMI	ST-elevation myocardial infarction
UA	Unstable angina

myocardial infarction (MI). When the blockage is not complete, irreversible muscle damage may be avoided, but the patient will experience severe angina, even at rest, and this syndrome is known as unstable angina (UA). The broad spectrum of heart disease resulting from impaired coronary blood flow is referred to as coronary heart disease (CHD).

MIs can be categorized by whether they are accompanied by characteristic changes on the electrocardiogram (ECG). More severe MIs, generally involving transmural damage to the myocardium, typically cause the rapid appearance of ST-segment elevations and the later appearance of Q-waves. These are categorized as ST-elevation MIs (STEMIs). MIs without these changes (non–Q-wave MIs, or non-ST elevation MIs [NSTEMIs]) typically involve lesser degrees of muscle damage, possibly only to the subendocardium, but any ACS event carries serious risk for possibly lethal arrhythmias and for future events. Damage to a sizable quantity of cardiac muscle carries the additional risk of compromising the heart's ability to pump blood, leading to the clinical syndrome of heart failure (HF), which is discussed later.

Cardiac muscle is relatively resistant to ischemia, compared with other cells such as neurons and renal tubular epithelial cells, in which even short duration of ischemia can lead to cell death. In experimental animals, complete blockage of blood flow to an area of the heart does not cause cell death (MI) until after at least 20 to 30 minutes of ischemia; if blood flow had been previously restricted, cell death often is delayed for up to an hour. With complete coronary artery occlusion, there is typically a gradient of ischemia, with oxygen deprivation worst in areas receiving blood flow last (the subendocardial portions of the ventricular wall). Cells near the border between ischemic myocardium and normally perfused myocardium may receive some oxygen supply and thus may remain viable for several hours. The longer the duration of ischemia, the higher the percentage of cells at risk that will die; 3 hours of ischemia increases cell death to 80% of cells at risk, and 6 hours of ischemia causes the death of almost 100% of cells at risk. For this reason, early recognition of persistent ischemia and intervention to restore blood flow are needed to minimize cell death. Blood flow is most commonly restored by manipulating the plaque (usually by inflating a balloon) via a catheter inserted into a peripheral vein and then threaded into the coronary circulation (percutaneous coronary intervention). A mesh tube, or stent, may be inserted at the same time to maintain the patency of the coronary artery. When flow is blocked at multiple sites, it may be necessary to perform a coronary artery bypass graft.

BOX 18-2

Clinical (Nonlaboratory) Risk Factors for CHD

- Age
- Gender (males at higher risk)
- Race (blacks at higher risk)
- Cigarette smoking
- Hypertension
- Family history of premature CHD
- Obesity
- Diabetes mellitus
- Sedentary lifestyle

Earlier guidelines from the National Cholesterol Education Program applied arbitrary criteria to establish a "count" of risk factors, which were then used to recommend goals for blood cholesterol (for example, being a male age 45 or greater counted as one risk factor, having a systolic blood pressure greater than 140 mmHg counted as one risk factor, etc.) (National Cholesterol Education Panel, 2002). The most recent guideline from the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association recommends a numerical risk calculation that includes the following parameters: age, gender, race (black or nonblack), systolic blood pressure, current smoking (yes or no), hypertensive treatment (yes or no), and diabetes mellitus (yes or no), along with total and HDL cholesterol, as a basis for deciding on lipid-lowering therapy (Goff et al, 2013). (See Chapter 17.)

CHD, Coronary heart disease; *HDL,* high-density lipoprotein; *LDL,* low-density lipoprotein.

The pathobiology of atherosclerosis and ACS remains incompletely understood. Formation of obstructive plaques probably begins with nonobstructive lesions known as fatty streaks, which have been observed in the coronary arteries of young individuals dying in combat or in accidents (Enos et al, 1953; Berenson et al, 1992; Strong et al, 1999). The lesions are likely triggered by uptake of oxidized low-density lipoprotein (LDL) particles by macrophages, which then invade the coronary endothelium (Ross, 1993; Witztum, 1994; Adams et al, 2000; Zaman et al, 2000). Inflammatory cells and mediators play a role in the evolution of the lesion, which eventually becomes a structure containing a lipid core (mainly cholesterol esters) surrounded by numerous macrophages and other inflammatory cells, and covered with a cap of endothelialized connective tissue (Davies, 2000; Weissberg, 2000; Hansson, 2005). Advanced lesions also contain new blood vessels and calcium deposits. Plaques in coronary arteries were formerly regarded as passive, physiologically irreversible barriers to blood flow. In recent years, their more dynamic role in ACS has been appreciated. A balance of inflammatory mediators, shear forces, and other factors can cause the fibrous cap of the plaque to strengthen or weaken. Erosion of the cap can expose thrombogenic material, leading to deposition of platelets and eventually enlargement of the lesion. More ominous is actual rupture of the plaque, causing thrombosis with sufficient occlusion to result in ACS. A major contributor to this concept of plaque vulnerability has been the finding that cholesterol-lowering statin drugs can diminish the risk of ACS substantially without causing appreciable diminution of the degree of stenosis caused by atherosclerotic lesions (see Chapter 17). Modalities for examining plaque are improving, but unfortunately, no routine test is available at present to assess plaque vulnerability.

The severity of coronary atherosclerotic disease has traditionally been evaluated by coronary angiography, which uses a radiopaque "dye" to image blood flow through the coronary arteries. Besides being invasive, this test has the limitation that it can only identify restrictions to coronary blood flow; it says nothing about the biology of the plaque lesions, nor does it indicate whether symptoms experienced by the patient are caused by those lesions. Electron beam computed tomography can noninvasively image the accumulation of calcium in atherosclerotic lesions, but the ability to predict the future behavior of lesions is still limited (Fuseini et al, 2003). Blood tests that reflect the actual extent of atherosclerotic disease may be available in the future—for example, measurement of microparticles shed by plaque has been proposed (Heloire et al, 2003). At present, however, risk of CHD in individuals is mainly assessed indirectly through the measurement of risk factors, each of which appears to play a contributory but not necessarily definitive role (Stampfer et al, 2004; Akhabue et al, 2014). Several clinical parameters, summarized in Box 18-2, have been established as important risk factors. Additionally, hundreds of laboratory tests have been studied in relation to CHD risk. Of these, several lipid tests, as discussed in Chapter 17, have the best established role in risk assessment. Two newer markers, homocysteine and C-reactive protein, are discussed later.

http://basicbook.net

Next to CHD, and often as a direct consequence of it, the most important heart disease is HF. HF is a clinical syndrome with prominent symptoms, including fatigue, shortness of breath, and pulmonary edema, resulting from impairment in the heart's pumping ability. It is most commonly caused by damage to the myocardium, as results from CHD. Because of the high incidence of CHD and the improving survival of people who suffer from it, HF is a rapidly increasing problem, especially in the elderly. HF can also be caused by mechanical problems, such as valvular disease, which interfere with the pump function of the heart. When the problem is related to filling of the left ventricle during diastole, it is often referred to as diastolic HF.

Diagnosing HF and monitoring its progression can be difficult. A defining parameter for systolic HF is the left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF), which is the fraction of the left ventricle's blood volume that is ejected during systole. It can be measured by echocardiography or by radionuclide ventriculography. Symptomatic HF is usually associated with LVEF less than 40%, but correlation between LVEF and subjective symptoms is poor. Until recently, no clinical laboratory test had specific utility in disclosing the presence or severity of HF. This situation has changed with the introduction of testing for cardiac natriuretic peptides, which is discussed later.

Of the myriad other diseases that can affect the heart, brief mention should be made of genetic diseases that, although relatively uncommon, have disproportionate importance because of their potentially life-threatening consequences. The syndrome of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, described more than a century ago, occurs in 1 in 500 individuals and is the most common cause of sudden death in the young (Taylor et al, 2004). More than 1400 mutations have been tied to this disorder (Maron & Maron, 2013); they affect various proteins of the contractile apparatus, including the troponins, actin, and myosin, and generally are inherited in autosomal dominant fashion. The long-QT syndrome, an abnormality in ventricular repolarization that can cause sudden death, has several distinct variants caused by both autosomal dominant and recessive mutations in ion channels and other proteins. Genetic testing can help guide management of these disorders (Priori et al, 2013; Zhang et al, 2014).

MARKERS OF MYOCARDIAL DAMAGE

HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT

Biochemical markers of myocardial damage were essentially a serendipitous discovery in the early 1950s, when LaDue and coworkers were investigating the transaminase enzymes then known as glutamate-oxaloacetate transaminase (now aspartate transaminase) and glutamate-pyruvate transaminase (now alanine transaminase) (LaDue et al, 1954). A rapid spectrophotometric measurement of these enzyme activities, based on the absorbance of NADH, was developed (Karmen, 1955). While surveying various hospital patients, investigators noted that serum transaminase levels rose sharply after an MI, and thus was born the era of "cardiac enzymes." The simple underlying principle, as with other organ markers, is that cell death will cause release of cellular proteins into the circulation. (A more difficult question, still not fully resolved, is the extent to which *reversible* cell damage can cause protein leakage.) In these early years, measurement of enzyme activity was essentially the only practical means to quantify trace proteins in plasma.

Transaminases have not endured as cardiac markers because of their abundance in liver, skeletal muscle, and other tissues. They were soon superseded for cardiac diagnosis by two other enzymes: lactate dehydrogenase (LD) and creatine kinase (CK) (Hess & MacDonald, 1963; Roe, 1977). LD is a zinc-containing enzyme that is part of the glycolytic pathway and is found in virtually all cells in the body, whereas CK transfers high-energy phosphate mainly in muscle cells but is also found in brain and other tissues. With both of these enzymes, improved cardiac specificity was achieved through separation of isoenzymes. LD is a tetramer of two active subunits, H (for heart) and M (for muscle), with a molecular weight of 134 kDa. Combinations of subunits produce five isoenzymes ranging from LD_1 (HHHH) to LD_5 (MMMM); the intermediate isoenzymes contain differing combinations of H and M subunits (LD_2, HHHM; LD_3, HHMM; LD_4, HMMM). As the subunit names imply, LD_1 is relatively abundant in cardiac muscle, whereas LD_5 is more abundant in skeletal muscle. Patients with MI exhibit a characteristic pattern of "flipped" LD, where the normal finding of LD_2 being greater than LD_1 is reversed.

CK is predominantly found as a dimer of catalytic subunits, each with a molecular weight of about 40 kDa; the two subunits are termed M (for muscle) and B (for brain). The three resulting isoenzymes are CK_1 (BB), CK_2 (MB), and CK_3 (MM). CK is found in small amounts throughout the body, but it is found in high concentrations only in muscle and brain, although CK from brain virtually never crosses the blood-brain barrier to reach plasma. In skeletal muscle, creatine kinase-MB fraction (CK-MB) accounts for 0% to 1% of the total CK in type 1 fibers and 2% to 6% of CK in type 2 fibers. During regeneration of skeletal muscle, increased amounts of CK-MB are produced relative to CK-MM, similar to the pattern seen in fetal muscle (Tzvetanova, 1971). In the normal heart, an average of 15% to 20% of the CK is CK-MB; its distribution is not uniform, with CK-MB percentage greater in the right heart than in the left heart (Marmor et al, 1980). A single study, however, suggests that CK-MB is not found in normal myocardium but appears only when the muscle becomes diseased (Ingwall et al, 1985). CK-BB is the dominant isoenzyme of CK found in brain, intestine, and smooth muscle. The drawback of isoenzyme analysis was that it required a relatively lengthy and tedious chromatographic or electrophoretic separation of the individual isoenzymes.

The next major advance in cardiac markers was the development of sensitive immunometric assays for proteins using monoclonal antibody technology (see Chapter 44). With this technology, it was possible to develop a CK-MB "mass assay" that did not depend on the protein's enzymatic activity (el Allaf et al, 1986; Mair et al, 1991). More important, it provided the opportunity to develop organ markers that were not traditional enzymes. A systematic search for proteins that were specific to myocardium led to the current era of troponin testing.

CARDIAC TROPONIN

Troponin (Tn) is a regulatory complex of three proteins that resides at regular intervals in the thin filament of striated muscle. The three individual proteins are tropomyosin-binding subunit (TnT, 37 kDa), inhibitory subunit (TnI, 24 kDa), and calcium-binding subunit (TnC, 18 kDa). The Ca^{++} trigger for muscle contraction is transmitted via the Tn complex, which causes a conformational change in another thin-filament component, tropomyosin, allowing interaction between actin and myosin to proceed. In contrast to nearly all other muscle proteins, the forms of Tn found in skeletal and cardiac muscle differ. For TnC, the forms found in type 2 fibers and cardiac muscle are identical, obviating its use as a differential marker. TnI has a cardiospecific form (cTnI), as well as distinct forms in types 1 and 2 skeletal muscle fibers, each coded by a separate gene. The presence of the cardiospecific form in tissue other than cardiac muscle has never been documented (Bodor, 1995). TnT also has distinct forms in myocardium (cTnT) and in fast-twitch and slow-twitch skeletal muscle, but here the situation is more complicated, because cTnT has been detected in fetal skeletal muscle and diseased skeletal muscle. However, posttranslational modifications cause detectable differences between cTnT produced in myocardium and cTnT produced in diseased skeletal muscle (Apple et al, 1998; Apple, 1999). Hence an immunochemical test for cTnT with carefully chosen antibodies, such as the current generation (but not earlier generations) of commercial cTnT assays, should have myocardial specificity approaching 100%. Nevertheless, small increases in circulating cTnT, even with newer assays, have been reported in patients with muscular dystrophy and renal failure who have no other evidence of cardiac disease (Muller-Bardorff et al, 1997; Hammerer-Lercher et al, 2001a).

Within the cardiac myocytes, cTnT and cTnI are bound predominantly to muscle fibers, as described earlier, and this bound form is released slowly over the course of 1 to 2 weeks following myocardial infarction. Thus, although cTnI and cTnT are relatively small proteins that are rapidly cleared, their plasma levels fall slowly after cardiac injury. A small fraction of cTn in the myocardial cell is free within the cytoplasm; this averages 6% for cTnT and slightly lower (2% to 5%) for cTnI. The free fraction allows early leakage from injured myocardial cells and detection in a time frame similar to that of CK-MB, with cTn reaching a peak at about 24 hours after MI. Because of the slow release of fiber-bound cTn, the rapid decline in circulating cTn right after its peak is typically followed by a plateau or even a small secondary increase. It is important that such an increase *not* be interpreted as evidence of reinfarction. Circulating cTn declines to baseline levels in about 5 to 10 days, depending on infarct size (Mair, 1997).

In contrast to other cardiac markers, cTnT and cTnI are nearly absent from normal serum. With the most sensitive assays in wide use at present, which have detection limits of a few nanograms per liter, many healthy individuals have undetectable levels, so the normal range is not well defined. The 99th percentile of the healthy population is around 40 ng/L, depending on the assay. Levels above this threshold are almost certainly indicative of myocyte damage but possibly reveal a much lesser amount of

http://basicbook.net

damage than was detectable with earlier cardiac markers such as CK-MB. With the advent of cTn testing, it has become clear that myocyte damage can occur in many circumstances other than coronary artery obstruction: cTn elevations are observed in pericarditis, myocarditis, pulmonary embolism, renal failure, sepsis, and other critical illness (Roongsritong et al, 2004). Prolonged intense exercise, such as running a marathon, can cause small elevations (Mingels et al, 2009). Healthy newborns were found to have levels as high as 3000 ng/L (Araújo et al, 2004). Small measured elevations in cTn may also be analytic artifacts (see Assay Procedures later).

OTHER MARKERS

Other protein biomarkers that have been proposed for cardiac diagnosis include myoglobin, carbonic anhydrase III, glycogen phosphorylase, heart fatty acid binding protein, myosin, ischemia-modified albumin, creatine kinase isoforms (which are CK isoenzymes that have been modified by the action of a peptidase in plasma), and copeptin (which is derived from the precursor of the hormone vasopressin and is released early in the course of an MI). At present, and especially with the advent of high-sensitivity troponin assays, these have much less practical application than troponin and so are not discussed further in this chapter (Mair, 1997; Collinson & Gaze, 2007; Lackner, 2013).

ASSAY PROCEDURES

At the present time, cTn and other organ-specific protein markers are almost universally measured by sensitive immunometric assays, typically employing monoclonal antibodies. These can be automated for high-volume with around-the-clock availability or alternatively adapted to point-of-care testing.

Despite the impressively high sensitivity and specificity of modern immunometric assays, they have intrinsic limitations that must be well recognized in the case of cTn. All proteins, because of posttranslational modifications, are heterogeneous analytes, but cTn, which originates in a protein complex that degrades as it is released into the circulation, is especially so. Circulating forms that have been identified include a ternary cTnT-I-C complex, binary cTnI-C, free cTnT (but not free cTnI), oxidized forms (cTnI but not cTnT contains cysteine residues that can be oxidized to form an intramolecular disulfide bond), phosphorylated forms, and degraded forms (Gao et al, 1997; Katrukha et al, 1998; Morjana, 1998; Wu et al, 1998b; Shi et al, 1999; Bunk et al, 2000; Labugger et al, 2000). Evidently, certain epitopes are blocked or modified in some of these forms, because differences greater than twentyfold have been observed in their reactivity with different commercial assays for cTnI (Wu & Feng, 1998a; Datta et al, 1999; Newman et al, 1999; Shi et al, 1999; Tate et al, 1999; Kao et al, 2001). The problem does not arise in the same way for cTnT because assays are at this time marketed by only one manufacturer. A certified reference material for cTnI has been prepared (Bunk & Welch, 2006), but it has demonstrated commutability only with plasma cTn specimens for half of the commercial assays (Christenson et al, 2006). cTnI results will always demonstrate some inconsistency among methods, unless manufacturers adopt the use of very similar antibodies.

Another problem is that because the normal level of plasma cTn is very low, even a minuscule degree of assay interference can elevate a result to the abnormal range, suggesting a strong possibility of ischemic disease to the caregiver. This may lead to unnecessary invasive procedures such as coronary angiography. Various cTnI assays have in fact been found susceptible to interferences from heterophilic antibodies, fibrin, and other substances (Roberts et al, 1997; Fitzmaurice et al, 1998; Dasgupta et al, 1999; Nosanchuk et al, 1999; Parry et al, 1999; Galambos et al, 2000; Lippi et al, 2013). Negative interference due to autoantibodies has also been reported (Eriksson et al, 2005).

Reference ranges and decision points have been a matter of some discussion (Jaffe & Katus, 2004), but in keeping with recent guidelines, there has been a general trend toward the use of the 99th percentile of the healthy population as the cutpoint for elevated cTn. It is desirable that the precision of the assay be within a 10% coefficient of variation at this cutpoint, and this is achievable with the newest assays. As the low-end accuracy of cTn assays improves, it is becoming increasingly apparent that the 99th percentile can vary, depending on the reference population chosen, and that levels below the 99th percentile may have clinical significance (Latini et al, 2007; Eggers et al, 2009). It is also important to emphasize that cTn above the 99th percentile or other arbitrary cutpoint does not point to any specific etiology of damage to cardiac myocytes. The new definitions of MI emphasize that a change over time in cTn levels is an important criterion for that diagnosis; however, a uniform criterion for a change over time has not been established.

CLINICAL PROTOCOLS

Diagnosis of ACS

Approximately 8 million ED visits in the United States each year are related to chest pain or other symptoms, including shortness of breath, dizziness, or loss of consciousness, which may suggest ACS (Storrow & Gibler, 2000; Fig. 18-1). Although diagnosis is often straightforward, the challenge is to achieve a very high level of accuracy. Missed diagnosis of ACS, which may occur in about 2% of cases, carries an increased risk of mortality and is the leading cause of malpractice payouts for emergency physicians (Karcz et al, 1996; Pope et al, 2000). On the other hand, the conservative practice of hospital admission for most patients with suspected ACS costs billions of dollars unnecessarily, because two-thirds of these patients turn out not to have ACS.

Biochemical markers play a secondary role in the initial management of patients with suspected ACS. The earliest decision making, which ideally should take place within 10 minutes of the patient's arrival in the ED, is based on history, physical examination, and 12-lead ECG (Anderson et al, 2007; Fig. 18-2). The ECG may establish the diagnosis of STEMI, at which point the patient is a candidate for immediate intervention to restore coronary blood flow (Antman et al, 2008). Biochemical marker results are not necessary before these interventions are provided, and in fact are likely to be negative at this early time.

If the initial ECG is negative for STEMI, biochemical markers assume increasing importance. Choice of markers and time points for testing has varied among institutions, but it is now generally agreed that cTn is the preferred marker, with little to choose between I and T (Anderson et al, 2007; Morrow et al, 2007). cTn does not rise until some hours after the onset of myocyte necrosis, so a specimen obtained at the time of presentation is likely to be negative, necessitating repeat testing at a later time. As the sensitivity of troponin tests has improved, elevations can be seen at an earlier time, and there is no universal standard for repeat sampling. Whereas traditionally testing three specimens, at approximately 0-4-8 or 0-3-6 hours after presentation, was standard for "rule-out MI," more rapid protocols—for example, testing at only 0 and 2 hours—have recently been proposed (Than et al, 2012). When a modest elevation of troponin is observed, the repeat testing is important to establish that the levels are changing, which is a criterion in the universal definition of MI. Again, however, there is no universal definition of what constitutes a change. Repeatedly negative, or unchanging, cTn results could rule out NSTEMI, but ECG changes (ST depression or T-wave inversions) or other evidence of ischemia may establish the diagnosis of UA. These two diagnoses are managed similarly, possibly with invasive artery-opening therapy (Anderson et al, 2007).

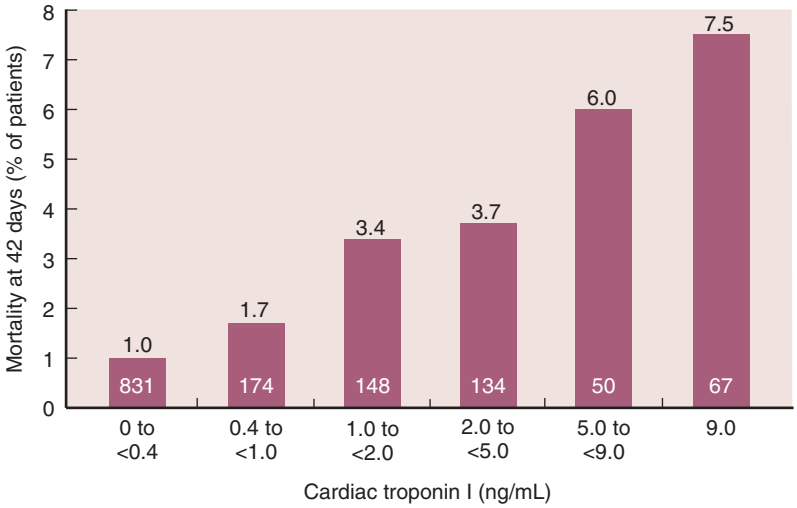
If, after several hours, the patient's presenting symptoms have resolved, and ECG and biochemical findings have been consistently negative, then an ACS has been effectively ruled out. For increased safety, before such a patient is discharged, a provocative test for CHD is commonly performed, such as a simple exercise ECG test or a more elaborate nuclear imaging or echocardiography stress test (Farkouh et al, 1998; Lindsay et al, 1998; Storrow & Gibler, 2000). These tests must be rapidly and continuously available if the ED is to achieve the desired rapid discharge of low-risk patients. They have the drawbacks of expense and significant numbers of false-positive and false-negative results, depending on the test modality chosen.

Because both clinical care and patient flow through the ED require rapid risk assessment, cardiac marker test results must be available quickly. It is commonly advocated that point-of-care testing be considered when the central laboratory cannot reliably provide results within about 1 hour. Both qualitative and quantitative tests for cardiac markers that are suitable for point-of-care testing are now available and have demonstrated effectiveness (Antman et al, 1997; Brogan & Bock, 1998; Bock et al, 2008).

Other Applications

Besides ruling in or ruling out the diagnosis of MI, cTn testing can be useful in determining prognosis and adjusting treatment. Higher cTn levels indicate a larger volume of infarcted muscle and a worse prognosis (Bøhmer et al, 2009; Kurz et al, 2009). A single specimen obtained 72 to 96 hours after the event appears to be most useful for assessment of infarct size (Younger et al, 2007; Giannitsis et al, 2008). Although more experience has been acquired in testing for reinfarction using CK-MB, which

http://basicbook.net



Risk ratio	1.0	1.8	3.5	3.9	6.2	7.8
95% confidence interval	–	0.5–6.7	1.2–10.5	1.3–11.7	1.7–22.3	2.6–23.0

Figure 18-1 Mortality rates of acute coronary syndrome patients as a function of cardiospecific troponin (cTnI) level. The 1441 patients in the TIMI IIIB study were from 21 to 76 years of age, had episodes of pain at rest that were presumed to be ischemic in origin and had lasted for at least 5 minutes (but less than 6 hours) within the preceding 24 hours, and had documented evidence of coronary heart disease. Patients were excluded from the study if a left bundle-branch block was noted on presentation, a documented myocardial infarction had occurred within the previous 21 days, a treatable cause of angina was present, thrombolytic therapy had been administered within the previous 72 hours, or angioplasty had been performed in the previous 6 months. Mortality rates at 42 days are shown for ranges of cTnI measured at enrollment. The numbers at the bottom of each bar are the numbers of patients with cTnI in each range, and the numbers above the bars are percentages. $p < 0.001$ for the increase in mortality rate (and the risk ratio for mortality) with increasing levels of cTnI at enrollment. (From Antman EM, Tanasijevic MJ, Thompson B, et al: Cardiac-specific troponin I levels to predict the risk of mortality in patients with acute coronary syndromes, *N Engl J Med* 335:1342–1349, 1996, with permission.)

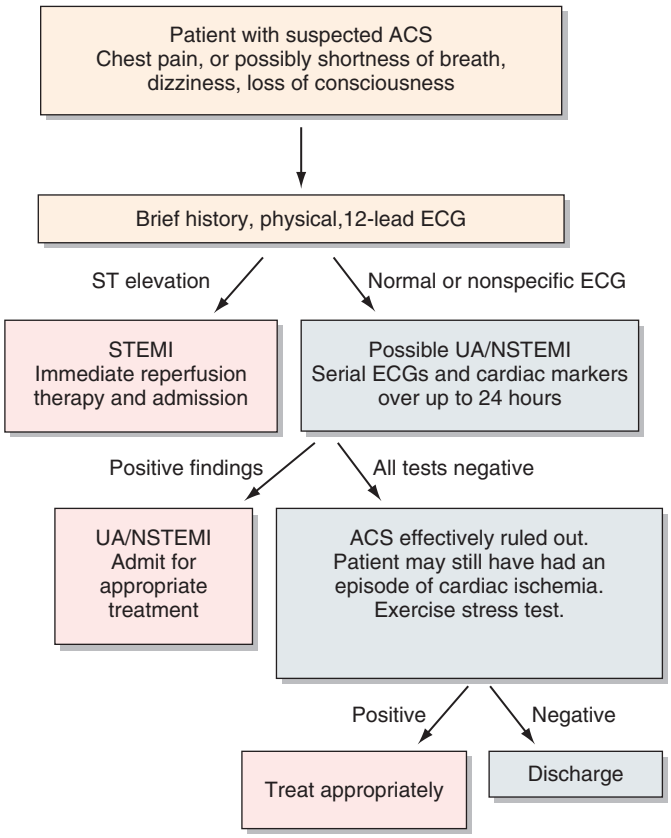


Figure 18-2 Outline of a clinical algorithm for treating patients presenting to an emergency department with symptoms suggesting acute coronary syndrome (ACS). The protocol is general and has to be customized to particular institutions and used with proper clinical judgment. *ECG,* Electrocardiogram; *NSTEMI,* non-ST elevation MI; *STEMI,* ST elevation MI; *UA,* unstable angina. (Adapted from Pearson TA, Mensah GA, Alexander RW, et al: Markers of inflammation and cardiovascular disease: Application to clinical and public health practice. A statement for healthcare professionals from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the American Heart Association, *Circulation* 107:499–511, 2003.)

declines more rapidly after an uncomplicated MI than cTn, it appears that the latter can be equally effective in diagnosing reinfarction (Apple & Murakami, 2005). When reinfarction is clinically suspected, a blood specimen should be drawn immediately and again 3 and 6 hours later. An increase in cTn of over 20%, with an absolute value exceeding the 99th percentile, confirms the diagnosis (Thygesen et al, 2012).

cTn measurements can usefully suggest adverse outcomes after procedures such as percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) and cardiac surgery. Because these procedures may be intrinsically associated with some degree of myocyte damage, it is difficult to justify firm guidelines for defining periprocedural MI. Criteria have been advanced, based on a combination of cTn measurements and clinical evidence, that define a periprocedural MI (Thygesen et al, 2012). Cardioversion, whether external or internal, causes minimal to no elevation in cTn (Allan et al, 1997; Greaves & Crake, 1998; Rao et al, 1998; Gorenek et al, 2004).

Transaminases, LD, and LD isoenzymes are no longer recommended as cardiac markers (Apple et al, 2007). CK-MB testing has persisted to some degree in the troponin era, but because there are few if any situations where it clearly provides additional information, it generally is not regarded as a cost-effective addition to cTn testing (Saenger & Jaffe, 2008).

MARKERS OF CORONARY RISK

CHD is a chronic disease of aging, and obviously, the most desirable approach to management is to prevent or minimize its development. As summarized earlier in the Background section, our understanding of the causation of CHD is still incomplete, so definitive preventive measures are not foreseeable at this time. However, many lines of evidence, the most important being large epidemiology studies, have identified several risk factors associated with CHD. Most of these risk factors pertain not just to the heart but to the general processes of atherosclerosis and/or thrombosis. Hence they have important implications for stroke and peripheral vascular disease as well.

The major clinical risk factors for CHD (not related to laboratory tests) are summarized in Box 18-2. Of risk factors that can be identified by the clinical laboratory, the earliest identified, and still one of the most important, is serum cholesterol. It is actually the LDL fraction of cholesterol, which generally contains about 70% of the total circulating cholesterol, that is directly associated with risk; the high-density lipoprotein fraction is in fact a negative risk factor. The other major lipid class commonly measured in plasma, triglyceride, has been an issue of controversy but now

http://basicbook.net

is generally accepted as a significant risk factor. Lipid testing and its relationship to CHD risk assessment are discussed in Chapter 17.

Aside from the lipids, a wide array of plasma constituents have been related to CHD risk. These include various nutrients, hormones, clotting factors, drugs, toxins, oxidants, antioxidants, and markers of inflammation or infection. In this chapter, only two markers that appear to be relatively important are discussed: CRP and Hcy.

C-REACTIVE PROTEIN

First isolated in 1930 from the plasma of patients with pneumococcal pneumonia, CRP was so named because it binds to the C-polysaccharide of the pneumococcus. It was later found that the protein appeared in plasma during many infectious or inflammatory conditions, and CRP was the original acute phase reactant. CRP has now been characterized as a member of the pentraxin family of proteins. It comprises five protomers, each of 206 amino acids and molecular weight 23 kDa, arranged in cyclic symmetry. With the participation of Ca^{++} ions, it binds various proteins and phospholipids, particularly phosphocholine. It opsonizes particles and activates complement via the classical pathway, but its actual biologic function is unknown (Szalai et al, 1999; Black et al, 2004).

In plasma from normal individuals, the median CRP concentration is about 1 mg/L, and the 99th percentile is about 10 mg/L. In individuals with acute illness, cytokines, chiefly interleukin-6, stimulate hepatic production of CRP, and plasma levels increase to 300 mg/L or more. Plasma CRP is increased in a variety of disorders, including most bacterial (but usually not viral) infections. MI is among the acute illnesses associated with elevation of plasma CRP (de Beer et al, 1982).

Epidemiologic studies have established that individuals with higher baseline levels of plasma CRP are at increased risk for CHD and stroke. In the relatively early Physicians Health Study, which enrolled 22,000 male U.S. physicians to examine the cardioprotective effects of aspirin and beta-carotene, plasma CRP averaged 1.51 mg/L in participants who developed MI, 1.38 mg/L in those who developed stroke, and 1.13 mg/L in controls who did not suffer vascular events (Ridker et al, 1997). In the larger and more recent Reykjavik study, the average baseline CRP was 1.75 mg/L in participants who developed MI versus 1.25 in those without vascular events (Danesh et al, 2004). Similar findings, as summarized in a 2004 meta-analysis, have been reported from some 20 other epidemiology studies, although the degree of independent risk associated with CRP has varied (Danesh et al, 2004). A report on the Women's Health Study suggested that CRP was actually more predictive than LDL cholesterol (Ridker et al, 2002), whereas investigators for the Reykjavik study reported that CRP is less predictive than total cholesterol, cigarette smoking, or systolic blood pressure. Differences may relate to the nature of the population studied and the means of correction used for traditional risk factors.

Elevation of plasma CRP (as indicated earlier) that confers excess coronary risk is minute compared with the hundred- to thousandfold increases that occur with overt inflammatory or infectious diseases. For this reason, testing of CRP related to cardiac risk has been given the somewhat misleading name of high-sensitivity CRP (hs-CRP). Actually, even at concentrations around 1 mg/L or less, CRP is a relatively abundant plasma protein, which does not require the most sensitive (or expensive) techniques for accurate measurement. Methods such as nephelometry, which had been established for measuring CRP as an inflammatory marker, have been readily adapted to hs-CRP assays; the main differences involve degree of dilution and calibration. Commercial hs-CRP assays have adequate precision, and the long-term stability of hs-CRP in individual patients appears to be comparable with that of other risk factors, such as blood pressure and cholesterol (Danesh et al, 2004).

Although diverse evidence points to a role of inflammation in CHD, a precise mechanism for the relationship of plasma CRP to CHD risk is lacking at this point (Paoletti et al, 2004; Hansson, 2005; Yousuf et al, 2013; Strang & Schunkert, 2014). A key question still unresolved is whether the elevation in CRP is a cause or a consequence of the disease (or possibly both) (Hingorani et al, 2009). The inflammatory response associated with atheromatous lesions may trigger enough cytokine production to be associated with a measurable rise in plasma CRP. CRP may, in turn, through its proinflammatory effects, increase plaque vulnerability or have other effects that worsen the severity of CHD. The presence of CRP in human atheromatous lesions has been demonstrated (Reynolds & Vance, 1987), and in rats it has been shown that injection of human CRP after ligation of the coronary artery enhances infarct size (Griselli et al, 1999). Another intriguing possibility is that the risk associated with CRP relates to cytokine production by adipocytes and that CRP is essentially a biochemical marker of the recently recognized metabolic syndrome (Yudkin et al, 1999; Ridker et al, 2004).

BOX 18-3

Recommendations of a Joint Committee of the American Heart Association and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention on CRP Testing to Assess CHD Risk

- If inflammatory markers are to be used in assessment of CHD risk, hs-CRP is the current analyte of choice.
- Optimally, hs-CRP results should be averaged from two specimens drawn about 2 weeks apart. If a level greater than 10 mg/L is identified, there should be a search for an obvious cause of infection or inflammation; this result should then be discarded and another test done 2 weeks later.
- Decision intervals are as follows: less than 1 mg/L, low risk; 1 to 3 mg/L, intermediate risk; greater than 3 mg/L, high risk (approximately corresponding to tertiles in the adult population).
- Patients most likely to benefit from an hs-CRP test would be those in whom the risk estimate from established factors is moderate (i.e., approximately 10% to 20% risk of CHD in the next 10 years), and the physician desires additional information to guide preventive therapy.
- The role of hs-CRP in secondary prevention (i.e., prevention of disease progression in patients with established CHD) is limited, because it is not likely to alter management (which needs to be aggressive, regardless of additional information provided by CRP or other markers).
- Universal hs-CRP screening of the adult population is *not* warranted.

From Pearson et al (2003).
CHD, Coronary heart disease; *CRP,* C-reactive protein; *hs-CRP,* high-sensitivity C-reactive protein.

Given the variations in quantitative risk estimates, the unclear role of CRP in the pathogenesis of vascular disease, and the lack of specific treatment for high CRP, the usefulness of the hs-CRP test in individual patients has been controversial. A joint committee of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the American Heart Association issued recommendations in 2003, some of which are listed in Box 18-3. Following a recent trial in which benefits of statin therapy were demonstrated in individuals with relatively low LDL cholesterol but high hs-CRP, it has been suggested that asymptomatic men older than 50 years and asymptomatic women older than 60 years be screened by hs-CRP when LDL cholesterol is not elevated and a decision to treat with statins is not otherwise clear (Ridker et al, 2008; Mora et al, 2009).

Homocysteine

Hcy (Fig. 18-3) is a sulfur-containing amino acid that is not incorporated into protein but is a metabolic intermediate; it can be methylated to form methionine, or it can be converted through the transsulfuration pathway to cystathionine and then to cysteine. Hcy can exist in plasma as the species with a free sulfhydryl group, as a disulfide (homocystine), or as a mixed disulfide, linked to a plasma protein via one of its cysteine residues. It is the sum of these, which may be referred to as "total homocysteine," "homocyst(e)ine," or simply "homocysteine" that is generally measured.

Excessive levels of circulating Hcy generally reflect a diminished activity of one of the enzymes involved in its metabolism. The classic syndrome of homocystinuria, first described in 1962 (Carson & Neill, 1962; Gerritsen et al, 1962), is due to a homozygous defect in the enzyme cystathionine-β-synthase (CBS). It results in very high circulating levels of the various forms of Hcy and methionine. Clinical manifestations include dislocation of the optical lens, osteoporosis with associated skeletal abnormalities, mental retardation, psychiatric disturbance, and thromboembolic disease, such as CHD (Yap, 2003).

The basis of the damaging effects of Hcy is uncertain. At a biochemical level, oxidant stress and inhibition of transmethylation reactions are likely possibilities. Cellular effects that have been documented in experimental systems include endothelial injury, alteration of nitric oxide metabolism, platelet activation, and smooth muscle proliferation (Thambyrajah & Townsend, 2000). Some of the toxicity of Hcy may derive from its enzymatic conversion to Hcy thiolactone (see Fig. 18-3), which can modify LDL and enhance its uptake by macrophages (McCully, 1993; Vignini et al, 2004).

The development of Hcy as a CHD risk marker in some ways parallels that of cholesterol: The regular occurrence of atherosclerosis in persons with massive elevation, due to an inborn error of metabolism, led to the

http://basicbook.net

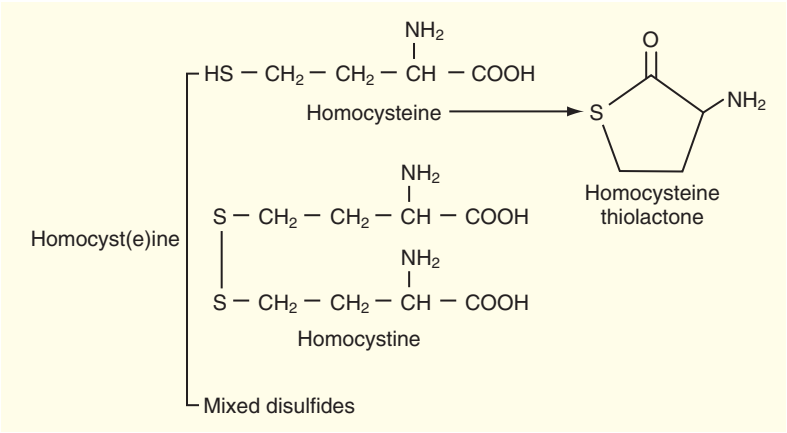


Figure 18-3 Chemical structure of homocysteine and related compounds.

hypothesis of increased risk in individuals with more moderate elevations. Experimentally induced hyperhomocysteinemia in animals lent support to the hypothesis (McCully, 1993). In humans, mild to moderate elevations in Hcy can have many causes. Genetic causes include a heterozygous defect in CBS, a defect in methionine synthase (rare), or a defect in 5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase (generally rare, except for a temperature-sensitive form that is relatively common). Nutritional causes include a deficiency of any of the vitamin cofactors involved in metabolism of Hcy: folate, B_{12}, or pyridoxine (B_6).

Many of the earlier epidemiology studies seemed to confirm a correlation between moderate Hcy levels and CHD. For example, in the Physicians Health Study, it was initially reported that having a Hcy level in the upper 5% of the population conferred a three- to fourfold higher risk (Stampfer et al, 1992). However, other studies, including a longer-term follow-up in the Physicians Health Study (Chasan-Taber et al, 1996), have shown little or no association between moderate elevations of Hcy and CHD risk. Some recent studies have supported a moderate association between Hcy and risk of CHD and/or peripheral artery disease (Humphrey et al, 2008; Bertoia et al, 2014; Schaffer et al, 2014; Esteghamati et al, 2014). Widespread folate supplementation of food has probably tended to diminish average circulating Hcy in the U.S. population, and sparse data support the cardioprotective effects of Hcy-lowering therapy. For these reasons, no general advice regarding widespread Hcy screening is available (Kaul et al, 2006). However, measurement of Hcy may be warranted in individuals who develop CHD despite being at relatively low risk according to traditional risk factors.

Hcy has traditionally been measured by chromatographic techniques (Vester & Rasmussen, 1991; Ubbink et al, 1999; Frick et al, 2003; Arndt et al, 2004). A method using enzymatic adenosylation followed by immunoassay has been automated on the Abbott IMx analyzer (Shipchandler & Moore, 1995), and purely enzymatic methods suitable for automation have also been introduced (Tan et al, 2000; Huijgen et al, 2004; Roberts & Roberts, 2004). Attention must be paid to proper sample collection and storage to prevent an artifactual increase in measured Hcy (Willems et al, 2004).

MARKERS OF CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE

CARDIAC NATRIURETIC PEPTIDES

The heretical concept that the heart could be an endocrine organ was enforced by two reports in 1956: that inflating a balloon inside the left atrium of a dog caused an increase in urine flow (Henry & Pearce, 1956) and that structures resembling secretory granules were visible on electron micrographs of guinea pig atrial cells (Kisch, 1956). In 1981, extracts of rat heart atria (but not ventricles) were found to have a natriuretic effect (de Bold, 1981), and in 1984, a peptide named atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) was isolated from human heart (Kangawa & Matsuo, 1984) A short time later, a similar peptide named brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) was isolated from porcine brain (Sudoh et al, 1988). It turns out that in humans, BNP is produced mainly in the cardiac ventricle (Mukoyama et al, 1991), so the hormone now is commonly referred to as B-type natriuretic peptide.

Members of the natriuretic peptide family are illustrated in Figure 18-4. Their notable common feature is a 17 amino acid ring structure, closed by a cystine bridge, with substantial homology among the family members. C-type natriuretic peptide (CNP), described in 1990, is produced not in the heart but rather in endothelial cells (Sudoh et al, 1990). D-type natriuretic peptide (DNP) was isolated in 1992 from the green mamba snake, *Dendroaspis angusticeps* (Schweitz et al, 1992). DNP immunoreactivity was later reported in human plasma (Schirger et al, 1999), but this peptide has not been definitively demonstrated in humans (Richards et al, 2002). Finally, urodilatin is a form of ANP with four additional amino acids at the N-terminus; it is likely produced in the kidney by alternative splicing of the same gene product (Schulz-Knappe et al, 1988). Both ANP and BNP have been investigated regarding testing for HF; the latter has proved more useful, so further discussion is confined to the BNP system.

Circulating BNP derives from a 108 amino acid prohormone, proBNP, which is cleaved within the cardiac myocyte by the endoprotease furin to a 32 amino acid C-terminal fragment, the active BNP, and an inactive N-terminal fragment, N-BNP or NT-proBNP (Sawada et al, 1997). Secretion of both fragments is enhanced by ventricular wall stretch and volume overload, as occur in HF (Tabbibizar & Maisel, 2002). BNP is removed from the circulation by binding to a clearance receptor and also through the action of endopeptidases; its circulating half-life is approximately 22 minutes. The circulating half-life of N-BNP is considerably longer (60 to 120 min), and its mechanism of clearance is not well understood.

BNP and the other natriuretic peptides exert their effects through two types of G-protein–coupled receptors, resulting in the release of the second messenger cyclic guanosine monophosphate. They downregulate the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, decrease sympathetic nerve activity in the heart and kidney, increase renal blood flow, and increase sodium excretion via a direct effect on the renal collecting duct (Beltowski & Wojcicka, 2002; Spevack & Schwartzbard, 2004).

Plasma levels of BNP are less than 100 pg/mL in most healthy individuals; reference ranges depend on age and gender. The best-established application of BNP measurement is for diagnosing acutely ill patients presenting to emergency service with shortness of breath. Distinguishing HF from lung disease, such as emphysema, in these patients is occasionally difficult, and until now no laboratory test has been specifically applicable. The multinational Breathing Not Properly study enrolled patients who presented to emergency centers with dyspnea and used a point-of-care method for measurement of BNP. At a decision point of 100 pg/mL, the BNP test had the following characteristics for diagnosis of HF: sensitivity 90%, specificity 76%, positive predictive value 79%, and negative predictive value 89% (Maisel et al, 2002). Among patients with a history of ventricular dysfunction, BNP was higher in those whose current symptoms were thought to be caused by HF; it was also higher in patients with more severe failure (Fig. 18-5).

BNP levels decline when effective therapy for HF is instituted, so the test may be used to monitor the course of treatment (Cheng et al, 2001; Faggiano et al, 2009; Novo et al, 2009). Other proposed applications include risk stratification of patients with ACS (de Lemos et al, 2001; Omland et al, 2002; Jernberg et al, 2004; Wiviott et al, 2004); monitoring disease severity in patients with stable CHD (Weber et al, 2004); screening for ventricular dysfunction in selected populations (Bay et al, 2003; Nielsen et al, 2003); and testing for drug cardiotoxicity (Okumura et al, 2000). However, the test is relatively expensive, and HF is a chronic condition,

http://basicbook.net

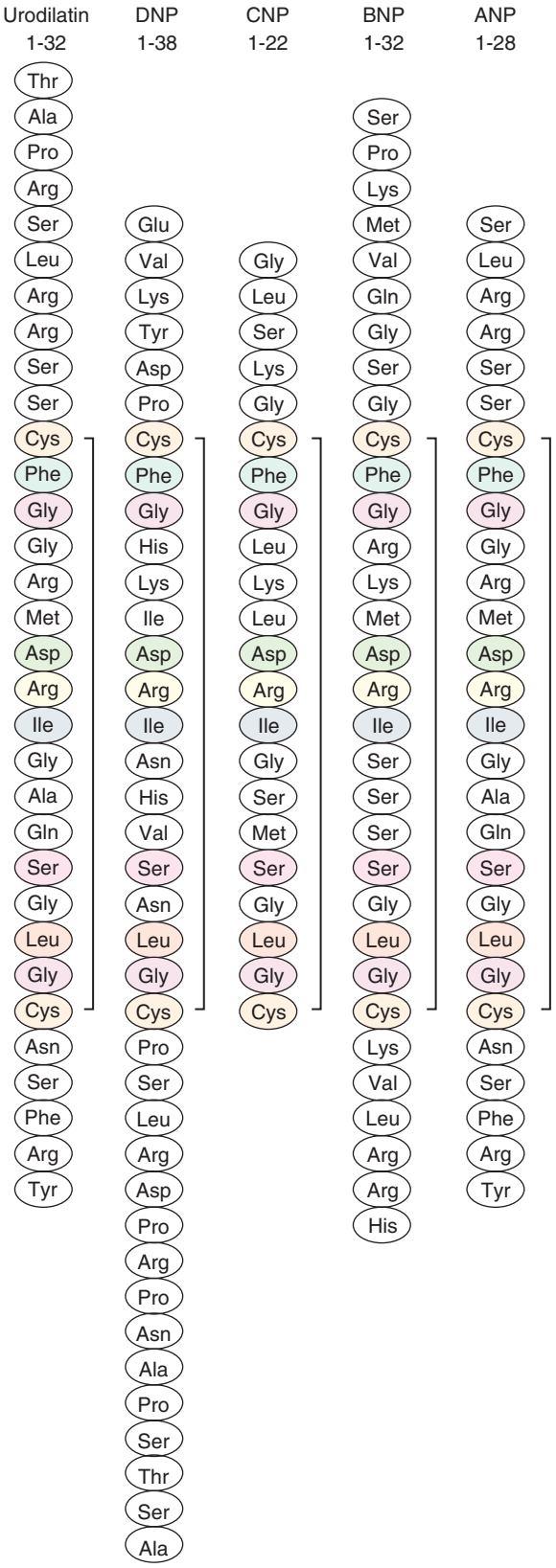


Figure 18-4 **Amino acid sequences of the natriuretic peptides.** Amino acids preserved through the family are indicated in color. *ANP,* Atrial natriuretic peptide; *BNP,* B-type natriuretic peptide; *CNP,* C-type natriuretic peptide; *DNP,* D-type natriuretic peptide.

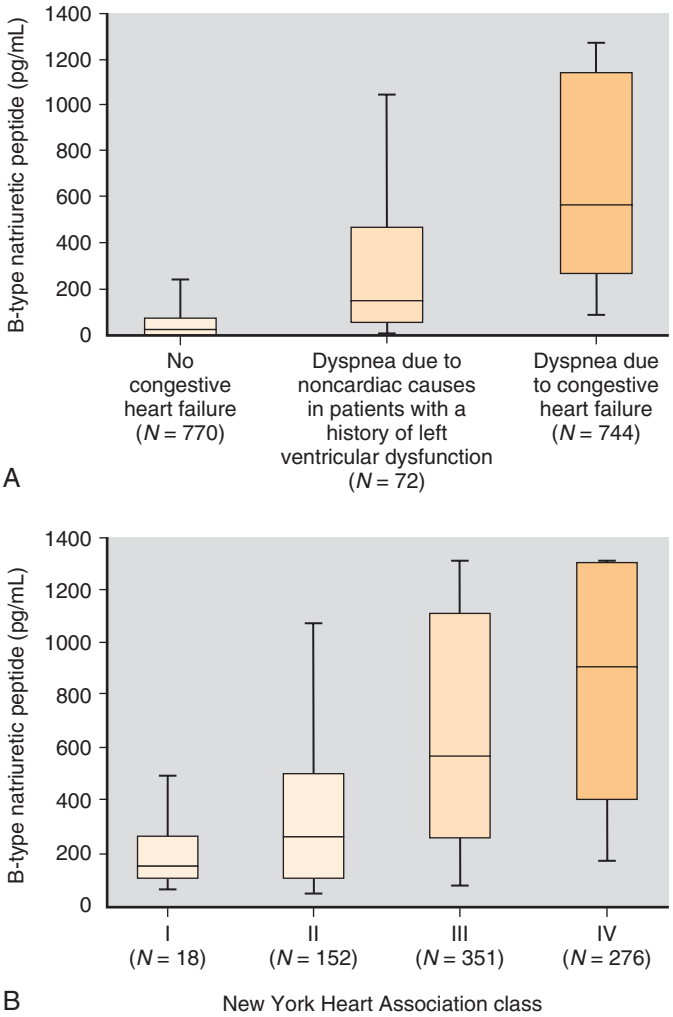


Figure 18-5 **Box plots showing median levels of B-type natriuretic peptide in patients presenting to an emergency department with dyspnea, in the Breathing Not Properly study. A,** Patients in different diagnostic categories. **B,** Patients with heart failure, classified according to the New York Heart Association criteria. A higher class indicates more severe disease, as evidenced by a lesser amount of activity needed to provoke symptoms. Boxes show interquartile ranges, and I bars represent highest and lowest values. (From Maisel AS, Krishnaswamy P, Nowak RM, et al: Rapid measurement of B-type natriuretic peptide in the emergency diagnosis of heart failure, *N Engl J Med* 347:161–167, 2002, with permission.)

so the appropriateness of repetitive natriuretic peptide testing in established HF patients needs to be carefully considered. Evidence to support patient benefit from routine monitoring of BNP is generally weak (Yancy et al, 2013; Balion et al, 2014). Some medical centers have introduced restrictions to limit the use of BNP for monitoring inpatients (Lum, 2006; Levick et al, 2013).

A major limitation of BNP is that a wide range of values is observed in patients with and without HF, and all of the determinants of the circulating BNP level have not yet been well established. BNP is increased in conditions of fluid imbalance other than HF, particularly renal insufficiency, which commonly coexists with HF (McCullough et al, 2004). In individuals without HF, higher levels are associated with female gender, advanced age, and lower body mass index (Chiong et al, 2010). Also, patients with symptomatic HF, especially when it is chronic and stable, can have "normal" levels (Tang et al, 2003). Intraindividual variability is relatively high; in a group of patients with stable, chronic HF, week-to-week variability for BNP and N-BNP was 30% to 40% (Bruins et al, 2004). At this time, it appears that the most appropriate use of the BNP test is as an adjunctive test to rule out HF in the acute setting; it must *not* be used as a sole criterion for establishing the diagnosis of HF (Jessup et al, 2009). In other contexts, it should be used judiciously as more information becomes available.

Similar to cardiac troponins, both BNP and N-BNP are measured by sensitive immunoassays, on either large automated analyzers or devices suitable for point-of-care application. A clear advantage of one biomarker over the other for any particular application has not been established (Hammerer-Lercher et al, 2001b).

Besides being a biomarker for HF, BNP has natriuretic, vasodilatory, and other effects that are ameliorative for the syndrome and in fact is available as the drug nesiritide (Natrecor), although this drug has not been recommended for routine use in treatment of HF (O'Connor et al, 2011).

http://basicbook.net

Because of the short half-life of BNP, measured levels several hours after its administration would reflect endogenous secretion. However, the utility of BNP measurement in the context of its therapeutic administration has not been established at this time.

OTHER CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH ATHEROSCLEROSIS OR THROMBOSIS

A cerebrovascular accident, or stroke, is another dreaded complication of atherosclerotic disease. About 795,000 Americans suffer a stroke each year, versus about 1,200,000 who suffer an ACS (Go et al, 2014). Many strokes are presumably caused by a mechanism similar to the usual ACS, where atherosclerotic plaque eventually becomes unstable and ruptures, resulting in thrombotic occlusion. However, additional mechanisms can cause ischemic stroke, and 20% of strokes result from hemorrhage rather than from vascular occlusion. Considerable effort has been directed at finding biomarkers for stroke that might rival the utility of troponin and other markers for cardiac disease. Candidate markers have included neurotransmitters; proteins produced in neurons or glia such as tau, S100b, and neuron-specific enolase; inflammatory mediators such as CRP, interleukins, and matrix metalloproteinases; and others. At the time of this writing, none has been shown to have sufficient sensitivity and specificity for incorporation into routine practice (Whiteley et al, 2009). Possibly a multiple marker approach will eventually be successful, but at present, the diagnosis and management of stroke rests on clinical findings and imaging studies.

Thrombosis in peripheral veins can result in dislodging of part of the thrombus—embolization—which, after passing through the right side of the heart, will lodge in the lung, causing the syndrome of a pulmonary embolus (PE). Depending on the size of the PE, consequences can range from minimal to sudden death. PE can cause chest pain, ECG abnormalities, and increased cTn levels, and thus may be confused with an ACS. Measurement of D-dimer, a specific degradation product of fibrin (see Chapter 39), has become a useful laboratory test for ruling out PE and venous thrombotic disease in general. Almost any activation of the coagulation cascade, anywhere in the body, leads to production of D-dimer; hence elevated levels are widespread, especially in hospitalized patients, and have little meaning. When pretest probability of thrombotic disease is low, however, low levels of D-dimer have high negative predictive value in excluding the diagnosis of PE (as well as any venous thrombosis). Sensitive immunoassay measurements of D-dimer for this purpose are now available (Adam et al, 2009).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Adams MR, Kinlay S, Blake GJ, et al: Atherogenic lipids and endothelial dysfunction: Mechanisms in the genesis of ischemic syndromes, *Annu Rev Med* 51:149–167, 2000.

Reviews mechanisms involved in the genesis of CHD.

Danesh J, Wheeler JG, Hirschfield GM, et al: C-reactive protein and other circulating markers of inflammation in the prediction of coronary heart disease, *N Engl J Med* 350:1387–1397, 2004.

A relatively large study of coronary risk associated with CRP, along with a meta-analysis.

Mair J: Progress in myocardial damage detection: New biochemical markers for clinicians, *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci* 34:1–66, 1997.

Although some new information is missing, gives a relatively complete review of the biochemistry of cardiac markers.

Paoletti R, Gotto AM Jr, Hajjar DP: Inflammation in atherosclerosis and implications for therapy, *Circulation* 109:III20–III26, 2004.

Discusses the role of inflammation in CHD.

Ridker PM, Cushman M, Stampfer MJ, et al: Inflammation, aspirin, and the risk of cardiovascular disease in apparently healthy men, *N Engl J Med* 336:973–979, 1997.

One of the earlier major studies to establish CRP as a risk factor for CHD.

Ross R: The pathogenesis of atherosclerosis: A perspective for the 1990s, *Nature* 362:801–809, 1993.

Discussion of the pathogenesis of CHD.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Adam SS, Key NS, Greenberg CS: D-dimer antigen: Current concepts and future prospects, *Blood* 113: 2878–2887, 2009.

Akhabue E, Thiboutot J, Cheng J, et al: New and emerging risk factors for coronary heart disease, *Am J Med Sci* 347:151–158, 2014.

Allan JJ, Feld RD, Russell AA, et al: Cardiac troponin I levels are normal or minimally elevated after transthoracic cardioversion, *J Amer Coll Cardiol* 30:1052–1056, 1997.

Anderson JL, Adams CD, Antman EM, et al: ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines for the management of patients with unstable angina/non–ST-elevation myocardial infarction: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Revise the 2002 Guidelines for the Management of Patients With Unstable Angina/Non-ST-Elevation Myocardial Infarction) developed in collaboration with the American College of Emergency Physicians, the Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, and the Society of Thoracic Surgeons, endorsed by the American Association of Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Rehabilitation and the Society for Academic Emergency Medicine, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 50(7):e1–e157, 2007.

Antman EM, Grudzien C, Mitchell RN, et al: Detection of unsuspected myocardial necrosis by rapid bedside assay for cardiac troponin T, *Am Heart J* 133:596–598, 1997.

Antman EM, Hand M, Armstrong PW, et al: 2007 focused update of the ACC/AHA 2004 guidelines for the management of patients with ST-elevation myocardial infarction: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 51:210–247, 2008.

Apple FS: Tissue specificity of cardiac troponin I, cardiac troponin T and creatine kinase-MB, *Clin Chim Acta* 284:151–159, 1999.

Apple FS, Jesse RL, Newby LK, et al: National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry and IFCC Committee for Standardization of Markers of Cardiac Damage Laboratory Medicine Practice Guidelines: Analytical issues for biochemical markers of acute coronary syndromes, *Clin Chem* 53:547–551, 2007.

Apple FS, Murakami MM: Cardiac troponin and creatine kinase MB monitoring during in-hospital myocardial reinfarction, *Clin Chem* 51:460–463, 2005.

Apple FS, Ricchiuti V, Voss EM, et al: Expression of cardiac troponin T isoforms in skeletal muscle of renal disease patients will not cause false-positive serum results by the second generation cardiac troponin T assay, *Eur Heart J* 19(Suppl N):N30–N33, 1998.

Araújo K, da Silva J, Sañudo A, et al: Plasma concentrations of cardiac troponin I in newborn infants, *Clin Chem* 50:1717–1718, 2004.

Arndt T, Guessregen B, Hohl A, et al: Total plasma homocysteine measured by liquid chromatography-tandem mass spectrometry with use of 96-well plates, *Clin Chem* 50:755–757, 2004.

Balion C, McKelvie R, Don Wauchope AC: B-type natriuretic peptide-guided therapy: A systematic review, *Heart Fail Rev* 19:533–564, 2014.

Bay M, Kirk V, Parner J, et al: NT-proBNP: A new diagnostic screening tool to differentiate between patients with normal and reduced left ventricular systolic function, *Heart* 89:150–154, 2003.

Beltowski J, Wojcicka G: Regulation of renal tubular sodium transport by cardiac natriuretic peptides: Two decades of research, *Med Sci Monit* 8:RA39–RA52, 2002.

Berenson GS, Wattigney WA, Tracy RE, et al: Atherosclerosis of the aorta and coronary arteries and cardiovascular risk factors in persons aged 6 to 30 years and studied at necropsy (The Bogalusa Heart Study), *Am J Cardiol* 70:851–858, 1992.

Bertoia ML, Pai JK, Cooke JP, et al: Plasma homocysteine, dietary B vitamins, betaine, and choline and risk of peripheral artery disease, *Atherosclerosis* 235:94–101, 2014.

Black S, Kushner I, Samols D: C-reactive protein, *J Biol Chem* 279:48487–48490, 2004.

Bock JL, Singer AJ, Thode HC Jr: Comparison of emergency department patient classification by point-of-care and central laboratory methods for cardiac troponin I, *Am J Clin Pathol* 130:132–135, 2008.

Bodor GS: Cardiac tropinin-I: A highly specific biochemical marker for myocardial infarction, *J Clin Immunoassay* 17:40–44, 1995.

Bøhmer E, Hoffmann P, Abdelnoor M, et al: Troponin T concentration 3 days after acute ST-elevation myocardial infarction predicts infarct size and cardiac function at 3 months, *Cardiology* 113:207–212, 2009.

Brogan GX Jr, Bock JL: Cardiac marker point-of-care testing in the emergency department and cardiac care unit, *Clin Chem* 44:1865–1869, 1998.

Bruins S, Fokkema MR, Romer JW, et al: High intraindividual variation of B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) and amino-terminal proBNP in patients with stable chronic heart failure, *Clin Chem* 50:2052–2058, 2004.

Bunk DM, Dalluge JJ, Welch MJ: Heterogeneity in human cardiac troponin I standards, *Anal Biochem* 284:191–200, 2000.

Bunk DM, Welch MJ: Characterization of a new certified reference material for human cardiac troponin I, *Clin Chem* 52:212–219, 2006.

Carson NA, Neill DW: Metabolic abnormalities detected in a survey of mentally backward individuals in Northern Ireland, *Arch Dis Child* 37:505–513, 1962.

Chasan-Taber L, Selhub J, Rosenberg IH, et al: A prospective study of folate and vitamin B6 and risk of myocardial infarction in U.S. physicians, *J Am Coll Nutr* 15:136–143, 1996.

Cheng V, Kazanagra R, Garcia A, et al: A rapid bedside test for B-type peptide predicts treatment outcomes in patients admitted for decompensated heart failure: A pilot study, *J Amer Coll Cardiol* 37:386–391, 2001.

Chiong JR, Jao GT, Adams KF Jr: Utility of natriuretic peptide testing in the evaluation and management of acute decompensated heart failure, *Heart Fail Rev* 15:275–291, 2010.

Christenson RH, Duh SH, Apple FS, et al: Toward standardization of cardiac troponin I measurements part II: Assessing commutability of candidate reference materials and harmonization of cardiac troponin I assays, *Clin Chem* 52:1685–1692, 2006.

Collinson PO, Gaze DC: Biomarkers of cardiovascular damage and dysfunction—An overview, *Heart Lung Circ* 16(Suppl 3):S71–S82, 2007.

Dasgupta A, Banerjee SK, Datta P: False positive troponin I in the MEIA assay due to the presence of rheumatoid factors in serum: Elimination of this interference by using a polyclonal antisera against rheumatoid factors, *Amer J Clin Pathol* 112:753–756, 1999.

Datta P, Foster K, Dasgupta A: Comparison of immunoreactivity of five human cardiac troponin I assays toward free and complexed forms of the antigen: Implications for assay discordance, *Clin Chem* 45:2266–2269, 1999.

Davies MJ: The pathophysiology of acute coronary syndromes, *Heart* 83:361–366, 2000.

de Beer FC, Hind CR, Fox KM, et al: Measurement of serum C-reactive protein concentration in myocardial ischaemia and infarction, *Br Heart J* 47:239–243, 1982.

de Bold AJ, Borenstein HB, Veress AT, et al: A rapid and potent natriuretic response to intravenous injection of atrial myocardial extract in rats, *Life Sci* 28:89–94, 1981.

de Lemos JA, Morrow DA, Bentley JH, et al: The prognostic value of B-type natriuretic peptide in patients with acute coronary syndromes, *N Engl J Med* 345:1014–1021, 2001.

Eggers KM, Jaffe AS, Lind L, et al: Value of cardiac troponin I cutoff concentrations below the 99th percentile for clinical decision-making, *Clin Chem* 55:85–92, 2009.

el Allaf M, Chapelle JP, el Allaf D, et al: Differentiating muscle damage from myocardial injury by means of the serum creatine kinase (CK) isoenzyme MB mass measurement/total CK activity ratio, *Clin Chem* 32:291–295, 1986.

Enos WF, Holmes RH, Beyer J: Coronary disease among United States soldiers killed in action in Korea. Preliminary report, *JAMA* 152:1090–1093, 1953.

Eriksson S, Halenius H, Pulkki K, et al: Negative interference in cardiac troponin I immunoassays by circulating troponin autoantibodies, *Clin Chem* 51:839–847, 2005.

Esteghamati A, Hafezi-Nejad N, Zandieh A, et al: Homocysteine and metabolic syndrome: From clustering to additional utility in prediction of coronary heart disease, *J Cardiol* 64:290–296, 2014.

Faggiano P, Valle R, Aspromonte N, et al: How often we need to measure brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) blood levels in patients admitted to the hospital for acute severe heart failure? Role of serial measurements to improve short-term prognostic stratification, *Int J Cardiol* 2009.

Farkouh ME, Smars PA, Reeder GS, et al: A clinical trial of a chest-pain observation unit for patients with unstable angina: Chest Pain Evaluation in the Emergency Room (CHEER) Investigators, *N Engl J Med* 339:1882–1888, 1998.

Fitzmaurice TF, Brown C, Rifai N, et al: False increase of cardiac troponin I with heterophilic antibodies, *Clin Chem* 44:2212–2214, 1998.

Frick B, Schrocksnadel K, Neurauter G, et al: Rapid measurement of total plasma homocysteine by HPLC, *Clin Chim Acta* 331:19–23, 2003.

Fuseini M, Goodwin WJ, Ferris EJ, et al: Does electron beam computer tomography provide added value in the diagnosis of coronary artery disease?, *Curr Opin Cardiol* 18:385–393, 2003.

Galambos C, Brink DS, Ritter D, et al: False-positive plasma troponin I with the AxSYM analyzer, *Clin Chem* 46:1014–1015, 2000.

Gao WD, Atar D, Liu Y, et al: Role of troponin I proteolysis in the pathogenesis of stunned myocardium, *Circ Res* 80:393–399, 1997.

Gerritsen T, Vaughn JG, Waisman HA: The identification of homocystine in the urine, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 9:493–496, 1962.

Giannitsis E, Steen H, Kurz K, et al: Cardiac magnetic resonance imaging study for quantification of infarct size comparing directly serial versus single time-point measurements of cardiac troponin T, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 51:307–314, 2008.

Go AS, Mozaffarian D, Roger VL, et al: Heart disease and stroke statistics—2014 update: A report from the American Heart Association, *Circulation* 129:e28–e292, 2014.

Goff DC Jr, Lloyd-Jones DM, Bennett G, et al: 2013 ACC/AHA guideline on the assessment of cardiovascular risk: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines, *Circulation* 129:S49–S73, 2013.

Gorenek B, Kudaiberdieva G, Goktekin O, et al: Detection of myocardial injury after internal cardioversion for atrial fibrillation, *Can J Cardiol* 20:165–168, 2004.

Greaves K, Crake T: Cardiac troponin T does not increase after electrical cardioversion for atrial fibrillation or atrial flutter, *Heart* 80:226–228, 1998.

Griselli M, Herbert J, Hutchinson WL, et al: C-reactive protein and complement are important mediators of tissue damage in acute myocardial infarction, *J Exp Med* 190:1733–1740, 1999.

Hammerer-Lercher A, Erlacher P, Bittner R, et al: Clinical and experimental results on cardiac troponin expression in Duchenne muscular dystrophy, *Clin Chem* 47:451–458, 2001a.

Hammerer-Lercher A, Neubauer E, Muller S, et al: Head-to-head comparison of N-terminal pro-brain natriuretic peptide, brain natriuretic peptide and N-terminal pro-atrial natriuretic peptide in diagnosing left ventricular dysfunction, *Clin Chim Acta* 310:193–197, 2001b.

Hansson GK: Inflammation, atherosclerosis, and coronary artery disease, *N Engl J Med* 352:1685–1695, 2005.

Heloire F, Weill B, Weber S, et al: Aggregates of endothelial microparticles and platelets circulate in peripheral blood. Variations during stable coronary disease and acute myocardial infarction, *Thromb Res* 110:173–180, 2003.

Henry JP, Pearce JW: The possible role of cardiac atrial stretch receptors in the induction of changes in urine flow, *J Physiol* 131:572–585, 1956.

Hess JW, MacDonald RP: Serum creatine phosphokinase activity—A new diagnostic aid in myocardial and skeletal muscle disease, *J Mich State Med Soc* 62:1095–1099, 1963.

Hingorani AD, Shah T, Casas JP, et al: C-reactive protein and coronary heart disease: Predictive test or therapeutic target? *Clin Chem* 55:239–255, 2009.

Huijgen HJ, Tegelaers FP, Schoenmakers CH, et al: Multicenter analytical evaluation of an enzymatic method for the measurement of plasma homocysteine and comparison with HPLC and immunochemistry, *Clin Chem* 50:937–941, 2004.

http://basicbook.net

Humphrey LL, Fu R, Rogers K, et al: Homocysteine level and coronary heart disease incidence: A systematic review and meta-analysis, *Mayo Clin Proc* 83:1203–1212, 2008.

Ingwall JS, Kramer MF, Fifer MA, et al: The creatine kinase system in normal and diseased human myocardium, *N Engl J Med* 313:1050–1054, 1985.

Jaffe AS, Katus H: Acute coronary syndrome biomarkers: The need for more adequate reporting, *Circulation* 110:104–106, 2004.

Jernberg T, James S, Lindahl B, et al: Natriuretic peptides in unstable coronary artery disease, *Eur Heart J* 25:1486–1493, 2004.

Jessup M, Abraham WT, Casey DE, et al: 2009 focused update: ACCF/AHA Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Heart Failure in Adults: A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines, developed in collaboration with the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation, *Circulation* 119:1977–2016, 2009.

Kangawa K, Matsuo H: Purification and complete amino acid sequence of alpha-human atrial natriuretic polypeptide (alpha-hANP), *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 118:131–139, 1984.

Kao JT, Wong IL, Lee JY, et al: Comparison of Abbott AxSYM, Behring Opus Plus, DPC Immulite, and Ortho-Clinical Diagnostics Vitros ECi for measurement of cardiac troponin I, *Ann Clin Biochem* 38:140–146, 2001.

Karcz A, Korn R, Burke MC, et al: Malpractice claims against emergency physicians in Massachusetts: 1975–1993, *Am J Emerg Med* 14:341–345, 1996.

Karmen A: A note on the spectrometric assay of glutamic-oxalacetic transaminase in human blood serum, *J Clin Invest* 34:131–133, 1955.

Katrukha AG, Bereznikova AV, Filatov VL, et al: Degradation of cardiac troponin I: Implication for reliable immunodetection, *Clin Chem* 44:2433–2440, 1998.

Kaul S, Zadeh AA, Shah PK: Homocysteine hypothesis for atherothrombotic cardiovascular disease: Not validated, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 48:914–923, 2006.

Kisch B: Electron microscopy of the atrium of the heart. I. Guinea pig, *Exp Med Surg* 14:99–112, 1956.

Kurz K, Schild C, Isfort P, et al: Serial and single time-point measurements of cardiac troponin T for prediction of clinical outcomes in patients with acute ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction, *Clin Res Cardiol* 98:94–100, 2009.

Labugger R, Organ L, Collier C, et al: Extensive troponin I and T modification detected in serum from patients with acute myocardial infarction, *Circulation* 102:1221–1226, 2000.

Lackner KJ: Laboratory diagnostics of myocardial infarction—Troponins and beyond, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 51:83–89, 2013.

LaDue JS, Wróblewski F, Karmen A: Serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase activity in human acute transmural myocardial infarction, *Science* 120:497–499, 1954.

Latini R, Masson S, Anand IS, et al: Prognostic value of very low plasma concentrations of troponin T in patients with stable chronic heart failure, *Circulation* 116:1242–1249, 2007.

Levick DL, Stern G, Meyerhoefer CF, et al: Reducing unnecessary testing in a CPOE system through implementation of a targeted CDS intervention, *BMC Med Inform Decis Mak* 13:43, 2013.

Lindsay J Jr, Bonnet YD, Pinnow EE: Routine stress testing for triage of patients with chest pain: Is it worth the candle?, *Ann Emerg Med* 32:600–603, 1998.

Lippi G, Aloe R, Meschi T, et al: Interference from heterophilic antibodies in troponin testing—Case report and systematic review of the literature, *Clin Chim Acta* 426:79–84, 2013.

Lum G: Evaluation of a protocol to control utilization of B-type natriuretic peptide testing, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126:190–194, 2006.

Mair J, Artner-Dworzak E, Dienstl A, et al: Early detection of acute myocardial infarction by measurement of mass concentration of creatine kinase-MB, *Am J Cardiol* 68:1545–1550, 1991.

Maisel AS, Krishnaswamy P, Nowak RM, et al: Rapid measurement of B-type natriuretic peptide in the emergency diagnosis of heart failure, *N Engl J Med* 347:161–167, 2002.

Marmor A, Margolis T, Alpan G, et al: Regional distribution of the MB isoenzyme of creatine kinase in the human heart, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 104:425–427, 1980.

Maron BJ, Maron MS: Hyopertrophic cardiomyopathy, *Lancet* 381:242–255, 2013.

McCullough PA, Kuncheria J, Mathur VS: Diagnostic and therapeutic utility of B-type natriuretic peptide in patients with renal insufficiency and decompensated heart failure, *Rev Cardiovasc Med* 5:16–25, 2004.

McCully KS: Chemical pathology of homocysteine. I. Atherogenesis, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 23:477–493, 1993.

Mingels A, Jacobs L, Michielsen E, et al: Reference population and marathon runner sera assessed by highly sensitive cardiac troponin T and commercial cardiac troponin T and I assays, *Clin Chem* 55:101–108, 2009.

Mora S, Musunuru K, Blumenthal RS: The clinical utility of high-sensitivity C-reactive protein in cardiovascular disease and the potential implication of JUPITER on current practice guidelines, *Clin Chem* 55:219–228, 2009.

Morjana NA: Degradation of human cardiac troponin I after myocardial infarction, *Biotechnol Appl Biochem* 28:105–111, 1998.

Morrow DA, Cannon CP, Jesse RL, et al: National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry Laboratory Medicine Practice Guidelines: Clinical characteristics and utilization of biochemical markers in acute coronary syndromes, *Circulation* 115:e356–e375, 2007.

Mukoyama M, Nakao K, Hosoda K, et al: Brain natriuretic peptide as a novel cardiac hormone in humans—Evidence for an exquisite dual natriuretic peptide system, atrial natriuretic peptide and brain natriuretic peptide, *J Clin Invest* 87:1402–1412, 1991.

Muller-Bardorff M, Hallermayer K, Schroder A, et al: Improved troponin T ELISA specific for cardiac troponin T isoform: Assay development and analytical and clinical validation, *Clin Chem* 43:458–466, 1997.

National Cholesterol Education Program Expert Panel: Third Report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III) final report, *Circulation* 106:3143–3421, 2002.

Newman DJ, Olabiran Y, Bedzyk WD, et al: Impact of antibody specificity and calibration material on the measure of agreement between methods for cardiac troponin I, *Clin Chem* 45:822–828, 1999.

Nielsen OW, McDonagh TA, Robb SD, et al: Retrospective analysis of the cost-effectiveness of using plasma brain natriuretic peptide in screening for left ventricular systolic dysfunction in the general population, *J Amer Coll Cardiol* 41:113–120, 2003.

Nosanchuk JS, Combs B, Abbott G: False increases of troponin I attributable to incomplete separation of serum, *Clin Chem* 45:714, 1999.

Novo G, Amoroso GR, Fazio G, et al: Biomarkers in heart failure, *Front Biosci* 14:2484–2493, 2009.

O'Connor CM, Starling RC, Hernandez AF, et al: Effect of nesiritide in patients with acute decompensated heart failure, *N Engl J Med* 365:32–43, 2011.

Okumura H, Iuchi K, Yoshida T, et al: Brain natriuretic peptide is a predictor of anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity, *Acta Haematol* 104:158–163, 2000.

Omland T, de Lemos JA, Morrow DA, et al: Prognostic value of N-terminal pro-atrial and pro-brain natriuretic peptide in patients with acute coronary syndromes, *Am J Cardiol* 89:463–465, 2002.

Parry DM, Krahn J, Leroux M, et al: False positive analytical interference of cardiac troponin I assays: An important consideration for method selection, *Clin Biochem* 32:667–669, 1999.

Pearson TA, Mensah GA, Alexander RW, et al: Markers of inflammation and cardiovascular disease: Application to clinical and public health practice—A statement for healthcare professionals from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the American Heart Association, *Circulation* 107:499–511, 2003.

Pope JH, Aufderheide TP, Ruthazer R, et al: Missed diagnoses of acute cardiac ischemia in the emergency department, *N Engl J Med* 342:1163–1170, 2000.

Priori SG, Wile AA, Horie M, et al: HRS/EHRA/APHRS expert consensus statement on the diagnosis and management of patients with inherited primary arrhythmia syndromes, *Heart Rhythm* 10:1932–1963, 2013.

Rao AC, Naeem N, John C, et al: Direct current cardioversion does not cause cardiac damage: Evidence from cardiac troponin T estimation, *Heart* 80:229–230, 1998.

Reynolds GD, Vance RP: C-reactive protein immunohistochemical localization in normal and atherosclerotic human aortas, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 111:265–269, 1987.

Richards AM, Lainchbury JG, Nicholls MG, et al: Dendroaspis natriuretic peptide: Endogenous or dubious?, *Lancet* 359:5–6, 2002.

Ridker PM, Danielson E, Fonseca FA, et al: Rosuvastatin to prevent vascular events in men and women with elevated C-reactive protein, *N Engl J Med* 359:2195–2207, 2008.

Ridker PM, Koenig W, Fuster V: C-reactive protein and coronary heart disease, *N Engl J Med* 351:295–298, 2004.

Ridker PM, Rifai N, Rose L, et al: Comparison of C-reactive protein and low-density lipoprotein cholesterol levels in the prediction of first cardiovascular events, *N Engl J Med* 347:1557–1565, 2002.

Roberts WL, Calcote CB, De BK, et al: Prevention of analytical false-positive increases of cardiac troponin I on the Stratus II analyzer, *Clin Chem* 43:860–861, 1997.

Roberts RF, Roberts WL: Performance characteristics of a recombinant enzymatic cycling assay for quantification of total homocysteine in serum or plasma, *Clin Chim Acta* 344:95–99, 2004.

Roe CR: Diagnosis of myocardial infarction by serum isoenzyme analysis, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 7:201–209, 1977.

Roongsritong C, Warraich I, Bradley C: Common causes of troponin elevations in the absence of acute myocardial infarction: Incidence and clinical significance, *Chest* 125:1877–1884, 2004.

Saenger AK, Jaffe AS: Requiem for a heavyweight: The demise of creatine kinase-MB, *Circulation* 118:2200–2206, 2008.

Sawada Y, Suda M, Yokoyama H, et al: Stretch-induced hypertrophic growth of cardiocytes and processing of brain-type natriuretic peptide are controlled by proprotein-processing endoprotease furin, *J Biol Chem* 272:20545–20554, 1997.

Schaffer A, Verdoia M, Cassetti E, et al: Relationship between homocysteine and coronary artery disease—Results from a large prospective cohort study, *Thromb Res* 134:288–293, 2014.

Schirger JA, Heublein DM, Chen HH, et al: Presence of *Dendroaspis* natriuretic peptide-like immunoreactivity in human plasma and its increase during human heart failure, *Mayo Clin Proc* 74:126–130, 1999.

Schulz-Knappe P, Forssmann K, Herbst F, et al: Isolation and structural analysis of "urodilatin," a new peptide of the cardiodilatin-(ANP)-family, extracted from human urine, *Klin Wochenschr* 66:752–759, 1988.

Schweitz H, Vigne P, Moinier D, et al: A new member of the natriuretic peptide family is present in the venom of the green mamba (*Dendroaspis angusticeps*), *J Biol Chem* 267:13928–13932, 1992.

Shi Q, Ling M, Zhang X, et al: Degradation of cardiac troponin I in serum complicates comparisons of cardiac troponin I assays, *Clin Chem* 45:1018–1025, 1999.

Shipchandler MT, Moore EG: Rapid, fully automated measurement of plasma homocyst(e)ine with the Abbott IMx analyzer, *Clin Chem* 41:991–994, 1995.

Spevack DM, Schwartzbard A: B-type natriuretic peptide measurement in heart failure, *Clin Cardiol* 27:489–494, 2004.

Stampfer MJ, Malinow MR, Willett WC, et al: A prospective study of plasma homocyst(e)ine and risk of myocardial infarction in US physicians, *JAMA* 268:877–881, 1992.

Stampfer MJ, Ridker PM, Dzau VJ: Risk factor criteria, *Circulation* 109:IV3–IV5, 2004.

Storrow AB, Gibler WB: Chest pain centers: Diagnosis of acute coronary syndromes, *Ann Emerg Med* 35:449–461, 2000.

Strang F, Schunkert H: C-reactive protein and coronary heart disease: All said—is not it?, *Mediators Inflamm* 2014. Article ID 757123.

Strong JP, Malcom GT, McMahan CA, et al: Prevalence and extent of atherosclerosis in adolescents and young adults: Implications for prevention from the pathobiological determinants of atherosclerosis in youth study, *JAMA* 281:727–735, 1999.

Sudoh T, Kangawa K, Minamino N, et al: A new natriuretic peptide in porcine brain, *Nature* 332:78–81, 1988.

Sudoh T, Minamino N, Kangawa K, et al: C-type natriuretic peptide (CNP): A new member of natriuretic peptide family identified in porcine brain, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 168:863–870, 1990.

http://basicbook.net

Szalai AJ, Agrawal A, Greenhough TJ, et al: C-reactive protein: Structural biology and host defense function, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 37:265–270, 1999.
Tabbibizar R, Maisel A: The impact of B-type natriuretic peptide levels on the diagnoses and management of congestive heart failure, *Curr Opin Cardiol* 17:340–345, 2002.
Tan Y, Tang L, Sun X, et al: Total-homocysteine enzymatic assay, *Clin Chem* 46:1686–1688, 2000.
Tang WH, Girod JP, Lee MJ, et al: Plasma B-type natriuretic peptide levels in ambulatory patients with established chronic symptomatic systolic heart failure, *Circulation* 108:2964–2966, 2003.
Tate JR, Heathcote D, Rayfield J, et al: The lack of standardization of cardiac troponin I assay systems, *Clin Chim Acta* 284:141–149, 1999.
Taylor MR, Carniel E, Mestroni L: Familial hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: Clinical features, molecular genetics and molecular genetic testing, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 4:99–113, 2004.
Thambyrajah J, Townsend JN: Homocysteine and atherothrombosis—Mechanisms for injury, *Eur Heart J* 21:967–974, 2000.
Than M, Cullen L, Aldous S, et al: 2-Hour accelerated diagnostic protocol to assess patients with chest pain symptoms using contemporary troponins as the only biomarker: The ADAPT Trial, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 59:2091–2098, 2012.
Thygesen K, Alpert JS, Jaffe AS, et al: Third universal definition of myocardial infarction, *Circulation* 126:2020–2035, 2012.
Tzvetanova E: Creatine kinase isoenzymes in muscle tissue of patients with neuromuscular diseases and human fetuses, *Enzyme* 12:279, 1971.
Ubbink JB, Delport R, Riezler R, et al: Comparison of three different plasma homocysteine assays with gas chromatography-mass spectrometry, *Clin Chem* 45:670–675, 1999.
Vester B, Rasmussen K: High performance liquid chromatography method for rapid and accurate determination of homocysteine in plasma and serum, *Eur J Clin Chem Clin Biochem* 29:549–554, 1991.
Vignini A, Nanetti L, Bacchetti T, et al: Modification induced by homocysteine and low-density lipoprotein on human aortic endothelial cells: An in vitro study, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 89:4558–4561, 2004.
Weber M, Dill T, Arnold R, et al: N-terminal B-type natriuretic peptide predicts extent of coronary artery disease and ischemia in patients with stable angina pectoris, *Am Heart J* 148:612–620, 2004.
Weissberg PL: Atherogenesis: Current understanding of the causes of atheroma, *Heart* 83:247–252, 2000.
Whiteley W, Chong WL, Sengupta A, et al: Blood markers for the prognosis of ischemic stroke: A systematic review, *Stroke* 40:e380–e389, 2009.
Willems HP, Den HM, Lindemans J, et al: Measurement of total homocysteine concentrations in acidic citrate- and EDTA-containing tubes by different methods, *Clin Chem* 50:1881–1883, 2004.
Witztum JL: The oxidation hypothesis of atherosclerosis, *Lancet* 344:793–795, 1994.
Wiviott SD, de Lemos JA, Morrow DA: Pathophysiology, prognostic significance and clinical utility of B-type natriuretic peptide in acute coronary syndromes, *Clin Chim Acta* 346:119–128, 2004.
Wu AH, Feng YJ: Biochemical differences between cTnT and cTnI and their significance for diagnosis of acute coronary syndromes, *Eur Heart J* 19(Suppl N):N25–N29, 1998a.
Wu AH, Feng YJ, Moore R, et al: Characterization of cardiac troponin subunit release into serum after acute myocardial infarction and comparison of assays for troponin T and I. American Association for Clinical Chemistry Subcommittee on cTnI Standardization, *Clin Chem* 44:1198–1208, 1998b.
Yancy CW, Jessup M, Bozkurt B: 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 62:e147–e239, 2013.
Yap S: Classical homocystinuria: Vascular risk and its prevention, *J Inherit Metab Dis* 26:259–265, 2003.
Younger JF, Plein S, Barth J, et al: Troponin-I concentration 72 h after myocardial infarction correlates with infarct size and presence of microvascular obstruction, *Heart* 93:1547–1551, 2007.
Yousuf O, Mohanty BD, Martin SS, et al: High-sensitivity C-reactive protein and cardiovascular disease: A resolute belief or an elusive link?, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 62:397–408, 2013.
Yudkin JS, Stehouwer CD, Emeis JJ, et al: C-reactive protein in healthy subjects: Associations with obesity, insulin resistance, and endothelial dysfunction—A potential role for cytokines originating from adipose tissue?, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 19:972–978, 1999.
Zaman AG, Helft G, Worthley SG, et al: The role of plaque rupture and thrombosis in coronary artery disease, *Atherosclerosis* 149:251–266, 2000.
Zhang L, Mmagu O, Li D, et al: Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: Can the noninvasive diagnostic testing identify high risk patients?, *World J Cardiol* 6:764–770, 2014.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 19

SPECIFIC PROTEINS

Richard A. McPherson

PROTEIN STRUCTURE, 253

TECHNIQUES OF PROTEIN SEPARATION, 254
Electrophoresis, 254
Precipitation, 255
Column Separations, 256

PROTEIN DETECTION AND QUANTITATION, 256

SPECIFIC PLASMA PROTEINS, 257
Major Components, 257
Minor Components, 262
Protease Inhibitors, 263
Acute Phase Reactants, 264

PATTERNS OF PROTEIN ABNORMALITIES, 264

SELECTED REFERENCES, 266

KEY POINTS

- The primary structure of a protein is its linear sequence of amino acids with different side groups, which determine how the protein folds on itself (secondary and tertiary structures) and how it reacts with other molecules and cells (i.e., its molecular identity).
- Methods to quantitate and fractionate proteins are based on turbidimetry, colorimetry, absorption spectrophotometry, dye binding, column chromatography, electrophoresis, and immunoassays.
- Protein electrophoresis separates proteins according to their electrical charges (usually at pH 8.6).
- The major proteins in plasma that contribute to the electrophoretic pattern are albumin, α_1-antitrypsin, α_2-macroglobulin, haptoglobin, β-lipoprotein, transferrin, complement C3, fibrinogen, and immunoglobulins.
- Several minor components of plasma proteins, such as ceruloplasmin, C-reactive protein, prealbumin, and protease inhibitors, have clinical utility in diagnosing and monitoring diseases and are quantitated by immunoassays.
- Patterns of protein electrophoresis in serum and urine are characteristic of specific diseases primarily involving changes in synthetic rates (liver), loss (renal), or inflammatory states.
- Hereditary deficiency of some plasma proteins leads to significant diseases (e.g., α_1-antitrypsin).
- Proteins in plasma play several roles, including maintaining oncotic pressure, transporting small molecules, and promoting or inhibiting inflammatory reactions.
- The major clinical use of serum and urine protein electrophoresis is to screen for monoclonal gammopathies.

Examination of the proteins in plasma can provide information reflecting disease states in many different organ systems. The most frequently performed measurement—that for total protein—is usually performed on serum, which has no fibrinogen and no anticoagulant that may slightly dilute proteins in plasma. Although total protein determination gives the physician some information as to a patient's general status regarding nutrition or severe organ disease (as in protein-losing states), further fractionations yield far more clinically useful information.

Additional quantitation of albumin, for example, is more informative regarding nutritional status, liver synthetic capacity, and protein-losing nephropathy or enteropathy. It allows the clinician to interpret high or low calcium and magnesium levels, because albumin binds about one-half of each of those ions on a molar basis. Calculated differences between total protein and albumin represent the value of all globulins, a composite of the other fractions that individually may rise several-fold in severe disorders.

Protein electrophoresis separates the globulins from albumin and resolves the major proteins of serum into patterns that may be highly specific for some diseases. High-resolution techniques can provide a display of all components in concentrations down to about 1 g/L (0.1 g/dL in traditional units); however, at that level, quantitation by scanning of stained proteins is not highly reliable, and alternative methods should be employed. Such techniques, involving immunologic detection of individual proteins, have the dual advantages of specificity and sensitivity over electrophoresis (see Chapter 44).

Yet, there is much to be appreciated from visual inspection of an electrophoretogram of proteins, because the human eye is highly efficient at detecting subtle variations in individual proteins, as well as alterations in protein patterns. Identification of these patterns is a useful screening method to be followed by more specific confirmatory procedures to identify and quantitate aberrant protein bands. Protein electrophoresis also can be a useful tool for monitoring patients over long periods of time when marked alterations are noted in levels of particular proteins, such as in myeloma, nephrotic syndrome, cirrhosis, or extensive body burn.

This chapter reviews protein structure, methods of measurement and separation, the major plasma proteins (except coagulation factors, immunoglobulins, and the complement system, which are covered in Chapters 39, 46, and 47), and some of the patterns encountered in particular disease states.

PROTEIN STRUCTURE

The backbone of all protein molecules is a continuous chain of carbon and nitrogen atoms joined together through peptide bonds between adjacent amino acids. At one end (the amino-terminus) is a free amino group, and at the other end (the carboxy-terminus) is a free carboxyl group. Whereas the peptide backbone is qualitatively invariant between different proteins (its total length is equivalent to the total number of amino acids in a particular protein), proteins have structural identity by virtue of the side groups or residues of the constituent amino acids. The average molecular weight of an amino acid is 120 Da. Serum proteins range in size from roughly 66 kDa to over 700 kDa. These amino acid side chains are conventionally grouped according to chemical nature: hydrogen (glycine), aliphatic (alanine, valine, leucine, and isoleucine), hydroxymethylamino (serine and threonine), aromatic (tyrosine, phenylalanine, and tryptophan), imino (proline and hydroxyproline), acidic (aspartate and glutamate), basic (arginine, histidine, and lysine), amides (asparagine and glutamine), and sulfur-containing (cysteine and methionine). These different side chains may be charged, polar, or hydrophobic, resulting in the tendency for them to be relatively soluble or insoluble in water, respectively.

The linear sequence of amino acids in a protein is called its *primary structure*; this sequence of amino acids determines the identity of a protein, what its molecular structure is, what functions it can perform, how it can bind to other molecules, and how it can participate in the processes of recognition between molecules and cells. These biologic interactions are guided by reactivities between charged groups on one molecule and those on another, and similarly by hydrophobic interactions between molecules. Analytic processes such as chromatography, electrophoresis, dye binding, light absorbance, and others also depend on the primary amino acid sequence.

http://basicbook.net

The *secondary structure* refers to specific regular three-dimensional conformations into which portions of the polypeptide chain fold. Three such structures have been identified (Branden & Tooze, 1991). First is the α-helix, in which the chain forms a regular helix such that the backbone C=O of the *i*th peptide group participates in a hydrogen bond with the N–H of the (*i*+4)th peptide unit. The second is β-pleated sheets in fully extended structures, in which the chain forms a flat structure such that the side chains of adjacent amino acids point in opposite directions. In this conformation, two or more extended chains can associate so that the maximum number of C=O●●●H–N bonds form between them. β-Pleated sheets can have their individual β-strands in parallel or antiparallel orientations. Finally, a third grouping of structures is the bend conformation, in which the direction of the polypeptide chain reverses itself, thereby allowing long primary structures to bend back on themselves and assume compact conformations.

The core of a protein molecule typically consists of combinations of α-helices and β-strands linked by loops of various lengths and shape. This inner core generally contains hydrophobic amino acids, whereas the loops and other surface portions of the protein molecule are richer in polar and charged amino acids that are hydrophilic. Upon degradation, some proteins (e.g., serum amyloid–associated protein, immunoglobulin light chains, prealbumin) release fragments rich in β-regions. These fragments are capable of coming together spontaneously in vivo to form deposits of β-sheets in fibrils that constitute amyloid. Recent work has shown an association between the genotype of apolipoprotein E (especially the allele apoE-4) and the progression of late-onset Alzheimer's disease, in which cerebral plaques of amyloid form within the brain. These genetic findings suggest that Alzheimer's disease may be understood and treated as a disease that has a biochemical basis in β-pleated sheet generation (Roses, 1994; Hayashi et al, 2004).

Molecular regions with clusters of hydrophobic side groups tend to remain on the interior of a protein that is soluble in water, whereas those regions with clusters of charges or other hydrophilic moieties tend to appear on the protein's surface. Conversely, proteins that are membrane bound usually have a distinct hydrophobic segment that protrudes to anchor the protein molecule in the lipid phase of the membrane. The actual three-dimensional structure or folding pattern of the protein, uniquely determined by its amino acid sequence, is termed its *tertiary structure*. Individual proteins or monomeric subunits may form more stable complexes, such as dimers, trimers, and tetramers; this is termed *quaternary structure*.

The sulfhydryl group on a cysteine residue can form a disulfide (covalent) bond with another cysteine within the same protein to hold different segments tightly together. This action helps stabilize the whole structure from disruption by mechanical, thermal, or other forces. These intramolecular disulfide bonds most likely form after spontaneous protein folding along the linear amino acid sequence into most thermodynamically stable conformations. Disulfide bonds can also form between cysteine residues on different molecules, thereby stabilizing multimeric molecular structures (e.g., haptoglobin, von Willebrand antigen).

The acidic and basic amino acids determine the net charge on a protein and thus its electrophoretic mobility. The charge on carboxyl and amino groups is a function of pH (i.e., whether a hydrogen ion is bound to or dissociated from the group). Combining all the different side groups and their different degrees of dissociation, the pH at which a particular protein has net charge equal to zero is called its isoelectric point (pI). Proteins with pI less than 7 are acidic and tend to have carboxyl side groups exposed, whereas those with pI greater than 7 are basic (e.g., histones that, in turn, bind to the external helical structure of DNA that is negatively charged with phosphate groups).

Proteins are synthesized from the amino end to the carboxyl end by ribosomes translating from the information encoded in messenger RNA. The initial translation product of some proteins is acted on before secretion by proteolytic enzymes that convert a preform to the mature protein by removal of a signal peptide (generally hydrophobic) that otherwise holds the new protein molecule to the endoplasmic reticulum. Release of a preprotein from the endoplasmic reticulum entails passage through a membrane pore with the participation of various translocation factors (Brodsky, 1998). The correct assembly of a protein may critically depend on the function of so-called molecular chaperones, which are other proteins that guide the folding of nascent proteins in concert with proteases that remove selective segments to achieve functional conformations (Wickner et al, 1999). Many genetic diseases are due to harmful mutations in DNA, leading to alterations in the amino acid sequence of a protein that may block this complex assembly process or that may render any assembled protein molecules nonfunctional (Kuznetsov & Nigam, 1998).

Additional modifications to protein structures occur posttranslationally (i.e., after joining of the amino acids is complete) (Harding, 1985). Phosphorylation consists of the enzymatically regulated attachment of phosphate groups to serine and threonine groups as well as tyrosine (e.g., by tyrosine kinases) in the peptide backbone, thereby forming phosphoproteins with a more negative charge that can alter protein functions and state of activation. Glycosylation may occur spontaneously, in the presence of sugar molecules, or in a directed manner under enzymatic control, in which oligosaccharides, frequently terminating with sialic acid (which carries a negative charge), are attached to the protein (Van den Steen et al, 1998). These species of molecules are termed glycoproteins. Linkages are generally to asparagine residues through *N*-acetylglucosamine or to serine and threonine residues through *N*-acetylgalactosamine. Proteolysis results in the cleavage or removal of short segments of the peptide backbone that can open up catalytic sites of a zymogen (e.g., plasminogen to plasmin) or facilitate recognition by a receptor molecule (e.g., proinsulin to insulin). Many of these posttranslational steps are unique to eukaryotic cells and do not occur in prokaryotic cells; this point is very important to the biotechnology industry, which uses cloned genes to produce human proteins in bacteria, yeast, or other artificial cell types, and so must take additional steps to synthesize accurate molecules (Jenkins et al, 1996). Posttranslational changes in the structure of proteins influence their antigenicity, specific chemical or catalytic activities, abilities to bind to receptors, and electrophoretic mobilities.

Proteins that normally remain intracellular ultimately undergo degradation and clearance by the proteasome enzyme complex. This normal breakdown is essential to prevent accumulation of aging of otherwise faulty protein molecules and to allow newly synthesized fully functional proteins to take their place. Prior to degradation, protein molecules are tagged by conjugation with ubiquitin (ubiquitinylation), a small (8.5 kDa) protein that is found in all eukaryotic cells. Attachment of ubiquitin also directs proteins to other parts of the cell, as well as modifies their molecular interactions. Conjugation with a single ubiquitin molecule is followed by attachment of further ubiquitin molecules, leading to a polyubiquitin chain that binds to the proteasome, which then degrades the protein into peptides and amino acids to be used to synthesize new proteins. This crucial proteasome action is the target of the inhibitor bortezomib, which has had clinical application for treatment of multiple myeloma and mantle cell lymphoma (Merin & Kelly, 2015).

TECHNIQUES OF PROTEIN SEPARATION

ELECTROPHORESIS

Modern understanding of the protein composition of serum and plasma derives from the electrophoretic techniques introduced by Tiselius. He separated proteins dissolved in an electrolyte solution by application of an electric current through a U-shaped quartz tube that held the protein solution. At pH 7.6, four serum protein fractions, designated albumin, α, β, and γ, were identified and quantified optically by change in refractive index at the boundaries among these bands. Because separation was achieved in a homogeneous solution without solid support medium, convective forces prevented resolution into distinct zones. Hence this technique has been termed *moving boundary* or *frontal electrophoresis*. Introduction of filter paper as an anticonvection support medium permitted separation of the protein fractions into discrete bands or zones in a process termed *zonal electrophoresis*. On solid support medium and at pH 8.6, the α fraction further splits into two groups of proteins: α_1 and α_2. Other support media, such as cellulose acetate membrane, agarose gel, starch gel, and polyacrylamide gel, have been used. Cellulose acetate and agarose have predominated in the clinical laboratory because of ease of use, low cost, and commercial availability (Jeppsson et al, 1979).

Application of samples can be done in wells that are cut into the gel, but this process typically leaves an artifact that can interfere with the scan. A method to get around this problem involves soaking the sample into the gel by means of an overlying template. Each end of the gel is then immersed into separate buffer chambers in which electrodes are mounted. A voltage is applied between the electrodes, generating a current that passes through the gel, usually for a period of about 30 minutes, to achieve desired resolution. The ionic strength of the buffer determines the amount of current and the movement of the proteins for a fixed voltage. If ionic strength is low, relatively more current is carried by the charged proteins. If ionic strength is high, less current is carried by the proteins, which move a shorter distance. If the electrodes are not properly aligned, the current may be denser on one side of the gel than on the other; proteins will migrate farther on the side with more current. If electrophoresis proceeds

http://basicbook.net

too long, the proteins may migrate off the gel into the buffer. If there is a break in the electrical circuit and no current passes, the proteins will not move from the point of application. Frequently, gels show the "smile artifact," in which samples at the center of the gel migrate farther than those at the edges.

After electrophoresis, the gel is treated with a mild fixative, such as acetic acid, that precipitates the proteins at the positions to which they have migrated. They are then stained, and the gel is dried and cleared of excess stain. Protein patterns can be inspected visually for qualitative identification of abnormal proteins. Densitometric scanners are used to generate tracings and to quantitate the relative percentages of protein in each fraction. Those percentages are then multiplied by the total protein (separately measured) in the sample to yield the concentration of protein in each fraction.

When an electrophoretic support medium has a negative charge, the electromotive force to which it is subjected tends to move it toward the anode (positive pole; Fig. 19-1). However, the solid support medium is fixed, so it cannot move. The complementary positively charged ions in the surrounding buffer are free to move under the electromotive force, and they carry with them molecules of the solvent water, which are clustered around their charges. The net result is flow of buffer toward the cathode. This buffer flow is termed *electro-osmosis* or *endosmosis*, which also carries the proteins with it to some extent by mechanical flow, not by charge. The actual distance traveled by a particular protein migrating in an electrical field is determined by the combined magnitudes of the electromotive force (a feature of the protein itself and the pH) and the electro-osmotic force (a function primarily of the support medium). When the electro-osmotic force is greater than the electrophoretic force acting on weakly anionic proteins (e.g., γ-globulins), those proteins move from the application point toward the cathode, even though their charge is slightly negative.

Through critical manipulations of buffer salt composition, endosmotic properties of the medium, and means of sample application, commercially available electrophoretic agarose plates now achieve consistently high-resolution quality that allows routine separation of all major serum protein species (Fig. 19-2). Because of variability in the chemical formulations of gels, it should not necessarily be expected that each manufacturer's electrophoretic system will yield identical protein separation patterns. Furthermore, optimal separation of isoenzymes generally requires different buffer and gel composition compared with the conditions for best resolution of serum proteins versus lipoproteins versus hemoglobins. A significant variation in conditions for protein electrophoresis is that for optimizing the separation of the γ-region to resolve and detect oligoclonal bands of immunoglobulin in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). In this case, the endosmosis is set high to maximize the cathodal movement of immunoglobulins from the point of application over a span of the gel that is convenient for visual inspection.

Polyacrylamide is an inert support medium whose porosity is easily adjusted by changing the composition of acrylamide before polymerization. Although polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) is applicable to standard separation of native proteins, it can also be used for separating proteins according to molecular weight when they are denatured in the presence of sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS). SDS-PAGE is at present the most widely used protein electrophoretic technique for research in molecular biology. However, its very power for resolving proteins and separating them into multitudinous subunits has virtually excluded it from routine use in the clinical laboratory. Nevertheless, there is promise for clinical application of two-dimensional electrophoresis (2-DE), which uses standard separation in one direction followed by SDS-PAGE in the perpendicular direction. 2-DE results in perhaps hundreds of identifiable protein peaks, from which it may be possible to obtain important diagnostic information by sophisticated pattern analysis.

Isoelectric focusing affords superior resolution of closely migrating proteins or various forms of a single protein that differ in charge owing to minor modification (e.g., posttranslational) (see Chapter 4). By this technique, proteins migrate through a gel containing a gradient of pH established with a mixture of ampholytes. As each protein reaches the gel location where the pH is equal to its pI, the net charge on it becomes zero. It no longer has electromotive force acting on it, and it comes to rest. Thus the final pattern is strictly according to pI.

PRECIPITATION

Chemical precipitations of serum proteins have been devised to resolve albumin and the globulins into two or more fractions that can then be measured for protein content. With the addition of sodium sulfate, sodium sulfite, ammonium sulfate, or methanol, the globulins tend to precipitate, leaving albumin in solution. By measuring total protein in the original serum and protein in the precipitate or the supernatant, values for albumin and globulin can be derived. The ratio of these values (A/G ratio) has been used extensively because it accentuates abnormalities in serum protein composition, which in disease generally involve depression of albumin and elevation of one or more globulin fractions. Albumin may be depressed owing to decreased synthesis (malnutrition, malabsorption, liver failure, diversion to synthesis of other proteins) or increased loss (proteinuria, accumulation of ascites fluid, enteropathy). Globulins may be elevated owing to increased synthesis of many different proteins as part of acute or chronic reactions to disease. Lowering of albumin and elevation of globulins tend to occur simultaneously in disease, thus leading to exaggerated changes in the A/G ratio as the numerator and denominator move in opposite directions. Precipitation methods are not as accurate as zonal

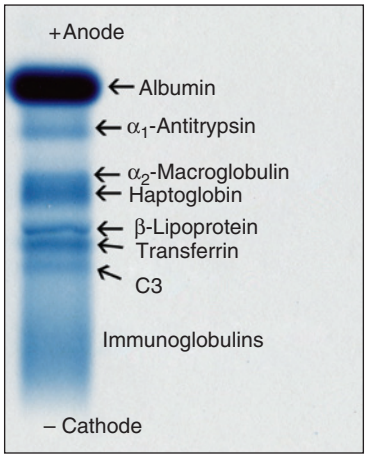


Figure 19-1 Positions of major serum proteins in a normal person using electrophoresis in agarose. Individual proteins separate according to their electrical charge between the anode (positive pole) and the cathode (negative pole).

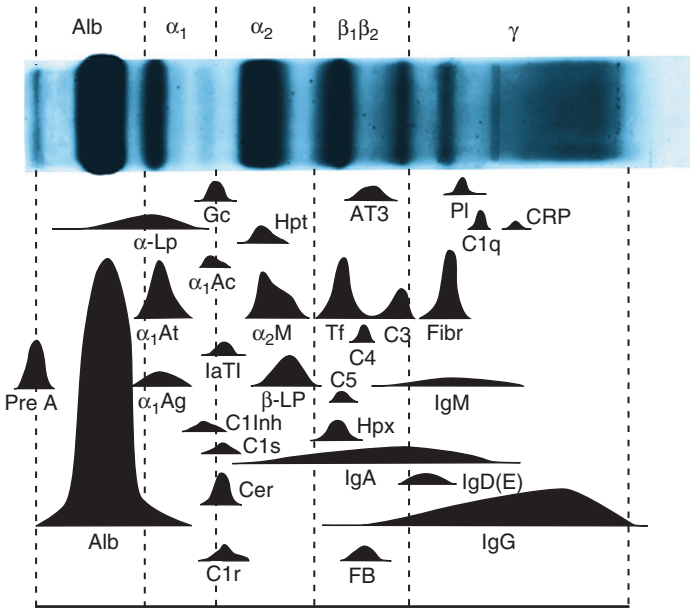


Figure 19-2 Plasma protein electrophoresis pattern in agarose gel is composed of five fractions, each composed of many individual species. Some of the major proteins are shown here in an artist's rendition for clarity. *α1Ac,* α1-Antichymotrypsin; *α1Ag,* α1-acid glycoprotein; *α1At,* α1-antitrypsin; *α2-M,* α2-macroglobulin; *α-Lp,* α-lipoprotein; *Alb,* albumin; *AT3,* antithrombin III; *β-Lp,* β-lipoprotein; complement components *C1q, C1r, C1s, C3, C4, C5,* as designated; *C1Inh,* C1 esterase inhibitor; *Cer,* cerulosplasmin; *CRP,* C-reactive protein; *Gc,* Gc-globulin (vitamin D–binding protein); *FB,* factor B; *Fibr,* fibrinogen; *Hpt,* haptoglobin; *Hpx,* hemopexin; immunoglobulins *IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, IgM,* as designated; *IαTI,* inter-α-trypsin inhibitor; *PI,* plasminogen; *Pre A,* prealbumin; *Tf,* transferrin. (Adapted from Laurell CB. Electrophoresis, specific protein assays, or both in measurement of plasma proteins? *Clin Chem* 19:99, 1973, with permission.)

http://basicbook.net

electrophoresis, because some α-globulins may fail to precipitate, thus leading to an overestimate of the albumin fraction.

Preparative procedures for the isolation of a single minor protein constituent usually begin with a precipitation step to remove the bulk of other undesired serum proteins. The next step in protein isolation typically involves a column that separates on the basis of molecular size (gel filtration) or charge (ion exchange).

COLUMN SEPARATIONS

Gel filtration media such as Sephadex or agarose beads are rated according to pore size, which in turn determines what size molecules can pass through the interior of each bead or particle of the column. After application of a sample composed of various-sized proteins in aqueous solvent containing buffer and salt, more of the buffer is applied to drive the sample through the column. Very large molecules tend to flow through interstices of the column without entering the beads and emerge first from the bottom of the column in the void volume. Slightly smaller molecules enter the largest pores before being washed through and so are slightly retarded in passing through the column. Small protein molecules pass into still smaller pores and are retained still longer. Finally, particles the size of dissolved salt penetrate farthest into the interior of gel filtration beads and come out after all the proteins have emerged in an amount of applied buffer called the salt volume. Thus in gel filtration, the order of protein elution is by molecular weight or size, from largest first to smallest last. Because all protein species continuously move through a gel filtration column all at the same time but at different rates, it is necessary to apply the sample in a small and uniform volume to optimize separation between peaks. Gel filtration requires that the medium be inert and not interact chemically or by charge with the proteins. It is not a method to be employed for high-resolution separation.

Ion-exchange chromatography, on the other hand, takes advantage of the charge on proteins to bind them to beads of a support medium with positively charged components such as diethylaminoethyl or quaternary aminoethyl. In anion-exchange chromatography, proteins are usually applied at a basic pH such as 8.6, at which they may be negatively charged (albumin and α_1-, α_2-, and β-globulins are anions) or may have no net charge (γ-globulins). The neutral proteins pass immediately through an anion-exchange column, whereas the anionic ones stick to the positively charged column matrix. If a buffer with a higher salt concentration is washed through, anions of the salt displace the anionic proteins and exchange for them by binding to the support medium. The proteins then elute from the column. By using a steadily increasing gradient of salt concentration in the eluting buffer, the proteins can be resolved according to charge. The ones with a small amount of charge will elute first, whereas those with the greatest charge (e.g., albumin) elute only when displaced by higher salt levels.

Alternatively, if pH is lowered while salt concentration is held low, anionic proteins acquire a net neutral or slightly positive charge and pass through the column. A gradient of falling pH can be used to resolve anionic proteins, with the order of elution being roughly β-, α_2-, and α_1-globulins, and albumin. Note that this order of elution is the reverse order of electrophoretic migration at pH 8.6, because in anion-exchange chromatography, mobility is retarded according to net negative charge, whereas in electrophoresis, mobility is enhanced by that charge.

Cation-exchange chromatography begins at an acid pH, with the proteins having positive charge (cations) and adhering to a negatively charged column matrix such as carboxymethylcellulose. They can be displaced by the cations of high salt in an eluting buffer or by increasing the pH, which will reverse the charge on the proteins to negative. By cation exchange, albumin should elute first, followed by α_1-, α_2-, β-, and γ-globulins.

Another separation modality by column is hydrophobic chromatography, in which samples are applied at high salt and are eluted with low salt. The support medium interacts with proteins with a hydrophobic nature; this is a good complementary technique to follow ion-exchange chromatography, in which the sample was eluted with high salt.

Affinity chromatography is based on specific binding between a protein of interest and another protein that has been covalently linked to the solid support medium of a column. For example, coagulation factor VIII complexed with von Willebrand factor (vWF) can be selectively removed from the other plasma proteins by passing plasma through a column that contains monoclonal anti-vWF antibody linked to the solid phase matrix. The factor VIII-vWF complex selectively binds to the column as other plasma proteins wash through. The factor VIII is then dissociated from the vWF, thereby allowing it to elute in a purified fraction suitable for transfusion therapy. Such antigen–antibody interactions may be disrupted by high salt concentration, change in pH, or a chemical denaturant, such as urea, in different applications. Other affinity chromatography gels use a binding phenomenon that mimics naturally occurring molecular interactions. Thus some dyes coupled to agarose are able to bind albumin, thereby removing it selectively from serum. Therapeutic antibodies or their Fab portions are concentrated with affinity columns containing their intended target antigens (e.g., Digibind for digoxin, CroFab for crotalid snake venom). Immunoglobulins can also be absorbed from a sample by staphylococcal protein A coupled to the gel matrix. Many other separation schemes can effect a high degree of purification in a single step with affinity chromatography medium coupled to dyes, drugs, nucleotide cofactors, and sugars. A clinical test using affinity chromatography is quantitation of glycosylated hemoglobin using a dihydroxyboronate affinity matrix that selectively binds molecular species of hemoglobin to which glucose has been covalently attached, while allowing the nonglycosylated forms to pass through the column. The glycosylated hemoglobin is then separately eluted and quantitated.

Capillary electrophoresis is a separation method based on flow through a capillary tube that can be tailored to resolution of different molecules based on size, hydrophobicity, or stereospecificity. It is applicable to large molecules such as DNA or proteins, as well as to small ones such as hormones or therapeutic drugs. Physically, the method is similar to high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), in which solvent is pumped through a column that retains or passes solutes according to chemical interactions. Capillary electrophoresis for serum proteins employs a column with properties similar to agarose, so the separation of proteins is comparable with that from electrophoresis. This analysis can be automated with a detector at the effluent end that detects and quantitates protein bands without the need for staining and separate scanning. Although equipment costs are relatively high for capillary electrophoresis, reagent and labor costs are low, and the procedure is fast and very quantitative, leading to the promise of more widespread clinical applications in the future (Chen, 1991; Brinkman et al, 2004). When a monoclonal immunoglobulin band is suspected by capillary electrophoresis, further treatment of the specimen with anti-IgG, anti-IgA, anti-IgM, anti-kappa, and anti-lambda antisera is done in separate aliquots prior to performing the electrophoresis again; the monoclonal protein type is identified as the band that disappears with that antiserum. This approach is satisfactory for relatively high concentrations of monoclonal proteins, but it does not have good detection and quantitation power at lower concentrations of those proteins (Huang et al, 2014).

PROTEIN DETECTION AND QUANTITATION

The ultimate reference method for determining concentration of protein is the analysis for nitrogen content. Nitrogen is present uniformly along the peptide bonds throughout the length of a protein and more irregularly in the side groups, wherever tryptophan, arginine, lysine, histidine, asparagine, or glutamine is present. The Kjeldahl technique consists of acid digestion to release ammonium ions from nitrogen-containing compounds. The ammonium can then be quantitated by conversion to ammonia gas and titration as a base, or by nesslerization, in which double iodides (potassium and mercuric) form a colored complex with ammonia in alkali. Although determination of nitrogen content can be extremely precise, its use for calculation of protein concentration depends on the exact protein composition of a sample, because each protein has a somewhat different nitrogen content according to amino acid composition. However, for a sample of a purified protein, nitrogen content is highly accurate for estimating protein concentration when the nitrogen content on a molar basis is already known for that purified protein. Knowledge of a protein's exact amino acid sequence allows an accurate calculation of what the nitrogen content should be. Because clinical samples consist of unpredictable mixtures of different proteins, and measurement of nitrogen content is not a simple procedure, it is not commonly used in clinical laboratories.

Refractive index can be accurate for measuring serum protein concentration as dissolved solute for levels above 2.5 g/dL. Hemolysis, lipemia, icterus, and azotemia produce erroneously high results. Refractive index cannot be used for urine protein measurements because of excess amounts of solutes in relation to the protein.

Specific gravity (and thus, by inference, protein content) can be estimated by pipetting drops of serum or blood into a graded series of copper sulfate solutions. A protein–copper shell forms about the drop to prevent dissolution for a short interval, during which time the drop falls to the bottom, remains stationary, or rises to the top. The protein concentration

http://basicbook.net

of a sample is estimated from the specific gravity of the copper sulfate solution in which the drop remains stationary. This technique is simple and has been used widely as a screening test for hemoglobin concentration in whole blood.

Proteins in solution absorb ultraviolet light at 280 nm (A_{280}), owing mostly to tryptophan but also to tyrosine and phenylalanine (Layne, 1957). For accurate conversion of A_{280} readings to protein concentration, the molar absorptivity must be used, because each protein contains a different amount of these three amino acids. However, the A_{280} of a mixture of proteins is not a perfect measure of protein content because molar absorptivities vary greatly among different proteins. Because nucleic acids (which absorb strongly at 260 nm and also somewhat at 280 nm) may be present in protein preparations, a better estimate of protein concentration in the presence of nucleic acids is given by the formula:

$$\text{Protein concentration (mg/mL)} = 1.55 \times A_{280} - 0.76 \times A_{260}$$

Direct measurements of absorbance can be used for quantitating proteins in the range of 0.05 to 1.5 mg/mL.

Turbidimetric methods are often used for a similar concentration range in CSF or urine. Protein forms precipitate on the addition of trichloroacetic acid, sulfosalicylic acid, or other acid reagent. The resulting turbidity can be used for protein quantitation by increment in optical density in comparison with similarly treated standards. However, these techniques are not specific to proteins, because other acid-insoluble substances, such as nucleic acids, can also precipitate.

A colorimetric technique highly specific for proteins and peptides is the Biuret method, by which copper salts in alkaline solution form a purple complex with substances containing two or more peptide bonds. Interferences are minimal, although ammonium ion may acidify the reaction, while hemoglobin and bilirubin absorb in the same region as the Biuret complex (540 to 560 nm). The Biuret method is extensively used in clinical laboratories, particularly in automated analyzers in which protein concentration can be measured down to 10 or 15 mg/dL.

Greater sensitivity can be obtained using the Folin-Ciocalteu reagent (or phenol reagent, phosphotungstomolybdic acid), which oxidizes phenolic compounds such as tyrosine and, in addition, tryptophan and histidine to give a deep blue color.

Lowry and colleagues (1951) used the Biuret method, followed by the phenol reagent, which greatly enhanced color formation, because the phenol reagent can react with Biuret complexes involving all peptide bonds. The Lowry assay has been extensively used for consistently accurate determinations of protein concentration. Further sensitivity for detection down to 1 µg of protein can be obtained using Coomassie brilliant blue dye, which is free of interferences from a very wide range of substances.

Comparable sensitivity is obtained with ninhydrin, which develops a violet color by reacting with primary amines. This reagent is widely used for detection of peptides and amino acids after paper chromatogaphy and amino acid analyses from ion-exchange columns, as well as for detection of drugs on toxicology screens using thin-layer chromatography (see Chapter 23).

Quantitation of albumin in the presence of other proteins is possible by virtue of the specific binding of albumin to certain dyes such as bromphenol blue, methyl orange, hydroxybenzeneazobenzoic acid, bromcresol purple, and bromcresol green (BCG). BCG is used extensively in automatic analyzers for determining serum albumin in parallel with Biuret reagent for total protein. Dyes bound to albumin absorb maximally at slightly different wavelengths, thus allowing direct spectrophotometric quantitation of the albumin.

The standard dyes used for staining electrophoresis are Coomassie brilliant blue, Ponceau S, and amido black. For detection of minor components in high-resolution gels, silver staining is very sensitive down to nanogram quantities (Merril et al, 1981). In addition, special dyes, such as Oil Red O and Sudan black, stain lipoproteins, and periodic acid–Schiff stains glycoproteins separated in special electrophoretic applications.

Because electrophoresis followed by staining does not afford explicit identification of serum proteins, immunologic measurements have been instituted for quantitation of individual proteins (Laurell, 1966). Nephelometry detects the turbidity produced usually within minutes or less by the precipitation of a reagent antibody with its target protein in a serum sample (Maachi et al, 2004). The major serum proteins are now widely measured by this method on automated immunochemistry analyzers that have supplanted former measurements by radial immunodiffusion. Owing to the specificity of the antibody reagent, nephelometry has great specificity for quantitating individual proteins, even in the presence of others. Proteins present in lower concentrations may be quantitated by immunologic methods, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay.

SPECIFIC PLASMA PROTEINS

MAJOR COMPONENTS

The major serum proteins are those components that are readily resolved and detected on electrophoretic gels stained by conventional clinical laboratory techniques (Table 19-1, and see Fig. 19-1).

Prealbumin

Prealbumin is defined electrophoretically as the fraction that migrates in a position faster than albumin toward the anode. Prealbumin has a tetrameric structure with a total molecular weight of 62,000 Da, making it one of the smaller serum proteins. Each monomer can bind a molecule of thyroxine. As such, it is also called thyroxine-binding prealbumin (TBPA) or transthyretin (TTR), although only a small fraction of thyroxine is actually bound to TBPA in normal individuals, because thyroxine-binding globulin has a 100-fold greater affinity for thyroxine (Oppenheimer, 1968). However, at least one molecular variant of prealbumin, inherited in a familial pattern, has a greatly increased affinity for thyroxine, resulting in elevated serum thyroxine content, although those individuals have normal free thyroxine concentrations and so are euthyroid (Moses et al, 1982).

Prealbumin plays a significant role in the metabolism of vitamin A by complexing with the retinol-binding protein (RBP), which, in turn, complexes with vitamin A to transport it through the body (Peterson, 1971). RBP is a small protein of only 182 amino acids, so it would be rapidly removed from the circulation by filtration through the kidney if it were not held in the plasma by the larger protein prealbumin, which is not cleared into the glomerular filtrate. The complex of retinol, RBP, and transthyretin appears to be assembled in the endoplasmic reticulum of hepatocytes (Gaetani et al, 2002).

TABLE 19-1
Characteristics of Major Plasma Proteins

Protein	Concentration Range (g/L)	Molecular Weight	Actions
Prealbumin	0.15-0.36	62,000	Binds thyroxine; transports vitamin A
Albumin	39-51	66,000	Oncotic pressure; amino acid reservoir; carries small molecules
α_1-Antitrypsin	2.0-4.0	54,000	Protease inhibitor
α_2-Macroglobulin	1.5-3.5	725,000	Protease inhibitor
Haptoglobulin	0.4-2.9	100,000 (Type 1-1)	Binds hemoglobin
β-Lipoprotein	2.7-7.4	380,000	Lipid transport
Transferrin	2.0-4.0	80,000	Transports iron
C3	0.6-1.4	185,000	Component of complement system
Fibrinogen	1.0-4.0	340,000	Clot formation
Immunoglobulin A	0.4-3.5	160,000	Surface immunity
Immunoglobulin D	0.1-0.4	180,000	
Immunoglobulin E	50-600 (µg/L)	180,000	Binds to mast cells; hypersensitivity reactions
Immunoglobulin G	7-15	150,000	Humoral immunity
Immunoglobulin M	0.25-2.0	850,000	Humoral immunity primary response

http://basicbook.net

Prealbumin is rich in tryptophan (sometimes called tryptophan-rich prealbumin) and has considerable β-pleated sheet conformation. A portion of prealbumin is the source of the β-fibrillar amyloid component in type I familial amyloidotic polyneuropathy (Glenner, 1980). This hereditary amyloidosis derives from a mutation in the prealbumin gene that produces a protein (e.g., TTR Met 30 variant or FAP V30M) susceptible to proteolytic cleavage to create the β-structured fragments that are the building blocks of amyloid in nerve fibers (Saraiva et al, 1989; Ii et al, 1991). More than 80 different mutations in transthyretin have been recognized, mostly affecting nerve or heart with amyloid. These pathogenetic variants of prealbumin cannot be distinguished from normal by standard protein electrophoresis. Current diagnosis is based on analysis at the DNA level. A different variant of prealbumin (TTR T60A leading to FAP T60A) presents with a slightly different clinical picture in which disease appears later in life and in which cardiac amyloidosis is more frequent than in FAP V30M. Liver transplantation alone to remove the source of variant prealbumin did not reverse the cardiac amyloid, partly because these patients have significant involvement of multiple organs; consequently, a more favorable outcome might occur with the use of inhibitors of amyloid formation (Sattianayagam et al, 2012).

Prealbumin has a relatively short half-life in the circulation (roughly 2 days) compared with other major serum proteins. Its synthetic rate is also exquisitely sensitive to intake of adequate nutrition and to alterations in hepatic function where it is produced. Therefore, prealbumin concentrations in serum fluctuate more rapidly in response to alterations in synthetic rate than do those of other proteins such as albumin. For this reason, quantitation of serum prealbumin has major clinical utility as a marker for nutritional status (Gofferje, 1978). Because of the rapid dynamics of its synthesis and clearance, prealbumin is considered to be a better early indicator of change in nutritional status than other commonly used markers, such as albumin and transferrin, which are more abundant but whose levels respond to other factors as well and at slower time scales. In a study of 7815 hemodialysis patients, low levels of prealbumin were associated with greater risks of mortality and hospitalization for infection that were independent of other risk factors, including serum albumin (Chertow et al, 2005). Thus prealbumin measurements can be very important for planning patient management.

Because of its compactness, prealbumin crosses more easily into the CSF than do the other serum proteins. Therefore, concentrating CSF before electrophoresis allows visualization of a distinct prealbumin band in CSF. CSF normally contains a major peak of albumin plus prealbumin and a small amount of transferrin. Electrophoresis of CSF is usually requested for detection of oligoclonal bands of immunoglobulin, and the presence of a distinct band of prealbumin is used only as a landmark to confirm that the specimen was likely CSF. True prealbumin is generally below the level of detection by serum electrophoresis; instead, it is best quantified by immunologic measurements such as nephelometry. A protein band frequently appears in the prealbumin position of serum from patients who have had heparin therapy. In the circulation, heparin activates and releases lipoprotein lipase activity, which attacks triglycerides in lipoprotein fractions, thereby greatly enhancing their electrophoretic migration anodally. Protein stain reveals apolipoproteins in the prealbumin position but no β-lipoprotein fraction. This is an in vivo effect that does not occur if heparin is added to samples already collected.

Albumin

The single most abundant protein in normal plasma is albumin, usually constituting up to two-thirds of total plasma protein (Peters, 1975). For this reason, depressions in albumin level due to impaired synthesis (e.g., malnutrition, malabsorption, hepatic dysfunction) (Rothschild et al, 1972) or to losses (e.g., ascites, protein-losing nephropathy or enteropathy) result in serious imbalance of intravascular oncotic pressure. This loss is manifested clinically by the development of peripheral edema (Slater et al, 1975). However, the congenital absence of albumin (analbuminemia) generally does not lead to such problems, presumably because of lifelong compensatory mechanisms that control hydrostatic pressures (Waldman et al, 1964). Albumin also serves as a mobile repository of amino acids for incorporation into other proteins. A third function ascribed to albumin is that of a general transport or carrier protein. Many organic and inorganic ligands (e.g., thyroxine, bilirubin, penicillin, cortisol, estrogen, free fatty acids, warfarin [Coumadin], calcium, magnesium, heme) are complexed with different regions of the albumin molecule in covalent (e.g., δ-bilirubin) (Lauff et al, 1982) or dissociable binding (Koch-Weser et al, 1976). These binding interactions with very different ligands are possible because of a wide variety of binding sites on the albumin molecule, which consists of 585 amino acids arranged in nine loops held together by the disulfide bonds between cysteine residues (Meloun et al, 1975). The primary sequence of albumin contains three major regions with three peptide loops each, suggesting that it arose from gene duplication of some ancestral gene in a tandem rearrangement process (Peters, 1977; Sevall, 1986). It is also interesting to note that α-fetoprotein has regions of homology with serum albumin, which may indicate a common ancestral gene origin for these two proteins.

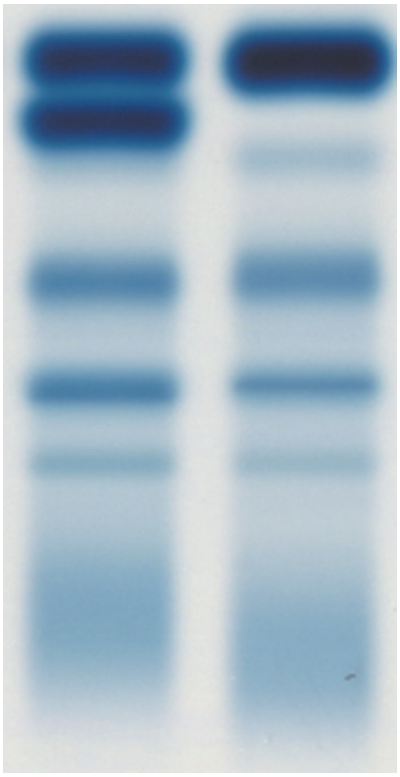


Figure 19-3 **Bisalbuminemia.** Serum protein electrophoresis with normal pattern in right lane and bisalbuminemia consisting of two equal intensity bands of albumin in left lane. The additional band of albumin in this patient migrated more slowly than normal albumin into the α_1-region.

In addition to the genetic abnormality of analbuminemia, many hereditary variants of albumin differ from the most common allotype, albumin A, by single amino acid substitutions. These variants can be rapid or slow migrating compared with albumin A, leading to two distinct albumin peaks (bisalbuminemia) in the heterozygous state (Fig. 19-3). None of the variant albumins appears to affect health, but one variant does have greatly enhanced affinity for thyroxine, which leads to elevated thyroxine content in the serum of such persons, who nevertheless remain euthyroid (Ruiz et al, 1982). At least 77 different mutations in albumin are recognized, 65 of which lead to bisalbuminemia; 12 cause analbuminemia, and 3 have strong binding of thyroid hormones, whereas others show variations due to frameshifts, with modifications near the carboxy terminus of the albumin molecule (Minchiotti, 2008).

Up to 8% of albumin circulating in normal persons becomes glycosylated nonenzymatically, whereas up to 25% becomes glycosylated during hyperglycemia in analogy with glycosylated hemoglobin (Guthrow et al, 1979). The half-life of circulating albumin is about 17 days, so measurements of the glycosylated form may be useful in monitoring diabetic control during an interval of a few weeks. Measurement of glycosylated albumin (also called fructosamine) can be very useful for assessing diabetic control in patients with hemolytic anemias (e.g., sickle cell disease, thalassemia, autoimmune hemolysis), whose red cell survival is greatly shortened and in whom measurement of glycosylated hemoglobin is unreliable. Glycosylated albumin measurements may not be reliable for assessing diabetic control in patients with protein-losing nephropathy, in which albumin clearance is accelerated. Diabetic patients on hemodialysis can be monitored with glycosylated hemoglobin or glycosylated albumin (Ghacha et al, 2001).

Analysis of newly synthesized albumin from intracellular sites has revealed the existence of a precursor proalbumin, which has an additional hexapeptide at its amino-terminal end. The primary structure of albumin consists of 35 cysteine residues, of which 34 form intramolecular disulfide

http://basicbook.net

bonds and one remains free. On storage for many days, albumin forms covalently linked dimers through the free cysteines, resulting occasionally in an extra band of albumin on electrophoresis.

Clinical measurements of albumin are very frequent, with determinations of total protein and albumin often included in chemistry panel profiles. Organ- or disease-oriented panels of chemistry tests in current use include the following measurements: comprehensive metabolic panel has albumin and total protein; renal function panel has albumin; and hepatic function panel has albumin and total protein.

Elevations of serum albumin concentration are infrequent, although they do occur in dehydration as the plasma water phase shrinks. Following rehydration, the albumin level should fall to within the normal reference range. Elevation of serum albumin may also occur artifactually as the result of prolonged application of a tourniquet for venipuncture. In this instance, increased hydrodynamic pressure from venous backup forces water and small solutes out of the intravascular space, thereby concentrating cellular elements, micellar forms of lipoproteins, and proteins such as albumin.

Depression of albumin concentrations is frequent in sick individuals, and a review of hospitalized patients reveals that a substantial proportion of albumin measurements are below healthy reference ranges (see Fig. 19-7). Although some of these decreases are likely dilutional, owing to the administration of intravenous fluids, others are caused by loss of albumin into urine, ascitic fluid, or the gastrointestinal tract in enteropathies, or by decreased synthesis in the liver caused by hepatic disease such as cirrhosis or by secondary effects on synthesis resulting from compromised nutrition or diversion of synthetic capacity to other proteins. This sensitive but nonspecific reduction of albumin in so many different conditions has led to its being termed a "negative acute phase reactant" (Post et al, 1991). Measurements of albumin concentrations are vital to the understanding and interpretation of calcium and magnesium levels because these ions are bound to albumin, so decreases in albumin are directly responsible for depression of their concentrations, too. In some disease states, decreases in albumin are at least partially compensated for by increases in other serum proteins, thereby stabilizing oncotic pressures intravascularly. In particular, cirrhosis shows a major polyclonal increase of immunoglobulins in the γ-fraction (Fig. 19-4, *A*) and nephrotic syndrome shows high levels of α_2-macroglobulin (Fig. 19-4, *B*). In acute heart failure of elderly patients, increased albumin has been shown to be associated with decreased 180-day mortality in patients over 80 years old (Metra et al, 2014).

Body fluids that form normally, such as CSF, or pathologically, such as filtrates of plasma (e.g., ascites), contain albumin as the major component, with very little contribution from other plasma proteins. The presence of albumin in the urine is generally considered abnormal even in trace amounts, although some healthy individuals exhibit albuminuria following intense exercise. Progression of diabetic nephropathy can be assessed by the quantitative measurement of albuminuria, as it tends to appear ahead of the other serum proteins in urine during the course of renal glomerular damage. Immunologic measurement of microalbumin in urine is now considered a standard of care for management of diabetes mellitus and the early detection of diabetic complications. The nephrotic syndrome, which is marked by extensive hypoalbuminemia, is often due to diabetic nephropathy or one of several other primary glomerular diseases (Orth & Ritz, 1998).

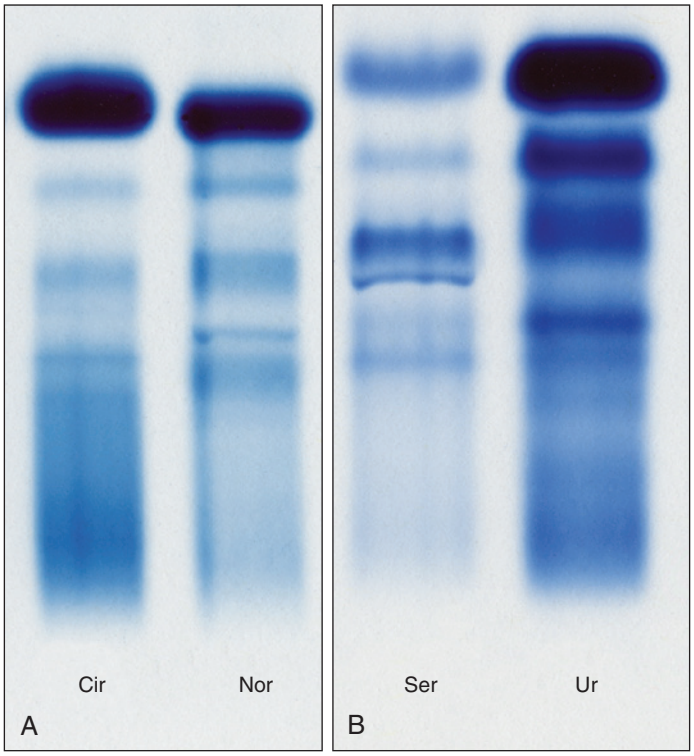


Figure 19-4 **A,** Serum protein electrophoresis in cirrhosis (Cir) shows more rapidly migrating albumin compared with normal serum (Nor) because of the additional negative charge from covalently linked conjugated bilirubin (i.e., δ-bilirubin). The γ-globulins are broadly increased in the polyclonal elevation characteristic of cirrhosis of the liver. **B,** Protein electrophoretic patterns of serum (Ser) and concentrated urine (Ur) in a patient with nephrotic syndrome. Smaller molecular-sized proteins such as albumin are preferentially lost from blood into urine. Larger proteins such as α_2-macroglobulin and β-lipoprotein are retained in the blood and constitute major bands in the serum pattern.

α_1-Antitrypsin

The major component of the α_1-globulins is the protease inhibitor α_1-antitrypsin (AAT), which has the capacity to combine with and inactivate trypsin (Eriksson, 1965; Berninger, 1985a). The first clue to this function came with the discovery that the serum of some young adults with pulmonary emphysema was deficient in α_1-globulin. Further investigation revealed a similar deficiency of AAT in children with cirrhosis (Sveger, 1976). Usually, no appreciable circulating levels of trypsin are found in blood, but other related proteases, such as elastase, are released from leukocytes responding to irritants or inflammation. AAT is able to neutralize the activity of these proteases, too, and thus is an intrinsic factor in the homeostatic mechanism modulating endogenous proteolysis within the body and preventing inappropriately severe biochemical response to inflammation (Cox, 1986).

AAT is coded for by the gene *SERPINA1* on chromosome 14. A majority of people are homozygous for the normal fully active *M* allele of AAT, or phenotype MM (Lieberman et al, 1972). About 10% of Caucasians (and fewer of other races) are heterozygous for *M* and some other allele of the protease inhibitor or Pi system. More than 2% carry the *PiZ* allele and exhibit the phenotype MZ. Although these individuals have somewhat reduced levels of trypsin inhibitory capacity in serum, they are generally asymptomatic; however, their homozygous ZZ offspring (who have very low levels of AAT) are susceptible to pulmonary or hepatic disease. The ZZ phenotype occurs in about 1 in 4000 individuals. Another common variant is the *PiS* allele, which shows moderate reduction in synthesis. Although the MS phenotype does not show related disease, both SS and SZ phenotypes are suspected to have increased risk of lung or liver disease. Another allele that may need special attention to detect is the null variant that produces no AAT protein.

Although AAT deficiency can be recognized on serum protein electrophoresis, an efficient diagnostic algorithm employs measurement of AAT concentration followed by phenotyping with isoelectric focusing electrophoresis and genotyping with molecular assays designed to detect specific mutations (Snyder et al, 2006; Bornhorst et al, 2007). Definitive typing may require analysis of the DNA sequence for the *AAT* gene. At least 75 different alleles exist for *AAT*. About 17 alleles have sufficiently low protein production to lead to pulmonary disease, and only a few are responsible for liver disease (Cox, 1986).

Therapy for pulmonary emphysema secondary to AAT deficiency has been greatly advanced by intravenous replacement of AAT, using concentrates or recombinant protein to bring circulating levels into ranges sufficient for antielastase protection to the lungs (Snider, 1989). Further replacement has also been successful with AAT inhalation for patients in whom pulmonary disease has not yet become extensive (Hubbard et al, 1989). Avoidance of cigarette smoking by homozygous individuals is essential, because cigarette smoke is a major source of irritants that trigger leukocytes in the lung to release proteases (Gelb et al, 1977). The cirrhosis in young children is treated by hepatic transplant, because the liver is the site of AAT synthesis. An interesting aspect of cirrhosis and the ZZ phenotype is the presence of unsialylated mutant-type AAT granules in the hepatocytes, implying a defect of secretion in those alleles. Cirrhosis secondary to AAT abnormality has not been improved by replacement therapy. Children with this disorder can develop progressive, severe cholestasis, prompting liver transplantation. Following transplant, the recipient takes the AAT phenotype of the donor. One approach suggested for treatment of AAT ZZ phenotype is to enhance the secretion of that abnormal molecule with a chemical chaperone and so reverse or prevent

http://basicbook.net

the intracellular deposits of AAT that cause damage to hepatocytes (Chanprasert & Scaglia, 2015).

AAT is one of the serum glycoproteins that rise in response to acute inflammation, but such elevations lack clinical specificity. The α_1-fraction never appears completely empty in AAT deficiency, because other proteins (e.g., α-lipoprotein, α_1-acid glycoprotein) migrate there but do not resolve into distinct bands. Genetic screening for AAT deficiency may be useful in targeted populations, resulting in early diagnosis, improved outcomes, and guidance for affected kindreds (Aboussouan & Stoller, 2009).

α_2-Macroglobulin

α_2-Macroglobulin (AMG) is the largest major nonimmunoglobulin protein in plasma, with a molecular weight of 725,000 Da (Roberts, 1985). The serum concentration in normal individuals is comparable with that of the other major protease inhibitor, AAT, although women have higher levels than men in response to estrogen (Horne et al, 1970). The concentration of AMG rises tenfold or more in the nephrotic syndrome when other lower molecular weight proteins are lost (Beetham & Cattell, 1993). The loss of AMG into urine is prevented by its large size. The net result is that AMG reaches serum levels equal to or greater than those of albumin (≈2 to 3 g/dL) in the nephrotic syndrome, which has the effect of maintaining oncotic pressure (see Fig. 19-4, *B*). Synthesis of AMG in nephrotic syndrome may also be enhanced, which accounts for its absolute increase in concentration. AMG inactivates proteases by complexing with them and forming covalent bonds to them. Its own conformation is thereby altered, which enhances clearance by the reticuloendothelial system. At least four molecular forms of AMG differ in sialic acid, mannose, and galactose content and can be separated by isoelectric focusing. Other molecular variations probably are the result of proteases linked to AMG before removal from the circulation. The spectrum of inhibition by AMG is very wide, including virtually all types of serine, carboxyl, thiol, and metal proteases. AMG complexes with prostate-specific antigen (PSA) in a form that is not detected by immunoassay for PSA (see Chapter 74). Although AMG function is certainly important for maintaining balance in the ebb and flow of proteolysis, no specific deficiency with associated disease has been recognized, and no disease state is generally attributed to low concentrations of AMG. Mild but distinct elevations of AMG can be observed on serum protein electrophoresis early in the course of diabetic nephropathy.

AMG inactivates proteases through a molecular trap mechanism using a bait region to bind proteases that then are bound to AMG and cleared by macrophage receptors (Armstrong, 2006). AMG also has separate binding sites for β-amyloid peptide, transforming growth factor-β, nerve growth factor-β, and platelet-derived growth factor-BB. Polymorphisms of AMG may be important in the modulation and clearance of these substances, leading to varying risk for disorders such as Alzheimer's disease (Mettenburg & Gonias, 2005).

Haptoglobin

The other major protein migrating in the α_2-region is haptoglobin, which has the function of combining with hemoglobin released by lysis of red cells to preserve body iron and protein stores. The circulating half-life of haptoglobin, free of hemoglobin, is roughly 4 days. Hemoglobin–haptoglobin complexes are removed from the circulation within minutes by the reticuloendothelial system, where the hemoglobin is broken down into globin and heme, which further degrades to iron and bilirubin. Haptoglobin–hemoglobin complexes bind to the CD163 monocyte/macrophage scavenger receptor for removal from the circulation by endocytosis (Buehler et al, 2009). When the hemoglobin-binding capacity of haptoglobin is exceeded, free hemoglobin enters the glomerular filtrate as α-chain–β-chain dimers that are subsequently reabsorbed in the proximal renal tubules and converted to hemosiderin.

Haptoglobin has two heavy chains and two light chains linked by disulfide bonds in analogy to the basic structure of immunoglobulins. Some persons have a light chain gene that is duplicated in a head-to-tail arrangement (Type 2). Normal haptoglobin (Type 1-1) gives rise to a single molecular species of molecular weight 100,000. Heterozygous individuals (1-2) have, in addition to Type 1-1 haptoglobin, a series of multimers (e.g., dimers, trimers) by virtue of intermolecular disulfide linkages through the duplicated light chain. Type 2-2 haptoglobin consists of a different series of multimers, because the Type 2 light chain has a different molecular weight from the Type 1 light chain (Konigsberg, 1974). These different forms of haptoglobin can be distinguished by high-resolution electrophoresis (Fig. 19-5).

Haptoglobin can be quantitated in terms of its hemoglobin-binding capacity or by immunologic means, especially nephelometry. Owing to steric hindrance between molecular sites on the multimers, the different phenotypes of haptoglobin yield measurements of antigen- or hemoglobin-binding capacity that may be discrepant with the absolute amount of haptoglobin protein present in a sample. Accordingly, the reference range for haptoglobin is broader for an entire population of different phenotypes than within individual phenotypes. For this reason, interpretation of haptoglobin concentrations is soundest for serial measurements in the same individual. However, very high levels can readily be distinguished from very low ones, which can be important in the first-time evaluation of a patient for hemolysis. Congenital deficiency of haptoglobin appears not to have clinical consequences (Manoharan, 1997).

In diabetes mellitus, patients with Type 2-2 haptoglobin have shown higher risk for vascular complications, perhaps owing to different ability to clear hemoglobin, thus leading to altered iron handling and heightened oxidative load (Van Vlierberghe et al, 2004; Levy et al, 2010).

Serum haptoglobin rises in response to stress, infection, acute inflammation, or tissue necrosis, probably by stimulation of synthesis (see later under Acute Phase Reactants). After a hemolytic episode, haptoglobin concentrations fall as the complexes with hemoglobin are cleared from the circulation. This effect is dramatic following massive hemolysis in situations of hemolytic transfusion reaction, thermal burns, or autoimmune hemolytic anemia. It is also a useful measurement for serially monitoring patients who have a slow but steady rate of red cell breakdown such as by mechanical heart valves, hemoglobinopathies, or exercise-associated trauma. Low haptoglobin concentrations may accompany liver disease when hepatic synthetic capacity is impaired. There are also individuals with congenital deficiency of haptoglobin who apparently use other mechanisms to conserve body iron stores. Serum samples from blood hemolyzed in vitro during phlebotomy or processing show a displaced band of haptoglobin–hemoglobin complex on protein electrophoresis.

It should be noted that myoglobin does not bind to haptoglobin; therefore, release of large amounts of myoglobin by rhabdomyolysis does not diminish haptoglobin levels in serum. This difference can be useful in the workup of a positive dipstick test for blood (actually a test for pseudoperoxidase activity of heme in hemoglobin or myoglobin) in urine with no coexisting red cells. In this case, low serum haptoglobin suggests hemoglobinuria (hemolysis), whereas high serum haptoglobin suggests myoglobinuria. Lactate dehydrogenase (LD) isoenzyme 1 in serum is also associated with hemolysis, whereas LD5 and creatine kinase are released in rhabdomyolysis.

β-Lipoprotein

β-Lipoprotein (low-density lipoprotein [LDL]) migrates with a characteristic sharp leading cathodal edge and feathery trailing region more anodally. Although it is better quantitated by stains for lipid, apoprotein content is sufficient to be a distinct band on staining for protein. The exact position of the β-lipoprotein band is sensitive to recent ingestion of fatty foods; thus samples from fasting versus postprandial collections will show the β-lipoprotein in slightly different positions. The other lipoproteins (very-low-density lipoprotein, high-density lipoprotein, and chylomicrons) are relatively small in intensity, and they occur in overlapping electrophoretic positions with other serum proteins, so these fractions generally are not appreciated on protein stain. Administration of heparin activates postheparin lipoprotein lipase, which degrades triglycerides in the circulating lipoprotein fractions. Consequently, heparinized patients transiently demonstrate an anomalous band of β-lipoprotein that can migrate very rapidly and unevenly across the electrophoretic path, even into the prealbumin region. Elevations of LDL, with greater staining intensity to the β-lipoprotein band, occur in hypercholesterolemia. Lipoproteins are discussed more thoroughly in Chapter 17.

Transferrin

The major β-globulin is transferrin (siderophilin), which transports ferric ions from the iron stores of intracellular or mucosal ferritin to bone marrow, where erythrocyte precursors and lymphocytes have transferrin receptors on their surfaces (Irie & Tavassoli, 1987).

Transferrin consists of 687 amino acids with a calculated molecular weight of 79,550 Da (MacGillivray et al, 1982). Analysis of the amino acid sequence shows that transferrin has two homologous domains that may have arisen by contiguous duplication of an ancestral transferrin gene. Each domain has a binding site with very high affinity for iron. Transcription of mRNA for transferrin synthesis in the liver is regulated by the concentration of iron in the circulation and surrounding the hepatocytes.

In normal serum, transferrin ranges in concentration from 200 to 400 mg/dL, which is conveniently measured as iron-binding capacity (IBC) (Tsung et al, 1975). In response to short-term iron deficiency,

http://basicbook.net

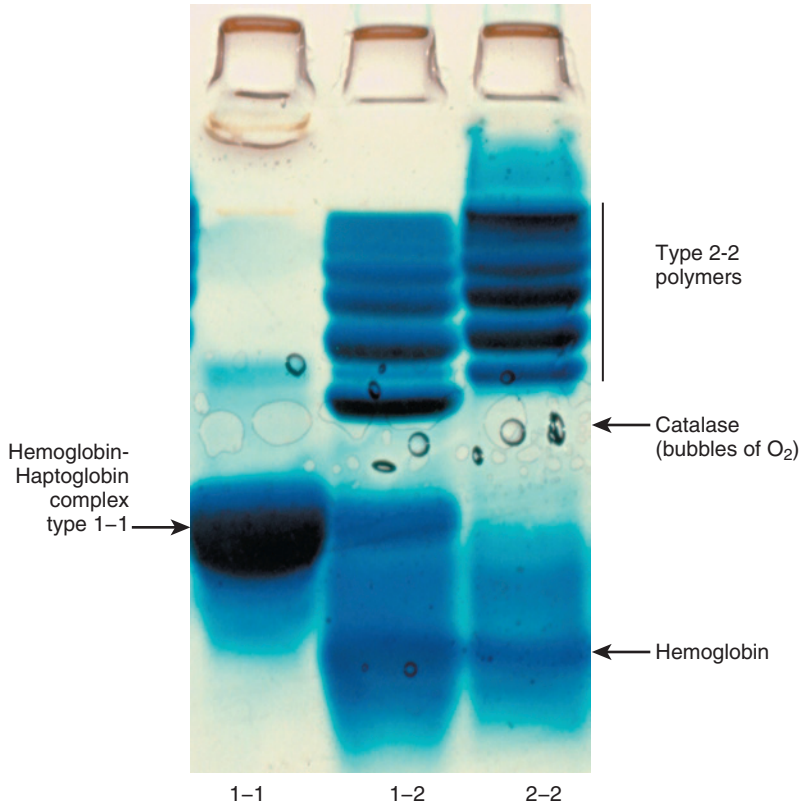


Figure 19-5 Phenotyping of haptoglobin. Patient serum specimens were mixed with free hemoglobin from erythrocytes lysed in vitro and electrophoresed in a polyacrylamide gel with high resolution of different molecular weight proteins. After electrophoresis, the gel was developed in a solution of substrate 3,3′,5,5′-tetramethylbenzidine and hydrogen peroxide. Hemoglobin exhibits pseudoperoxidase activity that converts substrate to a blue product wherever it has migrated, including complexes with haptoglobin. Bubbles of oxygen formed in the gel at the location of catalase, which is also present in the lysate. Type 1-1 haptoglobin *(arrow in left lane)* migrated deeply into the gel *(from top to bottom),* although unbound hemoglobin migrated even farther. Type 2-2 haptoglobin showed no band in the 1-1 position but migrated as a series of high molecular weight polymers, each binding hemoglobin *(bar next to right lane).* Type 1-2 haptoglobin *(middle lane)* showed a minor band of 1-1 plus a series of high molecular weight polymers different from the bands observed with 2-2.

transferrin levels rise markedly to twice normal levels or higher. Because transferrin is a single molecular species with a tight electrophoretic mobility, an elevated level can have the appearance of a paraprotein (pseudoparaproteinemia) in cases of severe iron deficiency (Zawadzki, 1970). At least some iron deficiency and elevation of transferrin should be expected with pregnancy (Mendenhall, 1970). Administration of iron to deficient patients increases saturation; this is followed by return of transferrin to normal.

Chronic saturation of transferrin occurs in idiopathic hemochromatosis and transfusional hemosiderosis. Because almost no unsaturated IBC is found in those syndromes, iron cannot be mobilized normally for excretion, resulting in excess deposition in tissues that is toxic. Current strategies to screen for hemochromatosis include measurement of serum iron and serum transferrin (usually by nephelometric immunoassay), with the calculation of percent saturation as the best index for identifying previously unrecognized cases. Hemochromatosis is a hereditary disorder that results in cirrhosis, diabetes, cardiomyopathy, arthritis, and other endocrine disorders owing to the toxic effects of excess free iron. Screening for hemochromatosis is desirable because disease progression can be halted by lowering the body burden of iron by such means as phlebotomy or chelation therapy.

Transferrin may also demonstrate an antibacterial effect by complexing iron and removing it from bacteria that require iron for growth (Reddy et al, 1970; Weinberg, 1978). Congenital deficiency of transferrin (atransferrinemia) is a rare disorder characterized by microcytic anemia and iron overload (Aslan et al, 2007). In protein-losing nephropathy of sufficient severity, transferrin is lost from the circulation into the urine, carrying iron with it. This loss may contribute to the development of hypochromic anemia.

Electrophoretic variants of transferrin occur occasionally in serum owing to allotypic variation in the amino acid sequence and thus have a different charge on the molecule. In this case, the heterozygous state shows a doublet in place of a single electrophoretic band for transferrin (Kamboh & Ferrell, 1987).

Transferrin is a glycoprotein in which various sugar molecules are added to newly synthesized protein molecules in the liver. Persons who engage in heavy alcohol consumption demonstrate abnormal carbohydrate-deficient transferrin (CDT) in their serum (Stibler, 1991). These aberrant molecules of disialo- and asialotransferrin as opposed to normally glycosylated tetrasialotransferrin may be due to failure of glycosyltransferases in hepatocytes, to increased sialidase activity in serum, or to a combination of the two (Xin et al, 1995). CDT can be detected by anion-exchange chromatography or isoelectric focusing of isoforms in serum followed by immunoblotting. Other methods include HPLC, capillary zone electrophoresis, mass spectrometry, and turbidimetric immunoassay (Bean et al, 2001). Although CDT is generally considered to be a highly specific marker for chronic alcohol abuse (Arndt, 2001), false negatives can occur in women, in nonsmokers, and in persons who have a high body mass index (both overweight and obese) (Whitfield et al, 2008).

A variant of transferrin has been recognized in CSF (Zaret et al, 1992), aqueous and vitreous humor of the eye (Tripathi et al, 1990), and perilymph of the ear (Thalmann et al, 1994). Chemically, it lacks sialic acid in glycosylation compared with the transferrin found in plasma (Hoffmann et al, 1995); it is called asialotransferrin, τ protein, or β_2-transferrin, which has slightly different electrophoretic migration (toward the cathode), because it carries less negative charge than plasma transferrin (Blennow & Fredman, 1995). CSF contains both forms of plasma transferrin and asialotransferrin, whereas plasma contains only one form. Consequently, detection of asialotransferrin in fluid from a fistula or drainage is presumptive evidence for the presence of CSF in cases of skull fracture or other head trauma with nasal drainage (Solomon et al, 1999), or for the presence of perilymph in fistula fluid from otologic procedures such as cochlear implants (Delaroche et al, 1996). Asialotransferrin reacts immunologically as transferrin, so it can be readily detected by immunoblotting following electrophoresis (Roelandse et al, 1998). This procedure is easily done by adapting commercially available agarose gel electrophoresis systems already used in many laboratories for direct immunofixation of immunoglobulins (Normansell et al, 1994); using an antitransferrin antibody

http://basicbook.net

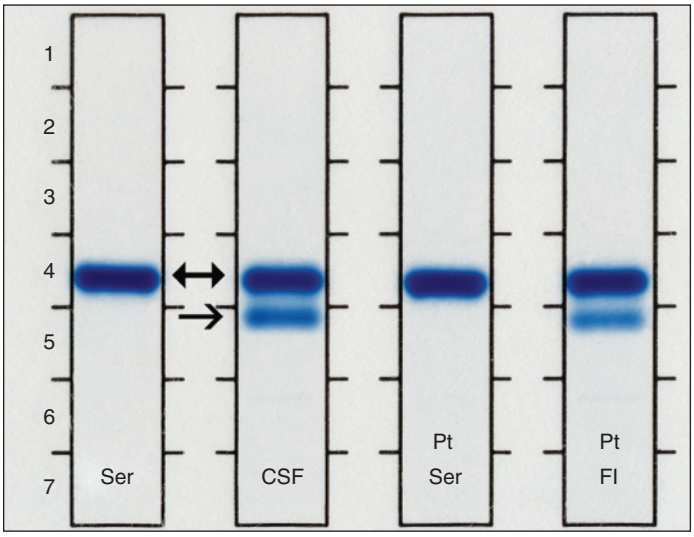


Figure 19-6 Immunofixation with transferrin antibody to test for presence of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). *Ser,* Normal serum showing position of transferrin (Tf; *double-headed arrow*); *CSF,* normal position of Tf and asialotransferrin (aTf, *single-headed arrow*); *Pt Ser,* patient serum included to rule out electrophoretic variant of Tf; *Pt Fl,* unknown fluid from patient demonstrating bands of both Tf and aTf that confirm the presence of CSF in that fluid.

demonstrates a single band of transferrin in serum samples, but two bands if the specimen contains CSF (Fig. 19-6). It is necessary to include serum in addition to test fluid from the patient to rule out allelic variants of transferrin that could cause false positives if not recognized (Sloman & Kelly, 1993). The presence of CSF in drainage fluid may require surgical repair or antibiotic therapy, so detection of asialotransferrin as a marker for CSF can have a substantial clinical impact.

Complement

A separate fraction of β-globulin consists of the C3 component of complement. Although this protein can be resolved easily with a fresh serum sample, in stored specimens and commercial control serum that has been lyophilized, C3 is cleaved to form C3c, which migrates anodally to native C3 as a band nondistinct from other β-globulins. Depression of C3 occurs in autoimmune disorders when the complement system is activated and C3 becomes bound to immune complexes deposited in tissues, thereby removing them from plasma. Thus C3 (and also C4) concentration is a convenient marker for assessing disease activity in rheumatic disorders such as lupus erythematosus and rheumatoid arthritis. C4 is not appreciated on serum protein electrophoresis because its concentration is normally only about one-fifth that of C3. Both C3 and C4 are now easily quantitated by nephelometry for monitoring rheumatic disease activity. No particular diagnostic significance is ascribed to higher than normal levels of C3 or C4, except as mild indicators of an acute phase response. The complement system and its inhibitors are discussed further in Chapter 47.

Fibrinogen

Plasma contains 100 to 400 mg/dL of fibrinogen, which is the most abundant of the coagulation factors and which forms the fibrin clot. With an overall molecular weight of 340,000 Da, fibrinogen is a dimer consisting of three pairs of peptide chains (A-α, B-β, and γ) linked with multiple disulfide bonds near their amino-terminal ends (Doolittle, 1975; Doolittle et al, 2001). This region of the molecule is termed the *E domain* or *disulfide knot*. The chains extend outward into two other identical domains (D) at their carboxyl ends, where all three chains are intertwined. Thrombin cleaves fibrinopeptides A and B from the amino ends of the A-α and B-β chains, thereby resulting in a fibrin monomer that polymerizes into fibrils that macroscopically form a fibrin clot. Factor XIII then produces covalent bonds between lysine and glutamine residues on adjacent γ-chains of different fibrin molecules, making the fibrin clot essentially a single molecule. A cross-linked clot is refractory to dissolution by chemical denaturants and is mechanically very stable.

Numerous hereditary variants of fibrinogen (dysfibrinogenemias) have been identified, in which a functionally abnormal fibrinogen molecule is synthesized with altered amino acid sequence owing to genetic mutation. Some dysfibrinogenemias exhibit impairment of clotting and a

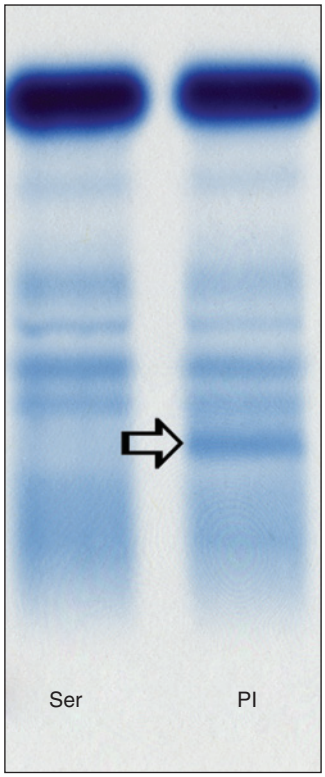


Figure 19-7 Comparison of serum (Ser) and citrated plasma (Pl) from the same individual demonstrates the position of fibrinogen *(arrow)* in plasma that should not be confused with a monoclonal immunoglobulin.

hemorrhagic diathesis, whereas others show increased tendency to thrombosis (Menache, 1973). Congenital afibrinogenemia, in which essentially no fibrinogen is synthesized, results in a hemorrhagic disorder that paradoxically is not as severe as the hemophilias in terms of joint abnormalities secondary to hemorrhage (hemarthroses).

Fibrinogen levels become elevated with the other acute phase reactants, occasionally to over 1.0 g/L. In such instances, the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) is also markedly elevated owing to fibrinogen content directly. Fibrinogen levels also rise with pregnancy and use of contraceptive medications. Low levels generally indicate extensive activation of coagulation with consumption of fibrinogen. During this process, plasminogen is also activated into plasmin, which degrades fibrin and fibrinogen into split products that are measured for the assessment of intravascular coagulation. Normally, clots that form are removed by the action of plasmin, which, in turn, is inactivated by antiplasmin and the other protease inhibitors.

Fibrinogen is absent from normal serum but should appear in plasma electrophoresis as a distinct band between the β- and γ-globulins (Fig. 19-7). Not infrequently, blood drawn from heparinized patients does not fully clot, so a fibrinogen band is present on electrophoresis. It can be distinguished by examining the specimen for a fine clot and by repeat electrophoresis of a thoroughly clotted sample. This maneuver is important to distinguish a residual fibrinogen band from a monoclonal spike of immunoglobulin that can migrate in the same electrophoretic position.

MINOR COMPONENTS

The next group of individual proteins consists of those that are not usually detected by standard protein electrophoresis owing to low levels in serum. Their quantitation is typically performed by immunologic methods.

Ceruloplasmin

Migrating with the α_2-globulins is a copper-binding protein, ceruloplasmin, which contains most of the copper in plasma and exhibits ferroxidase activity that is important in iron metabolism (Hellman & Gitlin, 2002). Synthesized in the liver, it has a molecular weight of 132,000 Da and consists of a single polypeptide chain. Although lower at birth (Al-Rashid & Spangler, 1971), serum levels are 20 to 40 mg/dL in normal adults, with twofold elevations found in oral contraceptive therapy and pregnancy (Burrows & Pekala, 1971) or as an acute phase reactant. Each molecule of

http://basicbook.net

ceruloplasmin can bind six atoms of copper, which imparts a blue color to the protein. The combination of this blue with the yellow from other chromogens of plasma imparts a greenish color to plasma with elevated ceruloplasmin concentrations (Schenker et al, 1971); this green appearance is frequently noted in bags of plasma donated for transfusions. Iron is oxidized from ferrous to ferric ions by ceruloplasmin, which may be a means of releasing iron from ferritin for binding to transferrin (Roeser et al, 1970).

Wilson's disease (hepatolenticular degeneration) results from disordered copper metabolism, in which hepatic excretion of copper into the bile is impaired, leading to toxic deposition of copper in tissues. Normal metabolism of copper includes incorporation by the liver into ceruloplasmin (about six to seven copper atoms per molecule), which is then secreted into the plasma. In Wilson's disease, this process is impaired, and copper that has been absorbed by the body and transported to the liver fails to reenter the circulation as part of ceruloplasmin. Normal excretion of copper through the bile is diminished, with an overall increase in body copper deposits that are toxic to liver, brain, cornea, kidneys, bones, and parathyroids. Diagnosis is usually made in childhood or adolescence, when damage to the liver is first noticed. Other affected persons may present later in life when neurologic changes also occur. Treatment is long-term chelation with penicillamine or, in severe cases, liver transplantation, which may be curative.

Diagnosis of Wilson's disease is based on physical findings (liver disease, neurologic signs, Kayser-Fleischer ring in the cornea), measurement of low serum ceruloplasmin level, and increased copper concentrations in urine and on liver biopsy. The oxidase activity of ceruloplasmin can be used in a colorimetric assay, with *p*-phenylenediamine as substrate, for quantitation. Additionally, immunochemical methods are used, because the band is too faint to be used reliably on protein electrophoresis. Because no single clinical or laboratory finding is sufficient to make the diagnosis of Wilson's disease, a combination of them is necessary (Ferenci, 2004). Mutations in the ceruloplasmin gene leading to aceruloplasminemia result in iron overload affecting the pancreas, liver, and brain with a spectrum of neurologic disease (McNeill et al, 2008).

Gc-Globulin

Vitamin D binds to the group-specific component (Gc)-globulin (vitamin D–binding protein [DBP]) (Daiger et al, 1975; Bikle et al, 1986), which migrates as an α_1-globulin and has a molecular weight of about 51,000 Da. Normal serum concentration is 20 to 55 mg/dL. It may be decreased in severe liver disease. Gc-globulin has two autosomal codominant alleles expressed as three phenotypes: 1-1, 2-2, and 1-2 (Giblett, 1969). Congenital absence of this protein may be a lethal mutation, owing to impairment of vitamin D transport, because vitamin D has low solubility in aqueous media. Gc-globulin binds vitamin D and its metabolites on a mole-per-mole basis, but in plasma, it probably is not fully saturated. Nephrotic syndrome results in urinary loss of DBP, some of which is complexed with vitamin D. This loss of vitamin D may contribute to subsequent problems of calcium metabolism encountered in nephrotic syndrome (Goldstein et al, 1981). As a minor component of plasma proteins, Gc-globulin can be quantitated by radioimmunoassay, radioimmunodiffusion, or rocket immunoelectrophoresis (Walsh & Haddad, 1982; Westwood & Werrett, 1986). More recent studies with immunonephelometry have shown lower levels of Gc-globulin in trauma patients who develop organ dysfunction and sepsis (Dahl et al, 2003). Plasma concentrations of 25-hydroxyvitamin D are affected by polymorphisms of the vitamin D–binding protein (Sinotte et al, 2009) presumably caused by varying levels of this protein associated with the different phenotypes (Lauridsen et al, 2001).

Hemopexin

The β-migrating globulin hemopexin binds heme released by degradation of hemoglobin (Muller-Eberhard, 1970). By this means, this small porphyrin molecule with its iron atom is protected from excretion, thereby contributing to the preservation of body iron stores. Among plasma proteins, hemopexin has the strongest binding affinity for heme, which probably helps to limit the toxicity of free heme (Tolosano & Altruda, 2002). Normal serum concentration is 50 to 120 mg/dL, so it must be quantitated by immunologic means. It has a molecular weight of 70,000 Da, of which 20% is carbohydrate and consists of a single polypeptide chain. Although low levels of hemopexin can occur with nonspecific urinary loss or as the result of decreased synthesis in liver failure, the most profound decreases occur following intravascular hemolysis, when the amount of free hemoglobin exceeds the binding capacity of haptoglobin. The circulating plasma hemoglobin can then degrade to release heme, which is bound molecule per molecule by hemopexin. Heme–hemopexin complexes are cleared from the circulation by hepatocytes, which markedly lower hemopexin concentration in serum. Excess heme then binds to albumin as methemalbumin. As more hemopexin is made available by new synthesis, heme passes from methemalbumin to hemopexin, which continues to depress the hemopexin level. As such, this can be an additional aid for diagnosing hemolysis at an earlier time, after haptoglobin levels have returned to normal but before full clearance of the heme (Wochner et al, 1974). Hemopexin can also be decreased in porphyrias and in rhabdomyolysis and chronic neuromuscular disease (Delanghe & Langlois, 2001).

α_1-Acid Glycoprotein

This protein, also known as orosomucoid, has a very high carbohydrate content, which minimizes its visualization by standard protein stains (Alvan, 1986). With a molecular weight of roughly 44,000 Da, it passes into the glomerular filtrate to a large extent, resulting in a half-life of only about 5 days in the circulation. Serum levels are normally 40 to 105 mg/dL, with elevations during pregnancy (Schmid, 1975). It is an acute phase reactant, but its biologic function is not known. As a binder of progesterone, it may be important in the transport or metabolism of that steroid hormone. It also binds some drugs (e.g., lidocaine) and keeps them in an inactive circulating pool. Measurements of this protein have clinical utility in interpreting levels of drugs, such as lidocaine, that may achieve high serum concentrations without expected therapeutic effect owing to being complexed in inactive form to higher than normal amounts of α_1-acid glycoprotein. Some genetic polymorphisms of this protein may be additionally complicated by isomorphic forms from specific tissue sources, although the primary site of its synthesis appears to be the liver. Although measurements of this protein have not been widely employed, its ability to bind various drugs such as the tyrosine kinase inhibitor STI571 (Gleevec, used in chronic myeloid leukemia) has led to concerns over possible drug-refractory states through binding and drug inactivation (Jorgensen et al, 2002; Le Coutre et al, 2002).

C-Reactive Protein

This serum constituent was discovered by mixing the serum of patients who had recovered from pneumococcal infections with C-polysaccharide of that bacterium. Visible flocculates formed, which allowed extensive study and purification of the C-reactive protein (CRP) from serum in the 1940s. It was found that CRP is present in the serum of patients with disorders other than pneumococcal infection but that it rises strikingly whenever there is tissue necrosis. Many other substances react with CRP, such as DNA, nucleotides, various lipids, and other polysaccharides (Hokama, 1982). Thus it appears to serve as a general scavenger molecule. Its molecular weight is between 118,000 and 144,000 Da, with substantial carbohydrate content. The normal serum concentrations are about 100 ng/mL at birth, 170 ng/mL in children, and 470 to 1340 ng/mL in adults. Despite these low concentrations, CRP has major significance as a highly sensitive acute phase reactant (Deodhar, 1989). It is generally measured by its capacity to precipitate C-substance or by immunologic methods, including nephelometry, precipitations, RIA, and enzyme immunoassay (Saxstad et al, 1970; Claus et al, 1976). By electrophoresis, CRP is a γ-migrating protein that may form a minor but distinct monoclonal-appearing band in patients having a severe inflammatory response. CRP levels are sometimes used as a rapid test for presumptive diagnosis of bacterial infection (high CRP) versus viral infection (low CRP) (Clyne & Olshaker, 1999). CRP is often used by rheumatologists to monitor the progression or remission of autoimmune disease. The gene for CRP has been localized to human chromosome 1 (Whitehead et al, 1983). Recent epidemiologic studies have shown that a high-sensitivity assay for CRP can add to the predictive value of serum lipids for identifying individuals at risk of cardiovascular events, presumably owing to the role that inflammation plays in atherogenesis (Ridker et al, 2000). Persons with high normal CRP concentrations are at greater risk for stroke or myocardial infarction than those with low normal values (discussed in greater detail in Chapter 18).

Serial measurements of CRP over a 14-month period in a test subject undergoing personal omics profiling showed marked elevations of CRP corresponding to periods of infection with two different viruses: human rhinovirus and respiratory syncytial virus. This intense profiling demonstrated the continuing utility of CRP for assessing inflammatory responses (Chen et al, 2012).

PROTEASE INHIBITORS

In addition to α_1-antitrypsin and α_2-macroglobulin, which have already been considered, other distinct inhibitors of different proteases are present

http://basicbook.net

in plasma. They include α_1-antichymotrypsin (AAC) (Berninger, 1985b), inter-α-trypsin inhibitor (IATI) (Daniels, 1975), antithrombin III (AT3), antiplasmin, C1 esterase inhibitor (Prograis et al, 1985), protein C (Stenflo, 1984), and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1) (Nilsson & Tengborn, 1984). None of these proteins attains plasma concentrations appreciable on stained protein electrophoresis. Whereas the other inhibitors show inhibition over a rather wide range of proteases, AAC is highly specific for neutralizing chymotrypsin, which cleaves peptide bonds at the carboxyl side of tyrosine and phenylalanine residues. AAC has a molecular weight of 68,000 Da, with about 25% carbohydrate content. Normal serum concentration is 40 to 60 mg/dL, but AAC can rise rapidly to five times normal as an acute phase reactant that remains elevated throughout a period of inflammation (Kosaka & Tazawa, 1976). AAC complexes with prostate-specific antigen, measured as the bound form of PSA by immunoassay (see Chapter 74). It can be lost along with other low molecular weight serum proteins in the proteinuria of nephrotic syndrome.

IATI is a glycoprotein of molecular weight 160,000 Da. Its concentration normally is about 50 mg/dL. IATI does not rise appreciably as an acute phase reactant. Its role in disease states is probably similar to that of the major protease inhibitors in preventing autodigestion of tissues by endogenous cellular enzymes (Daniels, 1975).

AT3 is of special clinical interest because of the role it plays in neutralizing thrombin, which normally becomes activated intravascularly from prothrombin during clot formation. This 62,000-Da protein forms a covalently bonded complex with thrombin over a period of several minutes when mixed in solution. On addition of heparin, the complex formation occurs almost instantaneously (Rosenberg, 1975; Rosenberg et al, 1985; Rosenberg & Bauer, 1987). Although AT3 is probably essential for successful therapeutic administration of heparin, only those rare individuals with marked deficiencies seem to have thrombotic disorders (Carvalho & Ellman, 1976). The action of AT3 extends to other coagulation factors (IX, X, XI, XII, and kallikrein). Serum levels of AT3 may be depressed in severe liver disease or in protein-losing disorders when the similar-sized molecule albumin is lost and also in disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC). A new experimental protocol for treating DIC involves replacing AT3 by infusion of concentrates when the patient's AT3 level falls to very low concentrations as part of the consumptive coagulopathy. Presumably, return to normal levels of AT3 has the effect of blocking further thrombosis systemically. AT3 levels are lower in heparin therapy and slightly elevated in oral anticoagulant therapy owing to increased and reduced turnover, respectively.

Although AAT, AMG, and AT3 provide the bulk of plasmin-neutralizing activity in serum (Harpel & Rosenberg, 1976), a distinct antiplasmin migrates as an α_2-globulin (Lijnen & Collen, 1985). This cross-reactivity of serum protease inhibitors for plasmin illustrates the difficulty in sorting out the precise physiologic function of each molecular species, because each one appears capable of substituting for another in different instances. However, antiplasmin binds quantitatively to the majority of plasmin that is generated from plasminogen in human plasma that undergoes clotting. Antiplasmin thus serves as one of the critical checks within the joint coagulation–fibrinolytic system, which maintains hemostasis by balancing clot formation against dissolution. By this mechanism, clot formation and breakdown are generally contained within local regions of the vasculature without extending to the entire circulation. Hereditary deficiency of antiplasmin results in a bleeding disorder due to relatively unlimited fibrinolysis.

PAI-1 acts to prevent activation of plasminogen, thereby blocking fibrinolysis at an early step. Deficiency of PAI-1 results in less inhibition, leading to greater fibrinolysis and potentially a bleeding disorder. Elevated levels of PAI-1 prevent fibrinolysis, leading to thrombotic disorders and to the progression of atherosclerosis. Protein C (with its cofactor protein S) inactivates activated coagulation factors V and VIII. Deficiency of protein C or S (Griffin et al, 1987) allows prolonged activity in vivo of procoagulant factors, leading to thrombotic disorders.

The C1 esterase inhibitor is capable of inhibiting activated complement components C1r and C1s, plus some other coagulation and fibrinolytic factors. It rises as an acute phase reactant. Hereditary deficiency of C1 esterase inhibitor allows activation of complement to proceed relatively unabated, a disorder termed *hereditary angioedema*. The complement system and its inhibitors are described in depth in Chapter 47.

ACUTE PHASE REACTANTS

The acute phase reactant proteins share the property of showing elevations in concentrations in response to stressful or inflammatory states that occur with infection, injury, surgery, trauma, or other tissue necrosis (Daniels et al, 1974; Laurell & Jeppsson, 1975; Dowton & Colten, 1988). They include AAT, α_1-acid glycoprotein, haptoglobin, ceruloplasmin, fibrinogen, serum amyloid A protein, and CRP. Others are factor VIII, ferritin, lipoproteins, complement proteins, and immunoglobulins. It is easy to see how such a response of the plasma proteins would be advantageous to the body: Inflammation causes release from leukocytes of proteolytic enzymes in tissue that must be neutralized by enzyme inhibitors to limit their extent of destruction; scavenger proteins (haptoglobin, CRP) help collect and transport cellular debris and breakdown products to phagocytic cells (reticuloendothelial system) to process them and conserve vital substances (e.g., iron); and healing of wounds requires a large amount of fibrin, which arrives via the circulation as fibrinogen. Thus the humoral response of the acute phase reactants can be viewed as a phenomenon that is geared to handle extensive insult each time it is triggered, even though not all components will be needed on every occasion. The elevation of acute phase reactants is likely a response to the cytokines, including interleukin-1, tumor necrosis factor, interferon-γ, and interleukin-6. The total physiologic response includes induction of fever, recruitment of leukocytes, catabolism of muscle, and a shift in protein synthesis patterns with reduction in albumin production.

For clinical use in diagnosis, other parameters in fact may be as sensitive as these and far easier to measure (e.g., fever, leukocytosis, ESR). However, these proteins provide another dimension of quantitation that can be useful for monitoring the course of a patient by serial determinations (Van Oss et al, 1975). Of course, those patients with congenital deficiencies (Gitlin & Gitlin, 1975), those with other impairment of synthesis due to drugs or organ disease, and newborns who normally have lower levels of many constituents (Gitlin & Biasucci, 1969) may not show the dramatic increases expected. However, a generally useful acute phase reactant for monitoring response is CRP, which is the fastest-rising acute phase reactant and one that returns to normal quickly following successful therapies (Fischer et al, 1976). CRP is frequently applied to the detection and preliminary classification of occult infections, because bacterial infections can stimulate much higher levels of CRP than viral ones. It is also widely used for assessing disease activity in autoimmune disorders, because it is rarely elevated persistently without continued inflammatory response. Elevations of CRP can be up to 1000 times normal levels, which greatly assists in detecting abnormal states compared with the other acute phase reactants, which may rise at most only several-fold in such responses, although ferritin levels may occasionally rise to values greater than 20,000 ng/mL.

PATTERNS OF PROTEIN ABNORMALITIES

Some of the most frequently encountered patterns of protein abnormalities in electrophoresis are shown as densitometric scans in Figure 19-8. Scanning allows quantitation of each fraction, but visual inspection of the electrophoretic strip provides more detailed information about individual proteins separated in high-resolution systems (Ritzman & Daniels, 1975). Interpretation of electrophoretic results depends on visual inspection to identify abnormal patterns or aberrant bands and on quantitation by scan to gauge the relative quantities of individual fractions.

Patterns of hypoproteinemia due to malnutrition or gross loss of protein show decreases in all fractions, but the most dramatic reduction is often seen in albumin compared with its normally high value as the most abundant serum protein (Fig. 19-9, lane 3). Severe starvation, malabsorption, or inanition associated with severe chronic disease will show marked reduction in albumin to levels below 20 g/L. The other serum proteins, including AAT, AMG, haptoglobin, transferrin, and C3, appear even fainter on electrophoresis. Reduction in staining intensity for the β-lipoprotein parallels a marked decrease in serum cholesterol concentration. The immune system is strongly affected by severe starvation, with decreased synthesis of immunoglobulins resulting in hypogammaglobulinemia and impaired resistance to bacterial and other infections. Protein-losing enteropathy (Fig. 19-8, *H*) shows a variation in the hypoproteinemia pattern, in which most fractions are diminished owing to the combination of decreased synthesis and increased loss, although α_2 may be relatively higher owing to a coexisting acute phase response (haptoglobin) or to preferential retention of larger molecules (α_2-macroglobulin).

Specific loss of proteins into the urine as in nephrotic syndrome occurs on a molecular weight basis, with smaller proteins being lost more rapidly than larger ones. Accordingly, albumin appears early in the course of protein-losing nephropathies, followed by smaller quantities of AAT, transferrin, and, ultimately, immunoglobulins (Fig. 19-10, lanes 1 and 2). The very large molecule AMG is retained, as are the large micelles of β-lipoprotein. The result is complementary patterns of proteins in the

http://basicbook.net

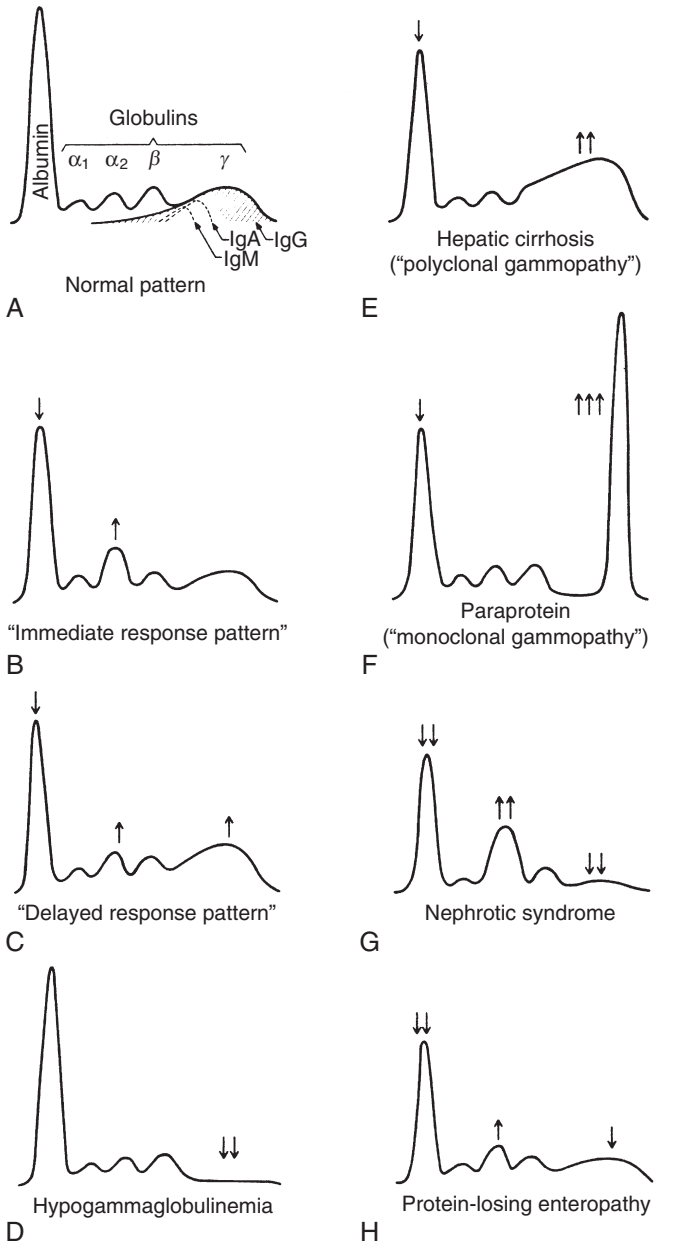


Figure 19-8 **Serum protein electrophoresis: clinicopathalogic correlations.** (Courtesy of Dr. A. E. Krieg.)

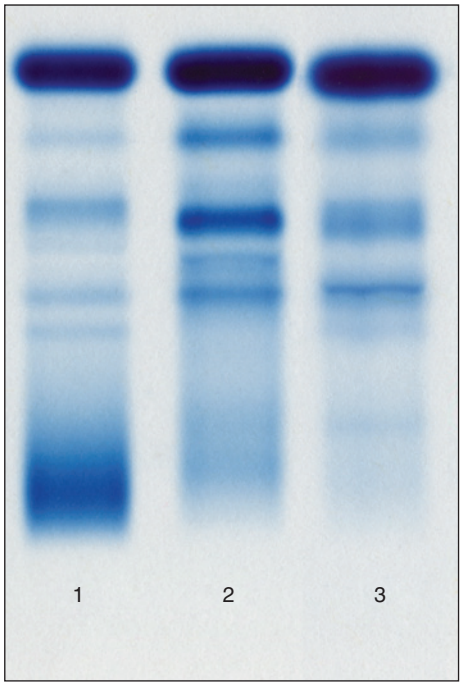


Figure 19-9 Serum protein patterns in (1) chronic inflammation with decreased albumin and increased γ-globulins; (2) acute inflammation with increased α_2-fraction (haptoglobin) and decreased C3 due to activation and consumption of complement; and (3) inanition post–spinal cord injury with hypoproteinemia of several fractions.

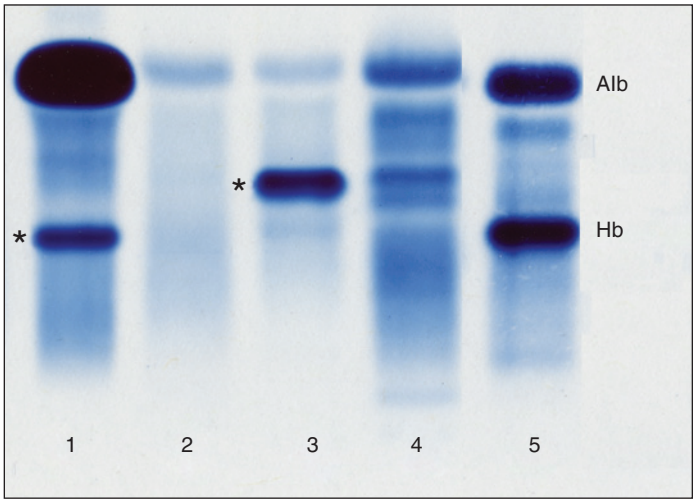


Figure 19-10 **Patterns of urine protein electrophoresis in different disorders.** (1) Severe glomerular proteinuria with a major band of albumin plus a secondary one of transferrin (*). (2) Trace proteinuria with a faint band of albumin and other diffuse proteins. (3) Immunoglobulin light chains in a case of multiple myeloma (*). (4) Tubular proteinuria with multiple bands that do not correspond to major serum proteins. (5) Hematuria with a major band of hemoglobin (not to be confused with monoclonal gammopathy), in addition to albumin.

serum (decreases in albumin and α_1-, β-, and γ-globulins; increased α_2-macroglobulin and elevated β-lipoprotein) versus those in urine (see Fig. 19-4, *B*) (glomerular proteinuria with albumin, α_1-, β-, and γ-fractions present but without α_2-macroglobulin in the urine sample). Tubular proteinuria that is due to impaired renal tubular reabsorption of small proteins shows a pattern of α, β, and γ in the urine with only minimal albumin loss into the urine (Killingsworth, 1982) (see Fig. 19-10, lane 4). In addition to glomerular and tubular patterns of proteinuria (Maachi et al, 2004), it is important to recognize the important pattern of a monoclonal gammopathy in urine (see Fig. 19-10, lane 3, and Fig. 19-11). A similar pattern of a single large band occurs in hemoglobinuria (see Fig. 19-10, lane 5), which must be distinguished from a monoclonal immunoglobulin or free light chains.

Acute phase or immediate response patterns have the greatest effect on serum protein electrophoresis by increasing the amount of haptoglobin, while slightly decreasing the concentration of albumin. Increases in haptoglobin usually indicate some form of response, whether acute or chronic, to stressful stimuli (see Fig. 19-9). Other proteins such as AAT can contribute to this response; minor components such as CRP do not contribute significantly to this protein stain pattern, although immunologic measurement of CRP may show up to 1000-fold elevations. If the haptoglobin has been depleted in a patient as a result of active hemolysis, an independent band of hemoglobin may be migrating in the β- or α_2-region. Hemolysis of a sample in vitro may show a red band (on the unstained gel) of the haptoglobin–hemoglobin complex that migrates differently from hemoglobin alone. The pattern of delayed response or chronic pattern is an extension of the acute phase response (high haptoglobin, slight reduction in albumin) with greater decrease in albumin and polyclonal increase in immunoglobulins broadening the γ-region.

A striking elevation of transferrin in the β-region sometimes occurs in patients suffering from iron deficiency anemia. The increase in transferrin corresponds to increased IBC, and the percent saturation is low (Koerper & Dallman, 1977). This variation may be confused with a myeloma protein because the transferrin band forms a narrow, clonal-appearing band.

http://basicbook.net

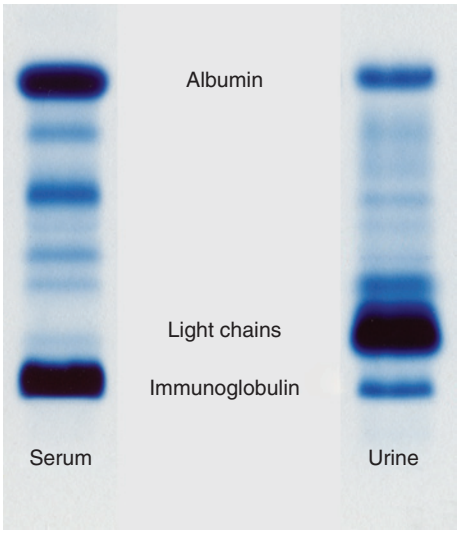


Figure 19-11 Serum and urine protein electrophoretic patterns in a patient with multiple myeloma. Serum demonstrates a predominance of the larger complete immunoglobulin; the urine has a large amount of the smaller-sized light chains, with only a small amount of the whole immunoglobulin.

Cirrhosis of the liver creates a protein pattern that is recognizable (Fig. 19-4, *A*). Hepatocellular damage from cirrhosis results in diminished capacity to synthesize albumin. Furthermore, the imbalance of hemodynamic pressures in portal hypertension secondary to cirrhosis leads to the formation of ascitic fluid, which contains almost exclusively albumin. This decreased synthesis, coupled with increased loss, greatly reduces serum albumin concentrations. The loss of albumin is balanced to some extent by marked polyclonal increase in immunoglobulins with a γ-fraction that may contribute significantly to oncotic pressures. The increase in γ-globulin involves all immunoglobulins; the increase in immunoglobulin A (IgA) in the slow β-region shows a continuum with the γ (also termed β–γ bridging).

In contrast to polyclonal increases, oligoclonal bands consist of only a few clones of distinct immunoglobulins that migrate in defined positions. This pattern is seen in serum in cases in which an immunologic disorder is present, or in some patients treated with chronic immunosuppression for organ transplantation (Myara et al, 1991). Oligoclonal bands in the CSF are used to indicate immunologic activity in the central nervous system and occur in infectious diseases or autoimmune or demyelinating disorders (see Chapter 46).

Hypogammaglobulinemia is manifested as a nearly to completely absent γ-fraction. It occurs normally in neonates before maturation of the immune system. It also occurs in some congenital immunodeficiency states such as Bruton's agammaglobulinemia and other states involving B cell function. Perhaps more commonly, this pattern is seen in adults with lymphoreticular disorders in whom normal plasma cells have been displaced by lymphocytic proliferations, and to some extent after chemotherapy for eradication of malignancies, as well as in hypoproteinemic states (see Fig. 19-9, lane 3).

The single most important and widespread clinical application of serum protein electrophoresis is used for the detection of monoclonal gammopathies. This very explicit pattern comes from a paraprotein (immunoglobulin) secreted by a monoclonal proliferation of plasma cells and is generally found without normal amounts of polyclonal γ as normal plasma cells are replaced by the malignant clone (see Fig. 19-11). The presence of a paraprotein with normal polyclonal γ suggests a possible plasmacytoma that has not yet spread throughout the bone marrow. Laboratory evaluation of myeloma should include serum and urine protein electrophoreses to detect aberrant clonal bands, immunoelectrophoresis or immunofixation to type the heavy and light chains of the paraprotein, and quantitation of immunoglobulins to provide a baseline for monitoring the patient's response to therapy or disease progression. Other proteins that may sometimes be mistaken for monoclonal bands of immunoglobulin on serum protein electrophoresis include haptoglobin–hemoglobin complexes, C3 and its variants, β-lipoprotein, transferrin, fibrinogen, immune complexes, CRP, and occasionally, α_2-macroglobulin. Immunoglobulins, disorders of the immune system, and abnormalities of complement are discussed further in Chapters 46, 47, and 51.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Bean P, Harasymiw J, Peterson CM, et al: Innovative technologies for the diagnosis of alcohol abuse and monitoring abstinence, *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 25:309–316, 2001.
Comprehensive review of assays for carbohydrate-deficient transferrin and strategies for their use.

Bornhorst JA, Procter M, Meadows C, et al: Evaluation of an integrative diagnostic algorithm for the identification of people at risk for α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, *Am J Clin Pathol* 128:482–490, 2007.
This article describes the modern approach to diagnosis of AAT deficiency using the combined modalities of immunoassay, phenotyping by isoelectric focusing, and genotyping.

Delanghe JR, Langlois MR: Hemopexin: A review of biological aspects and the role in laboratory medicine, *Clin Chim Acta* 312:12–23, 2001.
This review article provides a comprehensive description of the biochemistry of hemopexin and how it fluctuates in different disease states.

Ferenci P: Review article: Diagnosis and current therapy of Wilson's disease, *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 19:157–165, 2004.
Up-to-date account of the role of laboratory testing in diagnosing Wilson's disease.

Hellman NE, Gitlin JD: Ceruloplasmin metabolism and function, *Annu Rev Nutr* 22:439–458, 2002.
This article is an excellent summary of ceruloplasmin chemistry and its clinical importance.

Lauff JJ, Kasper ME, Wu TW, et al: Isolation and preliminary characterization of a fraction of bilirubin in serum that is firmly bound to protein, *Clin Chem* 28:629–637, 1982.
Early account of δ-bilirubin and its relationship to albumin.

Layne E: Spectrophotometric and turbidimetric methods for measuring proteins, *Meth Enzymol* 3:447–455, 1957.
Classical paper on protein measurements.

Maachi M, Felahi S, Regeniter A, et al: Patterns of proteinuria: Urinary sodium dodecyl sulfate electrophoresis versus immunonephelometric protein marker measurement followed by interpretation with the knowledge-based system MDI-LabLink, *Clin Chem* 50:1834–1837, 2004.
This paper presents patterns of proteinuria and new methods for their discrimination.

Minchiotti L, Galliano M, Kragh-Hansen U, et al: Mutations and polymorphisms of the gene of the major human blood protein serum albumin, *Hum Mutat* 29:1007–1016, 2008.
This article provides a comprehensive listing of known genetic mutations in the human albumin gene.

Peters T: Serum albumin: Recent progress in the understanding of its structure and biosynthesis, *Clin Chem* 23:5–12, 1977.
Comprehensive review of clinically important structure–function relationships of albumin.

Tolosano E, Altruda F: Hemopexin: Structure, function, and regulation, *DNA Cell Biol* 21:297–306, 2002.
Comprehensive discussion of the chemistry and roles of hemopexin.

Zaret DL, Morrison N, Gulbranson R, et al: Immunofixation to quantify beta 2-transferrin in cerebrospinal fluid to detect leakage of cerebrospinal fluid from skull injury, *Clin Chem* 38:1908–1912, 1992.
Description of assay for a specific marker for CSF in unknown fluid.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Aboussouan LS, Stoller JK: Detection of alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency: A review, *Respir Med* 103:335–341, 2009.

Al-Rashid RA, Spangler J: Neonatal copper deficiency, *N Engl J Med* 285:841–843, 1971.

Alvan G: Ethnic differences in reactions to drugs and xenobiotics. Other protein variants with pharmacogenetic consequences: Albumin and orosomucoid, *Prog Clin Biol Res* 214:345–355, 1986.

Armstrong PB: Proteases and protease inhibitors: A balance of activities in host-pathogen interaction, *Immunobiology* 211:263–281, 2006.

Arndt T: Carbohydrate-deficient transferrin as a marker of chronic alcohol abuse: A critical review of preanalysis, analysis, and interpretation, *Clin Chem* 47:13–27, 2001.

Aslan D, Crain K, Beutler E: A new case of human atransferrinemia with a previously undescribed mutation in the transferrin gene, *Acta Haematol* 118:244–247, 2007.

Beetham R, Cattell WR: Proteinuria: Pathophysiology, significance and recommendations for measurement in clinical practice, *Ann Clin Biochem* 30:425–434, 1993.

Berninger RW: Protease inhibitors of human plasma. Alpha 1-antichymotrypsin, *J Med* 16:101–128, 1985a.

Berninger RW: Protease inhibitors of human plasma. Alpha 1-antitrypsin, *J Med* 16:23–99, 1985b.

Bikle DD, Halloran BP, Gee E, et al: Free 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels are normal in subjects with liver disease and reduced total 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels, *J Clin Invest* 78:748–752, 1986.

Blennow K, Fredman P: Detection of cerebrospinal fluid leakage by isoelectric focusing on polyacrylamide gels with silver staining using the PhastSystem, *Acta Neurochir (Wien)* 136:135–139, 1995.

Branden C, Tooze J: *Introduction to protein structure*, New York, 1991, Garland Publishing.

Brinkman JW, Bakker SJ, Gansevoort RT, et al: Which method for quantifying urinary albumin excretion gives what outcome? A comparison of immunonephelometry with HPLC, *Kidney Int Suppl* 92:569–575, 2004.

Brodsky JL: Translocation of proteins across the endoplasmic reticulum membrane, *Int Rev Cytol* 178:277–328, 1998.

Buehler PW, Abraham B, Vallelian F, et al: Haptoglobin preserves the CD163 hemoglobin scavenger pathway by shielding hemoglobin from peroxidative modification, *Blood* 113:2578–2586, 2009.

Burrows S, Pekala B: Serum copper and ceruloplasmin in pregnancy, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 109:907–909, 1971.

Carvalho A, Ellman L: Hereditary antithrombin III deficiency. Effect of antithrombin on platelet function, *Am J Med* 61:179–183, 1976.

Chanprasert S, Scaglia F: Adult liver disorders caused by inborn errors of metabolism: Review and update, *Mol Genet Metab* 114:1–10, 2015.

Chen FA: Rapid protein analysis by capillary electrophoresis, *J Chromatogr* 559:445–543, 1991.

Chen R, Mias GI, Li-Pook-Than J, et al: Personal omics profiling reveals dynamic molecular and medical phenotypes, *Cell* 148:1293–1307, 2012.

Chertow GM, Goldstein-Fuchs DJ, Lazarus JM, et al: Prealbumin, mortality, and cause-specific hospitalization in hemodialysis patients, *Kidney Int* 68:2794–2800, 2005.

Claus DR, Osmand AP, Gewurz H: Radioimmunoassay of human C-reactive protein and levels in normal sera, *J Lab Clin Med* 87:120–128, 1976.

Clyne B, Olshaker JS: The C-reactive protein, *J Emerg Med* 17:1019–1025, 1999.

Cox DW: Clinical and molecular studies of alpha 1-antitrypsin deficiency, *Prog Clin Biol Res* 214:373–384, 1986.

Dahl B, Schiodt FV, Ott P, et al: Plasma concentration of Gc-globulin is associated with organ dysfunction and sepsis after injury, *Crit Care Med* 31:152–156, 2003.

Daiger SP, Schanfield MS, Cavalli-Sforza LL: Group-specific component (Gc) proteins bind vitamin D and 25-hydroxy-vitamin D, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 72:2076–2080, 1975.

Daniels JC: Abnormalities of protease inhibitors. In Ritzmann SE, Daniels JC, editors: *Serum protein abnormalities, diagnostic and clinical aspects*, Boston, 1975, Little, Brown & Co.

Daniels JC, Larson DL, Abston S, et al: Serum protein profiles in thermal burns. II. Protease inhibitors, complement factors and C-reactive proteins, *J Trauma* 14:153–162, 1974.

Delaroche O, Bordure P, Lippert E, et al: Perilymph detection by beta 2-transferrin immunoblotting assay. Application to the diagnosis of perilymphatic fistulae, *Clin Chim Acta* 245:93–104, 1996.

Deodhar SD: C-reactive protein: The best laboratory indicator available for monitoring disease activity, *Cleveland Clin J Med* 56:126–130, 1989.

Doolittle RF: Fibrinogen and fibrin. In Putnam FW, editor: *The plasma proteins. Vol II*, ed 2, New York, 1975, Academic Press, p 110.

Doolittle RF, Yang Z, Mochalkin I: Crystal structure studies on fibrinogen and fibrin. Fibrinogen, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 936:31–43, 2001.

Dowton SB, Colten HR: Acute phase reactants in inflammation and infection, *Semin Hematol* 25:84–90, 1988.

Eriksson S: Studies in alpha 1-antitrypsin deficiency, *Acta Med Scand* 177(Suppl):1–85, 1965.

Fischer CL, Gill C, Forrester MG, et al: Quantitation of "acute phase proteins" postoperatively. Value in detection and monitoring of complications, *Am J Clin Pathol* 66:840–846, 1976.

Gaetani S, Bellovino D, Apreda M, et al: Hepatic synthesis, maturation and complex formation between retinol-binding protein and transthyretin, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 40:1211–1220, 2002.

Gelb AF, Klein E, Lieberman J: Pulmonary function in nonsmoking subjects with alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency (MZ phenotype), *Am J Med* 62:93–98, 1977.

Ghacha R, Sinha AK, Karkar AM: HbA1c and serum fructosamine as markers of the chronic glycemic state in type 2 diabetic hemodialysis patients. *Dialysis & Transplantation* 30:214–217, 2001.

Giblett ER, editor: *Genetic markers in human blood*, Oxford, 1969, Blackwell Scientific.

Gitlin D, Biasucci A: Development of gamma G, gamma A, gamma M, C'1 esterase inhibitor, ceruloplasmin, transferrin, hemopexin, haptoglobin, fibrinogen, plasminogen, alpha 1-antitrypsin, orosomucoid, beta-lipoprotein, alpha 2-macroglobulin, and prealbumin in the human conceptus, *J Clin Invest* 48:1433–1446, 1969.

Gitlin D, Gitlin JD: Genetic alterations in the plasma proteins of man. In Putnam FW, editor: *The plasma proteins. Vol II*, ed 2, New York, 1975, Academic Press, p 321.

Glenner GG: Amyloid deposits and amyloidosis. The beta-fibrilloses, *N Engl J Med* 302:1283–1292, 1980.

Gofferje H: Prealbumin and retinol binding protein, highly sensitive parameters for the nutritional state in respect to protein, *Med Lab* 5:38–44, 1978.

Goldstein DA, Haldimann B, Sherman D, et al: Vitamin D metabolites and calcium metabolism in patients with nephrotic syndrome and normal renal function, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 52:116–121, 1981.

Griffin JH, Heeb MJ, Schwarz HP: Plasma protein S deficiency and thromboembolic disease, *Prog Hematol* 15:39–49, 1987.

Guthrow CE, Morris MA, Day JF, et al: Enhanced nonenzymatic glucosylation of human serum albumin in diabetes mellitus, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 76:4258–4261, 1979.

Harding JJ: Nonenzymatic covalent posttranslational modification of proteins in vivo, *Adv Protein Chem* 37:247–334, 1985.

Harpel PC, Rosenberg RD: Alpha-2-macroglobulin and antithrombin–heparin cofactor: Modulators of hemostatic and inflammatory reactions, *Prog Hemost Thromb* 3:145–189, 1976.

Hayashi H, Kimura N, Yamaguchi H, et al: A seed for Alzheimer amyloid in the brain, *J Neurosci* 24:4894–4902, 2004.

Hoffmann A, Nimtz M, Getzlaff R, et al: "Brain-type" N-glycosylation of asialo-transferrin from human cerebrospinal fluid, *FEBS Lett* 359:164–168, 1995.

Hokama Y: Methods of assay and role of acute phase C-reactive protein in human diseases. In Nakamura RM, Dito WR, Tucker ES, editors: *Immunologic analysis. recent progress in diagnostic laboratory immunology*, New York, 1982, Masson Publishing, p 239.

Horne CHW, Weir RJ, Howie PW, et al: Effect of combined oestrogen–progesterone oral contraceptives on serum levels of alpha-2-macroglobuin, transferrin, albumin, and IgG, *Lancet* 1:49–50, 1970.

Huang RS, Dasgupta A, Nguyen AN, et al: Inability to measure M-protein with capillary electrophoresis (CAPPILLARYS2) in tracings with nondiscernable peaks, *J Clin Lab Anal* 2014. doi: 10.1002/jcla.21776. [Epub ahead of print].

Hubbard RC, Brantly ML, Sellers S, et al: Anti-neutrophil-elastase defenses of the lower respiratory tract in alpha 1-antitrypsin deficiency directly augmented with an aerosol of alpha 1-antitrypsin, *Ann Intern Med* 111:206–212, 1989.

Ii S, Minnerath S, Ii K, et al: Two-tiered DNA-based diagnosis of transthyretin amyloidosis reveals two novel point mutations, *Neurology* 41:893–898, 1991.

Irie S, Tavassoli M: Transferrin-mediated cellular iron uptake, *J Med Sci* 293:103–111, 1987.

Jenkins N, Parekh RB, James DC: Getting the glycosylation right: Implications for the biotechnology industry, *Nat Biotechnol* 14:975–981, 1996.

Jeppsson J-O, Laurell CB, Franzén B: Agarose gel electrophoresis, *Clin Chem* 25:629–638, 1979.

Jorgensen HG, Elliott MA, Allan EK, et al: α_1-Acid glycoprotein expressed in the plasma of chronic myeloid leukemia patients does not mediate significant in vitro resistance to STI571, *Blood* 99:713–715, 2002.

Kamboh MI, Ferrell RE: Human transferrin polymorphism, *Hum Hered* 37:65–81, 1987.

Killingsworth LM: Clinical applications of protein determinations in biological fluids other than blood, *Clin Chem* 28:1093–1102, 1982.

Koch-Weser J, Sellers EM: Drug therapy. Binding of drugs to serum albumin, *N Engl J Med* 294:311–316, 1976.

Koerper MA, Dallman PR: Serum iron concentration and transferrin saturation in the diagnosis of iron deficiency in children: Normal developmental changes, *J Pediatr* 91:870–874, 1977.

Konigsberg W: Molecular diseases. In Bondy PK, Roenberg LE, editors: *Duncan's diseases of metabolism*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 1974, WB Saunders, p 86.

Kosaka S, Tazawa M: Alpha-1-antichymotrypsin in rheumatoid arthritis, *Tohoku J Exp Med* 119:369–375, 1976.

Kuznetsov G, Nigam SK: Folding of secretory and membrane proteins, *N Engl J Med* 339:1688–1695, 1998.

Laurell CB: Quantitative estimation of proteins by electrophoresis in agarose gel containing antibodies, *Anal Biochem* 15:45–52, 1966.

Laurell CB: Electrophoresis, specific protein assays, or both in measurement of plasma proteins?, *Clin Chem* 19:99–102, 1973.

Laurell CB, Jeppsson J-O: Protease inhibitors in plasma. In Putnam FW, editor: *The plasma proteins. Vol I*, ed 2, New York, 1975, Academic Press, p 299.

Lauridsen AL, Vestergaard P, Nexo E: Mean serum concentration of vitamin D-binding protein (Gc globulin) is related to the Gc phenotype in women, *Clin Chem* 47:753–756, 2001.

Le Coutre P, Kreuzer K-A, Na I-K, et al: Determination of α-1 acid glycoprotein in patients with Ph+ chronic myeloid leukemia during the first 13 weeks of therapy with STI571, *Blood Cells Mol Dis* 28:75–85, 2002.

Levy AP, Asleh R, Blum S, et al: Haptoglobin: Basic and clinical aspects, *Antioxid Redox Signal* 12:293–304, 2010.

Lieberman J, Gaidulis L, Garoutte B, et al: Identification and characteristics of the common alpha-1-antitrypsin phenotypes, *Chest* 62:557–564, 1972.

Lijnen HR, Collen D: Protease inhibitors of human plasma. Alpha 2-antiplasmin, *J Med* 16:225–284, 1985.

Lowry OH, Rosebrough NJ, Farr L, et al: Protein measurement with Folin phenol reagent, *J Biol Chem* 193:265–275, 1951.

MacGillivray RTA, Mendez E, Sinha S, et al: The complete amino acid sequence of human serum transferrin, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 79:2504–2508, 1982.

Manoharan A: Congenital haptoglobin deficiency, letter, *Blood* 90:1709, 1997.

McNeill A, Pandolfo M, Kuhn J, et al: The neurological presentation of ceruloplasmin gene mutations, *Eur Neurol* 60:200–205, 2008.

Meloun B, Moravek L, Kostka V: Complete amino acid sequence of human serum albumin, *FEBS Lett* 58:134–137, 1975.

Menache D: Abnormal fibrinogens: A review, *Thromb Diath Haemorrh* 29:525–535, 1973.

http://basicbook.net

Mendenhall HW: Serum protein concentrations in pregnancy. I. Concentrations in maternal serum, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 106:388–399, 1970.

Merin NM, Kelly KR: Clinical use of proteasome inhibitors in the treatment of multiple myeloma, *Pharmaceuticals* 8:1–20, 2015.

Merril CR, Goldman D, Sedman SA, et al: Ultrasensitive stain for proteins in polyacrylamide gels shows regional variation in cerebrospinal fluid proteins, *Science* 211:1437–1438, 1981.

Metra M, Mentz RJ, Chiswell K, et al: Acute heart failure in elderly patients: Worse outcomes and differential utility of standard prognostic variables. Insights from the PROTECT trial, *Eur J Heart Fail* 2014. doi: 10.1002/ejhf.207.

Mettenburg JM, Gonias SL: Beta-amyloid peptide binds equivalently to binary and ternary alpha2-macroglobulin-protease complexes, *Protein J* 24:89–93, 2005.

Moses AC, Lawlor J, Haddow J, et al: Familial euthyroid hyperthyroxinemia resulting from increased thyroxine binding to thyroxine-binding prealbumin, *N Engl J Med* 306:966–969, 1982.

Muller-Eberhard U: Hemopexin, *N Engl J Med* 283:1090–1094, 1970.

Myara I, Quenum G, Storogenko M, et al: Monoclonal and oligoclonal gammopathies in heart transplant recipients, *Clin Chem* 37:1334–1337, 1991.

Nilsson IM, Tengborn LA: A family with thrombosis associated with high level of tissue plasminogen activator, *Haemostasis* 14:24, 1984.

Normansell DE, Stacy EK, Booker CF, et al: Detection of beta-2 transferrin in otorrhea and rhinorrhea in a routine clinical laboratory setting, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 1:68–70, 1994.

Oppenheimer JH: Role of plasma proteins in the binding, distribution and metabolism of the thyroid hormones, *N Engl J Med* 278:1153–1162, 1968.

Orth SR, Ritz E: The nephrotic syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 338:1202–1211, 1998.

Peters T Jr: Serum albumin. In Putnam FW, editor: *The plasma proteins. Vol II*, ed 2, New York, 1975, Academic Press, p 133.

Peterson PA: Studies on interaction between prealbumin, retinol-binding protein and vitamin A, *J Biol Chem* 246:44–49, 1971.

Post DJ, Carter KC, Papaconstantinou J: The effect of aging on constitutive mRNA levels and lipopolysaccharide inducibility of acute phase genes, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 621:66–77, 1991.

Prograis LJ, Brickman CM, Frank MM: Protease inhibitors of human plasma. C1-inhibitor (C1-Inh), *J Med* 16:303–350, 1985.

Reddy S, Adcock KJ, Adeshina H, et al: Immunity, transferrin, and survival in kwashiorkor, *BMJ* 4:268–270, 1970.

Ridker PM, Hennekens CH, Buring JE, et al: C-reactive protein and other markers of inflammation in the prediction of cardiovascular disease in women, *N Engl J Med* 342:836–843, 2000.

Ritzmann SE, Daniels JC, editors: *Serum protein abnormalities. Diagnostic and clinical aspects*, Boston, 1975, Little, Brown & Co.

Roberts RC: Protease inhibitors of human plasma. Alpha 2-macroglobulin, *J Med* 16:129–224, 1985.

Roelandse FW, van der Zwart N, Didden JH, et al: Detection of CSF leakage by isoelectric focusing on polyacrylamide gel, direct immunofixation of transferrins, and silver staining, *Clin Chem* 44:351–353, 1998.

Roeser HP, Lee GR, Nacht S, et al: The role of ceruloplasmin in iron metabolism, *J Clin Intest* 49:2408–2417, 1970.

Rosenberg RD: Actions and interactions of antithrombin and heparin, *N Engl J Med* 292:146–151, 1975.

Rosenberg RD, Bauer KA: Thrombosis in inherited deficiencies of antithrombin, protein C, and protein S, *Hum Pathol* 18:253–262, 1987.

Rosenberg RD, Bauer KA, Marcum JA: Protease inhibitors of human plasma. Antithrombin-III: The heparin–antithrombin system, *J Med* 16:351–416, 1985.

Roses AD: Apolipoprotein E is a genetic locus that affects the rate of Alzheimer disease expression, *Neuropsychopharmacology* 10:55, 1994.

Rothschild MA, Oratz M, Schreiber SS: Albumin synthesis, *N Engl J Med* 286(748):816–821, 1972.

Ruiz M, Rajatanavin R, Young RA, et al: Familial dysalbuminemic hyperthyroxinemia. A syndrome that can be confused with thyrotoxicosis, *N Engl J Med* 306:635–639, 1982.

Sattianayagam PT, Hahn AF, Whelan CJ, et al: Cardiac phenotype and clinical outcome of familial amyloid polyneuropathy associated with transthyretin alanine 60 variant, *Eur Heart J* 33:1120–1127, 2012.

Saraiva M, Alves IL, Costa PP: Simplified method for screening populations at risk for transthyretin met 30 associated familial amyloidotic polyneuropathy, *Clin Chem* 35:1033–1035, 1989.

Saxstad J, Nilsson L-A, Hanson LA: C-reactive protein in serum from infants as determined with immunodiffusion techniques, *Acta Pediatr Scand* 59:676–680, 1970.

Schenker JG, Jungreis E, Polishuk WZ: Oral contraceptives and serum copper concentrations, *Obstet Gynecol* 37:233–237, 1971.

Schmid K: Alpha-1-acid glycoprotein. In Putnam FW, editor: *The plasma proteins, Vol I*, ed 2, New York, 1975, Academic Press.

Sevall JS: The albumin gene: DNA–protein interaction, *Fed Proc* 45:2412–2415, 1986.

Sinotte M, Diorio C, Berube S, et al: Genetic polymorphisms of the vitamin D binding protein and plasma concentrations of 25-hydroxyvitamin D in premenopausal women, *Am J Clin Nutr* 89:634–640, 2009.

Slater L, Carter PM, Hobbs JR: Measurement of albumin in the sera of patients, *Ann Clin Biochem* 12:33–40, 1975.

Sloman AJ, Kelly RH: Transferrin allelic variants may cause false positives in the detection of cerebrospinal fluid fistulae, *Clin Chem* 39:1444–1445, 1993.

Snider GL: Pulmonary disease in alpha1-antitrypsin deficiency, *Ann Intern Med* 111:957–959, 1989.

Snyder MR, Katzmann JA, Butz ML, et al: Diagnosis of α-1-antitrypsin deficiency: An algorithm of quantification, genotyping, and phenotyping, *Clin Chem* 52:2236–2242, 2006.

Solomon P, Chen J, D'Costa M, et al: Extracranial drainage of cerebrospinal fluid: A study of beta-transferrins in nasal and lymphatic tissues, *Laryngoscope* 109:1313–1315, 1999.

Stenflo J: Structure and function of protein C, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 10:109–121, 1984.

Stibler H: Carbohydrate-deficient transferrin in serum: A new marker of potentially harmful alcohol consumption reviewed, *Clin Chem* 37:2029–2037, 1991.

Sveger T: Liver disease in alpha 1-antitrypsin deficiency detected by screening of 200,000 infants, *N Engl J Med* 294:1316–1321, 1976.

Thalmann I, Kohut RI, Ryu J, et al: Protein profile of human perilymph: In search of markers for the diagnosis of perilymph fistula and other inner ear disease, *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 111:273–280, 1994.

Tripathi RC, Millard CB, Tripathi BJ, et al: Tau fraction of transferrin is present in human aqueous humor and is not unique to cerebrospinal fluid, *Exp Eye Res* 50:541–547, 1990.

Tsung SH, Rosenthal WA, Milewski KA: Immunological measurement of transferrin compared with chemical measurement of total iron-binding capacity, *Clin Chem* 21:1063–1066, 1975.

Van den Steen P, Rudd PM, Dwek RA, et al: Concepts and principles of O-linked glycosylation, *Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol* 33:151–208, 1998.

Van Oss CJ, Bronson PM, Border JR: Changes in the serum alpha glycoprotein distribution in trauma patients, *J Trauma* 15:451–455, 1975.

Van Vlierberghe H, Langlois M, Delanghe J: Haptoglobin polymorphisms and iron homeostasis in health and in disease, *Clin Chim Acta* 345:35–42, 2004.

Waldman TA, Gordon RS, Rosse W: Studies on the metabolism of the serum proteins and lipids in patients with analbuminemia, *Am J Med* 37:960–968, 1964.

Walsh PG, Haddad JG: "Rocket" immunoelectrophoresis assay of vitamin D-binding protein (Gc globulin) in human serum, *Clin Chem* 28:1781–1783, 1982.

Weinberg ED: Iron and infection, *Microbiol Rev* 42:45–66, 1978.

Westwood SA, Werrett DJ: Group-specific component: A review of the isoelectric focusing methods and auxiliary methods available for the separation of its phenotypes, *Forensic Sci Int* 32:135–150, 1986.

Whitehead AS, Bruns GAP, Markham AF, et al: Isolation of human C-reactive protein complementary DNA and localization of the gene to chromosome 1, *Science* 221:69–71, 1983.

Whitfield JB, Dy V, Madden PAF, et al: Measuring carbohydrate-deficient transferrin by direct immunoassay: Factors affecting diagnostic sensitivity for excessive alcohol intake, *Clin Chem* 54:1158–1165, 2008.

Wickner S, Maurizi MR, Gottesman S: Posttranslational quality control: Folding, refolding, and degrading proteins, *Science* 286:1888–1893, 1999.

Wochner RD, Spilberg I, Iio A, et al: Hemopexin metabolism in sickle cell disease, porphyrias and control subjects: Effect of heme injection, *N Engl J Med* 290:822–826, 1974.

Xin Y, Lasker JM, Lieber CS: Serum carbohydrate-deficient transferrin: Mechanism of increase after chronic alcohol intake, *Hepatology* 22:1462–1468, 1995.

Zawadzki Z, Edwards G: Pseudoparaproteinemia due to hypertransferrinemia, *Am J Clin Pathol* 54:802–809, 1970.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 20

CLINICAL ENZYMOLOGY

Robert P. Carty, Matthew R. Pincus, Ehsan Sarafraz-Yazdi

GENERAL PROPERTIES OF ENZYMES, 267
Catalysis, 267
Enzyme Specificity, 268
Enzyme Concentration and Activity, 268
Molecular Basis for Enzyme Catalysis, 268
Nomenclature of Enzymes, 269
Isozymes, 269
Enzyme Cofactors, 269
Factors Affecting Plasma Enzyme Activities, 270
Factors Affecting the Lifetime of Enzymes in Blood, 270

ENZYME KINETICS: DETERMINATION OF TOTAL ENZYME CONCENTRATIONS IN SERUM AND OTHER BODY FLUIDS, 271
The Michaelis-Menten Equation Gives the Means to Determine Total Enzyme Concentration in Serum and Other Body Fluids, 271
Other Factors Affecting Enzyme Activity, 274
Caveats in Enzyme Assays, 275
Antibody-Based Techniques for Measuring Enzymes, 275

INHIBITION OF ENZYMES, 276
Competitive Inhibition, 276
How Competitive Inhibitors Affect the Michaelis-Menten Equation, 276
Uncompetitive Inhibition, 277
Effect of Uncompetitive Inhibitors on the Michaelis-Menten Equation, 277
Simple and Mixed Noncompetitive Inhibition, 277
Effects of Noncompetitive Inhibitors on the Michaelis-Menten Equation, 277

CATALYTIC EFFICIENCY: TRANSITION STATE THEORY AND DRUG DESIGN, 278
Enzymes Achieve High Rates of Reaction That Greatly Exceed Those for Uncatalyzed Reactions, 278
Enzymes Achieve High Rate Enhancements by Binding to the Transition State on the Reaction Pathway, 278
Transition State Theory in Drug Design, 279

SPECIFIC ENZYMES, 280
Acid Phosphatase (EC 3.1.3.2), 281
Alkaline Phosphatase (EC 3.1.3.1), 282
Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme (EC 3.4.15.1), 283
Acetylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.7) and Butyrylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.8), 285
Lactate Dehydrogenase (EC 1.1.1.27), 286
5′-Nucleotidase (EC 3.1.3.5), 287
Skeletal Muscle Injury: Creatine Phosphokinase, 287

SELECTED REFERENCES, 288

KEY POINTS

- Enzymes are protein catalysts utilized by essentially all mammalian cells in specific biochemical reactions in different organs of the body, which may also be physically located in different organelles and structures within a cell.
- Enzymes lower the activation energies of the chemical reactions that they catalyze, so as to cause greatly enhanced rates of reaction. They do not become modified in these reactions and do not affect the equilibrium between reactants and products in the reaction.
- Most enzymes have a practical or trivial name as well as a name based on standardized nomenclature of the International Union of Biochemistry; the latter is based on the type of reaction catalyzed by the enzyme.
- Along with certain narrow ranges of pH, temperature, and protein and salt concentrations, most enzymes require additional organic molecules and/or inorganic ions for optimal enzyme function.
- An understanding of enzyme kinetics allows for laboratory measurement of serum and other body fluid enzyme levels, as well as determination of possible enzyme inhibition.
- Transition state theory of enzyme action has resulted in major breakthroughs in drug design.
- Damaged or dying cells within organs can release enzymes into the circulation; these plasma enzyme levels can be used clinically to develop a differential diagnosis of a patient with respect to specific organ disease and dysfunction.
- In addition, many enzymes have isozymes (i.e., polypeptide chains that differ in sequence but have similar enzymatic activity). Some enzymes are composed of two or more different polypeptide chains, such as the M and B chains of creatine phosphokinase, giving rise to isozymes that differ in chain composition (e.g., the MM, MB, and BB forms of creatine phosphokinase). In a number of diseases, specific isozymes become elevated in serum, facilitating diagnosis.

GENERAL PROPERTIES OF ENZYMES

All enzymes are proteins and function as catalysts. This means that they accelerate the rates of chemical reactions in the body but do not become chemically altered themselves in these reactions. Virtually every reaction that occurs in the body, both intracellularly and extracellularly, is catalyzed by an enzyme. The molecule for which a particular enzyme catalyzes a reaction is called the *substrate*. As explained later, enzymes interact very specifically with their substrates and, with the possible exceptions of closely related molecules, do not interact with any molecules other than their substrates. The concentrations and/or activities of different enzymes in blood give vital information about the functioning of specific tissues. Furthermore, many enzymes exist predominantly in specific tissues and not in other tissues. Thus certain enzymes can serve as biomarkers for diseases in specific tissues. Therefore, a vital focus of the medical laboratory is determination of the concentrations and/or activities of specific enzymes in blood and other body fluids. The fact that an enzyme interacts selectively with only specific substrates facilitates determination of enzyme concentrations. The concentration of an enzyme can be determined simply by adding a specific substrate to serum or other body fluid and observing the rate at which the substrate disappears, or the product of the reaction forms. This chapter is concerned with the principles of how enzyme concentrations are determined.

CATALYSIS

A catalyst accelerates the rate of a chemical reaction. The acceleration may occur in solution, and the process is called homogeneous catalysis. Catalysis on an insoluble surface is termed heterogeneous catalysis. Biological catalysts are called *enzymes* and for the most part are proteins that exhibit homogeneous catalysis. However, some enzymes are embedded in membrane structures and should be considered insoluble, heterogeneous catalysts.

http://basicbook.net

ENZYME SPECIFICITY

Enzyme specificity defines the capacity of protein catalysts to recognize and bind only one or a few molecules, the substrate(s), excluding all others, a process referred to as *binding specificity*. An enzyme catalyzes a unique chemical process (i.e., a solitary type of covalent bond is broken or formed). This is called *reaction specificity*. Most enzymes exhibit absolute reaction specificity, that is, no minor byproducts are formed. Binding specificity permits many biochemical reactions to occur simultaneously within the same biological space. Absolute reaction specificity saves energy because it reduces the pool of unwanted metabolites.

Enzymes are stereoselective because of the asymmetry of their active sites. They recognize only one enantiomeric form (i.e., one of a pair of compounds having a mirror image relationship) of a chiral substrate. Hence, proteases exclusively bind polypeptides made up of L-amino acids (and not D-amino acids) and catalyze their hydrolysis. Enzymes exhibit geometric specificity exemplified by the fumarase reaction, in which the Krebs cycle intermediate, fumarate (the *trans* isomer), but not maleate (the *cis* isomer), undergoes hydration.

ENZYME CONCENTRATION AND ACTIVITY

The concentration of enzyme molecules within a given intracellular or extracellular space depends on their rate of synthesis and degradation. Control of enzyme synthesis occurs at both transcriptional and translational levels. In eukaryotes, cells of different organs express different isoforms, called isozymes (discussed later), of the same enzyme, which alters rates and specificity suitable for selective cellular homeostasis. The presence of substrate, or other inducing molecule, can cause a sudden increase in enzyme levels.

Enzymatic activity is also subject to control through the binding of small molecules that produce conformational changes in the structure of the enzyme. This binding can alter substrate affinity for the enzyme, or change the enzyme's catalytic activity, or both. Generally, enzymes that catalyze rate-determining steps in metabolic pathways are subject to this type of regulation.

Enzymes do not affect the value of the equilibrium constant between reactants and products. In a reversible reaction, they accelerate forward and reverse reactions by the same relative amount. The equilibrium distribution of reactants and products is unchanged whether the equilibrium state has been achieved in the presence or absence of an enzyme.

As noted previously, almost all known enzymes are proteins or conjugated proteins. A few enzymes are nucleoproteins, which are ribonucleic acid (RNA) molecules complexed to proteins. Enzymes contain a surface region referred to as the *active site*, where binding and catalysis occur. It is a cleft or crevice in which are embedded specific groups, suitably oriented, which carry out the roles of binding and bond-making, or bond cleavage. The three-dimensional shape of the active site is a vital determinant in the recognition and specificity process. The enzyme-substrate complex is the adduct formed by the physical adsorption of the substrate to the active site. Enzyme-substrate complex formation requires specific alignment of atoms in the active site with atoms in the substrate molecule. This complementary arrangement is referred to as the *lock-and-key fit* of the substrate in the active site and is illustrated in Figure 20-1. Sometimes the shape of the substrate molecule does not exactly match the contour of the active site. Yet the substrate binds tightly because of its capacity to reshape the active site to a conformation that binds the substrate with high affinity. This type of substrate adsorption is described as **induced fit.** It is illustrated in Figure 20-2. Active sites of induced-fit enzymes become complementary only after the substrate is bound. Some of the favorable binding energy is used in reorganizing the shape of the active site.

MOLECULAR BASIS FOR ENZYME CATALYSIS

The free energy of activation is the energy absorbed by reactant molecules before they have a chance to convert to products. The free energy of activation is a barrier to chemical reactivity. When this barrier is large, the rate of a chemical reaction is very slow. The lower the barrier, the faster is the reaction rate. The barrier exists for almost all chemical reactions because, for bonds to be broken, they must be stretched and sometimes bent away from their equilibrium positions. These deformations require energy. Enzymes lower the free energy of activation. Most metabolic reactions have very high activation barriers, and in the absence of enzymes, reaction rates are imperceptibly slow. Cells can selectively reduce metabolic reaction rates to near zero by abolishing enzyme activity. This feature of metabolism allows cells to "turn on" and "turn off" metabolic pathways

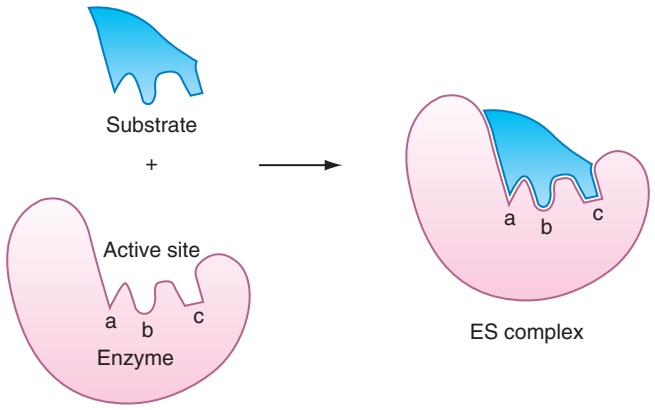


Figure 20-1 The lock-and-key model of substrate binding to the enzyme active site. The enzyme exhibits preformed steric and electronic complementarity to the shape and charge distribution of the substrate. No shape changes or electronic redistributions in the enzyme or the substrate are necessary for optimal binding. (By permission of W. H. Freeman and Company, San Francisco; Stryer L: *Biochemistry*, ed 2. Stanford, Calif., 1981, Stanford University.)

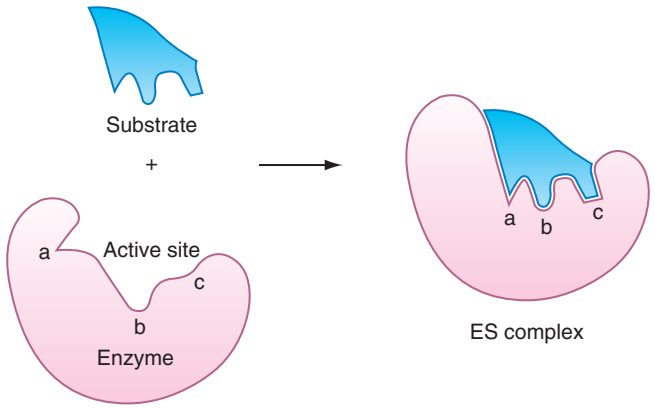


Figure 20-2 The induced-fit model of substrate binding to the enzyme active site. The induced-fit model postulates an initial weak, flexible interaction of the substrate with groups in the enzyme's substrate (ES) binding site. This is sufficient to trigger a conformational rearrangement of the enzyme's surface that exposes additional ligand binding groups that enhance the binding affinity of the substrate for the enzyme. (By permission of W. H. Freeman and Company, San Francisco; Stryer L: *Biochemistry*, ed 2. Stanford, Calif., 1981, Stanford University.)

during different stages of the cell cycle. Enzymes lower the free energy of activation in various ways. Binding and appropriate orientation of the substrate in the active site increase its proximity to the catalytic groups. Various types of catalysis are used by enzymes. The major types of catalysis are acid-base, electrophilic, nucleophilic, elimination reactions, decarboxylation reactions, and metal ion and electrostatic catalysis. Reductions in the free energy of activation occur through preferential binding of the transition state (or intermediate enzyme-substrate complex) to active site groups. The side chains of different amino acids participate in catalysis. The side chain of histidine is an effective acid-base catalyst, and the side chains of serine, cysteine, lysine, histidine, and aspartic acid participate in covalent catalysis. The side chains of lysine and arginine, as well as metal ions, can act as electrostatic catalysts by stabilizing negative charges that develop during catalysis. Conversely, the side chains of aspartate and glutamate residues can stabilize the positive charges that develop during catalysis.

The rate of the reaction is proportional to the concentration of molecules that have attained energy equal to the free energy of activation, $\Delta G‡$. This energy is higher for the uncatalyzed reaction. The idea that enzymes accelerate chemical reactions by lowering G‡ is illustrated in Figure 20-3, where the free energy needed for a productive reaction is compared for an uncatalyzed and an enzyme-catalyzed reaction. As shown in this figure, enzymes lower the activation energy. As explained later, an enzyme binds to its substrate to form an enzyme-substrate complex in an initial recognition step. In the subsequent step, the substrate is converted to product. The enzyme-substrate complex is more stable than the two separated species (i.e., has a lower free energy). However, this energy cannot be too low, as in the case of the dotted lines in Figure 20-3, because

http://basicbook.net

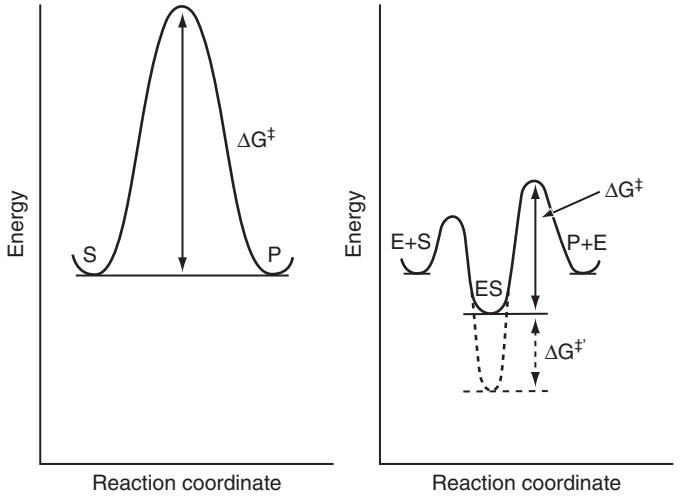


Figure 20-3 **The free energy path of a reactant molecule through its transition state on its way to becoming a product molecule.** The energy trajectory followed by a molecule undergoing a chemical reaction is the minimum free energy pathway known as the **reaction coordinate.** The transition state, the state of highest free energy, is the point where there is an equal probability that a reaction will take place, or that the **activated complex** will decompose back to the reactant. The free energy change, ΔG‡, is the energy that the substrate molecule must acquire to reach the activated complex, also called the *activation energy barrier.* **A,** The uncatalyzed reaction. The reactant, called *S,* must acquire the necessary energy, ΔG‡, to become converted into the product, P. This energy is the difference between the energy of the transition state and the ground-state energy of S. **B,** The enzyme-catalyzed reaction. In this case, the enzyme binds noncovalently to the substrate, resulting in a stable enzyme–substrate (ES) complex. In most textbooks, the ES complex is shown as having slightly higher energy than that for free E and S. This is because the energy of the substrate increases when it binds to the enzyme because the enzyme recognizes the transition state of the substrate (discussed later), which is a higher energy form for the substrate. However, overall, the energy of the ES complex is lower than that for the free enzyme and free substrate, as reflected in the favorable affinity constant (usually measured as $1/K_M$) for the binding of S to E. This is why the energy of ES is shown as lower than for the two isolated species. However, although this complex has a lower free energy than that for the two separated species (S and E), it should not be too much lower, as discussed later. The energy of activation, ΔG‡, now becomes the difference in energy between that of the transition state in the ES complex, and not for S alone, and that of the ground state ES complex. This energy is less than that for the uncatalyzed reaction. A major reason why ΔG‡ for the enzyme-catalyzed reaction is less than for the uncatalyzed reaction in **A** is that the enzyme has a high affinity for the transition state, lowering its energy relative to that for the ground state ES complex. Note in **B** what would happen if the enzyme had a very high affinity for **ground state** ES *(broken line).* If the same transition state is assumed, the energy barrier to reach this transition state, instead of just being ΔG‡, will now be ΔG‡ + ΔG‡′, resulting in a slower rate of reaction.

in this case, the activation energy would be raised, and the reaction rate would be slower. As explained later, an enzyme binds to what is called the *transition state* on the reaction pathway. This is the reactive form of the substrate that is of relatively high free energy compared with the free energy of the ground state of the substrate. Thus, although the energy of the substrate is raised in the transition state complex, the enzyme provides stabilizing interactions with the transition state that result in overall stabilization of the complex and in an enhanced rate of reaction.

Enzymes have developed as extremely efficient catalysts because their active sites have evolved to bind transition states very tightly. It is this tight binding that stabilizes the transition state and lowers the free energy of activation. Enzymes do not alter the ground state energies of reactants and products of a chemical reaction. The equilibrium state is characterized as a state of lowest energy, and the composition of the reactant and product mixture at equilibrium is a reflection of these ground state energies. Enzymes emerge from the catalytic process unaltered, although some undergo transient chemical modification during the reaction.

NOMENCLATURE OF ENZYMES

The nomenclature of commonly measured enzymes was standardized by the Enzyme Commission (EC) of the International Union of Biochemistry (1979, 1992). Each enzyme has two names: a practical or trivial name, and a systematic name. The latter consists of a unique numeric code designation and the nature of the catalytic reaction, as follows: Enzymes are named by citing the name of the substrate molecule and by following that with the suffix, -ase; sometimes the name also includes a designation of the type of reaction catalyzed. Examples are as follows.

1. RNA is hydrolyzed by an enzyme called *ribonuclease*.
2. Lactic acid is oxidized to pyruvic acid by an enzyme called *lactic acid dehydrogenase*.

Older trivial names persist in the literature. Examples are trypsin, a protein-hydrolyzing enzyme secreted into the gut, and papain, a plant enzyme that also hydrolyzes proteins. A more systematic classification of enzymes has been implemented in the biochemical literature (International Union of Biochemistry, 1979, 1992). Enzymes have been organized by reaction type into six major classes, as shown in Table 20-1.

TABLE 20-1
Enzyme Classification

Class	Type of Reaction Catalyzed
1. Oxidoreductases	Oxidation-reduction reactions
2. Transferases	Transfer of functional groups
3. Hydrolases	Hydrolysis reactions
4. Lyases	Group elimination to form double bonds
5. Isomerases	Isomerizations
6. Ligases	Bond formation coupled with ATP hydrolysis

ATP, Adenosine triphosphate.

ISOZYMES

Many enzymes have isoenzymes, called isozymes, of different forms that catalyze the same reaction. These different forms occur because of differences in the amino acid sequences of enzymes. Despite these differences in sequence, the enzymes fold to the same three-dimensional structures and frequently exhibit similar affinities for and catalytic rates with substrates. Often, isozymes occur as the result of differences in the chain composition of enzymes, as discussed later. Most commonly, different isoenzymes are found in specific organs or tissues; determination of the type of isoenzyme present can then be of use in identifying the damaged tissue and releasing the enzyme. The standard nomenclature of isoenzymes is based on their electrophoretic migration, with the isoenzyme migrating farthest toward the anode designated **isoenzyme 1.** The most widely recognized isoenzymes are those that are composed of varying combinations of subunits; common examples are creatine kinase (CK), a dimer of muscle (M) and brain (B) subunits, and lactate dehydrogenase (LD), a tetramer of heart (H) and M subunits. In other cases, isoenzymes may have the same protein component but may differ based on modifications made by the cell of origin. For example, the bone, renal, and liver isoenzymes of alkaline phosphatase (ALP) have identical amino acid sequences but differ in carbohydrate composition.

In some cases, isoenzymes may have completely different protein structures. Distinct cytoplasmic and mitochondrial isoenzymes of both CK and aspartate aminotransferase (AST) have markedly differing structures. Placental and intestinal ALP isoenzymes have a different protein structure compared with that of the tissue-nonspecific forms found in liver, bone, and other organs.

Finally, enzymes can be modified by proteases present in serum to produce forms that differ slightly from each other; these are termed *isoforms.* As an example, CK-M subunits are partially metabolized by carboxypeptidase N, removing a lysine residue from the carboxy-terminal end of the molecule and converting the tissue isoform to a differently charged plasma isoform. The relative amounts of the tissue and plasma isoforms can be used as a marker of duration of injury to CK-containing cells. The official names and EC numbers of the commonly measured, clinically useful enzymes are given in Table 20-2 (Zollner, 1989).

ENZYME COFACTORS

Two thirds of all enzymes contain cofactors that are a group of heat-stable substances required for catalysis. They are low molecular weight organic molecules and inorganic ions. The combination of cofactor plus the protein portion, the apoenzyme, forms the complete catalytic entity and is known as the *holoenzyme.* Organic cofactors are bound covalently or noncovalently to the apoenzyme. Covalently bound cofactors are sometimes referred to as *prosthetic groups.* Cofactors are observed in oxidation-reduction, group

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 20-2
Names, Enzyme Numbers, Substrates for Enzymes

Enzyme (IUB Group, EC Number)	Substrate	Comments
AChE (hydrolase, EC 3.1.1.7)	Acetylcholine, acetyl thiocholine; hydrolyzes acetyl-β-methylcholine	Choline is $HO\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}N^+\text{-}(CH_3)_3$, a quaternary amine; many esters with the OH group are substrates. Critical in regulating acetylcholine neurotransmission
PChE (hydrolase, EC 3.1.1.8)	Many aliphatic esters of choline; unlike AChE, does not hydrolyze acetyl-β-methylcholine but, also unlike AChE, does hydrolyze butyryl- and benzoylcholine	Largely unknown function; it is critical in hydrolyzing the muscle relaxant, succinyl choline
ACP (hydrolase, EC 3.1.3.2)	G6P, phenyl-P, 3-glycerophosphate, phenolphthalein-P, thymolphthalein-P, naphthol-P	Cleaves phosphate esters like ALP (see next entry) but at pH values around 5.0
ALP (hydrolase, EC 3.1.3.1)	See ACP	ALP has unusual pH optimum of about 9. Optimum pH varies with substrate and buffer
ACE (bradykinin, hydrolase, EC 3.4.15.1)	Splits C-terminal His-Leu dipeptide of angiotensin 1 to yield angiotensin 2; also splits hippuryl-His-Leu to hippurate + His-Leu	Considered a nonspecific hydrolase; acts on Met- and Leu-enkephalin
LD (oxido reductase, 1.1.1.27)	Pyruvate and other keto acids + NADH Also lactate and other 2-hydroxy acids + NAD^+	Moderately specific
5′-Nucleotidase (hydrolase, EC 3.1.3.5)	5′-Monoribonucleotides	Wide specificity for 5′-monoribonucleotides

ACE, Angiotensin-converting enzyme; *AChE,* acetylcholinesterase; *ACP,* acid phosphatase; *ADP,* adenosine diphosphate; *ALP,* alkaline phosphatase; *ATP,* adenosine triphosphate; *EC,* Enzyme Commission; *G6P,* glucose-6-phosphate; *IUB,* International Union of Biochemistry; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase; *NAD^+,* nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide; *NADH,* the reduced form of NAD^+; *P,* phosphate; *PChE,* pseudocholinesterase; *pNPP, p*-nitrophenylphosphate.

TABLE 20-3
Enzyme Cofactors

Coenzyme(s)	Reaction Type	Deficiency
Coenzyme A	Acyl transfer	
Thiamine pyrophosphate	Aldehyde transfer	Beriberi
Folic acid coenzymes	One-carbon transfer	Megaloblastic anemia
Cobamide (B_{12}) coenzymes	Alkylation	Pernicious anemia
Nicotinamide coenzymes	Oxidation-reduction	Pellagra
Flavin coenzymes	Oxidation-reduction	
Biotin	Carboxylation	
Lipoic acid	Acyl transfer	
Pyridoxal phosphate	Amino group transfer	
Coenzyme Q	Electron transfer	

BOX 20-1
Inorganic Cofactors for Enzymes

Mg^{++}
Fe^{++}/Fe^{+++}
Zn^{++}
Cu^{+}/Cu^{++}
Ca^{++}
Mn^{++}
Co^{++}

transfer, and isomerization reactions, and in reactions that form covalent bonds. Hydrolytic reactions generally do not require cofactors. Organic cofactors are listed in Table 20-3. Inorganic cofactors that include mainly metal ions are listed in Box 20-1. A cosubstrate is an organic cofactor that behaves as a second substrate in an enzyme-catalyzed reaction. Cofactors such as nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+) can serve as cosubstrates for many oxidoreductases. A single molecule of NAD^+ may act as a cosubstrate many thousands of times. The product, NADH (reducing agent derived from NAD^+), must first be oxidized back to NAD^+ before it can participate again as an electron and H atom acceptor. The recycling of the NAD-NADH oxidation-reduction couple depends on the ready availability of a chemical system capable of regenerating NAD^+ from NADH. A substrate molecule is usually irreversibly changed in a reaction. In contrast, cosubstrate molecules are recycled.

FACTORS AFFECTING PLASMA ENZYME ACTIVITIES

Plasma levels of enzymes may be increased by several mechanisms. Because enzymes are high molecular weight compounds, the most common cause for increased plasma enzymes is death of enzyme-containing cells. As cells die, activation of phospholipases leads to development of holes in the plasma membrane, allowing leakage of cytoplasmic macromolecules such as proteins. Enzymes are also released in the process of normal cell turnover; this is thought to be the source of normal plasma levels of various enzymes. Increased synthesis of enzymes by cells also leads to increased plasma enzyme levels. With increased activity of osteoblasts, plasma levels of the bone isoenzyme of ALP increase. This may be responsible for the increase in muscle-related enzymes seen with increased exercise (Dickerman et al, 1999). Many drugs that stimulate microsomal enzymes, including ethanol and antiepileptic agents, lead to increased plasma γ-glutamyl transferase (GGT). In some cases, release of enzyme from cells occurs without cell death or increased synthesis.

As discussed in Chapter 21 on liver function, ethanol causes expression of the mitochondrial isoenzyme of AST on the surface of hepatocytes and increased plasma levels. Ischemia of myocardial cells leads to loss of glycogen phosphorylase BB isoenzyme and the MB isozyme of CK into plasma. Ingestion of food leads to release of intestinal ALP into lymphatic fluid, and may transiently increase plasma levels of ALP. A number of liver enzymes (ALP, GGT, leucine aminopeptidase, 5′-nucleotidase [5′-NT]) are bound to the canalicular surface of the hepatocyte. Increased concentrations of bile salts with canalicular obstruction may release fragments of membrane with enzyme attached into the circulation, or may solubilize the membrane-binding domain (Van Hoof et al, 1997). Finally, increased plasma enzyme levels may be due to decreased clearance of enzymes from the circulation. Some smaller enzymes, such as amylase and lipase, are partially cleared by glomerular filtration; renal failure increases their plasma levels. For many enzymes, autoantibodies against one or more isoenzymes may cause the development of enzyme–antibody complexes (often termed *macroenzymes*), which result in enzyme half-lives similar to the 3-week half-life of immunoglobulin G (Remaley & Wilding, 1989). Most commonly, no specific clinical feature is associated with such macroenzymes; however, it is common to see antibodies against the intestinal isoenzyme of ALP in persons with bacterial infection (Mader et al, 1994). A similar phenomenon can occur when enzymes are bound to antibodies directed against other antigens, such as LD complexes with antibodies to streptokinase (Podlasek et al, 1989).

FACTORS AFFECTING THE LIFETIME OF ENZYMES IN BLOOD

The time course of appearance and disappearance of enzymes with cell injury is dependent on a number of factors. With cell death, defects in

http://basicbook.net

cellular membranes enlarge gradually over time; thus, smaller cytoplasmic enzymes will leak from damaged cells sooner than larger ones. For example, with myocardial injury, CK and AST are smaller than LD and appear in plasma sooner. Some enzymes are not cytoplasmic, but may be within mitochondria (isoenzymes of CK and AST) or bound to plasma membranes (such as ALP and GGT); cell death typically does not lead to release of such enzymes. If cell death is due to infarction caused by interruption of blood flow to a portion of an organ, enzymes released from damaged cells must diffuse away from the nonperfused region before appearing in the circulation. For example, in myocardial infarction, CK peaks later in persons whose coronary arteries are not successfully reperfused by the use of thrombolytic agents. The degree of elevation of an enzyme is related to the number of cells injured, the gradient in concentration between cell and plasma, and the rates of enzyme entry into and clearance from plasma. In myocardial infarction, the amount of CK released is strongly correlated to size of infarction; thus, enzyme levels with one-time injury are related to the amount of cell injury occurring. If injury is ongoing, plasma enzyme levels will continue to be elevated for a longer time period. For example, in acute hepatic injury, the time course of enzyme changes can be used to differentiate viral hepatitis, in which immunologic damage causes ongoing cell death and prolonged enzyme elevation, from ischemic and toxic injury, in which damage is immediate but short-lived and enzyme elevations rapidly return to normal.

Other important determinants of the time course of enzyme changes include the relative gradient in enzyme levels between cells and serum and the rate of clearance of enzyme from plasma. For any given amount of cell damage, the enzyme with the higher gradient between cells and serum will show greater elevation of plasma levels. For example, with hepatocyte injury, AST levels in hepatocytes are higher than those of alanine aminotransferase (ALT), and both are many times higher than levels of LD. Immediately after injury, therefore, AST will show a greater degree of elevation than will ALT, and LD will show the least degree of increase. In cardiac tissue, the gradient of CK between myocardial cells and plasma is several times higher than that for LD, leading to higher peak CK than LD levels. Once enzyme reaches plasma, the rate of clearance also becomes important; for example, the half-life of AST is much shorter than that of ALT, and the half-life of CK is shorter than that of the cardiac isoenzymes of LD. With hepatic injury, therefore, plasma ALT often becomes higher than AST within a short time after injury. Following myocardial infarction, CK returns to normal several days earlier than does LD.

ENZYME KINETICS: DETERMINATION OF TOTAL ENZYME CONCENTRATIONS IN SERUM AND OTHER BODY FLUIDS

The basic objective of clinical enzymology is the determination of the total concentrations of specific enzymes in serum and other body fluids. Qualitatively, detecting the presence of enzymes in body fluids is fortunately quite simple because each enzyme has almost total specificity for one or at most a few substrate(s). By adding the substrate, say, to serum, and observing either its disappearance or the appearance of the product, the presence of the enzyme can be ascertained. As is now explained, the rate at which substrate disappears or product appears can be directly used to determine the concentration of enzyme present (Cleland, 1970, 1990; Dixon & Webb, 1979; Cornish-Bowden, 1995; Fersht, 1999; Segel, 2009).

THE MICHAELIS-MENTEN EQUATION GIVES THE MEANS TO DETERMINE TOTAL ENZYME CONCENTRATION IN SERUM AND OTHER BODY FLUIDS

Enzymes exhibit saturation, which occurs when the rate becomes unresponsive to further increases in substrate concentration. Ordinary chemical reactions occur with rates proportional to the entire range of reactant concentrations. In an enzyme-catalyzed reaction, at low substrate concentrations rates are proportional to substrate concentration. At higher concentrations, the rate does not increase in direct proportion. At still higher substrate concentrations, the rate becomes constant and unresponsive to any further change in substrate concentration. This led to the proposal that enzyme catalysis is a two-step process that consists of an initial adsorption whereby the substrate combines with the enzyme to form a noncovalent enzyme–substrate (ES) complex, followed by a second step in which the ES complex decomposes into product (P) and free enzyme (E).

$$E + S \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} ES \xrightarrow{k_2} P + E \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-1)}$$

The formation of enzyme–substrate may be regarded as the step in which the enzyme recognizes the substrate. This process involves the formation of specific *noncovalent* interactions between enzyme and substrate. These interactions include ionic interactions, hydrophobic interactions, hydrogen bonding, and van der Waals interactions.

The physical explanation for saturation is that binding reduces the number of active sites available to form the enzyme-substrate complex. When all sites are filled, no further binding can occur until an active site discharges its contents. The step that determines the overall rate is the k_2 step. Adding additional substrate molecules under saturating conditions does not change the rate because all unbound substrate molecules must wait until an active site becomes vacant. This kinetic model is now used to derive the Michaelis-Menten equation that enables direct determination of total enzyme concentration or activity.

Derivation of the Michaelis-Menten Equation

The velocity, v, the rate at which product forms, of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction is defined as:

$$v = v_0 = d[P]/dt = k_2[ES] \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-2)}$$

where *t* is time. Note that *v* is the *initial* velocity of the reaction, referred to as v_0, where we know the concentration of the substrate. It is important to measure initial velocities to ensure the absence of product inhibition (when time [t] = 0, [P] = 0) and the loss of enzyme due to proteolysis, denaturation, or time-dependent adsorption onto glass or plastic surfaces.

The differential rate law, which gives the rate of change of [ES] with time, is the difference between the rate of the k_1 step leading to formation of the complex and the rates of the steps leading to the disappearance of [ES] and k_1 and k_2 steps.

$$d[ES]/dt = k_1[E][S] - k_{-1}[ES] - k_2[ES] \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-3)}$$

For a wide variety of enzyme-catalyzed reactions, it has been found that, over long periods of time, after an initial transient phase lasting a few milliseconds, the concentration of the ES complex remains constant (i.e., does not change in time), especially when S >> E. This is the steady-state assumption. Therefore,

$$d[ES]/dt = 0 = k_1[E][S] - k_{-1}[ES] - k_2[ES] = k_1[E][S] - (k_1 + k_2)[ES] \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-4)}$$

and

$$[ES] = k_1[E][S]/(k_{-1} + k_2) = [E][S]/K_M \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-5)}$$

where the ratio of the rate constants $k_1/(k_{-1} + k_2)$ is defined as $1/K_M$. K_M is termed the *Michaelis constant*, whose significance is discussed later.

If E_T is the total concentration of enzyme, it is equal to free enzyme plus enzyme bound to substrate, that is,

$$[E_T] = [E] + [ES] \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-6)}$$

Then, using Equation 20-5,

$$[E_T] = [E] + [E][S]/K_M \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-7)}$$

and

$$[E] = [E_T]/(1 + [S]/K_M) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-8)}$$

and substituting for [E] in Equation 20-5,

$$\begin{aligned}[ES] &= [E][S]/KM \\ &= [ET]/(1 + [S]/KM) \times [S]/KM \\ &= [ET][S]/(KM + [S])\end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-9)}$$

Combining Equation 20-9 with Equation 20-2, we have

$$\frac{d[P]}{dt} = V_0 = k_2[ES] = \frac{k_2[E_T][S]}{(K_M + S)} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-10)}$$

Equation 20-10, termed the **Michaelis-Menten equation,** accurately describes virtually all single-substrate enzyme-catalyzed reactions and many bisubstrate reactions in which the concentration of one substrate is constant throughout the course of the reaction.

http://basicbook.net

Total Enzyme Concentration Can Be Determined from the Initial Rate at Saturation

A typical plot of v_0 versus initial substrate concentration is shown in Figure 20-4. The curve is a rectangular hyperbola, and the initial rate increases up to a particular substrate concentration beyond which the rate remains constant. This occurs on the curve where $[S] > > K_M$. This is referred to as *saturation*, where all of the enzyme molecules are bound to substrate, making it impossible to increase the rate any further by increasing [S]. Note that, where saturation occurs, that is, where $[S] > > K_M$, Equation 20-10 reduces to

$$d[P]/dt = v_0 = k_2[E_T] \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-11)}$$

Because the rate is constant at saturation, the rate is zero order with respect to substrate; the rate does not depend on the concentration of reactants. There is a dependence on E_T, which, however, is not consumed in the reaction. At saturation, the initial velocity of the reaction is referred to as the *maximal velocity*, or $V_{max} = k_2E_T$. Under this saturating condition, the initial rate of the reaction is directly proportional to the total enzyme concentration. If k_2 is known, then E_T can be directly computed as the observed initial rate divided by k_2. This equation solves the problem of determining the total enzyme concentration from measurements of the rate of the enzyme-catalyzed reaction where $[S] > > K_M$.

Knowledge of k_2 and K_M Allows Determination of [S] Values That Will Saturate the Enzyme

To fulfill the conditions of Equation 20-11, it is necessary to know both K_M and k_2. These can be estimated from plots similar to the one shown in Figure 20-4. To generate these plots, the purified enzyme is dissolved in aqueous solution in a series of tubes at the same concentration. To each of these tubes, a different concentration of substrate is added, and the initial rate of reaction for each tube is determined using a suitable (mostly spectrophotometric) technique. The value of v_0 versus initial substrate concentration [S] can be plotted; the value of S at which the rate levels off (i.e., becomes constant) can be estimated from the plot.

The Lineweaver-Burk Plot Gives k_2 and K_M

The problem with this approach is that, in the v_0 versus [S] plot, the rate approaches V_{max} asymptotically. Therefore, V_{max} can only be estimated, often inaccurately, from such a plot. A more accurate method by which to accomplish this goal is to linearize the Michaelis-Menten equation (20-10) by taking the reciprocal of both sides of the equation and rearranging the terms, that is,

$$\frac{1}{V_0} = \frac{K_M}{V_{MAX}} \bullet \frac{1}{[S]} + \frac{1}{V_{MAX}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-12)}$$

As can be seen from Equation 20-12, a plot of $1/v_0$ versus 1/[S], called the *double reciprocal plot*, also called the *Lineweaver-Burk plot*, should be linear; the Y-intercept should be $1/V_{max}$, and the slope should be K_M/V_{max}. Because $1/V_{max}$ is the intercept, K_M can be computed as the slope/Y-intercept. Because from Equation 20-12, the X-intercept is $-1/K_M$, K_M can also be computed directly from this relationship. K_M can be computed directly from the Michaelis-Menten equation (20-10) from V_{max}. When $[S] = K_M$, from Equation 20-10, $v_0 = V_{max}/2$. Thus the K_M is the substrate concentration necessary to reach $V_{max}/2$. A typical Lineweaver-Burk plot is shown in Figure 20-5.

Practically, after the points are obtained from the double reciprocal plot, the least squares best line is drawn through the points from which the slope and X- and Y-intercepts are directly determined. The correlation coefficient, which is a measure of the closeness-of-fit of the experimental points to the best line, is also calculated and should be greater than 0.9, that is, a high correlation.

Note in the above procedure and as is illustrated in Figure 20-5 that substrate concentrations must span a range that brackets K_M. Measurements of v_0 at low [S] have relatively large errors, as illustrated in the upper-right portion of the line in Figure 20-5, yet it is these estimates that are critical in determining accurate values of K_M and V_{max}. Modern computer programs provide reasonably accurate values for K_M and V_{max} based on weighted values of the initial velocities. Weights are assigned based on the magnitude of v_0. In addition, other computer programs use nonlinear regression analysis to fit the weighted data to a hyperbolic v_0 versus [S] curve, as in Equation 20-10, and a Lineweaver-Burk plot is used only for visual display of the kinetic data.

Once K_M is known, saturating concentrations of substrate can be used such that $[S] > > K_M$. So, for example, if $K_M = 1 \times 10^{-5}$ M for a certain enzyme for which an assay is desired, we can use a substrate concentration of 1×10^{-3} M (1 mM) and be assured that $[S] > > K_M$, here by a factor of 100, so that Equation 20-11 applies. The substrate at this concentration is added to a patient sample (most often, serum), and the rate is observed and then divided by k_2 to obtain the total concentration of enzyme. As discussed later, because many enzymes exist as different isozymes with different k_2 and K_M values, division by k_2 is not performed, and the results are reported directly as k_2E_T, referred to as *total activity units*.

A Word About K_M

Equation 20-1 shows that the ES complex is in equilibrium with free E and free S. We can write an equilibrium constant for this process as a dissociation constant, K_s, as k_{-1}/k_1, which is equal to [E][S]/[ES]. The reciprocal of this constant, or the association constant, K_A, is k_1/k_{-1} = [ES]/[E][S]. From Equation 20-5, K_M is defined as $(k_{-1} + k_2)/k_1$. Note that when $k_{-1} > > k_2$, K_M is the same as K_S. This condition actually pertains to most enzyme-catalyzed reactions; k_{-1} is the rate of dissociation for the enzyme-substrate complex that almost always involves the breaking of noncovalent bonds, and k_2 is the rate for the breaking and/or making of covalent bonds. Usually, the energy necessary for the former process is much less than for the latter; therefore, the rate of dissociation, k_{-1}, of the noncovalent ES complex is higher than the rate, k_2, for the covalent catalysis step. Thus K_M is the dissociation constant for the ES complex. The reciprocal of this is K_A, the association constant, and it is the affinity of the substrate for the enzyme.

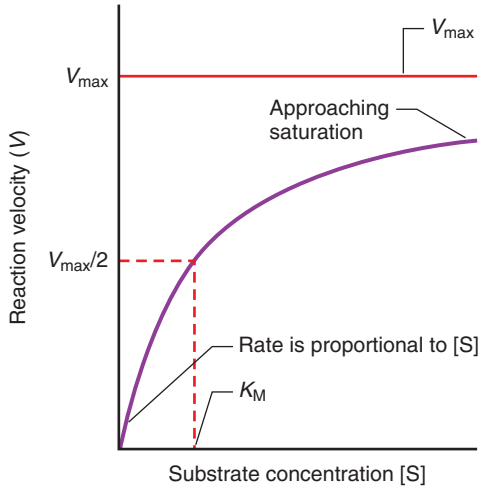


Figure 20-4 The effect of substrate concentration [S] on the velocity (V) of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction. The plot is for an enzyme that obeys Michaelis-Menten kinetics, where the maximal velocity is V_{max} and [S] equals K_M where (v) equals $V_{max}/2$.

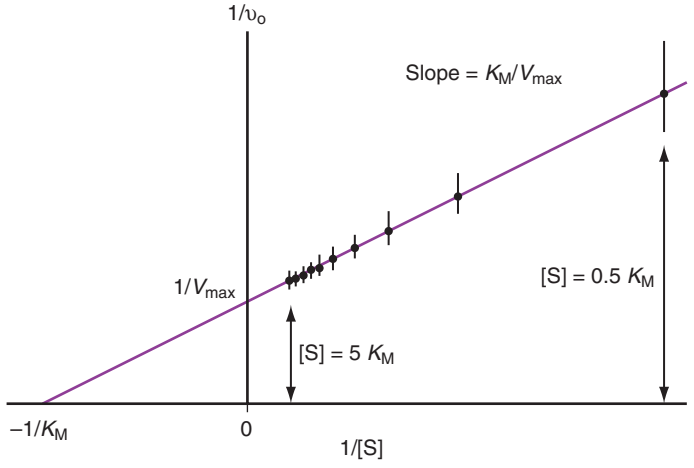


Figure 20-5 A typical Lineweaver-Burk (1/vo vs. 1/[S]) plot, from Equation 20-12, for an enzyme-catalyzed reaction. v_0 is the initial velocity of the reaction at time t = 0, where the substrate concentration, [S], is known. The figure shows that [S] must cover a range from where it is significantly less than K_M (0.5 K_M) to where it is significantly greater than K_M (5 K_M) to obtain reliable values for K_M and V_{max}. The Y-intercept is $1/V_{max}$, and the X-intercept is $-1/K_M$. The slope is K_M/V_{max}.

http://basicbook.net

However, in some cases, the rate for the covalent catalytic step is greatly enhanced. Examples include carbonic anhydrase ($k_2 = 10^6\ sec^{-1}$; carbon dioxide is the substrate) and catalase ($k_2 = 10^7\ sec^{-1}$; hydrogen peroxide is the substrate). For these enzymes, because k_2 is large, K_M is not a dissociation constant, but rather a steady-state constant, equal to k_2/k_1.

Enzyme Activity

As noted previously, computation of total enzyme concentration using Equation 20-11 is often not performed because many enzymes have multiple isozymes. For example, at least five isozymes of LD are known, each having a different set of values for K_M and k_2. In this case, the total enzyme activity of LD is given, that is, $k_2 \times [E_T]$. In these cases, enzyme activities are all reported in units called *international units*, defined originally in 1964 by the International Commission on Enzymes. One international unit (IU) is the amount of enzyme that catalyzes the formation of one micromole of product (or the disappearance of 1 micromole of substrate) in 1 minute. It applies only under specified conditions of pH, temperature, and ionic strength, all factors that influence enzyme activity, as discussed later.

With development of the Système International d'Unités system and the use of moles and seconds as base units, a second definition for the unit of enzyme activity was developed, the katal: 1 katal is defined as the amount of enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of 1 mol of substrate to product in 1 second, under the conditions used in the assay. One IU is equal to 16.7 nanokatal (nkat), and 1 katal is equal to 6×10^7 IU. Both definitions unfortunately omit volume. Generally, 1 IU is reported per liter (L); the right side of Equation 20-11 has the units of concentration per time so that IU/L conforms to these units. It is vital that, if total enzyme activity is reported, the substrate used in the assay for the enzyme also be reported because the k_2 value differs for different substrates.

As discussed later, many factors affect enzymatic activity, including pH, temperature, ionic strength, concentration of cofactors of an enzyme, presence of inhibitors, use of other enzyme reactions as indicators, and whether the forward or backward reaction is used to measure the enzyme concentration. For example, LD measured using the forward reaction has approximately one third the activity of LD measured using the reverse reaction, and lipase measured with colipase present has 5 to 10 times the activity of lipase measured without its cofactor.

Therefore, even if the same substrate is used by different laboratories, the reference ranges of enzymes may differ dramatically among these laboratories. Furthermore, differences in reference ranges between two different laboratories can still exist even if the above factors are the same for both, because of different assay conditions.

To attempt to standardize enzyme activities, one approach is to have each laboratory set the upper boundary of the reference range to 100 (Langdon, 1994). Then all other values are expressed as percentages or ratios. A result indicating that an enzyme level was 10 times normal is useful to a physician. If the result is 10X U/L, then the physician must hunt the value of X and calculate the ratio. As long as the assays are performed with internal consistency in a highly reproducible manner, quantitative results are comparable between one laboratory and another if relative activities are reported. More commonly, the results of enzyme assays are now expressed in IU along with the reference ranges for each enzyme, allowing for evaluation of the patient's condition, progression of disease, or efficacy of therapy.

Measuring Enzyme Activity

In principle, in the measurement of enzyme activity, either the rate of disappearance of substrate or the rate of appearance of product can be measured. In general, it is easier to measure small increases in product than to measure small decreases in a relatively high concentration of substrate often needed to achieve saturation. As discussed previously, to measure enzyme activity in a sample, it is most common to use substrates at saturating concentrations where zero-order kinetics with respect to [S] occur. Under these conditions, the reaction rate is directly proportional to the total amount of enzyme present.

Equation 20-11 states that, at saturation, the rate of product formation with time is constant. This implies that the concentration of product increases linearly with time. Experimentally, P is determined at different time points, and a least-squares best-fit line through the points is determined. If the correlation coefficient is high, [P] increases linearly with t, confirming saturation of the enzyme by substrate. The slope of this line is V_{max}, which may be reported directly as activity or divided by k_2 to give enzyme concentration.

The most common cause of a *non*linear relationship between P and t is the presence of an inhibitor that will be discussed later. In cases such as these, dilution of the serum or other body fluid sample is warranted because this will dilute the concentration of the inhibitor, although it will also dilute the total enzyme concentration. However, as long as [S] is present at saturating conditions, and [P] can be measured, valid total enzyme concentrations or activities can be measured.

Typically, in enzyme assays, a lag phase follows mixture of the specimen and reagents, when preliminary reactions and mixing of sample occur. The initial absorbance of the sample is based on the absorbance due to the reagents and the sample, and is considered to be zero in terms of making an interpretation of enzyme activity. Once the reaction begins, the graph will follow a straight line for a period of time; at this point, the reaction is zero-order and enzyme activity can be determined. If the reaction is allowed to proceed, substrate is consumed and [S] falls toward K_M. If [S] falls substantially below K_M, the reaction will then be first-order, and v_0 will be affected both by the amount of substrate (which is not a constant) and by the enzyme activity.

Spectrophotometric Assays

In most cases, enzyme activity is measured spectrophotometrically. In addition, other detection methods are used as appropriate, depending on the product being measured. For example, lipase acts on emulsions of lipid; these are often turbid, so that measurement of the rate of clearance of turbidity could be used to determine lipase activity. Glucose oxidase, widely used to measure glucose concentration, is a flavoprotein that uses oxygen as an electron acceptor. The change in potential due to alteration in charge on the acceptor can be measured to determine the reaction rate. Urease is widely used to measure urea concentration; urease splits urea into bicarbonate and ammonium ions. The change in conductance of the specimen due to the appearance of the ions in the sample can be used to determine the rate of reaction.

Because assay methods based on spectrophotometry are the most common, we will focus on these in describing how enzyme assays are performed. In the simplest case, the substrate does not absorb light at a particular wavelength at which the product absorbs strongly. An excellent example of this is LD, which catalyzes reversibly the oxidation of lactate to pyruvate. Because lactate is a unique substrate for LD, it is preferred. Pyruvate can be used as the substrate, except that it is also the substrate for several other enzymes such as pyruvate dehydrogenase and ALT, among others.

When lactate is oxidized to pyruvate, the cofactor, NAD^+, becomes reduced to NADH. For each mole of lactate oxidized to pyruvate, 1 mole of NADH forms. NADH absorbs strongly at 340 nm, and NAD^+ does not absorb light at this wavelength. Therefore, the addition of saturating concentrations of both lactate and NAD^+ to a patient's serum will result in a linear increase in absorbance at 340 nm over a given period, from which total enzyme activity is directly determined as described earlier. In this case, the increase in concentration of NADH, ΔP, over the time period, Δt, is proportional to the increase in absorbance, ΔA, at 340 nm, by Beer's law, as described in Chapter 4, that is,

$$\Delta P/\Delta t = \varepsilon \times (\Delta A/\Delta t) \times L \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-13)}$$

L in Equation 20-13 is the pathlength of the reaction vessel or cuvette, almost always equal to 1 cm. ε is a proportionality constant (most often, the molar extinction coefficient) in Beer's law, which is $6.22 \times 10^3\ L\ mol^{-1}\ cm^{-1}$ for NADH at 340 nm. On most current chemistry analyzers, a volume of a patient's serum sample is added to the reaction cuvette containing the reaction components (lactate and NAD^+), and ΔA is observed. This results in dilution of the volume (Vp) of the patient's serum to the total volume of the reaction mixture (Vo), so that

$$\text{Enzyme activity} = \Delta P/\Delta t = \varepsilon \cdot (\Delta A/\Delta t) \cdot L \cdot (Vo/Vp) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-14)}$$

One caveat in the previous assay is that LD also catalyzes the reverse reaction (i.e., pyruvate to lactate). Therefore, as pyruvate forms, it can serve as an end-product competitive inhibitor (see the Inhibition of Enzymes section later in the chapter) and can drive the reaction back to lactate. Therefore, it is important to be able to take the measurements in Equation 20-14 over a short time before pyruvate builds up to significant levels.

Coupled Enzymatic Reactions

In many instances, however, neither the product nor the substrate of a chemical reaction can be measured conveniently. In such instances, the enzymatic reaction can be "coupled" to another reaction that uses the product of the enzyme-catalyzed reaction to produce an indicator substance. An example of a typical coupled enzymatic reaction is the Oliver-Rosalki method for measurement of CK activity, illustrated in Equations 20-15 through 20-17, later. The reverse reaction of CK is used,

http://basicbook.net

producing adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which is used in a second reaction to produce glucose-6-phosphate (G6P) from glucose + ATP. The third reaction in the sequence results in the reduction of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate, or $NADP^+$, to NADPH, the indicator of the reaction. In these coupled reactions, it is critical that the rate-limiting step in the overall reaction is the CK-mediated step that generates ATP. This can be achieved by using high concentrations of the indicator enzymes to ensure rapid conversion of the substrates of the subsequent reactions.

One potential problem with CK measurements when this reaction scheme is used is the presence of other enzymes that can generate ATP. Adenylate kinase, an enzyme found in red blood cells and liver, converts adenosine diphosphate (ADP) to ATP (see Equation 20-34); specimens with high adenylate kinase activity will have falsely elevated values for CK activity.

Creatine phosphate + ADP → Creatine + ATP (catalyzed by CK) **(Eq. 20-15)**

Glucose + ATP → G6P + ADP (catalyzed by hexokinase) **(Eq. 20-16)**

G6P + $NADP^+$ → 6-Phosphogluconate + NADPH (catalyzed by glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, or G6PD) **(Eq. 20-17)**

Complication:

2 ADP → ATP + AMP (catalyzed by adenylate kinase) **(Eq. 20-18)**

The absorbance increase at 340 nm due to NADPH is proportional to the [ATP] generated as the end-product of the CK reaction, as expressed in Equation 20-15.

In assays of enzyme activity, some methods use **endpoint** measurements, determining the concentration of substrate or product at a specific time after addition of the sample. Endpoint methods are typically used in simple methods, such as bedside glucose testing or dipstick reactions, as for glucose or leukocyte esterase in urine. Endpoint methods may give erroneously low results in situations where enzyme activity is very high. Most enzymatic assays use **kinetic** methods of measurement (as discussed earlier), whereby the rate of change in concentration of substrate or product is determined. (For the sake of simplicity, throughout the rest of this section, only measurement systems that detect appearance of product will be described; the same principles, however, would apply to situations in which rate of disappearance of substrate is being monitored.) Kinetic methods are more accurate and make it easier to detect changes in reaction conditions and samples requiring dilution. In a time-course study, the rate of reaction can be expressed as $\Delta P/\Delta t$, the change in amount of product per unit time. Because the IU and the katal represent the amount of enzyme producing a specific amount of product in a given time period, this approach allows direct reporting of enzyme activity in either IU or katal, as desired.

Enzyme Assays Under Nonsaturating Conditions: First-Order Rate Processes

As discussed later, there are circumstances under which it may not be possible to perform an enzyme assay under saturating conditions where Equation 20-11 applies. In these circumstances, assay conditions may be used in which $S < K_M$. The Michaelis-Menten equation (20-10) then becomes

$$v_0 = d[P]/dt = k_2E_T \cdot [S]/K_M \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-19)}$$

Because E_T is constant, the initial rate of the reaction depends only on the concentration of S. When S decreases, ES and P increase so that $-d[S]/dt = d[ES]/dt + d[P]/dt$. But, under the reaction condition that $[S] >> [E]$, the steady-state assumption, $d[ES]/dt = 0$, is valid. Therefore, the rate of product formation equals the rate of substrate depletion, that is,

$$v_0 = d[P]/dt = -d[S]/dt = k_2E_T \cdot [S]/K_M \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-20)}$$

This is the equation for a first-order process, that is, the rate depends only on the concentration of a single species, in this case the substrate. Because the rate also formally depends on E_T, it is properly called a second-order reaction, but in this case, E_T is constant and does not change during the reaction. It is therefore referred to as a *pseudo–first-order* reaction. E_T can be determined from determination of the initial rate of the reaction where the initial substrate concentration, S_0, is known. Because K_M and k_2 are known,

$$E_T = (v_0/[S_0]) \times (K_M/k_2) \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-21)}$$

If only total enzyme activity is to be reported, then v_0/S_0, which is equal to $(k_2/K_M)[E_T]$, is reported because this quantity is directly proportional to E_T. Note though that these are not the same activity units as are used under saturating conditions because the total enzyme concentration in that case is multiplied only by k_2, and in the current circumstance, it is multiplied by k_2/K_M because of the fact that saturation has not occurred.

Another approach to determination of E_T under nonsaturating conditions is to integrate Equation 20-20 for S in terms of t. This results in the following relationship:

$$\ln([S]/[S_0]) = 2.303\log([S]/[S_o]) = -(k_2E_T/K_M) \cdot t \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-22)}$$

where ln is the natural logarithm to the base e and $[S_0]$ is the initial substrate concentration. If the substrate concentration is determined at specific times, a plot of the log (S/S_0) versus time should give a straight line whose slope is $-(k_2E_T/K_M)/2.303$. Because both k_2 and K_M are known, E_T can be directly evaluated. This method eliminates the need to measure initial velocities involving small changes in [S]. This method is advantageous when the substrate solubility does not permit saturating substrate concentrations to be reached.

The above first-order rate equation is the general equation for all first-order rate processes that abound in biology. Many reactions in the body occur either by first-order processes or by pseudo–first-order processes in which the rate depends only on the concentration of one species. As discussed in Chapter 23, when drugs are administered to the body, they decay very often by a first-order process, where the rate of disappearance of the drug depends only on the concentration of the drug. One important feature of this process is the so-called **half-time.** Note, from Equation 20-22, that the half-time, or the time required for half of S_0 to be consumed, that is, when $[S] = [S_0]/2$, is a constant that depends only on the rate constant in the equation. The nondependence of $t_{1/2}$ on concentration is a cardinal feature of first-order rate processes.

Because log (2) = 0.3, the above equation reduces to

$$t_{1/2} = 0.69/k \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-23)}$$

where, in this case, $k = K_M/k_2E_T$ and $t_{1/2}$ is the half-time, that is, the time required for half of the substrate to be consumed. Thus, if the half-time for substrate consumption is known, E_T can also be directly computed from Equation 20-23, provided that K_M and k_2 are known.

OTHER FACTORS AFFECTING ENZYME ACTIVITY

Temperature

Enzyme-catalyzed reaction rates are extremely sensitive to temperature changes; to ensure accuracy, the temperature of the reaction mixture must not deviate by more than ±0.1° C from the assigned temperature. In general, every 10° C increase in temperature leads to an approximate doubling of enzyme activity, although this varies slightly from one enzyme to another. The use of higher temperatures gives faster reaction rates and improves sensitivity—an advantage when enzyme activities are low. Lower temperatures increase the linear limit of an assay, requiring fewer dilutions. The choice of temperature with most modern instruments is governed by the capabilities of the instrument. There is a limit to the amount of temperature increase that can be used; most enzymes start to denature and become inactive as the temperature is increased. For example, CK starts to denature at 37° C, and amylase begins to denature at 45° C. On the other hand, some enzymes remain stable at extremely high temperatures. As an extreme case, the Taq polymerase used in the polymerase chain reaction is stable at 95° C. Taq polymerase and the polymerase chain reaction are discussed in Chapter 66.

pH

Enzymes have a pH optimum for maximal activity; usually, the pH of the reaction conditions is chosen to be that at which the enzyme exhibits the greatest activity. Selection of pH is not always critical; some enzymes have a very broad pH maximum, so that small changes in pH do not appreciably change activity. For example, ALP has maximum activity at pH values between 9 and 10. In some cases, particularly for enzymes with multiple isoenzymes, selection of pH represents a compromise, as different isoenzymes may have maximum activity at differing pH values. In this situation, the pH for the reaction is selected to allow measurement of the activities of all isozymes.

Salt and Protein Concentrations

The ionic strength of solutions affects enzyme activity; if ionic strength is too high, enzyme activity drops. The activity of many enzymes is also affected by protein concentration. When enzyme activity is over the linear

http://basicbook.net

limits of the assay, dilution of plasma typically requires use of **enzyme diluents** containing plasma proteins. Human plasma contains about 70 g protein/L, but normal urine has almost no protein; use of proteins such as albumin increases the activity of urinary amylase and standardizes its measurement. In protein-free solutions, enzymes lose activity rapidly either by denaturation or by adsorption to the walls of the container.

Inhibitors and Interferences

Typically, enzymes are measured in serum samples. Heparinized plasma is generally considered an equivalent sample to serum for most routine analytes, but this may not be the case for enzymes. Heparin may inhibit the activity of some enzymes, notably amylase and AST (using some, but not all, methods). Citrate, used in evacuated collection tubes for coagulation testing and as a preservative in blood products, complexes divalent cations; citrate-containing specimens may cause falsely low results for enzymes such as CK and ALP. Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) and fluoride inhibit the activity of many enzymes and should almost never be used for specimens for enzyme analysis. An exception is in measurement of renin, where EDTA inhibits the action of enzymes that convert prorenin to the active enzyme renin and prevents artifactual increase in renin activity.

CAVEATS IN ENZYME ASSAYS

Some of the causes of errors in enzyme assays, such as the presence of inhibitors, have been mentioned previously. Here, we summarize the most common problems that can be encountered.

K_M-Type Mutations

In certain deficiency states, the conditions of the in vitro assay may not mirror the in vivo conditions that give rise to the deficiency state. In cases in which a genetic defect does not alter normal protein levels of enzyme, and the k_{cat} value is unchanged, by applying the principle that the assay should be carried out at saturating substrate concentration, it is possible that a K_M-type mutation may go undetected because the enzyme, inactive at low substrate levels, exhibits full or nearly full activity at the higher [S] used in the assay. For example, a variant erythrocyte hypoxanthine-guanine-phosphoribosyltransferase is inactive in assays at low [S], but full activity is restored by increasing the substrate concentration. To guard against such a false positive, a clinical evaluation should include a determination of the K_M for the mutant enzyme.

One technique that can be employed to detect enzyme mutations that affect activity is the use of monoclonal antibodies directed against the enzyme of interest. Immunoassays for enzymes are discussed later. Correspondence between measurement of enzyme activity and the protein (enzyme) concentration from immunoassays will pertain as long as the enzyme antigen is fully active. Such is not always the case when inherited deficiencies associated with point mutations are involved. In these instances, estimates of enzyme concentration based on immunoassays can exceed those based on measurements of enzyme activity, indicating a defect in the enzyme. If the underlying basis of disease is genetic, it is best to estimate enzyme activity from kinetic measurements and compare these with normal values. Some mutations destabilize protein structure, leading to rapid intracellular proteolysis of the enzyme. In this instance, the result derived from immunologic methods and enzyme activity measurements can concur. The presence of inhibitors in the source biological fluid may lead to underestimation of the amount of enzyme present based on activity, but not immunologic measurements. Usually, reversible enzyme inhibitors will not interfere with immunologic estimates of enzyme concentration.

Cyclic Enzyme Instability

In some cases, an enzyme defect may go undetected because the clinical evaluation occurs at an inappropriate time. Administration of the antimalarial primaquine to a G6PD-deficient individual carrying the common type **A–** variant (G6PD **A–**) causes transient hemolytic anemia. Patients can recover completely from the anemia despite continued drug treatment. The type **A–** variant has normal kinetic parameters but reduced thermal stability. The initial episode clears older erythrocytes that have reduced G6PD activity. The older cells are replaced by new cells that have higher amounts of enzyme. The quantity of G6PD molecules in erythrocytes is a function of erythrocyte age, and the rate of loss of enzyme molecules in type **A–** variant cells exceeds that in normal cells by a significant margin. Levels of G6PD activity following recovery from anemia will be substantially higher than if assays are performed before or during the hemolytic episode, because hemolysis selectively destroys older cells containing smaller amounts of enzyme. Recovery results in the replacement of these older cells with new cells with higher levels of G6PD **A–** molecules. During and following recovery, the younger set of cells is able to cope with the primaquine treatment because of the presence of higher levels of enzyme activity.

Presence of Enzyme Inhibitors

As discussed later, enzyme inhibitors present in biological fluids may permit underestimation of the amount of enzyme present. It is important to note that if the presence of an inhibitor is suspected, the most effective procedure is to dilute the sample, so that the effect of the inhibitor will be minimal. In case of the possibility of end-product inhibition, initial velocity determinations eliminate this effect because, initially, at $t = 0$, $[P] = 0$, where there will be no inhibitory effect. In rare cases, in enzyme-catalyzed reactions in which the product binds to the enzyme with a much higher affinity than the substrate, $\Delta P/\Delta t$ or $-\Delta S/\Delta t$ may be curvilinear, and estimates of the initial velocity are best made from tangents drawn to the substrate or product time-course curves at $t = 0$. These tangents are best determined from continuous traces of substrate disappearance or product formation.

Protease Degradation of Unstable Enzymes

Proteases in plasma may attack the enzyme while the velocity estimate is being made. This is especially true for enzymes that may have reduced thermal stability as discussed earlier. If the enzymes become unfolded, they are subject to attack by serum proteases, including trypsin and chymotrypsin and a number of other proteases. Enzyme damage through proteolysis and substrate decomposition may be corrected by the use of suitable blanks and preincubation studies.

Thermal Instability

The stability of the enzyme under evaluation must be known, and sample storage conditions must be determined. For example, LD cannot be stored at temperatures <0° C without significant loss of activity.

Presence of Inhibitory Compounds in Blood Collection Tubes

As discussed previously, in many cases serum or plasma and not whole blood must be used for the determination of enzyme activity in whole blood samples collected in anticoagulant-containing tubes. Polyanionic anticoagulants, such as citrate, heparin, and EDTA, inactivate metal-containing enzymes. For example, EDTA inactivates the zinc-containing enzyme ALP, an enzyme that is commonly assayed.

Competing Reactions in an Enzyme Assay

As noted in the preceding section, substrates used to assay specific enzymes may be subject to attack by other enzymes normally present in biologic fluids. Assays for LD using pyruvate as the substrate can be complicated by the presence of other enzymes such as pyruvate dehydrogenase and ALT that react with this substrate. The coupled assay system for CK activity can be complicated by the presence in serum of the enzyme adenylate kinase, which can consume the substrate ADP (see Equation 20-18.) This problem cannot be corrected by using saturating concentrations of ADP because the product of the adenylate kinase reaction is also ATP, and the ATP produced in the CK reaction has to be used to determine the amount of G6P produced to accurately determine the CK level.

Time-Dependent Inactivation of Certain Enzymes

Sample age may be important in determining enzyme activity. Enzymes whose activity depends on active-site sulfhydryl groups may suffer slow inactivation through oxidation and/or disulfide exchange reactions. In many instances, these processes are irreversible and lead to underestimation of the enzyme concentration by activity measurements.

ANTIBODY-BASED TECHNIQUES FOR MEASURING ENZYMES

As mentioned earlier, immunoassays can be used to measure the mass of enzyme protein. These assays are described at length in Chapter 23 and in Part 5. Immunoassays are the method of choice when it is desired to quantitate one or more isoenzymes of an enzyme in a sample because specific antibodies raised against each individual isoenzyme will identify and quantitate each of the variants present in the sample.

Immunoassays are, in general, less affected by factors that affect enzyme activity and are often more precise. As with enzyme activity, however, the determination of enzyme mass may vary depending on the reagents used;

http://basicbook.net

calibrators often lead to different results for mass activity between different methods. Examples include the MB isoenzyme of CK, the pancreatic isoenzymes of amylase, the prostatic and bone isoenzymes of acid phosphatase (ACP), and the bone isoenzyme of ALP. Antibodies can also be used to selectively inhibit or bind particular enzyme subunits. This approach allows the total and isoenzyme measurements to be expressed in the same units. For example, antibodies to CK-M subunits inhibit half of CK-MB isoenzyme and all of CK-MM isoenzyme. Measurement of CK activity of a sample after incubation with an anti-M antibody can be used to determine the activity of non-M subunits of CK.

Antibodies can also be used as **capture** antibodies to separate a particular isoenzyme from other forms of the same enzyme, followed by measurement of enzymatic activity. Examples of such capture assays include tests for the bone isoenzyme of ALP and the bone and prostate isoenzymes of ACP . Some enzymes circulate bound to antiproteases, such as prostate-specific antigen (PSA) (see Chapter 73) and α-1-antichymotrypsin or trypsin and α-1-antitrypsin. Antibodies may differ in their ability to measure free and bound forms. Some enzymes are also bound to β-2-macroglobulin, such as PSA (Otto et al, 1998) and ACP (Brehme et al, 1999); enzyme bound to this antiprotease usually is not enzymatically active and cannot be measured by most immunoassays, because the binding site is hidden from antibody recognition. Finally, in common with other immunoassays, measurement of enzymes by immunoassay can show interferences from substances that bind to reagent antibodies, such as heterophile antibodies (Sosolik et al, 1997) and rheumatoid factor (Dasgupta et al, 1999).

INHIBITION OF ENZYMES

The inhibition of enzymes may be reversible or irreversible. In irreversible inhibition, a covalent bond is formed between the inhibitor and the enzyme, and enzyme activity cannot be restored by dissociation of the inhibitor. Examples include the inhibition of acetylcholinesterase (AChE) and pseudocholinesterase (PChE) by chemical warfare agents such as sarin and tabun that irreversibly phosphorylate the side chain **OH** group of the active-site serine residue. The first fluorinated anesthetic, fluroxene ($\mathbf{CF_3CH_2OCH{=}CH_2}$) proved to be too toxic for use as a general anesthetic because it irreversibly alkylated a heme ring N atom in the cytochrome P450 monooxygenase responsible for its detoxification. This alkylation led to complete loss of enzyme activity.

Reversible inhibition is one of three types: competitive, uncompetitive, and noncompetitive. As noted earlier, if the presence of an inhibitor is suspected in an enzyme assay of a patient's sample, such as by observation of a nonlinear [P] versus time curve, an effective strategy is to dilute the sample, so that the effect of the inhibitor is reduced. Even if this procedure concurrently dilutes the enzyme, the enzyme assay can still be effectively performed, especially if the substrate is present at saturating conditions.

COMPETITIVE INHIBITION

Competitive inhibition occurs when the inhibitor binds at the same site as the substrate. The molecular basis for the binding of competitive inhibitors at the active site is that the substrate and the inhibitor are structurally similar, with the result that the enzyme is "deceived" into recognizing and binding the inhibitor. Examples of competitive inhibition include the inhibition of trypsin by α-1-antitrypsin, chymotrypsin by α-1-antichymotrypsin, dihydrofolate reductase by the chemotherapeutic agent methotrexate, and the Krebs cycle enzyme succinic dehydrogenase by malonate. In some reactions, the product of the reaction, which may be structurally similar to the substrate, may competitively inhibit the reaction, a phenomenon known as **end-product inhibition.** A variation of this phenomenon can occur occasionally in which the buildup of the end-product can reverse the forward reaction, regenerating the substrate. Not infrequently, drugs are used as competitive inhibitors of targeted enzymes. For example, as discussed later, a major target of antihypertensive drugs is angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE).

HOW COMPETITIVE INHIBITORS AFFECT THE MICHAELIS-MENTEN EQUATION

The kinetic mechanism for **competitive inhibition** is shown in Figure 20-6, *B*. The inhibitor is assumed to be in rapid equilibrium with free **E** and the **EI** complex. Kinetically, the inhibitor reduces the concentration of free **E** available to combine with **S**. The equation of conservation of enzyme now reads

Reactions Schemes for the Three Types of Inhibition of Enzyme-Catalyzed Reactions

A. Normal (uninhibited)

$$E + S \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} ES \xrightarrow{k_2} E + P$$

B. Competitive Inhibition

$$E + S \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} ES \xrightarrow{k_2} E + P$$

$$+ \quad I \quad \rightleftharpoons \quad EI, \qquad K_I = \frac{[E]\,[I]}{K_I}$$

C. Unccompetitive Inhibition

$$E + S \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} ES \xrightarrow{k_2} E + P$$

$$+ \quad I \quad \rightleftharpoons \quad ESI, \qquad K_I = \frac{[ES]\,[I]}{[ESI]}$$

D. Noncompetitive Inhibition

1. Simple

$$E + S \underset{k_{2\text{-}1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} ES \xrightarrow{k_2} E + P$$

$$+ \quad I \quad \rightleftharpoons \quad EI, \qquad K_I = \frac{[E]\,[I]}{[EI]}$$

$$+ \quad I \quad \rightleftharpoons \quad ESI, \qquad K_I = \frac{[ES]\,[I]}{[ESI]}$$

$$EI + S \rightleftharpoons ESI$$

$$\boxed{K_I = K_I'}$$

2. Mixed: Same scheme as above, except:

$$K_I = \frac{[E]\,[I]}{[EI]} \neq K_I' = \frac{[ES]\,[I]}{[ESI]}$$

$$\boxed{K_I \neq K_I'}$$

Figure 20-6 **Schemes for all types of inhibition of enzyme activity. A,** The scheme for an uninhibited reaction. **B,** The scheme for competitive inhibition, showing that the inhibitor binds competitively to free enzyme, decreasing the binding of the substrate to the free enzyme. This results in a lower apparent affinity of the substrate for the enzyme, making the apparent K_M higher than the true K_M. However, this inhibition does not affect the catalytic rate, V_{max}. K_I is the dissociation constant for the enzyme–inhibitor complex ([EI]). **C,** The scheme for uncompetitive inhibition, showing that the inhibitor binds only to the enzyme-substrate complex such that it blocks catalysis but not the binding of the substrate to the enzyme and therefore affects V_{max} but not K_M. K_I in this case is the dissociation constant for the enzyme–substrate–inhibitor ternary complex ([ESI]). **D,** The scheme for noncompetitive inhibition, which is of two types: (1) simple and (2) mixed. In both cases, the inhibitor binds both to the free enzyme *and* to the enzyme-substrate complex, affecting both V_{max} and K_M. In simple noncompetitive inhibition *(1),* the affinity of the inhibitor both for the free enzyme and for the enzyme-substrate complex is the same, making the two respective dissociation constants, K_I and K_I', equal. In mixed noncompetitive inhibition (2), K_I and K_I' are not equal.

http://basicbook.net

$$[E_T] = [E] + [EI] + [ES] \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-24)}$$

[EI] is defined in terms of the equilibrium constant, $\mathbf{K_I}$, for the dissociation of the inhibitor from the **EI** complex, and

$$[EI] = [E][I]/K_I \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-25)}$$

Because the steady-state equation for ES (Equations 20-3, 20-4, and 20-5) remains the same, Equation 20-24 becomes

$$E_T = E + [E][S]/K_M + [E][I]/K_I \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-26)}$$

$$[E] = \frac{[E_T]}{\left(1 + \frac{[S]}{K_M} + \frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-27)}$$

Because, as in Equation 20-2,

$$d[P]/dt = k_2[ES] = [E][S]/K_M \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-28)}$$

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = \frac{k_2[S]}{K_M} \cdot \frac{[E_T]}{\left(1 + \frac{[S]}{K_M} + \frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-29)}$$

and

$$\frac{d[P]}{dt} = k_2[ES] = \frac{k_2[E_T][S]}{K_M\left(1 + \frac{[I]}{K_I}\right) + [S]} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-30)}$$

Note from this equation that the factor $(1 + [I]/K_I)$ multiplies K_M in the denominator. This means that K_M is multiplied by a number ≥1. Thus, if a competitive inhibitor is present at an appreciable concentration so that this factor > > 1, concentrations of S that would have saturated the enzyme will now no longer be able to do so. If a competitive inhibitor is present, its effect can be eliminated by increasing the substrate concentration such that $S > > K_M(1+[I]/K_I)$.

Inversion of Equation 20-30 gives the Lineweaver-Burk linear transform as follows:

$$\frac{I}{V_0} = \frac{K_M\left(1 + \frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)}{V_{MAX}} \cdot \frac{1}{[S]} + \frac{1}{V_{MAX}} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-31)}$$

Plots of $1/v_o$ versus 1/[S] at different inhibitor concentrations give linear traces in which the slope, but not the intercept, is altered in the presence of a competitive inhibitor. V_{max} is unchanged, and only K_M is altered. K_M is modified by the coefficient $(1 + [I]/K_I)$. The X-intercept of this equation (where $1/v_o$ is 0) is $-1/[(1 + I/K_I)K_M]$. The effect of competitive inhibitors on enzyme-catalyzed reactions is summarized in Figure 20-7.

UNCOMPETITIVE INHIBITION

As shown in Figure 20-6, *C*, **uncompetitive** inhibition occurs when the inhibitor binds only to the ES complex, and not to free E. Therefore, no EI complex forms. Binding of the substrate causes a conformational change, creating a site for binding of the inhibitor.

EFFECT OF UNCOMPETITIVE INHIBITORS ON THE MICHAELIS-MENTEN EQUATION

In keeping with a similar procedure that was used for deriving Equation 20-30, we obtain the following expression:

$$V_0 = \frac{V_{MAX}[S]}{K_M + [S]\left(1 + \frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-32)}$$

Note here that the same factor, $(1 + [I]/K_I)$, now multiplies S, rather than K_M, in the denominator of the Michaelis-Menten equation, as in the case of competitive inhibition discussed previously. This has the paradoxical effect of causing saturation to be reached at *lower* values of S than for the normal, uninhibited case (see Fig. 20-6) because S is multiplied by a factor that is >1. However, the *rate* of the uncompetitively inhibited enzyme-catalyzed reaction at saturation is *lower* than it normally should be; the maximal rate at saturation is $V_{max}/(1 + I/K_I)$. No matter how high the substrate concentration is in this case, the normal rate at saturation, that is, V_{max}, cannot be reached, unlike in the case of competitive inhibition discussed in the preceding section.

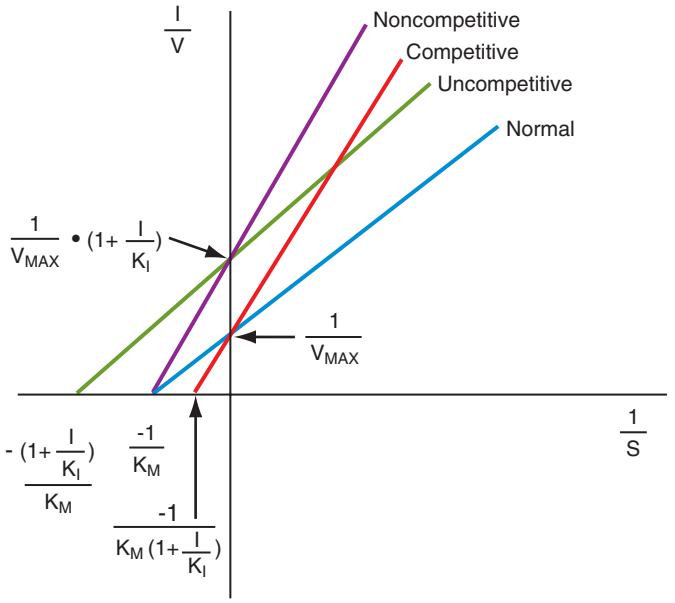


Figure 20-7 Lineweaver-Burk plots for each type of inhibition shown in Figure 20-6, showing Y- and X-intercepts. To avoid cluttering, the slopes are not shown. The slopes of the lines for uninhibited reaction *(blue)* and uncompetitive inhibition *(green)* are K_M/V_{max}. The slopes of the lines for competitive *(red)* and noncompetitive *(purple)* inhibitions are K_M $(1 + I/K_I)$.

At low **[S]** values, v_o approaches $V_{max}/K_M[S]$, as for the uninhibited case, and the uncompetitive inhibitor is without effect. This suggests that dilution of the specimen will remove the effect of the inhibitor and will enable the uninhibited rate of the reaction to be determined. Under these conditions, E_T or activity can be directly computed from the first-order kinetic analysis (Equation 20-19) at low substrate concentration.

The double reciprocal form of Equation 20-32 is as follows:

$$\frac{1}{V_0} = \frac{K_M}{V_{MAX}} \cdot \frac{1}{[S]} + \left(1 + \frac{[I]}{K_I}\right) \cdot \frac{1}{V_{MAX}} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-33)}$$

The Lineweaver-Burk plot of this equation has a slope that is the same as for the uninhibited (normal) reaction, but the intercept, $(1/V_{max})$ $(1 + [I]/K_I)$, will be higher for uncompetitive inhibition than for the normal case, that is, $1/V_{max}$, as shown in Figure 20-6, *C*. The X-intercept (where $1/v_o = 0$) is $-(1 + [I]/K_I)/K_M$. If [I] is known, either intercept can be used to compute K_I. The effect of uncompetitive inhibitors on enzyme-catalyzed reactions is summarized in Figure 20-7.

SIMPLE AND MIXED NONCOMPETITIVE INHIBITION

Noncompetitive inhibition occurs when the inhibitor, similar to the uncompetitive inhibitor, binds at a site distinct from the substrate-binding site. Both the inhibitor and the substrate are capable of binding the enzyme simultaneously. Binding of the inhibitor to this second site may completely abolish enzyme activity or may only partially reduce it. Hence, noncompetitive inhibition may be **full** or **partial**. Unlike uncompetitive inhibitors, noncompetitive inhibitors bind both to free E and to ES. If the binding of the inhibitor and of the substrate occurs independently of each other, **simple noncompetitive inhibition** exists. If bound substrate alters the affinity of the enzyme for the inhibitor, a condition of **mixed competitive inhibition** exists. Binding of the noncompetitive inhibitor alters the conformation of the substrate-binding site. The substrate can still bind; however, the binding affinity and/or the catalytic activity is/are reduced.

EFFECTS OF NONCOMPETITIVE INHIBITORS ON THE MICHAELIS-MENTEN EQUATION

The kinetic scheme for this type of inhibition is shown in Figure 20-6, *D*. Here, the inhibitor can bind *both* to the free enzyme *and* to the enzyme-substrate complex. If the affinity or dissociation constants for each of these

http://basicbook.net

processes are the same, as shown in Figure 20-6, then the pattern appears to be a combination of competitive and uncompetitive inhibition and is termed *simple noncompetitive inhibition*. Thus, in this case, the term $(1 + [I]/K_I)$ multiplies both terms in the denominator of the Michaelis-Menten equation (see Equation 20-10), or

$$V_0 = \frac{V_{MAX} \cdot [S]}{\left(1+\frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)\cdot K_M + \left(1+\frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)\cdot [S]} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-34)}$$

If the two K_I constants differ, the inhibition is termed ***mixed noncompetitive inhibition***. For this latter case, if K_I is the dissociation constant for the inhibitor when it binds to free enzyme, and if K_I' is the dissociation constant for the inhibitor when it binds to the enzyme-substrate complex, then the Michaelis-Menten rate law for noncompetitive inhibition is

$$V_0 = \frac{V_{MAX}[S]}{\left(1+\frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)\cdot K_M + \left(1+\frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)\cdot [S]} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-35)}$$

The Lineweaver-Burk equation for simple noncompetitive inhibition is

$$\frac{1}{V_0} = \frac{K_M}{V_{MAX}}\cdot\left(1+\frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)\cdot\frac{1}{[S]} + \frac{1}{V_{MAX}}\cdot\left(1+\frac{[I]}{K_I}\right) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-36)}$$

And, for mixed inhibition,

$$\frac{1}{V_0} = \frac{K_M}{V_{MAX}}\cdot\left(1+\frac{[I]}{K_I}\right)\cdot\frac{1}{[S]} + \frac{1}{V_{MAX}} + \left(1+\frac{[I]}{K_I'}\right) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-37)}$$

As can be seen from Equation 20-35, for simple noncompetitive inhibition, in the presence of inhibitor, both the slope and the intercept increase in value by the factor $(1 + [I]/K_I)$. This result is based on the assumption that the substrate does not modify the affinity of the enzyme for the inhibitor, and vice versa. Note that, because the inhibitor binds to the enzyme-substrate complex, thereby inactivating it, the maximal velocity is lowered as was the case for uncompetitive inhibition, as discussed earlier. Therefore, the intercept for this condition is $1/V_{max}\ (1 + [I]/K_I)$, that is, instead of $1/V_{max}$ as in the normal case. Likewise, K_M is increased by the same factor. However, as discussed previously, K_M is computed as the **ratio** of the slope of the Lineweaver-Burk plot to the intercept. Because both of these terms contain the factor $(1 + [I]/K_I)$, this factor cancels, and the computation yields the value of the actual K_M. This, of course, does not happen in mixed noncompetitive inhibition where the two constants for inhibitor binding differ from one another. In this case, K_M^{app} is $K_M \bullet (1 + [I]/K_I)/(1 + [I]/K_I')$. The X-intercept for simple noncompetitive inhibition from Equation 20-36 is $-1/K_M$, and for mixed noncompetitive inhibition, it is $-(1 + [I]/K_I')/(1 + [I]/K_I)K_M$. The effect of simple noncompetitive inhibitors (that have the same K_I value for free enzyme and enzyme-substrate complex) on enzyme-catalyzed reactions is summarized in Figure 20-7.

Table 20-4 summarizes changes in the apparent values of V_{max} and K_M derived from the intercepts and slopes of double reciprocal Lineweaver-Burk plots for competitive, uncompetitive, and simple noncompetitive inhibition. Figure 20-7 summarizes the Lineweaver-Burk plots for a normal enzyme-catalyzed reaction and for the three types of inhibition of enzyme-catalyzed reactions and the values of the Y- and X-intercepts in each condition.

CATALYTIC EFFICIENCY: TRANSITION STATE THEORY AND DRUG DESIGN

Equation 20-19 applies to circumstances where the substrate concentration is present at concentrations below the value of K_M for an enzyme. The rate constant for this reaction is k_2/K_M, which is formally a second-order rate constant because this reaction depends on the concentrations of both the substrate and the enzyme. (As noted previously, the reaction is actually pseudo–first-order in that the total enzyme concentration, E_T, is constant, and only the substrate concentration, [S], changes.) Catalytic efficiency is assessed in terms of the rate constants of the catalyzed reaction. The constant k_2/K_M, often written as k_{cat}/K_M, is a reflection of the frequency of productive encounters of enzyme and substrate molecules in solution.

ENZYMES ACHIEVE HIGH RATES OF REACTION THAT GREATLY EXCEED THOSE FOR UNCATALYZED REACTIONS

An upper boundary to the frequency of encounters is determined by the temperature and the diffusion coefficients of the substrate and enzyme. This limiting value is on the order of 10^8 to $10^9\ M^{-1}sec^{-1}$, called the *diffusion-controlled limit*. If the value of k_{cat}/K_M is at the diffusion-controlled limit, every encounter of the enzyme and substrate leads to product formation, and the enzyme has achieved what may be termed **catalytic perfection.** Some enzymes have actually approached this state. These include superoxide dismutase ($k_{cat}/K_M = 2.8 \times 10^9\ M^{-1}sec^{-1}$), AChE ($k_{cat}/K_M = 1.5 \times 10^8\ M^{-1}sec^{-1}$), and catalase ($k_{cat}/K_M = 4.0 \times 10^8\ M^{-1}sec^{-1}$). Most other enzymes do not have constants of this magnitude but have values that vastly exceed those for the corresponding uncatalyzed reactions, the second-order rate constants that are termed k_{uncat} (*uncat*alyzed).

The ratio k_{cat}/k_{uncat} gives the rate enhancement, which is often difficult to obtain because most cellular reactions occur very slowly in the absence of enzymes. For enzymes, rates are in the range of 10^8 to 10^{12}, but some are even higher. For example, the rate acceleration for adenosine deaminase, which catalyzes the deamination of adenosine to inosine, is 10^{14}, and the rate acceleration of ALP is 10^{17}. Both adenosine deaminase and ALP have modest k_{cat} values, $10^2\ sec^{-1}$. Their unusually large rate accelerations stem from the stability of their substrates at pH 7.0 and 25° C. For example, the half-time for the deamination of adenosine to inosine at 20° C and pH 7.0 is approximately 20,000 years, and k_{uncat} is$10^{-12}\ sec^{-1}$! The nonenzymatic rate constant for the hydrolysis of phosphate esters under neutral, room temperature conditions is estimated to be on the order of $10^{-15}\ sec^{-1}$. The question arises as to how enzymes can induce such large rate enhancements and in some instances attain rates that are the highest that can physically be achieved.

ENZYMES ACHIEVE HIGH RATE ENHANCEMENTS BY BINDING TO THE TRANSITION STATE ON THE REACTION PATHWAY

From Figure 20-3, it can be seen that when the enzyme binds noncovalently to the substrate, if the energy of the resulting enzyme-substrate complex is lowered significantly relative to the energies of the separated species, this would lead to an increased activation energy. However, if the enzyme rather stabilizes the transition state leading to the formation of products, then the activation energy would be greatly lowered, as indicated in Figure 20-3. Considerable accumulating evidence suggests that enzymes

TABLE 20-4

Slopes and Intercepts from Double Reciprocal Plots and Computed Values of V_{max} and K_M from These Plots for Various Types of Reversible Inhibitors

Type of Inhibition	Slope	Y-Intercept	X-Intercept	V_{max} (apparent)*	K_M (Apparent)*
None	K_M/V_{max}	$1/V_{max}$	$-1/K_M$	V_{max}	K_M
Competitive	$(K_M/V_M)\ (1 + I/K_I)$	$1/V_{max}$	$-1/[K_M(1 + I/K_I)]$	V_{max}	$K_M(1 + I/K_I)$
Uncompetitive	K_M/V_{max}	$(1/V_{max}) \bullet (1 + I/K_I)$	$-(1 + I/K_I)/K_M$	$V_{max}/(1 + I/K_I)$	K_M
Noncompetitive (simple)	$K_M/V_{max} \bullet (1 + I/K_I)$	$(1/V_{max}) \bullet (1 + I/K_I)$	$-1/K_M$	$V_{max}/(1 + I/K_I)$	K_M

*The observed value that equals the derived expression from the double reciprocal plots shown for each condition.

http://basicbook.net

have high affinities for **transition states.** Because, in the transition state, the substrate is somewhat distorted from its ground state structure by the incipient breaking and making of covalent bonds, the resulting increase in energy of the substrate is greater than that compensated by favorable interactions of the distorted substrate with the enzyme. It should be realized that transition states in reactions are not stable structures but rather are inferred from knowledge of the reaction path. However, substrate molecules have been designed that have critical features of inferred transition states, and these modified substrates have been found to bind to the enzymes with enhanced affinities (Fersht, 1999).

These considerations have direct clinical applicability in two areas: drug design and the advent of so-called catalytic antibodies, that is, antibodies that have been designed to have strong and specific enzyme activity. We give one example of each of these applications to illustrate the importance of transition state theory to practical clinical problems.

TRANSITION STATE THEORY IN DRUG DESIGN

HIV Protease Inhibitors in Treating HIV-AIDS

A host of new drugs have been developed as protease inhibitors that block the protease enzymes of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) involved in viral replication of the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) virus (Vance et al, 1997). Proteases catalyze hydrolytic reactions in which peptide or amide bonds are cleaved by water into a carboxylic acid and a primary (or, in the case of proline, a secondary) amine. HIV proteases are vital for cleaving large protein precursors into gag and pol proteins that enable viral replication. Absence of this protease activity results in inability of the virus to replicate. Thus this protease has become the target for the design of inhibitory compounds (Vance et al, 1997).

HIV protease functions as a homodimer, that is, two subunits having the exact same sequence. It catalyzes the hydrolysis of X-Pro (proline) peptide bonds where X is an aromatic amino acid, such as phenylalanine (Phe) or tyrosine (Swain et al, 1990; Vance et al, 1997). Two critical aspartic acid residues (25 and 125) are known to be the actual catalytic residues effecting peptide bond cleavage (Swain et al, 1990). Thus HIV protease, similar to a number of other proteases such as angiotensin-converting enzyme, discussed in the next section, is an aspartic acid peptidase. It has been known for many years that the hydrolysis of peptide (and ester) bonds involves the formation of a so-called *tetrahedral intermediate*, as illustrated for a peptide bond in Figure 20-8. This intermediate results from the addition of water to the unsaturated carbonyl carbon on the reaction pathway. The carbonyl carbon and the three atoms to which it is attached all lie in the same plane, the so-called *planar configuration*. Attack by the oxygen atom of water on the carbonyl carbon results in the addition of a fourth atom attached to the carbonyl carbon, causing replacement of the planar arrangement of the atoms by a tetrahedral arrangement of these atoms. Note that the transition state leading to this intermediate is inferred also to have tetrahedral features and a partially negatively charged oxygen. Thus, substrates have been designed that have, in place of the normally occurring amide bond, a tetrahedral structure with an oxyanion or a hydroxyl group at this position that resembles the transition state.

An example of an inhibitory transition state analog of HIV protease is shown in Figure 20-9. For comparison, a typical substrate of HIV protease is also shown (Matayoshi et al, 1990). As can be seen in Figure 20-9, in the Phe residue in the transition state analog, the normally occurring planar C–O group in the peptide backbone, is replaced with a tetrahedral C(H)–OH group, giving rise to the so-called *Phe-Psi residue*. This occurs at the normal peptide cleavage site. This analog binds to HIV protease with a K_I (dissociation constant) of 0.24 nM (Swain et al, 1990). The substrate has a K_M on the order of 103 μM (Matayoshi, 1990). This K_M is a true dissociation constant in that the k_2 is much lower than the noncovalent dissociation constant. Therefore the ratio of the affinity constant (reciprocal of the dissociation constant) for the transition state analog to that of the substrate is on the order of 400,000! Thus, the application of transition state theory has resulted in the design of a very potent HIV protease inhibitor. Newer HIV protease transition state inhibitors, such as the modified peptide KNI-272, that have substantially lower K_I values have been designed (Adachia et al, 2009). The x-ray crystal structures of the transition state analogs bound to HIV protease have been determined (Swain et al, 1990; Adachia et al, 2009). The two critical Asp residues interact strongly with the tetrahedral atoms of the modified Phe residue and are clearly involved in stabilization of the tetrahedral transition state (Swain et al, 1990; Adachia et al, 2009).

One drawback to the HIV protease inhibitors currently being used clinically in the treatment of AIDS is that viral mutations result in HIV proteases that have lower affinities for these inhibitors. More recently, therefore, new transition state analogs have been designed such that they interact with amino acid residues that surround the active site and actually bind to critical backbone atoms of sections of the polypeptide chain that have well-defined secondary structures (such as α-helices and β-sheets), greatly increasing their affinities (K_I's in the picomolar range) (Ghosh et al, 2008). In this case, because mutations of constant structural residues would be expected to decrease the stability of the protease greatly, it is hoped that viral mutations will have much less effect on their efficacies.

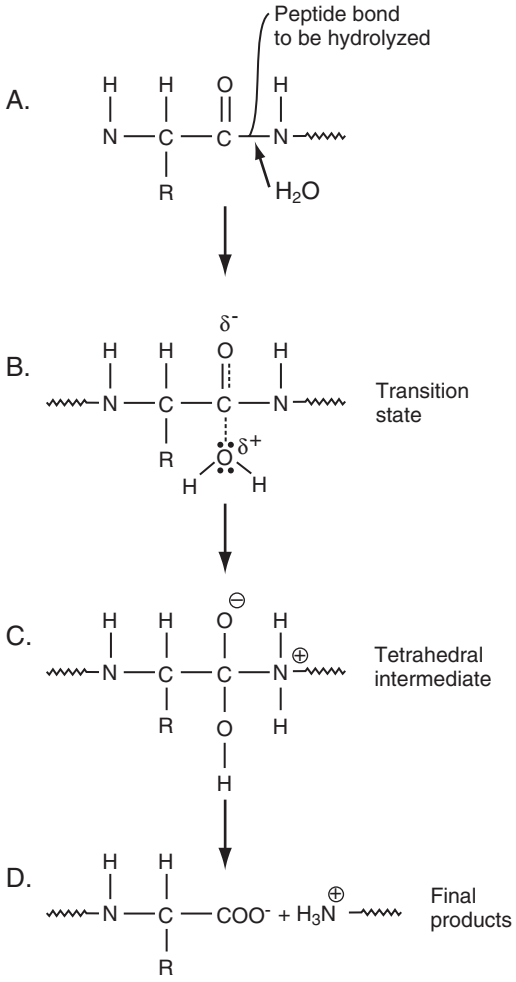


Figure 20-8 **Steps in the hydrolysis of a peptide bond. A,** A typical peptide bond for two amino acids in a peptide bond link. R is the side chain of the first amino acid. This bond will be cleaved by addition of water to the carbonyl group, as shown by the arrow. **B,** The transition state on the way to the addition of water to the carbonyl group. The carbonyl oxygen takes on a partial negative charge (δ^-). **C,** The tetrahedral intermediate that results from the addition of water. Note that an oxyanion forms on the former carbonyl oxygen. The attacking water molecule has given up a proton that can add to the amino nitrogen of the leaving group, that is, the amino acid on the right of the peptide bond, or to the oxyanion of the former carbonyl group. **D,** The final products, that is, a carboxylate from the left amino acid and an amine (ammonium ion) from the right amino acid.

Design of New Catalytic Antibodies with Predetermined Enzyme Activity

Antibodies generally bind to antigens with high affinities. If antibodies can be raised to transition state analogs of compounds that undergo specific chemical reactions, by stabilizing the transition state for these specific chemical reactions they might themselves serve as enzymes that catalyze these reactions. Although still in its infancy, this area of enzymology has achieved some notable success, providing, in turn, further support for the transition state theory of enzyme action. As an example, a clinically important finding using this approach is seen in the design of antibodies that induce hydrolysis of cocaine. Hydrolysis of the benzoate and acetyl esters results in effective inactivation of this drug of abuse, as discussed in Chapter 23. The structure of cocaine and a tetrahedral transition state analog are shown in Figure 20-10 (Cashman et al, 2000). This analog has a tetrahedral structure for the benzoyl moiety in which a nonhydrolyzable phenyl phosphonate ester replaces the normally occurring carbonyl group.

http://basicbook.net

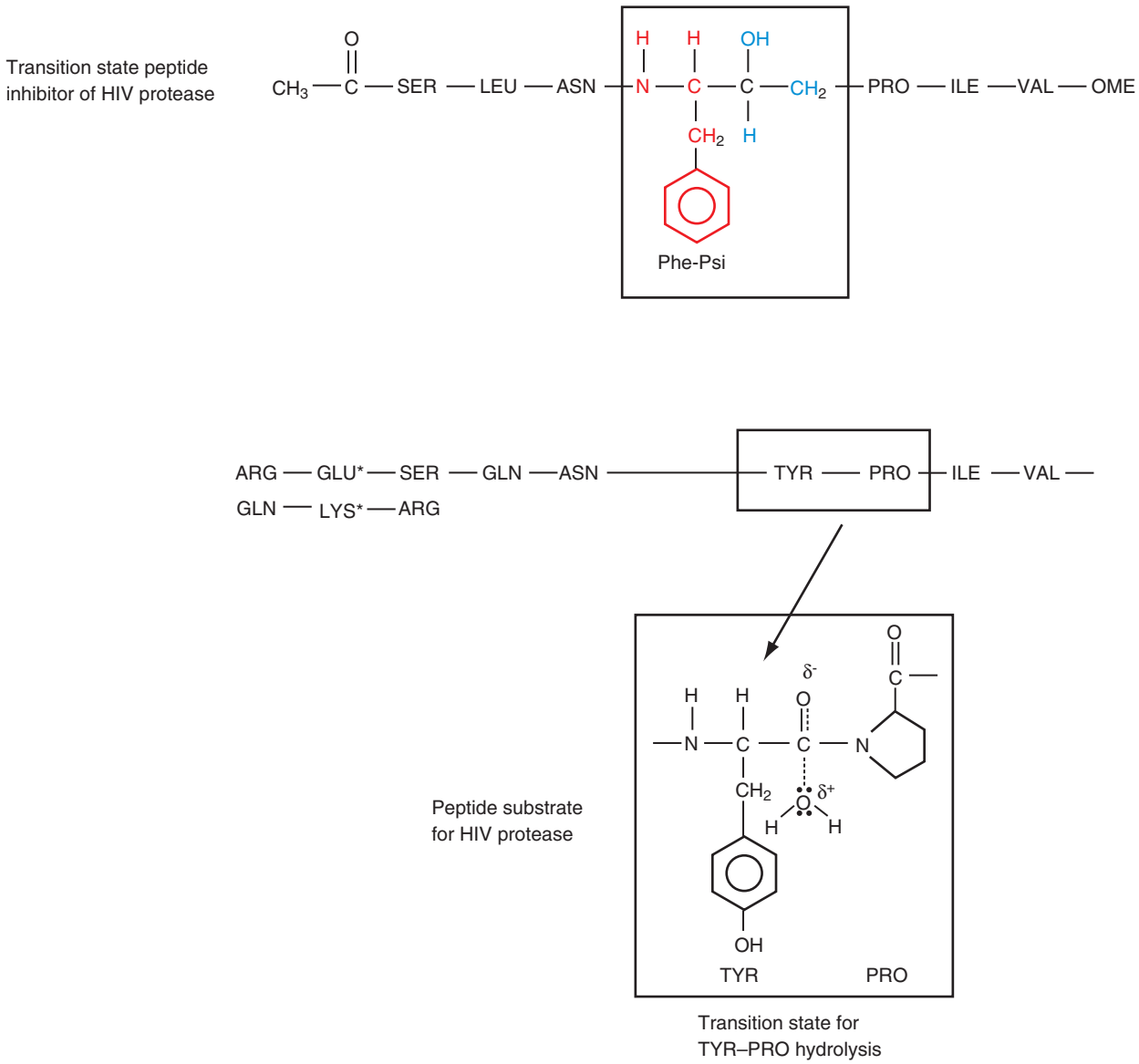


Figure 20-9 Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease transition state analog peptide inhibitor. HIV protease cleaves at X-Pro bonds, where X is an aromatic amino acid like Tyr and Phe. In this case, X is a modified Phe residue, labeled Phe-Psi, most of whose atoms are colored red such that, in place of the normally occurring C=O (carbonyl) group, a tetrahedral carbon is present attached to an OH group. The tetrahedral atoms are shown in blue. This mimics the transition state shown for a substrate of HIV protease whose amino acid sequence is shown below that for the transition state analog. This sequence contains the bond cleavage site, TYR-PRO, as shown in the small box. The tetrahedral transition state for this cleavage is shown in the larger box. The asterisks on the two substrate residues denote that these residues can be attached to fluorescent probes in an enzyme assay for this protease using this substrate. Because the transition state analog resembles the transition state in the hydrolysis of the Tyr-Pro peptide bond, it is a strong and specific inhibitor of the protease.

Antibodies have been raised to a thiol derivative of cocaine and then assayed for their abilities to bind to the transition state analog. Several antibodies have been isolated that bind strongly to the transition state analog and also catalyze, with large rate enhancements over the uncatalyzed reaction, the hydrolysis of the benzoyl ester of cocaine, resulting in a cocaine derivative of much lower potency. It is of considerable interest that, using another approach, the serum enzyme, butyrylcholinesterase, discussed in the next section, has been modified, based on the x-ray crystal structure of this enzyme bound to inhibitors, using site-specific mutagenesis techniques, so that it is active in the de-benzoylation of cocaine leading to its inactivation. The rates of catalysis of the catalytic antibodies and the engineered butyrylcholinesterase are similar to one another. Both approaches may provide rational treatment modalities for detoxification of harmful substances, in this case, drugs of abuse.

SPECIFIC ENZYMES

Numerous enzymes are clinically useful in recognition and monitoring of particular disease processes. In all but a few circumstances, abnormal conditions in specific tissues are recognized by *elevations* of one or more enzymatic activities or enzyme concentrations. For example, elevations of the activity of serum CK suggest the presence of muscle disease. The reason for elevation of specific enzymes in blood and other body fluids as the result of disease processes in specific tissues is not completely understood. One explanation for this occurrence is that disease processes that cause cell injury or death result in damage to the cell membrane, leading to the release of specific intracellular enzymes into tissue spaces and the microvasculature, causing increased enzymatic activity in serum or other body fluids. On occasion, mutant forms of enzymes occur, resulting in *lowering* of their activities, although, generally, not of their concentrations. One prominent example of this phenomenon is butyrylcholinesterase (discussed later).

Several enzymes are distributed predominantly in a single tissue, so that damage to this tissue results in elevations of the enzyme in serum. For example, as discussed in Chapter 21 on liver function, elevation of the level of the enzyme ALT, which is distributed predominantly in the liver, indicates acute hepatic injury, often as a result of hepatitis. Although measured by immunoassay, PSA is a form of chymotrypsin and occurs almost exclusively in the prostate gland. Serum elevations of PSA, therefore, suggest prostate pathology, often prostate cancer. Other enzymes do not have

http://basicbook.net

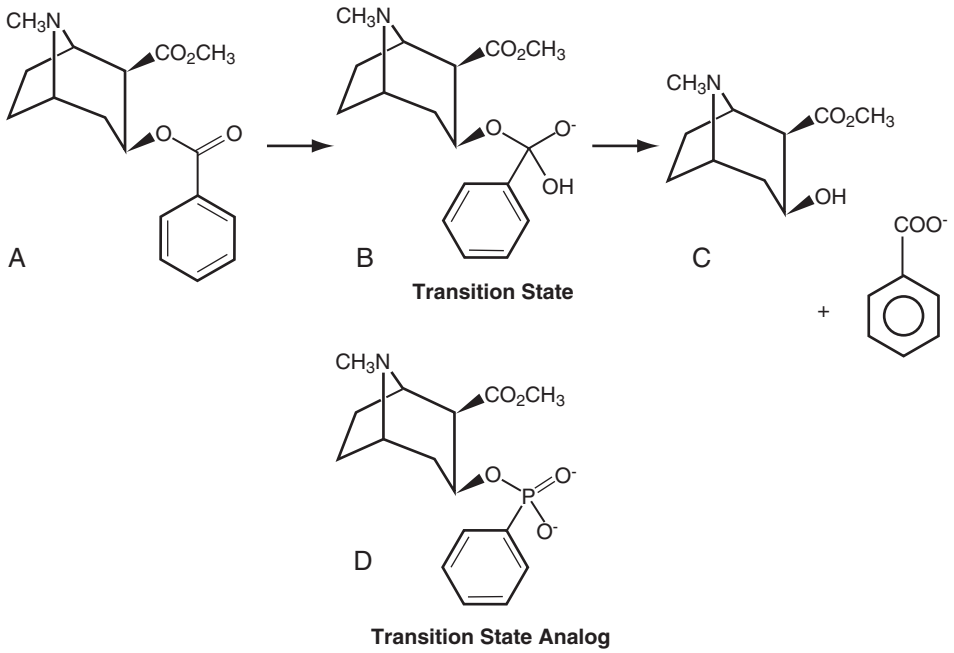


Figure 20-10 Hydrolysis of the benzoate ester moiety of cocaine **(A)** an ecgonine derivative, occurs via a tetrahedral intermediate **(B)** containing an oxyanion, and, presumably, a tetrahedral transition state resulting in the free –OH group of an ecgonine derivative shown in **C** and benzoic acid. This results in a cocaine derivative that is much less active. **D,** A non-hydrolyzable benzyl phosphonate ester transition state analog that has a tetrahedral structure that likewise contains an oxyanion. An antibody that binds with high affinity to this analog has been found to catalyze the hydrolysis of cocaine with a greatly enhanced rate over that for the noncatalyzed reaction.

TABLE 20-5
Relative Amounts of Enzymes in Various Organs (Relative to Serum)*

Tissue	AST†	ALT	LD	CK
Liver	7000	3000	7000	
Kidney	4500	1200	500	10
Brain				1700
Spleen	700	150		
Heart	8000	500	600	5000-8000
Skeletal muscle	5000	300	700	20,000-30,000
Smooth muscle				300-600
Red blood cells	15	7	500	0

ALT, Alanine aminotransferase; *AST,* aspartate transaminase; *CK,* creatine kinase; *IU,* international unit; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase.
*Relative amount is calculated by dividing the activity of enzyme in tissue (in IU/kg of tissue) by the upper reference limit of plasma activity of the enzyme (in IU/L), assuming that 1 L of plasma = 1 kg. Because the data are derived from multiple publications, the relative amounts among enzymes may be approximate, but the relative amount of a single enzyme in each tissue is accurate.
†Total amount in cells; varying amounts represent mitochondrial isoenzyme, which reaches serum in only small amounts.

selective tissue distributions but have isozymes that do have selective distributions, making elevations of these isozymes valuable in diagnosing specific tissue pathology. For example, as discussed in Chapter 18, elevation of serum levels of CK-MB (also, see previous discussion) points to myocardial disease, most often infarction. As discussed later, elevations of specific isozymes of ALP point to specific tissue disease. The biliary tract form is elevated in biliary disease, and the bone form is elevated in diseases of bone.

For enzymes with no tissue-specific isozymes, the relative amounts of different enzymes in plasma provide a clue as to the type of organ injured. For example, LD, AST, and ALT are found in many organs, but the relative amounts in each differ (Table 20-5). If LD is markedly elevated, while AST and ALT are only slightly elevated, this would suggest damage to an organ or tissue (such as red blood cells, white blood cells, or tumors) with a high LD/AST ratio. On the other hand, if AST and ALT are elevated, but LD is only slightly elevated, this suggests damage to liver, which has a low LD/AST ratio.

Many other enzymes, elevations of which denote damage to specific tissues, are discussed in other chapters of this book. Discussion of enzymes and enzyme inhibitors in serum and urine for recognition of renal disease is found in Chapter 14; enzymes of bone metabolism are presented in Chapter 15; enzymes and other proteins utilized for the diagnosis of myocardial infarction are discussed in Chapter 18; enzymes useful in recognition of liver and biliary tract disease are discussed in Chapter 21; pancreatic enzymes are covered in Chapter 22; and enzyme deficiencies that produce hemolytic anemia are discussed in Part 4.

The remainder of this chapter is concerned with a discussion of enzymes, each of whose isozymes is specific for a different tissue (e.g., acid and alkaline phosphatases, 5′-NT, LD), and two enzymes that are not tissue specific but whose activities have major systemic effects: angiotensin-converting enzyme, vital for control of blood pressure, and AChE, which is critical in neuromuscular transmission.

ACID PHOSPHATASE (EC 3.1.3.2)

Biochemistry and Physiology

ACPs belong to the hydrolase class of enzymes (see Table 20-1) and occur as several isoenzymes with a common enzymatic function (the hydrolytic breakdown of phosphate monoesters). They all show optimal enzyme activity below a pH of 7.0. They possess some tissue specificity (greatest concentrations occur in prostate, liver, spleen, erythrocytes, and bone). The major forms are coded for by different genes and possess different molecular weights and structures, as well as differences in sensitivity to tartrate inhibition. Lysosomal, prostatic, erythrocyte, macrophage, and osteoclastic ACPs are five important types found in humans. Normally, concentrations in serum are low (Moss & Henderson, 1999; Bull et al, 2002). The activity of erythrocyte ACP can be distinguished from that of the other ACP isoenzymes in that it is inhibited by 2% formaldehyde solution and 1-mM cupric sulfate solution. This is in contrast to the other isoenzymes, which are not inhibited by these agents. In addition, erythrocyte ACP is not inhibited by 20-mM tartrate solution, which does inhibit the other isoenzymes. It is important to note that tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase (TRAP) is present in certain chronic leukemias and some lymphomas, most notably in hairy cell leukemia, as described in Chapter 32. In addition, a particular isoform of TRAP, called *TRAP-5b,* occurs predominantly in osteoclasts in bone marrow and is used as a marker for bone remodeling (Lu et al, 2006); it has also been proposed as a marker for metastatic cancer (e.g., breast cancer) in bone marrow (Chao et al, 2005).

http://basicbook.net

Reference Ranges and Preanalytic Variation

Reference values depend on age, gender, and hormonal status (in women). Total and tartrate-resistant ACP values are high in children, rising through the first decade to peak at three to four times adult levels in adolescence, paralleling changes in ALP (Chen et al, 1979). In the late teen years, levels decline to adult values that are constant to approximately 80 years of age in both genders. Normal men and women up to about 55 years of age have the same reference ranges for ACP. In women, total and tartrate-resistant ACPs increase after menopause (Schiele et al, 1988) and increase with the use of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate in premenopausal women (Mukherjea et al, 1981).

The enzymatic activity of ACP is unstable at normal plasma pH; specimens must be acidified to prevent loss of ACP activity (Theodorsen, 1985). The effect of specimen pH is not as consistently seen with immunoassays for prostatic ACP; some studies have recommended routine use of acidification for all ACP specimens, but it is not clear that this is essential (Panteghini et al, 1992).

The half-life of prostatic ACP is about 1 to 3 hours (Wadstrom et al, 1985). Day-to-day variation in ACP is relatively high; average variation of the prostatic isoenzyme is 30% (Maatman, 1993), although it may be as high as 100% in patients with prostatic carcinoma (Brenckman et al, 1981), and bone isoenzyme variation averages about 35% (Panteghini & Pagani, 1995).

Measurement

Assays for all phosphatases utilize the strategy that phosphate esters, which have no visible light absorbance, are hydrolyzed to inorganic phosphate and a strongly visible light-absorbing alcohol or alcohol anion. Total ACP is typically measured by its ability to cleave phosphate groups at an acid pH. Usually the test is utilized for the measurement of prostatic serum ACP in the diagnosis or monitoring of prostatic adenocarcinoma. A variety of substrates and conditions have been used to measure enzymatic activity with increased specificity; these include thymolphthalein monophosphate and α-naphthyl phosphate, both of which give rise to strongly absorbing products, α-naphthol and thymophthalein. *High bilirubin causes falsely low values for TRAP activity*, but not for total ACP (Alvarez et al, 1999).

Isozymes of ACP can be separated by electrophoresis (Moss, 1986); however, there is usually little interest in isoenzymes other than prostate and bone. Immunoassays (Bull et al, 2002) for both prostatic and bone isoenzymes of ACP have been developed; the former are widely available.

Causes of Abnormal Results

The main cause of increased ACP is prostate disease; with development of PSA as the major serum test for prostate (see Chapter 73), ACP has become less popular for use in prostate cancer, although, with the availability of newer immunochemical methods, its use in the diagnosis of prostate cancer has been maintained (Pontes, 2006). In early prostate cancer, the sensitivity of ACP is inferior to that of PSA (Burnett et al, 1992), although ACP, similar to PSA, is elevated in a significant percentage of patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia (Salo et al, 1990) or prostatic infarction, making ACP of little use for prostate cancer screening (Kaplan et al, 1985). Almost all patients with prostate cancer and elevated ACP have extracapsular extension or metastases (Salo et al, 1990; Burnett et al, 1992), so that an elevated ACP may provide useful information in staging of patients. Occasionally, elevated prostatic ACP may be due to other causes. Urinary tract obstruction and acute urinary retention may cause elevated ACP (Collier & Pain, 1986). Extensive prostatic massage, prostatic inflammation, infarction/ischemia, and prostatic manipulations such as needle biopsy and cystoscopy may also cause a transient increase in serum ACP; testing should be done before any procedures are performed.

After surgical treatment of prostate cancer, ACP falls faster than PSA (Price et al, 1991), and levels should become undetectable after complete tumor resection. Because PSA is an androgen-dependent protein, androgen deprivation therapy decreases PSA production but has no effect on ACP (Price et al, 1991; Narayan et al, 1995), suggesting that ACP may be of use in monitoring patients treated in this fashion.

ACP has been used for many years in cases of suspected rape. Fluid collected from the vagina on a cotton swab will give a positive test for ACP if semen is present, provided a stabilizing fluid with an acidic pH is used (Ricci & Hoffman, 1982). Peak values are generally present in the first 12 hours, and values remain elevated for up to 4 days.

There has been a recent interest in the use of TRAP as a tumor marker for following specific tumors. In one study, it was found that expression of this enzyme in malignant gastric carcinoma cells is associated with an increased probability of peritoneal involvement (Kawamura et al, 2014). On the other hand, another study found that expression of TRAP by specific subclasses of macrophages in patients with colon cancer was associated with a 22% increase in 5-year survival and a 47% risk reduction in death due to this disease (How et al, 2014).

ALKALINE PHOSPHATASE (EC 3.1.3.1)

Biochemistry and Physiology

Similar to ACP, ALPs are a type of hydrolase (see Table 20-1). Discussion of ALP in the canalicular (biliary) system can be found in Chapter 21 on liver function. Alkaline phosphatases represent a family of enzymes coded for by different genes. Their physiologic role is not completely understood. The most abundant plasma ALP isoforms are coded for by a single gene on chromosome 1, producing the tissue-nonspecific isozyme found in kidney, liver, and bone. However, in different tissues, this **parent** isozyme is subjected to different posttranslational modifications, resulting in differences in their carbohydrate side chains. Two other genes on chromosome 2 code for ALP of placental and intestinal origin; another gene on chromosome 2 codes for the so-called *germ cell* or placental-like isoenzyme, which has some antigenic and physical similarities to the placental isozyme.

In cells, ALP is primarily bound to cell membranes, where it appears to be involved in cleavage of phosphate-containing compounds and may facilitate movement of substances across cell membranes. Hepatocytes produce ALP in the liver, where it is found attached to the canalicular surface of the cells (see Chapter 21). Osteoblasts produce bone ALP, which appears to be involved in cleavage of pyrophosphate, an inhibitor of bone mineralization. Intestinal epithelial cells produce intestinal ALP, which is released into the intestine following ingestion of fatty foods.

There appear to be different mechanisms for release of ALP from cells, leading to varying forms of ALP in plasma. With liver injury, ALP synthesis increases, but bile acids dissolve fragments of canalicular cell membranes with attached enzymes (including ALP, GGT, leucine aminopeptidase, and 5′-NT [Moss, 1997]). In normal serum, a single form (of liver or bone origin) of ALP is typically seen; however, with hepatobiliary disease, both the normal product and the membrane-attachment form (high molecular weight) bound to lipoproteins can be seen (Wolf, 1994). The intestinal isoenzyme of ALP is released in large amounts into duodenal fluid (Deng et al, 1992), and large amounts enter lymphatic fluid, draining the intestinal tract following a meal (Reynoso & Elias, 1971). However, much of the isoenzyme apparently becomes bound to red blood cell (RBC) ABO antigens (Bayer et al, 1980), so that only small amounts reach the plasma, except in individuals who possess both the secretor gene and a large amount of H substance (group O or B), where ALP may increase by up to 30 IU/L following a meal (Domar et al, 1993). ALP is also higher in individuals of blood group O or B than in A and AB individuals (Agbedana & Yeldu, 1996) because of differences in intestinal ALP levels (Domar et al, 1993). It is curious that placental ALP is also lower in pregnant women of groups A and AB (Ind et al, 1994).

The half-lives of isoenzymes of ALP differ significantly, so it is necessary to know the isoenzyme that is elevated before rate of clearance can be evaluated: intestine, minutes; bone, 1 day; liver, 3 days; and placenta, 7 days. Day-to-day variation in total ALP is 5% to 10%, although the bone isozyme shows 20% day-to-day variability.

Reference Ranges and Preanalytic Variation

Reference ranges for ALP are highly dependent on age and gender (Table 20-6). During childhood, levels gradually rise throughout the first decade, reaching peak values three to four times normal adult levels, and are higher in boys than in girls. The higher values in children are due to the bone isoenzyme. After a peak in the early teens, values gradually decrease to adult levels by the early 20s, and are similar in men and women until 50 years of age. After menopause, the bone isoenzyme increases slightly in women, causing a rise in reference limits after 50 years of age. Reference limits are 15% higher in African American men and 10% higher in African American women (Manolio et al, 1992). Pregnancy causes a two- to threefold increase in ALP, mainly due to the placental isoenzyme, but also because of an increase in bone isoenzyme (Valenzuela et al, 1987).

A number of other factors affect ALP levels as well. High body mass index is associated with a 10% average increase in ALP (Salvaggio et al, 1991). Oral contraceptives decrease ALP by an average of 20% (Schiele et al, 1988; Dufour, 1998); fibric acid derivatives decrease total ALP by 25% and the liver isoenzyme by 40% (Day et al, 1993). Antiepileptic agents commonly cause increased total ALP, mainly because of increases in the liver isoenzyme; however, in some cases, the bone isozyme may also be elevated (Nijhawan et al, 1990). Smoking causes an average 10%

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 20-6

Relative Levels of Enzymes, by Gender, Relative to Young Adult Males (1.0)*

Enzyme	Gender	AGE, YEARS 8	12	16	22	30	40	50	60
Aspartate aminotransferase	Male	0.75	0.86	0.82	1.00	1.16	1.26	1.21	1.11
	Female	0.73	0.80	0.69	0.89	0.89	1.01	0.77	0.96
Alanine aminotransferase	Male	1.14	1.09	0.89	1.00	1.03	1.11	1.06	0.83
	Female	0.11	0.89	0.83	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.72	0.83
Alkaline phosphatase	Male	3.61	4.76	4.48	1.52	1.00	1.00	0.95	0.95
	Female	0.14	4.10	2.52	0.81	0.86	0.76	1.00	1.38
γ-glutamyl transferase	Male	0.25	0.29	0.37	0.62	1.00	1.07	1.16	0.99
	Female	0.24	0.28	0.33	0.38	0.52	0.58	0.9	1.09

*Results expressed as upper reference limits as a fraction of the upper reference limits for healthy young males.

Data from Siest G, Henry J, Schiele F, Young DS. *Interpretation of clinical laboratory tests: reference values and their biological variation.* Foster City, Calif.: Biomedical Publications; 1985.

increase in total ALP as the result of pulmonary production of placental-like ALP (Kallioniemi et al, 1987). Blood transfusion and cardiopulmonary bypass decrease alkaline phosphatase, often causing low levels (Kyd et al, 1998); this may be due to chelation of necessary cations by citrate.

Measurement

Although numerous methods are known, ALP activity is usually measured using *p*-nitrophenyl phosphate as the substrate at alkaline pH. Hydrolysis of this phosphate ester yields inorganic phosphate plus the highly colored (and, therefore, easily measured) *para*-nitrophenoxide anion. A variety of buffers are used to bind phosphate groups; this increases activity, because inorganic phosphate (as well as some other anions) inhibits ALP (competitive end-product inhibition). Zinc is a component of the enzyme, and magnesium and other cations activate the enzyme. Chelators present in collection tubes (such as EDTA, citrate, and oxalate) falsely lower ALP activity; in the case of EDTA, activity is often too low to measure. The activity of the enzyme increases slowly on storage because of loss of inhibitors, but specimens are relatively stable at 4° C for up to 1 week.

Isoforms

High-performance liquid chromatography (see Chapter 23) using weak anion-exchange columns has been able to separate at least six different isoforms of ALP in the sera of healthy individuals (Haarhaus et al, 2009). These are bone/intestinal (B/I), two bone isoforms, called B1 and B2, and three liver isoforms termed *L1*, *L2*, and *L3*. Recently, another bone isoform was isolated, termed *B1x*, that appears in the serum of dialysis patients (Swolin-Eide et al, 2006). These bone isoforms have been used to study low bone mineral disease (BMD) in patients with chronic kidney disease and have been found to rise in BMD of the hip, which is predominantly made up of trabecular bone. It is interesting to note that acid phosphatase TRAP-5b, discussed in the preceding section, was also found to be a marker for this condition (Haarhaus et al, 2009).

In addition, several other methods have been used to separate ALP isoenzymes. Inhibition by phenylalanine reduces reactivity of intestinal and placental isoenzymes, and levamisole inhibits bone and liver isoenzymes; inhibition assays are poorly reproducible and are seldom used. Heat fractionation has been used for many years to determine the source of an elevated total ALP. The most heat-stable isoenzyme is placental (and germ cell) ALP; the liver isoenzyme is moderately stable, and the bone isoenzyme is the most heat-labile. To achieve reliable results, use of standards of known composition and careful control of both temperature and time are essential. For these reasons, electrophoretic separation has been used for a number of years. Standard cellulose acetate and agarose gel electrophoresis cannot completely resolve bone and liver isoenzymes, making them unsuitable for other than qualitative studies. Because the difference between these isoenzymes is seen in their carbohydrate side chains, use of neuraminidase (to remove sialic acid) and wheat germ lectin (to bind to other isoenzymes) improves separation of bone and liver forms, allowing their quantitation. High-resolution electrophoresis using polyacrylamide gel and isoelectric focusing are capable of resolving multiple bands of ALP. Immunoassays for bone and placental isoenzymes of ALP are available commercially. Bone isoenzyme assays typically show some degree of cross-reactivity with the liver isoenzyme, and placental isoenzyme assays have varying cross-reactivity with the germ cell isoenzyme.

Causes of Abnormal Results

The most common causes of increased ALP are liver and bone disease. Hepatic causes of elevated ALP are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 21; disorders causing cholestasis more frequently cause elevation of ALP than do hepatocellular disorders. Increased osteoblastic activity in Paget's disease, osteosarcoma, tumor metastatic to bone, and metabolic bone disease are the most common causes of elevated bone isoenzyme. It appears that acid phosphatase TRAP-5b is associated with bone resorption conditions, and that the three major isoforms of bone ALP (B/I, B1, and B2) are associated with conditions involving bone deposition. Occasionally, patients will have elevations of both bone and liver isoenzymes, especially in metastatic carcinoma. Rarely, marked transient elevations of ALP occur, usually in children and often following trivial illness; these may reach several thousand IU/L and may persist for weeks to months before resolving (Steinherz & Steinherz, 1984).

Increases in intestinal ALP may occur in patients with intestinal infarction, inflammation, and ulceration. Increases in placenta-like isoenzymes, such as Regan and Nagao, are commonly found in patients with malignancies (ovary, cervix, lung, breast, colon, pancreas) and are due to ectopic production by the neoplasm.

As mentioned earlier, low ALP may occur transiently after blood transfusion or cardiopulmonary bypass. Prolonged, severely low ALP levels occur in hypophosphatasia, a rare inherited disorder of bone metabolism (Whyte et al, 1996), as the result of missense mutations of tissue-nonspecific ALP (Haarhaus et al, 2009). Decreased ALP can also occur in zinc deficiency because zinc is a necessary cofactor for ALP activity, as well as other conditions.

Placental alkaline phosphatase (PLAP) is a useful tumor marker in serum and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) for most germ cell tumors. In the latter case, CSF levels of PLAP are of diagnostic value in discerning whether a tumor in the pineal body is a pinealoma or a germ cell tumor. Because most germ cell tumors are radiosensitive, elevated CSF levels of PLAP suggest radiation treatment for this condition, allowing circumvention of surgical removal.

Elevated levels of alkaline phosphatase and phosphate have been found in patients with coronary artery disease but not in patients with stroke. However, levels of this enzyme appear to be an independent prognostic factor for long-term functional outcome post–cerebral infarction (Kim et al, 2013).

ANGIOTENSIN-CONVERTING ENZYME (EC 3.4.15.1)

Biochemistry and Physiology

ACE, also known as kininase II and peptidyl-dipeptidase A, belongs to the hydrolase class of enzymes (see Table 20-1) and is usually involved in the hydrolysis of peptide bonds at a free C-terminus, releasing the dipeptide His-Leu in the reaction. However, it may also act as an endopeptidase or an aminopeptidase. Its chief function is to cleave the His-Leu sequence from a decapeptide called angiotensin 1, whose sequence is Asp-Arg-Val-Tyr-Ile-His-Pro-Phe-His-Leu. This peptide, in turn, is cleaved from an α-2-macroglobulin called *angiotensinogen*, produced predominantly in the liver. Angiotensin I travels to the lungs, where ACE cleaves its

http://basicbook.net

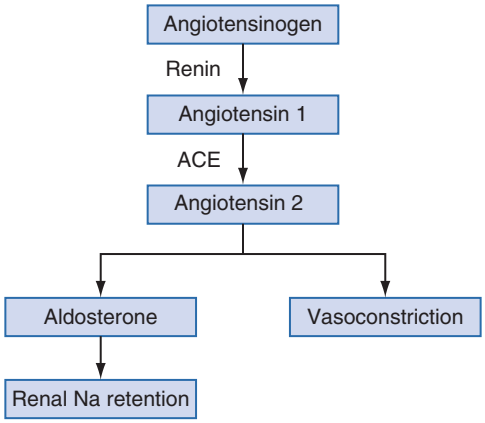


Figure 20-11 The renin-angiotensin system.

carboxyl-terminal His-Leu peptide to produce angiotensin 2. The latter peptide has two major activities: It is a potent vasoconstrictor in arterioles, and it induces the secretion of aldosterone from the zona glomerulosa of the adrenals. As discussed in both Chapters 8 and 24, aldosterone induces sodium retention in the collecting ducts in the kidneys, resulting in conservation of water. This action results in an increase in vascular volume. Therefore, by increasing arteriolar resistance via vasoconstriction and by increasing vascular volume, thereby increasing flow, angiotensin 2 induces higher arteriolar pressures. The renin-angiotensin system is summarized in Figure 20-11.

It is interesting to note that ACE also inactivates bradykinin (in the kallikrein-kinin system) by cleaving a dipeptide from its carboxyl terminus. Although the catalytic action of ACE is somewhat nonspecific in vitro, only angiotensin 1, bradykinin, and the hemoregulatory peptide Ac-DSKP are definite in vivo substrates (Macours et al, 2004). Because angiotensin 2 induces increased blood pressure, and because it is produced uniquely by the activity of ACE, the latter enzyme is a major target of competitively inhibiting drugs in the treatment of hypertension.

ACE consists of a single polypeptide chain, with two homologous, zinc-binding catalytic sites (ACE is a zinc-metalloprotease). Enzyme activity is lost if zinc is bound to a chelating agent, such as EDTA, or is replaced by a different cation. It is important to note that ACE, similar to HIV protease, as discussed earlier, is an aspartic acid protease; that is, two Asp residues are involved in catalysis at each active site. In cells, ACE is a transmembrane protein with a large amino-terminal extracellular domain, a very short hydrophobic transmembrane domain, and a small intracellular carboxyl-terminal domain; the cell-bound molecule is referred to as tissue ACE. The two catalytic sites are present in the extracellular domain: one near the amino terminus and one nearer the carboxyl terminus. The carboxyl-terminal active site is thought to harbor the predominant angiotensin 1 hydrolytic activity, and the amino-terminal active site has activity against bradykinin. Proteolytic cleavage releases the functional enzyme from the cell membrane into the extracellular environment, producing circulating ACE.

The majority of ACE is tissue bound (>90%), with much lower levels circulating in plasma. ACE is found predominantly in endothelial cell membranes throughout the body. The lungs and the testes are particularly rich in ACE. Information on the molecular biology and structure of ACE is available (Dzau et al, 2002; Macours et al, 2004). There appear to be two distinct forms of ACE: a somatic form (sACE) and a smaller isoform found in testes (tACE). A single gene encodes both forms by utilizing alternative promoters. sACE is found in many tissues and contains two active sites (as described previously); tACE contains only the C-terminal active site and is exclusively found in testes. Although both active sites of sACE require zinc ion, their biochemical properties are not identical (Dzau et al, 2002; Macours et al, 2004).

The Design of ACE Inhibitors

As mentioned earlier, ACE is a critical target for inhibitory drugs designed to lower blood pressure. Because ACE and HIV protease are Asp proteases, many of the considerations used for the design of these inhibitors were subsequently used in the design of HIV protease inhibitors, as discussed earlier. It was known that the nonapeptide teprotide, from the snake *Bothrops jararaca* whose sequence is Glu-Trp-Pro-Arg-Pro-Gln-Ile-Pro-Pro, was a potent antihypertensive that acted by competitively inhibiting ACE (Crantz et al, 1980). This was the first effective therapeutic ACE inhibitor, but it could not be given orally because of its hydrolysis in the stomach and the gut. Because it was known that there was a critical positively charged Arg residue in the active site, in addition to the positively charged Zn ion, and that the enzyme had a high affinity for Phe and Pro residues, the inhibitor succinyl proline was developed. The affinity of this inhibitor was greatly enhanced if the carboxylate of the succinic acid moiety was replaced with a thiol that had a high affinity for the bound Zn ions. This resulted in the synthesis of 3-mercapto-2-methylpropanoyl-L-proline, also called *captopril*, a highly effective agent that, however, had several undesirable side effects such as skin rash and loss of taste (Cushman & Ondetti, 1991). In addition, Phe-containing tripeptides that contained carboxylate groups were synthesized, allowing for tight binding to the active site and to Zn concurrently (i.e., enalapril and lisinopril—both effective agents). In addition, transition state analog inhibitors, such as the ones discussed for HIV protease, have been developed (Dive, 2004; Gerogiadis et al, 2004; Redelinghuys et al, 2006). Several contain modified Phe as seen in the HIV protease inhibitors, except that they also contain nonhydrolyzable tetrahedral phosphinic acid in place of the normally occurring backbone carbonyl group. Several of these inhibitors inhibit the carboxyl-terminal active site preferentially, making them good antihypertensive agents, because it is this active site that predominantly hydrolyzes angiotensin 1. At the same time, considerable bradykinin hydrolytic activity still occurs in the amino-terminal active site; this is considered desirable in that bradykinin itself induces vasodilation and angioedema and can compound the lowering of blood pressure; this can result in some cases in induction of hypotension, an undesirable side effect.

Reference Ranges and Preanalytic Variation

ACE activity is higher in children than in adults; during adolescence, values are higher in boys than in girls (Beneteau-Burnat et al, 1990), gradually falling to adult levels by 18 years of age. Men and women have the same values, although not all studies show this pattern. ACE appears to be cleared by the liver; the half-life in plasma is roughly 48 hours. Average day-to-day variation is less than 10%, with no diurnal variation (Thompson et al, 1986).

A number of other factors affect ACE levels. Smokers have ACE activities about 30% lower than in nonsmokers or former smokers who have stopped smoking for at least 10 years (Ninomiya et al, 1987). Thyroid hormone stimulates ACE synthesis. Postmenopausal estrogen replacement causes a 20% fall in ACE activity in serum (Proudler et al, 1995). Rare families lack an endogenous inhibitor of ACE activity and, consequently, have markedly elevated serum ACE levels (Luisetti et al, 1990).

Measurement

ACE is typically measured by its ability to cleave synthetic peptides, releasing hippuric acid (Hip) or other indicator molecules as in the following reaction:

$$\text{Hip-L-His-L-Leu} + H_2O \rightarrow \text{Hip} + \text{L-His-L-Leu} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-38)}$$

Hip is then extracted, and its absorption is measured at 228 nm. A modification of the assay is required in CSF samples because of their much lower ACE activity (Oksanen et al, 1985).

Causes of Abnormal Results

The most common reason for ordering ACE levels involves the diagnosis and monitoring of sarcoidosis. In general, ACE levels are directly related to the number of organs affected (Muthuswamy et al, 1987) and the activity of granulomas; mature granulomas tend to produce less ACE than developing ones (Mimori, 1998). In sarcoidosis, a general correlation has been noted between disease activity and ACE levels (Gupta et al, 1992); as disease progresses to fibrosis, ACE levels decline. ACE is more likely to be elevated with pulmonary involvement than with purely hilar adenopathy. ACE is also increased in many other granulomatous diseases, although not as frequently as in sarcoidosis. Although most individuals with sarcoidosis have elevated ACE, the frequency of elevation of ACE in other granulomatous disorders is 10% (Studdy et al, 1978). For this reason, ACE is not usually considered a diagnostic test, although it may be helpful in patients with primarily ocular involvement, in whom biopsy cannot be readily performed (Power et al, 1995).

ACE is frequently elevated in a number of other disorders, including multiple sclerosis (Constantinescu et al, 1997), Addison's disease (Falezza et al, 1985), hyperthyroidism (Reiners et al, 1988), diabetes mellitus (Schernthaner et al, 1984), alcoholic hepatitis (Borowsky et al, 1982), peptic ulcer (D'Onofrio et al, 1984), and nephrotic syndrome (Huskic et al, 1996), and at various stages in patients with bacterial (Kerttula & Weber, 1986) or *Pneumocystis* pneumonitis (Singer et al, 1989). Other

http://basicbook.net

pulmonary disorders with a significantly increased ACE are emphysema, asthma, small cell carcinoma, and squamous cell carcinoma (Ucar et al, 1997). In chronic renal failure, it is increased only in those on hemodialysis and rises during the course of a dialysis procedure (Docci et al, 1988); it is decreased in those with chronic renal failure who are not on dialysis (Le Treut et al, 1983). In HIV infection, the frequency and degree of elevation correlate with stage of disease (Ouellette et al, 1992). Decreased ACE levels are seen in various malignancies (Romer & Emmertsen, 1980; Schweisfurth et al, 1985), in chronic liver disease (Sakata et al, 1991), in anorexia nervosa (Matsubayashi et al, 1988), and in hypothyroidism (Reiners et al, 1988).

Use of CSF ACE levels for diagnosis and monitoring of neurosarcoidosis has been criticized (Dale & O'Brien, 1999). A number of other diseases cause elevated CSF ACE, among them viral encephalitis, multiple sclerosis, and central nervous system (CNS) syphilis (Schweisfurth et al, 1987).

In all cases of assays for ACE, attention should be paid to the possible use of ACE inhibitors in hypertensive patients. Because virtually all ACE inhibitors are competitive inhibitors, if competitive inhibition is suspected, use of higher concentrations of Hip-His-Leu substrate in the ACE assay can be used to overcome the inhibition. Alternatively, the sample can be diluted to remove the effect of the inhibitor. Assays for the levels of ACE inhibitors such as captopril have been developed (Prior et al, 2007).

ACETYLCHOLINESTERASE (EC 3.1.1.7) AND BUTYRYLCHOLINESTERASE (EC 3.1.1.8)

Biochemistry and Physiology

AChE (true cholinesterase or choline esterase I) and PChE (or choline esterase II) are carboxylic ester hydrolases (class 3; see Table 20-1) that have different specificities (Abdallah & Udomtecha, 2007). AChE catalyzes the following reaction:

$$\text{Acetylcholine} + H_2O \rightarrow \text{Choline} + \text{Acetate} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-39)}$$

PChE catalyzes this reaction:

$$\text{Acylcholine} + H_2O \rightarrow \text{Choline} + \text{Carboxylate} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-40)}$$

AChE and PChE are two different enzymes produced by different tissues that are able to cleave acetylcholine, one of the body's major neurotransmitters. True cholinesterase has acetylcholine (ACh) as its primary natural substrate and is also inhibited by it at approximately 10^{-2} mole/L; it is found in high activity in the CNS, RBCs, lung, and spleen. ACh is a primary neurotransmitter at various sites in the CNS, and AChE rapidly hydrolyzes ACh, producing rapid termination of neurotransmission. AChE is not normally found in amniotic fluid.

The normal function of the enzyme found in serum, PChE (also called *acetylcholine acylhydrolase*), is not known, but it is important in the cleavage of acetylcholine antagonists such as succinylcholine and mivacurium, muscle relaxants used during surgery. Serum PChE is not subject to substrate inhibition by high levels of ACh. PChE production occurs primarily in the liver, although other tissues, such as myocardium and pancreas, can also produce it. Although both enzymes hydrolyze acetylcholine, AChE, but not PChE, hydrolyzes acetyl-β-methylcholine; conversely, PChE, but not AChE, hydrolyzes butyryl- and benzoylcholine.

A number of genetic variants of PChE have reduced affinity (higher K_M) for acetylcholine, as well as for competitive inhibitors such as dibucaine and fluoride, when compared with the common U (usual) form; these are termed *A* (for atypical), *F* (for fluoride resistant), and *S* (for silent). The S variant actually represents a number of mutations that may cause absence of enzymatic activity or absence of PChE synthesis. Heterozygous deficiency is found in about 4% of the population, and homozygous deficiency affects 0.3% to 0.5% of individuals. These variants cause decreased (or, in the case of the *S* variant, absent) PChE activity when present in homozygous or mixed heterozygous forms (AA, AF, AS, FF, FS, SS). Because of the broad range of normal values, reduced PChE activity is not usually found in U-form heterozygotes.

Another way to detect such variants is to measure the percent of enzyme activity remaining after in vitro incubation of serum enzyme with dibucaine or fluoride (termed *dibucaine number*, or *DN*, and *fluoride number*, respectively). As mentioned previously, increased K_M of variants produces less effective catalysis than normal; decreased affinity thus exists for dibucaine and fluoride, making these variants more resistant to inhibition than normal. In general, dibucaine inhibits U plasma cholinesterase activity by approximately 70% to 90%. Variant cholinesterase activity is more resistant to inhibition, such that heterozygote activity is inhibited by approximately 50% to 70%, and homozygous variant activity is inhibited by approximately 10% to 30%. The DN will then reflect percentage inhibition of enzyme activity and will give a rough measure of the enzyme's activity; this in turn will indicate the presence or the absence of a variant form of the enzyme. The DN is calculated using the formula in Equation 20-42. For example, the UU form may show 85% inhibition, or 15% remaining activity, and may yield a DN of 85.

$$\text{Dibucaine (fluoride) number} = 100 \times (1 - \text{Enzyme activity with inhibitor} / \text{Enzyme activity without inhibitor}) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-41)}$$

Newer molecular biology techniques, such as the use of polymerase chain amplification with separation of the reaction products by gel electrophoresis (Cerf et al, 2002), allow much more accurate identification of variants, as compared with traditional biochemical analysis.

Pseudocholinesterase as an Anti-Xenobiotic Enzyme

In addition to its involvement in the metabolism of anticholinergic drugs, PChE has been found to catalyze the debenzoylation of cocaine (Duysen et al, 2008; Yang et al, 2009) and the hydrolysis of procaine (Duysen et al, 2008). Although catalysis by PChE of debenzoylation of cocaine is inefficient, absence of this enzyme or mutations that reduce its activity, discussed in the preceding section, can prolong and exacerbate the negative effects of cocaine such as its cardiotoxicity (Duysen et al, 2008). It is interesting to note that recently, based on transition state theory analysis and molecular modeling of this enzyme bound to cocaine, site-specific mutagenesis of the gene encoding this enzyme has resulted in a form of PChE that efficiently debenzoylates cocaine (Yang et al, 2009). Humanized forms of this engineered enzyme may prove to have significant therapeutic value.

Reference Ranges and Preanalytic Variation

PChE values are low in infants and gradually rise to adult levels by 4 months of age (Karlsen et al, 1981). Values in men do not change after this point until 45 years of age; in women, they fall by about 10% at menarche and increase by 15% after menopause. A recent study (Abou-Hatab et al, 2001) found no significant correlation between older patient age and changes in plasma enzyme activities of AChE and PChE; healthy young and older individuals (study age range, 18–85 years) showed similar enzyme activities. Values in men are about 15% to 20% higher than in women until 45 years of age, when values in women become equal. Oral contraceptives cause a decrease of about 15% in PChE activity (Lepage et al, 1985). About a fourfold range of values is seen in normal individuals. Increased body mass index is associated with an increase in PChE, and low protein intake leads to decreased PChE.

The half-life of PChE has been estimated at between 2 and 10 days. Average day-to-day variation is about 7% (Moses et al, 1986)—much smaller than that for most other enzymes.

Measurement

Enzyme activity is typically measured using an acylthiocholine ester as a substrate; released thiocholine reacts with Ellman's reagent (dithiobisnitrobenzoic acid), releasing 5-mercapto-2-nitrobenzoic acid, which is measured spectrophotometrically. Pseudocholinesterase activity is measured in serum, and AChE activity is measured in a hemolysate of washed RBCs. AChE may also be determined in amniotic fluid by gel electrophoresis. To measure dibucaine or fluoride numbers, serum is incubated with dibucaine (30 μmol/L) or fluoride (4 mmol/L) in the assay reaction mixture.

Causes of Abnormal Results

The main reasons for measuring PChE are (1) to monitor exposure to cholinesterase inhibitors, (2) for use as a liver function test, or (3) for diagnosis of genetic variants. Organophosphate insecticides are irreversible inhibitors of both AChE and PChE, although typically PChE plasma activity falls before AChE activity in RBCs with poisoning (Areekul et al, 1981). Because of small individual variation and large interindividual variation in PChE values, it is advisable to obtain baseline values for PChE before individuals are exposed to organophosphates (Trundle & Marcial, 1988). A decrease of 40% from baseline is needed before symptoms develop, and severe symptoms typically occur with falls in values greater than 80%; thus, symptoms often occur with PChE values within the reference range. If no baseline values are present, serial determinations are helpful. In one study, 90% of symptomatic organophosphate poisonings were associated with PChE values within the reference range, and postexposure levels showed a rise, confirming toxicity (Coye et al, 1987). Although PChE reflects acute toxicity, AChE (RBCs) better reflects chronic exposure.

In contrast to other hepatocyte enzymes, PChE production by the liver appears to reflect synthetic function rather than hepatocyte injury. Levels

http://basicbook.net

of PChE are decreased in acute hepatitis, cirrhosis, and carcinoma metastatic to liver. PChE is decreased in malnutrition but is normal or increased in nephrotic syndrome. As is the case when monitoring organophosphate exposure, changes in values compared with baseline are more useful than single values, limiting the diagnostic usefulness of PChE as a nutritional or liver injury monitor.

The other common use of PChE measurements is in recognizing the presence of genetic variants. Most commonly, such testing involves family members of individuals who have prolonged apnea after use of succinylcholine or mivacurium (neuromuscular blocking agents/muscle relaxants) during anesthesia. Testing typically involves both total PChE and determination of fluoride and dibucaine numbers to recognize homozygous or compound heterozygous variants that put an individual at risk from exposure to cholinesterase inhibitors. Patients at risk (with variant cholinesterase forms) may more slowly hydrolyze the neuromuscular blocking agent, unexpectedly increasing the duration of respiratory muscle relaxation and prolonging apnea. This is in contrast to the usual rapid drug hydrolysis seen with the U forms, leading to rapid recovery of the patient.

As mentioned previously, measurement of RBC AChE is useful in organophosphate exposure and poisoning. In addition, qualitative analysis of AChE in amniotic fluid may be useful in the diagnosis of neural tube defects, especially in high-risk groups (Muller, 2003). AChE can be identified in amniotic fluid from pregnancies with neural tube defects, as well as some other types of birth defects. AChE is absent in amniotic fluid from normal pregnancies. More recently, PChE (butyrylcholinesterase) has been found to have a strong inverse relationship to long-term survival in patients diagnosed with coronary artery disease (CAD) (Goliasch et al, 2012).

LACTATE DEHYDROGENASE (EC 1.1.1.27)

Biochemistry and Physiology

LD is a class 1 enzyme (oxidoreductase; see Table 20-1) that acts on a CH–OH group of donors with NAD^+ as acceptor and catalyzes the transfer of hydrogen in the form of a hydride ion:

$$\text{(L)-Lactate} + NAD^+ \leftrightarrow \text{Pyruvate} + NADH + H^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 20-42)}$$

The enzyme is also capable of oxidizing other (L)-2-hydroxymonocarboxylic acids.

LD is a zinc-containing enzyme that is part of the glycolytic pathway; it is found in the cytoplasm of all cells and tissues in the body. LD is a tetramer of two active subunits: H and M with a molecular weight of 134 kDa. Combinations of subunits produce five isoenzymes ranging from LD_1 (HHHH) to LD_5 (MMMM); the intermediate isoenzymes contain differing combinations of H and M subunits (LD_2, HHHM; LD_3, HHMM; LD_4, HMMM). Inherited forms of deficiency of H (Joukyuu et al, 1989) and M (Kanno et al, 1980), subunits of LD, are associated with low LD levels in plasma and only one isoenzyme on electrophoresis. Another form of LD composed of four C subunits is found in spermatozoa and in semen but has never been detected in serum, even in individuals with seminoma (Vogelzang et al, 1982). Rarely, another band detected in electrophoresis and termed **LD_6** can be seen; this probably represents alcohol dehydrogenase, which can also metabolize lactate (Kato et al, 1984). LD_1 and LD_2 have lower K_Ms (higher affinities) for lactate than for pyruvate, and the reverse is true for LD_4 and LD_5.

The tissue distribution of LD varies primarily in its isoenzyme composition, not in its content of LD (see Table 20-5). It is important to note that LD_1 and LD_2 are expressed at high levels in myocardial tissue and in erythrocytes and at much lower levels in tissues such as liver and muscle; the reverse is true for LD_4 and LD_5. In myocardial damage, the predominant isozymes that become elevated in serum are LD_1 and LD_2; in liver or skeletal muscle disease, the LD_4 and LD_5 isozymes become elevated predominantly in serum. In contrast to enzymes such as AST, ALT, and CK, which show marked variation in enzyme activity between tissues, the range in values for LD is only about 1.5-fold between those with the highest amounts (such as liver) and those with lower amounts (such as kidney); most tissues have LD activities that are 500 to 1000 times greater in tissue than those found in normal serum (see Table 20-5). Thus, significant elevation of plasma levels occurs with a small amount of tissue damage/breakdown. The tissue distribution of LD isoenzymes is shown in Table 20-7. The specific composition of elevated isoenzyme levels found in plasma will reflect tissue origin. In plasma, the majority of LD comes from breakdown of erythrocytes and platelets, with varying contributions from other organs. LD is apparently eliminated in bile, as injection of radiolabeled LD results in radioactivity in the gallbladder and small intestine (Smith et al, 1988).

TABLE 20-7
Relative Percentage of LD Isoenzymes in Various Tissues

Tissue	LD_1	LD_2	LD_3	LD_4	LD_5
Serum	25	35	20	15	5
Heart	45	40	10	5	0
Red blood cells	40	35	15	10	0
Renal cortex	35	30	25	20	0
Lung	10	15	40	30	5
Skeletal muscle	0	0	10	30	60
Liver	0	5	10	15	70

LD, Lactate dehydrogenase.

Reference Ranges and Preanalytic Variation

LD values are highest in newborns and infants; values do not change with age in adults, and there is no gender difference. Persons older than 65 years of age tend to have slightly higher values. Exercise causes, at most, slight increases in total LD; even strenuous exercise causes only a 25% rise in average values (Tanada et al, 1993). Even trace to slight hemolysis invalidates LD and LD isoenzyme analyses. Contact with the clot increases LD, and physical agitation of specimens, as occurs in most pneumatic tube systems, tends to cause some hemolysis and increased LD. Hemolysis affects both total LD and the LD_1/LD_2 ratio. Exercise has little effect on LD or its isoenzymes. Extreme exercise can cause LD_1 to become greater than LD_2. Total LD increases transiently after blood transfusion but returns to baseline within 24 hours (Wiesen et al, 1998). Delayed separation of red blood cells from serum does not affect LD values for 1 to 2 days. Few drugs directly affect LD activity, but granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor appears to increase LD in parallel to the increase in white blood cell (WBC) count (Sarris et al, 1995).

The half-life of LD isoenzymes varies greatly, from approximately 4 to 4½ days for LD_1 to 4 to 6 hours for LD_5. Day-to-day variation of LD is only 5% to 10%.

Measurement

LD activity can be measured using either the forward (lactate-to-pyruvate) or the reverse (pyruvate-to-lactate) direction of the reaction. A vast majority of laboratories use the forward reaction; the reverse reaction, predominantly used in the dry slide method for LD, produces activities that have good correlation with the forward reaction but at measured activities approximately threefold higher. This underscores the point made earlier—if total activity units are reported, it is vital to list the substrate and to provide the reference range for that substrate.

The reverse (pyruvate-to-lactate) reaction is used in a few laboratories currently because of faster reaction kinetics, the less costly cofactor (NADH) needed, and the smaller specimen volume requirement. Disadvantages of the pyruvate-to-lactate reaction include early loss of linearity of reaction kinetics, the effect of potent LD inhibitors in some NADH preparations, and use of suboptimal concentrations of pyruvate because of substrate inhibition. Also, lactate is a more specific substrate for this enzyme; pyruvate is less specific and serves as a substrate for such enzymes as pyruvate dehydrogenase.

Electrophoretic separation of LD isoenzymes is typically used when quantitation of different isoenzymes is required; agarose gel is most commonly used. Quantitation usually uses the forward reaction, allowing detection of fluorescent NADH or a reduced formazan dye in a colorimetric development step. The electrophoretic support and developing agent affect the results, and the reference ranges for the different methods are not the same. Inhibition methods for LD_1 are also available but allow quantitation only of this isoenzyme; results are often expressed as the ratio of LD_1 to total LD. Hydroxybutyrate is preferentially cleaved by the LD_1 isoenzyme; until the early 1970s, measurement of **hydroxybutyrate dehydrogenase** was used as a diagnostic test for myocardial infarction.

Serum LD is, on average, 30 IU/L higher than plasma LD, owing to release of LD from platelets. With prolonged incubation of plasma containing platelets (separated at <1200 *g* centrifugation), LD can leak from damaged platelets, increasing plasma LD as well (Hollaar & Van der Laarse, 1979). LD is not stable on storage at 4° C because of cold lability of LD_5. Specimens can be stored for up to 24 hours at room temperature with little change. Three days of storage at room temperature decreases total LD by about 20%, increases apparent LD_1 by 20%, and decreases apparent LD_5 by 18%. If specimens are frozen, LD_5

http://basicbook.net

decreases significantly and the isoenzyme pattern shifts with an artifactual increase in LD_1 and decrease in LD_5. Serum should not be frozen for assay of LD or for its isoenzymes.

Causes of Abnormal Results

LD is a highly nonspecific test; an abnormal value is not specific for damage to any particular organ. Relative amounts of LD, AST, and ALT (along with CK) may provide clues to the source of LD elevation. If LD is markedly elevated, but AST, ALT, and CK are normal or minimally increased, this suggests damage to cells such as red or white blood cells, kidney, lung, lymph nodes, or tumors. Increases in both CK and LD, with greater increases in AST than ALT, occur with cardiac or skeletal muscle injury. Increases in LD occur in liver disease, and LD can be elevated in hepatitis, although these increases by themselves are not specific to liver injury (Cassidy & Reynolds, 1994). Recently, it was found that in fulminant hepatic failure (see Chapters 8 and 21), the serum levels of ALT and LD both increase such that LD increases more rapidly initially. An ALT-LD index has been computed in these patients and was found to be a reliable predictor of survival in patients with this condition (Kotoh et al, 2008). As discussed in Chapters 8 and 21, serum elevations of LD and ALP frequently occur in space-occupying lesions of the liver; most cases are identified as metastatic carcinoma or primary hepatocellular carcinoma.

In many conditions, such as shock and metastatic carcinoma, LD is increased because of damage to multiple organs, so that mixed patterns can be seen. Marked elevations of LD (>5 to 10 times normal) are seen in megaloblastic anemia, hemolytic anemias, advanced malignancies (particularly lymphoma and leukemia), sepsis or other causes of shock, and cardiopulmonary arrest. LD is often moderately elevated in *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia (Smith et al, 1988) but is often normal in most other forms of pneumonia (Rotenberg et al, 1988). Although LD is highly sensitive (so that normal values make the diagnosis unlikely) (Quist & Hill, 1995), the predictive value of LD is not adequate to establish a diagnosis in an HIV patient (Grover et al, 1992). In patients with biliary pancreatitis (inflammation due to gallstones impacted in the bile duct), the LD/AST ratio is elevated, which appears to indicate the presence of pancreatic necrosis (Isogai et al, 1998). Note that 10% to 20% of patients with biliary pancreatitis may present with normal liver function tests (Dholakia et al, 2004).

In cases in which the cause of elevated LD cannot be determined by other means, LD isoenzymes may be useful in determining the source of injury. In normal serum, the LD isoenzymes, in decreasing order of activity, are 2 > 1 > 3 > 4 > 5. In germ cell tumors (particularly seminoma and dysgerminoma), LD_1 is increased and can serve as a tumor marker (von Eyben et al, 2000; von Eyben, 2001).

As noted in Chapter 18 on cardiac function, LD increases in serum over about a 36-hour period, during which time the LD_1/LD_2 ratio, which is normally less than 1, increases to values of 1 or above, the so-called *flipped ratio.* This confirmed the diagnosis of myocardial infarction (MI) but could not be used to make acute diagnoses of MI because of the prolonged time (36 hours) required for the flipped ratio to develop. As discussed in Chapter 18, better biomarkers, specifically the inhibitory subunit of troponin, are available for the acute diagnosis of MI and for confirmation of the diagnosis (serum troponin levels remain elevated for longer than 1 week after the acute event). Also, hemolytic anemia, megaloblastic anemia, and renal cortical diseases such as renal infarcts and renal cell carcinoma cause increases in LD_1 and, often, a flipped LD_1/LD_2 ratio. In tumors of WBCs (leukemia, lymphoma, multiple myeloma) LD_3 and often LD_4 are typically increased, whereas the relative amounts of LD_1 and LD_2 are decreased (Ricerca et al, 1988; Copur et al, 1989; Pandit et al, 1990). Pulmonary disease can produce a similar pattern. Increases in LD_5 and sometimes LD_4 are typically seen with skeletal muscle injury or with ischemic or toxic hepatic injury. The presence of LD_6 is associated with a poor prognosis (Ketchum et al, 1984). An isomorphic pattern, in which total LD is increased but isoenzymes are present in normal proportions, and a **tombstone** pattern, seen when the relative amount of each isoenzyme is roughly the same, are typically noted in persons with diffuse tissue damage, often accompanied by shock or hypoxemia.

More recently, serum LDH levels have been used in cancers as an important prognostic factor, as with prediction of response to therapy in multiple myeloma (Moreau et al, 2014) (high levels indicating lower likelihood of response to specific therapy) and overall survival in metastatic melanoma (Kelderman, 2014), with high levels indicating a worse prognosis. Interestingly, LDH levels have been useful in evaluating pulmonary damage induced by silicate exposure in agate workers wherein the ratio of serum to red blood cell LDH was much higher for exposed workers than for a non-exposed control group (Aggarwal, 2014). In patients who have undergone radiotherapy for prostate cancer, elevated LD_5 levels have been found to be strongly indicative of high tumor proliferation rates and relapse following radiotherapy (Koukourakis et al, 2014).

5′-NUCLEOTIDASE (EC 3.1.3.5)

Biochemistry and Physiology

5′-NT is a phosphoric monoester hydrolase (class 3 enzyme; see Table 20-1), also known as 5′-ribonucleotide phosphohydrolase, which catalyzes the following reaction:

$$\text{5′-Ribonucleotide} + H_2O \rightarrow \text{Ribonucleoside} + \text{Phosphate} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 20-43)}$$

It is a cytoplasmic membrane–bound phosphatase with a wide specificity for 5′-ribonucleotides and a molecular weight of about 70 kDa. It acts only on nucleotides (such as adenosine 5′-monophosphate and guanosine 5′-monophosphate) and is believed to function in extracellular adenosine production, nutrient absorption, and cell proliferation. 5′-NT is a metalloprotein, and zinc is believed to be an integral part of the enzyme. It is widely distributed in the body, predominantly attached to cell membranes (similar to ALP and GGT). Plasma 5′-NT is derived predominantly from the liver. A detailed review of 5′-NT is available (Sunderman, 1990).

Reference Ranges and Preanalytic Variation

5′-NT is normally present at low activities in children, rises in adolescence, and plateaus until 40 years of age, when levels increase significantly (Moses et al, 1986); reference values are independent of gender and race. A slight increase in 5′-NT is seen during the second and third trimesters of pregnancy (Bacq et al, 1996). Similar to ALP and GGT, antiepileptic drugs can increase 5′-NT activity; however, values are usually less than twice the reference limits, and less than 25% of those taking such agents show elevated 5′-NT activity (Fortman & Witte, 1985).

Measurement

Measurement of 5′-NT is difficult because other phosphatases, notably ALP, are capable of cleaving the substrate used to measure the lower activity of 5′-NT present in the sample. Approaches usually utilize large quantities of other, nonnucleoside substrates to "competitively inhibit" ALP (although they are actually undergoing reactions catalyzed by ALP, they prevent ALP from acting on nucleotide phosphates). Although it would be simplest to measure generated phosphate, this cannot be done because cleavage of other phosphates by ALP would produce incorrect results. Therefore, measurement of the nucleoside released by the action of 5′-NT is required. Most chelating agents such as EDTA inhibit enzyme activity, presumably by making zinc unavailable.

Causes of Abnormal Results

Similar to GGT, 5′-NT is most commonly used to determine whether the source of an elevated ALP is liver or bone. Although 5′-NT is more commonly elevated in cholestatic disorders, acute hepatitis causes an increase in 5′-NT synthesis by the liver and a slight elevation in 5′-NT in plasma (Fukano et al, 1990). 5′-NT is increased in ovarian carcinoma (Chatterjee et al, 1981) and in rheumatoid arthritis, where levels correlate with extent of inflammation as reflected by erythrocyte sedimentation rate (Johnson et al, 1999). Sapey and colleagues (2000) prospectively studied ALP, GGT, and 5′-NT in 80 cholestatic patients, correlating intrahepatic (i.e., secondary to intrahepatic parenchymal disease) and extrahepatic (i.e., secondary to biliary tree obstruction) causes with enzyme changes. They found markedly increased levels with extrahepatic causes (compared with intrahepatic disease) and noted that elevations in GGT and 5′-NT levels were independently linked to cause. The GGT/5′-NT ratio differed significantly between the two groups, with a ratio <1.9 highly suggestive of (but insensitive to) intrahepatic disease (Sapey et al, 2000).

SKELETAL MUSCLE INJURY: CREATINE PHOSPHOKINASE (CK)

The basic assay for this enzyme was discussed earlier (see Equations 20-15 to 20-17). The cytosolic form of this enzyme has two major isoenzymes, M and B, each of which has the same activity. CK is composed of three types of dimers: MM (mainly in skeletal muscle), MB (found mainly in cardiac tissue), and BB (found predominantly in brain and intestine). There are also two other forms of CK, the intramitochondrial forms, termed *MtCK, non-muscle* or *ubiquitous MtCK* and *sarcomeric muscle CK.* MtCK is a supplier of phosphocreatine that shuttles to the cytosol where it is used to drive various cellular processes by inducing synthesis of ATP that

http://basicbook.net

is used as an energy source serving as a substrate for cytosolic ATPases (Wallimann et al, 1992).

As discussed at length in Chapter 18, because CK-MB is found mainly in myocardial tissue, CK-MB is used as a serodiagnostic test for MI. In this section, CK is discussed as a biomarker for skeletal muscle injury.

Skeletal muscle injury can occur from a variety of sources. Direct trauma, as occurs with physical injury (including contact sports), surgery, strenuous exercise, and intramuscular injection, are common causes of mild elevations of CK (up to about five to six times reference limits). In these situations, CK typically increases rapidly and then falls quickly, returning to baseline with a half-life of approximately 24 hours. An important clinical disorder associated with acute muscle injury is neuroleptic malignant syndrome, a rare complication of treatment with phenothiazines or other psychotropic agents. Typically, affected individuals present with muscle rigidity, fever, and elevated WBC counts; CK is considered a diagnostic test for this disorder. Prompt recognition and treatment are necessary to prevent death from this syndrome; discontinuation of medications and use of the muscle-stabilizing agent dantrolene are the cornerstones of treatment (Pelonero et al, 1998).

Chronic damage to muscle causes more persistent elevation of CK, which may be mild or more extensive. The broad range of normal values and the preanalytic variation seen in total CK values can hamper recognition of mild, ongoing muscle injury. Generally, persistent elevation above the reference limits for an appropriate comparison group despite cessation of any other factors known to affect CK is needed to diagnose muscle injury in asymptomatic individuals. Common causes of chronic muscle injury include medications (particularly 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase inhibitors and glucocorticoids), congenital myopathies (such as Duchenne's muscular dystrophy), inflammatory disorders (such as polymyositis and dermatomyositis), hypothyroidism, and alcohol abuse. In chronic myopathies, CK-MB is often increased, reflecting its production by regenerating muscle.

With severe acute damage to muscle, a clinical picture termed *rhabdomyolysis* may develop. In such situations, CK-MB/total CK may be elevated above normal, in the absence of myocardial infarction (cardiac troponin levels are normal); this is commonly seen in patients with inflammatory muscle disease (Kiely et al, 2000). In addition to normal cardiac troponin levels with elevated CK levels, two distinct isoforms (representing fast or slow skeletal fiber types) of serum skeletal troponin I may be identified (Simpson et al, 2002).

No specific criteria are known for differentiating rhabdomyolysis from lesser degrees of muscle injury; among the more important features are the higher total CK (one suggested diagnostic level is CK >20 times upper reference limits), the rapid rise and fall of CK, and the appearance of myoglobinuria. Many assays for myoglobin (found in skeletal, smooth, and cardiac muscle) are relatively insensitive, and myoglobin has a short half-life; thus, CK is a more reliable test for establishing the diagnosis. As a form of **cell lysis syndrome,** rhabdomyolysis is associated with the release of other cell contents, such as potassium, phosphate, and nucleotides that can be converted to uric acid. Qualitative testing for myoglobin in the urine is important because myoglobin is potentially toxic to the kidneys, and the patient is at risk for acute renal failure. Myoglobinuria may lead to the development of acute tubular necrosis, with the appearance of pigmented casts in the urine sediment. If renal failure develops, hyperkalemia, hyperphosphatemia, and hyperuricemia typically also will be present as described in the fourth clinical case presentation in Chapter 8. No direct relationship has been discerned between the degree of elevation of CK and the likelihood of development of renal failure (Gabow et al, 1982; Ward, 1988). Common causes of rhabdomyolysis include drugs (particularly ethanol and cocaine), viral infection, extreme exertion, hyperthermia, trauma including crush injuries, ischemia of the lower extremities, and inflammatory myopathy. In addition, strenuous exercise in individuals with sickle trait can result in massive rhabdomyolysis, leading to myoglobin-induced renal failure and the other sequelae discussed previously (Chapter 8 and Mitchell, 2007; Ouyang et al, 2008).

In a recent study (Enooku et al, 2014), elevation of serum MtCK in patients with cirrhosis or hepatitis C was found to be a reliable independent predictor of development of hepatocellular carcinoma. The cutoff value was 9 IU/L. There also appeared to be a correlation between serum MtCK levels and degree of liver fibrosis and hepatocellular damage.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Bull H, Murray PG, Thomas D, et al: Acid phosphatases, *J Clin Pathol Mol Pathol* 55:65–72, 2002.

Recent review of acid phosphatases, with emphasis on tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase and its function and clinical usefulness in processes involving bone resorption.

Dzau VJ, Bernstein K, Celermajer D, et al: Pathophysiologic and therapeutic importance of tissue ACE: a consensus report, *Cardiovasc Drugs Ther* 16:149–160, 2002.

Report from a recent consensus conference examining the actions of angiotensin-converting enzymes (ACEs) in the pathology of cardiovascular disease and the use of tissue ACE inhibitors as antihypertensive agents in these patients.

Macours N, Poels J, Hens K, et al: Structure, evolutionary conservation, and functions of angiotensin- and endothelin-converting enzymes, *Int Rev Cytol* 239:47–97, 2004.

Recent overview of both angiotensin-converting enzymes and endothelin-converting enzymes examining the structure and biological roles of these molecules.

von Eyben FE: A systematic review of lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme 1 and germ cell tumors, *Clin Biochem* 34:441–454, 2001.

Review of lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme 1 as a possible serum marker in patients with germ cell tumors.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

General

Brehme CS, Roman S, Shaffer J, et al: Tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase forms complexes with alpha 2-macroglobulin in serum, *J Bone Miner Res* 14:311–318, 1999.

Dasgupta A, Banerjee SK, Datta P: False-positive troponin I in the MEIA due to the presence of rheumatoid factors in serum: elimination of this interference by using a polyclonal antisera against rheumatoid factors, *Am J Clin Pathol* 112:753–756, 1999.

Dickerman RD, Pertusi R, Zachariah NY, et al: Anabolic steroid induced hepatotoxicity: is it overstated?, *Clin J Sports Med* 9:34–39, 1999.

International Union of Biochemistry: Enzyme nomenclature, 1978. In *Recommendations of the Nomenclature Committee of the International Union of Biochemistry of the Nomenclature and Classification of Enzymes*, San Diego, 1979, Academic Press.

International Union of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Nomenclature Committee: *Enzyme nomenclature: recommendations 1992*, San Diego, 1992, Academic Press.

Langdon DE: Enzyme neurosis—a clinician's plan for standardization, *Ann Intern Med* 121:234–235, 1994.

Mader M, Kolbus N, Meihorst D, et al: Human intestinal alkaline phosphatase-binding IgG in patients with severe bacterial infections, *Clin Exp Immunol* 95:98–102, 1994.

Moss DW, Henderson AR: Clinical enzymology. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1999, WB Saunders, pp 617–721.

Otto A, Bar J, Birkenmeier G: Prostate-specific antigen forms complexes with human alpha 2-macroglobulin and binds to the alpha 2-macroglobulin receptor/LDL receptor-related protein, *J Urol* 159:297–303, 1998.

Podlasek SJ, Dufour DR, McPherson RA: Alterations in lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme pattern after streptokinase administration or streptococcal infection, *Clin Chem* 35:1763–1766, 1989.

Remaley AT, Wilding P: Macroenzymes: biochemical characterization, clinical significance, and laboratory detection, *Clin Chem* 35:2261–2270, 1989.

Sosolik RC, Hitchcock CL, Becker WJ: Heterophilic antibodies produce spuriously elevated concentrations of the MB isoenzyme of creatine kinase in a selected patient population, *Am J Clin Pathol* 107:506–510, 1997.

Van Hoof VO, Deng DT, De Broe ME: How do plasma membranes reach the circulation?, *Clin Chim Acta* 266:23–31, 1997.

Zollner H: *Handbook of enzyme inhibitors*, New York, 1989, VCH Publishers.

Enzyme Kinetics

Cleland WW: Steady state kinetics. In Boyer PD, editor: *The enzymes*, vol 2, ed 3, San Diego, 1970, Academic Press, pp 1–65.

Cleland WW: Steady-state kinetics. In Sigman DS, Boyer PD, editors: *The enzymes*, vol 19, ed 3, San Diego, 1990, Academic Press, pp 99–158.

Cornish-Bowden A: *Fundamentals of enzyme kinetics, revised edition*, London, 1995, Portland Press.

Dixon M, Webb EC: *Enzymes*, ed 3, San Diego, 1979, Academic Press. Chapter IV.

Fersht A: *Structure and mechanism in protein science*. New York, 1999, Freeman. Chapters 3–7.

Segel I: *Enzyme kinetics: behavior and analysis of rapid equilibrium and steady-state enzyme systems*, New York, 2009, Wiley Classics Library.

Catalytic Efficiency

Adachia M, Ohharaa T, Kuriharaa K, et al: Structure of HIV-1 protease in complex with potent inhibitor KNI-272 determined by high-resolution x-ray and neutron crystallography, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 106:4641–4646, 2009.

Cashman JR, Berkman C, Underiner GE: Catalytic antibodies that hydrolyze (-)-cocaine obtained by a high throughput procedure, *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 293:952–961, 2000.

Ghosh AK, Chapsal BD, Weber IT, et al: Design of HIV protease inhibitors targeting protein backbone: an effective strategy for combating drug resistance, *Acc Chem Res* 41:78–86, 2008.

Matayoshi ED, Wang GT, Krafft GA, et al: Novel fluorogenic substrates for assaying retroviral proteases by resonance energy transfer, *Science* 247:954–958, 1990.

Swain A, Miller MM, Green J, et al: X-ray crystallographic structure of a complex between a synthetic protease of human immunodeficiency virus 1 and a substrate-based hydroxyethylamine inhibitor, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 87:8805–8809, 1990.

Vance JE, LeBlanc DA, Wingfield P, et al: Conformational selectivity of HIV-1 protease cleavage of X-Pro peptide bonds and its implications, *J Biol Chem* 272:15603–15606, 1997.

Specific Enzymes

Abdallah C, Udomtecha D: Pseudocholinesterase activity: determination and interpretation in pediatric anesthesia, *Middle East J Anesthesiol* 19:423–428, 2007.

Abou-Hatab K, O'Mahony MS, Patel S, et al: Relationship between age and plasma esterases, *Age Ageing* 30:41–45, 2001.

Aggarwal BD: Lactate dehydrogenase as a biomarker for silica exposure-induced toxicity in agate workers, *Occup Environ Med* 71:578–582, 2014.

Agbedana EO, Yeldu MH: Serum total, heat and urea stable alkaline phosphatase activities in relation to ABO blood groups and secretor phenotypes, *Afr J Med Med Sci* 25:327–329, 1996.

Alvarez L, Peris P, Bedini JL, et al: High bilirubin levels interfere with serum tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase determination: relevance as a marker of bone resorption in jaundiced patients, *Calcif Tissue Int* 64:301–303, 1999.

Areekul S, Srichairat S, Kirdudom P: Serum and red cell cholinesterase activity in people exposed to organophosphate insecticides, *Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health* 12:94–98, 1981.

Bacq Y, Zarka O, Brechot JF, et al: Liver function tests in normal pregnancy: a prospective study of 103 pregnant women and 103 matched controls, *Hepatology* 23:1030–1034, 1996.

Bayer PM, Hotschek H, Knoth E: Intestinal alkaline phosphatase and the ABO blood group system: a new aspect, *Clin Chim Acta* 108:81–87, 1980.

Beneteau-Burnat B, Baudin B, Morgant G, et al: Serum angiotensin-converting enzyme in healthy and sarcoidotic children: comparison with the reference interval for adults, *Clin Chem* 36:344–346, 1990.

Borowsky SA, Lieberman J, Strome S: Elevation of serum angiotensin-converting enzyme level: occurrence in alcoholic liver disease, *Arch Intern Med* 142:893–895, 1982.

Brenckman WD Jr, Lastinger LB, Sedor F: Unpredictable fluctuations in serum acid phosphatase activity in prostatic cancer, *JAMA* 245:2501–2504, 1981.

Burnett AL, Chan DW, Brendler CB, et al: The value of serum enzymatic acid phosphatase in the staging of localized prostate cancer, *J Urol* 148:1832–1834, 1992.

Cassidy WM, Reynolds TB: Serum lactic dehydrogenase in the differential diagnosis of acute hepatocellular injury, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 19:118–121, 1994.

Cerf C, Mesguish M, Gabriel I, et al: Screening patients with prolonged neuromuscular blockade after succinylcholine and mivacurium, *Anesth Analg* 94:461–466, 2002.

Chao T-Y, Yu J-C, Ku C-K, et al: Tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase 5b is a useful serum marker for extensive bone metastasis in breast cancer patients, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:544–550, 2005.

Chatterjee SK, Bhattacharya M, Barlow JJ: Evaluation of 5′-nucleotidase as an enzyme marker in ovarian carcinoma, *Cancer* 47:2648–2653, 1981.

Chen J, Yam LT, Janckila AJ, et al: Significance of "high" acid phosphatase activity in the serum of normal children, *Clin Chem* 25:719–722, 1979.

Collier DS, Pain JA: Acute and chronic retention of urine: relevance of raised serum prostatic acid phosphatase levels. A prospective study, *Urology* 27:34–37, 1986.

Constantinescu CS, Goodman DB, Grossman RI, et al: Serum angiotensin-converting enzyme in multiple sclerosis, *Arch Neurol* 54:1012–1015, 1997.

Copur S, Kus S, Kars A, et al: Lactate dehydrogenase and its isoenzymes in serum from patients with multiple myeloma, *Clin Chem* 35:1968–1970, 1989.

Coye MJ, Barnett PG, Midtling JE, et al: Clinical confirmation of organophosphate poisoning by serial cholinesterase analyses, *Arch Intern Med* 147:438–442, 1987.

Crantz FR, Swartz SL, Hollenberg NK, et al: Differences in response to the dipeptidyldipeptide hydrolase inhibitors SQ 20,881 and SQ 14,225 in normal-renin essential hypertension, *J Am Heart Assoc* 2:604–609, 1980.

Cushman DW, Ondetti MA: History of the design of captopril and related inhibitors of angiotensin converting enzyme, *J Am Heart Assoc* 17:589–592, 1991.

Dale JC, O'Brien JF: Determination of angiotensin-converting enzyme levels in cerebrospinal fluid is not a useful test for the diagnosis of neurosarcoidosis, *Mayo Clin Proc* 74:535, 1999.

Day AP, Feher MD, Chopra R, et al: The effect of benzafibrate on serum alkaline phosphatase isoenzyme activities, *Metabolism* 42:839–842, 1993.

Deng JT, Hoylaerts MF, Van Hoof VO, et al: Differential release of human intestinal alkaline phosphatase in duodenal fluid and serum, *Clin Chem* 38:2532–2538, 1992.

Dholakia K, Pitchumoni CS, Agarwal N: How often are liver function tests normal in acute biliary pancreatitis?, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 38:81–83, 2004.

Dive V: Review: phosphinic peptides as zinc metalloproteinase inhibitors, *Cell Mol Life Sci* 61:2010–2019, 2004.

Docci D, Delvecchio C, Turci F, et al: Effect of different dialyzer membranes on serum angiotensin-converting enzyme during hemodialysis, *Int J Artif Organs* 11:28–32, 1988.

Domar U, Karpe F, Hamsten A, et al: Human intestinal alkaline phosphatase: release to the blood is linked to lipid absorption, but removal from the blood is not linked to lipoprotein clearance, *Eur J Clin Invest* 23:753–760, 1993.

D'Onofrio GM, Levitt S, Ilett KF: Serum angiotensin converting enzyme in Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis and peptic ulceration, *Aust N Z J Med* 14:27–30, 1984.

Dufour DR: Effects of oral contraceptives on routine laboratory tests, *Clin Chem* 44:A137, 1998.

Duysen EG, Li B, Carlson M, et al: Increased hepatotoxicity and cardiac fibrosis in cocaine-treated butyrylcholinesterase knockout mice, *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol* 103:514–521, 2008.

Enooku K1, Nakagawa H, Soroida Y, et al: Increased serum mitochondrial creatine kinase activity as a risk for hepatocarcinogenesis in chronic hepatitis C patients, *Int J Cancer* 135:871–879, 2014.

Falezza G, Lechi Santonastaso C, Parisi T, et al: High serum levels of angiotensin-converting enzyme in untreated Addison's disease, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 61:496–498, 1985.

Fortman CS, Witte DL: Serum 5′-nucleotidase in patients receiving anti-epileptic drugs, *Am J Clin Pathol* 84:197–201, 1985.

Fukano M, Amano S, Hazama F, et al: 5′-Nucleotidase activities in sera and liver tissues of viral hepatitis patients, *Gastroenterol Jpn* 25:199–205, 1990.

Gabow PA, Kaehny WD, Kelleher SP: The spectrum of rhabdomyolysis, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 61:141–152, 1982.

Gerogiadis D, Guniasse P, Cotton J, et al: Structural determinants of RXPA 380, a potent and highly selective inhibitor of the angiotensin-converting enzyme C-domain, *Biochemistry* 43:8048–8054, 2004.

Goliasch G, Haschemi A, Marculescu R, et al: Butyrylcholinesterase activity predicts long-term survival in patients with coronary artery disease, *Clin Chem* 58:1055–1058, 2012.

Grover SA, Coupal L, Suissa S, et al: The clinical utility of serum lactate dehydrogenase in diagnosing *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia among hospitalized AIDS patients, *Clin Invest Med* 15:309–317, 1992.

Gupta SK, Chakraborty M, Mitra K: Serum angiotensin converting enzyme in respiratory diseases, *Indian J Chest Dis Allied Sci* 34:19–24, 1992.

Haarhaus M, Fernstrom A, Magnusson M, et al: Clinical significance of bone alkaline phosphatase isoforms, including the novel B1x isoform, in mild to moderate chronic kidney disease, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 24:3382–3389, 2009.

Hollaar L, Van der Laarse A: Interference of the measurement of lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) activity in human serum and plasma by LDH from blood cells, *Clin Chim Acta* 99:135–142, 1979.

How J, Brown JR, Saylor S, et al: Macrophage expression of tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase as a

http://basicbook.net

prognostic indicator in colon cancer, *Histochem Cell Biol* 142:195–204, 2014.
Huskic J, Kulenovic H, Culo F: Serum angiotensin-converting enzyme activity in patients with endemic nephropathy, *Nephron* 74:120–124, 1996.
Ind TE, Iles RK, Carter PG, et al: Serum placental-type alkaline phosphatase activity in women with squamous and glandular malignancies of the reproductive tract, *J Clin Pathol* 47:1035–1037, 1994.
Isogai M, Yamaguchi A, Hori A, et al: LDH to AST ratio in biliary pancreatitis—a possible indicator of pancreatic necrosis: preliminary results, *Am J Gastroenterol* 93:363–367, 1998.
Johnson SM, Patel S, Bruckner FE, et al: 5′-Nucleotidase as a marker of both general and local inflammation in rheumatoid arthritis patients, *Rheumatology* 38:391–396, 1999.
Joukyuu R, Mizuno S, Amakawa T, et al: Hereditary complete deficiency of lactate dehydrogenase H-subunit, *Clin Chem* 35:687–690, 1989.
Kallioniemi OP, Nieminen MM, Lehtinen J, et al: Increased serum placental-like alkaline phosphatase activity in smokers originates from the lungs, *Eur J Respir Dis* 71:170–176, 1987.
Kanno T, Sudo K, Takeuchi I, et al: Hereditary deficiency of lactate dehydrogenase M-subunit, *Clin Chim Acta* 108:267–276, 1980.
Kaplan LA, Chen IW, Sperling M, et al: Clinical utility of serum prostatic acid phosphatase measurements for detection (screening), diagnosis, and therapeutic monitoring of prostatic carcinoma: assessment of monoclonal and polyclonal enzymes and radioimmunoassays, *Am J Clin Pathol* 84:334–339, 1985.
Karlsen RL, Sterri S, Lyngaas S, et al: Reference values for erythrocyte acetylcholinesterase and plasma cholinesterase activities in children: implications for organophosphate intoxication, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 41:301–302, 1981.
Kato S, Zishii H, Kano S, et al: Evidence that "lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme 6" is in fact alcohol dehydrogenase, *Clin Chem* 30:1585–1586, 1984.
Kawamura M, Tanaka K, Toiyama Y, et al: Clinical significance of tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase type-5 expression in human gastric cancer, *Anticancer Res* 34:3425–3429, 2014.
Kelderman S, Heemskerk B, van Tinteren H, et al: Lactate dehydrogenase as a selection criterion for ipilimumab treatment in metastatic melanoma, *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 63(5):449–458, 2014.
Kerttula Y, Weber TH: Serum angiotensin converting enzyme in pneumonias, *J Clin Pathol* 39:1250–1253, 1986.
Ketchum CH, Robinson CA, Hall LM, et al: Clinical significance and partial biochemical characterization of lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme 6, *Clin Chem* 30:46–49, 1984.
Kiely PDW, Bruckner FE, Nisbet JA, et al: Serum skeletal troponin I in inflammatory muscle disease: relation to creatine kinase, CKMB and cardiac troponin I, *Ann Rheum Dis* 59:750–751, 2000.
Kim J, Song TJ, Song D, et al: Serum alkaline phosphatase and phosphate in cerebral atherosclerosis and functional outcomes after cerebral infarction, *Stroke* 44:3547–3549, 2013.
Kotoh K, Enjoji M, Kato M, et al: A new parameter using serum lactate dehydrogenase and alanine aminotransferase level is useful for predicting the prognosis of patients at an early stage of acute liver injury: a retrospective study, *Comp Hepatol* 7:1–8, 2008. [open access].
Koukourakis MI, Giatromanolaki A, Panteliadou M, et al: Lactate dehydrogenase 5 isoenzyme overexpression defines resistance of prostate cancer to radiotherapy, *Br J Cancer* 11:2217–2223, 2014.
Kyd PA, Vooght KD, Kerkhoff F, et al: Clinical usefulness of bone alkaline phosphatase in osteoporosis, *Ann Clin Biochem* 35:717–725, 1998.
Lepage L, Schiele F, Gueguen R, et al: Total cholinesterase in plasma: biological variations and reference limits, *Clin Chem* 31:546–550, 1985.
Le Treut A, Chevet D, Guenet L, et al: Serum angiotensin-converting enzyme levels in patients with chronic renal failure, *Pathol Biol (Paris)* 31:182–185, 1983.
Lu K-C, Tseng C-F, Wu C-C, et al: Effects of calcitriol on type 5b tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase and interleukin-6 in secondary hypoparathyroidism, *Blood Purif* 254:423–430, 2006.
Luisetti M, Martinetti M, Cuccia M, et al: Familial elevation of serum angiotensin converting enzyme activity, *Eur Respir J* 3:441–446, 1990.
Maatman TJ: Comparative analysis of fluctuation of serum tumor markers in advanced cancer of prostate, *Urology* 42:672–676, 1993.
Manolio TA, Burke GL, Savage PJ, et al: Sex- and race-related differences in liver-associated serum chemistry tests in young adults in the CARDIA study, *Clin Chem* 38:1853–1859, 1992.
Matsubayashi S, Tamai H, Kobayashi N, et al: Angiotensin-converting enzyme and anorexia nervosa, *Horm Metab Res* 20:761–764, 1988.
Mimori Y: Sarcoidosis: correlation of HRCT findings with results of pulmonary function tests and serum angiotensin-converting enzyme assay, *Kurume Med J* 45:247–256, 1998.
Mitchell BL: Sickle trait and sudden death—bringing it home, *J Natl Med Assoc* 99:300–305, 2007.
Moreau P, Cavo M, Sonneveld P, et al: Combination of international scoring system 3, high lactate dehydrogenase, and t(4;14) and/or del(17p) identifies patients with multiple myeloma (MM) treated with front-line autologous stem-cell transplantation at high risk of early MM progression-related death, *J Clin Oncol* 32:2173–2180, 2014.
Moses GC, Tuckerman JF, Henderson AR: Biological variance of cholinesterase and 5′-nucleotidase in serum of healthy persons, *Clin Chem* 32:175–177, 1986.
Moss DW: Electrophoresis of human alkaline and acid phosphatases, *Clin Lab Med* 6:507–523, 1986.
Moss DW: Physicochemical and pathophysiological factors in the release of membrane-bound alkaline phosphatase from cells, *Clin Chim Acta* 257:133–140, 1997.
Mukherjea M, Mukherjee P, Biswas R, et al: Effect of medroxyprogesterone acetate contraception on human serum enzymes, *Int J Fertil* 26:35–39, 1981.
Muller F: Prenatal biochemical screening for neural tube defects, *Childs Nerv Syst* 19:433–435, 2003.
Muthuswamy PP, Lopez-Majano V, Ranginwala M, et al: Serum angiotensin-converting enzyme (SACE) activity as an indicator of total body granuloma load and prognosis in sarcoidosis, *Sarcoidosis* 4:142–148, 1987.
Narayan P, Tewari A, Jacob G, et al: Differential suppression of serum prostatic acid phosphatase and prostate-specific antigen by 5-alpha-reductase inhibitor, *Br J Urol* 75:642–646, 1995.
Nijhawan R, Wierzbicki AS, Tozer R, et al: Antiepileptic drugs, hepatic enzyme induction and raised serum alkaline phosphatase isoenzymes, *Int J Clin Pharmacol Res* 10:319–323, 1990.
Ninomiya Y, Kioi S, Arakawa M: Serum angiotensin converting enzyme activity in ex-smokers, *Clin Chim Acta* 164:223–226, 1987.
Oksanen V, Fyhrquist F, Somer H, et al: Angiotensin converting enzyme in cerebrospinal fluid: a new assay, *Neurology* 35:1220–1223, 1985.
Ouellette DR, Kelly JW, Anders GT: Serum angiotensin-converting enzyme level is elevated in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection, *Arch Intern Med* 152:321–324, 1992.
Ouyang J, Dalal S, Blumenthal D, et al: Myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure and septicemia: rare complications of exertional rhabdomyolysis in a patient with sickle cell trait, *Fed Pract* 26:14–16, 19–20, 25–26, 2008.
Pandit MK, Joshi BH, Patel PS, et al: Efficacy of serum lactate dehydrogenase and its isozymes in monitoring the therapy in patients with acute leukemia, *Indian J Pathol Microbiol* 33:41–47, 1990.
Panteghini M, Pagani F: Biological variation in bone-derived biochemical markers in serum, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 55:609–616, 1995.
Panteghini M, Pagani F, Bonora R: Preanalytical and biological variability of prostatic acid phosphatase and prostate-specific antigen in serum from patients with prostatic pathology, *Eur J Clin Chem Clin Biochem* 30:135–139, 1992.
Pelonero AL, Levenson JL: Panduranji AK. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome: a review, *Psychiatr Serv* 49:1163–1172, 1998.
Pontes JE: Clinical significance of serum and bone marrow acid phosphatase, *Prostate* 1:465–470, 2006.
Power WJ, Neves RA, Rodriguez A, et al: The value of combined serum angiotensin-converting enzyme and gallium scan in diagnosing ocular sarcoidosis, *Ophthalmology* 102:2007–2011, 1995.
Price A, Attwood SE, Grant JB, et al: Measurement of prostate-specific antigen and prostatic acid phosphatase concentrations in serum before and 1-42 days after transurethral resection of the prostate and orchidectomy, *Clin Chem* 37:859–863, 1991.
Prior JA, Santos JL, Lima JL: Exploiting kinetic spectrophotometric determination of captopril, an angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor, in a multipumping flow system, *Anal Chim Acta* 600:183–187, 2007.
Proudler AJ, Ahmed AI, Crook D, et al: Hormone replacement therapy and serum angiotensin-converting-enzyme activity in postmenopausal women, *Lancet* 346:89–90, 1995.
Quist J, Hill AR: Serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) in *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, tuberculosis, and bacterial pneumonia, *Chest* 108:415–418, 1995.
Redelinghuys P, Nchinda AT, Chibale K, et al: Novel ketomethylene inhibitors of angiotensin 1-converting enzyme (ACE): inhibition and molecular modeling, *Biol Chem* 387:461–466, 2006.
Reiners C, Gramer-Kurz E, Pickert E, et al: Changes of serum angiotensin-I-converting enzyme in patients with thyroid disorders, *Clin Physiol Biochem* 6:44–49, 1988.
Reynoso G, Elias EG, Mittelman A: The contribution of the intestinal mucosa to the total serum alkaline phosphatase activity, *Am J Clin Pathol* 56:707–712, 1971.
Ricci LR, Hoffman SA: Prostatic acid phosphatase and sperm in the post-coital vagina, *Ann Emerg Med* 11:530–534, 1982.
Ricerca BM, Storti S, Campisi S, et al: Serum lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme pattern in non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, *Int J Biol Markers* 3:237–242, 1988.
Romer FK, Emmertsen K: Serum angiotensin-converting enzyme in malignant lymphomas: leukaemia and multiple myeloma, *Br J Cancer* 42:314–318, 1980.
Rotenberg Z, Weinberger I, Davidson E, et al: Significance of isolated increases in total lactate dehydrogenase and its isoenzymes in serum of patients with bacterial pneumonia, *Clin Chem* 34:1503–1505, 1988.
Sakata T, Takenaga N, Endoh T, et al: Diagnostic significance of serum angiotensin-converting enzyme activity in biochemical tests with special reference of chronic liver diseases, *Jpn J Med* 30:402–407, 1991.
Salo JO, Rannikko S, Haapiainen R: Serum acid phosphatase in patients with localised prostatic cancer, benign prostatic hyperplasia or normal prostates, *Br J Urol* 66:188–192, 1990.
Salvaggio A, Periti M, Miano L, et al: Body mass index and liver enzyme activity in serum, *Clin Chem* 37:720–723, 1991.
Sapey T, Mendler M-H, Guyader D: Respective value of alkaline phosphatase, gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase and 5′ nucleotidase serum activity in the diagnosis of cholestasis, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 30:259–263, 2000.
Sarris AH, Majlis A, Dimopoulos MA, et al: Rising serum lactate dehydrogenase often caused by granulocyte- or granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor and not tumor progression in patients with lymphoma or myeloma, *Leuk Lymphoma* 17:473–477, 1995.
Schernthaner G, Schwarzer C, Kuzmits R, et al: Increased angiotensin-converting enzyme activities in diabetes mellitus: analysis of diabetes type, state of metabolic control and occurrence of diabetic vascular disease, *J Clin Pathol* 37:307–312, 1984.
Schiele F, Artur Y, Floc'h AY, et al: Total, tartrate-resistant, and tartrate-inhibited acid phosphatases in serum: biological variations and reference limits, *Clin Chem* 34:685–690, 1988.
Schweisfurth H, Schioberg-Schiegnitz S, Kuhn W, et al: Angiotensin I converting enzyme in cerebrospinal fluid of patients with neurological diseases, *Klin Wochenschr* 65:955–958, 1987.
Schweisfurth H, Schmidt M, Brugger E, et al: Alterations of serum carboxypeptidases N and angiotensin-I-converting enzyme in malignant diseases, *Clin Biochem* 18:242–246, 1985.
Simpson JA, Labugger R, Hesketh GG, et al: Different detection of skeletal troponin I isoforms in serum of a patient with rhabdomyolysis: markers of muscle injury, *Clin Chem* 48:1112–1114, 2002.

http://basicbook.net

Singer F, Talavera W, Zumoff B: Elevated levels of angiotensin-converting enzyme in *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, *Chest* 95:803–806, 1989.
Smith RL, Ripps CS, Lewis ML: Elevated lactate dehydrogenase values in patients with *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, *Chest* 93:987–992, 1988.
Steinherz PG, Steinherz LJ, Nisselbaum JS, et al: Transient, marked, unexplained elevation of serum alkaline phosphatase, *JAMA* 252:3289–3292, 1984.
Studdy P, Bird R, James DG: Serum angiotensin-converting enzyme (SACE) in sarcoidosis and other granulomatous disorders, *Lancet* 2:1331–1334, 1978.
Sunderman FW Jr: The clinical biochemistry of 5′-nucleotidase, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 20:123–139, 1990.
Swolin-Eide D, Hansson S, Larsson L, et al: The novel bone alkaline phosphatase B1x isoform in children with kidney disease, *Pediatr Nephrol* 21:1723–1729, 2006.
Tanada S, Higuchi T, Nakamura T, et al: Evaluation of exercise intensity indicated by serum lactate dehydrogenase activity in healthy adults, *Acta Biol Hung* 44:153–160, 1993.
Theodorsen L: Collection and storage of samples for the determination of prostatic acid phosphatase in serum, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest Suppl* 179:57–65, 1985.
Thompson PJ, Kemp MW, McAllister WA, et al: Angiotensin-converting enzyme: investigation of diurnal variation, the effect of a large dose of prednisolone, and prednisolone pharmacokinetics in patients with sarcoidosis, *Am Rev Respir Dis* 134:1075–1077, 1986.
Trundle D, Marcial G: Detection of cholinesterase inhibition: the significance of cholinesterase measurements, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 18:345–352, 1988.
Ucar G, Yildirim Z, Ataol E, et al: Serum angiotensin converting enzyme activity in pulmonary diseases: correlation with lung function parameters, *Life Sci* 61:1075–1082, 1997.
Valenzuela GJ, Munson LA, Tarbaux NM, et al: Time-dependent changes in bone, placental, intestinal, and hepatic alkaline phosphatase activities in serum during human pregnancy, *Clin Chem* 33:1801–1806, 1987.
Vogelzang NJ, Lange PH, Goldberg E: Absence of sperm-specific lactate dehydrogenase-x in patients with testis cancer, *Oncodev Biol Med* 3:269–272, 1982.
von Eyben FE, Liu FJ, Amato RJ, et al: Lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme 1 is the most important LD isoenzyme in patients with testicular germ cell tumor, *Acta Oncol* 39:509–517, 2000.
Wadstrom J, Wenk M, Huber P: Serum half life of prostatic acid phosphatase, *Urol Res* 13:131–132, 1985.
Wallimann T, Wyss M, Brdiczka D, et al: Intracellular compartmentation, structure and function of creatine kinase isoenzymes in tissues with high and fluctuating energy demands: The "phosphocreatine circuit" for cellular energy homeostasis, *Biochem J* 281(Pt 1):21–40, 1992.
Ward MM: Factors predictive of acute renal failure in rhabdomyolysis, *Arch Intern Med* 148:1553–1557, 1988.
Whyte MP, Walkenhorst DA, Fedde KN, et al: Hypophosphatasia: levels of bone alkaline phosphatase immunoreactivity in serum reflect disease severity, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 81:2142–2148, 1996.
Wiesen AR, Byrd JC, Hospenthal DR, et al: Transient abnormalities in serum bilirubin and lactate dehydrogenase levels following red blood cell transfusions in adults, *Am J Med* 104:144–147, 1998.
Wolf PL: Clinical significance of serum high-molecular-mass alkaline phosphatase, alkaline phosphatase-lipoprotein-X complex, and intestinal variant alkaline phosphatase, *J Clin Lab Anal* 8:172–176, 1994.
Yang W, Pan Y, Zheng F, et al: Free-energy perturbation simulation on transition states and redesign of butyrylcholinesterase, *Biophys J* 96:1931–1938, 2009.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 21

EVALUATION OF LIVER FUNCTION

Matthew R. Pincus, Philip M. Tierno Jr., Elizabeth Gleeson, Wilbur B. Bowne, Martin H. Bluth

NORMAL LIVER FUNCTION, 289
Metabolic Functions, 289
Synthetic Functions, 293
TESTS OF LIVER INJURY, 295
Plasma Enzyme Levels, 295
α-Fetoprotein, 297
Autoimmune Markers, 297
Testing for Viral-Induced Hepatitis, 298
DIAGNOSIS OF LIVER DISEASES, 301
Hepatitis, 302
Chronic Passive Congestion, 302
Cirrhosis, 302
Posthepatic Biliary Obstruction, 304
Space-Occupying Lesion, 304
Fulminant Hepatic Failure, 304
SELECTED REFERENCES, 305

KEY POINTS

- The liver is composed of three systems: the hepatocyte, concerned with metabolic reactions, macromolecular (especially protein) synthesis, and degradation and metabolism of xenobiotics (e.g., drugs); the biliary system, involved with the metabolism of bilirubin and bile salts; and the reticuloendothelial system, concerned with the immune system and the production of heme and globin metabolites (e.g., bilirubin).
- The function of each of these systems can be measured conveniently and virtually noninvasively by determining the serum levels of specific analytes, in the so-called liver function test profile.
- One of the most common causes of acute liver injury is viral hepatitis, mainly hepatitis A, B, and C, all of which induce acute elevations of serum alanine and aspartate aminotransferase.
- Diagnosis of viral hepatitis can be made by screening for viral antigens, especially in hepatitis B, and for immunoglobulin M and G directed against specific viral antigens. Confirmation of the diagnosis of a particular form of viral hepatitis is carried out using suitable molecular diagnostic techniques such as real-time PCR using primers encoding specific viral gene sequences.
- Treatment of hepatitis C has changed dramatically recently. The standard treatment of pegylated interferon and ribavirin has now been replaced with specific viral proteases (e.g., NS3 protein) inhibitors such as telaprevir, simeprevir, and boceprevir.
- The diagnosis of specific liver diseases, including hepatitis, cirrhosis, chronic passive congestion, acute biliary obstruction, space-occupying lesions, autoimmune diseases, and fulminant hepatic failure, can be made from specific patterns of serum liver function tests and from the presence of specific antibodies in serum.

NORMAL LIVER FUNCTION

The liver is the largest and most complex organ of the gastrointestinal tract. Overall, it comprises three systems: first, the biochemical hepatocytic system, which is responsible for the vast majority of all metabolic activities in the body, including protein synthesis; aerobic and anaerobic metabolism of glucose and other sugars; glycogen synthesis and breakdown; amino acid and nucleic acid metabolism; amino acid and dicarboxylic acid interconversions via transaminases (aminotransferases); lipoprotein synthesis and metabolism; xenobiotic metabolism (e.g., drug metabolism), usually involving the cytochrome P450 oxidation system; storage of iron and vitamins such as A, D, and B_{12}; and synthesis of hormones such as angiotensinogen, insulin-like growth factor I, and triiodothyronine. It is also the site of clearance of many other hormones such as insulin, parathyroid hormone, estrogens, and cortisol. Uniquely, the liver is the site of metabolism of ammonia to urea.

Albumin in the body is synthesized in the liver, as are all coagulation factor proteins, with the exception of von Willebrand factor, which is synthesized in endothelial cells and megakaryocytes. Patients with liver disease may have signs or symptoms related to disturbance of any of the above functions.

The second major hepatic system is the hepatobiliary system, which is concerned with the metabolism of bilirubin, a process that involves transport of bilirubin into the hepatocyte and its conjugation to glucuronic acid and its secretion into bile canaliculi and the enterohepatic system. Last is the reticuloendothelial system—that is, Kupffer cells. These are a form of macrophage involved (a) with the immune system, including being a major site of defense against intestinal bacteria and the primary location for removal of antigen–antibody complexes from the circulation, and (b) with the breakdown of hemoglobin from dead erythrocytes, giving rise to bilirubin, which, together with bilirubin from the spleen, enters the hepatocyte.

Because clinical symptoms in liver disease often lag behind the progression of disease, it is important to detect the presence and even the onset of these conditions. Fortunately, evaluation of liver function can often be achieved by determination of serum analytes in a test profile known as **liver function tests,** many of whose components are not unique to liver but, when evaluated together, allow for accurate diagnosis of abnormalities of liver function. An outline of liver function tests and their interpretation has been presented in Chapter 8.

This chapter reviews the most common laboratory tests for evaluation of liver function and injury, methods used for their measurement, testing for causes of liver injury, and patterns of laboratory abnormalities seen in specific liver diseases.

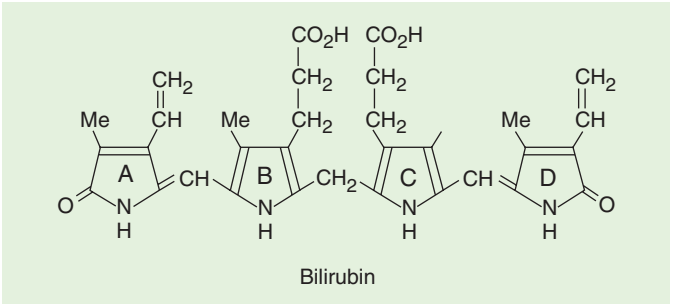
METABOLIC FUNCTIONS

Bilirubin

Normal Bilirubin Metabolism

Bilirubin is the major metabolite of heme, the iron-binding tetrapyrrole ring found in hemoglobin, myoglobin, and cytochromes. Approximately 250 to 350 mg of bilirubin is produced daily in healthy adults, about 85% of which is derived from turnover of senescent red blood cells (Berlin & Berk, 1981; Chowdhury et al, 1988; Berk & Noyer, 1994a). In macrophages mainly in the spleen, methemoglobin from red cells is split to give free globin chains and heme. The porphyrin ring of heme is oxidized by microsomal heme oxygenase, producing the straight-chain compound biliverdin and releasing iron. In this ring-opening reaction, 1 mole of carbon monoxide is released, which is transported ultimately as carboxyhemoglobin, whose serum levels can be useful in the diagnosis of hemolytic anemia, as discussed in Chapter 8. Biliverdin is then reduced to bilirubin (Fig. 21-1) by the nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH)-dependent enzyme, biliverdin reductase. Bilirubin, bound mainly to albumin, is then transported mainly in the portal system to the liver, where it enters the hepatocyte through its membrane surface in contact with the sinusoids, as shown in Figure 21-2.

http://basicbook.net



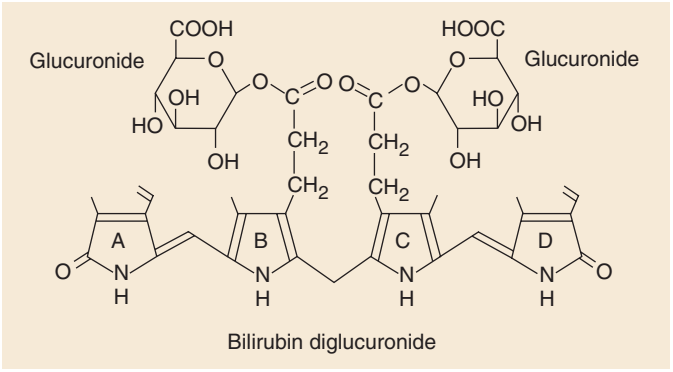


Figure 21-1 Structures of critical molecules in the metabolism of bilirubin to its diglucuronide. Bilirubin is transported into the hepatocyte, where it is converted into the diglucuronide form and secreted into canaliculi. (From Crawford JM, Hauser SC, Gollan JL. Formation, hepatic metabolism, and transport of bile pigments: A status report. *Semin Liver Dis* 8:105–18, 1988b.)

As free bilirubin enters hepatocytes, additional bilirubin dissociates from albumin. This process is highly efficient; clearance of unconjugated bilirubin at normal values is about 5 mg/kg/day or, for a 75-kg individual, about 400 mg/day (Berk & Noyer, 1994b). The half-life of unconjugated bilirubin is short; 60% of labeled bilirubin appears within hepatocytes within 5 minutes of injection (Bloomer et al, 1973). Clearance rate increases with an increasing concentration of unconjugated bilirubin up to at least 4 mg/dL (Berk & Noyer, 1994b).

In its most common isomeric *(trans-)* form, bilirubin is highly insoluble in water, and most of it is transported bound to albumin, with only a small fraction of free bilirubin. Light can cause photoisomerization of bilirubin, from a *trans-* form to a more compact *cis-* form, making it much more water soluble and allowing it to be excreted in urine (Onishi et al, 1986); this forms the basis for phototherapy in the treatment of neonatal (unconjugated) hyperbilirubinemia. The pathway for clearance of bilirubin by the liver is illustrated in Figure 21-2. Note that unconjugated bilirubin enters the hepatocyte at the membrane surface adjacent to the sinusoids, opposite the face that is in contact with bile canaliculi.

Bilirubin enters hepatocytes by two mechanisms: passive diffusion and receptor-mediated endocytosis. As summarized in Figure 21-2, once in the hepatocyte, bilirubin is "handed-off" from one protein complex to another in a chain. First, it complexes with the so-called Y and Z proteins, and then it binds sequentially to a protein complex called ligandin. From this complex, it is transported to the smooth endoplasmic reticulum (SER). In the SER, bilirubin becomes the substrate of the enzyme, glucuronyl transferase, encoded by the *UGT1A@* gene, which catalyzes the esterification of the propionic acid side chains of bilirubin with glucuronic acid (present as uridine diphosphoglucuronic acid) to form mainly the diglucuronide conjugate shown in Figure 21-1 (Chowdhury et al, 1988). Some monoglucuronide and a small amount of triglucuronide also form. The ratio of monoconjugated to diconjugated pigment in bile is 1 : 4, whereas the ratio

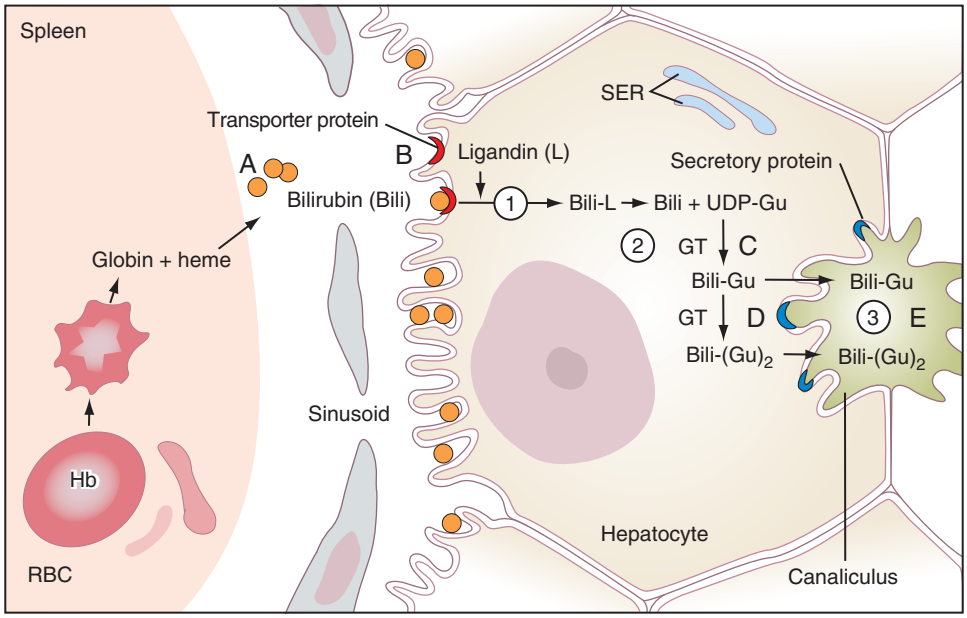


Figure 21-2 Schematic summary of the pathway of bilirubin *(Bili, in brown circles)* transport and metabolism. Bilirubin is produced from metabolism of heme, primarily in the spleen, and is transported to the liver bound to albumin. It enters the hepatocyte by binding to a transporter protein *(red crescents)* and crosses the cell membrane *(circled 1),* thus entering the cell. It binds to Y and Z proteins *(not shown)* and then to ligandin for transport to the smooth endoplasmic reticulum (SER). In the SER, bilirubin is conjugated to glucuronic acid by UDP-glucuronyl transferase 1 *(circled 2 and labeled GT),* producing monoglucuronides and diglucuronides of bilirubin: Bili-Gu and Bili-$(Gu)_2$. Conjugated bilirubin is then secreted into the canaliculi *(circled 3)* by the adenosine triphosphate–binding cassette transporter protein MRP2/cMOAT/ABCC2 *(shown as blue crescents).* In overproduction disease *(A),* such as hemolytic anemia, unconjugated bilirubin is produced at rates that exceed the ability of the liver to clear it, leading to a usually transient increase in unconjugated bilirubin in serum. In both Gilbert's and Crigler-Najjar syndromes, mutations in the gene encoding UDP glucuronyl transferase *(UDPGT1A1),* shown at *C* in the figure, result in buildup of unconjugated bilirubin in hepatocytes and ultimately in serum. In Gilbert's syndrome, there may also be a defect in the bilirubin transporter protein, shown at *B* in the figure. Mutations in the *MRP2/cMOAT/ABCC2* gene result in defective secretory proteins, causing buildup of conjugated bilirubin in hepatocytes and, ultimately, in serum, resulting in the Dubin-Johnson syndrome *(D),* an autosomal recessive disease. Conjugated hyperbilirubinemia is also found in the Rotor syndrome, possibly virus induced. In adults, blockade of any of the major bile ducts, especially the common bile duct, by stones or space-occupying lesions such as tumors *(E),* is the most common cause of conjugated hyperbilirubinemia. *Hb,* Hemoglobin; *RBC,* red blood cell.

http://basicbook.net

is nearly 1 : 1 in plasma, suggesting that monoconjugates reflux into plasma more readily.

As shown in Figure 21-2, an energy-dependent mechanism transports the conjugated bilirubin to the canalicular face of the hepatocyte at which it is directly secreted into the canaliculi; only conjugated bilirubin can be directly excreted into the canaliculi, and unconjugated bilirubin cannot traverse this membrane.

Once bilirubin is excreted into the canaliculi and ultimately into the intestinal tract, it is further metabolized by intestinal bacteria, which affect its deconjugation and oxidation or reduction with the formation of compounds collectively called urobilinogen and urobilin, which can then be reabsorbed from the gut. Most urobilinogen absorbed is reexcreted by the liver. A minor fraction may be excreted in the urine. Larger quantities are found in the urine in conditions leading to hyperbilirubinemia, or in conditions in which the liver cannot readily secrete urobilinogen absorbed from the gut. Ultimately, intestinal urobilinogen is converted to stool pigments such as stercobilin; their absence leads to clay-colored stools, often an early sign of impaired bilirubin metabolism.

When conjugated bilirubin is present in serum, it can become covalently bound to albumin, producing biliprotein or delta-bilirubin (Lauff et al, 1982; McDonagh, 1984). Although conjugated bilirubin has a half-life of less than 24 hours, delta-bilirubin has a half-life similar to that for albumin at 17 days (Fevery & Blanckaert, 1986), causing prolonged jaundice during recovery from hepatocellular injury (Van Hootegem et al, 1985) or biliary obstruction (Kozaki et al, 1998). Conjugated bilirubin, being water soluble, can be filtered by the glomerulus and can appear in urine, where it may be detected by dipstick examination; urobilinogen measurement, however, adds little to standard tests of liver function or injury (Binder & Kupka, 1989). Urinary bilirubin is elevated in most patients with increased serum conjugated bilirubin (Binder & Kupka, 1989).

Derangements of Bilirubin Metabolism

As shown in Figure 21-2, in each step in the processing of bilirubin, a possible lesion leads to elevated serum levels of unconjugated or conjugated bilirubin. Each of these is discussed in turn.

Causes of Elevated Serum Levels of Unconjugated Bilirubin

Hemolysis. As discussed in Chapter 8, in hemolytic anemias, unconjugated bilirubin rises as a result of abnormally high levels of hemoglobin released from erythrocytes. If the rate of bilirubin formation exceeds the rate of liver clearance (i.e., a state of overproduction of bilirubin), there will be a rise in the bilirubin level in serum. Virtually all of this bilirubin will be unconjugated bilirubin. This is particularly likely to occur in neonates, whose glucuronyl transferase activity is low. Thus one manner of confirming a diagnosis of hemolytic anemia is the finding, in adults, of elevated indirect bilirubin levels in serum. Usually, these levels are not dramatically elevated and are generally in the 1.5 to 3.0 mg/dL range.

Gilbert's syndrome and the Crigler-Najjar syndrome are caused by gene mutations and deletions. In Gilbert's syndrome, characterized by a mild unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia, the most common genetic lesion appears to be the insertion of two bases into the promoter region of the *UGT1A1* gene that encodes glucuronyl transferase, resulting in lower transcriptional rates (Kraemer & Scheurlen, 2002; Maruo et al, 2004) and overall lower enzymatic activity (reduced to about 30% of normal). In the more serious Crigler-Najjar syndrome, frequently characterized by high serum levels of unconjugated bilirubin, multiple mutations are found to occur in this gene, including shifts in the reading frames, stop codons, and critical amino acid substitutions, all of which give rise to a spectrum of dysfunctional proteins from mildly dysfunctional to completely nonfunctional proteins (Kraemer & Scheurlen, 2002).

In Gilbert's syndrome, which occurs in a significant fraction (3% to 5%) of the population, the genetic defect may be necessary but not sufficient because, in an earlier study (Persico et al, 1999), a significant percentage of males with this defect were found to have hyperbilirubinemia, but no females with this enzyme deficit were found to have elevated serum bilirubin levels (Bosma et al, 1995). In some patients with Gilbert's syndrome, the rate of organic anion uptake has been found to correlate negatively with serum bilirubin (Persico et al, 1999), suggesting that an additional defect may be present to cause hyperbilirubinemia that may be related to a transport deficit in the sinusoidal membrane of the hepatocyte. In this condition, total bilirubin, virtually all of which is unconjugated, is typically elevated to 2 to 3 mg/dL; levels can increase further with fasting but seldom exceed 5 mg/dL. Because passive diffusion of bilirubin into hepatocytes occurs, this condition is rarely serious and may result in mild elevations of bilirubin such as those seen in hemolytic anemia as described previously.

Gilbert's syndrome has perhaps been overdiagnosed; it is most frequently diagnosed in young adults ranging in age from 20 to 30 years. However, normal bilirubin ranges are age dependent and actually reach their highest levels in adolescents and young adults (Rosenthal et al, 1984), as discussed further later.

In the more serious or type I form of the Crigler-Najjar syndrome (i.e., homozygously nonfunctioning proteins), the unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia becomes marked, almost always exceeding 5 mg/dL and causing jaundice, and sometimes exceeding 20 mg/dL. Affected infants develop severe unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia, which typically leads to kernicterus, deposition of bilirubin in the brain, particularly affecting the basal ganglia, mainly the lenticular nucleus, causing severe motor dysfunction and retardation. In the less severe type II form, enzyme activity is approximately 10% of normal, and survival to adulthood is possible (Berk & Noyer, 1994c). The danger of kernicterus is a certainty at levels exceeding 20 mg/dL. It is vital to treat these infants with phototherapy, as discussed earlier, to cause excretion of the unconjugated bilirubin.

Causes of Elevated Serum Levels of Conjugated Bilirubin

Excretion deficits: Dubin-Johnson syndrome. In another inborn error of metabolism, called the Dubin-Johnson syndrome, there is a blockade of the excretion of bilirubin into the canaliculi, caused by defects in the adenosine triphosphate (ATP)-binding cassette (ABC) canalicular multispecific organic anion transporter, MRP2/cMOAT/ABCC2 (Paulusma et al, 1997; Tsujii et al, 1999; Gottesman & Ambudkar, 2001). This protein is a member of a family of approximately 100 different transporter proteins that share homology within the ABC region and contain transmembrane domains involved in recognition of substrates, which are transported across, into, and out of cell membranes and include proteins involved in multiple drug resistance to chemotherapeutic agents in cancer treatment. Some protein members utilize ABCs to regulate ion channels. Several genetic diseases result from transporter mutations, including the Dubin-Johnson syndrome, cystic fibrosis, age-related macular degeneration, Tangier disease, and progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis (Gottesman & Ambudkar, 2001).

Dubin-Johnson syndrome is associated with increased plasma conjugated bilirubin, typically with mild jaundice (total bilirubin, 2 to 5 mg/dL), and intense dark pigmentation of the liver due to accumulation of lipofuscin pigment, brown granules from liposomal degradation of lipids. Thus conjugated bilirubin accumulates within the hepatocyte and eventually back-diffuses into the circulation, where it is detected in serum. This inborn error can sometimes be confused with the Rotor syndrome, possibly of viral origin, where there is also a block in the excretion of conjugated bilirubin but without liver pigmentation (Berk & Noyer, 1994d). In these cases, liver biopsy often will reveal cytosolic inclusion bodies within hepatocytes.

Biliary obstruction. In adults, cholelithiasis is the most common cause of hyperbilirubinemia. This condition results from the presence of bile stones (that are composed of bilirubin or cholesterol), most commonly in the common bile duct (choledocholithiasis). Most frequently, patients presenting with this condition are parous white females in early middle age (giving rise to the semi-mnemonic, "fair, fecund, fortyish female"). Biliary obstruction due to cholelithiasis results in elevation of total bilirubin, with over 90% being direct bilirubin. In more than 90% of such patients, a concomitant rise in alkaline phosphatase occurs. The levels of this enzyme are variable but are frequently above 300 international units (IU)/L.

Inflammatory conditions of the biliary tract, such as ascending cholangitis, also give rise to elevated serum levels of direct bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase, as discussed later in this chapter. The rise in direct bilirubin often exceeds 5 mg/dL. In gram-negative sepsis, there can be what appears to be a mild inflammation of the biliary tract, resulting in mild elevation of direct bilirubin to levels of 2 to 3 mg/dL. A concomitant elevation of alkaline phosphatase to levels of 200 to 300 IU/L is also observed.

In hepatitis, in which toxic destruction of hepatocytes is due to viral, chemical, or traumatic causes, focal necrosis and/or cellular injury results both in blocking conjugation of bilirubin and in excretion of conjugated bilirubin. Thus elevation of both direct and indirect bilirubin occurs. Serum levels of bilirubin are variable, depending on the severity of infection and the extent of disease. In viral hepatitis, such as hepatitis B, as discussed subsequently, serum bilirubin levels often reach levels of 5 to 10 mg/dL or greater.

Aside from liver disease, elevations of conjugated bilirubin may occur with a few other disorders. Septicemia (as noted previously), total parenteral nutrition, and certain drugs such as androgens commonly cause increased conjugated bilirubin, but the mechanism is not understood (Zimmerman, 1979). Fasting causes increases in unconjugated bilirubin in

http://basicbook.net

normal individuals, but to a lesser degree than is seen in Gilbert's syndrome.

Laboratory Tests for Bilirubin

Bilirubin is typically measured using diazotized sulfanilic acid, which forms a conjugated azo compound with the porphyrin rings of bilirubin, resulting in reaction products that absorb strongly at 540 nm. Because unconjugated bilirubin reacts slowly, accelerants such as caffeine or methanol are used to measure total bilirubin. Deletion of these accelerants allows determination of direct-reacting, or direct, bilirubin.

Until the early 1980s, it was accepted that direct bilirubin was equal to conjugated bilirubin. The introduction of dry slide technology, using differential spectrophotometry to measure conjugated and unconjugated bilirubin separately, led to the observation that the sum of these two entities did not equal total bilirubin and to the characterization of delta-bilirubin. Approximately 70% to 80% of conjugated bilirubin and delta-bilirubin and a small percentage of unconjugated bilirubin are measured in the direct bilirubin assay (Lo & Wu, 1983; Doumas & Wu, 1991). Although good data support the measurement of conjugated bilirubin instead of estimating it from direct bilirubin (Arvan & Shirey, 1985; Doumas et al, 1987), the direct bilirubin assay is still widely used. The accuracy of direct bilirubin assays is dependent on sample handling and reagent composition. Prolonged exposure to light causes photoisomerization, increasing direct-reacting bilirubin (Ihara et al, 1997). Use of wetting agents or incorrect pH buffers increases the amount of unconjugated bilirubin measured as direct bilirubin (Doumas & Wu, 1991). Typically, direct bilirubin should measure 0 to 0.1 mg/dL in normal individuals, with rare values of 0.2 mg/dL in the absence of liver or biliary tract disease.

Reference values for total bilirubin are both age and gender dependent. Bilirubin levels typically reach peak values at around ages 14 to 18, falling to stable adult levels by age 25 (Rosenthal, 1984; Notter, 1985; Zucker, 2004). Values are higher in males than in females at all ages (Rosenthal, 1983; Carmel et al, 1985; Notter et al, 1985; Dufour, 1998a; Zucker et al, 2004). Strenuous exercise causes a significant increase in bilirubin values compared with those seen in sedentary individuals or those with chronic exercise (Dufour, 1998b). African Americans have bilirubin levels significantly lower than those of other ethnic groups.

Other Metabolic Tests

Ammonia

This critical and toxic compound is metabolized exclusively in the liver. Ammonia is derived mainly from amino acid and nucleic acid metabolism. Some ammonia is also produced from metabolic reactions such as the action of the enzyme glutaminase on glutamine, resulting in the production of glutamic acid and ammonia. As it happens, ammonia can be metabolized only in the liver because the liver uniquely contains the critical enzymes for the Krebs-Henseleit or urea cycle, in which ammonia, a toxic substance, is ultimately converted into urea, a nontoxic compound that is readily excreted. In this cycle, ammonia, with the enzyme carbamoyl phosphate synthetase, is condensed with carbon dioxide (CO_2) and ATP to form carbamoyl phosphate that then, in the rate-determining step, carboxamidates the delta-amino group of ornithine to form citrulline using the enzyme ornithine carbamoyltransferase (OCT), an enzyme that is unique to the liver. Congenital deficiency of this or other urea cycle enzymes leads to increased levels of ammonia in serum and in cerebrospinal fluid (Batshaw, 1994).

A unique feature of liver tissue is its ability to regenerate. To abolish liver tissue function, more than 80% of the liver must be destroyed. If most of the liver is destroyed as a result of such conditions as cirrhosis (Stahl, 1963) or, less commonly, acute fulminant hepatic failure, including Reye's syndrome (Heubi et al, 1984; Sunheimer et al, 1994), urea cycle enzymes are no longer present, resulting in the toxic buildup of ammonia and some of the amino acid intermediates in the urea cycle, such as arginine, which has known neurotoxic effects. The result is an increase in ammonia and these amino acid intermediates in the circulation and in the central nervous system (CNS), giving rise to hepatic encephalopathy. In addition, in most cirrhotics, intrahepatic portal-systemic shunting occurs, thereby causing ammonia to bypass the liver and resulting in elevated serum ammonia concentrations. Elevated serum levels of ammonia therefore often indicate some form of liver failure, although other conditions can also induce increases in serum ammonia levels.

In patients with cirrhosis or fulminant hepatic failure, there has been some dispute as to whether ammonia itself is the cause of the observed metabolic encephalopathy; possibly other toxins that accumulate as a result of absent hepatic detoxification are the cause. One of the arguments often used is that there is no clear correlation between the severity of the encephalopathy and serum ammonia concentrations (Lewis & Howdle, 2003). Countering this argument is the finding that, although venous ammonia levels do not correlate with the degree of encephalopathy (Stahl, 1963), arterial levels of ammonia do generally correlate with the degree of encephalopathy. Furthermore, in patients with cirrhosis or fulminant hepatic failure, lowering the serum ammonia invariably diminishes the severity of the encephalopathy (Pincus et al, 1991). Furthermore, idiopathic hyperammonemia, not related to liver disease, also induces lethal encephalopathy (Shepard et al, 1987; Davies et al, 1996). An important mechanism by which ammonia can cause toxicity to the CNS is its ability to lower the concentration of γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA), a critically important neurotransmitter in the central nervous system, by reacting with glutamic acid to form glutamine via reversal of the glutaminase-catalyzed reaction (Butterworth et al, 1987). This depletes glutamic acid in the CNS. However, GABA is formed directly from the decarboxylation of glutamic acid, so GABA levels consequently decrease, with potentially serious effects on neurotransmission (see Chapter 23). Because ammonia causes accumulation of glutamine in the CNS, there is the suggestion that, at least in valproic acid–induced hyperammonemia, cerebrospinal fluid levels of glutamine can be used in the diagnosis and management of hepatic encephalopathy (Vossler et al, 2002). More recently, besides evidence that ammonia in the CNS is directly toxic to astrocytes, other evidence indicates that ammonia induces neutrophil dysfunction that results in the generation of reactive oxygen species contributing to oxidative stress and inflammation, with lowered ability of the CNS to block infectious agents (Shawcross et al, 2010). One major new finding put forth by these studies is that treatment of hepatic encephalopathy with suitable anti-inflammatory agents may be effective.

At present, most commonly, elevated serum ammonia concentrations in hepatic encephalopathy are reduced by the agent lactulose, which is metabolized by specific gut bacteria to lactic acid. The acid so produced in the intestinal lumen traps ammonia as ammonium ion, which can no longer diffuse across the intestinal membrane and is thus excreted. Ammonia-producing bacteria in the intestine are removed by treatment with antibiotics such as neomycin.

Assays for Ammonia. Ammonia is typically measured by enzymatic assays using glutamate dehydrogenase, which catalyzes the reaction of α-ketoglutarate and ammonia to form glutamate, with oxidation of NADPH to NADP as the indicator (decrease in absorbance at 340 nm, as described in Chapter 20). Ammonia is also measured via a dry slide method (e.g., on the Johnson and Johnson Vitros systems) using alkaline pH buffers to convert all ammonium ions to ammonia gas, with bromphenol blue as the indicator (Huizenga et al, 1994). Because ammonia is a product of cellular metabolism, methods used in specimen collection and transportation are critical in preventing artifactually increased levels. Arterial blood is the preferred specimen for measurement of ammonia. Although venous blood is not recommended, if used, tourniquets should be used minimally, and fist clenching and relaxing should be avoided during collection. Specimens should be kept in ice water until separation of cells from plasma occurs (Howanitz et al, 1984; da Fonseca-Wollheim, 1990).

Lipids

Cholesterol and Other Lipids (see Chapter 17)**.** Because the liver is vital in lipoprotein synthesis and interconversions, hepatic disorders often cause derangements in lipoprotein metabolism. Although none of these abnormalities is used to diagnose liver pathology, it is important to recognize that they may result from liver disease. In severe liver injury, including cirrhosis, these abnormalities include a decrease in high-density lipoprotein (HDL), particularly the HDL_3 (but often not the HDL_2) subfraction, and in other altered lipoprotein distributions, caused in part by deficiencies of lecithin/cholesterol acyltransferase (LCAT, the enzyme that esterifies cholesterol) and of lipoprotein lipases, resulting in elevated levels of unesterified cholesterol and hypertriglyceridemia (triglyceride levels ranging from 250 to 500 mg/dL), respectively. In addition, there are increased levels of phospholipids, including lecithins, in blood and in the VLDL fraction. Overall, the resulting lipoprotein pattern is that of the so-called abnormally migrating β-lipoprotein, typical of type III hyperlipoproteinemia (see Chapter 17). However, in cirrhotics with poor nutrition, despite critical enzyme deficiencies, low levels of cholesterol (<100 mg/dL) may be found.

In contrast, in alcohol-induced liver injury, alcohol induces increased expression of apolipoprotein (apo) A-I protein. Thus HDL, especially HDL_3, may be elevated if alcohol ingestion continues. Because, in cirrhosis, apoA-I protein decreases, serum levels of this protein have been used to diagnose this disease using the so-called PGA index (Teare et al, 1993)—a combination of prothrombin time (PT), which increases, with

http://basicbook.net

γ-glutamyl transferase activity (discussed later), which also increases, and apoA-I protein. This index differs for alcoholic hepatitis, enabling the distinction to be made between these two conditions without the necessity of liver biopsy (Mun et al, 2003).

In cholestasis, regurgitation of biliary contents into the bloodstream results in the buildup of lipoprotein X (LpX) (discussed in Chapter 17) and elevation of biliary lipids. Because LpX carries high levels of unesterified cholesterol, cholesterol levels in serum can become markedly elevated (Turchin et al, 2005).

Bile Salts. Bile salts, which are products of cholesterol metabolism, facilitate absorption of fat from the intestine. They are stored in the gallbladder and released to the intestine after meals through gallbladder contraction mediated by cholecystokinin. They are not usually used in the diagnosis of abnormal liver function but are important in that they constitute a substantial amount of bile in bilirubin excretion and can therefore be of use in diagnosing cholestasis. Also, in severe biliary obstruction, the buildup of bile salts in serum causes symptomatic illness in the form of intractable itching, although this has been disputed (Jones & Bergasa, 1999). The primary bile salts, cholate and chenodeoxycholate, are produced in the liver and excreted into the biliary and enterohepatic systems. In the intestinal lumen, bacteria utilize 7-α-dehydroxylation to produce secondary bile salts (i.e., lithocholate, deoxycholate, and ursodeoxycholate) (Carey & Cahalane, 1988). Ursodeoxycholate, an end-product of bile salt metabolism in man, is produced by isomerization of secondary bile salts and has been found to be therapeutic in cholestatic diseases (Rost et al, 2004). These bile salts are conjugated, in the microsomal system discussed later, to glycine and taurine and are also sulfated and glucuronidated. Conjugation of bile salts to taurine and sulfates increases with the severity of cholestasis in conditions causing obstruction to bile outflow. Recirculation of bile salts to the liver occurs by reabsorption from the terminal ileum, where deoxycholate is almost completely reabsorbed, and chenodeoxycholate is about 75% reabsorbed. In cirrhosis, a disproportionate decrease in cholic acid is seen, along with a reduced ratio of primary to secondary bile salts. With cholestasis, secondary bile salts are not formed; thus the ratio of primary to secondary bile salts is markedly increased.

Renal clearance of bile salts is negligible in normal patients, but in cholestasis, renal excretion of bile salts, mainly in the form of sulfates and glucuronides, is enhanced. Fasting bile salts, when normal, can exclude the presence of parenchymal liver disease in patients with Gilbert's syndrome (Vierling et al, 1982), as discussed previously. It should also be recognized that defective production of bile salts, which helps solubilize the contents of bile, in the liver may predispose to the formation of bilirubinate or cholesterol stones and posthepatic biliary obstruction.

Analysis of bile salts must be performed on serum taken from patients who are in the fasting state or on serum taken at a specified time after meals, because food ingestion causes a significant increase in bile acid levels. Bile salts can be measured by many techniques, but chromatographic methods, particularly high-performance liquid chromatography, as discussed in Chapter 23, are most widely used and allow separation of different bile salts.

Drug Metabolism

Many xenobiotics, such as drugs, are metabolized in the liver, mainly in the microsomes of hepatocytes. Complex series of reactions occur, many of which are dependent on cytochrome P450, which is involved in the oxidation of these compounds. Whether or not specific exogenous compounds are converted to metabolites depends on the isoforms of cytochrome P450, such as CYP1A and CYP2B (cytochrome P450 1A and 2B, respectively). Often, the conversion of xenobiotics into metabolites using this system involves two phases: Phase I reactions involve oxidations/hydroxylations, and phase II reactions conjugate the metabolite (or parent compound) to polar compounds, such as glucuronic acid, glycine, taurine, and sulfate. In more severe liver disease, which involves microsomal damage, this ability to metabolize xenobiotics is compromised. Thus the ability of hepatocytes to metabolize drugs can be used to measure liver damage.

This is generally accomplished by administering a known dose of radiolabeled (usually ^{13}C-labeled) drug and measuring the $^{13}CO_2$ exhaled over time in a patient's breath. Two categories of breath tests have been developed based on the rate-limiting step in metabolism. The first group includes drugs such as aminopyrine, caffeine, and diazepam, which are metabolized at rates that are independent of hepatic blood flow to the liver and depend only on the enzymatic activity of different cytochromes P450 (e.g., CYP1A). The second group is composed of drugs such as methacetin, phenacetin, and erythromycin, whose rates of metabolism depend on the rate of blood flow (i.e., their rates of metabolism are fast compared with their rates of delivery to the liver). These types of dynamic tests appear not to be so useful in the initial diagnosis of hepatic disease; rather, they are more useful in estimating the extent of liver damage in known liver disease (Nista et al, 2004).

Some interferences that complicate interpretation of the results of these tests include dependence of the demethylation of aminopyrine (the methyl group is oxidized to CO_2) on vitamin B_{12}; in cases of vitamin B_{12} deficiency, less than normal amounts of $^{13}CO_2$ will be exhaled because of low B_{12} levels, not necessarily because of liver damage. Rates of caffeine metabolism generally decrease with increasing age but are increased by smoking; these findings can complicate interpretation of test results.

SYNTHETIC FUNCTIONS

Protein Synthesis

The liver is the site of synthesis for most plasma proteins. Major exceptions include immunoglobulins (Igs) and von Willebrand factor. Synthesis of more than 90% of all protein and 100% of albumin occurs in the liver. Thus extensive destruction of liver tissue will result in low serum levels of total protein and albumin. In cirrhosis, besides hepatocyte destruction, another cause of diminished protein production is portal hypertension, which decreases delivery of amino acids to the liver. Two vital measurements of liver function, therefore, are total protein and albumin levels in serum. However, it should always be kept in mind that other major causes of low serum total protein and albumin have been identified; these include renal disease, malnutrition, protein-losing enteropathy, and, less commonly, chronic inflammatory disease. These alternative causes must always be considered when liver function status is evaluated.

In liver disease with widespread injury or necrosis, such as fulminant hepatic failure and cirrhosis, plasma levels of liver-synthesized proteins fall, such that proteins with longer half-lives tend to decrease more slowly. Albumin has a half-life of about 20 days, so decreases in its serum levels occur more slowly than those of proteins with shorter half-lives. Among the liver-produced proteins with shorter half-lives are factor VII (4 to 6 hours), transthyretin (1 to 2 days), and transferrin (6 days).

Determination of Serum Protein Levels

This is based usually on the Biuret method as described in Chapter 27. This method reflects the ability of the peptide backbone C = O groups of proteins to form color complexes with copper that absorb strongly at 540 nm. Some methods utilize a dye-binding method in which the proteins form a complex with the dye Coomassie blue. Albumin forms a unique color complex with the dyes bromcresol green and bromcresol purple, such that they absorb maximally at slightly different wavelengths, thus allowing direct spectrophotometric quantitation (Ihara et al, 1991). Bromcresol purple tends to react more exclusively with albumin than does bromcresol green (which reacts to a minor extent with some globulins), so serum albumin levels may be slightly lower when determined with bromcresol purple. The reference range for total serum protein levels is generally in the 6 to 7.8 g/dL range. At least 60% of this should be albumin, the normal range for which is about 3.5 to 5 g/dL.

Serum protein electrophoresis and quantitative Igs may reveal characteristic changes in liver disease, as discussed in Chapter 19. Typically, in cirrhosis, albumin is significantly decreased, as are the α-1, α-2, and β (principally transferrin) bands. However, a polyclonal increase in Igs, which is seen frequently, produces the characteristic β-γ bridging pattern, as discussed in Chapter 19. In autoimmune hepatitis, albumin is typically decreased; this is accompanied by a marked polyclonal increase in IgG. Primary biliary cirrhosis is accompanied by a polyclonal increase in IgM.

Albumin

Albumin is the major protein produced by the liver. Its synthesis is increased by low plasma oncotic pressure and is decreased by cytokines, particularly interleukin-6. Although normal albumin synthesis occurs at about 120 mg/kg/day, the rate of synthesis can approximately double with low oncotic pressure. A decrease in albumin is one of the major prognostic features in patients with cirrhosis. Albumin measurements were discussed previously in Chapter 19 and are further discussed in Chapter 27.

Albumin is a transport protein for many substances, both endogenous (e.g., bilirubin, thyroid hormone) and exogenous (e.g., drugs). Low serum albumin levels due to liver disease are almost always caused by massive destruction of liver tissue and are seen primarily in cirrhosis, most often secondary to alcoholism. The diminution in albumin is paralleled by a fall in total serum protein. Because albumin is the osmotically active intravascular colloid, hypoalbuminemia often results in edema. In cirrhosis, where

http://basicbook.net

increased resistance to blood flow in the sinusoids causes portal hypertension, the combined effect of elevated hydrostatic pressure in the portal system and low colloid osmotic pressure results in ascites, a frequent finding in cirrhosis. These same changes may also be seen acutely in fulminant hepatic failure (Sunheimer et al, 1994).

Other Serum Proteins

Although most of the proteins discussed in Chapter 19 are produced by the liver, two bear special importance in the detection of congenital liver disorders.

α-1-Antitrypsin. α-1-antitrypsin (AAT), the most abundant α-1-globulin, is the most important protease inhibitor in plasma. Although its name indicates that it inhibits trypsin, it also is an inhibitor of other serine proteases, such as elastin. AAT is coded for by the *Pi* gene on chromosome 14; several genetic variants are due to point mutations, leading to single amino acid substitutions (Chappell et al, 2004). The most common variant, M, is associated with normal serum AAT levels. The mutations present in the S and Z variants prevent normal protein glycation, leading to accumulation of AAT within hepatocytes and reduced plasma AAT levels (Propst et al, 1994). In the United States, the overwhelming genotype is PiMM, where Pi is the protease inhibitor. The other genotypes—PiZZ, PiSS, PiSZ, PiMZ, and PiMS—all contain measurable activity of antiprotease, except a rare null genotype Pi^{-}. If the antiprotease activity of the MM phenotype is used as the reference, then the activity in phenotype ZZ is 15%, SS is 60%, MZ is 57.5%, and MS is 80%. Adults with PiZZ are most prone to develop emphysema relatively early in life as a result of uninhibited trypsin activity on alveolar wall elastin. Patients with PiZZ tend to accumulate the Z protein in periportal hepatocytes, where it forms discrete cytoplasmic bodies and may also develop neonatal hepatitis. Curiously, although infants may die of hepatic injury, it resolves in most infants and progresses to cirrhosis in only about 3% (Sveger, 1988). In adults, the likelihood of liver injury is increased in patients heterozygous or homozygous for the Z variant of AAT; this may be due to accumulation of AAT in the endoplasmic reticulum that induces autophagy and apoptosis of hepatocytes (Teckman et al, 2004). AAT phenotyping can be performed using isoelectric focusing (Propst et al, 1994). Because AAT is an acute phase reactant, its serum levels can be normal in MZ heterozygotes.

Ceruloplasmin. The major copper-containing protein in serum, ceruloplasmin is also the enzyme present in highest circulating concentration. Ceruloplasmin is a ferroxidase, which is essential for converting iron to the ferric state to allow binding to transferrin. Low levels of ceruloplasmin are found in Wilson's disease, a rare congenital disorder (1 in 30,000 individuals) associated with one of many mutations in the gene on chromosome 13 coding for a cellular adenosine triphosphatase (ATPase), ATP7B, a member of the cation-transporting p-type ATPase family (Bull et al, 1993). This protein is principally expressed in the liver and promotes copper secretion into plasma, coupled with ceruloplasmin synthesis, and into the biliary tract. More than 200 mutations of this Wilson's disease gene have been detected, resulting in impairment of ATP7B function and intracellular copper accumulation (Langner & Denk, 2004). Excess intracellular copper is deposited in lysozomes in hepatocytes; it induces free-radical reactions such as lipid peroxidation and membrane instability. Resultant liver damage can lead to chronic active hepatitis, cirrhosis, or, uncommonly, fulminant hepatic failure. In addition, steatosis and inflammation can result in this condition. Copper becomes deposited in the CNS, especially in the lenticular nucleus of the basal ganglia, causing neuropsychiatric disease; it can also be deposited at the edge of the iris, forming the observed Keyser-Fleischer rings.

The diagnosis of Wilson's disease is made on the basis of typical clinical and laboratory findings, including low serum ceruloplasmin, which can be measured by immunoassay or by enzymatic assay, increased urinary copper excretion, and increased hepatic copper content. Although ceruloplasmin is characteristically low in Wilson's disease, factors that increase ceruloplasmin synthesis (e.g., cytokines, pregnancy, estrogens) may cause normal ceruloplasmin levels in up to 15% of patients overall, and in as many as 35% with hepatic manifestations of Wilson's disease (Dufour & Kaplan, 1997), particularly acute Wilsonian hepatitis (Berman et al, 1991). Genetic testing is the most reliable means to establish the diagnosis, but it is difficult because more than 200 mutations have been shown to cause disease.

Clotting Factors

As mentioned earlier, except for the von Willebrand factor, which is made by endothelial cells and megakaryocytes, coagulation proteins are synthesized in the liver. In addition, inhibitors of coagulation, such as antithrombin III, α-2-macroglobulin, α-1-antitrypsin, C1 esterase inhibitor, and protein C, are synthesized in the liver. In addition, fibrin degradation products are catabolized in the liver. Low levels of antithrombin III in patients with cirrhosis and hepatitis may be caused by decreased synthesis, increased consumption, or alteration in the transcapillary flux ratio (Kelly, 1987). The most common coagulopathy seen in liver failure (i.e., cirrhosis and acute fulminant hepatic failure) is disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC), as discussed in Chapter 8 and extensively throughout Part 5 of this book. This condition is characterized by increased consumption of clotting factors and platelets, causing thrombocytopenia and elevations of both prothrombin and partial thromboplastin times, PT and PTT, respectively. The mechanism has been postulated to be decreased synthesis of clotting inhibitory factors, decreased clearance of activated clotting factors, or release of tissue thromboplastin from hepatocytes (Kelly & Tuddenham, 1986). D-dimer and, in the past, fibrin split products, detected in DIC, have been found in up to 80% of patients with liver disease without evidence of fibrinolysis (Van de Water et al, 1986). It is important that the diagnosis of DIC be made certain by determination of elevated blood D-dimer levels, as described in Part 5 on hemostasis and thrombosis. In some cases of liver failure, platelet counts are decreased because of sequestration in an enlarged spleen due to hepatosplenomegaly. This condition combined with elevated levels of PT and PTT caused by low levels of synthesis of coagulation factors can masquerade as DIC. In these cases, D-dimer levels are not elevated, excluding this diagnosis.

Perhaps the most frequently ordered laboratory test for detecting liver-associated coagulation abnormalities is PT and its associated measurement, the international sensitivity ratio, as described in Part 5. The PT measures the efficacy of the extrinsic clotting system in which factor VII is activated by tissue factor, as discussed in Part 5; because factor VII is uniquely synthesized in the liver, its measurement can be used to evaluate liver function status. Often, PT is computed as the international normalized ratio (INR), which attempts to standardize all PT measurements relative to a gold standard PT-measuring method, using the international sensitivity index (ISI), as described in Part 5.

Some Caveats in Using PT and INR to Evaluate Liver Function. Because PT and PTT measure the status of the coagulation cascades (extrinsic and intrinsic, respectively), any coagulation disorder will give rise to abnormal PT and/or PTT, independent of liver function. In addition, in patients with cholestasis (i.e., disease of the biliary tract) with no hepatocytic dysfunction (e.g., cirrhosis, fulminant hepatic failure), absorption of fat-soluble vitamin K from the gut may be impaired because of low levels of bile salts that allow membrane transport of this vitamin. Because factors II, VII, IX, and X depend on vitamin K for biosynthesis via carboxylation, coagulation abnormalities often result. Therefore, in patients with cholestasis, normal serum levels of inactive precursor forms of these four coagulation factors can be detected, as discussed later. Correction of prothrombin time by the administration of vitamin K is usually possible when factor V is normal in patients with cholestatic liver disease.

Also, use of the INR in evaluating liver function can provide misleading results. As discussed in Part 5, the INR is based on PT values for patients treated with Coumadin (warfarin, which blocks mainly the extrinsic system). Thus its appropriateness for evaluating non–Coumadin-induced coagulopathies has been questioned, especially in view of the finding that PT increases much less with lower ISI in patients with liver disease than in patients being treated with Coumadin (Kovacs et al, 1994; Ts'ao et al, 1994; Johnston et al, 1996; Robert & Chazouilleres, 1996).

Prothrombin Times Are Used to Compute the MELD Score. The PT is an integral part of the model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) score in evaluating priority for liver transplantation in liver disease (Trotter et al, 2004). This score is a computed number based on the values of bilirubin, creatinine, and INR and is applied in categories of 10 (i.e., scores of 40 or higher predict 100% mortality [30-39, 83%; 20-29, 76%; 10-19, 27%; <10, 4%]). Although this score appears to predict accurately the 3-month mortality for cirrhotic patients awaiting liver transplantation (Farnsworth et al, 2004), it must be used with caution both because reference ranges of these analytes differ among different laboratories, making standardization difficult, and because caveats are associated with using INR values, as described earlier.

Des-γ-Carboxy Prothrombin

The vitamin K–dependent coagulation factors (II, VII, IX, X) are synthesized in the liver and require a vitamin K–mediated posttranslational modification (γ-carboxylation of a number of terminal glutamic acid residues to γ-carboxyglutamic acid) to occur before secretion into the blood, which is necessary for functional activity of these factors in the coagulation cascade. The unmodified precursor of prothrombin, des-γ-carboxy prothrombin (DCP), has been found to be elevated in the sera of patients with

http://basicbook.net

hepatocellular carcinoma. DCP is measured using two monoclonal antibodies, 19B7 and MU-3. A rapid immunoassay for DCP is available (Yamaguchi et al, 2008). Increases of DCP in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma predict decreased survival times (Nagaoka et al, 2003). The overall sensitivity and specificity of elevated serum DCP levels in diagnosing hepatocellular carcinoma is 67% and 92%, respectively (Gao et al, 2012). However, assays for DCP do not have the same general use as α-fetoprotein (AFP), discussed later, for diagnosing and following this disease. However, a study has found that use of both DCP and AFP together reliably predicts survival rates of patients with recurrent hepatocellular carcinoma (Okamura et al, 2014).

TESTS OF LIVER INJURY

PLASMA ENZYME LEVELS

As metabolically complex cells, hepatocytes contain high levels of a number of enzymes. With liver injury, these enzymes may leak into plasma and can be useful for diagnosis and monitoring of liver injury. Although enzymes were discussed in Chapter 20, knowledge of the cellular locations of enzymes and patterns of enzyme change is critical in understanding the findings in various types of liver disease.

Cellular Locations of Enzymes

Within the hepatocyte, the commonly measured enzymes are found in specific locations; the type of liver injury will determine the pattern of enzyme change. Figure 21-3 illustrates the locations of the most important hepatocytic enzymes. Cytoplasmic enzymes include lactate dehydrogenase (LD), aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and alanine aminotransferase (ALT). Mitochondrial enzymes, such as the mitochondrial isoenzyme of AST, are released with mitochondrial damage. Canalicular enzymes, such as alkaline phosphatase and γ-glutamyl transferase (GGT), are increased by obstructive processes.

Mechanisms of Enzyme Release

Enzymes are released from hepatocytes as a result of injury to the cell membrane that directly causes extrusion of the cytosolic contents. In addition, agents like ethanol cause release of mitochondrial AST from hepatocytes and its expression on cell surfaces (Zhou et al, 1998a). Accumulation of bile salts with canalicular obstruction causes release of membrane fragments with attached canalicular enzymes (Schlaeger et al, 1982; Moss, 1997). Increased synthesis of GGT, and to a lesser extent alkaline phosphatase, can occur with medications that induce microsomal enzyme synthesis, notably ethanol, phenytoin, and carbamazepine (Aldenhovel, 1988).

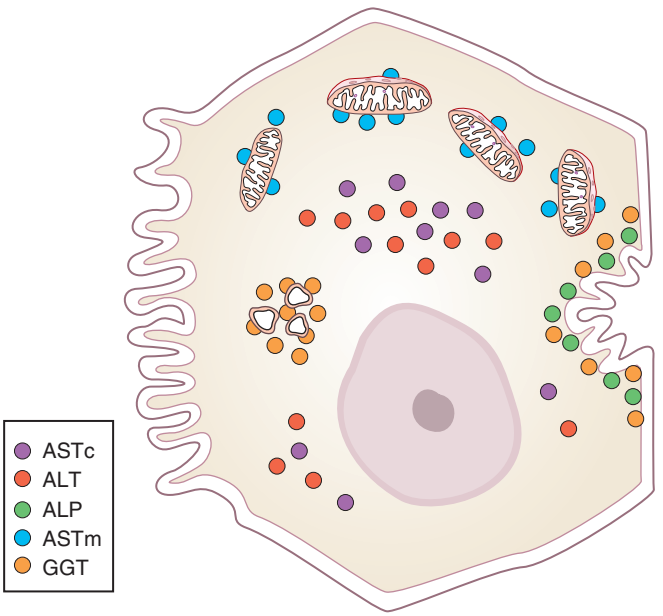


Figure 21-3 Location of hepatocellular enzymes. The major diagnostic hepatocellular enzymes are located at various sites in the hepatocyte, giving rise to different patterns of enzyme release with different causes of injury. Alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and the cytoplasmic isoenzyme of aspartate aminotransferase (ASTc) are found primarily in the cytosol. With membrane injury as in viral or chemically induced hepatitis, these enzymes are released and enter the sinusoids, raising plasma AST and ALT activities. Mitochondrial aspartate aminotransferase (ASTm) is released primarily with mitochondrial injury, as caused by ethanol as in alcoholic hepatitis. Alkaline phosphatase (ALP) and γ-glutamyl transferase (GGT) are found primarily on the canalicular surface of the hepatocyte. Bile acids accumulate in cholestasis and dissolve membrane fragments, releasing bound enzymes into plasma. GGT is also found in the microsomes, represented as pink rings in the figure; microsomal enzyme-inducing drugs, such as phenobarbital and Dilantin, can also increase GGT synthesis and raise plasma GGT activity.

Aminotransferases (Transaminases)

Two diagnostically very useful enzymes in this category are AST or aspartate amino transferase, also known as serum glutamate oxaloacetate transaminase, and ALT or alanine amino transferase, formerly called serum glutamate pyruvate transaminase. These enzymes catalyze reversibly the transfer of an amino group of AST or ALT to α-ketoglutarate to yield glutamate plus the corresponding ketoacid of the starting amino acid (i.e., oxaloacetate or pyruvate, respectively). Both enzymes require pyridoxal phosphate (vitamin B_6) as a cofactor. Using ALT as an example, alanine reacts with pyridoxal phosphate to yield pyruvate plus pyridoxine. Pyridoxine then reacts with α-ketoglutarate to yield glutamate plus regenerated pyridoxal phosphate.

In many of the serum assays for ALT and AST, it is assumed that the patient's serum provides a sufficient complement of pyridoxal phosphate, a circumstance that does not always apply. In a most poignant case illustrating this point, a patient, a known alcoholic, was admitted to a hospital with a presumptive diagnosis of alcoholic hepatitis, a condition described at length later. His admission clinical chemistry profile showed normal to low serum levels of ALT and AST. This finding is unusual in alcoholic hepatitis because, as we discuss later, both enzymes become significantly elevated such that AST levels are higher than those for ALT. During the course of the next 24 hours, he was treated for his condition, with apparent clinical improvement. However, a repeat liver function profile showed marked elevations of both enzymes to levels greater than 200 IU/L. This presented a diagnostic dilemma, which was resolved when it was realized that, as part of the protocol for treatment of alcoholic hepatitis, the patient had received vitamin supplements, including vitamins B_6 and B_{12}. Because the serum assays for both ALT and AST required vitamin B_6 supplied by the patient's serum, and the patient, an alcoholic, was vitamin B_6 deficient (common in alcoholics), the assays for both enzymes showed normal to low levels caused by the absence of vitamin B_6. Upon therapeutic intervention, when vitamins were administered, sufficient serum levels of vitamin B_6 were present to allow full enzyme activities. This clinical history illustrates the central role of pyridoxal phosphate in enzyme catalysis by AST and ALT, and the importance of understanding the chemical basis for enzyme assays.

AST and ALT have respective blood half-lives of 17 and 47 hours, respectively, and have upper reference range limits of around 40 IU/L. (See Chapter 20 for the definition of international units, or IU.) AST is both intramitochondrial and extramitochondrial, but ALT is completely extramitochondrial. Mitochondrial AST isoenzyme has a half-life of 87 hours (Panteghini, 1990). AST is ubiquitously distributed in the body tissues, including the heart and muscle, whereas ALT is found primarily in the liver, although significant amounts are also present in the kidney.

Total cytoplasmic AST is present in highest activity in hepatocytes, with a cell AST level approximately 7000 times that in plasma. ALT is also present in highest activity in hepatocytes, with a cell ALT level approximately 3000 times that in plasma. With pyridoxine deficiency, hepatic synthesis of ALT is impaired; a similar phenomenon occurs in hepatic fibrosis and cirrhosis. The enzyme changes seen in hepatic injury can be readily explained by differing hepatic activity levels and half-lives of enzymes. With most forms of acute hepatocellular injury, such as hepatitis, AST will be higher than ALT initially because of the higher activity of AST in hepatocytes. Within 24 to 48 hours, particularly if ongoing damage occurs, ALT will become higher than AST, based on its longer half-life.

An exception to these observations is seen in acute alcohol-induced hepatocyte injury, as in alcoholic hepatitis. Studies suggest that alcohol induces mitochondrial damage, resulting in the release of mitochondrial AST, which, besides being the predominant form of AST in hepatocytes, has a significantly longer half-life than do extramitochondrial AST and ALT. This frequently results in the disproportionate elevation of AST over ALT, yielding an AST/ALT quotient, also called the DeRitis ratio, of 3 to 4:1 in alcohol-induced liver disease. Whether cessation of alcohol consumption reduces this ratio is a topic of disagreement. In one early study, serum mitochondrial AST was measured in cirrhotic and noncirrhotic

http://basicbook.net

patients who abused alcohol (Nalpas et al, 1986). Patients with chronic alcohol abuse, regardless of the extent of their underlying liver disease, had more consistent mitochondrial AST elevations than other patients; values dropped by more than 50% with abstinence for longer than 1 week. On the other hand, in more recent studies, involving more than 300 patients, it was found that high AST/ALT ratios suggest advanced alcoholic liver disease (Nyblom et al, 2004). It should also be noted that many alcoholics are vitamin B_6 deficient, causing lower rates of synthesis of ALT and suppression of existing ALT activity.

In chronic hepatocyte injury, mainly in cirrhosis, ALT is more commonly elevated than AST; however, as fibrosis progresses, ALT activities typically decline, and the ratio of AST to ALT gradually increases, so by the time cirrhosis is present, AST is often higher than ALT (Williams & Hoofnagle, 1988; Sheth et al, 1998). However, in end-stage cirrhosis, the levels of both enzymes generally are not elevated and may be low as the result of massive tissue destruction. In acute fulminant hepatic failure, as discussed later and in Chapter 8, the serum levels of both aminotransferases are markedly increased and are such that the AST/ALT ratio is often significantly greater than 1 (Sunheimer et al, 1994).

Overall, ALT activity is more specific for detecting liver disease in nonalcoholic, asymptomatic patients. Mild elevations are often seen in hepatitis C infection. AST is used for monitoring therapy with potentially hepatotoxic drugs; a result more than three times the upper border of normal should signal stopping of therapy. Chronic elevation of aminotransferase activities in asymptomatic patients may have several causes, including alcohol or medication use, chronic viral hepatitis, or nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Weight reduction may lower ALT in overweight patients whose ALT is elevated (Palmer & Schaffner, 1990). Ursodeoxycholic acid lowers ALT as well as GGT (see later) when these are found to be elevated in blood donors (Bellentani et al, 1989).

Assays for AST and ALT

The chemical basis for these assays is described in Chapter 27. Several variants of assays can be used with these enzymes. In one, alanine for ALT or aspartate for AST is added to force the reaction to the right, yielding glutamate. Production of the latter is then coupled to the enzyme glutamate dehydrogenase, in the so-called indicator reaction, yielding α-ketoglutarate. In this reaction, nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) is converted to NADH (reducing agent derived from NAD), which can be measured as an increase in absorbance at 340 nm. These reactions must be evaluated over short periods because one of the substrates for these enzymes, α-ketoglutarate, is regenerated by the indicator reaction. Another variant for AST involves coupling the oxaloacetate (OAA) that is formed from aspartate in the reaction to malate dehydrogenase, which converts OAA to malate, and in which NADH is converted to NAD that is measured by a decrease in absorbance at 340 nm. For ALT, conversion of alanine to pyruvate allows coupling to the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex in which pyruvate is converted to acetyl coenzyme A, and in which NAD is converted to NADH that can be directly measured by an increase in absorbance at 340 nm. As noted earlier, it is vital that pyridoxal phosphate be present in sufficient quantity to allow these reactions to proceed.

Lactate Dehydrogenase

As described in Chapter 20, this cytosolic glycolytic enzyme catalyzes the reversible oxidation of lactate to pyruvate. As discussed in Chapter 18, five major LD isozymes exist, consisting of tetramers of two forms, H and M, the former having high affinity for lactate, the latter for pyruvate. Progressing from HHHH to MMMM, the five possible isozymes are labeled LD_1 to LD_5. LD_1 and LD_2 predominate in cardiac muscle, kidney, and erythrocytes. LD_4 and LD_5 are the major isoenzymes in liver and skeletal muscle. The upper reference range limit for total LD activity in serum is around 150 IU/L (see Chapter 20 for the definition of international units, or IU). Serum LD levels become elevated in hepatitis; often, these increases are transient and return to normal by the time of clinical presentation (Dufour & Teot, 1988; Singer et al, 1995; Fuchs et al, 1998) because LD isozymes originating in liver (LD_4 and LD_5) have relatively low activity in hepatocytes relative to plasma (about 500 times) and a half-life of approximately 4 to 6 hours.

More important is the large increase in total LD to levels of 500 IU/L or more, combined with a significant increase in alkaline phosphatase (ALP), discussed later and in Chapter 20, to levels of greater than 250 IU/L, in the absence of other dramatic abnormalities in liver function enzyme levels, especially AST and ALT. These selective increases often accompany space-occupying lesions of the liver, such as metastatic carcinoma and primary hepatocellular carcinoma or, rarely, benign lesions, such as hemangiomata and adenomas. The source of the LD, most often the LD_5 isozyme, is not clear because it can originate from hepatocytes, from the tumor, or from both. The rise in ALP is due to blockage of local canaliculi and ductules by the masses in the liver, as discussed later. Assays for LD are described in Chapter 20.

Enzymes Primarily Reflecting Canalicular Injury

As shown in Figure 21-3, these enzymes are located predominantly on the canalicular membrane of the hepatocyte and include alkaline phosphatase, γ-glutamyl transferase, and 5′-nucleotidase. In contrast to cytoplasmic enzyme activities, canalicular enzyme activities within hepatocytes are typically quite low; focal hepatocyte injury seldom causes significant increases in canalicular enzyme levels.

Alkaline Phosphatase

As discussed at length in Chapter 20, ALP is present in a number of tissues, including liver, bone, kidney, intestine, and placenta, each of which contains distinct isozymes that can be separated from one another by electrophoresis. Total ALP in serum is mainly present in the unbound form and, to a lesser extent, is complexed with lipoproteins or rarely with Igs.

ALP in the liver, which has a half-life of about 3 days, is a hepatocytic enzyme that is found on the canalicular surface and is therefore a marker for biliary dysfunction. The bone isozyme is particularly heat labile, allowing it to be distinguished from the other major forms. In addition, small intestinal and placental ALP is antigenically distinct from liver, bone, and kidney ALP. The bulk of ALP in the serum of normal patients is made up of liver and bone ALP.

In obstruction of the biliary tract by stones in the ducts or ductules, or by infectious processes resulting in ascending cholangitis, or by space-occupying lesions, biliary tract ALP rises rapidly to values sometimes in excess of 10 times the upper limit of normal. The reasons for this increase probably include a combination of increased synthesis and decreased excretion of ALP. In obstructive cholestasis, ALP most commonly rises to twice the upper limit of normal or greater, roughly paralleling the rate of rise in serum bilirubin. If obstruction is partial, ALP usually increases as much as with complete obstruction, often out of proportion to the increase in conjugated bilirubin (dissociated jaundice). Passive congestion of the liver can occasionally result in moderate ALP elevations, more so than abnormal bilirubin levels. ALP is also moderately elevated in most instances of jaundice resulting from hepatic injury. When the resulting cholestasis is relieved, serum ALP levels fall to normal more slowly than bilirubin.

A high molecular weight ALP appears in serum in cholestasis. This ALP is attached to fragments of canalicular membrane. Bile salts solubilize the enzymes from the sinusoidal and canalicular membranes. In serum, the membrane-bound enzymes aggregate with lipids and lipoproteins. This may explain the relationship that has been observed, for instance, with LpX (see Chapter 17). Another form of high molecular weight ALP, which migrates differently on electrophoresis from the isozyme just described, has been found in malignant disease involving the liver (Viot et al, 1983).

Intestinal ALP is increased in a variety of disorders of the intestinal tract and in cirrhosis. Serum intestinal ALP is detected in more than 80% of cirrhotic patients as compared with 10% of normal controls. Measurement of this enzyme activity was suggested as one method of discriminating intrahepatic from extrahepatic jaundice, because intestinal ALP may be absent in extrahepatic obstruction, but it lacks adequate sensitivity and specificity (Collins et al, 1987). Assays for ALP are described in Chapters 20 and 27.

γ-Glutamyl Transferase

This enzyme regulates the transport of amino acids across cell membranes by catalyzing the transfer of a glutamyl group from glutathione to a free amino acid. Its major use is to discriminate the source of elevated ALP (i.e., if ALP is elevated and GGT is correspondingly elevated, then the source of the elevated ALP is most likely the biliary tract). The highest values, often greater than 10 times the upper limit of normal, may be found in chronic cholestasis due to primary biliary cirrhosis or sclerosing cholangitis. This enzyme is also elevated in about 60% to 70% of those who chronically abuse alcohol, with a rough correlation between the amount of alcohol intake and GGT activity (Whitehead & Clark, 1978). Levels often decline slowly with abstention from alcohol and remain elevated for at least 1 month after abstinence begins (Belfrage et al, 1977; Moussavian et al, 1985). GGT has a half-life of 10 days, but, in recovery from alcohol abuse, the half-life may be as long as 28 days. It tends to be higher in obstructive disorders and with space-occupying lesions in the liver than with hepatocyte injury (Kim et al, 1977).

http://basicbook.net

The gene for human GGT has been cloned, and the nucleotide sequence has been identified (Rajpert-De Meyts et al, 1988). GGT can be detected in three major forms in serum (Wenham et al, 1985), but such determinations are not readily available. A high molecular mass form is present in normal serum, as well as in biliary obstruction, and more frequently in malignant infiltration of the liver. An intermediate molecular mass form consists of two fractions—the major one detected in liver disease and the other one found in biliary obstruction. Determination of these fractions lacks sufficient sensitivity and specificity to be worthwhile (Collins et al, 1987). The third form is a low molecular mass compound of uncertain importance.

Serum levels of GGT differ from those of ALP during pregnancy, in which GGT remains normal even during cholestasis in pregnancy. GGT is often increased in alcoholics even without liver disease; in some obese people; and in the presence of high concentrations of therapeutic drugs, such as acetaminophen and phenytoin and carbamazepine (increased up to five times the reference limits), even in the absence of any apparent liver injury. Similarly, elevated GGT and albuminuria have been found to predict the development of hypertension (Li & McDermott, 2014). These increases in GGT may occur in order to restore glutathione used in the metabolism of these drugs. Glutathione is conjugated to these drugs via the glutathione S-transferase system, and the complex is then excreted.

As described in Chapter 27, most assays for GGT utilize the substrate γ-glutamyl–*p*-nitroanilide. In the reaction catalyzed by GGT, *p*-nitroaniline is liberated and is chromogenic, enabling this colored product to be measured spectrophotometrically.

Other Enzymes

5′-Nucleotidase activity is increased in cholestatic disorders with virtually no increase in activity in patients with bone disease. This enzyme is discussed further in Chapter 20. Measurement of 5′-nucleotidase can corroborate the elevation of ALP from a hepatic source. Other enzymes, such as leucine aminopeptidase (LAP), can be used for the same purpose but virtually never are. Isocitrate dehydrogenase and ornithine carbamoyltransferase (the latter unique to the liver) activities are elevated in hepatocellular injury and parallel ALT and AST. Again, as with LAP, they are virtually never used in routine laboratory assays.

α-FETOPROTEIN

α-Fetoprotein (AFP) is synthesized by embryonic hepatocytes and fetal yolk sac cells and peaks in the second trimester of pregnancy, reaching levels that constitute up to one-third of fetal serum protein. The function of AFP is not known. It may be immunosuppressive, preventing fetal destruction by circulating maternal antibodies.

As discussed in Chapter 25, AFP becomes elevated to abnormal levels in fetal neural tube deficits. The reasons for this correlation are unclear. It is important to note that normal AFP levels vary considerably with gestational age. Therefore, the decision that the serum level of this protein is abnormally high will depend on the reference interval for the gestational age of the patient. Shortly after birth, AFP levels fall, reaching the adult normal range at around 1 year of age. There is evidence that early screening for neural tube deficits can begin at 11 to 13 weeks of gestation (Bredaki et al, 2012). After acute hepatic injury, a rise in AFP (typically 100 to 200 ng/dL) from regenerating hepatocytes usually occurs. Often, however, these typical elevations after acute hepatic insults do not occur after surgical resection of the liver. Regeneration is therefore not a sufficient impetus for the occurrence of elevated AFP levels.

As discussed in Chapter 73, AFP has been found to be an important marker for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) (Zhou et al, 2006). Elevated levels occur in more than 90% of patients with this disease. As noted previously, elevated levels can also occur after acute liver disease and fibrosis, making this marker somewhat nonspecific. However, at levels greater than 400 ng/dL, there is a high probability of HCC, but at these levels of AFP, the tumor is widespread, so its use as an early detector of HCC is limited. Recent studies have shown that serial measurements of AFP in those with HCC receiving chemotherapy may serve as a good prognostic tool (Chan et al, 2009). Serum levels of AFP in HCC are also dependent on the extent and degree of differentiation of the tumor and the age of the patient. As noted above, AFP and DCP have been found to predict survival rates in patients with recurrent hepatocellular carcinoma (Okamura et al, 2014).

In addition, α-fetoprotein has been used as a marker for rare germ cell tumors, especially yolk sac (endodermal sinus) tumors of infants, and other even rarer tumors such as Sertoli-Leydig cell tumors (Watanabe et al, 2008).

AUTOIMMUNE MARKERS

Antimitochondrial Antibody Is a Marker for Primary Biliary Cirrhosis

Occasionally, autoimmune disease may be the primary cause of liver injury. The most common autoimmune liver disease is primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC), which occurs primarily in women, usually in the fifth decade, often accompanied by other autoimmune diseases (especially Sjögren's syndrome). There is a strong association of occurrence of this disease among siblings. This condition, which is discussed at length in Chapter 53, causes fibrosis of the bile canaliculi in the portal triads. Bile eventually seeps into hepatocytes, causing necrosis. Granulation tissue replaces hepatocytes, so fibrosis eventually spreads into the liver parenchyma, giving rise to the pattern of fibrosis and regenerating nodules. A similar course occurs in secondary biliary cirrhosis as a result of other underlying conditions such as choledocholithiasis, carcinoma of the head of the pancreas, and, occasionally, hepatitis and sepsis.

A vital difference between primary and secondary biliary cirrhosis is that the former uniquely appears to be part of a generalized autoimmune condition. More than 90% of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis are found by immunofluorescence to have serum antibodies that react with liver, kidney, stomach, and thyroid tissue. These circulating antibodies, which can be detected in serum using an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, are directed against mitochondrial antigens (anti–mitochondrial antigen [AMA]) from the inner mitochondrial membrane, called M2, which has been found to be dihydrolipoamide acetyltransferase, a component of the pyruvate dehydrogenase multienzyme complex (Kaplan et al, 1984; Coppel et al, 1988; Krams et al, 1989). Antimitochondrial antibodies have been found in a variety of disease states, but two anti-M2 antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis uniquely react either with a protein of molecular mass 62 kilodalton (kDa)—the E2 subunit of pyruvate dehydrogenase (Manns et al, 1987; Fussey et al, 1988), the predominant autoantibody—or with a 48-kDa E2 subunit of branched-chain oxo-keto-acid dehydrogenase. In other disorders, AMA against M1 antigen has been found in syphilis, anti-M5 in collagen vascular disease, anti-M6 in iproniazid-induced hepatitis, and anti-M7 in cardiomyopathy (Berg et al, 1986). AMA with anti-M2 specificity is 100% specific for primary biliary cirrhosis.

In a recent human genome–wide study (see Chapter 77), DNA samples from more than 500 patients with this condition and a control group were genotyped for more than 300,000 single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs). This analysis revealed that PBC has a strong association with two SNPs in the HLA-2 region, particularly in the gene-encoding interleukin (IL)-12, and a more modest but significant association with SNPs at the signal transducer and activator of transcription 4 (STAT4) locus and the CTLA4 locus, encoding cytotoxic T lymphocyte–associated protein 4. These results now implicate IL-12 signaling and CD4-positive helper T cells in the pathogenesis of this condition (Hirschfield et al, 2009). Because there is considerable overlap of symptoms between PBC, sclerosing cholangitis, and autoimmune hepatitis (the latter two conditions are discussed in the following two sections), there is a strong likelihood that these conditions may share a similar pathogenesis (Webb & Hirschfield, 2014).

ANCA Is a Marker for Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis

Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC) is an autoimmune disease associated with destruction of extrahepatic and intrahepatic bile ducts. More than 80% of patients with this disease have circulating perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (p-ANCAs) (Chapman, 2005) with specificities against antigens such as bactericidal/permeability-increasing protein, cathepsin G, and/or lactoferrin (Mulder et al, 1993; Roozendaal et al, 1998). Up to 75% also have other autoantibodies such as antinuclear antibodies (ANAs) or anti–smooth muscle antibodies (ASMAs) (Chapman et al, 1986). There is some question as to whether pANCA, which is a reliable indicator of large cholangiole disease, can likewise serve as a reliable biomarker for PSC involving small cholangioles (Tervaert et al, 2009). Unlike primary biliary cirrhosis, PSC occurs primarily in young to middle-aged men and is often associated with inflammatory bowel disease, particularly ulcerative colitis, although it was found that PSC is also associated with Crohn's disease (Stinton et al, 2014). Recently, a new sensitive chemiluminescent immunoassay (CIA) has been developed that detects neutrophil cytosolic serine protease 3, called PR3-ANCA. This antigen appears to be more specific for PSC (Stinton et al, 2014). Strength of positivity of the assay correlates with the extent of elevation of liver function enzyme levels and may be specific for more advanced stages of this condition.

http://basicbook.net

Serum Markers for Autoimmune Hepatitis

Autoimmune hepatitis is responsible for as much as 3% to 5% of chronic hepatitis and occasionally may present as acute hepatitis. Several variants of autoimmune hepatitis are associated with various markers (Czaja, 1995; Czaja et al, 1995). In the United States, the most common variant, type 1, is associated with ANAs most commonly, and also with antibodies to actin (often detected as ASMAs). Titers of AMAs and/or ASMAs greater than 1:80 support the diagnosis in patients with hepatitis (Johnson et al, 1993; Moy & Levine, 2014). Type 2 autoimmune hepatitis typically affects children and is much more common in Europe than in the United States, where it is rarely encountered. ANAs and ASMAs are often negative in type 2, and antibodies to liver–kidney microsomal antigens are positive in most cases (Moy & Levine, 2014). Lower-level titers of A NAs or ASMAs are commonly seen in other forms of liver disease, particularly hepatitis C, in which they may be found in up to 40% of cases (Czaja, 1995; Czaja et al, 1995). Both types of autoimmune hepatitis affect females predominantly.

As with primary biliary cirrhosis, gene clusters have been identified as conferring susceptibility to this disease. Most of these occur in the HLA-DRB1 that affect antigen presentation (Moy & Levine, 2014).

TESTING FOR VIRAL-INDUCED HEPATITIS

Numerous viruses cause liver damage. Some, such as hepatitis A, B, and C viruses and the arboviruses, are hepatotoxic, but others, such as Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus, varicella zoster virus, herpes simplex virus, human herpesvirus 6, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), adenovirus, and echovirus, induce transient to moderately aggressive hepatitis. Even newly identified hepatitis G causes only a self-limited form of hepatitis. In actuality, viruses are the cause of 80% to 90% of acute and chronic hepatitis. Although a variety of such viruses can affect the liver, most viral-induced liver pathology is caused by five viruses that are known to cause hepatocyte injury and are termed *hepatitis viruses*—namely, hepatitis A, B, C, D, and E.

Hepatitis A

Hepatitis A virus (HAV) is a member of the picornavirus family of RNA viruses. It is transmitted by the fecal–oral route and typically has an incubation period of 15 to 50 days, with a mean time of about 1 month, depending on the inoculum (Brown & Stapleton, 2003). Epidemics or clusters of HAV infection often occur with conditions of poor sanitation, in day care centers, with military actions, and from contaminated food. Epidemics of HAV occur generally in crowded urban areas, especially where there is a preponderance of uncooked food. Infection with HAV is almost always self-limiting, although in 5% to 10% of cases, a secondary rise in enzymes occurs. The time course of markers of HAV infection is shown in Figure 21-4.

During the incubation period, HAV RNA is present in stool and in plasma and remains detectable for an average of 18 days after clinical onset of hepatitis (Fujiwara et al, 1997). The initial immune response to the virus is IgM anti-HAV, which typically develops about 2 to 3 weeks after infection; increasing AST and ALT develop after antibody development. IgM antibodies typically persist for 3 to 6 months after infection. The presence of elevated titers of IgM anti-HAV is considered to be diagnostic of acute infection, although some apparently false-positive results have been found (Funk, 2005), resulting in the recommendation that only symptomatic individuals be screened for acute infection using IgM titers. IgG antibodies develop within 1 to 2 weeks of IgM antibodies and typically remain positive for life (Skinhoj et al, 1977).

"Total" anti-HAV assays detect both IgM and IgG antibodies. The prevalence of total anti-HAV varies, ranging from 5% to 10% in children younger than 5 years to 75% in those older than 50 years of age (Koff, 1995). Following HAV immunization, using attenuated hepatitis A virus, detectable antibody develops in 2 to 4 weeks and persists to 5 years in 99% of responders (Totos et al, 1997). Vaccination against hepatitis A appears to be effective in preventing disease in children traveling to endemic areas (Martinez et al, 2014). Similar protection from the use of Igs in passive immunization seems to occur, although this conclusion is tentative (Liu et al, 2009). If necessary for epidemiologic purposes, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays are available to identify HAV RNA in plasma and stool. There is no need, however, to incorporate the use of PCR for routine diagnostic purposes.

Hepatitis B

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) is a member of the hepadnavirus (i.e., hepato-DNA virus) family, a group of related DNA viruses that cause hepatitis in various animal species. This virus causes infection of the liver with clinical features that are extremely variable, ranging from absent or mild disease to severe liver failure (Horvat et al, 2003). Viral particles attach to host cells by an unknown receptor, where they enter the cell by receptor-mediated endocytosis and are transferred to the nucleus by so-called chaperone proteins.

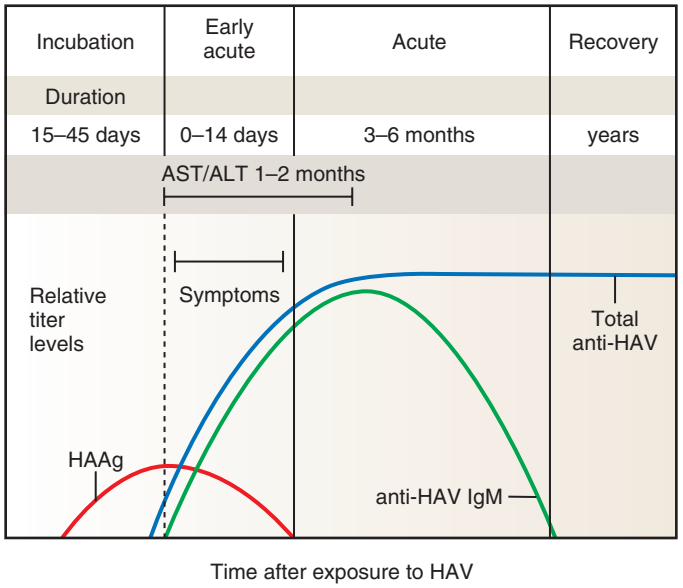


Figure 21-4 Typical time course for appearance of viral antigens and antiviral antibodies in hepatitis A viral (HAV) infection. The appearance of the hepatitis A antigen, HAAg, occurs early on; it is no longer present during the acute phase, during which time jaundice may develop. During the incubation period (which averages 2 to 3 weeks), HAV RNA is replicating, and viral particles can be detected in stool by immune electron microscopy. Viral RNA is also detectable during this time by real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR). The most effective diagnostic determination of hepatitis A acute infection is the detection of anti-HAV immunoglobulin (Ig)M. Also shown in this figure is the rise of the aminotransferases, aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and alanine aminotransferase (ALT), which occurs at the beginning of the early acute phase and lasts for several weeks to 1 to 2 months. The patient ceases to be infectious after anti-HAV IgM falls to undetectable levels in 3 to 6 months post early phase. Permanent anti-HAV IgG rises over several months and lasts for many years, conferring immunity on the exposed or infected individual. (Adapted from Abbott Laboratories Diagnostic Educational Services. *Hepatitis A diagnostic profile.* North Chicago, Ill.: Abbott Labs; 1994, with permission.)

Once in the nucleus, HBV replicates by an unusual mechanism (Beck & Nassal, 2007; Kay & Zoulim, 2007). The viral DNA is partially duplex and consists of a shorter plus strand and a longer minus strand. It consists of four known genes: C, which encodes the core protein; X, whose protein product is unknown; P, which encodes DNA polymerase; and S, which encodes the surface protein, also called the surface antigen. The latter consists of three open reading frames, giving rise to three types of surface proteins—large, middle, and small. During viral replication, the two unequal strands elongate and become circular. Several messenger RNAs (mRNAs) are transcribed, and the longest is longer than the original coding DNA. This mRNA is secreted into the cytosol, where it is involved in the replication of more virions, requiring the use of reverse transcriptase, as in retroviruses. Thus HBV replication requires reverse transcriptase, making it susceptible to reverse transcriptase inhibitors. Four serotypes of HBV (adr, adw, ayr, ayw) and eight genotypes, some of which occur in geographically different regions, have different virulences and may respond differently to different treatment modalities (Kramvis et al, 2007).

Hepatitis B is transmitted primarily by body fluids, especially serum. It is spread effectively by sex and can be transmitted from mother to baby. In Southeast Asian and African countries, horizontal transmission between children under age 4 has also been observed (Prince et al, 1981; Hurie, 1992). Hepatitis B produces several protein antigens that can be detected in serum: a core antigen (HBcAg), a surface antigen (HBsAg or HBs), and an e antigen (HBeAg), related to the core antigen; commercial assays are available for HBsAg and HBeAg. Antibodies to each of these antigens can also be measured, and commercial assays for each are available. The time course of self-limited infection with HBV is illustrated in Figure 21-5. Different groups of tests are recommended for three different clinical situations as follows:

http://basicbook.net

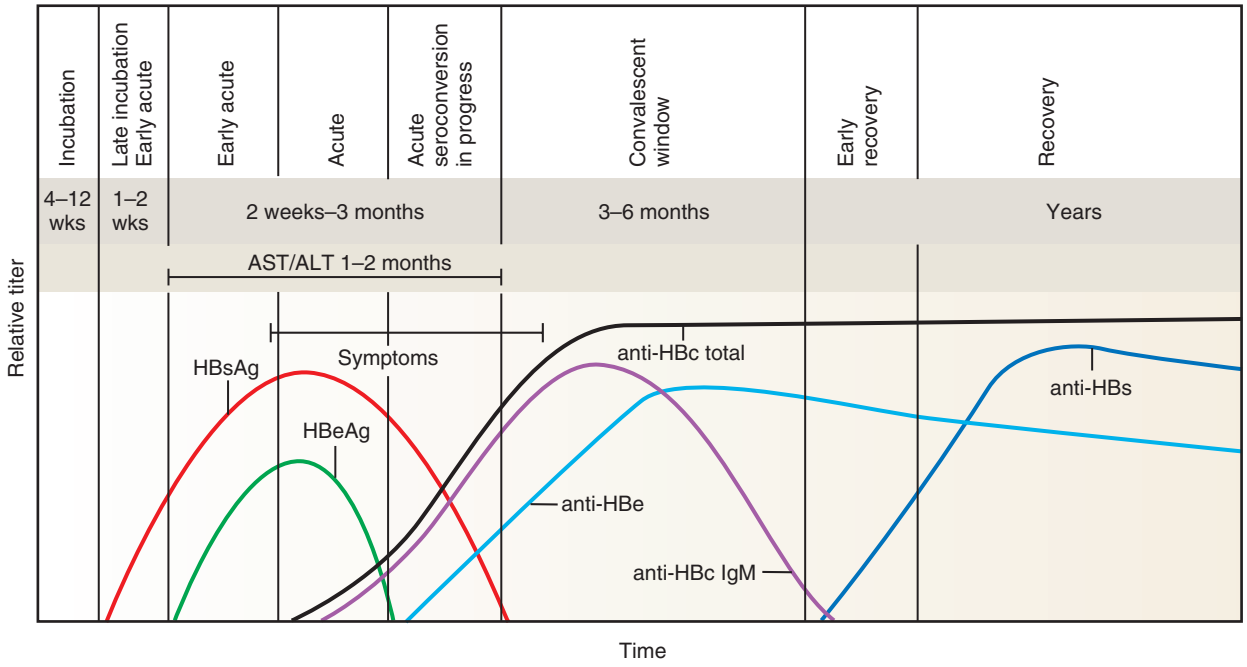


Figure 21-5 Typical time course for appearance of viral antigens and antiviral antibodies in hepatitis B viral (HBV) infection. In the early acute phase, the HBV surface antigen (HBsAg) *(red curve)* appears and lasts for several months. Detection of this antigen signifies acute HBV infection. Between the time the titer of HBsAg falls and the titer of anti-HBV immunoglobulin (Ig)G *(dark blue curve),* which confers immunity, rises, there is a gap of about 6 months. In this time period, the titers of anti-HBV core antigen (anti-HBc) IgM *(purple curve)* and IgG *(black curve)* rise, indicating acute HBV infection. This is the so-called core window. IgG anti-HBV e antigen (anti-HBe) *(cyan or light blue curve)* also rises during this core window period. Permanent immunity is conferred by anti-HBsAg IgG (anti-HBs) *(dark blue curve).* It is difficult to determine the time at which the patient is no longer infectious. Generally, an individual is considered noninfectious when no HBsAg or HBeAg, and no anti-HBcAg IgM, can be detected, and the anti-HBsAg IgG has plateaued. Also shown in this figure is the pattern of aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and alanine aminotransferase (ALT) elevations. These occur in the early acute phase, slightly after HBsAg rises. AST and ALT levels may remain elevated for several weeks to several months, after which time they decline. In HBV chronic active hepatitis, HBsAg is present continuously. AST and ALT generally remain elevated, although they can oscillate throughout the course of the disease. (Adapted from Abbott Laboratories Diagnostic Educational Services. *Hepatitis B diagnostic profile.* North Chicago, Ill.: Abbott Labs; 1994, with permission.)

1. Acute HBV hepatitis: HBsAg, IgM anti-HBc
2. Chronic HBV hepatitis: HBsAg, IgG anti-HBc, IgG anti-HBs
3. Monitoring chronic HBV infection: HBs, HBeAg, IgG anti-HBs, IgG anti-HBe, and ultrasensitive quantitative PCR

The initial serologic marker of acute infection is HBsAg, which typically becomes detectable 2 to 3 months after infection. After another 4 to 6 weeks, IgM anti-HBc appears, accompanied by increases in AST and ALT. When symptoms of hepatitis appear, most patients still have detectable HBsAg, although a few patients have neither detectable HBs nor anti-HBs, leaving anti-HBc the only marker of infection (core window). IgM anti-HBc typically persists for 4 to 6 months; however, it may be intermittently present in patients with chronic HBV infection (Czaja et al, 1988).

In most individuals, HBV hepatitis is self-limited, and the patient recovers; about 1% to 2% of normal adolescents and adults have persistent viral replication, which causes chronic hepatitis. The frequency of chronic HBV infection is 5% to 10% in immunocompromised patients and 80% in neonates, with the likelihood of chronic infection declining gradually during the first decade of life. With recovery from acute infection, HBsAg and HBcAg disappear, and IgG anti-HBs and IgG anti-HBe appear; development of anti-HBs is typically the last marker in recovery and is thought to indicate clearance of virus. Anti-HBs and anti-HBc are believed to persist for life, although in about 5% to 10% of cases, anti-HBs ultimately disappears (Seeff et al, 1987). Isolated anti-HBc can also occur during periods of viral clearance in acute and chronic hepatitis and as a false-positive result. The titer of anti-HBc is important in determining its significance; low titers are typically false-positive results, and high titers almost always (50% to 80% of cases) indicate immunity to HBV infection, as demonstrated by an anamnestic response to hepatitis B vaccine (Aoki et al, 1993).

The newest assay to assess HBV infection is the ultrasensitive quantitative real-time PCR technology, which is discussed extensively in Part 8. This quantitative HBV DNA PCR detects a highly conserved region of the surface gene at a level as low as 200 copies of viral genome per mL (0.001 pg/mL) with a range up to 2×10^8 copies/mL. Its primary use is to monitor therapeutic responsiveness in clinically infected patients.

Also available is the quantitative digene hybrid capture assay, which employs a signal amplification antibody capture microplate test that utilizes chemiluminescent detection. But this quantitative HBV PCR technique utilizes an RNA probe and has detection limits of 5000 copies/mL (0.02 pg/mL), making it less sensitive than ultraquantitative assays (Qiu et al, 2014), although branched-DNA assays, discussed in Chapter 66, are also used widely, with detection limits of 2000 copies/mL. Patients who have clinically recovered from HBV infection and are anti–HBs positive have no detectable HBV DNA using most assays.

Using sensitive PCR assays, circulating HBV DNA can be found in a high percentage of anti–HBs-positive patients who have clinically recovered from HBV infection (Cabrerizo et al, 1997; Yotsuyanagi, 1998), as well as in patients with hepatitis C and isolated anti-HBc (Cacciola et al, 1999). The significance of finding low levels of HBV DNA is not known, although in patients with concurrent hepatitis C viral infection, this finding may be associated with more severe liver damage. The e antigen has historically been used to detect the presence of circulating viral particles; a good correlation has been noted between levels of HBeAg and the amount of HBV DNA (Hayashi et al, 1996). In chronic HBV infection, approximately 1% to 1.5% of patients will spontaneously clear HBeAg each year; some will recover, but others enter a nonreplicative phase in which HBV DNA integrates into the cell genome. This transition phase is often associated with a rise in AST and ALT and, occasionally, jaundice. Rarely, HBeAg may again be detectable in plasma in such patients. Patterns of HBV markers and their interpretation are shown in Table 21-1.

Hepatitis C

Hepatitis C (HCV) is an RNA virus of the flavivirus group consisting of an icosahedral viral protein coat, embedded in cellular lipid and surrounding RNA. The viral RNA encodes a single protein with more than 3000 amino acids that is then processed into individual proteins using viral and host cellular proteases. These include two core proteins, E1 and E2, and a series of proteins labeled as NS1 to NS5. NS2 is a transmembrane protein, NS3 contains protease and RNA helicase activities, and NS4A and B proteins are known cofactors; NS5A is an interferon-resisting protein, and NS5B is RNA polymerase. The virus has a tropism for hepatocytes

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 21-1
Interpretations of Patterns of HBV Markers

Interpretation	IgM Anti-HBc	Total Anti-HBc	HBsAg	Anti-HBs	HBeAg	Anti-HBe
Incubation period of HBV infection	–	–	+	–	–	–
Acute HBV infection	+	+	+	–	+	–
Recent, resolving HBV infection	+	+	–	++		
Acute HBV infection in core window	+	+	–	–	–	–
Active chronic HBV infection	–	+	+	–	+	–
Chronic HBV carrier state	–	+	+	–	–	+
Resolved HBV infection	–	+	–	+	–	+
HBV immunity after vaccination	–	–	–	+	–	–

HBV, Hepatitis B virus; *HBc,* hepatitis B core; *HBeAg,* hepatitis B e antigen; *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen; *IgM,* Immunoglobulin M.

that it enters via specific receptors, including CD 81 protein. Once inside the hepatocyte, HCV initiates the lytic cycle utilizing the intracellular translational machinery required for its replication (Lindenbach & Rice, 2005). Replication using NS5B RNA polymerase produces a negative-strand RNA intermediate, which then serves as a template for the production of new positive-strand viral genomes. Because viral replication does not involve proofreading, the mutation rate for HCV is high. On the basis of sequencing studies, six genotypes, labeled 1 to 6, that have been further divided into subgroups (e.g., 1a, 1b, 2a, 2b) have been recognized. Genotype 1a predominates in North America, and 1b predominates in Europe. Genotypes 4 and 5 are unique to Africa. It is important to note that genotypes 1 and 4 are more resistant to interferon therapy than are the other genotypes, resulting in longer treatment times (48 vs. 24 weeks). Thus genotyping has therapeutic implications.

Treatment of HCV has drastically changed since the last edition of this text. Peginterferon (PEG-IFN) and ribaviron (RBV) have side effects that include severe flu-like symptoms (fever, headache, myalgias, arthralgias, fatigue), nausea, diarrhea, depression, pruritis, alopecia, anemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia; this leads to a cessation of therapy and thus a resurgence of the viral load in these patients. Following the advances of HIV therapy, developers created direct-acting antivirals (DAAs), NS3/4A protease inhibitors, NS5A inhibitors, and NS5B polymerase inhibitors. One of these NS3/4A protease inhibitors, boceprevir, in combination with PEG-IFN and RBV reduced HCV RNA load to half the level of the group treated with PEG-IFN/RBV alone (Poordad et al, 2011). At the time of this publication, the drugs approved by the FDA include NS3/4A protease inhibitors, boceprevir, telaprevir, and simeprevir (TMC-435), and nucleotide inhibitor, sofosbuvir, in combination with PEG-IFN/RBV (Kim et al, 2014). The success of these drugs will likely lead to interferon-free therapy, lower pill count, and an increased rate of sustained antivirological response (Gane et al, 2013; Poordad et al, 2013; Kowdley et al, 2014).

HCV, formerly known as non-A, non-B hepatitis, is the primary etiologic agent, transmitted via blood transfusions and transplantation before 1990. At present, 60% of all new cases occur in injection drug users, but other serum modes of transmission are also seen, such as accidental needle punctures in health care workers, dialysis procedures in patients, and, rarely, transmission from mother to infant. Although sexual transmission is thought to be an inefficient means of transmitting infection, it nevertheless accounts for at least 10% of new cases. Monogamous sexual partners of HCV-infected patients rarely become infected, although a history of multiple sexual partners has been recognized as a risk factor. In contrast to HAV and HBV, chronic infection with HCV occurs in about 85% of infected individuals, with an estimated 4 million individuals chronically infected in the United States alone (Alter et al, 1999). About half of HCV chronically infected individuals with persistent viremia will have elevated ALT levels. Physical symptoms are absent for the first 2 decades after infection. As the disease progresses, inflammation and liver cell death can lead to fibrosis, and in about 20% of patients, fibrosis will advance to cirrhosis. The risk for HCC in a patient with chronic HCV is about 1% to 5% after 20 years. HCC is seen only in patients with cirrhosis (Shuhart & Gretch, 2003). Laboratory tests for HCV infection and their common uses are summarized in Table 21-2.

HCV has not been grown in culture; however, HCV genomes can be amplified by recombinant technology. A number of structural and nonstructural antigens have been identified. An immunoassay for the core antigen of HCV has been developed (Aoyagi et al, 2001) but has been found to be less sensitive than HCV RNA assays (Krajden et al, 2004). The major diagnostic test for HCV infection has been the second-generation anti-HCV, which detects the presence of antibody to one of four different viral antigens at an average of 10 to 12 weeks after infection (Alter, 1992). A third-generation anti-HCV assay detects antibody at an average of 7 to 9 weeks after infection (Barrera et al, 1995). IgM anti-HCV is present in both acute and chronic HCV infection and is therefore not helpful diagnostically (Brillanti et al, 1993). Total anti-HCV typically persists for life, although it may disappear with recovery from HCV infection (Seeff & NHLBI Study Group, 1994; Beld et al, 1999).

TABLE 21-2
Interpretation of Patterns of HCV Markers

Interpretation	Anti-HCV	RIBA	HCV RNA
Acute HCV infection	–	–	+
Active HCV infection	+	+	+
Possible HCV clearance	+	+	–
False-positive HCV test	+	–	–
Requires further study	+	Indeterminate*	–

HCV, Hepatitis C; *RIBA,* recombinant immunoassay.
*Indeterminate result: only one band positive, or more than one band and nonspecific reactivity.

In high-risk populations, the predictive value of anti-HCV for HCV infection is over 99%, so further testing is not typically needed to prove viral exposure (Pawlotsky et al, 1998). In low-risk populations, such as blood donors, the predictive value of positive anti-HCV is only 25%. In low-risk patients, or when needed to confirm HCV exposure, supplemental tests for anti-HCV should be used. The HCV recombinant immunoassay test uses recombinant HCV proteins isolated in a dot or strip blot assay; this is analogous to Western blot tests used to confirm positivity in other types of infectious disease. Using the second-generation RIBA-2 assay, the presence of antibodies to two (of four) or more HCV antigens is considered a positive result, and the absence of antibodies is considered negative; an antibody to one antigen or an antibody to more than one antigen and the nonspecific marker superoxide dismutase are considered indeterminate results. In the third-generation RIBA assay, three antigens—core and NS3 and NS5 proteins—are immobilized on a membrane; positive ELISA reactions to two or more antigens is considered to be positive, while reaction with only one antigen is considered to be equivocal or indeterminate (Kamili et al, 2012); isolated antibody to the NS5 antigen is virtually never associated with HCV viremia, suggesting that it may indicate a false-positive result (Vernelen et al, 1994; LaPerche et al, 1999).

The primary test for confirming persistence of HCV infection is HCV RNA, detected by a variety of amplification techniques. Quantitative assays can typically detect as few as 1000 copies/mL; however, results from different assays are not interchangeable, and detection limits vary among methods (Ravaggi et al, 1997; Lunel et al, 1999). Qualitative HCV RNA assays generally have lower limits of detection compared with quantitative methods using the same amplification technique, are less expensive, and are more useful for detecting the presence or absence of infection.

A World Health Organization standard has been developed to improve comparability between methods (Saldanha et al, 1999) and is based on an international unit or IU/mL of serum or plasma and on recently developed real-time PCR techniques, which have a detection range of 5 to 200 million IU/mL, thereby eliminating the need to obtain qualitative and

http://basicbook.net

quantitative levels. In a recent study (Shiffman et al, 2003), it was found, using the international standard, that approximately 90% of serum values for HCV RNA were within 1 log unit, irrespective of which virologic assay was used. However, significant differences in results have been found, a few samples giving a maximum of 2 log unit differences (factor of 100). Such discrepant results may have an impact on the management of patients receiving interferon therapy. These findings suggest that it is important to obtain more than one HCV RNA determination before making treatment decisions (Shiffman et al, 2003).

With acute infection, HCV RNA is typically present within 2 weeks of infection but falls with development of antibody; as many as 15% of those with acute HCV infection have negative HCV RNA (Alter et al, 1992; Villano et al, 1999). Viral RNA may be intermittently present for the first year of infection but then becomes persistently present (Villano et al, 1999). In later stages of infection, HCV RNA levels generally fluctuate by no more than 0.5 to 1.0 log around mean values (Nguyen et al, 1996). HCV has a high rate of mutation, similar to that of other reverse transcriptase viruses such as HIV. This produces a number of "quasispecies" of HCV that may emerge, often associated with fluctuating ALT levels (Yuki et al, 1997). Unique species of HCV are termed *genotypes*. In the United States, the most common is genotype 1, divided into subtypes 1a and 1b; these together cause about 65% of HCV infections in Caucasians, but 90% to 95% of infections in African Americans (McHutchison et al, 1999; Reddy et al, 1999). Genotypes 2 and 3 are generally more responsive to treatment (McHutchison et al, 1998; Poynard et al, 1998); other strains are responsible for 1% to 2% of infections. Detection of the unique nucleic acid sequences of each strain by one of several nucleic acid methods (Lau et al, 1995), discussed at length in Part 8, is the most reliable means to identify the responsible genotype in an individual.

Hepatitis C (HCV)–Induced Hepatocellular Carcinoma (HCC)

Approximately 20% of patients who have hepatitis C develop cirrhosis of the liver, which has been attributed to chronic inflammation due to chronic hepatitis C infection (Selimovic et al, 2012). (Cirrhosis is discussed further below.) Of these 20%, approximately 20% develop hepatocellular carcinoma. The issue thus arises as to whether the hepatitis C virus may be a causative factor for HCC. It has been found that expression of individual hepatitis C proteins in normal hepatocytes can lead to their malignant transformation. Interestingly, expression of HCV protein by hepatocytes in a transgenic mouse model was sufficient to induce HCC in these mice and the immortalization of primary human hepatocytes. Core protein has also been found to activate telomerase in immortalized hepatocytes and to induce the expression of interleukin (IL)-6, gp130, leptin receptor, and signal transducer and activator of transcription 3. Upregulation of these proteins is thought to upregulate c-myc and cyclin D1, both promitotic proteins (see Chapter 74), which may further promote cell transformation.

More important, it has been found that transfection of HCV NS3-encoding genomic DNA into quiescent NIH 3T3 cells (mouse fibroblasts) induces cell transformation. Overexpression of NS3 protein in human hepatocytes likewise was found to induce cell transformation. NS3 protein has also been found to form inactivating complexes with the antioncogene protein, p53, and the proapoptotic protein, waf-p21.

HCV NS5A protein has been found to cause dysregulation of the cell cycle and to induce aberrant mitosis. The NS5B protein induces downregulation of the antioncogene protein Rb and promotes elongation factor-2 (E2F)–induced transcription. These studies suggest that drugs that can block the interactions of these viral proteins with the critical proteins in hepatocytes may reduce the occurrence of HCC in these patients. Studies further suggest that interferon may reduce the occurrence of HCC in these patients (Selimovic et al, 2012).

Hepatitis D

Hepatitis D (delta-agent; HDV) is an RNA virus that can replicate only in the presence of HBsAg; circulating viral particles have viral RNA inside a shell of HBsAg. Although HDV is rare in the United States, occurring primarily in injecting drug users and hemophiliacs via multiple transfusions, it is endemic in some parts of the world (London & Evans, 1996). Overall, about 20 million individuals may be infected with HDV (Taylor, 2006). In patients with HBV infection, HDV may occur in two forms. If infection with both viruses occurs at about the same time (coinfection), the course of infection is more severe, often follows an atypical course, is a cause of acute fulminant hepatic failure (Sunheimer et al, 1994), and has a higher fatality rate than HBV infection alone. If HDV infection occurs in the presence of persistent HBV infection (superinfection), progression of disease may be faster. The major diagnostic test is the presence of anti-HDV; both total and IgM antibody tests are available. Both antibodies may eventually disappear following convalescence. The simultaneous assessment of anti-HBc IgM will help differentiate coinfections (present) from superinfections (absent).

Hepatitis E

Hepatitis E (HEV), an RNA virus, now classified as a hepevirus, with a clinical course similar to that of HAV infection, is common in parts of Asia, Africa, and Mexico, but it is rarely seen in the United States, except in individuals who have traveled to endemic areas (Erker et al, 1999). Similar to HAV, it is spread by the fecal–oral route. Person-to-person transmission of HEV appears to be uncommon. For travelers to endemic areas, the usual food and water hygiene precautions are recommended. Evidence suggests that humans can contract this virus from animal reservoirs (e.g., from uncooked boar and deer meat), but this route of transmission has not been fully verified (Kuniholm & Nelson, 2008). When infection occurs in pregnancy, there is an increased fatality rate of about 20%, although in general the fatality rate is between 0.5% and 4%. HEV infections range from inapparent illness to severe acute hepatitis, sometimes leading to fulminant hepatitis and death. The signs and symptoms cannot be distinguished from those associated with cases of acute hepatitis caused by other hepatotropic viruses (Schlauder et al, 2003).

The viral genome encodes at least six proteins, including a capsid protein, whose x-ray structure has recently been determined (Guu et al, 2009). There are presumed to be five genotypes: 1 and 2 are from humans, 3 and 4 are from humans and swine, and a fifth genotype is an avian HEV found in chickens that represents a branch distinct from human and swine HEVs. Genotypes 1 and 2 occur in younger populations, whereas genotypes 3 and 4 occur in older age groups that may be immunocompromised. Antibody tests for HEV are available but appear to have frequent false-positive results, depending on the antigens used to detect reactivity (Mast et al, 1998). Two serologic tests are available: anti-HEV IgM, which detects recent or current infection, and anti-HEV IgG, which detects current or past infection. Because of the current questionable specificity of serologic assays, a confirmatory test is required. A PCR amplification of an HEV RNA-specific product using serum, plasma, bile, or feces becomes the definitive indicator of acute infection. However, the PCR test window of detection is from 2 to 7 weeks after infection. Recently, a new ELISA assay for hepatitis E antigen has been developed that appears to detect the presence of this virus in known cases at significantly higher rates than either anti–hepatitis E IgM or viral RNA. Using this antigen test, it was found that, in primates, the viral antigen is present for 3 weeks longer than previously thought and for most of the acute phase (Wen et al, 2014).

Hepatitis G

Two other viruses have been suspected, but not proven, to cause posttransfusion hepatitis: hepatitis G virus (HGV, sometimes called G-B) (Laskus et al, 1997) and transfusion-transmitted virus (Matsumoto et al, 1999). Although both viruses can be isolated from a high percentage of persons with posttransfusion hepatitis, and viremia is found in at least 1% of blood donors, they do not seem to cause liver disease in these cases. To date, no serologic or PCR assays that can detect these agents are commercially available. Although acute and chronic HGV can be detected at some research centers with a qualitative PCR assay for HGV RNA, no routine testing is recommended because the clinical significance of HGV remains unknown (Shuhart et al, 2003). Several other viruses, including herpes viruses, can cause hepatitis, but they typically affect other organs as well. These viruses are discussed in Chapter 55.

DIAGNOSIS OF LIVER DISEASES

In Chapter 8, the fundamental patterns of laboratory findings in liver function abnormalities are summarized and are encapsulated in Table 8-5. In this section, the major hepatic disorders are discussed, with emphasis on laboratory evaluations that enable diagnoses to be made, often without the need to perform invasive procedures such as liver biopsies.

It is important to remember that in acute hepatitis, the principal changes include significant elevations of aminotransferases; in cirrhosis, these tend to remain normal or become slightly elevated, while total protein and albumin are depressed, and ammonia concentrations in serum are elevated. In posthepatic biliary obstruction, bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase become elevated; in space-occupying diseases of the liver, alkaline phosphatase and lactate dehydrogenase are elevated. In fulminant hepatic failure, the aminotransferases and ammonia are elevated, but total protein and albumin are depressed.

http://basicbook.net

HEPATITIS

Hepatitis usually first manifests clinically with the symptoms of fatigue and anorexia. Microscopically, cell injury and generally minimal necrosis are caused both by direct virus (or toxic agent)–induced cell damage and by the immune response to the virus. Jaundice may be present. By far, the most common cause (>90% of cases) of hepatitis is viral, with about 50% of cases due to hepatitis B, 25% to hepatitis A, and 20% to hepatitis C. Jaundice is often initially seen as scleral icterus when the patient has total serum bilirubin concentrations above 2 mg/dL. The cause of *acute* hepatitis is likewise almost always (>90% of cases) viral, although chemical exposure such as to carbon tetrachloride or chloroform or to drugs such as acetaminophen, especially in children, should be considered. A special category of toxin-induced hepatitis is that induced by alcohol, discussed later.

The cardinal finding in hepatitis is a rise in the aminotransferases to values greater than 200 IU/L and often to 500 or even 1000 IU/L. An exception to this finding is seen in hepatitis C, in which only modest elevations of ALT (but not AST) can occur. The AST/ALT ratio generally favors ALT. The bilirubin is frequently elevated and is composed of both direct and indirect types. Frank jaundice occurs in about 70% of cases of acute hepatitis A (Lednar et al, 1985), 33% of cases of hepatitis B (McMahon et al, 1985), and about 20% of acute hepatitis C cases (Hoofnagle, 1997). Elevations of indirect bilirubin are due to the inability of injured hepatocytes to conjugate bilirubin, and the rise in direct bilirubin is due to the blockage of compromised canaliculi secondary to the inflammatory process that occurs in the acute phase. Because of hepatocyte damage, LD levels are mildly elevated to values typically around 300 to 500 IU/L. Because of inflammation and/or necrosis or apoptosis of canalicular and ductular lining cells, the alkaline phosphatase may also be elevated typically to values of 200 to 350 IU/L. Unless the hepatitis is severe and involves the whole liver, progressing to fulminant hepatic failure, total protein and albumin are within their normal ranges. The γ-globulin fractions may be elevated as a result of infection (Lotfy et al, 2006).

Given the pattern of the analytes suggestive of hepatitis as previously discussed, screens for specific causes should be made (i.e., determination of serologic markers for hepatitis A, B, and C). Screening for anti–hepatitis A IgM and for HBsAg can be performed within 1 day. If either of these is positive, the diagnosis is established. If negative, further screening for hepatitis B should be undertaken (i.e., determination of serum titers of anti-HBcAg IgM and IgG [core window] and anti-HBsAg IgG, as already described). If only the latter is positive, it may be difficult to establish whether hepatitis B is the cause of the infection or whether the patient has had past exposure to the virus. Unless the patient has chronic active or persistent hepatitis, in which case HBsAG is continuously present, elevated titers of anti-HBsAg IgG occur long after the aminotransferases return to normal levels. Screens for hepatitis C should also be performed. If these are negative, other viral causes should be sought (e.g., cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus). Especially in the event that a viral hepatitis screen is negative, nonviral causes, such as chemical toxins, should be considered. In addition, less common causes of hepatitis such as Wilson's disease (see earlier), in which decreased serum ceruloplasmin and increased urinary copper are found, and autoimmune hepatitis should be considered. Both conditions can present as acute or chronic disease; in chronic forms, both can give rise to chronic active hepatitis and, less commonly, cirrhosis. In the chronic form of autoimmune hepatitis (often accompanied by elevations in ANA titers), polyclonal increases in the γ-globulins can usually be detected.

Alcoholic Hepatitis

In alcoholic hepatitis, the previously described pattern of abnormal analyte concentrations holds, except that AST, much of it mitochondrial AST, often becomes disproportionately elevated over ALT. In addition, marked elevations of the enzyme GGT are often out of proportion to elevations in alkaline phosphatase. Unless malnutrition or compromised renal function exists in the alcoholic patient, total protein and albumin are found to be within their reference ranges.

Chronic Hepatitis

In chronic hepatitis, hepatocyte damage is ongoing, and chronic inflammation is seen in hepatocytes on biopsy. This condition is caused mainly by chronic hepatitis B or C infection, detected by persisting HBsAg or real-time PCR for hepatitis C sequences, respectively, and is a major predisposing factor for cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma, the two leading causes of death from liver disease. Chronic hepatitis may be asymptomatic or mildly symptomatic. A mild elevation of AST and ALT is seen, and, more commonly in hepatitis C, a mild elevation of only ALT may be noted.

CHRONIC PASSIVE CONGESTION

In chronic passive congestion of the liver, most often secondary to congestive heart failure, back pressure from the right heart is transmitted to the hepatic sinusoids from the inferior vena cava and the hepatic veins. Increased pressure causes sinusoidal dilation, which may cause physical damage to hepatocytes. The result is a mild increase in aminotransferases and occasionally mild hyperbilirubinemia. Other analytes that measure liver function are usually within their reference ranges.

CIRRHOSIS

Cirrhosis of the liver is a condition that results in parenchymal fibrosis and hepatocytic nodular regeneration and can be caused by alcoholism (macronodular or Laennec's cirrhosis), panhepatic hepatitis, chronic active hepatitis, toxins and drugs, and diseases of the biliary tract, such as primary and secondary biliary cirrhosis, as discussed previously.

In addition, systemic disease can predispose to cirrhosis. In hemochromatosis, for example, excess iron becomes deposited in a variety of tissues, including liver, and becomes toxic to hepatocytes, predisposing to cirrhosis. As discussed in Chapter 23, this disease is associated with single amino acid substitutions, most commonly tyrosine for cysteine 282 (C282Y), in the protein product of the *HFE* gene on chromosome 6 (Feder et al, 1996; Crawford et al, 1998a). This protein is thought to be involved in the interaction of transferrin with the transferrin receptor (Zhou et al, 1998b), and in amino acid substitutions such as C282Y, which induce protein malfunction, resulting in abnormal iron deposition in tissues, including liver. More recent work suggests that the HFE protein can regulate intracellular iron storage independently of its interaction with transferrin receptor-1 (Carlson et al, 2005).

However, homozygosity for the C282Y HFE protein is a necessary but not sufficient for causing this disease because known homozygous individuals with this mutant protein do not have the disease. This finding suggests that one or more other factors are involved in causing this disease. In a recent large-scale genome-wide association study (GWAS) on 474 unrelated homozygous individuals, associations were examined for quantitative iron burden indices and patient follow-up with 534,213 single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) (de Tayrac et al, 2014). The only gene found to have an association with aberrant iron metabolism was the transferrin (TF) gene. The implication of this finding is that hemochromatosis may be a "two-hit" disease—that is, one that requires two mutant proteins to have full expression of the clinical features of this disease.

Testing for this condition involves determination of the serum iron-binding saturation, discussed in Chapter 23, which is greater than or equal to 45%. This test has high sensitivity but low specificity, diminishing its screening value. Other tests for this condition include determination of iron content of liver biopsy samples and genetic analysis as just described.

As discussed previously, in Wilson's disease, copper deposits in liver are also toxic and can likewise lead to a form of chronic active hepatitis and cirrhosis. In α-1-antitrypsin deficiency, because of continuing proteolysis in hepatocytes, patients have a significantly increased propensity to develop cirrhosis. Chronic hepatitis due to persistent circulating hepatitis B or C virus and autoimmune disease with elevated ANA or ASMA also predispose to cirrhosis.

In general, irrespective of the cause, cirrhosis is a chronic but gradually worsening condition that can occasionally progress to fulminant hepatic failure, as discussed later (Sunheimer et al, 1994). At its inception, it is often focal and may not be evident clinically.

Diagnosing and Following Cirrhosis, Fibrosis, and Necroinflammation of the Liver Noninvasively Using Serum Analytes

The definitive diagnosis of fibrosis and/or necrosis and inflammation of the liver is attained by liver biopsy. Because this invasive procedure carries with it morbidity such as bleeding and pneumothorax, and because the liver biopsy itself has the confounding problem of sampling errors, a search is under way to devise methods to diagnose and follow these disease processes noninvasively using the levels of serum analytes that measure liver function. The first of these was the PGA index (Poynard et al, 1991), computed from the PT and from serum levels of γ-glutamyl transferase and apolipoprotein A-I. Ranges of values for each of these analytes are

http://basicbook.net

divided into five categories, numbered 0 to 4, in increasing order of severity. For example, GGT values between 20 and 49 are scored as 1, values between 50 and 99 are scored 2, and so on. For apoA-I, increasing severity of disease correlates with decreasing concentration of this protein in serum. The prothrombin time increases with severity of disease because the liver is the sole site for synthesis of coagulation factors. These scores are then summed to give the PGA index. Higher PGA scores have been found to correlate with the degree of hepatic fibrosis and with the severity of cirrhosis as judged both by clinical grading and from liver biopsies (Tèare et al, 1993). This index also has a good correlation with the level of procollagen type III propeptide in serum, also used to follow active cirrhosis.

More recently, other indices have been developed that appear to be more effective. These include the Fibrotest and the Actitest index (Poynard et al, 2004), which utilize the measurement of six analyte levels (i.e., apolipoprotein A1, GGT [these two analytes also being in the PGA index], haptoglobin, total bilirubin, α-2-macroglobulin, and ALT) and also include the patient's age and gender. Correlations with liver biopsy results are then performed based on an artificial intelligence algorithm, resulting in an equation that computes the score on a scale of 0 to 1.0. These scores correspond to the scores of one or more histopathologic staging systems, the most commonly used one of which is called METAVIR (METAVIR Cooperative Group & Bedossa, 1994; Bedossa & Poynard, 1996), as follows: F0, no fibrosis; F1, portal fibrosis; F2, bridging fibrosis with few septa; F3, bridging fibrosis with many septa; and F4, frank cirrhosis. Actitest scores are computed likewise on a scale of 0 to 1.0, using the same parameters, except that they are correlated with necroinflammatory activity using a METAVIR grading system (Bedossa & Poynard, 1996) as follows: A0, no activity; A1, minimal activity; A2, moderate activity; and A3, severe activity. These indices are widely used in Europe but thus far not in the United States. Some disagreement has been seen as to the efficacy of these indices in diagnosing and following liver fibrosis and necrosis/inflammatory activity. For example, in one study (Rossi et al, 2003) on 125 patients with hepatitis C, serum samples were obtained and assayed for the six analytes in the Fibrotest and the Actitest. Using cutoffs of less than 0.1 to signify minimal fibrosis and greater than 0.6 to indicate severe fibrosis, of 33 patients with a score less than 0.1, 6 (18%) were found to have significant fibrosis, and of 24 patients with scores greater than 0.6, 5 (21%) were found to have mild fibrosis on biopsy. On the other hand, in another similar study of more than 300 patients with hepatitis C, for whom analyses were performed before and after a treatment regimen using antiviral agents, high values (almost 0.8) for the areas under the receiver-operator curves (see Chapter 7) were found at pretreatment and posttreatment. The overall sensitivity (see Chapter 7) of the method was 90%, and the positive predictive value was 88%. These values indicate that the index is of value in detecting fibrosis. Recently, Fibrotest was validated as a prognostic marker for liver-related mortality in patients with chronic hepatitis C (Poynard et al, 2014).

It has been pointed out that false-positive results may occur as the result of treatment for hepatitis C with ribavirin because this drug can induce hemolysis, thereby reducing haptoglobin and increasing unconjugated bilirubin, both of which will change the index in a manner unrelated to increasing liver fibrosis (Halfon et al, 2008). Other conditions that are unrelated to liver fibrosis and can change the index are acute hepatitides, extrahepatic cholestasis (as from choledocholithiasis), Gilbert's disease, acute inflammatory conditions, and severe hemolysis (Halfon et al, 2008), as mentioned previously. With these caveats, Poynard has estimated that 18% of discordances between liver biopsy and Fibrotest and Actitest results are due to sampling errors on liver biopsy, a known problem with this procedure, especially for small biopsy sample sizes of less than 15 mm, and that 2% were due to the test (Poynard et al, 2004). For biopsy sizes of greater than 15 mm, correlation of Fibrotest scores with biopsies resulted in an area of 0.88 under the receiver-operator curve (see Chapter 7). Other investigators have concluded from studies that there is a need for standardization of methods so that all testing laboratories obtain similar values for individual test results (Rosenthal-Allieri et al, 2005), as well as a need for large prospective studies (Afdhal & Nunes, 2004). It has been found that, overall, Fibrotest, which is commercially available from the Laboratory Corporation of America (LabCorp, Philadelphia) under the name Fibrosure, has a similar prognostic value to that obtained from liver biopsy and appears to be the most accurate of the noninvasive biomarker indices (Naveau et al, 2009).

These other indices (reviewed and evaluated in Parkes et al, 2006) include the FIBROSpect II index based on tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases, α-2-macroglobulin, and hyaluronic acid, the latter appearing to give better correlations with liver fibrosis than procollagen type III peptide, as mentioned earlier; the INR; platelet count; ratio of AST to ALT; AST/platelet ratio index; and the Forns index, which correlates age, platelet count, GGT, and cholesterol with extent of liver fibrosis (Forns et al, 2002). These appear to have similar, although somewhat lower, sensitivities and/or specificities to the Fibrotest and the Actitest (Thabut et al, 2003; Naveau et al, 2009).

Computed Indices Used to Predict Survival of Patients with Extensive Liver Disease

Combinations of serum analytes, as described in the preceding section, are being employed to predict the survival of patients with severe disease. There are two major indices that are employed: Model for End-stage Liver Disease (MELD) and the Child-Turcotte-Pugh (CTP) indices. Both utilize total serum bilirubin, serum creatinine, and the INR. The CTP system also uses serum levels of albumin and the extent of ascites and encephalopathy. One of the major purposes of these indices is to predict which patients are the "sickest" and who would require a liver transplant in a short time period.

MELD System

The MELD score was mentioned in the prior section on INR (Bambha & Kamath, 2014; Reverter et al, 2014). The purpose is to compute the probability of survival for patients with liver disease. The score uses serum bilirubin, INR, and serum creatinine to compute a score based on these values. The interpretation of the scores varies with the particular condition. Patients with liver failure, who require liver transplantation, and who have high MELD scores are predicted to have lower predicted survival times and must therefore be given high priority. Originally the MELD system was employed to predict the probability of a 3-month survival of patients with liver disease who had undergone a transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS). Predicted survival and actual survival in a number of different studies correlated well. The prediction scheme was then extended to prediction of the 3-month survival of any patients with extensive liver disease as described above. The following equation is used to compute the MELD score:

$$\text{MELD score} = 3.8 \times \ln(\text{serum bilirubin [mg/dL]}) + 11.2 \times \ln(\text{INR}) + 9.6 \times \ln(\text{serum creatinine [mg/dL]}) + 6.4$$

As an illustration of the use of this formula in guiding treatment, for patients who are considered to be candidates for TIPS placement, it has been found that the best outcomes for this procedure are for patients with MELD scores under 14. TIPS is not recommended for patients with MELD scores of over 24. For scores between 14 and 24, clinical evaluation of the risks and benefits is required.

Child-Turcotte-Pugh Score

This system categorizes patients with liver disease into three stages labeled as A, B and C based on the number of points that are assigned to specific results, the higher number of points increasing with severity of disease (Cholongitas et al, 2005; Bambha & Kamath, 2014). The condition severity is graded as follows: If a patient has a serum bilirubin of less than 2 mg/dL, albumin of greater than 3.5 g/dL, INR of less than 1.7, and no ascites or hepatic encephalopathy, the total number of points is 5 (1 for each of the three values and the two clinical conditions). The patient's condition would then be classified as category A. This category is for 5 to 6 points; if the score is 7 to 9 points, the patient's condition is ranked as category B, and 10 to 15 points places the condition in category C. The projected 2-year survival for category A is 85%; for category B, 57%; and for category C, 35%.

Biochemical and Clinical Correlations of Cirrhosis

As cirrhosis progresses to involve most (>80%) of the liver parenchyma, liver function becomes compromised. Total protein synthesis drops to low levels, as does synthesis of albumin. Portal hypertension, together with the drop in colloid osmotic pressure, results in ascites and even anasarca. Compression of the intrahepatic bile ductules and cholangioles results in diminished excretion of bilirubin and bile salts, causing hyperbilirubinemia and a rise in alkaline phosphatase, GGT, and 5′-nucleotidase. The serum concentrations of hepatocyte enzymes such as AST, ALT, and LD may be normal or diminished. If injury to viable hepatocytes is ongoing, the levels of these enzymes in serum may become mildly elevated. In more advanced stages of cirrhosis, serum ammonia levels become significantly elevated and correlate roughly with the degree of encephalopathy.

Four clinically graded levels of hepatic encephalopathy have been identified: motor tremors detected as asterixis, where when pressed back and

http://basicbook.net

then released, the patient's hands move back and forth in a flapping motion; a lethargic, stuporous state; severe obtundation; and frank coma. Lowering ammonia levels reduces the degree of encephalopathy. More recently, earlier signs of encephalopathy have been observed, including sleep disturbance and abnormal results on neuropsychiatric tests.

Because the liver is the site of synthesis of all of the coagulation factors except von Willebrand factor, and because synthesis of these factors is markedly diminished in cirrhosis, coagulation disorders may result, as discussed previously. Accelerated partial thromboplastin and prothrombin times become prolonged, often accompanied by diminished platelet counts. The latter may be caused by splenic sequestration due to splenomegaly caused by portal hypertension. However, disseminated intravascular coagulopathy may occur in cirrhosis, as evidenced by high levels of D-dimer and fibrin split products in serum, and may be the cause of the diminished platelet count. Because of derangements in lipid metabolism in the liver, fats enter the circulation and become deposited in erythrocyte membranes, causing these cells to appear as target cells.

Loss of vascular volume from ascites and anasarca can cause low tissue perfusion and lactic acidosis. Volume receptors, sensitive to volume loss, stimulate the secretion of antidiuretic hormone. The retained water causes serodilution, leading to hyponatremia.

Cirrhosis of the liver is often associated with renal failure as a result of the hepatorenal syndrome. In this condition, which is not well understood, renal tubular function is compromised. Serum blood urea nitrogen and creatinine rise to markedly elevated levels, indicating renal failure. Low tissue perfusion may also cause acute tubular necrosis. In hepatorenal syndrome, restoration of liver function generally reverses the renal failure.

Primary and secondary types of biliary cirrhosis have been discussed previously in this chapter. The diagnosis of these conditions is made difficult by the changing pattern of serum analyte concentrations used to evaluate liver status. Usually beginning as an obstructive pattern, in which alkaline phosphatase and sometimes bilirubin are elevated, the pattern progresses to one that resembles hepatitis because of the toxic effects of bile salts on hepatocytic function. With time, this pattern gives way to a cirrhotic pattern in which the aminotransferases decrease, total protein and albumin decrease, and ammonia rises. In patients with a persistent obstructive pattern indicated by laboratory results, with no evidence of mass lesions or stones causing blockage of bile flow, the presence of anti-M2 antimitochondrial antibody should be ascertained. Increased titers of this antibody are virtually 100% diagnostic of primary biliary cirrhosis. In addition, assays for serum p-ANCA antibodies should be performed to detect secondary biliary cirrhosis, which can also produce a cholestatic pattern.

Survival for patients with primary biliary cirrhosis can be computed from the MELD score (Bambha & Kamath, 2014) or computed using an empirical formula, analogous to the MELD score, that utilizes the age of the patient, the serum albumin and bilirubin, the prothrombin time, and the extent of edema (Dickson et al, 1989). This formula gives an estimate of the time within which the patient may undergo liver transplantation.

POSTHEPATIC BILIARY OBSTRUCTION

Posthepatic biliary obstruction refers to blockage of the intrahepatic and extrahepatic ducts and/or to blockage of bilirubin excretion from the hepatocyte into the canaliculi, leading to backflow of bile into the hepatocyte and ultimately into the circulation. The most common cause of this condition is cholelithiasis. Other causes include primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis, as discussed earlier, and inflammation of the biliary tract, as occurs in ascending cholangitis and in gram-negative sepsis. Drugs such as the neuroleptics, like chlorpromazine, can cause cholestatic jaundice. Mass lesions such as carcinoma of the head of the pancreas or lymphoma can also cause posthepatic biliary obstruction by blocking the common bile duct at the porta hepatis. These conditions cause elevated bilirubin (most of it direct), ALP, and GGT. Often, however, especially in inflammatory conditions in the biliary tract, obstruction to bile flow is incomplete, resulting in partial flow of bile. Under these conditions, bilirubin remains normal or is only mildly increased. However, alkaline phosphatase, GGT, and 5′-nucleotidase become significantly elevated.

Occasionally, hyperbilirubinemia may be observed in patients who are otherwise normal. The bilirubin is of the indirect type and most often results from hemolysis, usually in hemolytic anemia. Hemolytic anemias may be triggered by hepatic disease. For example, viral hepatitis may precipitate hemolysis in patients with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency. In Zieve's syndrome, hemolysis occurs in conjunction with alcoholic hepatitis and hyperlipidemia. Wilson's disease is sometimes associated with acute hemolysis. Patients with chronic hepatitis secondary to autoimmune disease may develop severe hemolytic disease, sometimes requiring splenectomy.

SPACE-OCCUPYING LESIONS

In space-occupying lesions of the liver, a high percentage of which are due to metastatic cancer; a smaller percentage to lymphoma, primary hepatocellular carcinoma, and angiosarcoma of the liver; and a small percentage to benign lesions such as hemangioma of the liver, the cardinal finding is isolated increases in the two enzymes LD and alkaline phosphatase. Increases in the latter are caused by encroachments of the mass(es) on canaliculi and cholangioles and even on the main bile ducts. The reasons for increases in LD are not clear. Most commonly, it is the LD_5 fraction that is responsible for the increase. This fraction may be produced by the liver but also may be produced by tumors, especially if LD is greater than 500 to 1000 IU/L and alkaline phosphatase is greater than 500 IU/L. If a malignant tumor spreads widely through the liver, mild elevation in the aminotransferases may be seen, along with hyperbilirubinemia due to bile duct obstruction, and low protein and albumin. The latter findings may not be caused as much by liver dysfunction as by generalized cachexia associated with tumor spread. A number of cancers that originate in the liver can be identified using serodiagnostic tests. For example, as discussed earlier in this chapter, serum levels of AFP are elevated in hepatocellular carcinoma. As discussed in Part 9 of this book, angiosarcomas can be diagnosed using specific antibodies to mutated ras-p21 protein.

FULMINANT HEPATIC FAILURE

In acute fulminant hepatic failure, an uncommon but highly fatal condition, massive destruction of liver tissue results in complete liver failure. Depending on the nature and extent of the destruction, ultimate liver regeneration frequently does not occur, although if cell death is limited and if hepatocytes can recover from the acute injury, normal liver function may return. The causes of this condition are largely unknown. Reye's syndrome is an example of this condition, in which a child has an acute viral infection with fever and is treated with aspirin. Within 1 to 2 weeks after the infection and fever have dissipated, the child suddenly becomes encephalopathic secondary to hyperammonemia caused by acute hepatic failure. An adult form of Reye's syndrome has also been described. Other possible causes of fulminant hepatic failure include acute hepatitis B with hepatitis D superinfection, Budd-Chiari syndrome and other hepatic vein thrombotic conditions, vascular hypoperfusion of the liver, ileojejunal bypass for obesity, Tylenol intoxication, alcoholism, and cirrhosis. Another significant predisposing condition is the fatty liver of pregnancy (Sunheimer et al, 1994).

Two histopathologic forms of fulminant hepatic failure are known: panhepatic necrosis, in which all hepatocytes have become necrotic, and microvesicular steatosis, in which sinusoidal enlargement and cholestasis are present. The latter is most commonly observed in Reye's syndrome and the fatty liver of pregnancy. It is important to note that, because the microvesicular steatosis pattern often shows only minimal changes histologically, liver biopsy is unrevealing. It is necessary to rely on laboratory analysis of liver function for a definitive diagnosis, as described later.

Many of the pathophysiologic sequelae of cirrhosis also occur in fulminant hepatic failure (Sunheimer et al, 1994). Patients develop ascites and become encephalopathic as the result of hyperammonemia. Total serum protein and serum albumin are depressed. Virtually all patients with fulminant hepatic failure exhibit severe coagulopathy, particularly disseminated intravascular coagulopathy, and virtually all are anemic. All develop renal failure as a result of the hepatorenal syndrome and acute tubular necrosis.

In addition, many patients become hypoglycemic, possibly because of the absence of enzymes involved in glycogenolysis. Lactic acidosis also develops as the result of poor tissue perfusion. It is interesting to note that, unlike in cirrhosis, in which patients become hyponatremic, patients with fulminant hepatic failure may become hypernatremic and hypokalemic. This observation may be explained by the finding that circulating levels of aldosterone in the serum of some of these patients are quite high (Sunheimer et al, 1994). Perhaps failure of the liver to clear aldosterone from the circulation results in the observed high levels of this hormone.

Diagnostic laboratory findings for fulminant hepatic failure include rapid increases in serum levels of the aminotransferases to markedly

http://basicbook.net

elevated levels, such that AST, which can reach levels greater than 20,000 IU/L, may be at least 1.5 times greater in value than ALT because of acute release of mitochondrial AST, as discussed previously. Although these enzymes rise in value, the total protein and albumin become markedly depressed. Overall, this pattern resembles hepatitis and end-stage cirrhosis combined, except that usually in acute hepatitis, save alcoholic hepatitis, AST and ALT rise in a ratio of about 1:1, or in a ratio that favors ALT. Shortly after these patterns occur, serum ammonia increases rapidly, leading to encephalopathy. LD, alkaline phosphatase, and bilirubin all increase markedly. All of the changes described previously occur over a period of about 1 week. After another week, the serum AST and ALT return to low, sometimes undetectable, levels. This finding signifies complete destruction of all viable liver tissue (Sunheimer et al, 1994).

Patients whose AST and ALT undergo the stereotypic changes described should be observed closely for fulminant hepatic failure, especially if there is any indication of encephalopathy. Although supportive therapy can sometimes result in restoration of normal liver function, for most patients in fulminant hepatic failure, the only ultimate cure is liver transplantation. The MELD score has been shown to have prognostic value in patients with hepatic failure, in particular those with alcoholic hepatitis, and serves as a predictor of patient survival among liver transplant candidates (Dunn et al, 2005; Srikureja et al, 2005).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Farnsworth N, Fagan SP, Berger DH, et al: Child-Turcotte-Pugh versus MELD score as a predictor of outcome after elective and emergent surgery in cirrhotic patients, *Am J Surg* 188:580–583, 2004.

This is an excellent survey of the efficacy of different predictive methods for patients with cirrhosis.

Gottesman MM, Ambudkar SV: Overview: ABC transporters and human disease, *J Bioenerg Biomembr* 33:453–458, 2001.

This is a succinct discussion of the family of transporter proteins that share homology within the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) region and contain transmembrane domains involved in recognition of substrates, which are transported across, into, and out of cell membranes, including the bilirubin glucuronides that are secreted by an ABC protein in the canaliculi.

Kim DY, Ahn SH, Han K-H: Emerging therapies for hepatitis C, *Gut and Liver* 8(5):471–479, 2014. doi: 10.5009/gnl14083.

This is an important summary of the issues concerning standardized international units for assays for hepatitis C.

Shiffman ML, Ferreira-Gonzalez A, Reddy KR, et al: Comparison of three commercially available assays for HCV RNA using the international unit standard: Implications for management of patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection in clinical practice, *Am J Gastroenterol* 98:1159–1166, 2003.

This is an important review of the treatment therapies for hepatitis C.

Sunheimer R, Capaldo G, Kashanian F, et al: Serum analyte pattern characteristic of fulminant hepatic failure, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 24:101–109, 1994.

This describes the major pathophysiologic aspects of fulminant hepatic failure and gives a summary of liver function profiles in different liver disease states.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Afdhal NH, Nunes D: Evaluation of liver fibrosis: A concise review, *Am J Gastroenterol* 99:1160–1174, 2004.

Aldenhovel HG: The influence of long-term anticonvulsant therapy with diphenylhydantoin and carbamazepine on serum gamma-glutamyltransferase, aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase and alkaline phosphatase, *Eur Arch Psychiatry Neurol Sci* 237:312–316, 1988.

Alter HJ: New kit on the block: Evaluation of second-generation assays for detection of antibody to the hepatitis C virus, *Hepatology* 15:350–353, 1992.

Alter MJ, Kruszon-Moran D, Nainan OV, et al: The prevalence of hepatitis C virus infection in the United States, 1988 through 1994, *N Engl J Med* 341:556–562, 1999.

Alter MJ, Margolis HS, Krawczynski K, et al: The natural history of community acquired hepatitis C in the United States. The Sentinel Counties Chronic non-A, non-B Hepatitis Study Team, *N Engl J Med* 327:1899–1905, 1992.

Aoki SK, Finegold D, Kuramoto IK, et al: Significance of antibody to hepatitis B core antigen in blood donors as determined by their serologic response to hepatitis B vaccine, *Transfusion* 33:362–367, 1993.

Aoyagi K, Iida K, Matsunaga Y, et al: Performance of a conventional enzyme immunoassay for hepatitis C virus core antigen in the early phases of hepatitis C infection, *Clin Lab* 47:119–127, 2001.

Arvan D, Shirey TL: Conjugated bilirubin: A better indicator of impaired hepatobiliary excretion than direct bilirubin, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 15:252–259, 1985.

Bambha K, Kamath PS Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD). UpToDate on-line publication. Literature Review through November, 2014.

Barrera JM, Francis B, Ercilla G, et al: Improved detection of anti-HCV in post-transfusion hepatitis by a third-generation ELISA, *Vox Sang* 68:15–18, 1995.

Batshaw ML: Inborn errors of urea synthesis, *Ann Neurol* 35:133–141, 1994.

Beck J, Nassal M: Hepatitis B virus replication, *World J Gastroenterol* 13:48–64, 2007.

Bedossa P, Poynard T, The METAVIR Cooperative Study Group: An algorithm for the grading of activity in chronic hepatitis C, *Hepatology* 24:289–293, 1996.

Beld M, Penning M, van Putten M, et al: Quantitative antibody responses to structural (core) and nonstructural (NS3, NS4, and NS5) hepatitis C virus proteins among seroconverting injecting drug users: Impact of epitope variation and relationship to detection of HCV RNA in blood, *Hepatology* 29:1288–1298, 1999.

Belfrage P, Berg B, Hagerstrand I, et al: Alterations of lipid metabolism in healthy volunteers during long-term ethanol intake, *Eur J Clin Invest* 7:127–131, 1977.

Bellentani S, Tabarroni G, Barchi T, et al: Effect of ursodeoxycholic acid treatment on alanine aminotransferase and gamma-glutamyltranspeptidase serum levels in patients with hypertransaminasemia: Results from a double-blind controlled trial, *J Hepatol* 8:7–12, 1989.

Berg PA, Klein R, Lindenborn-Fotinos JL: Antimitochondrial antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis, *J Hepatol* 2:123–131, 1986.

Berk PD, Noyer C: Clinical chemistry and physiology of bilirubin, *Semin Liver Dis* 14:346–351, 1994a.

Berk PD, Noyer C: Structure, formation, and sources of bilirubin and its transport in plasma, *Semin Liver Dis* 14:325–330, 1994b.

Berk PD, Noyer C: The familial unconjugated hyperbilirubinemias, *Semin Liver Dis* 14:356–385, 1994c.

Berk PD, Noyer C: The familial conjugated hyperbilirubinemias, *Semin Liver Dis* 14:386–394, 1994d.

Berlin NI, Berk PD: Quantitative aspects of bilirubin metabolism for hematologists, *Blood* 57:983–999, 1981.

Berman DH, Leventhal RI, Gavaler JS, et al: Clinical differentiation of fulminant Wilsonian hepatitis from other causes of hepatic failure, *Gastroenterology* 100:1129–1134, 1991.

Binder LD, Kupka T: Failure of prediction of liver function test abnormalities with the urine urobilinogen and urine bilirubin assays, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 113:73–76, 1989.

Bloomer JR, Berk PD, Vergalla J, et al: Influence of albumin on the extravascular distribution of unconjugated bilirubin, *Clin Sci Mol Med* 45:517–526, 1973.

Bosma PJ, Chowdhury JR, Bakker C, et al: The genetic basis of the reduced expression of bilirubin UDP-glucuronosyltransferase 1 in Gilbert's syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 333:1171–1175, 1995.

Bredaki FE, Poon LC, Birdir C, et al: First-trimester screening for neural tube defects using alpha-fetoprotein, *Fetal Diagn Ther* 31:109–114, 2012.

Brillanti S, Masci C, Miglioli M, et al: Serum IgM antibodies to hepatitis C virus in acute and chronic hepatitis C, *Arch Virol Suppl* 8:213–218, 1993.

Brown EA, Stapleton JT: Hepatitis A virus. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 8, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press, pp 1452–1463.

Bull PC, Thomas GR, Rommens JM, et al: The Wilson disease gene is a putative copper transporting P-type ATP-ase similar to the Menkes gene, *Nat Genet* 5:327–337, 1993.

Butterworth RF, Giguere JF, Michaud J, et al: Ammonia: Key factor in the pathogenesis of hepatic encephalopathy, *Neurochem Pathol* 6:1–12, 1987.

Cabrerizo M, Bartolome J, De Sequera P, et al: Hepatitis B virus DNA in serum and blood cells of hepatitis B surface antigen-negative hemodialysis patients and staff, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 8:1443–1447, 1997.

Cacciola I, Pollicino T, Squadrito G, et al: Occult hepatitis B virus infection in patients with chronic hepatitis C liver disease, *N Engl J Med* 341:22–26, 1999.

Carey MC, Cahalane MJ, et al: Enterohepatic circulation. In Arias IM, Jakoby WB, Popper H, editors: *The liver: Biology and pathobiology*, 2nd ed, New York, 1988, Raven Press, pp 573–616.

Carlson H, Zhang AS, Fleming WH, et al: The hereditary hemochromatosis protein, HFE, lowers intracellular iron levels independently of transferrin receptor 1 in TRVb cells, *Blood* 105:2564–2570, 2005.

Carmel R, Wong ET, Weiner JM, et al: Racial differences in serum total bilirubin levels in health and in disease (pernicious anemia), *JAMA* 253:3416–3418, 1985.

Chan SL, Mo FK, Johnson PJ, et al: New utility of an old marker: Serial alpha-fetoprotein measurement in predicting radiologic response and survival of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma undergoing systemic chemotherapy, *J Clin Oncol* 27:446–452, 2009.

Chapman RW: The enigma of anti-neutrophil antibodies in ulcerative colitis primary sclerosing cholangitis: Important genetic marker or epiphenomenon, *Hepatology* 21:1473–1474, 2005.

Chapman RW, Cottone M, Selby WS, et al: Serum autoantibodies, ulcerative colitis and primary sclerosing cholangitis, *Gut* 27:86–91, 1986.

Chappell S, Guetta-Baranes T, Batowski K, et al: Haplotypes of the alpha-1 antitrypsin gene in healthy controls and Z deficiency patients, *Hum Mutat* 24:535–536, 2004.

Cholongitas E, Papatheodoridis GV, Vangeli M, et al: Systematic review: The model for end-stage liver disease—Should it replace Child-Pugh's classification for assessing prognosis in cirrhosis?, *Alimentary Pharm Ther* 22:1079–1089, 2005.

Chowdhury JR, Wolkoff AW, Arias IM: Heme and bile pigment metabolism. In Arias IM, Jakoby WB, Popper H, et al, editors: *The liver: Biology and pathobiology*, ed 2, New York, 1988, Raven Press, pp 419–449.

Collins D, Goold MF, Rosalki SB, et al: Plasma intestinal alkaline phosphatase and intermediate molecular mass gamma glutamyltransferase activities in the differential diagnosis of jaundice, *J Clin Pathol* 40:1252–1255, 1987.

Coppel RL, McNeilage LJ, Surh CD, et al: Primary structure of the human M2 mitochondrial autoantigen of primary biliary cirrhosis: Dihydrolipoamide acetyl transferase, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 85:7317–7321, 1988.

Crawford JM, Hauser SC, Gollan JL: Formation, hepatic metabolism, and transport of bile pigments: A status report, *Semin Liver Dis* 8:105–118, 1998a.

Crawford DH, Jazwinska EC, Cullen LM, et al: Expression of HLA-linked hemochromatosis in subjects homozygous or heterozygous for the C282Y mutation, *Gastroenterology* 114:1003–1008, 1998b.

Czaja AJ: Autoimmune hepatitis: Evolving concepts and treatment strategies, *Dig Dis Sci* 40:435–456, 1995.

Czaja AJ, Ming C, Shirai M, et al: Frequency and significance of antibodies to histones in autoimmune hepatitis, *J Hepatol* 23:32–38, 1995.

Czaja AJ, Shiels MT, Taswell HF, et al: Frequency and significance of immunoglobulin M antibody to hepatitis B core antigen in corticosteroid-treated severe chronic active hepatitis B, *Mayo Clin Proc* 63:119–125, 1988.

da Fonseca-Wollheim F: Preanalytical increase of ammonia in blood specimens from healthy subjects, *Clin Chem* 36:1483–1487, 1990.

Davies SM, Szabo E, Wagner JE, et al: Idiopathic hyperammonemia: A frequently lethal complication of bone marrow transplantation, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 17:1119–1125, 1996.

de Tayrac M, Roth M, Jouanolle A, et al: Genome-wide association study identifies TF as a significant modifier gene of iron metabolism in HFE hemochromatosis, *J Hepatol* 2014. doi: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.10.017. Oct 18. pii: S0168-8278(14)00778-8, [Epub ahead of print].

Dickson ER, Grambsch PM, Fleming TR, et al: Prognosis in primary biliary cirrhosis: Model for decision making, *Hepatology* 10:1–7, 1989.

Doumas BT, Wu TW: The measurement of bilirubin fractions in serum, *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci* 28:415–445, 1991.

Doumas BT, Wu TW, Jendrzejczak B: Delta bilirubin: Absorption spectra, molar absorptivity, and reactivity in the diazo reaction, *Clin Chem* 33:769–774, 1987.

Dufour DR: Effects of habitual exercise on routine laboratory tests, *Clin Chem* 44:A136, 1998a.

Dufour DR: Gender-related differences in liver function and integrity tests, *Clin Chem* 44:A137, 1998b.

Dufour JF, Kaplan MM: Muddying the water: Wilson's disease challenges will not soon disappear, *Gastroenterology* 113:348–350, 1997.

Dufour DR, Teot L: Laboratory identification of ischemic hepatitis (shock liver), *Clin Chem* 34:A1287, 1988.

Dunn W, Jamil SH, Brown LS, et al: MELD accurately predicts mortality in patients with alcoholic hepatitis, *Hepatology* 42:353–358, 2005.

Erker JC, Desai SM, Schlauder GG, et al: A hepatitis E virus variant from the United States: Molecular characterization and transmission in *Cynomolgus macaques*, *J Gen Virol* 80:681–690, 1999.

Feder JN, Gnirke A, Thomas W, et al: A novel MHC class I-like gene is mutated in patients with hereditary haemochromatosis, *Nat Genet* 13:399–408, 1996.

Fevery J, Blanckaert N: What can we learn from analysis of serum bilirubin?, *J Hepatol* 2:113–121, 1986.

Forns X, Ampurdance S, Llovet JM, et al: Identification of chronic hepatitis C patients without hepatic fibrosis by a simple predictive model, *Hepatology* 36:986–992, 2002.

Fuchs S, Bogomolski-Yahalom V, Paltiel O, et al: Ischemic hepatitis: Clinical and laboratory observations of 34 patients, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 26:183–186, 1998.

Fujiwara K, Yokosuka O, Ehata T, et al: Frequent detection of hepatitis A viral RNA in serum during the early convalescent phase of acute hepatitis A, *Hepatology* 26:1634–1639, 1997.

Funk B: Reactive hepatitis A virus IgM antibody tests do not always indicate acute disease: A review of 10 case reports, *State of Alaska Epidemiology Bulletin* 3:1, 2005.

Fussey SP, Guest JR, James OFW, et al: Identification and analysis of the major M2 autoantigens in primary biliary cirrhosis, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 85:8654–8658, 1988.

Gane EJ, Stedman CA, Hyland RH, et al: Nucleotide polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir plus ribavirin for hepatitis C, *N Engl J Med* 368(1):34–44, 2013. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1208953.

Gao P, Lim M, Tian QB, et al: Diagnostic performance of des-γ-carboxy prothrombin (DCP) for hepatocellular carcinoma: A bivariate meta-analysis, *Neoplasma* 201:150–159, 2012.

Guu TS, Liu Z, Ye Q, et al: Structure of the hepatitis E virus-like particle suggests mechanisms for virus assembly and receptor binding, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 106:12992–12997, 2009.

Halfon P, Munteanu M, Poynard T: FibroTest-ActiTest as a non-invasive marker of liver fibrosis, *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 32:22–39, 2008.

Hayashi PH, Beames MP, Kuhns MC, et al: Use of quantitative assays for hepatitis B e antigen and IgM antibody to hepatitis B core antigen to monitor therapy in chronic hepatitis B, *Am J Gastroenterol* 91:2323–2328, 1996.

Heubi JE, Daugherty CC, Partin JC, et al: Grade 1 Reye's syndrome—Outcome and predictors of progression to deeper coma grades, *N Engl J Med* 311:1539–1542, 1984.

http://basicbook.net

Hirschfield GM, Liu X, Xu C, et al: Primary biliary cirrhosis associated with HLA, IL12A and IL12B variants, *N Engl J Med* 360:2544–2555, 2009.

Hoofnagle JH: Hepatitis C: The clinical spectrum of disease, *Hepatology* 26(3 Suppl 1):15S–20S, 1997.

Horvat RT, Tegtmeier GE: Hepatitis B and D viruses. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 8, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press, pp 1480–1494.

Howanitz JH, Howanitz PJ, Skrodzki CA, et al: Influences of specimen processing and storage conditions on results for plasma ammonia, *Clin Chem* 30:906–908, 1984.

Huizenga JR, Tangerman A, Gips CH: Determination of ammonia in biological fluids, *Ann Clin Biochem* 31:529–543, 1994.

Hurie MB, Mast EE, Davis JP: Horizontal transmission of hepatitis B virus infection to United States-born children of Hmong refugees, *Pediatrics* 1992. From: http://www-ncbi-nlm-nih-gov.ezproxy2.library.drexel.edu/pubmed/1734395. Retrieved November 16, 2014.

Ihara H, Nakamura H, Aoki Y, et al: Effects of serum-isolated vs. synthetic bilirubin-albumin complexes on dye-binding methods for estimating serum albumin, *Clin Chem* 31:1269–1272, 1991.

Ihara H, Shino Y, Hashizume N, et al: Effect of light on total and direct bilirubin by an enzymatic bilirubin oxidase method, *J Anal Biol Sci* 20:349–354, 1997.

Johnson PJ, McFarlane IG, Alvarez F, et al: Meeting report: International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group, *Hepatology* 18:998–1005, 1993.

Johnston M, Harrison L, Moffatt K, et al: Reliability of the international normalized ratio for monitoring the induction phase of warfarin: Comparison with the prothrombin time ratio, *J Lab Clin Med* 128:214–217, 1996.

Jones EA, Bergasa NV: The pruritus of cholestasis, *Hepatology* 29:1003–1006, 1999.

Kamili S, Drobeniuc J, Araujo AC, et al: Laboratory diagnostics for hepatitis C virus infection, *Clin Infect Dis* 55:S43–S48, 2012.

Kaplan MM, Gandolfo JV, Quaroni EG: An enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for detecting antimitochondrial antibody, *Hepatology* 4:727–730, 1984.

Kay A, Zoulim F: Hepatitis B virus genetic variability and evolution, *Virus Res* 127:164–176, 2007.

Kelly DA, Summerfield JA: Hemostasis in liver disease, *Semin Liver Dis* 7:182–191, 1987.

Kelly DA, Tuddenham EGD: Hemostatic problems in liver disease, *Gut* 27:339–349, 1986.

Kim NK, Yasmineh WG, Freier EF, et al: Value of alkaline phosphatase, 5′nucleotidase, gamma-glutamyltransferase, and glutamate dehydrogenase activity measurements (single and combined) in serum in diagnosis of metastasis to the liver, *Clin Chem* 23:2034–2038, 1977.

Koff RS: Seroepidemiology of hepatitis A in the United States, *J Infect Dis* 171(Suppl 1):S19–S23, 1995.

Kovacs MJ, Wong A, MacKinnon K, et al: Assessment of the validity of the INR system for patients with liver impairment, *Thromb Haemost* 71:727–730, 1994.

Kowdley KV, Lawitz E, Poordad F, et al: Phase 2b trial of interferon-free therapy for hepatitis C virus genotype 1, *N Engl J Med* 370(3):222–232, 2014. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1306227.

Kozaki N, Shimizu S, Higashijima H, et al: Significance of serum delta-bilirubin in patients with obstructive jaundice, *J Surg Res* 79:61–65, 1998.

Kraemer D, Scheurlen M: Gilbert disease and Type I and II Crigler-Najjar syndrome due to mutations in the same UGT1A1 gene locus, *Med Klin (German)* 15:528–532, 2002.

Krajden M, Shivji R, Gunadasa K, et al: Evaluation of the core antigen assay as a second-line supplemental test for diagnosis of active hepatitis C virus infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:4054–4059, 2004.

Krams SM, Surh CD, Coppel RL, et al: Immunization of experimental animals with dihydrolipoamide acetyltransferase, as a purified recombinant polypeptide, generates mitochondrial antibodies but not primary biliary cirrhosis, *Hepatology* 9:411–416, 1989.

Kramvis A, Kew M, François G: Hepatitis B virus genotypes, *Vaccine* 23:2409–2423, 2007.

Kuniholm MH, Nelson KE: Of organ meats and hepatitis E virus: One part of a larger puzzle is solved, *J Infect Dis* 198:1727–1728, 2008.

Langner C, Denk H: Wilson disease, *Virchows Arch* 445:111–118, 2004.

LaPerche S, Courouce AM, Lemaire JM, et al: GB virus type C/hepatitis G virus infection in French blood donors with anti-NS5 isolated reactivities by recombinant immunoblot assay for hepatitis C virus, *Transfusion* 39:790–791, 1999.

Laskus T, Radkowski M, Wang LF, et al: Lack of evidence for hepatitis G virus replication in the livers of patients coinfected with hepatitis C and G viruses, *J Virol* 71:7804–7806, 1997.

Lau JY, Mizokami M, Kolberg JA, et al: Application of six hepatitis C virus genotyping systems to sera from chronic hepatitis C patients in the United States, *J Infect Dis* 171:281–289, 1995.

Lauff JJ, Kasper ME, Wu TW, et al: Isolation and preliminary characterization of a fraction of bilirubin that is firmly bound to protein, *Clin Chem* 28:629–637, 1982.

Lednar WM, Lemon SM, Kirkpatrick JW, et al: Frequency of illness associated with epidemic hepatitis A virus infections in adults, *Am J Epidemiol* 122:226–233, 1985.

Lewis M, Howdle PD: The neurology of liver failure, *Q J Med* 96:623–633, 2003.

Li M, McDermott R: Obesity, albuminuria, and gamma-glutamyl transferase predict incidence of hypertension in indigenous Australians in rural and remote communities in northern Australia, *J Hypertens* 2014. [Epub ahead of print].

Lindenbach B, Rice C: Unravelling hepatitis C virus replication from genome to function, *Nature* 436:933–938, 2005.

Liu JP, Nikolova D, Fei Y: Immunoglobulins for preventing hepatitis A, *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* (2):CD004181, 2009.

Lo DH, Wu TW: Assessment of the fundamental accuracy of the Jendrassik-Grof total and direct bilirubin assays, *Clin Chem* 29:31–36, 1983.

London WT, Evans AA: The epidemiology of hepatitis viruses B, C, and D, *Clin Lab Med* 16:251–271, 1996.

Lotfy M, El-Kady IM, Nasif WA, et al: Distinct serum immunoglob pattern in Egyptian patients with chronic HCV infection analyzed by nephelometry, *J Immunoassay Immunochem* 27:103–114, 2006.

Lunel F, Cresta P, Vitour D, et al: Comparative evaluation of hepatitis C virus RNA quantitation by branched DNA, NASBA, and monitor assays, *Hepatology* 29:528–535, 1999.

Manns M, Gerken G, Kyriatsoulis A, et al: Two different subtypes of antimitochondrial antibodies are associated with primary biliary cirrhosis: Identification and characterization by radioimmunoassay and immunoblotting, *Hepatology* 7:893–899, 1987.

Martínez A, Broner S, Sala MR, et al: Changes in the epidemiology of hepatitis A outbreaks 13 years after the introduction of a mass vaccination program, *Hum Vaccin Immunother* e35861, 2014. [Epub ahead of print].

Maruo Y, Addario C, Mori A, et al: Two linked polymorphic mutations [A(TA) 7TAA and T3279G] of UGT1A1 as the principal cause of Gilbert syndrome, *Hum Genet* 115:525–526, 2004.

Mast EE, Alter MJ, Holland PV, et al: Evaluation of assays for antibody to hepatitis E virus by a serum panel. Hepatitis E Virus Antibody Serum Panel Evaluation Group, *Hepatology* 27:857–861, 1998.

Matsumoto A, Yeo AE, Shih JW, et al: Transfusion-associated TT virus infection and its relationship to liver disease, *Hepatology* 30:283–288, 1999.

McDonagh AF, Palma LA, Lauff JJ, et al: Origin of mammalian biliprotein and rearrangement of bilirubin glucuronides in vivo in the rat, *J Clin Invest* 74:763–770, 1984.

McHutchison JG, Gordon SC, Schiff ER, et al: Interferon alfa-2b or in combination with ribavirin as initial treatment for chronic hepatitis C. Hepatitis Interventional Therapy Group, *N Engl J Med* 339:1485–1492, 1998.

McHutchison JG, Poynard T, Gordon SC, et al: The impact of race on response to anti-viral therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis C, *Hepatology* 30:A302, 1999.

McMahon BJ, Alward WL, Hall DB, et al: Acute hepatitis B virus infection: Relation of age to the clinical expression of disease and subsequent development of the carrier state, *J Infect Dis* 151:599–603, 1985.

METAVIR Cooperative Group, Bedossa P: Intraobserver and interobserver variations in liver biopsy interpretation in patients with chronic hepatitis C (French), *Hepatology* 20:15–20, 1994.

Moss DW: Physicochemical and pathophysiological factors in the release of membrane-bound alkaline phosphatase from cells, *Clin Chim Acta* 257:133–140, 1997.

Moussavian SN, Becker RC, Piepmeyer JL, et al: Serum gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase and chronic alcoholism: Influence of alcohol ingestion and liver disease, *Dig Dis Sci* 30:211–214, 1985.

Moy L, Levine J: Autoimmune hepatitis: A classic autoimmune liver disease, *Curr Probl Pediatr Adolesc Health Care* 44:341–346, 2014.

Mulder AH, Horst G, Haagsma EB, et al: Prevalence and characterization of neutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies in autoimmune liver diseases, *Hepatology* 17:411–417, 1993.

Mun BS, Ahn HS, Ahn DS, et al: The correlation of Child-Pugh score, PGA index and MELD score in the patient with liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma according to the cause of alcohol and hepatitis B virus, *Korean J Hepatol* 9:107–115, 2003.

Nagaoka S, Yatsuhashi H, Hamada H, et al: The des-gamma-carboxy prothrombin index is a new prognostic indicator for hepatocellular carcinoma, *Cancer* 98:2671–2677, 2003.

Nalpas B, Vassault A, Charpin S, et al: Serum mitochondrial aspartate aminotransferase as a marker of chronic alcoholism: diagnostic value and interpretation in a liver unit, *Hepatology* 6:608–614, 1986.

Naveau S, Gaude G, Asnacios A, et al: Diagnostic and prognostic values of non-invasive biomarkers of fibrosis in patients with alcoholic liver disease, *Hepatology* 49:97–100, 2009.

Nguyen TT, Sedghi-Vaziri A, Wilkes LB, et al: Fluctuations in viral load (HCV RNA) are relatively insignificant in untreated patients with chronic HCV infection, *J Viral Hepat* 3:75–78, 1996.

Nista EC, Fini L, Armuzzi A, et al: 13C-breath tests in the study of microsomal liver function, *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 8:33–46, 2004.

Notter D, et al: Bilirubin. In Siest G, Schiele F, Henny J, editors: *Interpretation of clinical laboratory tests*, Foster City, Calif., 1985, Biomedical Publications.

Nyblom H, Berggren U, Balldin J, et al: High AST/ALT ratio may indicate advanced alcoholic liver disease rather than heavy drinking, *Alcohol* 39:336–339, 2004.

Okamura Y, Ashida R, Ito T, et al: The tumor marker score is an independent predictor of survival in patients with recurrent hepatocellular carcinoma, *Surg Today* 2014. [Epub ahead of print].

Onishi S, Isobe K, Itoh S, et al: Metabolism of bilirubin and its photoisomers in newborn infants during phototherapy, *J Biochem (Tokyo)* 100:789–795, 1986.

Palmer M, Schaffner F: Effect of weight reduction on hepatic abnormalities in overweight patients, *Gastroenterology* 99:1408–1413, 1990.

Panteghini M: Aspartate aminotransferase isoenzymes, *Clin Biochem* 23:311–319, 1990.

Parkes J, Guha IN, Roderick P, et al: Performance of serum marker panels for liver fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C, *J Hepatol* 44:462–474, 2006.

Paulusma CC, Kool M, Bosma PJ, et al: A mutation in the human canalicular multispecific organic anion transporter gene causes the Dubin-Johnson syndrome, *Hepatology* 25:1539–1542, 1997.

Pawlotsky JM, Lonjon I, Hezode C, et al: What strategy should be used for diagnosis of hepatitis C virus infection in clinical laboratories?, *Hepatology* 27:1700–1702, 1998.

Persico P, Persico E, Bakker C, et al: Hyperbilirubinemia in subjects with Gilbert syndrome (GS) mutations is determined by the rate of hepatic uptake of organic anions, *Hepatology* 30:A501, 1999.

Pincus JH, Cohan JL, Glaser GH: Neurologic complications of internal disease. In Baker AB, Baker LH, editors: *Clinical neurology*, New York, 1991, Harper and Row, pp 10–13.

Poordad F, Lawitz E, Kowdley KV, et al: Exploratory study of oral combination antiviral therapy for hepatitis C, *N Engl J Med* 368(1):45–53, 2013. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1208809.

Poordad F, McCone J, Bacon BR, et al: Boceprevir for untreated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection, *N Engl J Med* 364(13):1195–1206, 2011. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa1010494.

http://basicbook.net

Poynard T, Aubert A, Bedossa P, et al: A simple biological index for detection of alcoholic liver disease in drinkers, *Gastroenterology* 100:1397–1402, 1991.

Poynard T, Marcellin P, Lee SS, et al: Randomised trial of interferon alpha2b plus ribavirin for 48 weeks or for 24 weeks versus interferon alpha2b plus placebo for 48 weeks for treatment of chronic infection with hepatitis C virus. International Hepatitis Interventional Therapy Group (IHIT), *Lancet* 352:1426–1432, 1998.

Poynard T, Munteanu M, Imbert-Bismut F, et al: Prospective analysis of discordant results between biochemical markers and biopsy in patients with chronic hepatitis C, *Clin Chem* 50:1344–1355, 2004.

Poynard T, Vergniol J, Ngo Y, et al: Staging chronic hepatitis C in seven categories using fibrosis biomarker (FibroTest™) and transient elastography (FibroScan®), *J Hepatol* 60:706–714, 2014. [Editor: Year mismatch].

Prince AM, White T, Pollock N, et al: Epidemiology of hepatitis B infection in Liberian infants, *Infect Immun* 32(2):675–680, 1981.

Propst T, Propst A, Dietze O, et al: Alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency and liver disease, *Dig Dis* 12:139–149, 1994.

Qiu N, Li R, Yu JG, et al: Comparison of Abbott and Da-an real-time PCR for quantitating serum HBV DNA, *World J Gastroenterol* 20:11762–11769, 2014.

Rajpert-De Meyts E, Heisterkamp N, Groffen J: Cloning and nucleotide sequence of human gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 85:8840–8844, 1988.

Ravaggi A, Biasin MR, Infantolino D, et al: Comparison of competitive and non-competitive reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) for the quantification of hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA, *J Virol Methods* 65:123–129, 1997.

Reddy KR, Hoofnagle JH, Tong MJ, et al: Racial differences in response to therapy with interferon in chronic hepatitis C. Consensus Interferon Study Group, *Hepatology* 30:787–793, 1999.

Reverter E, Tandon P, Augustin S, et al: A MELD-based model to determine risk of mortality among patients with acute variceal bleeding, *Gastroenterology* 146:412–419, 2014.

Robert A, Chazouilleres O: Prothrombin time in liver failure: Time, ratio, activity percentage, or international normalized ratio?, *Hepatology* 24:1392–1394, 1996.

Roozendaal C, Van Milligen de Wit AW, Haagsma EB, et al: Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies in primary sclerosing cholangitis: Defined specificities may be associated with distinct clinical features, *Am J Med* 105:393–399, 1998.

Rosenthal-Allieri MA, Peritore ML, Tran A, et al: Analytical variability of the Fibrotest proteins, *Clin Biochem* 38:473–478, 2005.

Rosenthal P, Pincus MR, Fink D: Sex and age-related differences of bilirubin in serum, *Clin Chem* 30:1380–1382, 1984.

Rossi E, Adams L, Prins A, et al: Validation of the FibroTest biochemical markers score in assessing liver fibrosis in hepatitis C patients, *Clin Chem* 49:450–454, 2003.

Rost D, Rudolph G, Kloeters-Plachky P, et al: Effect of high-dose ursodeoxycholic acid on its biliary enrichment in primary sclerosing cholangitis, *Hepatology* 40:693–698, 2004.

Saldanha J, Lelie N, Heath A: Establishment of the first international standard for nucleic acid amplification technology (NAT) assays for HCV RNA. WHO Collaborative Study Group, *Vox Sang* 76:149–158, 1999.

Schlaeger R, Haux P, Kattermann R: Studies on the mechanism of the increase in serum alkaline phosphatase activity in cholestasis: Significance of the hepatic bile acid concentration for the leakage of alkaline phosphatase from rat liver, *Enzyme* 28:3–13, 1982.

Schlauder GC, Dawson GJ: Hepatitis E virus. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 8, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press, pp 1495–1511.

Seeff LB, Beebe GW, Hoofnagle JH, et al: A serologic follow-up of the 1942 epidemic of post-vaccination hepatitis in the United States Army, *N Engl J Med* 316:965–970, 1987.

Seeff LB, the NHLBI Study Group: Mortality and morbidity of transfusion-associated non-A, non-B hepatitis and type C hepatitis: An NHLBI multi-center study, *Hepatology* 20:A204, 1994.

Selimovic D, El-Khattouti Haikel Y, Abdelkader O, et al: Hepatitis C virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma: An insight into molecular mechanisms and therapeutic strategies, *World J Hepatol* 4:342–355, 2012.

Shawcross DL, Shabir SS, Taylor NJ, et al: Ammonia and the neutrophil in the pathogenesis of hepatic encephalopathy in cirrhosis, *Hepatology* 51:1–8, 2010.

Shepard RL, Kraus SE, Babayan RK: Sirosky MB. The role of ammonia toxicity in the post transurethral prostatectomy syndrome, *Br J Urol* 60:349–351, 1987.

Sheth SG, Flamm SL, Gordon FD, et al: AST/ALT ratio predicts cirrhosis in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection, *Am J Gastroenterol* 93:44–48, 1998.

Shuhart MC, Gretch DR: Hepatitis C and G viruses. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 8, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press, pp 1480–1494.

Singer AJ, Carracio TR, Mofenson HC: The temporal profile of increased transaminase levels in patients with acetaminophen-induced liver dysfunction, *Ann Emerg Med* 26:49–53, 1995.

Skinhoj P, Mikkelsen F, Hollinger FB: Hepatitis A in Greenland: Importance of specific antibody testing in epidemiologic surveillance, *Am J Epidemiol* 105:140–147, 1977.

Srikureja W, Kyulo NL, Runyon BA, et al: MELD score is a better prognostic model than Child-Turcotte-Pugh score or discriminant function score in patients with alcoholic hepatitis, *J Hepatol* 42:700–706, 2005.

Stahl J: Studies of the blood ammonia in liver disease: Its diagnostic, prognostic, and therapeutic significance, *Ann Intern Med* 58:1–24, 1963.

Stinton LM, Bentow C, Mahler M, et al: PR3-ANCA: A promising biomarker in primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC), *PLoS ONE* 9:1–8, 2014.

Sveger T: The natural history of liver disease in alpha-1-antitrypsin deficient children, *Acta Paediatr Scand* 77:847–851, 1988.

Taylor JM: Hepatitis delta virus, *Virology* 344:71–76, 2006.

Teare JP, Sherman D, Greenfield SM, et al: Comparison of serum procollagen III peptide concentrations and PGA index for assessment of hepatic fibrosis, *Lancet* 342:895–898, 1993.

Teckman JH, An JK, Blomenkamp K, et al: Mitochondrial autophagy and injury in the liver in alpha 1-antitrypsin deficiency, *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 286:G851–G862, 2004.

Tervaert JWC, van Hoek B, Koek G: Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies in small-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis, *Gastroenterology* 136:364, 2009.

Thabut D, Simon M, Myers RP, et al: Noninvasive prediction of fibrosis in patients with chronic hepatitis C, *Hepatology* 37:1220–1221, 2003.

Totos G, Gizaris V, Papaevangelou G: Hepatitis A vaccine: Persistence of antibodies 5 years after the first vaccination, *Vaccine* 15:1252–1253, 1997.

Trotter JF, Brimhall B, Arjal R, et al: Specific laboratory methodologies achieve higher model for endstage liver disease (MELD) scores for patients listed for liver transplantation, *Liver Transpl* 10:995–1000, 2004.

Ts'ao C, Swedlund J, Neofotistos D: Implications of use of low international sensitivity index thromboplastins in prothrombin time testing, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 118:1183–1187, 1994.

Tsujii H, Konig J, Rost D, et al: Exon-intron organization of the human multidrug-resistance protein 2 (MRP2) gene mutated in Dubin–Johnson syndrome, *Gastroenterology* 117:653–660, 1999.

Turchin A, Wiebe DA, Seely EW, et al: Severe hypercholesterolemia mediated by lipoprotein X in patients with chronic graft-versus-host disease of the liver, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 35:85–89, 2005.

Van de Water L, Carr JM, Aronson D, et al: Analysis of elevated fibrinogen degradation product levels in patients with liver disease, *Blood* 67:1468–1473, 1986.

Van Hootegem P, Fevery J, Blanckaert N: Serum bilirubins in hepatobiliary disease: Comparison with other liver function tests and changes in the post-obstructive period, *Hepatology* 5:112–117, 1985.

Vernelen K, Claeys H, Verhaert AH, et al: Significance of NS3 and NS5 antigens in screening for HCV antibody, *Lancet* 343:853, 1994.

Vierling JM, Berk PD, Hoffman AF, et al: Normal fasting-state levels of serum cholyl-conjugated bile acids in Gilbert's syndrome: An aid to the diagnosis, *Hepatology* 2:340–343, 1982.

Villano SA, Vlahov D, Nelson KE, et al: Persistence of viremia and the importance of long-term follow-up after acute hepatitis C infection, *Hepatology* 29:908–914, 1999.

Viot M, Thyss A, Schneider M, et al: Alpha 1 isoenzyme of alkaline phosphatases: Clinical importance and value for the detection of liver metastases, *Cancer* 52:140–145, 1983.

Vossler DG, Wilensky AJ, Cawthon DF, et al: Serum and CSF glutamine levels in valproate-related hyperammonemic encephalopathy, *Epilepsia* 43:54–59, 2002.

Watanabe T, Yamada H, Morimura Y, et al: Ovarian Sertoli-Leydig cell tumor with heterologous gastrointestinal epithelium as a source of alpha-fetoprotein: A case report, *J Obstet Gynaecol Res* 34:418–421, 2008.

Webb GJ, Hirschfield GM: Genetics of autoimmune liver disease: A brief summary for clinicians, *Dig Dis* 32(5):e1–e6, 2014. doi: 10.1159/000366174. Epub 2014 Aug 22.

Wen G, Tang Z, Yang F, et al: A valuable antigen detection method for the diagnosis of acute hepatitis E, *J Clin Microbiol* 2014. pii: JCM.01853-14. [Epub ahead of print].

Wenham PR, Horn DB, Smith AF: Multiple forms of gamma-glutamyl-transferase: A clinical study, *Clin Chem* 31:569–573, 1985.

Whitehead TP, Clarke CA, Whitfield AG: Biochemical and haematological markers of alcohol intake, *Lancet* 1:978–981, 1978.

Williams AL, Hoofnagle JH: Ratio of serum aspartate to alanine aminotransferase in chronic hepatitis: Relationship to cirrhosis, *Gastroenterology* 95:734–739, 1988.

Yamaguchi I, Nakamura K, Kitano H, et al: Development of des-gamma-carboxy prothrombin (DCP) measuring reagent using the LiBASys clinical analyzer, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 46:411–416, 2008.

Yotsuyanagi H, Yasuda K, Iino S, et al: Persistent viremia after recovery from self-limited acute hepatitis B, *Hepatology* 27:1377–1382, 1998.

Yuki N, Hayashi N, Moribe T, et al: Relation of disease activity during chronic hepatitis C infection to complexity of hypervariable region 1 quasispecies, *Hepatology* 25:439–444, 1997.

Zhou SL, Gordon RE, Bradbury M, et al: Ethanol up-regulates fatty acid uptake and plasma membrane expression and export of mitochondrial aspartate aminotransferase in Hep G2 cells, *Hepatology* 27:1064–1074, 1998a.

Zhou L, Liu J, Luo F: Serum tumor markers for detection of hepatocellular carcinoma, *World J Gastroenterol* 12:1175–1181, 2006.

Zhou XY, Tomatsu S, Fleming RE, et al: HFE gene knockout produces mouse model of hereditary hemochromatosis, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 95:2492–2497, 1998b.

Zimmerman HJ: Intrahepatic cholestasis, *Arch Intern Med* 139:1038–1045, 1979.

Zucker SD, Horn PS, Sherman KE: Serum bilirubin levels in the U.S. population: Gender effect and inverse correlation with colorectal cancer, *Hepatology* 40:827–835, 2004.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 22

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS OF GASTROINTESTINAL AND PANCREATIC DISORDERS

Haseeb A. Siddiqi, Martin J. Salwen,* Mohammad F. Shaikh, Wilbur B. Bowne*

PANCREATIC DISORDERS, 306
Pancreas in Systemic Disease, 306
Inflammatory Diseases of the Pancreas, 307
GASTROENTEROLOGIC DISORDERS, 310
Peptic Ulceration, 310
Zollinger-Ellison Syndrome, 311
Diarrhea and Malabsorption, 312
Gastrointestinal Tumors, 318
Gastrointestinal Bleeding, 320
Markers for Gastrointestinal and Pancreatic Tumors, 321
STOOL COLLECTION AND EXAMINATION, 321
Collection, 321
Macroscopic Examination, 322
Microscopic Examination, 322
SELECTED REFERENCES, 322

KEY POINTS

- Almost all patients with duodenal ulcers and most with chronic gastritis have demonstrable *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *H. pylori* stool antigen assays and urea breath tests are useful in diagnosis and in monitoring for eradication after treatment.
- Acute pancreatitis presents with abdominal pain and elevated levels of serum amylase or lipase. Reversible causes must be excluded in patients with recurrent episodes of acute pancreatitis. Routine laboratory testing is of limited value in diagnosing chronic pancreatitis.
- Sweat chloride determination is the necessary initial test in the workup for cystic fibrosis. Genetic testing can be used to identify the mutations associated with this disease.
- Patients with chronic diarrhea should be evaluated for fecal blood, fat, leukocytes, and stool pathogens (bacterial culture on routine media, ova, and parasite examination).
- *Clostridium difficile* should be considered a cause of diarrhea in patients on antibiotic therapy or hospitalized for more than 3 days.
- Diagnostic evaluation of a patient suspected of celiac disease should be initiated with anti–tissue transglutaminase immunoglobulin A and total serum immunoglobulin A before placing the patient on a gluten-free diet.
- Primary lactose intolerance is common in adults, and secondary lactose intolerance may occur in infection and in inflammatory bowel disease.
- Positivity of perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody is most often associated with ulcerative colitis and that of anti–*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* antibody with Crohn's disease.
- Endoscopy has replaced gastric acid aspiration for diagnosis. Gastric acid output testing is useful when acid levels are very high or very low.
- Gastrin, the most powerful gastric acid stimulator, varies inversely with gastric acid secretion. Serum gastrin levels are elevated in gastric atrophy, and gastric acid levels are reduced.
- Secretin stimulates gastrin production in patients with a gastrinoma but not in patients with other causes of hypergastrinemia.
- Intraoperative gastrin measurements are useful in identifying whether the abnormal tissue is completely removed in patients undergoing surgery for gastrinomas.
- A fecal occult blood test is used to screen for colon cancer.

Diagnosis of pancreatic and gastrointestinal disease is guided by the patient's history and the significant signs and symptoms. Findings with strong negative predictive values exclude some possible causes and focus the differential diagnosis. Initially, noninvasive procedures are preferentially performed. Patient preparation is as important as correct selection of the diagnostic tests or procedures indicated. Endoscopy, when warranted, can provide direct visualization of the entire gastrointestinal lumen and permits biopsy. Imaging-assisted invasive techniques may be required in the critically ill with gastrointestinal bleeding or obstruction. To ensure interpretable endoscopic results and to avoid false-positive and false-negative results, stringent patient preparation is required. Similarly, testing requires appropriately collected specimens. Emphasis is given in this chapter to frequently used diagnostic tests.

PANCREATIC DISORDERS

PANCREAS IN SYSTEMIC DISEASE

Cystic Fibrosis

Cystic fibrosis (CF) is characterized by abnormally viscous mucous secretions from the various exocrine glands of the body, including the pancreas, salivary glands, and peritracheal, peribronchial, and sweat glands. Involvement of the intestinal glands may result in the presence of meconium ileus at birth. Two thirds of cases are diagnosed before 1 year of age. Chronic lung disease and malabsorption resulting from pancreatic insufficiency are the major clinical problems of those who survive beyond infancy, but intelligence and cognitive functions are unaffected (Cheng et al, 1990).

CF is the most common genetic disorder in Caucasian North Americans. It is an autosomal recessive disease of ion transport affecting the CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene on chromosome 7 that encodes an epithelial chloride channel protein. Heterozygotes have no recognizable clinical symptoms. Homozygotes fully express the syndrome of recurrent pulmonary infection, pancreatic insufficiency, steatorrhea, and malnutrition. CF is due to defective epithelial chloride transport across membranes, which causes abnormally dehydrated tenacious secretions of all exocrine glands. The viscid inspissated mucous plug ducts cause chronic inflammation with atrophy of acini, fibrosis, dilation, and cystic duct changes.

CF is often fatal in childhood, occurring in 1 in 3500 newborns. Advances in treatment have increased the life span of CF patients; if current mortality rates continue, the average female patient will be expected to live until 37 years of age, and the average male patient will live until age 40 (MacKenzie et al, 2014). Ninety percent die from pulmonary complications.

*Corresponding authors. Each author contributed equally to this chapter.

http://basicbook.net

Overall, the prevalence in the United States is 1 in 3900, with the highest ethnic subgroup being Caucasians (1 in 2500), Ashkenazi Jews (1 in 2300) and Native American tribes (1 in 10,900) (Palomaki et al, 2004). The Pueblo tribe in particular has been described as having a similar incidence as Caucasians. It is also frequent in Hispanics but is uncommon in Asians and blacks. More than 25,000 Americans have CF, and almost 1000 new cases are diagnosed each year. The incidence is 1 in 1600 Caucasian births and 1 in 17,000 African American births in the United States.

Approximately 1 in every 20 Caucasians is a carrier of one of the alleles. Nearly 2000 mutations of the CFTR gene have been identified. Available probes can be used to test for 70 mutations that account for over 90% of cases of CF. Genetic testing can identify the mutations associated with CF (Weiss et al, 2005).

The degree of the defect depends on the nature of the mutation. Several characterized mutations lead to a milder form of the disease. The classic δ *F508* mutation leads to CF when two copies of the gene are inherited.

Because of multiple alleles at the cystic fibrosis gene, the demonstration of increased chloride in the sweat is a necessary initial test in the diagnosis of CF. Until 1996, sweat chloride testing was employed most often in response to clinical developments or family history.

More recently, screens for CF have been developed that involve first an immunoassay for immunoreactive trypsinogen (IRT). Trypsinogen is the inactive, proenzyme form of trypsin secreted by pancreatic acinar cells; the active enzyme form is produced by proteolytic cleavage by proteases, including activated trypsin itself, of an N-terminal peptide segment resulting in the active form of this enzyme. There are several forms of trypsinogen, one of which is IRT; there are two forms of proenzyme: a cationic form (IRT1) and an anionic form (IRT2). Both forms have been found to become elevated in a number of different gastrointestinal diseases such as CF, meconium ileus, and diseases of the pancreas, including pancreatic steatorrhea and pancreatic carcinoma. ELISA tests have been developed for each form (Lindau-Sheppard & Pass, 2010), although most antibodies used for the assay recognize both forms.

With the widespread adoption of newborn screening for CF (e.g., IRT, with or without DNA analysis for known CFTR mutations), sweat chloride testing is now typically performed only when an abnormal result for these screens is found (Farrell et al, 2008).

Using the long-established Gibson-Cooke method, pilocarpine is introduced into the skin by iontophoresis to stimulate locally increased sweat gland secretion. The resulting sweat is absorbed by filter paper or gauze and is weighed, diluted with water, and analyzed for sodium and chloride concentrations. Total body sweating in patients with cystic fibrosis is hazardous, and a number of deaths from the procedure have been reported.

When performed properly in duplicate, the sweat test has a sensitivity of 90% to 99%. High rates of incorrect results have been attributed to problems associated with sweat specimen sample collection and test analysis (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards [NCCLS], 2000; LeGrys et al, 2007; Farrell et al, 2008).

More than 99% of children with CF have concentrations of sweat chloride greater than 60 mmol/L. The sweat chloride may not be as dramatically increased in adolescent or adult patients. The test needs to be performed with care (LeGrys et al, 2007).

In children, chloride concentrations greater than 60 mmol/L in sweat on at least two occasions are diagnostic. Levels of between 50 and 60 mmol/L are suggestive in the absence of adrenal insufficiency. Patients in whom CF is suspected on the basis of indeterminate sweat electrolyte results may undergo confirmatory testing following administration of a mineralocorticoid such as fludrocortisone. In those patients with CF, electrolyte values would remain unchanged, whereas normal controls would show a decrease in sweat electrolytes. Sodium concentrations in sweat tend to be slightly lower than those of chloride in patients with CF, but the reverse is true in normal subjects. Sweat chloride concentrations greater than 60 mmol/L may be found in some patients with malnutrition, hyperhidrotic ectodermal dysplasia, nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, renal insufficiency, glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency, hypothyroidism, mucopolysaccharidosis, and fucosidosis. These disorders usually can be easily differentiated from CF by their clinical symptoms. False-negative sweat test results have been seen in patients with CF in the presence of hypoproteinemic edema.

Sweat electrolytes in about half of a group of premenopausal adult women were shown to undergo cyclic fluctuation, reaching a peak chloride concentration most commonly 5 to 10 days before the onset of menses. Peak values were slightly less than 65 mmol/L. Men showed random fluctuations up to 70 mEq/L. For this reason, interpretation of sweat electrolyte values in adults must be approached with caution (Rosenstein & Cutting, 1998; NCCLS, 2000).

Pancreatic abnormalities occur in more than 80% of cases. The clinical manifestations are varied. Islets of Langerhans are usually spared. No cure is available. Persons heterozygous for the *R117H* mutation may develop pancreatic insufficiency as the result of plugging of ducts, causing idiopathic chronic pancreatitis (Durie, 2000).

Hemochromatosis

Excessive body iron accumulation from any source is directly toxic to cells and causes fibrosis. Symptoms include the triad of bronze coloration of the skin, cirrhosis, and diabetes. Humans have no major iron excretory pathway. In this disease, the pancreas is slightly enlarged and deep brown as the result of accumulated hemosiderin, the iron-containing pigment. When untreated, progressive fibrosis of the pancreas with atrophy occurs. Iron is deposited in the acinar and duct cells and in the β cells of the islets. Other cells of the islets appear spared. Similar pigments are noted in the skin. β-cell loss results in bronze diabetes. Hypogonadism with pituitary dysfunction is present in half of cases, and cardiomegaly and osteoarthritis are present in most cases. Cirrhosis is seen in 70% of cases. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) occurs in 30% of cases

Secondary hemochromatosis is typically seen in anemia caused by multiple blood transfusions, hemolytic anemias, or increased oral iron intake, which result in excess iron storage.

Hereditary hemochromatosis (HH) is a human leukocyte antigen (HLA)–linked autosomal recessive defect in duodenal iron absorption regulation. As discussed in Chapters 21 and 23, the *HFE* gene is on the short arm of chromosome 6. In this common genetic disease, the homozygosity frequency is 1 in 220. When HH is diagnosed, other family members should be screened; one-quarter of siblings will test positive (Powell et al, 1996; Bulaj et al, 2000; Beutler et al, 2002). HCC has become a chief cause of death in HH (Barton et al, 1998).

A number of diagnostic strategies exist (Jensen, 2004). Because the liver is the major site of the body's iron storage, liver biopsy remains the gold standard of diagnosis. Given the possibility of complications associated with this invasive procedure, and the potential patient coagulopathy, other screening methods are first performed, with biopsy only employed as a confirmatory measure (Powell, 2002; Jensen, 2004). The screening test consists of transferrin saturation (TS) = serum iron ÷ total iron binding capacity × 100. Results are interpreted as abnormal if greater than 60% in women and greater than 50% in men (Powell, 2002). Other tests, such as serum ferritin, serum ferritin iron, hepcidin, and imaging with MRI are also employed (Jensen, 2004; Konz et al, 2014). In HH, genetic testing for mutations in HFE, transferrin receptors, ferroporitin, and hepcidin can help with diagnosis.

INFLAMMATORY DISEASES OF THE PANCREAS

Pancreatitis is an inflammation of the pancreas caused by injury to acinar cells due to activation of digestive enzymes within the pancreatic parenchyma; it is characterized by significant morbidity and mortality. Clinical manifestations of pancreatitis are highly variable.

Acute Pancreatitis

Acute reversible inflammation is due to enzymatic necrosis. Acute pancreatitis occurs at any age—usually 30 to 70 years—but is rare in children. Its diagnosis is based on the presence of two out of the following three conditions: abdominal pain consistent with acute pancreatitis (typically acute onset, epigastric, with other causes ruled out); serum amylase and/or lipase activity greater than triple the upper limit of the normal reference range; and imaging evidence of acute pancreatitis (Morinville et al, 2012). Clinical suspicion is supported by findings of elevated serum amylase and/or lipase (Table 22-1).

In 30% of patients, the diagnosis of acute pancreatitis was not suspected and was made only at autopsy (Wilson et al, 1985). Many causes have been identified. Gallstones continue to be the leading cause (30% to 60%), and alcohol is the second most common cause (responsible for 15% to 30% of cases). Other causes include duct obstruction due to tumors or parasites, duct anomalies such as pancreas divisum, infections (mumps, coxsackievirus A), blunt trauma or post endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP), many drugs (diuretics, sulfonamides), organophosphates, methyl alcohol, nitrosamines, hypertriglyceridemia, and hypercalcemia.

Amylase

Amylase in serum and urine is stable for 1 week at ambient temperature and for at least 6 months under refrigeration in well-sealed containers.

http://basicbook.net

Plasma specimens that have been anticoagulated with citrate or oxalate should be avoided for amylase determination because amylase is a calcium-containing enzyme. Heparinized plasma specimens do not interfere with the amylase assay.

Diagnosis is confirmed by detection of elevated serum amylase threefold above normal. It peaks in 20 to 30 hours, often at 10 to 20 times the upper reference limit (Papachristou & Whitcomb, 2005). Amylase returns to normal in 48 to 72 hours. Elevated values persisting longer than this suggest continuing necrosis or possible pseudocyst formation. Amylase continues to be a first-line test for acute pancreatitis in current clinical practice despite certain problematic issues. Serum amylase has poor sensitivity for pancreatitis; it is not increased in about 20% of patients with pancreatitis. Serum amylase increases nonspecifically in many acute abdominal conditions. In hyperlipidemic patients with pancreatitis, normal serum and urine amylase levels are frequently encountered. The spuriously normal levels are believed to be the result of suppression of amylase activity by triglyceride or by a circulating inhibitor in serum. A recent series found the sensitivity and specificity for serum amylase for acute pancreatitis to be 62% and 93%, respectively (Hofmeyr et al, 2014). Serum amylase levels do not correlate with cause or severity of pancreatitis. The pancreas contributes 40% of the total serum amylase; the rest comes mostly from the salivary glands (Halangk & Lerch, 2005).

Although a variety of reliable amylase methods are available, care is required in specimen handling. Caution must be exercised to avoid contamination of specimens with saliva, because its amylase content is approximately 700 times that of serum. Red cells contain no amylase, so hemolysis does not affect most methods, except those coupled-enzyme methods in which the released peroxide is determined by a coupled-peroxidase reaction.

The urine amylase activity rises promptly, often within several hours of the rise in serum activity, and may remain elevated after the serum level has returned to the normal range. Values greater than 1000 Somogyi units/hour are seen almost exclusively in patients with acute pancreatitis. In a majority of patients with acute pancreatitis, serum amylase activity is elevated, and a concomitant increase in urine amylase activity occurs. Increased renal clearance of amylase can be used in the diagnosis of acute and relapsing pancreatitis, but the ratio of amylase clearance to creatinine clearance expressed as a percentage adds little to the diagnosis, because elevated ratios may be found in unrelated conditions.

Lower than normal serum amylase activity may be found in patients with chronic pancreatitis and has been seen in such diverse conditions as congestive heart failure, pregnancy (during the second and third trimesters), gastrointestinal (GI) cancer, bone fracture, and pleurisy.

Serum amylase may be elevated in patients with pancreatic carcinoma but often too late to be diagnostically useful. Serum amylase activity may also be elevated in patients with cholecystitis, peptic ulcer, renal transplant, viral hepatitis, or ruptured ectopic pregnancy, or after a gastrectomy.

Increased ascites fluid amylase levels have been seen in patients with pancreatitis, a leaking pancreatic pseudocyst, pancreatic duct rupture, pancreatic cancer, abdominal tumors that secrete amylase, and perforation of a hollow viscus. Fractionation of amylase in serum, urine, and other body fluids can be done by physical means, such as electrophoresis, chromatography, or isoelectric focusing; each isoenzyme is then quantitated by direct densitometry.

Macroamylasemia

Macroamylasemia is not a disease, but an acquired benign condition that is more frequent in men and is usually discovered incidentally in the fifth through seventh decades (Remaley & Wilding, 1989). A persistent increase in serum amylase is seen without clinical symptoms. Urine amylase is normal or low. Macroamylases are heterogeneous complexes of normal amylase (usually salivary isoenzyme) with immunoglobulin (Ig)G, IgA, or polysaccharide (Van Deun et al, 1989). Because of their large size, macroamylases cannot be filtered through the glomerulus and are retained in the plasma; they are not present in urine. Plasma amylase activity is often increased two- to eightfold. Serum lipase is normal. Macroamylasemia is found in about 1% of randomly selected patients. Renal function is normal, and the amylase/creatinine clearance ratio is low (Table 22-2).

Lipase

The pancreas is the major and primary source of serum lipase. Human pancreatic lipase is a glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 45 kDa. Lipase is not present in the salivary glands. Lipases are defined as enzymes that hydrolyze preferentially glycerol esters of long-chain fatty acids at the carbon 1 and 3 ester bonds, producing 2 moles of fatty acid and 1 mole of β-monoglyceride per mole of triglyceride. After isomerization, the third fatty acid can be split off at a slower rate. Lipolysis increases in proportion to the surface area of the lipid droplets, and the absence of bile salts in duodenal fluid with resultant lack of emulsification renders lipase ineffective.

TABLE 22-1
Laboratory Tests in Acute Pancreatitis

Laboratory Test	Purpose	Usage and Limitations
Amylase	Diagnosis	Accurate over 3× the upper normal limit; decreased specificity in renal failure; elevated in macroamylasemia; hypertriglyceridemia interferes; elevated from other sources such as salivary glands and/or intraabdominal inflammation (not above 3×); can be normal in alcohol-induced pancreatitis
Lipase	Diagnosis	Decreased specificity in renal failure; immune complexes create false positives; elevated from salivary glands and intraabdominal inflammation
Trypsinogen 2	Diagnosis	Limited use; unclear if superior to amylase/lipase
AST/ALT	Etiology	If greater than 3× upper normal limit, gallstones present as etiology in 95% of cases. Low sensitivity
Lipase/amylase ratio	Etiology	>5 is diagnostic for alcohol-induced acute pancreatitis. Low sensitivity
CDT	Etiology	Useful in patients who deny alcohol; remains elevated for weeks after binge drinking; not widely available
Hematocrit	Severity	>44% on admission, or rising over initial 24 hrs; associated with pancreatic necrosis
C-reactive protein	Severity	>150 mg/L associated with pancreatic inflammation. Useful after first 36-48 hrs

ALT, Alanine aminotransferase; *AST*, aspartate aminotransferase; *CDT*, carbohydrate-deficient transferrin.

TABLE 22-2
Differential Diagnosis of Hyperamylasemia and Macroamylasemia

Condition	Serum Amylase	Serum Lipase	Urinary Amylase	$C_{am}:C_{cr}$	Serum Macroamylase
Pancreatic hyperamylasemia	High	High	High	High	Absent
Salivary hyperamylasemia	High	Normal	Low or normal	Low or normal	Absent
Macroamylasemia	High	Normal	Low	Low	High

Adapted from Kleinman DS & O'Brien JF: Macroamylase, *Mayo Clin Proc* 61:669–670, 1986.
$C_{am}:C_{cr}$ = amylase clearance:creatinine clearance ratio = (urinary amylase/serum amylase) × (serum creatinine/urinary creatinine).

http://basicbook.net

Serum lipase has been described as a better first-line test for diagnosis of acute pancreatitis than serum amylase. It has a sensitivity and specificity of 92% and 91%, respectively (Hofmeyr et al, 2014). Serum lipase increases in 4 to 8 hours and remains elevated for 8 to 14 days. Increased lipase activity rarely lasts longer than 14 days; prolonged increases suggest a poor prognosis or the presence of a pancreatic cyst. Hyperglycemia and elevated bilirubin concentrations may be present, and leukocytosis is frequently reported.

Pancreatic lipase must be differentiated from lipoprotein lipase, aliesterase, and arylester hydrolase, which are related but different enzymes. The activities of these enzymes may be included in the measurement of lipase activity unless suitable assay conditions for pancreatic lipase are adapted. Lipase is also present in liver, stomach, intestine, white blood cells, fat cells, and milk.

Calcium is necessary for maximal lipase activity, but at higher concentrations it has an inhibitory effect. It is speculated that the inhibitory effect is due to its interference with the action of bile salts at the water/substrate interface. Similar to serum albumin, bile salts prevent the denaturation of lipase at the interface. Heavy metals and quinine inhibit lipase activity.

Lipase is filtered by the glomeruli owing to its low molecular weight; it is normally completely reabsorbed by the proximal tubules and is absent from normal urine. In patients with failure of renal tubular reabsorption caused by renal disorders, lipase is found in the urine. Urine lipase activity in the absence of pancreatic disease is inversely related to creatinine clearance.

Serum lipase is stable up to 1 week at room temperature and may be kept stable longer if it is refrigerated or frozen. The optimal reaction temperature is about 40° C. The optimal pH is 8.8, but other values ranging from 7.0 to 9.0 have been reported. This difference probably is due to the effects of differences in types of substrate, buffer, incubation temperature, and concentrations of reagents used. Serum is the specimen of choice for blood lipase assays. Icterus, lipemia, and hemolysis do not interfere with turbidimetric lipase assays.

Both serum lipase and amylase are useful in ruling out acute pancreatitis. Although determination of serum lipase has diagnostic advantages over serum amylase for acute pancreatitis, this value is not specific for acute pancreatitis. Serum lipase may also be elevated in patients with chronic pancreatitis, obstruction of the pancreatic duct, and nonpancreatic conditions, including renal disease, acute cholecystitis, intestinal obstruction or infarction, duodenal ulcer, and liver disease, as well as alcoholism and diabetic ketoacidosis, and in patients who have undergone ERCP. Patients with trauma to the abdomen uniformly have increases in both serum amylase and lipase. Elevation of serum lipase activity in patients with mumps strongly suggests significant pancreatic involvement by the disease.

Trypsinogen

Trypsin is produced in the exocrine pancreas as two proenzymes, known as trypsinogen 1 and trypsinogen 2. These proenzymes are activated in the duodenum by an enterokinase that yields trypsin 1 and trypsin 2, respectively. Trypsin present within the peripheral circulation is inactivated by complexing with α-2-macroglobulin or α-1-antitrypsin (AAT). Trypsin, unlike amylase, is produced solely by the pancreatic acinar cells and therefore is a specific indicator of pancreatic damage. Premature activation of the proenzyme to active trypsin within the pancreatic parenchyma is thought to be a key mechanism in the development of acute pancreatitis (Andersen et al, 2001). Currently, levels of all forms of trypsin are determined by specific immunoassays.

Trypsin assays are currently used to differentiate the cause of an acute episode of pancreatitis. One study demonstrated that trypsinogen 2 and trypsin-2-AAT are increased in all forms of acute pancreatitis but are more elevated in alcohol-associated pancreatitis than in biliary pancreatitis. Trypsinogen 1, amylase, and lipase were found to be more elevated in patients with biliary pancreatitis. Furthermore, the ratio of serum trypsin-2-AAT to trypsinogen 1 was determined to be the best discriminator between biliary and alcoholic pancreatitis (Andersen et al, 2001). Another study supported the use of trypsin assays for the diagnosis of acute pancreatitis, because the determined time course profile of trypsinogen 2 and trypsin-2-AAT is appropriate for diagnostic purposes. These enzymes are elevated within hours of onset of the acute episode and therefore are already elevated upon admission; this is followed by a rapid rise. Both enzyme levels remain elevated longer than amylase, and the magnitude of elevation corresponds to the severity of pancreatic inflammation, which is extremely useful for diagnosing acute pancreatitis upon admission, for predicting severity of illness, and for monitoring disease progression (Kemppainen et al, 2000). Elevated trypsin-1-ATT has also been demonstrated in patients with biliary tract cancer (Andersen et al, 2001).

Serum trypsinogen 2 levels rise rapidly, showing a tenfold to twentyfold increase. Urinary concentrations are even more steeply elevated. A recent meta-analysis of 18 trials investigating the diagnostic utility of urinary trypsinogen-2 in acute pancreatitis demonstrated a pooled sensitivity and specificity of 80% and 92%, respectively. The pooled sensitivity and specificity for post-ERCP pancreatitis in this same analysis were 86% and 94%, respectively (Jin et al, 2013). Irrespective of the cause, all origins allow activation of the inactive proenzyme trypsinogen to trypsin, which then activates most of the other digestive enzymes and produces tissue damage and necrosis of the pancreas, surrounding fat, and adjacent structures.

Other enzymes that have been proposed as diagnostic tools include pancreatic isoamylase, phospholipase A, elastase 1, and trypsinogen 2 (Forsmark & Baillie, 2007). Other tests (aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase, C-reactive protein [CRP], hematocrit, carbohydrate-deficient transferrin [CDT], and trypsinogen activation peptide [TAP]) have shown low sensitivity for diagnosing acute pancreatitis. CDT is a marker for chronic alcoholism. Urinary TAP is a valuable marker for severity of pancreatitis. Markers of inflammatory response (e.g., CRP) peak, following interleukin (IL)-1 and IL-6 increases, on day 3 after onset of abdominal pain; this is useful in predicting the severity of pancreatitis (Smotkin & Tenner, 2002).

A computed tomography (CT) scan is the most useful test to establish the diagnosis, with characteristic radiologic findings of enlarged edematous and inflamed pancreas with or without surrounding fluid collection, with or without necrosis. An ultrasonogram may be useful in showing a diffusely enlarged, hypoechoic pancreas, and may show the presence of gallstones in the gallbladder, indicating a possible cause. A CT severity score (the Balthazar score) is based on the degree of necrosis, inflammation, and fluid collection. A 23% mortality rate is associated with any degree of pancreatic necrosis, and a strong association has been noted between necrosis and morbidity and mortality. After initial assessment, a CT scan need not be repeated unless one suspects development of a complication such as pancreatic necrosis. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is being used increasingly to detect pancreatitis and to characterize the pancreatic necrosis seen on CT into peripancreatic necrotic fluid collection, necrotic pancreatic parenchyma, and hemorrhagic foci. MRI can also detect pancreatic duct disruption, seen early in the course of acute pancreatitis.

Serum and urine amylase elevations occur in many conditions other than pancreatitis, such as renal failure, parotitis, and diabetic ketoacidosis. Patients with acidemia may have spurious elevations of serum amylase. This explains why patients with diabetic ketoacidosis may have marked elevations of serum amylase without evidence of acute pancreatitis. No data indicate that measuring both amylase and lipase adds significant diagnostic accuracy. Once the diagnosis is established, daily measurement of amylase or lipase provides little value in gauging the clinical course or the prognosis.

Predictors of severe acute pancreatitis include hematocrit greater than 44% with failure to decrease at 24 hours (this is indicative of pancreatic necrosis and is predictive of organ failure) and C-reactive protein greater than 150 mg/L. Serum creatinine greater than 2.0 mg/dL or marked hyperglycemia (>150 mg/dL) is predictive of mortality (Lankisch et al, 2001). A strong association has been found between the extent of blood urea nitrogen (BUN) increase and mortality at 24 hours. Each increase in BUN of 5 mg/dL was associated with a corresponding increase in mortality. A reduction in blood urea was associated with significantly improved survival (Wu et al, 2009) (Table 22-3). One serum marker of interest is cytokeratin 8, a cytoskeletal protein and marker of apoptosis. Higher cytokeratin 8 levels have been shown to be associated with a milder clinical course of acute pancreatitis (Koruk et al, 2012).

Hemorrhagic pancreatitis, a severe form of acute pancreatitis, results from necrosis within and around the pancreas with hemorrhage that may cause shock and death. Initially, necrosis is coagulative, but necrotic cells rapidly undergo liquefaction. Biliary tract disease with gallstones or inflammation of the gallbladder or bile ducts, or alcoholism, is present in about 80% of patients. The male/female ratio is 1:3 in acute pancreatitis associated with biliary tract disease and 6:1 in alcoholism. Pancreatic microlithiasis may be responsible for many cases.

The sequence of changes following release of activated intrapancreatic enzymes in acute pancreatitis consists of microvascular leakage causing edema, necrosis of fats, and acute inflammatory reaction. Proteolytic destruction of pancreatic tissue and blood vessels causes edema and focal dilation of acini with variable amounts of hemorrhage. In fat necrosis, neutral fats are broken down, glycerol is reabsorbed, and fatty acids combine with calcium salts to form soaps (saponification) with a zone of acute inflammation around the foci of necrosis. After a few days, secondary infection with suppuration and abscesses may occur.

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 22-3
Laboratory Findings in Acute Pancreatitis

At Presentation		At 48 Hours	
Age	>55	Hematocrit	Fall by ≥10%
Leukocyte count	>16,000/mm^3	Urea nitrogen	Increase by ≥5 mg/dL despite fluids
Blood glucose	>200 mg/dL	Serum calcium	<8 mg/dL
LD	350 U/L	pO_2	<60 mmHg
AST	>250 U/L	Base deficit	>4 mEq/L
		Fluid sequestration	>6000 mL

ALT, Alanine aminotransferase; *AST*, aspartate aminotransferase; *LD*, lactate dehydrogenase; *pO_2*, partial pressure of oxygen.

In 15% to 30% of those with pancreatic necrosis, poorly defined areas of acute fluid collection occur, along with fibrosis. The liquefied areas are walled off, and pseudocysts form. Pseudocysts contain pancreatic fluid enclosed in fibrous tissue with no epithelial lining; they often communicate with a pancreatic duct and continue to increase in mass.

Complications of Acute Pancreatitis

Hypocalcemia and mild jaundice may appear after 24 hours as the result of biliary obstruction. A sepsis-like syndrome due to digestive enzymes in the systemic circulation may cause the release of inflammatory cytokines, a systemic immune response syndrome with severe systemic complications. About 75% of patients with acute pancreatitis have a benign course and recover rapidly. No treatment has proven to interrupt the inflammatory process effectively.

Idiopathic acute pancreatitis occurs in about 10% to 20% of patients with pancreatitis. It is believed that many cases are germline mutations of cationic trypsinogen *(PRSS1)* (see earlier) or serine protease inhibitor, kazal type 1 *(SPINK1)*. There is high risk for development of endocrine or exocrine insufficiency and pancreatic adenocarcinoma. These mutations can cause an autosomal recessive hereditary acute or chronic pancreatitis with onset in childhood or early adulthood. *PRSS1* abrogates the inactivation of trypsinogen for cleavage of trypsin. *SPINK1* mutation inactivates pancreatic secretory trypsin inhibitor (Howes et al, 2005; Schneider, 2005).

Patients with these disorders typically have recurrent acute pancreatitis sometime between infancy and the fourth decade. Chronic pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer develop at a relatively young age. No specific treatment is known for the prevention or treatment of hereditary pancreatitis. In concert with standard pancreatitis laboratory testing and imaging, genetic testing for the aforementioned mutations can lead to this diagnosis. Ancillary diagnostic modalities include ERCP with secretin stimulation or sphincter of Oddi manometry. These tests can help identify sphincter of Oddi dysfunction that could contribute to recurrent acute pancreatitis (Tèstoni, 2014).

Chronic Pancreatitis

It is the irreversible damage and often-progressive inflammation with irregular fibrosis, duct dilation, and loss of pancreatic parenchyma that characterize chronic pancreatitis. This occurs after repeated bouts of acute pancreatitis, obstruction of pancreatic duct by mechanical blockage or congenital defect or by neoplasm, gallstone duct obstruction, or alcoholism. Early in the course, the pancreas becomes enlarged. Some cases develop pseudotumor mass lesions. Subsequently, as the result of scarring, the gland usually shrinks with loss of acini and still later loss of ductules. Preserved or even increased islets are seen in the fibrous scar. Patients seek medical attention for abdominal pain or maldigestion.

Maldigestion/malabsorption and steatorrhea are due to pancreatic insufficiency with loss of enzymes, glucose intolerance or diabetes, and islet damage. A low fecal elastase 1 (i.e., concentration of <15 μg/g) has been associated with pancreatic insufficiency with a sensitivity and specificity of 93.3% and 81.5%, respectively, in nonoperated patients (Benini et al, 2013). Clinically, recurrent or chronic pain is reported at a lower incidence than in acute pancreatitis, but this is now increasing in frequency. The incidence is greater in males than in females, and the average age of onset is 40 years. It is more prevalent in tropical countries, and the main form is chronic calcifying pancreatitis with duct calcifications. In temperate areas, chronic alcoholism is reported in more than half of cases. No causative factor is apparent in 40% of cases.

The central enzyme involved in activation of all digestive proenzymes is trypsin, which is synthesized and maintained as inactive trypsinogen in secretory granules in the pancreatic acinar cell. After release into the pancreatic duct, trypsinogen is cleaved by enterokinase on the brush border of the duodenum to active trypsin. Trypsin is stabilized in the pancreatic acini by a serine protease inhibitor, *SPINK1*. Mutations in *SPINK1* increase the risk of chronic pancreatitis almost twelvefold by impairing the ability of acinar cells to counteract and inhibit the damaging effects of intracellular trypsin (Schneider et al, 2004; DiMagno & DiMagno, 2005). *PRSS1* mutations involving codons 29 and 122 cause autosomal dominant forms of hereditary pancreatitis (Whitcomb, 2000; Cohn et al, 2005).

GASTROENTEROLOGIC DISORDERS

PEPTIC ULCERATION

Helicobacter pylori has been recognized as the principal cause of duodenitis and duodenal ulcers, and it has been strongly associated with chronic antral gastritis, gastric ulcer, nonulcer dyspepsia, gastric carcinoma, and mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue lymphoma (Peterson, 1991; Veldhuyzen van Zanten & Sherman, 1994; Thiede et al, 1997; Wotherspoon, 1998). The use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) causes or aggravates peptic and gastric inflammation and ulceration. Hypersecretory states are a much rarer cause of peptic ulcer disease. Data gathered by history and physical examination may initially suggest peptic ulcer disease. Radiologic and/or endoscopic techniques are employed to confirm the diagnoses. Testing for *H. pylori* and hypersecretory states involves laboratory analysis.

Because *H. pylori* has been shown to be the most important cause of peptic ulcer disease and is significantly associated with multiple other types of upper GI pathology, a great deal of research has focused on its detection and treatment and on confirmation of pathogen eradication. Within the last decade, numerous products used for the detection of this bacterium have become commercially available. The American College of Gastroenterology recommends *H. pylori* testing in individuals with peptic ulceration but leaves the clinician considerable discretion in choosing the diagnostic modality, because no one test is recognized as the gold standard (Chey et al., 2007). Although the numbers and types of tests will likely continue to grow, tissue sampling, breath tests, and fecal antigen detection are currently the mainstay in the diagnostic armamentarium. The incidental use of proton pump inhibitors (PPIs), antibiotics, or bismuth-containing antacids may lead to false-negative tests.

Some diagnostic testing relies on the fact that the organism has urease activity, which metabolizes urea to bicarbonate and ammonia. The tests that employ this key characteristic are rapid urease testing and urea breath testing.

Rapid urease testing involves taking a specimen from an antral biopsy and placing it on an agar gel or reaction strip with urea and a pH-sensitive color-changing indicator. A change in color would indicate a change in pH, which in turn represents urease activity and thus suggests presence of *H. pylori*.

The urea breath test also exploits the presence of urease in the *H. pylori* organism. It has the advantage of not requiring an endoscopically obtained-tissue sample. Labeled urea is ingested and labeled CO_2 is detected and quantified in expired breath. The label can be either nonradioactive ^{13}C or radioactive ^{14}C. Another nonendoscopic urease test works by detecting labeled bicarbonate in a blood sample (Ahmed et al, 2005).

Although not included in the latest guidelines on *H. pylori* diagnosis, we discuss hydrogen breath tests here for historical interest. Radioactive and nonradioactive hydrogen breath tests are examples of noninvasive means for detecting active *H. pylori* infection. Each is sensitive and specific before therapy. Hydrogen breath tests may be falsely negative if they are performed too soon after treatment, before the bacterial load is great enough to be detected (Atherton & Spiller, 1994).

Serum antibodies directed against *H. pylori* can be used to detect exposure to *H. pylori*. Enzyme immunoassay (EIA) tests are available and reliable (Feldman et al, 1995; Feldman & Evans, 1995; van de Wouw et al, 1996). Although quantitative levels of these antibodies are not currently routinely utilized in the clinical setting to determine whether there is current or past infection, they have been reported to be highly accurate (Lerang et al, 1998). At present, serology is generally used to screen for *H. pylori*, and breath tests are used to confirm eradication after treatment. Alternatively, endoscopy allows collection of tissue for rapid urease testing or histologic examination (Megraud, 1997).

http://basicbook.net

Office-based serologic quick-test kits are available. The accuracy of these kits has been shown to be dependent on the antibody preparations used. IgG preparations perform most consistently. Other test qualities such as reproducibility, cost, and ease of utilization are factors to be considered when reviewing each of the many available brands marketed today (Laheij et al, 1998). Histologic review of biopsy specimens stained with Warthin-Starry or Giemsa stain remains one of the most frequently employed techniques to detect active infection. Culture of the organism may be inconsistent and usually is not done in routine clinical settings. If endoscopy must be performed for other reasons, a rapid urease test is the least expensive means of documenting the presence of *H. pylori*.

Hypersecretory states are suggested by extensive peptic ulcer disease, especially in the absence of *H. pylori*, and by the use of NSAIDs. Failure to respond to the usual doses of histamine-2 (H_2)-receptor blocking agents and PPIs also suggests oversecretion of hydrochloric acid. Care must be taken to avoid the use of antisecretory medications for the appropriate time intervals before such testing. H_2-receptor blockers should be held for 48 hours, and PPIs should be avoided for 7 days. H_2-receptor blockers are available without a prescription, so patient education is important, and clinicians must remember to review all of the medications utilized by their patients.

ZOLLINGER-ELLISON SYNDROME

This syndrome is defined by the triad of peptic ulceration, hyperchlorhydria, and non–β islet cell tumors (gastrinomas). Duodenal ulcers do not occur in achlorhydric individuals but are present in those with extreme hyperchlorhydria. Gastrinomas may occur in the body or tail of the pancreas or in the upper duodenum; they may be multiple and malignant. About 25% of Zollinger-Ellison (ZE) patients have multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) 1 with hyperparathyroidism (Hung et al, 2003).

Gastrin levels, with and without secretin stimulation, can be used to diagnose ZE syndrome. Serum gastrin levels greater than 150 ng/L (reference, <100 ng/L), especially with simultaneous gastric pH values of less than 3, are highly suggestive of a gastrinoma. For equivocal results, secretin (2 U/kg in 10 mL 0.9% sodium chloride) can be given intravenously in 30 seconds, and serial gastrin levels can be drawn at 0, 2, 5, 10, 15, 20, and 30 minutes. An increase in gastrin of 200 ng/L or greater within 15 minutes of injection is considered a positive test result. Although these criteria are typically applied, it is important for the clinician to bear in mind that a nonelevated result does not preclude presence of a gastrinoma. Indeed, there have been reports of gastrinomas with normal serum gastric levels. These cases have been attributed to the fact that some tumors secrete bioactive gastrin precursors, some of which go undetected by available testing modalities (Rehfeld et al., 2012). Octreotide, a synthetic form of somatostatin, has been used for localization of tumors. Radiolabeled octreotide binds to somatostatin receptors and can be subsequently localized by scintigraphy (Zimmer et al, 1995). Somatostatin (SST) receptor scintigraphy (SRS) is now the imaging modality of choice for these lesions, with a reported mean sensitivity and specificity of 72% and 86%, respectively (Gibril & Jensent, 2005). The underlying mechanism for the effectiveness of SRS is that neuroendocrine tumors, such as gastrinomas, have increased density of SST receptors (SSTRs), specifically subtypes SSTR2 and SSTR5 (Warner & O'dorisio, 2002). If such tumors are surgically removed, gastrin levels can be used to assess potential success or future recurrence.

Gastrin is a primary GI hormone that is produced mainly by the antral G cells; it regulates gastric acid secretion and stimulates growth of the gastric mucosa, among other functions. To a lesser extent, gastrin is produced by G cells of the proximal small intestine and δ cells of the pancreas. Gastrin acts on the parietal cells located in the fundus of the stomach, stimulating the secretion of gastric acid. Gastrin also increases blood flow to the stomach and is responsible for increased gastric and intestinal motility. Other functions include stimulation of gastric pepsinogens and intrinsic factor secretion, release of secretin from the small intestine, and secretion of pancreatic enzymes as well as bicarbonate (Hill, 2006). This hormone is secreted from antral distention, mainly after the detection of digested protein products. Maximal stimulation of gastrin secretion occurs within a pH range of 5 to 7. An acid environment serves as a negative feedback mechanism for the release of gastrin, with 80% reduction in secretion at a pH of 2.5 (Hill, 2006). This serves to protect the stomach from overacidification caused by excess stimulation of gastrin. For this reason, individuals on acid suppression therapy for peptic ulcer disease may have elevated gastrin levels.

Three main forms of gastrin are found in human blood and tissues: G34, G17, and G14, known as big gastrin, little gastrin, and mini gastrin, respectively. Each form has a different assay sensitivity. All gastrins originate from a single precursor, preprogastrin, which is cleaved by the action of trypsin. It is interesting to note that in pathologic cases of increased gastrin production, as with achlorhydric gastritis or gastrinomas, larger molecular forms of gastrin and incompletely processed precursors are present and are beyond the scope of detection by conventional assays. In such cases, only little gastrin would be detectable in serum (Goetze & Rehfeld, 2003).

Laboratory determination of gastrin levels with radioimmunoassay (RIA) or EIA is indicated for the confirmation of suspected gastrin-secreting tumors—namely, gastrinomas or ZE syndrome. The antibodies present in these assays are specific for the biologically active C-terminal of the gastrin molecule, and they have minimal cross-reactivity with cholecystokinin (CCK) peptides. Before determination of gastrin levels, a patient must be fasting for 12 hours because the concentration of G34 doubles and the concentration of G17 quadruples following a meal, altering the results of the assay. Specimens must be frozen immediately because gastrin is unstable in serum. Because of the action of proteolytic enzymes, 50% of the specimen's immunoreactivity may be lost within 48 hours at a temperature of 4° C. It is recommended that specimens should be kept in a freezer at a temperature of –70° C without a self-defrosting cycle if long-term storage is required. Specimens must be analyzed immediately after thawing, while avoiding refreezing and thawing.

Fasting serum gastrin levels are increased with increasing age, especially in patients older than 60 years, in part because of gastric mucosal atrophy. Approximately 15% of individuals older than 60 years may have gastrin levels between 100 and 800 ng/L (Hill, 2006). Reference intervals for infants and children differ from those for adults; interpretation should use age-specific reference ranges. Gastrin concentration greater than 1000 ng/L with gastric acid hypersecretion (basal acid secretion >15 mmol/hour) is diagnostic of gastrinoma. The secretin stimulation test is a provocative biochemical test that can help confirm the diagnosis of ZE in questionable cases. Infused secretin should cause a drop in gastrin levels in normal individuals. However, in patients with ZE, a dramatic increase in gastrin level is seen after secretin infusion. The mechanism by which secretin stimulates an increase in gastrin levels in these patients is poorly understood; however, it is thought to be due to a direct local effect on blood flow to the tumor (Ashley et al, 1999). Limitations include altered results from conditions that may lead to elevated gastrin levels, such as gastric ulcer disease, chronic renal failure, hyperparathyroidism, pyloric obstruction, vagotomy, retained gastric antrum, short bowel syndrome, and pernicious anemia. Certain medications, such as antacids, H_2-blocking agents, and proton pump inhibitors, can also increase gastrin measurements; all of these agents are commonly used in the treatment of patients with peptic ulcer disease. However, the elevations are moderate and certainly are not as high as in a patient with a gastrin-secreting tumor.

Intraoperative testing for gastrin is of potential use because gastrinomas can be multiple and are often difficult to locate; they can be distributed widely in the stomach, pancreas, and duodenum or periaortic lymph nodes. Intraoperative gastrin measurement is of potential use because gastrin has a short half-life of approximately 10 minutes. The catabolic breakdown of most peptide hormones follows first-order exponential decay. Therefore, if the entire hormone-secreting tissue is surgically resected, only approximately 12.5% of the baseline concentration would be present in serum after three half-lives. When patients with ZE or gastrinoma were evaluated with intraoperative gastrin assays, a drop in gastrin levels to within reference values within 20 minutes of resection was indicative of cure (Sokoll et al, 2004). Gastrin and secretin levels remain the most sensitive methods to detect recurrence (Norton & Jensen, 2007).

Pepsin and Pepsinogen

Pepsinogens are the biologically inactive proenzymes of pepsins that are produced by chief cells and other cells in the gastric mucosa and are found in two distinct types: pepsinogen I (PGI), also known as pepsinogen A, and pepsinogen II (PGII), also known as pepsinogen C. Pepsinogen secretion is stimulated by the vagus nerve, gastrin, secretin, and CCK, and is inhibited by gastric inhibitory peptide (GIP), anticholinergics, histamine H_2-receptor antagonists, and vagotomy (Hill, 2006). PGI is produced in the chief cells and mucous cells of oxyntic glands; PGII is produced in mucous cells in oxyntic and pyloric regions and in the duodenum. The ratio of concentration of PGI to PGII in the serum or plasma of healthy individuals is approximately 4:1 (Samloff, 1982). Pepsinogen is converted to the active form, pepsin, by gastric acid that can activate additional pepsinogen autocatalytically. Both groups of pepsinogens are activated at an acid pH below 5 and are destroyed by alkaline pH. Both types can be detected in blood.

http://basicbook.net

Only type I pepsinogens are present in the urine. Pepsins are responsible for the hydrolysis of proteins to polypeptides. The pepsinogen released from the gastric mucosa constitutes a major component of gastric fluid. Only approximately 1% gets into the peripheral blood. Active pepsin is rapidly inactivated in the bloodstream, whereas pepsinogen is stable in the blood. Pepsinogen is then filtered by the kidneys and is excreted in the urine, where the slightly acidic pH converts the pepsinogen, now called uropepsinogen, to uropepsin (Hill, 2006). Immunoassay is the method used to detect serum pepsinogen. However, the PGI isoform is commonly analyzed in the clinical laboratory because it is the isoform commonly associated with disease.

Serum levels of pepsinogen I provide an accurate estimate of parietal cell mass and correlate with the acid-secretory capacity of the stomach. Increased pepsinogen levels and associated activity are observed in patients with disease states that lead to increased gastric output or with increased parietal cell mass—namely, gastrinoma, ZE syndrome, duodenal ulcer disease, and acute and chronic gastritis. Decreased levels of pepsinogen are associated with decreased parietal cell mass, atrophic gastritis, and gastric carcinoma, as well as with myxedema, Addison's disease, and hypopituitarism (Hill, 2006). The PGI/PGII ratio decreases linearly with worsening atrophic gastritis. Absence of pepsinogen is noted in patients with achlorhydria. PGI levels measured by immunoassay usually range from 20 to 107 μg/L, and PGII levels usually range from 3 to 19 μg/L.

Pepsinogen assays are being explored for their utility in the noninvasive identification of patients with chronic atrophic gastritis and to obtain an estimate of the extent of atrophic gastritis, a known precursor of gastric carcinoma. Severe atrophic body gastritis causes a four- to fivefold increase in the risk of gastric carcinoma compared with healthy individuals (Miki et al, 2003). It is hoped that this finding will help to identify a subgroup of individuals with chronic atrophic gastritis who would benefit from endoscopic evaluation for detection of early-stage gastric tumor. These assays are currently utilized in Japan, an area marked by high prevalence of gastric cancer, as a potential method for widespread screening of high-risk individuals (Miki et al, 2003). These authors recommended that criteria for diagnosing chronic atrophic gastritis should include persons with PGI less than 70 μg/L and a PGI/PGII ratio less than 3.0. In Japan, the pepsinogen serum screening test has been demonstrated to detect a higher percentage of early cancers compared with conventional methods, and a considerable number of patients have subsequently been candidates for treatments with endoscopic surgery (Miki et al, 2003). The most sensitive test for fundic atrophic gastritis is considered to be the PGI/II serum ratio, with 99% sensitivity and 94% specificity (Hill, 2006), and 64% sensitivity and 61% specificity for antral and pangastric atrophic gastritis (Lee et al, 2014). Furthermore, PGII levels may be a useful marker of prognosis, serving as an independent predictor of tumor biology and survival in patients with gastric carcinoma. The absence of PGII production has been associated with aggressive tumor behavior and shorter overall survival in gastric cancer patients (Fernandez et al, 2000). Pepsinogen assays therefore may prove useful as a serum screening method for detection of gastric carcinoma among high-risk individuals.

DIARRHEA AND MALABSORPTION

Diarrhea

About 8 to 10 L of fluid enters the duodenum every 24 hours. Much of this fluid is absorbed in the small intestine, and about 1.5 L enters the large intestine, but only 100 to 150 mL is voided in stools. Increased fluid secretion or decreased fluid absorption in the small or large intestine may result in diarrhea. One of the most important parameters defining diarrhea in an individual patient is a change in the usual bowel habit to more frequent, looser stools. Diarrhea is the passage of three or more loose or liquid stools per day, or more frequently than is normal for the individual (World Health Organization [WHO], 2013). A decrease in fecal consistency (i.e., increased fluidity) is more important than the number of stools. However, this property is difficult to measure, so increased stool weight, frequency, and duration are used in defining diarrhea.

The diagnosis of diarrhea starts with a thorough history to characterize the condition. The WHO guidelines categorize diarrhea into four clinical umbrellas: acute watery, acute bloody, persistent, and diarrhea with malnutrition. Additional clinical questions to further characterize the condition include: Is the diarrhea bland or bloody (dysentery)? Are there constitutional symptoms? What is the duration of the illness? Self-limited, acute diarrhea (<2 weeks in duration) without bleeding or constitutional symptoms rarely requires diagnostic testing. Chronic diarrhea, the passage of blood, and constitutional symptoms all suggest the need for a specific diagnosis. History is the key to developing the differential diagnosis and guiding the laboratory evaluation (Table 22-4). The physical examination, although usually less helpful than the history, must be comprehensive.

Acute diarrheas of less than 4 weeks generally have an infectious origin. Those with a course of longer than 4 weeks are considered chronic diarrheas (Fine & Schiller, 1999) and are categorized as osmotic, secretory, or inflammatory. Hypermotility or shortened gut may reduce the transit time and absorptive surface, resulting in diarrhea and/or some degree of malabsorption.

Osmotic diarrhea results from unabsorbable or poorly absorbed solutes. These include polyethylene glycol in colon-cleansing solutions, magnesium salts (magnesium citrate in cathartics, magnesium hydroxide in some antacids), sorbitol in chewing gum, lactulose in the treatment of hepatic encephalopathy, and lactose in lactase-deficient individuals. These osmotically active substances in the lumen alter the osmotic gradient that normally favors Na^+ absorption, drawing fluid into the lumen.

Fasting or cessation of consumption of the suspected solute stops osmotic diarrhea. Stool pH values of less than 5.6 are consistent with carbohydrate malabsorption (Fine & Schiller, 1999). Sodium and potassium concentrations in stool water are measured to calculate the fecal osmotic gap, which estimates the contributions of electrolytes and nonelectrolytes to water retention in the gut lumen. Osmotic gap is useful in differentiating osmotic from secretory diarrhea; it is best calculated as $290 - 2 \times ([Na^+] + [K^+])$, where 290 represents the stool osmolality that approximates plasma osmolality, and a factor of 2 is used to account for associated anions. Osmotic gaps of greater than 125 mOsm/kg characterize osmotic diarrhea, and those of less than 50 mOsm/kg are seen in secretory diarrhea (Fine, 1999).

Stool osmolality must be measured on a freshly collected specimen. Because of continued degradation of stool carbohydrates, osmolality of the specimen increases over hours. Continued diarrhea during a 48-hour fast is suggestive of a secretory process, although fecal weight may decrease because of increasing dehydration (Fordtran, 1967; Fine & Schiller, 1999).

Disaccharidase Deficiency

Because the small intestinal mucosa is impermeable only to disaccharides, special enzymes are required for the breakdown of these molecules. Deficiency leads to malabsorption and thus dietary intolerance manifested in diarrhea. The important enzymes are lactase-phlorizin hydrolase, sucrase-isomaltase, and maltase-glucoamylase (Clinton et al, 2012). Disaccharide absorption may also be diminished from primary alactasia or primary trehalase deficiency, or from secondary disaccharidase deficiencies due to celiac disease, tropical sprue, acute viral gastroenteritis, or drugs such as orally administered neomycin, kanamycin, and methotrexate. These secondary disaccharidase deficiencies are usually transient and involve more than one enzyme. Although the incidence of lactose intolerance due to congenital lactase deficiency is low, the prevalence of lactose intolerance in adults is quite high. About 10% of Caucasians, 70% to 80% of African Americans, and an even greater percentage of Asians manifest some degree of lactose intolerance, even though they were able to digest lactose well as infants. In these disorders, intestinal bacteria ferment unhydrolyzed and unabsorbed carbohydrates, producing gas, lactic acid, or other organic acids. Normally, absorption of digested carbohydrates is rapid and fairly complete in the proximal small intestine. Unhydrolyzed disaccharides or monosaccharides unabsorbed because of deficiencies in transport are osmotically active and thus cause secretion of water and electrolytes into the small and large intestines. This can result in protracted diarrhea, as well as complaints of bloating and flatulence.

Screening tests for disaccharidase deficiencies include oral challenge of suspected disaccharides to reproduce the abdominal symptoms, followed by stool analysis. The stools are usually watery, acidic, explosive, and fermentative. Stool pH of less than 5.5 is suggestive, but the measurement of pH is not valid if the patient is taking oral antibiotics. High pH does not exclude the diagnosis. Normal infants between 3 and 7 days of age commonly have high stool pH. Stools can be analyzed for sugars by chromatography or by one of the semiquantitative nonspecific tests for urinary sugar adapted for stool analysis. The Clinitest tablet (Bayer Diagnostics, Australia) is suitable for this purpose. The presence of 0.25 g/dL reducing substances is considered normal; from 0.25 to 0.5 g/dL is regarded as suspicious; and more than 0.5 g/dL is considered abnormal. In patients with intolerance to sugar, the amount of total reducing substance in the stool usually exceeds 0.25 g/dL feces.

An oral tolerance test using a specific sugar such as lactose or sucrose can be used to establish a specific carbohydrate intolerance. Although the oral tolerance test is fairly specific and sensitive, in some instances 23% to 30% false-positive results were noted following administration of

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 22-4
Laboratory Tests in the Differential Diagnosis of Diarrhea

Test	Method	Use
Initial Screening Tests		
Fecal leukocytes	Wright's stain or methylene blue	Identify inflammatory diarrhea
Fecal occult blood test	Immunochemical	Detect blood
Fecal osmotic gap	$290 - 2 \times (\text{fecal } Na^+ + K^+)$	Distinguish secretory vs. osmotic diarrhea
Stool alkalinization	Color change after adding NaOH to stool/urine	Phenolphthalein laxative ingestion
Infectious Causes		
Stool bacterial culture	Routine culture and sensitivity	Identify *Shigella, Salmonella*
Stool special culture	Specialized culture and serotyping	Identify *E. coli* 0157:H7, *Yersinia, Campylobacter*
Stool *C. difficile* toxin assay	EIA for toxins A and B	Pseudomembranous colitis
HIV serology	EIA, Western blot	HIV enteritis
Stool rotavirus screen	EIA for antigen	Rotavirus enteritis
Stool ova and parasites	Concentration and stains	Enteric parasitic infection
Stool mycobacteria	Acid-fast stain, culture and sensitivity, PCR	*Mycobacterium*, antibiotic selection
Stool *E. histolytica* Ag	EIA for antigen	*Entameoba histolytica*
Stool *Giardia* Ag	EIA for antigen	*Giardia lamblia*
Stool *Cryptosporidium* Ag	EIA for antigen	*Cryptosporidium parvum*
Endocrine Causes		
Urine 5-HIAA or blood serotonin	HPLC	Carcinoid syndrome
Serum VIP	RIA	VIPoma
Serum TSH, free T4	Immunoassay	Hyperthyroidism
Serum gastrin	RIA	Zollinger-Ellison syndrome
Serum calcitonin	RIA	Hypocalcemia-related diarrhea
Serum somatostatin	RIA	Somatostatinoma
Malabsorption		
Lactose tolerance test	See text	Lactase deficiency
Stool reducing sugars	Clinitest tablets	Carbohydrate intolerance
Sweat chloride	See text	Cystic fibrosis
D-Xylose absorption test	See text	Evaluate pancreatic and jejunal function
Fecal fat stain	Fat stain	Lipid malabsorption
Serum carotene	Spectrophotometry	Lipid malabsorption
^{14}C-glyceryl trioleate test malabsorption	See text	Lipid malabsorption
Serum IgA	Nephelometry	Rule out IgA deficiency
Antitissue transglutaminase antibody	EIA	Celiac disease
Hydrogen breath test	Electrochemical hydrogen monitorinomatography g	Carbohydrate malabsorption
Bacterial colony count	Small bowel aspirate and quantitative culture	Bacterial overgrowth
Other		
Serum ionized calcium	Ion-specific electrode	Hypocalcemia-related diarrhea
Serum protein and albumin	Nephelometry, photometry	IBD, protein-losing enteropathy
Stool alpha-1-antitrypsin	Nephelometry	Protein-losing enteropathy
Quantitative immunoglobulins	Nephelometry	Agammaglobulinemia
7α-Hydroxy-4-cholestin-3-one	HPLC	Bile salt malabsorption
Fecal elastase or pancreolauryl test	EIA	Pancreatic insufficiency
Intestinal biopsy	Endoscopic or open biopsy	Whipple's disease, MAI, abetalipoproteinemia, neoplasia, lymphoma, amyloidosis, eosinophilic gastroenteritis, agammaglobulinemia, intestinal lymphangiectasia, Crohn's disease, tuberculosis, graft-versus-host disease, *Giardia*, other parasitic infections, collagenous colitis, microscopic colitis
Extraintestinal causes	See text	Hyperthyroidism, diabetes, hypoparathyroidism, adrenal cortical insufficiency, hormone-secreting tumors

5-HIAA, 5-Hydroxyindoleacetic acid; *Ab*, antibody; *Ag*, amtigen; *EIA*, enzyme immunoassay; *HIV*, human immunodeficiency virus; *HPLC*, high-performance liquid chromatography; *IBD*, inflammatory bowel disease; *MAI*, *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare*; *PCR*, polymerase chain reaction; *RIA*, radioimmunoassay; *TSH*, thyroid-stimulating hormone; *VIP*, vasoactive intestinal peptide.

lactose—that is, a flat tolerance curve and less than 20 mg/dL (1.1 mmol/L) increase in blood sugar (Krasilnikoff et al, 1975). Delayed gastric emptying appears to be the cause of the false-positive result because duodenal instillation of lactose eliminates the flat tolerance curve.

With our increased understanding of the genetic basis of certain inherited disaccharidase deficiencies, the role of genetic testing has been investigated. When testing a saliva or serum sample could avoid sedation and instrumentation of an infant (for tissue diagnosis), it should be considered. A recent genetic analysis of infants with congenital sucrose-isomaltase (SI) deficiency suggests that genetic testing of saliva or serum for four specific mutations in the *SI* gene could lead to a valid diagnosis in 83% of these infant patients of European extraction (Uhrich et al, 2012).

Definitive diagnosis of disaccharidase deficiency depends on the demonstration of low specific enzyme activity in the mucosa of small intestinal biopsy material. An assay for disaccharidase has been published (Dahlqvist, 1968).

http://basicbook.net

Lactose Tolerance Test

A lactose tolerance test provides a presumptive diagnosis of lactase deficiency. In patients with alactasia or hypolactasia, whether primary or secondary to mucosal disease, oral lactose results in an insignificant rise in blood glucose. Following an overnight fast, a blood sample is drawn, and 50 g of lactose dissolved in 400 mL of water is orally administered. A 100-g lactose dose has been reported to yield more definitive results. Blood samples are collected at 30, 60, and 120 minutes after lactose ingestion. An optional 5-hour stool specimen can be collected, and its appearance, consistency, and pH noted.

Patients with lactase deficiency exhibit a peak rise of less than 20 mg/dL of reducing substances, expressed as glucose. In individuals with flat tolerance curves, the test should be repeated in 2 days and the less abnormal of the two curves used for interpretation. In patients with lactase deficiency, the nonabsorbed lactose, upon reaching the colon, is degraded to gas and lactic acid, which inhibits salt and water absorption, resulting in abdominal discomfort and diarrhea. In children, the oral dose of lactose or other sugars is 2 g/kg body weight. Lactase can also be detected in a mucosal biopsy specimen.

Secretory diarrhea is evoked by a variety of exogenous and endogenous secretagogues. The hypersecretion of isotonic fluid exceeds the absorptive capacity of the colon. Cholera toxin activates mucosal cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) that results in outpouring of vast quantities of salt and water in jejunum with normal structure. In Verner-Morrison syndrome (pancreatic cholera), vasoactive intestinal peptide also activates cAMP. Thus secretory diarrhea remains unrelieved despite fasting.

Diarrhea also occurs in hypergastrinemic states (e.g., ZE syndrome). Sustained hypersecretion of acid lowers intestinal pH, denatures pancreatic enzymes (causing steatorrhea), and precipitates bile salts (causing bile salt malabsorption); the latter induces water secretion in the colon. In patients with mastocytosis, excessive histamine release stimulates acid hypersecretion, but plasma gastrin concentrations remain low or normal. Gastrointestinal dysfunction caused by release of mast cell mediators can be observed in both cutaneous and systemic mastocytosis (Liu et al., 2010). Signs and symptoms include abdominal pain, diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, peptic ulcer disease, and GI bleeding. Diarrhea can result from increased motility induced by prostaglandin D_2 secretion or from decreased rectal compliance and overactive rectal contractility (Jensen, 2000).

Drug-Induced Diarrhea

Prokinetic agents (metoclopramide, domperidone, cisapride), proton pump inhibitors, and antibiotics (erythromycin and other macrolides) produce loose stools or diarrhea. Erythromycin binds motilin receptors on the GI smooth muscle membranes (motilin agonist). When used as a prokinetic agent, intravenous administration is more effective than oral dosage, and long-term use downregulates motilin receptors.

Other Causes of Diarrhea

Diarrhea may occur in patients with hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism, diabetes and adrenal insufficiency, tumors (villous adenoma, small bowel carcinoid), and infiltrative disorders (scleroderma, reactive amyloidosis, gut lymphoma). Ethanol abuse, ischemic bowel disease, and radiation enteritis also produce diarrhea. Heat-labile enterotoxin of *Escherichia coli* and toxins of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Clostridium perfringens* activate biochemical events that induce a secretory response.

Gut Peptides in Diarrhea

In acute infectious diarrheas, the plasma concentrations of glucagon, PYY, and motilin may be increased, contributing most likely to altered gut motility and promoting mucosal repair. Patients with Crohn's disease have an elevated pancreatic polypeptide, GIP, motilin, and glucagon, and in ulcerative colitis, a modest elevation is observed in pancreatic polypeptide, GIP, motilin, and gastrin, the last in response to the associated hypochlorhydria. No demonstrable abnormalities in gut peptides account for disordered motility in the irritable bowel syndrome.

Vasoactive Intestinal Peptide

VIPomas are rare tumors that secrete vasoactive intestinal polypeptide (VIP). VIP suppresses gastric acid secretion, resulting in secretory diarrhea with stool volume exceeding 700 mL/day in all patients (even during fasting) and 3 L/day in approximately 70%. The stools are tea-colored and odorless, with features of a secretory diarrhea such as persistence with fasting, high sodium concentration, and a low stool osmotic gap. Most patients with VIPoma have the watery diarrhea–hypokalemia–hypochlorhydria (WDHA) syndrome. The diagnosis of VIPoma is established by the presence of an otherwise unexplained high-volume secretory diarrhea and a serum VIP concentration in excess of 75 pg/mL. It is important to replace fluid losses in these patients, and octreotide may be used to control diarrhea.

Patients usually present between 30 and 50 years of age; 90% of cases are primary pancreatic tumors, most commonly arising in the body or tail. Metastatic spread has already occurred in 60% to 70% at presentation. Long-acting somatostatin analogs control symptoms in greater than 90% of cases (Kapoor et al, 2009).

Vasoactive intestinal peptide, released in response to gut distention, is a potent vasodilator and is responsible for the relaxation of vascular and nonvascular smooth muscle of the intestinal tract. It is also a potent stimulator of water and electrolyte secretion, acting through stimulation of cAMP. Similar to glucagons, VIP stimulates breakdown of glycogen and lipid stores and inhibits histamine-stimulated acid secretion in the stomach, resulting in hypochlorhydria or achlorhydria.

Laboratory evaluations for determination of VIP levels are clinically relevant for diagnosis of VIPomas. These VIP-secreting tumors, most commonly of pancreatic origin, account for 10% of neuroendocrine tumors of the gastrointestinal tract. Approximately 60% of VIPomas are malignant, and 6% are associated with MEN type 1. This syndrome was first described in 1958 by Verner and Morrison, and is characterized by WDHA.

VIPomas produce a severe, secretory diarrhea that has been termed *pancreatic cholera*. Diarrhea may be present for several years before the diagnosis of VIPoma. Patients typically produce more than 3 L of watery stools per day, although volume can be as high as 30 L/day. Diarrhea is not controlled with fasting, and an average secretion of 300 mmol of potassium per 24 hours occurs (Vinik, 2004). Stool volume of less than 700 mL/day excludes the diagnosis of VIPoma. If the diagnosis is missed or delayed, as is often the case, chronic diarrhea results in severe fluid and electrolyte imbalances that produce a myriad of clinical symptoms, the most severe of which is sudden death from cardiac arrhythmias resulting from electrolyte disturbances with potassium depletion and acidosis. The typical metabolic profile seen in these patients is hypokalemia with hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis. The diagnosis of VIPoma is made with confirmation of raised fasting VIP levels in association with secretory diarrhea and the presence of a lesion, most commonly located in the pancreas and associated with VIP production.

The biochemical assay of VIP is sensitive and specific. The normal value for circulating VIP levels is less than 170 pg/mL. For patients with functional VIP-secreting tumors, values range from 675 to 965 pg/mL (Thomas et al, 2003). Appropriate handling of the serum sample is critical for the accuracy of the VIP assay because VIP has a half-life of 1 minute. The serum must be added immediately to aprotinin, a protease inhibitor that prevents breakdown of VIP. The sample must be separated within 10 minutes and frozen to –20° C. Some of the non-VIP products of the precursor molecule are secreted at higher levels than VIP; however, commercially available assays are not available, and clinical utility has not been established. False-positive elevations of VIP can be observed in patients with small bowel ischemia or severe low-flow states resulting from diarrhea and subsequent dehydration not associated with VIP-producing lesions. In addition, the serum pancreatic polypeptide level should be determined at the time of the VIP assay; this value will be elevated if the VIPoma is located within the pancreas.

CT scan, MRI, and abdominal ultrasound are useful imaging modalities for VIPoma tumor localization. Angiography can be used to localize smaller tumors. Various nuclear scans have been utilized for localization of VIPomas, including ^{123}I VIP receptor scintigraphy, which is currently under investigation.

Antibiotic-Associated Diarrhea

This term is typically reserved for *Clostridium difficile*, a gram-positive, spore-forming anaerobic bacillus that is the most important cause of nosocomial diarrhea in adults; more than 300,000 cases are reported per year in the United States. *C. difficile* is thought to be associated with approximately 25% of all antibiotic-associated cases of diarrhea and 50% to 75% of cases involving antibiotic-associated colitis (Malnick & Zimhony, 2000). It represents a significant clinical burden in the United States, with recent inquiries of national databases revealing an increase in incidence over the last decade (Halabi et al, 2013; Pant et al, 2015). Halabi and colleagues queried the Nationwide Inpatient Sample and found over 2.5 million discharges of *C. difficile* colitis over the period from 2001 to 2010. Pant and colleagues queried the Nationwide Emergency Room Sample and found over half a million ER visits over half that time period, 2006 to 2010. They also found a 47% and 24% increase in the number of inpatients

http://basicbook.net

and emergency room visits, respectively, for this diagnosis over the study periods. Clearly, this is an important problem requiring clinical attention. It may manifest clinically, from a mild, watery diarrhea to life-threatening pseudomembranous colitis and toxic megacolon. This can lead to colonic perforation and peritonitis, with a mortality rate as high as 38% (Poutanen & Simor, 2004). Patients can present with watery diarrhea, lower abdominal pain/cramping, or systemic symptoms such as fever and malaise, or can have occult gastrointestinal bleeding. The pathogenesis of this disease entity usually involves disruption of the normal colonic flora, typically following a course of antibiotic therapy in hospitalized patients, followed by exposure to a toxigenic strain of *C. difficile*. Broad-spectrum antibiotics such as penicillin, clindamycin, and cephalosporins have been particularly implicated; however, any antibiotic can lead to development of *C. difficile* colitis (Malnick & Zimhony, 2000). Clinical suspicion of the disease is confirmed with detection of *C. difficile* toxin A or B virulence factors in stool samples. Toxins A and B lead to increased vascular permeability and have the potential to cause hemorrhage. They induce the production of tumor necrosis factor-α and inflammatory interleukins that are responsible for the inflammatory response and pseudomembrane formation (Poutanen & Simor, 2004).

Endoscopic visualization of the colonic mucosa is required for diagnosis of pseudomembranous colitis associated with *C. difficile*. However, endoscopy should be avoided in cases of suspected fulminant colitis because of the risk of perforation. Laboratory methods are available for confirmation of *C. difficile* infection. Tissue culture cytotoxicity assays, which take at least 48 hours to complete, are considered the gold standard for the detection of *C. difficile* cytotoxin B in stool specimens, with a sensitivity ranging between 94% and 100% and a specificity of approximately 99%. This tissue culture assay can detect as little as 10 pg of toxin in stool specimens. Rapid EIAs, which can be completed within several hours, have been developed for the detection of toxin A or B from stool specimens. However, the sensitivity and specificity of these immunoassays are 65% to 85% and 95% to 100%, respectively, compared with cytotoxic assays. The EIA can detect 100 to 1000 pg of toxin in stool specimens. In hospitalized patients with more than six stools per day, EIA is the optimal diagnostic test (Malnick & Zimhony, 2000). Stool cultures can also be performed but require up to 96 hours for completion. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) methods for detection of *C. difficile* toxin A or B are currently being developed with similar sensitivity and specificity profiles compared with cytotoxic assays (Poutanen & Simor, 2004). Traditional PCR techniques can still take 3 to 4 hours but have high sensitivities and specificities (83% to 95% and 97% to 99%, respectively) (Putsathit et al, 2015). Even more recently, automated PCR assays utilizing the Taq Man hybridization probe for the *tcdB* gene for Toxin B have cut down processing time to 10 minutes per 10 samples and maintain high sensitivities and specificities (94% to 97% and 97% to 99%, respectively) (Putsathit et al, 2015).

PCR is unable to distinguish between asymptomatic carriage and symptomatic infection. It is currently recommended that these tests be performed on diarrheal stools; in most cases, one stool sample is sufficient for the diagnosis of *C. difficile* infection (Poutanen & Simor, 2004). However, multiple samples may be required for confirmation, and empirical treatment with oral antibiotics may be indicated in patients with clinical evidence of *C. difficile* infection. Diarrheic stools can also be screened by an immunoassay for glutamate dehydrogenase antigen, a *C. difficile*–specific antigen, and those positive should be tested for toxins A and B (Fenner et al, 2008). Refer to Table 22-5 for laboratory tests available for the diagnosis of *C. difficile*–associated diarrhea.

TABLE 22-5
Laboratory Tests for the Diagnosis of *Clostridium difficile*–Associated Diarrhea

Test	Advantages	Disadvantages
Clostridium difficile cytotoxin assay	Excellent specificity (99% to 100%)	Decreased diagnostic sensitivity (80% to 90%); test results not available until after 48 hours; requires tissue culture facility; detects toxin B only
Immunoassay for glutamate dehydrogenase antigen (GDA) of *C. difficile*	High negative predictive value without additional tests	Toxin assay required because GDA does not distinguish toxigenic and nontoxigenic strains
Immunoassay for detection of toxin A or toxins A and B	Good specificity (95% to 100%); test results available within 4 hours; technically simple	Reduced sensitivity (65% to 85%) as compared with cytotoxin assay
Stool culture to isolate *C. difficile* with subsequent cytotoxin assay of isolate	Excellent sensitivity (>90%) and specificity (>98%); enables typing of strain for outbreak investigation	Results not available for at least 72-96 hours; labor-intensive; requires tissue culture facility
Nucleic acid amplification assay for toxigenic *C. difficile*	Excellent sensitivity (93% to 100%); useful in confirmation of results of GDA or toxin immunoassays	Useful only in acute disease; false positives of concern

Adapted from Poutanen SM, Simor AE: *Clostridium difficile*–associated diarrhea in adults, *Can Med Assoc J* 171:51–58, 2004; Fenner L, et al: Rapid and reliable diagnostic algorithm for detection of *Clostridium difficile*, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:328–330, 2008; Surawicz CM, et al: Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of *Clostridium difficile* infections, *Am J Gastroenterol* 108:478–498, 2013.

HIV-Related Diarrhea

Diarrheal disease in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)–infected individuals is frequently caused by infectious agents but may also be due to infiltrative diseases, such as lymphoma or Kaposi's sarcoma. Common enteric pathogens with sufficient virulence that cause disease in healthy hosts can also cause diarrheal disease in HIV-infected individuals with intact or compromised immunologic function. Less virulent pathogens such as *Cryptosporidium parvum*, which appear to require some immune compromise to establish disease, are more common in patients with more advanced HIV infection or acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).

Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare complex (MAC) is predominantly associated with lung infection in immunocompetent patients. MAC may also produce disseminated disease with bowel infiltration and malabsorption in patients with severe immune compromise and should be considered in the differential diagnosis. In these cases, blood should also be obtained in fungal isolator tubes for culture.

In patients with HIV, it is important to ascertain the nature and chronicity of symptoms and the CD4 cell count. Patients with CD4 cell counts less than 100 cells per microliter are at risk for opportunistic infections that are typically chronic, such as *C. parvum*, MAC, cytomegalovirus, *Isospora belli*, or microsporidia.

An epidemiologic history with a focus on travel history (*Entamoeba histolytica*, *Giardia lamblia*), sexual exposure (history of unprotected anal intercourse suggesting transmission of herpes simplex virus, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, or, occasionally, *E. histolytica*), and food associations (lactose intolerance) should be sought. In patients who are taking highly active antiretroviral therapy, medication-induced diarrhea (nelfinavir, ritonavir) should be considered, particularly when diarrhea is the sole presenting symptom. *Clostridium difficile* should be considered because most patients with HIV are given antibiotics for the treatment of various infections (Sanchez et al, 2005).

Malabsorption Syndromes

Malabsorption is the pathologic state of impaired nutrient absorption in the gastrointestinal tract. Normal nutrient absorption occurs in three steps: luminal and brush border processing, absorption into the intestinal mucosa, and transport into the circulation. Disruption in any one or a combination of these steps can result in inadequate mucosal absorption of carbohydrates, proteins, fats, vitamins, or minerals. Malabsorption can also result from the presence of substances in the bowel that cannot be absorbed (e.g., lactulose, sorbitol). Maldigestion results from an intraluminal defect that leads to the incomplete breakdown of nutrients into their absorbable substrates. This can occur with pancreatic insufficiency and loss of exocrine function, resulting in increased osmotic load of the colon and diarrhea. In addition, patients can have selective malabsorption/maldigestion of specific nutrients, resulting in associated clinical sequelae. Irrespective of the cause, diarrhea, especially steatorrhea, is the most common feature of malabsorption.

Hepatic maldigestion results from interference or obstruction of bile flow. Loss of bile salts interferes with fat emulsification, diminishing the surface area available for lipolytic action. In addition, bile salt activation

http://basicbook.net

of lipase activity is lost. Patients are usually jaundiced, pass dark urine, and have other signs of liver disease. Hepatic steatorrhea may coexist with pancreatic steatorrhea, as in patients with a neoplasm obstructing the ampulla of Vater. The inability to assimilate fats and proteins due to maldigestion also occurs in patients with vasculitis, diabetes mellitus, carcinoid syndrome, hypogammaglobulinemia, and relative vitamin B_6 or B_{12} deficiency.

Enteric malabsorption comprises a variety of conditions that have in common normal digestion but inadequate net assimilation of nutrients. This may result from competition by bacteria or altered bacterial flora, as in the blind loop syndrome or diverticulosis of the small bowel, or from obstruction to the flow of lymph. It may also result from diseases affecting the small bowel mucosa, such as amyloidosis, inflammation following irradiation (radiation enteritis), diminished mucosal surface area as in gastroileostomy (gastric bypass), or small bowel resection. Depending on the location within the intestinal tract of such pathology, preferential loss of specific substrates may occur. One of the most common clinical scenarios encountered is regional enteritis localized to the distal ileum, the site of vitamin B_{12} and bile salt absorption, which will result in vitamin B_{12} deficiency, as well as a decreased pool of circulating bile salts for metabolism.

Steatorrhea is a hallmark finding in patients with malabsorption, resulting in fluid, semifluid, or soft and pasty, pale, bulky, and foul-smelling stools. These stools may be foamy because of the high fat content and may float on water. However, the latter may occur with stools from healthy individuals and therefore is a nonspecific sign of malabsorption.

In patients with steatorrhea, unabsorbed fecal dietary fat is passed in stools above and beyond the normal 1% to 9%, along with as much as 40% of ingested fat. The quantity of fecal fat depends on the dietary fat intake. Thus dietary fat intake must be known for proper interpretation of fecal fat, which is expressed as the percentage of dietary fat, allowing assessment of variation in an individual patient. Normally, greater than 93% of dietary fat is absorbed, but diarrhea of any cause may lead to a slight increase in fecal fat content.

Another clinical presentation of malabsorption is the development of fat-soluble vitamin (A, D, E, and K) deficiencies. Primary and secondary alterations of the bowel mucosa may also result in deficiencies of water-soluble vitamins. Other evidence of nutritional deficiencies, such as hypoprothrombinemia, glossitis, anemia, edema, ascites, and osteomalacia, may be evident in these individuals. These patients may experience significant weight loss due to diarrhea, leading to cachexia in severe cases.

Quantitative fecal fat measurement has many limitations and should be abandoned (Holmes & Hill, 1988; Hill, 2001). Sample collection is known to be incomplete (Ditchburn et al, 1971; West et al, 1981). Also, there is poor precision in the analytic performance, making interpretation uncertain (Duncan & Hill, 1998). Newer tests provide improved sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis of malabsorption (Hill, 2001): ^{14}C-glycerol trioleate breath test (Turner et al, 1987) and mixed-chain triglyceride breath test are widely available (Vantrappen et al, 1989; Amarri et al, 1997). However, these tests have limited reliability in diabetes, obesity, hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism, and chronic respiratory insufficiency and should not be performed in pregnancy.

The test is based on the measurement of $^{14}CO_2$ in expired air following the ingestion of various ^{14}C-labeled triglycerides (triolein, tripalmitin, and trioctanoin). Steatorrhea from pancreatic insufficiency or other causes results in decreased absorption of triglycerides. This in turn results in a decrease in expired carbon dioxide (CO_2) derived through the metabolism of triglyceride fatty acids.

After an overnight fast, the patient consumes ^{14}C-labeled triglyceride. Periodically, breath CO_2 is collected in a trapping solution containing an indicator that changes color when a predetermined amount of CO_2 is in solution. The radioactivity of the $^{14}CO_2$ is then measured in a liquid scintillation counter, and the results are reported as a percentage of the dose of $^{14}CO_2$ excreted per hour.

To distinguish pancreatic insufficiency from other causes of steatorrhea, some investigators have developed a two-stage breath test (Goff, 1982). In the first stage of the test, the patient consumes a ^{14}C-labeled triglyceride, and $^{14}CO_2$ is measured as previously described. The second stage of the test is performed 5 to 7 days later and is the same as the first stage, except that the patient is given an oral dose of pancreatic enzymes along with the dose of ^{14}C-labeled triglyceride. In patients with steatorrhea due to pancreatic insufficiency, the amount of $^{14}CO_2$ expired should increase relative to the amount of $^{14}CO_2$ expired in the first stage of the test. Patients with steatorrhea from other causes should show no significant change in the amount of $^{14}CO_2$ expired following the oral administration of pancreatic enzymes.

Agammaglobulinemia

X-linked agammaglobulinemia is a primary humoral immunodeficiency characterized by recurrent bacterial infection of the respiratory tract and increased susceptibility to enteroviral infection. Absence of humoral immunity makes the patient susceptible to bacterial gastroenteritis.

Abetalipoproteinemia

Abetalipoproteinemia is a rare autosomal recessive disorder that is characterized by defective assembly and secretion of apolipoprotein B (apoB) and apoB-containing lipoproteins, resulting from mutations in the gene encoding the microsomal triglyceride transfer protein; the serum β lipoprotein is absent. Abetalipoproteinemia causes defective absorption of lipids. Patients may have neurologic manifestations, acanthocytes, fat malabsorption, steatorrhea, and associated fat-soluble vitamin deficiencies (Gregg et al., 1994).

Tests for Steatorrhea

Screening tests for detection of steatorrhea include microscopic examination of feces for fat globules and determination of serum carotenoid. Carotenoids are a group of compounds that are the major precursors of vitamin A in humans. Absorption of carotenoids in the intestines depends on the presence of dietary fat. Because carotenoids are not stored in the body to any appreciable degree, lack of carotenoids in the diet or disturbances in absorption of lipids from the intestine can result in decreasing levels of serum carotenoid. This is a simple and useful screening test for steatorrhea. In addition to steatorrhea and poor dietary intake, liver disease and high fever may cause a low level of serum carotenoid. Elevated serum carotenoid levels are seen in patients with hypothyroidism, diabetes, hyperlipidemia, and excessive intake of carotene.

Tests for Malabsorption

When a diagnosis of malabsorption is being entertained, it is important to distinguish pancreatic maldigestion from enteric malabsorption. In children, the main cause of pancreatic malabsorption is CF, and the sweat chloride determination should be used when clinical evidence warrants it. Screening tests based on absent stool trypsin have also been used. One of the most valuable differential diagnostic tests, especially in adults, is the D-xylose absorption test.

The cellobiose-mannitol sugar permeability test and the lactulose-mannitol test have been used in the diagnosis of celiac disease. Modern evaluation of this disorder has been described earlier. Isotopic techniques and the starch tolerance test have been used as alternatives to the D-xylose test. Quantitative specific fecal trypsin and chymotrypsin assays may be helpful, as may the Schilling test for vitamin B_{12} absorption, which tends to be abnormal in patients with enteric steatorrhea in whom the abnormality is not correctable with intrinsic factor. Endoscopy, radiologic studies, and biopsy have replaced these methods in many cases.

Fecal Elastase. Elastase-1 is a proteolytic enzyme produced by the pancreas. Pancreatic elastase survives intestinal transit intact and is five- to sixfold concentrated in the feces (Lankisch, 2004). Reduced pancreatic elastase-1 in feces indicates pancreatic insufficiency in infants older than 2 weeks of age with CF and in older children with the disorder (Phillips et al, 1999; Cade et al, 2000; Leus et al, 2000).

This EIA is unaffected by pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy. Although sensitive for detection of severe pancreatic insufficiency, it lacks sensitivity for detection of milder forms. Fecal elastase is better than fecal chymotrypsin, para-aminobenzoic acid, bentiromide, and pancreolauryl tests (Lankisch, 2004). Single analysis of a 100-mg stool sample is adequate for determination of fecal elastase levels. If borderline values are detected, a repeat sample may be useful. This test should be performed only on formed stool. With a cutoff of 200 μg/g stool, the positive predictive value of fecal elastase determination is estimated to be approximately 50% (Lüth et al, 2001).

Xylose Absorption Test. The D-xylose absorption test is a valuable test for the differential diagnosis of malabsorption. In this procedure, a 25-g dose of pentose sugar in water is administered orally, and the amount excreted in urine over a 5-hour period is determined. If the amount excreted is less than 3 g, the diagnosis is most likely enterogenous malabsorption, because pancreatic enzymes are not required for absorption of D-xylose. D-Xylose is passively absorbed in the small intestine and is not metabolized by the liver, although a portion of an orally or intravenously administered dose is destroyed. The accuracy of the method depends not only on the rate of absorption of D-xylose but also on the rate of renal excretion. Therefore, in patients with renal disease, xylose should be quantified in blood 2 hours after its oral administration

http://basicbook.net

because urine values are difficult to interpret in the absence of reference values.

Isotopic techniques and the starch tolerance test have been used as alternatives to the D-xylose test. Quantitative specific fecal trypsin and chymotrypsin assays may be helpful, as may the Schilling test, which is used to assess the function of the terminal ileum. An oral dose of radioactive vitamin B_{12} is followed by an intramuscular large dose of nonradioactive vitamin B_{12}, and radioactivity in urine is measured. Urinary radioactivity reflects the absorbed amount of vitamin B_{12}. A repeat test to diagnose pernicious anemia or gastric pathology in a patient with steatorrhea involves coadministration of intrinsic factor and vitamin B_{12}. An abnormal result indicates ileal disease.

Laxative Abuse

Surreptitious laxative abuse is a frequently overlooked cause of chronic diarrhea and is the final diagnosis for chronic diarrhea in 15% to 26% of patients at referral centers (Bytzer et al, 1989; Duncan et al, 1992). In Munchausen's syndrome by proxy, adults administered laxatives surreptitiously to young children (Duncan, 2000). The main prerequisite for making the diagnosis of surreptitious laxative abuse is clinical suspicion. Analysis of urine and fecal samples taken during diarrhea is necessary. Phenolphthalein is less frequently found since over-the-counter sales were banned. Senna, aloin, and cascara are colonic stimulants that are abused and can be detected by thin-layer chromatography.

Celiac Disease

Celiac disease (gluten-sensitive enteropathy) is a disorder precipitated, in genetically predisposed individuals, by the ingestion of gluten, the major storage protein of wheat and similar grains, characterized by intestinal malabsorption of nutrients due to sensitivity to the alcohol-soluble portion of gluten known as gliadin. Wheat, rye, and barley contain this protein and can induce mucosal damage in the gut, causing nonspecific villous atrophy of the small intestinal mucosa. Celiac disease does not develop unless a person has alleles that encode for HLA-DQ2 or HLA-DQ8 proteins, products of two of the human leukocyte antigen genes. This genetic predisposition is most common in Caucasians of Northern European descent. The prevalence is not clear but is estimated to be as high as 1% in some countries, and the condition is being increasingly recognized (Green & Cellier, 2007; Sabatino & Corazza, 2009).

Some patients remain asymptomatic, but an astute clinician may suspect this disorder when patients present with thin stature, iron deficiency anemia, weight loss, chronic bloating, and/or diarrhea. In severe cases, one may see malabsorption, steatorrhea, and wasting. Associations have been noted between celiac disease and type 1 diabetes mellitus, Down syndrome, dermatitis herpetiformis, IgA deficiency, autoimmune thyroid disease, and other disorders (Barr & Grehan, 1998). Because of enteropathy associated with the disorder, multiple hematologic and biochemical abnormalities may be found in persons with untreated celiac disease, including deficiencies of iron, folate, or vitamin D. The peripheral blood film may reveal nonspecific target cells, siderocytes, crenated red cells, Howell-Jolly bodies, and Heinz bodies. Similarly, small bowel absorptive testing will be abnormal, including oral D-xylose testing and fecal fat evaluation.

The gold standard for diagnosis remains histologic examination of multiple biopsies of the affected small bowel mucosa for the identification of villous atrophy and crypt hyperplasia. The lesions may be patchy, and sampling errors can occur (Green & Cellier, 2007; Ensari, 2010). Biopsy is reserved for patients in whom the diagnosis is suspected on the basis of signs or symptoms of the disease, especially in higher-risk populations with supporting serologic findings. These patients must be maintained on a gluten-free diet for the rest of their lives to control symptoms and mitigate cancer risk (Table 22-6).

In current clinical practice, four serologic studies are used to assist in the diagnosis of celiac disease. These include testing for antibodies to gliadin (AGA-IgA and AGA-IgG), endomysium (EMA-IgA), reticulin (ARA-IgA), and transglutaminase (tTG-IgA), all of which are commercially available. Results of serologic testing for celiac disease must be analyzed with caution because this disease is associated with selective IgA deficiency that will give rise to false-negative serum IgA antibody tests (Thomas et al., 2003). Transient IgA deficiency may be seen in patients on phenytoin, penicillamine, or sulfasalazine. Therefore, total IgA levels should be checked or specific IgG serology performed if there is a high clinical suspicion of celiac disease. The sensitivity and specificity of these tests are extremely high when compared with a gold standard of flattened small bowel villi responding to dietary changes (Farrell & Kelly, 2001). Endomysial antibodies have the best sensitivity and specificity, but they are currently detected via immunofluorescence of sections of monkey esophagus or human umbilical cord and are costly, cumbersome, and subject to interobserver interpretive variability.

TABLE 22-6
Biomarkers in the Diagnosis of Celiac Disease and Monitoring Compliance to Gluten-Free Diet

Biomarker	Method	Comments
Antireticulin antibodies—IgG/IgA	IFA (rat kidney)	Lack optimal sensitivity and specificity for routine diagnostic use
Total IgA	Quantitative nephelometry	Useful in ruling out IgA deficiency; specific IgG antibodies need to be tested in IgA-deficient individuals
Antigliadin antibodies—IgG/IgA	Quantitative EIA	Low sensitivity and specificity; useful in monitoring dietary compliance
Antideaminated gliadin antibodies—IgG/IgA	Quantitative EIA	Inferior performance relative to other diagnostic assays
Antiendomysial antibodies—IgG/IgA	IFA (rhesus monkey esophagus; human umbilical cord)	High sensitivity and specificity in CD; observer bias limits usefulness
Antitissue glutaminase—IgG/IgA	Quantitative EIA	Assays using purified human or recombinant human tTG are more sensitive than those using guinea pig tTG; useful in both diagnosis and monitoring dietary compliance
HLA-DQ2/HLA-DQ8	PCR-based assays	High negative predictive value; not affected by dietary gluten; found in ≈30% of general population

Wheat storage protein, gliadin, is available to be used as an antigen in an EIA. Although serum IgA and IgG AGA levels are frequently elevated in untreated celiac disease, these tests are of only moderate sensitivity and specificity. IgG AGA testing is particularly useful in the 2% of patients with celiac disease who appear to be IgA deficient. However, these tests have largely been replaced by EMA. EMA binds to connective tissue surrounding smooth muscle cells. Most laboratories use sections of human umbilical cord. Serum IgA EMA binds to the endomysium to produce a characteristic staining pattern seen on indirect immunofluorescence. The antibody is highly sensitive and specific. However, after treatment, the titers fall quickly to undetectable levels (Volta et al., 1995). The epitope against which EMA is directed has been shown to be tissue transglutaminase. Use of IgA anti-tTG assays has been shown to be highly sensitive and specific for the diagnosis of celiac disease (Dieterich et al., 1998). An EIA for IgA anti-tTG is widely available, less costly, and easier to perform than the older immunofluorescence assays for IgA EMA.

Antigliadin antibody serology is best avoided in the diagnosis of celiac disease because of frequent false positives. A second generation of antigliadin antibody test based on the potentiation of toxic gliadin peptides by tTG enzymatic activity is used to monitor dietary compliance. These IgA and IgG deamidated gliadin peptide (DGP) assays appear similar to tTG IgA or IgG in diagnostic accuracy, leading to the belief that strongly positive tTG IgA in conjunction with positive DGP serology may be used as confirmation of celiac disease without the need for biopsy histology.

Although IgG endomysium and IgG tTG antibodies may be suitable for serologic diagnosis of celiac disease, they cannot be used to monitor the response to dietary modification. Endomysium IgA antibodies disappear following treatment of celiac sprue with a gluten-free diet.

The HLA-DQ2 allele is identified in 90% to 95% of patients with celiac disease and HLA-DQ8 in most of the remaining patients. These alleles occur in 30% to 40% of the general population, and the absence of these alleles is important for its high negative predictive value. Thus the

http://basicbook.net

presence of HLA-DQ2 and HLA-DQ8 is important for determining which family members should be screened with serologic testing (Kaukinen et al, 2002). Uncontrolled celiac disease appears to predispose patients to intestinal carcinomas and lymphomas (Nehra, 1998).

Whipple's Disease

Whipple's disease is a rare multisystem disease that often presents with arthralgias, diarrhea, malabsorption, and weight loss. It is predominantly found in males, and about 15% of patients do not present with classical signs and symptoms of this disease (Fenollar et al, 2007). It is caused by *Tropheryma whipplei*, a bacillus that does not stain well with Gram stain, although it is classified with gram-positive bacteria based on 16S rRNA sequencing (Marth & Raoult, 2003). This disorder can affect the central nervous system and cause endocarditis. Demonstration of periodic acid–Schiff (PAS)–positive material in the lamina propria and villous atrophy of the small intestine are diagnostic. A prothrombin time should be checked before biopsy because of the frequent occurrence of vitamin K malabsorption.

T. whipplei has been cultured from the stools of a patient with Whipple's disease, using a specific axenic medium and specific techniques (Raoult et al., 2006). PCR testing of infected tissue or cerebrospinal fluid has been used to confirm the diagnosis and monitor treatment (von Herbay et al, 1997). Biopsy of the duodenum with PAS staining had been considered pathognomonic for Whipple's disease. It is now recognized that PAS-positive macrophages may be seen in AIDS patients with *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* complex. Thus PCR has gained even more importance in the management of this entity. Long-term antibiotic therapy with central nervous system penetration is used to treat patients with Whipple's disease (Ramzan et al, 1997; Singer, 1998).

Inflammatory Bowel Disease

Immunologic mechanisms within the colon are involved in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. The underlying antigenic challenge to the immunologic response is not clearly understood. Over the past decade, two antibody tests have become available that assist in the laboratory evaluation of patients with inflammatory bowel disease (Rutgeerts & Vermeire, 2000). The combination of clinical findings, endoscopy, radiologic imaging, and blood work may help differentiate the subtypes of inflammatory bowel disease. Perinuclear-antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (p-ANCA) and anti–*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* antibody (ASCA) can be used to help distinguish abdominal pain seen in irritable bowel syndrome from inflammatory bowel disease and can help distinguish ulcerative colitis from Crohn's disease (Sendid et al., 1998; Shanahan, 1994) (Table 22-7). These tests have limitations, and interpretation requires careful understanding of the tests. Although few normal persons with irritable bowel syndrome will have ANCA, 70% of persons with ulcerative colitis and 20% of persons with Crohn's disease will have significant titers. Among patients with inflammatory bowel disease, 65% of those with Crohn's disease will have ASCA, whereas only 20% of patients with ulcerative colitis will have significant titers. Given their low sensitivity and specificity, use of these tests should be dependent on the clinical circumstance. For example, a person with diarrhea and equivocal biopsy findings found to have a positive ANCA is more likely to have inflammatory bowel disease than irritable bowel syndrome. Likewise, if a person with what appears to be ulcerative colitis is found to have a positive ASCA, Crohn's colitis may be present.

GASTROINTESTINAL TUMORS

Pancreatic Adenocarcinoma

Ductal adenocarcinomas of the exocrine pancreas are malignant epithelial tumors composed of mucin-producing glandular structures. They constitute 85% of all pancreatic tumors and are the fourth most frequent cause of death from cancer. They originate in small ducts and progress from noninvasive pancreatic intraepithelial lesions to invasive cancers.

Precursor lesions for pancreatic adenocarcinoma include intraepithelial pancreatic mucinous neoplasms (IPMNs) and pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PanIN) (Hruban et al, 2005; Distler et al, 2014). PanIN is the most common of these precursor lesions. First described in 1998, PanIN are a series of histological descriptions of lesions initially found in close proximity to invasive adenocarcinoma (Brat et al, 1998). This series traces the progression and development of exocrine pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma from normal pancreatic ductal epithelium through PanIN grades 1-A, 1-B, 2, 3, and then to infiltrating pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (Recavarren et al, 2011). Histologically, this is manifested by changes from low-columnar or cuboidal epithelium with normal nuclei to papillary and micropapillary architecture with nuclear irregularities, abnormal mitoses, and luminal necrosis. Ki-67 staining also increases with PanIN grade (Klein et al, 2002).

Little change in their incidence or survival rate has been seen in the past 20 years; 5-year survival is less than 5%. A slight male predominance has been noted, especially in younger age groups. This is a disease mostly of late life; 80% of patients are 60 to 80 years of age, although cases in the third decade are not uncommon. This cancer is more common in African Americans and Native Americans. A two- to threefold greater risk has been reported among cigarette smokers. Patients with chronic pancreatitis and diabetes mellitus are at increased risk. High intake of meat and fat appears to be a risk factor, as well as intake of nitrosamines and polycyclic hydrocarbons. The neoplastic mechanism remains obscure.

Clinical presentation depends largely on the location of the tumor: 60% arise in the head, often with painless jaundice; 10% in the body and 10% in the tail are often silent until quite large or widely disseminated; 20% are diffuse at presentation. Familial clusters have been reported, but no distinct genetic abnormality has been described.

The ampullary region is invaded by carcinomas of the head of the pancreas, causing bile duct obstruction. Acute painless dilation of the gallbladder (Courvoisier's sign) and jaundice occur as the result of common bile duct obstruction by tumor in most cases. Carcinomas of the body and tail do not impinge on the biliary tract. Migratory thrombophlebitis (Trousseau's sign) develops in 10% of patients with pancreatic cancer, especially those with tumors of the body and tail, probably because of platelet-aggregating factors and procoagulants from the tumor. Anorexia, conspicuous weight loss, and gnawing epigastric pain that radiates to the back are frequent clinical features.

Early diagnosis of pancreatic carcinoma is unusual. These tumors are typically silent until they impinge on a vital structure or on the posterior wall of the abdomen and then cause severe pain. Pain is usually the first symptom. Less than 20% of the tumors are resectable at the time of presentation.

No morphologic difference is known between carcinomas of the head of the pancreas and those of the body and tail. These tumors are usually moderately or poorly differentiated mucin-producing adenocarcinomas. They have abortive tubular structures and dense stromal fibrosis and aggressive infiltrative growth, often with perineural invasion. Tumor cells are cuboidal or columnar and are usually poorly differentiated. The adjacent pancreatic parenchyma often demonstrates foci of ductal dysplasia and intraductal tumor growth.

Point mutations in *KRAS* and in *p16* are found in more than 90% of cases, and mutations in *p53* cause inactivation in 50% to 70% of cases. Both carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) and CA 19-9 (tumor marker for pancreatic cancer) are elevated in some pancreatic adenocarcinomas. According to the most recent guidelines from the American Society of Clinical Oncology, clinicians are advised to use these tumor markers very cautiously (Locker et al, 2006). CA 19-9 is not recommended as a marker for screening for pancreatic cancer, nor for determination of operability. Routine use of CA 19-9 is not recommended for monitoring treatment response. However, it can be measured at the initiation of treatment and then every 1 to 3 months thereafter. An elevation should prompt investigation for advanced metastatic disease. However, their increases can be used to monitor for recurrence (Table 22-8).

Neuroendocrine Tumors

Gastroenteropathic neuroendocrine tumors (GEP-NET) are relatively rare neoplasms with varied clinical manifestations. Abdominal pain and diarrhea are two of the more common clinical symptoms. *Carcinoid tumor* was the term chosen, more than 100 years ago, to distinguish these tumors from carcinomas of the GI tract. Because these tumors are rare, they were lumped together. Recently, with greater knowledge of their development

TABLE 22-7
Markers for Inflammatory Bowel Disease

	FREQUENCY (%)	
	p-ANCA	ASCA
Irritable bowel syndrome (normal patients)	<5	<5
Ulcerative colitis	70	15
Crohn's disease	20	65

ASCA, Anti–*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* antibody; *p-ANCA,* perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody.

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 22-8
Pancreatic Cancer–Associated Genetic Syndromes

Genetic Syndrome	Gene(s)	Pancreatic Cancer Risk Increase	Histopathologic Features
Hereditary breast and ovarian cancer syndrome	*BRCA2* *BRCA1*	3.5- to 10-fold 2-fold	Ductal adenocarcinoma
Peutz-Jeghers syndrome	*STK11/LKB1*	132-fold	Intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm
Familial adenomatous polyposis	*APC*	Up to 4-fold	Ductal adenocarcinoma, intraductal papillary neoplasm, pancreatoblastoma
Familial atypical multiple melanoma	*CDKN2A*	13- to 22-fold	Ductal adenocarcinoma
Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer syndrome	Mismatch repair genes	Increased	Medullary carcinoma
Hereditary pancreatitis	*PRSS1* *SPINK1*	53-fold	Ductal adenocarcinoma
Familial pancreatic cancer	Unknown	9- to 32-fold	

From Shi C, Hruban RH, Klein AP: Familial pancreatic cancer, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 133:365–374, 2009.

and biological behavior, the World Health Organization classification of GEP-NET was published in 2000. Specific markers of normal and neoplastic neuroendocrine cells are the hormones that occur in the GEP system. The organ in which a certain hormone-producing tumor develops appears to make a difference (e.g., the differing malignant potential of duodenal compared with pancreatic gastrinoma) (Klöppel et al., 2004). These tumors exhibit amine precursor uptake and decarboxylation (APUD) and are therefore known as APUDomas. Cells of the GEP-NET belong to the system of disseminated neuroendocrine cells called APUD cells. These cells are scattered throughout the mucosa of the GI tract and the islets of the pancreas. Insulinomas and gastrinomas are the most common pancreatic endocrine tumors. Glucagonomas are rare and make up 2% to 5% of series. Other, even rarer types, such as somatostatinomas and VIPomas, have been identified (Perr & Vinik, 1996). Chemical measurement of the secretagogues of these tumors generally suggests the diagnosis in the right clinical setting.

Localizing these tumors can be challenging. Ultrasonography, CT scanning, MRI, endoscopy, angiography, and octreotide scanning all have significant technical limitations. With the exception of ultrasonography and MRI, potential morbidity can result from the testing as well. Somatostatin receptor scintigraphy (SRS) is widely used in the evaluation of GEP-NETs (Warner & O'dorisio, 2002) and is a useful tool in the armamentarium of the diagnostician. The underlying basis of this imaging modality is that NETs have a greater density of SSTRs on the cell surface. As such, this diagnostic modality is value-added in utility because it can identify those patients who would be susceptible to therapy with SST analogs. The SST analogs used in SRS typically have high affinity for receptor subtypes SSTR2 and SSTR5, low affinity for SSTR3, and no affinity for SSTR1 and SSTR4 (Sclafani et al, 2011). These tumors are often small, frequently are multifocal, and can be located in a variety of organs. They can be malignant or benign. They are similar on histologic examination, so histologic staining is used to distinguish the types (Perry & Vinik, 1996). A recent retrospective analysis comparing SRS positivity with IHC analysis of SSTR2 and SSTR5 expression discovered a high concordance rate (70%) but a nonnegligible (50%) number of SRS-negative tumors that stained positively for SSTR2. This subpopulation of patients is important because they may be susceptible to radiopharamaceuticals (Sclafani et al, 2011). These findings highlight the fact that, as with all neoplastic lesions, biopsy is essential to confirm the diagnosis.

GEP-NETs make up about 10% of pancreatic neoplasms and are classified as functioning or nonfunctioning tumors. These tumors are single or multiple, and benign or malignant. They are often solitary, circumscribed lesions, amenable to surgical resection. Immunohistochemistry is needed for demonstration of endocrine activity. Hormone assays are useful for the diagnosis of pancreatic endocrine tumors (Modlin & Tang, 1997; Eriksson et al, 2000; Barakat et al, 2004).

Cytologic criteria are unreliable in diagnosis. The diagnosis of malignancy requires demonstration of metastases and vascular or tissue invasion. These tumors are often slow growing. Functioning tumors cause recognizable clinical syndromes due to excess peptide hormone secretion. Nonfunctioning tumors have a worse prognosis and typically present with metastases or local symptoms.

GI endocrine tumors may be part of the syndrome of MEN 1 with parathyroid disease and pituitary and pancreatic tumors. Islet cell tumors may secrete various normal hormones that are not ordinarily produced in the pancreas, including adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), parathyroid hormone, calcitonin, and vasopressin.

Insulinoma

Insulinomas are derived from β cells and produce insulin that induces clinically significant hypoglycemia. Factitious disease due to exogenous insulin is part of the differential diagnosis. Insulinomas are usually found in the pancreas and are typically small and solitary and often contain amyloid; 10% are malignant. Diagnosis is made by demonstrating elevated plasma insulin associated with hypoglycemia and measurement of C-peptide. C-peptide is equimolar to insulin and is needed to exclude increases in insulin from exogenous sources.

Gastrinoma

Gastrinomas are gastrin-secreting non–β cell pancreatic tumors that cause a syndrome of intractable peptic ulcer disease and gastric acid hypersecretion. Gastrin binds cholecystokinin-B receptors on parietal cells of the stomach to stimulate acid secretion and also has a trophic effect on gastric mucosal parietal and enterochromaffin-like cells, causing mucosal hypertrophy (McIntyre et al, 2002). The mean age at onset is 50 years, with male preponderance. At the time of diagnosis, 70% to 90% of the tumors are malignant with metastases or local invasion. Up to 60% of gastrinomas are associated with MEN 1, and about one-half of MEN 1 patients develop gastrinomas. Most gastrinomas arise in the gastrinoma triangle: duodenum, pancreatic head, and hepatoduodenal ligament.

Gastrin is not usually detected in the adult pancreas but is present in the fetal pancreas. Gastrinomas induce peptic ulcer disease refractory to treatment, esophagitis, and diarrhea. High levels of plasma gastrin are noted with high basal gastric acid secretion. Increased gastrin levels are also caused by gastric atrophy and by acid antisecretory drugs such as H_2 blockers. Some gastrinoma patients are hypercalcemic because of PTH-related protein production or because patients with MEN 1 may develop hyperparathyroidism. About 50% of patients with gastrinomas have metastases, mainly to the liver and nodes. The 5-year survival is 20% with liver metastases, and without metastases, 80% will survive for 5 years.

Gastrinomas can cause high-volume diarrhea through an increased rate of gastric acid secretion, resulting in a volume that cannot be fully reabsorbed. The acid exceeds the neutralizing capacity of the pancreatic bicarbonate and inactivates the pancreatic digestive enzymes; this interferes with the emulsification of fat by bile salts, resulting in steatorrhea. A secretory component to the diarrhea has also been observed. Diagnosis is established by measuring serum gastrin levels; a level greater than 1000 pg/mL is virtually diagnostic. The secretin stimulation test can differentiate patients with gastrinomas from those with the many other causes of hypergastrinemia; this test should be performed in every patient suspected to have the ZE syndrome who has a nondiagnostic fasting serum gastrin concentration (Berna et al, 2006).

Glucagonoma

This is a rare tumor, mostly of pancreatic origin, that secretes glucagon (α cells), which induces glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis in the liver and raises blood glucose levels. It causes a syndrome of mild diabetes,

http://basicbook.net

necrotizing migratory erythematous rash, anemia, and venous thrombosis, and it is associated with severe infection. Onset occurs at 40 to 70 years of age, with slight female predominance (Bloom & Polak, 1987). These are large, locally invasive tumors that histologically resemble trabecular and solid patterns of insulinomas; two thirds are malignant. Plasma glucagon levels are elevated up to 30 times above normal.

Somatostatinoma

These usually solitary tumors are derived from δ cells that produce somatostatin, which inhibits pituitary release of growth hormone and secretion by α, β, and δ cells. This peptide also regulates glucose homeostasis and causes a syndrome of mild diabetes, gallstones, steatorrhea, and hypochlorhydria, due to the inhibitory effect of somatostatin on the other islet and gastrointestinal neuroendocrine cells (Krejs et al., 1979). Somatostatin measurement in a fasting serum specimen may aid diagnosis; patients with somatostatinomas may have 1000-fold elevated concentrations. These tumors may also secrete calcitonin or ACTH, and most are malignant with metastases at diagnosis.

VIPoma

These tumors are presented in the previous section on diarrhea and malabsorption.

Carcinoid Syndrome

Pancreatic carcinoids are rare malignant neoplasms resembling intestinal carcinoids. They synthesize serotonin and motilin. When confined to the pancreas, these tumors may induce an atypical carcinoid syndrome that consists of facial flush, hypotension, periorbital edema, and lacrimation. Cases with liver metastases cause a classical carcinoid syndrome. Diagnosis is aided by demonstration of increased 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5-HIAA) levels in 24-hour urine specimens.

Amyloidosis

GI amyloidosis is mainly of the reactive type (secondary or amyloid-associated [AA] amyloidosis) and results from mucosal or neuromuscular infiltration. It may result in GI bleeding from vascular friability. The patient may also have diarrhea from a combination of altered intestinal motility, bacterial overgrowth, and protein-losing enteropathy. Liver involvement can be seen in primary (amyloid light chain) or AA amyloidosis. Common symptoms include involuntary weight loss, fatigue, and abdominal pain. Common physical findings consist of hepatomegaly, ascites, purpura, and splenomegaly. The most common laboratory abnormality is an elevated alkaline phosphatase. The diagnosis of multiple myeloma should be confirmed by tissue biopsy of duodenal or colorectal mucosa. Although GI complications can result in significant morbidity, they usually are not the cause of death, which is most often due to renal failure, restrictive cardiomyopathy, or ischemic heart disease (Ebert & Nagar, 2008).

GASTROINTESTINAL BLEEDING

Throughout most of the GI tract, the lumen of the gut is separated from the capillary blood supply by only a single layer of epithelial cells. Thus even minor injury to the epithelial lining may result in GI bleeding. Occult GI bleeding is bleeding unknown to the patient. Iron deficiency anemia should be considered to be the result of GI bleeding until excluded (Rockey, 2010).

Hemoglobin and hematocrit are usually low, and their levels may have some relation to blood loss. A low mean cell volume (MCV) may indicate that the patient is iron deficient and that chronic blood loss has occurred. An elevated MCV may indicate a folate or vitamin B_{12} deficiency with macrocytosis and raises the possibility of ethanol abuse, chronic liver disease, gastric cancer in association with pernicious anemia, or regional enteritis involving the terminal ileum.

If a clotting defect exists, prompt correction of the deficiency is crucial. Extensive transfusion dilutes platelets and clotting factors, particularly factors V and VII. Also, a high proportion of patients who bleed while taking therapeutic anticoagulants do so from a clinically significant lesion. It is important to evaluate these patients for a GI pathologic condition and to correct their clotting status. Leukocytosis may accompany acute GI bleeding, but it is usually not in excess of 15,000 white blood cells/mm^3. Leukocytosis should not be attributed to acute blood loss without completion of a search for sources of infection.

Elevated BUN in a patient whose BUN was recently normal, or whose serum creatinine concentration is normal, suggests an upper GI bleed. The BUN rise may be due to the hypovolemia of acute blood loss, but digestion of blood proteins in the small intestine and absorption of nitrogenous products may be the cause.

Fecal Occult Blood Testing

The fecal occult blood test (FOBT) depends on the peroxidase activity of hemoglobin. Reagents used include guaiac (Hemoccult), benzidine (marketing restricted by federal regulation because of its carcinogenicity), orthotoluidine (Hematest), and ortho-dianisidine. The reagents differ in sensitivity, although all are associated with frequent false-positive and false-negative results, mostly due to the specimen tested. Specimens collected by digital rectal examination have a high frequency of false positives caused by injury to the rectal mucosa.

The normal person loses 0.5 to 1.5 mL of blood into the GI tract daily in association with the normal shedding of epithelial cells. Commercial tests are designed to turn positive with blood loss greater than 5 to 10 mL per day. This corresponds to 5 to 10 mg of hemoglobin/gram of feces, assuming a blood hemoglobin of 15 g/dL and an average daily 150-g stool.

In addition to sample handling and testing, diet is very important in compromising these tests. The high rate of false positives is due to the lack of specificity of the reagents and the presence of peroxidase activity in other fecal constituents, as well as the sensitivity of the different chromogens to peroxidase activity. The myoglobin and hemoglobin of ingested meat and fish have peroxidase activity that may falsely indicate the presence of occult blood. Bacteria in the bowel, as well as ingested vegetables and fruits, such as horseradish, turnips, bananas, black grapes, pears, and plums, have peroxidase and can falsely elevate fecal peroxidase activity. False-negative tests occur in the presence of large amounts of vitamin C and other antioxidants.

Patient preparation and specimen collection are important in ensuring valid test results. For 72 hours prior, patients should be on a diet free of exogenous peroxide activity (meat, fish, turnips, horseradish), GI irritants (aspirin, NSAIDs), and vitamin C. Variations in testing technique produce errors due to stool consistency, the application of large aliquots of stool, and, particularly, inaccurate timing of the reaction.

Immunochemical tests for hemoglobin are more sensitive and specific and yield fewer false negatives. They are not affected by diet, animal hemoglobin, or human myoglobin. Dietary peroxidases do not affect immunochemical test results. They are useful only for screening blood of the lower intestinal tract and are insensitive to upper GI bleeding because globin is destroyed in the small intestine.

Colon cancer is a leading cause of cancer-related deaths in the United States, accounting for approximately 55,000 deaths annually. According to recent cancer statistics, approximately 150,000 new colon cancer cases were diagnosed in 2003. Evidence has demonstrated the clinical usefulness of FOBT to detect these cancers at an earlier stage, potentially resulting in decreased mortality. Because of the generally favorable clinical biology of these tumors when detected earlier (with an 80% to 90% survival rate with local confined disease) (Helm et al, 2003) and the relatively inexpensive, noninvasive nature of FOBT, this may serve as a useful screening technique. Several professional organizations recommend annual or biennial FOBT, but universally accepted screening protocols have not been established. The American Cancer Society guidelines for colorectal cancer screening, the most widely utilized, recommend annual FOBT and flexible sigmoidoscopy every 3 to 5 years, beginning at age 50, in asymptomatic, average-risk individuals (Marshall, 1996). Limitations of this testing include the high numbers of false-positive and false-negative results. The sensitivity of FOBT has been estimated at between 30% and 50%. The true sensitivity of FOBT is difficult to determine because individuals who test negative do not undergo further colonoscopic evaluation to determine whether the FOBT is a true negative. Only approximately 5% to 10% of positive reactions prove to be caused by an occult malignancy (Simon, 1998). However, following a stepwise approach to colon cancer screening should minimize the clinical effects of limited sensitivity and specificity and offer valuable information.

Occult blood can be detected by chemical (guaiac), hemoporphyrin, or immunologic methods. Occult blood may arise anywhere along the intestinal tract and is often the first warning sign of GI malignancy. Other potential sources of occult blood may arise from bleeding esophageal varices, polyps, esophageal or gastric inflammation, hemorrhoids or fissures, inflammatory bowel disease, peptic ulcer disease, or angiodysplasias of the colon. Laboratory diagnosis of the presence of fecal occult blood generally involves a guaiac-smear test (Hemoccult, Seracult, Coloscreen), the most commonly used method at present. Guaiac is a naturally occurring phenolic compound that is oxidized to quinone by hydrogen peroxidase, resulting in a detectable color change. These tests detect the pseudoperoxidase activity of heme as intact hemoglobin or as free heme

http://basicbook.net

(Allison et al, 1996). These tests are not specific for human hemoglobin, and hemoglobin from red meat, peroxidase from fruits and vegetables, and certain medications can lead to false-positive results. The presence of more than 5 to 10 mL/day of blood in the stool results in a positive guaiac smear. Stool specimens should be received from three consecutive stools. Two slides should be prepared for each stool sample. Slides should not be rehydrated and should be developed within 7 days of collection. To ensure quality testing, some medical institutions now require that stool samples be sent to the laboratory for guaiac testing, rather than having residents or nurses perform tests on the ward. In addition, the test must be performed under appropriate conditions that serve to limit its sensitivity. Factors that can cause inaccuracies in the results include the presence of bleeding gums, for example, or ingestion of large amounts of red meat before testing. In addition, patients may be using certain medications that will influence the results of FOBT. For example, drugs that can cause GI irritation and subsequent bleeding, such as anticoagulants, aspirin, NSAIDs, or colchicines, may lead to false-positive results. Other drugs that have been implicated include reserpine and oxidizing drugs such as iodine. Ingestion of large amounts of vitamin C can cause false-negative results. Patients should avoid such medications or food products before FOBT. A positive FOBT prompts further evaluation for a GI lesion. Additional evaluations usually include sigmoidoscopy with barium enema or full colonoscopy, the latter being the preferred modality. A negative FOBT, however, cannot definitely rule out the presence of colonic neoplasia. If a patient is presenting with signs and symptoms suggestive of colon cancer, further evaluation is warranted, even in the presence of negative FOBT.

Fecal DNA testing is a promising technique for colorectal cancer screening. This test involves the collection of a single stool specimen, which is then screened for DNA markers. PCR is used to amplify the fecal DNA. These tests are useful because DNA is shed continuously and remains stable in stool, and minute amounts are detectable. Clinical studies have shown that fecal DNA testing has high specificity and sensitivity for cancer detection, considerably more than chemical guaiac testing. Several markers have been investigated; however, further evaluation and improved specificity and sensitivity are needed for their widespread use (Itzkowitz et al, 2008; Lieberman, 2009; Mandel, 2008).

Blood in Newborn Feces (Apt Test for Swallowed Blood)

When blood is found in the GI tract or stool of neonates, usually on the second or third day of life, a determination must be made of whether it is swallowed blood of maternal origin or is secondary to disease in the newborn (Guritzky & Rudnitsky, 1996). The Apt test is a qualitative test that is used to make this determination in grossly bloody stools or vomitus (hematemesis) from a newborn. Infants may ingest maternal blood during birth or from a fissured or bleeding nipple. The sample first is mixed with water and then is centrifuged. The supernatant, which should be pink, is then mixed with 1% sodium hydroxide in a 5:1 ratio. If the blood is of maternal origin, the mixture turns yellow-brown after several minutes. Fetal blood remains pink because fetal hemoglobin is more resistant to alkali denaturation than adult hemoglobin. The test has relatively low sensitivity, and the result must be interpreted with caution (McRury & Barry, 1994).

MARKERS FOR GASTROINTESTINAL AND PANCREATIC TUMORS

Tumor markers are substances produced by tumor cells or other body cells in response to neoplastic or certain nonneoplastic conditions; they are found in tissues or body fluids. Different tumor markers are found in different types of cancers, and the same tumor marker may be found in more than one type of cancer. Tumor markers are not expressed in all people with cancer, and some are expressed in patients with benign conditions. Identification or measurement of tumor markers is used in the detection, diagnosis, or management of some types of cancer. Although an abnormal tumor marker level may suggest cancer or limited efficacy of therapy, this alone is not enough to establish diagnosis and is usually combined with other tests, such as biopsy (Bigbee & Herberman, 2003; Chan et al, 2006; Locker et al, 2006).

Enzymes

Enzymes were one of the first groups of tumor markers identified, and their elevated levels were linked with cancer. Most changes in enzyme levels are not specific or sensitive enough to be used to identify the cancer type or the specific organ involved. Lactate dehydrogenase, a glycolytic pathway enzyme, is released as a result of cell damage, and its elevation in malignancy is nonspecific (Schwartz, 1982). Neuron-specific enolase (NSE) is found in neural tissue and in cells of the diffuse neuroendocrine system. NSE is found in association with tumors of neuroendocrine origin, and its serum levels are of prognostic significance (Zeltzer et al, 1986). Urokinase-plasminogen activator, a serine protease system, is a prognostic marker in colorectal cancer (Duffy et al, 1999). Tumor-associated trypsin inhibitor (TATI) is identical to pancreatic secretory trypsin inhibitor, also known as the kazal inhibitor. It is strongly expressed in pancreatic cells and in low concentrations in normal GI and urogenital tissues. TATI is a useful marker for GI, urologic, and pancreatic cancers (Stenman, 2002).

Hormones

Hormones are normally produced in endocrine organs but may also be produced in nonendocrine tissue. They are assayed by EIA using monoclonal antibodies or by RIA. Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN 2A and MEN 2B) syndromes synthesize several polypeptide hormones such as ACTH, calcitonin, gastrin, glucagon, and insulin. Vasoactive intestinal peptide is produced by some endocrine tumors (Perry, 1996).

ACTH may be the result of pituitary or ectopic production. Elevated ACTH levels have been reported from pancreatic, gastric, and colonic carcinomas. Patients with serotonin-producing carcinoid tumors often have marked tenfold increases in urinary 5-HIAA excretion. Ingestion of serotonin-rich foods, such as bananas, chocolate, plums, or walnuts, or medications containing guaifenesin may produce false-positive elevations (Kema et al, 1992).

Other Protein Markers

Oncofetal antigens are proteins produced in fetal life that decrease to low levels or disappear after birth but reappear in cancer patients. The discoveries of α-fetoprotein (AFP) and carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) in the 1960s had a profound effect on the use of tumor markers. AFP is a marker for hepatocellular and germ cell (nonseminomatous) carcinomas. CEA, a glycoprotein, is a marker for colorectal, GI, lung, and breast carcinomas. CEA testing may be useful as an adjunct to clinical staging (Sikorska et al, 1992). Amplification of Her2/neu, a tyrosine kinase receptor of the epidermal growth factor family, is seen in GI, breast, and ovarian tumors. bcl-2, a protein known to inhibit apoptosis, appears early in colorectal cancer. C-peptide is a marker for insulin production.

Blood Group Antigens

Some of the blood group carbohydrates are tumor markers with elevated levels in specific types of cancer. CA 19-9, a sialylated Lewis antigen, is elevated in patients with colorectal and pancreatic carcinomas (Lamerz, 1992). Its levels are elevated in benign conditions such as Mirizzi's syndrome (Robertson & Davidson, 2007). It is absent in individuals with pancreatic tumors who are Lewis negative. Another related Lewis antigen, C50, is used as a pancreatic tumor marker but is considered less sensitive than CA 19-9. CA 242 and CA 72-4 are markers for GI and pancreatic tumors, but CA 72-4 is considered of greater prognostic value in pancreatic cancer (Louhimo et al, 2004).

Genetic Markers

Two classes of genes are implicated in cancer: cell activator genes and cell suppressor genes. Most oncogenes code for proteins that activate cell proliferation. Mutated K-*ras* is present in 95% of pancreatic cancers, in 40% of colon cancers, and in lower percentages of other tumors (Chan et al, 2006). Mutations of *ras* oncogenes have been detected in the stools of 9 of 15 patients with curable colorectal tumors (Sidransky et al, 1992).

Any genetic testing requires that the physician clearly understand how to interpret the results and how the results may affect patient management; patients and their family members must be counseled appropriately (Grody et al, 2001; LeGrys et al, 2007).

Tumor Suppressor Genes

Oncogenicity derives from loss of the gene, rather than its activation, as with the *p53* gene. Three-fourths of colon carcinomas show deletion in one *p53* allele and a point mutation in the other allele.

STOOL COLLECTION AND EXAMINATION

COLLECTION

Uninstructed patients sometimes exhibit considerable ingenuity in collecting stool specimens, but a few simple instructions are likely to produce

http://basicbook.net

more satisfactory specimens. A scoured, well-rinsed bedpan is a convenient collection container. If the patient does not own one, a carefully cleaned, rinsed, and boiled glass jar of suitable size is a satisfactory alternative. Patients should be warned against passing urine at the same time into the bedpan or container because, among other things, urine has a harmful effect on protozoa. Tongue depressors or pieces of cardboard are reasonably convenient instruments for transferring the stool from bedpan to transport vessel, for which plastic, cardboard, and glass containers are available. We prefer to use two 2-ounce ointment jars with screw caps for small stool samples because they are odor free, leakproof, and easy to transport. Patients should be instructed not to contaminate the outside of the container and not to overfill the container. Gas, which frequently accumulates, should be released gradually by carefully loosening the cap. Failure to observe this simple precaution, especially in the case of an overfilled container, can result in an explosive release of contents. Fecal specimen collection at home is by no means simple and easy unless the patient has been instructed properly.

MACROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

The quantity, form, consistency, and color of the stool should be noted. Normally, 100 to 200 g of stool is passed per day. Diarrheic stool is watery. Passage of large amounts of mushy, foul-smelling, gray stool that floats on the water is characteristic of steatorrhea. Constipation may be associated with passage of small, firm, spherical masses of stool (scybala). Clay color suggests diminution or absence of bile or the presence of barium sulfate. Blood, especially blood originating from the lower gut, may cause the stool to be red; beets in the diet may mimic this. Bleeding from the upper GI tract is more likely to cause the stool to be black and have a tarry consistency. Bismuth, iron, and charcoal may also cause a black color. Stool that is allowed to stand in the air for a time may darken on the surface.

Mucus

The presence of recognizable mucus in a stool specimen is abnormal and should be reported. Translucent gelatinous mucus clinging to the surface of the formed stool suggests spastic constipation or mucous colitis. It is seen in stools of emotionally disturbed patients and may result from excessive straining. Bloody mucus clinging to the fecal mass suggests neoplasm or inflammatory processes of the rectal canal. Mucus associated with pus and blood is found in stools of patients with ulcerative colitis, bacillary dysentery, ulcerating diverticulitis, and intestinal tuberculosis. Patients with villous adenoma of the colon may pass copious quantities of mucus, amounting to 3 to 4 L in 24 hours. They frequently develop severe dehydration and electrolyte disturbances, especially hypokalemia.

Pus

Patients with chronic ulcerative colitis and chronic bacillary dysentery frequently pass large quantities of pus with the stool, the recognition of which requires microscopic examination. This also occurs in patients with localized abscesses or fistulas communicating with the sigmoid colon, rectum, or anus. Large amounts of pus seldom accompany the stools of patients with amebic colitis, and its presence is evidence against this diagnosis. No inflammatory exudate is seen in the watery stools of patients with viral gastroenteritis.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Fat

The simplest technique is microscopic examination using one of the Sudan stains. This procedure has been widely employed for screening because of its simplicity. In our experience, results have correlated well with quantitative measurements when aliquots of the same homogenized stool have been analyzed. For this purpose, a small aliquot of stool suspension is placed on a slide and is mixed with two drops of 95% ethanol; then two drops of saturated ethanolic solution of Sudan III are added, with further mixing. A coverslip is applied. Under these conditions, fatty acids are present as lightly stained flakes or as needle-like crystals that do not stain and therefore may be missed. Soaps also do not stain but appear as well-defined amorphous flakes or as rounded masses or coarse crystals. Neutral fats, however, appear as large orange or red droplets. When 60 or more stained droplets of neutral fats per high-power field are seen, one may be reasonably certain that the patient has steatorrhea. Caution is advisable in interpretation, however, because mineral oil or castor oil may mimic neutral fat. The procedure is then repeated by adding several drops of 36% (v/v) acetic acid to the stool mixture and warming the slide several times over a flame until slight boiling occurs. This converts neutral fats and soaps to fatty acids and melts the fatty acids, causing them to form droplets that stain strongly with Sudan III. The slide is then examined while warm. After this procedure has been performed, the presence of up to 100 stained droplets per high-power field is considered normal. Patients with steatorrhea of pancreatic origin are likely to have greater increases in fatty acids and soaps.

Meat Fiber

The technique for sampling is identical to that used for Sudan preparations for detection of fecal fat. The stool is mixed thoroughly on a slide with a solution of eosin in 10% ethanol; it is then allowed to stain for 3 minutes and is examined for muscle fibers. The entire area under the coverslip is examined, and only rectangular fibers with clearly evident cross-striations are counted. More than 10 fibers per high-power field suggests maldigestion and/or hypermotility. It appears that examination for meat fibers correlates well with chemical determination of fat excretion (Moore et al, 1971).

Leukocytes

A small fleck of mucus or a drop of liquid stool is placed on a glass microscopic slide with a wooden applicator stick. Two drops of methylene blue are added and mixed thoroughly and carefully. A coverslip is placed on the mixture, which is allowed to stand for 2 to 3 minutes for good nuclear staining. Using low-power scanning, rough quantitative counts are made by approximating the average numbers of leukocytes and erythrocytes. All differential counts should be made under high power, counting 200 cells when possible. Only those cells clearly identified as either mononuclear or polymorphonuclear are included in the differential count. Macrophages and epithelial cells that cannot be clearly identified are ignored. The initial cell counts should be performed at the time of presentation of the specimen.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Allison JE, Tekawa IS, Ransom LJ, et al: A comparison of fecal occult-blood tests for colorectal-cancer screening, *N Engl J Med* 334:155–160, 1996.

Evaluation of three commonly used screening tests for fecal occult blood with regard to sensitivity, specificity, and predictive value related to colonoscopy and biopsy findings.

Djavan B, Zlotta A, Kratzik C, et al: PSA, PSA density, PSA density of transition zone, free/total PSA ratio, and PSA velocity for early detection of prostate cancer in men with serum PSA 2.5 to 4.0 ng/mL, *Urology* 54:517–522, 1999.

The usage of PSA has changed the management of prostate cancer patients. This reference pointed out the dilemma using current PSA cut-off value and summarizes various PAS parameters to increase specificity of PSA.

Lipton A, Ali SM, Leitzel K, et al: Elevated serum Her-2/neu level predicts decreased response to hormone therapy in metastatic breast cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 20:1467–1472, 2002.

Provides evidence that serum HER2/neu may be useful in prognosis and monitoring treatment of breast cancer patients.

National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS): *Sweat testing: Sample collection and quantitative analysis—Approved guidelines*, Wayne, Pa., 2000, National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (now Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute). NCCLS Document C34-A2.

Guideline for the performance of the sweat test for the diagnosis of cystic fibrosis. This document addresses issues pertaining to collecting, analyzing, reporting, and evaluating sweat test results. Sweat stimulation and collection and quantitative measurement of sweat chloride are described, along with quality assurance and result evaluation.

Rouprêt M, Hupertan V, Yates DR, et al: Molecular detection of localized prostate cancer using quantitative methylation-specific PCR on urinary cells obtained following prostate massage, *Clin Cancer Res* 13:1720–1725, 2007.

Provides evidence that serum HER2/neu may be useful in prognosis and monitoring treatment of breast cancer patients.

Saghatchian M, Guepratte S, Hacene K, et al: Serum HER-2 extracellular domain: Relationship with clinicobiological presentation and prognostic value before and after primary treatment in 701 breast cancer patients, *Int J Biol Markers* 19:14–22, 2004.

Provides evidence that serum HER2/neu may be useful in prognosis and monitoring treatment of breast cancer patients.

Sokoll LJ, Wians FH, Remaley AT: Rapid intraoperative immunoassay of parathyroid hormone and other hormones: A new paradigm for point-of-care testing, *Clin Chem* 50:1126–1135, 2004.

This study reviews the use of hormone-related intraoperative testing approaches, including parathyroid hormone, cortisol, gastrin, insulin, adrenocorticotropic hormone, and testosterone, regarding preoperative localization studies

Serves as an example and summary of the identification of biomarkers using current serum proteomics technology and will be the trend for future biomarkers.

http://basicbook.net

and/or assessment of the effectiveness of tumor resection during surgery.

Thomas PD, Forbes A, Green J, et al: Guidelines for the investigation of chronic diarrhea, 2nd ed, *Gut* 52(Suppl V):v1, 2003.

Provides guidelines to establish an optimal investigative scheme for patients presenting with chronic diarrhea to maximize positive diagnoses, while minimizing the number and invasiveness of investigations. Also features summary/recommendation tables with sections devoted to noninvasive testing.

Zhang Z, Bast RC Jr, Yu Y, et al: Three biomarkers identified from serum proteomic analysis for the detection of early stage ovarian cancer, *Cancer Res* 64:5882–5890, 2004.

Serves as an example and summary of the identification of biomarkers using current serum proteomics technology and will be the trend for future biomarkers.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Ahmed F, Chey WD, Murthy U: Evaluation of the Ez-HBT *Helicobacter* blood test to establish *Helicobacter pylori* eradication, *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 22:875–880, 2005.

Allison JE, Tekawa IS, Ransom LJ, et al: A comparison of fecal occult-blood tests for colorectal-cancer screening, *N Engl J Med* 334:155–160, 1996.

Amarri S, Harding M, Coward WA, et al: ^{13}C-mixed triglyceride breath test and pancreatic enzyme supplementation in children with cystic fibrosis, *Arch Dis Childhood* 76:349–351, 1997.

Andersen JM, Hedstrom J, Kemmpainen E, et al: The ratio of trypsin-2-alpha1-antitrypsin to trypsinogen-1 discriminates biliary and alcohol-induced acute pancreatitis, *Clin Chem* 47:231–236, 2001.

Ashley SW, Evoy D, Daly JM: Stomach. In Schwartz SI, Shires GT, Spencer FC, et al, editors: *Principles of surgery*, New York, 1999, McGraw-Hill, pp 1195–1196.

Atherton JC, Spiller RC: The urea breath test for *H. pylori*, *Gut* 35:723–725, 1994.

Barakat MT, Meeran K, Bloom SR: Neuroendocrine tumours, *Endocr Relat Cancer* 11:1–18, 2004.

Barr GD, Grehan MJ: Coeliac disease, *Med J Aust* 169:109–114, 1998.

Barton JC, McDonnell SM, Adams PC, et al: Management of hemochromatosis, *Ann Intern Med* 129:932–939, 1998.

Benini L, Amodio A, Campagnola P, et al: Fecal elastase-1 is useful in the detection of steatorrhea in patients with pancreatic diseases but not after pancreatic resection, *Pancreatology* 13(1):38–42, 2013.

Berna MJ, Hoffmann KM, Serrano J, et al: Serum gastrin in Zollinger-Ellison syndrome: I. Prospective study of fasting serum gastrin in 309 patients from the National Institutes of Health and comparison with 2229 cases from the literature, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 85:295–330, 2006.

Beutler E, Felliti VJ, Koziol JA, et al: Penetrance of the 845G-A (C282Y) HFE hereditary hemochromatosis mutation in the USA, *Lancet* 359:211–218, 2002.

Bigbee W, Herberman RB: Tumor markers and immunodiagnosis. In Bast RC Jr, Kufe DW, Pollock RE, et al, editors: *Cancer medicine*, ed 6, Hamilton, Ontario, 2003, BC Decker.

Bloom SR, Polak JM: Glucagonoma syndrome, *Am J Med* 82(5 Suppl 2):25–36, 1987.

Brat DJ, Lillemoe KD, Yeo CJ, et al: Progression of pancreatic intraductal neoplasias to infiltrating adenocarcinoma of the pancreas, *Am J Surg Pathol* 22(2):163–169, 1998.

Bulaj ZJ, Ajioka RS, Phillips JD, et al: Disease-related conditions in relatives of patients with hemochromatosis, *N Engl J Med* 343:1529–1535, 2000.

Bytzer P, Stokholm M, Anderson I, et al: Prevalence of surreptitious laxative abuse in patients with diarrhoea of uncertain origin: a cost benefit analysis of a screening procedure, *Gut* 30:1379–1384, 1989.

Cade A, Walters MP, McGinley N, et al: Evaluation of fecal pancreatic elastase-1 as a measure of pancreatic exocrine function in children with cystic fibrosis, *Pediatr Pulmonol* 29:172–176, 2000.

Chan DW, Booth RA, Diamandis EP: Tumor markers. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, Bruns DE, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry and molecular diagnostics*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2006, WB Saunders.

Cheng SH, Gregory RJ, Marshall J, et al: Defective intracellular transport and processing of CFTR is the molecular basis of most cystic fibrosis, *Cell* 63:827–834, 1990.

Chey WD, Wong BC: American College of Gastroenterology guideline on the management of *Helicobacter pylori* infection, *Am J Gastroenterol* 102(8):1808–1825, 2007.

Clinton SR, Barakauskas VE, Grenache DG: Taking candy from the baby, *Clin Chem* 58(7):1161–1162, 2012.

Cohn JA, Mitchell RM, Jowell PS: The impact of cystic fibrosis and PSTI/SPINK1 gene mutations on susceptibility to chronic pancreatitis, *Clin Lab Med* 25:79–100, 2005.

Dahlqvist A: Assay of intestinal disaccharides, *Anal Biochem* 22:99–107, 1968.

Dieterich W, Laag E, Schopper H, et al: Autoantibodies to tissue transglutaminase as predictors of celiac disease, *Gastroenterology* 115:1317–1324, 1998.

DiMagno MJ, DiMagno EP: Chronic pancreatitis, *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 21:544–554, 2005.

Distler M, Aust D, Weitz J, et al: Precursor lesions for sporadic pancreatic cancer: PanIN, IPMN, and MCN. *Biomed Res Int*, 2014, p 474905.

Ditchburn RK, Smith AH, Hayter CJ: Use of unabsorbed radioactive marker substances in a re-assessment of the radioactive triolein test of fat absorption, *J Clin Pathol* 24:506–514, 1971.

Duffy MJ, Maguire TM, McDermott EW, et al: Urokinase plasminogen activator: a prognostic marker in multiple types of cancer, *J Surg Oncol* 71:130–135, 1999.

Duncan A: Screening for surreptitious laxative abuse, *Ann Clin Biochem* 37:1–8, 2000.

Duncan A, Hill PG: A UK survey of laboratory-based gastrointestinal investigations, *Ann Clin Biochem* 35:492–503, 1998.

Duncan A, Morris AJ, Cameron A, et al: Laxative-induced diarrhoea—a neglected diagnosis, *J R Soc Med* 85:203–205, 1992.

Durie PR: Pancreatic aspects of cystic fibrosis and other inherited causes of pancreatic dysfunction, *Med Clin North Am* 84:609–620, 2000.

Ebert EC, Nagar M: Gastrointestinal manifestations of amyloidosis, *Am J Gastroenterol* 103:776–787, 2008.

Ensari A: Gluten-sensitive enteropathy (celiac disease): controversies in diagnosis and classification, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 134:826–836, 2010.

Eriksson B, Oberg K, Stridsberg M: Tumour markers in neuroendocrine tumours, *Digestion* 62(Suppl 1):33–38, 2000.

Farrell RJ, Kelly CP: Diagnosis of celiac sprue, *Am J Gastroenterol* 96:3237–3246, 2001.

Farrell PM, Aust D, Weitz J, et al: Guidelines for diagnosis of cystic fibrosis in newborns through older adults: Cystic Fibrosis Foundation consensus report, *J Pediatr* 153(2):S4–S14, 2008.

Feldman RA, Deeks JJ, Evans SJW, et al: Multilaboratory comparison of eight commercially available *Helicobacter pylori* serology kits, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 14:428–433, 1995.

Feldman RA, Evans SJW: Accuracy of diagnostic methods used for epidemiological studies of *Helicobacter pylori*, *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 9(Suppl 2):21–31, 1995.

Fenner L, Widmer AF, Goy G, et al: Rapid and reliable diagnostic algorithm for detection of *Clostridium difficile*, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:328–330, 2008.

Fenollar F, Puéchal X, Raoult D: Whipple's disease, *N Engl J Med* 356:55–66, 2007.

Fernandez R, Vizoso F, Rodriguez JC: Expression and prognostic significance of pepsinogen C in gastric carcinoma, *Ann Surg Oncol* 7:508–514, 2000.

Fine KD, Schiller LR: AGA technical review on the evaluation and management of chronic diarrhea, *Gastroenterology* 116:1464–1486, 1999.

Fordtran JS: Speculations on the pathogenesis of diarrhea, *Fed Proc* 26:1405–1414, 1967.

Forsmark CE, Baillie J: AGA Institute technical review on acute pancreatitis, *Gastroenterology* 132:2022–2044, 2007.

Gibril F, Jensent TJ: Advances in evaluation and management of gastrinoma in patients with Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 7(2):114–121, 2005.

Goetze JP, Rehfeld JF: Impact of assay epitope specificity in gastrinoma diagnosis, *Clin Chem* 49:333–334, 2003.

Goff JS: Two-stage triolein breath test differentiates pancreatic insufficiency from other causes of malabsorption, *Gastroenterology* 83:44–46, 1982.

Green PHR, Cellier C: Celiac disease, *N Engl J Med* 357:1731–1743, 2007.

Gregg RE, Wetterau JR: The molecular basis of abetalipoproteinemia, *Curr Opin Lipidol* 5:81–86, 1994.

Grody WW, Cutting GR, Klinger KW, et al: Laboratory standards and guidelines for population-based cystic fibrosis carrier screening, *Genet Med* 3:149–154, 2001.

Guritzky RP, Rudnitsky G: Bloody neonatal diaper, *Ann Emerg Med* 27:662–664, 1996.

Halabi WJ, Nguyen VQ, Carmichael JC, et al: Clostridium difficile colitis in the United States: a decade of trends, outcomes, risk factors for colectomy, and mortality after colectomy, *J Am Coll Surg* 217(5):802–812, 2013.

Halangk W, Lerch MM: Early events in acute pancreatitis, *Clin Lab Med* 25:1–15, 2005.

Helm J, Choi J, Sutphen R, et al: Current and evolving strategies for colorectal cancer screening, *Cancer Control* 10:193–204, 2003.

Hill PG: Faecal fat: time to give it up, *Ann Clin Biochem* 38:164–167, 2001.

Hill PG: Gastric, pancreatic, and intestinal function. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, Bruns DE, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry and molecular diagnostics*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2006, WB Saunders.

Hofmeyr S, Meyer C, Warren BL: Serum lipase should be the laboratory test of choice for suspected acute pancreatitis, *S Afr J Surg* 52(3):72–75, 2014.

Holmes GKT, Hill PG: Do we need to measure fecal fat? *BMJ* 296:1552–1553, 1988.

Howes N, Greenhalf W, Stocken DD, et al: Cationic trypsinogen mutations and pancreatitis, *Clin Lab Med* 25:39–59, 2005.

Hruban RH, Willentz RE, Maitra A: Identification and analysis of precursors to invasive pancreatic cancer, *Methods Mol Med* 103:1–13, 2005.

Hung PD, Schubert ML, Mihas AA: Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, *Curr Treat Options Gastroenterol* 6:163–170, 2003.

Itzkowitz S, Brand R, Jandorf L, et al: A simplified, non-invasive stool DNA test for colorectal cancer detection, *Am J Gastroenterol* 103:2862–2870, 2008.

Jensen PD: Evaluation of iron overload, *Br J Haematol* 124:697–711, 2004.

Jensen RT: Gastrointestinal abnormalities and involvement in systemic mastocytosis, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 14:579–623, 2000.

Jin T, Huang W, Jiang K, et al: Urinary trypsinogen-2 for diagnosing acute pancreatitis: a meta-analysis, *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 12(4):355–362, 2013.

Kapoor R, Moseley RH, Kapoor JR, et al: Needle in a haystack, *N Engl J Med* 360:616–621, 2009.

Kaukinen K, Partanen J, Mäki M, et al: HLA-DQ typing in the diagnosis of celiac disease, *Am J Gastroenterol* 97:695–699, 2002.

Kema IP, Schellings AM, Meiborg G, et al: Influence of a serotonin- and dopamine-rich diet on platelet serotonin content and urinary excretion of biogenic amines and their metabolites, *Clin Chem* 38:1730–1736, 1992.

Kemppainen E, Hietaranta A, Puolakkainen P, et al: Time course profile of serum trypsinogen-2 and trypsin-2-alpha 1-antitrypsin in patients with acute pancreatitis, *Scand J Gastroenterol* 35:1216–1220, 2000.

Klein WM, Hruban RH, Klein-Szanto AJ, et al: Direct correlation between proliferative activity and dysplasia in pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PanIN): additional evidence for a recently proposed model of progression, *Mod Pathol* 15(4):441–447, 2002.

Klöppel G, Perren A, Heitz PU: The gastropancreatic neuroendocrine cell system and its tumors: the WHO classification, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1014:13–27, 2004.

Konz T, Montes-Bayon M, Vaulont S: Hepcidin quantification: methods and utility in diagnosis, *Metallomics* 6(6):183–190, 2014.

Koruk İ, Özdemır H, Aydinli M, et al: The relation between serum cytokeratin 18 and acute pancreatitis: can it be a serological predictive marker? *Turk J Gastroenterol* 23(6):759–763, 2012.

Krasilnikoff PA, Gudman-Hoyer E, Moltke HH: Diagnostic value of disaccharide tolerance tests in children, *Acta Paediatr Scand* 64:693–698, 1975.

Krejs GJ, Orci L, Conlon JM, et al: Somatostatinoma syndrome: biochemical, morphologic and clinical features, *N Engl J Med* 301:285–292, 1979.

Laheij RJF, Straatman H, Jansen JBMJ, et al: Evaluation of commercially available *Helicobacter pylori* serology kits: a review, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:2803–2809, 1998.

Lamerz R: CA 19-9: GICA (gastrointestinal cancer antigen). In Sell S, editor: *Serologic cancer markers*, Totowa, N.J., 1992, Humana Press, pp 309–339.

Lankisch PG: Now that fecal elastase is available in the United States, should clinicians start using it? *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 6:126–131, 2004.

Lankisch PG, Mahlke R, Blum T, et al: Hemoconcentration: an early marker of severe and/or necrotizing pancreatitis? A critical appraisal, *Am J Gastroenterol* 96:2081–2085, 2001.

Lee JY, Kim N, Lee HS, et al: Correlations among endoscopic, histologic and serologic diagnoses for the assessment of atrophic gastritis, *J Cancer Prev* 19(1):47–55, 2014.

http://basicbook.net

Lerang F, Huag JB, Moum B, et al: Accuracy of IgG serology and other tests in confirming *Helicobacter* eradication, *Scand J Gastroenterol* 33:710–715, 1998.

LeGrys VA, Yankaskas JR, Quittell LM, et al: Diagnostic sweat testing: the Cystic Fibrosis Foundation guidelines, *J Pediatr* 151:85–89, 2007.

Leus J, Van Biervliet S, Robberecht E: Detection and follow up of exocrine pancreatic insufficiency in cystic fibrosis: a review, *Eur J Pediatr* 159:563–568, 2000.

Lieberman DA: Clinical practice: screening for colorectal cancer, *N Engl J Med* 361:1179–1187, 2009.

Lindau-Shepard BA, Pass KA: Newborn screening for cystic fibrosis by use of a multiplex immunoassay, *Clin Chem* 56(3):445–450, 2010.

Liu AY, Lowe RC, Levy BD, et al: Clinical problem-solving: a rash hypothesis, *N Engl J Med* 363:72–78, 2010.

Locker GY, Hamilton S, Harris J, et al: ASCO 2006 update of recommendations for the use of tumor markers in gastrointestinal cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 24:5313–5327, 2006.

Louhimo J, Alfthan H, Stenman U-H, et al: Serum HCGβ and CA 72-4 are stronger prognostic factors than CEA, CA 19-9 and CA 242 in pancreatic cancer, *Oncology* 66:126–131, 2004.

Lüth S, Teyssen S, Forssmann K, et al: Fecal elastase-1 determination: 'gold standard' of indirect pancreatic function tests? *Scand J Gastroenterol* 36:1092–1099, 2001.

MacKenzie T, Gifford AH, Sabadosa KA, et al: Longevity of Patients With Cystic Fibrosis in 2000 to 2010 and Beyond: Survival Analysis of the Cystic Fibrosis Foundation Patient Registry, *Ann Intern Med* 161:233–241, 2014.

Malnick S, Zimhony O: Treatment of *Clostridium difficile*-associated diarrhea, *Ann Pharmacother* 36: 1767–1775, 2000.

Mandel JS: Screening for colorectal cancer, *Gastroenterol Clin N Am* 37:97–115, 2008.

Marshall JB: Colorectal cancer screening: present strategies and future prospects, *Postgrad Med* 99:253–264, 1996.

Marth T, Raoult D: Whipple's disease, *Lancet* 361:239–246, 2003.

McIntyre TP, Stahlfeld KR, Sell HW Jr: Gastrinoma, *Am J Surg* 183:666–667, 2002.

McRury JM, Barry RC: A modified Apt test: a new look at an old test, *Pediatr Emerg Care* 10:189–191, 1994. Erratum in: *Pediatr Emerg Care* 10:248, 1994.

Megraud F: Diagnosis and candidates for treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection: how should *Helicobacter pylori* be diagnosed? *Gastroenterology* 113:S93–S98, 1997.

Miki K, Morita M, Sasajima M, et al: Usefulness of gastric cancer screening using the serum pepsinogen test method, *Am J Gastroenterol* 98:735–739, 2003.

Modlin IM, Tang LH: Approaches to the diagnosis of gut neuroendocrine tumors: the last word (today), *Gastroenterology* 112:583–590, 1997.

Moore JG, Englert E Jr, Bigler AH, et al: Simple fecal tests of absorption: a prospective study and critique, *Dig Dis Sci* 16:97–105, 1971.

Morinville V, Husain S, Bai H, et al: Definitions of pediatric pancreatitis and survey of present clinical practices, *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 55:261e5, 2012.

Nehra V: New clinical issues in celiac disease, *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 27:453–465, 1998.

Norton JA, Jensen RT: Role of surgery in Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, *J Am Coll Surg* 205:S34–S37, 2007.

Palomaki GE, FitzSimmons SC, Haddow JE: Clinical sensitivity of prenatal screening of cystic fibrosis via CFTR carrier testing in a United States panethnic population, *Genet Med* 6:405–415, 2004.

Pant C, Sferra TJ, Olyaee M, et al: Emergency department visits related to Clostridium difficile infection: results from the nationwide emergency department sample, 2006 through 2010, *Acad Emerg Med* 22(1): 117–119, 2015.

Papachristou GI, Whitcomb DC: Inflammatory markers of disease severity in acute pancreatitis, *Clin Lab Med* 25:17–37, 2005.

Perry RR, Vinik AI: Endocrine tumors of the gastrointestinal tract, *Annu Rev Med* 47:57–68, 1996.

Peterson WL: *Helicobacter pylori* and peptic ulcer disease, *N Engl J Med* 324:1043–1048, 1991.

Phillips S, Rowe DJ, Dewar P, et al: Fecal elastase 1: a marker of pancreatic insufficiency in cystic fibrosis, *Ann Clin Biochem* 36:739–742, 1999.

Poutanen SM, Simor AE: *Clostridium difficile*-associated diarrhea in adults, *Can Med Assoc J* 171:51–58, 2004.

Powell LW: Diagnosis of hemochromatosis, *Semin Gastrointest Dis* 13:80–88, 2002.

Powell LW, Burt MJ, Halliday JW, et al: Hemochromatosis: genetics and pathogenesis, *Semin Liver Dis* 16:55–63, 1996.

Putsathit P, Morgan J, Bradford D, et al: Evaluation of the BD Max Cdiff assay for the detection of toxigenic Clostridium difficile in human stool specimens, *Pathology* 47(2):165–168, 2015.

Ramzan NN, Loftus E Jr, Burgart LJ, et al: Diagnosis and monitoring of Whipple disease by polymerase chain reaction, *Ann Intern Med* 126:520–527, 1997.

Raoult D, Fenollar F, Birg M-L: Culture of *T. whipplei* from the stool of a patient with Whipple's disease, *N Engl J Med* 355:1503–1505, 2006.

Recavarren C, Labow DM, Liang J, et al: Histological characteristics of pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia associated with different pancreatic lesions, *Hum Pathol* 42(1):18–24, 2011.

Rehfeld JF, Bardram L, Hilsted L, et al: Pitfalls in diagnostic gastrin measurements, *Clin Chem* 58:831–836, 2012.

Remaley AT, Wilding P: Macroenzymes: biochemical characterization, clinical significance, and laboratory detection, *Clin Chem* 35:2261–2270, 1989.

Robertson AGN, Davidson BR: Mirizzi syndrome complicating an anomalous biliary tract: a novel cause of a hugely elevated CA 19-9, *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 19:167–169, 2007.

Rockey DC: Occult and obscure gastrointestinal bleeding: causes and clinical management, *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 7:265–279, 2010.

Rosenstein BJ, Cutting JR: The diagnosis of cystic fibrosis: a consensus statement, *J Pediatr* 132:589–595, 1998.

Rutgeerts P, Vermeire S: Serologic diagnosis of inflammatory bowel disease, *Lancet* 356:2117–2118, 2000.

Sabatino AS, Corazza GR: Coeliac disease, *Lancet* 373:1480–1493, 2009.

Samloff IM: Pepsinogens I and II: purification from gastric mucosa and radioimmunoassay in serum, *Gastroenterology* 82:26–33, 1982.

Sanchez TH, Brooks JT, Sullivan PS, et al: Bacterial diarrhea in persons with HIV infection, United States, 1992-2002, *Clin Infect Dis* 41:1621–1627, 2005.

Schneider A: Serine protease inhibitor kazal type 1 mutations and pancreatitis, *Clin Lab Med* 25:61–78, 2005.

Schneider A, Barmada MM, Slivka A, et al: Clinical characterization of patients with idiopathic chronic pancreatitis and SPINK1 mutations, *Scand J Gastroenterol* 39:903–904, 2004.

Schwartz MK: Enzyme tests in cancer, *Clin Lab Med* 2:479–491, 1982.

Sclafani F, Carnaghi C, Di Tomasso L, et al: Detection of somatostatin receptor subtypes 2 and 5 by somatostatin receptor scintigraphy and immunohistochemistry: clinical implications in the diagnostic and therapeutic management of gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumors, *Tumori* 97(5):620–628, 2011.

Sendid B, Quinton JF, Charrier G, et al: Anti-*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* mannan antibodies in familial Crohn's disease, *Am J Gastroenterol* 93:1306–1312, 1998.

Shanahan F: Neutrophil autoantibodies in inflammatory bowel disease: are they important? *Gastroenterology* 107:586–590, 1994.

Sidransky D, Tokino T, Hamilton SR, et al: Identification of ras oncogene mutations in the stool of patients with curable colorectal tumors, *Science* 256:102–105, 1992.

Sikorska HM, Fuks A, Gold P: Carcinoembryonic antigen. In Sell S, editor: *Serologic cancer markers*, Totowa, N.J., 1992, Humana Press, pp 47–97.

Simon JB: Fecal occult blood testing: clinical value and limitations, *Gastroenterologist* 6:66–78, 1998.

Singer R: Diagnosis and treatment of Whipple's disease, *Drugs* 55:699–704, 1998.

Smotkin J, Tenner S: Laboratory diagnostic tests in acute pancreatitis, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 34:459–462, 2002.

Sokoll LJ, Wians FH, Remaley AT: Rapid intraoperative immunoassay of parathyroid hormone and other hormones: a new paradigm for point-of-care testing, *Clin Chem* 50:1126–1135, 2004.

Stenman UH: Tumor-associated trypsin inhibitor, *Clin Chem* 48:1206–1209, 2002.

Testoni PA: Acute recurrent pancreatitis: Etiopathogenesis, diagnosis and treatment, *World J Gastroenterol* 20(45):16891–16901, 2014.

Thiede C, Morgner A, Alpen B, et al: What role does *Helicobacter pylori* eradication play in gastric MALT and gastric MALT lymphoma? *Gastroenterology* 113:S61–S64, 1997.

Thomas PD, Forbes A, Green J, et al: Guidelines for the investigation of chronic diarrhea, 2nd ed, *Gut* 52(Suppl V):v1, 2003.

Turner JM, Lawrence S, Fellows IW, et al: [^{14}C]-triolein absorption: a useful test in the diagnosis of malabsorption, *Gut* 28:694–700, 1987.

Uhrich S, Wu Z, Huang JY, et al: Four mutations in the SI gene are responsible for the majority of clinical symptoms of CSID, *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 55(Suppl 2):S34–S35, 2012.

Van Deun A, Cobbaert C, Van Orshoven A, et al: Comparison of some recent methods for the differentiation of elevated serum amylase and the detection of macroamylasaemia, *Ann Clin Biochem* 26:422–426, 1989.

van de Wouw BAM, de Boer WA, Jansz AR, et al: Comparison of three commercially available enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays and biopsy-dependent diagnosis for detecting *Helicobacter pylori* infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:94–97, 1996.

Vantrappen GR, Rutgeerts PJ, Ghoos YF, et al: Mixed triglyceride breath test: a noninvasive test of pancreatic lipase activity in the duodenum, *Gastroenterology* 96:1126–1134, 1989.

Veldhuyzen van Zanten SJ, Sherman PM: *Helicobacter pylori* infection as a cause of gastritis, duodenal ulcer, gastric cancer and nonulcer dyspepsia: a systematic overview, *Can Med Assoc J* 150:177–185, 1994.

Vinik A: Vasoactive intestinal peptide tumor (VIPoma). In Vinik A, editor: *Diffuse hormonal systems and endocrine tumor syndromes. Ch 6. Endotext.com*, 2004. Available online: http://www.endotext.com.

Volta U, Molinaro N, de Franceschi L, et al: IgA anti-endomyseal antibodies on human umbilical cord tissue for celiac disease screening. Save both money and monkeys, *Dig Dis Sci* 40:1902–1908, 1995.

Von Herbay A, Ditton HJ, Schuhmacher F, et al: Whipple's disease: staging and monitoring by cytology and polymerase chain reaction analysis of cerebrospinal fluid, *Gastroenterology* 113:434–441, 1997.

Warner RR, O'dorisio TM: Radiolabeled peptides in diagnosis and tumor imaging: clinical overview, *Semin Nucl Med* 32(2):79–83, 2002.

Weiss FU, Simon P, Bogdanova N, et al: Complete cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator gene sequencing in patients with idiopathic chronic pancreatitis and controls, *Gut* 54:1456–1460, 2005.

West PS, Levin GS, Griffin GE, et al: Comparison of simple screening tests for fat malabsorption, *BMJ* 282:1501–1504, 1981.

World Health Organization (WHO). 2013. Available at http://www.who.int/topics/diarrhoea/en/.

Whitcomb DC: Genetic predispositions to acute and chronic pancreatitis, *Med Clin North Am* 84:531–547, 2000.

Wilson C, Imire CW, Carter DC: Fatal acute pancreatitis, *Gut* 29:782–788, 1985.

Wotherspoon AC: Gastric lymphoma of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue and *Helicobacter pylori*, *Annu Rev Med* 49:289–299, 1998.

Wu BU, Johannes RS, Sun X, et al: Early changes in blood urea nitrogen predict mortality in acute pancreatitis, *Gastroenterology* 137:129–135, 2009.

Zeltzer PM, Marangos PJ, Evans AE, et al: Serum neuron-specific enolase in children with neuroblastoma, *Cancer* 57:230–234, 1986.

Zimmer T, Stölzel U, Bäder M, et al: Brief report: a duodenal gastrinoma in a patient with diarrhea and normal serum gastrin concentrations, *N Engl J Med* 333:634–636, 1995.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 23

TOXICOLOGY AND THERAPEUTIC DRUG MONITORING

Matthew R. Pincus, Martin H. Bluth, Naif Z. Abraham Jr.

BASIC TECHNIQUES FOR DETECTING DRUGS IN SERUM AND URINE, 324
Immunochemical Methods, 324
Drug Binding to Antibodies, 326
Chromatographic Techniques, 326
Screening for Drugs of Abuse, 330

THE DRUGS OF ABUSE, 330
General Aspects of the Mechanisms of Action, 330
Extent of Use of Drugs of Abuse, 334
Cocaine, 334
The Opiates: Heroin, Morphine, Codeine, Oxycodone, Buprenorphine, and Fentanyl, 335
Methadone, 336
Amphetamines, 336
Tryptamines, 337
Piperazines, 337
Benzodiazepines, 337
Phencyclidine, 337
Barbiturates: Sedative-Hypnotics, 338
Propoxyphene (Darvon), 338
Methaqualone (Quaalude), 338
Marijuana (Cannabis), 338
Lysergic Acid Diethylamide (Lysergide), 339

THERAPEUTIC DRUG MONITORING, 339
Pharmacokinetics, 339
Cardiotropics, 341
Anticonvulsants, 343
Antiasthmatics, 347
Antiinflammatory and Analgesic Drugs, 347
Immunosuppressives, 350
Drugs Used in the Treatment of Mania and Depression, 352
The Neuroleptics: Antipsychotic Major Tranquilizers, 354
Chemotherapeutic Agents: Methotrexate and Busulfan, 354

TOXINS AND ACUTE POISONING, 355
Environmental Carcinogens, 355
Cyanide, 356
Carbon Monoxide, 356
Alcohols and Glycols, 357
Arsenic, 357
Mercury, 358
Iron, 358
Lead, 359
Organophosphates and Carbamates, 360
Mycotoxins, 360

SELECTED REFERENCES, 360

KEY POINTS

- Testing for the presence of drugs in the blood and other body fluids of patients has undergone a vast increase over the past 20 years.
- Testing for the presence of drugs of abuse and/or poisons in patients has become mandatory both in the emergency room and in employment screening.
- Most drugs for which monitoring is standard can be assayed using homogeneous immunologic techniques.
- Gas chromatography–mass spectroscopy, which involves separation and identification of compounds in the gas phase from their mass/charge ratios and fragmentation patterns, is the "gold standard" for detection and quantitation of drugs in body fluids.
- The mechanisms of action of many therapeutic drugs have been at least partially elucidated. Many of these, such as the antiinflammatory, antiasthmatic, and immunosuppressive drugs, block specific points in signal transduction pathways.
- Ingestion of poisons causes life-threatening illness; poisons include cyanide, carbon monoxide, and a number of metals, such as lead, mercury, iron, and arsenic. If detected, the effects of these poisons can often be reversed.

Toxicology is the study of substances introduced exogenously into the body. Elsewhere in this textbook, the analytic methods presented are concerned with determining the presence and levels of natural substances involved in normal body function. In this chapter, we discuss the biological effects and methods for detection of exogenous chemical compounds that profoundly influence bodily functions, often in a deleterious way but also for therapeutic benefit.

Toxicology has become divided into four areas. The first two areas are the detection of drugs of abuse and the determination of levels of therapeutic drugs being administered to patients. Also, it has been recognized that certain environmental compounds that are mutagens and carcinogens such as benzpyrene and acetylaminofluorene cause mutations in critical sequences of human DNA, leading to the frank development of cancer. In the ongoing revolution in molecular biology, this field has now expanded into the detection of certain markers such as abnormal DNA sequences or the presence of mutated proteins or the presence of carcinogens bound to DNA. This rapidly expanding field is the subject of discussion in Parts 8 and 9, especially in the chapters concerning serum and solid tissue diagnostic markers for cancer and pharmacogenomics. Finally, there are numerous toxins to which individuals become exposed, such as carbon monoxide, cyanide, metals, and so forth, for which detection is vital if physicians are to be able to reverse the adverse acute physiologic effects. In this chapter, we discuss each of these divisions of toxicology with special reference to the detection of drugs and toxins in body fluids.

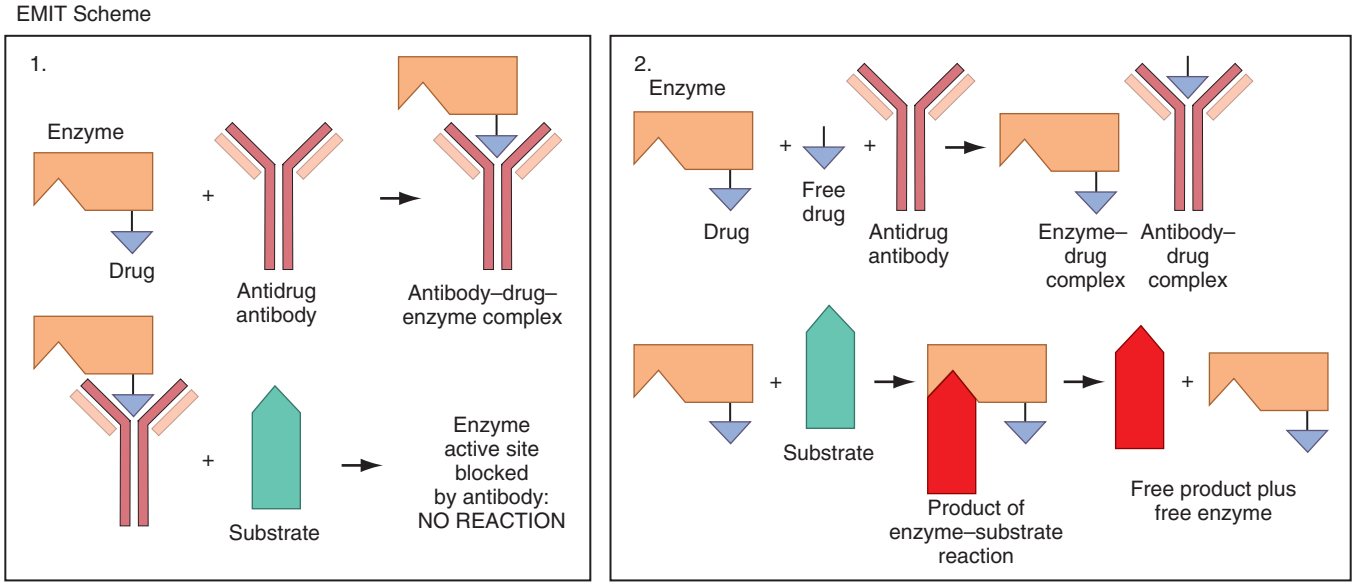
BASIC TECHNIQUES FOR DETECTING DRUGS IN SERUM AND URINE

The techniques involved in detecting the presence and/or the level of particular drugs, whether they are drugs of abuse or therapeutic drugs, are of two basic types: immunochemical and chromatographic.

IMMUNOCHEMICAL METHODS

Much drug testing today is performed using the so-called **homogeneous immunoassay.** The term *homogeneous* refers to the fact that these assays are all performed in solution, without any requirement for a phase separation that is traditionally used to separate bound from free ligand. This technology has revolutionized toxicology because it allows performance of rapid, stat analyses of blood and urine constituents. The technique is shown schematically in Figure 23-1. Here we show examples of two types of assays. In the first, the enzyme-mediated (or multiplied) immunologic technique (EMIT), the drug itself is covalently attached to an enzyme such as glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (Fig. 23-1, *A-1*). When the

http://basicbook.net



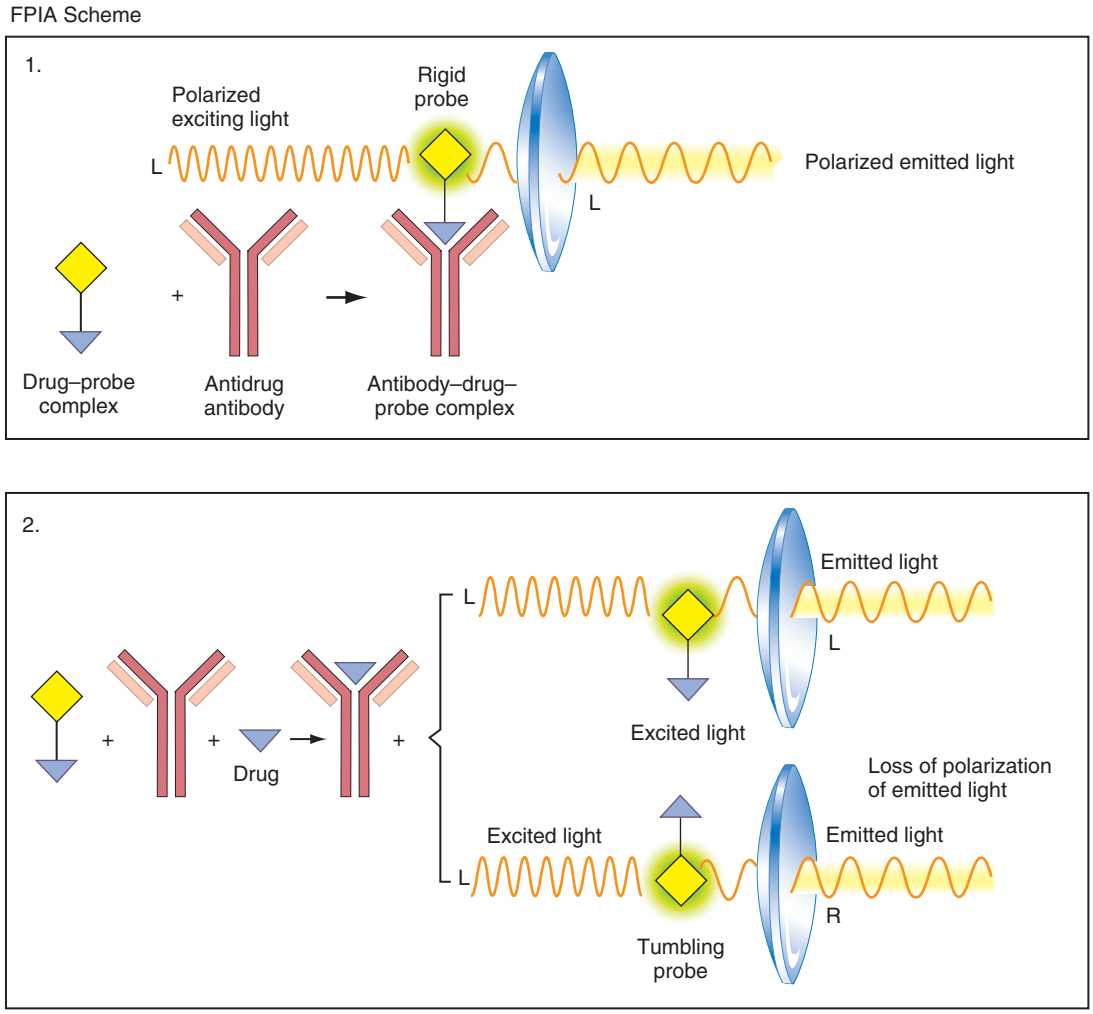


Figure 23-1 **Homogeneous methods for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the levels of drugs in body fluids.** **A,** In the enzyme-mediated immunologic technique (EMIT), a drug-enzyme complex is used as the marker. When bound to the antidrug antibody, the active site of the enzyme (linked to the drug) is blocked. Therefore, when substrate is added, no reaction will occur, as is shown in Part 1. However, if free drug (as in serum) is present, some or most of the enzyme-drug complex is displaced from the antidrug antibody. Now the active sites of the liberated enzyme-drug complexes are free, and the substrate undergoes reactions as indicated in Part 2. **B,** In the fluorescence polarization immunoassay assay (FPIA), the same general approach is used as in **A,** except that, in this method, the drug is attached to a fluorescent label or fluorophore. As shown in the upper scheme, Part 1, when the drug-label complex is bound to the antidrug antibody, it becomes immobilized *("rigid probe").* When excited with polarized light *(shown as polarized to the left or "L"),* the fluorophore emits light, which is likewise polarized to the left *(also seen as "L" in the figure).* As shown in the lower scheme, Part 2, when displaced by free drug, as in serum or urine, the drug-probe complex is displaced from the antidrug antibody. It is no longer immobilized and therefore tumbles freely in solution. This results in loss of polarization of the emitted light ("L" and "R," for left and right polarization), that is, in diminished fluorescence polarization.

http://basicbook.net

drug-enzyme complex is incubated with an antibody to the drug, enzyme activity is markedly decreased as a result of blocking of the active site of the enzyme by the antibody. When, as in Figure 23-1, *A-2*, exogenous drug (such as in serum) is added to the immune complex, this exogenous drug competes with the drug-enzyme complex for the antibody. Liberated drug-enzyme results in increased enzymatic activity. Increasing concentrations of drug in serum result in increased observed enzymatic activity. This method was pioneered largely by the Syva Corporation (now part of Siemens, Palo Alto, Calif.) and has been applied both to therapeutic drug monitoring and to detection of drugs of abuse.

Fluorescence polarization immunoassay (FPIA) is the second type of homogeneous drug assay, as shown in Figure 23-1, *B*. Rather than being linked to an enzyme, as in Figure 23-1, *A*, the drug is covalently attached to a fluorescent probe molecule. If a fluorescent molecule is excited with polarized light and is stationary (i.e., it does not "tumble" in solution), it will emit polarized light as a fluorophore. This emitted light has the same polarization as the exciting light. So, for example, if the exciting light is polarized to the left, the emitted light will also be polarized to the left. If a fluorophore tumbles freely in solution, however, the polarization is lost; that is, the emitted light is now polarized equally to the left and right. However, if the fluorophore is bound to a macromolecule such as an antibody, the polarization is strong, because attached to the nontumbling antibody it remains relatively stationary. In these assays, the probe-labeled drug is incubated with the antibody. The fluorescence polarization of the probe-labeled drug is, of course, high because the fluorescence probe is relatively immobilized when bound to the antibody directed against it (Fig. 23-1, *B-1*). Addition of exogenous drug, as in serum, to the incubated mixture results in displacement, by the exogenous drug, of some of the fluorescent probe-labeled drug molecules, as shown in Figure 23-1, *B-2*. These displaced molecules can now tumble freely in solution. The result is a decrease in fluorescence polarization. This decrease is directly related to the concentration of drug in serum.

This assay can detect drug levels in the nanomolar range and is both highly sensitive and specific. Both Abbott Laboratories (Chicago), currently on the Architect Analyzer and formerly on the TDX, IMX, and AXSYM analyzers, and Roche Diagnostic Laboratories (Nutley, N.J.), on the COBAS and INTEGRA analyzers, have pioneered this effective technique in monitoring a wide variety of therapeutic drugs and drugs of abuse.

DRUG BINDING TO ANTIBODIES

In both of the homogeneous methods discussed previously, a nonlinear relationship exists between the concentration of drug in serum and the response of the system—that is, the color that results from the enzymatic reaction (see Fig. 23-1, *A*) or the decrease in fluorescence polarization (see Fig. 23-1, *B*). This nonlinearity in response is due to the phenomenon of binding (i.e., the drug must bind to antibody before it is detected). This phenomenon may be expressed by the following equilibrium:

$$D + D^* - Ab \leftrightarrow D - Ab + D^* \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-1)}$$

where D is the drug concentration in serum, D* is the "marker" drug (i.e., drug labeled with an enzyme or a fluorescent probe), and Ab is the antibody. The concentration of free D* is a measure of D–Ab, because both are equimolar. The concentration of D–Ab is, in turn, related to D; the more D is present, the more D–Ab is formed. However, because the concentration of Ab is fixed in a given experiment, at sufficiently high concentrations of D, all of the Ab will be saturated, so that at higher concentrations of D, no further D–Ab can form. The relationship between D and D–Ab is given by the Langmuir expression:

$$r = (D - Ab)/(Ab_0) = nkD/(kD + 1) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-2)}$$

where (Ab_0) is the total concentration of antibody, k is the equilibrium constant for formation of the D–Ab complex, n is the number of antibody-binding sites per molecule of antibody, and D is free drug concentration as defined earlier in the chapter. Equation 23-2 is very similar to the Michaelis-Menten equation discussed in Chapter 20 (Equation 20-10), except that there is no catalytic step here. This equation shows that the concentration of D–Ab is nonlinear in D, except where $Kd \ll 1$. Where $kD \gg 1$, saturation is achieved. This equation can be linearized in the form used for a Scatchard plot, that is,

$$r/D = kn - kr \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-3)}$$

where r/D is plotted versus r. Given the results for a set of experiments, a least-squares–best-fit line is drawn through the points. The slope of the line is –k, and the intercept is nk, so that n (the number of sites on the antibody) is equal to the intercept/slope. Thus the values of n and k are readily determined. Once values for n and k are known, the value of D for any measured value of r can be directly computed from Equation 23-3.

Two problems that arise in using Equation 23-3 are that often the antibodies are nonhomogeneous, so that the Scatchard plot is nonlinear, and possible blockage of free antibody sites by drug molecules is seen in solid-phase immunoassays. The first problem was solved by Rodbard and colleagues (1971), wherein the analysis mentioned previously was applied to multiple-binding equilibria. This analysis is used commonly in microprocessors that analyze the calibration curves in immunoassays. The second problem has been analyzed using a different theoretical approach (Pincus & Rendell, 1981). Equation 23-3 illustrates the basic principle of how the results of the drug immunoassay on serum are converted into drug concentrations in serum.

CHROMATOGRAPHIC TECHNIQUES

Chromatographic procedures (see Engelhardt, 2004, for an excellent brief history of liquid chromatography) have been applied mainly to the qualitative detection of drugs of abuse and toxins, and less to the determination of levels of therapeutic drugs. The three major methods are thin-layer chromatography (TLC), high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), and gas chromatography–mass spectroscopy (GC-MS). Although GC-MS is considered the "gold standard" for detection and quantitation of volatile drugs and poisons, newer analytic techniques such as capillary electrophoresis (CE) and liquid chromatography–mass spectroscopy (LC-MS) and mass spectroscopy-mass spectroscopy (MS-MS) are available. These techniques are all discussed in turn.

Thin-Layer Chromatography

Many compounds can be separated from one another with this method, based on their relative affinities for a polar solid stationary phase (usually a hydrated silicate) and a mobile liquid phase that is nonpolar (such as 10% methanol in chloroform). Depending on these affinities, different compounds adsorb to the hydrated silicate at different positions as the nonpolar solvent migrates up the stationary hydrated silicate. This principle is illustrated in Figure 23-2. For a given solvent system, the ratio of the distance traversed by the compound to the distance traversed by the solvent front is a constant for the compound and can be used to identify the compound in a mixture. This ratio is called the $\mathbf{r_f}$. This technique is central to identifying different drugs of abuse, many of which can be separated from one another using TLC. The method has been packaged in the form of Toxi-Lab (Irvine, Calif.) kits in which the user is supplied with discrete strips of silicate, extraction solvents, and color-developing solutions.

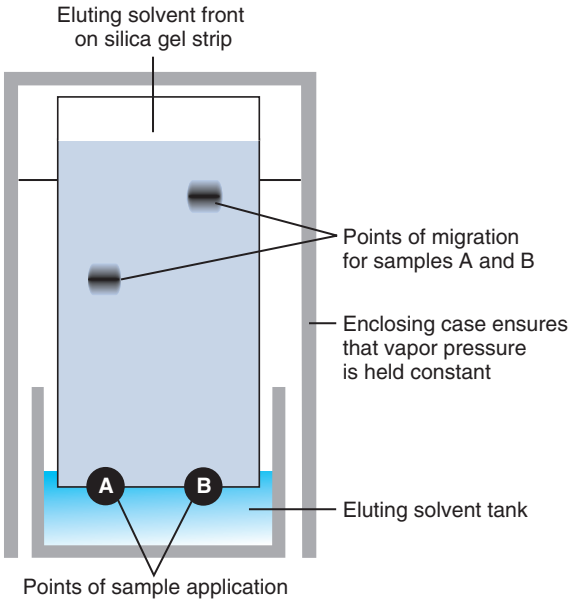


Figure 23-2 **Illustration of the principle of thin-layer chromatography (TLC).** Two solutes, **A** and **B,** are applied to the polar silicate strip. **A** is more polar than **B** and has a higher affinity, therefore, for the polar stationary phase than for the nonpolar mobile phase (usually methanol in chloroform). Moreover, this relative affinity of **A** is higher than the affinity of **B** for the polar phase. Therefore, **A** separates out first on the strip, and **B** migrates further on the strip.

http://basicbook.net

Toxi-Lab Procedures

The best specimen for drug detection by chromatography is urine because large quantities can be collected noninvasively. Once a urine specimen is collected, it is subjected to concentration and extraction procedures. In extraction procedures, acidic drugs are separated from basic ones. Almost all drugs of abuse are basic drugs, all of which are amine derivatives. The important **acid drugs** comprise almost exclusively the barbiturates. In aqueous solution, the basic drugs are charged because of the equilibrium in Equation 23-4, *A:*

$$R-NH_2 + H^+ \leftrightarrow R-NH_3^+ \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-4, A)}$$

$$R-NH_3^+ + OH^- \leftrightarrow R-NH_2 + H_2O \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-4, B)}$$

in which a primary amine (secondary and tertiary amines exhibit the same equilibrium) is represented by RNH_2. The ammonium ion form (right side of Equation 23-4A) is soluble in water but not in nonpolar organic solvents. However, the amine-free base (left side of Equation 23-4A) is soluble in nonpolar organic solvents. Extraction procedures to isolate the basic drugs are aimed at treating the urine with base, so that significant amounts of the basic drugs will be uncharged as the amine-free base (Equation 23-4B). This form can then be extracted into a nonpolar organic phase and applied to the silicate strip. The reverse process is carried out for acidic drugs (i.e., these are treated with acid and are extracted into nonpolar solvents). In practice, a small paper disk is added to the organic extraction mixture, and the solvent is then evaporated so that all basic drugs adsorb onto the paper disk. This disk is then applied to one end of the silicate strip, and the strip is placed in the migrating nonpolar solvent. A separate strip is used for each extraction; the A strip is used for basic drugs, and the B strip for acidic drugs. The chief utility of the B strip is in identifying the barbiturates, as is discussed subsequently.

Identification of Specific Drugs

After separation of the drugs on the plate, it is necessary to identify them. This objective is achieved by subjecting the drugs to standard color reactions for each separate compound. In this procedure for basic drugs, the strip is simply dipped successively in three different solvents, which results in characteristic color patterns for each drug. The strip is also subjected to ultraviolet (UV) light, which excites fluorescence in selected compounds. Similar procedures are used for the acidic drugs extracted onto the B strip. As shown in Figure 23-3, which is from the Toxi-Lab reference pattern book, each drug can be identified not only by its r_f but also by its color and characteristic color change in different reagents. These patterns are reinforced by the fluorescence characteristics. As an example, notice in Figure 23-3, *A* on the Toxi-Lab A worksheet that morphine, the main metabolite of heroin, has a characteristic r_f of 0.14 and a characteristic dark red or purple color in the first solvent that diminishes in intensity and changes color in the second solvent, water. It is nonfluorescent. If one or more of these characteristics differ(s) from this pattern, strong doubt about identification of the spot as morphine would exist. If all criteria are met, the sensitivity and specificity of the method are increased.

Reliability of the Method

Because the identification of each drug depends on the use of qualitative color changes and/or the presence of fluorescence, the sensitivity of the method is limited by the ability of the naked eye to detect these changes. Practically, the level of detection is on the order of 1 µg/mL of compound present on the strip. The chief value of the chromatographic method is confirmatory (i.e., confirmation of a positive immunoassay test result). The two methods are often performed together on a single specimen.

The major problems that occur with this method are that extraction procedures are occasionally inefficient, so that insufficient amounts of drug are absorbed onto the disk. Also, the extraction and evaporation procedures are somewhat time-consuming, requiring approximately a half-hour for full processing. Furthermore, cocaine has a number of metabolites that are polar (e.g., ecgonine) and that barely migrate from the origin, so it is sometimes difficult to detect the presence of this drug of abuse because it has been converted completely to the polar metabolites before excretion. Some difficulty may also be encountered in distinguishing among various opiates, such as between morphine and other opiates, because the r_f values of these drugs can be close to one another (see Fig. 23-3). However, experienced personnel can make this distinction in most cases. Also, some nontoxic drugs may give characteristic color changes, and r_f values that are similar to those for the drug of abuse. A case in point is that certain antihistamines appear on the A strip to be very similar to amphetamines.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography

TLC allows direct qualitative detection of drugs in a panoramic way. HPLC allows quantitative detection of drugs and allows sharper separation of these same drugs. In HPLC, the stationary phase, which can be either polar (silicic acid) or nonpolar (such as the C-18 columns), in reverse-phase chromatography is composed of uniform, ultrafine particles that vastly increase its adsorptive surface area. This stationary phase is packed into a column. The resistance to flow in this column is high, so that large pressures are required to deliver constant reasonable flow rates. In the Waters HPLC instrument (Waters Corporation, Milford, Mass.), a constant pressure head is delivered to the column by the use of two pumps that operate so that as one withdraws, the other pushes forward (i.e., the two operate 180 degrees out of phase). The eluate from the column is monitored by a variety of detectors ranging from UV multiwavelength detectors to redox potential electrode detectors. It is the usual practice in performance of quantitative HPLC to use an internal standard—that is, a compound similar in structure to the drug(s) of interest, which is added to the specimen to be analyzed in a known concentration. By knowing how much of this marker compound or internal standard is placed on the column and how much is recovered from the column in the eluate, the percentage recovery from the column can be calculated for this compound and, by extrapolation, for all of the drugs of interest for which concentrations are being quantitated. Thus, losses due to the column (in addition to losses in extraction procedures) can be corrected for using this technique. Generally, HPLC has been used for the quantitation of specific therapeutic drugs but has found use in detection of cocaine and heroin in urine. The sensitivity of the method is in the nanomolar to micromolar range.

One of the greatest uses of HPLC is in the separation and quantitation of the tricyclic antidepressants and their metabolites. These are among the most commonly prescribed drugs and are also used in excess as drugs of abuse in suicide attempts. It is often necessary to determine the levels not only of the parent tricyclic antidepressant but also of its active and inactive metabolites reviewed subsequently. Figure 23-4 shows a typical separation on a silicate column. Protriptyline, a less inactive tricyclic compound, is the internal standard. It is clear that the separation among the metabolites and parent compounds is quite sharp. This separation is completely reproducible.

A variant of TLC that includes the advantages of HPLC is CE (Shihabi, 1993; Tagliaro et al, 1998). In this method, a capillary tube lined with silicate, 10 to 100 µm in internal diameter and 100 to 1000 mm in length, is used as the solid support in an electrophoresis apparatus. Here, the driving force for separation is the voltage (on the order of 25 kV) rather than pressure, as in HPLC. Because of the vast surface area, separations are quite sharp. The system is highly versatile and can be used to separate serum proteins and small molecules. CE possesses a wide analytic spectrum (e.g., including biopolymers, pesticides, aromatic compounds, drugs, inorganic ions) because of high versatility in terms of separation modes. Different analyte selectivity is based on different physicochemical principles of separation without changes in instrumental hardware—a distinct advantage of this technique. Capillary zone electrophoresis, micellar electrokinetic capillary chromatography (MECK), capillary isotachophoresis, capillary isoelectric focusing, capillary electrochromatography, and capillary gel electrophoresis are different separation modes utilized in CE separations. For example, by adding a detergent to the buffer system, as with MECK, micelles will form. A neutral compound (such as a pesticide) will partition into the detergent, forming micelles, and the complex will separate out based on the mobility/charge of the micelle. In addition, new platforms such as chip-based CE and immunoaffinity CE are currently being developed. CE has not yet enjoyed as widespread use as the immunoassay techniques (discussed previously) in clinical toxicology but is commonly utilized in analytic forensic toxicologic studies, as well as in molecular diagnostic studies, and can easily be extended to other uses in clinical laboratory medicine (Boone & Ensing, 2003; Petersen et al, 2003; Chiesl et al, 2009).

Gas Chromatography–Mass Spectroscopy

Testing for drugs of abuse has become one of the most rapidly developing areas in the clinical laboratory in view of the widespread and ever-expanding use of these drugs among large segments of the working population. In view of the increasing requirements for routine drug screening, it is necessary to have "gold standard" techniques to confirm the results obtained using screening methods such as EMIT and TLC.

GC-MS has proved to be such a gold standard because of its great sensitivity and its reliability. This method, as its name implies, involves two techniques: gas-liquid chromatography and mass spectroscopy. In the

http://basicbook.net

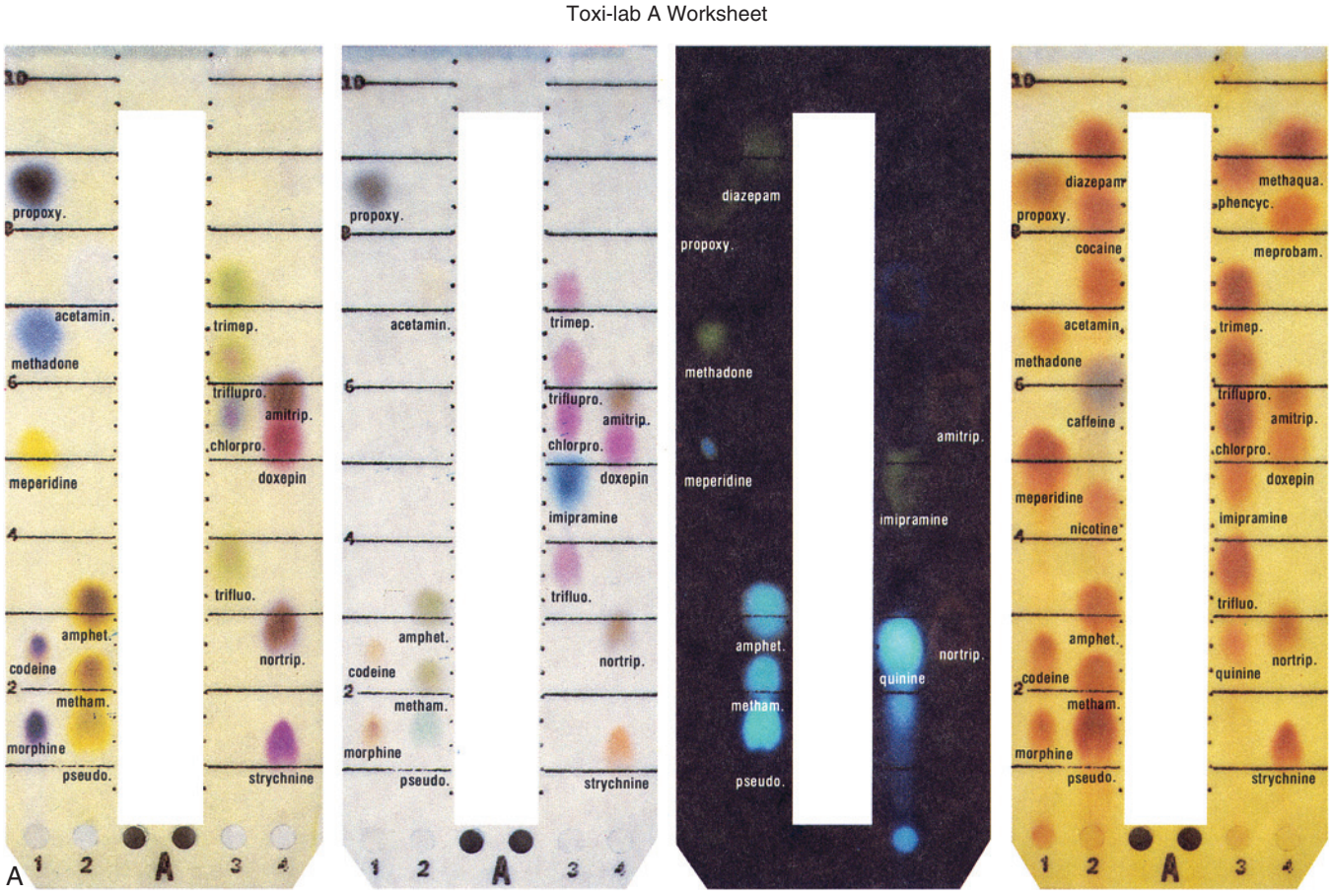


Figure 23-3 **A set of typical separations of the major drugs of abuse (and some therapeutic drugs) on Toxi-Lab thin-layer chromatography.** Toxi-Lab **A** worksheet: Typical separation of basic drugs on the **A** strip, together with characteristic color changes. The third Toxi-Lab **A** strip shows characteristic fluorescence of different drugs. Note that amphetamine and methamphetamine on the lower left are both fluorescent. Toxi-Lab **B** worksheet: *Left:* Typical separation of the more acidic drugs on the **B** strip with characteristic color changes. The major use of the **B** strip is to identify the presence of barbiturates. *Right:* Fluorescence patterns of drugs on the **B** strip.

http://basicbook.net

former, compounds are directly heated into the gas phase or are derivatized to make them labile to facilitate heating them into the gas phase. They are then passed over a column containing the stationary phase, which often consists of a liquid, usually a hydrocarbon or silicone oil, that coats a solid support in the column and offers a large surface area for adsorption. Separation is based, much as in TLC, on the ability of each compound to adsorb to the stationary phase, which partially depends on the relative solubilities of the compound in the gas versus the liquid phase. Normally, the compounds eluting from the column could be detected by conventional techniques, as discussed previously, except that once the compounds are in the gas phase, where they are heated, advantage can be taken of another feature of the system—the ability of compounds that are heated to high temperatures to lose or gain electrons.

At high temperatures, the highest energy electrons of a compound (i.e., the ones of lowest ionization potential) can be excited, such that the molecule can lose electrons and become charged. This process may be aided by such techniques as electron bombardment in a specially designed chamber that directly creates molecule-ions. Most of these resulting molecule-ions are single cations. Different molecule-ions in general have different sizes and different molecular weights. These molecule-ions decompose into characteristic fragments whose ratios with respect to one another and whose positions of migration relative to one another are also constant. The molecule-ions are then passed through an electric field generated by four rods that are subjected to rapidly alternating currents, the so-called **quadrupole detector.** Depending on the frequency of the alternating current, certain molecule-ions with specific mass/charge ratios can pass through the field to a detector. Thus, the molecule-ions can be separated on the basis of molecular weight or, more exactly, on their mass/charge ratios. The overall design of GC-MS is shown in Figure 23-5.

The presence of the molecule-ion on the plate is detected by a charge multiplier detector system. The technique of GC-MS has become highly refined. Each molecule-ion created in the gas phase can undergo further changes, such as elimination reactions and rearrangements, and further degradation to small fragments that, in turn, ionize and give characteristic decomposition patterns. The patterns of thousands of compounds have now been determined. The position of the parent molecule-ion of the compound and the decomposition fragments give rise to a **fingerprint pattern** unique to the compound. These patterns are stored in a computer so that when a pattern for an unknown compound or group of compounds is obtained, the pattern is compared with the stored patterns to identify the compound(s) of interest. The entire method has been highly successful in detecting even low levels of cocaine and/or its metabolites in body fluids. A typical cocaine pattern is shown in Figure 23-6. Because single molecule-ion species give rise to significant currents in the detector, it is possible to detect very low levels of drugs, making this technique the ultimate reference method and the best confirmatory testing procedure available at present.

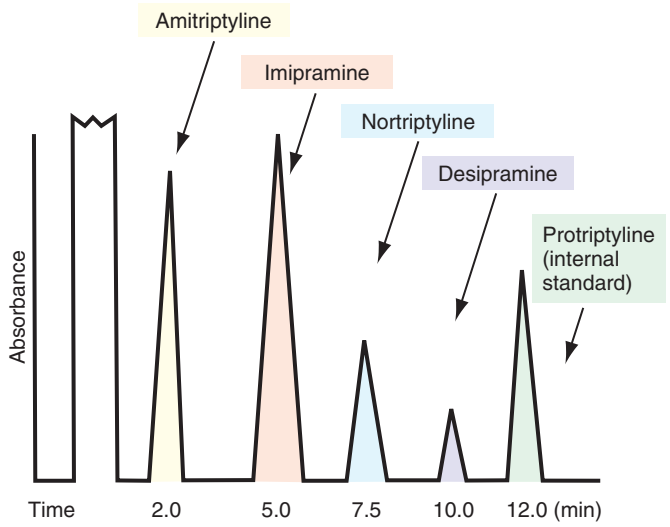


Figure 23-4 Sketch of a typical separation of the major tricyclic antidepressants on high-performance liquid chromatography. A complete separation can be effected in 12 minutes. The concentration of each drug is on the order of 100 mcg/mL.

Liquid Chromatography–Mass Spectroscopy

As discussed previously, GC-MS is the gold standard for the identification of volatile compounds. Nonvolatile compounds, however, can be detected utilizing LC-MS (Davis et al, 1989; Maurer, 1998; Marquet, 2002; Niessen & Tinke, 1995, 2003). Unlike GC-MS, however, the coupling of LC with MS requires sophisticated interfaces between the LC and MS components. The interface must volatilize nonvolatile compounds that have been separated on the LC; must remove the liquid solvent from the LC; and must correct flow-rate incompatibility between the LC and MS. Two interface methods, electrospray (ES) and atmospheric pressure chemical ionization (APCI), appear to have become the gold standards for LC-MS. Both interface methods are utilized with atmospheric pressure ionization devices to facilitate removal of the mobile phase. They differ primarily in the range of analytes that can be accommodated and in how the solvent phase is nebulized.

Ionizable analytes of high molecular weight and/or high polarity can be accommodated with ES, and APCI can be used for analytes of less polarity and lower molecular weight. At present, ES appears to have more clinical and forensic applications than APCI in toxicology. LC-MS can be used to confirm positive test results from a screening assay and has been used for confirmation of drugs-of-abuse assays, poisoning detection in acute or chronic intoxication, therapeutic drug identification and

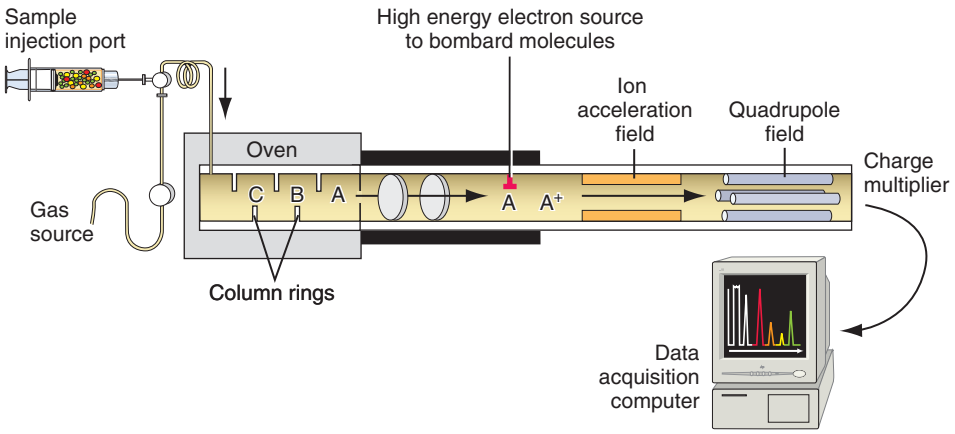


Figure 23-5 A schematic view of the components of gas chromatography–mass spectroscopy instrumentation. On the left of the figure is the gas chromatographic system, where a volatilized compound is moved by an inert gas over a column consisting of rings coated with a liquid. Compounds C, B, and A separate on this column and are maintained in the gas phase by the oven that surrounds the column. The separated compounds then enter the mass spectrometer on the right side of the figure, where they are subjected to bombardment by electrons, resulting in molecule ion species. These ionic species then are accelerated in a field and are passed through an electric quadrupole field. Only those ions with a narrow range of mass/charge ratios (m/e ratios) will pass through the tuned field so that they strike the detector. The electric currents that result are digitalized and stored in a computer that analyzes the data (Davis et al, 1989).

http://basicbook.net

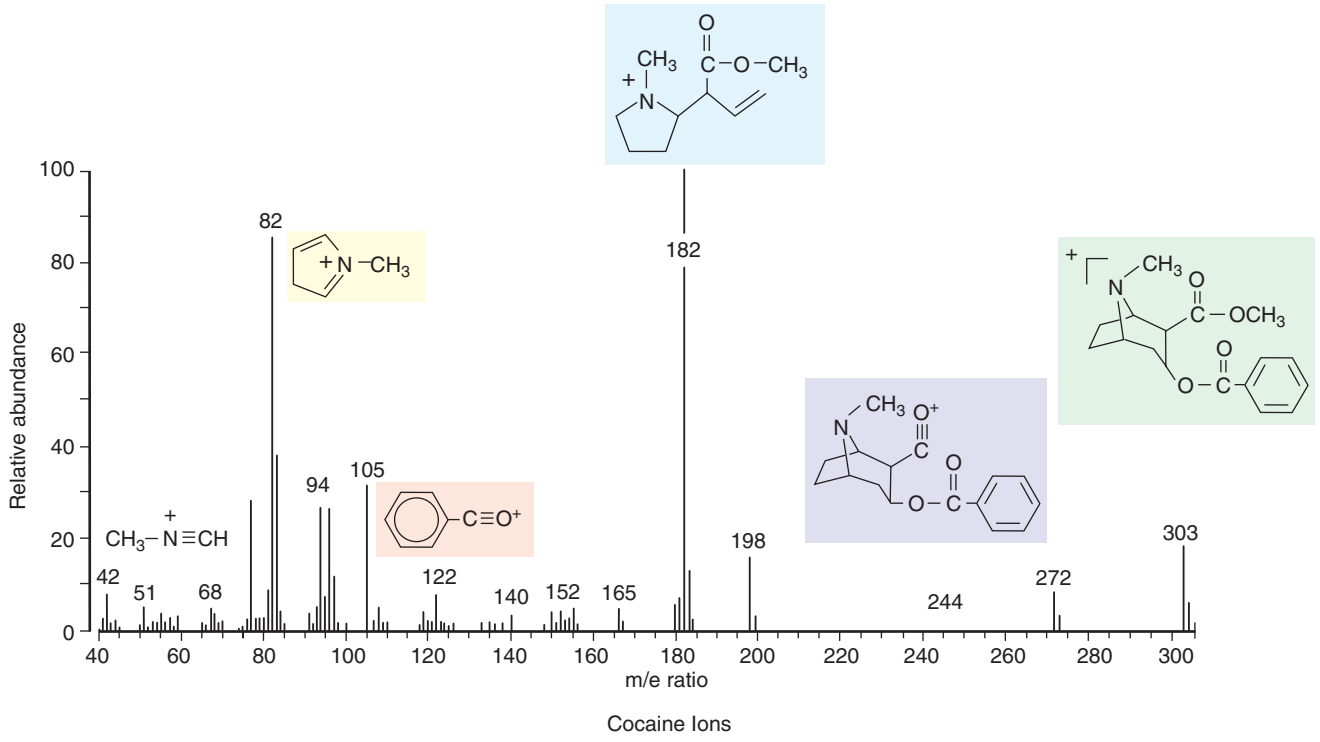


Figure 23-6 **Fragmentogram for cocaine using gas chromatography–mass spectroscopy.** The specimen is urine. This figure shows the characteristic peaks for cocaine metabolites. m/e is the mass-to-charge ratio, which for most ions is a measure of the molecular mass. (Courtesy of Dr. Chip Walls, Onondaga County, N.Y., Medical Examiner's Office.)

quantitation, and pharmacokinetic and drug metabolism studies. Although LC-MS has limitations when compared with GC-MS, it has become a powerful "mature and validated" (Marquet, 2002) technique in analytic toxicology and a complementary method to GC-MS.

Gas Chromatography Coupled with Infrared Spectroscopy

Infrared (IR), or Fourier-transformed infrared, spectroscopy (FTIR) utilizes light of high wavelength (low frequency), which excites vibronic states of molecules involved in bond stretching and bond angle bending. Every compound has a characteristic IR "fingerprint," that is, IR absorption pattern, so that even closely related compounds can be distinguished readily from one another by gas phase IR. Thus the fractions of patients' samples that elute from a GC or liquid chromatography column can be analyzed using this technique. As with mass spectroscopy, the FTIR spectra for different compounds can be stored in a computer attached to the GC-FTIR system; the spectra obtained from the eluates from the column are then analyzed for the presence of specific drugs of abuse. This method is particularly well suited for the detection of amphetamines (Belal et al, 2009).

SCREENING FOR DRUGS OF ABUSE

In most states of the United States, two levels of testing for drugs of abuse have become recognized: emergency room testing and employment screening/forensic testing. The former involves rapid, stat screening methods, in particular, EMIT (or FPIA) and TLC. The purpose of this type of screening test is to detect the presence of a drug or several drugs of abuse in the patient's urine. Rarely are the more sophisticated chromatographic procedures such as HPLC and GC-MS used for this purpose. Forensic testing, on the other hand, requires not only a screen but also an independent confirmatory method, which is almost always chosen to be GC-MS or, less commonly, HPLC. It should be noted that, strictly by law, any confirmatory method is valid, provided it is a completely different method from the primary one. Thus, TLC can confirm EMIT, whereas FPIA cannot confirm it because both EMIT and FPIA are immunochemical methods. Another important legalistic consideration in forensic testing is the **chain of custody** (DeCresce et al, 1989; Poklis, 2001). This process is used in the collection of urine from the individual from whom the specimen is taken. It may begin by observation of specimen collection by one person. Then, that person or another specifically designated individual, usually a police officer (in the case of prisoners or suspects) or some other designated official, accompanies the messenger, who brings the specimen from the individual to the laboratory. This individual is a witness to the testing (and must sign a legal document to this effect) of the specific urine sample collected. More than one designated individual may be involved as the witness in this chain.

THE DRUGS OF ABUSE

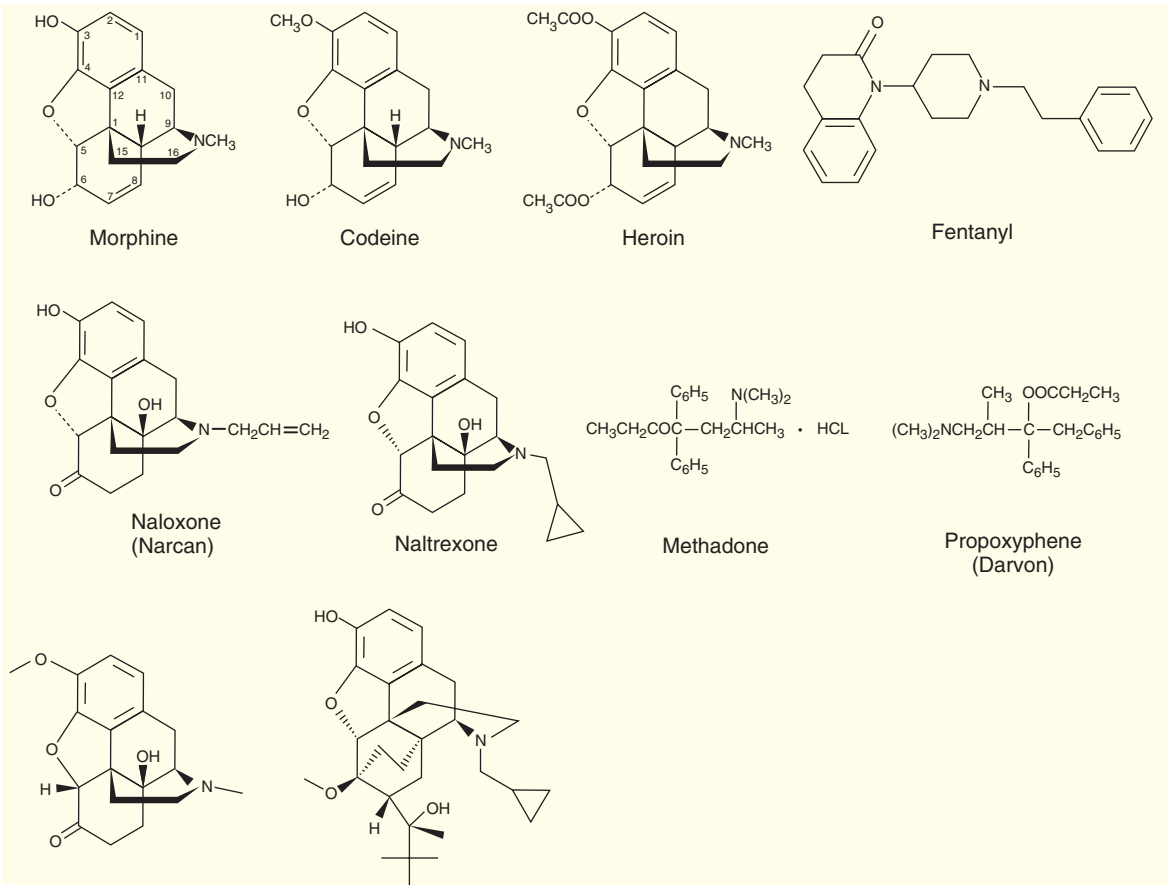
GENERAL ASPECTS OF THE MECHANISMS OF ACTION

The major drugs of abuse (Sweetman et al, 2002; Flomenbaum et al, 2006) are shown in Figure 23-7 (O'Neil et al, 2001; Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). As may be seen in this figure, these drugs, with the exception of the barbiturates and the cannabinoids, are all basic amino group–containing compounds, most of which also contain benzene rings. The steric relationship of the amino group with respect to the aromatic benzene rings is rather similar, especially in cocaine, the opiates, and methadone. As might be expected, these compounds can cross-react, although with lower affinities, with each other's target receptors. The primary physiologic mechanisms of action of these drugs are not well understood, but some rudimentary knowledge has been gained as to some of the main targets of these drugs. Many of these drugs act directly on dopaminergic and norepinephrinergic neurotransmitter systems, especially the limbic system (sometimes referred to as the **smell brain**). This system is a more primitive one associated with pleasure seeking and is discussed further later.

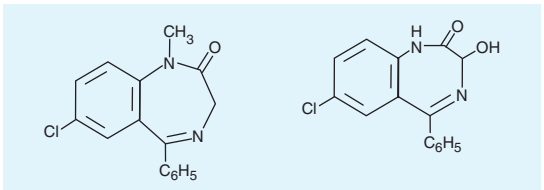
In Figure 23-8, possible effects of several of the most important drugs on this system are shown. It appears that the amphetamines, closely related structurally to dopamine and the catecholamines, and cocaine cause release of dopamine from the vesicles at the axonal side of the synapse, which may partially be responsible for their producing a pleasant sensation (a so-called **high**) in many individuals (Hurd et al, 1988). The tricyclic antidepressants stimulate pathways that utilize norepinephrine as the neurotransmitter. These pathways, like the dopaminergic pathways, are involved in arousal and pleasure seeking. In this case, the tricyclic antidepressants, rather than promoting release of the neurotransmitters, block the reuptake of norepinephrine into the vesicles on the axonal side of the synapse. They also may exert nonspecific reuptake blockade of dopamine in the dopaminergic

http://basicbook.net

1. OPIATES



2. TRANQUILIZERS



3. BARBITUATES; SEDATIVE - HYPNOTICS

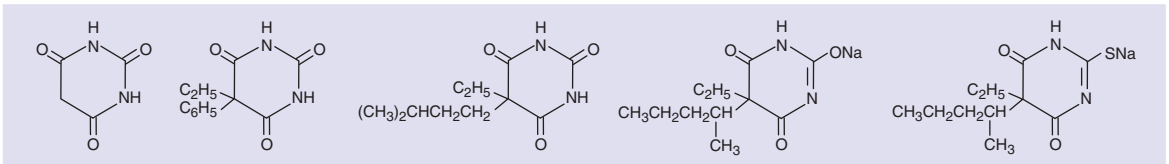
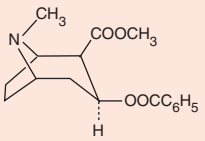


Figure 23-7 **Chemical structures for the major drugs of abuse.** All of the opiates are seen to be basic compounds that are tertiary amines and that contain benzene rings. Notice that, in the barbiturate series, barbituric acid may be considered as a condensation product of urea and malonic acid.

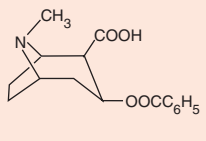
Continued

http://basicbook.net

4. DOPAMINERGIC PATHWAY STIMULANTS

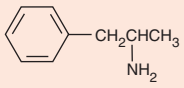


Cocaine

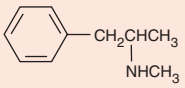


Benzoylecgonine
(less active metabolite)

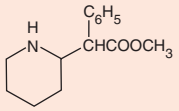
AMPHETAMINES



Amphetamine

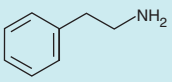


Methamphetamine

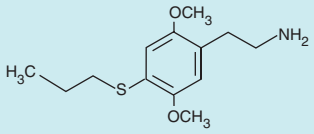


Methylphenidate
(Ritalin - used to treat
hyperactive children)

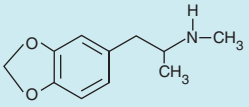
4A. "DESIGNER" AMPHETAMINES/PHENYLETHYLAMINES



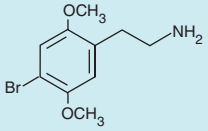
Phenylethylamine
Base compound



2,5-dimethyoxy-4(n)-propyl-
thiophenethylamine (2C-T-7)

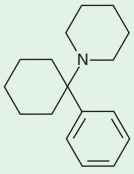


3,4-dimethyleneoxy-
methamphetamine
(MDMA or "Ecstasy")

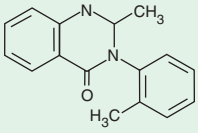


5-Bromo-2,5-methoxy-
phenylethylamine (2CB)

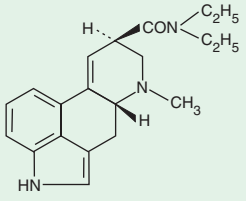
5. HALLUCINOGENS



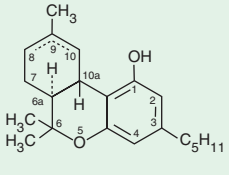
Phencyclidine



Methaquaalone



Lysergic acid
diethylamide
(LSD)

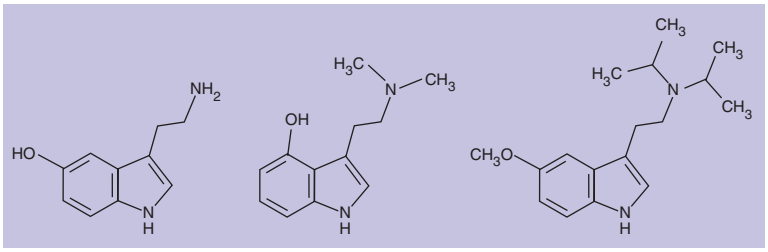


Tetrahydro
cannabinol

Figure 23-7, cont'd

http://basicbook.net

6. TRYPTAMINES

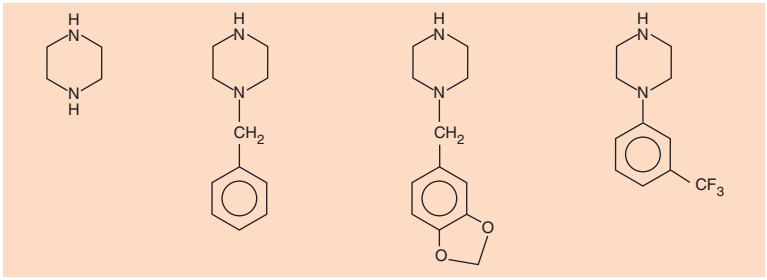


Serotonin-
Base compound

Psilocin

5-methoxy-N,N-diisopropyl
tryptamine (5-Me)-DIPT

7. PIPERAZINES



Piperazine

1-Benzyl-
piperazine
("BZP" or "A2")

1-(3,4-Methylene-
dioxybenzyl)
piperazine
("MDBP")

1-(3-Trifluoro
methylphenyl)
piperazine
("TFMPP"
or "Molly")

Figure 23-7, cont'd

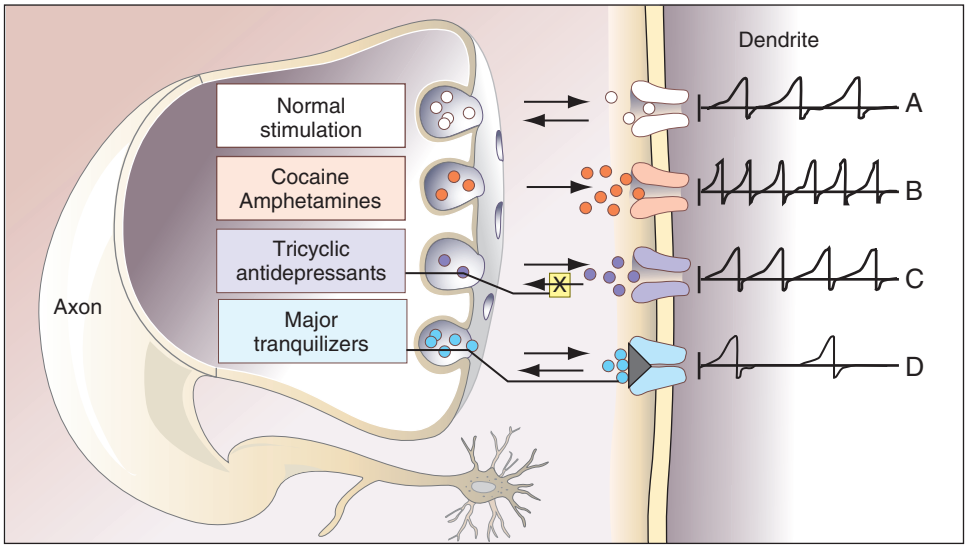


Figure 23-8 Illustration of the possible mechanisms of action of drugs of abuse and some therapeutic drugs on sympathomimetic amine (dopamine and norepinephrine) pathways. *A,* Normal neural transmission. A nerve impulse is conducted down the axon to the terminal boutons at the nerve ending. Vesicles, represented by the round gray structure, release their contents of neurotransmitter, here dopamine, represented by small white circles. Dopamine molecules traverse the synaptic cleft and bind to dendritic receptors, initiating action potentials *(at right under "dendrite")* in the dendrites. Notice the arrows showing that dopamine is both released and taken up by the vesicles. *B,* In the presence of cocaine and amphetamines, enhanced release of neurotransmitter *(red circles)* from vesicles occurs, increasing the rate of firing in the dendrites. *C,* Tricyclic antidepressants block (arrow with "X" in yellow box) reuptake of the neurotransmitter *(purple circles),* in this case norepinephrine and, less specifically, dopamine, causing more neurotransmitter to "recycle" to the dendritic receptors, resulting in increased firing. *D,* Some of the neuroleptics act by blocking *(gray wedge)* postsynaptic dendritic receptors for dopamine *(blue circles),* causing decreased firing.

http://basicbook.net

pathways (Baldessarini, 2006). It is of great interest that, paradoxically, the tricyclic antidepressants such as imipramine (Tofranil) have been used successfully to treat the effects of cocaine, although, as described later, benzodiazepine tranquilizers are now preferred. The major tranquilizers such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine, used to treat psychotic states such as schizophrenia, appear to block attachment of dopamine to the dendritic receptors in the synapse, thereby blocking the stimulatory effects of dopamine. Associated with many dopaminergic neurons are inhibitory neurons that use γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) as their neurotransmitter. It appears that many benzodiazepine receptors exist on these neurons, causing potentiation of GABA at the synapses in this system, reducing the dopaminergic effects of the stimulatory pathways on the limbic system. Thus, some of the tranquilizing effects of diazepam (Valium) and other benzodiazepines can be explained.

Widely distributed throughout the central nervous system and periphery are a variety of opioid receptors classified mainly as μ-, δ-, κ- and ε-receptors (Tseng, 2001; Snyder & Pasternak, 2003; Fujii et al, 2004). The μ receptors appear to be specific for morphine and heroin, both of which produce a general analgesic state. These opioid receptors are discussed further in the following section.

Many of the drugs of abuse also act on two other major pathways in the brain: those using serotonin (serotonergic) and those utilizing *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) as their neurotransmitter. Neurotransmission by serotonin occurs by its binding to the 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT) receptor on the dendritic side of the synapse. There is a rather wide range of 5-HT receptors, not all of which produce the same physiologic effects. The major ones appear to be 5-HT_1 and 5-HT_2 receptors. The serotonin pathways encompass a rather wide swath of the brain and even the spinal cord. This neurotransmitter is the principal one for the limbic system and, in addition, the basal ganglia, especially the amygdala that is involved in aggressive behavior. As mentioned earlier, the limbic system is involved in pleasure seeking and pleasure reinforcement. Serotonergic pathways also extend to the hippocampus and are involved in memory. As a neurotransmitter in the spinal cord, serotonin induces muscle contraction. NMDA pathways are more involved in nociceptive (pain) pathways and are involved in memory and neuronal plasticity (Zhuo, 2009). They have been found to be involved in chronic pain reinforcement. Blockade of NMDA pathways by drugs of abuse can therefore remove this perceived undesirable effect.

EXTENT OF USE OF DRUGS OF ABUSE

Overall, in the U.S. population as of 2012, there has been a general increase in the use of all drugs of abuse in individuals 12 years of age and older (about 24 million individuals) from 8.3% to 9.2% of this age group, mostly due to cannabinoid (marijuana) abuse (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, 2013). As might be expected, the highest number of drug abusers occurs in the 16- to 39-year age range, almost 75%. Interestingly, individuals in the 40- to 59-year bracket comprise most of the remainder, numbering over 20% of the overall number of drug abusers, a significant fraction. There were approximately 2.9 million new drug abusers in 2012. In this group, the most abused drugs were the cannabinoids (i.e., marijuana), comprising about 66% of the drugs abused. Pain relievers, as discussed later, constituted about 17%, inhalants (most popular among young teens) about 6%, stimulants (such as the amphetamines) 3.6%, hallucinogens 2%, and cocaine and heroin, each 0.1%. Over the time period from 2007 to 2012, the major increase in drug abuse is from marijuana use. Cocaine use has decreased in the last few years, from 2007 to 2012, dropping from 2.1 million to 1.7 million. Methamphetamine use has undergone a small decrease from 530,000 to 440,000 users over the same time period.

COCAINE

Cocaine is derived from the coca plant and has enjoyed much popularity as an additive to certain foods. At the beginning of the 20th century, it was used in Coca-Cola, but owing to its addictive effects, this practice was discontinued. Cocaine is a derivative of the alkaloid ecgonine (i.e., the methyl ester of benzoylecgonine), as shown in Figure 23-7 (Group 4 drugs). The normal route of administration of cocaine is nasal (i.e., inhalation, called **snorting**), such that the drug passes through the nasal membranes. A particularly potent form of cocaine, called **crack,** is the free-base form that passes rapidly across the nasal membranes such that, for a given dose, most or all of it enters the bloodstream rapidly. The half-life of cocaine is 1 to 2 hours, and the parent compound and its metabolites are usually cleared from the body within 2 days.

It is estimated that as many as 25 million people in the United States have used cocaine at least once (Jones & Wie, 2006); fortunately most of these individuals do not continue. Fatalities from cocaine abuse are of two types: direct toxicity of the drug (Johanson & Fischman, 1989) and crime related to the illicit acquisition of the drug. Up to 25% of myocardial infarctions in patients between 18 and 45 years of age have been attributed to cocaine abuse (Jones & Wie, 2006).

Cocaine is used medically to induce local anesthesia during nasopharyngeal surgery. However, in large doses, it induces a euphoric state (the "high" experienced by the user) and may also induce hallucinatory states. It can also promote violent behavior (Flomenbaum et al, 2006; Hoffman, 2006). Many of these results can be explained by cocaine's dopaminergic effects. One study (Azmitia et al, 1990) suggests that cocaine induces increased calcium ion influx in dopaminergic neurons. The increased intracellular calcium activates phospholipases that possibly act as second messengers in causing ultimate release of dopamine in synapses. Prolonged action of phospholipases, however, ultimately causes cell death. In the previously mentioned study, in fact, cocaine was found to be neurotoxic. It also has a general cytotoxic effect from formation of an *N*-oxide free-radical produced in the metabolism of this compound in the liver. It appears then that, over time, cocaine induces neuronal loss. In addition, binding of cocaine to cell receptors in the limbic system induces synthesis of cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) that appears to be critical in activating cell processes involved in dopamine release (Cami & Farre, 2003). Cocaine may also block the reuptake of dopamine at the axonal side of the synapse. As if becoming toxic from cocaine abuse was not sufficient, many cocaine abusers consume this drug together with alcohol. Ethanol becomes esterified to cocaine in the liver to form cocaethylene, which blocks reuptake of dopamine in dopaminergic pathways more effectively than does cocaine and causes pronounced vasoconstriction of the coronary arteries and induces increased myocardial oxygen demand. This cocaine derivative is deadlier than either cocaine or ethanol alone (Jones & Wie, 2006).

Studies (Lange et al, 1989; Lange & Hillis, 2001; Frishman et al, 2003; Jones & Wie, 2006) further indicate that prolonged use of cocaine results in cardiotoxicity—that is, cocaine can cause progressive atherosclerosis and causes constriction of the coronary arteries that can, in turn, induce myocardial ischemia and sometimes frank infarction. Cocaine has been found to induce sympathomimetic effects on the myocardium by increasing heart rate. At the same time, it induces increased vasoconstriction. The net effect is increased chronotropy and afterload, resulting in increased oxygen demand by the myocardium. At the same time, cocaine induces platelet aggregation and stimulates production of plasminogen activator inhibitor (Jones & Wie, 2006). These events all predispose to development of myocardial infarction.

One highly disturbing aspect of cocaine abuse is the fact that cocaine passes readily across the placenta and also into the lactating mammary gland and is readily passed from mothers to nursing infants. Often in the hospital setting, mothers receive the drug from dealers and breastfeed their newborn babies, who are therefore maintained on this drug. Cocaine causes mental retardation, delayed development, and strong drug dependence in newborns. It can also produce malformations in utero.

Cocaine has not been considered classically to be an addictive drug, as it does not cause the true physical dependence typical of abusers of barbiturates and opiates. However, the high produced by the drug is extraordinarily reinforcing, so that the drug-seeking behavior of the cocaine and opiate abuser is similar. Evidence in experimental animals suggests that cocaine can induce the release of β-endorphins that bind to μ receptors in the limbic system (Gianoulakis, 2004). This induces a pleasant and positive feeling of reinforcement. Clinically, patients who are overdosed with cocaine may become violent and irrational, requiring sedation. The treatment of choice for patients in hyperexcitable states with cardiac symptoms such as palpitations is one of the benzodiazepines. Thus, it is not uncommon to find cocaine and Valium in the urine of cocaine addicts. Occasionally, overdosed patients will become obtunded or comatose. The treatment for these patients is usually supportive. As noted in the previous section, antidepressants, including the tricyclics, and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), like fluoxetine (Prozac), have been found to inhibit some of the undesirable effects of cocaine and have been used in the treatment of cocaine abuse.

Metabolism

The half-life of cocaine, as stated previously, is approximately 1 to 2 hours. It is metabolized to more polar compounds that have significantly less potency than the parent compound. These metabolites have longer half-lives and, with techniques such as GC-MS, can be detected up to 48 hours

http://basicbook.net

after administration of the drug. The immunoassay methods can detect the drug for about 24 to 36 hours after administration. If a patient has inhaled cocaine free-base ("crack"), it is possible to detect the parent compound, cocaine, by TLC up to several hours after administration, owing to the high doses of drug present.

THE OPIATES: HEROIN, MORPHINE, CODEINE, OXYCODONE, BUPRENORPHINE, AND FENTANYL

The primary medicinal use of opiates such as codeine and morphine is to diminish or eliminate pain in a patient. As noted earlier, there are several classes of opiate receptors that are involved in the modulation of pain. These receptors are classified as μ, κ, δ, and ε. The endogenous ligands for each of these receptors are the antinociceptive peptides: endomorphin (Tyr-Pro-Trp-Phe-NH_2) for μ receptors, dynorphins A (Tyr-Gly-Gly-Phe-Leu-Arg-Arg-Ile-Arg-Pro-Lys-Leu-Lys) and B (Tyr-Gly-Gly-Phe-Leu-Arg-Arg-Gln-Phe-Lys-Val-Val-Thr) for κ receptors, Met- and Leu-enkephalin (Tyr-Gly-Gly-Phe-Met and Tyr-Gly-Gly-Phe-Leu) for ε receptors, and deltorphin (Tyr-D-Met-Phe-His-Leu-Met-Asp-NH_2) and Met and Leu-enkephalin for δ receptors. Note that the first five amino acids of dynorphin are identical to those of Leu-enkephalin, suggesting a possible reason for the binding of enkephalin to κ receptors. The exogenous opiates (e.g., morphine, codeine, fentanyl) whose structures are shown in group 1 of Figure 23-7, are known to be agonists, primarily, for μ receptors. As can be seen in this figure, morphine, codeine, heroin, oxycodone, and buprenorphine have quite similar structures. In fact morphine is a metabolite of heroin, the diacteyl precursor of morphine.

A major target for each of the endogenous opiate peptides and for the exogenous agents shown in Figure 23-7 is the main pain pathway (i.e., the spinothalamic tract). This neural pathway carries nerve impulses from peripheral pain receptors to the peripheral nerves that innervate them to the posterior horn of the spinal cord where the nerves synapse to ascending fibers in the spinothalamic pathway. These nerves travel to the next spinal level where they cross the midline and then travel to the medulla as the lateral lemniscus that synapses in the thalamus (mainly in the ventro-posterior nucleus or VPN) and then projects to the cortex where pain perception takes place. Activation of the opioid receptors that occurs at these synapses results in hyperpolarization of the dendritic side of the synapses, blocking nerve conduction, thereby diminishing the sensation of pain.

In addition, it appears that the opioid receptors also play another major role in pain modulation via the activation of descending tracts that emanate from the midbrain in the periaqueductal gray area and travel to nuclei in the median raphe of the medulla. After synapsing with these nuclei, these tracts synapse at interneurons in the posterior horn of the spinal cord where they activate the release of GABA, resulting in inhibition of nerve conduction in the spinothalamic tract. Normally these pathways are quiescent, but release of any of the endogenous antinociceptive peptides or introduction of exogenous drugs (e.g., morphine or codeine) results in removal of inhibition of these pathways, again resulting in inhibition of nerve conduction in the spinothalamic pathway with diminished perception of pain.

Morphine and Heroin

Morphine, a μ receptor agonist, in addition to acting on pain pathways as described earlier, further acts by binding to μ receptors in the limbic system (central nervous system [CNS]), mainly in the nucleus accumbens and the ventral tegmental area, resulting in an analgesic state. Binding of morphine and the other opiates to the μ receptor inhibits the release of GABA from the nerve terminal, reducing the inhibitory effect of GABA on dopaminergic neurons. The resulting increased activation of dopaminergic neurons results in sustained activation of the postsynaptic membrane, causing a sense of euphoria. On the molecular level, binding of morphine to these receptors activates a cell-signaling cascade via G-protein activation that results in elevated expression of many transcriptionally active proteins such as ERK, jun, and fos, and superactivation of adenyl cyclase, resulting in high intracellular levels of cAMP (Tso & Wong, 2003). Besides being used as a major analgesic, morphine (Dilaudid) is important in treating acute congestive heart failure by lowering venous return to the heart (i.e., it is a powerful preload reducer by causing increased splanchnic pooling of blood).

Heroin induces a pleasant, euphoric state and is highly addictive both physically and psychologically. As can be seen in Figure 23-7, heroin is a diacetyl form of morphine. This characteristic facilitates heroin's crossing the blood-brain barrier, allowing it to reach higher concentrations in the CNS. Withdrawal from this drug is exceedingly difficult, with a myriad of symptoms such as hypothermia, palpitations, cold sweats, and nightmares. This is a true physical dependence, the molecular basis for which is not fully understood. It appears that the dependence is strongly linked to the number of cell surface μ receptors (Tso & Wong, 2003).

This class of compounds exhibits certain important paradoxical effects on the parasympathetic nervous system. These drugs exert a procholinergic effect on the eyes and on blood vessels in the periphery (i.e., they cause constriction of pupils [**pin-point pupils**] and peripheral vasodilation). In contrast, in the gut they lower gastrointestinal (GI) motility (i.e., they exhibit anticholinergic effects in the GI tract). This fact enables rapid diagnosis of heroin or, in general, opiate abuse in a patient brought to the emergency room in an obtunded or comatose state. These patients typically have severe miosis (pupillary constriction). Although the sign is not useful in acute diagnosis, constipation commonly occurs.

Administration of heroin occurs via the intravenous route. Addicts are readily recognized by the presence of needle tracks on their arms and hands and by extensive thrombosis of their peripheral veins. The half-life of heroin via the intravenous route is about 3 minutes, and the effects of the drug last approximately 3 hours. The major metabolites are *N*-acetylmorphine and morphine. The half-life of morphine is about 3 hours. Overdoses of heroin are extremely dangerous and can cause severe obtundation, coma, respiratory arrest, hypotension (secondary to histamine release), and cardiac arrhythmias. One of the most common acute therapeutic modalities for heroin overdose is intravenous treatment with naloxone (Narcan) (see Fig. 23-7), a strong competitive antagonist to the action of heroin. Heroin addiction, as a chronic problem, is treated pharmacologically with a partial agonist of heroin—methadone (shown in the group 1 structures in Figure 23-7), which is discussed later.

Another opiate antagonist is naltrexone, whose structure is shown in the group 1 structures in Figue 23-7. The primary effect of this drug is to lower the euphoria experienced by opiate abusers. However, it has no effect on opiate craving by drug abusers. On the other hand, it has been found to be effective in reducing the physical dependence of patients treated with the drug, but, to achieve abstinence, psychosocial support of the patient is required. Surprisingly, naltrexone has been found to be effective in the treatment of alcohol dependence; in particular, it has been found to to reduce relapse rates after abstinence and to reduce heavy drinking to lower levels of consumption. The half-life of naltrexone is about 4 hours. Treatment of opiate abuse requires daily administration of one 50-mg tablet per day (often missed by opiate drug abusers). Excretion is via urine.

Codeine and Analogs

The structure of codeine is similar to that of morphine and heroin (Group 1 structures in Fig. 23-7). Codeine acts in a manner similar to that of morphine and is used as a milder analgesic and as an antitussive. The codeine analog, dextromethorphan (D-3-methoxy-*N*-methylmorphine), is an antitussive agent that is a component of cough-suppressive medications.

Dextromethorphan (D-3-methoxy-*N*-methylmorphine), an analog of codeine, is the active component of cough syrups because of its antitussive effects. Recently, there has been a "run" on cough medicines by addicts, who can obtain them legally and then consume quantities sufficient to reach their desired euphoric state. Unlike codeine, dextromethorphan is believed generally not to be addictive, although cases of drug dependency have been documented. For therapeutic use, the recommended dose of dextromethorphan is 15 to 30 mg given three to four times per day. **Moderate intoxication** is achieved at about 100 to 200 mg, and **heavy intoxication** is reached at around 1500 mg (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). It is surprising to note that dextromethorphan does not have analgesic properties because of its lack of affinity for μ-, κ-, and δ receptors. It has been found to induce the release and to block the reuptake of serotonin. Similar to the action of phencyclidine (PCP), discussed later, dextromethorphan has also been found to block NMDA receptors that are critical for neuronal plasticity and memory and are involved in central pain pathways in the brain, as discussed earlier (Zhuo, 2009). Dextromorphan is readily absorbed from the GI tract and, in about 85% of individuals, is rapidly metabolized to dextrophan, an active metabolite, and D-hydroxymorphinane via the 2D6 cytochrome P450 isozyme (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). It is dextrophan that has a high affinity for NMDA receptors, so that most individuals experience PCP-like effects (i.e., euphoria; tactile, auditory, and visual hallucinations; paranoia; altered time perception; and general disorientation). For the 15% of individuals who are slow metabolizers of dextromethorphan, these effects are much less pronounced and are replaced by sedation and dysphoria (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). Overdoses of dextromethorphan can result in mainly neurologic effects, such as lethargy, or, conversely, hyperexcitability; ataxia; slurred speech; tremors and

http://basicbook.net

fasciculations; hypertonia and hyperreflexia; and nystagmus, as well as either pupillodilation or pupilloconstriction. Diaphoresis may also occur. In addition, cardiovascular sequelae include tachycardia and hypertension. Unfortunately, a number of antitussives contain, in addition to dextromethorphan, anticholinergic agents such as chlorpheniramine. Thus, abuse of antitussive medication can give rise to such symptoms as tachycardia, mydriasis, flushed skin, urinary retention, and constipation.

Oxycodone

This drug is effective in reducing pain, especially pain associated with malignancy. Its structure is shown in the group 1 compounds in Figure 23-7, where it can be seen to be similar in structure to codeine, with the difference that there is a keto rather than a hydroxyl group at the 6 – position (lower cyclohexone ring in Figure 23-7) and a hydroxyl group rather than a hydrogen atom at the carbon between the two bridgehead carbons. On an empty stomach, pain diminution commences within about 15 minutes after oral drug administration. Peak serum levels are achieved in about 1 hour. The slow release form of oxycodone is oxycontin, which achieves peak serum levels in about 3 hours. Although there is some controversy about the site of action of oxycodone, i.e., primary action on κ, rather than μ, receptors (Smith, 2008), oxycodone does bind to μ receptors and one of its metabolites, oxymorphone, is known to have a high affinity for μ receptors (Smith, 2008). The half-life for oxycodone is about 3.2 hours and for oxycontin is 4.5 hours. Metabolites of oxycodone are α- and β-oxycodol, oxymorphone, α- and β-oxymorphol and noroxymorphone, noroxycodone, and α- and β- noroxycodol and noroxymorphone (N-desmethyloxycodone). Most of the parent compound and its metabolites are excreted in the urine.

As with morphine and codeine, oxycodone, especially at high doses, can induce euphoria and a sense of well-being, and, like the other opiates, it induces a true physical dependence. At high doses, side effects are particularly pronounced, and these include fatigue, dizziness, constipation, vomiting, anxiety, shallow breathing and apnea, hypotension, meiosis, circulatory collapse, and death. Withdrawal from oxycodone includes such symptoms as myositis, anxiety, nausea, insomnia, fever, hypogonadism and hormonal imbalance. Given the side effects and the physical consequences of withdrawal, it is difficult to fathom the appeal of abuse of this drug. Nonetheless, abuse of oxycodone has grown to the point where it has now been added to the roster of drugs of abuse that are routinely assayed for mainly in urine.

Buprenorphine

Although, like oxycodone, this prescription drug has become a drug of abuse, buprenorphine is a mixed agonist-antagonist on opiate receptors. It has some opiate activity on μ receptors, but it is purely an antagonist on κ and δ receptors. Its major use is the same as for methadone, as discussed later, in treating addiction to opiates, but it is also used in the treatment of pain. Since it has partial agonist activity, it does not cause life-threatening respiratory depression as is true of the agonists like morphine. It undergoes extensive metabolism in the liver and, therefore, excretion is via the hepatobiliary system, in contrast to oxycodone, whose excretion is almost completely via the urinary tract. Thus renal failure does not result in accumulation of buprenorphine in serum while it does cause increased levels of oxycodone. Treatment of patients with buprenorphine for addiction is carried out in programs where the patient has access to private and group counseling during and after the treatment period. Suboxone is a combined drug of buprenorphine and naloxone (see Figure 23-7). As described earlier, naloxone is an antagonist at μ receptors and is administered with buprenorphine to block its toxic effects in patients who try to inject suboxone intravenously as a drug of abuse. The antagonism is limited due to the fact that the affinity of buprenorphine for the μ receptor is about five times that of naloxone. Buprenorphine is available as a transdermal patch. It is used to treat chronic, not acute, pain and has been found to be effective for this purpose. Buprenorphine has been found to be more effective than methadone in treating patients with depressive traits (Gerra et al, 2004), a phenomenon that is thought to be associated with its pure antagonistic effects on κ receptors. Since it, like oxycodone, has become popular as a drug of abuse, screening for its presence in urine has become common. Toxic effects of this drug include nausea, vomiting, drowsiness, dizziness, headaches, memory loss, perspiration, dry mouth, miosis, orthostatic hypotension, impotence, decreased libido, and urinary retention. Constipation can occur but is less frequent than with morphine. Hepatic necrosis and hepatitis with jaundice, as with the major tranquilizers/neuroleptic drugs, have further been observed in patients with high levels of buprenorphine. The half-life of buprenorphine is 23 to 42 hours, while that of naloxone is 2 to 12 hours. This difference between the two drugs again limits the antagonistic effect of naloxone on buprenorphine.

Fentanyl

This opiate analgesic (Group 1 drugs in Fig. 23-7) is about 80 times more potent than morphine in blocking pain. It can be taken orally as so-called **fentanyl lollipops,** smoked, inhaled, or administered by transdermal fentanyl patches (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). Overdose effects of this drug are the usual ones seen for opiate abuse and include respiratory depression and miosis. Treatment may involve irrigation of the bowel, and antiopiates such as naloxone may be administered. Hypotension is less common than with other opiates like morphine, because of the lack of histamine release.

METHADONE

This interesting compound, whose structure is shown in the Group 1 drugs in Figure 23-7, is a nonbicyclic drug that binds competitively with morphine to μ receptors in the brain. However, although it can become addictive, the addictive effects are less than those of equivalent concentrations of heroin, possibly because its binding affinity is lower, so that it induces less of an effect than heroin. Thus, administration of methadone to heroin addicts allows them to experience the effects of heroin but in a modulated manner. By gradually lowering the methadone dose, physical dependence becomes reduced, and it appears that a trough serum methadone level greater than 100 ng/mL is adequate for effective methadone maintenance (Bell et al, 1988). However, it should be noted that addiction to methadone can also occur. In toxicology laboratories, the most common request received for methadone screens comes from methadone clinics to test whether a patient is administering methadone or has relapsed into taking heroin. As can be seen in Figure 23-3, it is a simple matter to distinguish methadone from the opiates by TLC. Similarly, EMIT or FPIA detects each drug with high specificity.

AMPHETAMINES

These compounds, as can be seen in Figure 23-7 (Group 4 drugs), bear a close resemblance to the adrenergic amines such as epinephrine and norepinephrine and may be expected to exert sympathomimetic effects. They also resemble dopamine and may be expected to have effects on dopaminergic pathways. The amphetamines cause euphoria and increased mental alertness that may be attributed to their effects on these pathways. This group of drugs, however, also exerts pronounced stimulatory effects on γ- and β receptors in the cardiovascular system and in the kidney to cause pronounced adrenergic effects such as increased heart rate, increased blood pressure, palpitations, bronchodilation, anxiety, pallor, and tremulousness. Studies indicate that amphetamines are also competitive inhibitors of the enzyme monoamine oxidase, which inactivates adrenergic neurotransmitters by oxidatively removing their amino groups. Blockage of this enzyme prolongs the effects of epinephrine and norepinephrine, with the attendant neurologic and cardiovascular sequelae. One particular amphetamine, 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA or **ecstasy**), a derivative of methamphetamine (see Group 4A drugs in Fig. 23-7), has become popular as a recreational drug of abuse because it has euphoric and psychedelic effects but minimal hallucinogenic effects (Gill et al, 2002; Haroz & Greenberg, 2006).

Clinical Symptoms

The pharmacologic action of amphetamines includes CNS and respiratory stimulation and sympathomimetic activity (e.g., bronchodilation, pressor response, mydriasis). Loss of weight may also occur as the result of an anorectic effect. Psychic stimulation and excitability, leading to a temporary increase in mental and physical activity, can occur; anxiety and nervousness can also be produced.

Acute Toxicity

Initial manifestations of an overdose may be cardiovascular in nature; symptoms may include flushing or pallor, tachypnea, palpitation, tremor, labile pulse rate and blood pressure (hypertension and hypotension), cardiac arrhythmia, heart block, circulatory collapse, and angina. Mental disturbances such as delirium, confusion, delusions, disorientation, and hallucinations may occur. Acute psychotic syndromes may be characterized by vivid auditory and visual hallucinations, restlessness, homicidal or suicidal tendencies, panic state, paranoid ideation, loosening of associations, combativeness, and changes in affect. A frequent and potential sign of acute intoxication is hyperpyrexia; rhabdomyolysis has also been associated

http://basicbook.net

with acute amphetamine overdose. Cardiovascular collapse is the usual cause of death.

Chronic Usage

Tolerance may be produced within a few weeks, and physical or psychic dependence may occur with prolonged usage. Symptoms of chronic abuse include emotional lability, somnolence, loss of appetite, occupational deterioration, mental impairment, and social withdrawal. Trauma and ulcer of the tongue and lip may occur as a result of continuing chewing or teeth-grinding movements. A syndrome with the characteristics of paranoid schizophrenia can occur with prolonged high-dosage use. Aplastic anemia and fatal pancytopenia are rare complications.

Treatment

No specific antidote for amphetamine overdose is known, and treatment of overdose is symptomatic with general physiologic supportive measures immediately implemented. When cardiovascular symptoms are noted, propranolol (Inderal), discussed subsequently under therapeutic drugs, can be used as an antidote.

Detection

Both Toxi-Lab (Irvine, Calif.) and EMIT (Syva, San Jose, Calif.) procedures are effective in detecting these drugs of abuse. Occasionally, on the Toxi-Lab A strip, amphetamines may be confused with antihistamines like diphenhydramine.

"Designer" Amphetamines and Related Drugs of Abuse

The quest for euphoria-producing drugs has resulted in the advent of synthetic phenylethylamines, so-called **designer drugs,** like MDMA, several further examples of which are shown in category 4A of Figure 23-7. With all of these drugs, the price for the sought-after effects of euphoria and hallucinations consists of headaches, nausea, vomiting, anxiety, agitation, violent behavior, tachycardia, hypertension, respiratory depression, and seizures, as discussed previously in the case of **standard** amphetamines.

Other phenylethylamine derivatives shown in Figure 23-7, especially 2C-T-7 and 2CB, bind to 5-HT_2 receptors and induce hallucinogenic effects (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). These drugs have been taken orally or have been insufflated, smoked, administered intravenously, and even taken rectally. Death from overdose of these designer drugs has been reported but is uncommon. Unfortunately thus far, no specific assays are available for most of these drugs in urine. Their presence must be ascertained by history and/or symptoms reported in the absence of positive urine tests for standard amphetamines. On occasion, GC-MS is used to detect their presence.

TRYPTAMINES

These drugs are derivatives of serotonin, whose structure is shown in the Group 6 drugs in Figure 23-7. These tryptamines, some of which occur in plants, are relatively simple to obtain and were not proscribed until relatively recently. An example is *N*,*N*-dimethyltryptamine (DMT), which has strong hallucinogenic properties. Smoking DMT results in the rapid onset of hallucinogenic effects that are short-lived, giving rise to the term **businessman's lunch.** Other tryptamines contain modifications of the indole ring, as shown in the Group 6 drugs in Figure 23-7. These also allow them to interact with 5-HT receptors (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006), and this interaction is thought to result in their hallucinogenic effects. However, the mechanism of action of this class of drugs is not well understood. Psilocin shown in this figure is a component of the so-called **Psilocybe,** called **magic mushrooms** because of their hallucinogenic effects. The hallucinogenic effects of these drugs are enhanced by the presence of monoamine oxidase inhibitors such as β-carbolines (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). The mixture of these two compounds is present in a South American tea called **ayahuasca,** which combines two plants—one containing DMT and the other carbolines, which themselves can induce nausea and vomiting. Like the amphetamines and other phenylethylamine derivatives, the tryptamines cause, in addition to the "desired" effects of euphoria and empathy, auditory and visual hallucinations, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and emotional distress. Symptoms further include agitation, tachycardia, hypertension, diaphoresis, salivation, dystonia, mydriasis, tremors, confusion, seizures, and, in a few cases, rhabdomyolysis and paralysis. Currently, no routine assays are available for these compounds. As with the amphetamines, many of the psychogenic and physiologic effects of the tryptamines can be countered with supportive therapy and the administration of benzodiazepines.

PIPERAZINES

The structure of the parent compound, piperazine, is shown in Group 7 of Figure 23-7. Several of the derivatives of piperazine are also shown in this figure. Many of these piperazines were used as antihelminthics during the 1950s but were subsequently discontinued. However, their euphoria-producing effects were discovered, leading to a "legal" way of obtaining drugs of abuse. Two classes of piperazine derivatives have been identified: *N*-benzylpiperazines, the parent compound of which is *N*-benzylpiperazine (BZP), and phenylpiperazines. The former group includes 1-(3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl)piperazine, and the latter group includes 1-(3-chlorophenyl)piperazine, 1-(4-methoxyphenyl)piperazine, and 1-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)piperazine (TFMPP). BZP (known as **A2**) and TFMPP (known as **Molly**) are among the most popular piperazines. Studies have shown that these piperazines produced effects that were similar to those of the amphetamines, suggesting that the target receptors of these drugs are the same. Both classes of piperazines have been found to increase dopamine and serotonin levels. TFMPP has been found to act as a partial agonist at 5-HT_{2A} receptors and is a full agonist at other 5-HT receptors. Although TFMPP is three times less potent than MDMA, it produces a full MDMA effect when combined with BZP, with which it is synergistic (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). The TFMPP-BZP combination at low doses induces euphoria with decreased motor action, making the euphoric "experience" more pleasurable. The acute undesirable effects of piperazines are similar to those of the amphetamines and MDMA (i.e., hallucinations, psychomotor agitation, increased heart rate and blood pressure, and increased body temperature). Two deaths from BZP have been reported when combined with another drug like MDMA (Haroz & Greenberg, 2006). Both TFMPP and BZP have skin-irritant properties, causing sore nasal passages and throats. As with the tryptamines and designer amphetamines, currently no standard assay method detects these drugs in urine; treatment is supportive, as described in the preceding section.

BENZODIAZEPINES

Among this group of drugs, shown in Figure 23-7 (Group 2), the most prominent is Valium; they are used therapeutically, as so-called **minor tranquilizers.** Their mechanisms of action appear to be potentiation of GABA, a neurotransmitter that *inhibits* conduction in dopaminergic neurons, and facilitation of its binding to GABA receptors (Campo-Soria et al, 2006). Benzodiazepines bind to the α subunit of the so-called **$GABA_A$ receptor** at a site that is distinct from that for GABA itself and cause an increase in the frequency of chloride ion channel opening at the $GABA_A$ receptor. Usually used as a therapeutic drug to produce calming effects at doses between 2.5 and 10 mg and to produce muscle-relaxing effects at higher doses, Valium has been used by drug addicts in high doses to counter the excitatory effects of other drugs of abuse or as a means of inducing tranquil states. Among some drug abusers, benzodiazepines are used to potentiate the effects of heroin (Fraser, 1998). A number of drug abusers have become addicted to Valium when using high doses several times each day. Acutely, benzodiazepine overdose may produce somnolence, confusion, seizures, and coma. Rarely, hypotension, respiratory depression, and cardiac arrest may occur. Chronically, physical and psychological dependence occur. Sudden discontinuance of the drug may lead to anxiety, sweating, irritability, hallucinations, diarrhea, and seizures. Treatment is supportive. Gradual diminution of the benzodiazepine removes physical dependence. The half-life for Valium is 20 to 70 hours, but the half-life of one of its active metabolites is 50 to 100 hours.

PHENCYCLIDINE

This interesting tricyclic compound, shown in Figure 23-7 (Group 5), has numerous effects on a variety of different neural pathways. Used almost exclusively as a drug of abuse, this drug is traded on the streets under the name of **angel dust** or **angel hair.** It is peculiar that the use of this drug appears to be periodic. The physiologic effects of PCP appear to be analgesic and anesthetic and, paradoxically, stimulatory. This drug has been found to interact with cholinergic, adrenergic, GABA-secreting, serotonergic, and opiate neuronal receptors. It has also been found to block NMDA receptors (Hevers et al, 2008). Thus, a wide variety of bizarre and apparently paradoxical symptoms can be seen in the same patient. This drug has been shown to bind to specific regions of the inner chloride channels of neurons, apparently profoundly affecting chloride transport.

http://basicbook.net

It has also been found to bind strongly to a class of neural receptors called **sigma receptors** (Schuster et al, 1994). This receptor binds strongly to the neuroleptic, antipsychotic drug haloperidol (Haldol)—a finding that may implicate the sigma receptor in some of the clinical findings of severe psychosis in patients suffering from overdose with PCP.

Because of its varied actions, clinically acute manifestations vary from depression to euphoria and can involve catatonia, violence, rage, and auditory and visual hallucinations. Vomiting, hyperventilation, tachycardia, shivering, seizures, coma, and death are among the common occurrences that result from abuse of this drug. Most fatalities occur from the hypertensive effects of the drug, especially on the large cerebral arteries (Bayorh et al, 1984). As can be inferred from this spectrum of possible symptoms, diagnosis based on clinical findings is impossible. Only the results of a drug screen can be diagnostic. Treatment of drug abuse with PCP is supportive, with the patient kept in isolation in a darkened, quiet room. Acidification of the urine increases the rate of PCP excretion. As might be expected from findings regarding the sigma receptor, treatment with Haldol results in sedation of the violent, hallucinating patient.

BARBITURATES: SEDATIVE-HYPNOTICS

An almost bewildering variety of these major sedative drugs is available. However, all are derivatives of barbituric acid, which may be regarded as the condensation product of urea and malonic acid, as indicated in Figure 23-7 (Group 3 drugs). Depending on the substituents of the $-CH_2$ group of the malonic acid portion, the particular drug may be long acting, as is phenobarbital, with a benzene ring and ethyl group substituents on this carbon; short acting, as is pentobarbital, with neopentyl and ethyl groups at this position; or ultra-short acting, as is the case with thiopental. The long-acting barbiturate phenobarbital is a therapeutic drug that is used as an anticonvulsant, unlike the short- and ultra–short-acting drugs, and is discussed in the Therapeutic Drug Monitoring section later in the chapter. All of the barbiturates are fat soluble and therefore pass easily across the blood-brain barrier. All of them seem to stabilize membranes such that depolarization of the membranes becomes more difficult.

As with the benzodiazepines, the barbiturates are known to interact with GABA receptors. In particular, they bind to the α subunit of the $GABA_A$ receptor at a site that is distinct both from the GABA binding site and from the benzodiazepine binding site. Their effect is to increase the *duration* of chloride ion channel opening at the $GABA_A$ receptor, potentiating the GABA effect (i.e., inhibition of dopamine-dependent nerve conduction). It is thought that this action of chloride channel opening, called **direct gating** of the chloride channel, is the basis for barbiturate toxicity, which is greater than for the benzodiazepines, which do not increase the **duration** of chloride channel opening but rather increase the **frequency** of channel opening, as discussed in the Benzodiazepines section earlier in the chapter. In addition, at higher doses, barbiturates have been found to inhibit a subtype of glutamate receptors, called **AMPA receptors.** Glutamate is a major excitatory neurotransmitter. More generally, barbiturates have been found to block calcium ion–induced release of neurotransmitters.

For unknown reasons, the short-acting and ultra–short-acting barbiturates seem to inhibit selectively the reticular activating system, which is involved with arousal, hence their sedative and hypnotic effects. The ultra–short-acting barbiturates rapidly diffuse out of the CNS, accounting for their rapid action. Phenobarbital, however, selectively reduces the excitability of rapidly firing neurons and is therefore a highly effective anticonvulsant. It may be more than coincidental that phenobarbital and the equally effective anticonvulsant phenytoin (Dilantin) bear structural resemblance to one another and may exert similar effects on rapidly firing neurons. The mechanism of action of phenytoin is discussed subsequently.

Clinically, at low doses, the short-acting and ultra–short-acting barbiturates produce sedation, drowsiness, and sleep. They also impair judgment. At higher doses, anesthesia is produced. At very high doses, these drugs can cause stupor, coma, and death. The toxic manifestations of these drugs are depression, Cheyne-Stokes respirations, cyanosis, hypothermia, hypotension, tachycardia, areflexia, and pupillary constriction. Treatment of drug overdose is supportive and includes the standard treatment for shock. When administered within 30 minutes of drug ingestion, activated charcoal is an effective barbiturate chemoadsorbent.

Diagnosis of drug abuse with short-acting and ultra–short-acting barbiturates is done by immunoassay and TLC screening procedures. HPLC has found some use in this regard but is not a standard method. The barbiturates are weak acids, the N-H protons being somewhat acidic, so they are acid extracted and placed on the B strip in Toxi-Lab (Irvine, Calif.) procedures. Their presence is easily detected by Toxi-Lab TLC, as shown in Figure 23-3, Worksheet B. Immunoassays for those drugs are also excellent, the one caveat being that high levels of phenobarbital in urine cross-react with antibodies against the short-acting barbiturates. Thus, it is important that TLC confirms a positive immunoassay result for sedative-hypnotic barbiturates.

PROPOXYPHENE (DARVON)

This analgesic drug, whose structure is shown in the Group 1 drugs in Figure 23-7, has pharmacologic properties very similar to those of the opiates, like morphine. As can be seen in Figure 23-1 (drug Group 1), the structure of propoxyphene is quite similar to that of methadone. This drug can be taken orally, so that the sedated, good feelings induced by opiates can be induced without the need to have recourse to the intravenous apparatus needed for infusion of heroin. A major cause of drug-related death is propoxyphene overdose alone or in combination with CNS depressants like barbiturates and alcohol. Toxic symptoms are similar to those seen with overdoses of opiates (namely, respiratory depression, cardiac arrhythmias, seizures, pulmonary edema, and coma). Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus may also occur. In addition, propoxyphene has been found to cause cardiac arrhythmias (Barkin et al, 2006). Treatment for propoxyphene overdose is mainly supportive. Administration of naloxone (Narcan) reverses the toxic effect of the drug.

METHAQUALONE (QUAALUDE)

Methaqualone is a 2,3-disubstituted quinazoline (Group 5 drugs in Fig. 23-7). Although not structurally similar to the barbiturates, it has many of the same sedative-hypnotic properties as the barbiturates. This compound also possesses anticonvulsant, antispasmodic, local anesthetic, antitussive, and weak antihistamine actions. Oral administration leads to rapid and complete absorption of the drug, with approximately 80% bound to plasma protein. Peak plasma concentrations are reached in approximately 2 to 3 hours, and almost all of the drug appears to be metabolized by the hepatic cytochrome P450 microsomal enzyme system, with only a small percentage (<5%) excreted unchanged in the urine. The serum half-life ranges from 20 to 60 hours. The dosages used for its hypnotic-sedative actions range from 150 to 300 mg daily. Toxic serum concentrations are generally reached at 10 μg/mL. Tolerance as well as dependence to some of its actions occurs, such that abusive dosages can be up to six to seven times greater than those employed therapeutically. Symptoms of overdose can be similar to barbiturate toxicity and produce CNS depression with lethargy, respiratory depression, coma, and death. However, unlike barbiturate overdose, muscle spasms, convulsions, and pyramidal signs (hypertonicity, hyperreflexia, and myoclonus) can result from severe methaqualone intoxication. Treatment for overdose includes supportive therapy, as well as delaying absorption of remaining drug with activated charcoal and drug removal by gastric lavage.

MARIJUANA (CANNABIS)

This is one of the oldest and most widely used of the mind-altering drugs. Marijuana is a mixture of cut, dried, and ground portions of the hemp plant *Cannabis sativa*. Hashish refers to a more potent product produced by extraction of the resin from the plant. The principal psychoactive agent in marijuana is considered to be δ-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (δ-9-THC) (Group 5 drugs in Fig. 23-7), a lipid-soluble compound that readily enters the brain and may act by producing cell membrane changes. δ-9-THC binds to the presynaptic neural cannabinoid receptor CB1, which releases the inhibitory neurotransmitter GABA in the hippocampus, amygdale, and cerebral cortex (Iversen, 2003). Different forms of THC have been found to cause distinctly different physiologic effects (Fusar-Poli et al, 2009). δ-9-THC induces an increase in anxiogenic effects, and cannabidiol produces a diminution in anxiety. The latter derivative was found to attenuate blood oxygenation levels in the amygdala and the anterior and posterior cingulate cortex; δ-9-THC was found to modulate activation in frontal and parietal regions of the brain.

Marijuana may be introduced through the lungs by smoking or through the gastrointestinal tract by oral ingestion in food. Once THC enters the body, it is readily stored in body fat and has a half-life of approximately 1 week. Biotransformation is complex and extensive, and less than 1% of a dose is excreted unchanged. About one third is excreted in the urine as, primarily, δ-9-carboxy-THC and 11-hydroxy-δ-9-THC. These metabolites may be detected in the urine from 1 to 4 weeks after the last ingestion, depending on both dosage and frequency of ingestion.

http://basicbook.net

Marijuana does not appear, in general, to cause physiologic dependence, but tolerance (Martin et al, 2004) and psychological dependence do seem to occur, although a proportion of chronic users of this drug can develop physiologic dependence on it (Iversen, 2003). Two major physiologic effects of marijuana are reddening of the conjunctivae and increased pulse rate. Muscle weakness and deterioration in motor coordination can also occur. The preponderant changes seen with cannabis intoxication are perceptual and psychic changes. These range from euphoria, relaxation, passiveness, and altered time perception, seen at low doses, to adverse reactions such as paranoia, delusions, and disorientation, which can be seen at high doses in psychologically susceptible individuals.

The dosage, the route of administration, the individual's psychological makeup, and the setting are important determinants in each individual's reaction to cannabis intoxication. Thus, high doses in an individual unprepared or unaware of drug consumption may produce a disturbing experience. More commonly, experienced users report mild euphoria, enhancement or alteration of the physical senses, introspection with altered emphasis or importance of ideas, and heightening of subjective experiences. Heavy chronic use may produce bronchopulmonary disorders; although the relative safety of chronic use is controversial, acute panic reactions, delirium, and psychoses occur rarely (Bryson, 1989). Few users seek treatment, and when this occurs in a distressed patient, medical intervention is generally conservative. However, following an acute episode, psychological evaluation may be necessary in an individual with an underlying psychiatric disturbance. Rarely, marijuana may be ingested by intravenous infusion of a boiled concentrate. Severe multisystem toxicity may be produced by this route of administration. Symptoms may include acute renal failure, gastroenteritis, hepatitis, anemia, and thrombocytopenia.

LYSERGIC ACID DIETHYLAMIDE (LYSERGIDE)

Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) (Group 5; see Fig. 23-7) is a semisynthetic indolalkylamine and a hallucinogen. It is one of the most potent pharmacologic materials known, producing effects at doses as low as 20 mcg, and is equally effective by injection or oral administration. Comparison of the structure of LSD with that of 5-hydroxytrptamine (serotonin), as shown in the Group 6 drugs in Figure 23-7, reveals that LSD has a tryptamine-like nucleus, but it lacks the 5-hydroxyl group of serotonin. LSD has multiple complex effects in the CNS. In the locus coeruleus and the median raphe of the midbrain, which utilize serotonergic pathways, it has the paradoxical effect of **inhibiting** both the firing of neurons in these structures and the release of serotonin at the axonal sides of synapses (Passie et al, 2008). This process, in turn, may produce a state of CNS hyperarousal. On the other hand, it actually acts as a serotonin **agonist** on postsynaptic HT_{1A} receptors. It is a pure agonist on 5-HT_2 receptors in other serotonergic pathways. Recently, it has been found that the hallucinogenic effect of LSD is due to its agonistic effect on 5-HT_2 receptors, and that it behaves very much like the tryptamines (Group 6 drugs; see Fig. 23-7) and phenylethylamines (Groups 4 and 4A drugs; see Fig. 23-7), discussed previously, in producing this effect. In addition, it has been found to have both agonistic *and* antagonistic effects on dopaminergic pathways. Thus it acts at multiple sites in the CNS in complex ways. LSD further affects both the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems. However, the sympathetic effect appears to be greater, and initial symptoms include hypertension, tachycardia, mydriasis, and piloerection.

The usual dosage of LSD is 1 to 2 mcg/kg; LSD produces an experience that begins within 1 hour of ingestion, usually peaks at 2 to 3 hours, and generally lasts 8 to 12 hours after ingestion. Metabolism occurs in the liver, whereas excretion occurs mainly in the bile.

LSD is the most commonly abused drug in its class and is believed by its users to provide insights and new ways of solving problems. The psychic effects are usually intense and vary, depending on the user's personality, expectations, and circumstances. LSD acts on all body senses, but visual effects are most intense. Common perceptual abnormalities include changes in the sense of time, organized visual illusions or hallucinations, blurred or **undulating** vision, and synesthesias. Mood may become very labile, and dissolution and detachment of ego may occur. LSD toxicity levels are low, and deaths are generally due to trauma secondary to errors in the user's judgment. Panic reactions—a **bad trip**—are the most common adverse reactions. These may occur in any user and cannot be reliably predicted or prevented. Borderline psychotic and depressed individuals are at risk for the precipitation of suicide or a prolonged psychotic episode by the usage of LSD. Flashbacks, which are poorly understood, occur days to months after ingestion. This occurs when the user experiences recurrences of a previous hallucinogenic experience in the absence of drug ingestion.

Acute panic reactions may be treated by frequent reassurance and a quiet and calm environment; diazepam may also be effective. However, except for treating specific complications, LSD abuse has no systematic program of treatment.

THERAPEUTIC DRUG MONITORING

It has now become recognized that serum levels of many of the therapeutic drugs administered to patients must be frequently determined, both because of the possible toxic side effects of many of these medications and because, often, lack of patient compliance results in subtherapeutic levels of the drug, requiring intervention. Recent data suggests that the lack of adherence to medical therapeutic recommendations is a major cause of morbidity and mortality in multiple disease processes among all age groups (Lieber et al, 2015). Furthermore, it is important for the physician, when initiating drug therapy, to ascertain when the serum levels of the drug have achieved a stable therapeutic level. It becomes important, therefore, to understand the principles, called **pharmacokinetics,** on which drug therapy is based. Some of the basic principles of pharmacokinetics and then the physiologic effects of specific classes of therapeutic drugs are presented in this section. The ones discussed are those whose specific levels are most commonly followed by clinicians and are most commonly assayed for in clinical laboratories. It should be noted that virtually all therapeutic drugs are assayed from specimens of serum, not urine, most commonly using immunoassay techniques such as FPIA.

PHARMACOKINETICS

Figure 23-9 summarizes the two ways in which a therapeutic drug is administered to a patient: discontinuously or continuously (Gerson, 1987a,b). The former method is the most common. Most patients are treated with medications taken orally at fixed periods. For example, to achieve antiinflammatory effects, two aspirin tablets of 350 mg each are taken every 4 to 6 hours. In this case, the aspirin is taken at discrete times, between which a certain amount will be metabolized and/or excreted before the next dose is given. For contiuous administration, a patient will be infused with a drug intravenously such as with lidocaine (Xylocaine) in the intensive care unit for a cardiac arrhythmia, or with heparin to prevent thromboembolic events. In this case, while the drug is metabolized, a constant amount of the drug is being infused continuously. Eventually,

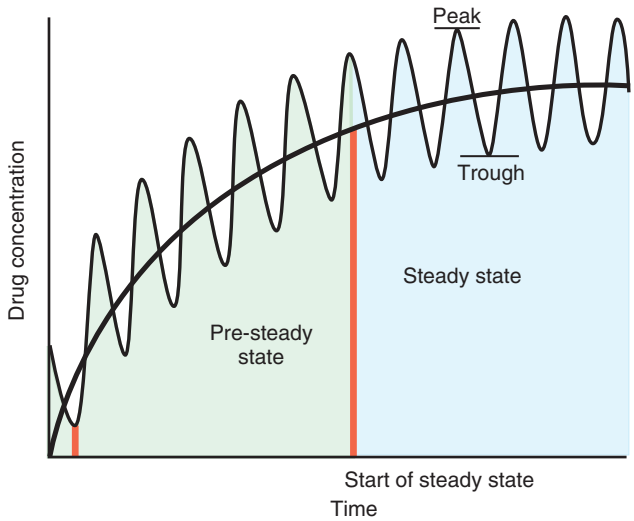


Figure 23-9 Illustration of the time course of drug levels as a function of method of administration. In the discontinuous method, represented by the curve showing peaks and troughs, a constant dose of a drug is administered at regular intervals. After each drug dose, the drug level increases to a peak value, followed by a fall that continues to a trough level, at which time the next regular drug dose is given, resulting in another peak level. After approximately 4-5 half-lives, the drug levels achieve the steady state, as labeled in the figure, when constant peak and trough levels occur. Note that, if a loading dose can be given to the patient, equal to the peak steady-state value, the entire left portion (pre–steady-state) of the curve is eliminated. After the loading dose, the steady state is maintained by giving periodic maintenance doses. The black smooth curve shows a typical time course for drugs that are administered continuously, mainly by the intravenous route. The steady state is achieved as a continuing constant value rather than as peaks and troughs, as in the discontinuous method.

http://basicbook.net

with continuous infusion of a drug, a steady-state concentration of the drug is reached once the amount of drug infused in a unit of time equals the amount of drug eliminated in the same unit of time. A steady-state concentration of a drug that is discontinuously infused is also reached. However, repeated dosing (equal doses spaced equally apart) produces peak and trough serum concentrations that vary around a steady-state or average concentration.

For both discontinuous and continuous infusions, the ultimate drug level is determined by a battle between the amount infused and the amount excreted. All drugs are eventually excreted. They can be excreted unchanged in the urine, or may be excreted in urine as metabolites of the parent drug. These metabolic conversions occur predominantly in the liver. Occasionally, some drugs enter the enterohepatic circulation and are excreted in stool. Regardless of their mode of excretion, many but not all drugs have a half-life that is more or less independent of their concentrations. The half-life of a drug is the time taken for half the drug that was initially present in serum to be excreted. The reason that the half-life of a drug is independent of its concentration is that many drugs are excreted according to so-called **first-order kinetics,** as discussed in Chapter 20 (Equations 20-22 and 20-23). This process may be summarized as follows:

$$D \xrightarrow{k} E \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-5)}$$

where D is the drug concentration, and E is the excreted and/or inactivated form of the drug. The constant, k, is the rate constant for the disappearance of D. The half-life, called $t_{1/2}$, is related to the rate constant, k, by the following relationship:

$$t_{1/2} = 0.693/k \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-6)}$$

As can be seen from this equation, $t_{1/2}$ is a constant and does not depend on drug concentration. Thus, the half-life of the drug determines the time to reach the steady-state or average concentration.

The object of all drug therapy is to achieve a constant serum level of the drug that will be therapeutic. If the half-life for a drug is known, it is possible to compute the divided dose of the drug that should be given and the time interval between doses so that this level will be achieved. As can be seen in Figure 23-9, at the beginning of drug administration, wide fluctuations in the drug level occur until, after a given period, the fluctuations give the same maxima (peaks) and the same minima (troughs), and the mean level of the drug becomes constant. The problem in dosing is to ensure that the maximum level of the drug will be in the therapeutic range and will not reach toxic levels and, at the same time, to ensure that the minimum level of the drug will remain in the therapeutic range and will not be subtherapeutic.

In general, for discontinuous doses, the drug level at the end of the nth dosing period can be expressed as the sum of a geometric series:

$$D = (D_0 r^N - D_0)/(r-1) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-7)}$$

where D_0 is the constant dose given at each regular time period; r is the fraction of drug remaining after the constant time interval between doses; and n is the number of the dose (e.g., the second dose, the third dose). Note that, because r is a fraction less than 1, as N becomes large, the first term in Equation 23-7, $D_0 r^N$, becomes small, so that

$$D = D_0/(1-r) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-8)}$$

For example, if the time interval between doses is chosen as the $t_{1/2}$, then r = ½. If the time interval is chosen to be that for ¾ of the drug to remain, then r = ¾. (This time can be calculated directly from the $t_{1/2}$ as ½ × $t_{1/2}$.) Suppose we take r = ½. Then after four timed doses, the first term in the numerator of Equation 23-7 is $D_0 \times (½)^4 = D_0/16$ or approximately $0.06 \times D_0$, which is small compared with D_0, and, in effect,

$$D = 2D_0 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-9)}$$

This level is the maximum (peak) level shown in Figure 23-9. It is the level achieved just after the dose, D_0, is given. Note that, at the end of the dosing period, just before the next dose, D_0, is given, the drug level decreases to $r \times (2D_0)$. If r = ½, then this level becomes D_0. The problem then in pharmacokinetics is to determine what dose, D_0, and what period, r, to choose, such that the peak and trough values lie within the therapeutic range for the drug. Frequently it is found that, to achieve the right peak and trough levels, the time required to achieve the steady state is too long, especially where the need for drug therapy is urgent. In these cases, a **loading dose** can be administered. Here, the peak level is administered; for the above example, this level would be $2D_0$. Then, after the usual time period, defined by r, elapses, a **maintenance dose**, D_0, is given. This process is repeated every r-defined time period so that the peaks and troughs are maintained. This process obviates the entire dosing schedule shown in Figure 23-9 (i.e., the entire left side of the curve is eliminated, leaving only the steady-state portion). The reason that this process is not performed uniformly is that not all patients can tolerate large initial doses of specific drugs. Therefore, giving loading doses may not always be possible.

For continuous infusions (Fig. 23-9), for the simplest case where drug distribution is instantaneous, the rate of drug infusion is constant, and the drug is excreted in a first-order manner, the rate law is

$$dD/dt = k_1 - k_2 D \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-10)}$$

where D is the drug concentration, k_1 is the constant rate of infusion, and k_2 is the first-order rate constant for excretion/inactivation of D. This equation can be solved for D:

$$D = (k_1/k_2)(1 - e^{-k_2 t}) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-11)}$$

From Equation 23-11, if t is large, the term $e^{-k_2 t}$ becomes small, and D approaches its steady state value, k_1/k_2. This value is approached when the rate of drug infusion equals the rate of drug disappearance. Another way to obtain this value is to note that, at steady state, as in the formation and disappearance of the enzyme-substrate complex in Michaelis-Menten kinetics (see Chapter 20, Equation 20-4), dD/dt must = 0. Then, from Equation 23-10,

$$dD/dt = k_1 - k_2 D = 0 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-12)}$$

so that

$$D_{\text{steady state}} = k_1/k_2 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-13)}$$

As in the case of periodic drug administration at constant intervals, 4 half-lives are sufficient to reach the steady-state condition. Because, as shown previously in Equation 23-6, $k_2 = 0.693/(t_{1/2})$, after 4 half-lives when $t = 4t_{1/2}$,

$$D = (k_1/k_2) \cdot (1 - e^{-2.772}) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-14)}$$

where, in effect, D is close to k_1/k_2. Thus, for continuous infusions, the ratio of k_1 (the rate of drug infused per unit of time) to k_2 (the rate constant for the first-order disappearance of the drug) is the desired steady-state level of the drug (i.e., where the amount of drug delivered equals the amount of drug eliminated over the same unit of time). Unlike the situation with discontinuous infusion, the only parameter that is needed to achieve the steady-state level in a given time is k_1, which includes drug concentration and infusion rates, whereas with discontinuous administration of the drug, both D_0 and r are needed.

There are two major points from this presentation. First, it is a good rule of thumb to wait for 4 or more half-lives to achieve the steady-state level of a drug. Second, results of an assay for a drug level in the time period during which this steady state is being achieved should be interpreted with extreme caution—a rule often forgotten in clinical practice. Notice from Figure 23-9 that if assays are performed in the pre–steady-state period (before achievement of 4 or more half-lives), erratic results are obtained owing to fluctuations in drug concentrations for the discontinuous case, and rising but persistently low values for the continuous case. It is also important to note that the pharmacokinetics of many drugs may be altered in patients with varied disease states as different diseases can affect blood flow to organs involved in drug elimination, as well as the protein or carrier binding kinetics in plasma, fluid, and tissue compartments (Ogawa et al, 2013).

Volume of Distribution

When one is administering drugs, it is of vital importance to know whether the drug is stored in fat or other tissue, or whether it is all present in serum. Because a given dose of a drug is known and the concentration of the drug in serum can be determined, one can measure the total volume of body fluid in which the drug is dissolved by the following relation:

$$D = D_0/V_d, \text{ or } V_d = D_0/D \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 23-15)}$$

where D is the concentration of drug in serum, D_0 is the amount of drug administered, and V_d is the volume in which D_0 must be dissolved to give the concentration D. This volume, V_d, is referred to as the volume of distribution. If all of the drug is present in serum, V_d is the blood volume that can be determined from conversion tables relating body weight to blood volume. If, however, some of the drug is stored in body tissue, a smaller amount is present in serum, so that the denominator in Equation 23-15 ($V_d = D_0/D$) is reduced and V_d will be larger than the expected blood volume, indicating that some drug is being stored in tissue. If this result occurs, it means that the drug will very likely be released continuously from storage depots (i.e., tissues), which can raise anomalously the level of

http://basicbook.net

drug in serum, potentially to toxic levels. Thus, before any drug is administered, the volume of distribution should be known.

Metabolism in the Liver

Many drugs are converted to metabolites, some of which are pharmacologically active and some inactive. Much of this conversion occurs in the extramitochondrial, microsomal system present in hepatocytes. This metabolic system is mainly an oxidative one that utilizes a series of oxidative enzymes that, in turn, utilize a special cytochrome system: cytochrome P450 (Gonzalez & Tukey, 2006). This extremely critical cytochrome system has now been strongly implicated as predisposing particular individuals to develop cancer by metabolizing certain environmental compounds, such as benzopyrene, into frank carcinogens (see later). In addition, genetic polymorphism of the cytochrome P450 enzymes affects an individual's particular response to a drug, including toxicity and an adverse drug reaction (Ingelman-Sundberg, 2004). As described in Chapter 73, it is now possible to test individuals for their abilities to metabolize specific drugs by amplification of their genes encoding cytochrome P450. Certain amino acid substitutions in this protein cause it to be very active in drug metabolism (i.e., rapid inactivation of the drug). This implies that the patient may need substantially higher doses to achieve a therapeutic level, or that it may be necessary to use another less rapidly metabolized drug.

Because the excretion of many drugs depends on the integrity of the liver and the cytochrome P450 system, in patients with liver failure due to passive congestion, hepatitis, cirrhosis, and the like, the effective half-life of the drug is increased, making it necessary to lower the divided dose of the drug. Conversely, some drugs induce the intracellular synthesis of the microsomal enzymes, leading to diminished half-life values, so that it may be necessary to raise the divided dose.

One example of drug induction of microsomal enzymes is phenobarbital. (Dilantin is another example of this phenomenon.) This drug induces its own metabolism (so that its concentration levels do not obey first-order kinetics). In instances in which the levels of a drug metabolized in the liver are higher than the highest therapeutic value, reductions in the levels may be induced by administering low levels of phenobarbital to induce the microsomal system.

This summary of some of the general principles of drug administration should be helpful in the interpretation of values clinically and should permit a better understanding of the subsequent discussion of specific therapeutic drugs, most commonly measured or determined in the laboratory. Tables 23-1 to 23-7 summarize the critical pharmacologic data for a number of commonly assayed drugs.

In the following presentation, seven classes of the drugs most commonly assayed for are discussed: cardiotropic, anticonvulsant, antiasthmatic, antiinflammatory, immunosuppressive, psychotropic, and chemotherapeutic. (Antibiotics are discussed in Part 7.) The emphasis in this discussion is on the mechanisms of action of these drugs. Common to most of these drugs is the fact that they interfere with specific steps in signal transduction pathways in cells, which are often remarkably similar to one another. Despite these similarities, specific drugs block signal transduction pathway steps that affect only specific cells and seem not to affect signal transduction in other cells.

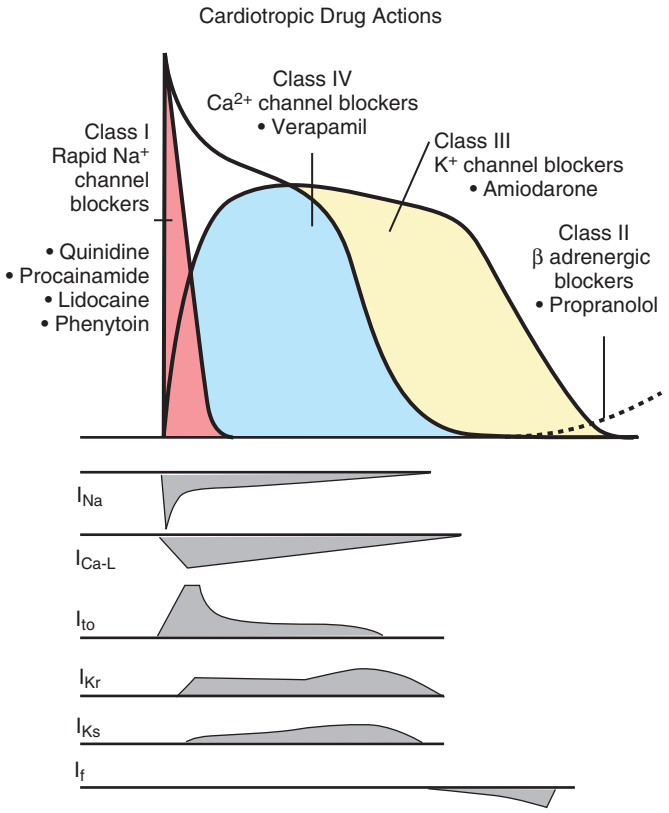


Figure 23-10 Overview of the effects of different antiarrhythmic agents on the myocardial conduction system. The normal action potential is shown as the *black line* that first spikes to a high voltage, mainly because of a rapid sodium influx into cells in the conduction system. This component of the action potential, caused by sodium ion influx, is shown enclosed in the *red area*. The actual action potential is prolonged by a succeeding influx of calcium ions shown enclosed under the *blue area* that overlaps somewhat with the red (sodium influx) area. Termination of the calcium ion influx and efflux of potassium ions results in repolarization, shown by the *curve bordered by the blue area*. Class I channel blockers, as listed in the figure, block sodium influx, thereby diminishing the rate of depolarization. Class II blockers, like propranolol, block β-adrenergic (epinephrine and norepinephrine) stimuli, diminishing the rate of diastolic depolarization. Class III blockers, like amiodarone, block potassium channels, resulting in reduction in potassium efflux and slowing down repolarization. This results in prolongation of the action potential, as shown by continuation of the voltage curve over the *yellow area*. Class IV blockers, like verapamil, block calcium channels, again prolonging the action potential (*blue*), although this prolongation is not explicitly shown. By prolonging the action potential, Class III and IV agents slow down nodal conduction through prolonged refractoriness of the affected cells. Various ion currents induce the action potentials. (Redrawn from Opie LH, Gersh BJ: *Drugs for the heart*, ed 5. Philadelphia, 2001, WB Saunders.)

CARDIOTROPICS

These drugs are the ones most commonly used to treat congestive heart failure and cardiac arrhythmias (Opie & Gersh, 2001; Roden, 2006; Frishman & Sica, 2011).

Despite differences in the structures and properties of the drugs and their specific uses, all of them act on one or another phase of the action potentials in cells that are in the conduction system and in myocytes. Their net effect is to slow down electrical conduction. In addition, it is important to remember that the conduction tissue is innervated by both the sympathetic and parasympathetic (mainly vagal) nervous systems. The former increases the conduction rate, and the latter tends to slow conduction. The actions of each of the cardiotropic drugs are summarized in Figure 23-10. As shown in this figure, several major ion currents control the action potentials of the cells making up the pacemaker tissue of the atrioventricular (AV) node and the ventricular conduction bands (composed of Purkinje cells): first, rapid sodium influx current, and then decreased flux (shutoff of sodium conductance channels), as outlined in the red area in Figure 23-10; second, a calcium ion influx that prolongs the action potential and then calcium channel shutoff, as outlined in the blue area in Figure 23-10; and third, potassium ion efflux that promotes repolarization of the cell. As shown in Figure 23-10, there are four classes of drugs that act on one or more of these phases of the action potential, resulting in its prolongation. Class I drugs block sodium influx in phase I and include quinidine, procainamide, and lidocaine. These agents, especially lidocaine, act by blocking the rapid sodium influx of phase I, decreasing the rate of ventricular diastolic depolarization. Class II drugs include the β receptor blockers, like propranolol (Inderal), that inhibit the chronotropic effects of adrenergic neurotransmitters like epinephrine and norepinephrine. Class III drugs, like amiodarone, block repolarizing potassium currents, increasing the length of the action potential (represented by the black curve over the yellow area in Figure 23-10), and increase the length of the refractory period. Class IV drugs, of which verapamil is an important member, slow calcium ion influx, resulting in action potential prolongation. In addition to these classes of drugs, digitalis cardiac glycosides have parasympathetic-like effects on the cells of the AV node, resulting in slowing of conduction. Both digitalis and amiodarone also have marked inotropic effects on the myocardium. Thus both are used in the treatment of congestive heart failure. In damaged myocardium, digitalis blocks sodium-potassium adenosine triphosphatase (ATPase), resulting in transient increases in sodium ion around the sarcolemma, which leads to the release of cytosolic calcium ion to the T-system. This allows increased myocardial contractility. We now discuss the key properties and actions of these cardiotropic drugs.

http://basicbook.net

Cardiac Glycosides (Digitalis and Its Derivatives)

Digoxin

Because they slow conduction in the AV node, digoxin (also referred to as *digitalis*, of which digoxin and the longer-lasting digitoxin are derivatives) and the other cardiac glycosides are often used to treat atrial arrhythmias, in particular atrial flutter and atrial fibrillation. However, there is recent support for their use in cancer treatment (Slingerland et al, 2013). The mechanism of action for their antiarrhythmic effect in heart disease is to block rapid atrial conduction signals to the ventricles, thereby slowing ventricular response. This is due to their proparasympathetic effects, which include enhancement of blockade of depolarizing calcium currents and increased hyperpolarizing potassium currents in the AV node. These effects result in shortening action potential duration and increasing AV nodal refractoriness (Roden, 2006).

Their direct positive inotropic effect increases cardiac output in cardiac failure. This effect has been found to be due to increased intrasarcolemmal concentration of calcium, allowing it to activate proteins such as troponin C that are important in the contractile apparatus (Rocco & Fang, 2006; McMurray et al, 2012). This increase in calcium concentration is due to the binding of digoxin to the α subunit of sodium-potassium–activated ATPase, causing its inhibition and the consequent reduction of sodium efflux and diminution of the trans-membrane potential; as this potential increases, more calcium efflux occurs, resulting in less activation of muscle contraction. Blockade of sodium efflux therefore allows accumulation of intrasarcolemmal calcium and increased activation of contractile proteins (Rocco & Fang, 2006).

Digoxin (Table 23-1) has a rapid onset of action (within 1 to 2 hours when given orally) and a relatively short half-life (35 to 40 hours). Most patients will excrete approximately 50% to 75% of a dose unchanged in the urine. The general range of therapeutic serum levels is from 0.5 to 2 ng/mL. High concentrations of the drug are found in skeletal and cardiac muscle, as well as in liver, brain, and kidneys. It is important to note the recent impact of pharmacogenetics on the biology of digoxin as well as other drugs (Talameh & Lanfear, 2012). Recent reports by Neuvonen and colleagues (2011) showed that the *ABCB1* 3435T polymorphism provided higher serum drug concentrations of digoxin with a higher frequency among females, thus providing a possible explanation regarding the increased morbidity of females treated with digoxin compared with placebo. Digoxin is available as oral tablets, elixir, oral capsules, and intravenous solution, which have bioavailabilties of 70%, 80%, 90%, and 100%, respectively (Ehle et al, 2011). Understanding the formulation administered in conjunction with patient compliance and comornidities can alert the clinician of suspected toxicity.

Digitoxin

In contrast, digitoxin has a longer half-life (4 to 6 days) with a relatively slower onset of action (within 1 to 4 hours when given orally, with maximal effect in 8 hours); 90% to 100% of a dose is absorbed, with approximately 95% bound to plasma protein. The general range of therapeutic serum levels is from 9 to 25 ng/mL. The drug is extensively metabolized in the liver (90%), with digoxin being the active metabolite.

Toxic side effects of the digitalis glycosides include gastric disturbances, nausea, vomiting, and atrial and ventricular arrhythmias. It is crucial that levels of digoxin (or digitoxin) be monitored closely and accurately while the patient is initially being given this drug. As mentioned previously, the therapeutic range for digoxin is from 0.5 to 2 ng/mL (i.e., the range is narrow). Toxic levels exceed 2 ng/mL, so the difference between therapeutic and toxic doses is small. This difference necessitates careful digoxin assay.

Digoxin toxicity is often treated with Digibind (GlaxoSmithKline, Research Triangle Park, N.C.), consisting of ovine Fab fragments. This antidote can interfere with determination of digoxin serum levels (Valdes et al, 1998). Some assays have been reported to determine only the "free" digoxin level (i.e., that not bound to Digibind Fab), which inactivates digoxin. For other assays that determine total digoxin (i.e., free plus Fab-bound digoxin), it is recommended that an ultrafiltrate of serum be employed to determine the level of free or active digoxin. Alternatively, given that Digibind can cause spurious and erroneous results, it has been recommended that, because the half-life of Digibind is 15 to 20 hours, therapeutic levels of digoxin should be determined 2 to 4 days after the last Digibind dose.

Procainamide (Pronestyl)

Procainamide (Table 23-2) is a class I antiarrhythmic drug that is useful in treating supraventricular or ventricular arrhythmias. One of its major effects includes increased refractoriness of the atrium and decreased myocardial excitability by blocking open sodium channels and outward potassium currents, both of which prolong action potentials and increase refractoriness (Roden, 2006). Because there is an effect on potassium currents, some of its effects resemble those of the Class III potassium current blockers. The bioavailability of procainamide is 75% to 95%. Approximately 15% is bound to plasma protein, and approximately 50% is excreted by the kidneys. The half-life is approximately 3.5 hours, with a general range of therapeutic serum level of 4 to 10 µg/mL. *N*-acetylation to the major active metabolite *N*-acetylprocainamide (NAPA) is the major metabolic pathway of biotransformation. NAPA, however, does not block open sodium channels but effectively prolongs action potentials (Roden, 2006). Both drugs prolong the QRS and Q-T intervals on electrocardiography over time.

TABLE 23-1
Digoxin

Purpose	Treatment of Congestive Heart Failure and Atrial Fibrillation-Flutter
General adult dose	Oral: 0.75-1.5 mg for digitalization, 0.125-0.5 mg/day for maintenance
Usual bioavailability	Approximately 60%-85% for tablet or elixir; 90%-100% for liquid-filled capsules
Half-life	Approximately 35-40 hours; however, prolonged in patients with decreased renal function
General therapeutic range	0.5-2 ng/mL
General toxic level	>2 ng/mL, but somewhat variable
Transport	Approximately 20%-25% plasma protein bound
Metabolism	Generally, only small amounts are metabolized (liver, lumen of large intestine)
Elimination	Approximately 50%-75% unchanged in urine
Steady state	Approximately 7 days in undigitalized patients with normal renal function
Mechanism of action	Causes release of calcium ions in T-system of myocardium; slows AV node conduction
Toxic effects	Gastric disturbances, nausea, vomiting, atrial and ventricular arrhythmias, irregular pulse

AV, Atrioventricular.

TABLE 23-2
Procainamide

Purpose	Treatment of Supraventricular or Ventricular Arrhythmias
General adult dose	Oral: 4 g/day, in divided doses, for maintenance therapy
Usual bioavailability	75%-95%
Half-life	Approximately 3.5 hours in patients with normal renal function
General therapeutic range	4-10 mcg/mL
General toxic level	>12 mcg/mL
Transport	Approximately 15% plasma protein bound
Metabolism	Hepatic: *N*-acetylprocainamide (active), with t½ approximately 7 hours in patients with normal renal function
Elimination	Approximately 50%-60% unchanged in urine
Steady state	Minimum of 12 hours
Mechanism of action	Prolongation of atrial refractory period and decreased myocardial excitability
Toxic effects	Reversible lupus erythematosus-like syndrome, irregular pulse, hypotension, rash, agranulocytosis

http://basicbook.net

Toxic side effects include a reversible lupus-like syndrome (Zimetbaum et al, 2011) with elevated antinuclear antibody titers, urticaria, rash, agranulocytosis, and nephrotic syndrome. The lupus-like syndrome may be initiated by leukocyte metabolism of procainamide to a chemically reactive metabolite that could then covalently bind to monocyte/macrophage membrane proteins to stimulate production of autoantibodies. In addition, the tertiary amino moiety of the covalently bound procainamide metabolite might mimic a portion of histone protein, resulting in the production of antihistone antinuclear antibody (Uetrecht, 1988).

Quinidine

Quinidine, also a class I antiarrhythmic, like procainamide, is used to treat supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias and tachyarrhythmias. The prevention of ventricular tachycardia or frequent premature ventricular contractions and the maintenance of sinus rhythm after the conversion of atrial flutter or atrial fibrillation are its two major uses (Valdes et al, 1998). Like procainamide, quinidine blocks sodium channels and outward potassium currents, especially the I_{Kr} rectifier current, resulting in prolongation of action potentials and increased refractoriness, leading to prolongation of both the QRS complex and the Q-T interval (Roden, 2006).

The bioavailability of quinidine is 90% to 100%, with approximately 85% of the drug bound to plasma protein. Quinidine is 60% to 85% metabolized in the liver via hydroxylation reactions, with some metabolites being active. Urinary excretion is approximately 20%. The half-life of quinidine is 5 to 12 hours, and the general therapeutic range is 2.3 to 5 mcg/mL. Maximal serum levels are reached in 1 to 3 hours. Toxic side effects of quinidine include cinchonism (vertigo, tinnitus, headache, visual disturbances, and disorientation), fever, hepatitis, and blood dyscrasia. Ventricular arrhythmias, AV block, and ventricular fibrillation leading to syncope and sudden death can occur.

Lidocaine

Lidocaine (Xylocaine), another class I antiarrhythmic, can also be used as a local anesthetic. Its major use as an antiarrhythmic is in the acute control and prevention of ventricular arrhythmias after acute myocardial infarction. Its effect is to block sodium channels mainly in ventricular but not atrial tissue. Unlike procainamide and quinidine, lidocaine does not cause QRS and Q-T prolongation (Roden, 2006). A loading intravenous dose of 50 to 100 mg is given over 2 to 3 minutes to treat ventricular arrhythmias in adults. These dosages may be repeated in 5- to 10-minute intervals of 25 to 50 mg, up to a maximum of 300 mg in a 1-hour period. Following loading, infusion is then continued at a rate of 1.4 to 3.5 mg/min for a 70-kg male. In children, 0.5 to 1 mg/kg can be given every 5 minutes for a maximum of three doses. Unfortunately, lidocaine can cause heart block and congestive heart failure, limiting its use in critical care patients (Roden, 2006).

Lidocaine is neither highly protein-bound nor appreciably stored in body tissues; it has a half-life of approximately 2 hours and a therapeutic serum range of 1.2 to 5.5 mcg/mL. The time to reach a maximum serum level is generally 5 to 8 hours. Ninety percent of a dose of lidocaine is metabolized in the liver via *N*-dealkylation. Urinary excretion is 10%. Toxic side effects include convulsions, coma, and respiratory depression (CNS effects), as well as bradycardia and hypotension.

Propranolol

Propranolol, a class II antiarrhythmic β receptor–blocking drug that antagonizes the effects of epinephrine on the heart, on the arteries and arterioles of skeletal muscles, and on the bronchus, exerts its effects largely on the AV node and is used to treat sinus tachycardia, atrial tachycardia, and ventricular arrhythmias. Overall, blockade of β-1 receptors increases AV conduction time and reduces heart rate, myocardial contractility and output, and cardiac automaticity. Because it is a vasodilator, it is also used in the treatment of angina pectoris; hypertension; and symptomatic coronary artery disease, particularly after an acute myocardial infarction. Oral dosages vary from 40 to 320 mg daily in adults for antiarrhythmic activity, to as high as 480 mg daily in the control of hypertension. Both supine and standing blood pressures are also reduced. Bioavailability of propranolol is approximately 30%. The half-life of propranolol is 3 hours, with a therapeutic serum range of 50 to 100 ng/mL, and with maximum serum levels reached in approximately 6 hours. Approximately 93% is protein bound. Propranolol is metabolized in the liver, with 0.5% excreted in the urine unchanged. Toxic effects include bradycardia, arterial insufficiency (Raynaud's type), hypotension, AV block, nausea, vomiting, pharyngitis, bronchospasm, and thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. Marrow suppression occurs rarely.

Amiodarone

Amiodarone, a structural analog of thyroid hormone, is chiefly a class III antiarrhythmic drug, which markedly prolongs the action potential mainly by blocking potassium channels in cardiac muscle (see Fig. 23-10). Its activity is complex in that it significantly blocks inactivated sodium channels by a poorly understood mechanism, thus exhibiting class I action, and also exhibits weak adrenergic- and calcium channel–blocking effects (Roden, 2006). All of these actions prolong the effective refractory period along the conduction bands. Its indication for use is with life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias. The oral loading dose is 1200 to 1600 mg/day with a maintenance dose of 200 to 400 mg/day. Bioavailability is ≈35% to 65%. Amiodarone has two components in its half-life: a rapid component of 3 to 10 days (involving ≈50% of the drug) and a slow component of 25 to 110 days. The general therapeutic range is 1 to 2.5 mcg/mL, although this is not well defined, and the toxic level is >2.5 mcg/mL, again not well defined. Approximately 96% is plasma protein bound; the drug undergoes liver metabolism and shows extensive body distribution because of its hydrophobic (lipid-soluble) structure. Excretion is very slow by skin, biliary tract, and lacrimal glands. Toxic effects can be profound and include symptomatic bradycardia, heart block, fatal pulmonary fibrosis, hepatitis, visual field disturbances, optic nerve neuropathy (Passman et al, 2012), photodermatitis, and mainly hypothyroidism but sometimes hyperthyroidism. New variations of antiarrhythmic medications including Dronedarone, Dofitilide, Vernakalant, and Ranolazine among others are being investiaged for their selective atrial specific activity as well as decreased extra cardiac side effects (for review see Saklani & Skanes, 2012).

Verapamil

Verapamil is a class IV antiarrhythmic drug that blocks activated and inactivated calcium channels that are especially prominent in nodal tissue (particularly the AV node). Indications include angina, hypertension, and supraventricular arrhythmias. Unlike β-adrenergic receptor blockers, calcium channel blockers have not been found to reduce mortality after a myocardial infarction (Roden, 2006). The oral dose is 120 to 480 mg/day in three to four divided doses. Bioavailability is ≈10% to 20%. The half-life is 2 to 8 hours but increases to 4.5 to 12 hours after repeated oral doses. The general therapeutic range is 80 to 400 ng/mL, although this is not well defined. Approximately 90% is plasma protein bound, and the drug undergoes extensive metabolism in the liver, where norverapamil, an active metabolite, is produced. Approximately 75% of the active components are eliminated by the kidney and ≈25% through the GI tract. Toxic effects include hypotension, ventricular fibrillation, constipation, and peripheral edema.

ANTICONVULSANTS

Anticonvulsants are used in the treatment of seizure disorders, in particular grand mal, petit mal, and psychomotor seizures and other specialized seizure disorders such as tic douloureux (trigeminal neuralgia). Although the mechanisms of action of these drugs are incompletely understood, it appears that all of these agents, with the possible exception of phenobarbital, block sodium influx into neurons that have damaged membranes, as schematized in Figure 23-11. In addition, several of these agents, especially phenytoin, block secondary calcium influxes into such cells, which also seem to inhibit the rapid firing of these cells. Another effect of phenobarbital, and possibly also of phenytoin, is membrane stabilization through intercalation, as shown in Figure 23-11. Many of the anticonvulsants are effective against grand mal seizures but have no effects or adverse ones on petit mal seizures. Only drugs like ethosuximide (Zarontin) and valproic acid (Depakote) are effective against this condition. Thus, although the mechanism of action of these drugs appears to be similar, they differ in specificities.

Phenobarbital

Phenobarbital (Table 23-3), a long-acting barbiturate, is used in the treatment of generalized grand mal tonic-clonic seizures and simple partial seizures with motor or somatosensory symptoms, as well as for anxiety and insomnia. It is not used in the treatment of absence seizures (i.e., petit mal), which may be exacerbated by phenobarbital, or for complex partial seizures, which do not respond well. As discussed previously in the Barbiturates section, phenobarbital increases the duration of chloride ion channel opening at the $GABA_A$ receptor, thereby potentiating the GABA effect and raising the threshold for neuronal membrane depolarization, resulting in the diminished frequency of firing of action potentials (Löscher

http://basicbook.net

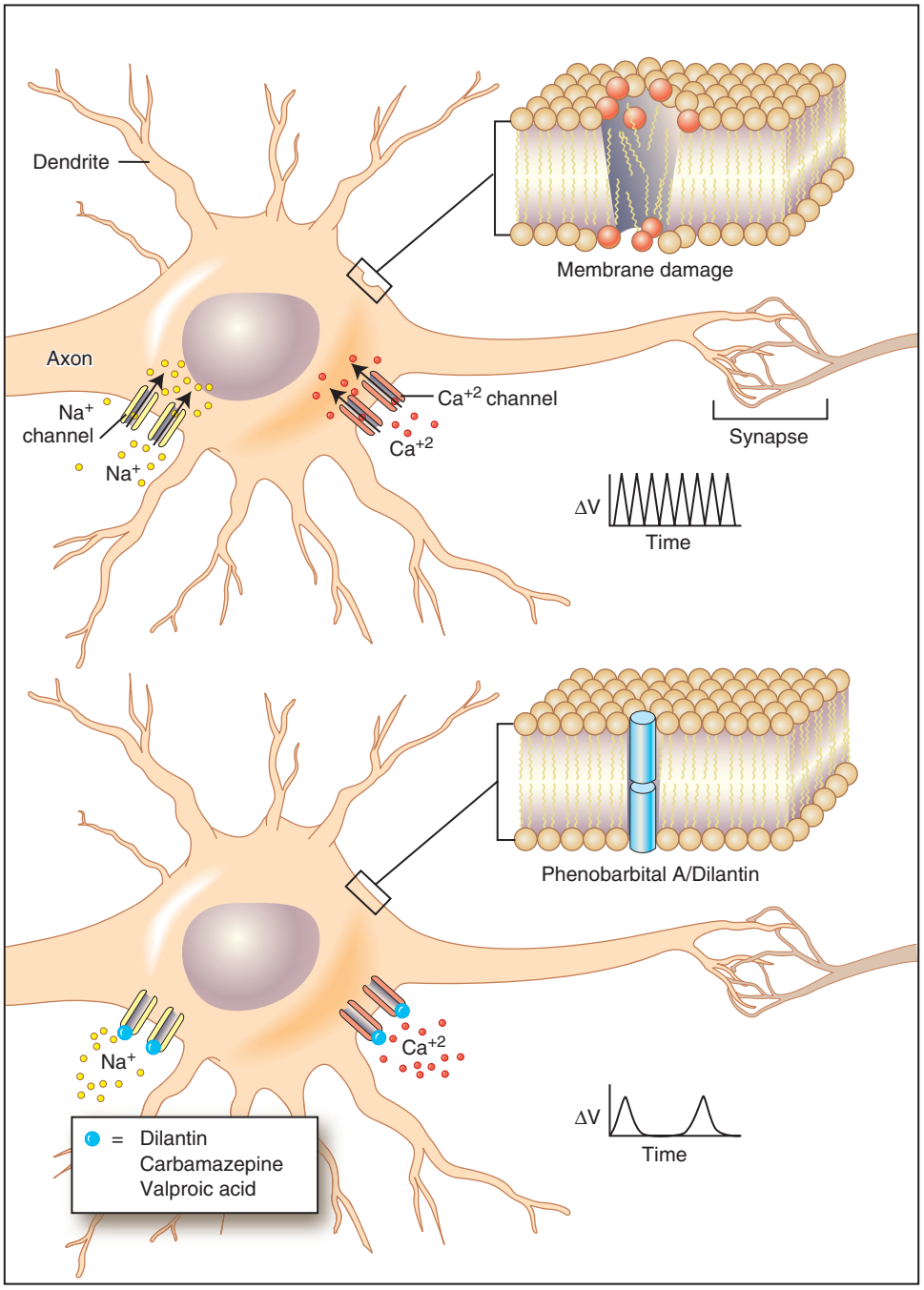


Figure 23-11 Effects of anticonvulsants on neurons. *Top,* Damaged neuronal membranes, as shown in the section in the upper right of the figure, result in sodium *(yellow circles)* and calcium *(red circles)* influxes via their respective channels that cause repeated firing, as shown in the voltage-time curve to the right of the figure. *Bottom,* Anticonvulsants like phenytoin (Dilantin), carbamazepine (Tegretol), and valproic acid (Depakote; *represented by blue circles*) block sodium and calcium channels, resulting in a substantially diminished rate of firing, as shown in the voltage-time curve to the right of the figure. Both phenytoin and phenobarbital, shown as blue cylinders, are also thought to stabilize the damaged neuronal membrane, as shown in the membrane section schematized in the upper-right drawing.

& Rogawski, 2012). In addition, it can stabilize damaged neuronal membranes (see Fig. 23-11).

Phenobarbital is also given for withdrawal symptoms in infants born to opiate- or barbiturate-addicted mothers. Because phenobarbital enhances the metabolism of bilirubin by induction of cytochrome P450–dependent enzymes in the hepatic microsomal system, it has been used to treat patients with congenital hyperbilirubinemia (familial nonhemolytic, nonobstructive jaundice). The oral dose of phenobarbital for anxiety in adults is 30 to 120 mg daily in divided doses; for sleep induction in adults, 100 to 320 mg daily is generally used. For seizure control, divided doses of 100 to 200 mg/day in adults or 30 to 100 mg/day in children are generally used.

Phenobarbital has a long half-life of 4 to 6 days. Oral doses are almost completely absorbed (90% to 100% bioavailability), and the optimal serum concentration for seizure control is generally 15 to 30 µg/mL; 40% to 60% is metabolized in the liver, whereas 10% to 40% may be eliminated unchanged in the urine. Approximately 40% to 60% is plasma protein bound, and the main site of storage is the brain. A steady state is reached in 14 to 21 days. Importantly, phenobarbital and, as discussed in the next section, phenytoin (dilantin), induce a number of the cytochrome P450 systems. Cytochrome P450 2B6 (CYP2B6) is specifically induced by phenobarbital via the CAR/RXR nuclear receptor heterodimer. This system is described at length in Chapter 73 on pharmacogenomics.

Toxic side effects include nystagmus, ataxia, stupor, respiratory depression, coma, and hypotension. Barbiturates are contraindicated in patients with acute intermittent porphyria (i.e., partial porphobilinogen deaminase deficiency), because barbiturates enhance the synthesis of δ-aminolevulinic

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 23-3
Phenobarbital

Purpose	Treatment of Generalized Tonic-Clonic Seizures, Simple Partial Seizures, Anxiety, Insomnia
General adult dose	Oral: 100-200 mg/day for seizure control; 30-120 mg/day for anxiety; 100-320 mg for sleep induction
Usual bioavailability	Approximately 90%-100%
Half-life	Approximately 5-6 days in adults; approximately 3-4 days in children
General therapeutic range	15-30 mcg/mL for epilepsy control
General toxic level	>40 mcg/mL, although tolerance may develop
Transport	Approximately 40%-60% plasma protein bound
Metabolism	Approximately 75% hepatic: *p*-hydroxyphenobarbital, inactive
Elimination	Approximately 25% unchanged in urine
Steady state	Approximately 14-21 days
Mechanism of action	Stabilizes damaged membranes and raises threshold for neuronal membrane depolarization
Toxic effects	Drowsiness, depression, respiratory depression, coma, sedation, hypotension. Respiratory depression may be caused by rapid intravenous administration.

TABLE 23-4
Phenytoin (Dilantin)

Purpose	Treatment of Generalized Tonic-Clonic Seizures, Simple Partial Seizures, Complex Partial Seizures
General adult dose	Oral: 300-400 mg/day maintenance dose
Usual bioavailability	Variable: 30%-95%
Half-life	24 ± 12 hours, and dose dependent
General therapeutic range	10-20 mcg/mL
General toxic level	>20 mcg/mL
Transport	Approximately 90%-95% plasma protein bound
Metabolism	Hepatic: 5-(*p*-hydroxyphenyl)5-phenylhydantoin, inactive
Elimination	Approximately 5% unchanged in urine
Steady state	Approximately 7-8 days
Mechanism of action	Appears to block sodium and calcium ion influxes into repeatedly depolarizing CNS neurons
Toxic effects	Nystagmus, ataxia, diplopia, drowsiness, coma; rapid intravenous administration may produce cardiovascular collapse and/or CNS depression

CNS, Central nervous system.

acid synthetase and thus the synthesis of heme pathway intermediates in the liver.

Phenytoin (Dilantin)

Phenytoin is used to treat generalized tonic-clonic, simple partial, and complex partial seizures (Table 23-4). It is ineffective in treating myoclonus, absence (petit mal), and atonic seizures. It is usually given intravenously in addition to intravenous diazepam to terminate status epilepticus. Remarkably, phenytoin has no apparent effects on resting neurons or on normally firing neurons. It is thus specific for epileptogenic foci in the CNS (Yaari et al, 1986). It is interesting to note that carbamazepine (Tegretol) exerts similar effects, as discussed later. Data on the mechanism of action of this drug strongly suggest that phenytoin blocks sodium and calcium influxes into repeatedly depolarizing neurons in the CNS and also into neurons that are partially depolarized. Reducing sodium and calcium influx into these cells reduces their excitability and prolongs their refractory period (Yaari et al, 1986). In fact, phenytoin appears to bind selectively to fast-firing sodium channels in their refractory states, thereby prolonging their refractory periods (Bazil & Pedley, 1998); that is, it slows the rate of recovery of inactivated sodium channels (McNamara, 2006). This finding helps explain the ability of phenytoin to block only neurons that are firing rapidly and repetitively.

Although the average daily maintenance dose in adults is 300 to 400 mg, the dosage must be tailored to the patient's response and serum drug concentrations. The usual therapeutic serum concentration is 10 to 20 µg/mL, with a steady state reached in 5 to 10 days (for plateau; see Figure 23-9). The serum half-life is generally 24 hours, but it is dose dependent. Thus, its excretion is not a first-order process. Phenytoin is stored in the brain, is metabolized in the liver (95%), and is approximately 90% to 95% bound to plasma protein. Both aspirin and phenylbutazone can displace phenytoin from serum albumin and can significantly increase the serum concentration of phenytoin. Because phenytoin, like phenobarbital, is a relatively potent hepatic microsomal enzyme inducer and inducer of the CYP3A4 and CYP2C19 families of the P450 enzyme responsible for the hepatic degradation of various drugs, certain antibiotics, oral anticoagulants, quinidine, and oral contraceptives may be more rapidly metabolized, thus decreasing their effectiveness.

Because the relationship between serum concentrations and daily dosage is not linear, small increases in dosage can greatly increase therapeutic serum concentrations. Symptoms of toxicity generally occur at serum concentrations greater than 20 µg/mL. Toxic side effects include nystagmus, ataxia, stupor, and coma. Arrhythmias can be produced by rapid intravenous administration.

Fosphenytoin is a water-soluble parenteral formulation of phenytoin that is rapidly converted (half-life of 8 to 15 minutes) in vivo to phenytoin. The half-life is independent of plasma concentration, and it has identical pharmacodynamic, pharmacokinetic, and clinical properties to phenytoin. This prodrug offers improved flexibility and tolerability for the patient, as compared with intravenous phenytoin, and is indicated for the treatment of partial and generalized seizures in adults in whom intravenous administration is indicated (Bazil & Pedley, 1998).

Primidone (Mysoline)

Primidone is used to treat generalized tonic-clonic, simple partial, and complex partial seizures. Its chemical structure is closely related to the basic structure of the barbiturates, and it is metabolized in the liver into two active metabolites: phenobarbital and phenylethylmalonamide. Thus some of its anticonvulsant effects are due to phenobarbital activity. Unlike phenobarbital, however, primidone may increase the threshold of membrane depolarization within the CNS.

Oral doses range from 250 mg daily to 2 g/day in divided doses. Absorption is rapid and complete (100%), with a usual therapeutic serum concentration of 5 to 21 µg/mL. A steady state is reached in 4 to 7 days, and the half-life is approximately 12 hours. Plasma protein binding is relatively low (20%), with most of the drug remaining free in the serum, and with little drug being stored in body tissues.

Sedation is a common toxic side effect. Dizziness, ataxia, and skin rashes have also been observed. Primidone, like phenobarbital, is contraindicated in patients with acute intermittent porphyria.

Ethosuximide (Zarontin)

Ethosuximide is the drug of choice for absence (petit mal) seizures unaccompanied by other types of seizures. It is preferred over valproic acid (see later), at least initially, because hepatotoxicity is a rare but serious side effect of valproic acid. Ethosuximide may depress the motor cortex and may reduce the frequency of neuronal firing. It also inhibits T-current spikes on the electroencephalogram that underlie bursts of action potentials in the thalamus but does not affect normal electrical conduction (McNamara, 2006). The basis for its specificity, however, is not well understood.

The oral dosage in adults is generally 500 to 1000 mg daily. Absorption is fairly rapid and complete (100%), with peak serum concentrations occurring in 1 to 4 hours. A steady state is reached in 8 to 10 days. The usual therapeutic serum concentration is 40 to 100 µg/mL, but it can be as high as 170 to 190 µg/mL in children. The serum half-life is generally 60 hours in adults and 30 hours in children. Ethosuximide is essentially free in serum and not protein bound. It is mainly metabolized in the liver (60% to 90%) to desmethylmethsuximide. Gastrointestinal disturbances are among the most common toxic effects and include nausea, vomiting,

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 23-5
Carbamazepine (Tegretol)

Purpose	Treatment of Generalized Tonic-Clonic Seizures, Simple Partial Seizures, Complex Partial Seizures, Trigeminal Neuralgia, and Glossopharyngeal Neuralgia
General adult dose	Oral: 0.8-1.2 g/day maintenance for seizure control; 0.2-1.2 g/day for neuralgia
Usual bioavailability	70%
Half-life	Initially approximately 35 hours; approximately 8-20 hours after 3-4 weeks of administration
General therapeutic range	4-12 mcg/mL
General toxic level	>12 mcg/mL
Transport	60%-70% plasma protein bound
Metabolism	Hepatic: carbamazepine-10,11-epoxide (active); carbamazepine-10,11-transdihydrodiol (inactive)
Elimination	1%-2% unchanged in urine
Steady state	3-7 days
Mechanism of action	Decreases sodium and calcium ion influx into repeatedly depolarizing CNS neurons; reduces excitatory synaptic transmission in the spinal trigeminal nucleus
Toxic effects	Drowsiness, ataxia, dizziness, nausea, vomiting, involuntary movements, abnormal reflexes, irregular pulse

CNS, Central nervous system.

and gastric distress. Other effects include drowsiness and ataxia. Rare serious side effects, such as systemic lupus erythematosus, aplastic anemia, and pancytopenia have been reported.

Carbamazepine (Tegretol)

Carbamazepine (Table 23-5) is a primary antiepileptic drug that is used in the treatment of generalized tonic-clonic seizures and simple partial and complex partial seizures, as well as in combinations of these seizure types. Absence (petit mal), myoclonic, and atonic seizures may be exacerbated by this drug. This drug is also used to treat tic douloureux (trigeminal neuralgia) and glossopharyngeal neuralgia, and is, in fact, the drug of choice in the treatment of these neuralgias.

Carbamazepine is a tricyclic compound (i.e., iminostilbene) that is chemically related to imipramine, a tricyclic antidepressant. It is believed that a reduction in excitatory synaptic transmission in the spinal trigeminal nucleus is the basis for this drug's antineuralgic action. Its antiepileptic action is quite similar to that of phenytoin, that is, it decreases sodium and calcium influx into hyperexcitable neurons (Yaari et al, 1986; Bazil & Pedley, 1998). Like phenytoin, carbamazepine slows the rate of recovery of voltage-activated sodium channels from inactivation (McNamara, 2006).

Oral doses of carbamazepine are completely absorbed, and the usual adult maintenance dose is 0.8 to 1.2 g/day. Ninety-eight percent is biotransformed in the liver into two active metabolites: a 10,11-epoxide form, which is active (McNamara, 2006), and a 10,11-dihydroxy form of carbamazepine. The usual therapeutic serum concentration is 4 to 12 μg/mL, and steady state is reached in 3 to 4 days. The serum half-life of Tegretol is 8 to 20 hours (after 3 to 4 weeks of administration), and 60% to 70% is plasma protein bound. The more common toxic reactions seen with this drug include drowsiness, ataxia, dizziness, nausea and vomiting, and lightheadedness. Rare hematologic reactions may occur and can be quite serious; they include aplastic anemia, thrombocytopenia, and agranulocytosis.

Valproic Acid (Depakene)

Valproic acid is commonly used in the treatment of generalized tonic-clonic seizures, absence seizures, myoclonic seizures, and atonic seizures. It is not effective for the treatment of infantile spasms. Although the mechanism of action is not definitely known, valproic acid is thought to enhance the activity of the GABA-mediated inhibitory system. In addition, its action is similar to that of phenytoin and carbamazepine in that it inhibits sustained, repetitive firing of depolarized neurons by prolongation of the refractory state of sodium channels (Hardman et al, 2001; McNamara, 2006). Like ethosuximide, it decreases T-current–induced action potentials (McNamara, 2006). Absorption of valproic acid is rapid and complete. The average daily maintenance dose of valproic acid in adults is 15 to 30 mg/kg, when utilized alone, and 30 to 45 mg/kg in combination with other antiepileptic drugs. The usual therapeutic serum concentration is 50 to 100 μg/mL, and a steady state is reached in 1 to 4 days. Most (90% to 100%) of the drug is metabolized in the liver, and a high percentage (90%) is plasma protein bound. The serum half-life is 8 to 15 hours.

Valproic acid has been shown to produce teratogenic effects in experimental animals; these included developmental abnormalities and skeletal defects. Thus, valproic acid should be used with caution in pregnant women. Toxic side effects include sedation, gastric disturbances, hematologic reactions, ataxia, somnolence, and coma. Rare fatal hepatotoxicity has occurred, and severe or fatal pancreatitis has been reported (Sztajnkrycer, 2002).

Newer Anticonvulsants

Topiramate, lamotrigine (Lamictal), gabapentin (Neurontin), levetiracetam (Keppra), and felbamate (Felbatol) are additional anticonvulsant agents that are approved for use in the United States for patients whose response to the more established anticonvulsants is less than optimal. Therapeutic ranges and toxic concentrations for these drugs have not been determined. Topiramate and lamotrigine are utilized as adjunctive treatment for partial seizures in adults. Topiramate is a substituted sulfamate monosaccharide that induces hyperpolarizing potassium currents and enhances $GABA_A$ receptor currents at synapses (McNamara, 2006). Lamotrigine is a triazine derivative that acts much in the same manner as phenytoin and carbamazepine. However, because it has broader antiseizure activity than either of these other two anticonvulsants, other mechanisms may be involved, one of which appears to be blockade of glutamate release at synapses using this amino acid as a neurotransmitter (McNamara, 2006).

Topiramate has a half-life of approximately 21 hours, with approximately 15% of the drug bound to protein. Lamotrigine has a variable half-life, depending on whether the drug is used as monotherapy or with an inducer. Approximately 55% of lamotrigine is protein bound.

Gabapentin is also utilized as adjunctive treatment for partial seizures and for migraines, chronic pain, and bipolar disorder (McNamara, 2006). As its name suggests, it was designed to act as a GABA-like drug, but it has been found that it does not have this effect but rather seems to induce cortical release of GABA from synaptic vesicles by a poorly understood mechanism (McNamara, 2006). It has a half-life of 5 to 7 hours with less than 3% protein binding.

Levetiracetam is used in benzodiazepine-resistant status epilepticus or where patients have allergic side effects to phenytoin. It does not appear to act through classical anticonvulsant pathways including voltage-dependent Na^+ channels, GABAergic transmission, or affinity for either GABAergic or glutamatergic receptors. Rather, it is thought that the antiepileptic mechanism of action involves inhibitory effects on depolarization-induced and Ca^{2+}-induced Ca^{2+} release–associated neurotransmitter releases, GABA turnover rate in the striatum, removal of Zn^{2+}-induced suppression of GABAA-mediated presynaptic inhibition (resulting in a presynaptic decrease in glutamate mediated excitatory transmission), and decreased levels of the amino acid taurine (a low-affinity agonist for GABAA receptors) in the hippocampus (Deshpande & Delorenzo, 2014).

Felbamate is a phenyl-substituted dicarbamate that not only inhibits NMDA-evoked responses but also enhances GABA-evoked responses (McNamara, 2006).

Common side effects of topiramate include fatigue, psychomotor slowing, somnolence, and difficulty with concentration and speech. Acute-angle glaucoma can also occur (Asconape, 2002). Common side effects of lamotrigine include ataxia, CNS depression, diplopia, dizziness, abnormal thinking, nausea, nervousness, rash, and somnolence. An additional major toxic effect reported for lamotrigine is Stevens-Johnson syndrome (Brodtkorb, 1998; Warner et al, 1998). Common side effects of gabapentin include ataxia, dizziness, fatigue, and somnolence. Felbamate has been found to produce a relatively high incidence of aplastic anemia and hepatic failure (Asconape, 2002). Thus, the drug is utilized in patients failing other treatments only when the potential clinical benefits outweigh the potential clinical risks (Bazil & Pedley, 1998; Brodtkorb, 1998; Asconape, 2002; McNamara, 2006). Attention to emerging anticonvulsants and the differences in their bioavailability may sensitize the clinician to variability of their side effects in infants, children, and pregnant women (Tricco et al, 2014).

http://basicbook.net

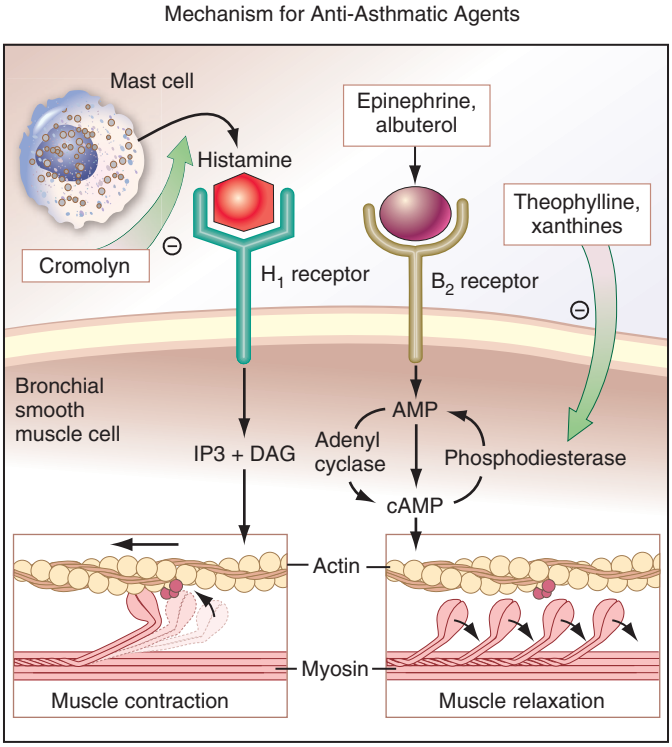


Figure 23-12 Summary of the mechanisms of action of antiasthmatic agents. Three basic mechanisms are shown. Note that all three mechanisms result in promotion of smooth muscle relaxation in the small airways (i.e., fewer actin-myosin cross-bridges) *(arrows show loss of cross-bridges),* as shown at the bottom of the figure. On the left, release of histamine from mast cells in response to allergenic stimulation results in histamine–H_1 receptor complexes that promote a signal transduction pathway in which inositol triphosphate (IP_3) and diacylglycerol (DAG), both second messengers, are induced and promote smooth muscle contraction. Histamine release is blocked *(minus sign in circle, next to green arrow)* by the drug cromolyn. In the middle of the figure, epinephrine and albuterol are shown to form complexes with β receptors; these complexes induce adenyl cyclase activity such that cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) is synthesized; this second messenger blocks smooth muscle contraction. On the right, xanthines, such as theophylline, are shown to block the enzyme phosphodiesterase, resulting in prolonged lifetimes of cAMP, allowing it to function for prolonged periods in blocking smooth muscle contraction.

ANTIASTHMATICS

Asthma is a form of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease that has a variety of causes, some of them allergenic in nature. As indicated in Figure 23-12, at the heart of asthma is bronchoconstriction due to contraction of smooth muscle fibers in bronchioles. This may be induced by allergenic causes that trigger inflammatory processes that, in turn, result in the release of histamine from mast cells. Histamine, when it binds to H_1 receptors in smooth muscle cells, induces second messengers such as inositol triphosphate and diacylglycerol that ultimately stimulate muscle contraction (see Fig. 23-12). Opposing this process is the binding of epinephrine to β_2 receptors, resulting in stimulation of adenylate cyclase that induces synthesis of cAMP, a second-messenger molecule that induces blockade of muscle contraction. As part of a regulatory process, phosphodiesterase induces hydrolysis of cAMP and thus helps to remove inhibition of smooth muscle contraction.

As indicated in Figure 23-12, there are at least three different therapeutic strategies for blocking bronchiolar smooth muscle contraction. The first is blockade of release of histamine from mast cells by drugs such as cromolyn. This is not the only inflammatory process that can induce the bronchoconstriction of asthma. Other components of the inflammatory process may also be active in provoking bronchoconstriction. These are summarized in Figure 23-13, which shows that, among the agents promoting bronchoconstriction, the leukotrienes and the prostaglandins are quite prominent. To counter these effects, oral antiinflammatory agents, such as the leukotriene inhibitors zileuton and zafirlukast, have been found to be effective in asthma because they interrupt the leukotriene/arachidonic acid pathways involved in inflammation and bronchial reactivity. It is important to note that steroids have been found to be highly effective in blocking inflammation-induced bronchospasm. As indicated in Figure 23-13, these agents potently inhibit leukotriene, prostaglandin, and platelet-activating factor production (not shown in Fig. 23-13) by inhibiting phospholipase A2 and the inducible cyclo-oxygenase-2 isoform. Lipid-soluble steroids, especially in aerosolized form, avoiding adverse systemic effects, have been found to be among the most effective agents against asthma. These agents include beclomethasone, flunisolide, and triamcinolone. Longer-acting lipid-soluble β_2-agonists, such as formoterol and salmeterol, are also available and appear to be long acting because of their ability to dissolve into the bronchial smooth muscle membrane.

Second, for severe asthmatic attacks, subcutaneous injection of epinephrine is effective in relieving bronchoconstriction on an acute basis via the mechanism shown in Figure 23-12. For more long-term treatment, β_2 receptor–binding agonist drugs, including albuterol (Proventil, Ventolin) and terbutaline (Brethine), are effective in reversing this process by the same mechanism. Both of these agents stimulate production of cAMP, as shown in the central pathway of Figure 23-12. Third, as shown in Figure 23-12, blockade of phosphodiesterase by such drugs as theophylline and the xanthines prevents hydrolysis of cAMP, allowing for continuous inhibition of bronchoconstriction.

Although still a commonly prescribed antiasthmatic drug, theophylline is being replaced with other antiasthmatics such as steroid and β-adrenergic bronchial inhalers, used mainly for acute and subacute asthmatic attacks in adults. These latter agents have fewer toxic side effects (Pesce et al, 1998). However, laboratory assays for therapeutic levels of antiasthmatics have been performed only for theophylline, predominantly because its therapeutic range is narrow, and potential side effects are serious, as discussed in the following section.

Theophylline

Theophylline (Table 23-6) is used as a bronchodilator for the treatment of moderate or severe asthma, both for the prevention of attacks and for the treatment of symptomatic exacerbations. Besides its main effect of inhibiting a variety of phosphodiesterases, theophylline also inhibits the bronchoconstrictive action of adenosine and activates histone deacetylases. The latter action may result in decreases in the transcription of proinflammatory genes. It also inhibits the release of proinflammatory agents, like histamine, from a variety of inflammatory cells (Undem, 2006).

Theophylline exerts additional actions such as vasodilation, diuresis, positive cardiac inotropic effects, and stimulation of diaphragmatic contraction. Owing to the latter stimulating effect, theophylline may be of benefit to some patients with emphysema. Theophylline has also been effective in the treatment of primary apnea of prematurity, in which the absence of respiratory effort lasts longer than 20 seconds in newborn infants. This latter effect is thought to be due to medullary stimulation by the drug. It has been found that caffeine is more effective for this purpose because it has diminished toxicity (Pesce et al, 1998).

In the treatment of asthma, the dosage is calculated on the basis of body weight and depends on the route of administration and the age of the patient. Because the therapeutic index (i.e., the closeness of toxic levels to therapeutic levels) of theophylline is low, cautious dosage determination is essential. Careful monitoring of patient response and serum theophylline levels is required because theophylline is metabolized at different rates for each patient. Theophylline levels can be estimated 1 hour after intravenous administration, 1 to 2 hours after oral administration, or generally 3 to 8 hours after extended-release administration from appropriately drawn blood samples.

The therapeutic serum level is 10 to 20 mcg/mL, and the mean half-life is approximately 8.7 hours in nonsmoking adults (5.5 hours in smoking adults). However, the half-life may vary widely among individuals, again indicating the need for close supervision of the patient and appropriate monitoring of serum concentrations in each patient. Approximately 60% of the drug is protein bound, and about 90% is metabolized in the liver, with caffeine being one of the metabolites produced. Theophylline crosses the placenta and may be teratogenic in pregnant females. Other common side effects include tachycardia, arrhythmias, seizures, and gastrointestinal bleeding. Newer antiasthmatic options such as the nonsedating H_1-receptor inverse agonist, Bilastine, as well as additional emerging pharmacopeia (Braido et al, 2014) will provide additional treatment opportunities and may require drug monitoring by the clinical laboratory.

ANTIINFLAMMATORY AND ANALGESIC DRUGS

As noted in the preceding section, and as shown in Figure 23-13, membrane damage, resulting from immune complexes, trauma, or other stress, induces, among other events, the release of phospholipids. These, in turn, become substrates for phospholipase A_2, which results in the

http://basicbook.net

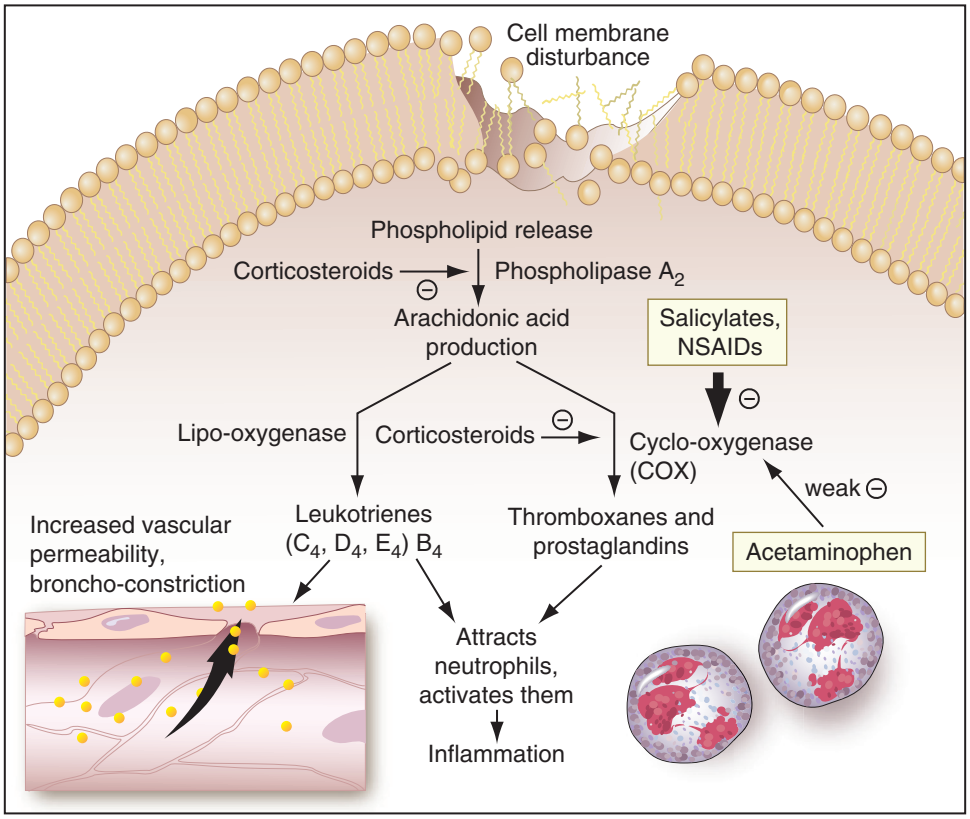


Figure 23-13 Mechanisms of action of antiinflammatory drugs. The figure shows that the fundamental event in inflammation-induced cell death is membrane damage in cells that results in activation of phospholipase A_2. This enzyme promotes the synthesis of arachidonic acid. This is a substrate for two critical enzymes: lipooxygenase, which promotes synthesis of leukotrienes, and cyclooxygenase (COX), which promotes synthesis of thromboxanes and prostaglandins. Both classes of compounds promote neutrophil chemotaxis *(lower right)* with resulting phagocytosis of damaged cells and a further destructive inflammatory response. Leukotrienes themselves promote increased vascular permeability, causing increased migration of neutrophils to damaged cells, and smooth muscle contraction *(lower left)*. In this figure, corticosteroids such as prednisone and cortisone are shown to block *(black minus signs in circles, next to arrows)* two key enzymes in this signal transduction inflammatory cascade: phospholipase A_2 and cyclooxygenase. Corticosteroids are also thought to stabilize damaged membranes. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) block predominantly cyclooxygenase; acetaminophen (Tylenol) blocks mainly COX in the central nervous system and only weakly blocks peripheral COX and is therefore more of an antipyretic than an antiinflammatory drug.

TABLE 23-6
Theophylline

Purpose	Treatment and Prevention of Moderate to Severe Asthma
General adult dose	Depends on body weight, route of administration, and age and condition of patient
Usual bioavailability	Varies according to form, with about 100% for oral liquids and uncoated tablets
Half-life	Varies: 8-9 hours in nonsmoking adults, 5-6 hours in adults who smoke, and 3-4 hours in children, but may vary widely
General therapeutic range	10-20 mcg/mL
General toxic level	>20 mcg/mL
Transport	60% plasma protein bound
Metabolism	Hepatic: caffeine; 1,3-dimethyluric acid; 1-methyluric acid; 3-methylxanthine
Elimination	10% unchanged in urine
Steady state	5 half-lives; 90% of steady state reached in 3 half-lives
Mechanism of action	Increases intracellular cAMP by inhibiting phosphodiesterase; this causes the smooth muscle of the bronchial airways and pulmonary blood vessels to relax
Toxic effects	Hypotension, syncope, tachycardia, arrhythmias, seizures, gastrointestinal bleeding

cAMP, Cyclic adenosine monophosphate.

production of arachidonic acid. This centrally important compound may be converted into leukotrienes via lipooxygenase, or thromboxanes and prostaglandins via cyclooxygenase (COX). All of these agents provoke chemotaxis of neutrophils, resulting in their activation and, ultimately, in inflammation. In addition, they increase vascular permeability (inducing more influx of neutrophils) and smooth muscle contraction. As noted in the preceding section, and as shown in Figure 23-13, corticosteroids are powerful antiinflammatory agents that work through the blockade of cyclooxygenase, in addition to their blocking the formation of arachidonic acid.

Although steroids are highly effective antiinflammatory agents, they provoke a number of undesirable side effects, including fluid retention, weight gain, osteoporosis, gastrointestinal bleeding, and mental changes. Other nonsteroidal drugs, including **nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs),** have been found to be effective in blocking inflammation by similar mechanisms, as shown in Figure 23-13, without the undesirable side effects of the corticosteroids. These agents, most of which block COX specifically, include such drugs as naproxen (Naprosyn, Aleve), ibuprofen (Advil, Motrin), indomethacin (Indocin), and piroxicam (Feldene). These agents inhibit two forms of COX: COX-1 and COX-2. The former is involved in maintaining membrane integrity of mucosal cells in the gastrointestinal tract, and the latter is involved in the inflammatory process. Because all of these agents inhibit both forms of COX, they have the undesirable side effect of gastrointestinal tract toxicity and induce GI bleeding. Newer agents that more selectively inhibit COX-2 have recently become available, including celecoxib (Celebrex) and rofecoxib (Vioxx). Because some patients treated with Vioxx have been diagnosed with myocardial infarction, this drug was withdrawn. Other NSAIDs such as diflunisal (Dolobid) inhibit prostaglandin synthetase, but the exact mechanism of action is not clear.

http://basicbook.net

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin), a potent cyclooxygenase inhibitor, is an effective antiinflammatory agent and also has antipyretic and analgesic effects, which also result from cyclooxygenase inhibition. The latter two effects are thought possibly to be due to inhibition of COX in the CNS (**COX-3**), mainly in the hypothalamus, although this is not certain (Burke et al, 2006).

Acetaminophen (Tylenol) inhibits COX-3 but exerts little effect on COX-1 and COX-2. Thus it is non-antiinflammatory, does not result in gastrointestinal tract bleeding, and is an effective analgesic and antipyretic.

Of all of these drugs, therapeutic drug monitoring is performed only with acetylsalicylic acid and acetaminophen. We will therefore discuss these two drugs further.

Aspirin

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin) is a nonsteroidal antiinflammatory compound that is used as an analgesic, an antipyretic, and, in larger doses, an antiinflammatory agent. In lower doses, it exhibits its anticoagulant activity due to its antiplatelet activity through inhibition of COX in platelets, resulting in blockade of platelet plug formation. It can be effective in the treatment of fever, neuralgia, headache, myalgia, and arthralgia, and in the management of some rheumatic diseases.

Oral dosages of aspirin that are generally used for analgesia and antipyresis in adults range from 500 mg as necessary, to a maximum of 4 g/day. Increased dosages (3.5 to 5.5 g/day) are used for rheumatoid arthritis and osteoarthritis in adults, and for juvenile arthritis (up to 3.5 g/day) in children.

The small intestine is the primary site of aspirin absorption, and absorption usually occurs rapidly following oral administration, with peak plasma levels established within 1 to 2 hours. Before entering the systemic circulation, aspirin is rapidly hydrolyzed to acetic acid and salicylic acid. Hydrolysis occurs partially by plasma esterase and partially by the liver. Both aspirin and salicylic acid enter the CNS.

Approximately 70% to 90% of salicylic acid is plasma protein bound. The serum half-life is dose dependent and increases with the dose—from approximately 3 hours with 500 mg to approximately 15 hours with 4 g. Salicylic acid is cleared not only by metabolism but also by urinary excretion, and, as the half-life increases, the rate of urinary excretion decreases. This can produce toxic effects if the dosage interval is not increased appropriately. However, the rate of elimination can vary widely with the patient, necessitating individualization of dosage for large amounts of drug. Tinnitus, muffled hearing, and a sensation of fullness in the ears are the most common signs of chronic aspirin toxicity. In infants, young children, and patients with preexisting hearing loss, otic symptoms will not occur, and hyperventilation is the most common sign of overdose.

As discussed in Chapter 14, overdoses of aspirin can cause metabolic acidosis. Because salicylate itself stimulates central respiratory centers, overdose causes an increased breathing rate, leading to a respiratory alkalosis that can predominate, so that the patient exhibits respiratory alkalosis subsequent to initial metabolic acidosis. Acute aspirin intoxication is a common cause of fatal drug poisoning in children. Toxic doses produce acid-base disturbances, direct CNS stimulation of respiration, hyperpyrexia and hypoglycemia, gastrointestinal bleeding, and nausea and vomiting. Acute renal failure, CNS dysfunction with stupor and coma, and pulmonary edema may develop. Figure 23-14 summarizes the toxic levels of aspirin in children as a function of time after the toxic dose was taken.

A serious toxic effect of aspirin, mainly in children but also recognized in adults, is hepatotoxicity leading to fulminant hepatic failure (i.e., Reye's

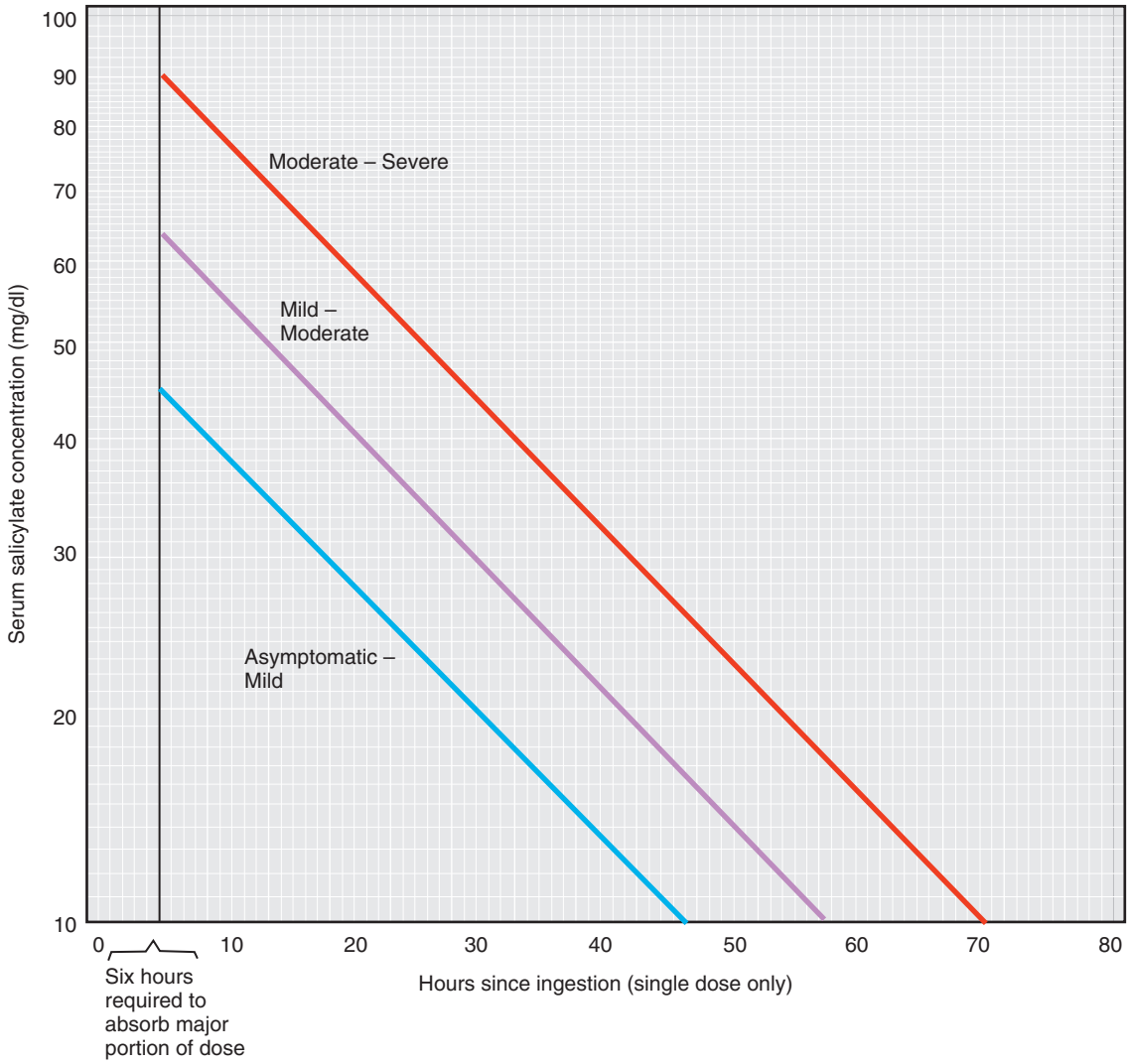


Figure 23-14 Aspirin toxicity levels in children as a function of time. (Howanitz & Howanitz, 1984; modified with permission from Done AK: Salicylate intoxication: significance of measurements of salicylate in blood in cases of acute ingestion, *Pediatrics* 1960;26:800.)

http://basicbook.net

syndrome). This occurs when a patient is treated with aspirin for fever during a viral illness. After apparent recovery, the patient becomes seriously ill from hepatic failure with signs and symptoms, including hepatic encephalopathy (described in Chapters 8 and 21). Although once almost always fatal, newer supportive measures have resulted in a significant increase in survival from this life-threatening condition, the basic cause of which is as yet undetermined.

Acetaminophen

Acetaminophen (Tylenol), or *N*-acetyl-*p*-aminophenol, is used as an analgesic and antipyretic to treat fever, headache, and mild to moderate myalgia and arthralgia. Acetaminophen is as effective as aspirin in its analgesic and antipyretic actions and is preferred over aspirin in patients with a bleeding/coagulation disorder or in children requiring only antipyretics or analgesics, because no association between acetaminophen and Reye's syndrome has been demonstrated. Furthermore, an accidental overdose in children may be less toxic than with aspirin; hepatotoxicity is rarely associated with acetaminophen overdose in children younger than 6 years of age.

Oral doses of acetaminophen are rapidly and essentially completely absorbed from the GI tract. Generally, 325 to 650 mg at 4-hour intervals is prescribed for adults and children older than 12 years of age, with a maximum of 4 g daily. The plasma half-life is approximately 2 hours, with peak plasma levels of 5 to 20 µg/mL occurring in 30 to 60 minutes. Plasma protein binding is about 20% with therapeutic doses. The major metabolites of acetaminophen produced by the liver are glucuronide and sulfate conjugates, with minor metabolites being deacetylated and hydroxylated derivatives. The latter metabolite is thought to produce hepatotoxicity with overdose.

At therapeutic levels, about 90% of acetaminophen is conjugated as glucuronides or sulfates in the liver. About 5% is converted to a toxic metabolite, *N*-acetyl-*p*-aminobenzoquinoneimime (NAPQI), which is hepatotoxic at high concentrations (Rowden et al, 2006). It is this metabolite that causes toxic liver effects at high doses of acetaminophen in the liver by the cytochrome P450 mixed oxidase system. This metabolite is normally cleared by conjugation to glutathione (GSH) by glutathione-S-transferase (GST) in the liver. In cases of toxic levels of NAPQI, where the NAPQI levels overwhelm the GST system, acetylcysteine is administered. This compound conjugates to NAPQI, detoxifying it.

Toxic doses of acetaminophen occur at acute ingestion levels of 140 mg/kg (White & Wong, 1998). Acute manifestations of toxic doses generally occur within 2 to 3 hours after ingestion and include nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. A characteristic sign of toxicity is cyanosis of the skin, mucosa, and fingernails due to methemoglobinemia. However, this is seen more frequently with phenacetin poisoning. CNS stimulation followed by CNS depression may occur in severe poisoning, with vascular collapse, shock, and total seizures. Coma usually precedes death. At very high doses (as with suicide attempts), fulminant hepatic failure may occur, with maximum liver damage not becoming apparent until 2 to 4 days after drug ingestion (Sunheimer et al, 1994). Chronic acetaminophen abuse may produce chronic toxicity and death. Anemia, renal damage, and gastrointestinal disturbances are usually associated with chronic toxicity. Toxic effects can be treated effectively with NAC (Rowden et al, 2006).

IMMUNOSUPPRESSIVES

Although intact humoral and cell-mediated immunity is essential in preventing infection, it becomes vital to suppress functioning of these systems in some circumstances. These include aberrations of the immune system such as autoimmune disease (e.g., lupus erythematosus, Sjögren's syndrome) and normal functioning of the immune system (e.g., in tissue transplantation). In the latter circumstance, the most important component of the immune system is cell-mediated immunity. As shown in Figure 23-15, in host-versus-graft or in graft-versus-host disease, CD^{4+} T cells become activated when a foreign antigen binds to the major histocompatibility class (II) Ia protein on the surface of macrophages (antigen-presenting cells). Specific T cell clones bind to the antigen using their T cell receptors (CD3), which recognize the antigen-Ia complex. Activation of the T cell receptor results in a signal transduction cascade that ultimately ends in engulfment via receptor-mediated endocytosis of the antigen by the macrophage and destruction in lysosomes. In this cascade, calcium ions are mobilized, resulting in the activation of calcineurin, a phosphatase that forms a complex with calmodulin. Activated calcineurin dephosphorylates cytosolic nuclear factor of activated T cells $(NF\text{-}AT)^C$ resulting in its activation, whereupon it translocates to the nucleus and binds to NF-AT from the nucleus $(NF\text{-}AT)^N$. This transcriptionally active complex results in the synthesis of interleukin (IL)-2, which becomes secreted as an extracellular mitogen (i.e., an autocrine factor). It binds to the IL-2 receptor of the T cell, activating it toward the binding of a protein, called **target of rapamycin (TOR),** which serves to activate cyclin kinases that promote progression of the cell cycle from G1 to S and stimulate nucleotide synthesis. This ends in differentiation and proliferation of the T cell and ultimate antigen destruction.

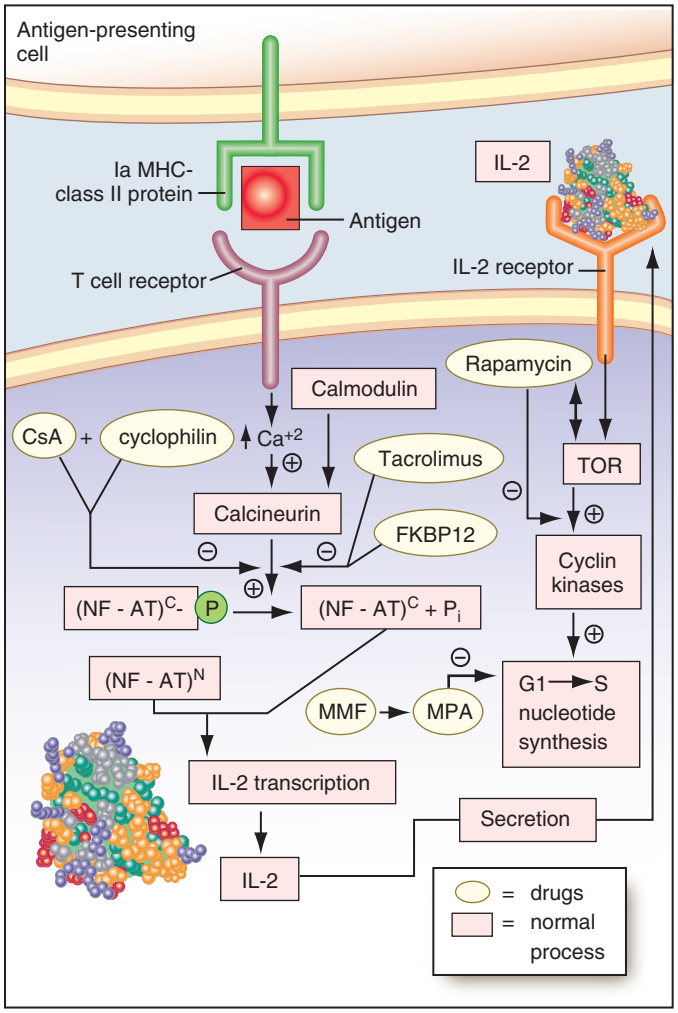


Figure 23-15 Mechanisms and sites of action of immunosuppressive drugs. This figure shows two linked, centrally important signal transduction pathways induced by antigen, in this case foreign transplanted cells, for activation of cell-mediated immunity. In the first pathway, antigen is "presented" to antigen-specific (clonal) T cells by attachment of the antigen to the Ia molecule (major histocompatibility class [MHC] II—or DR in humans—protein). The formation of a ternary complex of antigen *(red box),* Ia *(green receptor on the antigen presenting cell;* i.e., macrophage), and the T cell receptor *(purple receptor, upper left)* results in a signal transduction cascade that causes the synthesis of IL-2, shown as a space-filling model in the lower-left part of the figure. Critical to this pathway is activation, by calcium-activated calmodulin, of the phosphatase, calcineurin, which dephosphorylates cytosolic nuclear factor of activated T cells $(NF\text{-}AT)^C$ resulting in its activation; whereupon it translocates to the nucleus and binds to NF-AT from the nucleus $(NF\text{-}AT)^N$, which directly promotes transcription of interleukin (IL)-2. In the second, linked, signal transduction pathway *(right side),* newly synthesized IL-2 is then secreted by the T cell and acts as an autocrine factor in binding to the extracellular domain of the IL-2 receptor of the T cell to form a complex as shown in the upper-right part of the figure. This complex induces activation of a second signal transduction cascade in which target of rapamycin (TOR) protein is stimulated and, in turn, activates cyclin kinases that promote activation of cyclins, which, in turn, promote progression of the cell cycle from G1 to S necessary for blast transformation of clonal T cells that, with macrophages, engulf and destroy the antigen. All elements of the normal signal transduction pathways are shown as *pink boxes*. The immunosuppressive drugs and their target proteins block different parts of these two pathways and are shown as *yellow ellipses*. Cyclosporine (CsA) and tacrolimus complex, respectively, with cyclophilin and FKBP12 to form inhibitory complexes that block calcineurin in the first pathway. On the other hand, rapamycin blocks TOR, thereby blocking IL-2–induced blast transformation in the second pathway; mycophenolate mofetil (MMF) blocks nucleotide synthesis, thereby blocking G1-S progression in the second pathway.

As shown in Figure 23-15, there are specific agents (Hess et al, 1988; Kahan, 1989; Isoniemi, 1997; Braun et al, 1998; McEvoy et al, 2004:

http://basicbook.net

Krensky et al, 2006) that block one or more of these steps and, by so doing, inhibit antigen destruction. The drugs cyclosporine and tacrolimus are cyclic polypeptides that bind to intracellular proteins called **immunophilins.** Cyclosporine (CsA) binds to the immunophilin cyclophilin, while tacrolimus binds to the immunophilin called **FKBP12.** These complexes then block calcineurin-induced activation of NF-AT, and therefore block interleukin-2 synthesis, so that antigen destruction cannot occur. On the other hand, another immunosuppressive agent, rapamycin (Sirolimus), has no such effect on T cells, but rather binds to the critical TOR protein, disenabling activation of cyclin kinases so that T cell activation cannot proceed. Finally, mycophenolate mofetil, an antibiotic, is hydrolyzed to free mycophenolic acid in the cell. This agent is a powerful inhibitor of inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase and guanosine monophosphate synthetase, disenabling deoxypurine nucleotide synthesis, which, in turn, disables DNA synthesis uniquely in lymphocytes. Other cells have rescue pathways that circumvent this blockade, making the effects of this drug selective for lymphocytes (Krensky et al, 2006). In the same vein, some alkylating agents that are generally used as chemotherapeutic agents, such as cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan), can be used to suppress DNA synthesis in T cells, but these are not selective for lymphocytes.

It should be noted that the corticosteroids also have immunosuppressive effects on cell-mediated immunity but are much less specific and, as noted in the previous section, have multiple undesirable side effects. They are, therefore, not the drugs of choice for use in transplantation. In the following section, we discuss the properties of the more specific immunosuppressive drugs, most of which require monitoring of serum (plasma) levels (Dunn et al, 2001; Dancey, 2002; Drosos, 2002; Scott et al, 2003; Mueller, 2004).

Cyclosporine

CsA is a cyclic polypeptide containing 11 amino acids, five of which are methylated. Maximum suppression with CsA occurs during the first 24 hours of antigen stimulation by the allograft. Thus, CsA must be administered in the early phase of the immune response for optimal suppression of T cell function and increased success of transplantation (McEvoy et al, 2004).

CsA is indicated to prevent organ rejection in kidney, heart, and liver allogeneic transplants and is the drug of choice for maintenance of kidney, liver, heart, and heart-lung allografts. CsA may also be utilized as a first- or second-line drug in the treatment of acute graft-versus-host disease following bone marrow transplantation, in the active stage of severe rheumatoid arthritis, and for severe, recalcitrant plaque psoriasis. It may also be used in the treatment of other autoimmune diseases and in organ transplantation.

Because CsA is variably absorbed from the GI tract, the optimal dose must be carefully determined for each patient individually, and blood levels should be monitored frequently. It has been occasionally found that, although serum levels of the parent drug are low, the metabolites, some of which are active, maintain a therapeutic drug level. Therefore, in patients with apparently low levels of the parent drug, it is necessary to determine the levels of metabolites. Peak blood concentrations occur at approximately 3.5 hours after administration. About 20% to 40% of a given dose of CsA is absorbed, and it is metabolized on the first pass through the liver. Human cytochrome P450 III A3 (CYP3A) of the P450 III gene family appears to be the primary enzyme responsible for CsA metabolism. Because a number of drugs may induce or may be metabolized by this cytochrome P450 isoenzyme, coadministration of these drugs may be responsible for alterations in CsA levels that can complicate CsA therapy (Kronbach et al, 1988). Agents that inhibit the CYP3A system include calcium channel blockers (e.g., verapamil, discussed earlier), antimicrobials, and HIV protease inhibitors. Grapefruit and grapefruit juice are also known to exert inhibitory effects on this system (Krensky et al, 2006). Trough whole blood or plasma concentrations, at 24 hours, of 250 to 800 ng/mL or 50 to 300 ng/mL, respectively (as determined by immunoassay), are believed to minimize graft rejection and, concurrently, toxic effects.

Adverse effects of CsA may occur in all organ systems of the body. Trough serum levels greater than 500 ng/mL are associated with CsA-induced nephrotoxicity, which is the most frequent toxic reaction seen with CsA. CsA-induced nephrotoxicity is accompanied by hyperkalemia and hyperuricemia, hypertension, and gingival hyperplasia.

Other toxic effects include neurologic effects (tremors, seizures, headache, paresthesia, flushing, confusion), dermatologic effects (hirsutism, hypertrichosis, rash), hepatotoxicity, GI effects (diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, abdominal discomfort), infectious complications, hematologic effects (leukopenia, anemia, thrombocytopenia), and sensitivity reactions, including anaphylaxis (Philip & Gerson, 1998). It is important to note that the risk for immunosuppressed states is increased, and the occurrence of lymphoma, especially CNS lymphoma, may be associated with immunosuppression by CsA. It has also been found that CsA induces immune system–independent increased invasiveness of adenocarcinoma cells in culture, apparently by activating transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) (Hojo et al, 1999). This behavior is blocked by monoclonal antibodies to TGF-β.

Both oral and intravenous preparations of CsA are available. Interpatient and intrapatient absorption of the oral preparation is variable, and absorption can be affected by many factors. It is generally recommended that whole blood be used for drug level monitoring, and that an assay method with high specificity for unchanged drug (vs. metabolites) be used. Thus, the optimal dose must be carefully determined for each patient individually, and blood levels should be monitored frequently, with CsA blood concentrations qualified by biological fluid (whole blood vs. plasma vs. serum) and assay method (immunoassay vs. HPLC) used. At present, any currently available immunoassay (FPIA, EMIT) is acceptable for routine monitoring, although it is important that consistent laboratories and methods be used (McEvoy et al, 2004).

Neoral is a microemulsion formulation of CsA that is miscible in water; it increases the solubility of CsA in the small bowel (Frei et al, 1998). This preparation has shown superior pharmacokinetics with improved bioavailability and equivalent safety with no apparent increase in toxicity. It appears to offer advantages over oral solutions of CsA, by decreasing intrapatient and interpatient blood level variability. Intravenous CsA is reserved for patients unable to tolerate oral administration; this route of administration carries a low but definite (0.1%) risk for anaphylaxis, which does not occur following oral administration of the drug.

Tacrolimus (FK-506)

Tacrolimus is a macrolide lactone antibiotic with a mechanism of action similar to that of cyclosporine; it is more potent than CsA in its inhibitory effect (McEvoy et al, 2004). It is currently being utilized in transplant surgery to prevent organ rejection. As is the case with CsA, higher trough concentrations of tacrolimus appear to increase the relative risk for toxicity, and therapeutic drug monitoring is recommended. The same monoclonal antibody is used in the two methods available for monitoring. One method is a microparticle enzyme immunoassay, and the other method is an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. Whole blood is the specimen of choice. The toxic potential appears to be similar to the toxic effects of CsA. The most common include nephrotoxicity, neurotoxicity (such as tremor and headache), gastrointestinal effects such as diarrhea and nausea, hypertension, alterations in glucose metabolism (diabetes mellitus), hyperkalemia, and infectious complications. However, unlike with CsA, gingival hyperplasia and hirsutism do not occur. Anaphylaxis may occur with intravenous administration, and oral therapy is recommended whenever possible. Tacrolimus appears to be best suited for use in combination with other new immunosuppressive agents.

Rapamycin (Sirolimus)

Rapamycin is an antibiotic similar to tacrolimus. Peak concentrations are reached after about 1 hour after a single oral dose or after about 2 hours after multiple doses for patients who have undergone renal transplant (Krensky et al, 2006). The parent drug is the major active form, although several metabolites also have activity. About 40% of the drug is bound to serum proteins, especially albumin; it is metabolized predominantly in the liver by the CYP3A4 system (Krensky et al, 2006). Major side effects include GI symptoms, abnormalities in lipid levels, anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia. It can also cause delayed wound healing; however, it does not appear to be nephrotoxic. If used in combination with cyclosporine, because sirolimus aggravates CsA-induced renal dysfunction, administration of these two drugs must be separated in time (Krensky et al, 2006).

Mycophenolate Mofetil

Mycophenolate mofetil is a derivative of mycophenolate acid, a fungal antibiotic. The parent drug is metabolized to mycophenolic acid (MPA) within minutes of administration. The half-life of MPA is about 16 hours. Virtually all MPA is excreted in the urine as the glucuronide. This drug is used for prophylaxis of renal allograft rejection, usually in combination with a steroid or a calcineurin inhibitor (Krensky et al, 2006). Although this drug appears to decrease the rate of renal allograft rejection, differences in patient and allograft survival have not been demonstrated (Isoniemi, 1997). It may be of use in patients who do not tolerate CsA or tacrolimus (FK-506) well. Major side effects include GI symptoms such as

http://basicbook.net

diarrhea, nausea, and myelosuppression. Neither nephrotoxicity nor neurotoxicity has been demonstrated.

Leflunomide

Leflunomide (LFM), which inhibits lymphocyte proliferation by inhibiting dihydroorotic acid synthetase (Krensky et al, 2006), critical to deoxy pyrimidine nucleotide synthesis, is an isoxazole derivative. It is presently used in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis, the only condition for which it has been approved for treatment, although it is being used increasingly for treatment of polyoma virus nephropathy seen in immunosuppressed renal transplant recipients (Krensky et al, 2006). LFM has not been demonstrated to cause nephrotoxicity or myelosuppression in humans.

DRUGS USED IN THE TREATMENT OF MANIA AND DEPRESSION

Both lithium and the antidepressants are used in the treatment of psychiatric affective disorders.

Lithium

Lithium is a monovalent cation, a member of the group of alkali metals, and is available commercially as citrate and carbonate salts. Lithium salts are considered to be antimanic agents and are used for the prophylaxis and treatment of bipolar disorder (manic-depressive psychosis) and as an adjunct to antidepressant therapy in melancholic depression (Baldessarini, 2006). In addition, lithium is considered by some investigators to be the drug of choice for the prevention of chronic cluster headache, and it may be effective in episodic or periodic forms of cluster headache. Initial oral dosages of lithium for acute mania range from 0.6 to 1.8 g daily (maximum, 2.4 g) and produce a therapeutic serum level of 0.75 to 1.5 mEq/L. Once the attack subsides, the dose is reduced rapidly to produce a serum concentration of 0.4 to 1.0 mEq/L. Oral adult dosages for cluster headaches generally range from 0.6 to 1.2 g daily in divided doses. In cases of acute mania, especially in agitated, uncooperative patients, because of the relatively slow onset of action of lithium, a benzodiazepine sedative (e.g., lorazepam, clonazepam) or the anticonvulsant valproate (Depakote; see previous section) is administered until some stabilization of the agitated state is achieved. Then lithium is administered to achieve long-term stabilization. Alternatively, continuation of both drugs may be continued, or, in some cases, the patient can be maintained on Depakote alone (Baldessarini & Tarazi, 2006).

In general, serum levels of and patient response to lithium are used to individualize dosage and must be monitored carefully. Complete absorption of lithium occurs 6 to 8 hours after oral administration. Plasma half-life varies from 17 to 36 hours, and onset of action is slow (5 to 10 days). Elimination occurs almost entirely by the kidneys, and about 80% of filtered lithium is reabsorbed. Lithium is not protein bound and is distributed in total body water, but it shows delayed and varied tissue distribution. Thus, symptoms of acute intoxication may not correlate well with serum levels, because the distribution of the drug into different organs may be slow and/or varied.

The exact mechanism of action of lithium is unknown, but lithium, as a monovalent cation, competes with other monovalent and divalent cations (such as sodium, potassium, calcium, and magnesium) at ion channels in cell membranes and at protein-binding sites such as membrane receptors and protein/peptide transport molecules and enzymes that are critical to the synthesis, storage, release, and uptake of central neurotransmitters. Lithium also has a marked inhibitory effect on inositol monophosphatase and on the synthesis of phosphatidylinositides, which are second messengers involved in neurotransmission, and on the synthesis of cAMP, also involved in neurotransmission (Phiel & Klein, 2001; Baldessarini, 2006, Baldessarini & Tarazi, 2006). These effects are exerted on the postsynaptic side of dopamine- and norepinephrine-utilizing tracts in the mesolimbic and mesocortical pathways that inhibit the mobilization of calcium ions required for postsynaptic depolarization. The effect, then, is to inhibit neurotransmission. In addition, lithium blocks release of dopamine from presynaptic vesicles, also resulting in diminished neurotransmission.

Toxicity may occur acutely, as the result of a single toxic dose, or chronically, from high and/or prolonged dosages or changes in lithium pharmacokinetics. Water loss (resulting from fever, decreased intake, abnormal gastrointestinal conditions such as diarrhea or vomiting, diuretics, or pyelonephritis) is the main contributing factor underlying chronic intoxication. Renal toxicity and hypothyroidism are also known possible side effects of lithium. Thus it is advisable to monitor creatinine and thyroid-stimulating hormone periodically in patients who are under continuing treatment with this drug. Severity of intoxication is not clearly related to serum lithium levels. However, an imprecise prediction of severity of intoxication may be attempted from serum lithium levels obtained 12 hours after the last dose: Slight to moderate intoxication with 1.5 to 2.5 mEq/L, severe intoxication with 2.5 to 3.5 mEq/L, and potentially lethal intoxication if greater than 3.5 mEq/L. Severity of lithium intoxication also depends on the length of time that the serum concentration remains toxic.

The most common symptoms of mild to moderate intoxication include nausea, malaise, diarrhea, and fine hand tremor. In addition, thirst, polydipsia, and polyuria, as well as drowsiness, muscle weakness, ataxia, and slurred speech, may occur. Symptoms of moderate to severe toxicity include hyperactive deep tendon reflexes, choreoathetoid movements, persistent nausea and vomiting, fasciculations, generalized seizures, and clonic movements of whole limbs. These may progress rapidly to generalized seizures, oliguria, circulatory failure, and death with serum levels greater than 3.5 mEq/L.

Antidepressants

Three classes of drugs are currently used in the treatment of clinical depression: classical tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs), SSRIs, and monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) (Baldessarini, 2006). The rationale for use of the first class of drugs is their ability to block the uptake of norepinephrine at the axonal side of synapses in neural tracts from the brainstem to the forebrain that utilize this neurotransmitter, as indicated in Figure 23-8. This blockade allows longer stimulation times and higher concentrations of norepinephrine at the dendritic side of the synapse, allowing them to bind to α_1 receptors in these tracts for prolonged times, resulting in prolonged and enhanced stimulation. Drugs in the second class produce the same effect in parallel neural pathways that utilize serotonin as the stimulatory neurotransmitter (see the General Aspects of the Mechanisms of Action section earlier in the chapter). Finally, MAOIs block the inactivating metabolism of both norepinephrine and serotonin neurotransmitters by inhibiting their oxidation by the enzyme monoamine oxidase, present in the mitochondria of the presynaptic (axonal) terminal, wherein their amino groups are oxidized to the corresponding aldehydes. This inhibition results in increased concentrations of these neurotransmitters.

Tricyclic Antidepressants

The structures of these related compounds are shown in Figure 23-16. Also shown are two other effective antidepressant drugs: doxepin and trazodone (Desyrel), a second-generation, so-called **atypical antidepressant,** which does not contain the three fused ring system of the TCAs. Besides blocking reuptake of norepinephrine at the axonal side of synapses, the TCAs have been found to *bind directly* to two classes of norepinephrine receptors: α_1, which occur on the postsynaptic side of the synapse, and α_2, so-called **autoreceptors,** which occur on the presynaptic side of the synapse. The postsynaptic α_1 receptors are involved in postsynaptic membrane depolarization involving calcium ion fluxes, resulting in nerve conduction. The presynaptic α_2 receptors, when bound to norepinephrine, induce its downregulation by causing decreased synthesis of tyrosine hydroxylase, the critical enzyme that catalyzes the rate-limiting step in norepinephrine biosynthesis (Baldessarini, 2006). This results in decreased levels of norepinephrine and in decreased secretion of this neurotransmitter into the synaptic cleft.

When the TCAs bind to α_1 receptors, they cause temporary blockade of these receptors. This effect is thought to cause the **observed side effect of initial hypotensive episodes** in patients who are treated with these drugs. Over time, the binding of TCAs to these postsynaptic receptors apparently causes ***increased*** **sensitization** of the α_1 receptors to norepinephrine, overcoming the initial inhibition, while the presynaptic reuptake blockade of norepinephrine continues unimpeded. Concurrently, binding of the TCAs to presynaptic α_2 receptors has the opposite effect from their binding to the postsynaptic α_1 receptors, that is, desensitization with resulting loss of inhibition of epinephrine biosynthesis. Thus the TCAs enhance norepinephrine-induced neurotransmission in the limbic system by blocking norepinephrine reuptake, sensitizing postsynaptic α_1 receptors, and desensitizing inhibitory presynaptic α_2 receptors. In addition, TCAs appear to block, in a nonspecific manner, the reuptake of dopamine in the dopaminergic pathways in the limbic system (Baldessarini, 2006).

Besides stimulating dopaminergic pathways, the tricyclics, especially amitriptyline, have anticholinergic effects (Baldessarini, 2006). The pharmacologic side effects of the tricyclic antidepressants, in fact, reflect their anticholinergic activities. These include dry mouth, constipation, blurred vision, hyperthermia, adynamic ileus, urinary retention, and delayed micturition. Other CNS effects include drowsiness, weakness, fatigue, and

http://basicbook.net

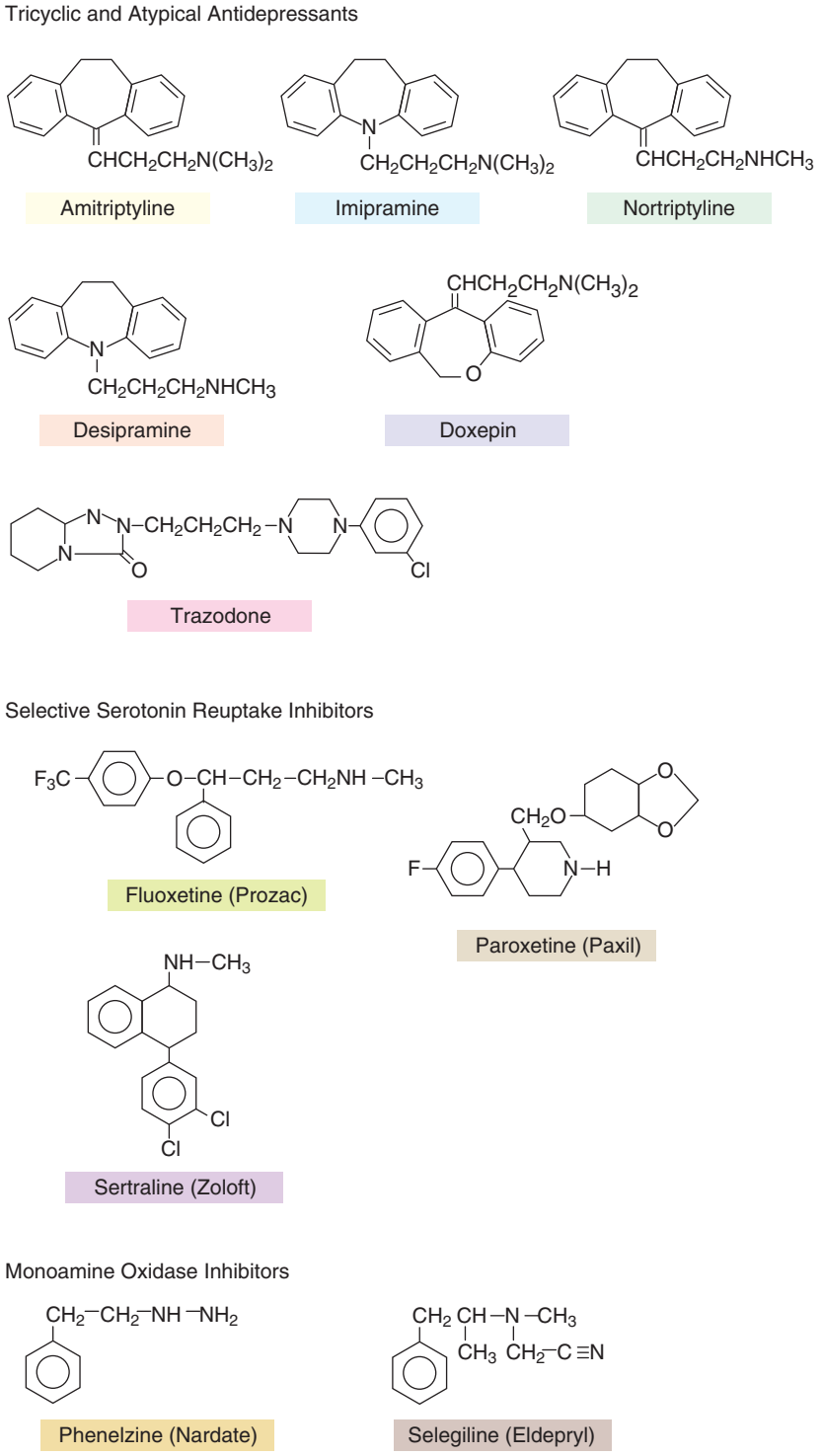


Figure 23-16 **Structures of the most commonly used drugs in the three classes of antidepressants: tricyclic and atypical antidepressants, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, and monoamine oxidase inhibitors.**

lethargy, which are most common, as well as agitation, restlessness, insomnia, and confusion. Seizures and coma can also occur. Extrapyramidal symptoms may occur and include a persistent fine tremor, rigidity, dystonia, and opisthotonos. It is important to note that TCAs unfortunately have been used in suicide attempts by some depressed individuals who are being treated with them. The cardinal signs of tricyclic antidepressant overdose are anticholinergic symptoms, such as dilated pupils and dry skin.

Toxicity. Overdose produces symptoms that are primarily extensions of common adverse reactions with excess CNS stimulation and anticholinergic activity. These include seizures, coma, hypotension, respiratory depression, areflexia, shock, and cardiorespiratory arrest. Agitation, confusion, hypertension, and the parkinsonian syndrome may also occur, as well as hallucinations and delirium. Occasional manifestations include ataxia, renal failure, dysarthria, and vomiting.

Treatment. Symptomatic and supportive care is the general mode of treatment. Gastric lavage, accompanied by instillation of activated charcoal, is usually recommended for removal of the tricyclic from the GI tract. Seizures are generally treated with intravenous diazepam. For overdoses with amitriptyline (see Fig. 23-16), use of cholinesterase inhibitors such as neostigmine has proved to be effective in reversing anticholinergic symptoms.

Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors

These are nontricyclic drugs with strong antidepressant activity that have been developed more recently. The most prominent of these is fluoxetine (Prozac), whose structure is shown in Figure 23-16. These drugs block the reuptake of serotonin in central serotonergic pathways as noted previously. Their effects on serotonin receptors parallel those of the TCAs on

http://basicbook.net

norepinephrine receptors, including ultimate downregulation of presynaptic autoreceptors. It is interesting to note that if the trifluromethyl group of fluoxetine is placed at the ortho rather than the para position, the resulting drug behaves as a tricyclic antidepressant (Baldessarini, 2006). It is important to note that fluoxetine and SSRIs in general do not appear to cause some of the side effects, such as the anticholinergic effects, associated with TCAs. For this reason, they have become the drugs of choice for treating clinical depression, although reports have described attempted suicide with some patients, especially adolescents, who are being treated with SSRIs. In addition, SSRIs have been reported to cause nausea and decreased libido and sexual function.

MAO Inhibitors

MAO is a flavin-containing oxidative enzyme that is encoded by two distinct genes. The two resulting enzymes, called **MAO-A** and **MAO-B,** have about 70% sequence identity. Each enzyme is found on the mitochondrial membrane. MAO-A deaminates epinephrine, norepinephrine, and serotonin, and MAO-B deaminates phenylethylamine. Both enzymes deaminate dopamine. Several MAOIs have been synthesized that inhibit either enzyme selectively. Thus, for example, MAO-A is inhibited selectively by clorgyline, and MAO-B is inhibited by selegiline (see Fig. 23-16).

MAOIs are not used as the "first line" of treatment for depression because of their potential toxic effects and unfavorable interactions with TCAs and SSRIs. Toxic effects from overdoses include hypertension and/or hypotension, agitation, hallucinations, hyperreflexia, fever, and seizures (Baldessarini, 2006). The combination of an MAOI with an SSRI can lead to the so-called **serotonin syndrome,** which includes akathisia, myoclonus, hyperreflexia, diaphoresis, and shivering progressing to seizures and coma. In addition, MAOIs potentiate the action of over-the-counter anticold sympathomimetic amines such that they can cause hypertensive crises and intracerebral bleeding. Therefore, it is imperative to avoid use of these anticold medications in individuals treated with an MAOI. Their use is mostly for patients who do not respond to either SSRI or TCA therapy and who refuse electroconvulsant shock therapy.

Therapeutic Levels and Metabolism of Antidepressants

It is difficult to obtain reference ranges for the antidepressants because of their large numbers of metabolites, some of which may be active and others of which may be inactive, and which vary significantly in concentration from individual to individual—a problem that also exists for the neuroleptics discussed later. In addition, the volumes of distribution of these drugs are quite high because most are lipophilic and thus are stored in tissue and slowly released. For the TCAs, serum levels from 100 to 250 ng/mL generally are considered therapeutic; toxic effects may result at levels above 500 ng/mL and lethal doses above 1 mcg/mL. Assays for the TCAs are performed by immunoassay (see the Immunochemical Methods section earlier and Fig. 23-1) or by HPLC (see the High-Performance Liquid Chromatography section earlier and Fig. 23-4).

Virtually all of these drugs are metabolized in the liver using the cytochrome P450–dependent oxidase system (Baldessarini, 2006). Different antidepressants require different isoforms of cytochrome P450. These isoforms include CYP2D6, CYP2C19, CYP3A3/4, and CYP1A2. In general, for both TCAs and SSRIs, oxidation, a modification that often includes glucuronidation and elimination of these drugs, occurs over several days. Most tricyclics are completely eliminated within 10 days. Secondary amine TCAs and *N*-demethylated derivatives of SSRIs have about twice the half-lives of their parent compounds. The **atypical TCA,** trazodone, is metabolized to mCPP, a piperazine that is discussed earlier under the Drugs of Abuse section. MAOIs have much shorter half-lives than TCAs and SSRIs, requiring frequent dosing to maintain therapeutic levels.

THE NEUROLEPTICS: ANTIPSYCHOTIC MAJOR TRANQUILIZERS

These drugs are used mainly in the treatment of acute schizophrenia and result in suppression of the agitated state. All neuroleptics appear to block the actions of dopamine and serotonin postsynaptically in the limbic system and motor cortex (see Fig. 23-8). Specific dopaminergic pathways, called the **mesolimbic-mesocortical pathways,** connect the substantia nigra of the midbrain to the limbic system and motor cortex (Baldessarini & Tarazi, 2006). In addition, the substantia nigra connects to the basal ganglia via the nigrostriatal pathway; depletion of dopamine in this pathway results in Parkinson's disease. Thus it may be expected that dopamine antagonists would affect the latter pathway, in addition to the mesolimbic-mesocortical pathways. Indeed many of the neuroleptics have, as side effects, dystonias, tardive dyskinesias, and frank parkinsonism, the latter fortunately being much less common. Originally, two classes of neuroleptics, the phenothiazines, typified by chlorpromazine, and the butyrophenones, typified by haloperidol (Haldol), were the drugs of choice. Besides postsynaptic blockade of dopamine, Haldol is known to bind with high affinity to sigma receptors in the CNS, and this action may stimulate inhibitory pathways that modulate the activity of the dopaminergic pathways. All compounds in both classes have the undesired extrapyramidal side effects mentioned previously. In addition, the neuroleptics inhibit dopamine in the hypothalamic-pituitary tract, which inhibits release of prolactin by the pituitary gland. The effect of the neuroleptics therefore is to increase prolactin secretion by the pituitary gland, resulting in hyperprolactinemia. Treatment of patients with breast cancer with any neuroleptic that causes this effect is contraindicated (Baldessarini & Tarazi, 2006).

Newer neuroleptics have been developed that affect the nigrostriatal pathway to a lesser extent but are potent postsynaptic dopamine blockers in the mesolimbic-mesocortical pathways and therefore are effective, with fewer of the extrapyramidal side effects of the older drugs. These newer drugs (Burns, 2001) include risperidone (Risperdal) (which does have some documented extrapyramidal side effects), olanzapine (Zyprexa), quetiapine (Seroquel), and aripiprazole (Abilify).

It has been difficult to monitor the levels of any of these drugs in serum because of the large number of metabolites for each drug resulting from extensive metabolism in the liver. Chlorpromazine, for example, has approximately 150 metabolites. The therapeutic efficacy of most of these metabolites is unknown. Reference ranges for serum levels therefore have not been established. Similar to the antidepressants, the neuroleptics, being lipophilic, have high volumes of distribution and are stored in tissues from which they are released over time.

Methods for assay include FPIA (see the Immunochemical Methods section earlier and Fig. 23-1) and HPLC (see the High-Performance Liquid Chromatography section earlier and Fig. 23-4). It is not clear in FPIA which, if any, metabolites cross-react with the antibody. For chlorpromazine, the estimated therapeutic range is wide—between 50 and 300 ng/mL. The half-life of the drug is 16 to 30 hours, and its bioavailability is 25% to 35%. Normal doses for chlorpromazine are 200 to 600 mg/day in divided doses. Other drugs in the phenothiazine series include thioridazine and fluphenazine (Prolixin).

Besides the extrapyramidal side effects, the phenothiazines can cause orthostatic hypotension, cholestasis, and, rarely, aplastic anemia. Occasionally, contact dermatitis has been reported to occur with phenothiazines. Of great importance is the subset of patients who have been chronically treated with these drugs and develop tardive dyskinesia. In most of these patients, the motor disturbances are irreversible.

Neuroleptics can cause a rare but important adverse reaction termed *neuroleptic malignant syndrome.* This can occur in patients who are extremely sensitive to the extrapyramidal effects of these drugs, and it may be fatal. Marked muscle rigidity, the first symptom to occur, may be followed by high fever, altered pulse and blood pressure, and leukocytosis. An excessively rapid inhibition of postsynaptic dopamine receptors is believed to be responsible for this syndrome. Treatment is cessation of the drug.

CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC AGENTS: METHOTREXATE AND BUSULFAN

Serum levels of both of these agents are monitored to assess whether therapeutic serum levels are present. Both agents are used in the treatment of different forms of cancer.

Methotrexate

Methotrexate, an antimetabolite consisting of a mixture containing no less than 85% 4-amino-10-methylfolic acid and related compounds, is a folic acid antagonist (Table 23-7). It inhibits the enzyme dihydrofolate reductase (Chabner et al, 2006). This results in blockade of the synthesis of tetrahydrofolic acid, which is needed for the formation of *N*-5,10-methylene-tetrahydrofolate, an intermediate in the transfer of a methyl group to deoxyuridylate to form thymidylate, needed in DNA synthesis. It has also been suggested that methotrexate may cause a rise in the intracellular levels of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which blocks ribonucleotide reduction, also resulting in blocking of DNA synthesis. Methotrexate appears to inhibit polynucleotide ligase involved in DNA synthesis and repair. Furthermore, methotrexate and its analogs, like pemetrexed, a pyrrole-pyrimidine folate analog, accumulate in cells and are stored as polyglutamates, which allows them to inhibit other enzymes in DNA

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 23-7
Methotrexate

Condition	Usual Dose	Serum Level
Psoriasis	IM or IV: 7.5-50 mg/week Oral: 7.5-30 mg/week	<10 nM (Roenigk et al, 1998)
Refractory rheumatoid arthritis	IM: 5-25 mg/week Oral: 7.5-15 mg/week	(Tugwell et al, 1987a and b)*
Malignant neoplastic diseases†	IM or IV: 25 mg/m^2, 1-2 times/week Oral: 2.5-5 mg/day High-dose IV: 1.5 g/m^2 with rescue every 3 weeks (different regimens are available)	Approximately 50 nM

IM, Intramuscular; *IV,* intravenous.
*Baseline monitoring of patient parameters (hemoglobin; white blood cell count; mean corpuscular volume; platelet count; urinalysis; blood urea nitrogen; and serum creatinine, transaminase, and alkaline phosphatase levels) is advocated.
†With high-dose therapy, methotrexate levels are followed, and leucovorin doses are adjusted until serum methotrexate levels are less than 50 nM (Grem et al, 1995).

synthesis, including thymidylate synthase. Methotrexate polyglutamates also inhibit enzymes involved in purine nucleotide biosynthesis such as glycinamide ribonucleotide transformylase and aminoimidazole carboxamide transformylase in the synthesis of inosine monophosphate.

Methotrexate is used in the treatment of childhood acute lymphatic leukemia and a number of other hematologic malignancies, such as Hodgkin's lymphoma, usually in combination with other antineoplastic agents. It has also been used successfully in the treatment of choriocarcinoma (Chabner et al, 2006). Pemetrexed is used to treat mesothelioma and refractory non–small-cell carcinoma of the lung.

Methotrexate is also an important immunosuppressive agent. Indications are severe, recalcitrant psoriasis and severe, active rheumatoid arthritis; in the latter, it may be used in combination with cyclosporine (Tugwell et al, 1995). Depending on the specific disease entity being treated, dosages given will vary, as will the therapeutic level of the drug. In Table 23-7, the doses and therapeutic drug levels for several different conditions are noted. The serum levels were determined by FPIA.

The kinetics of steady-state levels of this drug is triphasic: a rapid distribution phase followed first by a renal clearance phase with a $t_{1/2}$ of 2 to 3 hours, and then by a slow phase with a $t_{1/2}$ of 8 to 10 hours, in which methotrexate and its metabolites are filtered through the glomerulus and secreted in the renal tubules. If renal blood flow is compromised, the third phase is slowed, allowing toxic effects of the drug to occur. Excretion of the drug is biphasic: 92% is excreted within 24 hours, and the remainder over a period of days. Approximately 50% of the drug in blood is bound to serum proteins. Based on these considerations, it is important, when treating with methotrexate, not to administer drugs that compromise renal blood flow and not to modify the drug regimen to account for reduced renal blood flow. The same considerations apply to patients with renal insufficiency. In both circumstances, it is important to monitor blood levels of methotrexate. Treatment with high-dose methotrexate and leucovorin (see later) can itself be nephrotoxic because of the tendency of methotrexate to precipitate in acidic urine. Therefore, it is important to maintain high levels of hydration and to ensure alkalinization of the urine (Chabner et al, 2006).

As with most antineoplastic agents, methotrexate does not discriminate between transformed and normal cells. The rationale for using this drug is that it will kill rapidly dividing cancer cells that require rapid DNA synthesis but will not immediately affect normal cells, many of which are not dividing. Normal cells can be "rescued" from the effects of methotrexate and its analogs by treatment with *N*-5-formyltetrahydrofolate (called **leucovorin** or **citrovorum**), the product of dihydrofolate reductase. Leucovorin rescue is critical in cases in which it is necessary to administer high doses of methotrexate to individuals with tumors that do not respond to normal doses of this drug. In such cases, leucovorin is given 18 to 36 hours after the initial methotrexate dose, while serum levels of methotrexate are monitored. In addition, leucovorin should immediately be administered to a patient receiving low-dose methotrexate when methotrexate overdose is suspected (Roenigk et al, 1998)). Serum methotrexate levels should be monitored during this time (Grem et al, 1995; Chabner et al, 2006).

The methotrexate/leucovorin strategy is compromised by the existence of many fast-growing normal cells in bone marrow, the gastrointestinal tract, the skin, and other epithelial lining cells. These cells are as susceptible to the cell-killing effects of methotrexate as neoplastic cells. Thus, the toxic effects of methotrexate include hematologic effects (e.g., leukopenia, thrombocytopenia) from bone marrow suppression, gastrointestinal effects (e.g., ulceration, glossitis, stomatitis, nausea, vomiting), and dermatologic effects (e.g., urticaria, vasculitis). They further include hepatic lesions such as cirrhosis; pulmonary lesions such as pulmonary fibrosis; and CNS effects from intrathecal methotrexate, including arachnoiditis, leukoencephalopathy, and increased cerebrospinal fluid pressure.

Toxicity of methotrexate can be treated using continuous flow hemodialysis. Alternatively, intravenous infusion of carboxypeptidase G2, a methotrexate-cleaving enzyme, results in rapid clearing of the drug (Chabner et al, 2006).

Busulfan

Busulfan is an alkylating agent used to treat a variety of leukemias and lymphomas before bone marrow transplantation. It is cytotoxic to marrow cells and is used in combination with cyclophosphamide, which is cytotoxic to mature lymphocytes that may be involved in a graft-versus-host reaction (Slattery & Risler, 1998). The therapeutic index of the drug is narrow. High plasma levels increase the possibility of development of hepatic venoocclusive disease (VOD), a potentially fatal complication. Therefore, therapeutic monitoring of busulfan levels, using HPLC or GC-MS, with measurement of the dose interval of this drug, is now routinely performed at bone marrow transplant centers. This decreases the incidence of VOD in patients whose initial serum levels of busulfan are too high and allows increasing doses for patients with too low an initial level of busulfan, thus optimizing therapeutic levels for each patient.

Therapeutic drug monitoring of chemotherapeutic agents has been hampered by the nonuniformity in establishing appropriate dosing, concentration, therapeutic versus toxic target ranges, administration of combination chemotherapies depending on tumor type, analytical challenges with prodrugs, intracellular compounds, as well as variability in published data from pharmacologic trials. Improvement in defining concentration-effect relationships and effective utilization of population PK/PD models will likely foster more effective patient management (Paci et al, 2014).

TOXINS AND ACUTE POISONING

In this section, agents that cause chronic or acute injury to the patient are discussed. This injury can be direct, as with poisons such as cyanide and carbon monoxide, or indirect, as with carcinogens that induce mutations in genes that encode proteins that are critical in controlling the cell cycle.

ENVIRONMENTAL CARCINOGENS

Over the past decade or so, attention has been focused on the effects of chemical agents in the environment (carcinogens) that predispose individuals exposed to them to develop tumors in various tissues where these agents accumulate. Many of the individuals who are exposed to these agents work in industries where these agents are produced. Benzpyrene, an aromatic compound produced in cigarettes and in the exhaust of engines, is a known potent carcinogen and has been implicated in causing lung cancer. Nitrites, used as preservatives in red meats, have been associated with colon cancer. Aflatoxin, produced by the fungus *Aspergillus*, has been implicated in causing hepatocellular carcinoma. Aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene and ionizing radiation have been implicated in causing acute leukemias. Vinyl chloride and the formerly used dye Thorotrast have been linked to angiosarcoma. Benzidine dyes, β-naphthylamine, dimethylbenzanthracene, and other aromatic compounds have been linked to multiple malignancies occurring in humans. Exposure to asbestos has been strongly implicated as a carcinogen in lung cancer and mesothelioma. In animal studies, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) and dioxin, the former produced in fires, have been strongly implicated as causing a variety of cancers.

A number of carcinogens, like benzpyrene, are inactive in their native forms but are transformed into carcinogens through oxidative reactions catalyzed by cytochrome P450–dependent systems. Thus, to be an active carcinogen, benzpyrene must be converted into benzpyrene diol epoxide. Because only particular isoforms of cytochrome P450 react with particular carcinogens, only those individuals carrying the genes that encode these forms are susceptible (Caraco, 1998). A major effort is now being devoted to identifying those individuals with phenotypes who would be at risk (Peto, 2001).

Much interest has been focused on workers in occupations where carcinogens are present in significant amounts. Steel foundries, shipbuilding

http://basicbook.net

and rubber plants, and other industrial plants may produce such carcinogens in significant amounts. In some of these industries, certain cancers occur at rates higher than in the general population (Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Pincus & Friedman, 2003). Thus, in these exposed populations, it has become desirable to determine the levels of exposure to certain known carcinogens.

Carcinogens are thought to bind to DNA, leading ultimately to mutations in the genetic code, often resulting in synthesis of mutated proteins involved in control of the cell cycle (Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Pincus & Friedman, 2003). These proteins are called **oncogene-encoded proteins or oncoproteins.** Mutagenesis, oncogenes, and oncoproteins are discussed in Chapter 74.

In populations with histories of exposure to carcinogens, assays have been developed to detect the presence of these carcinogens or of their DNA adducts. For detection of most unmodified carcinogens, the method of choice is currently GC-MS. For certain carcinogenic compounds like PCBs, the method of electron capture is used. Halogenated compounds like PCBs are separated on a GC column using an ionized gas as the carrier. Halogenated compounds "capture" electrons conducted through the carrier gas and thus are detected by the reduced currents.

Often, the presence of carcinogens in blood or urine is hard to detect directly. The carcinogens, however, may be bound to proteins or to DNA intracellularly. These adducts can be detected using Western blotting, which takes advantage of the existence of monoclonal antibodies to carcinogen–DNA adducts (Santella et al, 1987; Perera et al, 1988). This technique is sensitive to nanogram quantities of the nucleic acid adduct, which can be conveniently harvested from peripheral lymphocytes. It is also very useful in detecting oncoproteins in the body fluids of patients who have been exposed to carcinogens (De Vivo et al, 1994), as described in Chapter 74.

CYANIDE

The cyanide anion binds avidly to iron in the ferric or trivalent state. Because cyanide forms a relatively stable cyanoferric complex, it is able to inactivate iron-containing enzymes that cycle between the ferrous and ferric states in oxidation–reduction reactions. Cyanide produces tissue and cellular hypoxia primarily by reversibly binding to cytochrome A3 and by inhibiting its reoxidation. This inhibits the electron transport system and prevents cellular respiration and ATP (high-energy phosphate) formation. This blockade prevents the utilization of oxygen and aerobic metabolism, producing severe metabolic (lactic) acidosis. Although cyanide binds preferentially to the ferric form of iron, it can also bind to the ferrous iron of hemoglobin, producing cyanohemoglobin, which cannot transport oxygen. Cyanide will form complexes with other iron-containing enzymes, but its acute poisonous effect is attributable to the inhibition of electron transport and cell death, predominantly in the CNS.

The principal symptoms of cyanide overdose are tachypnea (initially), followed by respiratory depression and cyanosis, hypotension, convulsions, and coma. Death may occur in a matter of minutes because cyanide is a fast-acting toxin. Diagnosis may be difficult, and a high index of suspicion is needed to make the correct diagnosis. Clues include the odor of bitter almonds, the occurrence of an altered mental status and tachypnea in the absence of cyanosis, and an unexplained metabolic acidosis (with an increased anion gap).

Antidotal therapy has been based on a two-step strategy: First, to pull the CN^- ions away from cytochrome A3, hemoglobin is converted to methemoglobin (Fe^{3+} state) by using specific oxidants (i.e., amyl nitrite and sodium nitrite). The former is given first because it can be inhaled. Methemoglobin directly competes with ferricytochrome A3 to form a methemoglobin–CN^- complex. This cyanomethemoglobin complex is relatively nontoxic. In a second step, sodium thiosulfate is given intravenously. This reagent reacts with cyanomethemoglobin to form thiocyanate, which is harmless and is excreted in the urine. The first step is necessary simply to remove CN^- from the respiratory chain. Approximately 25% to 40% of the patient's total hemoglobin is converted to methemoglobin in this step; this methemoglobin is rapidly reconverted to oxyhemoglobin by red blood cell enzymes. The antidotes that are involved in each step are sold commercially as a cyanide antidote package by Eli Lilly and Company (Indianapolis). Cyanide also binds tightly to cobalt ions, and hydroxocobalamin (a form of vitamin B_{12}) has recently been approved by the U.S. Federal Drug Administration as a cyanide antidote (Cyanokit, King Pharmaceuticals, Bristol, Tenn.). It has the advantages of rapid onset of action and low toxicity at antidotal doses, making it suitable for prehospital administration to firefighters and others (Hall et al, 2009). Unfortunately, hydroxocobalamin has a different type of side effect that clinicians need to be aware of, namely, that its deep red color can interfere in certain assays (Beckerman et al, 2009).

CARBON MONOXIDE

Carbon monoxide (CO) intoxication produces tissue hypoxia as a result of decreased oxygen transport. CO disrupts oxygen transport by binding to hemoglobin to form a reversible complex, carboxyhemoglobin (CO-Hb). It produces toxicity by decreasing or inhibiting oxyhemoglobin saturation by inducing a leftward shift of the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve, causing a decrease in oxygen delivery to tissues, and by binding to other heme-containing proteins such as myoglobin and cytochrome A3 (Kao & Nanagas, 2006). Binding to cytochrome A3 inhibits cellular respiration and electron transport, as occurs with cyanide poisoning (see earlier), and binding to hemoglobin decreases the oxygen reserve available to cardiac and skeletal muscle, with cardiac muscle being more severely affected.

However, binding of CO to hemoglobin cannot explain all of its toxic effects. Exchange transfusion into dogs of compatible blood that contained 57% to 64% CO-Hb (levels that are fatal) failed to induce any effect on the recipients (Goldbaum et al, 1975; Kao & Nanagas, 2006). The role of CO in inducing toxicity is therefore more complicated. In fact, numerous studies suggest that CO, in addition to its binding to hemoglobin and cytochrome A3, is involved in multiple other toxicity-inducing pathways. These include direct cellular toxicity caused by its binding to myoglobin, resulting in direct damage to skeletal and cardiac muscle. Further, it has been found that CO activates guanylyl cyclase in the CNS; this results in increased cyclic guanosine monophosphate that induces cerebral vasodilatation and can cause loss of consciousness. CO also induces the synthesis of nitric oxide (NO), a potent vasodilator that causes large decreases in systemic blood pressure. CO-induced damage to CNS structures such as the basal ganglia, white matter, and hippocampus correlates with the degree of systemic hypotension that it induces. Abnormally elevated levels of NO appear also to cause oxidative damage to the brain, resulting in delayed neurologic sequelae (DNS). This effect may be due to the ability of NO to enhance the ability of neutrophils to adhere to the endothelium via specific adherence molecules, such as β_2-integrin, which results in free-radical formation via activation of such enzymes as xanthine oxidase (Kao & Nanagas, 2006). These free-radicals are thought to cause the oxidation of brain lipids that may serve as a basis for the observed DNS (Kao & Nanagas, 2006). Animal studies have further revealed that cerebrovascular vasodilation is inhibited by NO inhibitors. In addition, in several animal studies, it has been found that CO induces changes in myelin basic protein (MBP) that may cause an immunologic reaction. This effect is obviated in rats that have been made immunologically tolerant to MBP before exposure to CO (Kao & Nanagas, 2006).

Because the brain and the heart are most susceptible to carbon monoxide poisoning, CO intoxication is commonly manifested through respiratory, neurologic, and cardiac symptoms, with dyspnea being a principal symptom. Others include headache, visual disturbances, tachycardia, syncope, tachypnea, coma, convulsions, and death. However, diagnosis is difficult because no pathognomonic sign occurs, except for a cherry red color of the face that is a strong clue to acute CO poisoning. However, this sign is not common in CO poisoning (Kao & Nanagas, 2006). Another problem is delayed neurologic symptoms that develop from days to months after apparent recovery. These include mental deterioration, mutism, memory impairment, gait disturbance, and urinary and fecal incontinence, which may be caused by NO-induced damage to CNS membrane lipids and cerebral vasodilation as discussed previously (Kao & Nanagas, 2006).

CO poisoning should enter into the differential diagnosis of an acute encephalopathic state in the appropriate circumstances or setting. Car exhaust fumes cause more than 70% of known CO poisoning, including attempted suicides and chronic incidental exposure (e.g., auto repair). In addition, exposure to house fires, indoor heaters, and stoves predisposes to CO toxicity.

A CO-oximeter is utilized to make the definitive diagnosis by measuring the concentration of blood CO-Hb. This instrument is a dedicated spectrophotometer that measures total hemoglobin and the percentages of CO-Hb, oxyhemoglobin, and methemoglobin by screening at four different wavelengths simultaneously. This accurate and rapid analysis is mandatory to establish the diagnosis and should be performed with minimal delay after CO exposure. CO may also be quantitated by gas chromatography or GC-MS. Treatment is mainly with 100% oxygen, in some cases under hyperbaric conditions, with additional supportive treatment given as necessary.

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 23-8
Influence of Acute Ethanol Ingestion on Ethanol Levels and Behavior

Ounces	Blood Concentration	Influence
1-2	10-50 mg/dL (2.2-10.9 mmol/L)	None to mild euphoria
3-4	50-100 mg/dL (10.9-21.7 mmol/L or greater)	Mild influence on stereoscopic vision and dark adaptation
	100 mg/dL (21.7 mmol/L)	Legally intoxicated
4-6	100-150 mg/dL (21.7-32.6 mmol/L)	Euphoria; disappearance of inhibition; prolonged reaction time
6-7	150-200 mg/dL (32.6-43.4 mmol/L)	Moderately severe poisoning; reaction time greatly prolonged; loss of inhibition and slight disturbances in equilibrium and coordination
8-9	200-250 mg/dL (43.4-54.3 mmol/L)	Severe degree of poisoning; disturbances of equilibrium and coordination; retardation of the thought processes and clouding of consciousness
10-15	250-400 mg/dL (54.3-86.8 mmol/L)	Deep, possibly fatal, coma

ALCOHOLS AND GLYCOLS

Ethanol

Ethanol (Table 23-8) is probably the most common drug of abuse and is frequently responsible for the presentation of patients with altered mental status to hospitals and emergency rooms. Ethanol is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, has a volume of distribution approximately equal to that of total body water, and diffuses freely in body tissues. It is predominantly metabolized by hepatic alcohol dehydrogenase to acetaldehyde and acetic acid/acetyl coenzyme A and then, by way of the Krebs cycle, to carbon dioxide and water. The fatal dose is generally 300 to 400 mL of pure ethanol (600 to 800 mL of 100-proof whiskey) consumed in less than 1 hour. Peak plasma concentrations are usually reached within 1 hour after ingestion. Table 23-8 summarizes the effects of different levels of ethanol in serum on human function.

Ethanol acts as a sedative-hypnotic and depresses the CNS irregularly in descending order from cortex to medulla. Acute intoxication may be manifested by decreased inhibitions, incoordination, blurred vision, slurred speech, stupor, coma, seizures, and death. Most fatal intoxications occur at blood concentrations greater than 400 mg/dL. Capillary and arterial blood samples most accurately reflect brain ethanol concentrations. Serum ethanol concentrations are usually determined by enzymatic, gas chromatographic, or electrochemical oxidation techniques. In the most accurate assays for ethanol, serum is incubated with alcohol dehydrogenase, which oxidizes ethanol to acetaldehyde, and nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) is converted to NADH (reduced form of NAD). Thus, simple monitoring for the absorbance of the incubated serum at 340 nm gives a direct determination of alcohol present. Acute poisoning is generally treated by supportive therapy, gastric lavage with tap water, or hemodialysis, if indicated (>500 mg/dL). Symptoms of chronic intoxication, such as acute alcoholic mania, may be treated with diazepam. Phenytoin may be utilized in patients with a history of seizures.

Methanol

Methanol (wood alcohol) poisoning occurs in patients who ingest methylated spirits or methanol-containing antifreeze. It is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and is metabolized and excreted at approximately 20% of the rate of ethanol. The toxic range is thought to be 60 to 250 mL, although as little as 15 mL has caused death. Alcohol dehydrogenase metabolizes methanol to formaldehyde and formic acid, which is responsible for ocular toxicity (diminished light sensation or frank blindness), and anion gap metabolic acidosis; these are the principal symptoms of intoxication. Other symptoms include nausea, vomiting, headache, seizures, and coma. GC-MS is used to measure blood methanol levels, with a peak level greater than 50 mg/dL considered toxic. In addition, serum osmolality levels are increased to levels greater than 300 mOsm. Methanol (or ethylene glycol) poisoning should be considered in acutely ill patients with hyperosmolarity, metabolic acidosis, and increased anion gap.

Osmolal Gap

For methanol, ethylene glycol, and isopropyl alcohol poisoning, because the molecular masses of these simple compounds are low, relatively small quantities in serum give rise to high serum osmolalities. As discussed in Chapter 8, serum osmolality can be estimated as Na × 2 + glucose/18 + blood urea nitrogen/2.8. This value should be close to the serum osmolality measured by freezing-point depression. If, however, any of these three compounds (or ethanol) is present in serum, the computed osmolality will be significantly less than the measured value (i.e., a so-called **osmolal gap** will exist), suggesting that a toxin is present. This is an effective screening method as a first step in detecting the presence of toxic compounds.

Ethylene Glycol

Ethylene glycol (1,2-ethanediol) is used in car radiator antifreeze. It has a half-life of around 3 hours and is metabolized to three major toxic compounds: glycolaldehyde, glycolic acid, and glyoxylic acid. The oxidation of ethylene glycol to glycolaldehyde is catalyzed by liver alcohol dehydrogenase. Both oxalic acid and formic acid are formed in smaller amounts. Oxalic acid itself is a highly toxic compound, which can rapidly precipitate as calcium oxalate crystals in various tissues as well as in urine. The formation of these crystals in urine, although not a constant finding, is an important diagnostic clue to ethylene glycol poisoning. The metabolite that accumulates in the highest concentrations in the blood is glycolic acid, and its concentration in blood and urine appears to correlate directly with symptoms and mortality. It is the major contributor to the high anion gap seen in metabolic acidosis. The fatal dose of ethylene glycol is around 100 g, and anuria and necrosis are the principal symptoms of acute poisoning. Other symptoms include nausea and vomiting, myoclonus, seizures, convulsions, depressed reflexes, and coma. Definitive diagnosis of ethylene glycol intoxication can be made by measuring serum ethylene glycol and glycolic acid by HPLC.

Treatment of ethylene glycol and methanol toxicity is similar and is based on symptoms and serum level. The mainstay of treatment is inhibition of the alcohol dehydrogenase enzyme, to minimize the formation of toxic metabolites, while the relatively nontoxic parent alcohol is eliminated renally. Although ethanol was originally used as a competitive inhibitor of alcohol dehydrogenase, the nonintoxicating agent fomepizole (4-methylpyrazole, Antizol, Paladin Labs, Montreal, Canada) is now generally preferred (Brent, 2009). Dialysis, either hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis, is utilized to remove either parent compound and its corresponding toxic metabolic products.

Isopropyl alcohol has a half-life of approximately 3 hours and a volume of distribution similar to that of ethanol. It is readily absorbed through the GI tract and is metabolized at approximately 50% of the rate of ethanol. The metabolism of isopropanol occurs mainly by alcohol dehydrogenase to produce acetone, carbon dioxide, and water. The fatal dose of ingestion is 250 mL. Both isopropyl alcohol and its major metabolite, acetone, are CNS depressants.

CNS depression is the principal symptom of acute isopropanol intoxication. In addition, it produces significant GI irritation, which may be manifested by nausea and vomiting, including hematemesis and melena, abdominal pain, and gastritis. Other symptoms include confusion, coma, hypertension, respiratory failure, and death.

The diagnosis of isopropanol intoxication is difficult to make. Clues to the diagnosis include acetonuria, acetonemia and hyperosmolarity without glycosuria, hyperglycemia, or acidosis. Gas chromatography is generally considered to be the best technique to determine isopropanol blood concentrations. Treatment includes supportive care, activated charcoal with gastric lavage, and hemodialysis in severe poisoning.

ARSENIC

Arsenic is used in ant poisons, rodenticides, herbicides and weed killers, insecticides, paints, wood preservatives, and ceramics, in the production of various metal alloys and livestock feed, as a tanning agent, and in medicines. Inorganic arsenicals, including sodium arsenate and lead or copper arsenite; organic arsenicals, such as carbarsone and tryparsamide; and arsine gas are the major toxicologic forms of arsenic. Arsine gas poisoning generally occurs in the industrial setting, where its production arises from the action of acid or water on arsenic-bearing metals. Arsenic compounds occur in three oxidation states: elemental, trivalent arsenite, and pentavalent arsenate.

http://basicbook.net

Arsenic is readily absorbed through the GI tract and lungs, whereas absorption through the skin occurs more slowly. Twenty-four hours after ingestion, arsenic is distributed to all body tissues. The major route of excretion is through the kidneys. Arsenic can cross the placenta. The major concern with arsenic ingestion is systemic poisoning, presumably through its reversible interaction with multiple enzyme sulfhydryl groups. This, in turn, leads to the disruption of multiple metabolic systems. This phenomenon suggests that effective treatment of arsenic poisoning would be provided through administration of sulhydryl-containing compounds that would compete with those of proteins for binding to the different forms of arsenic, as discussed later.

Arsine gas, the most dangerous of the three forms of arsenic, may irreversibly attach to sulfhydryl groups of hemoglobin, causing intravascular hemolysis, hemoglobinemia, and consequent acute renal failure, as well as direct nephrotoxicity. The acute fatal dosage of arsenic trioxide is approximately 120 mg, whereas less than 30 parts per million (ppm) of arsenic gas can produce poisoning. Organic arsenicals release arsenic slowly and have a fatal dose of approximately 0.1 to 0.5 g/kg.

Acute toxicity is usually manifested within the first hour of ingestion and generally reflects multiorgan involvement. Gastrointestinal symptoms are the most common presentation, with burning and dryness of the mouth and throat, difficulty swallowing, vomiting, and watery or bloody diarrhea containing shreds of intestinal lining or mucus. The odor of garlic may be on the breath, and a metallic taste in the patient's mouth. Cyanosis, hypotension, tachycardia, and ventricular arrhythmias may develop. Neuropathy usually occurs late (approximately 1 to 2 weeks) after ingestion, or may become most intense during this time period. Severe volume depletion with resulting hypovolemic shock and acute renal tubular necrosis may occur, with death resulting from circulatory failure. Cutaneous manifestations of arsenic poisoning include hyperpigmentation of the skin and keratosis. The nail beds can show transverse white striations, called **Mees lines,** although this is not specific for arsenic poisoning (Ibrahim et al, 2006). Symptoms of poisoning with arsine gas usually manifest approximately 2 to 24 hours after exposure and may initially include nausea and vomiting, headache, anorexia, and paresthesias. Hematemesis and abdominal pain are also common, and acute renal failure, cardiac damage, anemia and hemolysis, or pulmonary edema may occur. The diagnosis of chronic intoxication is usually difficult and should be considered in patients with a combination of GI symptoms, neuropathy, and cutaneous, cardiovascular, and renal disturbances.

Analysis of urine, hair, and nails, using ion emission spectroscopy, is important for the diagnosis of chronic arsenic poisoning.

Treatment of acute poisoning includes removal of residual arsenic by gastric lavage or emesis, and treatment with dimercaprol, or British antilewisite (BAL), which combines with arsenic through its sulfhydryl groups to produce cyclic water-soluble complexes. However, the inherent toxicity of this compound limits its therapeutic usefulness. Less toxic derivatives of BAL are available, such as 2,3-dithioerythritol, which is less toxic in cell culture but shows greater efficacy than BAL at rescuing arsenic-poisoned cells in culture (Boyd et al, 1989). In severe poisoning, hemodialysis can be used to remove the arsenic-dimercaprol complexes.

MERCURY

Mercury compounds exist in four different forms with different toxicologic potential: elemental or metallic (Hg^{o}); mercurous (Hg^{+}); mercuric (Hg^{2+}); and alkyl mercury (i.e., organomercurials). Elemental mercury is poorly absorbed from the GI tract if mucosal integrity is preserved and shows no toxic effect unless it is converted to the divalent form. This may occur slowly by oxidation-reduction with water and chloride ion if a GI site for mercury stasis exists, but this is uncommon. Significant poisoning occurs with elemental mercury when it is inhaled or absorbed through the skin. It can pass through the blood-brain barrier and can accumulate in the CNS, where oxidation produces mercuric ion; thus, primarily pulmonary and CNS toxicities are produced.

Of the two inorganic salts of mercury, mercurous (Hg^{+}) salts are poorly soluble and thus poorly absorbed. However, the mercuric (Hg^{2+}) salt is readily soluble and is readily absorbed after oral ingestion or inhalation. Severe inflammation of the mouth and other GI symptoms can result. The kidney is a preferred site of accumulation of inorganic mercuric compounds, where acute renal tubular and glomerular damage can ensue. Both elemental mercury and the inorganic mercury compounds are excreted mainly in the urine.

In contrast to elemental and inorganic mercury, organic mercury compounds, containing alkyl, aryl, and alkoxyalkyl moieties, are environmental pollutants. These compounds contain at least one covalent mercury-carbon bond. Both the alkoxyalkyl and aryl mercurial compounds undergo metabolic breakdown and biotransformation to produce inorganic mercury, which toxicologically acts and manifests intoxication as would the previously mentioned inorganic mercury compounds. In contrast, the mercury-carbon bonds that occur within the methyl and ethyl forms are extremely stable and produce greater toxicity than the aryl and alkoxyalkyl forms. The alkyl forms are more lipid soluble, pass readily through biological membranes, and, on ingestion, show generally greater absorption into the body. Their major chemical effect is on the CNS, and they show a biological half-life of 70 to 90 days. A devastating effect of methylmercury, known as *congenital Minimata disease*, has been described in Japan in the children of mothers who were exposed to methylmercury and were born with many of the stigmata of cerebral palsy (Ibrahim et al, 2006).

Because bile is the major route of excretion, methylmercury can be reabsorbed into the blood, via the enterohepatic system, accounting, in part, for its extended half-life. The major mechanism of action of mercury poisoning is through covalent bonding with protein sulfhydryl groups, producing widespread and nonspecific enzyme dysfunction, inactivation, and denaturation. Mercury inhibits the enzyme catecholamine-*O*-methyltransferase, a major enzyme in the metabolism of catecholamines, especially epinephrine and norepinephrine (see Chapter 24), resulting in hypertension, tachycardia, and sweating (Ibrahim et al, 2006). Thus mercury poisoning can masquerade as a pheochromocytoma, which should be ruled out by performing 24-hour urine catecholamine determination (see Chapter 24). At the same time, blood mercury levels should be determined (reference range <10 μg/L). Unfortunately, the usefulness of this testing is limited by the short half-life of mercury in the blood.

Mercury, depending on its form, may cause systemic toxicity or local skin and mucous membrane lesions. Both organic and elemental mercury can cause CNS effects, whereas GI symptoms primarily occur with inorganic salts. Elemental mercury may produce severe pulmonary reactions. Chronic exposure to elemental mercury can give rise to two syndromes: acrodynia and erethism (Ibrahim et al, 2006). Acrodynia, also called **pink disease, Feer-Swift disease,** and **Feer syndrome,** occurs mainly in children but can also occur in adults, and involves a complex of symptoms that include a desquamating, erythematous rash of the palms and soles, sweating, hypertension, tachycardia, pruritus, poor muscle tone, and weakness of the proximal pelvic girdle. Erethism is a complex of neurologic symptoms that include, most prominently, personality changes involving memory loss, drowsiness, withdrawal, depression, and irritability. A fine-motor intention tremor of the hands also occurs. Inorganic mercury can induce severe renal tubular damage, especially in the proximal tubule; chronic exposure can cause membranous glomerulonephritis and nephrotic syndrome (Ibrahim et al, 2006).

In general, acute toxicity, with elemental, inorganic, or most organic forms, can be diagnosed from 24-hour urine levels. Blood levels may rise rapidly after acute exposure, but fall rapidly and may not reflect total body burden. In contrast, because the short-chain alkyl organic mercuric compounds are mainly excreted in the bile, blood levels are better indicators of tissue levels and significant acute exposure. Hair analysis for mercury may help identify chronic mercury exposure, especially with organic mercury.

Treatment includes gastric lavage or emesis to remove the ingested poison, as well as the use of dimercaprol and succimer. However, in methylmercury and alkylmercury poisoning, dimercaprol is contraindicated because it has been found to increase the concentrations of these compounds in the brain (Bryson, 1989). In these cases, treatment is symptomatic, although new agents are being evaluated clinically.

IRON

Acute iron poisoning is common in young children and is usually the result of ingestion of iron-containing products. Generally, iron overload that causes increased deposition of iron in tissues is termed *hemosiderosis*; if the excess iron induces tissue damage, the condition is termed *hemochromatosis*. Hemochromatosis can be inherited or acquired. Acquired hemochromatosis is caused by overingestion of iron or by leakage of iron from red blood cells, as may occur in a hemolytic crisis. Although ferric ions from food are usually reduced to ferrous ions and absorbed in the stomach, the large and small bowel can rapidly absorb toxic amounts (>30 mg/kg) of elemental iron. Once absorbed into the body, iron removal is difficult. Large doses of iron are thought to cause acute mucosal cell damage, and significant absorption of iron occurs once the binding capacity of transferrin is exceeded. Unbound iron in serum causes toxicity by hepatic cell damage, shock, and production of lactic acidosis. The hepatotoxicity seems to be dose related, occurs within 1 to 2 days of ingestion, and

http://basicbook.net

has been associated with levels equal to or greater than 1700 µg/dL (Tenenbein, 2001).

Iron absorption is tightly regulated by the HFE gene–encoded protein that is expressed mainly on hepatocytes and on epithelial cells in the gastrointestinal tract. This protein interacts with another protein synthesized in the liver called **hepcidin.** In addition, HFE protein interacts with transferrin receptors. In inherited or primary hemochromatosis, sometimes associated with other diseases such as type 2 diabetes (Davis et al, 2008), mutations in the *HFE* gene that result in single amino acid substitutions at critical positions in the amino acid sequence, such as cysteine-to-tyrosine 282 (C282Y) and histidine-to-aspartic acid 63 (H63D), cause this protein to fail to regulate iron absorption in the gut, resulting in iron overload. The occurrence of hereditary hemochromatosis is on the order of 1 per 200 to 300 individuals, making this condition important as a cause of iron overload. Recent studies have further determined that patients who have received more than 10 transfusions with packed red blood cells are at risk for developing acquired hemochromatosis (Takatoku et al, 2007).

Assays for Serum Iron

Iron can be determined by specialized techniques for trace elements such as atomic absorption spectrophotometry, but in the modern clinical laboratory setting, it is almost always measured using a colorimetric indicator such as ferrozine. The Fe^{2+}-ferrozine complex has an intense purple color (absorption maximum, 562 nm), and other metal ions generally do not interfere, with the possible exception of copper, whose effects can be minimized through addition of thiourea. It is necessary to use a reagent such as acid or detergent to release the serum iron from transferrin, and another reagent such as ascorbate to reduce iron to the ferrous state.

Iron-Binding Capacity

Normally all iron present in serum is bound to the iron-transporting protein, transferrin, which contains two iron-binding sites per transferrin molecule. In evaluating iron poisoning, it is important to measure iron-binding capacity, because toxicity will drastically increase as that capacity is exceeded. To obtain the total iron-binding capacity (TIBC), saturating concentrations of iron are added to a serum sample, excess iron is removed, for example, by adsorption with $MgCO_3$, and iron is remeasured. Alternatively, the amount of excess iron can be measured, and subtraction from the concentration of iron added gives the unsaturated iron-binding capacity.

Signs of Iron Intoxication

Vomiting appears to be an early manifestation of iron intoxication, along with severe gastroenteritis, melena, abdominal pain, and hematemesis. This occurs up to 6 hours after ingestion. For up to the next 10 hours, the patient may appear to improve. This is deceptive because manifestations of systemic toxicity (cyanosis, convulsions, shock, coagulopathy, renal and hepatic failure) may occur, producing death. Patients who develop severe systemic symptoms and those who do not may develop late complications, including GI obstruction or stricture.

Definitive diagnosis is made with measurements of serum iron concentration and TIBC. In addition to supportive treatment, emesis or gastric lavage is used to prevent iron absorption. Chelation therapy with deferoxamine is also utilized if the acute intoxication is severe.

LEAD

Both organic and inorganic compounds of lead may be highly toxic, with their most serious effects occurring in the central and peripheral nervous systems. Absorption may occur by inhalation or ingestion. If more than 0.5 mg/day of lead is absorbed, lead accumulation and toxicity are believed to occur, whereas 0.5 g of absorbed lead is considered a fatal dose. However, acute toxicity is uncommon and is generally observed in patients who have been exposed to high concentrations of lead dusts. Lead poisoning is seen in children in large cities who consume lead in the form of paint (pica). Acute manifestations are primarily CNS symptoms (encephalopathy, convulsions, stupor) and GI symptoms such as colic. Chronic toxicity with lead accumulating in blood, soft tissues, and bone is more common. The largest body compartment of lead is bone, which contains approximately 96% of the total body burden. The half-life of lead in bone is 32 years, and bone may act as a reservoir for endogenous intoxication. Chronic toxicity may be manifested by a wide range of systemic effects, including general malaise, weight loss, anorexia, and constipation; lead encephalopathy exhibited by malaise with apathy, drowsiness, stupor, and seizures; peripheral neuropathy with wrist drop or foot drop; and lead nephrosis with albuminuria, hematuria, and pyuria and anemia (hypochromic, microcytic, or normocytic) with basophilic stippling—the latter finding often a strong clue.

In addition, lead-induced pathologic changes may occur at even low levels of lead exposure. Needleman and Gatsonis (1990) reviewed 24 studies of childhood lead exposure to provide statistical evidence that low doses of lead may produce an intellectual deficit in children. However, the association of increased lead levels with decreased IQ has been called into question by the presence of confounding factors (Ibrahim et al, 2006). Schwartz and colleagues (1990) examined lead-induced anemia in children 1 to 5 years of age, using a cross-sectional epidemiologic study. They found a relationship between age, blood lead level, and hematocrit such that younger children had an increased risk for anemia at lower blood levels than children only a few years older. It thus appears that lead may produce deleterious effects, especially in children, at low levels of exposure. Generally, blood lead levels greater than or equal to 10 µg/dL indicate excessive lead absorption in children, and concentrations greater than 25 µg/dL indicate consideration of chelation therapy in the child. Several more recent studies suggest that no neurologic benefit is derived from chelation therapy among children with blood lead levels between 20 and 44 µg/dL (Ibrahim et al, 2006). The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends universal screening of children, beginning at 6 months of age (Klaassen, 2001; Bernard, 2003).

Organolead compounds such as tetraethyl and tetramethyl lead are lipid soluble and, similar to the organomercurials discussed previously, produce their major toxic effects on the CNS. Lead encephalopathy may occur early in the onset of intoxication and does not correlate well with blood lead concentrations. Hyperactive deep tendon reflexes, intention tremor, abnormal jaw jerk, and abnormalities of stance and gait are the most consistently observed neurologic manifestations of organolead toxicity.

Lead appears to interact with thiol, carboxylic, and phosphate groups to form stable complexes with enzymes and proteins (Bryson, 1989). This is particularly well known for heme synthesis, in which lead blocks the action of δ-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) synthetase, δ-ALA dehydratase (ALAD), coproporphyrinogen decarboxylase, and ferrochelatase, producing anemia. In addition, lead blocks two other enzymes—pyrimidine-5′-nucleotidase and Na-K–dependent ATPase, resulting in diminished energy supply for red blood cells, leading to decreased cell membrane integrity. Because pyrimidine-5′-nucleotidase is required for removal of clumped intracellular RNA, lead inhibition of this enzyme results in clumping of RNA complexes, giving rise to the observed basophilic stippling of red blood cells (Ibrahim et al, 2006). Lead-induced disruptions in heme synthesis allow for objective testing for inorganic lead exposure. Increased amounts of ALA in urine, decreased ALAD activity in red blood cells, increased amounts of free erythrocyte protoporphyrin, and elevated amounts of zinc protoporphyrin are found with inorganic lead poisoning. The assay for zinc protoporphyrin is a particularly simple fluorometric one that is widely used and is an excellent screening test for frank lead toxicity, but the test is not sensitive to the low blood lead levels now regarded as harmful. The most sensitive screening test for organolead poisoning is decreased ALAD activity in urine because changes in the activities of other enzymes and in the levels of the products of heme synthesis are not consistent. Although whole blood lead concentrations are a reliable indicator of recent lead exposure, the short half-life of circulating lead in blood makes estimates of total body burden unreliable. However, use of in vivo x-ray fluorescence of bone allows determination of cumulative lead burden (Kosnett et al, 1994). Treatment of poisoning includes supportive therapy as well as removal of soluble lead compounds by gastric lavage. Dilute magnesium sulfate or sodium sulfate solutions are commonly used. In addition, chelating agents such as dimercaprol, calcium disodium edetate, and succimer may be utilized, if necessary.

Quantitation of Lead in Blood

Unlike many other toxins, lead is generally measured in whole blood rather than in serum or plasma, because most of the circulating lead is bound within the blood cells. Lead levels may be determined directly using atomic absorption spectroscopy, inductively coupled plasma/mass spectrometry (ICP/MS), or anode stripping voltammetry (ASV). In ICP/MS, a very hot source (the "inductively coupled plasma") atomizes the blood sample so that individual elements can be injected into and quantified by the mass spectrometer. In ASV, a voltaic cell is set up such that the anode consists of a mercury-coated graphite rod. When a negative potential is applied to this anode, cationic metals, such as lead, "plate out" in their metallic forms on the anode. The applied voltage is then stopped. Because an excess of electrons is present on the anode, current will flow to the cathode. Each of the metals plated on the anode therefore will become oxidized back to their respective ionic forms (i.e., be stripped from the anode). The metals

http://basicbook.net

with lowest oxidation potentials will strip first. Each metal will strip from the anode in the order of oxidation potential, recorded as the half-wave potential, which is a constant for a given metal. The total current associated with the stripping of each metal is proportional to the concentration of that metal.

ORGANOPHOSPHATES AND CARBAMATES

Pesticides generally contain organophosphates, which are esters of phosphoric acid or thiophosphoric acid, or carbamates, which are synthetic derivatives of carbamic acid. Although these are two distinctly different types of compounds, they both unfortunately interfere with neurotransmission. Both compounds inhibit the enzyme acetylcholinesterase (AChE), which normally hydrolyzes the neurotransmitter acetylcholine (ACh) after ACh has effected an action potential and has been released from its receptor site (see Chapter 20). Both compounds produce inhibition by reacting with the active site of AChE. This occurs by phosphorylation with the organophosphates to produce a relatively stable phosphate ester bond, and by carbamoylation with the carbamates to form a more labile, and hence more easily reversible, carbamate ester bond. Both compounds thus cause accumulation of ACh at neuronal synapses and myoneural junctions to produce toxicity.

ACh is an important neurotransmitter in both the peripheral and central nervous systems. It is located at a number of different synapses in the CNS, at ganglionic synapses between the sympathetic and parasympathetic preganglionic and postganglionic fibers, at junctions between parasympathetic postganglionic fibers and effector organs, and at junctions between somatic motor neurons and skeletal muscle cells. Thus, signs and symptoms of organophosphate poisoning include parasympathetic manifestations such as salivation, lacrimation, urination, and defecation; pupillary constriction; bradycardia; and bronchoconstriction, which may predominate at low-dose poisoning. Autonomic ganglionic and somatic motor manifestations (e.g., muscular weakness, twitching, areflexia, tachycardia, and hypertension) and CNS manifestations (e.g., confusion, slurred speech, ataxia, convulsions, and respiratory and/or cardiovascular center depression) may predominate in severe intoxication. Death usually results from respiratory failure as the result of a combination of central depression, bronchospasm, excessive bronchial secretions, and respiratory muscle paralysis.

Morbidity and mortality due to carbamate poisoning are less severe because carbamates do not penetrate the CNS as effectively as organophosphates, and central cholinergic effects are thus minimal. In addition, the much greater lability of the carbamate ester bond allows spontaneous reactivation of AChE. This, in turn, decreases the slope of the toxicity dose-response curve, as compared with that of the curve for organophosphates, such that small increments in carbamate dose are less likely to produce severe increases in toxicity.

In addition to acute poisoning, organophosphates may produce an intermediate syndrome occurring 1 to 4 days after poisoning, and/or delayed neurotoxicity usually occurring 2 to 5 weeks after acute exposure. The former syndrome develops after acute cholinergic crisis and appears to involve cranial nerve palsies, proximal limb weakness, and respiratory paralysis, with the patient requiring ventilatory support (Senanayake & Karalliedde, 1987, Senanayake, 1998). In contrast, delayed neurotoxicity, which is not seen with all organophosphate compounds, appears to be due to neurotoxic esterase inhibition and usually produces a distal and symmetric sensorimotor polyneuropathy of the extremities (Davies, 1987; Tafuri & Roberts, 1987).

Diagnosis of organophosphate poisoning depends on a history of exposure shortly before the onset of illness, signs and symptoms of diffuse parasympathetic stimulation, and laboratory confirmation of exposure by measurement of erythrocyte acetylcholinesterase and plasma pseudocholinesterase activities (see Chapter 20). Whereas AChE is found primarily in nervous tissue and erythrocytes, pseudocholinesterase is found in plasma. The latter enzyme is much more nonspecific in its action than AChE, in that, in addition to hydrolysis of ACh, pseudocholinesterase can hydrolyze many other natural and synthetic esters, as described in Chapter 20. Both activities may be decreased, and both activities can be measured in the laboratory. However, only inhibition of AChE is considered specific for organophosphate poisoning because a number of conditions may produce a low plasma pseudocholinesterase level (Tafuri & Roberts, 1987). Thus, the latter measurement is more sensitive but less specific than the red blood cell cholinesterase level for organophosphate poisoning. Generally, levels 30% to 50% of normal indicate exposure, and toxic manifestations occur with greater than 50% inhibition; however, symptoms may not appear until levels are 20% or less of normal. In actuality, confirmation of poisoning, rather than diagnosis, occurs by laboratory determinations. Because baseline values of cholinesterase levels before exposure are unlikely to be available, sequential postexposure cholinesterase determinations appear to be the best way to confirm organophosphate poisoning (Coye et al, 1987).

Treatment of acute poisoning includes respiratory support and, if necessary, decontamination of the patient and gastric lavage or emesis. Administration of activated charcoal does not appear to be effective in removing the toxic agent (Eddleston et al, 2008). In the presence of symptoms, atropine is given to ameliorate excessive parasympathetic stimulation by competitively blocking the action of ACh at muscarinic receptors. Pralidoxime is also given as a specific antidote for organophosphate poisoning. If pralidoxime is given within 24 to 48 hours of exposure, it may reactivate phosphorylated cholinesterase by removing the covalently bound phosphate group from the enzyme's active site. However, this time period is variable, and utilization of pralidoxime after 48 hours may be indicated (Clark, 2006; Howland & Aaron, 2006). Chronic poisoning is usually treated by avoidance of further exposure until cholinesterase levels become normal.

MYCOTOXINS

Over the last 20 years there has been an increase in the utility of medicinal plants to treat a number of human conditions. Much of this resurgence is thought to be due to rising costs of prescription drugs, interest in incorporating "natural" health and well-being regimens, multinational reform instituted by specific countries to utilize such crops as either facets of selected bioengineering initiatives and/or as export, as well as evidence-based medicine that demonstrates the benefit of using medicinal plants in certain disease states (Hoareau & DaSilva, 1999). However, toxic contamination of medicinal plants, plant-derived pharmaceutical products, animal feeds, and other foodstuffs have been reported (Ashiq et al, 2014; Pereira et al, 2014), thus intake of such mold-derived "mycotoxins" can contribute to adverse human health problems and therefore represents a special hazard.

Thus in cases of suspected poisoning by medicinal plant preparations, detection of mycotoxins, such as afalotixin, ochratoxin, zearalenone, fumonisin, deoxynivalenol, among others, is necessary. Clinical sequelae after exposure and/or ingestion of mycotoxins include liver cancer (afalotoxin), esophageal cancer and neural tube defects (fumonisins), gastroenteritis (deoxynivalenol), and renal diseases (ochratoxin A), among others (Wu et al, 2014).

In addition, detection of mycotoxins should be performed on preparations prior to their release for consumption.

Screening and identification of mycotoxins employ chemical extractive techniques such as QuEChERS or dispersive liquid-liquid microextraction, solid-phase extraction, or solid-liquid extraction using solvent mixtures such as acetonitrile/water; antibody-based immunochemical methods such as enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and immunoaffinity column assay; and chromatographic techniques such as liquid chromatography (LC), gas chromatography (GC), LC/mass spectrometry (MS), GC-MS, capillary electrophoresis, supercritical fluid chromatography, and other related techniques. Mycotoxins are highly stable and therefore pose a concern during production but also in storage, transport, processing, and postprocessing steps of medicinal plant and foodstuff preparation.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Cami J, Farre M: Drug addiction, *N Engl J Med* 349:975–986, 2003.

This is a discussion of drug addiction and the various factors involved in drug abuse, the molecular mechanism of action of various drugs, and the neurobiology and neuroadaptation of drug addiction.

Engelhardt H: One century of liquid chromatography: from Tswett's columns to modern high speed and high performance separations, *J Chromatogr B* 800:3–6, 2004.

This is an excellent overview of the development and history of liquid chromatography in the 20th century, describing early successes of "adsorption biochemical analysis," as well as the recent modern revolution in analysis.

Ingelman-Sundberg M: Pharmacogenetics of cytochrome P450 and its applications in drug therapy: the past, present and future, *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 25:193–200, 2004.

http://basicbook.net

An overview of cytochrome P450 pharmacogenetics, its clinical relevance, and possible future benefit for maximizing effective drug therapy.

Peto J: Cancer epidemiology in the last century and the next decade, *Nature* 411:390–395, 2001.

Reviews the effective use of cancer epidemiology in the 20th century for identification of various causes of cancer in humans.

Senanayake N: Organophosphorus insecticide poisoning, *Ceylon Med J* 43:22–29, 1998.

This is an excellent update on acute and chronic organophosphorous poisoning and the pathophysiology and behavioral effects of poisoning.

Snyder SH, Pasternak GE: Historical review: opioid receptors, *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 24:198–205, 2003.

Early molecular biology of opioid receptors is historically reviewed, including receptor localization, identification, and cloning.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

General References

Bryson PD, editor: *Comprehensive review in toxicology*, Rockville, Md., 1989, Aspen Publishers.

Flomenbaum NE, Goldfrank LR, Hoffman R, et al, editors: *Goldfrank's toxicologic emergencies*, ed 8, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill.

O'Neil MJ, Smith A, Heckelman PE, et al, editors: *The Merck index: an encyclopedia of chemicals, drugs, and biologicals*, ed 13, Whitehouse Station, N.J., 2001, Merck and Co.

Sweetman SC, Blake PS, McGlashan JM, et al, editors: *Martindale: the complete drug reference*, ed 33, London, 2002, The Pharmaceutical Press.

Basic Techniques for Detecting Drugs

Belal T, Awad T, DeRuiter J, et al: CRGC-IRD methods for the identification of isomeric ethoxyphenethylamines and methoxymethcathinones, *Forensic Sci Int* 184:54–63, 2009.

Boone CM, Ensing K: Is capillary electrophoresis a method of choice for systematic toxicological analysis? *Clin Chem Lab Med* 41:773–781, 2003.

Chiesl TN, Chu WK, Stocktom AM, et al: Enhanced amine and amino acid analysis using pacific blue and the mars organic analyzer microchip capillary electrophoresis system, *Anal Chem* 81:2537–2544, 2009.

Davis IM, Bousquet RW, Childs PS: Gas chromatography/mass spectroscopy in clinical and forensic toxicology. In *Service training and continuing education*, Washington, DC, 1989, American Association for Clinical Pathology, pp 7–21.

Marquet P: Progress of liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry in clinical and forensic toxicology, *Ther Drug Monit* 24:255–276, 2002.

Maurer HH: Liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry in forensic and clinical toxicology, *J Chromatogr B* 713:3–25, 1998.

Niessen WMA: Progress in liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry instrumentation and its impact on high-throughput screening, *J Chromatogr A* 1000:413–436, 2003.

Niessen WMA, Tinke AP: Liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry: general principles and instrumentation, *J Chromatogr A* 703:37–57, 1995.

Petersen JR, Okordudu AO, Mohammad A, et al: Capillary electrophoresis and its application in the clinical laboratory, *Clin Chim Acta* 330:1–30, 2003.

Pincus MR, Rendell M: General quantitative treatment for the binding of divalent antibodies to antigens immobilized on a solid phase, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 78:5924–5927, 1981.

Rodbard D, Ruder HJ, Vaitukaitis J, et al: Mathematical analysis of kinetics of radioligand assays: improved sensitivity obtained by delayed addition of labeled ligand, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 33:343–355, 1971.

Shihabi ZK: *Applications of capillary electrophoresis in the clinical laboratory, check sample*, vol 33, Chicago, 1993, American Society of Clinical Pathologists. Clinical Chemistry No. CC 94-4 (CC-242).

Tagliaro F, Turrina S, Pisi P, et al: Determination of illicit and/or abused drugs and compounds of forensic interest in biosamples by capillary electrophoretic/electrokinetic methods, *J Chromatogr B* 713:27–49, 1998.

Drugs of Abuse

Ashiq S, Hussain M, Ahmad B: Natural occurrence of mycotoxins in medicinal plants: a review, *Fungal Genet Biol* 66:1–10, 2014.

Azmitia EC, Murphy RB, Whitaker-Azmitia PM: MDMA (ecstasy) effects on cultured serotonergic neurons: evidence for Ca^{2+}-dependent toxicity linked to release, *Brain Res* 510:97–103, 1990.

Barkin RL, Barkin SJ, Barkin DS: Propoxyphene (dextropropoxyphene): a critical review of a weak opioid analgesic that should remain in antiquity, *Am J Ther* 13:534–542, 2006.

Bayorh MA, Zokowska-Grojec Z, Palkovits M, et al: Effect of phencyclidine (PCP) on blood pressure and catecholamine levels in discrete brain nuclei, *Brain Res* 321:315–318, 1984.

Bell J, Seres V, Bowron P, et al: The use of serum methadone levels in patients receiving methadone maintenance, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 43:623–629, 1988.

Campo-Soria C, Chang Y, Weiss DS: Mechanism of action of benzodiazepines on GABAA receptors, *Br J Pharmacol* 148:984–990, 2006.

DeCresce RP, Mazura AC, Lifshitz MS, et al: *Drug testing in the workplace*, Chicago, 1989, American Society of Clinical Pathology Press.

Fraser AD: Use and abuse of the benzodiazepines, *Ther Drug Monit* 20:481–489, 1998.

Frishman WH, Del Vecchio A, Sanal S, et al: Cardiovascular manifestations of substance abuse. Part 1: Cocaine, *Heart Dis* 5:187–201, 2003.

Fujii H, Narita M, Mizoquchi M, et al: Drug design and synthesis of epsilon opioid receptor agonist: 17-(cyclopropylmethyl)-4,5alpha-epoxy-3,6beta-dihydroxy-6,14-endoethenomorphinan-7alpha-(N-methyl-N-phenethyl)carboxamide (TAN-821) inducing antinociception mediated by putative epsilon opioid receptor, *Bioorg Med Chem* 12:4133–4145, 2004.

Fusar-Poli P, Crippa JA, Bhattacharyya S, et al: Distinct effects of Δ9-tetrahydrocannabinol and cannabidiol on neural activation during emotional processing, *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 66:95–105, 2009.

Gianoulakis C: Endogenous opioids and addiction to alcohol and other drugs of abuse, *Curr Top Med Chem* 4:39–50, 2004.

Gill JR, Hayes JA, deSouza IS, et al: Ecstasy (MDMA) deaths in New York City: a case series and review of the literature, *J Forensic Sci* 47:121–126, 2002.

Haroz R, Greenberg MI: New drugs of abuse in North America, *Clin Lab Med* 26:147–164, 2006.

Hevers W, Hadley SH, Luddens H, et al: Ketamine, but not phencyclidine, selectively modulates cerebellar GABAA receptors containing α6 and δ subunits, *J Neurosci* 28:5383–5393, 2008.

Hoffman RS: Cocaine. In Flomenbaum NE, Goldfrank LR, Hoffman RF, et al, editors: *Goldfrank's toxicologic emergencies*, ed 8, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 1133–1147.

Hurd YL, Kehr J, Ungerstedt U: In vivo microdialysis as a technique to monitor drug transport: correlation of extracellular cocaine levels and dopamine outflow in the rat brain, *J Neurochem* 51:1314–1316, 1988.

Iversen L: Cannabis and the brain, *Brain* 126:1252–1270, 2003.

Johanson CE, Fischman MW: The pharmacology of cocaine related to its abuse, *Pharmacol Rev* 41:3–52, 1989.

Lange RA, Cigarroc RO, Yancy CW, et al: Cocaine-induced coronary artery vasoconstriction, *N Engl J Med* 321:1557–1562, 1989.

Lange RA, Hillis LD: Cardiovascular complications of cocaine use, *N Engl J Med* 345:351–358, 2001.

Martin BR, Sim-Selley LJ, Selley DE: Signaling pathways involved in the development of cannabinoid tolerance, *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 25:325–330, 2004.

Passie T, Halpern JH, Stichtinoth DO, et al: The pharmacology of lysergic acid diethylamide: a review, *CNS Neurosci Ther* 14:295–314, 2008.

Passman RS, Bennett CL, Purpura JM, et al: Amiodarone-associated optic neuropathy: a critical review, *Am J Med* 125:447–453, 2012.

Poklis A: Analytic/forensic toxicology. In Klaassen CD, editor: *Casarett and Doull's toxicology: the basic science of poisons*, ed 6, New York, 2001, McGraw-Hill, pp 1089–1108.

Schuster DI, Ehrlich GK, Murphy RB: Purification and partial amino acid sequence of a 28 kDa cyclophilin-like component of the rat liver sigma receptor, *Life Sci* 55:PL151–PL156, 1994.

Smith MT: Differences between and combinations of opioids re-visited, *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol* 21:596–601, 2008.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration: *Results from the 2012 National Survey on Drug Use and Health: Summary of National Findings, NSDUH Series H-46, HHS Publication No. (SMA) 13-4795*, Rockville, Md, 2013, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Tseng LF: Evidence for epsilon-opioid receptor-mediated beta-endorphin-induced analgesia, *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 22:623–630, 2001.

Tso PH, Wong YH: Molecular basis of opioid dependence: role of signal regulation by G-proteins, *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 30:307–316, 2003.

Zhuo M: Plasticity of NMDA receptor NR2B subunit in memory and chronic pain, *Mol Brain* 2:1–11, 2009.

Therapeutic Drugs

Asconape JJ: Some common issues in the use of antiepileptic drugs, *Semin Neurol* 22:27–39, 2002.

Baldessarini RJ: Drug therapy of depression and anxiety disorders. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 429–459.

Baldessarini RJ, Tarazi FI: Pharmacotherapy of psychosis and mania. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 461–500.

Bazil CW, Pedley TA: Advances in the medical treatment of epilepsy, *Annu Rev Med* 49:135–162, 1998.

Braido F, Sclifò F, Ferrando M, et al: New therapies for allergic rhinitis, *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep* 14:422, 2014.

Braun F, Lort T, Ringe B: Update of current immunosuppressive drugs used in clinical organ transplantation, *Transpl Int* 11:77–81, 1998.

Brodtkorb E: Antiepileptic drug treatment: clinical considerations and concerns, *Prog Brain Res* 116:395–406, 1998.

Burke A, Smyth E, FitzGerald GA: Analgesic-antipyretic agents: pharmacotherapy of gout. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 671–715.

Burns MJ: The pharmacology and toxicology of atypical antipsychotic agents, *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol* 39:1–14, 2001.

Chabner BA, Amrein PC, Druker BJ, et al: Antineoplastic agents. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 1335–1339.

Dancey JE: Clinical development of mammalian target of rapamycin inhibitors, *Hematol Oncol Clin N Am* 16:1101–1114, 2002.

Drosos AA: Newer immunosuppressive drugs: their potential role in rheumatoid arthritis therapy, *Drugs* 62:891–907, 2002.

Dunn CJ, Wagstaff AJ, Perry CM, et al: Cyclosporin: an updated review of the pharmacokinetic properties, clinical efficacy and tolerability of a microemulsion-based formulation (Neoral) in organ transplantation, *Drugs* 61:1957–2016, 2001.

Frei UA, Neumayer H, Buchholz B, et al: Randomized, double-blind, one-year study of the safety and tolerability of cyclosporine microemulsion compared with conventional cyclosporine in renal transplant patients, *Transplantation* 65(11):1455–1460, 1998.

Frishman WH, Sica DA, editors: *Cardiovascular pharmacotherapeutics*, ed 3, Minneapolis, 2011, Cardiotext Publishing.

Gerra G, Borella F, Zaimovic A, et al: Buprenorphine versus methadone for opioid dependence: predictor variables for treatment outcome, *Drug Alcohol Depend* 75(1):37–45, 2004.

Gerson B, editor: Therapeutic drug monitoring. I: Pharmacokinetics, technology, and methodology, *Clin Lab Med* 7:267–492, 1987a.

Gerson B, editor: Therapeutic drug monitoring. II: Patient care and applications, *Clin Lab Med* 7:499–714, 1987b.

Grem JL, de Carvalho M, Wittes RE, et al: Chemotherapy: the properties and uses of single agents: methotrexate. In Macdonald JS, Haller DG, Mayer RJ, editors: *Manual of oncologic therapeutics*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1995, JB Lippincott, p 108.

Gonzalez J, Tukey RH: Drug metabolism. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 71–91.

Hardman JG, Limbird LE, Gilman AG, editors: *Goodman & Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 10, New York, 2001, McGraw-Hill.

Hess AD, Esa AH, Colombani PM: Mechanisms of action of cyclosporine: effect on cells of the immune system and on subcellular events in T cell activation, *Transplant Proc* 20(Suppl 2):29–40, 1988.

Hoareau L, DaSilva EJ: Medicinal plants: a re-emerging health aid, *Electron J Biotechnol* 2:56–70, 1999.

Hojo M, Morimoto T, Maluccio M, et al: Cyclosporine induces cancer progression by a cell-autonomous mechanism, *Nature* 397:530–534, 1999.

Howanitz PJ, Howanitz JH: Therapeutic drug monitoring and toxicology. In Henry JB, editor: *Clinical diagnosis and management by laboratory methods*, ed 17, Philadelphia, 1984, WB Saunders, pp 362–370.

http://basicbook.net

Howland MA, Aaron CK: Pralidoxime. In: Flomenbaum NE, Goldfrank LR, Hoffman RF, et al, editors: *Goldfrank's toxicologic emergencies*, ed 8, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 1513-1519.
Isoniemi H: New trends in maintenance immunosuppression, *Ann Chir Gynaecol* 86:164–170, 1997.
Kahan BD: Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of cyclosporine, *Transplant Proc* 21(Suppl 1):9–15, 1989.
Krensky AM, Vincenti F, Bennett WM: Immunosuppressants, toleragens, and immunostimulants. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 1405–1431.
Kronbach T, Fischer V, Meyer VA: Cyclosporine metabolism in human liver: identification of a cytochrome P-450 III gene family as the major cyclosporine-metabolizing enzyme explains interactions of cyclosporine with other drugs, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 43:630–635, 1988.
Löscher W, Rogawski MA: How theories evolved concerning the mechanism of action of barbiturates, *Epilepsia* 53(Suppl 8):12–25, 2012.
McEvoy GK, Miller J, Litvak K, editors: *American Hospital Formulary Service drug information*, Bethesda, Md., 2004, American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, p 2004.
McMurray JJ, Adamopoulos S, Anker SD, et al: ESC Guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of acute and chronic heart failure 2012: The Task Force for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Acute and Chronic Heart Failure 2012 of the European Society of Cardiology. Developed in collaboration with the Heart Failure Association (HFA) of the ESC. ESC Committee for Practice Guidelines, *Eur Heart J* 33:1787–1847, 2012.
McNamara JO: Pharmacotherapy of the epilepsies. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 501–525.
Mueller XM: Drug immunosuppression therapy for adult heart transplantation. Part 1: Immune response to allograft and mechanism of action of immunosuppressants, *Ann Thorac Surg* 77:354–362, 2004.
Opie LH, Gersh BJ: *Drugs for the heart*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2001, WB Saunders.
Paci A, Veal G, Bardin C, et al: Review of therapeutic drug monitoring of anticancer drugs part 1—cytotoxics, *Eur J Cancer* 50:2010–2019, 2014.
Pesce AJ, Rashkin M, Kotagal U, et al: Standards of laboratory practice: theophylline and caffeine monitoring. National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry, *Clin Chem* 44:1124–1128, 1998.
Phiel CJ, Klein PS: Molecular targets of lithium action, *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 41:789–813, 2001.
Philip AT, Gerson B: Toxicology and adverse effects of drugs used for immunosuppression in organ transplantation, *Clin Lab Med* 18:755–765, 1998.
Rocco TP, Fang JC: Pharmacotherapy of congestive heart failure. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 869–897.
Roden DM: Antiarrhythmic drugs. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 899–932.
Roenigk HH Jr, Auerbach R, Maibach HI, et al: Methotrexate in psoriasis: consensus conference, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 38:478–485, 1998.
Rowden AK, Norvell J, Eldridge DL, et al: Acetaminophen poisoning, *Clin Lab Med* 26:49–65, 2006.
Scott LJ, McKeage K, Keam SJ, et al: Tacrolimus: a further update of its use in the management of organ transplantation, *Drugs* 63:1247–1297, 2003.
Slattery JT, Risler LJ: Therapeutic monitoring of busulfan in hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, *Ther Drug Monit* 20:543–549, 1998.
Slingerland M, Cerella C, Guchelaar HJ, et al: Cardiac glycosides in cancer therapy: from preclinical investigations towards clinical trials, *Invest New Drugs* 31:1087–1094, 2013.
Sunheimer R, Capaldo G, Kashanian F, et al: Serum analyte pattern characteristic of fulminant hepatic failure, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 24:101–109, 1994.
Sztajnkrycer MD: Valproic acid toxicity: overview and management, *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol* 40:789–801, 2002.
Tugwell P, Bennett K, Gent M: Methotrexate in rheumatoid arthritis: indications, contraindications, efficacy, and safety, *Ann Intern Med* 107:358–366, 1987a.
Tugwell P, Bennett K, Gent M: Position paper: methotrexate in rheumatoid arthritis, *Ann Intern Med* 107:418–419, 1987b.
Tugwell P, Pincus T, Yocum D, et al: Combination therapy with cyclosporine and methotrexate in severe rheumatoid arthritis, *N Engl J Med* 333:137–141, 1995.
Uetrecht JP: Mechanism of drug-induced lupus, *Chem Res Toxicol* 1:133–143, 1988.
Undem BJ: Pharmacotherapy of asthma. In Brunton LL, Lazo JS, Parker KL, editors: *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics*, ed 11, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 717–736.
Valdes R, Jortani SA, Gheorghiade M: Standards of laboratory practice: cardiac drug monitoring. National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry, *Clin Chem* 44: 1096–1109, 1998.
Warner A, Privitera M, Bates D: Standards of laboratory practice: antiepileptic drug monitoring. National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry, *Clin Chem* 44: 1085–1095, 1998.
White S, Wong SHY: Standards of laboratory practice: analgesic drug monitoring. National Academy of Clinical Biochemistry, *Clin Chem* 44:1110–1123, 1998.
Yaari Y, Selzer ME, Pincus JH: Phenytoin: mechanism of its anticonvulsant action, *Ann Neurol* 20:171–184, 1986.
Zimetbaum P, Kowey PR, Michelson EL: Antiarrythmic drugs. In Frishman WH, Sica DA, editors: *Cardiovascular pharmacotherapeutics*, ed 3, Minneapolis, 2011, Cardiotext Publishing, pp 227–256.

Toxins and Poisons

Beckerman N, Leikin SM, Aitchinson R, et al: Laboratory interferences with the newer cyanide antidote: hydroxocobalamin, *Semin Diagn Pathol* 26:49–52, 2009.
Bernard SM: Should the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's childhood lead poisoning intervention level be lowered? *Am J Public Health* 93:1253–1260, 2003.
Boyd VL, Harbell JW, O'Connor RJ, et al: 2,3-Dithioerythritol, a possible new arsenic antidote, *Chem Res Toxicol* 2:301–306, 1989.
Brandt-Rauf PW, Pincus MR: Molecular markers of carcinogenesis, *Pharmacol Ther* 77:135–148, 1998.
Brent J: Fomepizole for ethylene glycol and methanol poisoning, *N Engl J Med* 360:2216–2223, 2009.
Caraco Y: Genetic determinants of drug responsiveness and drug interactions, *Ther Drug Monit* 20:517–524, 1998.
Clark RF: Insecticides: organic phosphorus compounds and carbamates. In Flomenbaum NE, Goldfrank LR, Hoffman RF, et al, editors: *Goldfrank's toxicologic emergencies*, ed 8, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 1497–1513.
Coye MJ, Barnett PG, Midtling JE, et al: Clinical confirmation of organophosphate poisoning by serial cholinesterase analyses, *Arch Intern Med* 147:438–442, 1987.
Davies JE: Changing profile of pesticide poisoning, *N Engl J Med* 316:807–808, 1987.
Davis TME, Beilby J, Davis WA, et al: Prevalence, characteristics and prognostic significance of HFE gene mutations in type II diabetes: the Fremantle Diabetes Study, *Diabetes Care* 31:1795–1801, 2008.
Deshpande LS, Delorenzo RJ: Mechanisms of levetiracetam in the control of status epilepticus and epilepsy, *Front Neurol* 5:11, 2014.
De Vivo I, Marion MJ, Smith SJ, et al: Mutant c-K-ras-p21 in chemical carcinogenesis in humans exposed to vinyl chloride, *Cancer Causes Control* 5:273–278, 1994.
Eddleston M, Buckley NA, Senarathna L, et al: Multiple-dose activated charcoal in acute self-poisoning: a randomised controlled trial, *Lancet* 371: 579–587, 2008.
Ehle M, Patel C, Giugliano RP: Digoxin: clinical highlights: a review of digoxin and its use in contemporary medicine, *Crit Pathw Cardiol* 10:93–98, 2011.
Goldbaum LR, Ramirez RG, Absalon KB: What is the mechanism of carbon monoxide toxicity? *Aviat Space Environ Med* 46:1289–1291, 1975.
Hall AH, Saiers J, Baud F: Which cyanide antidote? *Crit Rev Toxicol* 39:541–552, 2009.
Ibrahim D, Froberg B, Wolf A, et al: Heavy metal poisoning: clinical presentations and pathophysiology, *Clin Lab Med* 26:67–97, 2006.
Jones JH, Wie WB: Cocaine-induced chest pain, *Clin Lab Med* 26:127–146, 2006.
Kao LW, Nanagas KA: Toxicity associated with carbon monoxide, *Clin Lab Med* 26:99–125, 2006.
Klaassen CD, editor: *Casarett and Doull's toxicology: the basic science of poisons*, ed 6, New York, 2001, McGraw-Hill.
Kosnett MJ, Becker CE, Osterloh JD, et al: Factors influencing bone lead concentration in a suburban community assessed by non-invasive x-ray fluorescence, *JAMA* 271:197–203, 1994.
Lieber SR, Helcer J, Shemesh E: Monitoring drug adherence, *Transplant Rev (Orlando)* 29:73–77, 2015.
Needleman HL, Gatsonis CA: Low-level lead exposure and the IQ of children: a meta-analysis of modern studies, *JAMA* 263:673–678, 1990.
Neuvonen AM, Palo JU, Sajantila A: Post-mortem ABCB1 genotyping reveals an elevated toxicity for female digoxin users, *Int J Legal Med* 125:265–269, 2011.
Ogawa R, Stachnik JM, Echizen H: Clinical pharmacokinetics of drugs in patients with heart failure: an update (part 1, drugs administered intravenously), *Clin Pharmacokinet* 52:169–185, 2013.
Pereira VL, Fernandes JO, Cunha SC: Mycotoxins in cereals and related foodstuffs: a review on occurrence and recent methods of analysis, *Trends Food Sci Technol* 36:96–136, 2014.
Perera FP, Hemminki K, Young TL, et al: Detection of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon–DNA adducts in white blood cells of foundry workers, *Cancer Res* 48:2288–2291, 1988.
Pincus MR, Friedman FK: Oncoproteins in the diagnosis of human malignancies, *Molec Diagn* 1:23–38, 2003.
Saklani P, Skanes A: Novel anti-arrhythmic medications in the treatment of atrial fibrillation, *Curr Cardiol Rev* 8:302–309, 2012.
Santella R, Hatch M, Pirastu R, et al: Carcinogen evaluation: in vitro testing, in vivo testing, and epidemiology, *Semin Occup Med* 2:245–255, 1987.
Schwartz J, Landrigan PJ, Baker EL Jr, et al: Lead-induced anemia: dose-response relationships and evidence for a threshold, *Am J Public Health* 80:165–168, 1990.
Senanayake N, Karalliedde L: Neurotoxic effects of organophosphorus insecticides: an intermediate syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 316:761–763, 1987.
Tafuri J, Roberts J: Organophosphate poisoning, *Ann Emerg Med* 16:193–202, 1987.
Takatoku M, Uchiyama T, Okamoto S, et al: Retrospective nationwide survey of Japanese patients with transfusion-dependent MDS and aplastic anemia highlights the negative impact of iron overload on morbidity/mortality, *Eur J Haematol* 78:487–494, 2007.
Talameh JA, Lanfear DE: Pharmacogenetics in chronic heart failure: new developments and current challenges, *Curr Heart Fail Rep* 9:23–32, 2012.
Tenenbein M: Hepatotoxicity in acute iron poisoning, *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol* 39:721–726, 2001.
Tricco AC, Cogo E, Angeliki VA, et al: Comparative safety of anti-epileptic drugs among infants and children exposed in utero or during breastfeeding: protocol for a systematic review and network meta-analysis, *Syst Rev* 3:68, 2014.
Wu F, Groopman JD, Pestka JJ: Public health impacts of foodborne mycotoxins, *Annu Rev Food Sci Technol* 5:351–372, 2014.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 24

EVALUATION OF ENDOCRINE FUNCTION

Helena A. Guber, Amal F. Farag

PITUITARY FUNCTION, 362
Pituitary Tumors, 362
Prolactin, 363
Growth Hormone, 365
Posterior Pituitary Hormones, 367

THYROID FUNCTION, 370
Thyroid Hormone Synthesis and Metabolism, 372
Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Thyroid Axis, 373
Urinary Iodine Measurement, 376
Screening Programs for Detection of Neonatal Hypothyroidism, 376
Nonthyroidal Illness, 377
Physiologic Variables, 377
Medications and Thyroid Function Tests, 377
Thyroid Illness, 378
Screening for Thyroid Disease, 378
Uses of L-Thyroxine, 378
Calcitonin, 378

ADRENAL FUNCTION, 379
Hormones of the Adrenal Medulla, 379
Hormones of the Adrenal Cortex, 381
Adrenal Insufficiency, 394

RENIN-ALDOSTERONE AXIS, 395
Renin and Hypertension, 396
Aldosterone Measurements, 398
Renin Measurements, 398

SELECTED REFERENCES, 399

KEY POINTS

- The endocrine system is a finely integrated system whereby the hypothalamus, the pituitary gland, and target glands continually communicate through feedback inhibition and stimulation to control all aspects of metabolism, growth, and reproduction. By understanding this interplay and carefully manipulating these systems via provocative and suppressive stimuli, it is possible to characterize an underlying abnormality and provide directed treatment.
- Prolactin levels can be elevated as the result of a variety of pharmacologic and physiologic stimuli; values greater than 200 ng/mL are almost always associated with the presence of a pituitary tumor.
- The initial screening test for acromegaly is measurement of the serum insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1).
- It is often unnecessary to perform provocative stimulation tests to document growth hormone deficiency in patients with a known history of pituitary disease or in those with evidence of three or more pituitary hormone deficiencies.
- Provided the hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis is intact, the ultrasensitive thyroid-stimulating hormone test is the best method for detecting clinically significant thyroid dysfunction.
- When measuring thyroglobulin as a tumor marker for thyroid cancer, always check a simultaneous sample for thyroglobulin antibodies.
- The best screening test for pheochromocytoma is either the plasma free metanephrine or 24-hour urinary free metanephrines. The patient should avoid caffeine, alcohol, acetaminophen, monoamine oxidase inhibitors, and tricyclic antidepressants for at least 5 days before testing.
- It is frequently unnecessary to perform an adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) stimulation test in critically ill patients. A random cortisol of greater than 25 µg/dL (700 nmol/L) during stress makes it highly unlikely that the patient is adrenally insufficient.
- Midnight salivary cortisol (MSC) is a highly sensitive, highly specific and very simple way to screen for Cushing's disease.

PITUITARY FUNCTION

The endocrine system is a finely tuned system in which the hypothalamus, pituitary gland, and various endocrine glands communicate through an intricate scheme of hormone-mediated feedback inhibition and stimulation stimuli. Hormones are classically defined as substances that act at sites distant from their place of origin. Included under the rubric of hormones are moieties that act in an autocrine (act directly upon themselves), paracrine (act adjacent to the cells of origin), or intracrine (act within the cells of origin without ever exiting the cells) fashion. Through this intimate interplay of signals, the endocrine system serves to control metabolism, growth, fertility, electrolyte and water homeostasis, and responses to stress.

The pituitary gland, also known as the *hypophysis*, is located within the confines of the sella turcica. It is connected to the median eminence of the hypothalamus by the infundibular stalk, and is divided into an anterior lobe (adenohypophysis) and a posterior lobe (neurohypophysis). It weighs about 0.6 g and measures about 12 mm in transverse and 8 mm in anteroposterior diameter. The anterior pituitary gland possesses five distinct hormone-synthesizing and -secreting populations of cells. These cell groups include somatotrophs, which secrete growth hormone (GH); lactotrophs, which secrete prolactin (PRL); thyrotrophs, which secrete thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH); gonadotrophs, which secrete the α and β subunits of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH); and corticotrophs, which secrete proopiomelanocortin (POMC). POMC is cleaved within the pituitary gland to form adrenocorticotropin (ACTH), β-endorphin, and β-lipotropin (β-LPH). The hypothalamus communicates with the anterior pituitary gland by secreting its own set of trophic hormones that are specific for each of the cell populations within the pituitary gland (Fig. 24-1). These trophic hormones travel along the infundibular stalk to the adenohypophysis through a system of portal vessels.

In contrast to the anterior pituitary gland, the posterior pituitary gland (neurohypophysis) does not synthesize hormones. The hormones that it does secrete, arginine vasopressin (AVP; also known as antidiuretic hormone [ADH]) and oxytocin, are synthesized within the magnicellular neurons of the paraventricular and supraoptic nuclei of the hypothalamus, transported along the axons, and stored in the nerve terminals that end in the neurohypophysis. A summary of the different hormones secreted by the pituitary gland can be found in Box 24-1.

Abnormalities of pituitary function fall within two broad categories: hormonal excess and hormonal deficiency. Hormonal excess usually occurs as the result of clonal expansion of a distinct population of cells; however, it can result from an increase in trophic hormones from the hypothalamus or ectopic sites. The causes of hormonal deficiency are more varied (Box 24-2) and can result in the deficiency of one or more hormones, often with continued and progressive loss of other hormones over time.

PITUITARY TUMORS

Pituitary tumors may be classified as microadenomas (<1 cm in greatest diameter and confined to the sella) or macroadenomas (≥1 cm in greatest diameter). They are further subcategorized into secretory and nonsecretory varieties (Table 24-1). All tumors have the potential to grow; in doing so, they can compress the optic chiasm, resulting in visual field defects, of which bitemporal hemianopia is the most frequent presentation. Invasion into the cavernous sinus can lead to compression of cranial nerves III, IV,

http://basicbook.net

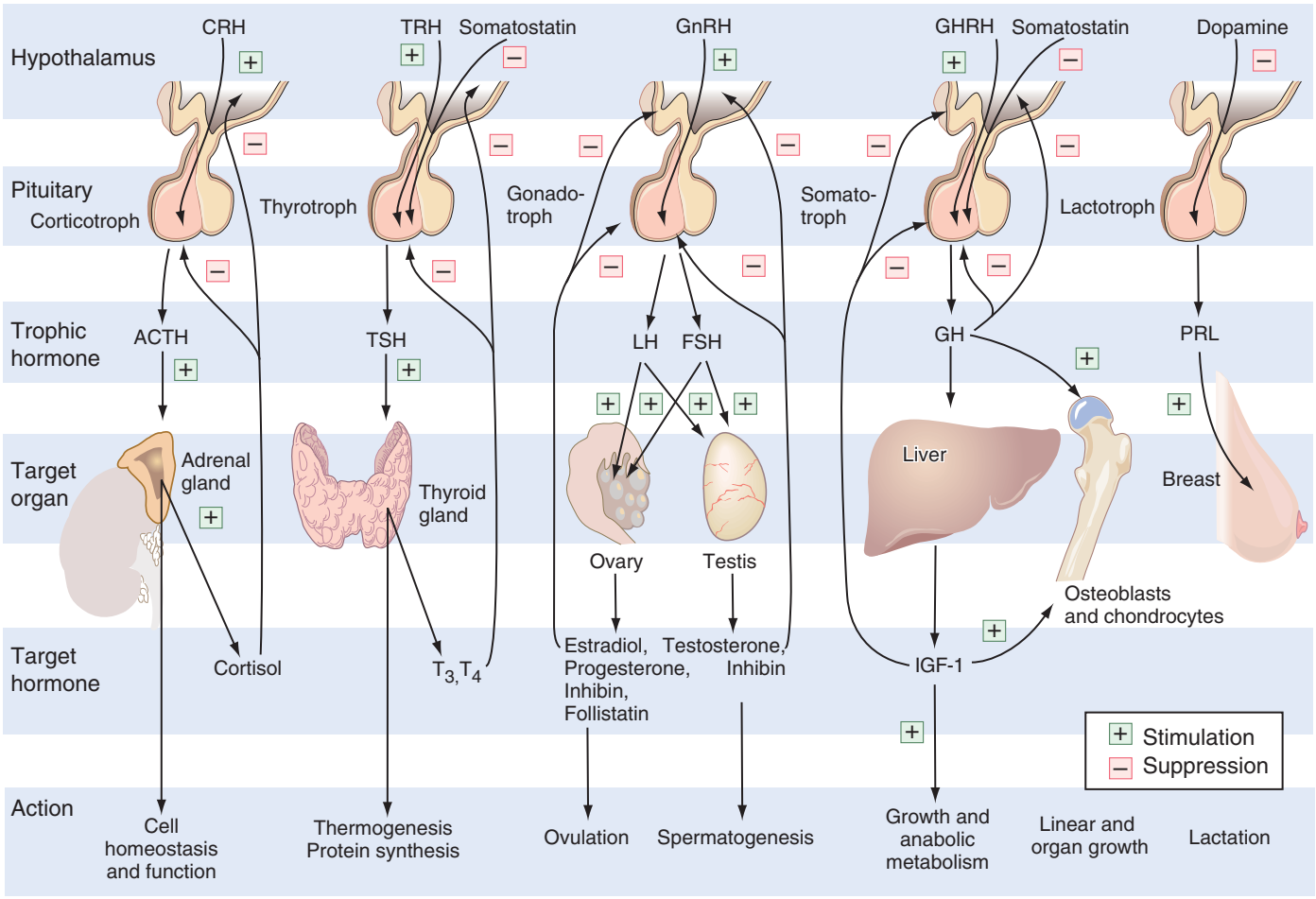


Figure 24-1 **The hypothalamic-pituitary-target organ axis.** *ACTH,* Adrenocorticotropin; *CRH,* corticotropin-releasing hormone; *FSH,* follicle-stimulating hormone; *GHRH,* growth hormone–releasing hormone; *GnRH,* gonadotropin-releasing hormone; *IGF-1,* insulin-like growth factor; *LH,* luteinizing hormone; *PRL,* prolactin; T_3, 3,5,3′-triiodothyronine; T_4, thyroxine; *TRH,* thyrotropin-releasing hormone; *TSH,* thyroid-stimulating hormone. (Redrawn from Melmed S, Kleinberg D: Anterior pituitary. In Larsen PR, Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, et al, editors: *Williams textbook of endocrinology,* ed 10, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders, p 181, with permission.)

BOX 24-1

Hormones of the Pituitary Gland

Anterior Pituitary—Adenohypophysis

Growth hormone (somatotropin) (GH)
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (thyrotropin) (TSH)
Gonadotropins
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)
Luteinizing hormone (LH)
Proopiomelanocortin (POMC)
Adrenocorticotropin (ACTH)
β-lipotropin
β-endorphin
Prolactin (PRL)

Posterior Pituitary—Neurohypophysis

Arginine vasopressin (AVP) = Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)
Oxytocin

BOX 24-2

Causes of Pituitary Hormonal Deficiency

Pituitary neoplasm
Pituitary adenoma
Craniopharyngioma
Metastases or rarely primary carcinoma
Iatrogenic
Radiation
Hypophysectomy
Stalk resection
Granulomatous disease
Sarcoidosis
Infection
Tuberculosis
Syphilis
Fungi
Hemorrhage and infarction
Postpartum necrosis (Sheehan's syndrome)
Head trauma
Apoplexy
Aneurysms of the internal carotid artery
Autoimmune lymphocytic hypophysitis
Hemochromatosis
Primary hypothalamic disorders
Tumor
Granulomas
Idiopathic or genetic deficiencies of hormones within the pituitary gland or hypothalamus

VI, V1, and V2 and the intracavernous portion of the internal carotid artery. It can also lead to hydrocephalus caused by obstruction of the third ventricle. Aside from oversecretion of a particular hormone and extension into surrounding regions, these tumors can also cause hormonal deficiency due to compression of other cell lineages within the pituitary gland.

PROLACTIN

PRL is a polypeptide produced by the lactotrophs of the pituitary gland; it is responsible for the initiation and maintenance of lactation. Its secretion is normally kept at low levels by the inhibitory actions of dopamine produced by the hypothalamus. Similar to several pituitary hormones,

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 24-1
Relative Frequency of Occurrence of Pituitary Tumors

Lactotroph (PRL)	30%
Somatotroph (GH)	15%
Combined GH/PRL	8%
Corticotroph (ACTH)	15%
Thyrotroph (TRH)	1%
Pleurihormonal	4%
Nonfunctioning	27%

ACTH, Adrenocorticotropin; *GH,* growth hormone; *PRL,* prolactin; *TRH,* thyrotropin-releasing hormone.

PRL is secreted in a circadian fashion, with the highest levels attained during sleep and a nadir occurring between 10 AM and noon (Sassin et al, 1972). PRL is secreted in a pulsatile fashion, the amplitude and frequency of which not only vary throughout the day but are influenced by a variety of physiologic stimuli (e.g., stress, pregnancy, exercise). Because of these factors and a serum half-life of 26 to 47 minutes, it had been recommended that when screening for hyperprolactinemia three specimens be obtained at 20- to 30-minute intervals. Each sample could either be analyzed separately and their results averaged, or alternatively an equal aliquot from each sample could be pooled into a single specimen for analysis. Current Endocrine Society guidelines recommend screening using a single determination, collected at any time of day, reserving the option to follow the aforementioned recommendations if the diagnosis is in doubt (Melmed et al, 2011). A single prolactin level above the sex-matched upper limit of normal is diagnostic for hyperprolactinemia, with values above 250 µg/L usually indicating the presence of a prolactinoma. PRL is measured by immunometric assay.

The major circulating form of PRL is the nonglycosylated monomer. A number of other forms can occur, including "big" PRL and macroprolactin ("big, big" PRL), which is considered to be PRL coupled with immunoglobulin (Yazigi et al, 1997; Conner & Fried, 1998). Because these forms all react with the immunoassays, they can produce falsely high PRL results in patients in whom pathologic elevation of PRL is not supported clinically or by computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Various analytic methods have been developed to eliminate this confusion, including the performance of immunoassay following polyethylene glycol extraction and centrifugal ultrafiltration (Diver et al, 2001; Amadori et al, 2003; Fahie-Wilson, 2003; Prazeres et al, 2003; Suliman et al, 2003; Toldy et al, 2003).

The degree of prolactin elevation usually correlates well with tumor size. Under certain circumstances, the PRL may be falsely low or minimally elevated, considering the size of the tumor. This discordance can by explained by the "hook effect," and it may result in the misdiagnosis of a patient having a nonfunctioning chromophobe adenoma instead of a prolactin-secreting adenoma.

This effect results when two antibodies to an antigen, in the current case, prolactin, are used in an ELISA assay (see Chapter 17). One of these antibodies, called the *capture antibody*, is embedded on a solid surface, while the second antibody, called the *secondary antibody*, is conjugated to a probe that is either an enzyme or a fluorescent or chemiluminescent moiety. If both antibodies are present in a so-called *one-step ELISA assay*, at high concentrations of antigen, excess antigen will bind to the secondary antibody in solution, blocking it from binding to any antigen captured by the capture antibody on the solid surface. Thus the enzyme or fluorescent signal on the solid surface will be diminished, making it appear as if there is a low concentration of antigen (Barkan & Chandler, 1998; Petakov et al, 1998).

This effect does not occur if a wash step is performed prior to adding the secondary antibody; the wash step removes all excess antigen. Also, performance of homogeneous assays for prolactin avoids the hook effect. If a hook effect is suspected, the sample should be diluted, often to levels of 1:1000, and then assayed. Typically, only a single dilution is performed when assaying for PRL in single-step ELISA assays. It is preferable to utilize assays for prolactin that avoid the hook effect.

If the pretest probability of the patient having a prolactin-secreting tumor is high, it is recommended that the serum sample be subjected to serial dilutions or at the least a 1:100 dilution.

PRL acts on breast tissue, where, in the setting of estrogen priming, it stimulates lactation. PRL also acts at the hypothalamus to inhibit the secretion of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH). Inhibition of GnRH results in a decrease in the release of LH and FSH from the anterior pituitary gland. In females, this leads to a decrease in estrogen and progesterone synthesis and secretion by the ovaries, and failure of ovarian follicular maturation (ovulation). In males, a deficiency of FSH and LH causes a decrease in testicular production and synthesis of testosterone, and a halt in spermatogenesis. It has also been suggested that hyperprolactinemia may stimulate adrenal androgen production and have an effect on immune responsiveness (Lobo et al, 1980; Walker et al, 1993).

BOX 24-3
Causes of Hyperprolactinemia

Physiologic
Sleep, stress, postprandially, pain
Coitus, pregnancy, nipple stimulation or nursing
Systemic disorders
Chest wall or thoracic spinal cord lesions
Primary or secondary hypothyroidism
Adrenal insufficiency
Chronic renal failure
Cirrhosis
Medications
Psychiatric medications: Phenothiazines, haloperidol, thioxanthines, buspirone, olanzapine, risperidone, domperidone, monoamine oxidase inhibitors, fluoxetine, amitriptyline
Metoclopramide
Antihypertensives: labetalol, α-methyldopa, reserpine, verapamil
Antihistamines H_2: cimetidine, ranitidine
Estrogens, oral contraceptives, oral contraceptive withdrawal
Opiates: heroin, methadone, morphine, apomorphine
Thyrotroph (TRH)
Prolactin-secreting pituitary tumor: prolactinoma, acromegaly
Macroadenoma (compressing the pituitary stalk)
Macroprolactinemia
Pressure on or transection of the pituitary stalk, interrupting the transmission of dopamine to D_2 receptors on the lactotrophs: Surgery, traumatic transection, granulomas, metastases, meningioma, irradiation, histiocytosis X
Ectopic secretion of prolactin by nonpituitary tumors
Idiopathic
Polycystic ovarian disease
Epileptic seizures

The reference value for serum PRL is 1 to 25 ng/mL (1 to 25 µg/L) for women and 1 to 20 ng/mL (1 to 20 µg/L) for men. The higher PRL levels seen in females begin postpuberty and are presumably due to the stimulatory effect of estrogen (Eastman et al, 1996). During pregnancy, a progressive rise in serum PRL is observed, with levels reportedly reaching as high as 500 ng/mL by the third trimester (Rigg et al, 1977). This is largely due to an increase in the number of PRL-secreting cells and can be associated with a doubling or even greater increase in pituitary gland size (Scheithauer et al, 1990). PRL levels fall back to baseline about 3 weeks postpartum in women who are not breastfeeding. In nursing mothers, basal PRL levels remain moderately elevated, with episodic bursts in secretion in response to suckling.

PRL levels are increased by many physiologic and pathologic factors, as well as by a wide variety of medications (Box 24-3). Elevations in PRL resulting from physiologic and pharmacologic stimuli rarely exceed 200 ng/mL.

PRL deficiency can be seen with pituitary necrosis or infarction and in some cases of pseudohypoparathyroidism. In women with complete PRL deficiency, menstrual disorders and infertility have been found (Kauppila, 1997). It is PRL excess that is associated with clinical pathology. Hyperprolactinemia leads to inhibition of GnRH secretion, which typically manifests as sexual dysfunction and infertility in both men and women. Women may present with luteal phase abnormalities, oligomenorrhea, or frank amenorrhea, with or without galactorrhea. Men will present with hypoandrogenemia, decreased libido, and impotence. Pituitary adenomas are an important cause of hyperprolactinemia; however, any sellar or parasellar process that compresses the pituitary stalk and interrupts the tonic delivery of dopamine can lead to disinhibition of PRL secretion. Usually, the height of elevation of serum PRL levels correlates with the likelihood of the presence of a pituitary tumor, and levels of PRL in excess of 200 ng/mL almost always signify the presence of a prolactinoma (Kleinberg et al, 1977; Frantz, 1998; Freda & Wardlaw, 1999). Unlike other functioning pituitary tumors, the degree of elevation of PRL correlates fairly well with the size of the tumor.

http://basicbook.net

Hyperprolactinemia exists in 20% to 40% of patients with acromegaly; this may be due to the presence of a mixed tumor (containing both lactotrophs and somatotrophs) or to interference with the normally active, PRL-inhibitory mechanisms (e.g., interruption of dopamine delivery owing to stalk compression by a tumor, resulting in disinhibition of prolactin secretion). Another important cause of hyperprolactinemia is hypothyroidism. Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) not only stimulates TSH secretion, but it also stimulates PRL secretion, thus explaining the mild hyperprolactinemia seen in both primary (thyroid) and secondary (pituitary) hypothyroidism. Therefore, thyroid function tests (free thyroxine [FT_4] and TSH) are always indicated to rule out hypothyroidism when a patient with hyperprolactinemia is evaluated. Thyroid hormone replacement therapy will usually return the PRL to normal.

It is important to evaluate all patients discovered to have an abnormally elevated PRL. Since hyperprolactinemia can be found in upward of 40% of cases of acromegaly, it is appropriate to measure insulin-like growth factor (IGF)-1. Other hormones that may be assayed include FSH, LH, free testosterone, estradiol, and, if clinically indicated, tests of adrenal axis function. Rarely, hyperprolactinemia may be caused by ectopic hormone production. All patients should undergo CT or MRI of the sella, performed with and without contrast. If there are no contraindications, MRI is preferred, as it provides better contrast and anatomic detail, is better for visualizing microadenomas, and is safer for serially monitoring of patients since there is no exposure to radiation. A formal visual field examination is also a key monitoring tool in managing patients with pituitary tumors and should be done at least yearly in patients with stable disease.

GROWTH HORMONE

GH is a single-chain polypeptide of 191 amino acids synthesized, stored, and secreted by the somatotrophs of the pituitary gland in response to the secretion of growth hormone–releasing hormone (GHRH) by the hypothalamus. Somatostatin, also produced by the hypothalamus, inhibits GH synthesis and release. Although evidence exists for the direct action of GH on long bone growth in children, most of its anabolic and metabolic actions are mediated indirectly through an intermediary, IGF-1 (also called **somatomedin C**). IGF-1 is synthesized in the liver and in certain target tissues, in response to stimulation by GH. IGF-1 circulates in the blood complexed to IGF-binding proteins (IGF-BPs); IGF-BP3 is the predominant circulating species. As with all hormones, it is the free, unbound form that is biologically active. Like somatostatin, IGF-1 negatively feeds back on the pituitary gland to inhibit GH secretion.

GH is secreted in a pulsatile fashion; the frequency and amplitude of the peaks are greatest during puberty, exhibiting a steady decline with increasing age (Casanueva, 1992). As up to 70% of GH secretion occurs during stage 4 (slow wave) sleep, it has been suggested that the age-related decline in stage 4 sleep may account for the decline in GH seen with aging (Van Cauter, 2000; Van Cauter et al, 1998). In addition to GHRH and somatostatin, several other factors regularly mediate GH secretion (Fig. 24-2). Major stress (e.g., surgery, sepsis), fasting, sex steroids, chronic malnutrition, apomorphine, levodopa, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, and high-protein meals all stimulate GH secretion. Women tend to have higher GH levels than men, perhaps because of estrogen sensitization of the hypothalamus to other GH stimuli (Eastman et al, 1996).

Serum GH is undetectable for most of the day in healthy, nonstressed individuals. This fact along with the episodic nature of GH secretion makes a single sampling difficult to interpret. As a result, the diagnosis of GH deficiency is made using GH measurements following pharmacologic stimulation, and GH excess is confirmed by failure of GH suppression following an oral glucose load. GH is commonly measured by chemiluminescent immunoassay.

Somatostatin is synthesized in the paraventricular and arcuate nuclei of the hypothalamus. It inhibits GH and TSH secretion. It also inhibits the secretion of insulin and several gut hormones (e.g., motilin, secretin, gastrin). Ghrelin, a 28–amino acid peptide produced by the gastric neuroendocrine cells and the hypothalamus, binds to the GH secretagogue receptor to stimulate the secretion of GHRH and GH.

Growth Hormone Deficiency

Idiopathic growth hormone deficiency is the most common cause of GH deficiency (GHD) in children, whereas a pituitary adenoma is the most common etiology in adult-onset GHD. No simple, reproducible method for determining abnormal GH secretory patterns exists. In healthy normal individuals, 70% to 80% of GH results are below 1 ng/mL (<1 µg/L), and secretory peaks typically reach 20 to 40 ng/mL (20 to 40 g/L) (Baumann, 1987). Thus, in a child with decreased growth velocity, a low or nondetectable GH does not necessarily indicate GHD. Similar to GH, IGF-1 declines with age. IGF-1 is more diagnostically useful in patients younger than 40 years of age; however, it is still not sensitive enough to be used as a standalone test to make the diagnosis of GHD (Almeretti et al, 2003). Manipulation of the endocrine system through stimulation and suppression of the various axes is often required for diagnosing conditions of hormonal deficiency and surfeit. In this vein, GHD is diagnosed by showing failure of GH to increase adequately in response to pharmacologic stimulation. Several endocrine organizations have published guidelines on GH deficiency, detailing which patients to test, which test to utilize, and what cutoffs to apply (Ho & Ho, 2007; Casanueva et al, 2009). The insulin tolerance test (ITT) has long been considered the "gold standard" for diagnosing GHD; however, it is most unpleasant for the patient, requires the attendance of a physician throughout the testing period, and is contraindicated in those with a history of seizures or cardiac or cerebrovascular disease. Failure of GH to rise above 5 ng/mL in adults and above 10 ng/mL in children is considered to be abnormal. In patients unable to undergo an ITT and in those needing a second confirmatory test, arginine stimulation alone or in combination with GHRH is usually the next step. Combination testing with GHRH plus arginine is preferred, as many normal adults will fail stimulation with arginine alone (Biller et al, 2002). Failure of GH to rise above 4.1 carries a sensitivity of 95% and a specificity of 91% in diagnosing GH deficiency (Biller et al, 2002). Because body mass index (BMI) affects the GH response to stimulation with GHRH plus arginine, newer guidelines recommend the use of GH cutoffs based on BMI for interpretation of results (Cook et al, 2009). Other methods to assess for GHD include 24-hour or nighttime monitoring of GH and provocative tests using clonidine, L-dopa, or glucagon (following priming with propranolol). All of these tests carry significant individual variability. They have not been systematically studied and are used mainly in the pediatric population (Rose et al, 1988). The same normal ranges hold for these tests as described for the ITT. There are two settings in which an argument can be made against the need to test for GHD. The first is in patients with known pituitary disease who have a low IGF-1 level. The other scenario is in patients with evidence of three or more pituitary hormone deficiencies; studies have shown these patients to have a greater than 96% chance of being GHD (Hartman et al, 2002).

For children, it is common to use exercise testing in screening for GHD. Further testing is not indicated if the results are normal; however, if GH fails to increase adequately, pharmacologic testing is warranted (Eddy et al, 1974). Healthy children may not respond to any single GH provocative test; therefore, GHD in childhood is defined by failure of serum GH to reach defined levels when at least two different pharmacologic stimuli are used. IGF-1 measurements have been used to screen for GHD in children; however, since a variety of factors can decrease IGF-1, it is not used to confirm the diagnosis of GHD. IGF-1 levels decline in malnutrition, hypothyroidism, hepatic disease, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, renal disease, and with age. Levels of IGF-BP3 usually parallel those of IGF-1 and are often low in GHD; however, results falling within the reference range do not exclude the diagnosis if GHD. Up to 18% of subjects with GHD may have normal IGF-1 levels. Care should be taken when interpreting values for IGF-1, IGF-BP3, and GH because the assays themselves and the cutoffs used to define normal differ greatly between laboratories. To address these issues there is a move to have laboratories utilize a World Health Organization international standard for GH and IGF-1, and to create a normative range from a statistically valid control group (Giustina et al, 2010).

It is important to understand the difference in the physiology behind testing with GHRH as compared to the other secretagogues. ITT and arginine stimulate the production of GHRH; clonidine increases GH secretion by inhibiting the release of somatostatin. For these stimuli to elicit a rise in GH, the hypothalamus must be intact. When GHRH is used for testing, the hypothalamus is bypassed and the pituitary gland is directly stimulated, therefore it is possible to miss up to 50% of patients who have tertiary (hypothalamic) GHD.

Individuals with childhood-onset idiopathic GHD are less likely to have permanent GHD. It is recommended that unless they have a known genetic mutation, embryopathic lesion, or irreversible lesion/damage to the pituitary gland/hypothalamus, they be taken off GH replacement and retested when they reach early adulthood (Molitch et al, 2006).

Growth Hormone Excess

Growth hormone overproduction can result in the condition called **acromegaly.** If the condition develops before closure of the epiphyses, these individuals may be exceedingly tall (**gigantism**). More commonly, it presents during adulthood, causing diffuse enlargement of soft tissues and

http://basicbook.net

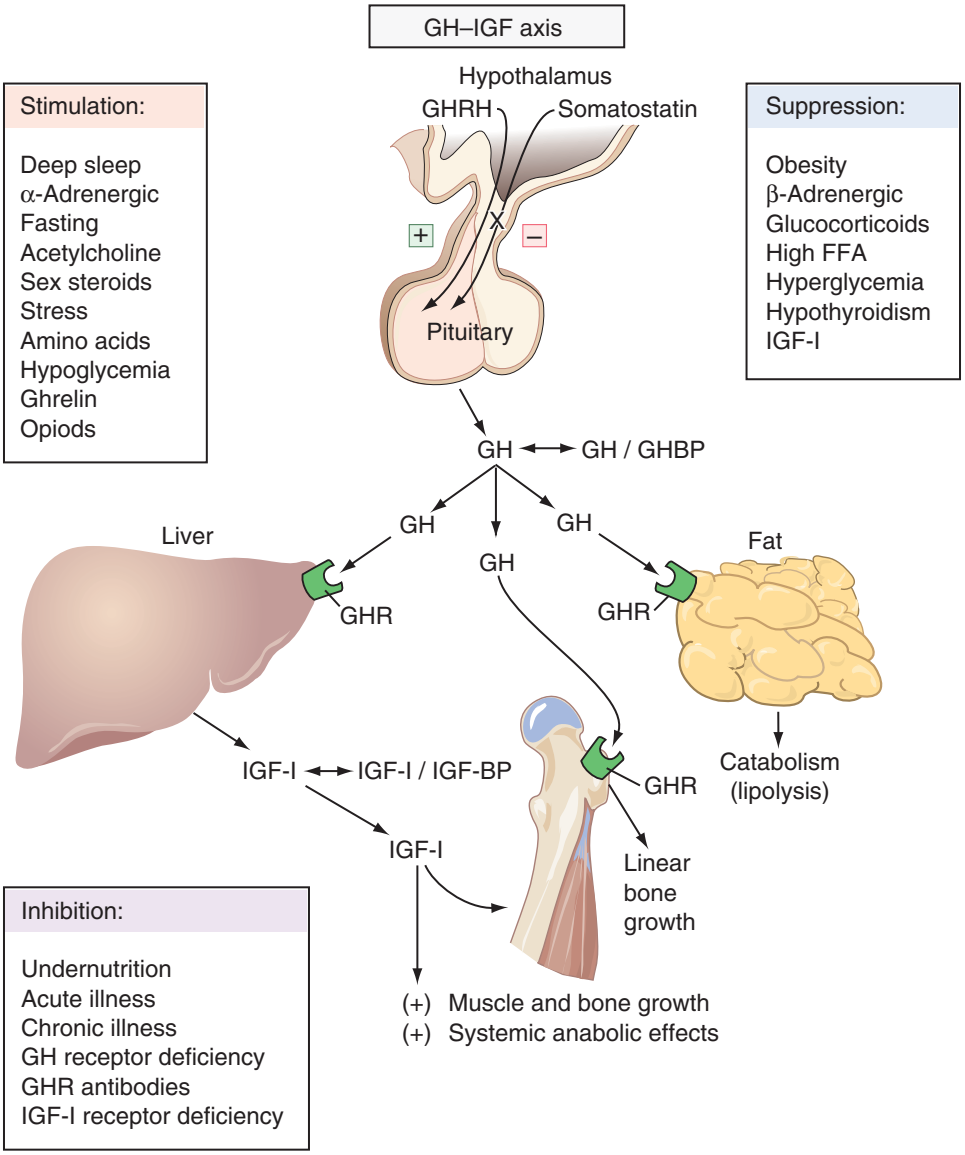


Figure 24-2 **Hypothalamic-pituitary-growth hormone axis.** Feedback loop influencing GH-IGF-1 secretion and action. *FFA,* Free fatty acid; *GH,* growth hormone; *GHBP,* growth hormone–binding protein; *GH-IGF,* growth hormone–insulin-like growth factor; *GHR,* growth hormone receptor; *GHRH,* growth hormone–releasing hormone; *IGF-1,* insulin-like growth factor I; *IGF-BP,* IGF-binding proteins. (From Melmed S, Kleinberg D: Anterior pituitary. In Larsen PR, Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, et al, editors: *Williams textbook of endocrinology,* ed 10, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders, p 221, with permission.)

organs throughout the body; characteristic features include prognathism, frontal bossing, and spadelike hands. The screening test for clinically suspected acromegaly is a randomly collected IGF-1. A normal IGF-1 with respect to the appropriate age- and gender-matched reference ranges rules out the diagnosis of acromegaly (Katznelson et al, 2014). However, it should be noted that a physiologic increase in IGF-1 may be seen during pregnancy and late-stage adolescence (Katznelson et al, 2014). If the level of IGF-1 is elevated or borderline with respect to the appropriate age- and gender-related reference range, it becomes necessary to confirm the diagnosis using an oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT). The OGTT is performed by obtaining baseline blood samples for glucose and GH, administering 75 g of glucose orally, and then obtaining blood for glucose and GH every 30 minutes over the next 2 hours. A normal response is suppression of GH to <1 ng/mL (1 μg/L) at any time during the test. If GH fails to drop to below 1 ng/mL (1 μg/L), the patient is diagnosed as having acromegaly (American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, 2004). GH may fail to adequately suppress in the setting of puberty, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, malnutrition, hepatic disease, and renal disease; however, all but puberty are associated with a normal serum IGF-1 (Katznelson et al, 2011).

The difficulty comes in diagnosing mild disease. Freda had studied 60 postoperative patients with acromegaly, 22 patients with active disease (elevated IGF-1), 38 patients in remission (normal IGF-1), and 25 healthy controls. The highest nadir GH was 0.13 μg/L in the controls and 0.3 μg/L in those with active disease. Fifty percent of those with active disease had GH values <1 μg/L, leading to misclassification of these individuals as being normal when the criteria of a GH value <1 μg/L was applied (Freda et al, 1998; Trainer, 2002). In a more recent study of 16 patients with mild disease (the majority having microadenomas), Dimaraki and colleagues (2002) found that 50% of patients with acromegaly were able to suppress their GH levels to <1 μg/L following an OGTT. A proposed reason for these patients with active disease showing normal suppression is that they may have subtle changes in GH secretion that are not elicitable using this short suppression test. To address this issue, the following suggestion has been proferred (Trainer, 2002). If the initial random IGF-1 is normal and GH is <0.3 μg/L, then acromegaly is excluded. If either test is abnormal, repeat the IGF-1 and proceed to an OGTT. Failure of GH to be suppressed below 0.3 μg/L, accompanied by an elevated IGF-1, is diagnostic of acromegaly. Suppression of GH below 0.3 μg/L with normal IGF-1 excludes acromegaly. For those who adequately suppress their GH but have an elevated IGF-1, close follow-up is recommended (Trainer, 2002). Oral but not transdermal estrogen can reduce IGF-1 concentrations (Giustina et al, 2010), therefore temporarily withholding oral estrogen therapy during testing may be prudent.

Acromegalic patients may show a paradoxical rise, an absent response, or a partial decline in GH in response to an OGTT (Ezzat, 1997). Random

http://basicbook.net

GH sampling is not adequate to establish the diagnosis of acromegaly because considerable overlap in GH exists between healthy persons and patients with the disease. In addition, GH can be increased in patients with a number of disorders, including renal disease, cirrhosis, malnutrition, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, as well as in patients under physical or emotional stress. Although larger adenomas are generally associated with higher GH levels, the correlation between GH levels and acromegalic manifestations is poor. In most patients with untreated acromegaly, GH levels remain above basal levels throughout the day, ranging from 10 to 100 ng/mL (10 to 100 µg/L). Serum GH levels in excess of 50 to 100 ng/mL (50 to 100 µg/L) are virtually never seen in nonacromegalic persons (Barkan, 1989). Other diagnostic maneuvers using TRH, GnRH, and GHRH yield discordant results in about 50% of patients with acromegaly; therefore, their use for diagnostic purposes or for monitoring disease activity is not recommended (American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, 2004). In patients with documented acromegaly but no evidence of a pituitary tumor, GHRH should be measured to detect a hypothalamic or ectopic source for acromegaly.

Patients treated for acromegaly require lifelong monitoring for disease activity. Patients treated with surgery or radiation can be monitored by the GH response to OGTT and a random IGF-1 measurement. The goal of therapy is to normalize IGF-1 and suppress the GH response to OGTT to <1 ng/mL (<1 µg/L). Several studies have shown that when these goals are attained, mortality rates become comparable with those of the normal population (Swearingen et al, 1998; Holdaway et al, 2004; Rajasoorya et al, 1994; Orme et al, 1998). As mentioned previously, caution is required in interpreting IGF-1 levels in women on oral but not topical estrogen treatment, as oral estrogens lower IGF-1 concentrations (Giustina et al, 2010). For patients on somatostatin receptor analogs, monitoring is performed by measuring GF-1 and GH just prior to the next treatment dose. Patients on GH receptor blockers are monitored by a random IGF-1 alone. In rare instances, acromegaly may be due to ectopic secretion of GHRH (e.g., bronchial carcinoid, pancreatic islet cell tumors, small cell lung cancer), in which case the measurement of GHRH may be useful.

POSTERIOR PITUITARY HORMONES

Oxytocin and vasopressin (see Chapters 8 and 14) are the two major hormones of the posterior pituitary gland. They each have distinct physiologic roles, with partially overlapping effects in stimulating smooth muscle contraction and in maintaining water homeostasis. They are small oligopeptides, each composed of nine amino acid residues with a total mass of about 1 kDa. They are synthesized in the nerve cell bodies within the hypothalamus and are transported along axons to the nerve terminals within the posterior pituitary gland, where they are stored in secretory granules. Neuronal action potentials originating in the hypothalamus are conducted along the axons, resulting in degranulation of the vesicles and release of oxytocin and vasopressin into the perivascular space and ultimately into the circulation. Unlike the anterior pituitary gland, the posterior pituitary gland is little more than a repository where hormones are held until they are secreted. Accordingly, disruption of the infundibular stalk or destruction or removal of the posterior pituitary gland does not necessarily result in complete loss of these hormones, as they are produced in the hypothalamus.

Oxytocin

Oxytocin secretion is stimulated by stretching of the cervix and vagina during parturition; this is known as the Fergusson reflex. Oxytocin contributes to uterine contractions late in labor both by direct action on the myometrium and by stimulation of prostaglandin secretion by the decidua (Fuchs et al, 1982). It also plays a role in hemostasis at the placental site following delivery. Throughout pregnancy, estrogen upregulates the numbers of oxytocin receptors on the uterus and decidua, resulting in increased sensitivity to oxytocin toward the end of term.

Oxytocin stimulates the myoepithelial cells surrounding the mammary glands and lactiferous ducts to contract, resulting in milk ejection. In response to suckling, neurogenic stimuli are transmitted from the nipple to the third, fourth, and fifth thoracic nerves, to the spinal cord, to the midbrain, and on to the hypothalamus, where oxytocin release is triggered. Psychological stimuli can bypass this pathway, with bursts of oxytocin secretion occurring with anticipation of nursing or on hearing a baby cry (Jenkins & Nussey, 1991; Yokoyama et al, 1994). Stressful situations can inhibit its secretion, resulting in decreased milk ejection.

Pathologic conditions associated with oxytocin excess or deficiency are rare and are limited to case reports. Its function in males remains unknown. Clinical demand for the measurement of oxytocin levels is extremely rare. Because it has a half-life of 3 to 5 minutes and is subject to rapid degradation by oxytocinase, individual reference laboratory procedures for its collection must be strictly adhered to if meaningful results are to be obtained.

Arginine Vasopressin/Antidiuretic Hormone

AVP (ADH) is synthesized within the paraventricular and supraoptic nuclei of the hypothalamus. The major function of ADH is to maintain osmotic homeostasis by regulating water balance. It does this by stimulating the V2 receptors on principal epithelial cells that line the cortical collecting ducts of the kidney. As discussed in Chapter 14, ADH induces an increase in the production of cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), which, in turn, causes the water channels (aquaporins) to fuse with the apical membrane of the principal cells, increasing water permeability and reabsorption. At much higher blood concentrations, AVP also acts as a potent pressor by causing vasoconstriction (V1 receptor), stimulates ACTH secretion from the anterior pituitary gland, and stimulates the production of clotting factor VIII.

ADH secretion is modulated by changes in serum osmolality and by alterations in intravascular volume. Changes in plasma osmolality are detected by osmoreceptors located within the anterior hypothalamus. Plasma ADH rises and falls in direct proportion to the serum osmolality. A concordantly linear relationship exists between ADH and the urine osmolality (Uosm). The Uosm is capped at about 1200 mOsm/kg, the maximum Uosm allowed by the renal medullary concentration gradient.

ADH secretion is maximally stimulated at a serum osmolality greater than 295 mOsm/kg and is suppressed when the osmolality falls below 284 mOsm/kg. Thirst can be considered the fail-safe mechanism for fluid and osmotic homeostasis, as it is initiated at a greater plasma osmolality (Posm) than is needed to stimulate ADH secretion. The thirst receptors are located within the hypothalamus and are distinct from the osmoreceptors that stimulate ADH secretion.

Changes in intravascular volume are detected by baroreceptors. There are two sets of baroreceptors: low-pressure volume receptors located in the right atrium and pulmonary venous system, and high-pressure arterial baroreceptors located in the carotid sinus and aortic arch. These receptors are normally under tonic inhibition; a drop in intravascular volume removes the inhibition, and results in a rise in ADH, leading to increased water reabsorption. ADH secretion is much more sensitive to changes in osmolality than to changes in intravascular volume. A 1% to 2% increase in osmolality will cause a rise in ADH secretion, whereas a much greater stimulus, such as a 5% to 10% drop in blood volume or blood pressure, is needed before the baroreceptors trigger the release of ADH.

In addition to changes in osmolality and intravascular volume, other physiologic factors that can stimulate ADH secretion include nausea, cytokines, interleukin (IL)-6, hypoglycemia, hypercarbia, and nicotine (Reihman et al, 1985; Masrorakos et al, 1994).

Basal plasma vasopressin normally ranges from 0.5 to 2 pg/µL. In concert with atrial natriuretic hormone, thirst, and the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis, ADH works to maintain blood pressure, volume, and tonicity. Accordingly, when a patient is evaluated for a disorder of water homeostasis, these multiple interactive factors must be taken into consideration. Normal plasma osmolality ranges from 280 to 295 mOsm/kg, and plasma sodium from 135 to 145 mmol/L. It can be determined directly by measuring the plasma freezing-point depression or the plasma vapor pressure. It can also be determined indirectly, by measuring the plasma sodium, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), and glucose, and applying the following formula (also, see Chapter 8):

$$\text{Plasma osmolality} = \{2 \times [\text{Na}]\,(\text{mmol/L})\} + \{\text{Glucose}\,(\text{mg/dL})/18\} + \{\text{BUN}\,(\text{mg/dL})/2.8\} \quad \textbf{(Eq. 24-1)}$$

This equation is discussed at length in Chapters 8 and 14.

Because sodium is the major plasma solute, hyponatremia is tantamount to hypoosmolality. There is usually excellent agreement between the directly measured and calculated osmolality. However, there are two situations when this does not hold true: in pseudohyponatremia (also termed **factitious hyponatremia**), and in the presence of high concentrations of other effective solutes. In pseudohyponatremia, the plasma volume is displaced by the presence of high concentrations of lipids or proteins (e.g., hyperglobulinemia), resulting in a low plasma concentration of Na^+, although the activity of Na^+ in water is normal. In these instances, if Na^+ is directly measured with an ion-specific electrode (ISE), the activity reading is normal. In order to extend electrode life, laboratories using high-throughput analyzers generally perform ISE measurements on diluted plasma (so-called *indirect ISE measurement*), making the resultant plasma concentration measurement vulnerable to pseudohyponatremia.

http://basicbook.net

The measured Posm is unaffected by the presence of hyperlipidemia or paraproteinemia, as the concentration of solute particles per volume of fluid is unchanged.

The presence of high concentrations of osmotically active solutes such as glucose, radiographic contrast agents, mannitol, and ethylene glycol causes a shift of water from the intracellular to the extracellular compartment, leading to dilutional hyponatremia (this situation, though quite different from that described in the preceding paragraph, is also sometimes referred to as *pseudohyponatremia*). Similar **translocational hyponatremia** occurs with the absorption of glycine during transurethral prostate resection, as well as in gynecologic and orthopedic procedures (Ayus & Arieff, 1997; Hahn, 2001). The calculated Posm is unreliable in these situations; Posm must be measured directly instead. A difference between the calculated and measured Posm of greater than 10 mOsm/kg supports the presence of pseudohyponatremia or other osmolar solutes (Kumar & Berl, 1998). The most common situation causing a large "osmolal gap" is ethanol intoxication.

In hyperglycemia, the measured Na^+ should be corrected by the addition of 1.6 mmol/L for each 100-mg/dL increase in serum glucose above normal (100 mg/dL). A more recent analysis suggested that this formula may underestimate the decrease in Na^+ caused by hyperglycemia, and supported the use of a 2.4-mmol/L correction factor (Hillier et al, 1999). True hyponatremia is present if, after the correction formula is applied, the serum Na^+ is still <135 mmol/L.

During pregnancy, there is a resetting of the osmostat with a drop in osmolality of approximately 10 mOsm/kg (Lindheimer & Davison, 1995). The precise mechanism for this is not known; however, studies have suggested a role for the hormone relaxin and for the enzyme oxytocinase. During pregnancy, there is a progressive increase in placental production of oxytocinase, which, in addition to breaking down oxytocin, breaks down vasopressin, possibly resulting in a change in the hypothalamic AVP osmolality feedback loop.

Diabetes Insipidus

Diabetes insipidus (DI) is classified as being either central (due to absent or decreased ADH secretion from the hypothalamus or neurohypophysis) or nephrogenic (due to renal resistance to the actions of ADH). Each is further subcategorized as being complete or partial. All variants are characterized by the passage of large volumes of dilute urine (>2.5 L/day) in the face of an inappropriately elevated plasma osmolality. Provided the thirst mechanism is intact and there is free access to water, most individuals can avoid dehydration and maintain normal plasma osmolality (Posm) and serum sodium levels.

The water deprivation test is the preferred diagnostic test for identifying the presence of DI (Table 24-2). Central and nephrogenic DI can be distinguished by the response to either endogenous or exogenous vasopressin (Table 24-3). In neurogenic DI, ADH levels are low and the kidney rapidly acts to conserve water in response to exogenous ADH

TABLE 24-2

Water Deprivation Test for Diagnosing and Classifying Diabetes Insipidus

Patients with mild polyuria may be instructed to withhold all fluid intake from 10 PM onward. For those with more severe polyuria (8 to 10 L/day), water deprivation should be started early in the morning under close observation.

1. During testing, the patient is forbidden to take in anything by mouth.
2. Obtain the following baseline parameters: urine volume (Uvol) and urinary osmolality (Uosm), plasma osmolality (Posm), and plasma sodium (PNa). Also record the weight and blood pressure (BP)/pulse (P) seated and standing.
3. Urine and plasma are collected hourly for Uvol, Uosm, and Posm. Weight, BP, and P are also recorded. Record requests for fluid.
4. When the Uosm has plateaued (e.g., hourly increase <30 mOsm/kg for 3 consecutive hours), or when body weight has decreased by 3% to 5%, or the patient develops a >20–mm Hg drop in systolic BP, obtain samples for Uvol, Uosm, Posm, PNa, and AVP (plasma).
5. Administer 1 mcg of desmopressin IV or IM, or 5 mcg of AVP SC Uosm; urine output and Posm are recorded at 30, 60, and 120 minutes after the injection. The highest Uosm value is used to evaluate the patient's response to AVP.

Precautions

When possible, discontinue any medications that can influence ADH secretion. Observe for hypotension and nausea, which may stimulate ADH secretion. The patient should not be permitted to smoke during the test.

Interpretation

Normal	Final Uosm before AVP challenge is higher than Posm. Following AVP challenge, the Uosm is less than 10% higher than the maximal Uosm achieved with water restriction alone.
Neurogenic DI	Final Uosm before AVP challenge is less than Posm. Following AVP administration, there is a greater than 50% increase in Uosm.
Nephrogenic DI	Final Uosm before AVP challenge is less than Posm. Following AVP administration, there is a less than 10% increase in Uosm.
Partial central DI	Uosm may be higher than Posm following dehydration; however, there is only a 10% to 50% increase in Uosm following administration of AVP.
Partial nephrogenic DI	Uosm may be higher than Posm following dehydration; however, there is a greater than 10% increase in Uosm following administration of AVP.

Plotting basal and postdehydration Uosm and plasma ADH on the nomograms from Zerbe and Robertson will permit further distinction between partial nephrogenic DI, partial central DI, and primary polydipsia (see Figs. 24-3 and 24-4).

ADH, Antidiuretic hormone; *AVP,* arginine vasopressin; *DI,* diabetes insipidus; *IM,* intramuscular; *IV,* intravenous; *SC,* subcutaneous.

TABLE 24-3

Tests in the Differential Diagnosis of Disorders of Water Homeostasis

	BASELINE			AFTER 12-HOUR FLUID RESTRICTION			
Disorder	**Serum Na+ and Osmolality**	**Urine Na+ and Osmolality**	**Serum ADH**	**Serum Na+ and Osmolality**	**Urine Na+ and Osmolality**	**Serum ADH**	**Urine Osmolality Post-AVP Challenge**
Normal control	N	N	N	N	High	High	Same
SIADH	Low	N-High	High	Low-N	High	High	—
Neurogenic DI	N-High	Low	Low	High	Low-N	Low	Increased
Nephrogenic DI	N-High	Low	N-High	High	Low-N	High	Same
Psychogenic polydipsia	Low–N	Low	Low	N	N-High	N-High	Same

ADH, Antidiuretic hormone; *AVP,* arginine vasopressin; *DI,* diabetes insipidus; *N,* normal; *SIADH,* syndrome of inappropriate secretion of ADH.

http://basicbook.net

administration. In contrast, nephrogenic DI is associated with normal or increased levels of ADH, and administration of additional ADH has little or no effect on renal water reabsorption. Differentiating partial nephrogenic DI from primary polydipsia can be more difficult. Unlike DI, where the underlying problem is difficulty in holding on to free water, in primary polydipsia the pathophysiology arises from increased intake of fluids. Primary polydipsia (PP) can be due to either dipsogenic DI or psychogenic polydipsia. In dipsogenic DI, the setpoint for ADH secretion is normal; however, a resetting of the thirst threshold occurs, so that it is now below the threshold for ADH secretion. In psychogenic polydipsia, the osmostat for ADH secretion is normal; however, because of underlying psychiatric illness, the subject has a compulsion to drink excessive volumes of liquid. This intake of copious volumes of fluid as seen in PP leads to a washout in the medullary concentrating gradient within the kidney, resulting in a decreased ability to concentrate the urine in response to dehydration. Differentiating between nephrogenic DI and PP, as well as among those who have an equivocal response to ADH, is best achieved by plotting the basal and postdehydration Uosm and plasma ADH on nomograms created by Zerbe and Robertson (Figs. 24-3 and 24-4) (Zerbe & Robertson, 1981; 1987). Direct measurement of plasma ADH may be helpful in confirming the diagnosis of a pathologic ADH deficiency or excess in the presence of a known or suspected disorder of renal function or fluid and electrolyte homeostasis, or when a patient is unable to tolerate physiologic testing. In cases of congenital DI, family members who are heterozygote carriers of ADH gene mutations may be identified by demonstrating decreased ADH levels, which may be the only subclinical manifestation of ADH deficiency.

Nephrogenic DI is either congenital or acquired. An X-linked receptor defect is the most common etiology for congenital nephrogenic DI; medications are the most common cause of acquired nephrogenic DI (Holtzman & Ausiello, 1994). Medications known to be associated with acquired nephrogenic DI include lithium, demeclocycline, and methoxyflurane anesthetics. Other causes of acquired nephrogenic DI include hypercalcemia, hypokalemia, sickle cell disease, and postobstructive uropathy (Box 24-4).

Neurogenic DI may be congenital, the result of an autosomal dominant mutation in the ADH signal peptide or in the exons that code for neurophysins (McLeod et al, 1993; Yuasa et al, 1993). More commonly, neurogenic DI is induced by lesions affecting the hypothalamus, (metastatic tumors, trauma, granulomatous disorders) or medications. Drugs that may cause neurogenic DI by suppressing ADH release include phenytoin

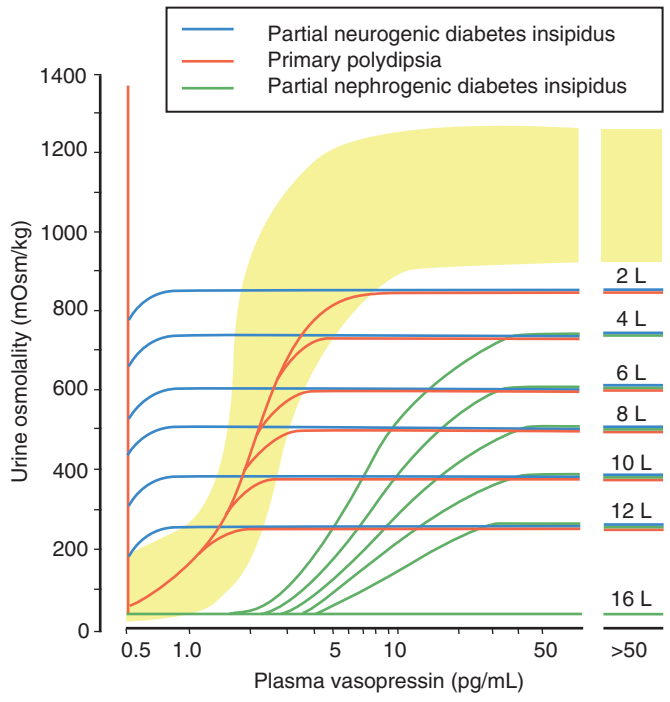


Figure 24-3 The relationship between urine osmolality (Uosm) and plasma arginine vasopressin (AVP/ADH) in patients with polyuria of diverse causes and severity. Each of the three categories of polyuria is described by its own family of sigmoid curves of differing heights. Differences in height within a family reflect differences in maximum concentrating capacity caused by "washout" of the medullary concentration gradient. They are proportional to the severity of the polyuria (indicated in liters per day at the right end of each plateau). The normal response is depicted in yellow. The three categories of polyuria differ principally in the ascending portion of the dose-response curve. In patients with partial neurogenic diabetes insipidus (DI), the curve lies to the left of normal, reflecting increased sensitivity to the antidiuretic effects of very low concentrations of plasma ADH. In contrast, in patients with partial nephrogenic DI, the curve lies to the right of normal, reflecting decreased sensitivity to ADH. In primary polydipsia, the relationship of Uosm to ADH remains relatively normal. (Redrawn from Bichet DG: Diabetes insipidus and vasopressin. In Moore WT, Eastman RC, editors: *Diagnostic endocrinology,* ed 2, St Louis, 1996, Mosby, p 158, with permission.)

BOX 24-4

Causes of Diabetes Insipidus

Central

Primary
Familial
Idiopathic
Acquired
Tumors—craniopharyngioma, pituitary tumors, metastases (i.e., lung, breast), Rathke's cleft cyst, nonlymphocytic leukemia
Granulomatous disorders—sarcoidosis, Langerhans' cell histiocytosis, Wegener's granulomatosis
Traumatic—head trauma, surgery
Infectious—tuberculosis, meningitis, encephalitis
Vascular—cerebral aneurysm, sickle cell anemia, Sheehan's syndrome
Drugs—alcohol, diphenylhydantoin, chlorpromazine, and β-adrenergic agonists
Other—lymphocytic hypophysitis, hypoxic encephalopathy

Nephrogenic

Hereditary
Mutation in the V2 receptor
Mutation in the aquaporin gene
Acquired
Drugs—lithium, phenytoin, demeclocycline, vinblastine, cisplatin, propoxyphene, colchicine, gentamicin, amphotericin, ethanol, atrial natriuretic hormone, norepinephrine, methoxyflurane anesthetics, furosemide
Electrolyte disorders—hypercalcemia, hypokalemia
Systemic illnesses—sickle cell, multiple myeloma, amyloidosis, sarcoidosis, Sjögren's syndrome, polycystic kidney disease
Other—low-protein diet, postobstructive uropathy

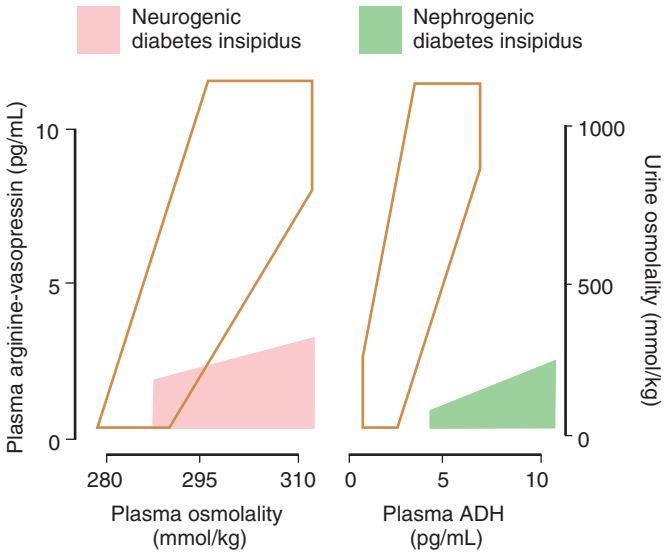


Figure 24-4 *Left,* Relationship between plasma arginine vasopressin (AVP/ADH) and plasma osmolality during the infusion of hypertonic saline. Patients with primary polydipsia and nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (DI) have values within the normal range *(open area),* in contrast to patients with neurogenic DI, who show a subnormal plasma ADH response to a rise in osmolality *(pink). Right,* Relationship between urine osmolality and plasma ADH during dehydration and water loading. Patients with primary polydipsia and neurogenic DI have values within the normal range *(open area),* in contrast to patients with nephrogenic DI, who have hypotonic urine despite high plasma ADH *(green).* (Redrawn from Bichet DG: Diabetes insipidus and vasopressin. In Moore TW, Eastman RC, editors: *Diagnostic endocrinology,* ed 2, St Louis, 1996, Mosby, p 168, with permission.)

http://basicbook.net

(Dilantin), chlorpromazine, and α-adrenergic agonists. It has been suspected that autoantibodies directed against the ADH-producing cells of the hypothalamus may be responsible for some cases of idiopathic neurogenic DI (De Bellis et al, 1994, 1999; Maghnie et al, 2000). These antibodies are detectable by indirect immunofluorescence antibody.

Another common condition in which decreased ADH levels have been found is primary nocturnal enuresis in children. Although these patients have ADH levels only slightly lower than controls (2.9 ng/L vs. 3.6 ng/L), the clinical symptoms are reliably ameliorated by vasopressin therapy (Willie et al, 1994). The determination of ADH levels in diagnosing this condition is not always helpful because of moderate overlap between enuretic and normal children. Measuring the specific gravity in the first morning urine is more reliable for identifying children who may benefit from ADH supplementation; they will have a urine specific gravity below 1.015 (Mevorach et al, 1995).

Syndrome of Inappropriate Secretion of ADH

The syndrome of inappropriate secretion of ADH (SIADH) is characterized by a euvolemic hypoosmolar hyponatremia, associated with hyperosmolar urine (the result of continued inappropriate natriuresis). By definition, SIADH cannot be diagnosed until nonosmotic stimuli for ADH secretion and other pathologies that interfere with free water clearance have been excluded (Vistorina et al, 2002). Physiologic triggers of ADH secretion include nausea, pregnancy, hypoglycemia, intracranial hypertension, mechanical ventilation, and hypoxia. Hypothyroidism and glucocorticoid deficiency cause a decrease in free water clearance, leading to a dilutional hyponatremia. Mineralocorticoid deficiency can lead to hyponatremia caused by increased renal sodium loss. It is therefore extremely important to test for deficiencies of these axes and to institute appropriate hormonal replacement therapy before making a diagnosis of SIADH. Other confounding factors that can hamper the diagnosis of SIADH include renal disease, cardiac disease, and medications such as diuretics. In these situations, one can cautiously perform a water load test (Table 24-4). In the absence of medications or other conditions that may impair diuresis, failure to excrete 80% to 90% of the administered water load within 4 hours and to suppress the Uosm to <100 mOsm/kg is consistent with the diagnosis of SIADH.

In the right clinical setting, the diagnosis of SIADH often can be confidently made on the basis of serum and urine electrolyte determinations alone. A spot urine Na^+ less than 30 mmol/L can generally distinguish those with hyponatremia due to volume depletion from those with SIADH, in whom urine Na^+ greater than 30 mmol/L (Chung et al, 1987). In contrast, differentiating the patient with euvolemia and SIADH from the one with hypovolemia and concomitant renal salt wasting (e.g., salt-losing nephropathy, diuretic use) can be much more difficult. In addition to hyponatremia, both have a spot UNa^+ greater than 30 mmol/L and a fractional excretion of Na^+ greater than 1. The fractional excretion of sodium (FENa [%]) is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{U_{[Na^+]} \times P_{[Cr]}}{P_{[Na^+]} \times U_{[Cr]}} \times 100 \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 24-2)}$$

where $U[Na^+]$ = urine sodium concentration; $P[Na^+]$ = plasma sodium concentration; $U[Cr]$ = urine creatinine concentration; and $P[Cr]$ = plasma creatinine concentration.

TABLE 24-4
Water Load Test

1. Baseline: The patient must be euvolemic and have a serum Na^+ between 125 and 150 mmol/L and Posm >275 mOsm/kg.
2. The patient is given 20 mL of water per kilogram of body weight (max = 1500 mL) to drink over 30 minutes.
3. With the patient maintained in the recumbent position, urine output is collected every hour for the next 5 hours. Record the volume and osmolality of each specimen.

Interpretation

Normals	Excrete 80% to 90% of the administered water load within 4 hours, and suppress the Uosm to <100 mOsm/kg.
SIADH	Failure to meet these criteria in the absence of medications or other conditions that may impair diuresis is consistent with the diagnosis of SIADH.

SIADH, Syndrome of inappropriate secretion of ADH.

One way to distinguish between the two is to administer 1 L of 0.9% NaCl intravenously over 24 hours for 2 days. A rise in serum Na^+ by more than 5 mmol/L is suggestive of hypovolemia. In SIADH, no change or an increase of less than 5 mmol/L occurs. Alternatively, fluid restriction to 600 to 800 mL/day for 2 to 3 days will lead to improvement in hyponatremia in SIADH but not in renal salt wasting (see Table 24-3).

The cause of renal salt wasting in SIADH is twofold. At the onset of the disease, there is volume expansion, which inhibits the renin-aldosterone axis and leads to greater improved delivery of sodium to the distal tubules. The continued sodium loss is due to secretion of atrial natriuretic protein (Kamoi et al, 1990), which too is stimulated by increased intravascular volume.

Because of hyperfiltration and the local actions of ADH on the renal V2 receptor, SIADH is one of the two states in which some of the lowest uric acid levels occur; the other is pregnancy. In SIADH, the serum levels of ADH may be variably increased, usually out of proportion to Posm; however, approximately 20% of cases meeting the physiologic diagnosis of SIADH will not have detectable levels of ADH (Zerbe & Robertson, 1980). This may be due to insensitivity of the assay to low levels of ADH, increased renal sensitivity to ADH, or perhaps the presence of another hormone with antidiuretic activity (Kamoi, 1997).

The diagnosis of SIADH is largely a diagnosis of exclusion, with the clinician having ruled out other causes of hyponatremia (Fig. 24-5). It most often occurs as a manifestation of the paraneoplastic syndrome; however, it may also occur in central nervous system trauma or infection, in lung disease, or as the result of medications (vinca alkaloids, tricyclic antidepressants, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors) (Box 24-5).

THYROID FUNCTION

The normal thyroid gland weighs about 15 to 25 g. It consists of two lobes connected in the middle with a narrow isthmus. It is divided into lobules, each of which is composed of 20 to 40 follicles separated by highly vascular connective tissue. The follicles are ring-shaped structures, in which a single cell band of follicular cells surrounds a closed cavity containing colloid, thyroid hormone, thyroglobulin (Tg), and a variety of other glycoproteins. The follicular cells rest on a basement membrane that is rich in glycoprotein that separates the cells from surrounding capillaries. The apex of the follicular cells has microvilli that extend into the colloid, where iodination, exocytosis, and the initial phase of hormone secretion occur. The follicles are sites of thyroid hormone synthesis and storage. The thyroid gland also contains parafollicular cells, or C cells, which are responsible for the synthesis and secretion of calcitonin, a hormone important in calcium metabolism.

An intact hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid (HPT) axis and a ready source of iodide are required for normal thyroid hormone synthesis. The hypothalamus secretes TRH, which, in turn, stimulates the thyrotrophs of the anterior pituitary gland to secrete TSH (thyrotropin). As implied by the name, TSH stimulates thyroid hormone synthesis and secretion by the thyroid gland. Thyroid hormone exerts negative feedback on both the hypothalamus and the pituitary gland to maintain a TSH concentration

BOX 24-5
Causes of SIADH

CNS disease
Neoplasm, infection, trauma, cerebrovascular accident
Neoplasm
Oat cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma of the lung, pancreatic cancer, lymphoma
Pulmonary infection
TB, pneumonia, positive-pressure ventilation
Idiopathic
Medications
- Oral hypoglycemics—chlorpropamide, tolbutamide
- Antineoplastics—vincristine, cyclophosphamide
- Diuretics—hydrochlorothiazide
- Psychotropics—amitriptyline, phenothiazines, SSRIs, monoamine oxidase inhibitors
- Other—morphine, barbiturates, clofibrate, nicotine, acetylcholine, anesthetic agents, β-adrenergic stimulants, metoclopramide, desmopressin

CNS, Central nervous system; *SIADH,* syndrome of inappropriate secretion of ADH; *SSRIs,* selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors.

http://basicbook.net

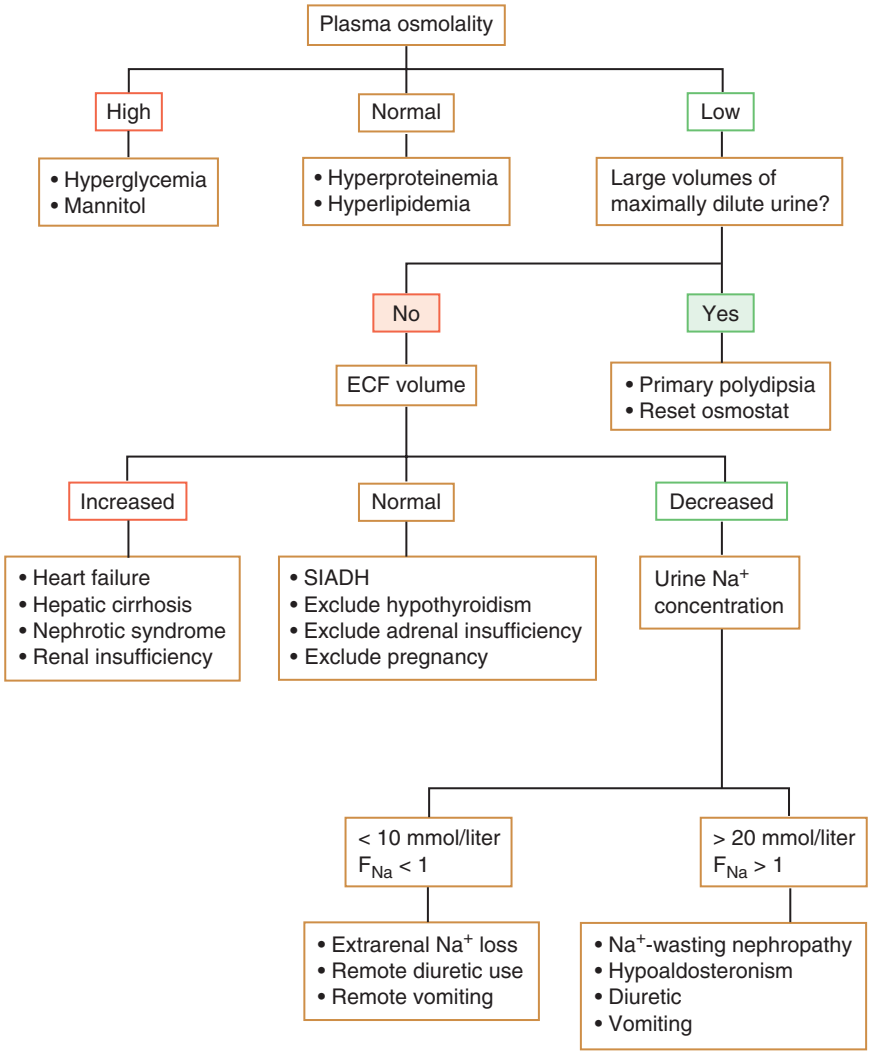


Figure 24-5 **Algorithm for the evaluation of hyponatremia.** *ECF,* Extracellular fluid; *SIADH,* syndrome of inappropriate secretion of ADH. (From Singer GG: Fluid and electrolyte management. In Carey CF, Lee HH, Woeltje KF, editors: *The Washington manual of medical therapeutics,* ed 29, Philadelphia, 1998, Lippincott-Raven, p 44, with permission.)

within narrow limits; it also acts peripherally to mediate numerous metabolic activities.

Under TSH stimulation, iodine enters the follicular cells as inorganic iodide and is transformed into thyroid hormones, thyroxine (T_4), and 3,5,3′-triiodothyronine (T_3) through a series of metabolic steps. The sequence of events as depicted in Figure 24-6 can be broken down into (1) active transport of iodide into the cell; (2) iodination of the tyrosyl residues on Tg; (3) coupling of iodotyrosine molecules within Tg to form T_4 and T_3; (4) proteolysis of Tg with release of free iodotyrosine, T_4, and T_3, and secretion of iodothyronine into the circulation; (5) deiodination of iodotyrosines within the thyroid and reuse of liberated iodide; and (6) deiodination of T_4 to T_3.

One hundred percent of circulating T_4 is of thyroidal origin, whereas only 20% of T_3 is of thyroidal origin; 80% is produced enzymatically in nonthyroidal tissues by 5′-monodeiodination of T_4 (Lum & Nicoloff, 1984). Approximately 110 nmol (85 μg) of T_4 and 10 nmol (8.5 μg) of T_3 are produced daily by the thyroid gland. The thyroid hormones circulate while attached to plasma proteins. About 70% of T_4 is bound to thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG), 20% to transthyretin (formerly called thyroxine-**binding prealbumin**), and 10% to albumin. Although most of the circulating T_3 is bound to TBG; it does so with a 10-fold reduced affinity as compared with that of T_4 (Robbins, 1996; Braverman & Utiger, 2000). Small percentages of T_4 and T_3 remain unbound to protein—about 0.03% and 0.3%, respectively. As with other hormones, it is the free component that is metabolically active.

Thyroid disease may be classified functionally into hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, and euthyroidism. Signs and symptoms of hyperthyroidism include heat intolerance, tachycardia, weight loss, weakness, emotional lability, and tremor. The most common clinical syndrome associated with hyperthyroidism is Graves' disease, caused by circulating antibodies to the TSH receptor. Other disorders that lead to hyperthyroidism include toxic adenoma and, rarely, TSH-secreting pituitary tumors and thyroid carcinoma.

Hypothyroidism results in hoarseness, cold sensitivity, dry skin, constipation, bradycardia, and muscle weakness. Myxedema coma is an advanced stage of thyroid hormone deficiency characterized by progressive stupor, hypothermia, and hypoventilation. Failure of the thyroid gland itself to secrete an adequate amount of thyroid hormone is called **primary hypothyroidism** and is most commonly iatrogenic in origin, the result of either ablation with radioactive iodine or surgery to treat hyperthyroidism or after radiation to the head and neck for malignancy. Central hypothyroidism occurs when TSH secretion is decreased as a result of a pituitary disorder. Tertiary hypothyroidism is the result of hypothalamic dysfunction.

Thyroid diseases such as goiter, thyroid adenoma, and thyroid carcinoma typically occur in individuals who are euthyroid (clinically and biochemically). Accurate TSH assays permit the diagnosis of subclinical hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism. These patients appear clinically euthyroid; however, their TSH values are, respectively, suppressed or elevated. A number of clinical situations can lead to difficulties in the interpretation of thyroid function tests: The presence of abnormal protein–binding proteins (congenital or drug induced); alterations in thyroid hormone metabolism as seen in those hospitalized with acute psychiatric illness; alterations in thyroid hormone metabolism as seen in those on medications that affect thyroid hormone binding or the HPT axis directly. The most important and most common problem with thyroid function tests probably occurs in those patients with various illnesses that do not directly involve the thyroid gland, so-called **nonthyroidal illness.**

http://basicbook.net

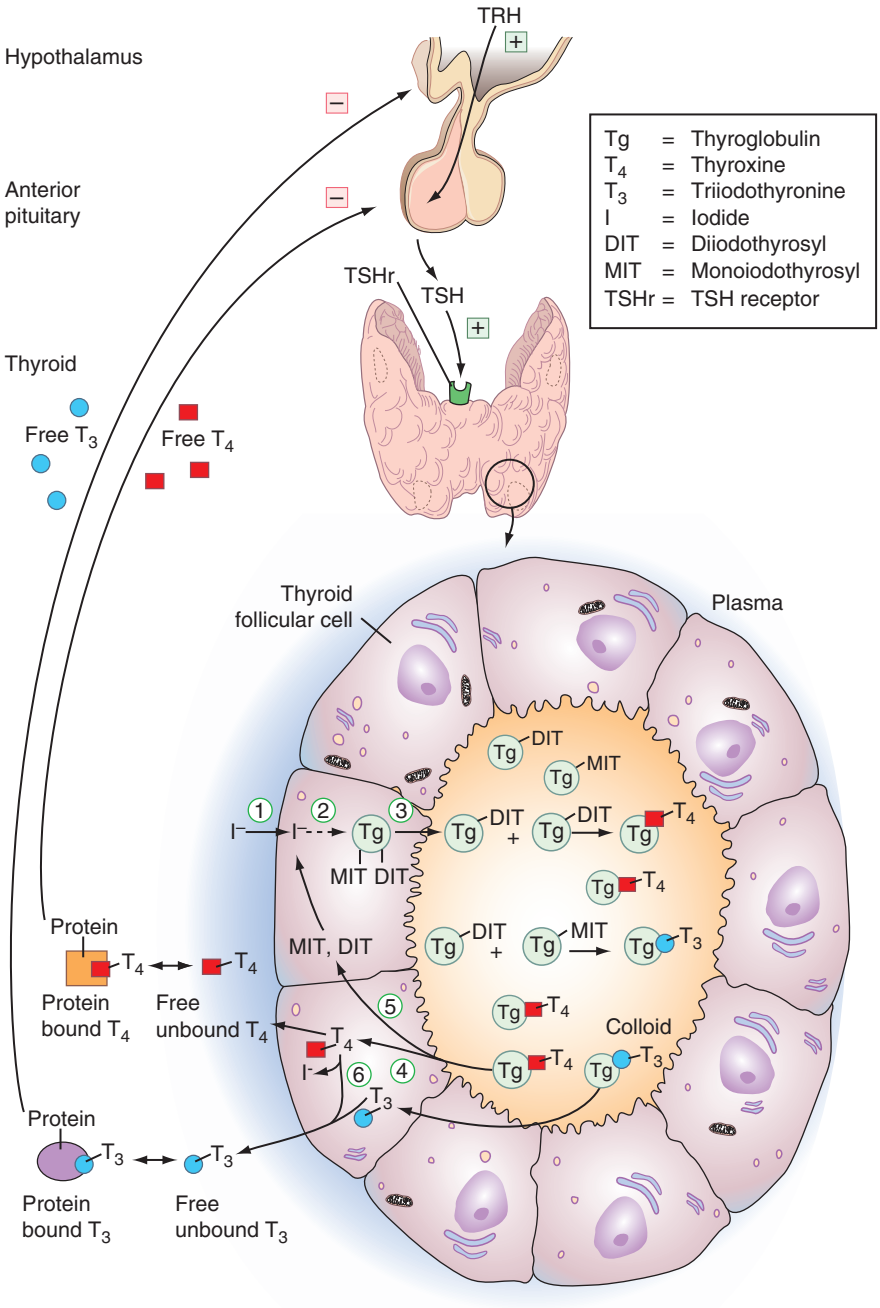


Figure 24-6 **Hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis and thyroid hormone synthesis.** The steps for thyroid hormone synthesis and release are described in further detail in the text. *TRH,* Thyrotropin-releasing hormone; *TSH,* thyroid-stimulating hormone.

THYROID HORMONE SYNTHESIS AND METABOLISM

Iodine is a major component of thyroid hormone; the main source of iodine is dietary intake. Deiodination of organic iodine-containing moieties within the gland serves as another source. Inorganic iodide is transported into the follicular cell by the sodium-iodide symporter (NIS) located in the basolateral membrane (Chambard et al, 1983). TSH modulates NIS activity: An increase in TSH secretion augments the uptake of iodide into the follicular cell. Iodide transport into the thyroid gland is also influenced by the serum iodide level; iodide deficiency increases pump activity, and iodide excess inhibits iodide uptake.

Thyroglobulin is a glycoprotein synthesized by the rough endoplasmic reticulum in the basal and perinuclear regions of the follicular cell. It is acted upon by the Golgi apparatus in the apical portion of the follicular cell, where its tyrosyl residues are iodinated, leading to the formation of monoiodotyrosyls and diiodotyrosyls (MITs and DITs). Tg is then transferred into the colloid for storage (Vassart & Dumont, 1973; Roth et al, 1985). This transformation of thyroglobulin into thyroid hormone requires two separate oxidative reactions, both catalyzed by thyroid peroxidase (TPO): the binding of iodide to Tg tyrosyl residues to form the iodotyrosyls MIT and DIT, and the subsequent coupling of MIT and DIT to produce T_4 and T_3 (Deme et al, 1976; Bjorkman et al, 1981). T_4 is formed by the coupling of two molecules of DIT; T_3 results from the union of one MIT and one DIT. T_4 and T_3 are released from Tg via lysosomal degradation. They are then secreted into the circulation at the basal membrane. All of these reactions are under the control of TSH.

About half of all T_4 is monodeiodinated in the 5′ position to form T_3, and about 40% undergoes deiodination of the inner ring of T_4 to form reverse T_3 (rT_3). The formation of rT_3, the third major circulating form of thyroid hormone, is catalyzed by the enzyme 5-deiodinase. Reverse T_3 has no biological activity, has a short half-life of 4 hours, and circulates bound to TBG; its formation is considered a disposal pathway in the peripheral metabolism of T_4 (LoPresti et al, 1989).

The intake of iodide influences the DIT/MIT ratio in Tg. DIT is the preferential iodotyrosine formed; thus, when iodide is abundant, T_4 is the

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 24-5
Metabolic Dynamics of T_4 and T_3

	T_4	T_3
Production rate, nmol/day	110	50
Fraction of circulating hormone of thyroid origin	100%	20%*
Serum concentration		
Total, nmol/L	100	1.8
Free, pmol/L	20	5
Fraction of total hormone in free form	0.0002	0.003
Half-life, days	≈7	0.75
Relative metabolic potency	0.3	1.0

T_3, 3,5,3′-triiodothyronine; T_4, thyroxine.
*80% of circulating T_3 comes from the peripheral deiodination of T_4. To convert total T_4 from nmol/L to μg/dL, or free T_4 from pmol/L to ng/dL, divide by 12.87. To convert total T_3 from nmol/L to ng/dL, or free T_3 from pmol/L to pg/dL, multiply by 65.1.
From Larsen PR, Davies TF, Schlumberger MJ, et al: Thyroid physiology and diagnostic evaluation of patients with thyroid disorders. In Larsen PR, Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, et al, editors: *Williams textbook of endocrinology,* ed 10, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders, p 342.

predominant form of hormone synthesized and secreted, but when iodide sources are diminished, MIT is produced in greater quantities, leading to increased T_3 formation and release. In addition, the thyroid gland has a 5′-deiodinase that converts T_4 to T_3. This process is under the control of TSH, so that T_3 secretion is enhanced during periods of TSH stimulation (i.e., primary hypothyroidism and cases with TSH-stimulating immunoglobulin [TSI]) (Ishii et al, 1983).

The monodeiodination of T_4 to T_3 and rT_3 accounts for 70% of the peripheral metabolism of T_4 (LoPresti et al, 1989); the remainder of T_4 metabolism occurs by conjugation of T_4 to sulfate, deamination, and decarboxylation to form the acetic acid analog tetrac, and by ether link cleavage (Engler & Burger, 1984) (Table 24-5). T_3 but not rT_3 can be conjugated with sulfate to form T_3-sulfate and can be converted to its acetic acid analog, triac (Engler & Burger, 1984). The enzymes responsible for these reactions are the phenolsulfotransferases, which are present in many tissues throughout the body, and the L-aminotransferase, located in the liver, respectively (Engler & Burger, 1984). After their formation from T_4, both T_3 and rT_3 undergo deiodination to form 3,3′-diiodothyronine (T_2).

Protein-bound thyroid hormones do not enter cells, are considered to be biologically inert, and function as storage reservoirs for circulating thyroid hormones. In contrast, the minute levels of free hormone fractions readily enter cells by specific membrane transport mechanisms to exert their biological effects. These effects are mediated by T_3 receptors located in the nucleus of the cell.

Four isoforms of the T_3 receptors have been described: α_1, α_2, β_1, and β_2 (Brent et al, 1991). α_1 and β_1 receptors are present in most tissues. Binding of T_3 to them promotes thyroid hormone action, presumably by increasing mRNA and protein synthesis. The β_2 receptor is unique to the pituitary gland and is central in the negative-feedback regulation of TSH by thyroid hormone. The α_2 receptor is inhibitory and acts as a negative regulator of thyroid hormone action.

Mutations in the β receptors, which diminish the ability of T_3 to bind to the nucleus, have been described in the syndrome of thyroid hormone resistance. Individuals with this syndrome have growth and mental retardation of varying degrees, as well as hypothyroidism (Refetoff, 1991).

HYPOTHALAMIC-PITUITARY-THYROID AXIS

The physiologic regulators responsible for integrating the function of the thyroid gland and the periphery include the hypothalamic hormone, TRH; the pituitary hormone, TSH; and the serum free T_4 and free T_3 concentrations. TRH enhances TSH synthesis, stimulates the secretion of any preformed TSH from the thyrotrophs, and modulates the bioactivity of TSH, resulting in the secretion of bioactive TSH (Beck-Peccos et al, 1985; Shupnik et al, 1986). TRH itself is under the negative-feedback influence of circulating thyroid hormones (TRH mRNA levels are inversely related to the circulating T_3 values) (Kakucska et al, 1992). The same feedback inhibition occurs at the level of the thyrotrophs.

Thyrotropin-Releasing Hormone

TRH is a modified tripeptide (pyroglutamyl-histidyl-proline-amide) derived from a large prepro-TRH molecule. The TRH molecule is released from the prepro molecule by a peptidase (Yamada et al, 1990). TRH is found in the hypothalamus, the brain, the C cells of the thyroid gland, the β cells of the pancreas, the myocardium, and the prostate and testis, as well as in the spinal cord. The neuron bodies producing TRH are innervated by catecholamine, leptin, and somatostatin-containing axons; all these hormones can influence the rate of its synthesis.

Thyroid hormones regulate their own production by feedback inhibition to synthesis of TRH and TSH in the hypothalamus and pituitary gland, respectively. TRH acts also on the production of other pituitary hormones, especially prolactin. Leptin plays a significant role in the regulation of the TRH gene (Bjorbeck & Kahn, 2004), affecting the individual's appetite for food intake. It is difficult to develop a specific antibody for TRH, and assays are not clinically useful.

Thyroid-Stimulating Hormone

TSH is a glycoprotein consisting of two monocovalently linked α and β subunits. The α subunit has the same amino acid sequences as LH, FSH, and human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). It is the β subunit that carries specific information to the binding receptors for expression of hormonal activities.

The radioimmunoassay for measuring TSH was first developed by Odell and colleagues in 1965. This **first-generation assay** did not have sufficient sensitivity to distinguish normal TSH levels from the suppressed levels seen in primary hyperthyroidism. By the mid 1980s, a "sensitive" or second-generation immunometric TSH method using monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies was developed, which had an improved sensitivity to 0.1 to 0.2 mU/L. Refinements in the immunometric method led to the third-generation assays now in common use, which allow measurement down to about 0.005 mU/L. Although a fourth-generation TSH assay has recently been developed with a sensitivity of 0.0004 mU/L, it is not widely available, and the third-generation assays provide sufficient sensitivity for the vast majority of clinical applications. The American Thyroid Association (ATA) recommendations state that third-generation assays should be able to quantitate TSH in the 0.010 to 0.020-mU/L range on an interassay basis with a coefficient of variation of 20% or less. In reporting assay results, the ATA recommends using functional sensitivity, defined as the point at which the interassay precision has a coefficient of variation equal to or less than 20% (Spencer et al, 1996).

Owing to improvements in the sensitivity of the TSH assay, this test alone can identify virtually all instances of hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism, except when there is damage to the hypothalamus or pituitary gland, thyroid hormone resistance, or interference with normal functioning of the HPT axis due to medication. TSH results within the reference interval usually exclude thyroid dysfunction and help distinguish the profound TSH suppression typical of frank Graves' thyrotoxicosis (TSH <0.01 mIU/L) from the modest degrees of TSH suppression (0.01 to 0.1 mIU/L) observed with mild (subclinical) primary hyperthyroidism and some cases of nonthyroidal illness. Of note, as assay sensitivity has improved, the normal range has not changed, remaining between approximately 0.5 and 5.0 mIU/L in most laboratories. However, the serum TSH concentration detected in patients with severe thyrotoxicosis has been lower with each successive improvement in the TSH assays: Using a fourth-generation assay, the serum TSH is less than 0.004 mIU/L in patients with severe hyperthyroidism. Hyperthyroid patients have suppressed TSH values, with the exception of those few individuals who have hyperthyroidism caused by a TSH-producing tumor or other diseases such as pituitary resistance to thyroid hormone. Subclinical hyperthyroidism is defined by the presence of a low TSH with normal levels of T_4 and T_3 (Table 24-6).

In most individuals with hypothyroidism, serum TSH results are clearly elevated, but results may be inappropriately normal for the levels of T_4 and T_3 in those with pituitary or hypothalamic disorders. The term *subclinical hypothyroidism* is used to describe patients with elevated TSH concentration but with normal levels of T_4, T_3, and FT_4. An important cause of both increased and decreased TSH results is nonthyroidal illness (NTI). Patients with NTI tend to have low TSH results during their acute illness, and then TSH rises to within or above the reference range with resolution of the underlying illness, ultimately returning to normal once the acute illness has resolved. The situation is complicated because medications, including glucagons, opioids, glucocorticoids, and dopamine, suppress TSH. The sensitive TSH assays are helpful in evaluation of thyroid hormone treatment for both replacement therapy and suppressive therapy.

Despite the clinical sensitivity of TSH, a TSH-centered strategy has two primary limitations. First, it assumes that hypothalamic-pituitary function is intact and normal. Second, it assumes that the patient is stable (i.e., the patient had no recent therapy for hyperthyroidism or hypothyroidism)

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 24-6
Characterization of Thyroid Disorders According to Results of Thyroid Function Tests

Disorder	TSH	T_4	T_3	FT_4	Tg	TBG	rT_3	aTPO	ATG	TBII	TSI	TBA
Primary hypothyroidism	↑	↓	N or ↓	↓	N or ↓	N	↓	N or ↑	N or ↑	N or ↑	n	n or ↑
Transient neonatal hypothyroidism	↑	↓	↓	↓	N or ↓	N	↓	N	N	↑	n	↑
Hashimoto's thyroiditis/ hypothyroidism	↑	N or ↓	N or ↓	N or ↓	N or ↓	N	↓	↑	↑	n or ↑	n	n or ↑
Graves' disease	↓	↑	↑	↑	↑	N	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	n or ↑
Neonatal Graves' disease	↓	↑	↑	↑	↑	N	↑	n or ↑	n or ↑	↑	↑	n or ↑
TSH deficiency	N or ↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	N	↓	n	n	N	n	n
Thyroid dyshormonogenesis	↑	↓	↓	↓	N, ↓ or ↑	N	↑	n	n	N	n	n
Thyroid hormone resistance	N or ↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	N	↑	n	n	N	n	n
TSH-dependent hyperthyroidism	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	N	↑	n	n	n	n	n
T_4 protein-binding abnormalities*	N	V	V	N	N	V+	V	n	n	N	n	n
Nonthyroidal illness	V	N or ↓	↓	V	N	N	N or ↑	n	n	N	n	n
Subacute thyroiditis†	↓ or ↑	↑ or ↓	↑ or ↓	↑ or ↓	↑ or ↓	N	↑ or ↓	n	n	N	n	n

ATG, Antithyroglobulin; *aTPO*, anti-thyroid peroxidase; *FT_4*, free thyroxine; *N*, normal; *n*, negative; *rT_3*, reverse triiodothyronine; *TBA*, TSH receptor–blocking antibody; *TBII*, TSH-binding inhibiting immunoglobulin; *T_g*, thyroglobulin; *T_3*, triiodothyronine; *T_4*, thyroxine; *TBG*, thyroxine-binding globulin; *TSH*, thyroid-stimulating hormone; *TSI*, thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin; *V*, variable.
*The spectrum of binding protein abnormalities includes increased or decreased TBG binding, increased or decreased transthyretin binding, and ↑ albumin binding.
†Subacute thyroiditis involves a transient period of hyperthyroidism followed by a transient hypothyroid state.
From Fisher DA, editor: *Disorders of thyroid function,* online version of the Quest diagnostic manual. ed 3, p 268.

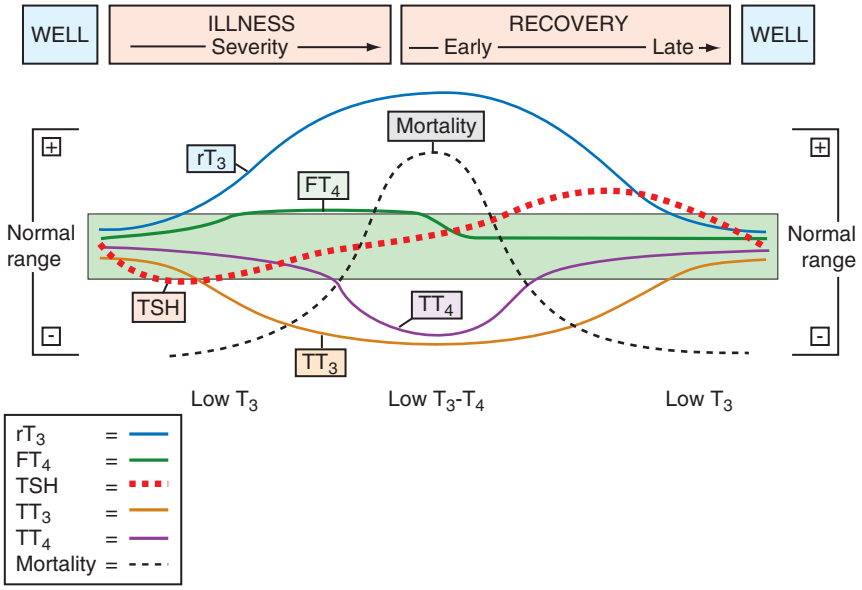


Figure 24-7 **Changes in thyroid hormones during severe illness.** *FT_4*, Free thyroxine; *rT_3*, reverse triiodothyronine; *TSH*, thyroid-stimulating hormone; *TT_3*, total triiodothyronine; *TT_4*, total thyroxine. (Redrawn from Demers LM, Spencer CA: *NACB: laboratory support for the diagnosis and monitoring of thyroid disease,* 2003, p 11, with permission. Available at: www.nacb.org.)

(Wardle et al, 2001). If either of these criteria is not met, the serum TSH result can be misleading (see Table 24-6). In these instances, to confirm the presence of thyroid dysfunction, in addition to measuring TSH, measurement of FT_4 with or without total T_4 may prove helpful. Serum Free T_3 and serum TSH measurements are appropriate in patients suspected of hyperthyroidism, as they may have overproduction of T_3 with a normal to low-normal T_4 **(T_3 thyrotoxicosis).**

Thyroxine

After release from its thyroid follicles, thyroxine will bind to various proteins in the blood (thyroid-binding globulin, albumin, thyretin). Thyroxine can be measured by immunoassay after the hormone is separated from the carrier protein. The reference range is 5 to 12.5 µg/dL in adults, with slightly lower results for certain pediatric age groups. Although TSH is the most important test of thyroid function, thyroxine measurements are often used along with TSH and can be important in interpreting TSH results. The combination of a low T_4 and an increased TSH is indicative of primary hypothyroidism, whereas elevated T_4 and T_3 combined with decreased TSH are characteristic of primary hyperthyroidism. Hyperthyroidism, however, has been reported in patients with an elevated serum T_4 but with serum T_3 levels within the reference range or low. This so-called **T_4 thyrotoxicosis** can occur in patients with iodine-induced thyrotoxicosis; in patients on beta blockers, amiodarone, or large doses of steroids; and in thyrotoxic patients with NTI. A suppressed TSH level associated with a normal to low-normal T_4 and a high T_3 characterizes T_3 thyrotoxicosis. This is more common in a toxic nodule (see Table 24-6).

Severe nonthyroidal illness is associated with low T_4 and low T_3; this so-called **low T_4 and T_3 syndrome** (an adaptive response to reduce metabolic demands and conserve protein stores) (LoPresti & Nicoloff, 1995) is associated with a poor prognosis (Chopra, 1997). It is thought to arise from a maladjusted central inhibition of TRH (Van den Berghe et al, 1998; Van den Berghe 2000) (Fig. 24-7).

Euthyroid hyperthyroxinemia is distinguished by the presence of an increased serum T_4 level in association with a normal TSH in an otherwise euthyroid individual. This entity has a variety of causes, including increased binding proteins as may be seen with certain drugs (e.g., estrogen) or medical conditions (e.g., liver disease). It is also seen in patients who are acutely hospitalized for psychiatric illness and in patients with familial

http://basicbook.net

dysalbuminemia. When medications or other factors cause increased protein binding, there is a consequent increase in the serum total T_4 level; conversely, a decrease in binding capacity leads to a decrease in serum total T_4. These perturbations do not have any physiologic effect, as it is the free hormone, not the protein-bound component, that is bioactive. In these situations, free T_4 correlates better with thyroid functional status than does serum total T_4.

The so-called **T_3 uptake (T_3-UP) test** is a classical method of adjusting a total T_4 measurement for alterations in binding protein. A T_3-UP result is a relative measurement of the unoccupied binding sites of all circulating proteins. It was originally performed by saturating available binding sites with radiolabeled T_3, and then measuring the unbound T_3 by adsorbing it onto a resin (hence the term **T_3 resin uptake**). Methods giving analogous results can still be performed via nonisotopic methods on automated analyzers. The free thyroxine index (FTI) is then calculated as (T_3-UP of the patient)/(mean T_3-UP of the reference population) multiplied by the patient's total T_4. The FTI (reference range, 5.4 to 9.7) is only a relative estimate of the free T_4 concentration. In general, during thyrotoxicosis, both total T_4 and T_3-UP are elevated; conversely, in hypothyroidism, both total T_4 and T_3-UP are decreased, and when there is a binding globulin abnormality, these two values diverge (e.g., total T_4 is elevated and the T_3-UP is decreased, or the total T_4 is decreased and the T_3-UP is increased). The FTI has been largely replaced by the direct measurement of free T_4 by immunoassay, dialysis, or ultrafiltration.

Free Thyroxine

FT_4 is the biologically active fraction of thyroxine in circulating blood. In the past 10 to 15 years, direct measurement of FT_4 has increased in sensitivity and precision. The traditional reference method for FT_4 is equilibrium dialysis, a method that is not affected by changes in binding protein concentration. The sample is dialyzed against a nonprotein buffer, using a membrane impermeable to proteins, so that FT_4 will achieve equal concentrations on both sides of the membrane. Because bound T_4 vastly exceeds FT_4 in the plasma, their ratio is essentially unperturbed by this process. The protein-free solution is then collected and analyzed for T_4. This is a time-consuming method that cannot meet the high-volume demand of clinical laboratories. Even this laborious method does not give a true measure of FT_4 in all cases, because small molecules that may affect T_4 binding are diluted in the procedure. Theoretically more accurate are ultrafiltration (using pressure to push the plasma sample through a dialysis membrane) and **symmetrical dialysis** (where plasma is dialyzed against itself, using a radioactive tracer added on one side to measure the rate of diffusion of FT_4, which is proportional to its concentration). Mass spectrometry is well suited to measurement of thyroid hormone (De Brabandere et al, 1998), and a method using ultrafiltration followed by tandem mass spectrometry to simultaneously measure FT_4 and FT_3 has recently been published (Gu et al, 2007).

In common practice, FT_4 is usually measured by immunoassay techniques, which have employed different approaches over the years (Spencer, 1986; Hay et al, 1991). These methods can be performed on automated clinical chemistry platforms and provide appropriate results in most clinical circumstances. However, depending on the exact method, they can be unreliable in various circumstances and must be used with caution. For example, spurious results can occur with abnormal variants of any of the binding proteins (particularly familial dysalbuminemic hyperthyroxinemia, a condition with high T_4 but normal FT_4, caused by an albumin variant that binds T_4 abnormally) or in the presence of T_4 or T_3 autoantibodies (Langsteger, 1997). Increases or decreases in serum FT_4 without concomitant changes in metabolic state have been reported in pregnancy with NTI, and in patients being treated with certain drugs. For example, prolonged administration of phenytoin or carbamazepine results in a 15% to 30% decrease in both serum T_4 and FT_4. In these circumstances, dialysis or ultrafiltration methods are indicated.

FT_4 can also be determined using mass spectroscopy, after the FT_4 is separated from the protein-hormone complex using ultrafiltration at 37° C and avoiding dilution effects.

Triiodothyronine

T_3, generally measured by immunoassay, has a reference interval typically in the range of 60 to 160 µg/dL (0.9 to 2.46 nmol/L). T_3 is much less bound to serum protein than T_4; thus a relatively greater proportion of T_3 than T_4 exists in the free, diffusible state. Serum total T_3 measurement is helpful in confirming the diagnosis of hyperthyroidism, especially in patients with no or minimally elevated T_4 or ambiguous clinical manifestation. In 90% of patients with hyperthyroidism, T_4 and T_3 values are increased, with the increase in T_3 usually greater than that in T_4. Serum T_3 levels, however, can be in the reference range or low in patients with hyperthyroidism if there is coexistent NTI, or if patients are on drugs that decrease the conversion of T_4 to T_3 (e.g., propranolol, amiodarone).

Hyperthyroidism with elevated serum T_3 but normal T_4 and free T_4 is termed *T_3 thyrotoxicosis* (Bitton & Wexler, 1990). Patients with this syndrome are a heterogeneous group with no distinctive signs or symptoms. Although most patients have Graves' disease, T_3 thyrotoxicosis may occur in patients with other causes of hyperthyroidism such as toxic nodular goiter or toxic adenoma. About 1% to 4% of thyrotoxic patients have T_3 thyrotoxicosis, except in regions of iodine deficiency, where it is more common.

Elevated serum T_3 levels with normal T_4 levels may also be seen in patients with hyperthyroidism early in the course of treatment with antithyroid drugs or during relapse after treatment. Elevated TBG will cause elevated T_3.

Generally, the measurement of serum T_3 is not useful in evaluating patients suspected of having hypothyroidism because serum T_3 levels are within the reference interval in 15% to 30% of hypothyroid patients (Surks et al, 1990). However, decreased T_3 levels are seen in patients who have severe hypothyroidism, that is, those with serum T_4 levels less than about 2 µg/dL (32 nmol/L) (Bigos et al, 1978). Low serum T_3 may occur in patients with a wide variety of NTI. In patients with acute illness such as myocardial infarction, the decrease in serum T_3 occurs rapidly, declining to about 50% of the reference value within days (Utiger, 1980). Serum T_3 concentrations are also low in cord blood, but increase rapidly during the first few hours of life.

Patients receiving thyroid preparations containing T_3 such as desiccated thyroid and synthetic T_3 and T_4 combinations and those treated with T_3 will have uninterpretable serum T_3 results unless the time of hormone administration is known. Administration of T_3 (Ctyomel) results in a rapid rise in T_3 concentration that peaks within 2 to 4 hours and then begins to drop off. In contrast, the serum T_3 levels do not show a peak in patients treated daily with T_4 (levothyroxine); instead, stable levels of T_3, which is derived from the peripheral conversion of T_4, are reached after only a few weeks of therapy. A number of pharmacologic agents are associated with low levels of T_3 and free T_3, and with normal or even high levels of serum T_4 and FT_4. These include glucocorticoids, amiodarone, and large dosages of propranolol. These patients usually have normal TSH results; however, amiodarone can induce hyperthyroidism or hypothyroidism, in which case the TSH values will be suppressed or elevated, respectively. Total T_3 concentrations are measured by competitive immunoassay methods that are now mostly nonisotopic and use enzymes, fluorescence, or chemiluminescence molecules as signals (Nelson & Wilcox, 1996).

Reverse Triiodothyronine

rT_3, a major metabolite of thyroxine, is produced by 5-deiodination of T_4. In many clinical situations, serum T_3 and serum rT_3 have been found to vary reciprocally, but serum rT_3 measurements have found little clinical usefulness. Serum rT_3 is high in patients with NTI, whose serum total T_3 is decreased. Serum rT_3 is increased in healthy newborns, in patients with hyperthyroidism (including factitious hyperthyroidism), and in patients taking certain drugs, including amiodarone and propranolol.

Thyroglobulin

Tg is synthesized and secreted by the follicles. It is present in the serum of normal individuals in the range of up to about 30 ng/mL (45 pmol/L). The serum Tg concentration reflects thyroid mass, thyroid injury, and TSH receptor stimulation (Spencer & Wang, 1995). Tg is increased in a variety of disorders, including Graves' disease, thyroiditis, and nodular goiter. Patients with thyrotoxicosis factitia have undetectable levels of Tg in contrast to a high level found in patients with other causes of thyrotoxicosis. The routine measurement of Tg is never indicated. Its utility resides in the monitoring of recurrence of certain variants of thyroid cancer, in the diagnosis of thyroid dysgenesis in congenital hypothyroidism, and, as noted previously, in helping to distinguish subacute thyroiditis from thyrotoxicosis factitia.

The main value of Tg measurement is to follow patients with thyroid malignancy postoperatively (Ericsson et al, 1984). It is helpful in patients with well-differentiated thyroid carcinoma, but not in those who have undifferentiated tumors or medullary thyroid cancer. The clinical value of its measurement is limited by a number of technical problems, including the presence of antibodies, which are present in 20% of patients with thyroid carcinoma (Spencer et al, 1999). These antibodies interfere with Tg measurement, causing overestimation or underestimation of serum Tg levels. Therefore, whenever Tg level is drawn to monitor recurrence/persistence of thyroid cancer, it is extremely important to obtain a

http://basicbook.net

simultaneous sample for Tg antibodies (TgAb). In patients with positive TgAb, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) methods (using serum) used to amplify the Tg mRNA may eliminate this problem.

Recombinant human TSH (rhTSH) is commonly used to test patients with thyroid cancers for the presence of residual/recurrent disease. This is more practical, more convenient, and markedly less unpleasant for the patient than stopping thyroid hormone suppression over the span of several weeks to increase the TSH level; an elevated TSH is required for RAI (radioactive iodine) uptake to occur in any remaining remnant or recurrent tumor. Measurement of Tg 72 hours following the last dose of rhTSH correlates highly with the presence of recurrence, and some authorities support the use of this test alone without a concomitant whole-body iodine scan for those with "low-risk" tumors (<40 years of age, no distant metastases, size <1 cm, well differentiated). All other patients with thyroid cancer need to undergo whole-body scanning, in addition to measurement of TSH; concomitant use of both equals the sensitivity of scanning performed after thyroid hormone withdrawal, which is about 97%. Any rise in post-rhTSH serum Tg above 2 ng/mL in patients with thyroid cancer who have undergone remnant ablation and are on hormone suppressive therapy is suspicious for recurrence/persistence of disease and needs to be worked up accordingly (i.e., full restaging while hypothyroid off of suppressive therapy).

Well-differentiated tumors typically display about a 10-fold increase in Tg in response to a high TSH (Spencer et al, 1999). Poorly differentiated tumors that do not concentrate iodide may display a blunted response to TSH stimulation (Schlumberger et al, 1980). In early weeks postthyroidectomy, serum Tg levels typically fall, with a half-life of 2 to 4 days. The pattern of change in serum Tg values on T_4 treatment is a better indicator of a change in tumor burden than any single serum Tg value (Spencer & Wang, 1995). Because of interassay variability, it is extremely important to use the same laboratory (TSH assay) for monitoring.

Thyroxine-Binding Globulin

TBG is the main serum carrier protein for both T_4 and T_3. Measurement of TBG may be helpful in patients who have serum T_4 and T_3 levels that do not agree with other laboratory parameters of thyroid function, or that are not compatible with clinical findings. TBG, which is measured by immunoassay, is in the range of 13 to 39 µg/dL (150 to 360 nmol/L) in healthy individuals. Inherited abnormalities in TBG include complete and partial deficiency, as well as TBG variants with decreased affinity for T_4 or T_3, and TBG excess (Langsteger, 1997). Among the acquired causes of abnormalities in the TBG concentration are a variety of medications and medical conditions (Table 24-7). Medications such as salicylates, phenytoin, penicillin, and heparin can displace T_4 from binding to TBG.

Thyroid Autoantibodies

Autoimmune thyroid disease causes cellular damage and alters thyroid gland function. Cellular damage occurs when the autoantibodies or the sensitized T lymphocytes bind to thyroid cell membranes, causing cell lysis and inflammatory reactions. Three thyroid autoantigens are responsible for the autoimmune thyroid disorders: TPO, Tg, and the TSH receptor. TPO antibodies (TPOAb) are involved in the tissue destructive process associated with hypothyroidism in Hashimoto's and atrophic thyroiditis. Some studies suggest that TPOAb may be cytotoxic to the thyroid gland (Chiovato et al, 1993; Guo et al, 1997). TgAb, if present even in low concentrations in serum, can interfere with the anti-Tg antibody used in the immunoassay for Tg measurement. Thus, the TgAb concentration should be measured in all patients before Tg analysis. In iodide-deficient areas, serum TgAb measurement can be used to detect autoimmune thyroid disease in patients with a goiter and to monitor iodide therapy in endemic areas.

TSH receptor antibodies (TRAbs) were previously known as thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin or long-acting thyroid stimulators. TRAbs are classified as stimulating or blocking antibodies. Graves' disease (GD) is an autoimmune condition in which goiter and hyperthyroidism are induced by thyroid-stimulating antibodies that mimic the action of TSH. The target of the autoimmune response is the thyrotropin receptor. Although both stimulating and blocking antibodies are present in GD, the latter usually do not cause symptoms; however, in a few cases, they may lead to the development of hypothyroidism. TRAbs are positive in 85% of patients with GD. Measurement of TRAbs has been used to predict the outcome of Graves' patients treated with drug therapy; if the titer of the antibodies is low before therapy, patients have a better chance for remission after 6 to 12 months of therapy.

Measurement of TRAbs has also been used to predict the risk for thyroid dysfunction in newborns of mothers with GD as a result of transplacental passage of maternal TRAb (Heithorn et al, 1999; Radetti et al, 1999). In these patients, assays that distinguish blocking from stimulating antibodies are important clinically (Davies et al, 1998).

Longitudinal studies suggest that TPOAb may be a risk factor for future thyroid dysfunction, including postpartum thyroiditis and autoimmune complications from treatment with amiodarone, interferon-α, and lithium (Feldt-Rasmussen et al, 1994; Johnson & Eegles, 1999; Martino et al, 2001).

TABLE 24-7
Some Causes of Alterations in Thyroxine-Binding Globulin

Increases	Decreases
Drugs	Drugs
Clofibrate	Androgens
Estrogens, oral contraceptives	Glucocorticoids
5-Fluorouracil	Genetic
Heroin	Complete deficiency
Methadone	Partial deficiency
Genetic	Liver failure
Acute or chronic active hepatitis	Malnutrition
Pregnancy	Nephrotic syndrome
Idiopathic	Idiopathic

URINARY IODINE MEASUREMENT

Iodine is required for normal thyroid hormone production. Iodine measurements are used mainly to assess the dietary iodine intake of certain populations. This is of great importance in that iodine deficiency disorders affect 2.2 billion persons throughout the world, including the United States (Delange, 1995; Dunn, 1998). Because most of the ingested iodine is excreted in the urine, measurement of urinary iodine (UI) excretion provides an accurate estimate of dietary iodine intake (Dunn, 1998). Suggested ranges for UI excretion are shown in Table 24-8.

SCREENING PROGRAMS FOR DETECTION OF NEONATAL HYPOTHYROIDISM

The prevalence of hypothyroidism in newborns is estimated from 1 in 3000 to 1 in 5000. It is higher in certain ethnic groups and is increased in iodine-deficient regions worldwide. Early detection of hypothyroidism in the neonatal period is critical to eliminate the severe mental retardation associated with thyroid hormone deficiency. Measurement of T_4 and TSH is used for screening, which is performed using dry blood spots or cord serum. The detection rate depends on the tests used and the timing of specimen collection. Measurement of only T_4 carries a high false-positive rate, necessitating recall of a large number of infants for retesting. Causes of false-positive results include low T_4 levels, which occur in both premature infants and those with congenital absence of TBG. Screening with only T_4 may miss infants with compensated or partial thyroid insufficiency. Because about 15% of infants with primary thyroid disorders have compensated hypothyroidism (normal serum T_4 levels in association with elevated TSH), an elevated TSH is the most sensitive test for the diagnosis of congenital hypothyroidism. However, false-positive results are occasionally seen, for example, in premature or severely stressed infants. In addition, by screening with TSH alone, those infants with hypothalamic or pituitary disease will be missed. Very-low-birthweight infants should be retested at 2 and 4 to 6 weeks to detect late-onset transient hypothyroidism (Frank et al, 1996). For newborns, if the initial TSH value is <10 mIU/L,

TABLE 24-8
Urinary Iodine Excretion and Iodine Deficiency

Urinary Iodine Excretion, µg/L	>100	50-99	20-49	<20
Degree of deficiency*	None	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Goiter prevalence	<5%	5%-19.9%	2%-29.9%	>30%

*IDD Newsletter, August 1999;15:33-48.
From Demers LM, Spencer CA, editors: *NACB: laboratory support for the diagnosis and monitoring of thyroid disease,* 2003, p 75. Available at: www.nacb.org.

http://basicbook.net

no further action need be taken; if it lies in the 10- to 20-mIU/L range, then a repeat test needs to be performed in 2 to 6 weeks. Finally, if the initial blood spot TSH greater than 20 mIU/L, endocrinologic evaluation is necessary to make the diagnosis of hypothyroidism.

NONTHYROIDAL ILLNESS

Seriously ill patients can have abnormal thyroid tests even without underlying thyroid pathology (DeGroot & Major, 1992; Kaptein, 1996). A rapid decline in both total and free T_3 typically develops in the setting of severe illness (e.g., myocardial infarction, sepsis) (Piketty et al, 1996). As the severity of the illness increases, the serum total T_4 falls because of T_4-binding protein disruption by inhibitors in the circulation (Wartofsky & Burman, 1982; Docter et al, 1993; Wilcox et al, 1994). Patients with nonthyroidal illness (NTI) whose T_4 levels drop below 2 ng/dL carry an exceptionally poor prognosis. Alterations in thyroid function tests seen during NTI are termed *euthyroid sick syndrome* or *low T_4 syndrome*. Figure 24-7 shows the spectrum of changes in the thyroid tests as they relate to the severity and the stage of the illness. Patients with NTI tend to have low or low-normal TSH and normal or low-normal T_4 but very low T_3 during their acute illness; then TSH rises to within normal or above normal with resolution of the underlying illness and finally returns to the normal range (Faber et al, 1987). This situation can be complicated if certain drugs are used for this illness (e.g., glucagon, dopamine, and high doses of corticosteroids suppress TSH and can mask hypothyroid status during their use) (Kaptein et al, 1980; Skamene & Patel, 1984; Brabant et al, 1989; Samuels et al, 1990).

In uremia, there is accumulation of indoleacetic acid, which interferes with thyroid hormone binding (Iitaka et al, 1998).

PHYSIOLOGIC VARIABLES

For practical purposes, variables such as age, gender, race, season, phase of menstrual cycle, cigarette smoking, exercise, fasting, and phlebotomy-induced stasis have minor effects on thyroid function tests in ambulatory adults (Hollowell et al, 2002). Studies have suggested that each individual has a genetically determined FT_4 setpoint (Meikle et al, 1988; Andersen et al, 2002); the pituitary gland will sense any deviation from this setpoint and cause reciprocal change in TSH secretion. In the early stages of developing thyroid dysfunction, a serum TSH abnormality will precede the development of an abnormal FT_4 because TSH responds exponentially to subtle FT_4 changes, as shown in Figure 24-8.

Despite the wider serum TSH variability seen in older individuals, there appears to be no justification for using a widened or age-adjusted reference range. This conservative approach is justified by reports that mildly suppressed or elevated TSH is associated with increased cardiovascular morbidity and mortality (Sawin et al, 1991; Parle et al, 2001). In children, the hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis undergoes progressive maturation and modulation; there is a continuous decline in the TSH/FT_4 ratio from the time of midgestation until after puberty (Nilson et al, 1993; Adams et al, 1995; Lu et al, 1999; Zurakowski et al, 1999; Fisher et al, 2000a,b); as a result, higher TSH concentrations are typically seen in children.

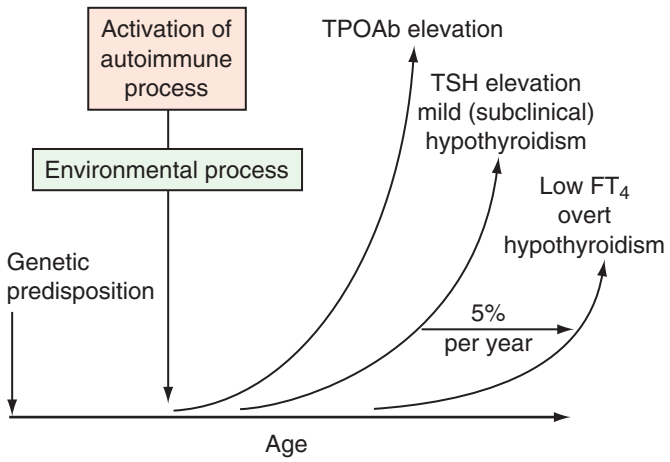


Figure 24-8 Depiction of the evolution of primary hypothyroidism of autoimmune origin. *FT_4,* Free thyroxine; *TPOAb,* thyroid peroxidase antibodies; *TSH,* thyroid-stimulating hormone. (From Demers LM, Spencer CA: *NACB: laboratory support for the diagnosis and monitoring of thyroid disease,* 2003, p 47. Available at: www.nacb.org.)

During pregnancy, estrogen production increases, progressively elevating the TBG concentration and resulting in an increase in the total T_4 and T_3 reference range to approximately 1.5 times the nonpregnancy upper reference level by 16 weeks' gestation (Weeke et al, 1982; Pedersen et al, 1993; Nohr et al, 2000). Although TBG excess leads to an increase in both T_4 and T_3 concentrations, the serum FT_4 and T_3 concentrations remain unchanged.

Serum hCG, which has structural similarity to TSH, has weak thyroid-stimulating activity (Talbot et al, 2001). The increase in hCG soon after fertilization results in a small increase in FT_4 and T_3 concentrations, usually within the normal reference range. These changes result in a fall in serum TSH during the first trimester; a subnormal serum TSH may be seen in about 20% of mothers who have normal pregnancies (Glinoer et al, 1990; Glinoer, 1997; Panesar et al, 2001). The peak rise in hCG and the nadir of TSH occur together at about 10 to 12 weeks' gestation. In 2% of pregnancies, the increase in FT_4 reaches supranormal levels and, if prolonged, may lead to a syndrome referred to as *gestational transient thyrotoxicosis*, which is characterized by more pronounced symptoms and signs of thyrotoxicosis. This condition is frequently associated with first-trimester hyperemesis gravidarum (Goodwin et al, 1992; Hershman, 1999).

The ATA recommends a trimester-specific reference range for TSH:

- First trimester TSH: 0.1-2.5 miu/L
- Second trimester TSH: 0.2-2.5 miu/L
- Third trimester TSH: 0.3-3 miu/L

The optimal method to assess serum FT_4 during pregnancy is measurement of T_4 in the dialysate or ultrafiltrate of the serum sample employing online extraction/liquid chromatography/tandem mass spectrometry (LC/MS/MS); if this method is not available, measurement of TSH is a much more accurate indication of thyroid status.

Elevation of TSH during pregnancy could represent *subclinical* hypothyroidism (If the FT_4 is normal but TSH is 2.5 to 10 miu/L) or *overt* hypothyroid (if the TSH is >10 miu/L with low FT_4 or TSH 2.5 to 10 miu/L with low FT_4).

All pregnant women with overt hypothyroid should be treated early to avoid complications. When treating hypothyroid pregnant women always use thyroxine, not T_3 or any other preparation.

MEDICATIONS AND THYROID FUNCTION TESTS

Drugs can cause both in vitro and in vivo effects on thyroid tests. This can lead to the misinterpretation of test results, inaccurate diagnoses, and further unnecessary tests (Surks & Sievert, 1995; Kailajarvi et al, 2000). Estrogen-induced TBG elevation causes abnormally high total T_4 and total T_3, but has no effect on TSH or FT_4 and free T_3. Glucocorticoids in large doses can suppress TSH and decrease the conversion of T_4 to T_3 (Samuels & McDaniel, 1997; Kaptein et al, 1980). Dopamine suppresses TSH and can temper the expected rise in TSH in hospitalized patients with primary hypothyroidism (Kaptein et al, 1980). Propranolol suppresses the conversion of T_4 to T_3 (this is one of the reasons it is used in the treatment of thyrotoxicosis).

Iodide, found in iodide-containing contrast media used in CT scans and coronary angiography or in solution to sterilize skin, and radiopaque dyes can cause both hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism in susceptible patients (Meurisse et al, 2000). Iodine-containing drugs such as amiodarone (used as an antiarrhythmic agent) have complex effects on thyroid function and can cause hypothyroidism (10% of patients) or hyperthyroidism (1% to 2%) in susceptible individuals with positive antibodies (TPOAb) (Martino et al, 1987, 2001; Caron, 1995; Harjai & Licata, 1997; Daniels, 2001).

Lithium inhibits thyroid hormone synthesis and release and can cause hypothyroidism in about 15% to 50% of patients, especially those patients with positive TPOAb (Lazarus, 1998; Kusalic & Engelsmann, 1999; Oakley et al, 2000). The mechanism of lithium action is similar to that of iodide. Lithium is concentrated by the thyroid gland and inhibits thyroidal iodine uptake. It also inhibits iodotyrosine coupling, alters thyroglobulin structure, and inhibits thyroid hormone secretion. The latter effect is critical to the development of hypothyroidism and goiter (Lazarus, 1998).

Drugs such as phenytoin, carbamazepine, salicylate, salsalate, and furosemide competitively inhibit thyroid binding to serum proteins. They therefore can cause total T_4 levels to be depressed (because the FT_4 is maintained at its normal level), and they can cause the FT_4 estimated by FTI or direct assays to be artifactually low. Therapeutic doses of phenytoin

http://basicbook.net

can induce acceleration of T_4 disposal and perhaps can directly suppress TSH centrally, all of these mechanisms being responsible for the reduced T_4 (Surks et al, 1995). Heparin can stimulate in vitro lipoprotein lipase and can liberate free fatty acids, which inhibit T_4 binding to serum proteins and falsely elevate FT_4 (Mendel et al, 1987).

Medications such as phenobarbital, phenytoin, rifampin, and carbamazepine increase the rate of thyroid hormone clearance by increasing the deiodination of T_4 and T_3. Hypothyroid patients treated with any of these medications need to have their hormone levels monitored closely, as an increase in levothyroxine (L-T_4) dose may be required. In turn, changes in thyroid hormone status affect the clearance of many medications, including those listed previously (e.g., hyperthyroidism can lead to increased clearance of phenobarbital, hypothyroidism to decreased clearance). Owing to these various alterations in thyroid hormone parameters, the best indicator of thyroid status is the measurement of TSH along with FT_4. For those with pituitary disease or in those on phenytoin, T_4 by equilibrium dialysis should be used.

Somatostatin or its analog, octreotide, which is used to treat acromegaly (Itoh et al, 1988), and dopamine (Kaptein et al, 1980) inhibit TSH synthesis to undetectable levels in patients with severe NTI.

THYROID ILLNESS

Hyperthyroid patients may present with one or all of the following signs and symptoms: weight loss, sweating, heat intolerance, palpitations, insomnia, increased bowel movement, tremors, infertility, or amenorrhea. They have suppressed TSH values, with the exception of those few individuals who have secondary hyperthyroidism caused by TSH-producing pituitary tumors, or other rare disorders such as pituitary resistance to thyroid hormones. Subclinical hyperthyroidism is defined as low TSH (<0.1 μIU/mL) with levels of T_4 and T_3 within the reference values with no signs or symptoms of hyperthyroidism (Ross, 1991). Detection of subclinical hyperthyroidism is particularly important in patients who are older than 60 years of age, as they have increased risk for atrial fibrillation, increased cardiovascular mortality (Sawin et al, 1994), and osteoporosis. Minimal thyroid hormone excess can cause atrial fibrillation and can stimulate osteoclastic activity in bone, causing osteoporosis.

Patients with primary hypothyroidism can present with one or all of the following signs and symptoms: cold intolerance, constipation, water retention, hypercholesterolemia, depression, pretibial myxedema, periorbital edema, and elevated TSH with low T_4 and T_3. TSH is low in patients with secondary hypothyroidism caused by pituitary or hypothalamic disorders. Patients with subclinical hypothyroidism have elevated TSH levels (>4.5 μU/mL), but both T_4 and T_3 are within the reference range. In 2004, an expert panel recommended TSH reference limits of 0.4 to 4.5 μU/mL, and that patients with TSH in the range of 4.5 to 10 mU/L, or 0.1 to 0.4, should not be routinely treated (Surks et al, 2004). The 2002 AACE guidelines (American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, 2002) recommend treatment of those with TSH greater than 10 μU/mL or those with goiter and positive TPOAb whose TSH is between 4.5 and 10 μU/mL. TPOAb measurement is useful for establishing the presence of autoimmunity; those with elevated antibodies have a greater probability of developing overt thyroid failure.

SCREENING FOR THYROID DISEASE

The ATA guidelines recommend screening at 35 years of age and every 5 years thereafter (Ladenson et al, 2000). This appears to be a cost-effective strategy, especially for women (Parle et al, 2001) and older adults (Vanderpump et al, 1995; Ladenson et al, 2000; Parle et al, 2001). Hashimoto's thyroiditis is an autoimmune disease of the thyroid gland caused when sensitized T lymphocytes and/or autoantibodies bind to cell membrane, causing cell lysis and an inflammatory reaction, resulting in cellular damage. This is associated with high TSH and positive TPOAb and is encountered with increasing prevalence with increasing age (Vanderpump et al, 1995). The incidence of low TSH is also increased in older adults (Vanderpump et al, 1995).

Mounting evidence indicates that a persistent TSH abnormality may lead to major risks if left untreated. One study reported a higher cardiovascular mortality rate in patients with chronically low TSH (Parle et al, 2001), and numerous reports indicate that mild hypothyroidism in early pregnancy increases fetal loss and impairs the IQ of offspring (Pop et al, 1995, 1999; Haddow et al, 1999). It is important to always confirm any TSH abnormality in a fresh specimen drawn 3 weeks later before making the diagnosis of mild abnormalities.

USES OF L-THYROXINE

An average replacement dose is 1.6 μg/kg body weight/day for adults, up to 4.0 μg/kg body weight/day for children, and lower doses for older individuals (1.0 μg/kg body weight/day) (Sawin et al, 1983; Davis et al, 1984). The initial dose and the optimal time needed to establish the full replacement dose are dependent upon the age, weight, and cardiac status of each patient. The requirement might increase during pregnancy and in postmenopausal women starting hormonal replacement (Arafah, 2001). A serum TSH between 0.5 and 2.0 μU/mL is the therapeutic goal level for L-T_4 replacement in primary hypothyroidism. A serum FT_4 concentration in the upper third of the reference interval is the therapeutic target in central hypothyroidism.

TSH should be used to monitor patients receiving thyroid hormone replacement therapy, as well as those treated with hormone, to suppress malignant thyroid diseases (Spencer, 1990). Both TSH and FT_4 should be used to monitor hypothyroid patients suspected of intermittent noncompliance. At least 6 weeks is needed before retesting of TSH following a change in the dose of L-T_4. Annual TSH measurement is recommended in patients on a steady dose of T_4. If FT_4 is being assayed, patients should withhold their levothyroxine dose on the day of the test, as serum FT_4 will be increased (about 13%) above baseline for 9 hours after the last dose is ingested (Ain et al, 1993); the TSH, however, is unlikely to be affected. Ideally, L-T_4 should be taken before meals, at the same time every day and at least 4 hours from any other medications or vitamins/dietary supplements.

L-T_4 is used to suppress TSH in patients with well-differentiated thyroid carcinoma, for which thyrotropin is considered a trophic factor (Dulgeroff & Hershman, 1994). It is recommended to use a TSH target of 0.05 to 0.1 μU/mL for low-risk patients and a TSH value <0.1 μU/mL for high-risk patients. If the thyroglobulin level is undetectable and no evidence of recurrence is noted 5 to 10 years after thyroidectomy, the dose of L-T_4 can be reduced to give low-normal TSH values (<0.4 μU/mL).

CALCITONIN

Medullary thyroid carcinoma (MTC) originates from the C cells of the thyroid. It accounts for 1% to 2% of thyroid cancers and 0.57% of thyroid nodules (Pacini et al, 1994).

Among cases of MTC, 25% are hereditary (multiple endocrine neoplasia types 2A and 2B) (Dunn, 1994; Brandi et al, 2001; Cobin et al, 2001). These are autosomal dominant inherited multiglandular syndromes. An important, recurring MTC genetic mutation is that of the RET oncogene located on the chromosome subband 10q11.2 (Mulligan et al, 1993; Hofstra et al, 1994). The recommended method of initial testing for MEN2A is either a single or multi-tiered analysis to detect RET mutation in exon 10 (codon 609, 611, 618, 620), exon 11 (codon 630, 634), and exons 8, 13, 14, 15, and 16 (Donis-Keller et al, 1993).

The current ATA risk categories for Heriditary MTC are:

- Highest risk (patients with MEN2b AND RET codon M918T mutation (HST)
- High risk (patients with MEN2a *and* RET codon c634 mutation (H)
- Moderate risk (patients with hereditary MTC and RET codon mutations other than M918T and c634

The C cell secrete several hormones and biogenic amines: calcitonin, ACTH,

β-melanocyte stimulating hormone, somatostatin, chromogranin, histaminase, neurotensin, and carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) (Abe et al, 1977).

Both calcitonin and CEA are valuable tumor markers for patients with MTC. An elevated level of calcitonin in circulating blood indicates the presence of MTC. Mature calcitonin results from posttranslational modification of a larger 141–amino acid precursor (preprocalcitonin) within the parafollicular C cells. Preprocalcitonin undergoes cleavage of a single peptide to form procalcitonin; the latter has 116 amino acid residues. The immature calcitonin peptide consisting of 33 amino acids is located centrally within the procalcitonin molecule. The mature, active, 32–amino acid calcitonin is produced from immature calcitonin by the enzyme peptidylglycine-amidating monooxidase. Measurement of calcitonin is done by two-site immunometric assays using monoclonal antibodies: One recognizes the N-terminal region, and the other the C-terminal region. This method is more sensitive and more specific (Motte et al, 1988; van Heyningen, 1994; Becker et al, 1996). This method eliminates any cross-reactivity with procalcitonin that can be elevated during sepsis or inflammatory conditions (Becker et al, 2004). The cutoff level in healthy adults is about 10 ng/L, and it is higher in children <3 years of age.

http://basicbook.net

Serum calcitonin measurements are used as tumor markers for detecting residual thyroid tissue or metastasis in patients with MTC. It should be measured before and 6 months after surgery. The presence of residual tissue or a recurrence of MTC can be ruled out only if both basal and postpentagastrin or calcium-stimulated calcitonin are undetectable. Provocative stimuli, such as calcium and pentagastrin (Pg) or omeprazole, have been used to detect C cell abnormalities, as they increase calcitonin levels at all stages of MTC (Wells et al, 1978; Barbot et al, 1994; Gagel, 1996; Erdogan et al, 1997; Wion-Barbot et al, 1997; Vieira et al, 2002; Vitale et al, 2002).

In the Pg stimulation test for the diagnosis of MTC, an intravenous infusion of Pg (0.5 µg/kg body weight) is given over 5 seconds; blood samples are collected at baseline and 1, 2, 5, and 10 minutes after the start of the infusion. Interpretations of results are summarized in Table 24-9.

In the calcium stimulation test, intravenous injection of 2.5 mg/kg of calcium gluconate is given over 30 seconds; blood samples are then collected at baseline and at 1, 2, and 5 minutes. An increase in the plasma calcitonin level above 100 ng/L is an indication of C cell hyperplasia. The calcium infusion test has been reported to be less sensitive than the Pg test for the diagnosis of MTC, but, if combined with the Pg test, it enhances the sensitivity of the Pg test (Wells et al, 1978).

Calcitonin may also be elevated in other conditions unrelated to thyroid neoplastic conditions, as summarized in Table 24-10.

TABLE 24-9
Interpretation of the Pentagastrin (Pg) Test

Peak Calcitonin (CT) ng/L (pg/mL)	Interpretation
<10	Normal (80% of adults)
>30 but <50	5% of normal adults
>50 but <100	Possible MTC or other thyroid pathology
>100	Probable MTC
Basal or post-Pg CT value >10 pg/mL	C cell pathology or residual tissue in MEN 2 patients and MTC patients after surgery

MEN, Multiple endocrine neoplasia; *MTC*, medullary thyroid carcinoma.
From Demers LM, Spencer CA, editors: *NACB: laboratory support for the diagnosis and monitoring of thyroid disease,* 2003, p 69. Available at: www.nacb.org.

TABLE 24-10
Conditions in Which Calcitonin May Be Elevated Other Than MTC

Neuroendocrine tumors	Small cell lung cancer, intestinal and bronchial carcinoid, all neuroendocrine tumors
Benign C cell hyperplasia (HCC)	Autoimmune thyroid disease, differentiated thyroid cancer
Other diseases	Kidney disease, hypergastrinemia, hypercalcemia

MTC, Medullary thyroid carcinoma.
From Demers LM, Spencer CA, editors: *NACB: laboratory support for the diagnosis and monitoring of thyroid disease,* 2003, p 70. Available at: www.nacb.org.

ADRENAL FUNCTION

The adrenal glands are pyramidal structures located above each kidney, each weighing approximately 4 to 6 g. Anatomically, the adrenal gland is divided into two distinct parts, the medulla (inner layer) and the cortex (outer layer). The medulla, which is of neural crest origin (ectoderm), stores and secretes catecholamines. The cortex is of mesenchymal origin and is further divided into three zones: The outermost zona glomerulosa, which produces mineralocorticoids; the zona fasciculata, which is responsible for glucocorticoid production; and the inner zona reticularis, which synthesizes androgens. The cortex makes up about 80% to 90% of the adrenal gland. The glands have a very rich arterial supply that forms a subcapsular plexus and empties into a central vein. By weight, they have the highest perfusion of blood per gram of tissue—a feature that ensures rapid dissemination of hormones throughout the body in response to stress.

HORMONES OF THE ADRENAL MEDULLA

The adrenal medulla is part of the sympathoadrenal axis. Being of neural crest origin, it possesses the capability of synthesizing catecholamines through the process of amine precursor uptake and decarboxylation. The initial and rate-limiting step in catecholamine synthesis is the conversion of tyrosine to 3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (dopa) by the enzyme tyrosine hydoxylase. Through a series of steps, L-dopa is subsequently converted to dopamine (D), norepinephrine (NE), and epinephrine (E) (Fig. 24-9). Epinephrine is almost exclusively produced and secreted by the adrenal medulla, where the ratio of NE/E is about 1:4. However, because all three catecholamines are also synthesized within the central and sympathetic nervous systems, the peripheral NE/E ratio is more like 9:1.

The catecholamines are metabolized by either catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT) or monoamine oxidase (MAO). COMT converts D to methoxytyramine, E to metanephrine, and NE to normetanephrine, all of which in turn can be oxidized to vanillylmandelic acid (VMA) by MAO. MAO can also convert E and NE to 3,4-dihydroxymandelic acid, which is acted upon by COMT to form VMA. 3-Methoxy-4-hydroxyphenylacetic acid (homovanillic acid [HVA]) is the final product of dopamine metabolism.

Pheochromocytoma

Catecholamine-producing tumors fall into two categories: pheochromocytomas and paragangliomas. Pheochromocytomas arise from the chromaffin cells of the adrenal medulla and account for 90% of these tumors. Paragangliomas are extra-adrenal in origin, arising in the paravertebral sympathetic ganglia of the chest, abdomen, and pelvis, and the parasympathetic chains along the vagus and glossopharyngeal nerves. Pheochromocytomas have an incidence of about 500 to 1600 per year (Pacak et al, 2001a) and account for <1% of all secondary causes of hypertension. Although 90% of pheochromocytomas are benign, they are almost invariably lethal if not diagnosed and properly treated (Pacak et al, 2001a). Most pheochromocytomas are sporadic; however, 10% to 20% are familial, occurring as part of multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2A or 2B (MEN 2A, MEN 2B), von Hippel–Lindau (VHL) disease, neurofibromatosis type 1 (NF-1), or familial paraganglioma (FP). The hereditary forms tend to present at a younger age, and except for FP, the tumors are usually intraadrenal and bilateral.

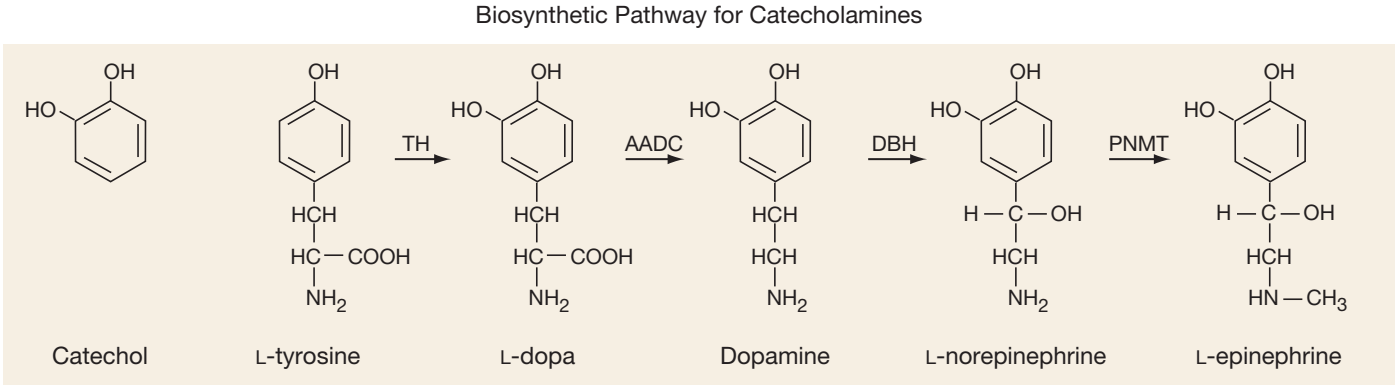


Figure 24-9 Catecholamines: biosynthetic pathway. The rate-limiting step is the conversion of L-tyrosine to L-3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-dopa) through the actions of tyrosine hydroxylase. (Redrawn from Dluhy RG, Lawrence JE, Williams GH: Endocrine hypertension. In Larsen PR, Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, et al, editors: *Williams textbook of endocrinology,* ed 10, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders, p 555, with permission.)

http://basicbook.net

BOX 24-6

Indications for Screening for Pheochromocytoma

1. Hypertension with episodic features suggestive of pheochromocytoma
2. Refractory hypertension
3. Prominent lability of blood pressure
4. Severe pressor response during anesthesia, parturition, surgery, or angiography
5. Unexplained hypotension due to anesthesia, surgery, or pregnancy
6. Family history of pheochromocytoma, MEN 2A or 2B, VHL disease, or neurofibromatosis
7. Incidentally discovered adrenal mass
8. Idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy
9. Spells or attacks occurring during exertion, twisting and turning of the torso, straining, coitus, or micturition

MEN, Multiple endocrine neoplasia; *VHL,* von Hippel-Lindau.
From Dluhy RG, Lawrence JE, Williams G: Endocrine hypertension. In Larsen PR, Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, Polonsky KS, editors: *Williams textbook of endocrinology*, ed 10, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders, p 557.

Sustained or paroxysmal hypertension is the most common manifestation of this disease and is present in about 90% of patients. Remarkably, 10% of patients are normotensive. More than 90% will present with paroxysmal attacks characterized by at least two of the three following symptoms: headache associated with palpitations and diaphoresis (Sheps et al, 1994). Other symptoms include orthostatic hypotension, labile blood pressure, excessive sweating, anxiety, nervousness, weight loss, fatigue, pallor, and tremor. These symptoms can last from a few seconds to several hours, with the interval between attacks being highly variable—from several times a day to once every few months. Indications for screening for pheochromocytoma are listed in Box 24-6.

There is ongoing debate as to which test is the best for diagnosing pheochromocytoma. COMT is present in adrenal chromaffin cells and in tumors derived from these cells; it is absent from sympathetic nerves. As a result. the products of COMT, metanephrine and normetanephrine, serve as specific markers of chromaffin tumors (Lenders et al, 2014). Thus the most recent guidelines recommend the measurement of either plasma-free metanephrines or 24-hour urine collection for fractionated metanephrines via high-pressure liquid chromatography, with tandem mass spectrometry (HPLC/MS-MS) as the initial test (Lenders et al, 2014). Plasma normetanephrines, and urine for fractionated catecholamines and VMA may also be obtained.

The diagnosis of pheochromocytoma is made if the plasma concentration of either free metanephrine or normetanephrine is about four times the upper reference limit. Further testing is required in patients with high levels that are less than four times the upper reference limit (Sheps et al, 1994; Eisenhofer & Pacak, 2004; Eisenhofer et al, 2004). It is recommended that the samples be collected after the patient has been supine for at least 30 minutes. If a "seated" specimen returns as elevated, it should be confirmed by either repeating the test with the patient supine or obtaining a 24-hour urine sample for fractionated metanphrines. In centers where this assay is not available, the initial test should be the chromatographic measurement of a 24-hour urine collection for normetanephrine, metanephrine, fractionated free catecholamines (epinephrine, norepinephrine, dopamine), and creatinine (Lenders et al, 2002; Eisenhofer & Pacak, 2004; Eisenhofer et al, 2004). Metanephrine is the most sensitive and specific of these metabolites (Heron et al, 1996). Urinary creatinine should be measured in all 24-hour collections to assess for completion of the collection.

The diagnosis of pheochromocytoma can also be made by measuring plasma catecholamines; however, given their short half-life and episodic secretion, it is of use only if the sample is collected during a paroxysm. Values from the 24-hour urine collection or plasma catecholamines that are two to three times the upper limit of normal are usually diagnostic of pheochromocytoma.

In cases of **sporadic pheochromocytoma,** the choice and interpretation of diagnostic tests depend on the pretest level of suspicion for disease. In this setting, the 24-hour urinary fractionated metanephrine and fractionated catecholamine measurements provide clinically acceptable sensitivity and significantly better specificity than fractionated plasma free metanephrine values (Sawka et al, 2003). Given the difficulties in collecting a complete 24-hour urine sample from pediatric patients, fractionated plasma free metanephrines should be considered the biochemical test of choice in that population (Weise et al, 2002) (Table 24-11).

TABLE 24-11

Sensitivity and Specificity of Hormone Levels for Diagnosing Pheochromocytoma

	SENSITIVITY		SPECIFICITY	
	Hereditary	**Sporadic**	**Hereditary**	**Sporadic**
Plasma				
Free metanephrines	97%	99%	96%	82%
Catecholamines	69%	92%	89%	72%
Urine				
Fractionated metanephrines	96%	97%	82%	45%
Catecholamines	79%	91%	96%	75%
Total metanephrines	60%	88%	97%	89%
Vanillylmandelic acid	46%	77%	99%	86%

Data from Pacak K, Eisenhofer G, Ilias I: Diagnostic imaging of pheochromocytoma, *Front Horm Res* 31:76–106, 2004; Lenders JW, Pacak K, Walther MM, et al: Biochemical diagnosis of pheochromocytoma: Which test is best? *JAMA* 287:1427–1434, 2002.

TABLE 24-12

Effects of Medications on Testing for Pheochromocytoma

	PLASMA				URINE			
Medication Class	**NMN**	**NE**	**MN**	**E**	**NMN**	**NE**	**MN**	**E**
Tricyclics	+	+	−	−	+	+	−	−
Phenoxybenzamine	+	+	−	−	+	+	−	−
Buspirone	−	−	−	−	−	−	+	−
α-Adrenergic blockers	−	−	−	−	−	+	−	−
β-Adrenoceptor blockers	−	−	+	−	+	+	+	+
Calcium channel blockers	−	+	−	−	−	+	−	+
Sympathomimetics	+	+	−	−	+	+	−	−
Cocaine	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
α-methyldopa	+	−	−	−	+	−	−	−
Acetaminophen	+	−	+	−	+	−	+	−

E, Epinephrine; *MN,* metanephrines; *NE,* norepinephrine; *NMN,* normetanephrine.
Diuretics, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, and angiotensin II receptor blockers have little influence on the frequency of false-positive results.
Data from Eisenhofer G, Goldstein DS, Walther, et al: Biochemical diagnosis of pheochromocytoma: how to distinguish true from false-positive test results, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:2656–2666, 2003.

Several factors can cause false-positive test results, either by stimulating catecholamine secretion and/or by interfering with the assay (Table 24-12). When assaying for plasma free metanephrines, patients should abstain from caffeinated beverages and alcohol for 24 hours before testing. They should also avoid acetaminophen, tricyclic antidepressants, phenoxybenzamine, α agonists (e.g., methyldopa [Aldomet]), and monoamine oxidase inhibitors for at least 5 days before testing (Lenders et al, 1995). During testing for catecholamines, in addition to the list of items to avoid when testing for metanephrines, the patient should avoid nicotine, sympathomimetics (theophylline, pseudoephedrine), α agonists (e.g., albuterol), and levodopa/carbidopa. If antihypertensive medications are needed, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs), angiotensin receptor blockers, and selective α_1-adrenoceptor blockers (e.g., prazosin) can be used without fear of causing false-positive results (Eisenhofer et al, 2003).

Although urinary catecholamine levels may be elevated in renal insufficiency and renal failure, the measurement of plasma free metanephrines can be used to reliably diagnose pheochromocytoma in both conditions (Eisenhofer et al, 2004). Stressors such as an acute myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, surgery, and acute cerebrovascular accident are all associated with elevated levels of catecholamines. In these situations, one can treat empirically and test once the patient has stabilized. Plasma normetanephrine concentrations increase with age; as a result, older adult

http://basicbook.net

patients are particularly susceptible to having false-positive tests. The use of fractionated urinary metanephrines and catecholamines may be more suitable for this population (Sawka et al, 2003).

Plasma levels of normetanephrine less than 112 ng/L (0.61 nmol/L) and of metanephrine less than 61 ng/L (0.31 nmol/L) virtually exclude pheochromocytoma, so that no immediate further testing for the tumor should be necessary. With plasma concentrations of normetanephrine above 400 ng/L (2.19 nmol/L) or of metanephrine above 236 ng/L (1.20 nmol/L), the probability of pheochromocytoma is so high that the immediate task is to locate the tumor (Eisenhofer et al, 2003). More often than not, test results are returned as equivocal, requiring the need for confirmatory tests such as the clonidine suppression test or the glucagon stimulation test, or the measurement of urinary fractionated catecholamines. Clonidine is a centrally acting α-adrenergic agonist; it suppresses catecholamine release from the nervous system, but has no effect on its release by the tumor (Bravo et al, 1981). In those with pheochromocytoma, clonidine fails to adequately suppress plasma levels of norepinephrine to less than 40% from baseline. The clonidine suppression test is indicated only if the plasma catecholamines are greater than 1000 pg/mL (5.9 nmol/L). It is unreliable in those with normal or mildly elevated plasma catecholamines (Taylor et al, 1986; Elliott & Murphy, 1988; Sjoberg et al, 1992). Eisenhofer and colleagues (2003) showed that measuring plasma normetanephrines before and after clonidine testing increased the sensitivity and specificity of this test, especially in those who have only modest elevations of norepinephrine. The glucagon stimulation test can lead to dangerous rises in blood pressure and is rarely used. It should be performed only in patients whose blood pressure is well controlled, and a physician must be present throughout the test. A rise in plasma norepinephrine to greater than threefold, or greater than 2000 pg/mL, is diagnostic of pheochromocytoma (Table 24-13). The proposed mechanism of action is stimulation of glucagon-sensitive adenylate cyclase receptors expressed on these tumors. Unless the history is compelling, or the patient falls into one of the categories of genetically inherited disorders, it is often unnecessary to repeat testing in those with slightly positive results.

Among catecholamine-secreting tumors, 10% to 20% are familial. Genetic testing should be considered if the patient is younger than 50 years of age at presentation, has physical traits suggestive of one of the familial disorders, has multifocal disease, or has a positive family history. Tests include assaying for mutations in the gene for menin in MEN 1, the RET oncogene in MEN 2A (Sipple's disease) and MEN 2B, neurofibromin in NF-1, and VHL in von Hippel–Lindau syndrome. Familial paragangliomas are associated with various defects in the gene for succinate dehydrogenase. As with all genetic testing, pretest and posttest counseling is mandatory.

Chromogranin A (CgA) is a protein that is stored and secreted along with the catecholamines from the adrenal medulla and sympathetic nervous system. Although it is elevated in more than 80% of pheochromocytomas, it is not specific for this disorder, being secreted by other chromaffin tissues (Hsiao et al, 1991). CgA was initially thought to be useful in the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, since medications typically used to treat it had no impact on CgA secretion or measurement. Despite a relatively high sensitivity of 86%, it has poor diagnostic specificity. This is due, in large part, to the fact that the kidneys play a major role in the clearance of CgA from the circulation, so that even mild degrees of renal impairment (e.g., creatinine clearance [CrCl] <80 mg/mL/min) can lead to significant increases in serum concentration of CgA (Bravo & Tagle, 2003). Among hypertensive patients with CrCl less than 80 mL/min, overall sensitivity, specificity, and accuracy and positive and negative predictive values of serum CgA dropped to 85%, 50%, 59%, 38%, and 90%, respectively. However, when combined with elevated plasma catecholamines in patients with CrCl at least 80 mL/min, the diagnostic specificity and positive predictive values improved to 98% and 97%, respectively (Canale & Bravo, 1994). Its major use is in postoperative monitoring for recurrence of these tumors.

TABLE 24-13
Pharmacologic Tests for Diagnosing Pheochromocytoma

Clonidine Suppression Test	
Indications	Patients with hypertension and clinical findings or family history that is highly suggestive of pheochromocytoma, and the catecholamines are elevated but not to the extent that is diagnostic of pheochromocytoma. Beta blockers should be withdrawn 48 hours prior to testing. Do not perform if BP <100/60 mm Hg. IV cannula placed. Patient rests recumbent for 20 minutes. Blood for NE and NM is collected,* and 0.3 mg of Clonidine is administered orally. BP and pulse are monitored closely. Blood for NE and NM are collected* after 3 hours.
Interpretation	Normal: Decrease in NE to below normal or a >50% decline from baseline. A decrease in NM to below normal or a 40% decline from baseline. Pheochromocytoma: Failure of NE to drop below normal or decrease by more than 50% from baseline. Failure of NM to drop below normal or decrease by more than 40% from baseline.

NE, Norepinephrine; *NM,* normetanephrines.
*Blood vials should be kept chilled on ice until processed.

Testing Procedures

For 24-hour urine collections, creatinine is measured to verify the adequacy of the collection. To preserve the specimen adequately, urine should be collected in a container to which 25 mL of 6 N HCl has been added.

Plasma catecholamines are collected after an overnight fast (water permitted). The patient is placed in a reclining position in a quiet environment, and a heparin lock is inserted intravenously. After 20 to 30 minutes, blood is collected in a prechilled ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) lavender-top tube. The whole blood sample should be kept in ice water until centrifuged (preferably at 4° C). Separation of plasma should take place within 2 hours of phlebotomy; the sample should then be frozen immediately.

Both urine and plasma specimens should be analyzed using high-performance liquid chromatography with tandem mass spectrometry, as this technique greatly eliminates problems caused by interfering substances (Taylor & Singh, 2002). For the urine metabolites, it is important to use age-appropriate reference ranges when interpreting the results. It is also important to be aware that reference ranges can vary widely not only from one laboratory to another, but even within the same laboratory, as newer methods are introduced.

Additional Follow-Up Testing

Once the diagnosis is confirmed biochemically, the tumor should be localized by a CT scan or MRI of the adrenal glands. If this is negative, imaging studies of the abdomen, chest, and pelvis should be performed. CT has greater sensitivity, and MRI, greater specificity. MRI is superior to CT in detecting extraadrenal lesions and has the advantage of not requiring ionizing radiation or needing ionic contrast. If a tumor cannot be located by CT or MRI, or if metastatic disease is suspected, scanning with ^{131}I- or ^{123}I-labeled meta-iodobenzylguanidine should be performed. Octreoscanning and positron emission tomography are reserved for when the other techniques have failed. ^{18}F-FDG PET/CT scanning is especially useful in patients with paragangliomas or metastatic disease (Pacak et al, 2001b).

Following successful tumor resection, the prognosis is generally excellent. Urinary metanephrines should be retested several weeks after surgery to ensure that the resection was complete, and should be measured periodically thereafter as an early marker of disease recurrence (Werbel & Ober, 1995).

An algorithm to evaluate pheochromocytoma has been proposed by Eisenhofer and colleagues (2003) (Fig. 24-10).

Neuroblastoma

Similarly to pheochromocytoma, neuroblastoma is of neural crest origin, arising within the adrenal glands or the sympathetic chain. It is the second most common solid malignant tumor in childhood, usually occurring before 3 years of age. Symptoms relate primarily to tumor mass rather than to hypertension, which is often mild or absent. At the time of diagnosis, 70% of cases will have distant metastases. About 90% of patients have elevated urinary homovanillic acid (HVA) levels at the time of diagnosis, whereas almost 75% have increased urinary vanillymandelic acid (VMA) levels (Tuchman et al, 1985). Both tests should be ordered when screening for the disease. In healthy children, at least up until about 15 years of age, urinary VMA and metanephrines tend to be higher (per milligram of creatinine) and more variable than in adults. Urinary metanephrines also can be elevated in neuroblastoma patients, but are not a sensitive measure of residual tumor. Urinary HVA is increased in familial dysautonomia (Riley-Day syndrome) and in some cases of pheochromocytoma.

HORMONES OF THE ADRENAL CORTEX

The adrenal cortex is composed of three distinct zones: The outermost zone, the zona glomerulosa, is followed by the intermediate zona

http://basicbook.net

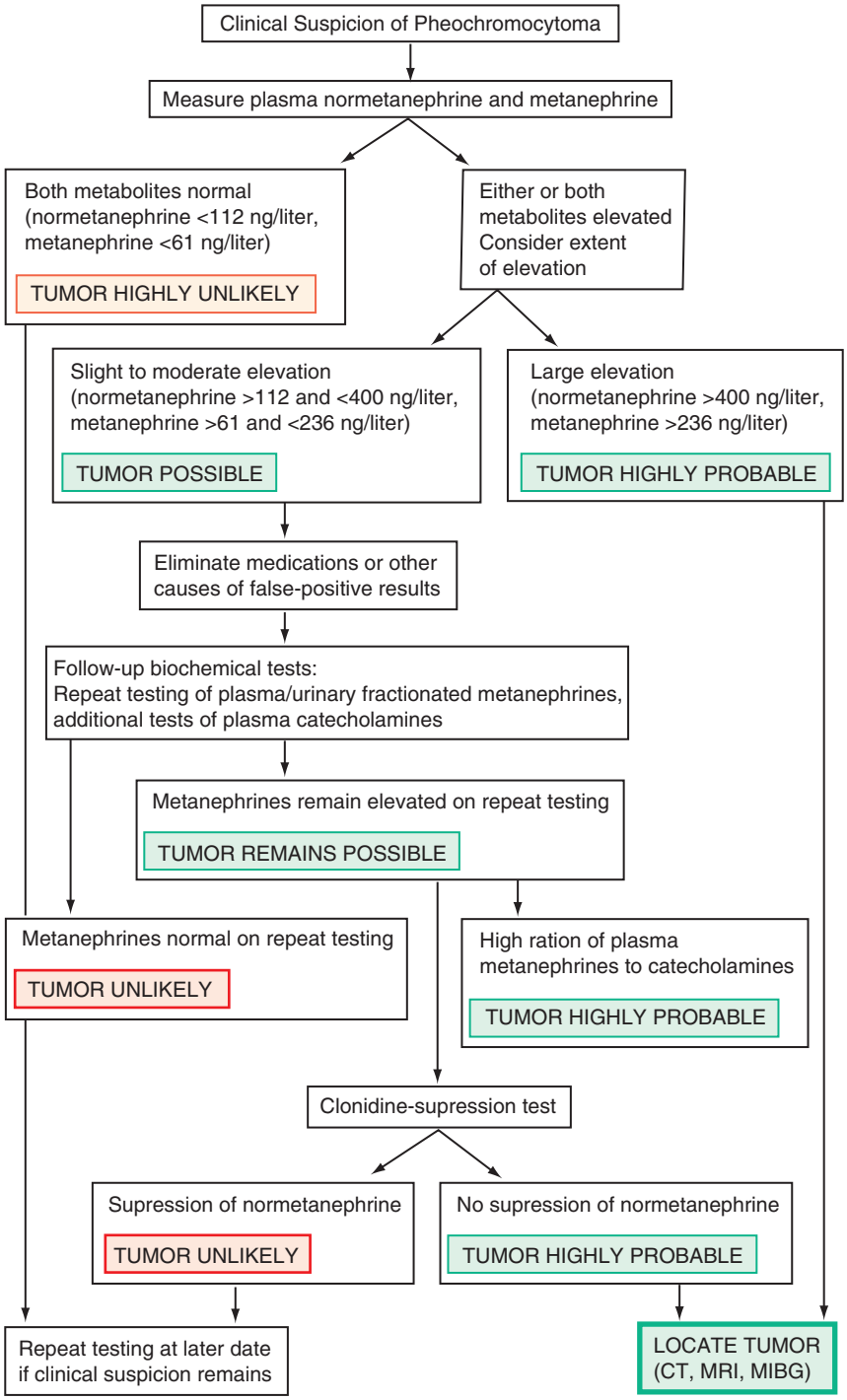


Figure 24-10 **Algorithm for the evaluation of pheochromocytoma.** *CT,* Computed tomography (scan); *MIBG,* metaiodobenzylguanidine (scan); *MRI,* magnetic resonance imaging. (Redrawn from Eisenhofer G, Goldstein DS, Walther MM, et al: Biochemical diagnosis of pheochromocytoma: How to distinguish true- from false-positive test results, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:2656–2666, 2003. with permission.)

fasciculata, which surrounds the innermost zona reticularis. In the broadest terms, each zone is responsible for the synthesis and secretion of a unique set of hormones: The zona glomerulosa—mineralocorticoids (aldosterone); the zona fasciculata—glucocorticoids (cortisol); and the zona reticularis—sex steroids (dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate and androgens). However, under certain pathologic and physiologic conditions, these distinctions become blurred.

Mineralocorticoid Axis

The chief mineralocorticoid is aldosterone, which promotes the reabsorption of sodium and water by the kidney to help maintain blood pressure and tonicity. Expression of the enzyme CYP11B2 (aldosterone synthetase) within the glomerulosa is site-specific; as a result, the synthesis of aldosterone and its intermediary 18-hydroxylated metabolites is restricted to the zona glomerulosa. The precursor molecules to aldosterone, 11-deoxycorticosterone (DOC) and 11-deoxycortisol, similarly possess mineralocorticoid activity. However, unlike aldosterone, they can be synthesized within the zona fasciculata, as well as in the zona glomerulosa, which explains the hypertension and electrolyte disturbances seen in some forms of congenital adrenal hyperplasia. Although aldosterone will respond to acute changes in ACTH, it is mainly under the control of the renin-angiotensin system.

The zona fasciculata makes up 75% of the cortex, and is responsible for the synthesis and secretion of glucocorticoids and to a lesser extent androgens and estrogens. The glucocorticoids are 21-carbon steroid compounds with a hydroxyl group on carbon 17, hence the synonym

http://basicbook.net

17-hydroxycorticosteroids (17-OHCS). Cortisol is the key glucocorticoid, regulating its own secretion through negative feedback on the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis and inhibiting corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) from the hypothalamus and ACTH release from the pituitary gland. Both CRH and AVP (ADH) are produced by the parvocellular neurons of the paraventricular nuclei of the hypothalamus. ACTH secretion is stimulated by CRH and, to a much lesser extent, by AVP. ACTH in turn stimulates cortisol production by the adrenal glands. Cortisol is needed in times of stress to maintain blood pressure and blood sugar, and to prevent shock. Although cortisol is the most important glucocorticoid, corticosterone, which is a hormone of the mineralocorticoid pathway, also possesses glucocorticoid activity.

Androgens and estrogens are produced by the zona reticularis. The androgens are 18-carbon steroids with saturated A rings, in contrast to the estrogens, which are 17-carbon steroids with unsaturated A rings.

The functions of these hormones are summarized in Table 24-14.

Congenital Disorders of Adrenal Cortical Enzyme Deficiencies

The hormones of the adrenal cortex are steroid derivatives, synthesized from low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol. LDL is delivered to the adrenal glands, where it is taken up by LDL receptors. Evidence also supports local synthesis of LDL from acetyl coenzyme A. Steroid acute regulatory protein (StAR) shuttles LDL across the mitochondrial membrane, where it begins its journey down the steroidogenic pathway (Fig. 24-11). The enzymes that catalyze these synthetic reactions are of four general types: hydroxylases, dehydrogenases, desmolases, and isomerases. Because most of the inborn errors of metabolism affecting steroid hormone synthesis in the adrenal cortex involve deficiencies of hydroxylases, they constitute the most clinically important group of enzymes.

At least eight different metabolic defects in the synthesis of cortisol and aldosterone have been described, each characterized by a deficiency of a specific adrenal enzyme. A vast majority of these enzymatic deficiencies are inherited as autosomal recessive traits with variable degrees of penetrance. Those enzymatic defects that uniquely affect the biosynthesis of cortisol are grouped together under the rubric of congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH). These five enzymes are P450scc (defect in StAR), 3-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase, 21-hydroxylase, 11-hydroxylase, and 17-hydroxylase. CRH and ACTH synthesis and secretion are normally under the negative-feedback control of cortisol. In CAH, defects in the enzymes necessary for cortisol production lead to cortisol deficiency; cortisol deficiency in turn results in disinhibition of negative feedback on CRH and ACTH production. As a consequence, CRH and ACTH levels rise, inducing adrenal hyperplasia and a forward push in steroidogenesis, as the body tries to compensate and normalize cortisol production. Not only does this result in a buildup of the hormonal precursors directly preceding the enzymatic defect, it also causes massive shunting of these precursors down the remaining functional pathways. The clinical manifestations of CAH are heterogeneous, depending on the severity and location of the enzymatic defects, which hormones are deficient, and which are produced in excess. Symptoms range from shock, salt wasting, and anomalous sexual development in infancy, to hirsutism and infertility in the adult. Sometimes, as in partial enzymatic deficiencies of cortisol synthesis, near-adequate hormone synthesis is possible if hypersecretion of ACTH is able to stimulate adrenal hyperplasia to compensate for the deficiency. The clinical manifestations of various adrenal cortical enzyme deficiencies and their associated laboratory findings are summarized in Table 24-15.

The diagnosis is made by measuring the various serum hormone levels and assessing which steroids are produced in excess and which are deficient, and by calculating the precursor/product ratio and comparing these results to age- and sex-matched normative data. Levels of hormones distal to the block (product hormones) may be elevated as a result of peripheral conversion of the markedly elevated precursor hormones; the use of precursor/product ratios mitigates the risk for misdiagnosis due to misleading elevations of product hormones (Levine, 2002). If hormone levels return as borderline, but the clinical suspicion for CAH remains high, the steroid levels should be remeasured 60 minutes after intravenous administration of 0.25 mg of ACTH. ACTH drives steroidogenesis forward, accentuating the block. When there is a proband, the diagnosis can be more accurately determined by genotyping.

CAH is categorized according to severity of disease into classic (neonatal, severe) and nonclassic (late-onset, cryptogenic) forms. The classic form is further subdivided into salt-losing and non–salt-losing (simple virilizing) variants.

TABLE 24-14
Physiologic Effects of Steroids

Representative Hormone	Biological Effects
Cortisol (as a representative glucocorticoid)	Protein nitrogen catabolism increased Gluconeogenesis Increased blood glucose concentration Decreased glucose tolerance Increased liver glycogen Increased liver glycogenolysis Decreased peripheral uptake and utilization of glucose Decreased synthesis of acid-sulfated mucopolysaccharides Fat synthesis and redistribution Cellular or tissue effects Antiinflammatory Dissolution of lymphoid tissue Lymphopenia Eosinopenia Increased erythropoiesis Alteration of cellular permeability, especially decreased membrane permeability to water Increased gastric (HCl and pepsin) secretion
Aldosterone (as a representative mineralocorticoid)	Electrolyte regulation Sodium (Na^+) retention Potassium (K^+) excretion Retention of water and expansion of extracellular fluid volume Increases in blood pressure
Androgens (as representative sex hormones)	Protein nitrogen anabolism Growth and maturation—osseous and muscular Body hair (pubic and axillary)

21-Hydroxylase Deficiency

The enzyme 21-hydroxylase (also referred to as CYP21, CYP21A2, and P450c21) is located within the mitochondrial endoplasmic reticulum. 21-hydroxylase deficiency is the most common cause of CAH, accounting for about 95% of all cases. Screening of newborns using capillary heel blood on paper filter disks has identified this disorder in about 1 in 14,000 persons in North America, and in as many as 1 in 300 Yupik Eskimos of Alaska (Pang et al, 1988, 1982). The classic form is detected in about 1 in 16,000 live births; the nonclassic form is seen in about 0.2% of the general Caucasian population, and in 1% to 2% of those of Eastern European Jewish ancestry (Speiser et al, 1985; Therrell, 2001).

21-OH catalyzes the conversion of 17-hydroxyprogesterone (17-OHP) to 11-deoxycortisol (compound S), and progesterone to DOC. Thus, 21-OH deficiency leads to elevated levels of the steroid precursors 17-OHP and pregnanetriol in the urine and 17-OHP in the serum. These precursors are shunted toward the pathway, leading to excess androstenedione and testosterone production (Fig. 24-12). Clinical presentation often correlates with the severity of enzymatic dysfunction. The classic variety presents in the newborn period or in early childhood with adrenal insufficiency and virilization, with or without salt wasting. The nonclassic form presents in late childhood as early adrenarche, or in young adulthood as hirsutism, amenorrhea, and infertility. The presentation in women is very similar to that of polycystic ovarian disease. Males may develop precocious puberty, adrenal rests within the testes, and infertility.

A close functional relationship exists between the adrenal cortex and the adrenal medulla. Dysplasia of the medulla and catecholamine hyposecretion have been described in classic 21-OH deficiency. In a study of 38 children with classic (CYP21A2) disease, levels of plasma epinephrine and metanephrine and urinary epinephrine were 40% to 80% lower in affected individuals than in normal persons (Merke et al, 2000). In another study, those with CYP21A2 showed a significantly decreased catecholamine response to exercise that was unaffected by the administration of stress doses of glucocorticoids (Weise et al, 2004). It has been suggested that the degree of medullary impairment may be a biomarker for CAH severity (Merke et al, 2002).

Diagnosis. Prenatal diagnosis is important because suppressive treatment with steroids can abrogate the development of virilization of the female fetus. Diagnosis is made by measuring the level of 17-OHP in amniotic fluid or by genotyping cells obtained by chorionic villous

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 24-15
Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasia: Clinical and Biochemical Features

Feature	21-Hydoxylase Deficiency	11-β-Hydoxylase Deficiency	17-β-Hydroxylase Deficiency	3-β-Hydroxysteroid Deficiency	Lipoid Hyperplasia	Aldosterone Synthase Deficiency
Defective gene	*CYP21*	*CYP11B1*	*CYP17*	*HSD3B2*	*StAR*	*CYP11B2*
Incidence	1:15,000	1:100,000	Rare	Rare	Rare	Rare
Ambiguous genitalia	+ (female)	+ (female)	+ (male) Absent puberty (female)	+ (male) Mild in female	+ (male) Absent puberty (female)	Normal
Acute adrenal insufficiency	+	Rare	No	+	++	Salt wasting only
Laboratory findings	↑ plasma 17-OHP and pregnanetriol Greatly ↑ urinary pregnanetriol and 17-KS	↑ serum DOC and 11-deoxycortisol ↑ urinary 17-OHCS and 17-KS	↑ serum DOC, 18-OH DOC, B, and 18-OHB	↑ serum 17-OH-pregnenolone, pregnenolone and DHEA ↑ urinary 17-KS ↑ Δ5/Δ4 serum and urinary steroids	All serum and plasma steroids are decreased	↑ serum B, 11-DOC, and 18-OHB
Glucocorticoids	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	Normal
Mineralocorticoids	↓	↑	↓	↓	↓	↓
Androgens	↑	↑	↓	↓ male, ↑ female	↓	Normal

B, Corticosterone; *DHEA*, dihydroepiandosterone; *11-DOC*, 11-deoxycorticosterone; *17-KS*, 17-ketosteroids; *18-OHB*, 18-hydroxycorticosterone; *17-OHP*, 17-α-hydroxyprogesterone.
From Stewart PM: The adrenal cortex. In Larsen PR, Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, et al, editors: *Williams textbook of endocrinology,* ed 10, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders, p 533.

sampling. The genes responsible for 21-OH deficiency, *CYP21 (CYP21A2)* and *CYP21P (CYP21A)*, are located on chromosome 6. Of these two homologous genes, only CYP21 is active; deleterious mutations within CYP21P interfere with normal gene expression. These mutations can be identified by PCR and Southern blotting on chorionic villous samples (White et al, 1994a; New, 1995). The 2010 consensus statement on the management of CAH due to 21-OH deficiency recommends that prenatal treatment of CAH be regarded as experimental and that the diagnosis should rest on clinical and hormonal data, with genotyping being reserved for equivocal cases and genetic counseling (Speiser et al, 2010).

Neonatal screening, which is now mandatory across the United States and in several other countries, is performed by measuring 17-OHP or by genotyping blood that has been obtained from a heelstick and collected on filter paper. The sample for 17-OHP is analyzed using automated time-resolved dissociation-enhanced lanthanide fluoroimmunoassay (DELFIA) (Speiser et al, 2010). Causes for false-positive screens include prematurity, illness, stress, and possibly the antenatal administration of glucocorticoids used to induce fetal lung maturation. The initial positive screen is followed up by checking the 17 OHP level by LC-MS/MS (Speiser et al, 2010). In regard to genotyping, aside from its being the most definitive test for diagnosing CAH, the fact that the genotype correlates fairly well with disease severity means that it can also be used as a prognostic tool (Nordenstrom et al, 1999).

In the newborn with salt wasting, unstimulated 17-OHP levels are typically greater than 8000 ng/dL, rising to 100,000 ng/dL (3000 nmol/L) following administration of ACTH. Levels in the simple virilizing variant range from 10,000 to 30,000 ng/dL (300 to 1000 nmol/L). Those with nonclassic disease typically have 17-OHP levels ranging from 1500 to 10,000 ng/dL (50 to 300 nmol/L) (New et al, 1983). It is of note that randomly drawn hormone levels may be normal in those with nonclassic disease; therefore it is important to test during the early morning. If the results are equivocal, the diagnosis can be confirmed by comparing serum 17-OHP levels before and 60 minutes after administration of 0.25 mg ACTH (Cortrosyn). ACTH acts to stimulate steroidogenesis, serving to dramatically increase the bottleneck at the site of the enzymatic block, resulting in a dramatic increase in precursors, in this case, 17-OHP. Post-ACTH 17-OHP values <330 ng/dL are normal, 330 to 1000 ng/dL indicates a heterozygote carrier, and levels greater than 2000 ng/dL are diagnostic for nonclassic CAH. If a proband is available, genotyping is superior to these older biochemical tests in identifying heterozygotes (Honour & Rumsby, 1993).

The goals of glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid replacement therapy in children are the attainment of normal growth, weight, and pubertal development, and optimization of final adult height. In adults, the major treatment goals include lessening of signs of virilization and resumption of fertility. Glucocorticoid replacement is titrated to keep the 17-OHP level partially suppressed to between 100 and 1000 ng/dL (3 to 30 nmol/L) and the ACTH under 100 ng/L, thereby preventing shunting toward testosterone synthesis, and normalizing levels of androstenedione and testosterone. Normalization of 17-OHP should not be attempted, because this requires supraphysiologic levels of glucocorticoids and may result in Cushing's syndrome (Speiser & White, 2003).

Varying degrees of hypoaldosteronism accompany all forms of 21 OH deficiency. This is biochemically apparent as an elevated plasma renin activity (PRA) and a decreased aldosterone/PRA ratio. The objective of mineralocorticoid replacement is to normalize the plasma renin activity.

11-β-Hydroxylase Deficiency

The second most common enzyme deficiency of the adrenal cortex, accounting for about 7% of all cases of CAH, is the 11-β-hydroxylase (11-OH) deficiency. A defect in this enzyme blocks the final conversion of 11-deoxycortisol to cortisol and DOC to corticosterone. As with 21-OH deficiency, a compensatory increase in ACTH secretion leads to adrenal hyperplasia and a mass action shunting of precursor steroids toward testosterone synthesis, resulting in signs of virilization. This block also results in the accumulation of DOC; the mineralocorticoid activity of DOC leads to the development of hypertension and hypokalemia, similar to what is seen with hyperaldosteronism (Fig. 24-13).

11-OH deficiency is an autosomal recessive disorder caused by mutations of the genes *CYP11B1* and *CYP11B2*, located on chromosome 8q21-q22 (White et al, 1994b). Diagnosis in the neonate is established by the presence of a high basal and a high ACTH-stimulated 11-deoxycortisol. Concentrations of urinary tetrahydro-11-deoxycortisol in the urine are also elevated. During childhood and in young adults, the diagnosis of 11-OH deficiency is made by the presence of elevated early-morning and ACTH-stimulated serum levels of 11-deoxycortisol that are more than three times the upper limit for age-matched normals. Levels of DOC and adrenal androgens (androstenedione, dehydroepiandrosterone, and dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate) are also elevated. Plasma renin activity and aldosterone are often suppressed as a result of salt and water retention induced by elevations of DOC. Unlike the heterozygotes with 21-OH deficiency, those with 11-OH deficiency often fail to show a rise in precursors following ACTH stimulation (Pang et al, 1980). However, an exuberant response was seen in those who had hirsutism (Gabrilove et al, 1965).

Prenatal diagnosis of 11-OH deficiency is made by measuring levels of tetrahydro-11-deoxycortisol (THS) in the maternal urine or amniotic fluid. These levels begin to rise in the first trimester. In addition to THS,

http://basicbook.net

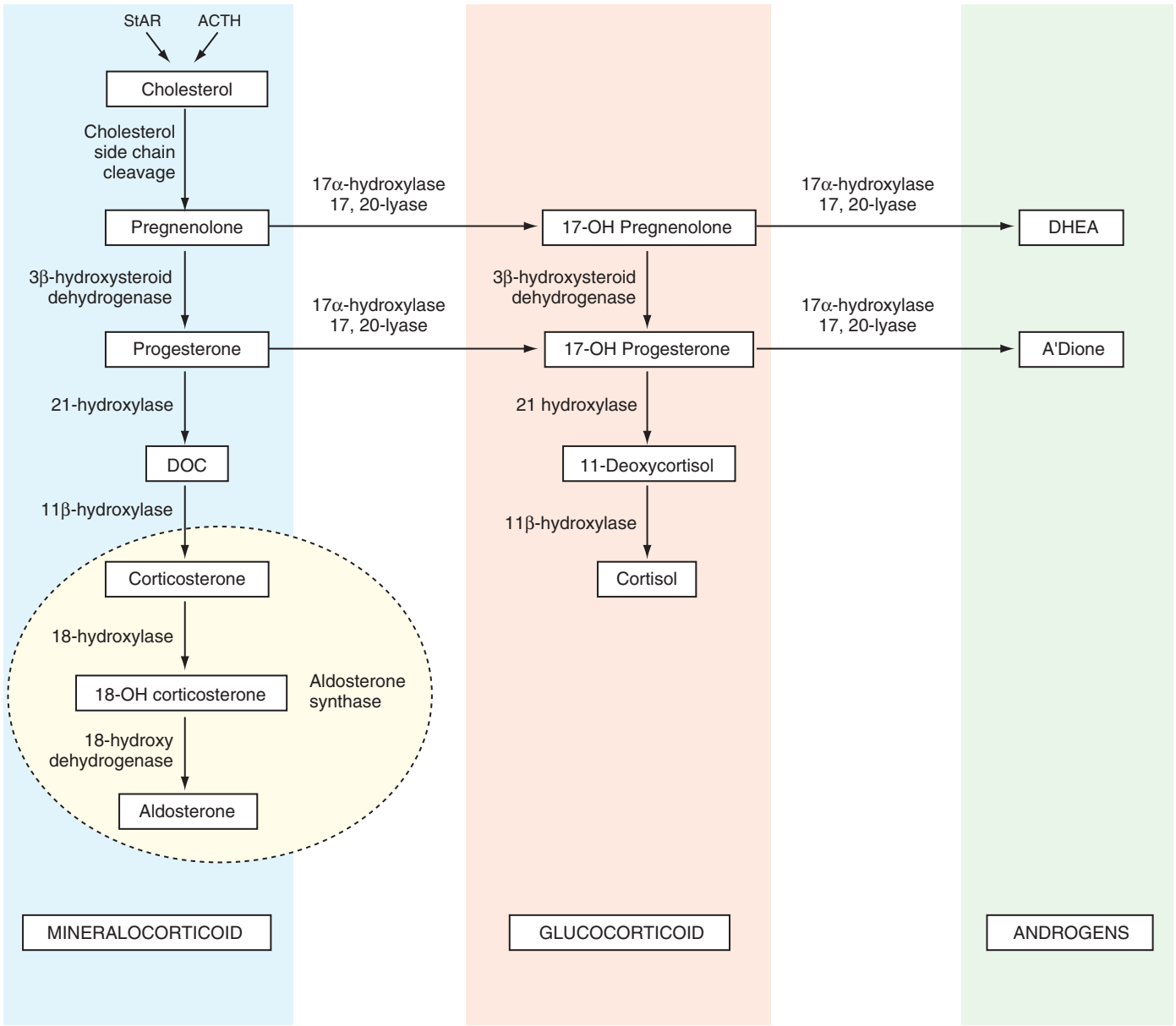


Figure 24-11 Steroidogeneic pathways of the adrenal cortex. The adrenal steroids are categorized according to mineralocorticoid, glucocorticoid, or androgenic activity. The chemical structures for these steroids are shown in Figure 25-1 in Chapter 25. *ACTH,* Adrenocorticotropin; *DHEA,* dehydroepiandrosterone; *DOC,* deoxycorticosterone; *StAR,* steroidogenic acute regulatory (protein).

http://basicbook.net

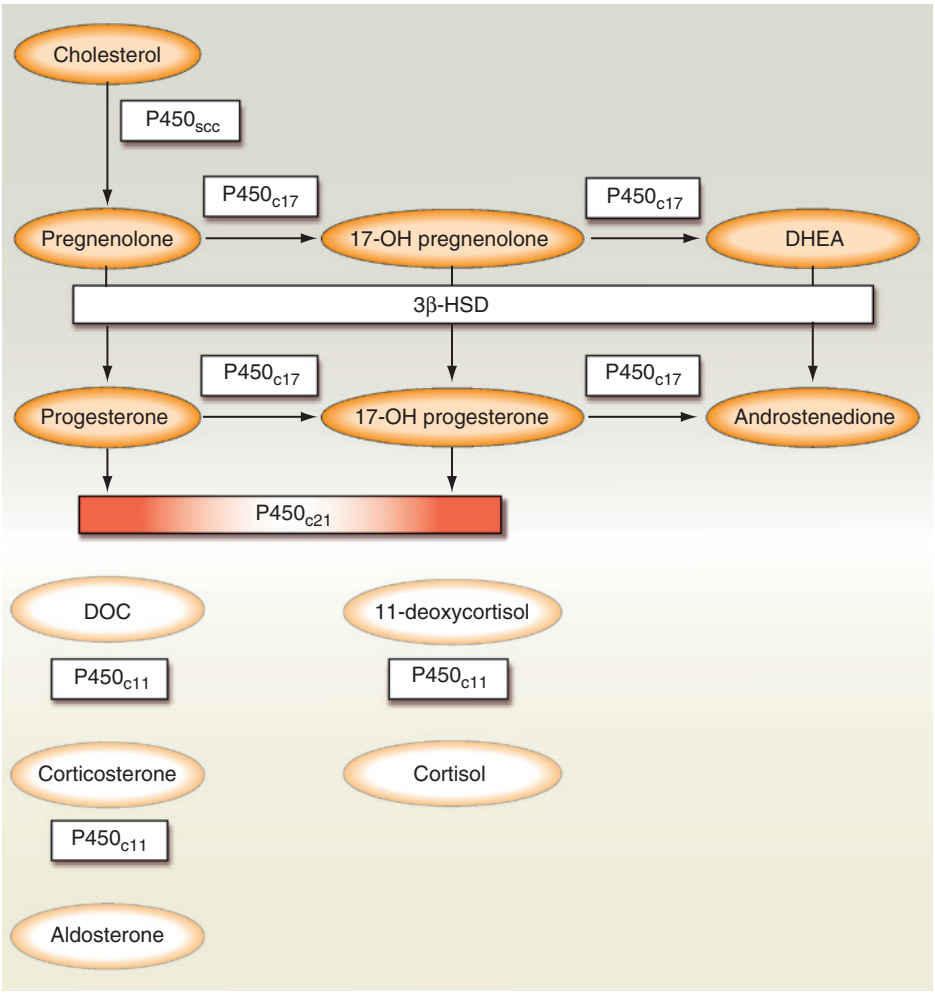


Figure 24-12 **Defective steroidogenesis due to 21-hydroxylase deficiency.** The relative increase in the hormones proximal to the block is depicted by more intense color. The more severe the enzymatic defect, the greater the concentration of the precursor hormones. *DHEA,* Dehydroepiandrosterone; *DOC,* deoxycorticosterone.

elevation of 11-deoxycortisol levels and of the THS to tetrahydrocortisol plus tetrahydrocortisone ratio is seen (Rosler et al, 1988).

Treatment consists of the replacement of glucocorticoids, causing normalization of DOC and plasma renin activity.

3-β-Hydroxysteroid Dehydrogenase Deficiency

3-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (3-β-HSD), which catalyzes the second enzymatic step in steroidogenesis, is coded by two genes, *HSD3BI* and *HSD3BII*. *HSD3BII* is expressed in the adrenals and gonads; *HSD3BI* is expressed in placenta, skin, and other peripheral tissues and usually remains functionally intact at these sites in CAH. A defect in 3-β-HSD leads to a block in the conversion of Δ5 steroids (pregnenolone, 17-OH pregnenolone, and dihydroepiandrosterone) to Δ4 steroids (progesterone, 17-OHP, androstenedione), resulting in an increase in circulating levels of Δ5 steroids (Fig. 24-14). However, because *HSD3BI* is usually intact, levels of the Δ4 steroids may be normal or even elevated.

Patients with classic disease will have manifestations of glucocorticoid deficiency, with or without the accompaniment of salt wasting. Affected males have incomplete masculinization, and females may be normal or may have ambiguous genitalia. A late-onset variant has been described that is associated with features typical of polycystic ovarian disease, such as hirsutism, oligomenorrhea, and infertility (Pang et al, 1985).

Previous criteria for the diagnosis of 3-β-HSD deficiency examined the basal and ACTH-stimulated Δ4/Δ5 steroid ratios, 17-OH-pregnenolone (17-OHP)/cortisol, and levels of pregnenolone, 17-OH-pregnenolone, and dehydroepiandrosterone in urine and blood. The standard for diagnosing this disorder has been recently revised to correlate more closely with genotypic studies. The ACTH-stimulated Δ5-17 P levels and Δ5-17 P/cortisol ratios have been shown to be the best indices for definitively diagnosing 3-β-HSD deficiency (Lutfallah et al, 2002). Applicability of these new criteria to patients with the nonclassic variant is still debatable.

Treatment consists of glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids, as well as sex steroids, in accordance with normal growth and development.

17-Hydroxylase Deficiency

17-Hydroxylase (CYP17, $P450_{c17}$) is expressed in the adrenal glands and the gonads and encodes two enzymes—17α-hydroxylase and 17,20-lyase. 17α-hydroxylase catalyzes the conversion of pregnenolone and progesterone to their respective 17-OH derivatives. 17,20-Lyase converts 17-OH pregnenolone to dihydroepiandosterone, and 17-OH progesterone to androstenedione. CYP17 deficiency blocks the conversion of pregnenolone and progesterone to the 17-hydroxy derivatives, causing shunting from testosterone and cortisol synthesis to aldosterone (Fig. 24-15). Accordingly, these patients develop hypertension and hypokalemic alkalosis in association with incomplete masculinization (in the male) and decreased testosterone and cortisol levels. 17-OH deficiency is diagnosed by demonstrating high DOC, pregnenolone, and progesterone levels, along with decreased urinary 17-ketosteroids and 17-hydroxycorticosteroids. The gene associated with this condition (CYP17) has been located on chromosome 10q, the same gene as 17,20-desmolase (Kater & Biglieri, 1994).

Congenital Lipoid Adrenal Hyperplasia

Congenital lipoid adrenal hyperplasia (lipoid CAH) is the most severe form of CAH, in which the synthesis of all gonadal and adrenal cortical steroids is markedly impaired. Lipoid CAH may be caused by a defect in the StAR or the P450 side chain cleavage (scc) (Fujieda et al, 2003). StAR, located on chromosome 8p11, controls the rate-limiting step in steroidogenesis. It is responsible for the shuttling of cholesterol from the outer to the inner

http://basicbook.net

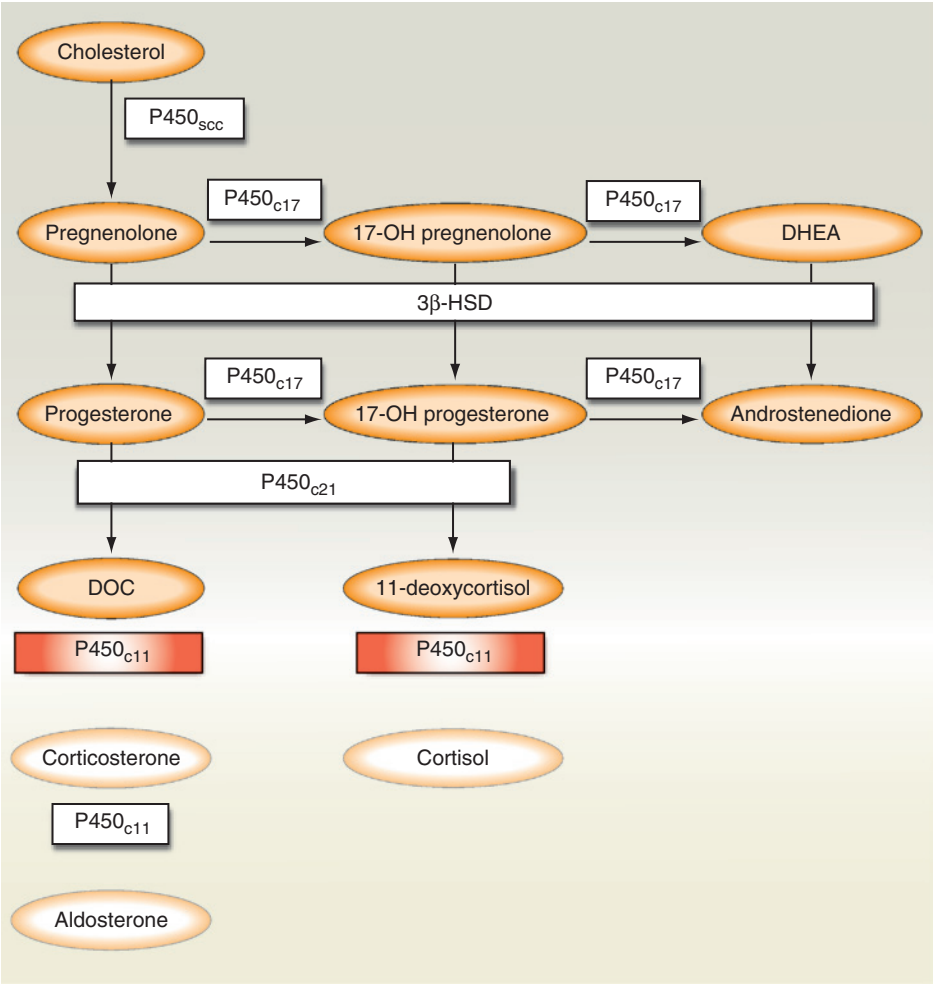


Figure 24-13 **Defective steroidogenesis due to 11-β-hydroxylase deficiency.** The relative increase in the hormones proximal to the block is depicted by more intense color. The more severe the enzymatic defect, the greater the concentration of the precursor hormones. High levels of 11-deoxycorticosterone (DOC) created by the block produce a state of mineralocorticoid excess. *DHEA,* Dehydroepiandrosterone.

mitochondrial membrane. 20,22-Desmolase (CYP11A1, P450scc) converts cholesterol to pregnenolone (Fig. 24-16). Pathologically, the adrenal cortex shows marked accumulation of cholesterol and other lipids, which is the primary distinguishing feature from congenital adrenal hypoplasia.

The presentation of this extremely rare disorder is that of severe adrenal insufficiency with hypotension, salt wasting, and feminization of external genitalia in males. Occasionally, females may not present until the onset of puberty. Diagnosis is made by the presence of extremely low cortisol and aldosterone concentrations and elevated ACTH and plasma renin activity.

Aldosterone Synthetase Deficiency

Aldosterone synthetase (CYP11B2) is the final step in the steroid synthetic pathway leading to the production of aldosterone. It stimulates a multistep process: 11-hydroxylation of DOC to corticosterone, 18-hydroxylation of corticosterone to 18-hydroxycorticosterone, and, finally, 18-dehydrogenation to aldosterone. Isolated enzyme deficiency leads to salt wasting, hyperkalemia, and metabolic acidosis. This condition may be diagnosed by demonstrating the presence of metabolites of corticosterone and 11-deoxycorticosterone in the urine, elevated serum DOC, and deficiency of corticosterone, 18-hydroxycorticosterone, or aldosterone in the serum.

Cortisol and the Glucocorticoids

The adrenal cortex secretes cortisol in response to ACTH, a diurnal rhythm, and stress. ACTH, synthesized in the adenohypophysis, is formed from the cleavage of a much larger precursor molecule: POMC. In addition to ACTH, cleavage of POMC releases β-LPH, which in turn is cleaved to yield γ-LPH and β-endorphin. Within the ACTH sequence are α-MSH and the corticotropin-like intermediate lobe protein. Endorphins, which act on neurons in the brain, constitute a distinct peptidergic system related to pain perception. Although β-endorphin is secreted in parallel with ACTH, the significance of this remains unknown.

ACTH consists of 39 amino acid residues, of which residues 1 to 24 at the amino terminal possess full hormonal activity. Occasionally, POMC is incompletely processed; this leads to the formation of other forms of ACTH that usually have little biological activity, although they may retain immunoreactivity. These forms may predominate in malignant conditions such as ectopic production by primary or metastatic lung cancer, and in some patients with Nelson's syndrome, a disorder characterized by the occurrence of a pituitary tumor and skin hyperpigmentation following bilateral adrenalectomy. Defects in POMC cleavage enzymes may also be responsible for the formation of rare forms of isolated ACTH deficiency (Nussey et al, 1993).

ACTH is secreted in response to several factors, of which CRH and AVP are the most important. Among the other moieties reported to stimulate ACTH secretion are atrial natriuretic factor (ANF), angiotensin II, IL-6, IL-1, and tumor necrosis factor-α (Rivier & Vale, 1983; Chrousos, 1998).

CRH is synthesized and released from the hypothalamus; it acts to stimulate the synthesis and release of ACTH from the pituitary gland. CRH is released in a circadian pattern and in response to physiologic stimuli such as stress and hypoglycemia. The HPA axis consists of various feedback loops that control cortisol synthesis and secretion. When plasma cortisol increases, it suppresses the release of CRH, ACTH, and AVP, which, in turn, leads to lowering of the cortisol level. Conversely, when serum cortisol reaches a nadir, the hypothalamus and pituitary gland respond by increasing CRH and ACTH production, leading to stimulation of cortisol formation and secretion. By this mechanism, ACTH and cortisol control the concentration of each other within a very narrow range,

http://basicbook.net

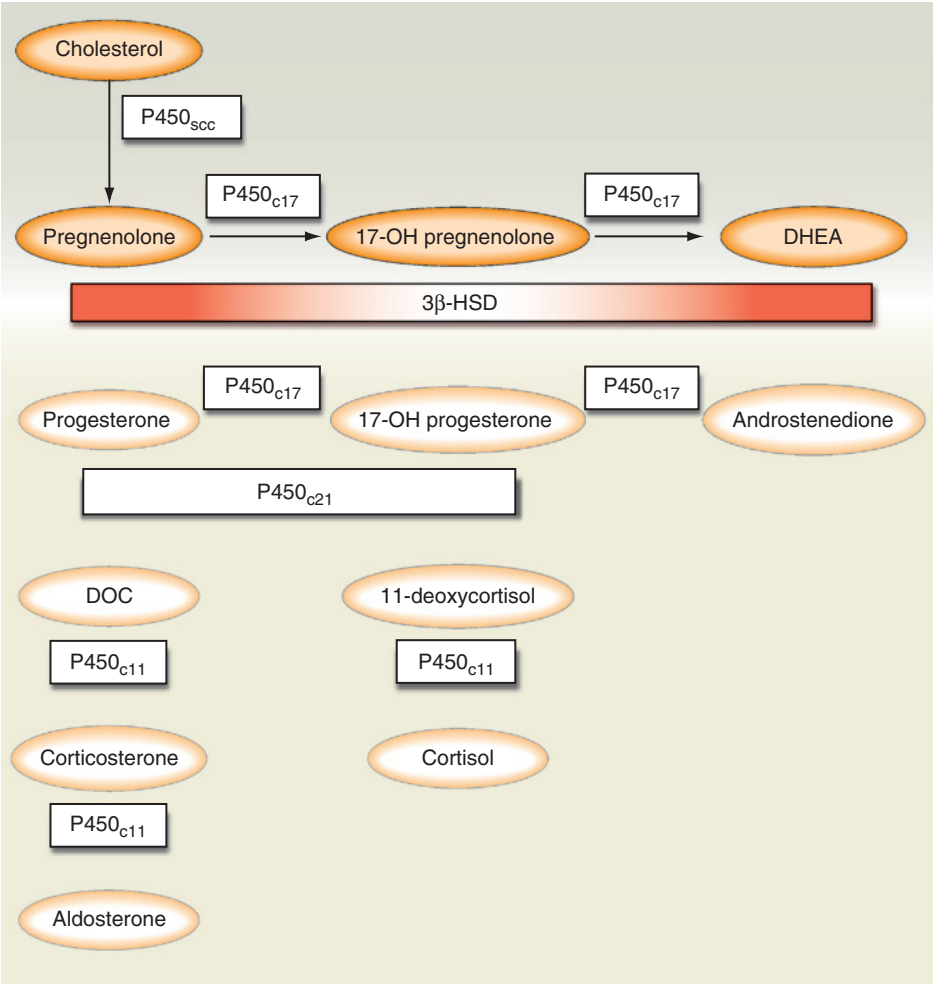


Figure 24-14 **Defective steroidogenesis due to 3-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase deficiency.** The relative increase in the hormones proximal to the block is depicted by more intense color. The more severe the enzymatic defect, the greater the concentration of the precursor hormones. 17-α-hydroxyprogesterone levels may be elevated because of peripheral conversion of 17-α-hydroxy pregnenolone. *DHEA,* Dehydroepiandrosterone; *DOC,* deoxycorticosterone.

and a small change in one results in a concomitant change in the other. When the adrenal gland is unable to respond to ACTH because of damage or disease, cortisol levels are low and ACTH levels are high. In those conditions in which the pituitary gland is destroyed, ACTH is not formed and cortisol levels are consequently low. Damage to the hypothalamus is also associated with low ACTH and cortisol levels; testing with CRH may permit the distinction between these two entities. Synthetic forms of CRH are used in testing the anterior pituitary gland's reserve of ACTH by comparing plasma ACTH and cortisol before and 1 hour after CRH stimulation (Grodum et al, 1993). This test is useful in distinguishing between lesions affecting the hypothalamus, pituitary gland, and adrenal glands (Fukata et al, 1993). If the lesion is in the hypothalamus, after a time delay, ACTH levels rise following CRH administration. If it is in the pituitary gland, no significant ACTH response occurs. With primary adrenal insufficiency, administration of CRH causes a further rise in an already elevated ACTH level, but little or no rise in cortisol level.

If the HPA axis is interrupted by the administration of large quantities of exogenous glucocorticoids, they will exert an inhibitory effect on the hypothalamus and pituitary gland, suppressing CRH and ACTH secretion. If this suppression continues over a period of weeks, it leads to atrophy of the adrenal glands; as a result, the HPA axis becomes unable to secrete cortisol in times of stress. The HPA axis can fully recover after tapering off of steroids.

The second influence on plasma cortisol levels is the diurnal pattern, which is due to the circadian pattern of ACTH release. Major increases in secretion occur at between 4 AM and 8 AM, followed by a decrease in ACTH during the rest of the day. In subjects with a normal sleep-wake cycle, the lowest ACTH concentrations are found shortly after midnight. Sudden changes in sleep-wake patterns have little effect on the diurnal pattern, but permanent changes in daily sleep habits result in a gradual change in diurnal secretory patterns. Superimposed on the circadian periodicity is an ultradian rhythm of 10 to 18 secretory bursts per 24 hours (Horrocks et al, 1990).

The third important influence on cortisol secretion is stress. Stimuli such as surgical trauma, pyrogens, hypoglycemia, and hemorrhage are capable of bringing about an acute increase in ACTH and cortisol secretion. This response to stress may be absent or decreased in magnitude in patients in whom large doses of steroids have been administered for some time. The initiation of any stress response is dependent on an intact nervous system. For example, trauma normally results in the acute release of ACTH and cortisol; however, in patients with spinal cord transections, the normal transmission of neurologic stimuli is interrupted, and as a result, the same trauma applied to an extremity will not elicit any ACTH or cortisol response. Evidence suggests that the stress response of cortisol is mediated through excitatory and inhibitory inputs that integrate at the level of the hypothalamus and modulate CRH secretion. Cortisol levels also rise after meals, especially those high in protein; it also rises in depression (Linkowski et al, 1987).

Most disorders of cortisol secretion can be classified by the patterns of response of the following three hormones to suppression and stimulation: ACTH, plasma cortisol, and urinary free cortisol (Snow et al, 1992).

Laboratory Measurement of ACTH

Plasma ACTH is measured using a two-site immunoradiometric assay or an immunochemiluminometric assay. To prevent degradation of ACTH, it is best to collect the sample in a prechilled EDTA lavender-top tube. The specimen should be kept in an ice bath and should be processed as soon as possible. Following centrifugation in a refrigerated centrifuge, the

http://basicbook.net

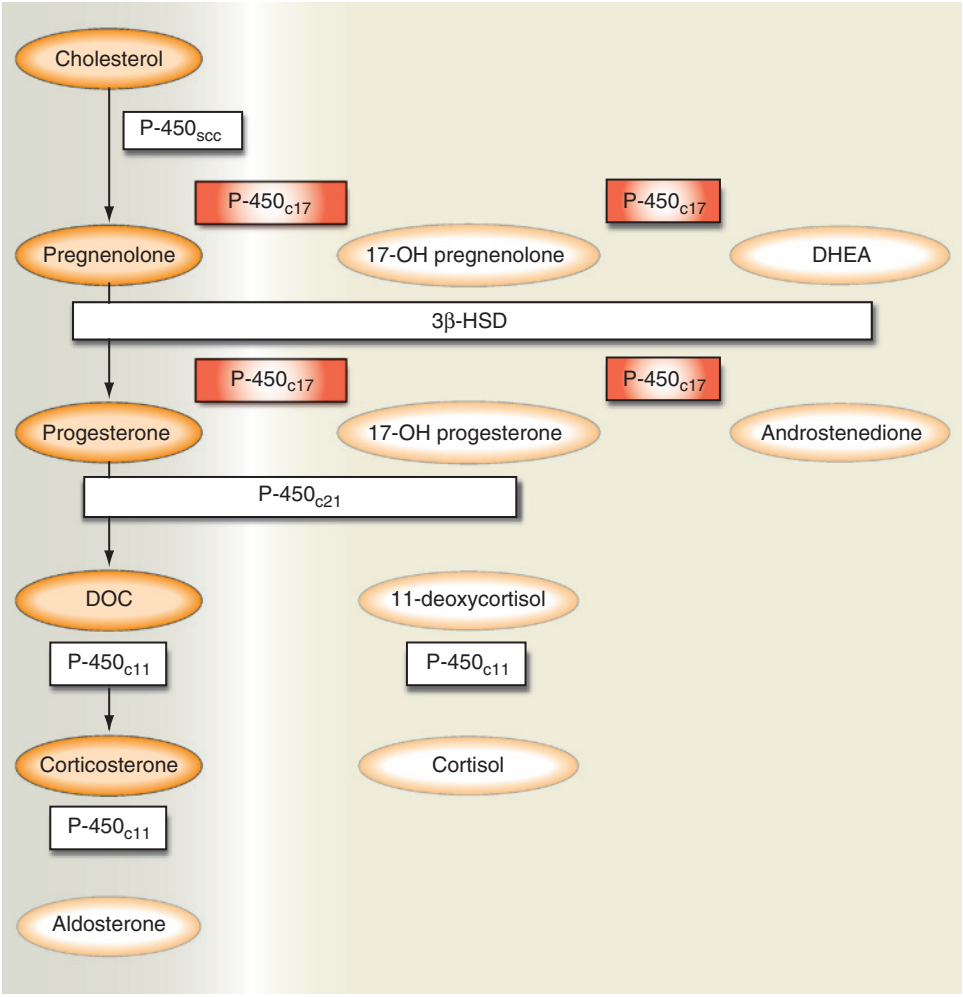


Figure 24-15 **Defective steroidogenesis due to 17-hydroxylase deficiency.** The relative increase in hormones proximal to the block is depicted by more intense color. The more severe the enzymatic defect, the greater the concentration of the precursor hormones. High levels of 11-deoxycorticosterone (DOC) and corticosterone created by the block produce a state of mineralocorticoid excess. *DHEA,* Dehydroepiandrosterone.

specimen should be separated, transferred to a plastic tube, and kept frozen at –20° C until time of analysis. The normal reference range is 2 to 12 pmol/L (9 to 52 pg/mL) between 7 AM and 10 AM. Plasma ACTH is a useful tool for distinguishing primary (adrenal) from secondary (pituitary) or tertiary (hypothalamic) adrenal insufficiency. In primary adrenal insufficiency, low cortisol concentrations are found, along with increased ACTH levels. In secondary or tertiary adrenal insufficiency, both ACTH and cortisol are expected to be low. ACTH levels best discriminate between healthy individuals and those with adrenal insufficiency when specimens for ACTH are collected between 8 AM and 10 AM.

ACTH is less useful in diseases of cortisol excess. Up to 50% of patients may have normal ACTH levels in Cushing's disease. Although the values tend to run higher (>20 pmol/L [>90 pg/mL]) in Cushing's syndrome due to ectopic ACTH production, the values overlap with those seen in Cushing's disease in 30% of cases (Findling, 1992). Because of the normal diurnal variation in ACTH and cortisol secretion, measurement of these values during their expected nadir, from 11 PM to 1 AM, is helpful in confirming the diagnosis of ACTH-dependent Cushing's disease. An elevated midnight ACTH of greater than 5 pmol/L (23 pg/mL) in the face of an elevated serum cortisol confirms the diagnosis of ACTH-dependent Cushing's disease. Those patients with ectopic ACTH-secreting tumors characteristically have markedly elevated plasma ACTH (usually >200 pg/mL) and elevated serum cortisol. Measurement of ACTH by plasma extraction, which detects ACTH precursors and fragments, may be useful in distinguishing patients with cancer-related syndromes or ACTH-secreting tumors from those with Cushing's disease, as the former entities are more likely to produce these other forms of ACTH (White & Clark, 1993). ACTH-secreting neoplasms may be occult, creating diagnostic difficulties; in this instance, ACTH measurement using selective venous sampling has proven useful in localization of the lesion.

In patients with increased levels of circulating glucocorticoids due to an adrenal adenoma or carcinoma, and those surreptitiously taking steroids, ACTH secretion is inhibited and levels are low or undetectable. In patients with pituitary-induced adrenal hyperplasia (Cushings' disease), plasma ACTH may be at or above the upper reference interval at 9 AM, and fail to show the expected fall after midnight. Another use of ACTH assays is in the determination of adequacy of cortisol replacement in congenital adrenal hyperplasia. When replacement therapy is optimal, ACTH values are similar to those seen in a reference population.

Plasma Corticotropin-Releasing Hormone

CRH measurements are performed by liquid chromatography and tandem mass spectrometry (LC/MS-MS) and remain largely a research tool.

CRH circulates in one of two forms: free, or bound to CRH-binding protein. The reference range for plasma CRH in men and nonpregnant women is <34 pg/mL. CRH is increased in Cushing's syndrome due to ectopic production of CRH. CRH-binding protein increases during pregnancy; as a result the normative range for CRH varies throughout pregnancy: first trimester <40 pg/mL; second trimester <153 pg/mL; and third trimester <847 pg/mL (Goland et al, 1986).

Serum Cortisol Measurements

About 90% of circulating cortisol is bound to serum protein, of which 10% to 20% is loosely bound to albumin, and the remainder is bound to the glycoprotein transcortin (cortisol-binding globulin [CBG]). The remaining 10% of circulating cortisol is the unbound, free hormone. It is believed that only free cortisol is active, and that the protein-bound fraction is metabolically inert, probably serving as a reservoir for free cortisol. Protein binding also may protect cortisol from deactivation by the liver or filtration by the kidney.

http://basicbook.net

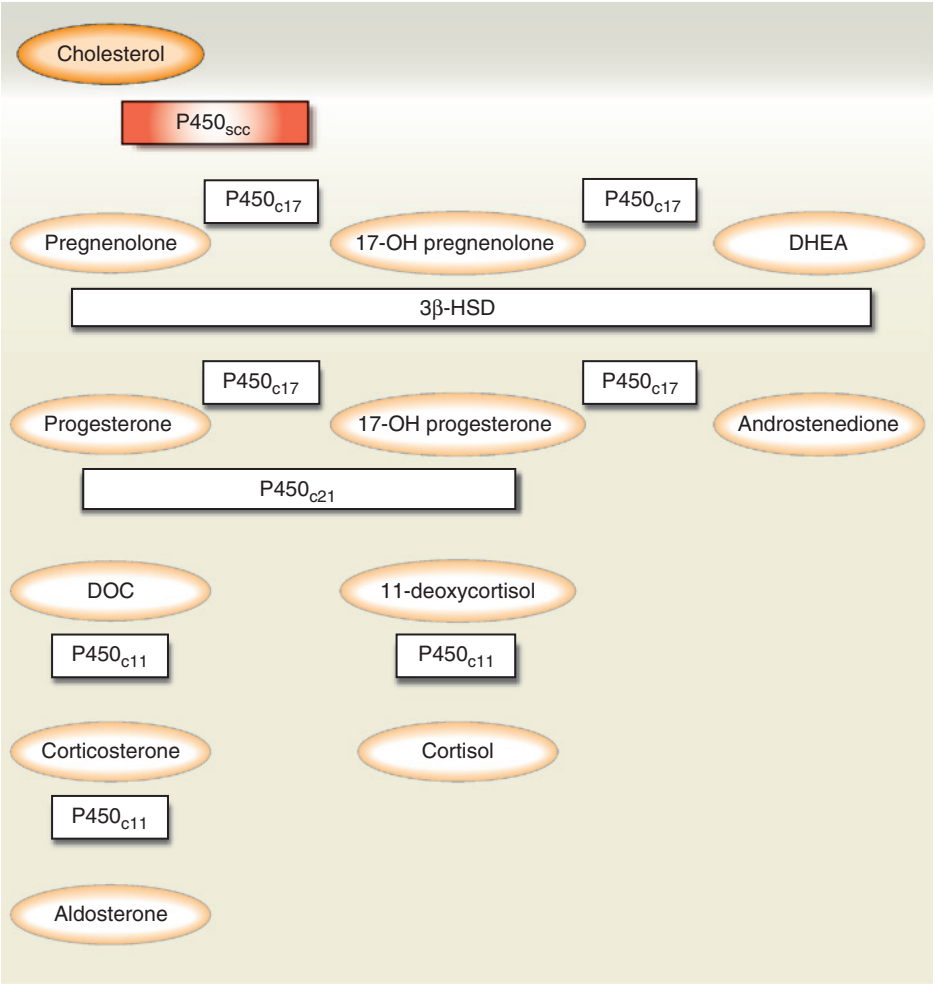


Figure 24-16 Defective steroidogenesis in congenital lipoid adrenal hyperplasia is due to a defect in steroidogenic acute regulatory protein or the side-chain cleavage enzyme (P450scc). The relative increase in hormones proximal to the block is depicted by more intense color. In this disorder, the synthesis of all classes of steroids is defective. *DHEA,* Dehydroepiandrosterone; *DOC,* deoxycorticosterone.

One of the earliest and simplest methods used to determine the serum cortisol concentration was a fluorometric assay developed by Nelson and Samuels that was based on a technique first developed by Porter and Silber (Porter & Silber, 1950; Nelson & Samuels, 1952). The subsequent development of antibody-based immunoassays provided a more specific method for cortisol estimation with the added advantages of requiring a smaller specimen volume and a more rapid turnaround time. The problem was that some of the antibodies used showed a large degree of cross-reactivity with other steroid species, resulting in spuriously elevated cortisol concentrations. In chronic renal disease, various steroids and their glucuronides accumulate in the blood; cross-reactivity between these steroids and their conjugates with the antibodies used in the assay can yield significantly erroneous cortisol concentrations. Similarly, in CAH, high concentrations of cortisol precursors are seen in the serum because of an enzyme defect. Because these precursors cross-react with assay antibodies, artificial elevations of cortisol are found. The degree of interference varies with the assay used and cannot be easily predicted. Nonisotopic immunoassay methods using organometallic tracers, fluorescence polarization, and enzyme immunoassay techniques have also been developed for cortisol determinations (Bacarese-Hamilton et al, 1992; Lentjes et al, 1993; Philomin et al, 1994). The major disadvantage of all of these cortisol assays continues to be lack of specificity.

The measurement of cortisol by radioimmunoassay (RIA) and chemiluminescent techniques has largely been supplanted by high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) with tandem mass spectrometry, which appears to offer the ultimate in specificity. Serum cortisol is collected in a no-additive (red-top) tube. Reference values for serum cortisol for men and women roughly range from 5 to 25 μg/dL (140 to 690 nmol/L) at 8 AM to 10 AM, dropping to about 3 to 12 μg/dL (80 to 330 nmol/L) by 4 PM. Because of wide swings in basal cortisol levels resulting from its diurnal and ultradian pattern of secretion, serum cortisol assays are most useful when evaluated in the context of dynamic manipulation (i.e., adrenal stimulation or suppression).

Salivary Cortisol

Up to 30% of urinary free cortisol (UFC) and dexamethasone suppression screening tests may return an incorrect result. Recent studies have shown that the use of a midnight salivary cortisol (MSC) is a viable alternative. CBG is not present in saliva; therefore the results may be more useful in situations in which CBG concentration is altered. Salivary cortisol is highly stable and easy to collect, making it a useful tool for screening and for diagnosing instances of increased cortisol secretion. It does not appear to be affected by the rate of saliva production and can reflect a change in serum cortisol in as rapid as a few minutes (Read et al, 1990). Because of alterations in circadian rhythm, it may not be an appropriate test for shift workers or those with highly variable bed times. One study compared the sensitivity for the detection of Cushing's syndrome by nighttime salivary cortisol levels versus that for simultaneous inpatient serum cortisol levels and urine glucocorticoid excretion. It was found that the salivary cortisol measurements worked as well as plasma measurements and better than urine glucocorticoid excretion. The authors concluded that measurement of bedtime salivary cortisol was a practical and accurate screening test for the diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome (Papanicolaou et al, 2002). Another study compared the diagnostic performance of MSC measurement versus that of midnight serum cortisol (MNC) and UFC in differentiating 41 patients with Cushing's syndrome from 33 with pseudo-Cushing's states, 199 with simple obesity, and 27 healthy normal weight volunteers. In the whole study population, no statistically significant differences in terms of sensitivity, specificity, diagnostic accuracy, and predictive values were observed among tests. In particular, the overall diagnostic accuracy for MSC was similar to those of UFC and MNC (Putignano et al, 2003; Elamin et al, 2008). A recent

http://basicbook.net

review of the literature has shown that elevated late-night (11 PM to 12 AM) salivary cortisol has greater than 90% sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis of endogenous Cushing's syndrome (Raff, 2009). It is recommended to have the patient avoid tobacco on the day of specimen collection.

Urinary Free Cortisol Measurements

Only 1% of the total adrenal secretion appears in the urine as cortisol, but it is this fraction that provides valuable aid in the diagnosis of adrenal disease. In the kidney, glomerular filtration of free cortisol (unbound to CBG and albumin) is followed by passive tubular reabsorption without a demonstrable reabsorption maximum. At serum cortisol levels of about 20 to 25 µg/dL (the upper 8 AM reference value), the binding capacity of transcortin (CBG) is exceeded, leading to a very rapid and disproportionate increase in the unbound fraction compared with the total serum cortisol. Doubling of serum cortisol from 20 to 40 µg/dL results in at least a fivefold increase in unbound cortisol. At these levels, free cortisol clearance by the kidneys is directly proportional to the unbound serum cortisol concentration, and a steep rise in cortisol clearance is seen. Serum cortisol reflects the sum of free, CBG-bound and albumin-bound cortisol. Only free (unbound) cortisol is filtered by the kidneys; therefore unlike serum cortisol, UFC is not affected by conditions and medications that alter CBG and albumin concentrations. Thus, when UFC rather than serum cortisol is used, it is easier to differentiate patients with adrenal hyperfunction from a reference population.

UFC is the best specimen to submit because it provides an integrated profile of total cortisol secretion over a 24-hour period, which is most helpful in those with sporadic excess cortisol production. The collection should also be assayed for creatinine to ensure that an adequate specimen has been submitted. The reliability of the test may be further improved by submitting urine collected over 2 or 3 days because day-to-day fluctuations in cortisol excretion are known to occur. Urinary free cortisol levels are unaffected by alterations in hepatic metabolism of cortisol. Although total cortisol production and urinary 17-OHCS may be increased, serum cortisol and urinary free cortisol remain within the reference interval. Because renal clearance of cortisol is dependent on normal kidney function, it is not surprising that patients with renal disease have low UFC values. UFC is unreliable when CrCl is <20 mL/min, and is of reduced reliability when CrCl is <60 mL/min (Chan et al, 2004). Increased serum concentration of transcortin during pregnancy and with estrogen therapy results in increased serum cortisol levels. This increase is not reflected by an elevation of cortisol metabolites in urine, but urinary free cortisol may be increased. Conditions in which spuriously elevated levels occur include starvation, use of topical steroids, and perhaps hydration in the form of water loading.

Method. HPLC with mass spectrometry is considered the current reference method for measuring UFC; it has diagnostic sensitivity of 100% and specificity of 98% for distinguishing patients with Cushing's syndrome from normal individuals (Rudd, 1985). Prior assays (like RIA) were less specific with a tendency to overestimate the amount of cortisol present.

The normal range varies according to the assay technique used; however, values that are four times the upper reference limit are diagnostic for Cushing's syndrome. A low urinary free cortisol value is suggestive of adrenal hypofunction; however, because there is great overlap with the normal reference interval, this test is not used to make the diagnosis of adrenal insufficiency.

Hypercortisolism: Cushing's Syndrome

Cushing's syndrome is composed of a group of clinical and metabolic disorders resulting from prolonged exposure to elevated concentrations of glucocorticoids. The excessive levels of glucocorticoids may be of endogenous (secreted by the adrenal zona fasciculata), or far more commonly, of exogenous (e.g. pharmacologically administered steroids) origin. Patients with severe forms of the syndrome are easily recognizable by their florid presentation (e.g. striae, facial plethora, proximal muscle weakness, and stereotypical accumulations of fat). Many of the signs and symptoms due to hypercortisolism are common medical complaints (e.g. fatigue, weight gain, obesity, diabetes, and hypertension), however it is important to suspect Cushing's in certain situations as these have an increase in morbidity and mortality. Persons who may fall into this category and who should undergo screening include those with osteoporosis, hypertension, or diabetes occurring at a younger-than-expected age; patients with multiple, progressive features suggestive of Cushing's; and those with incidentally discovered adrenal adenomas (Nieman et al, 2008). Patients with ectopic ACTH-producing tumors have elevated ACTH and glucocorticoid levels. However, because of the rapid growth of these tumors, they usually die before clinical signs of the syndrome can manifest. Features most commonly appearing in this group include hypokalemia and proximal muscle weakness (Salgado, et al 2006).

Laboratory findings in Cushing's syndrome include: (1) excessive production of cortisol measured as elevated serum cortisol, urinary free cortisol, or midnight salivary cortisol, (2) loss of circadian rhythm of ACTH and cortisol, and (3) loss of suppression of cortisol production by administration of the synthetic glucocorticoid dexamethasone.

Cushing's disease specifically refers to hypercortisolism due to an ACTH-secreting pituitary adenoma. *Cushing's syndrome* is a global term that encompasses a wide variety of entities associated with hypercortisolemia.

Cushing's syndrome is most commonly iatrogenic in origin; however, it may also be due to a primary adrenal malignancy or ectopic production of CRH or ACTH by a tumor. In adrenal Cushing's, excess cortisol is autonomously produced by the adrenal glands, resulting in suppression of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis. Adrenal Cushing's (adenoma or carcinoma) accounts for less than 20% of cases, whereas pituitary Cushing's accounts for about 68%, and ectopic production of ACTH (outside the pituitary-adrenal axis) is the cause in about 12% of cases (Orth, 1995). Because the treatment and prognosis differ depending on the underlying etiology, it is important that a specific diagnosis be reached.

Evaluation of a patient suspected of having Cushing's syndrome begins with use of one of the three screening tests. If one of the tests returns as borderline, or the suspicion for the diagnosis remains high, a different screening test should be performed. The second phase includes confirmation of the diagnosis and identification of the pathophysiologic process causing the hypercortisolism.

Tests Used for the Diagnosis of Cushing's Syndrome

Screening Tests. Three screening tests are used in the evaluation of a patient suspected of having Cushing's syndrome (Fig. 24-17): the 24-hour urinary free cortisol, the overnight dexamethasone suppression test (DST), and the plasma or salivary midnight cortisol (MSC) level. The 24-hour urinary free cortisol is a reflection of the unbound circulating cortisol that is freely filtered by the glomerulus. Unlike serum cortisol, it is unaffected by the level of circulating CBG. HPLC or gas chromatography coupled with tandem mass spectrometry provides the best specificity for measuring urinary free cortisol. Unlike RIA or enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, these techniques are not affected by cross-reactivity with steroid metabolites or synthetic glucocorticoids. The upper range of normal with these methods is 110 to 138 nmol/24 hours (40 to 50 µg/hour) (Raff & Findling, 2003). The creatinine should be measured in all collections to ensure the adequacy of the specimen. Urinary cortisol excretion is decreased when the glomerular filtration rate is <30 mL/minute, and thus may be normal despite the presence of excessive cortisol production (Arnaldi et al, 2003). It has been suggested that the 1-mg overnight DST should be the preferred screening test used for these individuals (Nieman et al, 2008). Because most pediatric patients being evaluated for Cushing's are of adult weight (>45 kg), adult normal ranges may be used (Nieman et al, 2008).

As per the latest guidelines for the diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome, any UFC concentration above the upper limit of normal for that particular assay should be considered a positive test (Nieman et al, 2008). Values greater than four times the upper limit of normal are diagnostic of Cushing's syndrome. From 10% to 15% of patients with Cushing's syndrome will have at least one in four 24-hour urine collections for free cortisol return as normal (Nieman & Cutler, 1990). If cortisol excretion is normal but clinical suspicion is high, the study should be repeated or a different screening method should be used. Milder elevations of UFC can be seen in pseudo-Cushing's and during normal pregnancy. Pseudo-Cushing's is an entity characterized by HPA axis overactivity but without true Cushing's syndrome. It has been described in depression, anxiety disorders, alcoholism, poorly controlled diabetes, and morbid obesity. Refer to the Pseudo-Cushing's section later in the chapter for more details. The overnight dexamethasone suppression test is a much simpler test to perform. The patient takes 1 mg of dexamethasone orally between the hours of 11 PM and 12 midnight. The plasma cortisol is drawn the following morning between 8 AM and 9 AM, respectively. The original criterion for an abnormal response was failure to suppress the morning cortisol level to <5 µg/dL (138 nmol/L); this has been revised downward to <1.8 µg/dL (50 nmol/L) (Findling & Raff, 1999; Arnaldi et al, 2003; Nieman et al, 2008). Using the lower cutoff of < 1.8 µg/dL (50 nmol/L) provides a greater than 95 % sensitivity and 80% specificity, and serves to minimize the number of false-positive results (Nieman et al, 2008). Failure to suppress could be due to Cushing's syndrome or pseudo-Cushing's, and may even occur in some patients who are normal. The false-positive rate can

http://basicbook.net

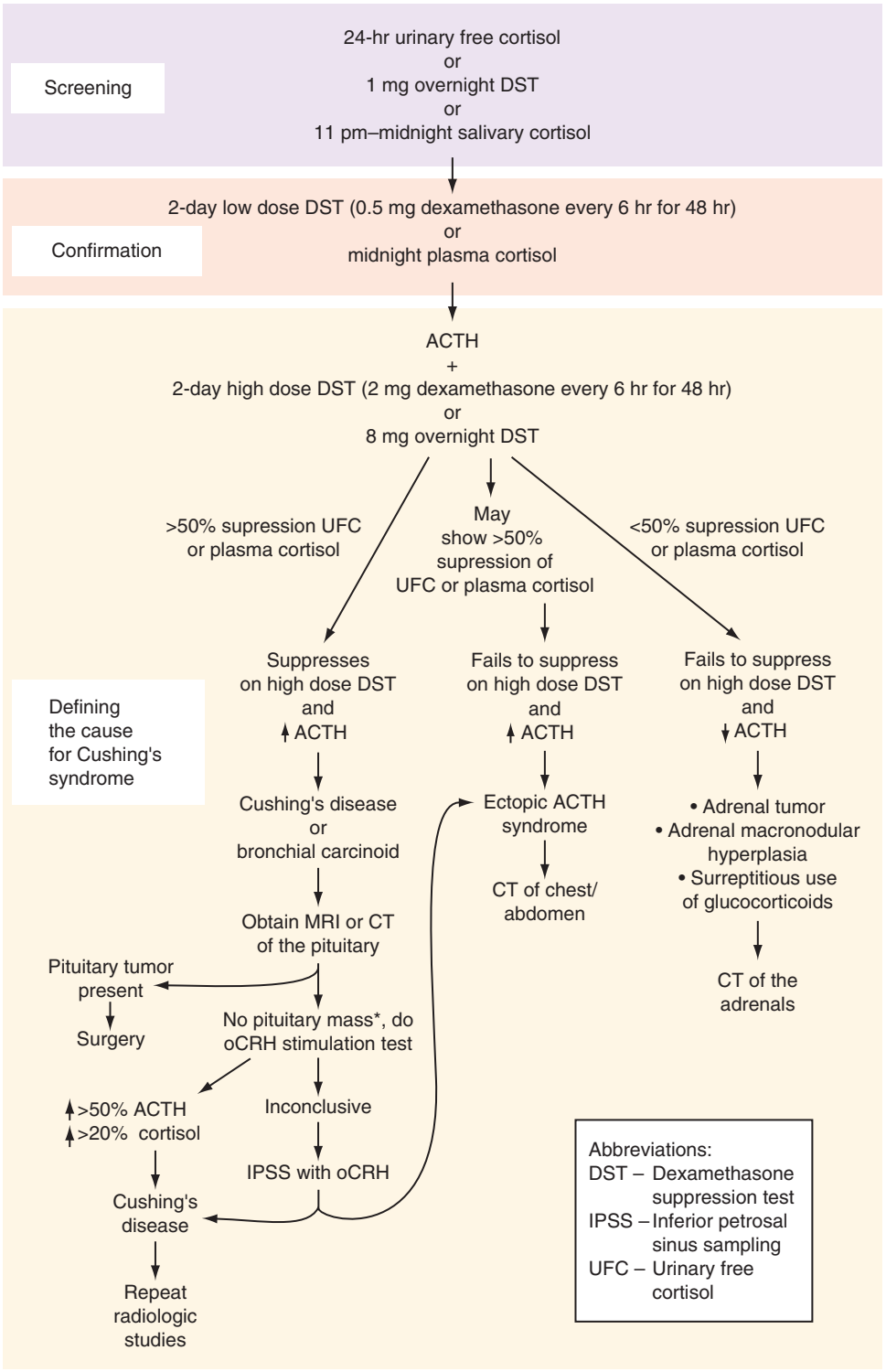


Figure 24-17 **Algorithm for the evaluation of Cushing's syndrome.** All screening tests must be followed by a confirmatory test. *ACTH,* Adrenocorticotropin; *CT,* computed tomography; *oCRH,* ovine corticotropin-releasing hormone; *MRI,* magnetic resonance imaging. *If there is no pituitary mass, obtain a chest radiograph and chest CT to rule out bronchial carcinoid before proceeding to IPSS.

be as high as 30% for a variety of reasons: Dexamethasone was taken too early; the patient was on phenobarbital, phenytoin, or another medication known to accelerate the metabolism of dexamethasone; malabsorption; alcoholism; or morbid obesity. Pregnancy and drugs such as estrogen, which increase serum transcortin (aka CBG), may also result in elevated cortisol levels. Because of these and possibly other factors, about 1% of healthy individuals, 13% of obese patients, 50% of women on estrogens, and 25% of hospitalized and chronically ill patients show false-positive overnight dexamethasone suppression tests (DSTs). False-negative results, on the other hand, occur in less than 2% of patients.

The midnight salivary cortisol (MSC) concentration is a simple, convenient, and accurate means by which to diagnose Cushing's syndrome. MSC carries a high diagnostic sensitivity and specificity, and has been demonstrated to have an excellent correlation with the plasma free cortisol concentration (Papanicolaou et al, 2002; Yaneva et al, 2004; Alwani et al, 2014). Using a cutoff of 9.3 nmol/L on a commercial ELISA kit, MSC had a sensitivity of 100%, specificity of 83%, PPV of 94%, and NPV of 100% (Alwani et al, 2014). It performs slightly better than the 24-hour UFC in distinguishing patients with Cushing's syndrome from obese subjects (Yaneva et al, 2004).

http://basicbook.net

Several studies describe the use of a late-night (11 PM to 12 AM) salivary cortisol (LNSC); others use the terms *MSC* and *LNSC* interchangeably, although the methodologies describe the samples as being collected at midnight. There are no studies comparing MSC with LNSC; however, because the data for MSC is more robust, it is the preferred test.

The patient can collect the sample at home. Two methods can be used to collect the sample: The patient can chew on a cotton pledget for 2 to 3 minutes and then place the pledget into a plastic tube; alternatively, the patient can passively drool directly into a test tube. The sample is then mailed to the reference laboratory; because salivary cortisol is very stable, there is little concern about degradation during transport. The sample can be analyzed either by immunoassay or liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry (LC-MS/MS). While immunoassay is more widely used, LC-MS/MS is useful in evaluating for surreptitious use of steroids and for steroid excess in those using inhaled steroids (Raff, 2013). Normative values vary according to the reference laboratory. Results should be interpreted with caution in those who may have blunting of their circadian rhythm (e.g., shift workers, patients with depression, critical illness). Falsely elevated results may be seen in smokers and users of chewing tobacco, in which case refraining from use for 24 hours prior to collection is recommended.

Screening in special populations. The preferred screening test during pregnancy is the UFC. UFC levels normally rise during the second and third trimesters, therefore UFC values greater than three times the upper limit of normal are considered consistent with Cushing's syndrome (Nieman et al, 2008).

Because of the decrease in cortisol filtration with declining renal function, the 1-mg DST is the recommended screen in patients with renal failure. For those suspected of having cyclic Cushing's, use of serial UFC or MSC is suggested. The diagnostic thresholds for MSC during pregnancy and in renal disease remain to be established.

For an incidentally discovered adrenal mass, the 1-mg DST has been shown to be superior to the UFC and MSC (Raff, 2013).

Confirmatory Tests for the Diagnosis of Cushing's Syndrome. For equivocal screening results, one option would be to repeat testing in 3 months. A more definitive way to confirm the diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome is with a midnight plasma cortisol or 2-day low-dose DST performed alone or with the administration of CRH.

Midnight plasma cortisol requires hospital admission for at least 48 hours, insertion of a line for IV access before 10 PM, the patient sleeping at the time of the blood draw, and availability of staff to draw the blood at midnight. A midnight plasma cortisol greater than 7.5 µg/dL (207 nmol/L) is diagnostic of Cushing's; this has a 100% specificity for normals and those with pseudo-Cushing's (Newell-Price et al, 1995; Papanicolaou et al, 1998). The low-dose (2-day 2 mg) dexamethasone suppression test (LDDST) requires the collection of two baseline 24-hour urine samples for UFC. The patient is then given 0.5 mg dexamethasone orally every 6 hours, starting at 9 AM for 2 days. On day 2 of dexamethasone, another 24-hour urine sample is collected for UFC. All 24-hour urine collections should include the measurement of creatinine to assay for adequacy of the collection. A normal response is a decrease in UFC to less than 10 µg (27 nmol) per 24 hours on the second day of dexamethasone. This has a sensitivity of 97% to 100% for discriminating patients with Cushing's syndrome from normal individuals (Newell-Price et al, 1998). Instead of measuring UFC, serum cortisol can be measured at baseline (9 AM day 1) and at 48 hours following the first dose of dexamethasone. A normal response consists of suppression of the plasma cortisol to less than 1.8 µg/dL (50 nmol/L), which has a sensitivity and specificity of more than 95% (Newell-Price et al, 1998). Performance of the LDDST with CRH has been purported to better distinguish Cushing's syndrome from pseudo-Cushing's (Yanovski et al, 1993). For this test, 1-µg/kg or 100 µg ovine CRH is administered IV 2 hours after the last dose of dexamethasone. Cortisol is measured prior to the first dose of dexamethasone on day 1, immediately prior to the administration of synthetic ovine CRH (oCRH), and then 15 minutes following oCRH. A dexamethasone level should be measured at the time of CRH administration to exclude false-positive results. Adherence to the time schedule is important for both LDDST and LDDST with CRH. The normal response for both tests is a serum cortisol <1.8 µg/dL (<50 nmol/L).

Tests for Defining the Cause of Cushing's. Once the diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome is established, the next step is to determine its cause. Cushing's is categorized as being ACTH dependent or ACTH independent; this is accomplished by measuring the plasma ACTH, or by performing a high-dose DST or a CRH stimulation test (Table 24-16).

ACTH-independent Cushing's syndrome results from autonomous production of cortisol, which would feed back on the hypothalamus and pituitary gland, causing suppression of CRH and ACTH secretion. The technique for measuring plasma ACTH has been described previously. Values below the level of detection or below 10 pg/mL (2 pmol/L) at 9 AM with concomitantly elevated cortisol support an ACTH-independent cause for Cushing's syndrome. Plasma levels greater than 20 pg/mL (4 pmol/L) in the face of hypercortisolism are strongly suggestive of an ACTH-dependent cause. A CRH stimulation test with measurement of ACTH is indicated for values between 10 and 20 pg/mL (2 to 4 pmol/L) (Orth, 1995). Although patients with ectopic ACTH production tend to have markedly elevated ACTH levels, there is great overlap with the levels seen in Cushing's disease; therefore, it cannot be used to reliably distinguish between these entities.

TABLE 24-16
Differential Diagnosis of Hormonal Values Seen in Cushing's Syndrome

Cause	Plasma ACTH	Plasma Cortisol (PM)	High-Dose or Overnight Dexamethasone Suppression
Pituitary-dependent	N—slightly ↑	↑	Yes
Adrenal disease	↓—undetectable	↑	No
Ectopic Cushing's*	↑↑↑	↑↑	Usually no
Pseudo-Cushing's	N—slightly ↑	N–↑	Usually yes

ACTH, Adrenocorticotropin; *N,* normal.
*ACTH levels may overlap with values seen in pituitary-dependent disease.

The high-dose (2-day 8-mg) DST is useful for distinguishing Cushing's disease from adrenal or ectopic Cushing's. It is of note that cortisol levels in neuroendocrine tumors such as bronchial carcinoid may also suppress on high-dose dexamethasone. For the high-dose DST, a baseline 24-hour urine sample for UFC is collected. Beginning on day 1, the patient receives 1 mg of dexamethasone orally every 6 hours for 48 hours; urine for UFC is collected on day 1 and on day 2. Suppression of UFC or plasma cortisol by 50% or more from baseline is diagnostic of Cushing's disease. As an alternative to measuring UFC, plasma cortisol can be collected before, during, and 6 hours after the last dose of dexamethasone. Most patients with adrenal adenomas, carcinomas, or ectopic ACTH syndromes do not show suppression. This test has a sensitivity and specificity of 60% to 85%; the greater the degree of suppression, the greater the specificity.

The 8-mg overnight DST has been reported by several authors to share similar sensitivity and specificity to the high-dose DST (Dicheck et al, 1994). An 8 AM plasma cortisol is obtained, and 8 mg of dexamethasone is administered orally at 11 PM. An 8 AM plasma cortisol is obtained the next morning. Reduction of cortisol to less than 5 µg/dL is strongly supportive of Cushing's disease (see Fig. 24-17).

Most pituitary tumors and a few ectopic ACTH-secreting tumors will respond to CRH stimulation with an increase in plasma ACTH and cortisol, whereas little response is noted in those with adrenal Cushing's. For the CRH stimulation test, two basal plasma cortisol and ACTH levels are collected about 5 minutes apart, and then 1 µg/kg of body weight or a single dose of 100 µg of oCRH is injected intravenously. Blood is sampled every 15 minutes for 1 to 2 hours for cortisol and ACTH. Normal subjects will show a rise in ACTH and cortisol of approximately 15% to 20%, while those with Cushing's disease typically show a greater than 50% rise in ACTH and a greater than 20% rise in cortisol above baseline (Kaye & Crapo, 1990; Newell-Price et al, 2002; Stewart, 2003). Ovine CRH is superior to human CRH in distinguishing among the different causes of Cushing's syndrome (Nieman et al, 1989). Vasopressin stimulates ACTH release through the V3 receptors in the anterior pituitary gland. Administration of 10 units of vasopressin intramuscularly normally causes doubling of ACTH levels and an increase in serum cortisol of 150 µg/L over baseline. This offers no advantage over testing with CRH. It may prove useful, however, in differentiating Cushing's disease from pseudo-Cushing's syndrome and in the postoperative assessment of Cushing's disease (Newell-Price et al, 2002).

In rare instances, it may be necessary to use selective sampling of inferior petrosal sinus blood to document that the pituitary gland is the source of excess ACTH. This invasive, technically difficult procedure carries a relatively high cost and complication rate and should be

http://basicbook.net

performed only at a center well experienced with this technique. The ACTH concentration in the petrosal sinus blood should exceed twice that of peripheral venous blood to ensure diagnostic sensitivity and specificity of 100% (Orth, 1995). In those with ectopic production, the ratio is usually less than 1.4:1. Use of CRH during sampling increases the sensitivity and specificity.

Given that the incidence of **incidentaloma** of the adrenal glands and pituitary gland has been reported to be as high as 10%, imaging studies should be performed only after the hormonal diagnosis of Cushing's disease or syndrome has been made. In Cushing's disease, visualization of the sella is performed by MRI or CT, with and without contrast, with MRI being the preferred study. For adrenal Cushing's, the test of choice is a CT of the abdomen; for ectopic disease, CT of the chest may also be needed.

Pseudo-Cushing's Syndrome

Excess activity of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis, similar to that seen in pituitary Cushing's syndrome, has been demonstrated in some patients with alcoholism, major depression, poorly controlled diabetes, and obesity. Resolution of the underlying problem results in normalization of the HPA axis. These patients may not suppress on a low-dose DST and may have elevated UFC. Depressed patients who fail to suppress cortisol secretion in response to dexamethasone also show an impaired ACTH response to exogenous CRH, but will usually retain a normal cortisol response (Gold et al, 1986; Thalen et al, 1993). A single serum cortisol above 7.5 µg/dL at midnight has been shown to discriminate Cushing's syndrome from pseudo-Cushing's with 100% specificity (Papanicolaou et al, 1998). A more definitive test for distinguishing between these two entities is the combined dexamethasone-oCRH test. 1 µg/kg or 100 µg oCRH is infused 2 hours after a low-dose dexamethasone test. A plasma cortisol concentration greater than 38 nmol/L measured at 15 minutes following the administration of oCRH correctly identifies all cases of Cushing's syndrome and all cases of pseudo-Cushing's, with a specificity, sensitivity, and diagnostic accuracy of 100% (Yanovski et al, 1993).

ADRENAL INSUFFICIENCY

Adrenal insufficiency is categorized according to the key site of dysfunction within the HPA axis: primary (adrenal), secondary (pituitary), and tertiary (hypothalamic). A major distinction between primary adrenal insufficiency and either of the central causes is that primary disease is associated with mineralocorticoid deficiency. In the Western world, primary adrenal insufficiency, also known as Addison's disease, is most commonly due to autoimmune adrenalitis (70% to 90% of all cases); other causes include tuberculosis (most common cause worldwide), granulomatous disorders, metastatic disease, hemorrhage, human immunodeficiency virus, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, and infection. The most common cause of central adrenal insufficiency is HPA axis suppression due to prolonged treatment with pharmacologic doses of steroids.

Tests for the Diagnosis of Adrenal Insufficiency

Basal Hormone Measurements

An 8 AM to 9 AM plasma cortisol of less than 3 µg/dL (83 nmol/L) is indicative of adrenal insufficiency and obviates the need for further testing. Although most patients with hypocortisolism have low serum cortisol levels, a level drawn during a time of stress that falls within the reference range does not exclude the diagnosis. Rather, it may support this diagnosis, as a suboptimal cortisol level may have risen into the reference interval in response to a very high ACTH level induced by stress. A random cortisol of greater than 25 µg/dL (700 nmol/L) during critical illness makes it unlikely that the patient is adrenally insufficient (Burke, 1985), whereas a random cortisol of less than 10 µg/dL is strongly suggestive of adrenal insufficiency (Fleseriu & Loriaux, 2009).

ACTH Stimulation Test

The most convenient procedure for studying patients suspected of having hypocortisolism is the ACTH stimulation test. This test, which can be performed at any time of day, consists of drawing a baseline serum cortisol and then administering 250 µg of Cosyntropin (a commercially available ACTH analog) intravenously or intramuscularly. Serum for cortisol is again collected at 30 and 60 minutes post-Cosyntropin. A normal response is a cortisol level greater than 18 to 20 µg/dL (500 to 550 nmol/L) at either time point (Speckart et al, 1971; Burke, 1985). Drawing an ACTH level at baseline may help in distinguishing primary adrenal insufficiency (associated with an elevated ACTH usually greater than 50 to 100 pg/mL) from secondary or tertiary forms (which would have a low ACTH level less than 10 pg/mL) (Oelkers et al, 1992) (refer to the Laboratory Measurement of ACTH section earlier in the chapter). The aldosterone response to ACTH may also help in making this distinction; failure of aldosterone to increase by more than 4 ng/dL over baseline suggests primary adrenal dysfunction.

Steroids should never be withheld from a critically ill patient suspected of having adrenal insufficiency; instead a random sample for cortisol and ACTH should be drawn and treatment initiated with dexamethasone, which does not interfere with the cortisol assay. Formal testing should take place within 72 hours, before HPA axis suppression occurs. About 90% of cortisol circulates bound to CBG and albumin, and approximately 10% circulates freely (unbound). CBG declines during critical illness, resulting in an increase in the fraction of unbound (free) cortisol compared with the bound fraction. Because the serum total cortisol concentration does not accurately reflect this alteration in free/bound cortisol, it is common to overdiagnose adrenal insufficiency in the critical care setting. Since access to laboratories that readily and reliably measure free cortisol is limited, some have advocated use of the free cortisol index (FCI) and calculated free cortisol (CFC) to better delineate those patients in true need of steroid replacement therapy (Beishuizen et al, 2001; Hamrahian et al, 2004; Ho et al, 2006). To obtain the FCI, it is necessary to measure the serum CBG. CFC is the total cortisol (nmol/L)/CBG (mg/L), with normal being a value above 12. Given that for the vast majority of institutions, determination of CBG requires that the sample be sent to a reference laboratory, it may be more prudent and certainly more expedient to simply send aliquots from t-0, t-+30, and t-+60 minutes post–ACTH administration for serum free cortisol, and provide steroid coverage pending these results (Fleseriu & Loriaux, 2009). Checking the ACTH level at t-0 will help to further classify adrenal insufficiency as being primary versus secondary or tertiary. Salivary cortisol, which is unaffected by changes in CBG, may eventually prove useful in this setting (Raff, 2009).

Some have supported the use of a 1-µg dose of ACTH instead of the full 250-µg dose for diagnosing adrenal insufficiency. The premise is that the massively supraphysiologic dose of 250 µg will cause those with partial adrenal insufficiency to mount a normal response, and that these individuals will fail to show an adequate rise in cortisol in response to a 1-µg test dose. This procedure has not gained wide acceptance, nor has the normal range been standardized; more importantly, the diagnosis of **partial adrenal insufficiency** remains in contention.

The ITT has long been considered the gold standard for assessing the HPA axis. Unlike the ACTH stimulation test, the ITT assesses the integrity of the entire HPA axis. If the HPA axis is intact, insulin-induced hypoglycemia stimulates the hypothalamus and the pituitary gland to secrete CRH and ACTH, respectively, which, in turn, leads to a rise in cortisol. This test is contraindicated in individuals with ischemic heart disease, in older adults (>70 years of age), during pregnancy, and in those with a history of seizures. Patients highly suspected of having central adrenal insufficiency (i.e., prior pituitary surgery or radiation therapy) should receive a lower dose (0.05 U/kg) of insulin, rather than 0.1 to 0.15 U/kg. Glucose and cortisol are measured at –15 minutes, at baseline, and then at 15, 30, 45, 60, 90, and 120 minutes following insulin administration. For the test to be valid, adequate hypoglycemia must be attained (signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia and glucose less than 40 mg/dL [2.2 mmol/L]). A normal response is a rise in the cortisol level to greater than or equal to 18 µg/L or 20 µg/L at any time during the test (Nelson & Tindall, 1978; Burke, 1985; Grinspoon & Biller, 1994). Preliminary work suggests there was no difference in peak GH or cortisol level attained when analog insulin was substituted for regular insulin for the ITT (Yuen et al, 2008).

The cortisol response to hypoglycemia can be predicted reliably by the response to acute ACTH stimulation—a safer, cheaper, and quicker test (Stewart, 2003). The ITT is used mainly as a second-line measure to further evaluate those patients who had a borderline response to the ACTH stimulation test.

In the days before the commercial availability of a reliable assay to measure ACTH, it was common to perform a prolonged ACTH stimulation test (ACTH infusion over a 2-day period) to distinguish central from primary adrenal insufficiency. In other hormone systems, lack of stimulation normally leads to upregulation of the end-organ receptors; however, the adrenal glands downregulate their ACTH receptors in response to lack of stimulation. A short ACTH stimulation test would typically produce an inadequate response. By priming the system with prolonged exposure to ACTH, those with hypothalamic disease display a delayed but normal rise in cortisol.

Overnight Metyrapone Test

Metyrapone has also been used to assess the integrity of the HPA axis. Metyrapone inhibits 11-β-hydroxylase, preventing the conversion of

http://basicbook.net

11-deoxycortisol (compound S) to cortisol. Under normal circumstances, the metyrapone-induced drop in cortisol is detected at the level of the hypothalamus and pituitary gland; a compensatory increase in CRH and ACTH secretion occurs, stimulating steroidogenesis and leading to a buildup of 11-deoxycortisol, the hormone preceding the block. Patients with central adrenal insufficiency fail to increase CRH and/or ACTH, steroidogenesis is not stimulated, and 11-deoxycortisol fails to increase. Metyrapone 30 mg/kg is administered orally at midnight; blood for cortisol and 11-deoxycortisol is collected the following morning at 8 AM. A rise in 11-deoxycortisol to greater than 7 μg/dL (200 nmol/L) is normal (Fiad et al, 1994; Grinspoon & Biller, 1994). An abnormal response is defined by 11-deoxycortisol less than 7 μg/dL accompanied by cortisol less than 5 μg/dL. This test should be performed with caution as it may provoke an addisonian crisis in those with central hypocortisolism. Metyrapone is currently only available on a compassionate basis; as a result this test is rarely performed.

Corticotropin-Releasing Hormone Test

The oCRH test can be used not only to diagnose hypocortisolism, but to localize the site of damage (Schulte et al, 1984). It is a safe test; however, it is expensive. After blood is drawn for baseline ACTH and cortisol, 100 μg oCRH is administered intravenously. Blood is then collected for cortisol and ACTH every 15 minutes for 60 to 90 minutes. A normal response is seen as cortisol greater than 20 μg/dL. Basal ACTH levels and their change in response to oCRH are used to localize the site of pathology. Plasma corticotropin usually peaks at 15 to 30 minutes, and cortisol usually peaks at around 30 to 40 minutes post oCRH injection (Oelkers, 1996).

Both the bound and free cortisol concentrations show a progressive rise throughout pregnancy. With this in mind, it has been recommended that higher cutoffs be used to properly interpret the ACTH stimulation results in pregnancy (Jung et al, 2011). A random morning cortisol level less than 11 μg/dL, 16 μg/dL, and 22 μg/dL when measured during the first, second, and third trimester of pregnancy, respectively, should raise the suspicion of adrenal insufficiency (Jung et al, 2011). A serum cortisol 60 minutes post-ACTH of less than 25 μg/dL, 29 μg/dL, and 32 μg/dL for the first, second, and third trimester of pregnancy, respectively, is diagnostic of adrenal insufficiency (Lebbe & Arlt, 2013; Yuen et al, 2013).

Antibodies against 21-hydroxylase antigen should be assayed in those whose Addison's disease (primary adrenal insufficiency) does not have an obvious explanation. Positive antibodies confirm autoimmune adrenalitis; these patients should be screened and monitored for the development of other autoimmune disorders. The absence of antibodies does not rule out an autoimmune etiology, as titers usually drop in concurrence with adrenal destruction.

The use of steroids in the treatment of malignant, inflammatory, and immunologic disorders is a common iatrogenic cause of adrenal insufficiency. The degree of adrenal suppression is dependent on the specific glucocorticoid dose, duration, frequency, and route of administration. Assessment of adrenal function in patients being tapered off of exogenous steroids can be performed once they are tapered to the equivalent of a daily dose of 10 mg hydrocortisone. Have them omit the morning glucocorticoid dose, and measure the 8 AM cortisol level. If it is greater than 10 μg/dL, routine supplementation of steroids can be ended. Because the adrenal cortex lags behind the pituitary gland in recovery from steroid suppression, complete adrenal recovery can also be demonstrated by an appropriate rise in serum cortisol following an 8 AM Cosyntropin infusion.

RENIN-ALDOSTERONE AXIS

At least 20 million people in the United States have hypertension, and 90% to 98% of cases are classified as essential hypertension. The mortality and morbidity from associated myocardial, cerebrovascular, and renal complications necessitate aggressive treatment of this disorder. Investigation into the etiology of hypertension revealed the importance of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, not only in the origin and persistence of hypertension but also as a guide to its treatment. The role of the renin-aldosterone axis is to maintain blood pressure within normal limits by sensing and responding to changes in plasma volume, salt balance, and renal perfusion pressure.

Renin is a proteolytic enzyme which, although formed by other tissues throughout the body, is mainly formed and stored by juxtaglomerular (JG) cells within the macula densa of the kidney. Renin is synthesized from a larger precursor protein, prorenin (big renin), and is converted to its active form within the JG cells. The release of renin into the circulation occurs in response to a variety of triggers: a drop in renal hydrostatic pressure, hyponatremia, hypokalemia, or a decrease in catecholamines, angiotensin II, or atrial natriuretic hormone. Both suppression of plasma renin activity induced by potassium administration and stimulation of renin activity following potassium depletion occur independently of changes in aldosterone secretion or in sodium balance (Brunner et al, 1970).

Several isoenzymes of renin are known. Their release is regulated by cAMP. Renin acts on angiotensinogen (renin substrate), an α_2-globulin formed by the liver, converting angiotensinogen to angiotensin I. Angiotensin I in turn is converted into angiotensin II by the angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE). ACE is found in the pulmonary and vascular endothelia, as well as in cell membranes of the kidney, heart, and brain (Brewster & Perazella, 2004). It is believed that angiotensin II is the peptide responsible for the physiologic effects on target tissue. Angiotensin II not only stimulates the release of aldosterone, but it is also a very potent vasoconstrictor that can stimulate the release of catecholamines from the adrenal glands and norepinephrine from the sympathetic nervous system, and stimulate the release of vasopressin. The octapeptide angiotensin II is further split to a heptapeptide, angiotensin III; in addition, angiotensin I may be changed directly to angiotensin III without being converted to angiotensin II. Although speculation about the functions of angiotensin III is ongoing, it appears to modulate aldosterone secretion in a similar manner to angiotensin II. The active angiotensins are rapidly cleared by various aminopeptidases (angiotensinases) within the circulation and during transit through tissues. These relationships are shown in Figure 24-18.

Renin, through its product, angiotensin II, directly stimulates the synthesis and secretion of aldosterone by the adrenal zona glomerulosa. Renin release, the rate-limiting step in the renin-aldosterone axis, is dependent on changes in effective plasma volume, which, in turn, are dependent on tubular reabsorption of sodium by the kidney. Low plasma volume and low serum sodium stimulate the secretion of renin, resulting in aldosterone release, which, in turn, causes sodium retention along with an increase in plasma volume and blood pressure, and potassium loss. Conversely, an

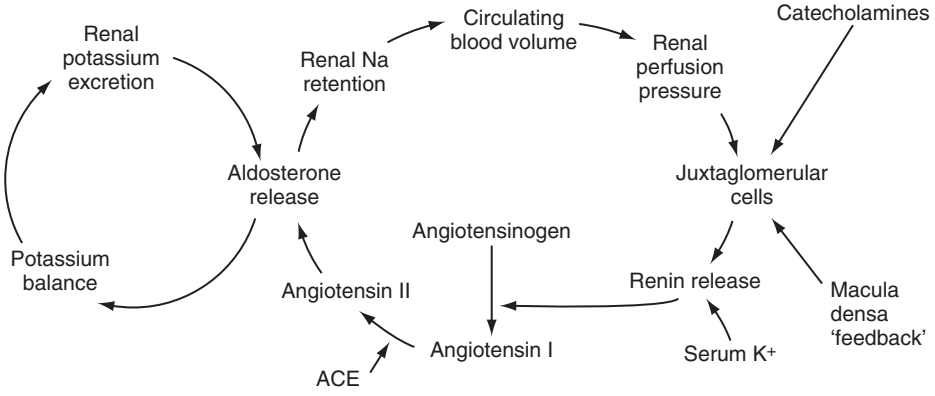


Figure 24-18 Renin-aldosterone axis. Elevated K^+ inhibits renin secretion but has a stimulatory effect on aldosterone. Catecholaminergic influence is variable; β-adrenergic activity stimulates and α-adrenergic activity inhibits renin secretion from the juxtaglomerular cells. *ACE, Angiotensin-converting enzyme.* (Redrawn from Braunwald E, Fauci AD, Kasper D, et al, editors: *Harrison's principles of internal medicine,* ed 15, New York, 2001, McGraw-Hill, p 2087.)

http://basicbook.net

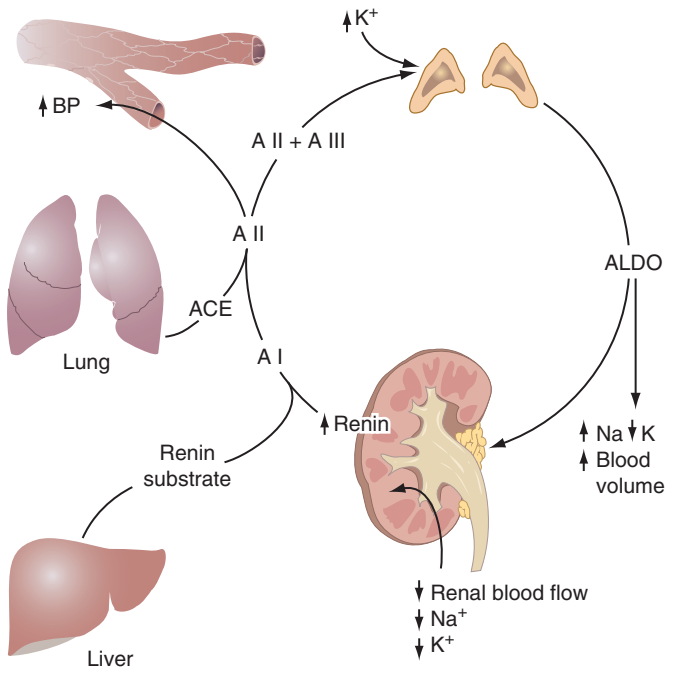


Figure 24-19 **The normal renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis.** Renin, secreted by the kidney, cleaves angiotensin I from renin substrate (angiotensinogen) produced by the liver. Angiotensin I is converted to angiotensin II by angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), mainly in the lung. Angiotensin II increases peripheral vascular resistance and, together with angiotensin III, stimulates aldosterone (ALDO) secretion, which results in sodium retention and increased plasma volume. (Adapted from Stewart PM: The adrenal cortex. In Larsen PR, Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, et al, editors: *Williams textbook of endocrinology,* ed 10, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders, p 499.)

increase in effective blood volume or acute elevation in blood pressure results in low renin, low angiotensin, low aldosterone, and subsequent sodium loss. In contradistinction to aldosterone, renin secretion is inhibited by hyperkalemia (Fig. 24-19).

Aldosterone and glucocorticoids act at the mineralocorticoid receptor located in the cells lining the collecting ducts of the kidney to cause reabsorption of sodium, leading to an increase in intravascular volume. Aldosterone also causes renal potassium loss. Studies have suggested a role for aldosterone in the development and perpetuation of vasculopathy; it has been shown to stimulate genes for collagen synthesis, tissue growth factors, inflammatory factors, and plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1 (Brilla et al, 1994; Schunkert et al, 1997; Brown et al, 2000; Rocha et al, 2000; Luft, 2002). The synthesis of aldosterone is restricted to the zona glomerulosa; here the enzyme aldosterone synthetase (CYP11B2) converts corticosterone to aldosterone. The major stimuli for aldosterone secretion are angiotensin II and hyperkalemia. ACTH is a much weaker stimulus. Somatostatin, atrial natriuretic hormone, dopamine, and heparin directly inhibit aldosterone synthesis. Cortisol circulates at a much higher concentration than aldosterone, and although it binds with equal affinity to the mineralocorticoid receptor, it does not normally function as a major mineralocorticoid. The reason is that the enzyme 11-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase II (11-HSD-2, also known as CYP11B2), expressed by the mineralocorticoid targets cells in the collecting tubules acts to convert cortisol to cortisone, an inactive metabolite.

RENIN AND HYPERTENSION

The work of Laragh and colleagues has indicated that essential hypertension can be classified on the basis of renin measurements as high, low, or normal renin, and that drug selection can be based on this classification (Laragh et al, 1972; Laragh, 1993). About 15% of patients with essential hypertension have high-renin hypertension. Hyperreninemia resulting from renal parenchymal disease or renal vasculopathy leads to increased aldosterone production and the subsequent retention of sodium and enhanced potassium excretion. Patients with this condition are hypervolemic, intensely vasoconstrictive, and more prone to ischemic injury. Renin profiling has shown renin to be an independent risk factor for myocardial infarction. Even if pressures are controlled by antihypertensives, if they do not address plasma renin activity, such patients fare worse than individuals with lower renin levels (Alderman et al, 1991). Increased aldosterone (secondary aldosteronism) may contribute significantly to the symptoms and course of high-renin hypertension. Some of the causes of high-renin hypertension are listed in Box 24-7.

BOX 24-7

Causes of Hypertension Associated with High Levels of Plasma Renin

- Renin-secreting tumor
- Malignant accelerated hypertension
- Renovascular hypertension
  - Major arterial lesions
  - Segmental lesions
- Chronic renal failure
  - End stage
  - Transplant rejection
- Cushing's syndrome
- Iatrogenic
  - Volume-depleting agents
  - Vasodilating agents
  - Glucocorticoids
  - Estrogens

Renin-secreting tumors are extremely rare and can be difficult to diagnose. They can be benign or malignant, renal or extrarenal. The most common location is in the juxtaglomerular apparatus. A young patient with markedly elevated plasma renin activity, hyperaldosteronism, and hypokalemia in the absence of a renovascular lesion typifies the classic clinical presentation (Corvol et al, 1994). Malignant hypertension is also associated with high plasma renin activity and aldosterone. When such patients are given medications that interrupt the renin-aldosterone axis, such as ACEIs, blood pressure often normalizes. In renal vascular hypertension, the renin and aldosterone levels are also elevated. However, in contradistinction to malignant hypertension, treatment with ACEs usually results in further deterioration of renal function. Patients suspected of having renal artery stenosis should undergo further testing (e.g., captopril-induced renogram, renal duplex ultrasound, magnetic resonance angiography). A positive test leads to renal vein angiography and catheterization for selective blood sampling. In unilateral renal disease, both plasma renin and aldosterone are elevated. Asymmetry in the renin levels obtained during renal vein catheterization offers one of the best measurements to judge the likelihood of blood pressure response to corrective surgery. When the ratio of plasma renin in the renal vein of the affected to the nonaffected side is at least 1.5 : 1, surgery may lead to improvement. With suppression of renin release from the nonaffected side, renal vein renin levels approximating those found in blood specimens obtained from the inferior vena cava also indicate probable success of curative surgery. Almost 40% of these patients have peripheral blood plasma renin activity that is within the reference interval (Streeten et al, 1979); consequently, peripheral plasma renin is a poor predictor of response to surgery. Renin secretion can be found in lung cancer, hepatic hamartoma, and other rare conditions (Anderson et al, 1989).

When an acceleration of hypertension occurs, renin is usually markedly increased; however, with chronic renal failure, almost any renin level can be expected. A small number of hypertensive patients on dialysis have intractable, accelerated hypertension. In those patients in whom dialysis cannot control the hypertension, markedly elevated plasma renin levels can be lowered by nephrectomy or, in the case of renal artery stenosis, angioplasty or revascularization (Whitehouse et al, 1981; Sonkodi et al, 1990; Tullis et al, 1999). ACEIs can be used to mitigate the rise in aldosterone; however, in the setting of renal disease, they can precipitate or worsen hyperkalemia. In renal transplant patients, elevated plasma renin may be indicative of renal ischemia and rejection.

Systemic hypertension occurs in patients with Cushing's syndrome. Some of these patients have increased plasma renin and renin substrate. Other Cushing's syndrome patients have hypokalemia associated with secretion of a minor mineralocorticoid (such as DOC or corticosterone) that causes hypertension (Krakoff et al, 1975). In still other patients, severely elevated cortisol levels overwhelm the capacity of 11-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (11-HSD) to convert cortisol to its metabolically inactive form, cortisone, leading to a picture of excess mineralocorticoid activity with suppressed plasma renin activity. Other causes of high-renin hypertension include treatment with medications such as diuretics, vasodilators,

http://basicbook.net

BOX 24-8

Causes of Hypertension Associated with Low Levels of Plasma Renin

Primary Excess of Mineralocorticoids

Primary aldosteronism
Pseudoprimary (idiopathic) aldosteronism
Glucocorticoid-suppressible aldosteronism
11-Deoxycorticosterone excess (CAH due to 11-β-hydroxylase deficiency)
18-Hydroxy-11-deoxycorticosterone excess
Adrenal carcinoma (excess mineralocorticoids and/or glucocorticoids)

Secondary Excess of Mineralocorticoids

Licorice ingestion
Excess sodium intake
Hyporenin hypoaldosteronism
Long-standing essential hypertension
Diabetes mellitus

CAH, Congenital adrenal hyperplasia.

or other antihypertensives. Hormonal agents such as glucocorticoids, as well as some estrogen-containing oral contraceptives, have been found to increase renin substrate activity.

Even though plasma renin activity, aldosterone, and urinary sodium excretion may be normal in 60% of hypertensive patients, evidence indicates that renin-angiotensin plays a significant part in normal-renin hypertension. The response of many hypertensive patients with normal renin to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin II antagonists (saralasin) has implicated renin and angiotensin II in sustaining hypertension in these patients. Moreover, Ames showed that once blood pressure was increased by angiotensin infusion, it could be maintained with only one fifth of the original dose (Ames et al, 1965).

It was found that low-renin essential hypertension, which involves chronic expansion of plasma and extracellular fluid volume, is characterized by aldosterone oversecretion and responds to diuretic therapy. At least 25% of patients with essential hypertension are found to have low-renin hypertension. Most investigators have characterized this state as hyporesponsive, meaning that low-renin hypertensive patients fail to respond as well as healthy subjects do with upright posture, sodium restriction, diuretics, vasodilators, or a combination of these. Atrial natriuretic peptide may be elevated in these patients, and the response of aldosterone to renin may be exaggerated (Sergev et al, 1990). Renin suppression increases with age and appears to be more common in women and in the black population.

Listed in Box 24-8 are a group of syndromes associated with low levels of plasma renin. These have been divided into a subgroup that is of adrenal origin (primary) and a subgroup that is nonadrenal or secondary in origin. Primary aldosteronism is uncommon compared with renin hypertension. It is characterized by (1) systolic and diastolic hypertension caused by oversecretion of aldosterone by an adrenal adenoma (aldosterone-producing adenoma [APA]) or hyperplasia (idiopathic hyperaldosteronism [IHA]), (2) low renin or a high aldosterone/renin ratio (>50), (3) renal potassium wasting, and (4) sodium retention. It should be suspected in patients with hypertension and spontaneous or diuretic-induced hypokalemia, resistant hypertension requiring more than three medications, onset younger than 30 years of age, or an incidentally found adrenal mass. Several potential screening tests have been used to detect primary aldosteronism and to separate unilateral aldosterone-producing adenomas from other causes of primary aldosteronism. A low-salt diet (<2 g/day), stress, upright posture, and diuretics all increase plasma aldosterone, whereas a high-salt diet and lying in a supine position suppress aldosterone secretion in healthy subjects. Combinations of these maneuvers have been used in the diagnosis of excessive aldosterone secretion; however, they do not reliably distinguish APA from IHA. When healthy subjects are placed on a high-salt diet and lie in the supine position, they suppress their plasma aldosterone levels to less than 10 ng/dL (278 pmol/L).

Primary Hyperaldosteronism: Screening and Confirmation Tests

The algorithm proposed by Blumenfeld and colleagues for evaluating hypertensive patients suspected of having primary hyperaldosteronism is to initially measure the serum potassium (Blumenfeld et al, 1994). If it is less than 3.6 mmol/L, then plasma renin activity is measured. Plasma renin activity of less than 1.0 ng/mL/hour leads to 24-hour urine collection for aldosterone and potassium excretion. Findings of 24-hour urinary potassium greater than 30 mmol/24 hours in the face of hypokalemia and of aldosterone greater than 15 mg/24 hours lead to the localization of the underlying pathology to the adrenal gland.

A more recent set of guidelines for the detection and diagnosis of primary hyperaldosteronism, as proferred by the Endocrine Society, include the following (Funder et al, 2008): Although patients with primary hyperaldosteronism classically present with spontaneous or easily provokable hypokalemia, many in fact will have serum potassium levels that are within the normal range. Thus, the preferred screening test is a plasma aldosterone concentration/plasma renin activity (PAC/PRA) ratio, PAC expressed in ng/dL, and PRA in ng/mL/hour. This is performed after the patient has remained upright for at least 2 hours. The patient should have stopped spironolactone and eplerenone for 4 to 6 weeks and other diuretics for at least 2 weeks before testing. Hypokalemia should be corrected (as it may suppress aldosterone secretion), and the patient should not be on a sodium-restricted diet. A PAC/PRA ratio greater than 30 is suggestive of primary hyperaldosteronism; a value greater than 50 is virtually diagnostic (Weinberger & Fineberg, 1993; Blumenfeld et al, 1994). It is of note that the lower limit of normal for the PRA assay varies by laboratory; therefore, the diagnosis is supported only when both the PAC/PRA ratio and the PAC are elevated. The preferred technique for measuring PRA is a validated immunometric assay. HPLC tandem mass spectrometry is preferred for measuring plasma and urine aldosterone (Funder et al, 2008). The PAC/PRA ratio is highly dependent on the renin concentration; as such, it is important to use an assay with sufficient sensitivity in the lower ranges (e.g., <0.2 to 0.3 ng/mL/hour).

The diagnosis of primary hyperaldosteronism is confirmed by performing one of the four following confirmatory tests: oral sodium loading test, saline infusion test, fludrocortisone suppression test, or the captopril challenge test (Funder et al, 2008). Saline suppression can be accomplished by infusing 2 L of 0.9% saline over 4 hours, or by administering sodium chloride tablets 10 to 12 g daily for 3 days. PAC at the end of the 4-hour infusion of less than 5 ng/dL (140 pmol/L) makes the diagnosis of hyperaldosteronism unlikely. A PAC greater than 10 ng/dL (280 pmol/L) strongly supports the diagnosis of primary hyperaldosteronism, whereas values greater than 5 ng/dL (140 pmol/L) but less than 10 ng/dL (280 pmol/L) are considered indeterminate and may be seen with IHA. On the last day of oral sodium administration, a 24-hour urine sample is collected for aldosterone, creatinine (to assess for adequacy of the collection), and sodium (>200 mmol/day confirms adequate sodium intake). An aldosterone greater than 10 mg/24 hours (28 nmol/24 hours) following 3 days of sodium loading confirms the diagnosis (Bravo et al, 1983, Bravo, 1994; Holland et al, 1984). For the fludrocortisone suppression test, 0.1 mg fludrocortisone is given orally every 6 hours for 4 days, together with slow-release potassium chloride supplements (in doses sufficient to maintain the plasma potassium close to 4.0 nmol/L) and slow-release sodium chloride (30 mmol three times a day) and liberalization of dietary sodium intake (enough to maintain a urinary sodium excretion of at least 3 mmol/kg). On day 4, an upright plasma cortisol is measured at 7 AM and 10 AM, and PAC and PRA are measured at 10 AM. A PAC greater than 6 ng/dL with a PRA less than 1 ng/mL/hour confirms the diagnosis, provided that the 10 AM cortisol is less than the 7 AM value. For the captopril challenge, baseline blood is collected for PRA, PAC, and cortisol; then 25 to 50 mg of captopril is administered orally. PRA, PAC, and cortisol are again collected at 1 and 2 hours post-captopril. The patient is kept seated throughout the entire test. PAC is normally suppressed to greater than 30%; however in primary hyperaldosteronism, the PAC remains elevated and the PRA suppressed. The choice of test depends on several factors, including patient compliance, presence of uncontrolled hypertension, renal insufficiency, congestive heart failure, and local expertise.

Differentiating Among the Different Causes of Primary Hyperaldosteronism

APA differs from IHA by more extreme blood pressures, greater potassium wasting, and higher atrial natriuretic peptide levels. Also, urinary and serum levels of 18-oxocortisol, 18-hydroxycortisol (serum >300 ng/dL), and 18-hydroxycorticosterone (serum >100 ng/dL) tend to be higher. A positive postural stimulation test (plasma aldosterone: ambulating rising to less than 130% of the supine level) has a moderate sensitivity and specificity for adenoma, but not for hyperplasia. Once the diagnosis of primary hyperaldosteronism is confirmed, the next step is to image the adrenal glands by CT or MRI, looking for bilateral hyperplasia or a unilateral hypodense adenoma. The specificity of imaging to correctly categorize patients as having APA versus IHA varies from 67% to 84% (Doppmann et al, 1992; Gleason et al, 1993; Harpe et al, 1999; Magill et al, 2001). Removal of the adenoma is curative in 35% of cases and leads to improvement in another 55% (Blumenfeld et al, 1994). Surgery can cure or

http://basicbook.net

improve hypertension in patients with unilateral disease. For those in whom the disease is bilateral, medical treatment with drugs such as spironolactone leads to improvement in 76% of cases. Hyperplasia is not always bilateral.

As a result of multiple factors, including the increased incidence of nonfunctioning adrenal adenoma after 40 years of age, and the fact that hyperplasia may present as a unilateral adenoma on imaging, it is highly recommended that bilateral adrenal vein sampling be performed in individuals over 40 years of age who are contemplating surgery. Bilateral adrenal vein sampling is technically demanding and entails risk; however, as performed by an experienced radiologist, it is the gold standard for distinguishing adenoma from hyperplasia. An intravenous infusion of ACTH at 50 μg/hour is started 30 minutes before sampling and is continued throughout the procedure. This serves to mitigate any stress-induced fluctuations in aldosterone during the sampling, accentuate the gradient in cortisol from adrenal vein to inferior vena cava, and maximize the difference in secretion of aldosterone between the right and left adrenal glands in instances of APA. Samples for aldosterone and cortisol are obtained from each adrenal vein and from the periphery. An adrenal vein/peripheral vein cortisol of greater than 10:1 ensures that the samples are taken from the adrenal veins. There should be a less than 20% difference in cortisol measurements between both adrenal glands.

To correct for dilutional effects, the **cortisol-corrected aldosterone ratio** (i.e., aldosterone/cortisol) is utilized. In APA, the cortisol-corrected aldosterone ratio is usually at least fivefold higher on the side with the adenoma, and no gradient is seen in hyperplasia (Doppmann & Gill, 1996). As per the recent Endocrine Society guidelines, a cortisol-corrected aldosterone ratio from high side to low side of greater than 4:1 indicates APA, a ratio of less than 3:1 suggests IHA, and values between 4:1 and 3:1 are indeterminate and need to be interpreted in conjunction with imaging studies and clinical settings. Using these cutoffs, a sensitivity of 95% and a specificity of 100% are achieved (Funder et al, 2008).

Several studies have shown a discrepancy between radiologic findings and surgical findings in up to one third of all cases. Kempers found that when compared with adrenal vein sampling, CT and MRI misdiagnosed the cause of primary hyperaldosteronism in 37.8% of patients (Kempers et al, 2009). Given the increased prevalence (5% to 10%) of adrenal incidentalomas (nonfunctioning adrenal tumors) with increasing age, many authorities are recommending adrenal vein sampling for patients with hyperaldosteronism who are older than 40 years of age and have a unilateral hypodense adrenal nodule greater than 1 cm on CT scan (Young, 1999). Based on the findings of large prospective studies, others have suggested that the major strength of this technique may be its use in evaluating those patients with a high probability of APA but with normal findings or bilateral nodular disease on CT. It should be stressed that this test is technically difficult, and even in the very best of hands is successful in only approximately 92% to 96% of cases (Doppmann et al, 1992; Radin et al, 1992; Young, 1999).

The syndrome of **inapparent mineralocorticoid excess** is due to dysfunction of 11-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 2 (11-β-HSD2). Cortisol can function as a potent mineralocorticoid, binding to the mineralocorticoid receptor in the kidney with the same affinity as aldosterone. 11-β-HSD2 mitigates the mineralocorticoid action of cortisol by converting it to the metabolically inactive form, cortisone. When activity of this enzyme is decreased because of hereditary factors, the ingestion of large quantities of licorice (which has a high content of glycyrrhizic acid) or chewing tobacco, hypertension, hypokalemia, low PRA, and low PAC may result. An elevated cortisol/cortisone concentration on a 24-hour urine collection confirms the diagnosis.

Renin may be suppressed by excessive sodium intake. It is also suppressed in the syndrome of hyporenin hypoaldosteronism, which is most commonly seen in patients with diabetes mellitus and renal disease. Secondary aldosteronism results from nonadrenal disease, in which both adrenal glands are stimulated (Table 24-17). Typically, these patients are not hypertensive.

Conditions such as nephrosis, cirrhosis, and heart failure are associated with decreased renal perfusion, causing a compensatory increase in renin and aldosterone levels (secondary hyperaldosteronism). The response of the renin-aldosterone system in pregnancy is especially complex; renin, renin substrate, angiotensin II, and aldosterone appear to be increased.

There are two variants of familial hyperaldosteronism (FH), FH-1, which is also known as glucocorticoid remedial hyperaldosteronism (GRA), and FH-2. GRA is an autosomal dominant inherited disorder characterized by hyperaldosteronism, hyporeninemia, and severe, usually refractory, hypertension, with onset typically occurring in those younger than 20 years of age with a positive family history of early hypertension and/or hemorrhagic stroke. It is the result of translocation of aldosterone synthetase (CYP18, CYP11B2) onto the ACTH-sensitive promoter sequence of the 11-β-hydroxylase *(CYP11B1)* gene within the zona fasciculata. Thus, aldosterone synthesis is stimulated by ACTH. In addition to increased aldosterone, these individuals produce excess 18-OH cortisol and 18-oxycortisol. Diagnosis can be confirmed by normalization of aldosterone following 4 to 6 weeks of steroid suppression, or by genetic testing using Southern blot or long polymerase chain reaction (Lifton et al, 1992; Kurtz & Spence, 1993). FH-2 is an autosomal dominant condition that is associated with APA, IHA, or both. Unlike FH-1, aldosterone does not suppress in response to glucocorticoid treatment.

Liddle syndrome is a rare autosomal dominant disorder characterized by hypertension and hypokalemia; however, unlike in primary hyperaldosteronism, PRA and PAC are both low. The defect is due to a mutation in the amiloride-sensitive sodium channel within the renal collecting ducts, leading to enhanced sodium reabsorption and increased potassium secretion. Liddle syndrome can be diagnosed by genetic testing or, if genetic testing is unavailable, by good clinical response to amiloride or triamterene, and by lack of response to dexamethasone or aldosterone antagonists.

TABLE 24-17
Differentiating the Various Causes of Hyperaldosteronism

Disorder	Aldosterone	Renin	Serum K^+
Primary hyperaldosteronism	↑	↓	↓
Renin-secreting tumor	↑	↑	↓—N
Dexamethasone-suppressible hyperaldosteronism	↑	↓	↓
Renovascular hypertension	N—↑	N—↑	↓—N
Bartter's syndrome	↑	↑	↓
Diuretics, congestive heart failure, cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome	↑	↑	N—↓

N, Normal.

TABLE 24-18
Differentiating the Various Causes of Hypoaldosteronism

Disorder	Aldosterone	Renin	Serum K^+
Addison's disease	↓	↑	↑
Cushing's syndrome	↓	↓	N or ↓
Liddle's syndrome	↓	↓	↓
Hyporenin hypoaldosteronism	↓	↓	↑
Apparent mineralocorticoid excess	↓	↓	↓
Isolated hypoaldosteronism	↓	↑	↑

N, Normal.

ALDOSTERONE MEASUREMENTS

An isolated aldosterone measurement with no attention to patient preparation is of little clinical value. Even when time of sampling, posture, and dietary sodium and potassium are controlled, it is difficult to discriminate with certainty between primary aldosteronism and other forms of hypertension with the use of plasma aldosterone measurements alone. Interpretation of the aldosterone level must be done in the context of a simultaneously collected plasma renin and serum potassium.

Aldosterone assays are performed on plasma using extraction to remove aldosterone from plasma proteins, followed by chromatography and immunoassay or, preferably, LC-MS/MS. Urine is assayed following acid hydrolysis and extraction. Normative values exist for different age groups, postures, and sodium intakes (Table 24-18). HPLC with tandem mass spectrometry affords greater consistency and is gradually replacing older methods.

RENIN MEASUREMENTS

Important technical differences have been noted in assessment of renin using current methods. Renin measurements are of two types: PRA and

http://basicbook.net

PRC. The PRA is a bioassay wherein a plasma specimen containing renin is allowed to react with its substrate, angiotensinogen; after a specified period of time, the reaction is terminated, and generated angiotensin I is measured by RIA. For estimation of PRA, the endogenous substrate is not eliminated. Therefore, the rate of generation of angiotensin I is influenced by the concentrations of endogenous renin and its substrate. This type of assay is the most widely used method for the determination of renin. Comparison of results among laboratories is not possible because of procedural differences (e.g., variations in pH, ionic strength, length of the assay, the angiotensinase inhibitor, the conditions under which the specimen was obtained) and because of the lack of a specific reference preparation. In addition, the literature on renin assays reveals confusion regarding units of measurement employed; even when an attempt is made to express the many arbitrary units in the same terms (nanograms of angiotensin liberated per milliliter per hour), wide ranges are reported for human plasma renin activity in reference populations.

When PRC rather than PRA is measured, the effect of substrate is eliminated. The PRC assay is an immunoassay directed to the renin molecule itself.

Assays of PRA and PRC provide similar information, except in a few clinical situations. With oral contraceptive administration, PRC remains within the reference interval, whereas PRA increases owing to the increase in substrate. Other procedures such as freezing, thawing, and acidification have been found to convert prorenin to rennin, thereby increasing the values in PRC assays.

Because renin release is controlled by many physiologic and pharmacologic variables, it is extremely important to know the conditions under which the blood specimen was obtained. Such conditions as upright posture, the administration of diuretics, and low-sodium diets are potent stimuli of renin release and should be adequately controlled before plasma renin is measured. Renin also appears to be extremely labile, so the variables involved in specimen processing should be vigorously controlled. Blood should be drawn into an iced EDTA tube, which inactivates the enzymes (e.g., angiotensinases); it should be centrifuged at 4° C, and the plasma should be separated promptly from the cells, frozen immediately, and kept frozen until ready to be analyzed; with this technique, the specimen is stable for several months at –20° C.

Direct measurement of renin substrate, angiotensin I, or angiotensin II is not used widely in clinical practice because of tedious extraction or concentration steps, as well as difficulty in eliminating formation or degradation of these compounds by proteases and other enzymes involved in the renin system. Although ACE levels can be measured easily, they are of little use in the diagnosis of hypertensive disorders.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists: Medical guidelines for clinical practice for the evaluation and treatment of hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism, *Endocr Pract* 8:457–469, 2002.

An excellent reference for the diagnosis and treatment of commonly seen thyroid disorders, created by a consensus panel of experts in the field.

American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists: Medical guidelines for clinical practice for the diagnosis and treatment of acromegaly, *Endocr Pract* 10:213–225, 2004.

An excellent reference for the diagnosis and treatment of acromegaly, created by a consensus panel of experts in the field of acromegaly.

Stewart PM: The adrenal cortex. In Larsen PR, Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, et al, editors: *Williams textbook of endocrinology*, ed 10, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders, pp 491–551.

One of the best written and most respected general endocrine reference textbooks; the chapter on the adrenal glands is concise, lucid, and well referenced.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Abe K, Adachi I, Miyakawa S, et al: Production of calcitonin, adrenocorticotropic hormone, β-melanocyte stimulating hormone in tumors derived from amine precursor uptake and decarboxylation cells, *Cancer Res* 37:4190–4194, 1977.

Adams LM, Emery JR, Clark SJ, et al: Reference ranges for new thyroid function tests in premature infants, *J Pediatr* 126:122–127, 1995.

Ain KB, Pucino F, Shiver T, et al: Thyroid hormone levels affected by time of blood sampling in thyroxine-treated patients, *Thyroid* 3:81–85, 1993.

Alderman MH, Hadavan S, Oor WI, et al: Association of the rennin-sodium profile with the risk of myocardial infarction in patients with hypertension, *N Engl J Med* 324:1098, 1991.

Almeretti G, Corneli G, Baldelli R, et al: Diagnostic reliability of a single IGF-I measurement in 237 adults with total anterior hypopituitarism and severe GH deficiency, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 59:56–61, 2003.

Alwani RA, Schmit Jongbloed LW, de Jong FH, et al: Differentiating between Cushing's disease and pseudo-Cushing's syndrome: comparison of four tests, *Eur J Endocrinol* 170:477–486, 2014.

Amadori P, Dilberis C, Marcolla A, et al: Macroprolactinemia: predictability on clinical basis and detection by PEG precipitation with two different immunometric methods, *J Endocrinol Invest* 26:148–156, 2003.

Ames RP, Borkpwski AJ, Sicinski AM, et al: Prolonged infusion of angiotensin II and norepinephrine and blood pressure, electrolyte balance, aldosterone and cortisol secretion in normal man and in cirrhosis with ascites, *J Clin Invest* 44:1171, 1965.

Anderson PW, Macaulay L, Do S, et al: Extrarenal renin-secreting tumors: insights into hypertension and ovarian renin production, *Medicine* 68:257, 1989.

Andersen S, Pedersen KM, Bruun NH, et al: Narrow individual variations in serum T_4 and T_3 in normal subjects: a clue to the understanding of subclinical thyroid disease, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:1068–1072, 2002.

Arafah BM: Estrogen therapy may necessitate an increase in thyroxine dose for hypothyroidism, *N Engl J Med* 344:1743–1749, 2001.

Arnaldi G, Angeli A, Atkinson AB, et al: Diagnosis and complications of Cushing's syndrome: a consensus statement, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:5593–5602, 2003.

Ayus JC, Arieff AI: Glycine induced hypo-osmolar hyponatremia, *Arch Intern Med* 157:223–226, 1997.

Bacarese-Hamilton T, Cattini R, Shandley C, et al: A fully automated enzyme immunoassay for the measurement of cortisol in biologic fluids, *Eur J Clin Chem Clin Biochem* 30:531, 1992.

Barbot N, Calmettes C, Schuffenecker I, et al: Pentagastrin stimulation test and early diagnosis of medullary carcinoma using an immunoradiometric assay of calcitonin: comparison with genetic screening in hereditary medullary thyroid carcinoma, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 78:114–120, 1994.

Barkan A: Acromegaly, diagnosis and therapy, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 18:277–310, 1989.

Barkan AL, Chandler WF: Giant pituitary prolactinoma with falsely low serum prolactin: the pitfall of the "high-dose hook effect" case report, *Neurosurgery* 42:913–915, 1998.

Baumann G: Acromegaly, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 16:685–703, 1987.

Beck-Peccos P, Amr S, Menezes-Ferreira M, et al: Decreased receptor binding of biologically inactive thyrotropin in central hypothyroidism: effect of treatment with thyrotropin releasing hormone, *N Engl J Med* 312:1085–1089, 1985.

Becker KL, Nylen ES, Cohen R, et al: Calcitonin: structure, molecular biology and actions. In Beleziakin JP, Raisz LE, Rodan GA, editors: *Principle of bone biology*, San Diego, 1996, Academic Press, pp 471–474.

Becker KL, Nylen ES, Whir JC, et al: Procalcitonin and calcitonin gene family of peptidase in inflammation, infection and sepsis: A journey from calcitonin back to its precursor, *JCEM* 89:1512–1525, 2004.

Beishuizen A, Thiis LG, Vermes I: Patterns of corticosteroid-binding globulin and the free cortisol index during septic shock and multitrauma, *Intensive Care Med* 27:1584–1601, 2001.

Bigos R, Ridgway EC, Kourides IA, et al: Spectrum of pituitary alterations with mild and severe thyroid impairment, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 46:317, 1978.

Biller BMK, Samuels MH, Zagar A, et al: Sensitivity and specificity of six tests for the diagnosis of adult GH deficiency, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:2067–2079, 2002.

Bitton RN, Wexler CI: Free triiodothyronine toxicosis: a distinct entity, *Am J Med* 88:531–533, 1990.

Bjorbeck C, Kahn BB: Leptin signalling in the central nervous system and the periphery, *Recent Prog Horm Res* 59:305–331, 2004.

Bjorkman U, Ekholm R, Denef J-F: Cytochemical localization of hydrogen peroxidase in isolated thyroid follicle, *J Utrastruct Res* 71:105–115, 1981.

Blumenfeld JD, Sealey JE, Schussel Y, et al: Diagnosis and treatment of primary hyperaldosteronism, *Ann Intern Med* 121:877–885, 1994.

Brabant A, Brabant G, Schuermeyer T, et al: The role of glucocorticoids in the regulation of thyrotropin, *Acta Endocrinol (Copenh)* 121:95–100, 1989.

Brandi ML, Gagel RJ, Angeli A, et al: Consensus guidelines for diagnosis and therapy of MEN type 1 and type 2, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 86:5658–5671, 2001.

Braverman LE, Utiger RD, editors: *Werner and Ingbar's the thyroid: a fundamental and clinical test*, Philadelphia, 2000, Lippincott-Raven.

Bravo EL: Primary aldosteronism, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 23:271, 1994.

Bravo EL, Tagle R: Pheochromocytoma: state-of-the-art and future prospects, *Endocr Rev* 24:539–553, 2003.

Bravo EL, Tarazi RC, Fouad FM, et al: Clonidine-suppression: a useful aid in the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, *N Engl J Med* 305:623, 1981.

Bravo EL, Tarazi RC, Dustan HP, et al: The changing clinical spectrum of primary aldosteronism, *Am J Med* 74:641–651, 1983.

Brent GA, Moore DD, Larsen PR: Thyroid hormone regulation of gene expression, *Annu Rev Physiol* 53:17–35, 1991.

Brewster UC, Perazella MA: The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system and the kidney: effects on kidney disease, *Am J Med* 116:263–272, 2004.

Brilla CG, Zhou G, Matsubara L, et al: Collagen metabolism in cultured adult rat cardiac fibroblasts: response to angiotensin I and aldosterone, *J Mol Cell Cardiol* 26:809–820, 1994.

Brown NJ, Kim KS, Chen YQ, et al: Synergistic effect of adrenal steroids and angiotensin II on plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 production, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 85:336–344, 2000.

Brunner HR, Baer L, Sealey JE, et al: The influence of potassium administration and of potassium deprivation on plasma renin in normal and hypertensive subjects, *J Clin Invest* 49:2128–2138, 1970.

Burke CW: Adrenal insufficiency, *Clin Endocrinol Metab* 14:947–976, 1985.

Canale MP, Bravo EL: Diagnostic specificity of serum chromogranin-A for pheochromocytoma in patients with renal dysfunction, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 78:1139–1144, 1994.

Caron P: Effect of amiodarone on thyroid function, *Press Med* 24:1747–1751, 1995.

Casanueva FF: Physiology of growth hormone secretion and action, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 21:483–517, 1992.

Casanueva FF, Castro AI, Micic D, et al: New guidelines for the diagnosis of growth hormone deficiency in adults, *Horm Res* 71(Suppl 1):112–115, 2009.

Chambard M, Verrier B, Gabrion J, et al: Polarization of thyroid cells in cultures. Evidence for Baslateral localization of the iodide "pump" and of the TSH receptor-adenyl cyclase complex, *J Cell Biol* 96:1172–1177, 1983.

Chan KC, Lit LC, Law EL, et al: Diminished free cortisol excretion in patients with moderate and severe renal impairment, *Clin Chem* 50:757–759, 2004.

Chiovato L, Bassi P, Santini F, et al: Antibodies producing complement-mediated thyroid toxicity in patients with atrophic or goiterous autoimmune thyroiditis, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 77:1700–1705, 1993.

Chopra I: Euthyroid sick syndrome: Is it a misnomer? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 82:329–334, 1997.

Chrousos GP: The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis and immune mediated inflammation, *N Engl J Med* 332:1351–1362, 1998.

Chung HM, Kluge R, Schrier RW, et al: Clinical assessment of extracellular fluid volume in hyponatremia, *Am J Med* 83:905–908, 1987.

Cobin RH, Gharib H, Bergman DA, et al: AACE/AAES medical/surgical guidelines for clinical practice: management of thyroid carcinoma, *Endocr Pract* 7:203–220, 2001.

Conner P, Fried G: Hyperprolactinemia: etiology, diagnosis and treatment alternatives, *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 77:249–262, 1998.

Cook DM, Yuen KCJ, et al: AACE medical guidelines for clinical practice for growth hormone use in growth hormone–deficient adults and transition patients—2009 update: executive summary of recommendations, *Endocr Pract* 15:580–586, 2009.

Corvol P, Pinet F, Plouin PF, et al: Renin-secreting tumors, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 23:255, 1994.

Daniels GH: Amiodarone-induced thyrotoxicosis, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 86:3–8, 2001.

Davies T, Roli E, Braverman LE, et al: Thyroid controversy: stimulating antibodies, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:3777–3780, 1998.

Davis FB, LaMantia RS, Spaulding FW, et al: Estimation of a physiologic replacement dose of levothyroxine in elderly patients with hypothyroidism, *Arch Intern Med* 144:1752–1754, 1984.

De Bellis A, Bizzarro A, Amoresano Paglionico V, et al: Detection of vasopressin cell antibodies in some patients with autoimmune endocrine diseases without overt diabetes insipidus, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 40:173–177, 1994.

De Bellis A, Colao A, Di Salle F, et al: A longitudinal study of plasma vasopressin cell antibodies, posterior pituitary function and magnetic resonance imaging evaluations in subclinical autoimmune central diabetes insipidus, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 84:3047–3051, 1999.

De Brabandere VI, Hou P, Stockl D, et al: Isotope dilution-liquid chromatography/electrospray ionization-tandem mass spectrometry for the determination of serum thyroxine as a potential reference method, *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom* 12:1099–1103, 1998.

DeGroot LJ, Major G: Admission screening by thyroid function tests in an acute general care teaching hospital, *Am J Med* 93:558–564, 1992.

Delange F: Correction of iodine deficiency: benefits and possible side effects, *Eur J Endocrinol* 132:542–543, 1995.

Deme D, Pommier J, Nunez J: Kinetics of thyroglobulin iodination of hormone synthesis catalized thyroid peroxidase: role of iodide in the coupling reaction, *Eur J Biochem* 70:435–440, 1976.

Dicheck HL, Nieman LK, Oldfield EH, et al: A comparison of the standard high-dose dexamethasone suppression test and the overnight 8 mg dexamethasone suppression test for the diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 78:418–422, 1994.

Dimaraki EV, Jaffe CA, DeMott-Friberg R, et al: Acromegaly with apparently normal GH secretion: implications for diagnosis and follow-up, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:3537–3542, 2002.

Diver MJ, Ewins DL, Worth RC, et al: An unusual form of big, big (macro) prolactin in a pregnant patient, *Clin Chem* 47:346–348, 2001.

Docter R, Van Toor H, Krenning EP, et al: Free thyroxine assessed with three assays in sera of patients with nonthyroidal illness and of subjects with abnormal concentrations of thyroxine-binding proteins, *Clin Chem* 39:1668–1674, 1993.

Donis-Keller H, Don S, Chi D, et al: Mutations in RET proto-oncogene are associated with MEN2A and FMTC, *Hum Mol Genet* 2:851–856, 1993.

Doppmann JL, Gill JR Jr: Hyperaldosteronism: sampling the renal veins, *Radiology* 198:309–312, 1996.

Doppmann JL, Gill JR Jr, Miller DL, et al: Distinction between hyperaldosteronism due to bilateral adrenal hyperplasia and unilateral aldosteronoma: reliability of CT, *Radiology* 184:677–682, 1992.

Dulgeroff AJ, Hershman JM: Medical therapy for differentiated thyroid carcinoma, *Endocr Rev* 15:500–515, 1994.

Dunn JT: When is thyroid nodule a sporadic medullary carcinoma? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 78:824–825, 1994.

Dunn JT: What happens to our iodine? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:3398–3400, 1998.

Eastman RC, Merriman GR, Moore WT, et al: Acromegaly, hyperprolactinemia, gonadotropin-secreting tumors and hypopituitarism. In Moore WT, Eastman RC, editors: *Diagnostic endocrinology*, ed 2, St Louis, 1996, Mosby-Year Book, p 73.

Eddy RL, Gilliland PF, Ibarra JD, et al: Human growth hormone release: comparison of provocative test procedures, *Am J Med* 56:179, 1974.

http://basicbook.net

Eisenhofer G, Goldstein DS, Walther MM, et al: Biochemical diagnosis of pheochromocytoma: how to distinguish true from false-positive test results, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:2656–2666, 2003.

Eisenhofer G, Lenders JW, Pacak K: Biochemical diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, *Front Horm Res* 31:76–106, 2004.

Eisenhofer G, Pacak K: Diagnosis of pheochromocytoma. In *Harrison's principles of internal medicine*, 2004, McGraw-Hill: online. Available at: http://www.accessmedicine.com/.

Elamin MB, Murad MH, Mullan R, et al: Accuracy of diagnostic tests for Cushing's syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 93:1553–1562, 2008.

Elliott W, Murphy MB: Reduced specificity of the clonidine suppression test in patients with normal plasma catecholamine levels, *Am J Med* 84:419–424, 1988.

Engler D, Burger AG: The deiodination of the iodothyronines and their derivatives in man, *Endocr Rev* 5:151–184, 1984.

Erdogan MF, Gullu S, Baskal N, et al: Omeprazole: calcitonin stimulation test for the diagnosis follow-up and family screening in medullary carcinoma of the thyroid gland, *Ann Surg* 188:139–141, 1997.

Ericsson UB, Tegler L, Lennquist S, et al: Serum thyroglobulin in differentiated thyroid carcinoma, *Acta Chir Scand* 150:367–375, 1984.

Ezzat S: Acromegaly, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 26:703–723, 1997.

Faber J, Kirkegaard C, Rasmussen B, et al: Pituitary-thyroid axis in critical illness, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 65:315–320, 1987.

Fahie-Wilson M: In hyperprolactinemia, testing for macroprolactin is essential, *Clin Chem* 49:1434–1436, 2003.

Feldt-Rasmussen U, Schleusner H, Carayon P: Meta-analysis evaluation of the impact of thyrotropin receptor antibodies on long-term remission after medical therapy of Grave's disease, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 78:98–102, 1994.

Fiad TM, Kirby JM, Cunningham SK, et al: The overnight single-dose metyrapone test is a simple and reliable index of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 40:603–609, 1994.

Findling JW: Clinical application of a new immunoradiometric assay for ACTH, *Endocrinologist* 2:360–365, 1992.

Findling JW, Raff H: Newer diagnostic techniques and problems in Cushing's disease, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 28:191–210, 1999.

Fisher DA, Nelson JC, Carlton EI, et al: Maturation of human hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid function control, *Thyroid* 10:229–234, 2000a.

Fisher DA, Schoen EJ, La Franchi S, et al: The hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid negative feedback control axis in children with treated congenital hypothyroidism, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 85:2722–2727, 2000b.

Fleseriu M, Loriaux DL: "Relative" adrenal insufficiency in critical illness, *Endocr Pract* 15:632–640, 2009.

Frank J, Faix J, Hermos RJ, et al: Thyroid function in very low birth weight infants: effects on neonatal hypothyroidism screening, *J Pediatr* 128:548–554, 1996.

Frantz AG: Hyperprolactinemia. In Collu R, Brown GM, Van Loon GR, editors: *Clinical neuroendocrinology*, Boston, 1998, Blackwell Scientific, pp 311–332.

Freda PU, Post KD, Powell JS, et al: Evaluation of disease status with sensitive measures of growth hormone secretion in 60 post-operative patients with acromegaly, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:3808–3816, 1998.

Freda PU, Wardlaw SL: Clinical review 110: diagnosis and treatment of pituitary tumors, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 84:3859–3866, 1999.

Fuchs AR, Fuchs F, Husslein P: Oxytocin receptors and human parturition: a dual role for oxytocin in the initiation of labor, *Science* 215:1396, 1982.

Fujieda K, Okuhara K, Abe S, et al: Molecular pathogenesis of lipoid adrenal hyperplasia and adrenal hypoplasia congenita, *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 85:483–489, 2003.

Fukata J, Shimizu N, Imura H, et al: Human corticotropin-releasing hormone test in patients with hypothalamo-pituitary-adrenocortical disorders, *Endocr J* 40:597, 1993.

Funder JW, Carey RM, Fardello C, et al: Case detection, diagnosis, and treatment of patients with primary hyperaldosteronism: an Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 93:3266–3281, 2008.

Gabrilove JL, Sharma DC, Dorfman RI: Adrenocortical 11-β-hydroxylase deficiency and virilism first manifest in an adult woman, *N Engl J Med* 272:1189–1194, 1965.

Gagel RF: The abnormal pentagastrin test, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 44:221–222, 1996.

Giustina A, Chanson P, Bronstein MD, et al: A consensus on criteria for cure of acromegaly, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 95:3141–3148, 2010.

Gleason PE, Weinberger MG, Pratt JH, et al: Evaluation of diagnostic tests in the differential diagnosis of primary aldosteronism: unilateral adenoma versus bilateral micronodular hyperplasia, *J Urol* 150:1365–1368, 1993.

Glinoer D: The regulation of thyroid function in pregnancy: pathways of endocrine adaptation from physiology to pathology, *Endocr Rev* 18:404–433, 1997.

Glinoer D, De Nayer P, Bourdoux P, et al: Regulation of maternal thyroid function during pregnancy, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 71:276–287, 1990.

Goland RS, Wardlaw SL, Stark RI, et al: High levels of corticotropin-releasing hormone immunoactivity in maternal and fetal plasma during pregnancy, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 63:1199–1203, 1986.

Gold PW, Loriaux L, Roy A, et al: Responses to corticotropin-releasing hormone in the hypercortisolism of depression and Cushing's disease, *N Engl J Med* 314:1329–1335, 1986.

Goodwin TM, Monotoro M, Mestman JH, et al: The role of chorionic gonadotropin in transient hyperthyroidism of hyperemesis gravidarum, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 75:1333–1337, 1992.

Grinspoon SK, Biller BMK: Laboratory assessment of adrenal insufficiency, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 79:923–931, 1994.

Grodum E, Petersen PH, Hangaard J, et al: Biological description of the cortisol response to corticotropin releasing hormone (CRH) stimulation: an optimization and simplification of the test, *Ups J Med Sci* 98:311–316, 1993.

Gu J, Soldin OP, Soldin SJ: Simultaneous quantification of free triiodothyronine and free thyroxine by isotope dilution tandem mass spectrometry, *Clin Biochem* 40:1386–1391, 2007.

Guo J, Jaume JC, Rapoport B, et al: Recombinant thyroid peroxidase-specific Fab converted to immunoglobulin G (IgG) molecules: evidence for thyroid cell damage IgG, but not IgG4 autoantibodies, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 82:925–931, 1997.

Haddow JE, Palomaki GE, Allan WC, et al: Maternal thyroid deficiency during pregnancy and subsequent neuropsychological development of the child, *N Engl J Med* 341:549–555, 1999.

Hahn RG: Natriuresis and "dilutional" hyponatremia after infusion of glycine 1.5%, *J Clin Anesth* 13:167–174, 2001.

Hamrahian AH, Oseni TS, Arafah BM: Measurements of serum free cortisol in critically ill patients, *N Engl J Med* 350:1629–1638, 2004.

Harjai KJ, Licata AA: Effects of amiodarone on thyroid function, *Ann Intern Med* 126:63–73, 1997.

Harpe R, Ferrett CG, McKnight JA, et al: Accuracy of CT scanning and adrenal vein sampling in the preoperative localization of aldosterone-secreting adrenal adenomas, *Q J Med* 92:643–650, 1999.

Hartman MC, Crowe BJ, Biller BM, et al: Which patients do not require a GH stimulation test for the diagnosis of adult GH deficiency? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:477–485, 2002.

Hay ID, Bayer MF, Kaplan MM, et al: American Thyroid Association assessment of current free thyroid hormone and thyrotropin measurements and guidelines for future clinical assays, *Clin Chem* 37:2002–2008, 1991.

Heithorn R, Hauffa BP, Reinwein D: Thyroid antibodies in children of mothers with autoimmune thyroid disorder, *Eur J Pediatr* 158:24–28, 1999.

Heron E, Chatellier G, Billaud E, et al: The urinary metanephrine-to-creatinine ratio for the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, *Ann Intern Med* 125:300–303, 1996.

Hershman JM: Human chorionic gonadotropin and the thyroid: hyperemesis gravidarum and trophoblastic tumors, *Thyroid* 9:653–657, 1999.

Hillier TA, Abbott RD, Barrett EJ: Hyponatremia: evaluating the correction factor for hyperglycemia, *Am J Med* 106:399–403, 1999.

Ho JT, Al-Musalhi H, Chapman MJ, et al: Septic shock and sepsis: a comparison of total and free plasma cortisol levels, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 91:105–114, 2006.

Ho KK, Ho KK: Consensus guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of adults with GH deficiency II: a statement of the GH Research Society in association with the European Society for Pediatric Endocrinology, Lawson Wilkins Society, European Society of Endocrinology, Japan Endocrine Society, and Endocrine Society of Australia. 2007 GH Deficiency Consensus Workshop participants, *Eur J Endocrinol* 157:695–700, 2007.

Hofstra RM, Landsvater RM, Ceccherini I, et al: A mutation in the RET proto-oncogene associated with multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2B and sporadic medullary thyroid carcinoma, *Nature* 367:375–376, 1994.

Holdaway IM, Rajasoorya RC, Gamble GD: Factors influencing mortality in acromegaly, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 89:667–674, 2004.

Holland OB, Brown H, Kuhnert L, et al: Further evaluation of saline infusion for the diagnosis of primary aldosteronism, *Hypertension* 6:717–723, 1984.

Hollowell JG, Staehling NW, Hannon WH, et al: Serum TSH, T(4), and thyroid antibodies in the United States population (1988 to 1994): National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES III), *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:489–499, 2002.

Holtzman EJ, Ausiello DA: Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus: causes revealed, *Hosp Pract (Off Ed)* 29:89–93, 97–98, 103–104, 1994.

Honour JW, Rumsby G: Problems in diagnosis and management of congenital adrenal hyperplasia due to 21-hydroxylase deficiency, *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 45:69, 1993.

Horrocks PM, Jones AF, Ratcliffe WA, et al: Patterns of ACTH and cortisol pulsatility over twenty four hours in normal males and females, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 32:127–134, 1990.

Hsiao RJ, Parmer RJ, Takiyyuddin MM, et al: Chromogranin A storage and secretion: sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 70:33–45, 1991.

Iitaka M, Kawasaki S, Sakurai S, et al: Serum substances that interfere with thyroid hormone assays in patients with chronic renal failure, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 48:739–746, 1998.

Ishii H, Inada M, Tanaka K, et al: Induction of outer and inner ring monodeiodinases in human thyroid gland by thyrotropin, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 57:500–505, 1983.

Itoh S, Tanaka K, Kimagae M, et al: Effect of subcutaneous injection of a long acting analogue of somatostatin (SMS 201-995) on plasma thyroid stimulating hormone in normal human objects, *Life Sci* 42:2691–2699, 1988.

Jenkins JS, Nussey SS: The role of oxytocin: present concepts, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 34:515–525, 1991.

Johnson AM, Eegles JM: Lithium associated clinical hypothyroidism: prevalence and risk factors, *Br J Psychiatry* 175:336–339, 1999.

Jung C, Ho JT, Torpy DJ, et al: A longitudinal study of plasma and urinary cortisol in pregnancy and postpartum, *JCEM* 96:1533–1540, 2011.

Kailajarvi M, Takala T, Gronroos P, et al: Reminders of drug effects on laboratory test results, *Clin Chem* 64:1395–1400, 2000.

Kakucska I, Rand W, Lechan RM: Thyrotropin-releasing hormone gene expression in hypothalamic paraventricular nucleus is dependent upon feedback regulation by both triiodothyronine and thyroxine, *Endocrinology* 130:2845–2850, 1992.

Kamoi K: Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuresis without involving inappropriate secretion of vasopressin in an elderly woman: effect of intravenous administration of the nonpeptide vasopressin V2 receptor antagonist OPC-31260, *Nephron* 76:111–115, 1997.

Kamoi K, Ebe T, Kobayashi O, et al: Atrial natriuretic peptide in patients with the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion and with diabetes insipidus, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 70:1385–1390, 1990.

Kaptein EM: Thyroid hormone metabolism and thyroid diseases in chronic renal failure, *Endocr Rev* 17:45–63, 1996.

Kaptein EM, Spencer CA, Kamiel MB, et al: Prolonged dopamine administration and thyroid hormone economy in normal and critically ill subjects, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 51:387–393, 1980.

Kater CE, Biglieri EG: Disorders of steroid 17 alpha-hydroxylase deficiency, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 23:341, 1994.

http://basicbook.net

Katznelson L, Atkinson JL, Cook DM, et al: American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists medical guidelines for clinical practice for the diagnosis and treatment of acromegaly—2011 update, *Endocr Pract* 17(Suppl 4):1–44, 2011.
Katznelson L, Laws ER, Melmed S, et al: Acromegaly: An Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 99(11):3933–3951, 2014.
Kauppila A: Isolated prolactin deficiency, *Curr Ther Endocrinol Metab* 6:31–33, 1997.
Kaye TB, Crapo L: The Cushing's syndrome: an update on diagnostic tests, *Ann Intern Med* 112:434–444, 1990.
Kempers MJE, Lenders JWM, Outheusden L, et al: Systematic review: diagnostic procedures to differentiate unilateral from bilateral adrenal abnormality in primary aldosteronism, *Ann Intern Med* 151:329–337, 2009.
Kleinberg DL, Noel GL, Frantz AG: Galactorrhea: a study of 235 cases, including 48 with pituitary tumors, *N Engl J Med* 296:589–600, 1977.
Krakoff L, Nicolis G, Amsel B: Pathogenesis of hypertension in Cushing's syndrome, *Am J Med* 58:216, 1975.
Kumar S, Berl T: Sodium, *Lancet* 352:220–228, 1998.
Kurtz TW, Spence MA: Genetics of essential hypertension, *Am J Med* 94:77, 1993.
Kusalic M, Engelsmann F: Effect of lithium and maintenance therapy on thyroid and parathyroid function, *J Psychiatry Neurosci* 24:227–233, 1999.
Ladenson PW, Singer PA, Ain KB, et al: American Thyroid Association guidelines of detection of thyroid dysfunction, *Arch Intern Med* 160:1573–1575, 2000.
Lamb EJ, Noonan KA, Burrin JM: Urine-free cortisol excretion: evidence of sex-dependence, *Ann Clin Biochem* 31:455, 1994.
Langsteger W: Clinical aspect and diagnosis of thyroid hormone transport protein anomalies, *Curr Top Pathol* 91:129–161, 1997.
Laragh JH: Renin profiling for the diagnosis, risk assessment and the treatment of hypertension, *Kidney Int* 44:1163, 1993.
Laragh JH, Baer L, Brunner HR, et al: Renin, angiotensin and aldosterone system in pathogenesis and management of hypertensive vascular disease, *Am J Med* 52:633, 1972.
Lazarus JG: The effects of lithium therapy on thyroid and thyrotropin-releasing hormone, *Thyroid* 8:909–913, 1998.
Lebbe M, Arlt W: What is the best diagnostic and therapeutic management strategy for an Addison patient during pregnancy? *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 78:497–502, 2013.
Lenders JW, Duh Q-Y, Eisenhofer G, et al: Pheochromocytoma and paraganglioma: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 99(6):1915–1942, 2014.
Lenders JW, Keiser HR, Goldstein DS, et al: Plasma metanephrines in the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, *Ann Intern Med* 123:101–109, 1995.
Lenders JW, Pacak K, Walther MM, et al: Biochemical diagnosis of pheochromocytoma: which test is best? *JAMA* 287:1427–1434, 2002.
Lentjes EG, Romijn F, Massen RJ, et al: Free cortisol in serum assayed by temperature-controlled ultrafiltration before fluorescence polarization immunoassay, *Clin Chem* 39:2518, 1993.
Levine LS: Congenital adrenal hyperplasia. In Lavin N, editor: *Manual of endocrinology and metabolism*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2002, Lippincott, pp 147–162.
Lifton RP, Dluhy RG, Powers M: A chimaeric 11 beta-hydroxylase/aldosterone synthase gene causes glucocorticoid-remediable aldosteronism and human hypertension, *Nature* 355:262–265, 1992.
Lindheimer MD, Davison JM: Osmoregulation, the secretion of arginine vasopressin and its metabolism during pregnancy, *Eur J Endocrinol* 132:133–143, 1995.
Linkowski P, Medlwicz J, Kerlhofs M, et al: 24-hr profiles of adrenocorticotropin, cortisol and growth hormone in major depressive illness: effect of antidepressant treatment, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 65:141–152, 1987.
Lobo RA, Kletzky OA, Kaptein EM, et al: Prolactin modulation of dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate secretion, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 138:632, 1980.
LoPresti JS, Eigen A, Kaptein E, et al: Alterations in 3,3′,5′-triiodothyronine metabolism in response to propylthiouracil, dexamethasone and thyroxine administration in man, *J Clin Invest* 84:1650–1656, 1989.
LoPresti JS, Nicoloff JT: *Non-thyroidal illness in endocrinology*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1995, Saunders, pp 665–675.
Lu FL, Yau KI, Tsai KS, et al: Longitudinal study of serum free thyroxine and thyrotropin levels by chemiluminescent immunoassay during infancy, *Taiwan Erh K'o I. Hseh Hui Tsa Chih* 40:225–227, 1999.
Luft FC: Proinflammatory effects of angiotensin II and endothelin: targets for progression of cardiovascular and renal disease, *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens* 11:59–66, 2002.
Lum SM, Nicoloff JT: Peripheral tissue mechanism for maintenance of serum triiodothyronine values in a thyroxine-deficient state in man, *J Clin Invest* 73:570–575, 1984.
Lutfallah C, Wang W, Mason JI, et al: Newly proposed hormonal criteria via genotypic proof for type II 3-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase deficiency, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:2611–2622, 2002.
McLeod JF, Kovacs L, Gaskill MB, et al: Familial neurohypophyseal diabetes insipidus associated with a signal peptide mutation, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 77:599A–G, 1993.
Maghnie M, Cosi G, Genovese E, et al: Central diabetes insipidus in children and young adults, *N Engl J Med* 343:998–1007, 2000.
Magill SB, Raff H, Shaker JL, et al: Comparison of adrenal vein sampling and computed tomography in the differentiation of primary aldosteronism, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 86:1066–1071, 2001.
Martino E, Aghini-Lombardi F, Mariotti S, et al: Amiodarone: a common source of iodine-induced thyrotoxicosis, *Horm Res* 26:158–171, 1987.
Martino E, Bartalena L, Bogazzi F, et al: The effects of amiodarone on the thyroid, *Endocr Rev* 22:240–254, 2001.
Masrorakos G, Weber JS, Magiakou MA, et al: Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis and stimulation of systemic vasopressin secretion by recombinant interleukin-6 in humans: potential implications for the syndrome of inappropriate vasopressin secretion, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 79:934–939, 1994.
Meikle AW, Stringham JD, Woodward MG, et al: Hereditary and environmental influences on the variation of thyroid hormones in normal male twins, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 66:588–592, 1988.
Melmed S, Casanueva FF, Hoffman AR, et al: Diagnosis and treatment of hyperprolactinemia: an Endocrine Society Clinical practice guideline, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 96:273–288, 2011.
Mendel CM, Frost PH, Kunitake ST, et al: Mechanism of the heparin-induced increase in the concentration of free thyroxine in plasma, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 65:1259–1264, 1987.
Merke DP, Bornstein SR, Avila NA, et al: Future directions in the study and management of congenital adrenal hyperplasia due to 21-hydroxylase deficiency, *Intern Med* 136:320–334, 2002.
Merke DP, Chrousos GP, Eisenhofer G, et al: Adrenomedullary dysplasia and hypofunction in patients with classic 21-hydroxylase deficiency, *N Engl J Med* 343:1362–1368, 2000.
Meurisse M, Gollogly MM, Degauque C, et al: Iatrogenic thyrotoxicosis: causal circumstances, pathophysiology and principles of treatment—review of the literature, *World J Surg* 24:1377–1385, 2000.
Mevorach RA, Bogaert GA, Kogan BA: Urine concentration and enuresis in healthy pre-school children, *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 149:259–262, 1995.
Molitch ME, Clemmons DR, Malozowski S, et al: Evaluation and treatment of adult growth hormone deficiency: an Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 91:1621–1634, 2006.
Motte P, Vauzelle P, Garder P, et al: Construction and clinical validation of a sensitive and specific assay for mature calcitonin using monoclonal anti-peptide antibodies, *Clin Chim Acta* 174:35–54, 1988.
Mulligan LM, Kwok JB, Healey CS, et al: Germ-line mutations of the RET proto-oncogene in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2A, *Nature* 363:458–460, 1993.
Nelson DH, Samuels LT: A method for the determination of 17-hydroxycorticosteroids in blood: 17-hydroxycorticosterone in the peripheral circulation, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 12:519–526, 1952.
Nelson JC, Tindall DJ: A comparison of the adrenal responses to hypoglycemia, metyrapone and ACTH, *Am J Med Sci* 275:165–172, 1978.
Nelson JC, Wilcox RB: Analytical performance of free and total thyroxine assays, *Clin Chem* 42:146–154, 1996.
New MI: Steroid 21-hydroxylase deficiency (congenital adrenal hyperplasia), *Am J Med* 98:2S–8S, 1995.
New MI, Lorenzen F, Lerner AJ, et al: Genotyping steroid 21-hydroxylase deficiency: hormonal reference data, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 57:320–326, 1983.
Newell-Price J, Morris DG, Drake WM, et al: Optimal response criteria for the human CRH test in the differential diagnosis of ACTH-dependent Cushing's syndrome, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:1640–1645, 2002.
Newell-Price J, Trainer P, Besse M, et al: The diagnosis and differential diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome and pseudo-Cushing's states, *Endocr Rev* 19:647–672, 1998.
Newell-Price J, Trainer PJ, Perry LA, et al: Single sleeping mid-night cortisol has 100% sensitivity for the diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 43:545–550, 1995.
Nieman LK, Biller BM, Findling JW, et al: The diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome: an Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 93:1526–1540, 2008.
Nieman LK, Cutler GB Jr: The sensitivity of the urine free cortisol measurement as a screening test for Cushing's syndrome (abstract). In *Programs and abstracts of the Endocrine Society 72nd annual meeting*, Atlanta, 1990, Endocrine Society, p 822.
Nieman LK, Cutler GB Jr, Oldfield EH, et al: The ovine corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) stimulation test is superior to the human CRH stimulation test for the diagnosis of Cushing's disease, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 69:165–169, 1989.
Nilson JC, Clarke SJ, Borat DI, et al: Age-related changes in serum free thyroxine during childhood and adolescence, *J Pediatr* 123:899–905, 1993.
Nohr SB, Jorgensen A, Pedersen KM, et al: Postpartum thyroid dysfunction in pregnant thyroid peroxidase antibody-positive women living in an area with mild to moderate iodine deficiency: is iodine supplementation safe? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 85:3191–3198, 2000.
Nordenstrom A, Thilen A, Hadenfeldt L, et al: Genotyping is a valuable diagnostic complement to neonatal screening for congenital adrenal hyperplasia due to steroid 21-hydroxylase deficiency, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 84:1505, 1999.
Nussey SS, Soo SC, Gibson S, et al: Isolated congenital ACTH deficiency: a cleavage enzyme defect? *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 39:381, 1993.
Oakley PW, Dawson AH, Whyte IM: Lithium: thyroid effects and altered renal handling, *Clin Toxicol* 38:333–337, 2000.
Odell WD, Wilber JF, Paul WE: Radioimmunoassay of thyoglobulin in human serum, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 25:1179–1188, 1965.
Oelkers W: Adrenal insufficiency, *N Engl J Med* 335:1206–1212, 1996.
Oelkers W, Diederich S, Bahr V: Diagnosis and therapy surveillance in Addison's disease: rapid adrenocorticotropin (ACTH) test and measurement of plasma ACTH, renin activity and aldosterone, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 75:259–264, 1992.
Orme SM, McNally RJ, Cartwright RA, et al: Mortality and cancer incidence in acromegaly: a retrospective cohort study. United Kingdom Acromegaly Study Group, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:2730–2734, 1998.
Orth DN: Cushing's syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 332:791, 1995.
Pacak K, Chrousos GP, Koch CA, et al: Pheochromocytoma: progress in diagnosis, therapy and genetics. In Margioris A, Chrousos GP, editors: *Adrenal disorders* (vol 1), Totawa, N.J., 2001a, Humana Press, pp 479–523.
Pacak K, Eisenhofer G, Carrasquillo JA, et al: 6-[18F]-fluorodopamine positron emission tomography (PET) scanning for diagnostic localization of pheochromocytoma, *Hypertension* 38:6–8, 2001b.
Pacini F, Fontanelli M, Fugazzola L, et al: Routine measurement of serum calcitonin in nodular thyroid diseases allows the preoperative diagnosis of unsuspected sporadic medullary thyroid carcinoma, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 78:826–829, 1994.
Panesar NS, Li CY, Rogers MS: Reference intervals for thyroid hormones in pregnant Chinese women, *Ann Clin Biochem* 38:329–332, 2001.
Pang S, Lerner AJ, Stoner E: Late-onset adrenal steroid 3-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase deficiency. I. A cause of hirsutism in pubertal and postpubertal women, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 60:428–439, 1985.

http://basicbook.net

Pang S, Levine LS, Lorenzen F, et al: Hormonal studies in obligate heterozygotes and siblings of patients with 11-β-hydroxylase deficiency congenital adrenal hyperplasia, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 50:586–589, 1980.

Pang S, Murphey W, Levine LS, et al: A pilot newborn screening for congenital adrenal hyperplasia in Alaska, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 55:413–420, 1982.

Pang SY, Wallace MA, Hofman L: Worldwide experience in newborn screening for classical congenital adrenal hyperplasia due to 21-hydroxylase deficiency, *Pediatrics* 81:866–874, 1988.

Papanicolaou DA, Mullen N, Kyrou I, et al: Nighttime salivary cortisol: a useful test for the diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:4515–4521, 2002.

Papanicolaou DA, Yanovski JA, Cutler GB Jr, et al: A single midnight serum cortisol measurement distinguishes Cushing's disease from pseudo-Cushing state, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:1163–1167, 1998.

Parle JV, Masisonneuve P, Sheppard MC, et al: Prediction of all-cause and cardiovascular mortality in elderly people from one low serum thyrotropin result: a 10-year study, *Lancet* 358:861–865, 2001.

Pedersen KM, Laurberg P, Iversen E, et al: Amelioration of some pregnancy associated variation in thyroid function by iodine supplementation, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 77:1078–1083, 1993.

Petakov MS, Damjanovic SS, Nikolic-Durovic MM, et al: Pituitary adenoma secreting large amounts of prolactin may give false low values in immunoradiometric assays: the hook effect, *J Endocrinol Invest* 21:184–188, 1998.

Philomin V, Vassieres A, Jaouen G: New applications of carbonylmetalloimmunoassay (CMIA): a non-radioisotopic approach to cortisol assay, *J Immunol Methods* 171:201, 1994.

Piketty ML, D'Herbomez M, Le Guillouzic D, et al: Clinical comparison of three labeled-antibody immunoassays of free triiodothyronine, *Clin Chem* 42:933–941, 1996.

Pop VJ, De Vries E, van Baar AL, et al: Maternal thyroid peroxidase antibodies during pregnancy: a marker of impaired child development? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 80:3561–3566, 1995.

Pop VJ, Kuijpens JL, van Baar AL, et al: Low maternal free thyroxine concentrations during pregnancy are associated with impaired psychomotor development in infancy, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 50:147–148, 1999.

Porter CC, Silber RH: A quantitative color reaction for cortisone and related 17,21-dihydroxy-20-ketosteroids, *J Biol Chem* 185:201–207, 1950.

Prazeres S, Santos MA, Ferreira HG, et al: A practical method for the detection of macroprolactinaemia using ultrafiltration, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 58:686–690, 2003.

Putignano P, Toja P, Dubini A, et al: Midnight salivary cortisol versus urinary free and midnight serum cortisol as screening tests for Cushing's syndrome, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:4153–4157, 2003.

Radetti G, Persani L, Moroder W, et al: Transplacental passage of anti-thyroid auto-antibodies in a pregnant woman with auto-immune thyroid disease, *Prenat Diagn* 19:468–471, 1999.

Radin DR, Manoogian C, Nadler JL: Diagnosis of primary hyperaldosteronism: importance of correlating CT findings with endocrinologic studies, *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 158:553, 1992.

Raff H, Findling JW: A physiologic approach to diagnosis of the Cushing syndrome, *Ann Intern Med* 138:980–991, 2003.

Raff H: Utility of salivary cortisol measurements in Cushing's syndrome and adrenal insufficiency, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 94:3647–3655, 2009. Review.

Raff H: Update on late-night salivary cortisol for the diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome: Methodological considerations, *Endocrine* 44:346–349, 2013.

Rajasoorya C, Holdaway IM, Wrightson P, et al: Determinants of clinical outcome and survival in acromegaly, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 41:95–102, 1994.

Read GF, Walker RF, Wilson DW, et al: Steroid analysis in saliva for the assessment of endocrine function, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 595:260–274, 1990.

Refetoff S: Thyroid hormone resistance syndrome. In *The thyroid*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 1991, Lippincott.

Reihman DH, Farber MO, Heath DA: Effect of hypoxemia on sodium and water excretion in chronic obstructive lung disease, *Am J Med* 78:87–94, 1985.

Rigg LA, Lein A, Yen SSC: Pattern of increase in circulating prolactin levels during human gestation, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 129:454–456, 1977.

Rivier C, Vale W: Effect of angiotensin II on ACTH release in vivo: role of corticotropin-releasing factor, *Regul Pept* 7:253–258, 1983.

Robbins J: Thyroid hormone transport protein and the physiology of hormone binding. In Gray CH, James VHT, editors: *Hormones in blood*, London, 1996, Academic Press, pp 96–110.

Rocha R, Steir CT, Kifor I, et al: Aldosterone: a mediator of myocardial necrosis and renal arteriopathy, *Endocrinology* 141:3871–3878, 2000.

Rose S, Ross J, Uriarte M, et al: The advantage of measuring stimulated as compared with spontaneous growth hormone levels in the diagnosis of growth hormone deficiency, *N Engl J Med* 319:201–207, 1988.

Rosler A, Weshler N, Leiberman E, et al: 11 Beta-hydroxylase deficiency congenital adrenal hyperplasia: update of prenatal diagnosis, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 66:830–838, 1988.

Ross DS: Subclinical hyperthyroidism. In Braverman LE, Utiger RD, editors: *Werner and Ingbar's the thyroid: a fundamental and clinical text*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 1991, Lippincott, pp 1249–1255.

Roth J, Taatjes D, Lucocq J, et al: Demonstration of an extensive trans-tubular network continuous with the Golgi apparatus stack that may function in glycosylation, *Cell* 43:287–295, 1985.

Rudd BT: Measurement of urine 17-oxogenic steroids, 17-hydroxycorticosteroids, and 17-oxosteroids has been superseded by better tests, *Br Med J* 291:805, 1985.

Salgado LR, Fragoso MC, Knoepfelmacher M, et al: Ectopic ACTH syndrome: our experience with 25 cases, *Eur J Endocrinol* 155:725–733, 2006.

Samuels MH, McDaniel PA: Thyrotropin levels during hydrocortisone infusions that mimic fasting-induced cortisol elevations: a clinical research study, *J Clin Metab* 82:3700–3704, 1997.

Samuels MH, Veldhuis JD, Henry PM, et al: Pathophysiology of pulsatile and copulsatile release of thyroid-stimulating hormone, and alpha subunit, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 71:425, 1990.

Sassin JF, Frantz AG, Weitzman ED, et al: Human prolactin: 24-hour pattern with increased release during sleep, *Science* 177:120–127, 1972.

Sawin CT, Geller A, Kaplan MM, et al: Low serum thyrotropin (thyroid stimulating hormone) in older persons with hyperthyroidism, *Arch Intern Med* 151:165–168, 1991.

Sawin CT, Geller A, Wolf PA, et al: Low serum thyrotropin concentrations as a risk factor for atrial fibrillation in older persons, *N Engl J Med* 331:1249–1252, 1994.

Sawin CT, Herman T, Molitch ME, et al: Aging and the thyroid: decreased requirement for thyroid hormone in older hypothyroid patients, *Am J Med* 75:206–209, 1983.

Sawka AM, Jaeschke R, Singh RJ, et al: A comparison of biochemical tests for pheochromocytoma: measurement of fractionated plasma metanephrines compared with the combination of 24-hour urinary metanephrines and catecholamines, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:553–558, 2003.

Scheithauer BW, Sano T, Kovacs KT, et al: The pituitary gland in pregnancy: a clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical study of 69 cases, *Mayo Clin Proc* 65:461–474, 1990.

Schlumberger MCP, Fragu P, Lumbroso J, et al: Circulating thyrotropin and thyroid hormones in patients with metastases of differentiated thyroid carcinoma: relationship to serum thyrotropin levels, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 51:513–519, 1980.

Schunkert H, Hense HW, Muscholl M, et al: Associations between circulating components of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system and left ventricular mass, *Heart* 77:24–31, 1997.

Schulte HM, Chrousos GP, Avgerinos P, et al: The corticotropin-releasing hormone stimulation test: a possible aid in the evaluation of patients with adrenal insufficiency, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 58:1064–1067, 1984.

Sergev O, Racz K, Varga I, et al: Atrial natriuretic peptide in normal and low renin essential hypertension, *Kidney Int* 30:S107–S108, 1990.

Sheps SG, Jiang NS, Klee GG, et al: Recent developments in the diagnosis and treatment of pheochromocytoma, *Endo Rev* 15:356–368, 1994.

Shupnik MA, Greenspan SL, Ridgway EC: Transcriptional regulation of thyrotropin subunit genes by thyrotropin-releasing hormone and dopamine pituitary cell cultures, *J Biol Chem* 261:12675–12679, 1986.

Sjoberg RJ, Simcic KJ, Kidd GS: The clonidine suppression test for pheochromocytoma: a review of its utility and pitfalls, *Arch Intern Med* 152:1193–1197, 1992.

Skamene A, Patel YC: Infusion of graded concentrations of somatostatin in man: pharmaco-kinetics and differential inhibitory effects on pituitary and islet hormones, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 20:555–564, 1984.

Snow K, Jiang N, Kao PC, et al: Biochemical evolution of adrenal dysfunction: the laboratory perspective, *Mayo Clin Proc* 67:1055, 1992.

Sonkodi S, Abraham G, Mohacsi G: Effects of nephrectomy on hypertension, renin activity and total renal function in patients with chronic renal artery occlusion, *J Hum Hypertens* 4:277–279, 1990.

Speckart PF, Nicoloff JT, Bethune JE: Screening for adrenocortical insufficiency with cosyntropin (synthetic ACTH), *Arch Intern Med* 128:761–763, 1971.

Speiser PW, Azziz R, Baskin LS, et al: Congenital adrenal hyperplasia due to steroid 21-hydroxylase deficiency: an Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 95:4133–4160, 2010.

Speiser PW, Dupont B, Rubinstein P, et al: High frequency of nonclassical steroid 21-hydroxylase deficiency, *Am J Hum Genet* 37:650–667, 1985.

Speiser PW, White P: Congenital adrenal hyperplasia, *N Engl J Med* 349:776–788, 2003.

Spencer CA: Clinical evaluation of free T_4 techniques, *J Endocrinol Invest* 9:57–66, 1986.

Spencer CA, LoPresti JS, Fatema S, et al: Detection of residual and recurrent differentiated thyroid carcinoma by serum thyroglobulin measurement, *Thyroid* 9:435–441, 1999.

Spencer CA, Nicoloff JT: Serum TSH measurement: a 1990 status report, *Thyroid Today* 13:1–12, 1990.

Spencer CA, Wang CC: Thyroglobulin measurement: techniques, clinical benefits, and pitfalls, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 24:841–863, 1995.

Spencer CA, Takeuchi M, Kazarosyan M: Current status and performance goals for serum thyroglobulin (TSH) assays, *Clin Chem* 42:140–145, 1996.

Streeten DHP, Tomycz N, Anderson GH: Reliability of screening methods for the diagnosis of primary aldosteronism, *Am J Med* 67:403, 1979.

Suliman AM, Smith TP, Gibney J, et al: Frequent misdiagnosis and mismanagement of hyperprolactinemia in patients before the introduction of macroprolactin screening: application of a new strict laboratory definition of macroprolactinemia, *Clin Chem* 49:1504–1509, 2003.

Surks MI, Chopra IJ, Maraish CN, et al: American Thyroid Association guidelines for use of laboratory tests in thyroid disorders, *JAMA* 263:1529–1532, 1990.

Surks MI, Ortiz E, Daniels GH, et al: Subclinical thyroid disease: scientific review and guidelines for diagnosis and management, *JAMA* 291:228–238, 2004.

Surks MI, Sievert R: Drugs and thyroid function, *N Engl J Med* 333:1688–1694, 1995.

Swearingen B, Barker FG II, Katznelson L, et al: Long-term mortality after transsphenoidal surgery and adjunctive therapy for acromegaly, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:3419–3426, 1998.

Talbot JA, Lambert A, Anobile CJ, et al: The nature of human chorionic gonadotrophin glycoforms in gestational thyrotoxicosis, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 55:33–39, 2001.

Taylor HC, Mayes D, Anton AH: Clonidine suppression test for pheochromocytoma: examples of misleading results, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 63:238–242, 1986.

Taylor RL, Singh RJ: Validation of liquid chromatography–tandem mass spectrometry method for analysis of urinary conjugated metanephrine and normetanephrine for screening of pheochromocytoma, *Clin Chem* 48:533–539, 2002.

Thalen BE, Kjellman BF, Ljunggren JG, et al: Release of corticotropin after administration of corticotropin releasing hormone in depressed patients in relation to the dexamethasone suppression test, *Acta Psychiatr Scand* 87:133, 1993.

Therrell BL: Newborn screening for congenital adrenal hyperplasia, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 21:245–291, 2001.

Toldy E, Locsei Z, Szabolcs I, et al: Macroprolactinemia: the consequences of a laboratory pitfall, *Endocrine* 22:267–273, 2003.

http://basicbook.net

Trainer P: Editorial: acromegaly—consensus, what consensus? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:3534–3536, 2002.
Tuchman M, Morris C, Ramnaraine ML, et al: Value of random urinary homovanillic acid levels in the diagnosis and management of patients with neuroblastoma: comparison of 24-hour urine collections, *Pediatrics* 75:324–328, 1985.
Tullis MJ, Caps MT, Zierler RE: Blood pressure, antihypertensive medication, and atherosclerotic renal artery stenosis, *Am J Kidney Dis* 33:675–681, 1999.
Utiger R: Decreased extrathyroidal triiodothyronine production and nonthyroidal illness: benefits or harm? *Am J Med* 69:807–810, 1980.
Van Cauter E: Slow wave sleep and release of growth hormone, *JAMA* 284:2717–2718, 2000.
Van Cauter E, Plat L, Copinschi G: Interrelations between sleep and the somatotropic axis, *Sleep* 21:553–566, 1998.
Van den Berghe G, De Zegher F, Bouillon R: Acute and prolonged critical illness as different neuroendocrine paradigms, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:1827–1834, 1998.
Van den Berghe G: Novel insights into the neuroendocrinology of critical illness, *Eur J Endocrinol* 143:1–3, 2000.
Van Heyningen V: One gene—four syndromes, *Nature* 367:319–320, 1994.
Vanderpump MPJ, Tunbridge WMG, French JM, et al: The incidence of thyroid disorders in the community: a twenty year follow up of the Whickham survey, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 43:55–68, 1995.
Vassart G, Dumont JE: Identification of polysomes synthesizing thyroglobulin, *Eur J Biochem* 32:322–330, 1973.
Vieira AEF, Mello MP, Elias LLK, et al: Molecular and biochemical screening for the diagnosis and management of medullary thyroid carcinoma in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2A, *Horm Metab Res* 34:202–206, 2002.
Vistorina WM, Rydstedt LL, Sowers JR: Clinical disorders of vasopressin. In Lavin N, editor: *Manual of endocrinology and metabolism*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2002, Lippincott, pp 68–82.
Vitale G, Ciccarelli A, Caraglia M, et al: Comparison of two provocative tests for calcitonin in medullary thyroid carcinoma: omeprazole vs pentagastrin, *Clin Chem* 48:1505–1510, 2002.
Walker SE, Allen SH, McMurray RW: Prolactin and autoimmune disease, *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 4:47–151, 1993.
Wardle CA, Fraser WD, Squire CR: Pitfalls in the use of thyrotropin concentration as a first-line thyroid-function test, *Lancet* 357:1013–1014, 2001.
Wartofsky L, Burman KD: Alterations in thyroid function in patients with systemic illness: the "euthyroid sick syndrome", *Endocr Rev* 3:164–217, 1982.
Weeke J, Dybkjaer L, Granlie K, et al: A longitudinal study of serum TSH and total and free iodothyronines during normal pregnancy, *Acta Endocrinol (Copenh)* 101:531–557, 1982.
Weinberger MH, Fineberg NS: The diagnosis of primary aldosteronism and separation of two major subtypes, *Arch Intern Med* 153:2125, 1993.
Weise M, Drinkard B, Mehlinger SL, et al: Stress dose of hydrocortisone is not beneficial in patients with classic congenital adrenal hyperplasia undergoing short-term, high-intensity exercise, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 89:3679, 2004.
Weise M, Merke DP, Pacak K, et al: Utility of plasma free metanephrines for detecting childhood pheochromocytoma, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 87:1955–1960, 2002.
Wells SA, Baylin SB, Linehan W, et al: Provocative agents and the diagnosis of medullary carcinoma of the thyroid gland, *Ann Surg* 188:139–141, 1978.
Werbel SS, Ober KP: Pheochromocytoma: update on diagnosis, localization, and management, *Med Clin North Am* 79:131–153, 1995.
White MC, Clark AJL: The cellular and molecular basis of the ectopic ACTH syndrome, *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 39:131, 1993.
White PC, Curnow KM, Pascoe L: Disorders of steroid 11-beta-hydroxylase isoenzymes, *Endocr Rev* 15:421–438, 1994a.
White PC, Tusie-Lina MT, New MI, et al: Mutations in steroid 21-hydroxylase (CYP21), *Hum Mutat* 3:373, 1994b.
Whitehouse WM Jr, Kazmers A, Zelenock GB: Chronic total renal artery occlusion: effects of treatment of secondary hypertension and renal function, *Surgery* 89:753–763, 1981.
Wilcox RB, Nelson JC, Tomei RT: Heterogeneity in affinities of serum proteins for thyroxine among patients with non-thyroidal illness as indicated by the serum free thyroxine response to serum dilution, *Eur J Endocrinol* 131:9–13, 1994.
Willie S, Aili M, Harris A, et al: Plasma and urinary levels of vasopressin in enuretic and non-enuretic children, *Scand J Urol Nephrol* 28:119–122, 1994.
Wion-Barbot N, Schuffenecker I, Niccoli P, et al: Results of the calcitonin stimulation test in normal volunteers compared with genetically unaffected members of MEN 2A and familial medullary thyroid carcinoma families, *Ann Endocrinol (Paris)* 58:302–308, 1997.
Yamada M, Radvick S, Wondisford FE, et al: Cloning and structure of human genomic DNA and hypothalamic cDNA encoding human prepro TRH, *Mol Endocrinol* 4:551–556, 1990.
Yaneva M, Mosnier-Pudar H, Dugue MA, et al: Midnight salivary cortisol for the initial diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome of various causes, *JCEM* 89:3345–3351, 2004.
Yanovski JA, Cutler GB Jr, Chrousos GP, et al: Corticotropin-releasing hormone stimulation following low-dose dexamethasone administration: a new test to distinguish Cushing's syndrome from pseudo-Cushing's states, *JAMA* 269:2232–2238, 1993.
Yazigi R, Quinero C, Sakameh WA: Prolactin disorders, *Fertil Steril* 7:215–225, 1997.
Yokoyama Y, Ueda T, Irahara M, et al: Release of oxytocin and prolactin during breast massage and suckling in puerperal women, *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 53:17–20, 1994.
Young WF Jr: Primary aldosteronism: a common and curable form of hypertension, *Cardiol Rev* 7:207–214, 1999.
Yuasa H, Ito M, Nagasaki H, et al: Glu-47, which forms a salt bridge between neurophysin II and arginine vasopressin, is deleted in patients with familial central diabetes insipidus, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 77:600–604, 1993.
Yuen KCJ, Chong LE, Koch CA: Adrenal insufficiency in pregnancy: challenging issues in diagnosis and management, *Endocrine* 44:283–292, 2013.
Yuen KCJ, Rakesh A, Cook MB, et al: Evaluation of the pituitary function with insulin tolerance (hypoglycaemia) testing: are there any differences using insulin Lispro compared to regular insulin? *Horm Res* 69:233–239, 2008.
Zerbe RL, Robertson GL: Vasopressin function in the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuresis, *Annu Rev Med* 31:315–327, 1980.
Zerbe RL, Robertson GL: A comparison of plasma vasopressin measurements with a standard indirect test in the differential diagnosis of polyuria, *N Engl J Med* 304:1539–1546, 1981.
Zerbe RL, Robertson GL: Osmotic and nonosmotic regulation of thirst and vasopressin secretion. In Maxwell MH, Kleeman CR, Narins RG, editors: *Clinical disorders of fluid and electrolyte metabolism*, ed 4, New York, 1987, McGraw-Hill, pp 61–68.
Zurakowski D, Di Canzio J, Majzoub JA: Pediatric reference intervals for serum thyroxine, triiodothyronine, thyrotropin and free thyroxine, *Clin Chem* 45:1087–1091, 1999.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 25

REPRODUCTIVE FUNCTION AND PREGNANCY

Roohi Jeelani, Martin H. Bluth

NORMAL PHYSIOLOGY, 400
Sex Steroids, 400
Regulation of Male Reproduction, 402
Regulation of Female Reproduction, 402
Pregnancy, 403

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF REPRODUCTIVE FUNCTION, 404
Male Evaluation, 404
Female Evaluation, 406
Assisted Reproductive Technology, 408

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF PREGNANCY, 408
hCG and Early Pregnancy, 408
Neural Tube Defects, 410
Down Syndrome, 411
Erythroblastosis Fetalis, 412
Gestational Diabetes, 413
Fetal Lung Maturity, 413
Preeclampsia, 413
Premature Rupture of Membranes, 414
Preterm Labor, 414
Intrapartum Assessment of Fetal Status, 414
Other Evaluations, 414

SELECTED REFERENCES, 415

KEY POINTS

- Reproductive function and pregnancy are regulated by the complex interaction of a variety of hormones; they are synthesized and secreted by the testis (testosterone), ovary (estradiol and progesterone), pituitary (follicle-stimulating hormone [FSH] and luteinizing hormone [LH]), hypothalamus (gonadotropin-releasing hormone), and placenta (human chorionic gonadotropin [hCG], estrogens, and progesterone).
- Laboratory evaluation of reproductive function in the male typically begins with semen analysis. If the results are normal, further evaluation may be unnecessary. If the results are abnormal, then serum hormone measurements, particularly of testosterone, FSH, and LH, are important.
- Reproductive dysfunction in the female is often indicated by amenorrhea and/or infertility. Laboratory evaluation, as in the male, involves serum hormone measurements, particularly of hCG, prolactin, thyroid-stimulating hormone, free thyroxine, FSH, LH, and androgens.
- Infertility can be treated by several assisted reproductive technologies. These involve a variety of clinical manipulations, all of which are directed at externally controlling as much of the reproductive process as possible to achieve pregnancy and bring it to term. Laboratory monitoring of serum hormone levels (estradiol, progesterone, and hCG) plays an important role in these protocols.
- Early pregnancy is monitored by measuring serum hCG concentrations and determining that the pattern of dramatic increase during the first trimester is as expected.
- The risk for the most common birth defects, neural tube defects, and chromosomal aneuploidy is determined during the first- and second-trimester screenings.
- Fetal hemolytic disease is monitored by spectrophotometric estimation of the level of bilirubin in amniotic fluid or Doppler measurements of peak systolic velocity in the fetal middle cerebral artery.
- The status of fetal lung maturation is estimated from the evaluation of pulmonary surfactant in amniotic fluid. This can be accomplished by several methods, including determination of (1) the lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio and phosphatidyl glycerol by chromatography, or (2) microviscosity by fluorescence polarization.
- Toxemia of pregnancy, or preeclampsia, is characterized by hypertension and proteinuria, and consequently can be monitored by urine protein measurements.
- Risk for preterm delivery and the need for medical intervention can be evaluated by checking levels of fetal fibronectin in the cervical secretions.

NORMAL PHYSIOLOGY

Normal reproductive function is mediated by a variety of hormones synthesized and secreted by the gonads (testes and ovaries), adrenals, pituitary, hypothalamus, and placenta. In addition, peripheral nonglandular tissues can contribute to hormone synthesis. Paracrine and autocrine mediators are also involved, but in almost all cases their exact roles are not well understood.

SEX STEROIDS

The testes and ovaries synthesize sex steroids (androgens and estrogens) from cholesterol via the same initial pathway used in the adrenal glands to synthesize mineralocorticoids, glucocorticoids, and androgens (Fig. 25-1). The specific hormone secreted by an endocrine gland depends on the presence and relative activities of various enzymes in the steroid pathway. Whereas the adrenal synthesizes androgens like dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), DHEA-sulfate (DHEAS), and androstenedione, the testis metabolizes these steroids primarily to testosterone. The ovary converts testosterone to estradiol, and androstenedione to estrone. In addition, testosterone gets converted to estradiol in peripheral tissues such as adipose cells by the enzyme aromatase. Peripheral tissues (including those targeted by androgens) reduce testosterone to dihydrotestosterone (DHT). Because DHT is two to three times more potent than testosterone, this process yields an enhanced or activated androgenic effect. Peripheral tissues, such as liver, also hydroxylate estradiol to estriol, a metabolite with only one-hundredth the estrogenic potency of its precursor. Thus this conversion is an inactivation process. During pregnancy, estriol is synthesized via a different pathway, and it may play a different role than estradiol (see later). Peripheral tissues also convert adrenal androgens to testosterone and androgens to estrone and estradiol, the latter occurring in adipose tissue. Estrone is about one-tenth as potent as estradiol, which likely further modulates estradiol potency. Note that although progesterone serves as an intermediate in the synthesis of all other steroid hormones, it also functions as a sex steroid in its own right in females.

As with any hormone, sex steroids act at tissue sites distant from their sites of synthesis and secretion. Once in the blood, most of the hydrophobic sex steroids become reversibly and noncovalently bound to plasma proteins. This interaction includes low-affinity, nonspecific binding to hydrophobic sites on albumin and high-affinity binding to specific transport proteins that are synthesized by the liver. Sex hormone–binding globulin (SHBG) transports androgens and estrogens, and corticosteroid-binding globulin (CBG) transports progesterone (as well as glucocorticoids). In blood, only about 1% to 2% of the sex steroids are free (unbound). About half of the remainder are bound to SHBG or CBG, and about half are bound to albumin. Only the free fraction is biologically active, because only the free hormone can exit the vascular system (by diffusion) and interact with target cells.

http://basicbook.net

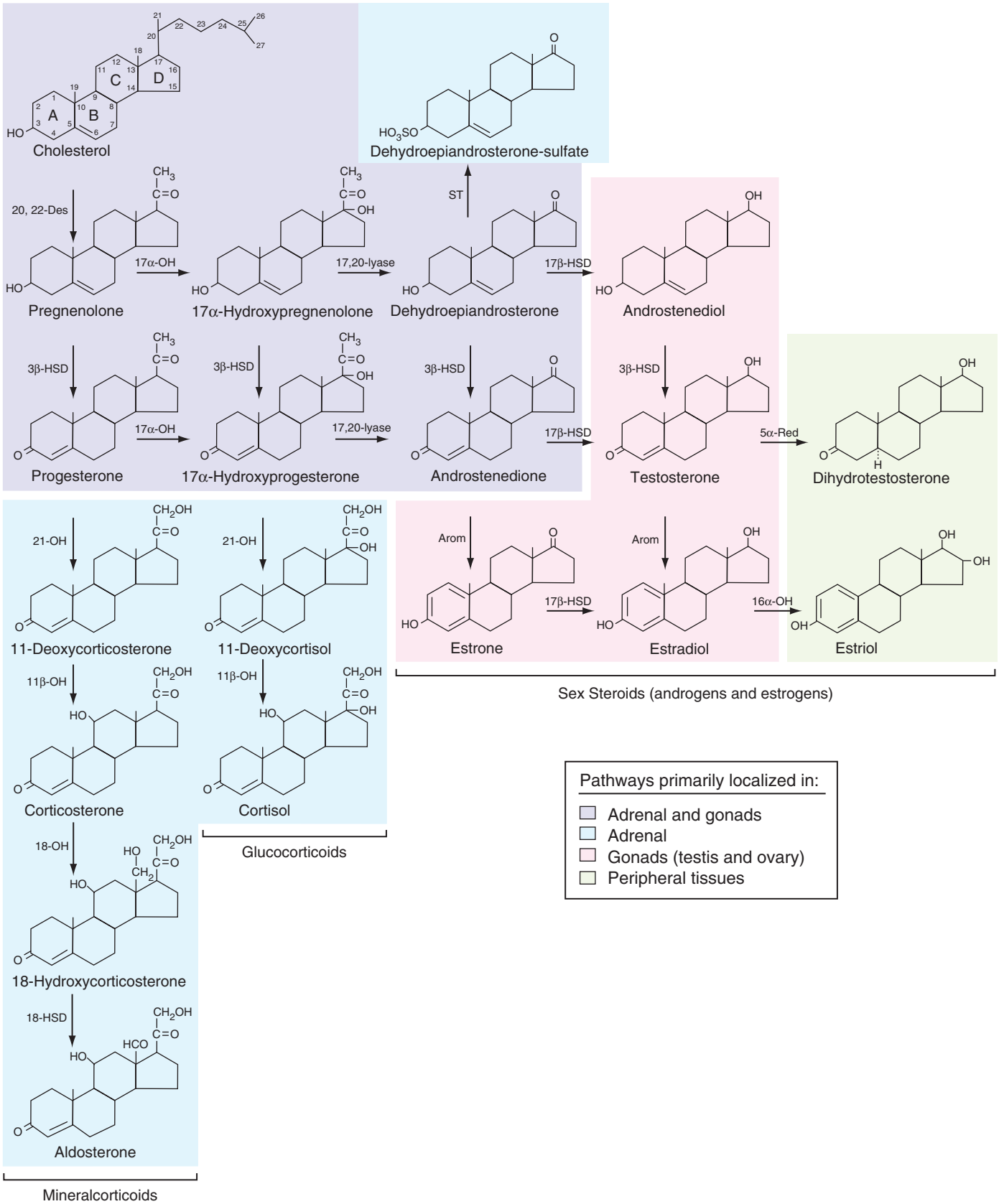


Figure 25-1 **Steroid hormone synthesis.** *Arom*, Aromatase; *16α-OH*, 16α-hydroxylase; *17-α-OH*, 17α-hydroxylase; *5α-Red*, 5α-reductase; *3β-HSD*, 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase; *17β-HSD*, 17β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase; *11-β-OH*, 11-β-hydroxylase; *20,22-Des*, 20,22 desmolase; *18-HSD*, 18-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase; *18-OH*, 18-hydroxylase; *21-OH*, 21-hydroxylase; *ST*, sulfotransferase.

http://basicbook.net

Each steroid binds with high affinity to specific receptor proteins that activate or inactivate genes in the target cell. Thus the same hormone can elicit a different response in each type of target cell. The potency of a steroid's hormonal effect (e.g., androgenic effect) is primarily a function of its affinity for the specific receptor protein and the affinity of that complex for the chromatin acceptor sites. Thus DHT is a more potent androgen than testosterone. DHEA and androstenedione bind only weakly, if at all, to the androgen receptor; hence their androgenic effect is low, and most, if not all of their androgenic activity derives from their peripheral conversion to testosterone.

REGULATION OF MALE REPRODUCTION

Figure 25-2 summarizes the regulation of reproduction in the human male. Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) is a decapeptide that is synthesized and secreted by neuroendocrine cells of the hypothalamus, primarily in the arcuate nucleus. GnRH binds to specific cell membrane receptors on gonadotrophs in the anterior pituitary, resulting in the synthesis and secretion of two protein hormones—FSH and LH—both named for their effects in females. Both FSH and LH are similar to thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), in that all three consist of two subunits and all of them share the same α subunit. Each has a different β-subunit, however, which thus confers their functional specificity.

The seminiferous tubules of the testis contain cells in various stages of spermatogenesis (spermatogonia, spermatocytes, spermatids), along with Sertoli cells and Leydig cells. FSH induces Sertoli cells to synthesize and secrete androgen-binding protein into the lumen of the seminiferous tubule, and this maintains the high testosterone concentration required for normal spermatogenesis. LH induces Leydig cells to synthesize testosterone; some enters the general circulation and is transported to other target tissues, such as skeletal muscle, where it has an anabolic effect. Some is also transported to the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary, where the testosterone has a negative-feedback effect—that is, it decreases and helps control the synthesis and secretion of GnRH, FSH, and LH, and this in turn decreases testosterone synthesis by Leydig cells. Sertoli cells also synthesize and secrete another protein hormone—inhibin—that is a dimeric protein composed of an alpha and a beta subunit. It interacts with gonadotrophs in the anterior pituitary, where it also has a negative feedback effect by decreasing the synthesis and secretion of FSH, but not LH. Androgens also stimulate inhibin production, which locally helps regulate spermatogenesis. However, the exact role of inhibin in the regulatory process is not understood.

REGULATION OF FEMALE REPRODUCTION

Figure 25-3 summarizes the regulation of reproduction in the human female. As in the male, GnRH from the hypothalamus increases the synthesis and secretion of FSH and LH from the anterior pituitary. Unlike in the male, however, the regulatory process in the female is cyclic and is referred to as the menstrual cycle. Pituitary, ovarian, and uterine changes that occur during the menstrual cycle are summarized in Figure 25-4. As illustrated, the cycle begins with menses, or shedding of uterine endometrium, which is considered day one. During this period in the ovary, a cohort of follicles is recruited to begin further growth and development. From this cohort, one to two (usually) is selected to be the dominant follicle and to continue to grow and develop. The other recruited follicles undergo regression, or atresia. These processes occur during the follicular phase of the ovarian cycle, primarily as a result of the action of FSH. As the follicle grows, increasing amounts of estradiol are synthesized and secreted from them. Estradiol restores the endometrium via cell proliferation and growth—hence the proliferative phase of the uterine endometrial cycle. Estradiol also has a negative-feedback effect on the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary, causing a decline in FSH levels during the latter part of the follicular phase.

Near the end of the follicular phase, when estradiol levels are at their highest, its feedback effect on the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary switches to positive. The exact mechanism for this change to positive feedback is not understood. Its effect, however, is dramatic. It causes a surge in the secretion of GnRH, FSH, and particularly LH, which culminates in ovulation. The LH surge causes final oocyte maturation with the completion of meiosis. The oocyte enters the oviduct. Owing to disruption of the follicle, estradiol synthesis and secretion drop dramatically. The

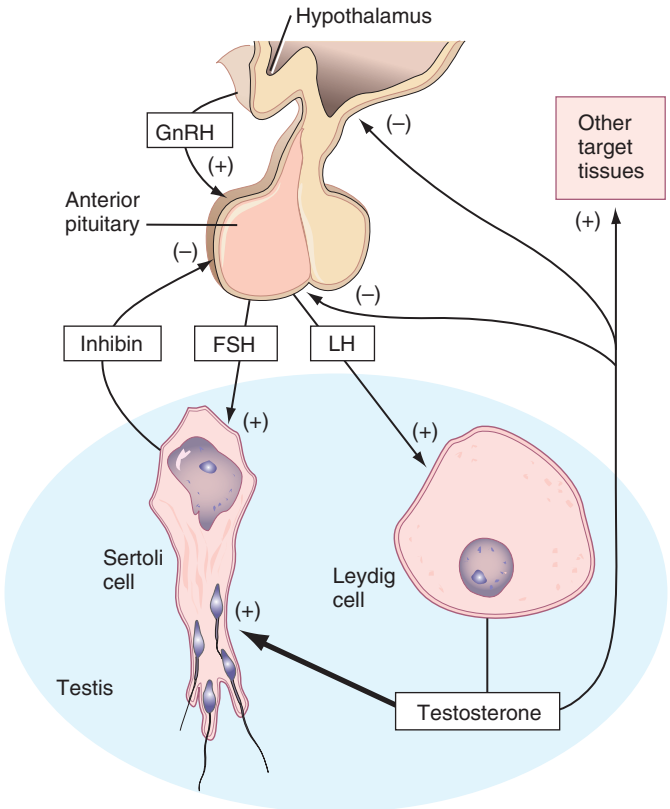


Figure 25-2 **Regulation of reproduction in the male.** *FSH*, Follicle-stimulating hormone; *GnRH*, gonadotropin-releasing hormone; *LH*, luteinizing hormone.

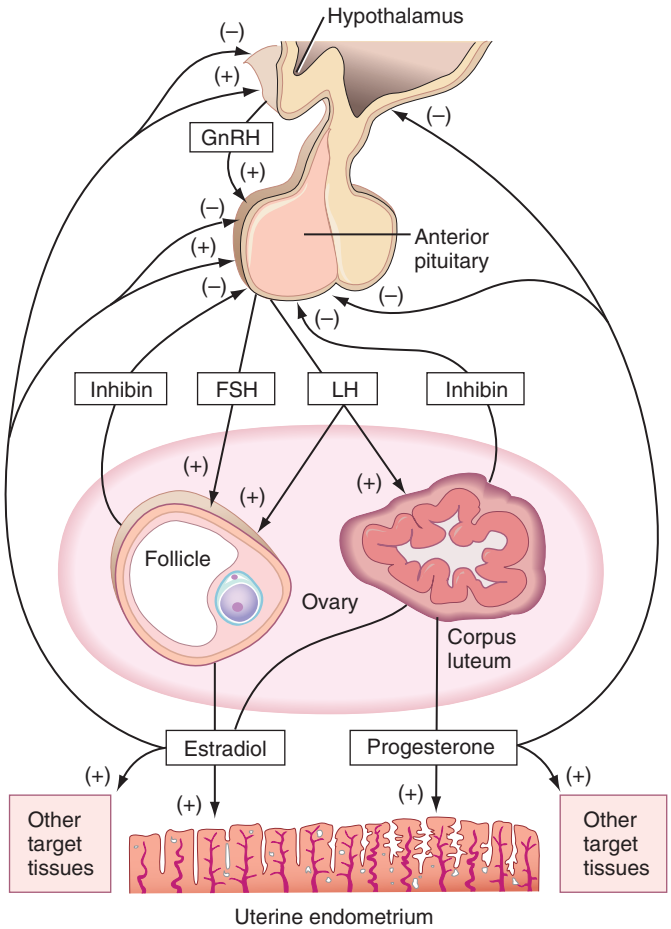


Figure 25-3 **Regulation of reproduction in the female.** *FSH*, Follicle-stimulating hormone; *GnRH*, gonadotropin-releasing hormone; *LH*, luteinizing hormone.

http://basicbook.net

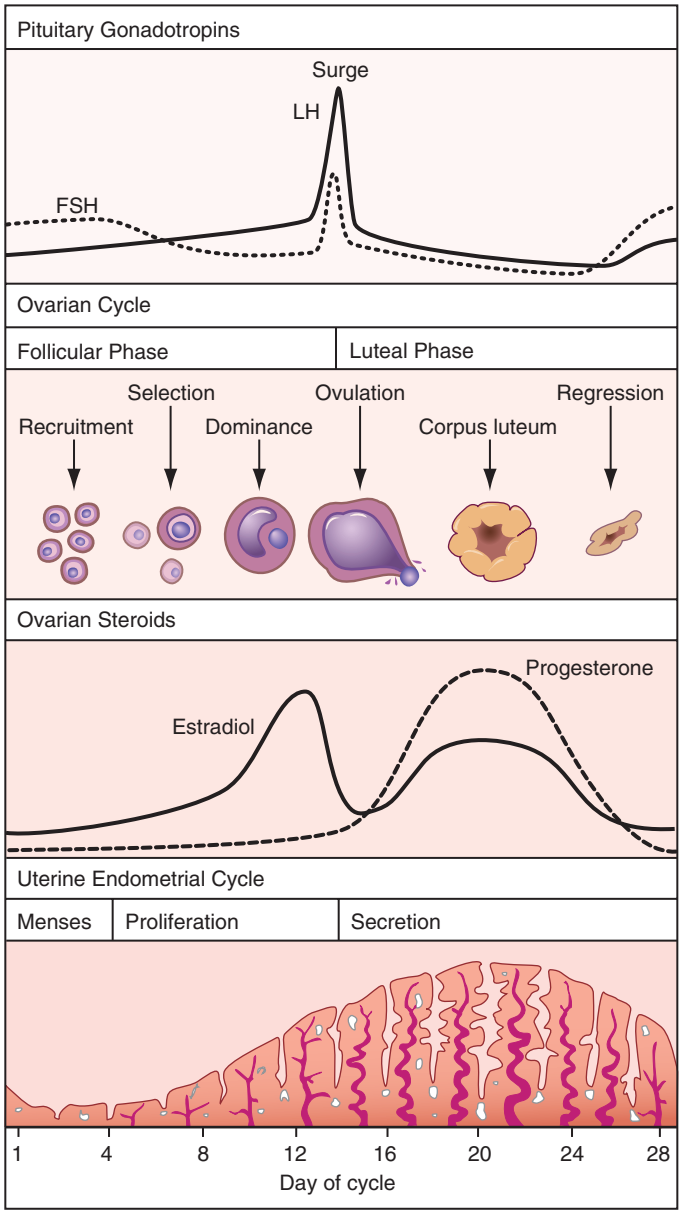


Figure 25-4 **Pituitary, ovarian, and uterine changes during the human menstrual cycle.** *FSH,* Follicle-stimulating hormone; *LH,* luteinizing hormone.

disrupted follicle begins to differentiate into the corpus luteum; thus begins the luteal phase of the ovarian cycle. The corpus luteum synthesizes estradiol and progesterone as a result of the action of LH. The combination of the two steroids acts on the uterine endometrium to cause development of numerous exocrine glands, producing the secretory phase of the uterine endometrial cycle. This phase prepares the endometrium for implantation, should fertilization and early development occur. LH levels decline gradually during the luteal phase, indicating restoration of negative-feedback regulation of the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary by estradiol and progesterone.

As in the male, inhibin has a selective negative-feedback effect on FSH. In the female, however, there are two different forms. One is synthesized and secreted by the developing follicles (inhibin B), and the other is from the corpus luteum (inhibin A) (Welt et al, 1999). Inhibin B reaches a peak in the early- to midfollicular phase and a second peak at ovulation. Inhibin A reaches its peak in the midluteal phase. Again, the exact regulatory roles they play are not understood.

In an infertile cycle, the corpus luteum begins to regress near the end of the luteal phase. This then results in a decrease in estradiol and progesterone synthesis and secretion. Because these steroids are required for maintenance of the secretory endometrium, it begins to deteriorate and is ultimately shed during menstruation. With the drop in estradiol and progesterone, their negative-feedback effects decrease, and FSH and LH rise to begin another cycle.

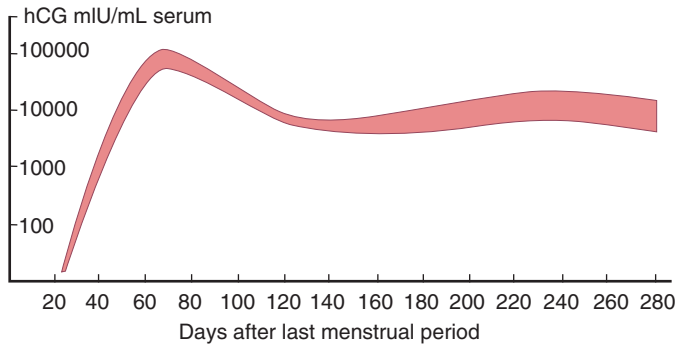


Figure 25-5 **Serum hCG levels during normal pregnancy.** *hCG,* Human chorionic gonadotropin. (From Lau HL: Testing for pregnancy. In *Practice of medicine,* vol II. Hagerstown, Md., 1975, Harper & Row, Chapter 29; and Braunstein GD, Rasor J, Adler D, Danzer H, Wade ME. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 126:678, 1976.)

PREGNANCY

If the oocyte is fertilized during its transit down the oviduct, it develops into a multicellular blastocyst by the time it reaches the uterus. Around the time of implantation (about 7 to 9 days after ovulation), and before the corpus luteum begins to regress, increasing amounts of an LH-like hormone, human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), are found in maternal blood. hCG is synthesized and secreted by the syncytiotrophoblast cells of the developing placenta. It is a dimeric protein hormone that has the same α subunit as LH, FSH, and TSH, but a different β-subunit. The β-subunit of hCG is very similar to that of LH, but larger. Hence, hCG can interact with LH receptors on luteal cells. This interaction prevents regression of the corpus luteum and allows it to continue synthesis and secretion of estradiol and progesterone, both of which are required for appropriate maintenance of the uterine endometrium throughout pregnancy.

During the first trimester of pregnancy, hCG increases from less than 5 mIU/mL serum to possibly more than 100,000 mIU/mL (Fig. 25-5). This increase is responsible for the similarly dramatic increases in the levels of estradiol and progesterone. By the end of the first trimester, however, hCG levels begin to plauteau at first and then decline significantly. Estradiol and progesterone continue to increase, because, by this time, the placenta has assumed most steroid synthesis, including significant amounts of estrone and estriol. Unlike hCG, these steroid levels increase as placental mass grows. Steroid intermediates from the fetal adrenal gland and the fetal liver also contribute to this process. For example, estriol is synthesized not by hydroxylation of estradiol (see Fig. 25-1) but rather by conversion from fetal 16-hydroxy-DHEAS; this is why maternal estriol measurements were historically used to assess fetal well-being in late pregnancy (Carr & Rehman, 2004). The estrogenic potency of estriol is only about one-hundredth that of estradiol and only one-tenth that of estrone. However, estriol promotes uteroplacental blood flow as potently as other estrogens, and this may be the reason for its dramatic increase during the last two trimesters (Resnik et al, 1974).

Another hormone synthesized in large quantities by the placenta during the last two trimesters is human placental lactogen (HPL). It is structurally similar to both prolactin and growth hormone and has both lactogenic and growth-promoting activities, although both are relatively weak. In addition, HPL is an insulin antagonist and thus may play a role in maternal glucose utilization. However, its exact role is unclear because apparently normal pregnancies have been described in which HPL is not detectable in maternal blood or placenta (Sideri et al, 1983). Unlike hCG, the increase in HPL also parallels the steady increase in placental mass (Carr & Rehman, 2004).

The placenta also synthesizes inhibin. Whereas gonadal (testicular and ovarian) inhibin functions as an endocrine inhibitor of pituitary FSH secretion, placental inhibin may function as a paracrine or autocrine inhibitor of placental hCG secretion (Mesiano & Jaffe, 2013). Its exact regulatory role, however, has not been elucidated. It is also used as a marker in fetal testing (described later).

Parturition is the process by which the fetus is expelled from the internal environment of the maternal uterus to the external environment. This occurs as a result of a change in the activity of the uterine myometrium (smooth muscle), from irregular, long-lasting, low-frequency contractions to regular, high-intensity, high-frequency contractions. The initiation of this process in humans is not well understood and seems to differ from that in other mammals. For example, progesterone inhibits uterine

http://basicbook.net

contractions during gestation, and in most other mammals, the onset of parturition is preceded by a significant decrease in maternal plasma progesterone; in humans, however, this does not occur. A **parturition cascade** has been postulated for humans that involves multiple and redundant endocrine, paracrine, and autocrine mediators. These mediators are thought to include fetal cortisol and DHEAS; placental estriol, oxytocin, prostaglandins, and corticotropin-releasing hormone; and maternal oxytocin. The effects of these mediators may also be modulated by changes in their receptor levels (Norwitz, 2013).

Parturition is followed by lactation. Initial development of the mammary gland occurs at puberty, when estradiol causes growth and branching of the ducts and progesterone causes formation of the alveoli. Similarly, during pregnancy, the high concentrations of estrogens and progesterone cause further branching of the ducts and growth of the alveoli. The secretory capability of the alveolar epithelial cells is induced by prolactin, which increases during pregnancy, and by HPL. At parturition, the decrease in estrogen and progesterone eliminates their inhibitory effects on milk secretion, which still requires prolactin. Milk ejection, however, requires oxytocin, acting as part of a neuroendocrine reflex. This reflex is initiated by the suckling stimulus, which generates nerve impulses that travel from the nipple to the hypothalamus. There they cause secretion of oxytocin from neuroendocrine cells in the posterior pituitary. The oxytocin travels to the mammary gland, where it stimulates the contraction of smooth muscle cells surrounding the alveoli, causing milk ejection. Prolactin also participates in this neuroendocrine reflex, in that nerve impulses reaching the hypothalamus also inhibit the synthesis and secretion of dopamine, which functions as a prolactin release-inhibiting hormone. This then promotes the release of prolactin from the anterior pituitary, which then travels to the mammary gland, where it stimulates milk secretion, to replace that lost by ejection. As long as lactation continues, plasma prolactin concentrations remain elevated. This postpartum hyperprolactinemia causes postpartum amenorrhea due to interference with normal regulation by GnRH of FSH and LH secretion. Although this hypogonadotropic state will prevent pregnancy, it is not considered a reliable means of contraception, particularly in modern societies where breastfeeding is variable and not consistent.

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF REPRODUCTIVE FUNCTION

Table 25-1 describes laboratory findings in various male and female reproductive disease states typically categorized according to (1) hormone deficiency or excess and (2) primary (gonad) or secondary (pituitary) dysfunction. In primary disease states, gonadal steroid levels are inversely related to pituitary gonadotropin levels, whereas in secondary disease states, they are directly related (e.g., both high or both low), as discussed in the endocrine section of Chapter 8 and in Chapter 24. These changes occur because gonadal steroids provide negative feedback to gonadotropins. For example, in primary ovarian failure or menopause, the decrease in estradiol reduces its negative-feedback effect on the hypothalamic-pituitary axis, resulting in increases in FSH and LH.

MALE EVALUATION

The evaluation of reproductive dysfunction in the male usually begins with semen analysis, because it is a cost-effective and relatively simple procedure. In addition, if the results are normal, further evaluation is often unnecessary. If semen analysis is abnormal, then hormone analyses are performed, which include FSH, LH, and testosterone levels.

Semen Analysis

In addition to its use in the evaluation of reproductive dysfunction, particularly infertility, semen analysis is used to select donors for therapeutic insemination and to monitor the success of surgical procedures, such as varicocelectomy and vasectomy. Semen analysis consists of microscopic and macroscopic components, and the latter include measuring physical (e.g., volume) and chemical (e.g., pH) properties. Useful guides and references for the procedure are available (Gilbert et al, 1992; Mortimer, 1994; Tomlinson et al, 1999; World Health Organization, 1999; Andrade-Rocha, 2003; Rylander et al, 2009).

Sample Collection

The patient should be instructed to collect semen after 2 to 5 days of sexual abstinence to ensure the sperm count will be at its highest and improve the reliability of the test. Longer periods of abstinence usually result in a higher semen volume but reduced sperm motility. In such a case, a second semen specimen may be collected 2 hours after the first sample is collected. The bladder should be evacuated before ejaculation occurs. For semen collection, the laboratory should provide a preweighed sterile plastic (polypropylene) container with a screw top. The semen specimen should be delivered to the laboratory within 1 hour of collection and kept warm during transportation. A postejaculate urine sample may be collected at this time if retrograde ejaculation is suspected. Two specimens collected within 2- to 3-week intervals should be used for evaluation, and if they are markedly different, additional specimens should be collected. Ideally, semen specimens should be collected in the privacy of a room adjacent to the laboratory, because some samples require sperm to be separated from seminal plasma as soon as possible. Assisted reproductive technologies (ARTs; see later), such as in vitro fertilization (IVF), require that motile sperm be isolated from seminal plasma within 1 hour of ejaculation to protect sperm from the inhibitory effects of seminal plasma on fertilization. Semen should be obtained by masturbation, and if circumstances

TABLE 25-1
Changes in Reproductive Hormone Levels in Different Disease States

DISEASE STATE		HORMONE LEVEL			
Classification	**Example**	**FSH**	**LH**	**Testosterone**	**Estradiol**
Male					
Primary deficiency	Klinefelter's syndrome	High	High	Low	–
Secondary deficiency	Panhypopituitarism	Low	Low	Low	–
Primary excess	Testicular tumor	Low	Low	High	–
Secondary excess	Precocious puberty	High	High	High	–
Other	Seminiferous tubule failure	High	Normal	Normal	–
Other	Partial androgen insensitivity	Normal	High	High	–
Female					
Primary deficiency	Menopause	High	High	–	Low
Secondary deficiency	Sheehan's syndrome	Low	Low	–	Low
Primary excess	Feminizing ovarian tumor	Low	Low	–	High
Secondary excess	Gonadotropin-producing tumor (rare)	High	High	–	High
Other	Polycystic ovarian syndrome	Normal	High	High	–
Other	Masculinizing ovarian tumor	Low	Low	High	–

From Nickel KL: The gonads. In Kaplan LA, Pesce AJ, editors: *Clinical chemistry—Theory, analysis, and correlation*, 3rd ed. St Louis, 1996, Mosby, pp 892–911, with permission.
FSH, Follicle-stimulating hormone; *LH*, luteinizing hormone.

http://basicbook.net

preclude such collection, special Silastic condoms should be made available for semen collection with intercourse. Incomplete semen specimens should not be analyzed because they can give inaccurate values.

Examination

Macroscopic examination should be performed after liquefaction, which usually occurs in less than 20 minutes at room temperature. Failure to liquefy may indicate inadequate prostate secretion. Semen should be thoroughly mixed before examination, and its viscosity recorded. The volume of ejaculate can be measured by weighing the collection cup before and after specimen collection. The appearance of a yellow hue in a semen specimen is associated with pyospermia, and a rust color is due to small bleedings in the seminal vesicle. The pH ranges from 7.2 to 7.8, but it may be 8.0 or higher with acute infection in the prostate, seminal vesicle, or epididymis. The pH will be 7.0 or lower if there is contamination with urine or an obstruction in the ejaculatory ducts, or if the specimen consists of mainly prostatic fluid.

Microscopic examination should be performed to obtain estimates of sperm concentration, motility, and agglutination. Other cellular elements such as polygonal cells of the urethral tract and round cells such as spermatogenic cells and leukocytes can also be observed when sperm are counted in a hemocytometer. Because sperm motility and velocity are temperature dependent, these parameters must be assessed on a microscope with a warm stage. Typically, 8 µL of semen (of normal viscosity) placed under a 22 × 22–mm glass coverslip will yield a wet preparation that is 16.5 µm deep. Alternatively, 4 µL of sample added to disposable slides with two wells (used with thick glass coverslips) produces a 20-µm-deep preparation. A hemocytometer or microchamber may be used for the sperm count. At least four different fields in each of the two specimen aliquots should be counted, and the mean of the eight separate readings recorded. Total sperm count is then calculated by multiplying the dilution factor (normal concentration range, 15-50 million/mL) by its volume (normal range, 2-5 mL).

Progressive motility (normal range 32% or above) is expressed as the percentage of sperm that move. In addition, forward movement is graded. Sperm that move rapidly in a straight line with little yaw and lateral movement are grade 4, or if they move more slowly, grade 3. Grade 2 sperm move even more slowly and with substantial yaw. Grade 1 sperm have no forward progression. Zero progression denotes absence of any motility. If motility is less than 50%, a viability stain of eosin Y with nigrosin as a counterstain is done. In bright-field microscopy, dead sperm will stain red, whereas live sperm will exclude the dye and appear unstained. In samples with no visible sperm, such as postvasectomy semen, the entire sample should be centrifuged and the pellet examined for intact or damaged sperm fragments. The analysis should be repeated in 4 to 6 months.

Agglutination occurs when motile sperm stick to one another in an orientation that is reproducible within a given specimen, such as head to head, tail to tail, midpiece to midpiece, or mixed ways, depending on the specificity of sperm antibodies. Agglutination suggests an immunologic cause of infertility, and a description of the type of agglutination should be recorded. This can usually be distinguished from clumping due to bacterial infection or tissue debris, which typically involves nonspecific orientation of the sperm.

Round cells should be differentiated into two classes: immature germ cells with a single or double highly condensed nucleus with a relatively large area of cytoplasm, and polymorphonuclear leukocytes, which are smaller than the germ cells and have a lower nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio. Peroxidase staining specifically identifies the polymorphonuclear leukocytes in the presence of lymphocytes and other cells that normally occur in semen. Bacterial contamination should be noted, as should the presence or absence of epithelial cells. If no sperm are seen in association with a low semen volume, a fructose test should be performed to confirm the presence of fluid from the seminal vesicle, and the same test should be performed on postejaculate urine to rule out retrograde ejaculation. However, the significance of a fructose test result has declined over the years because of the availability of more direct diagnostic tools such as transrectal ultrasonography.

Sperm morphology can predict fertility (Ombelet et al, 1997). In 2010, the World Health Organization (WHO) standardized the new normal values based on data from men with proven fertility. These men were defined as men who were known to help their partners conceive in the previous 12 months. Typically, more than 4% of the sperm in a semen specimen should exhibit normal morphology. Kruger and colleagues (1988) developed strict criteria for normal sperm morphology. Morphologically abnormal sperm usually have multiple defects, and the average number of defects per sperm, designated as the teratozoospermic index, is a significant predictor of sperm function both in vivo and in vitro. A strict morphology score of greater than 4% of normal indicates excellent fertilizing capacity. Scores between 0% and 3% predict probable inability to fertilize. Wide variability in the size of the acrosomal cap is the most obvious characteristic of abnormal sperm. An acrosomal cap less than one-third of the head surface is considered abnormal, as are retention of a cytoplasmic droplet greater than one-half of the head size and a tail less than 45 µm long. Of particular note is the direct relationship between acrosome size and the frequency of fertilization or pregnancy.

Immunologic Tests

Sperm antibody binding to head or tail antigens is considered specific for immunologic infertility. The antibodies are usually of the immunoglobulin (Ig)A or IgG class and, rarely, the IgM class; IgA antibodies are the most clinically significant. Current methods detect sperm-bound antibodies by direct or indirect mixed agglutination reaction (MAR) tests for IgG and IgA, or by immunobead assay, which detects all classes but with varying sensitivity. Both tests require motile sperm. The direct MAR test can be performed on fresh semen, and the result can be read within a few minutes with a light microscope.

Semen is mixed with latex particles coated with nonspecific human IgG, and then monospecific antisera to human IgG is added. The anti-IgG bridges the sperm-bound IgG, if present, and the particle-bound IgG to form mixed agglutinates. In the absence of sperm-bound IgG, the anti-IgG agglutinates only the latex particles. Under light microscopy, localized binding of the particles identifies the antibody as specific to head, tail, or any other region of the sperm structure. An indirect test can also be done with this reagent to detect the presence of sperm antibody in semen, cervical mucus, or serum.

The immunobead assay can detect all three immunoglobulin classes when beads are coated with monospecific antisera to each class. Therefore, sperm are washed to remove all free immunoglobulin before the beads are added. An indirect assay can also be designed with this reagent. The test is best read under phase microscopy. Increased risk of men developing sperm antibody is associated with vasectomy, repeat prostate gland infections, obstruction of the ducts, cryptorchidism, varicocele, testicular biopsy, trauma, torsion, cancer, and genetic predisposition (Gilbert et al, 1992; Chamley & Clarke, 2007). In women, sperm antibody is usually associated with intense mucosal inflammation of the genital tract, but all causes are not fully understood.

Genital tract infections (see Part 7) may have significant adverse effects on male and female fertility (Pellati et al, 2008). For example, *Escherichia coli* can cause sperm agglutination and immobilization, and adherence of *E. coli* to sperm is mediated by mannose and mannose-binding cell surface structures present on both cell types (Sarkar et al, 1974; Wolff et al, 1993). Special precautions should be taken when collecting a semen specimen for detection of bacteria or yeast to eliminate the possibility of external sources of contamination. Seminal plasma cultures may help diagnose male accessory gland infection, particularly of the prostate. If the concentration of bacteria exceeds 1000 colony-forming units per milliliter, the colonies should be identified and tested for antibiotic sensitivity.

Accessory Glands

Seminal vesicle, prostate, and epididymis function can be evaluated by analyzing unique constituents of each. Prostate secretions, for example, are acidic and contain acid phosphatase. Seminal fluid that is more alkaline than normal (pH >8.0) and that has reduced acid phosphatase suggests prostate dysfunction. Fructose is a measure of seminal vesicle secretory function. In azoospermia caused by the congenital absence of vasa deferentia, a low fructose level may indicate an associated dysgenesis of the seminal vesicles as in some patients born with cystic fibrosis. Ejaculatory duct obstruction, or agenesis of the vasa deferentia and seminal vesicles, may result in the production of semen with low volume, low pH, lack of coagulation, and absence of characteristic semen odor. Neutral α-glucosidase originates solely from the epididymis, and its measurement is of diagnostic value for distal ductal obstruction when considered with hormonal and testicular findings.

Image Analysis

Routine semen evaluation can be carried out by an automated image analysis system that uses sperm head movement to derive the magnitude of various swimming parameters. However, human sperm are extremely heterogeneous with respect to morphology, swimming characteristics, and sperm DNA content. Thus no reference is made to evaluating specimens as normal or abnormal, fertile or infertile. Hence, semen evaluation by

http://basicbook.net

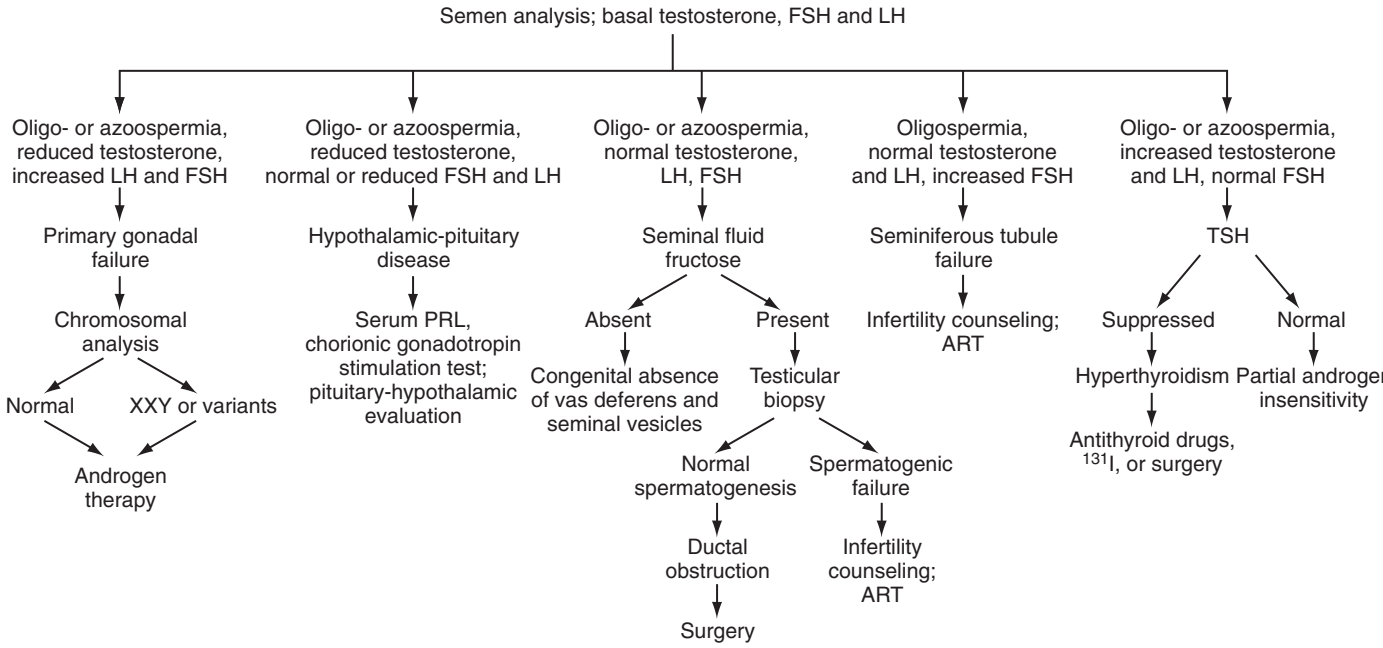


Figure 25-6 **A diagnostic algorithm for male hypogonadism.** *ART,* Assisted reproductive technology; *FSH,* follicle-stimulating hormone; *LH,* luteinizing hormone; *PRL,* prolactin; *TSH,* thyroid-stimulating hormone. (From Braunstein GD: Testes. In Greenspan FS, Gardner DG, editors: *Basic and clinical endocrinology*, ed 7, New York, 2004, Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, pp 478–510, with permission.)

manual methods performed by trained technical staff remains a standard practice of andrology laboratories.

Hormone Analysis

If multiple semen analyses demonstrate azoospermia (no sperm), oligospermia (<15 million sperm per mL), or another abnormality, then hormone analyses are performed to help identify the specific dysfunction. An example of a diagnostic algorithm is shown in Figure 25-6.

Decreased testosterone accompanied by increased LH and FSH indicates primary testicular failure. This can be an acquired or a genetic disease (Klinefelter's syndrome; see Chapter 69). Decreased testosterone accompanied by decreased or inappropriately normal LH and FSH indicates hypothalamic-pituitary disease, resulting in secondary testicular failure. When LH and FSH levels are normal, secondary disease can be confirmed with an hCG stimulation test. hCG interacts with LH receptors, and in the male, such interaction stimulates Leydig cells, if they are normal, to synthesize and secrete testosterone. Thus administration of hCG should cause an increase in serum testosterone in secondary testicular failure but not in primary testicular failure.

If hypothalamic-pituitary disease is suspected, then prolactin (PRL) should also be measured. Hyperprolactinemia interferes with the normal regulation of FSH and LH secretion by GnRH, and prolactinomas are the most common type of pituitary tumor. However, if prolactin is elevated, primary hypothyroidism must be excluded as a possible cause. In primary hypothyroidism, TSH and thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) are elevated. Although the function of TRH is to stimulate the synthesis and secretion of TSH, TRH also stimulates the synthesis and secretion of prolactin. Thus an elevated TSH suggests that primary hypothyroidism is the cause of the hyperprolactinemia, whereas a normal TSH suggests that a prolactinoma is the cause. If the latter were the case, then imaging techniques with MRI would be used to further evaluate the hypothalamic-pituitary axis.

If normal testosterone, LH, and FSH levels accompany oligospermia or azoospermia, then seminal fluid fructose should be evaluated. Its absence suggests the congenital absence of vasa deferentia and seminal vesicles. Its presence suggests ductal obstruction or spermatogenic failure, which can be distinguished using testicular biopsy. Oligospermia accompanied by normal testosterone and LH along with increased FSH suggests seminiferous tubule failure. The increase in FSH is likely due to reduced negative-feedback inhibition by decreased Sertoli cell inhibin. Increased testosterone and LH with normal/or elevated FSH suggest partial or complete androgen insensitivity. Testosterone provides negative feedback on GnRH secretion at the level of the hypothalamus through androgen receptors. Genetic mutations of androgen receptors in hypothalamic neurons result in increased pituitary release of LH, resistance to testosterone, hypogonadism, and oligospermia.

In evaluation protocols such as that shown in Figure 25-6, it is becoming more common to measure not just total testosterone but also free and/or bioavailable testosterone. The latter represents the sum of free testosterone plus that bound weakly to albumin. The remaining testosterone is bound tightly to SHBG. Free or bioavailable testosterone more accurately represents the biologically active hormone in conditions where the concentration of SHBG is altered. For example, SHBG levels are increased with decreased testosterone, increased estrogen, hyperthyroidism, and liver disease, whereas they are decreased with increased testosterone, hypothyroidism, and acromegaly. Thus, if SHBG is high, total testosterone may be normal, but free or bioavailable hormone may be low. Conversely, if SHBG is low, total testosterone may be normal, but free or bioavailable hormone may be high (Ismail et al, 1986; Yeap, 2009). Methods for measuring total testosterone are readily available on automated immunoassay analyzers, but methods for measuring free and bioavailable testosterone are much more labor intensive. Consequently, free and bioavailable testosterone analyses are usually performed in a reference laboratory. The same considerations apply to testosterone measurements in females (see later).

Gynecomastia, or breast development in males, is thought to be due to a relative imbalance of androgen (decreased) and estrogen (increased) acting at the mammary gland. The decrease in androgen action can be due to a concentration deficiency and/or a receptor deficiency (insensitivity). The condition is not uncommon during the neonatal and pubertal periods. A variety of other causes have been identified, including endocrine abnormalities, tumors, systemic diseases, and many drugs. Discontinuing or changing medications can exclude drug-induced disease, and liver or kidney disease can be identified through biochemical blood screens. Measuring serum testosterone, estradiol, LH, hCG, prolactin, and TSH can reveal an endocrine abnormality or hormone-secreting tumor. Results from these tests together with imaging methods can help differentiate among the following as possible causes of gynecomastia: primary or secondary testicular failure, hyperthyroidism, androgen resistance, prolactinoma, testicular or extratesticular germ cell tumor, Leydig or Sertoli cell tumor, or adrenal tumor (Braunstein, 2004).

FEMALE EVALUATION

Evaluation of the female reproductive system can be simplified to confirmation of ovulation and normal female reproductive anatomy (Strauss & Lessey, 2013). The abnormal menstrual cycle pattern is one of the best predictors of anovulation. Amenorrhea can be defined as the absence of menstrual flow by age 16, or by age 14 if no breast development occurs

http://basicbook.net

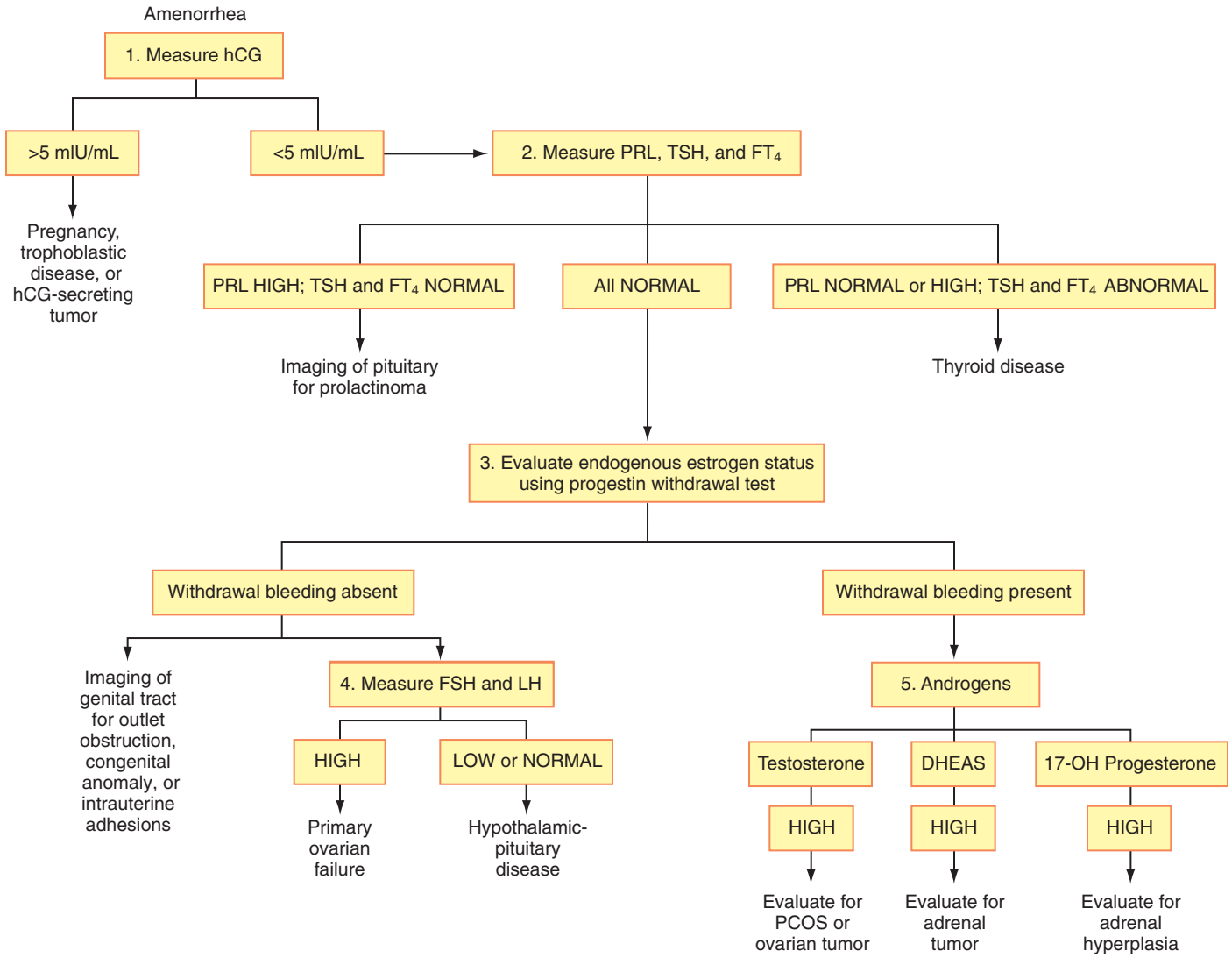


Figure 25-7 A diagnostic algorithm for amenorrhea. Sequential steps in the evaluation are numbered. *DHEAS*, Dehydroepiandrosterone-sulfate; *FSH*, follicle-stimulating hormone; *FT_4*, free thyroxine; *hCG*, human chorionic gonadotropin; *LH*, luteinizing hormone; *PCOS*, polycystic ovarian syndrome; *PRL*, prolactin; *TSH*, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

(Speroff & Fritz Marc, 2010). In patients who have not exhibited menses by age 16, this is often due to a genetic and/or anatomic abnormality. In such cases, however, an endocrine abnormality is still a possible cause, and the presence or absence of secondary sexual characteristics (e.g., breast development) is an important indicator in the evaluation. An endocrine abnormality is a more likely cause in patients who have a history of menstruation but have not experienced menses for more than 3 months. A stepwise approach to evaluating amenorrhea (Fig. 25-7) is based on measuring hCG, PRL, TSH, free thyroxine (FT_4), FSH, LH, and androgen levels and assessing estrogen status.

Step 1: CG is measured to exclude the most common cause of secondary amenorrhea: pregnancy. Although a result of greater than 5 mIU/mL is typically indicative of pregnancy, an elevated result can also be obtained with trophoblastic disease or an hCG-secreting tumor.

Step 2: PRL, TSH, and FT_4 are measured to exclude the endocrine disorders. Increased prolactin accompanied by normal TSH and FT_4 results suggests a prolactinoma, which would be further evaluated by imaging techniques. Hyperprolactinemia, however, can also be caused by primary hypothyroidism, as indicated by high TSH and low FT_4 (see Male Evaluation, earlier). The mechanism by which increased prolactin causes amenorrhea is the same as that discussed previously for postpartum amenorrhea in females and for hypogonadism in males. Low TSH and FT_4 suggest secondary hypothyroidism, in which case the patient should be evaluated for panhypopituitarism, a deficiency of all anterior pituitary hormones. Hyperthyroidism (increased FT_4) can also be associated with amenorrhea.

Step 3: If hCG, PRL, TSH, and FT_4 are all normal, then endogenous estrogen status is evaluated with the progestin withdrawal test. Progestin may be administered orally for 5 to 10 days or in one intramuscular injection (progestin dissolved in oil). The presence of withdrawal bleeding within 7 days after treatment indicates (1) that the outflow tract is intact and (2) that sufficient estrogen was present at the outset to stimulate endometrial growth. If withdrawal bleeding is absent, the genital tract should be evaluated using imaging techniques.

Step 4: Serum FSH and LH levels should be determined. Elevated FSH and LH indicate primary ovarian failure, whereas low or inappropriately normal FSH and LH indicate secondary ovarian failure. The latter is of hypothalamic-pituitary origin and can result from a variety of clinical disorders, including Sheehan's syndrome, eating disorders, weight loss, and stress. If withdrawal bleeding is present, then Step 5 is followed.

Step 5: Androgen excess should be evaluated. Elevated testosterone (>150 ng/mL) indicates a tumor or polycystic ovarian syndrome. The latter is a clinical entity often associated with enlarged ovaries and infertility, as well as amenorrhea. Increased DHEAS suggests an adrenal tumor. 17-OH progesterone is an androgen precursor (see Fig. 25-1), and an increase in serum levels can indicate congenital or adult-onset adrenal hyperplasia due to 21-hydroxylase deficiency. These abnormalities may be accompanied by hirsutism (i.e., male pattern of hair growth in females).

The tests in Step 5 can also be used to evaluate hirsutism when it is the primary clinical presentation. Because amenorrhea or oligomenorrhea

http://basicbook.net

is often associated with infertility (Lobo et al, 1997; Speroff & Fritz Marc, 2010), the latter can be evaluated with the type of diagnostic algorithm shown in Figure 25-7. Evaluation of the ovulatory function is an important step in the infertility workup. One of the methods used to confirm ovulation is monitoring the basal body temperature. A rise in progesterone after ovulation increases basal body temperature by 0.4° F to 0.8° F, but it is not as reliable or used as often. More reliable are urinary ovulation predictor kits, which measure urinary luteinizing hormone by colorimetric assay.

Testing should be started 2 to 3 days before the LH surge and should be continued daily. LH has a short half-life and is rapidly excreted in the urine. In most cases, the test will be positive for only 1 day of the menstrual cycle. This test is not as reliable in patients who have polycystic ovarian syndrome because they have a baseline elevated LH that will cause a false positive. Another method that is reliable and widely available involves measurement of midluteal phase serum progesterone levels on day 21 of the menstrual cycle. Values above 3 ng/mL indicate ovulation and production of progesterone by the corpus luteum (Besser & Thorner, 2002). Inadequate progesterone levels result in luteal phase deficiency, in which maturation of the secretory endometrium is delayed so implantation of the blastocyst does not occur. In many cases, but not all, such an out-of-phase endometrium can be demonstrated by histologic evaluation of an endometrial biopsy from the late luteal phase (Noyes et al, 1975). However, endometrial histologic dating is not a valid diagnostic tool and should not be considered in management of the infertile patient (Speroff & Fritz Marc, 2010). When the diagnosis of ovarian failure is suspected, the level of FSH in the early follicular phase (on day 3) should be determined, because, as mentioned earlier, it will be elevated. Concentrations greater than 10 mIU/mL are associated with diminished ovarian reserve, which is defined by low numbers of normal oocytes and the presence of poor-quality oocytes. Diminished ovarian reserve is associated with decreased probability of live birth with a natural or IVF cycle (Scott & Hofmann, 1995; and Speroff & Fritz Marc, 2010). Additional information can be obtained by measurement of estradiol levels on the same day of each menstrual cycle (Buyalos et al, 1998). Levels greater than 80 pg/mL are considered abnormal and indicate ovarian stimulation of steroidogenesis by elevated FSH, which is typically seen in ovarian failure.

More extensive testing of ovarian reserve includes the clomiphene citrate challenge test. Clomiphene citrate, the nonsteroidal estrogen receptor modulator, is administered on day 5 through day 9 (or days 3 to 7) of the cycle; this is followed by measurements of estradiol and FSH on day 3 and on day 10. Women with a poor cohort and aging follicles cannot generate enough estradiol or inhibin B to suppress FSH. Therefore, FSH remains high.

ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHNOLOGY

Infertility is defined as 1 year of unprotected intercourse without conception (Speroff & Fritz Marc, 2010). Initial treatments may include artificial insemination with washed and concentrated sperm and/or ovulation induction with clomiphene citrate or letrozole, nonsteroidal aromatase inhibitor. If these are unsuccessful, then one of several ARTs may be attempted. ARTs involve techniques of direct manipulation of oocytes that are performed to control as much of the reproductive process as possible to achieve pregnancy and bring it to term (Trounson & Gardner, 2000). Much of this external control requires significant monitoring through laboratory analyses.

Indications for ART include male infertility, ovarian failure, unexplained infertility, polycystic ovarian syndrome, tubal disease, and endometriosis. It is not uncommon for several causes of infertility to be present in one couple. ART can also be applied in infertile couples requiring oocyte donation. The latter involves two distinct groups of patients: females without gonadal function because of gonadal dysgenesis, premature menopause (which may occur spontaneously or after surgical castration or castration induced by chemotherapy or radiotherapy), or resistant-ovary syndrome, and women with functional ovaries who do not wish to use their own oocytes to become pregnant because of the risk of transmitting chromosomal abnormalities to the offspring (e.g., if there is a history of autosomal dominant disease or X-linked disease, or when both partners are carriers of an autosomal recessive disease) (Van Steirteghem et al, 1992; Pados et al, 1994). The most common form of ART is IVF; other forms involve gamete intrafallopian transfer, zygote intrafallopian transfer, or tubal embryo transfer, all performed with the use of laparoscopy, but they are not as commonly practiced.

A typical ART protocol has four steps: ovarian stimulation with exogenous gonadotropins, retrieval of oocytes from ovaries, fertilization in the laboratory, and transfer of embryos into the uterus. Initially, a GnRH analog (Lupron) or antagonist may be given to suppress normal FSH and LH synthesis and secretion, although this is not always necessary. Lupron downregulates FSH and LH secretion by paradoxically inducing initial hypersecretion of these two hormones, which, however, ultimately results in their depletion. The next step is to stimulate follicular growth using a human menopausal gonadotropin preparation, which will have FSH and LH activity or predominantly FSH activity, depending on the specific material used. Unlike a normal reproductive cycle in which typically only one dominant follicle matures, in an ART cycle multiple follicles undergo growth and maturation. The number of follicles and their increase in size are monitored by regular ultrasound analysis. The function of the developing follicles is monitored by sequential serum estradiol measurements. When sufficient follicular maturation is achieved, according to ultrasound and estradiol analyses, a bolus of hCG is administered. This hCG functions as a surrogate LH surge, and the hCG interacts with follicular LH receptors to initiate the process of oocyte maturation and ovulation. This process is not allowed to progress to completion. Ovulation would normally occur approximately 48 hours after hCG administration. Therefore, 12 hours before induced ovulation, the oocytes are "retrieved" from the stimulated follicles. Each oocyte is then mixed with sperm. ART also includes methods for assisted fertilization by intracytoplasmic sperm injection obtained from ejaculate or extracted from epididymis or testis. They may be incubated together for up to 48 hours or longer (day 3 versus day 5 embryos); the resulting embryos are then transferred to the uterus.

Oocyte retrieval disrupts the follicles, as does normal ovulation, and, as a consequence, estradiol levels drop immediately afterward. As the follicles differentiate into corpora lutea, however, estradiol levels rebound and serum progesterone increases. This process may require "boosting" but with additional injections of hCG (lower dose than that used for oocyte retrieval) and/or injections of progesterone. As in a normal cycle, estradiol plus progesterone is required to prepare the uterine endometrium for implantation. Therefore, serum levels of the two steroids are monitored after transfer. Serum hCG measurements begin about 10 days after transfer to determine whether pregnancy has been achieved. About 20 days after transfer, ultrasound examination can be used to confirm the presence of a gestational sac.

ART may offer the use of a technology called preimplantation genetic diagnosis (PGD). PGD can be performed on polar bodies removed from oocytes before fertilization or on blastomeres removed from embryos before transfer. Preimplantation genetic testing may be indicated to detect chromosomal abnormalities and inherited single-gene disorders, as well as to determine gender. However, conventional prenatal diagnosis is still recommended later in pregnancy (Speroff & Fritz Marc, 2010).

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF PREGNANCY

On a patient's first visit to an obstetrician, ideally early in the first trimester, a number of clinical laboratory tests are routinely ordered to identify disorders that can be treated or prevented (Willett, 1994). At the initial visit and throughout the pregnancy, a routine number of tests are ordered for the healthy pregnant female (Table 25-2). Simple, inexpensive blood and urine tests are carried out for anemia, red cell alloimmunization, and suspected viral or bacterial infection. Sometimes, the clinical history, physical examination, or test results indicate additional studies for genetic disease, disorders of coagulation or thrombosis, causes of spontaneous abortion, and other conditions. Laboratory procedures used routinely to monitor pregnancy are summarized in Figure 25-8.

hCG AND EARLY PREGNANCY

Elevated hCG in maternal serum and urine is a reliable indicator of pregnancy. The first assays for urine hCG, developed in the early part of the twentieth century, were cumbersome bioassays. Starting in 1960, these were supplanted by simple immunoassays, usually based on agglutination inhibition. The discovery of monoclonal antibodies in the late 1970s led to the development of the current generation of quantitative hCG immunoassays, which typically use a pair of monoclonals to measure either the β-subunit of hCG or the intact hCG α-β dimer. These assays can quantify hCG as low as 1 to 2 mIU/mL. Serum hCG increases above the reference interval (typically 4 to 6 mIU/mL) by implantation, 6 to 12 (mean, 9.1) days after ovulation (Wilcox et al, 1999). Urine hCG levels are commonly measured by qualitative immunoassay test kits with detection limits of approximately 20 mIU/mL. These methods can detect elevated urine hCG 2 to 3 days later than serum methods.

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 25-2
Prenatal Tests Ordered by Trimester and Visit

LABORATORY TESTS	VISIT TYPE			
	First Visit	First Trimester	Second Trimester	Third Trimester
Hematocrit or hemoglobin	X		X	
Blood type and Rh factor	X			
Antibody screen	X		X*	
Pap smear screening	X			
Fetal aneuploidy screening		X	X	
Neural tube defect screening		X	X	
Cystic fibrosis screening	X			
Urine culture	X			
Rubella serology	X			
Syphilis serology	X†			
HIV serology	X†			
Hepatitis B serology	X†			
Gonococcal screening	X			X
Chlamydial screening	X			X
Group B Streptococcus screening				X

*Performed if indicated.
†Repeat in high-risk patients every trimester.

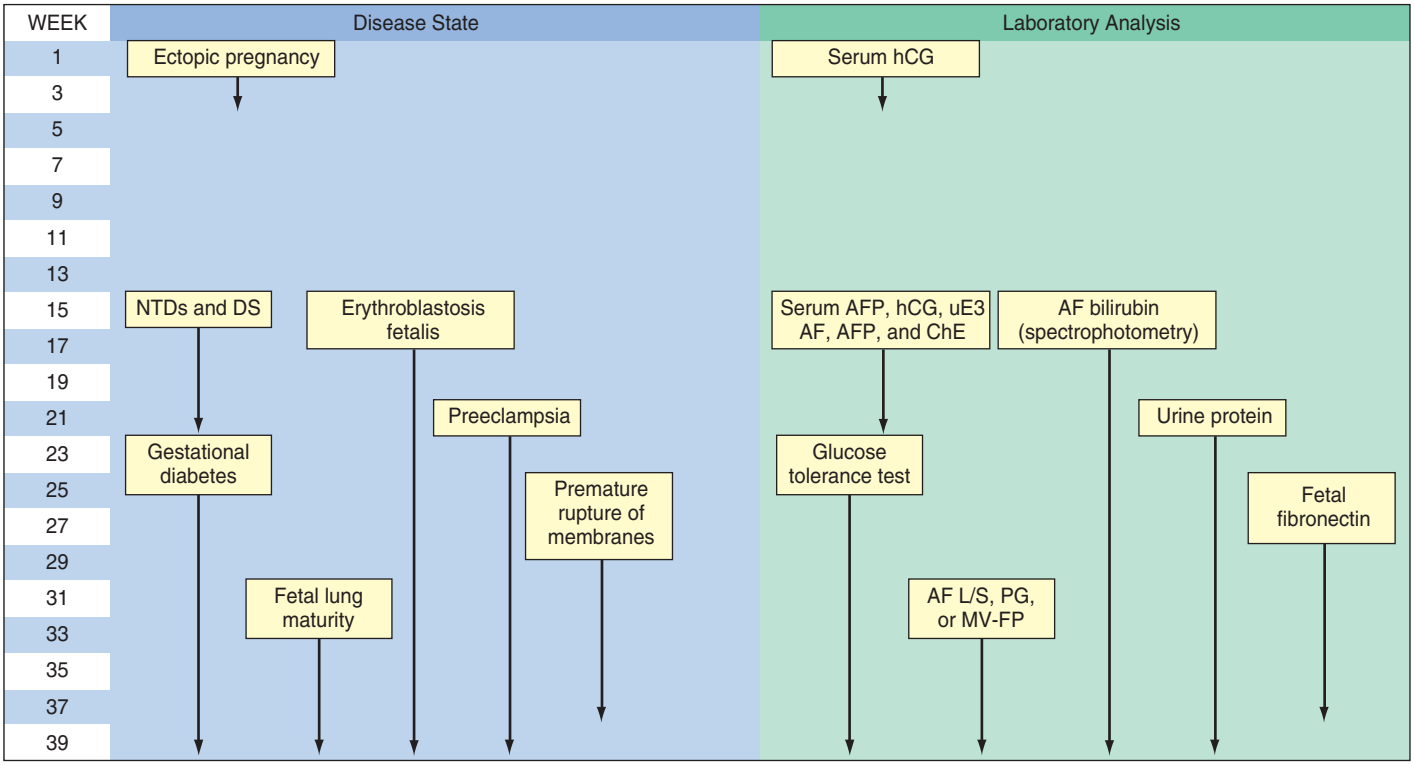


Figure 25-8 **Approximate gestational weeks for laboratory evaluation of major disease states in pregnancy (when clinically indicated).** *AChE*, Acetylcholinesterase; *AF*, amniotic fluid; *AFP*, α-fetoprotein; *ChE*, cholinesterase; *DS*, Down syndrome; *hCG*, human chorionic gonadotropin; *L/S*, lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio; *MV-FP*, microviscosity by fluorescence polarization; *NTDs*, neural tube defects; *PG*, phosphatidyl glycerol; *uE3*, unconjugated estriol.

Serum hCG increases dramatically during the first trimester, reaching a peak at about 16 weeks of gestation (see Fig. 25-5). Throughout pregnancy, intact hCG is the predominant form present. However, a small quantity of free β-subunit is present in the first trimester. Free α subunit appears in the second trimester and steadily increases in the last trimester (Ozturk et al, 1987).

Some cancers and medical conditions may be associated with increased levels of hCG. These include germ cell tumors and gestational trophoblastic disease. Tumor production often includes significant amounts of free β-subunit, in addition to intact hCG. The use of hCG as a tumor marker is discussed more fully in Chapter 74. False-positive hCG is usually due to interference by heterophilic Ig antibodies; it is characterized by large molecular weight and is not filtered by renal glomeruli. Serum concentrations of hCG are typically less than 150 mIU/L with negative urine testing.

Quantitative measurements of hCG are indicated when a patient presents with early gestational vaginal bleeding or abdominal pain that may suggest the presence of ectopic pregnancy or spontaneous abortion. A simple protocol using only ultrasound and quantitative hCG examinations allows more accurate diagnosis and sound management than are obtained by clinical judgment alone (Koh & Yeo, 1997). Because hCG concentrations rise quickly in normal early pregnancy, serial measurements can be used to ensure that an intrauterine implantation has occurred.

http://basicbook.net

Doubling of hCG in 2 days provides a greater than 80% probability of intrauterine implantation of the fertilized ovum. Increases in serum hCG of less than 53% in 2 days indicate abnormal pregnancy with 99% sensitivity (Barnhart et al, 2004).

Because circulating hCG increases very rapidly in the first days postimplantation, it is important to consider diverse causes of low-level quantitative results, including normal production of hCG in the pituitary, especially in postmenopausal females (Odell & Griffin, 1987); early abortion ("microabortion") (Wilcox et al, 1988); use of hCG as a drug; and assay interference, as mentioned previously.

When hCG concentrations exceed discriminatory zone values of 1500 to 2000 mIU/mL, an intrauterine gestational sac becomes visible on ultrasound examination in a normal singleton pregnancy (Kadar et al, 1994). Multiple gestations have higher hCG levels than singletons, and hCG levels may rise above 2000 mIU/mL before ultrasound findings of intrauterine gestational sac are obtained (Goldstein et al, 1988). Absence of an intrauterine gestational sac and failure to double the serum hCG or the presence of an adnexal mass indicate a possible ectopic pregnancy. Furthermore, failure to double the serum hCG may suggest an ectopic pregnancy.

Estradiol and progesterone measurements may provide additional information. Low serum progesterone (<15 ng/mL) or estradiol (<200 ng/mL) indicates a blighted ovum with 90% likelihood. If hCG is less than 1000 mIU/mL in a patient with vaginal bleeding, a progesterone value of less than 5 ng/mL is 94% predictive of an abnormal pregnancy.

Progesterone measurements may provide additional information about abnormal pregnancy. Serum levels higher than 20 ng/mL usually are associated with normal intrauterine pregnancy. Low serum progesterone—less than 5 ng/mL—indicates an abnormal pregnancy with a specificity of 100% (Stovall et al, 1992). Serum progesterone levels are not helpful in assessment of the ectopic pregnancy because most of the time values range between 10 and 20 ng/mL.

Medical intervention using intramuscular methotrexate for compliant patients with unruptured ectopic pregnancy is less costly than surgery, may be a less complicated procedure, and may improve the patient's fertility. Cases may be selected for methotrexate treatment by using ultrasound to ascertain a tubal implantation and differentiate it from an interstitial one, for which methotrexate is not indicated. Ultrasound also ensures a small volume (<3 cm) of conceptual tissue with absent fetal heart motion. A serum progesterone decrease to less than 1.5 ng/mL may be a better predictor of resolution because hCG concentrations do not decline as rapidly after surgery (Saraj et al, 1998).

The laboratory can provide testing to help determine why an early pregnancy aborted spontaneously. For example, recurrent abortion caused by the antiphospholipid syndrome can be diagnosed by the presence of anticardiolipin and specific phospholipid antibodies in the first trimester. Recurrent abortion, defined as three or more, due to inherited thrombophilia may be diagnosed by detection of factor V Leiden gene mutation, beta 2 glycoprotein, antithrombin III, prothrombin gene mutation, levels of proteins C and S, and activated protein C activity.

NEURAL TUBE DEFECTS

Neural tube defects (NTDs) are among the most common congenital malformations in the United States and worldwide. The incidence of NTDs in the United States has been reported at approximately 1 per 1000 pregnancies. Caucasians in the United States have an average occurrence of 0.96 per 1000, and Hispanics 1.2 per 1000; the lowest prevalence was reported in African Americans, with an incidence of 0.75 per 1000 (Feuchtbaum et al, 1999). An increased risk of recurrence has been noted in families. For example, when a couple has had one offspring with an NTD, the risk in each subsequent pregnancy for any type of NTD increases to approximately 1% to 3% (Toriello & Higgins, 1983). However, data suggest a decline in these rates due to increased education within the medical community and toward women of childbearing age regarding the benefits of folic acid consumption along with the mandated fortification of grain products in certain states (New York State Department of Health, 2013; for review see http://www.health.ny.gov/diseases/congenital_malformations/2013/docs/cmr_25.pdf).

NTDs result from failure of the neural tube to close by the twenty-seventh day after conception. Anencephaly comprises 50% of NTDs and involves absence of the calvarium, cranial vault, and cerebral hemispheres; it is incompatible with life. Abnormalities of the caudal portion of the neural tube, known as spina bifida, present as a lumbar (or cervical) meningomyelocele, with herniation of meninges, spinal cord, and nerve roots. The severity of complications such as paralysis or muscle weakness, fecal and/or urinary incontinence, and intellectual impairment is dependent on the vertebral level and extent of spina bifida, which may be open in 80% of cases (referring to whether the defect is completely uncovered or is covered only by a very thin membrane) or closed (covered by skin or a thick membrane). This distinction is important because maternal serum screening will detect only open defects.

Screening for fetal structural defects using maternal serum biochemical markers has become routine obstetric practice. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) (2003) recommends that all pregnant women should be offered second-trimester maternal serum α-fetoprotein (MSAFP) screening at 15 to 20 weeks gestational age. NTDs are sporadic in 90% of cases and represent isolated defects with a multifactorial origin, involving both genetic and nongenetic factors. The incidence of NTD is associated with geographic region, ethnicity, diet, teratogen exposure (mainly from drugs, such as maternal valproic acid ingestion), maternal diabetes, and first-trimester maternal hyperthermia. Although NTDs are typically isolated defects, it is important to rule out fetal chromosomal abnormalities and single-gene disorders that may be associated with a different prognosis and a different recurrence risk.

Folic Acid Prevention

Of great interest is the finding that folic acid is a major preventive agent against NTD. Many clinical studies have established that folic acid supplementation before conception reduces the recurrence of fetal NTDs (Pitkin, 2007). The largest of these studies was a randomized prospective study by the British Medical Research Council (MRC Vitamin Research Group, 1991), which found that preconceptional folic acid supplementation decreased the recurrence of NTDs by 72%.

Screening for NTD

The now well-established finding that AFP is a maternal serum marker for NTD was first reported in 1974 (Brock et al, 1974). AFP, produced initially by the fetal yolk sac and later by the fetal liver, is the most abundant protein in fetal serum. Its concentration increases in both fetal serum and amniotic fluid until about 13 weeks' gestation, after which the liver gradually shifts to production of albumin. In NTDs, AFP becomes elevated because fetal serum from exposed neural membranes and blood vessels leaks into amniotic fluid (AF), producing a concentration in AF that is approximately 100-fold less than in fetal serum. Small amounts of AFP are also transferred across the placenta from fetal serum and across the amniotic membranes from AF to maternal serum (MS), where concentrations of AFP are nearly 1000-fold less than in AF. Amniotic fluid AFP peaks at 13 to 14 weeks and decreases in the second trimester by about 10% per week. Assays for AFP are based on immunochemical determinations using monoclonal antibodies against AFP and are available on autoanalyzers.

In the second trimester, when maternal screening is performed, MSAFP levels increase by approximately 15% per gestational week. This MSAFP increase, while AF levels are decreasing (see earlier), is due to combined changes in transfer to MS and maternal clearance (Ashwood, 1999). This measurable increase serves as the basis of midtrimester MSAFP screening for open NTDs (UK Collaborative Study, 1977).

MSAFP screening is based on comparison of serum AFP levels from pregnant women in the midtrimester of pregnancy versus median AFP values from women with normal fetuses at comparable gestational ages. These comparisons are subsequently expressed as multiples of the median (MoM). Median values are based on data from the reference population that is screened. Expressing patient results as MoMs normalizes the values, allows for direct comparison of results between laboratories, and adjusts for the large changes in expected values with increasing gestational age. The goal of any maternal serum-screening program is to identify those women at sufficient risk for a fetal disorder to warrant further evaluation and follow-up. Large prospective trials of MSAFP screening showed that most affected pregnancies can be identified by elevated MSAFP levels greater than 2.5 times the normal median for singleton pregnancies. Most laboratories set the cutoff at 2.0 to 2.5 MoM, such that the detection rate is about 85% of all NTDs with a false-positive rate less than 5% (Wald et al, 1977; Milunsky, 1980). Only 2% of all women with positive test results are carrying affected fetuses. Thus further evaluation and testing with genetic counseling should be considered.

If MSAFP screening suggests an increased risk for an NTD, then a detailed fetal anatomic survey has to be performed in addition to offering the patient an amniocentesis. Normal findings on ultrasound results usually indicate the need for further evaluation, and the patient should be offered diagnostic amniocentesis to determine the amniotic fluid AFP and the fetal karyotype. If amniotic fluid AFP is elevated, then the presence or absence of acetylcholinesterase is determined. Acetylcholinesterase (AChE)

http://basicbook.net

is an enzyme that is derived only from neural tissue (see Chapter 20) and is consequently present in very high concentration in cerebrospinal fluid. The presence of AChE and elevated AFP are diagnostic for fetal NTDs and discriminate NTDs from other fetal defects with increased AFP, such as open ventral wall defects (gastroschisis and omphalocele), congenital nephrosis, benign obstructive uropathy, and fetal skin anomalies. Placental abnormalities can result in elevated MSAFP levels because of compromise in the fetomaternal membranes or placental structure. Elevated MSAFP levels that are not explained by a genetic or congenital problem are frequently associated with obstetric complications during pregnancy, including threatened abortion, low birth weight, preeclampsia, and oligohydramnios (Burton, 1988).

Clinical factors must be considered when patient-specific results are calculated (Ashwood, 1999). Laboratories routinely adjust for the following factors:

1. Maternal weight: MSAFP concentration decreases with increasing maternal weight. Although the fetus itself produces a constant amount of AFP, the maternal blood volume will vary according to the weight of the mother. Failure to adjust for maternal weight causes increases in both false-positive and false-negative results and affects the sensitivity and specificity of the test (Johnson et al, 1990a).
2. Race: Although the reasons are not known, African American women have MSAFP values that are approximately 10% to 15% higher than those of Caucasian women (Johnson et al, 1990b). It is necessary to mathematically correct for this difference or to correct by comparing African American patients versus normal median values generated from that reference population.
3. Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM): MSAFP levels in otherwise normal women with IDDM are approximately 20% lower than in the general population; therefore, the MoM values must be adjusted upward to reflect this phenomenon. This is typically accomplished by multiplying the initial MoM value by a factor, using a mathematical constant to increase the initial MoM result.
4. Multiple gestation: Multiple gestation (e.g., twins) will yield higher MSAFP levels because each fetus contributes its own AFP to the maternal blood. The MSAFP level is approximately proportional to the number of fetuses, and the effect can be factored into the laboratory calculation and interpretation of the results. Screening for fetal defects is not as reliable as for single pregnancies, in that one cannot determine the individual AFP contributions of each fetus. Therefore, the NTD detection rate is lower for multiple pregnancies than for single ones. The same principle applies to MoM adjustments for serum analytes in second-trimester screening for fetal chromosomal abnormalities (see later).
5. Gestational age determination: To establish a valid MoM value, a reliable estimate of gestational age is essential. The most common reason for abnormal MSAFP screening results is incorrect estimation of gestational age. Typically, laboratories follow specific protocols based on information obtained from the obstetric care provider to determine the most reliable gestational age. If pregnancy is initially dated using ultrasound, the sensitivity and specificity of the screening are accurate (Wald et al, 1994). Pregnancies with positive screening results that originally were dated by using the last menstrual period should have the gestational age verified by ultrasound. If the two estimated gestational ages differ by a defined amount (7 days for a first trimester ultrasound, 10 to 14 days for a second trimester ultrasound, and 3 weeks for a third trimester ultrasound), then the results are recalculated based on the ultrasound results.
6. Fetal viability: Fetal demise raises the MSAFP levels. In cases of fetal demise, MSAFP does not have diagnostic value.

An algorithm for detection of NTD is summarized in Figure 25-9.

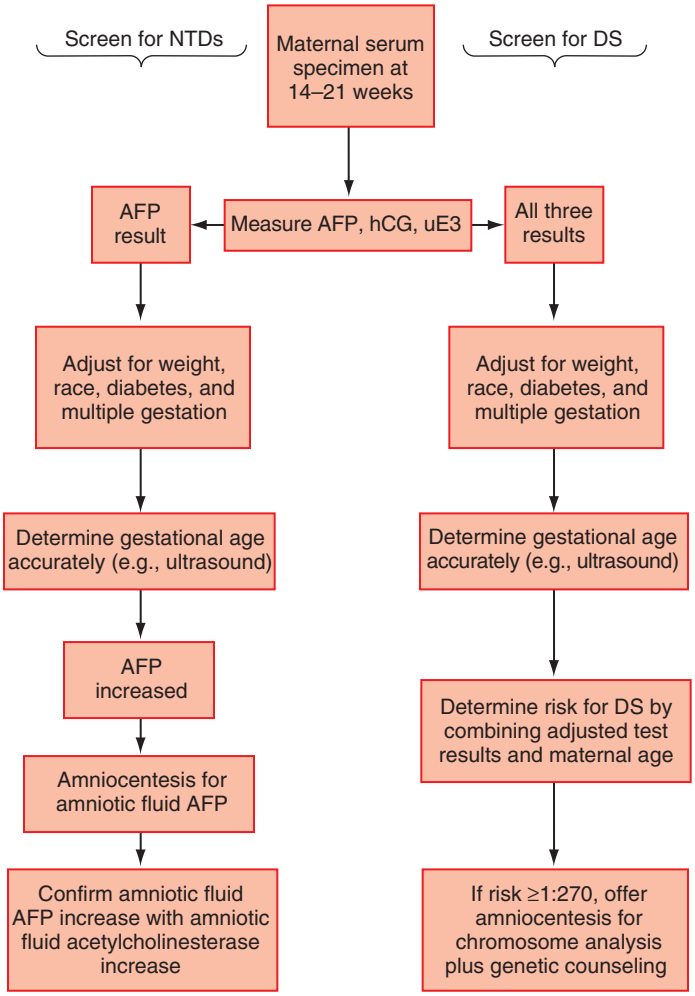


Figure 25-9 A diagnostic algorithm for the simultaneous screening of fetuses for neural tube defects (NTDs) and Down syndrome (DS). *AFP,* α-Fetoprotein; *hCG,* human chorionic gonadotropin; *uE3,* unconjugated estriol.

DOWN SYNDROME

All women should be offered screening for fetal chromosomal abnormalities before age 20 weeks, regardless of maternal age (ACOG, 2007). Many multicenter trials have evaluated the different approaches to screening for aneuploidy in the first and second trimesters. First-trimester screening, performed between 12 and 13 weeks, includes nuchal translucency measurement combined with two maternal serum analytes: free β-subunit of hCG with pregnancy-associated plasma protein A (PAPP-A) and maternal age. An increase in the size of nuchal translucency, which refers to a fluid collection at the back of the fetal neck in the first trimester, is characteristic of fetal chromosomal and structural abnormalities. Patient data are converted to MoM based on population and gestational age. PAPP-A is a glycoprotein produced by the trophoblast; its levels are reduced to 0.48 MoM in affected pregnancies, whereas levels of free β-subunit are elevated to 1.98 MoM in comparison with normal pregnancies (Spencer et al, 1999). Nuchal translucency, as a single ultrasonographic marker, has a detection rate of 64% to 70% for Down syndrome, trisomy 18, trisomy 13, and Turner's syndrome. Adding the calculation of maternal serum PAPP-A and β-hCG improves the detection rate to 82% to 87%. Women with increased risk of aneuploidy or advanced maternal age (age 35 or greater at the time of delivery) on first-trimester screening should be offered genetic counseling and the option of diagnostic testing, such as chorionic villous sampling or second-trimester amniocentesis (ACOG, 2007). In 2012, ACOG released guidelines for noninvasive fetal testing called cell-free fetal DNA. This test is done on maternal plasma and is used as a screening test. Indications for offering this test include maternal age 35 or greater at delivery, increased risk for aneuploidy on another screening test, history of previous pregnancy with aneuploidy, and parental balanced robertsonian translocation with increased risk of fetal trisomy 13 or 21 (ACOG, 2012).

Other approaches to screening for fetal chromosomal abnormalities include the second-trimester triple screen with MSAFP, hCG, and unconjugated estriol performed between 15 and 20 weeks. The level of MSAFP in pregnancies with Down syndrome is reduced to 0.74 MoM and the uE3 level to 0.75 MoM, whereas hCG is increased to 2.06 MoM (Wald et al, 2003). The detection rate of triple screen can be improved from 69% to 81% by adding the inhibin A (quadruple screen) dimeric protein produced by placenta and fetus. The level of inhibin A shows the same trend as hCG and is increased in pregnancies with Down syndrome at 1.77 MoM (Spencer et al, 1999).

Adjustments can be made to the multiple of median for special populations in which analytes are affected differently. For example, serum concentrations of each biomarker are approximately double in twin pregnancy

http://basicbook.net

but cannot be interpreted in higher-order multiples. In pregestational diabetes, MSAFP, E3, and inhibin A levels are reduced. As body weight increases, analyte levels decrease. In smokers, MSAFP and inhibin A levels are higher, while E3 and hCG levels are lower. An algorithm for detecting Down syndrome is shown together with that for NTD in Figure 25-9.

Several strategies incorporating the results of first- and second-trimester screening have been proposed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. The highest sensitivity rate with the lowest false-positive rates is achieved by using integrated first- and second-trimester screening with a detection rate of 94% to 96% and a 5% false-positive rate (Malone et al, 2005). Cell free fetal DNA can identify approximately 98% of cases of Down syndrome with a false-positive rate of less than 0.5% (ACOG, 2012). Results of the first- and second-trimester screening are reported to the patient after first- and second-trimester screening is completed. Those found to have increased risk of aneuploidy should be offered amniocentesis. With another approach, called sequential screening, the patient is informed about first-trimester results. Early diagnostic testing (chorionic villous sampling) is offered after a positive result, whereas patients with negative results may undergo additional second-trimester screening and may benefit from its higher sensitivity. The advantage of integrated and sequential screening is a lower false-positive rate that leads to fewer diagnostic procedures. Additionally, all patients who elected to have only first-trimester screening for chromosomal abnormalities should undergo neural tube defect screening in the second trimester (ACOG, 2007).

ERYTHROBLASTOSIS FETALIS

Severe hemolytic disease in a fetus is marked by anemia accompanied by normoblastic hyperplasia (erythroblastosis) and may be followed by congestive heart failure (hydrops) and intrauterine death. The role of transfusion medicine in the management of immunized (sensitized) RhO-negative mothers is reviewed in Chapter 36. Detection of fetal blood in maternal circulation has conventionally been identified by Kleihauer-Betke testing in the setting of incompatibility (i.e., Rh-negative mother carrying an Rh-positive fetus). However, flow cytometry has been reported as an effective alternative in this regard (Kim & Makar, 2012).

Hemoglobin (Hb), released by hemolysis, is catabolized to unconjugated bilirubin. A fetus with hemolytic disease does not develop hyperbilirubinemia or become jaundiced because the placenta normally removes the bilirubin. However, some bilirubin appears in the amniotic fluid. The measurement of amniotic fluid bilirubin levels using spectral analysis at 450 nm (ΔOD_{450}) was introduced to clinical practice by Liley in 1961 and has been the accepted method of assessing the severity of erythroblastosis in utero. This has been predominantly replaced by assessing MCA Doppler responses for fetal anemia as a screening test first, and in the rare event that confirmation is needed, then the Liley test is utilized. Bilirubin absorbs light maximally at a wavelength of 450 nm and imparts a yellow color to AF. Some of the absorbance at this wavelength is due to Hb. Both bilirubin and Hb can be maternal and fetal in origin, so pigmentation will not discriminate between a hemolytic process in the mother and one in the child.

In erythroblastosis, the net absorbance of light at 450 nm (A or ΔOD) due to bilirubin correlates with the severity of anemia (or hemolytic rate). Bilirubin is bound to albumin; its concentration is dependent on the turnover of the protein, and its concentration in AF does not change rapidly. To determine whether the net bilirubin concentration in amniotic fluid is elevated, a specimen of AF (5 mL) is collected, protected from light, and centrifuged or filtered. Light absorbance of the AF is scanned continuously between wavelengths 350 nm and 700 nm. The resulting spectrophotometric curve can be used to determine whether or not the fluid contains bilirubin and/or other pigmented products of hemolysis and to quantify the bilirubin pigment that is present as follows.

Because the absorbance at 450 nm is due to both bilirubin and Hb, if hemolysis occurs, both of these molecules will be elevated in concentration above the background values for their combined absorbance at 450 nm. To determine whether the bilirubin in AF is elevated, both background absorbances at 450 nm must be determined, and the contribution of Hb must also be computed.

To determine the background absorbance of the AF (i.e., what the absorbance would have been with no hemolysis and hyperbilirubinemia), a straight line is drawn between the two absorbances from the scan—at 350 nm and 700 nm. Absorbances at these two wavelengths are not affected by bilirubin or Hb, and, in normal AF, absorbance changes linearly with wavelengths between 350 and 700 nm. The absorbance from the straight line at 450 nm is therefore subtracted as the background value from the observed absorbance at 450 nm. This net absorbance still contains a contribution from Hb.

To correct for Hb absorbance, use is made of the fact that Hb uniquely absorbs at 410 nm—a wavelength at which bilirubin does not absorb. From scans of the absorbance of Hb versus wavelength, it is known that the absorbance of Hb at 450 nm is 0.05 of its absorbance at 410 nm. Thus by knowing the net absorbance of Hb at 410 nm, its absorbance at 450 nm can be calculated as 0.05 × absorbance at 410 nm. To obtain the net absorbance of Hb at 410 nm, the background absorbance at 410 nm must be subtracted from the observed absorbance. This value, similar to the one at 450 nm, is obtained from the straight line drawn between the absorbances at 350 and 700 nm. The net absorbance at 410 nm is then multiplied by 0.05 to obtain the Hb contribution at 450 nm. The resulting value is subtracted from the net absorbance at 450 nm to obtain the net absorbance of bilirubin in AF. These computations may be summarized in the following equation:

$$A_{Bili450} = (A_{450} - A_{450background}) - 0.05\,(A_{410} - A_{410background})$$

where the background values are determined from the straight line between 350 nm and 700 nm as described previously.

The net bilirubin absorbance is recorded on a so-called Liley graph (Fig. 25-10), which denotes weeks of gestation on the linear abscissa and net absorbance on the log scale ordinate (Ashwood, 1999). Spectrophotometry of aspirated fluid is most accurate after 26 to 28 weeks. Net absorbance at 450 nm decreases as the duration of an unaffected pregnancy increases after 28 weeks (before 26 weeks, background absorbance is relatively constant). Decreasing absorbance reflects fluid dilution by fetal urine and accounts for the negative slopes of lines demarcating Liley's prediction zones (lower = zone 1, mid = zone 2, upper = zone 3) for mild, moderate, and severe hemolysis, respectively, as shown in Figure 25-10. The greater the net absorbance at 450 nm, the greater the hemolysis. Although Liley's method originally applied only to the third trimester of pregnancy, a modified curve for the second trimester has been proposed by Queenan and colleagues (1993) and involves four zones instead of three (see Fig. 25-10). Serial testing (every 14 days or less often) allows for trending of net absorbance values.

Trends are usually unidirectional, either paralleling the negatively sloped lines on Liley's graph or showing a positive slope. A rising or plateauing trend of ΔOD_{450} values that reaches the 80th percentile of zone two on the Liley curve or enters the intrauterine transfusion zone of the Queenan curve necessitates investigation by fetal blood sampling. Cordocentesis is performed with blood readied for intrauterine transfusion if the fetal hematocrit is found to be less than 30%, or delivery is indicated if gestational age is 35 weeks or greater. If no rise in ΔOD_{450} values is detected, the last amniocentesis should be performed at 37 weeks with testing for fetal lung maturity and anticipated induction of labor (Moise, 2002).

Maternal and fetal acid-base imbalances can alter AF pH and shift the wavelengths of pigment absorbance maxima. Pigments that may be present

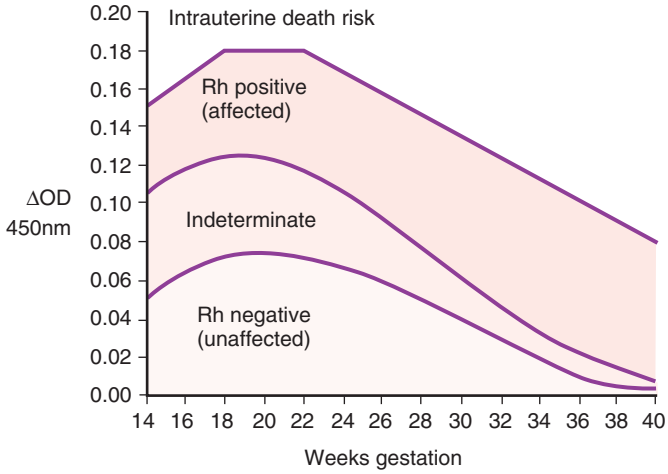


Figure 25-10 Graph for interpretation of net absorbance at 450 nm of amniotic fluid. The four zones are indicative of the relative level of fetal hemolytic disease. (From Queenan JT, Tomai TP, Ural SH, et al: Deviation in amniotic fluid optical density [OD] at a wavelength of 450nm in Rh-immunized pregnancies from 14–40 weeks gestation: A proposal for clinical management. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 168:1370–1376, 1993, with permission.)

http://basicbook.net

other than bilirubin and that may affect the results include Hb, methemalbumin, and meconium. Each produces a characteristic spectrophotometric effect. Blood contamination (with interference by hemolysis) is encountered frequently. Less often, in vivo maternal jaundice or hemolysis can cause misinterpretation. The presence of fetal red cells in AF indicates worsening of anemia by blood loss, or it may explain a rise in maternal antibody titer (anamnestic response to a new fetomaternal hemorrhage), development of new antibodies, and subsequent increase in the net absorbance of AF at 450 nm. Exposure of AF to light and maternal use of steroids, markedly increased AF Hb concentration, or poor calibration of a spectrophotometer may cause inaccurate net absorbance measurements.

The current trend in the management of Rh immunization is the use of Doppler measurements of peak systolic velocity in the fetal middle cerebral artery (MCA). This has proved to be an accurate noninvasive method of assessing and monitoring the degree of fetal anemia in pregnancies complicated by Rh immunization (ACOG, 2006a). Based on one study, a value above 1.5 MoM for gestational age detects all cases of anemia, with a false-positive rate of only 12% (Mari et al, 2000). A rise in peak velocity of fetal MCA greater than 1.5 MoM is an indication for fetal blood sampling. If Doppler measurements were used as the method of fetal monitoring during pregnancy, ΔOD_{450} spectrophotometry with fetal lung maturity testing should be considered after 35 weeks to assess fetal status, because higher false-positive rates have been reported with determination of MCA after 35 weeks of gestation, followed by induction of labor at 37 to 38 weeks (Moise, 2002).

GESTATIONAL DIABETES

Any glucose intolerance in a pregnant woman is termed gestational diabetes (see Chapter 16), regardless of the state of glucose tolerance antepartum or postpartum. Prompt diagnosis and treatment of gestational diabetes may help to avoid maternal and fetal complications such as preeclampsia, fetal congenital malformation, fetal macrosomia (abnormally large body size), and fetal demise. In addition, for a patient who is a known diabetic, an HbA_{1c} should be ordered preconception and maintained at a level of 6.0% or below for healthy pregnancy outcomes.

FETAL LUNG MATURITY

Fetal lung maturation is marked by production of surface-active phospholipid compounds called surfactant. The presence of surfactant decreases surface tension within the alveolar space during inspiration, allows continuous and effective gas exchange, and prevents alveolar collapse during expiration. It is produced by type II pneumocytes in the form of lamellar bodies. Deficiency of surfactant leads to neonatal respiratory distress syndrome (RDS), a disorder that results in hypoxia, acidemia, and vascular protein transudation into alveolar air spaces (hyaline membrane disease). Fetal lung maturity testing should be performed before scheduled delivery at less than 39 weeks and uncertain gestational age. It is contraindicated when delivery is necessary for maternal or fetal indications, or before 32 weeks, when most results show immaturity (ACOG, 2008). Although exogenous surfactant is available for prophylaxis and therapy in newborn RDS, the incidence and severity of the disease can be prevented by maternal antenatal steroid administration to enhance fetal lung maturity.

In the third trimester, fetal respiratory activity allows the passage of surfactant into amniotic fluid, and its quantity may be evaluated using tests of amniotic fluid samples. Before 35 weeks' gestation, the major component of surfactant is α-palmitic β-myristic lecithin. After that time, dipalmitic lecithin predominates, and phosphatidyl glycerol (PG) appears about a week later. PG increases until term and maintains alveolar stability. Minor phospholipid components of surfactant include phosphatidyl inositol, phosphatidyl ethanolamine, phosphatidyl serine, and sphingomyelins. The concentrations of components of surfactant are determined by biochemical tests that measure the phosphatidyl glycerol presence and the lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio. Biophysical tests, like fluorescence polarization, lamellar body counts, foam stability index, and optical density, use the surface-active properties of the phospholipids. The lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio (L/S) test was the first practical chemical test to assess fetal pulmonary status (Gluck et al, 1971). It estimates the ratio of lecithin to sphingomyelin in amniotic fluid. Concentrations of sphingomyelin remain constant throughout the pregnancy, and levels of lecithin are increasing. Following extraction and purification with solvents, amniotic fluid surfactant lipids are chromatographed on thin-layer silica (see Chapter 23 for discussion of this technique). The phospholipids are made visible by heat charring or staining. Densitometric quantification determines the L/S ratio. L/S ratios greater than 2.0 usually indicate maturity, and ratios less than 1.5 indicate immaturity. In the presence of newer tests, assessment of L/S ratios becomes less cost effective with longer turnaround time; hence it is only of importance if the lamellar body count is shown to be immature. It uses the standard hematologic counter to establish lamellar body concentrations. The most commonly accepted cutoffs with high negative predictive value for RDS are 50,000 or higher. Some believe that the test is unsatisfactory in diabetic women, in whose neonates RDS can occur when L/S ratios are greater than 2.0 (Dubin, 1992).

The presence of phosphatidyl glycerol on the thin-layer chromatogram, in addition to an L/S ratio greater than 2.0, indicates fetal pulmonary maturity with virtual certainty in any patient. The presence of phosphatidyl glycerol can be determined using a newer slide agglutination test with antisera specific to phosphatidylglycerol.

Overall, the following factors may affect fetal lung maturity tests:

1. Blood contamination appears to increase the number of false-positive test results (Carlan et al, 1997), except for those using phosphatidyl glycerol presence.
2. Meconium does not affect lamellar body counts and determination of phosphatidyl glycerol.
3. Amniotic fluid volumes: L/S ratios, lamellar body counts, and phosphatidyl gylcerol levels are lower in polyhydramnios (Piazze et al, 1998).
4. Diabetes mellitus: Studies have shown delayed production of phosphatidyl glycerol in the fetuses of pregnant women with diabetes; however, the same thresholds apply to pregnancies of diabetic and nondiabetic women (Melanson et al, 2007).
5. Method of collection of AF: Comparing the AF collected vaginally with that collected by amniocentesis shows whether results of fluid collected vaginally are mature. The test is more reliable (Edwards et al, 2000).

Comparison of previous tests in many studies has shown similar characteristics, with high sensitivity between 81% and 92%, and typical negative predictive value from 95% to 100% (Neerhof et al, 2001; Winn-McMillan & Karon, 2005; Haymond et al, 2006).

PREECLAMPSIA

Preeclampsia is a syndrome characterized by hypertension of 140 mm Hg or greater systolic or 90 mm Hg or greater diastolic on two separate occasions four hours apart, or 160 mm Hg or greater systolic or 110 mm Hg or greater diastolic minutes apart. In addition, proteinuria greater than 0.3 g/L in a 24-hour urine specimen that occurs after 20 weeks of gestation in previously normotensive women, protein/creatinine ratio greater than or equal to 0.3, or urine dipstick of +1 when other resources are unavailable (National High Blood Pressure Education Program Working Group, 2000; ACOG, 2013) is diagnostic. If there is an absence of proteinuria, then the presence of new onset elevation of BP along with (1) thrombocytopenia of 100,000/microliters or less, (2) renal insufficiency defined as serum creatinine of 1.1 mg/dL or doubling of serum creatinine in the absence of other renal disease, (3) elevated liver transaminases of twice the normal concentrations, (4) pulmonary edema, or (5) cerebral or visual defects is diagnostic.

The incidence of preeclampsia is 5% to 8% of all pregnant women. Preconceptional risk factors associated with preeclampsia include first pregnancy, chronic hypertension, renal disease, antiphospholipid syndrome, diabetes, obesity, advanced maternal age, thrombophilia, partner who fathered preeclamptic pregnancy in another woman, and history of preeclampsia in previous pregnancies.

Conditions that can mimic preeclampsia include systemic lupus erythematosus, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, hemolytic-uremic syndrome, cholestasis of pregnancy, and fatty liver disease (Sibai, 2004).

Life-threatening manifestations of preeclampsia that remain a cause of maternal mortality are eclampsia and HELLP syndrome (stands for **h**emolytic anemia, **e**levated **l**iver enzymes, **l**ow **p**latelet count). Eclampsia, which is defined as new onset of grand mal seizures in women with preeclampsia, may result in intracranial hemorrhage.

The cause of preeclampsia remains unknown. Pathophysiologic abnormalities include abnormal trophoblastic invasion by the placenta, resulting from an imbalance between proangiogenic and angiogenic factors (Barton & Sibai, 2008). Impaired uteroplacental flow causes intrauterine growth restriction, oligohydramnios, and placental abruption. The interaction of various vasoactive agents such as prostacyclin, thromboxane A_2, nitric oxide, and endothelins causes the vasospasm that leads to depleted intravascular volume and hepatic and renal changes. Hematologic changes usually are seen as hemoconcentration, thrombocytopenia, and hemolysis. Hepatic involvement manifests as elevation of aminotransferases, usually twice above the normal limit. Lactate dehydrogenase (LD) is increased

http://basicbook.net

primarily because of hepatic disease (mostly LD_5) or as the result of hemolysis with increases in LD_1 and LD_2. Hyperbilirubinemia occurs in the presence of hemolysis as well. The proteinuria in preeclampsia is of a glomerular type (mostly albumin), and the urine sediment contains hyaline and finely granular casts. Mild to moderate increases in urea (>15 mg/dL) and creatinine (>0.8 mg/dL) are noted, as is a marked increase in uric acid.

Preeclampsia or gestational hypertension with severe features is diagnosed if one or more of these criteria are met: blood pressure systolic of 160 or greater, diastolic of 110 or greater, proteinuria of 5 g or higher in a 24-hour urine specimen, oliguria (<500 mL/24 hours), cerebral or visual disturbances, pulmonary edema, right upper quadrant pain, impaired liver function, thrombocytopenia (<100 K/μL), or fetal growth restriction (ACOG, 2013).

In the past decade, many biophysical and biochemical markers have been proposed to predict which women are likely to develop preeclampsia, but none of the screening tests has been found to be reliable and cost effective. Several studies have analyzed the levels of angiogenic factors in preeclampsia. Results revealed decreased levels of placental growth factor, placental protein-13, and pregnancy-associated plasma protein A, along with elevation of fms-like tyrosine kinase-1, endoglin (a transmembrane receptor that is vital for angiogenesis), and dimethylarginine (a marker for atherosclerotic heart disease) (Levine et al, 2006). However, because of differences in study design and methods of analysis, these markers have poor predictive value and specificity. A more promising test is Doppler velocimetry of the uterine arteries (Espinoza et al, 2007).

Preeclampsia can be managed expectantly and followed by delivery at 37 weeks. Delivery at any gestational age is indicated for eclampsia, HELLP, placental abruption, nonreassuring fetal heart pattern, pulmonary edema, severe hypertension, worsening of renal function, persistent symptoms of headaches, visual disturbances, and epigastric pain.

PREMATURE RUPTURE OF MEMBRANES

Premature rupture of membranes is rupture of membranes before the onset of labor. It may be followed by a variety of complications, including chorioamnionitis, fetal pulmonary hypoplasia, placental abruption, and neonatal respiratory distress. The diagnosis of membrane rupture is made upon visualization of fluid passing from the cervical canal on the sterile speculum examination. Amniotic fluid constitutes part of the posterior vaginal fluid pool, and identification of the amniotic component is optimally carried out within 2 hours of membrane rupture. Unlike vaginal secretions, whose pH is acidic (pH, 4.5-5.5), amniotic fluid is alkaline, with pH of 7.0 to 7.5. The vaginal pool aspirate can be tested with nitrazine paper to estimate pH visually. A positive test is indicated by a blue color, and a negative one by a yellow-green color. Among false-positives, 5% are related to the presence of blood, mucus, semen, bacterial vaginosis, alkaline urine, or soap. False-negatives are less likely (1%) but may be seen with membrane rupture that occurred more than 24 hours earlier or if sampling was inadequate. The nitrazine test is usually performed at the bedside and is said to have an overall accuracy of about 90% in the absence of bloody show, vaginal discharge, or prolonged membrane rupture (Friedman & McElin, 1969). An aliquot of the aspirated fluid can be applied to a glass microscope slide, dried for 5 minutes, and examined microscopically for arborization (ferning), which indicates the presence of amniotic fluid in the vaginal fluid pool. False-positive ferning occurs in less than 2% of cases and is associated with the presence of blood, urine, or cervical mucus. False-negatives occur in less than 5% of cases. An alternative method for detecting amniotic fluid in vaginal secretions is rapid immunoassay of proteins present in amniotic fluid. A test for placental alpha-1 microglobulin is currently marketed as the AmniSure® test (Qiagen, Hilden, Germany), whereas a test for alpha-fetoprotein and placental protein 12 is marketed as ROM Plus (Clinical Innovations, Murray, Utah).

PRETERM LABOR

Numerous biochemical markers and biophysical tools have been evaluated for predicting preterm delivery. In 1991, Lockwood and colleagues discovered an association between the presence of fetal fibronectin (fFN) in cervical secretions and the risk of preterm delivery. fFN is a glycoprotein produced by fetal membranes and is found in the choriodecidual junction amniotic fluid; it is released as cervical secretions at up to 20 weeks of gestational age. It has been identified in malignant cell lines and is recognized by antibody FDC-6 (Lockwood et al, 1991). Fibronectin is responsible for the cellular adhesiveness of placenta and membranes to the decidua. Disruption of the chorion from the decidual layer of the uterus leads to the release of intact or degraded chorionic components of the extracellular matrix into the cervical and vaginal secretions. The fFN enzyme immunoassay is a U.S. Food and Drug Administration–approved test for assessment of the risk for preterm delivery in women between 24 and 35 weeks gestational age. The purposes of the test are to identify asymptomatic women who are at risk for preterm delivery and to predict the risk of delivery in symptomatic women with preterm contractions. The specimen is collected during sterile speculum examination with a swab from the posterior fornix of the vagina or the region of the external cervical os for 10 seconds. Concentrations of fFN in the cervicovaginal fluid greater than 50 ng/mL are considered positive (Garite & Lockwood, 1996). The swab should be performed before procedures that may disrupt the cervix, such as the digital examination, Papanicolaou smear, cervical culture, and vaginal ultrasound. The following criteria should be met: cervical dilation less than 3 cm, intact membranes, absence of uterine bleeding, sexual intercourse more than 24 hours before, and absence of cervical cerclage. A meta-analysis of many studies on patients with symptoms suggestive of preterm labor showed that cervicovaginal fFN is an effective predictor of preterm delivery (Leitich et al, 1999). Testing for fFN can reduce unnecessary hospitalization and avoid intervention in symptomatic pregnant women. Detection of fFN can also help in the management of pregnancy in asymptomatic women who have known risk factors for preterm labor, such as previous preterm delivery or short cervix.

It appears to be most valuable in ruling out imminent delivery in patients with symptoms with negative predictive values for delivery within 7, within 14, and at less than 37 weeks (99.5%, 99.2%, and 84.5%, respectively) (Peaceman et al, 1997). The test is often performed with sonographic assessment of cervical length. An fFN test has limited application for screening of asymptomatic women and those with no risk factors because of the low incidence of preterm labor in this population (Leitich et al, 1999). Currently, it is used in conjunction with cervical length; when the cervical length is less than 20 mm, ffN is the more indicative test.

INTRAPARTUM ASSESSMENT OF FETAL STATUS

The goal of intrapartum fetal surveillance is to recognize if the fetus with a nonreassuring fetal heart tracing on external monitoring is acidotic and at risk for neurologic impairment or death. Usually, episodes of hypoxemia are transient and well tolerated by the fetus. However, prolonged or repeat episodes may lead to hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy. Available tests can help to ensure fetal well-being and reduce false-positive findings on external fetal heart monitoring. Noninvasive and preferred tests, such as digital scalp stimulation and vibroacoustic stimulation of the fetus, followed by the presence of reassuring fetal heart monitoring, indicate that the fetus is not acidotic. The direct method for evaluation of fetal acid-base status is fetal scalp blood sampling. This test is performed using the amnioscope with a light source; blood is collected from a punctured fetal scalp and is transferred in a heparinized capillary tube. A pH value less than 7.20 identifies fetal acidosis. However, the test has low sensitivity (36%) and poor predictive value (9%) in predicting fetal acidemia of pH less than 7.0 (Kruger et al, 1999). The use of fetal scalp pH assessment is decreasing in many institutions because of the difficulty involved in obtaining and processing samples and in obtaining standardized laboratory equipment.

Another method of predicting fetal acidosis involves the measurement of fetal lactate concentrations with the use of rapid enzymatic assays. Blood samples are collected by using techniques similar to those used in fetal scalp pH. A large, multicenter, randomized trial compared the effectiveness of pH analysis of fetal scalp blood versus use of lactate levels in identifying hypoxia at birth and showed no differences between the two groups in obstetric and neonatal outcomes (Wiberg-Itzel et al, 2008).

The most objective tool for determining intrapartum fetal status and obtaining information related to obstetric management is umbilical cord sampling. Immediately after delivery, arterial blood is drawn from a segment of clamped umbilical cord to a heparinized capillary syringe and is analyzed for cord blood pH and blood gas values. ACOG (2006b) recommends analysis of umbilical cord blood in neonates with low Apgar scores to differentiate hypoxia from metabolic acidemia and other causes of low Apgar scores. Significant metabolic acidosis is defined by umbilical cord blood pH values less than 7.0; base deficits of 12 mmol/L or greater are predictive of adverse neurologic outcomes and are included in the criteria for an acute intrapartum hypoxic event.

OTHER EVALUATIONS

Infection during Pregnancy

Viral, bacterial, and parasitic infections can have a significant impact on the mother, fetus, or both. Important examples are human immunodeficiency

http://basicbook.net

virus, hepatitis virus (A, B, and C), rubella virus, varicella virus, parvovirus B19, cytomegalovirus, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, group B *Streptococcus*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, syphilis, tuberculosis, toxoplasmosis, and malaria. These are discussed in Part 7 of this text.

Hematologic and Coagulation Disorders

Various disorders can have a negative effect on mother, fetus, or both, including maternal anemias (nutritional, sickle cell), maternal and fetal thrombocytopenias (idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, fetal alloimmune thrombocytopenia, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura), maternal coagulopathies (acute disseminated intravascular coagulation, von Willebrand disease), and maternal thrombophilias. These are described in Parts 4 and 5.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Ashwood ER: Clinical chemistry of pregnancy. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1999, WB Saunders.
Overview includes detailed descriptions of amniotic fluid spectrophotometry of bilirubin for erythroblastosis fetalis (Liley's test).

Mortimer D: *Practical laboratory andrology*, New York, 1994, Oxford University Press.
Descriptive guide and reference for clinical evaluation of reproductive function in the male.

Speroff L, Fritz Marc A: *Clinical gynecologic endocrinology and infertility*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2010, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
General reference for female reproductive endocrinology and ART.

Strauss JF, Barbieri RL, editors: *Yen and Jaffe's reproductive endocrinology*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, WB Saunders.
Comprehensive reference for all aspects of reproductive function and pregnancy.

Trounson AO, Gardner DK: *Handbook of in vitro fertilization*, ed 2, Boca Raton, Fla., 2000, CRC Press.
General reference for assisted reproductive technologies (ARTs).

Willett GD, editor: *Laboratory testing in ob/gyn*, Boston, 1994, Blackwell Scientific Publications.
Comprehensive and concise summary of laboratory evaluation of the female.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

ACOG (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists): Neural tube defects. ACOG practice bulletin No. 44, *Obstet Gynecol* 102:203–213, 2003. (reaffirmed 2014).

ACOG (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists): *Prevention of Rh D alloimmunization*. ACOG practice bulletin No. 75, Washington, DC, 2006a (reaffirmed 2014), ACOG.

ACOG (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists): Umbilical cord blood gas and acid-base analysis. ACOG Committee Opinion No. 348, *Obstet Gynecol* 108:1319–1322, 2006b.

ACOG (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists): Screening for fetal chromosomal abnormalities. ACOG practice bulletin No. 77, *Obstet Gynecol* 109:217–227, 2007 (reaffirmed 2013).

ACOG (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists): Fetal lung maturity. ACOG practice bulletin No. 97, *Obstet Gynecol* 112:717–726, 2008.

ACOG (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists): Hypertension in pregnancy. ACOG Task Force, *Obstet Gynecol* 122(5), 2013.

ACOG (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists): Noninvasive prenatal testing for fetal aneuploidy. ACOG Committee Opinion No. 545, *Obstet Gynecol* 120:1532–1534, 2012.

Andrade-Rocha FT: Semen analysis in laboratory practice: An overview of routine tests, *J Clin Lab Anal* 17:247–258, 2003.

Barnhart KT, Sammel MD, Rinaudo PF, et al: Symptomatic patients with an early viable intrauterine pregnancy: HCG curves redefined, *Obstet Gynecol* 104: 50–55, 2004.

Barton JR, Sibai BM: Prediction and prevention of recurrent preeclampsia, *Obstet Gynecol* 112:359–372, 2008.

Besser GM, Thorner MO: *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology*, ed 3, Edinburgh, 2002, Mosby.

Braunstein GD: Testes. In Greenspan FS, Gardner DG, editors: *Basic and clinical endocrinology*, ed 7, New York, 2004, Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, pp 478–510.

Brock DJ, Bolton AE: Scringeour RA. Prenatal diagnosis of spina bifida and anencephaly through maternal plasma α-fetoprotein, *Lancet* i:767–769, 1974.

Burton BK: Outcome of pregnancy in patients with unexplained elevated or low levels of maternal serum α-fetoprotein, *Obstet Gynecol* 72:709–713, 1988.

Buyalos RP, Ghosh K, Daneshmand ST: Infertile women of advanced reproductive age: Variability of day 3 FSH and E2 levels, *J Reprod Med* 43:1023–1026, 1998.

Carlan SJ, Gearity D, O'Brien WF: The effect of maternal blood contamination on the TDx-FLM II assay, *Am J Perinatol* 14:491–494, 1997.

Carr BR, Rehman KS: Fertilization, implantation, and endocrinology of pregnancy. In Griffin JE, Ojeda SR, editors: *Textbook of endocrine physiology*, ed 5, New York, 2004, Oxford University Press, pp 249–273.

Chamley LW, Clarke GN: Antisperm antibodies and conception, *Semin Immunopathol* 29:169–184, 2007.

Dubin S: Assessment of fetal lung maturity by laboratory methods, *Clin Lab Med* 12:603, 1992.

Edwards RK, Duff P, Ross KC: Amniotic fluid indices of fetal pulmonary maturity with preterm premature rupture of membranes, *Obstet Gynecol* 96:102–105, 2000.

Espinoza J, Romero R, Nien JK, et al: Identification of patients at risk for early onset and/or severe preeclampsia with the use of uterine artery Doppler velocimetry and placental growth factor, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 196:326, 2007.

Feuchtbaum LB, Currier RJ, Riggle S, et al: Neural tube defect prevalence in California (1990–1994): Eliciting patterns by type of defect and maternal race/ethnicity, *Genet Test* 3:265–272, 1999.

Friedman ML: McElin TW. Diagnosis of ruptured fetal membranes: Clinical study and review of the literature, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 104:544–550, 1969.

Garite TJ, Lockwood CJ: Fetal fibronectin (fFN): A new test for diagnosis and prediction of impending preterm delivery, *Contemp Obstet Gynecol* 41:77–93, 1996.

Gilbert BR, Cooper GW, Goldstein M: Semen analysis in the evaluation of male factor subfertility, *AUA Update Series* 11:250–255, 1992.

Gluck L, Kulovich MV, Borer R, et al: Diagnosis of the respiratory distress syndrome by amniocentesis, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 109:440–445, 1971.

Goldstein SR, Snyder JR, Watson C, et al: Very early pregnancy detection with endovaginal ultrasound, *Obstet Gynecol* 72:200–204, 1988.

Haymond S, Luzzi VI, Parvin CA, et al: A direct comparison between lamellar body counts and fluorescent polarization methods for predicting respiratory distress syndrome, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126:894–899, 2006.

Ismail AA, Astley P, Burr WA, et al: The role of testosterone measurement in the investigation of androgen disorders, *Ann Clin Biochem* 23:113–134, 1986.

Johnson AM, Palomaki GE, Haddow JE: Maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein levels in pregnancies among black and white women with fetal open spina bifida. A United States Collaborative Study, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 162:328–331, 1990a.

Johnson AM, Palomaki GE, Haddow JE: The effect of adjusting maternal serum α-fetoprotein levels for maternal weight in pregnancies with fetal open spina bifida. A United States Collaborative Study, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 163:9–11, 1990b.

Kadar N, Bohrer M, Kemmann E, et al: The discriminatory human chorionic gonadotropin zone for endovaginal sonography: A prospective, randomized study, *Fertil Steril* 61:1016–1020, 1994.

Kim YA, Makar RS: Detection of fetomaternal hemorrhage, *Am J Hematol* 87:417–423, 2012.

Koh GH, Yeo GS: Diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy—Why we need a protocol, *Singapore Med J* 38:369–374, 1997.

Kruger TF, Acosta AA, Simmons KF, et al: Predictive value of abnormal sperm morphology in in vitro fertilization, *Fertil Steril* 49:112, 1988.

Kruger K, Hallberg B, Blennow M: Predictive value of fetal scalp blood lactate concentration and pH as markers of neurologic disability, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 181:1072, 1999.

Leitich H, Egarter C, Kaider A, et al: Cervicovaginal fetal fibronectin as a marker for preterm delivery: A meta-analysis, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 180:1169–1176, 1999.

Levine RJ, Lam C, Qian C, et al: Soluble endoglin and other circulating antiangiogenic factors in preeclampsia, *N Engl J Med* 355:992–1005, 2006.

Liley AW: Liquor amnii analysis in the management of pregnancy complicated by rhesus sensitization, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 82:1359–1370, 1961.

Lobo RA, Mishell DR, Paulson RJ, et al, editors: *Mishell's textbook of infertility, contraception, and reproductive endocrinology*, ed 4, Malden, Mass., 1997, Blackwell Science.

Lockwood CJ, Senyei AE, Dische MR, et al: Fetal fibronectin in cervical and vaginal secretions as a predictor of preterm delivery, *N Engl J Med* 325:669–674, 1991.

Malone F, Canick JA, Ball RH, et al: First-trimester or second-trimester screening, or both, for Down's syndrome. First- and Second-Trimester Evaluation of Risk (FASTER) Research Consortium, *N Engl J Med* 353:2001–2011, 2005.

Mari G, Deter RL, Carpenter RL, et al: Noninvasive diagnosis by Doppler ultrasonography of fetal anemia due to maternal red-cell alloimmunization. Collaborative Group for Doppler Assessment of the Blood Velocity of Anemic Fetuses, *N Engl J Med* 342:9–14, 2000.

Melanson SE, Jarolim P, McElrath TF, et al: Fetal lung maturity testing in diabetic mothers, *Lab Med* 38:553–555, 2007.

Mesiano S, Jaffe RB: The endocrinology of human pregnancy and fetal-placental neuroendocrine development. In Strauss JF, Barbieri RL, editors: *Yen and Jaffe's reproductive endocrinology*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, WB Saunders, pp 327–366.

Milunsky A: Prenatal detection of neural tube defects. VI. Experience with 20,000 pregnancies, *JAMA* 244:27–31, 1980.

Moise KJ Jr: Management of rhesus alloimmunization in pregnancy, *Obstet Gynecol* 100:600–611, 2002.

MRC Vitamin Study Research Group: Prevention of neural tube defects: Results of the Medical Research Council Vitamin Study, *Lancet* 338:131–137, 1991.

National High Blood Pressure Education Program Working Group: Report on high blood pressure in pregnancy, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 183:S1–S22, 2000.

Neerhof MG, Haney EI, Silver RK, et al: Lamellar body counts compared with traditional phospholipid analysis as an assay for evaluating fetal lung maturity, *Obstet Gynecol* 97:305–309, 2001.

New York State Department of Health. Congenital Malformations Registry summary report: Statistical summary of children born in 1983–2007. Published 2013.

Norwitz ER: Endocrine diseases of pregnancy. In Strauss JF, Barbieri RL, editors: *Yen and Jaffe's reproductive endocrinology*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, WB Saunders, pp 735–785.

Noyes RW, Hertig AT, Rock J: Dating the endometrial biopsy, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 122:262–263, 1975.

Odell WD, Griffin J: Pulsatile secretion of human chorionic gonadotropin in normal adults, *N Engl J Med* 317:1688–1691, 1987.

Ombelet W, Bosmans E, Janssen M, et al: Semen parameters in a fertile versus subfertile population: A need for a change in the interpretation of semen testing, *Hum Reprod* 12:987–993, 1997.

Ozturk M, Bellet D, Manil L, et al: Physiological studies of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), αhCG, and βhCG as measured by specific monoclonal immunoradiometric assays, *Endocrinology* 120:549–558, 1987.

Pados G, Camus M, Van Steirteghem A: The evolution and outcome of pregnancies from oocyte donation, *Hum Reprod* 9:538–542, 1994.

Peaceman AM, Andrews WW, Thorp JM, et al: Fetal fibronectin as a predictor of preterm birth in patients with symptoms: A multicenter trial, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 177:13–18, 1997.

Pellati D, Mylonakis I, Bertoloni G, et al: Genital tract infections and infertility, *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 140:3–11, 2008.

Piazze JJ, Maranghi L, Cosmi EV, et al: The effect of polyhydramnios and oligohydramnios on fetal lung maturity indexes, *Am J Perinatol* 15:249–252, 1998.

Pitkin RM: Folate and neural tube defects, *Am J Clin Nutr* 85:285S–288S, 2007.

Queenan JT, Tomai TP, Ural SH, et al: Deviation in amniotic fluid optical density at a wavelength of 450 nm in Rh-immunized pregnancies from 14-40 weeks gestation: A proposal for clinical management, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 168:1370–1376, 1993.

Resnik R, Killam AP, Battaglia FC, et al: The stimulation of uterine blood flow by various estrogens, *Endocrinology* 94:1192, 1974.

Rylander L, Wetterstrand B, Haugen TB, et al: Single semen analysis as a predictor of semen quality: Clinical and epidemiological implications, *Asian J Androl* 11:723–730, 2009.

Saraj AJ, Wilcox JH, Najmabadi S, et al: Resolution of hormonal markers of ectopic gestation: A randomized trial comparing single-dose intramuscular methotrexate with salpingostomy, *Obstet Gynecol* 92:989–994, 1998.

Sarkar S, Jones OW, Shioura N: Constancy in human sperm DNA content, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 71:3512–3516, 1974.

Scott RT, Hofmann GE: Prognostic assessment of ovarian reserve, *Fertil Steril* 63:1–11, 1995.

Sibai BM: Imitators of severe preeclampsia/eclampsia, *Clin Perinatol* 31:835–852, 2004.

Sideri M, De Virgiliis G, Guidobono F, et al: Immunologically undetectable human placental lactogen in a normal pregnancy, *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 90:771, 1983.

Spencer K, Souter V, Tul N, et al: A screening program for trisomy 21 at 10-14 weeks using fetal nuchal translucency, maternal serum free beta-human chorionic gonadotropin and pregnancy-associated plasma protein-A, *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 13:231–237, 1999.

Stovall TG, Ling FW, Carson SA, et al: Serum progesterone and uterine curettage in differential diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy, *Fertil Steril* 57:456–457, 1992.

Strauss JF, Lessey BA: The structure, function, and evaluation of the female reproductive tract. In Strauss JF, Barbieri RL, editors: *Yen and Jaffe's reproductive endocrinology*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, WB Saunders, pp 255–305.

Tomlinson MJ, Effrossini K, Barratt CR: The diagnostic and prognostic value of traditional semen parameters, *J Androl* 20:588–593, 1999.

Toriello HV, Higgins JV: Occurrence of neural tube defects among first-, second-, and third-degree relatives of probands: Results of a United States study, *Am J Med Genet* 15:601–606, 1983.

UK Collaborative Study on Alpha-Fetoprotein in Relation to Neural Tube Defects: Maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein measurement in antenatal screening for anencephaly and spina bifida in early pregnancy, *Lancet* i:1323–1332, 1977.

http://basicbook.net

Van Steirteghem AC, Pados G, Devroey P: Oocyte donation for genetic indications, *Reprod Fertil Dev* 4:681–688, 1992.

Wald NJ, Cuckle H, Brock JH, et al: Maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein measurement in antenatal screening for anencephaly and spina bifida in early pregnancy, *Lancet* 1(8026):1323–1332, 1977.

Wald NJ, Kennard A, Smith D: First trimester biochemical screening for Down's syndrome, *Ann Med* 26:23–29, 1994.

Wald NJ, Rodeck C, Hackshaw AK, et al: First and second trimester antenatal screening for Down's syndrome: The results of the Serum, Urine and Ultrasound Screening Study (SURUSS). [published erratum appears in J Med Screen 2006;13:51–2], *J Med Screen* 10:56–60, 2003.

Welt CK, McNicholl DJ, Taylor AE, et al: Female reproductive aging is marked by decreased secretion of dimeric inhibin, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 84:105–111, 1999.

Wiberg-Itzel E, Lipponer C, Norman M, et al: Determination of pH or lactate in fetal scalp blood in management of intrapartum fetal distress: Randomised controlled multicentre trial, *BMJ* 336:1284–1287, 2008.

Wilcox A, Baird DD, Weinberg CR: Time of implantation of the conceptus and loss of pregnancy, *N Engl J Med* 340:1796–1799, 1999.

Wilcox AJ, Weinberg CR, O'Connor JF, et al: Incidence of early loss of pregnancy, *N Engl J Med* 319:189–194, 1988.

Winn-McMillan T, Karon BS: Comparison of the TDx-FLM II and lecithin to sphingomyelin ratio assays in predicting fetal lung maturity, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 193:778–782, 2005.

Wolff H, Panhans A, Stolz W, et al: Adherence of *Escherichia coli* to sperm: A mannose mediated phenomenon leading to agglutination of sperm and *E. coli*, *Fertil Steril* 60:154–158, 1993.

World Health Organization: *WHO laboratory manual for the examination of human semen and sperm–cervical mucus interaction*, London, 1999, Cambridge University Press.

Yeap BB: Testosterone and ill-health in aging men, *Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab* 5:113–121, 2009.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 26

VITAMINS AND TRACE ELEMENTS

Martin J. Salwen

INTRODUCTION, 416

VITAMINS, 418
Water-Soluble Vitamins, 419
Fat-Soluble Vitamins, 421

TRACE ELEMENTS, 422
Chromium, 424
Cobalt, 424
Copper, 424
Fluoride, 425
Iodine, 425
Iron, 425
Manganese, 426
Molybdenum, 426
Selenium, 426
Zinc, 426

SELECTED REFERENCES, 427

KEY POINTS

- Vitamins and trace elements are grouped because of the very small amount required to satisfy their extensive metabolic activity.
- Vitamins are essential organic substances that the body cannot synthesize, or does not consistently synthesize sufficient for the metabolic needs. This is species specific.
- Vitamins may function variously as enzymatic cofactors, antioxidants, or like hormones, and are active in energy metabolism, protein metabolism, blood cell maturation, and bone formation.
- Vitamins are unrelated chemically and have different physiological activities and food sources.
- Vitamins may be single chemicals (e.g., ascorbic acid) or include a family of closely related compounds (e.g., vitamins A, D, E, and K and cobalamin).
- Vitamins may be classified according to water or lipid solubility, which affects absorption and transport, storage, toxicity, excretion, and the disease conditions that cause deficiencies even when there is sufficient nutritional intake.
- Assessing both dietary intake and body stores requires different test strategies for diagnosis of deficiency or toxicity.
- Deficiencies are especially important at the age extremes of life and in malnutrition of whatever cause. Often, a therapeutic trial of the nutrient considered deficient is the most reliable approach to diagnosis and treatment.
- Essential trace elements have specific metabolic functions that cannot be replaced by other minerals.
- Deficiencies of trace elements may result from insufficient ingestion because the soil, water, or plants in the region are inadequate in a specific element, because of interference by another dietary ingestant, because of the lack of a necessary protein needed for the absorption or metabolism of the element, or because of a failure to supplement an element for those receiving total parenteral nutrition.
- The functions of trace elements include structural, signal transduction, and catalytic. Some are components of metalloenzymes or function as enzyme cofactors, provide electron and oxygen transport, or are active in the maintenance of macromolecule conformation or vitamin or hormonal activity.
- To avoid contamination, trace elements must be analyzed with considerable care. Because they are widely distributed in the environment, there is a risk of contamination, and for many, the very minute concentration in body fluids and tissues necessitates analytical techniques that are sensitive in concentrations of µg/L or even ng/L.
- Trace element concentration in body fluids correlates poorly with the amount in body stores. Serum levels are unreliable because of the influence of unrelated conditions. There are no particularly good assays for trace element dietary status. Test results need be interpreted with caution.
- The only definitive test of human trace element deficiency is assessment of the clinical response to controlled supplementation with the element considered deficient.
- The intake required to cause toxicity is very variable for the different trace elements.

INTRODUCTION

Twenty-three vitamins and trace elements are a collection of dietary heterogeneous ingredients necessary for health, development, and longevity. They are collectively described as essential micronutrients because of the very small amounts required to satisfy their diverse physiological roles, and their functions are as varied as their compositions (Mason, 1996). These micronutrients are unrelated organic catalysts and elements that are not endogenously synthesized (Rubin & Strayer, 2005). They are critically needed in small amounts for metabolism of proteins, carbohydrates, and fats, and for the body's structure (e.g., vitamin K in bone matrix). Many micronutrients are important antioxidants (e.g., vitamins C and E) or are cofactors for antioxidant enzymes (e.g., selenium in glutathione peroxidase). Recommended allowances reconcile optimum nutrition and the prevention of deficiency symptoms or diseases. The requirements for most essential nutrients to maintain health are now fairly well characterized. Their functions are as varied as their compositions (Mason, 1996). Deficiency and toxicity states are often insidious for both and may be attributable to an inappropriate intake or to defective utilization. Deficiencies are most often due to malnutrition (McLaren, 1994). Initially the interest was the prevention of deficiency diseases and elucidation of the biochemical roles of these micronutrients as coenzymes and cofactors. Research in the assessment of vitamin and trace element nutriture has further identified their many other important functions such as antioxidant activity, hormone-like stimulation, and their regulatory roles (Machlin, 1992; Sies et al, 1992).

Dietary Reference Intakes (DRI) is an umbrella term that includes reference values that provide quantitative estimates of the dietary level of each of the essential nutrients. *Recommended Dietary Allowance* (RDA) is the average daily dietary amount sufficient for the nutrient requirements of most (97% to 98%) healthy people categorized by age, gender, and physiological need. The RDA is derived from the *Estimated Average Requirement* (EAR). The *Adequate Intake* (AI) is a recommended daily intake value when the RDA cannot be determined. The *Tolerable Upper Intake Level* (UL) is the highest level of daily nutrient intake likely to pose no risk of adverse health effects for most individuals in the general population (Institute of Medicine, 1998).

Micronutrients have been invested with a magical aura. There is a widespread belief that "megadoses" can provide that cure-all elixir. Perhaps this is an awareness of the extraordinary physiological prowess of minute quantities of these ingestants. However, they also pose a hazard. Although safe within the tolerable upper intake level (UL; Institute of Medicine, 1998), there is the risk of toxic overdose.

Bookstore shelves are packed with texts that promote the use of "natural" treatments but offer few on the dangers and risks of these

http://basicbook.net

medicaments. In his book *Natural Causes: Death, Lies, and Politics in America's Vitamin and Herbal Supplement Industry*, Dan Hurley points out that the 1994 Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act (DSHEA) (which the *New York Times* labeled "the 1993 Snake Oil Protection Act") expanded the frenzied and lucrative sales of these "natural" treatments that could now be used as medicines with the designation of dietary supplements. It was the DSHEA that made it possible for these medications to escape regulation by the FDA and the Federal Trade Commission.

Several groups warrant selective micronutrient supplementation. These include pregnant women, neonates, and infants; the aged; patients receiving long-term parenteral nutrition or hyperalimentation; and individuals with altered nutritional or metabolic states. Poverty and food faddism are continued sources of deficiencies. For the general population, with only rare exceptions, vitamin and trace element supplementation is not required and is unnecessary and even wasteful, because of their ubiquitous distribution and ready availability from a variety of sources.

This section reviews micronutrients that include vitamins and the essential trace mineral elements. The 13 vitamins are outlined in Table 26-1, along with their functions and deficient and toxic states. (The 10 essential trace mineral elements are presented in Table 26-4 (later in

TABLE 26-1

Vitamins: Functions, Deficiency Syndromes, and Toxicity

	Functions	Deficiency Syndromes	Toxicity
Water-Soluble Vitamins			
Ascorbate (vitamin C)	Many redox reactions Hydroxylation of collagen	Scurvy	Chronic megadoses of 10 to 150 times the RDA (1 g to 15 g), cramps, diarrhea, nausea, kidney stones. Megadoses, body accelerates the drug metabolism. Can produce scurvy if megadoses abruptly stop.
Biotin	Cofactor in carboxylation reactions	Rare. Caused by lack of biotin in total parenteral nutrition. Also, avidin in raw egg whites binds biotin in gut, preventing absorption. Dermatitis, glossitis, hair loss, anorexia, depression, and hypercholesterolemia.	No known toxicity.
Cobalamin (vitamin B_{12})	Folate metabolism and DNA synthesis, maintenance of myelinization of spinal tracts	Megaloblastic anemia, peripheral neuropathy	No appreciable toxicity.
Folate (folic acid)	Transfer and use 1-carbon units in DNA and amino acid synthesis	Megaloblastic anemia, neural tube defects	Teratogenic effect in rodent model. No adverse effects at high oral doses.
Niacin (nicotinic acid)	Incorporated into NAD and NAD phosphate, redox reactions	Pellegra: dementia, dermatitis, diarrhea	Excess preformed niacin and nicotinic acid cause vascular dilatation, "flushing"; hepatotoxic.
Thiamine (vitamin B_1)	As pyrophosphate, is coenzyme in decarboxylation reactions	Dry (neuromuscular) and wet (cardiac failure) beriberi, Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome	Only when given parenterally. Headache, muscle weakness, cardiac arrhythmia, convulsions.
Pantothenic acid (vitamin B_3)	Incorporated in coenzyme A	No syndrome recognized	Very high doses: diarrhea.
Pyridoxine (vitamin $B_{6)}$	Derivatives are coenzymes in many intermediary reactions; amino acid, phospholipid and glycogen metabolism	Chelosis, glossitis, dermatitis, peripheral neuropathy, convulsions	Long-term megadose supplementation causes ataxia and sensory neuropathy. The UL is 100 mg/d.
Riboflavin (vitamin B_2)	Converted to flavin coenzymes, cofactor for many enzymes in intermediary metabolism	Ariboflavinosis, cheilosis, angular stomatitis, glossitis, dermatitis, corneal vascularization.	Toxicity to riboflavin has not been reported. Absorption limited normally.
Fat-Soluble Vitamin			
Vitamin A (retinol)	A component of retinal rod pigment. Role in vision in dim light, growth; reproduction. Maintenance of resistance to infection	Squamous metaplasia, especially glandular, follicular hyperkeratosis; xerophthalmia; night blindness, reproductive disorders, vulnerability to infection.	Livers of polar bears and large animals have very high levels of vitamin A. Acute: can cause drowsiness, headache, vomiting, stupor, skin peeling, and papilledema. Chronic: teratogenic, osteoporosis, hepatotoxicity. Carotenoids in excess, distinct orange-yellow skin color.
Vitamin D (cholecalciferol)	Promotes absorption of calcium and phosphorus; mineralization of bones and teeth	Rickets in children, osteomalacia in adults, hypocalcemia, tetany	High intake of vitamin D, hypercalcemia and hypercalciuria, toxicity above UL of 50 µg. Bone demineralization, constipation, muscle weakness, renal calculi.
Vitamin E (tocopherol)	Antioxidant, scavenges free radicals; cellular respiration, primarily in muscle, RBC integrity	Spinocerebellar degeneration, ataxia	Mild GI distress, nausea; coagulopathies in patients receiving anticonvulsants.
Vitamin K (phytomenadione)	Cofactor of procoagulants—hepatic factors II (prothrombin), VII and X, protein C and protein S	Defective clotting, bleeding disorder	Foods containing vitamin K cause no toxicity problems. Excess amounts of vitamin K may decrease clotting time.

Data after Berdanier, 1998; Combs, 1998; Eastwood, 2003; Grodner et al, 2004; Kane & Kumar, 2005; Katz, 2001.

http://basicbook.net

the chapter), along with their functions and the effects of deficiency and toxicity.)

VITAMINS

Vitamins are organic molecules that are required in microgram to milligram amounts for health, growth, and reproduction (McCormick & Greene, 1994). With the exception of vitamin D, the body depends completely on dietary intake for vitamins, although there is some enteric bacterial production of vitamin K, nicotinic acid, riboflavin, biotin, cobalamin, and folic acid (Eastwood, 2003; Grodner et al, 2004). However, these syntheses occur mostly in the colon and are not nutritionally significant because they are poorly absorbed. Lack of each vitamin results in a clearly definable metabolic deficit. This is species specific, because different species have different synthesizing capabilities. For example, many lower animals can produce their own ascorbic acid, but humans cannot and require ascorbate to prevent scurvy (Combs, 1998).

Vitamins may be classified according to their properties, such as function, nutritional source, or their solubility in water (see Table 26-1). In this discussion, vitamins are divided into two groups based on solubility. Solubility affects absorption and transport. Water-soluble vitamins are easily absorbed, which allows for minimal storage. However, deficiencies can develop quickly, even within weeks (Grodner et al, 2004). Thiamine, riboflavin, niacin, pyridoxine, cobalamin, vitamin C, folate, pantothenic acid, and biotin are water-soluble. Vitamins A, D, E, and K are considered water-insoluble or fat-soluble, and depend on normal lipid digestion and micellar solubilization for absorption, such as the presence of bile. Malabsorption of fat may result in deficiencies of the fat-soluble vitamins despite an adequate dietary intake.

Determining the extent to which metabolic demands for micronutrients have been met is complex and very difficult. A clinical history obtained by an experienced practitioner or dietician can provide only a crude assessment. Even a 3-day dietary diary is limited because of the problem of recording the sizes of food portions and the amount consumed (Nelson, 2000). RDAs and amounts recommended for enteral and intravenous nutritional support, however, are available.

Disease conditions, infections, or trauma can alter metabolism and significantly change the requirements for vitamins and trace elements in ways that are not well understood (Gidden & Shenkin, 2000; Elia, 2001). Laboratory studies help somewhat to improve the assessment of balance of supply and demand, but they are seriously limited (Gidden & Shenkin, 2000). Subclinical deficiencies are known to occur, but the extent of depletion before significant biochemical, physiological, or histological changes can only be surmised. There is a great need for productive scholarship in this field. Interpreting the results of tests of nutritional status requires reference intervals with provision for relevant factors such as ethnicity, geographical variation, and time samples were taken.

Vitamins exist in almost all foods, but no one food group is a good source of all vitamins (Grodner et al, 2004; Table 26-2). The vitamin B complex includes thiamine, riboflavin, niacin, pyridoxine, and cobalamin.

TABLE 26-2
Vitamins: RDA, Food Sources, and Analysis of Body Levels

	RDA	Food Sources	Laboratory Assessment for Subclinical Deficiency States
Water-Soluble Vitamins			
Ascorbic acid, vitamin C	M: 90 mg F: 75 mg Smokers: 125 mg	Fruits and vegetables: citrus fruits, red and green peppers, strawberries, tomatoes, broccoli, potatoes, leafy green vegetables	Fasting specimen required. S—ascorbic acid, deficient <11.4 µmol/L. WBC—ascorbic acid by HPLC, reflects tissue stores, preparation, and assay difficult. <11.4 nmol/10^8 cells associated with scurvy. 24-h U-ascorbic acid, reflects recent dietary intake. Vitamin C load test U.
Biotin	AI 30 µg	Liver, kidneys, peanut butter, egg yolks, yeast	Microbiological assay.
Cobalamin, vitamin B_{12}	M/F: 2.4 µg	Meat, fish, poultry, eggs, dairy products	S—vitamin B_{12} by RIA, deficiency <74-59 pmol/L; U—methylmalonic acid
Folate, folic Acid	M/F: 400 µg Pregnancy: 600 µg Lactation: 500 µg	Leafy green vegetables, legumes, cereals, some fruits and juices	Hemolysis interferes. RBC-folate; S-folate; S—methyltetrahydrofolate, reflects recent intake, not stores. Cutoff point, negative folate balance <6.8 nmol/L. Polyglutamate forms of folate present, reflect body folate stores. Folate (nmol/L): depleted <368; deficient <322; anemia <227. U—formiminoglutamic acid (FIGLU). Histidine load test U.
Niacin, nicotinic acid, B_3	Niacin equivalent = 1 mg niacin or 60 mg tryptophan. M: 16 mg NE/d F: 14 mg NE/d	Protein-containing foods are good sources for both niacin and tryptophan. Meats, poultry, fish, legumes, enriched cereals, milk, coffee, tea	Ratio of RBC—nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) and NADP nucleotide, <1 may indicate risk of niacin deficiency. Ratio 2—pyridine (40%-60%):N′-methyl nicotinamide (20%-30%); deficiency of niacin when ratio <1.
Pantothenic acid	AI 5 mg	Whole-grain cereals, legumes, meat, fish, poultry	Whole blood—pantothenic acid, inadequate intake <100 µg/dL. 24-h U—pantothenic Acid, abnormally low <1mg/day.
Pyridoxine, vitamin B_6	M/F: 1.3 mg	Whole grains, cereals, legumes, chicken, fish, pork, eggs	P-pyridoxal-5′-phosphate, cation exchange HPLC, assay by fluorometry. B6 status: >30 nmol/L adequate, ≥0.8 acceptable, <0.5 marginal or inadequate. RBC—aminotransferases, reflect long-term pyridoxine status; ALT more sensitive to B_6 deficiency than ALT. U—4-pyridoxic acid, dietary intake of B_6. U—xanthenuric acid, tryptophane metabolite. Tryptophan load test U.
Riboflavin, vitamin B_2	M: 1.3 mg F: 1.1 mg Riboflavin destroyed by light	Milk, enriched grains, broccoli, asparagus, dark leafy greens, whole grains, enriched breads, cereals. Also, dairy products, meats, fish, poultry, eggs.	RBC—glutathione reductase, expressed as ratio of assays with and without flavin adenine dinucleotide. 24-h U—riboflavin measures recent intake, not body stores, nonspecific; varies with physical activity.
Thiamine, vitamin B_1	M: 1.2 mg F: 1.1 mg	Whole or enriched grains, flour, lean pork, legumes, seeds, nuts	RBC—transketolase activity, expressed as ratio of assays with and without thiamin pyrophosphate. 24-h U—thiamine measures recent dietary intake, not body stores.

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 26-2
Vitamins: RDA, Food Sources, and Analysis of Body Levels—cont'd

	RDA	Food Sources	Laboratory Assessment for Subclinical Deficiency States
Fat-Soluble Vitamins			
Vitamin A, retinol	Retinol activity equivalents = (RAE) M: 900 µg RAE F: 700 µg RAE	Natural preformed vitamin A only in fat of animal-related foods: whole milk, butter, liver, egg yolks, fatty fish Carotenoids are found in deep green, yellow, and orange fruits and vegetables. Broccoli, cantaloupe, sweet potato, carrots, tomatoes, spinach	Hemolysis interferes. Liver retinol stores: S-retinol, insensitive test. Dose response: S-retinol and dehydroretinol by HPLC 4-6 h after oral 3,4-didehydroretinylacetate (100 µg/kg), more sensitive index than S-retinol of marginal retinol status. RDR—relative dose response. RBP—retinol-binding protein, index of retinol, low specificity. In vitamin A deficiency, RBP accumulates in liver as apo RBP (RBP not bound to retinol). After retinol dose, retinol binds to apo. RBP in liver, holo RBP (RBP bound to retinol) released from liver, causing increased S-retinol. Blood sample at baseline and 5 h after oral vitamin A. Calculate RDR (%) > 14%-20 %, marginal vitamin A status. S—carotenoids indicate current intake of carotenoids. Rapid dark adaptation (RDA) for night blindness.
Vitamin D, cholecalciferol	AI M/F: 5µg Ages: 51-70 yrs 10 µg >70 yrs 15 µg	Butter, egg yolks, liver, fatty fish. Vitamin D–fortified milk. Sunlight exposure converts precursor to active Vitamin D.	S—25-hydroxy vitamin D: Deficiency: <3 nmol/L Toxicity: >500 nmol/L Separate S—25(OH)-D by HPLC, assay by CPBA, indicates total endogenous and exogenous vitamin D, reflects vitamin D content of liver.
Vitamin E, tocopherol	α-tocopherol equivalents = α-TE M/F: 15 mg α-TE	Vegetable oils, corn, soy, safflower. Whole grains, seeds, nuts, wheat germ, green leafy vegetables.	Ratio S—tocopherol; S—lipids; reverse phase HPLC with high sensitivity fluorescence detector; levels correlate with s—cholesterol deficiency when ratio <0.6 mg total tocopherol/g serum lipids.
Vitamin K, phytomenadione	AI M: 120 µg Φ: 90 µg	Vitamin K synthesized by bacteria in jejunum and ileum; dietary intake is still required. Dark green leafy vegetables	Prothrombin time.

Data from McCormick et al, 1994; Gibson, 2002; Grodner et al, 2004; Brewster, 1996.
AI, Adequate intake; *ALT,* alanine aminotransferase; *CPBA,* competitive protein binding assay; *F,* female; *FIGLU,* formiminoglutamic acid; *HPLC,* high-performance liquid chromatography; *M,* male; *M/F,* male/female; *NAD,* nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide; *NE,* niacin equivalent; *P,* plasma; *PT,* prothrombin time; *RAE,* retinol activity equivalents; *RBC,* erythrocyte; *RBP,* index of retinol; *RDA,* recommended dietary allowance; *RDR,* relative dose response; *S,* serum; *U,* urine; *WBC,* leukocyte.

Cobalamin is only present in animal products, including meat (especially liver), milk, cheese, eggs, and other animal proteins. The other members of the vitamin B complex are found in leafy green vegetables, milk, and liver. Vitamin A and niacin have precursor substances that can be converted to the active vitamin form in humans. Vitamin K and biotin are produced by the gut microflora but in insufficient quantities to sustain metabolism. Niacin and vitamin D can be made in the human body. Both thiamine and biotin have natural antagonists (Williams, 2002).

Deficiencies are particularly important at the extremes of life and are a concern for developing fetuses, infants, and the elderly (Seymour, 2000). Deficiencies are also frequent for those with protein energy malnutrition in developing nations. In developed countries, the conditions resulting in vitamin deficiencies include decreased intake, absorption, or production. Decreased intake characteristically occurs in patients suffering from alcoholism (thiamine); small bowel disease (folate and the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K); vegans (vitamin D, cobalamin); and the elderly (vitamin D, folate). Conditions resulting in decreased absorption include liver and biliary tract disease (vitamins A, D, E, and K) and ileal disease or resection (cobalamin). Conditions that cause decreased production include renal disease (vitamin D) and the use of drugs such as methotrexate (folate). Deficiencies also occur in those with long-term chronic disease such as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). The assessment of body stores and the chronic nutritional state for the micronutrients continues to present difficulties. Tests often indicate only the recent nutritional intake. A therapeutic trial of the nutriment considered deficient is often the easiest and most reliable approach. Specific diagnostic strategies are also helpful (Feldman, 1994; Gibson, 2002; see Table 26-2).

Toxicity rarely results from excessive dietary intake. Toxicity is usually due to overdoses of vitamin supplements. Single large doses of the water-soluble vitamins are rarely toxic because they are rapidly excreted, but repeated doses can cause toxicity. Vitamin A has a toxic potential greater than that for the other hypervitaminoses, although the actual incidence is low. Intakes as low as 25 times the RDA are considered potentially toxic for vitamin A. Carotenoids have a low toxicity. Vitamin D also has a relatively high potential for toxicity. Intakes of about 50 times the RDA have been reported as toxic in humans. Children have been particularly sensitive when large doses of vitamin D were used for prophylaxis or treatment of rickets, and hypervitaminosis D has been exacerbated by high intakes of calcium and phosphorus (Combs, 1998).

WATER-SOLUBLE VITAMINS

Thiamine

Thiamine pyrophosphate (TPP) (vitamin B_1) is an essential cofactor of enzymes involved in carbohydrate amino acid intermediary metabolism and is important in brain function. Good sources include yeast, legumes, enriched grain products, and pork. Early signs of deficiency include anorexia, weight loss, muscle weakness, apathy, confusion, and irritability. Later consequences include edema and high-output cardiac failure (wet beriberi), polyneuropathy with depressed reflexes, paresthesias, weakness and muscle atrophy (dry beriberi), and psychosis (Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome) characterized by dementia, ataxia, and ophthalmoplegia. Lesions of the mammillary bodies and the area that abuts the third ventricle are distinctive findings (Rubin & Strayer, 2005). The infantile form occurs in infants that are breastfed for months, without supplementation. Cardiac failure in young infants may be sudden and rapidly fatal. Alcohol abuse in adults is often associated with deficiency, perhaps because alcohol interferes with thiamine uptake and metabolism. Thiamine deficiency is also seen in those with poor nutrition. No toxicity is described from high oral doses. Antithiamine factors are present in betel, tea, and some foods. In the United States, all breads and flour are enriched with thiamine. There is a significant loss of thiamine when foods are cooked in water, and it is unstable at high temperatures. Thiamine is produced in the colon by normal enteric bacteria, although the contribution is apparently slight, and it is absorbed throughout the small intestine. It is bound to albumin in the plasma. At high thiamine intakes, the excess is excreted in the urine

http://basicbook.net

(Kohlmeier, 2003). Red blood cell transketolase activity with or without TPP added is a useful test for assessing thiamine deficiency. Heparinized whole blood is required, and the test is best run on a fresh specimen (Truswell & Milne, 2002). The most reliable test for thiamine deficiency is the response to the parenteral administration of thiamine (Rubin & Strayer, 2005; Olsen & Regis, 2010).

In one case, a 21-year-old man with delirium was seen in an emergency department. He had a 3-month history of poor appetite and double vision, drooping eyelids, tinnitus, shortness of breath, forgetfulness, and generalized weakness. For 6 weeks prior, he had been depressed and had lost over 30 pounds. There was no history of substance abuse or prior illness and no family history of illness.

Cachexia was prominent on examination. His current weight was 95 pounds, blood pressure was 174/116, and heart rate was 153 beats/min. Oxygen saturation was 97% on room air (body mass index 14.1 kg/m^2), and temperature was 98.4° F; his reflexes were normal. Muscle power was reduced, and EKG showed supraventricular tachycardia. Full blood count was normal. Glucose concentration was 200 mg/dL, creatinine was 11.9 mg/dL, urea nitrogen was 28 mg/dL, protein was 8.5 g/dL, calcium was 10.8 mg/dL, and bilirubin was 2.2 mg/dL. Tests of thyroid function were normal, and the urine drug screen was negative. A chest radiograft disclosed cardiomegaly. Diagnosis was wet beriberi and Wernicke's encephalopathy. He was given 100 mg of intravenous thiamine, and within hours of treatment, his mental state improved, and after 4 days, besides some residual tinnitus, he had returned to his normal level of functioning (Olsen & Regis, 2010). In developed countries, thiamine deficiency is rarely seen.

Riboflavin

Vitamin B_2 normally forms two coenzymes: flavin mononucleotide and flavin adenine dinucleotide. These have an important role in electron transport in several oxidative systems. Dietary sources include milk and dairy products, meat, poultry, fish, and green vegetables. Bread and cereals are fortified with riboflavin. Absorption is mostly in the jejunum. Riboflavin is so prevalent in the diet that deficiency severe enough to cause marked debilities is not known. Mild riboflavin deficiencies are likely common. Deficiency frequently occurs in association with a lack of thiamine and/or niacin (Guyton & Hall, 1997). With prolonged deficiency, cracking and swelling of the lips (cheilosis); cracking and inflammation of the angles of the mouth (angular stomatitis); deep-red smooth tongue, called magenta tongue (glossitis, atrophy); a greasy scaling of the cheeks and the areas behind the ears (seborrheic dermatitis); and normocytic anemia can appear (Kohlmeier, 2003). Interstitial keratitis of the cornea is the most troubling lesion. It results in corneal opacification and ulceration (Rubin & Strayer, 2005) Deficiencies during infancy and childhood impair growth. There is little danger of toxicity because excess riboflavin is rapidly lost. A 24-hour urine screen will indicate recent riboflavin intake (Kohlmeier, 2003).

Niacin

Vitamin B_3 (nicotinic acid) plays a major role in the formation of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) and its phosphate NADP, which are important in intermediary metabolism and a large number of oxidation-reduction reactions. Animal proteins are foods high in tryptophan, such as meat, eggs, and milk. They are good sources for endogenously synthesized niacin. Urine is the main excretory path for niacin metabolites. Niacin is in many grains. Deficiency causes pellagra, which is now uncommon but can be seen in malnourished alcoholics and in food faddists who do not eat sufficient protein, are trytophan deficient, and are not taking exogenous niacin. Malabsorption of tryptophan, as seen in Hartnup disease, or the carcinoid syndrome, where the tryptophan is consumed to make serotonin, may produce mild symptoms of pellagra. Pyridoxine and riboflavin deficiencies increase the requirement for niacin because they are both cofactors and are required for the synthesis of niacin. Corn is a poor source of tryptophan, and the niacin in corn is bound and poorly available. Pellagra is prevalent in areas where corn (maize) is the staple food, such as in certain parts of Africa (Guyton & Hall, 1997).

Pellegra is characterized by dermatitis, diarrhea, dementia, and, if untreated, death. A scaly dermatitis can form on areas exposed to light or pressure, such as the knees and elbows. The hands show a rough, scaly dermatitis with a glove-like distribution and a pattern of hyperkeratosis, vascularization, and chronic inflammation. Similar lesions are seen in the mouth and vaginal mucous membranes (Rubin & Strayer, 2005). Excessive intake of niacin causes flushing (burning and itching of the face, chest, and arms) and gastric irritation. Liver damage may result from continued, very high doses, as have been used in the past to treat elevated cholesterol.

Pyridoxine

Vitamin B_6 is a coenzyme that participates in more than 100 transamination, decarboxylation, and other reactions, including the initial step of porphyrin synthesis, glycogen mobilization, amino acid transsulfuration, and neurotransmitter synthesis. Good food sources include fortified cereals, organ meats, muscle foods, potatoes, and fruits other than citrus. Cooking results in leaching of the pyridoxine. Urine is the major excretory pathway. Deficiencies are usually seen along with other vitamin or protein deficiencies, and they can occur in alcoholics. Deficiency of pyridoxine is uncommon and may cause a microcytic hypochromic anemia where the iron stores are saturated, epileptic seizures, EEG abnormalities, depression, confusion, seborrheic dermatitis, and possibly platelet and clotting abnormalities. Several inborn errors of amino acid metabolism respond to very high doses of pyridoxine. Homocysteinuria, where there is an increased risk of cardiovascular disease, responds to supplements of folate, cobalamin, and sometimes pyridoxine.

Plasma pyridoxal 5-phosphate (PLP) is the major coenzyme form in the body and the primary form of circulating vitamin B_6 in plasma (Truswell, 2002). Normal >30 nmol/L indicates adequate status in adults. Urinary 24-h 4-pyridoxic acid: Level reflects recent dietary intake of vitamin B_6. Levels vary with age, sex, and pregnancy. >0.8 mg/day acceptable vitamin B_6 status. Urinary xanthurenic acid after a tryptophan (or methionine) oral load: an indirect measure of functional vitamin B_6 deficiency. Activity of erythrocyte alanine aminotransferase, with and without in vitro PLP: RBC-ALT diminished in deficiency. Excessive intake: Very high doses of pyridoxine (>100 mg/d in adults) may cause a peripheral sensory neuropathy and possibly skin lesions (Kohlmeier, 2003).

Cobalamin

Cobalamin is a complex cobalt-containing molecule, synthesized only by bacteria. It comprises several "vitamers." Cyanocobalamin and hydroxycobalamin are pharmacologic forms, whereas adenosylcobalamin and methylcobalamin are the main biological forms. The main known cofactor roles of cobalamin are in the synthesis of succinate from methylmalonate and the synthesis of methionine from homocysteine. Thus cobalamin deficiency results in increased levels of methylmalonate and homocysteine. Clinically, many manifestations of deficiency are similar to those of folate deficiency and can be overcome by large amounts of folate. These include impaired deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) synthesis, which results in megaloblastic anemia. Cobalamin deficiency also causes neuropsychiatric damage, largely related to demyelination in the posterior columns of the spinal cord, peripheral nerves, and even the cerebrum. Neurologic damage is not relieved, and may even be worsened, by treatment with folate.

Absorption of cobalamin is unique in that it requires formation of a complex between it and a glycoprotein called intrinsic factor (IF), which is secreted by the parietal cells of the stomach. The complex is then absorbed in the terminal ileum. Inadequate dietary intake is not the usual cause of cobalamin deficiency. The most common cause is autoimmune atrophic gastritis, known as pernicious anemia, which results in diminished production of IF (Stabler, 2013).

Normal body stores of cobalamin are sufficient to last for 3 to 6 years. Food sources include liver, shellfish, fish, meat, eggs, milk, cheese, and yogurt. Vegans are at risk for cobalamin deficiency (Eastwood, 2003). Plasma cobalamin of less than 80 pg/mL indicates a cobalamin deficiency, but the test does not have good sensitivity and specificity. Elevated serum or urinary methylmalonate and raised plasma homocysteine also indicate that cobalamin is low. The classical Schilling test uses radiolabeled cobalamin to measure its absorption on different days, with and without intrinsic factor (West, 2002), but it is not generally available today. Only about one-fourth of circulating cobalamin is bound to the transport protein transcobalamin and thus is available for transport into cells. Measurement of this holotranscobalamin fraction may provide a better assessment of B_{12} status, but it has not yet been well validated.

Ascorbate

Ascorbate (vitamin C) is a powerful reducing agent that is involved in many oxidation-reduction reactions and the transfer of protons. Ascorbate participates in the synthesis of chondroitin sulfate and in the formation of the hydroxyproline of collagen. It has an important role in wound healing, the biosynthesis of some neurotransmitters, and immune function (Rubin & Strayer, 2005). It is essential for gums, arteries, and other soft tissues; bone (collagen synthesis); brain and nerve function (neurotransmitter and hormone synthesis); nutrient metabolism (especially iron, protein, and fat); and antioxidant defense and free radical scavenging (directly and by vitamin E activation). Ascorbate is in high concentration in leukocytes,

http://basicbook.net

adrenal glands, pituitary glands, and the brain. Food sources are fruits, including citrus; berries; tomatoes; and many vegetables. Prolonged storage and overcooking can cause significant vitamin loss. The RDA is 90 mg/day for men and 75 mg/day for women. Deficiency, termed *scurvy*, presents with symptoms of bleeding gums, painful swollen joints, poor wound healing, confusion, fatigue, and diminished immune function. Today, it is mostly seen in alcoholics and in elderly individuals who eat a poor diet. The symptoms of scurvy have been described since antiquity. The disease was widespread among sailors in the sixteenth to eighteenth centuries, and the typical pattern involved bleeding gums; painful, swollen joints; and muscle weakness. Onset was within months of the start of a voyage. British expeditions had devastating losses of men due to scurvy. The carnage prompted the Admiralty to seek a cure, and in 1747, James Lind, a Scottish surgeon, performed a clinical nutrition experiment on a ship in which he gave six different diet supplements to six pairs of scorbutic sailors. He found that oranges and lemons cured scurvy, and he reported these results in his book *Treatise of The Scurvy* (Jacob, 1994). He believed that scurvy was caused by dampness and the crowded conditions on ships. Only subsequently was it discovered that scurvy was due to ascorbate deficiency.

Daily ingestion of 2000 mg or more of ascorbate can cause gastric and intestinal irritation and kidney stones, and it can interfere with copper metabolism. Unlike other vertebrates, humans are not able to complete the synthesis of ascorbate (Kohlmeier, 2003). Tests to assess ascorbate status can be performed using serum or leukocytes. Both correlate well with dietary intake. Urine assays, however, tend to reflect recent dietary intake (Skeaff, 2002).

Folate

Folate is the generic name for compounds related to folic acid (pteroylglutamic acid). Like cobalamin, it plays a coenzyme role in one-carbon transfer reactions, and deficiency leads to impaired synthesis of purines and pyrimidines and thus of DNA (Guyton & Hall, 1997). It is also important for the maturation of erythrocytes. It is widely available from plants and, to a lesser extent, organ meats. More than half of the folate content of food is lost during cooking. Deficiency results in a megaloblastic anemia and leukopenia. In pregnancy, fetal neural tube defects are associated with low folate levels, and periconceptual supplementation markedly reduces the incidence (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000).

Pantothenic Acid

Pantothenic acid is part of coenzyme A (CoA) and acyl carrier protein (ACP). Both are carriers of acyl groups. Acetyl-CoA is involved in the tricarboxylic acid cycle, and CoA is involved in the synthesis of lipids. It is transported in erythrocytes as CoA. The highest tissue concentrations are found in the liver, adrenals, kidneys, brain, heart, and testes. CoA and ACP are metabolized to free pantothenic acid and excreted in the urine. Urine levels indicate dietary intake and range from 2 mg to 7 mg/day. Pantothenic acid is widely present in foods, and dietary deficiency only occurs in severe malnutrition with other nutrient deficiencies. The "burning feet syndrome" that was seen in malnourished prisoners of war during World War II responded to large doses of Ca-pantothenate (Truswell & Milne, 2002).

Biotin

Biotin is a coenzyme for several carboxylase enzymes that include pyruvate carboxylase (provides oxaloacetate for the tricarboxylic acid cycle), acetyl CoA (coenzyme A), and carboxylase (fatty acid synthesis). Biotin deficiency is rare because it is found in many foods, and large intestine bacterial production supplements the dietary intake. Avidin, an antivitamin, is found in uncooked egg whites and can produce a deficiency of biotin when large amounts are ingested because avidin binds biotin in the gut, preventing absorption. Biotin deficiency in humans has resulted from the failure to include biotin in total parenteral nutrition and is characterized by a scaly dermatitis, glossitis, hair loss, anorexia, depression, and hypercholesterolemia (Truswell & Milne, 2002).

FAT-SOLUBLE VITAMINS

Vitamin A and Retinol

Vitamin A activity is obtained from two compound classes that include preformed vitamin A, retinol and related compounds, and the precursors β-carotene and related carotenoids. The latter are the provitamins and are found in yellow and red pigments in vegetables and some fruits. Retinol is essential for vision at low light intensities, synthesis of "active sulphate," and reproduction. Retinoic acid also plays a part in cellular differentiation, morphogenesis, synthesis of glycoproteins, gene expression, immunity, growth, and the prevention of cancer and heart disease (Truswell, 2002). Vitamin A is needed to maintain certain specialized cell membranes; for skeletal maturation; for the formation of the light-sensitive rods of the retina; and for the structure of cell membranes. Vitamin A deficiency is unusual in developed countries, but it continues to be a frequent cause of blindness due to corneal damage in the poorer regions of the world, particularly parts of Africa, the Middle East, and Southeast Asia. Retinol is in high concentration in fish liver, and leafy green vegetables are a rich source of carotene (Rubin & Strayer, 2005). Hippocrates (466-377 BCE) believed that consuming liver could cure night blindness (West, 2002). Vitamin A deficiency is usually seen where the diet includes few dairy products and vegetables for long periods of time or in malabsorption syndromes (Eastwood, 2003). Deficiency results in squamous metaplasia, which causes the sweat and tear ducts to be blocked by squamous debris. The epithelia of the trachea, bronchi, renal pelvis, pancreatic ducts, uterus, and salivary glands are often affected. The earliest sign of vitamin A deficiency is vision loss in dim light (night blindness).Toxicity is usually produced by excessive vitamin A supplements, especially in children. Vitamin A toxicity occurred in explorers who ate polar bear livers, which have an exceptionally high concentration of vitamin A. In toxicity, the liver and spleen are enlarged with lipid-laden macrophages. Vitamin A is in the hepatocytes, and prolonged toxicity causes cirrhosis. Headache, hyperexcitability, and bone pain are early symptoms. The lesions are mostly reversible, early in the course, upon discontinuation of the excessive dosing. High doses of synthetic derivatives of retinoic acid are teratogenic. Excessive carotene is benign and causes a jaundice-like discoloration of the skin (Rubin & Strayer, 2005).

Circulating retinol concentrations do not consistently correlate with retinol total body stores. The relative dose–response test (Loerch, 1979) indirectly assesses the stores. Two blood samples are collected—one before and one 5 hours after a physiologic dose of vitamin A. In vitamin A–depleted subjects, a rapid, sustained rise in serum retinol concentration occurs, compared with a lower, shallow rise in those who are vitamin A sufficient (Loerch, 1979).

Vitamin D

Vitamin D (cholecalciferol) plays an essential role as a hormone in the control of calcium and phosphorus metabolism. Ultraviolet light exposure of the skin converts naturally occurring 7-dehydrocholesterol to cholecalciferol or vitamin D_3. Because the body can produce vitamin D, some refer to it as a hormone. It is actually a vitamin for those who are mostly indoors, especially in northern latitudes, as well as those whose clothing completely covers their skin, blocking sunlight. Cholecalciferol is diet-derived from animal sources, particularly fish liver and oils. Ergocalciferol, or vitamin D_2, which is of equal potency in humans, is derived from its provitamin ergosterol, which occurs in fungi and plants and is the major synthetic form used to fortify milk and margarine. Both vitamins D_2 and D_3 require hydroxylation to the active form that occurs in the liver and kidney. Vitamin D promotes absorption of calcium and phosphate from the small intestine (DeLuca, 1992; Truswell, 2002). Deficiency results from an inadequate diet; insufficient sunlight reaching the skin; inadequate absorption, such as what occurs in fat malabsorption syndromes; or failure of conversion to the active metabolite due to chronic hepatic or renal disease. In children before the epiphyses have closed, the bone lesion syndrome is called rickets; in adults, it is called osteomalacia. The incidence has declined with the addition of ergosterol to milk and other foods (Rubin & Strayer, 2005). The major function of vitamin D is the homeostasis of Ca^{++} and phosphate, regulating intestinal adsorption, bone mineralization and mobilization, and renal excretion (Combs, 1998). Hypervitaminosis D is often due to the ingestion of excessive vitamin D preparations. The abnormal conversion of active metabolites occurs sometimes in sarcoidosis. Hypervitaminosis D causes hypercalcemia. Early symptoms are weakness and headache. The sequelae of hypercalcemia include hypercalcuria, nephrocalcinosis, nephrolithiasis, and ectopic calcification of blood vessels, heart, and lungs (Rubin & Strayer, 2005). In a recent report, administration of high-dose vitamin D_3 did not reduce the hospital length of stay in critically ill patients. Lower hospital mortality was observed in the severely vitamin-deficient patients (Amrein et al, 2014).

Overexposure to ultraviolet light can cause a sunburn on the skin, but it does not cause hypervitaminosis D. Plasma calcium and phosphate fall in vitamin D deficiency, and plasma alkaline phosphatase (bone isoenzyme) is increased in rickets and osteomalacia. The most direct way to determine vitamin D status is by an assay of plasma 25(OH)D (Truswell, 2002), which may be performed either by immunoassay or mass spectrometric methods. Immunoassays of 1,25-dihydroxyD are also available but are more appropriate for evaluating states of calcium dysregulation than nutritional status.

http://basicbook.net

Vitamin D deficiency has been associated with many health risks, and it appears that optimal 25(OH)D plasma levels are in the vicinity of 30 ng/mL, whereas levels less than 20 ng/mL may be regarded as deficient (Bischoff-Ferrari, 2014).

Vitamin E

Vitamin E (tocopherol) is a fat-soluble antioxidant or free radical scavenger that inactivates oxygen free radicals. Although there are eight naturally occurring forms, vitamin E is the only known lipid-soluble antioxidant in plasma and red blood cell membranes. Corn and soy beans are rich in vitamin E. Deficiency is very uncommon, but it may occur as a result of malabsorption, in total parenteral nutrition, or in premature infants. The clinical findings in deficiencies have been inconsistent, with reports of ataxia and lost reflexes. There is no known toxicity (Eastwood, 2003; Amrein et al, 2014).

Vitamin K

Vitamin K (phytomenadione) is involved in the activation of important proteins in blood coagulation, prothrombin (II), factor VII, factor IX, and factor X, as well as Protein C and Protein S. Deficiency of the factors listed can result in defective clotting and a bleeding disorder. Prothrombin time functionally monitors the vitamin K activity. It occurs in two forms. Vitamin K_1 is present in fresh green vegetables like broccoli, cabbage, and spinach and in beef liver. Vitamin K_2 is produced by intestinal bacteria. Dietary deficiency is uncommon. It does occur in fat malabsorption as in sprue and biliary obstruction. Also, antibiotic sterilization of the intestinal flora may result in vitamin K deficiency.

TRACE ELEMENTS

Trace mineral elements are metals, except for selenium and the halogens, fluoride, and iodine. Individually, they are in tissue concentrations of less than 1 µg/g of wet tissue (Kane & Kumar, 2005) and constitute less than 0.01% of dry body weight (Gibson, 1990; Taylor, 1996). They are referred to as "trace elements" because quantitation was not possible with the analytical methods available at that time (O'Dell & Sunde, 1997). Essential trace elements are those that result in an impairment of normal health, function, or development when there is a deficiency that is corrected when supplemented with physiological levels of that element (Mertz, 1981a; Gibson, 1990) and have specific in vivo metabolic functions that cannot be effectively replaced by other similar elements (Milne, 1994).

The various essential trace elements were discovered by several different means. Deficiencies of some of these elements were found in areas where the soil, water, or plants were inadequate in a specific element, such as iodine, fluorine, cobalt, or copper. Deficiencies were also identified when essential elements became biologically unavailable because of interference by other dietary ingestants. One example is the zinc deficiency seen in males in the Middle East and in Hispanics in Denver, Colorado, as a result of eating unleavened bread high in phytate and low fiber and low meat diets (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000). Other deficiencies were caused by a mutation that resulted in a lack of a protein needed to absorb or metabolize the element. The symptoms of still other deficiencies were identified in patients whose diets lacked a necessary element or in those on total parenteral nutrition not supplemented with an essential trace element (O'Dell & Sunde, 1997).

Ten trace mineral elements have been generally recognized as essential in humans (Table 26-3). Only copper, iodine, iron, selenium, and zinc are associated with well-characterized deficiency states (Kane & Kumar, 2005). A necessary biochemical role has not been conclusively demonstrated for chromium, fluorine, or manganese, although signs of deficiency have been described (Mertz, 1981b). It is difficult to create a deficient model because of the ubiquitous distribution of these elements in the environment and food supply, which frequently causes contamination of the testing system, and because only minute amounts are needed to support physiologic processes. It remains uncertain whether any of the other trace mineral elements are essential in animals and humans. Some authors have concluded that arsenic, boron, lithium, nickel, silicon, and vanadium, which have been shown to have essential biochemical roles in some animal species, are presumptively essential in humans as well (Milne, 1994).

The roles of the trace mineral elements include structural, signal transduction, and especially catalytic properties (Table 26-4). Some of the trace mineral elements are components of metalloenzymes, function as enzyme cofactors, provide electron and oxygen transport, and are active in the maintenance of macromolecule conformation or vitamin and hormonal activity. These trace minerals are avidly accumulated by cells under the control of several families of proteins (Finney & O'Halloran, 2003).

TABLE 26-3
Classification of Trace Mineral Elements

Essential in Humans and Animals	Essential in Some Animals and Possibly in Humans	Possibly Essential in Some Animals	Not Essential
Chromium	Arsenic	Bromine	Aluminum
Cobalt	Boron	Cadmium	Antimony
Copper	Lithium	Lead	Bismuth
Fluorine	Nickel	Strontium	Germanium
Iodine	Silicon	Tin	Mercury
Iron	Vanadium		Silver
Manganese			Thallium
Molybdenum			Titanium
Selenium			
Zinc			

Data from Gibson, 1990; O'Dell & Sunde, 1997.

Normally, homeostasis of these elements is tightly controlled. Only some of the biochemical mechanisms of the clinical effects of trace element deficiencies have been determined (Mertz, 1981b).

Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs) were introduced by the Food and Nutrition Board, Institute of Medicine of the National Academy of Sciences in 1997 and provide four types of dietary reference values. Using nutrient-specific dietary standards/references, they are intended primarily for nutritionists (Barr et al, 2002) and were published in 1997 (IOM, 1997), 1998 (IOM, 1998), 2000 (IOM, 2000), and 2002 (IOM, 2002). DRIs have been published for the micronutrients, including the essential trace mineral elements, other trace elements, and all of the vitamins. The four dietary reference values included in the DRIs are the EAR, RDA, AI, and UL (Food and Nutrition Board, Institute of Medicine, 2000).

- Estimated Average Requirement (EAR): The average daily nutrient intake level estimated to meet the requirements of half the healthy individuals in a particular life stage and gender group.
- Recommended Dietary Allowance (RDA): The average daily nutrient intake level sufficient to meet the nutrient requirement of nearly all (97% to 98%) healthy individuals in a particular life stage and gender group.
- Adequate Intake (AI): A recommended average daily nutrient intake level based on observed or experimentally determined approximations or estimates of nutrient intake by a group (or groups) of apparently healthy people that are assumed to be adequate; used when an RDA cannot be determined.
- Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL): The highest average daily nutrient intake level likely to pose no risk of adverse health effects to almost all individuals in the general population. As intake increases above the UL, the potential risk of adverse effects increases.

Deficiencies of trace elements are usually due to nutritional deficiency; inadequate supplementation in total parenteral nutrition; or a disease state in which there is insufficient intestinal absorption or increased excretion or utilization. Deficiencies can also be due to interaction between trace elements (e.g., zinc and copper) and with other nutrients (e.g., zinc and vitamin A) interfering with absorption or adversely affecting metabolic utilization. Large amounts of dietary zinc interfere with intestinal copper absorption and result in copper deficiency and anemia (Milne, 1994; Willis et al, 2005). Genetic defects in trace element metabolism include Menkes' kinky hair syndrome (copper), congenital atransferrinemia (iron), acrodermatitis enteropathica (zinc), and xanthine and sulfite oxidase deficiencies (molybdenum) (Gibson, 1990).

Considerable care is required for analysis of trace elements because of their wide distribution in the environment and the ready biological and environmental contamination with these elements, because they are often present in needles, syringes, stoppers, water, and air. Special collection and handling are necessary. Clean room techniques and ultrapure reagents must be used. Reference materials and strict quality control are requisite with each assay run to ensure analytical accuracy. It is especially important that trained technical personnel perform the testing (Mertz, 1975; Veillon, 1986). Improved materials are now available for collecting, processing, and analyzing trace elements that reduce contamination. These include trace element–free syringes, evacuated tubes with fitted siliconized needles,

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 26-4
Function, Deficiency, and Toxicity of Essential Trace Mineral Elements

Element	Function/Enzyme Component	Effects of Deficiency	Effects of Toxicity
Chromium (Cr)	Potentiates insulin action, glucose and lipid metabolism, Cr(III) low toxicity, poorly absorbed. Component of glucose tolerance factor.	No method to determine deficiency in humans; impaired glucose tolerance in type 2 diabetes, insulin resistance, hyperglycemia, peripheral neuropathy, hyperlipidemia	Cr(VI) toxic, oxidative damage, skin ulcers, contact dermatitis, asthma, renal and hepatic necrosis, lung cancer
Cobalt (Co)	Hemoglobin synthesis. Component of vitamin B_{12}.	Cobalt deficiency, as such, not in humans; symptoms due to lack of vitamin B_{12}: Anemia, anorexia, growth depression	Cardiomyopathy, heart failure, goiter, hypothyroidism; warm sensation, vomiting, diarrhea
Copper (Cu)	Cellular respiration, neurotransmitter regulator, oxidation reaction, electron transport, collagen synthesis, development of vascular and skeletal structures and CNS, antioxidant. Component of $CuZnSO_4$, metallothionein, cytochrome c, tyrosinase, dopamine β-hydroxylase, lysyl oxidase.	Menkes' kinky hair syndrome, X-linked, congenital failure of Cu absorption; abnormal collagen cross-linking, muscle weakness Iron refractory hypochromic anemia, leukopenia, neurologic defects, hypopigmentation. In prematurity: Bone fractures, skeletal defects Occurs in malnourished children and premature infants not supplemented	Relatively nontoxic Wilson disease: Autosomal recessive, failure to excrete Cu in bile: Excess Cu in liver, kidneys, brain, eyes, hepatic necrosis, hypertension, Kayser-Fleischer rings in eyes Cu interferes with absorption of iron and zinc
Fluorine (F)	Prevents tooth decay.	Increased dental caries	Mottled enamel, fluorosis
Iodine (I)	Component of thyroid hormone.	Goiter, hypothyroidism, cretinism in infants, myxedema in adults	Goiter, thyrotoxicosis
Iron (Fe)	Oxygen transport, respiration, amino acids and free-radical metabolism, lipids, oxidative phosphorylation. Component of hemoglobin, metalloenzymes, vitamin A.	Hypochromic microcytic anemia, glossitis, angular stomatitis, cheilosis, koilonychia Blood loss or inadequate iron intake; iron deficiency anemia: <7 g/100 mL blood	Hemochromatosis: Genetic, primary, autosomal recessive; acquired, secondary, iron overload Iron deposition in liver, pancreas, heart, and skin
Manganese (Mn)	Bone and connective tissue. Component of metalloenzymes: hydrolases, oxidoreductases and lipases, pyruvate carboxylase, superoxide dismutase, and arginase.	Not well defined in humans; skeletal and cartilage defects	Least toxic of trace elements Psychiatric disorders: Memory, speech, hallucinations; syndrome resembles Parkinson's and Wilson's diseases
Molybdenum (Mo)	DNA metabolism, essential for uric acid production. Component of sulfite and xanthine oxidase.	Naturally occurring deficiency not known, growth depression, hypercuprinemia, defective keratin form, goiter, cretinism	Anemia, goiter, thyrotoxicosis, hypouricemia, hyperoxypurinemia
Selenium (Se)	Protects against oxidative damage of lipid, gene expression, thyroxine deiodinase. Component of glutathione peroxidase	Keshan disease: cardiomyopathy, cardiomegaly, heart failure, cataracts, osteoarthritis in children, myopathy, discolored/thickened nails, impaired growth	Hair and nail loss, selenosis, tooth decay, neuropathy, liver failure, garlic odor on breath
Zinc (Zn)	Protein synthesis, zinc finger proteins—gene expression, immunity, needed for normal skin, bones, and hair. Component of metallothionein ~300 enzymes.	Acrodermatitis enteropathica; causes cardiomyopathy in children. In children, low height, hypogeusia, growth retardation, infertility, immune deficits, delayed wound healing, glossitis, seborrheic-like dermatitis, osteoporosis.	Relatively nontoxic: Nausea, vomiting, and GI irritation; causes copper deficiency

Data from Fausto da Silva, 1991; Alcock, 1996; Kane & Kumar, 2005.
CNS, Central nervous system; *DNA,* deoxyribonucleic acid; *GI,* gastrointestinal.

acid-washed glassware, and standard reference materials with certified values (Casey & Robinson, 1983; Gibson, 1990; McNeely, 1986).

The major advances in understanding and managing the dynamics of trace mineral elements during the past 2 decades have been achieved by the extraordinary precision and sensitivity of improved analytical instruments. Atomic absorption spectrometry (AAS) is the most widely used instrument for clinical trace element analysis in biological samples. Graphite furnace AAS (GFAAS) has improved the Limit of Quantitation (LOQ) to parts per billion [ppb, µg/L] and permits the simultaneous measurement of multiple elements. Zeeman effect background correction improves the element signal measurement when testing in complex specimens such as serum, plasma, or blood, and other specimen handling enhancements have further improved sensitivity and precision. Flame AAS (FAAS) has an LOQ of ppm (mg/L). Atomic emission spectrometry (AES) consists of flame AES and plasma source emission spectrometry, which measures photon output rather than photon absorption, as in AAS. The emission line(s) of the excited electrons are measured. The LOQ is ppm (mg/L). The sample in neutron activation analysis (NAA) is irradiated with low-energy neutrons for the production of radioactive nuclides. In NAA there is excitation of the atomic nucleus, so the trace element is determined independent of its physical or chemical state. The newly formed radionuclide emits x-rays or γ-rays. The LOQ is ppb (µg/L) to ppt (ng/L) with multielement detection, but with a limited dynamic range. This technique is especially suited for in vitro trace element determination in biologic matrices. In instrumental neutron activation analysis (INAA), there is direct measurement of the emitted x or γ radiation. Inductively coupled plasma–mass spectroscopy (ICP-MS) is a highly sensitive and specific method for the measurement of multiple trace elements in a single run over an especially broad dynamic range with low background interference and LOQs of ppb (µg/L) to ppt (ng/L). An internal standard is used for enhanced precision (Milne, 1994; Chan et al, 1998a).

Testing for the assessment of trace element status requires either measurement of the concentration in accessible tissues (hair, nails) and body fluids (serum, urine) or the activity of a trace element–dependent enzyme. There are no particularly good indicators for the determination of trace element dietary status because of the poor correlation with total body stores. The only definitive test of human trace mineral element deficiency is the clinical response to controlled supplementation with the element of concern, followed by an evaluation of improvement of an impaired function (Milne, 1994; Eastwood, 2003). A combination of tests is usually more reliably interpretable, especially when the findings are concordant. The interpretation of plasma or serum levels can be deceptive because of the

http://basicbook.net

TABLE 26-5
Properties of Essential Trace Mineral Elements

Element	Tissue Distribution	Body Content	Transport (Reference Value)	Excretion
Chromium (Cr)	Spleen, heart	4-6 mg Cr(III)	Transferrin-P 0.15 µg/mL Cr (0.12-2.1 µg/L)	Urine 100-200 ng/day
Cobalt	Muscle, liver, fat	1.1 mg	Albumin (0.11-0.45 µg/L)	Urine 80%
Copper (Cu)	Muscle and liver Liver 30-50 µg/g dry; 50%-70% of body Cu	50-80 mg (1.2-2.5 µg/g fat-free tissue)	Ceruloplasmin 60%-95%, albumin, transcuperin (Cu-S 70-140 µg/dL)	Feces includes bile and unabsorbed dietary Cu
Iodine (I)	Thyroid: 70%-80% of total body I in thyroxine bound to thyroglobulin	15-20 mg (11-15 mg in thyroid)	Thyroxine-binding protein 80% thyroxine-binding prealbumin (transthyretin)	Urine 100-150 µg/day
Iron (Fe)	RBC Hb 400-600 mg/L, liver, spleen, bone marrow 25%, myoglobin	4-5 g (¾ in Hb) 50 mg/kg 2.5 g in RBCs	Transferrin-P (2-2.5 g/L) Ferritin-S 1 µg/L = 10 mg tissue iron stores Hemosiderin 1 g iron	Bile 84 µg/kg, blood loss, menses, GI mucosal cells
Manganese (Mn)	Liver, bone, pancreas	12-20 mg	Mn-Blood 200 nmol/L	Bile and intestinal secretions
Molybdenum (Mo)	Liver, kidney, bone, adrenal	Blood 30-700 nmol/L	RBC protein, α-1-macroglobulin (S: 8-34 µg/L)	Urine 90%, bile 10%
Selenium (Se)	Liver, kidney, muscle	15 mg	Protein (Se-P: 7-30 µg/dL)	Urine 60%, feces 40%
Zinc (Zn)	Muscle 60%, bone 30%, liver, prostate, semen	1.2-2.3 g	Albumin 60%-70%, α-2-macroglobulin (Zn-P 11-22 µmol/L)	Feces, gut secretions, GI mucosal cells

Data from Fausto da Silva, 1991; Milne, 1994; O'Dell & Sunde, 1997; Kohlmeier, 2003.
GI, Gastrointestinal; *Hb,* hemoglobin; *RBC,* red blood cell.

response to stress or when there is expansion of the blood volume or a decrease in serum albumin as what occurs, for example, in the third trimester of pregnancy. Also, hemolysis interferes. Serum zinc, copper, manganese, chromium, and molybdenum levels are not reliable for assessing nutritional status or dietary intake because the results do not reflect body stores. Both serum and urine concentrations indicate recent dietary intake (Table 26-5).

Hair and nail clippings must be collected with care and washed to avoid surface contamination. Trace element assays in blood, serum, or urine usually reflect the current nutriture. The first morning void urine is less affected by recent dietary intake. Load tests measure the change in urine concentration following a loading dose of the mineral element. When tissue levels are low, the deficiency will cause retention of the element. Similarly, tolerance tests measure the change in plasma concentration following a challenge dose. Usually the dose is in the pharmaceutical range rather than the physiological level normally experienced. Hair, finge nail, or toenail analyses provide a retrospective window or an assessment of chronic exposure for the period of hair or nail growth (Gibson, 2002). Because of the risk of environmental contamination, hair and nail clippings are of limited use in determining dietary intake or body status, except when reduced (Eastwood, 2003).

Toxicity is never a question of presence, only the amount. Each of the essential and nonessential trace mineral elements can be toxic when present in high concentrations. A poison is too much of anything. Toxicity is quite variable for the different trace elements. Some have a high toxicity. The toxic effects of selenium are produced by intakes of only 10 times the nutritional requirement. In contrast, chromium toxicity has never been reported after oral pharmacological doses (Gibson, 1990).

CHROMIUM

Chromium (Cr) is known to enhance the action of insulin (Mertz, 1998). Absorption of chromium from the intestine is low. Chromium sources include meats, whole grains, green beans, broccoli, and some spices. After absorption, chromium binds to plasma transferrin and then concentrates in the liver, spleen, other soft tissues, and bone. Clinical signs of chromium deficiency were first described in patients receiving parenteral nutrition. Only a few cases have been reported that in the absence of chromium were reversed on chromium supplementation, such as insulin-resistance glucose intolerance, weight loss, and sometimes neurological deficits. Chromium depletion is thought to be associated with increased cardiovascular risk, and supplementation has demonstrated increased HDL cholesterol and decreased insulin.

Hexavalent chromium is a recognized carcinogen. Industrial exposure to metal fumes and dust is associated with lung cancer, renal failure, dematitis, and skin ulcers. Health risks are caused by soil contamination by Cr^{6+} waste disposal sites left by leather tanning and dyestuff industries. Chromium is used extensively in the manufacture of stainless steel, chrome plating, leather tanning, printing, and as an anticorrosive in cooling systems. Air monitoring for Cr^{6+} is the usual way to test. Increased chromium in urine is confirmation of recent occupational or environmental exposure to excess chromium (Halls & Fell, 1988).

COBALT

Cobalt (Co) is essential for humans only as an integral part of vitamin B_{12} (cobalamin). Cobalt has no other known function in humans. Diet has to supply the human vitamin B_{12} needs. Microflora of the human intestine are not able to use cobalt to synthesize cobalmine; free cobalt does not impact with the body's vitamin B_{12} pool.

COPPER

Copper (Cu) is the third most abundant trace element in the human body, following zinc and iron. It is a very effective cation in reactions that involve electron transfer and binding to organic molecules (Samman, 2002).

Biochemistry

Copper is involved in electron transport and oxidation reactions and is essential for cellular respiration; neurotransmitter regulation; collagen synthesis; nutrient metabolism, especially iron; and as an antioxidant against free radicals (Kohlmeier, 2003). Copper is present in all living cells (Marston, 1952). Its actions are mostly as a component of the cuproenzymes and copper-containing proteins. Copper-containing plasma amine oxidases catabolize some active amines such as tyramine, histidine, and polyamines, and they inactivate the catecholamines (norepinephrine, tyramine, dopamine, and serotonin). Another cuproenzyme, lysyl oxidase, helps collagen proteins crosslink into larger fibers. Also, copper is a component of cytochrome c oxidase, which catalyzes the cellular utilization of oxygen (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000). Extracellular superoxide dismutase is in high concentration in the lungs, thyroid, and uterus. Copper/zinc dismutases are in the cytosol of most cells, especially brain, thyroid, liver, pituitary, and erythrocytes. Both dismutases scavenger and reduce superoxide radicals. Copper-containing proteins include ceruloplasmin, albumin, and transcuperin, which transport copper; metallothionein, which sequesters and stores copper; and clotting factor V (Chan et al, 1998b).

http://basicbook.net

Dietary Sources

Rich sources of copper include liver, shellfish, chocolate, nuts, and seeds. Copper pipes or vessels do not increase the copper content of water unless they are exposed to acids (Kohlmeier, 2003). The average daily copper intake of American adults is about 1.6 mg in males and 1.2 mg in females. Adults should get at least 0.9 mg/day (Institute of Medicine, 2002). Smoking, strenuous exercise, infections, and injuries increase the need for copper.

Metabolism

Copper absorption occurs in the stomach and especially in the small intestine (Wapnir, 1998). Bile adds about 5 mg/day to the ingested copper. Absorption is decreased by excessive zinc or iron intake. Too much copper may cause iron deficiency. Histidine, gluconate, and citrate enhance copper absorption (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000). Ascorbate decreases copper absorption by reducing Cu^{++} to Cu^{+} (Kohlmeier, 2003).

Newly absorbed copper is transported bound to albumin and transcuperin and is rapidly cleared from the blood circulation by the liver. When copper reenters the circulation, it is as ceruloplasmin, which transports 65% to 90% of the plasma copper, and metallothionein and other copper-containing proteins. Ceruloplasmin is not a transporter protein because the copper is not exchangeable (Eastwood, 2003). Metallochaperones are specific binding proteins that provide targeted intracellular copper transport to shuttle copper for metabolic needs (Kohlmeier, 2003). Excess copper is bound to thionein, decreasing the potential for copper toxicity (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000). Free copper ions are a source of oxygen free radicals, and intracellular free copper is kept at a very low concentration.

Testing

The total copper in an adult human is 50 to 80 mg, mainly concentrated in muscle and liver. The liver has the highest copper concentration, averaging between 30 and 50 µg/g dry tissue. Reference ranges for serum copper concentration are age and sex dependent and are higher in pregnancy. There is diurnal variation, with peak values in the morning. The gender reference ranges include the following: women: 49 to 184 µg/dL (7.7 to 29.0 µmol/L); men: 59 to 118 µg/dL (9.3 to 18.6 µmol/L) by ICP-MS (Chan et al, 1998b). The most widely used clinical analytical method is flame AAS. Serum or plasma copper levels are insensitive to the diagnosis of copper deficiency and are decreased only in severe deficiency (Gibson, 2002). Lower concentrations may be indicative of depleted copper stores. However, circulating copper levels are affected by factors unrelated to nutriture. Pregnancy, infections, inflammatory conditions, stress, or oral contraception use increase the circulating copper level. Corticosteroids and corticotropin lower the circulating copper level (Jacob & Milne, 1993). Reduced serum proteins due to nephrosis, malabsorption, and malnutrition cause the serum copper to be low, without reflecting inadequate liver copper stores. Ceruloplasmin, a copper-containing protein, is a useful indicator of copper status. It is an α_2-globulin acute phase reactant. Ceruloplasmin is sensitive to the same factors that affect plasma copper and may be measured immunochemically or by its oxidase activity (Milne, 1994). It is increased in patients with infections, neoplasms, pregnancy, and hormonal contraception use (Kohlmeier, 2003). Measurement of erythrocyte superoxide dismutase is useful for assessing copper status. The activity is reduced in copper-deficient states.

Excretion is primarily in the feces, which includes unabsorbed dietary copper, and biliary and gastrointestinal secretions, although small amounts are also lost in sweat, urine, and saliva.

Genetic Diseases

Menkes' syndrome and Wilson disease are genetic defects in copper metabolism. Menkes' syndrome is a rare X-linked recessive congenital defect of copper absorption. Onset usually occurs by 3 months of age. There is poor mental development, failure to keratinize hair, skeletal problems, and degenerative changes in the aorta. The brittle hair (steely) is kinky or twisted, and there is poor skin and hair pigmentation, hypothermia, and seizures. The hair is like the wool of sheep who grazed in pastures lacking copper. The affected infants are copper deficient, and there is decreased serum and liver copper. RBC copper is normal (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000).

Wilson's disease (hepatolenticular degeneration) is an autosomal recessive disease that results from impaired biliary copper excretion. It presents in individuals between 6 and 40 years of age. Excess copper is deposited in the liver and the basal nuclei of the brain, causing sclerosis, and there are abnormalities of kidney, cornea, and brain. Most often, the presenting disease pattern is that of acute, chronic, or fulminant hepatitis. Symptoms include neurological disorders, cirrhosis of the liver, and Kayser-Fleischer rings due to the deposition of copper in the corneas. Urinary copper is increased to greater than 100 µg/24h, and serum ceruloplasmin is usually decreased. Clinical severity of the disease correlates poorly with the ceruloplasmin level, because ceruloplasmin may be normal or increased in response to hepatic inflammation. Serum copper is generally decreased because of the low ceruloplasmin, and serum copper levels are not useful diagnostically. Serum ceruloplasmin of less than 20 mg/dL with increased hepatic copper of greater than 250 µg/g dry weight is diagnostic. Chelation is an effective treatment in promoting excretion of the copper (Milne, 1994). Wilson and Menkes' syndromes are respectively caused by mutations in the ATP7B and ATP7A genes, which both code for ATPases involved in copper transport.

Deficiency is unlikely, except in people with either rare genetic disorders or resulting from prolonged malnutrition or starvation. Deficiencies have been observed in premature babies, malnourished infants and adults, long-term hyperalimentation with infusates deficient in copper, patients with sickle cell disease receiving zinc therapy, and those treated with copper-chelating agents like penicillamine (Milne, 1994). Denture adhesive can be a source of dietary zinc that induces copper deficiency (Hedera et al, 2009). Reduced copper levels have been found in elderly patients with femoral neck fractures (Conlan et al, 1990). Symptoms of copper deficiency include hypochromic anemia, ataxia, neutropenia, osteoporosis and bone and joint abnormalities, decreased skin pigmentation, and neurological abnormalities. Body stores last only a few weeks when intake is low.

Copper toxicity has not been reported from food intake. Doses in excess of 10 mg/day can cause nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps, and diarrhea, and may even cause hemolytic anemia, renal dysfunction, and liver injury, especially in infants. Acute poisoning may present with hemolysis and brain and hepatic cellular damage (Eastwood, 2003). Higher doses can cause coma and death. Excess supplements or ingestion of contaminated water are the usual sources. Ingestion of fungicides containing copper sulfate or industrial exposure sometimes causes acute copper poisoning (Williams, 1982).

FLUORIDE

Fluoride (Fl) is used to prevent dental caries. Fluoridation of drinking water now reduces the incidence of tooth decay for more than 60% of the U.S. population and reduces the incidence of tooth decay by more than 60%. Dental fluorosis is the unsightly mottling of dental enamel and is seen in erupting teeth of children due to excessive fluoride, possibly from ingestion of fluoride-containing toothpastes. Occupational exposure to inhaled fluoride dust during aluminum refining causes severe bone abnormalities; safety equipment now limits such exposure. No cases are attributable to the controlled fluoridation of water supplies. Fluoride-specific electrode is used for water and urine analysis.

IODINE

Dietary iodine (I) is normally ingested as iodide and is the basic element for the synthesis of thyroid hormones. It is transported to the thyroid follicles, where it is trapped and concentrated. The gland is stimulated by the pituitary hormone, thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), to incorporate iodide into tyrosine to form thyronines within the thyroglobulin in the follicular lumen. Proteolytic cleavage of the thyroglobulin releases the iodothyronine hormones into the circulation. With blockade of iodine uptake by antithyroid drugs such as propylthiouracil, the glandular iodide concentration can reach 800 times the plasma iodide concentration. A tightly controlled feedback system among the thyroid, the hypothalamus, and the pituitary maintains the thyroid hormone concentration within physiologic limits.

Deficiency results in inadequate thyroid hormone and hypothyroidism. Depending on the patient's age, congenital hypothyroidism causes mental retardation and cretinism. Adults with myxedema hypothyroidism have mental status changes and hypotension. Patients often develop a goiter.

IRON

Body iron (FE) is present in hemoglobin, myoglobin, storage iron, and tissue iron. Iron is stored as ferritin and hemosiderin. Normally, very small amounts of iron are present in most cells and in body fluids. There is no excretory system for excess iron. Rather, rigorous conservation of iron occurs. Ferritin is present in nearly all cells in the body. In hepatocytes and macrophages of the marrow, ferritin provides a reserve of iron for the

http://basicbook.net

formation of hemoglobin and other heme proteins. Hemosiderin is formed when ferritin is broken down. Iron is transported from one organ to another by the transport protein apotransferrin.

MANGANESE

Manganese (Mn) is associated with the formation of connective and bony tissue and carbohydrate and lipid metabolism. Food sources include whole-grain foods, nuts, leafy vegetables, soy, and teas. Manganese is absorbed from the small intestines and transported to the liver, bound to albumin. Excretion occurs via bile into feces. Manganese is a constituent of many important metalloenzymes, including superoxide dismutase, pyruvate carboxylase, arginase, and glycosyl transferases. On a normal diet, deficiency has not been documented. Diet deficiency results in low plasma cholesterol, impaired glucose tolerance, skeletal abnormalities, dermatitis, color changes in hair, and reduced blood-clotting function not responsive to vitamin K.

Toxic exposure to manganese-containing dust produces neurologic symptoms resembling Parkinson's disease. Manganese deposition in the brain is seen with biliary atresia in children. Serum manganese and brain magnetic resonance imaging are used to detect excessive exposure. Plastic cannulas prevent sample contamination.

MOLYBDENUM

Molybdenum (Mo) is incorporated into metalloenzymes and several important enzymes, including sulfite oxidase and xanthine dehydrogenase. Grains, nuts, and legumes such as peas, lentils, and beans are good sources. Renal homeostatic regulation occurs, and urine output directly reflects dietary intake. Deficiency has not been observed in healthy people on a normal diet. There is one report of intolerance to intravenous molybdenum in a patient receiving parenteral nutrition during treatment for Crohn's disease. It suggests that for most, there is sufficient molybdenum as a contaminant in TPN fluids. Diagnosis of molybdenum deficiency is based on demonstration of excess sulfite in the urine. Molybdenum compounds have low toxicity in humans. Excess intake induces copper deficiency, blocking copper absorption.

SELENIUM

Selenium (Se) is a constituent of glutathione peroxidase that is associated with vitamin E in its functions. It is a nonmetal and is important in defense against oxidative stress and regulation of thyroid hormone action. Deficiency in pediatric patients causes endemic cardiomyopathy (Keshan disease) in areas with low soil selenium levels, as well as skeletal muscle disorders with prosimal weakness and serum creatinine elevation. Immunodeficiency can result from selnoprotein deficiency. Toxicity from selenium includes hair loss, garlic breath, irritability, and mild nerve and nail damage. Whole blood selenium can be quantitated by GFAAS. In 1958, Muth and colleagues demonstrated that the addition of selenium provided protection against white muscle disease affecting sheep raised on land with low selenium levels. The chalky white muscular characteristic appearance of this disease is a consequence of fibrosis and abnormal calcium deposition. Oral selenium supplementation eliminated Keshan disease in areas where it was endemic (Loscalzo, 2014).

ZINC

Zinc (Zn) is second to iron as the most abundant trace element in the body. It is the most common catalytic metal ion in the cytoplasm of cells. Total body stores of zinc are 1.5 g in adult women and 2.5 g in men, which are distributed in all tissues. It is almost entirely intracellular (King, 1994). Most zinc is in skeletal muscle (~60%) and bone (~30%) (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000). It is a cofactor for almost 300 enzymes and is involved in almost all aspects of metabolism. Zinc is important in protein and nucleic acid synthesis and essential for gene activation (Kohlmeier, 2003). It is also essential for the synthesis and action of insulin (Samman, 2002). Zinc is only in the divalent state in biological systems, and oxidation-reduction functions are not possible. Important zinc-containing metalloenzymes include carbonic anhydrase, alkaline phosphatase, RNA and DNA polymerases, reverse transcriptase, thymidine kinase, carboxypeptidases, alcohol dehydrogenase, and superoxide dismutase.

Dietary Sources

Zinc is ubiquitous in food. Oysters are especially rich in zinc, and other shellfish and meats are good sources. Plants have much lower concentrations. Phytate from whole grains and some vegetables can interfere with zinc absorption (Kohlmeier, 2003). The estimated average requirement to maintain adequate stores is 8 mg/day for women eating a mixed diet and 11 mg/day for men (Institute of Medicine, 2002). Vegetarians and pregnant or nursing women need slightly more. Zinc is excreted primarily by the intestine.

Metabolism

Zinc is mainly absorbed from the duodenum, although some is absorbed in the small intestine. Some zinc enters the intestinal lumen with pancreatic secretions. Intraluminal digestion by proteases, DNAses, and RNAses frees zinc so complexes with histidine, cysteine, and nucleotides are formed that improve absorption. Phytate reduces absorption. High dietary calcium and low protein will also reduce zinc absorption (Samman, 2002). Metallothionein regulates zinc transfer into the portal blood. In blood, the zinc is bound to albumin and α_2-macroglobulin, with zinc blood concentrations of 10 to 17 µmol/L.

Muscle and bones, which contain most of the body's zinc stores, have a slow turnover, with a half-life of 300 days (Wastney et al, 2000). The half-life of the metallothionein-bound zinc in the liver is about 2 weeks, which can be readily mobilized and cover for an insufficient dietary intake. However, the liver pool is small and contains less than 170 mg. Zinc deficiency can become functionally significant within a week (Miller, 1994).

Almost all blood zinc is complexed to the large proteins albumin or α_2-macroglobulin, so there is little zinc in the glomerular filtrate. Urine losses are about 0.5 mg/day (Kohlmeier, 2003). About 1 mg/day is lost in sweat, skin, and hair. Fecal losses, which include diet and endogenous secretions, can be less than 1 mg/day (Sian et al, 1996). Each ejaculate contains about 0.5 mg, probably from prostatic secretions.

Inadequate zinc impairs DNA replication, food digestion and absorption, taste and appetite, growth and wound healing, synaptic transmission, gene expression, response to oxidant stress, immune function, and some other functions.

Zinc fingers are looped sequence-specific DNA-binding proteins that act as transcriptional mediators for nucleic acids. Chelation of zinc with cysteine and/or histidine that bind to a specific DNA region and control gene expression or repression primarily through targeting promoter regions of the genes (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000).

Deficiency

Zinc deficiency is common in patients with diabetes mellitus, alcohol abuse, malabsorption syndromes, and liver and kidney diseases. Symptoms are general because of the many enzymes and tissues affected. In severe deficiencies there is hypogonadism, dwarfism, deformed bones, poor wound healing, abnormal hair and nails, loss of taste, gastrointestinal disturbances, poor chylomicron formation, CNS abnormalities, immunodeficiencies, and malabsorption. Zinc deficiency may cause teratogenicity during pregnancy, with congenital malformations, fetal dysmaturity, prematurity, neural tube defects, and spina bifida (Chan et al, 1998b).

Nutritional zinc deficiency is fairly prevalent despite the wide availability of zinc in foods. Zinc deficiency produces a syndrome of growth retardation, male hypogonadism, skin changes, mental lethargy, hepatosplenomegaly, iron-deficiency anemia, and geophagia (eating clay). It has been encountered in mostly male children in Iran and Egypt as a result of a low-zinc diet and a high fiber content that decreases the available zinc for absorption. Zinc deficiency has also been reported from Turkey, Portugal, Morocco, and Yugoslavia (Milne, 1994). In some areas of the Middle East, unleavened bread, which is high in phytate, is frequently eaten. Yeast contains phytase, but this bread is not made with yeast. The high fiber content and low meat and low protein intake in this population result in the zinc deficiency. They respond well to dietary zinc sulfate supplementation (Eastwood, 2003). Growth failure, reduced taste acuity, and hypogonadism in young adults in New York and Tennessee and in schoolchildren in Colorado have been ascribed to zinc deficiency (Milne, 1994). Zinc deficiency has also been reported in old age, pregnancy, lactation, steatorrhea, extensive burns, renal disease, and diuretic and antimetabolite therapies. Zinc deficiency in alcoholics and in cirrhosis shows low serum zinc concentrations and demonstrates increased urinary excretion (Eastwood, 2003; Prasad, 1982).

Acrodermatitis enteropathica is a rare autosomal recessive disorder with impaired intestinal absorption and transport of zinc. Symptoms include hyperpigmented skin lesions, pustular and bullous dermatitis, alopecia, growth retardation, diarrhea, secondary infection, irritability, lethargy, and depression. Plasma or serum zinc is below 40 µg/mL. Oral zinc therapy results in rapid and complete remission (Chan et al, 1998b).

http://basicbook.net

A case of zinc deficiency that was labeled "acquired acrodermatitis enteropathica" was reported in a 41-year-old woman with an alcohol abuse problem and type 1 diabetes mellitus, which was complicated by retinopathy, nephropathy, and end-stage renal disease. She had a 5-month history of alopecia, brittle scalp hair, diarrhea, angular cheilitis, and a pruritic, scaly erythematous eruption involving the extremities, perineum, and buttocks. A skin biopsy disclosed confluent parakeratosis, with absence of the granular layer. Serum zinc levels were markedly reduced at 0.35 µg/mL (normal is 0.66 to 1.10 µg/mL). Oral zinc sulfate resolved her diarrhea, and her skin eruption cleared and her hair began to grow back (Wang & Bushey, 2005).

Zinc toxicity is rare in humans. Animals that were given high levels of supplementation manifested dysphagia. The other effects, such as weight loss, are attributed to reduced food intake. Inhalation of zinc oxide fumes is the most common cause of metal fume fever. Symptoms are a flu-like illness, with onset 4 to 6 hours after exposure to the fumes. Fatigue, chills, myalgias, cough, dyspnea, leukocytosis, thirst, metallic taste, and salivation characterize this self-limited illness, with resolution of symptoms in 36 hours.

Testing

There is no single test that is definitive for the status of zinc stores. The two groups of tests include analysis of zinc in a body tissue or body fluid, such as plasma, serum, blood cells, or urine, and testing a zinc-dependent function, such as taste acuity or the measurement of the activity of zinc-containing enzymes. In most instances, the assays will show a decrease with zinc deficiency. Test results need be interpreted with caution because the levels may be affected by unrelated conditions. There is diurnal variation of zinc levels. Zinc levels decrease after meals and are elevated after fasting. Albumin levels significantly affect the circulating zinc level. Also, many steroids, including adrenocortical and gonadal, depress the zinc level. Erythrocyte levels are 10 times that of serum, and hemolysis is a serious problem affecting the usefulness of the results.

Inductively coupled plasma–mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) is the reference testing method used for zinc testing in serum, plasma, and other clinical specimens. Zinc plasma level reference value is 70 to 120 µg/dL (10.7 to 18.4 µmol/L), of which a third is bound to α_2-macroglobulin and the rest to albumin. Ten percent to 20% of the blood zinc is in the plasma, and the remainder is associated with carbonic anhydrase in the erythrocytes. Hemolysis must be avoided. Fasting morning levels of zinc below 70 µg/dL (10.7 µmol/L) suggest marginal deficiency. Serum zinc values are 5% to 10% higher than plasma. Zinc levels are lower when there is nonfasting, infection, inflammation, steroid administration, pregnancy, or hypoalbuminemia.

Zinc levels in erythrocytes and hair provide a long-term assessment of body zinc status. Lowered hair zinc has been demonstrated in several different zinc-deficient conditions. Care must be taken to avoid environmental contamination and to sample hair grown during the condition under study and not the time period just prior (Milne, 1994). Urinary zinc excretion reference value is 0.15 to 1.00 mg/d (2.3 to 15.3 µmol/day). Urinary zinc excretion is usually decreased in zinc deficiency. In some conditions associated with zinc deficiency, such as cirrhosis, severe alcoholism, sickle cell anemia, postsurgical periods, and total parenteral nutrition, increased urinary zinc excretion is often present (Jacob & Milne, 1993).

Hyperzincaemia is a familial disorder that results in elevated serum zinc levels but does not cause any apparent toxicity. Zinc overdoses that result in similar plasma zinc levels have been known to be fatal (Wildman & Medeiros, 2000).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Kohlmeier M: *Nutrient metabolism*, San Diego, 2003, Academic Press.

This text provides a systematic presentation of the metabolism of the vitamins and trace elements, with masterful integration of the vast subject of nutritional metabolism and biochemistry, in the context of normal human physiology. Extensive current references are provided.

Mann J, Truswell AS, editors: *Essentials of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2002, Oxford University Press.

The trace elements and vitamins with a focus on deficiencies, toxicity, and biochemical testing, and an appendix assessing numerous standard and newly introduced static and dynamic biochemical tests, and load and tolerance tests, the findings, utility, and their interpretability.

Taylor A: Detection and monitoring of disorders of essential trace elements, *Ann Clin Biochem* 33:486–510, 1996.

The findings in deficiencies of essential trace elements due to metabolic disorders, with descriptions of the clinical disorders, the clinical signs and test results for the assessment of trace element status, the findings, interpretability, and utility of the data; nonoccupational disorders associated with accumulation of essential trace elements; protocols for testing in genetic, therapeutic, and disease states, including nonanalytical factors affecting interpretation and analytical techniques.

Wildman REC, Medeiros DM: *Advanced human nutrition*, Boca Raton, 2000, CRC Press.

Presents the biochemistry and physiology of the vitamins and the essential trace elements, including tables of functions, tissue content and excretion, deficiency and toxicity symptoms, and the food sources with their micronutrient content.

http://basicbook.net

REFERENCES

Alcock NW: Trace elements. In Kaplan LA, Pesce AJ, editors: *Clinical Chemistry*, ed 3, St. Louis, 1996, Mosby, pp 746–759.

Amrein K, Schnedl C, Holl A, et al: Effect of high-dose vitamin D3 on hospital length of stay in critically ill patients with vitamin D deficiency. The VITdAL-ICU Randomized Clinical Trial, *JAMA* 312(15):1520–1530, 2014.

Barr SI, Murphy SP, Poos MI: Interpreting and using the dietary references intakes in dietary assessment of individuals and groups, *J Am Diet Assoc* 102:780–788, 2002.

Berdanier CD: *CRC desk reference for nutrition*, Boca Raton, 1998, CRC Press.

Bischoff-Ferrari HA: Optimal serum 25-hydroxyvitamin D levels for multiple health outcomes, *Adv Exp Med Biol* 810:500–525, 2014.

Brewster MA: Vitamins. In Kaplan LA, Pesce AJ, editors: *Clinical chemistry*, ed 3, St. Louis, 1996, Mosby, pp 760–792.

Casey CE, Robinson MF: Some aspects of nutritional trace element research. In Siegel H, editor: *Metal ions in biological systems*, vol 16, New York, 1983, Marcel Dekker, pp 1–26.

Chan S, Gerson B, Reitz RE, et al: Technical and clinical aspects of spectrophotometric analysis of trace elements in clinical samples, Gerson B (ed): *Clin Lab Med* 18(#4):615–629, 1998a.

Chan S, Gerson B, Subramaniam S: The role of copper, molybdenum, selenium, and zinc in nutrition and health, *Clin Lab Med* 18(#4):673–685, 1998b.

Combs GF Jr: *The vitamins*, ed 2, San Diego, 1998, Academic Press.

Conlan D, Korula R, Tallentire D: Serum copper levels in elderly patients with femoral-neck fractures, *Age Ageing* 19:212–214, 1990.

DeLuca HF: New concepts of vitamin D function. In Sauberlich HE, Machlin LJ, editors: *Beyond deficiency*, *AnnNYAS* 669:7–20, 1992.

Eastwood M: *Principles of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2003, Blackwell.

Elia M: Metabolic response to starvation, injury and sepsis. In Payne-James J, Grimble G, Silk D, editors: *Artificial nutrition support in clinical practise*, London, 2001, GMM, pp 1–24.

Fausto da Silva JJR, Williams RJP: *The biological chemistry of the elements*, Oxford, 1991, Clarendon Press.

Feldman EB: Assessment of nutritional status. In Noe DA, Rock RC, editors: *Laboratory medicine*, Baltimore, 1994, Williams & Wilkins.

Finney LA, O'Halloran TV: Transition metal speciation in the cell: Insights from the chemistry of metal ion receptors, *Science* 300:931–936, 2003.

Gibson RS: *Principles of nutritional assessment*, Oxford, 1990, Oxford University Press.

Gibson R: Determining nutritional status. In Mann J, Truswell AS, editors: *Essentials of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2002, Oxford University Press, pp 467–497.

Gidden F, Shenkin A: Laboratory support of the clinical nutrition service, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 38:683–714, 2000.

Grodner M, Long S, DeYoung S: *Foundations and clinical applications of nutrition*, ed 3, St. Louis, 2004, Mosby.

Guyton AC, Hall JE: *Human physiology and mechanisms of disease*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 1997, WB Saunders.

Halls DJ, Fell GS: Faster determination of chromium in urine by atomic absorption spectometry, *J Anal Atom Spectrom* 3:105–109, 1988.

Hedera P, Peltier A, Fink JK, et al: Myelopolyneuropathy and pancytopenia due to copper deficiency and high zinc levels of unknown origin II. The denture cream is a primary source of excessive zinc, *Neurotoxicology* 30:996–999, 2009.

Institute of Medicine: *Dietary reference intakes for calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, vitamin D, and fluoride*, Washington, DC, 1997, National Academy Press.

Institute of Medicine: *Dietary reference intakes for thiamin, riboflavin, niacin, vitamin B_6, folate, vitamin B_{12}, pantothenic acid, biotin, and choline*, Washington, DC, 1998, National Academy Press.

Institute of Medicine: *Dietary reference intakes for vitamin C, vitamin E, selenium, and carotenoids*, Washington, DC, 2000, National Academy Press.

Institute of Medicine: *Dietary reference intakes for vitamin A, vitamin K, arsenic, boron, chromium, copper, iodine, iron, manganese, molybdenum, nickel, silicon, vanadium, and zinc (micronutrients)*, Washington, DC, 2002, National Academy Press.

Jacob RA: Vitamin C. In Shils ME, Olsen JA, Shike M, editors: *Modern nutrition in health and disease*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 1994, Lea & Febiger, pp 432–448.

Jacob RA, Milne DB: Biochemical assessment of vitamins and trace metals, Labbe RF (ed): *Clin Lab Med* 13(#2):371–385, 1993.

Kane AB, Kumar V: Environmental and nutritional pathology. In Kumar V, Abbas AK, Fausto N, editors: *Robbins and Cotran pathologic basis of disease*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2005, pp 415–468.

Katz DL: *Nutrition in clinical practice*, Philadelphia, 2001, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

King JC, Keen CL: Zinc. In Shils ME, Olsen JA, Shike M, editors: *Modern nutrition in health and disease*, ed 8, Malverne, Pa., 1994, Lea & Febiger, pp 214–239.

Loerch JD, Underwood BA, Lewis KC: Response of the plasma levels of vitamin A to a dose of vitamin A an indicator of hepatic vitamin A reserves in rats, *J Nutr* 109(5):778–786, 1979.

Loscalzo J: Keshan disease, selenium deficiency, and the selenoproteome, *N Eng J Med* 370:1756–1760, 2014.

Machlin LJ: Introduction. Sauberlich HE, Machlin LJ (eds): Beyond deficiency, *AnnNYAS* 669:1–6, 1992.

Marston HR: Cobalt, copper and molybdenum in the nutrition of animals and plants, *Physiol Rev* 32:153–157, 1952.

Mason JB: Consequences of altered micronutrient status. In Bennett JC, Plum F, editors: *Cecil textbook of medicine*, ed 20, Philadelphia, 1996, WB Saunders, pp 1144–1154.

McCormick DB, Greene HL: Vitamins. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1994, WB Saunders, pp 1275–1316.

McLaren DC: Clinical manifestations of human vitamin and mineral disorders: A resume. In Shils ME, Olsen JA, Shike M, editors: *Modern nutrition in health and disease*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 1994, Lea & Febiger, pp 909–923.

McNeely MDD: Nutrition, vitamins, and trace elements. In Gornall AG, editor: *Applied biochemistry of clinical disorders*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1986, Lippincott, pp 487–501.

Mertz W: Trace-element nutrition in health and disease: contributions and problems of analysis, *Clin Chem* 21:468–475, 1975.

Mertz W: The essential trace elements, *Science* 213(4514):1332–1338, 1981a.

Mertz W: The scientific and practical importance of trace elements, *Phil Trans R Soc Lond B* 294:9–18, 1981b.

Mertz W: Interaction of chromium with insulin: a progress report, *Nutr Rev* 56:174–177, 1998.

Miller LV, Hambidge KM, Naake VL, et al: Size of the zinc pools that exchange rapidly with plasma zinc in humans: alternative techniques for measuring and relation to dietary zinc intake, *J Nutr* 124:268–276, 1994.

Milne DB: Trace elements. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1994, WB Saunders, pp 1317–1353.

Nelson M: Methods and validity of dietary assessment. In Garrow JS, James WPT, Ralph A, editors: *Human nutrition and dietetics*, Edinburgh, 2000, Churchill Livingston, pp 311–331.

O'Dell BL, Sunde RA: *Handbook of nutritionally essential mineral elements*, New York, 1997, Marcel Dekker.

Olsen RQ, Regis JT: Delirious deficiency, *Lancet* 376:1362, 2010.

Prasad AS: Clinical and biochemical spectrum of zinc deficiency in human subjects. In Prasad AS, editor: *Clinical, biochemical, and nutritional aspects of trace elements*, New York, NY, 1982, Alan R. Liss, pp 3–62.

Rubin E, Strayer DS: Environmental and nutritional pathology. In Rubin E, Gorstein F, Rubin R, et al, editors: *Rubin's pathology: Clinicopathologic foundations of medicine*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2005, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, pp 312–355.

Samman S: Trace elements. In Mann J, Truswell AS, editors: *Essentials of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2002, Oxford University Press, pp 159–188.

Seymour CA: Trace metal disorders. In Ledingham JGG, Warrell DA, editors: *Concise Oxford textbook of medicine*, Oxford, 2000, Oxford University Press, pp 710–718.

Sian L, Mingyan X, Miller LV, et al: Zinc absorption and intestinal losses of endogenous zinc in young Chinese women with marginal zinc intakes, *Am J Clin Nutr* 63:348–353, 1996.

Sies H, Stahl W, Sunquist AR: Antioxidant functions of vitamins. In Sauberlich HE, Machlin LJ, editors: *Beyond deficiency*, *AnnNYAS* 669:7–20, 1992.

Skeaff M: Vitamins C and E. In Mann J, Truswell AS, editors: *Essentials of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2002, Oxford University Press, pp 231–247.

Stabler SP: Vitamin B_{12} deficiency, *N Engl J Med* 368:149–160, 2013.

Truswell S: Vitamins D and K. In Mann J, Truswell AS, editors: *Essentials of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2002, Oxford University Press, pp 249–258.

Truswell S, Milne R: The B vitamins. In Mann J, Truswell AS, editors: *Essentials of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2002, Oxford University Press, pp 209–230.

Veillon C: Trace element analysis of biological samples, *Anal Chem* 58:851A–866A, 1986.

Wang LC, Bushey S: Acquired acrodermatitis enteropathica, *NEJM* 352:1121, 2005.

Wapnir RA: Copper absorption and bioavailability, *Am J Clin Nutr* 67(Suppl):10545–10605, 1998.

Wastney ME, House WA, Barnes RM, et al: Kinetics of zinc metabolism: Variation with diet, genetics and disease, *J Nutr* 130(5S Suppl):1355S–1359S, 2000.

West CE: Vitamin A and carotenoids. In Mann J, Truswell AS, editors: *Essentials of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2002, Oxford University Press, pp 188–207.

Williams DM: Clinical significance of copper deficiency and toxicity in the world population. In Prasad AS, editor: *Clinical, biochemical, and nutritional aspects of trace elements*, New York, 1982, Alan R. Liss, pp 277–299.

Williams P: Food toxicity and safety. In Mann J, Truswell AS, editors: *Essentials of human nutrition*, ed 2, Oxford, 2002, Oxford University Press, pp 416–432.

Willis MS, Monaghan SA, Miller MI, et al: Zinc-induced copper deficiency, *AJCP* 123:125–131, 2005.

http://basicbook.net

CHAPTER 27

CHEMICAL BASIS FOR ANALYTE ASSAYS AND COMMON INTERFERENCES

Matthew R. Pincus, Jay L. Bock, Ralph Rossi, Donghong Cai

INTRODUCTION, 428

ION-SELECTIVE ELECTRODES, 428

SPECTROPHOTOMETRIC DETERMINATIONS USING SIMPLE REAGENTS, 429

Beer's Law, 429

End-Point versus Rate Method, 429

Interferences, 429

Quantitation of Analytes, 429

USE OF ENZYMES AS REAGENTS TO DETERMINE ANALYTE CONCENTRATIONS, 432

General Features, 432

Analytes Whose Concentrations Are Determined by Enzyme Reactions, 432

Assays for Enzymes, 436

SELECTED REFERENCES, 440

KEY POINTS

- The clinical chemistry metabolic profile gives important quantitative information for over 25 serum analytes often facilitating diagnosis of disease.
- Serum electrolyte concentrations for sodium, potassium, chloride, and sometimes calcium are most commonly assayed using ion-selective electrodes.
- Assays for other analytes, including total protein, albumin, bilirubin, creatinine, calcium, iron and iron-binding capacity, magnesium, and phosphate, are performed using spectrophotometry on complexes that each analyte forms with simple reagents. These complexes absorb light at wavelengths at which there is minimal absorbance by both the analyte itself and by the reagent. The concentration of the analyte is determined using Beer's Law.
- Assays for a number of serum analytes, including ammonia, bicarbonate, cholesterol, glucose, lactate, triglycerides, urea, and uric acid, utilize enzymes that catalyze reactions in which the analytes are converted into products whose concentrations can be measured conveniently.
- Spectrophotometric assays can be performed by waiting for the point at which the increase or decrease in absorbance of a complex at a particular wavelength ceases to change (end-point method) or by the initial rates of complex formation (rate method).
- Assays for specific enzymes are performed using substrates that are specific for these enzymes. The concentrations of the products of the enzyme-catalyzed reactions are determined spectrophotometrically as described in Chapter 20, allowing for direct determination of enzyme activity.
- Often the products of enzyme-catalyzed reactions are measured in coupled reactions in which the product of the enzyme-catalyzed reaction is the substrate for another enzyme added at high concentration, allowing for the rapid conversion of the product of the first reaction to another product whose concentration can be easily determined.

INTRODUCTION

In many of the preceding chapters, we have discussed the chemical bases for the assays employed for the diagnosis of specific diseases. In this chapter, we present a consolidation of the methods that are used in the typical so-called "metabolic panel" in Clinical Chemistry, a panoply of chemical assays that are often requested for patients undergoing outpatient annual checkups or who are being admitted to the hospital. We summarize and discuss the chemical bases for these assays in a hopefully concise manner so that the reader can refer to these methods conveniently and understand the assays and their limitations. Understanding of the assays further enables an understanding of why certain substances interfere with particular assays and can give rise to misleading results. It should be kept in mind that, for many of the assays described here, more than one method can be used. Since it is impossible to cover all variations of methods used to quantitate each analyte, we describe the principles that underlie commonly employed methods and refer, where possible, to alternate approaches.

Metabolic panels consist of serum electrolytes (sodium, potassium, and chloride), bicarbonate, calcium, phosphate, magnesium, BUN, creatinine, glucose, uric acid, total protein, albumin, total and direct bilirubin, cholesterol, high-density lipoprotein (HDL) and low-density lipoprotein (LDL), triglycerides, ammonia, iron and iron-binding capacity, and the enzymes: creatine kinase (CK), aspartate amino transferase (AST), alanine amino transferase (ALT), alkaline phosphatase (ALP), lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT), amylase, and lipase. The reader may recognize various panels that measure the functioning of specific tissues including the kidney, such as the renal "profile," (i.e., BUN, creatinine, calcium, and phosphate). These panels are of great use in diagnosing disease states, as discussed in Chapter 8.

We divide the basic assays for these analytes functionally into four method-based groups:

1. Ion-selective electrodes.
2. Spectrophotometric assays based on color complexes for specific molecules; for example, the color noncovalent complex of albumin with bromcresol green dye and bilirubin covalently reacted with diazotized sulfanilic acid to give azo-derivatized forms of the indole rings of bilirubin.
3. Analyte concentrations using enzymes as reagents. In Chapter 20, we discussed how small molecule substrates are used to determine serum enzymes concentrations. In a similar manner, this process can be reversed; enzymes can be used to determine the concentrations of small or large molecules (like proteins). If an analyte is a specific substrate for an enzyme and if the formation of product or disappearance of the substrate can be conveniently followed, this method can be used quite effectively.
4. Enzyme assays, that is, use of substrates to determine enzyme concentrations as described in Chapter 20. Almost all of these assays are also based on spectrophotometric measurements. These depend on the substrates employed in the assays and, in many cases, the need for the use of indicator enzymes in so-called coupled reactions.

ION-SELECTIVE ELECTRODES

As explained in Chapter 4, this technique is used to measure the concentrations of specific ions, using an electrochemical method. This method is

http://basicbook.net

nonspecific in that it does not discriminate between ions in causing voltage differences between the measuring electrode and the standard electrode. It is the presence of an ion perm-selective membrane barrier on the measuring electrode that allows only a specific ion to pass through and allow contact with the measuring electrode. Each ion requires a different material that will be selectively permeable to this ion and to this ion only. Thus glass is perm-selective to hydrogen ion. A special polymer of the polyamino acid antibiotic, valinomycin, is perm-selective to potassium ions. A polymer resin of polyvinylchloride (PVC) is perm-selective to sodium ions. Recently, an anodized indium tin oxide membrane was found to be even more perm-selective to sodium ions (Lin & Hsu, 2010). Similarly, calcium-chelating organic molecules impregnated into PVC membranes serve as perm-selective membranes for calcium ions. In addition, dioctylphenyl phosphates, as shown in Figure 27-1, *C* (later in the chapter), have been found to chelate calcium ions selectively and to serve as effective ion-selective electrodes.

There are three basic causes of malfunctions of ion-selective electrodes. The first and most common is defects in the perm-selective membrane itself. This allows the presence of ions other than the one whose concentration is being measured to be present at the measuring electrode. The result is ion concentrations that are falsely elevated. This defect is almost always detected in routine quality control that shows a strong upward drift in the controls despite frequent calibrations.

The second cause of inaccuracies in ion-selective electrodes is buildup of counter-voltages from liquid junction potentials present at the salt bridge connecting the measuring electrode with the reference electrode. Since these voltages oppose the voltage between the two electrodes, the voltages are diminished, giving lower-than-expected ion concentrations. Buildup of liquid junction potentials occurs over time and affects the lifetime of electrodes. It is therefore vital to change electrodes at the times specified by the manufacturer to avoid erroneous results.

The third cause of malfunctioning electrodes is buildup of proteins on the electrodes, resulting in alteration of the voltage between the testing and reference electrodes. This phenomenon gives rise to erratic results and the lack of reproducibility of ion concentrations in a single specimen. This problem can be avoided by performing washes of the electrodes at manufacturer-specified times.

SPECTROPHOTOMETRIC DETERMINATIONS USING SIMPLE REAGENTS

These are by far the most common types of assays. We discuss each analyte measured by this method.

BEER'S LAW

We remind the reader that all spectrophotometric determinations are made using the Beer-Lambert Law (see Chapter 4), which states that the absorbance, A, of an analyte at a particular wavelength is proportional to its concentration, C, and the length of the light path, L, in the cuvette in which the analyte is dissolved in a solvent (usually water or aqueous buffer), that is,

$$A = \varepsilon \times C \times L \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 27-1)}$$

where ε is the proportionality constant also called the *extinction coefficient*.

END-POINT VERSUS RATE METHOD

As we now describe, the spectrophotometric determination of the concentration of an analyte requires the addition of another compound or reagent with which the analyte of interest reacts either covalently or noncovalently. The reagent is always added in excess. The resulting complex absorbs light at a wavelength at which neither the free analyte nor the unbound reagent absorbs or at which each species absorbs only minimally. If the reaction is allowed to proceed to completion and the absorbance is then determined, the method is referred to as an *end-point method*. In some cases, the rate of formation of the complex is slow.

To avoid long waiting periods, the rate of the reaction over a short time period is determined and is used to compute the concentration of the analyte. In Chapters 20 and 23, we discussed the order of reactions. In the case of formation of colored complexes, the analyte, A, reacts with the reagent, R, to form the measured product, that is, the color complex, or AR.

$$A + R \rightarrow AR \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 27-2)}$$

The rate equation describing the rate of formation of AR, that is, d(AR)/dt, is

$$d(AR)/dt = k(A)(R) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 27-3)}$$

This is referred to as a *second-order rate* process because the rate depends on the concentrations of both A and R. However, since R is added in excess of A, at least initially, the concentration of R does not change appreciably, so that it may be considered constant. The reaction then becomes a *pseudo–first-order* reaction. In this case,

$$d(AR)/dt = kR_0(A) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 27-4)}$$

where R_0 is the defined added concentration of reagent so that

$$d(AR)/dt = k'(A) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 27-5)}$$

where k′ is kR_0.

Thus the rate of formation of AR is proportional to the concentration of A. Plots of AR versus time should be linear for the initial time periods (which can range from seconds to minutes). The slope is $k' = kR_0$, whose value is known. Therefore, A must be equal to the slope of the initial straight line divided by k′. This process is quite similar to the one described to compute enzyme concentrations in serum at low substrate concentrations, as described in Chapter 20.

In the same manner in which we determine the concentration of enzymes in serum by observing the *initial* rate of the enzyme-catalyzed reaction in the presence of saturating concentrations of substrate, where the concentration of the substrate is known, we can likewise determine the initial concentration of A by measuring the initial rate at which AR forms. This rate is proportional to the initial concentration of A, the desired quantity.

INTERFERENCES

Many color complex absorbances are determined at wavelengths higher than 500 nm, approaching the visible region of the electromagnetic spectrum, where most small molecules such as drugs, cofactors such as NADH, FADH, pyridoxal phosphate, and so on, do not absorb. However, hemoglobin has strong absorbances in this range. Therefore, if hemolysis occurs, appreciable concentrations of hemoglobin may occur in serum, giving falsely elevated absorbances and hence analyte concentrations. In addition, the presence of lipids such as the triglycerides and cholesterol esters in appreciable concentration in serum can also cause falsely elevated concentrations of analytes at virtually any wavelength due to scattering of light, resulting in decreased transmittance and therefore increased absorbance. Although fortunately not common, the presence of certain drugs can interfere with spectrophotometric determination of the levels of some of the analytes.

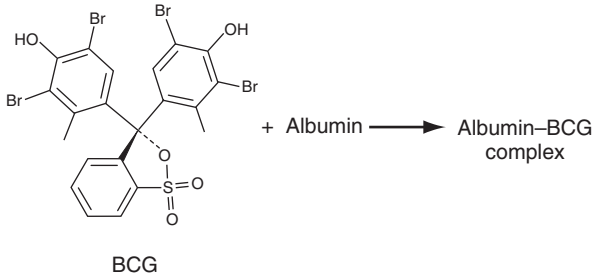
QUANTITATION OF ANALYTES

We will now discuss commonly used methods to determine the concentrations of analytes by formation of color complexes.

Albumin and Total Protein

Albumin

As noted in Chapter 19, albumin is the most anionic of the major serum proteins and migrates toward the anode on serum protein electrophoresis. It binds with high affinity to cationic dyes, among which are bromcresol green (BCG), a derivative of triphenyl methane, and bromcresol purple (BCP). The reaction with bromcresol green is shown in Equation 27-6.



BCG

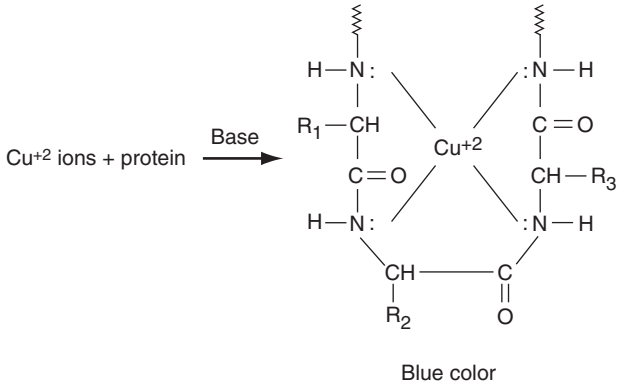
(Eq. 27-6)

http://basicbook.net

The amount of albumin present in the sample is measured as an end-point reaction at 628 nm. A similar reaction with bromcresol purple gives a color complex whose absorbance is read at 603 nm. BCG reacts also to some extent with alpha-1 and alpha-2 proteins, sometimes tending to overestimate the concentration of albumin. BCP does not react with these proteins and so is considered to be more specific in quantitation of albumin. Interferences are hemolysis and lipemia.

Total Protein

As discussed in Chapter 19, all proteins are polyamino acids linked together by peptide (CONH) bonds. These peptide bonds form complexes with cupric ions in cupric sulfate to form a color complex in alkaline solution, the so-called *biuret reaction* as shown in Equation 27-7.



(Eq. 27-7)

Note that this occurs for every four consecutive peptide units. Since most proteins contain at least 150 to 200 amino acid residues, and many of them more than 300 amino acid residues, many of these complexes are formed for each protein. Since there are large numbers of proteins in serum, this reaction is multiplied many-fold, making the biuret method quite sensitive. The absorbance of the colored complex is determined at 540 nm. The major interferences of this reaction are hemolysis and lipemia.

Bilirubin

As discussed in Chapter 21, the most common method for measuring serum bilirubin is the Jendrassik-Grof method. In this method, diazotized sulfanilic acid reacts with two pyrole rings of bilirubin to give two phenylazo adducts as shown in Equation 27-8 (Natelson, 1971).

In this equation, Me is the methyl group, V is the vinyl group, and P is the 3-substituted propionic acid moiety. Note that, interestingly, electrophilic aromatic substitution occurs on the pyrole rings such that the central methylene carbon is removed altogether, giving the two sets of phenylazo adducts.

As discussed in Chapter 21, bilirubin is conjugated to glucuronic acid at either or both propionic acid (P) moieties. Unconjugated bilirubin is much less soluble than are the conjugated forms. Most of the unconjugated bilirubin is bound tightly to albumin, making it largely unavailable for reaction with the diazotized sulfanilic acid reagent. However, addition of agents like ethanol, methanol, or caffeine-benzoate induces the dissociation of unconjugated bilirubin from albumin, allowing it to react with the reagent. Caffeine-benzoate is the preferable agent since methanol and ethanol can induce protein precipitation and increased turbidity. Interference by hemoglobin resulting from hemolysis can also occur. The soluble bilirubins (mostly conjugated, but see later) that react in the absence of dissociating reagents are termed *direct bilirubin*, while the bilirubin that reacts in the presence of the dissociating agent is *total bilirubin*. So-called *indirect bilirubin* (mostly unconjugated bilirubin bound to albumin) is obtained by subtraction of direct bilirubin from total bilirubin (Tolman & Rej, 1999). As noted in Chapter 21, not all conjugated bilirubin is detected as direct bilirubin, and a small amount of unconjugated bilirubin may be detected as direct bilirubin.

Calcium

Most methods rely on the formation of a color complex of Ca^{+2} ions with an appropriate chelating agent with which it forms a color complex. Since approximately half of total calcium is bound to protein, mainly to albumin, lowering the pH of the sample liberates calcium ions. The calcium ions are then reacted with a strong chelating compound with which they form a color complex. The two major calcium chelating compounds that are currently used are ortho-cresolphthalein (forms a red-colored complex) and Arsenazo III (Rowatt & Williams, 1989; Morgan et al, 1993), whose structures are shown in Figures 27-1, *A* and *B*, respectively. The reaction is shown in the following equation:

$$\text{Dye} + Ca^{+2} \rightarrow \text{Dye-}Ca^{+2} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 27-9)}$$

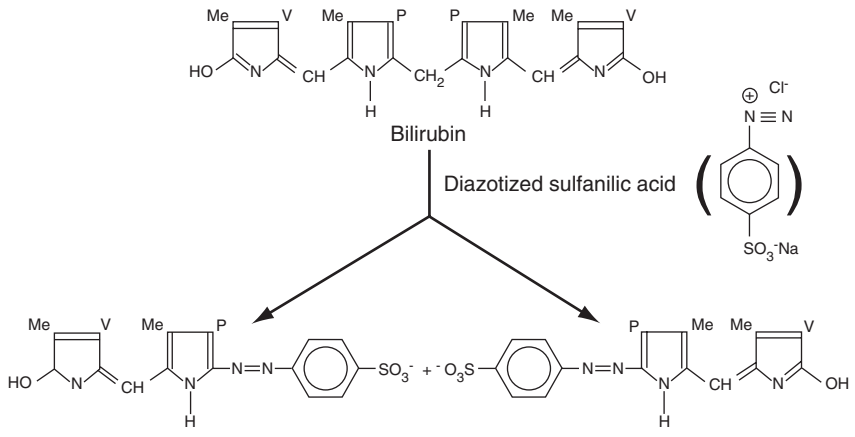
where dye is either ortho-cresolphthalein or Arsenazo III.

Use of ortho-cresolphthalein is often accompanied by a further step in which the reaction solution is treated with the compound 8-hydroxyquinoline, whose structure is also shown in Figure 27-1, *D*, at alkaline pH to prevent any possible complex from forming with magnesium ion. The amount of complex that forms is rather strongly dependent on the temperature, which must therefore be carefully maintained. At low calcium concentrations, a one-to-one complex forms, whereas at higher calcium concentrations, two moles of calcium bind to one mole of dye. Since the extinction coefficients of mono- and di-calcium dye complexes differ, the absorbance is nonlinear with respect to calcium concentration. However, use of a modified Beer's Law equation can be employed to compute concentration from absorbance, or nonlinear methods can likewise be used for this purpose.

Arsenazo III has a high affinity for calcium ions, but the amount of complex formed is strongly pH-dependent, Usually, imidazole buffers at pH 6.0 are employed for this reaction. Importantly, citrate, which is a tricarboxylic acid that can chelate calcium ions, has been found to interfere with this reaction. It has been found that determination of absorbance at 650 nm is the optimal wavelength for determination of the concentration of calcium ion complex with Arsenazo III at which there is little interference by other analytes, other than in hemolyzed samples.

Ion-Selective Electrodes for Calcium Determinations

Since calcium can be released from its normally bound states by acidification, addition of acid to a serum sample will convert all calcium to readily



(Eq. 27-8)

http://basicbook.net

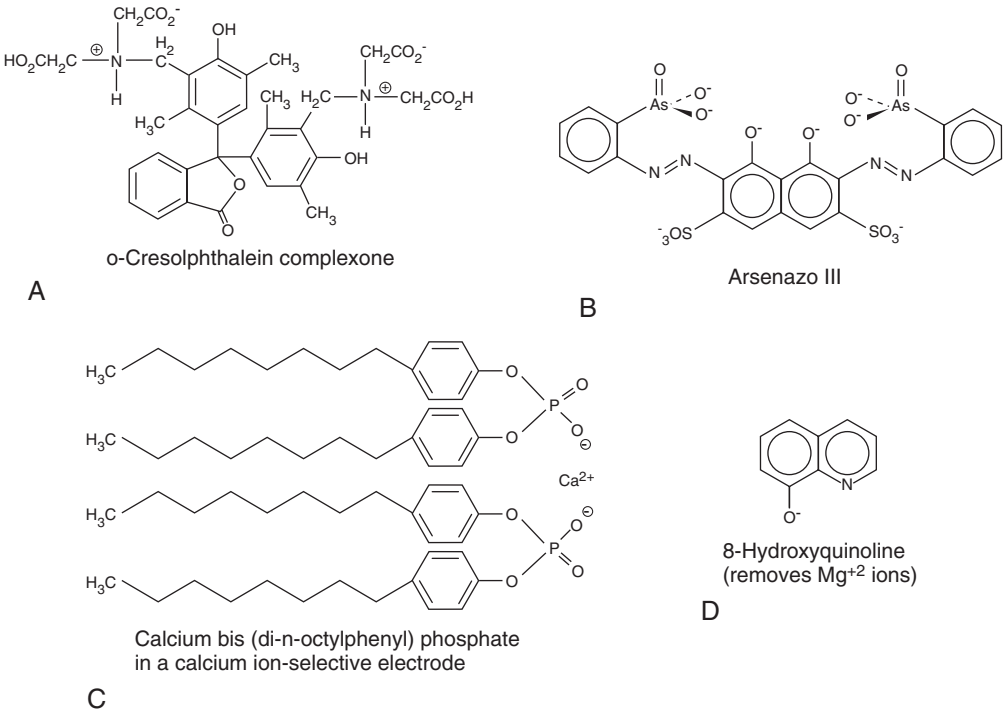
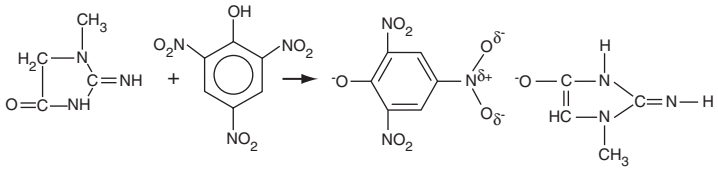


Figure 27-1 Structures of agents that bind selectively to Ca^{+2} ions with the exception of 8-hydroxyquinolone that binds and precipitates Mg^{+2} ions.

measurable ionic forms. Thus total calcium can be measured voltametrically. The electrode is a specific calcium ion exchanger of which there are several types, including ETH 1001 and bis-di-(n-octylphenyl) phosphate. The structure of the latter is shown in Figure 27-1, *C* (Endres & Rude, 1999). Ionized calcium (i.e., calcium that is not bound to protein or in complex formation with strong chelators) can be measured directly with ion-selective electrodes without the prior acid treatment step.

Creatinine

Creatinine has been found to form a complex with picric acid (2,4,6-trinitrophenol) under alkaline conditions as shown in Equation 27-10, which illustrates the Jaffe reaction.

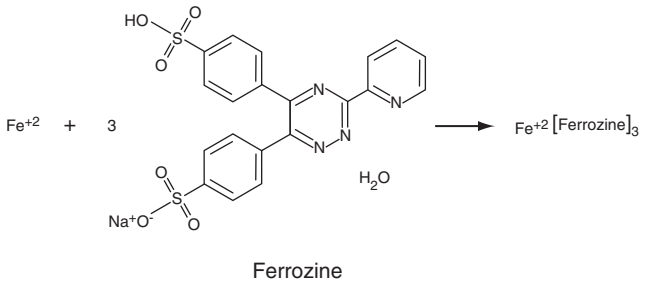


(Eq. 27-10)

The actual structure of the complex is not completely known. Most studies suggest that it is a noncovalent ionic complex as shown in Equation 27-10 (Vasillades, 1976). However, there is some evidence that the carbonyl oxygen (in its enolate form) of creatinine can attack the 1-carbon of picric acid to form a covalent (so-called *Janovsky-like*) adduct (Kroli et al, 1987). Irrespective of the structure(s) of this complex, its absorbance is determined between 490 and 500 nm. The reaction is sensitive to temperature. Possibly interferences include ketones, keto acids, and bilirubin. The enolate forms of ketones can react with picric acid much in the same manner as that of creatinine. Reaction of picric acid with bilirubin can be minimized by treatment with ferricyanide or small amounts of surfactant.

Iron

Serum iron levels can be readily determined by a specific reaction of ferrous iron (Fe^{+2}) with the compound, ferrozine, the structure of which is shown in Equation 27-11. The reaction is performed in an acid medium so that ferrous ions can be dissociated from transferrin and maintained in the reduced state. Actually, each ferrous ion complexes with three ferrozine molecules to form a magenta-colored complex, remarkably insensitive to pH, whose absorbance can be determined at 562 nm, although some assays (such as on the Siemens Advia 1650) are performed at 571 nm. As might be expected, hemolysis can cause major interferences with this assay due to red blood cell iron and release of hemoglobin that can compete with ferrozine for binding to serum iron.



(Eq. 27-11)

Total Iron-Binding Capacity

This is a measure of the total number of functional ferrous ion binding sites in transferrin. As discussed in Chapter 23, the basic approach is to strip serum transferrin of all bound iron and then to add an excess of iron to the serum sample to determine the concentration of transferrin-bound iron. To accomplish this, the serum sample is added to an acidic buffer, which dissociates all transferrin-bound iron, containing excess ferric chloride and ferrozine. All of the iron is then bound to ferrozine. Then, the pH of the solution is raised into the neutral range where the affinity of iron for transferrin is greatly increased over that for ferrozine. All iron that can bind to available sites on transferrin does so. This results in a decrease in the magenta color at 562 (or 571) nm. This decrease is proportional to the total concentration of functional transferrin binding sites. This set of reactions is summarized in Equation 27-12.

Iron-tranferrin + buffer 1 $\xrightarrow{\text{low pH}}$ transferrin + colored iron-dye complex

(Eq. 27-12, A)

transferrin + colored iron-dye complex + buffer 2 $\xrightarrow{\text{increase pH}}$ iron-transferrin + decreased colored iron-dye complex

(Eq. 27-12, B)

http://basicbook.net

Magnesium

Several dyes that form specific complexes with Mg^{+2} ions are used to determine the serum concentrations of this metal ion. They include calmagite (530 to 550 nm), shown in Figure 27-2, methylthymol blue (600 nm), and xylidyl blue (600 nm). The numbers in parentheses in the preceding sentence indicate the wavelengths at which complex concentration is determined for each dye (Endres & Rude, 1999). In the case of calmagite, the calcium-chelating compound, ethylene glycol tetraacetic acid (EGTA) can be used to remove interference from calcium ions, potassium cyanide can be added to remove interference from heavy metal ions, and polyvinylpyrrolidone can be added to the reaction solution to minimize interference from proteins.

Phosphate

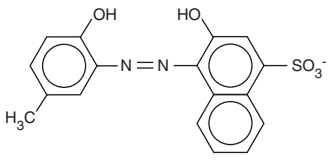
Phosphate occurs as both inorganic, mainly orthophosphate, and organic phosphate such as in glucose-6-phosphate, nucleic acids, phosphoproteins, and so on. Most phosphates in serum are inorganic phosphates; the organic phosphates are mainly intracellular. As discussed in Chapter 8, there are three forms of inorganic phosphate, the most common ones occurring at a blood pH of $H_2PO_4^{-1}$ and HPO_4^{-2}. The most commonly used method to measure total serum inorganic phosphate is the phosphomolybdate method in which ammonium molybdate is reacted with inorganic phosphate to form an ammonium phosphomolybdate complex (Endres & Rude, 1999). The unreduced form of this complex can be determined readily by the increase in absorbance at 340 nm. The pH must be maintained in the acid range because alkaline conditions can result in reduction of the complex. In fact, reduction of this complex gives a blue-colored product whose absorbance can be determined in the 600- to 700-nm range (the Fiske-Subbarow method). Reducing agents used include ascorbic acid, stannous chloride, ferrous ammonium sulfate, 1-amino-2-naphthol-4-sulfonic acid (used originally), and many others. Most methods use the direct 340-nm determination because of its speed and the fact that it involves only one step.

USE OF ENZYMES AS REAGENTS TO DETERMINE ANALYTE CONCENTRATIONS

GENERAL FEATURES

Rate versus End-Point Methods

These are quite similar to the methods discussed in the section on spectrophotometric determinations earlier in the chapter. For rate methods, the total amount of enzyme is added to the serum sample so that, unlike in enzyme assays, total enzyme concentration is known. Note, though, that the substrate concentration is not known (we seek to determine this). It is not known whether or not saturation conditions prevail. Therefore, to compute the substrate concentration for an observed initial rate, the Michaelis-Menton equation is solved for substrate concentration. This is possible since K_m and V_{max} are known for the enzyme reagent used. As with dye-based methods, end-point methods using enzymes are based on the determination of the point at which product concentration remains constant; this concentration is the total substrate or analyte concentration.



Calmagite for Mg^{+2} determination

Figure 27-2 **Structure of calmagite, an agent that forms a selective color complex with Mg^{+2} ions.**

NADH and NADPH as Quantitative Indicators

In this section and in the following section, it will be seen that a common approach in determining the serum concentrations of analytes and of enzymes is to follow the reduction of NADH or NADP to NADH or NADPH, respectively. NAD[P]H have strong absorbances at 340 nm, while the oxidized forms (i.e., NAD[P]) have no absorbance. Thus determination of the *increase* in absorbance at 340 nm for an enzyme-catalyzed reaction in which NAD[P] is converted to NAD[P]H or of the *decrease* in absorbance at 340 nm for an enzyme-catalyzed reaction in which NAD[P]H is converted to NAD[P] is a very convenient means of measuring analyte concentration.

In some assays, in which NAD[P]H is an end product, the sensitivity of the level of NAD[P]H produced is enhanced by adding another step wherein a dye reagent, a tetrazolium derivative, is reduced by NAD[P]H to yield a formazan that strongly absorbs at wavelengths around 500 nm. This reaction can be catalyzed by an electron transfer agent including the enzyme diaphorase (lipoamide dehydrogenase, EC 1.6.4.3) or phenazine methosulfate. A prototypical reaction is shown in Figure 27-3. This reaction can, in principle, be used for any reaction in which NAD[P]H is generated.

ANALYTES WHOSE CONCENTRATIONS ARE DETERMINED BY ENZYME REACTIONS

Ammonia

Ammonia is measured by use of the versatile enzyme, glutamate dehydrogenase (GLDH). In this reaction, ammonia reacts with alpha-ketoglutarate to form glutamate in a reductive amination reaction. In the first step of this reaction, a Schiff base forms between ammonia and the alpha-keto group of alpha-ketoglutarate. In the second step, the resulting double bond is then reduced by NADPH giving the primary amine in glutamate, plus NADP. The overall reaction is shown in Figure 27-4. Ammonia concentration can therefore be determined by the decrease in absorbance at 340 nm as NADPH is converted to NADP. This enzyme can be used in any reaction is which ammonia is generated.

Bicarbonate Ions (HCO^{3-})

One of the glycolytic enzymes, phosphoenolpyruvate carboxy kinase (PEPK), utilizes bicarbonate ion to carboxylate phosphoenol pyruvate to form oxaloacetate (OAA), a Kreb's cycle intermediate, with attendant dephosphorylation Equation 27-13. Thus advantage can be taken of this reaction to consume serum bicarbonate in this reaction, thereby enabling us to determine its concentration. PEPK is added to serum. The resulting OAA is then reduced by added malate dehydrogenase to form malate. In this second reaction, NADH is oxidized to NAD so that the decrease in

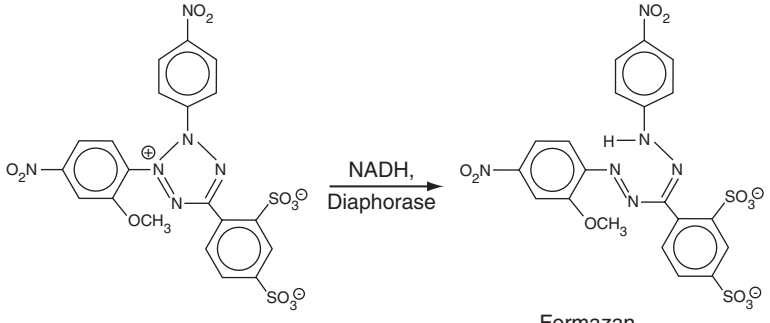


Figure 27-3 **Reduction of a tetrazolium to a formazan in which NADH or NADPH is converted to NAD or NADP, respectively, in the presence of a catalyst, that is, either the enzyme, diaphorase, or phenazine methosulfate.** The formazan strongly absorbs at 500 nm. This reaction can be used to enhance the sensitivity of reactions in which either NADH or NADPH is generated.

http://basicbook.net

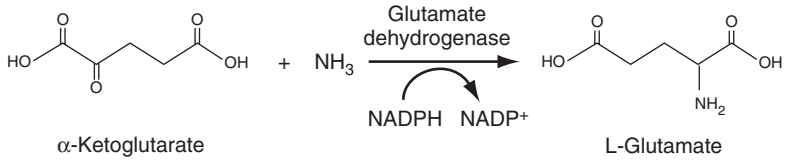
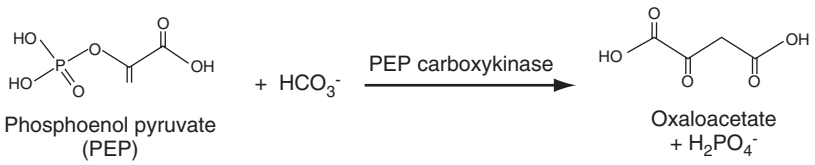
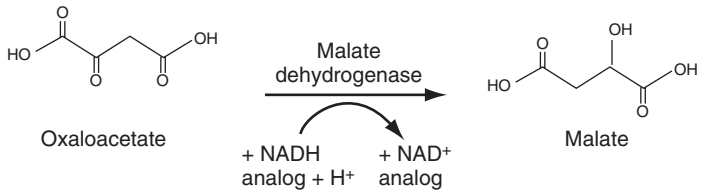


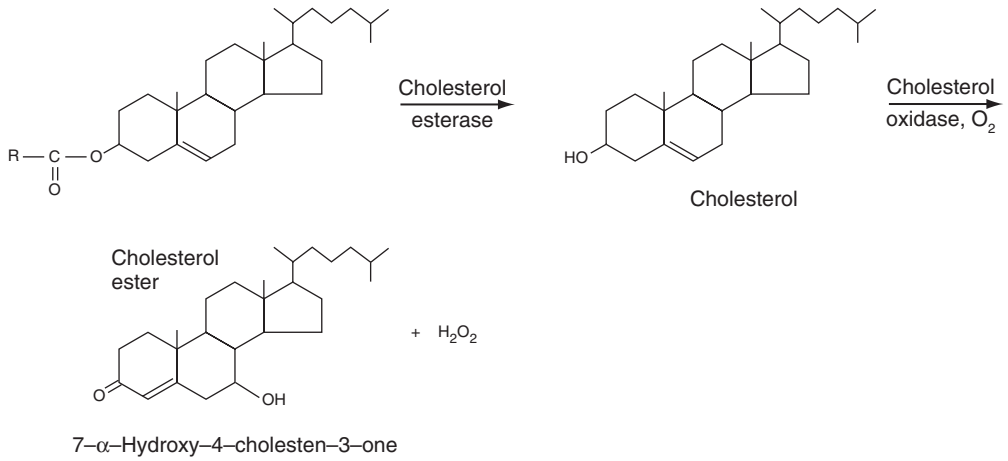
Figure 27-4 Reductive amination reaction, catalyzed by glutamate dehydrogenase (GLDH), in which ammonia reacts with alpha-ketoglutarate to form the amino acid, glutamic acid. In this reaction, NADH is converted to NAD, allowing ammonia concentration to be determined by the total decrease in absorbance of light at 340 nm, the wavelength at which NADH absorbs.



(Eq. 27-13, A)



(Eq. 27-13, B)



(Eq. 27-14, A)

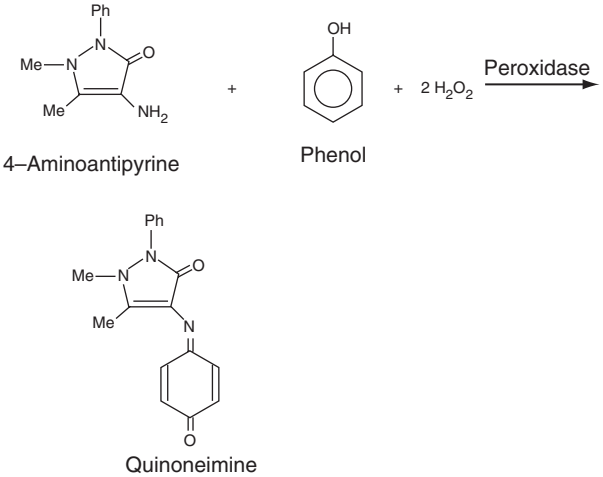
absorbance of NADH can be monitored at 340 nm. Often, an NAD analogue is used so that the decreased absorbance at 410, rather than 340, nm is monitored.

Cholesterol

As discussed in Chapter 17, cholesterol circulates as both free (mainly in low-density lipoprotein[LDL] particles) and cholesterol ester (mainly in high-density lipoprotein [HDL] particles). To determine the serum concentration of total cholesterol, therefore, all cholesterol ester is first converted to free cholesterol using cholesterol esterase (Equation 27-14, *A*). The resulting total free cholesterol is then oxidized to 7-alpha-hydroxy-cholesten-3-one with cholesterol oxidase, as also shown in Equation 27-14, *A*. As can be seen, hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2, a strong oxidizing agent, is generated in this reaction. Advantage can be taken of this property to generate strongly absorbing chromophores, as we now describe.

The Quinoneimine Strategy

H_2O_2 can be reacted, in the presence of a peroxidase, with a phenazone, mainly 4-aminoantipyrene, which forms a highly colored quinoneamine dye with phenol, as shown in Equation 27-14, *B*. This is a prototypical reaction in which the phenol is oxidized to the quinone and in which the exocyclic $-NH_2$ group of 4-aminoantipyrene then adds to the quinone



(Eq. 27-14, B)

http://basicbook.net

to form a strongly absorbing color complex. Phenol is one of many compounds that can be used to form a quinone or an oxidized aromatic ring, known collectively as *Trinder's reagents*. Several of these are aniline derivatives and include N-ethyl-N-(2-hydroxy-3-sulphopropyl) m-toluidine (TOOS) (absorbance is determined at 545 nm) and N-(2-hydroxy-3-sulfopropyl)-3,5-dimethoxyaniline (HDAOS) among a number of other, similar compounds. We will have occasion to refer to this set of reactions in the determination of the concentrations of a number of analytes, in addition to cholesterol, as described in the following section.

For cholesterol determination, H_2O_2 is generated and is reacted with 4-aminoantipyrine and, generally, *phenol* in the presence of a peroxidase to yield the quinoneimine, shown in the next section, whose absorbance is determined at 505 nm.

HDL Cholesterol (Jensen et al, 2002; Sugiuchi et al, 1995)

Until relatively recently, methods have been employed in which either LDL or HDL fractions are selectively precipitated, centrifuged, and the cholesterol in the supernatant assayed. For example, to assay HDL cholesterol, fractions containing apo-B proteins as in LDL and VLDL particles (see Chapter 17) were precipitated using a polyanion and a divalent cation such as dextran sulfate-$MnCl_2$ or phosphotungstate-$MgCl_2$ combinations. The remaining cholesterol in the supernatant, presumably only HDL cholesterol, is then assayed using the method described in the next section. These methods are somewhat time-consuming and, of course, require manual procedures that cannot be automated.

It was found that the enzymes used in the two assays shown in Equation 27-14 could be made relatively specific for reacting with HDL cholesterol by the relatively simple expedient of adding polyethylene glycol (PEG 6000) to the free amino groups of basic amino acids of the polypeptide chains of these enzymes. Also, addition of alpha-cyclodextran sulfate (average of six glucose units with an average of two sulfates per glucose unit) in the presence of Mn^{+2} ions greatly reduces the reactivity of the cholesterol in LDL, VLDL, and chylomicron fractions. Thus addition of the two PEGylated enzymes with sulfated cyclodextran and $MnCl_2$ allows direct determination of HDL cholesterol. The indicator reaction with H_2O_2 is the same as in Equation 27-14, *B*. The overall method is summarized in Equation 27-15, *A*.

LDL Cholesterol (LDL-C) (Nauck et al, 2002)

The basic strategy for direct determination of LDL-C is first to add a reagent that protects LDL-C from reacting with the two enzymes, cholesterol esterase and cholesterol oxidase, and then to react cholesterol from all of the other fractions so that it is completely consumed, and finally to add a deprotecting agent that allows LDL-C to undergo reaction with the two enzymes. Charged surfactants have been found to block cholesterol in LDL from reacting with the two enzymes, cholesterol esterase and oxidase. The release agent is also a surfactant that, in contradistinction to the protecting agent, is neutral.

In practice, two composite reagents are added to serum sequentially. The first contains protective surfactant and polyanions, which block the reaction of LDL-C with cholesterol esterase and oxidase, and catalase, which consumes the H_2O_2 generated in the reaction of all of the non-LDL-C, summarized in Equation 27-15, *B*. Then a second reagent is added that consists of 4-aminoantipyrene as described above, sodium azide, that blocks catalase, peroxidase, the deprotecting surfactant that releases LDL-C and an appropriate Trinder's agent, i.e., chromophore-producing compound that reacts with the 4-aminoantipyrene to form the color complex. These reactions are summarized in Equations 27-15, *B*, and 27-15, *C*.

There are multiple variations of this set of reactions, but all of them are based on the overall strategy described here.

Glucose

The most commonly used method to determine serum glucose levels is to induce phosphorylation of glucose, by hexokinase and ATP to yield glucose-6-phosphate. By adding glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, glucose-6-phosphate is converted into gluconolactone-6-phosphate (first step in the pentose phosphate pathway). This is an oxidation reaction. NADP is reduced to NADPH, whose absorbance can be determined directly at 340 nm. These reactions are summarized in Equation 27-16.

$$\text{Glucose} + \text{ATP} \xrightarrow[\text{Hexokinase}]{\text{ADP}} \text{Glucose} - 6 - \text{(P)} + \text{P}_i$$

(Eq. 27-16, A)

$$\text{Glucose} - 6 - \text{(P)} + \text{NADP} \xrightarrow{\text{G–6–P–D}} \text{Gluconolactone} - 6 - \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{NADPH} \quad \uparrow \text{Absorbance at 340 nm}$$

(Eq. 27-16, B)

In Equation 27-16, the circled P represents the phosphate moiety. This reaction sequence is perhaps the one most commonly used. Other methods for glucose determination are also available and are used most commonly in point-of-care testing (Yoo & Lee, 2010). In these reactions, glucose oxidase is used to convert glucose to gluconolactone. In this reaction, flavine adenine dinucleotide, FAD, is reduced to $FADH_2$. In the presence of oxygen, FAD is regenerated and oxygen is reduced to H_2O_2. The latter is oxidized in the presence of a platinum electrode to yield $2H^+ + O_2 + 2e$ (electrons). The electrons flow through a circuit giving rise to a current, which is proportional to the glucose concentration. There are several

$$\text{LDL-C} + \text{cyclodextran sulfate} + MnCl_2 + \text{PEG-cholesterol esterase/cholesterol oxidase} \rightarrow \text{NR}$$

$$\text{HDL-C} + \text{cyclodextran sulfate} + MnCl_2 + \text{PEG-cholesterol esterase/cholesterol oxidase} \rightarrow H_2O_2 + \text{7-}\alpha\text{-hydroxy-4-cholesten-3-one}$$

$$2H_2O_2 + \text{4-aminoantipyrene} + \text{phenol or other Trinder reagent} \rightarrow \text{quinoneimine}$$

where NR is no reaction

(Eq. 27-15, A)

$$\text{LDL-C} + \text{charged surfactant/polyanions} + \text{cholesterol esterase/cholesterol oxidase} \rightarrow \text{NR}$$

$$\text{HDL-C} + \text{charged surfactant} + \text{cholesterol esterase/cholesterol oxidase} \rightarrow H_2O_2 + \text{7-}\alpha\text{-hydroxy-4-cholesten-3-one.}$$

$$2H_2O_2 + \text{catalase} \rightarrow 2H_2O + O_2$$

(Eq. 27-15, B)

$$\text{LDL-C/charged surfactant/polyanion} + \text{neutral releasing surfactant} + \text{cholesterol esterase/cholesterol oxidase} + \text{sodium azide-catalase} \rightarrow H_2O_2 + \text{7-}\alpha\text{-hydroxy-4-cholesten-3-one}$$

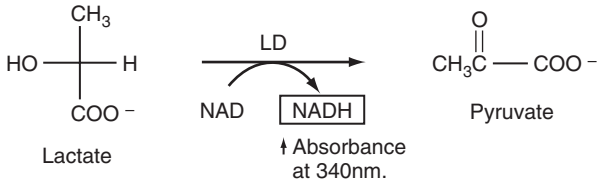
$$2H_2O_2 + \text{4-aminoantipyrene} + \text{phenol or other Trinder reagent} \rightarrow \text{quinoneimine}$$

(Eq. 27-15, C)

variants of this strategy. In one of these, glucose dehydrogenase bound to the dye, pyrroquinolinequinone (PQQ), oxidizes glucose to gluconolactone plus the reduced form of PQQ, which has an intense red color that can be measured spectrophotometrically. Most commonly, the reduced dye is reoxidized and the released electrons measured as current electrochemically as described earlier. The electrochemical methods for point-of-care testing use whole blood for glucose determination. Thus the hematocrit has an effect on the concentration of glucose that must be included in obtaining the whole blood glucose value (D'Orazio, 2009; Yoo & Lee, 2010).

Lactate

As discussed in Chapter 20, lactate reacts almost exclusively with lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) as shown in Equation 27-17.



(Eq. 27-17)

Since NAD is converted to NADH, shown in the box, the increase in absorbance of NADH at 340 nm is followed until it becomes constant. After subtraction of a blank for background absorbance of the serum sample at 340 nm, the total absorbance is used to compute directly the increased concentration of NADH due to lactate oxidation.

Triglycerides

These are a heterogenous group of triesters of fatty acids with glycerol (see Chapter 17). The nature of the fatty acid esters can differ widely in chain length, presence, and number of unsaturated bonds in the aliphatic chains, and chain arrangement. The strategy for determining triglyceride concentration is to hydrolyze all of the fatty acid esters of triglycerides to produce glycerol. It is then the resulting total concentration of glycerol that is taken as the total triglyceride concentration. Technically, this requires the use of a serum blank to determine the level of endogenous glycerol, but the level of glycerol in serum has been found to be quite low so that these blank determinations are not usually performed (Rifai et al, 1999).

In the reference method for determining triglyceride concentration, the triglycerides are first extracted into chloroform; the extract is then treated with silicic acid to extract phospholipids from the chloroform extract. The chloroform extract is then treated with strong potassium hydroxide base to hydrolyze all of the fatty acid esters of glycerol in a process referred to as *saponification*. The resulting glycerol is treated with sodium periodate, resulting in the formation of 2 moles of formaldehyde and 1 mole of formic acid. The formaldehyde is then treated with chromotropic acid to give a chromogen whose structure has not been proved as yet but that contains two chromotropic acid molecules linked together by a formaldehyde carbon bridge. This adduct absorbs strongly at 580 nm. Of course, this is a time-consuming manual method that serves only as a reference method and cannot be automated.

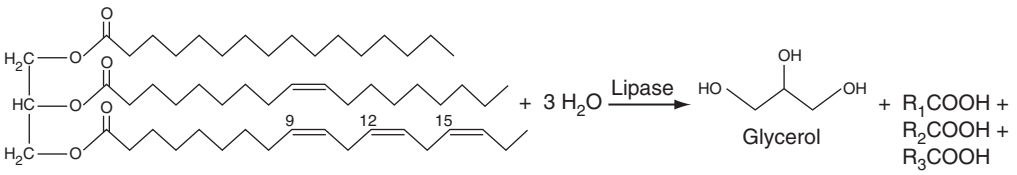
In the automated methods performed directly on serum, triglycerides are hydrolyzed to glycerol plus free fatty acids using lipase. Here we point out that lipase cleaves the fatty acid esters of glycerol at positions 1 and 3 of glycerol but not position 2. However, the 2-acid esters of glycerol spontaneously rearrange to form the 1- or 3-fatty acid esters that are then hydrolyzed by lipase. This then allows complete hydrolysis of the fatty acid esters of glycerol.

To determine the total glycerol concentration, the glycerol is converted by the enzyme alpha-glycerokinase to form 1-phosphoglycerol. This product is converted, in turn, to dihydroxyacetone by glycerophosphate oxidase in the presence of oxygen. This is an oxidation-reduction reaction that generates H_2O_2. This is used to oxidize phenol or m-chlorophenol in the presence of 4-aminoantipyrene to form a conjugated adduct, as described in the cholesterol assay section earlier in the chapter. The absorbance (usually at 505 nm) of this adduct is proportional to the concentration of generated glycerol. These reactions are summarized in Equation 27-18.

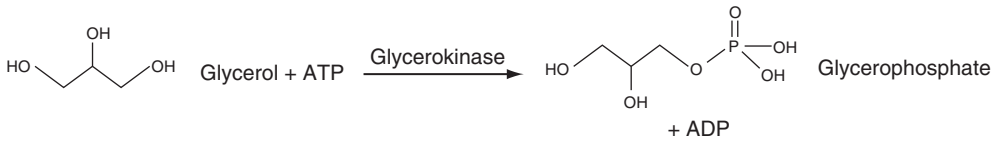
Variants of this basic approach include subjecting the glycerophosphate shown in Equation 27-18, *B* to glycerophosphate dehydrogenase to produce dihydroxyacetone phosphate, in a reaction in which NAD is converted into NADH. The NADH can be directly determined at 340 nm.

Urea or Blood Urea Nitrogen (BUN)

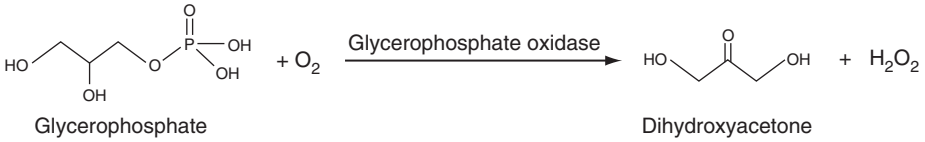
The reactions here use ultimately the same GLDH enzyme as used for ammonia determination described the section entitled The Quinoneimine Strategy earlier in the chapter. Here, urea is hydrolyzed into CO_2 and NH_3 in a reaction catalyzed by the enzyme urease. The resulting ammonia is



(Eq. 27-18, A)



(Eq. 27-18, B)

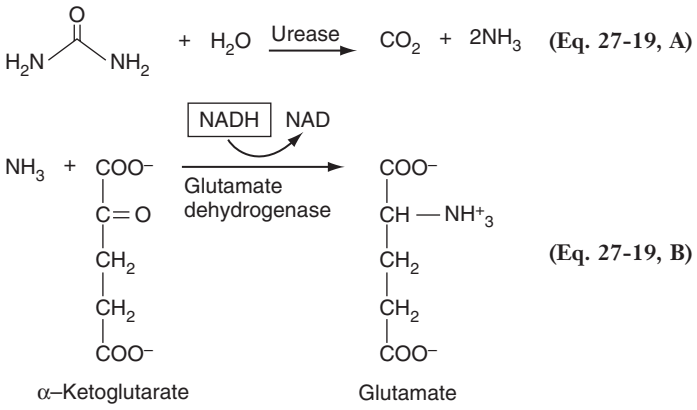


(Eq. 27-18, C)

$$H_2O_2 + \text{4-chlorophenol} + \text{4-aminophenazone} \xrightarrow{\text{Peroxidase}} \text{Colored quinoneimine adduct}$$

(Eq. 27-18, D)

then reacted with alpha-ketoglutarate to give glutamate in the reductive amination reaction shown in Equation 27-19.



(Eq. 27-19, A)

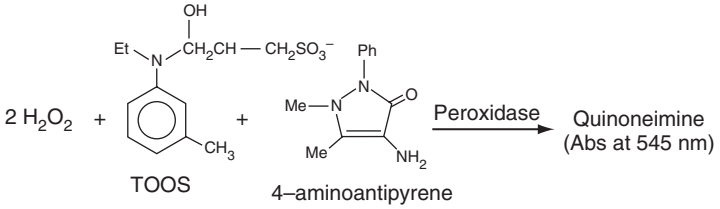
(Eq. 27-19, B)

The use of hemolyzed samples may cause a significant interference with this method.

Uric Acid

As shown in Equation 27-20, *A*, uric acid is converted into allantoin by the enzyme uricase.

(Eq. 27-20, A)



(Eq. 27-20, B)

In this reaction, H_2O_2 is generated. As shown in Equation 27-20, *B*, the resulting H_2O_2 can then be used to oxidize a Trinder reagent, in this case TOOS (see the section entitled The Quinoneimine Strategy earlier in the chapter), that reacts with 4-aminoantipyrene to form a quinoneimine. Another is to use the resulting H_2O_2 to oxidize a convenient substrate like ethyl alcohol to acetaldehyde by the enzyme catalase. The resulting acetaldehyde can then be further oxidized to acetate by the enzyme, alcohol dehydrogenase. In this reaction, NADP is converted to NADPH, resulting in an increased absorbance at 340 nm.

ASSAYS FOR ENZYMES

Enzyme assays are discussed in Chapter 20. As discussed in that chapter, most enzyme reactions are carried out under saturating conditions where the substrate concentration is significantly greater than K_M. This ensures that the initial rate of the reaction is proportional to the total enzyme concentration. Most enzyme assay results are expressed in activities, that is, international units (IU), the slopes of the plots of product formed versus time, as described in Chapter 20.

Alanine Amino Transferase (ALT) and Aspartate Amino Transferase (AST)

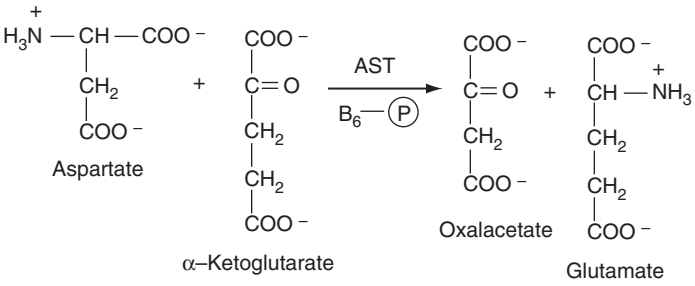
ALT

As described in Chapter 21, this enzyme, which is expressed mainly in liver, reversibly catalyzes the transamination reaction between alanine and alpha ketoglutarate to give pyruvate and glutamate. As discussed in Chapter 21, it is vital that the cofactor B_6, pyridoxal phosphate, be present since it is the moiety that is involved in the actual reaction. As shown in Equation 27-21, the pyruvate that is produced is then reacted with lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) in the presence of NADH to produce lactate. Since, in this reaction, NADH is converted to NAD, the decrease in absorbance of NADH at 340 nm is measured.

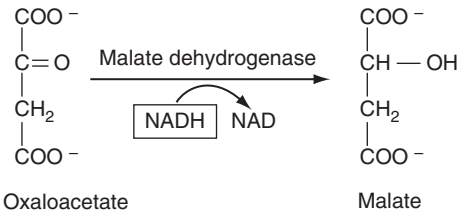
The use of icteric and lipemic samples may cause a significant interference with this method.

AST

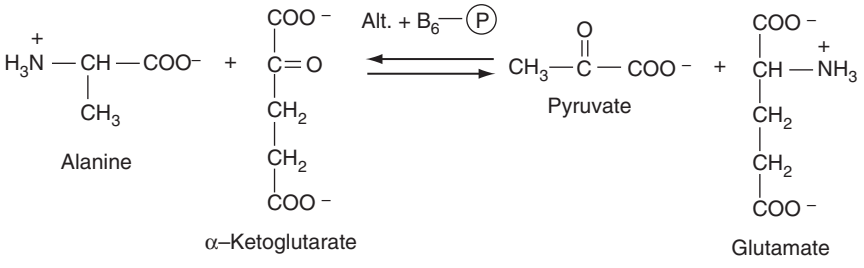
As is also described in Chapter 21, this enzyme, which, like ALT, requires co-factor B_6 (pyridoxal phosphate), reversibly catalyzes the reaction of aspartic acid with alpha-ketoglutarate to yield oxaloacetate (OAA) and glutamate. The resulting OAA is then reacted with malate dehydrogenase, which converts the OAA to malate. As in the detection reaction for ALT in the preceding paragraph, NADH is converted to NAD, resulting in a decreased absorbance at 340 nm. These reactions are summarized in Equation 27-22.



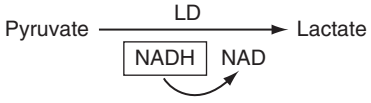
(Eq. 27-22, A)



(Eq. 27-22, B)



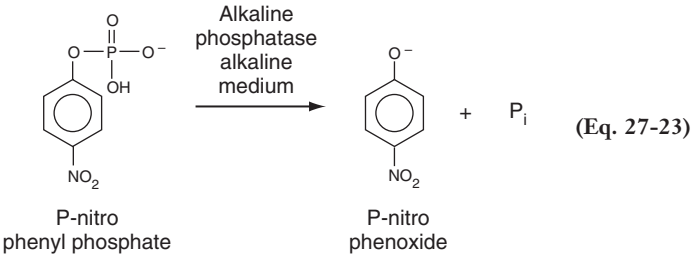
(Eq. 27-21, A)



(Eq. 27-21, B)

Alkaline Phosphatase (ALP)

As discussed in Chapter 20, the quantitative determination of serum alkaline phosphatase is based on colorimetric measurement of the rate of formation of p-nitrophenol (pNP), as the p-nitrophenoxide anion, a yellow compound, at 410 nm, from hydrolysis of para-nitrophenylphosphate (pNPP) by alkaline phosphatase, as shown in Equation 27-23.



(Eq. 27-23)

P_i represents inorganic phosphate cleaved from the substrate. The use of hemolyzed specimens may cause a significant interference with this method.

Amylase (Moss & Henderson, 1999)

This enzyme hydrolyzes poly α-1,4-linked glucose polymers as are found in starch, amylopectin, and glycogen such that hydrolysis occurs at every second glucose residue. There are two types of amylases: alpha and beta. Beta amylase cleaves maltose units (glucosyl(α-1,4)glucose) from the reducing to the nonreducing end, as an exo-amylase, while α-amylase cleaves internally in addition to its cleaving from the reducing end of the alpha-1,4,-linked glucose polymer. Serum amylase is of the alpha type. The two major sources of this enzyme are pancreas and salivary glands. Thus serum amylase levels can be used as markers for pancreatic and salivary gland function. Both strongly homologous isozymes are present in serum. Over 200 methods for assaying for these enzymes have been described. Older methods used starch as the substrate. The glucose polymer forms a well-defined helix in solution. Iodine can bind within this helical structure to form a colored complex. In the presence of amylase, the polymer is degraded, resulting in lower iodine binding and hence less color complex formation. This decrease in color over time can be followed. In addition, as starch is hydrolyzed by amylase, the turbidity of the solution decreases, allowing turbidimetry (see Chapter 4) to be used to measure amylase activity.

Chromogenic substrate polymers of glucose have been synthesized in which a dye is bound covalently to the polymer. In the presence of amylase, the polymer is hydrolyzed, releasing small dye-labeled oligosaccharides. In the Johnson & Johnson slide technology system, the oligosaccharide is bound to an anionic dye, drimarene red Z2B; the dye-labeled oligosaccharides from amylase cleavage diffuse into the reagent layer where they are bound to a cationic polymer, where their concentrations can be determined spectrophotometrically. The parent polysaccharide cannot diffuse into this layer and is thus excluded. On Abbott analyzers, the parent polymer is labeled with a fluorescent probe. Since the structure of the long polymer is rigid (a helical structure), the fluorescence is polarized when the probe is stimulated with polarized light. (See Chapter 23 for a description of fluorescence polarization.) When the polymer is hydrolyzed by amylase, probe-bound fragments are released that are much smaller than the parent polymer and whose "tumbling times" are much faster, resulting in a major decrease in fluorescence polarization. Thus the decreased fluorescence polarization can be followed over time to determine the enzyme activity.

Digestion of glucose polymers by amylase results in the formation of oligosaccharides like maltose and maltotriose (three glucose units in α-1,4 linkage). Oligosaccharides with three or fewer glucose units can be hydrolyzed to glucose with α-glucosidase. The resulting glucose formed can be assayed as described in the glucose assay section earlier in the chapter. A problem with this approach is the presence of endogenous glucose. This provides a high blank background. Endogenous glucose can be removed with a gel filtration column, although this does not lend the method to automation.

These methods use natural polymers of starch or amylopectin as substrates. This has the problem of standardization of the substrate material from lot to lot. In addition, the inhomogeneous substrate forms sols in aqueous solution that are easily contaminated. They are also temperature-sensitive and have limited stability. Newer methods involve use of synthetic substrates.

In one such method, synthetic maltopentaose (5α-1,4-linked glucose residues) is hydrolyzed by amylase to yield maltotriose and maltose. These are directly hydrolyzed to glucose by α-glucosidase. Since there is a high endogenous glucose background, this glucose is removed by a gel filtration column as mentioned earlier.

To obviate the endogenous glucose problem, synthetic maltotetraose (4α-1,4-linked glucose residues) is used as the substrate. Amylase cleaves this substrate into 2 maltose units. These are then treated with the enzyme maltose phosphorylase and inorganic phosphate to form glucose-1-phosphate + glucose. Glucose-1-phosphate is then converted to glucose-6-phosphate by phosphoglucomutase. The resulting glucose-6-phosphate is then treated with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase as described in the glucose assay section earlier in the chapter, so that the formation of NADPH at 340 nm can be followed over time. It may be noted that, since the glucose-6-phosphate is generated from maltose and not from any endogenous glucose, endogenous glucose does not interfere with this reaction. However, unfortunately, amylase is not completely specific for generating 2 maltose sugars from maltotetraose and also cleaves the substrate, to a more minor extent, to glucose and maltotriose. Thus the assay somewhat underestimates the level of amylase for this reason.

More recently, chromogenic substrates have been synthesized. These contain oligo-α-1,4-linked glucose units with 4 (or p)-nitrophenol (4-NP) in α-acetal linkage to the reducing sugar of the oligosaccharide. In one assay, maltoheptaose (7 glucose units in α-1,4 linkage) attached to 4-NP at its reducing end, is used as the substrate, as illustrated in Figure 27-5. Amylase hydrolyzes this substrate mainly into $(glucose)_4$-NP, $(glucose)_3$-NP, and $(glucose)_2$-NP plus $(glucose)_3$, $(glucose)_4$, and $(glucose)_5$, respectively. These reactions are summarized in Equation 27-24.

As shown in Equation 27-24, *B*, the –NP-linked fragments are then further degraded with α-glucosidase to yield 4 (or p)-nitrophenol, which, at alkaline pH, forms the p-nitrophenoxide anion that absorbs strongly at 405 to 410 nm, as discussed in the Alkaline Phosphatase section earlier in the chapter.

Note that Equation 27-24 assume that a limit digest occurs for the tetra-, tri-, and disaccharides, always liberating one mole of p-nitrophenoxide anion per mole of each saccharide. In practice, this does not occur. In fact, hydrolysis of $(glucose)_4$-NP by alpha-glucosidase is slow, although the rate can be enhanced by blocking OH-groups of the terminal nonreducing glucose unit. Thus 4,6-ethylidene, 4,6-benzylidene, and other blocking groups have been found to enhance alpha-glucosidase activity.

Other problems with this approach include the consideration that the pKa of nitrophenol is close to the pH of the assay reactions, so that only about half of the released p-nitrophenol will be present as the oxyanion. In addition, the method is sensitive to ionic strength effects and the concentration of protein present in the assay mixture, both of which affect the pKa of the p-nitrophenol. It may also be subjected to interference by hemoglobin.

It has been found that these problems are largely removed by use of 2-chloro,4-nitrophenol, called *CNP*, in place of 4-NP. Because of the ortho electron-withdrawing property of the o-Cl group, the pKa of the liberated phenol is lowered so that 100% of it exists as the colored phenoxide anion. It also minimizes the other complications listed earlier (except hemoglobin interference) and, because it is a better leaving group in the mechanism of alpha-glucosidase–induced hydrolysis, higher yields of the smaller saccharides, and thus of CNP, are obtained, allowing for higher yields of the colored final product.

$$NP\text{-}(glucose)_7 \xrightarrow{\text{Amylase}} NP\text{-}(glucose)_{4,3,2} + (glucose)_{3,4,5}$$

(Eq. 27-24, A)

$$NP\text{-}(glucose)_{4,3,2} \xrightarrow{\alpha\text{-glucosidase}} (4\ glucose + NP) + (3\ glucose + NP) + (2\ glucose + NP)$$

(Eq. 27-24, B)

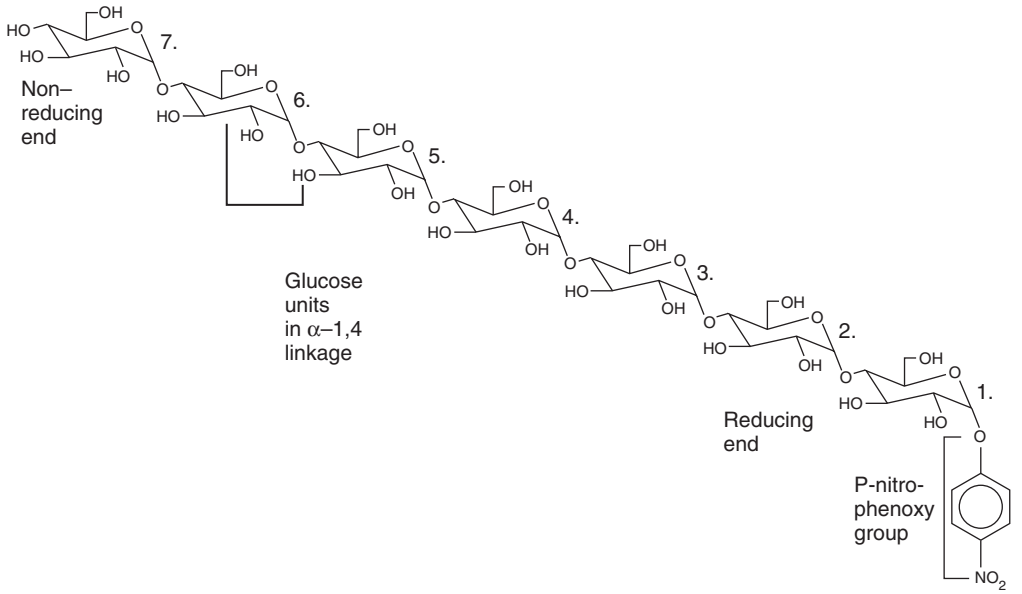


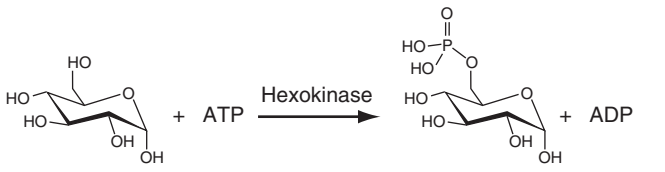
Figure 27-5 **Structure of a synthetic substrate for amylase assays.** This is the p-nitrophenyl glycoside of maltoheptaose. In practice, to enhance reaction specificity and to assure more efficient cleavage by alpha-glucosidase, a protecting 4,6-ethylidene or benzylidene group is introduced on the seventh glucose unit on the nonreducing end.

Creatine Kinase (CK)

As discussed in Chapter 20, creatine kinase reversibly catalyzes the reaction between creatine and ATP to yield creatine phosphate and ADP. This reaction occurs prominently in muscle tissue, allowing for storage of the so-called *high-energy phosphate bond* as creatine phosphate. For the purposes of the enzyme assay, the reaction is reversed, that is, ADP and creatine phosphate are added to the sample to generate ATP + creatine. The product, ATP, is coupled into hexokinase-glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) reactions and generates NADPH as shown in Equation 27-25. The creatine kinase activity is proportional to the absorbance increase of NADPH at 340 nm.

The use of hemolyzed samples may cause a significant interference with this method and should be avoided.

(Eq. 27-25, A)



(Eq. 27-25, B)

Gamma-Glutamyl Transferase (GGT)

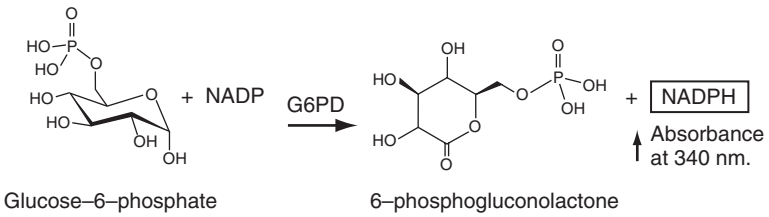
As discussed in Chapter 21, this enzyme occurs on the cannalicular surface of the hepatocyte (see Figure 21-9) and catalyzes the transfer of the gamma-glutamyl residue of glutathione (gamma-glutamyl-cysteinyl-glycine) to another amino acid or to an exogenous agent like a drug. As it happens, GGT transfers the gamma-glutamyl residue from the synthetic substrate L-γ-glutamyl-3-carboxy-4-nitroanilide to glycylglycine to yield gamma-glutamyl-glycylglycine and free 5-amino-2-nitro-benzoate (ANB) as shown in Equation 27-26. Free ANB, which is a substituted aniline, absorbs at 410 nm. The rate of formation of ANB is measured as the increase in absorbance at 410 nm divided by the time interval over which it is measured, directly giving GGT activity.

Lactate Dehydrogenase (LD)

This enzyme, the reactions that it catalyzes, and assays for this enzyme are discussed in Chapter 20. Here we note that the reaction scheme shown in Equation 27-17 for the assay for lactate is the same scheme as for the assay of LDH. In this case, lactate is added to the serum sample at a concentration above its K_M, and the activity determined by the rate of increase of NADH absorbance at 340 nm.

Lipase

As discussed above in the triglycerides assay section, lipases cleave fatty esters of glycerol, and, as discussed in Chapters 17 and 22, there are several isozymes of lipase, including pancreatic lipase, intestinal lipase, lipoprotein lipase, and gastric lipase. The first three of these forms have strong homology to one another and significantly less homology to the gastric isozyme. These lipases hydrolyze triglycerides that are long-chain fatty acid esters of glycerol. In addition, there are aryl and aliesterases that hydrolyze short-chain fatty acid esters and such simple esters as ethylacetate (aliesterase) and phenyl acetate (arylesterase) (Moss & Henderson, 1999). In serum, pancreatic lipase is very much the predominant form. Thus, assays for lipase are for the purpose of evaluating pancreatic function.



(Eq. 27-25, C)

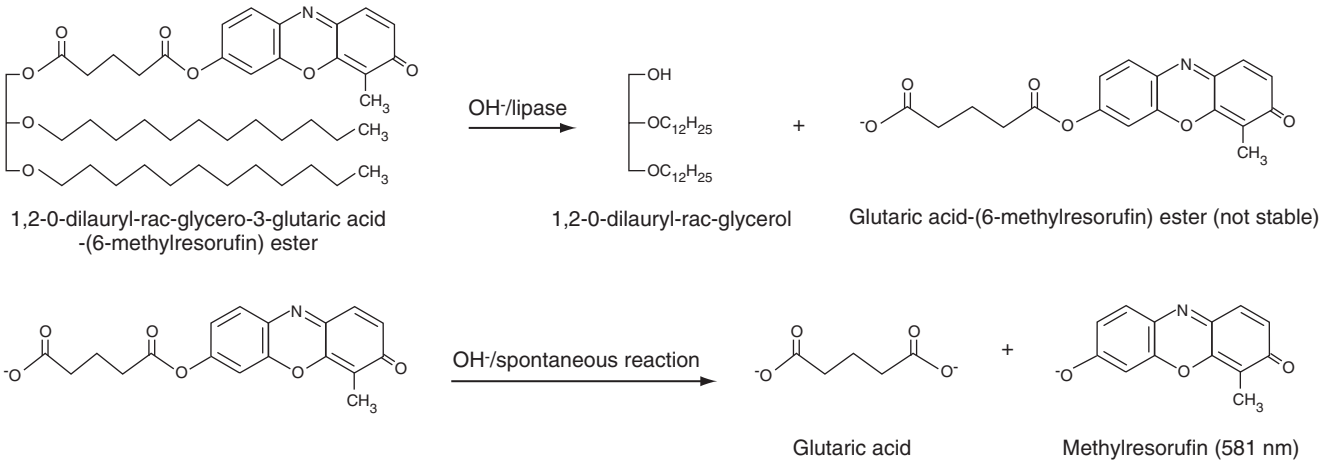
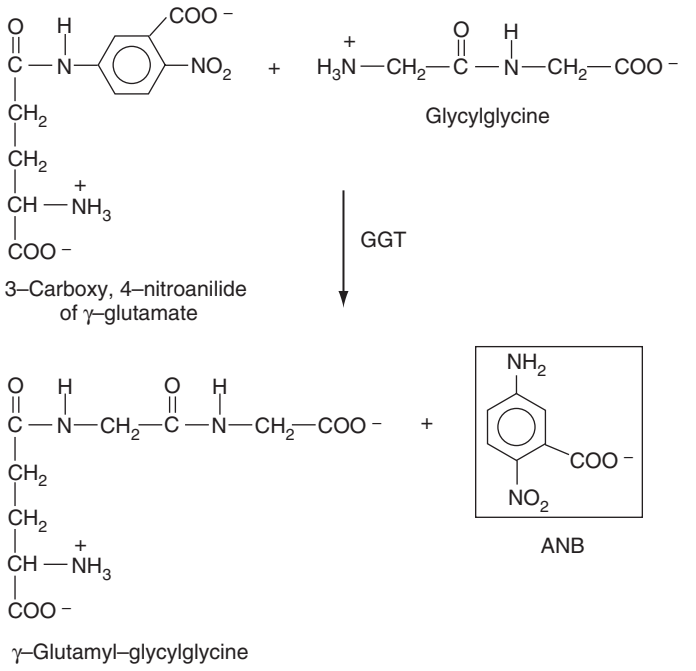


Figure 27-6 **Artificial substrate for serum lipase resulting in liberation of methylresorufin whose absorbance can be determined at 580 nm.**



(Eq. 27-26)

To be active, all lipases require a water-fat emulsion interface, the emulsion containing the substrate triglycerides. To attach to this interface, lipase requires the presence of a detergent, like cholate, and another protein to which it binds, co-lipase. The latter binds both to lipase and to the detergent-emulsion complex, allowing lipase to interact with the triglycerides. Thus, all assay mixtures for lipase must contain both the detergent and co-lipase.

Assays for lipase can be performed by adding long-chain fatty acid esters to serum and the reaction monitored titrimetrically. In this case, dilute sodium hydroxide solution is added to serum to neutralize the long-chain fatty acids that are released, but the pH of the reaction mixture is maintained constant. The amount of base added over a given time period is a measure of the increased concentration of fatty acids over the time period, giving a rate that should be proportional to the total lipase concentration. The long-chain fatty acids used are contained in olive oil that has been treated to remove contaminating substances. This approach is also used with the pure triglyceride, triolein, as the substrate.

Although this is a reference method, it is difficult to adapt to continuously used autoanalyzers. Thus other approaches have been devised. In one of these, 1-oleoyl-2,3-diacetyl glycerol is hydrolyzed by lipase to yield oleic acid and diacetylglycerol. The latter is reacted with an enzyme called diacetinase that hydrolyzes the two acetyl esters to yield glycerol and 2 moles of acetate. The glycerol generated in this reaction sequence is then treated with alpha-glycerol kinase + ATP, and the reaction sequences shown in Equation 27-18, *B* to *D* are then carried out. In a variant of this sequence, a 1,2-diacylglycerol is used as the substrate to yield the 2-acylglycerol that is then hydrolyzed by monoglyceride lipase (to accelerate the reaction) to yield glycerol that is subjected to the reactions described earlier.

A recently developed assay for lipase that is being used successfully utilizes the artificial substrate for lipase,1,2-O-dilauryl-rac-glycero-3-glutaric acid-(6′-methylresorufin) ester (DGGMR) as shown in Figure 27-6. Lipase cleaves this substrate such that it generates 1,2-O-dilauryl-rac-glycerol and an unstable intermediate, the hemi-glutaric acid-(6′-methylresorufin) ester, which, spontaneously degrades to glutaric acid and methylresorufin. The oxyanion of this dye that forms under basic conditions is red-colored and strongly absorbs at 580 nm. Thus the absorbance increase of the red methylresorufin at 580 or 581 nm is proportional to the lipase activity. The reactions are summarized in Figure 27-6.

In order to obtain soluble substrates for lipase, artificial substrates with shorter-chain fatty acids are used. One of these is butyrin, the triester of n-butyric acid with glycerol. The glycerol generated by lipase is subjected to the reactions described earlier. In a variant of this approach, the n-butyric acid ester of 2,3-dimercapto-1-ol, (i.e., a dithioester) is used. The limit digest of this substrate by lipase is 2,3-dimercapto-1-propanol. The two vicinal –SH groups can then be reacted with Ellman's reagent, 5,5′-dithio-bis-(2-nitrobenzoic acid), to form a color complex that absorbs strongly at 412 nm. A problem with the use of these shorter-chain substrates is that they are also substrates for the ali- and arylesterases in serum (Moss & Henderson, 1999). To block the reaction of these enzymes, the covalent inhibitor phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride is added; this compound is a strong esterase (but not lipase) inhibitor.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Jensen T, Truong Q, Frandsen M, et al: Comparison of a homogeneous assay with a precipitation method for the measurement of HDL cholesterol in diabetic patients, *Diabetes Care* 25:1914–1918, 2002.

This paper is an important study that compares a homogeneous method with an immunoprecipitation method for determination of LDL cholesterol.

Kroli MH, Roach NA, Poe B, et al: Mechanism of interference with the Jaffe Reaction for creatinine, *Clin Chem* 33:1129–1132, 1987.

This is an interesting paper that presents possible structures for the creatinine-picrate complex and explains how ketones can interfere with this reaction.

Lin J-LJ, Hsu H-Y: Study of sodium ion selective electrodes and differential structures with anodized indium tin oxide, *Sensors* 10:1798–1809, 2010.

This paper presents a new, highly selective ion-selective electrode for sodium and illustrates how ion-selective electrodes are developed.

Nauck M, Warnick GR, Rifai N: Methods for measurement of LDL-cholesterol: A critical assessment of direct measurement by homogeneous assays versus calculation, *Clin Chem* 48:236–254, 2002.

This paper is a concise summary of direct homogenous methods for the quantitative determination of LDL cholesterol and how the results with these methods compare with those using the Friedwald calculation of LDL cholesterol.

Sugiuchi H, Uji Y, Okabe H, et al: Direct measurement of high-density lipoprotein cholesterol in serum with polyethylene glycol-modified enzymes and sulfated α-cyclodextrin, *Clin Chem* 41:717–723, 1995.

This paper explains the basis for the homogenous (direct) determination of HDL cholesterol.

REFERENCES

D'Orazio PD: Variability among methods for measuring glucose in whole blood: The influence of hematocrit. American Society of Clinical Pathology Check Sample, *Clin Chem* 49(CC 09–4 [CC-378]):43–55, 2009.

Endres DB, Rude RK: Mineral and bone metabolism. In Burtiss CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1999, Saunders, pp 1397–1403.

Morgan BR, Artiss JD, Zak B: Calcium determination in serum with stable alkaline Arsenazo III and triglyceride clearing, *Clin Chem* 39:1608–1612, 1993.

Moss DW, Henderson AR: Clinical enzymology. In Burtiss CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1999, Saunders, pp 617–721.

Natelson S: *Techniques of clinical chemistry*, ed 3, Springfield, IL, 1971, Charles C. Thomas, p 176.

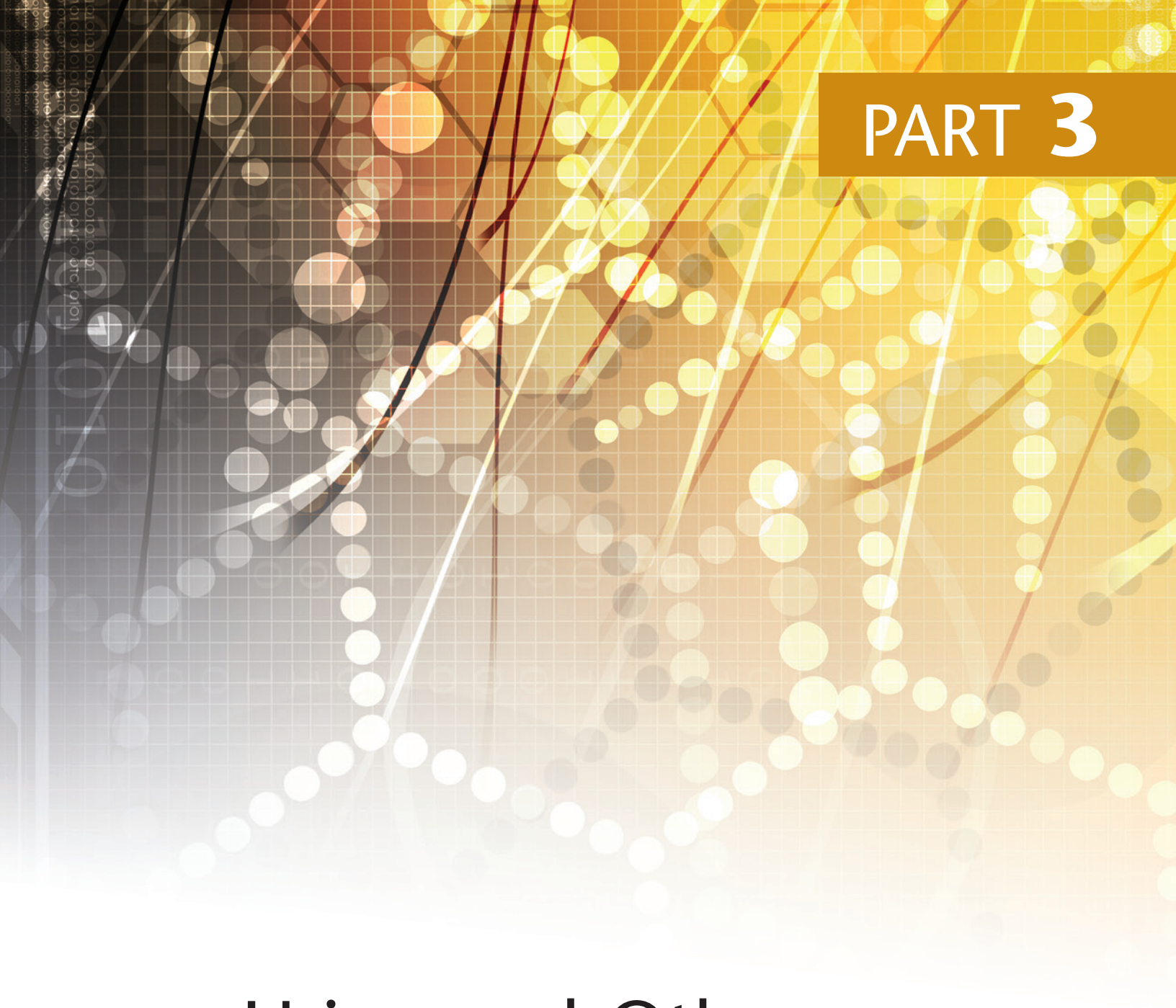
Rifai N, Bachorik PS, Albers JJ: Lipids, lipoproteins and apolipoproteins. In Burtiss CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1999, Saunders, pp 809–861.

Rowatt E, Williams RJP: The interaction of cations with the dye Arsenazo III, *Biochem J* 259:295–298, 1989.

Tolman KG, Rej R: Liver function. In Burtiss CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1999, Saunders, pp 1133–1137.

Vasillades J: Reaction of alkaline sodium picrate with creatinine: I. Kinetics and mechanism of formation of the mono-creatinine picric acid complex, *Clin Chem* 22:1664–1671, 1976.

Yoo E-H, Lee S-Y: Glucose biosensors: An overview of use in clinical practice, *Sensors* 10:4558–4576, 2010.



PART 3

Urine and Other Bodily Fluids

EDITED BY

Donald S. Karcher
Richard A. McPherson
Matthew R. Pincus

CHAPTER 28

BASIC EXAMINATION OF URINE

Roger S. Riley, Richard A. McPherson

URINE FORMATION, 442

COMPONENTS OF BASIC (ROUTINE) URINALYSIS, 443
Specimen Evaluation, 443
Gross/Physical Examination, 443
Chemical Screening, 446
Examination of Urine Sediment, 460

METHODS FOR URINALYSIS, 473
Basic (Routine) Urinalysis Procedure, 473
Automated Urinalysis, 474

SPECIAL TESTING AND MONITORING TECHNIQUES, 474
Urinary Calculi, 474
Laboratory Tests Used to Investigate Stone Formers, 477
Urinary Screening for Inherited Metabolic Diseases, 478
Additional Urine Testing Modalities, 479

SELECTED REFERENCES, 480

KEY POINTS

- Many different diseases can display abnormalities in the urine. Therefore, examination of the urine is an important laboratory function.
- Basic urinalysis consists of gross examination of the urine, as well as a dipstick analysis for blood, white blood cells, sugar, and other substances. The dipstick may be read manually or by an automated instrument.
- A microscopic analysis of urine may be necessary in many cases. This is done to detect cellular elements, casts, and crystals. Each of these items can be caused by several different disease states.
- Although microscopic examination of the urine is usually performed manually, several automated instruments can perform this analysis.
- Red blood cells within the urine can come from any point along the urinary tract. Dysmorphic red blood cells are often a sign of glomerular disease.
- The first voided morning urine, because it is the most concentrated, is often the best specimen for analysis. Some procedures may require a 12- or 24-hour urine sample.
- Specific gravity and osmolality measurements reflect the concentrating ability of the kidneys. After a period of dehydration, the osmolality should be three to four times that of plasma.
- Proteinuria greater than 4 g/day is seen in nephrotic syndrome. Although nephrotic syndrome is usually seen in primary renal disease, it is occasionally seen in a systemic disease that affects the kidneys.
- Ketonuria can be seen in diabetic individuals. It can also be seen in other states, such as febrile illness and cachexia.
- The dipstick nitrite and leukocyte esterase tests are used to help diagnose urinary tract infection. Positive results should be confirmed by microscopic analysis of the urine.
- Urinary calculi are most commonly formed from calcium. Workup of habitual stone formers should include analysis of both the urine and the stone.

A significant amount of information can be obtained through the examination of urine. Careful examination enables the detection of disease processes intrinsic to the urinary system, both functional (physiologic) and structural (anatomic), and sometimes unsuspected (Haber, 1988; Takemura et al, 2000; Echeverry et al, 2010). The progression or regression of various lesions can be monitored with only minimal distress to the patient. Furthermore, systemic disease processes, such as endocrine or metabolic abnormalities, can be detected through the recognition of abnormal quantities of disease-specific metabolites excreted in the urine. Laboratory urine tests will continue to play an essential role in clinical medicine.

The purpose of this chapter is to highlight the pertinent information that can be provided by the most common urine tests. Two main types of urinalysis are currently performed. These include (1) the dipstick (reagent strip) urinalysis, which is commonly performed in screening laboratories, in physician offices, and as patient home testing; and (2) the basic (routine) urinalysis, which adds a microscopic examination of urine sediment to the reagent strip urinalysis. These examinations utilize various laboratory disciplines, particularly chemistry and microscopy. In addition to these front-line diagnostic procedures, new technologies including immunocytochemistry, molecular diagnostics, DNA ploidy, and cell cycle analysis are constantly evolving to provide additional diagnostic and prognostic information. Urine microbiology studies, crucial to the diagnosis of infectious pathogens of the urinary tract, are addressed elsewhere in this textbook. It is important to remember that each of these modalities has a certain clinical utility. Table 28-1 lists the benefits of commonly ordered urine laboratory examinations.

The routine urinalysis consists of two major components: (1) physicochemical determinations (appearance, specific gravity, and reagent strip measurements), and (2) a bright-field or phase-contrast microscopic examination of urine sediment for evidence of hematuria, pyuria, casts (cylindruria), and crystalluria. Dipstick urinalysis provides information about multiple physicochemical properties of urine. Used predominantly in screening, dipstick testing requires less sophisticated training of personnel, and results are obtainable in only a few minutes. It has been shown that in certain situations, particularly when evaluating patients with signs or symptoms that prompt a urinalysis for the detection of blood or infection, urinalysis dipsticks can be substituted for a full routine urinalysis, with urine microscopy reserved for patients with discordance between clinical presentation and dipstick results (Jou & Powers, 1998). Urine sediment examination is typically more time-consuming and necessitates expertise in microscopy for an accurate interpretation; however, instrumentation is now available that automates routine urinalysis partially or completely. Cytopathologic urine sediment examination also requires special training and is the mainstay for diagnosis and follow-up of urinary tract neoplasms, as well as some nonneoplastic conditions, particularly renal allograft rejection.

We present in detail the pertinent components of the routine urinalysis. Various methods, including sample preparation, reagent strip reactions, confirmatory testing, and microscopic methods, are briefly reviewed. Major emphasis is given to clinicopathologic correlations related to the laboratory findings obtained from these urine tests.

URINE FORMATION

In the normal adult, approximately 1200 mL of blood perfuses the kidneys each minute, which accounts for about 25% of the cardiac output. The glomeruli (normally numbering at least 1 million per kidney) receive blood through afferent arterioles, and an ultrafiltrate of the plasma passes through each glomerulus into Bowman's space. From here, the filtrate is passed through the tubules and collecting ducts, where reabsorption or secretion of various substances and the concentration of urine can occur. Ultimately, the original glomerular filtrate volume of about 180 L in 24 hours is reduced to about 1 to 2 L, depending on the status of hydration. This urine formed in the kidneys passes from the collecting ducts into the renal pelvis, ureters, bladder, and urethra to be voided.

TABLE 28-1
Benefits of Common Urine Laboratory Tests

Type of test	Aims	CLINICAL UTILITY			
		Screen	Diagnosis	Monitor	Prognosis
Urine chemistry (reagent strip)	Glucosuria Proteinuria Hematuria Leukocyturia Infection	+++	+	+	+
Wet urinalysis (routine)	Diabetes Proteinuria Hematuria Leukocyturia Infections Cylindruria Crystalluria	++++	++	++	+
Urine microbiology	Infections	++	++++	++	+
Urine cytology (conventional)	Cancer Inflammation Viral infections	+	++	+	–
Cytodiagnostic urinalysis	Glomerular and renal tubular disorders LUT disorders Nonbacterial infections Lithiasis	+	++++	+++	++
Image cytometry and DNA analysis	Urothelial cancer	–	++	+++	+++
Flow cytometry	Urothelial cancer	–	+	+++	++

From Schumann GB, Schumann JL, Marcussen N: *Cytodiagnostic urinalysis of renal and lower urinary tract disorders*, New York, 1995, Igaku-Shoin Medical Publishers, with permission.
LUT, Lower urinary tract; *–,* negative; *+,* low positive; *++++,* strongly positive.

The kidneys take part in several regulatory functions. Through glomerular filtration and tubular secretion, numerous waste products, including nitrogenous products of protein catabolism, and both organic and inorganic acids and bases, are eliminated from the body. Fluid, electrolytes (including sodium, potassium, calcium, and magnesium), and acid-base status are regulated in homeostasis. Furthermore, the kidneys provide important hormonal regulation with erythropoietin and renin production, as well as vitamin D activation. Any derangement of these functions by renal or systemic disease can be reflected as chemically or cytologically altered urine.

COMPONENTS OF BASIC (ROUTINE) URINALYSIS

The basic (routine) urinalysis consists of four parts: specimen evaluation, gross/physical examination, chemical screening, and sediment examination.

SPECIMEN EVALUATION

Before one proceeds with any examination, the urine specimen must be evaluated in terms of its acceptability. Considerations include proper labeling, proper specimen for the requested examination, proper preservative, visible signs of contamination, and whether any transportation delays may have caused significant deterioration. Each laboratory should have written and enforced guidelines for the acceptance or rejection of specimens. A properly labeled specimen must have the patient's full name and the date and time of collection. Additional information may be required by the institution, but these three essentials constitute minimum labeling requirements.

The first voided morning urine, which is the most concentrated, is best for routine urinalysis. At times, a catheterized specimen or suprapubic collected urine specimen is received. If a single specimen is submitted for multiple measurements, bacteriologic examination should be done first, provided that the urine has been properly collected. With pediatric patients and persons in acute renal failure, only a small volume of urine may be available for processing, and in such cases, a notation should be made and the measurements most pertinent to the diagnosis should be performed first. For quantitative measurements, timed (12- or 24-hour) urinary collection is preferred to random specimens.

GROSS/PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

Appearance

Some of the more important changes in the gross appearance of urine are described in this section. A comprehensive list is provided in Table 28-2.

Color

The yellow color of urine is due largely to the pigment urochrome, excretion of which is generally proportional to the metabolic rate. It is increased during fever, thyrotoxicosis, and starvation. Small quantities of urobilins and uroerythrin (pink pigment) also contribute to urine coloration. In normal individuals, both pale and dark yellow urine can be produced, and these differences are rough indicators of hydration and urine concentration. Pale urine, typically of low specific gravity, is excreted following high fluid intake; darker urine is seen when fluids are withheld. Note that pale urine of high specific gravity may be found in diabetes mellitus. An abnormal color to the urine is usually due to an ingested food or medication, but may also be a clue to a specific disease state (Aycock & Kass, 2012). Table 28-3 lists the urine color changes associated with commonly used drugs.

Red Urine. The most common abnormal color is red or red-brown. When seen in females, menstrual flow contamination should be considered. Hematuria (presence of red blood cells [RBCs]), hemoglobinuria, and myoglobinuria may produce pink, red, or red-brown coloration. All three of these conditions are easily detectable on reagent strip testing; however, further evaluation is necessary for absolute differentiation (see the Blood, Hemoglobin, Hemosiderin, and Myoglobin in Urine section later in the chapter).

In the porphyrias, urine coloration is variable. It is usually red in congenital erythropoietic porphyria and porphyria cutanea tarda, but in lead porphyrinuria, the urine color is generally normal. In acute intermittent hepatic porphyria, it is normal but darkens on standing. Red urine also may be associated with the use of drugs and dyes in diagnostic tests, for example, phenolsulfonphthalein, which is sometimes used in assessing renal function, will cause a red color in alkaline urine. Patients with an unstable hemoglobin may produce urine with red-brown color that does not give a positive indication of hemoglobin or bilirubin. The pigment is probably a dipyrrole or bilifuscin. An innocuous red urine associated with ingestion of beets is seen in genetically susceptible persons.

TABLE 28-2
Appearance and Color of Urine

Appearance	Cause	Remarks
Colorless	Very dilute urine	Polyuria, diabetes insipidus
Cloudy	Phosphates, carbonates	Soluble in dilute acetic acid
	Urates, uric acid	Dissolve at 60° C and in alkali
	Leukocytes	Insoluble in dilute acetic acid
	Red blood cells ("smoky")	Lyse in dilute acetic acid
	Bacteria, yeasts	Insoluble in dilute acetic acid
	Spermatozoa	Insoluble in dilute acetic acid
	Prostatic fluid	
	Mucin, mucous threads	May be flocculent
	Calculi, "gravel"	Phosphates, oxalates
	Clumps, pus, tissue	
	Fecal contamination	Rectovesical fistula
	Radiographic dye	In acid urine
Milky	Many neutrophils (pyuria)	Insoluble in dilute acetic acid
	Fat	Nephrosis, crush injury—soluble in ether
	Lipiduria, opalescent	
	Chyluria, milky	Lymphatic obstruction—soluble in ether
	Emulsified paraffin	Vaginal creams
Yellow	Acriflavine	Green fluorescence
Yellow-orange	Concentrated urine	Dehydration, fever
	Urobilin in excess	No yellow foam
	Bilirubin	Yellow foam if sufficient bilirubin
Yellow-green	Bilirubin-biliverdin	Yellow foam
Yellow-brown	Bilirubin-biliverdin	"Beer" brown, yellow foam
Red	Hemoglobin	Positive } Reagent strip for blood
	Erythrocytes	Positive }
	Myoglobin	Positive }
	Porphyrin	May be colorless
	Fuscin, aniline dye	Foods, candy
	Beets	Yellow alkaline, genetic
	Menstrual contamination	Clots, mucus
Red-purple	Porphyrins	May be colorless
Red-brown	Erythrocytes	
	Hemoglobin on standing	
	Methemoglobin	Acid pH
	Myoglobin	Muscle injury
	Bilifuscin (dipyrrole)	Result of unstable hemoglobin
Brown-black	Methemoglobin	Blood, acid pH
	Homogentisic acid	On standing, alkaline; alkaptonuria
	Melanin	On standing, rare
Blue-green	Indicans	Small intestine infections
	Pseudomonas infections	
	Chlorophyll	Mouth deodorants

TABLE 28-3
Urine Color Changes with Commonly Used Drugs*

Drug	Color
Alcohol, ethyl	Pale, diuresis
Anthraquinone laxatives (senna, cascara)	Reddish, alkaline; yellow-brown, acid
Chlorzoxazone (Paraflex) (muscle relaxant)	Red
Deferoxamine mesylate (Desferal) (chelates iron)	Red
Ethoxazene (Serenium) (urinary analgesic)	Orange, red
Fluorescein sodium (given IV)	Yellow
Furazolidone (Furoxone) (Tricofuron) (an antibacterial, antiprotozoal nitrofuran)	Brown
Indigo carmine dye (renal function, cytoscopy)	Blue
Iron sorbitol (Jectofer) (possibly other iron compounds forming iron sulfide in urine)	Brown on standing
Levodopa (L-dopa) (for parkinsonism)	Red then brown, alkaline
Mepacrine (Atabrine) (antimalarial) (intestinal worms, *Giardia)*	Yellow
Methocarbamol (Robaxin) (muscle relaxant)	Green-brown
Methyldopa (Aldomet) (antihypertensive)	Darkens; if oxidizing agents present, red to brown
Methylene blue (used to delineate fistulas)	Blue, blue-green
Metronidazole (Flagyl) (for *Trichomonas* infection, amebiasis, *Giardia*)	Darkening, reddish brown
Nitrofurantoin (Furadantin) (antibacterial)	Brown-yellow
Phenazopyridine (Pyridium) (urinary analgesic), also compounded with sulfonamides (e.g., Azo Gantrisin)	Orange-red, acid pH
Phenindione (Hedulin) (anticoagulant) (important to distinguish from hematuria)	Orange, alkaline; color disappears on acidifying
Phenol poisoning	Brown; oxidized to quinones (green)
Phenolphthalein (purgative)	Red-purple, alkaline pH
Phenolsulfonphthalein (also sulfobromophthalein)	Pink-red, alkaline pH
Rifampin (Rifadin, Rimactane) (tuberculosis therapy)	Bright orange-red
Riboflavin (multivitamins)	Bright yellow
Sulfasalazine (Azulfidine) (for ulcerative colitis)	Orange-yellow, alkaline pH

*Other commonly used drugs have been noted to produce color change once or occasionally: amitriptyline (Elavil)—blue-green; phenothiazines—red; triamterene (Dyrenium)—pale blue (blue fluorescence in acid urine).

Yellow-Brown or Green-Brown Urine. Yellow-brown or green-brown urine is generally associated with bile pigments, chiefly bilirubin. On shaking the urine specimen, a yellow foam may be seen, which distinguishes bilirubin from a normal, dark, concentrated urine, which will have white foam. In severe obstructive jaundice, the urine may be dark green.

Orange-Red or Orange-Brown Urine. Excreted urobilinogen is colorless but is converted in the presence of light and low pH to urobilin, which is dark yellow to orange. Urobilin will not color the foam on shaking, and in this way may be confused with a concentrated normal urine; reagent strip testing would be confirmatory in this situation.

Dark Brown or Black Urine. Acid urine containing hemoglobin will darken on standing because of the formation of methemoglobin. "Cola-colored" urine may be seen with rhabdomyolysis (Keverline, 1998) and in some patients taking L-dopa. Rarer causes of dark brown urine are homogentisic acid (alkaptonuria) and melanin. Urine-containing homogentisic acid will darken more rapidly when alkaline.

Blue, Green, or Blue-Green Urine. A blue, green, or blue-green discoloration of the urine is most commonly due to food dyes or additives, some foods, or medications including, amitriptyline, doxorubicin, cimetidine, flutamide, indomethacin, methocarbamol, mitoxantrone, phenylbutazone, phenergan, propofol, promethazine, triamterene, rinsapin, and sildenafil (Aycock & Kass, 2012; Brunzel, 2012; Strasinger et al, 2014). Rare causes of blue or green urine include pseudomonas infection and some inherited diseases, such as Hartnup disease, indicanemia, indicanuria, and familial hypercalcemia. In cancer patients receiving chemotherapy, the methylene blue included in several dysuria medications, including Prosed DS, Trac Tabs, Urised, and Uroblue, may cause green or bluish-green urine discoloration (Cotten & McCudden, 2011; Meng et al, 2013b).

Clarity (Character)

Urine is normally clear, and the presence of particulate material in an unspun specimen warrants further investigation. The differential diagnosis

for cloudy urine is broad and includes several nonpathologic entities. Turbidity may simply be due to the precipitation of crystals or nonpathologic salts referred to as *amorphous*. Phosphate, ammonium urate, and carbonate can precipitate in alkaline urine; these redissolve when acetic acid is added. Uric acid and urates cause a white, pink, or orange cloud in acid urine and redissolve on warming to 60° C.

Cloudy urine can be attributed to the presence of various cellular elements. Leukocytes may form a white cloud similar to that caused by phosphates, but the cloud remains after acidification. Likewise, bacterial growth may cause a uniform opalescence that is not removed by acidification or by filtration, and it has been suggested that turbidimetric assessment using a double-beam turbidimeter may be useful for urine infection screening (Livsey, 1995). Turbidity may also be due to RBCs, epithelial cells, spermatozoa, or prostatic fluid. Prostatic fluid normally contains a few leukocytes and other formed elements.

Miscellaneous causes for cloudy urine include mucus from the lower urinary tract or genital tract, blood clots, menstrual discharge, and other particulate material such as pieces of tissue, small calculi, clumps of pus, and fecal material. Fecal material in urine may occur with a fistulous connection between the colon or rectum and bladder. Contamination with powders or with antiseptics that become opaque with water (phenols) will also cause a turbid urine.

Chyluria. This is a rare condition in which the urine contains lymph. It is associated with obstruction to lymph flow and rupture of lymphatic vessels into the renal pelvis, ureters, bladder, or urethra. Although parasitic infection with *Wuchereria bancrofti* (filariasis) is the prevailing cause (Cortvriend et al, 1998), abdominal lymph node enlargement and tumors have also been associated with chyluria. Even with filariasis, this condition is rare.

The appearance of the urine varies with the amount of lymph present, ranging from clear to opalescent or milky. Clots may form, and if sufficient lymph is present, the urine may layer with the chylomicrons on top, and fibrin and cells beneath. Chylomicrons may not be apparent microscopically unless they have coalesced as microglobules. This fatty material can be extracted from urine using an equal volume of ether or chloroform. Urine phosphates, in contradistinction, will not clear with this method. Pseudochyluria occurs with the use of paraffin-based vaginal creams for the treatment of *Candida* infection.

Lipiduria. Fat globules appear in the urine most often with nephrotic syndrome; these consist of neutral fats (triglycerides) and cholesterol. Lipiduria can also be present in patients who have sustained skeletal trauma with fractures to major long bones or the pelvis. Presumably, the source of lipid is exposed fatty marrow. Keep in mind that in addition to these endogenous lipids, oily contaminants such as paraffin may float on the urine surface. Microscopic examination of the urine may be required to classify fatty materials as Oil Red O positive droplets or cholesterol esters with polarization.

Odor

Urine normally will have a faint, aromatic odor of undetermined source. Specimens with extensive bacterial overgrowth can be recognized by an ammoniacal, fetid odor. Additionally, ingestion of asparagus or thymol produces distinctive odors in urine.

Characteristic urine odors associated with amino acid disorders include the following:

Cystinuria	Rotten eggs
Hawkinsinuria	Swimming pool
Ketoacidosis	Sweet, fruity
Isovaleric acidemia and glutaric acidemia	Sweaty feet
Maple syrup urine disease (MSUD)	Maple syrup
Methionine malabsorption	Cabbage, hops
Phenylketonuria	Mousy, musty
Trimethylaminuria	Rotting fish
Tyrosinemia	Rancid

Lack of odor in urine from patients with acute renal failure suggests acute tubular necrosis rather than prerenal failure.

Urine Volume

Under ordinary conditions, the main determinant of urine volume is water intake. The average adult produces from 600 to 2000 mL of urine per day, with night urine generally not in excess of 400 mL. In pregnancy, the usual diurnal variation may be reversed. Young children, compared with adults, may excrete about three to four times as much urine per kilogram of body weight. Measurement of urine output during timed intervals may be valuable in clinical diagnosis.

Increases in Urine Volume

Production of more than 2000 mL of urine in 24 hours is termed **polyuria; nocturia** is excretion of more than 500 mL of urine at night with a specific gravity of less than 1.018. In general, high volumes of urine tend to result in a low specific gravity.

Excessive intake of water (polydipsia) will result in polyuria, as will consumption of certain drugs with a diuretic effect, such as caffeine, alcohol, thiazides, and other diuretics. Intravenous solutions may increase the urine output. Increased salt intake and high-protein diets will require more water for excretion.

Pathologic states that result in excess renal fluid loss/urine excretion can be divided into three groups.

Defective Hormonal Regulation of Volume Homeostasis. Diabetes insipidus can be due to a deficiency (central/pituitary variety) of, or renal unresponsiveness (nephrogenic) to, antidiuretic hormone. In either situation, excessive thirst and water intake occur, together with marked polyuria and nocturia. Up to 15 L of urine per day may be produced.

Defective Renal Salt/Water Absorption. This can be due to the administration of diuretic agents, or an abnormality of the renal tubules, resulting in sodium wasting or impairment of the countercurrent mechanism. In progressive chronic renal failure, functioning renal tissue is diminished, and the ability to concentrate urine is gradually lost. To excrete the daily renal water and solute load, an increase in urine volume per residual nephron results, and the urine eventually becomes isoosmotic with the plasma ultrafiltrate.

Osmotic Diuresis. In diabetes mellitus with hyperglycemia, an excessive amount of glucose is excreted, causing a solute diuresis.

Decreases in Urine Volume

Oliguria is the excretion of less than 500 mL of urine per 24 hours, and anuria is the near-complete suppression of urine formation. Water deprivation will cause a decrease in urine volume even before signs of dehydration appear. Oliguria can be rather abrupt in onset, as can acute renal failure, or it may be due to a chronic progressive renal disease. In either case, retention of nitrogenous waste products (azotemia) can occur (see Chapter 14).

The causes of acute renal failure are classically categorized as follows.

Prerenal. Loss of intravascular volume may result from hemorrhage, or from dehydration associated with prolonged diarrhea, vomiting, excess sweating, or severe burns. So-called **third spacing** is the shifting of intravascular fluids to extracellular spaces. Additionally, conditions such as congestive heart failure, sepsis, anaphylaxis, or renal artery embolic occlusion may result in a decrease in renal blood flow.

Postrenal. Bilateral hydronephrosis, resulting from high-grade or long-standing obstruction of the urinary tract, may be associated with a marked decrease in urine flow and even anuria. This can occur with prostatic hyperplasia and carcinoma. Bilateral ureteral obstruction due to stones, clots, and sloughed tissue, and urethral obstruction due to stricture or valves, are other forms of obstruction. The anuria associated with sulfonamide therapy and dehydration is due to obstruction caused by the precipitation of crystals in the renal tubules when the urinary pH is acidic.

Renal Parenchymal Disease. This should be considered after other prerenal and postrenal causes of oliguria have been ruled out. The list of conditions is extensive and includes various vascular disorders, glomerulonephritis, interstitial nephritis, and acute tubular necrosis (ATN). A common cause of ATN is renal ischemia due to heart failure or hypotension. Numerous nephrotoxic agents may produce ATN, including several antibiotics, mercury, cadmium, carbon tetrachloride, and glycerol. Other causes include hemoglobinuria and myoglobinuria, associated with hemolysis and muscle damage, respectively, as well as excessive quantities of intratubular proteins or crystals.

Chronic renal failure, a progressive and irreversible loss of renal function, results from several disease entities. These include hypertensive and diabetes-associated nephrosclerosis, chronic glomerulonephritis, polycystic kidney disease, and other urologic disorders. Urinary specific gravity is low, and proteinuria, casts, and renal cells may be evident. Pyelonephritis or interstitial nephritis will cause predominantly tubular dysfunction with polyuria early in the disease, but later oliguria of chronic renal failure supervenes.

Specific Gravity and Osmolality

The volume of excreted urine and the concentrations of its solutes are varied by the kidney to maintain the homeostasis of body fluid and

electrolytes. Specific gravity and osmolality measurements reflect the relative degree of concentration or dilution of a urine specimen. This in turn aids in evaluating the concentrating and diluting abilities of the kidneys. Both of these indices, as well as urine color, have been found to be reliable indicators of hydration status (Armstrong et al, 1998).

The specific gravity of a specimen indicates the relative proportions of dissolved solid components to total volume of the specimen; in other words, it reflects the density of the specimen. Osmolality, on the other hand, indicates the number of particles of solute per unit of solution. Larger particles, such as proteins and sugars, tend to elevate the specific gravity more than smaller electrolytes. In critical circumstances, the measurement of osmolality of urine (and plasma) is preferred to the measurement of specific gravity (Voinescu et al, 2002; Imran et al, 2010).

Specific Gravity

Urea (20%), sodium chloride (25%), sulfate, and phosphate contribute most of the specific gravity of normal urine. Normal adults with adequate fluid intake will produce urine of specific gravity 1.016 to 1.022 over a 24-hour period; however, normal kidneys have the ability to produce urine with a specific gravity that ranges from 1.003 to 1.035. If a random specimen of urine has a specific gravity of 1.023 or more, the concentrating ability can be considered normal. Minimum specific gravity after a standard water load should be less than 1.007.

Urines of low specific gravity are called *hyposthenuric*, with the specific gravity less than 1.007. In diabetes insipidus, loss of concentrating ability (as described earlier) results in production of large volumes of urine with a specific gravity as low as 1.001 (specific gravity of water is 1.000). Prolonged excretion of urine with low specific gravity can also be seen with various renal abnormalities, including pyelonephritis and glomerulonephritis. High specific gravity can be seen after excess water loss/dehydration, adrenal insufficiency, hepatic disease, or congestive heart failure. When little or no variability is noted between several specimens from a patient, and the specific gravity is fixed at about 1.010, this is known as **isothenuria**. This finding is indicative of severe renal damage with disruption of both concentrating and diluting abilities.

Methods. Several methods are available to measure specific gravity—reagent strip, refractometer, urinometer, and the falling drop method.

Reagent strip. This is an indirect method for measuring specific gravity. The reagent area has three main ingredients present: polyelectrolyte, indicator substance, and buffer. The principle of this method is based on the pKa change of pretreated polyelectrolytes in relation to the ionic concentration of the urine. When the ionic concentration is high, the pKa (acid dissociation constant) is decreased, as is the pH. The indicator substance then changes color relative to ionic concentration, and this is translated to specific gravity values. The results obtained by this method should be used with caution, since it is not affected by high amounts of glucose, protein, or radiographic contrast material, all of which tend to elevate the specific gravity readings obtained from refractometers and urinometers, described in the following sections. The reagent strip assay for urine pH must be performed carefully to avoid run-over from adjacent test areas, which can cause false readings.

Refractometer. This is also an indirect method. The refractive index of a solution is related to the content of dissolved solids present. The index is the ratio of the velocity of light in air to the velocity of light in a solution. It varies directly with the proportion of particles in solution and, therefore, with the specific gravity.

The optical analogue handheld clinical refractometer is a device that requires only a few drops of urine (unlike the 15 mL of urine necessary with the urinometer). Although the refractometer measures the refractive index of a solution, the scale used is valid only for urine and cannot be used to indicate the specific gravity of salt or sugar solutions. This should be kept in mind if salt solutions are to be used for calibration. Special graphs or tables are required to convert refractive index scale numbers to solute concentrations in aqueous solutions if this should be required (American Optical Catalog Number 10403). The specific gravity reading on the refractometer is generally slightly lower than a urinometer reading on the same urine specimen by about 0.002. Digital refractometers are now available for human clinical applications.

Procedure. A temperature-compensated hand model is widely used. The instrument is temperature compensated between 60° and 100° F (15° to 38° C). It is damaged by heat above 150° F (66° C) and by immersion of the eyepiece and focusing ring in water. It should read zero with distilled water; the zero reading can be reset if necessary by breaking the seal over the setscrew, turning it with a small screwdriver, and resealing. Check calibration daily. Copper sulfate solutions can be adjusted to monitor a high specific gravity level as an additional check.

To make a specific gravity determination of urine, clean the surfaces of the cover and prism with a drop of distilled water and a damp cloth, and allow them to dry. Close the cover. Hold horizontally, and apply a drop of urine at the notched bottom of the cover, so that it flows over the prism surface by capillary action. Point the instrument toward a light source at an angle that gives optimal contrast. Rotate the eyepiece until the scale is in focus. Read directly on the specific gravity scale the sharp dividing line between light and dark contrast. The entire procedure should be repeated with a second drop of urine from the same sample.

Urinometer. This is a hydrometer that is adapted to directly measure the specific gravity of urine at room temperature. It should be checked each day by measuring the specific gravity of distilled water. If the urinometer does not give a reading of 1.000, an appropriate correction must be applied to all readings taken with that urinometer. The accuracy of a urinometer may be further checked with solutions of known specific gravity.

Because temperature influences the specific gravity, urine samples should be allowed to come to room temperature before a reading is made, or a correction of 0.001 should be made for each 3° C above or below the calibration temperature indicated on the urinometer. Corrections must also be made for protein or glucose present; subtract 0.003 for every 1 g/dL of protein, and 0.004 for every 1 g/dL of glucose.

Procedure. The urinometer vessel is filled three-fourths full with urine (minimum volume required is about 15 mL). The urinometer is inserted with a spinning motion to make sure that it is floating freely. (When reading the urinometer, be sure that it is not touching the sides or the bottom of the cylinder. Avoid surface bubbles, which obscure the meniscus.) Read the bottom of the meniscus.

Falling drop method. This is a direct method for measuring specific gravity. It is more accurate than the refractometer, and is more precise than the urinometer. This method utilizes a specially designed column filled with water-immiscible oil. A measured drop of urine is introduced into the column, and as this drop falls, it encounters two beams of light; breaking the first beam starts a timer, and breaking the second turns it off. The falling time is measured electronically and is expressed as a specific gravity (Free, 1996). Despite its accuracy and use of small specimen volume, this method is not widely practiced.

Osmolality

The normal adult with a normal fluid intake will produce urine of about 500 to 850 mOsm/kg water. The normal kidney is able to produce a urine osmolality in the range of 800 to 1400 mOsm/kg water in dehydration, and a minimal osmolality of 40 to 80 mOsm/kg water during water diuresis. After a period of dehydration, the osmolality of the urine should be three to four times that of the plasma (e.g., with a plasma osmolality of 285 mOsm/kg water, the urine osmolality should be at least 855 mOsm/kg water).

Methods. The freezing-point depression method is commonly employed. A solution containing 1osmol or 1000 mOsm/kg water depresses the freezing point 1.86° C below the freezing point of water. For methods, see Chapter 4.

CHEMICAL SCREENING

Reagent strips are the primary method used for the chemical examination of urine. Although easily used, they represent multiple complex, state-of-the-art chemical reactions. Box 28-1 lists recommendations for both storage and use of reagent strips. Although reading of the strips has traditionally been done manually, automated instruments, such as the Bayer Atlas (Siemens Medical Solutions Diagnostics, Tarrytown, N.Y.), are now available that will aspirate a precise amount of urine, deposit it on the dipstick, and read the chemical reactions on the reagent strip by reflectance (Penders et al, 2002; Lyon et al, 2003; Wu, 2010). These systems provide excellent reproducibility of results and are not prone to some of the inconsistencies that occur when human hands try to time the reactions, and when human eyes attempt to discriminate different shades of color reactions.

It should be noted that reagent strip methods are changed periodically, sensitivities and color reactions altered, and new measurements added. Manufacturers supply tables of common interfering substances, and these should be consulted. Interference with ascorbic acid and drugs producing colored urine such as phenazopyridine (Pyridium) and other azo compounds, as well as methylthioninium chloride (methylene blue), may be encountered.

The chemical measures most commonly found on reagent strips will be discussed first, with less commonly measured chemical parameters following. A discussion on the clinical application of each analyte will precede

BOX 28-1

Recommendations for Reagent Strips

Storage

- Protect from moisture and excessive heat.
- Store in cool, dry area but not in a refrigerator.
- Check for discoloration with each use; discoloration may indicate loss of reactivity.
- Do not use discolored strips or tablets.
- Keep container tightly stoppered.
- Check manufacturer's directions with each new lot number for changes in procedure.

Testing

- Test urine as soon as possible after receipt.
- Remove only enough strips for immediate use; recap tightly.
- Test a well-mixed, unspun urine sample.
- Urine samples must be at room temperature before testing.
- Do not touch the test area with fingers.
- Do not use reagent strips in the presence of volatile acids or alkaline fumes.
- Dip reagent strip into urine briefly—no longer than 1 second.
- Drain excess urine off—run edge of strip along rim of tube, or blot edge on absorbent paper.
- Do not allow reagents to run together.
- Do not lay reagent strip directly on workbench surface.
- Follow exact timing recommendations for each chemical test.
- Hold reagent strip close to the color chart, and read under good lighting.
- Know sources of error, sensitivity, and specificity of each test on the reagent strip.
- Think! Make correlations between patient history and individual test, and then follow through.

reagent strip and other methods. Confirmatory methods will be included when available and necessary.

Urine pH

The kidneys and lungs normally work in concert to maintain acid-base equilibrium. The lung excretes carbon dioxide, whereas the renal contribution is that of reclaiming and generating bicarbonate and secreting ammonium ions. The proximal renal tubule is responsible for the bulk of the bicarbonate reabsorption/generation, and the distal tubule provides the remaining function.

The tubular cells exchange hydrogen ions for sodium of the glomerular filtrate. The metabolic activity of the body produces nonvolatile acids, principally sulfuric, phosphoric, and hydrochloric acids, but also small amounts of pyruvic, lactic, and citric acids and ketone bodies. These are excreted by the glomerulus as salts (sodium, potassium, calcium, and ammonium salts) and, together with ammonia produced by the proximal tubules, can then go on to trap secreted hydrogen ions for elimination in the urine (see Chapter 14).

Normal pH

The average adult on a normal diet excretes about 50 to 100 mEq of hydrogen ions in 24 hours to produce urine of about pH 6. In healthy individuals, urine pH may vary from 4.6 to 8.

Acid Urine

Acid urine may be produced by a diet high in meat protein and with some fruits such as cranberries. During the mild respiratory acidosis of sleep, a more acid urine may be formed. Also, therapeutic acidification of the urine by various pharmacologic agents, including ammonium chloride, methionine, and methenamine mandelate, is used in the treatment of some calculi. This would include phosphate and calcium carbonate stones, which tend to develop in alkaline urine.

In acid-base disturbances, the pH of the urine reflects attempts at compensation by the kidneys. Patients with metabolic or respiratory acidosis should produce acid urine with increased titratable acidity and ammonium ion concentration. In diabetic ketoacidosis, large quantities of hydrogen ions are excreted, much as ammonium ion. In potassium depletion, such as in hypokalemic alkalosis of prolonged vomiting or in hypercorticism, or with prolonged use of diuretics, paradoxical aciduria with slightly acid urine may occur in the presence of a metabolic alkalosis. Low urine pH is associated with metabolic syndrome, chronic kidney disease, and an increased incidence of nephrolithiasis (Nakanishi et al, 2012).

Alkaline Urine

Alkaline urine may be induced by a diet high in certain fruits and vegetables, especially citrus fruits (Welch et al, 2008). The urine tends to become less acid following a meal (the so-called **alkaline tide**). This was long believed to be a urinary compensation for gastric acid secretion; however, recent studies do not support this view (Johnson et al, 1995). Sodium bicarbonate, potassium citrate, and acetazolamide may be used to induce alkaline urine in the treatment of some calculi, particularly those composed of uric acid, cystine, or calcium oxalate. These agents may also be used in some urinary tract infections (the antibiotics neomycin, kanamycin, and streptomycin are more active in alkaline urine), in sulfonamide therapy, and in the treatment of salicylate poisoning.

The capacity to exchange hydrogen ion for cation and the formation of ammonia are decreased when tubular function is impaired. In classic renal tubular acidosis, glomerular filtration is normal, but the distal tubular ability to form ammonia and exchange hydrogen ions for cations is defective. Systemic acidosis results. The urine is relatively alkaline, and the pH cannot be lowered below 6 to 6.5, even with administration of an acid-loading substance. Additionally, titratable acidity and the concentration of ammonium are decreased (Singh et al, 1995). In proximal renal tubular acidosis, bicarbonate wasting occurs. This can also be seen in Fanconi's syndrome.

In metabolic alkalosis, an alkaline urine with higher levels of urinary bicarbonate is produced, and ammonia production is decreased. The kidney may produce urine with a pH as high as 7.8. In respiratory alkalosis, an alkaline urine is produced that is associated with increased excretion of bicarbonate.

Methods

Reagent Strip. Indicators methyl red and bromothymol blue give a range of orange, green, and blue colors as the pH rises, permitting estimation of pH values to within half a unit within the range of 5 to 9. It should be read immediately, but time is not critical. Care should be taken not to have excessively wet strips where acid buffer from the protein patch runs into the pH patch, causing it to become orange.

Measurement of urine pH and acidity must always be made on freshly voided specimens. If precise measurements are required, the container should be filled to minimize the amount of dead space, and the urine covered tightly. The container should be kept cold, preferably on ice, but not frozen (Cook et al, 2007). On standing, the pH tends to rise because of loss of carbon dioxide and because bacterial growth produces ammonia from urea.

pH Electrode. Although the estimate of the pH obtainable by indicator strip is usually sufficient, more accurate measurement with a pH meter and glass electrode may be indicated in some clinical circumstances, such as the diagnosis and treatment of patients with disturbances of acid-base balance or monitoring urine alkalinization in patients receiving high-dose methotrexate therapy or undergoing treatment for nephrolithiasis (Kwong et al, 2013; Wockenfus et al, 2013).

Because the pH meter may tend to drift, it must be standardized with three buffers of known pH immediately before use. After standardization, spray the electrodes with distilled water, clean, and dry with a tissue. Immerse the electrode in the urine sample, and report the pH of urine at the temperature of measurement.

Titratable Acidity of Urine. The pH of the urine is largely dependent on the amounts of monobasic and dibasic phosphate present. Titratable acidity is measured by titrating an aliquot of 24-hour urine (collected on ice) with 0.1N NaOH, with pH 7.4 as an endpoint. Measurement may be used, together with urinary ammonia determination, in patients with chronic acidosis of obscure origin. Normal titratable acidity is in the range of 200 to 500 mL 0.1N NaOH (or 6 mL 0.1N NaOH per kg of body weight) or 20 to 40 mEq/24 hours. This procedure is described in previous editions of this textbook (Henry, 1996).

Protein in Urine

Normally, up to 150 mg of protein is excreted in the urine daily, with the average urine protein concentration varying from 2 to 10 mg/dL, depending on urine volume. Anderson has demonstrated more than 200 urinary proteins, derived from both plasma and the urinary tract (Anderson et al, 1979). About one third is albumin, and the remaining plasma proteins include small globulins, such as α-, β-, and γ-globulins. Plasma proteins with a molecular weight less than 50,000 to 60,000 pass through the glomerular basement membrane and are normally reabsorbed by proximal

tubular cells. Albumin (molecular weight 69,000) is apparently filtered, but only in very small amounts. Retinol binding, β_2-microglobulin, immunoglobulin light chains, and lysozyme are excreted in small amounts. Tamm-Horsfall glycoprotein (uromucoid), secreted by distal tubular cells and cells of the ascending loop of Henle, constitutes one third or more of the total normal protein loss. Immunoglobulin A (IgA) in secretions of the urinary tract, enzymes, and proteins from tubular epithelial cells, other desquamated cells, and leukocytes also contribute to urine protein.

Detection of an abnormal amount of protein in urine is an important indicator of renal disease because protein has a very low maximal tubular rate of reabsorption; increased filtration of protein quickly saturates the reabsorptive mechanism. Screening methods are routinely used to differentiate normal protein excretion from abnormal, and therefore should not detect less than about 8 to 10 mg/dL in a normal adult with a normal rate of urine flow. The reagent strip method is sensitive to albumin while acid precipitation methods detect all proteins and therefore will indicate the presence of globulins, as well as albumin. It should be noted that a very dilute random urine specimen may have a falsely low protein value. Because a positive result for protein is significant, it should be confirmed by a second method and on repeated specimens. Depending on the history and examination, confirmatory measurements for elevated protein should be accompanied by the evaluation of renal function, examination of the urine sediment, and urine culture.

Functional proteinuria is usually less than 0.5 g/day and can be seen in various situations in which dehydration contributes to the level of protein measured in urine. With strenuous exercise, a mixture of high and low molecular weight proteins appears in the urine, and many casts, both hyaline and granular, can be seen. Functional proteinuria may also accompany congestive heart failure, cold exposure, and fever. In any event, the proteinuria resolves with appropriate treatment or rest within 2 to 3 days.

Intermittent, transient proteinuria can occasionally be seen in patients with a normal history, normal physical examination findings, and otherwise normal renal function. Except for the occasional proteinuria, urinalysis is also normal. These patients are typically followed every 6 months to check for hypertension or other abnormalities, and the overall prognosis is good. A transient proteinuria may also occur in normal pregnancy, but any proteinuria in pregnancy is an important finding and requires investigation. Persistent proteinuria of 1 to 2 g/day in an asymptomatic person, or when accompanied by hematuria, has a poorer prognosis than intermittent (transient) or postural proteinuria.

Recent interest has focused on the importance of proteinuria in determining risk for adverse outcomes in chronic kidney disease (CKD) (Levey et al, 2003; Sarnak & Astor, 2011). Current guidelines for classifying stages of CKD are based on estimated glomerular filtration rate; however, heavy proteinuria was found to be independently associated with a twofold or greater increase in all-cause mortality, myocardial infarction, and progression to renal failure (Hemmelgarn et al, 2010). A systematic review and meta-analysis of 26 cohort studies involving 169,949 individuals showed a strong and continuous association between proteinuria and risk for coronary artery disease, leading those authors to suggest the routine incorporation of testing for proteinuria into assessment of cardiovascular risk (Perkovic et al, 2008).

Hereditary proteinuria syndromes are rare and have heterogeneous forms ranging from congenital nephrotic syndrome with severe proteinuria to focal segmental glomerulosclerosis with moderate proteinuria (Benoit et al, 2010; Caridi et al, 2010). Progression to end-stage renal disease is a common outcome. Specific diagnosis is possible with genetic testing for mutations in the genes for various structural proteins of the glomerulus (Tryggvason et al, 2006; Machuca et al, 2009; Joshi et al, 2013).

Postural Proteinuria

Postural proteinuria (orthostatic) occurs in 3% to 5% of apparently healthy young adults. In this condition, proteinuria is found during the day but not at night when a recumbent position is assumed. Persistent proteinuria may develop in some of these healthy subjects at a later date, and renal biopsies have shown abnormalities of the glomerulus in a few cases (Robinson et al, 1961). Proteinuria is apparently related to an exaggerated lordotic position and may result from renal congestion or ischemia. The total daily excretion of protein rarely exceeds 1 g, and in most instances, no other evidence of renal disease develops is apparent.

To evaluate the possibility of postural proteinuria, the patient is instructed to empty his or her bladder upon going to bed in the evening. Immediately upon arising in the morning, the patient voids and saves this specimen. After 2 hours of standing and walking about, the patient voids again and saves the specimen. The two urine specimens are assessed for protein, and if the first is negative and the second positive, the patient may have postural proteinuria. Frequent examination of the patient should be made to reevaluate this condition.

Proteinuria in Older Adults

The incidence of significant proteinuria found on urinalysis in the older adult population is substantially increased when compared with patients younger than 60 years of age (Verma et al, 2012). It has been estimated that the older adult population in general has a threefold to fourfold greater incidence of glomerulonephritis, and approximately one quarter of those affected have a minimal change–like disorder that may respond to steroid therapy. Occult malignancies in this population may also give rise to membranous glomerulonephritis, with resultant proteinuria (Threatte, 1986).

Proteinuria Quantification

More useful information for the diagnosis of kidney disease and for following the response to treatment is obtained by quantitatively analyzing the amount of protein excreted over a 24-hour period. It should be noted that the accuracy of measurements of any quantitative urine determination depends on the adequacy and completeness of the timed urine collection. Erroneous results are often related to collection problems. Repeat measurements may be needed to decide whether the proteinuria is intermittent or persistent. In the event that a 24-hour urine collection cannot be obtained, the protein-to-creatinine ratio on a random, untimed urine specimen can be used to monitor kidney damage in patients with overt proteinuria. To determine the protein-to-creatinine ratio, the urine protein (mg/dL) reading from the dipstick is divided by the urine creatinine (mg/mL) (Ginsberg et al, 1983). The ratio is normally less than 0.2 grams protein per gram creatinine in adults and children over 2 years of age, and less than 0.5 grams protein per gram creatinine in children under 2 years of age. Since the creatinine excretion rate is proportional to the patient's age, sex, and weight, and can be predicted from the serum creatinine (Cockcroft & Gault, 1976), an estimated 24-hour protein excretion rate can be obtained by multiplying the protein-to-creatine ratio by the creatinine excretion rate. The result is usually normalized for body surface area and expressed as the 24-hour protein excretion in g/day per 1.73 m^2 body surface area. The albumin-to-creatinine ratio is recommended by some authorities as an alternative to the protein-to-creatinine ratio in untimed urine specimens, with an albumin-to-creatinine ratio greater than 30 mg albumin/g creatinine considered abnormal (Lamb et al, 2013).

Heavy Proteinuria (>4 g/day). Heavy protein loss is characteristically seen with nephrotic syndrome. Classically, a low serum albumin level, generalized edema, and increased serum lipids (cholesterol, triglycerides, and phosphatides) accompany this disorder. Lipoproteins, low-density and very-low-density, are increased in serum, whereas high-density lipoprotein, a smaller molecule, has been demonstrated in the urine (de Mendoza et al, 1976). It has been suggested that loss of lipoprotein lipase in urine contributes to the rise in serum lipid levels. γ-Globulin is also lost in the urine, and this may contribute to susceptibility to bacterial infections commonly found in nephrotic patients. When lipid is lost in urine, many granular casts, fatty casts, and fat-filled renal tubular epithelial cells (oval fat bodies) are found in the sediment. Cholesterol ester droplets may be demonstrable by polarization.

Nephrotic syndrome is principally associated with glomerular dysfunction/damage due to (1) primary renal diseases, including idiopathic disease, and (2) systemic diseases with renal involvement (Certikova-Chabova & Tesar, 2013). Transient or mechanical causes include severe congestive heart failure, constrictive pericarditis, and renal vein thrombosis. The last can be a consequence of nephrotic syndrome because of losses of anticlotting factors in urine and elevation of serum fibrinogen. In children, a common cause of nephrotic syndrome is minimal change disease (also known as *nil lesion*), a steroid-responsive glomerular disorder. Acute, rapidly progressive, and chronic types of glomerulonephritis are causes of heavy proteinuria and may be accompanied by urinary erythrocytes or erythrocyte casts. Diabetes mellitus and lupus erythematosus are systemic diseases that frequently cause glomerular injury and heavy proteinuria. Urine sediment may be "telescoped," that is, may display all types of cells and casts in lupus nephritis or with a hypersensitivity reaction. Malaria, malignant hypertension, toxemia of pregnancy, heavy metals (gold, mercury), drugs (penicillamine), neoplasia in general, amyloidosis, sickle cell disease, renal transplant rejection, and rarely primary antiphospholipid syndrome (Levy et al, 1998) are additional causes of heavy proteinuria.

Moderate Proteinuria (1.0 to 4.0 g/day). Moderate proteinuria may be found in the vast majority of renal diseases, including those mentioned previously, as well as nephrosclerosis, multiple myeloma, and toxic nephropathies. Also included are degenerative, malignant, and

inflammatory conditions of the lower urinary tract, including irritative conditions such as the presence of calculi.

Minimal Proteinuria (<1.0 g/day). Minimal proteinuria may be noted in chronic pyelonephritis, in which case it may be intermittent, and in relatively inactive phases of glomerular diseases. It is also seen with nephrosclerosis, chronic interstitial nephritis, congenital diseases such as polycystic disease and medullary cystic disease, and renal tubular diseases. In tubular diseases, the urinary sediment usually is not abnormal, but erythrocytes, leukocytes, and tubular cells may be seen with interstitial nephritis. However, significant sediment findings may sometimes accompany trace protein results. Minimal proteinuria is also present in postural proteinurias and transient proteinuria.

Qualitative Categories of Proteinuria

Detection of the types of protein present in urine requires electrophoretic separation of urine proteins. Based on these and on clinical findings, proteinuria may be separated into a glomerular pattern and a tubular pattern, indicating which part of the nephron is primarily involved. However, these anatomic entities tend to merge as disease progresses.

Glomerular Pattern. Glomerular disease causes proteinuria, which may be heavy (>3 to 4 g/day). Loss or reduction of the fixed negative charge on the glomerular basement membrane allows albumin to permeate into Bowman's space in large quantities, more than can be reabsorbed by the proximal tubular cells. When serum albumin is lost in urine, other proteins of similar size or charge are also lost (e.g., antithrombin, transferrin, prealbumin, α_1-acid glycoprotein, α_1-antitrypsin). Because tubular function may still be normal, very small plasma proteins are largely reabsorbed. Large proteins, in contradistinction, are not seen in urine while the glomerulus is still selective (e.g., α_2-macroglobulin, β-lipoprotein). As larger proteins appear, the proteinuria is less selective, indicating greater damage to the glomerulus (e.g., with membranous nephropathy and proliferative glomerulonephritis).

Mechanisms of proteinuria in diabetic kidney disease with specific attention to glomerular damage were recently reviewed, with special recognition that chronic kidney disease is actually a combination of both glomerular and tubulointerstitial scarring (Jefferson et al, 2008; Baines & Brunskill, 2011; Garg & Rabelink, 2011; Erkan, 2013).

Tubular Pattern. This is associated with loss of a small amount of urinary protein that would otherwise be largely reabsorbed. These proteins most often are of low molecular weight (e.g., α_1-microglobulin, β-globulins such as β_2-microglobulin, light chain immunoglobulins, cystatin C, and lysozyme), usually without a clear predilection for albumin-sized molecules. By radioimmunoassay, β_2-microglobulin excretion has been measured in microgram amounts in urine as an indication of tubular damage; its normal excretion is about 100 µg/day. A tubular pattern proteinuria occurs with renal tubular diseases such as Fanconi's syndrome, cystinosis, Wilson's disease, and pyelonephritis, and with renal transplantation rejection. The amount of proteinuria is typically lower than that seen with glomerular disease, at about 1 to 2 g/day. Tubular proteinuria may be missed by the reagent strip test because of the absence or very low amounts of albumin, but it may be detected by an acid precipitation method. There is present interest in the utilization of specific molecules released into the urine during tubular injury as monitors of renal insufficiency in patients with diabetic nephropathy. The biomarkers under study include neutrophil-gelatinase–associated lipocalin (N-gal), kidney injury molecule 1 (KIM-1), liver–fatty-acid–binding protein (L-FABP), inflammatory cytokines, and others (Tramonti and Kanwar, 2013).

Overflow Proteinuria. Overflow proteinuria is due to the overflow of excess levels of a protein in the circulation, and can be seen with hemoglobin, myoglobin, or immunoglobulin loss into the urine. These proteins are not initially associated with glomerular or tubular diseases, but may themselves cause renal damage. Myoglobin may cause acute tubular necrosis (see the Blood, Hemoglobin, Hemosiderin, and Myoglobin in Urine section). Hemoglobin in low amounts is not thought to be toxic unless hypovolemia is present.

Bence Jones Proteinuria. Bence Jones proteinuria is associated with multiple myeloma, macroglobulinemia, and malignant lymphomas. The incidence of Bence Jones proteinuria in multiple myeloma has been estimated as 50% to 80%; however, its demonstration depends greatly on the technique used. Bence Jones protein may be missed altogether if only a reagent strip test for protein is used. Electrophoresis and immunofixation electrophoresis methods are the best detection and quantification methods, along with the immunoassay measurement of free light chains (Olivieri and Rai, 2010) (see Chapter 46).

Excretion of Bence Jones protein in large amounts, sometimes several grams in 24 hours, causes the tubular cells to deteriorate because of the high levels of protein reabsorbed. Inclusions may form in the cells, and desquamated cells may form casts in the tubular lumen. Casts also form from immunoglobulin and Tamm-Horsfall protein mixtures. With renal failure, less protein is reabsorbed and more Bence Jones protein and other proteins appear in the urine. The damaged kidney is sometimes called a *myeloma kidney*, and the nephrotic syndrome may follow.

Microalbuminuria. Microalbuminuria is the presence of albumin in urine above the normal level but below the detectable range of conventional urine dipstick methods. Several authors have suggested that these lower urine albumin levels ranging from 20 to 200 mg/L (or an approximate rate of excretion of 20 to 200 µg/min) are an indicator of early and possibly reversible glomerular damage (Viberti et al, 1982; Mogensen, 1984). In diabetic patients, microalbuminuria is associated with a fourfold to sixfold increase in cardiovascular mortality, and is an independent risk factor for renal mortality (Bakris, 1996; Zelmanovitz et al, 1998; Roshan & Stanton, 2013). It is also more prevalent in hypertensive subjects (Gerber et al, 1998). Various methods have been introduced, including immunologic test systems and dye-binding chemical test strips, both of which are discussed in the next section.

Methods

Several screening methods and quantitative methods are available for the analysis of protein in urine (Viswanathan & Upadhyay, 2011). Because a positive screening test may have serious implications, it is important to be able to confirm results by a second, different method. Common screening tests include the qualitative/semiquantitative colorimetric reagent strip test and precipitation-based testing (Table 28-4).

Accurate results are obtained with reagent strips only when albumin is increased (White et al, 2011). Because of the lack of sensitivity of the reagent strip to globulins, it may be necessary to use an acid precipitation method for screening purposes. This will depend on the patient population and the diseases being screened. Reagent strips do have the advantage of avoiding false-positive reactions with organic iodides, such as those used for radiograph contrast, and tolbutamides or other drugs.

Most other qualitative screening methods rely on protein precipitation (e.g., with heat and acetic acid, with nitric acid, with sulfosalicylic [SSA] and trichloroacetic acids). These methods will precipitate globulins, as well as albumin. In practice, negative reagent strips with positive SSA methods in urine specimens are attributable to radiograph dye, to penicillins, and, rarely, to an isolated increase in globulins. Sulfosalicylic and trichloroacetic acids are used to precipitate protein in the cold and are used as a convenient screening method. The sensitivity may be as low as 0.25 mg/dL, depending on the technique used.

With the intense interest in utilizing proteinuria as a risk stratifier for both diabetic and nondiabetic nephropathy, as well as other conditions such as preeclampsia and coronary artery disease, recommendations for measurement have centered on methods for urine albumin quantification rather than total protein (Lamb et al, 2009; Lamb et al, 2013). Urine albumin measurements are considered much more standardized and reliable than total protein at low concentrations, where assessment of risk for progression in chronic kidney disease is important for diagnosis and planning therapy.

Reagent Strip. This method takes advantage of the protein error of pH indicators. Because proteins carry a charge at physiologic pH, their presence will elicit a pH change. The reagent strip is impregnated with tetrabromphenol blue buffered to an acid pH of 3, or tetrachlorophenol-tetrabromosulfophthalein. In the absence of protein, the strip is yellow; 30 to 60 seconds following urine application, variable shades of green develop, depending on the type and concentration of protein present. Results may

TABLE 28-4
Screening Test for Detection of Proteinuria

Urine Constituents or Condition	Reagent Strip	Acid Precipitation
Highly buffered alkaline urine	May cause FP	May cause FN
Drug metabolites	No effect	May cause FP
Radiocontrast media	No effect	May cause FP
Turbidity	No effect	May cause FP
Quarternary ammonium groups or chlorhexidine	May cause FP	No effect

FN, False negative; *FP,* false positive.

be read in a "plus" system as negative, trace, and 1+ to 4+. Most methods will detect 5 to 20 mg of albumin per deciliter.

As stated previously, reagent strips tend to be more sensitive to albumin than to globulins, Bence Jones protein, or mucoprotein. "Trace" results may be seen with physiologic normal excretion of protein in concentrated urine specimens from healthy individuals. High salt levels will lower results. Exceptionally alkaline and/or highly buffered urine samples may give positive results in the absence of significant proteinuria (e.g., with a patient on alkaline medication or with bacterial contamination). False-positive results can occur with highly pigmented urine, quaternary ammonium compounds, amidoamines in fabric softeners, chlorhexidine, and excessive leaching of the acid buffer of the test strip by excessive wetting. The method is unaffected by urine turbidity, radiographic media, and most drugs or their metabolites.

Sulfosalicylic Acid Method—Qualitative. This method depends on formation of a precipitate for determination of the presence of protein.

Procedure. Specimens should be centrifuged, and a clear supernatant used. To approximately 3 mL of supernatant urine in a clean test tube, aliquot an equal amount of 3% SSA. Invert to mix. Let stand exactly 10 minutes. Invert again twice. Using ordinary room light (not a lamp), observe the degree of turbidity and/or precipitation, and grade the results according to the following descriptions:

Negative—no turbidity (≈5 mg/dL or less)
Trace—perceptible turbidity (≈20 mg/dL)
1+ —Distinct turbidity, but no discrete granulation (≈50 mg/dL)
2+ —Turbidity with granulation, but no flocculation (≈200 mg/dL)
3+ —Turbidity with granulation and flocculation (≈500 mg/dL)
4+ —Clumps of precipitated protein, or solid precipitate (≈1.0 g/dL or more).

This method will detect about 5 to 10 mg/dL. Albumin, globulins, glycoproteins, and Bence Jones proteins are all detected. High levels of detergents may decrease the result. When radiographic dye is present, SSA precipitate will increase on standing, and typical crystals are seen on microscopic examination of the precipitate. In this situation, another urine specimen from the patient should be assayed. However, the effects of the radiographic media may persist for up to 3 days. A reagent strip test may be substituted, or heat and the acetic acid method may be used. In the acetic acid method, radiographic contrast media will clear with heat, whereas protein will increase turbidity.

Quantitative Protein Determinations and Confirmatory Methods. Quantitative measurements of urine protein are typically adaptations of one of the various precipitation methods, or are colorimetric in nature. SSA and trichloroacetic acid (TCA) are commonly used as precipitants; the resultant turbidity can be measured by a photometer or a nephelometer. If a visual interpretation is performed, a set of gelled commercial standards that correspond to 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 75, and 100 mg/dL may be used, with results reported in milligrams per deciliter as opposed to the "plus" method of screening precipitation tests. With SSA, the turbidity produced with albumin is 2.4 times that produced with globulin; polypeptides, glycoproteins, and Bence Jones proteins are also precipitated with this method. Of historic note, Exton's reagent contains SSA, sodium sulfate, and an indicator—bromphenol blue. TCA, in contradistinction, will cause γ-globulin to be precipitated with greater turbidity than albumin; however, the difference is not marked.

More precise measurements suitable for smaller amounts of protein are available, and in these methods a TCA precipitate is dissolved in sodium hydroxide and measured by use of the biuret reaction. The quantitative TCA-biuret method is tedious but gives good precision. A color correction blank is used. For a comparison of biuret methods with the SSA turbidity method, see Lizana and colleagues (1977).

Several dye-binding colorimetric methods are available to quantitate urine protein. These include Coomassie blue, Ponceau S, and benzethonium chloride turbidity methods (McElderry et al, 1982). Pyrogallol Red-Molybdate will also react with protein to form a bluish purple complex that absorbs at 600 nm.

Methods used to quantitate urinary protein have not been satisfactory. Participants in the College of American Pathologists proficiency testing surveys will be aware that the mean values reported vary twofold between methods, with the SSA method producing high values. Precision is poor, with the SSA turbidimetric method showing the poorest coefficient of variation. The TCA-biuret, Coomassie blue, and TCA turbidity methods show closer agreement and about half the coefficient of variation of the SSA method. Problems arise from nonstandardized methods. With turbidity methods, these include different acid concentrations and timing, along with variation in the protein standard.

Microalbuminuria Determination Methods. Very small amounts of proteins, such as albumin and β_2-microglobulin, are measured by immunologic means using antibodies to the proteins, nephelometric methods, radioimmunoassay, protein strip electrophoresis, high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), or other means. The Micral II test strip (Boehringer Mannheim, Indianapolis, Ind.) is an immunologic test system that gives an almost immediate, reliable semiquantitative determination of low urine albumin concentrations (Kutter, 1998). Oxytetracycline may interfere with this method, causing higher readings. There is no interference with pH. A newer method, the Clinitek microalbumin (Bayer Diagnostics, Tarrytown, N.Y.), is a highly sensitive dye-binding method. It has the further advantage of an additional test pad for simultaneous measurement of creatinine concentration. This method is not absolutely specific for albumin, for the dye compound also reacts with Tamm-Horsfall mucoprotein. HPLC is a highly sensitive method for the early detection of microalbuminuria, but is not widely utilized at this time (Horikoshi et al, 2013).

Bence Jones Proteinuria Determination Methods. Methods for detection of Bence Jones protein in urine include protein electrophoresis, immunofixation electrophoresis, capillary zone electrophoresis, and immunoassay for free light chains (see Chapter 46). The traditional electrophoretic procedure employs the Amido black stain on a 200-fold concentrated urine. Newer methods, performed on less concentrated urine, including a modified Coomassie brilliant blue stain, are comparably sensitive and specific (Wong et al, 1997; Graziani et al, 2003). The presence of Bence Jones globulin or clonal production of immunoglobulin is indicated by a single sharp peak in the globulin region on protein electrophoresis. Bence Jones globulin represents either the κ or the λ immunoglobulin light chain.

Bence Jones protein precipitates at temperatures between 40° and 60° C, and redissolves at near 100° C. Other methods depend on precipitation in the cold with salts, ammonium sulfate, and acids. In the presence of marked Bence Jones proteinuria, most methods yield positive results. When only a small amount of Bence Jones protein is present, or when other globulins are present, results may be doubtful. False-positive reactions are seen when other globulins are precipitated by acetic acid in the heat precipitation method. A false-negative reaction may occur if the Bence Jones protein is too concentrated and the precipitate does not redissolve on boiling.

Glucose and Other Sugars in Urine

Various sugars may be found in the urine under certain circumstances, both pathologic and physiologic. These include glucose, fructose, galactose, lactose, maltose, pentose, and sucrose. Glucose is by far the most common and will be discussed in the next section.

Glucose

The presence of detectable amounts of glucose in urine is termed **glycosuria;** this condition occurs whenever the glucose level in the blood surpasses the renal tubule capacity for reabsorption. Glucose may appear in the urine at different blood glucose levels, and there is not always a concomitant hyperglycemia. Glomerular blood flow, tubular reabsorption rate, and urine flow also will influence its appearance. When hyperglycemia is present, however, glycosuria usually occurs when the blood level is greater than 180 to 200 mg/dL. Glycosuria may be seen in several different conditions described in the following sections.

Diabetes Mellitus. Although hyperglycemia alone is not necessarily indicative of diabetes mellitus, the appearance of glucose in the urine necessitates further workup. When glycosuria is present, it is typically accompanied by polyuria and thirst. Inadequate carbohydrate utilization in these patients results in elevated ketone levels in the blood and urine due to increased fat metabolism.

For diabetic individuals, the advantage of a urine method over a blood test for glucose is that it is painless and inexpensive. Urine glucose measurements are most useful for well-controlled diabetic individuals who do not have to make frequent adjustments in their insulin/hypoglycemic agents. In insulin-dependent diabetes, a negative urine measurement could correspond to a wide range of serum glucose levels; this is attributed to the great variation in renal threshold for glucose in diabetic patients. Therefore, urine measurements may be misleading, and home blood glucose monitoring is preferred.

Monitoring for glycosuria in diabetic patients is not without problems. Reagent strips may be difficult to interpret at the 1-g/dL (1%) and 2-g/dL (2%) glucose levels; copper reduction tests or newer, more sensitive reagent strips may be more efficacious. With the Clinitest tablet method, diabetic patients are able to estimate reducing substance levels in urine to about 10 g/dL, using one drop of specimen rather than two or five drops.

In some clinics, the 24-hour urine glucose measurement is found to be useful for monitoring patients. It represents a defined longer time period, and, with blood levels of glycated hemoglobin, it contributes to the regular overall long-term management of the disease.

Several studies have looked at the usefulness of urine dipstick testing for glycosuria as a screening method for diabetes, and the results have been mixed. Bullimore and Keyworth (1997) concentrated on patients over 50 years of age in a general practice setting and found this method to be practical and effective, whereas Friderichsen and Maunsbach (1997) came to an opposing conclusion. He suggests that if diabetes screening is carried out in general practice, blood glucose measurements should be utilized for patients in selected risk groups. The primary role of blood glucose and Hb A_{1c} measurements in the diagnosis and management of diabetes mellitus was later endorsed by the American Association for Clinical Chemistry and other organizations (Sacks et al, 2011). However, Dallosso and colleagues (2015) found that both blood glucose and urine glucose self-monitoring resulted in improved Hb_{A1c} levels at 18 months in newly diagnosed patients with type 2 diabetes if structured education was provided. Routine dipstick glucose analysis can identify gravidas at increased risk for gestational diabetes (Gribble et al, 1995).

Other Causes of Glycosuria. Glycosuria with concomitant hyperglycemia is seen in several endocrine disorders (see Table 16-3). These include pituitary and adrenal disorders such as acromegaly, Cushing's syndrome, hyperadrenocorticism, functioning α- or β-cell pancreatic tumors, hyperthyroidism, and pheochromocytoma. Pancreatic disease with loss of functioning islet cells is also associated with glycosuria—for example, carcinoma, pancreatitis, and cystic fibrosis.

Numerous other causes of glycosuria with hyperglycemia have been recognized. These include central nervous system disorders, including brain tumor or hemorrhage, hypothalamic disease, and asphyxia. Disturbances of metabolism associated with burns, infection, fractures, myocardial infarction, and uremia, as well as liver disease, glycogen storage disease, obesity, and feeding after starvation, may all be associated with glycosuria, as are certain drugs (e.g., thiazides, corticosteroids and adrenocorticotropic hormone, birth control pills).

In pregnancy, an increase in glomerular filtration rate occurs, and all of the filtered glucose may not be reabsorbed. In this situation, glycosuria may appear at relatively low blood glucose levels. Persistent or greater than trace amounts of glycosuria should be investigated. In some patients, diabetes occurs only during pregnancy. Glycosuria after a glucose challenge has been used during pregnancy, but its predictive value for gestational diabetes, preeclampsia, and low birth weight has been questioned (Coolen & Verhaeghe, 2010). Glucose tolerance may also be decreased in older adults, especially when patients have a poor intake of carbohydrates, but this is not necessarily accompanied by glycosuria.

Glycosuria without hyperglycemia is usually associated with renal tubular dysfunction. True inherited renal glycosuria is uncommon and is associated with reduced glucose reabsorption. In renal tubular transport diseases, glycosuria may be accompanied by impaired reabsorption of water, amino acid, bicarbonate, phosphate, and sodium—a pattern seen in Fanconi's syndrome. Galactosemia, cystinosis, lead poisoning, and myeloma are additional examples of conditions associated with renal tubular dysfunction and possible glycosuria.

Other Sugars in Urine

Small quantities of disaccharides are normally excreted in the urine—about 50 mg in 24 hours. With intestinal diseases such as severe sprue or acute enteritis, the level may rise to 250 mg or more. Fructose, galactose, lactose, maltose, and L-xylulose are found in urine in patients with inherited metabolic disorders (Scriver et al, 1989). If an inherited disorder is suspected, the sugar may be identified by thin-layer chromatography. Qualitative confirmatory tests generally are not satisfactory for sugars.

Fructose. Fructose appears in urine in association with inherited enzyme deficiencies that cause benign essential fructosuria and serious fructose intolerance associated with severe vomiting and liver and kidney disease. Fructosuria may also be seen with parenteral feedings that include fructose. Urinary fructose has been used as a marker of sucrose intake in dietary intervention studies (Luceri et al, 1996).

Galactose. Galactose is found in the urine in genetic disorders of galactose metabolism associated with a deficiency of galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase or galactokinase. In these diseases, galactose derived from dietary lactose is not converted to glucose, and early detection followed by dietary restriction may control the disease.

Lactose. Lactose may appear in the urine late in normal pregnancy or during lactation. In lactose intolerance, high levels of sugars accumulate in the gut, and lactose will be absorbed and excreted unchanged in the urine.

Pentose. Pentosuria may follow the ingestion of large amounts of fruit, causing the excretion of L-xylulose and L-arabinose in amounts up to 0.1 g/day. It may also be seen with certain drug therapies and with benign essential pentosuria.

Sucrose. Sucrose may appear in the urine after the ingestion of very large amounts of sucrose. Sucrase deficiency is associated with intestinal diseases such as sprue in the same manner as lactase deficiency. Sucrose intolerance is an inherited disorder associated with sucrase and α-dextrinase (isomaltase) deficiencies. Symptoms are similar to those seen with lactase deficiency and occur in the first few weeks of life when sweetened food is ingested. Tolerance may develop, but sucrose may have to be avoided permanently. Factitious sucrosuria may create a high specific-gravity urine with negative glucose oxidase and negative copper reduction tests.

Methods

Reagent Strip. This method is based on a specific glucose oxidase and peroxidase method, a double sequential enzyme reaction; reagent strips differ only in the chromogen used. The method is specific for glucose, and no reaction is seen with lactose, galactose, fructose, or reducing metabolites of drugs. The reagent strips may be used for semiquantitative results, and results should be reported as approximate grams per deciliter. Combination glucose and ketone reagent strips detect not only ketonuria, but also suppression of the glucose reaction by ketones seen with some reagent strips.

False-positive readings may be produced by strongly oxidizing cleaning agents in the urine container. Low specific gravity may falsely elevate results. Sodium fluoride used as a preservative will cause false-negative readings, as can high specific gravity and occasionally ascorbic acid. Glycolytic enzymes from cells and bacteria will reduce glucose levels in urine on standing; prompt refrigeration or testing is essential.

Chemistry

$$\text{Glucose} + O_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Glucose oxidase}} \text{Gluconic acid} + H_2O_2$$

$$H_2O_2 + \text{Chromogen} \xrightarrow{\text{peroxidase}} \text{Oxidized chromogen} + H_2O$$

Chromogens utilized in some common dipstick tests include the following:

Clinistix—o-toluidine chromogen. Color changes from pink to purple. This formulation detects 100 mg/dL of glucose and is more sensitive to interfering substances such as ascorbic acid than the following.

Multistix—potassium iodide chromogen. Color changes from blue to brown at 30 seconds.

Chemstrip—an aminopropyl-carbazol chromogen. Color changes from yellow to orange-brown at 60 seconds.

Copper Reduction Tests. As a screening test, the glucose oxidase method will not detect increased levels of galactose or other sugars in urine. It is therefore important that a copper reduction method be used, especially for young pediatric patients. A policy to screen for reducing sugars should be made by the individual laboratory, after consultation with its clinical staff. In many instances, policies related to performing this screening were instituted in the 1960s, before the widespread mandatory screening of newborns for inborn errors of metabolism became routine. With this state-mandated newborn screening, detection of an unsuspected reducing substance in the urine is rare, and the routine performance of this test, without a specific request by the patient's physician, may have outlived its usefulness (Naumova et al, 2006).

The copper reduction method will detect sufficient quantities of any reducing substances in the urine, including reducing sugars such as lactose, fructose, galactose, maltose, and the pentoses. In those instances in which the copper method is positive and the glucose oxidase method is negative, glycosuria is ruled out; however, before investigation for other sugars is begun, the clinical findings and drug history should be evaluated. Although the copper reduction method will detect nonglucose reducing sugars, the yield for these sugars is extremely low.

Normal neonatal infants during the first 10 to 14 days of life may excrete urine that yields a positive reaction because of glucose, galactose, fructose, and lactose. Normal pregnant and postpartum women may also have positive reactions because of the presence of lactose.

Of the copper reduction methods used for screening purposes, the qualitative Benedict method is more sensitive to reducing substances in urine than is the single-tablet (Clinitest) copper reduction method. Many substances in urine, metabolites, and drug-related metabolites will influence urinary sugar methods (Table 28-5). Strong reducing substances such as ascorbic acid, gentisic acid, or homogentisic acid may inhibit the

TABLE 28-5
Reactions of Substances to Test for Glucosuria

Constituent	Glucose Oxidase Reagent Strip	Copper Reduction Tablet Test
Glucose	Positive	Positive
Sugars other than glucose		
Fructose, Galactose, Lactose, Maltose, Pentose, Sucrose	No effect	Positive
Ketones (large quantities)	May depress color	No effect
Creatine	No effect	May cause false-positive
Uric acid		
Homogentisic acid (alkaptonuria)	No effect	Positive
Drugs*		
Ascorbic acid (large amounts)	May delay color	Trace positive
Cephalosporins (e.g., Keflin)	No effect	Positive, brown color
L-Dopa (large amounts)	False-negative	No effect
Nalidixic acid glucuronide	No effect	Positive
Probenecid	No effect	Positive
Pyridium	Orange color may affect result	
Salicylate (large amounts)	May lower reading	No effect
X-ray dye (diatrizoates)	No effect	Black color
Contaminants		
Hydrogen peroxide	False-positive	May inhibit positive test
Hypochlorite (bleach)	False-positive	
Sodium fluoride	False-negative	No effect

*Other drugs implicated in copper reduction are amino acids, caronamide, chloral, chloroform, chloramphenicol, formaldehyde, hippuric acid, isoniazid, thiazides, oxytetracycline, *p*-aminosalicylic acid, penicillin, phenols, streptomycin, phenothiazine, and sulfonamides.

enzyme method while contributing to the positivity of the copper reduction method. The tablet method is not affected as much as the Benedict method. Very large doses of ascorbic acid do not affect the two-drop copper reduction method. Drugs, especially the cephalosporins, and radiographic media will give false-positive or unusual colors with Clinitest. Although large doses of ascorbic acid do not affect the two-drop Clinitest for sugars (i.e., do not cause false-positive results), delays in color development may be noted with the glucose oxidase method.

Chemistry. Copper sulfate, sodium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, and citric acid are incorporated into each Clinitest tablet. Copper sulfate reacts with reducing substances in the urine, converting cupric sulfate to cuprous oxide. Based on Benedict's copper reduction reaction,

$$Cu^{2+} \xrightarrow{\text{Hot alkaline solution}} Cu^{+}$$

$$Cu^{+} + OH^{-} \rightarrow CuOH\ (\text{yellow})$$

$$2CuOH \xrightarrow{\text{Heat}} Cu_2O(\text{red}) + H_2O$$

Heat is caused by the reaction of sodium hydroxide with water and citric acid.

Procedure. Clinitest reagent tablets will detect 250 mg of reducing substance per deciliter of urine. Both five-drop and two-drop Clinitest methods can be used, and corresponding color charts are available (Belmonte et al, 1967). The two-drop method was developed in response to a so-called **pass-through phenomenon** that may occur if more than 2 g/dL of sugar is present in the urine. In the pass-through phenomenon, the solution that results after addition of the Clinitest tablet goes through the entire range of colors and back to a dark greenish brown. This final color does not compare with any section of the color chart; however, it corresponds most closely to a significantly lower result. It is important to observe the entire reaction and to continue to observe for 15 seconds after boiling inside the tube has stopped, so that reversion to a different color is not missed and a falsely low result reported.

Five-drop method. Place five drops of urine in a dry test tube and add 10 drops of water. Add one Clinitest tablet by easing it into the tube without touching it—it contains strong alkali. Watch while boiling takes place, but do not shake or touch the bottom of the tube—it is hot. Wait for 15 seconds after boiling stops, then shake the tube gently, and immediately compare the color of the solution with the color scale. Results correspond to the following approximate concentrations: Negative; 0.25 g/dL; 0.5 g/dL; 0.75 g/dL; 1.0 g/dL; 2.0 g/dL; and pass-through. It is important to watch the solution carefully while it is boiling. If the solution passes through orange to a dark shade of greenish brown, this indicates that more than 2 g/dL sugar is present; this should be recorded as greater than 2 g/dL without reference to the color scale. Urine samples showing this pass-through phenomenon should be retested with the two-drop method.

Two-drop method. Place two drops of urine in a test tube, and add 10 drops of water. Add one Clinitest tablet. Watch while boiling takes place, but do not shake. Wait 15 seconds after the boiling stops, then shake the tube gently; compare the color of the solution with the color scale supplied for the two-drop method. The pass-through phenomenon may also occur with the two-drop method with large concentrations of sugar—over 5 g/dL. Report results as 1 g/dL, 2 g/dL, 3 g/dL, 5 g/dL, and more than 5 g/dL if a pass-through reaction occurs. With negative or low-level results, the five-drop method should be performed.

Precautions. Observe the precautions in the literature supplied with the Clinitest tablets. The bottle must be kept tightly closed at all times to prevent absorption of moisture and kept away from direct heat and sunlight in a cool, dry place. The tablets normally have a spotted bluish white color. If not stored properly, they will absorb moisture or deteriorate from heat, turning dark blue or brown. In this condition, they will not give reliable results. They are also available individually packaged in aluminum foil to help prevent this absorption of moisture. Although more expensive, such packaging is useful when a limited number of measurements are performed.

Additional Tests for Sugars. As stated above, the copper reduction method will detect the majority of nonglucose sugars that might be present in urine, apart from sucrose, which is not a reducing sugar. It does not, however, differentiate between these sugars, therefore necessitating more complicated testing. Additional confirmatory testing will be discussed here.

Fructose. Fructose is identified by thin-layer chromatography. A qualitative measurement, a resorcinol test, is useful. Fructose will also reduce Benedict's reagent at low temperatures.

Galactose. Thin-layer chromatography is used to identify galactose in urine. However, the disease is usually identified by erythrocyte enzyme assay when suspected.

Lactose. Lactose is identified by thin-layer chromatography or a qualitative lactose test, such as described later.

Procedure. To 15 mL urine in a test tube, add 3 g lead acetate. Shake and filter. Boil filtrate, add 2 mL concentrated NH_4OH (ammonium hydroxide), and boil. Lactose will cause the formation of a brick-red solution and then a red precipitate with clear supernatant.

Pentose. At concentrations of 250 to 300 mg/dL, L-xylulose will reduce Benedict's qualitative reagent at 50° C (water bath) within 10 minutes or at room temperature in several hours. Generally, the pentoses are identified by thin-layer chromatography.

Sucrose. Sucrose will ferment yeast and can be separated by chromatography but needs to be stained with a substance not dependent on reducing properties.

Ketones in Urine

Whenever a defect in carbohydrate metabolism or absorption or an inadequate amount of carbohydrate is present in the diet, the body compensates by metabolizing increasing amounts of fatty acids. When this increase is large, ketone bodies, the products of incomplete fat metabolism, begin to appear in the blood and are consequently excreted in the urine. In ketonuria, the three ketone bodies present in the urine are acetoacetic (diacetic) acid (20%), acetone (2%), and 3-hydroxybutyrate (about 78%). Acetone is formed nonreversibly from acetoacetic acid; β-hydroxybutyric acid (3-hydroxybutyrate) forms reversibly from acetoacetic acid.

$$\text{Acetoacetic acid} \xrightarrow{-CO_2} \text{Acetone}$$

$$\text{Acetoacetic acid} \underset{-2H}{\overset{+2H}{\rightleftharpoons}} \text{3-Hydroxybutyrate}$$

Depending on the methods used, total ketone bodies (as acetone) can range as high as 17 to 42 mg/dL. According to Killander and colleagues (1962), up to 2 mg acetoacetic acid per deciliter is normal. Ketonemia and ketonuria are commonly seen in uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, as well as several other conditions to be discussed here.

Diabetic Ketonuria

Ketonuria implies the presence of ketoacidosis (ketosis) and may provide a warning of impending coma. Up to 50 mg of acetoacetic acid per deciliter may be present without clinical evidence of ketosis. Type 1 diabetic patients are more prone to episodes of ketosis, often associated with infection, stress, or other problems in management. Whereas large amounts of ketones and glucose are present in urine in diabetic ketoacidosis, ketonuria is not found with the hyperosmolar hyperglycemic coma that sometimes occurs in type 2 diabetes.

Nondiabetic Ketonuria

In infants and children, ketonuria commonly occurs in a variety of conditions, such as acute febrile diseases and toxic states accompanied by vomiting or diarrhea. Inherited metabolic disease should be suspected when there is severe persistent neonatal ketosis. Ketonuria may be present in hyperemesis of pregnancy, in cachexia, and following anesthesia. In these cases, ketonuria is likely related to increased tissue (especially fat) catabolism in the face of limited food intake. In pregnancy, a normal patient may have a low fasting blood glucose level and mild ketonuria. Occasionally, ketonuria is seen following exposure to cold or severe exercise, or with a low-carbohydrate diet for weight reduction.

Lactic Acidosis

Lactic acidosis may coexist with many conditions, including shock, diabetes mellitus, renal failure, liver disease, and infection, and in response to certain drugs, especially phenformin and salicylate poisoning (Kraut & Madias, 2014). Acetoacetate and 3-hydroxybutyrate may both be highly elevated, although usually the butyrate is high and acetoacetate low. Under these circumstances, ketonuria may not be detected by the usual nitroprusside test.

Methods. Because acetone, acetoacetic acid, and 3-hydroxybutyrate are all present in the urine with ketonuria, methods that indicate the presence of any one of these three ketone bodies are generally satisfactory to detect this condition. Commonly used nitroprusside strip and tablet tests based on the Rothera method detect acetoacetic acid and acetone (Misra & Oliver, 2015). Different methods measure acetoacetic acid alone, or both acetone and acetoacetic acid. Ferric chloride (Gerhardt's test) detects acetoacetic acid. These methods do not measure 3-hydroxybutyrate, the predominant ketone body.

In urine and plasma, reagent strips and tablets react to 10 mg of acetoacetic acid per deciliter and are less sensitive to acetone. The blood level of ketone bodies may be estimated by the urine ketone dipstick at the bedside. This is especially helpful in determining the severity of ketosis for the treatment of diabetic acidosis.

When a patient is being followed with qualitative determinations of acetone and acetoacetic acid, repeated reports of marked elevations would not reflect the change that is actually taking place. In such an instance, semiquantitative results can be obtained with either the reagent strip or Rothera's tablet test by measuring several dilutions of each specimen.

Problems can occur with false-negative results because of unstable reagents and labile ketones. Bacterial action will cause loss of acetoacetic acid, which can happen *in vivo* as well as in vitro. Acetone is lost at room temperature but not if kept in a closed container in a refrigerator. Refrigerated samples should be brought to room temperature for testing. Preservatives do not prevent decay of ketones. If results are unexpected, fresh reagents, checked against known positive and negative controls, should be used.

Reagent Strip. This method is based on a nitroprusside (sodium nitroferricyanide) reaction for ketones. Different formulations are available. Reagent strips without alkali react to acetoacetic acid and not to acetone. With large (3+) results, urine may be diluted and remeasured, reporting a "moderate" result and the dilution factor.

Chemstrip reagent strips contain sodium nitroferricyanide and glycine, which react with acetoacetic acid and acetone in an alkaline medium to form a violet dye. A positive result is indicated by a color change from beige to violet, which is read at 60 seconds. The method detects about 10 mg/dL of acetoacetic acid and 70 mg/dL of acetone, and the sensitivity and reaction of the reagent strip are similar to those of the tablet (Acetest), described later.

Multistix contains buffers and sodium nitroferricyanide, which react with acetoacetic acid, producing a pink-maroon color in 15 seconds. The reagent area detects 5 to 10 mg acetoacetic acid per deciliter of urine. It does not react with acetone.

Reagent strips correlate only moderately well with quantitative acetoacetate in plasma and poorly with total blood ketones. Color reactions (false-positives) occur after the use of phthaleins (sulfobromophthalein [BSP] or phenolsulfonphthalein [PSP] dye) or in the presence of extremely large quantities of phenylketones and the preservative 8-hydroxyquinoline, or L-dopa metabolites. Acetylcysteine (aerosol) produces a strong red color. The antihypertensive drugs methyldopa and captopril give positive results, as well as the chemotherapy adjuvant mercaptoethane sulfonate sodium (MESNA). False-negative results occur because of loss of reagent reactivity.

Nitroprusside Tablet Test. A tablet test method may be useful if the urine has an interfering color. However, the routine utilization of the nitroprusside tablet test to confirm a positive dipstick result for ketones is unnecessary (Meng et al, 2013a). These tablets are very sensitive to humidity and will deteriorate if not stored properly. The Acetest tablet contains sodium nitroprusside, glycine, and a strongly alkaline buffer. It can be used to assay whole blood, plasma, serum, or urine.

Acetest will detect 5 to 10 mg of acetoacetic acid per deciliter of urine and 20 to 25 mg of acetone per deciliter of urine. Like the reagent strips, it does not react with 3-hydroxybutyrate. It will give positive results with L-dopa and large amounts of phenylketones and with BSP and PSP dyes, which react with the alkali in the tablets.

Procedure. Place the tablet on a clean surface, preferably a piece of white paper. Place one drop of urine, serum, plasma, or whole blood on the tablet. For urine measurements, compare the color of the tablet with a color chart at 30 seconds. For serum or plasma measurements, compare the color of the tablet with the color chart at 2 minutes. For whole blood measurements, remove clotted blood from the tablet and compare the color of the tablet with the color chart, 10 minutes after application of the specimen.

If acetone and acetoacetic acid are present, the tablet will show a color varying from lavender to deep purple. Report the results as negative, small, moderate, or large. If large, a dilution may be made. Report these analyses in a form such as this: undiluted "large," 1:2 dilution "large," 1:4 dilution "moderate," and so forth.

Other Tests for Ketones. The Gerhardt ferric chloride test has been used for many years as a measurement for acetoacetic acid. However, ferric chloride methods are not very specific and the sensitivity is low, at about 25 to 50 mg/dL. The ferric chloride method gives positive results with salicylate and L-dopa. The test tube nitroprusside method of Rothera is sensitive to acetoacetic acid, at about 1 to 5 mg/dL, and to acetone with a sensitivity of 10 to 25 mg/dL.

Blood, Hemoglobin, Hemosiderin, and Myoglobin in Urine

The presence of an abnormal number of blood cells in urine is known as **hematuria,** whereas the term **hemoglobinuria** refers to the presence of free hemoglobin in solution in urine. Hematuria is relatively common, hemoglobinuria uncommon, and **myoglobinuria** rare.

Hematuria

Gross hematuria is the presence of an increased number of red blood cells in a properly collected urine specimen visible to the naked eye, while microscopic hematuria is defined by the presence of three or greater red blood cells per high-powered field. Although asymptomatic microscopic hematuria may be detected by dipstick testing in up to 16% of screening populations (Rockall et al, 1997), many serious diseases of the urinary tract release red blood cells into the urine (Kazi & Benz, 2014). A retrospective investigation of microscopic hematuria by renal biopsy disclosed several histopathologic findings, including membranous nephropathy, IgA nephropathy, non-IgA mesangioproliferative glomerulonephritis, focal glomerulosclerosis, and mild glomerular abnormalities. More than 15% of patients in this study showed normal histology (McGregor et al, 1998). Hematuria can occur with disease (neoplastic and nonneoplastic) or trauma (including calculi) anywhere in the kidneys or urinary tract, as well as with bleeding disorders and anticoagulant usage, and with the use of other drugs such as cyclophosphamide (Sharp et al, 2013). Hematuria may also be seen in healthy persons undertaking excessive exercise (marathon runners), in whom bleeding originates from the bladder mucosa.

Because of the diagnostic importance of small amounts of hematuria and because of the tendency of erythrocytes to undergo lysis in urine, a

TABLE 28-6
Some Causes of Hemolysis and Hemoglobinuria

Erythrocyte trauma	Prosthetic cardiac valves (especially aortic) Ostium primum repair with patch causing turbulence Extensive burns Severe exercise Marching Severe trauma to muscle and other vascular tissues
Organisms	Malaria *Bartonella* *Clostridium welchii* toxin Brown recluse spider bite
Erythrocyte enzyme deficiencies	Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase subjects in the following situations: Exposure to oxidant drugs (acetanilid, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin), antimalarials (e.g., primaquine), fava beans *(Vicia fava)* in susceptible groups, with diabetic acidosis, and with infection
Unstable hemoglobin diseases	With exposure to oxidant drugs
Immune-mediated (see Chapters 32 and 33	Hemolytic-uremic syndrome Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura Incompatible blood transfusions Warm antibodies (autoimmune—transient after infection, drug-induced) Cold antibodies IgM—viral anti-i mycoplasma anti-I IgG—paroxysmal, Donath–Landsteiner anti-P Membrane sensitivity, complement-mediated (paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria) Drugs Acting as haptens (penicillins) Immune complex (quinidine, phenacetin) α-Methyldopa
Normal subjects	Oxidative hemolysis due to drugs, large doses or exposure to naphthalene (mothballs), some sulfonamides, sulfones, nitrofurantoin

screening test for hemoglobin is a useful adjunct to microscopic examination of the sediment. In fact, some studies suggest that reagent strip hemoglobin screening may be more sensitive than urine microscopy in detecting hematuria (Ooi et al, 1998). However, a common problem with the method is the inhibition of the hemoglobin reagent strip by interfering substances, commonly ascorbic acid, and this problem emphasizes the need for a routine microscopic examination to screen for hematuria and confirm the presence of hematuria in patients with a positive reagent strip hemoglobin test (Margulis & Sagalowsky, 2011; Davis et al, 2012). A positive test for hemoglobin with a normal urinary sediment suggests that a fresh urine sample should be examined for erythrocytes, because an alkaline pH or urine specific gravity of less than 1.010 may cause lysis of erythrocytes. Genetic testing has been advocated to assist in the diagnosis of children with isolated microscopic hematuria (Gale, 2013).

Hemoglobinuria

Any cause of hemolysis has the potential of causing hemoglobinuria, but the presence of hemoglobinuria indicates significant intravascular hemolysis as opposed to extravascular hemolysis. Hemoglobin binds to plasma haptoglobin, and free hemoglobin will pass through the glomerulus as αβ dimers (molecular weight [MW], 32,000), once this binding capacity is saturated. Some hemoglobin is reabsorbed by proximal tubular cells, and the remaining hemoglobin is excreted.

Hemoglobinuria may follow severe exertion in which there is direct trauma to small blood vessels; many other causes of acute erythrocyte lysis are summarized in Table 28-6. Plasma appears pink at levels of about 50 mg/dL of hemoglobin, and with marked hemolysis, plasma levels may reach 1 g/dL. The plasma hemoglobin level is more often increased in severe acquired hemolytic anemias than in hereditary hemolytic anemias. However, moderately elevated levels occur with sickle cell disease and homozygous thalassemias. Note that unstable hemoglobins can cause a brown-pigmented urine; this is thought to be due to a dipyrrole or bilifuscin, and no reaction occurs with the reagent strip test for heme. A comparison of expected urine and plasma findings with moderate and marked hemolysis is shown in Table 28-7.

Hemosiderin in Urine

Free hemoglobin is readily filtered by the glomeruli and can be subsequently reabsorbed by proximal tubular cells, where it can be catabolized into ferritin and hemosiderin. Hemosiderin will be present 2 to 3 days after an acute hemolytic episode that caused hemoglobinuria. At this time, the reagent strip method for hemoglobin is often negative; however, hemosiderin can be found as yellow-brown granules that are free or in epithelial cells and occasionally in casts (Fig. 28-1). Hemosiderin also appears in the urine sediment in diseases with a true siderosis of kidney parenchyma (hemochromatosis). Although the existence of hemosiderinuria indicates a chronic hemolytic state, its presence is rarely needed to make the diagnosis of hemolysis; other tests, such as serum bilirubin, lactate dehydrogenase, and haptoglobin levels, will usually point to the correct diagnosis.

Because of the intermittent presence of hemosiderinuria, urinary iron levels may be quantitated to establish the presence of chronic intravascular hemolysis. Normal urinary iron excretion is about 0.1 mg/day, and this is increased with hemochromatosis and in association with erythrocytes traumatized by prosthetic heart valves. Urinary iron levels are normal with pernicious anemia and in hereditary spherocytosis.

TABLE 28-7
Urine and Plasma Findings with Intravascular Hemolysis

Test	Moderate Hemolysis	Marked Hemolysis
Urine		
Bilirubin (conjugated)	Absent	Absent
Urobilinogen	Normal or elevated	Elevated
Hemoglobin	Absent	Present
Hemosiderin	Absent	Present (late)
Plasma		
Bilirubin (unconjugated)	Elevated	Elevated
Haptoglobin	Decreased	Absent
Hemoglobin	Elevated	Elevated (marked)

Myoglobinuria

When acute destruction of muscle fibers (rhabdomyolysis) occurs, as with trauma, myoglobin is released, rapidly cleared from the blood, and excreted in the urine as a red-brown pigment (Cervellin et al, 2010). Free myoglobin, a monomer with a MW of 17,000, is excreted quickly, whereas the hemoglobin-haptoglobin complex is more slowly removed. Myoglobinuria

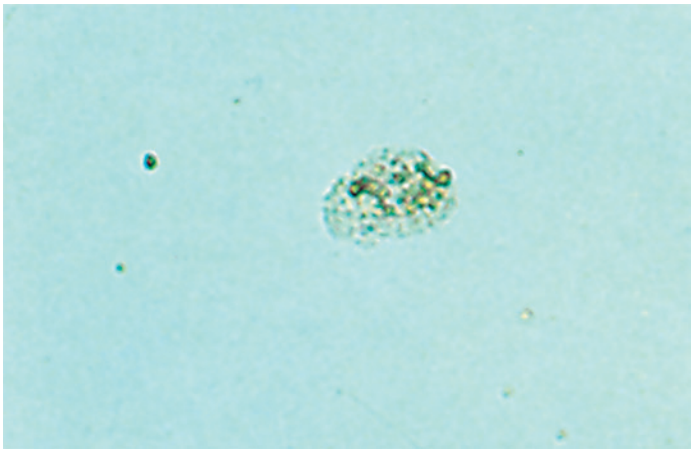


Figure 28-1 Renal tubular epithelial cell (unstained) containing brown pigment, iron (×260).

has been seen following a number of strenuous exercises, such as marathon running and karate. Other less common conditions associated with sustained or recurrent myoglobinuria include dermatomyositis (Rose et al, 1996), defects of muscle phosphofructokinase and adenosine monophosphate deaminase (Bruno et al, 1998), mitochondrial trifunctional protein deficiency (Miyajima et al, 1997), and the metabolic myopathies (Sharp & Haller, 2014; Angelini, 2015).

The diagnosis of rhabdomyolysis and myoglobinuria is usually made from the history and other laboratory findings as follows. Typically, the patient with rhabdomyolysis has muscle tenderness or cramps and voids red-brown urine within 1 or 2 days after exertion (Zimmerman & Shen, 2013; Zutt et al, 2014). The reagent strip urine test for hemoglobin is markedly positive, and protein and a few red blood cells are present. Serum is clear and has a markedly elevated creatine kinase (CK), aldolase, and a normal haptoglobin level. Serum creatinine may be increased. The urine usually clears in 2 to 3 days, and the serum CK level declines. The serum measurements and history help to distinguish myoglobinuria from hemoglobinuria.

The distinction between hematuria, hemoglobinuria, and myoglobinuria may be difficult to make on examination of the urine. In all three cases, the urine can be dark red to brown, and some erythrocytes are seen in the sediment (to a much greater degree with hematuria). The reagent strip test for blood is also positive in all three cases. If serum can be examined, it will often be pink with hemoglobinemia but a normal color with myoglobinemia because this pigment is cleared so rapidly. Accurate quantitative measurement of urine myoglobin can also be performed by immunoassay; although some slight interference by hemoglobin may occur, this is an excellent way to detect and quantify the presence of myoglobinuria (Loun et al, 1996). See Table 28-8, which compares hematuria, hemoglobinuria, and myoglobinuria.

TABLE 28-8
Differentiation of Hematuria, Hemoglobinuria, and Myoglobinuria

Condition	Plasma Findings	Urine Findings
Hematuria	Color—normal	Color—normal, smoky, pink, red, brown Erythrocytes—many Renal—red blood cell casts Protein—marked increase Lower urinary tract—no casts Protein—present or absent
Hemoglobinuria	Color—pink (early) Haptoglobin—low	Color—pink, red, brown Erythrocytes—occasional Pigment casts—occasional Protein—present or absent Hemosiderin—late
Myoglobinuria	Color—normal Haptoglobin—normal Creatine kinase—marked increase Aldolase—increased	Color—red, brown Erythrocytes—occasional Dense brown casts—occasional Protein—present or absent

Methods

Reagent Strip for Heme Compounds (Hemoglobin, Myoglobin). This method is based on the liberation of oxygen from peroxide in the reagent strip by the peroxidase-like activity of heme in free hemoglobin, lysed erythrocytes, or myoglobin. Intact erythrocytes are lysed on the strip, causing the hemoglobin to react. Therefore, well-mixed urine must be tested, as intact erythrocytes may be missed if only supernatant urine is used. The reagent area is impregnated with a buffered mixture of an organic peroxide and the chromogen tetramethylbenzidine.

$$H_2O_2 + \text{Chromogen} \xrightarrow{\text{Heme peroxidase activity}} \text{Oxidized chromogen (color change)} + H_2O$$

Heme catalyzes the oxidation of tetramethylbenzidine to produce a green color. The strip is read at 60 seconds following sample application.

Multistix and Chemstrip detect 0.05 to 0.3 mg of hemoglobin per deciliter urine. Note that 0.3 mg of hemoglobin per deciliter is equivalent to that from 10 lysed erythrocytes per microliter. Normal erythrocytes contain approximately 30 pg of hemoglobin per cell.

Sensitivity is reduced in urine specimens with high specific gravity, in which erythrocyte lysis may not occur, and also when protein levels are high. Ascorbic acid in large concentrations may cause a false-negative result, as can formalin when used as a urine preservative, and the antihypertensive drug captopril. The presence of nitrite in large amounts will delay the reaction. Oxidizing contaminants such as hypochlorites (bleach) or iodine from skin-cleansing preparations may produce false-positive results. Microbial peroxidase, associated with urinary tract infection, potentially causes a false-positive reading.

Other Tests for Hemoglobin and Myoglobin. Qualitative tests have been generally unsatisfactory in separating myoglobin and hemoglobin, and both conditions may be present following crush injuries. Hemoglobin and myoglobin can be bound to proteins in urine, and this contributes to the difficulty of separating them by salt precipitation or electrophoresis. The salt precipitation method of Blondheim and colleagues (1958) is described below.

Qualitative Test for Myoglobin

1. Use a fresh urine specimen. Observe the color. Characteristically, urine with myoglobinuria is red when fresh and turns brown on standing, but some myoglobin may be present without color change. Myoglobin is less stable at an acid pH. Neutralize and refrigerate specimen pending testing.
2. Mix 1 mL of urine and 3 mL of 3% sulfosalicylic acid to assay for protein. If the pigment is precipitated, it is a protein. Filter. If the filtrate is a normal color, no abnormal nonprotein pigment is present. (Note: The heat and acetic acid test does not precipitate myoglobin or hemoglobin.)
3. To 5 mL of urine in a test tube, add 2.8 g of ammonium sulfate. Dissolve by mixing. The urine is now 80% saturated with ammonium sulfate. This is optimal for precipitation of hemoglobin. Filter or centrifuge. If the supernatant shows a normal color, the precipitated pigment is hemoglobin. If the supernatant fluid is colored, this is presumptive evidence of myoglobin.

This precipitation test has been largely replaced with specific immunoassays for myoglobin.

Capillary electrophoresis has been shown to successfully separate urinary hemoglobin from myoglobin based on differing electrophoretic mobility (Shihabi, 1995).

Detection of Hemosiderin in Urine. The Prussian blue reaction is used to demonstrate iron in hemosiderin (Fig. 28-2). A dry smear and an alternative wet preparation are described next.

Dry procedure. When stained with Prussian blue reagent, hemosiderin appears as blue granules, 1 to 3 µm, singly or in groups, in renal tubular epithelial cells, as amorphous sediment, or as blue granules in casts. An iron stain used for the detection of siderocytes in blood or bone marrow is also suitable. Urine is collected in an iron-free glass container, overnight. Let stand for 2 hours. Decant three fourths of it, and centrifuge the remainder. Make a smear(s) of the sediment and allow to air dry. (Note: All glassware, slides, coverslips, and so on, should be iron free. Water should be demineralized.)

Reagents

The Prussian blue reagent is made fresh.

Prussian blue stain: Add concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) to an aliquot of the potassium ferrocyanide solution (20% in demineralized water) until a white precipitate forms that remains stable on shaking. Filter through No. 5 filter paper.

Working counterstain: Dilute 1 mL safranin O stain (0.5 g in 100 mL distilled water) to 50 mL with phosphate buffer (pH, 6.4 to 4.7).

Procedure

1. Fix the smear in methyl alcohol for 10 minutes.
2. Rinse with iron-free water (demineralized) and air dry.
3. Stain with Prussian blue reagent for 30 minutes.
4. Wash gently for at least 4 minutes with iron-free water and air dry.
5. Counterstain with safranin O for 1 to 5 minutes.
6. Rinse with iron-free water. Air dry.
7. Mount coverslip.

Wet procedure

1. Centrifuge a complete morning specimen or random urine sample for 5 minutes, and pool the sediment. Examine several drops of sediment microscopically, searching for coarse yellow-brown granules, especially within renal tubular epithelial cells or casts.
2. If such granules are seen, suspend the rest of the sediment in a fresh mixture of 5 mL of 2% potassium ferrocyanide solution and 5 mL of 1% HCl, and allow to stand for 10 minutes.
3. Centrifuge, and discard the supernatant. Examine the sediment microscopically. Coarse granules of hemosiderin appear blue in this preparation in cells, casts, and amorphous material. If granules do not stain, reexamine after 30 minutes (occasionally the reaction is delayed).

Bilirubin in Urine

Bilirubin is a breakdown product of hemoglobin that is formed in the reticuloendothelial cells of the spleen, liver, and bone marrow (Andrews, 1999, 2005; Levitt & Levitt, 2014; Waldvogel-Abramowski et al, 2014). It is initially carried in the blood linked to albumin; this unconjugated bilirubin (or indirect bilirubin) is water insoluble and therefore is unable to pass through the glomerular barrier of the kidney. Unconjugated bilirubin is transported to the liver, where it is conjugated with glucuronic acid to form bilirubin glucuronide. This conjugated form of bilirubin (direct bilirubin) is water soluble and is able to pass through the glomerulus of the kidney into the urine. Conjugated bilirubin is normally excreted in the bile into the duodenum, and normal adult urine contains only 0.02 mg of bilirubin per deciliter. This small amount is not detected by the usual testing methods. Excretion of bilirubin is enhanced by alkalosis.

Conjugated bilirubin appearing in urine generally indicates that there is excess conjugated bilirubin in the bloodstream. This can occur when there is either (1) obstruction to bile outflow from the liver (intrahepatic or extrahepatic), or (2) hepatocellular disease with resultant inability of hepatocytes to sufficiently excrete conjugated bilirubin into the bile. For example, bilirubinuria may be present when intracanalicular pressure rises secondary to periportal inflammation, fibrosis, or hepatocyte swelling. Gallstones in the common bile duct and carcinoma of the head of the pancreas are possible sources of extrahepatic biliary obstruction leading to bilirubinuria. Bilirubinuria is often seen with acute viral hepatitis or drug-induced cholestasis before the appearance of jaundice; it typically accompanies jaundice of acute alcoholic hepatitis. In persons exposed to potentially hepatotoxic drugs or toxins, a positive test for bilirubinuria may be an early indication of cholestasis or liver damage. In congenital hyperbilirubinemias, bilirubin will appear in the urine in the Dubin-Johnson and Rotor types, and is not present with Gilbert's disease or Crigler-Najjar disease (Erlinger et al, 2014; Levitt & Levitt, 2014).

Bilirubinuria is associated with yellow-brown to greenish brown urine that may have a yellow foam, elevated serum bilirubin (conjugated), jaundice, and pale-colored feces. These acholic stools are so called because of the absence of bilirubin-derived pigment. A positive test for urinary bilirubin with a negative test for urobilinogen in urine is indicative of intrahepatic or extrahepatic biliary obstruction. This test is valuable in the differential diagnosis of jaundice, because bilirubinuria is not found with hemolytic jaundice. Table 28-9 summarizes typical urine and fecal findings in jaundice of various causes.

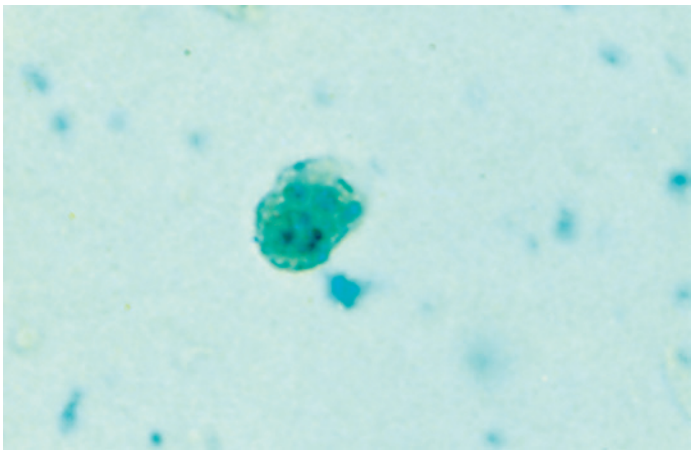


Figure 28-2 Renal tubular epithelial cell positive with Prussian blue stain, hemosiderin (×260).

Methods

Reagent Strip. This test is based on the coupling reaction of bilirubin with a diazonium salt in acid medium. When this method is used, normal urine contains no detectable bilirubin. Specific tests differ in the diazonium salt utilized. Multistix uses diazotized 2,4-dichloroaniline as the diazo salt, with a color change from cream-buff to tan at 20 seconds. This system will detect 0.8 mg per deciliter of urine; however, the color change may be difficult to read. Chemstrip uses 2,6-dichlorobenzene-diazonium tetrafluoroborate, and the color changes from pink to violet at 30 to 60 seconds. This test detects 0.5 mg per deciliter urine.

Urine must be fresh because bilirubin glucuronide in urine quickly hydrolyzes to less reactive free bilirubin. Oxidation of bilirubin in specimens that have stood too long, especially when exposed to light, will result in false-negative findings. Large amounts of ascorbic acid and nitrite can also lower bilirubin results. Metabolites of drugs such as phenazopyridine give a reddish color at the low pH of the strip and mask the result. Rifampin, indican, lodine, and large amounts of chlorpromazine metabolites may cause false-positives, whereas salicylates do not interfere. Urobilinogen does not affect the result.

Confirmatory Bilirubin Tests. The diazo test method, in which bilirubin is coupled to *p*-nitrobenzene diazonium *p*-toluene sulfonate to form a blue or purple color (in the form of a tablet or reagent strip), is commonly used. The reagent strip test is much less reactive to free bilirubin than is the tablet test, so that a difference in results becomes more apparent as the urine ages. Another test employs a ferric chloride reagent to oxidize bilirubin to a green biliverdin. The diazo tablet method is described next.

Diazo tablet method. Tablets contain *p*-nitrobenzene diazonium *p*-toluene, as well as sulfosalicylic acid and sodium bicarbonate. The latter

TABLE 28-9
Urine and Fecal Findings in Jaundice

Finding	Normal	Obstruction to Bile Flow	Hemolysis, Hemolytic Anemia	Liver Damage, Hepatitis, Cholestasis
Urinary bilirubin	Absent	Increased, dark urine	Absent	Increased early
Urinary urobilinogen	Present	Neoplasm—low or absent; gallstones—variable	Increased	Decreased early; increased late
Fecal color	Dark	Pale; intermittent with gallstones in common bile duct; persistent with neoplasm in duct or pancreas	Dark	Pale early and dark late in hepatitis; pale with cholestasis

substances provide an acid medium for the reaction and an effervescent mixture that will ensure the solution of a portion of the tablet when water is added. (Ictotest kit, including absorbent mats and reagent tablets, is available through Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics Inc. Deerfield, Ill).

Note: Reagent tablets are hygroscopic, and they should be protected from moisture or high humidity. The tablets are packed in a brown bottle because prolonged direct exposure to strong light results in decomposition of the stabilized diazonium compound. Prolonged exposure over several weeks to temperatures of 100° F or more may also result in deterioration of the tablets. A brown discoloration indicates deterioration, and when each new bottle is opened, tablets should be checked for positive and negative reactions.

Procedure

1. Place 10 drops of specimen on an asbestos-cellulose mat provided with the kit. Bilirubin, if present, will be adsorbed onto the mat surface.
2. Place a reagent tablet on the moistened area of the mat.
3. Place one drop of water onto the tablet. Wait 5 seconds, and then place a second drop so that the water runs off the tablet onto the mat. If bilirubin is present, there will be a coupling of bilirubin with *p*-nitrobenzene diazonium *p*-toluene sulfonate from the tablet, as shown by the formation of a blue to purple color within 30 seconds. The tablet should be moved to reveal the purple color. A pink or red color is negative.

The diazo test reacts positively to bilirubin in amounts as low as 0.05 to 0.1 mg per deciliter. No purple reaction is seen with urobilin or other pigments, although high levels of urobilin or indican give a red color. Azo compounds (e.g., phenazopyridine) cause an atypical color. Rifampin may also interfere. Chlorpromazine metabolites in large amounts produce a purple color, and the metabolites of the anti-inflammatory drugs mefenamic and flufenamic acid cause false-positive results.

Wash-through tablet method. When false-positive reactions are suspected (e.g., with chlorpromazine), the contaminant can be diluted out with water in the mat.

Procedure. Prepare duplicate mats with 10 drops of urine on each. Add 10 drops of water to one mat. Place a reagent tablet on each mat and then two drops of water onto each tablet. Bilirubin, if present, is adsorbed into the mat fibers and will appear the same on each mat; an interfering substance produces a light color or no color on the mat with the extra water.

Urobilinogen in Urine

Conjugated bilirubin from the liver eventually reaches the duodenum, complexed with cholesterol, bile salts, and phospholipids within the bile (Andrews, 1999, 2005). The conjugated bilirubin is not absorbed from the small intestine but instead passes on into the colon, where resident bacteria hydrolyze the conjugate. The free bilirubin is then reduced to urobilinogen, mesobilirubinogen, and stercobilinogen. Up to 50% of the urobilinogen is reabsorbed into the portal circulation and is reexcreted, unconjugated, into the bile. The vast majority of remaining urobilinogen is excreted in feces as colored urobilins or stercobilin, which are formed after further removal of hydrogen. A small amount is excreted in the urine.

Urobilinogen represents a group of closely related tetrapyrrole compounds, and because a mixture of substances is actually measured, the term **units** is frequently used instead of the more precise milligrams-per-deciliter terminology. These are roughly equivalent. Normal output of urobilinogen in the urine is 0.5 to 2.5 mg or units/24 hours. These substances are colorless and labile, as opposed to the urobilins, the oxidation products of urobilinogen that impart a yellow-orange color to normal urine. Output of urobilinogen is increased in alkaline urine; the level is decreased in acid urine.

Whenever the liver is unable to efficiently remove the reabsorbed urobilinogen from the portal circulation, more urobilinogen than normal is routed through the kidney and hence is excreted in the urine. This can occur when there is hepatocellular damage due to viral hepatitis, drugs, or toxic substances, or in some cases of cirrhosis. With congestive heart failure, liver congestion prevents effective urobilinogen handling, and reexcretion into the bile is impaired. If an infection is present, such as cholangitis associated with obstruction, large amounts of urobilinogen are excreted in urine, together with bilirubin.

In contradistinction, an excess of urobilinogen in urine together with absent bilirubin is typically associated with hemolysis. This can be seen following acute lysis of erythrocytes, as well as with destruction of erythrocyte precursors in the bone marrow with megaloblastic anemias. Increased urobilinogen also accompanies bleeding into tissues and the subsequent formation of excess bilirubin. These jaundiced patients have dark-colored stools because excess urobilinogen is also excreted into the feces. Urinary urobilinogen may be increased when fever is associated with dehydration and concentrated urine.

Persistent absence of urinary urobilinogen occurs with complete obstruction of the outflow of bile into the intestine, accompanied by pale stools. Broad-spectrum antibiotics, which suppress the normal intestinal flora, may prevent the conversion of bilirubin to urobilinogen, and therefore may reduce its excretion in feces and urine.

The brown pigment mesobilifuscin is a dipyrrole that normally contributes to fecal and urine color. It does not react with tests for blood or bilirubin. Although it is not derived from bilirubin, as is urobilinogen, it is a likely byproduct of heme synthesis. Its excess causes a dark brown urine that can be seen with homozygous β-thalassemia, or whenever Heinz bodies form in erythrocytes (e.g., with the unstable hemoglobins).

Methods

Reagent Strip. Testing is based on the Ehrlich aldehyde reaction or on the formation of a red azo dye from a diazonium compound.

Multistix utilizes the former method; its test area is impregnated with an acid buffer solution and *p*-dimethylaminobenzaldehyde, which produces a reddish brown color with urobilinogen. Color varies from light yellow to shades of red-brown, and values from 0.2 to 1 mg per deciliter are considered normal. This test method is not specific for urobilinogen and will detect substances known to react with the Ehrlich reagent, including porphobilinogen, *p*-aminosalicylic acid metabolites, sulfonamides, procaine, 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid, indole, and methyldopa (Aldomet). It is not a reliable method for the detection of porphobilinogen.

The Chemstrip urobilinogen test area is impregnated with 4-methoxybenzene-diazonium-tetrafluoroborate, which couples with urobilinogen in an acid medium to form a red azo dye. Results are read at 10 to 30 seconds, and the test can detect approximately 0.4 mg/dL. This test, unlike the Ehrlich reagent-based methods, is specific for urobilinogen.

A freshly voided sample is best for testing, given that urobilinogen is quite labile and will potentially form nonreactive urobilin in acid urine. Both reagent strips are affected by the metabolites of drugs such as phenazopyridine, which colors the urine orange-red in an acid medium, and other compounds such as Azo-Gantrisin. These may mask the reaction with urobilinogen or give a false-positive result. Bilirubin and blood do not usually affect the test, but bilirubin may occasionally cause a green color.

Other Urobilinogen and Porphobilinogen Tests. Qualitative testing for urobilinogen and porphobilinogen may be performed when reagent strip testing indicates more than 1 mg/dL of Ehrlich-reacting substance present in the urine (see the Porphyrins section later in the chapter for more information on these testing modalities).

Quantitative tests for urobilinogen in urine are seldom performed. Consult Henry (1979) for a 2-hour quantitative urobilinogen method, and Davidsohn and Henry (1974) or Schwartz and colleagues (1944) for 24-hour quantitation. For quantitative comparative purposes in the same patient, a 2-hour test is used in which urine is collected from 2 PM to 4 PM after lunch. This period after the meal coincides with heightened excretion of urobilinogen, as the pH of the urine is more nearly neutral. Other 2-hour periods may be tested for comparison.

Indirect Tests for Urinary Tract Infection

It is not uncommon for significant urinary tract infections to be present in patients who do not experience typical symptoms. Given that these infections if untreated can cause severe renal damage, many physicians are finding it prudent to request tests for bacteriuria in high-risk individuals (Foxman, 2014; Nicolle, 2014). These would include patients who are older adults, pregnant, or diabetic, and those with a previous history of urinary tract infections. The two most commonly utilized testing modalities for indirect assessment of bacteriuria and leukocyturia are the reagent strip nitrite and leukocyte esterase, respectively. These tests are best used to rule out urinary tract infections (St John et al, 2006; Wright & Safranek, 2006) and are discussed in the next sections. An immunochromatographic test strip for the measurement of urinary lactoferrin released from leukocytes may also prove useful for the rapid diagnosis of urinary tract infection (Arao et al, 1999). Microscopic urinalysis serves as a rapid confirmatory test for the presence of leukocytes and bacteria, with bacteriologic culture remaining the "gold standard" for detecting bacteriuria.

Nitrite

Many bacteria that are urinary tract pathogens are able to reduce nitrate to nitrite, and thus will generate a positive urine nitrite test when present in significant numbers (>10^5 to 10^6/mL bladder urine). Common organisms include *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Proteus*, *Staphylococcus*,

and *Pseudomonas* species; *Enterococcus*, yeasts, and some gram-positive bacteria are unable to reduce nitrate to nitrite. If the nitrite test is positive, a culture should be considered, provided that the specimen was properly collected and stored prior to testing. A first morning clean-voided midstream specimen is best.

According to Kunin and DeGroot (1975), self-administered repeated nitrite tests (three tests) in a small group of patients revealed about 70% overall positive results when compared with cultures. When only *E. coli* was present, bacteriuria detected by a positive nitrite test in any of the three first morning specimens showed 93% agreement with culture results. No significant false-positive nitrite results were reported in this large test group. Other authors report more disappointing results with nitrite dipstick screening for urinary tract infection, particularly in hospital inpatients (Zaman & Borremans, 1998). In children with urinary tract infections, nitrite-negativity has been reported to predict potential resistance to cephalosporin treatment (Weisz et al, 2010).

Methods. The test depends on the conversion of nitrate to nitrite by bacterial action in the urine. Because overnight (minimum of 4 hours) bladder incubation is typically required for the infecting bacterial population to convert urinary nitrate to nitrite, a first morning specimen is best. A positive result is an indication for culture, unless the specimen has been improperly stored after collection, allowing contaminant bacterial growth.

Reagent strip. The nitrite testing area of Multistix is impregnated with *p*-arsanilic acid, which forms a diazonium salt when it reacts with nitrite present in the urine. This compound is then able to couple with benzoquinoline to form a pink azo dye. This method detects 0.075 mg of nitrite per deciliter in solution and is read at 40 seconds. Chemstrip contains a benzoquinoline and sulfanilamide, which produce a pink azo dye with nitrite at 30 seconds, and is able to detect 0.05 mg of nitrite per deciliter. Note that pink spots or edges are interpreted as negative.

False-positive results most commonly occur with poorly collected/stored specimens as the result of contaminants and postcollection bacterial proliferation. False-positives may also be produced by medications that color the urine red or turn red in an acid medium (e.g., phenazopyridine).

False-negative nitrite results may be due to ascorbic acid, urobilinogen, or low pH (<6). Random specimens collected during the day and urine from patients with draining catheters do not show good correlation between the nitrite test and significant bacteriuria, presumably because of the time required for the chemical reduction to nitrite in the bladder urine. Additionally, some false-negative results occur because some nitrate-reducing organisms form compounds other than nitrite, such as ammonia, nitric and nitrous oxide, hydroxylamine, and nitrogen, and therefore give a negative nitrite test result. Lack of dietary nitrate may also produce false-negative results, even when a significant number of organisms are present.

Leukocyte Esterase

Extracts of human neutrophil azurophilic (primary) granules contain up to 10 proteins showing esterolytic activity, and this esterase activity is commonly used as a marker for these cells. Because neutrophils and other cells are labile in urine, leukocyte esterase activity can be indicative of remnants of cells that are not visible microscopically.

The presence of significant numbers of neutrophils in the urine suggests urinary tract infection; however, difficulty has arisen in determining suitable cutoff points for normal and abnormal numbers of these cells. Because quantitative counts are so low, precision is poor. Positive leukocyte esterase results correlate with "significant" numbers of neutrophils, either intact or lysed; with the use of a chamber count of about 10 neutrophils/μL of fresh urine as a cutoff point, the numbers of false-negative and false-positive results are low. Likewise, when a concentrated (10:1) urine sediment and a cytocentrifuged stained preparation are used, a negative reagent strip test is associated with fewer than 100 neutrophils in 10 high-power fields (hpf) (450×). Multiple clinical studies have also confirmed the high negative predictive value of simultaneously negative reagent strip nitrite and leukocyte esterase assays for the presence of a urinary tract infection in both older children and adults (Mori et al, 2010; Kayalp et al, 2013; Mody & Juthani-Mehta, 2014). The leukocyte esterase test may also be useful in the workup of suspected urethritis in male patients; it has a high negative predictive value in this diagnostic setting (Bowden, 1998).

Methods

Reagent strip. This test is similar in principle to the naphthol chloroacetate reaction used for granulocyte esterase detection in hematology. Neutrophilic esterases catalyze the hydrolysis of esters to produce their respective alcohols and acids. For example, Multistix utilizes 3-hydroxy-5-phenyl-pyyrole-*N*-tosyl-L-alanine ester as a substrate, which reacts in the presence of leukocyte esterase to form pyrrole alcohol. The alcohol then reacts with a diazonium salt to produce a purple color. The intensity of the color produced is proportional to the amount of enzyme present, which is related to the number of neutrophils present.

Cells originating from the urinary tract (i.e., urothelium) and erythrocytes do not contribute to the esterase level. Elevated urine specific gravity, protein, and glucose may all decrease test results, as can the presence of boric acid and certain antibiotics such as tetracycline, cephalexin, and cephalothin. Very large amounts of ascorbic acid may inhibit the reaction.

Contamination of urine with vaginal fluid may give positive results, and large numbers of squamous epithelial cells and bacteria would be seen on microscopic evaluation. Also, *Trichomonas* and eosinophils may represent alternative cellular sources of esterases, causing false-positive results. Oxidizing agents and formalin may give false-positive colors, and nitrofurantoin and other strong colors may affect color interpretation. High concentrations of protein, glucose, oxalic acid, and ascorbic acid may produce false negative results (Strasinger et al, 2014).

Miscellaneous Chemical Screening Tests

Ascorbic Acid

Large quantities of ascorbic acid may occasionally be found in the urine of individuals taking therapeutic doses of vitamin C or other preparations containing abundant ascorbic acid. Because of its reducing properties, ascorbic acid may inhibit several reagent strip reactions (i.e., glucose, blood, bilirubin, nitrite, and leukocyte esterase). Reagent strips from various manufacturers differ in their susceptibility to this substance, and suspicious results should be investigated. For example, when the microscopic examination of urine sediment shows more than two erythrocytes per high-power field, but heme is not detected by the reagent strip method, it may be useful to check for the presence of ascorbic acid.

Urine tests for ascorbic acid have also been used as an indication of adequate ascorbic acid therapy. With the usual Western diet, 2 to 10 mg/dL is excreted daily, but after ingestion of large amounts of ascorbic acid, levels in urine may rise to 200 mg/dL. Oxalate and sulfate are the metabolites of ascorbic acid, and with ingestion of large quantities (1 g or more per day), oxalate stones may form in susceptible persons.

Methods. Several manufacturers have developed reagent strip methods for detecting ascorbic acid, discussed next. Gas chromatographic/mass spectrometric measurement is a more accurate quantitative method (Deutsch, 1997).

Reagent strip. The ascorbic acid testing area of C-Stix reagent strips is impregnated with phosphomolybdates buffered in an acid medium. The phosphomolybdates are reduced by ascorbic acid to molybdenum blue, and this test detects 5 mg/dL of ascorbic acid in urine after 10 seconds. Gentisic acid and L-dopa may cause false-positive results.

Stix reagent strips are not as sensitive as C-Stix; they can detect about 25 mg/dL of ascorbic acid at 60 seconds. The reagent in Stix is methylene green, which is reduced to its colorless form with ascorbic acid. Neutral red provides a background color, and the overall color changes from blue to purple at levels of 150 mg/dL. This same testing method is also incorporated into Multistix multiple reagent strips. Large amounts of bilirubin and pH greater than 7.5 interfere with the color. False-positive results are not seen with urates, salicylates, gentisic acid, or creatinine.

5-Hydroxyindoleacetic Acid

Serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine) is produced by the argentaffin cells of the intestines from tryptophan, and is carried in the blood by platelets. Carcinoid tumors (argentaffinoma) can produce excessive amounts of serotonin, especially when metastatic. Characteristic symptoms include intestinal and vasomotor disturbances and bronchoconstriction; edema, right-sided valvular heart disease, and neurologic symptoms may also be present.

Although serotonin in the urine can be analyzed directly by high-performance liquid chromatographic methods (Panholzer et al, 1999), screening tests that detect the serotonin metabolite 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid in the urine are more commonly used. The quantitative method is more sensitive because it eliminates the interfering keto acids and indoleacetic acid. The normal excretion of 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid in 24 hours is 1 to 5 mg.

Screening Test. A random urine specimen is usually sufficient for screening purposes; if a 24-hour collection is made, it should be acidified with HCl. Boric acid may also be used as a preservative. Patients should be instructed not to take any drugs for 72 hours before the test; phenothiazines, acetanilid drugs, and mephenesin, a muscle relaxant, will interfere with this test.

The principle of the test is based on the development of a purple color specific for 5-hydroxyindoles with nitrous acid and 1-nitroso-2-naphthol. Ethylene dichloride is used to remove interfering chromogens. For the procedure, see Henry (1984).

Melanin

Normal melanocytes convert tyrosine to dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA), then to dopaquinone, and by oxidative steps to melanin. The enzyme tyrosinase is required for the first conversion step and is found in specific organelles in melanocytes called **melanosomes.** Its formation is increased by melanin-stimulating hormone. Melanosomes with pigment are normally transferred from melanocytes to skin and mucous membrane cells. Enlarged melanosomes are found in some neoplastic cells (e.g., nevus, melanoma).

Increased urinary excretion of melanin metabolites occurs as malignant melanoma metastasizes, although it is unusual to find dark-colored urine in these patients, even when the specimen stands at room temperature for 24 hours. These urinary melanogens include indoles, catechols, and catecholamines. DOPA does not appear in large amounts in urine from melanotic patients.

No simple specific test is available for melanuria. Screening tests for melanin should be made on fresh specimens of urine and include tests based on nonspecific color reactions produced with ferric chloride, Ehrlich's aldehyde reagent, and nitroferricyanide. Procedures for the ferric chloride and nitroferricyanide tests for melanin can be found in Henry (1984).

A column cation-exchange chromatographic method allows detection of melanin metabolites in urine. Another approach is to measure DOPA oxidase levels in urine. The enzyme is increased in the urine of patients with melanoma and is markedly increased with liver metastases.

Rarely, cells containing melanin pigment are seen in urine sediment when melanuria with pigment uptake by renal tubular cells or metastatic melanoma to the bladder is present. A ferrous ion uptake stain can be used to color the melanin in cells dark blue.

Porphyrins

The porphyrias are a group of diseases resulting from defects in the synthesis of heme (Balwani & Desnick, 2012; Besur et al, 2014). These are inherited enzyme deficiencies in which the enzyme substrate is usually excreted in excess in urine and/or feces. During the acute porphyric attack, high levels of porphobilinogen are excreted, but between attacks, levels of porphobilinogen may be increased or normal. The patterns of excretion of the various porphyrins vary with the different diseases, and together with the clinical findings help to establish the diagnosis. In addition, genetic testing is increasingly being used in the diagnosis of the porphyrias (Whatley & Badminton, 2013).

The porphyrins are excreted in most of the porphyrias and in lead poisoning. Additionally, porphyrin metabolism may be abnormal in patients with established human immunodeficiency virus infection, particularly when there is a concomitant hepatitis C virus infection (O'Connor et al, 1996; Ryan Caballes et al, 2012).

Skin photosensitivity and cutaneous lesions frequently accompany high levels of porphyrins. The one entity without skin lesions is acute intermittent porphyria. In patients presenting with neurologic disease and acute abdominal pain—the hepatic group—production and excretion of δ-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) and porphobilinogen are increased during the acute porphyric attack. This is likely due to increased activity of ALA synthase and subsequent increased production of the precursors. Exacerbations of the hepatic diseases are precipitated by drugs known to induce liver enzyme activity (e.g., barbiturates, certain steroids).

Methods. In patients suspected of having an acute porphyric attack, porphobilinogen is sought in urine specimens. The Watson-Schwartz test is used to separate causes of a positive Ehrlich-reacting test and to give an indication of large amounts of urobilinogen or the presence of porphobilinogen. A positive result for porphobilinogen in the Watson-Schwartz test can be further confirmed by the Hoesch test, because the former may show false-positive results for porphobilinogen as a result of drugs such as methyldopa. When a qualitative porphobilinogen test is specifically requested or a known porphyric patient is being followed, the simpler Hoesch test may be used instead of the Watson-Schwartz test.

Urine specimens for urobilinogen or porphobilinogen must be fresh. If testing will be delayed, the pH should be adjusted to near neutral (pH 7) and the specimen stored in a refrigerator, where it is stable for about 1 week. Urine may darken if the patient has porphyria, especially if left at room temperature.

Watson-schwartz test. Ehrlich's aldehyde reaction and Watson-Schwartz tests are based on solubility differences between urobilinogen and porphobilinogen. Urobilinogen can be extracted by chloroform and/or butanol, whereas porphobilinogen will remain in an aqueous phase.

Procedure

1. To 2.5 mL fresh urine, add 2.5 mL Ehrlich's reagent and mix.
2. Add 5 mL saturated sodium acetate and mix. Check with pH paper to confirm that the solution is in the pH range of 4 to 5. Adjust pH if necessary.
3. Add 5 mL chloroform; insert a stopper and shake vigorously for 1 minute. Permit the phases to separate.
4. Examine the upper (aqueous) phase. If the color is absent, consider the result of the screening test to be negative and stop.
5. If color is present, separate the upper (aqueous) phase and add 5 mL of butanol. Insert a stopper and shake vigorously for 1 minute. Allow phases to separate.
6. A "pink to rose red" color in the lower aqueous layer indicates a positive result and suggests a concentration of porphobilinogen that is several times normal. A color in the upper butanol layer indicates an increase in urobilinogen concentration (Fig. 28-3).

Hoesch test. The Hoesch test is based on the inverse Ehrlich's reaction (i.e., of maintaining an acid solution by adding a small urine volume to a

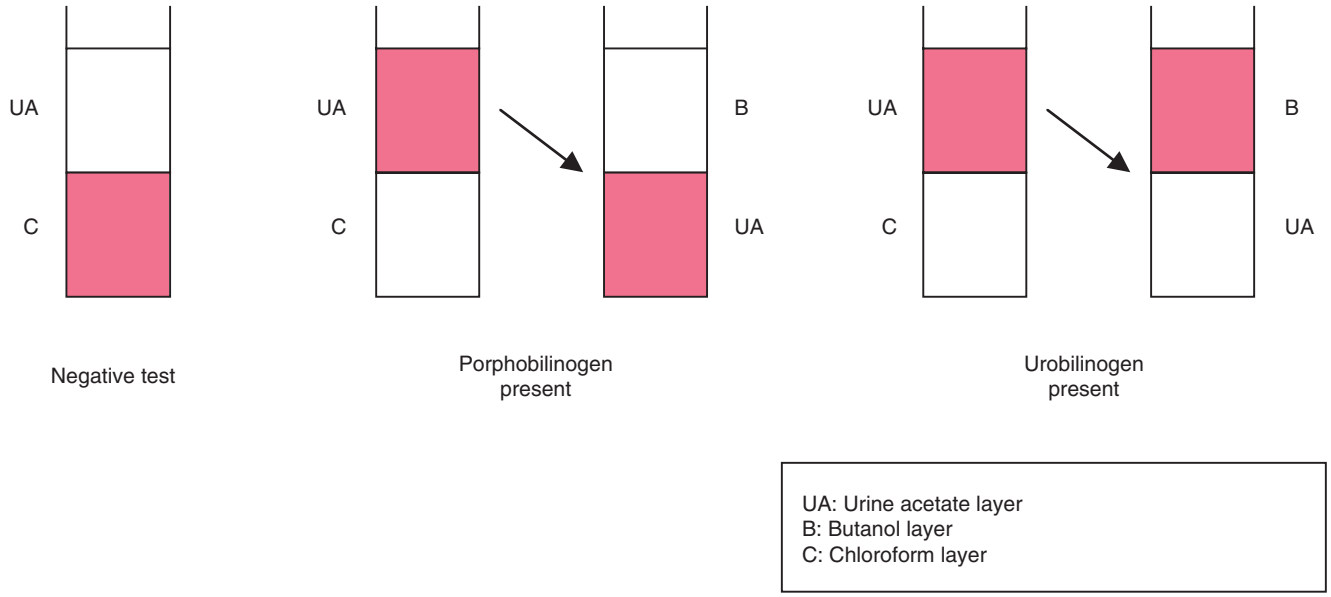


Figure 28-3 **Watson-Schwartz test.** Interpretation of screening method for urine urobilinogen and porphobilinogen.

relatively large reagent volume), eliminating the problem of urobilinogen reactivity. The sensitivity is similar to that of the Watson-Schwartz test, but the reaction is for porphobilinogen. This test will detect about 20 to 100 mg/L of porphobilinogen; urobilinogen in amounts up to 200 mg/L does not give a positive result (red color). A yellow color may be caused by urea.

The urorosein urinary pigment related to indoleacetic acid will produce a positive Hoesch test (in response to strong HCl), and the rose color may be confused with a positive porphobilinogen result. Some of the false-positive problems may be excluded by testing the specimen with concentrated HCl (6 mol/L) separately in conjunction with the Hoesch test. Urine from a patient having an acute porphyric attack may be dark red in color, necessitating a 1:10 dilution with water before testing.

The Watson-Schwartz test detects greater than 6 mg/L and the Hoesch test greater than 11 mg/L of porphobilinogen. The Watson-Schwartz test is more sensitive than the Hoesch test for porphobilinogen and may yield a positive result between attacks of acute intermittent porphyria. Large doses of methyldopa (Aldomet) gave positive results, as did indoles in some patients with intestinal ileus and the drug phenazopyridine, which becomes orange with HCl. A quantitative porphobilinogen test is necessary if the Watson-Schwartz test or the Hoesch test result is questionable; this situation may arise because of the instability of porphobilinogen.

Alternative urine screening tests for porphobilinogen have been described. These include a micellar electrokinetic capillary chromatographic method (Luo et al, 1996), as well as a semiquantitative kit in which urine is pretreated with ion-exchange resin, and the color of the Ehrlich-porphobilinogen adduct is compared to a set of standards (Deacon & Peters, 1998; Vogeser & Stauch, 2011).

Uroporphyrin and coproporphyrin can be detected by fluorescence. An orange-red fluorescence is seen if a positive specimen is placed near an ultraviolet light source.

Fluorescence screening procedure for porphyrin. In this method, the urine is acidified and the extracted porphyrin exposed to ultraviolet light.

1. Place 5 mL urine in a stoppered glass centrifuge tube. Add 3 mL of a mixture of one part glacial acetic acid with four parts ethyl acetate.
2. Shake and allow to separate. Centrifuging will accelerate the separation.
3. Using a Wood's lamp, observe the upper layer for fluorescence. Inspect the tube in a dark room with ultraviolet reflected light. A lavender to violet color indicates the presence of porphyrins; pink to red fluorescence indicates higher levels of porphyrin. Pale blue with no pink color is negative. Normal urine may fluoresce blue.

To increase the sensitivity of the test and remove interfering drug metabolites, transfer the upper layer to a glass tube and acidify with 0.5 mL of 3 M HCl (25 mL concentrated HCl diluted to 100 mL with water). Shake. Porphyrins are extracted into the lower aqueous layer and will produce a red-orange fluorescence.

An alternative screening method utilizes an anion-exchange resin column. Porphyrins are adsorbed, eluted, and exposed to fluorescent light. This method removes interfering substances and is similar in principle to the quantitative method for total porphyrins and for coproporphyrin and uroporphyrin.

Screening tests together with the clinical findings will indicate whether quantitative tests should be done. The latter are usually performed by reference or research laboratories.

Urine specimens for quantitative porphobilinogen should be kept at a near neutral pH (between 6 and 7) and protected from light. Frozen specimens are fairly stable, although ALA is more stable if the urine is acidic. If the urine is to be tested for both substances, the near neutral pH is preferred and the urine aliquot is frozen. These substances are quantitated by eluting from different columns and reacting with Ehrlich's reagent. A micellar electrokinetic capillary chromatographic method has been described that allows separation of ALA and porphobilinogen (Luo et al, 1996).

Urine specimens for quantitative porphyrins must be collected in a dark container containing 5 g sodium carbonate for a 24-hour specimen to give a concentration of 0.1% sodium carbonate or to produce urine of neutral pH. Coproporphyrin and uroporphyrin can be separated by thin-layer chromatography or by extraction and fluorometry and quantitated using ion-exchange columns. Additional methods include the Bio-Rad (porphyrin) column test, spectrophotometry (Zuijderhoudt & Dorresteijn-de Bok, 1998), capillary electrophoresis (Chiang & Li, 1997), fast atom bombardment mass spectrometry (Luo et al, 1997), and laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry (Jones et al, 1995).

Fecal porphyrins can be qualitatively estimated using extraction and ultraviolet (UV) light, or quantitated. In some porphyrias, erythrocytes may show fluorescence when an unstained blood smear is examined microscopically. The nucleated bone marrow erythrocytes give greater fluorescence.

EXAMINATION OF URINE SEDIMENT

Microscopic examination of urine, in conjunction with dipstick chemical analysis, aids in the detection of renal and urinary tract disease processes. With microscopy, one can detect those cellular and noncellular elements of urine that do not give distinct chemical reactions. Microscopy can also serve as a confirmatory test in some circumstances (e.g., erythrocytes, leukocytes, bacteria) and yields new information 66% of the time (Tworek et al, 2008). In the routine laboratory, examination of the urine sediment is best reserved and most useful for those samples with abnormal dipstick results (European Confederation of Laboratory Medicine, 2000).

To perform a microscopic evaluation of urine with competence, one must be knowledgeable of numerous morphologic entities (e.g., organisms, hematopoietic and epithelial cells, crystals, casts). Also, microscopists must be aware of the clinical relevance of urine findings, as well as the common chemical abnormalities associated with microscopic interpretations. Discrepancies should be investigated before a report is issued. The quality of the manual microscopic analysis of urine is dependent on the expertise and experience of the examiner (Tsai et al, 2005).

Centrifuged urine sediment should contain all the insoluble materials (commonly referred to as *formed elements*) that have accumulated in the urine following glomerular filtration and during passage of fluid through the renal tubules and lower urinary tract. Cellular elements are derived from two sources: (1) desquamated/spontaneously exfoliated epithelial lining cells of the kidney and lower urinary tract, and (2) cells of hematogenous origin (leukocytes and erythrocytes). Cellular and noncellular casts may be seen; these are formed in the renal tubules and collecting ducts. Crystals of variable clinicopathologic significance may also be present. Organisms (bacteria, fungi, viral inclusion cells, parasites) and neoplastic cells represent elements that are typically foreign to urine; when detected, further investigation is required.

"Normal" or reference values for formed elements will vary from one laboratory to another because of (1) the variation in concentration of random urine specimens, and (2) the different methods used to concentrate the sediment by centrifugation. No specific standardized procedure is used. Individual laboratories have established their own reference values, often in conjunction with nephrologists and nephropathologists.

Methods for Examining Urine Sediment

In general, randomly collected urine specimens are satisfactory for microscopic evaluation; however, it is recommended that examination take place when the sample is fresh, particularly if no preservative has been added. Cells and casts begin to lyse within 2 hours of collection. Refrigeration (2° to 8° C) helps prevent the lysis of pathologic entities; however, this may increase the precipitation of various amorphous and crystalline materials. Midstream collection is recommended for females to reduce contamination from vaginal elements.

Bright-Field Microscopy

Although bright-field microscopy can be performed to a limited extent on unstained urine preparations, identification of leukocytes, histiocytes, epithelial cells, and cellular casts may be difficult. Subdued light is more effective in delineating translucent structures of the urine, such as hyaline casts, crystals, and mucous threads. A crystal-violet safranin stain is commonly used to aid in delineation of formed elements in urine.

Supravital Stain Reagents

Solution I:	Crystal violet	3.0 g
	Ethyl alcohol (95%)	20.0 mL
	Ammonium oxalate	0.8 g
Solution II:	Safranin O	1.0 g
	Ethyl alcohol (95%)	40.0 mL
	Distilled water	400.0 mL

Three parts of solution I and 97 parts of solution II are mixed and filtered. The mixture should be clarified by filtering every 2 weeks and discarded after 3 months. Separately, solutions I and II can be kept indefinitely at room temperature.

Several commercially available staining reagents are available. A 2% solution of methylene blue and toluidine blue may be used as a simple, quick supravital stain.

Procedure. Add one or two drops of stain to approximately 1 mL of concentrated urine sediment. Mix with a pipet, and place a drop of this suspension on a slide and coverslip.

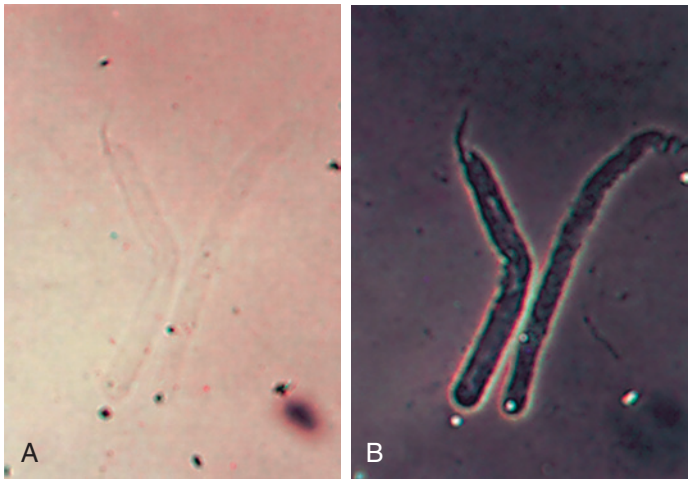


Figure 28-4 **A,** Hyaline casts. Bright-field (×100). **B,** Hyaline casts. Phase-contrast microscopy (×100).

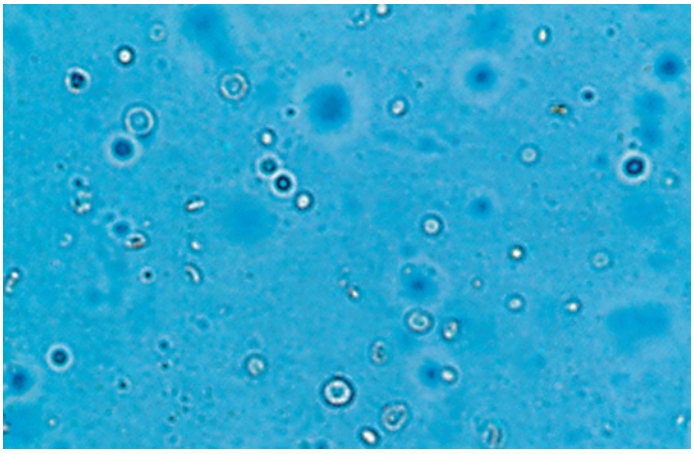


Figure 28-5 Dysmorphic erythrocytes (×160).

Phase-Contrast Microscopy

Phase-contrast microscopy is beneficial for the detection of more translucent formed elements of the urinary sediment, notably casts that may escape detection under ordinary bright-field microscopy. Phase-contrast microscopy has the advantage of hardening the outlines of even the most transparent formed elements, making detection simple (Fig. 28-4, *A* and *B*). Scanning time is decreased, and the yield increased. Several microscopes have been designed to allow the operator to perform bright-field or phase-contrast examinations, depending on which objectives or condensors are utilized.

Polarized Microscopy

This is used to distinguish crystals and fibers from cellular or protein cast material. Lipid droplets or spherocrystals containing cholesterol esters are anisotropic in polarized light, show up brightly against a dark field, and form Maltese crosses with crossed polars. Visible evidence of anisotropy depends on the orientation of the crystal in the field; not all will be seen. If a red retardation plate is inserted, the cholesterol droplet will show typical blue and yellow quadrants against a red background. Starch granules will have a similar appearance when polarized but are much larger. Crystals, hair, and clothing fibers also show up brightly but do not exhibit Maltese cross forms. Fatty acids and triglycerides do not form liquid spherocrystals and do not show anisotropy, but glycosphingolipids in Fabry's disease are birefringent and may be seen in urinary sediments.

Quantitative Counts

The hemocytometer is used in many laboratories to quantify the elements of urine sediment. Cells and casts from undiluted well-mixed urine are counted and reported as the number of cells per microliter. Normal values for neutrophils vary from 5 to 30/μL according to different workers; upper limits for erythrocytes range from 3 to 20/μL and for casts as few as 1 to 2/μL. Counting cells from an unspun sample of urine in a hemocytometer has advantages over the examination of cytocentrifuged spun urine. These include decreased variability caused by centrifugation and suspension, a fixed volume of urine for examination, and a marked visual field for accurate counting. Kesson and colleagues (1978) provided evidence that chamber counts on centrifuged urine sediments are more reliable in predicting renal functional abnormalities than is a conventional method using cells per high-power field. Recovery of cells may vary depending on centrifuge speed, specific gravity, and pH.

Microscopic Components in Urine Sediment

Cells

Erythrocytes. Under high power, unstained erythrocytes (RBCs) appear as pale biconcave disks that may vary somewhat in size but are usually about 7 μm in diameter. If the specimen is not fresh when it is examined, erythrocytes may appear as faint, colorless circles or "shadow cells," because the hemoglobin may dissolve out. They may become crenated in hypertonic urine and appear as small, rough cells with crinkled edges. In dilute urine, the cells will swell and rapidly lyse, releasing hemoglobin and leaving only empty cell membranes, referred to as **ghost cells.**

On occasion, erythrocytes may be confused with oil droplets or yeast cells. Oil droplets, however, exhibit greater variation in size and are highly refractile, and yeast cells usually show budding. If identification is difficult, two preparations may be made and a few drops of acetic acid added to one. Erythrocytes are lysed in the acidified preparation.

Erythrocytes are found in small numbers (0 to 2 cells/hpf) in normal urine; more than 3 cells/hpf is considered abnormal. The presence of increased numbers of erythrocytes in the urine may indicate a variety of urinary tract and systemic conditions. These include (1) renal disease—glomerulonephritis, lupus nephritis, interstitial nephritis associated with drug reactions, calculus, tumor, acute infection, tuberculosis, infarction, renal vein thrombosis, trauma (including renal biopsy), hydronephrosis, polycystic kidney, and occasionally acute tubular necrosis and malignant nephrosclerosis; (2) lower urinary tract disease—acute and chronic infection, calculus, tumor, stricture, and hemorrhagic cystitis following cyclophosphamide therapy; (3) extrarenal disease—acute appendicitis, salpingitis, diverticulitis, acute febrile episodes, malaria, subacute bacterial endocarditis, polyarteritis nodosa, malignant hypertension, blood dyscrasias, scurvy, and tumors of the colon, rectum, and pelvis; (4) toxic reactions due to drugs, such as sulfonamides, salicylates, methenamine, and anticoagulant therapy; and (5) physiologic causes, including exercise. When increased numbers of erythrocytes are found in the urine in conjunction with erythrocyte casts, bleeding may be assumed to be renal in origin.

Dysmorphic erythrocytes. Numerous studies have concentrated on the variable morphology of urinary erythrocytes, attempting to localize the site of origin of hematuria. Red blood cells with cellular protrusions or fragmentation are termed *dysmorphic* (Fig. 28-5), and some authors have suggested that their presence in urine samples is strongly suggestive of renal glomerular bleeding (Fracchia et al, 1995; Fogazzi et al, 2008). Others have not found dysmorphic morphology reliable in predicting primary renal hematuria (Favaro et al, 1997; Ward et al, 1998; Zaman & Proesmans, 2000). The so-called *G1 cell*, which has a doughnut shape with one or more membrane blebs, may be more specific than dysmorphic cells for diagnosing glomerular hematuria (Dinda et al, 1997; Nguyen, 2003; Nagahama et al, 2005). Another study describes immunocytochemical staining of urinary erythrocytes with Tamm-Horsfall protein in renal hematuria; this appears to be even more reliable than cellular morphology in terms of separating renal from nonrenal sources of erythrocytes (Fukuzaki et al, 1996). Normal persons may also have a mixture of distorted and undistorted (isomorphic) erythrocytes in urine.

Leukocytes

Neutrophils. The polymorphonuclear leukocyte (neutrophil) is the predominant type of leukocyte (white blood cell [WBC]) that appears in the urine. Under high power, these cells appear as granular spheres about 12 μm in diameter with multilobated nuclei. Nuclear segments may sometimes appear as small, round, discrete nuclei. When cellular degeneration has begun, nuclear detail may be lost, and neutrophils may then become difficult to distinguish from renal tubular epithelial cells. Dilute acetic acid may enhance nuclear detail so that definition may still be possible (Fig. 28-6). Ultimately, however, with continued degeneration, neutrophilic nuclear segments fuse, making distinction from mononuclear cells difficult or impossible. Supravital staining may also be helpful in emphasizing nuclear detail. With crystal-violet safranin, neutrophilic nuclei appear reddish purple and cytoplasmic granules violet. The

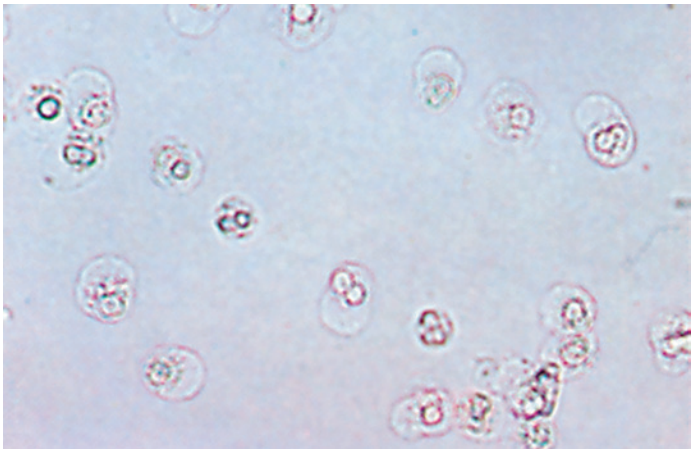


Figure 28-6 Neutrophils with dilute acetic acid (×100).

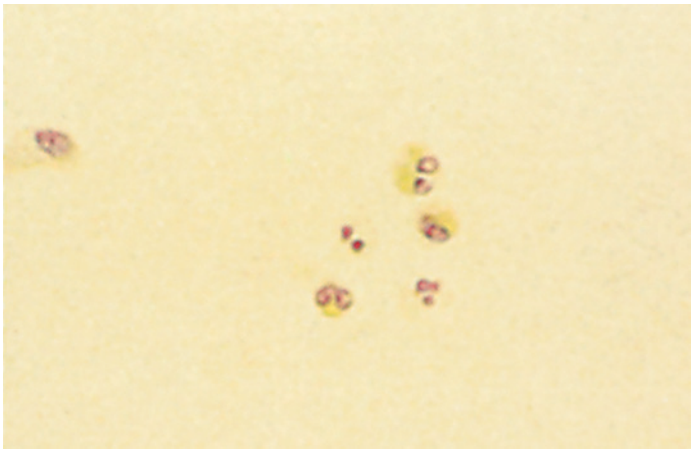


Figure 28-7 Eosinophils (×500).

peroxidase cytochemical reaction is also useful in distinguishing neutrophils from tubular cells.

In dilute or hypotonic urine, neutrophils swell and their cytoplasmic granules exhibit brownian movement. Because of the refractility of the moving granules, neutrophils in this setting are known as **glitter cells.** These cells stain poorly with supravital stains and will show loss of nuclear segmentation. The leukocyte esterase reagent strip is valuable in the confirmation of pyuria in hypotonic urine specimens.

Additionally, leukocytes are rapidly lysed in hypotonic or alkaline urine. Approximately 50% are lost following 2 to 3 hours of standing at room temperature. This necessitates prompt examination of the urinary sediment following collection.

Pyuria. Typically, fewer than 5 leukocytes/hpf are seen in normal urine, although females not uncommonly will have somewhat higher quantities present. Increased numbers of leukocytes (principally neutrophils) in the urine constitute pyuria and indicate the presence of infection or inflammation in the urinary tract. When accompanied by leukocyte casts or mixed leukocyte–epithelial cell casts, increased urinary leukocytes are considered to be renal in origin.

Infection, either bacterial or nonbacterial, may be centered in the renal parenchyma (pyelonephritis) or may be localized as cystitis, prostatitis, urethritis, or balanitis. In women, the acute urethral syndrome (dysuria-pyuria syndrome) is regularly associated with greater than 8 neutrophils/μL in clean-catch urine specimens; however, bacterial colony counts are lower than expected. *Chlamydia trachomatis*, staphylococci, and coliforms are causative agents. Urinary neutrophil counts greater than 30 cells/hpf suggest acute infection, and repeated sterile cultures in this setting may indicate tuberculosis or a nephritis. Gross pyuria may reflect rupture of a renal or urinary tract abscess. It should be noted that the common finding of leukocytes in urine is not as reliable an indication of urinary tract infection as the detection of bacteriuria by Gram stain or culture of a fresh midstream specimen.

Increased leukocytes may be found in a variety of other urinary tract diseases, including glomerulonephritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), and interstitial nephritis. Calculous disease at any level may give rise to increased numbers of urinary leukocytes caused by stasis-induced ascending infection or localized mucosal inflammatory response. Bladder tumors, as well as a variety of acute or chronic localized inflammatory processes, may also cause leukocytes to be increased in the urine. Urine leukocytes may be transiently increased during fevers and following strenuous exercise.

Eosinophils. These cells are not normally seen in urine, and the finding of more than 1% eosinophils among the leukocyte population present is considered significant (Fig. 28-7). Evaluation of a concentrated stained urine is necessary for proper evaluation of urine for the presence of eosinophils. A cytocentrifuge preparation with Wright's, Diff-Quik, or Papanicolaou stain is commonly used, and the Hansel secretion stain (methylene blue and eosin-Y in methanol, Libe Labs, Florissant, MO) has been shown to be an excellent stain for recognition of eosinophiluria. Appropriately stained, bilobed eosinophils may be noted in patients with tubulointerstitial disease associated with hypersensitivity to drugs such as penicillin and its analogs, although some studies have questioned the diagnostic significance of this finding (Muriithi et al, 2013). The cellular pattern in allergic interstitial nephritis typically includes many erythrocytes and some renal tubular epithelial cells. Eosinophiluria is also seen in other acute disorders of the genitourinary tract, with small numbers seen in urinary tract infections and renal transplant rejections.

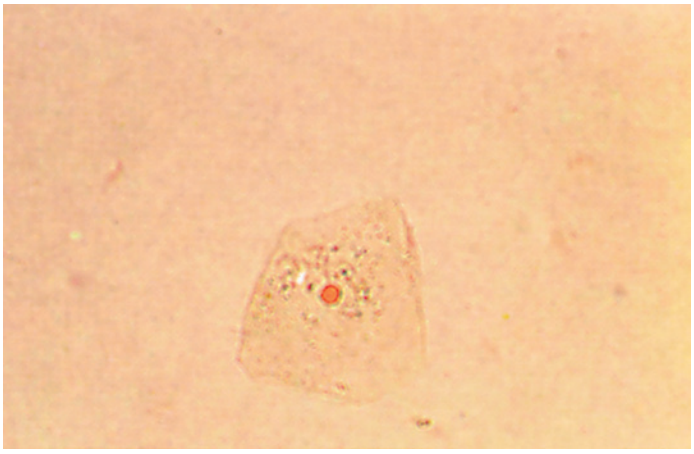


Figure 28-8 **Squamous epithelial cell.** Pyridium stained (×200).

Lymphocytes and mononuclear leukocytes. Small lymphocytes are normally present in urine and, along with histiocytes, are easily differentiated in stained smears. When mononuclear cells (histiocytes, lymphocytes, or plasma cells) constitute 30% or more of a differential count, chronic inflammation is indicated. Many small lymphocytes may be found in urine during renal transplant rejection. Plasma cells and atypical lymphocytes should be noted when present, and further investigation is warranted.

Epithelial Cells

Squamous epithelial cells. These cells are the most frequent epithelial cells seen in normal urine and the least significant. The distal one third of the urethra is lined by squamous epithelial cells, and in the urine, these cells are large and flat, with abundant cytoplasm and small round central nuclei (Fig. 28-8). Their margins are often folded. When stained with crystal-violet safranin, nuclei are purple and cytoplasm pink to violet. Many of the squamous cells present in female urine may be derived from the vagina or vulva.

Transitional (urothelial) epithelial cells. Transitional epithelial cells line the urinary tract from the renal pelvis to the lower third of the urethra. These cells are smaller than squamous cells, their size ranging from 40 to 200 μm. They are round or pear shaped, with a round, centrally located nucleus. Occasional binucleate forms may be seen. When stained, transitional cells have dark blue nuclei with variable amounts of pale blue cytoplasm (Fig. 28-9). Another helpful clue to the proper identification of transitional cells is a characteristic **endo-ecto cytoplasmic rim.**

A few urothelial cells are present in normal urine, reflecting normal desquamation; similar to squamous cells, they are rarely of pathologic significance. The exception is the presence of large clumps or sheets of transitional cells in the absence of instrumentation (i.e., catheterization). This situation necessitates cytologic examination with the Papanicolaou

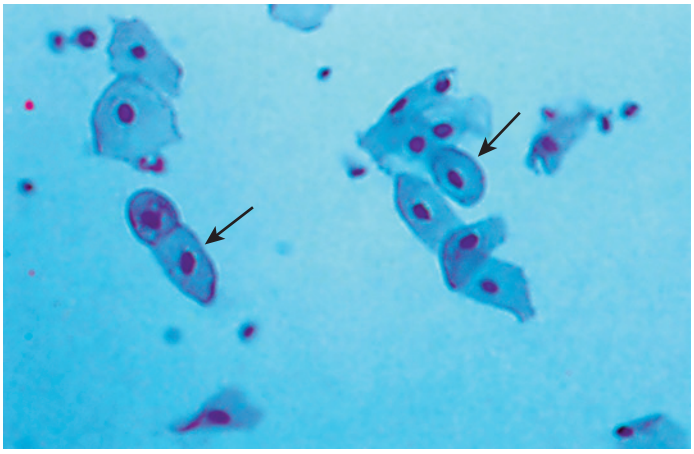


Figure 28-9 **Transitional epithelial cells.** Papanicolaou stained (×430).

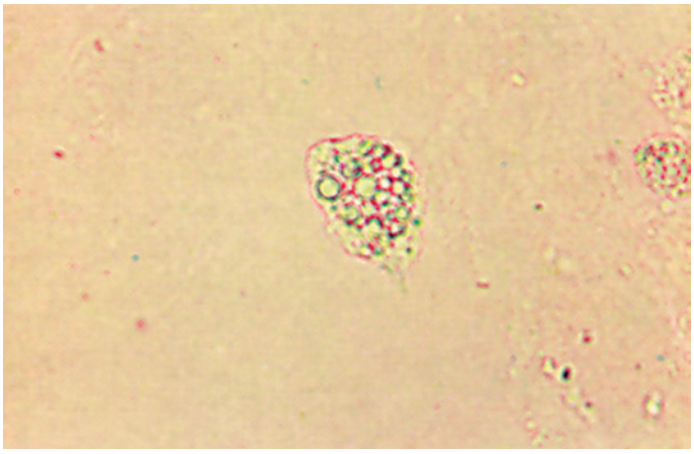


Figure 28-12 **Oval fat body (×160).**

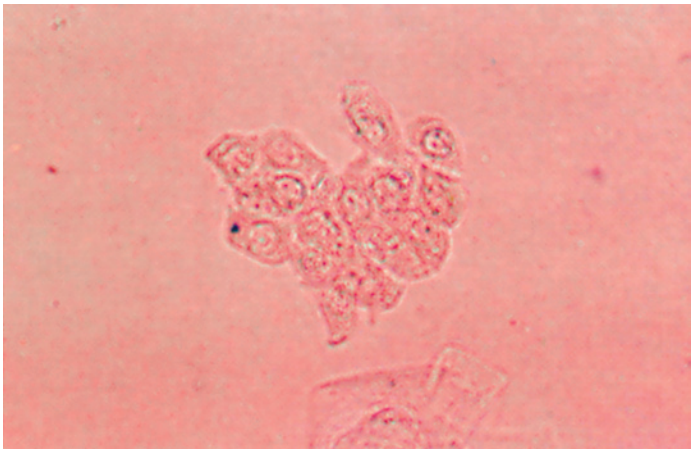


Figure 28-10 **Renal tubular epithelial cells (×200).**

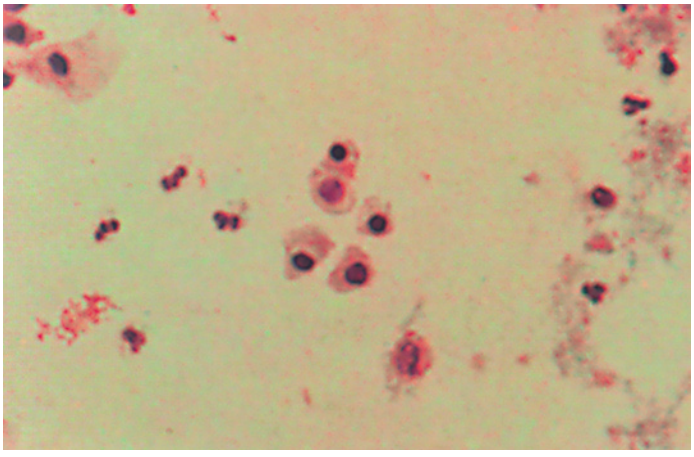


Figure 28-11 **Renal tubular epithelial cells and neutrophils.** Papanicolaou stained (×430).

stain to evaluate for possible transitional cell carcinoma (Fogazzi et al, 2015).

Renal tubular epithelial cells. These are the most significant types of epithelial cells found in urine because the finding of an increased number indicates tubular damage (Figs. 28-10 and 28-11). Small numbers of tubular cells may be seen in normal urine, reflecting the normal sloughing of aging cells. They may be present in somewhat larger numbers in the urine of normal newborns.

The Papanicolaou stain has been shown to be especially useful in distinguishing renal tubular cells from other mononuclear cells in urine (Barkan & Wojcik, 2014). Renal epithelial cells from the proximal and distal convoluted tubules occur singly and are large (14 to 60 µm), oblong cells with characteristic coarsely granular eosinophilic cytoplasm. Nuclei may be multiple but are small with dense chromatin and rare nucleoli. Increased numbers of proximal and distal convoluted renal epithelial cells are seen in cases of acute tubular necrosis and with certain drug or heavy metal toxicities.

Epithelial cells from the collecting ducts measure 12 to 20 µm and are identified by their characteristic cuboidal or polygonal shape and large, usually slightly eccentric nucleus. Cytoplasmic properties include a basophilic endo-ecto cytoplasmic rim commonly found in transitional epithelial cells. Increased numbers of collecting duct epithelial cells are found in renal transplant rejection, acute tubular necrosis (diuretic phase), and other ischemic injuries to the kidney. They may also be found in increased numbers in malignant nephrosclerosis, as well as in cases of acute glomerulonephritis accompanied by tubular damage. Ingestion of various drugs and chemicals may cause significant tubular desquamation. Collecting duct tubular cells are easily found in the urine following salicylate intoxication.

Renal epithelial fragments of collecting duct origin have been described. Three or more renal cells of collecting duct origin constitute a renal epithelial fragment and indicate a more severe form of renal tubular injury with basement membrane disruption. Renal epithelial fragments are indicative of ischemic necrosis and are usually found accompanying varying degrees of renal tubular injury and pathologic casts. Proximal and distal convoluted tubular cells are not found in fragment form. Proper identification of renal epithelial fragments is essential, not only in diagnosing a more severe form of renal tubular injury, but also in avoiding a false-positive diagnosis of low-grade transitional cell carcinoma.

Lipids in renal tubular epithelial cells. Oval fat bodies are tubular cells that have absorbed lipoproteins with cholesterol and triglycerides leaked from nephrotic glomeruli (Fig. 28-12). Oval fat bodies therefore constitute one form of lipiduria. Lipids may also appear in the urine as free fatty droplets, or within histiocytes as ingested material. The presence of any or all of these lipid forms accompanied by marked proteinuria is characteristic of nephrotic syndrome.

Positive identification of lipid is required before lipiduria is reported. When free or incorporated droplets contain large amounts of cholesterol, they exhibit a Maltese cross formation under polarized light (Figs. 28-13 and 28-14). When they contain large quantities of triglycerides, fat stains (Oil Red O or Sudan III) are required for positive lipid identification.

Pigment in renal tubular epithelial cells. With hemoglobinuria or myoglobinuria, heme pigment is absorbed into the cells and is converted to hemosiderin. The iron-laden cells are desquamated and found in the urine sediment. The cytoplasmic granules appear yellow-brown and stain for iron with Prussian blue. These cells may also be incorporated into casts (see Figs. 28-1 and 28-2).

Melanin granules are absorbed into the tubular cells in rare cases of melanuria. The desquamated pigmented cells may be demonstrated in the sediment. Pigmented tumor cells are also found in cases of melanoma metastasis to the bladder.

Bilirubin pigment colors all of the elements of the sediment, including renal tubular epithelial cells and casts. Note that urobilin does not color cells and casts.

Casts

Casts are the only formed elements of urine that have the kidney as their sole site of origin. Tamm-Horsfall protein is the glycoprotein secreted by

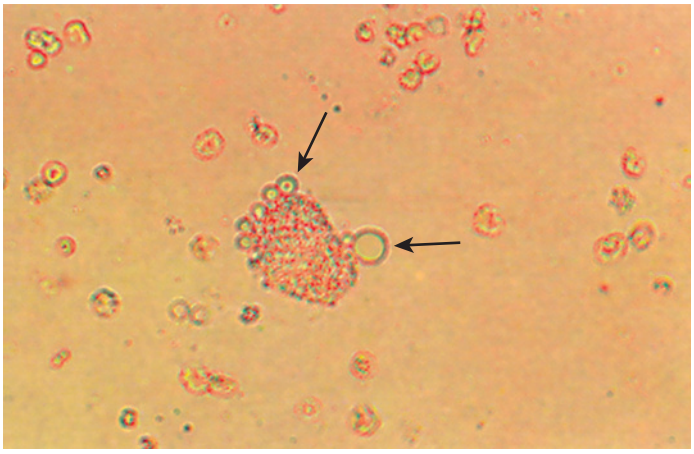


Figure 28-13 **Oval fat body with attached fat droplets.** Bright-field (×160).

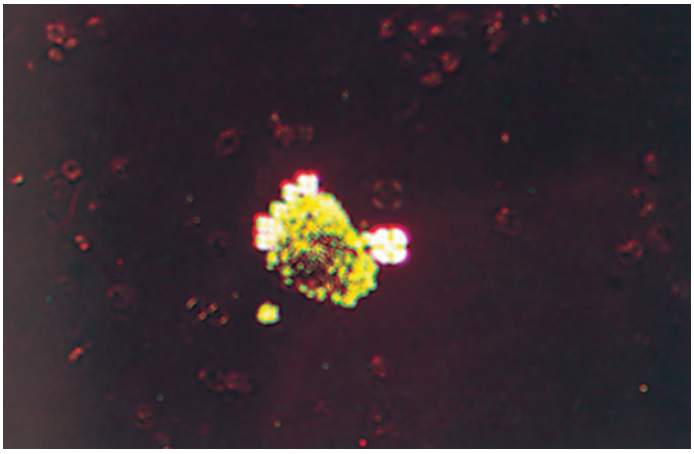


Figure 28-14 **Oval fat body with attached fat droplets.** Polarized (×160).

BOX 28-2

Classification of Casts

Matrix

Hyaline—variable size
Waxy—often broad in use

Inclusions

Granules—proteins, cell debris
Fat globules—triglycerides, cholesterol esters
Hemosiderin granules
Crystals—uncommon
Melanin granules—rare

Pigments

Hemoglobin, myoglobin, bilirubin, drugs

Cells

Erythrocytes and red blood cell remnants
Leukocytes—neutrophils, lymphocytes, monocytes, and histiocytes
Renal tubular epithelial cells
Mixed cells—erythrocytes, neutrophils, and renal tubular cells

Bacteria

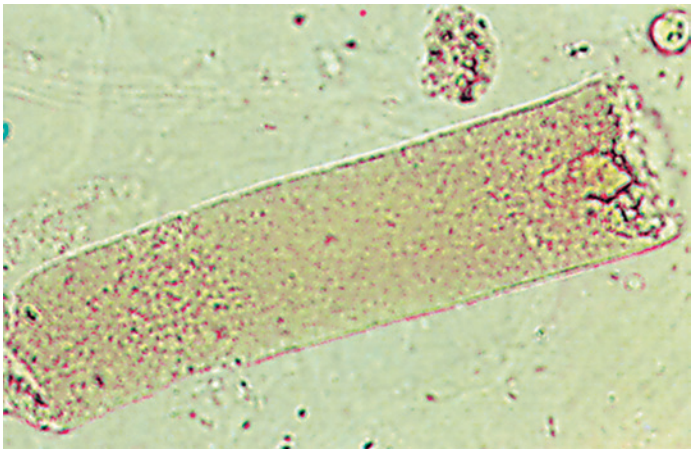


Figure 28-15 **Waxy cast (×200).**

the thick part of the ascending loop of Henle (and possibly the distal tubule), which constitutes about one third of the total urinary protein in normal individuals (Rampoldi et al, 2011; El-Achkar & Wu, 2012). It is generally held that Tamm-Horsfall protein forms the matrix of all casts. The protein forms a meshwork of fibrils that can potentially trap any elements present in the tubular filtrate, including cells, cell fragments, or granular material.

Casts can be quite variable in their appearance, size, shape, and stability. Perhaps this variability is one factor in the apparent low precision of cast identification in some laboratories (Yoo et al, 1995; Rasoulpour et al, 1996). The width of a cast depends on the size of the tubule in which it was formed. Broad casts are seen in dilated tubules or with stasis in collecting ducts. Thin casts occur in tubules compressed by swollen interstitial tissue or as the result of disintegration. Casts may be short and stubby, or long and convoluted. The latter variety appears when diuresis occurs after urinary stasis. Casts typically have parallel sides and blunt ends, but with age they may begin to disintegrate and show thinning and irregularities. Fibrils may separate, causing a frayed appearance. Tails and tapering ends can be seen, and these disintegrating forms are referred to as **cylindroids.**

In the normal person, very few casts are seen in the urinary sediment. In kidney diseases, they may appear in large numbers and in many forms. Increased numbers of casts usually indicate that kidney disease is widespread and that many nephrons are involved. Large numbers of casts may also be seen in healthy persons after strenuous exercise accompanied by proteinuria.

Cast formation increases with lower pH or increased ionic concentration and with stasis or obstruction of the nephron by cells or cell debris. It is increased when larger than normal quantities of plasma proteins enter the tubules. Usually the protein in excess is albumin, but globulins such as the Bence Jones immunoglobulin cause cast formation, as do hemoglobin and myoglobin. The plasma proteins possibly react or combine with Tamm-Horsfall protein to form less translucent casts and granular casts.

Casts may be classified according to their matrix, inclusions, pigments, and cells present, as shown in Box 28-2. A detailed discussion, including clinical significance, follows.

Cast Matrix

Hyaline casts. These are the most frequently observed casts, consisting almost entirely of Tamm-Horsfall protein; zero to two hyaline casts per low-power field (lpf) is considered normal. Hyaline casts are translucent with bright-field microscopy and pink with supravital staining, and are more easily visualized with phase-contrast microscopy (see Fig. 28-4, *A* and *B*). Increased numbers are seen with renal diseases and transiently with exercise, heat exposure, dehydration, fever, congestive heart failure, and diuretic therapy.

Waxy casts. With chronic renal diseases, some casts become denser in appearance and are known as waxy. These differ from hyaline casts in that they are easily visualized because of their high refractive index. Waxy casts are uncommon in glomerular diseases, with the reported exception of postinfectious glomerulonephritis and renal amyloidosis (Spinelli et al, 2013). With bright-field microscopy, waxy casts are homogeneously smooth in appearance with sharp margins, blunted ends, and cracks or convolutions frequently seen along the lateral margins, indicating a measure of brittleness (Fig. 28-15).

Waxy casts are commonly associated with tubular inflammation and degeneration. They are observed most frequently in patients with chronic renal failure and are found during acute and chronic renal allograft rejection. Early waxy casts are believed by some investigators to reflect the final phase of dissolution of the fine granules of granular casts (Fig. 28-16). Because time is required for granules to undergo lysis, waxy casts imply localized nephron obstruction and oliguria. When waxy casts are unusually broad, they are known as **renal failure casts.** These casts imply advanced tubular atrophy and/or dilation, in turn reflecting end-stage renal disease and extreme stasis of urine flow.

Figure 28-16 Fine granular cast becoming waxy (×200).

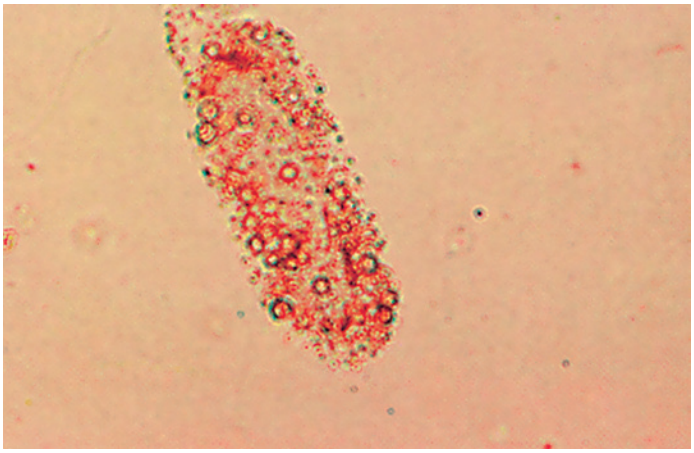


Figure 28-17 Erythrocyte cast (×200).

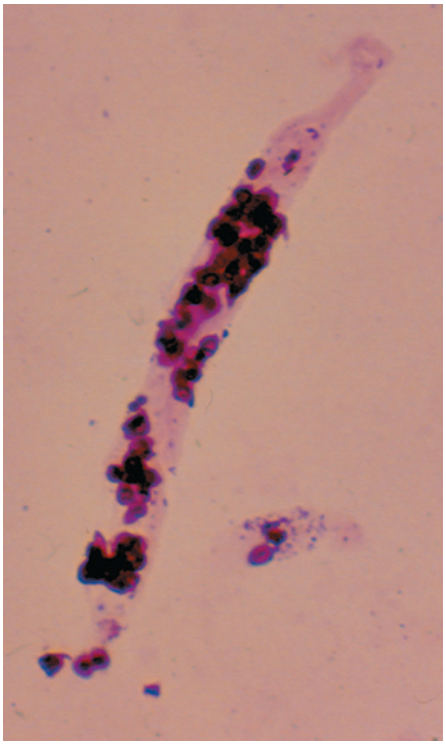


Figure 28-18 Leukocyte cast. IRIS urinalysis stain (×200).

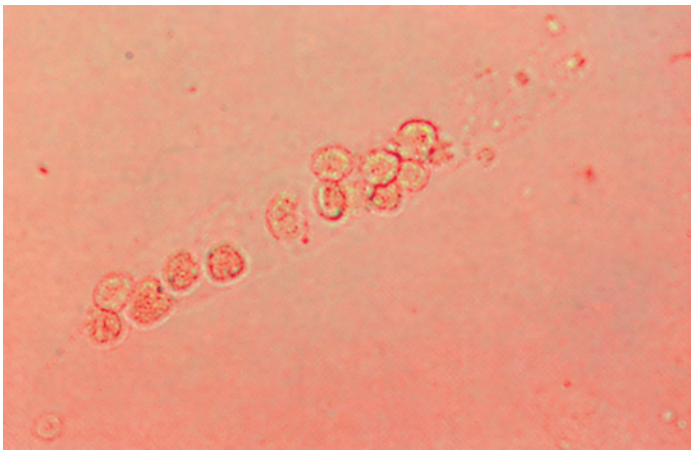


Figure 28-19 Cellular cast (×200).

Cellular Casts

Erythrocyte (red blood cell) casts. Finding these casts in the urine is significant because they are an indication of bleeding within the nephron. Glomerular damage allows erythrocytes to escape into the tubule; if there is concomitant proteinuria, and if conditions are optimal for cast formation, red blood cell casts form in the distal nephron. In urine, these casts appear yellow under low-power objectives. A prerequisite for the identification of an erythrocyte cast is that red blood cell outlines should be sharply defined in at least part of the cast (Fig. 28-17). The amount of matrix material that may be visible ranges from scant to a prominent delicate hyaline matrix with only one or two visible red blood cells. These casts are better visualized with phase-contrast microscopy or with supravital staining, in which case the erythrocytes are colorless or lavender in a pink matrix. With prolonged stasis, red cell casts may degenerate and appear in the urine as reddish brown, coarsely granular hemoglobin (blood) casts.

Pathologic disorders in which erythrocyte casts appear in the sediment include many acute glomerulonephritides, IgA nephropathy, lupus nephritis, subacute bacterial endocarditis, and renal infarction. Rarely, tubulointerstitial disease may allow transtubular entry of erythrocytes with subsequent incorporation into a cast. This may occur in severe pyelonephritis. Additionally, the appearance of erythrocyte and leukocyte casts has been found to coincide with renal relapse in patients with SLE (Hebert et al, 1995).

Leukocyte (WBC) casts. WBC casts are refractile and exhibit granules; frequently, multilobated nuclei will be visible (Fig. 28-18), unless disintegration has begun. Phase-contrast microscopy may be helpful in delineating nuclear segmentation. Supravital stains also enhance visualization.

Leukocytes usually enter tubular lumina from the interstitium, and for the most part, leukocyte casts (Fig. 28-19) reflect tubulointerstitial disease with neutrophilic exudates and interstitial inflammation. The most common disease of this category is pyelonephritis. Leukocyte casts may be present in glomerular disease owing to the chemotactic effect of complement. They are also seen in interstitial nephritis, lupus nephritis, and even the nephrotic syndrome.

Renal tubular epithelial cell casts. Renal tubular epithelial cell casts may be difficult to distinguish from leukocyte casts, particularly in unstained preparations viewed with bright-field microscopy. Supravital staining, phase-contrast microscopy, and Papanicolaou staining (see Figs. 28-19 and 28-20) are helpful in delineating between these two cast types. The most reliable distinguishing characteristic of renal tubular cells is their singular round nuclei.

Renal tubular epithelial cell casts are seen in urine with acute tubular necrosis, viral disease (e.g., cytomegalovirus disease), or exposure to a variety of drugs. Heavy metal poisoning and ethylene glycol and salicylate intoxication may cause tubular cells and casts to appear in the urine. In transplant units, these cells and casts constitute some of the more reliable criteria for detecting acute allograft rejection after the third postoperative day.

Mixed cellular casts. Not infrequently, two distinct cell types may be present within a single cast. This has been referred to as a **mixed cast,** and examples might include leukocyte/renal, erythrocyte/leukocyte, and eosinophil/renal (Fig. 28-21). When cell types cannot be established with certainty, the resulting cast is known as a **cellular cast** (Fig. 28-22). Some

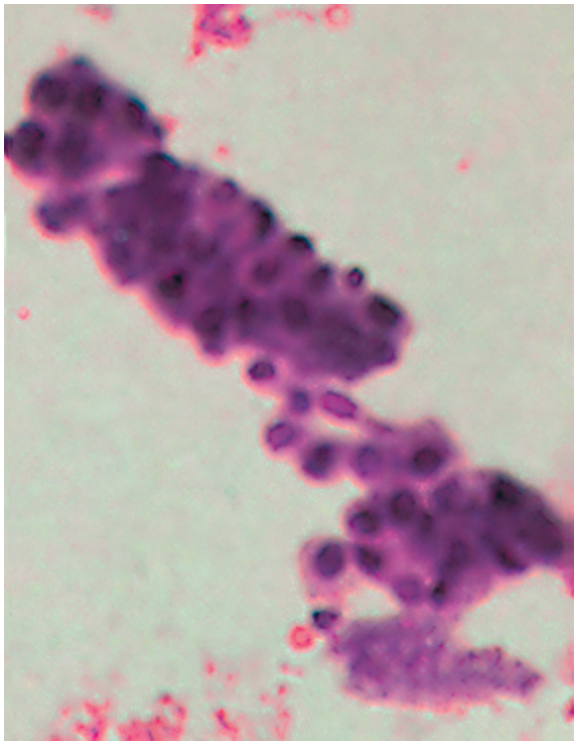


Figure 28-20 **Renal tubular epithelial cell cast.** Papanicolaou stained (×430).

Figure 28-21 **Mixed (leukocyte and renal epithelial tubular cell) cast (×200).**

inferences as to cell type may be drawn from the dominant population of free cells in the surrounding sediment.

Inclusion Casts

Granular casts. Granular casts are fairly common and may appear in both pathologic and nonpathologic conditions (Fig. 28-23). Granules may be small or large and may originate from plasma protein aggregates that pass into the tubules from damaged glomeruli, as well as from cellular remnants of leukocytes, erythrocytes, or damaged renal tubular cells. Fine salt precipitates and lysosomes may also be granular components. Protein aggregates include fibrinogen, immune complexes, and globulins. With

Figure 28-22 **Cellular cast (×200).**

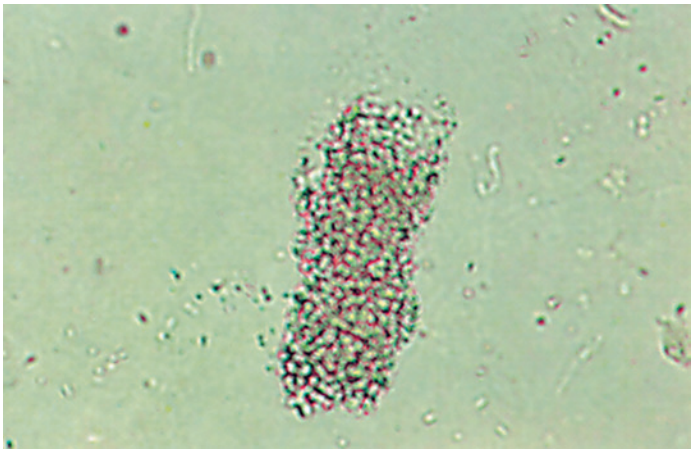


Figure 28-23 **Granular cast (×200).**

prolonged stasis, large granules in casts may become smaller, and there appears to be no advantage to separating types of granular casts.

Granular casts appear with glomerular and tubular diseases but are also a feature of tubulointerstitial disease and renal allograft rejection. They may accompany pyelonephritis, viral infections, and chronic lead poisoning. Coarsely granular casts occur, with hematuria, in cases of renal papillary necrosis. It is possible that some fine granules represent calcium phosphate precipitants in hyperparathyroidism. Granular casts may also be seen following periods of extreme stress or strenuous exercise.

Fatty casts. Fatty material is incorporated into the cast matrix from lipid-laden renal tubular cells. These are commonly seen when heavy proteinuria is present and are a feature of nephrotic syndrome and nonproliferative glomerular diseases (Fogazzi et al, 2005) (Figs. 28-24 and 28-25).

Crystal casts. Casts containing urates, calcium oxalate, and sulfonamides (sulfamethoxazole) are occasionally seen. A matrix is visible in a true crystal cast, and the crystals may polarize. These casts indicate deposition of crystals in the tubule or collecting duct. Hematuria, possibly related to tubular damage, regularly accompanies crystal casts. These casts should be carefully distinguished from clumps of crystals forming at room or refrigerator temperatures.

Pigmented Casts

Hemoglobin (blood) casts. Hemoglobin casts typically appear yellow to red, although sometimes the color is pale (Fig. 28-26). Most often, hemoglobin casts, also known as *blood casts*, are seen with erythrocyte casts and glomerular disease. Less commonly, they are seen with tubular bleeding and rarely with hemoglobinuria.

Hemosiderin casts. Hemosiderin granules in casts derive from pigment-laden renal tubular cells.

Myoglobin casts. These casts are red-brown in color and occur with myoglobinuria following acute muscle damage. They may be associated with acute renal failure.

Bilirubin and other drug casts. Bilirubin is seen in urine when obstructive jaundice is present, and will color casts a deep yellow brown. Drugs

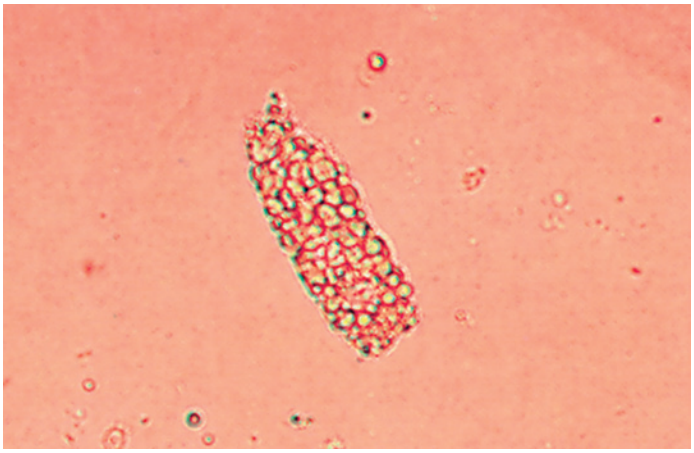


Figure 28-24 **Fatty cast.** Bright-field, nonpolarized (×160).

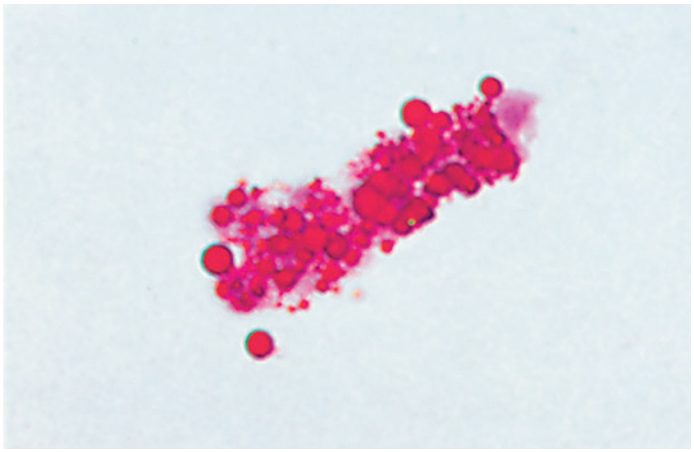


Figure 28-25 **Fatty cast.** Positive Oil Red O (×200).

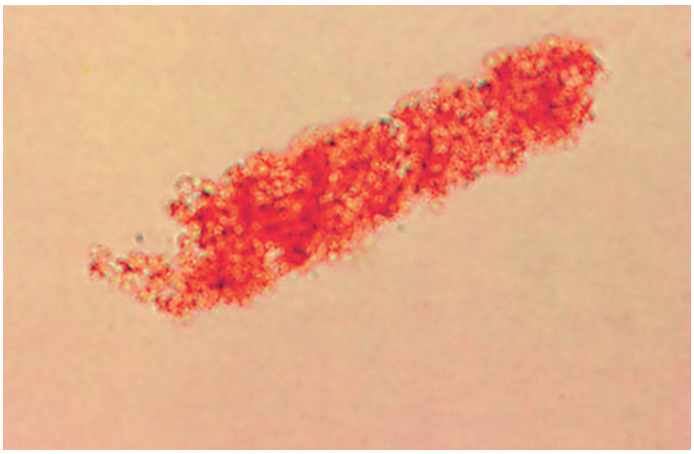


Figure 28-26 **Hemoglobin cast (×200).**

such as phenazopyridine cause a bright yellow to orange color in acid urine and color casts and cells as well.

Broad Casts. Broad casts are defined as those with a diameter two to six times that of normal casts. They indicate tubular dilation and/or stasis in the distal collecting duct. All types of casts may occur in broad forms, and they are typically seen in individuals with chronic renal failure. They portend a poor prognosis.

Other Miscellaneous Casts or Castlike Structures. Bacteria may become embedded in cast matrices; on supravital staining, they appear dark purple with a pale pink matrix. Mucous threads are commonly confused with casts. However, these are larger, long, and ribbonlike, with poorly defined edges and pointed or split ends, in contradistinction to casts, which tend to have well-defined edges and blunt ends.

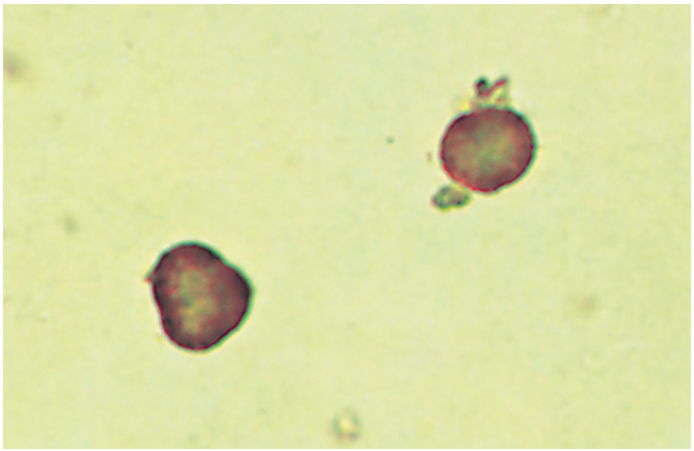


Figure 28-27 **Acid urates (×160).**

Telescoped Sediment

This term is used to describe the simultaneous occurrence of elements of glomerulonephritis and those of nephrotic syndrome in the same urine specimen. A telescoped sediment might therefore include red blood cells, red blood cell casts, cellular casts, broad waxy casts, lipid droplets, oval fat bodies, and fatty casts. Such sediment may be found in collagen vascular disease (notably lupus nephritis) and subacute bacterial endocarditis.

Crystals

Crystals form by the precipitation of urinary salts when alterations in multiple factors affect their solubilities (Verdesca et al, 2011). These include changes in pH, temperature, and concentration. Precipitates can appear in the urine in the form of true crystals or amorphous material. Most crystal formation takes place in refrigerated specimens and those allowed to sit at room temperature for several hours. Increased solute concentration is typically responsible for crystal formation.

Although most crystals in the urine are of limited clinical significance, proper identification is essential, so as not to miss the relatively few abnormal crystals that are associated with various pathologic conditions. Knowledge of urine pH is a valuable aid in crystal identification because it is the pH that determines which chemical will precipitate. Many of the commonly seen crystals have characteristic morphologies; however, variability does exist, sometimes leading to confusion between pathologic and nonpathologic crystal structures. For the purpose of separating abnormal from more commonly occurring **nuisance crystals,** a summary of crystal morphology is presented (Table 28-10).

Crystals Found in Normal Acid Urine

Amorphous urates (calcium, magnesium, sodium, and potassium urates). Amorphous urates will precipitate upon standing in concentrated urine of a slightly acid pH. When large quantities are present, the urine sediment may appear pink-orange to reddish brown on macroscopic examination; this appearance has been referred to as **brick dust.** Microscopically, this amorphous material appears as yellow-brown small granules that can form clumps and adhere to fibers and mucous threads. Amorphous urates will convert to uric acid crystals with acidification with acetic acid, and will dissolve with heat (60° C) and with dilute alkali.

Crystalline urates (sodium, potassium, and ammonium). These biurates and acid urates form small brown spheres (Fig. 28-27) or colorless needles in slightly acid urine. The spheres may cluster in pairs and triplets. Similar to amorphous urates, these crystalline forms will slowly revert to uric acid plates on acidification with acetic acid.

Crystalline uric acid. Uric acid crystals occur at low pH (5 to 5.5) and are seen in a variety of shapes, including rhombic or four-sided flat plates, prisms, oval forms with pointed ends (lemon-shaped), wedges, rosettes, and irregular plates (Figs. 28-28 and 28-29). Most are colored, typically yellow or reddish brown. Rarely, they are colorless and hexagonal, resembling cystine (Fig. 28-30). Unlike cystine, they show birefringence with polarized light (Fig. 28-31).

Large numbers of uric acid crystals and urates may reflect increased nucleoprotein turnover, especially during chemotherapy of leukemia or lymphoma. Increased quantities may be seen with Lesch-Nyhan syndrome and may provide circumstantial evidence of the nature of small stones lodged in the ureters, especially when radiolucent and found in

TABLE 28-10

Characteristics of Amorphous and Crystalline Urinary Sediments

Substance	Description	URINE PH WHERE FOUND			Solubility Characteristics and Comments
		Acid	Neutral	Alkaline	
Ampicillin	Uncommon—from high dose; colorless; long prisms that form clusters, sheaves	+	–	–	
Bilirubin	Reddish brown; amorphous needles, rhombic plates, or cubes; may color uric acid crystals	+	–	–	Soluble in alkali, acid, acetone, and chloroform
Cholesterol	Rare; colorless; flat plate with corner notch; accompanies fatty casts and oval fat bodies	+	+	–	Very soluble in chloroform, ether, and hot alcohol
Calcium carbonate	Colorless; small granules in pairs, fours; spheres; rarely needles	–	+	+	Soluble in acetic acid with effervescence
Calcium oxalate	Dihydrate—common; colorless; small refractile octahedron Monohydrate—uncommon; dumbbell and ovoid rectangle	+	+	–	Soluble in dilute HCl
Cystine	Colorless; hexagonal plates, often laminated; rapidly destroyed by bacteria; may be confused with uric acid, but cystine is soluble in dilute hydrochloric acid	+	–	–	Soluble in alkali (especially ammonia) and dilute HCl; insoluble in boiling water, acetic acid, alcohol, ether; apply cyanide-nitroprusside reaction
Hematin	Small, biconvex "whetstone" seen with hemoglobinuria	+	–	–	
Hemosiderin	Golden brown; granules in clumps, in cells, casts	+	+	–	Blue with Prussian blue
Hippuric acid	Rare; colorless, needles, rhombic plates and four-sided prisms; distinguish from phosphates	+	+	+	Soluble with hot water and alkali; insoluble in acetic acid
Indigotin	Rare; blue; amorphous or small crystals; colors other crystals	+	+	+	Very soluble in chloroform; soluble in ether; insoluble in acetone
Phosphates					
Amorphous phosphate (magnesium, calcium)	Colorless; fine, granular precipitate	–	+	+	Insoluble with heat; soluble with acetic acid, dilute HCl
Calcium hydrogen phosphate	Less common; colorless, star-shaped or long, thin prisms or needles; form rosettes	sl	+	sl	Slightly soluble in dilute acetic acid, soluble in dilute HCl
Triple phosphate (ammonium, magnesium)	Common form: colorless; three- to six-sided prisms, "coffin lids" Less often: Flat, fern leaf form, sheets, flakes	–	+	+	Soluble in dilute acetic acid
Radiographic media (meglumine diatrizoate)	Intravenous: Colorless; thin, rhombic plates, some with notch, resemble cholesterol plates; elongated crystals Retrograde: Colorless; long, pointed crystals	+	–	–	Soluble in 10% NaOH: Insoluble in ether and chloroform; high specific gravity in urine: polarizes with interference colors
Sulfonamides					
Acetylsulfadiazine	Wheat sheaves with eccentric binding	+	–	–	
Acetylsulfamethoxazole	Brown; dense spheres or irregular divided spheres	+	–	–	
Sulfadiazine	Brown; dense globules	+	–	–	Soluble in acetone
Tyrosine	Rare; colorless or yellow, appears black with focusing; fine silky needles in sheaves or rosettes	+	–	–	Soluble in alkali, dilute mineral acid, relatively heat soluble; insoluble in alcohol, ether
Urates					
Amorphous (calcium, magnesium, sodium, potassium)	Common; colorless to yellow-brown; amorphous, granular precipitate	+	+	–	Soluble in dilute alkali; soluble at 60° C or lower; change to uric acid crystal with concentrated HCl or acetic acid
Monosodium urate	Colorless; needles or amorphous precipitate	+	–	–	
Urates (sodium, potassium, ammonium)	Brown; small, spherical; clusters resemble biurates	sl	+	–	Soluble at 60° C; change to uric acid with glacial acetic acid
Ammonium biurate	Common in "old" urine; dark yellow or brown; spheres or "thorn apples" (spheres with horns)	–	+	+	Soluble at 60° C with acetic acid; soluble strong alkali; change to uric acid with concentrated hydrochloric or acetic acid
Uric acid	Common; yellow, red-brown, brown; large variety of shapes—rhombic, four-sided plates, rosettes, "whetstones" lemon shapes; rarely, colorless hexagonals	+	–	–	Soluble in alkali: Insoluble in alcohol and acids; polarizes with interference colors
Xanthine	Rare; colorless; small, rhombic plates	+	+	–	Soluble in alkali; soluble with heat; insoluble in acetic acid

sl, Slight.

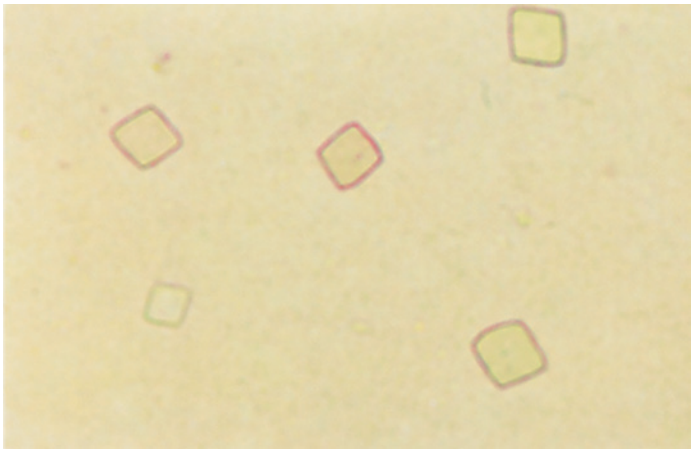


Figure 28-28 Uric acid crystals (×160).

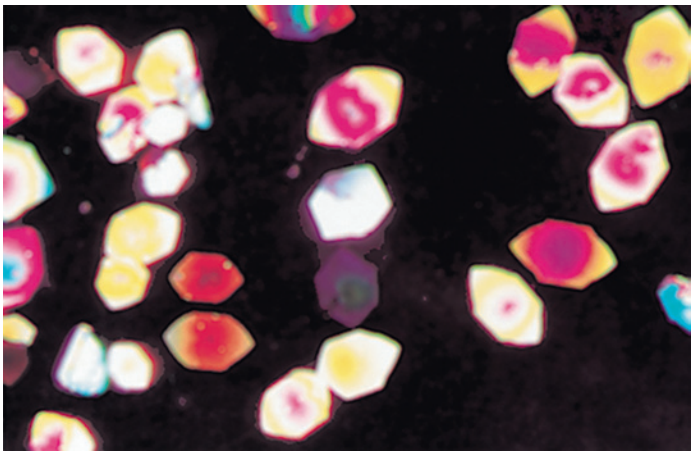


Figure 28-31 Hexagonal uric acid crystals. Polarized (×50).

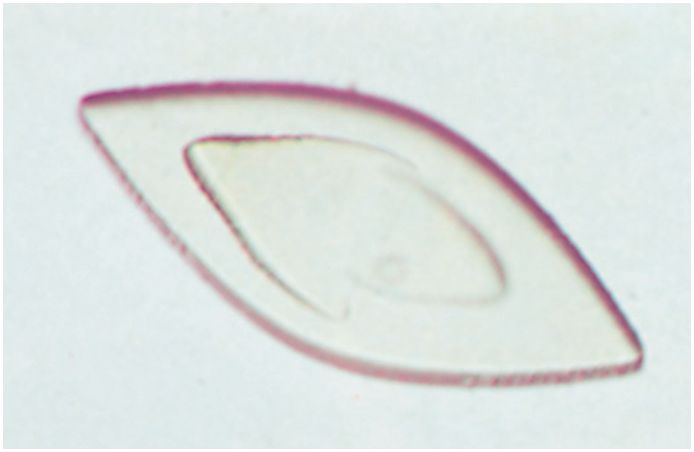


Figure 28-29 Large uric acid plate, laminated (×160).

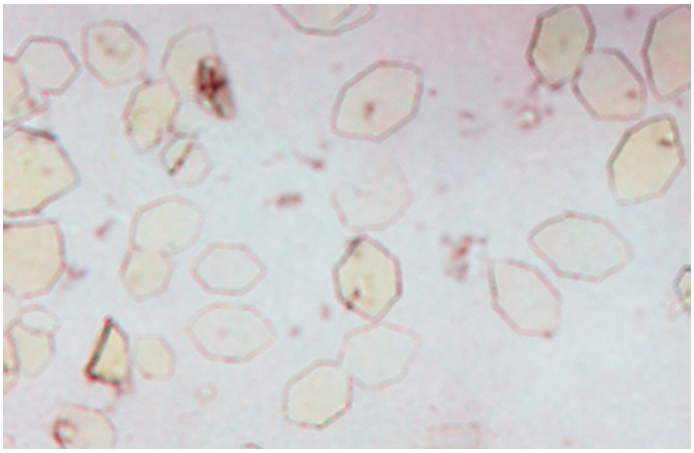


Figure 28-30 Hexagonal uric acid crystals. Bright-field (×50).

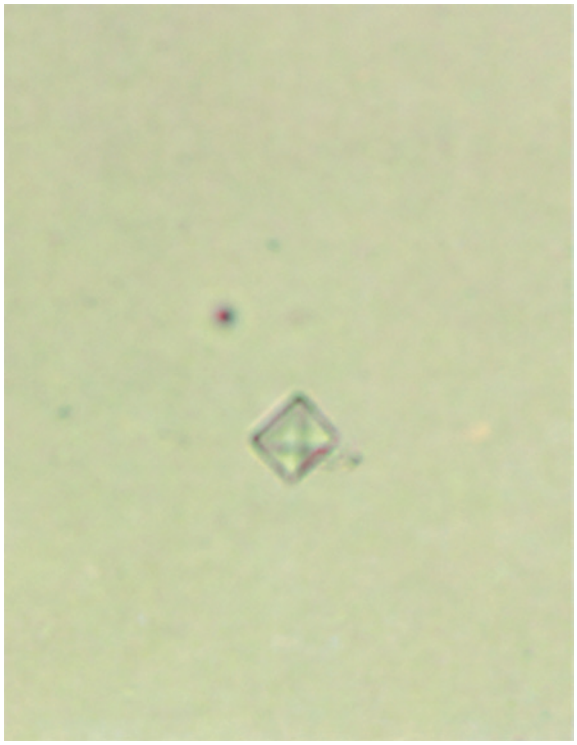


Figure 28-32 Calcium oxalate crystals (×200).

conjunction with raised serum uric acid levels. They may also herald the urate nephropathy of gout.

Calcium oxalates. Dihydrates may appear at pH 6 or in neutral urine. Their classic form is that of a small, colorless octahedron that resembles an envelope (Fig. 28-32). Dumbbell shapes and ovoid forms may occur (Fig. 28-33). Longer forms occur in calcium oxalate monohydrate. Oxalate crystals are insoluble in acetic acid.

Oxalate crystals in large numbers may reflect severe chronic renal disease or ethylene glycol or methoxyflurane toxicity. Oxaluria has come into prominence as a reflection of the increased absorption of oxalates from food following small bowel disease and resection, notably for Crohn's disease. Oxaluria may also be present in genetically susceptible persons following large doses of ascorbic acid.

Crystals Found in Normal Alkaline Urine

Amorphous phosphates (calcium and magnesium). Similar to amorphous urates, amorphous phosphates have a granular appearance microscopically; unlike the former, they tend to be colorless and will produce a fine or lacy white precipitate macroscopically. Clumps or masses can often be seen by light microscopy (Fig. 28-34). Large amounts of this material may precipitate out upon prolonged standing at room temperature or in a refrigerator.

Calcium and magnesium monohydrogen phosphates are the least soluble in alkaline urine, although the dihydrogen phosphates may be soluble at a similar pH. Phosphates, in general, will dissolve in acids such as dilute hydrochloric and nitric acids and vary in solubility in acetic acid. They do not dissolve in dilute sodium hydroxide solutions or alcohol.

Crystalline phosphates. Triple phosphate (ammonium magnesium phosphate) crystals are one of the most easily identified urine crystals, although they commonly show variation in size. They are colorless, three- to six-sided prisms with oblique ends referred to as **coffin lids** (Fig. 28-35). They may form colorless sheets or flakes (Fig. 28-36). Magnesium phosphate forms colorless rhomboids, some with notched ends or corners.

Figure 28-33 **Calcium oxalate.** Unusual oval form (×200).

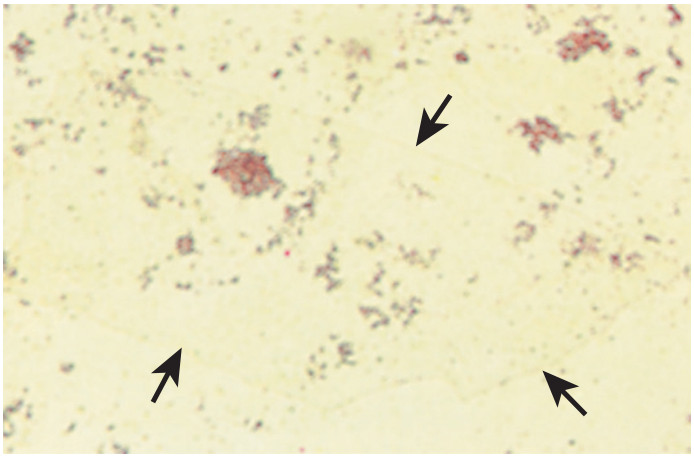


Figure 28-34 **Calcium phosphate (large clear plate).** Almost amorphous phosphates (×64).

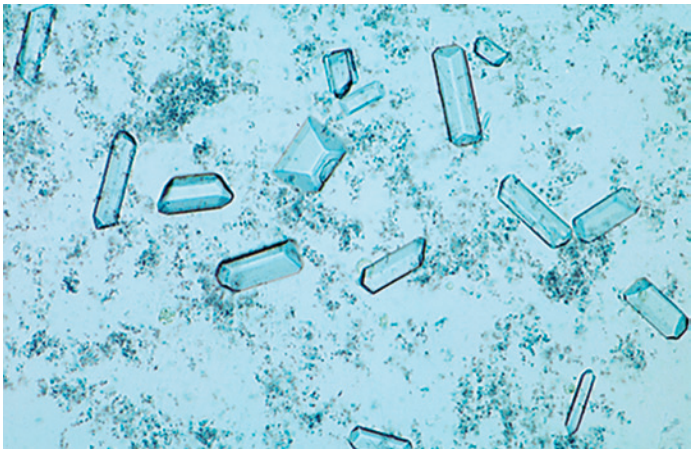


Figure 28-35 **Triple phosphate (×50).**

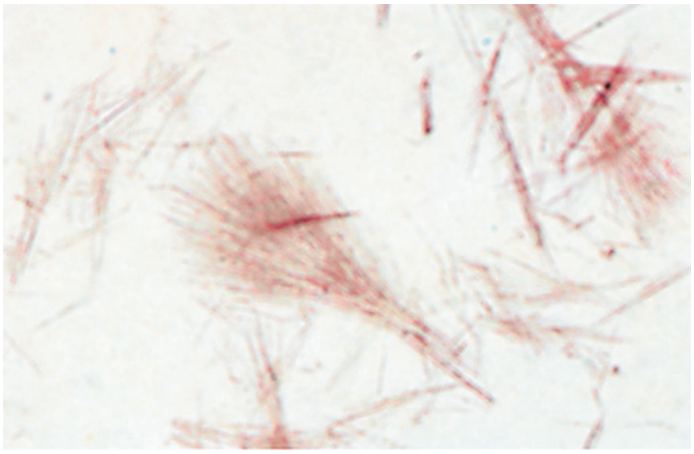


Figure 28-36 **Calcium phosphate (fine sheaves) (×160).**

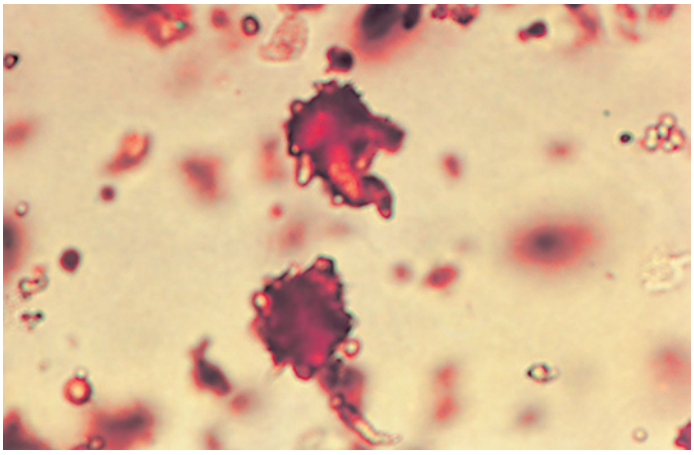


Figure 28-37 **Ammonium biurate (×160).**

These are seldom recognized. Dicalcium hydrogen phosphate crystals, on the other hand, may be seen in neutral or slightly acidic urine, and are long, three-sided prisms with pointed ends. They may form clusters or rosettes. Overall, phosphate crystals have little if any clinical significance. They are often seen in infected urine of alkaline pH.

Calcium carbonate. These uncommon crystals are small and colorless, with dumbbell or spherical shapes. They may form pairs, fours, or clumps. They are distinguished from other crystals/amorphous material by their production of carbon dioxide in the presence of acetic acid.

Ammonium biurate. Similar to typical urate crystals, ammonium biurate crystals have a yellow-brown color and appear as spheres with radial or concentric striations and irregular projections or thorns (Fig. 28-37). Referred to as **thorn apples,** they may also be seen in neutral and occasionally in slightly acid urine. They dissolve with heat at 60° C and with acetic acid, reappearing as typical uric acid crystals after about 20 minutes.

Crystals Found in Abnormal Urine

Cystine. Cystine crystals are colorless, refractile, hexagonal plates (Fig. 28-38), which appear in acid urine. They are soluble in water at pH less than 2 or greater than 8, and they may be confused with hexagonal forms of uric acid (see Fig. 28-30). Whereas uric acid crystals polarize (see Fig. 28-31), thin cystine crystals do not, although thick laminated forms may polarize. Furthermore, both cystine and uric acid are soluble in ammonia water, but cystine will also dissolve in dilute hydrochloric acid, and uric acid will not.

Cystine crystals are among the most important crystals identified in urine sediment. They occur in patients with cystinuria and may be associated with cystine calculi (Saravakos et al, 2014; Thomas et al, 2014). Confirmatory testing consists of the cyanide-nitroprusside reaction (see the Cystinuria section later in the chapter).

Tyrosine. In acidic urine, tyrosine forms fine silky needles that may be arranged in sheaves or clumps, especially after refrigeration. These may be colorless or yellow, appearing black as the microscope is focused

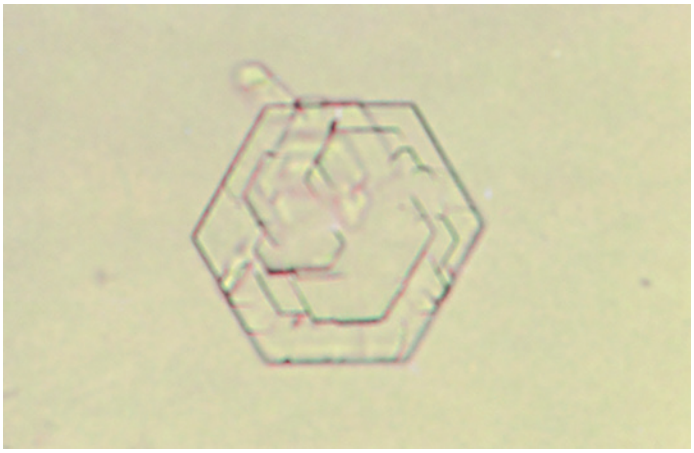


Figure 28-38 Cystine (hexagonal, laminated) (×200).

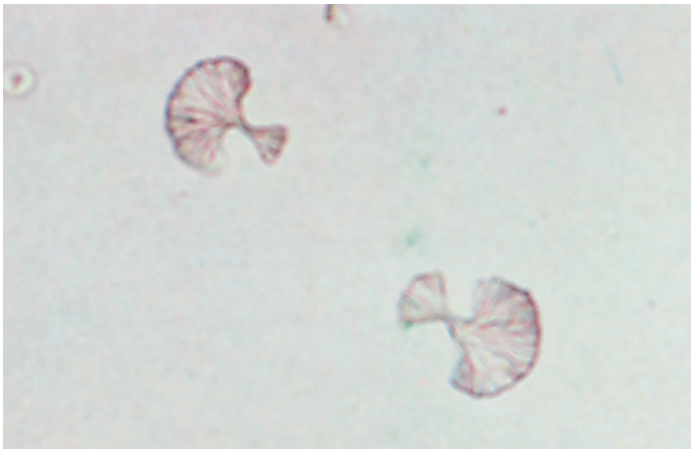


Figure 28-41 Sulfadiazine (×160).

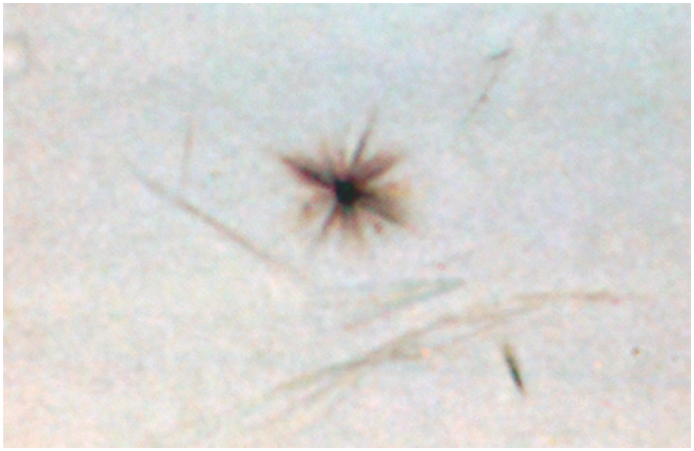


Figure 28-39 Tyrosine crystals (×160).

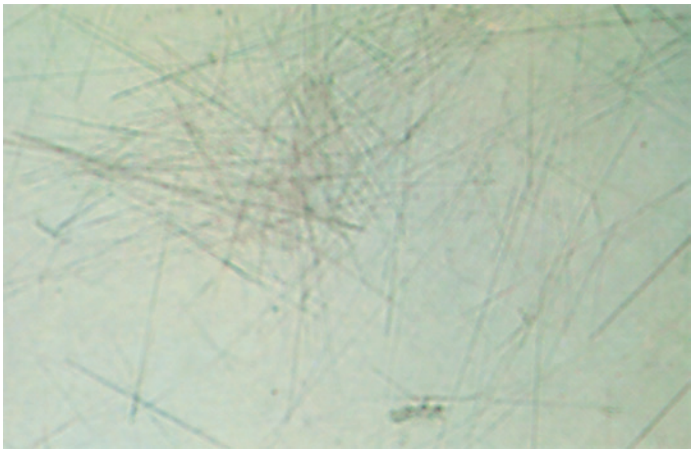


Figure 28-42 Ampicillin (×160).

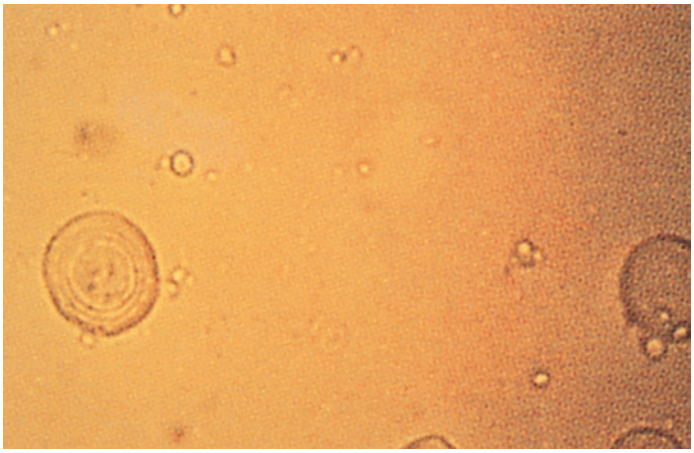


Figure 28-40 Leucine crystals (×160).

(Fig. 28-39). They are soluble in alkali (ammonia and potassium hydroxide) and in dilute hydrochloric acid; they are not soluble in alcohol or ether.

These crystals, which are uncommon, are less soluble than leucine, and therefore are more often precipitated in urine (see the Tyrosinuria section later in the chapter). Tyrosine and leucine crystals are occasionally seen in the urine of patients with severe liver disease (see the Urinary Screening for Inherited Metabolic Diseases section later in the chapter).

Leucine. These crystals are also rare, occurring as yellow, oily-appearing spheres with radial and concentric striations (Fig. 28-40). They are soluble in both acids and alkalis. Leucine and tyrosine crystals may occur together; leucine may be precipitated with tyrosine crystals if alcohol is added to the urine.

Sulfonamide (sulfadiazine) crystals. These crystals may be seen in urine of acid pH and may take on various morphologies, depending on the form of drug involved. They may be seen as yellow-brown sheaves of wheat with central bindings, striated sheaves with eccentric bindings (Fig. 28-41), rosettes, arrowheads, petals, needles, and round forms with radial striations. They are occasionally colorless. Confirmatory testing is by the diazo reaction. High-performance liquid chromatographic and colorimetric methods have also been described (Simo-Alfonso et al, 1995; Mount et al, 1996).

With the advent of soluble sulfonamides, sulfa crystals are not as frequently found in urine, especially when urine is examined at 37° C. Before this development, these crystals could be seen in the urine of patients on sulfonamide therapy who were inadequately hydrated. This could result in renal tubular damage if crystal formation occurred within the nephron. Currently, sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim, Septra) is seen with some regularity.

Ampicillin (high dosage). Ampicillin may crystallize in the urine under conditions of high dosage. These crystals appear in urine of acid pH as long, fine, colorless structures (Fig. 28-42). They may form coarse sheaves after refrigeration.

Radiographic media (meglumine diatrizoate). Urinary crystals form after radiographic examinations using diatrizoate dyes. They may be found in urine of acid pH shortly after intravenous radiographic studies (particularly if the patient has not been well hydrated), appearing as flat, clear, colorless, notched rhombic plates, or longer, slender rectangles. They are easily polarized, showing interference colors (Figs. 28-43 and 28-44). They may also be seen after retrograde cystograms as long, colorless needles, forming clusters after refrigeration. The presence of radiographic crystals should correlate with a high specific gravity (>1.040).

Other drugs. One must always remember to check the patient's drug therapy when unusual crystals are found in the urine. Several drugs have been reported to cause crystalluria when administered in high-dosage schedules or following overdose. Examples include high-dosage

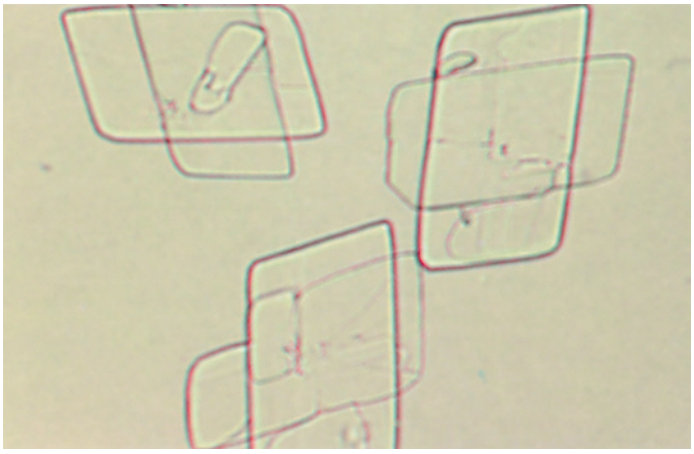


Figure 28-43 **Renografin (meglumine diatrizoate).** Bright-field (×160).

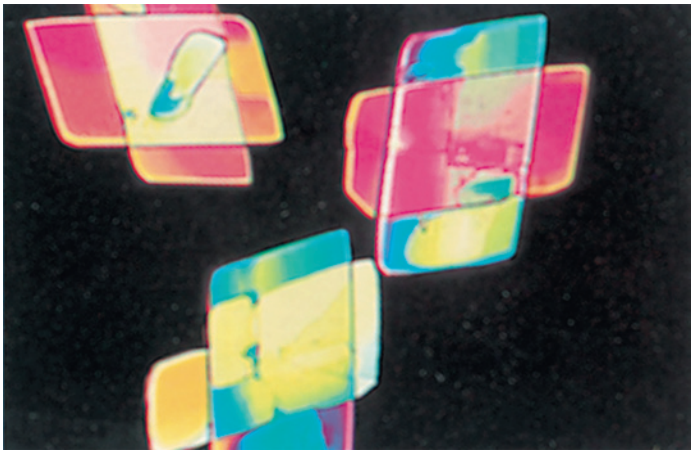


Figure 28-44 **Renografin (meglumine diatrizoate).** Polarized (×160).

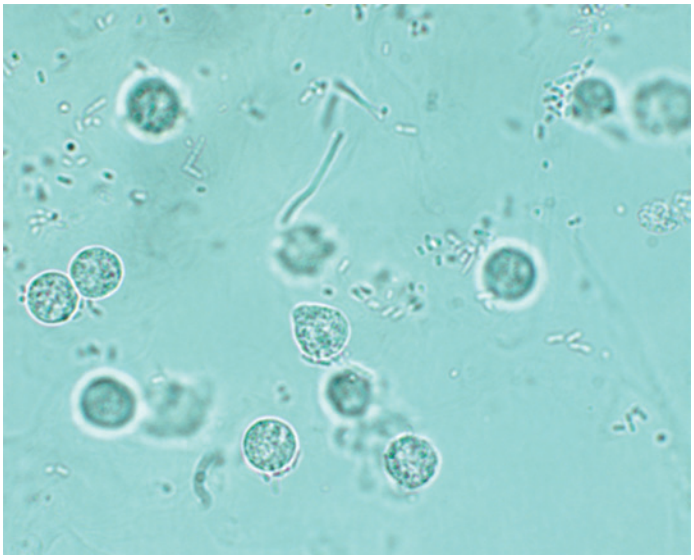


Figure 28-45 **Bacteria and leukocytes (×600).**

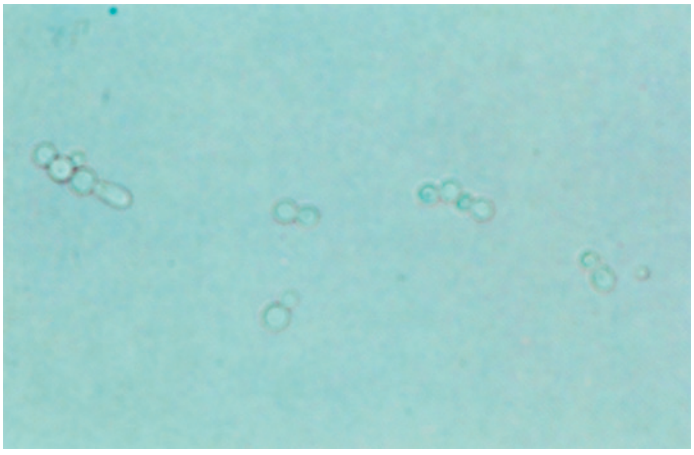


Figure 28-46 *Candida.* Budding yeasts (×200).

6-mercaptopurine therapy, primidone overdosage, and dihydroxyadenine from massive blood transfusion.

Abnormal Cells and Other Formed Elements

Tumor Cells. Malignant tumor cells exfoliated from the renal pelvis, ureter, bladder wall, and urethra are best identified using cytologic techniques. Myeloma cells have also been noted in urine, both with and without apparent renal involvement. For a comprehensive discussion of disease types and cytologic morphologies, the reader is directed to standard urinary cytology references (Ali et al, 2009; Brimo et al, 2009; Koss & Hoda, 2012).

Viral Inclusion Cells. Epithelial cells containing inclusion bodies may be found in the urine sediment in various viral infections involving the urinary tract. Syncytial giant cells containing eosinophilic, intranuclear inclusions are seen in patients during herpetic infections. In children or immunosuppressed patients with cytomegalovirus infection, affected cells are enlarged and contain basophilic intranuclear inclusions and/or cytoplasmic bodies. Polyomavirus (e.g., BK virus)-infected cells contain dense, basophilic, homogeneous intranuclear inclusions that often completely fill the nucleus. Cytologic techniques are far more sensitive in detecting all of the aforementioned viral cytopathic effects.

Platelets. These have been demonstrated in urine. Up to 30,000/μL have been demonstrated by phase-contrast microscopy and confirmed by electron microscopy in the urine of patients with hemolytic-uremic syndrome.

Bacteria. Finding bacteria in urine may or may not be significant, depending on the method of urine collection and how soon after collection of the specimen the examination takes place. If bacteria are identified with Gram stain in an uncentrifuged urine specimen under an oil-immersion lens, this suggests that more than 100,000 organisms/mL are present (i.e., significant bacteriuria). Most commonly, rod-shaped bacteria are seen because the enteric organisms are the causative agents in the majority of urinary tract infections (Fig. 28-45). Leukocytes will usually be seen in the sediment as well.

Acid-fast bacilli may be seen in urine sediment, but because the urethral flora may contain nonpathogenic acid-fast organisms, the presence of tuberculosis in urine must be substantiated by culture and/or polymerase chain reaction methods.

Fungi. Yeasts (most commonly *Candida* species) may be causative agents in urinary tract infection (e.g., in diabetes mellitus), but yeasts are also common contaminants from the skin, the female genital tract, and the air. On microscopic examination, they may be confused with erythrocytes; the presence of budding helps to identify them as yeast cells (Fig. 28-46). Pseudohyphae of *Candida* are occasionally found (Fig. 28-47).

Parasites. Parasites and parasitic ova may be seen in urine sediments as a result of fecal or vaginal contamination. When noted, repeat examination should be performed on a fresh, clean-voided urine specimen. Although *Trichomonas vaginalis* may be present in urine as a result of vaginal contamination, urethral or bladder infection can occur; when suspected, the protozoa should be searched for immediately in a wet preparation of the sediment. Motility of the organism is helpful in making the appropriate identification. In patients with schistosomiasis due to *Schistosoma haematobium*, typical ova are shed directly into the urine accompanied by erythrocytes from the urinary bladder. Amebas are rarely seen in the urine; they may reach the bladder from lymphatics or more likely from fecal contamination of the urethra. The pathogenic *Entamoeba histolytica* is usually accompanied by erythrocytes and leukocytes.

Contaminants and Artifacts

Partially digested muscle fibers or vegetable cells may be found when fecal contamination occurs (Fig. 28-48). Spermatozoa are occasionally present,

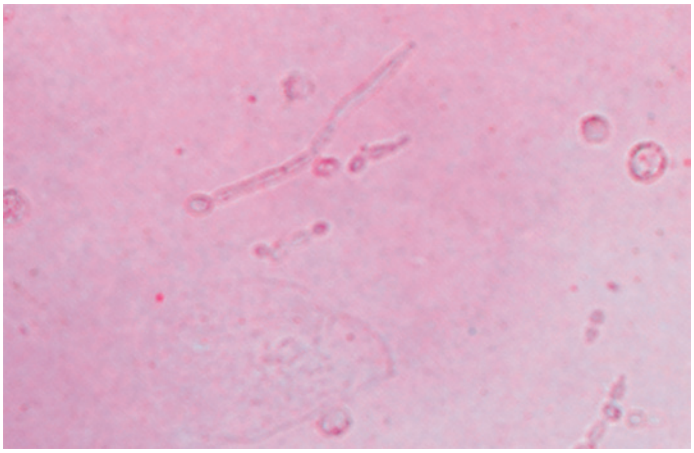


Figure 28-47 *Candida.* Pseudohyphae (×160).

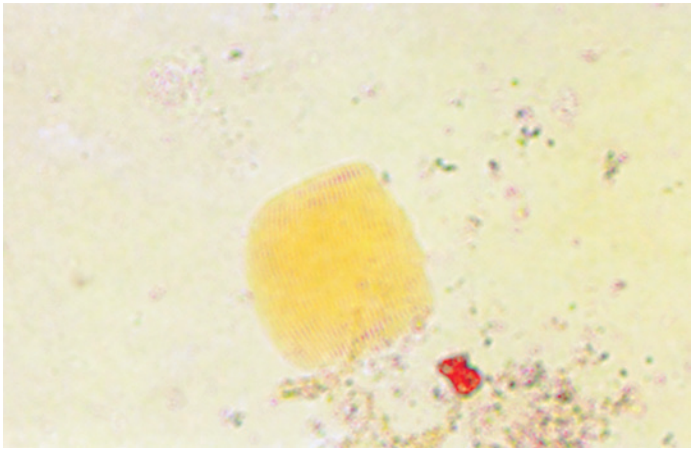


Figure 28-48 Muscle fiber (×200).

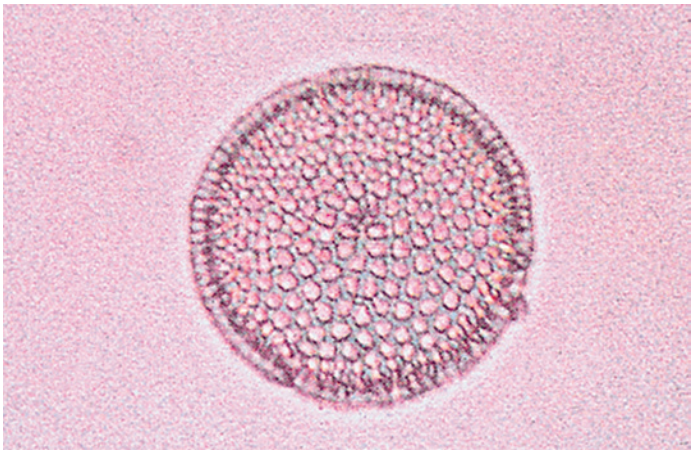


Figure 28-49 Pollen grain (×160).

and pollen grains contaminate specimens seasonally (Fig. 28-49). Fibers from many different sources may be seen, including cotton, hair, wood fibers from applicator sticks, and synthetic fibers from disposable diapers. Unlike casts, these fibers polarize brightly.

Starch granules from surgical gloves are the most common contaminants of urine and other body fluids. Microscopically, they appear bright and faintly striated with an irregular outline and a central depression (Fig. 28-50). With crossed polarizing filters, starch granules exhibit a typical Maltese cross pattern, and because of their large size (several times larger than an erythrocyte), they are not likely to be confused with cholesterol droplets. Oil droplets from catheter lubricants may be confused

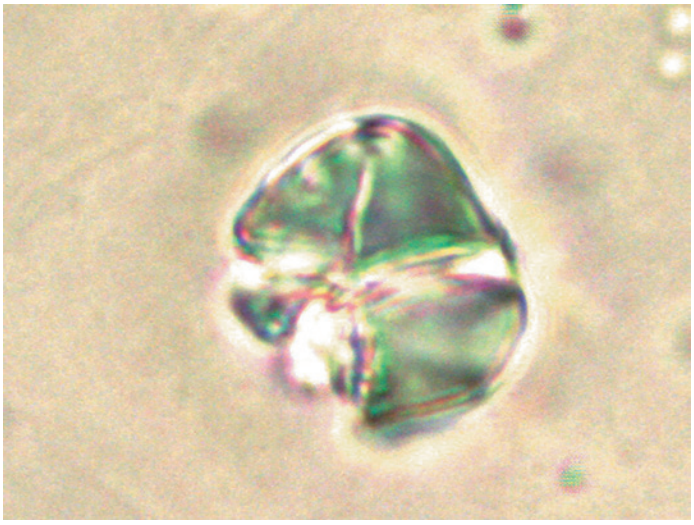


Figure 28-50 Starch granule (×160).

with cells, especially red blood cells. Lipid material from vaginal creams also forms droplets in urine and may form large amorphous aggregates.

METHODS FOR URINALYSIS

BASIC (ROUTINE) URINALYSIS PROCEDURE

1. Pour 10 to 15 mL of a well-mixed urine specimen into a graduated disposable centrifuge tube. Perform physical examination and reagent strip chemical evaluations. Centrifuge at 450 g for 5 minutes.
2. Carefully remove and save the supernatant. The final volume used to resuspend the sediment may vary with the standardized system used but should remain constant within any given laboratory. Use a disposable pipet, specialized tube, or pipet system to concentrate the sediment.
3. Gently resuspend the sediment in the remaining supernatant, and add one drop of supravital stain if desired. Using an appropriate pipet, load/charge the examination chamber of a standardized slide. Allow the urine to settle for 30 to 60 seconds.
4. Examine with low- and high-power objectives. Subdued light or phase-contrast illumination will be required to detect sediment entities with a low refractive index. The fine focus should be varied continuously while scanning. Systematically progress around the entire examination chamber, being careful to examine along the edges for casts.
5. Count the number of casts in at least 10 lpf, average, and report the number of casts per lpf. A reasonable range may be used in reporting (e.g., 0 to 2, 2 to 5, 5 to 10). Use high power to identify casts by type. Casts will not be missed if phase-contrast microscopy is used (see Fig. 28-4, *A* and *B*).
6. Identify and count erythrocytes, leukocytes, and renal epithelial cells using the high-power objective. Count at least 10 hpf, average, and report as cells/hpf. A reasonable range may be used for reporting.
7. Comment on the following:
   a. Squamous and transitional cells if present in large numbers or as fragments (transitional cells).
   b. Bacteria, yeast, and microorganisms. Bacteriuria detectable on low power should be reported as at least 2+.
   c. Crystals (quantitated under low power). The presence of abnormal crystals should be confirmed chemically and correlated with the patient history.
   d. Large amounts of mucus.
8. The authors recommend confirming the following results with cytopathologic examination or specific chemical tests (crystals):
   a. More than two renal epithelial cells/hpf
   b. Pathologic casts
   c. Atypical mononuclear cells, particularly urothelial cells
   d. Tissue fragments
   e. Pathologic crystals

Review the entire report, including physical, chemical, and microscopic data, and correlate with available clinical information. Discrepancies should be resolved before the report is released. Normal values for the procedure include the following: 0 to 10 RBCs/hpf, 0 to 10 WBCs/hpf,

and 0 to 2 hyaline casts/lpf. Values will vary, depending on the standardized system used.

Routine urinalysis is a helpful diagnostic tool in the workup and follow-up of various urinary system disorders. Table 28-11 summarizes the macroscopic, reagent strip, and microscopic findings typical for the most commonly encountered entities.

AUTOMATED URINALYSIS

Several instruments have been developed to partially or completely automate routine urinalysis. In addition to enhancing workflow, automation can standardize some aspects of manual urinalysis. Most of these instruments can be interfaced with laboratory information systems, facilitating reporting and result retrieval.

Several instruments are available to automate the macroscopic/chemical analysis or the microscopic portions of the routine urinalysis. For example, fully automated urine chemistry reagent strip analyzers from several manufacturers are equipped to perform automatic pipetting or test strip dipping, as well as carry out photometric measurements of the reagent strip fields.

The IRIS Urinalysis workstations (now iRICELL Automated Urinalysis System, Iris Diagnostics, Chatsworth, Calif.) (van den Broek et al, 2008) combine several automated subsystems to perform a complete urinalysis through a combination of dipstick chemical analysis and imaging technology. Specific gravity is measured by a mass gravity meter, urine chemistries are measured by a standard reflectance spectrophotometer, and microscopic analysis is facilitated with an automated intelligent microscopy system. No centrifugation is involved, and handling of the specimen is minimal. A touch-sensitive video screen eliminates keyboard entry. In the analysis, the urine specimen is poured into the instrument's entry port over a urine chemistry reagent strip. This reagent strip is then placed in the reflectance photometer reader platform. The urine chemistries are automatically timed, read, and collated by the internal computer. A portion of the specimen is diverted to the harmonic oscillator mass gravity meter for specific gravity determination; the rest of the specimen is then stained and passed into a laminar flow chamber, where the formed elements are detected and imaged by a video camera mounted to a microscope and a stroboscopic lamp that allows stop-motion images. Images of cells, casts, crystals, yeast, and bacteria found in the sediment are then sorted by size and presented to the operator on the touch-sensitive screen for identification. Because the volume of the laminar flow chamber is known, the images can be counted and related to a volume of urine with a precision that exceeds that which can be obtained with a centrifuged specimen, glass slide, and coverslip. The system can remove the need for microscopic analysis in most cases (Hughes & Roebuck, 2003). The computer then consolidates the report for printing or transmission to the laboratory information system (Fig. 28-51). Body fluids other than urine can also be analyzed by the system.

The IRIS microscopy system bases its analysis on cell image analysis. Another way to analyze urinary cells and casts is by flow cytometry. These analyzers typically stain the DNA and membranes of the formed elements in native urine, pass the sample as a laminar flow through a laser beam, and measure the light scatter, fluorescence, and impedance (see Fig. 28-51). The UF-100 (Sysmex Corporation, Kobe, Japan) analyzes urine by flow cytometry and gives quantitative results for red blood cells and white blood cells, epithelial cells, casts, and bacteria (Fig. 28-52). It can detect yeast, crystals, dysmorphic red blood cells, and pathologic casts (Fig. 28-53) in the urine (Ben-Ezra et al, 1998; Ottiger & Huber, 2003). This technology may be useful in decreasing the number of urine specimens requiring routine microscopy (Fenili & Pirovano, 1998). Normal values are fewer than 20 RBCs/µL, fewer than 25 WBCs/µL, and fewer than 2000 bacteria/µL. Similar to the microscopic examination of urine on unspun specimens, the automated systems are not prone to the artifacts that characterize examination of spun urine sediment. A second generation of this machine, the UF-1000i, provided better enumeration of bacteria with fewer artifacts due to interfering debris, while a third generation, the UX-2000, combines urine chemistry and sediment analysis into a single compact system, and provides enhanced detection of bacteria and other benefits (Manoni et al, 2010; Jiang et al, 2011; Kadkhoda et al, 2011; Khejonnit et al, 2015). The Sysmex instruments also have a body fluid counting mode (Fleming et al, 2014). Other automated urinalysis systems include the FUS Series urine sediment analyzers and H Series urine chemistry analyzers (DIRUI Industrial Co., Ltd, Changchun, China) and the LabUMat 2 urine chemistry analyzer and UriSed 2 urine sediment analyzer (77 Elektronika Kft, Budapest, Hungry) (Akin et al, 2009; Martinez et al, 2013; Yuksel et al, 2013).

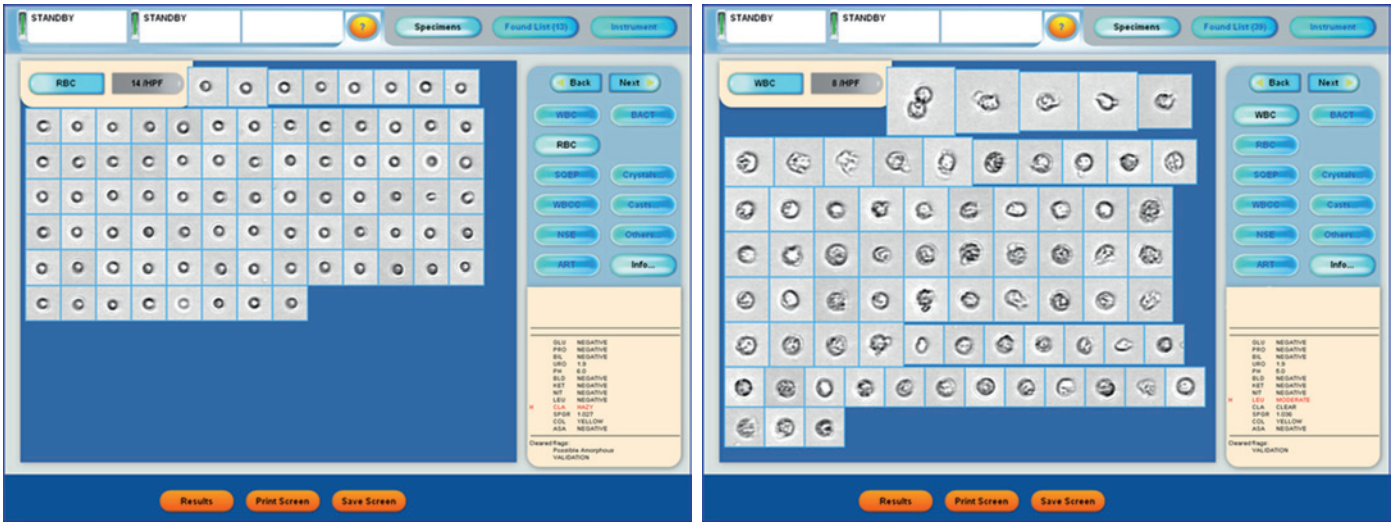
Although these automated sediment analysis machines are very useful in standardizing workflow and eliminating the need to perform a manual examination of the urine sediment in the routine clinical laboratory, they may not be that useful in a population with a high incidence of renal pathology (e.g., patients in a nephrology clinic) (Gai et al, 2003). In addition, there are few published guidelines for the validation and quality assurance of automated urine sediment analyzers (Khejonnit et al, 2015).

Automated urine sediment analyzers have the potential to add more quantitative information to the monitoring of abnormalities such as urinary tract infections by providing very exact counts of bacteria and cells in serial specimens while patients are under treatment. The clinical utility of this accurate information is yet to be determined. Its application would require a more comprehensive understanding of such counts by practicing physicians as opposed to the semiquantitative estimates now commonly in use.

SPECIAL TESTING AND MONITORING TECHNIQUES

URINARY CALCULI

Nephrolithiasis is a common condition, affecting nearly 1 in 11 individuals in the United States (Scales et al, 2012). It is a heterogeneous disorder,



A B

Figure 28-51 **Operator screens of IRIS iRICELL 2000 iQ200ELITE microscopy module. A,** Red blood cell panel showing images of erythrocytes identified in the specimen. **B,** White blood cell panel demonstrating images of leukocytes in the specimen.

TABLE 28-11

Various Urinary System Diseases and Corresponding Urinalysis Abnormalities

Diseases	Macroscopic Urinalysis	Microscopic Urinalysis
Acute glomerulonephritis	Gross hematuria "Smoky" turbidity Proteinuria	Erythrocyte and blood casts Epithelial casts Hyaline and granular casts Waxy casts Neutrophils Erythrocytes
Chronic glomerulonephritis	Hematuria Proteinuria	Granular and waxy casts Occasional blood casts Erythrocytes Leukocytes Epithelial casts Lipid droplets
Acute pyelonephritis	Turbid Occasional odor Occasional proteinuria	Numerous neutrophils (many in clumps) Few lymphocytes and histiocytes Leukocyte casts Epithelial casts Renal epithelial cells Erythrocytes Granular and waxy casts Bacteria
Chronic pyelonephritis	Occasional proteinuria	Leukocytes Broad waxy casts Granular and epithelial casts Occasional leukocyte casts Bacteria Erythrocytes
Nephrotic syndrome	Proteinuria Fat droplets	Fatty and waxy casts Cellular and granular casts Oval fat bodies and/or vacuolated renal epithelial cells occurring singly or as cellular clusters
Acute tubular necrosis	Hematuria Occasional proteinuria	Necrotic or degenerated renal epithelial cells Neutrophils and erythrocytes Granular and epithelial casts Waxy casts Broad casts Epithelial tissue fragments
Cystitis	Hematuria	Numerous leukocytes Erythrocytes Transitional epithelial cells occurring singly or as fragments Histiocytes and giant cells Bacteria Absence of casts
Dysuria-pyuria syndrome	Slightly turbid	Numerous leukocytes, bacteria Erythrocytes No casts
Acute renal allograft rejection (lower nephrosis)	Hematuria Occasional proteinuria	Renal epithelial cells Lymphocytes and plasma cells Neutrophils Renal epithelial casts Renal epithelial fragments Granular, bloody, and waxy casts
Urinary tract neoplasia	Hematuria	Atypical mononuclear cells with enlarged, irregular hyperchromatic nuclei and sometimes containing prominent nucleoli that occur singly or as tissue fragments Neutrophils Erythrocytes Transitional epithelial cells
Viral infection	Hematuria Occasional proteinuria	Enlarged mononuclear cells and/or multinucleated cells with prominent intranuclear and/or cytoplasmic inclusions Neutrophils Lymphocytes and plasma cells Erythrocytes

with stones developing from a wide variety of metabolic or environmental disturbances. Although most studies have concentrated on nonorganic components, many stones have been found to be associated with an organic matrix containing lipids and protein, suggesting the involvement of cellular membranes in the nucleation and growth of crystals (Khan et al, 1996; Bagga et al, 2013; Baumann & Affolter, 2014). Many substances act as promoters or inhibitors of this process (Aggarwal et al, 2013).

Upper (renal) stones are common in Western industrialized countries, whereas bladder stones are uncommon. The passage of stones down the ureter produces renal colic, which is characterized by severe pain in the flank radiating to the groin. Hematuria frequently accompanies stone passage. If stones obstruct the pelvis of the kidney or ureter, hydronephrosis can result, and infection is a common consequence. Recurrences are frequent, but with appropriate identification of the

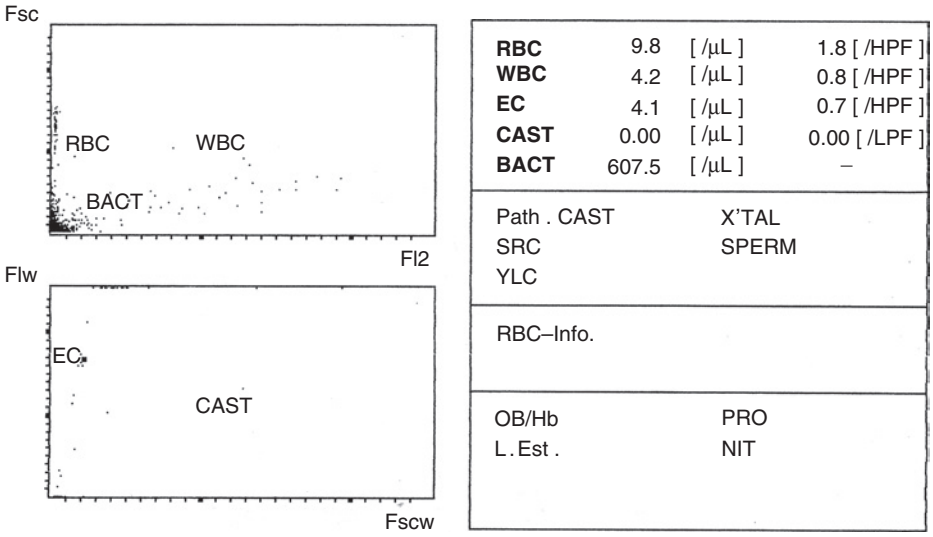


Figure 28-52 Printout from UF-100 automated urine analyzer, showing normal urine. Note the lack of RBCs, WBCs, bacteria, and casts. *RBCs,* Red blood cells; *WBCs,* white blood cells.

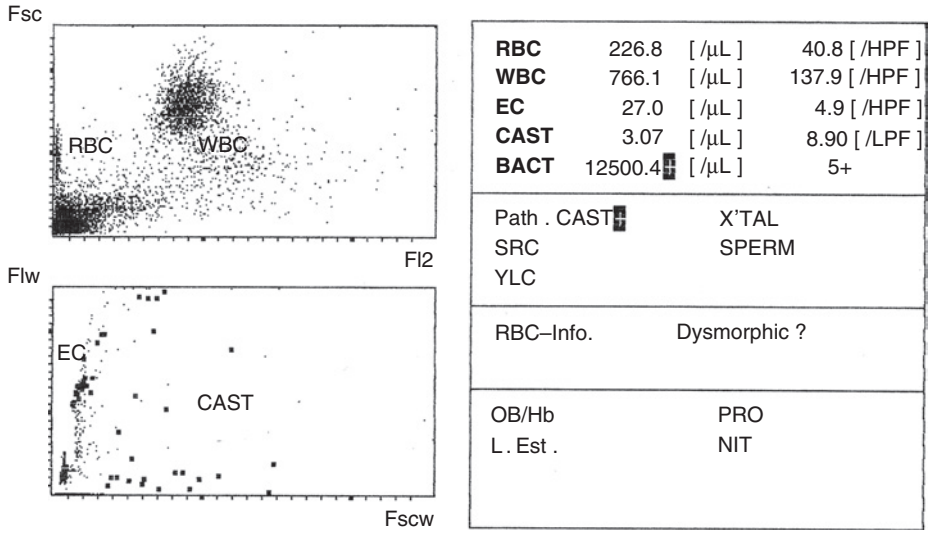


Figure 28-53 Printout from UF-100 automated urine analyzer, showing abnormal urine. Compare with Figure 28-52. Note the sizable numbers of RBCs, WBCs, bacteria, and casts. *ECs,* Squamous epithelial cells; *NIT,* nitrite; *PRO,* protein; *RBCs,* red blood cells; *SRC,* small round cells; *WBCs,* white blood cells; *X'TAL,* crystals; *YLC,* yeast-like cells.

stones and the risk factors associated with them, stone formation may be greatly reduced.

Calcium oxalate or a mixture of oxalate and calcium phosphate is often found in stones (≈80%). Mixed calcium phosphate, magnesium ammonium phosphate, and uric acid are the next most common constituents (3% to 10% each), and these are followed by cystine stones (1% to 2%). Carbonate, which is frequently detected in chemical analysis, probably results from adsorption of carbon dioxide to the calcium phosphate crystal. Males are more often affected with calcium stones than females, and children are not often affected with calcium stones.

Calcium oxalate precipitates at an acid or neutral pH, and calcium phosphate—hydroxyapatite $Ca_{10}(PO)_6(OH)_2$—forms calculi at the normal urinary pH of 6.0 to 6.5. Uric acid, which is not very soluble, will crystallize at a low pH (5.3) and form stones. Magnesium ammonium phosphate (struvite) forms stones at alkaline pH, where the ammonium level is high. These tend to form in the pelvis of the kidney but apparently are not attached to papillae, as are the calcium stones. They may, however, develop on preexisting nuclei when infection from organisms such as *Proteus* causes alkalization of the urine (Flannigan et al, 2014). Struvite stones may become large, forming casts of the kidney pelvis and showing staghorns. Mixed stones may form when calcium or uric acid crystals (or stones) cause obstruction followed by infection and the subsequent deposition of ammonium salts.

Hypercalciuria and Calcium Stones

Calcium homeostasis is maintained by parathyroid hormone (PTH) and 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol (1,25$[OH]_2$D). Both affect bone resorption by osteoclasts. PTH causes a diminution of phosphorus reabsorption and an increase in calcium reabsorption by renal tubular cells. It also causes increased synthesis of 1,25$(OH)_2$D, which acts upon the small intestinal mucosa, causing increased absorption of calcium and phosphorus. Low serum ionized calcium levels cause increased PTH secretion, and low serum phosphorus stimulates 1,25$(OH)_2$D synthesis.

About 40% of patients with calcium stones will have hypercalciuria, defined as a daily urinary excretion of calcium in excess of 0.1 mmol/kg (Houillier & Boulanger, 1998). Increased calcium in urine may result from an increase in intestinal calcium absorption, lack of appropriate renal tubular reabsorption of calcium, resorption or loss of calcium from bone, or a combination of these factors. In a few instances of hypercalciuria, an underlying disease process can be identified. In most cases, however, it is primary, or idiopathic hypercalciuria (IH). Although the exact mechanism of hypercalciuria is still unknown in this disorder, it most likely includes a combination of factors, including those listed previously. Three hypotheses to account for IH pathophysiology have been proposed. These include possible defects in the fatty acid content of cell membranes, increased expression of the vitamin D or calcium receptors of the 25-hydroxyvitamin D_1 α-hydroxylase, or a disease of monocytes

(Bataille et al, 1998). Recent studies have revealed that polymorphisms in genes for proteins regulating tubular phosphate and calcium reabsorption, preventing calcium salt precipitation, and coding a proximal tubule water channel are associated with calcium nephrolithiasis (Arcidiacono et al, 2014).

Excess loss of calcium in urine and the possibility of stone formation may occur secondary to a variety of other conditions. For instance, hypercalciuria may result from increased absorption of calcium from the gut. This may occur following excessive loss of phosphorus from the kidney and low serum phosphorus levels, or when increased serum $1,25(OH)_2D$ is seen with normal serum phosphorus levels. Increased resorption of bone may occur with immobilization of the skeleton, rapidly progressive bone disease, thyrotoxicosis, and Cushing's disease, leading to hypercalciuria. Calcium may be lost from bone as a result of osteolytic tumors, as well as in the presence of renal disease such as distal renal tubular acidosis and medullary sponge kidney. Sarcoidosis, vitamin D excess, and furosemide may also cause renal hypercalciuria.

About 5% to 10% of calcium stones are associated with primary hyperparathyroidism. In this disorder, increased mineral turnover in bone and hypercalcemia are important causes of hypercalciuria. Affected patients often present with stone symptoms, and calcium phosphate deposits may be found in the renal tissue, cornea, and other organs.

Dietary hypercalciuria is an uncommon cause of calcium stones; it is associated with a large calcium intake, on the order of 3 to 4 g/day, together with a high protein intake. About 800 mg/day is the normal recommended adult intake.

As stated previously, calcium oxalate stones are the most common. They may form with excess oxalate and uric acid in the urine, the latter sometimes providing a nidus for stone formation. Newly formed calcium oxalate aggregates are about 20 to 25 μm in diameter, much smaller than the outlet of the collecting ducts. Adherence to the epithelial surface apparently allows stones to continue growth rather than be excreted. Calcium phosphate stone formation is favored by a less acid urine, as is seen in renal tubular acidosis, with infection, and in persons consuming large amounts of alkali. These stones are also seen in primary hyperparathyroidism, although the urine is in the normal pH range. In a patient exposed to heat and dehydration, these may contribute to a rise in urinary solute levels, followed by crystallization and stone formation.

Hyperoxaluria

A majority of calcium stones (70% to 80%) contain oxalate. Some of the oxalate in urine is dietary in origin from beverages (tea, cocoa, coffee, cola), vegetables (beans, rhubarb, spinach), nuts, berries, and citrus fruits. Oxalate is also derived from ascorbic acid.

The gastrointestinal system plays an important role in oxalate homeostasis. Oxalate absorption increases when calcium and magnesium intake decreases. Disorders of the small bowel such as Crohn's disease, ileal resection, and intestinal bypass surgery may result in excessive oxalate absorption, with subsequent excretion in the urine. Malabsorption with steatorrhea causes loss of calcium due to soap formation of calcium with fatty acids, and malabsorption with increased bile salts remaining in the gut is thought to promote oxalate absorption in the colon. Additionally, absence of *Oxalobacter formigenes* from the intestinal tract of patients with cystic fibrosis appears to lead to increased absorption of oxalate, thereby increasing the risk for hyperoxaluria (Sidhu et al, 1998).

Other causes of hyperoxaluria include pyridoxine deficiency and primary hyperoxaluria. The latter is a rare inherited autosomal recessive disease with oxoglutarate carboligase deficiency (Cochat & Rumsby, 2013). Systemic oxalosis and renal failure may be seen in young adulthood. Renal transplantation and large doses of pyridoxine or nicotinamide have been tried for the treatment of these patients.

Hyperuricuria

Excessive excretion of uric acid may be due to excessive dietary intake of purines (liver, dried beans, some fish, meat) or various disease processes. Endogenous uric acid production is increased in gout, glycogen storage diseases, Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, many leukemias, and treated tumors with associated cell necrosis. Chemotherapy and irradiation can lead to increased breakdown of tumor cells (nucleotide/purine forms uric acid), which may cause acute renal failure secondary to tubular and ureteral obstruction by masses of uric acid crystals.

In gout, about 20% of patients form stones, most of which are pure uric acid or mixed uric acid and calcium. Heat, dehydration, and unusually acid urine contribute to stone formation. Gouty nephropathy occurs with sodium urate deposits in the medulla, even when stones are not present, and masses of crystals may cause obstruction of terminal collecting ducts in the kidney. Uricosuric drugs cause potential problems with massive uric acid output in the first 3 to 4 days of treatment.

Normally, about one third of the uric acid formed is degraded by bacteria in the colon. Absence of bacteria or intestinal diversion may cause increased absorption of uric acid from the gut. Because ileostomy patients lose large amounts of alkaline fluid from the intestine, they excrete concentrated acidic urine and are likely to produce uric acid stones.

The average uric acid excretion by adults is 500 to 600 mg/24 hours. Solute concentration as well as pH appears to be important in the solubility of uric acid and urate (Shekarriz & Stoller, 2002). Uric acid, a weak acid, forms free, insoluble, undissociated uric acid and a urate (which is more soluble with some sodium and potassium present) at pH 5.5. The amount of free uric acid present in urine will decrease as the pH rises, and at pH 7, uric acid is more soluble as urate. With high salt concentrations, the urate becomes less soluble. If urine volume is low, the solubility of uric acid at acid pH will be exceeded.

Whereas large quantities of uric acid crystals are regularly seen in urinary sediment, uric acid stone formation is not common. Uric acid crystals form a sludge that may obstruct the nephron without forming a stone. On the other hand, uric acid and sodium acid urate crystals are found as nuclei for calcium stones. Most normal persons with a pH of 6 have urine saturated with uric acid but do not form stones. Further acidity or dehydration is apparently required to engender stone formation.

Cystine Stones

Cystine stones form in patients with an inherited amino acid transport disorder (see the Cystinuria section later in the chapter). Cystine, ornithine, lysine, and arginine are subsequently excreted in large amounts in the urine. Of these, only cystine forms crystals and stones. Cystine does not become soluble until the urine pH is 7.4, and stones form over a range of normal urinary pH values. Heterozygous carriers for the disease will have increased amounts of cystine in urine but do not form stones; homozygotes are stone formers. A 24-hour quantitative urine cystine measurement is needed to detect potential stone formers; this should always be done when cystine crystals are found in random specimens.

Rare Calculi

Calculi containing sulfonamides have been described, and silica calculi have been reported in patients ingesting silica gel over a long period of time. Triamterene (Dyazide, Dyrenium), a relatively insoluble diuretic, may contribute to stone formation. It can form 1- to 2-mm mustard-colored stones, giving a bright blue fluorescence when dissolved in butanol and with exposure to ultraviolet light. Rare adenine stones have been described in children with an inherited enzyme deficiency disorder and hyperuricemia. Xanthine stones are uncommon and may be associated with a genetic disorder with an absence of xanthine oxidase.

LABORATORY TESTS USED TO INVESTIGATE STONE FORMERS

Urine Examinations

1. Routine urinalysis, qualitative test for cystine, and urine culture. Hematuria is a constant finding when stones are present, even when they are asymptomatic. Proteinuria is usually not a feature of calculous disease, but with renal tubular damage, excretion of low molecular weight plasma proteins such as β_2-microglobulin, and some albumin, may be increased. Erythrocyte casts usually are not found, and other casts are unusual. Leukocytes are increased when infection is present, and the reagent strip nitrite and leukocyte esterase may be elevated. Multiple clusters of nonmalignant transitional cells may be found in urine of patients with calculous disease and may be helpful in the diagnosis of unsuspected calculi.
2. Twenty-four–hour urine specimen: Sodium, calcium, phosphorus, uric acid, oxalate, and creatinine clearance. Supersaturation values from 24-hour urine collections have been shown to accurately reflect stone composition (Asplin et al, 1998). Some authors suggest that spot urine samples are sufficient for the metabolic evaluation of stone formers, although because of day-to-day variation, three samples should be obtained to overcome the doubtful significance of a single result (Strohmaier et al, 1997).
3. Urine pH determination on a fresh specimen is important in determining the types of crystals likely to be precipitated, for example, uric acid with low pH (5 to 5.5), and triple phosphate with alkaline urine.

Serum Chemistry

Appropriate tests include calcium, phosphorus, uric acid, and electrolytes.

Stone Analysis

Calculi may be of various sizes, commonly described as sand, gravel, or stone. The physical characteristics of the various calculi rarely will suffice for their identification, but a few points are worth noting. Uric acid and urate stones are typically yellow to brownish red and are moderately hard. Phosphate stones are usually pale and friable. Calcium oxalate stones are very hard, often of a dark color, and typically have a rough surface. Cystine stones are yellow-brown and feel somewhat greasy.

Several methods are available for the analysis of calculi, such as optical crystallography, radiograph diffraction, and infrared spectroscopy. Electron beam analysis and mass spectroscopy are also used. A simplified method for analysis of renal calculi is presented by Farrington and colleagues (1980). A quantitative method for five of eight frequently measured substances using available clinical chemistry methods has been described: calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, ammonium, and uric acid. Cystine, oxalate, and carbonate are detected by qualitative means and are interpreted with the quantitative results to characterize the stones. Most laboratories refer calculi specimens to more specialized laboratories for chemical analysis, where both chemical and specialized tests should be used to determine the composition of the stones.

Method for Gross Examination of Calculi

1. Wash the stone(s) free of blood, mucus, preservation solution, and so forth. Place stones in a beaker, cover with several thicknesses of gauze held firmly in place with rubber bands, and wash under cold running water. Drain, remove gauze carefully, and dry beaker and stones in an oven. Rinse tiny stones with water from a squeeze bottle (not running water).
2. Record the dimension of the stone.
3. Describe briefly the color and texture of the stone's exterior surface. The stone may be photographed for record purposes.
4. Cut, saw, or break the stone so as to examine the interior. Note whether a foreign body may have acted as a nucleus for its formation. Describe the color and texture of the interior and layers, if present.
5. Reduce small stones to a fine powder by pulverizing with a mortar and pestle.
6. If possible, when a stone is very large, it may be advisable to make separate analyses of layers that appear to have different constituents.

Because most small calculi consist of calcium oxalate, the best way to analyze them is to put all available powder in one test tube. (If the stone is very tiny, it may be placed directly in the test tube and crushed with a spatula.) Reagents used for the chemical determination of rare stones may be found in an earlier edition of this textbook (Henry, 1996). It is important to have known positive material to test the reagents.

Radiologic Examination

Asymptomatic stones are sometimes found. Most stones are radiopaque, except for pure uric acid and the rare xanthine; cystine stones are opaque because of their sulfur content.

URINARY SCREENING FOR INHERITED METABOLIC DISEASES

Urine has been used for many years to screen for metabolic diseases, particularly those resulting from a genetic predisposition. In many of these diseases, an abnormal metabolite or a larger than normal amount of a normal metabolite is excreted in the urine. Because these conditions are uncommon and their symptoms often nonspecific, and because some may be treatable if early diagnosis is confirmed, blood and urine should be analyzed using techniques that are highly selective and sensitive. Numerous inborn errors of metabolism have been identified, and this section will describe some of the more common disease entities.

Aminoacidurias

Excretion of one or more amino acids in the urine may be due to a block in a major metabolic pathway (overflow type) or a deficiency in renal tubular function (renal type). Phenylketonuria is an example of overflow aminoaciduria in which an enzyme substrate and other metabolites in the pathway accumulate, causing increased body fluid levels and increased substrate excretion in urine. Unlike the overflow-type diseases, renal-type aminoacidurias do not have high levels of the amino acid in the blood because the primary defect is in the renal tubular reabsorption mechanism. An example of renal transport aminoaciduria is cystinuria.

Phenylketonuria

Phenylketonuria is an autosomal recessive inherited disorder in which there is absence of the enzyme phenylalanine hydroxylase. Both sexes are affected equally, with an incidence of about 1 in 11,000. Allelic heterogeneity can be extensive, particularly in the United States (Guldberg et al, 1996). Mental retardation is the major clinical finding, and dietary restriction of phenylalanine has proven efficacious in these patients.

Because they are not converted to tyrosine in this disorder, phenylalanine and other normal metabolites accumulate in abnormal amounts. Plasma phenylalanine and phenylpyruvic acid levels are elevated; urinary phenylpyruvic acid (highest), phenylacetic acid, and phenylalanine are increased. Urinary indoleacetic acid and other indoles arising from altered tryptophan metabolism and indican (an indole) are also increased. The excretion of 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid is diminished, paralleling the low level of serum 5-hydroxytryptamine. The urine and sweat of these patients have a characteristic mousy/musty odor due to phenylacetic acid.

Methods. Phenistix reagent strips contain ferric ammonium sulfate, magnesium sulfate, and cyclohexylsulfamic acid. At 30 seconds following immersion into urine, the color of the test area is compared with the color chart provided. A positive test result shows a gray to gray-green color. The test detects 5 to 10 mg/dL. Salicylates and metabolites of phenothiazine derivatives may cause a pink to purple color. Ion-exchange high-performance liquid chromatography has been found suitable for quantitative confirmatory testing of abnormal specimens (Reilly et al, 1998).

Alkaptonuria

Normally, phenylalanine and tyrosine are metabolized to homogentisic acid (dihydroxyphenylacetic acid), which is then oxidized to maleylacetoacetic acid. In alkaptonuria, the enzyme homogentisic acid oxidase is deficient, and homogentisic acid is excreted in urine in large quantities. The urine characteristically turns brown-black on standing or with alkaline pH. Patients with alkaptonuria develop dark blue to black pigmentation in cartilage and connective tissue; frequently, the disease is not diagnosed until arthritis has already developed.

Methods. Screening methods include ferric chloride and silver nitrate tests. A transient, dark blue color appears as two drops of 10% ferric chloride solution are added to about 2 mL of urine containing homogentisic acid. The silver nitrate test involves adding 4 mL of 3% silver nitrate to 0.5 mL urine, mixing, and then adding several drops of 10% NH_4OH. Homogentisic acid will cause a black color to develop. Confirmatory methods include paper or thin-layer chromatography, as well as capillary electrophoresis. These methods should distinguish homogentisic acid from gentisic acid, an aspirin metabolite.

Tyrosinuria

Tyrosinemia with tyrosinuria occurs when the metabolism of tyrosine derived from the diet or from phenylalanine is abnormal. This may be part of a generalized amino acid disorder associated with liver disease, or it may represent one of the various genetic disorders involving tyrosine metabolism. Tyrosine crystals may appear in the urine as fine, silky crystals scattered singly or aggregated to form sheaves. They appear brown to black, precipitate at an acid pH, and are soluble in alkali. Small quantities of tyrosine may appear in the urine of normal individuals.

Transitory hypertyrosinemia may occur in low-birthweight and premature infants as a benign condition. Typically, these infants are asymptomatic, and no liver or renal disease is present. The elevated tyrosine levels may on occasion be accompanied by transiently elevated phenylalanine levels. Tyrosine and the phenolic acids *p*-hydroxyphenyllactic and *p*-hydroxyphenylpyruvic acids are excreted in larger than normal amounts in the urine. The nature of the enzymatic defect has not been well characterized, and the tyrosine level of these patients usually returns to normal within a few weeks to months.

Type I hereditary tyrosinemia (tyrosinosis) is an autosomal recessive disorder characterized by defects in fumarylacetoacetate hydrolase and maleylacetoacetate hydrolase. Succinylacetoacetone and succinylacetone accumulate and inhibit renal function, various hepatic enzymes, and porphobilinogen synthetase. Patients may experience liver failure, renal dysfunction, rickets, and acute intermittent porphyria–like symptoms. Hepatoma is a late complication. Generalized aminoaciduria, phosphaturia, glycosuria, and uricosuria may occur. A low-tyrosine/phenylalanine diet is the mainstay of therapy.

Type II tyrosinemia (Richner-Hanhart syndrome) is an autosomal recessive inherited deficiency of tyrosine aminotransferase. Patients will have tyrosinemia, tyrosinuria, and increased urinary phenolic acids. The metabolism of other amino acids, renal function, and hepatic function are

otherwise normal. Erosions of the cornea, soles, and palms are common, and mental retardation sometimes occurs. Therapy centers on a low-tyrosine/phenlyalanine diet.

Methods. The nitrosonaphthol test for tyrosine is a nonspecific screening method and should be confirmed by chromatography or quantitative serum assay of tyrosine. Tyrosine and tyramine form soluble red complexes with nitrosonaphthol.

Maple Syrup Urine Disease

MSUD is one of a group of diseases associated with abnormal branched-chain amino acid metabolism. These include hypervalinemia, isovaleric acidemia causing "sweaty feet" odor, and other rare diseases. Several different clinical forms of MSUD have been described, together with various sites of biochemical derangement. The classic type of MSUD, inherited as an autosomal recessive trait, is marked by severe neonatal vomiting, seizures, stupor, irregular respirations, and often hypoglycemia. Left untreated, patients become rapidly comatose and die. Leucine, isoleucine, valine, and their corresponding keto acids are elevated in the plasma and excreted in the urine. Deficient decarboxylases and other enzymes are thought to prevent the conversion of keto acids to fatty acids. Intermittent, intermediate, thiamine-responsive, and dihydrolipoyl dehydrogenase (E3) deficiency forms of MSUD have been described (Holmes et al, 1997).

The urine of patients with MSUD has an odor resembling maple syrup, caramelized sugar, or curry, the source of which is not certain. The urinary keto acids are demonstrable by the first week of life.

Methods. The dinitrophenylhydrazine screening test indicates the presence of α-keto acids in the urine. Insoluble hydrazones are formed from the reaction of carbonyl groups with dinitrophenylhydrazine. A positive result is seen with MSUD and possibly in phenylketonuria (phenylpyruvic acid), histidinemia (imidazole pyruvic acid), and methionine malabsorption (oasthouse syndrome). The test is positive with ketonuria due to other inherited diseases and other causes. A preliminary screening test for ketones should be performed.

Procedure

1. Reagent and control (ketoglutaric acid, 25 mg in 100 mL of normal urine) should be at room temperature.
2. Add 10 drops of reagent (100 mg of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine in 100 mL of 2N HCl) to 1 mL of clear urine.
3. Within 10 minutes, a yellow or chalky white precipitate indicates a positive reaction. It should be the same as or greater than the control precipitate.

Gas or thin-layer chromatographic analysis and nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy of the urine may be used as confirmatory methods (Holmes et al, 1997).

Cystinuria

Cystinuria is a common amino acid disorder that occurs equally in both sexes, with an incidence estimated at about 1 per 10,000 (homozygous) (larger numbers for heterozygotes). In mass screening programs for infants, the homozygous form is detected at about the same rate as phenylketonuria. Defective transport of cystine by the epithelial cells of the renal tubules and gut is transmitted as an autosomal recessive trait. The basic defect is not known. Although large amounts of the dibasic acids ornithine, lysine, and arginine are also excreted in this disease, cystine is the only one that crystallizes out, with stone formation as a clinical manifestation.

Cystinosis is a rare, recessively inherited disorder caused by a mutation in the *CTNS* gene encoding the integral transmembrane protein cystinosin, which functions in the transport of cystine from the lysosome. A deficiency of cystonosin leads to cystine crystal deposition within lysosomes throughout the body, including the kidney, eye, bone marrow, and spleen (Ivanova et al, 2014). The severe form of this disorder is characterized by photophobia, renal failure, rickets, and growth failure. With renal tubular involvement, Fanconi's syndrome develops with generalized aminoaciduria and glucosuria. Benign and intermediate varieties of cystinosis have been described. Unlike in cystinuria, the cystine loss in cystinosis parallels the loss of other amino acids in the urine.

Urinary cystine is sometimes detected in patients with various renal tubular diseases. Cystine is excreted with other amino acids in Wilson's disease, in Lowe's disease, and with the aminoaciduria of Hartnup's disease.

Methods. Examine a first morning urine specimen for colorless, hexagonal crystals of cystine. Cystine may not always crystallize in a concentrated urine, although it may be present in large amounts.

The cyanide-nitroprusside test used for the qualitative determination of urine cystine is Brand's modification of the Legal nitroprusside reaction. Cystine is reduced to cysteine by sodium cyanide, and the free sulfhydryl groups then react with nitroprusside to produce a red-purple color. Cysteine, cystine, homocystine, and ketones (dark red) all will give positive reactions. The qualitative test separates normal, heterozygote, and homozygote ranges of excretion. The lower limit of the test was 35 to 60 μmol of cystine per mole of creatinine, and this corresponded to the heterozygote range. Homozygous stone formers usually excrete more than 300 mg/g of creatinine and are also detected by this test.

Procedure

1. Place 3 to 5 mL of urine in a test tube and add 2.0 mL of sodium cyanide solution (5 g/dL water); allow to stand for 10 minutes. Timing is important. Treat a control solution in the same way. For a positive control, use 5 mg of cystine dissolved in 10 mL of 0.1N HCl, diluted to 100 mL with normal urine.
2. Add fresh, aqueous sodium nitroprusside solution (5 g/dL) dropwise (about five drops), and mix.
3. Read immediately as positive or negative. A stable red-purple color will develop with cystine. "Trace" results may also be reported. A concentrated normal specimen could give a weakly positive "trace" result.

Further identification and quantification of cystine may be accomplished by thin-layer or quantitative ion-exchange chromatography, or high-voltage electrophoresis.

Homocystinuria

The classic form of homocystinuria is due to deficiency of cystathionine β-synthase, which catalyzes the formation of cystathionine from homocystine and serine in the methionine pathway (Mudd, 2011). Homocysteine is rapidly oxidized to homocystine, which accumulates along with methionine and is excreted in the urine. Children with this disease may have seizures, thromboses, mental retardation, arachnodactyly, and kyphoscoliosis. Connective tissue manifestations are thought to result from accumulation of the intermediate homocysteine, which interferes with collagen cross-linking.

Urine for testing must be fresh because homocystine is labile. The cyanide-nitroprusside test, described earlier, is positive. Quantitative chemical analysis reveals high levels of homocystine, methionine, and cysteine-homocysteine disulfide. Urine levels are monitored to follow the effects of the methionine-restricted diet used to treat this disease.

ADDITIONAL URINE TESTING MODALITIES

A latex agglutination nephelometric immunoassay has been developed to measure urinary basic fetoprotein (BFP). Levels of this substance may be elevated with ureter stones, infection, and prostate and bladder cancers, making BFP a nonspecific marker of inflammation or tumor (Itoh et al, 1998).

The urine Trinder spot test, performed by emergency department physicians, is a sensitive screen for salicylates.

Rendl and colleagues (1998) described a semiquantitative rapid urinary iodide test, suitable for epidemiologic surveys of iodine deficiency, particularly in developing countries.

Lastly, a monoclonal antibody assay for the detection of free urinary pyridinium cross-links can help to identify bone resorption in patients with osteoporosis, hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, and Paget's disease of bone (Gomez et al, 1996).

Cytopathologic examination of the urine is commonly performed to detect malignancies. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and fluorescence in situ hybridization tests can be used to detect carcinoma of the urinary bladder. These tests are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 75.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Aggarwal KP, Narula S, Kakkar M, et al: Nephrolithiasis: molecular mechanism of renal stone formation and the critical role played by modulators, *Biomed Res Int* 2013:292953, 2013.

Comprehensive review of renal stone formation, emphasizing the role of inhibitors/promoters in calcium oxalate crystallisation.

Arcidiacono T, Mingione A, Macrina L, et al: Idiopathic Calcium Nephrolithiasis: A review of pathogenic mechanisms in the light of genetic studies, *Am J Nephrol* 40:499–506, 2014.

A review of potential contribution of genetic polymorphisms to nephrolithiasis, including genes coding for proteins regulating tubular phosphate and calcium reabsorption, preventing calcium salt precipitation, and coding for a water channel in the proximal tubule.

Besur S, Hou W, Schmeltzer P, et al: Clinically important features of porphyrin and heme metabolism and the porphyrias, *Metabolites* 4:977–1006, 2014.

A comprehensive review of the genetic, clinical, and laboratory features of the porphyrias.

Ben-Ezra J, Bork L, McPherson RA: Evaluation of the Sysmex UF-100 automated urinalysis analyzer, *Clin Chem* 44:92–95, 1998.

In this study, the authors compare the Sysmex UF-100 automated urinalysis analyzer with manual microscopy. The UF-100 showed good correlation with microscopy for detection of cellular elements and casts in the urine.

Davis R, Jones JS, Barocas DA, et al: Diagnosis, evaluation and follow-up of asymptomatic microhematuria (AMH) in adults: AUA guideline, *J Urol* 188:2473–2481, 2012.

The authors present a systematic approach to the diagnostic evaluation and monitoring of patients with asymptomatic microhematuria.

Dinda AK, Saxena S, Guleria S, et al: Diagnosis of glomerular haematuria: role of dysmorphic red cell, G1 cell, and bright-field microscopy, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 57:203–208, 1997.

This study shows that the presence of dysmorphic red blood cells in the urine has excellent sensitivity (82%) and specificity (100%) in the diagnosis of glomerular disease.

Echeverry G, Hortin GL, Rai AJ: Introduction to urinalysis: historical perspectives and clinical application, *Methods Mol Biol* 641:1–12, 2010.

A review of the process and clinical significance of urinalysis from a historical perspective.

Gerber LM, Johnson K, Alderman MH: Assessment of a new dipstick test in the screening for microalbuminuria in patients with hypertension, *Am J Hypertens* 11:1321–1327, 1998.

The authors examine the applicability of a urine dipstick method in detecting microalbuminuria. Specificity with this test was 90%, with a negative predictive value of 93% to 97%. Comparison between random and 24-hour urines showed good correlation.

Hemmelgarn BR, Manns BJ, Lloyd A, et al: Relation between kidney function, proteinuria, and adverse outcomes, *J Am Med Assoc* 303:423–429, 2010.

This article shows a strong association between proteinuria and the adverse outcomes of mortality, myocardial infarction, and progression to kidney failure independent of the commonly used estimated glomerular filtration rate.

Fogazzi GB, Pallotti F, Garigali G: Atypical/malignant urothelial cells in routine urinary sediment: Worth knowing and reporting, *Clin Chim Acta* 439:107–111, 2015.

The authors demonstrate the feasibility of identifying bladder carcinoma by routine urine sediment examination and review the criteria for the identification of neoplastic cells.

Foxman B: Urinary tract infection syndromes: occurrence, recurrence, bacteriology, risk factors, and disease burden, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 28:1–13, 2014.

A comprehensive review of the pathogenesis and clinical features of urinary tract infections.

Gale DP: How benign is hematuria? Using genetics to predict prognosis, *Pediatr Nephrol* 28:1183–1193, 2013.

A review of microscopic hematuria in children, emphasizing the importance of genetic testing in the identification of patients with Alport syndrome and other diseases.

Garg P, Rabelink T: Glomerular proteinuria: a complex interplay between unique players, *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis* 18:233–242, 2011.

A review of the pathophysiology of proteinuria in light of new discoveries regarding genetic changes that affect the structure and function of the components of the glomerular filtration barrier.

Jefferson JA, Shankland SJ, Pichler RH: Proteinuria in diabetic kidney disease: a mechanistic viewpoint, *Kidney Int* 74:22–36, 2008.

This comprehensive review describes the pathophysiology of proteinuria through damage to the glomerulus with emphasis on the glomerular filtration barrier at the cellular level.

Lamb EJ, MacKenzie F, Stevens PE: How should proteinuria be detected and measured? *Ann Clin Biochem* 46:205–217, 2009.

This review covers current guidelines for measurement of protein in urine, emphasizing the merits of assays for albumin over total protein to assess glomerular protein loss in chronic kidney disease but with consideration for loss of other proteins in tubular proteinuria.

Lamb EJ, McTaggart MP, Stevens PE: Why albumin to creatinine ratio should replace protein to creatinine ratio: it is not just about nephrologists, *Ann Clin Biochem* 50:301–305, 2013.

A review of the diagnostic advantages of the albumin-to-creatinine ratio in comparison to the protein-to-creatinine ratio of the diagnosis of microalbuminuria.

Nicolle LE: Urinary tract infections in special populations: diabetes, renal transplant, HIV infection, and spinal cord injury, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 28:91–104, 2014.

A review of the unique problems of diagnosing and treating urinary tract infections in immunosuppressed patients and other special patient populations.

Perkovic V, Verdon C, Ninomiya T, et al: The relationship between proteinuria and coronary risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *PLoS Med* 5:e207, 2008.

This meta-analysis of 26 cohort studies demonstrated a strong and continuous association between proteinuria and risk for coronary artery disease, suggesting that proteinuria should be used in the risk assessment of cardiovascular disease.

Rockall AG, Newman-Sanders AP, al-Kutoubi MA, et al: Haematuria, *Postgrad Med J* 73:129–136, 1997.

This is a review article on hematuria from a clinical perspective. It proposes a rational algorithm for the laboratory and clinical workup of patients with hematuria.

Strohmaier WL, Hoelz KJ, Bichler KH: Spot urine samples for the metabolic evaluation of urolithiasis patients, *Eur Urol* 32:294–300, 1997.

This study describes the clinical and laboratory workup of urolithiasis patients. Spot urines were equally as informative as 24-hour urines in the evaluation of these patients.

Yoo YM, Tatsumi N, Kirihigashi K, et al: Inaccuracy and inefficiency of urinary sediment analysis, *Osaka City Med J* 41:41–48, 1995.

In this study, the authors examined the laboratory characteristics of manual urine microscopy. Counts of cellular elements, but not casts, showed good reproducibility, even by inexperienced technologists. Most of the casts found were nonpathologic hyaline casts.

REFERENCES

Aggarwal KP, Narula S, Kakkar M, et al: Nephrolithiasis: molecular mechanism of renal stone formation and the critical role played by modulators, *Biomed Res Int* 2013:292953, 2013.

Akin OK, Serdar MA, Cizmeci Z, et al: Comparison of LabUMat-with-UriSed and iQ200 fully automatic urine sediment analysers with manual urine analysis, *Biotechnol Appl Biochem* 53:139–144, 2009.

Ali SZ, Rosenthal DL, Ali TZ, et al: *Atlas of urinary cytopathology with histopathologic correlations*, ed 1, New York, 2009, Demos Medical Publishing.

Anderson NG, Anderson NL, Tollaksen SL: Proteins of human urine. I. Concentration and analysis by two-dimensional electrophoresis, *Clin Chem* 25:1119–1210, 1979.

Andrews NC: Disorders of iron metabolism, *N Engl J Med* 341:1986–1995, 1999.

Andrews NC: Molecular control of iron metabolism, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 18:159–169, 2005.

Angelini C: Spectrum of metabolic myopathies, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1852:615–621, 2015.

Arao S, Matsuura S, Nonomura M, et al: Measurement of urinary lactoferrin as a marker of urinary tract infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:553–557, 1999.

Arcidiacono T, Mingione A, Macrina L, et al: Idiopathic calcium nephrolithiasis: a review of pathogenic mechanisms in the light of genetic studies, *Am J Nephrol* 40:499–506, 2014.

Armstrong LE, Soto JA, Hacker FT Jr, et al: Urinary indices during dehydration, exercise, and rehydration, *Int J Sport Nutr* 8:345–355, 1998.

Asplin J, Parks J, Lingeman J, et al: Supersaturation and stone composition in a network of dispersed treatment sites, *J Urol* 159:1821–1825, 1998.

Aycock RD, Kass DA: Abnormal urine color, *South Med J* 105:43–47, 2012.

Bagga HS, Chi T, Miller J, et al: New insights into the pathogenesis of renal calculi, *Urol Clin North Am* 40:1–12, 2013.

Baines RJ, Brunskill NJ: Tubular toxicity of proteinuria, *Nat Rev Nephrol* 7:177–180, 2011.

Bakris GL: Microalbuminuria: prognostic implications, *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens* 5:219–223, 1996.

Balwani M, Desnick RJ: The porphyrias: advances in diagnosis and treatment, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2012:19–27, 2012.

Barkan GA, Wojcik EM: Genitourinary cytopathology (kidney and urinary tract), *Cancer Treat Res* 160:149–183, 2014.

Bataille P, Fardellone P, Ghazali A, et al: Pathophysiology and treatment of idiopathic hypercalciuria, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 10:373–388, 1998.

Baumann JM, Affolter B: From crystalluria to kidney stones, some physicochemical aspects of calcium nephrolithiasis, *World J Nephrol* 3:256–267, 2014.

Belmonte MM, Sarkozy E, Harpur E: Urine sugar determination by the two drop Clinitest method, *Diabetes* 16:557, 1967.

Ben-Ezra J, Bork L, McPherson RA: Evaluation of the Sysmex UF-100 automated urinalysis analyzer, *Clin Chem* 44:92–95, 1998.

Benoit G, Machuca E, Antignac C: Hereditary nephrotic syndrome: a systematic approach for genetic testing and a review of associated podocyte gene mutations, *Pediatr Nephrol* 25:1621–1632, 2010.

Besur S, Hou W, Schmeltzer P, et al: Clinically important features of porphyrin and heme metabolism and the porphyrias, *Metabolites* 4:977–1006, 2014.

Blondheim SH, Margoliash E, Shafrir E: A simple test for myohemoglobinuria (myoglobinuria), *J Am Med Assoc* 167:453–454, 1958.

Bowden FJ: Reappraising the value of urine leukocyte esterase testing in the age of nucleic acid amplification, *Sex Transm Dis* 25:322–326, 1998.

Brimo F, Vollmer RT, Case B, et al: Accuracy of urine cytology and the significance of an atypical category, *Am J Clin Pathol* 132:785–793, 2009.

Bruno C, Minetti C, Shanske S, et al: Combined defects of muscle phosphofructokinase and AMP deaminase in a child with myoglobinuria, *Neurology* 50:296–298, 1998.

Brunzel NA: Physical examination of urine. In Brunzel NA, editor: *Fundamentals of urine and body fluid analysis*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders, pp 91–108.

Bullimore SP, Keyworth C: Finding diabetes—a method of screening in general practice, *Br J Gen Pract* 47:371–374, 1997.

Caridi G, Trivelli A, Sanna-Cherchi S, et al: Familial forms of nephrotic syndrome, *Pediatr Nephrol* 25:241–252, 2010.

Certikova-Chabova V, Tesar V: Recent insights into the pathogenesis of nephrotic syndrome, *Minerva Med* 104:333–347, 2013.

Cervellin G, Comelli I, Lippi G: Rhabdomyolysis: historical background, clinical, diagnostic and therapeutic features, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 48:749–756, 2010.

Chiang SC, Li SF: Separation of porphyrins by capillary electrophoresis in fused-silica and ethylene vinyl acetate copolymer capillaries with visible absorbance detection, *Biomed Chromatogr* 11:366–370, 1997.

Cochat P, Rumsby G: Primary hyperoxaluria, *N Engl J Med* 369:649–658, 2013.

Cockcroft DW, Gault MH: Prediction of creatinine clearance from serum creatinine, *Nephron* 16:31–41, 1976.

Cook JD, Strauss KA, Caplan YH, et al: Urine pH: the effects of time and temperature after collection, *J Anal Toxicol* 31:486–496, 2007.

Coolen JC, Verhaeghe J: Physiology and clinical value of glycosuria after a glucose challenge during pregnancy, *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 150:132–136, 2010.

Cortvriend J, Van Nuffel J, Van den Bosch H, et al: Non-parasitic chyluria: a case report and review of the literature, *Acta Urol Belg* 66:11–15, 1998.

Cotten SW, McCudden CR: What is your guess? The case of the blue-green urine, *Clin Chem* 57:646–647, 2011.

Dallosso HM, Bodicoat DH, Campbell M, et al: Self-monitoring of blood glucose versus self-monitoring of urine glucose in adults with newly diagnosed Type 2 diabetes receiving structured education: a cluster randomized controlled trial, *Diabet Med* 32:414–422, 2015.

Davidsohn I, Henry JB, editors: *Todd-Sanford clinical diagnosis by laboratory methods*, ed 15, Philadelphia, 1974, Saunders.

Davis R, Jones JS, Barocas DA, et al: Diagnosis, evaluation and follow-up of asymptomatic microhematuria (AMH) in adults: AUA guideline, *J Urol* 188:2473–2481, 2012.

de Mendoza SG, Kashyap ML, Chen CY, et al: High density lipoproteinuria in nephrotic syndrome, *Metabolism* 25:1143–1149, 1976.

Deacon AC, Peters TJ: Identification of acute porphyria: evaluation of a commercial screening test for urinary porphobilinogen, *Ann Clin Biochem* 35(Pt 6):726–732, 1998.

Deutsch JC: Gas chromatographic/mass spectrometric measurement of ascorbic acid and analysis of ascorbic acid degradation in solution, *Methods Enzymol* 279:13–24, 1997.

Dinda AK, Saxena S, Guleria S, et al: Diagnosis of glomerular haematuria: role of dysmorphic red cell, G1 cell and bright-field microscopy, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 57:203–208, 1997.

Echeverry G, Hortin GL, Rai AJ: Introduction to urinalysis: historical perspectives and clinical application, *Methods Mol Biol* 641:1–12, 2010.

El-Achkar TM, Wu XR: Uromodulin in kidney injury: an instigator, bystander, or protector? *Am J Kidney Dis* 59:452–461, 2012.

Erkan E: Proteinuria and progression of glomerular diseases, *Pediatr Nephrol* 28:1049–1058, 2013.

Erlinger S, Arias IM, Dhumeaux D: Inherited disorders of bilirubin transport and conjugation: new insights into molecular mechanisms and consequences, *Gastroenterology* 146:1625–1638, 2014.

European Confederation of Laboratory Medicine: European urinalysis guidelines, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest Suppl* 231:1–86, 2000.

Farrington CJ, Liddy ML, Chalmers AH: A simplified sensitive method for the analysis of renal calculi, *Am J Clin Pathol* 73:96–99, 1980.

Favaro S, Bonfante L, D'Angelo A, et al: Is the red cell morphology really useful to detect the source of hematuria? *Am J Nephrol* 17:172–175, 1997.

Fenili D, Pirovano B: The automation of sediment urinalysis using a new urine flow cytometer (UF-100), *Clin Chem Lab Med* 36:909–917, 1998.

Flannigan R, Choy WH, Chew B, et al: Renal struvite stones—pathogenesis, microbiology, and management strategies, *Nat Rev Urol* 11:333–341, 2014.

Fleming C, Brouwer R, van Alphen A, et al: UF-1000i: validation of the body fluid mode for counting cells in body fluids, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 52:1781–1790, 2014.

Fogazzi GB, Edefonti A, Garigali G, et al: Urine erythrocyte morphology in patients with microscopic haematuria caused by a glomerulopathy, *Pediatr Nephrol* 23:1093–1100, 2008.

Fogazzi GB, Pallotti F, Garigali G: Atypical/malignant urothelial cells in routine urinary sediment: Worth knowing and reporting, *Clin Chim Acta* 439:107–111, 2015.

Fogazzi GB, Saglimbeni L, Banfi G, et al: Urinary sediment features in proliferative and non-proliferative glomerular diseases, *J Nephrol* 18:703–710, 2005.

Foxman B: Urinary tract infection syndromes: occurrence, recurrence, bacteriology, risk factors, and disease burden, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 28:1–13, 2014.

Fracchia JA, Motta J, Miller LS, et al: Evaluation of asymptomatic microhematuria, *Urology* 46:484–489, 1995.

Free HM, editor: *Modern urine chemistry*, New York, 1996, Bayer Corporation.

Friderichsen B, Maunsbach M: Glycosuric tests should not be employed in population screenings for NIDDM, *J Public Health Med* 19:55–60, 1997.

Fukuzaki A, Kaneto H, Ikeda S, et al: Determining the origin of hematuria by immunocytochemical staining of erythrocytes in urine for Tamm-Horsfall protein, *J Urol* 155:248–251, 1996.

Gai M, Piccoli GB, Segoloni GP, et al: Microscopic urinalysis and automated flow cytometry in a nephrology laboratory, *Clin Chem* 49:1559–1560, 2003.

Gale DP: How benign is hematuria? Using genetics to predict prognosis, *Pediatr Nephrol* 28:1183–1193, 2013.

Garg P, Rabelink T: Glomerular proteinuria: a complex interplay between unique players, *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis* 18:233–242, 2011.

Gerber LM, Johnston K, Alderman MH: Assessment of a new dipstick test in screening for microalbuminuria in patients with hypertension, *Am J Hypertens* 11:1321–1327, 1998.

Ginsberg JM, Chang BS, Matarese RA, et al: Use of single voided urine samples to estimate quantitative proteinuria, *N Engl J Med* 309:1543–1546, 1983.

Gomez B Jr, Ardakani S, Evans BJ, et al: Monoclonal antibody assay for free urinary pyridinium cross-links, *Clin Chem* 42:1168–1175, 1996.

Graziani M, Merlini G, Petrini C, et al: Guidelines for the analysis of Bence Jones protein, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 41:338–346, 2003.

Gribble RK, Meier PR, Berg RL: The value of urine screening for glucose at each prenatal visit, *Obstet Gynecol* 86:405–410, 1995.

Guldberg P, Levy HL, Hanley WB, et al: Phenylalanine hydroxylase gene mutations in the United States: report from the Maternal PKU Collaborative Study, *Am J Hum Genet* 59:84–94, 1996.

Haber MH: Pisse prophecy: a brief history of urinalysis, *Clin Lab Med* 8:415–430, 1988.

Hebert LA, Dillon JJ, Middendorf DF, et al: Relationship between appearance of urinary red blood cell/white blood cell casts and the onset of renal relapse in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Am J Kidney Dis* 26:432–438, 1995.

Hemmelgarn BR, Manns BJ, Lloyd A, et al: Relation between kidney function, proteinuria, and adverse outcomes, *JAMA* 303:423–429, 2010.

Henry JB, editor: *Clinical diagnosis and management by laboratory methods*, ed 16, Philadelphia, 1979, Saunders.

Henry JB, editor: *Clinical diagnosis and management by laboratory methods*, ed 17, Philadelphia, 1984, Saunders.

Henry JB, editor: *Clinical diagnosis and management by laboratory methods*, ed 19, Philadelphia, 1996, Saunders.

Holmes E, Foxall PJ, Spraul M, et al: 750 MHz 1H NMR spectroscopy characterisation of the complex metabolic pattern of urine from patients with inborn errors of metabolism: 2-hydroxyglutaric aciduria and maple syrup urine disease, *J Pharm Biomed Anal* 15:1647–1659, 1997.

Horikoshi S, Okuda M, Nishimura E, et al: Usefulness of HPLC assay for early detection of microalbuminuria in chronic kidney disease, *J Clin Lab Anal* 27:333–338, 2013.

Houillier P, Boulanger H: Hypercalciuria, *Rev Prat* 48:1213–1217, 1998.

Hughes C, Roebuck MJ: Evaluation of the IRIS 939 UDx flow microscope as a screening system for urinary tract infection, *J Clin Pathol* 56:844–849, 2003.

Imran S, Eva G, Christopher S, et al: Is specific gravity a good estimate of urine osmolality? *J Clin Lab Anal* 24:426–430, 2010.

Itoh Y, Sakabe K, Kwai T: Basic fetoprotein in normal and pathologic urine, *Ren Fail* 20:239–241, 1998.

Ivanova E, De Leo MG, De Matteis MA, et al: Cystinosis: clinical presentation, pathogenesis and treatment, *Pediatr Endocrinol Rev* 12(Suppl 1):176–184, 2014.

Jefferson JA, Shankland SJ, Pichler RH: Proteinuria in diabetic kidney disease: a mechanistic viewpoint, *Kidney Int* 74:22–36, 2008.

Jiang T, Chen P, Ouyang J, et al: Urine particles analysis: performance evaluation of Sysmex UF-1000i and comparison among urine flow cytometer, dipstick, and visual microscopic examination, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 71:30–37, 2011.

Johnson CD, Mole DR, Pestridge A: Postprandial alkaline tide: does it exist? *Digestion* 56:100–106, 1995.

Jones RM, Lamb JH, Lim CK: Urinary porphyrin profiles by laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry without the use of classical matrices, *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom* 9:921–923, 1995.

Joshi S, Andersen R, Jespersen B, et al: Genetics of steroid-resistant nephrotic syndrome: a review of mutation spectrum and suggested approach for genetic testing, *Acta Paediatr* 102:844–856, 2013.

Jou WW, Powers RD: Utility of dipstick urinalysis as a guide to management of adults with suspected infection or hematuria, *South Med J* 91:266–269, 1998.

Kadkhoda K, Manickam K, Degagne P, et al: UF-1000i flow cytometry is an effective screening method for urine specimens, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 69:130–136, 2011.

Kayalp D, Dogan K, Ceylan G, et al: Can routine automated urinalysis reduce culture requests? *Clin Biochem* 46:1285–1289, 2013.

Kazi SN, Benz RL: Work-up of Hematuria, *Prim Care* 41:737–748, 2014.

Kesson AM, Talbott JM, Gyory AZ: Microscopic examination of urine, *Lancet* 2:809–812, 1978.

Keverline JP: Recurrent rhabdomyolysis associated with influenza-like illness in a weight-lifter, *J Sports Med Phys Fitness* 38:177–179, 1998.

Khan SR, Atmani F, Glenton P, et al: Lipids and membranes in the organic matrix of urinary calcific crystals and stones, *Calcif Tissue Int* 59:357–365, 1996.

Khejonnit V, Pratumvinit B, Reesukumal K, et al: Optimal criteria for microscopic review of urinalysis following use of automated urine analyzer, *Clin Chim Acta* 439:1–4, 2015.

Killander J, Sjolin S, Zaar B: Rapid tests for ketonuria. A comparative study, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 14:311–314, 1962.

Koss LG, Hoda RS, editors: *Koss's cytology of the urinary tract with histopathologic correlations*, 2012 ed, Heidelberg, 2012, Springer.

Kraut JA, Madias NE: Lactic acidosis, *N Engl J Med* 371:2309–2319, 2014.

Kunin CM, DeGroot JE: Self-screening for significant bacteriuria. Evaluation of dip-strip combination nitrite/culture test, *JAMA* 231:1349–1353, 1975.

Kutter D: A chemical test strip to determine low concentrations of albumin and creatinine in urine, *Lab Med* 29:769–772, 1998.

Kwong T, Robinson C, Spencer D, et al: Accuracy of urine pH testing in a regional metabolic renal clinic: is the dipstick accurate enough? *Urolithiasis* 41:129–132, 2013.

Lamb EJ, MacKenzie F, Stevens PE: How should proteinuria be detected and measured? *Ann Clin Biochem* 46:205–217, 2009.

Lamb EJ, McTaggart MP, Stevens PE: Why albumin to creatinine ratio should replace protein to creatinine ratio: it is not just about nephrologists, *Ann Clin Biochem* 50:301–305, 2013.

Levey AS, Coresh J, Balk E, et al: National Kidney Foundation practice guidelines for chronic kidney disease: evaluation, classification, and stratification, *Ann Intern Med* 139:137–147, 2003.

Levitt DG, Levitt MD: Quantitative assessment of the multiple processes responsible for bilirubin homeostasis in health and disease, *Clin Exp Gastroenterol* 7:307–328, 2014.

Levy Y, George J, Ziporen L, et al: Massive proteinuria as a main manifestation of primary antiphospholipid syndrome, *Pathobiology* 66:49–52, 1998.

Livsey SA: Turbidimetric urine screening, *Br J Biomed Sci* 52:71–73, 1995.

Lizana J, Brito M, Davis MR: Assessment of five quantitative methods for determination of total proteins in urine, *Clin Biochem* 10:89–93, 1977.

Loun B, Astles R, Copeland KR, et al: Adaptation of a quantitative immunoassay for urine myoglobin. Predictor in detecting renal dysfunction, *Am J Clin Pathol* 105:479–486, 1996.

Luceri C, Caderni G, Lodovici M, et al: Urinary excretion of sucrose and fructose as a predictor of sucrose intake in dietary intervention studies, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 5:167–171, 1996.

Luo J, Lamb JH, Lim CK: Analysis of urinary and faecal porphyrin excretion patterns in human porphyrias by fast atom bombardment mass spectrometry, *J Pharm Biomed Anal* 15:1289–1294, 1997.

Luo JL, Deka J, Lim CK: Determination of 5-aminolaevulinic acid dehydratase activity in erythrocytes and porphobilinogen in urine by micellar electrokinetic capillary chromatography, *J Chromatogr A* 722:353–357, 1996.

Lyon ME, Ball CL, Lyon AW, et al: A preliminary evaluation of the interaction between urine specific gravity and leukocyte esterase results using Bayer Multistix and the Clinitek 500, *Clin Biochem* 36:579–581, 2003.

Machuca E, Benoit G, Antignac C: Genetics of nephrotic syndrome: connecting molecular genetics to podocyte physiology, *Hum Mol Genet* 18:R185–R194, 2009.

Manoni F, Tinello A, Fornasiero L, et al: Urine particle evaluation: a comparison between the UF-1000i and quantitative microscopy, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 48:1107–1111, 2010.

Margulis V, Sagalowsky AI: Assessment of hematuria, *Med Clin North Am* 95:153–159, 2011.

Martinez MH, Bottini PV, Levy CE, et al: UriSed as a screening tool for presumptive diagnosis of urinary tract infection, *Clin Chim Acta* 425:77–79, 2013.

McElderry LA, Tarbit IF, Cassells-Smith AJ: Six methods for urinary protein compared, *Clin Chem* 28:356–360, 1982.

McGregor DO, Lynn KL, Bailey RR, et al: Clinical audit of the use of renal biopsy in the management of isolated microscopic hematuria, *Clin Nephrol* 49:345–348, 1998.

Meng QH, Handy B, Wagar E: Confirmatory testing of urine ketones and bilirubin: still necessary? *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 137:1028–1029, 2013a.

Meng QH, Handy B, Wagar EA: It's not easy being blue-green, *Ann Lab Med* 33:457–458, 2013b.

Misra S, Oliver NS: Utility of ketone measurement in the prevention, diagnosis and management of diabetic ketoacidosis, *Diabet Med* 32:14–23, 2015.

Miyajima H, Orii KE, Shindo Y, et al: Mitochondrial trifunctional protein deficiency associated with recurrent myoglobinuria in adolescence, *Neurology* 49:833–837, 1997.

Mody L, Juthani-Mehta M: Urinary tract infections in older women: a clinical review, *JAMA* 311:844–854, 2014.

Mogensen CE: Microalbuminuria predicts clinical proteinuria and early mortality in maturity-onset diabetes, *N Engl J Med* 310:356–360, 1984.

Mori R, Yonemoto N, Fitzgerald A, et al: Diagnostic performance of urine dipstick testing in children with suspected UTI: a systematic review of relationship with age and comparison with microscopy, *Acta Paediatr* 99:581–584, 2010.

Mount DL, Green MD, Zucker JR, et al: Field detection of sulfonamides in urine: the development of a new and sensitive test, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 55:250–253, 1996.

Mudd SH: Hypermethioninemias of genetic and nongenetic origin: A review, *Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet* 157C:3–32, 2011.

Muriithi AK, Nasr SH, Leung N: Utility of urine eosinophils in the diagnosis of acute interstitial nephritis, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 8:1857–1862, 2013.

Nagahama D, Yoshiko K, Watanabe M, et al: A useful new classification of dysmorphic urinary erythrocytes, *Clin Exp Nephrol* 9:304–309, 2005.

Nakanishi N, Fukui M, Tanaka M, et al: Low urine pH is a predictor of chronic kidney disease, *Kidney Blood Press Res* 35:77–81, 2012.

Naumova NN, Schappert J, Kaplan LA: Reducing substances in urine: a paradigm for changes in a standard test, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 36:447–448, 2006.

Nguyen GK: Urine cytology in renal glomerular disease and value of G1 cell in the diagnosis of glomerular bleeding, *Diagn Cytopathol* 29:67–73, 2003.

Nicolle LE: Urinary tract infections in special populations: diabetes, renal transplant, HIV infection, and spinal cord injury, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 28:91–104, 2014.

O'Connor WJ, Murphy GM, Darby C, et al: Porphyrin abnormalities in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, *Arch Dermatol* 132:1443–1447, 1996.

Olivieri B, Rai AJ: A primer on clinical applications and assays using urine: focus on analysis of plasma cell dyscrasias using automated electrophoresis and immunofixation, *Methods Mol Biol* 641:13–26, 2010.

Ooi SB, Kour NW, Mahadev A: Haematuria in the diagnosis of urinary calculi, *Ann Acad Med Singapore* 27:210–214, 1998.

Ottiger C, Huber AR: Quantitative urine particle analysis: integrative approach for the optimal combination of automation with UF-100 and microscopic review with KOVA cell chamber, *Clin Chem* 49:617–623, 2003.

Panholzer TJ, Beyer J, Lichtwald K: Coupled-column liquid chromatographic analysis of catecholamines, serotonin, and metabolites in human urine, *Clin Chem* 45:262–268, 1999.

Penders J, Fiers T, Delanghe JR: Quantitative evaluation of urinalysis test strips, *Clin Chem* 48:2236–2241, 2002.

Perkovic V, Verdon C, Ninomiya T, et al: The relationship between proteinuria and coronary risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *PLoS Med* 5:e207, 2008.

Rampoldi L, Scolari F, Amoroso A, et al: The rediscovery of uromodulin (Tamm-Horsfall protein): from tubulointerstitial nephropathy to chronic kidney disease, *Kidney Int* 80:338–347, 2011.

Rasoulpour M, Banco L, Laut JM, et al: Inability of community-based laboratories to identify pathological casts in urine samples, *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 150:1201–1204, 1996.

Reilly AA, Bellisario R, Pass KA: Multivariate discrimination for phenylketonuria (PKU) and non-PKU hyperphenylalaninemia after analysis of newborns' dried blood-spot specimens for six amino acids by ion-exchange chromatography, *Clin Chem* 44:317–326, 1998.

Rendl J, Bier D, Groh T, et al: Rapid urinary iodide test, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:1007–1012, 1998.

Robinson RR, Glover SN, Phillippi PJ, et al: Fixed and reproducible orthostatic proteinuria. I. Light microscopic studies of the kidney, *Am J Pathol* 39:291–306, 1961.

Rockall AG, Newman-Sanders AP, al-Kutoubi MA, et al: Haematuria, *Postgrad Med J* 73:129–136, 1997.

Rose MR, Kissel JT, Bickley LS, et al: Sustained myoglobinuria: the presenting manifestation of dermatomyositis, *Neurology* 47:119–123, 1996.

Roshan B, Stanton RC: A story of microalbuminuria and diabetic nephropathy, *J Nephropathol* 2:234–240, 2013.

Ryan Caballes F, Sendi H, Bonkovsky HL: Hepatitis C, porphyria cutanea tarda and liver iron: an update, *Liver Int* 32:880–893, 2012.

Sacks DB, Arnold M, Bakris GL, et al: Guidelines and recommendations for laboratory analysis in the diagnosis and management of diabetes mellitus, *Clin Chem* 57:e1–e47, 2011.

Saravakos P, Kokkinou V, Giannatos E: Cystinuria: current diagnosis and management, *Urology* 83:693–699, 2014.

Sarnak MJ, Astor BC: Implications of proteinuria: CKD progression and cardiovascular outcomes, *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis* 18:258–266, 2011.

Scales CD Jr, Smith AC, Hanley JM, et al: Prevalence of kidney stones in the United States, *Eur Urol* 62:160–165, 2012.

Schwartz S, Shorov V, Watson CJ: Studies of urobilinogen. IV. Quantitative determination of urobilinogen by means of Evelyn photoelectric colorimeter, *Am J Clin Pathol* 14:598–604, 1944.

Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WS, et al: *Metabolic basis of inherited diseases*, ed 6, New York, 1989, McGraw-Hill.

Sharp LJ, Haller RG: Metabolic and mitochondrial myopathies, *Neurol Clin* 32:777–799, ix, 2014.

Sharp VJ, Barnes KT, Erickson BA: Assessment of asymptomatic microscopic hematuria in adults, *Am Fam Physician* 88:747–754, 2013.

Shekarriz B, Stoller ML: Uric acid nephrolithiasis: current concepts and controversies, *J Urol* 168:1307–1314, 2002.

Shihabi ZK: Myoglobinuria detection by capillary electrophoresis, *J Chromatogr B Biomed Appl* 669:53–58, 1995.

Sidhu H, Hoppe B, Hesse A, et al: Absence of Oxalobacter formigenes in cystic fibrosis patients: a risk factor for hyperoxaluria, *Lancet* 352:1026–1029, 1998.

Simo-Alfonso EF, Ramis-Ramos G, Garcia-Alvarez-Coque MC, et al: Determination of sulphonamides in human urine by azo dye precolumn derivatization and micellar liquid chromatography, *J Chromatogr B Biomed Appl* 670:183–187, 1995.

Singh PP, Pendse AK, Ahmed A, et al: A study of recurrent stone formers with special reference to renal tubular acidosis, *Urol Res* 23:201–203, 1995.
Spinelli D, Consonni D, Garigali G, et al: Waxy casts in the urinary sediment of patients with different types of glomerular diseases: results of a prospective study, *Clin Chim Acta* 424:47–52, 2013.
St John A, Boyd JC, Lowes AJ, et al: The use of urinary dipstick tests to exclude urinary tract infection: a systematic review of the literature, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126:428–436, 2006.
Strasinger SK, Di Lorenzo MS: Physical examination of urine. In Strasinger SK, Di Lorenzo MS, editors: *Urinalysis and body fluids*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2014, F.A. Davis, pp 59–70.
Strohmaier WL, Hoelz KJ, Bichler KH: Spot urine samples for the metabolic evaluation of urolithiasis patients, *Eur Urol* 32:294–300, 1997.
Takemura Y, Ishida H, Inoue Y, et al: Opportunistic discovery of occult disease by use of test panels in new, symptomatic primary care outpatients: yield and cost of case finding, *Clin Chem* 46:1091–1098, 2000.
Thomas K, Wong K, Withington J, et al: Cystinuria—a urologist's perspective, *Nat Rev Urol* 11:270–277, 2014.
Threatte GA: Laboratory evaluation of renal function in the elderly. In Michelis MF, Davis BB, Preuss HG, editors: *Geriatric nephrology*, New York, 1986, Field, Rich and Associates, Inc., pp 18–21.
Tramonti G, Kanwar YS: Review and discussion of tubular biomarkers in the diagnosis and management of diabetic nephropathy, *Endocrine* 43:494–503, 2013.
Tryggvason K, Patrakka J, Wartiovaara J: Hereditary proteinuria syndromes and mechanisms of proteinuria, *N Engl J Med* 354:1387–1401, 2006.
Tsai JJ, Yeun JY, Kumar VA, et al: Comparison and interpretation of urinalysis performed by a nephrologist versus a hospital-based clinical laboratory, *Am J Kidney Dis* 46:820–829, 2005.
Tworek JA, Wilkinson DS, Walsh MK: The rate of manual microscopic examination of urine sediment: a College of American Pathologists Q-Probes study of 11,243 urinalysis tests from 88 institutions, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 132:1868–1873, 2008.
van den Broek D, Keularts IM, Wielders JP, et al: Benefits of the iQ200 automated urine microscopy analyser in routine urinalysis, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 46:1635–1640, 2008.
Verdesca S, Fogazzi GB, Garigali G, et al: Crystalluria: prevalence, different types of crystals and the role of infrared spectroscopy, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 49:515–520, 2011.
Verma V, Kant R, Sunnoqrot N, et al: Proteinuria in the elderly: evaluation and management, *Int Urol Nephrol* 44:1745–1751, 2012.
Viberti GC, Hill RD, Jarrett RJ, et al: Microalbuminuria as a predictor of clinical nephropathy in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *Lancet* 1:1430–1432, 1982.
Viswanathan G, Upadhyay A: Assessment of proteinuria, *Adv Chronic Kidney Dis* 18:243–248, 2011.
Vogeser M, Stauch T: Evaluation of a commercially available rapid urinary porphobilinogen test, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 49:1491–1494, 2011.
Voinescu GC, Shoemaker M, Moore H, et al: The relationship between urine osmolality and specific gravity, *Am J Med Sci* 323:39–42, 2002.
Waldvogel-Abramowski S, Waeber G, Gassner C, et al: Physiology of iron metabolism, *Transfus Med Hemother* 41:213–221, 2014.
Ward JF, Kaplan GW, Mevorach R, et al: Refined microscopic urinalysis for red blood cell morphology in the evaluation of asymptomatic microscopic hematuria in a pediatric population, *J Urol* 160:1492–1495, 1998.
Weisz D, Seabrook JA, Lim RK: The presence of urinary nitrites is a significant predictor of pediatric urinary tract infection susceptibility to first- and third-generation cephalosporins, *J Emerg Med* 39:6–12, 2010.
Welch AA, Mulligan A, Bingham SA, et al: Urine pH is an indicator of dietary acid-base load, fruit and vegetables and meat intakes: results from the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC)-Norfolk population study, *Br J Nutr* 99:1335–1343, 2008.
Whatley SD, Badminton MN: Role of genetic testing in the management of patients with inherited porphyria and their families, *Ann Clin Biochem* 50:204–216, 2013.
White SL, Yu R, Craig JC, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of urine dipsticks for detection of albuminuria in the general community, *Am J Kidney Dis* 58:19–28, 2011.
Wockenfus AM, Koch CD, Conlon PM, et al: Discordance between urine pH measured by dipstick and pH meter: implications for methotrexate administration protocols, *Clin Biochem* 46:152–154, 2013.
Wong WK, Wieringa GE, Stec Z, et al: A comparison of three procedures for the detection of Bence-Jones proteinuria, *Ann Clin Biochem* 34(Pt 4):371–374, 1997.
Wright OR, Safranek S: Urine dipstick for diagnosing urinary tract infection, *Am Fam Physician* 73:129–130, 2006.
Wu X: Urinalysis: a review of methods and procedures, *Crit Care Nurs Clin North Am* 22:121–128, 2010.
Yoo YM, Tatsumi N, Kirihigashi K, et al: Inaccuracy and inefficiency of urinary sediment analysis, *Osaka City Med J* 41:41–48, 1995.
Yuksel H, Kilic E, Ekinci A, et al: Comparison of fully automated urine sediment analyzers H800-FUS100 and LabUMat-UriSed with manual microscopy, *J Clin Lab Anal* 27:312–316, 2013.
Zaman Z, Borremans A, Verhaegen J, et al: Disappointing dipstick screening for urinary tract infection in hospital inpatients, *J Clin Pathol* 51:471–472, 1998.
Zaman Z, Proesmans W: Dysmorphic erythrocytes and G1 cells as markers of glomerular hematuria, *Pediatr Nephrol* 14:980–984, 2000.
Zelmanovitz T, Gross JL, Oliveira J, et al: Proteinuria is still useful for the screening and diagnosis of overt diabetic nephropathy, *Diabetes Care* 21:1076–1079, 1998.
Zimmerman JL, Shen MC: Rhabdomyolysis, *Chest* 144:1058–1065, 2013.
Zuijderhoudt FM, Dorresteijn-de Bok J: Comparison of the Bio-Rad Porphyrin Column Test with a simple spectrophotometric test for total urine porphyrin concentration, *Ann Clin Biochem* 35(Pt 3):418–421, 1998.
Zutt R, van der Kooi AJ, Linthorst GE, et al: Rhabdomyolysis: review of the literature, *Neuromuscul Disord* 24:651–659, 2014.

CHAPTER 29

CEREBROSPINAL, SYNOVIAL, SEROUS BODY FLUIDS, AND ALTERNATIVE SPECIMENS

Donald S. Karcher, Richard A. McPherson

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID, 481
Specimen Collection and Opening Pressure, 481
Indications and Recommended Tests, 482
Gross Examination, 482
Microscopic Examination, 483
Chemical Analysis, 486
Microbiological Examination, 491

SYNOVIAL FLUID, 493
Specimen Collection, 494
Recommended Tests, 494
Gross Examination, 494
Microscopic Examination, 494
Chemical Analysis, 497
Immunologic Studies, 497
Microbiological Examination, 497

PLEURAL FLUID, 498
Specimen Collection, 498
Transudates and Exudates, 498
Recommended Tests, 498
Gross Examination, 499
Microscopic Examination, 499
Chemical Analysis, 500
Immunologic Studies, 501
Microbiological Examination, 502

PERICARDIAL FLUID, 502
Specimen Collection, 502
Gross Examination, 502
Exudates and Transudates, 502
Microscopic Examination, 502
Chemical Analysis, 503
Immunologic Studies, 503
Microbiological Examination, 503

PERITONEAL FLUID, 503
Transudates and Exudates, 503
Specimen Collection, 504
Recommended Tests, 504
Gross Examination, 504
Microscopic Examination, 505
Chemical Analysis, 505
Microbiological Examination, 506

ALTERNATIVE SPECIMENS, 507
Saliva, 507
Meconium, 507
Hair and Nails, 507
Breath Testing, 507
Tissue Aspirates, 507
Billing for Tests in Nonstandard Specimens, 508

CHEMICAL MEASUREMENTS IN BODY FLUIDS, 508

SELECTED REFERENCES, 508

KEY POINTS

- Determining the etiologic cause of fluid accumulation in various body cavities (i.e., joints, chest, abdomen) is critical for proper treatment of these disorders.
- Appropriate laboratory examination of these fluids is therefore critical for the diagnosis of numerous diseases (i.e., bacterial, viral, and fungal infections; distinction between various arthritides; primary [i.e., mesothelioma] and metastatic malignancies; among others).
- Accurate test interpretation depends on appropriate specimen collection, physician/laboratory communication, analytically sound laboratory methods, and reliable reference values.

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

In adults, approximately 500 mL of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is produced each day (0.3 to 0.4 mL/min). The total adult volume varies from 90 to 150 mL, about 25 mL of which is in the ventricles and the remainder in the subarachnoid space. In neonates, the volume varies from 10 to 60 mL. Thus, the total CSF volume is replaced every 5 to 7 hours (Wood, 1980). An estimated 70% of CSF is derived by ultrafiltration and secretion through the choroid plexuses. The ventricular ependymal lining and the cerebral subarachnoid space account for the remainder. CSF leaves the ventricular system through the medial and lateral foramina, flowing over the brain and spinal cord surfaces within the subarachnoid space. CSF resorption occurs at the arachnoid villi, predominantly along the superior sagittal sinus.

The CSF has several major functions: (1) It provides physical support because a 1500-g brain weighs about 50 g when suspended in CSF; (2) it confers a protective effect against sudden changes in acute venous (respiratory and postural) and arterial blood pressure or impact pressure; (3) it provides an excretory waste function because the brain has no lymphatic system; (4) it is the pathway whereby hypothalamus releasing factors are transported to the cells of the median eminence; and (5) it maintains central nervous system ionic homeostasis.

The concept of the blood-brain barrier (BBB) is derived from dye-exclusion (tryphan blue) studies. It consists of two morphologically distinct components: A unique capillary endothelium held together by intercellular tight junctions; and the choroid plexus, where a single layer of specialized choroidal ependymal cells connected by tight junctions overlies fenestrated capillaries. The CSF ionic components (e.g., H^+, K^+, Ca^{++}, Mg^{++}, bicarbonate) are tightly regulated by specific transport systems, whereas glucose, urea, and creatinine diffuse freely but require 2 hours or longer to equilibrate. Proteins cross by passive diffusion at a rate dependent on the plasma-to-CSF concentration gradient and inversely proportional to their molecular weight and hydrodynamic volume (Fishman, 1992). Thus, the BBB maintains the relative homeostasis of the central nervous system environment during acute perturbations of plasma components.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION AND OPENING PRESSURE

Cerebrospinal fluid may be obtained by lumbar, cisternal, or lateral cervical puncture or through ventricular cannulas or shunts. Details of the performance of lumbar puncture are described elsewhere (Herndon & Brumback, 1989; Ward & Gushurst, 1992). Respiratory compromise may occur in infants if the head is flexed (Ward & Gushurst, 1992).

A manometer should be attached before fluid removal to record the opening pressure. CSF pressure varies with postural changes, blood pressure, venous return, Valsalva maneuvers, and factors that alter cerebral blood flow. The normal opening adult pressure is 90 to 180 mm of water in the lateral decubitus position with the legs and neck in a neutral position. It may be slightly higher if the patient is sitting up and varies up to 10 mm with respiration. However, the pressure may be as high as 250 mm of water in obese patients. In infants and young children, the normal range is 10 to 100 mm of water, with the adult range attained by 6 to 8 years of age (Fishman, 1992). Opening pressures above 250 mm H_2O are diagnostic of intracranial hypertension, which may be due to meningitis,

intracranial hemorrhage, and tumors (Seehusen et al, 2003). If the opening pressure is greater than 200 mm H_2O in a relaxed patient, no more than 2.0 mL should be withdrawn.

Idiopathic intracranial hypertension is most commonly seen in obese women during their childbearing years. When an elevated opening pressure is noted, CSF must be removed slowly and the pressure carefully monitored. Additional CSF should not be removed if the pressure reaches 50% of the opening pressure (Conly & Ronald, 1983).

Elevated pressures may be present in patients who are tense or straining and in those with congestive heart failure, meningitis, superior vena cava syndrome, thrombosis of the venous sinuses, cerebral edema, mass lesions, hypoosmolality, or conditions inhibiting CSF absorption. Opening pressure elevation may be the only abnormality in cryptococcal meningitis and pseudotumor cerebri (Hayward et al, 1987). Decreased CSF pressure may be present in spinal-subarachnoid block, dehydration, circulatory collapse, and CSF leakage. A significant pressure drop after removal of 1 to 2 mL suggests herniation or spinal block above the puncture site, and no further fluid should be withdrawn.

Up to 20 mL of CSF may normally be removed. Prior to collecting the sample, the clinician should be aware of the quantity of CSF required for the requested tests to ensure that a sufficient sample is submitted. In addition, the clinician should always provide an appropriate clinical history to the laboratory. The sample site (e.g., lumbar, cisternal) should be noted because cytologic and chemical parameters vary at different sites. The necessity for a simultaneous serum glucose should also be considered. This is best obtained 2 to 4 hours before lumbar puncture because of the delay in serum-CSF equilibrium.

The CSF specimen is usually divided into three serially collected sterile tubes: Tube 1 for chemistry and immunology studies; tube 2 for microbiological examination; and tube 3 for cell count and differential. An additional tube may be inserted in the No. 3 position for cytology if a malignancy is suspected. However, under certain conditions, some variations are critical. For example, if tube 1 is hemorrhagic because of a traumatic puncture, it should not be used when protein studies are the most important aspect of the analysis (i.e., suspected multiple sclerosis). Indeed, tube 3 should be examined for the major purpose of CSF collection. Perhaps the only definite statement one can make is that tube 1 should never be used for microbiology because it may be contaminated with skin bacteria. If questions arise, communication between the laboratory and the clinician before CSF analysis is critical.

Glass tubes should be avoided because cell adhesion to glass affects the cell count and differential. Specimens should be delivered to the laboratory and processed quickly to minimize cellular degradation, which begins within 1 hour of collection. Refrigeration is contraindicated for culture specimens because fastidious organisms (e.g., *Haemophilus influenza*, *Neisseria meningitidis*) will not survive, and for samples in which flow cytometry is likely to be needed for detection of leukemia or lymphoma cells, as refrigeration may affect expression and/or detection of certain surface antigens on these cells.

INDICATIONS AND RECOMMENDED TESTS

Indications for lumbar puncture can be divided into four major disease categories: meningeal infection, subarachnoid hemorrhage, primary or metastatic malignancy, and demyelinating diseases (American College of Physicians, 1986). Identification of infectious meningitis, particularly bacterial, is the most important indication for CSF examination (Box 29-1). Recommended laboratory tests are directed toward identification of these disorders (Box 29-2). CSF examination for other diseases is generally less helpful but often provides supportive evidence of a clinical diagnosis or helps to rule out other diseases (Irani, 2009). Limited routine studies followed by reflexive ordering of more focused tests (as needed) on the stored specimen have been advocated as a way of improving test efficiency (Albright et al, 1988).

GROSS EXAMINATION

Normal CSF is crystal clear and colorless and has a viscosity similar to that of water. Abnormal CSF may appear cloudy, frankly purulent, or pigment tinged. Turbidity or cloudiness begins to appear with leukocyte (white blood cell [WBC]) counts over 200 cells/μL or red blood cell (RBC) counts of 400/μL. However, grossly bloody fluids have RBC counts greater than 6000/μL. Microorganisms (bacteria, fungi, amebas), radiographic contrast material, aspirated epidural fat, and a protein level greater than 150 mg/dL (1.5 g/L) may also produce varying degrees of cloudiness. Experienced observers may be able to detect cell counts of less than 50 cells/μL with the unaided eye by observing for Tyndall's effect (Simon & Abele, 1978). Here, direct sunlight directed on the tube at a 90-degree angle from the observer will impart a "sparkling" or "snowy" appearance as suspended particles scatter the light.

Clot formation may be present in patients with traumatic taps, complete spinal block (Froin's syndrome), or suppurative or tuberculous meningitis. It is not usually seen in patients with subarachnoid hemorrhage. Fine surface pellicles may be observed after refrigeration for 12 to 24 hours. Clots may interfere with cell count accuracy by entrapping inflammatory cells and/or by interfering with automated instrument counting.

Viscous CSF may be encountered in patients with metastatic mucin-producing adenocarcinomas, cryptococcal meningitis due to capsular polysaccharide, or liquid nucleus pulposus resulting from needle injury to the annulus fibrosus.

Pink-red CSF usually indicates the presence of blood and is grossly bloody when the RBC count exceeds 6000/μL. It may originate from a subarachnoid hemorrhage, intracerebral hemorrhage, or cerebral infarct, or from a traumatic spinal tap.

Xanthochromia

Xanthochromia commonly refers to a pale pink to yellow color in the supernatant of centrifuged CSF, although other colors may be present

BOX 29-1

Diseases Detected by Laboratory Examination of CSF

High Sensitivity, High Specificity*

Bacterial, tuberculous, and fungal meningitis

High Sensitivity, Moderate Specificity

Viral meningitis
Subarachnoid hemorrhage
Multiple sclerosis
Central nervous system syphilis
Infectious polyneuritis
Paraspinal abscess

Moderate Sensitivity, High Specificity

Meningeal malignancy

Moderate Sensitivity, Moderate Specificity

Intracranial hemorrhage
Viral encephalitis
Subdural hematoma

From American College of Physicians, Health and Public Policy Committee: The diagnostic spinal tap, *Ann Intern Med* 104:880, 1986, with permission.
CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid.
*Sensitivity is the ability of a test to detect disease when it is present; specificity is the ability of a test to exclude disease when it is not present.

BOX 29-2

Recommended CSF Laboratory Tests

Routine

Opening CSF pressure
Total cell count (WBC and RBC)
Differential cell count (stained smear)
Glucose (CSF/plasma ratio)
Total protein

Useful Under Certain Conditions

Cultures (bacteria, fungi, viruses, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*)
Gram stain, acid-fast stain
Fungal and bacterial antigens
Enzymes (LD, ADA, CK-BB)
Lactate
Polymerase chain reaction (TB, viruses)
Cytology
Electrophoresis (protein, immunofixation)
Proteins (C-reactive, 14-3-3, τ, β-amyloid, transferrin)
VDRL test for syphilis
Fibrin-derivative D-dimer
Tuberculostearic acid

Modified from Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous, and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.
ADA, Adenosine deaminase; *CK-BB,* creatine kinase-BB; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase; *RBC,* red blood cell; *TB,* tuberculosis; *VDRL,* Venereal Disease Research Laboratories; *WBC,* white blood cell.

TABLE 29-1
Xanthochromia and Associated Diseases/Disorders

CSF Supernatant Color	Associated Diseases/Disorders
Pink	RBC lysis/hemoglobin breakdown products
Yellow	RBC lysis/hemoglobin breakdown products Hyperbilirubinemia CSF protein >150 mg/dL (1.5 g/L)
Orange	RBC lysis/hemoglobin breakdown products Hypervitaminosis A (carotenoids)
Yellow-green	Hyperbilirubinemia (biliverdin)
Brown	Meningeal metastatic melanoma

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid; *RBC,* red blood cell.

(Table 29-1). To detect xanthochromia, the CSF should be centrifuged and the supernatant fluid compared with a tube of distilled water. Xanthochromic CSF is pink, orange, or yellow owing to RBC lysis and hemoglobin breakdown. Pale pink to orange xanthochromia from released oxyhemoglobin is usually detected by lumbar puncture performed 2 to 4 hours after the onset of subarachnoid hemorrhage, although it may take as long as 12 hours. Peak intensity occurs in about 24 to 36 hours and then gradually disappears over the next 4 to 8 days. Yellow xanthochromia is derived from bilirubin. It develops about 12 hours after a subarachnoid bleed and peaks at 2 to 4 days, but may persist for 2 to 4 weeks.

Visible CSF xanthochromia may also be due to the following: (1) oxyhemoglobin resulting from artifactual red blood cell lysis caused by detergent contamination of the needle or collecting tube, or a delay of longer than 1 hour without refrigeration before examination; (2) bilirubin (bilirhachia) in jaundiced patients; (3) CSF protein levels over 150 mg/dL, which are also present in bloody traumatic taps (>100,000 RBCs/μL) or in pathologic states such as complete spinal block, polyneuritis, and meningitis; (4) disinfectant contamination; (5) carotenoids (orange) in people with dietary hypercarotenemia (i.e., hypervitaminosis A); (6) melanin (brownish) from meningeal metastatic melanoma; and (7) rifampin therapy (red-orange).

Although spectral absorbance scans provide an objective record of xanthochromia, careful gross CSF inspection has comparable sensitivity (Britton et al, 1983). Spectrophotometry can also help to differentiate hemoglobin-derived substances from other xanthochromic pigments with different maximal absorption peaks.

Differential Diagnosis of Bloody CSF

A traumatic tap occurs in about 20% of lumbar punctures. Distinction of a traumatic puncture from a pathologic hemorrhage is, therefore, of vital importance. Although the presence of crenated RBCs is not useful, the following observations may be helpful in distinguishing the two forms of bleeding.

1. In a traumatic tap, the hemorrhagic fluid usually clears between the first and third collected tubes but remains relatively uniform in subarachnoid hemorrhage.
2. Xanthochromia, microscopic evidence of erythrophagocytosis, or hemosiderin-laden macrophages indicate a subarachnoid bleed in the absence of a prior traumatic tap. RBC lysis begins as early as 1 to 2 hours after a traumatic tap. Thus, rapid evaluation is necessary to avoid false-positive results.
3. A commercially available latex agglutination immunoassay test for cross-linked fibrin derivative D-dimer is specific for fibrin degradation and is negative in traumatic taps (Lang et al, 1990). However, false-positive results might be expected in disseminated intravascular coagulation, fibrinolysis, or trauma from repeated lumbar punctures.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Total Cell Count

Although the traditional manual method for cell counting in CSF samples, using undiluted CSF in a manual counting chamber, continues to be a useful approach, because of the low cell counts frequently encountered in CSF, the precision of manual counting in these samples is inherently limited (Barnes et al, 2004). For example, using 18 large squares (1 mm^2 each) in a Fuchs-Rosenthal–type chamber with a depth of 0.2 mm, a total volume of 3.6 μL (18 × 0.2 μL/square) is examined. With 5 cells/μL, a total of 18 cells is counted. The coefficient of variation (CV), is 24%; ±2 CV is about 48%. A Neubauer hemocytometer with nine 1-mm^2 squares with a depth of 0.1 mm has a CV of 45% (+90% for 2 CV) with the same cell concentration. Improvements in the hardware and software in flow cytometers now allow reliable use of these instruments in performing automated total WBC counts and WBC differential counts (Hoffman & Janssen, 2002; Aune et al, 2004), and even in detecting bacteria (Nanos & Delanghe, 2008) in CSF samples. Although these instruments are increasingly used clinically to perform these counts on CSF samples, the low clinical decision levels for total WBC count in CSF and persistent technical limitations of flow cytometers at low WBC levels and with certain WBC types continue to be cause for concern (Hoffman & Janssen, 2002; Andrews et al, 2005; Glasser et al, 2009; Kleine et al, 2009). When issues of turnaround time and cost are considered, however, automated total WBC and WBC differential counts in CSF samples may be reasonable alternatives to manual counting (Zimmerman et al, 2011; Li et al, 2014), with added manual examination of the sample to avoid missing pathologic cell types as a useful cross-check (Strik et al, 2005). When considering use of automated cell counters with CSF samples, laboratories should carefully follow manufacturer and Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute guidelines (CLSI Approved Guideline H56-A, 2006) when implementing these automated methods.

The normal leukocyte cell count in adults is 0 to 5 cells/μL. It is higher in neonates, ranging from 0 to 30 cells/μL, with the upper limit of normal decreasing to adult values by adolescence. No RBCs should be present in normal CSF. If numerous (except with a traumatic tap), a pathologic process is probable (e.g., trauma, malignancy, infarct, hemorrhage). Although RBC counts have limited diagnostic value, they may give a useful approximation of the true CSF WBC or total protein in the presence of a traumatic puncture by correcting for leukocytes or protein introduced by the traumatic puncture. To be valid, all measurements (WBC, RBC, protein) must be performed on the same tube. This procedure also assumes that the blood is derived exclusively from the traumatic tap. The corrected WBC count is as follows:

$$WBC_{corr} = WBC_{obs} - WBC_{added}$$

where

$$WBC_{added} = WBC_{BLD} \times RBC_{CSF} / RBC_{BLD}$$

and

WBC_{obs} = CSF leukocyte count

WBC_{added} = leukocytes added to CSF by traumatic tap

WBC_{BLD} = peripheral blood leukocyte count

RBC_{CSF} = CSF erythrocyte count

RBC_{BLD} = peripheral blood erythrocyte count

An analogous formula may be used to correct for **added total protein** (TP):

$$TP_{added} = [TP_{serum} \times (1 - HCT)] \times RBC_{CSF} / RBC_{BLD}$$

In the presence of a normal peripheral blood RBC count and serum protein, these corrections amount to about 1 WBC for every 700 RBCs and 8 mg/dL protein for every 10,000 RBCs/μL. This latter RBC correction factor is reasonably accurate as long as the peripheral WBC count is not extremely high or low.

An observed/expected (added) WBC count ratio greater than 10 has a sensitivity of 88% and a specificity of 90% for bacterial meningitis. When the predicted WBC is below the observed count, the probability of bacterial meningitis appears to be low (Mayefsky & Roughmann, 1987; Bonadio et al, 1990).

Differential Cell Count

Suggested differential count reference ranges are presented in Table 29-2. A differential performed in a counting chamber is unsatisfactory because the low cell numbers give rise to poor precision, and identifying the cell type beyond granulocytes and "mononuclears" is difficult in a wet preparation. Direct smears of the centrifuged CSF sediment are also subject to significant error from cellular distortion and fragmentation.

TABLE 29-2
CSF Reference Values for Differential Cytocentrifuge Counts

Cell type	Adults, %	Neonates, %
Lymphocytes	62 ± 34	20 ± 18
Monocytes	36 ± 20	72 ± 22
Neutrophils	2 ± 5	3 ± 5
Histiocytes	Rare	5 ± 4
Ependymal cells	Rare	Rare
Eosinophils	Rare	Rare

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid.

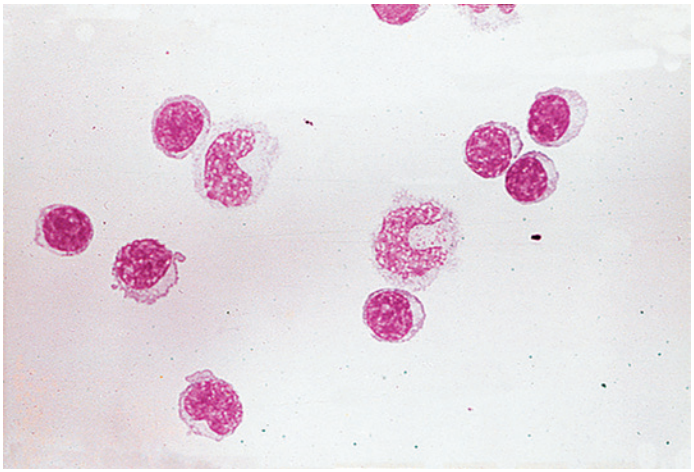


Figure 29-1 **Cerebrospinal fluid cytology (lymphocyte to monocyte distribution ratio 70:30).**

The **cytocentrifuge method** is rapid, requires minimal training, and allows Wright's staining of air-dried cytospins. It is the recommended method for differential cell counts in all body fluids (Rabinovitch & Cornbleet, 1994). Cell yield and preservation are better than with simple centrifugation. From 30 to 50 cells can be concentrated from 0.5 mL of "normal" CSF. Variable artifactual distortions may be seen, but they are minimized when the specimen is fresh, albumin is added to the specimen (2 drops of 22% bovine serum albumin), and the cell concentration is adjusted to about 300 WBCs/L prior to centrifugation (Kjeldsberg & Knight, 1993). Manual differential cell counting on a cytocentrifuge preparation of CSF continues to be the most reliable method, even with low cell numbers. Although automated differential counts may be safely performed on CSF samples using flow cytometers (Hoffman & Janssen, 2002; Aulesa et al, 2003; Li et al, 2014), confirmation of the automated differential count by manual examination of a cytocentrifuged smear is recommended with some instruments (Aune et al, 2004; Strik et al, 2005) and is a requirement with specimens at risk for containing neoplastic cells. Effective detection of neoplastic cells, such as leukemic cells, using the cytocentrifuge method on CSF appears to be highly instrument-dependent (Huppmann et al, 2012).

Filtration and sedimentation methods are too cumbersome for routine use. Filtration does, however, allow concentration of large volumes of CSF for cytologic examination or culture, while retaining the fluid filtrate for additional studies.

In adults, normal CSF contains small numbers of **lymphocytes** and **monocytes** in an approximate 70:30 ratio (Fig. 29-1). A higher proportion of monocytes is present in young children, in whom up to 80% may be normal (Pappu et al, 1982). Erythrocytes due to minor traumatic bleeding are commonly seen, especially in infants. Small numbers of neutrophils (PMNs) may also be seen in "normal" CSF specimens, most likely as a result of minor hemorrhage (Hayward & Oye, 1988) and improved cell concentration methods. No general consensus regarding an upper limit of normal for PMNs has been established. Many laboratories accept up to 7% neutrophils with a normal WBC count. Over 60% neutrophils has been reported in high-risk neonates without meningitis (Rodriguez et al, 1990). The number of PMNs may be decreased by as much as 68% within the first 2 hours after lumbar puncture owing to cell lysis (Steele et al, 1986).

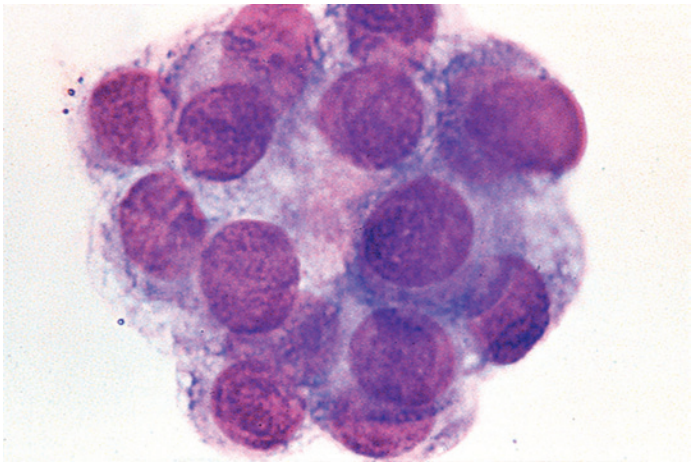


Figure 29-2 **Choroid plexus cells in cerebrospinal fluid.**

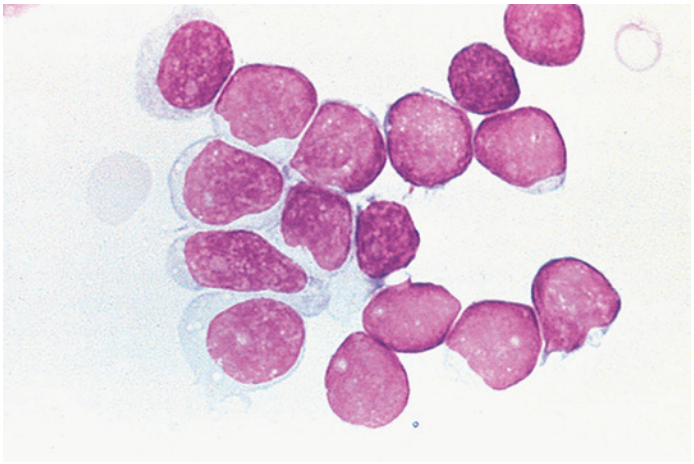


Figure 29-3 **Cluster of blastlike cells in cerebrospinal fluid from a premature newborn.** (From Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.)

Traumatic puncture may result in the presence of bone marrow cells, cartilage cells, squamous cells, ganglion cells, and soft tissue elements. In addition, ependymal and choroid plexus cells may rarely be seen (Fig. 29-2). Moreover, blastlike primitive cell clusters, most likely of germinal matrix origin, are sometimes found in premature infants with intraventricular hemorrhage (Fig. 29-3).

Increased CSF **neutrophils** occur in numerous conditions (Box 29-3). In early bacterial meningitis, the proportion of PMNs usually exceeds 60%. However, in about one quarter of cases of early viral meningitis, the proportion of PMNs also exceeds 60%. Viral-induced neutrophilia usually changes to a lymphocytic pleocytosis within 2 to 3 days. A total PMN count of over 1180 cells/μL (or more than 2000 WBCs/μL) has a 99% predictive value for bacterial meningitis (Spanos et al, 1989). Persistent neutrophilic meningitis (over 1 week) may be noninfectious or due to less common pathogens such as *Nocardia*, *Actinomyces*, *Aspergillus*, and the zygomycetes (Peacock et al, 1984).

Increased CSF **lymphocytes** have been reported in various diseases/disorders (Box 29-4). Lymphocytosis (>50%) may occur in early acute bacterial meningitis when the CSF leukocyte count is under 1000/μL (Powers, 1985). Reactive lymphoplasmacytoid and immunoblastic variants may be present, particularly with viral meningoencephalitis. Blastlike lymphocytes may be seen admixed with small and large lymphocytes in the CSF of neonates.

Plasma cells, not normally present in CSF, may appear in a variety of inflammatory and infectious conditions (Box 29-5), along with large and small lymphocytes, and in association with malignant brain tumors (Fishman, 1992). Multiple myeloma may also rarely involve the meninges (Oda et al, 1991).

Although **eosinophils** are rarely present in normal CSF, they may be increased in a variety of central nervous system (CNS) conditions

BOX 29-3

Causes of Increased CSF Neutrophils

Meningitis
- Bacterial meningitis
- Early viral meningoencephalitis
- Early tuberculous meningitis
- Early mycotic meningitis
- Amebic encephalomyelitis

Other infections
- Cerebral abscess
- Subdural empyema
- AIDS-related CMV radiculopathy

Following seizures
Following CNS hemorrhage
- Subarachnoid
- Intracerebral

Following CNS infarct
Reaction to repeated lumbar punctures
Injection of foreign material in subarachnoid space (e.g., methotrexate, contrast media)
Metastatic tumor in contact with CSF

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *CMV,* cytomegalovirus; *CNS,* central nervous system; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid.

BOX 29-4

Causes of CSF Lymphocytosis

Meningitis

Viral meningitis
Tuberculous meningitis
Fungal meningitis
Syphilitic meningoencephalitis
Leptospiral meningitis
Bacterial due to uncommon organisms
Early bacterial meningitis where leukocyte counts are relatively low
Parasitic infestations (e.g., cysticercosis, trichinosis, toxoplasmosis)
Aseptic meningitis due to septic focus adjacent to meninges

Degenerative Disorders

Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
Multiple sclerosis
Drug abuse encephalopathy
Guillain-Barré syndrome
Acute disseminated encephalomyelitis

Other Inflammatory Disorders

Handl syndrome (headache with neurologic deficits and CSF lymphocytosis)
Sarcoidosis
Polyneuritis
CNS periarteritis

CNS, Central nervous system; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid.

BOX 29-5

Inflammatory and Infectious Causes of CSF Plasmacytosis

Acute viral infections
Guillain-Barré syndrome
Multiple sclerosis
Parasitic CNS infestations
Sarcoidosis
Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
Syphilitic meningoencephalitis
Tuberculous meningitis

CNS, Central nervous system; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid.

(Box 29-6). For example, eosinophilia is frequently mild (1% to 4%) in a general inflammatory response, but in children with malfunctioning ventricular shunts, it may be marked (Fig. 29-4). A suggested criterion for eosinophilic meningitis is 10% eosinophils (Kuberski, 1981); parasitic invasion of the CNS is the most common cause worldwide. *Coccidioides immitis* is a significant cause of CSF eosinophilia in endemic regions of the United States (Ragland et al, 1993).

Increased CSF **monocytes** lack diagnostic specificity and are usually part of a "mixed cell reaction" that includes neutrophils, lymphocytes, and

BOX 29-6

Causes of CSF Eosinophilic Pleocytosis

Commonly associated with:

Acute polyneuritis
CNS reaction to foreign material (drugs, shunts)
Fungal infections
Idiopathic eosinophilic meningitis
Idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome
Parasitic infections

Infrequently associated with:

Bacterial meningitis
Leukemia/lymphoma
Myeloproliferative disorders
Neurosarcoidosis
Primary brain tumors
Tuberculous meningoencephalitis
Viral meningitis

Modified from Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.
CNS, Central nervous system; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid.

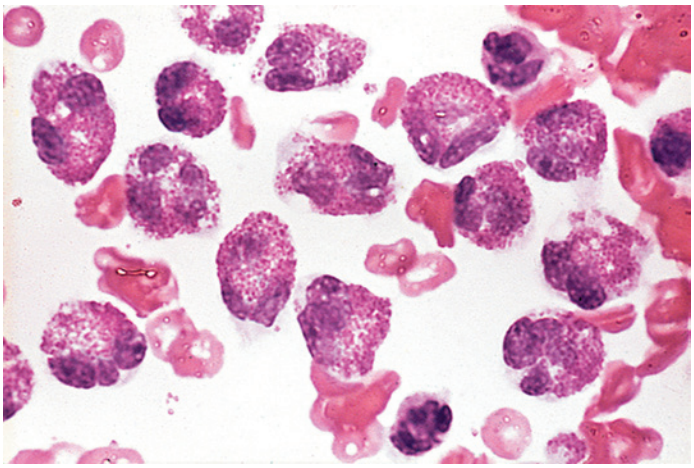


Figure 29-4 **Eosinophils in cerebrospinal fluid from a child with malfunctioning ventricular shunt.**

plasma cells. This pattern is seen in tuberculous and fungal meningitis, chronic bacterial meningitis (i.e., *Listeria monocytogenes* and others), leptospiral meningitis, ruptured brain abscess, *Toxoplasma* meningitis, and amebic encephalomeningitis. A mixed cell pattern without neutrophils is characteristic of viral and syphilitic meningoencephalitis. **Macrophages** with phagocytosed erythrocytes **(erythrophages)** appear from 12 to 48 hours following a subarachnoid hemorrhage or traumatic tap. Hemosiderin-laden macrophages **(siderophages)** appear after about 48 hours and may persist for weeks (Fig. 29-5). Brownish yellow or red hematoidin crystals may form after a few days.

Morphologic cerebrospinal fluid examination for tumor cells has moderate sensitivity and high specificity (97% to 98%) (Marton & Gean, 1986). Sensitivity depends on the type of neoplasm. CSF examination of leukemic patients has the highest sensitivity (about 70%), followed by metastatic carcinoma (20% to 60%) and primary CNS malignancies (30%). Sensitivity may be optimized by using filtration methods with larger fluid volumes or by performing serial punctures in patients in whom a neoplasm is strongly suspected. Processing of CSF samples using liquid-based thin-layer methods also increases sensitivity in the detection of neoplastic cells and enhances preservation of these cells for potential immunocytochemical analysis (Sioutopoulou et al, 2008). These liquid-based methods are now commonly used for cytopathologic examination of CSF and other body cavity fluid specimens.

Leukemic involvement of the meninges is more frequent in patients with acute lymphoblastic leukemia (Fig. 29-6) than in those with acute myeloid leukemia (Fig. 29-7); both are significantly more common than CNS involvement in the chronic leukemias. A leukocyte count over 5 cells/μL with unequivocal lymphoblasts in cytocentrifuged preparations is commonly accepted as evidence of CSF involvement. The incidence of

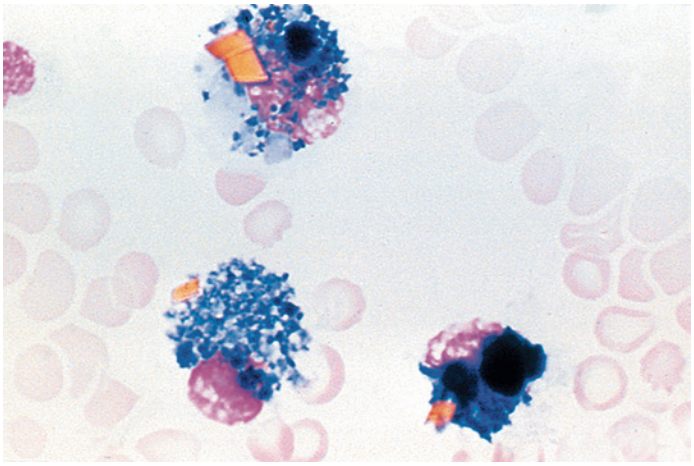


Figure 29-5 Hemosiderin-laden macrophages (siderophages) from the cerebrospinal fluid of a patient with subarachnoid hemorrhage. Hemosiderin crystals (golden-yellow) are also present. (From Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.)

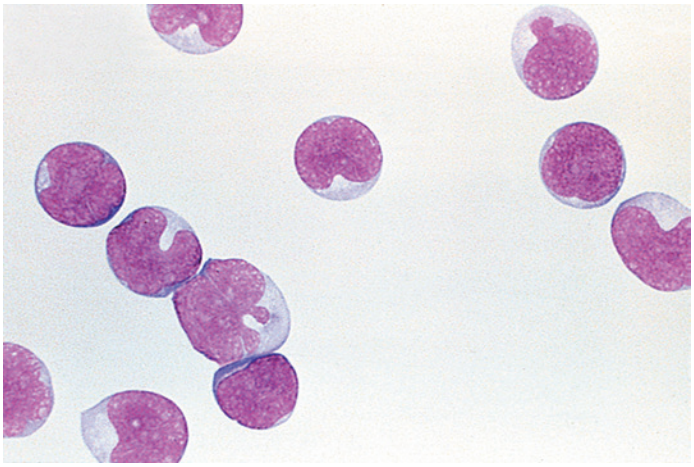


Figure 29-6 Acute lymphoblastic leukemia in cerebrospinal fluid. Note uniformity of the blast cells.

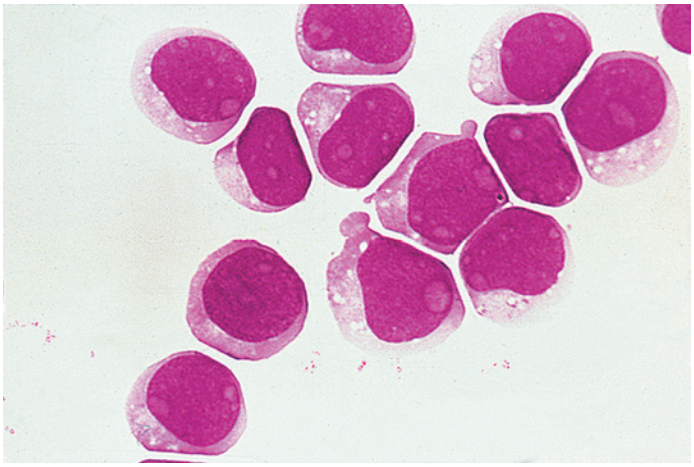


Figure 29-7 Acute myeloid leukemia in cerebrospinal fluid.

CNS relapse in children with lymphoblasts but cell counts lower than 6 cells/μL appears to be low and is not significantly different from cases in which no blasts are identified (Odom et al, 1990; Gilchrist et al, 1994; Tubergen et al, 1994). As noted previously, the ability to detect leukemic cells in CSF using the cytocentrifuge method is highly instrument-dependent, and low levels of these cells may be missed with certain instruments (Huppmann et al, 2012).

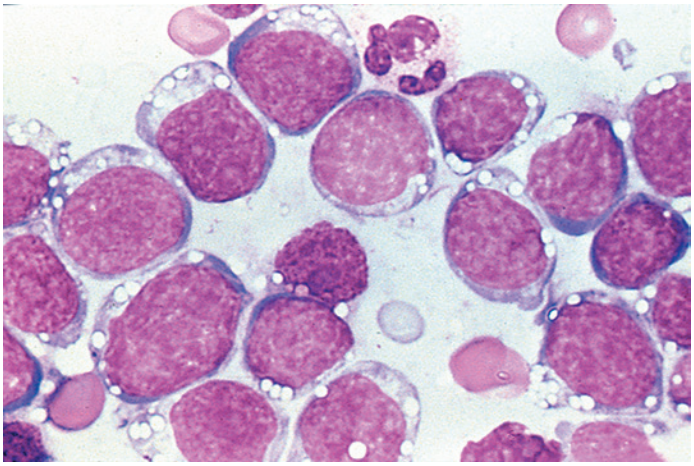


Figure 29-8 Burkitt's lymphoma in cerebrospinal fluid. The cells are characterized by blue cytoplasm with vacuoles and a slightly clumped chromatin pattern. (From Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.)

Non-Hodgkin's lymphomas involving the leptomeninges are usually high-grade tumors (lymphoblastic, large cell immunoblastic, and Burkitt's lymphomas) (Fig. 29-8); low-grade lymphomas and Hodgkin's lymphoma are significantly less common (Bigner, 1992; Walts, 1992). T cells predominate in normal and inflammatory conditions, whereas most lymphomas, especially those occurring in immunocompromised hosts, are of B cell lineage. Lymphoblastic lymphoma, the most common T-cell lymphoma to involve the CSF, can be detected by terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase stain.

Multiparameter flow cytometric immunophenotypic studies, DNA analysis by polymerase chain reaction (PCR), and more recently DNA sequence analysis have been shown to significantly improve diagnostic sensitivity and specificity in CSF samples involved by leukemic or lymphoma cells (Rhodes et al, 1996; Finn et al, 1998; Scrideli & Queiroz, 2004; Bromberg et al, 2007; Quijano et al, 2009; Martinez-Laperche et al, 2013; Lacayo et al, 2013). Considering their greater sensitivity in detecting leukemia or lymphoma cells in CSF samples, whenever available these advanced technologies should be part of the complete evaluation in patients being worked up for these conditions.

Amebas, fungi (especially *Cryptococcus neoformans*), and *Toxoplasma gondii* organisms may be present on cytocentrifuge specimens but may be difficult to recognize without confirmatory stains.

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

Reference values for lumbar cerebrospinal fluid in adults are listed in Table 29-3.

Proteins

Total Protein

More than 80% of the CSF protein content is derived from blood plasma, in concentrations of less than 1% of the plasma level (Table 29-4).

Prealbumin (transthyretin), transferrin, and small quantities of nerve tissue–specific proteins are the major qualitative differences that normally exist between CSF and plasma proteins. Although some authors have argued against routine measurement of total protein (American College of Physicians, 1986), it is the most common abnormality found in CSF. Thus, an increased CSF protein serves as a useful, albeit nonspecific, indicator of meningeal or CNS disease.

Reference Values. CSF total protein reference values vary considerably among laboratories owing to differences in methods, instrumentation, and type of reference standard used. CSF protein levels of 15 to 45 mg/dL have long been accepted as the "normal" reference range (Silverman & Christenson, 1994). Other studies using different methods have shown generally higher reference ranges, approximately 15 to 60 mg/dL (Lott & Warren, 1989).

Although discrepancies in gender and in those older than 60 years of age have been reported, the differences are probably not significant. However, infants have significantly higher CSF protein levels than older children and adults. Thus, mean levels of 90 mg/dL for term infants and

TABLE 29-3

Adult Lumbar CSF Reference Values

Analyte	Conventional Units	SI Units
Protein	15-60 mg/dL	0.15-0.60 g/L
Prealbumin	2%-7%	
Albumin	56%-76%	
α_1-Globulin	2%-7%	
α_2-Globulin	4%-12%	
β-Globulin	8%-18%	
γ-Globulin	3%-12%	
Electrolytes		
Osmolality	280-300 mOsm/L	280-300 mmol/L
Sodium	135-150 mEq/L	135-150 mmol/L
Potassium	2.6-3.0 mEq/L	2.6-3.0 mmol/L
Chloride	115-130 mEq/L	115-130 mmol/L
Carbon dioxide	20-25 mEq/L	20-25 mmol/L
Calcium	2.0-2.8 mEq/L	1.0-1.4 mmol/L
Magnesium	2.4-3.0 mEq/L	1.2-1.5 mmol/L
Lactate	10-22 mg/dL	1.1-2.4 mmol/L
pH		
Lumbar fluid	7.28-7.32	
Cisternal fluid	7.32-7.34	
pCO_2		
Lumbar fluid	44-50 mm Hg	
Cisternal fluid	40-46 mm Hg	
pO_2	40-44 mm Hg	
Other Constituents		
Ammonia	10-35 µg/dL	6-20 µmol/L
Glutamine	5-20 mg/dL	0.3-1.4 mmol/L
Creatinine	0.6-1.2 mg/dL	45-92 µmol/L
Glucose	50-80 mg/dL	2.8-4.4 mmol/L
Iron	1-2 µg/dL	0.2-0.4 µmol/L
Phosphorus	1.2-2.0 mg/dL	0.4-0.7 mmol/L
Total lipid	1-2 mg/dL	0.01-0.02 g/L
Urea	6-16 mg/dL	2.0-5.7 mmol/L
Urate	0.5-3.0 mg/dL	30-180 µmol/L
Zinc	2-6 µg/dL	0.3-0.9 µmol/L

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid; *pCO_2,* partial pressure of carbon dioxide; *pO_2,* partial pressure of oxygen.

TABLE 29-4

Mean Concentrations of Plasma and CSF Proteins

Protein	CSF, mg/L	Plasma/CSF Ratio
Prealbumin	17.3	14
Albumin	155.0	236
Transferrin	14.4	142
Ceruloplasmin	1.0	366
Immunoglobulin (Ig)G	12.3	802
IgA	1.3	1346
α_2-Microglobulin	2.0	1111
Fibrinogen	0.6	4940
IgM	0.6	1167
β-Lipoprotein	0.6	6213

Adapted from Felgenhauer K: Protein size and cerebrospinal fluid composition, *Klin Wochenschr* 52:1158, 1974, with permission.
CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid.

115 mg/dL for preterm infants were reported; the upper levels were 150 mg/dL and 170 mg/dL, respectively (Sarff et al, 1976). Others have noted that the CSF protein concentration falls rapidly from birth to 6 months of age (mean levels, 108 mg/dL to 40 mg/dL), plateaus between 3 and 10 years of age (mean, 32 mg/dL), and then rises slightly from 10 to 16 years of age (mean, 41 mg/dL) (Biou et al, 2000).

BOX 29-7

Conditions Associated with Increased CSF Total Protein

Traumatic Spinal Puncture

Increased Blood-CSF Permeability

Arachnoiditis (e.g., following methotrexate therapy)
Meningitis (bacterial, viral, fungal, tuberculous)
Hemorrhage (subarachnoid, intracerebral)
Endocrine/metabolic disorders
- Milk-alkali syndrome with hypercalcemia
- Diabetic neuropathy
- Hereditary neuropathies and myelopathies
- Decreased endocrine function (thyroid, parathyroid)
- Other disorders (uremia, dehydration)

Drug Toxicity

Ethanol, phenothiazines, phenytoin

CSF Circulation Defects

Mechanical obstruction (tumor, abscess, herniated disk)
Loculated CSF effusion

Increased Immunoglobulin (Ig)G Synthesis

Multiple sclerosis

Neurosyphilis

Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis

Increased IgG Synthesis and Blood-CSF Permeability

Guillain-Barré syndrome
Collagen vascular diseases (e.g., lupus, periarteritis)
Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculopathy

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid.

Elevated CSF protein levels may be caused by increased permeability of the blood-brain barrier, decreased resorption at the arachnoid villi, mechanical obstruction of CSF flow due to spinal block above the puncture site, or an increase in intrathecal immunoglobulin (Ig) synthesis. Common conditions associated with elevated lumbar CSF protein values (>65 mg/dL) are summarized in Box 29-7.

Low lumbar CSF total protein levels (<20 mg/dL) normally occur in some young children between 6 months and 2 years of age and in patients with conditions associated with increased CSF turnover. These include the following: (1) Removal of large CSF volumes; (2) CSF leaks induced by trauma or lumbar puncture; (3) increased intracranial pressure, probably due to an increased rate of protein resorption by the arachnoid villi; and (4) hyperthyroidism (Fishman, 1992).

Protein electrophoresis of concentrated normal CSF reveals two distinct differences from serum: a prominent transthyretin (prealbumin) band and two transferrin bands. Transthyretin is relatively high because of its dual synthesis by the liver and the choroid plexus. The second transferrin band, referred to as β_2-transferrin, migrates more slowly than its serum equivalent owing to cerebral neuraminidase digestion of sialic acid residues.

Methods. Turbidimetric methods, commonly based on trichloroacetic acid (TCA) or sulfosalicylic acid and sodium sulfate for protein precipitation, are popular because they are simple and rapid, and require no special instrumentation. However, they are temperature sensitive and require much larger specimen volumes (about 0.5 mL). A false protein elevation may be observed using TCA methods in the presence of methotrexate (Kasper et al, 1988). Benzethonium chloride and benzalkonium chloride have been used as precipitating agents in automated methods and micromethods (Luxton et al, 1989; Shephard & Whiting, 1992).

Colorimetric methods include the Lowry method, dye-binding, methods using Coomassie brilliant blue (CBB) or Ponceau S, and the modified Biuret method. The CBB method is rapid and highly sensitive, and can be used with small sample sizes. Immunochemical methods measure specific proteins, require only 25 to 50 µL of CSF, and are relatively simple to perform once conditions and reagents have been standardized. Automated methods are now commonly used and usually show good correlation with traditional standard methods (Lott & Warren, 1989).

Albumin and IgG Measurements

The permeability of the blood-brain barrier may be assessed by immunochemical quantification of the CSF albumin/serum albumin ratio in grams

per deciliter (g/dL). The normal ratio of 1:230 (Tourtellotte et al, 1985) yields an unwieldy decimal of 0.004, which prompted the use of the **CSF/serum albumin index,** which is arbitrarily calculated as follows:

$$\text{CSF/Serum albumin index} = \frac{\text{CSF albumin (mg/dL)}}{\text{Serum albumin (g/dL)}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 29-1)}$$

An index value less than 9 is consistent with an intact barrier. Slight impairment is considered with index values of 9 to 14, moderate impairment with values of 14 to 30, and severe impairment with values greater than 30 (Silverman & Christenson, 1994). The index is slightly elevated in infants up to 6 months of age, reflecting the immaturity of the blood-brain barrier, and increases gradually after 40 years of age. A traumatic tap invalidates the index calculation.

Increased intrathecal IgG synthesis is reflected by an increase in the CSF/serum IgG ratio:

$$\text{CSF/Serum IgG ratio} = \frac{\text{CSF IgG (mg/dL)}}{\text{Serum IgG (g/dL)}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 29-2)}$$

The normal ratio is 1/390 or 0.003 (Tourtellotte et al, 1985). Similar to the albumin index, the CSF/serum IgG index may be obtained by using milligrams per deciliter for the CSF IgG value. The CSF/serum IgG index normal range is 3.0 to 8.7.

The **CSF/serum IgG index** can be elevated by intrathecal IgG synthesis or increased plasma IgG crossover from breakdown of the blood-brain barrier. Ig derived from plasma crossover may be corrected by dividing the CSF/serum IgG index by the CSF/albumin index to yield the CSF IgG index.

$$\text{CSF IgG index} = \frac{\text{CSF IgG (mg/dL)/Serum IgG (g/dL)}}{\text{CSF albumin (mg/dL)/Serum albumin (g/dL)}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 29-3)}$$

or

$$\text{CSF IgG index} = \frac{\text{CSF IgG (mg/dL)} \times \text{Serum albumin (g/dL)}}{\text{Serum IgG (g/dL)} \times \text{CSF albumin (mg/dL)}} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 29-4)}$$

The reference range for the IgG index varies, reflecting variations in determination of the four index components. A reasonable normal upper limit is 0.8 (Souverijn et al, 1989). However, each laboratory should determine its own critical ratio.

The **IgG synthesis rate** is calculated by an empirical formula (Tourtellotte et al, 1985):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{IgG synthesis rate (mg/day)} = [&(\text{CSF IgG} - \text{Serum IgG}/369)\\ &- (\text{CSF albumin} - \text{Serum albumin}/230)\\ &\times (\text{Serum IgG}/\text{Serum albumin})\\ &\times 0.43 \times 5\ \text{dL/day}]\end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 29-5)}$$

All protein concentrations are expressed in milligrams per deciliter. The first bracketed term represents the difference between measured CSF IgG and the IgG expected from diffusion across a normal blood-brain barrier; 369 is the normal serum/CSF ratio. The second bracketed term represents the difference between measured CSF albumin and expected albumin if the blood-brain barrier is intact; 230 is the normal serum/CSF albumin ratio. The CSF albumin excess is multiplied by the IgG/albumin ratio and the molecular weight ratio of IgG to albumin (0.43) to correct for changes in CSF IgG due to increased barrier permeability. The number 5 converts the result from a concentration to a daily amount, assuming an average daily CSF production of 500 mL (i.e., 5 dL). The formula does not consider variations in CSF production or Ig consumption. It assumes that the IgG/albumin ratio remains constant over various degrees of blood-brain barrier impairment—a concept that may lead to variable error (Lefvert & Link, 1985). The reference interval for the synthesis rate is –9.9 to +3.3 mg/day. Values greater than 8.0 mg/day indicate an increased rate (Silverman & Christenson, 1994).

CSF IgG is normally 3% to 5% of total CSF protein, but in multiple sclerosis (MS), the concentration approaches that of plasma (15% to 18%) (Hersey & Trotter, 1980). The CSF IgG index and the IgG synthesis rate have a sensitivity of 90% in patients with definite MS, but the sensitivity is lower in patients with possible MS, in whom accuracy is most needed (Marton & Gean, 1986). In addition, the specificity for MS is only moderate because increased intrathecal IgG synthesis occurs in many other inflammatory neurologic diseases.

The Ig index and synthesis rate calculations may also be applied to IgM, IgA, Ig light chains, and specific antibodies to infectious microorganisms. For example, increased synthesis of IgM and free κ light chains have been suggested as markers for MS (Rudick et al, 1989; Lolli et al, 1991).

Electrophoretic Techniques. Although the diagnosis of MS is ultimately a clinical one, significant advances have been made in laboratory testing for this disorder. CSF total protein is increased in less than 50% of patients with MS. Indeed, if the CSF protein exceeds 100 mg/dL, the patient probably does not have MS. However, the γ-globulin fraction, as determined by CSF electrophoresis, is often increased in MS. Thus, the CSF total protein/γ-globulin ratio exceeds 0.12 in about 65% of cases (Johnson & Nelson, 1977). Using **electroimmunodiffusion,** a CSF IgG/albumin ratio greater than 0.25 is present in about 75% of cases (Tourtellotte et al, 1971). Levels greater than the mean CSF IgG index + 3SD are present in 80% to 85% of MS cases, although the upper reference level varies significantly among laboratories.

High-resolution agarose gel electrophoresis of concentrated CSF from patients with MS often shows discrete populations of IgG, the **oligoclonal bands.** Although these discrete IgG populations are normally absent, two or more bands are necessary to support the diagnosis of MS; a single band is not considered a positive result. Using this technique, oligoclonal bands have been reported in 83% to 94% of patients with definite MS, 40% to 60% of those with probable MS, and 20% to 30% of possible MS cases. However, they are also frequently present in patients with subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, various viral CNS infections, neurosyphilis, neuroborreliosis, cryptococcal meningitis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, transverse myelitis, meningeal carcinomatosis, glioblastoma multiforme, Burkitt's lymphoma, chronic relapsing polyneuropathy, Behçet's disease, cysticercosis, and trypanosomiasis, among others (Trotter & Rust, 1989; Chalmers et al, 1990; Fishman 1992; Hall & Snyder, 1992). Subsequent studies have shown that agarose gel electrophoresis sensitivity for MS is less than previously reported (see later).

Oligoclonal light chains (both κ and λ) are present in about 90% of MS patients (Gallo et al, 1989; Sindie & Laterte, 1991). They have also occasionally been identified in the CSF of those who are negative for IgG oligoclonal bands. Detection of free light chains in CSF and comparison to serum has been shown to be a sensitive marker for intrathecal immunoglobulin synthesis (Fischer et al, 2004).

Coomassie brilliant blue or paragon violet stains can resolve oligoclonal bands in only 5 μg of IgG (Silverman & Christenson, 1994). However, **silver staining** is 20 to 50 times more sensitive than CBB and can be used on unconcentrated CSF. It is important to note that these electrophoretic techniques must be simultaneously carried out on the patient's serum to be certain that a polyclonal gammopathy is not present (e.g., liver disease, systemic lupus, rheumatoid arthritis, chronic granulomatous disease) because these disorders may be accompanied by Ig diffusion into the CSF, yielding false-positive results.

Immunofixation electrophoresis (IFE) is more sensitive than agarose gel electrophoresis and does not require CSF concentration (Cawley et al, 1976). Another study reported a sensitivity of 74% using this technique compared with 57% for agarose gel electrophoresis (Cavuoti et al, 1998). More recently, using a semiautomated immunofixation-peroxidase technique, the sensitivity was 83% and the specificity was 79% in patients with clinically definite MS (Richard et al, 2002).

Isoelectric focusing and IgG immunoblotting (IgG-IEF) performed on paired CSF and serum samples is the most sensitive and now the recommended method for the detection of oligoclonal bands (Andersson et al, 1994; Fortini et al, 2003; Keren, 2003). One study showed that IgG-IEF detected 100% of definite MS, but only about 50% were positive by agarose electrophoresis (Lunding et al, 2000). Others detected 91% of MS cases but only 68% with agarose (Seres et al, 1998). Similarly, a semiautomated IgG-IEF technique identified 90% of MS cases compared with 60% for agarose electrophoresis (Fortini et al, 2003). In 2005, an international consensus standard for the diagnosis of MS established IgG-IEF as the method of choice for qualitative detection of oligoclonal IgG bands as evidence of intrathecal synthesis of IgG (Freedman et al, 2005). This method is more sensitive and specific than quantitative methods.

In summary, the diagnosis of MS, as with many other neurologic disorders, is ultimately a clinical one based on neurologic history and physical examination. Nevertheless, advanced laboratory results in CSF, such as elevated IgG indices and particularly the detection of oligoclonal IgG bands, as well as neuroimaging techniques, have proved invaluable in the diagnosis of MS.

TABLE 29-5
CSF Proteins and Central Nervous System Diseases

Protein	Major Diseases/Disorders
α_2-Macroglobulin	Subdural hemorrhage, bacterial meningitis
β-Amyloid and τ proteins	Alzheimer's disease
β_2-Microglobulin	Leukemia/lymphoma, Behçet's syndrome
C-reactive protein	Bacterial and viral meningitis
Fibronectin	Lymphoblastic leukemia, AIDS, meningitis
Methemoglobin	Mild subarachnoid/subdural hemorrhage
Myelin basic protein	Multiple sclerosis, tumors, others
Protein 14-3-3	Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease
Transferrin	CSF leakage (otorrhea, rhinorrhea)

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *CSF*, cerebrospinal fluid.

Other CSF Proteins

Approximately 300 different proteins have been identified in CSF using two-dimensional electrophoresis, the first dimension being isoelectric focusing and the second polyacrylamide gel in the presence of sodium dodecyl sulfate (Harrington et al, 1986). Using this technique, four abnormal proteins were identified in patients with Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD). Two of these proteins (molecular mass about 40 kilodaltons [kDa] each) were present in some, but not all, patients with herpes simplex encephalitis, Parkinson's disease, Guillain-Barré syndrome, and schizophrenia. They were not present in various other neurologic disorders, nor in 100 normal CSF control specimens. However, these and two other proteins (molecular masses about 26 and 29 kDa) were present in all cases of CJD and in 5 of 10 cases of herpes simplex encephalitis. Neither of these latter proteins was present in any other neurologic disease or in controls.

Increased concentrations of various specific CSF proteins have been associated with several CNS diseases (Table 29-5).

Myelin Basic Protein. Myelin basic protein (MBP), a component of the myelin nerve sheath, is released during demyelination as a result of various neurologic disorders, especially MS. Thus, MBP has been shown to positively correlate with CSF leukocyte count, intrathecal IgG synthesis, and the CSF/serum albumin concentration quotient (Sellebjerg et al, 1998). These results supported the use of MBP in CSF as a surrogate disease marker during acute MS exacerbations. Others have found that analysis of antibody against MBP in patients with a clinically isolated syndrome is a rapid and precise method for predicting early conversion to clinically definite MS (Berger et al, 2003). However, increased CSF levels have also been reported in Guillain-Barré syndrome, lupus erythematosus, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, and various brain tumors, and following CNS irradiation and chemotherapy (Mahoney et al, 1984; Brooks, 1989). Measurement of CSF MBP levels has also been proposed as a prognostic marker in patients with serious head injury (Noseworthy et al, 1985). Recently, the clinical utility of MBP measurement in patients with MS has been questioned, based on similarity of abnormal results to other established laboratory methods, such as presence of oligoclonal bands on protein electrophoresis, for diagnosing MS (Greene et al, 2012).

α_2-Macroglobulin. Except for a small amount transported across the BBB in pinocytic vesicles, α_2-macroglobulin (A2M) is normally excluded from the CSF because of its large size. The number of these vesicles is increased in certain polyneuropathies, resulting in an increased CSF A2M level. Significant elevation reflects subdural hemorrhage or breakdown of the BBB, as occurs in bacterial meningitis. A2M measurement alone, or in relationship to albumin and IgG, may assist in the evaluation of neurologic disorders and increased CSF protein, and in the rapid differentiation between bacterial and aseptic meningitis (Meucci et al, 1993; Kanoh & Ohtani, 1997).

β_2-Microglobulin. This protein is part of the human leukocyte antigen class I molecule on the surfaces of all nucleated cells. CSF levels above 1.8 mg/L are associated with leptomeningeal leukemia and lymphoma but are not highly specific (Weller et al, 1992), in that they have a maximal positive predictive value of 78% in cases with a positive cytology (Jeffrey et al, 1990). β_2-microglobulin (B2M) has also been shown to be a marker for neuro-Behçet's syndrome (Kawai & Hirohata, 2000). Viral infections, including human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-1, other inflammatory conditions, and various malignancies have also been associated with elevated levels. The measurement of B2M remains primarily investigational.

C-Reactive Protein. Early studies indicated that CSF C-reactive protein (CRP) is useful in differentiating viral (aseptic) meningitis from bacterial meningitis (Corral et al, 1981; Abramson et al, 1985; Stearman & Southgate, 1994). Others reported that CSF CRP is a more useful screening test for viral versus bacterial meningitis, especially in children (Sormunen et al, 1999). A meta-analysis of CRP studies since 1980 suggested that a normal CSF or serum CRP has a high probability of ruling out bacterial meningitis (i.e., negative predictive value about 97%) (Gerdes et al, 1998). Another study found not only that CSF CRP levels were increased in bacterial meningitis, but that these levels were significantly higher in patients with gram-negative bacterial meningitis than in those with gram-positive bacterial meningitis (Rajs et al, 2002). This assay has been found to be more specific than blood CRP levels in the laboratory diagnosis of meningitis in children (Malla et al, 2013).

Fibronectin. This large glycoprotein (molecular mass about 420 kDa) is normally present in essentially all tissues and body fluids. Its primary function is its role in cell adhesion and phagocytosis (Ruoslahti et al, 1981). Thus, cell adhesion allows leukocytes to adhere to and pass through the vascular endothelia and migrate to the inflammatory site.

In children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia, elevated CSF fibronectin levels are associated with a poor prognosis, presumably due to leukemic involvement of the CNS (Rautonen et al, 1989). Significant CSF elevations have also been reported in Burkitt's lymphoma (Rajantie et al, 1989), some metastatic solid tumors, astrocytomas, and bacterial meningitis (Weller et al, 1990; Torre et al, 1991). Decreased levels have been reported in viral meningitis and in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)–dementia complex (Torre et al, 1991; 1993). Detection of fibronectin with alternatively spliced extra domain A is found in lower amounts in CSF from children with bacterial meningitis as opposed to viral meningitis or without meningitis (Pupek et al, 2013).

β-Amyloid Protein 42 and τ Protein. The diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease (AD) is based on the presence of dementia and a specific clinical profile (i.e., from medical history, clinical examination) suggestive of AD, together with the exclusion of other causes of dementia. Pathologically, the disease is characterized by the presence of neurofibrillary tangles and amyloid plaques.

Studies indicate that measurement of biochemical markers increases diagnostic accuracy, especially early in the course of the disease, when clinical symptoms are mild and vague and overlap with cognitive changes that accompany aging and ischemic dementia. Thus, increased CSF levels of microtubule-associated τ protein and decreased levels of β-amyloid protein ending at amino acid 42 have been shown to significantly increase the accuracy of AD diagnosis (Andreasen et al, 2001; Riemenschneider et al, 2002; Sunderland et al, 2003). The positive predictive value for early AD is greater than 90% (Andreasen et al, 2001). Others have found that the calculated ratio of phosphorylated τ protein to β-amyloid peptide is superior to either measure alone (Maddalena et al, 2003). The results were as follows: Distinguishing patients with AD from healthy controls—sensitivity 96%, specificity 97%; patients with AD from those with non-AD dementia—sensitivity 80%, specificity 73%; and patients with AD from those with other neurologic disorders—sensitivity 80%, specificity 89%. These assays all appear to have a place in the biochemical diagnosis of early AD (Blennow & Zetterberg, 2009).

Protein 14-3-3. The transmissible spongiform encephalopathies constitute a group of uniformly fatal neurodegenerative diseases. Of these, CJD is the major spongiform disease in humans. Two proteins, designated 130 and 131, have been detected in low concentrations in CSF from CJD patients. These proteins have the same amino acid sequence as protein 14-3-3 (Hsich et al, 1996). In patients with dementia, a positive immunoassay for the 14-3-3 protein in CSF strongly supports a diagnosis of CJD. In a subsequent study of patients with suspected CJD, the sensitivity of the 14-3-3 protein determined by immunoassay was 97%, and the specificity was 87% (Lemstra et al, 2000). False-positive results were seen primarily in patients with stroke and meningoencephalitis.

Others, using a modified Western blot technique, reported a 94.7% positive predictive value and a 92.4% negative predictive value for CJD (Zerr et al, 1998). False-positive results were seen in patients with herpes simplex encephalitis, atypical encephalitis, metastatic lung cancer, and hypoxic brain damage.

Detecting elevation of protein 14-3-3, in combination with elevation of other brain-derived proteins, such as τ protein, in CSF appears to be useful in the diagnosis of CJD (Sanchez-Juan et al, 2006).

Transferrin and CSF Leakage. Cerebrospinal fluid leakage usually presents as otorrhea or rhinorrhea following head trauma, in some cases beginning months to years after the injury. Recurrent meningitis is a serious complication, making accurate identification of the leaking fluid very important. In this regard, protein and glucose measurements are too nonspecific to be of value. Transferrin, an iron-binding glycoprotein with

a molecular mass of about 77 kDa, is synthesized primarily in the liver. However, two transferrin isoforms are present in the CSF; the major isoform (β_1-transferrin) is present in all body fluids. The second isoform (β_2-transferrin), present only in the central nervous system, is produced in the central nervous system by the catalytic conversion of β-1-transferrin by neuraminidase. Immunofixation electrophoresis readily identifies both isoforms.

Detection of β_2-transferrin in CSF by protein electrophoresis with transferrin immunofixation is a noninvasive, rapid, and inexpensive test of high sensitivity and specificity that requires as little as 0.1 mL of fluid (Ryall et al, 1992; Normansell et al, 1994). Several reports have demonstrated the value of this technique in the diagnosis of CSF otorrhea and rhinorrhea—conditions in which both isoforms are readily identified (Irjala et al, 1979; Rouah et al, 1987; Zaret et al, 1992). Others have stressed the importance of β_2-transferrin identification in both CSF and inner ear perilymphatic leakage, as well as possible sources of error due to the presence of a transferrin allelic variant (Skedros et al, 1993a, 1993b; Sloman & Kelly, 1993). β_2-transferrin is sufficiently stable in CSF stored at room temperature and/or when mixed with nasal mucus that a negative result in a patient-collected nasal fluid specimen up to 1 week old is a reliable negative finding for CSF leakage (Bleier et al, 2011).

Methemoglobin and Bilirubin. Although most cases of subarachnoid and intracerebral hemorrhage are readily identified by computed tomography (CT), patients with mild subarachnoid hemorrhage, small subdural or cerebral hematomas, and blood seepage from an aneurysm or neoplasm and from small cerebral infarcts often are not identified by this technique. In these cases, CSF spectrophotometric analysis has been shown to detect methemoglobin in colorless CSF (<0.3 µmol/L) (Trbojevic-Cepe et al, 1992). An increase in CSF bilirubin is also recognized as a key finding supporting the diagnosis of subarachnoid hemorrhage (UK National External Quality Assessment Scheme for Immunochemistry Working Group, 2003). A single net bilirubin absorbance cutoff point of >0.007 absorbance units is recommended in the decision tree for interpretation and reporting of results.

Glucose

Derived from blood glucose, fasting CSF glucose levels are normally 50 to 80 mg/dL (2.8 to 4.4 mmol/L)—about 60% of plasma values. Rigorous evaluation of CSF and serum glucose levels in a large number of children confirmed that the CSF glucose level is normally approximately 60% of the serum glucose level during childhood (Nigrovic et al, 2012). Results should be compared with plasma levels, ideally following a 4-hour fast, for adequate clinical interpretation. The normal CSF/plasma glucose ratio varies from 0.3 to 0.9, with fluctuations in blood levels caused by the lag in CSF glucose equilibration time.

CSF values below 40 mg/dL (2.2 mmol/L) or ratios below 0.3 are considered to be abnormal. Hypoglycorrhachia is a characteristic finding of bacterial, tuberculous, and fungal meningitis. However, sensitivity can be as low as 55% for bacterial meningitis (Hayward et al, 1987), so a normal level does not exclude these conditions. Some cases of viral meningoencephalitis also have low glucose levels, but generally not to the degree seen in bacterial meningitis. Meningeal involvement by a malignant tumor, sarcoidosis, cysticercosis, trichinosis, ameba *(Naegleria)*, acute syphilitic meningitis, intrathecal administration of radioiodinated serum albumin, subarachnoid hemorrhage, symptomatic hypoglycemia, and rheumatoid meningitis may also produce low CSF glucose levels (Fishman, 1992).

Decreased CSF glucose results from increased anaerobic glycolysis in brain tissue and leukocytes and from impaired transport into the CSF. Bacteria are usually present in insufficient quantities to be a major contributor to the use of glucose in CSF. CSF glucose levels normalize before protein levels and cell counts during recovery from meningitis, making it a useful parameter in assessing response to treatment.

Increased CSF glucose is of no clinical significance, reflecting increased blood glucose levels within 2 hours of lumbar puncture. A traumatic tap may also cause a spurious increase in CSF glucose.

Lactate

CSF and blood lactate levels are largely independent of each other. The reference interval for older children and adults is 9.0 to 26 mg/dL (1.0 to 2.9 mmol/L) (Knight et al, 1981). Newborns have higher levels, ranging from about 10 to 60 mg/dL (1.1 to 6.7 mmol/L) for the first 2 days, and from 10 to 40 mg/dL (1.1 to 4.4 mmol/L) for days 3 to 10 (McGuinness et al, 1983). Elevated CSF lactate levels reflect CNS anaerobic metabolism due to tissue hypoxia.

Lactate measurement has been used as an adjunctive test in differentiating viral meningitis from bacterial, partially-treated bacterial, mycoplasma, fungal, and tuberculous meningitis, in which routine parameters yield equivocal results (Cunha, 2012). In patients with viral meningitis, lactate levels are usually below 25 mg/dL (2.8 mmol/L) and are almost always less than 35 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L), whereas bacterial meningitis typically has levels above 35 mg/dL (Bailey et al, 1990; Cameron et al, 1993). Using 30 to 36 mg/dL as the cutoff value for bacterial meningitis, the sensitivity and specificity are about 80% and 90%, respectively. Viral meningitis, partially treated bacterial meningitis, and tuberculous meningitis often have intermediate lactate levels that overlap each other, limiting the use of lactate measurements in this differential diagnosis.

Persistently elevated ventricular CSF lactate levels are associated with a poor prognosis in patients with severe head injury (DeSalles et al, 1986).

F2-Isoprostanes

F2-isoprostanes are increased in diseased regions of the brain in patients with Alzheimer's disease (AD) (Pratico et al, 1998) and are markers of free radical brain injury associated with advanced age and latent AD (Montine et al, 2011). Compared with age-matched controls, CSF F2-isoprostanes are elevated in patients with probable AD (Montine et al, 1999). Therefore, in conjunction with CSF τ and β-amyloid protein, the measurement of CSF F2-isoprostanes appears to enhance the accuracy of the laboratory diagnosis of AD (Montine et al, 2001) and by itself appears to correlate with the degree of cognitive decline in some AD patients (Duits et al, 2013).

Enzymes

A wide variety of enzymes derived from brain tissue, blood, or cellular elements have been described in the CSF. Although CSF enzyme assays are not commonly used in the diagnosis of CNS diseases, there are diseases/disorders in which they may prove useful.

Adenosine Deaminase

Adenosine deaminase (ADA) catalyzes the irreversible hydrolytic deamination of adenosine to produce inosine. Because ADA is particularly abundant in T lymphocytes, which are increased in tuberculosis, its measurement has been recommended in the diagnosis of pleural, peritoneal, and meningeal tuberculosis. Higher ADA levels are present in tuberculous infections than in viral, bacterial, and malignant diseases (Blake & Berman, 1982; Mann et al, 1982, Choi et al, 2002), and measuring ADA in CSF appears to be a sensitive and specific assay in diagnosing tuberculous meningitis (Xu et al, 2010). ADA appears to have limited utility in HIV-associated neurologic disorders (Corral et al, 2004).

Creatine Kinase

Brain tissue is rich in creatine kinase (CK) because it participates in maintaining an adequate supply of adenosine triphosphate. Increased CSF CK activity has been reported in numerous CNS disorders, including hydrocephalus, cerebral infarction, various primary brain tumors, and subarachnoid hemorrhage, among others (Savory & Brody, 1979). In patients with head trauma, CSF CK levels correlate directly with the severity of the concussion (Florez et al, 1976).

CSF CK-MM and CK-MB are not normally present; when identified, they are due to blood contamination (CK-MM) and an equilibrium between CK-BB and CK-MM to produce CK-MB. Because the CK-BB isoenzyme accounts for about 90% of brain CK activity and mitochondrial CK (CKmt) the other 10%, CK isoenzyme measurements are more specific than total CK for CNS disorders (Chandler et al, 1984).

CSF CK-BB is increased about 6 hours following an ischemic or anoxic insult. Global brain ischemia following respiratory or cardiac arrest results in diffuse cerebral injury with peak CK-BB levels in about 48 hours (Chandler et al, 1986). Here, CSF CK-BB activity less than 5 U/L (upper normal level) indicates minimal neurologic damage; 5 to 20 U/L indicates mild to moderate CNS injury; and levels between 21 and 50 U/L are commonly correlated with death. Death occurs in essentially all patients with levels above 50 U/L.

Increased CSF CK-BB levels also correlate with the outcome following a subarachnoid hemorrhage (Coplin et al, 1999). A CK-BB level greater than 40 U/L increases the chance of an unfavorable early or late outcome to 100%.

Lactate Dehydrogenase

Lactate dehydrogenase (LD) activity is high in brain tissue, with a predominance of the electrophoretically fast-moving isoenzyme fractions LD_1 and LD_2. Total LD activity of 40 U/L is a reasonable upper limit of normal for adults and 70 U/L for neonates (Donald & Malan, 1986; Engelke et al, 1986). LD is useful in differentiating a traumatic tap from intracranial hemorrhage because a current traumatic tap with intact RBCs does not significantly elevate the LD level (Engelke et al, 1986). Sensitivity and

specificity are about 70% to 85% depending on the cutoff value. As with lactate, LD activity is significantly higher in bacterial meningitis than in aseptic meningitis (Donald & Malan, 1986; Engelke et al, 1986). Using a cutoff of 40 U/L, the sensitivity is about 86% and the specificity about 93%.

Total CSF LD levels are also increased in patients with CNS leukemia, lymphoma, metastatic carcinoma, bacterial meningitis, and subarachnoid hemorrhage (Kjeldsberg, 1993). CSF LD isoenzymes have been shown to add considerable specificity in the evaluation of various metastatic brain tumors (Fleisher et al, 1981). The LD_5/total LD ratio is increased (i.e., above 10% to 15%) in patients with leptomeningeal metastases from carcinoma of the breast and lung and malignant melanoma. LD isoenzyme analysis is also useful in detecting CNS involvement by leukemias and lymphomas (Lossos et al, 2000). Isoenzyme analysis shows a distinct pattern in young children with infantile spasms (Nussinovitch et al, 2003a) and febrile convulsions (Nussinovitch et al, 2003b). Compared with controls, both disorders are characterized by decreased LD_1, increased LD_2 and LD_3, and no changes in LD_4 and LD_5.

CT is of limited value in estimating recovery potential and neurologic outcome during the early stages of ischemic brain injury. However, compared with controls (mean LD, 11.2 U/L), patients with an early stroke had a mean level of 40.9 U/L, and those with a transient ischemic attack (TIA) had a mean value of 11.8 U/L (Lampl et al, 1990). In patients with hypoxic brain injury, an increased LD level 72 hours following resuscitation indicates a poor prognosis (Karkela et al, 1992).

Lysozyme

Lysozyme (muramidase) catalyzes the depolymerization of mucopolysaccharides. Because the enzyme is particularly rich in neutrophil and macrophage lysosomes, its activity is very low in normal CSF. However, CSF lysozyme activity is significantly increased in patients with both bacterial and tuberculous meningitis. Thus, discriminant analysis demonstrated that 97% of patients with bacterial meningitis had increased lysozyme levels (Ribeiro et al, 1992). Others found that patients with tuberculous meningitis had significantly higher CSF lysozyme levels than those with bacterial meningitis, partially treated bacterial meningitis, and controls (Mishra et al, 2003). The diagnostic sensitivity and specificity for tuberculous meningitis were 93.7% and 84.1%, respectively. Increased levels are also present in cerebral atrophy, various CNS tumors, multiple sclerosis, intracranial hemorrhage, and epilepsy (Kjeldsberg, 1993).

Ammonia, Amines, and Amino Acids

CSF ammonia levels vary from 30% to 50% of blood values. Elevated levels are generally proportional to the degree of existing hepatic encephalopathy but are difficult to quantify. Moreover, because hepatic encephalopathy generally correlates with blood ammonia levels, the measurement of CSF ammonia has little, if any, clinical value. However, cerebral glutamine, synthesized from ammonia and glutamic acid, serves as the means for CNS ammonia removal. Thus, CSF glutamine levels reflect the concentration of brain ammonia. Glutamine reference intervals are method dependent; the upper reference level is about 20 mg/dL. Values over 35 mg/dL are usually associated with hepatic encephalopathy (Fishman, 1992). Elevated CSF glutamine levels have also been reported in patients with depression (Levine et al, 2000) and encephalopathy secondary to hypercapnia and sepsis (Mizock et al, 1989).

A major etiologic theory of schizophrenia involves dopamine. The cornerstone for this theory is the fact that neuroleptic drugs that block dopamine receptors are effective in the treatment of this disorder. Thus, it has been reported that CSF levels of homovanillic acid (HVA), a metabolite of the biogenic amines, are related to the severity of schizophrenic psychosis (Maas et al, 1997). However, HVA concentration varied as a function of psychosis rather than being related to the diagnosis of schizophrenia per se. Others have reported decreased CSF levels of 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid, a metabolite of serotonin, in schizophrenic patients with suicidal behavior (Cooper et al, 1992). This report adds support for a possible relationship between suicide and CNS serotonin metabolism.

Although free CSF amino acids are relatively high in infants younger than 30 days of age, their concentration is further increased in those with febrile convulsions and bacterial meningitis. γ-Aminobutyric acid (GABA), a major inhibitory brain transmitter, is significantly decreased in basal ganglia neurons, and is very low or undetectable in the CSF of patients with Alzheimer's disease and Huntington's disease (Achar et al, 1976; Dubowitz et al, 1992). CSF GABA was detected in all patients with migraine attacks, but not in those with tension headaches or in the control group without headaches (Welch et al, 1975). Infants with startle disease, a rare inherited autosomal dominant disorder characterized by seizures or the so-called **stiff baby syndrome,** have significantly decreased CSF GABA levels (Dubowitz et al, 1992; Berthier et al, 1994).

Electrolytes and Acid-Base Balance

There are no clinically useful indications for the measurement of CSF sodium, potassium, chloride, calcium, or magnesium. Measurements of CSF pH, partial pressure of carbon dioxide (pCO_2), and bicarbonate are also not practical for patient care (Fishman, 1992).

Tumor Markers

Numerous studies have shown that various tumor markers are increased in the CSF of patients with both primary and metastatic tumors.

Carcinoembryonic Antigen

Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) is an oncofetal protein produced by a variety of carcinomas. An early study found increased CEA levels in 44% of patients with metastatic brain tumors (Suzuki & Tanaka, 1980). Others reported that CSF levels of CEA have a sensitivity of only about 31%, although the specificity is about 90% for detecting metastatic carcinoma of the leptomeninges (Klee et al, 1986; Twijnstra et al, 1986). CSF levels of CEA in patients with benign, primary malignant, and metastatic brain tumors are approximately 0.31 ng/mL, 0.92 ng/mL, and 6.3 ng/mL, respectively (Batabyal et al, 2003). CSF CEA levels are particularly sensitive in detecting leptomeningeal carcinoma metastasis (Kang et al, 2010).

Other oncofetal proteins include **human chorionic gonadotropin** (hCG), produced by choriocarcinoma and malignant germ cell tumors with a trophoblastic component, and **α-fetoprotein,** a glycoprotein produced by yolk sac elements of germ cell tumors. Both β-hCG and α-fetoprotein may be useful in the diagnosis and monitoring of the response to therapy in patients with CNS germ cell tumors (Seregni et al, 2002; Ferguson et al, 2008).

Elevation of CSF **ferritin** is a sensitive indicator of CNS malignancy but has very low specificity because it is also increased in patients with inflammatory neurologic diseases (Zandman-Goddard et al, 1986). This assay has greater diagnostic utility in detecting subarachnoid hemorrhage in patients presenting late (Petzold et al, 2011).

MICROBIOLOGICAL EXAMINATION

A thorough and prompt examination of cerebrospinal fluid is essential for the diagnosis of CNS infection because an inaccurate or delayed report may result in significant mortality or morbidity. Although changes in opening pressure, total cell and differential counts, total protein, and glucose suggest an infectious origin (Table 29-6), Gram stain, culture and other relevant studies are critical for a definitive diagnosis.

Bacterial Meningitis

The most common agents of bacterial meningitis are group B streptococcus (neonates), *Neisseria meningitidis* (3 months and older) (Fig. 29-9), *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (3 months and older), *Escherichia coli* and other gram-negative bacilli (newborn to 1 month), *Haemophilus influenzae* (3 months to 18 years), and *Listeria monocytogenes* (neonates, older adults, alcoholics, and immunosuppressed) (Graves, 1989; Wenger et al, 1990). *H. influenzae*, once the most common bacterial cause of meningitis in

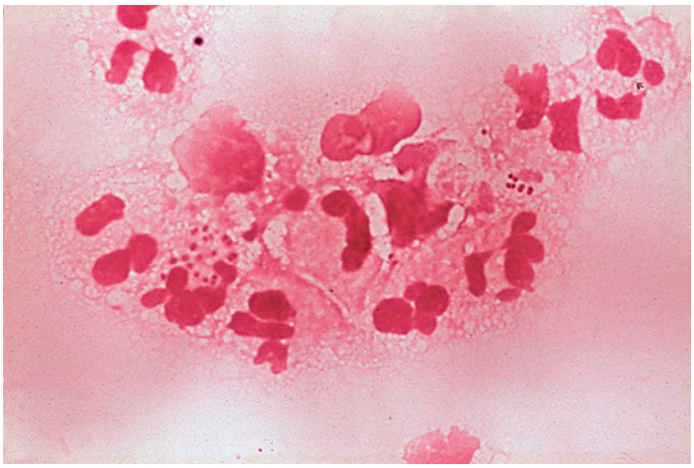


Figure 29-9 Cerebrospinal fluid Gram stain showing gram-negative diplococci characteristic of *N. meningitidis.*

TABLE 29-6
Typical Lumbar CSF Findings in Meningitis

Test	Bacterial	Viral	Fungal	Tuberculous
Opening pressure	Elevated	Usually normal	Variable	Variable
Leukocyte count	≥1000/μL	<100/μL	Variable	Variable
Cell differential	Mainly neutrophils*	Mainly lymphocytes†	Mainly lymphocytes	Mainly lymphocytes
Protein	Mild to marked increase	Normal to mild increase	Increased	Increased
Glucose	Usually ≤40 mg/dL	Normal	Decreased	Decreased: may be <45 mg/dL
CSF/serum glucose ratio	Normal to marked decrease	Usually normal	Low	Low
Lactic acid	Mild to marked increase	Normal to mild increase	Mild to moderate increase	Mild to moderate increase

Data from Body BA, Oneson RH, Herold DA: Use of cerebrospinal fluid lactic acid concentration in the diagnosis of fungal meningitis, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 17:429, 1987; Tang LM: Serial lactate determinations in tuberculous meningitis, *Scand J Infect Dis* 20:81, 1988; Arevalo CE, Barnes PF, Duda M, Leedom JM: Cerebrospinal fluid cell counts and chemistries in bacterial meningitis, *South Med J* 82:1122, 1989; Fishman RA: *Cerebrospinal fluid in diseases of the nervous system,* ed 2, Philadelphia, 1992, Saunders; Wubbel L, McCracken GH Jr: Management of bacterial meningitis, *Pediatr Rev* 19:78, 1998; Zunt JR, Marra CM: Cerebrospinal fluid testing for the diagnosis of central nervous system infection, *Neurol Clin* 17:675, 1999.
CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid.
*Lymphocytosis present in about 10% of cases.
†Neutrophils may predominate early in disease.

young children, has decreased dramatically from widespread use of *H. influenzae* type b vaccine. Cerebrospinal fluid shunts, head trauma, and neurosurgery place patients at risk for CNS infections from *Staphylococcus* species, gram-negative bacilli, and *Propionibacterium* species.

The Gram stain remains an accurate, rapid method by which to diagnose CNS infection. All specimens should be concentrated by centrifugation before Gram stain and culture. Depending upon the type of infecting microorganism and its concentration in the cerebrospinal fluid, Gram stain sensitivity ranges from 60% to 90%, with the greatest sensitivity corresponding to higher concentrations of bacteria (about 10^5 colony-forming units/mL). For example, the sensitivity of the Gram stain for detecting *Listeria monocytogenes* and gram-negative bacilli is 50% or less (Greenlee, 1990). For patients with many polymorphonuclear leukocytes but no organisms seen on Gram stain, the more sensitive acridine orange stain may be helpful. Cultures have a sensitivity of 80% to 90%, but are about 30% less sensitive in partially treated cases (Greenlee, 1990).

Although standard culture-based methods remain the mainstay for diagnosis, the BinaxNOW *Streptococcus pneumoniae* antigen test, an immunochromatographic membrane assay that detects the presence of the C polysaccharide cell wall antigen common to all pneumococcal serotypes, has been proven to be a valuable tool for the rapid diagnosis of pneumococcal meningitis from CSF. Latex agglutination bacterial antigen tests performed on CSF to detect *H. influenzae*, *N. meningitidis*, *S. pneumoniae*, and β-hemolytic group B streptococci historically are used as adjuncts to Gram stain and culture; however, the sensitivity is approximately the same as the Gram stain, and a negative test does not rule out the diagnosis of bacterial meningitis. Perhaps the best application of latex agglutination antigen tests is seen in partially treated, community-acquired meningitis that is negative for microorganisms by Gram stain (Perkins et al, 1995; Wilson, 1997).

The polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and sequencing of 16S ribosomal RNA in CSF have been shown to be very useful in the diagnosis of bacterial meningitis (Schuurman et al, 2004). Compared with bacterial culture, the assay shows a sensitivity of 86%, a specificity of 97%, a positive predictive value of 80%, and a negative predictive value of 98%. Nucleic acid amplification tests may also be helpful in patients already receiving antimicrobial therapy and in detecting more fastidious pathogens such as *N. meningitidis* (Porritt et al, 2000; Seward & Towner, 2000; Baethgen et al, 2003).

Spirochetal Meningitis

The incidence of neurosyphilis has increased in recent years, primarily in patients with HIV infection. In one report, 44% of patients with neurosyphilis had AIDS (Flood et al, 1998). Unfortunately, the remaining patients, who may have had HIV infection without AIDS, were not studied. The diagnosis of CNS infection in patients with syphilis relies primarily on CSF parameters and serologic testing, although molecular DNA testing may now represent another approach. Abnormalities in CSF protein and cell counts are common in syphilitic meningitis, but are nonspecific. CSF serologic testing to diagnose neurosyphilis is difficult. The standard nontreponemal test performed on CSF is the Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL). If few erythrocytes are contaminating the CSF, the VDRL specificity is high, but its sensitivity is only 50% to 60% (Davis & Schmitt, 1989). Treponemal tests, such as the treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS), are both sensitive and specific for syphilis; however, their use in CSF for neurosyphilis is controversial. The CSF FTA-ABS is highly sensitive, but false-positive results may occur. In the absence of CSF abnormalities or clinical suspicion, it should not be used as a screening test. Thus, the following generalizations have been proposed (Davis & Schmitt, 1989): (1) A nonreactive serum FTA-ABS test rules out neurosyphilis; (2) a reactive serum FTA-ABS test with a nonreactive CSF FTA-ABS test essentially rules out neurosyphilis; (3) a reactive CSF VDRL test makes a diagnosis of neurosyphilis likely; and (4) a reactive CSF FTA-ABS test may indicate active neurosyphilis, asymptomatic neurosyphilis, treated neurosyphilis, or a false-positive reaction. Other studies have demonstrated the utility of a PCR-based assay as a sensitive and specific means of diagnosing neurosyphilis (Leslie et al, 2007).

Diagnosis of Lyme meningitis represents another challenge for the laboratory. The mainstay of diagnosis remains serologic analysis performed on a serum specimen, using an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)-based screening assay followed by confirmation with Western blot. PCR-based analysis may be performed on CSF specimens; however, the sensitivity of this approach may be low, particularly in patients with chronic neuroborreliosis (Steere, 2010).

Rapid diagnosis of leptospiral and other bacterial infections is now possible using genomic methods, including next-generation DNA sequencing analysis. In a recent study, a patient with neuroleptospirosis in whom a diagnosis could not be established by conventional methods was successfully diagnosed using next-generation sequencing analysis of CSF (Wilson et al, 2014). This methodology offers the hope of increasingly rapid diagnosis of a range of infections, as well as a way to rapidly track infection outbreaks (Sherry et al, 2013).

Viral Meningitis

Enteroviruses (echoviruses, coxsackieviruses, polioviruses) and arboviruses are responsible for the majority of meningitis cases; a seasonal peak in spring to autumn has been noted for these agents. As an example, echoviruses 9 (E9) and 30 (E30) were found to be mainly responsible for an increase in cases of aseptic meningitis (Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, 2003). Most patients present with a CSF pleocytosis, and although neutrophils may be observed early in the infection, patients soon develop a predominance of lymphocytes.

Before molecular diagnostic testing, viral meningitis was a diagnosis of exclusion because the sensitivity of viral cultures can be low. Thus, in an early study, a specific etiologic diagnosis by viral cultures varied from 72% for enteroviruses to 5% for herpes simplex virus (HSV) (Marton & Gean, 1986).

Reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) is significantly more sensitive than cell culture (Dumler & Valsamakis, 1999; Hausfater et al, 2004). Arguably, it has evolved as the "gold standard" for the diagnosis of viral meningitis secondary to enterovirus, herpes simplex virus, cytomegalovirus, varicella zoster, and JC virus. The use of RT-PCR may result in significant cost savings by shortening hospital stays and eliminating unnecessary diagnostic and therapeutic interventions (Ramers et al, 2000). For patients with arbovirus-associated meningitis, acute and convalescent serologic testing in serum remains the cornerstone for diagnosis, with CSF testing a possible adjunct. Presumptive diagnosis of West Nile viral meningitis may be made on a CSF specimen using an IgM

antibody-capture ELISA assay. PCR testing for West Nile virus and other arboviruses may also be done on CSF specimens; however, these assays have low sensitivity because of the short-lived nature of the viremia in these diseases and are not recommended for routine use (Vaughn et al, 2010).

PCR amplification of HSV DNA has revolutionized the testing for HSV infection in CSF and has replaced brain biopsy as the primary method used in the early diagnosis of HSV meningoencephalitis (Tunkel, 2008). False negatives might occur in very early infections and with bloody taps, necessitating analysis of a second CSF specimen (Tyler, 2004).

Human Immunodeficiency Virus

A wide variety of CSF abnormalities may be found in HIV-positive patients with or without neurologic disease, including lymphocytic pleocytosis, elevated IgG indexes, and oligoclonal bands (Chalmers et al, 1990; Hall & Snyder, 1992). Identifying opportunistic infection is the most important indication for examining the CSF. Serious fungal infections may exist in the presence of few or no CSF parameter abnormalities.

Fungal Meningitis

Cryptococcus neoformans is the most frequently isolated fungal pathogen from CSF. India ink or nigrosin stains for cryptococcus capsular halos have a sensitivity of about 25%, increasing to 53% with multiple lumbar punctures, and to greater than 90% in untreated HIV-infected patients (Marton & Gean, 1986). Detection of cryptococcal antigen from sera or CSF using latex agglutination has higher sensitivity, ranging from 60% to 95%. False-negatives due to a prozone effect or low concentration of polysaccharide antigen may occur. Early disease, intraparenchymal infection, infection with nonencapsulated *C. neoformans* variants, and immune complexes (corrected with pronase treatment) may also produce false-negatives. Conversely, sera or CSF from patients with rheumatoid factor or *Trichosporon asahii* infection may be falsely positive. If clinical suspicion for dimorphic or filamentous fungi is high, large volumes of CSF (approximately 15 to 20 mL) are optimal for culture to improve the recovery of fungal organisms.

Tuberculous Meningitis

Abnormal CSF with elevated protein and lymphocytic predominance are the hallmark features of tuberculous meningitis. The sensitivity of CSF acid-fast stains for the diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis is highly variable, ranging from 10% to 12% (Greenlee, 1990) to greater than 50% (Thwaites et al, 2004). Large volumes of CSF, often obtained from multiple lumbar punctures with the use of concentration techniques, are recommended to improve the sensitivity of both acid-fast stain and culture (Marton & Gean, 1986).

PCR nucleic acid amplification for detecting *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* DNA-specific sequences have shown great promise in the rapid and accurate diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis (Lin et al, 1995; Desai & Pal, 2002), but PCR methods using a single primer are associated with relatively low sensitivity (Pai et al, 2003). Multiplex PCR analysis, using primers to multiple relevant tubercular genes, appears to be a significantly more sensitive method in the rapid diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis (Kusum et al, 2011).

DOT ELISA has been standardized to detect tuberculosis antigens and antibodies against *M. tuberculosis* in CSF. Using this technique, a positive reaction was present in 86% of cases with suspected tuberculous meningitis (Kashyap et al, 2003). Only 5% of patients with other disorders, mainly pyogenic meningitis, were positive.

Other tests have been shown to be useful in some cases of tuberculous meningitis. ADA levels are significantly higher in tuberculous meningitis than in other types of meningitis and CNS disorders (Pettersson et al, 1991; Choi et al, 2002; Solari et al, 2013), although the degree of increase indicative of tuberculous infection varies depending on the specific assay used.

Primary Amebic Meningoencephalitis

This rare disease is caused by the free-living ameba *Naegleria fowleri*, *Acanthamoeba* species, and *Balamuthia mandrillaris*. *Naegleria* and *Balamuthia* are more likely to cause an acute inflammatory response with a neutrophilic pleocytosis, a decreased glucose level, an elevated protein concentration, and the presence of erythrocytes. Gram stain is always negative. *Acanthamoeba* more often produces a granulomatous meningitis. Motile *Naegleria* trophozoites may be visualized by light or phase-contrast microscopy in direct wet mounts, allowing rapid diagnosis. Intact and degenerating organisms may be identified on Wright's- or Giemsa-stained cytospins but must be distinguished from macrophages (dos Santos, 1970; Benson et al, 1985). Acridine orange stain is useful in differentiating amebas (brick red) from leukocytes (bright green). Immunocytochemical staining of CSF specimens using an antibody to *Naegleria fowleri* has been shown to improve microscopic detection of this organism (Visvesvara, 2010). Multiplex PCR-based methods are an even more sensitive modality for detecting multiple amebic organisms in CSF (Qvarnstrom et al, 2006).

SYNOVIAL FLUID

Synovium refers to the tissue lining synovial tendon sheaths, bursae, and diarthrodial joints, except for the articular surface. It is composed of one to three cell layers that form a discontinuous surface overlying fatty, fibrous, or periosteal joint tissue.

Synovial fluid (SF) is an imperfect ultrafiltrate of blood plasma combined with hyaluronic acid produced by the synovial cells. Small ions and molecules (e.g., Na^+, K^+, glucose, urea) readily pass into the joint space and therefore are similar in concentration to plasma; large molecules are absent or present in trace amounts. Resorption of synovial molecules is by lymphatics and is not size dependent. SF acts as a lubricant and adhesive and provides nutrients for the avascular articular cartilage.

Examination of the SF is essential to distinguish infectious from noninfectious arthritis. Results from gross and microscopic examination of SF have traditionally been divided into "reaction types," as depicted in Table 29-7. These groupings are largely descriptive, and considerable overlap among them is evident. Except for Gram stain, culture, and crystal examination, SF parameters can be nonspecific and must be integrated into the clinical context.

Noninflammatory effusions (Group I) typically have leukocyte counts less than 3000/μL, with a minority of neutrophils. Osteoarthritis, traumatic arthritis, neuropathic osteoarthropathy, pigmented villonodular synovitis, and early rheumatic fever usually present with little

TABLE 29-7
Synovial Fluid Findings by Disease Category

		CATEGORY			
Finding	**Normal**	**Group I Noninflammatory**	**Group II Inflammatory**	**Group III Infectious**	**Group IV Hemorrhagic**
Clarity	Transparent	Transparent	Transparent/opaque	Opaque	Opaque
Color	Clear to pale yellow	Xanthochromic	Xanthochromic to white/bloody	White	Red-brown or xanthochromic
WBCs/mL	0-150	<3000	3000-75,000	50,000-200,000	50-10,000
PMNs, %	<25	<30	>50	>90	<50
RBCs	No	No	No	Yes	Yes
Glucose (blood/SF difference, mg/dL)	0-10 (0-0.56 mmol/L)	0-10 (0-0.56 mmol/L)	0-40 (0-2.2 mmol/L)	20-100 (1.11-5.5 mmol/L)	0-20 (0-1.11 mmol/L)

Modified from Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.
PMNs, Polymorphonuclear cells, neutrophils; *RBCs,* red blood cells; *SF,* synovial fluid; *WBCs,* white blood cells.

inflammatory response. Early rheumatoid arthritis, early bacterial infection, and viral arthritis may also present as noninflammatory effusions.

Inflammatory effusions (Group II) have leukocyte counts between 3000 and 75,000/μL, with neutrophils accounting for more than 50% of the population. Rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), Reiter's syndrome, rheumatic fever, acute crystal-induced arthritis, arthritis associated with inflammatory bowel disease, psoriatic arthritis, and fat droplet synovitis are examples of this reaction group.

Purulent (infectious) effusions (Group III) typically have leukocyte counts greater than 50,000/μL, of which 90% or more are neutrophils. Bacterial, fungal, and tuberculous joint infections constitute this group.

Hemorrhagic effusions (Group IV) may be seen in association with traumatic arthritis, pigmented villonodular synovitis, synovial hemangioma, neuropathic osteoarthropathy, joint prostheses, and hematologic disorders (hemophilia, thrombocytopenia, anticoagulant therapy, sickle cell disease or trait, myeloproliferative syndrome).

SPECIMEN COLLECTION

Joint fluid aspiration (arthrocentesis) should be confined to patients with an undiagnosed effusion or a significant clinical change related to a known effusion. It should be performed by an experienced operator using good sterile technique. Caution is necessary to avoid aspirating a sterile joint in someone with bacteremia or through a cutaneous or periarticular soft tissue infection into a sterile joint. Large joints such as the knee normally contain no more than 4.0 mL of SF, so small sample size is common unless an effusion is present.

Synovial fluid must be collected with sterile, disposable needles and plastic syringes to avoid contamination by birefringent particulates. The syringe may be heparinized with 25 U of sodium heparin/mL of SF in routine arthrocentesis. Oxalate, lithium heparin, and powdered ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) anticoagulants should be avoided because they form crystal artifacts that may be misleading during the microscopic examination. Before aspiration, the joint should be turned or otherwise manipulated to ensure mixing of its contents.

Ideally, the specimen should be separated into three parts: 3 to 10 mL into a sterile heparinized tube or syringe for microbiological studies; 2 to 5 mL in an anticoagulant tube (sodium heparin or liquid EDTA) for microscopic examination; and about 5 mL into a plain (no anticoagulant) tube for chemical analysis (normal SF does not clot because fibrinogen is absent). Heparin concentrations greater than 125 U/mL have an inhibitory effect on some pathogenic bacteria (Rosett & Hodges, 1980). Specimens for culture, therefore, should be at least 1 to 2 mL in volume if they are submitted in green-top heparin tubes (Becton Dickinson, Rutherford, N.J.) containing 143 U/tube of heparin, or submitted in recapped syringes after removal of the needle and excess air.

Dry taps may still have fluid within the needle, which may be sufficient for the most critical tests. Such specimens should be submitted with the needle still on the syringe and its tip stuck into a sterile cork. Good communication with the laboratory is crucial to the appropriate processing of such specimens.

RECOMMENDED TESTS

Laboratory examination of SF is of major importance in the differential diagnosis of joint disease, especially in crystal-induced and infectious arthritis. When either is suspected, arthrocentesis and a systematic examination of the SF are imperative, and when examination is carried out properly, it is usually diagnostic. In other joint diseases, a specific diagnosis may not be possible. Nevertheless, fluid examination is still important, if only to rule out infectious arthritis, which is a critical diagnosis to make in that a joint may be irreversibly damaged within 2 to 3 days if not properly treated. This is especially true when *Staphylococcus aureus* is the infectious organism. Therefore, routine tests should be directed toward the diagnosis of these two disorders (Box 29-8). Although other tests are not of practical value for routine use, they may provide important diagnostic information under certain circumstances.

It is critical that these tests be performed well because they can provide highly specific diagnostic information. Quality performance may be compromised in smaller laboratories that examine only a small number of SF specimens (Hasselbacher, 1987; Rabinovitch & Cornbleet, 1994).

BOX 29-8

Recommended Synovial Fluid Tests

Routine tests
Gross examination (color, clarity)
Total and differential leukocyte counts
Gram stain and bacterial culture (aerobic and anaerobic)
Crystal examination with polarizing microscope and compensator
Useful tests in certain circumstances
Fungal and acid-fast stains and cultures
PCR for bacterial and mycobacterial DNA
Serum–synovial fluid glucose differential
Lactate and other organic acids
Complement
Enzymes
Uric acid

Modified from Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.
DNA, Deoxyribonucleic acid; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

GROSS EXAMINATION

Total volume should be recorded at the bedside, especially if the sample is to be divided for submission to different laboratory sections.

Color should be evaluated in a clear glass tube against a white background. Normal SF is colorless but is often pale yellow because of diapedesis of a few RBCs associated with even mild trauma. Noninflammatory and inflammatory disorders impart a straw to yellow color (xanthochromia). Septic fluid may be yellow, brown, or green depending on the chromogens produced by the offending organism and the host response, including the presence of WBCs and RBCs.

A **traumatic tap** produces an uneven distribution of blood during arthrocentesis or streaking in the syringe. Although pale yellow xanthochromia is difficult to distinguish from normal, a red-brown color following centrifugation is good evidence of pathologic hemarthrosis.

Clarity relates to the number and type of particles within the SF. Because normal SF is transparent, newsprint is easily read through the tube. Although translucent fluid obscures details, black and white areas can be distinguished, but opaque fluid completely obscures the background.

Leukocytes are most commonly responsible for changes in clarity. However, very large numbers of crystals may produce an opaque, milky, opalescent fluid without leukocytes. A shimmering, oily-appearing specimen suggests an abundance of cholesterol crystals, which may grossly resemble pus.

Increased turbidity is less often due to concentrations of fibrin, free-floating **rice bodies** (fragments of degenerating proliferative synovial cells or microinfarcted synovium), metal and plastic particles from patients with joint prostheses, or cartilage fragments in osteoarthritis. A **ground pepper** appearance from pigmented cartilage fragments may be the result of a metabolic disorder (i.e., ochronosis).

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Total Cell Count

Total leukocyte counts should be performed promptly to avoid degenerative cell loss, which begins as soon as 1 hour following arthrocentesis. Cell counts are usually performed in a standard hemocytometer. A wet-prep slide count of 0 to 2 leukocytes per high-power field (hpf) (averaged over 10 fields) predicts fewer than 1300 WBCs by cell count (Clayburne et al, 1992). Leukocyte counts over 50,000/μL require dilution, which should be done with saline, not acetic acid, to avoid mucin clot formation and cell clumping. Automated cell counters may be used, but their use risks clogging the machine aperture or obtaining spuriously high cell counts from non-WBC particles (e.g., crystals, fat globules), especially in multichannel and flow cell–based machines. Pretreatment of highly viscous SF samples with hyaluronidase improves automated cell counting using these instruments (Aulesa et al, 2003). Automated cell counting in SF samples using digital image-based technology avoids the clogging and spurious count problems and now offers a reliable method for these counts (Walker et al, 2009; Scott, 2014).

Leukocyte counts greater than 10,000/μL, and often greater than 50,000/μL, are characteristic of crystal-induced arthritis (e.g., gout, pseudogout), chronic inflammatory arthritis (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, ankylosing spondylitis), and septic arthritis (Kjeldsberg, 1993). Osteoarthritis, osteochondritis dissicans, trauma, and synovioma usually have total WBC counts less than 10,000/μL.

Erythrocytes should be routinely counted unless it is an obvious traumatic tap. If a large number of RBCs interferes with the leukocyte count,

they may be lysed by dilution with 0.3 normal saline or 1% saponin in saline.

The upper reference level for SF leukocytes is 150 to 200/µL (Kjeldsberg, 1993). Elevated cell counts are used to help divide findings into different disease categories but are nonspecific for any particular disease because of extensive overlap.

Differential Leukocyte Count

Cytospin preparations are preferred over smears from centrifuged SF because the cell morphology is significantly better preserved. Treatment with hyaluronidase may be necessary to produce thin smears in viscous specimens. Liquid-based thin-layer processing instruments may also be used effectively to produce good-quality preparations of SF for microscopic examination (Policarpio-Nicolas & Valente, 2013). Automated leukocyte differential counts utilizing flow cytometers may be reliably performed on SF samples (Aulesa et al, 2003), with even better performance, including detection of crystals, using digital image-based instruments (Walker et al, 2009; Scott, 2014).

Neutrophils normally account for about 20% of SF leukocytes. Neutrophils generally exceed 50% in urate gout, pseudogout, and rheumatoid arthritis (RA); they most often exceed 75% in acute bacterial arthritis. When 75% is used as a cutoff, the sensitivity for an inflammatory process is about 75%, and the specificity is 92% (Shmerling et al, 1990). These cells frequently exhibit degenerative changes and may contain bacteria, crystals, lipid droplets, vacuoles, or dark blue to black granular inclusions thought to consist of immune complexes (ragocytes, RA cells). The presence of ragocytes in patients with RA may indicate a poorer outcome (Davis et al, 1988).

Lupus erythematosus (LE) cells, sometimes present in patients with lupus arthritis, are most often neutrophils that have phagocytosed the nuclei of degenerating cells (Fig. 29-10). However, LE cells are not pathognomonic for SLE because they have also been identified in the SF of RA patients (Hunder & Pierre, 1970).

Lymphocytes, normally constituting about 15% of SF cells, are prominent in early RA and other autoimmune disorders, as well as in chronic infections. Reactive forms, including immunoblasts, are occasionally present.

Monocytes and **macrophages** are the most common cells present in normal SF, accounting for approximately 65% of the cell count. Monocytosis may be self-limited in viral arthritis or serum sickness, or more chronic in SLE or undifferentiated connective tissue disorders. Reiter's cells, originally believed to be specific for Reiter's syndrome, are macrophages containing degenerating neutrophils (Fig. 29-11).

Eosinophilia, defined as more than 2% of the leukocyte count, has been reported in Lyme disease, rheumatoid arthritis, rheumatic fever, metastatic carcinoma, parasitic infection, chronic urticaria, and angioedema, and following arthrography (allergic reaction to dye) and irradiation (Podell et al, 1980; Kay et al, 1988).

Synovial cells have no pathologic significance. They appear similar to mesothelial cells and may be difficult to distinguish from monocytes and macrophages.

Lipid bodies are associated with trauma, aseptic necrosis, and RA. These droplets often form Maltese crosses under polarized light, can be associated with a leukocyte response, and may cause spurious elevations of the automated WBC count (Wise et al, 1987).

Crystal Examination

Crystals in SF lead to acute inflammation with increased WBC counts and a neutrophil-predominant infiltrate. Crystal identification, especially if intracellularly in neutrophils or macrophages, is pathognomonic for a crystal-induced arthritis (Judkins & Cornbleet, 1997).

Gout refers to the process of crystal deposition in articular tissue. Common usage typically implies urate gout, and an inflammatory response to crystal deposition is referred to as *gouty arthritis*. The most common types of endogenous crystals responsible for gouty arthritis are **monosodium urate monohydrate** (urate gout), **calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate** (pyrophosphate gout, chondrocalcinosis, or "pseudogout"), apatite and other **basic calcium phosphates** (BCP; apatite gout), **calcium oxalate** (oxalate gout), and **lipids** (lipid gout).

Except for BCP, all of the above crystals can be detected by polarized light microscopy. A high-quality polarizing microscope with a first-order red plate compensator should be used. The **polarizer** filter is placed directly above the light source. The **analyzer** (another polarizing filter) is placed between the specimen slide and the microscope oculars, oriented 90 degrees from the polarizer to produce a dark background. The **compensator** is placed between the polarizer and the analyzer, usually oriented 45 degrees (halfway) between the planes of the two polarizing filters.

Initial examination should be performed on a wet preparation using polarized light. Phase-contrast microscopy enhances crystal detection. The slide and coverslip must be cleaned and carefully dried immediately before use to avoid birefringent dust particulate artifacts. The coverslip edges are sealed with nail polish or other sealant, which retards but does not prevent evaporation. The coverslip edge is used to find the proper plane of focus; however, crystals in this location should be ignored because they are most likely artifacts. Most crystals are scanned with a 10× objective and are evaluated with at least a 40× objective, concentrating especially on cellular areas. Complete examination requires 100× oil immersion, however, because apparently negative fluids on scanning may contain a large population of small crystals (Gatter & Schumacher, 1991). Aligning the crystals' orientation to the compensator by rotating the microscope stage or the compensator facilitates recognition and identification. Crystal morphology, the extinction angle, strength, and signs of any birefringence (i.e., the ability to refract light and split the incident light into two rays: a fast ray and a slow ray) are noted. The sensitivity and specificity of polarized microscopy for crystals are 78% and 79%, respectively, for monosodium urate (Hasselbacher, 1987), and 12% and 67% for calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate (McGill & York, 1991). Repeat examination following 24 hours of refrigeration at 4° C may result in a significant increase in the number of crystal-positive fluids (Yuan et al, 2003). Cytospin preparations are also used effectively in the detection of crystals in SF samples (Theiler et al, 2014).

The Diff-Quik staining method may be a reliable alternative to polarized microscopy. Overall specificity, sensitivity, and accuracy are 87.5%, 94.4%, and 91.9%, respectively. The overall positive predictive value is 92.7%; the negative predictive value is 90.3% (Selvi et al, 2001). Other more sophisticated and reliable methods, such as X-ray crystallography

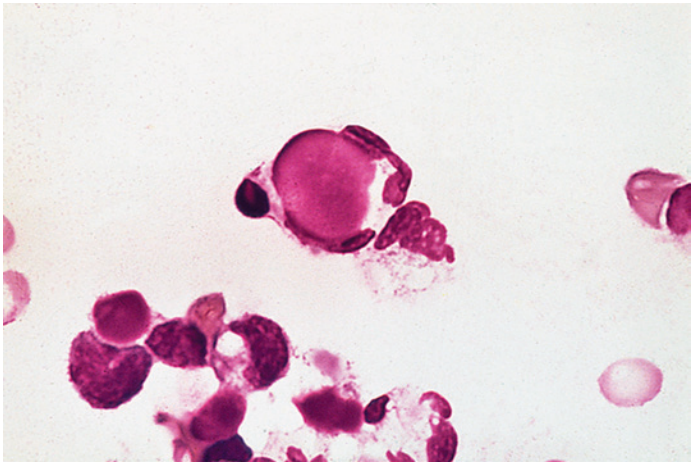


Figure 29-10 Lupus erythematosus cell in the synovial fluid from a patient with systemic lupus erythematosus.

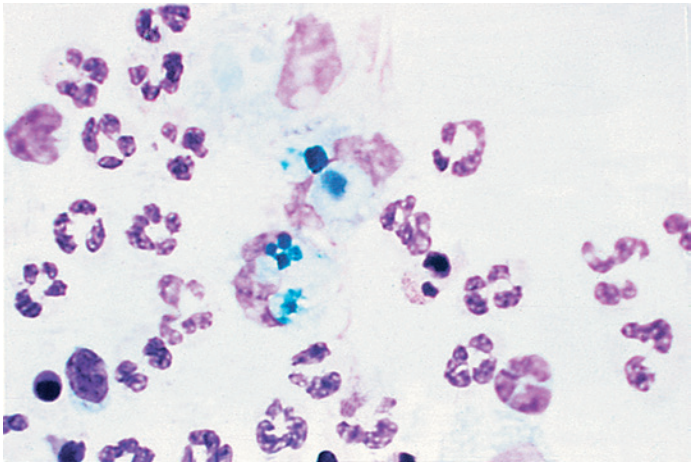


Figure 29-11 Reiter's cells in the synovial fluid from a patient with Reiter's syndrome.

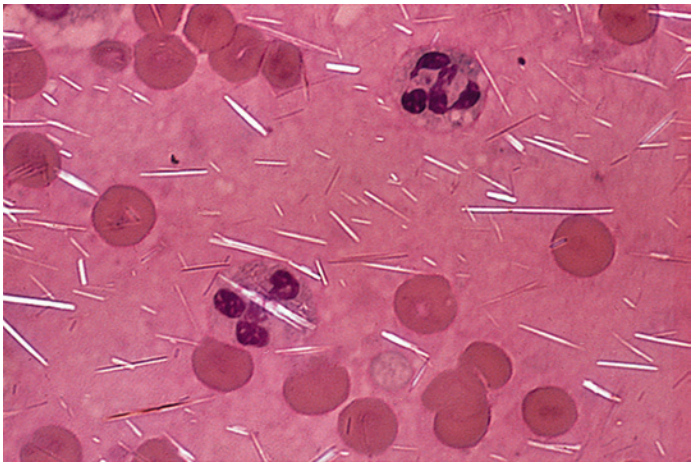


Figure 29-12 **Monosodium urate crystals under polarized light from a patient with urate gout.**

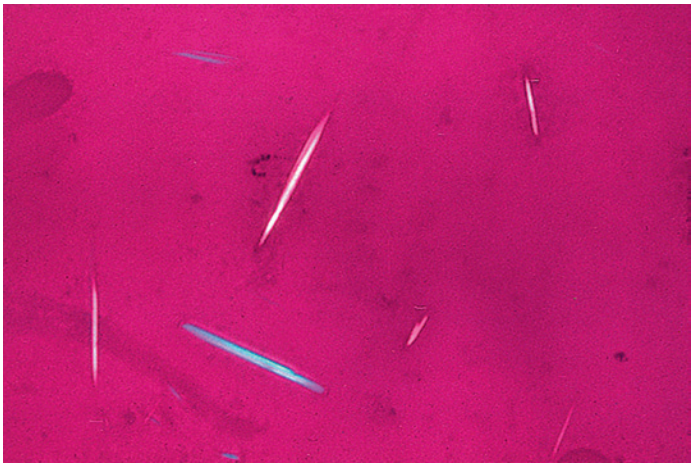


Figure 29-13 **Monosodium urate crystals in synovial fluid.** Compensated polarized light. (From Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.)

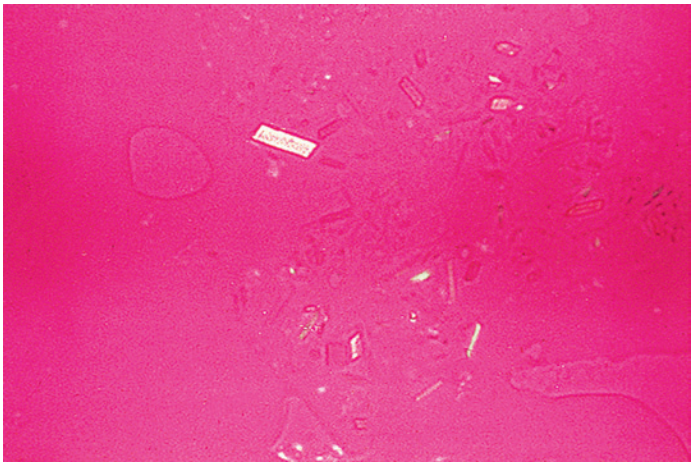


Figure 29-14 **Calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate crystals in synovial fluid from a patient with pseudogout.** Compensated polarized light. (From Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago: © American Society for Clinical Pathology; 1993, with permission.)

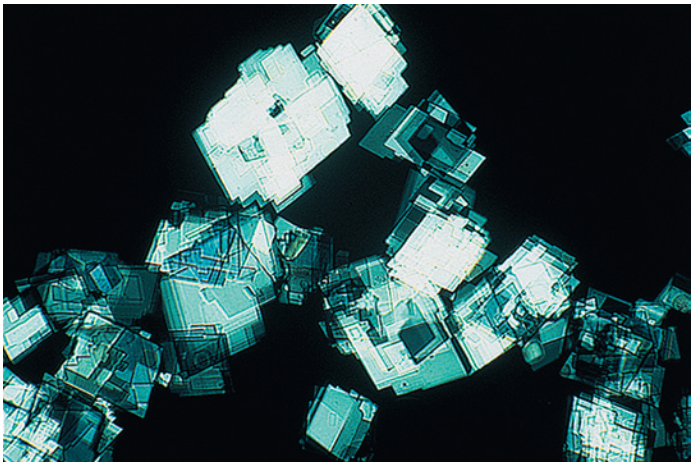


Figure 29-15 **Cholesterol crystals in synovial fluid. Polarized light.**

and Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy, have been described for identifying and characterizing crystals in biological specimens (Rosenthal & Mandel, 2001).

Monosodium urate (MSU) crystals appear as needle-shaped rods 5 to 20 µm long, but they may be only 1 to 2 µm in length or, rarely, may appear as rounded spherolites. They are strongly birefringent (Fig. 29-12): yellow when oriented parallel to the compensator and blue with perpendicular orientation (negative birefringence or elongation) (Fig. 29-13). A control slide of MSU crystals should always be used for comparison. Alternatively, betamethasone, a steroid that appears as a strongly negative birefringent rod, can be used to prepare a reference slide for the polarizing microscope (Judkins & Cornbleet, 1997).

MSU crystals are found in 90% of acute urate gout and in about 75% of patients between attacks. Intracellular MSU crystals are characteristic of acute urate gout. They may also occasionally be observed as a result of inflammation in septic arthritis (McCarty, 1988).

Calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate (CPPD) crystals are found in a group of conditions collectively known as *CPPD crystal deposition disease.* These crystals appear as rhomboids, rods, or rectangles 1 to 20 µm in length. CPPD crystals are weakly birefringent with positive elongation (blue when aligned with the compensator axis; Fig. 29-14). Many are too small to polarize the light, making them difficult to detect without phase-contrast microscopy. Extinction is incomplete and occurs between 20 and 30 degrees from the angle of the polarizer and analyzer (oblique or inclined extinction).

CPPD crystals are associated with degenerative arthritis and are seen in arthritides associated with hypomagnesemia, hemochromatosis, hyperparathyroidism, and hypothyroidism (Jones et al, 1992).

Calcium hydroxyapatite and the other basic calcium phosphate (BCP) crystals are typically too small and nonbirefringent (isotropic) to see with light microscopy, unless they are clumped into 1- to 50-µm spherical microaggregates. **Alizarin red S dye** may be used to stain these and other calcium-containing crystals (Lazcano et al, 1993). At present, identification of BCP crystals is not important for diagnosis or prognosis, or as a guide in treatment.

Calcium oxalate dihydrate crystals are 5- to 30-µm bipyramidal octahedral "envelopes" with variable birefringence and positive elongation. They are seen in arthropathy associated with chronic renal dialysis and primary oxalosis, a rare inborn error of metabolism. The monohydrate form is birefringent but nondescript in shape.

Lipid crystals are 1- to 20-µm spheres with a Maltese cross appearance and positive birefringence under compensated polarized light. They have been implicated as a cause of acute arthritis (McCarty, 1988).

Crystalline corticosteroids from intraarticular injection may have an appearance similar to MSU or CPPD crystals and persist up to 1 month following injection. Most often, they have blunt, jagged edges without clear crystal structure because they are prepared by grinding up larger crystalline forms. Triamcinolone hexacetonide is negatively birefringent, but most others show positive birefringence.

Cholesterol crystals typically appear as irregular birefringent plates, often with notched corners (Fig. 29-15). In chronic effusions (e.g., tuberculous arthritis, RA, SLE), needle- or rhomboid-shaped crystals similar to MSU or CPPD may be present (Ettlinger & Hunder, 1979). Very small (1 to 5 microns) irregular, rod- and needle-shaped cholesterol crystals have been identified by X-ray diffraction analysis and by ultrastructural studies in osteoarthritis effusions (Fam et al, 1981). Cholesterol crystals are ethanol and ether soluble and are not phagocytosed by leukocytes. If cholesterol crystals are detected, quantitative analysis should show that the SF cholesterol level exceeds the plasma level.

TABLE 29-8
Reference Intervals for Synovial Fluid Constituents

Constituent	Synovial Fluid	Plasma
Total protein	1-3 g/dL	6-8 g/dL
Albumin	55%-70%	50%-65%
α_1-Globulin	6%-8%	3%-5%
α_2-Globulin	5%-7%	7%-13%
β-Globulin	8%-10%	8%-14%
γ-Globulin	10%-14%	12%-22%
Hyaluronic acid	0.3-0.4 g/dL	
Glucose	70-110 mg/dL	70-110 mg/dL
Uric acid	2-8 mg/dL	2-8 mg/dL
Lactate	9-29 mg/dL	9-29 mg/dL

Modified from Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.

Glove powder (modified cornstarch) introduced during joint surgery appears as round, strongly birefringent particles 5 to 30 µm in diameter, with a central notch and a Maltese cross appearance when polarized.

A variety of other crystals or particulates may be present in SF. These include monoclonal Ig crystals or cryoglobulins, Charcot-Leyden crystals, amyloid fragments, cartilage fragments, collagen fibrils and fibrin strands, hematoidin crystals from prior hemorrhage, crystals from certain anticoagulants, nail polish, prosthetic fragments, and dust particles (Gatter & Schumacher, 1991).

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

Chemical analyses of SF generally offer only supportive information to the routine tests. High viscosity may be remedied by dilution with normal saline, sonication, or hyaluronidase treatment. Reference intervals for the more important chemical analytes are shown in Table 29-8.

Mucin Clot Test

Addition of acetic acid to SF precipitates hyaluronate into a mucin clot, which may be graded as good, fair, or poor. A fair to poor mucin clot test reflects dilution and depolymerization of hyaluronic acid—a nonspecific finding of several inflammatory arthritides. Although of historic interest, the mucin clot test has minimal clinical utility today (Baker, 1991).

Glucose

Proper interpretation of SF glucose values requires comparison with serum levels, ideally preceded by a fast of 8 hours to allow glucose to equilibrate across the synovial membrane. The serum-synovial differential is less than 10 mg/dL in normal and many noninflammatory conditions. In septic arthritis, this difference ranges from 20 to 60 mg/dL but overlaps significantly with other inflammatory conditions, thereby limiting its clinical usefulness. When a cutoff value of 75 mg/dL is used, the sensitivity of low glucose for detecting an inflammatory joint disease is only 20%; the specificity is 84% (Shmerling et al, 1990).

In vitro glycolysis by large numbers of leukocytes may falsely reduce SF glucose values unless testing is performed within 1 hour of collection. Tubes containing sodium fluoride, an inhibitor of glycolysis, prevent the loss of glucose.

Protein

The mean normal protein concentration is 1.38 g/dL in living volunteers (Weinburger & Simkin, 1989). A reliable reference interval is 1.0 to 3.0 g/dL. With increasing inflammation, larger proteins (e.g., fibrinogen) enter the synovial space. Spontaneous clot formation may be detected in nonanticoagulated specimen tubes (fibrin clot test). Although elevation of the SF protein level may be associated with inflammatory and infectious conditions, measurement of SF protein is highly nonspecific; the sensitivity is about 52% and the specificity 56% for inflammatory disorders (Shmerling et al, 1990).

Enzymes

Numerous enzymes have been studied in SF, including lactate dehydrogenase, aspartate aminotransferase, adenosine deaminase, acid and alkaline phosphatase, and lysozyme, among others (Kjeldsberg, 1993). **Lactate dehydrogenase** is elevated in RA, gout, failed arthroplasties, and infectious arthritis. This increase most likely reflects the neutrophil infiltrate. Elevated **acid phosphatase** may have negative prognostic value in RA but is not specific (Luukkainen et al, 1989). Although enzyme analysis of SF is currently not clinically relevant, the measurement of various hydrolases may have significant predictive value in joint prognosis, especially RA.

Organic Acids

When compared with nonseptic monoarticular arthritis, SF **lactic acid** levels are usually increased in patients with septic arthritis (Kjeldsberg, 1993). Levels significantly greater than 30 mg/dL (3.7 mmol/L) are commonly associated with septic arthritis due to gram-positive cocci and gram-negative bacilli. Measurement of D-lactate levels in SF appears to be a useful method for rapid diagnosis of bacterial synovitis (Gratacos et al, 1995). In other studies, however, normal or intermediate lactate levels neither rule in nor rule out infection. Moreover, gonococcal arthritis is notorious for having normal SF lactate levels (Curtis et al, 1983).

When gas-liquid chromatography is used, the presence of other organic acids not normally present in SF (e.g., **n-valeric, n-hexanoic,** and **succinic acids**) may be very helpful in differentiating septic from nonseptic arthritis (Borenstein et al, 1982).

Uric Acid

Synovial fluid uric acid levels generally, although not always, parallel serum levels in gout and noninflammatory arthropathies. This assay provides little clinical value in SF analysis except in some cases where gout is suspected but crystals are not identified (Reeves, 1965). Increased SF uric acid levels in these cases support a diagnosis of gout.

Lipids

In contrast to plasma, normal SF contains extremely low concentrations of lipids. Synovial fluid lipid abnormalities include (1) rare cholesterol-rich pseudochylous effusions typically associated with chronic RA; (2) lipid droplets, usually the result of trauma; and (3) extremely rare chylous effusions seen in association with RA, SLE, filariasis, pancreatitis, and trauma (Wise et al, 1987). These diseases can usually be differentiated clinically and by gross and microscopic examination; quantification of lipids currently has no clinical value in joint fluid analysis, except in cases in which cholesterol crystals may resemble MSU or CPPD. In these cases, a cholesterol level that exceeds the plasma level supports the presence of cholesterol crystals.

IMMUNOLOGIC STUDIES

Rheumatoid factor (RF) is found in the SF of about 60% of RA patients, usually at a titer equal to or slightly lower than the serum titer. **Antinuclear antibodies** (ANA) are found in the SF of about 70% of patients with SLE and 20% of patients with RA. Neither is specific enough for practical use. SF **complement** levels, normally about 10% of serum levels, increase to 40% to 70% of serum activity with inflammation, proportional to the increase in protein exudation. Complement consumption in SLE and RA, in particular, results in levels less than 30% of serum complement. Complement is also decreased in some cases of bacterial and crystal-induced arthritis, so measurement is impractical for routine diagnosis.

MICROBIOLOGICAL EXAMINATION

Immediate transportation of joint fluid and good communication of clinical suspicions to the laboratory are extremely important in the rapid identification of an infectious agent.

Septic arthritis may be acute or chronic, and Gram stain and culture should be performed as part of the routine SF evaluation. Gram stain sensitivity varies from about 75% for staphylococcal infections and 50% for most gram-negative organisms, to less than 25% for gonococcal infections (Goldenberg & Reed, 1985). Concentration methods, including cytocentrifugation, may increase the sensitivity of the Gram stain.

Culture sensitivity ranges from 75% to 95% for nongonococcal joint infections in patients who have not received antibiotics. For patients with gonorrhea, the sensitivity is only 10% to 50% (Shmerling, 1994). In partially treated patients, the use of resin-containing blood culture bottles for culturing SF may improve isolation and identification of the responsible organism.

Although not yet in routine practice, the use of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) with primers to detect bacterial DNA is helpful, particularly for the more fastidious, uncultivable pathogens (e.g., *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *Chlamydia* spp., *Mycoplasma* spp.) (Nocton et al, 1994; Li et al,

1996; Jalava et al, 2001). Viruses are often associated with acute infectious arthritis, and, depending on the putative virus, serology, viral culture, and detection of viral DNA by nucleic acid amplification should be performed.

Depending on the clinical history, infectious arthritis may be associated with particular exposures and their associated pathogens. Arthritis develops in approximately 60% of patients with Lyme disease resulting from exposure to ticks infected with *Borrelia burgdorferi* (Golightly, 1993). The PCR test for detecting *B. burgdorferi* DNA in SF is positive in 96% of untreated cases (Nocton et al, 1994; Exner & Lewinski, 2003).

In patients with a travel history or outdoor occupations, SF/tissue should be examined for fungal pathogens by KOH/calcofluor white stain and cultured on selective fungal media. For example, a patient with a recent travel history to Arizona may present with a monoarticular arthritis secondary to *Coccidioides immitis*.

Patients with chronic arthritis and risk factors for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* or nontuberculous infections should undergo a synovial biopsy (Verettas et al, 2003; Titov et al, 2004). Ziehl-Neelsen or Kinyoun stains for acid-fast organisms have a sensitivity of about 20%. Cultures for *M. tuberculosis* are positive in about 80% of proven cases. Because conventional culture methods for *M. tuberculosis* are often very time-consuming, applying PCR in SF for the detection of *M. tuberculosis* is a useful technique for more rapid diagnosis (Fujimoto et al, 2010).

PLEURAL FLUID

The pleural cavity is a potential space lined by mesothelium of the visceral and parietal pleurae. The pleural cavity normally contains a small amount of fluid that facilitates movement of the two membranes against each other. This fluid is a plasma filtrate derived from capillaries of the parietal pleura. It is produced continuously at a rate dependent on capillary hydrostatic pressure, plasma oncotic pressure, and capillary permeability. Pleural fluid is reabsorbed through the lymphatics and venules of the visceral pleura.

An accumulation of fluid, called an **effusion,** results from an imbalance of fluid production and reabsorption. This fluid accumulation in the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities is known as a **serous effusion.**

SPECIMEN COLLECTION

Thoracentesis is indicated for any undiagnosed pleural effusion or for therapeutic purposes in patients with massive symptomatic effusions. Pleural fluid samples are frequently collected, handled, and/or analyzed in a less than satisfactory manner. Indeed, improper collection/handling and undertesting or inappropriate testing are more common than with other body fluids. The laboratory often receives a large syringe or vacuum bottle, which must be circulated through the various laboratory sections. Moreover, a large blood or fibrin clot may be present as the result of inadequate anticoagulation or mixing.

Except for an EDTA tube for total and differential cell counts, the specimen should be collected in heparinized tubes to avoid clotting. Aliquots for aerobic and anaerobic bacterial cultures are best inoculated into blood culture media at the bedside. If malignancy, fungal infection, or mycobacterial infection is suspected, all remaining fluid (≥100 mL) should be submitted to maximize the yield of stains and culture. Because serous effusions are more forgiving than CSF in maintaining cellular integrity, fresh specimens for cytology may be stored for up to 48 hours in the refrigerator with satisfactory results. For pH measurements, the fluid should be collected anaerobically in a heparinized syringe and submitted to the laboratory on ice. Grossly purulent specimens do not require pH measurement and may clog the analyzer.

TRANSUDATES AND EXUDATES

It has long been recognized that the initial classification of a pleural fluid as a **transudate** or an **exudate** greatly simplifies the process of arriving at a correct final diagnosis. Moreover, it determines whether further testing is needed.

Transudates are usually bilateral owing to systemic conditions leading to increased capillary hydrostatic pressure or decreased plasma oncotic pressure (Box 29-9). Malignant effusions may infrequently be transudative as the result of a simultaneous confounding clinical condition such as congestive heart failure (Ashchi et al, 1998). Exudates are more often unilateral, associated with localized disorders that increase vascular permeability or interfere with lymphatic resorption (see Box 29-9).

BOX 29-9

Classification of Pleural Effusions

Transudates: Increased Hydrostatic Pressure or Decreased Plasma Oncotic Pressure

Congestive heart failure
Hepatic cirrhosis
Hypoproteinemia (e.g., nephrotic syndrome)

Exudates: Increased Capillary Permeability or Decreased Lymphatic Resorption

Infections
- Bacterial pneumonia
- Tuberculosis, other granulomatous diseases (e.g., sarcoidosis, histoplasmosis)
- Viral or mycoplasma pneumonia

Neoplasms
- Bronchogenic carcinoma
- Metastatic carcinoma
- Lymphoma
- Mesothelioma (increased hyaluronate content of effusion fluid)

Noninfectious inflammatory disease involving pleura
- Rheumatoid disease (low pleural fluid glucose in most cases)
- Systemic lupus erythematosus (LE cells are occasionally present)

Pulmonary infarct (may be associated with hemorrhagic effusion)

Fluid from Extrapleural Sources

Pancreatitis (elevated amylase activity in effusion fluid)
Ruptured esophagus (elevated amylase activity and low pH)
Urinothorax (elevated creatinine and low pH)

LE, Lupus erythematosus.

TABLE 29-9

Laboratory Criteria for Pleural Fluid Exudate

Pleural fluid/serum protein ratio	≥0.50
Pleural fluid/serum LD ratio	≥0.60
Pleural fluid LD	≥⅔ upper limit of normal serum LD
Pleural fluid cholesterol	>45 mg/dL
Pleural fluid/serum cholesterol ratio	≥0.30
Serum–pleural fluid albumin gradient	≤1.2 g/dL
Pleural fluid/serum bilirubin ratio	≥0.60

LD, Lactate dehydrogenase.

RECOMMENDED TESTS

The evaluation of serous body fluids (pleural, pericardial, peritoneal) is directed first toward differentiating transudative from exudative effusions. Transudates generally require no further workup. However, the fluid should be retained for 7 to 10 days in case further testing is needed. To separate the two, several chemical parameters have been proposed, although none is 100% accurate (Table 29-9).

Classical teaching stressed that exudates and transudates can be distinguished on the basis of total protein concentrations above (exudates) or below (transudates) 3.0 g/dL. However, using total protein alone misclassifies both exudates and transudates by about 30% (Melsom, 1979). It is now well accepted that test combinations increase sensitivity, improve accuracy, and serve as the basis for the well-established Light criteria (Light et al, 1972). An exudate meets one or more of the following criteria: (1) Pleural fluid/serum protein ratio greater than 0.5; (2) pleural fluid/serum LD ratio greater than 0.6; and (3) pleural fluid LD level greater than two thirds of the serum upper limit of normal. Using these criteria, the sensitivity and specificity are about 98% and 80%, respectively.

Several alternative measurements have been proposed to differentiate exudates from transudates. Testing for total cholesterol, the albumin gradient, or a combination of LD and total cholesterol may discriminate effusions with equivocal Light's criteria results. For example, the albumin gradient is recommended to confirm a clinical transudate misclassified as an exudate by Light's criteria (Light, 1997), that is, a serum albumin level greater than 1.2 g/dL higher than the pleural fluid level indicates that the fluid is a transudate (Burgess et al, 1995). In many such cases, the patient is being diuresed. Other test combinations have equaled but not surpassed the performance of Light's criteria. In most cases, the same categorization

BOX 29-10

Pleural Effusion: Recommended Tests

Routine Tests

Gross examination
Pleural fluid/serum protein ratio
Pleural fluid/serum LD ratio
Examination of Romanowski-stained smear (malignant cells, LE cells)

Useful Tests in Most Patients

Stains and cultures for microorganisms
Cytology

Useful Tests in Selected Cases

Pleural fluid cholesterol
Pleural fluid/serum cholesterol ratio
Albumin gradient
pH
Lactate
Enzymes (ADA, amylase, LD)
Interferon-γ
C-reactive protein
Lipid analysis
Tumor markers
Immunologic studies
Tuberculostearic acid
Pleural biopsy

Modified from Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.
ADA, Adenosine deaminase; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase; *LE,* lupus erythematosus.

of pleural fluids as exudates or transudates may be achieved using measurements of protein and LD alone without comparison with a blood sample, as was accomplished with application of Light's criteria (Murphy & Jenkinson, 2008).

Some tests, such as the combination of pleural fluid LD and cholesterol, may be more convenient and cost-effective by avoiding the need for simultaneous blood tests (Costa et al, 1995). Bilirubin measurement is not a strong discriminator of effusions (Heffner et al, 1997).

Further analysis of exudates is directed toward ruling out malignancy and infection. Cytology and appropriate bacterial stains and cultures are the most useful tests in this regard. Moreover, given that pleural fluid DNA levels are significantly increased in exudates, quantitative analysis may be an effective method to evaluate the causes of serous effusion (Chan et al, 2003). Recommended tests for the evaluation of pleural effusions are summarized in Box 29-10. The types of tests ordered and the interpretation of test results should always be correlated with clinical findings and differential diagnosis. Total leukocyte, differential, and RBC counts are of limited use in the evaluation of serous effusions.

GROSS EXAMINATION

Transudates are typically clear, pale yellow to straw-colored, and odorless, and do not clot. Approximately 15% of transudates are blood tinged. A bloody pleural effusion (hematocrit >1%) suggests trauma, malignancy, or pulmonary infarction (Jay, 1986). A traumatic tap is suggested by uneven blood distribution, fluid clearing with continued aspiration, or formation of small blood clots. A pleural fluid hematocrit greater than 50% of the blood hematocrit is good evidence for a hemothorax (Light, 1995).

Exudates may grossly resemble transudates, but most show variable degrees of cloudiness or turbidity, and they often clot if not heparinized. A feculent odor may be detected in anaerobic infections. Turbid, milky, and/or bloody specimens should be centrifuged and the supernatant examined. If the supernatant is clear, the turbidity is most likely due to cellular elements or debris. If the turbidity persists after centrifugation, a chylous or pseudochylous effusion is likely.

True chylous effusions are produced by leakage from the thoracic duct resulting from obstruction by lymphoma, carcinoma, or traumatic disruption. A creamy top layer of chylomicrons may form in the specimen on standing. Idiopathic congenital chylothorax is the most common form of pleural effusion in the newborn.

Pseudochylous or chyliform effusions may have a milky, greenish, or "gold paint" appearance. They accumulate gradually through the breakdown of cellular lipids in long-standing effusions such as rheumatoid pleuritis, tuberculosis, or myxedema. Features that distinguish true chylous from pseudochylous effusions are summarized in Table 29-10.

TABLE 29-10

Characteristic Features of Chylous and Pseudochylous Effusions

Feature	Chylous	Pseudochylous
Onset	Sudden	Gradual
Appearance	Milky-white, or yellow to bloody	Milky or greenish, metallic sheen
Microscopic examination	Lymphocytosis	Mixed cellular reaction, cholesterol crystals
Triglycerides*†	≥110 mg/dL (≥1.24 mmol/L)	<50 mg/dL (<0.56 mol/L)
Lipoprotein electrophoresis	Chylomicrons present	Chylomicrons absent

Modified from Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.
*Values in parentheses are SI units.
†Triglyceride levels between 50 mg/dL and 110 mg/dL are equivocal and require electrophoresis to confirm chylothorax.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

Cell Counts

Total cell counts may be performed using manual hemocytometer methods; however, automated cell counts are increasingly used with pleural and other serous fluid specimens (Aulesa et al, 2003; Conner et al, 2003; Yang et al, 2013). Leukocyte counts have limited utility in separating transudates (<1000/μL) from exudates (>1000/μL). Although RBC counts above 100,000/μL are highly suggestive of malignancy, trauma, or pulmonary infarction, they are not specific for these conditions.

Differential Leukocyte Count and Cytology

Examination is commonly performed on a stained smear, preferably prepared by cytocentrifugation and with the air-dried smear stained with a Romanowski stain. Indeed, examination by the hematology laboratory can be highly effective in the detection of malignant cells, especially hematologic malignancies (Kendall et al, 1997). Filtration or automated concentration methods with Papanicolaou stain may also be used, especially if cell loss is a matter of concern. Automated WBC differential counts may be done on pleural fluid samples; however, some variation in results from those of manual methods may be seen (Conner et al, 2003). Liquid-based thin-layer methods are often used to prepare pleural and other serous fluid specimens for cytopathologic examination and show good performance in the detection of malignant cells (Moriarity et al, 2008).

Cytologic analysis will establish the diagnosis of metastatic carcinoma in 70% or more of cases when both smears and cell blocks are examined (Light, 2002). The sensitivity is significantly lower if the patient has mesothelioma (10%), squamous cell carcinoma (20%), lymphoma (25% to 50%), or sarcoma (25%). Preparation of cell blocks is unnecessary, except for effusions in which malignancy is an important consideration (Jonasson et al, 1990).

Mesothelial cells are common in pleural fluids from inflammatory processes (Fig. 29-16). They are, however, conspicuously scarce in patients with tuberculous pleurisy and rheumatoid pleuritis, and in patients who have had pleurodesis. Fibrin deposition and fibrosis occurring in these conditions prevent mesothelial cell exfoliation. Well-differentiated carcinoma cells may be easily recognized (Fig. 29-17) or may be highly undifferentiated (Fig. 29-18). A panel of immunocytochemical stains may be necessary for confirmation, and these studies are enhanced by the use of liquid-based preparation methods (Sioutopoulou et al, 2008).

Neutrophils predominate in pleural fluid from patients with pleural inflammation (Box 29-11). More than 10% of transudates will also have a predominance of neutrophils, but this has limited clinical significance.

Lymphocytes predominate in the disorders summarized in Box 29-11. Most are small, but medium, large, and reactive (transformed) variants may be seen. Nucleoli and nuclear cleaving are more prominent in effusions than in the peripheral blood, and these features may be particularly prominent in cytocentrifuge preparations. **Plasma cells** may also be observed. Lymphocytosis associated with transudates is of limited clinical significance.

Low-grade non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) may be difficult to distinguish from benign lymphocyte-rich serous effusion (Fig. 29-19). Immunophenotyping by flow cytometry or immunocytochemistry, in conjunction with cellular morphology, is usually

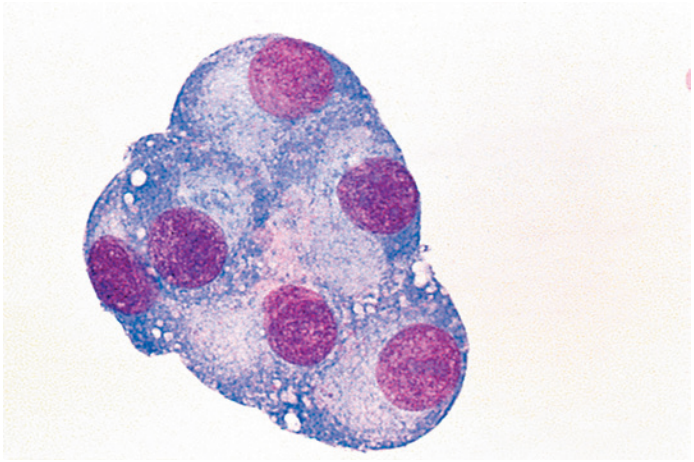


Figure 29-16 Mesothelial cells in pleural fluid.

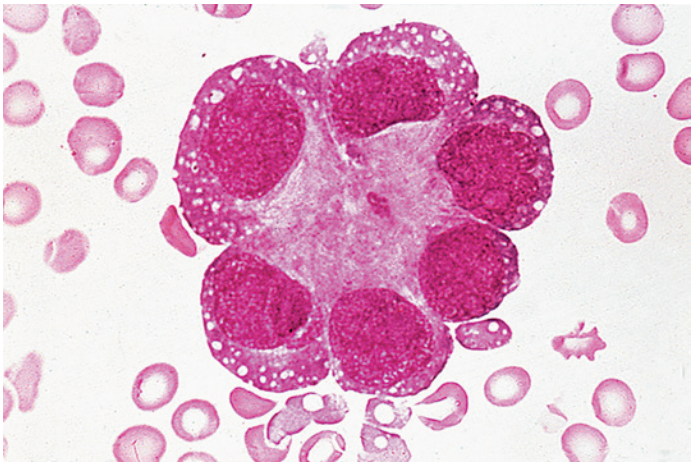


Figure 29-17 Well-differentiated breast carcinoma cells in pleural fluid.

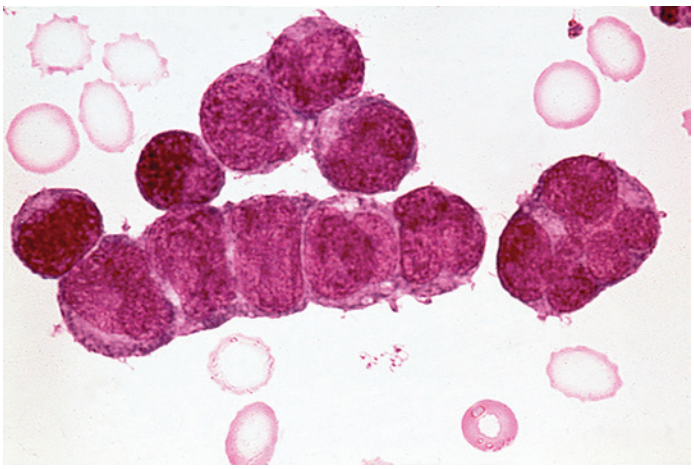


Figure 29-18 Small cell carcinoma of the lung showing typical molding of nuclei.

helpful in making a correct diagnosis. The relative proportions of T and B cells are, by themselves, not definitive for separating benign from malignant exudates (Ibrahim et al, 1989); however, the pattern of expression of Ig light chains and/or other distinctive cell marker combinations may allow specific diagnosis of lymphoproliferative disorders. Molecular DNA analysis may be another useful adjunct to morphologic analysis. An unusual form of high-grade B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, called **primary effusion lymphoma,** may be seen in pleural, peritoneal, and/or pericardial fluid specimens, typically from immunocompromised patients, with a characteristic highly anaplastic and immunoblastic morphologic appearance and without expression of most B cell–associated antigens

BOX 29-11

Cellular Differential of Pleural Effusions

Neutrophilia (>50%)
- Bacterial pneumonia (parapneumonic effusion)
- Pulmonary infarction
- Pancreatitis
- Subphrenic abscess
- Early tuberculosis
- Transudates (>10%)

Lymphocytosis (>50%)
- Tuberculosis
- Viral infection
- Malignancy (lymphoma, other neoplasms)
- True chylothorax
- Rheumatoid pleuritis
- Systemic lupus erythematosus
- Uremic effusions
- Transudates (≈30%)

Eosinophilia (>10%)
- Pneumothorax (air in pleural space)
- Trauma
- Pulmonary infarction
- Congestive heart failure
- Infection (especially parasitic, fungal)
- Hypersensitivity syndromes
- Drug reaction
- Rheumatologic diseases
- Hodgkin's disease
- Idiopathic

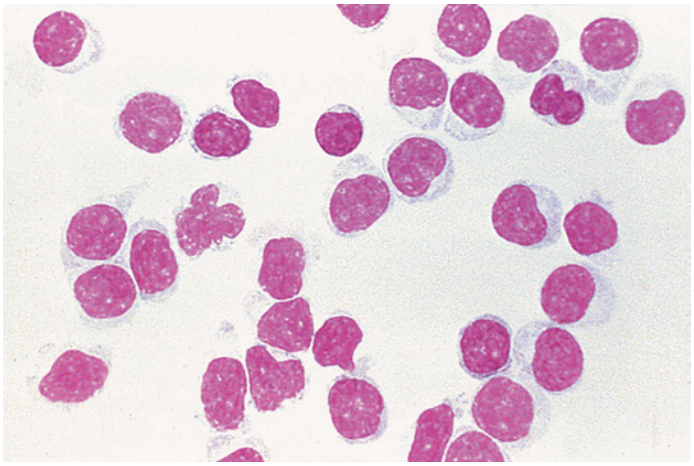


Figure 29-19 **Pleural effusion in patient with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, small lymphocytic type.** The cells are small round forms, difficult to distinguish from benign lymphocytes. (From Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: Laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.)

(Karcher & Alkan, 1997). The diagnosis is usually confirmed by demonstrating in the neoplastic cells the presence of human herpesvirus-8 (HHV-8)–associated antigens and/or DNA by immunophenotypic and/or molecular analysis.

An eosinophilic effusion is one that has 10% or more **eosinophils.** The most common causes are related to the presence of air or blood in the pleural cavity (see Box 29-11). Most of these are exudates; however, in about 35% of patients, the cause is unknown (Adelman et al, 1984). Although not of much assistance in diagnosing the cause of an effusion, eosinophilia appears to be independently associated with longer survival (Rubins & Rubins, 1996). A small number of **mast cells** or **basophils** often accompany eosinophils. Eosinophil-derived **Charcot-Leyden crystals** may also be seen.

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

Protein

The measurement of pleural fluid total protein or albumin has little clinical value except when combined with other parameters to differentiate exudates from transudates. Protein electrophoresis shows a pattern similar to serum, except for a higher proportion of albumin; it has little value for differential diagnosis (Light, 1995).

Glucose

The glucose level of normal pleural fluid, transudates, and most exudates is similar to serum levels. Decreased pleural fluid glucose, accepted as a level below 60 mg/dL (3.33 mmol/L) or a pleural fluid/serum glucose ratio less than 0.5, is most consistent and dramatic in rheumatoid pleuritis and grossly purulent parapneumonic exudates (Sahn, 1982). Low pleural fluid

glucose may also be present in malignancy, tuberculosis, nonpurulent bacterial infection, lupus pleuritis, and esophageal rupture.

Lactate

Pleural fluid lactate levels can be a useful adjunct in the rapid diagnosis of infectious pleuritis. Levels are significantly higher in bacterial and tuberculous pleural infections than in other pleural effusions. Values greater than 90 mg/dL (10 mmol/L) have a positive predictive value for infectious pleuritis of 94% and a negative predictive value of 100% (Gastrin & Lovestad, 1988).

Enzymes

Amylase elevations above the serum level (usually 1.5 to 2.0 or more times greater) indicate the presence of pancreatitis, esophageal rupture, or malignant effusion (Light & Ball, 1973). Elevated amylase derived from esophageal rupture or malignancy is the salivary isoform, which differentiates it from pancreatic amylase (Kramer et al, 1989).

Pleural fluid lactate dehydrogenase (LD) levels rise in proportion to the degree of inflammation. In addition to their use in separating exudates from transudates, declining LD levels during the course of an effusion indicate that the inflammatory process is resolving. Conversely, increasing levels indicate a worsening condition requiring aggressive workup or treatment.

ADA, which is particularly rich in T lymphocytes, is significantly increased in tuberculous pleuritis. At a level of 50 U/L, the sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive value, negative predictive value, and efficiency for tuberculosis are 91%, 81%, 84%, 89%, and 86%, respectively (Burgess et al, 1996). When the lymphocyte/neutrophil ratio is 0.75 or greater, the percentages are 88%, 95%, 95%, 88%, and 92%, respectively. ADA levels of 40 U/L or greater are present in about 99.6% of patients with verified tuberculous pleuritis (Lee et al, 2001); however, in patients with lymphocyte-rich pleural fluids from nontuberculous causes, ADA levels less than 40 U/L are present in 97.1% of cases.

Interferon-γ

Pleural fluid interferon (IFN)-γ levels are significantly increased in the pleural fluid of patients with tuberculous pleuritis. The sensitivity of levels of 3.7 IU/L or greater is 99%, and the specificity is 98% (Villena et al, 1996a). Test sensitivity does not differ in HIV-positive and HIV-negative patients. Only about 20% of patients with effusions due to hematologic malignancies have IFN-γ levels slightly above 3.7 IU/L (Villena et al, 2003a).

pH

Pleural fluid pH measurement has the highest diagnostic accuracy in assessing the prognosis of parapneumonic (pneumonia-related) effusions (Heffner et al, 1995). A parapneumonic exudate with a pH greater than 7.30 generally resolves with medical therapy alone. A pH less than 7.20 indicates a complicated parapneumonic effusion (loculated or associated with empyema), requiring surgical drainage.

Patients with borderline complicated exudates (pH 7.20 to 7.30) may be closely watched with repeat measurements. A concomitant pleural glucose level below 60 mg/dL (3.33 mmol/L), however, strongly suggests impending empyema. Rheumatoid pleuritis and malignant effusions with a poor response to pleurodesis also have pH values below 7.20 and a low glucose level (Rodriquez-Panadero & Mejias, 1989). A pH below 6.0 is characteristic of **esophageal rupture,** although the pH in severe empyema may be 6.0 or less (Good et al, 1980).

Urinothorax, a collection of urine presumably produced by lymphatic drainage of perirenal accumulations into the pleural cavity, is also associated with a pleural fluid pH less than 7.30. These effusions are transudative, because of their low protein content, and smell of urine. They have a creatinine level greater than in simultaneously drawn serum (Miller et al, 1988).

Lipids

Some serous effusions appear to be chylous (i.e., a milky appearance) but are not (pseudochylous), whereas others may not look chylous but are (Maldonado et al, 2009). Although pseudochylous fluids may be partially due to increased leukocytes and necrotic debris, they are primarily due to the presence of increased lecithin-globulin complexes. A true chylous effusion has chylomicrons on lipoprotein electrophoresis. Lipid measurements are also helpful in identifying chylous effusions (Staats et al, 1980). Thus, pleural fluid triglyceride levels above 110 mg/dL indicate a chylous effusion; values from 60 to 110 mg/dL (0.68 to 1.24 mmol/L) are less certain and require lipoprotein electrophoresis to confirm a chylothorax, particularly in fasting and postoperative patients (Maldonado et al, 2009). Nonchylous and pseudochylous effusions generally have triglyceride levels below 50 mg/dL (0.56 mmol/L) and no chylomicrons on electrophoresis (see Table 29-10).

Cholesterol measurements may be useful in separating transudates from exudates, especially when there is a question regarding Light's criteria. A total cholesterol value of 54 mg/dL or more and a pleural fluid/serum cholesterol ratio of 0.32 or higher have sensitivity and specificity values similar to Light's criteria (Suay et al, 1995). Elevated levels and the presence of cholesterol crystals may be seen with pleural effusions that have been present for several years.

C-Reactive Protein

Pleural fluid CRP is a clinically useful screening test for organ disease, index of disease activity, and measure of response to therapy (Castano & Amores, 1992). Pleural fluid CRP levels >30 mg/L reportedly have a sensitivity of 93.7%, a specificity of 76.5%, and a positive predictive value of 98.4% in parapneumonic infections (Turay et al, 2000). Mean CRP values are about 90 mg/L in parapneumonic infections compared with 26 mg/L and 23 mg/L for tuberculous and malignant effusions, respectively. Measurement of pleural fluid CRP contributes to both the diagnosis and assessment of severity of parapneumonic effusions (Porcel et al, 2012).

Tuberculostearic Acid (10-Methyloctadecanoic Acid)

Tuberculostearic acid (TSA) was first isolated from the bacillus *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. This fatty acid is a structural component of mycobacteria and is not normally present in human tissue. Using gas chromatography–mass spectroscopy, TSA was measured in sputum, bronchial washings, and pleural fluid from patients with pulmonary tuberculosis (Muranishi et al, 1990). Here, pleural fluid TSA was identified in 24 of 32 (75%) patients with active tuberculosis; bronchial washings were positive for TSA in 15 of 22 cases. In patients with other pulmonary disorders, only 4 of 46 pleural fluids and 3 of 69 bronchial washings had detectable levels. A later smaller study reported the following for pleural fluid TSA: Sensitivity 54%, specificity 80%, positive predictive value 75%, negative predictive value 61%, and efficacy 66% (Yorgancioglu et al, 1996). Combining TSA and adenosine deaminase (ADA) analysis in pleural fluid samples appears to increase the diagnostic sensitivity for tuberculous pleuritis (Muranishi et al, 1992).

Tumor Markers

Although not recommended as a routine test, various tumor markers are often a useful adjunct in enigmatic noninflammatory exudates with negative cytology. Several tumor markers, especially CEA, CA 15-3, CA 549, CA 72-4, and CYFRA 21-1, among others, have been studied in pleural fluids. CEA is probably the most useful single marker for adenocarcinomas, but reported cutoff values vary considerably. The sensitivity of CEA for malignant effusions varies depending on tumor origin and is about 50% overall. Although complicated parapneumonic effusions may result in elevated CEA levels (Garcia-Pachon et al, 1997), they are usually not a problem to distinguish clinically.

A combination of tumor markers increases the accuracy of diagnosis of malignant effusions. Thus, a combination of CEA, CA 15-3, and CA 72-4 had an accuracy of 90% with 78% sensitivity, 95% specificity, 88% positive predictive value, and 91% negative predictive value (Villena et al, 1996b). Similarly, CA 15-3 and CEA combined had an accuracy of 87% (Romero et al, 1996); a combination of CA 549, CEA, and CA 15-3 had a sensitivity of 65%, specificity 99%, and accuracy 85% (Villena et al, 2003b). The use of the cytokeratin 19 fragment (CYFRA 21-1) may also be useful in combination with other tumor markers. Complicating the use of these tests, different tumor markers may be positive in both malignant and inflammatory pleural effusions (Topolcan et al, 2007).

Other tumor markers may also be useful in the diagnosis of unexplained effusions. For example, a marked increase in pleural fluid prostate-specific antigen (PSA) can lead to the correct diagnosis of metastatic prostate cancer in pleural and pericardial effusions, even when negative by cytologic examination (Chin et al, 1999).

IMMUNOLOGIC STUDIES

Approximately 5% of patients with RA and 50% with SLE develop pleural effusions sometime during the course of their disease.

RF is commonly present in pleural effusions associated with seropositive RA. Although a pleural fluid titer of 1:320 or greater in a patient with known RA is reasonable evidence of rheumatic pleuritis (Halla et al, 1980), elevated RF titers up to 1:1280 have been identified in 41% of patients with bacterial pneumonia, 20% of patients with malignant effusions, and

14% of patients with tuberculosis, making this test of little value (Levine et al, 1968).

ANA titers once appeared to be useful in the diagnosis of effusion due to lupus pleuritis; (Good et al, 1983); however, later studies have indicated no benefit of this testing in pleural fluid specimens over and above serum testing (Porcel et al, 2007).

Decreased **complement** levels (CH50 <10 U/mL or C4 level below 10×10^{-5} U/g protein) are present in most patients with rheumatoid or lupus pleuritis (Hunder et al, 1972; Halla et al, 1980); however, decreased complement is not highly specific for these diseases and is of little value for routine diagnosis, although it may be helpful in the diagnosis of otherwise enigmatic effusions.

MICROBIOLOGICAL EXAMINATION

Bacteria most commonly associated with parapneumonic effusions are *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, β-hemolytic group A streptococci, enterococci, and some gram-negative bacilli. Anaerobic bacteria are isolated in a significant proportion of cases, so both anaerobic and aerobic cultures should be performed. The sensitivity of the Gram stain is approximately 50% (Ferrer et al, 1999), and concentration methods, such as cytocentrifugation, may increase the sensitivity. Use of resin-containing blood culture bottles may improve the isolation of certain bacteria in partially treated patients.

For patients with suspected *M. tuberculosis*, direct staining of tuberculous effusions for acid-fast bacteria has a sensitivity of 20% to 30%, and positive cultures are found in 50% to 70% of cases (Baer & Smith, 2001). Pleural biopsy yields the highest culture sensitivity (50% to 75%) and may provide a rapid presumptive diagnosis of tuberculosis by histopathologic demonstration of granulomas or acid-fast bacteria. Combining culture and acid-fast stains with pleural biopsy increases the sensitivity to about 95% (Jay, 1986). Real-time PCR analysis of pleural fluid specimens shows good sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis of *M. tuberculosis* and may provide an effective less invasive alternative method for rapid diagnosis (Rosso et al, 2011).

ADA can provide rapid chemical evidence for tuberculous effusions independent of HIV status (Burgess et al, 1996; Riantawan et al, 1999; Lee et al, 2001). Although the ADA-2 isoenzyme form is elaborated by activated lymphocytes in tuberculosis, only mild elevations occur in lymphocyte-rich pleural effusions from nontuberculous causes. However, the relatively low prevalence of tuberculous pleurisy in North America anticipates a lower positive predictive value rate compared with the excellent results reported in the Asian and European literature, where tuberculosis is more common.

Pleural fluid interferon-γ is significantly increased in tuberculous pleuritis and may be helpful in some cases because it is independent of HIV status and is only modestly increased in about 20% of hematologic malignancies (Villena et al, 2003a).

PERICARDIAL FLUID

From 10 to 50 mL of fluid is normally present in the pericardial space, produced by a transudative process similar to pleural fluid. Pericardial effusions are most often caused by viral infection, and enterovirus is the most common etiologic agent. They may also develop as a result of bacterial, tuberculous, or fungal infection, or in association with autoimmune disorders, renal failure, myocardial infarction, mediastinal injury, or the effects of various drugs, or they may be idiopathic (Box 29-12). HIV-infected patients commonly have asymptomatic pericardial effusions, which may become large in more advanced disease (Silva-Cardosa et al, 1999), or they may be associated with primary effusion lymphoma (Karcher & Alkan, 1997). Many of the recommended laboratory tests described for pleural fluid also pertain to pericardial effusions (see Box 29-10).

The **postpericardiotomy syndrome** is a fairly common but nonspecific complication of cardiac surgery (or other cardiac damage) that develops days to weeks following the initial injury. It is hallmarked by the development of fever, pleuritic chest pain, and other signs of pleural, pericardial, and, less often, lung inflammation. Exudative pleural effusions develop in more than 80% of cases. These are often serosanguineous to hemorrhagic and typically have a pH greater than 7.4 and a normal glucose level (Stelzner et al, 1983). No specific tests are available for diagnosing this syndrome. Diagnosis, therefore, remains one of clinical exclusion. Although the cause is uncertain, the time course, presence of antimyocardial antibodies, and response to antiinflammatory therapy suggest an immune-mediated process. Increased levels of antimyocardial antibodies relative to serum, decreased complement levels, and immune complexes have been documented in pleural fluid from a single patient with the syndrome (Kim & Sahn, 1996).

BOX 29-12
Causes of Pericardial Effusions

Idiopathic (most often viral)	Renal failure
Infection	Hemorrhage
Bacteria	Trauma
Tuberculosis	Anticoagulant therapy
Fungi	Leakage of aortic aneurysm
Viruses	Autoimmune disorders
AIDS-related (usually viral)	Hypothyroidism
Neoplasm	Rheumatoid arthritis
Metastatic carcinoma	Systemic lupus erythematosus
Lymphoma	Inflammatory bowel disease
Drugs	Wegener's granulomatosis
Hydralazine	Acute myocardial infarction
Procainamide	Radiation therapy
Phenytoin	

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION

Pericardial effusions of unknown origin or large effusions with signs of cardiac tamponade are generally submitted for laboratory examination. Fluid may be obtained by pericardiotomy following limited thoracotomy, or by pericardiocentesis (sterile needle aspiration).

GROSS EXAMINATION

Normal pericardial fluid is pale yellow and clear. Large effusions (>350 mL) are most often caused by malignancy or uremia, or they may be idiopathic. In HIV-associated cardiac tamponade, 45% of cases are idiopathic, and tuberculous and bacterial effusions each account for about 20% of cases (Chen et al, 1999). Infection or malignancy typically produces turbid effusions, whereas effusions due to uremia are usually clear and straw-colored. These and several other disorders may produce hemorrhagic effusions.

Blood-like fluid obtained by pericardiocentesis might represent a hemorrhagic effusion or inadvertent aspiration of blood from the heart. Blood obtained from the heart chamber will have a hematocrit comparable with that of peripheral blood, and blood gas analysis yields results similar to venous or arterial blood. In contrast, the hematocrit of a hemorrhagic effusion is usually lower than that of peripheral blood. Blood from a cardiac puncture clots, but a hemorrhagic effusion usually does not.

A milky appearance suggests the presence of a chylous or pseudochylous effusion. Identification and differentiation of these effusions are discussed in the Pleural Fluid section earlier in the chapter.

EXUDATES AND TRANSUDATES

According to Light's criteria, a pleural exudate has one or more of the following: pleural fluid/serum protein ratio >0.5; pleural fluid/serum LD ratio >0.6; and pleural fluid LD level >200 U/L. Light's criteria have also been shown to be the most reliable diagnostic tool for identifying pericardial exudates and transudates (Burgess et al, 2002a).

Routine testing of pericardial effusions should probably be limited to cell count, glucose, total protein, LD, bacterial culture, and cytology (Meyers et al, 1997). Other, more specific tests are appropriate only when there is a high clinical suspicion of unusual causes of pericardial effusion.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

The hematocrit and RBC count document the presence of a hemorrhagic effusion, but are of limited value for differential diagnosis. Total leukocyte counts over 10,000/μL suggest bacterial, tuberculous, or malignant pericarditis; however, low counts may be encountered in these conditions, limiting the value of this measurement (Agner & Gallis, 1979). Leukocyte differential counts may be helpful in determining the cause of certain pericardial effusions, particularly when combined with other pericardial fluid findings (Reuter et al, 2006). Even when the differential count isn't helpful, examination of a stained smear should always be performed to evaluate for atypical or malignant cells.

Cytologic identification of malignant cells is usually not difficult. Metastatic carcinomas of the lung and breast are most frequently observed in

malignant pericardial effusion. Cytology has a sensitivity of 95% and a specificity of 100% (Meyers et al, 1997).

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

Chemical parameters for the diagnosis of pericardial effusions have not been studied to the same extent as in other body fluids. Although pericardial effusions are very similar to pleural fluids, routine application of these tests requires additional studies to fully appreciate their diagnostic importance.

Protein

A value greater than 3.0 g/dL has a sensitivity of 97% for exudative effusions, but a specificity of only 22%, which significantly limits its usefulness. Thus, total protein has no discriminating power in pericardial diagnosis (Meyers et al, 1997).

Glucose

Pericardial glucose levels less than 60 mg/dL have a diagnostic accuracy of only 36% in identifying pericardial exudates (Meyers et al, 1997). Values less than 40 mg/dL (<2.22 mmol/L) are common in bacterial, tuberculous, rheumatic, or malignant effusions.

pH

Pericardial fluid pH may be markedly decreased (<7.10) in rheumatic or purulent pericarditis. Malignancy, uremia, tuberculosis, and idiopathic disorders may have moderate decreases in the range of 7.20 to 7.30 (Kindig & Goodman, 1983).

Lipids

Separation of true chylous from pseudochylous effusions may be facilitated by triglyceride and cholesterol measurements, as well as by lipoprotein electrophoresis for chylomicrons (see Table 29-10). See Lipids in the Pleural Fluid section earlier in the chapter for further details on the diagnosis of chylous effusions.

Enzymes

A pericardial fluid LD level greater than 200 U/L has been suggested as a cutoff for pericardial exudates (Burgess et al, 2002a). Moreover, the measurement of LD and creatine kinase in postmortem pericardial fluid within 48 hours of death may be useful in establishing acute myocardial injury when such injury is suspected but cannot be established by the usual histologic methods (Luna et al, 1982; Stewart et al, 1984). Pericardial fluid levels of CK-MB, myoglobin, and troponin I in postmortem pericardial fluid are significantly increased in patients with myocardial injury (Perez-Carceles et al, 2004).

ADA activity is a useful adjunctive test for tuberculous pericarditis in suspicious cases with negative acid-fast stains. The median ADA level in tuberculous pericarditis is significantly higher than in other pathologic effusions (Burgess et al, 2002b). Using a cutoff of 30 U/L, the sensitivity is 94%, specificity 68%, and positive predictive value 80%. Using a cutoff of 40 U/L, the sensitivity and specificity are 93% and 97%, respectively (Koh et al, 1994). Combining pericardial ADA levels with other findings adds to the diagnostic utility of measuring this analyte (Reuter et al, 2006).

Interferon-γ

Increased IFN-γ levels have been reported in tuberculous serous effusions, including tuberculous pericarditis (Burgess et al, 2002b). Here, the IFN-γ level was greater than 1000 pg/L, which was significantly higher than in effusions from other pathologic conditions. A cutoff value of 200 pg/L results in a sensitivity and specificity of 100% for the diagnosis of tuberculous pericarditis. As with ADA, combining IFN-γ levels with other pericardial fluid findings improves the diagnostic utility of this assay (Reuter et al, 2006).

Polymerase Chain Reaction

PCR is a sensitive technique and may be more specific than adenosine deaminase in the diagnosis of tuberculous pericarditis (Lee et al, 2002); however, a negative test does not rule out tuberculous pericarditis because some pericardial fluids from patients with large tuberculous effusions may not contain *M. tuberculosis*.

IMMUNOLOGIC STUDIES

A negative ANA test makes the diagnosis of lupus serositis highly unlikely. Conversely, high ANA titers in pericardial effusions lack specificity, even when they are as high as 1:5120 (Leventhal et al, 1990; Wang et al, 2000). If a high ANA titer is unexplained, malignancy should be considered.

MICROBIOLOGICAL EXAMINATION

The sensitivity of the Gram stain and culture for bacterial pericarditis is similar to other serous body fluids (i.e., about 50% and 80%, respectively). Important aerobic bacteria include *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*, *S. pyogenes*, and gram-negative bacilli. Although infectious pericarditis due to anaerobic bacteria may be encountered rarely, the bacteria are sometimes not recognized because of inconsistent methods used for their isolation and identification (Brook, 2002). For this reason, proper laboratory technique is of particular importance when infection with an anaerobic organism is suspected. The major anaerobic organisms are the *Bacteroides fragilis* group, anaerobic streptococci, *Clostridium* species, *Fusobacterium* species, and *Bifidobacterium* species.

Identification of a specific etiologic agent in viral pericarditis is difficult because the viruses (e.g., coxsackieviruses, influenza virus, mumps) are rarely isolated from pericardial fluid. Obtaining acute and convalescent sera for antibody response to suspected viral pathogens may help support the diagnosis (Bellinger & Vacek, 1987). Viral infection probably accounts for most idiopathic HIV-associated pericardial effusions.

The sensitivity of acid-fast stains and culture for tuberculous pericarditis is about 50% (Agner & Gallis, 1979). PCR is a sensitive technique and may be more specific than the use of adenosine deaminase in the diagnosis of tuberculous pericarditis (Lee et al, 2002). However, a negative test does not exclude the diagnosis of tuberculous pericarditis.

PCR-based assays may aid in the rapid diagnosis of a variety of bacterial and other infections in the pericardial space (Tenenbaum et al, 2005; Levy et al, 2006).

PERITONEAL FLUID

Ascites is the pathologic accumulation of excess fluid in the peritoneal cavity. Up to 50 mL of fluid is normally present in this mesothelial-lined space. As with pleural and pericardial fluids, it is produced as an ultrafiltrate of plasma dependent on vascular permeability and on hydrostatic and oncotic Starling forces.

TRANSUDATES AND EXUDATES

Common causes of peritoneal effusions are listed in Box 29-13. The laboratory criteria for classifying ascitic fluid as a transudate or an exudate are not as well defined as they are for pleural and pericardial fluids. For example, infected or malignancy-related samples are not uncommonly

BOX 29-13

Causes of Peritoneal Effusions

Transudates: Increased Hydrostatic Pressure or Decreased Plasma Oncotic Pressure

Congestive heart failure
Hepatic cirrhosis
Hypoproteinemia (e.g., nephrotic syndrome)

Exudates: Increased Capillary Permeability or Decreased Lymphatic Resorption

Infections
- Primary bacterial peritonitis
- Secondary bacterial peritonitis (e.g., appendicitis, bowel rupture)
- Tuberculosis

Neoplasms
- Hepatoma
- Lymphoma
- Mesothelioma
- Metastatic carcinoma
- Ovarian carcinoma
- Prostate cancer

Trauma
Pancreatitis
Bile peritonitis (e.g., ruptured gallbladder)

Chylous Effusion

Damage to or obstruction of thoracic duct (e.g., trauma, lymphoma, carcinoma, tuberculosis and other granulomas [e.g., sarcoidosis, histoplasmosis], parasitic infestation)

reported with protein concentrations in the transudative range (i.e., <3.0 g/dL), and many patients with cirrhotic or heart failure ascites have protein values in the exudative range (>3.0 g/dL) (Runyon et al, 1992).

The **serum-ascites albumin gradient,** defined as the serum albumin concentration minus the ascitic fluid albumin concentration, is widely considered as the most reliable method to differentiate peritoneal transudates from exudates (Runyon et al, 1992). Ascites caused by portal hypertension has a gradient of at least 1.1 g/dL (>11 g/L; transudate), whereas ascites produced by other causes has a gradient less than 1.1 g/dL (exudate) (Runyon et al, 1992). The diagnostic accuracy is 98% for the serum-ascites albumin gradient compared with only 52% to 80% for four other markers: Ascitic fluid total protein; ascites/serum total protein ratio; ascitic fluid LD concentration; and ascites/serum LD ratio (Akriviadis et al, 1996).

An ascitic fluid/serum bilirubin ratio of 0.6 or greater is also significantly associated with exudates (Elis et al, 1998). Indeed, the accuracies of the bilirubin ratio, the serum-ascites albumin gradient, and Light's criteria were 81.5%, 84%, and 80.2%, respectively. Others have suggested that if the ascitic fluid LD is >130 U/L and the ascitic fluid/serum total protein ratio is >0.4, the fluid should be regarded as an exudate (Paramothayan & Barron, 2002).

Although the serum-ascites albumin gradient is probably the best single method to differentiate an ascitic exudate from a transudate, other methods compare favorably. Nevertheless, no ideal biochemical markers allow complete discrimination between ascitic fluid exudates and transudates.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION

Paracentesis

Diagnostic paracentesis is performed in most patients with new ascites, or if there is a change in the clinical picture of a patient with ascites, such as rapid fluid accumulation or fever development. A minimum of 30 mL is needed for complete evaluation. If possible, at least 100 mL should be provided for cytologic examination. Samples for cell counts should be placed in an EDTA-anticoagulated venipuncture tube. Culture specimens should include blood culture bottles that have been inoculated at the bedside with ascitic fluid (10 mL per culture bottle).

Diagnostic Peritoneal Lavage

This procedure is no longer recommended as a routine technique for the evaluation of abdominal trauma. Concerns of oversensitivity and nonspecificity, and improvements in noninvasive diagnostic procedures such as computed tomography and ultrasound have limited its common use to (1) rapid screening for significant abdominal hemorrhage in hemodynamically unstable patients, and (2) evaluation of hollow viscous injuries.

A catheter is placed through a small incision into the abdominal cavity. If less than 15 mL of gross blood can be aspirated, diagnostic peritoneal lavage (DPL) is performed by infusing 1.0 L of saline or Ringer's solution (20 mg/kg in children) and retrieving the fluid by gravity drainage. At least 600 mL should be recovered to avoid falsely low counts (Sullivan et al, 1997). The catheter is sometimes left in place so that DPL may be repeated in 2 to 3 hours if initial results are negative or indeterminate.

Commonly accepted criteria for DPL interpretation after trauma are shown in Box 29-14. The positive predictive value is only 23% for an isolated (no other abnormal criteria) leukocyte count of 500/μL or greater (Soyka et al, 1990).

The conventional DPL criteria may be unreliable in detecting hollow viscous injury when blood is present from a simultaneous solid organ injury not requiring surgical repair, resulting in unnecessary exploratory laparotomies. Suggested modifications of DPL criteria to adjust for this source of bleeding include either of the following: (1) WBC count greater than or equal to RBC count divided by 150, where RBC is $10 \times 10^4/mm^3$ or greater (Otomo et al, 1998); or (2) cell count ratio greater than 1.0 (Fang et al, 1998). The cell count ratio is defined as the ratio between WBC and RBC counts in the lavage fluid divided by the WBC/RBC ratio in the peripheral blood. These criteria have a reported specificity of 97% for hollow organ injury, especially if DPL is performed at least 3 hours following injury.

Other applications of DPL include the evaluation of patients with suspected acute peritonitis or pancreatitis. A WBC count in the lavage fluid of 200 cells/mm^3 is associated with a 99% probability of acute peritonitis (Larson et al, 1992).

Peritoneal Dialysis

Dialysate fluid from renal patients undergoing chronic ambulatory peritoneal dialysis should be submitted to the laboratory to check for infection.

BOX 29-14

Criteria for Evaluation of Peritoneal Lavage

Positive Result

Aspiration of >15 mL gross blood on catheter placement
Grossly bloody lavage fluid
RBC >100,000/μL after blunt trauma
RBC >50,000/μL after penetrating trauma
WBC >500/μL
Amylase >110 U/dL

Indeterminate Result

Small amount of gross blood on catheter placement
RBC 50,000-100,000/μL after blunt trauma
RBC 1000-50,000/μL after penetrating trauma
WBC 100-500/μL

Negative Result

RBC <50,000/μL after blunt trauma
RBC <1000/μL after penetrating trauma
WBC <100/μL

Modified from Feied CF: Diagnostic peritoneal lavage, *Postgrad Med* 85:40, 1989, with permission.
RBC, Red blood cells; *WBC,* white blood cells.

BOX 29-15

Recommended Tests in Peritoneal Effusions

Useful in Most Patients

Gross examination
Cytology
Stains and culture for microorganisms
Serum-ascites albumin concentration gradient

Useful in Selected Disorders

Total leukocyte and differential cell counts
RBC count (lavage)
Bilirubin
Creatinine/urea nitrogen
Enzymes (ADA, ALP, amylase, LD, telomerase)
Lactate
Cholesterol (malignant ascites)
Fibronectin
Tumor markers (CEA, PSA, CA 19-9, CA 15-3, CA-125)
Immunocytology/flow cytometry
Tuberculostearic acid

Modified from Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: Laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous and synovial fluids,* ed 3, Chicago, 1993, © American Society for Clinical Pathology, with permission.
ADA, Adenosine deaminase; *ALP,* alkaline phosphatase; *CEA,* carcinoembryonic antigen; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase; *PSA,* prostate-specific antigen; *RBC,* red blood cell.

Peritoneal Washings

This procedure is performed intraoperatively to document early intraabdominal spread of gynecologic and gastric carcinomas. Samples are generally sent for cytologic examination only.

RECOMMENDED TESTS

The most important tests for the evaluation of ascitic fluid are listed in Box 29-15. Relative importance varies depending on the type of sample and the clinical findings. For example, RBC and WBC counts are more important than cytology or the serum-ascites albumin gradient in the evaluation of abdominal effects of trauma. Gross examination may provide immediate information in the clinical and laboratory triage.

GROSS EXAMINATION

Whereas transudates are generally pale yellow and clear, exudates are cloudy or turbid because of the presence of leukocytes, tumor cells, or increased protein levels. The presence of food particles, foreign material, or green-yellow bile staining in a DPL specimen suggests perforation of the gastrointestinal or biliary tract. Acute pancreatitis and cholecystitis may also cause greenish discoloration.

Blood-tinged or grossly bloody fluid must be distinguished from a traumatic tap in which the blood usually clears with continued

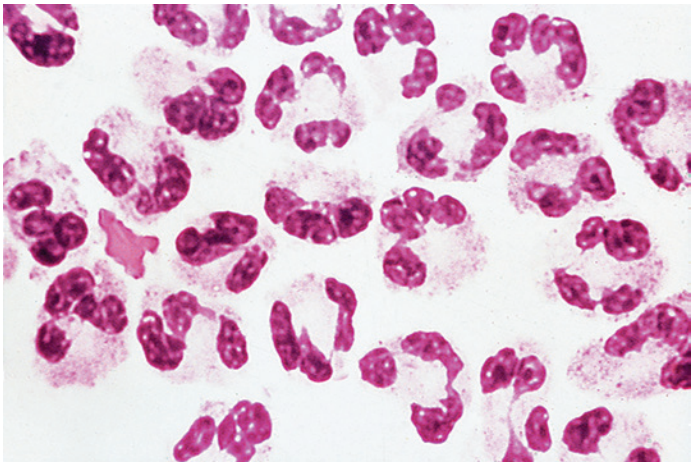


Figure 29-20 Neutrophils in a patient with bacterial peritonitis.

paracentesis. As little as 15 mL of blood per liter of fluid produces a bright red opaque color such that newsprint cannot be read through the lavage tubing. In most cases, the ability to read newsprint through the tubing results in a negative DPL. Opaque specimens require cell counts because newsprint readability is lost well below the 100,000 RBCs/μL criterion for a positive DPL (Bellows et al, 1998). Bloody ascites is also seen in malignancy and tuberculosis.

Milky fluid that does not clear with centrifugation suggests a chylous or pseudochylous effusion. True chylous peritoneal effusions are significantly less common than chylous pleural effusions. They are caused by disruption or blockage of lymphatic flow by trauma, lymphoma, carcinoma, tuberculosis, other granulomatous diseases (e.g., sarcoidosis), hepatic cirrhosis, adhesions, or parasitic infestation. Differentiation of true chylous and pseudochylous effusions is discussed in the Gross Examination section in the Pleural Fluid section later in the chapter.

MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION

The total leukocyte count is useful in distinguishing ascites due to uncomplicated cirrhosis from spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP), which is caused by migration of bacteria from the intestine into the ascitic fluid. Approximately 90% of patients with SBP will have leukocyte counts greater than 500/μL, more than 50% of which are neutrophils (Fig. 29-20) (Runyon & Hoefs, 1984; Stewart et al, 1986).

The ascitic fluid total neutrophil count is the preferred method for the diagnosis of SBP. Cutoff values of 250 and 500 neutrophils/μL have been recommended, with a diagnostic accuracy of about 94% for 500 neutrophils/μL and about 90% for 250 neutrophils/μL (Stassen et al, 1986; Albillos et al, 1990).

Cell counts, total protein, and albumin gradient values vary with fluid shifts associated with ascites formation and resolution. For example, diuresis may cause the WBC count to increase from 300/μL to 1000/μL or more. When obtained by DPL, a leukocyte count of 200/μL or more is reported to be associated with a 99% probability of acute peritonitis (Alverdy et al, 1988; Larson et al, 1992).

Eosinophilia (>10%) is most commonly associated with the chronic inflammatory process associated with chronic peritoneal dialysis. It has also been reported in congestive heart failure, vasculitis, lymphoma, and ruptured hydatid cyst.

Cytology has an overall sensitivity of 40% to 65% for malignant ascites. Peritoneal carcinomatosis accounts for about two thirds of malignant effusions, and cytology has a sensitivity of over 95% when confined to these cases (Runyon et al, 1988). Liquid-based thin-layer preparations of peritoneal effusions and pelvic washings have been shown to be superior to standard cytologic preparations in the detection of carcinoma (Moriarity et al, 2008). Immunocytochemical stains are useful in characterizing atypical cells in equivocal cases.

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

Protein

The serum-ascites albumin gradient is superior to total protein content in differentiating cirrhosis from other causes of peritoneal effusions (Runyon et al, 1992). Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) is commonly associated with low total protein (<3.0 g/dL) and a high serum-ascites albumin gradient (>1.1 g/dL), making total protein measurements of little value in this disorder. Extracellular fluid shifts associated with ascites formation and resorption also cause variations in protein content.

Glucose

Early reports indicated that peritoneal fluid glucose levels of 50 mg/dL or less are present in 30% to 60% of cases of tuberculous peritonitis and in about 50% of patients with abdominal carcinomatosis (Polak & Torres da Costa, 1973; Brown & An, 1976). Another study found decreased glucose levels in most cases of tuberculous ascites (Bansal et al, 1998). Still, glucose measurements are of little value because the sensitivity and specificity are generally too low to be of practical value.

Enzymes

Amylase activity in normal peritoneal fluid is similar to plasma levels. A level greater than three times the plasma value is good evidence of pancreas-related ascites, including acute pancreatitis and pancreatic pseudocyst (Runyon, 1987a). Amylase is not recommended in the routine evaluation of ascites, however, because the prevalence of pancreatic ascites is low. Retrospective amylase measurement on a stored specimen is indicated if initial studies are not diagnostic. Amylase levels in peritoneal lavage fluid may be valuable in patients following blunt and penetrating abdominal trauma (McAnena et al, 1991). Here, amylase levels greater than or equal to 20 U/L have a sensitivity of 87%, a specificity of 75%, and a positive predictive value of 46% for significant intraabdominal injury. In these cases, laparotomy should be considered. Gastroduodenal perforation, acute mesenteric vein thrombosis, intestinal strangulation, or necrosis may also produce elevated amylase levels. Although various nonpancreatic malignancies may rarely produce amylase elevations, isoenzyme evaluation usually identifies the salivary isoform in these latter cases (Kosches et al, 1989).

Elevated **alkaline phosphatase** (ALP) levels greater than 10 U/L in diagnostic peritoneal lavage fluid are useful in predicting hollow visceral injury in patients who would otherwise not undergo laparotomy (specificity 99.8%, sensitivity 94.7%) (Jaffin et al, 1993). Ascitic fluid ALP measurements may also be helpful in the differentiation of primary bacterial peritonitis from secondary bacterial peritonitis due to bowel perforation. Secondary peritonitis has significantly higher mean ALP levels than spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP). ALP levels >240 U/L were present in 92% of patients with secondary peritonitis versus 12% with SBP (Wu et al, 2001). The sensitivity and specificity for differentiating secondary peritonitis from SBP were 92% and 88%, respectively.

LD activity is often increased in malignant effusions (Gerbes et al, 1991). An ascitic fluid/serum LD ratio greater than 0.6 has a reported sensitivity of 80% (Boyer et al, 1978). Combined measurement of ascitic fluid LD and cholesterol totally discriminated peritoneal carcinomatosis from cirrhosis and hepatocarcinoma-related ascites (Castaldo et al, 1994; Halperin et al, 1999). Although both serum and peritoneal fluid LD levels are significantly higher in patients with ovarian cancer than in those with benign ovarian tumors or other gynecologic malignancies, peritoneal fluid LD has higher diagnostic sensitivity (87%) and diagnostic accuracy (90%) than serum LD (60% and 77%, respectively) (Schneider et al, 1997). LD has also been used for the early diagnosis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP), in which it has a diagnostic accuracy of about 74% using an ascitic fluid/serum ratio cutoff of 0.4 (Lee et al, 1987).

The presence of **telomerase** is a specific discriminatory marker in malignant ascites (Tangkijvanich et al, 1999). Telomerase activity was detected in 81% of malignant peritoneal effusions with a sensitivity of 76% and a specificity of 95.7%.

ADA is commonly used in endemic areas to identify patients with tuberculous peritonitis (Burgess et al, 2001). Using receiver operating characteristic curves and a cutoff value of 30 U/L, the sensitivity and specificity were 94% and 92%, respectively. Using a cutoff value of 33 U/L, the sensitivity, specificity, positive and negative predictive values, and overall diagnostic accuracy for diagnosing tuberculous peritonitis were 100%, 96.6%, 95%, 100%, and 98%, respectively (Dwivedi et al, 1990).

Fibronectin

Using a cutoff value of 85 μg/mL (85 mg/L), fibronectin was more reliable in differentiating malignant from sterile ascites (diagnostic accuracy, 79%) than were total protein, LD, γ-glutamyltransferase, pH, amylase, triglycerides, leukocyte count, and cytologic examination (Colli et al, 1986). In a subsequent study using a cutoff of 94.6 μg/mL, the sensitivity, specificity, positive accuracy, negative accuracy, and overall diagnostic accuracy in the diagnosis of malignant ascites were 100%, 95%, 93.8%, 100%, and

97.1%, respectively (Sood et al, 1997). Further studies have confirmed the utility of fibronectin measurement in the diagnosis of malignant ascites (Lee et al, 2006).

Lactate

Ascitic fluid lactate has been used with pH measurements to differentiate spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) from uncomplicated ascites. Sensitivity and specificity for lactate levels are approximately 90% using a cutoff of 40 mg/dL (4.44 mmol/L), with a positive predictive value of 62% (Stassen et al, 1986). Although not as accurate as leukocyte counts, the high specificity of lactate in hepatic ascites suggests that it has some value in the diagnosis of SBP in otherwise equivocal cases. Malignant and tuberculous ascites are also associated with elevated lactate levels.

Patients with hollow viscous perforation, gangrenous intestine, peritonitis, or intraabdominal abscess have a peritoneal fluid minus plasma lactate level of at least 13.5 mg/dL (1.5 mmol/L), which reportedly separates these patients completely from those with other conditions producing acute abdominal problems (DeLaurier et al, 1994). Still, the clinical utility of measuring ascitic fluid lactate in surgical decision making remains unclear.

Creatinine and Urea

Measurement of creatinine and urea nitrogen is useful to differentiate between peritoneal fluid and urine. Elevated peritoneal fluid urea nitrogen and creatinine, in association with elevated serum urea but normal serum creatinine (due to back-diffusion of urea), suggest urinary bladder rupture.

Bilirubin

The mean (±SD) ascitic fluid bilirubin concentration in various types of ascites has been reported as 0.7 ± 0.8 mg/dL, and the mean ascitic fluid/serum bilirubin ratio as 0.38 ± 0.44 (Runyon, 1987b). An ascitic fluid bilirubin greater than 6.0 mg/dL and an ascitic fluid/serum bilirubin ratio over 1.0 suggest choleperitoneum from a ruptured gallbladder. A ratio of 0.6 or greater has been advocated as an additional marker for an exudative process, although its accuracy is not as high as that of the serum-ascites albumin gradient (Elis et al, 1998).

pH

Ascitic fluid pH may be helpful in the diagnosis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) in patients with cirrhotic ascites, especially if it is used in conjunction with the leukocyte count (Attali et al, 1986; Stassen et al, 1986). A pH less than 7.32 or a blood–ascitic fluid pH difference of more than 0.1 has a reported sensitivity and specificity of about 90% for SBP, with the pH differential being slightly more accurate. Peritoneal fluid pH appears useless in detecting SBP, however, in the absence of neutrophils (Runyon & Antillon, 1991). Patients with an ascitic fluid pH of less than 7.15 have a poor prognosis (Attali et al, 1986). Low pH is also found in patients with malignant and pancreatic ascites and tuberculous peritonitis.

Cholesterol

The ascitic fluid cholesterol level is a moderately useful index in separating malignant ascites (>45 to 48 mg/dL) from cirrhotic ascites (Mortensen et al, 1988; Castaldo et al, 1994). The sensitivity and specificity average just over 90% using a cutoff value of 45 to 48 mg/dL (1.2 mmol/L). Thus, using a cutoff value of 48 mg/dL, the sensitivity, specificity, positive and negative predictive value, and overall diagnostic accuracy for differentiating malignant from nonmalignant ascites were reported as 96.5%, 96.6%, 93.3%, 98.3%, and 96.6%, respectively (Garg et al, 1993).

Interleukin-8

Interleukin-8, a cytokine produced by a variety of cells in response to stimuli such as bacterial lipopolysaccharide, is significantly higher in spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) compared with sterile ascites (Martinez-Bru et al, 1999). Using a cutoff value of 100 ng/L, the sensitivity and specificity were both 100% in cirrhotic patients.

Tuberculostearic Acid (10-Methyloctadecanoic Acid)

As noted in the Pleural Fluid section, TSA was detected in pleural fluid in 75% of patients with pulmonary tuberculosis using gas chromatography–mass spectroscopy (Muranishi et al, 1990). Using quantitative chemical ionization gas chromatography–mass spectrometry, the measurement of TSA is a valuable technique to identify tuberculous peritonitis, as well as tuberculous meningitis (spinal fluid) and pneumonia (pleural fluid) (Brooks et al, 1998).

Tumor Markers

Because of their reportedly low sensitivity and specificity, the measurement of tumor markers in peritoneal fluid is generally considered to be of little value. They are often useful, however, in selected cases, such as in following a patient's response to therapy and in the early detection of tumor recurrence. They may also be very useful in cases in which cytology is negative but suspicion of malignant ascites is high. In one study, cytologic examination was positive in only 40% (35 of 89 patients) of malignant cases, while tumor markers were positive in 80% (Cascinu et al, 1997). Moreover, excluding small cell lung and renal cancers, for which specific tumor markers are lacking, tumor markers (i.e., CEA, CA 19-9, CA 15-3, PSA) in ascitic fluid for other carcinomas were positive in 97% of cases. These tumor markers, as well as α-fetoprotein, were also found to be highly specific (over 90%) for serous fluid malignancies, although their sensitivities were low (19% to 38%) (Sari et al, 2001). The measurement of **PSA** may also be a valuable marker for the diagnosis of malignant effusions due to prostate cancer (Appalaneni et al, 2004).

CEA has a sensitivity of 40% to 50% and a specificity of about 90% for malignant effusions, using a cutoff value of 3.0 ng/mL (Mezger et al, 1988). In a similar study using a 5-mg/mL cutoff, the specificity was about 97% (Gulyas et al, 2001). Elevated CEA levels in peritoneal washings suggest a poor prognosis in gastric carcinoma (Irinoda et al, 1998).

Ascitic fluid **CA-125** is elevated to some degree in a variety of nonmalignant conditions. Indeed, cardiovascular and chronic liver disease may be the most frequent diagnoses in patients with increased CA-125 levels (Miralles et al, 2003), thereby supporting the general opinion that CA-125 in ascitic fluid lacks adequate specificity as a marker for malignancy. Extremely high levels are likely to be caused by epithelial carcinomas of the ovary, fallopian tubes, or endometrium. The sensitivity for ovarian carcinoma depends on the tumor's stage (range, 40% to 95%) and histologic subtype (mucinous adenocarcinomas have lower values) (Molina et al, 1998).

DNA ploidy analysis by flow cytometry or image analysis may provide useful complementary diagnostic information in cases with equivocal cytology results when the malignant cells carry an aneuploid karyotype, although the added value of DNA ploidy analysis over cytology is small (Bisht et al, 2014). Image analysis appears to be more practical than flow cytometry when the tumor cells are scarce (Rijken et al, 1991).

MICROBIOLOGICAL EXAMINATION

Primary peritonitis occurs at any age and is seen in children with nephrotic syndrome and in adults with cirrhotic liver disease. Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) occurs in patients with ascites in the absence of recognized secondary causes such as bowel perforation or intraabdominal abscess. The bacteria in SBP are most often normal intestinal flora, and more than 92% are monomicrobial. Aerobic gram-negative bacilli (e.g., *E. coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*) are responsible for two thirds or more of all cases (Gilbert & Kamath, 1995), followed by *S. pneumoniae*, *Enterococcus* spp., and, rarely, anaerobes. The Gram stain has a sensitivity of 25% in SBP (Lee et al, 1987), and routine cultures are positive in only about 50% of cases (Castellote et al, 1990). Inoculation of blood culture bottles at the bedside and concentration of large volumes of fluid can improve sensitivity, but up to 35% of infected patients may still have negative ascitic fluid cultures (Marshall, 1988). Use of resin-containing blood culture bottles may improve the isolation of certain bacteria in partially treated patients.

Ascitic fluid total neutrophil count is the preferred method for the diagnosis of SBP (see the Microscopic Examination section earlier in the chapter). As noted earlier, in difficult cases, several analytes may be useful in differentiating SBP from secondary bacterial or tuberculous peritonitis. Because of the low number of bacteria in many cases of SBP, sensitive methods for detection of bacteria in these specimens are often needed. PCR has been successfully used in the detection of bacterial DNA in culture-negative ascitic fluid (Such et al, 2002; Soriano et al, 2011), and more recently in situ hybridization performed on leukocytes suspended in peritoneal fluid has been used to detect bacteria in SBP (Enomoto et al, 2014).

The sensitivity of acid-fast stains for *M. tuberculosis* is no more than 20% to 30%, and cultures have a sensitivity of only 50% to 70% (Reimer, 1985). Application of PCR to detect *M. tuberculosis* DNA may be used, but a negative result does not exclude the diagnosis (Schwake et al, 2003). In a patient with a high clinical suspicion for tuberculous peritonitis, laparoscopic examination with biopsy may be indicated.

ALTERNATIVE SPECIMENS

SALIVA

Saliva is generally easily collected by noninvasive means, and so its acquisition is well accepted by patients. Because it is a filtrate of plasma, saliva has concentrations of some small molecules that are in equilibrium with the free (unbound) active fractions of those substances in plasma. This property has been especially useful for measuring free cortisol, which is the physiologically important fraction that reflects the secretion rate of cortisol and so is important for diagnosis. Salivary cortisol measurements have been used to assess adrenal function in critically ill subjects (Arafah et al, 2007) and in those with Cushing's syndrome and adrenal insufficiency (Raff, 2009), with late-night (or midnight) salivary cortisol being an effective screening test for Cushing's syndrome (Raff et al, 1998). Unfortunately, salivary concentrations of several other steroid hormones are not reliable measures of plasma free levels because of rapid fluctuations in their salivary concentrations (e.g., estradiol, progesterone, testosterone, dehydroepiandrosterone, aldosterone) (Wood, 2009).

Saliva also contains some antibody molecules that apparently derive from plasma. Thus measurements are sometimes performed on saliva to detect antibodies against infectious agents in circumstances when collection of saliva is much more convenient or acceptable to patients. Testing of saliva for antibodies against human immunodeficiency virus has been practiced widely in sexually transmitted disease clinics, although episodes of false-positive results have diminished confidence in these point-of-care tests (Cummiskey et al, 2008).

Genetic testing requires DNA from the patient that can be obtained conveniently from leukocytes in blood specimens, or even more conveniently from buccal cells in saliva or from swabs of the interior of the mouth.

Drug testing has also been performed in saliva to provide evidence of ingestion of illicit substances. Although drugs such as amphetamines, cocaine, and opioids are present in oral fluid at concentrations similar to those in plasma, local absorption of these drugs in the mouth can increase their concentration in saliva after use (Drummer, 2006).

MECONIUM

The analysis of body fluids can provide unique information based on anatomic location (often remote or not readily accessible) or sequences of metabolic processes and normal clearance of chemical constituents from the body. An example of this clinical utility is the examination of meconium from newborns for the detection of illicit drugs such as cocaine and amphetamines that the mother might have abused while pregnant; the drugs cross the placenta from maternal circulation into that of the fetus, which excretes the drug or its metabolites in bile that remains in the meconium until birth (Concheiro et al, 2013). This window of drug detection in meconium is much broader than that for testing of urine or blood by several weeks and covers second and third trimesters of pregnancy. Such testing is considered more reliable than self-reporting by mothers due to fear of reprisal and possible loss of custody. These results can be used both for medical management of the mother and the baby as well as for medical-legal purposes. Recently, measurement of ethyl glucuronide in meconium was found to be an objective measure of maternal alcohol use (Himes et al, 2015).

HAIR AND NAILS

Drug testing has time limitations of detection in blood for periods of minutes to hours after ingestion. The need to detect illicit drug use over longer periods of time has prompted analysis of other body sources. Concentrations of drugs in saliva follow the same time course as blood of minutes to hours after ingestion. Detection in urine can be as soon as minutes up to many days after drug use. Sweat concentrations also rise in minutes but may persist for weeks. True long-term detection is possible in hair and nails, where drugs of abuse can be detected days to even years after ingestion. Although numerous companies offer drug testing of hair or nail specimens, there has not been official adoption of this strategy by government agencies, largely because of issues of uncertainty as to whether the substances detected from hair or nail specimens were actually "in" the hair following ingestion and incorporation into that tissue, or whether the detected drug was simply "on" the surface of the specimen because of incidental contact that did not involve ingestion (Curtis & Greenberg, 2008).

BREATH TESTING

Exhaled Nitric Oxide and Exhaled Breath Condensate

Inflammatory disorders of the lungs, including asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and chronic cough, have largely been evaluated in the past by bronchoscopy, lavage, biopsy, and analysis of induced sputum. Noninvasive techniques for monitoring these disorders are now available as detection of chemical constituents in exhaled breath. **Exhaled nitric oxide** (NO) is an inflammatory mediator that is unstable in tissues but is much more stable in the gas phase, where it can be measured in single breath exhalations by specialized devices where NO content is expressed in parts per billion. This use is currently considered investigational but theoretically has great potential for monitoring pulmonary inflammation by noninvasive means with much greater frequency than by invasive procedures (Dweik et al, 2011).

A second approach to monitoring pulmonary disease is to measure nonvolatile inflammatory markers in **exhaled breath condensate** (EBC) that is collected from exhaled breath that is condensed by passage through a cooling device. Such specimens of respiratory fluid are scant, but they contain a rich assortment of substances such as cytokines, leukotrienes, oxidants, antioxidants, and so on that can reveal inflammatory activity by noninvasive means (Horvath et al, 2005). Even pH of EBC has been found useful in assessing lung disease; EBC tends to be slightly alkaline (mean pH 7.7 ± 0.49) in health, but it becomes more acidic with disease changes in the lower airways (Vaughan et al, 2003). EBC analysis is currently considered investigational.

Carbon-13-Urea Breath Test

Diagnosis of infection with *Helicobacter pylori* may be aided by the carbon-13-urea breath test in which the patient drinks a solution of ^{13}C-urea. *H. pylori* has the enzyme urease, which breaks down urea releasing $^{13}CO_2$ into the patient's breath. Samples of breath taken in a balloon or other specialized collection devices are analyzed by mass spectrometry (Patel et al, 2014) (see Chapters 4 and 23). Detection of $^{13}CO_2$ indicates infection with *H. pylori*. An alternative procedure utilizes ^{14}C in place of ^{13}C, although ^{14}C detection is based on low-level radioactivity. ^{13}C has the advantage of not being radioactive but the disadvantage of not being measured in most local laboratory facilities. The ^{13}C-urea breath test has special utility for pediatric patients (Frenck et al, 2006).

Opportunities for analysis of additional body fluid types will increase as collection methodologies expand, particularly in collaboration with invasive radiologic approaches. Some problems expected with these new unique specimens include scant specimen volumes, unknown protein and other chemical composition that might adversely affect measurements, and lack of reference ranges to distinguish normal healthy results from those in disease.

TISSUE ASPIRATES

Breast nipple aspirate fluid can be obtained by noninvasive means such as massage or with automated collection devices to yield material suitable for cytologic examination for early detection of breast cancer. This new collection approach may lead to other effective applications of cancer detection using modalities such as proteomics or still to be discovered biomarkers (Alexander et al, 2004).

Fine-needle aspiration for cytologic examination is frequently used to evaluate head and neck masses. Rapid identification of a mass of parathyroid tissue has been done by measuring parathyroid hormone (PTH) in saline, into which the needle aspirate is flushed (Conrad et al, 2006). This method was shown to be 99% accurate for diagnosis of parathyroid tissue because the measured values of PTH are orders of magnitude higher in parathyroid aspirates than in those from other tissues such as thyroid, adipose, or lymphatic. This type of specimen is truly unusual and would not likely be included in any manufacturer's claims for assay performance; however, this practice is well recognized by endocrine surgeons who now consider it a standard of practice.

Another diagnostic application of tumor markers is for aspirates collected from pancreatic cysts during surgery, although such fluids might also be collected by direct aspiration with a needle guided through ultrasound. High levels of CA19-9 in pancreatic cyst fluid suggest malignancy, whereas low levels are more consistent with benign processes (Khalid & Brugge, 2007). CA19-9 measurement in pancreatic cyst fluid is an aid to diagnosing malignancy in conjunction with cytology and other studies; the advantage of CA19-9 in this context is its relatively fast turnaround time by immunoassay that might be completed during the time period of surgical procedure. CEA has also been used for this purpose (Rockacy & Khalid, 2013).

BILLING FOR TESTS IN NONSTANDARD SPECIMENS

Although considerations of medical necessity provide strong motivation for performing tests in unusual specimen types to provide unique information that could not be obtained by other means, reporting of the results and subsequent billing may lead to confusion. Most laboratory computer systems have strictly defined specimen types, such as blood, serum, urine, and CSF. When dealing with an unusual specimen type that is not individually coded or recognized in a computer system, laboratories should take care not to enter these results as though they were serum or other commonly tested fluid. For both medical needs and reimbursement, some disclaimer should be included to indicate the specimen type, so that it is not confused with serum or other conventional fluid.

CHEMICAL MEASUREMENTS IN BODY FLUIDS

Plasma, serum, cerebrospinal fluid, and urine are standard fluids that are often submitted for chemical analysis. Manufacturers generally provide product claims for their assays in one or more of these body fluids, but they have not established assay behavior in other specimen types such as pleural fluid, peritoneal fluid, SF, and other accumulations of abnormal fluids such as drainage or lavage fluids. These types of fluids are not normally present in health but rather can form as the result of various pathologic processes, such as hemodynamic imbalance, infection, inflammation, malignancy, or other organ dysfunction. Consequently, the composition of these fluids can range widely, thereby leading to unpredictable effects on laboratory measurements. Matrix effects from variations in protein concentration can alter fluid surface tension, viscosity, and miscibility in a reaction mixture. All of these variations potentially might cause differences in measurements because of errors in pipetting fixed volumes or in speed and completeness of mixing with reagents in an assay. Other constituents present in these pathologic fluids (e.g., hyaluronic acid in SF) but not in serum also have the potential to alter measurements in assays intended for use in serum. This potential for erroneous measurements in body fluids due to matrix effects should be recognized when such requests for analysis are received.

A second issue concerning chemical measurements in pathologic fluids is what reference range to use for comparison in an interpretive report. Because abnormal fluid accumulations do not exist in a state of health, they cannot, of course, be collected from a normal healthy population to establish reference ranges.

These two issues of potential interferences and lack of reference ranges for analysis of body fluids fly in the face of Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act requirements for assay validation. In fact, the lack of manufacturers' claims for body fluid testing might actually place a greater burden on a laboratory to validate these assays than for use in serum for which manufacturer claims are typically cleared by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Without such validation, measuring chemical constituents in body fluids could be considered an off-label use of commercial assays.

In recognition of these difficulties faced by laboratories, the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) has developed the document C49A, Analysis of Body Fluids in Clinical Chemistry, to provide guidance in this situation (CLSI, 2007). The specific recommendations from CLSI are as follows:

1. Review performance claims of the manufacturer for the possibility of extending a commercial assay to body fluids with special attention to accuracy, precision, analytic measurement range, reference interval (usually in comparison with simultaneous measurement in serum, in addition to the patient's body fluid), and interferences from substances in the body fluid.
2. Existing methods may be suitably modified for body fluid analysis when necessary to obtain medically relevant information. Matrix effects that could alter the accuracy of measurement must be recognized. Furthermore, lack of a reference range for the analyte in body fluids should be compensated for by interpretation of results in comparison with a simultaneously collected serum specimen.
3. The preconditions for using a routine assay for an alternate body fluid are that the measurement system in another specimen type (serum plasma, urine)
   a. Has acceptable test characteristics.
   b. Has a reference method by which to ascertain bias.
   c. Has calibrators and controls.
   d. External proficiency testing should be done whenever available.
4. Specimen collection of body fluid and its handling, processing, and storage should follow guidelines for specimens of plasma or serum collected for that measurement. Special attention should be directed to the possibility of interference from anticoagulants into which a body fluid might be collected (e.g., heparin, EDTA, citrate).
5. Unusual properties of a body fluid such as high viscosity should be given consideration if they have the potential to alter the analyte concentration in the final solution of the reaction mixture (e.g., inaccurate pipetting, inadequate mixing).
6. The presence of an interferent in a body fluid can be assessed by testing the fluid neat and at 1:2 and 1:4 dilutions. Recovery of similar concentrations suggests lack of interference. Low concentrations can be checked for interference by mixing with a routine (serum) sample with a high measurable value to measure recoverability.
7. Result reporting should include the measured value and the type of fluid analyzed plus a statement that accuracy might be affected by sample type, and that results should be interpreted in the clinical context. The laboratory is urged to contact ordering physicians to explain these limitations.

A key point is that to be useful clinically, measurements in body fluids need not necessarily be highly accurate but instead must be within a clinically acceptable range of the true value. This CLSI document provides an extensive list of applications of many different chemical analytes that may provide medically unique information about the source of a body fluid (e.g., creatinine in peritoneal fluid to evaluate urinary tract injury; amylase in peritoneal fluid to evaluate for pancreatitis; triglycerides in pleural fluid as an indicator of chylous effusion from lymphatic damage).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Instititute (CLSI): *Analysis of body fluids in clinical chemistry: approved guideline*, Wayne, Pa., 2007, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. CLSI Document C49-A.

This document provides guidance on acceptable practices for chemical analysis in body fluids for which extensive method validation is not feasible, but that have the potential to contribute valuable or even unique diagnostic information.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Body fluid analysis for cellular composition: approved guideline*, Wayne, Pa., 2006, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. CLSI Document H56-A.

This document provides guidance on the examination of cellular components of body fluids.

Blennow K, Zetterrberg H: Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease, *J Alzheimers Dis* 18:413, 2009.

This article describes the use of biochemical markers in the diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease.

Conrad DN, Olson JE, Hartwig HM, et al: A prospective evaluation of novel methods to intraoperatively distinguish parathyroid tissue utilizing a parathyroid hormone assay, *J Surg Res* 133:38, 2006.

This article provides a useful method to prepare fine-needle tissue aspirates for measurement of parathyroid hormone to assist in the rapid evaluation of tissue masses.

Curtis J, Greenberg M: Screening for drugs of abuse: hair as an alternative matrix: a review for the medical toxicologist, *Clin Toxicol* 46:22, 2008.

This review article provides excellent background information regarding the physiology and toxicology of drug testing in hair, along with a description of many of the legal and practical issues surrounding this application.

Freedman MS, Thompson EJ, Deisenhammer F, et al: Recommended standard of cerebrospinal fluid analysis in the diagnosis of multiple sclerosis: a consensus statement, *Arch Neurol* 62:865, 2005.

This article is a consensus statement commissioned by the Consortium of Multiple Sclerosis Clinics that establishes the "minimum standard" for evaluation of CSF in patients suspected of having multiple sclerosis.

Hussong JW, Kjeldsberg CR: *Kjeldsberg's body fluid analysis*, Chicago, 2014, American Society for Clinical Pathology.

This is an updated version of a classic reference book on body fluid analysis.

Irani DN, editor: *Cerebrospinal fluid in clinical practice*, Philadelphia, 2009, Saunders.

This book provides a description of findings in CSF with different neurologic disorders.

Light RW: Pleural effusions, *N Engl J Med* 346:1971, 2002.

This article provides a step-by-step approach to the clinical evaluation of pleural fluids and the use of laboratory examinations in that process.

Raff H: Utility of salivary cortisol measurements in Cushing's syndrome and adrenal insufficiency, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 94:3647, 2009.

This article is a comprehensive and useful review of the clinical applications of cortisol measurements in saliva.

Wilson MR, Naccache SN, Samayoa E, et al: Actionable diagnosis of neuroleptospirosis by next-generation sequencing, *N Eng J Med* 370:2408, 2014.

This article describes the use of next-generation DNA sequencing, a powerful new laboratory modality, in the detection of an infectious agent in cerebrospinal fluid.

Zimmermann M, Ruprecht K, Kainzinger F, et al: Automated vs. manual cerebrospinal fluid cell counts: a work and cost analysis comparing the Sysmex XE-5000 and the Fuchs-Rosenthal manual counting chamber, *Int J Lab Hematol* 33:629, 2011.

This article discusses the pros and cons of automated cell counting in cerebrospinal fluid specimens.

REFERENCES

Abramson JS, Hampton KD, Babu S, et al: The use of C-reactive protein from cerebrospinal fluid for differentiating meningitis from other central nervous system diseases, *J Infect Dis* 151:854, 1985.

Achar VS, Welch KM, Chabi E, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid gamma-aminobutyric acid in neurologic disease, *Neurology* 26:777, 1976.

Adelman M, Albelda S, Gottlieb J, et al: Diagnostic utility of pleural fluid eosinophilia, *Am J Med* 77:915, 1984.

Agner RC, Gallis HA: Pericarditis: differential diagnosis considerations, *Arch Intern Med* 139:407, 1979.

Akriviadis EA, Kapnias D, Hadjigavriel M, et al: Serum/ascites albumin gradient: its value as a rational approach to the differential diagnosis of ascites, *Scand J Gastroenterol* 31:814, 1996.

Albillos A, Cuervas-Mons V, Millan L, et al: Ascitic fluid polymorphonuclear cell count and serum to ascites albumin gradient in the diagnosis of bacterial peritonitis, *Gastroenterology* 98:134, 1990.

Albright RE, Christenson RH, Habig RL, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) TRAP: a method to improve CSF laboratory efficiency, *Am J Clin Pathol* 90:707, 1988.

Alexander H, Stegner AL, Wagner-Mann C, et al: Proteomic analysis to identify breast cancer biomarkers in nipple aspirate fluid, *Clin Cancer Res* 10:7500–7510, 2004.

Alverdy JC, Saunders J, Chamberlin WH, et al: Diagnostic peritoneal lavage in intra-abdominal sepsis, *Am Surg* 54:456, 1988.

American College of Physicians: The diagnostic spinal tap, *Ann Intern Med* 104:880, 1986.

Andrews J, Setran E, McDonnel L, et al: An evaluation of the Cell-Dyn 3200 for counting cells in cerebrospinal and other body fluids, *Lab Hematol* 11:98, 2005.

Andersson M, Alvarez-Cermeno J, Bernardi G, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid in the diagnosis of multiple sclerosis: a consensus report, *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 57:897, 1994.

Andreasen N, Minthon L, Davidsson P, et al: Evaluation of CSF-tau and CSF-Abeta42 as diagnostic markers for Alzheimer disease in clinical practice, *Arch Neurol* 58:373, 2001.

Appalaneni V, Yellinedi S, Baumann MA: Diagnosis of malignant ascites in prostate cancer by measurement of prostate specific antigen, *Am J Med Sci* 327:262, 2004.

Arafah BM, Nishiyama FJ, Tlaygeh H, et al: Measurement of salivary cortisol concentration in the assessment of adrenal function in critically ill subjects: a surrogate marker of the circulating free cortisol, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 92:2965, 2007.

Arevalo CE, Barnes PF, Duda M, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid cell counts and chemistries in bacterial meningitis, *South Med J* 82:1122, 1989.

Ashchi M, Golish J, Eng P, et al: Transudative malignant pleural effusions: prevalence and mechanisms, *South Med J* 91:23, 1998.

Attali P, Turner K, Pelleteir G, et al: pH of ascitic fluid: diagnostic and prognostic value in cirrhotic and noncirrhotic patients, *Gastroenterology* 90:1255, 1986.

Aulesa C, Mainar I, Prieto M, et al: Use of the Advia 120 hematology analyzer in the differential cytologic analysis of biological fluids (cerebrospinal, peritoneal, pleural, pericardial, synovial, and others), *Lab Hematol* 9:214, 2003.

Aune M, Becker J, Brugnara C, et al: Automated flow cytometric analysis of blood cells in cerebrospinal fluid, *Am J Clin Pathol* 121:690, 2004.

Baer KE, Smith GP: Serous body cavity fluid examination, *Lab Med* 32:85, 2001.

Baethgen LF, Moraes C, Weidlich L, et al: Direct-test PCR for detection of meningococcal DNA and its serogroup characterization: standardization and adaptation for use in a public health laboratory, *J Med Microbiol* 52:793, 2003.

Bailey EM, Domenico P, Cunha BA: Bacterial or viral meningitis? Measuring lactate in CSF can help you know quickly, *Postgrad Med* 88:217, 1990.

Baker DG: Chemistry, serology and immunology. In Gatter RA, Schumacher HR, editors: *A practical handbook of joint fluid analysis*, 2nd ed, Philadelphia, 1991, Lea & Febiger, p 70.

Bansal S, Kaur K, Bansal AK: Diagnosing ascitic etiology on a biochemical basis, *Hepatogastroenterology* 45:1673, 1998.

Barnes P, Eby C, Shimer G: An evaluation of the utility of performing body fluid counts on the Coulter LH 750, *Lab Hematol* 10:127, 2004.

Batabyal SK, Ghosh B, Sengupta S, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid and serum carcinoembryonic antigen in brain tumors, *Neoplasma* 50:377, 2003.

Bellinger RL, Vacek JL: A review of pericarditis. 2. Specific pericardial disorders, *Postgrad Med* 82:105, 1987.

Bellows CF, Salomone JP, Nakamura SK, et al: What's black and white and red (read) all over? The bedside interpretation of diagnostic peritoneal lavage fluid, *Am Surg* 64:112, 1998.

Benson RL, Ansbacher L, Hutchison RE, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid centrifuge analysis in primary amebic meningoencephalitis due to *Naegleria fowleri*, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 109:668, 1985.

Berger T, Rubner P, Schautzer F, et al: Antimyelin antibodies as a predictor of clinically definite multiple sclerosis after a first demyelinating event, *N Engl J Med* 349:139, 2003.

Berthier M, Bonneau D, Desbordes JM, et al: Possible involvement of a gamma-hydroxybutyric acid receptor in startle disease, *Acta Paediatr* 83:678, 1994.

Bigner SH: Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) cytology: current status and diagnostic applications, *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 51:235, 1992.

Biou D, Benoist J-F, Huong CN-TX, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid protein concentrations in children: age-related values in patients without disorders of the central nervous system, *Clin Chem* 46:399, 2000.

Bisht B, Handa U, Mohan H, et al: Complimentary value of DNA flow cytometry and image morphometry in detection of malignant cells in effusion fluids, *Malaysian J Pathol* 36:83, 2014.

Blake J, Berman P: The use of adenosine deaminase in the diagnosis of tuberculosis, *S Afr Med J* 62:19, 1982.

Bleier BS, Debnath I, O'Connell BP, et al: Preliminary study on the stability of beta-2 tranferrin in extracorporeal cerebrospinal fluid, *Otolaryngology* 144:101, 2011.

Blennow K, Zetterrberg H: Cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease, *J Alzheimers Dis* 18:413, 2009.

Body BA, Oneson RH, Herold DA: Use of cerebrospinal fluid lactic acid concentration in the diagnosis of fungal meningitis, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 17:429, 1987.

Bonadio WA, Smith DS, Goddard S, et al: Distinguishing cerebrospinal fluid abnormalities in children with bacterial meningitis and traumatic lumbar puncture, *J Infect Dis* 162:251, 1990.

Borenstein DG, Gibbs CA, Jacobs RP: Gas-liquid chromatographic analysis of synovial fluid, *Arthritis Rheum* 25:947, 1982.

Boyer TD, Kahn AM, Telfer BR: Diagnostic value of ascitic fluid lactic dehydrogenase, protein, and WBC levels, *Arch Intern Med* 138:1103, 1978.

Britton C, Hultman E, Murray V, et al: The diagnostic accuracy of CSF analyses in stroke, *Acta Med Scand* 214:3, 1983.

Bromberg J, Breems D, Kraan J, et al: CSF flow cytometry greatly improves diagnostic accuracy in CNS hematologic malignancies, *Neurology* 68:1674, 2007.

Brook I: Pericarditis due to anaerobic bacteria, *Cardiology* 97:55, 2002.

Brooks BR: Nonimmunoglobulin proteins in human cerebrospinal fluid. In Herndon RM, Brumback RA, editors: *Cerebrospinal fluid*, Boston, 1989, Kluwer Academic Publishers, p 167.

Brooks JB, Syriopoulou V, Butler WR, et al: Development of a quantitative chemical ionization gas chromatography–mass spectrometry method to detect tuberculostearic acid in body fluids, *J Chromatogr B Biomed Sci Appl* 712:1, 1998.

Brown KD, An ND: Tuberculous peritonitis, *Am J Gastroenterol* 66:277, 1976.

Burgess LJ, Maritz FJ, LeRoux I, et al: Combined use of pleural adenosine deaminase with lymphocyte/neutrophil ratio: increased specificity for the diagnosis of tuberculous pleuritis, *Chest* 109:414, 1996.

Burgess LJ, Maritz FJ, Taljaard JJ: Comparative analysis of the biochemical parameters used to distinguish between pleural transudates and exudates, *Chest* 107:1604, 1995.

Burgess LJ, Reuter H, Carstens ME, et al: The use of adenosine deaminase and interferon-gamma as diagnostic tools for tuberculous pericarditis, *Chest* 122:900, 2002a.

Burgess LJ, Reuter H, Taljaard JJ, et al: Role of biochemical tests in the diagnosis of large pericardial effusions, *Chest* 121:495, 2002b.

Burgess LJ, Swanepoel CG, Taljaard JJ: The use of adenosine deaminase as a diagnostic tool for peritoneal tuberculosis, *Tuberculosis* 8:243, 2001.

Cameron PD, Boyce JM, Ansari BM: Cerebrospinal fluid lactate in meningitis and meningococcaemia, *J Infect* 26:245, 1993.

Cascinu S, Del Ferro E, Barbanti I, et al: Tumor markers in the diagnosis of malignant serous effusions, *Am J Clin Oncol* 20:247, 1997.

Castaldo G, Oriani G, Cimino L, et al: Total discrimination of peritoneal malignant ascites from cirrhosis and heptocarcinoma-associated ascites by assays of ascitic cholesterol and lactate dehydrogenase, *Clin Chem* 40:478, 1994.

Castano VJL, Amores AC: Use of pleural fluid C-reactive protein in laboratory diagnosis of pleural effusions, *Eur J Med* 1:201, 1992.

Castellote J, Xiol X, Verdaguer R, et al: Comparison of two ascitic fluid culture methods in cirrhotic patients with spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, *Am J Gastroenterol* 85:1605, 1990.

Cavuoti D, Baskin L, Jialal I: Detection of oligoclonal bands in cerebrospinal fluid by immunofixation electrophoresis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 109:585, 1998.

Cawley LP, Minard BJ, Tourtellotte WW, et al: Immunofixation electrophoresis techniques applied to identification of proteins in serum and cerebrospinal fluid, *Clin Chem* 22:1262, 1976.

Chalmers AC, Aprill BS, Shephard H: Cerebrospinal fluid and human immuno-deficiency virus: findings in healthy, asymptomatic, seropositive men, *Arch Intern Med* 150:1538, 1990.

Chan MHM, Chow KM, Chan ATC, et al: Quantitative analysis of pleural fluid cell-free DNA as a tool for the classification of pleural effusions, *Clin Chem* 49:740, 2003.

Chandler WL, Clayson KJ, Longstreth WT Jr, et al: Creatine kinase isoenzymes in human cerebrospinal fluid and brain, *Clin Chem* 30:1801, 1984.

Chandler WL, Clayson KJ, Longstreth WT Jr, et al: Mitochondrial and BB isoenzymes of creatine kinase in cerebrospinal fluid from patients with hypoxic-ischemic brain damage, *Am J Clin Pathol* 86:533, 1986.

Chen Y, Brennessel D, Walters J, et al: Human immunodeficiency virus-associated pericardial effusions: report of 40 cases and review of the literature, *Am Heart J* 137:516, 1999.

Chin NW, Sinay LJ, Taylor J, et al: Metastatic prostate cancer presenting as pleural and pericardial effusions, *Fed Pract* 16:19, 1999.

Choi SH, Kim YS, Bae IG, et al: The possible role of cerebrospinal fluid adenosine deaminase activity in the diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis in adults, *Clin Neurol Neurosurg* 104:10, 2002.

Clayburne G, Baker DG, Schumacher HR: Estimated synovial fluid leukocyte numbers on wet drop preparations as a potential substitute for actual leukocyte counts, *J Rheumatol* 19:60, 1992.

Colli A, Buccino G, Cocciolo M, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of fibronectin in the differential diagnosis of ascites, *Cancer* 58:2489, 1986.

Concheiro M, González-Colmenero E, Lendoiro E, et al: Alternative matrices for cocaine, heroin, and methadone in utero drug exposure detection, *Ther Drug Monit* 35:502–509, 2013.

Conly JM, Ronald AR: Cerebrospinal fluid as a diagnostic body fluid, *Am J Med* 75:102, 1983.

Conner B, Lee Y, Branca P, et al: Variations in pleural fluid WBC count and differential counts with different sample containers and different methods, *Chest* 123:1181, 2003.

Cooper SJ, Kelly CB, King DJ: 5-Hydroxyindoleacetic acid in cerebrospinal fluid and prediction of suicidal behaviour in schizophrenia, *Lancet* 340:940, 1992.

Coplin WM, Longstreth WT Jr, Lam AM, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid creatine kinase-BB isoenzyme activity and outcome after subarachnoid hemorrhage, *Arch Neurol* 56:1348, 1999.

Corral CJ, Pepple JM, Moxon ER, et al: C-reactive protein in spinal fluid of children with meningitis, *J Pediatr* 99:365, 1981.

Corral I, Quereda C, Navas E, et al: Adenosine deaminase activity in cerebrospinal fluid of HIV-infected patients: limited value for diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 23:471, 2004.

Costa M, Quiroga T, Cruz E: Measurement of pleural fluid cholesterol and lactate dehydrogenase: a simple and accurate set of indicators for separating exudates from transudates, *Chest* 108:1260, 1995.

Cummiskey J, Mavinkurve M, Patneth-Pollak R, et al: False-positive oral fluid rapid HIV tests—New York City, 2005-2008, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 57:1–5, 2008.

Cunha BA: Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) lactic acid levels: A rapid and reliable way to differentiate viral from bacterial meningitis or concurrent viral/bacterial meningitis, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:211, 2012.

Curtis GDW, Newman RJ, Slack MPE: Synovial fluid lactate and the diagnosis of septic arthritis, *J Infect* 6:239, 1983.

Davis MJ, Denton J, Freemont AJ, et al: Comparison of serial synovial fluid cytology in rheumatoid arthritis: delineation of subgroups with prognostic implications, *Ann Rheum Dis* 47:559, 1988.

Davis LE, Schmitt JW: Clinical significance of cerebrospinal fluid tests for neurosyphilis, *Ann Neurol* 25:50, 1989.

DeLaurier GA, Ivey RK, Johnson RH: Peritoneal fluid lactate and diagnostic dilemmas in acute abdominal disease, *Am J Surg* 167:302, 1994.

Desai MM, Pal RB: Polymerase chain reaction for the rapid diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis, *Indian J Med Sci* 56:546, 2002.

DeSalles AAF, Kontos HA, Becker DP, et al: Prognostic significance of ventricular CSF lactic acidosis in severe head injury, *J Neurosurg* 65:615, 1986.

Donald PR, Malan C: Cerebrospinal fluid lactate and lactate dehydrogenase activity in the rapid diagnosis of bacterial meningitis, *S Afr Med J* 69:39, 1986.

dos Santos JGN: Fetal primary amebic meningoencephalitis: a retrospective study in Richmond, Virginia, *Am J Clin Pathol* 54:737, 1970.

Drummer OH: Drug testing in oral fluid, *Clin Biochem Rev* 27:147, 2006.

Dubowitz LM, Bouza H, Hird MF, et al: Low cerebrospinal fluid concentration of free gamma-aminobutyric acid in startle disease, *Lancet* 340:80, 1992.

Duits FH, Kester MI, Scheffer PG, et al: Increase in cerebrospinal fluid F2-isoprostanes is related in cognitive decline in APOE ε4 carriers, *J Alzheimers Dis* 36:563, 2013.

Dumler JS, Valsamakis A: Molecular diagnosis for existing and emerging infections: complementary tools for a new era of clinical microbiology, *Am J Clin Pathol* 112:533, 1999.

Dweik RA, Boggs PB, Erzurum SC, et al: An official ATC clinical practice guideline: interpretation of exhaled nitric oxide levels (FENO) for clinical applications, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 184:602–615, 2011.

Dwivedi M, Misra SP, Misra V, et al: Value of adenosine deaminase estimation in the diagnosis of tuberculous ascites, *Am J Gastroenterol* 85:1123, 1990.

Elis A, Meisel S, Tishler T, et al: Ascitic fluid serum bilirubin concentration ratio for the classification of transudates or exudates, *Am J Gastroenterol* 93:401, 1998.

Engelke S, Bridgers S, Saldanha RL, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid lactate dehydrogenase in neonatal intracranial hemorrhage, *Am J Med Sci* 291:391, 1986.

Enomoto H, Inoue S, Matsuhisa A: Diagnosis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis and an *in situ* hybridization approach to detect an "unidentified" pathogen, *Int J Hepatol* 2014; ID 634617, 7 pages. http://dx.doi.org/10.1155/2014/634617. Accessed January 26, 2015.

Ettlinger RE, Hunder GC: Synovial effusions containing cholesterol crystals, *Mayo Clin Proc* 54:366, 1979.

Exner MM, Lewinski MA: Isolation and detection of *Borrelia burgdorferi* DNA from cerebral spinal fluid, synovial fluid, blood, urine, and ticks using the Roche MagNA Pure system and real-time PCR, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 46:235, 2003.

Fam AG, Pritzker KP, Cheng PT, et al: Cholesterol crystals in osteoarthritic joint effusions, *J Rheumatol* 8:273, 1981.

Fang J-F, Chen R-J, Lin B-C: Cell count ratio: new criterion of diagnostic peritoneal lavage for detection of hollow organ perforation, *J Trauma* 45:540, 1998.

Ferguson AM, Ford B, Gronowski A: Method validation for cerebrospinal fluid human chorionic gonadotropin measurement with the Advia Centaur, *Clin Chem* 54:1408, 2008.

Ferrer A, Osset J, Alegre J, et al: Prospective clinical and microbiological study of pleural effusions, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 18:237, 1999.

Finn WG, Peterson LC, James C, et al: Enhanced detection of malignant lymphoma in cerebrospinal fluid by multiparameter flow cytometry, *Am J Clin Pathol* 110:341, 1998.

Fischer C, Arneth B, Koehler J, et al: Kappa free light chains in cerebrospinal fluid as markers of intrathecal immunoglobulin synthesis, *Clin Chem* 50:1809, 2004.

Fishman RA: *Cerebrospinal fluid in diseases of the nervous system*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1992, Saunders.

Fleisher M, Wasserstrom WRT, Schold SC, et al: Lactic dehydrogenase isoenzymes in the cerebrospinal fluid of patients with systemic cancer, *Cancer* 47:2654, 1981.

Flood J, Weinstock HS, Guroy M, et al: Neurosyphilis during the AIDS epidemic, San Francisco, 1985-1992, *J Infect Dis* 177:931, 1998.

Florez G, Cabeza A, Gonzalez JM, et al: Changes in serum and cerebrospinal fluid enzyme activity after head injury, *Acta Neurochir* 35:3, 1976.

Fortini AS, Sanders EL, Weinshenker BG, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid oligoclonal bands in the diagnosis of multiple sclerosis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 120:672, 2003.

Frenck RW, Fathy HM, Sherif M, et al: Sensitivity and specificity of various tests for the diagnosis of *Helicobacter pylori* in Egyptian children, *Pediatrics* 118:195–202, 2006.

Fujimoto N, Gemba K, Yao A, et al: Tuberculosis diagnosis by PCR analysis of synovial fluid, *J Infect Chemother* 16:53, 2010.

Gallo P, Tavolato B, Bergenbrant S, et al: Immunoglobulin light chain patterns in the cerebrospinal fluid: a study with special reference to the occurrence of free light chains in cerebrospinal fluid with and without oligoclonal immunoglobulin G, *J Neurol Sci* 94:241, 1989.

Garcia-Pachon E, Padilla-Navas I, Dosda ME, et al: Elevated level of carcinoembryonic antigen in nonmalignant pleural effusions, *Chest* 111:643, 1997.

Garg R, Sood A, Arora S, et al: Ascitic fluid cholesterol in differential diagnosis of ascites, *J Assoc Physicians India* 41:644, 1993.

Gastrin B, Lovestad A: Diagnostic significance of pleural fluid lactate concentration in pleural and pulmonary disease, *Scand J Infect Dis* 20:85, 1988.

Gatter RA, Schumacher HR: *A practical handbook of joint fluid analysis*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1991, Lea & Febiger.

Gerbes AL, Jungst D, Xie Y, et al: Ascitic fluid analysis for the differentiation of malignancy-related and nonmalignant ascites, *Cancer* 68:1808, 1991.

Gerdes LU, Jorgensen PE, Nexo E, et al: C-reactive protein and bacterial meningitis: a meta-analysis, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 58:383, 1998.

Gilbert JA, Kamath PS: Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis: an update, *Mayo Clin Proc* 70:365, 1995.

Gilchrist GS, Tubergen DG, Sather HN, et al: Low numbers of CSF blasts at diagnosis do not predict for the development of CNS leukemia in children with intermediate-risk acute lymphoblastic leukemia. A Children's Cancer Group report, *J Clin Oncol* 12:2594, 1994.

Glasser L, Murphy C, Machan J: The clinical reliability of automated cerebrospinal fluid cell counts on the Beckman-Coulter LH750 and IRIS iQ200, *Am J Clin Pathol* 131:58, 2009.

Goldenberg DL, Reed JI: Bacterial arthritis, *N Engl J Med* 312:764, 1985.

Golightly MG: Laboratory considerations in the diagnosis and management of lyme borreliosis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 99:168, 1993.

Good JT, King TE, Antony VB, et al: Lupus pleuritis, *Chest* 84:714, 1983.

Good JT, Taryle DA, Maulitz RM, et al: The diagnostic value of pleural fluid pH, *Chest* 78:55, 1980.

Gratacos J, Vila J, Moya F, et al: D-lactic acid in synovial fluid: A rapid diagnostic test for bacterial synovitis, *J Rheumatol* 22:1504, 1995.

Graves M: Cerebrospinal fluid infections. In Herndon RM, Brumback RA, editors: *The cerebrospinal fluid*, Boston, 1989, Kluwer Academic Publishers, p 143.

Greene DN, Schmidt R, Wilson AR, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid myelin basic protein is frequently ordered but has little value, *Am J Clin Pathol* 138:262, 2012.

Greenlee JE: Approach to diagnosis of meningitis: cerebrospinal fluid examination, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 4:583, 1990.

Gulyas M, Kaposi AD, Elek G, et al: Value of carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) and cholesterol assays of ascitic fluid in cases of inconclusive cytology, *J Clin Pathol* 54:831, 2001.

Hall CD, Snyder CR, Robertson KR, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid analysis in human immunodeficiency virus infection, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 22:139, 1992.

Halla JT, Schrohenloher RE, Volankis JE: Immune complexes and other laboratory features of pleural effusions, *Ann Intern Med* 92:748, 1980.

Halperin R, Hadas E, Bukovsky I, et al: Peritoneal fluid analysis in the differentiation of ovarian cancer and benign ovarian tumor, *Eur J Gynecol Oncol* 20:40, 1999.

Harrington MG, Merrill CR, Asher DM, et al: Abnormal proteins in the cerebrospinal fluid of patients with Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease, *N Engl J Med* 315:279, 1986.

Hasselbacher P: Variation in synovial fluid analysis by hospital laboratories, *Arthritis Rheum* 30:637, 1987.

Hausfater P, Fillet AM, Rozenberg F, et al: Prevalence of viral infection markers by polymerase chain reaction amplification and interferon-alpha measurements among patients undergoing lumbar puncture in an emergency department, *J Med Virol* 73:137, 2004.

Hayward RA, Oye RK: Are polymorphonuclear leukocytes an abnormal finding in cerebrospinal fluid? Results from 225 normal cerebrospinal fluid specimens, *Arch Intern Med* 148:1623, 1988.

Hayward RA, Shapiro MF, Oye RK: Laboratory testing on cerebrospinal fluid: a reappraisal, *Lancet* 1:8523, 1987.

Heffner JE, Brown LK, Barbieri CA: Diagnostic value of tests that discriminate between exudative and transudative pleural effusions. Primary Study Investigators, *Chest* 111:970, 1997.

Heffner JE, Brown LK, Barbieri C, et al: Pleural fluid chemical analysis in parapneumonic effusions: a meta-analysis, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 151:1700, 1995.

Herndon RM, Brumback RA, editors: *The cerebrospinal fluid*, Boston, 1989, Kluwer Academic Publishers.

Hersey LA, Trotter JL: The use and abuse of the cerebrospinal fluid IgG profile in the adult: a practical evaluation, *Ann Neurol* 8:126, 1980.

Himes SK, Dukes KA, Tripp T, et al: Clinical sensitivity and specificity of meconium fatty acid ethyl ester, ethyl glucuronide, and ethyl sulfate for detecting maternal drinking during pregnancy, *Clin Chem* 61:523–532, 2015.

Hoffman J, Janssen W: Automated counting of cells in cerebrospinal fluid using the Cell Dyn-4000 haematology analyser, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 40:1168, 2002.

Horvath I, Hunt J, Barnes PJ, et al: Exhaled breath condensate: methodological recommendations and unresolved questions, *Eur Respir J* 26:523–548, 2005.

Hsich G, Kenney K, Gibbs CJ, et al: The 14-3-3 protein in cerebrospinal fluid as a marker for transmissible spongiform encephalopathies, *N Engl J Med* 335:924, 1996.

Hunder GG, McDuffie FC, Hepper NGG: Pleural fluid complement activity in systemic lupus erythematosus and rheumatoid arthritis, *Ann Intern Med* 76:357, 1972.

Hunder GG, Pierre RV: In vivo LE cell formation in synovial fluid, *Arthritis Rheum* 13:448, 1970.

Huppmann AR, Rheingold SR, Bailey LC, et al: Detection of leukemic lymphoblasts in CSF is instrument-dependent, *Am J Clin Pathol* 137:795, 2012.

Ibrahim RE, Teich D, Smith ER, et al: Flow cytometric surface light chain analysis of lymphocyte-rich effusions, *Cancer* 63:2024, 1989.

Irinoda T, Terashima M, Takagane A, et al: Carcinoembryonic antigen level in peritoneal washing is prognostic factor in patients with gastric cancer, *Oncol Rep* 5:661, 1998.

Irjala K, Suorpaa J, Laurent B: Identification of CSF leakage by immunofixation, *Arch Otolaryngol* 105:447, 1979.

Jaffin JH, Ochsner MG, Cole FJ, et al: Alkaline phosphatase levels in diagnostic peritoneal lavage as a predictor of hollow visceral injury, *J Trauma* 34:829, 1993.

Jalava J, Skurnik M, Toivanen A, et al: Bacterial PCR in the diagnosis of joint infection, *Ann Rheum Dis* 60:287, 2001.

Jay SJ: Pleural effusions. 2: Definitive evaluation of the exudate, *Postgrad Med* 80:181, 1986.

Jeffrey GM, Frampton CM, Legge HM, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid β2-microglobulin levels in meningeal involvement by malignancy, *Pathology* 22:20, 1990.

Johnson KP, Nelson BJ: Multiple sclerosis: diagnostic usefulness of cerebrospinal fluid, *Ann Neurol* 2:425, 1977.

Jonasson JG, Ducatman BS, Wang HH: The cell block for body cavity fluids: do the results justify the cost?, *Mod Pathol* 3:667, 1990.

Jones AC, Chuck AJ, Arie EA, et al: Diseases associated with calcium pyrophosphate deposition disease, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 22:188, 1992.

Judkins SW, Cornbleet PJ: Synovial fluid crystal analysis, *Lab Med* 28:774, 1997.

Kanoh Y, Ohtani H: Levels of interleukin-6, CRP and alpha 2 macroglobulin in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and serum as indicators of blood-CSF barrier damage, *Biochem Mol Biol Int* 43:269, 1997.
Kang SJ, Kwang SK, Yoon SH, et al: Diagnostic value of cerebrospinal fluid level of carcinoembryonic antigen in patients with leptomeningeal carcinomatous metastasis, *J Clin Neurol* 6:33, 2010.
Karcher D, Alkan S: Human herpesvirus-8-associated body cavity-based lymphoma in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients: a unique B-cell neoplasm, *Hum Pathol* 28:801, 1997.
Karkela J, Pasanen M, Kaukinen S, et al: Evaluation of hypoxic brain injury with spinal fluid enzymes, lactate, and pyruvate, *Crit Care Med* 20:378, 1992.
Kashyap RS, Kainthla RP, Biswas SK, et al: Rapid diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis using simple DOT ELISA method, *Med Sci Monit* 9:123, 2003.
Kasper LM, Moorehead WR, Oel TO, et al: An alternative method assaying cerebrospinal fluid protein in the presence of methotrexate, *Clin Chem* 34:2091, 1988.
Kawai M, Hirohata S: Cerebrospinal fluid beta(2)-microglobulin in neuro-Behçet's syndrome, *J Neurol Sci* 179:132, 2000.
Kay J, Eichenfield AH, Athreya BH, et al: Synovial fluid eosinophilia in Lyme disease, *Arthritis Rheum* 31:1384, 1988.
Kendall B, Dunn C, Solanki P: A comparison of the effectiveness of malignancy detection in body fluid examination by the cytopathology and hematology laboratories, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 121:976, 1997.
Keren DF: Optimizing detection of oligoclonal bands in cerebrospinal fluid by use of isoelectric focusing with IgG immunoblotting, *Am J Clin Pathol* 120:649, 2003.
Khalid A, Brugge W: ACG practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of neoplastic pancreatic cysts, *Am J Gastroenterol* 102:2339–2349, 2007.
Kim S, Sahn SA: Postcardiac injury syndrome: an immunologic pleural fluid analysis, *Chest* 109:570, 1996.
Kindig JR, Goodman MR: Clinical utility of pericardial fluid pH determination, *Am J Med* 75:1077, 1983.
Kjeldsberg CR, Knight JA: *Body fluids: laboratory examination of amniotic, cerebrospinal, seminal, serous, and synovial fluids*, ed 3, Chicago, 1993, American Society for Clinical Pathology.
Klee GG, Tallman RD, Goellner JR, et al: Elevation of carcinoembryonic antigen in cerebrospinal fluid among patients with meningeal carcinomatosis, *Mayo Clin Proc* 61:9, 1986.
Kleine T, Nebe C, Lower C, et al: Modifications of haematology analyzers to improve cell counting and leukocyte differentiating in cerebrospinal fluid controls of the Joint German Society for Clinical Chemisty and Laboratory Medicine, *Cytometry A* 75A:688, 2009.
Knight JA, Dudek SM, Haymond RE: Early (chemical) diagnosis of bacterial meningitis—cerebrospinal fluid glucose, lactate, and lactate dehydrogenase compared, *Clin Chem* 27:1431, 1981.
Koh KK, Kim EJ, Cho CH, et al: Adenosine deaminase and carcinoembryonic antigen in pericardial effusion diagnosis, especially in suspected tuberculous pericarditis, *Circulation* 89:2728, 1994.
Kosches DS, Sosnowik D, Lendvai S, et al: Unusual anodic migrating isoamylase differentiates selected malignant from nonmalignant ascites, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 11:43, 1989.
Kramer MR, Saldana MJ, Cepero RJ, et al: High amylase levels in neoplasm-related pleural effusion, *Ann Intern Med* 110:567, 1989.
Kuberski T: Eosinophils in cerebrospinal fluid: criteria for eosinophilic meningitis, *Hawaii Med J* 40:97, 1981.
Kusum S, Aman S, Pallab R, et al: Multiplex PCR for rapid diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis, *J Neurol* 258:1781, 2011.
Lacayo NJ, Weng L, Gawad C, et al: Use of rearranged immune receptor sequencing to measure minimal residual disease (MRD) in bone marrow, cerebrospinal fluid and testes in relapsed childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 122:4984, 2013.
Lampl Y, Paniri Y, Eshel Y, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid lactate dehydrogenase levels in early stroke and transient ischemic attacks, *Stroke* 21:854, 1990.
Lang DT, Berberian LB, Lee S, et al: Rapid differentiation of subarachnoid hemorrhage from traumatic lumbar puncture using the D-dimer assay, *Am J Clin Pathol* 91:403, 1990.
Larson FA, Haller CC, Delcore R, et al: Diagnostic peritoneal lavage in acute peritonitis, *Am J Surg* 164:449, 1992.
Lazcano O, Li CY, Pierre RV, et al: Clinical utility of the Alizarin Red S stain on permanent preparations to detect calcium-containing compounds in synovial fluid, *Am J Clin Pathol* 99:90, 1993.
Lee C-M, Changchien C-S, Shyu W-C, et al: Serum-ascites albumin concentration gradient and ascites fibronectin in the diagnosis of malignant ascites, *Cancer* 70:2057, 2006.
Lee HH, Carlson RW, Bull DM: Early diagnosis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis: values of ascitic fluid variables, *Infection* 15:232, 1987.
Lee J-H, Lee CW, Lee S-G, et al: Comparison of polymerase chain reaction with adenosine deaminase activity in pericardial fluid for the diagnosis of tuberculous pericarditis, *Am J Med* 113:519, 2002.
Lee YCG, Rogers JT, Rodriguez RM, et al: Adenosine deaminase levels in nontuberculous lymphocytic pleural effusions, *Chest* 120:356, 2001.
Lefvert AK, Link H: IgG production within the central nervous system: a critical review of proposed formulae, *Ann Neurol* 17:13, 1985.
Lemstra AW, van Meegen MT, Vreyling JP, et al: 14-3-3 testing in diagnosing Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease: a prospective study in 112 patients, *Neurology* 55:514, 2000.
Leslie DE, Assato F, Karapanagiotidis T, et al: Development of a real-time PCR assay to detect *Treponema pallidum* in clinical specimens and assessment of assay comparison with serological testing, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:93, 2007.
Leventhal LJ, DeMarco DM, Zurier RB: Antinuclear antibody in pericardial fluid from a patient with primary cardiac lymphoma, *Arch Intern Med* 150:1113, 1990.
Levine J, Panchalingam K, Rapoport A, et al: Increased cerebrospinal fluid glutamine levels in depressed patients, *Biol Psychiatry* 47:586, 2000.
Levine H, Szanto M, Grieble HG, et al: Rheumatoid factor in nonrheumatoid pleural effusions, *Ann Intern Med* 69:487, 1968.
Levy PY, Fournier PE, Charrel R, et al: Molecular analysis of pericardial fluid: A 7-year experience, *Eur Heart J* 27:1942, 2006.
Li F, Bulbul R, Schumacher HRJ, et al: Molecular detection of bacterial DNA in venereal-associated arthritis, *Arthritis Rheum* 39:950, 1996.
Li A, Gronlund E, Brattsand G: Automated white blood cell counts in cerebrospinal fluid using the body fluid mode on the platform Sysmex XE-5000, *Scan J Clin Lab Invest* 74:673, 2014.
Light RW: *Pleural diseases*, ed 3, Baltimore, 1995, Williams & Wilkins.
Light RW: Diagnostic principles in pleural disease, *Eur Respir J* 10:476, 1997.
Light RW, Ball WC Jr: Glucose and amylase in pleural effusions, *JAMA* 225:257, 1973.
Light RW, MacGregor MI, Luchsinger PC, et al: Pleural effusions: the diagnostic separation of transudates and exudates, *Ann Intern Med* 77:507, 1972.
Lin JJ, Harn HJ, Hsu YD, et al: Rapid diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis by polymerase chain reaction assay of cerebrospinal fluid, *J Neurol* 242:147, 1995.
Lolli F, Siracusa G, Amato MP, et al: Intrathecal synthesis of free immunoglobulin light chains and IgM in initial multiple sclerosis, *Acta Neurol Scand* 83:239, 1991.
Lossos IS, Breuer R, Intrator O, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme analysis for the diagnosis of central nervous system involvement in hemato-oncologic patients, *Cancer* 88:1599, 2000.
Lott JA, Warren P: Estimation of reference intervals for total protein in cerebrospinal fluid, *Clin Chem* 35:1766, 1989.
Luna A, Villanueva E, Castellano M, et al: The determination of CK, LDH and its isoenzymes in pericardial fluid and its application to the post-mortem diagnosis of myocardial infarction, *Forensic Sci Int* 19:85, 1982.
Lunding J, Midgard R, Vedeler CA: Oligoclonal bands in cerebrospinal fluid: a comparative study of isoelectric focusing, agarose gel electrophoresis and IgG index, *Acta Neurol Scand* 102:322, 2000.
Luukkainen R, Kaarela K, Huhtala H, et al: Prognostic significance of synovial fluid analysis in rheumatoid arthritis, *Ann Med* 21:269, 1989.
Luxton RW, Patel P, Keir G, et al: A micro-method for measuring total protein in cerebrospinal fluid by using benzethonium chloride in microliter plate wells, *Clin Chem* 35:1731, 1989.
Maas JW, Bowden CL, Miller AL, et al: Schizophrenia, pyschosis, and cerebrospinal fluid homovanillic acid concentrations, *Schizophr Bull* 23:147, 1997.
Maldonado F, Hawkins FJ, Daniels CE, et al: Pleural fluid characteristics of chylothorax, *Mayo Clin Proc* 84:129, 2009.
Malla KK, Malla T, Rao KS, et al: Is cerebrospinal fluid C-reactive protein a better tool than blood C-reactive protein in laboratory diagnosis of meningitis in children?, *Sultan Qaboos Univ Med J* 13:93, 2013.
McAnena OJ, Marx JA, Moore EE: Peritoneal lavage enzyme determinations following blunt and penetrating abdominal trauma, *J Trauma* 31:1161, 1991.
McCarty DJ: Crystal identification in human synovial fluids, *Rheum Disease Clin North Am* 14:253, 1988.
McGill NW, York H: Reproducibility of synovial fluid examination for crystals, *Aust N Z J Med* 34:710, 1991.
McGuinness GA, Weisz SC, Bell WE: CSF lactate levels in neonates, *Am J Dis Child* 137:48, 1983.
Maddalena A, Papassotiropoulos A, Muller-Tillmanns B, et al: Biochemical diagnosis of Alzheimer disease by measuring the cerebrospinal fluid ratio of phosphorylated tau protein to β-amyloid peptide 42, *Arch Neurol* 60:1202, 2003.
Mahoney DH Jr, Fernbach DJ, Glaze DG, et al: Elevated myelin basic protein levels in cerebrospinal fluid of children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *J Clin Oncol* 2:58, 1984.
Mann AD, Macfarlane CM, Verburg CJ, et al: The bromide partition test and CSF adenosine deaminase activity in the diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis in children, *S Afr Med J* 62:432, 1982.
Marshall JB: Finding the cause of ascites: the importance of accurate fluid analysis, *Postgrad Med* 83:189, 1988.
Martinez-Bru C, Gomez C, Cortes M, et al: Ascitic fluid interleukin-8 to distinguish spontaneous bacterial peritonitis and sterile ascites in cirrhotic patients, *Clin Chem* 45:2027, 1999.
Martinez-Laperche C, Gomez-Garcia AM, Lassaletta A, et al: Detection of occult cerebrospinal fluid involvement during maintenance therapy identifies a group of children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia at high risk for relapse, *Am J Hematol* 88:359, 2013.
Marton KI, Gean AD: The spinal tap: a new look at an old test, *Ann Intern Med* 104:840, 1986.
Mayefsky JH, Roughmann KJ: Determination of leukocytosis in traumatic spinal tap specimens, *Am J Med* 82:1175, 1987.
Melsom RD: Diagnostic reliability of pleural fluid protein estimation, *J Royal Soc Med* 72:823, 1979.
Meucci G, Rossi G, Bertini R, et al: Laser nephelometric evaluation of albumin, IgG and alpha2-macroglobulin: applications to the study of alterations of the blood-brain barrier, *J Neurol Sci* 118:73, 1993.
Meyers DG, Meyers RE, Prendergast TW: The usefulness of diagnostic tests on pericardial fluid, *Chest* 111:1213, 1997.
Mezger J, Permanetter W, Gerbes AL, et al: Tumour associated antigens in diagnosis of serous effusions, *J Clin Pathol* 41:633, 1988.
Miller KS, Wooten S, Sahn SA: Urinothorax: a cause of low pH transudative pleural effusions, *Am J Med* 85:448, 1988.
Miralles C, Orea M, Espana P, et al: Cancer antigen 125 associated with multiple benign and malignant pathologies, *Ann Surg Oncol* 10:150, 2003.
Mishra OP, Batra P, Ali Z, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid lysozyme level for the diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis in children, *J Trop Pediatr* 49:13, 2003.
Mizock BA, Rackow EC, Burke GS: Elevated cerebrospinal fluid glutamine in septic encephalopathy, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 11:362, 1989.
Molina R, Filella X, Jo J, et al: CA 125 in biological fluids, *Int J Biol Markers* 13:224, 1998.
Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report: Outbreaks of aseptic meningitis associated with echoviruses 9 and 30 and preliminary surveillance reports on enterovirus activity—United States, 2003, *JAMA* 290:1444, 2003.
Montine TJ, Beal MF, Cudkowicz ME, et al: Increased cerebrospinal fluid F2-isoprostane concentration in probable Alzheimer's disease, *Neurology* 52:562, 1999.
Montine TJ, Kaye JA, Montine KS, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid Abeta42, tau, and F2-isoprostane concentrations in patients with Alzheimer disease, other dementias, and in age-matched controls, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 125:510, 2001.
Montine TJ, Peskind ER, Quinn JF, et al: Increased cerebrospinal fluid F2-isoprostanes are associated with aging and latent Alzheimer's disease as identified by biomarkers, *Neuromolecular Med* 13:37, 2011.
Moriarity A, Schwartz M, Ducatman B, et al: A liquid concept—Do classic preparations of body cavity fluid

perform differently than ThinPrep cases?, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 132:1716, 2008.
Mortensen PB, Kristensen SD, Bloch A, et al: Diagnostic value of ascitic fluid cholesterol levels in the prediction of malignancy, *Scand J Gastroenterol* 23:1085, 1988.
Muranishi H, Nakashima M, Hirano H, et al: Simultaneous measurements of adenosine deaminase activity and tuberculostearic acid in pleural effusions for the diagnosis of tuberculous pleuritis, *Internal Med* 31:752, 1992.
Muranishi H, Nakashima M, Isobe R, et al: Measurement of tuberculostearic acid in sputa, pleural effusions, and bronchial washings: a clinical evaluation for diagnosis of pulmonary tuberculosis, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 13:235, 1990.
Murphy MJ, Jenkinson F: Categorisation of pleural fluids in routine clinical practice: analysis of pleural fluid protein and lactate dehydrogenase alone compared with modified Light's criteria, *J Clin Pathol* 61:684, 2008.
Nanos N, Delanghe J: Evaluation of Sysmex UF-1000i for use in cerebrospinal fluid analysis, *Clin Chimica Acta* 392:30, 2008.
Nigrovic LE, Shah SS, Neuman MI: Relationship between cerebrospinal fluid glucose and serum glucose, *N Eng J Med* 366:576, 2012.
Nocton JJ, Dressler F, Rutledge RJ, et al: Detection of *Borrelia burgdorferi* DNA by polymerase chain reaction in synovial fluid from patients with lyme arthritis, *N Engl J Med* 330:229, 1994.
Normansell DE, Stacy EK, Booker CF, et al: Detection of beta-2-transferrin in otorrhea and rhinorrhea in a routine clinical laboratory setting, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 1:68, 1994.
Noseworthy TW, Anderson BJ, Noseworthy AF, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid myelin basic protein as a prognostic marker in patients with head injury, *Crit Care Med* 13:743, 1985.
Nussinovitch M, Avitzur Y, Finkelstein Y, et al: Lactic dehydrogenase isoenzyme in cerebrospinal fluid of children with febrile convulsions, *Acta Paediatr* 92:186, 2003a.
Nussinovitch M, Harel D, Eidlitz-Markus T, et al: Lactic dehydrogenase isoenzyme in cerebrospinal fluid of children with infantile spasms, *Eur Neurol* 49:231, 2003b.
Oda K, Egawa H, Okuhara T, et al: Meningeal involvement in Bence Jones multiple myeloma, *Cancer* 67:1900, 1991.
Odom LF, Wilson H, Cullen J, et al: Significance of blasts in low-cell count cerebrospinal fluid specimens from children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Cancer* 66:1748, 1990.
Otomo Y, Henmi H, Mashiko K, et al: New diagnostic peritoneal lavage criteria for diagnosis of intestinal injury, *J Trauma* 44:991, 1998.
Pai M, Flores L, Pai N, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of nucleic acid amplification tests for tuberculous meningitis: A systematic review and meta-analysis, *Lancet Inf Dis* 3:633, 2003.
Pappu ID, Purolit DM, Levkoff AH: CSF cytology in the neonate, *Am J Dis Child* 136:297, 1982.
Paramothayan NS, Barron J: New criteria for the differentiation between transudates and exudates, *J Clin Pathol* 55:69, 2002.
Patel SK, Pratap CB, Jain AK, et al: Diagnosis of *Helicobacter pylori*: what should be the gold standard?, *World J Gastroenterol* 28:12847–12859, 2014.
Peacock JEJ, McGinnis MR, Cohen MS: Persistent neutrophilic meningitis: report of four cases and review of the literature, *Medicine* 63:379, 1984.
Perez-Carceles MD, Noguera J, Jimenez JL, et al: Diagnostic efficacy of biochemical markers in diagnosis postmortem of ischaemic heart disease, *Forensic Sci Int* 142:1, 2004.
Perkins MD, Mirrett S, Reller LB: Rapid bacterial antigen detection is not clinically useful, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:1486, 1995.
Pettersson T, Klockars M, Weber TH, et al: Diagnostic value of cerebrospinal fluid adenosine deaminase determination, *Scand J Infect Dis* 23:97, 1991.
Petzold A, Worthington V, Appleby I, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid ferritin level: A sensitive diagnostic test in late-presenting subarachnoid hemorrhage, *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis* 20:489, 2011.
Podell TE, Ault M, Sullam P, et al: Synovial fluid eosinophilia, *Arthritis Rheum* 23:1060, 1980.
Polak M, Torres da Costa AC: Diagnostic value of the estimation of glucose in ascitic fluid, *Digestion* 8:347, 1973.
Policarpio-Nicolas ML, Valente PT: Monosodium urate (gout) crystals: An uncommon finding in ThinPrep synovial fluid cytology, *Diagn Cytopathol* 41:93, 2013.
Porcel JM, Bielsa S, Esquerda A, et al: Pleural fluid C-reactive protein contributes to the diagnosis and assessment of severity of parapneumonic effusions, *Eur J Internal Med* 23:447, 2012.
Porcel JM, Ordi-Ros J, Esquerda A, et al: Antinuclear antibody testing in pleural fluid for the diagnosis of lupus pleuritis, *Lupus* 16:25, 2007.
Porritt RJ, Mercer JL, Munro R: Detection and serogroup determination of *Neisseria meningitidis* in CSF by polymerase chain reaction (PCR), *Pathology* 32:42, 2000.
Powers W: Cerebrospinal fluid lymphocytosis in acute bacterial meningitis, *Am J Med* 79:216, 1985.
Pratico D, Lee VM, Trojanowski JQ, et al: Increased F2-isoprostanes in Alzheimer's disease: evidence for enhanced lipid peroxidation in vivo, *FASEB J* 12:1777, 1998.
Pupek M, Jasonek J, Katnik-Prastowska I: EDA-containing fibronectin levels in the cerebrospinal fluid of children with meningitis, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 43:257, 2013.
Quijano S, Lopez A, Sancho J, et al: Identification of leptomeningeal disease in aggressive B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: improved sensitivity of flow cytometry, *J Clin Oncol* 27:1462, 2009.
Qvarnstrom Y, Visvesvara GS, Sriram R, et al: Multiplex real-time PCR for simultaneous detection of *Acanthamoeba* spp., *Balamuthia mandrillaris*, and *Naegleria fowleri*, *J Clin Microbiol* 44:3589, 2006.
Rabinovitch A, Cornbleet PJ: Body fluid microscopy in US laboratories: data from two College of American Pathologists surveys, with practice recommendations, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 118:13, 1994.
Raff H, Raff JL, Findling JW: Late-night salivary cortisol as a screening test for Cushing's syndrome, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 83:2681, 1998.
Ragland SA, Arsura E, Ismail Y, et al: Eosinophilic pleocytosis in coccidioidal meningitis: frequency and significance, *Am J Med* 95:254, 1993.
Rajantie J, Koskiniemi M, Siimes MA, et al: CSF fibronectin concentration in Burkitt's lymphoma: an early marker for CNS involvement, *Eur J Haematol* 42:313, 1989.
Rajs G, Finzi-Yeheskel Z, Rajs A, et al: C-reactive protein concentrations in cerebral spinal fluid in gram-positive and gram-negative bacterial meningitis, *Clin Chem* 48:591, 2002.
Ramers C, Billman G, Hartin M, et al: Impact of a diagnostic cerebrospinal fluid enterovirus polymerase chain reaction test on patient management, *JAMA* 283:2680, 2000.
Rautonen J, Koskiniemi M, Siimes MA, et al: Elevated cerebrospinal fluid fibronectin concentration indicates poor prognosis in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Int J Cancer* 43:32, 1989.
Reeves B: Significance of joint fluid uric acid levels in gout, *Ann Rheum Dis* 24:569, 1965.
Reimer LG: Approach to the analysis of body fluids for the detection of infection, *Clin Lab Med* 5:209, 1985.
Reuter H, Burgess L, Van Vurren W, et al: Diagnosing tuberculous pericarditis, *QJM* 99:827, 2006.
Rhodes CH, Glantz MJ, Glantz L, et al: A comparison of polymerase chain reaction of cerebrospinal fluid and conventional cytology in the diagnosis of lymphomatous meningitis, *Cancer* 77:543, 1996.
Riantawan P, Chaowalit P, Wongsangiem M, et al: Diagnostic value of pleural fluid adenosine deaminase in tuberculous pleuritis with reference to HIV coinfection and a Bayesian analysis, *Chest* 116:97, 1999.
Ribeiro MA, Kimura RT, Irulegui I, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid levels of lysozyme, IgM and C-reactive protein in the identification of bacterial meningitis, *J Trop Med Hyg* 95:87, 1992.
Richard S, Miossec V, Moreau J-F, et al: Detection of oligoclonal immunoglobulins in cerebrospinal fluid by an immunofixation-peroxidase method, *Clin Chem* 48:167, 2002.
Riemenschneider M, Lautenschlager N, Wagenpfeil S, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid tau and beta-amyloid 42 proteins identify Alzheimer disease in subjects with mild cognitive impairment, *Arch Neurol* 59:1729, 2002.
Rijken A, Dekker A, Taylor S, et al: Diagnostic value of DNA analysis in effusions by flow cytometry and image analysis: a prospective study on 102 patients as compared with cytologic examination, *Am J Clin Pathol* 95:6, 1991.
Rockacy M, Khalid A: Update on pancreatic cyst fluid analysis, *Ann Gastroenterol* 26:122–127, 2013.
Rodriguez AF, Kaplan SL, Mason EO Jr: Cerebrospinal fluid values in the very low birth weight infant, *J Pediatr* 116:971, 1990.
Rodriquez-Panadero F, Mejias JL: Low glucose and pH levels in malignant pleural effusions, *Am Rev Respir Dis* 139:663, 1989.
Romero S, Fernandez C, Arriero JM, et al: CEA, CA 15-3 and CYFRA 21-1 in serum and pleural fluid of patients with pleural effusions, *Eur Respir J* 9:17, 1996.
Rosenthal AK, Mandel N: Identification of crystals in synovial fluids and joint tissues, *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 3:11, 2001.
Rosett W, Hodges GR: Antimicrobial activity of heparin, *J Clin Microbiol* 11:30, 1980.
Rosso F, Michelon C, Sperhacke R, et al: Evaluation of real-time PCR of patient pleural effusion for diagnosis of tuberculosis, *BMC Research Notes* 4:279, 2011.
Rouah E, Rogers BB, Buffone GJ: Transferrin analysis by immunofixation as an aid in the diagnosis of cerebrospinal fluid otorrhea, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 111:756, 1987.
Rubins JB, Rubins HB: Etiology and prognostic significance of eosinophilic effusions: a prospective study, *Chest* 110:1271, 1996.
Rudick RA, French CA, Breton D, et al: Relative diagnostic value of cerebrospinal fluid kappa chains in MS: comparison with other immunoglobulin tests, *Neurology* 39:964, 1989.
Runyon BA: Amylase levels in ascitic fluid, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 9:172, 1987a.
Runyon BA: Ascitic fluid bilirubin concentration as a key to choleperitoneum, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 9:543, 1987b.
Runyon BA, Antillon MR: Ascitic fluid pH and lactate: insensitive and nonspecific tests in detecting ascitic fluid infection, *Hepatology* 13:929, 1991.
Runyon BA, Hoefs JC: Ascitic fluid analysis in the differentiation of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis from gastrointestinal tract perforation into ascitic fluid, *Hepatology* 4:447, 1984.
Runyon BA, Hoefs JC, Morgan TR: Ascitic fluid analysis in malignancy-related ascites, *Hepatology* 8:1104, 1988.
Runyon BA, Montano AA, Akriviadis EA, et al: The serum-ascites albumin gradient is superior to the exudate-transudate concept in the differential diagnosis of ascites, *Ann Intern Med* 117:215–220, 1992.
Ruoslahti E, Engvall E, Hayman EG: Fibronectin: current concepts of its structure and function, *Coll Res* 1:95, 1981.
Ryall RG, Peacock MK, Simpson DA: Usefulness of beta 2-transferrin assay in the detection of cerebrospinal fluid leaks following head injury, *J Neurosurg* 77:737, 1992.
Sahn SA: The differential diagnosis of pleural effusions, *West J Med* 137:99, 1982.
Sanchez-Juan P, Green A, Ladogana A, et al: CSF tests in the differential diagnosis of Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease, *Neurology* 67:637, 2006.
Sarff LD, Platt LH, McCracken GH Jr: Cerebrospinal fluid evaluation in neonates: comparison of high risk infants with and without meningitis, *J Pediatrics* 88:473, 1976.
Sari R, Yildirim B, Sevinc A, et al: The importance of serum and ascites fluid alpha-fetoprotein, carcinoembryonic antigen, CA 19-9, and CA 15-3 levels in differential diagnosis of ascites etiology, *Hepatogastroenterology* 48:1616, 2001.
Savory J, Brody JP: Measurement and diagnostic value of cerebrospinal fluid enzymes, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 9:68, 1979.
Schneider D, Halperin R, Langer R, et al: Peritoneal fluid lactate dehydrogenase in ovarian cancer, *Gynecol Oncol* 66:399, 1997.
Schuurman T, de Boer RF, Kooistra-Smid AMD, et al: Prospective study of use of PCR amplification and sequencing of 16S ribosomal DNA from cerebrospinal fluid for diagnosis of bacterial meningitis in a clinical setting, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:734, 2004.
Schwake L, von Herbay A, Junghanss T, et al: Peritoneal tuberculosis with negative polymerase chain reaction results: report of two cases, *Scand J Gastroenterol* 38:221, 2003.
Scott G: An automated approach to body fluid analysis, *Medical Laboratory Observer* 2014. http://www.mlo-online.com/articles/201406. Accessed January 25, 2015.
Scrideli C, Queiroz R: Molecular diagnosis of leukemic cerebrospinal fluid cells in children with newly diagnosed acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Haematologica* 89:1013, 2004.

Seehusen DA, Reeves MM, Fomin DA: Cerebrospinal fluid analysis, *Am Family Physician* 68:1103, 2003.

Sellebjerg F, Christiansen M, Nielsen PM, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid measures of disease activity in patients with multiple sclerosis, *Mult Scler* 4:475, 1998.

Selvi E, Manganelli S, Catenaccio M, et al: Diff-Quik staining method for detection and identification of monosodium urate and calcium pyrophosphate crystals in synovial fluids, *Ann Rheum Dis* 60:194, 2001.

Seregni E, Massimino M, Nerini Molteni S, et al: Serum and cerebrospinal fluid human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) and alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) in intracranial germ cell tumors, *Int J Biol Markers* 17:112, 2002.

Seres E, Bencsik K, Rajda C, et al: Diagnostic studies of cerebrospinal fluid in patients with multiple sclerosis [in Hungarian], *Orv Hetil* 139:1905, 1998.

Seward RJ, Towner KJ: Evaluation of a PCR-immunoassay technique for detection of *Neisseria meningitidis* in cerebrospinal fluid and peripheral blood, *J Med Microbiol* 49:451, 2000.

Shephard MD, Whiting MJ: Nephelometric determination of total protein in cerebrospinal fluid and urine using benzalkonium chloride as precipitation reagent, *Ann Clin Biochem* 29:411, 1992.

Sherry NL, Porter JL, Seemann T, et al: Outbreak investigation using high-throughput genome sequencing within a diagnostic microbiology laboratory, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:1396, 2013.

Shmerling RH: Synovial fluid analysis: a critical reappraisal, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 20:503, 1994.

Shmerling RH, Delbanco TL, Tosteson ANA, et al: Synovial fluid tests. What should be ordered?, *JAMA* 264:1009, 1990.

Silva-Cardosa J, Moura B, Martins L, et al: Pericardial involvement in human immunodeficiency virus infection, *Chest* 115:418, 1999.

Silverman LM, Christenson RH: Amino acids and proteins. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1994, Saunders, p 625.

Simon RP, Abele JS: Spinal-fluid pleocytosis estimated by the Tyndall effect, *Ann Intern Med* 89:75, 1978.

Sindie CJ, Laterte EC: Oligoclonal free kappa and lambda bands in the cerebrospinal fluid, *J Neuroimmunol* 33:63, 1991.

Sioutopoulou D, Kampas L, Gerasimidou K, et al: Diagnosis of metastatic tumors in cerebrospinal fluid samples using thin-layer cytology, *Acta Cytol* 52:304, 2008.

Skedros DG, Cass SP, Hirsh BE, et al: Beta-2-transferrin assay in clinical management of cerebral spinal fluid and perilymphatic fluid leaks, *J Otolaryngol* 22:341, 1993a.

Skedros DG, Cass SP, Hirsh BE, et al: Sources of error in the use of beta-2 transferrin analysis for diagnosing perilymphatic and cerebral spinal fluid leaks, *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 109:861, 1993b.

Sloman AJ, Kelly RH: Transferrin allelic variants may cause false positives in the detection of cerebrospinal fluid fistulae, *Clin Chem* 39:1444, 1993.

Solari L, Soto A, Agapito J, et al: The validity of cerebrospinal fluid parameters for the diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis, *Int J Infectious Dis* 17:e1111, 2013.

Sood A, Moudgil A, Sood N, et al: Role of fibronectin in diagnosis of malignant ascites, *J Assoc Physicians India* 45:283, 1997.

Soriano G, Esparcia O, Montemayor M, et al: Bacteral DNA in the diagnosis of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 33:275, 2011.

Sormunen P, Kallio MJ, Kilpi T, et al: C-reactive protein is useful in distinguishing Gram stain-negative bacterial meningitis from viral meningitis in children, *J Pediatr* 134:725, 1999.

Souverijn JHM, Smit WG, Peet R, et al: Intrathecal Ig synthesis: its detection by isoelectric focusing and IgG index, *J Neurol Sci* 93:211, 1989.

Soyka JM, Martin M, Sloan EP, et al: Diagnostic peritoneal lavage: Is an isolated WBC count >500/mm^3 predictive of intra-abdominal injury requiring celiotomy in blunt trauma patients?, *J Trauma* 30:874, 1990.

Spanos A, Harrell FEJ, Durack DT: Differential diagnosis of acute meningitis: an analysis of the predictive value of initial observations, *JAMA* 262:2700, 1989.

Staats BA, Ellefson RD, Budahn LL, et al: The lipoprotein profile of chylous and non-chylous pleural effusions, *Mayo Clin Proc* 55:700, 1980.

Stassen WN, McCullough AJ, Bacon BR, et al: Immediate diagnostic criteria for bacterial infection of ascitic fluid, *Gastroenterology* 90:1247, 1986.

Stearman M, Southgate HJ: The use of cytokine and C-reactive protein measurements in cerebrospinal fluid during acute infective meningitis, *Ann Clin Biochem* 31:255, 1994.

Steele RW, Marmer DJ, O'Brien MD, et al: Leukocyte survival in cerebrospinal fluid, *J Clin Microbiol* 23:965, 1986.

Steere AC: Borrelia burgdorferi. In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2010, Churchill-Livingstone, p 3077.

Stelzner TJ, King TEJ, Antony VB, et al: The pleuropulmonary manifestations of the postcardiac injury syndrome, *Chest* 84:383, 1983.

Stewart RJ, Gupta RK, Purdie GI, et al: Fine catheter aspiration cytology of peritoneal cavity improves decision-making about difficult cases of acute abdominal pain, *Lancet* 2:1414, 1986.

Stewart RV, Zumwalt RE, Hirsch CS, et al: Postmortem diagnosis of myocardial disease by enzyme analysis of pericardial fluid, *Am J Clin Pathol* 82:411, 1984.

Strik H, Luthe H, Nagel I, et al: Automated cerebrospinal fluid cytology: Limitations and reasonable applications, *Analyt Quant Cytol Histol* 27:1, 2005.

Suay VG, Moragon EM, Viedma EC, et al: Pleural cholesterol in differentiating transudates and exudates, *Respiration* 62:57, 1995.

Such J, Frances R, Munoz C, et al: Detection and identification of bacterial DNA in patients with cirrhosis and culture-negative nonneutrocytic ascites, *Hepatology* 36:135, 2002.

Sullivan KR, Nelson MJ, Tandberg D: Incremental analysis of diagnostic peritoneal lavage fluid in adult abdominal trauma, *Am J Emerg Med* 15:277, 1997.

Sunderland T, Linker G, Mirza N, et al: Decreased beta-amyloid1-42 and increased tau levels in cerebrospinal fluid of patients with Alzheimer disease, *JAMA* 289:2094, 2003.

Suzuki Y, Tanaka R: Carcinoembryonic antigen in patients with intracranial tumors, *J Neurosurg* 53:355, 1980.

Tang LM: Serial lactate determinations in tuberculous meningitis, *Scand J Infect Dis* 20:81, 1988.

Tangkijvanich P, Tresukolos D, Sanpatamukul P, et al: Telomerase assay for differentiating between malignancy-related and nonmalignant ascites, *Clin Cancer Res* 5:2470, 1999.

Tenenbaum T, Heusch A, Henrich B, et al: Acute hemorrhagic pericarditis in a child with pneumonia due to *Chlamydophila pneumoniae*, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:520, 2005.

Theiler G, Quehenberger F, Rainer F, et al: The detection of calcium pyrophosphate crystals in the synovial fluid of patients with rheumatoid arthritis using the cytospin technique: Prevalence and clinical correlation, *Rheumatol Int* 34:137, 2014.

Thwaites GE, Chau TT, Farrar JJ: Improving the bacteriological diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:378, 2004.

Titov AG, Vyshnevskaya EB, Mazurenko SI, et al: Use of polymerase chain reaction to diagnose tuberculous arthritis from joint tissues and synovial fluid, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 128:205, 2004.

Topolcan O, Holubec L, Polivkova V, et al: Tumor markers in pleural effusions, *Anticancer Res* 27:1921, 2007.

Torre D, Zeroli C, Ferrario G, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid concentration of fibronectin in HIV-1 infection and central nervous system disorders, *J Clin Pathol* 46:1039, 1993.

Torre D, Zeroli C, Issi M, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid concentration of fibronectin in meningitis, *J Clin Pathol* 44:783, 1991.

Tourtellotte WW, Staugaitis SM, Walsh MJ, et al: The basis of intra-blood–brain barrier IgG synthesis, *Ann Neurol* 17:21, 1985.

Tourtellotte WW, Tavolato B, Parker JA, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid electroimmunodiffusion, *Arch Neurol* 25:345, 1971.

Trbojevic-Cepe M, Vogrinc Z, Brinar V: Diagnostic significance of methemoglobin determination in colorless cerebrospinal fluid, *Clin Chem* 38:1401, 1992.

Trotter JL, Rust RS: Human cerebrospinal fluid immunology. In Herndon RM, Brumback RA, editors: *The cerebrospinal fluid*, Boston, 1989, Kluwer Academic Publishers, p 179.

Tubergen DG, Cullen JW, Boyett JM, et al: Blasts in CSF with a normal cell count do not justify alteration of therapy for acute lymphoblastic leukemia in remission. A Children's Cancer Group study, *J Clin Oncol* 12:273, 1994.

Tunkel AR: The management of encephalitis: clinical practice guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 47:303, 2008.

Turay UY, Yildirim Z, Turkoz Y, et al: Use of pleural fluid C-reactive protein in diagnosis of pleural effusions, *Respir Med* 94:432, 2000.

Twijnstra A, Nooyen WJ, van Zanten AP, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid carcinoembryonic antigen in patients with metastatic and nonmetastatic neurological diseases, *Arch Neurol* 43:269, 1986.

Tyler KL: Herpes simplex virus infections of the central nervous system: encephalitis and meningitis, including Mollaret's, *Herpes* 11(Suppl 2):57A, 2004.

UK National External Quality Assessment Scheme for Immunochemistry Working Group: National guidelines for the analysis of cerebrospinal fluid for bilirubin in suspected subarachnoid hemorrhage, *Ann Clin Biochem* 40:481, 2003.

Vaughn DW, Barrett A, Solomon T: Flaviviruses. In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2010, Churchill-Livingstone, p 2148.

Vaughan J, Ngamtrakulpanit L, Pajewski TN, et al: Exhaled breath condensate pH is a robust and reproducible assay of airway acidity, *Eur Respir J* 22:889–894, 2003.

Verettas D, Kazakos C, Tilkeridis C, et al: Polymerase chain reaction for the detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in synovial fluid, tissue samples, bone marrow aspirate and peripheral blood, *Acta Orthop Belg* 69:396, 2003.

Villena V, Lopez-Encuentra A, Echave-Sustaeta J, et al: Diagnostic value of CA 72-4, carcinoembryonic antigen, CA 15-3, and CA 19-9 assay of pleural fluid: a study of 207 patients, *Cancer* 78:736, 1996a.

Villena V, Lopez-Encuentra A, Echave-Sustaeta J, et al: Interferon-gamma in 388 immunocompromised and immunocompetent patients for diagnosing pleural tuberculosis, *Eur Respir J* 9:2635, 1996b.

Villena V, Lopez-Encuentra A, Echave-Sustaeta J, et al: Diagnostic value of CA 549 in pleural fluid: comparison with CEA, CA 15-3 and CA 72-4, *Lung Cancer* 40:289, 2003a.

Villena V, Lopez-Encuentra A, Pozo F, et al: Interferon gamma levels in pleural fluid for the diagnosis of tuberculosis, *Am J Med* 115:365, 2003b.

Visvesvara GS: Amebic meningoencephalitides and keratitis: Challenges in diagnosis and treatment, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 23:590, 2010.

Walker TJ, Nelson LD, Dunphy BW, et al: Comparative evaluation of the IRIS iQ200 body fluid module with manual hemacytometer count, *Am J Clin Pathol* 131:333, 2009.

Walts AE: Cerebrospinal fluid cytology: selected issues, *Diagn Cytopathol* 8:394, 1992.

Wang DY, Yang PC, Yu WL, et al: Serial antinuclear antibodies titre in pleural and pericardial fluid, *Eur Respir J* 15:1106, 2000.

Ward E, Gushurst CA: Uses and techniques of pediatric lumbar puncture, *Am J Dis Child* 146:1160, 1992.

Weinburger A, Simkin PA: Plasma proteins in synovial fluids of normal human joints, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 19:66, 1989.

Welch KM, Chabi E, Bartosh K, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid gamma aminobutyric acid level in migraine, *Br Med J* 30:516, 1975.

Weller M, Sommer N, Stevens A, et al: Increased intrathecal synthesis of fibronectin in bacterial and carcinomatous meningitis, *Acta Neurol Scand* 82:138, 1990.

Weller M, Stevens A, Sommer N, et al: Humoral CSF parameters in the differential diagnosis of hematologic CNS neoplasia, *Acta Neurol Scand* 86:129, 1992.

Wenger JD, Hightower AW, Broome CV, et al: Bacterial meningitis in the United States: report of a multistate surveillance study, 1986, *J Infect Dis* 162:1316, 1990.

Wilson ML: Clinically relevant, cost-effective clinical microbiology: strategies to decrease unnecessary testing, *Am J Pathol* 107:154, 1997.

Wilson MR, Naccache SN, Samayoa E, et al: Actionable diagnosis of neuroleptospirosis by next-generation sequencing, *N Eng J Med* 370:2408, 2014.

Wise CM, White RE, Agudelo CA: Synovial fluid lipid abnormalities in various disease states: review and classification, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 16:222, 1987.

Wood JH: *Neurobiology of CSF*, New York, 1980, Plenum Press.

Wood P: Salivary steroid assays—research or routine?, *Ann Clin Biochem* 46:183, 2009.

Wu SS, Lin OS, Chen YY, et al: Ascitic fluid carcinoembryonic antigen and alkaline phosphatase levels for the differentiation of primary from secondary bacterial peritonitis with intestinal perforation, *J Hepatol* 34:215, 2001.

Wubbel L, McCracken GH Jr: Management of bacterial meningitis, *Pediatr Rev* 19:78, 1998.

Xu HB, Jiang RH, Li L, et al: Diagnostic value of adenosine deaminase in cerebrospinal fluid for tuberculous meningitis: A meta-analysis, *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 14:1382, 2010.

Yang D, Zhou Y, Chen B: Performance evaluation and result comparison of the automated hematology analyzers Abbott CD 3700, Sysmex XE 2100 and the Coulter LH 750 for cell counts in serous fluids, *Clin Chim Acta* 419:113, 2013.

Yorgancioglu A, Akin M, Dereli S, et al: The diagnostic value of tuberculostearic acid in tuberculous pleural effusions, *Monaldi Arch Chest Dis* 51:108, 1996.

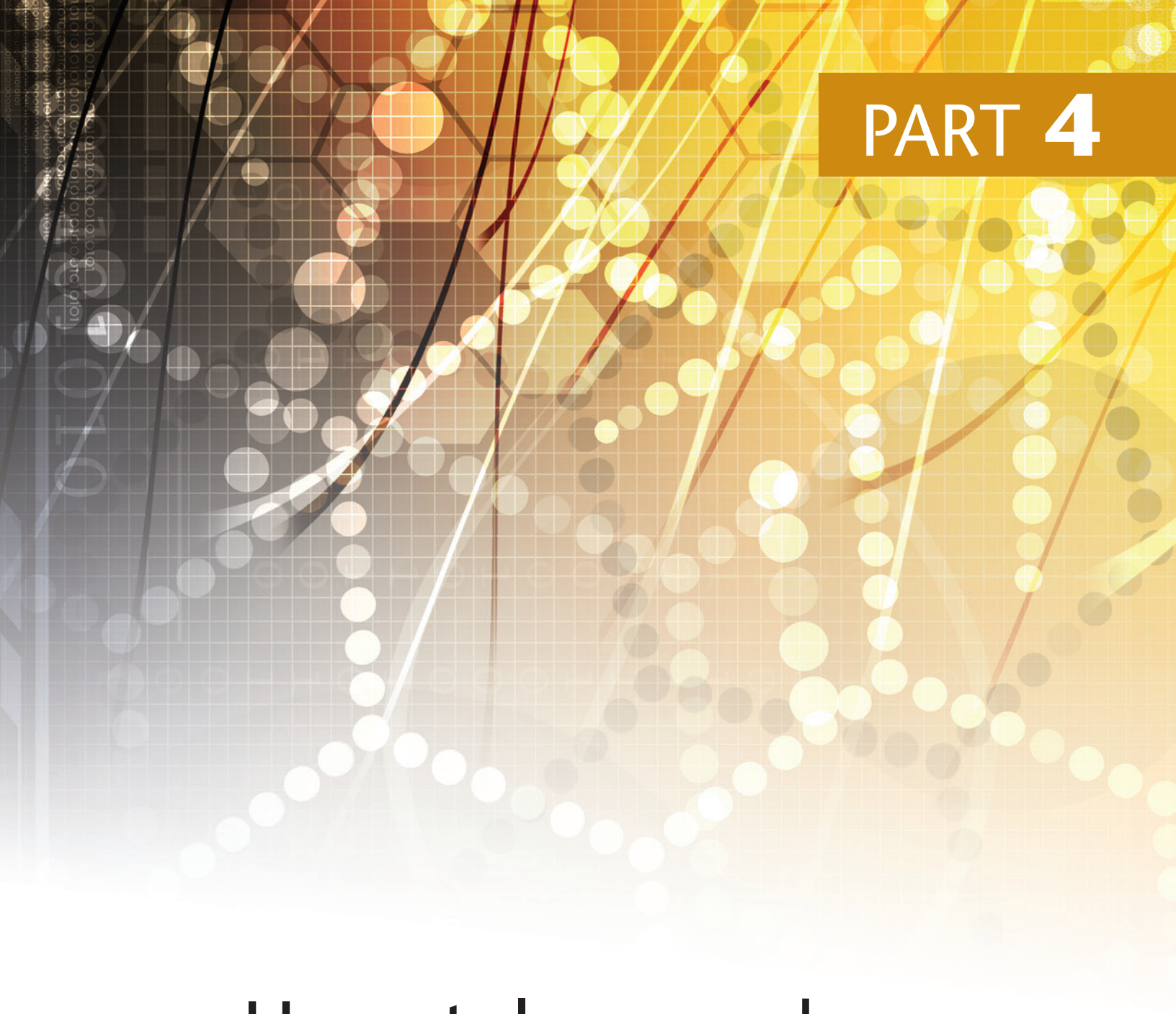
Yuan S, Bien C, Wener MH, et al: Repeat examination of synovial fluid for crystals: Is it useful?, *Clin Chem* 49:1562, 2003.

Zandman-Goddard G, Matzner Y, Konijn AM, et al: Cerebrospinal fluid ferritin in malignant CNS involvement, *Cancer* 58:1146, 1986.

Zaret DL, Morrison N, Gullbranson R, et al: Immunofixation to quantify beta-2-transferrin in cerebrospinal fluid from skull injury, *Clin Chem* 38:1909, 1992.

Zerr I, Bodemer M, Gefeller O, et al: Detection of 14-3-3 protein in the cerebrospinal fluid supports the diagnosis of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, *Ann Neurol* 43:32, 1998.

Zunt JR, Marra CM: Cerebrospinal fluid testing for the diagnosis of central nervous system infection, *Neurol Clin* 17:675, 1999.



PART 4

Hematology and Transfusion Medicine

EDITED BY

Robert E. Hutchison
Richard A. McPherson
Martin H. Bluth

CHAPTER 30

BASIC EXAMINATION OF BLOOD AND BONE MARROW

Neerja Vajpayee, Susan S. Graham, Sylva Bem

HEMATOLOGY PRINCIPLES AND PROCEDURES, 510
Hemoglobin, 510
Hematocrit (Packed Cell Volume), 512
Erythrocyte Indices, 513
Manual Blood Cell Counts, 514
Instrument Technology, 519

BLOOD FILM EXAMINATION, 521
Examination of Wet Preparations, 521
Making and Staining Blood Films, 521
Erythrocytes, 522
Leukocytes on Peripheral Blood Smear Examination, 527
Platelets on Peripheral Blood Smear Examination, 531
Erythrocyte Sedimentation Rate, 531

BONE MARROW EXAMINATION, 533
Indications for Marrow Study, 533
Preparation of the Aspirate and Biopsy Section, 534
Staining Marrow Preparations, 534
Examination of Marrow, 536

SELECTED REFERENCES, 539

KEY POINTS

- Assessment of erythrocyte, leukocyte, and platelet counts from manual and automated particle counters is central to the diagnosis and management of hematologic disease.
- With few exceptions, manual methods have been replaced by automated hematology analyzers. The selection of analyzers is varied and voluminous enough to meet the needs of any hematology laboratory setting.
- Hematology automation combined with sophisticated algorithms for data interpretation has led to dramatic improvement in the utility of automated analyzers in patient care. Newer instrumentation has progressed far beyond the screening tool of the past.
- Examination of peripheral blood with bone marrow smear/biopsy represents the cornerstone of hematologic diagnosis. The bone marrow examination provides a semiquantitative and qualitative assessment of the state of hematopoiesis, and aids in the diagnosis of several hereditary and acquired benign and malignant diseases.

Hematology includes the study of blood cells and coagulation. It encompasses analyses of the concentration, structure, and function of cells in blood; their precursors in the bone marrow; the chemical constituents of plasma or serum intimately linked with blood cell structure and function; and the function of platelets and proteins involved in blood coagulation. Advancement of molecular biological techniques and their increased use in hematology have led to the detection of several genetic mutations underlying the altered structure and function of cells and proteins that may result in hematologic disease.

HEMATOLOGY PRINCIPLES AND PROCEDURES

HEMOGLOBIN

Hemoglobin (Hb), the main component of the red blood cell (RBC), is a conjugated protein that serves as the vehicle for the transportation of oxygen (O_2) and carbon dioxide (CO_2). When fully saturated, each gram of Hb holds 1.34 mL of O_2. The red cell mass of the adult contains approximately 600 g of Hb, capable of carrying 800 mL of O_2. A molecule of Hb consists of two pairs of polypeptide chains ("globins") and four prosthetic heme groups, each containing one atom of ferrous iron. Each heme group is precisely located in a pocket or fold of one of the polypeptide chains. Located near the surface of the molecule, the heme reversibly combines with one molecule of O_2 or CO_2. The main function of Hb is to transport O_2 from the lungs, where O_2 tension is high, to the tissues, where it is low. At an O_2 tension of 100 mm Hg in the pulmonary capillaries, 95% to 98% of the Hb is combined with O_2. In the tissues, where O_2 tension may be as low as 20 mm Hg, the O_2 readily dissociates from Hb; in this instance, less than 30% of the O_2 would remain combined with Hb.

Reduced Hb is Hb with iron unassociated with O_2. When each heme group is associated with one molecule of O_2, the Hb is referred to as *oxyhemoglobin (HbO_2)*. In both Hb and HbO_2, iron remains in the ferrous state. When iron is oxidized to the ferric state, methemoglobin (hemiglobin; Hi) is formed, and the molecule loses its capacity to carry O_2 or CO_2.

Anemia is a decrease to below normal Hb concentration, erythrocyte count, or hematocrit (Hct). It is a very common condition and is frequently a complication of other diseases. Clinical diagnosis of anemia or of high Hb based on estimation of the color of the skin and of visible mucous membranes is highly unreliable. The correct estimation of Hb is important and is one of the routine tests performed on practically every patient.

Hemoglobin Derivatives

Hemiglobin (Methemoglobin)

Methemoglobin (Hi) is a derivative of Hb in which the ferrous iron is oxidized to the ferric state, resulting in the inability of Hi to combine reversibly with O_2. The polypeptide chains are not altered. A normal individual has up to 1.5% methemoglobin. Methemoglobinemia will cause chocolate brown discoloration of blood, cyanosis, and functional "anemia" if present in high enough concentrations. Cyanosis becomes obvious at a concentration of about 1.5 g Hi/dL (i.e., 10% of Hb). Comparable degrees of cyanosis will be caused by 5 g Hb per deciliter of blood, 1.5 g Hi per deciliter of blood, and 0.5 g sulfhemoglobin (SHb) per deciliter of blood. The degree of cyanosis, however, is not necessarily correlated with the concentration of Hi. A small amount of Hi is always being formed but is reduced by enzyme systems within the erythrocyte. The most important is the NADH (reducing agent derived from nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide)-dependent methemoglobin reductase system (NADH-cytochrome-b_5 reductase). Others, which may function mainly as reserve systems, are ascorbic acid, reduced glutathione, and reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH)–methemoglobin reductase. The latter requires a natural cofactor or an auto-oxidizable dye such as methylene blue for activity.

Methemoglobinemia, an increased amount of Hi in the erythrocytes, may result from increased production of Hi or decreased NADH-cytochrome-b_5 reductase activity, and may be hereditary or acquired (Jaffé & Hultquist, 1989). The hereditary form is divided into two major categories. In the first, methemoglobinemia is due to a decrease in the capacity of the erythrocyte to reduce the Hi that is constantly being formed back

to Hb. This is most often due to *NADH-cytochrome-b_5 reductase deficiency*, which is inherited as an autosomal recessive characteristic. The homozygote has methemoglobin levels of 10% to 50% and is cyanotic. Only occasionally is polycythemia present as a compensating mechanism. Hi concentrations of 10% to 25% may give no apparent symptoms; levels of 35% to 50% result in mild symptoms, such as exertional dyspnea and headaches; and levels exceeding 70% are probably lethal. Therapy with ascorbic acid or methylthioninium chloride (methylene blue) in this form of hereditary methemoglobinemia will reduce the level of Hi, the latter apparently by activation of the NADPH–methemoglobin reductase system. Heterozygotes have intermediate levels of NADH-cytochrome-b_5 reductase activity and normal blood levels of Hi. They may become cyanotic because of methemoglobinemia after exposure to oxidizing chemicals or drugs in amounts that will not affect normal individuals.

In the second major category of hereditary methemoglobinemia, the reducing systems within the erythrocyte are intact, but the structure of the Hb molecule itself is abnormal. A genetically determined alteration in the amino acid composition of α- or β-globin chains may form a Hb molecule that has an enhanced tendency toward oxidation and a decreased propensity of the methemoglobin formed to be reduced back to Hb. Their principal consequence is asymptomatic cyanosis as a result of methemoglobinemia; they are designated as various forms of *hemoglobin M (Hb M)*. In six of the seven Hb M variants, tyrosine is substituted for histidine in the heme pocket of the proximal or distal globin chain. Nagai & Mawatari (1995) showed by spectroscopy that a considerable proportion of the mutant subunits of Hb M Saskatoon and Hb M Boston stay in the fully reduced form under circulation conditions. They are inherited as autosomal dominant traits (Lukens, 2004). Methylthioninium chloride therapy in these individuals is without effect, and treatment is not necessary.

Most cases of methemoglobinemia are classified as secondary or acquired, due mainly to exposure to drugs and chemicals that cause increased formation of Hi. Chemicals or drugs that directly oxidize HbO_2 to Hi include nitrites, nitrates, chlorates, and quinones. Other substances, which are aromatic amino and nitro compounds, probably act indirectly through a metabolite because they do not cause Hi formation in vitro. These include acetanilid, phenacetin, sulfonamides, and aniline dyes. Ferrous sulfate may produce methemoglobinemia after ingestion of very large doses. Levels of drugs or chemicals that would not cause significant methemoglobinemia in a normal individual may do so in someone with a mild reduction in NADH-cytochrome-b_5 reductase activity that, under ordinary circumstances, is not cyanotic. Such individuals are newborn infants and persons heterozygous for NADH-cytochrome-b_5 reductase deficiency (Bunn & Forget, 1986). Hi is reduced back to Hb by the erythrocyte enzyme systems. It can also be reduced (slowly) by the administration of reducing agents, such as ascorbic acid or sulfhydryl compounds (glutathione, cysteine); these, as well as methylthioninium chloride, are of value in cases of hereditary NADH-cytochrome-b_5 reductase deficiency. In cases of acquired or toxic methemoglobinemia, methylthioninium chloride is of great value; its rapid action is based not on its own reduction capacity but on its acceleration of the normally slow NADPH–methemoglobin reductase pathway. Hi can combine reversibly with various chemicals (e.g., cyanides, sulfides, peroxides, fluorides, azides). Because of the strong affinity of Hi for cyanide, the therapy of cyanide poisoning is to administer nitrites to form Hi, which then combines with the cyanide. Thus, the free cyanide (which is extremely poisonous to the cellular respiratory enzymes) becomes less toxic when changed to HiCN.

Hi is quantitated by spectrophotometry. If Hi is elevated, drugs or toxic substances must first be eliminated as a cause. Congenital methemoglobinemia due to NADH-cytochrome-b_5 reductase deficiency is determined by assay of the enzyme. An abnormal hemoglobin (Hb M) may also be responsible for methemoglobinemia noted at birth or in the first few months of life.

Sulfhemoglobin

SHb is a mixture of oxidized, partially denatured forms of Hb that form during oxidative hemolysis (Jandl, 1996). During oxidation of Hb, sulfur (from some source, which may vary) is incorporated into heme rings of Hb, resulting in a green hemochrome. Further oxidation usually results in the denaturation and precipitation of Hb as Heinz bodies (Fig. 30-1). SHb cannot transport O_2, but it can combine with carbon monoxide (CO) to form carboxysulfhemoglobin. Unlike methemoglobin, SHb cannot be reduced back to Hb, and it remains in the cells until they break down. The blood is mauve-lavender in sulfhemoglobinemia. SHb has been reported in patients receiving treatment with sulfonamides or aromatic amine drugs (phenacetin, acetanilid), as well as in patients with severe constipation, in cases of bacteremia due to *Clostridium perfringens*, and in a condition known as *enterogenous cyanosis*. The concentration of SHb in vivo normally is less than 1%, and in these conditions it seldom exceeds 10% of the total Hb. It results in cyanosis and is usually asymptomatic. The reason why some patients develop methemoglobinemia, some sulfhemoglobinemia, and others Heinz bodies and hemolysis is not well understood. SHb is quantitated by spectrophotometry.

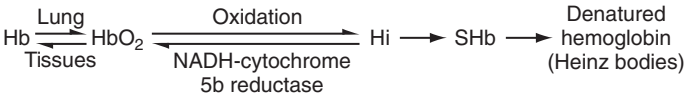


Figure 30-1 Simplified concept of oxidation of hemoglobin (Hb) to methemoglobin (Hi), as proposed by Jandl (1996). Reversible binding and release of oxygen occur in lungs and tissues; oxidation of ferrous ions and formation of Hb are reversible in the red cell to a limited extent; continued oxidation leads to irreversible conformational changes and sulfhemoglobin; still further oxidation results in denaturation of the Hb and precipitation within the erythrocyte as Heinz bodies. *HbO_2,* Oxyhemoglobin; *NADH,* reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide; *SHb,* sulfhemoglobin.

Carboxyhemoglobin

Endogenous CO produced in the degradation of heme to bilirubin normally accounts for about 0.5% of carboxyhemoglobin (HbCO) in the blood, and is increased in hemolytic anemia. Hb has the capacity to combine with CO with an affinity 210 times greater than for O_2. CO will bind with Hb even if its concentration in the air is extremely low (e.g., 0.02% to 0.04%). In those cases, HbCO will build up until typical symptoms of poisoning appear. HbCO cannot bind and carry O_2. Furthermore, increasing concentrations of HbCO shift the Hb-O_2 dissociation curve increasingly to the left, thus adding to the anoxia. If a patient poisoned with CO receives pure O_2, the conversion of HbCO to HbO_2 is greatly enhanced. HbCO is light sensitive and has a typical, brilliant, cherry red color.

Acute CO poisoning is well known. It produces tissue hypoxia as a result of decreased O_2 transport. Chronic poisoning, a result of prolonged exposure to small amounts of CO, is less well recognized but is of increasing importance. The chief sources of the gas are gasoline motors, illuminating gas, gas heaters, defective stoves, and the smoking of tobacco. Exposure to CO is thus one of the hazards of modern civilization. The gas has even been found in the air of busy streets of large cities in sufficient concentration to cause mild symptoms in persons such as traffic police officers, who are exposed to it over long periods of time. Chronic exposure through tobacco smoking may lead to chronic elevation of HbCO and an associated left shift in the Hb-O_2 dissociation curve; smokers tend to have higher Hcts than nonsmokers and may have polycythemia. Healthy persons exposed to various concentrations of the gas for 1 hour do not experience definite symptoms (headache, dizziness, muscular weakness, and nausea) unless the concentration of gas in the blood reaches 20% to 30% of saturation; however, it appears that in chronic poisoning, especially in children, serious symptoms may occur with lower concentrations. HbCO may be quantitated by differential spectrophotometry or by gas chromatography.

Measurement of Hb Concentration (Manual Technique of Hemoglobinometry)

The cyanmethemoglobin (hemiglobincyanide; HiCN) method has the advantages of convenience and a readily available, stable standard solution.

Hemiglobincyanide Method

Principle. Blood is diluted in a solution of potassium ferricyanide and potassium cyanide. The potassium ferricyanide oxidizes Hb to Hi (methemoglobin), and potassium cyanide provides cyanide ions (CN^-) to form HiCN, which has a broad absorption maximum at a wavelength of 540 nm (Fig. 30-2; Table 30-1). The absorbance of the solution is measured in a spectrophotometer at 540 nm and is compared with that of a standard HiCN solution.

Reagent. The diluent is detergent-modified Drabkin reagent:

0.20 g	Potassium ferricyanide ($K_3Fe[CN]_6$)
0.05 g	Potassium cyanide (KCN)
0.14 g	Dihydrogen potassium phosphate (anhydrous) (KH_2PO_4)
	Nonionic detergent, for example,
0.5 mL	Sterox S.E. (Harleco), *or*
1.0 mL	Triton X-100 (Rohm and Haas)
Distilled water to 1000 mL	

TABLE 30-1
Nomenclature and Absorption Maxima of Hemoglobins

Term	Symbol	ABSORPTION PEAK 1 λ	ABSORPTION PEAK 1 ε	ABSORPTION PEAK 2 λ	ABSORPTION PEAK 2 ε	ABSORPTION PEAK 3 λ	ABSORPTION PEAK 3 ε
Hemoglobin	Hb	431	(140)	555	(13.04)		
Oxyhemoglobin	HbO_2	415	(131)	542	(14.37)	577	(15.37)
Carboxyhemoglobin	HbCO	420	(192)	539	(14.36)	568.5	(14.31)
Hemiglobin (methemoglobin)	Hi	406	(162)	500	(9.04)	630	(3.70)
Hemiglobincyanide (cyanmet Hb)	HiCN	421	(122.5)	540	(10.99)		

Data from van Assendelft OW (1970).
The wavelength (λ) in nanometers for each maximum is followed by the extinction coefficient (ε) placed in parentheses.

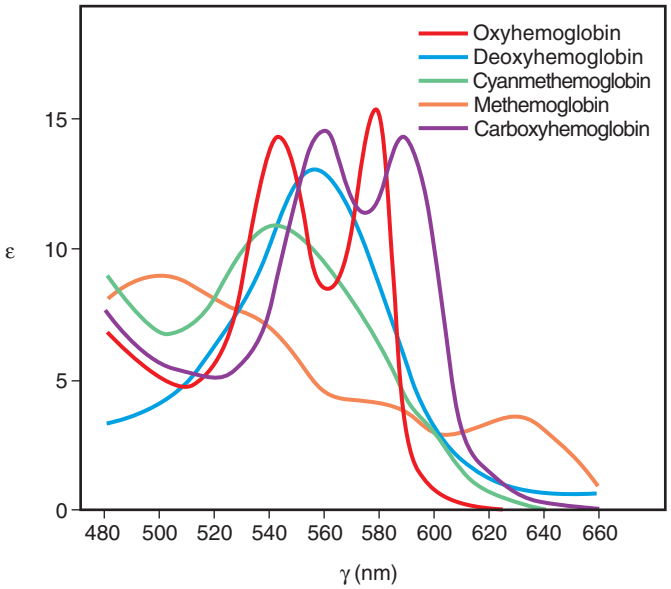


Figure 30-2 **Absorption spectra of oxyhemoglobin (HbO_2), deoxyhemoglobin (Hb), methemoglobin (hemiglobin [Hi]), and cyanmethemoglobin (hemiglobincyanide [HiCN]).** (From Morris MW, Skrodzki Z, Nelson DA: Zeta sedimentation ratio [ZSR], a replacement for the erythrocyte sedimentation rate [ESR], *Am J Clin Pathol* 64:254–256, 1975. © 1975 American Society for Clinical Pathology.)

The solution should be clear and pale yellow, have a pH of 7.0 to 7.4, and give a reading of zero when measured in the photometer at 540 nm against a water blank.

Substituting dihydrogen potassium phosphate (KHP_2PO_4) in this reagent for sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) in the original Drabkin reagent shortens the time needed for complete conversion of Hb to HiCN from 10 minutes to 3 minutes. The detergent enhances lysis of erythrocytes and decreases turbidity from protein precipitation.

Care must be taken with KCN in the preparation of the Drabkin solution, as salts or solutions of cyanide are poisonous. The diluent itself contains only 50 mg KCN per liter—less than the lethal dose for a 70-kg person. However, because hydrogen cyanide (HCN) is released by acidification, exposure of the diluent to acid must be avoided. Disposal of reagents and samples in running water in the sink is advised. The diluent keeps well in a dark bottle at room temperature but should be prepared fresh periodically.

Method. Twenty microliters of blood are added to 5.0 mL of diluent (1:251), mixed well, and allowed to stand at room temperature for at least 3 minutes (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). The absorbance is measured against the reagent blank in the photoelectric colorimeter at 540 nm or with an appropriate filter. A vial of HiCN standard is then opened and the absorbance measured, at room temperature, in the same instrument in a similar fashion. The test sample must be analyzed within a few hours of dilution. The standard must be kept in the dark when not in use and discarded at the end of the day.

$$\text{Hb (g/dL)} = [A^{540}\ \text{test sample}/A^{540}\ \text{standard}] \times [\text{Concentration of standard (mg/dL)}/100\ \text{mg/g}] \times 251$$

It is usually convenient to calibrate the photometer to be used for hemoglobinometry by preparing a standard curve or table that will relate absorbance to Hb concentration in grams per deciliter. The absorbance of fresh HiCN standard is measured against a reagent blank. Absorbance readings are made of fresh HiCN standard and of dilutions of this standard in the reagent (1 in 2, 1 in 3, and 1 in 4) against a reagent blank. Hb values in grams per deciliter are calculated for each solution as described previously. When the absorbance readings are plotted on linear graph paper as the ordinates against Hb concentration as the abscissa, the points should describe a straight line that passes through the origin. An advantage of the HiCN method is that most forms of hemoglobin (Hb, HbO_2, Hi, and HbCO, but not SHb) are measured.

The test sample can be directly compared with the HiCN standard, and the readings can be made at the convenience of the operator because of the stability of the diluted samples. Increased absorbance not due to Hb may be caused by turbidity due to abnormal plasma proteins, hyperlipemia, large numbers of leukocytes (counts $>30 \times 10^9$/L), or fatty droplets, any of which may lead to increased light scattering and apparent absorbance.

Errors in Hemoglobinometry

Sources of error may be those of the sample, the method, the equipment, or the operator.

Errors Inherent in the Sample. Improper venipuncture technique may introduce hemoconcentration, which will make Hb concentration and cell counts too high. Improper technique in fingerstick or capillary sampling can produce errors in either direction.

Errors Inherent in the Method. The HiCN method is the method of choice. Use of the HiCN standard for calibration of the instrument and for the test itself eliminates a major source of error. The broad absorption band of HiCN in the region of 540 nm makes it convenient to use both in filter-type photometers and in narrow-band spectrophotometers. With the exception of SHb, all other varieties of hemoglobin are converted to HiCN.

Errors Inherent in the Equipment. The accuracy of equipment is not uniform. A good grade of pipet with a guaranteed accuracy of greater than 99% is desirable. Calibration of pipets will lessen errors. Significant error can be introduced by the use of unmatched cuvets; therefore, flow-through cuvets are preferred. The wavelength settings, the filters, and the meter readings require checking. The photometer must be calibrated in the laboratory before its initial use and must be rechecked frequently to reduce the method's error to 2% (±CV).

Automated equipment is now widely used and eliminates most errors associated with manual techniques of hemoglobinometry.

Spectrophotometric Identification of Hemoglobins

The various Hbs have characteristic absorption spectra, which can be determined easily with a spectrophotometer. Useful absorbance maxima are given in Table 30-1. The maxima for Hi vary considerably with pH. The maxima given in the two right-hand columns are useful for distinguishing among these forms of Hb. Absorbance between 405 and 435 nm (the Soret band) is considerably greater and may be used when small concentrations of Hb are to be measured.

HEMATOCRIT (PACKED CELL VOLUME)

The Hct of a sample of blood is the ratio of the volume of erythrocytes to that of the whole blood. It may be expressed as a percentage (conventional) or as a decimal fraction (SI units). The units L/L are implied. Dried heparin and ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) are satisfactory anticoagulants. Before taking a sample from a tube of venous blood for a

hematologic determination, it is important to mix the blood thoroughly. If the tube has been standing, this requires at least 60 inversions of the tube, or 2 minutes on a mechanical rotator; less than this leads to unacceptable deterioration in precision (Fairbanks et al, 1971). The number of inversions required to achieve homogeneity of a specimen depends on the dimensions of the container. Standard 10 to 14 × 75-mm tubes, containing 5 mL of blood and an air bubble that constitutes at least 20% of the tube volume, require at least eight inversions (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards [NCCLS], 1993). The venous Hct agrees closely with the Hct obtained from a skin puncture; both are greater than the total body Hct. The Hct may be measured directly by centrifugation with macromethods or micromethods, or indirectly as the product of the mean corpuscular volume (MCV) times RBC count in automated instruments. In blood kept at room temperature, swelling of erythrocytes between 6 and 24 hours raises Hct and MCV. Cell counts and indices are stable for 24 hours at 4°C (Brittin et al, 1969).

Gross Examination

Hct determination is performed by centrifugation. Inspection of the specimen after spinning may furnish valuable information. The relative heights of the red cell column, buffy coat, and plasma column should be noted. The buffy coat is the red-gray layer between the red cells and the plasma; it includes platelets and leukocytes.

An orange or green color of the plasma suggests increased bilirubin, and pink or red suggests hemoglobinemia. Poor technique in collecting the blood specimen is the most frequent cause of hemolysis. If specimens are not obtained within 1 or 2 hours after a fat-rich meal, cloudy plasma may point to nephrosis or certain abnormal hyperglobulinemias, especially cryoglobulinemia.

Hematocrit Measurement by Micromethod

Equipment

A capillary Hct tube about 7 cm long with a uniform bore of about 1 mm is used. For blood collection directly from a skin puncture, heparinized capillary tubes are available.

Procedure

The microhematocrit tube is filled by capillary attraction from a free-flowing puncture wound or a well-mixed venous sample. The capillary tube should be filled to at least 5 cm. The empty end is sealed with modeling clay. The filled tube is placed in the radial grooves of the microhematocrit centrifuge head with the sealed end away from the center. Place the bottom of the tube against the rubber gasket to prevent breakage. Centrifugation for 5 minutes at 10,000 to 12,000 g is satisfactory unless the Hct exceeds 50%; in that case, an additional 5 minutes of centrifugation should be employed to ensure minimal plasma trapping. The capillary tubes are not graduated. The length of the blood column, including the plasma, and of the red cell column alone must be measured in each case with a millimeter rule and a magnifying lens, or with one of several commercially available measuring devices. The manufacturer's instructions must be followed.

Interpretation of Results

Typical reference values for adult males are 0.41 to 0.51, and for females, 0.36 to 0.45. A value below an individual's normal value or below the reference interval for age and sex indicates anemia, and a higher value, polycythemia. The Hct reflects the concentration of red cells—not the total red cell mass. The Hct is low in hydremia of pregnancy, but the total number of circulating red cells is not reduced. The Hct may be normal or even high in shock accompanied by hemoconcentration, although the total red cell mass may be decreased considerably owing to blood loss. The Hct is unreliable as an estimate of anemia immediately after loss of blood or immediately following transfusions.

Sources of Error

Centrifugation. Adequate duration and speed of centrifugation are essential for a correct Hct. The red cells must be packed so that additional centrifugation does not further reduce the packed cell volume. In the course of centrifugation, small proportions of the leukocytes, platelets, and plasma are trapped between the red cells. The error resulting from the former is, as a rule, quite insignificant. The amount of trapped plasma is larger in high Hcts than in low Hcts. Trapped plasma accounts for about 1% to 3% of the red cell column in normal blood (about 0.014 in a Hct of 0.47) and slightly more in macrocytic anemia, spherocytosis, and hypochromic anemia (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). Even greater amounts of trapped plasma are noted in the Hcts of patients with sickle cell anemia; these vary depending on the degree of sickling and consequent rigidity of the cells. In using the microhematocrit as a reference method for calibrating automated instruments, correction for trapped plasma is recommended (International Committee for Standardization in Hematology [ICSH], 1980).

Sample. Posture, muscular activity, and prolonged tourniquet-stasis can cause the same order of changes in Hct and cell concentrations as they do in nonfilterable soluble constituents. Unique to the Hct is error due to excess EDTA (inadequate blood for a fixed amount of EDTA): The Hct will be falsely low as a result of cell shrinkage, but the Hb and cell counts will not be affected. There is no uniformity as to which EDTA salt is used for anticoagulation (O'Broin et al, 1997). The tripotassium (K_3-EDTA) salt shrinks red cells about 2% and lowers packed cell volume compared with the dipotassium salt (K_2-EDTA) (Koepke et al, 1989). Also, because K_3-EDTA is a liquid, measured Hb and red and white cell counts are decreased by 1% to 2%. Although the ICSH and the Clinical Laboratory Standards Institute recommend the K_2-EDTA salt (powder), the K_3-EDTA is more often used, perhaps because of its increased miscibility and fewer instances of specimen clotting (Geller, 1996).

Other Errors. Technical errors include failure to mix the blood adequately before sampling, improper reading of the levels of cells and plasma, and inclusion of the buffy coat as part of the erythrocyte volume. With good technique, the precision of the Hct, expressed as ±2 CV (coefficient of variation), is ±1%. With low Hct values, the CV is greater because of reading error.

ERYTHROCYTE INDICES

Wintrobe introduced calculations for determining the size, content, and Hb concentration of red cells; these erythrocyte indices have been useful in the morphologic characterization of anemias. They may be calculated from the red cell count, Hb concentration, and Hct.

Mean Cell Volume

The MCV, the average volume of red cells, is calculated from the Hct and the red cell count. MCV = Hct × 1000/RBC (in millions per μL), expressed in femtoliters or cubic micrometers. If the Hct = 0.45 and the red cell count = 5×10^{12}/L, 1 L will contain 5×10^{12} red cells, which occupy a volume of 0.45 L.

$$\text{MCV} = 0.45\ \text{L}/5 \times 10^{12} = 90 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{L}$$

$$\text{One femtoliter (fL)} = 10^{-15}\ \text{L} = 1\ \text{cubic micrometer } (\mu\text{m}^3).$$

Mean Cell Hemoglobin

The MCH is the content (weight) of Hb of the average red cell; it is calculated from the Hb concentration and the red cell count.

$$\text{MCH} = \text{Hb (in g/L)}/\text{RBC (in millions/}\mu\text{L)}$$

The value is expressed in picograms. If the Hb = 15 g/dL and the red cell count is 5×10^{12}/L, 1 L contains 150 g of Hb distributed in 5×10^{12} cells.

$$\text{MCH} = 150/(5 \times 10^{12}) = 30 \times 10^{12}\ \text{(pg)}$$

$$\text{One picogram (pg)} = 10^{-12}\ \text{g}$$

Mean Cell Hemoglobin Concentration

The mean cell hemoglobin concentration (MCHC) is the average concentration of Hb in a given volume of packed red cells. It is calculated from the Hb concentration and the Hct.

$$\text{MCHC} = \text{Hb (in g/dL)}/\text{Hct, expressed in g/dL (SI units are g/L)}$$

If the Hb = 15 g/dL and the Hct = 0.45,

$$\text{MCHC} = 15\ \text{g/dL}/0.45 = 33.3\ \text{g/dL}$$

Indices are determined in the electrical impedance instruments somewhat differently. The MCV is derived from the mean height of the voltage pulses formed during the red cell count, and the Hb is measured by optical density of HiCN. The other three values are calculated as follows:

$$\text{Hct} = \text{MCV} \times \text{RBC};\ \text{MCH} = \text{Hb}/\text{RBC};\ \text{MCHC} = (\text{Hb}/\text{Hct}) \times 100$$

The reference values for the indices will depend on whether they are determined from the centrifuged Hct or the cell counters. The values in normal individuals will be similar if both are corrected for trapped plasma. However, because of increased trapped plasma in hypochromic anemias and sickle cell anemia, the MCHC calculated from the microhematocrit

will be significantly lower than the MCHC derived from the electrical impedance counters.

The 95% reference intervals for normal adults are as follows: MCV = 80 to 96 fL; MCH = 27 to 33 pg; and MCHC = 33 to 36 g/dL (Ryan, 2001). In a healthy person, there is very little variation—no more than ±1 unit in any of the indices. Deviations from the reference value for an individual or outside the reference intervals for normal persons are useful, particularly in characterizing morphologic types of anemia.

In *microcytic anemias*, the indices may be as low as an MCV of 50 fL, an MCH of 15 pg, and an MCHC of 22 g/dL; rarely do any become lower.

In *macrocytic anemias*, the values may be as high as an MCV of 150 fL and an MCH of 50 pg, but the MCHC is normal or decreased (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). The MCHC typically increases only in spherocytosis, and rarely is over 38 g/dL.

MANUAL BLOOD CELL COUNTS

Except for some platelet counts and low leukocyte counts, the hemocytometer is no longer used for routine blood cell counting. Yet it is still necessary for the technologist to be able to use this method effectively and to know its limitations. Any cell counting procedure includes three steps: dilution of the blood; sampling of the diluted suspension into a measured volume; and counting of the cells in that volume. Counts of erythrocytes, leukocytes, and platelets are each expressed as concentrations, that is, cells per unit volume of blood. The unit of volume was expressed as cubic millimeters (mm^3) because of the linear dimensions of the hemocytometer (cell counting) chamber.

$$1\,mm^3 = 1.00003\,\mu L$$

Although there is no consistency in the literature in the use of traditional/conventional units versus Système International d'Unites (SI) units, the ICSH recommends that the unit of volume be the liter (SI units), as on the right in the following examples:

Erythrocytes:

$$5.00\times10^6/mm^3 = 5.00\times10^6/\mu L\ \text{(conventional)} = 5.00\times10^{12}/L\ \text{(SI units)}$$

Leukocytes:

$$7.0\times10^3/mm^3 = 7.0\times10^3/\mu L\ \text{(conventional)} = 7.0\times10^9/L\ \text{(SI units)}$$

Platelets:

$$300\times10^3/mm^3 = 300\times10^3/\mu L\ \text{(conventional)} = 300\times10^9/L\ \text{(SI units)}$$

Erythrocyte Counts: Manual

Systems for manual dilutions combine a microcapillary tube with a plastic vial containing a premeasured volume of diluent. After the capillary tube is filled, it is pushed into the container, and the sample is washed out by squeezing the soft plastic vial. This system is especially convenient for microsampling. Unopettes are available with diluents for counts of RBCs, white blood cells (WBCs), platelets, eosinophils, and reticulocytes.

Semiautomated Methods

Instruments are available for precise and convenient diluting that both aspirate the sample and wash it out with the diluent. The dilutor should perform a 1:250 or a 1:500 dilution with a coefficient of variation of less than 1%.

Reticulocyte Count: Manual

Principle

Reticulocytes are immature nonnucleated red cells that contain ribonucleic acid (RNA) and continue to synthesize Hb after loss of the nucleus. When blood is briefly incubated in a solution of new methylene blue or brilliant cresyl blue, the RNA is precipitated as a dye-ribonucleoprotein complex. Microscopically, the complex appears as a dark blue network (reticulum or filamentous strand) or at least two dark blue granules that allow reticulocytes to be identified and enumerated (ICSH, 1998). A proposed reference method for reticulocyte counting based on determination of the reticulocyte/red cell ratio has been published (ICSH, 1998), expanding on the 1994 ICSH red cell count reference method.

Reagent. One percent new methylene blue in a diluent of citrate/saline (1 part 30 g/L sodium citrate plus 4 parts 9 g/L sodium chloride).

Controls. Although commercial controls are available, Ebrahim and Ryan (1996) describe a method requiring about 2 hours that produces a multilevel control that is stable for several months. Hypotonic dialysis of RBCs in the presence of RNA followed by a short period of hypertonic dialysis to reseal the pores of the RBC membrane results in about 20% of the RBCs as "synthetic reticulocytes" with various amounts of encapsulated RNA.

Procedure

Three drops each of reagent and blood are mixed in a test tube, incubated 15 minutes at room temperature, and remixed. Two wedge films are made on glass slides and air dried.

Viewed microscopically with an oil immersion lens, reticulocytes are pale blue and contain dark blue reticular or granular material, and red cells stain pale blue or blue-green. The percentage of reticulocytes is determined in at least 1000 red cells. A Miller disk inserted into the eyepiece allows rapid estimation of large numbers of red cells by imposing two squares (one square is nine times the area of the other) onto the field of view (Brecher & Schneiderman, 1950). Reticulocytes are counted in the large square and red cells in the small square in successive microscopic fields until at least 300 red cells are counted. This provides an estimate of reticulocytes among at least 2700 red cells, as follows:

$$\text{Reticulocytes (percent)} = [\text{No. reticulocytes in large squares}/(\text{No. red cells in small squares}\times 9)]\times 100$$

The absolute reticulocyte count is determined by multiplying the reticulocyte percentage by the red cell count.

Reference Values

Normal adults have a reticulocyte count of 0.5% to 1.5%, or 24 to 84×10^9/L. In newborn infants, the percentage is 2.5% to 6.5%; this falls to the adult range by the end of the second week of life.

Interpretation

Because reticulocytes are immature red cells that lose their RNA a day or so after reaching the blood from the marrow, a reticulocyte count provides an estimate of the rate of red cell production. An absolute reticulocyte count or reticulocyte production index is more helpful than the percentage (see Chapter 31).

Sources of Variation

Because such a small number of actual reticulocytes are counted, the sampling error in the manual reticulocyte count is relatively large. The 95% confidence limits may be expressed as follows:

$$R \pm 2\sqrt{[R\,(100-R)/N]}$$

where R is the reticulocyte count in percent, and N is the number of erythrocytes examined. This means that if only 1000 erythrocytes are evaluated, the 95% confidence limits for a 1% count are 0.4% to 1.6%; for a 5% count, 3.6% to 6.4%; and for a 10% count, 8.1% to 11.9%.

Physiologic Variation in Erythrocytes

Changes in red cell values are greatest during the first few weeks of life (Fig. 30-3). At the time of birth, as much as 100 to 125 mL of placental blood may be added to the newborn if tying the cord is postponed until its pulsation ceases. In a study of newborns whose cords had been clamped late, average capillary red cell counts were 0.4×10^{12}/L higher 1 hour after and 0.8×10^{12}/L higher 24 hours after birth compared with newborns whose cords had been clamped early. Capillary blood (obtained by skin puncture) gives higher RBC and Hb values than venous blood (cord). The differences may amount to about 0.5×10^{12} RBC/L and 3 g Hb/dL. Slowing of capillary circulation and the resulting loss of fluid may be the responsible factors. Examination of venous blood furnishes more consistent results than are obtained by examination of capillary blood.

In the full-term infant, nucleated red cells average about 0.5×10^9/L. The normoblast count declines to about 200/μL at 24 hours, 25/μL at 48 hours, and less than 5/μL at 72 hours. By 7 days, it is rare to find circulating normoblasts (Barone, 1999).

The normal reticulocyte count at birth ranges from 3% to 7% during the first 48 hours, during which time it rises slightly. After the second day, it falls rather rapidly to 1% to 3% by the seventh day of life. Hb concentration in capillary blood during the first day of life averages 19.0 g/dL, with 95% of normal values falling to between 14.6 and 23.4 g/dL. In cord blood the average is 16.8 g/dL, with 95% of normal between 13.5 and 20 g/dL. Frequently, an initial increase in the Hb level of venous blood is seen at the end of 24 hours compared with that of cord blood. At the end of the first week, the level is about the same as in cord blood, and it does not begin to fall until after the second week. During the first 2 weeks, the lower limit of normal is 14.5 g/dL for capillary blood and 13.0 g/dL for venous blood. The Hct in capillary blood on the first day of life averages

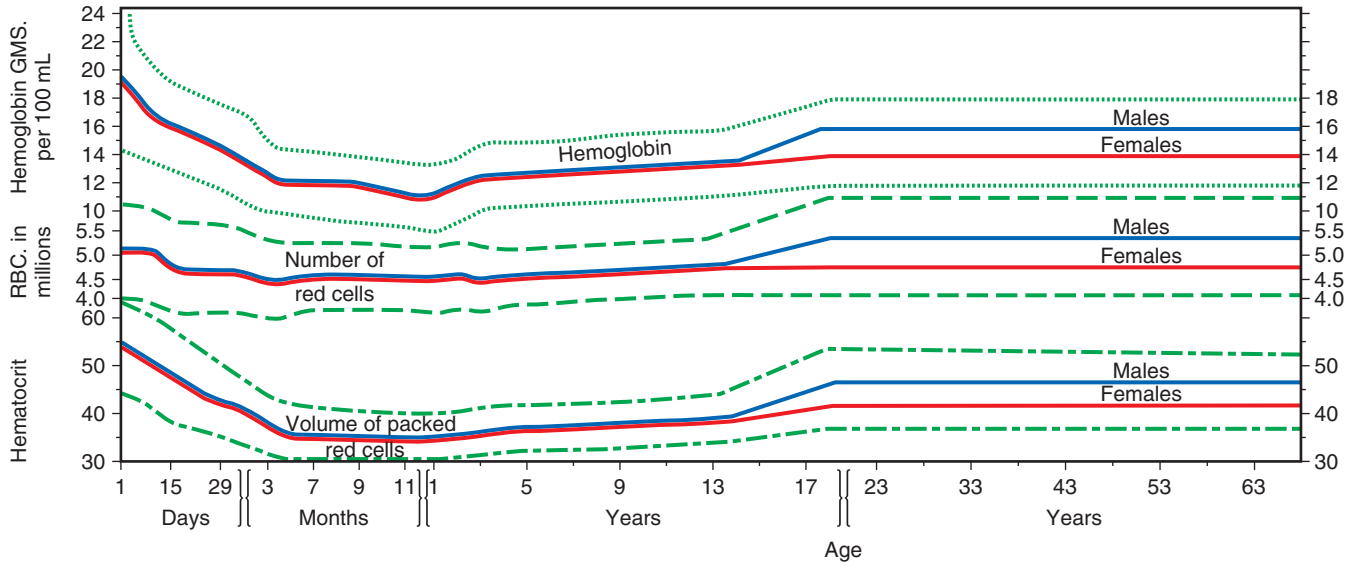


Figure 30-3 Values for hemoglobin (Hb), hematocrit (Hct; volume of packed red cells), and red cell count from birth to old age. Mean values are heavy lines. Reference interval for Hb is indicated by dotted lines, for red cell counts by dashed lines, and for Hct by dotted and dashed lines. The scales on the ordinate are similar, so that relative changes in Hb, red cell count, and Hct are apparent on inspection. The scale for age, however, is progressively altered (Wintrobe, 1974).

0.61, with 95% of normal values between 0.46 and 0.76. In cord blood, the average is 0.53. Changes during the first few weeks parallel the Hb concentration. The Hb and Hct are highest at birth but fall rather steeply in the first days and weeks of life to a minimum at 2 months of age, at which time the lower limit of the 95% reference values and the mean value for the Hb are 9.4 and 11.2 g/dL, and for the Hct are 0.28 and 0.35, respectively. After 4 months of age, the lower limit for the Hb is 11.2 g/dL and for the Hct is 0.32; these values rise gradually until about 5 years of age, and somewhat more steeply in boys than in girls thereafter (Shannon & Pearson, 2002). The normal MCV at birth ranges from 104 to 118 fL, compared with the adult reference interval of 80 to 96 fL. Because the RBC does not fall to the degree that the Hb and Hct do, the MCV decreases abruptly, then gradually, during the first few months of life. The lowest value is reached at about 1 year. In studies in which iron deficiency and thalassemia are excluded, the lower reference limit (95% reference values) for the MCV gradually rises between 1 year and 15 years of age—from 70 to 76 fL in boys, and from 70 to 78 fL in girls (Shannon & Graef, 1996). Reference intervals for RBC values in sexually mature adults are given in Table 30-2. The indices are similar in males and females, but the Hb is 1 to 2 g/dL higher in males, with commensurate increments in Hct and RBCs (see Fig. 30-3). This is believed to be mainly the effect of androgen in stimulating erythropoietin production and its effect on the marrow. In older men, the Hb tends to fall, and in older women, the Hb tends to fall to a lesser degree (in some studies) or even rise slightly (in other studies). In older individuals, therefore, the sex difference is less than 1 g Hb/dL (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). Posture and muscular activity change the concentration of the formed elements. The Hb, Hct, and RBC increase by several percent when the change from recumbency to standing is made, and strenuous muscular activity causes a further increase, presumably owing primarily to loss of plasma water. Diurnal variation that is not related to exercise or to analytic variation also occurs. The Hb is highest in the morning, falls during the day, and is lowest in the evening, with a mean difference of 8% to 9% (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). In persons living at a higher altitude, the Hb, Hct, and RBC are elevated over what they would be at sea level. The difference is about 1 g Hb/dL at 2 km altitude and 2 g Hb/dL at 3 km. Increased erythropoiesis is secondary to anoxic stimulation of erythropoietin production. People who are smokers also tend to have a mild erythrocytosis.

TABLE 30-2

Typical Blood Cell Values in a Normal Population of Young Adults

	Men	Women
White cell count ($\times 10^9$/L blood)	7.8 (4.4-11.3)	
Red cell count ($\times 10^{12}$/L blood)	5.21 (4.52-5.90)	4.60 (4.10-5.10)
Hemoglobin (g/dL blood)	15.7 (14.0-17.5)1	3.8 (12.3-15.3)
Hematocrit (percent)	46 (41.5-50.4)	40.2 (35.9-44.6)
Mean cell volume (fL/red cell)	88.0 (80.0-96.1)	
Mean cell hemoglobin (pg/red cell)	30.4 (27.5-33.2)	
Mean cell hemoglobin concentration (g/dL RBC)	34.4 (33.4-35.5)	
Red cell distribution width (CV, percent)	13.1 (11.6-14.6)	
Platelet count ($\times 10^9$/L blood)	311 (172-450)	

The mean and reference intervals (normal range) are given. Because the distribution curves may be nongaussian, the reference interval is the nonparametric central 95% confidence interval. Results are based on 426 normal adult men and 212 normal adult women. Studies were performed on the Coulter model S-Plus IV.
From Morris MW, Skrodzki Z, Nelson DA: Zeta sedimentation ratio (ZSR), a replacement for the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), *Am J Clin Pathol* 164:254–256, 1975.
CV, Cell values; *RBC,* bed blood cell.

Leukocyte Counts: Manual

Specimen Collection

EDTA should be used; heparin is unsatisfactory as an anticoagulant.

Hemocytometer Method

Although this method is used only occasionally in leukocyte counting, the technologist should be able to perform it

1. As a check on the validity of electronic methods for calibration purposes
2. As a check on the validity of electronic counts in patients with profound leukopenia or thrombocytopenia
3. For blood specimens with platelet counting interference (i.e., very microcytic RBCs)
4. As a backup method

It is also commonly used as a method for counting cells in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

Counting Chamber. The hemocytometer is a thick glass slide with inscribed platforms of known area and precisely controlled depth under the coverslip. Counting chambers and cover glasses should be rinsed in lukewarm water immediately after use; wiped with a clean, lint-free cloth; and allowed to air dry. The surfaces must not be touched with gauze or linen because these materials may scratch the ruled areas.

Diluting Fluid. The diluting fluid lyses the erythrocytes so that they will not obscure the leukocytes. The fluid must be refrigerated and filtered frequently to remove yeasts and molds.

Procedure

1. Well-mixed blood is diluted 1:20 in diluting fluid and the vial rotated for about 5 minutes. The chamber is loaded with just enough fluid to fill the space beneath the cover glass.
2. The cells are permitted to settle for several minutes, and the chamber is surveyed with the low-power objective to verify uniform cell distribution.
3. Counting is performed. The condenser diaphragm of the microscope is partially closed to make the leukocytes stand out clearly under a low-power (10×) objective lens. The leukocytes are counted in each of the four large (1 mm^2) corner squares (A, B, C, and D in Fig. 30-4). A total of eight large corner squares from two sides of a chamber are counted.
4. Each large square encloses a volume of 1/10 mm^3, and the dilution is 1:20. A general formula is as follows:

$$\text{Leukocyte count (cells/mm}^3) = (cc/lsc) \times d \times 10$$

where *cc* is the total number of cells counted, *d* is the dilution factor, 10 is the factor transforming value over one large square (1/10 mm^3) to the volume in mm^3, and *lsc* is the number of large squares counted.

In leukopenia, with a total count below 2500, the blood is diluted 1:10. In leukocytosis, the dilution may be 1:100 or even 1:200.

Sources of Error. Errors may be due to the nature of the sample, to the operator's technique, and to inaccurate equipment. Errors that are inherent in the distribution of cells in the counting volume are called "field" errors and can be minimized only by counting more cells.

Hemocytometer leukocyte counts show a CV of about 6.5% for normal and increased counts, and about 15% in leukopenic blood. Utilizing electronic counters, on the other hand, results in CVs of approximately 1% to 3%.

Errors due to the nature of the sample. Partial coagulation of the venous blood causes changes in the distribution of the cells and/or decreases their number. Failure to mix the blood thoroughly and immediately before dilution introduces an error, which depends on the degree of sedimentation.

Operator's errors. Errors caused by faulty technique may occur during dilution, when the chamber is loaded, and when the cells are counted.

Errors due to equipment. Equipment errors can be diminished by using pipets and hemocytometers certified by the U.S. Bureau of Standards.

Inherent or field errors. Even in a perfectly mixed sample, variation occurs in the number of suspended cells that are distributed in a given volume (i.e., come to rest over a given square). This "error of the field" is the minimal error. Another error is the "error of the chamber," which includes variations in separate fillings of a given chamber and in sizes of different chambers. Still another is the "error of the pipet," which includes variations in filling a given pipet and in the sizes of different pipets. In performing a WBC count, if 200 cells are counted using two chambers and one pipet, the CV = 9.1%, corresponding to 95% confidence limits of ±18.2% (twice the CV). Using four chambers and two pipets and counting twice as many cells reduces the 95% confidence limits to ±12.8%. This relatively large percentage error is of little practical consequence because of the physiologic variation of the leukocyte count.

Nucleated red blood cells. Nucleated red blood cells (NRBCs) will be counted and cannot be distinguished from leukocytes with the magnification used. If their number is high, as seen on the stained smear, a correction should be made according to the following formula:

$$\text{True leukocyte count} = (\text{Total count} \times 100)/(100 + \text{No. of NRBCs})$$

where the *No. of NRBCs* is the number of nucleated red cells that are counted during the enumeration of 100 leukocytes in the differential count.

Example

The blood smear shows 25 NRBCs per 100 leukocytes. The total nucleated cell count is 10,000.

True leukocyte count = 10,000 × 100/125 = 8000/μL (8.0×10^9/L)

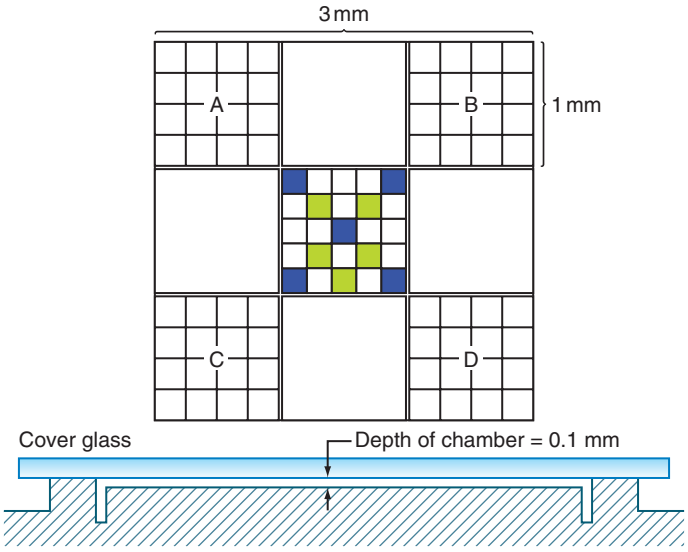


Figure 30-4 The upper figure is a diagram of the improved Neubauer ruling; this is etched on the surface of each side of the hemocytometer. The large corner squares, A, B, C, and D, are used for leukocyte counts. The five blue squares in the center are used for red cell counts or for platelet counts, and the 10 green plus blue squares for platelet counts. Actually, each of the 25 squares within the central sq mm has within it 16 smaller squares for convenience in counting. The lower figure is a side view of the chamber with the cover glass in place.

Reference Value. In the total leukocyte count, no distinction is made among the six normal cell types (neutrophils and bands, lymphocytes, monocytes, eosinophils, and basophils). The reference interval for adults is 4.5 to 11.0 × 10^9/L.

Physiologic Variation in Leukocytes

The total white cell count at birth and during the first 24 hours varies within wide limits. Neutrophils are the predominant cell, varying from 6 to 28 × 10^9/L; about 15% of these are band forms (Altman & Dittmer, 1974), and a few myelocytes are present. Neutrophils drop to about 5 × 10^9/L during the first week of life and remain at about the same level thereafter. Lymphocytes are about 5.5 × 10^9/L at birth and change little during the first week. They become the predominant cell, on average, after the first week of life and remain so until about 7 years of age, when neutrophils again predominate. The upper limit of the 95% reference interval for lymphocytes at 6 months of age is 13.5, at 1 year of age 10.5, at 2 years of age 9.5, at 6 years of age 7.0, and at 12 years of age 6.0 × 10^9/L. For neutrophils at the same ages, the values are 8.5, 8.5, 8.5, 8.0, and 8.0 × 10^9/L, respectively—all somewhat higher than those for adults (Table 30-3).

Diurnal variation has been recognized in the neutrophil count, with highest levels in the afternoon and lowest levels in the morning at rest. Exercise produces leukocytosis, which includes an increased neutrophil concentration as a result of a shift of cells from the marginal to the circulating granulocyte pool. Increased lymphocyte drainage into the blood also appears to contribute to the total increase. Both average and lower reference values for neutrophil concentration in the black population are lower than in the Caucasian population; this difference must be taken into account in assessing neutropenia. Cigarette smokers have higher average leukocyte counts than nonsmokers. The increase is greatest (about 30%) in heavy smokers who inhale and affects neutrophils, lymphocytes, and monocytes.

Mild changes occur during the menstrual cycle. Neutrophils and monocytes fall and eosinophils tend to rise during menstruation. Basophils have been reported to fall during ovulation.

Platelet Counts

Platelets are thin disks, 2 to 4 μm in diameter and 5 to 7 fL in volume (in citrated blood). They function in hemostasis, in maintenance of vascular integrity, and in the process of blood coagulation.

In EDTA-blood, the mean platelet volume (MPV) increases with time up to 1 hour in vitro, is relatively stable between 1 and 3 hours, and then

TABLE 30-3

Normal Leukocyte Count, Differential Count, and Hemoglobin Concentration at Various Ages

	LEUKOCYTES*								
Age	**Total Leukocytes**	**Total Neutrophils**	**Band Neutrophils**	**Segmented Neutrophils**	**Eosinophils**	**Basophils**	**Lymphocytes**	**Monocytes**	**Hemoglobin (g/dL Blood)**
12 months	11.4 (6.0-17.5)	3.5 (1.5-8.5) *31*	0.35 *3.1*	3.2 (1.0-8.5) *28*	0.30 (0.05-0.70) *2.6*	0.05 (0-0.20) *0.4*	7.0 (4.0-10.5) *61*	0.55 (0.05-1.1) *4.8*	12.6 (11.1-14.1)
4 years	9.1 (5.5-15.5)	3.8 (1.5-8.5) *42*	0.27 (0-1.0) *3.0*	3.5 (1.5-7.5) *39*	0.25 (0.02-0.65) *2.8*	0.05 (0-0.2) *0.6*	4.5 (2.0-8.0) *50*	0.45 (0-0.8) *5.0*	12.7 (11.2-14.3)
6 years	8.5 (5.0-14.5)	4.3 (1.5-8.0) *51*	0.25 (0-1.0) *3.0*	4.0 (1.5-7.0) *48*	0.23 (0-0.65) *2.7*	0.05 (0-0.2) *0.6*	3.5 (1.50-7.0) *42*	0.40 (0-0.8) *4.7*	13.0 (11.4-14.5)
10 years	8.1 (4.5-13.5)	4.4 (1.8-8.0) *54*	0.24 (0-1.0) *3.0*	4.2 (1.8-7.0) *51*	0.20 (0-0.60) *2.4*	0.04 (0-0.2) *0.5*	3.1 (1.5-6.5) *38*	0.35 (0-0.8) *4.3*	13.4 (11.8-15.0)
21 years	7.4 (4.5-11.0)	4.4 (1.8-7.7) *59*	0.22 (0-0.7) *3.0*	4.2 (1.8-7.0) *56*	0.20 (0-0.45) *2.7*	0.04 (0-0.2) *0.5*	2.5 (1.0-4.8) *34*	0.30 (0-0.8) *4.0*	15.5 (13.5-17.5) 13.8 (12.0-15.6)

From: Altman PL, Dittmer DS, editors: *Blood and other body fluids,* Washington, DC, 1961, Federation of American Societies for Experimental Biology (for leukocyte and differential count); Dalman PR: Developmental changes in red blood cell production and function. In: Rudolph AM, Hoffman JIE, editors: *Pediatrics,* ed 18, Norwalk, Conn., 1987, Appleton & Lange, pp 1011–1012 (for hemoglobin concentrations).

*Values are expressed as mean (95% reference) values. For leukocytes and differential count cell types, the units are cells × 10^9/μL; the numbers in italic type are mean percentages.

increases further with time. Change from a discoid to a spherical shape accounts for this increase in apparent volume in EDTA compared with citrate (Rowan & Fraser, 1982). For reproducible results, platelet volume measurements obtained with multichannel instruments should be made between 1 and 3 hours after the blood is drawn. The frequency distribution of platelet volumes in an individual is log normal. However, a nonlinear inverse relationship has been noted between the MPV and the platelet count within normal individuals (Fig. 30-5). Therefore, reference values for the MPV appear to vary with the platelet count (Bessman et al, 1981). The MPV is generally increased in hyperthyroidism (Ford et al, 1988) and myeloproliferative disease (Small & Bettigole, 1981). Platelets are more difficult to count because they are small (must be distinguished from debris) and have a tendency to adhere to glass, any foreign body, and particularly to one another. It is often possible to recognize a significant decrease in the number of platelets by careful inspection of stained films. With capillary blood, films must be made evenly and very quickly after the blood is obtained to avoid clumping and to minimize the decrease due to adhesion of platelets to the margins of the injured vessels. A better estimate is possible by examining stained films made from venous blood with EDTA as an anticoagulant (EDTA-blood), in which platelets are evenly distributed and where clumping normally does not occur. The visual method of choice employs the phase-contrast microscope. Once considered the "gold standard," it has been largely replaced as the reference method by the RBC/platelet ratio. This method employs monoclonal antibodies to platelet-specific targets on the glycoprotein IIb/IIa complex (CD41 and Cd61) to enumerate platelets using flow cytometry. This method helps to differentiate platelets from interfering substances such as microcytic red blood cells, white blood cell fragments, microorganisms, and debris (Table 30-4) (ICSH, 2001).

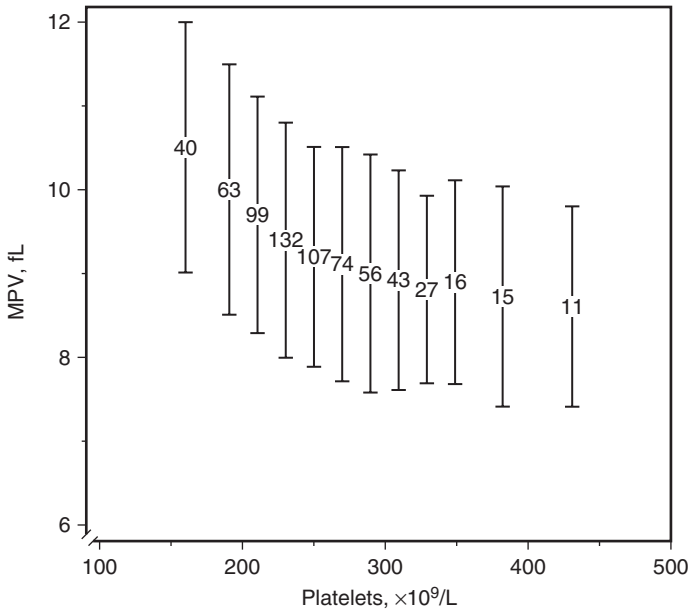


Figure 30-5 Mean platelet volume (MPV) related to platelet count in 683 normal subjects. Each group is shown as mean (number) ±2 SD (bar) of subjects grouped by platelet counts of 128 to 179, 180 to 199, 200 to 219, 220 to 239, 240 to 259, 260 to 279, 280 to 309, 310 to 319, 320 to 339, 340 to 359, 360 to 403, 404 to 462 × 10^9/L. The number of the mean position is the number of subjects in the group (Bessman et al, 1981).

Hemocytometer Method—Phase-Contrast Microscope

Specimen. Venous blood is collected with EDTA as the anticoagulant. Blood from skin puncture wounds gives more variable results but is satisfactory if the blood is flowing freely and if only the first few drops are used.

Diluent Solution. One percent ammonium oxalate is mixed in distilled water. The stock bottle is kept in the refrigerator. The amount needed for the day is filtered before use, and the unused portion is discarded at the end of the day.

Procedure

1. Well-mixed blood is diluted 1:100 in diluting fluid, and the vial containing the suspension is rotated on a mechanical mixer for 10 to 15 minutes.
2. The hemocytometer is filled in the usual fashion, using a separate capillary tube for each side.
3. The chamber is covered with a Petri dish for 15 minutes to allow settling of the platelets in one optical plane. A piece of wet cotton or filter paper is left beneath the dish to prevent evaporation.
4. The platelets appear round or oval and frequently have one or more dendritic processes. Their internal granular structure and a purple sheen allow the platelets to be distinguished from debris, which is often refractile. Ghosts of red cells that have been lysed by the ammonium oxalate are seen in the background.
5. Platelets are counted in 10 small squares (the black squares in Fig. 30-4), five on each side of the chamber. If the total number of platelets counted is less than 100, more small squares are counted until at least 100 platelets have been recorded—10 squares per side (black plus shaded squares; see Fig. 30-4) or all 25 squares in the

TABLE 30-4
Potential Causes of Erroneous Results with Automated Cell Counters

Parameter	Causes of Spurious Increase	Causes of Spurious Decrease
WBC	Cryoglobulin, cryofibrinogen	Clotting
	Heparin	Smudge cells
	Monoclonal proteins	Uremia plus immunosuppressants
	Nucleated red cells	
	Platelet clumping	
	Unlysed red cells	
RBC	Cryoglobulin, cryofibrinogen	Autoagglutination
	Giant platelets	Clotting
	High WBC (>50,000/mL)	Hemolysis (in vitro)
		Microcytic red cells
Hb	Carboxyhemoglobin (>10%)	Clotting
	Cryoglobulin, cryofibrinogen	Sulfhemoglobin
	Hemolysis (in vitro)	
	Heparin	
	High WBC (>50,000/μL)	
	Hyperbilirubinemia	
	Lipemia	
	Monoclonal proteins	
Hct (automated)	Cryoglobulin, cryofibrinogen	Autoagglutination
	Giant platelets	Clotting
	High WBC (>50,000/μL)	Hemolysis (in vitro)
	Hyperglycemia (>600 mg/dL)	Microcytic red cells
Hct (microhematocrit)	Hyponatremia	Excess EDTA
	Plasma trapping	Hemolysis (in vitro)
		Hypernatremia
MCV	Autoagglutination	Cryoglobulin
	High WBC (>50,000/μL)	Cryofibrinogen
	Hyperglycemia	Giant platelets
	Reduced red cell deformability	Hemolysis (in vitro)
		Microcytic red cells
		Swollen red cells
MCH	High WBC (>50,000/μL)	Spuriously low Hb
	Spuriously high Hb	Spuriously high RBC
	Spuriously low RBC	
MCHC	Autoagglutination	High WBC (>50,000/μL)
	Clotting	Spuriously low Hb
	Hemolysis (in vitro)	Spuriously low Hct
	Hemolysis (in vivo)	
	Spuriously high Hb	
	Spuriously high Hct	
Platelets	Cryoglobulin, cryofibrinogen	Clotting
	Hemolysis (in vitro and in vivo)	Giant platelets
	Microcytic red cells	Heparin
	Red cell inclusions	Platelet clumping
	White cell fragments	Platelet satellitosis

From Cornbleet J: Spurious results from automated hematology cell analyzers, *Lab Med* 14:509, 1983.

EDTA, Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; *Hb,* hemoglobin; *Hct,* hematocrit; *MCH,* mean cell hemoglobin; *MCHC,* mean cell hemoglobin concentration; *MCV,* mean corpuscular volume; *RBC,* red blood cell; *WBC,* white blood cell.

large central square on each side of the hemocytometer, if necessary. If the total number of platelets in all 50 of these small squares is less than 50, the count should be repeated with a 1:20 or a 1:10 dilution of blood.

Calculation. Each of the 25 small squares defines a volume of 1/250 μL (1/25 mm^2 area × 1/10 mm depth): Platelet count (per μL) = (Number of cells counted/Number of squares counted) × Dilution × 250.

By adjusting the number of squares so that at least 100 platelets are counted, the field error (the statistical error caused by counting a limited number of platelets in the chamber) can be kept in the same range for low platelet counts as for high platelet counts. It has been shown that the CV due to combined field, pipet, and chamber errors is about 11% when at least 100 platelets are counted, and 15% when 40 platelets are counted.

Platelet counts tend to be the least reproducible of the blood cell counts, and the technologist must be vigilant to ensure their accuracy. This includes the readiness to confirm suspicious or abnormal results with a freshly drawn sample. Whenever the platelet count is in question, such as with an instrument flag, the blood film (prepared from EDTA-blood) must be checked to corroborate the count and to detect abnormalities in platelets or other blood elements that may give a false value. Further, because of the low number of platelets counted in the manual method and the high degree of imprecision with severe thrombocytopenia (CV >15%), 7×10^9 platelets/L is the lowest count that should be reported from manual quantitation (Hanseler et al, 1996).

Sources of Error. Blood in EDTA is satisfactory for 5 hours after collection at 20° C and for 24 hours at 4° C, provided that no difficulty was encountered in collection. Platelet clumps present in the chamber imply a maldistribution and negate the reliability of the count; a new sample of blood must be collected. The causes of platelet clumping are likely to be initiation of platelet aggregation and clotting before the blood reaches the anticoagulant; imperfect venipuncture; delay in the anticoagulant contacting the blood; or, in skin puncture technique, delay in sampling. Capillary blood gives similar mean values, but errors are about twice those with venous blood, probably because the platelet level varies in successive drops of blood from the skin puncture wound.

Falsely elevated counts. Fragments of leukocyte cytoplasm that are sometimes numerous in leukemias may falsely elevate the count. The phase-contrast hemocytometer method must be employed in these cases with a correction made based on the ratio of fragments to platelets determined from the blood film.

Falsely low counts. These can occur if platelets adhere to neutrophils (platelet satellitism) or if there is platelet clumping due to agglutinins (Lombarts & deKieviet, 1988), spontaneous aggregation, or incipient clotting due to faulty blood collection. The first two of these phenomena appear to depend on EDTA (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). The reported incidence of EDTA-induced in vitro platelet clumping and pseudothrombocytopenia has ranged from 0.1% (Bartels et al, 1997) to 2% (Lippi et al, 1990). Alterations in platelet histograms or in quantitative cutoff measures derived from them should be used to screen for pseudothrombocytopenia (Bartels et al, 1997).

Reticulated Platelets

Reticulated platelets are those newly released circulating platelets that have residual RNA. Reticulated platelet counts are an estimate of thrombopoiesis (Rapi et al, 1998), analogous to the use of reticulocyte count as an estimate of erythropoiesis. Matic and colleagues (1998) describe an optimized flow-cytometric analysis method after incubating whole blood with thiazole orange, which has a 3000-fold increase in fluorescence after binding to RNA. Phycoerythrin-labeled antibodies directed against GPIb on the surface of the platelet are also in the incubation mixture to distinguish platelets from other cells or debris. Recombinant human erythropoietin seems to improve platelet function in uremia not only by correcting the anemia, but also by increasing young platelets, detected as reticulated platelets (Tassies et al, 1998). Significantly lower median levels of reticulated platelets in frequent plateletpheresis donors than in new donors suggest that repeat platelet donation might lead to relative exhaustion of thrombopoiesis (Stohlawetz et al, 1998). Depending on the conditions of the measurement, published normal values for reticulated platelets vary tremendously from 3% to 20% (Matic et al, 1998).

Increased reticulated platelet values have been reported in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (Koike et al, 1998; Saxton et al, 1998), and hyperthyroidism (Stiegler et al, 1998). In neonates younger than 30 weeks' gestation, the reticulated platelet count was about twice that seen in full-term infants (Peterec et al, 1996). Bone marrow recovery after chemotherapy for acute myeloid leukemia (AML) showed an increase in reticulated platelets after about day 20 (Stohlawetz et al, 1999). *Decreased* reticulated platelet values have been reported in association with aplasia and liver cirrhosis (Koike et al, 1998; Saxton et al, 1998). Sysmex 9 (Lincolnshire, Ill.) has developed an automated method to quantify reticulated platelets using a nucleic acid– specific dye. The immature platelet fraction (IPF) is useful in demonstrating thrombocytopenia due to increased platelet destruction (Briggs et al, 2004).

Reference values for platelet counts are 150 to 450 × 10^9/L. Reference values for MPV are approximately 6.5 to 12 fL in adults.

Physiologic Variation in Platelets

The average platelet count is slightly lower at birth than in older children and adults, and may vary from 84 to 478 × 10^9/L (Barone, 1999). After the first week of life, the reference intervals are those of the adult. In women, the platelet count may fall at the time of menstruation. Women have higher platelet (and WBC and neutrophil) counts than men, and Africans (and less so Afro-Caribbeans) have lower platelet, WBC, and neutrophil counts than Caucasians (Bain, 1996). Reported means (95% reference ranges) for platelet counts were 218 (143 to 332) for Caucasian men and 183 (115 to 290) for African men versus 246 (169 to 358) for Caucasian women and 207 (125 to 342) for African women. Among Australians west of Sydney and 49 years of age or older, Tsang and colleagues (1998) list 247 (128 to 365) for mean platelet counts for men and 275 (147 to 403) for women.

INSTRUMENT TECHNOLOGY

Because of the relatively low cost, reduced time (for labor and results), and increased accuracy of the automated analyzers, semiautomated instruments are rarely used in clinical practice these days. Speed of performance, elimination of visual fatigue of the technician, and improved precision are decisive advantages of the electronic cell counter over the hemocytometer/manual methods of performing blood cell counts. Electronic counting instruments are discussed in the following section.

Hematology Analyzers

The multichannel instruments used in the modern laboratory for performing cell counts are based on the principles of electrical impedance, light scattering, radiofrequency conductivity, and/or cytochemistry (Ward, 2000). The principles of these techniques are discussed in the following section. Combining hematology instrumentation with laboratory automation allows for reduction in preanalytic and postanalytic variables and positive identification of samples for processing and analysis, storage, and retrieval.

Electrical Impedance

Cells passing through an aperture through which a current is flowing cause changes in electrical resistance, which is counted as voltage pulses. This principle, illustrated in Figure 30-6, is used in instruments marketed by Coulter (e.g., LH series, GEN-S, HmX, A-T; Beckman Coulter Inc., Brea, Calif.), Sysmex (e.g., XE and XT series; Sysmex America Inc., Mundelein, Ill.), Abbott (e.g., Cell-Dyn, 3700, Ruby, Sapphire; Abbott Diagnostics, Santa Clara, Calif.), ABX (e.g., Micros 60, Pentra series; ABX Diagnostics Inc., Irvine, Calif.), and others. An accurately diluted suspension of blood (CS) is made in an isotonic conductive solution that preserves the cell shape. The instrument has a glass cylinder (GC) that can be filled with the conducting fluid and has within it an electrode (E2) and an aperture (A) of 100 μm diameter in its wall. Just outside the glass cylinder is another electrode (E1). The cylinder is connected to a U-shaped glass tube that is partially filled with mercury (M), and that has two electrical contacts (EC1 and EC2). The glass cylinder is immersed in the suspension of cells to be counted (CS) and is filled with conductive solution and closed by a valve (V). A current now flows through the aperture between E1 and E2. As mercury moves up the tube, the cell suspension is drawn through the aperture into the cylinder. Each cell that passes through the aperture displaces an equal volume of conductive fluid, increasing the electrical resistance and creating a voltage pulse, because its resistance is much greater than that of the conductive solution. The pulses, which are proportional in height to the volume of the cells, are counted. This is the Coulter principle.

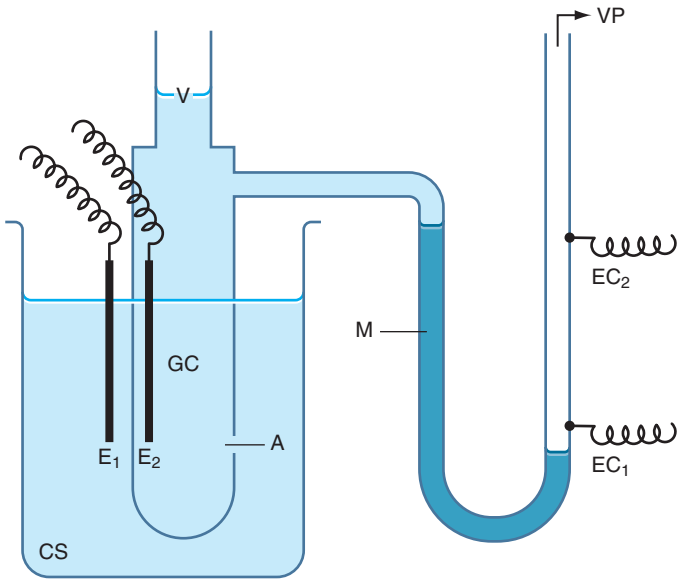


Figure 30-6 **Schematic diagram of particle counter in which changes in electrical resistance are counted as voltage pulses.** *A,* Aperture; *CS,* cell suspension; E_1 and E_2, platinum electrodes; EC_1 and EC_2, electrical contacts; *GC,* glass cylinder; *M,* mercury column; *V,* valve; *VP,* vacuum pump. (Adapted from Ackerman P: *Electronic instrumentation in the clinical laboratory,* Boston, 1972, Little, Brown, p 140.)

In the simplest system, the counting mechanism is started when the mercury contacts EC1 and stopped when it contacts EC2; during this time, the cells are counted in a volume of suspension exactly equal to the volume of the glass tubing between contact wires EC1 and EC2. If two or more cells enter the aperture simultaneously, they will be counted as one pulse; this produces a coincidence error for which corrections are now automatically made by analyzers. A threshold setting or pulse discriminator allows the exclusion of pulses below an adjustable height on certain counters. On others, a second threshold also excludes the counting of pulses above a certain height. One therefore counts only the cells in the "window" between the two settings. By systematically changing each threshold by given increments, one can determine a frequency distribution of relative cell volumes. Such cell size distributions can be automatically plotted and are valuable in the study of red cells, white cells, or platelets when two or more changing populations of cells are present. This is the basis for determination of the blood cell histograms, which are now routinely produced by the multichannel hematology analyzers.

Radiofrequency Conductivity

Conductivity is determined using a high-frequency electromagnetic probe that provides information on the cells' internal constituents (chemical composition, nuclear characteristics, and granular constituents) by permeating the lipid layer of a cell's membrane. Conductivity is especially helpful in differentiating between cells of like size such as small lymphocytes and basophils (Burns et al, 1992; Bentley et al, 1993). This principle is utilized in instruments marketed by Coulter (e.g., LH series, GENfi-S, HmX, A-T; Beckman Coulter Inc., Brea, Calif.) and Sysmex (XE-2100, XT 2000i, HST-N; Sysmex America Inc., Mundelein, Ill.).

Light Scattering

In the electro-optical analyzers (Fig. 30-7), a light-sensitive detector measures light scattering. All major multichannel analyzers now employ optical methods, at least to some extent. The size of the pulse detected is proportional to the size of the particle (WBC, RBC, or platelet). Although the precision of the instruments employing optical methods is equivalent to that of systems utilizing electrical impedance, some systems use a combination of the two methods to supply an internal comparison. Forward angle scatter of a laser-generated monochromatic light determines cell surface characteristics, morphology, and granulation. Measurement of light scatter at multiple angles allows enhanced differentiation of cell types. For example, in the Abbott Cell Dyn, four simultaneous light-scattering measurements are made on each white cell. Zero-degree forward angle is primarily affected by and thus determines cell size. Ten-degree light scatter is an indicator of cell structure or complexity and is especially helpful in resolving basophils and separating all cell populations. Ninety-degree light scatter separates granulated cells and is termed **lobularity.** Depolarized 90-degree light scattering resolves eosinophils because of their large crystalline granularity. Abnormal cells can have distinctive locations in the size-versus-complexity scatterplot and help to determine WBC suspect flags (Cornbleet et al, 1992), such as for blasts, variant lymphs, bands, and immature granulocytes. Fluorescent deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) dyes are used in the Abbott automated hematology systems to enumerate nucleated RBCs and identify populations of atypical lymphocytes and nonviable WBCs. Adaptive gating technology permits better separation of overlapping clusters of cell types. Suspect flags are generated when the distinction cannot be clearly delineated, as is often the case in the presence of abnormal WBC populations or interfering substances.

Cytochemistry

A method unique to the Siemens automated hematology series (Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics, Deerfield, Ill.) is the use of a cytochemical

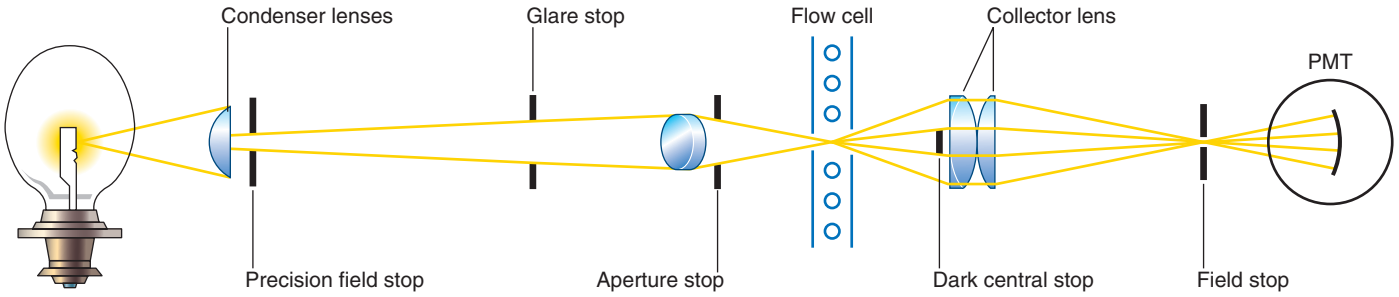


Figure 30-7 Schematic diagram of the electro-optical cell counter. Light is focused on the flow cell. Only light scattered by a cell reaches the photomultiplier tube (PMT), which converts to an electrical pulse. (From Mansberg HP: Optical techniques of particle counting. In *Advances in automated analysis,* vol 1, Technicon International Congress, New York, 1970, Mediad, with permission. Reprinted courtesy of Technicon Instrument Corporation, Tarrytown, N.Y.)

reaction to determine the peroxidase activity of white blood cells. The mean peroxidase index (MPXI), a measure of neutrophil-staining intensity, is determined for each specimen. The relative positivity seen in neutrophils, eosinophils, and monocytes is used in conjunction with data derived from light scatter to determine the WBC differential (Simson, 1986). ABX Diagnostics utilizes a cytochemical reagent that fixes the WBCs in their native state and subsequently stains their intracellular and plasmic membranes with chlorazol black E (Clinical Case Studies: Interpretation Guide for ABX 5-Part Diff Hematology Analyzers, ABX Horiba Diagnostics, Montpelier, France).

Reporting/Flagging

Each instrumentation system combines the data generated by these methods in their own configuration to provide a five- or six-part WBC differential along with RBC morphology and platelet parameters (Fig. 30-8). The principles of measurement specific to selected systems are detailed in Table 30-5. Data generated by the instrument that are not acceptable based on instrument- or user-defined criteria are flagged to alert the technologist that reporting the sample requires further investigation. Data management systems now include sophisticated programs that utilize user-defined criteria to determine reflex and repeat testing, including automated slide making and staining. Extreme care must be taken when defining these criteria, as the addition of each lessens the advantage provided by automating the process. The best configurations are developed with the patient population in mind. In addition, follow-up should be tailored to minimize the extended time necessary to derive the correct result.

Sources of Error

Table 30-4 lists various causes of erroneous results obtained from automated cell counters.

Automated Differential Leukocyte Counting

Because the differential leukocyte count is nonspecific, nonprecise, error-prone, usually labor intensive, expensive to perform, and of limited clinical significance as a screening test, some investigators have suggested that it may be prudent to discontinue use of the differential count as an inpatient screening test for adults (Connelly et al, 1982). Automation of the differential count eliminates some of the detractions. Ideally, requirements for the automated differential leukocyte counting system should include the following:

1. The distribution of cells analyzed should be identical to that in the blood.
2. All leukocytes usually found in blood diseases should be accurately identified, or detected and "flagged" in some way.
3. The speed of the process should enable a large number of cells to be counted to minimize statistical error.
4. The instrument should be cost-effective (Bentley & Lewis, 1977).

Impedance counters and flow cytometer systems and their differential counts are discussed in the Instrument Technology section earlier in the chapter.

The automated systems have the advantage of rapidly analyzing larger numbers of cells and significantly reducing the statistical error of counting.

Disadvantages include that the categories of cells are not completely consonant with those with which we are familiar on Romanowsky's-stained films. An "unclassified" category is difficult to interpret. When an abnormal result occurs, a film must be made and examined. Because of concern regarding the instrument flags, each laboratory should devise a policy for blood film examination and visual counting when indicated. Camden (1993) provides guiding questions to be asked in selecting a new hematology analyzer for your laboratory. The ICSH (1984b) also published a protocol for evaluation of automated blood cell counters.

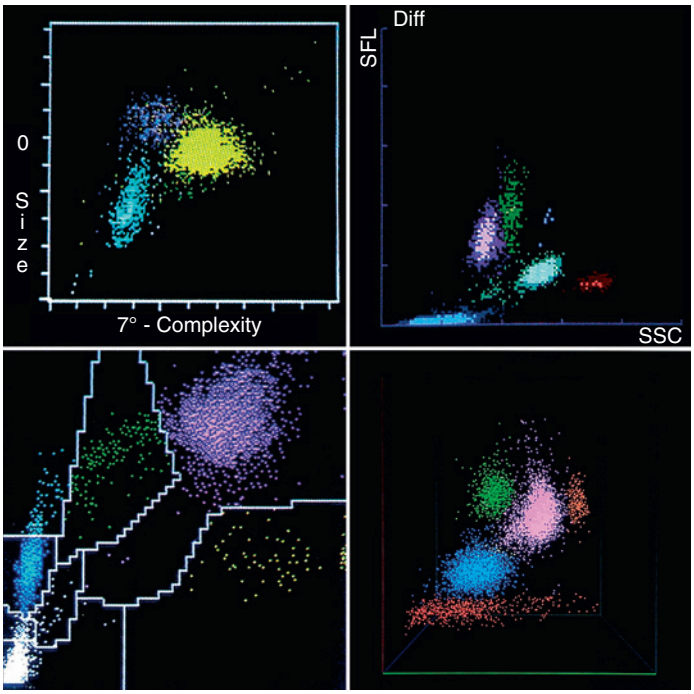


Figure 30-8 White blood cell (WBC) scattergrams/cytograms. *Top left,* Abbott CELL-DYN 4000 WBC scatterplot, light scatter vs. volume. *Top right,* Sysmex XT 2000i, WBC scattergram, side-scattered light vs. side fluorescence. *Bottom left,* Siemens Advia 120, WBC peroxidase cytogram. *Bottom right,* Coulter LH 750, WBC scattergram, light scatter vs. volume.

TABLE 30-5
Principles Used by Various Multichannel Instruments in the Clinical Laboratory

	METHOD			
Instrument	**Impedance**	**Conductivity**	**Light Scatter**	**Cytochemistry**
Abbott	x	x	x	
ABX	x		x	x
Siemensx			x	x
Coulter	x	x	x	
Sysmex	x	x	x	

Digital Image Processing

A uniformly made and stained blood film is placed on a motor-driven microscope stage. A computer controls scanning the slide and stopping it

when leukocyte(s) are in the field. The optical details (e.g., nuclear and cytoplasmic size, density, shape, color) are recorded by a camera in digital form; these characteristics are compared with a memory bank of such characteristics for the different cell types. If the pattern fits that of a normal cell type, it is identified as such; otherwise, the cell is classified as other or unknown. The coordinates of the unknown cells are kept by the instrument and re-located at the end of the count, so that the technologist can classify them (Lapen, 1982; Parthenis & Metaxaki-Kossionides C, 1992; Mukherjee et al, 2004).

Automated Reticulocyte Counting

Many of the same principles applied in determination of the WBC differential may be utilized to determine reticulocyte counts, resulting in enhanced precision and increased accuracy in routine practice (Metzger & Charache, 1987). Depending on the specific model of analyzer, this process may be semiautomated or fully automated. All methods rely on the addition of a stain or dye to detect the RNA content of the RBC. Such stains include new methylene blue (NMB), oxazine, auramine O, polymethine, and thiazole orange. Methods of detection include impedance, light scatter, absorption, and fluorescence intensity. Reticulocyte fractions are separated based on RNA content, with the more immature cells containing the highest amount of reticulum. The immature reticulocyte fraction (IRF) quantitatively describes the youngest reticulocytes with the greatest staining intensity. This parameter allows early detection of an increased erythropoietic response, important in determining the response of the bone marrow recovering from chemotherapy or transplant or the response to erythropoietin therapy. It may also be used in conjunction with the absolute reticulocyte count to classify anemias (Davis & Biegelow, 1994; Davis, 1996; d'Onofrio et al, 1996). The reticulocyte Hb content (CHr) provides a sensitive index by which to identify hypochromic RBCs. The reticulocyte hemoglobin content, CHr and RET-He, reported by Siemens (Tarrytown, NY) and Sysmex (Lincolnshire, Ill.) provides a sensitive index by which to identify hypochromic RBCs. It has also been shown to be useful in evaluating iron deficiency in cancer patients (Peerschke et al, 2014).

BLOOD FILM EXAMINATION

Microscopic examination of the blood spread on a glass slide or coverslip yields useful information regarding all formed elements of the blood. The process of making thin blood film causes mechanical trauma to the cells. Also the cells flatten on the glass during drying, and fixation and staining involve exposure to methanol and water. Some artifacts are inevitably introduced, but these can be minimized by good technique.

EXAMINATION OF WET PREPARATIONS

It is sometimes advantageous to examine fresh blood under the microscope to avoid artifacts of fixation or staining. This is readily accomplished by sealing a small drop of blood diluted with isotonic sodium chloride beneath a coverslip on a glass slide. Buffered glutaraldehyde will preserve the cells for reexamination at a later time. Petroleum jelly or xipamide (Aquaphor) may be used to seal the edges of the coverslip to the slide. Wet preparations are used to detect sickling, and spherocytes may be readily detected in this manner. Wet preparations may be examined to ensure that the erythrocyte abnormalities seen on fixed films are not artifacts of drying or staining.

MAKING AND STAINING BLOOD FILMS

Examination of the blood film is an important part of the hematologic evaluation. The reliability of the information obtained depends heavily on well-made and well-stained films that are systematically examined. Blood films should be prepared immediately if possible. Three methods of making films are described: the two-slide or wedge method, the cover glass method, and the spinner method.

Wedge Method

Place a drop of blood 2 to 3 mm in diameter about 1 cm from the end of a clean, dust-free slide that is on a flat surface. With the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, hold the end of a second (spreader) slide against the surface of the first slide at an angle of 30 to 45 degrees, and draw it back to contact the drop of blood. Allow the blood to spread and form the angle between the two slides. Push the "spreader slide" at a moderate speed forward until all the blood has been spread into a moderately thin film. The spreader slide should be clean, dry, and slightly narrower than the first slide, so that the edges can be easily examined with the microscope.

The slides should be rapidly air dried by waving the slides or using an electrical fan. The thickness of the film can be adjusted by changing the angle of the spreader slide or the speed of spreading, or by using a smaller or larger drop of blood. At a given speed, increasing the angle of the spreader slide will increase the thickness of the film. At a given angle, increasing the speed with which the spreader slide is pushed will also increase the thickness of the film. The film should not cover the entire surface of the slide. A good film includes a thick portion and a thin portion and a gradual transition from one to the other. The film should have a smooth, even appearance and be free from ridges, waves, or holes. The edge of the spreader must be absolutely smooth. If it is rough, the film has ragged tails containing many leukocytes. In films of optimal thickness, some overlap of red cells is seen in much of the film, but with even distribution and separation of red cells toward the thin tail. The faster the film is air dried, the better is the spreading of individual cells on the slide. Slow drying (e.g., in humid weather) results in contraction artifacts of the cells. The slide may be labeled with a lead pencil on the frosted end or directly on the thicker end of the blood film.

Cover Glass Method

No. 1 or 1½ cover glasses 22 mm square are recommended. Touch a cover glass to the top of a small drop of blood without touching the skin, and place it, blood side down, crosswise on another cover glass, so that the corners appear as an eight-point star. If the drop is not too large and the cover glasses are perfectly clean, the blood will spread out evenly and quickly in a thin layer between the two surfaces. Just as it stops spreading, pull the cover glasses quickly but firmly apart on a plane parallel to their surfaces. The blood usually is much more evenly spread on one of the cover glasses than it is on the other. Cover glasses should be placed film side up on clean paper and allowed to dry in the air, or they may be inserted back to back in slits made in a cardboard box. Films from venous blood may be prepared similarly by placing a drop of blood on a coverslip and proceeding as described.

Spinner Method

Blood films that combine the advantages of easy handling of the wedge slide and uniform distribution of cells of the cover glass preparation may be made with special types of centrifuges known as **spinners** (Rogers, 1973). The spinner slide produces a uniform blood film, in which all cells are separated (a monolayer) and randomly distributed. White cells can be easily identified at any spot in the film. On a wedge smear, disproportions (1) of monocytes occur at the tip of the feather edge, (2) of neutrophils are seen just in from the feather edge, and (3) of both occur at the lateral edges of the film (Rogers, 1973). This has little practical and perhaps some historic significance.

Most manufacturers of automated hematology analyzers now offer slide maker-stainers. Details are available from the vendors.

Blood Stains

The aniline dyes used in blood work are of two general classes: basic dyes, such as methylene blue; and acid dyes, such as eosin. Nuclei and certain other structures in the blood are stained by the basic dyes and, hence, are called **basophilic.** Structures that take up only acid dyes are called **acidophilic,** or **eosinophilic.** Other structures stained by a combination of the two are called **neutrophilic.**

Polychrome methylene blue and **eosin stains** are the outgrowth of the original time-consuming Romanowsky's method and are widely used. They stain differentially most normal and abnormal structures in the blood. The basic components of thiazine include methylene blue (tetramethylthionine) and, in varying proportions, its analogs produced by oxidative demethylation: azure B (trimethylthionine); azure A (asymmetrical dimethylthionine); symmetrical dimethylthionine; and azure C (monomethylthionine) (Lillie, 1977). The acidic component eosin is derived from a xanthene skeleton. Most Romanowsky's stains are dissolved in methyl alcohol and combine fixation with staining. Among the best known methods are Giemsa and Wright's stains.

Wright's Stain

This is a methyl alcoholic solution of eosin and a complex mixture of thiazines, including methylene blue (usually 50% to 75%), azure B (10% to 25%), and other derivatives (Lubrano et al, 1977). Wright's stain certified by the Biological Stain Commission is commercially available as a solution ready for use or as a powder. The buffer solution (pH 6.4) contains primary (monobasic) potassium phosphate (KH_2PO_4), anhydrous 6.63 g; secondary (dibasic) sodium phosphate (Na_2HPO_4), anhydrous 2.56 g; and distilled water to make 1 L. A more alkaline buffer (pH 6.7)

may be prepared by using 5.13 g of the potassium salt and 4.12 g of the sodium salt.

Procedure

1. To prevent the plasma background of the film from staining blue, blood films should be stained within a few hours of preparation or fixed if they must be kept without staining.
2. Fixation and staining may be accomplished by immersing the slides in reagent-filled jars or by covering horizontally supported slides or coverslips with the reagents. With the latter method, covering the film with copious stain avoids evaporation, which leads to precipitation.
3. Fixation is provided for 1 to 2 minutes with absolute methanol.
4. The slide is next exposed to undiluted stain solution for 2 minutes. Then, without removing the stain from the horizontal slide, an equal amount of buffer is carefully added and is mixed by blowing gently.
5. The stain is flushed from the horizontal slide with water. Washing for longer than 30 seconds reduces the blue staining. The back of the slide is cleaned with gauze.
6 The slide is allowed to air dry in a tilted position.
7. Cover glasses are mounted film side down on a slide with Canada balsam or other mounting medium.

Films stained well with Wright's stain have a pink color when viewed with the naked eye. Under low power, the cells should be evenly distributed. The red cells are pink, not lemon yellow or red. There should be a minimum of precipitate. The color of the film should be uniform. The blood cells should be free from artifacts, such as vacuoles. The nuclei of leukocytes are purple, the chromatin and parachromatin clearly differentiated, and the cytoplasmic neutrophilic granules tan in color. The eosinophilic granules are red-orange, and each is distinctly discernible. The basophil has dark purple granules. Platelets have dark lilac granules. Bacteria (if present) are blue. The cytoplasm of lymphocytes is generally light blue; that of monocytes has a faint blue-gray tinge. Malarial parasites have sky-blue cytoplasm and red-purple chromatin. The colors are prone to fade if the preparation is mounted in balsam of poor quality or is exposed to the light.

Staining Problems

Excessively blue stain. Thick films, prolonged staining time, inadequate washing, or too high an alkalinity of stain or diluent tends to cause excessive basophilia. In such films, the erythrocytes appear blue or green, the nuclear chromatin is deep blue to black, and the granules of the neutrophils are deeply overstained and appear large and prominent. The granules of the eosinophils are blue or gray. Staining for a shorter time or using less stain and more diluent may correct the problem. If these steps are ineffective, the buffer may be too alkaline, and a new one with a lower pH should be prepared.

Excessively pink stain. Insufficient staining, prolonged washing time, mounting the coverslips before they are dry, or too high an acidity of the stain or buffer may cause excessive acidophilia. In such films, the erythrocytes are bright red or orange, the nuclear chromatin is pale blue, and the granules of the eosinophils are sparkling brilliant red. One of the causes of the increased acidity is exposure of the stain or buffer to acid fumes. The problem may be a low pH of the buffer, or it may be the methyl alcohol, which is prone to develop formic acid as a result of oxidation on standing.

Other staining problems. Inadequately stained red cells, nuclei, or eosinophilic granules may be due to understaining or excessive washing. Prolonging the staining or reducing the washing may solve the problem.

Precipitate on the film may be due to unclean slides; drying during the period of staining; inadequate washing of the slide at the end of the staining period, especially failure to hold the slide horizontally during the initial washing; inadequate filtration of the stain; or permitting dust to settle on the slide or smear.

Other Stains

Besides Wright's stain, Romanowsky-type stains include a number of others: Giemsa, Leishman's, Jenner's, May-Grünwald, MacNeal's, and various combinations. Some have been particularly recommended for certain purposes, such as Giemsa stain for excellence in staining malarial parasites and protozoa.

Reference Method

Studies have demonstrated the ability of the combination of just two dyes—azure B and eosin Y—to give the full range of colors provided by ideal Romanowsky's staining of blood and marrow cells. This is the reference method for Romanowsky's staining (ICSH, 1984a).

Automated Slide Stainer

Automated slide stainers are being used in several laboratories for routine hematology and microbiology slides. The stainer is a compact instrument with microprocessor control for flexibility in staining applications. Several slides can be stained uniformly in minutes. Typically, any automated stainer has several user-definable programs to choose from. Staining problems are encountered even with the use of automatic stainers and must be dealt with on an individual basis.

Review of Peripheral Smear

The practicing pathologist may be called upon to review peripheral blood smears, to confirm or compare his or her assessment with that of the technologist, and to review the findings with clinical colleagues at the multihead microscope. Although this is a daily task for the hematopathologist, the general pathologist examines the peripheral smear less frequently and the bone marrow preparation even less so. Following is a summary of the main features that he or she should evaluate.

ERYTHROCYTES

In the blood from a healthy person, the erythrocytes, when not crowded together, appear as circular, homogeneous disks of nearly uniform size, ranging from 6 to 8 µm in diameter (Fig. 30-9). However, even in normal blood, individual cells may be as small as 5.5 µm and as large as 9.5 µm. The center of each is somewhat paler than the periphery. In disease, erythrocytes vary in their Hb content, size, shape, staining properties, and structure.

Color

Hemoglobin Content

The depth of staining furnishes a rough guide to the amount of Hb in red cells, and the terms **normochromic, hypochromic,** and **hyperchromic** are used to describe this feature of red cells. Normochromic refers to normal intensity of staining (see Fig. 30-9). When the amount of Hb is diminished, the central pale area becomes larger and paler. This is known as **hypochromia.** The MCH and MCHC are usually decreased (Fig. 30-10). In megaloblastic anemia, because the red cells are larger and hence thicker, many stain deeply and have less central pallor (Fig. 30-11). These cells are hyperchromic because they have an increased MCH, but the MCHC is normal. In hereditary spherocytosis (Fig. 30-12), the cells are also hyperchromic; although the MCH is normal, the MCHC is usually increased because of a reduced surface/volume ratio. The presence of hypochromic cells and normochromic cells in the same film is called **anisochromia** or, sometimes, a **dimorphic anemia** (Fig. 30-13). This is characteristic of sideroblastic anemias but also is found some weeks after iron therapy for iron deficiency anemia, or in a hypochromic anemia after transfusion with normal cells.

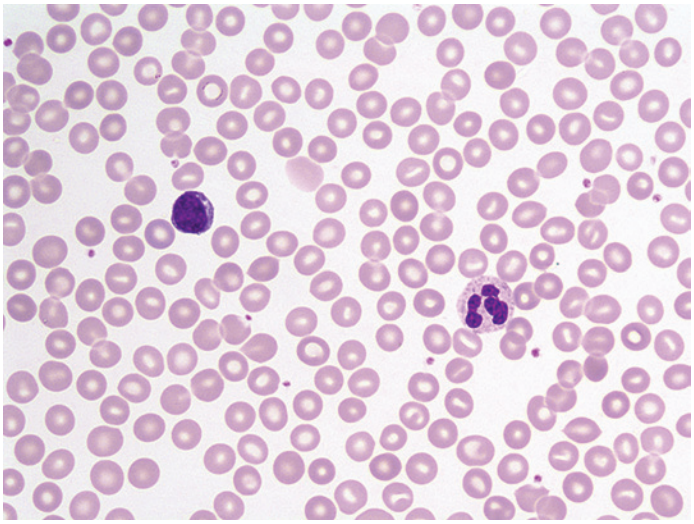


Figure 30-9 **Normal peripheral smear.** Erythrocytes appear as circular, homogeneous disks of nearly uniform size, ranging from 6 to 8 µm in diameter, with central pallor not exceeding more than one third of the cell. On average, the red cells are approximately the same size as the nucleus of a small lymphocyte (500×).

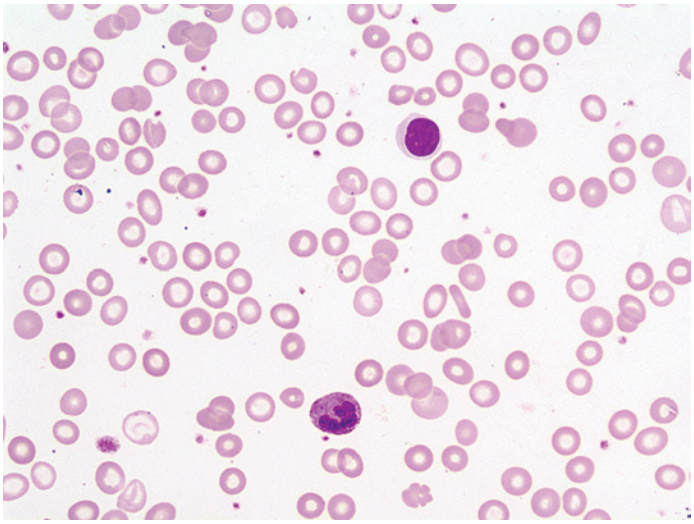


Figure 30-10 Microcytic hypochromic red cells in iron deficiency anemia. Red cells are hypochromic—the amount of hemoglobin per cell is decreased, and the central pale area becomes larger (more than one third) (500×).

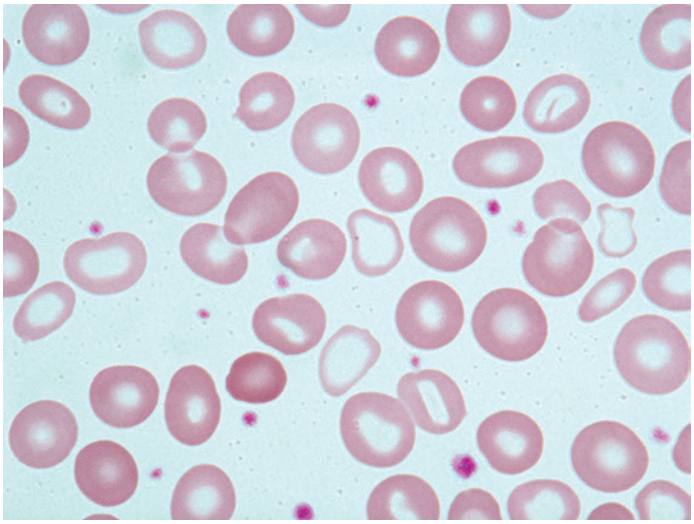


Figure 30-13 Dimorphic anemia. Anisocytosis and anisochromia characterized by the presence of microcytic hypochromic cells, normocytic cells, and few macrocytes (1000×).

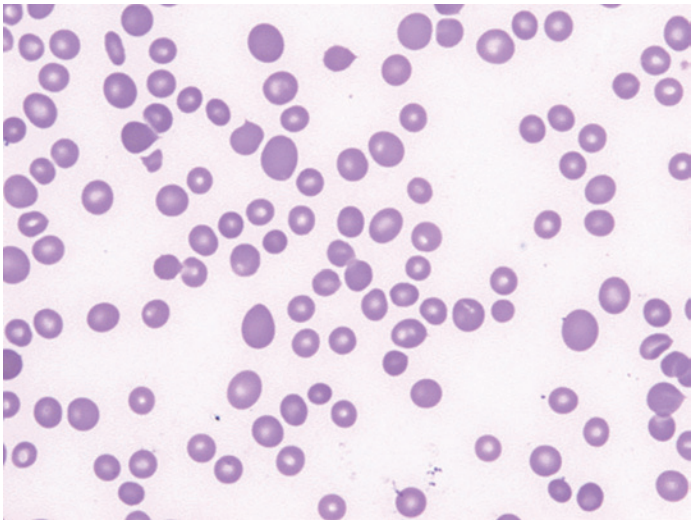


Figure 30-11 Macrocytes. Red cells are larger and thicker, stain deeply, and lack central pallor (500×).

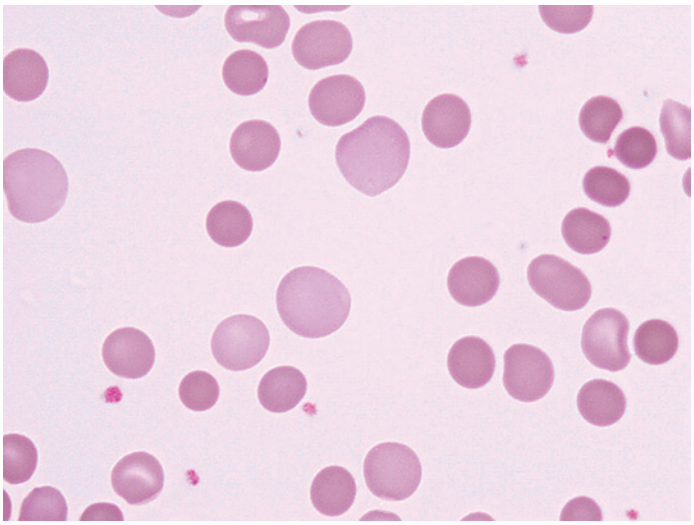


Figure 30-14 Polychromatophilia. Polychromatophilic red cells are young red cells, larger than mature red cells; they lack central pallor and appear slightly basophilic on Wright's stain. They are called *reticulocytes* when stained supravitally with brilliant cresyl blue (1000×).

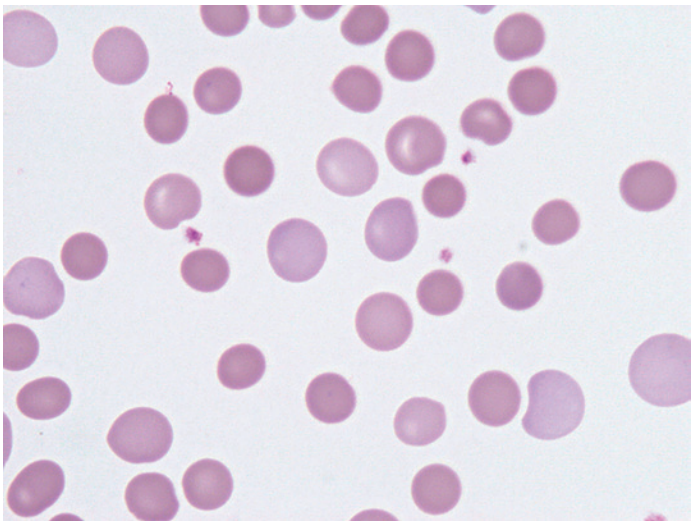


Figure 30-12 Hereditary spherocytosis. Spherocytes are nearly perfectly round in shape, smaller than normal red cells, and lack central pallor (hyperchromic) (1000×).

Polychromatophilia

A blue-gray tint to the red cells (polychromatophilia or polychromasia) is a combination of the affinity of Hb for acid stains and the affinity of RNA for basic stains. The presence of residual RNA in the red cell indicates that it is a young red cell that has been in the blood for 1 to 2 days. These cells are larger than mature red cells and may lack central pallor (Fig. 30-14). Young cells with residual RNA are polychromatophilic red cells on air-dried films stained with Wright's stain but are reticulocytes when stained supravitally with brilliant cresyl blue. Therefore, increased polychromasia implies reticulocytosis; it is most marked in hemolysis and in acute blood loss.

Size

The red cells may be abnormally small, or microcytes (see Fig. 30-10), or abnormally large, or macrocytes (see Fig. 30-11), or they may show abnormal variation in size (anisocytosis) (see Fig. 30-13). Anisocytosis is a feature of most anemias; when it is marked in degree, both macrocytes and microcytes are usually present. In analyzing causes of anemia, the terms **microcytic** and **macrocytic** have greatest meaning when considered as cell volume rather than cell diameter. The mean cell volume is measured directly on a multichannel analyzer. We perceive the diameter directly from the blood film and infer volume (and the Hb content) from it. Thus,

the red cells in Figure 30-10 are microcytic; because they are hypochromic, they are thinner than normal and the diameter is not decreased proportionately to the volume. Also, the mean cell volume in the blood of the patient with spherocytosis (see Fig. 30-12) is in the normal range; although many of the cells have a small diameter, their volume is not decreased because they are thicker than normal.

Shape

Variation in shape is called **poikilocytosis.** Any abnormally shaped cell is a poikilocyte. Oval, pear-shaped, teardrop-shaped, saddle-shaped, helmet-shaped, and irregularly shaped cells may be seen in a single case of anemia such as megaloblastic anemia (Fig. 30-15).

Elliptocytes are most abundant in hereditary elliptocytosis (Fig. 30-16), in which most cells are elliptical; this is a dominant condition that is only occasionally associated with hemolytic anemia. Elliptocytes are seen in normal persons' blood but account for less than 10% of the cells. They are more common, however, in iron deficiency anemia (see Fig. 30-10), myelofibrosis with myeloid metaplasia, megaloblastic anemia, and sickle cell anemia.

Spherocytes are nearly spherical erythrocytes, in contradistinction to normal biconcave disks. Their diameter is smaller than normal. They lack the central pale area or have a smaller, often eccentric, pale area (because the cell is thicker and can come to rest somewhat tilted instead of perfectly flattened on the slide). They are found in hereditary spherocytosis (HS) (see Fig. 30-12), in some cases of autoimmune hemolytic anemia (AHA), and in some conditions in which a direct physical or chemical injury has occurred to the cells, such as from heat (Fig. 30-17). In each of these three instances, tiny bits of membrane (in excess of Hb) are removed from the adult red cells, leaving the cells with a decreased surface/volume ratio. In HS and AHA, this occurs in the reticuloendothelial system; in other instances (e.g., in the patient with body burns), this may occur intravascularly.

Target cells are erythrocytes that are thinner than normal (leptocytes) and when stained show a peripheral rim of Hb with a dark, central, Hb-containing area. They are found in obstructive jaundice (Fig. 30-18), in which there appears to be an augmentation of the cell surface membrane; in the postsplenectomy state, in which there is a lack of normal reduction of surface membrane as the cell ages; in any hypochromic anemia, especially thalassemia; and in Hb C disease.

Schistocytes (cell fragments) indicate the presence of hemolysis, whether in megaloblastic anemia, severe burns (see Fig. 30-17), or microangiopathic hemolytic anemia (Fig. 30-19). The latter process may be associated with small blood vessel disease or with fibrin in small blood vessels and results in intravascular fragmentation; particularly characteristic are helmet cells and triangular cells.

Acanthocytes are irregularly spiculated red cells in which the ends of the spicules are bulbous and rounded (Fig. 30-20); they are seen in

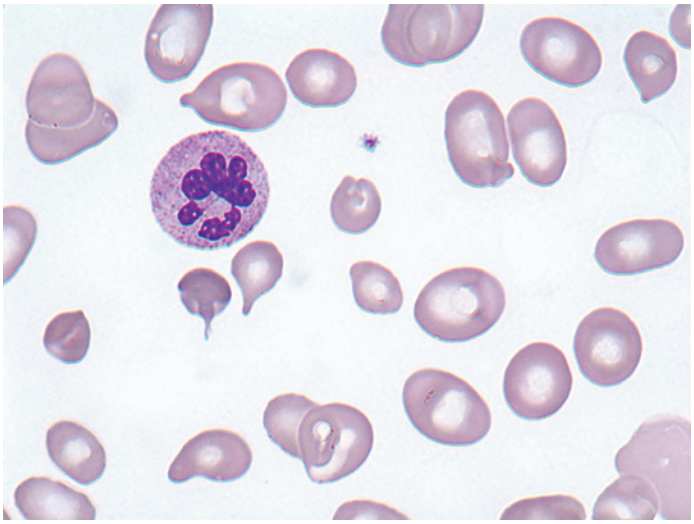


Figure 30-15 Poikilocytosis. Variation in shape of red cells. Abnormally shaped cells include oval, pear-shaped, and other irregularly shaped cells (1000×).

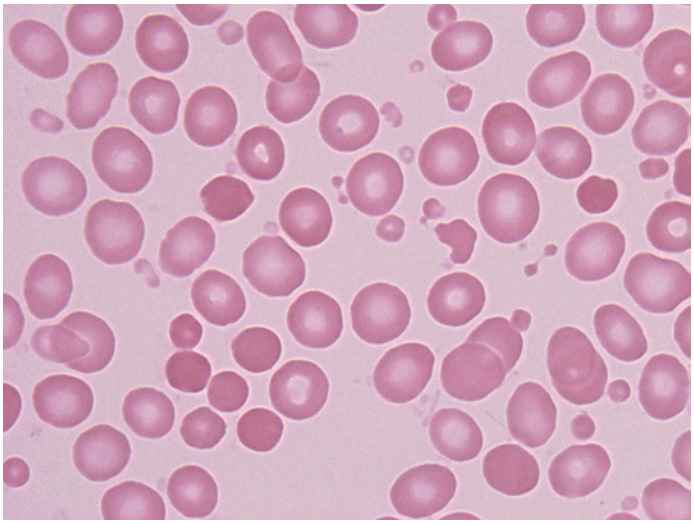


Figure 30-17 Thermal injury. Tiny bits of membrane (in excess of hemoglobin) are removed from the red cell surface, leading to formation of spherocytes (1000×).

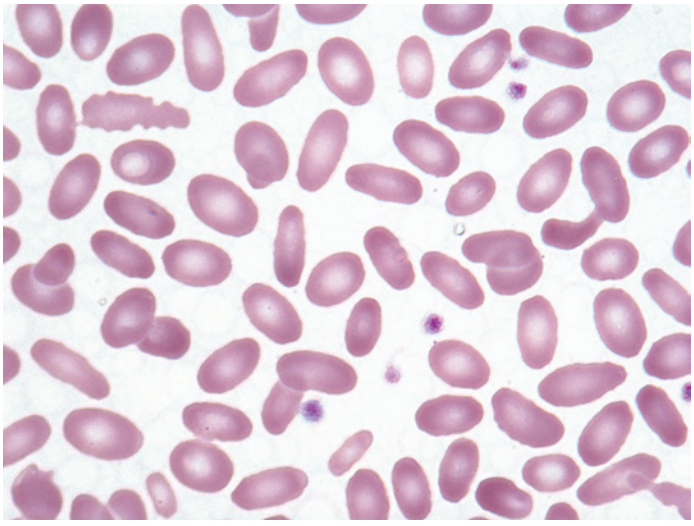


Figure 30-16 Hereditary elliptocytosis. Most cells are elliptocytes. They are seen in a normal person's blood, but usually account for less than 10% of cells. They are also common in iron deficiency anemia, myelofibrosis, megaloblastic anemia, and sickle cell anemia (1000×).

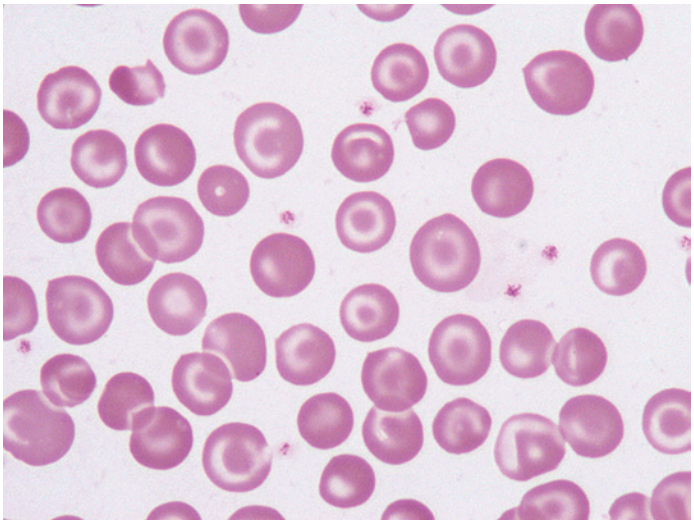


Figure 30-18 Target cells. Red cells with a thin membrane, peripheral rim of hemoglobin (Hb), and dark, central, Hb-containing area. They are frequently seen in Hb C disease, in hypochromic anemia, and in liver disease (1000×).

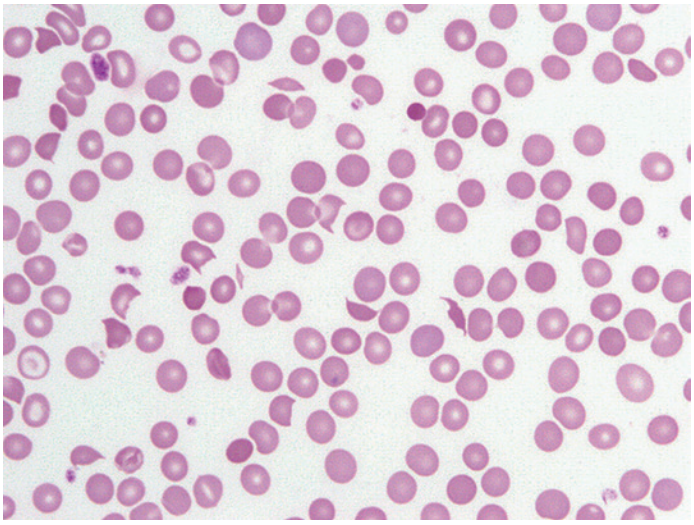


Figure 30-19 Schistocytes. Presence of cell fragments is indicative of hemolysis. Schistocytes can be seen in several conditions, including microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, megaloblastic anemia, burns, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (500×).

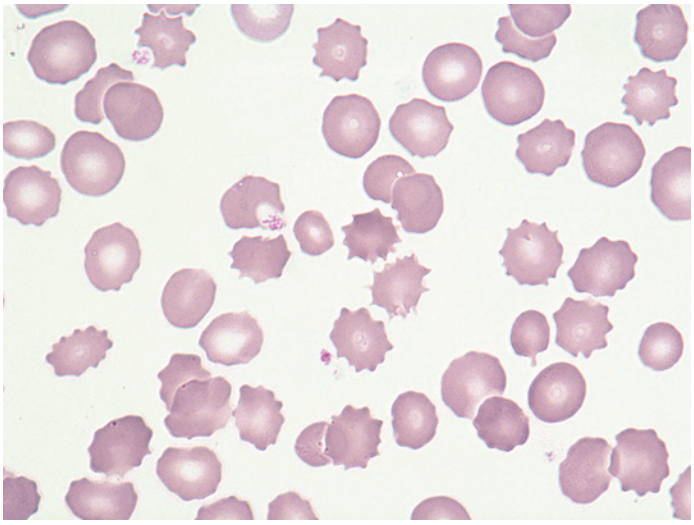


Figure 30-21 Echinocytes. Regularly contracted cells with sharp ends; may occur as an artifact during film preparation or as the result of hyperosmolarity or decreased adenosine triphosphate due to several causes (1000×).

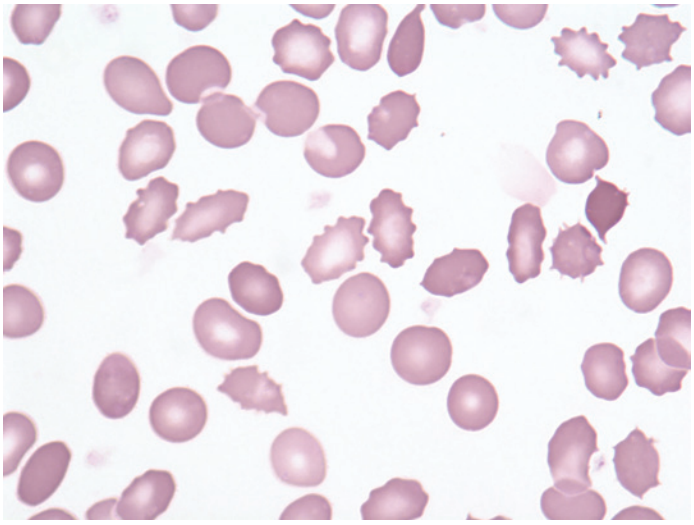


Figure 30-20 Acanthocytes. Irregularly spiculated cells with bulbous and rounded ends, frequently seen in abetalipoproteinemia or certain cases of liver disease (1000×).

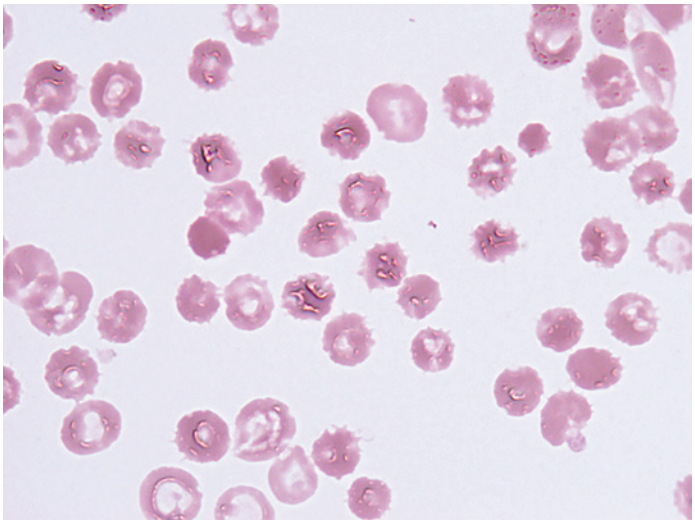


Figure 30-22 Artifact. Tiny pits or bubbles in the red cells. They can be caused by a small amount of water contaminating the Wright's stain or by insufficient slide drying (500×).

abetalipoproteinemia, hereditary or acquired, and in certain cases of liver disease. Burr cells or echinocytes (Fig. 30-21) are regularly contracted cells that may commonly occur as an artifact during preparation of films, or they may be due to hyperosmolarity, or to the discocyte-echinocyte transformation. In vivo, the latter may be associated with decreased red cell adenosine triphosphate (ATP) resulting from any of several causes. Artifacts resembling crenated cells consisting of tiny pits or bubbles indenting the red cells (Fig. 30-22) may be caused by a small amount of water contaminating the Wright's stain (or absolute methanol, if this is used first as a fixative).

Structure

Basophilic Stippling (Punctate Basophilia)

This is characterized by the presence, within the erythrocyte, of irregular basophilic granules, which vary from fine to coarse (Fig. 30-23). They stain deep blue with Wright's stain. The erythrocyte containing them may stain normally in other respects, or it may exhibit polychromatophilia. Fine stippling is commonly seen when there is increased polychromatophilia and, therefore, with increased production of red cells. Coarse stippling may be seen in lead poisoning or other diseases with impaired Hb synthesis, in megaloblastic anemia, and in other forms of severe anemia; it is attributed to an abnormal instability of the RNA in the young cell. Red

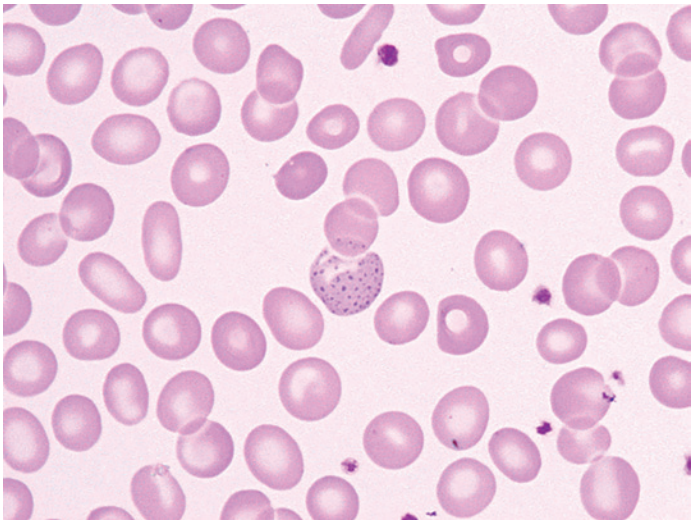


Figure 30-23 Basophilic stippling. Presence of irregular basophilic granules, either fine or coarse; commonly seen in increased red cell production. Coarse stippling is usually seen in lead poisoning, or other anemias due to impaired hemoglobin synthesis, such as megaloblastic anemia (1000×).

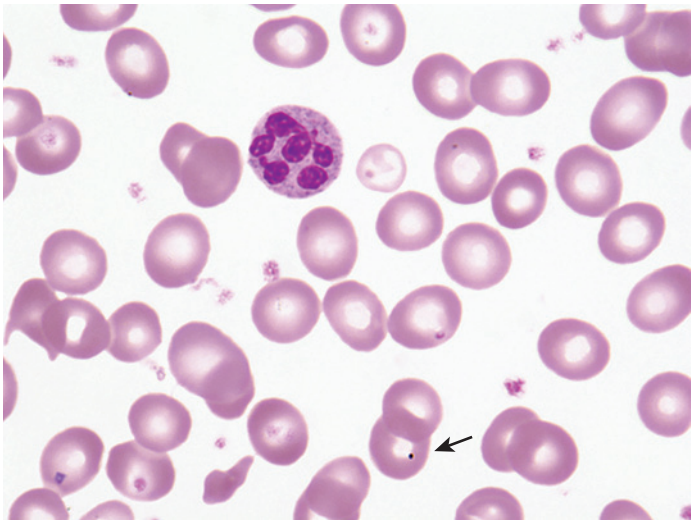


Figure 30-24 **Howell-Jolly bodies.** Smooth round remnants of nuclear chromatin. Seen in postsplenectomy states and hemolytic and megaloblastic anemias (a hypersegmented neutrophil is also seen) (1000×).

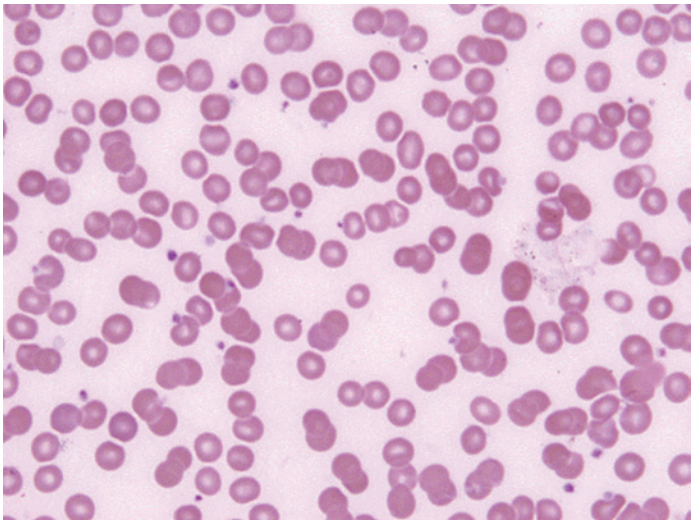


Figure 30-25 **Rouleaux formation.** Alignment of red cells one upon another, so that they resemble a stack of coins. It is usually caused by elevated plasma fibrinogen or globulins (500×).

cells with inorganic iron-containing granules (as demonstrated by stains for iron) are called **siderocytes.** Sometimes these granules stain with Wright's stain; if so, they are called **Pappenheimer bodies.**

In contrast to basophilic stippling, Pappenheimer bodies are few in number in a given red cell and are rarely seen in the peripheral blood except after splenectomy.

Howell-Jolly Bodies

These particles are smooth, round remnants of nuclear chromatin. Single Howell-Jolly bodies may be seen in megaloblastic anemia (Fig. 30-24), in hemolytic anemia, and after splenectomy. Multiple Howell-Jolly bodies in a single cell usually indicate megaloblastic anemia or some other form of abnormal erythropoiesis.

Cabot Rings

These are ring-shaped, figure-of-eight, or loop-shaped structures. Occasionally, they are formed by double or several concentric lines. They are observed rarely in erythrocytes in pernicious anemia, lead poisoning, and certain other disorders of erythropoiesis. They stain red or reddish purple with Wright's stain and have no internal structure. The rings are probably microtubules remaining from a mitotic spindle (Bessis, 1977). They are interpreted as evidence of abnormal erythropoiesis.

Malarial Stippling

Fine granules may appear in erythrocytes that harbor *Plasmodium vivax*. With Wright's stain, the minute granules, "Schüffner's granules," stain purplish red. They are sometimes so numerous that they almost hide the parasites. These red cells are, as a rule, larger than normal.

Rouleaux Formation

This is the alignment of red cells one upon another so that they resemble stacks of coins. On air-dried films, rouleaux appear as in Figure 30-25. Elevated plasma fibrinogen or globulins cause rouleaux to form and also promote an increase in the erythrocyte sedimentation rate. Rouleaux formation is especially marked in paraproteinemia (monoclonal gammopathy). **Agglutination,** or clumping, of red cells is more surely separated from rouleaux in wet preparations, and on air-dried films tends to show more irregular and round clumps than linear rouleaux. Cold agglutinins are responsible for this appearance (Fig. 30-26).

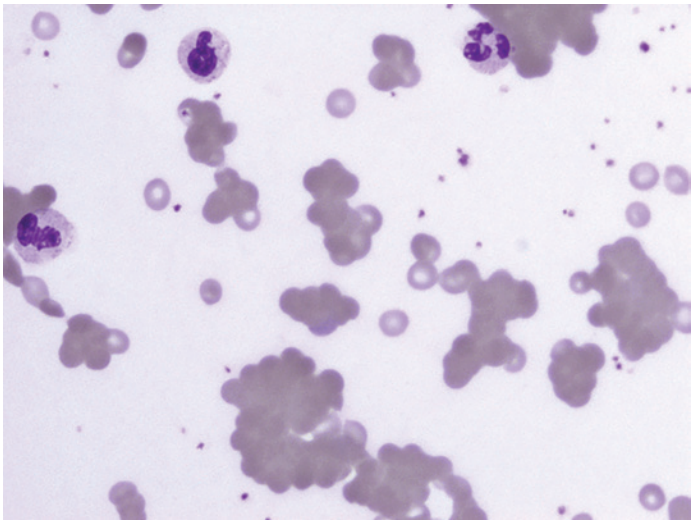


Figure 30-26 **Agglutination.** Clumping of red cells, which is more irregular than linear rouleaux formation. It is caused by cold agglutinins (500×).

Nucleated Red Cells

In contrast to erythrocytes of lower vertebrates and to most mammalian cells, the mammalian erythrocyte lacks a nucleus. Nucleated red cells (normoblasts; Fig. 30-27; see Fig. 30-48) are precursors of nonnucleated mature red cells in the blood. In the human, normoblasts are normally present only in the bone marrow. Stages in their production (see Chapter 31) from the earliest to the latest include pronormoblast, basophilic normoblast, polychromatophilic normoblast, and orthochromatic normoblast. In general, nucleated red cells that might appear in the blood in disease are polychromatic normoblasts. In some, however, the cytoplasm is so

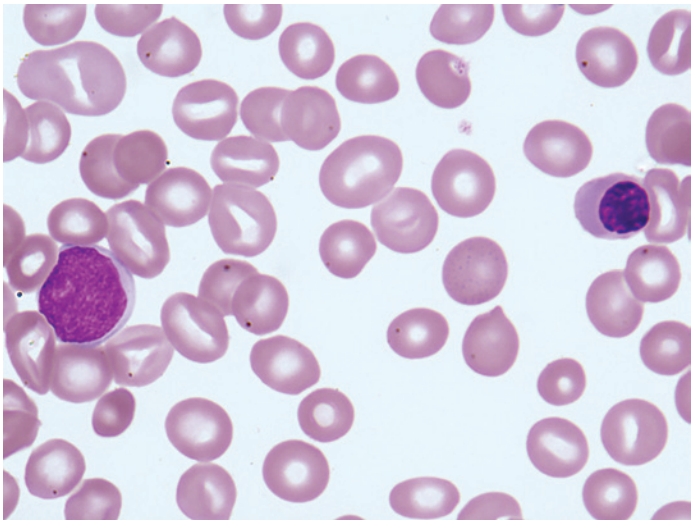


Figure 30-27 **Nucleated red cell/normoblasts.** Precursors of mature red cells, normoblasts are usually present only in the bone marrow. Their presence in blood is usually associated with increased red cell production or infiltrative bone marrow disorders (1000×).

basophilic that it is difficult to recognize the cell as erythroid except by the character of the nucleus, intensely staining chromatin, and sharp separation of chromatin from parachromatin. Such erythroid cells are often mistaken for lymphocytes—an error that usually can be prevented by careful observation of the nucleus. The megaloblast (Fig. 30-28) is a distinct, nucleated erythroid cell—not merely a larger normoblast. It is characterized by large size and an abnormal "open" nuclear chromatin pattern. Cells of this series are not found in normal marrow but are characteristically present in the marrow and sometimes in the blood of patients with pernicious anemia or other megaloblastic anemias.

Significance of Nucleated Red Cells

Normoblasts are present normally only in the blood of the fetus and of very young infants. In the healthy adult, they are confined to the bone marrow and appear in the circulating blood only in disease, in which their presence usually denotes an extreme demand made on the marrow, extramedullary hematopoiesis, or marrow replacement. Large numbers of circulating nucleated red cells are found particularly in hemolytic disease of the newborn (erythroblastosis fetalis) and thalassemia major.

Leukoerythroblastic Reaction

The presence of normoblasts and immature cells of the neutrophilic series in the blood is known as a **leukoerythroblastic reaction** (Fig. 30-29). This often indicates space-occupying disturbances of the marrow, such as myelofibrosis with myeloid metaplasia, metastatic tumor, leukemias, multiple myeloma, Gaucher's disease, and others. Nonetheless, in the study of Weick and colleagues (1974), more than one third of patients with a leukoerythroblastotic reaction did not have malignant or potentially malignant disease (Table 30-6).

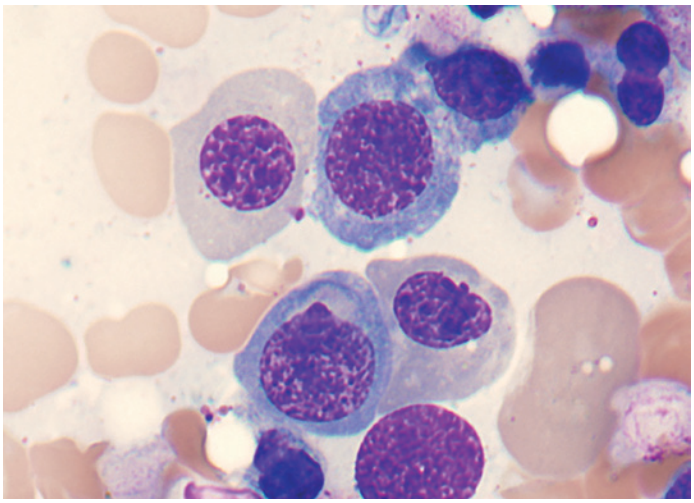


Figure 30-28 Megaloblast. Large nucleated red cell with abnormal "open" nuclear chromatin. They are frequently seen in the bone marrow in myelodysplastic syndrome or other megaloblastic anemia. Occasionally, these can also be seen in the peripheral blood (1000×).

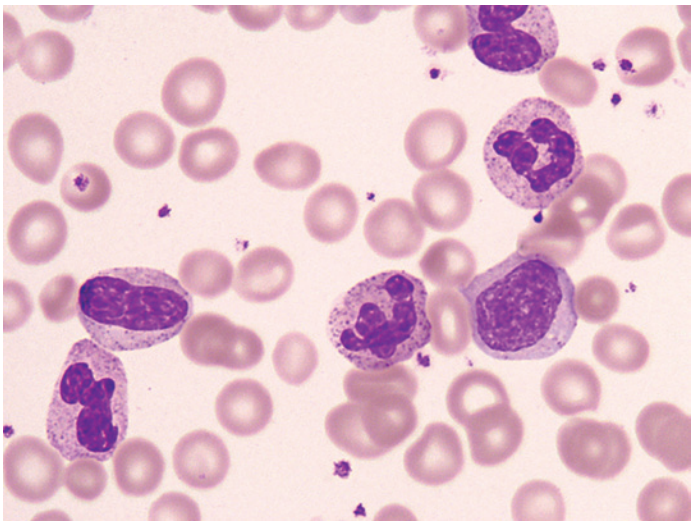


Figure 30-29 Leukemoid reaction. Left-shifted neutrophilic series with neutrophils, bands, and myelocytes. The neutrophils also show coarse toxic granulation (1000×).

LEUKOCYTES ON PERIPHERAL BLOOD SMEAR EXAMINATION

Before evaluating leukocytes on the Romanowsky's-stained blood film, one should first determine that the film is well made, the distribution of the cells is uniform, and the staining of the cells is satisfactory. One first scans the counting area of the slide and, in wedge films, the lateral and feather edges, where monocytes, neutrophils, and large abnormal cells (if present) tend to be disproportionately represented. With coverslip preparations, this uneven distribution is less likely to occur. Suspicious cells are detected at 10× magnification and are confirmed at high power. Because nucleated red cells, macrophages, immature granulocytes, immature lymphoid cells, megakaryocytes, and abnormal cells are not normally found in blood, they should be recorded if present.

While scanning under low power, it is advisable to estimate the leukocyte count from the film. Even though it is a crude approximation, it sometimes enables one to detect errors in total count. One then proceeds to determine the percentage distribution of the different types of leukocytes, which is known as the differential leukocyte count. In patients with leukopenia, it may be necessary to concentrate the leukocytes by centrifuging blood anticoagulated with EDTA and preparing films from the top layer of the packed cells. This buffy coat contains primarily leukocytes and platelets. In the crenellation technique of counting, the field of view is moved from side to side across the width of the slide in the **counting area,** just behind the feather edge, where the red cells are separated from one another and are free of artifacts. As each leukocyte is encountered, it is classified, until 100, 200, 500, or 1000 leukocytes have been counted. The greater the number of cells counted, the greater is the precision, but for practical reasons, 100-cell counts are usually made. A record of the count may be kept by using a mechanical or electronic tabulator. Leukocytes that cannot be classified should be placed together in an unidentified group. In some conditions, notably leukemia, many of these unidentified leukocytes may be present. During the differential leukocyte counting procedure, the morphology of erythrocytes and platelets is examined, and the number of platelets is estimated. The absolute concentration of each variety of leukocyte is its percentage times the total leukocyte count. An increase in absolute concentration is an absolute increase; an increase in percentage only is a relative increase. Reference intervals are more useful if given as absolute concentrations rather than percentages (see Table 30-3).

Leukocytes Normally Present in Blood

Neutrophil (Polymorphonuclear Neutrophilic Leukocyte; Segmented Neutrophilic Granulocyte)

Neutrophils average 12 μm in diameter; they are smaller than monocytes and eosinophils and slightly larger than basophils. The nucleus stains deeply; it is irregular and often assumes shapes comparable to such letters as E, Z, and S. What appear to be separate nuclei normally are segments of nuclear material connected by delicate filaments.

A filament has length but no breadth as one focuses up and down. A **segmented neutrophil** (Fig. 30-30; see Fig. 30-49) has at least two of its lobes separated by a filament. A **band neutrophil** (see Figs. 30-30 and 30-49) has either a strand of nuclear material thicker than a filament

TABLE 30-6
Conditions Associated with Leukoerythroblastosis

0.63	0.26	Solid tumors and lymphomas
	0.24	Myeloproliferative disorders, including chronic myeloid leukemia (CML)
	0.13	Acute leukemias
0.37	0.03	Benign hematologic conditions
	0.08	Hemolysis
	0.26	Miscellaneous, including blood loss

Data from Weick JK, Hagedorn AB, Linman JW: Leukoerythroblastosis: diagnostic and prognostic significance, *Mayo Clin Proc* 49:110, 1974.
Proportions are based on a series of 215 cases discovered in a study of 50,277 blood film examinations in a 6-month period—a proportion of 0.004.

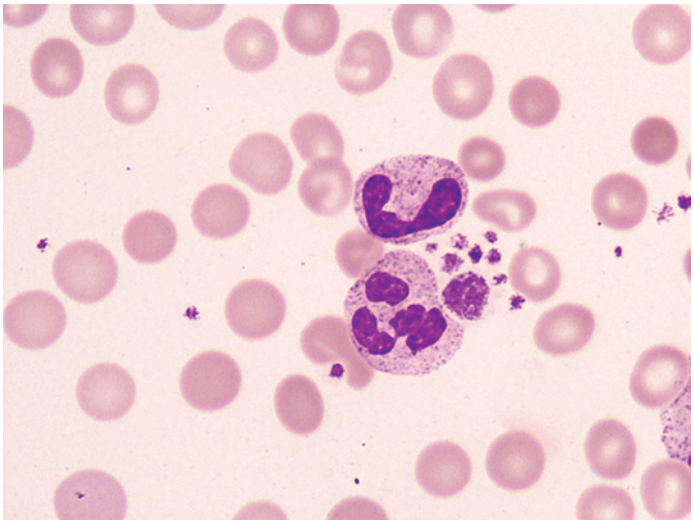


Figure 30-30 Neutrophil and band form. Neutrophil and band form depicting separation of nuclear lobes in the mature neutrophil vs. horseshoe-shaped nucleus in the band form. A giant platelet is also seen (1000×).

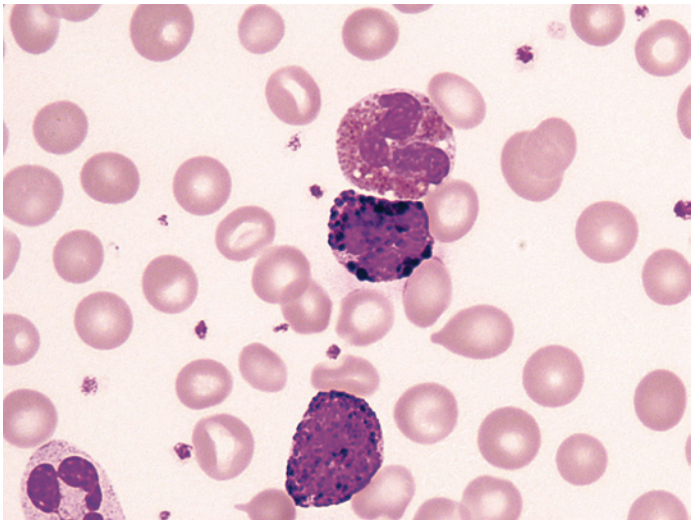


Figure 30-32 Basophil *(below)* and eosinophil *(above)*. Eosinophilic granules are coarser and bigger and often do not overlie the nucleus, unlike the basophil, which has large, deeply basophilic granules, often obscuring nuclear details (1000×).

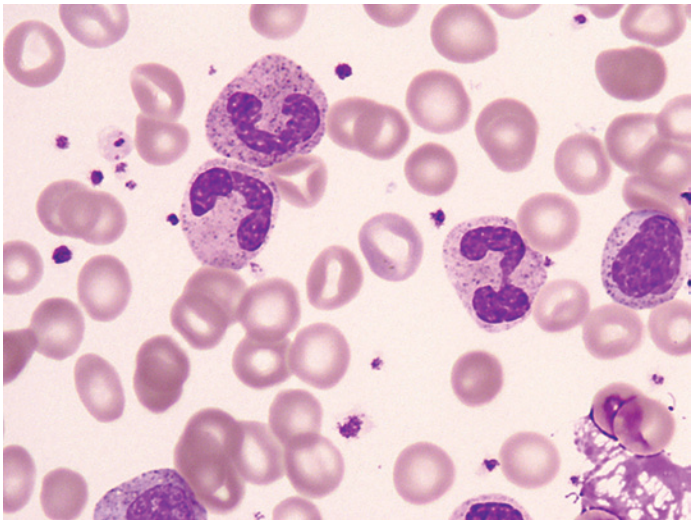


Figure 30-31 Neutrophilic granules. Cytoplasmic granules in myelocytes and mature neutrophils (1000×).

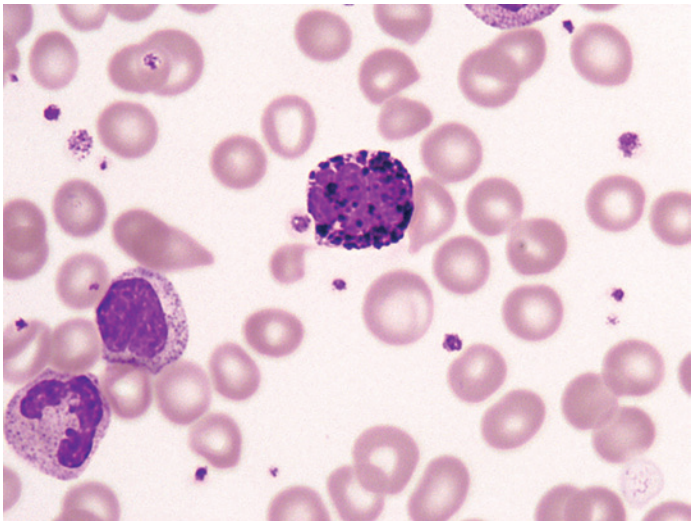


Figure 30-33 Basophil *(center)* and neutrophilic myelocyte and band *(left)*. The granules in the basophil are much bigger and coarser compared with the fine azurophilic granules of the neutrophil and precursors (1000×).

connecting the lobes, or a U-shaped nucleus of uniform thickness. The nucleus in both types of neutrophils has coarse blocks of chromatin and rather sharply defined parachromatin spaces. If, because of overlapping of nuclear material, it is not possible to be certain whether a filament is present, the cell should be placed in the segmented category (Mathy & Koepke, 1974). The number of lobes in normal neutrophils ranges from two to five, with a median of three. The cytoplasm itself is colorless and has tiny granules (0.2 to 0.3 µm) that stain tan to pink with Wright's stain. About two thirds of these are specific granules, and one third azurophil granules. With light microscopy, the two types of granules often cannot be distinguished in the mature cell (Fig. 30-31). Segmented neutrophils average 56% of leukocytes; reference intervals are 1.8 to 7.0 × 10^9/L in Caucasian adults but have a lower limit of about 1.1 × 10^9/L in black adults. Band neutrophils average 3% of leukocytes; the upper reference value is about 0.7 × 10^9/L in Caucasian people and slightly lower in black people (using the preceding definition and counting 100 cells in the differential) (see Table 30-3).

Normally, about 10% to 30% of segmented neutrophils have two lobes, 40% to 50% have three lobes, and 10% to 20% four; no more than 5% have five lobes. A "shift to the left" occurs when increased bands and less mature neutrophils are present in the blood, along with a lower average number of lobes in segmented cells (see Figs. 30-29 and 30-31).

Neutrophilia or neutrophilic leukocytosis is an increase in the absolute count, and neutropenia is a decrease.

Eosinophil (Eosinophilic Granulocyte)

Eosinophils average 13 µm in diameter. The structure of these cells is similar to that of polymorphonuclear neutrophils, with the striking difference that, instead of neutrophilic granules, their cytoplasm contains larger round or oval granules that have a strong affinity for acid stains (Fig. 30-32). They are easily recognized by the size and color of the granules, which stain bright red with eosin. The cytoplasm is colorless. The nucleus stains somewhat less deeply than that of the neutrophils and usually has two connected segments (lobes), rarely more than three. Eosinophils average 3% of the leukocytes in adults, and the upper reference value is 0.6 × 10^9/L when calculated from the differential count. If allergic individuals are excluded, the upper limit is probably 0.35 × 10^9/L or 350/µL. The lower reference value is probably 40/µL; a decrease in eosinophils (eosinopenia) can be detected only by counting large numbers of cells as in direct hemocytometer counts (Dacie & Lewis, 1991), or with a flow cytometer–automated differential counter.

Basophil (Basophilic Granulocyte)

In general, basophils resemble neutrophils, except that the nucleus is less segmented (usually merely indented or partially lobulated), and granules are larger and have a strong affinity for basic stains (Figs. 30-32 and 30-33). In some basophils, most of the granules may be missing because they are soluble in water, leaving vacuoles or openings in the cytoplasm. The granules then are a mauve color. In a well-stained film, the granules are deep

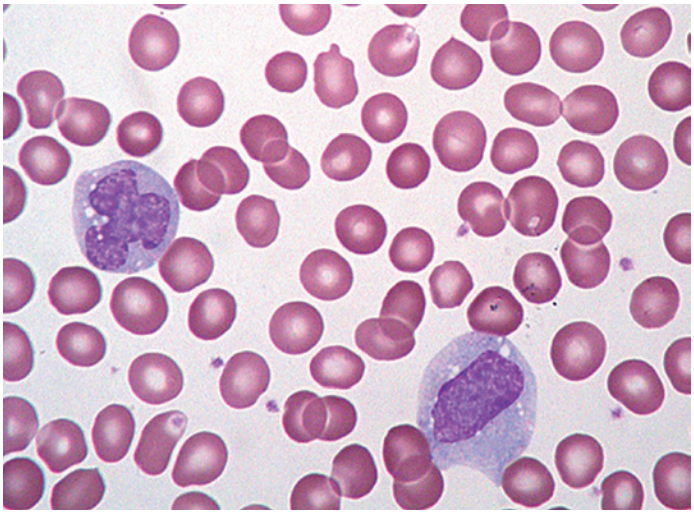


Figure 30-34 Monocyte. Among the normal blood cells, the monocyte is the largest and has the most delicate nuclear chromatin pattern. A moderate amount of light gray cytoplasm with fine granularity and vacuolation is noted (500×).

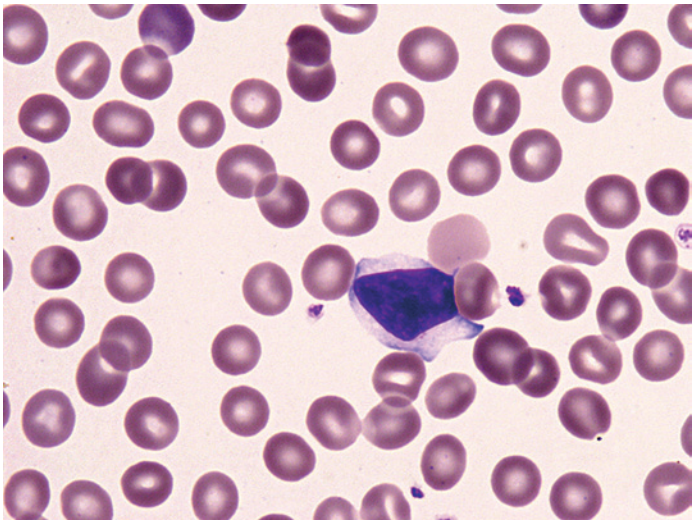


Figure 30-35 Lymphocyte. This is a benign reactive lymphocyte with moderately abundant pale gray cytoplasm hugging the surrounding red cells and distinct separation of chromatin/parachromatin (1000×).

purple and the nucleus is somewhat paler and is often nearly hidden by the granules, so that its form is difficult to distinguish. Unevenly stained granules of basophils may be ring shaped and resemble *Histoplasma capsulatum* or protozoa.

Basophils are the least numerous of the leukocytes in normal blood and average 0.5%. The 95% reference values for adults are 0 to 0.2 to 10^9/L when derived from the differential count.

Monocyte

The monocyte is the largest cell of normal blood (Fig. 30-34). It generally has about two to three times the diameter of an erythrocyte (14 to 20 μm), although smaller monocytes sometimes are encountered. It contains a single nucleus, which is partially lobulated, deeply indented, or horseshoe shaped. Occasionally, the nucleus of a monocyte may appear round or oval. The cytoplasm is abundant. The nuclear chromatin often appears to be in fine, parallel strands separated by sharply defined parachromatin. The nucleus stains less densely than that of other leukocytes. The cytoplasm is blue-gray and has a ground-glass appearance and often contains fine red to purple granules that are less distinct and smaller than the granules of neutrophils. Occasionally, blue granules may be seen. When the monocyte transforms into a macrophage, it becomes larger (20 to 40 μm); the nucleus may become oval and the chromatin more reticular or dispersed, so that nucleoli may be visible. A perinuclear clear zone (Golgi) may be evident. The fine red or azurophil granules are variable in number or may have disappeared. The more abundant cytoplasm tends to be irregular at the cell margins and to contain vacuoles. These are phagocytic vacuoles, which may contain ingested red cells, debris, pigment, or bacteria. Evidence of phagocytosis in monocytes or the presence of macrophages in directly made blood films is pathologic and often indicates the presence of active infection.

Monocytes average 4% of leukocytes, and the reference interval for adults is approximately 0 to 0.8 × 10^9/L, depending on the method used to perform the differential count (see Table 30-3).

Lymphocyte

Lymphocytes are mononuclear cells without specific cytoplasmic granules. Small lymphocytes are about the size of an erythrocyte or slightly larger (6 to 10 μm) (see Fig. 30-9). The typical lymphocyte has a single, sharply defined nucleus containing heavy blocks of chromatin. The chromatin stains dark blue with Wright's stain, whereas the parachromatin stands out as lighter-stained streaks; at the periphery of the nucleus, the chromatin is condensed. Characteristically, a gradual transition or smudging is seen between the chromatin and the parachromatin. The nucleus is generally round but is sometimes indented at one side. The cytoplasm stains pale blue except for a clear perinuclear zone. Larger lymphocytes (Figs. 30-35 and 30-36), 12 to 15 μm in diameter, with less densely staining nuclei and more abundant cytoplasm, are frequently found, especially in the blood of children, and may be difficult to distinguish from monocytes. The misshapen, indented cytoplasmic margins of lymphocytes are due to pressure of neighboring cells. In the cytoplasm of about one third of large

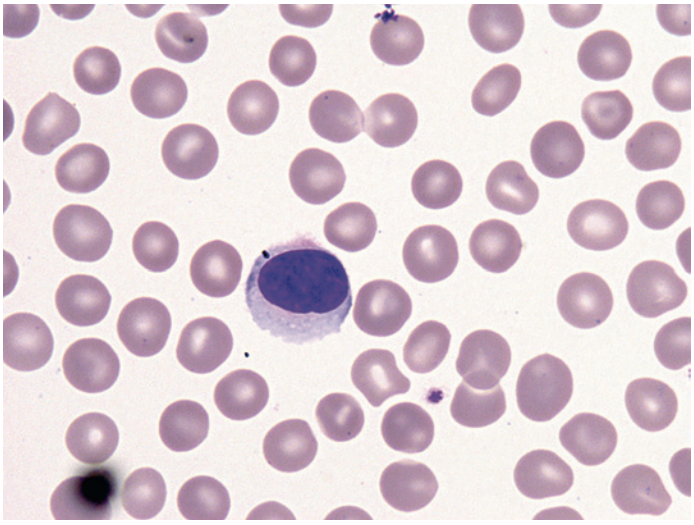


Figure 30-36 Reactive large lymphocyte with moderately abundant gray-blue cytoplasm (1000×).

lymphocytes, a few round, red-purple granules are present. They are larger than the granules of neutrophilic leukocytes. There is a continuous spectrum of sizes between small and large lymphocytes and, indeed, there can be a transition from small to large to blast forms, as well as the reverse. It is not meaningful to classify small lymphocytes and large lymphocytes separately. The presence of significant proportions of atypical lymphocytes must be noted; these indicate transformation of lymphoid cells as a response to antigenic stimulation. Plasma cells have abundant blue cytoplasm, often with light streaks or vacuoles, an eccentric round nucleus, and a well-defined clear (Golgi) zone adjacent to the nucleus (Fig. 30-37). The nucleus of the plasma cell has heavily clumped chromatin, which is sharply defined from the parachromatin and is often arranged in a radial or wheel-like pattern. Plasma cells are not present normally in blood.

Lymphocytes average 34% of all leukocytes and range from 1.5 to 4 × 10^9/L in adults. The lymphocytes and their derivatives, the plasma cells, operate in the immune defenses of the body.

Artifacts

Broken Cells

Damaged or broken leukocytes (Figs. 30-38 and 30-39) constitute a small proportion of the nucleated cells in normal blood. Bare nuclei from ruptured cells (Figs. 30-40 and 30-41) vary from fairly well-preserved nuclei without cytoplasm to smudged nuclear material, sometimes with strands arranged in a coarse network, the so-called *basket cells*. They probably represent fragile cells, usually lymphocytes that have been broken in

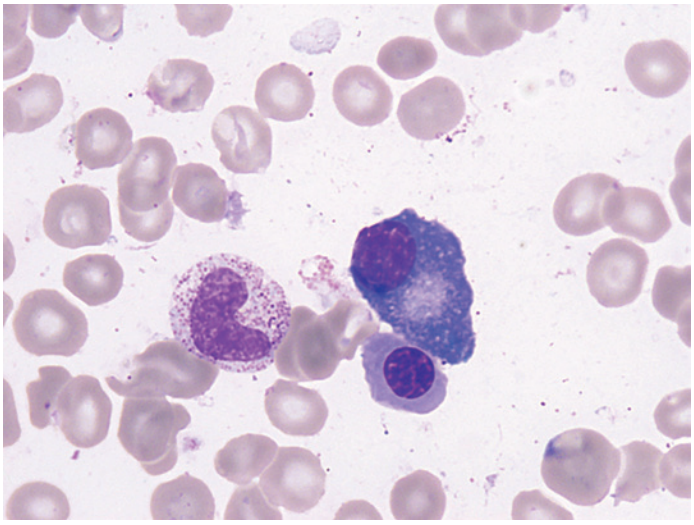


Figure 30-37 **Plasma cell.** Eccentric round nucleus with clumped nuclear chromatin and moderate amount of basophilic cytoplasm with prominent nuclear hof, or clear zone (1000×).

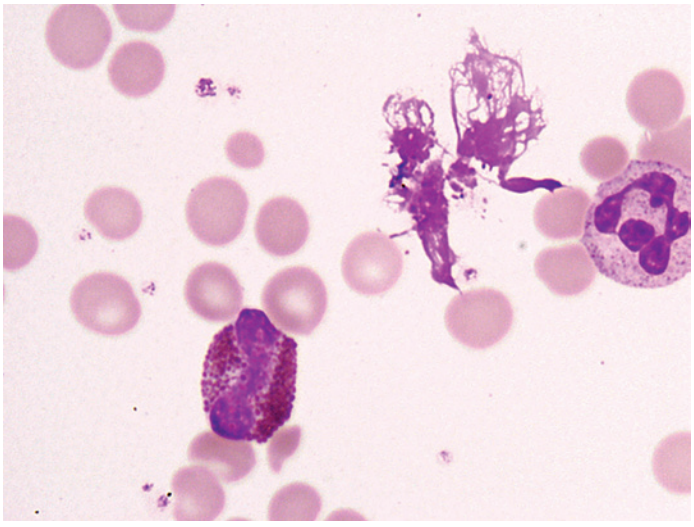


Figure 30-38 **Broken cell.** A broken cell of the myeloid series with ruptured cell membrane and disintegration of cytoplasmic contents (1000×).

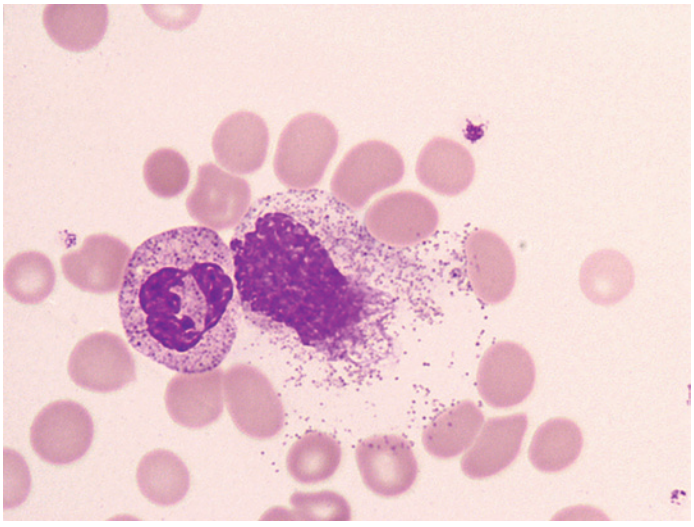


Figure 30-39 **Ruptured cell.** Ruptured/disintegrating leukocyte (1000×).

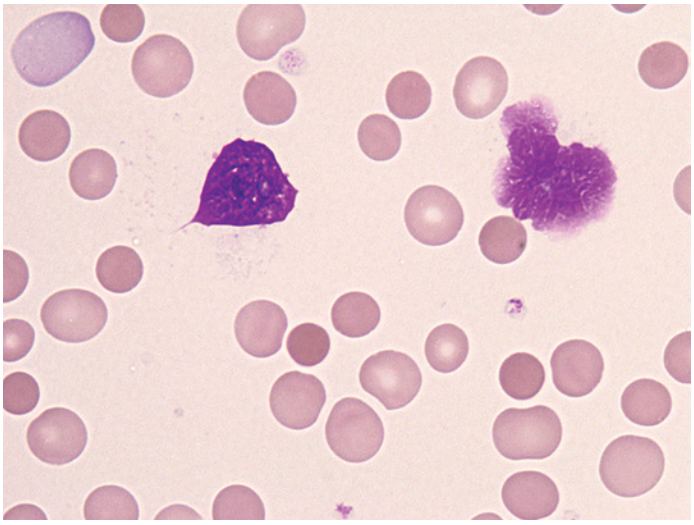


Figure 30-40 **Smudge cell.** Nuclear remnant from a damaged/broken white cell (1000×).

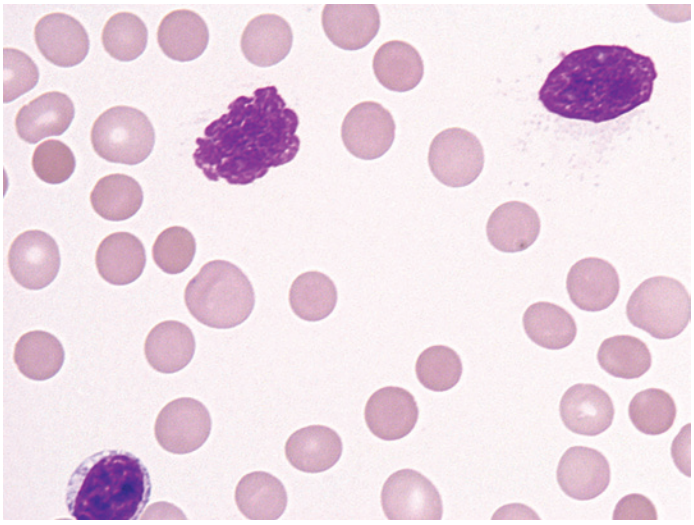


Figure 30-41 **Basket cells (1000×).**

preparing the film. They are numerous, in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, and in acute leukemias.

Degenerative Changes

As EDTA-blood ages in the test tube, changes in leukocyte morphology begin to take place (Sacker, 1975). The degree of change varies among cells and in different individuals. Within a half hour, the nuclei of neutrophils may begin to swell, with some loss of chromatin structure. Cytoplasmic vacuoles appear, especially in monocytes and neutrophils. Nuclear lobulation appears in mononuclear cells; deep clefts may cause the nucleus to resemble a cloverleaf (radial segmentation of the nuclei; Rieder cells). Finally, loss of the cytoplasm and a smudged nucleus may be all that remains of the cell (see Fig. 30-40). Degenerative changes occur more rapidly in oxalated blood than in EDTA blood. They arise more rapidly with increasing concentrations of EDTA, such as occur when evacuated blood collection tubes are incompletely filled.

Contracted Cells

In the thicker part of wedge films, drying is slow. Obvious changes in the film include rouleaux of the erythrocytes and shrinkage of the leukocytes. Because the leukocytes are contracted and heavily stained, mononuclear cells are difficult to distinguish. Optimal cell identification is usually impossible in these areas.

Endothelial Cells

Endothelial cells from the lining of the blood vessel may appear in the first drop of blood from a fingerstick specimen or, rarely, in venous blood. They

have an immature reticular chromatin pattern and may be mistaken for histiocytes or for tumor cells.

Radial Segmentation of the Nuclei

Use of oxalated blood results in the appearance of abnormal segmentation of the nuclei of leukocytes on the blood film. This segmentation differs from that of the granulocytes in that the lobes appear to radiate from a single point, giving a cloverleaf or a cartwheel picture. Extensive changes can occur within 1 or 2 hours in oxalated blood. Less extensive changes occur with other anticoagulants, including EDTA.

Vacuolation

Vacuoles may develop in the nucleus and cytoplasm of leukocytes, especially monocytes and neutrophils from blood anticoagulated with EDTA. Vacuoles may be associated with swelling of the nuclei and loss of granules from the cytoplasm.

"Pseudophagocytosis"

Occasionally, a small lymphocyte, or more often an erythrocyte, will lie atop a granulocyte or a monocyte and thus will appear to have been ingested. The true positions of such cells can be suspected because they will come into sharp focus in a plane above that of the larger cell.

Sources of Error in the Differential Leukocyte Count

Even in perfectly made blood films, the differential count is subject to the same errors of random distribution. For interpretation of day-to-day or slide-to-slide differences in the same patient, it is helpful to know how much of the variation is ascribable to chance alone. Table 30-7 gives 95% confidence limits for different percentages of cells in differential counts performed, classifying a total of 100 to 10,000 leukocytes. In comparing the percentages from two separate counts, if one number lies outside the confidence limits of the other, it is probable that the difference is significant (i.e., not due to chance). Thus, on the basis of a 100-cell differential count, if the monocytes were 5% one day and 10% the next, it is probable that the difference is due solely to sampling error. Although the difference could be real, one cannot be sure of this because of the small number of cells counted. If, on the other hand, the differential count totaled 500 cells, the difference between 5% and 10% is significant; one can be reasonably certain (with a 5% chance of being wrong) that the difference is a real one and is not due to chance alone. Of course, this is a minimal estimate of the error involved in differential counts because it does not include mechanical errors (due to variations in collecting blood samples, inadequate mixing, irregularities in distribution depending on the type and quality of the blood films, and poor staining) or errors in cell identification, which depend on the judgment and experience of the observer. Meticulous technique, as well as accurate and consistent cell classification, is therefore required. The physician who interprets the results must be aware of possible sources of error, especially error due to chance in the distribution of cells. Table 30-3 shows the distribution of the various types of leukocytes in the blood of normal persons. Absolute concentrations are given, as these have considerably greater significance than percentages alone.

TABLE 30-7

Ninety-Five Percent Confidence Limits for Various Percentages of Blood Cells of a Given Type as Determined by Differential Counts*

a	n = 100	n = 200	n = 500	n = 1000	n = 10,000
0	0.0-3.6	0.0-1.8	0.0-0.7	0.0-0.4	0.0-0.1
1	0.0-5.4	0.1-3.6	0.3-2.3	0.5-1.8	0.8-1.3
2	0.0-7.0	0.6-5.0	1.0-3.6	1.2-3.1	1.7-2.3
3	0.6-8.5	1.1-6.4	1.7-4.9	2.0-4.3	2.6-3.4
4	1.1-9.9	1.7-7.7	2.5-6.1	2.9-5.4	3.6-4.5
5	1.6-11.3	2.4-9.0	3.3-7.3	3.7-6.5	4.5-5.5
6	2.2-12.6	3.1-10.2	4.1-8.5	4.6-7.7	5.5-6.5
7	2.9-13.9	3.9-11.5	4.9-9.6	5.5-8.8	6.5-7.6
8	3.5-15.2	4.6-12.7	5.8-10.7	6.4-9.9	7.4-8.6
9	4.2-16.4	5.4-13.9	6.6-11.9	7.3-10.9	8.4-9.6
10	4.9-17.6	6.2-15.0	7.5-13.0	8.2-12.0	9.4-10.7
15	8.6-23.5	10.4-20.7	12.0-18.4	12.8-17.4	14.3-15.8
20	12.7-29.2	14.7-26.2	16.6-23.8	17.6-22.6	19.2-20.8
25	16.9-34.7	19.2-31.6	21.3-29.0	22.3-27.8	24.1-25.9
30	21.2-40.0	23.7-36.9	26.0-34.2	27.2-32.9	29.1-31.0
35	25.7-45.2	28.4-42.0	30.8-39.4	32.0-38.0	34.0-36.0
40	30.3-50.3	33.2-47.1	35.7-44.4	36.9-43.1	39.0-41.0
45	35.0-55.3	38.0-52.2	40.6-49.5	41.9-48.1	44.0-46.0
50	39.8-60.2	42.9-57.1	45.5-54.5	46.9-53.1	49.0-51.0
55	44.7-65.0	47.8-62.0	50.5-59.4	51.9-58.1	54.0-56.0
60	49.7-69.7	52.9-66.8	55.6-64.3	56.9-63.1	59.0-61.0
65	54.8-74.3	58.0-71.6	60.6-69.2	62.0-68.0	64.0-66.0
70	60.0-78.8	63.1-76.3	65.8-74.0	67.1-72.8	69.0-70.9
75	65.3-83.1	68.4-80.8	71.0-78.7	72.2-77.7	74.1-75.9
80	70.8-87.3	73.8-85.3	76.2-83.4	77.4-82.4	79.2-80.8
85	76.5-91.4	79.3-89.6	81.6-88.0	82.6-87.2	84.2-85.7
90	82.4-95.1	85.0-93.8	87.0-92.5	88.0-91.8	89.3-90.6
91	83.6-95.8	86.1-94.6	88.1-93.4	89.1-92.7	90.4-91.6
92	84.8-96.5	87.3-95.4	89.3-94.2	90.1-93.6	91.4-92.6
93	86.1-97.1	88.5-96.1	90.4-95.1	91.2-94.5	92.4-93.5
94	87.4-97.8	89.8-96.9	91.5-95.9	92.3-95.4	93.5-94.5
95	88.7-98.4	91.0-97.6	92.7-96.7	93.5-96.3	94.5-95.5
96	90.1-98.9	92.3-98.3	93.9-97.5	94.6-97.1	95.5-96.4
97	91.5-99.4	93.6-98.9	95.1-98.3	95.7-98.0	96.6-97.4
98	93.0-99.9	95.0-99.4	96.4-99.0	96.9-98.8	97.7-98.3
99	94.6-99.9	96.4-99.9	97.7-99.7	98.2-99.5	98.7-99.2
100	96.4-100.0	98.2-100.0	99.3-100.0	99.6-100.0	99.9-100.0

Courtesy of Rümke CL: The imprecision of the ratio of two percentages observed in differential white blood cell counts: a warning, *Blood Cells* 11:137–140, 1985.
*n is the number of cells counted; a, the observed percentage of cells of the given type. The limits for n = 100, 200, 500, and 1000 are exact; for n = 10,000, they have been determined with Freeman and Tukey's approximation, as described in the Geigy tables.

PLATELETS ON PERIPHERAL BLOOD SMEAR EXAMINATION

In films made from EDTA-blood and stained with Romanowsky's stains, platelets are round or oval, 2 to 4 μm in diameter, and separated from one another (Fig. 30-42). The platelet count may be estimated from such films. On average, if the platelet count is normal, about one platelet is found per 10 to 30 red cells. At 1000× magnification, this is equivalent to about 7 to 20 platelets per oil immersion field in the areas where red cell morphology is optimal (Fig. 30-43). Platelets contain fine purple granules that usually fill the cytoplasm. Occasionally, granules are concentrated in the center (the "granulomere") and surrounded by a pale cytoplasm (the "hyalomere"); these are probably activated platelets, the appearance resulting from contraction of the microtubular band. A few platelets may have decreased concentrations of granules (hypogranular platelets). In EDTA-blood from normal individuals, the fraction of platelets that exceed 3 μm in diameter and the fraction of platelets that are hypogranular are both less than 5% if the films are made at 10 minutes or 60 minutes after the blood is drawn. If films are made immediately or at 3 hours after blood drawing, the fraction of large platelets and the fraction of hypogranular or activated platelets are increased (Zeigler et al, 1978). These artifacts make it necessary to standardize time of film preparation when evaluating platelet size from films. In patients with immune thrombocytopenia, large platelets/giant platelets (see Fig. 30-30) are increased in number. They are also increased in patients with the rare Bernard-Soulier syndrome and in those with myelophthisis or myeloproliferative syndrome; in the latter, the platelets are frequently hypogranular or have a distinct granulomere and hyalomere. In blood films made from skin puncture wounds, platelets assume irregular shapes with sharp projections and tend to clump together.

ERYTHROCYTE SEDIMENTATION RATE

Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) is a useful but nonspecific marker of underlying inflammation. Recently, high-sensitivity C-reactive protein and other inflammatory markers have been used to detect or monitor disease, particularly cardiovascular disease and metabolic syndrome (Pearson et al, 2003; Rifai, 2005). When well-mixed venous blood is placed in a vertical tube, erythrocytes will tend to fall toward the bottom. The length of fall of the top of the column of erythrocytes over a given interval of time is called the ESR. Several factors are involved.

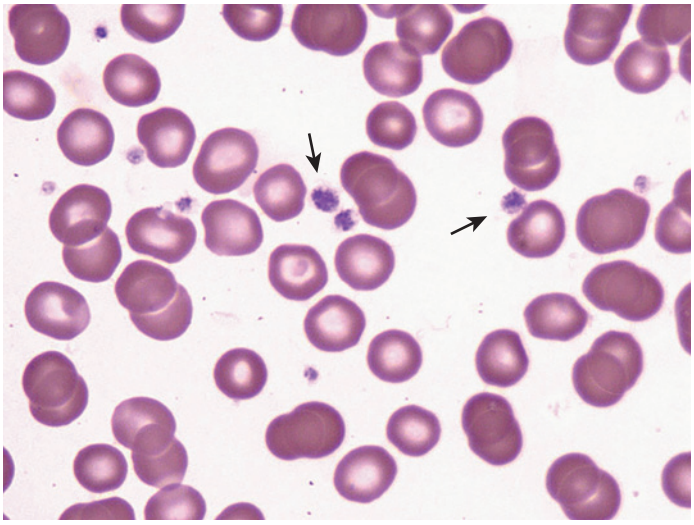


Figure 30-42 **Platelet.** Platelets are round to oval, 2 to 4 µm in diameter, and separated from one another (1000×).

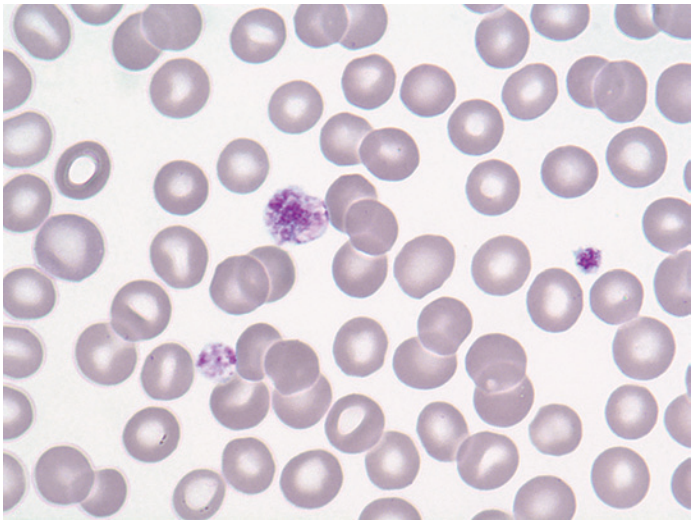


Figure 30-43 **Platelet/giant platelet.** Platelets show fine granularity; an occasional larger (giant) form is noted (1000×).

Plasma Factors

An accelerated ESR is favored by elevated levels of fibrinogen and, to a lesser extent, α_2-, β-, and γ-globulins. These asymmetric protein molecules have a greater effect than other proteins in decreasing the negative charge of erythrocytes (zeta potential) that tends to keep them apart. The decreased zeta potential promotes the formation of rouleaux, which sediment more rapidly than single cells. Removal of fibrinogen by defibrination lowers the ESR. No absolute correlation has been noted between the ESR and any of the plasma protein fractions. Albumin and lecithin retard sedimentation, and cholesterol accelerates the ESR.

Red Cell Factors

Anemia increases the ESR because the change in the erythrocyte/plasma ratio favors rouleaux formation, independently of changes in the concentrations of plasma proteins. By any method of measurement, ESR is most sensitive to altered plasma proteins in the Hct range of 0.30 to 0.40 (Bull, 1975). The sedimentation rate is directly proportional to the weight of the cell aggregate and inversely proportional to the surface area. Microcytes sediment slower than macrocytes, which have decreased surface area/volume ratios. Rouleaux also have a decreased surface area/volume ratio and accelerate the ESR. Red cells with an abnormal or irregular shape, such as sickle cells or spherocytes, hinder rouleaux formation and lower the ESR.

Stages in the ESR

Three stages can be observed: (1) In the initial 10 minutes, little sedimentation occurs as rouleaux forms; (2) for about 40 minutes, settling occurs at a constant rate; and (3) sedimentation slows in the final 10 minutes as cells pack at the bottom of the tube.

Methods

Westergren Method

The Westergren method is widely used, as the method is very simple. The ICSH (1993) has recommended it as the reference method when undiluted whole blood is used. The ICSH states that the patient's Hct should not exceed 35% because reproducibility of sedimentation may be poorer in narrow tubes. A formula to convert between diluted and undiluted blood ESR is as follows:

$$\text{Diluted blood ESR} = (\text{Undiluted ESR} \times 0.86) - 12$$

Equipment. The Westergren tube is a straight pipet 30 cm long, 2.55 mm in internal diameter, and calibrated in millimeters from 0 to 200. It holds about 1 mL. The Westergren rack is also used, with levelers as needed for a vertical tube position.

Reagent. A 0.105 molar solution (range, 0.10 to 0.136) of sodium citrate is used as the anticoagulant-diluent solution (31 g of $Na_3C_6H_5O_7 \cdot H_2O$ added to 1 L of distilled water in a sterile glass bottle). This is filtered and is kept refrigerated without preservatives.

Procedure

1. Two milliliters of whole blood are added to 0.5 mL of sodium citrate and mixed by inversion.
2. A Westergren pipet is filled to the 0 mark and is placed exactly vertical in the rack at room temperature without vibration or exposure to direct sunlight.
3. After exactly 60 minutes, the distance from the 0 mark to the top of the column of red cells is recorded in millimeters as the ESR value. If the demarcation between plasma and the red cell column is hazy, the level is taken where the full density is first apparent.

Modified Westergren Method

A modification of the Westergren method produces the same results but employs blood anticoagulated with EDTA rather than with citrate. This is more convenient because it allows the ESR to be performed from the same tube of blood as is used for other hematologic studies. Two milliliters of well-mixed EDTA-blood is diluted with 0.5 mL of 3.8% sodium citrate or with 0.5 mL of 0.85% sodium chloride. Undiluted blood anticoagulated with EDTA gives poor precision (ICSH, 1977). The ESR gradually increases with age. Westergren's original upper limits of normal (10 mm/hour for men and 20 mm/hour for women) appear to be too low. According to studies of Böttiger and Svedberg (1967) and Zauber and Zauber (1987), upper limits of reference values for the Westergren method should be as follows:

	Men	Women
Below 50 years of age	15 mm/hour	20 mm/hour
Above 50 years of age	20 mm/hour	30 mm/hour
Above 85 years of age	30 mm/hour	42 mm/hour

Smith and Samadian (1994) state that the rise in ESR with age likely reflects higher disease prevalence in older adults; therefore for practical purposes, it may be advisable to use the standard normal range in older adult patients.

Sources of Error

If the concentration of the anticoagulant is higher than recommended, the ESR may be elevated. Sodium citrate or EDTA does not affect the rate of sedimentation if used in the proper concentration. Heparin, however, alters the membrane zeta potential and cannot be used as an anticoagulant. It can also increase the ESR when used as a medication in vivo (Penchas, 1978). Bubbles left in the tube when it is filled will affect the ESR. Hemolysis may modify the sedimentation. The cleanliness of the tube is important. Tilting the tube accelerates the ESR. The red cells aggregate along the lower side, while the plasma rises along the upper side. Consequently, the retarding influence of the rising plasma is less effective. An angle of even 3 degrees from the vertical may accelerate the ESR by as much as 30%. Plastic ESR pipets have slightly higher (1 to 2 mm/hour) values than glass pipets (Schneiderka et al, 1997).

Temperature should be within the range of 20° to 25°C. Lower or higher temperatures in some cases alter the ESR. If the blood has been

kept refrigerated, it should be permitted to reach room temperature and be mixed by inversion a minimum of eight times before the test is performed. The test should be set up within 2 hours after the blood sample is obtained (or within 12 hours if EDTA is used as the anticoagulant and the blood is kept at 4° C); otherwise, some samples with elevated ESRs will be falsely low (Morris et al, 1975). On standing, erythrocytes tend to become spherical and less readily form rouleaux.

No effective method is known for correcting for anemia in the Westergren method, although this can be done with the Wintrobe method.

Alternative Methods and Technologies to Measure ESR

The **VES-MATIC 20** instrument is a bench top analyzer designed to measure the ESR in 20 blood samples (Plebani et al, 1998; Caswell & Stuart, 1991). It is completely automated. The blood is collected in special cuvets and is carefully mixed by the instrument; the samples are then left to sediment for a certain period. The 18-degree slant of the tubes with respect to the vertical axis causes acceleration of the sedimentation, allowing results comparable with those of Westergren at the first hour to be obtained in only 25 minutes; those comparable with Westergren at the second hour require only 45 minutes. The optoelectrical sensors automatically read the erythrocyte sedimentation level. The data are elaborated and then are printed or visualized on the display.

The **Micro-ESR method** has greater utility in pediatric patients. Barrett and Hill (1980) described a micro-ESR method using 0.2 mL blood to fill a plastic disposable tube 230 mm long with a 1-mm internal bore. Capillary blood values correlated well with venous blood micro-ESR and Westergren ESR values. Kumar and Singhi (1994) refer to a micro-ESR (mESR) that utilizes whole blood to completely fill a 75-mm heparinized microhematocrit capillary tube.

Another instrument used to measure ESR is ESR STAT PLUS, which is a centrifugation-based method. The sample is placed in the centrifuge, and an infrared laser tracks the erythrocyte-plasma interface and makes multiple measurements, from which the linear portion of the sedimentation curve is identified and is used by the software algorithm to determine the ESR result. This method requires smaller volumes of specimen than the Westergren method and is faster. The pitfall is correlation with the reference Westergren method, especially in the 0 to 20 mm/hour range. It can be also prone to human error because it requires a minimum of 15 mixing intervals, followed by a 5-minute limit before drawing into the capillary tube (Shelat, 2008).

Application

The ESR is one of the oldest laboratory tests still in use. Although some of its usefulness has decreased as more specific methods of evaluating disease (such as C-reactive protein [CRP]) have been developed (Zlonis, 1993), new clinical applications are being reported (Saadeh, 1998). Recently, the ESR has been reported to be of clinical significance in sickle cell disease (low value in the absence of painful crisis, moderately increased 1 week into the crisis), osteomyelitis (elevated, helpful in following therapy), stroke (ESR ≥28 mm/hour has a poorer prognosis), prostate cancer (ESR ≥37 mm/hour has a higher incidence of disease progression and death), and coronary artery disease (ESR >22 mm/hour in white men had a high risk for coronary artery disease [CAD]) (Saadeh, 1998). In pregnancy, the ESR increases moderately, beginning at the 10th to the 12th week, and returns to normal about 1 month postpartum. The ESR tends to be markedly elevated in monoclonal blood protein disorders such as multiple myeloma or macroglobulinemia, in severe polyclonal hyperglobulinemia due to inflammatory disease, and in hyperfibrinogenemia.

Moderate elevations are common in active inflammatory disease such as rheumatoid arthritis, chronic infection, collagen disease, and neoplastic disease. The ESR has little diagnostic value in these disorders but can be useful in monitoring disease activity. It is simpler than measurement of serum proteins, which has tended to replace ESR. Because the test is often normal in patients with neoplasm, connective tissue disease, and infection, a normal ESR cannot be used to exclude these diagnostic possibilities. In patients with known cancer, however, when the value exceeds 100 mm/hour, metastases are usually present (Sox & Liang, 1986). The ESR is of little value in screening asymptomatic patients for disease; history and physical examination will usually disclose the cause of an elevated ESR (Sox & Liang, 1986). The ESR is useful and is indicated in establishing the diagnosis and in monitoring polymyalgia rheumatica and temporal arteritis, where the rate typically exceeds 90 mm/hour (Zlonis, 1993). Emergency physicians continue to use the ESR in evaluating temporal arteritis, septic arthritis, pelvic inflammatory disease, and appendicitis (Olshaker & Jerrard, 1997). Freeman (1997) urges immediate quick ESR estimation if giant cell arteritis is clinically indicated, as a delay of even a few hours in starting steroid therapy may result in irreversible visual failure. Harrow and colleagues (1999) conclude that an ESR of 5 mm or less at 30 minutes correctly identifies most patients with normal ESR without misclassifying elevated ESRs.

In Hodgkin's disease, the ESR may be a very useful prognostic blood measurement in the absence of systemic ("B") symptoms (fever, weight loss, night sweats). In one study (Vaughan Hudson et al, 1987), one third of asymptomatic patients had both an ESR of less than 10 mm/hour and an excellent survival rate, regardless of age, stage, or histopathology. Asymptomatic patients with an ESR of 60 mm/hour or greater had a survival rate as poor as those with systemic symptoms.

Iversen and colleagues (1996) reported that 70% of renal cell carcinoma patients had an increased ESR, which had been significantly rising for up to 6 years before diagnosis. They argued for a systematic graphing and baseline determination of the ESR over time, which showed a marked elevation in ESR 1 year before diagnosis. Such a trend of increasing ESR should lead to further investigation, as with renal ultrasound, which may then lead to curative nephrectomy before metastases occur.

BONE MARROW EXAMINATION

The bone marrow examination provides a semiquantitative and qualitative assessment of the state of hematopoiesis and aids in the diagnosis of several hereditary and acquired benign and malignant diseases. Marrow aspiration and biopsy can be carried out as an office procedure on ambulatory patients with minimal risk (Ryan, 2006). It compares favorably with ordinary venipuncture and is less traumatizing than a lumbar puncture. Recently, a new battery powered device was developed to capture bone marrow biopsy. Bone marrow biopsies performed were significantly faster and superior in quality (Reed et al, 2011). As for any other special procedure, however, the clinical indications for marrow examination should be clear. In each instance, the physician should have in mind some reasonable prediction of its result and consequent benefit to the patient. Without exception, the peripheral blood should be examined carefully first. It is a relatively uncommon circumstance to find hematologic disease in the bone marrow without evidence of it in the peripheral blood. It is estimated that the weight of the marrow in the adult is 1300 to 1500 g. The marrow can undergo complete transformation in a few days and occasionally even in a few hours. As a rule, this rapid transformation involves the whole organ, as evidenced by the fact that a small sample represented by a biopsy or aspiration is usually fairly representative of the whole marrow. This conclusion is in accord with results of studies of biopsy samples simultaneously removed from several sites. According to these observations, the various sites chosen for removal of marrow for studies are in most instances equally good. Consequently, the difficulty of access, the risks involved, the ease of obtaining a good biopsy specimen, and discomfort to the patient are the main reasons for selection of a site in the particular patient. Within a given site, the cellular distribution may vary in apparently hyperplastic or hypoplastic areas. This is particularly the case immediately below the cortex. Occasionally, failure to obtain quantitatively or qualitatively adequate material in one site may be followed by success in another location. Also, the need for repeated aspirations or biopsies may indicate the use of several different sites. We regard the posterior iliac crest as the preferred site. The large marrow space allows both aspiration and biopsy to be performed with ease at one time. The techniques of marrow aspiration and biopsy have been adequately reviewed (Hyun et al, 1988). Both operator techniques and specimen processing play a vital role in improving the quality of bone marrow assessment (Odejide et al, 2013).

INDICATIONS FOR MARROW STUDY

Bone marrow biopsy and aspiration should be performed only when there is a clear clinical indication (Bain, 2001a, 2001b). While widely accepted criteria assessing adequacy of bone marrow samples for establishing a diagnosis do not exist at this time, there are some disease-specific guidelines (Merizanu et al, 2014; National Comprehensive Cancer Network [NCCN], 2014). Both bone marrow aspiration and biopsy are performed routinely together. Besides increasing the yield of diagnostic tissue, each specimen also provides unique information (Kaur et al, 2014). Biopsy provides information about the bone marrow architecture, whereas cellular details are much better appreciated on the aspirate smears.

In microcytic anemia, evaluation of iron stores and sideroblasts allows categorization of the anemia (i.e., iron deficiency, anemia of chronic disease, sideroblastic).

In macrocytic anemia, marrow examination will confirm whether the process is megaloblastic or not; in some cases, changes in the blood are

minimal, yet the marrow is megaloblastic. In normocytic anemia (or macrocytic anemia) without an increased reticulocyte production index, the marrow is evaluated for quantitative or qualitative abnormalities in erythropoiesis (e.g., pure red cell aplasia, myelodysplasia).

In neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, or pancytopenia, marrow study is helpful in assessing the presence and normality of the precursor cells in each series. This enables one to assess the probability of decreased production, impaired maturation, or increased destruction as the mechanism of the disorder. In cytopenias, marrow examination sometimes will reveal the presence of leukemia or another hematologic neoplasia.

In immunoglobulin abnormalities, the diagnosis of plasma cell myeloma or macroglobulinemia may be confirmed if infiltrations of abnormal plasma cells or lymphocytes are present. Marrow examination is essential for the diagnosis and classification of acute leukemia. It is frequently performed to assist in the diagnosis and staging of other neoplasms, including lymphomas (Cheson et al, 2014) and metastatic tumors, and to assess response to therapy for hematologic disorders. If the marrow cannot be aspirated ("dry tap"), biopsy is essential. Marrow biopsy should also be performed if blood changes suggest myelofibrosis with myeloid metaplasia, or if granulomatous disease or metastatic tumor is suspected.

PREPARATION OF THE ASPIRATE AND BIOPSY SECTION

Marrow Films

Delay, no matter how brief, is undesirable. Films can be made in a manner similar to that used for ordinary blood counts. Gray particles of marrow are visible with the naked eye. They are the best material for the preparation of good films and serve as landmarks for the microscopic examination of stained smears.

Direct Films

A drop of marrow is placed on a slide a short distance away from one end. A film 3 to 5 cm long is made with a spreader, not wider than 2 cm, dragging the particles behind but not squashing them. A trail of cells is left behind each particle.

Imprints

Marrow particles can also be used for preparation of imprints. One or more visible particles are picked up with a capillary pipet, the broken end of a wooden applicator, or a toothpick, and are transferred immediately to a slide and made to stick to it by a gentle smearing motion. The slide is air dried rapidly by waving, and then it is stained.

Crush Preparations

Marrow particles in a small drop of aspirate may be placed on a slide near one end. Another slide is carefully placed over the first. Slight pressure is exerted to crush the particles, and the slides are separated by pulling them apart in a direction parallel to their surfaces. All films should be dried rapidly by whipping them through the air. As the aspirated material is being spread, the appearance of fat as irregular holes in the films gives assurance that marrow and not just blood has been obtained.

Special Studies

It is recommended that for evaluation of most hematological diseases an additional bone marrow aspirate specimen should be collected for ancillary testing including flow cytometry analysis, karyotype, and FISH (fluorescent in situ hybridization) assays and molecular studies. Flow cytometry is best performed on a heparin or an EDTA anticoagulated aspirate specimen, which is stable for at least 24 hours at room temperature. For cytogenetic or cell culture analysis, anticoagulated marrow should be added to tissue culture medium and analyzed as soon as possible to maintain optimal cell viability. Cytogenetic specimens are generally not adversely affected by overnight incubation. DNA is relatively stable and can be extracted and analyzed from paraffin-embedded tissue sections. However, decalcification of the biopsy specimens during processing results in some degree of DNA denaturation and precludes optimum molecular testing. Further, reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) assays, involving amplification of complementary DNA (cDNA) prepared from cellular messenger RNA (mRNA), are often needed for molecular diagnosis of translocations associated with leukemia and lymphoma. Messenger RNA has a variable half-life in an intact cell and is degraded rapidly (on the order of seconds to minutes) in a cell lysate by ubiquitous RNAses. For maximal mRNA recovery, cell suspensions, mostly buffy coat or mononuclear cell preparations, should be lysed in an appropriate RNAse inhibitor–containing buffer as soon as possible after sampling. Molecular assays are best performed on an EDTA anticoagulated bone marrow specimen, as heparin can interfere with some PCR-based assays (Ryan & Cohen, 2000).

Histologic Sections

The needle biopsy and clotted marrow particles (fragments) are fixed in Zenker's acetic solution (5% glacial acetic acid; 95% Zenker's) for 6 to 18 hours, or in B-5 fixative for 1 to 2 hours (Hyun et al, 1988). Excessive time in either fixative makes the tissue brittle. Although these fixatives, particularly B-5, provide the best histology, they contain toxic mercuric chloride and are gradually being replaced by fixatives such as zinc formalin and other preparations. The tissue is processed routinely for embedding in paraffin, cut at 4 μm, and stained routinely with hematoxylin and eosin (H&E). Giemsa and periodic acid–Schiff (PAS) stains are frequently useful. Embedding the tissue in plastic material allows thinner sections to be examined and better survival of protein structure, so that enzyme histochemistry and immunocytochemistry are practical for identification of cell lineages.

Sections provide the best estimate of cellularity and a picture of marrow architecture but are somewhat inferior for the study of cytologic details. Another disadvantage is that particles adequate for histologic sections are not always obtained, especially in conditions in which the diagnosis depends on marrow evidence (e.g., myelofibrosis, metastatic cancer).

STAINING MARROW PREPARATIONS

Romanowsky's Stain

Marrow films should be stained with Romanowsky's stain (e.g., Wright-Giemsa) in a manner similar to that used for blood films. A longer staining time may be necessary for marrows with greater cellularity. Several special stains may be performed on peripheral blood smears, bone marrow aspirate, and touch imprint smears and bone marrow biopsy sections, besides the usual Romanowsky's and H&E stains. These include cytochemical stains (myeloperoxidase, Sudan black B, naphthol As-D chloroacetate esterase, nonspecific esterases, acid phosphatases, leukocyte alkaline phosphatase, periodic acid–Schiff stain, toluidine blue, and iron stain) and immunocytochemical stains, depending on the disease and the preliminary morphologic examination of the smear and/or section (Perkins, 2004).

Perls' Test for Iron

Procedure

One film containing marrow particles is fixed for 10 minutes in formalin vapor, immersed for 10 minutes in a freshly prepared solution that contains 0.5% potassium ferrocyanide and 0.75% hydrochloric acid, rinsed, dried, and counterstained with Nuclear Fast Red.

Interpretation

The Prussian blue reaction is produced when hemosiderin or ferritin is present; iron in Hb is not stained. It is reported as negative or 1+ to 5+. Storage iron, which is contained in macrophages, can be evaluated only in marrow particles on the film. In adults, 2+ is normal, 3+ is slightly increased, 4+ is moderately increased, and 5+ is markedly increased (Fig. 30-44). Storage iron in the marrow is located in macrophages. Normally, a small number of blue granules are seen. In iron deficiency, blue-staining granules are absent or extremely rare. Storage iron is increased in most other anemias, infections, hemochromatosis, hemosiderosis, hepatic cirrhosis, uremia, and cancer, and after repeated transfusions. Sideroblasts (Fig. 30-45) are normoblasts that contain one or more particles of stainable iron. Normally, from 20% to 60% of late normoblasts are sideroblasts; in the remainder, no blue granules can be detected. The percentage of sideroblasts is decreased in iron deficiency anemia (in which storage iron is decreased) and also in the common anemias associated with infection, rheumatoid arthritis, and neoplastic disease (anemia of chronic disease/anemia of inflammation in which storage iron is normal or increased). The number of sideroblasts is increased when erythropoiesis is impaired for other reasons (sideroblastic anemia, myelodysplastic syndrome); it is roughly proportional to the degree of saturation of transferrin. The Prussian blue reaction can also be performed on slides previously stained with a Romanowsky's stain to identify sideroblasts or to determine whether iron is present in other cells of interest. Iron stain is used to evaluate for the presence of abnormal sideroblasts and ring sideroblasts (Fig. 30-46), as seen in various hematologic diseases.

Sections

Routine H&E stains are satisfactory for most purposes. Romanowsky's stains can be used to good advantage with fixed material. Iron stains are

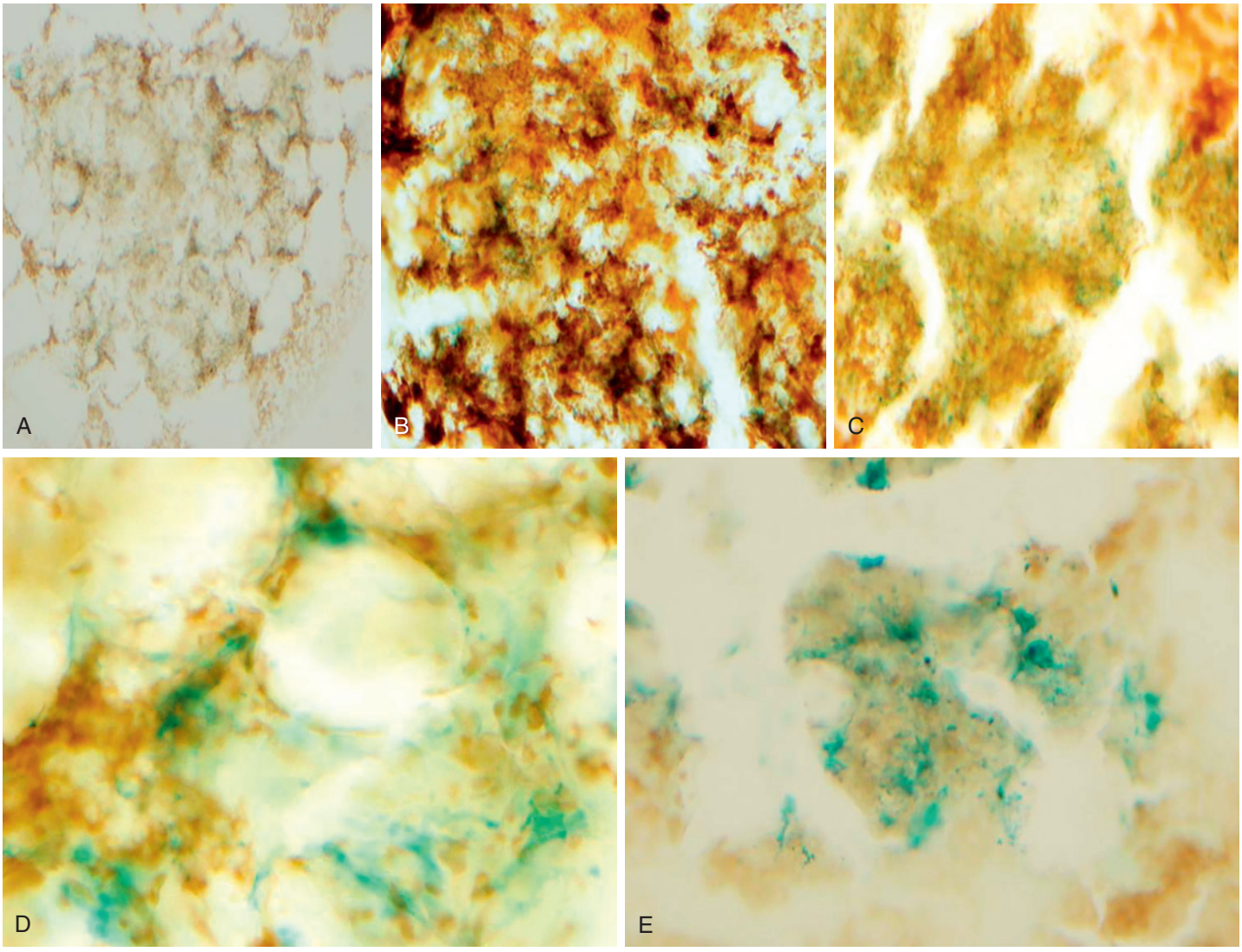


Figure 30-44 **Bone marrow storage iron located in macrophages. A,** Iron stores 1+ (1000×). **B,** Iron stores 2+ (1000×). **C,** Iron stores 3+ (1000×). **D,** Iron stores 4+ (1000×). **E,** Iron stores 5+ (500×).

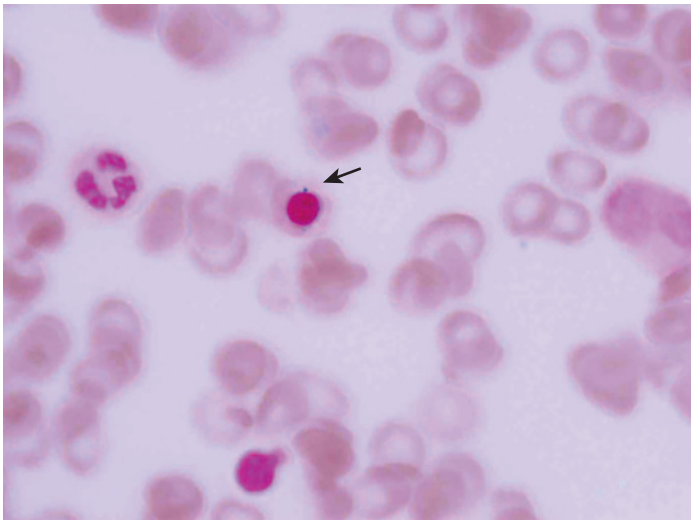


Figure 30-45 **Normal sideroblast.** Single iron granule seen in the cytoplasm of a maturing normoblast. Identification requires high magnification and bright illumination, while focusing up and down (1000×).

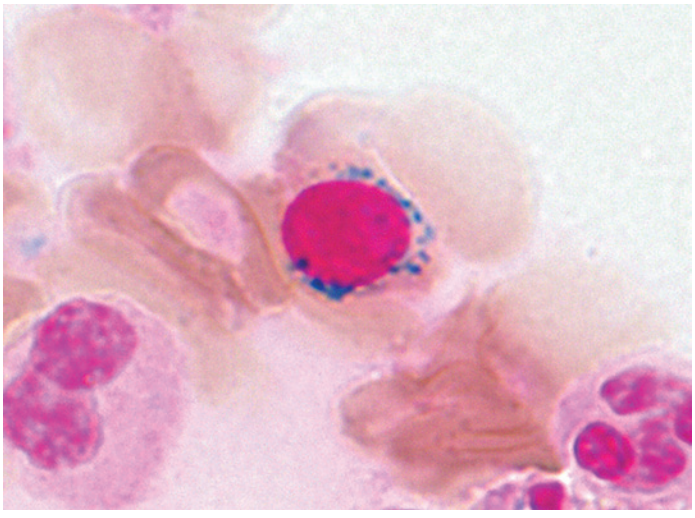


Figure 30-46 **Ring sideroblast.** Siderotic granules form a perinuclear ring spanning more than half of the nuclear diameter (Prussian blue stain, 1000×).

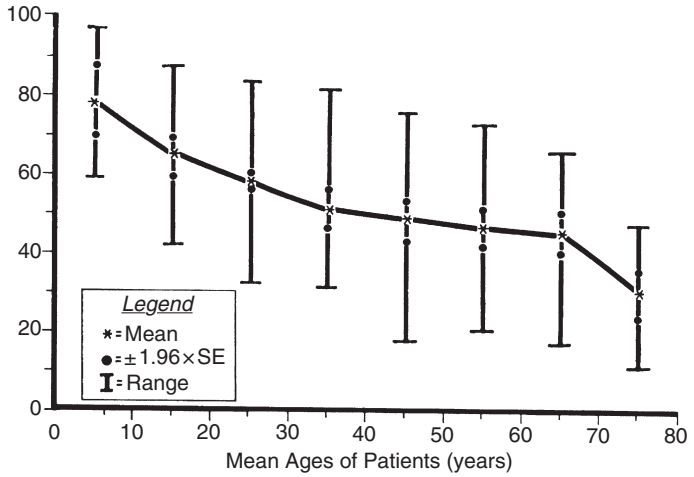


Figure 30-47 **Marrow cellularity in hematologically normal individuals.** Percent cellularity on the ordinate versus age, grouped by decade, on the abscissa. (From Hartsock RJ, Smith EB, Petty CS: *Am J Clin Pathol* 43:326, 1965, with permission.)

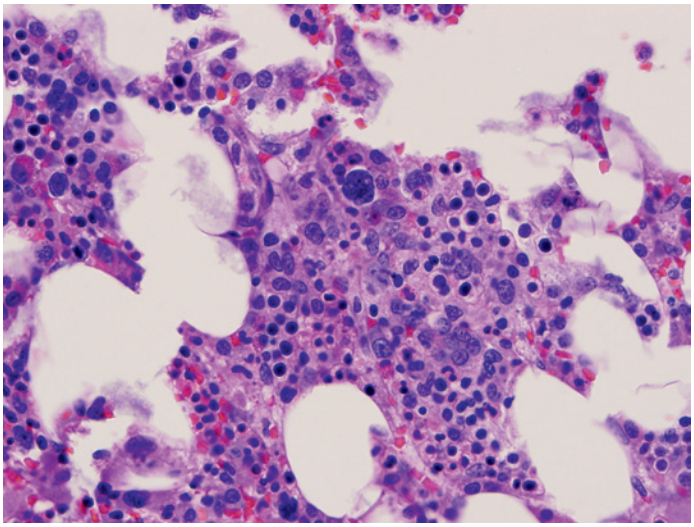


Figure 30-48 **Marrow biopsy (500×).** Cellularity here is between 50 % and 60%, which is normal for an adult. Megakaryocytes, myeloid and erythroid precursors are present. (Normoblasts have intensely staining nuclei and tend to occur in clusters.)

best performed on films that contain particulate marrow tissue. They are less sensitive in sections of marrow because some iron is lost in processing, and a lesser thickness of tissue is examined in sections.

EXAMINATION OF MARROW

It is desirable to establish a routine procedure to obtain maximum information from examination of the marrow.

Peripheral Blood

The complete blood cell count, including platelet count and reticulocyte count, should be performed on the day of the marrow study, and the results incorporated in the report. The pathologist or hematologist who examines the marrow should also carefully examine the blood film as previously described and should incorporate the observations in the marrow report.

Cellularity of the Marrow

Marrow cellularity is expressed as the ratio of the volume of hematopoietic cells to the total volume of the marrow space (cells plus fat and other stromal elements). Cellularity varies with the age of the subject and the site. For example, at 50 years of age, the average cellularity in the vertebrae is 75%; sternum, 60%; iliac crest, 50%; and rib, 30%. Normal cellularity of the iliac bone at different ages has been well defined by Hartsock and colleagues (1965), as summarized in Figure 30-47. If the percentage is increased for the patient's age, the marrow is hypercellular, or hyperplastic; if decreased, the marrow is hypocellular, or hypoplastic. Marrow cellularity is best judged by histologic sections of biopsy or aspirated particles (Fig. 30-48) but should also be estimated from the particles present in marrow films. This is done by comparing the areas occupied by fat spaces and by nucleated cells in the particles, as well as the density of nucleated cells in the "tail" or fallout of the particles. Comparison of films and sections on each marrow specimen will enable the observer to estimate cellularity reasonably well from films—a skill that is useful when sectioned material is unavailable.

Distribution of Cells

Distribution of various cell types can be ascertained in two ways. First, one scans several slides under low, then high, magnification; on the basis of previous experience, one then estimates the number and distribution of cells. Second, one actually makes a differential count of 300 to 500 cells and calculates the percentage of each type of cell. A combination of both methods is preferred. The second of these methods, careful differential counting, is an essential part of training in this work, without which accuracy in the first method may be difficult to achieve. The differential count also affords an objective record from which future changes may be measured.

One first scans the marrow film under low power (100× or 200× magnification) while looking for irregularities in cell distribution, numbers of megakaryocytes, and the presence of abnormal cells. Then one selects areas on the film where marrow cells are both undiluted with blood cells and separated and spread out sufficiently to allow optimal identification. These areas are usually just behind marrow particles on direct films, or near the particles on crushed films. The differential count is performed at 400× or 1000× magnification. Examples of reference intervals for differential counts of marrow at selected different ages are given in Table 30-8.

Changes in the marrow cell distribution are most dramatic in the first month of life, during which a predominance of granulocytic cells at birth changes to a predominance of lymphocytes. This predominance of lymphocytes characterizes the bone marrow during infancy. A small proportion of "immature" or transitional lymphoid cells (fine nuclear chromatin, high nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio, small to intermediate cell size) is normally present; it may be that these cells include stem cells and progenitor cells. These cells probably include cells designated as "hematogones"; they may be increased in iron deficiency anemia, immune thrombocytopenic purpura, and other disorders, especially in infancy. Normoblasts fall after birth, rise to a maximum at 2 months, then fall to a stable, relatively low level by 4 months, and remain there during most of infancy. The myeloid/erythroid (M/E) ratio is the ratio of total granulocytes to total normoblasts. In newborns and infants, it is somewhat higher than in older children or adults (see Table 30-8). In adults, the range is broad, varying from about 1.2 : 1 to 5 : 1. Both the differential count and the M/E ratio are relative values and must be interpreted with respect to cellularity, or with respect to other evidence that one of the systems is normal. An **increased** M/E ratio (e.g., 6 : 1) may be found in infection, chronic myelogenous leukemia, or erythroid hypoplasia. A **decreased** M/E ratio (i.e., <1.2 : 1) may mean a depression of leukopoiesis or a normoblastic hyperplasia, depending on the marrow cellularity. The number of megakaryocytes is estimated more reliably in sections than in marrow films. In scanning areas of films with good cellularity under low power (100×), an average of one to three megakaryocytes should be found in each field in normal marrow.

Maturation

While examining cells during the differential count, one should evaluate whether maturation is normal (Figs. 30-49 and 30-50), that is, whether nuclear and cytoplasmic development is in balance. Impaired cytoplasmic maturation in normoblasts, for example, occurs when Hb synthesis is impaired; impaired nuclear maturation occurs in megaloblastic anemias. Bizarre or dysplastic maturation occurs as a result of certain drugs, in some leukemias, and in dysmyelopoietic syndromes.

Presence of Rare Cell Types or Abnormal Cells

In scanning the marrow, one looks for the presence of rare or unexpected cell types.

Tissue mast cells (Fig. 30-51) are normally very infrequent. They are increased in number in aplastic or refractory anemias and in lymphoproliferative disorders.

Osteoblasts (Fig. 30-52) are cells that synthesize the collagen matrix of bone. **Osteoclasts** are cells that resorb bone and are thought to result

TABLE 30-8

Differential Cell Counts of Bone Marrow in Percent of Total Nucleated Cells

	ROSSE ET AL (1977)			MAUER (1969)	JANDL (1987)
Cell Types	**Birth (Mean, SD)**	**1 Month (Mean, SD)**	**18 Months (Mean, SD)**	**Childhood (Mean, Range)**	**Adult (Mean, Range)**
Normoblasts, total	4.48 ± 7.24	8.04 ± 5.00	8.21 ± 3.71	23.1	21.5 (14.2-30.4)
Pronormoblasts	0.02 ± 0.06	0.10 ± 0.14	0.08 ± 0.13	0.5 (0.0-1.5)	0.6 (0.2-1.4)
Basophilic n.	0.24 ± 0.25	0.34 ± 0.33	0.50 ± 0.34	1.7 (0.2-4.8)	2.0 (0.7-3.7)
polychromatophilic n.	13.06 ± 6.78	6.90 ± 4.45	6.97 ± 3.56	18.2 (4.8-34.0)	12.4 (12.2-24.2)
Orthochromatic n.	0.69 ± 0.73	0.54 ± 1.88	0.44 ± 0.49	2.7 (0.0-7.8)	6.5 (2.0-22.7)
Neutrophils, total	60.37 ± 8.66	32.35 ± 7.68	36.06 ± 7.40	57.1	56.0 (45.1-66.5)
Myeloblasts	0.31 ± 0.3	10.62 ± 0.50	0.06 ± 0.08	1.2 (0.0-3.2)	1.0 (0.5-1.8)
Promyelocytes	0.79 ± 0.9	10.76 ± 0.6	50.64 ± 0.59	1.4 (0.0-4.0)	3.4 (2.6-4.6)
Myelocytes	3.95 ± 2.93	2.50 ± 1.48	2.49 ± 1.39	18.3 (8.5-29.7)	11.9 (8.1-16.9)
Metamyelocytes	19.37 ± 4.8	411.30 ± 3.59	12.42 ± 4.15	23.3 (14.0-34.2)	18.0 (9.8-25.3)
Bands	28.89 ± 7.56	14.10 ± 4.63	14.20 ± 5.23		11.0 (8.5-20.8)
Segmented	7.37 ± 4.64	3.64 ± 2.97	6.31 ± 3.91	12.9 (4.5-29.0)	10.7 (8.0-16.0)
Eosinophils	2.70 ± 1.27	2.61 ± 1.40	2.70 ± 2.16	3.6 (1.0-9.0)	3.2 (1.2-6.2)
Basophils	0.12 ± 0.20	0.07 ± 0.16	0.10 ± 0.12	0.06 (0.0-0.8)	<0.1 (0.0-0.2)
Lymphocytes, total	15.6	49.0	45.5	16.0 (4.8-35.8)	15.8 (10.8-22.7)
Transitional	1.18 ± 1.13	1.95 ± 0.94	1.99 ± 1.00		
Small	14.42 ± 5.54	47.05 ± 9.24	43.55 ± 8.56		
Plasma cells	0.00 ± 0.02	0.02 ± 0.06	0.06 ± 0.08	0.4 (0.2-0.6)	1.8 (0.2-2.2)
Monocytes	0.88 ± 0.85	1.01 ± 0.89	2.12 ± 1.59		1.8 (0.2-2.8)
Megakaryocytes	0.06 ± 0.15	0.05 ± 0.09	0.07 ± 0.12		<1.0 (0.0-0.2)
Reticulum cells					0.3 (0.0-0.5)
M/E ratio	4.2	4.0	4.4	2.9 (1.2-5.2)	2.5 (1.2-5.0)

Data from Rosse C, Kraemer MJ, Dillon TL, et al: Bone marrow cell populations of normal infants: the predominance of lymphocytes, *J Lab Clin Med* 89:1225–1240, 1977; Mauer AM: *Pediatric hematology,* New York, 1969, McGraw-Hill; Jandl JH: *Blood: textbook of hematology,* Boston, 1987, Little, Brown.
M/E, Myeloid/erythroid ratio.

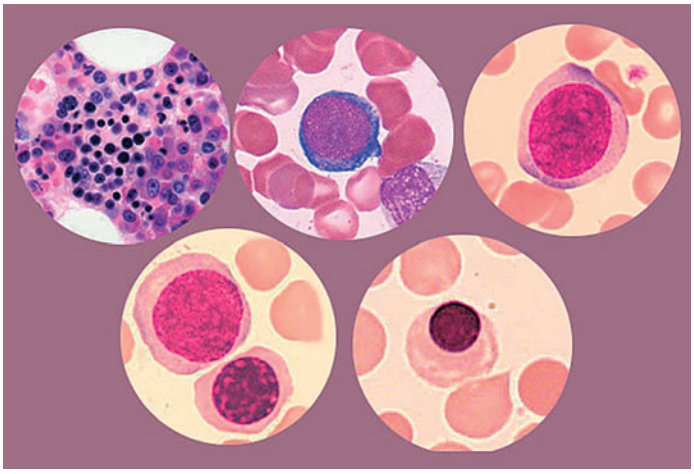


Figure 30-49 Normal erythroid maturation. Various stages of normoblastic erythroid maturation (1000×).

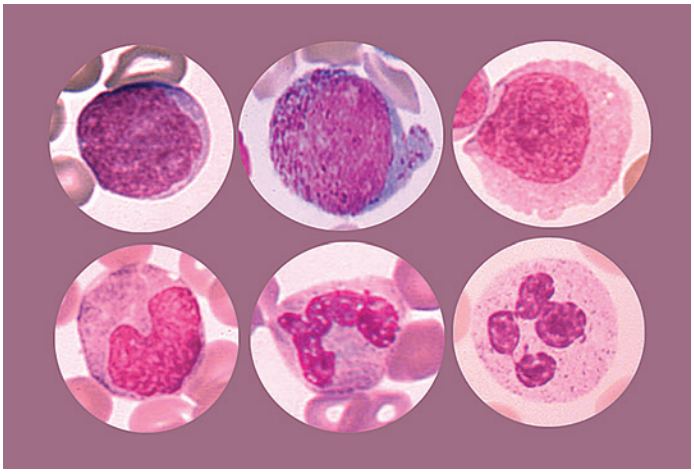


Figure 30-50 Normal myeloid (neutrophilic) maturation. Various stages of normal myeloid maturation from the blast to the mature neutrophil.

from the fusion of histiocytes. Both cell types are normally present in small numbers in the aspirates of infants and children. They are uncommonly seen in adult marrow, except when bone destruction or repair is occurring, as in hyperparathyroidism, Paget's disease, metastatic tumor, or a recent biopsy at the same site.

Osteoblasts are large cells with a single eccentric nucleus that has reticular chromatin and a prominent nucleolus. The cytoplasm is moderately basophilic; a large, pale Golgi zone is separated from the nucleus, rather than abutting it as in plasma cells. Osteoblasts are often present in clusters and may be confused with immature plasma cells or myeloma cells.

Osteoclasts (Fig. 30-53) are large, multinucleated cells up to 100 µm diameter that may be mistaken for megakaryocytes. They have multiple nuclei that are separate (not joined as in megakaryocytes). The chromatin is reticular, and a prominent nucleolus is usually present. The cytoplasm may be basophilic but usually has pink-purple granules that resemble megakaryocyte granules. Coarse fragments of purple-staining material are often present. Clusters of **metastatic neoplastic cells** (Fig. 30-54) may be found in one or more marrow films of patients with metastatic tumor in the bone sampled; they may be found in biopsy sections and not in films, in both, or, less commonly, in one or more films and not in the biopsy.

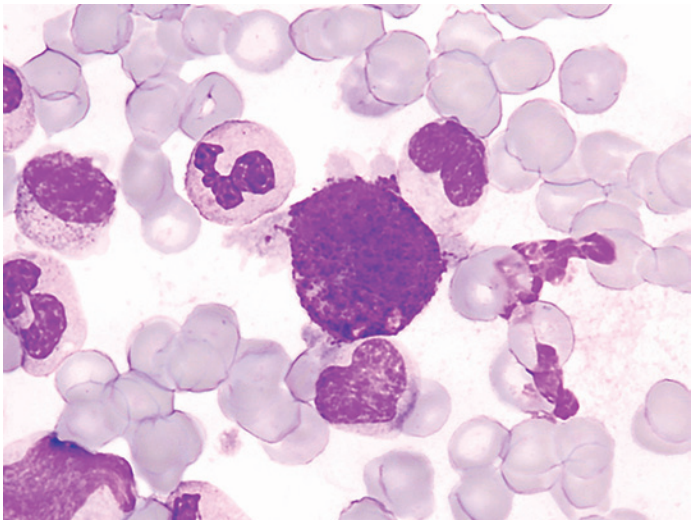


Figure 30-51 Tissue mast cell. Mast cells contain numerous dense dark-purple cytoplasmic granules that can completely cover the round nucleus (1000×).

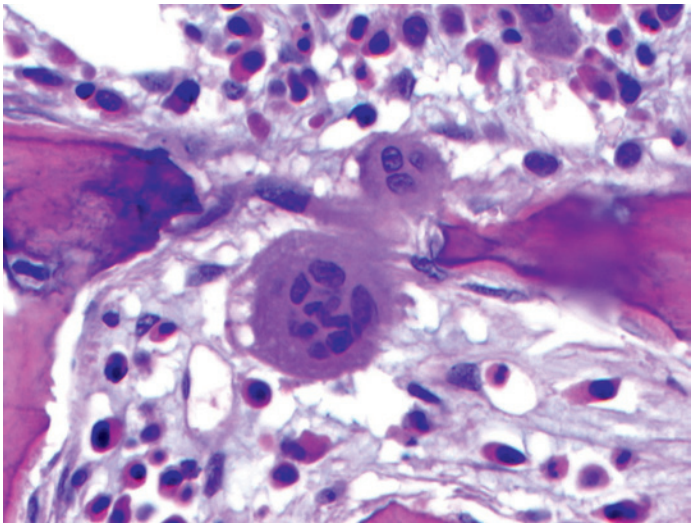


Figure 30-53 Osteoclast. Osteoclasts resorb bone and participate in bone remodeling (1000×)

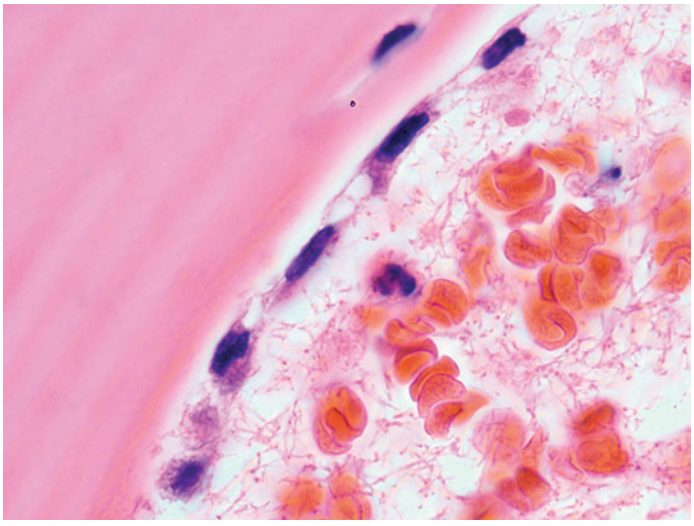


Figure 30-52 Osteoblast. Frequently found in pediatric patients, osteoblasts line the bone trabeculae. In smears, they appear as cells with eccentrically placed nuclei, resembling plasma cells, but the cytoplasmic clearing is more centrally located and is not found in the Golgi area, as in plasma cells (1000×).

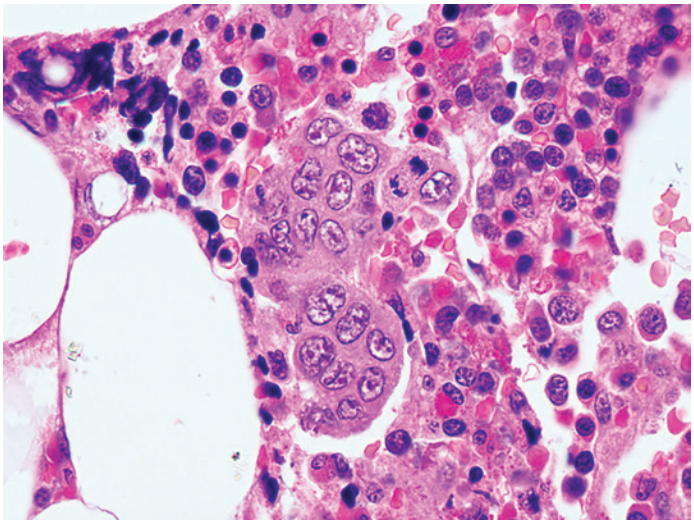


Figure 30-54 Metastatic tumor. Bone marrow biopsy with islands of metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma (1000×).

Some metastatic neoplastic cells resemble myeloblasts or other primitive blasts. The clue to recognizing them is that they almost always appear in clusters or clumps of cells; this is not true of hematopoietic blast cells.

Evaluation of the Biopsy Specimen

Histologic sections allow better estimates of marrow cellularity and of the number of megakaryocytes than do marrow films (see Fig. 30-48). Normally, immature myeloid precursors lie along bone trabeculae, erythroid precursors are in discrete interstitial islands, and megakaryocytes are scattered in the interstitium. In good histologic preparations, cell distribution and maturation abnormalities can be quite reliably determined. In addition to more reliable detection of the presence of lymphomas or metastatic tumor, the histologic pattern can often be diagnostic of the type of neoplasm. Other focal lesions not found in films include granulomas, abscesses, and vascular lesions. In some conditions, such as myelofibrosis and hairy cell leukemia, the bone marrow cannot be aspirated, and biopsy is necessary to establish a diagnosis. Trabeculae should always be examined to detect bone abnormalities. Osteosclerosis with thickened bone trabeculae may accompany myelofibrosis or may be congenital. In osteoporosis, the bone trabeculae are thin. Osteomalacia is characterized by a recognizable osteoid seam. Osteitis fibrosa occurs in hyperparathyroidism and is characterized by irregular osteoclastic bone resorption, endosteal fibrosis, and some osteoblastic activity in areas of bone regeneration. Irregularly widened trabeculae with a "mosaic" pattern are typical findings in Paget's disease of bone.

Interpretation

The summary of the marrow report includes an estimate of cellularity, an estimate of the number of megakaryocytes, the M/E ratio, statements about any cytologic or maturation abnormalities, an estimate of the storage iron and proportion of sideroblasts, and statements about any other abnormal findings present (see Fig. 30-46). Abnormalities in blood cell counts and morphology are also summarized. An interpretation of observed findings is made, which of course includes a diagnosis if this is possible. In making such an **interpretation,** one should include an integration of marrow and blood observations with clinical findings and other laboratory data. Alterations in blood and marrow cells are discussed, with reference to the diseases and disorders considered in subsequent chapters.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Cornbleet J: Spurious results from automated hematology cell analyzers, *Lab Med* 14:509, 1983.

Extremely useful reference for analysis of spurious results obtained from automated cell counters. It discusses reasons for spurious results with each parameter in a nicely tabulated format.

International Committee for Standardization in Haematology (ICSH): Protocol for evaluation of automated blood cell counters, *Clin Lab Haematol* 6:69–84, 1984b.

This protocol evaluates automated blood cell counters to assess the performance, advantages, and limitations of such instruments.

Perkins SL: Examination of the blood and bone marrow. In *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 11, Philadelphia, 2004, Lippincott, pp 3–21.

Comprehensive review of blood and bone marrow examination, including detailed discussion of various ancillary studies that can be done for establishing the diagnosis of hematologic diseases.

Ryan DH: Examination of the blood. In *Williams hematology*, ed 7, New York, 2006, McGraw Hill, pp 11–20.

Extensive review of bone marrow examination, including discussion of marrow aspiration technique.

Ryan DH, Felger RE: Examination of the marrow. In *Williams hematology*, ed 7, New York, 2006, McGraw Hill, pp 21–31.

Extensive review of bone marrow examination.

Ward P: The CBC at the turn of the millennium: an overview, *Clin Chem* 46:1215–1220, 2000.

This review article effectively summarizes current methods utilized by automated hematology analyzers. It also offers comments on advantages and limitations of selected CBC and differential parameters.

REFERENCES

Ackerman P: *Electronic instrumentation in the clinical laboratory*, Boston, 1972, Little, Brown, p 140.

Altman PL, Dittmer DS, editors: *Blood and other body fluids*, Washington, DC, 1961, Federation of American Societies for Experimental Biology.

Altman PL, Dittmer DS: *Biology data book*, vol III, ed 2, Bethesda, Md., 1974, Federation of American Societies for Experimental Biology, p 1856.

Bain BJ: Ethnic and sex differences in the total and differential white count and platelet count, *J Clin Pathol* 49:664–666, 1996.

Bain BJ: Bone marrow aspiration, *J Clin Pathol* 54:657–663, 2001a.

Bain BJ: Bone marrow trephine biopsy, *J Clin Pathol* 54:737–742, 2001b.

Barone MA: Lab values. In McMillan JA, Deangelis CD, Feigin RD, et al, editors: *Oski's pediatrics, principles and practice*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1999, Lippincott, p 2224.

Barrett BA, Hill PI: A micromethod for the erythrocyte sedimentation rate suitable for use on venous or capillary blood, *J Clin Pathol* 33:1118, 1980.

Bartels PC, Schoorl M, Lombarts AJ: Screening for EDTA-dependent deviations in platelet counts and abnormalities in platelet distribution histograms in pseudothrombocytopenia, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 57:629–636, 1997.

Bentley SA, Johnson A, Bishop CA: A parallel evaluation of four automated hematology analyzers, *Am J Clin Pathol* 100:626–632, 1993.

Bentley SA, Lewis SM: Automated differential leukocyte counting: the present state of the art, *Br J Haematol* 35:481–485, 1977.

Bessis M: *Blood smears reinterpreted*, translated by Brecher G., New York, 1977, Springer-Verlag, p 60.

Bessman JD, Williams LJ, Gilmer PR Jr: Mean platelet volume: the inverse relation of platelet size and count in normal subjects, and an artifact of other particles, *Am J Clin Pathol* 76:289–293, 1981.

Böttiger LE, Svedberg CA: Normal erythrocyte sedimentation rate and age, *Br Med J* 2:85–87, 1967.

Brecher G, Schneiderman M: A time-saving device for the counting of reticulocytes, *Am J Clin Pathol* 20: 1079–1093, 1950.

Briggs C, Kunka S, Hart D, et al: Assessment of an immature platelet fraction(IPF) in peripheral thrombocytopenia, *Br J Haematol* 126(1):93, 2004.

Brittin GM, Brecher G, Johnson CA, et al: Stability of blood in commonly used anticoagulants: use of refrigerated blood for quality control of the Coulter Counter Model S, *Am J Clin Pathol* 52:690–694, 1969.

Bull BS: Is a standard ESR possible?, *Lab Med* 6:31, 1975.

Bunn HF, Forget BG: *Hemoglobin: molecular, genetic and clinical aspects*, Philadelphia, 1986, Saunders, p 623.

Burns ER, Lampasso J, Kowatch N, et al: Performance characteristics of state-of-the-art hematology analyzers, *Clin Lab Sci* 5:181–185, 1992.

Camden TL: How to select the ideal hematology analyzer, *MLO Med Lab Obs* 25:29–33, 1993.

Caswell M, Stuart J: Assessment of Diesse Ves-matic automated system for measuring erythrocyte sedimentation rate, *J Clin Pathol* 44:946–949, 1991.

Cheson BD, Fisher RI, Barrington SF, et al: Recommendations for initial evaluation, staging and response assessment of Hodgkin and non Hodgkin lymphoma: The Lugano classification, *J Clin Oncol* 32(27):3059–3068, 2014.

Connelly DP, McClain MP, Crowson TW, et al: The use of the differential leukocyte count for inpatient case finding, *Hum Pathol* 13:294–300, 1982.

Cornbleet PJ, Myrick D, Judkins S, et al: Evaluation of the Cell-Dyn 3000 differential, *Am J Clin Pathol* 98:603–614, 1992.

Dacie JV, Lewis SM: *Practical haematology*, ed 7, Edinburgh, 1991, Churchill Livingstone, p 33.

Dalman PR: Developmental changes in red blood cell production and function. In Rudolph AM, Hoffman JIE, editors: *Pediatrics*, ed 18, Norwalk, Conn., 1987, Appleton & Lange, pp 1011–1012.

Davis BH: Immature reticulocyte fraction (IRF): by any name, a useful clinical parameter of erythropoietic activity, *Lab Hematol* 2:2–8, 1996.

Davis BH, Biegelow NC: Automated reticulocyte analysis: clinical practice and associated new parameters, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 8:617–630, 1994.

d'Onofrio G, Tichelli A, Foures C, et al: Indicators of haematopoietic recovery after bone marrow transplantation: the role of reticulocyte measurements, *Clin Lab Haematol* 18:45–53, 1996.

Ebrahim A, Ryan WL: Encapsulation of ribonucleic acid in human red cells for use as a reticulocyte quality control material for flow cytometric analysis, *Cytometry* 25:156–163, 1996.

Fairbanks VF, Fahey JL, Beutler E: *Clinical disorders of iron metabolism*, ed 2, New York, 1971, Grune & Stratton, p 178.

Ford HC, Toomath RJ, Carter JM, et al: Mean platelet volume is increased in hyperthyroidism, *Am J Hematol* 27:190–193, 1988.

Freeman AG: Is the erythrocyte sedimentation rate outdated?, *J R Soc Med* 90:179–180, 1997.

Geller A: *Vacutainer systems*, Franklin Lakes, NJ, 1996, Becton Dickinson.

Hanseler E, Fehr J, Keller H: Estimation of the lower limits of manual and automated platelet counting, *Am J Clin Pathol* 105:782–787, 1996.

Harrow C, Singer AJ, Thode HC: Facilitating the use of the erythrocyte sedimentation rate in the emergency department, *Acad Emerg Med* 6:658–660, 1999.

Hartsock RJ, Smith EB, Petty CS: Normal variations with aging of the amount of hematopoietic tissue in bone marrow from the anterior iliac crest, *Am J Clin Pathol* 43:326–331, 1965.

Hyun BH, Gulati GL, Ashton JK: Bone marrow examination: techniques and interpretation, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 2:513–523, 1988.

International Committee for Standardization in Haematology (ICSH): Recommendation for measurement of erythrocyte sedimentation rate of human blood, *Am J Clin Pathol* 68:505, 1977.

International Committee for Standardization in Haematology (ICSH): Expert Panel on Blood Cell Sizing: recommendation for reference method for determination of packed cell volume of blood, *J Clin Pathol* 33:1–7, 1980.

International Committee for Standardization in Haematology (ICSH): ICSH reference method for staining of blood and bone marrow films by azure B and eosin Y (Romanowsky stain), *Br J Haematol* 57:707–710, 1984a.

International Committee for Standardization in Haematology: Reference method for the enumeration of erythrocytes and leucocytes, *Clin Lab Haematol* 20:77–79, 1994.

International Council for Standardization in Haematology (Expert Panel on Blood Rheology): ICSH recommendations for measurement of erythrocyte sedimentation rate, *J Clin Pathol* 46:198–203, 1993.

International Council for Standardization in Hematology, Expert Panel on Cytometry: Proposed reference method for reticulocyte counting based on the determination of the reticulocyte to red cell ratio, *Clin Lab Haematol* 20:77–79, 1998.

International Council for Standardization in Hematology Expert Panel on Cytometry and International Society of Laboratory Hematology Task Force on Platelet Counting: Platelet counting by the RBC/platelet ratio method: A reference method, *Am J Clin Pathol* 115:460–464, 2001.

Iversen OH, Roger M, Solberg HE, et al: Rising erythrocyte sedimentation rate during several years before diagnosis can be a predictive factor in 70% of renal cell carcinoma patients: the benefit of knowing subject-based reference values, *J Int Med* 240:133–141, 1996.

Jaffé ER, Hultquist DE, et al: Cytochrome b5 reductase deficiency and enzymopenic hereditary methemoglobinemia. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WS, et al, editors: *The metabolic basis of inherited disease*, ed 6, New York, 1989, McGraw-Hill.

Jandl JH: *Blood: textbook of hematology*, ed 1, Boston, 1987, Little, Brown.

Jandl JH: *Blood: textbook of hematology*, ed 2, Boston, 1996, Little, Brown, p 505.

Kaur M, Singh Rana AP, Kapoor S, et al: Diagnostic value of bone marrow aspiration and biopsy in routine hematology practice, *J Clin Diagn Res* 8:FC13–FC16, 2014.

Koepke JA, van Assendelft OW, Bull BS: Standardisation of EDTA anticoagulation for blood counting procedures, *Lab Medica* 5:15–17, 1989.

Koike Y, Yoneyama A, Shirai J: Evaluation of thrombopoiesis in thrombocytopenic disorders by simultaneous measurement of reticulated platelets of whole blood and serum thrombopoietin concentrations, *Thromb Haemost* 79:1106–1110, 1998.

Kumar V, Singhi S: Predictors of serious bacterial infection in infants up to 8 weeks of age, *Indian J Pediatr* 32:171–180, 1994.

Lapen D: A standardized differential stain for hematology, *Cytometry* 2:309–315, 1982.

Lillie RD, editor: *HJ Conn's biological stains*, ed 9, Baltimore, 1977, Williams & Wilkins, p 416.

Lippi U, Schinella M, Nicoli M: EDTA-induced platelet aggregation can be avoided by a new anticoagulant also suitable for complete blood count, *Haematology* 75:38–41, 1990.

Lombarts AJ, deKieviet W: Recognition and prevention of pseudothrombocytopenia and concomitant pseudoleukocytosis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 89:634–639, 1988.

Lubrano GJ, Dean WW, Heinsohn HG, et al: The analysis of some commercial dyes and Romanowsky stains by high-performance liquid chromatography, *Stain Technol* 52:13–23, 1977.

Lukens JN: Hemoglobins associated with cyanosis: methemoglobinemia and low affinity hemoglobins. In *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 11, Philadelphia, 2004, Lippincott, p 1487.

Mathy KA, Koepke JA: The clinical usefulness of segmented vs. stab neutrophil criteria for differential leukocyte counts, *Am J Clin Pathol* 61:947–958, 1974.

Matic GB, Chapman ES, Zaiss M: Whole blood analysis of reticulated platelets: improvements of detection and assay stability, *Cytometry* 34:229–234, 1998.

Mauer AM: *Pediatric hematology*, New York, 1969, McGraw-Hill.

Merizanu M, Cheney R, Groman A, et al: Bone marrow core biopsy adequacy and variability in the Unites States and Canada: a multicenter retrospective study, *Blood* 124:1376, 2014.

Metzger DK, Charache S: Flow cytometric reticulocyte counting with thioflavin T in a clinical hematology laboratory, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 111:540–544, 1987.

Morris MW, Skrodzki Z, Nelson DA: Zeta sedimentation ratio (ZSR), a replacement for the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), *Am J Clin Pathol* 164:254–256, 1975.

Mukherjee DP, Ray N, Acton ST: Level set analysis for leukocyte detection and tracking, *IEEE Trans Image Process* 13:562–572, 2004.

Nagai M, Mawatari K: Studies of the oxidation states of hemoglobin M Boston and hemoglobin M Saskatoon in blood by EPR spectroscopy, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 210:483–490, 1995.

National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology. Non Hodgkin Lymphoma vs 2014 at nccn.org on November 23, 2014.

National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS): *Methods for the erythrocyte sedimentation rate test*, ed 3, Candidate standard for approval. Villanova, Pa, 1993, NCCLS. NCCLS Document H2-A3.

O'Broin S, Kelleher B, O'Connor G: Uniformity of anticoagulation for full blood counting, *Clin Lab Haematol* 19:159–160, 1997.

Odejide OO, Cronin AM, DeAngelo DJ, et al: Improving the quality of bone marrow assessment: Impact of operator techniques and use of a specimen preparation checklist, *Cancer* 119:3472–3478, 2013.

Olshaker JS, Jerrard DA: The erythrocyte sedimentation rate: clinical laboratory in emergency medicine, *J Emerg Med* 15:869–874, 1997.

Parthenis K, Metaxaki-Kossionides C: Blood analysis using black and white digital images, *J Biomed Eng* 14:287–292, 1992.

Pearson TA, Mensah GA, Alexander RW, et al: Markers of inflammation and cardiovascular disease: application to clinical and public health practice. A statement for health care professionals from The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the American Heart Association, *Circulation* 107:499–511, 2003.

Peerschke EIB, Pessin MS, Maslak P: Using the hemoglobin content of reticulocytes (RET-He) to evaluate anemia in patients with cancer, *Am J Clin Pathol* 142:506–512, 2014.

Penchas S: Heparin and the ESR, *Arch Intern Med* 138:1865–1866, 1978.

Peterec SM, Brennan SA, Rinder HM: Reticulated platelet values in normal and thrombocytopenic neonates, *J Pediatr* 129:269–274, 1996.

Plebani M, DeToni S, Sanzari MC, et al: The TEST 1 automated system: a new method for measuring erythrocyte sedimentation rate, *Am J Clin Pathol* 110:334–340, 1998.

Rapi S, Ermini A, Bartolini L: Reticulocytes and reticulated platelets: simultaneous measurement in whole blood by flow cytometry, *Clin Chem Lab* 36:211–214, 1998.

Reed LJ, Raghupati R, Strakhan M, et al: The powdered bone marrow biopsy technique is superior to the standard manual technique for hematologists-in-training; a prospective, randomized comparison, *Blood (ASH Annual Meeting Abstract)* 118:Abstract 3133, 2011.

Rifai N: High-sensitivity C-reactive protein: a useful marker for cardiovascular disease risk prediction and the metabolic syndrome, *Clin Chem* 51:504–505, 2005.

Rogers CH: Blood sample preparation for automated differential systems, *Am J Med Technol* 39:435–442, 1973.

Rosse C, Kraemer MJ, Dillon TL, et al: Bone marrow cell populations of normal infants: the predominance of lymphocytes, *J Lab Clin Med* 89:1225–1240, 1977.

Rowan RM, Fraser C: Platelet size distribution analysis. In van Assendelft OW, England JM, editors: *Advances in hematological methods: the blood count*, Boca Raton, Fla., 1982, CRC Press, p 125.

Rümke CL: The imprecision of the ratio of two percentages observed in differential white blood cell counts: a warning, *Blood Cells* 11:137–140, 1985.

Ryan DE: *Examination of the blood*, ed 6, New York, 2001, McGraw Hill.

Ryan DH, Cohen HJ: Bone marrow aspiration and morphology. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ, Shattil SJ, et al, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice*, ed 3, New York, 2000, Churchill Livingstone, pp 2460–2479.

Saadeh C: The erythrocyte sedimentation rate: old and new clinical applications, *South Med J* 91:220–225, 1998.

Sacker LS: Specimen collection. In Lewis SM, Coster JF, editors: *Quality control in haematology*, New York, 1975, Academic Press, p 211.

Saxton BR, Blanchette VW, Butchart S: Reticulated platelet counts in the diagnosis of acute immune thrombocytopenic purpura, *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 20:44–48, 1998.

Schneiderka P, Dohnal L, Shachova J: Erythrocyte sedimentation rate in glass and plastic pipettes, *Sb Lek* 98:301–315, 1997.

Shannon K, Pearson HA: Blood and blood forming tissues. In Rudolph CD, Rudolph AM, Hostetter MK, et al, editors: *Rudolph's pediatrics*, ed 21, New York, 2002, McGraw Hill, p 1521.

Shannon M, Graef JW: Lead intoxication in children with pervasive developmental disorders, *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol* 34:177–181, 1996.

Shelat SG: Differences in erythrocyte sedimentation rates using the Westergren method and a centrifugation method, *Am J Clin Pathol* 130:127–130, 2008.

Simson E, editor: *Proceedings of the Technicon H-1 Hematology Symposium*, Tarrytown, N.Y., 1986, Technicon Instruments.

Small BM, Bettigole RE: Diagnosis of myeloproliferative disease by analysis of platelet volume distribution, *Am J Clin Pathol* 76:685–691, 1981.

Smith EM, Samadian S: Use of the erythrocyte sedimentation rate in the elderly, *Br J Hosp Med* 51:394–397, 1994.

Sox HC Jr, Liang MH: The erythrocyte sedimentation rate: guidelines for rational use, *Ann Intern Med* 104:515–523, 1986.

Stiegler G, Stohlawetz P, Brugger S: Elevated numbers of reticulated platelets in hyperthyroidism: direct evidence for an increase of thrombopoiesis, *Br J Haematol* 101:656–658, 1998.

Stohlawetz P, Stiegler G, Jilma B: Measurement of the levels of reticulated platelets after plateletpheresis to monitor activity of thrombopoiesis, *Transfusion* 38: 454–458, 1998.

Stohlawetz P, Stiegler P, Knobl P: The rise of reticulated platelets after intensive chemotherapy for AML reduces the need for platelet transfusions, *Ann Hematol* 78:271–273, 1999.

Tassies D, Reverter JC, Cases A: Effect of recombinant human erythropoietin treatment on circulating reticulated platelets in uremic patients: associations with early improvement in platelet function, *Am J Hematol* 59:105–109, 1998.

Tsang CW, Lazarus R, Smith W: Hematological indices in an older population sample: derivation of healthy reference values, *Clin Chem* 44:96–101, 1998.

van Assendelft OW: *Spectrophotometry of haemoglobin derivatives.*, Assen, The Netherlands, 1970, Royal Van Gorcum Ltd.

Vaughan Hudson B, Maclennan KA, Bennett MH, et al: Systemic disturbance in Hodgkin's disease and its relation to histopathology and prognosis, *Clin Radiol* 38:257, 1987.

Weick JK, Hagedorn AB, Linman JW: Leukoerythroblastosis: diagnostic and prognostic significance, *Mayo Clin Proc* 49:110–113, 1974.

Wintrobe MM: *Clinical hematology*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 1974, Lea & Febiger.

Zauber NP, Zauber AG: Hematologic data of healthy very old people, *JAMA* 257:2181–2184, 1987.

Zeigler Z, Murphy S, Gardner FH: Microscopic platelet size and morphology in various hematologic disorders, *Blood* 51:479–486, 1978.

Zlonis M: The mystique of the erythrocyte sedimentation rate: a reappraisal of one of the oldest laboratory tests still in use, *Clin Lab Med* 13:787–800, 1993.

CHAPTER 31

HEMATOPOIESIS

Sharad C. Mathur, Robert E. Hutchison, Golam Mohi

STEM CELLS, 540
Hematopoietic Stem Cells and Progenitors, 540
Hematopoietic Growth Factors, 541

HEMATOPOIETIC TISSUES, 542
Embryonic and Fetal Hematopoiesis, 542
Postnatal Hematopoiesis, 542

ERYTHROCYTE PRODUCTION, 542
Normoblastic Maturation, 542
Megaloblastic Maturation, 544
Regulation of Erythrocyte Production, 544
Synthesis of Hemoglobin, 544
Structure and Function of Hemoglobin, 546

ERYTHROCYTE DESTRUCTION, 546
Degradation of Hemoglobin, 546

ERYTHROKINETICS, 546
Measurements of Total Production of Erythrocytes or Hemoglobin, 547
Measurements of Total Destruction of Erythrocytes or Hemoglobin, 547
Measurements of Effective Production of Erythrocytes: Reticulocyte Count, 547
Measurements of Effective Survival of Erythrocytes in Blood, 547
Summary, 547

NEUTROPHILS, 547
Morphology of Neutrophil Precursors, 547
Distribution and Kinetics, 550
Function, 550

EOSINOPHILS, 550
Morphology of Eosinophil Precursors, 550
Distribution and Kinetics, 551
Function, 551

BASOPHILS AND MAST CELLS, 551
Morphology, 551
Distribution and Kinetics, 552
Function, 552

MONOCYTES AND MACROPHAGES, 552
Morphology, 552
Distribution and Kinetics, 553
Function, 553

MEGAKARYOCYTES, 553
Morphology, 553
Megakaryocytes in Blood, 553
Distribution and Kinetics, 554
Function, 554

LYMPHOCYTES, 554
Primary Lymphoid Tissue, 554
Secondary Lymphoid Tissue, 556
Lymphocyte Function and Physiology, 556

SELECTED REFERENCES, 558

KEY POINTS

- Hematopoietic tissue arises in the bone marrow from hematopoietic stem cells that differentiate into granulocytes, monocytes, lymphocytes, megakaryocytes, and erythrocytes.
- Differentiation and maturation of hematopoietic cells are influenced by soluble factors, including growth factors and cytokines, by interaction with the bone marrow stroma, and are mediated in part through interaction of adhesion molecules.
- The primary function of erythrocytes is delivery of oxygen from lungs to tissues. This is dependent on the particular properties and adequate production of hemoglobin and is regulated by oxygen tension in the kidneys, where erythropoietin is produced.
- Neutrophils and monocytes are derived from a common progenitor cell under the influence of growth factors, and are the major phagocytic cells. They and the other granulocytic cells (eosinophils, basophils, and mast cells) respond to soluble factors, eliminate microorganisms, and modulate immunity.
- Megakaryocytes, stimulated by thrombopoietin, give rise to platelets and thus effect primary hemostasis.
- Lymphocytes arise from bone marrow stem cells and develop as well as proliferate in thymus and peripheral lymphoid tissue, as well as in bone marrow. They are made up of complex populations of genetically distinct individual B cells, T cells, natural killer (NK) cells, and related subtypes. These interact with other cells, secrete soluble factors including principally cytokines and immunoglobulins, and effect both humoral and cellular immunity.

STEM CELLS

Stem cells are defined as cells that are capable of self-renewal and differentiation into multi-lineage cells. Embryonic stem cells are pluripotent and have the ability to generate all tissues in the body. Tissue-specific stem cells are multipotent and can give rise to mature cells of a particular tissue. It is suggested that each tissue of our body arises from a tissue-specific stem cell. Stem cells are rare in most tissues. Several tissue-specific stem cells have been identified and prospectively purified based on their surface markers. Hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) are the best characterized stem cell population.

HEMATOPOIETIC STEM CELLS AND PROGENITORS

Hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) are characterized by their ability to self-renew and differentiate into committed hematopoietic progenitors. HSCs differentiate into multipotent progenitors (MPPs), which do not have the capacity to self-renew but can generate lineage-committed progenitors, including common lymphoid progenitors (CLPs) and common myeloid progenitors (CMPs) (Kondo et al, 1997; Akashi et al, 2000). CLPs differentiate into T-lymphocytes, B-lymphocytes, and natural killer (NK) cells. CMPs give rise to granulocyte/macrophage progenitors (GMPs) and megakaryocyte/erythrocyte progenitors (MEPs). GMPs differentiate into mature granulocytes, monocytes and macrophages, whereas MEPs differentiate into platelets and erythrocytes (Reya et al, 2001). Thus, HSCs give rise to all mature blood cells of the hematopoietic system (Fig. 31-1).

Human HSCs are immunophenotypically defined as $Lin^{-}CD34^{+}CD38^{-}CD90^{+}CD45RA^{-}CD49f^{+}$ (Doulatov et al, 2012). They lack lineage-commitment markers such as, CD2, CD3, CD4, CD7, CD8, CD10,

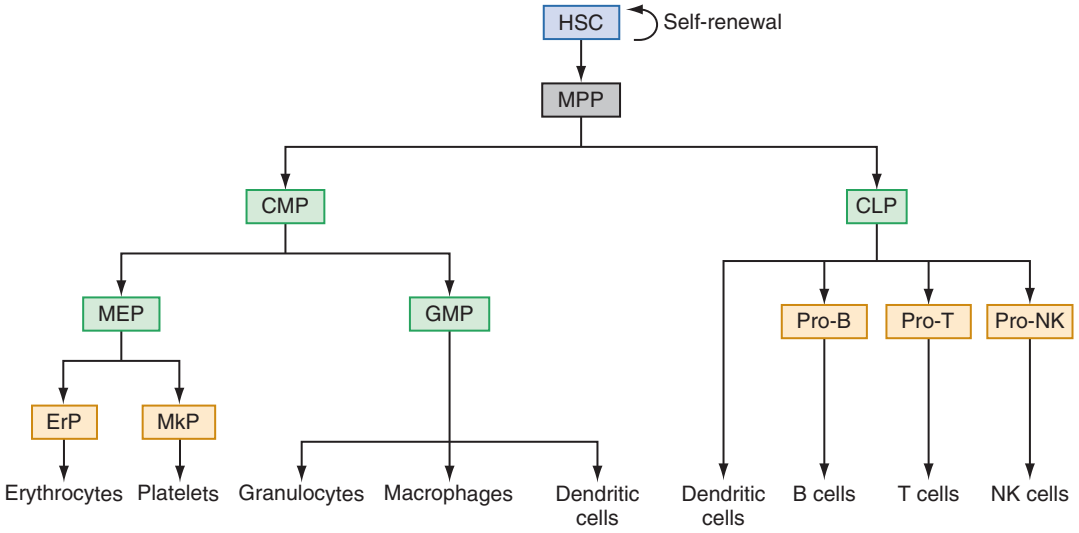


Figure 31-1 A scheme of hematopoietic development hierarchy. *CLP,* Common lymphoid progenitors; *CMP,* common myeloid progenitors; *ErP,* erythroid precursors; *GMP,* granulocyte/macrophage progenitors; *HSC,* hematopoietic stem cells; *MEP,* megakaryocyte/erythrocyte progenitors; *MkP,* megakaryocyte precursors; *MPP,* multipotent progentors.

BOX 31-1

Lineage-Specific Markers

Myeloid—CD33, CD11b, CD14
Erythroid—CD71, GPA
Megakaryocytic—CD41, CD61
B-lymphoid—CD10, CD19
T-lymphoid—CD3, CD7

CD11b, CD14, CD19, CD20, CD56, CD71, and glycophorin A (GPA). As HSCs differentiate into MPPs, the expression of CD90 (Thy1) and CD49f is downregulated (Doulatov et al, 2012). MPPs are defined as $Lin^-CD34^+CD38^-CD90^-CD45RA^-CD49f^-$. CMPs (defined as $Lin^-CD34^+CD38^+CD123^{+/low}CD45RA^-$), GMPs (defined as $Lin^-CD34^+CD38^+CD123^+CD45RA^+$), and MEPs (defined as $Lin^-CD34^+CD38^+CD123^-CD45RA^-$) are distinguishable based on the expression of IL-3 receptor α chain (CD123) and CD45RA (Manz et al, 2002; Bryder et al, 2006). CLPs are identified as $Lin^-CD34^+CD38^+CD10^+$ or $Lin^-CD34^+CD38^+CD127^+$ (Bryder et al, 2006; Pang et al, 2011). When committed progenitors differentiate into lineage-restricted progenitors/precursors, they express lineage-specific antigens such as CD33, CD11b, and CD14 for myeloid precursors, CD71 and GPA for erythroid precursors, CD41 and CD61 for megakaryocytic precursors, CD10 and CD19 for B-lymphoid precursors, and CD3 and CD7 for T-lymphoid precursors (Box 31-1).

In adults, HSCs are mainly contained in the bone marrow. HSCs are also present in small numbers in the peripheral blood and are increased with administration of growth factors and/or some chemotherapeutic agents, allowing the use of peripheral blood as well as bone marrow to obtain HSCs for stem cell transplantation. In some pathologic conditions, such as in hematologic malignancies, extramedullary hematopoiesis is observed and HSCs can be found in other tissues including spleen and liver. Most of the HSCs remain in a quiescent state (G_0 stage of the cell cycle) to prevent rapid exhaustion of HSCs. Since G_0 is a relatively metabolically inactive phase of the cell cycle, HSCs are exposed to less DNA damage induced by metabolic byproducts and reactive oxygen species (ROS) than more metabolically active differentiated cells (Rossi et al, 2005; Bryder et al, 2006). FoxO family transcription factors protect HSCs from oxidative damage and extend their life span by increasing the expression of genes required for the detoxification of ROS as well as genes that promote quiescence (Tothova et al, 2007). ATM, a serine/threonine kinase that is activated in response to DNA damage and is required for normal DNA repair, plays an important role in the maintenance of HSC quiescence by regulating the ROS levels (Ito et al, 2006). In addition, thrombopoietin/MPL signaling has been shown to contribute to the maintenance of HSC quiescence by regulating interaction of HSCs with the osteoblastic niche of the bone marrow (Yoshihara et al, 2007). HSCs also express high levels of multidrug-resistant (MDR) genes (Rossi et al, 2005; Bryder et al, 2006), whose products may play roles in the protection of HSCs from stress or genotoxic agents.

The most important property of stem cells is self-renewal. Self-renewal is the process by which stem cells divide to generate more daughter stem cells. Self-renewal of HSCs is crucial to HSC function and to maintain a long-term steady-state pool of HSCs in adult bone marrow. The Notch, Sonic hedgehog (Shh), Wnt/β-catenin, and Janus kinase 2 (JAK2) signaling pathways have been shown to regulate HSC self-renewal (Varnum-Finney et al, 2000; Bhardwaj et al, 2001; Reya et al, 2003; Akada et al, 2014). Bmi1, a component of the polycomb repressive complex that regulates transcription of target genes through epigenetic silencing, also has been found critical for the self-renewal of HSCs (Park et al, 2003). Recent studies indicate an important role for stem cell niche in the maintenance and self-renewal of HSCs (Morrison & Scadden, 2014). HSCs are mainly localized in the sinusoids of the bone marrow, where endothelial cells and mesenchymal stromal cells promote HSC maintenance by producing the cytokine stem cell factor (SCF) (Ding et al, 2012), the chemokine CXCL12 (Greenbaum et al, 2013; Ding & Morrison, 2013), and possibly other factors. Sympathetic nerves (Katayama et al, 2006), non-myelinating Schwann cells (Yamazaki et al, 2011), macrophages (Winkler et al, 2010), and osteoclasts (Mansour et al, 2012) may also contribute to HSC niche and promote HSC maintenance in the bone marrow. It is suggested that HSCs physically attach to the niche, and when they divide, one daughter cell remains attached to the niche, whereas the other daughter cell is displaced away from the niche to proceed to a differentiation pathway (Clarke & Fuller, 2006). Oncogenic mutations associated with leukemia and other malignancies usually exploit the self-renewal mechanisms of normal stem cells. These mutations often originate in normal HSCs and transform them into leukemic stem cells (LSC) with increased self-renewal capacity.

Self-renewal and differentiation potentials of human HSCs can be assessed by serial transplantation of HSCs into immune-deficient NSG (NOD/SCID/γ-chain deficient) mice and by hematopoietic progenitor colony assays, respectively. Purified HSCs from human bone marrow or peripheral blood are transplanted into sub-lethally irradiated NSG mice, which permit long-term engraftment of human cells without GVHD. The repopulating human cells, termed *severe-combined immunodeficiency mouse-repopulating cells (SRC)*, are assessed using flow cytometry. Hematopoietic progenitor colony assay is used to determine the differentiation capacity of HSCs/progenitors. The earliest undifferentiated myeloid progenitor colony that expresses CD34 and CD33 is called the colon-forming unit-granulocyte, erythrocyte, macrophage, megakaryocyte (CFU-GEMM). In the presence of different cytokines, CFU-GEMM cells can differentiate into colony-forming unit-granulocyte (CFU-G), colony-forming unit-macrophage (CFU-M), burst-forming unit-erythroid (BFU-E), colony-forming unit-eyrthrocyte (CFU-E), and colony-forming unit-megakaryocyte (CFU-Mk). In addition, evidence suggests that HSCs can trans-differentiate into non-hematopoietic cells (Zubair et al, 2002).

HEMATOPOIETIC GROWTH FACTORS

Soluble or membrane-bound factors contributing to control of hematopoiesis include hematopoietic growth factors and cytokines. They regulate

the proliferation, survival, and differentiation of hematopoietic precursor cells and facilitate the function of mature blood cells. Hematopoietic growth factors/cytokines may act locally near the site at which they are produced, or they may circulate in the blood. They are produced by different types of hematopoietic or non-hematopoietic cells and usually affect more than one lineage (Metcalf, 2008). They often act synergistically with other growth factors and may act on normal cells as well as neoplastic cells. There are specific receptors for each cytokine that transmits signals from the cell surface to the nucleus following interaction with the cytokine.

Genes associated with hematopoietic growth factors/cytokines have been identified, cloned, and sequenced. Purified recombinant cytokines have been generated and utilized experimentally. Several of these cytokines have been in clinical use to stimulate hematopoietic cell production. Erythropoietin (EPO) is critical for the production of erythrocytes, whereas thrombopoietin (TPO) is required for the production of megakaryocytes (Metcalf, 2008). Other important growth factors/cytokines involved in hematopoiesis include stem cell factor (SCF), FLT-3 ligand, granulocyte/macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), granulocyte colony stimulating factor (G-CSF), macrophage colony stimulating factor (M-CSF), interleukins (IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-11, IL-13, and IL-15), and interferons (IFN-α and IFN-γ).

Another class of factors, called *chemokines*, is important in regulating hematopoietic cell trafficking and homing. The chemokine CXCL12 (also known as SDF-1) is expressed by bone marrow stromal cells and microvascular endothelial cells. HSCs express CXCR4, the receptor for CXCL12. CXCL12-CXCR4 chemokine signaling is involved in HSC maintenance and engraftment (Sugiyama et al, 2006). G-CSF–induced mobilization of HSCs is likely due to disruption of the interaction between CXCL12 and CXCR4 (Papayannopoulou & Scadden, 2008). Several other chemokines and their receptors also play roles in T and B cell development, inflammation, and immune surveillance (Moser et al, 2004).

HEMATOPOIETIC TISSUES

EMBRYONIC AND FETAL HEMATOPOIESIS

Beginning in the first month of prenatal life, primitive hematopoiesis starts outside the embryo in the mesenchyme of the yolk sac as **blood islands.** These contain predominantly **primitive erythroblasts,** which are large and megaloblastic, are formed intravascularly, and retain their nuclei. Definitive hematopoiesis in mammals takes place in the aorta-gonad-mesonephros (AGM) region of the embryo, from which hematopoietic cells migrate to the placenta, liver, and spleen. At the sixth week, hematopoiesis begins in the liver, and this becomes the major hematopoietic organ of early and midfetal life. **Definitive erythroblasts,** which become nonnucleated red cells, are formed extravascularly in the liver, and granulopoiesis and megakaryocytes are present to a lesser degree. In the middle part of fetal life, the spleen and, to a lesser extent, lymph nodes have a minor role in hematopoiesis, but the liver continues to dominate. In the latter half of fetal life, the bone marrow becomes progressively more important as a site of blood cell production. As this occurs, the liver's role diminishes.

POSTNATAL HEMATOPOIESIS

Shortly after birth, hematopoiesis in the liver ceases, and the marrow is the only site for the production of erythrocytes, granulocytes, and platelets. Hematopoietic stem cells and committed progenitor cells are maintained in the marrow. Lymphocytes (of the B cell type) continue to be produced in the marrow, as well as in the secondary lymphoid organs, whereas T lymphocytes are produced in the thymus and also in the secondary lymphoid organs (see the Lymphocytes section later in the chapter).

At birth, the total marrow space is occupied by active hematopoietic (red) marrow. As body growth progresses and marrow space increases during infancy, only part of that space is needed for hematopoiesis; the remaining space is occupied by fat cells. Later in childhood, only the flat bones (the skull, vertebrae, thoracic cage, shoulder, and pelvis) and the proximal parts of the long bones of the upper and lower limbs are sites of blood cell formation. The remaining marrow space is fatty or yellow marrow that can be replaced by hematopoietic cells if continuous, intensive stimulation exists.

The marrow circulation is closed, that is, arterioles deriving from central longitudinal arteries (i.e., in long bones) connect directly with broad venous sinuses that anastomose and eventually empty into central longitudinal veins. The flattened endothelium of the sinuses is partially covered by adventitial reticular cells, a form of fibroblast that elaborates argentophilic reticulin fibers. These reticular cells and fibers form the supporting meshwork of the marrow stroma, where the hematopoietic cells reside. The reticular cells are minimally phagocytic; they may swell and take up water, may become fat cells, and may induce hematopoietic stem cells to become committed progenitor cells. After proliferation and maturation have occurred in the marrow stroma, blood cells gain entrance to the blood through or between the endothelial cells of the sinus wall. This requires displacement of adventitial cells. Stromal mesenchymal cells and sinusoidal endothelial cells produce a variety of cytokines and chemokines involved in hematopoiesis.

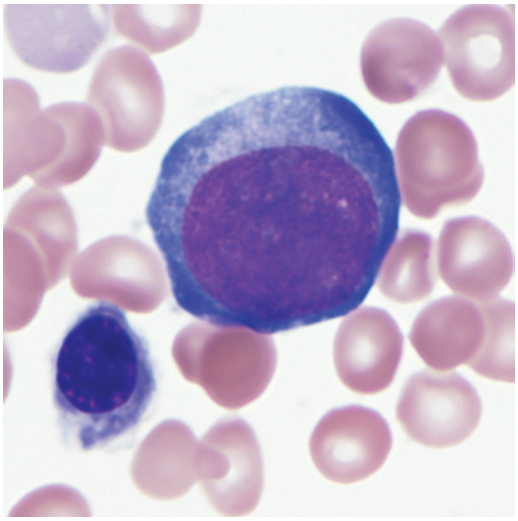


Figure 31-2 **Pronormoblast with a large round nucleus, fine chromatin, and basophilic cytoplasm (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).**

ERYTHROCYTE PRODUCTION

The erythrocyte is a vehicle for the transport of hemoglobin, which is produced in precursor cells of the erythrocytes, the normoblasts. The function of hemoglobin is the transport of oxygen and carbon dioxide. The erythrocyte is also metabolically capable of keeping hemoglobin in a functional state.

NORMOBLASTIC MATURATION

The earliest recognizable erythroid precursor is the **pronormoblast** (Fig. 31-2). At about 20 μm diameter, it is the largest of the erythroid precursors. The nucleus has a fine, uniform chromatin pattern that is somewhat more distinct and more intensely stained than that of the myeloblast. The nuclear membrane is prominent. One or more prominent nucleoli are present. The cytoplasm has a heterogeneous quality and is moderate in amount and basophilia; no granules are present. The pronormoblast undergoes mitosis and forms two basophilic normoblasts.

The **basophilic normoblast** (Fig. 31-3) is somewhat smaller and has slightly coarser chromatin that stains intensely; the chromatin may be partially clumped, and the pattern may suggest a wheel with broad spokes. The parachromatin (the nonchromatin part of the nucleus) is distinct and stains pink. Nucleoli are present but are not often visible. The nuclear/cytoplasmic (N/C) ratio is moderate; about one fourth of the total cell area appears to be cytoplasm. The cytoplasm is deeply basophilic, owing to the abundance of RNA; much of this is evident as polyribosomes on electron micrographs. The cell borders of early normoblasts frequently appear irregular owing to the presence of pseudopodia.

After mitosis of the basophilic normoblast, evidence of continuing hemoglobin production becomes visible in the cytoplasm of the two daughter cells as polychromasia, that is, mixtures of the red-staining of hemoglobin with the blue of RNA in varying shades of gray. This cell is the **polychromatophilic normoblast** (Fig. 31-4), which is slightly smaller than the basophilic normoblast. The nucleus occupies about half of the area of the cell, stains intensely, and has moderately condensed chromatin that is sharply distinct from the pink parachromatin. The polychromatophilic normoblast undergoes one or two mitotic divisions.

After the last mitosis, the nucleus becomes small and dense (pyknotic), and the **orthochromatic normoblast** stage is reached (Fig. 31-5). Mitosis is no longer possible. The cell is smaller than the polychromatophilic

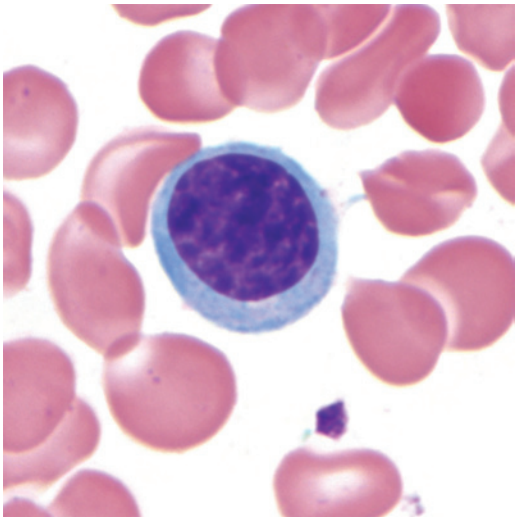


Figure 31-3 Basophilic normoblasts with chromatin condensation and deeply basophilic cytoplasm (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

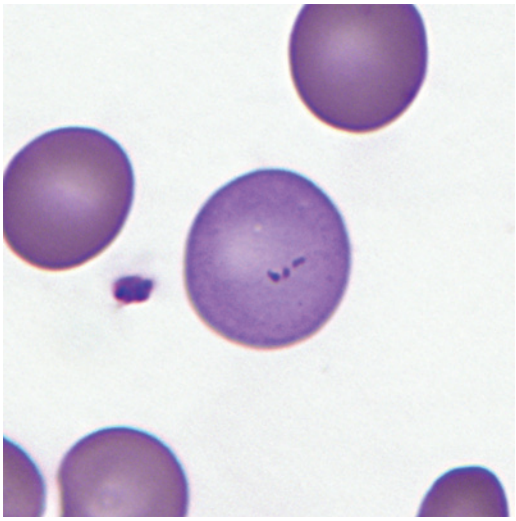


Figure 31-6 Reticulocyte (polychromatophilic erythrocyte) with pink-gray cytoplasm due to residual RNA (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×). *RNA,* Ribonucleic acid.

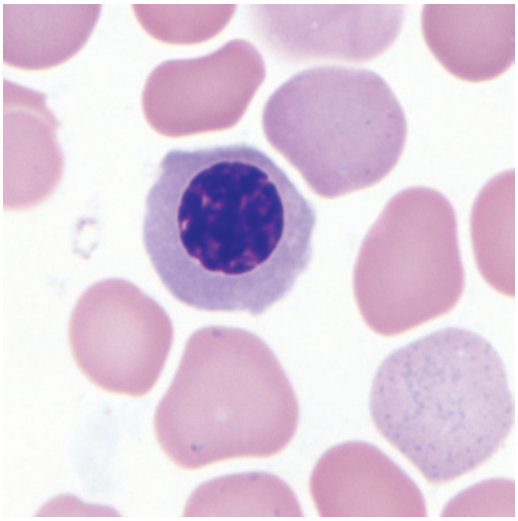


Figure 31-4 Polychromatophilic normoblast with light blue cytoplasm due to accumulation of hemoglobin (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

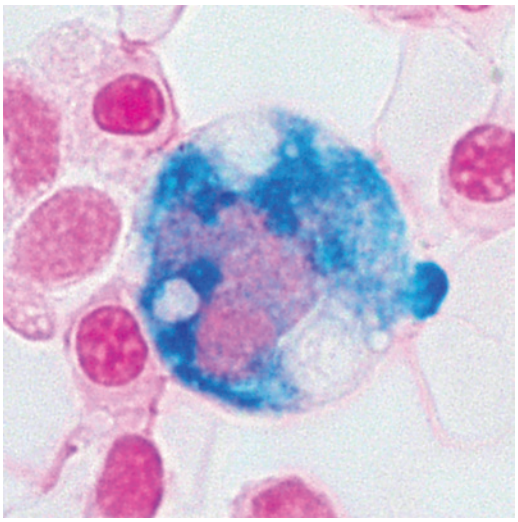


Figure 31-7 Siderophage with associated normoblasts (part of an erythroblastic island) in the bone marrow (Prussian blue, 1000×).

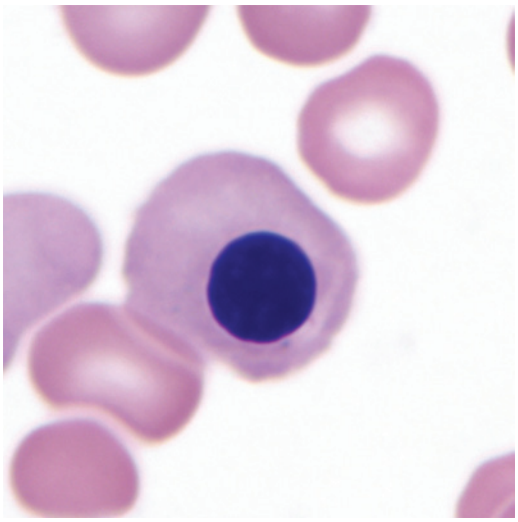


Figure 31-5 Orthochromatic normoblast with pyknotic nucleus and pink-gray cytoplasm (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

normoblast and has a lower N/C ratio. The cytoplasm contains more abundant hemoglobin and fewer polyribosomes and remains slightly polychromatophilic.

Finally, accompanied by cytoplasmic contractions and undulations, the nucleus and a small rim of cytoplasm are ejected from the orthochromatic normoblast, forming the **reticulocyte** (Fig. 31-6). On air-dried films with Romanowsky-type stains, the reticulocyte is polychromatophilic as a result of the retention of RNA.

In the marrow, developing erythroid cells are usually in contact with macrophages in what are termed **erythroblastic islands** (Fig. 31-7). These erythroblastic islands are usually broken up when aspirated marrow is spread on slides, but fragments of macrophage cytoplasm may sometimes be seen attached to the separated normoblasts, especially on Prussian blue–stained films.

During proliferation and maturation, iron is transferred from plasma transferrin into the cells in the normoblastic series. The pronormoblast and the basophilic normoblast have the highest content of RNA, which begins to decline in the polychromatophilic normoblasts as hemoglobin increases in amount. Synthesis of RNA gradually decreases in each stage through the orthochromatic normoblasts. When the nucleus is no longer present (in the reticulocyte), RNA synthesis ceases, yet the RNA already present remains for a few days, and protein and heme synthesis continue in the reticulocyte until the cell loses its RNA and mitochondria.

During this maturation process, three or four mitotic divisions occur in a period of 3 days, resulting in the potential production of 16

reticulocytes from each pronormoblast. The reticulocytes are larger than mature red blood cells and remain in the marrow stroma for 1 to 2 days before being released into the blood.

In the marrow, the reticulocytes are about equal in number to the nucleated erythrocytes and slightly greater in number than the reticulocytes in the circulating blood. If sufficiently severe hypoxia is present, this marrow pool of reticulocytes can be released. This approximately doubles the number of circulating reticulocytes.

Normally, reticulocytes remain as such, slowly synthesizing hemoglobin, for 2 to 3 days in the marrow and for 1 day in the blood. Residual ribosomes, mitochondria, and other organelles are then removed, and the mature erythrocytes circulate for about 120 days. During this time, they gradually age, certain enzymatic activities diminish, and they are finally destroyed within phagocytic cells of the mononuclear phagocyte system (reticuloendothelial system).

MEGALOBLASTIC MATURATION

Abnormal maturation of erythroid precursors that occurs in vitamin B_{12} deficiency or folic acid deficiency is known as *megaloblastic maturation*, and the abnormal erythroid cells are called **megaloblasts.** Because of impaired ability of the cells to synthesize DNA, the intermitotic and mitotic phases are prolonged. This results in enlarged cells, with nuclear maturation lagging behind cytoplasmic maturation (nuclear-cytoplasmic dissociation). The nuclear chromatin pattern is more delicate and more "open," with prominent parachromatin. Karyorrhexis, or breaking up of the nucleus, and Howell-Jolly bodies are frequently noted. Megaloblastic development parallels normoblastic maturation; the stages of promegaloblast, basophilic megaloblast, polychromatophilic megaloblast, and orthochromatic megaloblast may be recognized.

REGULATION OF ERYTHROCYTE PRODUCTION

The number of erythrocytes in the blood may be regulated by changing the rate of production. The rate of erythrocyte destruction does not vary appreciably in normal individuals. Increased production of erythrocytes occurs when oxygen transport to the tissues is impaired, as in anemia, in cardiac or pulmonary disorders, and in the low oxygen tension of high altitudes. Erythrocyte production decreases when an individual is hypertransfused or exposed to high oxygen tension.

Oxygen affinity of hemoglobin is modulated by the concentration of phosphates, in particular 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG) in the red blood cell. These phosphates combine with the β-chains of reduced hemoglobin and diminish its affinity for oxygen (Fig. 31-8). In areas of tissue hypoxia, as oxygen moves from hemoglobin into the tissues, the amount of reduced hemoglobin in the red blood cells increases, binding more 2,3-DPG, further reducing its oxygen affinity so that more oxygen can be delivered to the tissues. If hypoxia persists, depletion of free 2,3-DPG leads to increased glycolysis, production of more 2,3-DPG, and a persistently lower oxygen affinity of the hemoglobin.

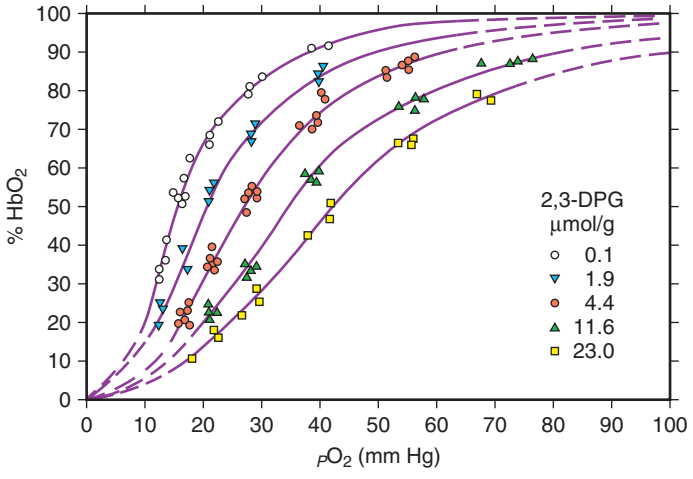


Figure 31-8 Oxygen dissociation curves of hemoglobin at different concentrations of 2,3-DPG. The curve is sigmoidal and shifts to the right with increasing concentrations of 2,3-DPG; this results in decreased affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen and increased delivery of oxygen to the tissues. *DPG,* diphosphoglycerate. (Reprinted from Duhm J: *Oxygen affinity of hemoglobin and red cell acid base status,* p 583, Copyright 1972, with permission from Elsevier.)

Tissue hypoxia induces formation of EPO via production of the transcriptional factor, hypoxia-inducible factor-1 (HIF-1). HIF-1 is a heterodimer consisting of α- and β-subunits, of which the α-subunit is regulated by hypoxia. Under conditions of normal oxygen tension, HIF-1α undergoes proteosomal degradation, but it is stable under hypoxic conditions. EPO effects the production of more red blood cells in the bone marrow. It acts by inducing committed progenitor cells (CFU-E and BFU-E) in the marrow to proliferate and differentiate into pronormoblasts by shortening the generation time of normoblasts, and by promoting early release of reticulocytes into the blood. The result is increased numbers of marrow normoblasts in a normal ratio of cell types, a condition known as *normoblastic hyperplasia.* Increased cellular expression of HIF-1α can result from a 598C→T mutation in the von Hippel-Lindau gene (the von Hippel-Lindau protein is involved in HIF-1α degradation). This results in elevation of EPO levels and an autosomal recessive form of hereditary polycythemia known as *Chuvash polycythemia* (Gordeuk et al, 2004).

Measurement of EPO is accomplished by in vitro immunologic methods utilizing serum or plasma, with ethylenediamenetetraacetic acid (EDTA) plasma providing greater sensitivity (Lindstedt & Lundberg, 1998). Elevated levels are detected in patients with secondary polycythemia and in those with aplastic anemia. Decreased levels below the normal range are found in normal individuals after transfusion and in those with primary polycythemia (polycythemia vera). However, considerable overlap exists, and normal EPO levels may be found in both primary and secondary polycythemia (Spivak, 2002). Anti-EPO antibodies have been described in pure red blood cell aplasia and systemic lupus erythematosus (Casadevall et al, 1996; Schett et al, 2001); these may interfere with immunoassays for EPO and may contribute to anemia.

SYNTHESIS OF HEMOGLOBIN

Heme Synthesis

Heme synthesis occurs in most cells of the body, except the mature erythrocytes, but most abundantly in the erythroid precursors. Succinylcoenzyme A condenses with glycine to form the unstable intermediate α-amino β-ketoadipic acid, which is readily decarboxylated to δ-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) (Fig. 31-9). This condensation requires pyridoxal phosphate (vitamin B_6) and occurs in mitochondria.

ALA is excreted normally in small amounts in the urine, but in certain abnormalities of heme synthesis (e.g., lead poisoning), excretion is increased. Two molecules of ALA condense to form the monopyrrole porphobilinogen, catalyzed by the enzyme ALA-dehydrase. Porphobilinogen is also normally excreted in small amounts in the urine. Markedly elevated amounts appear in the urine in acute intermittent porphyria, and are easily detected by a color reaction with Ehrlich's aldehyde reagent.

Four molecules of porphobilinogen react to form uroporphyrinogen III or I (Fig. 31-10). The type III isomer is converted, by way of coproporphyrinogen III and protoporphyrinogen, to protoporphyrin. In certain diseases when this pathway is partially blocked, the type I isomers of uroporphyrinogen and coproporphyrinogen are formed, and their oxidized excretion products, uroporphyrin I and coproporphyrin I, are increased in amount.

Protoporphyrin is normally found in mature erythrocytes. In lead poisoning and in iron deficiency, levels of free erythrocyte protoporphyrin (FEP) are increased. Iron is inserted into protoporphyrin by the mitochondrial enzyme ferrochelatase to form the finished heme moiety.

Globin Synthesis

Globin synthesis occurs in the cytoplasm of the normoblast and reticulocyte. The polypeptide chains are manufactured on the ribosomes. Specific small soluble RNA (sRNA) molecules determine the placement of each amino acid according to the code in the messenger RNA (mRNA). Progressive growth of the polypeptide chain begins at the amino end. This process of protein synthesis occurs on ribosomes clustered into polyribosomes, which are held together by the mRNA. Because the reticulocyte can synthesize hemoglobin for at least 2 days after loss of its nucleus, it appears that the mRNA for hemoglobin is quite stable. The polypeptide chains released from the ribosomes are folded into their three-dimensional configurations spontaneously.

Control of hemoglobin synthesis is exerted primarily through the action of heme. Increased heme inhibits further heme synthesis by inhibiting the activity and synthesis of ALA synthase. Heme also promotes globin synthesis, mainly at the site of chain initiation, and the interaction of ribosomes with mRNA.

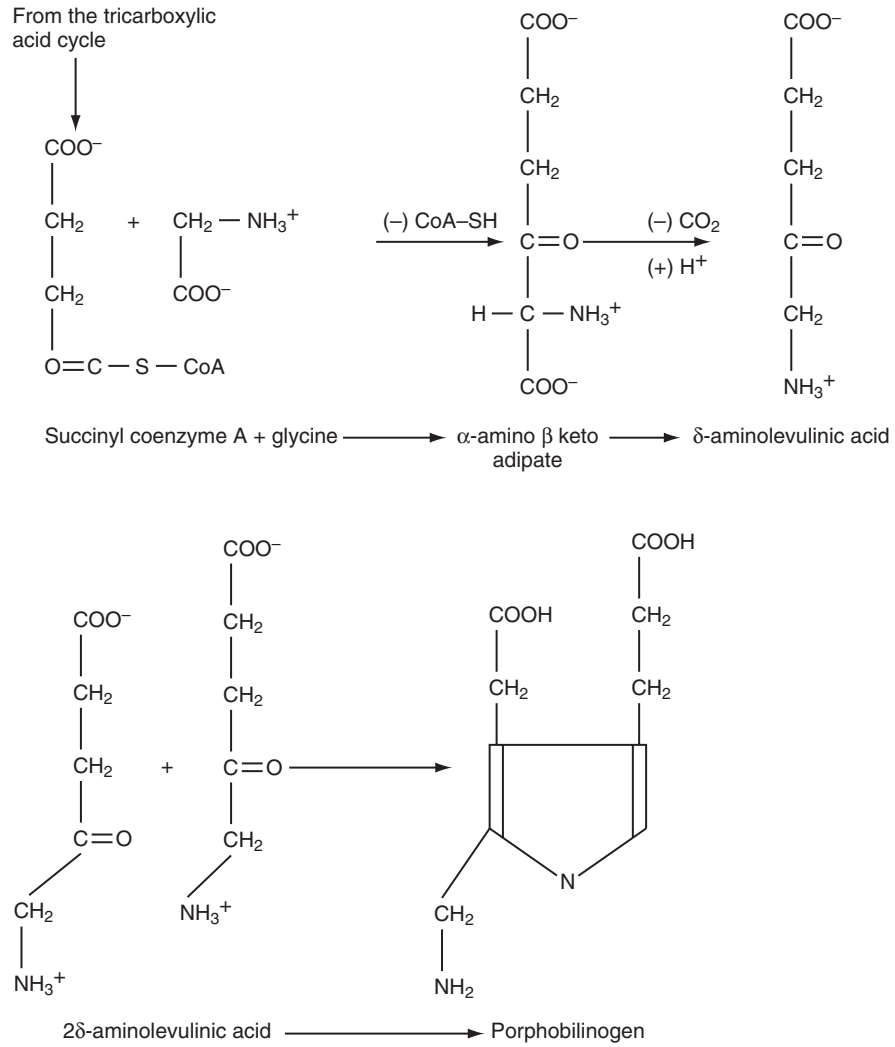


Figure 31-9 **Formation of porphobilinogen from succinylcoenzyme A and glycine.** (From Leavell BS: *Fundamentals of clinical hematology*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1976, Saunders, with permission.)

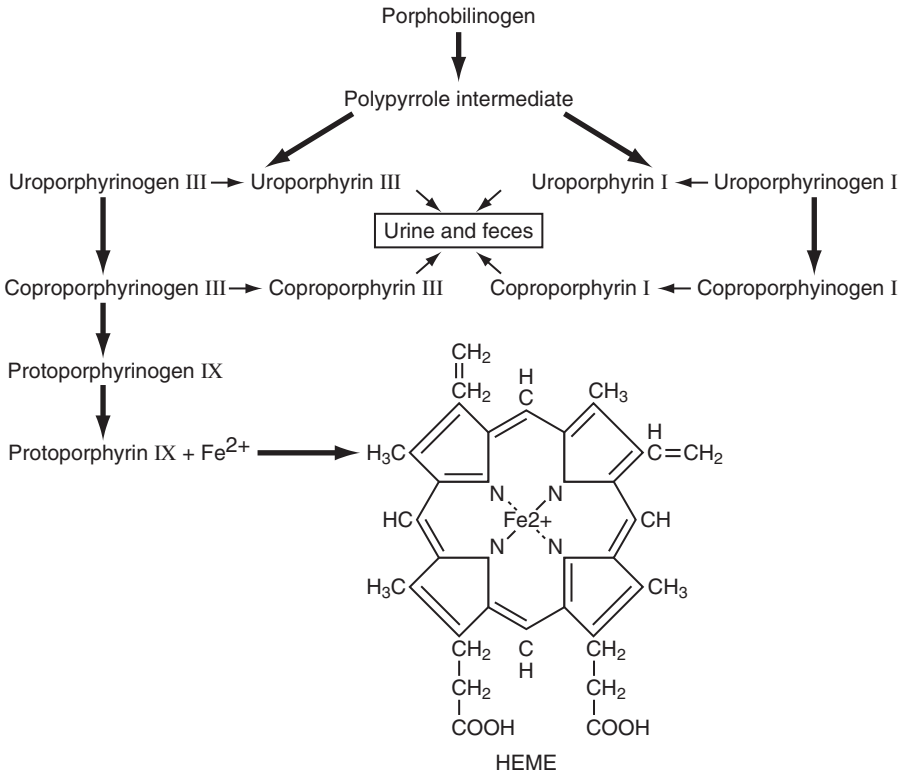


Figure 31-10 **Formation of heme from porphobilinogen.** (From Leavell BS: *Fundamentals of clinical hematology*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1976, Saunders, with permission.)

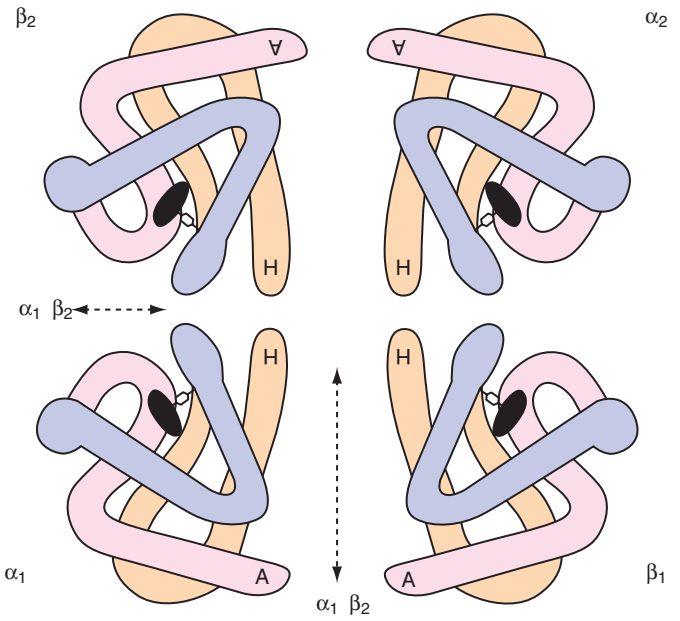


Figure 31-11 The hemoglobin molecule (tetramer, molecular weight 64,500 Da). The heme group for each monomeric polypeptide chain is depicted as a black disk, connected to an imidazole group of histidine and located near the surface of the molecule in a "pocket" formed by the polypeptide chain. The letters *A* and *H* designate α-helix segments of each polypeptide chain: A is the amino-terminal segment, and H is the carboxy-terminal segment. The four monomers are separated in this drawing but actually make contact along a relatively large area ($\alpha_1\beta_1$), which is thought to be the relatively fixed or stabilizing contact area, and a smaller ($\alpha_1\beta_2$) area thought to be the functional contact area, where movement occurs during oxygenation and deoxygenation, changing the molecular configuration. (Redrawn from White JM, Dacie JV: The unstable hemoglobins—molecular and clinical features, *Prog Hematol* 7:69, 1971, with permission.)

STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF HEMOGLOBIN

In each hemoglobin (Hb) molecule, one heme group is inserted into a hydrophobic pocket of one folded polypeptide chain (Bunn & Forget, 1986). Normal adult HbA consists of four heme groups and four polypeptide chains (two α-chains and two β-chains), which form a roughly globular hemoglobin molecule (Fig. 31-11). The ferrous iron atoms have six coordination bonds: four to the pyrrole nitrogens of heme, one to the imidazole nitrogen of histidine of the globin chain (87-α or 92-β), and one that is reversibly bound to oxygen. As the oxygen partial pressure increases, each of the four heme groups sequentially binds one molecule of oxygen. In the process, a change in the overall configuration of the hemoglobin molecule occurs, which favors the additional binding of oxygen.

The sigmoid-shaped oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin reflects this increasing affinity for oxygen with increasing partial pressure of oxygen in the lungs (see Fig. 31-8). In the tissues, conversion of oxygenated Hb to Hb, decreasing pH, and increasing temperature produced by metabolic processes, as well as the binding of more 2,3-DPG to Hb, result in a shift of the Hb-oxygen dissociation curve to the right, favoring the release of oxygen from hemoglobin.

Carbon dioxide (CO_2) is transported in erythrocytes as well as in plasma. A small part of red blood cell CO_2 is dissolved and is bound to amino groups of hemoglobin as carbamino-CO_2, but most is in the bicarbonate form. The enzyme carbonic anhydrase catalyzes the transformation of carbon dioxide to bicarbonate in the red blood cell while in the tissue capillary bed and catalyzes the reverse reaction (the release of carbon dioxide from bicarbonate) in the erythrocyte when it is in the capillary bed of the lungs.

The porphyrias, abnormalities of heme synthesis, are described in Chapter 32 (Fig. 31-12).

ERYTHROCYTE DESTRUCTION

The erythrocyte gradually undergoes metabolic changes over the course of its 120-day life span, at which time the less viable senescent cell is removed from the circulation. Certain glycolytic enzymes diminish in activity as the cell ages. Older red blood cells have a smaller surface area and an increased mean cell hemoglobin concentration (MCHC) compared with younger cells. Furthermore, aged red blood cells lose sialic acid from their membranes, exposing an asialoglycophorin. This senescent antigen is recognized and an autoantibody is synthesized by the host. After binding of the autoantibody, the senescent cell is removed from the circulation by the mononuclear phagocyte system, primarily within the spleen. About 3 million cells are normally removed from the blood per second with no demonstrable histologic evidence of erythrophagocytosis.

In some pathologic states, the mononuclear phagocyte system removes younger sensitized or abnormal red blood cells at a rapid rate. Subsequently, erythrophagocytosis is often evident. In autoimmune hemolytic anemia, the mononuclear phagocyte system removes red blood cells following the binding of autoantibodies or complement to reticulocytes and young red blood cells. In other pathologic states, red blood cells are removed because of structural defects that interfere with their normal passage through the microcirculation of the mononuclear phagocyte system.

DEGRADATION OF HEMOGLOBIN

After removal of the red blood cell from the circulation, hemoglobin is broken down within the macrophages of the mononuclear phagocyte system into its three constituents: iron, protoporphyrin, and globin. The iron goes into storage and may be completely reutilized. The globin may be degraded and returned to the amino acid pool of the body. In contrast, the protoporphyrin ring is split, converted to bilirubin, and excreted from the body.

In the macrophage, the protoporphyrin ring is cleaved by a heme oxidase enzyme at the α-methene bridge, yielding 1 mol of carbon monoxide (CO) and 1 mol of biliverdin. The CO appears in the blood as HbCO and is eventually exhaled. Biliverdin is reduced to bilirubin in the macrophage, and bilirubin is transported to the liver by plasma albumin. It is removed from the plasma by the liver cell, conjugated mainly with glucuronide, and excreted in the bile. In the intestine, reduction by bacteria occurs, and bilirubin is transformed into urobilinogen, mesobilirubinogen, and stercobilinogen, compounds that are collectively designated urobilinogens.

Estimation of exhaled CO, HbCO, or fecal urobilinogen can be used as a measure of hemoglobin breakdown. When production of red blood cells is diminished and the level of circulating hemoglobin is low, as in aplastic anemia, urobilinogen excretion is reduced. When destruction of erythrocytes is increased, as in hemolytic anemia, all three are increased in amount.

In normal humans, about 80% to 90% of the excreted bile pigment measured as fecal urobilinogen is derived from breakdown of senescent erythrocytes that have lived 100 to 120 days. However, about 10% to 20% of the pigment is excreted within the first few days. This early labeled bile pigment comes from nonhemoglobin heme formed in the liver, as well as from the breakdown of newly formed hemoglobin in the bone marrow. Much of the latter may represent hemoglobin from the pieces of cytoplasm of the orthochromatic normoblast that are lost during the process of nuclear extrusion.

In certain hematologic diseases, notably thalassemia, megaloblastic anemia, myelodysplasia, and erythropoietic porphyria, this early labeled bile pigment fraction may be markedly increased. This intramedullary destruction of hemoglobin, which never appears in circulating erythrocytes, is known as **ineffective erythropoiesis.**

ERYTHROKINETICS

The balance between delivery of erythrocytes to the blood and removal of erythrocytes from the blood results in a relatively constant hemoglobin mass in the circulation. Anemia occurs when removal of erythrocytes from the blood is increased and cannot be compensated for by increased production, or when delivery of erythrocytes to the blood is decreased, or when both processes exist together.

When anemia develops, tissue hypoxia leads to elevated levels of erythropoietin in the plasma. Resultant normoblastic hyperplasia produces more erythrocytes for delivery to the circulation. The marrow in a normal individual is capable of six to eight times the normal output of erythrocytes with extreme stimulation. This capacity must be compared with the output actually attained when one is evaluating the marrow response of a given patient.

Measurements that assess **effective erythropoiesis** (production and delivery of erythrocytes to the circulation), **ineffective erythropoiesis,** and destruction of erythrocytes may be necessary to determine the mechanism and the cause of anemia.

MEASUREMENTS OF TOTAL PRODUCTION OF ERYTHROCYTES OR HEMOGLOBIN

The **total mass of erythropoietic cells** in the body cannot be easily measured. An estimate is made by examining a sample of bone marrow from a normally active site and determining the cellularity and the percentage of total nucleated cells that are erythropoietic (see the Bone Marrow Examination section in Chapter 30). When marrow activity increases, usually the additional hematopoietic cells replace the fat in the red marrow sites before extension occurs into the yellow marrow of the long bones. One assumes that the sample is representative of the marrow as a whole—an assumption that usually is valid.

The **plasma iron turnover** is calculated from the serum iron level and the rate of removal of injected radioactive iron from the plasma. About 25% to 30% of the iron is not used in erythropoiesis and is primarily taken up by the liver. The remaining 70% to 75% is taken up by erythropoietic cells and is therefore a measure of total erythropoiesis, both effective and ineffective.

MEASUREMENTS OF TOTAL DESTRUCTION OF ERYTHROCYTES OR HEMOGLOBIN

Determination of **fecal urobilinogen** is an estimate of the total excretion of bile pigments—the breakdown products of heme. This measurement includes pigment derived from hemoglobin formed and destroyed in the marrow without ever reaching the circulating erythrocytes. Limitations include diminished conversion of bilirubin to urobilinogen caused by oral administration of broad-spectrum antibiotics, and failure of pigment to reach the intestine in obstructive jaundice.

A portion (up to 50%) of the excreted urobilinogen is reabsorbed into the portal circulation and is reexcreted into the bile, without conjugation, by the liver. Only a small amount is normally excreted in the urine. Increased urinary urobilinogen is seen with severe liver disease, as well as with conditions associated with increased heme catabolism that overwhelm the metabolic capacity of the liver. Thus, hepatocellular damage, cirrhosis, hepatic congestion due to congestive heart failure, obstructive liver disease, cholangitis, hemolytic anemia, and ineffective erythropoiesis are all associated with elevation of urinary urobilinogen.

MEASUREMENTS OF EFFECTIVE PRODUCTION OF ERYTHROCYTES: RETICULOCYTE COUNT

Because the RNA of the reticulocyte disappears about 1 day after its entry into the blood, enumeration of reticulocytes will be a measure of the number of cells being delivered by the marrow to the blood each day, that is, a measure of effective erythropoiesis. The absolute reticulocyte count is calculated by multiplying the reticulocyte percentage by the erythrocyte count. To give a meaningful expression of erythropoiesis, the absolute reticulocyte count, or some estimate of it, and not simply the percentage, must be used. The normal absolute reticulocyte count is approximately 50×10^9/L, or 1% of circulating erythrocytes. Because the normal maturation time for reticulocytes in the blood is 1 day, production of reticulocytes is 50×10^9/L/day.

A second consideration is an adjustment for increased maturation time of reticulocytes in the blood as a result of accelerated release from the marrow, an effect of erythropoietin. The need for this is recognized by the presence of large, polychromatic cells or nucleated red blood cells in the blood film, indicating a shift of excessively immature reticulocytes from the marrow into the blood. To avoid an overestimate of daily erythrocyte production, a correction factor is used that is based on estimated maturation time of reticulocytes in the blood. This varies inversely with hematocrit as follows (Hillman & Finch, 1996):

Hematocrit, %	Reticulocyte maturation time, days
45	1.0
35	1.5
25	2.0
15	2.5

If a patient has a Hct of 0.25, a red blood cell count of 2.89×10^{12}/L, and a reticulocyte count of 7%, he or she will have an absolute reticulocyte count of 202×10^9/L. Because the average normal absolute reticulocyte count is 50×10^9/L, the patient has

$$(202 \times 10^9/\text{L})/(50 \times 10^9/\text{L})$$

or four times as many reticulocytes as normal. However, this must be corrected for the increased maturation time: $4 \times \frac{1}{2} = 2$. Therefore, two times as many reticulocytes are entering the blood per day as in a normal individual, that is, red cell production is two times normal.

If only the hematocrit is available, the same correction can be made as follows:

Correction for anemia:
Patient's reticulocyte count (7%)/Normal reticulocyte count (1%) × Patient's Hct (0.25)/Normal Hct (0.45) = 4
Correction for shift:
Corrected reticulocyte index (4) ×1/Maturation time (2) = 2

These corrections are necessary to assess the degree of red blood cell production in response to anemia.

A normal individual with a normal supply of iron can increase red blood cell production by two times normal within 1 week if the hematocrit drops to 0.35, or by three times normal if the hematocrit drops to 0.25. Only if there is a parenteral supply of iron (such as in hemolysis) can the maximal red blood cell production of six to eight times normal be achieved.

If an appropriate marrow response to anemia has not been reached in 1 to 2 weeks, some impairment of red blood cell production exists.

The **erythrocyte utilization of iron** is a measure of the amount of an injected dose of iron that appears in the hemoglobin of circulating erythrocytes. It is derived from the plasma iron turnover and the percentage of radioactive iron that has been injected and that appears in the circulating erythrocytes after 2 weeks, assuming that none of the newly formed cells have been destroyed in that time interval. This, too, is a measure of effective erythropoiesis.

MEASUREMENTS OF EFFECTIVE SURVIVAL OF ERYTHROCYTES IN BLOOD

The **erythrocyte survival** can be determined by removing a sample of blood, labeling the erythrocytes with chromium-51 (^{51}Cr), inactivating the excess ^{51}Cr remaining in the plasma, and reinjecting the labeled erythrocytes into the patient. The ^{51}Cr is bound to the β-chain of the hemoglobin molecule and for the most part is not released until the red blood cell is removed from the circulation and the hemoglobin is degraded. Measurements of radioactivity in the red blood cells are made at 2 hours or 24 hours (the zero time, or 100% level) and at 1- to 3-day intervals until over 50% of the activity has disappeared. The results are usually expressed as the ^{51}Cr half-survival time. The normal range is 28 to 38 days. (The reason it is not 60 days is that ^{51}Cr is eluted from the hemoglobin at the rate of about 1% per day.) If production of erythrocytes equals destruction (i.e., if a steady state exists), the erythrocyte survival is also a measure of effective production of erythrocytes.

SUMMARY

Total erythropoiesis refers to the total production of hemoglobin or red cells; *effective erythropoiesis* refers to production of hemoglobin or red blood cells that reach the circulation; and *ineffective erythropoiesis* refers to production of hemoglobin or red blood cells that never reach the circulating blood. These concepts of the **erythrokinetic** approach to the study of anemia are useful, especially in anemias that defy easy classification.

NEUTROPHILS

The common progenitor cell for neutrophils and monocytes (CFU-GM) divides and gives rise to the progenitor cells for granulocytes (CFU-G) and for monocytes (CFU-M). CFU-G and CFU-M cells give rise to myeloblasts and monoblasts, respectively, under stimulation of colony-stimulating factors for granulocytes and monocytes (see Fig. 31-1).

MORPHOLOGY OF NEUTROPHIL PRECURSORS

The **myeloblast** (Fig. 31-13) is a cell about 15 μm in diameter with a moderately high N/C ratio; a large oval to quadrangular nucleus; a very fine, uniform chromatin pattern; a delicate nuclear membrane; and two to five nucleoli. The cytoplasm is pale, clear blue, and without granules. The appearance of azurophilic (primary) granules (≈0.5-μm diameter) heralds the earliest promyelocyte (Fig. 31-14) and indicates that the cell is to be a neutrophil. The **promyelocyte** stage encompasses the entire period of production of azurophilic granules. The promyelocyte is slightly larger than the myeloblast. The nuclear chromatin begins to condense, and the nucleoli are less obvious. The cytoplasm is basophilic and is filled by more and

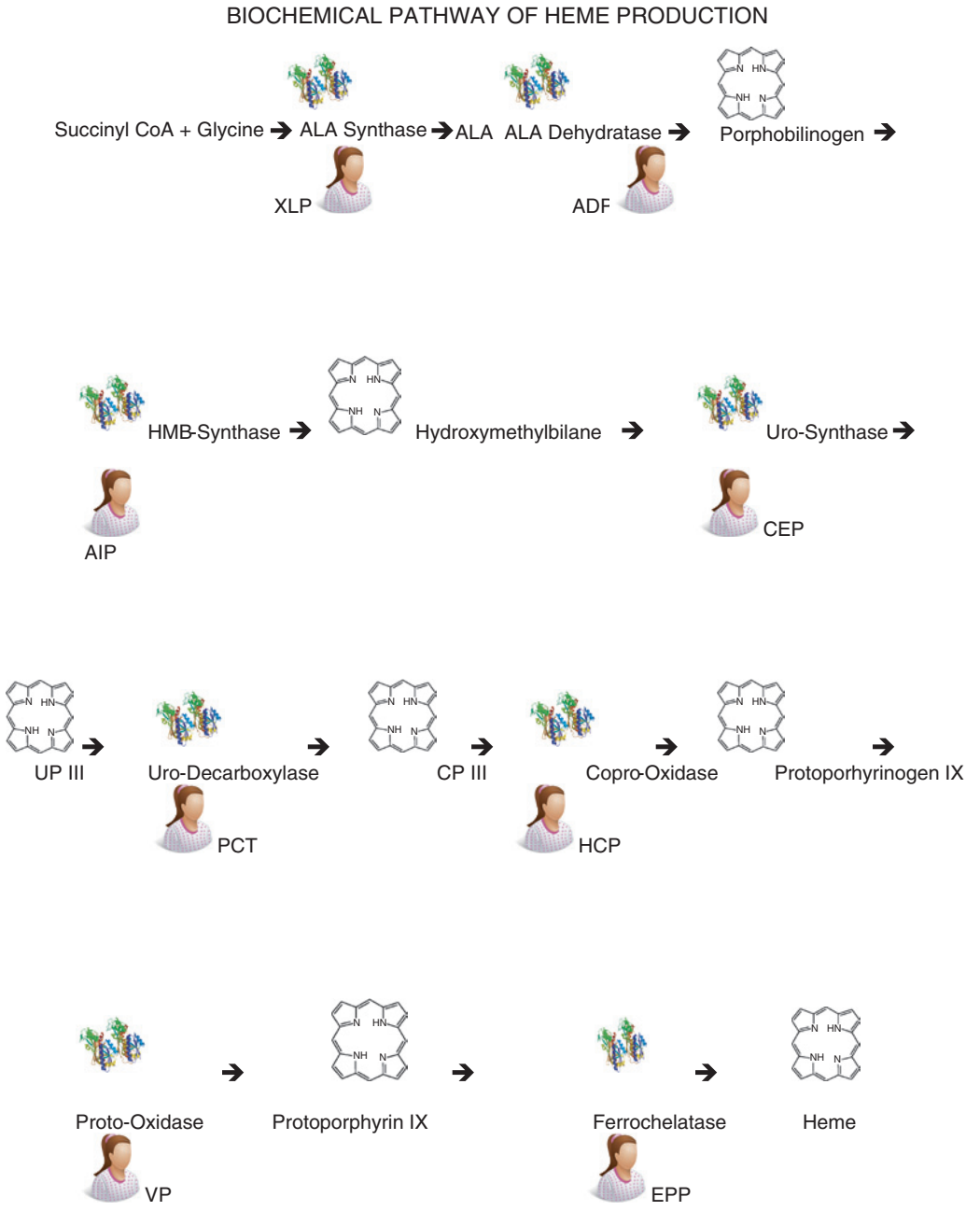


Figure 31-12 **Biosynthetic pathway of heme and pathogenesis of the porphyrias.** *ADP,* Aminolevuoinic acid dehydratase; *AIP,* acute intermittent porphyria; *ALA,* Aminolevulinic acid; *CEP,* congenital erythropoietic porphyria; *CP III,* coproporphyrinogen III; *EPP,* erythropoietic protoporphyria; *HCP,* hereditary coproporhyria; *HMB,* hydroxymethylbilane; *PCT,* porphyria cutanea tarda; *UP III,* uroporphyrinogen III; *VP,* variegate porphyria; *XLP,* X-linked protoporphyria.

more azurophilic granules. The **neutrophil myelocyte** stage begins with the appearance of specific neutrophil (secondary) granules, at first only in the Golgi region; as more specific granules develop, they spread throughout the cytoplasm (Fig. 31-15). With successive mitoses, the number of azurophilic granules (whose production has ceased at the end of the promyelocyte stage) is diminished. The early neutrophil myelocyte, therefore, has a rather fine, dispersed nuclear chromatin pattern, many azurophilic granules, and few specific granules. The late neutrophil myelocyte has a somewhat more condensed chromatin pattern, a cytoplasm well filled with specific granules, and rather few azurophilic granules. The myelocyte is the latest stage capable of cell division. The next stage, the **neutrophil metamyelocyte,** is distinguished by an indented, kidney-shaped nucleus with more condensed chromatin (Fig. 31-16). From this stage on, changes in the cytoplasm are insignificant. In the **band neutrophil** (stab form), the nucleus has more condensed chromatin and a rather uniform elongated shape (Fig. 31-17). Partial constriction of the nucleus occurs in the band stage, until a fine filament (length but no breadth) is formed between two of the lobes, at which point the cell is classified as a **segmented neutrophil** (Fig. 31-18).

During development and maturation, neutrophilic precursors express various cell surface markers that can be used for immunophenotypic recognition. Myeloblasts express the HSC marker CD34, as well as HLA-DR and myeloid lineage specific markers CD13, CD33, CD15, and CD117. Mature neutrophils express CD13, CD15, CD16, and CD11b, but lose HLA-DR and CD33.

The mature human neutrophil has twice as many specific granules as azurophilic granules (Box 31-2). The azurophilic granules (formed in the promyelocyte stage) contain lysosomal enzymes (e.g., acid hydrolases: acid phosphatase, β-glucuronidase), myeloperoxidase, elastase, arylsulfatase, and cationic antibacterial proteins, along with other enzymes and proteins. The specific granules (formed in the myelocyte stage) contain lysozyme, lactoferrin, collagenase, plasminogen activator, aminopeptidase, and vitamin B_{12}–binding protein, as well as other enzymes and proteins. Tertiary granules, similar in size to the specific granules, contain gelatinase. Alkaline phosphatase is located in yet another type of cytoplasmic organelle lighter in density than specific granules. These organelles first appear during the late myelocyte stage.

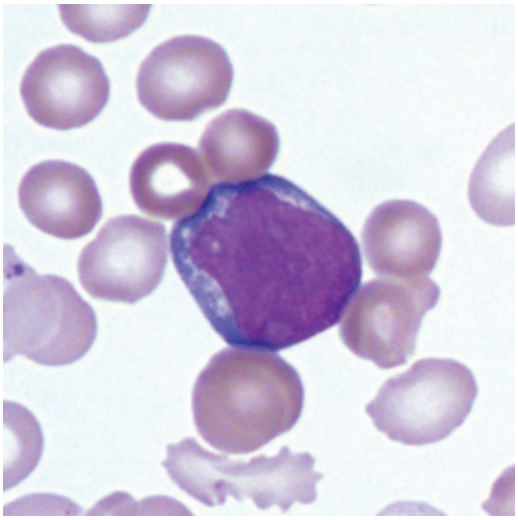


Figure 31-13 Myeloblast with high nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio, fine chromatin, visible nucleoli, and basophilic cytoplasm (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

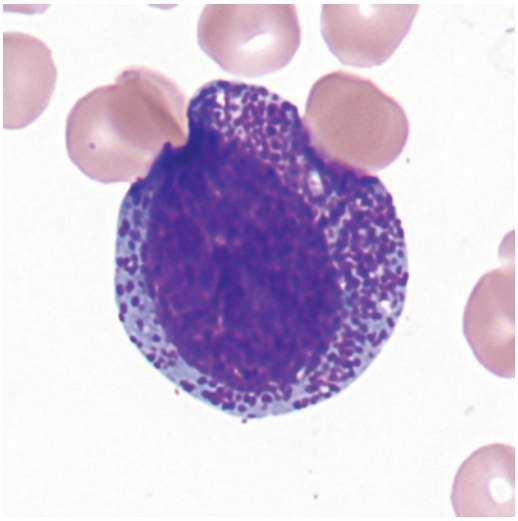


Figure 31-14 Promyelocyte *(center)* with azurophilic granules in the cytoplasm; the nuclear chromatin is still fine (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

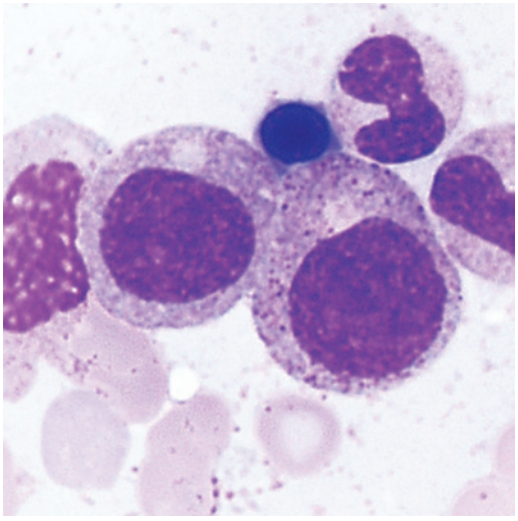


Figure 31-15 **Myelocytes have secondary granules in the cytoplasm and show condensation of nuclear chromatin.** Persistent primary granules are seen in early myelocytes *(center-right)* and are lost as myelocytes mature. A band neutrophil and an orthochromatic normoblast are also seen (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

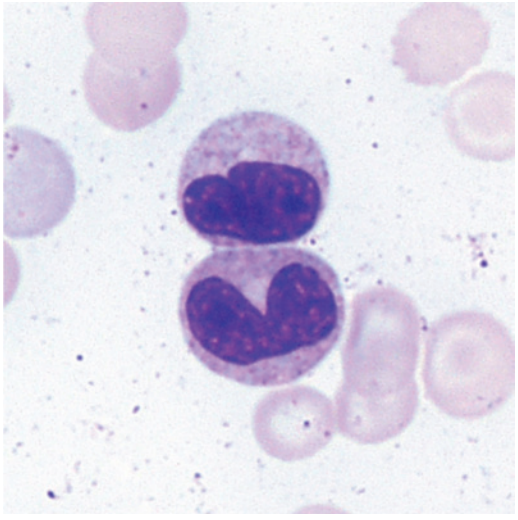


Figure 31-16 Metamyelocytes show nuclear indentation and increased chromatin clumping (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

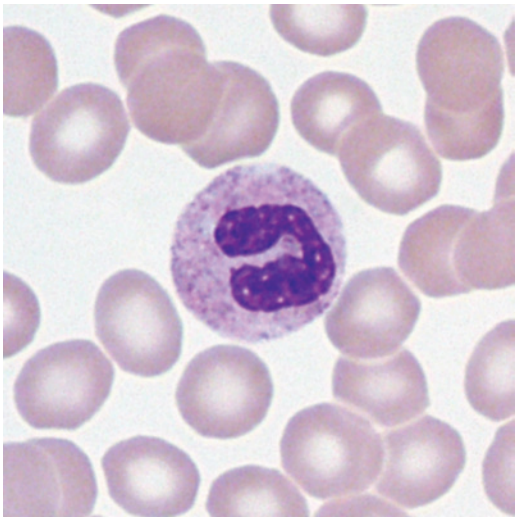


Figure 31-17 Band neutrophil with mature nucleus with clumped chromatin but without segmentation (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

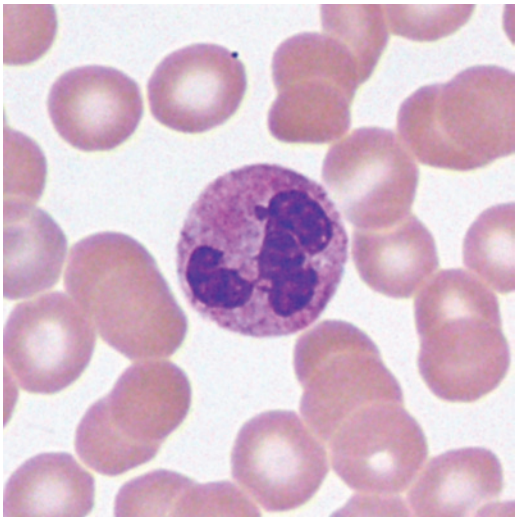


Figure 31-18 Segmented neutrophil with multiple nuclear lobes joined by fine chromatin filaments (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

BOX 31-2

Neutrophil Constituents and Functions

- Azurophilic granules (formed in promyelocyte stage)
  - Lysosomal enzymes: acid hydrolases, acid phosphatase, β-glucuronidase
  - Myeloperoxidase
  - Elastase
  - Arylsulfatase
  - Cationic antibacterial proteins
- Specific granules (formed in myelocyte stage)
  - Lysozyme
  - Lactoferrin
  - Collagenase
  - Plasminogen activator
  - Aminopeptidase
- Tertiary granules
  - Gelatinase
- Cytoplasmic organelles
  - Alkaline phosphatase
- Neutrophil functions
  - Phagocytosis
  - Bactericidal activity

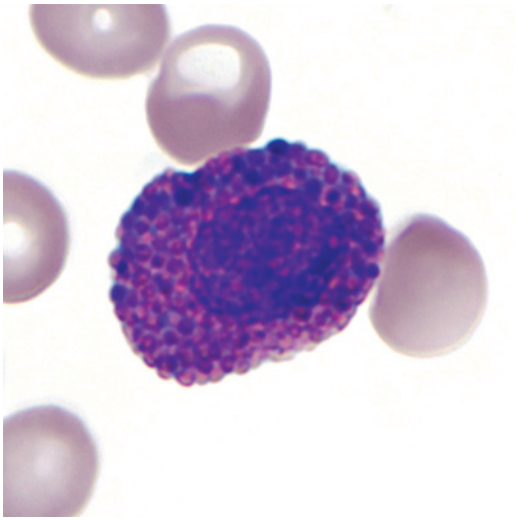


Figure 31-19 Eosinophil myelocyte with ovoid nucleus and eosinophilic secondary granules in the cytoplasm (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

DISTRIBUTION AND KINETICS

For each neutrophil in the blood vessels, about 16 precursors are present in the marrow. From the time of differentiation into a myeloblast, through about five mitotic divisions (three of which occur at the myelocyte stage), it takes about 14 days until the progeny of that cell reach the blood. The last 6 to 7 days are spent in the maturation and storage pool. When a neutrophil enters the blood, it moves readily between a circulating granulocyte pool, which is sampled in the leukocyte count, and a marginal granulocyte pool, which is not, but is either marginated along vessel walls or sequestered in capillary beds. In less than 1 day after it arrives, the neutrophil emigrates from the circulation in a random manner and enters the tissues. Migration into tissues is dependent on adhesion molecules of the selectin family (and their corresponding ligands) expressed on neutrophils and endothelial cells. From there, if not utilized in an inflammatory exudate, neutrophils leave the body within a few days via secretions in bronchi, saliva, the gastrointestinal tract, and urine, or they are destroyed by the mononuclear phagocyte system.

FUNCTION

Neutrophils are able to move in a zigzag manner, but their motion changes to a straight-line path if a chemotactic attractant or factor (e.g., a bacterium coated with certain components of complement) is within a certain distance. Neutrophils express chemokine receptors CXCR1 and CXCR2, which are responsible for neutrophil migration in response to chemokines. Neutrophils also have receptors for the Fc portion of IgG, as well as for complement (C3) and bind and phagocytose the coated particle. Phagocytosis occurs with the formation of a phagocytic vacuole that contains the ingested particle; accompanying this process is an increase in metabolic activity and energy production. Specific granules, followed shortly by azurophilic granules, empty their contents into the phagocytic vacuoles—a process known as *degranulation*. Bactericidal activity occurs within the vacuole, mediated by H_2O_2, superoxide anion (O_2^-), myeloperoxidase, and a halide ion generating free halogen, or by other enzymatic activity. Other substances can act as chemotactic factors too. The C5a fragment is a chemotactic factor and is also an anaphylatoxin that causes smooth muscle contraction. Substances liberated by bacteria and metabolic products of arachidonic acid may also act as chemotactic factors for neutrophils. Neutrophils are thus important in defense against infectious disease. If their enzymes are activated and released outside the cell, neutrophils can cause tissue necrosis, tissue injury, and inflammation.

EOSINOPHILS

Eosinophils are produced in the bone marrow. In vitro culture studies show that there is a separate eosinophilic committed progenitor cell (CFU-Eo) in the marrow that is distinct from CFU-GM, CFU-G, and CFU-M. Three growth factors (GM-CSF, IL-3, IL-5) produced by T lymphocytes influence eosinophil development. IL-5 promotes terminal maturation, functional activation, and prevention of apoptosis of eosinophils.

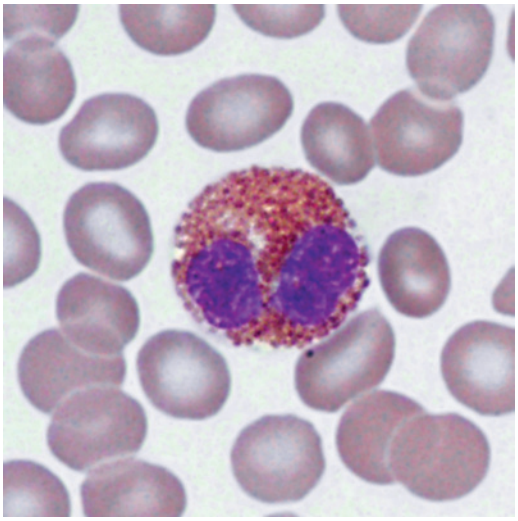


Figure 31-20 Mature eosinophil with bilobed nucleus and large eosinophilic cytoplasmic granules (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

MORPHOLOGY OF EOSINOPHIL PRECURSORS

The cell that is the precursor for the earliest recognizable eosinophil, the eosinophil myelocyte, is presumably a distinctive myeloblast. However, it is morphologically indistinguishable from that which gives rise to neutrophils and monocytes or to basophils (see Figs. 31-1 and 31-13). In the early eosinophil myelocyte, the granules are large and take the basophilic stain. As the cell matures, the granules appear olive-green, and finally the characteristic red-orange color (Figs. 31-19 and 31-20). Nuclear maturation is similar to that of the neutrophil. Eosinophils are slightly larger than neutrophils and have fewer nuclear lobes. Mature eosinophils express CD16 and CD32.

Electron micrographs of eosinophils show characteristic granules that have a dense crystalloid core in a less dense matrix. Immature granules, appearing in the myelocyte, at first have no crystalloids but develop them as maturation proceeds. Mature granules are of two types: a larger granule (0.5 to 1.5 μm in largest diameter) with a dense crystalloid, and a smaller granule (0.1 to 0.5 μm diameter) without a crystalloid. The smaller granules appear later during maturation, after the myelocyte stage.

Eosinophil-specific granules (Box 31-3) contain major basic protein (MBP) in the crystalloid core; MBP is toxic to parasites and cells, neutralizes heparin, and induces histamine release from basophils. Granule constituents in the matrix include acid hydrolases, peroxidase, phospholipase, and cathepsin. The specific granules also contain eosinophil cationic protein (ECP), eosinophil-derived neurotoxin (EDN), and eosinophil peroxidase (EPO). ECP shortens coagulation time and alters fibrinolysis; it

BOX 31-3

Eosinophil Constituents and Functions

- Eosinophil-specific granules
- Larger granules
  - Major basic protein
  - Acid hydrolases
  - Peroxidase
  - Phospholipase
  - Cathepsin
  - Eosinophil cationic protein
  - Eosinophil-derived neurotoxin
- Smaller granules
  - Arylsulfatase
  - Peroxidase
  - Acid phosphatase
- Eosinophil functions
  - Anthelmintic activity—major basic protein, eosinophilic cationic protein, peroxidase
  - Phagocytosis
  - Allergic response
  - Dampen inflammatory reactions

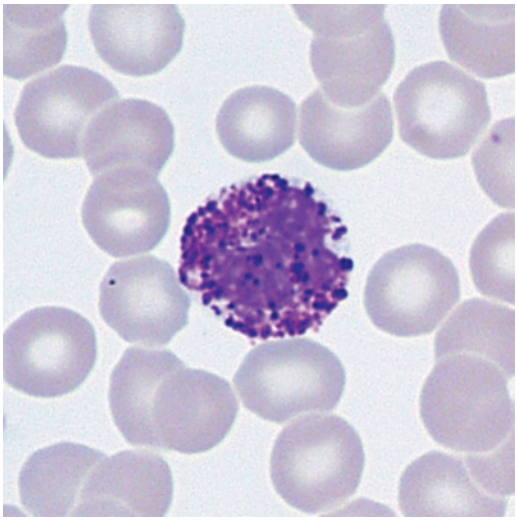


Figure 31-21 Mature basophil with large dark red-purple basophilic granules that partially obscure the nucleus (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

also inhibits lymphocyte proliferation and is a potent neurotoxin. EDN is a strong neurotoxin (Gleich & Adolphson, 1986). The smaller granules contain arylsulfatase; both granule types contain peroxidase and acid phosphatase. Eosinophil peroxidase is different from the type of peroxidase present in neutrophils and monocytes; also, eosinophils contain no alkaline phosphatase or muramidase. Eosinophils secrete IL-1, IL-3, IL-6, IL-8, TNF-α, and GM-CSF. TNF-α appears to be the cause of fibrosis in Hodgkin's disease (Roberts et al, 1999).

DISTRIBUTION AND KINETICS

The kinetics of eosinophils are similar to those of neutrophils. They are stored in the bone marrow for several days after going through various maturational stages. The half-life in the blood is approximately 18 hours before entering the tissues, where they survive for at least 6 days. Eosinophils in the tissues, however, are at least 100 times as numerous as the total number of eosinophils in the blood; they are located primarily in skin, lung, and gastrointestinal tract (i.e., the epithelial barriers to the outside world).

FUNCTION

Eosinophils act as phagocytes and modulate inflammatory responses (see Box 31-3). Eosinophils leave the blood when adrenal corticosteroid hormones increase. They proliferate in response to immunologic stimuli, and this proliferative response is mediated, at least with some antigens, by T lymphocytes, monocytes, and mast cells. Eosinophils destroy helminths by generating potent oxidants and releasing cationic proteins. Eosinophils participate in some inflammatory conditions, particularly allergic reactions, asthma, and certain myocardial diseases (Gleich & Adolphson, 1986). Although eosinophils phagocytose foreign particles and antigen-antibody complexes, this is not their only activity. Another major function of eosinophils is to dampen hypersensitivity and inflammatory reactions. Evidence indicates that eosinophils modulate reactions that occur when tissue mast cells and basophils degranulate. Eosinophils express the chemokine receptor CCR3. Among the chemotactic factors that attract eosinophils, eosinophil chemotactic factor of anaphylaxis (ECF-A) is present in basophils and mast cells; also, eosinophils contain substances that inactivate factors released by mast cells and basophils, such as histamine, slow-reacting substances of anaphylaxis, and platelet-activating factor (PAF).

When an intense or prolonged eosinophilic inflammatory reaction occurs, there is often the formation of Charcot-Leyden crystals. These hexagonal bipyramidal crystals are composed of lysophospholipase localized in the cytoplasm of eosinophils.

BASOPHILS AND MAST CELLS

Basophils and mast cells are derived from hematopoietic precursors and probably share a common precursor with other granulocytes and monocytes.

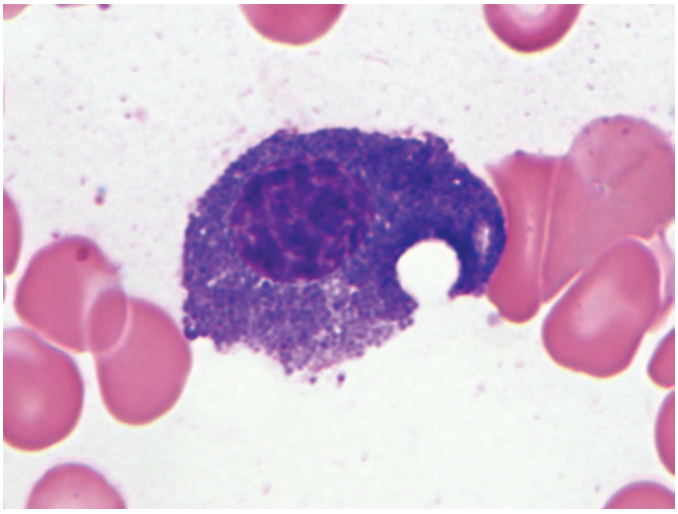


Figure 31-22 Bone marrow mast cell shows numerous uniform purple granules in the cytoplasm that partially obscure the nucleus (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

MORPHOLOGY

Basophils develop from a cell resembling a myeloblast. The first recognizable stage is a **basophil myelocyte,** with the appearance of specific basophil granules. These granules (about 0.2 to 1 μm in diameter) are larger than the azurophilic granules of the promyelocyte and often are irregular in shape. As the cell matures, the granules become more metachromatic (red-purple) because of increasing acid mucopolysaccharide (heparin) content. During maturation, cytoplasmic RNA decreases, and the nucleus partially segments. Because of incomplete nuclear segmentation, stages analogous to the neutrophil are not readily identified. In mature basophils, the nucleus has condensed but smudged chromatin, and the background cytoplasm lacks basophilia (residual RNA) (Fig. 31-21). Mature basophils express CD32.

In contrast, **tissue mast cells** are connective tissue cells of mesenchymal origin that contain metachromatic cytoplasmic granules. They are widely distributed throughout the body, including bone marrow, thymus, and spleen, but they do not normally appear in blood. On Romanowsky-stained films (Fig. 31-22), they are usually larger than basophils and have a low N/C ratio and a round or oval reticular nucleus that is usually obscured by abundant red-purple granules. The granules are smaller, more round and regular, and less soluble than basophil granules. The cytoplasmic granules are often spindle-shaped rather than round.

BOX 31-4

Basophil Constituents and Functions

- Basophil-specific granules
  - Histamine
  - Heparin
  - Peroxidase
  - Eosinophilic chemotactic factor A
- Other cellular constituents
  - Slow-reacting substance of anaphylaxis
  - Platelet-activating factor
- Basophil functions
  - Immediate hypersensitivity reactions
  - Some delayed hypersensitivity reactions

DISTRIBUTION AND KINETICS

Basophils have a life span similar to eosinophils. The maturation time in the marrow is approximately 7 days. Basophils circulate in the blood and are not normally found in tissues, in contrast to mast cells, which can spend 9 to 18 months in connective tissue. GM-CSF, IL-3, and IL-5 influence basophil production. However, IL-3 is the principal growth factor for basophilic growth, whereas *c-kit* ligand enhances the number and activation state of mast cells (Lyman, 1998).

FUNCTION

With regard to circulating numbers, basophils respond to adrenal corticosteroids in similar fashion to eosinophils. Basophil granules contain histamine, heparin, and peroxidase (Box 31-4). Basophils synthesize and store histamine and ECF-A. They synthesize and release slow-reacting substance of anaphylaxis (SRS-A) and probably PAF at the time of stimulation but do not store them. Basophils lack hydrolytic enzymes such as alkaline and acid phosphatase, at least in cytochemically demonstrable amounts. Glycogen is abundant outside the granules. Although ultrastructurally different, mast cells have similar cytochemical characteristics, except for the presence of proteolytic enzymes and serotonin, which basophils lack. In tissues, the two cell types appear to function in a similar manner.

Basophils (as well as mast cells) appear to be involved in immediate hypersensitivity reactions, such as allergic asthma. IgE binds readily to basophil and mast cell membranes. When a specific antigen reacts with the membrane-bound IgE, degranulation occurs with the release of mediators of immediate hypersensitivity (e.g., histamine, SRS-A, PAF, heparin, ECF-A). The latter leads to the accumulation of eosinophils, which contain substances that tend to counteract these mediators. Basophils are also involved in some delayed hypersensitivity reactions, or **cutaneous basophil hypersensitivity,** such as contact allergies, in which they appear to undergo a different type of degranulation response.

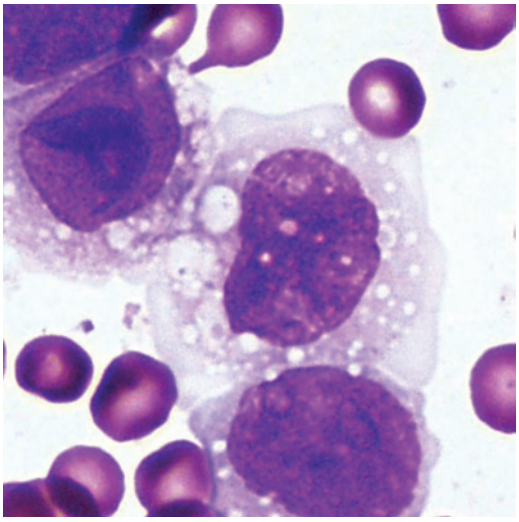


Figure 31-23 Promonocytes have fine nuclear chromatin, often with visible folds and basophilic cytoplasm that may contain vacuoles (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

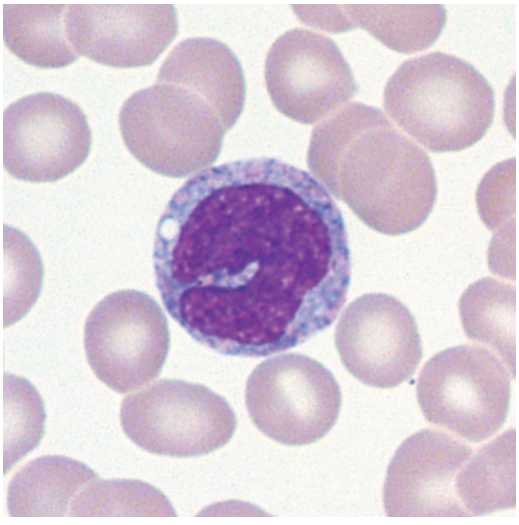


Figure 31-24 Mature monocyte with an indented nucleus, delicate chromatin, basophilic cytoplasm, and fine azurophilic granules (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

MONOCYTES AND MACROPHAGES

Monocytes share the same committed progenitor cell as neutrophils, the CFU-GM (see Fig. 31-1).

MORPHOLOGY

In normal marrow, it is not possible morphologically to distinguish the "monoblast" from the myeloblast. The earliest recognizable cell in this series is the **promonocyte,** which is 15 to 20 µm in diameter—somewhat larger than the myeloblast. The N/C ratio is moderate, and the nucleus may be oval or indented with a fine uniform or slightly streaked chromatin pattern and two to five nucleoli. The cytoplasm is basophilic with a ground-glass appearance and a variable number of fine azurophilic granules (Fig. 31-23). The **monocyte,** which is present in both blood and marrow, is only slightly smaller; it has a moderate to low N/C ratio and an indented or lobed nucleus with a finely-streaked, only slightly condensed, delicate chromatin pattern. Nucleoli are indistinct or obscured. The cytoplasm is opaque, more gray than blue, and contains an abundance of fine azurophilic granules (Fig. 31-24).

Macrophages, the tissue component of the monocyte system, arise from emigrated blood monocytes. Macrophages are larger than monocytes and measure 15 to 80 µm in diameter. They have irregular cell membranes, often with blebs and pseudopodia. The N/C ratio is high with an oblong and/or indented nucleus. Although macrophages are located in virtually all tissues of the body, the greatest numbers are found in the bowel, liver, bone marrow, and spleen.

In promonocytes, monocytes, and macrophages, the granules (Box 31-5) contain acid hydrolase, arylsulfatase, nonspecific esterase, and peroxidase. More than one type of granule may be present. As the cell matures, peroxidase activity diminishes, and acid phosphatase, arylsulfatase, and nonspecific esterase activity increases. The enzyme activity occurs in the rough endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi zone, coated vesicles, and digestive vacuoles, suggesting that in the macrophages the coated vesicles are a second form of primary lysosome that shuttles hydrolytic enzymes from the Golgi to the digestive vacuoles.

In addition to these enzymes, monocytes and macrophages possess numerous surface receptors and surface antigens. Monocytes and macrophages possess class I (HLA-A, B, C) antigens and class II (HLA-DR, DP, DQ) gene complex molecules. The CD4 T cell antigen (molecule) not only is present on T-helper cells but is also present on monocytes and macrophages. Because the CD4 molecule acts as a receptor for the human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1), the virus infects monocytes and macrophages along with T-helper cells. Monocytes and macrophages express CD11 (CD11a, b, c) antigens, markers that define surface adhesion glycoproteins. CD14, CD64, and CD68 antigens are also present on monocytes and macrophages. These surface molecules are often used to identify the lineage of mononuclear cells in hematologic malignancies.

BOX 31-5

Monocyte/Macrophage Constituents and Functions

Granules and other constituents
- Acid hydrolase
- Arylsulfatase
- Nonspecific esterase
- Peroxidase
- Acid phosphatase

Monocyte/macrophage functions
- Phagocytosis—bacteria, cellular debris, senescent cells
- Antigen processing
- Cell-mediated immunity—antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity

Synthesis of bioactive molecules

DISTRIBUTION AND KINETICS

After promonocytes are formed, they respond to M-CSF and undergo two or three mitotic divisions in a period of about 50 to 60 hours before being released into the blood. Under conditions of increased demand, the cycle time can shorten, with earlier release of more immature cells into the blood. Blood monocytes are distributed in a circulating monocyte pool and a marginal monocyte pool, in a ratio of 1:3.5. Once monocytes enter the blood, they leave randomly with a half-time of 8.4 hours; this time period is shortened in splenomegaly or acute infection and may be prolonged in monocytosis. After monocytes leave the blood, they spend several months, perhaps longer, as tissue macrophages.

FUNCTION

The monocyte is formed in the marrow and transported by the blood; it migrates into the tissues, where it transforms into a histiocyte or a macrophage to spend most of its life span. Blood monocytes and tissue macrophages make up a mononuclear phagocyte system (reticuloendothelial system).

The mononuclear phagocyte system has an important role in defense against microorganisms, including mycobacteria, fungi, bacteria, protozoa, and viruses (see Box 31-5). The cells are motile and respond to chemotactic factors (complement components, as well as lymphokines and γ-interferon from activated T lymphocytes); they become immobilized by migration-inhibition factor from activated lymphocytes. They engage in phagocytosis, a process that is enhanced if the particle is coated by IgG or complement for which the macrophages have membrane receptors. After phagocytosis, they kill ingested microorganisms.

These mononuclear phagocytes are an integral part of both humoral and cell-mediated immunity. They handle or process antigens, providing contact of the antigen (or antigenic information) with lymphocytes. They also respond to various lymphokines and monokines and act as effector (e.g., cytotoxic) cells in the cell-mediated immune response. Monocytes and macrophages function in antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. They have the ability to kill a variety of malignant cells (Weinberg, 2004) by promoting both cytostasis and cytolysis. Some of the ability of macrophages to destroy malignant cells may be attributed to the production of hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), nitrous oxide (NO), and reactive oxygen intermediates.

Macrophages remove and process senescent cells and debris through phagocytosis and digestion, for example, erythrocytes, leukocytes, and megakaryocyte nuclei are removed by macrophages in the marrow; inhaled particulate material is removed by alveolar macrophages in the lungs.

Macrophages may be activated by specific factors (e.g., cytophilic antibody) or nonspecific factors (e.g., in response to phagocytosed material). Activation results in enlargement of the cell and enhanced metabolism, phagocytosis, microbicidal activity, cytotoxicity, secretion of cytolytic proteins (including TNF-α), and the like.

Macrophages synthesize and secrete a large number of biologically active molecules, including enzymes, complement components, binding proteins, coagulation factors, cytokines and growth factors, chemotactic factors, angiogenesis factors, and bioactive lipids. This system, therefore, has multiple functions that include host defense, control of hematopoiesis, and policing of the environment within the body (Johnston, 1988).

MEGAKARYOCYTES

Platelets originate from polyploid megakaryocytes, the largest of all hematopoietic cells, which account for less than 1% of the total nucleated marrow cells. Megakaryocytes arise from the multipotential hematopoietic stem cell, and then from a committed progenitor cell, the CFU-Meg (see Fig. 31-1). Megakaryocyte proliferation is largely regulated by thrombopoietin. Additional growth factors, including kit-ligand, IL-3, IL-6, and IL-11, support megakaryocytic development in the presence of thrombopoietin (Kaushansky, 1995). Serum thrombopoietin levels are generally inversely proportional to platelet count; however, levels are elevated in liver disease and inflammatory states, probably through hepatocyte or marrow stromal cell responses (Kaushansky, 2003).

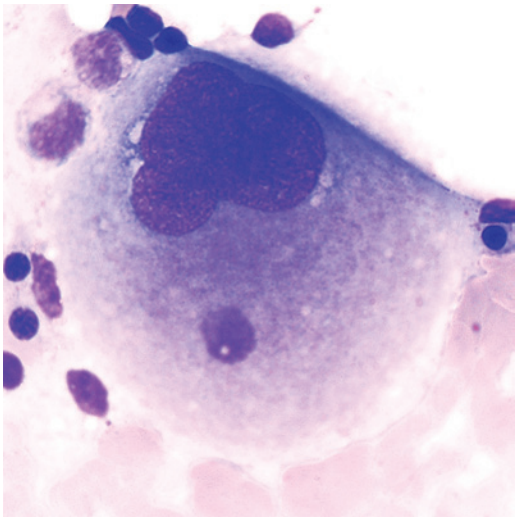


Figure 31-25 Megakaryocyte with a large, lobated nucleus and abundant granular cytoplasm (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

MORPHOLOGY

Committed progenitor cells are not morphologically distinguishable from lymphocytes. Megakaryocyte development is characterized by **endomitosis,** nuclear division without cytoplasmic division, which results in ploidies varying from 2N to 64N. Most are 8N and 16N, with smaller numbers on either side. Nuclear lobes do not correlate precisely with ploidy. Nuclear chromatin is intensely staining, rather dispersed early, and more compact and dense later. Nucleoli are small at all stages of megakaryocyte development.

The earliest recognizable **megakaryoblast** has overlapping nuclear lobes and a small amount of basophilic cytoplasm. During the course of maturation, nuclear lobes increase and spread out, and red-pink granules become visible, first in the center of the cell. In the **mature megakaryocyte,** the nucleus is more compact, basophilia has disappeared, and the granules are clustered into small aggregates (Fig. 31-25).

The formation of individual platelets is a complex process. Megakaryocytes develop invaginated surface membranes (demarcation membranes) that provide a membrane reserve for proplatelet formation (Italiano & Shivdasani, 2003). Proplatelets are pseudopodial extensions of megakaryocytes that progressively branch and thin out. Microtubular action is important in the formation of proplatelets and in bringing granule and organelle constituents into the proplatelets. Platelets are formed at the ends of proplatelets and are released by microtubular action (Hartwig & Italiano, 2003).

MEGAKARYOCYTES IN BLOOD

Whole megakaryocytes or fragments may occasionally be found in normal blood films. If buffy coat films are examined, they are consistently present. Megakaryocyte fragments in blood films may be as small as lymphocytes and are recognized by the deeply stained chromatin (with a sharper chromatin-parachromatin separation than in lymphocyte nuclei) and by fragments of attached megakaryocyte cytoplasm. They are found more frequently than normal in myelophthisic processes and myeloproliferative neoplasms, or after stress or injury to the marrow.

Dwarf or micromegakaryocytes (Fig. 31-26) show evidence of abnormal megakaryopoiesis: agranular cytoplasm with hyaloplasmic zones or pseudopods, and association with large atypical platelets having similar cytoplasmic characteristics. These abnormal dwarf megakaryocytes are

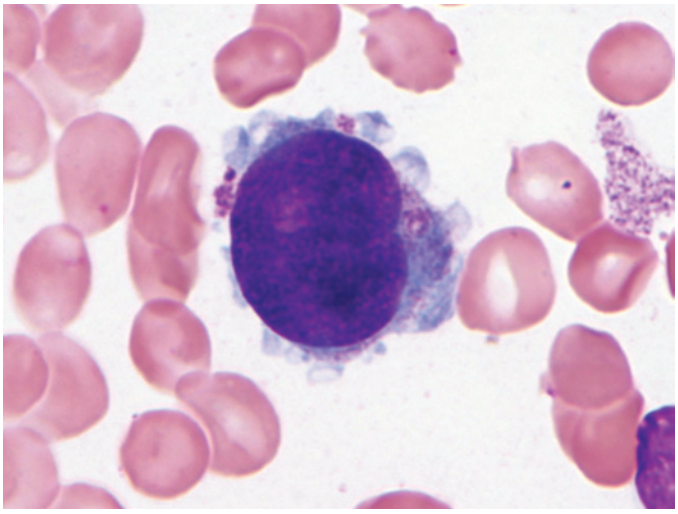


Figure 31-26 Dwarf megakaryocyte with bilobed nucleus and scant granular cytoplasm; a few giant platelets are also seen. These cells are most often associated with myeloproliferative neoplasms or myelodysplastic syndromes (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

rarely found in any condition except myeloproliferative neoplasms or myelodysplastic syndromes.

DISTRIBUTION AND KINETICS

The maturation time for megakaryocytes in the marrow is about 5 days in humans. Platelets are released into the marrow sinuses over a period of several hours (Hartwig & Italiano, 2003), and the megakaryocyte nuclei are phagocytosed by macrophages. Newly released platelets appear larger, more active metabolically, and more effective hemostatically. Platelets circulate at a stable concentration that averages 275×10^9/L. At any one time, about two thirds of the total platelets are in the circulation, and the remaining one third are present in the spleen. In asplenic individuals, all platelets are circulating. In diseases characterized by splenic enlargement, 80% to 90% of platelets may be sequestered in the spleen, resulting in decreased concentrations of circulating platelets (thrombocytopenia).

Platelets survive for 8 to 11 days in the circulation. Some platelets are utilized in maintaining vascular integrity and in plugging small vascular injuries (random loss); others are removed by the mononuclear phagocytic system when they become senescent.

FUNCTION

Platelets normally function in (1) maintaining the integrity of blood vessels, and (2) forming hemostatic plugs to stop blood loss from injured vessels and, in the process, promoting coagulation of plasma factors.

LYMPHOCYTES

PRIMARY LYMPHOID TISSUE

During fetal life, lymphocyte precursors originate in the bone marrow and undergo antigen-independent lineage commitment. Maturation and selection of T cells occur primarily in the thymus, and of B cells, in the marrow and peripheral lymphoid organs. The T cell population is largely self-renewable following thymic involution. B cells are capable of only limited self-renewal. They are dependent on recruitment from marrow stem cells to replenish programmed B cells and plasma cells that are incapable of self-renewal.

B Cell Development: Bone Marrow

A distinct organ, the bursa of Fabricius, is present in birds and serves as the primary site of B cell development, thus the term *B cell* for bursa cells (Table 31-1). In the human, B cells develop in the bone marrow after the hematopoietic stem cells have populated that organ. During adult life, generation of B cells occurs in the bone marrow.

B cell differentiation can be divided conveniently into two stages. The initial stage of B cell differentiation involves the antigen-independent generation of diversity through rearrangement of the Ig heavy and light chain genes. The second stage is regulated by antigen triggering, T cell interaction, macrophages, and various growth factors (Fig. 31-27). This stage occurs predominantly in the secondary lymphoid organs (LeBien & Tedder, 2008).

TABLE 31-1
Key Cell Surface Markers in Lymphocyte Development

Cell Name	CD Markers
Progenitor B cell	CD19, TdT, CD79a, HLA-DR
Pre–B cell	CD19, TdT, CD10, CD20, cytoplasmic μ
Naïve mature B cell	CD19, CD20, Bcl-2, surface IgM
Germinal center B cell	CD19, CD20, CD10, Bcl-6
Mature B cells (peripheral blood)	CD19, CD20, CD21, CD22, CD24, CD38
Plasma cells	CD38, CD138, cytoplasmic Ig

A progenitor cell gives rise to the first recognizable B cell in humans and mammals. This cell in humans is the pro-B (progenitor) cell that is characterized by receptor CD19 and terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) but contains no cytoplasmic or surface bound Ig (Hagman & Grosschedl, 1994). Differentiation of pro-B cells requires Ig gene rearrangement, induced by recombination enzymes (RAG1 and RAG2) and TdT, and triggered by pre–B cell antigen receptor (pre-BCR) as well as other signaling molecules and transcription factors, leading to a functional BCR (Ichii et al, 2014). Proliferation and survival of B cell progenitors depends on bone marrow stroma–derived IL-7 signaling through the IL-7 receptor (IL-7R) to JAK1 and JAK3, and activation of STAT5 and STAT3. This also involves signaling of the PI3k-Akt pathway, FOXO1, and cyclins D2 and D3 (Clark et al, 2014). The pre-B cell is characterized by the presence of intracytoplasmic μ heavy chains with no surface-bound immunoglobulin ($sIg^-c\mu^+$). It also contains HLA-DR antigens, CD19, CD79a, and other surface markers.

In becoming a pre–B cell, a lymphoid stem cell undergoes *DJ* and *VDJ* gene segment rearrangement to form a functional *V* gene for the μ heavy chain (Fig. 31-28). A productive heavy chain gene rearrangement is then followed by a rearrangement of the *VJ* gene segment of the light chain. Rearrangement of the κ light chain gene on chromosome 2 occurs first. If the κ rearrangements at both loci are nonproductive, rearrangement of the λ light chain gene on chromosome 22 follows. Only one productive *VH* and *VL* gene emerges, limiting each B cell to one unique antibody structure (Bertoli & Burrows, 1988). The pre-B cell generates an intact Ig molecule and expresses surface IgM. Isotype switching (e.g., changing from IgM/IgD to IgG1) and constant heavy gene deletions occur in pre–B cells and more differentiated B cells. Switching occurs by the formation of a DNA loop in which all intervening constant heavy genes are deleted (Fig. 31-29). IgD can be coexpressed with IgM through alternative RNA processing.

IgM/IgD coexpressing mature B cells were first described in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, in which both antigen receptors were shown to have the same idiotype specificity (Fu et al, 1974). Similar cells were later found in human fetal spleens and also express CD5 (Antin, 1986). These are frequently referred to as *virgin* or *naïve* B cells and lack expression of CD27, a TNF receptor family member (Klein et al, 1998). Naïve B cells (IgD+/CD27-) are frequent in the blood, although most lack CD5. After antigen activation in the presence of T cells and macrophages, they are recruited into germinal centers, where they undergo somatic hypermutation. Maturation and expansion of antigen-specific mature B cells is orchestrated in a complex manor by Bcl-6 (Basso et al, 2010). Germinal center B cells express Bcl-6 and CD10 and are polymorphic in terms of size and nuclear outlines.

Eventually, high-affinity B cells are selected and differentiate into plasma cells or memory B cells. Memory B cells express CD27 and either IgM or another heavy chain (rarely IgD alone), and some show IgM/IgD/CD27 coexpression (Klein et al, 1998). Memory B cells also express CD45RA (isoform of CD45) and a specific epitope (MEM55) of CD45RB, while naïve B cells express CD45RO (Muraro et al, 2000; Koethe et al, 2011).

Plasma cells are characterized by abundant cytoplasmic Ig and expression of CD38 and CD138. They express either IgM, IgG, or IgA.

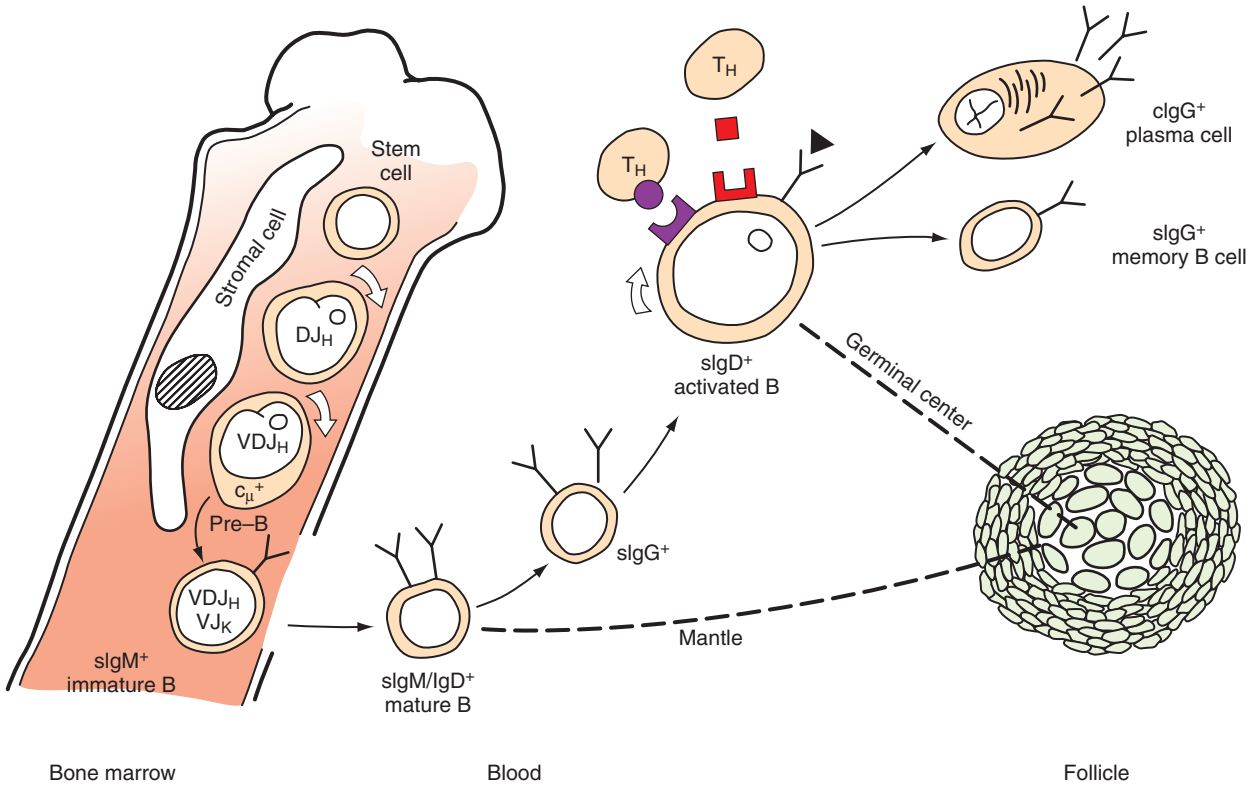


Figure 31-27 Differentiation of pre–B cells into B cells occurs independently of antigen, whereas proliferation and terminal differentiation of B cells are antigen driven. Hematopoietic stem cells with stromal cell help give rise to pre-B cells. These proliferate *(open arrow denotes cell cycling),* rearrange *DJ* and *VDJ* gene segments, and then express μ chains in the cytoplasm (cμ⁺). A small, resting pre–B cell *(not shown)* with rearranged *VJk* gene assembles a complete IgMk molecule, becoming an immature B cell and leaving the bone marrow. Expression of sIgD marks entry of the cell into the mature, resting phase (or G_0) characteristic of most blood and mantle zone B cells. Switching to an alternative isotype (IgG in this case) may occur before an encounter with antigen or afterward. Antigen triggers the resting B cell to enlarge (in the G_1 phase of the cell cycle) and present processed antigen and DR to the antigen-specific T cell receptor–CD3 complex. T-helper cells (T_H) secrete growth factors that bind to newly expressed receptor, further enhancing proliferation (S and M phases) in germinal centers. The activated B cell can be induced to differentiate into plasma cells, which secrete their abundant cytoplasmic IgG. Alternatively, it can become a memory B cell with refined specificity poised to deliver an anamnestic immune response on its next encounter with antigen. *IgG,* Immunoglobulin G. (From Bertoli LF, Burrows PD: Normal B-lineage cells: their differentiation and identification, *Clin Lab Med* 8:15, 1988, with permission.)

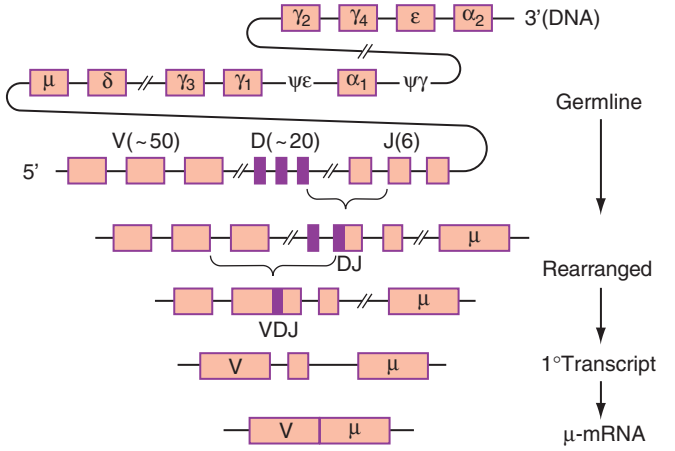


Figure 31-28 Generation of a functional *Ig* gene requires DNA rearrangement. In the germline and in somatic nonlymphoid cells, *V, D,* and *J* gene segments are widely separated in the DNA of chromosome 14. A cell committed to the B lineage first undergoes D to J rearrangement, juxtaposing the D and J segments and deleting intervening DNA sequences. This is followed by V to DJ rearrangement, generating a complete VDJ exon. The primary RNA transcript is processed to yield a contiguous V (VDJ) mRNA. *DNA,* Deoxyribonucleic acid; *Ig,* immunoglobulin. (From Bertoli LF, Burrows PD: Normal B-lineage cells: their differentiation and identification, *Clin Lab Med* 8:15, 1988, with permission.)

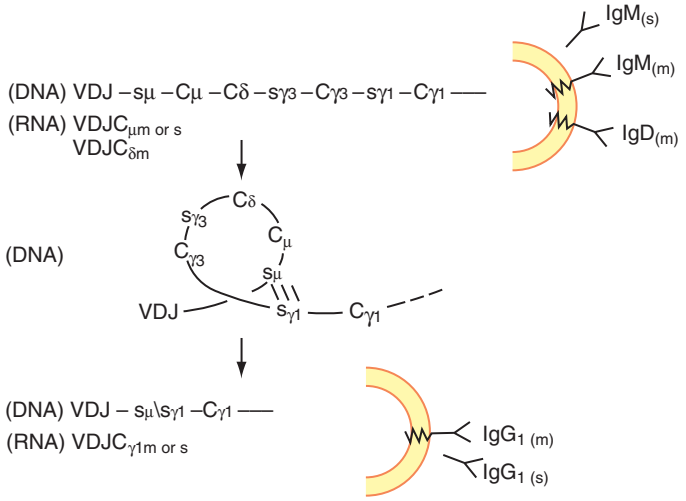


Figure 31-29 Alternative strategies for expression of non-IgM isotypes. IgD can be coexpressed with IgM, by alternative processing of a primary RNA transcript of VDJ-Cμ-Cδ, to yield μ membrane (m), μ secretory (s), and δm RNAs. The production of IgG, IgA, or IgE isotypes involves DNA rearrangement. During the switch from IgM to IgG, for example, intrachromosomal recombination between homologous switch (s) regions results in deletions of C_μ, C_δ, and $C_{\gamma 3}$, so that $C_{\gamma 1}$ is now the first *C* gene 3′ of the VDJ exon. Thus, the same variable region is expressed with a different constant region. *Ig,* Immunoglobulin*; RNA,* ribonucleic acid. (From Bertoli LF, Burrows PD: Normal B-lineage cells: their differentiation and identification, *Clin Lab Med* 8:15, 1988, with permission.)

TABLE 31-2
Summary of T Cell Maturation

Stage	Maturation Events	Cell Surface Markers
Pro-T cell	Migration from marrow to thymic cortex	CD2, CD44
α/β Pre–T cell	Migration from thymic cortex to medulla, elimination of self-recognizing T cells, α/β TCR rearrangement (for T cells destined for the helper or suppressor subset)	TdT, CD1, CD2, CD3, CD4, CD5, CD7, CD8
γ/δ Pre–T cell	Migration from thymic cortex to medulla, elimination of self-recognizing T cells, γ/δ TCR rearrangement (for T cells destined for the cytotoxic subset)	TdT, CD1, CD2, CD3, CD7
Mature T cell	Loss of ability to make TdT, circulation in peripheral blood as helper, suppressor, or cytotoxic subset	Helper T: CD2, CD3, CD4, CD5, CD7 Suppressor T: CD2, CD3, CD5, CD7, CD8 Cytotoxic T: CD2, CD3, CD7

T Cell Development: Thymus

The microenvironment of the thymus is necessary for the differentiation of T cells (Table 31-2). The human thymus has two parts: the cortex and the medulla. The cortex is subdivided into two portions—the subcapsular cortex and the inner cortex—and is populated predominantly by small lymphocytes with a few scattered epithelial cells. Fibrous septa extend from the capsule to the medullary region. The medulla is composed mostly of epithelial cells with a small component of lymphocytes. In the medulla, Hassall's corpuscles, small islands of partially hyalinized epithelial cells, are present.

Pro–T cells from the bone marrow or fetal liver migrate to the thymus, where they undergo T cell receptor (TCR) gene rearrangement and are processed into functionally mature T cells for circulation in the blood and to the peripheral or secondary lymphoid tissues.

TCR genes are organized in a similar manner to Ig genes. They possess V, D, J, and C regions and undergo rearrangement during early T cell maturation. In addition to the heterodimeric glycoproteins (α/β or γ/δ), the TCR/CD3 complex also contains CD3-–epsilon, -zeta, and -eta subunits (Blumberg et al, 1990). The TCR recognizes foreign peptides held in an association with self-MHC molecules. In early T cell development, the γ- and β-chain genes rearrange simultaneously, with TCR commitment dependent on expression of surrogate α-chain and development of a pre-TCR (Haks et al, 1998; Kang et al, 2001). Successful passage of thymocytes with β-chain–containing pre-TCR through a developmental checkpoint is followed by rearrangement of the TCR α-chain and formation of α/β T cells. During this process, developing T cells first coexpress both CD4 and CD8 (double positive cells), with subsequent downregulation of one or the other. In the thymic medulla, pre–T cells lose the ability to make TdT as they convert to mature T cells and then circulate in the blood and peripheral lymphoid tissues. Initially, pro–T cells migrate from the bone marrow or the fetal liver to the cortex of the thymus. Pro–T cells migrate from the subcapsular cortex to the inner cortex and then to the thymic medulla (see Table 31-2).

Monoclonal antibodies against functional epitopes on thymic cells were first used by Reinherz, Sclossman, and others to describe a distinct T cell maturation pattern that is now well known (Reinherz et al, 1980). T-lymphoblasts mature to common (cortical) thymocytes, then to medullary thymocytes, and finally to mature peripheral T cells of CD4 or CD8 phenotype.

Cells that express high levels of CD34 are double negative for CD4 and CD8, and as CD34 expression diminishes, CD4 and CD8 emerge together and then alone, while CD1 and CD10 also become expressed (Terstappen et al, 1992). Surface CD3 also arises.

A majority of postthymic (peripheral) T cells express α/β TCR; a small minority do not, but rather express γ/δ chains. NK cells express only ε chains with cytoplasmic CD3. Mature T cells are of at least three types. CD4 (helper) T cells possess α/β TCR chains and express CD2, CD3, CD4, CD5, and CD7 cell markers. CD8 (suppressor or cytolytic) T cells have α/β TCR chains and express CD2, CD3, CD5, CD7, and CD8 cell markers. Mature T cells with γ/δ TCR chains exhibit CD2, CD3, and CD7, lack CD4 and CD8, and function as cytotoxic cells.

CD4 T cells can develop into at least four subgroups with different functions (Zhu & Paul, 2008). Th1 cells produce interferon (IFN)-γ, TNF-β, and IL-2 and mediate an immune response against intracellular pathogens. Th2 cells produce IL-4 and IL-5 and are important in defense against extracellular parasites. Th17 cells produce IL-17, IL-21, and IL-22 and mediate immune responses against extracellular bacteria and fungi. Induced regulatory T (iTreg) cells produce TGF-β, IL-10, and IL-35 and are involved in maintaining self-tolerance and regulating immune responses. Antigen-independent development of T cells is controlled by interaction with thymic epithelial cells and thymic fibroblasts, as well as by the influences of cytokines, growth factors, and thymic hormones. IL-1, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-7, and SCF are critical in the growth and differentiation of thymic lymphocytes. Thymic hormones produced by thymic epithelial cells also induce T cell function.

In the T-zone area of the peripheral lymphoid system, the T cell antigen–dependent pathway occurs through the binding of the TCRs to antigen peptides associated with appropriate MHC I and MHC II molecules on macrophages or interdigitating dendritic cells (IDCs). This results in the release of IL-1 by the activated macrophages, which, in turn, leads to the formation of IL-2 receptors on T cells and the subsequent synthesis and release of IL-2 by these activated T cells. In this activation process, many other cytokines (including IL-4, IL-6, IL-10, TNF, and interferon) are released, and appropriate cytokine receptors are upregulated. These events result in the activation and maturation of T-helper cells, T-suppressor cells, T-cytotoxic cells, and other immunoregulatory cells. This activation process not only increases the number of antigen-specific T cells, it also alters the immunophenotype and changes the expression of certain adhesion molecules on T cells. For example, LFA-1 (a heterodimer formed from CD11a and CD18) and VLA-4 (a heterodimer of CD29 and CD49d, CD44, and CD2) are upregulated, and L-selectin (CD62L) is downregulated. Changes in the expression of adhesion markers allow for the proper circulation of T cells in the body.

Natural Killer Cells: Bone Marrow

Immunophenotypic and functional data suggest that NK cells and T cells have a close developmental relationship. Expression of CD3 proteins has been found in human fetal NK cells. Thus, it is likely that NK cells and T cells have a common precursor cell. Although NK cells can develop in the thymus, the thymic environment is not required for NK cell differentiation. NK cells can develop in secondary lymphoid tissues and bone marrow (Caligiuri, 2008). Fetal NK cells possess CD3γ, δ, ε, and CD28; adult NK cells express CD2, CD3ξ, CD7, CD8α, CD16, and CD56. SCF, IL-7, and IL-2 are critical in the development of NK cells (Spits et al, 1995). NK cells proliferate in the presence of IL-2, and their activity can be augmented by exposure to IFN-γ. NK cells appear to be targeted against virus-infected cells unable to signal cytotoxic T cells (usually as a result of low expression of class I MHC molecules). Because NK cells possess the Fc portion of IgG, they participate in antibody-dependent cell lysis (MacLennan, 1999).

SECONDARY LYMPHOID TISSUE

In late fetal and postnatal life, lymphocytes are produced in the secondary lymphoid tissue: spleen, lymph nodes, and intestine. Lymphocytes of the secondary lymphoid organs are progeny from stem cells that have been influenced by primary lymphoid organs. The secondary lymphoid organs are thus composed of a mixture of B cells and T cells. Lymphopoiesis in secondary lymphoid organs depends solely on antigenic stimulation. B cells and T cells tend to localize in anatomically distinct parts of the lymphoid tissues, where proliferation can take place.

LYMPHOCYTE FUNCTION AND PHYSIOLOGY

T cells and their progeny function in cell-mediated immunity, which includes delayed hypersensitivity, graft rejection, graft-versus-host reactions, defense against intracellular organisms (such as tubercle bacillus and *Brucella*), and defense against neoplasms. B cells and their progeny perform in humoral immunity, or in the production of antibodies, either as a lymphocyte or after transformation into a plasma cell.

A majority of circulating lymphocytes are T cells that have a life span of months to years. The B cells are a minor population (10% to 20% of the lymphocytes), probably have a short life span measured in days (with

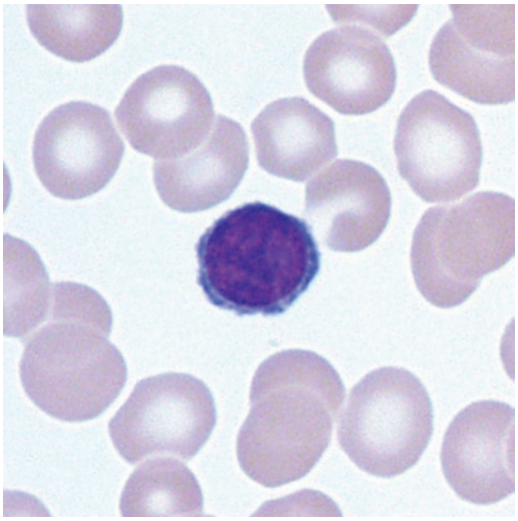


Figure 31-30 Small lymphocyte with high nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio, condensed chromatin, and scant basophilic cytoplasm (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

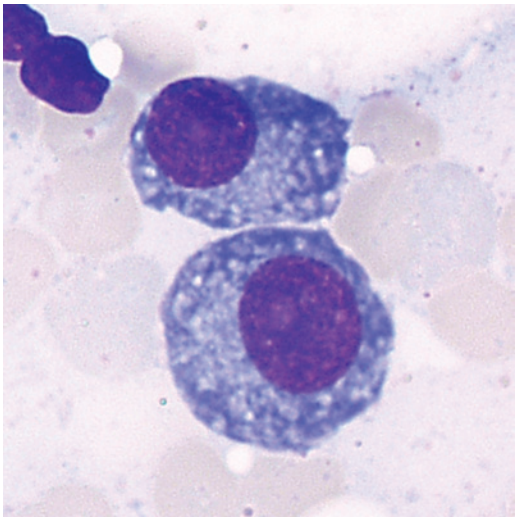


Figure 31-33 Plasma cells with an abundant basophilic cytoplasm, eccentric nucleus, and perinuclear clear Golgi zone (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

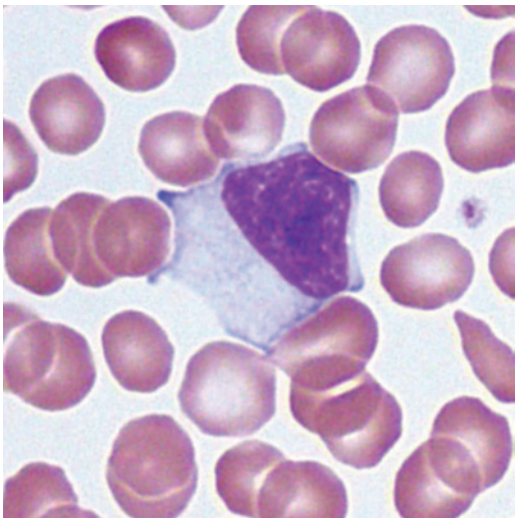


Figure 31-31 Atypical lymphocyte with a large nucleus, finer chromatin, and abundant basophilic cytoplasm scalloping around adjacent red blood cells (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

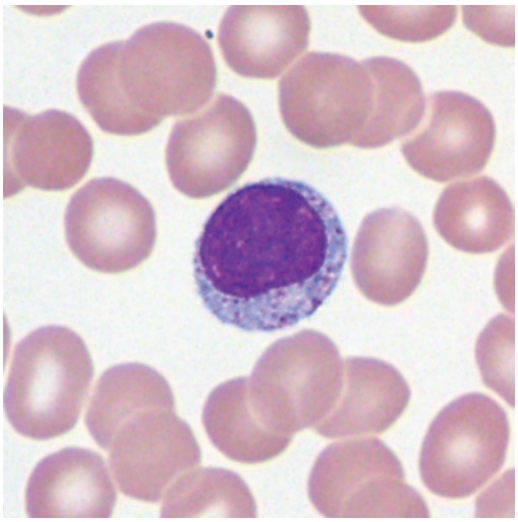


Figure 31-32 Large granular lymphocyte with azurophilic cytoplasmic granules (Wright-Giemsa, 1000×).

the exception of memory B cells), and are distinguished by the presence of considerable Ig on their surface membranes.

Lymphocytes circulate in the blood and home to appropriate lymphoid organs. During fetal development, lymphocytes migrate from fetal liver to bone marrow or thymus. Later, pro–T cells migrate from the bone marrow to the thymus, and immature B cells home to secondary lymphoid tissues. After thymic processing, virgin T cells also home to specific areas in the peripheral lymphoid tissues. The circulation of lymphocytes is regulated by multiple cell surface adhesion molecules and chemokines, including integrins, selectins, and leukocyte (L) selectin. The circulation and homing of lymphocytes is a very complex, multistep phenomenon, reviewed elsewhere (Springer, 1994; Paraskevas, 2014). However, in the postcapillary venule of lymphoid tissue, the lymphocyte travels from the blood through the endothelium and into the lymphoid tissue, where it may stay or percolate through and return to the blood via the thoracic duct lymph. Small lymphocytes (Fig. 31-30) have little cytoplasm and, in electron micrographs, few organelles and relatively little RNA. After antigenic stimulation, small lymphocytes (B cells or T cells, depending on the nature of the antigen) become activated, increase their RNA synthesis, and undergo blast transformation. On Romanowsky-stained films, these blasts are large cells (15 to 25 μm) with abundant, rather deep blue cytoplasm, a large reticular nucleus with uniform chromatin, and prominent nucleoli. This cell is called the **reticular lymphocyte** (nonleukemic lymphoblast; **immunoblast**). If the blasts are derived from B cells, the new lymphocytes function in the production of antibodies (B cells, plasma cells); if the blasts are derived from T cells, the progeny act in cellular immune response. The latter is mediated by several soluble factors produced by the activated T cell, including IL-2, which induces the proliferation of T cells; IL-3, which is a multipotential colony-stimulating factor; IL-4, which promotes the proliferation of B cells; IL-5, which enhances the proliferation of eosinophils as well as B cells; IL-6, which promotes differentiation of B cells; lymphotoxin, which is directly toxic to cells; and migratory inhibitory factor, which promotes adherence of macrophages and keeps them at the site. Atypical lymphocytes (Fig. 31-31) are seen in certain viral infections such as infectious mononucleosis. These cells have large nuclei with fine chromatin and more abundant cytoplasm that often scallops around adjacent red blood cells. Large granular lymphocytes (Fig. 31-32) contain azurophilic granules in their cytoplasm; these cells most often represent cytotoxic T cells or natural killer cells.

Plasma cells have abundant blue cytoplasm, often with light streaks or vacuoles, an eccentric round nucleus, and a well-defined clear (Golgi) zone adjacent to the nucleus. The nucleus of the plasma cell has heavily clumped chromatin, which is sharply defined from the parachromatin and is often arranged in a radial or wheel-like pattern (Fig. 31-33).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Abboud CN, Lichtman MA: Structure of the marrow and the hematopoietic microenvironment. In Lichtman MA, Beutler E, Kipps TJ, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 7, New York, 2006, McGraw-Hill, pp 35–72.

This reference put hematopoiesis into the essential context of the bone marrow microenvironment.

Doulatov S, Notta F, Laurenti E, et al: Hematopoiesis: a human perspective, *Cell Stem Cell* 10:120–136, 2012.

Excellent review of recent advances in the knowledge of human hematopoiesis, with the contribution of experimentation in the mouse.

Hillman RS, Finch CA: *Red cell manual*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 1996, FA Davis.

Updated classic work illustrating the morphology of red blood cells, with descriptions of red blood cell disorders and pathophysiology, diagnosis, and treatment of anemias.

Kaushansky K: Thrombopoietin: a tool for understanding thrombopoiesis, *J Thromb Haemost* 1:1587, 2003.

A review of the effects of the primary hormonal regulator of platelet production and the underlying mechanisms through which it works.

Paraskevas F: Lymphocytes and Lymphatic Organs. In Greer JP, Arber DA, Glader B, et al, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 13, Baltimore, 2014, Williams & Wilkins, pp 227–250.

This provides an excellent basic discussion of post—bone marrow lymphopoiesis.

Quigley JG, Means RT, Glader B: The erythrocyte—The birth, life, and death of red blood cells: Erythropoiesis, the mature red blood cell, and cell destruction. In Greer JP, Arber D, Glader B, et al, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 13, Philadelphia, 2014, Lippincott, pp 83–124.

Essentials of erythroid commitment, colony formation and development, heme and globin, and control of erythropoiesis.

Sieff CA, Zon LI: Anatomy and physiology of hematopoiesis. In *Nathan and Oski's hematology of infancy and childhood*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2009, Saunders, pp 195–273.

A thorough but readable reference on hematopoiesis from marrow anatomy through progenitor cells, molecular signaling, growth factors and receptors, differentiation, clinical disorders, and treatment considerations.

REFERENCES

Akada H, Akada S, Hutchison RE, et al: Critical role of Jak2 in the maintenance and function of adult hematopoietic stem cells, *Stem Cells* 32:1878–1889, 2014.

Akashi K, Traver D, Miyamoto T, et al: A clonogenic common myeloid progenitor that gives rise to all myeloid lineages, *Nature* 404:193–197, 2000.

Antin JH, Emerson SG, Martin P, et al: Leu-1+ (CD5+) B cells. A major lymphoid subpopulation in human fetal spleen: phenotypic and functional studies, *J Immunol* 136:505–510, 1986.

Basso K, Saito M, Sumazin P, et al: Integrated biochemical and computational approach identifies BCL6 direct target genes controlling multiple pathways in normal germinal center B cells, *Blood* 115:975–984, 2010.

Bertoli LF, Burrows PD: Normal B-lineage cells: their differentiation and identification, *Clin Lab Med* 8:15–30, 1988.

Bhardwaj G, Murdoch B, Wu D, et al: Sonic hedgehog induces the proliferation of primitive human hematopoietic cells via BMP regulation, *Nat Immunol* 2:172–180, 2001.

Blumberg RS, Ley S, Sancho J, et al: Structure of the T cell antigen receptor: evidence for two CD3 epsilon subunits in the T cell receptor-CD3 complex, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 87:7220–7224, 1990.

Bryder D, Rossi DJ, Weissman IL: Hematopoietic stem cells: the paradigmatic tissue-specific stem cell, *Am J Pathol* 169:338–346, 2006.

Bunn HF, Forget BG: *Hemoglobin: molecular, genetic and clinical aspects*, Philadelphia, 1986, Saunders, p 13.

Caligiuri MA: Human natural killer cells, *Blood* 112:461–469, 2008.

Casadevall N, Dupuy E, Molho-Sabatier P, et al: Autoantibodies against erythropoietin in a patient with pure red-cell aplasia, *N Engl J Med* 334:630–633, 1996.

Clarke MF, Fuller M: Stem cells and cancer: two faces of eve, *Cell* 124:1111–1115, 2006.

Clark MR, Mandal M, Ochiai K, et al: Orchestrating B cell lymphopoiesis through interplay of IL-7 receptor and pre-B receptor signaling, *Nat Rev Immunol* 14:69–80, 2014.

Ding L, Morrison SJ: Haematopoietic stem cells and early lymphoid progenitors occupy distinct bone marrow niches, *Nature* 495:231–235, 2013.

Ding L, Saunders TL, Enikolopov G, et al: Endothelial and perivascular cells maintain haematopoietic stem cells, *Nature* 481:457–462, 2012.

Doulatov S, Notta F, Laurenti E, et al: Hematopoiesis: a human perspective, *Cell Stem Cell* 10:120–136, 2012.

Fu SM, Winchester RJ, Feizi T, et al: Idiotypic specificity of surface immunoglobulin and the maturation of leukemic bone-marrow-derived lymphocytes, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 71:4487–4490, 1974.

Gleich GJ, Adolphson CR: The eosinophilic leukocyte: structure and function, *Adv Immunol* 39:177–253, 1986.

Gordeuk VR, Sergueeva AI, Miasnikova GY, et al: Congenital disorder of oxygen sensing: association of the homozygous Chuvash polycythemia VHL mutation with thrombosis and vascular abnormalities but not tumors, *Blood* 103:3924–3932, 2004.

Greenbaum A, Hsu YM, Day RB, et al: CXCL12 in early mesenchymal progenitors is required for haematopoietic stem-cell maintenance, *Nature* 495:227–230, 2013.

Hagman J, Grosschedl R: Regulation of gene expression at early stages of B-cell differentiation, *Curr Opin Immunol* 6:222–230, 1994.

Haks MC, Krimpenfort P, Borst J, et al: The CD3gamma chain is essential for development of both the TCRalphabeta and TCRgammadelta lineages, *EMBO J* 17:1871–1882, 1998.

Hartwig J, Italiano J: The birth of the platelet, *J Thromb Haemost* 1:1580–1586, 2003.

Ichii M, Oritani K, Kanakura Y: Early B lymphocyte development: Similarities and differences in human and mouse, *World J Stem Cells* 6:421–431, 2014.

Italiano JE, Shivdasani A: Megakaryocytes and beyond: the birth of platelets, *J Thromb Haemost* 1:1174–1182, 2003.

Ito K, Hirao A, Arai F, et al: Reactive oxygen species act through p38 MAPK to limit the lifespan of hematopoietic stem cells, *Nat Med* 12:446–451, 2006.

Johnston RB Jr: Current concepts: immunology. Monocytes and macrophages, *N Engl J Med* 318:747–752, 1988.

Kang J, Volkmann A, Raulet DH: Evidence that gammadelta versus alphabeta T cell fate determination is initiated independently of T cell receptor signaling, *J Exp Med* 193:689–698, 2001.

Katayama Y, Battista M, Kao WM, et al: Signals from the sympathetic nervous system regulate hematopoietic stem cell egress from bone marrow, *Cell* 124:407–421, 2006.

Kaushansky K: Thrombopoietin: the primary regulator of platelet production, *Blood* 86:419–431, 1995.

Klein U, Rajewsky K, Kuppers R: Human immunoglobulin (IgM+IgD+ peripheral blood B cells expressing the CD27 cell surface antigen carry somatically mutated variable region genes: CD27 as a general marker for somatically mutated (memory) B cells, *J Exp Med* 188:1679–1689, 1998.

Koethe S, Zander L, Koster S, et al: Pivotal advance: CD45RB glycosylation is specifically regulated during human peripheral B cell differentiation, *J Leukoc Biol* 90:5–19, 2011.

Kondo M, Weissman IL, Akashi K: Identification of clonogenic common lymphoid progenitors in mouse bone marrow, *Cell* 91:661–672, 1997.

LeBien TW, Tedder TF: B lymphocytes: how they develop and function, *Blood* 112:1570–1580, 2008.

Lindstedt G, Lundberg PA: Are current methods of measurement of erythropoietin (EPO) in human plasma or serum adequate for the diagnosis of polycythaemia vera and the assessment of EPO deficiency?, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 58:441–458, 1998.

Lyman SD, Jacobsen SE: c-Kit ligand and Flt3 ligand: stem/progenitor cell factors with overlapping yet distinctive activities, *Blood* 91:1101–1134, 1998.

Mansour A, Abou-Ezzi G, Sitnicka E, et al: Osteoclasts promote the formation of hematopoietic stem cell niches in the bone marrow, *J Exp Med* 209:537–549, 2012.

Manz MG, Miyamoto T, Akashi K, et al: Prospective isolation of human clonogenic common myeloid progenitors, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 99(18):11872–11877, 2002.

Metcalf D: Hematopoietic cytokines, *Blood* 111:485–491, 2008.

Morrison SJ, Scadden DT: The bone marrow niche for haematopoietic stem cells, *Nature* 505:327–334, 2014.

Moser B, Wolf M, Walz A, et al: Chemokines: multiple levels of leukocyte migration control, *Trends Immunol* 25:75–84, 2004.

Muraro PA, Pette M, Bielekova B, et al: Human autoreactive CD3+ T cells from naïve CD45RA+ and memory CD45RO+ subsets differ with respect to epitope specificity and functional antigen avidity, *J Immunol* 164:5474–5481, 2000.

Pang WW, Price EA, Sahoo D, et al: Human bone marrow hematopoietic stem cells are increased in frequency and myeloid-biased with age, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 108:20012–20017, 2011.

Papayannopoulou T, Scadden DT: Stem-cell ecology and stem cells in motion, *Blood* 111:3923–3930, 2008.

Park IK, Qian D, Kiel M, et al: Bmi-1 is required for maintenance of adult self-renewing haematopoietic stem cells, *Nature* 423:302–305, 2003.

Reinherz EL, Kung PC, Godstein G, et al: Discrete stages of human intrathymic differentiation: analysis of norma thymocytes and leukemic lymphoblasts of T-cell lineage, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 77:1588–1592, 1980.

Reya T, Duncan AW, Ailles L, et al: A role for Wnt signalling in self-renewal of haematopoietic stem cells, *Nature* 423:409–414, 2003.

Reya T, Morrison SJ, Clarke MF, et al: Stem cells, cancer, and cancer stem cells, *Nature* 414:105–111, 2001.

Roberts PJ, Linch DC, Webb DKH: Phagocytes. In Hoffbrand AV, Lewis SM, Tuddenham EGD, editors: *Postgraduate haematology*, ed 4, Oxford, 1999, Butterworth Heinemann, p 235.

Rossi DJ, Bryder D, Zahn JM, et al: Cell intrinsic alterations underlie hematopoietic stem cell aging, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 102:9194–9199, 2005.

Schett G, Firbas U, Füreder W, et al: Decreased serum erythropoietin and its relation to anti-erythropoietin antibodies in anaemia of systemic lupus erythematosus, *Rheumatology* 40:424–431, 2001.

Spits H, Lanier L, Phillips JH: Development of human T and natural killer cells, *Blood* 85:2654–2670, 1995.

Spivak JL: Polycythemia vera: myths, mechanisms, and management, *Blood* 100:4272–4290, 2002.

Springer TA: Traffic signals for lymphocyte recirculation and leukocyte emigration: the multistep paradigm, *Cell* 76:301–314, 1994.

Sugiyama T, Kohara H, Noda M, et al: Maintenance of the hematopoietic stem cell pool by CXCL12-CXCR4 chemokine signaling in bone marrow stromal cell niches, *Immunity* 25:977–988, 2006.

Terstappen LW, Huang S, Picker LJ: Flow cytometric assessment of human T-cell differentiation in thymus and bone marrow, *Blood* 79:666–677, 1992.

Tothova Z, Kollipara R, Huntly BJ, et al: FoxOs are critical mediators of hematopoietic stem cell resistance to physiologic oxidative stress, *Cell* 128:325–339, 2007.

Varnum-Finney B, Xu L, Brashem-Stein C, et al: Pluripotent, cytokine-dependent, hematopoietic stem cells are immortalized by constitutive Notch1 signaling, *Nat Med* 6:1278–1281, 2000.

Weinberg JB: Mononuclear phagocytes. In Foerster J, Lukens J, Rogers GM, et al, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 11, Baltimore, 2004, Williams & Wilkins, pp 349–386.

Winkler IG, Sims NA, Pettit AR, et al: Bone marrow macrophages maintain hematopoietic stem cell (HSC) niches and their depletion mobilizes HSCs, *Blood* 116:4815–4828, 2010.

Yamazaki S, Ema H, Karlsson G, et al: Nonmyelinating Schwann cells maintain hematopoietic stem cell hibernation in the bone marrow niche, *Cell* 147:1146–1158, 2011.

Yoshihara H, Arai F, Hosokawa K, et al: Thrombopoietin/MPL signaling regulates hematopoietic stem cell quiescence and interaction with the osteoblastic niche, *Cell Stem Cell* 1:685–697, 2007.

Zhu J, Paul WE: CD4 T cells: fates, functions, and faults, *Blood* 112:1557–1569, 2008.

Zubair AC, Silberstein L, Ritz J: Adult hematopoietic stem cell plasticity, *Transfusion* 42:1096–1101, 2002.

CHAPTER 32

ERYTHROCYTIC DISORDERS

M. Tarek Elghetany, Katherine I. Schexneider, Katalin Banki

ANEMIAS, 559
General Manifestations, 559
Impaired Production—Iron Deficiency Anemia, 559
Impaired Production—Megaloblastic Anemia, 563
Impaired Production—Other, 568
Blood Loss Anemia, 573
Hemolysis—General, 573
Hemolysis—Membrane Disorders, 575
Hemolysis—Hemoglobin Disorders, 577
Thalassemias, 586
Hemolysis—Metabolic Disorders, 591
Hemolysis—Acquired; Extrinsic, 594
Laboratory Investigations of Anemia, 599
POLYCYTHEMIA, 600
Relative Polycythemia, 601
Absolute Polycythemia, 601
Measurement of Erythrocyte and Plasma Volume, 601
THE PORPHYRIAS, 602
Physiology, 602
Approach to the Porphyrias, 602
Clinical Porphyrias and Their Biochemical Basis, 602
Analytic Techniques, 605
SELECTED REFERENCES, 605

KEY POINTS

- Anemia may result from decreased marrow production or shortened red blood cell survival.
- Nonmarrow diseases, such as endocrine, renal, and inflammatory disorders, significantly influence bone marrow function.
- Stem cell disorders, such as inherited and acquired aplastic anemias, and paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria usually affect more than one cell line.
- Hemolytic anemia may be caused by extrinsic factors, usually acquired, such as chemical agents or antibodies, or intrinsic factors, usually inherited, such as disorders of the red cell membrane or enzymes, or hemoglobinopathy.
- Polycythemia is defined by laboratory parameters and may be absolute with an increase in total red cell mass or relative as a result of a decrease in plasma volume.
- Porphyrias are inherited and acquired disorders heme biosynthetic pathways with clinical manifestations resulting from accumulation of intermediate heme synthetic products.

ANEMIAS

GENERAL MANIFESTATIONS

Anemia is considered to be present if the hemoglobin (Hb) concentration or the hematocrit (Hct) is below the lower limit of the 95% reference interval for the individual's age, sex, and geographic location (altitude) (Table 32-1). This means that 2.5% of normal individuals will be classified as anemic. Conversely, an individual whose Hb falls within the reference intervals for age and sex yet significantly below his or her own usual values should be considered anemic.

Anemia may be absolute, when red blood cell mass is decreased, or relative, when associated with a higher plasma volume. Causes of absolute anemia fall into two major pathophysiologic categories: impaired red blood cell production and increased erythrocyte destruction (or loss in excess of the ability of the marrow to replace these losses). Several authors have included anemia following acute blood loss in the latter category (Hillman & Finch, 1996; Prchal, 2010). The presence of anemia may be a sign of an underlying disorder of which the cause should be identified because correction may be very important to the health of the individual. Relative anemia may occur with pregnancy, with macroglobulinemia, and in post-flight astronauts. Recent studies suggest that prolonged exposure to weightlessness and return to sea level after a period of high altitude acclimatization are associated with selective loss of young red blood cells, also known as *neocytes*, as a result of erythropoietin (EPO) withdrawal, a process known as *neocytolysis* (Risso et al, 2014).

Anemia may also be classified by red cell morphology as macrocytic, normocytic, or microcytic—an approach that is useful in differential diagnosis (see later discussion). Both pathophysiologic and morphologic classifications should be understood. Some anemias (e.g., blood loss anemia) have more than one pathogenetic mechanism and go through more than one morphologic stage.

Clinical signs and symptoms result from diminished delivery of oxygen (O_2) to the tissues and, therefore, are related to the lowered Hb concentration and blood volume, and are dependent on the rate of these changes. Modifying factors include compensatory adjustments in cardiac output, respiratory rate, and O_2 affinity of Hb. When anemia develops slowly in a patient who is not otherwise severely ill, Hb concentrations as low as 6 g/dL may develop without producing any discomfort or physical signs, as long as the patient is at rest.

In general, the anemic patient complains of easy fatigability and dyspnea on exertion, and often of faintness, vertigo, palpitations, and headache. The more common physical findings are pallor, a rapid bounding pulse, low blood pressure, slight fever, some dependent edema, and systolic murmurs. In addition to these general signs and symptoms, certain clinical findings are characteristic of the specific type of anemia.

IMPAIRED PRODUCTION—IRON DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

Iron Metabolism (Beutler, 2010)

Iron is an essential component of Hb, of myoglobin (in muscle cells), and of certain enzymes (in most body cells). The major "pools" of iron in the body are illustrated in Figure 32-1. Two thirds or more of the body's total iron is in the erythron (normoblasts and erythrocytes); each milliliter of red blood cells contains about 1 mg of iron. Storage iron is present in macrophages of the reticuloendothelial system in two forms: ferritin and hemosiderin. Ferritin is a water-soluble complex of ferric salt and a protein, apoferritin. Apoferritin has a molecular weight of approximately 450,000 Da and consists of 24 subunits with a variable ratio of H (heavy) and L (light) types. Apoferritin forms a shell around a crystalline core of predominately ferric oxyhydroxide (FeOOH). The genes for the H and L subunits have been located on chromosomes 11 and 19, respectively. The H monomers have ferroxidase activity allowing them to become more efficient in taking up and releasing iron. Hemosiderin is water insoluble and consists mostly of aggregates of ferric oxyhydroxide core crystals with partially or completely degraded protein shells. Protein degradation usually occurs in lysosomes. The iron in hemosiderin is much more difficult to release than that of ferritin. Most of the iron utilized in Hb synthesis is that recently released from degraded Hb in macrophages and transported to the normoblasts by plasma transferrin (a β-globulin, molecular weight 80,000 Da, gene located on chromosome 3). Each molecule of apotransferrin binds two atoms of ferric iron. Subsequently, transferrin binds to transferrin receptor-1 (TfR-1) (CD71) on the cell membrane of

TABLE 32-1
Reference Values Below Which Anemia Is Considered to Exist at Sea Level

Age, Years	Hb, g/dL
Both Sexes	
1-2	11
3-5	11.2
6-11	11.8
Females	
12-15	11.9
16-69	12
≥70	11.8
Males	
12-15	12.6
16-19	13.6
20-49	13.7
50-69	13.3
≥70	12.4

From Looker AC, Dallman PR, Carroll MD, et al: Prevalence of iron deficiency in the United States, *JAMA* 277:973–976, 1997.
Hb, Hemoglobin.

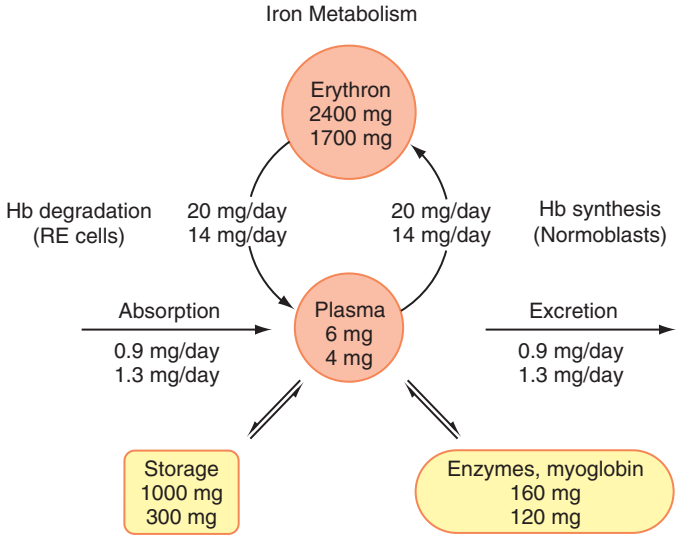


Figure 32-1 **Scheme of iron metabolism.** The upper figure in each position is average for an 80-kg man; the lower figure is for a 65-kg woman. The plasma iron, bound largely to transferrin, is central in this scheme. It completely turns over several times a day in supplying iron for heme synthesis. Each day, about 1% of total circulating red cells are destroyed, and the same number of new red cells is delivered to the blood. That proportion of the total erythron iron enters the plasma from the site of hemoglobin (Hb) degradation, the macrophages of the reticuloendothelial (RE) system, and travels (bound to transferrin) to the normoblasts in the marrow. Storage iron largely resides also in the macrophages of the RE system. Absorbed iron enters the plasma pool, bound to transferrin. Iron is largely excreted by loss of cells. (Data from Hillman RS, Finch CA: *Red cell manual*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1974, FA Davis.)

erythroid precursors, reticulocytes, and most body cells. The transferrin–transferrin receptor complex is rapidly internalized, iron is released, and apotransferrin returns to the circulation and binds more iron. In addition to the widely-expressed transferrin receptors-1, only hepatocytes and erythroid precursors express a related molecule designated as transferrin-2 receptor (TfR-2). Recent evidence suggests that TfR-2 may work in concert with HFE protein in hepatocytes to control iron absorption. Mutations in the *TfR-2* gene have been associated with type 3 hemochromatosis (Silvestri et al, 2014).

Very little iron is lost from the body; this small iron loss occurs mainly as loss of cells from the gastrointestinal (GI) tract and to a lesser extent from the skin and through the urine. The iron lost in women averages more because of menstrual blood loss than that excreted in men. About 1 mg is lost each day, except in menstruating females, whose iron loss averages about 2 mg/day. Iron balance is maintained by control of absorption. In the United States, dietary iron averages 15 mg/day with 7% absorption in men, and 11 mg/day with 13% absorption in women. Absorption can be increased in iron deficiency, but only to about 20% of ingested iron in meat-containing diets, and less in vegetarian diets (Hillman & Finch, 1996). Absorption takes place largely in the small intestine, most efficiently in the duodenum and upper jejunum, with heme iron absorbed more efficiently than inorganic iron. Iron absorption is facilitated by ascorbate and citrate and is inhibited by phytates and tannins. Acid production by the stomach lowers the pH in the duodenum, thus enhancing the solubility and uptake of nonheme ferric iron. Iron entry into mucosal cells of the upper GI tract seems to involve more than one pathway, including an independent mechanism for heme absorption. A heme carrier protein 1 (HCP-1) has been described. However, recent evidence suggests that it is identical to proton-coupled folate transporter (PCFT), which is involved rather exclusively in folate transport (Beutler, 2010; Visentin et al, 2014). A dual role of PCFT in folate and heme iron uptake is being investigated.

Non-heme iron is transported across the mucosal membrane through a channel called the *divalent metal transporter (DMT)*, which is regulated by iron regulatory proteins 1 and 2 (IRP-1 and IRP-2). These regulatory proteins, particularly IRP-2, affect the translation of several proteins that are involved in iron metabolism with a net result of increasing intracellular iron. Messenger-RNA of these proteins have iron-responsive elements (IREs), which may increase or decrease translation. For example, iron deficiency increases the translation of DMT-1 and TfR-1 (Zhang et al, 2014). DMT-1 regulates iron transport from intestinal surface to inside the cell. This process is aided by duodenal cytochrome *b*–like ferroreductase, which reduces iron to the ferrous form. DMT-1 also transports other metals, such as lead, cobalt, and nickel. The export of iron from enterocytes, macrophages, and hepatocytes to plasma involves another transport system, which includes ferroportin-1 and hephaestin (Fleming, 2008). Ferroportin-1 is located at the basolateral membrane of apical enterocytes and functions as a transport protein delivering iron in the ferrous state to the plasma. Ferroportin-1 is also expressed on macrophages. Hephaestin, named after the Greek god **Hephaestus,** who forged iron, has a ferroxidase activity that contributes to iron transport by transforming iron to the ferric form to enable its uptake by circulating apotransferrin. Ceruloplasmin also has ferroxidase activity and is involved as well in the release of iron from the cells. Because both ceruloplasmin and hephaestin are copper-containing ferroxidases, copper deficiency affects iron release and can produce iron deficiency anemia. Another 25–amino-acid antimicrobial peptide, hepcidin, has been shown to play a major role in iron homeostasis through a hormonal effect. Hepcidin is produced by the liver, is filtered by the kidney, and accumulates in urine. Hepcidin negatively controls the release of iron from cells, such as intestinal epithelium and macrophages, to the plasma. Hepcidin combines with ferroportin-1, leading to internalization and lysosomal degradation of both proteins; thus it limits the release of intracellular iron into the plasma (Fleming, 2008). Hepcidin is the product of the *HAMP* (hepcidin/hepatic antimicrobial peptide) gene located on chromosome 19q13.1. At least four mechanisms are involved in the regulation of hepcidin secretion: inflammation, systemic iron availability through a hepatocyte iron-sensing system, erythropoietic activity, and hypoxia. Increased marrow erythropoietic activity has been associated with decreased hepcidin and increased iron absorption. A hormone named erythroferrone (ERFE) has been recently identified. ERFE is secreted by erythroblasts in response to erythropoietin and it causes suppression of hepcidin release (Kautz et al, 2014). Current evidence suggests that human hemochromatosis protein (HFE), TfR-2, and hemojuvelin (HJV) interact with each other to form a hepatocyte "iron-sensing complex." When transferrin is highly saturated, HFE is displaced from TfR-1 and interacts with TfR-2 and HJV to activate *HAMP* transcription pathways. Matriptase-2 (MT-2) is a membrane serine protease expressed predominantly in hepatocytes, and it acts to cleave and inactivate HJV, producing a lower level of hepcidin (De Falco et al, 2013). In the plasma, total iron averages 110 µg/dL (19.7 µmol/L). The great majority of this is bound to the transferrin, which has a capacity to bind 330 µg of iron per deciliter (or 59.1 µmol/L) and therefore is about one-third saturated. A very small amount of iron in plasma is in ferritin. Plasma (or serum) ferritin averages about 100 µg/L in men; it is less in women—about 50 µg/L.

Iron Deficiency Anemia (IDA)

When iron loss exceeds iron intake for a time long enough to deplete the body's iron stores, insufficient iron is available for normal Hb production.

When well developed, iron deficiency is characterized by a hypochromic microcytic anemia.

Iron deficiency typically results when the need for iron is increased (e.g., during rapid growth in infancy and childhood, during pregnancy) or when excessive loss of blood has reduced the body's reserves of iron (e.g., following repeated hemorrhages, excessive menstruation, or multiple pregnancies).

Iron deficiency is probably the most common cause of anemia on the planet, affecting at least one third of the world's population (Powers & Buchanan, 2014). Children between 6 and 24 months of age are particularly susceptible. It is caused by insufficient dietary iron to meet the needs of rapid growth. After the first 4 to 6 months of life, the iron stores present from birth have been exhausted, and the infant depends on dietary iron. An infant maintained on milk and carbohydrates without supplements of iron-containing foods is likely to develop iron deficiency anemia—one component of the "milk anemia" of infancy. This anemia is also frequently related to intestinal blood loss due to cow's milk protein intolerance in young children when cow's milk is introduced too early. In a study in the United States, IDA was reported in 3% of toddlers 1 to 2 years of age and in 2% to 5% of adolescent girls and women of childbearing age, with iron deficiency (absent anemia) noted in higher (>9%) proportions (Looker et al, 1997). IDA also affects 2% to 5% of pregnant women (Powers & Buchanan, 2014). Defective absorption of iron and eventual iron deficiency anemia occur after total gastrectomy or even subtotal gastrectomy. Prolonged treatment of peptic ulcer and acid reflux by H_2 blockers and acid pump blockers may cause defective iron absorption. Except for the sprue syndrome, causes of malabsorption of iron are extremely rare. Because iron deficiency increases the rate of absorption of both iron and lead, lead intoxication may accompany iron deficiency.

If an adult male had absolutely no iron intake or absorption (which would be extremely unlikely), his body iron stores of 1000 mg would last for 3 to 4 years before he would even begin to become iron deficient. Therefore, almost all cases of iron deficiency anemia in adult males are due to chronic blood loss. Hemorrhagic lesions, such as benign and malignant tumors, chronic ingestion of some medications, and helminthic infections, are common causes of iron deficiency in males and postmenopausal females.

The sequence of events in developing iron deficiency anemia is usually as follows (Hillman & Finch, 1996): When blood loss exceeds absorption, a negative iron balance exists. Iron is mobilized from stores, storage iron decreases, plasma ferritin decreases, iron absorption increases, and plasma iron-binding capacity (transferrin) increases. This stage is known as **iron depletion.** After iron stores are depleted, the plasma iron concentration falls, saturation of transferrin falls below 15%, and the percentage of sideroblasts decreases in the marrow. As a result of lack of iron for heme synthesis, red cell protoporphyrin increases. This second stage is **iron-deficient erythropoiesis;** anemia may not yet be present. The third stage is **iron deficiency anemia;** in addition to the abnormalities just discussed, anemia is detectable. The anemia at first is normochromic and normocytic, gradually becomes microcytic, and finally becomes microcytic and hypochromic.

Clinical Features

Clinical findings may be due to the underlying cause of the blood loss itself, to the general manifestations of anemia (see previous discussion), or to iron deficiency. Those that are probably attributable to lack of tissue iron include paresthesias, such as numbness and tingling; restless leg syndrome; atrophy of epithelium of the tongue with burning or soreness; fissures or ulcers at the corners of the mouth (angular stomatitis); chronic gastritis, which leads to decreased gastric secretions but few symptoms; "pica," which is the craving to eat unusual substances such as dirt or ice; concave or spoon-shaped nails (koilonychia); and difficulty swallowing due to "webs" of tissue or partial strictures at the junction of the esophagus and hypopharynx. The latter two findings are relatively uncommon. The combination of glossitis, sore mouth, dysphagia, and iron deficiency is called Plummer-Vinson syndrome. Splenomegaly may occur in iron deficiency but is uncommon. In young children, lower test scores and delayed motor development have been reported in association with IDA (Powers & Buchanan, 2014).

Laboratory Features

Blood. In early iron deficiency anemia, the stained blood film often shows normochromic normocytic erythrocytes (Hillman & Finch, 1996). In later stages, the picture is one of microcytosis, anisocytosis, poikilocytosis (including elliptical and elongated cells), and varying degrees of hypochromia. The plasma membranes of iron-deficient cells are abnormally stiff, and this abnormality contributes to the development of poikilocytes, particularly elongated hypochromic elliptocytes (pencil cells). Anisocytosis may be identified by automated blood counters as increased red cell distribution width (RDW). This finding, however, is not specific for iron deficiency anemia. A high red blood cell count is commonly encountered in children younger than 4 years of age. Reticulocytes are usually decreased in absolute numbers, except following iron therapy. Also reticulocyte hemoglobin content (Ret-He, CHr) is reduced. The mean corpuscular volume (MCV) is low, and Hb and Hct are relatively lower than the erythrocyte count. Osmotic fragility may be decreased because the red blood cells are thinner than normal (see Figs. 30-10 and 32-2).

The leukocyte count is normal or slightly lowered. Granulocytopenia and a small number of hypersegmented neutrophils may be present. Megaloblastic changes in severe iron deficiency may be related to decreased activity of the enzyme ribonucleotide reductase, which contains an essential nonheme iron atom (Beck, 1991). However, the detection of hypersegmented neutrophils should raise suspicion for a mild folate deficiency, which may become more overt after iron therapy (Dallman et al, 1993). Platelets may be increased, whether the lack of iron is due to blood loss or dietary deficiency, but tend to be decreased in severe anemia.

Marrow. Erythroid hyperplasia occurs early, but in later stages the limiting effect of severe iron deficiency restricts erythropoiesis to the basal level. The erythroblasts are smaller than normal, deficient in the amount of Hb in the cytoplasm, and irregular in shape with frayed margins (Fig. 32-3). Giant neutrophil bands or metamyelocytes, if present, are rarely due

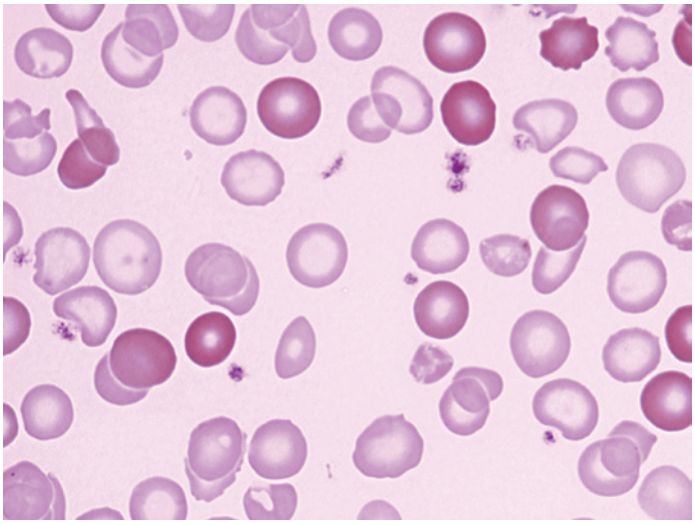


Figure 32-2 Iron deficiency anemia, posttransfusion. The cells are pale with an enlarged central pallor, variation in size, and tendency for elliptocytic formation, in sharp contrast to the transfused normochromic cells.

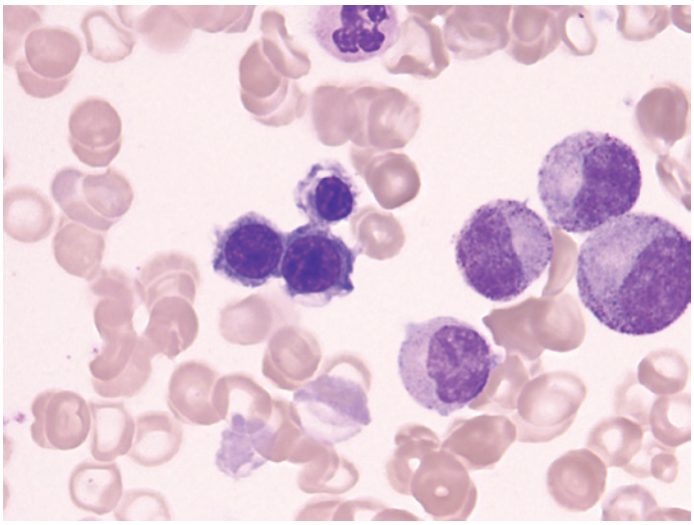


Figure 32-3 Marrow film, iron deficiency anemia. The three normoblasts have irregular margins and irregular clear spaces, reflecting lack of adequate hemoglobin synthesis (i.e., defective cytoplasmic maturation).

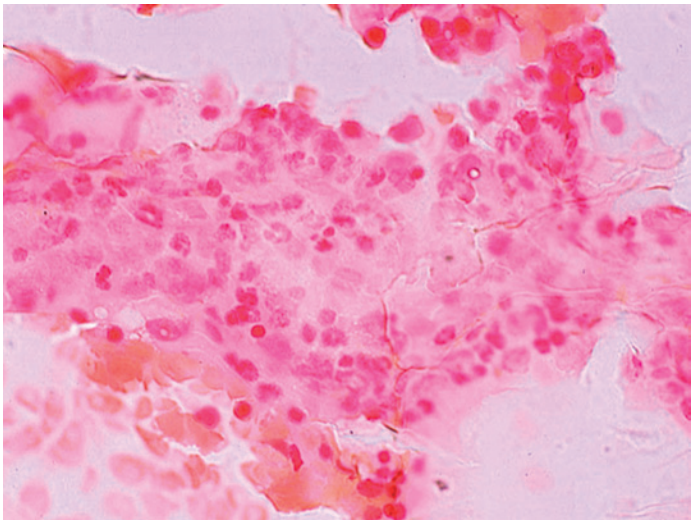


Figure 32-4 Marrow film, Prussian blue reaction. Depleted iron stores: No blue-green staining iron is visible. On a scale of 0 to 5+, the iron is normal from 1+ to 3+ for women and from 2+ to 3+ for men.

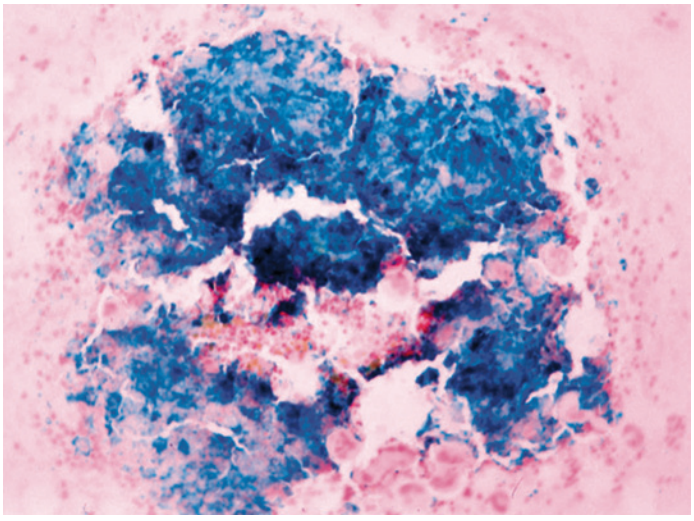


Figure 32-5 Marrow film, Prussian blue reaction. On a scale of 0 to 5+, the amount of storage iron is judged at 5+, which is markedly increased.

to iron deficiency **per se;** usually, they indicate an associated cobalamin or folate deficiency (see the Megaloblastic Anemia section later in the chapter). Iron stains should be performed routinely on marrow aspirate films (Figs. 32-4 and 32-5). **Storage iron** is absent, unless iron has recently been administered in some form. The proportion of erythroblasts that are **sideroblasts** is decreased (<20%); this proportion is usually about the same as the percent saturation of transferrin (or total iron-binding capacity [TIBC]) and is a measure of iron delivery to the erythroblasts.

Serum Iron. The reference interval is 50 to 160 µg/dL (9 to 29 µmol/L) in adults. The level is lower in iron deficiency and in infection and anemia of chronic disease.

Serum (Total) Iron-Binding Capacity. The reference interval for adults is 250 to 400 µg/dL (45 to 72 µmol/L). In iron deficiency anemia, the serum TIBC is increased. It is normal or decreased in the anemia of chronic disease. If chronic infection coexists with chronic blood loss, the TIBC may not be increased, even though the patient is iron deficient.

Percent Saturation of TIBC. The ratio of serum iron to TIBC is the percent saturation of the TIBC. Normally, this is 20% to 55%; values below 15% indicate iron-deficient erythropoiesis.

A marked diurnal variation in serum iron by as much as 30% normally occurs, with highest values in the morning and lowest values late in the day. Consequently, fasting morning blood specimens are preferred for the diagnosis of iron deficiency. The TIBC remains relatively constant in a normal individual. Pregnancy and oral contraceptives increase TIBC.

Serum iron is usually higher in the first 90 days of life; then it dips to somewhat lower reference intervals for the second month of life, and the value gradually increases with age until it reaches the adult range approximately at 15 years of age (Ritchie et al, 2002b; Soldin et al, 2004). On the other hand, the TIBC gradually rises with age until it reaches values that are comparable to those of adults at 15 years of age (Soldin et al, 2004). Similarly, percent saturation in children is less than in adults; it reaches the adult value between 15 and 18 years of age (Ritchie et al, 2002b).

Serum Ferritin. In adults, the reference values are 12 to 300 µg/L, with higher values in men than in women. Serum ferritin appears to be in equilibrium with tissue ferritin and is a good reflection of storage iron in normal subjects and in most disorders. The equivalence of 1 µg/L of serum ferritin with 8 to 10 mg of storage iron has been suggested. In patients with some hepatocellular diseases, malignancies, and inflammatory diseases, serum ferritin is a disproportionately high estimate of storage iron because serum ferritin is an acute phase reactant. In such disorders, iron deficiency anemia may exist with a normal serum ferritin concentration. In the presence of inflammation, persons with a serum ferritin level of less than 50 to 60 µg/L are likely to respond to iron therapy. On the other hand, hypothyroidism and ascorbate deficiency may lower plasma ferritin levels independent of iron stores (Brittenham, 2009).

In infancy and childhood, between 6 months and 15 years of age, the reference interval for serum ferritin is somewhat lower than in early infancy or adult life (Soldin et al, 2004). In men, serum ferritin gradually rises between 18 and 30 years of age, whereas in women, it does not. However, postmenopausal women have a much higher ferritin level than premenopausal women, and it is comparable with that of men (Van den Bosch et al, 2001). Serum ferritin levels do not display diurnal variation.

Erythrocyte Porphyrins. Because heme is formed by insertion of iron into protoporphyrin IX, the latter is increased in iron-deficient erythropoiesis, whether owing to iron deficiency or to anemia of chronic disease. It is also increased in lead poisoning and in some cases of sideroblastic anemia but is normal in thalassemia. Zinc usually becomes attached to protoporphyrin, forming zinc protoporphyrin (ZPP). A relatively simple micromethod measuring ZPP in whole blood has been shown to be useful in distinguishing microcytosis due to iron deficiency from that due to β-thalassemia minor (Labbé & Dewanji, 2004). The normal reference interval was 10 to 99 µg/dL of erythrocytes; in iron deficiency, erythrocyte porphyrins became elevated before the development of anemia, and this may be one of the earliest indicators of iron deficiency (Labbé & Dewanji, 2004).

Serum Transferrin Receptors. TfRs also exist in a soluble form in the circulation. Serum TfRs (STfRs) are produced by shedding of membrane TfRs during erythrocyte maturation. STfRs vary with the rate of erythropoiesis. Patients with aplastic anemia (AA) have lower than normal levels of STfRs, and patients with autoimmune hemolytic anemia have higher values. Iron deficiency anemia is associated with increased serum levels of TfRs, probably as a result of increased membrane TfR synthesis and expression secondary to iron starvation. Unlike serum ferritin, STfRs are usually not affected by inflammation (Clark 2009).

Serum Transferrin Receptor–to–Serum Ferritin Ratio. The serum transferrin receptor–to–serum ferritin (STfR/F) ratio has been suggested as a new approach to estimate total body iron stores. However, it appears to have limited value in identifying anemia of chronic disease (ACD). The STfR/F ratio may be better utilized in identifying iron deficiency anemia coexisting with ACD (Clark, 2009).

Reticulocyte Hemoglobin Content. Some automated hematology analyzers offer an assay of Hb content within reticulocytes (Ret-He, CHr; in pg/cell). By measuring this parameter, the status of erythropoiesis in the previous 3 to 4 days may be assessed using reticulocytes as a guide (Clark, 2009).

Hepcidin Level. Measuring plasma hepcidin may serve as a valuable tool in the study of abnormalities of iron metabolism and iron deficiency. Hepcidin level measurement is currently undergoing numerous studies.

Differential Diagnosis

Anemia due to iron deficiency usually needs to be distinguished from other causes of microcytosis with or without anemia. These include the thalassemia traits, long-standing ACD, and the sideroblastic anemias (see later discussions of these entities). Bone marrow storage iron and serum ferritin will be decreased in iron deficiency and normal or elevated in all others. In **thalassemia trait,** the anemia, if present, is very mild, ZPP is normal, serum iron is normal, and the condition is present in family members. In β-thalassemia trait, Hb A_2 and sometimes fetal hemoglobin (Hb F) are increased. Yet, Hb A_2 is often decreased in iron deficiency. In **ACD** (chronic infection, inflammatory conditions such as rheumatoid arthritis,

or neoplastic disease), although the serum iron is low, as in iron deficiency, the TIBC is low or normal. In the **sideroblastic anemias,** which include chronic lead poisoning, the serum iron and percent TIBC saturation are increased, and pathologic "ring" sideroblasts are present in the marrow.

Management

The first principle in therapy of iron deficiency anemia is that the underlying cause can be identified and corrected. Ferrous iron is given orally—at about 200 mg/day—in three doses between meals. This will provide 40 to 60 mg of absorbed iron per day, which, with the iron produced by turnover of senescent red blood cells, will be sufficient to increase production to two or three times normal (Hillman & Finch, 1996). The reticulocyte count will reach a maximum at 5 to 10 days, and then will gradually decrease toward normal. Monitoring the Hb is best; Hb should increase by 0.1 to 0.2 g/dL/day after the fifth day and by at least 2 g/dL for each of the subsequent 3 weeks. After the Hb has returned to normal, iron therapy should be continued for at least 2 months to replenish storage iron. Patients refractory to treatment need to be investigated for continued underlying diseases, particularly chronic gastritis and *Helicobacter pylori* gastritis (Clark, 2009).

Iron-Refractory Iron Deficiency Anemia (IRIDA)

This is a recently-described hereditary recessive microcytic anemia, which does not respond to oral iron therapy. Initial studies suggest that IRIDA is cause by a mutation in the *TMPRSS6* gene (mapped to chromosome 22q12-13) encoding a transmembrane serine protease known as matriptase-2 (MT-2). MT-2 is involved in the downregulation of hepcidin. IRIDA patients have inappropriately high hepcidin levels preventing iron absorption and release. Patients may show a slow or partial response to parental iron (De Falco et al, 2013).

IMPAIRED PRODUCTION—MEGALOBLASTIC ANEMIA

Macrocytosis with Normoblastic Marrow

Macrocytic anemias that are not megaloblastic may be due to early release of erythrocytes from the marrow, so-called "shift reticulocytes." This may occur in response to acute blood loss, hemolysis, bone marrow infiltration, and high levels of EPO associated with bone marrow failure diseases such as aplastic anemia, refractory anemia, and Diamond-Blackfan anemia. Nonmegaloblastic macrocytosis is also found in hypothyroidism, in individuals with excessive alcohol intake, and in liver disease (Hillman & Finch, 1996).

Megaloblastic Anemia

Blood

Macrocytic anemias associated with megaloblastosis differ from nonmegaloblastic macrocytic anemia in that macro-ovalocytes and giant hypersegmented neutrophils are present in the blood (Figs. 30-11, 30-15, and 32-6). Pancytopenia is the rule. The anemia is macrocytic with an elevated MCV and is characterized by macro-ovalocytes and often extreme degrees of anisocytosis and poikilocytosis, including red blood cell fragments. Microcytes and dacrocytes are common. Basophilic stippling, multiple Howell-Jolly bodies, nucleated red cells with karyorrhexis, and even megaloblasts may be seen in the peripheral blood. Leukopenia is present. Granulocytes have increased numbers of lobes, presumably as a result of abnormal nuclear maturation. Five lobes in more than 5% of the neutrophils constitute hypersegmentation (Herbert, 1985), as do any neutrophils with six or more lobes. Thrombocytopenia is usually encountered and on rare occasions is sufficiently severe to be responsible for bleeding. It is worth noting that significant morphologic changes may occur in the blood in the absence of anemia, and that neurologic symptoms may be present in the absence of anemia.

Marrow. Megaloblastic anemia is characterized by enlargement of all rapidly proliferating cells of the body, including marrow cells. The major abnormality is the diminished capacity for deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) synthesis. In cobalamin or folate deficiency, there is marked reduction in intracellular 5,10-methylene tetrahydrofolate, which is required to transform deoxyuridine monophosphate to deoxythymidine monophosphate. This reaction is mediated by thymidylate synthase and is essential to maintain the normal rate of DNA synthesis (Green, 2010). With such deficiency, the cells have both a prolonged intermitotic resting phase and a block early in mitosis. The number of mitotic figures is increased. Ribonucleic acid (RNA) synthesis is less impeded than DNA synthesis; hence, cytoplasmic maturation and growth continue, accounting for enlargement of the cells. The delicate chromatin and the prominent parachromatin result in a distinctly more "open" chromatin pattern than is seen in the erythroid precursors (Figs. 30-28 and 32-6). The nuclei undergo karyorrhexis readily, and multiple Howell-Jolly bodies may be present. Usually more cells analogous to the pronormoblast and the basophilic normoblast are noted (i.e., promegaloblast and basophilic megaloblast) than are seen in normal erythropoiesis. This has sometimes been termed **maturation arrest,** or *nuclear-cytoplasmic asynchrony.* Giant polychromatic megaloblasts are especially distinctive. The same general features are seen in the other cell lines. In the granulocytic series, the cells are larger, with retarded nuclear maturation and large cytoplasmic mass; often the specific granules themselves are distinctly larger. The chromatin pattern is less condensed (more "open"), and as a result the nucleus appears to stain poorly. Abnormally contorted nuclear configurations are common. The giant metamyelocyte is the most characteristic of the abnormal granulocytes. Megakaryocytes, too, are large and have separated nuclear lobes or nuclear fragments.

The bone marrow is hyperplastic (Fig. 32-7). The fat is replaced, and red marrow extends into the long bones. The number of erythroid precursors (megaloblasts) is increased, and the myeloid/erythroid ratio is decreased. If the megaloblastic process is incompletely developed, or if the patient has been inadequately treated, the findings may be only partial. Because they persist longer, granulocytic alterations are especially helpful in assessing recently treated megaloblastic anemia. Marrow findings result from the effects of impaired nucleic acid synthesis, leading to megaloblastosis and hypoxic stress, giving rise to increased numbers of erythroid cells.

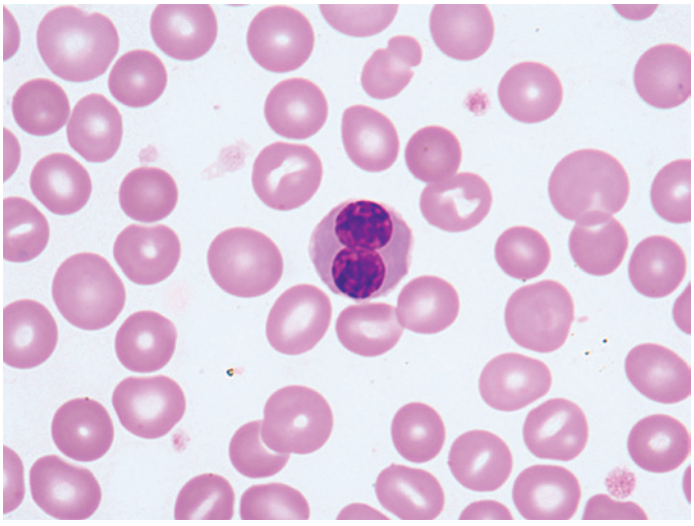


Figure 32-6 Blood film, megaloblastic anemia. Macrocytosis and a circulating megaloblast with abnormal, binucleated nucleus and open chromatin.

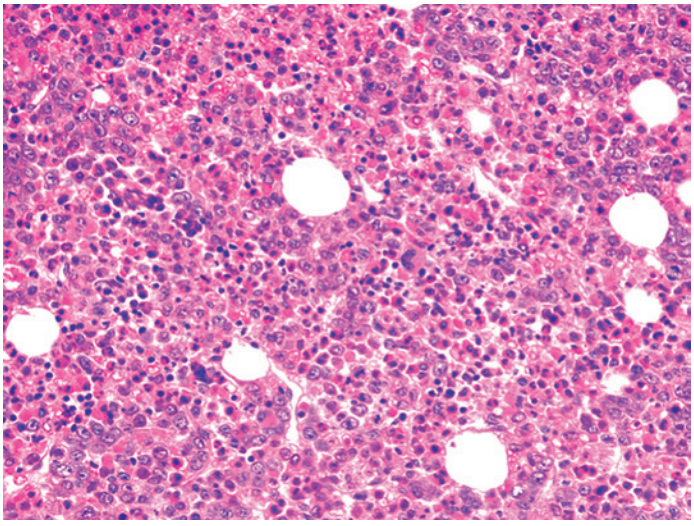


Figure 32-7 Hypercellular marrow in megaloblastic anemia. Cellularity is over 95%.

If the patient is transfused with packed red cells, the number of erythroid precursors diminishes but the cytologic abnormalities persist.

Erythrokinetics. In megaloblastic anemias, the mass of erythroid tissue is increased, plasma iron turnover is rapid, and urine and fecal urobilinogen are increased. These measures indicate an **increase in total erythropoiesis** that may be up to three times normal. The decreased rate of appearance of iron in the Hb of circulating erythrocytes and reticulocytopenia indicate **ineffective erythropoiesis.** In addition to increased destruction of defective erythroid precursors in the marrow, survival of circulating erythrocytes is short, indicating hemolysis. Indirect serum bilirubin is increased, serum iron is increased, endogenous carbon monoxide (CO) production is increased, and serum lactate dehydrogenase is usually greatly elevated. Serum muramidase may be elevated, implying ineffective granulocytopoiesis.

Megaloblastic anemia is nearly always due to cobalamin or folic acid deficiency. The aforementioned findings are similar for either.

Cobalamin (Vitamin B_{12}) Metabolism

Vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamin) has a molecular weight of 1355 Da. The molecule's two major parts are (1) a **planar group** (the corrin nucleus), a ring structure surrounding a cobalt atom; and (2) a **nucleotide group,** which consists of the base, 5,6-dimethylbenzimidazole, and a phosphorylated ribose esterified with 1-amino,2-propanol. A cyanide group is in coordinate linkage with the trivalent cobalt. Different forms of vitamin B_{12} result from replacement of the cyanide by hydroxy, adenosyl, or methyl groups; generically, these are termed **cobalamins.**

Cobalamin is the only vitamin exclusively synthesized by microorganisms. It is found in practically all animal tissues and is stored primarily in the liver in the form of adenosylcobalamin. The human liver contains approximately 1 µg/g of liver. Cobalamin is initially bound to R binders (cobalamin-binding proteins with *R*apid electrophoretic mobility compared with intrinsic factor) present in saliva or food, is released by peptic digestion, and is then bound by other R binders at the acid pH of the stomach. The R proteins belong to the same family of isoproteins as the plasma haptocorrin (HC) binder (Green, 2010). On entering the duodenum, cobalamin is released by pancreatic enzymes to finally bind to gastric intrinsic factor (IF), a 44-kDa glycoprotein produced in the parietal cells of the stomach. The gene for IF is located on chromosome 11. This cobalamin-IF complex, which is highly resistant to digestion, then adheres to specific receptor sites on the epithelial cells of the ileum, at which site the cobalamin is absorbed. The cobalamin-IF receptor is a combination of two proteins: a 460-kDa protein called *cubilin (CUBN)*, and a 45- to 50-kDa protein called *amnionless* (AMN). CUBN lacks both transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains and its internalization depends on other transmembrane proteins, particularly AMN. Both proteins are also present in renal tubules. Mutation of any of the two genes can produce megaloblastic anemia with proteinuria, also known as Imerslund-Gräsbeck syndrome (Kozyraki & Cases, 2013). The concentration of the receptor in the ileum increases progressively until it reaches its maximum near the terminal ileum. The cobalamin-IF complex is taken into the cell, where cobalamin is released and the IF is destroyed. The receptor recycles to the surface of the cell (Kozyraki & Cases, 2013).

Cobalamin is transported in the plasma as methylcobalamin, while bound to a group of proteins named *transcobalamin (TC)*, formerly known as *transcobalamin II* and *haptocorrins* (variously called *TC I*, *TC III*, *R binder*, *cobalophilin* [see later in the chapter]). Ninety percent of newly absorbed cobalamin is bound to TC, which serves as the chief transport protein, rapidly delivering the vitamin to the liver, hematopoietic cells, and other dividing cells. Some cobalamin binds to haptocorrins—a step that prevents its loss from the plasma; this cobalamin is a passive reservoir in equilibrium with body stores in the liver but not taken up by other body cells. The reference values for plasma cobalamin depend on the method of assay, but they commonly are 200 to 900 ng/L (150 to 670 pmol/L). One third of the binding sites on transcobalamins are normally occupied: 70% to 90% of plasma cobalamin is bound to haptocorrins; this is very slowly cleared from the plasma. The remainder is bound to TC, which remains only about 5% saturated; much of newly absorbed cobalamin bound to TC is removed from the plasma during the first few hours, but a small fraction remains bound for several weeks.

The relative importance of the transcobalamins is illustrated by the clinical effects of congenital deficiency. Lack of TC results in severe megaloblastic anemia in infancy; yet the serum cobalamin level is normal. Lack of HC is not accompanied by anemia or megaloblastosis; yet the serum cobalamin level is decreased (Whitehead, 2006).

HC are found in milk, plasma, saliva, gastric juice, and other body fluids. HC may arise from granulocytes, salivary glands, and liver, as well as from other tissues. HC may help clear nonphysiologic cobalamin analogs. Elevation of HC accounts for the elevation of total cobalamin-binding proteins in myeloproliferative neoplasms. TC is also synthesized by a variety of cells, including renal cells, enterocytes, and hepatocytes and acts as an acute phase reactant; its levels are increased in inflammatory and infectious conditions (Carmel, 1999, Green, 2010). To be useful to the cell, cyanocobalamin and hydroxocobalamin must be converted to adenosyl and methyl forms through reduction and alkylation. Adenosylcobalamin acts as a coenzyme for methylmalonyl coenzyme A mutase, which coverts methylmalonyl coenzyme A to succinyl coenzyme A. Methylcoblamin is involved in methyl transfer from N^5-methyl tetrahydrofolate to homocysteine to form methionine.

The daily requirement for cobalamin is in the range of 2 to 5 µg/day. The body's stores of 2 to 5 mg will last for several years if intake is cut off, as is the case when total gastrectomy is performed (Beck, 1991).

Cobalamin Deficiency

Although the true prevalence of cobalamin deficiency in the general population is unknown, it increases with age. Approximately 15% of adults older than 65 years of age have laboratory findings of vitamin B_{12} deficiency. This prevalence may be attributed to the high frequency of hypochlorhydria of 25% to 50%, which has been reported in the older adult population (Green, 2010). The widespread use of proton pump inhibitors to control gastric secretion is becoming a contributing factor (Oh & Brown, 2003). Cobalamin deficiency is produced by any of several mechanisms that are not always exclusive of each other and involve inadequate intake and reduced absorption.

Inadequate Intake

A dietary deficiency is an *extremely rare* cause of megaloblastic anemia in the United States and is seen only in persons who completely abstain from animal food, including milk and eggs. Only strict vegetarians are known to develop this form of cobalamin deficiency.

Defective Production of Intrinsic Factor

This is the most common cause of cobalamin deficiency.

Pernicious Anemia

Pernicious anemia (PA) is a "conditioned" nutritional deficiency of cobalamin that is caused by failure of the gastric mucosa to secrete intrinsic factor. This abnormality is genetically determined but usually is not manifested until late in life; less than 10% of cases occur in persons younger than 40 years of age. The annual incidence of PA is approximately 25 new cases per 100,000 individuals over 40 years of age. Positive family history is obtained in approximately 30% of patients (Green, 2010). Modern surveys indicate that PA is as common in blacks as in Caucasians (Carmel, 1999).

Clinical Features

The disorder is equally common in males and females. Symptoms of **anemia** and the combination of skin pallor and jaundice giving a lemon-yellow appearance to the skin are often present. The tongue may be sore, smooth, and pale (atrophic glossitis) or red and raw (acute glossitis). **GI symptoms** may be prominent and include episodic abdominal pain, constipation, and diarrhea. Diffuse and irregular degeneration of the white matter of the **central nervous system (CNS)** characteristically involves the posterior and lateral columns of the spinal cord (subacute combined degeneration) and sometimes other sites. Symmetrical sensations of "pins and needles" of the distal extremities, numbness and tingling, loss of position sensation (difficulty with balance and gait), and loss of vibratory sensation (perhaps the most constant sign) are indicative of peripheral neuropathy and posterior column lesions. Lateral column involvement gives rise to weakness, spasticity, and increased deep tendon reflexes. Sometimes, the brain may be affected, and the patient shows irritability, emotional instability, or a change in personality. Neuropsychiatric disorders may be associated with cobalamin deficiency even without accompanying hematologic manifestations (Lindenbaum et al, 1988). Recent studies suggest that cobalamin is essential for the maintenance of certain levels of cytokines and growth factors in the CNS. Cobalamin deficiency has been reported to cause an increase in CSF levels of myelinotoxic cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor-α, while decreasing myelinotrophic cytokines, such as interleukin (IL)-6 (Scalabrino, 2009).

Gastric Findings

Atrophic gastritis of varying degrees is found in most adults with PA, and gastric atrophy involving all coats of the wall in the remainder. IF and

hydrochloric acid (HCl) are secreted by gastric parietal cells in the human; in adult PA, IF secretion is absent, and almost always histamine-refractory achylia and achlorhydria—decreased volume of gastric juice and lack of HCl secretion—are present.

Immune Abnormalities

Autoantibodies have been found in the serum of patients with pernicious anemia (Green, 2010). **Anti–parietal cell antibodies** react with gastric parietal cells and are present in more than 90% of patients. These anti–parietal cell antibodies are also present in patients with chronic gastritis, such as that associated with iron deficiency, and in some patients with thyroiditis and myxedema; they are seen in 4% to 5% of age-matched healthy individuals. When these antibodies are chronically injected into rats, they decrease gastric HCl, IF, and pepsin secretion and produce gastric atrophy. The major antigen to which these antibodies are produced is the acid-producing enzyme H^+,K^+-ATPase, a 92-kDa protein present on the luminal membrane of parietal cells, which is the target of proton pump inhibitors. A recent study suggests that antibodies to *H. pylori* are common in PA, particularly in young patients. Infection may be the first step toward initiation of an autoimmune response (Hershko et al, 2007).

Another type of autoantibody is directed against intrinsic factor. **Anti–intrinsic factor antibodies** occur in the serum, saliva, and gastric juice of about 75% of patients with PA. Two types of anti-IF antibodies occur: "blocking" antibodies, which block the binding of cobalamin to IF; and "binding" antibodies, which bind to the cobalamin-IF complex and prevent the complex from binding to receptors in the ileum. Although these antibodies can cause some functional impairment in vivo, it is not clear whether the antibodies are the cause or an effect of the disease. IF antibodies in the absence of PA occur in a small percentage of individuals with hyperthyroidism (Graves' disease), and similarly in persons with insulin-dependent diabetes. Therefore, IF antibodies are considered highly specific and confirmatory for PA, although their absence does not exclude the diagnosis (Green, 2010).

Family studies in patients with pernicious anemia have shown an increased incidence of the disease in relatives, and many relatives have achlorhydria and partial defects of cobalamin absorption. Relatives of patients with pernicious anemia also have a higher incidence of gastric parietal cell antibodies and of thyroid antibodies than normal individuals.

It is possible that adult pernicious anemia is a genetically determined autoimmune gastritis. However, the relationship of the gastric lesion to the antibodies remains unclear.

Pernicious Anemia in Children

Two forms of PA are known to occur in children. **Congenital pernicious anemia** usually appears early in the second year of life. IF secretion may be lacking, or the secreted IF may be functionally defective, but acid secretion and the appearance of the gastric mucosa are normal. Antibodies to parietal cells and to IF are absent. These cases are caused by mutations in the IF gene *(GIF)* mapped to chromosome 11q12. **Juvenile pernicious anemia** occurs usually in older children and is like that of adults, with gastric atrophy, achlorhydria, and serum antibody to IF and parietal cells, although the latter may be absent in a subset of patients (Whitehead, 2006).

Gastrectomy

Surgical removal of the stomach (total or even subtotal occasionally) will remove the source of intrinsic factor. This will lead to megaloblastic anemia after the body's stores of cobalamin have been exhausted—in 3 to 6 years—if cobalamin therapy has not been given. Frequently, the anemia is due in part to iron deficiency.

Defective Absorption of Cobalamin

Malabsorption Syndromes. Celiac disease, tropical sprue, resection of the small bowel, or inflammatory disease of the small bowel may be associated with multiple defects of absorption, including other vitamins. Folic acid deficiency (absorbed principally in the upper small bowel) is more commonly seen than cobalamin deficiency (absorbed principally in the lower small bowel) in diseases leading to malabsorption. The reason for this is probably the lesser time necessary for depletion of body stores of folic acid.

Imerslund-Gräsbeck syndrome is an autosomally recessive inherited defect in the intestinal absorption of cobalamin that occurs in the presence of normal intrinsic factor. In many patients, proteinuria of the tubular type is also found. Most reported cases are from Northern Europe. As mentioned earlier, the syndrome is caused by a defect in the cubilin/amnionless receptor (Kozyraki & Cases, 2013).

Lack of Availability of Cobalamin. In certain countries, infestation with the fish tapeworm *Diphyllobothrium latum* is common enough that cobalamin deficiency may occur occasionally when it is present. The worm successfully competes with the host for the ingested cobalamin. Most common in Finland, it is rarely seen in the United States.

Bacteria in a blind loop of intestine may also preferentially utilize ingested cobalamin to the detriment of the host.

As mentioned earlier, inherited TC deficiency leads to megaloblastic anemia accompanied by neurologic symptoms in early childhood.

Vitamin B_{12} or folate deficiency may exert indirect cardiovascular effects. Both deficiencies are associated with hyperhomocystinemia, which is an independent factor for atherosclerosis and vascular thrombosis (Oh & Brown, 2003).

Diagnosis of Cobalamin Deficiency

Recognition of megaloblastic anemia indicates the likelihood of cobalamin deficiency or folic acid deficiency. In addition, evidence of neurologic involvement favors cobalamin deficiency. This diagnosis can be established by one of four methods.

Therapeutic Trial. With the patient on a diet low in cobalamin and folate, a parenteral physiologic dose of cobalamin (10 µg/day) is given. Optimal hematologic response indicates deficiency and consists of reticulocytosis beginning on the third or fourth day, reaching a peak on the seventh day. Erythropoiesis becomes normoblastic by 2 days, and leukopoiesis becomes normal by 12 to 14 days. Within 1 week, leukocyte and platelet counts have returned to normal, and the Hb concentration begins to rise.

Serum Cobalamin Assay. This is the usual method of detecting a cobalamin-deficient state. The original microbiological assay of serum cobalamin employed an organism (e.g., *Euglena gracilis*) that requires cobalamin for growth. Although the microbiological method is precise and reliable, it requires at least 48 hours of incubation and is subject to the inhibitory effects of antibiotics. Radioisotopic dilution and chemiluminescence assays are more rapid and widely used and give results comparable with those of the *Euglena* assay, provided that the binding protein is specific for biologically active cobalamin; a standardized intrinsic factor preparation is most satisfactory. However, these methods may produce false-normal values in approximately 10% of patients with cobalamin deficiency (Zittoun & Zittoun, 1999).

Reference values are 200 to 900 ng/L. In megaloblastic anemia due to cobalamin deficiency, serum cobalamin is usually less than 100 ng/L. Individuals with folate deficiency and mild cobalamin deficiency and who are pregnant have borderline values between 100 and 200 ng/L. Patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection or multiple myeloma and those receiving megadose vitamin C therapy often have low serum cobalamin levels in the absence of clinical manifestations (Ward, 2002; Green, 2010). Spuriously normal cobalamin levels have been recorded in patients with cobalamin deficiency associated with overgrowth of intestinal bacteria, which produce biochemically inert B_{12} analogs, and in patients with autoimmune disorders, myeloproliferative neoplasms, and active liver disease (Ward, 2002; Green, 2010). Measurement of TC-bound cobalamin (holotranscobalamin) may provide additional information, in that its levels fall below the normal range long before total serum cobalamin does and probably represent a state of negative cobalamin balance (Zittoun & Zittoun, 1999). However, its clinical utility has been limited (Ward, 2002).

Methylmalonic Acid and Homocysteine Assays. Because a cobalamin coenzyme is essential for the isomerization of methylmalonate to succinate, urine excretion of increased amounts of methylmalonate is found in cobalamin deficiency. Provided that the rare inborn error of metabolism, methylmalonic aciduria, is not present, this is a sensitive test for cobalamin deficiency, but it is not usually necessary for the diagnosis. In addition, plasma levels of methylmalonic acid and homocysteine are increased. However, plasma levels of methylmalonate are normal in folate deficiency in the absence of cobalamin deficiency (Green, 2010). Following several weeks of therapy, their plasma concentration returns to normal. Plasma levels of these metabolites should be interpreted with caution in patients with chronic renal failure because of the tendency of these metabolites to accumulate (Zittoun & Zittoun, 1999).

Deoxyuridine Suppression Test. This measures the ability of marrow cells in vitro to utilize deoxyuridine in DNA synthesis. Normally, in marrow cells, the major source of thymidine for DNA is de novo synthesis from deoxyuridine, which requires intact cobalamin and folate enzymes; therefore, less than 10% of added tritium-labeled thymidine (^{3}H-Tdr) is incorporated into DNA. In megaloblastic marrows due to cobalamin or folate deficiency, deoxyuridine cannot be efficiently converted to thymidine, and more ^{3}H-Tdr is taken up into DNA. An abnormal

deoxyuridine suppression test indicates cobalamin or folate deficiency. This test is very sensitive and produces abnormal results before anemia or macrocytosis is observed (Zittoun & Zittoun, 1999). A lymphocyte microdeoxyuridine suppression test (Herbert, 1985) requires only 1 mL of blood, making this diagnostic modality available to infants and children.

Detecting the Cause of Cobalamin Deficiency

Clinical history is useful in suggesting whether cobalamin or folate deficiency is the cause of megaloblastic anemia. Clinical associations of pernicious anemia include a family history of PA in one third of patients, along with certain endocrine deficiencies (thyroid disease, diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, and Addison's disease) and immune disorders (immune thrombocytopenic purpura, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, and acquired hypogammaglobulinemia). Cobalamin deficiency is likely to occur in strict vegetarians and in patients with paresthesias, neuropathy, or a previous gastrectomy.

In cobalamin-deficient patients, it is important to determine whether IF is lacking. To do so, the ability of the patient to absorb an oral dose of radioactive cobalamin may be measured. The usual method is the Schilling test, which measures radioactivity in a 24-hour sample of urine. Two hours after oral administration of 0.5 to 2.0 µg of radioactive cobalamin, a large "flushing" dose of nonlabeled cobalamin is given parenterally. Normal individuals will excrete more than 7% of a 1-µg dose of ingested cobalamin in the urine in 24 hours, whereas patients lacking IF will excrete less. If excretion is low, the test must be repeated using the same procedure, except that hog IF is given orally, along with labeled cobalamin. If 24-hour excretion is normal, the low value in the first part was due to IF deficiency. If excretion remains abnormal in the second part of the procedure, an explanation for malabsorption of cobalamin on the basis of intestinal disease must be sought. The test may be repeated after 7 to 10 days of antibiotic administration if bacterial overgrowth is suspected, and pancreatic extracts may be added to investigate the possibility of pancreatic dysfunction (Green, 2010). The validity of the results depends on good renal function and accurate urine collection. The Schilling test will be abnormal in PA even after the patient is treated with cobalamin and is in remission. Some patients may absorb vitamin B_{12} in water (as given in the original Schilling test) but fail to absorb vitamin B_{12} bound to protein in food. A modification of the Schilling test is being introduced to include protein-bound B_{12} using egg yolk or chicken serum (Zittoun & Zittoun, 1999).

Other tests that will establish the diagnosis of PA include direct assay of IF in gastric juice. The combination of megaloblastic anemia, decreased serum cobalamin, and serum antibodies to IF is essentially diagnostic of PA, obviating the need for the Schilling test (Lindenbaum, 1983).

Folic Acid Metabolism

Folic acid or pteroylmonoglutamic acid contains three parts: pteridine, *p*-aminobenzoate, and L-glutamic acid (Beck, 1991). In nature, folic acid occurs mainly as less soluble polyglutamates, with multiple glutamic acid residues attached to one another by peptide bonds. Folic acid is present in a wide variety of foods, such as eggs, milk, leafy vegetables, yeast, liver, and fruits, and is formed by intestinal bacteria as well. Folates are extremely thermolabile, and prolonged cooking (>15 minutes) in large quantities of water in the absence of reducing agents destroys folate.

Polyglutamates are hydrolyzed to monoglutamate by folate hydrolase, which is present in the brush border of proximal jejunum and has maximal exopeptidase activity at pH 6.5 (Visentin et al, 2014). Folates are transported across the intestinal membrane by a variety of carriers, including reduced folate carrier and proton-coupled folate transporter (PCFT). The later has been shown to be the most important folate transporter (Visentin et al, 2014). PCFT is also present in colonic mucosa but at a much lower concentration. Another transport system carries folate across the basolateral membrane of the cell. In the plasma, one third of the folate is free, and two thirds is nonspecifically and loosely bound to serum proteins. A small amount of folate is specifically bound to folate-binding proteins, the physiologic significance of which is unclear (Green, 2010). Folate is rapidly removed from plasma to cells and tissues for utilization. The principal form of folate in serum, erythrocytes, and liver is 5-methyltetrahydrofolate (5-methyl-FH_4); the liver is the chief storage site. Intracellular folates exist primarily as polyglutamates. A significant enterohepatic circulation is present, and bile contains 2 to 10 times the folate concentration of normal serum. Moreover, folates that are filtered in the renal glomeruli are extensively reabsorbed back into the renal circulation (Visentin et al, 2014). The minimal daily requirement is about 50 µg of pteroylmonoglutamate or 400 µg of total folate; a typical reference interval for serum folate is 5 to 21 µg/L (11 to 48 nmol/L), and for red cell folate, 150 to 600 µg/L (340 to 1360 nmol/L) of red blood cells.

The Folate–Cobalamin Relationship

Anemia of cobalamin deficiency is partially corrected by folate even in the absence of cobalamin supplementation, but the reverse is not true. Therefore, some of the megaloblastic manifestations in cobalamin deficiency are actually caused by abnormalities in folate metabolism (Green, 2010). The most accepted theory for their interrelationship is the methylfolate trap theory. This theory is based on the observation that the methyl form of tetrahydrofolate (FH_4) would leak out of cells unless conjugated to form polyglutamates. Methyl FH_4 is a poor substrate for the conjugating enzyme. Cobalamin is essential for the process of conversion of methyl FH_4 to FH_4. Absence of cobalamin causes accumulation of methyl FH_4, which is followed by its leakage out of the cells (Green, 2010).

Folic Acid Deficiency (Green, 2010)

Inadequate Intake of Folate

Evolution of Laboratory Abnormalities. Herbert delineated the sequence of events in the onset of folate-deficient megaloblastic anemia. After a folate-deficient diet was initiated, various abnormalities were established as follows: 3 weeks, low serum folate; 5 weeks, hypersegmented neutrophils in bone marrow; 7 weeks, hypersegmented neutrophils in peripheral blood, with bone marrow showing increased and abnormal mitoses and basophilic intermediate megaloblasts; 10 weeks, bone marrow showing some large metamyelocytes and polychromatophilic intermediate megaloblasts; 13 weeks, high excretion of formiminoglutamic acid (FIGLU) in urine; 17 weeks, low erythrocyte folate; 18 weeks, macroovalocytosis of erythrocytes with many large metamyelocytes in bone marrow; 19 weeks, overtly megaloblastic bone marrow; and 20 weeks, anemia (Herbert, 1985).

At this time, changes in the intestinal epithelium have not yet appeared. Therefore, in the human, with no dietary intake of folic acid, anemia will appear in 3 to 6 months. The peripheral blood and bone marrow features of megaloblastic anemia due to folic acid deficiency are similar to those of cobalamin deficiency; however, leukopenia and thrombocytopenia are less constant. Folic acid deficiency has usually been found in association with some complicating factor.

Nutritional Folate Deficiency. Megaloblastic anemia due to lack of folate is most commonly associated with insufficient dietary intake. The usual diet does not contain much above the minimal requirements, and body stores in the adult are sufficient for only about 3 months' needs. Dietary folate deficiency is especially common in the tropics and in India, and even in those locations, it is usually associated with increased demand for folate in pregnancy, rapid growth in infancy, infection, or hemolytic anemia. Older adults on inadequate diets in the United States may develop folate-deficient megaloblastic anemia.

Folate deficiency in infancy is uncommon in the United States. Human milk or fresh cow's milk contains sufficient folate, but heated milk, powdered milk, and goat's milk do not. If the infant's milk lacks folate, if the diet is low in ascorbic acid, or if infection or diarrhea is a problem, megaloblastic anemia may occur.

Megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy is not uncommon because of the fetal requirements for folate. The mother's plasma folate level gradually falls during pregnancy, and at birth the plasma level in the newborn averages five times that of the mother. Megaloblastic anemia is more frequent in multipara, may be precipitated by infection, and is usually due to folate deficiency rather than cobalamin deficiency. Pregnant women should receive, in addition to iron, folic acid supplements. Recent studies indicate that folate supplementation for pregnant women reduces the risk for giving birth to babies with neural tube defects, with anencephaly and spina bifida being the most common defects.

Liver Disease. Liver disease associated with alcoholism may be associated with folate-deficient megaloblastic anemia because of the grossly inadequate diet of the alcoholic, and because the liver is the major site for folate storage and metabolism. With adequate dietary folic acid intake, however, the anemia that is found with liver disease is macrocytic and normoblastic, not megaloblastic.

Defective Absorption of Folate

Defective absorption of folic acid occurs in association with malabsorption syndromes discussed previously and in blind loop syndrome, in which bacteria preferentially utilize folate.

Nontropical sprue, or adult celiac disease, is an important cause of malabsorption in adults or children that is related to dietary gluten (wheat protein). Included among the signs of malabsorption may be megaloblastic anemia due to folic acid deficiency (Beck, 1991). Jejunal biopsy shows villous atrophy. The folate deficiency, as well as the malabsorption,

responds to a gluten-free diet. Folic acid therapy (parenteral) corrects the folate deficiency, but not the general malabsorption.

Tropical sprue is a poorly understood malabsorptive disorder that is common in the Caribbean, India, and Southeast Asia. It can be acquired by travelers to those regions and persists for many years after the travelers return (Green, 2010). Evidence of malabsorption includes megaloblastic anemia due to folate deficiency. Treatment with folic acid brings considerable improvement in general malabsorption, as well as in the anemia, but additional antimicrobial treatment is recommended.

Megaloblastic anemia or decreased serum and red cell folate without anemia has been associated with the long-term use of anticonvulsant drugs such as phenytoin, phenobarbital, and primidone. The problem appears to be a drug-induced malabsorption of pteroylpolyglutamate. Oral contraceptives cause malabsorption of folate in a small proportion of women, owing to impaired deconjugation of pteroylpolyglutamate (Beck, 1991).

Hereditary folate malabsorption is a rare autosomal recessive condition caused by mutation affecting the gene encoding the PCFT molecule (Visentin et al, 2014).

Increased Requirement for Folate

The increased need in pregnancy and in infants has been mentioned. Increased cell turnover that occurs in neoplasia and in the markedly stimulated hematopoiesis of hemolytic anemias may result in megaloblastic erythropoiesis. The basis for this is the increase in need for a marginal supply of folate.

Inadequate Utilization of Folate

Inadequate utilization of folic acid is relatively rare. Folic acid antagonists such as methotrexate block folic acid metabolism and because of this are used in therapy of some malignant neoplasms. In addition to inhibiting growth of the tumor, they induce megaloblastic hematopoiesis.

In addition to the previously mentioned nutritional problem in alcoholics, **alcohol** may exert a direct effect in suppressing hematopoiesis by blocking the metabolism of folate. In addition, alcohol can interfere with folate absorption and folate enterohepatic circulation, usually resulting in increased loss of folate in urine. Animal studies suggest that alcohol may decrease the expression of PCFT (Visentin et al, 2014). Plasma homocysteine is usually elevated in alcoholics.

Diagnosis of Folate Deficiency

Folic acid deficiency or cobalamin deficiency is suspected when the blood and bone marrow show findings characteristic of megaloblastic anemia; usually, serum folate and cobalamin levels are then determined. Some cases may be associated with marked red cell fragmentation simulating microangiopathic hemolytic anemia. Severe folate deficiency in pregnancy may mimic the syndrome of hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets (HELLP syndrome) (see later).

Serum and Red Cell Folate. A microbiological assay for folic acid activity employing *Lactobacillus casei* is a reliable method for definitive diagnosis (Beck, 1991). Radioisotopic and chemiluminescence methods employing different folate binders are widely used because of their rapidity and greater convenience. Unlike serum folate (which is entirely 5-methyltetrahydrofolate), red cell folates are a heterogeneous mixture of different forms with varying polyglutamate chain lengths, which pose challenges to nonmicrobiological assays.

The serum folate level is decreased (<3 µg/L) in megaloblastic anemia due to folate deficiency but is usually normal or increased in cobalamin deficiency. A low serum folate level precedes a decrease in red cell or tissue folate; it indicates a negative folate balance but does not by itself indicate tissue folate deficiency. Serum folate is highly sensitive to folate intake and may normalize after a single adequate meal, despite the presence of true underlying deficiency (Green, 2010). In cobalamin deficiency, serum folate is decreased in 10% of cases, increased in 20%, and normal in the remainder (Tietz, 1990).

The red cell folate is a better test of body folate stores and is decreased in megaloblastic anemia due to folate deficiency. In cobalamin deficiency, however, red cell folate is low in almost two thirds of cases, so this needs to be excluded before a low red cell folate is taken as proof of severe folate deficiency. Therefore, three measurements are often useful in distinguishing between deficiencies of folic acid and cobalamin (Table 32-2).

Physiologic doses of folic acid (parenteral, 50 to 200 µg/day) will allow an adequate reticulocyte response in patients with folic acid deficiency, but not with cobalamin deficiency. On the other hand, the usual therapeutic doses of folic acid (5 to 15 mg/day) or larger doses of cobalamin (500 to 1000 µg) may induce a partial response in a patient with megaloblastic anemia due to the other deficiency. Treatment of cobalamin deficiency with folic acid is hazardous in that although a reticulocyte response may occur, neurologic damage will progress.

TABLE 32-2

Correlation of Vitamin B_{12} and Folate Levels with Clinical Status: Three Laboratory Tests Needed to Separate Four Clinical Situations

Clinical Situation	Serum Vitamin B_{12}, pg/mL	Serum Folate, ng/mL	Red Cell Folate, ng/mL
Normal*	Normal (200-900)	Normal (5-16), indeterminate (3-5), or low (<3)	Normal (>150)
Vitamin B_{12} deficiency	Low (<100)	Normal (5-16) or high (>16)	Low (<150)
Folic acid deficiency	Normal	Low	Low
Deficiency of both	Low	Low	Low

From Herbert V: Megaloblastic anemias, *Lab Invest* 52:3–19, 1985.
*Normal includes transient states of negative folate balance.

Urinary Formiminoglutamic Acid (FIGLU)

Folic acid coenzymes are required for the conversion of FIGLU to glutamic acid in the catabolism of histidine. When oral histidine is given, FIGLU will appear in increased amounts in the urine if folate deficiency is present. The test is useful in patients with megaloblastic anemia due to antifolate drugs; these patients have normal serum folate levels but greatly decreased tissue coenzyme levels (Beck, 1991).

Deoxyuridine Suppression Test. See earlier discussion.

Plasma Homocysteine Assay. As with cobalamin deficiency, total plasma homocysteine is increased in approximately 75% of patients with folate deficiency. The level of methylmalonic acid is normal (Green, 2010).

Acute Megaloblastic Anemia

Acute megaloblastic anemia may develop over the course of only a few days. The most common cause has been related to nitrous oxide (N_2O) anesthesia. N_2O rapidly destroys methylcobalamin, causing a rapidly progressive megaloblastic anemia. Acute folate deficiency may occur in some patients in intensive care units because of a combination of factors (decreased intake, total parenteral nutrition, dialysis, surgery, sepsis, medications). These patients may present with rapidly progressive thrombocytopenia in the absence of hypersegmented neutrophils. Serum folate may be normal (Green, 2010).

Therapy for Megaloblastic Anemia

Although it may be necessary to treat severely anemic patients with both vitamins, it is usually possible to determine which deficiency is the cause, and treat only for it.

The maximal reticulocyte response occurs in 5 to 7 days. Within 4 to 6 hours after the initial therapy (if parenteral), the marrow shows decreased early megaloblasts and the appearance of pronormoblasts. Within 2 to 4 days, the marrow is predominantly normoblastic. Granulocytic abnormalities return to normal more slowly, and hypersegmented neutrophils disappear from the blood only after 12 to 14 days.

PA is treated parenterally with 1000 µg of cyanocobalamin daily for 1 week, twice weekly for the second week, once weekly for 4 weeks, then monthly for the lifetime of the patient (Green, 2010). High concentrations of oral cobalamin (e.g., 1000 µg per day) force absorption of approximately 1% through an alternate system. Some reports recommend the use of oral cobalamin therapy instead of injections (Oh & Brown, 2003, Green, 2010).

In folate deficiency, oral therapy is generally used at a dosage of 1 to 2 mg/day. Cobalamin deficiency must be excluded and corrected if present, to avoid the occurrence of neuropathies of cobalamin deficiency. Supplemental dietary folic acid during pregnancy is reported to reduce the incidence of neural tube defects in the baby.

Other Defects of Nucleoprotein Synthesis

Other defects of nucleoprotein synthesis may lead to megaloblastic anemias that do not respond to cobalamin or folic acid.

Congenital Defects

Orotic aciduria is a very rare autosomal recessive condition in which certain enzymes required for pyrimidine synthesis are absent. Findings include excessive urinary excretion of orotic acid, failure of normal growth and development, and megaloblastic anemia that is refractory to cobalamin and folate but that responds to uridine.

Inborn defects in enzymes involved in folate metabolism, including methyltetrahydrofolate reductase and glutamate formiminotransferase deficiencies, have been described. Similarly, disorders of enzymes responsible for converting cobalamin to its methyl or adenosyl forms causing methylmalonic aciduria, homocystinuria, or both have also been described (Whitehead, 2006).

Synthetic Inhibitors

Synthetic inhibitors of purine synthesis (6-mercaptopurine, thioguanine, azathioprine), of pyrimidine synthesis (5-fluorouracil), or of deoxyribonucleotide synthesis (cytosine arabinoside or hydroxyurea) are used in chemotherapy for neoplasia and may concomitantly produce megaloblastosis.

Refractory Anemias

Some macrocytic anemias are caused by myelodysplastic syndromes (see Chapter 33). They are associated with certain dysplastic features in the marrow or blood and will show no response to cobalamin or folate therapy.

IMPAIRED PRODUCTION—OTHER

Anemia of Chronic Disease (Means, 2003; Nemeth & Ganz, 2014)

ACD designates an anemia syndrome typically found in patients with chronic infections or inflammatory or neoplastic disorders; it is characterized by reduced reticulocyte response accompanied by low serum iron, despite adequate iron stores. It is also termed *anemia of chronic disorder*, *inflammation*, or *cytokine response*, although the term *anemia of inflammation* is becoming a more common term. ACD occurs in approximately 50% of hospitalized patients, as identified by laboratory studies. The frequency is higher in the older adult population. ACDs have also been observed in acute trauma and critical care patients.

The anemia is mild to moderate with Hb level rarely below 8g/dL. Erythrocytes are usually normocytic and normochromic, although in 20% to 50% of patients, the anemia is microcytic and hypochromic. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis are slight. The reticulocyte count usually is not elevated. Leukocytes and platelets are not distinctively altered, except by the causative disease.

The marrow is normocellular or minimally hypocellular or hypercellular, and the cell distribution is not greatly disturbed. The normoblasts may have frayed hypochromic cytoplasm, and the appearance of Hb in the cells may be delayed (as in iron deficiency anemia). Sideroblasts are decreased, but storage of iron is normal or increased.

The serum iron concentration is characteristically decreased, the TIBC is decreased or normal (in contrast to iron deficiency anemia, in which the TIBC is elevated), and the percent saturation is decreased. Erythrocyte protoporphyrin and serum ferritin are elevated.

The most important pathogenetic mechanism of ACD is the presence of high levels of cytokines, which may result in decreased red blood cell survival, altered iron metabolism, direct inhibition of hematopoiesis, and decreased EPO secretion. Tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) plays a significant role in inflammation and immune response. TNF-α levels are increased in patients with cancer, rheumatoid arthritis, infection, and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. In vitro inhibition of human erythroid colony formation, burst forming units–erythroid (BFU-E), and colony forming units–erythroid (CFU-E) by TNF-α has been reported. Similarly, an inhibitory action of IL-1 and interferon-γ (IFN-γ) on erythropoiesis has been implicated. Ceramide, a product of cytokine-induced enzymatic hydrolysis of cell membrane sphingomyelin, plays a role as a messenger in the inhibitory effects of IFN-γ (Means, 2003).

EPO levels, although above normal, have been disproportionate to the degree of anemia, indicating relative EPO deficiency in ACD. Inhibitory effects of cytokines on EPO synthesis sites such as renal and liver cells have been suggested. The relative deficiency of EPO induces neocytolysis (i.e., selective hemolysis of the youngest red blood cells). Thus, a mild hemolytic event usually accompanies ACD (Risso et al, 2014). In addition, macrophage activation by inflammatory cytokines may play an additional role in shortened red cell survivial (Nemeth & Ganz, 2014).

Recently, hepcidin has been shown to be elevated in ACD through induction by IL-6 and is considered an acute phase reactant. As mentioned earlier, hepcidin interferes with the release of intracellular iron. Recent evidence also suggests that hepcidin may exert an inhibitory effect on erythroid colony formation at certain levels of EPO, and thus may provide a bone marrow inhibitory effect (Nemeth & Ganz, 2014).

The anemia usually fails to respond to iron therapy. However, patients treated with EPO have shown improvement.

Anemia of Renal Insufficiency

A normocytic normochromic anemia is commonly encountered in patients with chronic renal failure (CRF). The correlation between severity of anemia and degree of elevation of blood urea nitrogen (BUN) is positive but not strictly linear. When creatinine clearance falls below 20 mL/min, the Hct is usually below 0.30 (Caro & Outschoorn, 2010).

Several factors are often involved in the anemia of chronic renal failure. Decreased production of EPO by the damaged kidney is probably the important factor in most cases in which the BUN exceeds 100 mg/dL. Both ineffective erythropoiesis and impaired ability of the marrow to respond to EPO appear to be present to some degree.

Inhibitors of erythropoiesis have been demonstrated in the plasma of patients with chronic renal failure. The nature of these inhibitory factors is not known; however, parathyroid hormone and spermine have been implicated as inhibitors of erythropoiesis. Recent studies indicate the presence of a high level of inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1, IL-4, IL-6, and TNF-α, in patients with CRF. As discussed earlier in the Anemia of Chronic Disease section, these cytokines exert a bone marrow suppressive effect and probably contribute to the development of anemia (Stenvinkel, 2003). The role of hepcidin in this type of anemia is also being investigated.

Hemolysis is a significant feature in many cases of CRF. There appears to be an extracorpuscular factor in uremic plasma that has a detrimental effect on red cell metabolism and results in morphologically deformed cells (echinocytes and spiculated red cells). Numerous irregularly contracted and fragmented cells are seen in hemolytic-uremic syndrome and in malignant hypertension as a result of traumatic damage incurred by the red blood cells in traversing damaged small blood vessels. Changes in red cell membrane adenosine triphosphatase (ATPase) and transketolase may render the red blood cells more sensitive to oxidant drugs or chemicals.

In addition, bleeding is a common problem in chronic renal disease, probably owing to thrombocytopenia, in some patients, or to platelet functional defects, which are present in most patients. Anemia due to iron deficiency from blood loss should always be suspected. Folic acid deficiency may be a problem in patients in a dialysis program, in that folic acid is readily moved into the dialysis bath. Aluminum in dialysis water may interfere with iron incorporation in erythroid cells producing microcytic anemia (Caro & Outschoorn, 2010).

Anemia in Liver Disease

Anemia of liver disease is multifactorial. Associated pathologies include iron deficiency anemia, congestive splenomegaly, chronic posthemorrhagic anemia and folate-deficient megaloblastic anemia due to poor nutrition in alcoholic cirrhosis, acquired hemolytic anemia associated with Coombs'-positive red blood cells, and anemia due to lipid disturbances or drug interactions (Gallagher & Jarolim, 2009). Iron deficiency is most common, occurring in approximately 50% of patients, followed by hypersplenism in approximately 25% (Ozatli et al, 2000).

IFN-α and ribavarin (Rbv) are common therapies for hepatitis C infection. Rbv induces suppression of erythropoiesis, possibly through down-regulation of EPO receptors and can also cause dose-dependent hemolytic anemia. IFN-α can produce anemia through suppression of hematopoietic progenitor cell proliferation and induction of apoptosis of erythroid progenitor cells (Dieterich & Spivak, 2003).

In addition, another type of anemia uniquely associated with liver disease is characterized by shortened red cell survival and relatively inadequate red cell production. It is exaggerated by an increased blood volume that appears to correlate with the degree of portal hypertension. The red cells are normocytic or macrocytic (thin macrocytes). Frequently, target cells are present, especially in obstructive jaundice, and these have increased surface membrane with increased cholesterol and lecithin content. The T phospholipid/cholesterol ratio is, however, normal. Reticulocytes may be slightly increased, and platelets may be normal or decreased depending on the level of thrombopoietin production. The bone marrow may be slightly hypercellular, and erythropoiesis is macronormoblastic rather than megaloblastic. Changes in leukocytes such as those seen in megaloblastic anemias are not seen, and this type of anemia does not respond to cobalamin (vitamin B_{12}) or folic acid. The anemia is of unknown origin.

A small proportion of patients with severe cirrhosis have a hemolytic anemia associated with "spur cells," which are red cells with thorny projections similar to acanthocytes. As with target cells, the spur cells occur secondary to lipid abnormalities in the plasma; they have increased surface membrane with increased cholesterol, but normal phospholipid content in the membrane. The increased membrane cholesterol tends to associate with the outer membrane leaflet, making it more rigid. The spleen attempts to remodel the membrane, resulting in characteristic membrane projections (Gallagher & Jarolim, 2009).

Anemia in Endocrine Disease

Uncomplicated anemia in hypothyroidism is mild to moderate, with Hb concentration rarely less than 8 to 9 g/dL; it is normochromic and normocytic without reticulocytosis and with normal red cell survival. It reflects decreased marrow production due to a smaller tissue O_2 requirement and subsequent reduced EPO secretion. Because plasma volume is decreased in hypothyroidism, the apparent degree of anemia may not be proportional to the decrease in red cell mass.

Hypothyroidism may be complicated by iron deficiency anemia, producing microcytic anemia. This is most often seen in females as a result of menorrhagia, although in males it may occur due to achlorhydria and diminished iron absorption.

Macrocytosis is frequently observed, and, although the incidence of pernicious anemia in patients with hypothyroidism may be increased, the exact etiology of macrocytosis remains unknown. Approximately 10% to 25% of patients with hyperthyroidism have anemia, which is mainly due to increased plasma volume (Gregg & Prchal, 2010).

In adrenal cortical hormone deficiency, a mild normochromic normocytic anemia is present. The cause is unclear, but the condition is corrected by hormone replacement.

Deficient testosterone secretion in men results in a decrease in red blood cell production of 1 to 2 g Hb/dL (to a value comparable with that of women). This appears to be due to a stimulatory effect of androgens on EPO secretion and occurs through enhanced EPO action on the marrow, and possibly as a direct effect on a subset of marrow cells, such as stromal cells, macrophages, and myeloid precursors.

Pituitary deficiency also causes moderately severe normocytic anemia, which is associated with marrow hypoplasia. The mechanism is probably complex and related to loss of function of multiple endocrine glands and possibly loss of growth hormone effect.

A small number of patients with hyperparathyroidism have a normocytic, normochromic anemia. Earlier studies suggested that the parathyroid hormone may suppress normal erythropoiesis, but more recent studies failed to support this theory. The cause of the anemia is unknown but is likely related to marrow fibrosis (Gregg & Prchal, 2010).

Anemia Associated with Bone Marrow Infiltration (Myelophthisic Anemia)

This anemia is associated with marrow replacement by (or involvement with) abnormal cells or tissue component, such as metastatic carcinoma, multiple myeloma, leukemia, lymphoma, lipidoses or storage diseases, and certain other conditions.

Normochromic and normocytic (occasionally macrocytic) anemia of varying severity is present. Reticulocytes are often increased, and normoblasts are present in a number that is usually out of proportion to the severity of the anemia. The leukocyte count is normal or reduced (occasionally elevated), and immature neutrophils and even myeloblasts may be found. Platelets are normal or decreased, and bizarre, atypical platelets can sometimes be seen.

Examination of the marrow will usually reveal the condition responsible for this reaction. Mechanical crowding out of the hematopoietic tissue by the pathologic process has been assumed but not proven and probably is not the usual cause. Often the amount of erythropoietic tissue in the marrow as determined by morphologic and kinetic studies is normal or increased. The mechanism described earlier in the Anemia of Chronic Disease section may often play a role, but the reason for the outpouring of immature cells into the blood is not clear.

In addition to myelophthisic anemias, circulating normoblasts and immature neutrophils can be seen in hemolytic anemias, severe anemias due to other causes, severe infections, and congestive heart failure, but usually the normoblasts are not as numerous.

The **leukoerythroblastotic (or leukoerythroblastic) reaction** associated with myelophthisic anemias cannot always be distinguished from the blood picture of primary myelofibrosis, which is one of the myeloproliferative neoplasms. In primary myelofibrosis, particularly in the fibrotic phase, enlargement of the spleen and liver is almost always found. In the blood film, more severe red cell abnormalities, such as teardrop shapes (dacrocytes), leukocytosis, myeloblasts and immature granulocytes of all varieties (not just neutrophils), increased basophils, more atypical platelets, more numerous megakaryocyte fragments, and dwarf megakaryocytes are all findings more characteristic of primary myelofibrosis than of a leukoerythroblastotic reaction of some other cause. Examination of the bone marrow biopsy is necessary for the final diagnosis.

Aplastic Anemia

AA usually refers to pancytopenia associated with a severe reduction in the amount of hematopoietic tissue that results in deficient production of blood cells in the absence of a bone marrow infiltrative process or increased reticulin (Marsh et al, 2009). Usually two of the following three blood parameters are needed to diagnose AA: Hgb less than 100 g/L, granulocyte count less than 1.5×10^9/L, and platelet count less than 50×10^9/L. The marrow, although hypocellular, may have patchy areas of normocellularity, or even hypercellularity. The diagnosis of **severe AA** is made in pancytopenic patients when at least two of the following three peripheral blood values—granulocyte count less than 0.5×10^9/L, platelet count less than 20×10^9/L, or reticulocyte count less than 20×10^9/L, or 1% (corrected for Hct)—are present and the bone marrow is less than 30% cellular (Young, 2002; Marsh et al, 2009). The term **very severe AA** is used when granulocyte count is less than 0.2×10^9/L (Young, 2002). Otherwise, the AA would be classified as moderate or nonsevere. AA is usually classified as inherited (see later) or acquired. The incidence of acquired AA is 2 per million per year based on retrospective studies in Europe and North America, and is about 2 to 3 times higher in East Asia (Marsh et al, 2009).

Clinical Features

The clinical course may be acute and fulminating, with profound pancytopenia and a rapid progression to death, or the disorder may have an insidious onset and a chronic course. The symptoms and signs depend on the degree of the deficiencies: bleeding from thrombocytopenia, infection from neutropenia, and signs and symptoms of anemia. As a rule, splenomegaly and lymphadenopathy are absent. Bleeding is the most common presentation of acquired AA, occurring in approximately 40% of patients (Young & Maciejewski, 2009). Bleeding usually manifests as easy bruisability, gum bleeds, and episodic nosebleeds. Less than 5% of patients present with infection.

Etiology

Acquired aplastic anemias are of diverse origin. Since 1980, in approximately 70% of cases, no specific etiologic agent could be correlated with the disease; such cases are considered idiopathic. Drug- and chemical-related aplastic anemias account for 11% to 20% of cases, and those associated with infectious hepatitis account for 2% to 9% (Young & Maciejewski, 2009).

Pathogenesis

Hematopoietic failure may occur at any level in the differentiation of bone marrow precursor cells, whether pluripotential or committed stem (progenitor) cells. The $CD34^+$ cells in the bone marrow, which contain most of the stem cells and committed progenitor cells, are markedly decreased in patients with AA. Although, in theory, acquired AA could result from a defective marrow microenvironment, such defects do not appear to be causative for most patients (Young, 2002).

The mechanism of acquired AA is suggested to fall under two main categories: direct damage and immune-mediated destruction of marrow cells. Direct damage to the hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells could be caused by a known agent, such as cytotoxic drugs, irradiation and viruses, or an unknown agent, which in some way alters the ability of the cell to proliferate or differentiate. Immune-mediated destruction of stem and progenitor cell compartments results from cytotoxic lymphocyte activation, cytokine production, and specific cell elimination. Recent studies favor immune-mediated mechanisms for AA and suggest that chemical and viral antigens may initiate the destructive immune process (Young & Maciejewski, 2009). In fact, acquired AA is now viewed as an immune-mediated disease.

Prognosis

Complications are due to infection, bleeding, and problems of iron overload from repeated transfusions. The prognosis appears to depend on the severity of marrow damage, however the initial blood count and response to therapy during the first few months of treatment are important prognostic factors (Young & Maciejewski, 2009). Usually, the age of the patient

influences the decision regarding which therapy the patient should receive. In some survivors, partial recovery is common. With the introduction of modern treatment protocols by immunosuppressive therapy and bone marrow transplantation, long-term survival rates greater than 60% are reported. Survivors have a much higher risk for developing myelodysplastic syndrome, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, acute leukemia, and solid tumors (Young, 2002; Marsh et al, 2009).

Management

Treatment of acquired AA includes bone marrow transplantation for patients younger than 40 years of age with severe disease if there is an HLA-matched sibling. Children and young adults have a much higher survival probability compared with older adults (Young & Maciejewski, 2009). Immune suppression using horse antilymphocyte globulin (ATG) and cyclosporin A produces hematologic remission in 60 to 80% of patients. Rabbit ATG produces slightly lower remission rates in some studies (Scheinberg & Young, 2012). Androgens appear to be least helpful in the stimulation of any residual marrow. Supportive care must be used with caution. Certainly, appropriate antibiotics should be used to combat infection; however, the risk for sensitization should be considered with the administration of blood products. Single-donor platelets or platelets from HLA-matched donors are preferred (Alter & Young, 1998).

Idiopathic Acquired Aplastic Anemia

In patients with pancytopenia and a hypocellular marrow, a search should be made for evidence of exposure to radiation, drugs, and chemicals of known or possible propensity to injure the marrow, so that further exposure can be eliminated. Nevertheless, in approximately 70% of cases of aplastic anemia, no suspected causal relationship to toxic agents can be found, and these are designated as idiopathic. The symptoms and signs do not differ, but the onset is commonly more insidious than in toxic or hypersensitive aplastic anemias.

Blood

The red blood cells are usually normal to increased in size with a varying degree of anisocytosis and poikilocytosis, particularly oval macrocytes. Macrocytosis may be a prominent feature, particularly in response to high levels of EPO. The RDW may be increased, even without transfusion (Elghetany et al, 1997). Polychromasia, stippling, and normoblasts are most often conspicuously absent. Leukopenia with marked decrease in granulocytes and a relative lymphocytosis are observed. In severe leukopenia, there is often absolute lymphocytopenia. Neutrophil granules may be larger than normal and may stain dark red (unlike the "toxic" granules found in infections), and the neutrophil alkaline phosphatase may be elevated. However, neutrophil left shift is not seen in the absence of infection (Elghetany et al, 1997). Thrombocytopenia is part of the picture. Monocytopenia may be present. The serum iron is usually increased, and serum cobalamin and folate levels are usually normal. Although an occasional patient is hypogammaglobulinemic, most patients have normal levels of serum immune globulins.

Bone Marrow. In most cases, the aspirate consists of red blood cells, lymphocytes, some plasma cells, mast cells, and fatty particles. Marrow sections will show fatty tissue with inconspicuous fibrosis and islands of lymphocytes and plasma cells (Fig. 32-8). Although focal areas of predominantly erythroid normocellularity or hypercellularity (hot spots) may sometimes be present, the overall cellularity is decreased. The hot spots usually show erythroid precursors with delayed nuclear maturation at a high proliferative rate. Vascularity may be prominent with occasional ectatic sinuses. Storage iron is increased.

Erythrokinetics. The increased serum iron concentration is a valuable early sign of erythroid hypoplasia and reflects decreased plasma iron turnover. In addition, erythrocyte utilization of iron is decreased. Both effective and total erythropoiesis, therefore, are decreased in aplastic anemia.

Acquired Aplastic Anemia Associated with Chemical or Physical Agents

Toxic Aplastic Anemias. A number of physical and chemical agents produce marrow damage in all humans and animals exposed to a sufficient dose. Examples include ionizing radiation; mustard compounds; benzene; and antineoplastic agents such as busulfan, urethane, and antimetabolites. Benzene, although strongly linked to AA, is now considered less of a problem than in the past because of reduction in exposure.

Ionizing Radiation. Effects depend on the radiosensitivity of the cells and the capacity of the cells to regenerate, as well as the survival rate of cells in the blood. Erythroid cells are most sensitive, granulocytes have intermediate sensitivity, and megakaryocytes are the least sensitive of the three. Stromal cells are relatively insensitive.

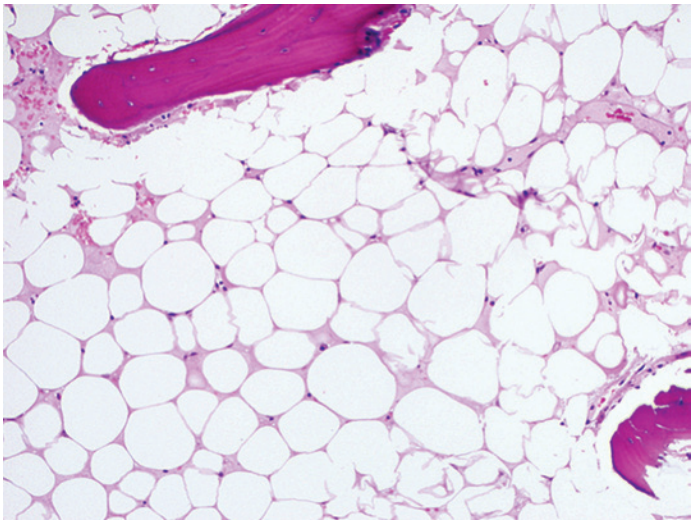


Figure 32-8 Section of hypocellular marrow, aplastic anemia. Cellularity is less than 5%.

After acute exposure to radiation, the reticulocyte count falls, but the red blood cells decline slowly because of their long survival. Within the first few hours, neutrophilic leukocytosis occurs as the result of a shift from marginal and probably marrow storage pools. A fall in lymphocytes occurs after the first day and is responsible for the early leukopenia, because lymphocytes are sensitive to irradiation and are directly killed. After 5 days or so, granulocytes begin to fall. The platelets decrease later. Platelets are often the last to return to normal in the recovery phase. Quiescent marrow stem cells are remarkably resistant to a single dose of irradiation. However, chronic exposure to low-dose irradiation, including localized radiation for ankylosing spondylitis, is associated with delayed increased risk for AA because of its impact on the stem cell replicating pool (Young & Maciejewski, 2009).

Hypersensitive Aplastic Anemias. A large number of drugs produce marrow damage in some individuals after single or repeated exposures. Effects are not dose related as they are in the previously discussed toxic aplasia. Agents include antimicrobial drugs (salvarsan, chloramphenicol, sulfonamides, chlortetracycline, streptomycin), anticonvulsants (mephenytoin, trimethadione), analgesics (phenylbutazone), antithyroid drugs (carbimazole), antihistaminics (tripelennamine), H_2-histamine receptor antagonists (cimetidine), insecticides (dichlorophenyltrichloroethane [DDT]), and other chemicals—some known (gold compounds, quinacrine, chlorpromazine, hair dyes, bismuth, mercury) and others unknown. The nonsteroidal antiinflammatory medications are becoming more linked to an increased risk for developing AA following marked reduction in the use of chloramphenicol.

Chloramphenicol is an important drug in this category. This antibiotic was considered to be the most common cause of AA at the peak of its use, which began in 1949. Reactions of the marrow to chloramphenicol are of two types, which are possibly unrelated (Alter & Young, 1998).

In about half of patients who receive chloramphenicol, increased serum iron, reticulocytopenia with anemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia are found. The marrow may show decreased erythroid cells and vacuolization of primitive erythroid and granulocyte precursors. These changes are dose related, time dependent, and reversible.

In a very small proportion of persons receiving chloramphenicol, an irreversible AA develops that may be fatal. Pancytopenia occurs 3 weeks to 5 months from the last dosage. No relationship has been established between the reversible erythropoietic lesion and the development of aplastic anemia; it may be that individual susceptibility is responsible for the latter. For this reason, it is essential that restraint be employed in using the drug; monitoring its administration with blood cell counts is not an effective preventive measure.

Acquired Aplastic Anemia Associated with Other Disease

Infection. Viral infections are frequently associated with limited marrow suppression, typically neutropenia and less commonly thrombocytopenia. Marrow aplasia has been described as a rare sequela to viral hepatitis, occurring a few months after onset when the hepatitis is

resolving. It is estimated at less than 0.07% of hepatitis cases in children and 2% of patients with non-A, non-B hepatitis. Almost all cases are seronegative for hepatitis A, B, C, and G. These patients are usually males younger than 20 years of age; the prognosis is usually grave, and bone marrow transplantation is considered early in the course of the disease (Young, 2002). Parvovirus has been associated with transient erythroid aplastic crisis in patients with chronic hemolytic disorders (Young, 2002). Human immunodeficiency virus and Epstein-Barr virus may also cause hematopoietic depression. The mechanism of virus-induced bone marrow failure may be related to direct cytotoxicity, but more likely is due to breakdown in self-tolerance after infection (Young, 2002).

Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria. This rare clonal disorder (see later discussion) may be followed by aplastic anemia. Usually in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), a variable degree of marrow hypofunction coexists. Alternatively, in some patients who present with AA, the red cell defect of PNH may be present or may appear during the course of the disease. Recent studies using sensitive techniques, such as flow cytometry, to detect cells with PNH defect indicate that as many as 40% to 50% of patients with AA may have some surface marker evidence of PNH. However, hemolytic disease occurs in approximately one third of these patients. The clonal expansion of PNH cells may have an immunologic background (Young, 2002).

Pregnancy. Pregnancy occurring in a patient with acquired AA may make the pancytopenia more severe. Occasionally, however, AA occurs during pregnancy and remits following delivery. In some such cases, aplasia recurs during a second pregnancy. Infants may be anemic, thrombocytopenic, or leukopenic. Survival rates for AA in pregnancy have been relatively high for the mother (83%) and the baby (75%). Hemorrhage is the most common cause of death in these patients (Young & Maciejewski, 2009).

Thymoma. Although thymomas are usually associated with pure red cell aplasias, other bone marrow elements may also become depressed. Pancytopenia, often with hypoplastic bone marrow, occurs in rare cases with thymoma. AA may occur as a late complication after the treatment of thymoma (Ritchie et al, 2002a).

Immunologic Diseases. AA occurs in approximately 10% of cases of eosinophilic fasciitis. The prognosis of AA in this setting is usually poor. AA may be associated with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) and rheumatoid arthritis (RA), although the role of drug therapy in the pathogenesis of AA has been considered (Young & Maciejewski, 2009). AA may also complicate multiple sclerosis, congenital immunodeficiency syndromes, and immune thyroid disease.

Inherited Aplastic Anemia

The term **inherited AA** designates individuals with a genetic predisposition to chronic bone marrow failure, which may be associated with other congenital anomalies, and numerous authors prefer to use the term *inherited bone marrow failure syndromes*. Between 30% and 35% of childhood AA cases are inherited. In a study of 134 children with AA, 40 patients were diagnosed with inherited aplastic anemia. Twenty-six had Fanconi's anemia (FA), 10 patients had familial AA without classic signs of FA, and 4 patients presented with amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia that later developed into complete aplasia (Alter & Young, 1998).

Fanconi's Anemia. FA is an autosomal recessive disorder with a carrier frequency of 1/300 in the United States and Europe (Alter, 2002). Rare cases are X linked. Often more than one member of a family is affected. The pancytopenia becomes obvious after infancy and is usually significant by the eighth year of life. The anemia is usually normochromic and may be macrocytic; increased levels of Hb F and i antigen may be observed; the marrow is generally hypocellular. Developmental anomalies are present and may include hyperpigmentation, short stature, hypogonadism, malformations of the extremities (e.g., aplasia of the radius, frequent abnormalities of the thumbs), microcephaly, and malformation of other organs (e.g., heart, kidneys). Chromosomal defects consisting of random breaks and rearrangements characteristically are present in blood lymphocytes, as well as in marrow cells. Chromosomal breakage becomes more evident when the cultured cells are challenged with alkylating and DNA cross-linking agents such as mitomycin C and diepoxybutane. Some mosaic cases may be difficult to diagnose, and studying skin fibroblasts may be better than blood cells. A breakthrough in investigating FA evolved from the observation that hybrid cells from FA and normal cells resulted in correction of the abnormal chromosome fragility, a process known as *complementation*. At least 16 complementation groups have been distinguished to date. The most common is complementation group A (FANCA), which occurs in approximately 70% of FA patients. Several FA proteins form a nuclear complex that is involved in DNA repair (Alter, 2002). The predicted median survival in FA is 19 years. Patients with FA are at higher risk for developing leukemia and nonhematologic tumors, particularly in the head and neck, liver, lower esophagus, vulva, and anus, with an overall incidence of neoplasia of 15% (Alter & Young, 1998). The median age for all cancers in patients with FA was 16 years (Freedman, 2009).

Other Inherited Aplastic Anemias. A few children present with bleeding manifestations secondary to amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia. As their disease progresses, they develop a pancytopenia and a hypocellular marrow. Chromosome breakage studies are usually normal. The mode of inheritance is autosomal recessive. The molecular defect is related to a mutation in the gene for thrombopoietin receptor, *c-mpl*, which maps to 1p35 (Alter, 2002).

Pancytopenia and hypoplastic anemia may develop in a subset of patients with other familial disorders. Some patients with dyskeratosis congenita (DC) (reticulated hyperpigmentation of skin, dystrophic nails, and mucous membrane leukoplakia) and Shwachman-Diamond syndrome (SDS) (exocrine pancreatic insufficiency and neutropenia) develop AA during the course of their disease (Alter, 2002). Recent studies indicate that DC results from abnormalities in telomere maintenance system. SDS results from biallelic mutation of the *SBDS* gene, which interacts with molecules responsible for ribosomal subunit assembly resulting in abnormal ribosome biogenesis (Shimamura & Alter, 2010).

Pure Red Cell Aplasia

Transitory Arrest of Erythropoiesis (Transient Aplastic Crises)

This may occur during the course of a hemolytic anemia (often preceded by an infection), and the combination of aplasia and hemolysis becomes a life-threatening situation due to rapidly progressing anemia. Red cell production may occasionally cease during or following rather minor infections in normal children or adults, at which time the marrow will show absence of all but a few of the most immature erythroid precursors. Aplastic episodes in chronic hemolytic anemias often appear to be due to parvovirus B19 infection. This virus inhibits erythropoiesis by infecting mature CFU-Es. The morphologic hallmark of the disease is the presence of scattered giant pronormoblasts in the bone marrow aspirate with marked reduction in the more mature erythroid precursors. Nuclear inclusion may be difficult to identify with Wright's stain. The aplastic crises resulting from parvovirus infection are transient, with erythroid marrow recovery in 1 to 2 weeks after onset (Erslev, 2001a).

Transient Erythroblastopenia of Childhood

Transient erythroblastopenia of childhood (TEC) occurs in previously healthy children, usually younger than 8 years of age, with most affected children between 1 and 3 years of age. It is characterized by a moderate to severe normocytic anemia, severe reticulocytopenia, transient neutropenia (20%), and increased platelet counts (60% of patients). Macrocytosis is usually observed during recovery because of the effects of reticulocytes. A history of a viral infection within the previous 3 months is frequently elicited. The bone marrow is generally normocellular and shows virtual absence of erythroid precursors, except for a few early forms. Granulocytic maturation arrest may occur in some neutropenic patients. Patients recover within 1 to 2 months without therapy. TEC can occur in siblings simultaneously and in seasonal clusters. Transient neurologic manifestations, such as hemiparesis and seizures, may accompany TEC (Freedman, 2009). In most cases, the pathogenesis involves humoral inhibition of erythropoiesis; cell-mediated immune suppression was identified in about 25% of cases, but parvovirus has not been proven to be the cause of TEC (Alter, 2002; Freedman, 2009).

Congenital Red Cell Aplasia (Diamond-Blackfan Anemia; Congenital Hypoplastic Anemia)

Diamond-Blackfan anemia (DBA) is a rare, congenital red cell aplasia that usually becomes obvious during the first year of life with a median age of presentation of 3 months, and more than 98% of cases are identified during the first year of life (Shimamura & Alter, 2010). Severe anemia is usually macrocytic, reticulocyte level is low, leukocytes are normal or slightly decreased, platelets are normal or increased, and the marrow usually shows a reduction in all developing erythroid cells, except normal granulocytic and megakaryocytic cell lines. In a small number of cases, residual erythroid precursors are detected. These precursors are mostly pronormoblasts. Hb F is elevated (5% to 25%) to a degree not expected for the patient's age, and the antigen i is often present. Red cell adenosine deaminase (ADA) is usually increased. These findings contrast with TEC, in which the red cells are normocytic, the Hb F is normal, the antigen i is absent, and red cell enzymes are at a lower level (characteristic of an older cell population) (Alter & Young, 1998).

DBA has an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance with variable penetrance. The defect appears to be in the erythroid-committed progenitor cells. CFU-Es and BFU-Es are decreased in the marrow, and BFU-Es, which normally circulate, are absent or decreased in the blood. In addition, these progenitor cells exhibit acceleration in programmed cell death (apoptosis) and fail to respond in in vitro culture systems to normal T cells and to usual levels of EPO, suggesting a qualitative defect. DBA results from defects in ribosomal proteins, whether small (S) or large (L) units. The most common is a mutation in the *RPS19* gene, which was detected in 25% of patients (Shimamura & Alter, 2010). About 75% of patients respond at least partially to corticosteroids, and the overall long-term survival is about 65%, although many patients require long-term steroid use (Alter & Young, 1998).

Acquired Pure Red Cell Aplasia

Among middle-aged adults, selective failure of red cell production occurs rarely. Reticulocytopenia and a cellular marrow devoid of all but the most primitive erythroid precursors are characteristic. Leukocyte and platelet production is normal. About half of reported cases have been associated with thymoma, usually a noninvasive spindle cell type. However, only 5% to 10% of patients with thymoma have the anemia. Remission of the anemia occurs in about one fourth of cases following surgical removal of the thymoma. Chronic acquired red cell aplasia has also been associated with other conditions, such as drugs, collagen vascular disorders, viral infections such as HIV, lymphoproliferative disorders of granular lymphocytes, or other disorders with immunologic aberrations. Most of these anemias appear to be part of a spectrum of autoimmune cytopenias in which the target cells are erythroid stem cells or normoblasts. In some patients, antibodies that react with these cells have been identified. Corticosteroids and immunosuppressive drugs have been used as therapy, but less than half of patients achieve satisfactory remission (Erslev, 2001a).

Sideroblastic Anemia

Sideroblastic anemia is characterized by accumulation of iron in the mitochondria, which appears as ring distribution around the nucleus of erythroid precursors on iron stain. The red cells are usually microcytic in the hereditary forms of the disease and often macrocytic in the acquired forms (Bottomley & Fleming, 2014). The red cells may be mixed with normochromic cells, so that the appearance is dimorphic (see Fig. 30-13). The serum iron concentration is increased, the TIBC is decreased, and the percent saturation of the iron-binding protein is greatly elevated. The marrow shows markedly increased storage iron (see Fig. 32-5), erythroid hyperplasia with evidence of defective hemoglobinization, and increased numbers of sideroblasts. In addition, increased numbers of siderotic granules per cell and granules surround the nucleus (with most authors requiring five or more iron granules encircling at least one third of the circumference), forming "ring sideroblasts" (Swerdlow et al, 2008) (see Figs. 30-46 and 33-19). In the latter case, iron loading of mitochondria is seen by electron microscopy. These findings are associated with defective synthesis of heme, which may be due to any of several possible enzyme defects. Occasionally, megaloblast-like changes are seen in the erythroid cells, but changes typical of cobalamin or folate deficiency are not seen in granulocytes unless folate deficiency coexists.

Hereditary Sideroblastic Anemias

Hereditary sideroblastic anemias include several modes of inheritance (i.e., X-linked, autosomal dominant, and autosomal recessive). They may be caused by defective heme synthesis, abnormal iron-sulfur cluster biogenesis, or abnormal mitochondrial proteins. The X-linked forms are the most common, constituting about 40% of cases, and they generally exhibit low levels of δ-aminolevulinic acid synthase (ALAS) enzyme. This occurs in males and may not appear until adolescence. It is rare, but a few family studies have been well documented. In contrast to acquired sideroblastic anemia, the ring sideroblast abnormality is usually found in late, nondividing erythroblasts (Bottomley, 1982). The gene for ALAS-2 isoenzyme (erythroid *ALAS*) has been localized to the X chromosome, and a point mutation of this gene *(Xp11.21)* seems to occur in most X-linked sideroblastic anemia (Bottomley & Fleming, 2014). Mutations of the *ALAS-2* gene may result in enzyme low affinity for pyridoxal phosphate, structural instability, abnormal catalytic site, or increased susceptibility to mitochondrial proteases. The degree of anemia improves with pyridoxine supplementation when the mutation disrupts the catalytic association between the enzyme and pyridoxal phosphate (Alcindor & Bridges, 2002). Hereditary sideroblastic anemias may be due to a defect in the mitochondria (i.e., mitochondrial cytopathy). Most of these disorders are produced by deletions in the mitochondrial genome, which may account for as much as 30% of the entire mitochondrial genome (Bottomley & Fleming, 2014). These rare diseases are usually associated with systemic manifestations such as Pearson's syndrome (pancreatic insufficiency, vacuolation of bone marrow cells, ring sideroblasts, and a variable degree of marrow failure).

Acquired Sideroblastic Anemias

Refractory Anemia with Ring Sideroblasts. Refractory anemia with ring sideroblasts (RARS) is a category of myelodysplastic syndromes (Swerdlow et al, 2008; see also Chapter 33). The dimorphic anemia has both hypochromic-microcytic and macrocytic red blood cells, and the MCV is usually high (see Fig. 30-13). At least 15% of erythroblasts (early and late forms) in bone marrow are ring sideroblasts. Other manifestation of dysplasia in the erythroid cell line may be seen. When dysplastic features involve myeloid and megakaryocytic cell lines as well, the designation **refractory cytopenia with multilineage dysplasia** is given. Growing evidence suggests that RARS may be caused by mutations of mitochondrial DNA (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Secondary (Drug- or Toxin-Induced) Sideroblastic Anemia

This form of sideroblastic anemia is secondary to some agent that interferes with heme synthesis; recognition is important because hematologic improvement occurs if the agent is removed.

The **antituberculosis drugs** isoniazid, cycloserine, and pyrazinamide cause sideroblastic abnormalities in some patients on long-term therapy.

Lead poisoning is an important member of this group because environmental exposure to lead is usually unrecognized and needs to be detected. Lead interferes with heme synthesis by blocking the enzymes ALAS, ALA dehydratase, and heme synthase. These blocks are only partial and of different degrees; ALA and coproporphyrin are increased in the urine. **Chloramphenicol** also results in ring sideroblast formation, probably by inhibiting mitochondrial protein synthesis. **Copper deficiency** or **zinc overload** can produce sideroblastic anemia, vacuolated marrow cells, and neutropenia. Large quantities of ingested zinc interfere with copper absorption and produce manifestations of copper deficiency. Copper chelators in large doses, such as penicillamine, can produce sideroblastic anemia.

Ethanol-induced anemia is perhaps the most common of the reversible sideroblastic anemias. Folate deficiency, hypomagnesemia, and hypokalemia are concomitant findings. Alcohol may produce ring sideroblasts through decreased plasma levels of pyridoxal phosphate, along with decreased activity of ALA dehydratase and ferrochelatase and possible inhibition of mitochondrial protein synthesis (Bottomley & Fleming, 2014). After withdrawal of alcohol intake, abnormal sideroblasts usually disappear within a few days.

Primary pyridoxine deficiency, often associated with malnutrition, is occasionally associated with sideroblastic anemia. However, other manifestations, such as peripheral neuropathy and dermatitis, dominate the clinical presentation. Sideroblastic anemia as the sole manifestation of pyridoxine deficiency has not been reported in humans, although it occurs in animals (Alcindor & Bridges, 2002).

Refractory Anemia

Refractory anemia is a clonal bone marrow disorder, which usually occurs in individuals over 50 years of age. Normocytic or macrocytic anemia, reticulocytopenia, often pancytopenia, and a hypercellular marrow showing erythroid hyperplasia with a variable degree of dyserythropoiesis are present. Often the patient has been treated with cobalamin, folic acid, and iron without response. The process is usually unremitting, and in a small proportion of cases additional dysplastic changes in marrow cells and increased blast cells evolve into an acute leukemia. Refractory anemias, therefore, are considered one of the myelodysplastic syndromes (see Chapter 33).

Congenital Dyserythropoietic Anemias

Congenital dyserythropoietic anemias (CDAs) represent a family of inherited refractory anemias characterized by ineffective erythropoiesis and marrow erythroid multinuclearity.

At least three types have thus far been separated on the basis of marrow and serologic findings (Iolascon et al, 2012). CDA-I is autosomal recessive and has megaloblastic changes with some binuclearity in approximately 5% of marrow erythroblasts, internuclear chromatin bridges, and a macrocytic anemia. It presents early in life with neonatal anemia and sometimes jaundice. Electron microscopy (EM) studies demonstrated that heterochromatin is denser than normal and forms sharply delineated clumps with small translucent vacuoles, giving rise to the description of a "Swiss cheese" appearance, and cytoplasm may penetrate through widened pores of the nuclear envelope. Most cases have an abnormality in the

CDAN1 gene located on the long arm of chromosome 15, which encodes a ubiquitous protein called codanin-1 (Iolascon et al, 2012). CDA-II is also autosomal recessive and more common than the others. It shows binuclearity and multinuclearity of 10% to 40% of erythroid precursors with pluripolar mitoses and karyorrhexis. The anemia is normocytic. CDA-II is distinguished from the others in that it has a positive acidified serum test (with some but not all normal sera) and a negative sucrose hemolysis test. It is known as *hereditary erythroblastic multinuclearity* with positive acidified serum test (HEM-PAS). The red blood cells have an antigen not present on normal or PNH cells, and about one third of normal sera contain the corresponding immunoglobulin (Ig)M antibody. In addition, red blood cells in CDA-II react strongly with anti-i and anti-I. Electron microscopy demonstrates an excess of endoplasmic reticulum parallel to the cell membrane, which gives the appearance of a double membrane in late erythroblasts and some erythrocytes. CDA-II is thought to be related to abnormal membrane glycosylation. The gene for CDA-II has been identified as *SEC23B(CDAN2)*, which maps to 20q11.2 (Iolascon et al, 2012). CDA-III has giant erythroid precursors, with more pronounced multinuclearity (gigantoblasts) in 10% to 40% of erythroid precursors, along with a macrocytic anemia. A putative gene for CDA-III *(KIF3)* has been recently localized on chromosome 15 near the *CDAN1* gene. In contrast to CDA-I and CDA-II, which are autosomal recessive, CDA-III has autosomal dominant inheritance. Other variants have been described in a small number of families.

BLOOD LOSS ANEMIA

Acute Posthemorrhagic Anemia

Blood may be lost from the circulation externally or internally into a tissue space or body cavity. If blood is lost over a short time in amounts sufficient to cause anemia, **acute posthemorrhagic anemia** occurs. Normal healthy individuals are able to compensate for rapid blood loss of up to 20% of circulating blood volume with few symptoms (Hillman & Finch, 1996). After a single episode of excessive bleeding, the major manifestations are those due to depletion of blood volume (hypovolemia). After 1 day or so, blood volume is returned to previous levels by movement of fluid into the circulation, and anemia becomes evident.

The earliest hematologic change is a transient fall in the platelet count, which may rise to elevated levels within 1 hour. The next development is a moderate neutrophilic leukocytosis with a shift to the left; a maximum leukocyte count of 10 to 35 $\times$ 10^9/L may occur in 2 to 5 hours. Hb and Hct do not fall immediately but only slowly as tissue fluids move into the circulation to compensate for lost blood volume. The fall in Hb and Hct may not reveal the full extent of red cell loss until 2 or 3 days after the hemorrhage.

The anemia that develops at first is normochromic and normocytic, with a normal MCV and mean cell hemoglobin concentration (MCHC) and only minimal anisocytosis and poikilocytosis. Increased EPO secretion stimulates erythroid proliferation in the marrow, and reticulocytes begin to reach the circulation in 3 to 5 days, reaching a maximum by 10 days or so. During this period, transient macrocytosis (increased MCV), increased polychromasia, and normoblasts may appear in the blood. It takes about 2 to 4 days after blood loss for the leukocyte count to return to normal, and about 2 weeks for the morphologic changes to disappear. Return of red cell values is slower.

Chronic Posthemorrhagic Anemia

If blood is lost in small amounts over an extended period, both clinical and hematologic features that characterize acute posthemorrhagic anemia are lacking. Regeneration of red cells occurs at a slower rate.

The reticulocyte count may be normal or slightly increased. Significant anemia does not usually develop until after storage iron is depleted; the anemia, therefore, is one of iron deficiency. The anemia is at first normochromic and normocytic, and gradually the newly formed red blood cells become microcytic, and then hypochromic. The leukocyte count is normal or slightly decreased, owing to neutropenia. Platelets are commonly increased, and only later, in severe iron deficiency, are they likely to be decreased.

The cause of blood loss must be identified because a hidden malignancy, particularly of the GI tract, may be the cause of the anemia.

HEMOLYSIS—GENERAL

Anemias that are due primarily to increased red blood cell destruction are **hemolytic anemias.** A shortened red cell survival, therefore, proves that hemolysis is present; this measurement is usually unnecessary in practice.

Hemolytic anemias may be due to a defect of the red blood cell itself, an **intrinsic hemolytic anemia:** These are usually hereditary and are commonly grouped as **membrane, metabolic,** and **hemoglobin** defects. Alternatively, hemolysis may be due to a factor outside the red blood cell and acting upon it, an **extrinsic hemolytic anemia:** These are almost always acquired. The terms **intravascular hemolysis** and **extravascular hemolysis** refer to the **site** of destruction of the red blood cell: within the circulating blood and outside it, respectively.

Erythrocyte Survival Studies

Shortened red blood cell survival defines hemolysis. If the hemolytic process is moderate or severe, evidence of increased red cell turnover will suffice to show that hemolysis is present. If the hemolytic process is mild or obscure, red cell survival studies may be necessary.

Radioactive chromium (^{51}Cr) is convenient and is widely used for red cell survival studies. Labeled chromate is added to a blood sample in vitro and binds to β-chains of Hb. The chromated red blood cells are injected intravenously, and their disappearance is measured by counting blood, which is sampled every 1 to 2 days for 10 to 14 days. Residual activity is an index of the intravascular life span of the labeled red blood cells. Because ^{51}Cr emits γ-rays, external scanning can detect sites of red cell destruction.

The erythrocyte life span is usually expressed as the period during which one half of the radioactivity remains in the blood (the T½ ^{51}Cr; Fig. 32-9). Chromium normally elutes from the red blood cells at a rate of 1% per day. Thus, the half-life of the ^{51}Cr-labeled erythrocytes in normal individuals is 25 to 32 days instead of 60 days. Blood loss, changes in Hct, and recent blood transfusions significantly complicate the interpretation of survival data; therefore, a steady state is necessary for usable results.

In autoimmune hemolytic anemias, the slope of red cell survival produces a straight line when plotted on semilogarithmic paper (see Fig. 32-9). In other hemolytic anemias, two cell populations may exist. In these situations, the survival curve may be composed of an initial steep slope followed by a flatter component (Fig. 32-10). This type of curve has been seen in hereditary enzyme-deficiency hemolytic anemias, sickle cell anemia, and PNH (Dacie & Lewis, 1991).

CO production measures heme catabolism immediately before and during the time of the assay. This is the only available method to study short-term fluctuations in red cell destruction (Franco, 2009).

Flow cytometry has been applied in some centers to measure red cell survival. Most techniques use ex vivo labeling of red blood cells by biotin. The rate of cell disappearance is then measured using fluorochrome-conjugated avidin or streptavidin. With multicolor flow cytometry, additional parameters, such as reticulocytes and Hgb F content, may be monitored simultaneously (Franco, 2009).

Hemoglobin Destruction

Laboratory findings differ, depending on the site of blood destruction, the amount of destroyed blood, and the rate of destruction. If the destruction is **intravascular** and the quantity of destroyed blood is large, free Hb and methemalbumin will be present in the plasma (hemoglobinemia and methemalbuminemia). The urine may contain free Hb and also hemosiderin.

Free Hb readily dissociates into αβ-dimers ($\alpha_2\beta_2 \rightarrow 2\alpha\beta$). These are bound to haptoglobin, an α_2-globulin, and the Hb-haptoglobin complex is rapidly removed from the circulation and catabolized by the liver parenchymal cells. This process prevents Hb from appearing in the urine. However, when the plasma Hb level exceeds 50 to 200 mg/dL (8-31 μmol/L), which is the capacity of haptoglobin to bind Hb, the free αβ-dimers of Hb readily pass through the glomerulus of the kidney. Part of the Hb is then absorbed by the proximal tubular cells, where the Hb iron is converted to hemosiderin. When these tubular cells are shed into the urine later, **hemosiderinuria** results. If the amount of Hb in the tubular lumen exceeds the capacity of the tubular cells to absorb it, it reaches the urine **(hemoglobinuria).** In the process, it may be oxidized to methemoglobin (hemiglobin). Plasma Hb not bound to haptoglobin or removed by the kidney is oxidized to hemiglobin. The oxidized heme groups (hemin) are bound to **hemopexin,** a β-globulin, and the complex is rapidly cleared by the hepatic parenchymal cells. If hemopexin is depleted, hemin groups bind to albumin, forming methemalbumin. Once hemopexin again becomes available, it removes the hemin groups from albumin for hepatic clearance (Hillman & Finch, 1996).

Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) is released from red blood cells and is increased in serum in hemolysis, especially in intravascular hemolysis; it is cleared more slowly than Hb. If the upper reference value is 207 IU/L, the LDH in hemolytic anemia may be increased by as much as 800 IU/L.

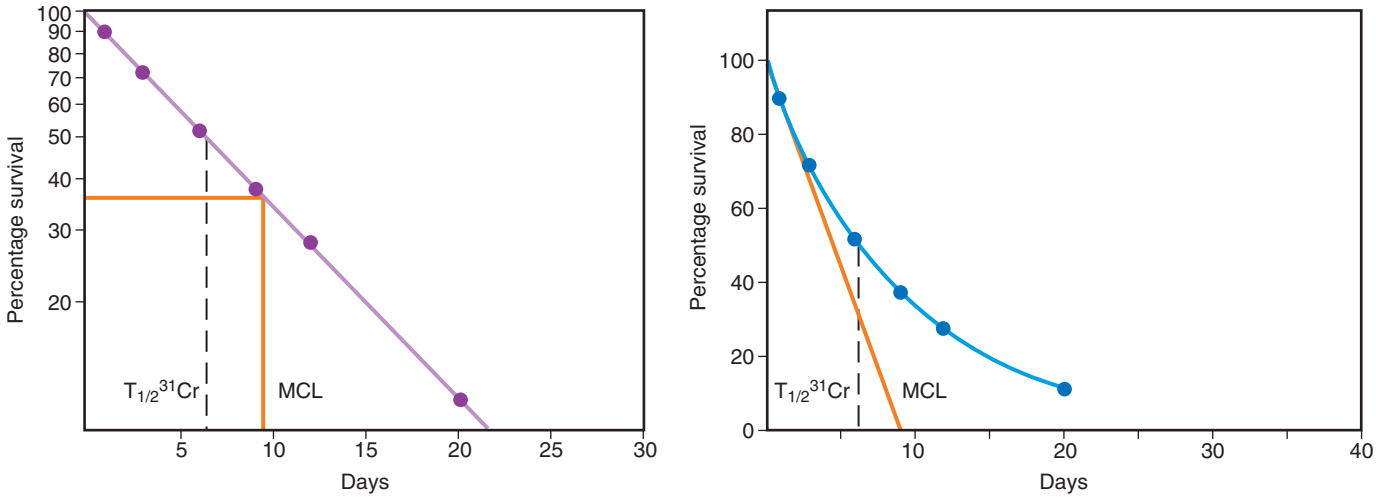


Figure 32-9 Results of ^{51}Cr erythrocyte survival curve in patients with autoimmune hemolytic anemia. The results are plotted on semilogarithmic graph paper. The mean cell life span (MCL) was 9 to 10 days and was recorded at a period when 37% of cells were still circulating. The time of 50% survival ($T_{1/2}{}^{31}Cr$) was 6 to 7 days. (From Dacie JV, Lewis SM: *Practical haematology*, ed 7, Edinburgh, 1991, Churchill Livingstone, p 386.)

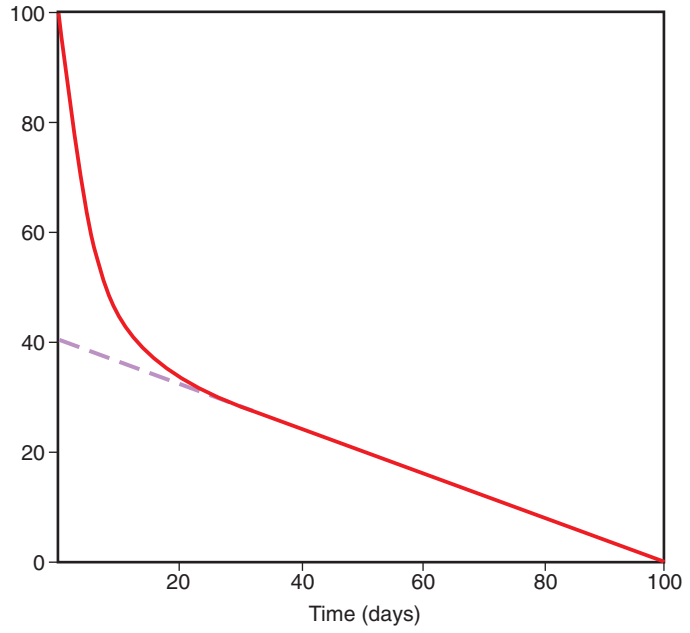


Figure 32-10 Results of radioactive chromium (^{51}Cr) erythrocyte survival curve in a patient with hemolytic anemia containing two cell populations. The percent survival is on the ordinate. By extrapolating the flatter curve to time 0, it can be estimated that 40% of the cells have a mean life span of 100 days. Sixty percent of cells have a mean life span of 5 days. (From Bentley SA: Red cell survival studies reinterpreted, *Clin Haematol* 6:601–623, 1977.)

In megaloblastic anemia, associated with marked ineffective erythropoiesis, the LDH is greatly increased to several thousand units. Serum LDH is also increased in other forms of cellular injury. In hemolytic anemias, reversal of the LD isoenzyme pattern is seen, with LD_1 exceeding LD_2.

The normal plasma Hb level is 0.5 to 5 mg/dL (0.08 to 0.78 µmol/L). A rise to 10 mg/dL imparts to the plasma a yellow to orange color. With further increase, the color becomes pink. Levels up to 25 to 30 mg/dL are common in hemolytic anemia. Higher levels usually indicate intravascular hemolysis and are seen in hemolytic transfusion reactions and in paroxysmal cold and nocturnal hemoglobinurias.

If hemolysis is primarily **extravascular,** no hemoglobinemia, hemoglobinuria, or hemosiderinuria is present. Hemolysis is detected by measuring an increase in one of the products of heme catabolism (see Chapter 31):

1. An increase in CO expired, or in the blood carboxyhemoglobin level.
2. An increase in indirect-reacting serum bilirubin; because this is bound to albumin, it will not appear in the urine.
3. An increase in urine urobilinogen or, more consistently, in fecal urobilinogen.

The normal urobilinogen in a 24-hour specimen is 0.5 to 4 mg (0.8 to 6.75 µmol) in urine and 40 to 280 mg (0.068 to 0.470 mmol) in stool. Following excessive hemolysis, it may increase to 5 to 200 mg in urine and to 300 to 400 mg in stool. Examination of feces is more dependable than examination of urine because feces may show an increase when the urine shows none. It may show an increase even when the serum bilirubin concentration is not raised because the normal liver can remove large amounts of (indirectly reacting) bilirubin and of reabsorbed urobilinogen from the blood.

Hemolytic anemia is characterized also by increased red cell production (see Chapter 31). Because of the availability of maximal amounts of iron for Hb formation, red cell production reaches the maximal degree possible (about eight times normal) in severe chronic hemolytic anemia, if complicating factors such as folate deficiency do not intervene. If red cell destruction exceeds the capacity of the marrow to replace red cells at the same rate, hemolytic anemia occurs. With less severe hemolysis, the marrow may be able to produce enough red cells that anemia does not occur; this is called compensated hemolysis.

Sudden worsening of the degree of anemia may occur in chronic hemolytic anemia and may be due to either of two basic mechanisms. Occasionally, episodes of bone marrow failure (transient arrest of erythropoiesis; see earlier discussion) characterized by erythroid hypoplasia and reticulocytopenia may upset the equilibrium between production and destruction of red cells. In most instances, these **aplastic crises** are probably due to parvoviral infection (Erslev, 2001c). On the other hand, an increased rate of red cell destruction may occur, associated with infection or other illness that increases splenic size. This is not associated with erythroid aplasia and is called a **hemolytic crisis.**

Blood Film

The anemia is normocytic or macrocytic. Macrocytosis is due to the presence of increased reticulocytes, which are larger than normocytes. Polychromasia is usually prominent; it may be excessively basophilic and normoblasts may be present, both of which indicate a "shift" of marrow reticulocytes into the blood. Other red cell abnormalities may give a clue to the nature of the hemolytic process. Spherocytes suggest hereditary spherocytosis (HS) or autoimmune hemolysis (see Fig. 30-12); schistocytes imply microangiopathic hemolytic anemia (see Fig. 30-19); sickle cells, target cells, or crystals suggest a hemoglobinopathy. When hemolytic anemia is acute, increased numbers and younger forms of leukocytes and platelets are often released from the marrow, together with erythrocytes. The result is leukocytosis with a "shift to the left" and thrombocytosis with both normal and giant platelets.

Bone Marrow

Erythroid hyperplasia is present and may be striking in degree. With rapidly proliferating erythroid precursors, some degree of dysplasia may also be seen in erythroid precursors. Storage iron is usually increased and

sideroblasts are normal or increased in number, reflecting the abundance of available iron for Hb synthesis.

HEMOLYSIS—MEMBRANE DISORDERS

The red cell membrane is made of a lipid bilayer anchored to the spectrin/actin membrane skeleton by two major protein complexes: ankyrin complex and the 4.1R complex. Numerous other transmembrane proteins of various functions, including transport, adhesion, and signaling are also identified (Da Costa et al, 2013).

Hereditary Spherocytosis

HS affects 1 in 5000 of the population, occurring predominantly in those of Northern European ancestry. Prevalence in other ethnic groups is unknown, although HS has been reported worldwide, particularly in Japanese and African populations. The reported prevalence may be an underestimation in that milder forms may be clinically asymptomatic (Da Costa et al, 2013). HS is characterized by spherocytic red cells that are intrinsically defective, splenomegaly, and familial occurrence (most often autosomal dominant). In about 15% to 30% of cases, however, neither parent is affected. The hemolytic process is variable in severity and is corrected by splenectomy, although the spherocytosis remains.

Laboratory findings are those of a chronic extravascular hemolytic process: evidence of increased pigment catabolism, erythroid hyperplasia, and reticulocytosis. The direct antiglobulin test is negative. The red cells characteristically have increased osmotic fragility. On the blood film, spherocytes have a smaller diameter and are more intensely stained than normal cells. They have no central pallor, which if present may be eccentric (see Fig. 30-12). The MCV is low-normal and the MCHC is often increased, reflecting a decrease in cell surface. In compensated cases, reticulocytosis may be a sensitive indicator.

Osmotic Fragility Test

Red blood cells are suspended in a series of tubes containing hypotonic solutions of NaCl, varying from 0.9% to 0.0%, incubated at room temperature for 30 minutes, and centrifuged. The percent hemolysis in the supernatant solutions is measured and plotted for each NaCl concentration. Cells that are more spherical, with a decreased surface/volume ratio, have a limited capacity to expand in hypotonic solutions and lyse at a higher concentration of NaCl than do normal biconcave red cells. They are said to have increased osmotic fragility. Conversely, cells that are hypochromic and flatter have a greater capacity to expand in hypotonic solutions, lyse at a lower concentration than normal cells, and are said to have decreased osmotic fragility (Fig. 32-11).

The osmotic fragility of freshly drawn blood is usually increased in HS but may be normal in mildly affected patients. In blood that is incubated at 37°C for 24 hours before the test is performed, the osmotic fragility is almost always increased (Fig. 32-12).

The increased osmotic fragility of freshly drawn blood is characteristic but not specific; it may occur in acquired spherocytic anemias, such as immune-mediated hemolytic anemia. A greater difference in median fragility (after incubation from before incubation) occurs in HS cells than in control normal cells; this is an important diagnostic feature in HS. A tail of very fragile cells conditioned by the spleen is usually seen. The tail usually disappears after splenectomy. Cells with increased surface/volume ratio are osmotic resistant. These cells are seen in iron deficiency, thalassemia, liver disease, and reticulocytosis.

Autohemolysis Test

Sterile, defibrinated blood is incubated at 37°C for 48 hours (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). During this time, red cells undergo a complex series of changes, lose membrane, and become more spherocytic. In normal blood, without added glucose, the amount of autohemolysis at 48 hours is 0.2% to 2.0%. In normal blood, incubated with added glucose, the amount of autohemolysis is less—0% to 0.9%.

In HS, autohemolysis is virtually always increased; with glucose, the lysis is diminished to a variable extent. This test is being used less frequently and is probably no more sensitive than the incubated osmotic fragility test (Dacie & Lewis, 1991).

Additional Tests

Several additional tests have been employed. The most common is the flow cytometry dye binding assessment using eosin-5′ maleimide (EMA) dye. The test has a sensitivity and specificity exceeding 90% (Da Costa et al, 2013).

Red blood cells in HS are characterized by an unstable lipid bilayer, which facilitates the release of lipids from the membrane, resulting in loss of surface area and formation of poorly deformable spherocytes that are selectively retained and damaged in the spleen (the mechanism is sometimes referred to as a *vertical defect* since it affects the association between the lipid bilayer and the red cell skeleton). The erythrocytes are abnormally permeable to sodium, and there is no defect in energy metabolism, which is, in fact, increased. The increased metabolic activity has been explained as an attempt to compensate for a membrane defect that leaks cations, with degenerative changes and loss of cell membrane accelerated by the metabolic and physical stresses of passage through the spleen.

The genetic defects in HS are heterogeneous but affect the skeletal proteins of the red cell membrane. Ankyrin-1 defect is the most common in Europe and the United States, affecting 40% to 65% and causing low expression of spectrin and ankyrin associated with a mild to moderate disease. Band 3 (*SLC4A1* gene) is the next in prevelance affecting 20% to 35% of patients and also causing mild to moderate disorder. Mutation of α spectrin (*SPTA1 gene*) is rare, affecting <5%, but usually causes a severe form of HS (Da Costa et al, 2013).

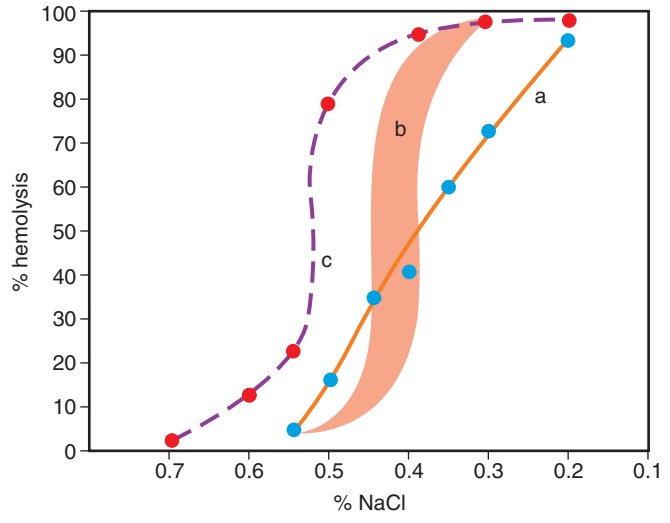


Figure 32-11 Erythrocyte osmotic fragility. *a,* Thalassemia, showing a small fraction of cells with increased fragility *(lower left)* and a larger fraction of cells with decreased fragility *(upper right).b,* Normal curves fall in the shaded area. *c,* Hereditary spherocytosis, showing increased osmotic fragility.

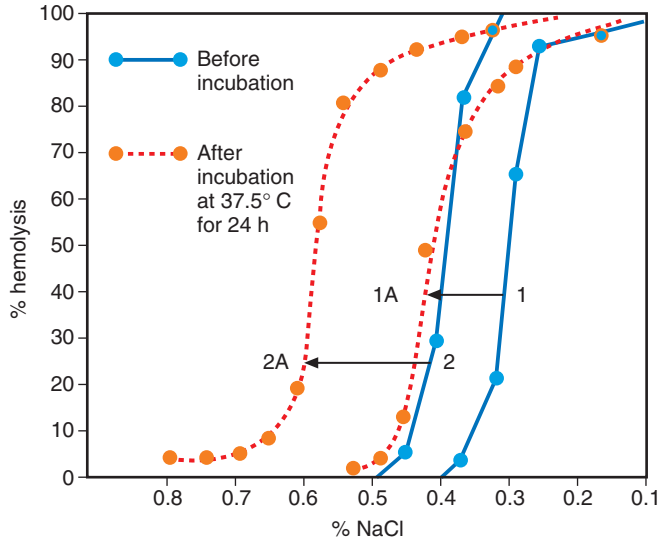


Figure 32-12 The effect of incubation on erythrocyte osmotic fragility. The change in the osmotic fragility curve from "before incubation" to "after incubation" is illustrated for normal blood (1→1A) and for blood from a patient with hereditary spherocytosis (HS) (2→2A). Blood in HS characteristically shows a greater increase in fragility with incubation than does normal blood or even blood of acquired spherocytosis (e.g., autoimmune hemolytic anemia).

Hereditary Elliptocytosis

This autosomal dominant condition probably includes more than one genetic variant. In the U.S. population, the prevalence is approximately 3 to 5 per 10,000. It is more common in individuals of African and Mediterranean ancestry. All cases of hereditary elliptocytosis (HE) are associated with weakening of the membrane skeleton and defective association of proteins that hold the skeleton together, which is sometimes referred to as a *horizontal defect* (Da Costa et al, 2013). On the basis of red cell morphology, HE can be divided into three groups: (1) common HE (including hereditary pyropoikilocytosis [HPP]), with elliptocytes that may be rod shaped; (2) spherocytic HE; and (3) Southeast Asian ovalocytosis. The most commonly defined abnormality appears to be a defect in spectrin, resulting in impaired association of spectrin dimers into spectrin tetramers and spectrin oligomers. Other abnormalities include a defect in spectrin-actin-protein 4.1R junctional complex. HPP is associated with two abnormalities: a mutation in spectrin that disrupts spectrin heterodimer self-association, and a partial deficiency of spectrin that results in a decreased spectrin/band 3 ratio.

Common HE

Most persons with the common form of HE (≈90% of cases) are nonanemic; a minority of this group (perhaps 10% to 20%) have mild hemolysis. Nonhypochromic elliptocytes are abundant in the blood film, numbering approximately 15% (see Fig. 30-16), whereas in normal individuals less than 5% of the red cells are elliptical (Gallagher & Jarolim, 2009). The deformity is increased in sealed, moist preparations.

In a subgroup of common HE, especially in black families, affected neonates transiently have moderate poikilocytosis, red cell fragmentation, and budding, with hemolytic anemia; during the first year of life, hemolysis declines and typical HE emerges. Worsening of hemolysis in the neonatal period has been attributed to the presence of fetal hemoglobin, which binds poorly to 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG). Higher levels of the latter exert a destabilizing effect on spectrin-protein 4.1-actin interaction (Gallagher & Jarolim, 2009).

Hereditary Pyropoikilocytosis

HPP is a severe congenital hemolytic anemia, which is characterized by microcytosis, striking micropoikilocytosis and fragmentation, and autosomal recessive inheritance caused by homozygous or compound heterozygous mutations. HPP represents a subtype of common HE. It occurs primarily in blacks. In contrast to normal red cells, which show budding and fragmentation when heated to 49° C, HPP red cells fragment at 45° to 46° C. In Caucasian European populations, one parent may carry an asymptomatic polymorphism known as α^{LELY}. This polymorphism may be detected in the heterozygous state in 42% and in the homozygous state in 9% of the European population (Da Costa et al, 2013).

Spherocytic HE

This subgroup accounts for 10% of cases. A mild to moderate hemolytic anemia and splenomegaly are present, with both elliptocytes and spherocytes, along with abnormal osmotic fragility and autohemolysis tests. Poikilocytes and fragments are usually absent. The molecular basis of this subtype is unknown.

Southeast Asian Ovalocytosis

This subgroup occurs with high frequencies (20% to 30%) in certain populations of the Far East, particularly Malaysia. Hemolysis is usually absent or mild although it may be more pronounced in neonates (Da Costa et al, 2013). The erythrocytes are less elongated, and some have the appearance of stomatocytic ovalocytes. Many cells contain one or two transverse ridges or a longitudinal slit. This condition is associated with increased resistance to malaria. The underlying defect is related to a deletion of 27 bases from the band 3 gene (Gallagher & Jarolim, 2009).

Hereditary Stomatocytosis

This is a rare, autosomally dominant disorder, which is commonly divided into more common dehydrated stomatocytosis (DHst) and the rare overhydrated stomatocytosis (OHst). The phenotype varies from asymptomatic to severe hemolytic anemia. In DHst, there is red cell dehydration due to loss of cations, predominantly K^+ and water. MCV is normal or slightly increased despite increase MCHC with stomatocytes seen on blood smears. Red cell survivial is not significantly compromised. Recent studies suggest that DHst is caused by mutations in the *FAM38A* gene encoding the PIEZO1 protein, which is involved in cation channel activation. In the rare DHst, there is massive cation leak causing markedly increased MCV (usually above 110fL) and decreased MCHC. The phenotype is severe with hemolytic anemia and reticulocytosis. Recent studies suggest that this form is caused by mutations in the Rh-associated glycoprotein, which is a member of the band 3 complex and is involved in ammonium or gas transport (Da Costa et al, 2013). Individuals with Rh deficiency syndrome, either absent (Rh_{null}) or markedly reduced (Rh_{mod}), usually have hemolytic anemia with stomatocytosis.

Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria

PNH is an acquired clonal stem cell disorder characterized by the production of abnormal erythrocytes, granulocytes, and platelets (Brodsky, 2009). The red cell defect renders them more susceptible to complement-mediated intravascular lysis. Three types of erythrocytes have been described according to their in vitro sensitivity to lysis by complement: type I with normal sensitivity, type II with medium sensitivity (three to five times normal), and type III with extreme sensitivity (15 to 25 times normal). Several complement defense proteins are decreased or absent in PNH. These proteins include: decay accelerating factor (DAF, CD55), membrane inhibitor of reactive lysis (MIRL, CD59), and C8-binding protein (a homologous restriction factor). DAF is a glycoprotein that antagonizes the convertase complexes of complement. MIRL is a protein that controls the membrane attack complex, C5b-9. Other proteins that are deficient in PNH include CD58 (leukocyte function antigen 3), CD14 (endotoxin-binding protein receptor), CD24, and CD16a (Fcγ receptor). Membrane-associated enzymes such as acetyl cholinesterase and leukocyte alkaline phosphatase may be deficient as well. Recent work indicates that deficient proteins and enzymes are attached to the cell membrane by a common glycolipid anchor called GPI. Deficiency of GPI results in secondary deficiency of the attached proteins. Therefore, PNH can be redefined as partial or complete lack of GPI-linked proteins on a population of cells of the hematopoietic system.

PNH is a rare disease with an estimated annual incidence of 4 per million (Brodsky, 2009). The disease is characterized by chronic intravascular hemolysis with or without obvious hemoglobinuria. However, hemosiderinuria is almost constantly present. Typical nocturnal or sleep-related hemoglobinuria is present in a minority of patients. Bouts of hemolysis could be initiated by infection, surgery, whole blood transfusion, injection of contrast dyes, or even severe exercise. The proposed relationship between mild drop in pH during sleep and nocturnal hemoglobinuria has not been confirmed (Brodsky, 2009).

The blood usually shows a normocytic anemia with a reticulocytosis that is often less than expected for the degree of anemia. Hypochromic microcytic anemia is not uncommon, however, and is due to loss of iron in the urine. Neutropenia occurs in three fifths and thrombocytopenia in two thirds of patients at some time during the course of disease, so that pancytopenia is common. The direct antiglobulin test is usually negative.

The marrow may be hypercellular with erythroid hyperplasia, but it may be hypocellular. In some patients, marrow failure may occur during the course of PNH; in others, AA is the initial diagnosis, with signs of PNH manifesting simultaneously or later. As mentioned earlier, approximately 40% of patients with AA have evidence of PNH clones at diagnosis (Young, 2002).

Thrombotic complications are common, occurring in approximately 40% of patients, and represent a major cause of mortality. Thrombosis commonly occurs in hepatic, cerebral, and abdominal veins. The absence of CD59 on platelets results in externalization of phosphatidylserine, a site for prothrombinase complexes, and thus increases the propensity for thrombosis. The disease may undergo partial remissions and exacerbations. In more than half of patients, both the proportion of abnormal cells and the clinical severity decrease with time. Abnormal cytogenetics can be found in up to 20% of PNH patients. In approximately 3% to 5% of PNH patients, the disease progresses to acute leukemia.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Previous manual tests for the diagnosis of PNH, such as sucrose hemolysis and Ham's tests have been largely replaced by flow cytometry studies.

Flow cytometry using immunofluorescent staining of red cells with a monoclonal antibody against deficient proteins such as CD55, CD58, and CD59 is gradually becoming the standard method of diagnosing PNH. Granulocytes provide excellent diagnostic targets for flow cytometry. A fluorescein-labeled proaerolysin variant (FLAER) is increasingly being used for the diagnosis of PNH. It binds selectively to the GPI anchor. Guidelines for high-sensitivity flow cytometry detection of minor clones of PNH have been published and are being adopted by many laboratories (Sutherland et al, 2012).

The gene responsible for the PNH phenotype has been identified on the X chromosome and designated phosphatidyl inositol glycan A or *PIG-A*. More than 120 somatic mutations of the *PIG-A* gene have been described. Over the last few years, a humanized monoclonal antibody against the terminal complement protein C5 (Eculizumab; Alexion, Cheshire, Conn.) has been approved for the treatment of patients with hemolytic PNH. This drug significantly reduces hemolysis, transfusion requirements, and thrombosis, and it has improved the quality of life for PNH patients (Sutherland et al, 2012).

HEMOLYSIS—HEMOGLOBIN DISORDERS

There are two main groups of inherited disorders of Hb: (1) structural variants, with defects in the structure, and (2) thalassemias, with defects in the synthesis, of a globin chain. There is an overlap between these groups: A handful of structural variants also have a thalassemic phenotype with decreased synthesis, and hence, level of the abnormal globin chain. Hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin (HPFH) is related to the thalassemias, although the phenotype is not clearly thalassemic. Most thalassemias involve the α- or β-globin chain. δ- and γ- thalassemias are known, but are clinically less significant.

Normal Hemoglobins

The heme group is identical in all Hbs. The globin part of the molecule is a tetramer, made up of two dimers; each dimer contains an α-like and a β-like globin. Beyond the embryonic period, there is only one α-like globin that forms three distinct Hbs with the three different β-like globins present. There are also three embryonic Hbs, which are expressed only in the first 3 months of gestation. (Fig. 32-13).

Hb A (α2β2)

Hemoglobin A is the major normal adult Hb, accounting for about 97% of the total. It consists of two identical α-chains, each with 141 amino acids; and two identical β-chains, with 146 amino acids each. Each chain is linked with one heme group. The molecule is ellipsoidal, with the four heme groups at the surface of the molecule, where they function by combining reversibly with O_2.

Hb F (α2γ2)

Hemoglobin F is the major Hb of the fetus and the newborn infant. The increased O_2 affinity of fetal blood versus adult blood is due to its lower affinity for 2,3-DPG. The two α-chains are identical to those of Hb A, and the two γ-chains, with 146-amino-acid residues, differ from β-chains. In normal individuals, Hb F has two types of γ-chains, which differ by one amino acid, having either alanine ($^{A}\gamma$) or glycine ($^{G}\gamma$) at position 136. There is a common polymorphism of the Aγ gene, in which threonine replaces isoleucine at position 75. This Hb F variant is called Hb F Sardinia and is without functional abnormalities. Approximately 10% of total Hb F is a negatively charged variant, designated Hb F1, owing to posttranslational acetylation of the amino-terminal end of γ-chains.

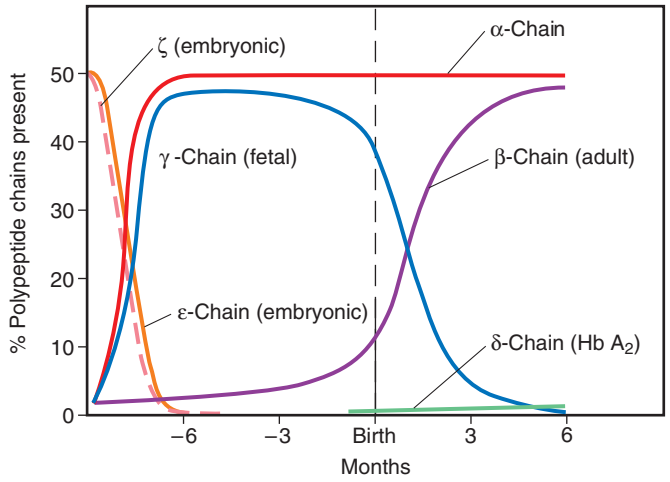


Figure 32-13 Relative proportions of polypeptide chains of hemoglobin present during fetal and neonatal life. (From Bentley SA: Red cell survival studies reinterpreted, *Clin Haematol* 16:601–623, 1977.)

During fetal life, Hb F predominates, as γ-chain production is high. β-chain production begins before the 20th week of prenatal life, so that Hb A is 10% of the total between 20 and 35 weeks and 15% to 40% at the time of birth. Around birth, the production of Hb F is turned down; by 6 months Hb F is usually less than 8%, and by 12 months it is less than 5% in about 90% of infants. Between 12 and 24 months of age, Hb F is usually less than 3% but varies from 3% to 10% in about 20% of infants. After 2 years of age, Hb F is normally less than 2%, and only traces of Hb F (<0.8%) are present in most adults. During fetal life, all red blood cells produce and contain Hb F, whereas in adults only 3% to 5% do so; these are termed *F cells* (Weatherall & Clegg, 2001). Adult production of Hb F is regulated by multiple genetic loci, including the Xmn1-HBG2 site in the β-globin locus, the HMIP locus at 6q23, and the bcl11A locus on chromosome 2 (Thein & Menzel, 2009). Polymorphic variants at these loci cause a modest increase (up to 5%) in Hb F in 3% to 5% of healthy adults and underlie most cases of Swiss-type or heterocellular hereditary persistence of fetal Hb.

F cells may increase in number when reactivation of Hb F synthesis occurs in normal pregnancy and in some disorders of erythropoiesis, particularly chronic bone marrow failure syndromes. In certain acquired hematopoietic disorders, the Hb F level may also be elevated. These include megaloblastic anemia, myelofibrosis, aplastic anemia, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, refractory anemias, leukemias, and solid tumors (up to 5% to 10%). In the second trimester of pregnancy, there could be a slight increase, and in hydatidiform moles, a more significant increase—up to 6%. The highest levels of Hb F are found in juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia, Fanconi's anemia, and erythroleukemia (30% to 50%). Elevated Hb F is found in a few hemoglobinopathies, in β- and δβ-thalassemias, and in HPFH. The switch from γ-globin to β-globin and the decrease in Hb F are delayed in sickle cell patients, who might not reach their stable Hb F level until adolescence (Huisman, 1980). A similar delay in decline in Hb F is also seen in thalassemia trait (Schroter & Nafz, 1981).

Hb A_2 ($\alpha_2\delta_2$)

Hemoglobin A_2 accounts for 1.5% to 3.5% of normal adult Hb. Its two α-chains are the same as in Hb A; its two δ-chains differ from β-chains in only 10 of their 146 amino acids. Due to its inefficient promoter, the transcription of the δ-globin gene is low and Hb A_2 always remains a minor Hb. δ-chain synthesis begins late in fetal life. The level of Hb A_2 gradually increases during the first few years of life, at which time the adult level is reached.

Increased Hb A_2 is seen almost exclusively in β-thalassemias. It rarely reaches 6% and never more than 12%. Hb A_2 is occasionally increased in hyperthyroidism and megaloblastic anemia. It has been reported to be increased in sickle cell trait (Whitten & Rucknagel, 1981) and sickle cell disease, but the increase is only modest and the level stays below 4.0%. Its level decreases in iron deficiency and α-thalassemia. If the patient with β-thalassemia trait has concomitant severe iron deficiency, the increase in Hb A_2 might be dampened down and appear equivocal; in these instances, retesting should be performed after the iron deficiency is corrected. Because of its developmental delay, Hb A_2 might not be useful in diagnosing β-thalassemia trait in young infants.

Embryonic Hemoglobins. The zeta (ζ) chain is the embryonic analog of the α-chain and combines with epsilon (ε) chains to form Hb Gower-1 (ζ2ε2) or with γ-chains to form Hb Portland (ζ2γ2). The ε-chain is the embryonic counterpart of the γ-, β-, and δ-chains and combines with α-chains to form Hb Gower-2 (α2ε2). These embryonic Hbs are found at the gestational age of less than 3 months.

The Globin Gene Clusters. Globin synthesis is controlled by two separate gene clusters. The ζ-gene and two α-genes (α-like globins), together with nonfunctioning pseudogenes, are on chromosome 16. Genes for the ε-, two γ- δ-, and β-chains (β-like globins), and a pseudogene are located on chromosome 11 (Fig. 32-14). Note that there are two functioning α-genes on a haploid chromosome (balanced by only one β-gene). The different globin genes evolved from a common ancestor by gene duplication. There is considerable polymorphism of regulatory sequences within these clusters, accounting for normal variations and wide phenotypic differences in hemoglobinopathy and thalassemia syndromes.

Glycosylated Hemoglobins. The term *glycation* or *glycosylation* implies the linkage of a sugar to a protein. Approximately 5% of Hb A undergoes posttranslational glycosylation, resulting in linkage of sugars to serine, asparagine, and hydroxylysine residues. Glycosylation of Hb increases linearly over the 120-day life span of the red cell. The glycosylated Hbs have been designated Hb AIa, Hb AIb, and Hb AIc. Hb AIc contains a molecule of glucose attached nonenzymatically by a ketoamine linkage to the amino-terminal amino group of each β-chain. The Hb AIc

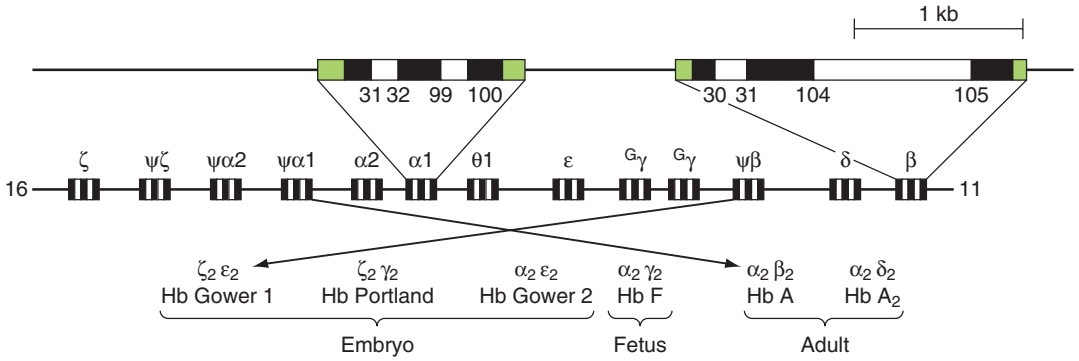


Figure 32-14 **The α- and β-globin gene clusters on chromosomes 16 and 11, respectively.** In the extended α- and β-globin genes, the introns are shaded dark, the 5′ and 3′ noncoding regions are hatched, and the exons are unshaded. (From Weatherall DJ, Clegg JB: *The thalassemia syndromes*, ed 4, Oxford, 2001, Blackwell Scientific Publications.)

level correlates with the serum glucose level and is used for the diagnosis of diabetes and as an index of metabolic control during the preceding 2 to 3 months. Hb AIc may be falsely decreased in conditions associated with rapid red cell turnover, such as hemolytic anemia.

Laboratory Investigation of Hemoglobinopathies and Thalassemias

Current practices include automated complete blood count (CBC); ferritin or free erythrocyte protoporphyrin to rule out iron deficiency; and high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) or capillary electrophoresis for Hb A_2 and Hb F measurement and detection of Hb variants; followed by alkaline and acid electrophoresis when a variant is found and additional studies (Sickledex), as necessary (Clarke & Higgins, 2000).

Cation-Exchange HPLC and Capillary Electrophoresis. Numerous automated systems have been developed in the last 20 years for initial screening of Hb variants and for separation and determination of percentages of Hb A, Hb A_2, and Hb F. A cation-exchange HPLC system, such as Bio-Rad Variant by Bio-Rad Laboratories (Philadelphia, Pa.), is commonly used. Resolution of this system is claimed to be similar to that of isoelectric focusing, and data banks of retention times are available (Figs. 32-15 and 32-16) (Bain et al, 2010). Variants detected by HPLC are confirmed by an alternative technique, such as electrophoresis. Capillary electrophoresis is a rapidly developing automated system with a performance similar to that of HPLC (Keren et al, 2008).

Hemoglobin Electrophoresis and Isoelectric Focusing. Hb molecules in an alkaline solution have a net negative charge and move toward the anode in an electrophoretic system. A practical method for routine Hb electrophoresis is cellulose acetate at alkaline pH (Briere et al, 1965). It is rapid and reproducible and separates the major Hb variants S, D, G, C, and E from Hb A (Figs. 32-17 and 32-18). Quantification of the major bands is easily accomplished. Those with an electrophoretic mobility greater than that of Hb A at pH 8.6 are known as the "fast Hbs"; these include, in order of increasing mobility, Hbs K, J, Bart's, N, I, and H. Hbs A_2, C, E, and O Arab at the slow end are unresolved from each other, as are S, D, G, and Lepore. Citrate agar electrophoresis at an acidic pH (Milner & Gooden, 1975) provides ready separation of Hbs that migrate together on cellulose acetate: S from D and G, and C from E and O (Fig. 32-19). Isoelectric focusing separates Hbs based on their isoelectric point along a pH gradient, with high resolution (Fig. 32-20).

Acid Elution Slide Test for F Cells. Modification of the original method of Kleihauer and Betke by Shepard and colleagues (1962) is useful for analyzing the distribution of Hb F among red blood cells. Hemoglobins other than Hb F are eluted from the red cells on an air-dried blood film by a citric acid–phosphate buffer (pH 3.3). Only Hb F remains in the fixed red cells, and the distribution can be determined after staining. In normal adults, almost all red cells appear as ghosts; 1% to 5% of red cells contain residual Hb and appear pink (F cells). In most types of HPFH, Hb F is distributed evenly among red cells (pancellular distribution). In all other conditions, such as thalassemia or a hemoglobinopathy, and in Swiss-type HPFH, the distribution of Hb F is heterogeneous or uneven among red cells (heterocellular distribution).

Detection of F cells by Flow Cytometry. This is more accurate than the acid elution slide test. Most adult cells are negative, F cells show moderate fluorescence, and fetal cells of neonates show bright fluorescence when stained with an anti-Hb F antibody.

Hb A_2 Quantitation. Hb A_2 quantitation is challenging for two reasons: (1) Its level is low with a narrow range and only a modest increase in disease, requiring a high degree of precision, and (2) Hb variants with similar charge or retention time interfere with its estimation. Several laboratory methods of varying accuracy and precision are being used. Cation-exchange HPLC (Head et al, 2004) and capillary electrophoresis are considered to be sufficiently precise. Densitometry of electrophoretic bands on cellulose acetate membrane is unreliable. In the HPLC method, the Hb A2 level is falsely elevated in the presence of Hb S, because Hb S adducts have similar retention times (Suh et al, 1996). As HbE and Hb A2 elute together, their level cannot be estimated. Hb A_2 estimation is used principally in diagnosis of β-thalassemia trait, in which it is elevated up to 7%. Hb A_2 values of normals do not overlap with those of β-thalassemia trait patients, when performed by HPLC (Huisman, 1986). Reference intervals for Hb A_2 are 1.5% to 3.5% of total Hb.

Sickling Test—Metabisulfite Slide Test. Adding sodium metabisulfite, a reducing substance, to blood enhances deoxygenation of Hb and sickling of Hb S (Fig. 32-21). The test does not distinguish sickle cell anemia from sickle trait or other Hb S syndromes because all red cells sickle; however, sickling occurs more rapidly with greater amounts of Hb S in the cells. Positive tests may occur with other rare sickling hemoglobins (Hbs S Travis, C Harlem), Hb I, and high concentrations of Hb Bart's. Hb I, an α-chain variant, has normal functional properties. False-negative tests may occur if Hb S concentration is less than 10% (as in very young infants) or if deoxygenation is inadequate (e.g., deterioration of reagent).

Sickle Solubility Test. In this nonquantitative test, red blood cells are lysed with saponin, and Hb is reduced by dithionite (sodium hydrosulfite). Reduced Hb S is insoluble in concentrated inorganic buffer (2.3 M phosphate buffer), and the polymers of deoxy-Hb S obstruct light rays to produce opacity. The test is useful in screening large numbers of people for the presence of Hb S or other sickling Hbs. False-positive reactions (turbid solution) occur also in the presence of many Heinz bodies, as in unstable Hb disorders after splenectomy, and in blood protein disorders due to precipitation of plasma proteins. False-negative reactions (clear solution) occur if the amount of Hb S is too small, as in severe anemia.

DNA Analysis. Gap PCR is used for detection of large deletions in α- or, less often, in the other thalassemia syndromes (Old, 2001). In gap PCR, primers bind to the region flanking the deletion. PCR product is obtained only from the affected alleles, as the primers are located far apart in the normal gene. Additional primers that amplify the normal allele are used to assess for heterozygosity/homozygosity. The six most common deletions can be detected in one reaction using multiplex PCR primers (Chong et al, 2000). Southern blotting is still used and can assess all alleles and confirm PCR results. PCR-based techniques have been developed to screen for common point mutations in β-thalassemia and Hb variants. In ARMS (amplification refractory mutation system), amplification takes place only when the primer matches perfectly the genomic DNA sequence. ARMS primers are available for the detection of all common β-thalassemia mutations. Sequencing is utilized for confirmation of single nucleotide mutations and small deletions.

Structural Hemoglobin Variants

As of 2005, 893 Hb variants had been identified (Globin Gene Server, 2015). Ninety percent of these are due to single amino acid substitutions; in the remaining 10%, the polypeptide chain is abnormally long or short

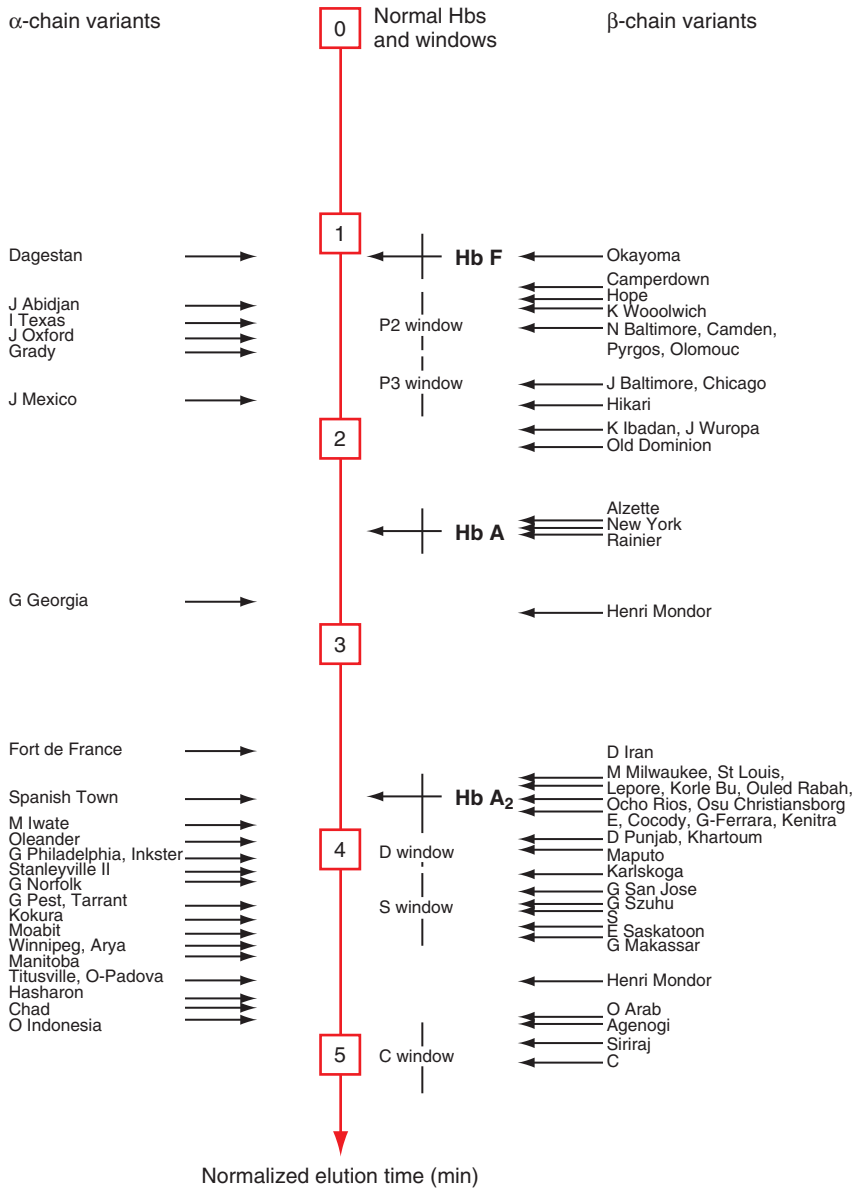


Figure 32-15 Elution times of 74 hemoglobins. Elution times were normalized to a reference value of 3.8 minutes for Hb A_2. Cation-exchange high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) separation by the Bio-Rad Variant system, using the β Thalassemia Short Program. (From Riou J, Godart C, Hurtrel D, et al: Cation-exchange HPLC evaluated for presumptive identification of hemoglobin variants, *Clin Chem* 43:34–39, 1997.)

as a result of termination errors, frameshift mutations, insertions, deletions, or fused or hybrid chains.

A majority affect the α- or β-globin chains. Involvement of the γ-chain and the δ-chain occurs, but because of the small amount of Hb involved, their variants are less often detected and are rarely of clinical significance. A large number of Hb variants that do not cause disease have been discovered in surveys.

New Hbs were assigned letters of the alphabet, then geographic names—usually to distinguish different Hbs with similar electrophoretic mobilities. Several variants of Hb D, G, and J, for example, are known. Sometimes, a variant is known by multiple names, based on independent discoveries. Hb M indicates a variant that forms methemoglobin. Amino acid substitutions in some of the known Hb variants are listed and classified by functional characteristics in Table 32-3.

Hbs S, C, E, and D are, by far, the most important variants (Table 32-4). Together with the thalassemias, they reached polymorphic frequencies in regions where falciparum malaria was/is endemic, owing to partial protection against this parasite by mechanisms still not fully understood.

Abnormal Hemoglobin Syndromes

In homozygous β-chain structural variants, both allelic genes for the abnormal β-chains are present, so that no normal β-chains (hence, no Hb A) are produced. Because α-, γ-, and δ-genes are normal, Hb F and Hb A_2 are structurally normal, although they may be increased in amount.

In heterozygous β-chain structural variants, the abnormal Hb is present, in addition to Hb A, F, and A_2. Its level depends on its rate of synthesis and stability, but also on its readiness to form dimers with α-chains. This latter process is driven by electrostatic forces between the positively charged α-globin and the negative β-globin. Because most β-globin variants acquire positive charge, their assembly with the positive α-chain is slower. As a result, the percentage of abnormal Hb is usually less than that of Hb A. In the presence of coexistent α-thalassemia, when β-chains compete for an insufficient number of α-globins, these effects are exaggerated and the level of structural variant decreases further. Similar forces influence the levels of Hb A_2. δ-chain subunit of Hb A_2 has a significant positive charge, not favorable for dimer formation. Positively charged β-chain variants also have little affinity for α-chains, leaving excess α-chains for assembly with δ-globin and resulting in a slight increase in Hb A_2. This has been described in Hbs S and C trait, but the increase is so minimal that its existence was always questioned.

Compound heterozygotes for a β-chain structural variant and β^+-thalassemia are well known. Here, the quantity of abnormal Hb exceeds that of Hb A, in contrast to the heterozygous β-structural hemoglobinopathies, in which the reverse is true.

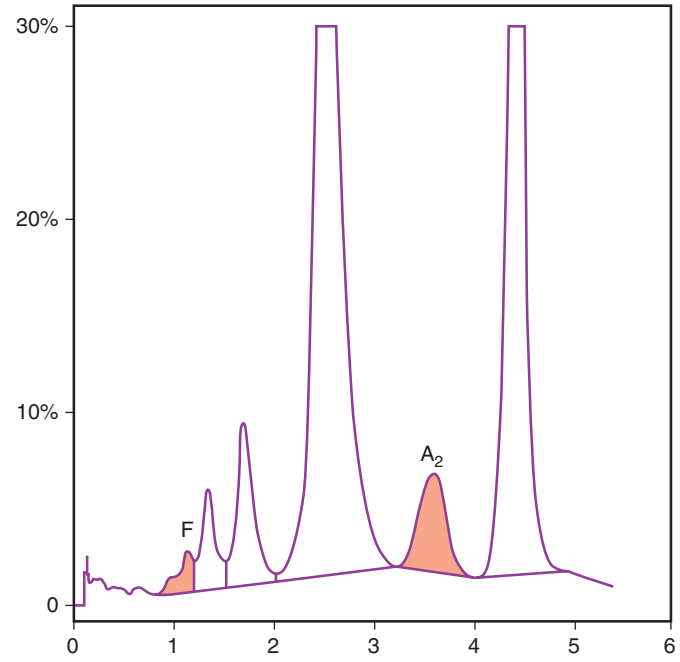


Figure 32-16 **Ion-exchange high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) separation of hemoglobins (Hbs): patient with sickle cell trait.** Hbs F, A, and A_2 and an abnormal Hb in the S window are detected. Hemoglobin A_2 cannot be quantified because of the presence of Hb S. (Bio-Rad Variant Classic Hb Testing System, Bio-Rad Laboratories, Philadelphia.)

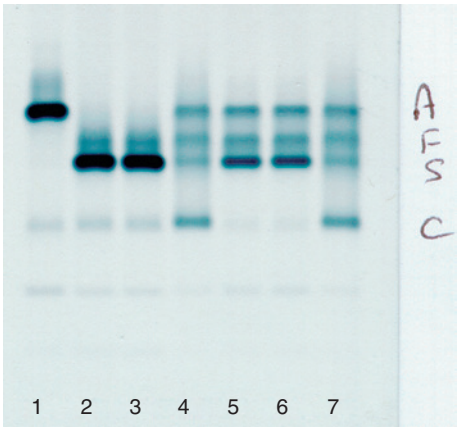


Figure 32-17 **Electrophoretic separation of hemoglobins at alkaline pH.** *1*, Normal adult; *2* and *3*, 17-year-old with sickle cell anemia; *5* and *6*, patient with sickle cell anemia, recently transfused; *4* and *7*, Hbs A/F/S/C standard (Hydragel 7 Hemoglobin/Hydrasys System, Sebia Electrophoresis, Norcross, Ga.).

TABLE 32-3

Functional Classification of Hemoglobin Variants

I. Homozygous: Hemoglobin (Hb) Polymorphisms: The Variants That Are Most Common

Hb S	$\alpha_2\beta_2^{6Val}$	Severe hemolytic anemia: sickling
Hb C	$\alpha_2\beta_2^{6Lys}$	Mild hemolytic anemia
Hb D	Punjab $\alpha_2\beta_2^{121Gln}$	No anemia
Hb E	$\alpha_2\beta_2^{26Lys}$	Mild microcytic anemia

II. Heterozygous: Hemoglobin Variants Causing Functional Aberrations or Hemolytic Anemia in the Heterozygous State

A. Hemoglobins Associated with Methemoglobinemia and Cyanosis

Hb M Boston $\alpha_2^{58Tyr}\beta_2$
Hb M Iwate $\alpha_2^{87Tyr}\beta_2$
Hb M Saskatoon $\alpha_2\beta_2^{63Tyr}$
Hb M Milwaukee $\alpha_2\beta_2^{67Glu}$
Hb M Hyde Park $\alpha_2\beta_2^{92Tyr}$
Hb FM Osaka $\alpha_2\gamma_2^{63Tyr}$
Hb FM Fort Ripley $\alpha_2\gamma_2^{92Tyr}$

B. Hemoglobins Associated with Altered Oxygen Affinity

1. Increased Affinity and Polycythemia

Hb Chesapeake $\alpha_2^{92Leu}\beta_2$
Hb J Capetown $\alpha_2^{92Gln}\beta_2$
Hb Malmo $\alpha_2\beta_2^{97Gln}$
Hb Yakima $\alpha_2\beta_2^{99His}$
Hb Kempsey $\alpha_2\beta_2^{99Asn}$
Hb Y psi (Ypsilanti) $\alpha_2\beta_2^{99Tyr}$
Hb Hiroshima $\alpha_2\beta_2^{146Asp}$
Hb Rainier $\alpha_2\beta_2^{145Cys}$
Hb Bethesda $\alpha_2\beta_2^{145His}$

2. Decreased Affinity—May Have Mild Anemia or Cyanosis

Hb Kansas $\alpha_2\beta_2^{102Thr}$
Hb Titusville $\alpha_2^{94Asn}\beta_2$
Hb Providence $\alpha_2\beta_2^{82Asn}$
Hb Agenogi $\alpha_2\beta_2^{90Lys}$
Hb Beth Israel $\alpha_2\beta_2^{102Ser}$
Hb Yoshizuka $\alpha_2\beta_2^{108Asp}$

C. Unstable Hemoglobins

1. Hb may Precipitate as Heinz Bodies after Splenectomy: "Congenital Heinz Body Anemia"

a. Severe Hemolysis: No Improvement after Splenectomy

Hb Bibba $\alpha_2^{136Pro}\beta_2$
Hb Hammersmith $\alpha_2\beta_2^{42Ser}$
Hb Bristol $\alpha_2\beta_2^{67Asp}$
Hb Olmsted $\alpha_2\beta_2^{141Arg}$

b. Severe Hemolysis: Improvement after Splenectomy

Hb Torino $\alpha_2^{43Val}\beta_2$
Hb Ann Arbor $\alpha_2^{80Arg}\beta_2$
Hb Genova $\alpha_2\beta_2^{28Pro}$
Hb Shepherd's Bush $\alpha_2\beta_2^{74Asp}$
Hb Koln $\alpha_2\beta_2^{98Met}$
Hb Wein $\alpha_2\beta_2^{130Asp}$

c. Mild Hemolysis: Intermittent Exacerbations

Hb L-Ferrara $\alpha_2^{47Gly}\beta_2$
Hb Hasharon $\alpha_2^{47His}\beta_2$
Hb Leiden $\alpha_2\beta_2^{6\text{ or }7}$ (Glu deleted)
Hb Freiburg $\alpha_2\beta_2^{23}$ (Val deleted)
Hb Seattle $\alpha_2\beta_2^{70Asp}$
Hb Louisville $\alpha_2\beta_2^{42Leu}$
Hb Zürich $\alpha_2\beta_2^{63Arg}$
Hb Gun Hill $\alpha_2\beta_2^{91}$-97 (5 a. a. deleted)

d. No Disease

Hb Etobicoke $\alpha_2^{84Arg}\beta_2$
Hb Dakar $\alpha_2^{112Gln}\beta_2$
Hb Sogn $\alpha_2\beta_2^{14Arg}$
Hb Tacoma $\alpha_2\beta_2^{30Ser}$

2. Tetramers of Normal Chains: Appear in Thalassemias

Hb Bart's γ_4
HbH β_4
Hb α_4

Data from Winslow RM, Anderson WF: The hemoglobinopathies. In Stanbury JB, Wyngaarden JB, Fredrickson DS, et al, editors: *The metabolic basis of inherited disease*, ed 5, New York, 1983, McGraw-Hill, pp 2281–2317.

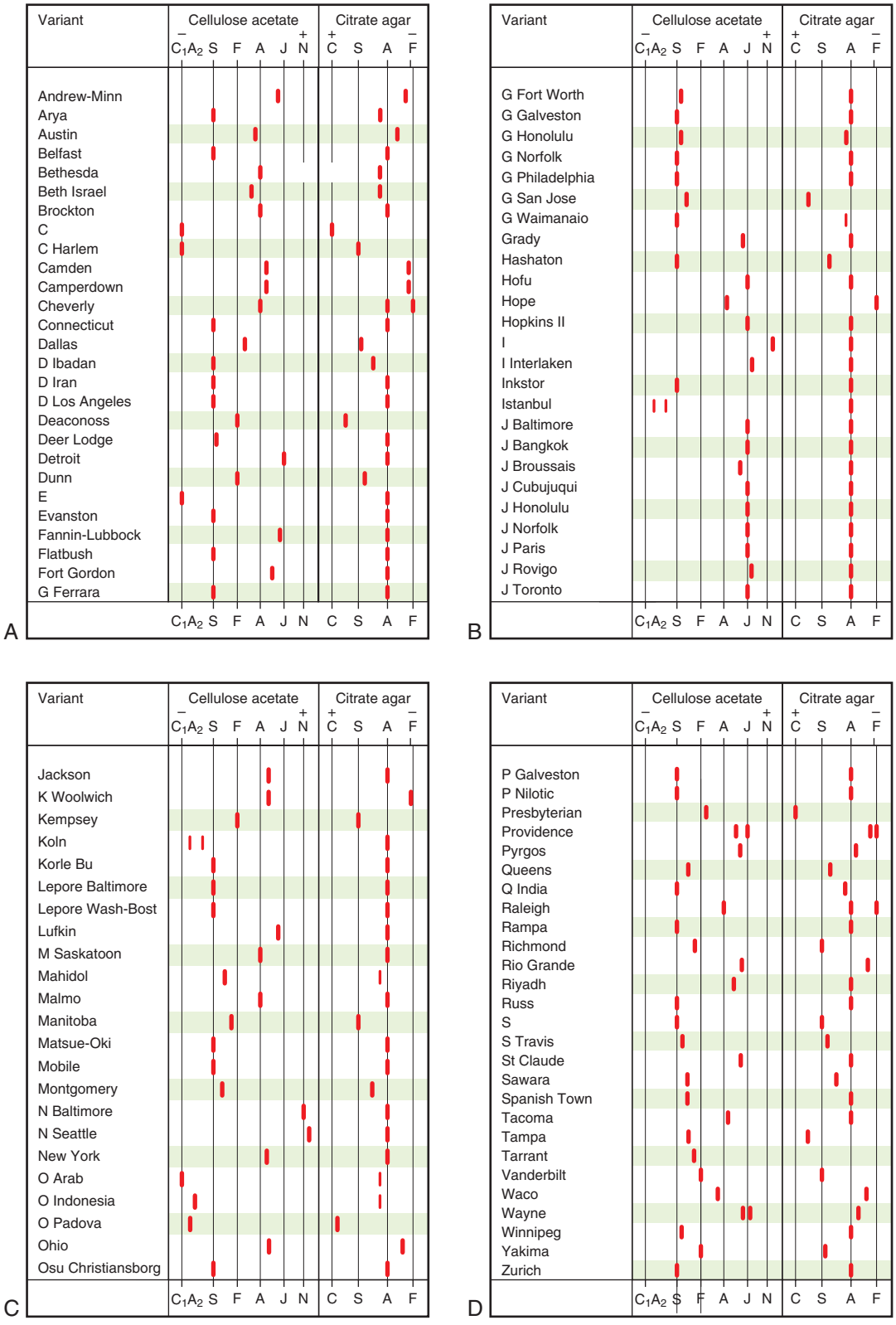


Figure 32-18 **Electrophoretic mobility of 102 hemoglobin variants at alkaline (cellulose acetate) and acidic (citrate agar) pH.** (Courtesy of Winston Moo-Penn and Danny Jue.)

In heterozygous α-chain structural variants, the abnormality in the α-chain will affect all three Hb types. Therefore, six different hemoglobins are found—the three normal hemoglobins and the three abnormal forms.

Compound heterozygotes for two β-chain abnormalities produce two different abnormal β-chains; therefore, there are two abnormal Hbs and no Hb A. An example of this is Hb SC disease. Compound heterozygotes for β- and δ-chain abnormalities and for α- and β-chain abnormalities are rare but have provided important information. The latter will have four major Hb types on electrophoresis.

Sickling Disorders

Sickle Cell Trait (Hb AS)

The heterozygous state for Hb S is the most common hemoglobinopathy in the United States. It is present in about 8% of African Americans

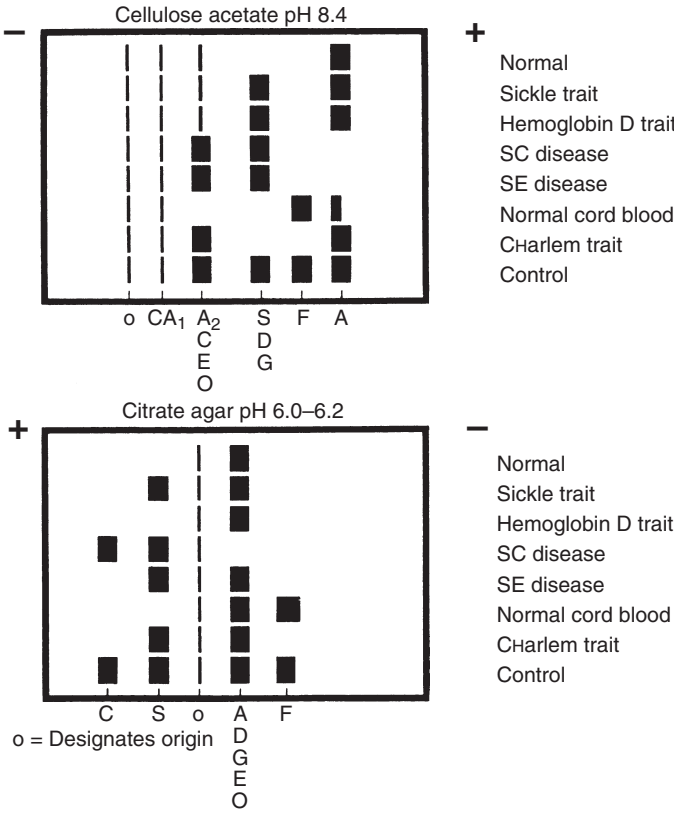


Figure 32-19 Hemoglobin (Hb) electrophoresis. Comparison of various Hb samples on cellulose acetate (at pH 8.4) and citrate agar (at pH 6), showing relative mobilities. The control is a composite sample. The relative amounts of Hb are not necessarily proportional to the size of the band. (From Schmidt RM, Brosious EF: *Basic laboratory methods of hemoglobinopathy detection*, ed 6, Atlanta, 1976, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. HEW Publ. No. CDC 77–8266.)

TABLE 32-4
Prevalence of Common Hemoglobin Disorders Among African Americans

	%
Traits	
Silent α-thalassemia (αα/–α)	24
Hb AS	8.6
α-Thalassemia trait (–α/–α)	5.7
Hb AC	2.4
β-Thalassemia trait	1.5
HPFH	0.1
Hbs D and G	0.026
All others	0.3
Sickling Disorders	
Hb SS	0.16
Hb S/C	0.13
Hb S/thal	0.06
Hb S/HPFH	0.004
Other Disorders	
Hb CC	0.02
Hb C/β-thalassemia	0.02
Homozygous β-thalassemia	0.005

Data from Motulsky AG: Frequency of sickling disorders in US Blacks, *N Engl J Med* 288:31–33, 1973; Schneider RG, Hightower B, Hosty TS, et al: Abnormal hemoglobins in a quarter million people, *Blood* 48:629–637, 1976; and Pierce HI, Sumiko KK, Sofroniadou K, et al: Frequencies of thalassemia in American Blacks, *Blood* 49:981–986, 1977.
Hb, Hemoglobin; *HPFH,* hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin.

(Schneider et al, 1976) and in as many as 45% of the population in certain areas of West Africa. The gene is found throughout sub-Saharan Africa and, at a much lower frequency, in the Mediterranean, Middle East, and India. Hb S trait is a benign condition without clinical symptoms or hematologic abnormalities. Added risk associated with sickle cell trait is minimal at the most, and is seen only in very rare circumstances. Extreme low O_2 tensions can trigger sickling, and a few people have sustained splenic infarction when flying at very high altitude in unpressurized airplanes. Slightly increased incidences of hematuria, impaired ability to concentrate urine, and bacteriuria in women have been reported. Sickle cell trait confers protection to children from the lethal effects of falciparum malaria, which accounts for the major distribution of Hb S in central Africa.

The stained blood film appears normal, except perhaps for a few target cells. Blood cell counts are normal. The sickle cell slide preparation is positive, and almost all red cells eventually sickle. The solubility test is positive.

Hemoglobin separation typically shows 60% Hb A, 40% Hb S, normal Hb F, and normal to slightly increased Hb A_2, up to 4.0%.

The proportion of Hb S is decreased in the presence of α-thalassemia; Hb S is less than 35% when one α-gene is deleted and less than 29% when two genes are lost (Head et al, 2004). In the latter, cells are hypochromic and microcytic. Because 27% of African Americans carry the α^+-thalassemia gene, it is not surprising that the combination is quite common. Hb S level may also be diminished in iron and folate deficiency. Clinically, the combination of sickle cell trait and α-thalassemia trait is benign, with possible mild microcytic anemia due to the thalassemia trait.

Sickle Cell Disease (Hb SS)

Homozygous Hb S disease is a serious chronic hemolytic anemia, first manifested in early childhood and often fatal before 30 years of age. With modern medical care, many patients live longer, but the median age of death in the United States is still only in the 40s. Hb S is found mostly in the black population; 1 of every 600 black persons in the United States has sickle cell anemia (Steinberg, 1999).

In Hb S (β6 glu→val), the glutamic acid in the sixth position on the β-chain is replaced by valine. Hb S is freely soluble when fully oxygenated; when O_2 is removed, Hb S polymerizes, with formation of tactoids (fluid crystals) that are rigid and deform the cell into the shape that gave the disease its name. A strong interaction between the side chain of β6 valine and the hydrophobic pocket of β85 phenylalanine and 88 leucine of another Hb S molecule is probably the basis of polymer formation. In homozygous Hb S disease, sickling occurs at O_2 tensions that are physiological in the peripheral microcirculation. The rigidity of the red cells is responsible for the hemolysis, as well as for most of the complications. These irreversibly sickled cells result from membrane reorganization during repeated episodes of sickling and unsickling, in addition to cell dehydration that markedly reduces cellular deformability. Sickle cells contain high calcium levels, which stimulate potassium and water loss (Gardos effect) and exaggerate cell dehydration (Weatherall & Clegg, 1999). The hemolytic component is mostly extracellular and is caused by clustering of band 3 of the cell membrane, with the consequence of increased IgG binding and recognition by macrophages. Integrins (α4β1) on the sickle cell surface attach to fibronectin and adhesion molecules expressed on endothelial cells; this is enhanced by inflammatory cytokines, von Willebrand factor, and platelet activation, and together these interactions cause vaso-occlusion.

Complications. In early childhood, bilateral painful swelling of the dorsa of the hands or feet occurs as a result of sickling and capillary stasis; this is known as **hand-foot syndrome,** or *sickle cell dactylitis.* It lasts about 2 weeks, is accompanied by changes of periostitis as observed by X-ray, and does not occur after 4 years of age.

The spleen is central to three complications: A **sequestration crisis** refers to sudden pooling of blood and rapid enlargement of the spleen, resulting in hypovolemic shock. This may occur in early childhood when splenomegaly is present and is often preceded by infection. **Functional asplenia** consists of inadequate antibody responses under some conditions and an impaired ability of the reticuloendothelial system to clear bacteria and particulate material from the blood, probably owing to reticuloendothelial blockade. This may explain in part the increased risk for infection in children with the disease. Salmonella and pneumococcal infections are unusually prevalent in children with sickle cell anemia. Vaso-occlusive episodes result in progressive infarction, fibrosis, and contraction of the spleen—so-called **autosplenectomy.** Although splenomegaly is present in childhood, a small fibrotic remnant is the rule in the adult.

From early childhood, patients cannot produce concentrated urine, apparently as a result of anoxic damage in the medullae of the kidneys.

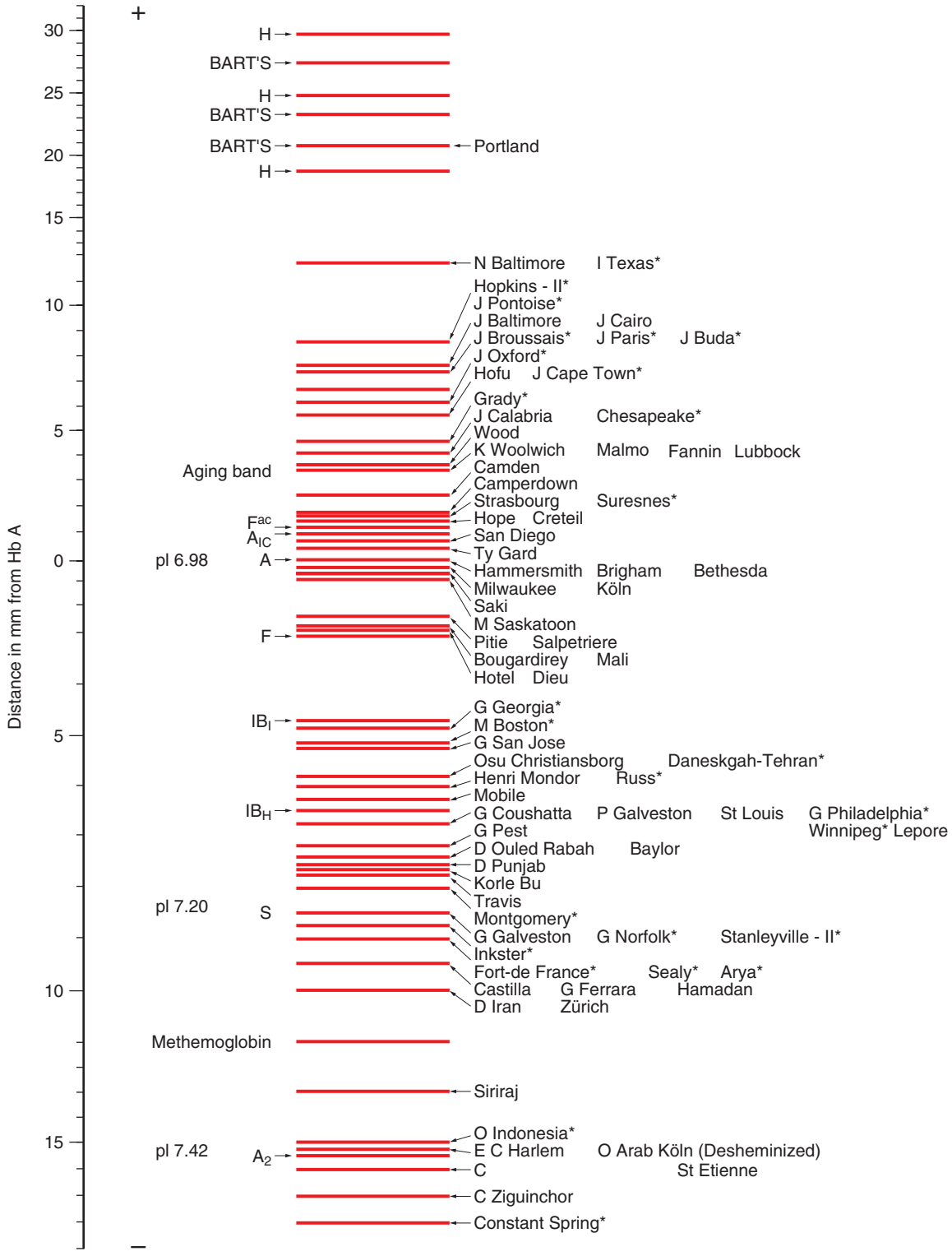


Figure 32-20 **Comparison of 57 hemoglobin variants by isoelectric focusing.** Asterisk denotes α-chain variants. (From Basset P, Braconnier F, Rosa J: An update on electrophoretic and chromatographic methods in the diagnosis of hemoglobinopathies, *J Chromatogr Biomed Appl* 227:267–304, 1982.)

Hematuria as a result of papillary necrosis is common. Renal insufficiency occurs in 5% to 20% of adults (Steinberg, 1999).

Vaso-occlusive crises are debilitating episodes of abdominal and bone or joint pain, accompanied by fever, which are probably due to plugging of small blood vessels by masses of sickled cells. Bone necrosis occurs in 10% to 50% of patients and may be a focus for salmonella osteomyelitis. Acute chest syndrome represents episodes of acute chest pain often associated with a new infiltrate in the chest film. Approximately 40% of patients experience at least one episode of acute chest syndrome. Although an infectious origin had been suspected in earlier studies, fat embolism is now considered to play a major role in this syndrome. The various complications that result from recurring vaso-occlusive crises involve many body organs (Steinberg, 1999).

Aplastic crises occasionally can afflict any patient with chronic hemolytic anemia. Temporary failure of red cell production that would not be noticed in a person with a normal red cell life span will cause a serious fall in Hb concentration in chronic hemolytic anemia. This may be the result of infection, particularly parvovirus B19, exposure to toxic drugs, or folic acid deficiency; sometimes no cause can be found. Hemolytic crises due to a further increase in hemolysis are rare.

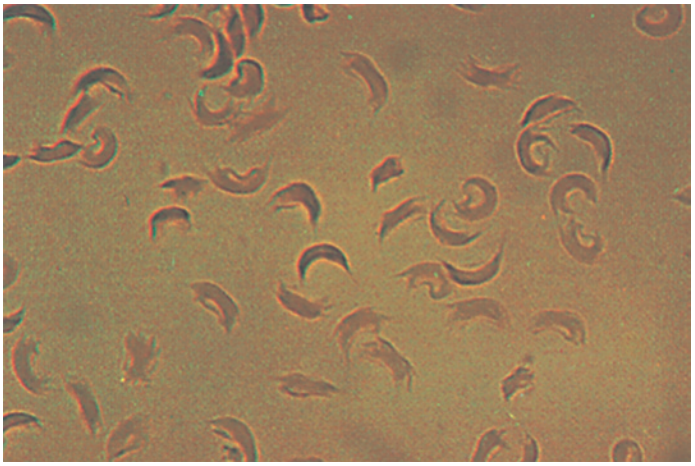


Figure 32-21 Sickle cell preparation, in sodium metabisulfate; sickle cell anemia. Even in sickle cell trait, all cells eventually sickle.

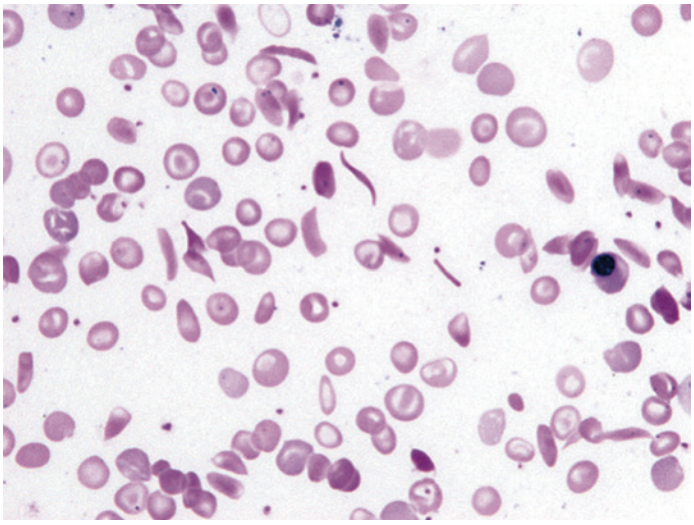


Figure 32-22 Blood film, sickle cell anemia. The erythrocytes are far from one another, suggesting a severe anemia. Numerous pointed sickle cells and target cells are present. Close to the nucleated red blood cell, elliptical cells are seen. These cells have a dense center, instead of the usual central pallor, suggesting that they are incipient sickle cells (500×).

Diagnosis. The anemia is normochromic and normocytic; polychromasia is increased, and nucleated red blood cells are present. Sickle cells are almost always found in the stained smear (Fig. 32-22). Target cells are numerous, and Howell-Jolly and Pappenheimer bodies are regularly seen in older children and adults as a result of asplenia. The microhematocrit as an estimate of degree of anemia is unreliable because of excessive plasma trapping. Neutrophilia and thrombocytosis are usual. The marrow shows erythroid hyperplasia.

No Hb A is found if the patient has not been transfused recently; more than 80% of the hemoglobin is Hb S, 1% to 20% Hb F, and 2% to 4.5% Hb A_2 (Wrightstone & Huisman, 1974). The fetal hemoglobin is distributed unevenly among the red cells. Hb S and several D and G hemoglobins have the same electrophoretic mobility at alkaline pH, but of these, only Hb S gives a positive sickling test.

Hemoglobin SC Disease

The frequency of Hb SC disease is almost the same as that of Hb SS disease in African Americans. It causes a mild hemolytic anemia. Crises are less frequent and less painful than in sickle cell anemia. Onset is usually in childhood, but the disease might be undetected until later in life. The life expectancy is only modestly shortened. The body habitus is normal or stocky in contrast to the asthenic features in sickle cell anemia. Splenomegaly might be the only finding on physical examination. Fatigue, dyspnea on effort, frequent upper respiratory infections, attacks of mild jaundice, and arthralgias are seen. Constant hip and low back pain may be present with aseptic necrosis of the head of the femur. Hematuria from renal medullary infarction and splenic infarcts have been described. In pregnancy, crises are more frequent and there is an increase in thrombotic tendency, which can cause massive thromboembolism and sudden death following childbirth. A higher incidence of retinopathy is seen in Hb SC disease than in SS disease.

Anemia varies from moderate to very mild and is normochromic-normocytic. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis are mild to severe, and target cells are numerous—up to 85% of the erythrocytes. Plump and angulated sickled cells are often present on the film. The sickling test is positive. Hb S is 50% and Hb C is slightly less. Hb F is usually under 2%. The proportions of Hbs are the same in patients with coexistent α-thalassemia (Steinberg et al, 1983).

Hb S/β-Thalassemia

This is the third most common sickling disorder after Hb SS and Hb SC in African Americans, and the most common one in people from the Mediterranean. It usually runs a milder course in black people (usually S/β^+-thalassemia) but causes a severe sickling disorder with manifestations similar to those of sickle cell anemia in people of Italian, Turkish, or Greek descent.

In Hb S/β^0-thalassemia, Hb A is absent; Hb S is 75% to 90%, Hb F is 5% to 20%, and Hb A_2 is 4% to 6%. This disorder clinically and hematologically resembles sickle cell disease, except for the spleen, which remains enlarged after childhood and into adult life. The main difference is that in Hb S/β^0-thalassemia, the MCV and MCH are decreased, and the Hb A_2 might be significantly increased. Family study is often necessary for a clear distinction (Wrightstone & Huisman, 1974). On the blood smear, pronounced microcytosis, variable hypochromia, and many target cells are present. As a consequence of reduced cellular hemoglobin, Hb S polymers are formed more slowly, and fewer sickled cells are present on the smear.

In Hb S/β^+-thalassemia, Hb A is 15% to 30%; Hb S is over 50%, Hb F is 1% to 20%, and Hb A_2 is 4% to 6%. Although these individuals clinically may resemble those with sickle trait (Hb AS), in S/β^+-thalassemia, the amount of Hb S always exceeds Hb A, while in sickle cell trait Hb A always exceeds Hb S.

Hb SS/α-Thalassemia

Thirty to forty percent of patients with sickle cell anemia are heterozygous for α^+-thalassemia, and 2% to 3% are homozygous (Higgs et al, 1982). The MCV (83 fL in heterozygotes and 72 fL in homozygotes) and MCH are decreased. The Hb level is higher and the reticulocyte count is significantly lower as compared with sickle cell anemia. On the smear, sickled cells are uncommon, similarly to Hb S/β^0-thalassemia. Although the anemia is less severe, the vaso-occlusive disease is not, and some studies even show increased morbidity and mortality. As described earlier, δ-chains successfully compete with positively charged S-chains for a limited number of α-chains, and Hb A_2 levels increase. Hematologically, this cannot be separated from Hb S/β^0-thalassemia (Table 32-5). Whenever microcytosis and increased Hb A_2 are present in sickle cell anemia, family or molecular studies are done to differentiate these entities.

Hemoglobin SD Disease (Hb S/D–Los Angeles). SD disease simulates but is less severe than sickle cell anemia, and thus may also resemble SC disease. It is occasionally seen in the African American population. On routine (alkaline) electrophoresis, the pattern is indistinguishable from sickle cell anemia because Hb S and Hb D cannot be separated. Agar gel electrophoresis at pH 6.2 will separate Hb S and Hb D.

Hb S/O Arab. Compound heterozygotes of Hb S and Hb O Arab (β121 glu→lys) have a severe sickling disorder. Hb O Arab is found in black and Arabic people.

Other Compound Heterozygosities with Hb S. Hb E and a few other, less frequent β-variants also cause sickling disorders with Hb S. Coexistence of an α-chain variant and a sickle cell trait does not cause a sickling disorder.

Other Common β-Chain Variants

Hb C Trait (β6 glu→lys). Hemoglobin C is prevalent in West Africans and in about 2% to 3% of black people. The heterozygous state (Hb AC) is asymptomatic, without anemia, with normal or minimally reduced MCV and normal red cell life span. The MCHC might be slightly elevated. Target cells are present on blood film. Hb C makes up about 40% of the total hemoglobin. When significant microcytosis is present, it is usually caused by coexistent α-thalassemia, and Hb C is reduced to 38%, 32%, and 24% in patients with three, two, and one α-gene, respectively (Huisman, 1977).

TABLE 32-5

Differential Diagnosis of Sickle Cell/Thalassemia Syndromes

Genotype	Clinical Expression	Hb	MCV	Hb F	Hb A_2	Hb A
SS	Severe	7-8	85-95	2-20	2-4	
S/β^0 thal	Moderate to severe	8-10	65-75	5-20	4-6	
SS/α thal	Moderate to severe	8-10	70-85	2-20	3-5	
S/HPFH	Asymptomatic to mild	13-14	75-85	20-30	1-3	
S/β^+ thal	Mild to moderate	11-12	70-80	1-13	3-6	10-30

Data from Bunn HF, Forget BG: *Hemoglobin: molecular, genetic and clinical aspects,* Philadelphia, 1986, Saunders; and Steinberg MH, Forget BG, Higgs DR, et al: *Disorders of hemoglobins,* ed 1, Cambridge, 2001, Cambridge University Press.

Hb, Hemoglobin; *Hb A,* accounts for 97% of normal adult hemoglobin; *Hb A_2,* accounts for the remaining 3% of normal adult hemoglobin; *Hb F,* fetal hemoglobin; *HPFH,* hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin; *MCV,* mean corpuscular volume.

Hb C Disease. Homozygous Hb C disease is a mild hemolytic anemia with splenomegaly that is often asymptomatic but occasionally results in jaundice and abdominal discomfort. Life expectancy is normal. In the United States, 0.02% of black people have Hb C disease (Schneider et al, 1976). Reticulocytosis is low for the degree of anemia. The anemia is largely a consequence of low O_2 affinity of Hb C (Bunn & Forget, 1986) and should not be treated. The MCV is usually decreased, and the MCHC is normal or increased. Numerous target cells with an admixture of microspherocytes and minimal polychromasia are seen in the blood. Osmotic fragility is biphasic, with both increased and decreased fragility, but is not used in the diagnosis today. Hexagonal or rod-shaped crystals may be seen in erythrocytes in the stained smear, especially after splenectomy or after slow drying of the smear (Fig. 32-23). As opposed to Hb S, crystals of Hb C tend to melt at low partial pressure of oxygen (pO_2) and do not cause vaso-occlusive disease. The red blood cells are dehydrated (causing the increased MCHC), owing to loss of cations and water as a result of interaction of Hb C with the red cell membrane. As a consequence, the cells are more rigid and less deformable than normal, increasing their likelihood of being trapped and destroyed in the spleen. Hb F is elevated at 2% to 4%, and Hb A_2, when measured by HPLC, might be slightly increased; the remainder of hemoglobin is Hb C.

Hb C/β^+-Thalassemia. This occurs mainly in black people, in whom it tends to result in little disability, except for anemia in pregnancy. Red cell indices are typical of β-thalassemia trait, but there is anisocytosis and 20% to 50% target cells. Usual values are 65% to 80% for Hb C, 16% to 30% for Hb A, and 2% to 5% for Hb F.

Hb C/β^0-Thalassemia. People of Mediterranean extraction usually have a moderately severe hemolytic anemia with β^0 or a severe β^+ genotype. This combination is extremely rare in the African population. Hb C/β^0-thalassemia may be difficult to distinguish from Hb C disease in that Hb A is absent in both, and there is an overlap in Hbs A_2 and F levels. Hb A_2 is elevated to about twice normal, and Hb F is elevated at 3% to 10%.

Hb E (β 26 glu→lys). This is probably the most prevalent hemoglobin variant worldwide and the third most common in the United States, behind S and C. It is found primarily in Southeast Asia, especially in people of Thai and Burmese extraction, but is also found in blacks and Caucasians. Hb E is associated with a β-thalassemia phenotype, as well as with a structurally abnormal globin chain. The mutation that causes amino acid substitution also activates a cryptic splice site that competes with the normal RNA splice donor site, and normally processed RNA is decreased. In the laboratory, Hb E can be demonstrated to be unstable. It precipitates abnormally in the heat denaturation test and with isopropanol, yet this has no in vivo significance; the red cell survival is normal (Fairbanks et al, 1980).

Hb E Trait (Hb AE). Hb AE is asymptomatic, with borderline microcytosis (MCV = 84 ± 5) and no anemia. Hb A is 65% to 70% of the total hemoglobin, Hb E is 30%, and Hb F is normal. Coexistence of one α-thalassemia gene does not change any of the above parameters and can be proven only by DNA analysis. If two or three α-thalassemia genes are also present, the proportion of Hb E decreases to 21% and 14%, respectively. The proportion of Hb E is also significantly lower in iron deficiency.

Hemoglobin E Disease. This is also asymptomatic; it resembles a thalassemia trait, with microcytosis (average MCV = 70 fL), erythrocytosis, normal MCHC, and slight anemia. Thus, Hb E behaves as an extremely mild thalassemia. The reticulocyte count is normal, but 20% to 80% target cells are evident on the blood film. Hb E accounts for more than 90% of the hemoglobin, with Hb F from 1% to 10% and no Hb A.

Hb E/β-Thalassemia. In sharp contrast with Hb E disease, this is a severe condition. It is one of the most important thalassemia syndromes, comprising close to half of the severe β-thalassemia cases (Weatherall, 2010). It is most common in Southeast Asia. The clinical variability is marked; rarely, there are very few symptoms, but the usual picture is that of thalassemia intermedia or thalassemia major. Most of the thalassemia alleles are of the β^0 or severe β^+ variety. Ineffective erythropoiesis, a consequence of excess α-globins, red cell indices, red cell morphology, and clinical manifestations are similar to those in homozygous β-thalassemia. Hbs E, F, and A_2 are present. Hb F shows extreme variation, from 5% to 85%; the mean Hb F is 42%, and the mean Hb E is 58% (Steinberg et al, 2009).

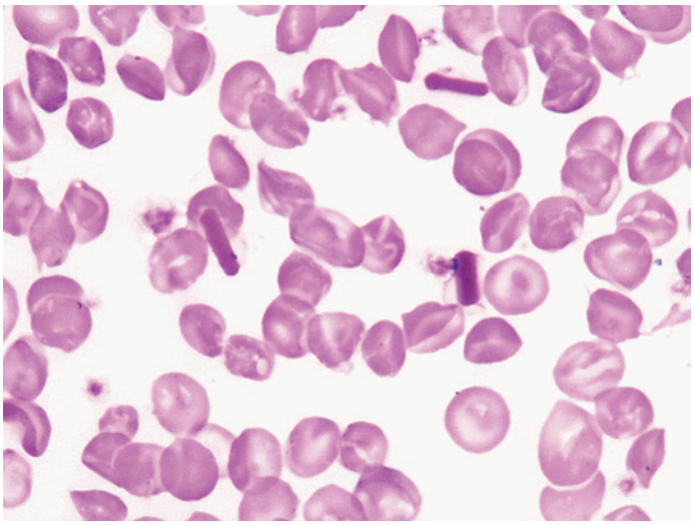


Figure 32-23 **Hemoglobin (Hb) C disease, after splenectomy.** Before splenectomy, the only morphologic abnormality was the presence of target cells. After splenectomy, Howell-Jolly bodies and Hb crystals, such as those in the center, were present. Note that almost all of the Hb in this particular cell is in the dark bar, and the membrane is still visible. Some such crystals are distinctly hexagonal (1000×).

Hb D Los Angeles (Punjab) (β121 glu→gln). This constitutes the most common D variant in African Americans (<0.02%). In the Punjab region of India, heterozygosity reaches 3%. Homozygotes have normal red cell indices, no evidence of hemolysis, and 95% Hb D with normal Hbs F and A2 (Bunn & Forget, 1986). Double heterozygotes for Hb D Punjab/β^0-thalassemia have a mild hemolytic anemia with thalassemic red cell indices and increased Hbs F and A_2.

The significance of Hb D Punjab is that compound heterozygosity with Hb S produces a moderately severe sickling disorder (see the Hemoglobin SD Disease section earlier in the chapter). Other, less frequent D hemoglobins (D Iran, D Ibadan) and G hemoglobins do not cause sickling—a major difference for genetic counseling. D and G hemoglobins migrate with Hb S on alkaline electrophoresis but are separated from S at acidic pH, migrating with Hb A. It is more difficult to separate them from each other. Careful analysis of isoelectric focusing and HPLC are helpful in most cases.

Common α-Chain Variants

Hb G Philadelphia (α 68asn→lys). This is the most common α-chain variant in black people (Schneider et al, 1976). Almost invariably, the linked α-gene is deleted ($-\alpha^G$). Simple heterozygotes ($-\alpha^G/\alpha\alpha$) have 30% Hb G and normal red cell indices, but double heterozygotes with

α-gene deletion on the other chromosome as well ($-\alpha^G/-\alpha$) have 45% Hb G and a thalassemia trait phenotype. As with other α-chain variants, a minor hemoglobin representing a combination of α^G with δ is present close to Hb A_2 and helps to differentiate Hb G Philadelphia from β-chain variant G and D hemoglobins (sometimes called G_2 hemoglobin).

Disorders of Hemoglobin Function and Stability

A number of amino acid substitutions occur in the heme pocket, where they may cause oxidation of ferrous iron to ferric form producing methemoglobin (Hb M) or alter the affinity of the heme for O_2; the latter usually alters the stability of the molecule as well. Other substitutions affect the αβ contact sites; these also can change stability and O_2 affinity of the molecule (Bunn, 1994).

These functionally significant hemoglobinopathies are heterozygous; usually, the concentration of the abnormal Hb is less than 50%. Generally, Hbs with abnormal α-chains form a smaller proportion of the total (10% to 25%) than those with abnormal β-chains (35% to 50%).

Hemoglobins Associated with High Oxygen Affinity and Polycythemia

Eighty-six abnormal Hbs with high O_2 affinity that are associated with familial erythrocytosis are known today (Globin Gene Server, 2015). Some are listed in Table 32-3. The O_2 dissociation curve is shifted to the left. The p_{50}, the pO_2 at which Hb is 50% saturated, is decreased. Under physiologic conditions, the normal p_{50} of whole blood is 26 mm Hg; in this disorder, it has ranged from 5 to 23 mm Hg. Because the Hb has a high affinity for O_2, it cannot unload the oxygen and the tissues are relatively hypoxic, resulting in increased EPO production and polycythemia. These disorders are autosomal dominant; only heterozygotes have been described. The Hb concentration has ranged from 15 to 23.8 g/dL. Measurement of O_2 affinity is required to establish the diagnosis (Bunn & Forget, 1986). Because the amino acid substitution is inside the molecule, often the abnormal hemoglobin is indistinguishable from Hb A on electrophoresis or HPLC.

Hemoglobins Associated with Low Oxygen Affinity

There are far fewer variants with decreased O_2 affinity (see Table 32-3; Bunn & Forget, 1986). The O_2 dissociation curve is shifted to the right (increased p_{50}). These individuals have mild "anemia," as they can unload more O_2 to the tissues and they simply do not need that much Hb. A handful of variants with markedly decreased affinity are associated with cyanosis. In these, O_2 uptake is impaired in the lung and the level of deoxyhemoglobin is more than 5 g/dL, causing cyanosis. The skin and mucous membranes have a slate gray color. There is no anemia. Many of the unstable Hbs also have decreased O_2 affinity; however, the hemolytic state dominates the clinical picture.

M Hemoglobins: Pseudocyanosis

Nine abnormal Hbs are associated with clinical methemoglobinemia and cyanosis that do not respond to methylthioninium chloride (methylene blue) (Globin Gene Server, 2015; Bunn, 1994). The color is similar to cyanosis—a brownish color, caused by methemoglobin. The common feature is that all have an amino acid substitution at or near the heme group, so that methemoglobin is unusually stable, and reduction to ferrous heme and hence reversible binding of O_2 are prevented. Methemoglobin constitutes no more than 3% of the total Hb in normal humans.

Cyanosis from birth is seen in Hb M disease with α-chain abnormalities, or in fetal Hb M (Hb FM Osaka). In the latter, cyanosis will disappear after the γ-chains have been replaced by β-chains by 6 months of age. Cyanosis does not appear until nearly 6 months of age in Hb M variants with β-chain abnormalities, for the same reason (Bunn, 1994). Of course, the cyanosis is not associated with enzyme abnormalities in the red cell, toxic drugs, or cyanotic heart disease—conditions that must be considered in the differential diagnosis. Patients usually have no other symptoms.

All Hb M disorders thus far discovered have been reported in heterozygotes, probably because homozygosity is lethal. Some types of Hb M do not separate from Hb A on alkaline electrophoresis. If the hemolysate is first converted to methemoglobin, the Hb M will migrate differently from normal methemoglobin at pH 7.1. The absorption spectra of the eluted Hb M, which may be distinctive, can be compared with those of normal methemoglobin (Bunn, 1994).

Unstable Hemoglobins

More than 100 Hbs, mostly β-chain variants have been described in which the Hb stable tetrameric structure is not maintained and Hgb precipitates within the red cell as Heinz bodies (Bunn, 1998). Some are listed in Table 32-3. Rare unstable hemoglobins such as Hb F Poole are γ-chain variants. The precipitated Hb attaches to the cell membrane making the cells inflexible. Heinz bodies are removed by the spleen that further damages the cells and causes shortened survival. The O_2 affinity is usually abnormal but may be increased or decreased. Some of these unstable Hbs cause "congenital Heinz body hemolytic anemias."

All patients have been heterozygous. Clinical features have shown considerable variation, from severe hemolytic anemia in the first year of life (e.g., Hb Hammersmith, Hb Bristol) to a very mild chronic hemolytic anemia (e.g., Hb Louisville, Hb Hasharon) that may be exacerbated by drugs (e.g., Hb Zurich). A few unstable Hbs have been discovered incidentally in clinically normal individuals (e.g., Hb Tacoma, Hb Sogn).

Jaundice and splenomegaly are common, as in other hemolytic anemias. More distinctive in some cases is the excretion of darkly pigmented urine (only during hemolytic crises in mild variants). Cyanosis is present in some patients and is due to methemoglobinuria and sulfhemoglobinemia or to low O_2 affinity.

The anemia is normocytic and normochromic to hypochromic, the latter because of the removal of precipitated Hb from aging red cells by macrophages of the spleen and other reticuloendothelial organs. Prominent basophilic stippling, probably related to excessive clumping of ribosomes, is a common feature. Occasional "bite cells" may be seen. Patients with relatively high Hb concentrations in the steady state usually have Hb variants with a high O_2 affinity and an unexpectedly high reticulocyte count (e.g., Hb Köln, Hb Gun Hill). On the other hand, patients with rather low Hb concentrations may be relatively asymptomatic if their Hb has a low O_2 affinity; their reticulocyte counts are unexpectedly low for the Hb concentration (e.g., Hb Hammersmith). Heinz bodies are rarely seen in circulating red cells before splenectomy, although sometimes they may be generated by incubating the red cells with brilliant cresyl blue or new methylene blue. After splenectomy, Heinz bodies are readily demonstrable in a large proportion of cells; the blood film shows irregularly contracted cells and basophilic stippling that may be pronounced.

In splenectomized patients, the Heinz bodies may interfere with Hb determinations and with electronic platelet and white blood cell counts. Before the absorbance of the hemolysate is measured, it should be centrifuged to remove the Heinz bodies. Platelet and leukocyte counts should be performed by visual methods. Hb electrophoresis is normal in about one fourth of patients. Hb A_2 may be elevated in β-chain variants because of the loss of abnormal Hb from the cells; this phenotype may resemble thalassemia intermedia. Hb F may be increased to a level of 10% to 15%. Key laboratory determinations include heat instability and isopropanol precipitation tests.

Heat Instability Test. Most unstable Hbs precipitate more rapidly than normal Hbs when incubated at 50°C (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). In a hemolysate in Tris buffer, an easily visible precipitate forms within 1 hour if unstable Hb is present; the control sample is clear or slightly cloudy. Slight precipitation is equivocal; the test should be repeated and the isopropanol precipitation test performed as well. Precipitates accounting for 10% to 40% of the total Hb are found in unstable Hb disorders.

Isopropanol Precipitation Test. A relatively nonpolar solvent weakens the internal bonds of Hb and decreases its stability (Carrell & Kay, 1972). An unstable Hb precipitates within 20 minutes in the nonpolar solvent isopropanol, whereas a normal hemolysate remains clear for 30 to 40 minutes. False-positive results occur with high levels of Hb F.

THALASSEMIAS

In thalassemias, globin chains, usually of normal structure, are produced at a decreased rate. β-thalassemia refers to decreased production of β-chains; α-thalassemia, δβ-, δ-, and γδβ-thalassemias refer to reduced synthesis of the respective polypeptide chains. As a result, there is an overall deficit of Hb tetramers in the red cells, and MCV and MCH are reduced. However, it is not the lack of the affected globin chain, but the accumulation of the unaffected one, that causes hemolysis and, primarily in β-thalassemia, ineffective hematopoiesis in severe forms of the disease.

Thalassemia occurs predominantly in persons of Mediterranean, African, and Asian ancestry as, similarly to Hb variants or glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency, thalassemia genes are under selective pressure by malaria. In Greece and Southern Italy, the prevalence of β-thalassemia is around 10%, and that of α-thalassemia is 5%. Twenty-five percent to 30% of black people and 20% of Thai people carry an α-thalassemia gene. Because structural variants and thalassemias occur in the same population, a wide variety of diseases emerge from their interactions.

Several classifications are used. The clinical classification defines thalassemia major, a severe and transfusion-dependent form; thalassemia intermedia, with less severe symptoms and generally transfusion independent; and thalassemia minor (carrier state or trait), without clinical symptoms but with hematologic abnormalities. The genetic classification is based on gene(s) affected by the mutation, heterozygous/homozygous state, absent/reduced rate of globin synthesis, and so forth. Finally, specific mutations cause well-defined syndromes and can be used for classification.

Molecular Defects

In β-thalassemia, considerable heterogeneity in molecular defects is noted. One hundred ninety-seven different mutations have been identified as the cause of β-thalassemia. Most are associated with single base substitutions that produce defects in promoter activity, RNA processing/splicing, or translation, resulting in decreased or unstable mRNA. Large deletions are uncommon. In rare structural variants, the production of highly unstable β-chains results in the phenotype of β-thalassemia (Bunn, 1998). Despite this diversity, 20 common mutations account for 80% of β-thalassemia alleles in the world population (Weatherall & Clegg, 1999). In β^0-thalassemia, β-chain synthesis is absent on the affected chromosome. Messenger RNA (mRNA) is absent or may be present but nonfunctional. In β^+-thalassemia, β-globin chains are present but reduced in quantity because molecular defects have resulted in the production of unstable or decreased amounts of mRNA.

In $\delta\beta^0$-thalassemia, large deletions involve the δβ– or Aγδβ–gene complex. As a result, no Hb A or Hb A_2 synthesis is supported from the affected chromosome, but the γ-gene is upregulated and Hb F production is increased. Lepore Hbs have δβ-fusion globins that are the result of unequal crossover between δ- and β-globin genes during meiosis.

The α-thalassemias are generally due to gene deletion of various lengths. Two α-globin genes are present on each chromosome 16, surrounded by two highly homologous duplication units, each containing three homologous segments (Z, X, and Y). Unequal crossing over between the Z segments produces a chromosome with one α-gene ($-\alpha^{3.7}$) and another with three (ααα). Similar nonreciprocal crossing over between X boxes causes another common deletion ($-\alpha^{4.2}$) (Fig. 32-24). This recombination has a high probability, and chromosomes with missing or extra α-genes are found in every civilization; nonetheless, only the thalassemic alleles became frequent in certain populations, under pressure from malaria. These defects, affecting only one of the genes, are called α^+-thalassemia. The heterozygous genotype can be written (–α/αα). Nondeletion defects are less common ($\alpha^T\alpha/\alpha\alpha$). α^0-Thalassemia results from deletion of both α-globin genes on the chromosome (Fig. 32-25), which leads to no α-chain synthesis (– –/αα).

Hb Constant Spring is due to an abnormal termination codon in an α-globin gene that results in an elongated α-chain with 31 extra amino acids. Because of marked reduction in mRNA stability, the clinical phenotype of α-thalassemia is seen.

β-Thalassemias

Clinical and Hb findings in the β-thalassemias are summarized in Tables 32-6 and 32-7. The disorders are very heterogeneous phenotypically, as well as at the level of the molecular defects. The terms *thalassemia major*, *thalassemia intermedia*, and *thalassemia minor* refer to clinical severity and are not genetic designations.

Homozygous β-Thalassemia (Thalassemia Major; Cooley's Anemia)

In the absence (β^0) or a marked decrease (β^+) of β-chain production, there is an excess of α-chains. Aggregates of α-chains are unstable and precipitate in the normoblast or erythrocyte and damage the cells. Excess α-chains and their degradation products—heme, hemin, and iron, which serve as foci for the generation of reactive O_2 species—result in the partial oxidation of band 4.1 and a reduced spectrin/band 3 ratio in red blood cell precursors. Precipitates and cells are removed, causing ineffective erythropoiesis and severe hemolytic anemia. Furthermore, clustering of band 3 in the membrane may be followed by opsonization with autologous IgG and complement and removal by macrophages (Weatherall & Clegg, 1999).

Clinical findings include jaundice and splenomegaly, which become evident early in childhood. Prominent frontal bones, cheekbones, and jaws impart a mongoloid appearance. These changes and X-ray findings of a thinned cortex of the long and flat bones and thickening of the skull with osteoporosis ("hair-on-end" appearance) reflect extreme bone marrow hyperplasia. Growth is stunted, and puberty is delayed. Most patients require regular transfusions and develop problems caused by iron loading.

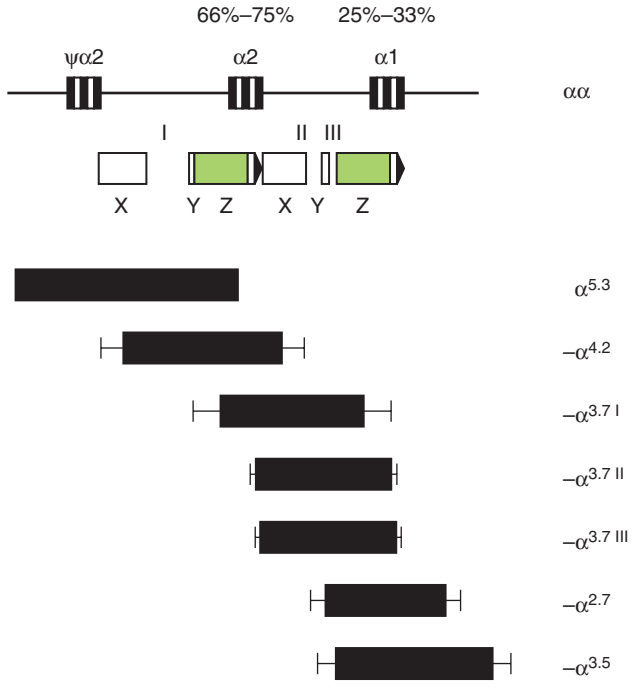


Figure 32-24 Deletions that cause α^+ thalassemia. The homologous boxes (X, Y, and Z) are interrupted by nonhomologous segments (I, II, and III). Black bars show the extent of each deletion, and thin bars show the breakpoint areas. In each case, only one α-gene is deleted.

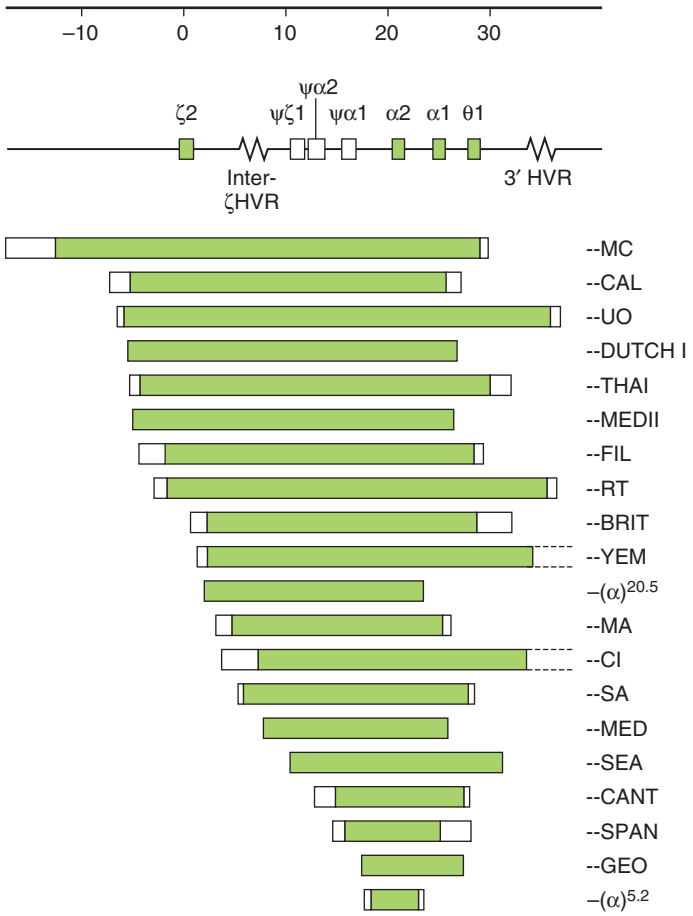


Figure 32-25 Large deletions of the α-gene complex cause α^0-thalassemia. No α-chain synthesis is directed from the chromosome. MED (Mediterranean) and SEA (South East Asian) deletions are the most frequent.

TABLE 32-6
β-Thalassemias and Their Associated Biochemical and Molecular Defects

	Typical DNA Defect	β-Chain	δ-Chain	γ-Chain	Hb F Distribution	α: Non–α-Globin Imbalance
β^+ thalassemia	Mutation	↓	+	+	Heterocellular	+++
β^0 thalassemia	Mutation	0	+	+	Heterocellular	++++
δβ thalassemia	Deletion	0	0	+++	Heterocellular	++
HPFH	Deletion	0 or ↓	0	++++	Pancellular	+

Data from Forget BG: Molecular studies of genetic disorders affecting the expression of the human β-globin gene: a model system for the analysis of inborn errors of metabolism, *Recent Prog Horm Res* 38:257–277, 1982.
DNA, Deoxyribonucleic acid; *Hb,* hemoglobin; *Hb F,* fetal hemoglobin; *HPFH,* hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin.

TABLE 32-7
Major Categories of β-Thalassemia Syndromes

Syndrome	Genotype	Clinical Features	Hemoglobin Pattern
Homozygous States			
β^+-thalassemia	β^+/β^+	Thalassemia major or intermedia	↓↓Hb A, ↑↑Hb F, variable Hb A_2
β^0-thalassemia	β^0/β^0	Thalassemia major	>95% Hb F, rest Hb A_2
$\delta\beta^0$-thalassemia	$\delta\beta^0/\delta\beta^0$	Thalassemia intermedia	100% Hb F
Hb Lepore	Lepore/Lepore	Thalassemia major	85% Hb F, 15% Hb Lepore
Heterozygous States			
β^+-Thalassemia	β^+/β	Thalassemia minor	Hb A, ↑Hb A_2, ±↑ Hb F
β^0-Thalassemia	β^0/β	Thalassemia minor	Hb A, ↑Hb A_2, ±↑ Hb F
$\delta\beta^0$-Thalassemia	$\delta\beta^0/\delta\beta$	Thalassemia minor	Hb A, 5%-20% Hb F, ±↓Hb A_2
Hb Lepore	Lepore/β	Thalassemia minor	Hb A, ↑Hb F, ↓Hb A_2, 10% Hb Lepore

Modified from Orkin SH, Nathan DG: The thalassemias, *N Engl J Med* 295:710–714, 1976.
Hb, Hemoglobin.

Iron overload commonly develops, and the major cause of death is cardiac failure due to myocardial siderosis by the end of the third decade.

Unlike most hemolytic diseases, the anemia is hypochromic and microcytic. Extreme poikilocytosis with bizarre shapes, target cells, ovalocytosis, Cabot rings, Howell-Jolly bodies, nuclear fragments, siderocytes, anisochromia, anisocytosis, and often extreme normoblastosis are present (Fig. 32-26). Poikilocytosis is more striking in patients with intact spleen, while nucleated red blood cells are more numerous after splenectomy. Nucleated red blood cells have hypochromic cytoplasm and, especially after splenectomy, aggregates of densely staining Hb, which probably represent precipitated α-chains. Incubation of the blood with methyl violet stains these precipitates in both red cells and erythroblasts. The reticulocyte count is less elevated than expected for the degree of anemia because of destruction of erythroid precursors in the marrow. Osmotic resistance of the red cells, serum iron, and indirect-reacting bilirubin are increased.

In the marrow, marked erythroid hyperplasia is present. Many late normoblasts show inclusion bodies, as in the blood. Gaucher-like cells are present. Storage iron and sideroblasts are increased.

In β^0-thalassemia, Hb A is absent, Hb F is as high as 98%, and Hb A_2 is about 2%. In β^+-thalassemias (Mediterranean), Hb F is 60% to 95%, with Hb A present. Although Hb A_2 may or may not be increased, the ratio of A_2 to A is always increased. In black people with β^+-thalassemia, the clinical features are less severe (thalassemia intermedia), and transfusion is usually unnecessary; Hb F is 20% to 40%, Hb A_2 is 2% to 5%, and the rest is Hb A (see Table 32-7).

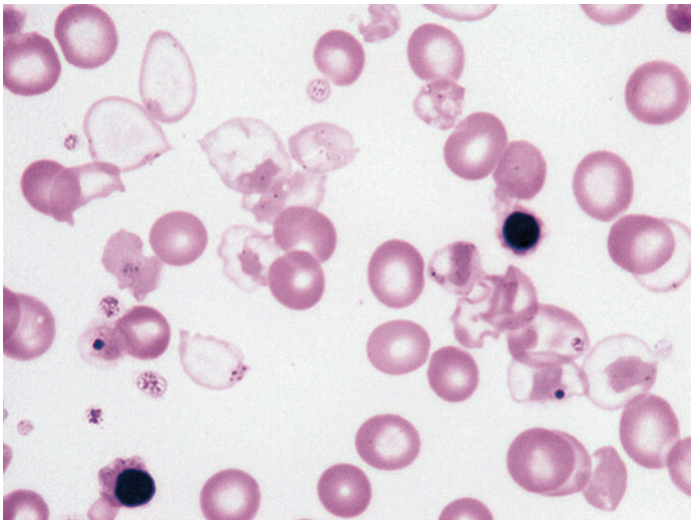


Figure 32-26 **Homozygous β-thalassemia.** A few cells contain hardly any hemoglobin (Hb), and the Hb is often precipitated at the membrane. Bizarre target cells, Howell-Jolly bodies, and poorly hemoglobinized nucleated red blood cells are seen.

Heterozygous β-Thalassemia (β-Thalassemia Trait; Thalassemia Minor; Cooley's Trait)

This is caused by the β^0-thalassemia gene with absent, or the β^+-thalassemia gene with reduced, β-globin chain synthesis. There are usually no symptoms or abnormal physical signs. The only clinical presentation might be a refractory anemia of pregnancy (Weatherall & Clegg, 2001).

Most β-thalassemia heterozygotes have a mild anemia but, occasionally, Hct and Hb might be normal. Those of African origin have higher Hb levels than people from the Mediterranean region, reflecting their milder genotype. Characteristically, the RBC is elevated (5 to 7 M/μL), the MCH is low (usually less than 22 pg), and the MCV is low (between 55 and 70 fL). The MCHC is sometimes low but often normal. The reticulocyte count is twice the normal value. On stained films, the cells have a moderate degree of microcytosis, hypochromia, and poikilocytosis; target cells and basophilic stippling are often, but not always, present (Fig. 32-27). In the marrow, there is mild erythroid hyperplasia with ragged cytoplasmic borders—a sign of defective hemoglobinization.

Hb A_2 is elevated in the 3.5% to 7% range, and Hb F is slightly elevated (1% to 3%) in about half of cases. In the few cases where Hb F exceeds 4%, it is likely that a gene for HPFH is also present. The relatively rare deletional forms tend to have higher levels of Hb F (up to 9%), and in a few families, in which the deletion included the promoter region, Hb F was found to be unusually high (up to 14%) (Weatherall & Clegg, 2001). In infants, a slower than normal decline in Hb F level is observed, and the

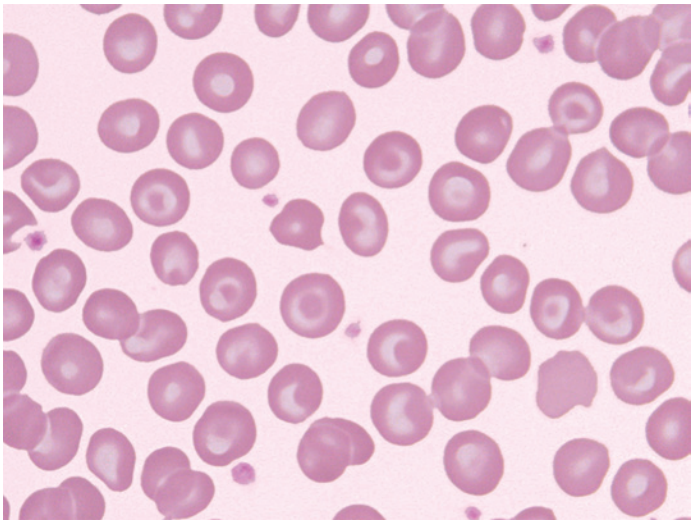


Figure 32-27 **β-Thalassemia trait.** Hypochromic, microcytic red blood cells with frequent targeting. Mild anemia.

adult steady-state level is not reached until adolescence. This is a particularly important consideration in double heterozygosity for β-thalassemia and Hb S, when Hb F level is used to predict prognosis.

β-Thalassemia Trait with Normal Hb A_2

In a few cases, both Hb A_2 and F are normal. These are difficult to distinguish from α-thalassemia trait, and only molecular studies might be definitive. The bulk of these cases results from the coinheritance of δ-thalassemia (Weatherall, 1994), either in *trans* or in *cis*, to the β-thalassemia gene. In other patients with normal Hb pattern, only minimal hematologic changes are noted (the "silent" β-thalassemia gene), and only a more severe β-thalassemia syndrome in a family member suggests the presence of a very mild β-thalassemia mutation.

Iron studies are little different from normal (Weatherall & Clegg, 2001), although iron deficiency often complicates thalassemia trait in childhood and during pregnancy. In severe iron deficiency, the level of Hb A_2 may fall into the normal range, thus obscuring the diagnosis of β-thalassemia trait, but this is unusual. Most often, although the level of A_2 falls, it remains elevated above the normal range (Weatherall & Clegg, 2001). Nevertheless, when iron deficiency is present, repeat measurement of Hb A_2 is recommended after replenishment of iron.

The differential diagnosis between iron deficiency and β- or α-thalassemia trait can be difficult. Increased RBCs in the presence of decreased MCV is the hallmark of thalassemia trait. An MCV/RBC ratio less than 13 suggests thalassemia trait; a ratio greater than 13 is more consistent with iron deficiency, but this and other formulas are not conclusive enough for diagnosis.

$δβ^0$-Thalassemia

This is sometimes called *F-thalassemia*, a helpful name, as you have to think of it when there are thalassemic indices and significantly increased levels of Hb F. β- and δ-chains are not produced; this is nearly, although not completely, compensated for by increased output of γ-chains. The heterozygous state is similar to a mild β-thalassemia trait, except that Hb A_2 is not increased or even slightly reduced (mean level is 2.4%), and Hb F is significantly increased (5.4% to 20%). In the homozygous state, hemoglobin consists of only Hb F.

Clinically, $(δβ)^0$-thalassemia behaves as a mild form of β-thalassemia. In the heterozygous state, the Hb is normal or slightly reduced, the MCH is between 21 and 26 pg, and the MCV is 65 to 79 fL. There are no clinical symptoms. Homozygotes have a mild form of thalassemia intermedia with a Hb level of 10 to 13 g/dL, mildly thalassemic red cell indices, and only minimal hepatosplenomegaly. It is most common in the Mediterranean population. The mild phenotype is the result of increased production of γ-chains, which compensate to some degree for the lack of β-chains.

The molecular defect is a long deletion involving the β- and δ- and often also the Aγ-gene. Twenty-one different deletions have been described (Globin Gene Server, 2015), but the hematologic findings are essentially the same. When the Aγ-gene is also deleted, the accurate nomenclature is $(Aγδβ)^0$-thalassemia; homozygotes have a somewhat more severe phenotype.

$δβ^+$-Thalassemia: Lepore Hemoglobins

In the Lepore hemoglobins, an abnormal δβ-fusion chain is produced, a result of chromosome crossing-over and fusion of genetic material at the δβ-genes. No normal δ- or β-chain synthesis is directed from the affected chromosome. Because Hb F production is only slightly increased and the composite δβ-chain is synthesized at a very slow rate, a severe thalassemic phenotype is produced. Hematologic abnormalities are similar to those seen in $β^0$-thalassemia. Hb Lepore migrates slightly faster than Hb S on alkaline electrophoresis and usually constitutes about 10% of total Hb in the heterozygotes; Hb A_2 averages 2%, and Hb F is 2% to 3% (Efremov et al, 1978). In homozygotes, Hb Lepore is 10% to 15%, and the rest is Hb F. Different Hb Lepores have been described, depending on the point of fusion, but they behave similarly. This is a much more severe thalassemia gene than the $(δβ)^0$ form and causes transfusion-dependent thalassemia major in the homozygous state.

In a similar mechanism, anti-Lepore hemoglobins have βδ-fusion gene. Several of these hemoglobins have been described, including P-Nilotic.

Hereditary Persistence of Fetal Hemoglobin

A group of conditions with persistence of fetal hemoglobin production beyond infancy, but without significant hematologic abnormalities, is known as HPFH. There are two major types: pancellular and heterocellular (or Swiss) HPFH.

The pancellular form of HPFH is closely related to β- and δβ-thalassemias, with which it forms a continuous spectrum. At one end of the spectrum is minimal γ-chain production with no compensation for deficiency of β-chains in β-thalassemia; at the other end, Hb F production is up and almost entirely compensates for the deficit in HPFH (Weatherall & Clegg, 2001). As a result, at least in heterozygotes, there is no clear evidence of thalassemia (except maybe borderline microcytosis in a few cases), and this serves as a criterion in diagnosis. In clinical practice, a patient with significantly elevated Hb F and reduced Hb A_2 is suspected to have HPFH if the red cell indices are normal, but is diagnosed with $δβ^0$-thalassemia if the indices are thalassemic. Nevertheless, there is a slight α/non–α-chain imbalance, and HPFH could be considered an extremely mild thalassemia. Hb F is homogeneously (evenly) distributed among the red cells (pancellular). This is in contrast to β- or δβ-thalassemia, in which the distribution is heterocellular. Pancellular HPFH is relatively rare. It is found in about 0.1% of African Americans and even less frequently in other ethnic groups.

Deletional Pancellular HPFH

In the six deletional forms, the δβ-gene complex is deleted. The black and Ghanaian forms are the most common, but Indian, Italian, and Southeast Asian forms are also well documented. Homozygotes have slightly microcytic, hypochromic red cells, but no anemia. Hb F is 100%; no Hb A or Hb A_2 is present. The Hct can even be high—a result of high O_2 affinity of Hb F. In the heterozygote, no hematologic abnormalities are found. Hb F is 15% to 30%, and Hb A_2 is decreased at 1% to 2.1%.

Hb Kenya

This is a Hb analogous to the Lepore Hbs, which is associated with an HPFH phenotype. It contains an ^{A}γβ-fusion gene. In the heterozygote, Hb Kenya is around 10%, F is 7%, and A_2 is reduced.

Nondeletional Pancellular HPFH

A mutation in the promoter region of one of the γ-genes results in increased synthesis of Hb F. Output from the δ- and β-genes in *cis* is reduced. Levels of Hb F range from 3% to 31% in the different forms, Hb A_2 is invariably low, and the red cell indices are close to normal. There are two particulars to keep in mind. First, β-chain synthesis is decreased, but not absent from the affected chromosome, and compound heterozygotes of this form of HPFH and Hb S on the other chromosome do have Hb A (≈30%). The hemoglobin composition is similar to that seen in Hb S/β+-thalassemia, except that Hb A_2 is reduced. Second, it is not rare to find it together with an α-thalassemia gene, which is highly prevalent in African Americans.

Heterocellular or Swiss-type HPFH

Heterocellular or Swiss-type HPFH has less Hb F, ranging from 2% to 5%. The distribution of Hb F is uneven (heterocellular): Both F cells and erythrocytes completely lacking Hb F are present. It was first described among healthy Swiss army recruits but is present in other populations and is quite common. It is caused by polymorphic variations at three well-known and other lesser known loci that regulate adult Hb F production (Thein & Menzel, 2009). In normals or in carriers of β-thalassemia or Hb S, there is only a minimal increase in Hb F. When inherited with Hb SS

TABLE 32-8
α-Thalassemia Syndromes

Syndrome	Defective Genes	Genotype	Clinical Features	Newborn	After First Year
Hydrops fetalis	4	—/—	Fetal or neonatal death with severe anemia	Hb Bart's >80% Hb H, Hb Portland	
Hb H disease	3	—/–α (—/ααᶜˢ)	Chronic hemolytic anemia	Hb Bart's 20%-40% (Hb CS)	Hb H 5%-30% (Hb CS 2%-3%)
Thalassemia minor	2	—/αα –α/–α αᵀα/–α	Asymptomatic, mild anemia, thalassemic indices	Hb Bart's 5%-10%	None
Silent carrier	1	–α/αα (αα/ααᶜˢ)	No clinical or hematologic abnormality	Hb Bart's ±1%-2% (Hb CS)	None (Hb CS 1%)

Modified from Wintrobe MM, Lee GR, Boggs DR, et al: *Clinical hematology,* ed 8, Philadelphia, 1981, Lea & Febiger.
Hb, Hemoglobin.

or homozygous β-thalassemia, however, the result could be an unusually high level of Hb F and milder disease.

α-Thalassemias

α-thalassemia is probably the most common single-gene disorder in humans. Its distribution is largely limited to tropical and subtropical regions of Asia and Africa and the Mediterranean (Higgs et al, 1989), where it reaches extremely high frequencies.

Two α-globin genes are present on each chromosome 16. α-thalassemias are classified according to the total output of these two linked α-globin genes. In α^0-thalassemia, both genes are inactive (– –/), but in α^+-thalassemia, only one gene is defective as the result of deletion (–α/) or, less frequently, of mutation ($\alpha^T\alpha$/). Nondeletional forms usually result in less globin output from the linked α-gene and more severe phenotypes. Rarely, the chromosome has a deletion and a separate mutation (α^T–/). Previously, α^0 and α^+ were called α-thalassemia 1 and 2. This was rather confusing, as the milder defect with one affected gene was called α-thalassemia 2, and the more severe genotype with two defective genes, α-thalassemia 1. Alternatively, these terms were also used to describe clinical phenotypes.

Unlike the extremely unstable α-chains in β-thalassemia, excess β- and γ-chains can form stable tetramers, hemoglobin H (β_4), and Bart's (γ_4). These precipitate in aging red cells and, through interaction with the cell membrane, cause hemolysis. This is mostly a hemolytic anemia, whereas in β-thalassemia, ineffective erythropoiesis predominates.

α-Thalassemia Syndromes

Four α-thalassemia syndromes result from the combination of these genotypes (Bunn & Forget, 1986), which roughly correspond to the loss of 4, 3, 2, or 1 genes from the normal complement (αα/αα) (Table 32-8). In the following discussion, nondeletion forms are not always depicted separately, for the sake of simplicity.

Hemoglobin Bart's Hydrops Fetalis (– –/– –). Complete absence of α-chains is incompatible with life. Infants are stillborn with severe edema, marked anemia, and marked hepatosplenomegaly. The blood shows marked anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, microcytosis, and erythroblastosis. ABO or Rh incompatibility is absent. Because of the absence of α-chains, no Hb A or Hb F is present. Large quantities of Hb Bart's (γ_4), a variable amount of Hb Portland, and traces of Hb H (β_4) are present; all of these migrate faster than Hb A on alkaline electrophoresis. Hb Bart's is functionally useless for O_2 transfer, causing extreme intrauterine hypoxia.

Hemoglobin H Disease (–α/– –). Three of the four α-genes are absent. A chronic hemolytic anemia occurs with the clinical picture of thalassemia intermedia in a minority of cases, although the severity varies, and most patients do well. Hb H disease is very common in Southeast Asia but is also seen in the Mediterranean and the Middle East; it is very rare, however, in black people, as α^0-thalassemia is uncommon in this group. Splenomegaly and sometimes hepatomegaly are present. Hb values average 3 g/dL less than in age- and sex-matched controls. Transfusion is rarely needed. The anemia may become more severe during pregnancy, but the Hb rarely falls below 7 g/dL. The MCV (60 to 70 fL) and MCH (17 to 21 pg) are decreased (Higgs et al, 1989), and RBC is increased (6 to 6.2 M/μL). The blood film shows hypochromia, basophilic stippling, and anisopoikilocytosis with target cells (Fig. 32-28). Reticulocytes range from 4% to 5%.

Hemoglobin electrophoresis shows a rapidly migrating band of Hb H (β4), accounting for 1% to 40% (average 9%) of the hemoglobin, and the slightly less rapidly migrating Hb Bart's in half of the cases. Hb H can precipitate and be lost from the hemolysate in vitro by careless handling or prolonged storage. In old hemolysates, Hb H appears as a series of bands on electrophoresis. The percentage of Hb Bart's is 2% to 40% at birth; it gradually falls thereafter, averaging 4.8%, but the level in adults is variable. As in other α-thalassemia syndromes, more Hb Bart's is present at birth than Hb H in adult life. Hb A_2 is diminished.

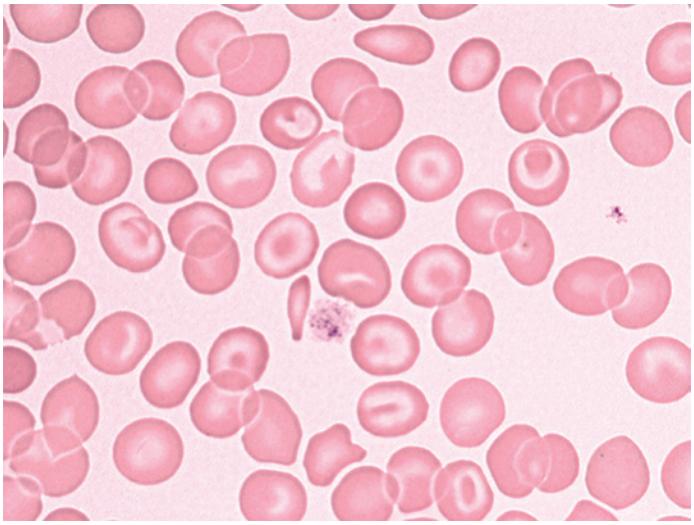


Figure 32-28 **Hemoglobin H disease.** Mild anemia and target cells.

Hemoglobin H preparation. Vital staining of the blood with an oxidizing dye such as brilliant cresyl blue induces inclusion bodies (Hb H precipitates) in many of the red blood cells. During incubation of two parts of blood in one part of 1% brilliant cresyl blue stain, the unstable Hb H (β_4) gradually precipitates as multiple small pale blue inclusions uniformly distributed on the red cell membrane (Fig. 32-29) (Jones et al, 1981). Hb H inclusions must be distinguished from (1) the granules and reticular networks of reticulocytes, which are darker blue in color and (2) preformed Heinz bodies, which are larger, also darker blue, and are often attached to the membrane. After 20 minutes of incubation at room temperature, Hb H inclusions are present in at least half of the red cells in Hb H disease, and in rare red cells in α-thalassemia trait. The larger, single Heinz bodies may be found after splenectomy in Hb H disease.

α-Thalassemia Trait: Heterozygous α^0-Thalassemia (– –/αα) or Homozygous α^+-Thalassemia (–α/–α). Absence of two α-genes results in clinical features similar to β-thalassemia trait with very mild anemia and thalassemic indices, with MCV ranging from 65 to 75 fL (Higgs et al, 1989). The α-chain/β-chain synthesis ratio is decreased (≈0.6). Diagnosis is best made at birth, by finding 5% to 10% Hb Bart's in cord blood; in normals only trace amounts (<0.5%) are present. In adults, Hb Bart's is undetectable, and Hb studies are perfectly normal, except that Hb A_2 might be slightly reduced. Hb H inclusions are found in α^0-thalassemia, but rarely in heterozygous or homozygous α^+-thalassemia, and only in a very small percentage of red cells, if exhaustively sought after (Wasi et al, 1974), and if the sample is enriched for Hb H-containing red cells (Jones et al, 1981). Otherwise, no evidence of Hb

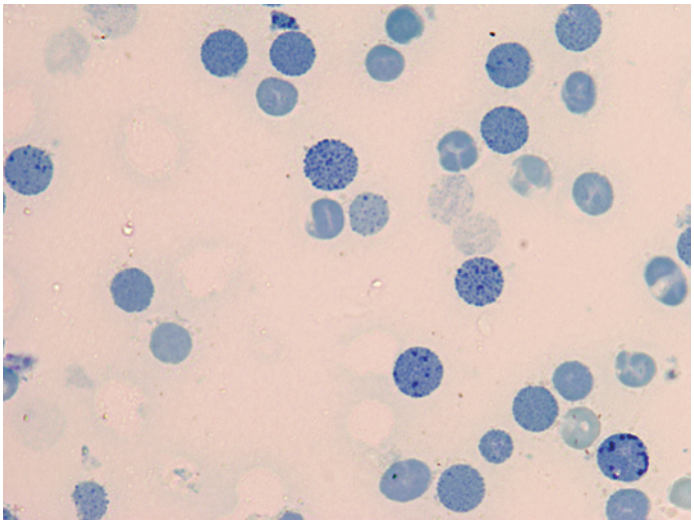


Figure 32-29 **Hemoglobin H preparation.** Film made after incubation of blood with brilliant cresyl blue. Several red blood cells contain multiple small pale blue inclusions.

imbalance is detectable by standard techniques, and the diagnosis is one of excluding iron deficiency, anemia of chronic disease, and β-thalassemia trait. In contrast to β-thalassemia, Hb F is normal, and Hb A_2 is normal or decreased. This condition is absolutely benign, and most patients are diagnosed on routine screening. Hematologic findings are identical in the two distinct genotypes found in different populations: (– –/αα), common in Southeast Asia and the Mediterranean and exceedingly rare in black people, and (–α–α), most common in those of African descent.

Silent Carrier α-Thalassemia (Heterozygous α^+-Thalassemia) (αα/–α). In this condition, one of four α-globin genes is absent. Hematologic findings are normal, except that the MCV might be slightly reduced, with a mean value of 81 fL and a range of 75 to 85 fL, and the MCH might be minimally decreased; many times, however, the red cell indices are perfectly normal. During the neonatal period, heterozygous α^+-thalassemia can be diagnosed by a raised level of Hb Bart's (1% to 2%) in the cord blood. Hb Bart's disappears by 6 months of age, and the diagnosis can be made only by molecular or globin chain synthesis studies. Because only 40% of newborns with the heterozygous α^+-thalassemia genotype have detectable Hb Bart's in their cord blood (Higgs et al, 1982), failure to detect Hb Bart's in the newborn does not rule out silent carrier α-thalassemia, and newborn screening should not be used to rule out this entity.

From large studies comparing hematologic findings of different genotypes, it became apparent that there is a continuum between normal, silent carrier, and α-thalassemia trait. Because there is no clear separation between one- and two-gene defects, some authors group these together as milder α-thalassemia phenotypes. None of the α-thalassemia genes or their combinations can be identified with certainty without molecular studies.

Hemoglobin Constant Spring ($\alpha^{CS}\alpha$/). Hb Constant Spring is due to an abnormal termination codon in an α-gene that results in an elongated α-chain with 31 extra amino acids. It is by far the most common of the elongated α-chain variants. Because of marked reduction in mRNA stability, the clinical phenotype of α-thalassemia is seen. Similar to other nondeletional α^+-thalassemia genes, it causes a more severe phenotype. The homozygous state appears as an asymptomatic, mild hemolytic anemia, with a Hb level of 9 to 11 g/dL. The red cell indices are unusual for thalassemia: The MCV is normal (88 fL), and the RBC is low (3.9 M/μL). Hemoglobin consists of 5% to 8% Hb CS, normal Hb A_2, trace amounts of Hb Bart's, and the rest Hb A (Weatherall, 1994). Heterozygotes have a silent carrier phenotype with no hematologic abnormality and about 1% Hb CS. Hb CS undergoes proteolysis and appears as 1 to 4 faint bands migrating either slightly slower or slightly faster than Hb A_2 at alkaline pH and is easily missed. Hb CS is common in Southeast Asia, where it is found in about 50% of cases of Hb H disease ($\alpha^{CS}\alpha$/– –).

Screening and Prenatal Diagnosis of Hemoglobin Disorders

In populations in which there is a significant incidence of severe forms of thalassemia or sickle cell anemia, women should be screened early in pregnancy for thalassemia and the sickle cell trait (Weatherall, 1985, 2010; Alter, 1988). If both parents are carriers, prevention of severe disease is possible through genetic counseling and offering prenatal diagnosis with the option of therapeutic abortion. In many high-frequency regions, successful screening of schoolchildren or premarital counseling has been implemented. Initial tests include MCV (<80 fL), MCH (<27 pg), and HPLC to estimate Hb A2 (>3.5%) (cutoff values in parentheses) and to detect common Hb variants.

HEMOLYSIS—METABOLIC DISORDERS

Deficient enzyme activity in the erythrocyte may result in abnormalities that lead to premature destruction and hemolytic anemia; these disorders are usually inherited. However, interference with, or oxidative stress on, erythrocyte metabolism can sometimes result in hemolysis in individuals who have normal erythrocytes.

Erythrocyte Metabolism

The mature red blood cell lacks mitochondria and, therefore, lacks oxidative phosphorylation and Krebs cycle activity. Energy production is mainly glycolytic, 90% of which occurs through the Embden-Meyerhof pathway, as glucose goes to lactic acid with the net production of 2 mol of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) (Fig. 32-30). ATP is needed for energy-requiring reactions in the cell: for active cation transport across the membrane, for maintaining membrane deformability, and for preserving the cell's biconcave shape. Glucose uptake by red cells is independent of insulin. Approximately 90% of glucose is consumed in the glycolytic pathway, while 10% is utilized in the pentose phosphate pathway (hexose monophosphate [HMP] shunt). One step of the glycolytic pathway replenishes NADH (reducing agent derived from nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide [NAD]), which plays a major role in protecting Hb from oxidative stress. Most of the hemiglobin (methemoglobin) produced in the normal cell (about 3% of the total per day) is reduced by NAD-linked methemoglobin (Met Hb) reductase. The HMP shunt generates nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) in the first two steps through the enzymes G6PD and 6-phosphogluconate. NADPH production is linked to glutathione reduction and, through this mechanism, to preservation of vital enzymes and Hb from oxidation. Small amounts of oxidized hemoglobin (methemoglobin) are reduced by glutathione (GSH). The activity of the HMP shunt increases when the cell is exposed to an oxidant drug, probably as a result of increased NADP production. If an enzyme in this pathway lacks activity, GSH cannot be produced and it will remain in its oxidized form as GSSG, and thus Hb will not be protected from the oxidant stress. Oxidation in the red blood cells is mediated by high-energy derivatives of O_2, referred to collectively as *activated* O_2 (van Solinge & van Wijk, 2010). Oxidized globin chains denature and precipitate as Heinz bodies, which adhere to the membrane, inducing rigidity and a tendency to lyse. Moderate enzyme deficiencies in this pathway (e.g., in G6PD) may not be associated with anemia under normal conditions; however, an acute hemolytic episode occurs if the cells are challenged by oxidant stress (e.g., drugs, infection).

Deficiencies in the Embden-Meyerhof pathway result in impaired ATP generation and a chronic hemolytic anemia. The mechanism of red cell destruction here is less clear. Heinz bodies are not formed. Lack of cell deformability and impaired cation pumping are important in the hemolytic process. However, ATP deficiency is difficult to demonstrate in many patients, and other disorders associated with more severe ATP deficiency are not associated with significant hemolysis (van Solinge & van Wijk, 2010).

The Rapoport-Luebering shunt provides for the conversion of 1,3-diphosphoglycerate (1,3-DPG) to 2,3-DPG instead of directly to 3-phosphoglycerate (3-PG) (see Fig. 32-30). If this shunt is operating, generation of 2 mol of ATP (per mole of glucose) is bypassed; the result is no net energy production in glycolysis. However, 2,3-DPG combines with the β-chain of Hb and decreases the affinity of Hb for O_2. At a given pO_2, therefore, increased 2,3-DPG allows more O_2 to leave Hb and go to the tissues; the O_2 dissociation curve is shifted to the right. Increased activity of this shunt is apparently stimulated by hypoxia.

Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency

About 10% of male American blacks who were given the antimalarial drug primaquine during the Korean War developed a self-limited, acute hemolytic anemia (Beutler, 1994). The relationship between antimalarial drugs and hemolysis had been observed earlier in the 1920s (Beutler & Luzzatto, 1999). Only the older red cells were destroyed, and it was eventually determined that the deficiency in susceptible red cells was in G6PD.

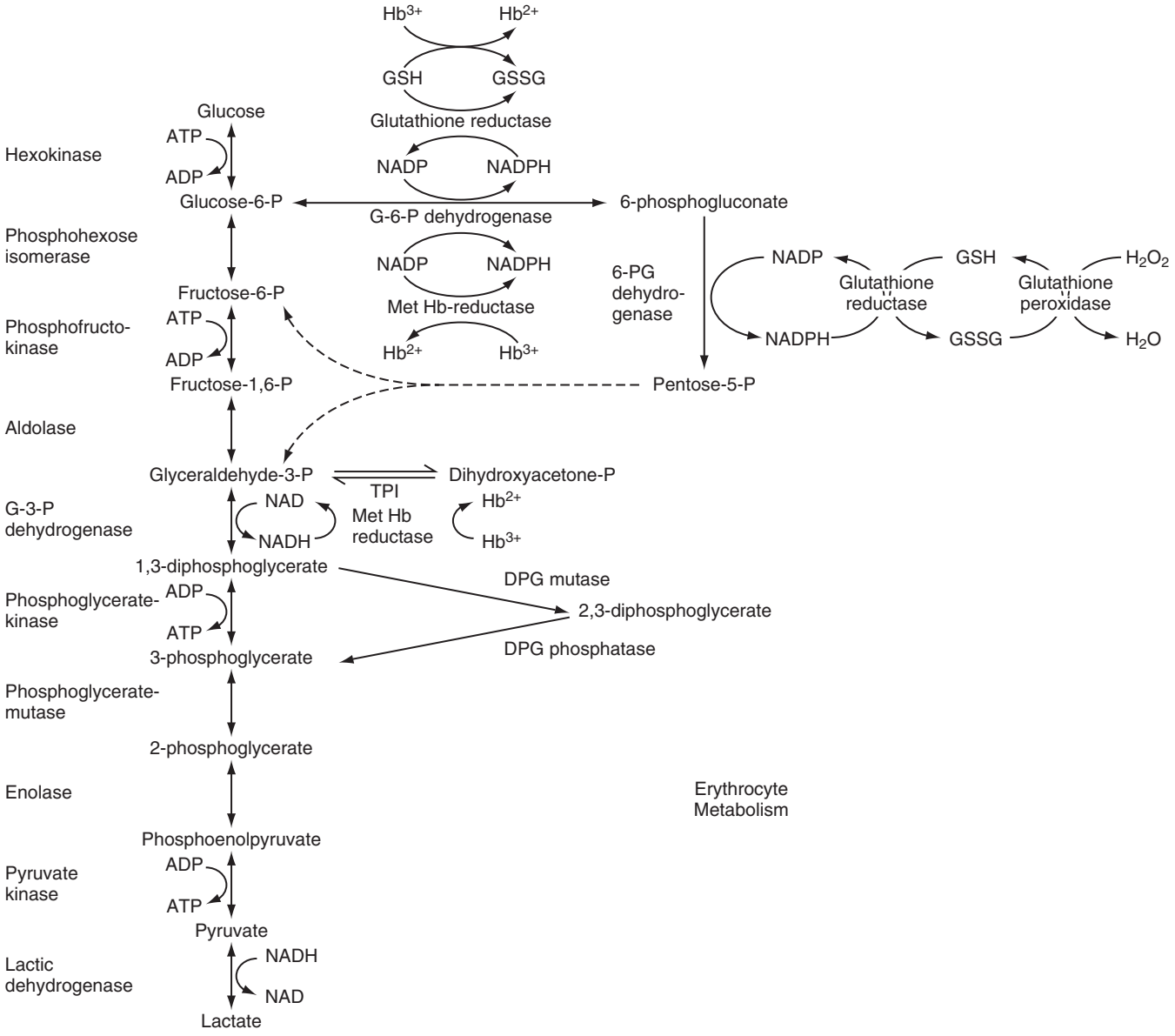


Figure 32-30 Erythrocyte metabolism (see text). Normally, most hemiglobin (methemoglobin, Hb^{+}++) is reduced to hemoglobin (Hb^{+}+) by nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide–linked methemoglobin reductase (NAD, Met Hb reductase). Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADP)-linked methemoglobin reductase requires methylene blue for activation and is more effective in drug-induced methemoglobinemia than the normal cell mechanism. *GSH,* Reduced glutathione; *GSSG,* oxidized glutathione.

Reticulocytes have five times higher enzyme activity than the oldest erythrocyte population (van Solinge & van Wijk, 2010). It has since been found that G6PD deficiency is widespread throughout the world. Among whites, the highest incidence is in Kurdish Jews; the deficiency is common in the Middle East, in Mediterranean countries, and in Asia. G6PD deficiency is the most common human enzyme defect and is present in more than 400 million people worldwide (Cappellini & Fiorelli, 2008).

G6PD is present in all cells; however, its concentration varies in different tissues. In healthy red cells, the enzyme operates at only 1% to 2% of its maximal potential, allowing for a large reserve of reductive potential (Cappellini & Fiorelli, 2008). Because G6PD is determined by a gene on the X chromosome, full expression of the deficiency is found in the male hemizygote. Partial expression may be found in the heterozygous female, who has two populations of red cells—one normal and one deficient. The deficiency of G6PD limits the regeneration of NADPH, which renders the cell vulnerable to oxidative denaturation of Hb. Because, normally, G6PD is highest in young cells and decreases as the cell ages, in persons with G6PD deficiency, the older cells are preferentially destroyed.

Hemolytic susceptibility in affected persons can increase greatly during intercurrent illness or upon exposure to various drugs that have oxidant properties (Box 32-1).

The genetic heterogeneity is great, and approximately 400 biochemical variants have been defined. This genetic heterogeneity is expressed as variations in stability and the electrophoretic and catalytic properties of the enzymes, in the degree of deficiency, in the types of cells in the body affected, in the types of drugs that will produce hemolysis, and in susceptibility to chronic hemolysis or to neonatal jaundice. The most common ("normal") G6PD isoenzyme in all population groups is designated as B. In blacks, an electrophoretically more rapid variant, A, is prevalent and has almost the same activity; 20% of black males have this variant. Eleven percent of black males have the A type of G6PD, which involves only 5% to 15% of normal enzyme activity; it is these individuals who are susceptible to hemolysis after ingesting oxidant drugs or during infection. The most common variant in whites is G6PD-Mediterranean, found in Mediterranean populations; the level of enzyme activity in affected males is low—often less than 1%. These individuals usually are not anemic but may have somewhat more severe and non–self-limited hemolytic anemia with infection, and with a wider variety of drugs than the black variant. In a subgroup of G6PD-deficient subjects, severe hemolysis may occur within hours after eating fava beans ("favism"). Although the vast majority of G6PD-deficient subjects worldwide are not anemic, a small proportion of persons with G6PD-Mediterranean (and persons with some rarer variants)

BOX 32-1

Drugs and Chemicals That Have Clearly Been Shown to Cause Clinically Significant Hemolytic Anemia in G6PD Deficiency

Acetanilid
Methylene blue
Nalidixic acid (NegGram)
Naphthalene
Niridazole (Ambilhar)
Nitrofurantoin (Furadantin)
Pamaquine
Pentaquine
Phenylhydrazine
Primaquine
Sulfacetamide
Sulfanilamide
Sulfamethoxazole (Gantanol)
Sulfapyridine
Thiazolesulfone
Toluidine blue
Trinitrotoluene (TNT)

From Beutler E: *Hemolytic anemia in disorders of red cell metabolism,* New York, 1978, Plenum Medical Book Company.
G6PD, Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase.

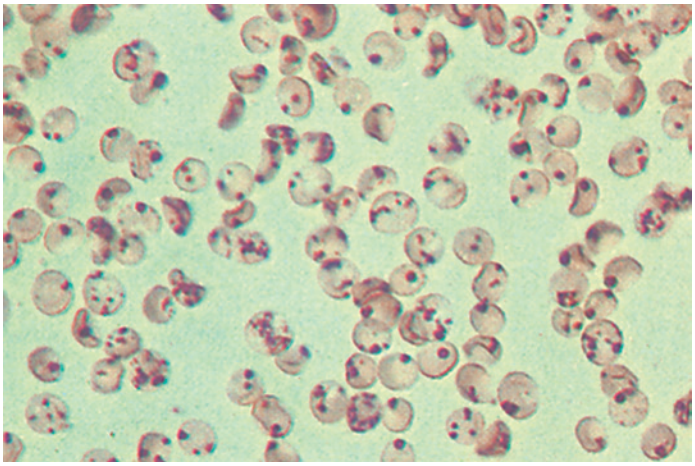


Figure 32-31 Heinz bodies. Normal red cells incubated with an oxidant drug and stained while in suspension with methyl violet; finally, an air-dried film was made and stained with Wright's stain. Purple-staining Heinz bodies are precipitates of denatured hemoglobin that tend to attach to the cell membrane.

have a chronic nonspherocytic hemolytic anemia. G6PD deficiency is a common cause of neonatal jaundice, occurring in approximately one third of all male neonates with jaundice (Cappellini & Fiorelli, 2008). Jaundice is usually evident by 1 to 4 days of age and is more severe in premature babies than in full-term infants.

Laboratory findings during active hemolysis are those of hemolytic anemia in general. In the blood film, one finds poikilocytes, some spherocytes, bite cells, and irregularly contracted cells that stain densely and have contraction of Hb from a part of the cell membrane. These probably are cells from which Heinz bodies have been removed by the spleen. After supravital staining with methyl violet, Heinz bodies may be present early in an acute hemolytic episode. G6PD deficiency may be detected by one of the screening tests: the dye reduction test, the ascorbate cyanide test, or a fluorescent spot test. Confirmation is made with a quantitative assay.

Heinz Bodies

When a globin chain denatures, it forms precipitates that are known as Heinz bodies (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). These precipitates cannot be detected in Romanowsky's-stained, air-dried blood films, but after vital staining with methyl violet or crystal violet, Heinz bodies stain deep purple. They vary from 1 to 4 μm in diameter and often attach to the red cell membrane. They also stain, but less intensely, as pale blue inclusions in reticulocyte stains (e.g., new methylene blue) (Fig. 32-31).

The presence of Heinz bodies in freshly drawn blood indicates that (1) an oxidizing drug or chemical (e.g., phenylhydrazine, chlorate, naphthalene, dapsone) has been ingested in sufficient amount to overwhelm the normal protective mechanisms of the red cell and denature Hb; (2) a drug such as primaquine has been ingested by an individual with G6PD deficiency (or another defect resulting in a deficiency of reduced glutathione), so that Hb is not protected from oxidative denaturation; or (3) the subject has an unstable Hb.

Ascorbate Cyanide Test

When blood is incubated with a solution of sodium cyanide and sodium ascorbate, hydrogen peroxide is generated from the coupled oxidation of ascorbate and oxyhemoglobin (Dacie & Lewis, 1991). Cyanide inhibits catalase, hydrogen peroxide is available to oxidize Hb, and the brown color of methemoglobin is discernible. This occurs more rapidly in G6PD-deficient cells than in normal cells.

The ascorbate cyanide test is not specific, in that abnormalities in the glutathione synthesis or maintenance pathways can produce positive results.

Fluorescent Spot Test

Whole blood is added to a mixture of glucose-6-phosphate (G6P), NADP, saponin, and buffer, and a spot of this mixture is placed on filter paper and is observed for fluorescence with ultraviolet light. If G6PD is present, NADP is converted to NADPH. Because phosphogluconate dehydrogenase is present in most hemolysates, further NADP is converted to NADPH (see Fig. 32-30). NADPH fluoresces, but NADP does not. The normal control sample fluoresces brightly, and lack of fluorescence indicates G6PD deficiency. By reoxidizing any small amounts of NADPH formed, oxidized glutathione (GSSG) enhances the ability of the test to detect mild G6PD deficiency. This is the recommended screening test for G6PD deficiency (Beutler et al, 1979).

Quantitative Assay of G6PD. For G6PD, most assays are based on the rate of reduction of NADP to NADPH, measured spectrometrically at 340 nm, when a hemolysate is incubated with G6P (Beutler, 1984). In heterozygotes or in acute hemolysis in black subjects with G6PD deficiency, the diagnosis may be obscured even with the assay, because of increased levels of G6PD in reticulocytes and younger erythrocytes. Usually, however, the ascorbate cyanide screening test will be positive in these instances.

Pyruvate Kinase (PK) Deficiency

The most common red cell enzyme deficiency involving the Embden-Meyerhof glycolytic pathway, PK deficiency results in mild to moderately severe nonspherocytic chronic hemolytic anemia with splenomegaly. The prevalence of PK deficiency is estimated to be 1:20,000 in the general white population (Zanella et al, 2005). The anemia may be detected in infancy, or not until adult life in milder cases. Neonatal jaundice occurs in more than half of cases, which may require exchange transfusion. Patients tend to tolerate the anemia rather well because of high levels of 2,3-DPG, which occur as a result of the block in glycolysis. The blood film may show no notable red cell abnormalities until after splenectomy, when echinocytes, irregularly contracted cells, and crenated red cells may be prominent. Reticulocyte counts are elevated and increase further after splenectomy.

PK isoenzymes are produced by two separate genes: one on chromosome 15, encoding the M (muscle) isoforms, and the other on chromosome 1, encoding the L (liver) and R (red cell) isoforms. The complexity of PK isoforms is further complicated by the fact that functional enzyme is a tetramer. Inheritance is autosomal recessive, but this is probably true only in consanguineous families. PK mutants are numerous and are not detected in phenotypically normal heterozygotes that have one half the normal PK activity. Most individuals with PK-deficient hemolytic anemias are therefore probably double heterozygotes for two mutant genes (Valentine, 1979). Acquired PK deficiency occurs occasionally in myelodysplastic disorders and leukemias (Valentine, 1979; Miwa, 1981).

The autohemolysis test gives variable results. Some patients show only a mild increase in autohemolysis that is partially prevented by glucose (type I), and others have a greater increase that is not prevented by glucose (type II). Heinz bodies are not found. The diagnosis is made by a specific screening test or enzyme assay.

The reticulocyte count in unsplenectomized patients is usually increased, although not proportional to the degree of anemia, because younger PK-deficient erythrocytes are selectively sequestered in the spleen (Zanella et al, 2005). Splenectomy is indicated in cases requiring transfusions. After splenectomy, the Hb concentration usually increases by 1 to 2 g/dL and the reticulocytes increase sharply, although hemolysis persists (Miwa, 1981).

Fluorescent Spot Test. Pyruvate kinase catalyzes the phosphorylation of adenosine diphosphate (ADP) to ATP by phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) with the formation of pyruvate (Beutler, 1984). Pyruvate then reduces any NADH present to NAD with the formation of lactate (see Fig. 32-30). Loss of fluorescence of NADH under ultraviolet light is observed as evidence of the presence of PK.

Leukocytes must be removed from the sample because they normally contain about 300 times as much PK as red cells do, and in PK deficiency, the red cells but not the leukocytes are deficient.

Quantitative Assay of PK. The same principle is employed as in the screening test, but the rate of decrease of absorbance at 340 nm is measured. A negative screening test or a normal PK assay (using the standard high substrate [PEP] concentrations) does not rule out PK-deficient hemolytic anemia. Because mutant PK enzymes may have normal activity at high PEP concentrations and decreased activity at low PEP concentrations, it is necessary to perform the assay both ways (Beutler, 1984).

Other Glycolytic Enzyme Deficiencies

Other enzyme deficiencies in the **Embden-Meyerhof pathway** are rarer (Beutler, 1994; van Solinge & van Wijk, 2010). When severe, they produce hemolytic anemia, with two exceptions: (1) LDH deficiency has no clinical manifestations; and (2) deficiencies of 2,3-DPG mutase and 2,3-DPG phosphatase activities occur together and result in erythrocytosis as a result of lack of 2,3-DPG, shifting the O_2 dissociation curve of Hb to the left, and relative tissue hypoxia.

Other enzyme deficiencies in the **hexose monophosphate shunt** are rare. They include the two enzymes involved in glutathione synthesis: γ-glutamyl cysteine synthase and glutathione synthetase. As in G6PD deficiency, hemolysis increases with oxidant drug exposure or infection.

No good evidence is available, however, for the causation of chronic hemolytic anemia by 6-phosphogluconate deficiency, catalase, enolase, glutathione reductase (GR) deficiency, or glutathione peroxidase (GP_x) deficiency (Beutler, 1994; van Solinge & van Wijk, 2010). GR contains flavine-adenine dinucleotide and is often partially deficient because of dietary riboflavin deficiency. GP_x is one-half normal in about 30% of the Jewish population as a result of homozygosity for a gene with low GP_x activity; in addition, GP_x activity is dependent on selenium intake in the diet. In neither case is there an association with a hematologic disorder.

Pyrimidine-5′-Nucleotidase Deficiency

When RNA is degraded in the reticulocyte, pyrimidine nucleotides must be dephosphorylated by pyrimidine-5′-nucleotidase (PN) to cross the red cell membrane (Paglia & Valentine, 1981). Autosomal recessive PN deficiency results in accumulation of pyrimidines, and the impaired degradation of RNA results in pronounced basophilic stippling in red cells on the blood film. This is probably one of the more common enzyme deficiencies responsible for nonspherocytic hereditary hemolytic anemia, once G6PD and PK deficiencies are excluded (Rees et al, 2003).

The disorder is characterized by mild to moderate chronic hemolysis, jaundice, reticulocytosis (≈10%), marked basophilic stippling (about 5% of the red cells), and splenomegaly without notable improvement after splenectomy. However, no cases of transfusion dependency associated with PN deficiency have been reported (Rees et al, 2003). A screening test compares the ultraviolet absorption of deproteinized extracts of red cells at 260 nm with that at 280 nm. In PN deficiency, the major absorption peak is shifted from the normal 260 nm to 280 nm, which is the maximum for the pyrimidines uridine diphosphate and cytidine diphosphate. Confirmation requires an assay showing decreased nucleotidase activity (Beutler, 1984).

Acquired PN deficiency occurs in lead poisoning and is probably responsible for the basophilic stippling in that condition. It has been also reported in β-thalassemia trait, acute leukemias, chronic myeloid leukemia, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, and lymphomas (Rees et al, 2003).

HEMOLYSIS—ACQUIRED; EXTRINSIC

Chemical Agents

Agents Hemolytic to Normal Cells

The action of chemical agents depends on the dose and on other factors, many of which are known only vaguely. They range from simple substances, such as water, to some that are highly complex. When used as irrigating fluid, distilled water may be found responsible for acute hemolytic anemia as a result of entry into venous channels during transurethral resection. Also, drowning in fresh water may be associated with red cell hemolysis, particularly in the lungs, although drowning in salt water could cause profound red cell hydration (Schrier & Price, 2009).

In addition to anemia, some chemicals produce methemoglobinemia, which can manifest as cyanosis (toluene, trinitrotoluene, nitrobenzene, acetanilide, and phenacetin). Some may lead to AA (toluene and trinitrotoluene). Promin, a sulfone derivative, makes blood turn chocolate brown because of the formation of sulfhemoglobins. As mentioned earlier, ribavirin, a drug used in the treatment of hepatitis C virus infection, may produce a dose-dependent hemolytic anemia in about one third of patients.

Lead toxicity may produce progressive anemia, with basophilic stippling, reticulocytosis, normoblastemia, Cabot rings, Howell-Jolly bodies, and leukocytosis. Lead not only causes damage to the red cell and hemolysis, but also produces defects in the heme synthetic pathway. In cases of chronic exposure to lead, basophilic stippling, more in the marrow than in the peripheral blood, ring sideroblasts, and coproporphyrinuria are the characteristic findings. These changes produce defective erythrocytes, which are removed by the spleen.

Agents Hemolytic to Abnormal Cells

Certain drugs and chemicals that have oxidizing activity may produce hemolytic anemia in individuals with G6PD deficiency or other defects resulting in glutathione deficiency. In addition, unstable hemoglobins, such as Hb Zürich, have a propensity for drug-induced hemolytic anemia. Premature infants, although they have high levels of G6PD, have glutathione instability and low levels of glutathione and may develop hemolytic anemia when given large doses of synthetic water-soluble analogs of vitamin K.

It must be remembered that, if exposure to these oxidant substances is great enough, acute hemolytic anemia may be produced in normal individuals.

During the acute hemolytic episode, Heinz bodies can be demonstrated frequently by direct staining of blood with methyl violet. Red cells with Heinz bodies are removed from the circulation by the spleen, or the Heinz bodies are extracted from the red cells by splenic action. Therefore, Heinz bodies may not be found in the blood if the spleen is effectively removing them, or after the acute hemolytic process has abated.

Tests for G6PD deficiency, the most common underlying cause of drug-sensitive hemolytic anemia, are described earlier in this chapter.

Physical Agents

Heat

Extensive burns produce hemolytic anemia, probably because of direct damage to red cells. Gross hemoglobinuria may occur in patients with severe burns. The blood film may show remarkable morphologic abnormalities of the red cells, including budding fragmentation of the membrane and microspherocytosis. The most severe abnormalities are often found immediately after extensive burns before a reticulocyte response has had time to develop. Badly damaged cells are rapidly removed from the circulation.

Traumatic Hemolysis

Hemolytic anemia characterized by striking morphologic abnormalities of the red cells, which include fragments (schistocytes) and irregularly contracted cells (triangular cells, helmet cells), has been attributed to physical trauma to the red cells. The International Council for Standardization in Haematology (ICSH) recommends the classification of schistocytes into four categories (crescentic/triangular, keratocytes, helmet cells, and microspherocytes), and it also recommends the use of 1% threshold to designate increased schistocytes (Zini et al, 2012). The basis of the hemolytic process is probably damage to the red cells in their contact with loose fibrin meshworks (intravascular coagulation) or with pathologic vascular lesions. Fragmentation of the cells results with or without intravascular lysis. Two general categories are recognized in this group of disorders, aptly termed *red cell fragmentation syndrome: macroangiopathic* and *microangiopathic.*

Macroangiopathic Hemolytic Anemia (Cardiac Valvular Disease and Prostheses). Chronic intravascular hemolysis associated with low serum haptoglobin, hemosiderinuria, reticulocytosis, and red cell abnormalities (e.g., schistocytes, irregularly contracted cells) may occur after surgical replacement of a diseased heart valve with a prosthesis or after surgical repair of a septal defect with a plastic patch (Erslev, 2001b). This has been attributed to mechanical damage of red cells in the turbulent environment of a leaky valve or of a roughened surface uncovered by endothelial cells. Repair of the valve or coverage of the patch by endothelium has improved the hemolytic process. Other studies have shown that some patients with cardiac valvular disease have a hemolytic process that may be altered by surgery.

External mechanical trauma has been reported in **march hemoglobinuria,** a condition that is seen in soldiers after a long march and in joggers and other athletes following long practices, particularly on hard surfaces. In this condition, anemia and reticulocytosis are uncommon. The chronic intravascular hemolysis may lead to iron deficiency as a result of loss of Hb in the urine.

Thrombotic Microangiopathy (Microangiopathic Hemolytic Anemia). Thrombotic microangiopathies (TMAs) are microvascular occlusive disorders characterized by systemic or intrarenal aggregation of platelets, thrombocytopenia, and mechanical injury to erythrocytes. Fragmented red cells (e.g., schistocytes, irregularly contracted cells) are probably produced when blood flows through turbulent areas in the microcirculation that are partially occluded by platelet aggregates (Moake, 2002). TMA may be idiopathic or precipitated by drugs such as mitomycin C, transplantation, malignancy, pregnancy, collagen vascular disease, or HIV (Rosove, 2014).

The classification of TMA has been controversial for many years. In routine clinical practice, the term *thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)* is often used for adult cases with predominant neurologic symptoms, whereas the term *hemolytic-uremic syndrome (HUS)* has been used to describe childhood cases with thrombotic microangiopathy and predominant renal involvement (Moake, 2002). However, the distinction is not always possible, and overlapping symptoms may be observed. Authors suggested the inclusion of both entities under TTP/HUS, presuming a similar pathogenetic mechanism with variable organ tropism. However, recent studies indicate a difference in pathogenetic mechanisms between HUS and TTP, as discussed later.

Hemolytic-Uremic Syndrome

HUS is classified into diarrhea-associated (D+) or typical form, and diarrhea-negative (D–) or atypical form. D+ HUS constitutes approximately 95% of cases in children and is less common in adults (Zheng & Sadler, 2008). D+ HUS occurs most commonly in infants younger than 2 years of age, but it affects all ages. It is caused by one of several serotypes of *Escherichia coli* that produce a verotoxin (named for its toxicity against African green monkey kidney [vero] cells). The most common is *E. coli* O157:H7, which produces Shiga toxins 1 and 2. This microorganism is one of the cattle gut commensals. *E. coli* O104:H4 has been associated with epidemic infection in Europe (Rosove, 2014). The annual incidence of infection with *E. coli* O157 is approximately 8 per 100,000 people in North America. The percentage of cases with bloody diarrhea that progress to HUS is 3% to 7% for sporadic cases and 20% to 30% for some outbreaks (Zheng & Sadler, 2008). HUS usually occurs 4 to 6 days after the onset of diarrhea. Shiga toxins cause bloody diarrhea, then enter the circulation and travel in the plasma on the surface of platelets or monocytes (Moake, 2002). Recent studies suggest that these toxins become attached to glomerular capillary endothelium and other renal epithelial cells. Shiga toxins, together with locally secreted cytokines, cause the release of unusually large multimers of von Willebrand factor (vWF), which promote platelet aggregation in renal vasculature (Moake, 2002). Endothelial cell damage is the hallmark of D+ HUS in children, and endothelial swelling may be severe enough to occlude the capillary lumen. The thrombi of D+ HUS are composed predominantly of fibrin with few platelets and little vWF (Zheng & Sadler, 2008). There is growing evidence that shiga toxin also activates complement component in the renal circulation, which may contribute to cell damage and thrombogenesis (Rosove, 2014). Hemolytic anemia with schistocytes (due to interaction of red cells with microvascular thrombotic lesions), variable thrombocytopenia, and uremia are the cardinal features. Death formerly occurred in almost half of cases; the renal pathology has included acute glomerulonephritis and thrombotic and necrotic vascular lesions associated with patchy, bilateral renal cortical necrosis. However, with advanced supportive therapy, including transfusions and dialysis, some investigators have reported mortality reduced to 5% to 15%. Nonetheless, minor to major renal impairment has been reported in approximately 50% of patients. Five to ten percent of patients with HUS have D– HUS, with no antecedent diarrhea of Shiga-toxin–producing organisms, and some of these patients have familial history of the disease (Zheng & Sadler, 2008). First presentations are more common in children, including neonates, although some cases present in adulthood (Rosove, 2014). Infections and pregnancy may trigger hemolytic crises. Approximately 50% of patients with D– HUS have mutations in one of the complement regulatory proteins: factor H, factor I, membrane cofactor protein (MCP), or factor B. These patients have a much higher mortality rate (Moake, 2002). Approximately 5% of D– HUS patients have antibodies against factor H, raising the possibility of using plasma exchange or immunosuppressants for therapeutic strategy (Zheng & Sadler, 2008).

Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura (TTP)

TTP may occur at any age but has a peak incidence in the third decade; it occurs more often in females than in males. The annual incidence is 3.7 cases per 100,000 with the acquired form being more common, with an incidence of 0.2 to 1 per 100,000 compared to the much less common familial form, which has an incidence of 0.05 to 0.4 per 100,000 (Rosove, 2014). The triad of clinical manifestations present in most patients includes hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, and neurologic symptoms; in addition, fever and renal diseases are often present. This constitutes the classic pentad. Pathologically, microvascular occlusive lesions with hyaline thrombi and endothelial proliferation are widespread throughout the body. Until 1997, the origin was unknown. Different theories included endothelial injury by oxidant stress, antiendothelial antibodies, anti-CD36 (glycoprotein IV located on microvasculature) antibodies, platelet aggregating factors, and release of large vWF multimers into the plasma. In 1996, a protease that cleaves vWF subunits was identified in normal plasma. In 1997 and the following years, several reports indicated deficient vWF-cleaving protease in patients with TTP due to low enzyme levels (in familial cases) or to the presence of IgG enzyme inhibitor (in nonfamilial cases). These observations were confirmed by additional studies, which showed normal levels of vWF-cleaving protease in HUS (Moake, 2004). The enzyme has been further characterized as number 13 in a family of 19 distinct ADAMTS-type enzymes identified to date (*a d*isintegrin *a*nd *m*etalloprotease with eight *t*hrmobospondin-1-like domains). Therefore, the vWF-cleaving metalloprotease is now referred to as *ADAMTS13* (Moake, 2004). In the absence of vWF-cleaving protease, ultra-large vWF multimers secreted by endothelial cells would not be processed normally. These highly adhesive multimers may induce platelet clumping in the microcirculation under shear stress, resulting in the clinical manifestation of TTP. The disease is acute and until the 1980s was fatal in well over half of cases. With the therapy of plasma exchange by plasmapheresis and plasma transfusions (in addition to platelet inhibitors), the remission rate has improved, and long-term survival now approaches 90% (Moake, 2004). TTP can now be classified into three main categories: familial, idiopathic, and secondary. The familial form (Upshaw-Schulman syndrome) results from a mutation in the *ADAMTS13* gene and is associated with a very low activity of the enzyme. More than 50 mutations have been described to date. Approximately 50% of patients with familial TTP experience their first episode during childhood, and exacerbations may occur in association with minor infections (Zheng & Sadler, 2008). The idiopathic form is caused by antibodies to ADAMTS13. The secondary form may occur along the course of other conditions, such as malignancies, organ transplantation, chemotherapy, infection, and certain medications, such as cyclosporine, quinine, ticlopidine, and clopidogrel. The mechanism of TTP under these circumstances is unknown, although direct endothelial cytotoxicity and drug-induced autoimmunity are possible mechanisms (Zheng & Sadler, 2008).

TMA after organ tranplantation is a well-recognized entity occurring as a complication of renal, lung, and allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplant. In this setting, medications, such as sirolimus and cyclosporin, infections, and graft-versus-host disease are important factors (Rosove, 2014).

Preeclampsia/Eclampsia

Preeclampsia and eclampsia are microangiopathic disorders occurring with pregnancy and sharing some features of HUS or TTP. Approximately 4% to 39% of patients with severe preeclampsia develop HELLP syndrome: *h*emolysis, *e*levated *l*iver enzymes and *l*ow *p*latelet count. The syndrome becomes manifest usually during the third trimester, although some patients may develop it during the postpartum period. Most patients recover within a few days after delivery. In a small subset of patients, severe persistent multisystem disease requires plasma exchange (McMinn & George, 2001). ADAMSTS13 has been reported to be low in 10% to 20% of cases (Rosove, 2014)

Infectious Agents

Destruction of erythrocytes by plasmodia is responsible for the anemia in malaria. This is supported by the observation that the osmotic and mechanical fragility of parasitized erythrocytes is increased. Inhibition of marrow activity may be an additional factor. Fulminant hemoglobinuria (blackwater fever) is a complication of *P. falciparum* malaria.

Oroya fever, a frequently fatal disease that occurs in Peru, is characterized by a hemolytic anemia and leukocytosis. *Bartonella bacilliformis* is the responsible agent.

TABLE 32-9
Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia (AIHA)*

Condition	Warm AIHA	COLD AIHA		Mixed AIHA
		CHAD	PCH	
Idiopathic	282 (23)	194 (16)	5 (<1)	47 (4)
Drug-induced disorders	184 (15)	0	0	2 (<1)
Neoplasia	165 (14)	81 (7)	0 (0)	26 (2)
Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	27	25	0	8
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia	65	4	0	8
Hodgkin's lymphoma	11	7	0	5
Carcinomas	37	30	0	4
Miscellaneous	25	15	0	1
Infections	9 (<1)	76 (6)	14 (1)	2 (<1)
Pneumonia—*Mycoplasma*	0	21	0	0
Viral pneumonia	2	19	0	0
Infectious mononucleosis	0	11	1	0
Miscellaneous	7	25	13	2
Collagen diseases	30 (2)	15 (1)	0 (0)	20 (2)
Systemic lupus erythematosus	7	4	0	16
Rheumatoid arthritis	21	6	0	4
Others	2	5	0	0
Miscellaneous disorders	45 (4)	20 (2)	0	6 (<1)
Totals	715 (58)	386 (32)	19 (2)	103 (8)

Data from Sokol RJ, Hewitt S: Autoimmune hemolysis: A critical review, *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 4:125–154, 1985.
CHAD, Cold hemagglutinin disease; *PCH,* paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria.
*Numbers in parentheses are percentages.

TABLE 32-10
Examples of Drugs Implicated in Causing Immune Hemolytic Anemia and Their Mechanism of Action

Hapten or Drug Adsorption Mechanism	
Penicillins	Cephalosporins
Tetracyclines	Tolbutamide
Ternary Complex Mechanism	
Stibophen	Quinidine
Quinine	Cephalosporins
Rifampicin	Diethylstilbestrol
Chlorpropamide	Amphotericin B
Possible Autoantibody Mechanism	
α-Methyldopa	L-Dopa
Procainamide	Cephalosporins
Mefenamic acid	Fludarabine

Modified from Packman CH: Hemolytic anemia resulting from immune injury. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al., editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 8. New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 780.

Babesiosis, a protozoan infection transmitted by ticks from rodents or cattle, is associated with hemolysis; parasites may be seen in red cells in Romanowsky's-stained blood films.

Hemolytic anemia with cold agglutinins may complicate mycoplasmal pneumonia and infectious mononucleosis. This is due to the effect of antibody on the red cells.

Hemolytic anemia of varying severity is frequent in some bacterial infections. A notable example is *Clostridium perfringens* septicemia following septic abortion or biliary tract surgery, which may be accompanied by a dramatic and life-threatening hemolytic crisis.

Immune Hemolytic Anemias

Immune hemolytic anemias are disorders in which erythrocyte survival is reduced because of the deposition of immune globulin and/or complement on the red cell membrane. The immune hemolytic anemias can be grouped according to the presence of autoantibodies, alloantibodies, or drug-related antibodies (Table 32-9)

Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia

The autoimmune hemolytic anemias (AIHAs) are due to an altered immune response, resulting in the production of antibody against the host's own erythrocytes, with subsequent hemolysis. The incidence of AIHA is estimated at 10 to 30 cases per 1 million population (Gehrs & Friedberg, 2002). The AIHAs can be classified according to serologic or clinical characteristics (Table 32-10). Some AIHAs are mediated by antibodies with maximum binding affinity at 37° C, and other AIHAs are mediated by antibodies with maximum binding affinity at 4° C. In addition, AIHAs could be viewed according to their association with other disorders. In a study of 1834 patients, approximately 40% of cases of AIHA have been associated with an underlying disease, while the remainder were idiopathic (Sokol & Booker, 1992). Lymphoproliferative disorders account for approximately half of cases of both warm and cold AIHA (Gehrs & Friedberg, 2002).

Etiology and Pathophysiology. The cause of the production of autoantibody in patients with AIHA is unknown. However, several mechanisms have been suggested. Autoimmune antibodies, particularly cold-reacting antibodies, are sometimes produced following an infection. This is typically seen with the elaboration of anti-I in patients with *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections and anti-i in patients with infectious mononucleosis. The cold agglutinins of anti-I and anti-i specificity are strikingly similar to one another in the structure of antigen-binding sites. These antibodies react with antibodies that also identify the product of the *VH4-34* gene segment in B cells. It has been hypothesized that infections can cause the production of antibodies of B cell, utilizing this gene segment. These antibodies will also have cold agglutinins activity against the I/i antigens (Rosse, 2004).

The amount of antibody, its avidity for the erythrocyte autoantigen, and its ability to fix complement are significant variables. Opsonization of red cells can destroy them in the circulation (intravascular hemolysis) or can cause their accelerated removal from the circulation by tissue macrophages (extravascular hemolysis). Major sites for these macrophages are the spleen and, to a lesser extent, the liver (Gehrs & Friedberg, 2002).

The development of AIHA in patients with lymphoproliferative disorders or with autoimmune disorders may relate to some abnormality with B cells, T cells, or macrophages, or the interaction among these cells. Perhaps loss of T cell suppressor function could result in unrestrained production of red cell antibody by B cells. This hypothesis is strengthened by the observation that methyldopa, a drug known to cause the development of anti–red cell antibodies, inhibits the activation of suppressor T lymphocytes (Gehrs & Friedberg, 2002).

In AIHA associated with warm-type antibody, there is IgG coating of erythrocytes with or without complement fixation. Clearance of red cells occurs mostly in the spleen. In the absence of complement fixation, it appears that the Fc portion of the red cell–bound IgG interacts with the Fc receptor present on the membrane of splenic macrophages located along the cords of Billroth. Thus, sensitized erythrocytes are retained, phagocytosed, or fragmented by splenic macrophages during their passage through the spleen.

In AIHA associated with the production of cold-type autoantibody, erythrocytes are usually coated with IgM. Under these circumstances, the fixation of complement frequently occurs. In paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria, the offending antibody is an IgG that fixes complement. If the entire complement sequence is activated, there may be intravascular hemolysis. This phenomenon may occur in cases of cold hemagglutinin disease, as well as in paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria. If complement activation fails to proceed to completion but is halted at an intermediate stage, intravascular lysis of the erythrocytes may not occur. However, extravascular hemolysis can still continue. In this situation, sensitized cells with C3b on the membrane are bound in the liver by the interaction of C3b and its receptors on Kupffer's cells. Erythrocytes may be phagocytosed entirely, or portions of the cells may be removed, resulting in fragmentation and spherocyte formation.

Approximately 7% of patients with AIHA satisfy diagnostic criteria for both warm and cold autoantibodies (Sokol & Booker, 1992). In these cases, IgG and C3d sensitize the erythrocytes. The serum contains IgM cold autohemagglutinins (optimally reactive at 4° C, but with a high thermal amplitude to 37° C) and IgG warm autoantibodies.

AIHA Associated with Warm Antibody. The warm antibody type of AIHA is slightly more frequent in females than in males and is most likely to occur in individuals 40 years of age or older; peak incidence occurs around the seventh decade. This age distribution may be related to the higher frequency of lymphoproliferative disorders with age (Packman,

2010). Idiopathic warm-antibody AIHA accounts for approximately 50% of cases. Chronic lymphocytic leukemia and lymphomas account for about half of secondary warm-antibody AIHA, and autoimmune disorders, such as SLE, account for most of the remaining cases (Packman, 2010). Clinical signs and symptoms frequently are those of an underlying disorder. However, the patient with idiopathic AIHA may have noted the presence of a mild upper respiratory tract infection just before the onset of hemolysis. As the disorder progresses, weakness, dizziness, and fever may be noted. Jaundice can be a presenting complaint. Pregnancy carries a fivefold risk of developing autoantibodies compared with the control population (Gehrs & Friedberg, 2002).

Laboratory findings include the presence of moderate to severe anemia. The neutrophil count may be increased. In a small proportion of cases, thrombocytopenia can exist and if severe should raise the possibility of concomitant immune thrombocytopenia (Evans syndrome). The peripheral film frequently shows spherocytosis, red cell fragmentation, polychromasia, and a few normoblasts. Reticulocyte percentage is high in approximately 50% of patients and is often associated with increased MCV. However, as many as one third of patients have transient reticulocytopenia, despite the presence of normal or hyperplastic erythroid precursors in the marrow (Packman, 2010). The lack of reticulocytosis should not keep one from making a diagnosis of AIHA. The bone marrow exhibits erythroid hyperplasia, sometimes with mild megaloblastic changes. Reticulocytopenia may be related to immune destruction of reticulocytes or bone marrow suppression caused by marrow infiltration, infection, nutritional deficiencies, or chemicals (Packman, 2010).

There is usually a decrease in serum haptoglobin and an increase in unconjugated bilirubin and LDH. The osmotic fragility and autohemolysis test can be normal or increased.

Direct and indirect antiglobulin tests indicate the presence of erythrocyte antibodies. The specificity of the autoantibodies is usually directed against antigens of the Rh system, membrane protein band 3 and band 4.1, and glycophorin A. However, activity against U, LW, Kell, jk^a, and Fy^a antigens may also occur. The warm antibody is most likely an IgG with subclass IgG1 and less frequently with IgG3. When IgG2 or IgG4 is present on the red cells alone, no hemolytic reaction is associated (Packman, 2010). Occasionally, the antibody may be an IgA immune globulin, or rarely an IgM immune globulin. Complement may be detected on the erythrocyte membrane in slightly more than half of cases. Although many warm antibodies fix complement, intravascular complement–mediated hemolysis and hemoglobinuria are unusual, possibly because of the ability of complement regulatory proteins in plasma and on red cell surfaces to abort fixation of terminal complement components (Packman, 2010).

In some cases, sensitized red cells contain less immune globulin than can be detected using commercially prepared antiglobulins, which are normally sensitive to 250 to 500 molecules of IgG per red cell. Under these circumstances, the autoantibody at times can be detected with an antiglobulin consumption test or more automated enhanced agglutination techniques (Packman, 2010).

The clinical course of AIHA associated with warm antibody is characterized by periods of remission and relapse. In secondary AIHA, the course and prognosis are related to the nature of the underlying disorder. In idiopathic AIHA, complications of the hemolytic disorder may be severe, leading to the demise of the patient. Pulmonary emoboli, infection, and cardiovascular collapse are causes of death, and deep vein thrombosis and splenic infarcts are common complications during active hemolysis (Packman, 2010).

AIHA Associated with Cold Antibody. AIHA associated with cold antibody can be mediated by an IgM and less frequently by an IgG. The IgM autoantibody is associated with a syndrome known as *cold agglutinin disease*, whereas the IgG autoantibody is seen with paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria.

Cold Agglutinin Disease

Cold agglutinin disease occurs in individuals usually over 50 years of age and in females more often than in males. In some cases, cold agglutinin disease is associated with a lymphoproliferative disorder or infection (especially with *M. pneumoniae* or infectious mononucleosis). Cases unassociated with an underlying disorder are listed as idiopathic. Virtually all sera from healthy individuals contain low-titer cold agglutinins, regarded as benign or harmless, and are polyclonal. Postinfectious cold agglutinins are usually polyclonal. By contrast, monoclonal cold agglutinins are generally pathogenetic and may arise from B cell lymphoma (Gehrs & Friedberg, 2002). Cold agglutinin disease represents approximately 20% of AIHA.

Symptoms and signs vary widely. Some individuals may complain of acrocyanosis or Raynaud's phenomenon. Others will have episodes of hemolysis, including hemoglobinuria, following exposure to cold. Temperatures of 30° C and lower are normally attained in the superficial skin vessels of those body parts exposed to cold. The thermal range of the antibody is clinically more important than the agglutination titer (Petz, 2008).

Laboratory findings usually indicate an anemia. Spherocytes and polychromatophilic erythrocytes are present to a variable degree in the blood film. There may be marked red cell agglutination, which should be differentiated from rouleaux formation (see Figs. 30-25 and 30-26). A mild leukocytosis can exist. Red cell agglutination may interfere with automated hematology counts, particularly MCHC, which tends to be high.

The cold antibody is usually an IgM with anti-I or, less frequently anti-i, specificity. Rarely do other specificities exist. In the chronic idiopathic form of cold agglutinin disease, the antibody tends to be monoclonal IgM, *k* with anti-I specificity (Gehrs & Friedberg, 2002). The autoantibody is also capable of fixing complement. When the titer of cold antibody is very high, the thermal range of antibody activity may extend up to 37° C. The direct antiglobulin test is positive only if the reagents contain anticomplement activity. Thus, one usually observes a positive antiglobulin reaction with broad-spectrum and non–γ-reagents, but no agglutination with only the γ-reagent. On cold exposure and antibody binding to red cells, the complement may be activated to the stage of C3b, which adheres to the red cells after entering the systemic circulation. In the hepatic circulation, macrophages carry specific receptors for C3b. However, cells usually escape hepatic destruction. Most patients experience chronic mild to moderate anemia, which they tolerate well, and patient outcome is significantly better than with warm-antibody AIHA (Petz, 2008). Some authors remain with the opinion that chronic cold agglutinin disease is a variant of Waldenström's macroglobulinemia in which the IgM M-component has cold agglutinin activity.

Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria

Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria is a very rare disorder that can occur in an individual of any age. However, more cases are now being reported in young children (Petz, 2008). Females are as frequently involved as males. Patients have symptoms of acute hemolysis following exposure to the cold. Chills, fever, pain in the back and legs, and hemoglobinuria are reported. The acute form may follow an acute upper respiratory illness or immunization by 1 to 2 weeks, but the chronic form is associated with congenital syphilis. Hemoglobinuria following exposure to cold is rare in the acute form.

Laboratory features consist of anemia, elevated reticulocyte count, increased concentration of indirect bilirubin, and the presence of Hb in the urine. Anemia is frequently severe and rapidly progressive.

The serum contains a cold hemolysin with biphasic activity. This antibody, first described by Donath and Landsteiner (1904), is an IgG that fixes the first components of complement (C1–C4) in the cold (4° C). As the temperature rises to 25° to 37° C, the antibody dissociates, but the remainder of the complement proteins are activated, and erythrocyte lysis results; this biphasic hemolysis is the basis for the Donath-Landsteiner autohemolysis test for the diagnosis of this condition. The direct antiglobulin test is positive with anti-C3 but is generally negative with anti-IgG unless performed at colder temperature. The specificity of the antibody is directed against the P antigen. In general, the prognosis is good.

AIHA Associated with Warm and Cold Antibodies

AIHA associated with both warm and cold autoantibodies is mediated by IgG warm antibodies and complement, as well as IgM cold hemagglutinins. Females are more likely involved than males. There appears to be an association between the combined warm and cold antibody AIHA and SLE in that 15% to 42% of patients have SLE (Shulman et al, 1985; Sokol & Hewitt, 1985). In one study (Shulman et al, 1985), 6 of 12 patients (50%) had idiopathic AIHA, and 4 of these (33%) had concomitant thrombocytopenia (Evans syndrome); all 12 patients had severe hemolysis that responded dramatically to corticosteroid therapy.

Alloimmune Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn

Alloimmune hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN) usually occurs following the transplacental passage of maternal antifetal red cell antibodies. HDN most frequently results from incompatibility in Rh and ABO erythrocyte antigens between mother and fetus. In rare cases, some other red cell antigen may be responsible for this disorder.

In HDN due to **Rh incompatibility,** prior sensitization is necessary to initiate the disease process. This sensitization usually occurs during pregnancy when Rh(D)-positive fetal red cells cross the placenta and enter the

TABLE 32-11
Laboratory Features in Microcytic Hypochromic Anemias

				MARROW					
	Serum Iron	**Serum TIBC**	**% Saturation**	**% Sideroblasts**	**Iron Stores**	**Serum Ferritin**	**ZPP**	**Hb A_2**	**Hb F**
Iron deficiency	↓	↑	↓	↓	↓	↓	↑	N-↓	N
β-Thalassemia trait	N (↑)	N	N	N	N-↑	N-↑	N	↑	N-↑
ACD	↓	N-↓	↓	↓	N-↑	N-↑	↑	N	N
Sideroblastic anemia	↑	↓	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑ (↓)	N	N-↑

ACD, Anemia of chronic disease; *N,* normal; *TIBC,* total iron-binding capacity; *ZPP,* zinc protoporphyrins; ↓, decreased; ↑, increased.

circulation of a mother with Rh-negative cells. Most women have less than 1 mL of fetal blood in their circulation following delivery. However, intrapartum fetomaternal hemorrhage of more than 30 mL occurs in approximately 1% of pregnancies (Ramasethu & Luban, 2010). Maternal sensitization can also occur by a previous incompatible transfusion. Under either of these circumstances, maternal IgG antibodies are produced against the fetal cells. If a subsequent pregnancy occurs in a sensitized mother, fetal erythrocytes again reach the maternal circulation and restimulate an antibody response, resulting in transfer of anti-Rh(D) antibody across the placenta and reduced fetal red cell survival.

In the **ABO system,** anti-A or anti-B antibodies of the IgG class may arise spontaneously in the mother; their presence does not require prior transfusion or pregnancy. As a result, first-born children may suffer from HDN when ABO incompatibility exists. Although ABO incompatibility occurs in 15% of group O pregnancies, ABO hemolytic disease is estimated to occur in only 3% of all births (Ramasethu & Luban, 2010).

The clinical features of HDN due to Rh incompatibility vary greatly. Some newborns experience only mild jaundice. Others initially appear markedly pale and then develop jaundice. They can have prominent hepatosplenomegaly. The disease may be complicated by a bleeding diathesis, marked acid-base abnormalities, and kernicterus. In very severe cases, patients can present with hydrops fetalis.

Early examination of the blood usually reveals an increase in nucleated erythrocytes, which may include forms as immature as pronormoblasts. Although this finding gave the disease its name, **erythroblastosis fetalis,** erythroblastosis is not always present, especially if the examination is not performed immediately after birth.

Up to 2.0×10^9 nucleated red cells per liter in term infants and up to 5.0×10^9/L in premature infants are commonly seen in this disorder. Normally, nucleated red cells average 0.5×10^9/L in term infants and 1.0 to 1.5×10^9/L in premature infants. Blood from the umbilical vein for early examination is more reliable than peripheral (capillary) blood because the erythrocyte count and the Hb may be significantly altered between birth and ligation of the cord.

Generally, there is macrocytic anemia of varying severity and an increase in reticulocytes. Occasionally, anemia may develop suddenly on the second or third day. The leukocyte count is frequently elevated, with immature leukocytes. Normoblastic hyperplasia of the marrow is pronounced.

In severely affected infants, thrombocytopenia, depression of prothrombin complex procoagulants, or diffuse intravascular coagulation may occur.

A direct antiglobulin test on fetal erythrocytes indicates the presence of an IgG antibody. When the maternal serum and an eluate from the fetal erythrocytes are incubated separately with a panel of O cells, one can usually demonstrate the presence of antibody with Rh(D) specificity. In Rh-negative pregnant women known to be sensitized to Rh(D), the titer of anti-Rh(D) antibody is measured periodically during pregnancy to serve as a guide for performing amniocentesis.

HDN associated with **ABO incompatibility** is less severe than that observed with Rh incompatibility. Occasionally, the diagnosis is suggested by the presence of unexplained hyperbilirubinemia in a group A or B newborn infant from a group O mother.

Laboratory findings usually show a mild anemia and modest reticulocytosis. In contrast to Rh isoimmune disease, spherocytosis in ABO isoimmune disease may be prominent. However, there may be no anemia. Fetal cells are usually weakly positive with the antiglobulin reagents. Serum from the newborn and eluates from the cells should contain anti-A or anti-B antibody. In addition, maternal serum should contain high titers of anti-A or anti-B antibodies of the IgG subclass.

Drug-Induced Immune Hemolytic Anemia

Immune hemolytic anemia may occur following the administration of drugs. Most cases in the 1970s were associated with methyldopa or high-dose intravenous penicillin therapy. Recently, this picture has changed, with second- and third-generation cephalosporins being the most common causative agent and accounting for more than 80% of drug-induced immune hemolytic anemia (Garratty & Arndt, 2007). Four mechanisms appear to mediate immune hemolysis (Packman, 2010).

Formation of Ternary Complexes (Neoantigen Formation). Numerous drugs are known to weakly bind to red cell membrane, even when given in small doses (Table 32-11). Antibodies recognize the combined drug and red cell membrane components as antigen and bind to them, forming a ternary complex. The drug-induced antibody is usually IgM and tends to fix complement, resulting in lysis of cells. In addition, red cells may be sequestered in the liver and spleen because of their coating with C3b.

Patients present with acute intravascular hemolysis, hemoglobinemia, and hemoglobinuria. The direct antiglobulin reaction is positive if the reagents contain anticomplement activity. The reaction usually is negative with the γ-reagent because it contains little anti-IgM or complement specificity.

The diagnosis can be determined by incubating the patient's serum with the offending drug in the presence of target erythrocytes, while observing agglutination, lysis, or sensitization of the erythrocytes.

Adsorption of Drug to Red Cell Membrane. Penicillin and cephalosporin, particularly in high doses, bind firmly to proteins, including red cell membrane. These drugs induce an antibody response to them, but the antibody specificity is not directed against a red cell membrane. Both IgM and IgG antibodies are made, but only the IgG antibodies are associated with immune hemolysis. Complement is not involved. The erythrocytes, coated with IgG antibody, are presumably removed via the Fc receptors on macrophages in the spleen.

The direct antiglobulin test is strongly positive. Antibody eluted from patients' erythrocytes will react only with red cells previously treated with penicillin or cephalosporins.

Induction of Autoantibody by Drugs. In approximately 15% of patients using the antihypertensive drug methyldopa, a positive direct antiglobulin reaction is present. The antibody is of the IgG class and in some studies appears to have Rh specificity (Packman, 2010). The actual mechanism of autoantibody production is not known. However, it has been hypothesized that methyldopa causes activation of T cells and increased secretion of γ-IFN, which upregulates MHC class I and class II molecules on antigen-presenting cells and induces antibody production by B cells. The drug may also bind to hemoglobin-free proerythroblasts producing a neoantigen followed by the production of autoantibody (Packman, 2010).

Development of the positive antiglobulin reaction occurs after a lag period of 3 to 6 months and is dose dependent. Thirty-six percent of patients have a positive antiglobulin reaction when consuming 2 g or more of methyldopa per day, and 11% have a positive reaction when taking only 1 g daily. An immune hemolytic anemia occurs in less than 1% of patients and is not dose dependent. Methyldopa also decreases mononuclear phagocytic activity, which may explain the rarity of hemolytic anemia despite the common presence of autoantibodies (Sokol & Booker, 1992). Levodopa, procainamide, fludarabine, and mefenamic acid are additional drugs that have been reported to cause an AHA in a fashion similar to methyldopa.

Nonimmunologic Adsorption of Immunoglobulins to Red Cell Membrane. Drugs such as cephalosporins and cisplatin appear to alter the erythrocyte membrane, resulting in the nonspecific adsorption of

plasma protein to its surface. As a result, IgG and IgM may be loosely bound to red cell membrane. This phenomenon can then cause a positive direct antiglobulin reaction. It is now believed that this mechanism can cause hemolytic anemia (Garratty & Arndt, 2007).

LABORATORY INVESTIGATIONS OF ANEMIA

The diagnosis and study of anemia require the proper use and interpretation of laboratory measurements. Prerequisites for the efficient use of the laboratory are a careful history and physical examination, both of which lead to initial laboratory measurements and provide important guidance in determining the nature of the anemia. Anemias that are of acute onset and rapidly progressive course are likely hemolytic in origin, while slowly progressive anemias are likely caused by bone marrow production defect.

Whether the patient is anemic can be ascertained by determining whether the Hb, Hct, or erythrocyte count lies below (1) the reference intervals for age, sex, and altitude or (2) the patient's previous values, even though these are within the reference intervals. The task then is to define the underlying cause or mechanism for the anemia.

Usually, complete blood count (WBC, RBC, Hb, Hct, MCV, MCH, MCHC, platelets) and examination of a Wright's-stained film are parts of the routine examination of blood. It is possible that all these values could be normal in the presence of a mild macrocytic anemia, in which the RBC count does not fall below the normal range and the macrocytes present (and detectable on the blood film) do not elevate the MCV above the normal range.

Once anemia is discovered, the basic examination of the blood should include the following: (1) Hb, Hct, RBC count, and erythrocyte indices; (2) blood film examination; (3) leukocyte count; (4) platelet count; and (5) reticulocyte count.

With current multichannel instruments, all red cell values and their indices have comparable precision. Indices are **mean** values, however, and will not detect different populations of cells that balance each other. For example, combined deficiencies of folate and iron may give rise to populations of macrocytic and hypochromic microcytic cells, which could yield normal indices. Careful examination of the blood film is essential, and red cell volume RDW is very useful in defining this type of abnormality (see Chapter 30).

The size of the erythrocytes, determined by the MCV and by examination of the blood film, will determine the morphologic type of anemia. In addition, certain findings on the blood film will suggest mechanisms that are involved.

Increased numbers of **polychromatic** macrocytes, with or without normoblasts, suggest increased erythropoiesis, and this is usually due to hemorrhage or hemolysis in the untreated patient. In this situation, the history (of blood loss) or physical examination (jaundice or splenomegaly) will help.

Findings suggestive of hemolysis are **poikilocytes** (abnormally shaped red cells), **sickle cells, irregularly contracted forms** (including red cell fragments or schistocytes), and **spherocytes.** Sometimes it is difficult to detect spherocytes in HS because of minimal anisocytosis. Morphologic findings in red cells that are helpful in this situation include the presence of a low MCD (mean cell diameter), between 6.0 and 6.5 μm (normal = 7.0 to 7.4 μm), red cells with small eccentric or no pallor, and red cells with slightly more intense staining due to Hb density.

Target cells may be found in hemoglobinopathies, especially in the presence of Hb C, Hb D, and Hb E, and in the thalassemias. They may be present in any **hypochromic** anemia, although usually in smaller numbers. Target cells without microcytosis are also found in liver disease and in the absence of the spleen or of splenic function.

Fine **basophilic stippling** (which is due to precipitation of RNA) may be found in polychromatic red cells associated with a significant increase in the generation of erythrocytes, as in response to hemorrhage or hemolysis. **Coarse basophilic stippling** suggests an abnormality in Hb synthesis. It is found in megaloblastic anemias, thalassemias, refractory anemias, some red cell enzyme deficiencies, unstable Hbs, and lead poisoning. In particular, hypochromasia or microcytosis with stippling is against the diagnosis of iron deficiency anemia and is more suggestive of thalassemia or lead poisoning. As mentioned earlier, some cases of iron deficiency may be associated with lead poisoning (see the Iron Metabolism section earlier in the chapter).

The combination of **oval macrocytes** (especially egg-shaped macrocytes) and **hypersegmented neutrophils** indicates the very likely existence of megaloblastic anemia.

Finally, examination of the blood film allows the evaluation of **qualitative abnormalities in leukocytes and platelets,** as well as an estimate of their numbers. Blood diseases that may be first suspected or detected in this manner are many and include compensated hemolytic anemia; early megaloblastic anemia; and anomalies of red cells, such as hereditary elliptocytosis, or of leukocytes, such as the Pelger-Hüet nuclear anomaly.

After the basic studies just mentioned, the choice of additional procedures depends on the morphologic type of the anemia, as determined by the indices and the blood film.

Macrocytic Anemia (Increased MCV)

The macrocytic anemias are normochromic, as determined by appearance on the film and by the MCHC. The first step is to ascertain whether the anemia is megaloblastic. Clues from the film have been mentioned. A **bone marrow aspiration** should be performed to confirm the presence of megaloblastosis.

Megaloblastic Marrow

If the marrow is **megaloblastic,** with characteristic changes in both red cell and white cell precursors, the anemia in all likelihood is due to folate or cobalamin deficiency.

See earlier sections on diagnosis of cobalamin deficiency and of folate deficiency. Once the **type** of deficiency is defined, the **cause** must be determined.

Nonmegaloblastic Marrow

If the marrow is **not megaloblastic,** conditions that can be associated with macrocytosis should be investigated. These include liver disease; hemolytic anemias; hypothyroidism; excessive alcohol intake; aplastic anemias; and myelodysplastic syndromes. Anemias associated with these disorders, although they *may* be macrocytic, are more usually normocytic, and thus are considered with the normocytic anemias as well.

Microcytic and Hypochromic Anemias (Decreased MCV and MCH)

If the counts are performed on a multichannel instrument, the MCHC is likely to be in the normal range, with slight to moderate degrees of hypochromia. Consequently, the MCV has assumed the leading role in the detection of microcytic hypochromic anemias. These anemias reflect a quantitative defect in Hb synthesis. Major causes of microcytic anemia include the following:

1. **Iron deficiency anemias** are due to increased requirement or blood loss not balanced by intake.
2. **ACD** is associated with infection, neoplasia, or collagen disease. This anemia may be normochromic and normocytic, but in long-standing disease is often hypochromic and microcytic.
3. **Thalassemia** is a genetically determined impairment in the rate of globin synthesis.
4. **Sideroblastic anemia** is that group of refractory anemias with erythroid hyperplasia of the marrow in which a defect in Hb synthesis creates a population of hypochromic microcytic cells. The blood film is dimorphic and macrocytes may prevail, making the MCV normal or high, particularly in acquired forms of sideroblastic anemia.

Because **iron deficiency** is the most common anemia, the first step is to determine whether the body lacks iron.

When blood loss cannot be documented, serum ferritin, serum iron and iron-binding capacity, or bone marrow study for iron should be performed. These will usually discriminate between the two most common anemias in this category: iron deficiency and simple chronic anemia associated with some other disease, frequently chronic infection or cancer. In both, the serum iron concentration is low, but in iron deficiency, the TIBC is elevated, whereas in simple ACD it is normal or decreased. Storage iron in the marrow is depleted in iron deficiency but is normal or elevated in anemia of chronic disease. Iron deficiency anemia in an adult male almost always means chronic blood loss; the source must be found and corrected, if necessary. If no obvious source for iron loss is identified, PNH should be considered, particularly when there is associated neutropenia or thrombocytopenia.

Hypochromic anemias (or hypochromic erythrocytoses) with basophilic stippling and normal or increased serum iron are most likely **thalassemias,** and the next examinations to perform are Hb electrophoresis and determination of Hb A_2 and Hb F. Family studies are often necessary.

Sideroblastic anemias include refractory anemia with ring sideroblasts, which are part of myelodysplastic syndromes (see Chapter 33), as well as anemias that occur after therapy with certain drugs (e.g., isoniazid) or in chronic lead poisoning. Coarse basophilic stippling is common in this group of anemias.

BOX 32-2

Classification of Immune Hemolytic Anemias

Autoimmune hemolytic anemias
- Associated with warm antibodies
- Associated with cold antibodies
- Combined warm and cold antibodies

Alloimmune hemolytic anemias
- Transfusion-associated hemolytic anemia
- Hemolytic disease of newborn
- Rh incompatibility
- ABO incompatibility

Drug-induced hemolytic anemia
- Drug adsorption
- Autoantibody induction
- Neoantigen formation

Box 32-2 summarizes some laboratory distinctions within the microcytic anemias.

Normocytic and Normochromic Anemias (Normal MCV)

This large group of anemias has many causes. A useful approach is evaluation of the erythrokinetics in a given patient (see Chapter 31). Often, the reticulocyte production index (RPI) and examination of the bone marrow will suffice. The RPI is the simplest measure of effective erythropoiesis.

Optimal Marrow Response: Reticulocyte Production Index Greater Than Two

If the output of reticulocytes has exceeded two times normal, as determined by the absolute reticulocyte count, or RPI, it can be assumed that the marrow has reached an optimal response. The cause for the anemia is then **acute blood loss** or **hemolysis.** If blood loss cannot be proved, evidence that hemolysis is in fact present must be sought.

Erythroid hyperplasia of the marrow, serum bilirubin, and urine or fecal urobilinogen will indicate whether erythropoietic activity and destruction are increased. Red cell survival determination may be needed to prove hemolysis in some cases. Low serum haptoglobin and high LDH point to hemolysis, but a normal level does not exclude it. None of these measurements will specify whether hemolysis is intravascular or extravascular, but elevated plasma Hb, hemoglobinuria, and hemosiderinuria indicate intravascular hemolysis.

Once it is determined that excessive hemolysis is occurring, the type of hemolytic mechanism must be ascertained.

Direct Antiglobulin (Coombs') Test. If the direct antiglobulin reaction is *positive* using broad-spectrum reagents, tests to determine the presence of IgG, IgM, or complement on the red cells should be undertaken. If immunoglobulin is present on the red cells, tests for antibody specificity, cold agglutinins, Donath-Landsteiner antibody, and serum protein electrophoresis may help to define the process.

If the direct antiglobulin reaction is *negative*, the examinations performed next will depend on the clinical findings and the results of measurements already made.

If HS is suspected, osmotic fragility before and after 24-hour incubation at 37°C and family studies will be necessary.

If a nonspherocytic congenital hemolytic anemia is suspected, screening for G6PD and PK deficiencies, and Hb electrophoresis will be helpful. If these are negative, the heat instability test, isopropanol solubility test, and autohemolysis test should be considered.

If thalassemia seems likely, determinations of Hb A_2 and Hb F and perhaps looking for Hb H inclusions are appropriate. Thalassemias are usually microcytic and hypochromic anemias; β-thalassemia major, β-thalassemia intermedia, and Hb H disease are hemolytic disorders and may have an increased RPI.

If drug-induced hemolysis is suspected, a test for Heinz bodies, a screening test for G6PD, and, if possible, tests for a drug-dependent autoantibody are indicated.

If the nature of the hemolytic anemia is obscure, a flow cytometry test for PNH should be performed.

Inadequate Marrow Response: Reticulocyte Production Index Less Than Two

The mechanism of the anemia may be ineffective erythropoiesis. Conditions with the greatest degree of ineffective erythropoiesis appear in other categories (e.g., megaloblastic anemia, thalassemia), but most of the myelodysplastic syndromes have a hyperplastic bone marrow and impaired delivery of cells to the blood. In some of these, morphologic changes in erythroid precursors may overlap with megaloblastic anemia, but granulocytic and megakaryocytic changes usually seen in megaloblastic anemia are lacking.

A low reticulocyte count may indicate decreased production caused by inadequate stimulation of the marrow. Chronic renal disease may result in impaired production of EPO. Certain endocrinopathies, such as hypopituitarism or hypothyroidism, may result in regulation of Hb production at a lower level as a result of decreased tissue need for O_2.

A large group of normochromic anemias associated with various chronic diseases form a heterogeneous group characterized by failure of the marrow to meet the need for slightly decreased red cell survival. Some of these are ACDs associated with infection, cancer, or rheumatoid arthritis; they have the defect in iron metabolism noted previously in the Microcytic and Hypochromic Anemias section earlier in the chapter.

Inability of the marrow to respond to EPO may be due to damage to the marrow by drugs or toxic chemicals, to unknown causes, or to infiltration of the marrow by neoplastic cells or fibrous tissue.

In those conditions with low reticulocyte counts in which the marrow is not effectively producing erythrocytes, it is usually helpful to examine the bone marrow. Other studies conducted to determine the underlying disease process can then proceed according to the marrow picture, the assessment of erythrokinetics, and the clinical findings.

BOX 32-3

Pathophysiologic Classification of Polycythemia

Relative Polycythemia

1. Diminished plasma volume: dehydration; shock
2. Spurious polycythemia (stress polycythemia; Gaisböck's syndrome)

Absolute Polycythemia

1. Secondary polycythemia with appropriately increased EPO production
   a. Decreased oxygen (O_2) loading: hypoxia; high altitude; pulmonary disease; cyanotic heart disease; carboxyhemoglobinemia; methemoglobinemia; Hb M
   b. Decreased O_2 unloading: high O_2 affinity hemoglobinopathy; biphosphoglycerate deficiency
2. Secondary polycythemia with inappropriately increased EPO production
   a. Neoplasms: Wilms' tumor; renal carcinoma; cerebellar hemangioma; hepatoma
   b. Localized tissue hypoxia: polycystic kidney; renal artery stenosis
   c. Postrenal transplant
   d. Acute hepatitis
3. Genetic polycythemia
   a. Primary familial congenital polycythemia (mutated EPO receptor)
   b. Chuvash and Croatian polycythemia (mutated *VHL* gene)
4. Primary marrow disorders
   a. Polycythemia vera

Modified from Cazzola M: Serum erythropoietin concentration as a diagnostic tool for polycythemia vera, *Haematologica* 89:1159–1160, 2004
EPO, Erythropoietin; *Hb M,* methemoglobin.

POLYCYTHEMIA

Polycythemia (erythrocytosis) is classically defined as an elevated Hct level above the normal range. In the clinical setting, polycythemia exists when Hb and red cell count are increased, reflecting an elevation of the total red cell volume (Maran & Prchal, 2004). Yet, the recent World Health Organization (WHO) classification of hematologic malignancies has defined polycythemia as Hgb >18.5 g/dL for men, >16.5 g/dL for women, Hct >99th percentile of the method-specific range, or lower values but with a documented unexplained Hgb increase of at least 2 g/dL (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Absolute polycythemia refers to an increase in the total red cell mass in the body; in **relative polycythemia,** the total red cell mass is normal, but the Hct is elevated because the plasma volume is decreased. Polycythemia may be classified as in Box 32-3. Some classifications are based on EPO response (Cazzola, 2004), and others are based on the underlying mechanism (i.e., primary or secondary, and congenital or acquired) (Gordeuk et al, 2005).

RELATIVE POLYCYTHEMIA

Relative polycythemia refers to an increase in Hct or red cell count as a result of decreased plasma volume; total red cell mass is not increased. This occurs in acute dehydration (e.g., severe diarrhea, burns) and in patients on diuretic therapy.

In **spurious polycythemia** (apparent polycythemia, Gaisböck's syndrome), the red cell mass is often high normal and the plasma volume is low normal; these patients have been regarded as an extreme of the normal physiologic state. Almost all are men; they have a high incidence of tobacco smoking and tend to be obese and to have hypertension. Sleep apnea and diuretics may be contributory factors. Serum EPO level is normal (Cazzola, 2004).

ABSOLUTE POLYCYTHEMIA

Appropriately Increased Erythropoietin Production Due to Hypoxia

Cellular response to hypoxia is controlled by a family of α-β heterodimeric transcription factors, known as *hypoxia-inducible factors (HIFs)*, which regulate the transcription of EPO. There are three HIF isoforms—HIF1α, HIF2α, and HIF3α—with HIF2α being the major isoform regulating EPO expression. In the presence of normoxia, HIF1α is rapidly destroyed by the collaborative effect of O_2, prolyl hydroxylase domain–containing enzymes, and the von Hippel–Lindau tumor suppressor protein (VHL). Under hypoxic conditions, degradation of HIFα is slowed, resulting in increased transcription of its target genes, which include EPO. Binding of EPO to its receptor results in autophosphorlyation of the receptor-associated Janus kinase 2 (JAK 2), which has tyrosine kinase activity (Patnaik & Tefferi, 2009).

Arterial Oxygen Unsaturation

Lack of O_2 reaching the blood for whatever reason results in arterial unsaturation, impaired O_2 delivery to the tissues, increased production of EPO, erythroid hyperplasia in the marrow, and resultant erythrocytosis. The red cell mass is increased. As a response to the hypoxia, the red cell 2,3-DPG and the p_{50} are increased. In contrast to polycythemia vera, there is usually no leukocytosis or thrombocytosis, and the neutrophil alkaline phosphatase is normal. Arterial O_2 unsaturation may be the cause of polycythemia in persons living at high altitudes; in patients with chronic pulmonary disease and a block in diffusion of O_2 into the blood; in cyanotic heart disease in which there is right-to-left shunt; and in caroboxyhemoglobinemia mostly related to cigarette smoking. In case of CO poisoning, hypoxia is caused by two mechanisms: direct reduction of O_2 saturation and interference with O_2 release from Hb (Landaw, 1990).

High Oxygen Affinity Hemoglobinopathy

Another cause of tissue hypoxia is the presence of structurally abnormal Hb that has a high affinity for O_2 (Prchal, 2003) (see the Hemoglobins Associated with High Oxygen Affinity section earlier in the chapter). As in other functional hemoglobinopathies, the disorder occurs in the heterozygote. More than 100 Hb mutations associated with increased O_2 affinity have been identified (Prchal, 2003). Abnormal Hb releases less O_2 to the tissues than does normal Hb at the same pO_2; the O_2 dissociation curve is shifted to the left, and the p_{50} is decreased. The red cell 2,3-DPG is not increased. As in arterial O_2 unsaturation, EPO production and erythrocytosis are increased. It must be emphasized that routine Hb electrophoresis often does not detect these Hb variants because the amino acid substitution occurs at one of the αβ-contact sites, or near the heme pocket. A low p_{50} therefore is presumptive evidence for a hemoglobinopathy. Some high-affinity Hbs associated with polycythemia are unstable; in these instances, the heat instability test is positive.

Other causes of altered O_2 affinity include Hb M and deficiency of red cell enzyme 2,3-DPG mutase, which is involved in the generation of 2,2-DPG (Gordeuk et al, 2005).

Inappropriate Erythropoietin Production

Neoplasms

Neoplasms, benign or malignant, have been associated with polycythemia. Renal neoplasms account for the majority. In almost all cases, erythrocytosis has disappeared after resection of the tumor. These neoplasms have been shown to express high levels of EPO mRNA. These tumors include cerebellar hemangiomas, renal cell carcinomas, Wilms' tumors, some hepatomas, uterine leimyomas, pheochromocytoma, parathyroid adenomas, and meningiomas (Patnaik & Tefferi, 2009).

Renal Disorders

In other neoplasms or growths (e.g., renal cysts, hydronephrosis, ovarian carcinoma, some hepatomas), it appears that the mass impinging on the kidney induces increased renal production of EPO as a result of increased pressure or local hypoxia within the kidney. Renal artery stenosis is also associated with polycythemia. Posttransplant erythrocytosis occurs in 10% to 20% of renal transplant recipients. The prevelance is much higher in patients who receive a renal transplant without removing their original kidneys. The therapeutic effects of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors in this condition suggest a role for angiotensin II in regulating erythropoiesis (Prchal, 2003).

Familial Polycythemia

The most common familial polycythemia is due to the presence of a **high oxygen affinity hemoglobin,** which is inherited as an autosomal dominant trait. Congenital polycythemia may be due to a defect in the hypoxia-sensing mechanism. Von Hippel–Lindau syndrome is an autosomal dominant disorder associated with mutations in the *VHL* gene. These mutations result in increased levels of HIF-1α and increased levels of EPO (Prchal, 2003; Gordeuk et al, 2005). Chuvash polycythemia is an autosomal recessive congenital polycythemia that is endemic in the Chuvash population of the Russian federation. It has been reported to be associated with a high mortality rate caused by thrombotic and hemorrhagic complications. *VHL* gene mutations have been recently described in Croatian population as well.

Congenital polycythemia may occur secondary to a defect in the EPO receptor in the presence of a normal hypoxia-sensing mechanism. Primary familial and congenital polycythemia (PFCP) is an autosomal dominant disorder that is present at birth. PFCP is associated with low serum EPO levels and in vitro hypersensitivity of erythroid progenitors to EPO. Sixteen germline mutations in the EPO receptor gene *(EPOR)* with resulting truncated receptors have been described in PFCP to date (Patnaik & Tefferi, 2009). As mentioned earlier, marked decrease in red cell 2,3-DPG associated with **deficiency of 2,3-DPG mutase** activity results in polycythemia and appears to be inherited as an autosomal recessive condition.

Polycythemia Vera

Polycythemia vera is a myeloproliferative neoplasm characterized by panmyelosis, that is, a condition in which excessive proliferation occurs in megakaryocytes and granulocytes, as well as in erythrocytes. It is manifested by erythrocytosis, leukocytosis, and thrombocytosis of varying degrees. Mutation in the *JAK2* gene is now described as a constant finding. Polycythemia vera is discussed with the myeloproliferative neoplasms.

MEASUREMENT OF ERYTHROCYTE AND PLASMA VOLUME

The diagnosis of absolute polycythemia depends on reliable measurements of erythrocyte and plasma volumes. Erythrocyte and plasma volumes are measured with the use of radioactive isotopic tracers and the dilution principle. The most commonly employed tracers are ^{51}Cr in the form of sodium chromate bound to erythrocytes for measurement of erythrocyte volume. ^{125}I or ^{131}iodine is bound to albumin and can be used to measure plasma volume.

For a detailed description of measurement of red cell and plasma volume, see the report of the International Committee for Standardization in Haematology (1980).

Erythrocyte Volume

In brief, blood is collected from the patient, and the erythrocytes are labeled with ^{51}Cr. The chromated erythrocytes are washed in saline. An aliquot of the ^{51}Cr erythrocytes diluted in saline is injected intravenously into the patient. After a period of equilibration, usually 10 to 20 minutes, a sample of blood is withdrawn from the opposite arm. In cases in which the equilibration time is likely to be prolonged (as in splenomegaly, heart failure, or shock), another sample should be withdrawn 60 minutes after injection.

Radioactivity of each sample is recorded by a scintillation counter. The erythrocyte volume (EV) is calculated using the following formula:

$$EV\ (mL) = I\ (cpm)/C\ (cpm/mL)$$

where I is the total injected radioactivity (counts/minute), and C is the radioactivity in erythrocytes after mixing is complete (counts/minute/mL of erythrocytes).

Plasma Volume

Approximately 20 mL of blood is withdrawn from a patient. After centrifugation, the plasma is removed, and radioiodine-labeled albumin is added. After mixing, the labeled plasma is injected intravenously into the patient. At 10, 20, and 30 minutes following injection, 5 mL of blood is removed and radioactivity is counted in a well-type scintillation counter. The radioactivity at zero time (P_0) is determined by plotting the three points on semilogarithmic graph paper and extrapolating to zero time. A standard is prepared by diluting an aliquot of the radioiodine-labeled albumin with saline containing a small amount of detergent.

The plasma volume (PV) is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{PV (mL)} = S\ \text{(cpm/mL)} \times D \times V\ \text{(mL)}/P_0\ \text{(cpm/mL)}$$

where

S = counting rate of standard (counts/minute/mL)
D = dilution of diluted standard solution
V = volume of radioiodine-labeled albumin solution injected
P_0 = counting rate of plasma sample corrected to zero time (counts/minute/mL)

Interpretation

The normal erythrocyte volume for men is 20 to 36 mL/kg, and for women, it is 19 to 31 mL/kg. The plasma volume for men is 25 to 43 mL/kg; for women, 28 to 45 mL/kg. In newborns and premature infants, the red cell volume and plasma volume in milliliters per kilogram are higher than in adults.

Patients with polycythemia have red cell volumes exceeding 36 mL/kg for men and 32 mL/kg for women. Changes in erythrocyte volume and plasma volume in a variety of conditions are recorded in Table 32-12.

THE PORPHYRIAS

PHYSIOLOGY

Heme biosynthesis is an essential pathway that occurs in all metabolically active cells containing mitochondria and is most prominent in bone marrow and liver. The erythroid marrow is the major heme-forming tissue in the body, producing 85% of the daily heme requirement. Heme complexed with globin is preserved in circulating red blood cells for approximately 120 days, whereas heme produced in liver for cytochromes and enzymes is subject to much more rapid turnover, measurable in hours. A brief sequence of the heme biosynthesis pathway, with the disease states associated with specific enzyme deficiencies along the pathway, is shown in Figure 32-32.

Porphyrins are compounds composed of four pyrrole rings connected by methene bridges, differentiated by substituents found in the eight peripheral positions. The arrangement of four nitrogen atoms in the center of the porphyrin ring enables porphyrins to chelate various metal ions, such as iron, or in disease states, zinc. The biosynthetic intermediates between porphobilinogen (PBG) and protoporphyrin are not porphyrins, but rather their reduced, precursor forms: the porphyrinogens. The porphyrias make up a group of inherited and acquired disorders of heme biosynthesis caused by a deficiency of a specific enzyme in the biosynthetic pathway, culminating in the excess production and increased excretion of precursors formed in the steps before the enzyme defect. Porphyrins that leak out of capillaries into the skin are the cause of photosensitivity, and the precursor substances have been linked to the neurovisceral manifestations. δ-Aminolevulinic acid seems to be the chief offender here (Sassa, 2006).

APPROACH TO THE PORPHYRIAS

Consulting pathologists may take a three-step approach to this diverse group of uncommon diseases. First, review the clinical manifestations described by the referring provider. Classifying porphyrias by their clinical presentation is a helpful starting point, as clinicians will call with information about their patients' signs and symptoms, and then will ask for help with ordering laboratory studies (Tables 32-13 and 32-14). Second, suggest biochemical studies, as outlined in Table 32-13 and in the following section. A rapid diagnostic test for urine porphobilinogen is now available as a first step. Finally, coordinate genetic testing as guided by biochemical test results. Great strides have been made in identifying the genes and many mutations causing the porphyrias, and patients will likely wish to know this information as they discuss their diagnosis with family members. Websites helpful to both providers and patients include those of the Porphyrias Consortium of the National Institutes of Health Rare Diseases Clinical Research Network (http://rarediseasesnetwork.epi.usf.edu/porphyrias/index.htm), the American Porphyria Foundation (www.porphyriafoundation.com), and the Drug Database for Acute porphyrias (www.drugs-porphyria.com).

CLINICAL PORPHYRIAS AND THEIR BIOCHEMICAL BASIS

Neurovisceral Symptoms in Isolation

Acute Intermittent Porphyria (AIP)

AIP is the most common acute and probably the most common inherited porphyria (Chemmanur & Bonovsky, 2004). It is inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion with incomplete penetrance, making family studies more challenging, and over 375 mutations have been identified (Balwani & Desnick, 2012). PBG deaminase deficiency has been demonstrated in all examined tissues, at levels of about 50% during attacks and quiescent periods. Diagnosis may be made most easily with demonstration of elevated levels of ALA and PBG in urine during acute attacks (with PBG greater in amount than ALA), but the PBG enzyme assay can be performed

TABLE 32-12
Clinical Effect of Variable Relationship Between Red Blood Cell Volume and Plasma Volume

Red Blood Cell Volume	Plasma Volume	Cause	Effect
Normal	High	Pregnancy Cirrhosis Nephritis Congestive cardiac failure	Pseudoanemia
Normal	Low	Stress Peripheral circulatory failure Dehydration Edema Prolonged bed rest	Pseudopolycythemia
Low	Normal	Anemia	Accurate reflection of degree of anemia
Low	High	Anemia	Anemia less severe than indicated by blood count
Low	Low	Hemorrhage Severe anemia (when hematocrit <0.2)	Anemia more severe than indicated by blood count
High	Normal to low	Polycythemia	Accurate reflection of polycythemia or polycythemia less severe than apparent
High	High	Polycythemia (when hematocrit >0.5)	Polycythemia more severe than apparent
Normal or even high	High	Marked splenomegaly	Pseudoanemia

From Dacie JV, Lewis SM: *Practical haematology,* ed 5, Edinburgh, 1975, Churchill Livingstone.

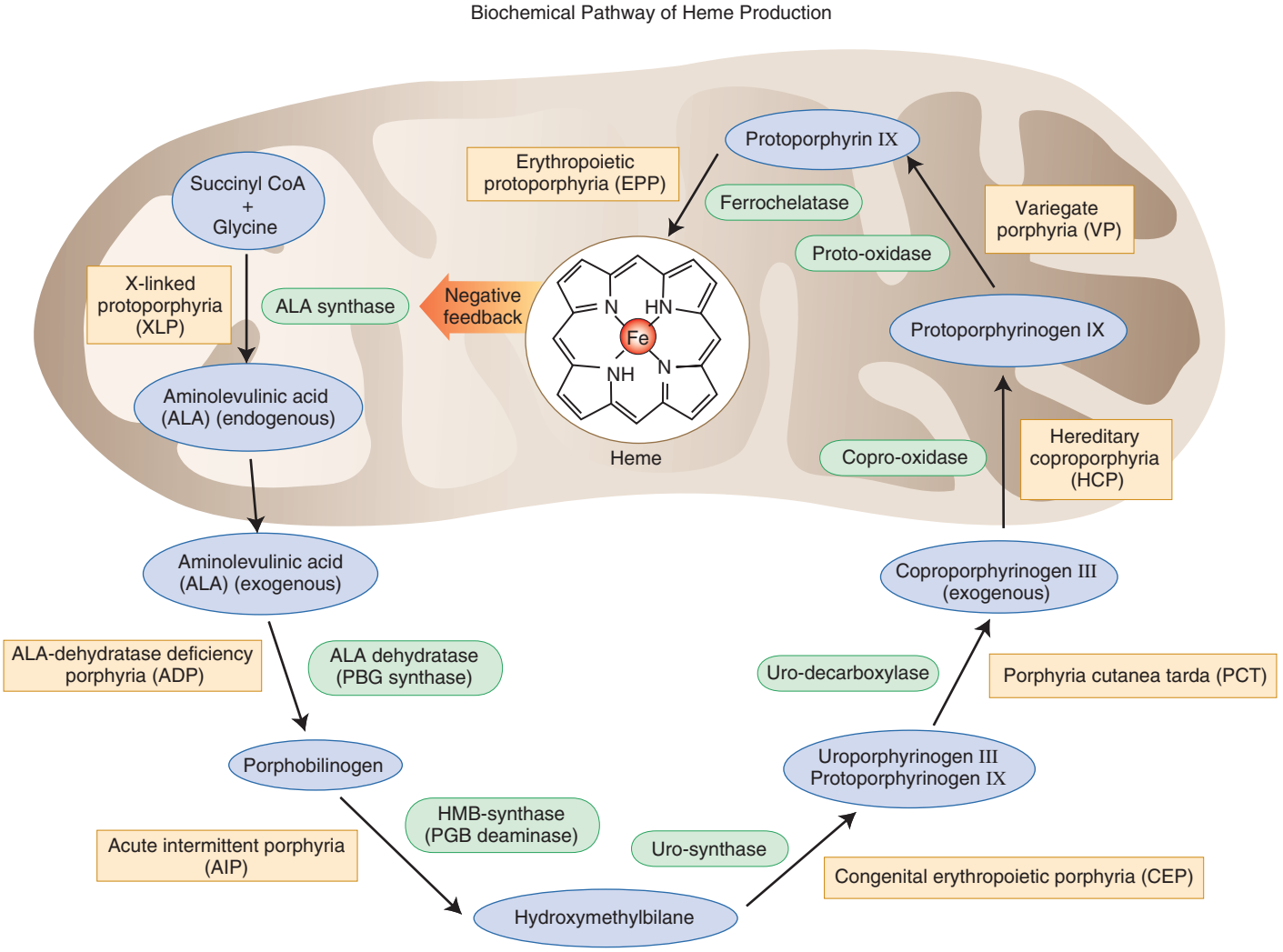


Figure 32-32 **Porphyria biochemical pathway of heme production.** *ADP,* Aminolevuoinic acid dehydratase; *AIP,* acute intermittent porphyria; *ALA,* Aminolevulinic acid; *EPP,* erythropoietic protoporphyria; *HMB,* hydroxymethylbilane; *CEP,* congenital erythropoietic porphyria; *PCT,* porphyria cutanea tarda; *CP III,* coproporphyrinogen III; *HCP,* hereditary coproporhyria; *UP III,* uroporphyrinogen III; *VP,* variegate porphyria; *XLP,* X-linked protoporphyria.

TABLE 32-13
Key Features of Major Porphyrias

Porphyria	Clinical Features	Excess Metabolites	Rapid Test	Enzyme Deficiency	Genetic Mutations
Acute intermittent porphyria	Abdominal pain; psychiatric symptoms	PBG (U) ALA (U) Darkened urine on standing	✔	HMB synthase	*HMBS* (>375 mutations)
Congenital erythropoietic porphyria	Photosensitivity; red urine, teeth; hemolysis	UP (U) CP (U) UP (E) Red, fluorescent pigment in urine		UP I synthase, UPG III cosynthase	*UROS* (>35 mutations)
Hereditary coproporphyria	Photosensitivity	CP III (F, U) PBG (U) ALA (U) Red, fluorescent pigment in urine	✔	Copro'ogen oxidase	*CPOX* (>60 mutations)
Variegate porphyria	Photosensitivity	PBG (U) ALA (U) UP (U, F) CP (U, F) Red, fluorescent pigment in urine	✔	Proto'ogen oxidase	*PPOX* (>165 mutations)
Porphyria cutanea tarda	Photosensitivity	UP I (U) UP III (U) Acid induces pink fluorescence		Uro'ogen decarboxylase	*UROD* (>105 mutations)

ALA, Aminolevulinic acid; *CP,* coproporphyrin; *E,* erythrocyte; *F,* feces; *PBG,* porphobilinogen; *U,* urine; *UP,* uroporphyrin; *UPG,* uroporphyrinogen.

TABLE 32-14
Test Results for the Porphyrias

Porphyria	Urine	RBC	Feces
Acute intermittent porphyria	↑ PBG, ALA	↓ PBGD activity	Noncontributory
ALA dehydratase deficiency porphyria	↑ porphyrins (ALA alone is increased) Note: Rule out organic acids and heavy metals in urine.	↓ D-aminolevulinic acid dehydratase activity	Noncontributory
Variegate porphyria	↑ porphyrins, PBG	Noncontributory	↑ coproporphyrin III/I ratio (<10)
Hereditary coproporphyria	↑ porphyrins, PBG	Noncontributory	↑ coproporphyrin III/I ratio (>10)
Porphyria cutanea tarda	↑ porphyrins	↓ UROD in Type II, UROD WNL in Types I, III	Noncontributory
Congenital erythropoietic porphyria	↑ porphyrins	↓ UPG III cosynthase	Noncontributory
Erythropoietic protoporphyria	Noncontributory	↑ free protoporphyrin	Noncontributory

ALA, Aminolevulinic acid; *PBG,* porphobilinogen; *PBGD,* porphobilinogen deaminase; *UPG,* uroporphyrinogen; *UROD,* uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase; *WNL,* within normal limits.

at any time on RBCs. Frequently, patients have urine metabolite levels at or near the reference range during quiescent periods. Characteristically, the urine of AIP patients turns dark red upon exposure to air and light, as PBG is oxidized to a porphyrin spontaneously. The patient may be hyponatremic (20% of cases) or hypomagnesemic during acute attacks (Anyaegbu et al, 2012). Common symptoms include colicky abdominal pain (74%), nausea and vomiting (73%), mental confusion, tachycardia, and motor weakness (63%) (Bonkovsky et al, 2014). Symptoms typically begin at the time of puberty, reflecting the influence of steroid hormones on the disease, but the disease can present in children (Anyaegbu et al, 2012). Prevention is the mainstay of management, with avoidance of particular drugs (barbiturates and sulfonamides among many others), hormonal changes, and fasting. Specifically, a low-carbohydrate diet may trigger an attack. A recent study identified an increased risk for malnutrition in AIP patients compared to matched controls (Garcia-Diz et al, 2012). In the postoperative period, patients with AIP must be managed carefully to avoid hypoglycemia (Benassi et al, 2012).

Aminolevulinic Acid Dehydratase Deficiency Porphyria (ADP)

ADP is the rarest of the porphyrias, with just ten reported cases (Balwani & Desnick, 2012). Clinically indistinguishable from AIP, it may be differentiated in the laboratory by the presence of excess ALA alone in the urine and decreased d-aminolevulinic acid dehydratase in the red blood cells of affected patients. Of note, this type of porphyria must be distinguished from tyrosinemia and heavy metal intoxication.

Neurovisceral Symptoms Plus Photosensitivity

Variegate Porphyria (VP)

Similar to AIP and HCP, VP is inherited as an autosomal dominant disorder with low penetrance. It is sometimes referred to as *South African porphyria* because of its prevalence in the Caucasian population in this region. It is called **variegate** because of the spectrum of patient presentations. Some have only the cutaneous manifestations, others just the neurovisceral, and others both features. Thus, the clinician need not check both boxes to entertain this diagnosis, especially in patients of Afrikaner descent. Patients have approximately 50% activity of protoporphyrinogen oxidase. Thus, they excrete fecal protoporphyrins and coproporphyrins and urine ALA, PBG, and coproporphyrins. Induction of hepatic ALA synthase I by precipitating factors, such as barbiturates, oral contraceptives, or a low-carbohydrate diet, specifically results in increased ALA and PBG during acute attacks (Chemmanur & Bonovsky, 2004). Cutaneous manifestations in the form of erosions or bullae following trauma to sun-exposed skin are seen at a younger age than is observed with porphyria cutanea tarda. Diagnosis is made by conventional measurements of metabolites, family history, and DNA analysis. Avoidance of triggering factors remains the major approach to patient care.

Hereditary Coproporphyria (HCP)

Also inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion with incomplete penetrance, HCP is less common than AIP. It is due to a deficiency of coproporphyrinogen oxidase. Clinically, HCP resembles a milder form of AIP with its neurovisceral attacks, but cutaneous manifestations are seen in roughly one third of patients (Chemmanur & Bonovsky, 2004). Fecal coproporphyrinogen III is excreted both during and between attacks, and ALA and PBG are seen in urine during an acute crisis. ALA excretion usually exceeds that of PBG, and this, coupled with the cutaneous findings (if present) helps to differentiate HCP from AIP. Prevention, including sunscreen, is central to management.

Photosensitivity Plus Hemolytic Anemia

Porphyria Cutanea Tarda (PCT)

PCT is the most common of the porphyrias in the United States. Type 1 is sporadic; type 2 is inherited in autosomal dominant fashion. The deficient enzyme is uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase (UROD), and researchers have postulated the presence of an inhibitor of UROD, possibly secondary to iron and metabolites of uroporphyrinogen. Over 105 mutations have been inheritied in the UROD gene (Balwani & Desnick, 2012). It is interesting to note that patients with hemochromatosis are at increased risk for acquired PCT (Chemmanur & Bonovsky, 2004). Patients present with cutaneous findings alone, and these are due to mild trauma to sun-exposed areas, not simple photosensitivity. Diagnostic laboratory findings include increased uroporphyrins with smaller increases in urine coproporphyrins. Exacerbating factors, such as alcohol, an inducer of hepatic ALA synthase I, and estrogens, should be avoided. Additional management strategies involve phlebotomy to reduce the hepatic iron load, chloroquine to complex porphyrins for urinary excretion, and the use of sunscreen (Chemmanur & Bonovsky, 2004).

Congenital Erythropoietic Porphyria (CEP)

CEP is distinct from the other porphyrias discussed earlier in both its inheritance (it is a recessive disorder) and its severity. Patients present shortly after birth with red-pigmented urine, hemolytic anemia, and severe cutaneous photosensitivity. Erythrodontia is striking and may be a useful clue if the diagnosis has not already been made. The deficient enzyme is uroporphyrinogen III synthase with over 35 mutations identified, and ALA synthase activity is increased. Coproporphyrin I and uroporphyrin I are present in urine. The prognosis for CEP is significantly worse than for the other porphyrias, with death occurring at an early age in many cases.

Photosensitivity in Isolation

Erythropoietic Protoporphyria (EPP) and X-linked Porphyria (XLP)

EPP is due to a partial deficiency of the enzyme ferrochelatase, the final enzyme in the heme biosynthetic pathway. An autosomal recessive disorder, it is caused by one of over 135 mutations of the *FECH* gene (Balwani & Desnick, 2012). Clinical symptoms begin in childhood, earlier than in other porphyrias (which have their onset at puberty) and painful, itching erythema occurs within a short time (minutes) of sun exposure. Neuropsychiatric symptoms are absent, but a recent case series described a child who was sent for psychiatric care after screaming in pain when outside (Wahlin et al, 2006). This article makes a useful point regarding the emotional sequelae of painful skin lesions: Emotional distress follows many diseases and must be carefully distinguished from the specific, although myriad, neurovisceral symptoms that characterize other porphyrias. Uniquely among the porphyrias, EPP has a normal urine profile, and RBC testing must be performed to render a diagnosis. XLP is newly described and clinically indistinguishable from EPP. It is due to a gain-of-function of the *ALAS2* gene (Balwani & Desnick, 2012).

ANALYTIC TECHNIQUES

Diagnosis in the clinic or hospital laboratory may begin with the Trace PBG Kit (Trace America/Trace Diagnostics, Wheeling, Ill.) to identify urine porphobiloinogens. Table 32-13 shows which porphyrias will have elevated levels. After an initial test, analysis of urine, red blood cells, and feces for various porphyrins typically increased in the porphyrias, and for specific enzymes of the heme biosynthetic pathway, takes place in reference laboratories. The pathologist should select a laboratory that is well familiar with the porphyrias and that follows a logical algorithm, so that disease, if present, can be properly classified. Neither the ordering clinician nor the general pathologist needs to attempt classification of the porphyria by selecting one or two specific assays. The algorithmic approach is the rational one and begins with a quantitative evaluation of porphyrins: PBG and ALA in the urine, and porphyrins and PBGD (porphobilinogen deaminase) measurement in the erythrocytes. High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and fluorometry are the mainstays of analytic technique. HPLC can separate individual porphyrins; this, combined with measurement of total fecal porphyrins, reliably distinguishes between AIP and HCP (Deacon & Elder, 2001). VP may be diagnosed by measurement of fecal and urine metabolites, and also by the fluorescence emission peak of 624 to 627 nm, which is unique among the porphyrias (Poh-Fitzpatrick, 1980). The proper samples to submit for testing are urine (a 24-hour sample is strongly preferred, with the appropriate preservative dictated by the reference laboratory) and blood. A stool sample should be provided if VP or HCP is being considered but is less critical for the other porphyrias. Genetic testing for specific mutations should be performed on patients diagnosed by clinical signs and urine/RBC/feces analysis. Recall that the porphyrias are characterized by incomplete penetrance. Family history may or may not suggest the diagnosis; an absence of family history in no way precludes the presence of a porphyria. One a specific mutation is identified, testing of kindreds can follow in a targeted fashion.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Balwani M, Desnick RJ: The porphyrias: advances in diagnosis and treatment, *Blood* 120:4496–4504, 2012.
A comprehensive review of the diagnosis, classification and treatment of the porphyrias.

Bunn HF, Forget BG: *Hemoglobin: molecular, genetic and clinical aspects*, Philadelphia, 1986, Saunders.
This classic book provides elegant descriptions of major hemoglobinopathies and includes essential clues to differential diagnosis in a concise manner.

Cappellini MD, Fiorelli G: Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, *Lancet* 371:64–74, 2008.
A concise and informative review of glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency.

Garratty G, Arndt PA: An update on drug-induced immune hemolytic anemia, *Immunohematology* 23: 105–119, 2007.
A detailed review about the prevalence and mechanism of cephalosporin-induced hemolytic anemia.

Hoyer JD, Kroft SH, editors: *Color atlas of hemoglobin disorders. A compendium based on proficiency testing*, 2003, College of American Pathologists.
A practical approach to diagnosis of the important hemoglobin disorders.

Kozyraki R, Cases O: Vitamin B12 absorption: mammalian physiology and acquired and inherited disorders, *Biochimie* 95:1002–1007, 2013.
An excellent review of recent adavances in the physiology of vitamin B12 absorption and its diorders.

Moake JL: Thrombotic microangiopathies, *N Engl J Med* 347:589–600, 2002.
An excellent review of pathophysiologic mechanisms, clinical presentation, and management of thrombotic microangiopathy. The accompanying figures are exceptionally well designed and simple.

Steinberg MH, Forget BG, Higgs DR, et al, editors: *Disorders of hemoglobin*, ed 2, New York, 2009, Cambridge University Press.
A comprehensive reference book on disorders of hemoglobin; detailed account of hemoglobin variants.

Weatherall DJ, Clegg JB: *The thalassaemia syndromes*, ed 4, Oxford, 2001, Blackwell Scientific Publications.
A complete study of thalassemias and their interaction with variant hemoglobins.

REFERENCES

Alcindor T, Bridges KR: Sideroblastic anaemias, *Br J Haematol* 116:733–743, 2002.

Alter BP: Prenatal diagnosis: general introduction, methodology, and review, *Hemoglobin* 12:763–772, 1988.

Alter BP: Bone marrow failure syndromes in children, *Pediatr Clin North Am* 49:973–988, 2002.

Alter BP, Young NS: The bone marrow failure syndromes. In Nathan DG, Orkin SH, editors: *Oski's hematology of infancy and childhood*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 1998, Saunders, p 237.

Anyaegbu E, Goodman M, et al: Acute intermittent porphyria: a diagnostic challenge, *J Child Neurol* 917–921, 2012.

Bain BJ, Wild BJ, Stephens AD, et al: *Variant haemoglobins: a guide to identification*, ed 1, 2010, Wiley-Blackwell.

Basset P, Braconnier F, Rosa J: An update on electrophoretic and chromatographic methods in the diagnosis of hemoglobinopathies, *J Chromatogr Biomed Appl* 227:267–304, 1982.

Beck WS, editor: *Hematology*, ed 5, Cambridge, Mass, 1991, The MIT Press.

Benassi F, Righi E, Cimato P, et al: Cardiac surgery in patients with acute intermittent porphyria, *J Card Surg* 27:331–334, 2012.

Bentley SA: Red cell survival studies reinterpreted, *Clin Haematol* 6:601–623, 1977.

Beutler E: *Red cell metabolism: a manual of biochemical methods*, ed 3, Orlando, Fla, 1984, Grune & Stratton.

Beutler E: The molecular biology of enzymes and erythrocyte metabolisms. In Stamatoyannopoulos G, Nienhuis AW, Majerus PW, et al, editors: *The molecular basis of blood diseases*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1994, Saunders, p 331.

Beutler E: Disorders of iron metabolism. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al, editors: *Williams Hematology*, ed 8, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 565.

Beutler E, Luzzatto L: Hemolytic anemia, *Semin Hematol* 36:38–47, 1999.

Beutler E, Blume KG, Kaplan JC, et al: International committee for standardization in haematology: recommended screening test for glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G-6-PD) deficiency, *Br J Haematol* 43:465–467, 1979.

Bonkovsky HL, Maddukuri VC, et al: Acute porphyrias in the USA: features of 108 subjects from Porphyria Consortium, *Am J Med* 127:1233–1241, 2014.

Bottomley SS: Sideroblastic anaemia, *Clin Haematol* 11:389–409, 1982.

Bottomley SS, Fleming MD: Sideroblastic anemia: diagnosis and management, *Hematol Oncol Clin N Am* 28: 653–670, 2014.

Briere RO, Golias T, Batsakis JG: Rapid qualitative and quantitative hemoglobin fractionation: cellulose acetate electrophoresis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 44:695–701, 1965.

Brittenham GM: Disorders of iron metabolism. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ, Shattil SJ, et al, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2009, Churchill Livingstone Elsevier, p 453.

Brodsky RA: Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ, Shattil SJ, et al, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2009, Churchill Livingstone, p 385.

Bunn HF: Sickle hemoglobin and other hemoglobin mutants. In Stamatoyannopoulos G, Nienhuis AW, Majerus PW, et al, editors: *The molecular basis of blood diseases*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1994, Saunders, p 207.

Bunn HF: Human hemoglobins: normal and abnormal. In Nathan DG, Orkin SH, editors: *Oski's hematology of infancy and childhood*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 1998, Saunders, p 729.

Carmel R: Ethnic and racial factors in cobalamin metabolism and its disorders, *Semin Hematol* 36:88–100, 1999.

Caro J, Outschoorn UM: Anemia of chronic renal disease. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 8, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 495.

Carrell RW, Kay R: A simple method for the detection of unstable haemoglobins, *Br J Haematol* 23:615–619, 1972.

Cazzola M: Serum erythropoietin concentration as a diagnostic tool for polycythemia vera, *Haematologica* 89:1159–1160, 2004.

Chemmanur AT, Bonovsky HL: Hepatic porphyries: diagnosis and management, *Clin Liver Dis* 4:807–838, 2004.

Chong SS, Boehm CD, Higgs DR, et al: Single-tube multiplex-PCR screen for common deletional determinants of α-thalassemia, *Blood* 95:360–362, 2000.

Clark SF: Iron deficiency anemia: diagnosis and management, *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 25:122–128, 2009.

Clarke GM, Higgins TN: Laboratory investigation of hemoglobinopathies and thalassemias: review and update, *Clin Chem* 46:1284–1290, 2000.

Dacie JV, Lewis SM: *Practical haematology*, ed 7, Edinburgh, 1991, Churchill Livingstone.

Da Costa L, Galimand J, Fenneteau O, et al: Hereditary spherocytosis, elliptocytosis, and other red cell membrane disorders, *Blood Rev* 27:167–178, 2013.

Dallman PR, Yip R, Oski FA: Iron deficiency and related nutritional anemias. In Nathan DG, Oski FA, editors: *Hematology of infancy and childhood*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1993, Saunders, p 413.

Deacon AC, Elder GH: Best Practice No. 165: front line tests for the investigation of suspected porphyria, *J Clin Pathol* 54:500–507, 2001.

De Falco L, Sanchez M, Silvestri L, et al: Iron refractory iron deficiency anemia, *Haematologica* 98:845–853, 2013.

Dieterich DT, Spivak JL: Hematologic disorders associated with hepatitis C virus infection and their management, *Clin Infect Dis* 37:533–541, 2003.

Donath J, Landsteiner K: Uber paroxysmale Haemoglobinurie, *Munch Med Wschr* 51:1590, 1904.

Efremov GD, Mladenovski B, Petkov G, et al: Lepore hemoglobinopathy in Yugoslavia, *New Istanbul Contrib Clin Sci* 12:211–232, 1978.

Elghetany MT, Hudnall SD, Gardner FH: Peripheral blood picture in primary hypocellular refractory anemia and idiopathic acquired aplastic anemia: an additional tool for differential diagnosis, *Haematologica* 82:21–24, 1997.

Erslev AJ: Pure red cell aplasia. In Beutler E, Lichtman MA, Coller BS, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 6, New York, 2001a, McGraw-Hill, p 391.

Erslev AJ: Traumatic cardiac hemolytic anemia. In Beutler E, Lichtman MA, Coller BS, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 6, New York, 2001b, McGraw-Hill, p 619.

Erslev AJ: Pure red cell aplasia. In Beutler E, Lichtman MA, Coller BS, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 6, New York, 2001c, McGraw-Hill, p 391.

Fairbanks VF, Oliveros R, Brandabur JH, et al: Homozygous hemoglobin E mimics beta-thalassemia minor without anemia or hemolysis: hematologic, functional, and biosynthetic studies of first North American cases, *Am J Hematol* 8:109–121, 1980.

Fleming MD: The regulation of hepcidin and its effect on systemic and cellular iron metabolism, *Hematology* 151:2008. Annual Meeting of the American Society of Hematology, San Francisco, December 2008.

Franco RS: The measurement and importance of red cell survival, *Am J Hematol* 84:109–114, 2009.

Freedman MH: Inherited forms of bone marrow failure. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ, Shattil SJ, et al, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2009, Churchill Livingstone, p 319.

Gallagher PG, Jarolim P: Red cell membrane disorders. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ, Shattil SJ, et al, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2009, Churchill Livingstone, p 623.

Garcia-Diz L, Murcia AM, Gris JL, et al: Assessing nutritional status of acute intermittent porphyria patients, *Eur J of Clin Invest* 42:943–952, 2012.

Gehrs BC, Friedberg RC: Autoimmune hemolytic anemia, *Am J Hematol* 69:258, 2002.

Globin Gene Server: Database of hemoglobin variants and thalassemia mutations. Available at: http://globin.cse.psu.edu/. Accessed September 9, 2015.

Gordeuk VR, Stockton DW, Prchal JT: Congenital polycythemias/erythrocytoses, *Haematologica* 90:109–116, 2005.

Green R: Folate, cobalamin, and megaloblastic anemia. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 8, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 533.

Gregg XT, Prchal JT: Anemia of endocrine disorders. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 8, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 509.

Head CE, Conroy M, Jarvis M, et al: Some observations on the measurement of haemoglobin A2 and S percentages by high performance liquid chromatography in the presence and absence of alpha thalassaemia, *J Clin Pathol* 57:276–280, 2004.

Herbert V: Megaloblastic anemias, *Lab Invest* 52:3–19, 1985.

Hershko C, Patz J, Ronson A: The anemia of achylia gastrica revisited, *Blood Cells Mol Dis* 39:178–183, 2007.

Higgs DR, Aldridge BE, Lamb J, et al: The interaction of alpha-thalassemia and homozygous sickle-cell disease, *N Engl J Med* 306:1441–1446, 1982.

Higgs DR, Vickers MA, Wilkie AO, et al: A review of the molecular genetics of the human alpha-globin gene cluster, *Blood* 73:1081–1104, 1989.

Hillman RS, Finch CA: *Red cell manual*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 1996, FA Davis.

Huisman TH: Trimodality in the percentages of beta chain variants in heterozygotes: the effect of the number of active HB alpha structural loci, *Hemoglobin* 1:349–382, 1977.

Huisman TH: The human fetal hemoglobins, *Tex Rep Biol Med* 40:29–42, 1980.

Huisman THJ: *The hemoglobinopathies: methods in hematology*, vol 15, Edinburgh, 1986, Churchill Livingstone.

International Committee for Standardization in Haematology: Recommended methods for measurement of red-cell and plasma volume, *J Nucl Med* 21:793, 1980.

Iolascon A, Esposito MR, Russo R: Clinical aspects and pathogenesis of congenital dyserythropoietic anemias: from morphology to molecular approach, *Haematologica* 97:1786–1794, 2012.

Jones JA, Broszeit HK, LeCrone CN, et al: An improved method for detection of red cell hemoglobin H inclusions, *Am J Med Technol* 47:94–96, 1981.

Kautz L, Jung G, Valore EV, et al: Identification of erythroferrone as an erythroid regulator of iron metabolism, *Nat Genet* 46:678–684, 2014.

Keren DF, Hedstrom D, Gulbranson R, et al: Comparison of Sebia Capillarys capillary electrophoresis with the Primus high-pressure liquid chromatography in the evaluation of hemoglobinopathies, *Am J Clin Pathol* 130:824–831, 2008.

Labbé RF, Dewanji A: Iron assessment tests: transferrin receptor vis-a-vis zinc protoporphyrin, *Clin Biochem* 37:165–174, 2004.

Landaw SA: Polycythemia vera and other polycythemic states, *Clin Lab Med* 10:857–871, 1990.

Lindenbaum J: Status of laboratory testing in the diagnosis of megaloblastic anemia, *Blood* 61:624–627, 1983.

Lindenbaum J, Healton EB, Savage DG, et al: Neuropsychiatric disorders caused by cobalamin deficiency in the absence of anemia or macrocytosis, *N Engl J Med* 318:1720–1728, 1988.

Looker AC, Dallman PR, Carroll MD, et al: Prevalence of iron deficiency in the United States, *JAMA* 277:973–976, 1997.

Maran J, Prchal J: Polycythemia and oxygen sensing, *Pathol Biol (Paris)* 52:280–284, 2004.

Marsh JCW, Ball SE, Canenagh J, et al: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of aplastic anemia, *Br J Haematol* 147:43–70, 2009.

McMinn JR, George JN: Evaluation of women with clinically suspected thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura-hemolytic uremic syndrome during pregnancy, *J Clin Apheresis* 16:202–209, 2001.

Means RT Jr: Recent developments in the anemia of chronic disease, *Curr Hematol Rep* 2:116–121, 2003.

Milner PF, Gooden HM: Rapid citrate-agar electrophoresis in routine screening for hemoglobinopathies using a simple hemolysate, *Am J Clin Pathol* 64:58–64, 1975.

Miwa S: Pyruvate kinase deficiency and other enzymopathies of the Embden-Meyerhof pathway, *Clin Haematol* 10:57–80, 1981.

Moake JL: Idiopathic thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Hematology* 408:2004. Annual Meeting of the American Society of Hematology, San Diego, December 2004.

Motulsky AG: Frequency of sickling disorders in US Blacks, *N Engl J Med* 288:31–33, 1973.

Nemeth E, Ganz T: Anemia of inflammation, *Hematol Oncol Clin N Am* 28:671–681, 2014.

Oh R, Brown DL: Vitamin B12 deficiency, *Am Fam Physician* 67:979–986, 2003.

Old JM: DNA-based diagnosis of hemoglobin disorders. In Steinberg MH, Forget BG, Higgs DR, et al, editors: *Disorders of hemoglobin*, Cambridge, 2001, Cambridge University Press, p 941.

Ozatli D, Koksal AS, Haznedaroglu IC, et al: Erythrocytes: anemias in chronic liver diseases, *Hematology* 5:69–76, 2000.

Packman CH: Hemolytic anemia resulting from immune injury. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 8, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 777.

Paglia DE, Valentine WN: Haemolytic anaemia associated with disorders of the purine and pyrimidine salvage pathways, *Clin Haematol* 10:81–98, 1981.

Patnaik MM, Tefferi A: The complete evaluation of erythrocytosis: congenital and acquired, *Leukemia* 23: 834–844, 2009.

Petz LD: Cold antibody autoimmune hemolytic anemias, *Blood Rev* 22:1–15, 2008.

Pierce HI, Sumiko KK, Sofroniadou K, et al: Frequencies of thalassemia in American Blacks, *Blood* 49:981–986, 1977.

Poh-Fitzpatrick MB: A plasma porphyrin fluorescence marker for variegate porphyria, *Arch Dermatol* 116:543–547, 1980.

Powers JM, Buchanan GR: Diagnosis and management of iron deficiency anemia, *Hematol Oncol Clin N Am* 28:729–745, 2014.

Prchal JT: Clinical manifestations and classification of erythrocytic disorders. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 8, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 445.

Prchal JT: Classification and molecular biology of polycythemias (erythrocytoses) and thrombocytosis, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 17:1151–1158, 2003.

Ramasethu J, Luban NLC: Alloimmune hemolytic anemia of the fetus and newborn. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 8, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 799.

Rees DC, Duley JA, Marinaki AM: Pyrimidine 5′ nucleotidase deficiency, *Br J Haematol* 120:375–383, 2003.

Riou J, Godart C, Hurtrel D, et al: Cation-exchange HPLC evaluated for presumptive identification of hemoglobin variants, *Clin Chem* 43:34–39, 1997.

Risso A, Ciana A, Achilli C, et al: Neocytolysis: none, one or many? A reappraisal and future perspectives, *Front Physiol* 5:54, 2014.

Ritchie DS, Underhill C, Grigg AP: Aplastic anemia as a late complication of thymoma in remission, *Eur J Haematol* 68:389–391, 2002a.

Ritchie RF, Palomaki GE, Neveux LM, et al: Reference distributions for serum iron and transferrin saturation: a practical, simple, and clinically relevant approach in a large cohort, *J Clin Lab Anal* 16:237–245, 2002b.

Rosove MH: Thrombotic microangiopathies, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 43:797–805, 2014.

Rosse WF: Cold-induced immune hemolytic anemia, *Hematology* 58:2004. Annual Meeting of the American Society of Hematology, San Diego, December 2004.

Sassa S: Modern diagnosis and management of the porphyrias, *Br J Haematol* 135:281–292, 2006.

Scalabrino G: The multi-faceted basis of vitamin B12 (cobalamin) neurotrophism in adult central nervous system: lessons learned from its deficiency, *Prog Neurobiol* 88:203–220, 2009.

Scheinberg P, Young NS: How I treat acquired aplastic anemia, *Blood* 120:1185–1196, 2012.

Schneider RG, Hightower B, Hosty TS, et al: Abnormal hemoglobins in a quarter million people, *Blood* 48: 629–637, 1976.

Schrier SL, Price EA: Extrinsic nonimmune hemolytic anemias. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ, Shattil SJ, et al, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2009, Churchill Livingstone, p 659.

Schroter W, Nafz C: Diagnostic significance of hemoglobin F and A2 levels in homo- and heterozygous beta-thalassemia during infancy, *Helv Paediatr Acta* 36:519–525, 1981.

Shepard MK, Weatherall DJ, Conley CL: Semiquantitative estimation of the distribution of fetal hemoglobin in red cell populations, *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 110:293–310, 1962.

Shimamura A, Alter BP: Pathophysiology and management of inherited bone marrow failure syndromes, *Blood Rev* 24:101–122, 2010.

Shulman IA, Branch DR, Nelson JM, et al: Autoimmune hemolytic anemia with both cold and warm autoantibodies, *JAMA* 253:1746–1748, 1985.

Silvestri L, Nai A, Pagani A, et al: The extrahepatic role of TFR2 in iron homeostasis, *Front Pharmacol* 5:93, 2014.

Sokol RJ, Booker DJ, Stamps R: The pathology of autoimmune haemolytic anaemia, *J Clin Pathol* 45:1047–1052, 1992.

Sokol RJ, Hewitt S: Autoimmune hemolysis: a critical review, *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 4:125–154, 1985.

Soldin OP, Bierbower LH, Choi JJ, et al: Serum iron, ferritin, transferrin, total iron binding capacity, hs-CRP, LDL cholesterol and magnesium in children; new reference intervals using the Dade dimension clinical chemistry system, *Clin Chim Acta* 342:211–217, 2004.

Steinberg MH: Management of sickle cell disease, *N Engl J Med* 340:1021–1030, 1999.

Steinberg MH, Coleman MB, Adams JG, et al: The effects of alpha-thalassaemia in HbSC disease, *Br J Haematol* 55:487–492, 1983.

Steinberg MH, Forget BG, Higgs DR, et al: *Disorders of hemoglobins*, Cambridge, 2001, Cambridge University Press.

Stenvinkel P: Anaemia and inflammation: what are the implications for the nephrologist?, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 18:17–22, 2003.

Suh DD, Krauss JS, Bures K: Influence of hemoglobin S adducts on hemoglobin A2 quantification by HPLC, *Clin Chem* 42:1113–1114, 1996.

Sutherland DR, Keeney M, Illingworth A: Practical guidelines for the high-sensitivity detection and monitoring of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria clones by flow cytometry, *Cytometry Part B* 82B:195–208, 2012.

Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, Lyon, 2008, IARC Press.

Tietz NW, editor: *Clinical guide to laboratory tests*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1990, Saunders.

Thein SL, Menzel S: Discovering the genetics underlying foetal haemoglobin production in adults, *Br J Haematol* 145:455–467, 2009.

Valentine WN: The Stratton lecture: hemolytic anemia and inborn errors of metabolism, *Blood* 54:549–559, 1979.

Van den Bosch G, Van den Bossche J, Wagner C, et al: Determination of iron metabolism—related reference values in a healthy adult population, *Clin Chem* 47: 1465–1467, 2001.

Van Solinge WW, van Wijk R: Disorders of red cells resulting from enzyme abnormalities. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al, editors: *Williams hematology*, ed 8, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, p 647.

Visentin M, Diop-Bove N, Zhao R, et al: The intestinal absorption of folates, *Annu Rev Physiol* 76:251–274, 2014.

Wahlin S, Floderus Y, Ros A-M, et al: The difficult clinical diagnosis of erythropoietic protoporphyria, *Physiol Res* 55(Suppl 2):S155–S157, 2006.

Ward PC: Modern approaches to the investigation of vitamin B12 deficiency, *Clin Lab Med* 22:435–445, 2002.

Wasi P, Na-Nakorn S, Pootrakul S-N: The alpha-thalassemias, *Clin Haematol* 3:383, 1974.

Weatherall DJ: Prenatal diagnosis of inherited blood diseases, *Clin Haematol* 14:747–774, 1985.

Weatherall DJ: The thalassemias. In Stamatoyannapoulos G, Niehuis AW, Majerus PW, et al, editors: *The molecular basis of blood disease*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1994, Saunders, p 157.

Weatherall DJ: The inherited diseases of hemoglobin are an emerging global health burden, *Blood* 115:43316, 2010.

Weatherall DJ, Clegg JB: Genetic disorders of hemoglobin, *Semin Hematol* 36:24–37, 1999.

Whitehead VM: Acquired and inherited disorders of cobalamin and folate in children, *Br J Haematol* 134: 125–136, 2006.

Whitten WJ, Rucknagel DL: The proportion of hb A2 is higher in sickle cell trait than in normal homozygotes, *Hemoglobin* 5:371–378, 1981.

Wintrobe MM, Lee GR, Boggs DR, et al: *Clinical hematology*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 1981, Lea & Febiger.

Wrightstone RN, Huisman TH: On the levels of hemoglobins F and A2 in sickle-cell anemia and some related disorders, *Am J Clin Pathol* 61:375–381, 1974.

Young NS: Acquired aplastic anemia, *Ann Intern Med* 136:534–546, 2002.

Young NS, Maciejewski JP: Aplastic anemia. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ, Shattil SJ, et al, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2009, Churchill Livingstone, p 359.

Zanella A, Fermo E, Bianchi P, et al: Red cell pyruvate kinase deficiency: molecular and clinical aspects, *Br J Haematol* 130:11–25, 2005.

Zhang D-L, Ghosh MC, Rouault TA: The physiological functions of iron regulatory proteins in iron homeostasis—an update, *Front Pharamcol* 5:124, 2014.

Zheng XL, Sadler JE: Pathogenesis of thrombotic microangiopathy, *Ann Rev Pathol Mech Dis* 3:249–277, 2008.

Zini G, D'Onofrio G, Briggs C, et al: ICSH recommendations for identification, diagnostic value, and quantification of schistocytes, *Int J Lab Hematol* 34: 107–116, 2012.

Zittoun J, Zittoun R: Modern clinical testing strategies in cobalamin and folate deficiency, *Semin Hematol* 36:35–46, 1999.

CHAPTER 33

LEUKOCYTIC DISORDERS

Robert E. Hutchison, Katherine I. Schexneider

LEUKOCYTES, 606

NONNEOPLASTIC DISORDERS, 606
Granulocytic and Monocytic Disorders, 606
Lymphocytic and Plasmacytic Disorders, 612
Leukemoid Reactions, 616

NEOPLASTIC DISORDERS PRIMARILY INVOLVING LEUKOCYTES, 616
Overview of Hematopoietic Neoplasms, 616
Chronic Myeloproliferative Disorders, 617
Acute Myeloid Leukemia, 626
Precursor Lymphoid Neoplasms, 634
Mature B Cell Neoplasms, 635
Mature T Cell and Natural Killer Cell Neoplasms, 647
Hodgkin Lymphoma, 653
Immunodeficiency-Associated Lymphoproliferative Disorders, 656
Histiocytic and Dendritic Cell Neoplasms, 656

SELECTED REFERENCES, 658

KEY POINTS

- Leukocytes are regulated by complex homeostatic mechanisms that direct their responses to infection and inflammation.
- Leukocytosis often reflects an underlying abnormality; leukopenia, especially neutropenia, places a patient at risk for infection.
- Hematopoietic neoplasms have been categorized by a World Health Organization classification according to cell of origin, cytogenetic and molecular abnormalities, immunophenotype, and clinical features.
- Acute leukemias are rapidly progressing neoplasms of precursor myeloid or lymphoid cell origin. An understanding of biology is associated with improvements in therapy.
- Chronic myeloproliferative disorders and myelodysplastic syndromes are heterogeneous disorders of differentiated myeloid cells. They often are initially indolent but ultimately progress.
- Non-Hodgkin lymphomas most often arise from mature B cells. They are pathologically and clinically heterogeneous. T cell lymphomas are less common, also heterogeneous, and often difficult to treat successfully.
- Hodgkin lymphoma is a neoplasm of defective B cells. Much of its pathology is due to an associated inflammatory milieu.

LEUKOCYTES

Leukocytes, or white blood cells, are found within the bone marrow (BM), the peripheral blood, and the tissues. They protect the body from infection and other foreign insults and include granulocytes, lymphocytes (B and T/NK cells), monocytes, eosinophils, and basophils. Normal leukocyte development is reviewed in Chapter 31. Leukocyte function and homeostasis are highly complex areas of biology that span several disciplines.

NONNEOPLASTIC DISORDERS

Laboratory examination of leukocytes occurs as part of the automated complete blood count (CBC) for almost every patient. The total leukocyte or white blood cell (WBC) count, as well as the relative and absolute concentrations of neutrophils, lymphocytes, monocytes, eosinophils, and basophils is determined and compared to normal values for the patient's age and sex. The absolute concentrations (i.e., the product of the WBC count and the percentage of the respective cell series, such as lymphocytes or neutrophils) are of most value in determining abnormalities. Abnormal results from the automated count are "flagged" and then reviewed by a skilled laboratory technologist.

These abnormalities include leukocytosis, which is an increase in the total WBC count, and leukopenia, a decrease in the total WBC count, each compared to normal values for age and sex. The differential count, usually first performed on an automated instrument, quantifies the relative and absolute concentrations of the various forms of leukocytes and the maturation state for neutrophils. An increase in the absolute concentration of cells in each series is termed *neutrophilia (neutrophilic leukocytosis)*, *lymphocytosis*, *monocytosis*, *eosinophilia (eosinophilic leukocytosis)*, and *basophilia (basophilic leukocytosis)*. A decrease in the absolute concentration is termed *neutropenia*, *lymphopenia* (or *lymphocytopenia*), *monocytopenia*, *eosinopenia*, and *basopenia*. Increased numbers of band neutrophils and/or the presence of immature neutrophils (metamyelocytes and earlier) are noted and enumerated and often confirmed or modified by a manual differential count.

Nucleated RBCs are also counted and subtracted from the WBC count by an automated or manual method. Abnormalities may occur in both neoplastic conditions (e.g., leukemia or marrow infiltration by metastatic tumor) and nonneoplastic conditions (e.g., infection, drug effect, or nutritional deficiency). Increase in any cell type may be clinically important, but decrease is most significant for neutrophils. Lymphocytopenia is important in immune deficiency syndromes. Isolated monocytopenia, eosinopenia, or basopenia is not usually considered pathologic. Functional neutrophil abnormalities occasionally occur.

GRANULOCYTIC AND MONOCYTIC DISORDERS

Neutrophilia

Neutrophilic leukocytosis or neutrophilia refers to an absolute concentration of neutrophils in the blood above normal for age. The normal reference interval (established for each laboratory separately) is approximately 1.8 to 7.0 $\times$ $10^3/\mu L$ for adults, with a slightly wider range (1.0 to 8.5 $\times$ $10^3/\mu L$) in young children. The neutrophilias are acquired disorders, and key causes of neutrophilia are listed in Box 33-1.

Mechanisms

The primary factors influencing the neutrophil count are (1) the rate of inflow of cells from the bone marrow; (2) the proportion of neutrophils in the marginal granulocyte pool (MGP) (cells adhering to vessel walls) and the circulating granulocyte pool (CGP) (nonadhering cells) of the blood—MGP and CGP are approximately equal in size and in equilibrium in health; and (3) the rate of outflow of neutrophils from the blood.

Physiologic leukocytosis is produced by factors or situations that are not related to underlying tissue pathology. Severe exercise, hypoxia, stress, or the injection of epinephrine will result in a decrease in the MGP and a corresponding increase in the CGP, resulting in a "pseudoneutrophilia" (i.e., no change in total blood granulocyte pool [TBGP]). This simple redistribution of cells between the CGP and MGP, also known as *demargination*, is the release and detachment of leukocytes from receptors on vessel luminal walls. Stress of greater severity and presence of endotoxin

BOX 33-1

Key Causes of Neutrophilia

- Acute inflammatory—collagen vascular, vasculitis
- Acute infectious—bacterial, some viral, fungal, parasitic
- Drugs, toxins, metabolic—corticosteroids, growth factors, uremia, ketoacidosis
- Tissue necrosis—burns, trauma, MI, RBC hemolysis
- Physiologic—stress, exercise, smoking, pregnancy
- Neoplastic—carcinomas, sarcomas, myeloproliferative disorders

MI, Myocardial infarction; *RBC,* red blood cell.

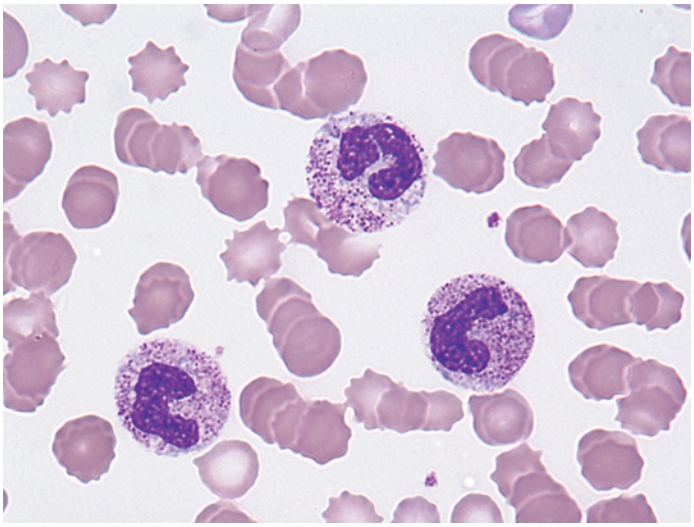


Figure 33-1 A neutrophil with toxic granulation is pictured, along with two bands. Basophilic inclusions (Döhle bodies) are present as well (1000×).

or corticosteroids also results in an increased inflow of cells to the blood from the marrow maturation/storage pool.

Pathologic leukocytosis is an increased WBC count that occurs as a result of disease, and usually is a response to tissue damage. This leukocytosis is most often neutrophilia.

In addition to the random loss of neutrophils from the circulation in body secretions, neutrophils leave the blood by ameboid movement when attracted to a focus of inflammation in tissues, presumably responding to a multitude of chemotactic molecules and gradients. It is from the MGP that the neutrophils leave the blood, pass between capillary endothelial cells, and reach the tissues.

In acute infection, increased margination of neutrophils and outflow from blood to tissues would lead to neutropenia if there were no flow of neutrophils from the marrow storage compartment into the blood. Because the latter overcompensates, the result is neutrophilia. Usually, production and storage compartments then increase in the marrow and are able to sustain the increased CGP (neutrophilia) and MGP in the face of the increased flow of neutrophils from the blood into the inflammatory site. In these instances, the marrow will show granulocytic hyperplasia (increased myeloid to erythroid [M:E] ratio and increased cellularity), with intact maturation. An increase in immature peripheral blood granulocytes is usually present, often termed *shift to the left.* Increased WBCs with left shift and toxic features (see later) may resemble leukemia and is often termed a "leukemoid" reaction (Fig. 33-1).

If the demand for neutrophils is extremely great, as in severe infection, there may be depletion of the marrow storage pool with decreased CGP (neutropenia) and MGP, because the supply of cells is insufficient for the demand. In these instances, the marrow will show increased early neutrophil precursors, through the myelocyte stage, but decreased metamyelocytes, bands, and neutrophils.

Determinants

Host factors modify the degree of neutrophilic response, with children responding more intensely than adults. The degree of neutrophilia may be impaired by iron, folate, or cobalamin deficiency, or marrow failure due to other causes.

Pyogenic bacteria especially induce neutrophilia. More virulent agents result in higher neutrophil counts, but when the infection is overwhelming, toxic neutropenia with a shift to the left can occur, more commonly in the elderly.

Antibiotics modify the response to infection and, while steroid therapy causes neutrophilia by demargination, it tends to impair the host response to infection.

Neutrophilia, sometimes pronounced, is occasionally seen in patients with primary or metastatic nonhematologic neoplasms including gastrointestinal and hepatic tumors, Hodgkin lymphoma (HL), and renal cell carcinoma (Granger & Kontoyiannis, 2009; Hernandez, 2002).

BOX 33-2

Key Causes of Neutropenia

- Drugs—cancer chemotherapy, chloramphenicol, sulfas/other antibiotics, phenothiazines, benzodiazepine, antithyroids, anticonvulsants, quinine, quinidine, indomethacin, procainamide, thiazides
- Radiation
- Toxins—alcohol, benzene compounds
- Intrinsic defects—Fanconi's, Kostmann's, cyclic neutropenia, Chédiak-Higashi
- Immune-mediated—collagen vascular disorders, RA, AIDS
- Hematologic—megaloblastic anemia, myelodysplasia, marrow failure, marrow replacement
- Infectious—any overwhelming infection
- Others—starvation, hypersplenism

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *RA,* rheumatoid arthritis.
*Brief, partial list.

Neutropenia

Neutropenia is a reduction of the absolute neutrophil count (ANC) below ~1.5 to 2 × 10^9/L for white adults and below ~1.2 to 1.3 × 10^9/L for black adults. The ANC is the product of the WBC count and the percentage of mature as well as immature neutrophils in the WBC differential count. *Agranulocytosis* refers to severe neutropenia, usually <0.5 × 10^9/L, and is often associated with depletion of eosinophils and basophils as well. Severe chronic neutropenia (SCN) refers to patients with ANC <0.5 × 10^9/L for months or years, due to inherited or acquired rare disorders. (Welte & Zeidler, 2009). If the neutrophil count is less than 1 × 10^9/L, the risk for infection is increased, and it is greater still if less than 0.5 × 10^9/L.

Mechanisms by which neutropenia occurs include (1) decreased or ineffective production (proliferation or maturation defect); (2) increased removal from the blood (survival defect); (3) altered distribution between CGP and MGP; or (4) combinations of these mechanisms. Neutropenias may be inherited, autoimmune, toxic, or drug-associated. Drug-induced neutropenia occurs through several mechanisms and is always an important consideration in the differential diagnosis of leukopenia. A partial list of causes associated with neutropenia are shown in Box 33-2.

Constitutional disorders associated with neutropenia frequently present in early infancy. They are of complex molecular origin (Hauck & Klein, 2013). Those due to myeloid hypoplasia or a proliferation defect include Fanconi's anemia (FA), Kostmann's syndrome, Shwachman-Diamond syndrome, and cyclic neutropenia. Those that are due to maturation defects include myelokathexis and Chédiak-Higashi syndrome.

FA is an inherited BM failure syndrome that usually occurs in childhood and rarely presents in adulthood. This condition is heterogeneous in its clinical manifestations but was classically defined by the presence of aplastic anemia and congenital physical malformations. The aplastic anemia of FA patients appears to be indistinguishable from acquired aplasia. FA patients are also susceptible to hematopoietic and certain solid organ malignancies. Diagnosis is made by cytogenetic analysis while looking for chromosome breakage after exposure to diepoxybutane or mitomycin C. The underlying molecular pathology is complex and involves multiple and varied DNA repair and signaling pathways (Auerbach, 2009; Kupfer, 2013).

Kostmann's syndrome (or Kostmann's agranulocytosis) is a rare severe (ANC typically <200/μL) congenital neutropenia appearing in early infancy, usually with an autosomal recessive pattern of inheritance. The marrow usually shows the presence of early granulocytes (promyelocyte/myelocyte arrest), but few maturing forms are seen; neutrophil survival is normal. Mutations in the anti-apoptotic gene *HAX-1* are present in recessive cases and in *ELA2*, encoding neutrophil elastase, in most autosomal dominant cases.

Cyclic neutropenia typically presents with recurrent episodes of symptomatic infection (fatigue, mouth ulcers, cervical lymphadenopathy, fever)

due to cyclic episodes of severe neutropenia related to periodicity or cycling of neutrophil production. This disease usually presents in childhood, but may present in adulthood and is usually not life-threatening. Typically, oscillations of neutrophil and monocyte levels (between near-normal levels and very low levels) occur over an approximately 21-day period. Mutations in *ELA2*, similar to that seen in Kostmann's syndrome, have been identified in many patients (Dale, 2011).

Chronic familial neutropenia or benign familial neutropenia refers to a lower than "normal" neutrophil count, as found in some ethnic populations. It is an incidental and clinically stable finding with no predisposition to infection and is considered a genetic variation.

The most common causes of congenital neutropenia are neutropenia of pregnancy-induced hypertension (PIH—most common) and overwhelming bacterial infection. Typical signs of infection, including a granulocytic left shift, toxic granulation, and Döhle bodies, accompany the latter, but these changes are not seen in PIH. Neither usually continues beyond the first week of life, and other causes should be searched for in infants with persistent neutropenia (Christensen & Calhoun, 2004).

Patients with congenital or primary immunodeficiency diseases may exhibit some degree of neutropenia. Males with X-linked agammaglobulinemia (XLA) are often neutropenic, and XLA should be considered in the differential diagnosis of chronic neutropenia in an infant. An abnormal nonreceptor tyrosine kinase, associated with signal transduction and differentiation of hematopoietic cells, appears to be involved. This is due to various mutations in the gene *BTK* (*B*ruton's or *B* lymphocyte *t*yrosine *k*inase) on the long arm of the X chromosome (q22). Other congenital syndromes having a prominent association with neutropenia include selective immunoglobulin (Ig)A deficiency, common variable immunodeficiency, and hyper IgM syndrome (Dotta & Badolato, 2014).

Certain autoimmune diseases can also be associated with chronic neutropenia. Both rheumatoid arthritis (RA) and systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) show this association (Starkebaum, 2002). The combination of chronic neutropenia and RA is termed *Felty's syndrome (FS)*, and patients develop symptoms owing to both RA (e.g., subcutaneous nodules, contractures, erythema, warmth, tenderness, symmetric involvement of large and small joints, musculoskeletal pain) and chronic neutropenia (symptoms of recurrent bacterial and fungal infections). A portion of these cases are associated with large granular lymphocyte (LGL) leukemia that may be indistinguishable from FS (Liu & Loughran, 2011). SLE may present with multisystem involvement, making presenting symptoms highly variable. Alterations in neutrophil proliferation and survival with neutropenia due, at least in part, to immune-mediated destruction, occur in both SLE and FS, and increased neutrophil apoptosis may be noted in SLE.

Autoimmune myelofibrosis is a rare cause of isolated neutropenia (Chalayer et al, 2014). Prognosis of these patients appears to be very good with corticosteroid therapy.

Drugs are the most common cause of acute neutropenia ("agranulocytosis") and typically show a lack of granulocytic cells in the marrow. Progenitor hyperplasia, however, may be present and is often termed *promyelocytic hyperplasia* or *maturation arrest.* Most classes of drugs have been implicated, with clozapine, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and methimazole most commonly associated. Pathogenesis is not well understood for individual cases (Tesfa et al, 2009). Mortality is about 5%, and management includes cessation of medication, use of antibiotics, and consideration of G-CSF (Pick & Nystrom, 2014).

Inhibition of granulopoiesis or myeloid toxicity occurs with chemotherapeutic agents, chlorpromazine, and others. These effects tend to be dose dependent and reversible. Important and limiting side effects of cancer chemotherapy are severe neutropenia with its risk for infection, as well as severe thrombocytopenia with risk for bleeding; anemia is more readily controlled with transfusion.

Radiation damages bone marrow progenitor cells as well as marrow stromal elements. Radiation type, dose, and duration are all factors that determine the extent of bone marrow damage, such as aplasia or hypoplasia. Lymphocytes are most sensitive and are directly killed by exposure. The lymphocyte count correlates with, and has been used to assess dose and severity of exposure (Dainiak, 2002). In addition, hematopoietic precursors undergoing mitosis are very sensitive to injury and death.

Isolated neutropenia or agranulocytosis is fairly uncommon in adults. When a myelophthisic process, such as metastatic carcinoma, disseminated tuberculosis, or Gaucher's disease, infiltrates the BM, the damage is not limited to granulopoiesis but affects normoblasts and megakaryocytes as well. Because of the short life span of granulocytes, however, neutropenia is the earliest recognizable effect in the blood. It may take weeks before damage to the erythropoietic tissue becomes manifest because of the usually long life span of erythrocytes. Platelets have a rather short life span; on the other hand, megakaryocytes are more resistant to damage.

Neutropenia due to increased ineffective granulocytopoiesis occurs in megaloblastic anemias and with drugs that have an antifolate effect. In these conditions, anemia and thrombocytopenia are usually associated. The marrow is usually hyperplastic. In megaloblastic anemia due to nutritional deficiency, drug-induced suppression of DNA synthesis, or an inborn error of metabolism, asynchronous nuclear/cytoplasmic maturation (megaloblastic change or megaloblastosis) is identified in marrow progenitor cells. Ineffective granulocytopoiesis may also occur in myelodysplasia.

In starvation, cellularity tends to be decreased, and a morphologic marrow change termed *serous fat atrophy* or *gelatinous transformation* of the BM is present. This change shows a loss of hematopoietic cells within the marrow stroma replaced by small or shrunken fat cells expanded by an intercellular, homogeneous, eosinophilic material. BM hypocellularity is typically seen with advanced disease.

Transient neutropenia may occur early in some infections, followed by leukocytosis once the marrow production catches up with the demand. Some bacterial infections, notably brucellosis and *Salmonella* infections, are associated with neutropenia; they may have some depressing effect on the marrow as well. Patients with measles and rubella have neutropenia for several days after appearance of the rash. Hepatitis, infectious mononucleosis, and influenza may also cause acute neutropenia. Lymphocytosis is present and persists after the neutropenia subsides.

The neutropenia of hypersplenism has been attributed to selective removal of neutrophils by the spleen. It is associated with neutrophilic hyperplasia of the marrow and is corrected by splenectomy. Splenomegaly due to many causes may result in shortened neutrophil survival and neutropenia; these include congestive splenomegaly, Felty's syndrome, Gaucher's disease, and lymphoma. In some cases of Felty's syndrome (neutropenia and splenomegaly in rheumatoid arthritis), a neutrophil-specific antibody may be involved. Ramirez and colleagues (2004) recently showed enhanced apoptosis in patients with cirrhosis and ascites, which appeared to be dependent upon elevated activity levels of caspase-3 in these patients. Patients are prone to neutropenia and infection; in the past, this was largely attributed to hypersplenism with increased splenic clearance of neutrophils. However, these recent findings suggest that other mechanisms, at least in part, may also be contributory.

Pseudoneutropenia may be caused by increased margination of neutrophils in some individuals, without a decrease in total granulocyte count. Rather than showing an equal distribution between MGP and CGP, an increased proportion of neutrophils appear to be present in the MGP. Small doses of endotoxin will cause a shift of neutrophils into the MGP from the CGP, giving an apparent neutropenia, before causing leukocytosis.

Morphologic Alterations in Neutrophils

In addition to quantitative changes, qualitative morphologic alterations occur in neutrophils, and these too may be inherited or acquired. Some of these, such as toxic granules or cytoplasmic vacuoles, are acquired and disappear after the stimulus that provoked them is gone. Others are hereditary and persist through life, with or without functional impairment (Box 33-3). These were reviewed by Brunning (1970), and more recently by Kroft (2002).

It should be noted that disorders of leukocyte function may exist with no structural abnormality detectable with the usual modes of morphologic examination.

Toxic Granulation

Toxic granules are dark blue to purple cytoplasmic granules in the metamyelocyte, band, or neutrophil stage. They are peroxidase positive and may be numerous or few in number; less peroxidase activity may be seen in toxic than in normal neutrophils. Toxic granulation is noted in infections or other toxic conditions but may also be seen in noninfectious reactive conditions (Figs. 33-1 and 33-2).

Döhle Inclusion Bodies

These small, oval inclusions in the peripheral cytoplasm of polymorphonuclear neutrophils stain pale blue with Wright's stain (see Fig. 33-1). They are remnants of free ribosomes or rough-surfaced endoplasmic reticulum, persisting from an earlier stage of development.

May-Hegglin Anomaly

This is characterized by pale blue inclusions resembling Döhle bodies in neutrophils, by giant platelets and, in some persons, by thrombocytopenia

BOX 33-3

Morphologic Alterations in Neutrophils

Toxic granulation—azurophilic cytoplasmic granules seen in severe infections, other toxic conditions, and reactive conditions
Cytoplasmic vacuoles—seen in infection, indicating phagocytosis
Döhle bodies—pale blue, oval cytoplasmic remnants of ribosomes seen in infection and other toxic conditions
May-Hegglin anomaly—rare autosomal dominant condition with pale blue cytoplasmic ribosomal inclusions resembling Döhle bodies
Alder-Reilly anomaly—prominent azurophilic granulation not related to infection
Pelger-Huët anomaly—bilobed or rounded nuclei with pince-nez shape
Chédiak-Higashi syndrome—autosomal recessive disorder with giant granules, likely representing giant fused lysosomes, and abnormal leukocyte function

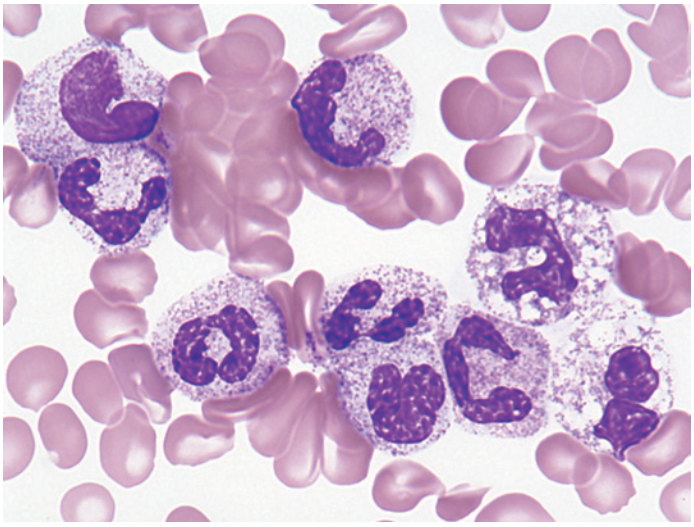


Figure 33-2 Leukemoid toxic neutrophilia with left shift and toxic vacuolization (1000×).

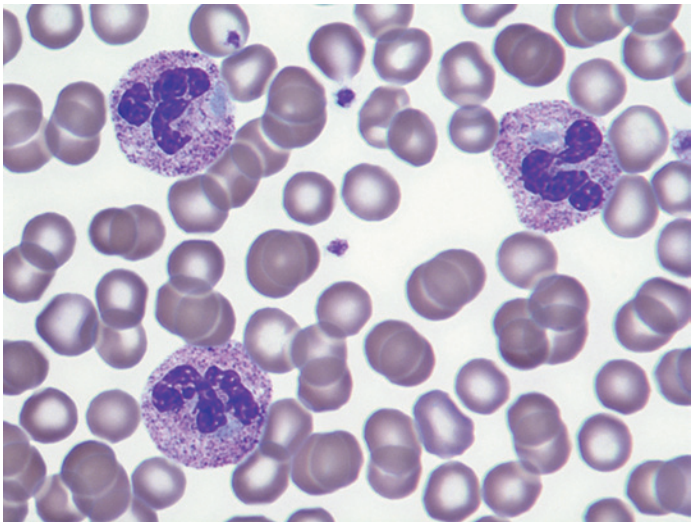


Figure 33-3 May-Hegglin anomaly, showing Döhle-like inclusions (1000×).

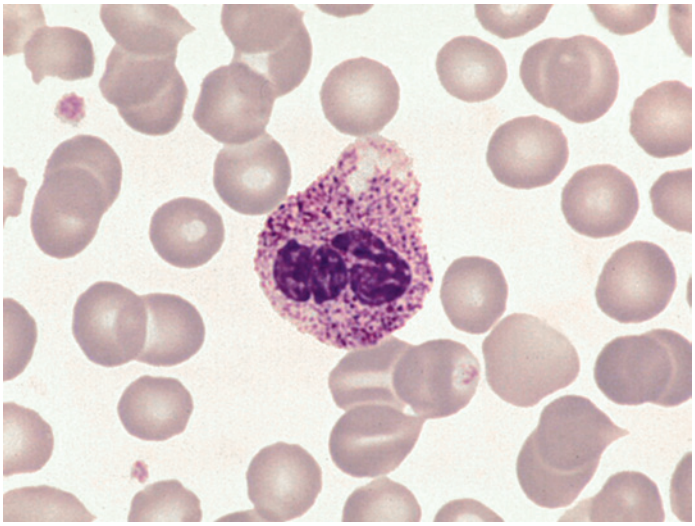


Figure 33-4 The Alder-Reilly anomaly may be found in healthy individuals or in those with mucopolysaccharidoses, in which granules are metachromatic (1000×).

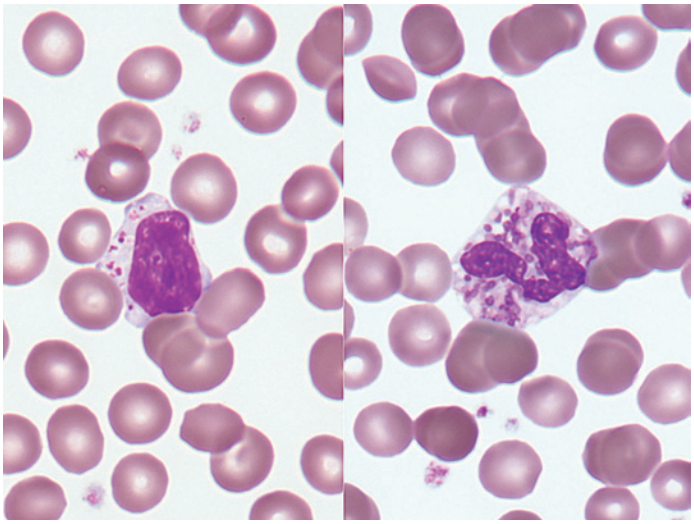


Figure 33-5 Genetic mucopolysaccharidoses often show abnormal lymphocyte granules with surrounding halos. In these cells from the same blood film, neutrophils showed similar changes (1000×).

(Fig. 33-3). The inclusions are larger and more prominent than the Döhle bodies found in infections. They have been described in eosinophils, basophils, and monocytes as well as in neutrophils. The blue staining of the inclusions is due to RNA. Granulocyte function is normal. May-Hegglin a rare autosomal dominant condition involving the nonmuscle myosin heavy chain 9 gene (*MYH9*) linked to chromosome 22q12-13. The mutations appear to alter the assembly and stability of myosin and may be responsible for the underlying pathophysiology and changes seen in leukocyte and platelet structure and function. Varied mutations in *MYH9* are responsible for a phenotypic spectrum of illness including May-Hegglin anomaly, and Sebastian, Fechtner, and Epstein platelet syndromes (Pecci et al, 2014; Saposnik et al, 2014).

Alder-Reilly Anomaly

Dense, prominent, larger than normal azurophilic granulation in all white blood cells was described by Alder in 1939 (Fig. 33-4) (Alder, 1939). In neutrophils, it may resemble toxic granulation, but it is unrelated to infection and is not transient. In 1941, Reilly described similar granulocytes in some but not all patients with gargoylism, Hurler's syndrome, or, more generally, the genetic mucopolysaccharidoses (Reilly, 1941). Other observations have shown that the heavy granulation in neutrophils can occur as a feature of the genetic mucopolysaccharidoses or independently in otherwise healthy persons (Brunning, 1970).

Occurring more often than the Alder-Reilly anomaly in the genetic mucopolysaccharidoses is a metachromatic inclusion in the lymphocytes surrounded by a clear space (Fig. 33-5). Macrophages in the marrow frequently contain similar granulation. This group of disorders is inherited and is characterized by deficiencies or derangement in various lysosomal enzymes required for degrading mucopolysaccharides. The result is

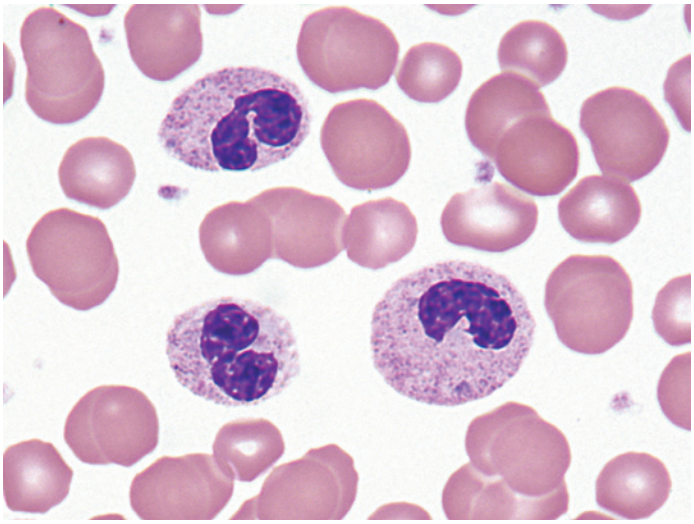


Figure 33-6 Inherited Pelger-Huët anomaly (1000×).

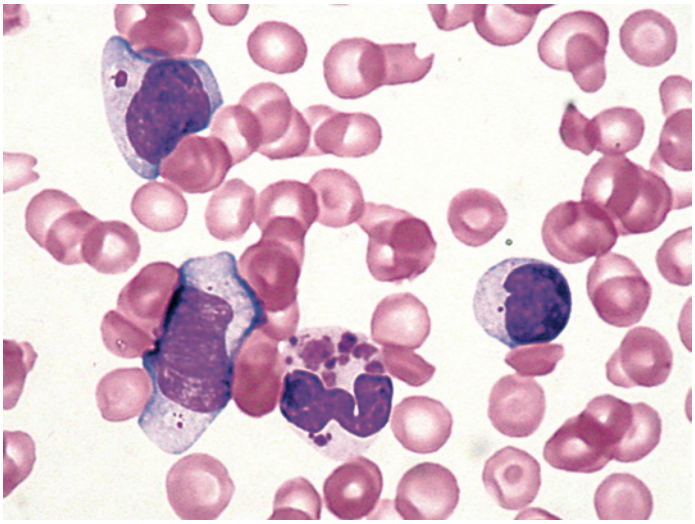


Figure 33-7 Chédiak-Higashi neutrophils and lymphocytes with large granules (1000×).

abnormal deposition and storage of mucopolysaccharides in multiple organs. Skeletal abnormalities are prominent.

Pelger-Huët Anomaly

This hereditary, autosomal dominant condition involves failure of normal segmentation of granulocytic nuclei. Most nuclei are bilobed and rounded, with a characteristic spectacle or pince-nez shape (Fig. 33-6). The chromatin is quite coarse, and these are not normal young band forms. When a large number of band-like neutrophils appear in the differential count in a patient without infection or other cause, careful analysis of the blood films of the patient and of family members will occasionally establish the presence of the Pelger-Huët anomaly. The cells are functionally normal, and the underlying abnormality is mutation of the lamin B receptor gene (Colella & Hollensead, 2012).

A similar appearing, acquired disorder of nuclear segmentation in granulocytes may be found in cases of granulocytic leukemia, myelodysplastic and some myeloproliferative disorders, and some infections, and after exposure to certain drugs; this is called the *pseudo–Pelger-Huët anomaly*. In addition to band forms and neutrophils with only two segments, mature cells with round, nonsegmented nuclei and coarse chromatin are common. In contrast to the congenital Pelger-Huët anomaly, ring-shaped and other abnormal nuclei may be seen, and the cytoplasm is usually hypogranular.

Chédiak-Higashi Syndrome

Partial oculocutaneous albinism, photophobia, immune deficiency, abnormally large granules in leukocytes and other granule-containing cells, neurologic defects, and frequent pyogenic infections characterize this rare, autosomal recessive disorder (Introne et al, 1999). An accelerated lymphoma-like phase occurs, with lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, and pancytopenia; lymphoid infiltrates are widespread, and death ensues at an early age. Granulocytes, monocytes, and lymphocytes contain giant granules (Fig. 33-7), which appear to be abnormal lysosomes. The pathogenesis of this disorder is linked to an abnormality of granule maturation, causing enlargement and apparent fusion of granules and vesicles (such as lysosomes, melanosomes, and platelet dense granules) in all cell types. Leukocyte functional abnormalities exist.

Myelokathexis applies to peripheral neutropenia with the presence of BM neutrophils. WHIM (*w*arts, *h*ypogammaglobulinemia, *i*nfection, and *m*yelokathexis) syndrome is a rare, autosomal dominant disease of leukocyte trafficking involving chromosome 2q21. The disease appears to be due to mutations in the chemokine receptor gene *CXCR4* and altered leukocyte response to its functional ligand CXCL12. Hematologic changes include severe peripheral neutropenia with lymphopenia also common, but with granulocytic hyperplasia of the BM (Dotta et al, 2011; Gulino et al, 2004).

Functional Disorders of Neutrophils

Inherited and acquired disorders affecting neutrophils and other leukocytes may result in abnormal function and susceptibility to infections. Deficiencies of humoral factors (antibodies, components of complement) may result in defective chemotaxis or opsonization. As described previously, some inherited disorders, such as the May-Hegglin, Alder-Reilly, and Pelger-Huët anomalies, have altered morphologic appearances but apparently normal granulocytic function. Other inherited conditions, such as the Chédiak-Higashi syndrome and specific granule deficiency (SGD), display alterations in both morphology and function. Inherited conditions such as chronic granulomatous disease (CGD), myeloperoxidase deficiency (MYD), and leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD) exhibit functional disorders with essentially normal morphology on Wright's- and Giemsa-stained films (Dinauer, 2014).

Chronic granulomatous disease (Holland, 2013) is a rare, primary immunodeficiency affecting neutrophils, eosinophils, macrophages, and monocytes; it results from the inability of these phagocytic cells to kill intracellular microorganisms. Patients present with recurrent bacterial and fungal infections (skin, liver, mouth, lymph nodes). These lead to chronic granulomatous lesions (a hallmark of the disease) that may, in turn, obstruct vital organ systems and ultimately lead to death. Symptoms occur early in life, and both autosomal recessive (≈66%) and X-linked (≈33%) modes of inheritance are known. The disease results from genetic defects in any of the membrane-bound or cytoplasmic components of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase.

Primary MYD is a congenital disorder that is not uncommon and that is easily identifiable with automated cell counters incorporating measurement of MPO activity in the differential count. Secondary MYD, which can be transient and corrected with treatment of the underlying disease, may occur secondary to conditions such as myeloid neoplasms, drugs, severe infectious diseases, diabetes mellitus, and pregnancy. Primary MYD may be total or partial and does not show the severity of CGD but can increase frequency and severity of infections (Nauseef, 2014).

Human eosinophil peroxidase is structurally related to MPO but is not identical and is encoded by a different gene. Deficiency is thought to be extremely rare, is unrelated to MYD, may show autosomal recessive inheritance, and appears to be without clinical symptoms. Eosinophil peroxidase largely functions by neural signaling (Akasheh et al, 2014).

Specific granule deficiency (SGD) is an extremely rare condition that presents with multiple bacterial infections, atypical bilobed nuclei within neutrophils, and lack of secondary/specific cytoplasmic granules within neutrophils on Wright's-stained peripheral blood films. SGD also affects eosinophils. In addition to granule deficiencies and impaired bactericidal activity, neutrophils are defective in chemotaxis, receptor upregulation, and disaggregation (Gombart et al, 2001).

Leukocyte Adhesion Deficiency (LAD) Diseases

Proper neutrophil function is dependent upon cell-cell adhesion via the integrins, nonadhesive surface molecules in circulating leukocytes, which upon proper stimulation become adhesive or develop increased binding properties for their specific ligands (van de Vijver et al, 2013). In LAD, defective leukocyte adhesion and migration occur, resulting clinically in recurrent infection and leukocytosis. Delayed separation of the umbilical cord often occurs. Several types (LAD-I, II, and III) are described. Some

BOX 33-4

Key Causes of Eosinophilia

- Allergic—urticaria, hay fever, asthma
- Inflammatory—eosinophilic fasciitis, Churg-Strauss syndrome
- Parasitic—trichinosis, filariasis, schistosomiasis
- Nonparasitic infections—systemic fungal, scarlet fever, chlamydial pneumonia of infancy
- Respiratory—pulmonary eosinophilic syndromes (Löffler's, tropical pulmonary eosinophilia), Churg-Strauss syndrome
- Neoplastic—MPN with translocation of *PDGFRA/B* or *FGFR1*, CML, mastocytosis, Hodgkin lymphoma, T cell lymphomas, lymphocytic HES
- Idiopathic HESs—affecting heart, liver, spleen, CNS, other organs
- Others—certain drugs, hematologic and visceral malignancies, GI inflammatory diseases, sarcoidosis, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome

CML, Chronic myelogenous leukemia; *CNS,* central nervous system; *GI,* gastrointestinal; *HES,* hypereosinophilic syndrome; *MPN,* myeloproliferative neoplasm; *PDGFRA/B,* platelet-derived growth factor alpha/beta.

forms of LAD can be diagnosed by flow cytometry, with lack of expression of CD18 or CD15a on neutrophils. HSC transplantation is the only cure.

Eosinophilia

Eosinophilia exists if blood eosinophils exceed ~0.35 to 0.5 × 10^9/L. Reactive eosinophilia is typically associated with allergic processes and parasitic infections. Classically, the major function of eosinophils appeared to be the release of granule contents or reactive oxygen species, to damage the target organism or offending cell. Immunoregulatory and proinflammatory signaling roles also exist, and eosinophils are thus both effector and regulatory cells. Causes of eosinophilia have been recently reviewed (Furuta et al, 2014; Helbig, 2014; Montgomery et al, 2013).

Eosinophil production is stimulated by IL-5, migration is influenced by the chemokine eotaxin, and the two factors interact in producing eosinophilia. Causes and conditions associated with eosinophilia are shown in Box 33-4.

Eosinophilia is frequent in a variety of hematologic neoplasms including clonal myeloproliferative diseases (described later in this chapter). It also occurs with a broad spectrum of nonhematopoietic primary or metastatic neoplasms, usually associated with advance stage disease. Paraneoplastic eosinophilia occurs in Hodgkin lymphoma and peripheral T cell lymphomas. In some other lymphomas and leukemias of other lineages, it is clonal and part of the neoplastic process, such as B lymphoblastic leukemia with t(5;14)(*IL3-IgH*), whereas in lymphocytic variant hypereosinophilic syndrome (HES), it may be secondary to an abnormal lymphoid proliferation.

Moderate to severe peripheral blood eosinophilia is most commonly associated with infection by helminths, including nematodes, trematodes, and cestodes. Eosinophilia is more pronounced if tissues are invaded (e.g., trichinosis) than when parasites inhabit the lumen of a viscus (e.g., tapeworm). Some parasites, such as *Taenia solium* (cysticercosis) produce little inflammatory response while alive, but trigger an inflammatory response upon degeneration of the organism. Other parasites, such as *Trichinella spiralis* (trichinosis) incite peripheral eosinophilia upon larval invasion of the muscles and encystment. Leukocytosis and eosinophilia extending over months are seen in toxocariasis (*Toxocara canis* or *T. catis*) or visceral larva migrans. Cutaneous larva migrans caused by larvae of the dog *(Ancylostoma braziliense)* or cat *(A. caninum)* hookworm also cause eosinophilia.

Löffler's syndrome (simple eosinophilic pneumonia) affects all age groups and is characterized by repeated, transient pulmonary exudates accompanied by fever and clinical symptoms of bronchitis, often producing sputum that contains eosinophils. It may be caused by a variety of exposures including certain drugs, inhaled antigens, or helminth (see earlier) infestation. The latter occurs during periods of dissemination or migration when the parasites pass from the blood into the alveoli of the lung. Löffler's syndrome may also be idiopathic. Tropical pulmonary eosinophilia is a syndrome of paroxysmal cough and bronchospasm associated with marked eosinophilia and often associated with *Wuchereria bancrofti* in India, Africa, Southeast Asia, and the South Pacific.

Many drugs are also associated with blood or pulmonary eosinophilia and pulmonary infiltrates. Implicated drugs include: pilocarpine, physostigmine, digitalis, p-aminosalicylic acid, sulfonamides, chlorpromazine, phenytoin, some antidiabetic drugs, some anticancer agents, and many others.

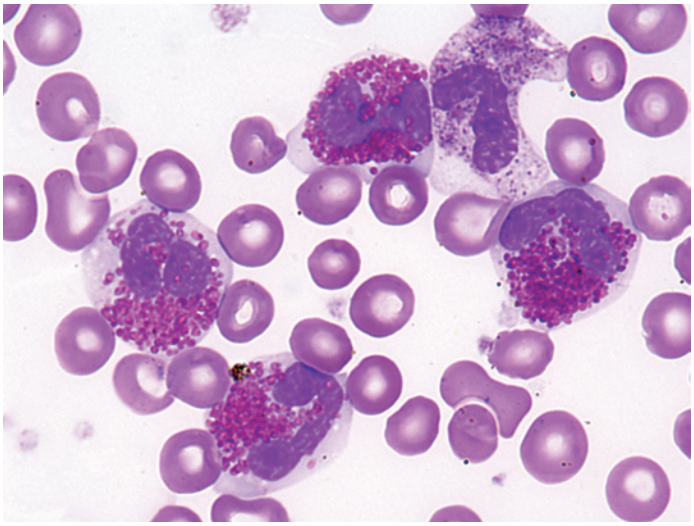


Figure 33-8 **Marked eosinophilia of unknown cause, suggesting hypereosinophilic syndrome, peripheral blood (1000×).**

BOX 33-5

Key Causes of Basophilia

- Myeloproliferative disease
- Allergic—food, drugs, foreign proteins
- Infectious—variola, varicella
- Chronic hemolytic anemia—especially post-splenectomy
- Inflammatory—collagen vascular disease, ulcerative colitis

Idiopathic HES (Fig. 33-8) is a heterogeneous syndrome composed of a number of different disorders of varying severity, after myeloproliferative neoplasms with abnormalities of *PDGFRA*, *PDGFRB*, and *FGFR1*, and CMML with eosinophilia are excluded.

The organ most consistently affected in HES is the heart, with mural thrombi formation, myocarditis, endocardial and myocardial fibrosis, constrictive pericarditis, and fibroplastic endocarditis (Brito-Babapulle, 2003). Hepatosplenomegaly is common. Other organ systems may be involved and include the CNS and retina, lungs, skin, GI tract, and kidney.

Basophilia

Basophilia is an increase in the absolute basophil count above 0.2 × 10^9/L. Causes of basophilia are listed in Box 33-5. Basophilia is seen most frequently in hypersensitivity and allergic reactions, chronic myeloid leukemia (Fig. 33-9), primary myelofibrosis, and polycythemia vera. Relative basophilia may be transient following irradiation. Basophilia may be present in hypothyroidism and chronic hemolytic anemia and following splenectomy. Reactive basophilia is an uncommon finding overall, sometimes seen in patients combating helminth infections (Voehringer, 2013).

Monocytosis

Monocytosis is an increase in monocytes above the upper reference value, especially when greater than 1.0 × 10^9/L. The most common causes are recovery from neutropenia and indolent infections. Causes and associations of monocytosis are shown in Box 33-6.

Monocytosis is present during the recovery stage from acute infection and from agranulocytosis, in which it is considered a favorable sign. Monocytosis may be present in subacute bacterial endocarditis. In this condition, monocytes may show phagocytosis of other blood cells, red blood cells, and leukocytes. It may be present in mycotic, rickettsial, protozoal, and viral infections.

Infectious disease, however, is an uncommon cause of monocytosis. In a classic study of 160 successive cases of absolute monocytosis (Maldonado & Hanlon, 1965), more than half (85) were associated with hematologic neoplasms. These included acute monocytic and granulocytic leukemias, lymphoma (HL most frequently), multiple myeloma, and myeloproliferative disorders.

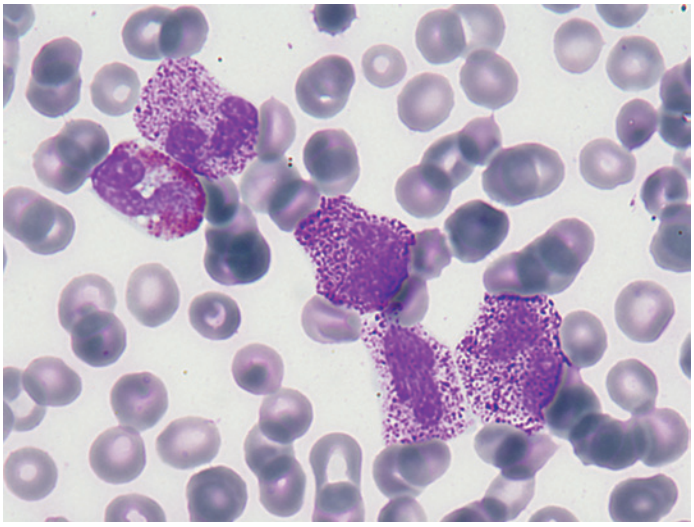


Figure 33-9 Marked basophilia and an eosinophil in a patient with Philadelphia chromosome positivity (1000×). (Courtesy of Robin Abaya, MD.)

BOX 33-6
Key Causes of Monocytosis

- Infectious—tuberculosis, subacute bacterial endocarditis, syphilis, protozoal, rickettsial
- Recovery from neutropenia
- Hematologic—leukemias, myeloproliferative disorders, lymphomas, multiple myeloma
- Inflammatory—collagen vascular disease, chronic ulcerative colitis, sprue, myositis, polyarteritis, temporal arteritis
- Others—solid tumor, immune thrombocytopenic purpura, sarcoidosis

Monocytopenia

Monocytopenia is a decrease in circulating monocytes below the lower reference value of 0.2×10^9/L. During therapy with prednisone, monocytes fall during the first few hours after the first dose, but return to above original levels by 12 hours. Monocytopenia has been observed in hairy cell leukemia (HCL), in congenital complex immunodeficiency involving monocytopenia and susceptibility to mycobacterial infection (MonoMac syndrome) due to GATA2 mutation, other rare immunodeficiencies, and in B-lymphoblastic leukemia (Dotta & Badolato, 2014; Hsu et al, 2011; Kraut, 2003; Park & Rogers, 2013). Monocytopenia is uncommon as an isolated finding.

LYMPHOCYTIC AND PLASMACYTIC DISORDERS

In these disorders, the pathologist should consider neoplastic conditions, which are covered in the later sections of this chapter, as well as the benign causes, described next.

Lymphocytes in Normal Individuals

In normal individuals, the absolute numbers of lymphocytes and T cells are highest in young children. The percentage of lymphocytes in the blood is normally up to about 50% for the first 5 years. During the first decade of life, the absolute lymphocyte count and the absolute number of T cells decrease but remain higher than observed in the adult. By the time of adolescence, the absolute lymphocyte count and the absolute number of T cells have leveled off to values observed throughout adulthood. The absolute number of B lymphocytes remains stable during all stages of life (Davey & Huntington, 1977; Perkins, 2004). In adolescence and adulthood, lymphocytes constitute about 20% to 40% of all leukocytes, or 1.5 to 4.0×10^9/L cells/L.

The normal CD4/CD8 ratio is between 1.0 and 3.4, but we have seen values as high as 12.0 in reactive conditions. In the neonate, the numbers of total T cells and CD8+ T cells may be similar or decreased compared with adults, whereas CD4+ T cells may be similar or increased.

Lymphocytosis

Lymphocytosis is an increase in the number of lymphocytes in the peripheral blood; reference intervals are ≈1.5 to 4.0×10^9/L in the adult and ≈1.5 to 8.8×10^9/L in the child. Relative lymphocytosis (an increase in the percentage of lymphocytes) is present in various conditions and is especially prominent in disorders with neutropenia. Lymphocytosis is unusual in acute bacterial infections but is commonly associated with viral infection (Epstein-Barr virus [EBV], hepatitis) (Box 33-7).

BOX 33-7
Key Causes of Lymphocytosis

- Infectious—many viral, pertussis, tuberculosis, toxoplasmosis, rickettsial
- Chronic inflammatory—ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease
- Immune mediated—drug sensitivity, vasculitis, graft rejection, Graves' disease, Sjögren's syndrome
- Hematologic—ALL, CLL, lymphoma
- Stress—acute, transient

ALL, Acute lymphoblastic leukemia; *CLL,* chronic lymphocytic leukemia.

Lymphocytosis Associated with Viral Infection

Lymphocytosis is a frequent finding in children with viral infection and may be marked. Lymphocytic leukemoid reactions were previously referred to as *acute infectious lymphocytosis (AIL)*, often lasting 3 to 5 weeks but without other blood changes in most patients. Lymph node enlargement is rare and minimal when present. The spleen and liver are rarely, if ever, enlarged. Lymph node biopsy may show reactive follicular hyperplasia but no characteristic changes. In some cases there has been an increase of white cells in the CSF, with about 40% lymphocytes.

A chronic form of infectious lymphocytosis also occurs in children. The leukocyte count is 10 to 25×10^9/L, with 60% to 80% lymphocytes of normal appearance.

Pertussis

Whooping cough (pertussis), although reduced by routine immunization, still occurs in unimmunized children and is most severe in infants, in whom most disease-associated deaths occur. The disease has had a resurgence in the United States in recent years, in part due to vaccine factors (Clark, 2014). It also occurs in adults with immunity reduced since childhood vaccination. The etiologic agent is *Bordetella pertussis*, a highly infectious agent that produces an inflammatory reaction of the entire respiratory tract. The incubation period is approximately 6 to 20 days. Symptoms begin as a head cold, progressing to paroxysms of coughing productive of thick sputum. Paroxysms typically end with a "whooping" sound, due to deep inspiration, giving the disease its descriptive name. There is frequently pain over the trachea and bronchi. The disease typically lasts 6 to 12 weeks.

Patients frequently develop significant lymphocytosis with counts higher than 30×10^9/L recorded. The lymphocytes are small, mature T cells with a normal CD4/CD8 ratio (Hudnall & Molina, 2000). The lymphocyte count is highest during the first 3 weeks of the illness, and then decreases during the fourth and subsequent weeks (Lagergren, 1963). The lymphocytosis is at least partially due to the release of lymphocytosis-promoting factor (LPF) or pertussis toxin from the organism. This factor may cause transient increased mobilization of lymphocytes from lymphoid organs, followed by inhibition of recirculation of lymphocytes from blood into the lymph flow. Thus, the lymphocytosis is due to redistribution of lymphocytes into the peripheral circulation without increased lymphopoiesis.

Chronic Lymphocytosis/Persistent Polyclonal B Cell Lymphocytosis

Persistent reactive lymphocytosis is an uncommon event in adults, and significant lymphocytosis should raise suspicion of neoplastic disease, such as chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Coexistence of neutropenia or classic Felty's syndrome suggests LGL leukemia. Often tissue biopsy and/or immunophenotyping of peripheral blood will point toward a specific disease or diagnosis. Mononucleosis or lymphocytosis due to other viruses occasionally presents in later life, however.

A rare condition, persistent polyclonal lymphocytosis, has been reported in adults, predominantly in female smokers, and in the postsplenectomy state (Himmelmann et al, 2001; Lairmore et al, 2012). It is a benign polyclonal B cell proliferation with binucleated atypical lymphocytes in the blood, but the possibility of incipient lymphoma has been considered (Troussard et al, 2008).

Retrovirus-Associated Diseases and Conditions

Human T lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1), discovered in 1980, is a retrovirus associated with adult T cell leukemia/lymphoma (ATL) (Poiesz et al, 1980). It is endemic in areas of Japan, the Caribbean basin, and the southeastern United States. HTLV-2, a second human retrovirus, was first found in a patient with HCL (Kalyanaraman et al, 1982). A third human retrovirus, human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1), was recognized and confirmed as the cause of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS [discussed further later]) in 1983 (Barre-Sinoussi et al, 1983; Kalyanaraman et al, 1982). Subsequently, a second but distinct type of HIV—now called HIV-2—was identified (Alizon et al, 1984). More recently, additional retroviruses, HTLV-3/4 and simian foamy retrovirus, have also been found to infect humans (Gessain et al, 2013).

HIV-1 infects both monocyte/macrophages and T cells (both essential cells for normal immune system function), using cell surface chemokine receptors (CCR5 on the former and CXCR4 on the latter); infection ultimately causes progressive loss of CD4+ lymphocytes, disrupts normal immune function, and produces immunodeficiency and disease. Disease not only includes many different types of infections, but also an increase in neoplastic disease, including lymphomas. HIV-1 plays an indirect role (through immune dysregulation and not by direct induction) in the development of lymphoma. HIV-2 is less widespread and somewhat less virulent (Nyamweya et al, 2013).

HTLV-1 and -2 also infect and transform T cells: primarily CD4+ cells with HTLV-1 and CD8+ cells with HTLV-2. HTLV-1 infects 15 to 20 million people worldwide, with endemic areas in Japan, the Caribbean, and Africa. It is usually transmitted by breast milk or exposure to blood. Acute infection shows few clinical symptoms consisting of fever, limited lymphadenopathy, and occasional skin rash. Lymphocytosis occurs, usually less than 20×10^9/L. Most (90% to 95%) of patients with antibodies against HTLV-1 are symptom free. After a years-long latency, 3% to 5% manifest ATL or tropical spastic paraparesis (Lairmore et al, 2012).

Infectious Mononucleosis and Epstein-Barr Virus Infection

Infectious mononucleosis (IM) is usually a self-limited infectious disease characterized by sore throat, prolonged malaise, atypical lymphocytosis with the presence of large transformed lymphocytes (Fig. 33-10), lymphadenopathy (most often posterior cervical), and often splenomegaly (Vouloumanou et al, 2012). In immunocompromised patients, EBV is associated with benign B cell hyperplasia, malignant lymphoma, and posttransplantation lymphoproliferative disease.

Etiology and Pathophysiology. IM is a disorder that occurs secondary to infection with EBV. When the primary infection occurs in healthy individuals during early childhood, the disease often goes unnoticed. However, when the infection involves healthy adolescent individuals or adults, the resultant disorder is the IM syndrome. In most cases, the virus gains entry into the body through the oropharyngeal epithelial and lymphoid tissues, and the virus appears to infect both tissues. The virus attaches to C3d complement receptors (CD21) on B lymphoid cells and enters into the cells. The EBV then stimulates DNA synthesis in these B cells and induces the formation of several new antigens, including the viral capsid antigen (VCA), the membrane antigen (MA), early antigen (EA)—both diffuse (EA-D) and restricted (EA-R) subtypes—Epstein-Barr nuclear antigens (EBNA), and the lymphocyte-detected membrane antigen (LYDMA) (Harrington et al, 1988). Thus, the earliest phase of this disease is characterized by an infection of B cells that proliferate, develop neoantigens, circulate, stimulate an immune response, and synthesize immunoglobulin (Sixbey et al, 1984). VCA, EA, and EBNA are the viral proteins most important for serodiagnosis in immunocompetent patients. Clinical and laboratory features are summarized in Box 33-8.

Typically, the humoral immune response is characterized by the rise in titer of IgG and IgM viral capsid antibodies during the incubation and early prodrome periods. The titer of IgM capsid antibody starts to fall during the second and third weeks of illness, and then diminishes to undetectable levels within the following several months. The IgG viral capsid antibody decreases during convalescence but remains detectable for life. Approximately 2 to 3 weeks after the onset of illness, Epstein-Barr virus antibodies against the early antigens appear and then decline over the succeeding 2 months. The titer of the Epstein-Barr virus nuclear antigen antibodies rises during the latter portion of convalescence and is apparently detectable throughout life.

The cellular immune response in IM is characterized by proliferation and activation of T cells, usually during the second week of illness, in response to EBV-induced B cell infection and activation. Because these activated T cells are derived mostly from the cytotoxic/suppressor cell subpopulation, marked suppression and destruction of EBV-infected B cells occur. Indeed, most of the atypical lymphocytes observed in the peripheral blood of patients with IM during the second week of illness possess the CD8 antigen. These cytotoxic/suppressor T cells kill infected B cells and diminish polyclonal antibody production induced by the Epstein-Barr virus. In addition to T-cytotoxic cells, the activity of natural killer (NK) cells has a profound effect on limiting the proliferation of EBV-infected B cells in patients with IM.

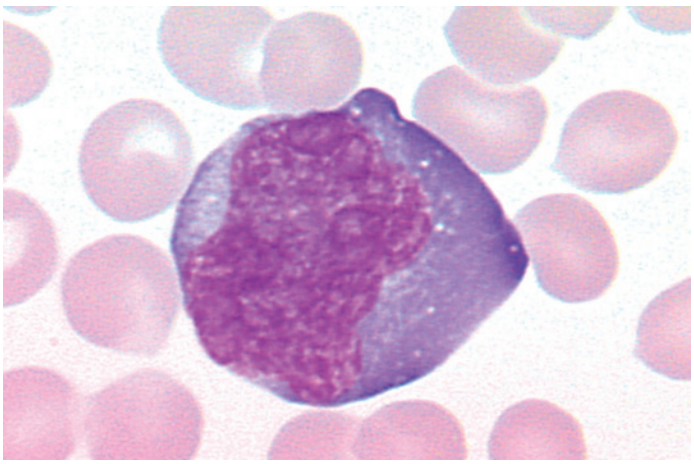


Figure 33-10 Infectious mononucleosis, showing a large activated lymphoid cell in the blood (1000×).

BOX 33-8

Summary of Features of Infectious Mononucleosis (IM) in Immunocompetent Patients

Epstein-Barr Virus (Human Herpesvirus-4)

Pathophysiology

- Virus enters through oropharyngeal epithelial and lymphoid cells
- Virus attaches to CD21 on B cells
- Viral antigens—viral capsid antigen (VCA), early antigen (EA), Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen (EBNA)—are produced and elicit antibody production

Humoral Immune Response

- Immunoglobulin (Ig)M against VCA rises during incubation and prodrome, falls over few weeks to months
- IgG against VCA rises during incubation, decreases during convalescence, remains detectable for life
- Antibodies to EA rise 2-3 weeks after onset of illness, then fall
- Antibodies to EBNA rise during convalescence, detectable for life

Cellular Immune Response

- T cells activated during second week of illness
- CD8-positive cytotoxic T cells kill infected B cells
- Natural killer cells kill infected B cells
- Some resting memory B cells remain latently infected

Clinical Features

- 2- to 5-week incubation period
- Vague onset of symptoms
- Fever, sore throat, lymphadenopathy
- Adolescents, young adults more often symptomatic than younger children

Laboratory Features

- Leukocytosis with absolute lymphocytosis and atypical lymphocytes
- Transient monocytosis
- Relative and absolute neutropenia early on
- Mild thrombocytopenia in half of cases
- Hemolytic anemia in 1%-3% of cases, often with anti-I specificity
- Elevated transaminases in 85%-100% of cases, but clinical jaundice rare
- Spot test is simple, rapid, specific, based on agglutination of horse red blood cells (RBCs)
- Heterophil antibody (HA) test is based on differential absorption of IM-specific HA by beef RBC stroma and guinea pig kidney

Most (over 90%) immunocompetent adults have serologic evidence of past EBV infection. EBV has the capacity not only to infect cells (many of which are destroyed by an intact immune system) but to produce a latent infection in resting memory B cells and, in some cases, produce transformation of lymphocytes to malignant lymphoma. However, a majority of latently infected individuals show no disease manifestations throughout their lifetimes.

The resting memory B cells can act as a reservoir of EBV, because viral antigens are not expressed on the lymphocyte surface. In IM, a spectrum of EBV expression patterns (programs) is found in different cells (Klein et al, 2007). In type III latency-growth program, cells express a full set of EBV-encoded proteins, including six nuclear proteins (EBNA1 to 6) and three latent membrane proteins (LMP1, -2, and -3).

LMP1 has strong immunogenic activity and is present only in acute infection, except in immunocompromised hosts. Type I latency involves expression of only one nuclear protein, EBNA-1, and is found in some memory B cells. Type IIa latency involves expression of EBNA-1, LMP-1, and LMP-2. Type IIb latency expresses all EBNAs (EBNA1 to 6) but not LMP-1.

Tumor cells in posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorders (PTLDs) correspond to latency type III, BL cells to latency type I, and cells in EBV+ HL and EBV+ nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC) to latency type IIa, with LMP-1 expression. EBV-encoded RNAs EBER-1 and EBER-2 are reliably expressed at high levels in virtually all latent EBV infections, and are detected with high sensitivity by in situ hybridization assays that are currently the standard for EBV identification (Gulley & Tang, 2008).

Clinical Features. IM has been observed in patients from 3 months to 70 years of age but is most common in adolescents and young adults. A 2- to 5-week incubation period prior to onset of symptoms usually occurs. Patients usually have vague symptoms including fever, sore throat with ulcerative pharyngitis, and lymphadenopathy.

Complications. Hemolytic anemia related to anti-I antibodies occurs in 1% to 3% of cases. Mild thrombocytopenia occurs in about half of cases. Splenic rupture may also occur. Neutropenia, pancytopenia, chronic active EBV infection (CAEBV), and hemophagocytic syndrome (EBVHS) occur rarely.

Abnormal liver function tests indicative of hepatitis occur in 85% to 100% of patients with IM. Clinical jaundice is rare, but occasionally jaundice and acute pharyngitis are the only clinical manifestations of IM. Although uncommon, complications may also involve the nervous system, heart, kidney, and lungs.

Approximately one third of patients with IM carry β-hemolytic streptococci in the pharynx. Thus, one should give attention to strict clinical, hematologic, and serologic criteria in distinguishing IM from streptococcal pharyngitis.

Hematologic Features. Leukocytes are increased, ranging from 12 to 25 × 10^9/L. Rarely, counts as high as 80 × 10^9/L have been recorded. The leukocytosis is usually due to lymphocytosis (60% to 90%) composed of a variety of atypical lymphocytes. The total leukocyte count, as a rule, returns to normal within 3 weeks. The atypical lymphocytes have nuclear alterations and an increase in the amount and basophilia of cytoplasm.

Lymphocytes include "monocytoid" lymphocytes, which likely correspond to immunoblasts in lymph nodes (see Fig. 33-10). Other atypical lymphocytes, which are more numerous, include plasmacytoid lymphocytes and those with small nuclei but abundant cytoplasm.

Often the number of monocytes rises transiently. The term *mononucleosis* refers to an increase in lymphocytes, not in monocytes ("mononuclear" cells include both lymphocytes and monocytes).

Cytologic alterations are not pathognomonic of IM. Similar cells are found in a variety of disorders, including cytomegalovirus mononucleosis, toxoplasmosis, and infectious hepatitis, and usually to a lesser extent in viral pneumonia, varicella, mumps, and viral exanthemas of children.

Neutrophils are relatively and absolutely decreased in most cases during the first week of illness. During this time, a shift to the left may occur, with an increase in band cells and metamyelocytes. Toxic granules and Döhle bodies may be seen. The eosinophils are within normal limits.

The BM from patients with IM usually shows increased cellularity. Numbers of lymphocytes, macrophages, plasma cells, megakaryocytes, and erythroid cells are increased. The neutrophilic series appears decreased. About half of cases may have collections of mononuclear cells forming loose granulomas.

Serologic Findings in Immunocompetent Patients. The spot test for IM is based on the principle that horse erythrocytes are more sensitive than sheep erythrocytes in testing for IM. A positive test for IM shows agglutination of horse erythrocytes by serum absorbed with guinea pig kidney, but not by serum absorbed with beef erythrocyte stroma. The spot test has proved to be a simple, rapid, highly specific, and sensitive test for the heterophil antibodies of IM. False-positive tests occur but are very rare. The spot test is still in use, as are other similarly performing immunoassays and latex-based detection tests for heterophil antibody. False-negative tests occur particularly in young children who produce heterophil antibodies (IgM) in limited amounts. In heterophil-negative IM, the diagnosis may be substantiated by assay for antibody to EBV.

As previously mentioned, several antibodies are produced by the host in response to a variety of Epstein-Barr virus antigens (see Box 33-8). Antibody to the viral capsid antigen arises within the first 2 weeks of onset. This antibody, measured by an immunofluorescence or other method, is used for determining exposure to EBV. Assaying for the presence of EBV antibody is usually limited to the few cases of heterophil-negative IM.

In addition to heterophil and EBV antibodies, patients with IM frequently produce antibodies to a wide variety of antigens. Antibodies against human erythrocytes, leukocytes, and platelets have been described. Patients with IM have an increased frequency of cold agglutinins. Positive tests for rheumatoid factor and antinuclear factor have been reported.

In immunocompromised patients, serologic tests are of limited value, and direct detection methods are considered more reliable. Determination of EBV viral load by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) appears to be one of the better tests for this patient population (Hess, 2004).

Differential Diagnosis. Clinical, hematologic, and serologic features of IM permit an accurate diagnosis to be made in more than 90% of cases. When the heterophil test is negative, one must consider several possibilities. The patient could still have EBV antibody–positive but heterophil-negative IM. Cytomegalovirus infection, however, is the most common cause of heterophil-negative mononucleosis. Other possibilities include toxoplasmosis, infectious hepatitis, human herpesvirus 6, human immunodeficiency virus types 1 and 2, and ingestion of drugs (*p*-aminosalicylic acid, phenytoin [Dilantin], and diaminodiphenylsulfone).

Course. Classic IM is a benign disorder, and complications occur in less than 5% of patients. The disorder usually resolves in 3 to 4 weeks. Fatalities are extremely rare but tend to occur in X-linked lymphoproliferative disease (XLP). EBV infection can produce any one of three severe complications in XLP: fulminant IM, life-threatening lymphoproliferative disease and B cell lymphoma, and dysgammaglobulinemia. Although classically associated with EBV infection, XLP can occur in patients seronegative for EBV. In addition to XLP, EBV-associated lymphoproliferative disorders can occur in individuals with congenital and acquired immunodeficiencies.

Cytomegalovirus Infection

Some individuals infected with cytomegalovirus develop a syndrome similar to infectious mononucleosis (Boeckh, 2011). This disorder can occur following massive blood transfusion (posttransfusion mononucleosis) or spontaneously (cytomegalovirus mononucleosis).

Leukocytosis is characteristic with absolute lymphocytosis. Usually 20% or more of the leukocytes are atypical lymphocytes. BM aspirates have shown increased numbers of normal lymphocytes and atypical lymphocytes. Abnormal liver function test results are the most frequent abnormal laboratory finding. In a small percentage of patients, titers of cold agglutinins, rheumatoid factor, or antinuclear antibodies may be increased. No rise in heterophil, Epstein-Barr virus, or *Toxoplasma gondii* antibodies occurs. The diagnosis is usually made by isolating the cytomegalovirus from urine, saliva, blood, or tissue biopsy, or by serology.

Toxoplasmosis

Toxoplasma gondii, a protozoan parasite, can produce in both young and old a disease (toxoplasmosis) similar to infectious mononucleosis. Diagnosis is critical in congenitally infected fetuses and newborns, women infected during pregnancy, immunocompromised patients, and patients with chorioretinitis.

Only a small proportion (≈10%) of immunocompetent individuals are symptomatic. These patients typically present with lymphadenopathy, commonly cervical. Some patients may also show fever, headache, sore throat, hepatosplenomegaly, chorioretinitis, and an increased number of atypical lymphocytes in the peripheral blood. In immunocompromised patients, disease commonly involves the CNS and eyes but may also involve the lungs and heart.

The histopathology of lymph nodes is usually distinctive, with scattered epithelioid histiocytes that often blur the germinal center/mantle zone border, and with sinus monocytoid B cell hyperplasia (Fig. 33-11). Morphology correlates closely with elevated *Toxoplasma* antibody titers (Dorfman & Remington, 1973). BM biopsy specimens have no specific pathologic lesion.

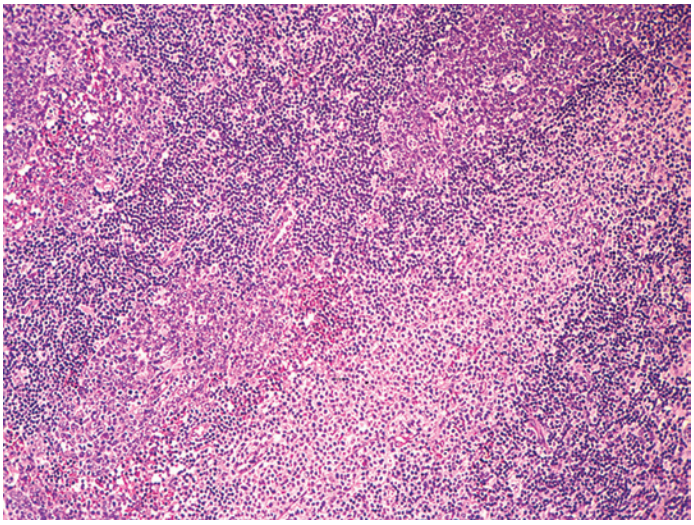


Figure 33-11 **Toxoplasmosis lymphadenitis shows follicular hyperplasia with monocytoid B cell hyperplasia *(lower right-center)* and scattered individual and aggregates of histiocytes, often impinging on the germinal center/mantle zone border (200×).**

The diagnosis is established by demonstrating an elevation of *Toxoplasma* antibodies in immunocompetent patients. In immunocompromised patients, serologic tests are not sensitive, and direct detection of the organism from blood, from body fluids, or in tissue is necessary for definitive diagnosis (Remington et al, 2004; Torres et al, 2013).

Autoimmune Lymphoproliferative Syndrome

Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome (ALPS) is an uncommon cause of lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and autoimmune cytopenias with onset in childhood that is caused by an inheritable genetic defect, a mutation in one of the genes encoding FAS, or CD95, or occasionally a caspase gene. FAS is a key component of apoptosis. The disease has variable penetrance and is characterized by chronic lymphoid hyperplasia with presence of CD4/CD8 double-negative T cells, and the foregoing symptoms (Shah et al, 2014).

Other Nonneoplastic Causes of Lymphadenopathy

Other causes of benign or reactive lymphadenopathy include autoimmune disease and infection, Castleman's disease, Rosai-Dorfman disease (sinus histiocytosis with massive lymph node hyperplasia), Kikuchi's histiocytic necrotizing lymphadenitis, Kawasaki disease, and others.

Lymphocytopenia

Lymphocytopenia is present when the absolute lymphocyte count is below $\approx 1.8 \times 10^9$/L in adults and below $\approx 2.0 \times 10^9$/L in children. Normally, about 80% of circulating peripheral blood lymphocytes are CD3+ T cells, and a majority (≈65%) of these cells are CD4+ helper T cells. A number of immunologic deficiency disorders that are genetically determined have lymphocytopenia, along with various other immunologic defects of humoral or cell-mediated immunity. Lymphocytopenia in these disorders is due to impaired lymphopoiesis. Increased levels of adrenocortical hormones, administration of chemotherapeutic drugs, or irradiation will result in lymphocytopenia. Impaired drainage of the intestinal lymphatics with loss of lymphocytes into the intestines due to a number of causes has been implicated as a mechanism for lymphocytopenia. In advanced cases of NHL and HL, as well as in terminal cases of carcinoma, lymphocytopenia is often observed. Causes and conditions associated with lymphocytopenia include those listed in Box 33-9.

BOX 33-9

Key Causes of Lymphocytopenia

- Destructive—radiation, chemotherapy, corticosteroids
- Debilitative—starvation, aplastic anemia, terminal cancer, collagen vascular disease, renal failure
- Infectious—viral hepatitis, influenza, typhoid fever, TB
- AIDS-associated—HIV cytopathic effect, nutritional imbalance, drug effect
- Congenital immunodeficiency—Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome
- Abnormal lymphatic circulation—intestinal lymphangiectasia, obstruction, thoracic duct drainage/rupture, CHF

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; *CHF,* congestive heart failure; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *TB,* tuberculosis.

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome

Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), once a progressively fatal infectious disorder with characteristic clinical, hematologic, and serologic abnormalities, can now be controlled in most patients with highly active antiretroviral (HAART) therapy.

Etiology. AIDS is a disorder secondary to infection with HIV-1 and HIV-2—RNA retroviruses that are cytotropic for CD4+ T cells and for other cells, including macrophages, monocytes, megakaryocytes, and CNS microglial cells. Viral entry into a cell results from interaction with the CD4 receptor and with chemokine coreceptors that determine target cell tropism (Starr-Spires & Collman, 2002). HIV is responsible for both direct killing of infected cells and indirect killing of neighboring cells, utilizing both apoptotic-dependent and apoptotic-independent mechanisms of cell destruction (Garg et al, 2012).

HIV infection is spread by contamination with secretions, excretions, blood, and tissues that contain the virus. Because of the cytotropic effect of the AIDS viruses for CD4+ cells, there is a marked decrease in the number of T-helper cells and an imbalance in T suppressor/cytotoxic cells in the blood and lymphoid tissues of the body. As a result, a profound cellular immune depression occurs, characterized by infection with a variety of opportunistic organisms. Initially, B cells are not involved and immunoglobulin levels are normal or increased. However, as the disease progresses, the frequency of malignancy in these patients is increased. AIDS-associated cancers include Kaposi's sarcoma, non-HL, and cervical cancer (all AIDS-defining cancers), as well as HL and anogenital cancers (Bellan et al, 2003; Mbulaiteye et al, 2003). Although the cause of these malignancies is undoubtedly multifactorial, recent studies suggest that HIV may possess oncogenic potential (Borges et al, 2014). In addition, the functions of monocytes and NK cells are abnormal.

Hematologic Features. The most common hematologic abnormality in patients with AIDS is anemia of chronic disease and lymphopenia (80% to 85% of cases), particularly of the T-helper/inducer (CD4) subset. Thrombocytopenia occurs in approximately 30% of cases and neutropenia in 40%, often with a left shift; the former is often immune mediated (Hoxie, 1995).

The peripheral blood film usually displays atypical lymphocytes that have a plasmacytoid appearance. Monocytes are often large with a fine nuclear chromatin and cytoplasmic vacuoles. Immune-mediated anemia, thrombocytopenia, and neutropenia in AIDS have also been described.

The BM is usually normocellular to hypercellular (Castella et al, 1985). Often increased numbers of immature myeloid precursor cells, macrophages laden with iron, and plasma cells occur. Defects occur in BM progenitor cells such as colony-forming unit-granulocyte, monocyte (CFU-GM); colony-forming unit–granulocyte, erythrocyte, monocyte, megakaryocyte, pluripotential stem cell (CFU-GEMM); colony-forming unit–megakaryocyte (CFU-MK); and burst-forming unit-erythrocyte (BFU-E). Many drugs used to treat AIDS and its infectious complications are also myelosuppressive. Suppression of the marrow is, in many patients, multifactorial, resulting from an interaction of direct HIV cytopathic effect, dysregulation of the immune system and of apoptosis, possible complicating infection and/or nutritional imbalance, and drug effect. The most clinically valuable information of BM biopsy is usually the identification of infection or malignancy in the marrow. The disease course has been converted to a relatively indolent chronic course in those who receive and adhere to HAART therapy, but remains a tragic illness in disadvantaged populations and in those not treated.

Plasmacytosis

Plasma cells are not normally present in circulating blood. They are increased in a variety of chronic infections, in allergic states, in the presence of neoplasms, and in other conditions in which the serum γ-globulin concentration is elevated. Plasma cells have also been recorded in the blood of patients with viral disorders, including rubella, measles, chickenpox, and mumps. They are moderately increased in cutaneous exanthemas, infectious mononucleosis, syphilis, subacute bacterial endocarditis, sarcoidosis, and collagen disease. Rarely, bacterial sepsis may show a peripheral plasmacytosis mimicking plasma cell leukemia. Their increase is usually linked with increases in lymphocytes, monocytes, and eosinophils.

Causes and conditions associated with plasmacytosis include those listed in Box 33-10.

In the marrow, an average of 1% to 2% of plasma cells are present in adults. An increase beyond 4% is significant; lower values are found in children. Increases of up to 20% of plasma cells may be found in a variety of conditions other than multiple myeloma, including metastatic carcinoma, chronic granulomatous infection, conditions linked with hypersensitivity, and following administration of cytotoxic drugs. They are often increased in aplastic anemia, but this is probably just a relative increase. On the other hand, they are decreased or absent in agammaglobulinemia.

LEUKEMOID REACTIONS

A leukemoid reaction is an excessive leukocytic response in the peripheral blood. It includes leukocytosis of 50×10^9/L or higher with a shift to the left; lower counts, even below normal, with considerable numbers of immature granulocytes; and similar quantitative or qualitative changes in lymphocytes or monocytes. Depending on the predominant cell, leukemoid reactions may be neutrophilic, eosinophilic, lymphocytic, or monocytic.

Congenital Neutrophilia. A rare family with chronic congenital neutrophilia has been described with a mutation of *CSF3R* (T617N), activated GCSF receptor, and increased response to GCSF (Plo et al, 2009).

Neutrophilic Leukemoid Reactions. Excessive neutrophilia may occur in many situations, including hemolysis, hemorrhage, malignancy with bone involvement, HL, myelofibrosis, infection (especially tuberculosis), severe burns, eclampsia, and exposure to certain toxins.

Examination of the blood is usually more helpful than marrow examination. Leukemoid reactions lack the characteristic differential count that is seen in CML, including the myelocyte "peak," eosinophilia, and basophilia (Fig. 33-12).

Eosinophilic Leukemoid Reactions. Cells as immature as eosinophilic myelocytes rarely appear in the blood in reactive eosinophilia, in which the leukocyte count may exceed 50×10^9/L (see Fig. 33-8). Eosinophilic leukemoid reactions usually occur in children and are frequently caused by parasitic infection. Hypereosinophilia is discussed later in this chapter.

Leukoerythroblastosis. In patients with or without anemia, circulating normoblasts frequently are accompanied by a neutrophilic leukemoid reaction; this, then, is a **leukoerythroblastotic reaction.** A moderate anemia with normoblasts in the peripheral blood is fairly common in metastatic carcinoma involving BM. Leukoerythroblastosis may also be associated with marrow infection and/or fibrosis, and may be seen in benign conditions such as GI bleeding and hemolytic anemia.

Lymphocytic Leukemoid Reactions. Extremely high counts of normal-appearing lymphocytes may occur in infectious lymphocytosis and in pertussis (see earlier). When atypical lymphocytes are strikingly increased or immature (which may occur in conditions such as infectious mononucleosis), the distinction from leukemia may be difficult.

Examination of the marrow may be useful because lymphocytes are minimally increased, if at all, in most leukemoid reactions in contrast to leukemia. Flow cytometric studies of peripheral blood and/or BM would reveal a nonclonal population of lymphocytes with a normal combination of cell surface markers in benign proliferations.

BOX 33-10

Key Causes of Plasmacytosis

- Viral—infectious mononucleosis, measles, rubella, HIV
- Bacterial—tuberculosis, syphilis, streptococcus, staphylococcus
- Parasitic—malaria, trichinosis
- Inflammatory—SLE, RA, inflammatory bowel disease, alcoholic liver disease
- Neoplastic—plasma cell leukemia, myeloma
- Immune stimulation—immune complex disease (serum sickness), drug sensitivity, transfusion
- Trauma

HIV, Human immunodeficiency virus; *RA,* rheumatoid arthritis; *SLE,* systemic lupus erythematosus.

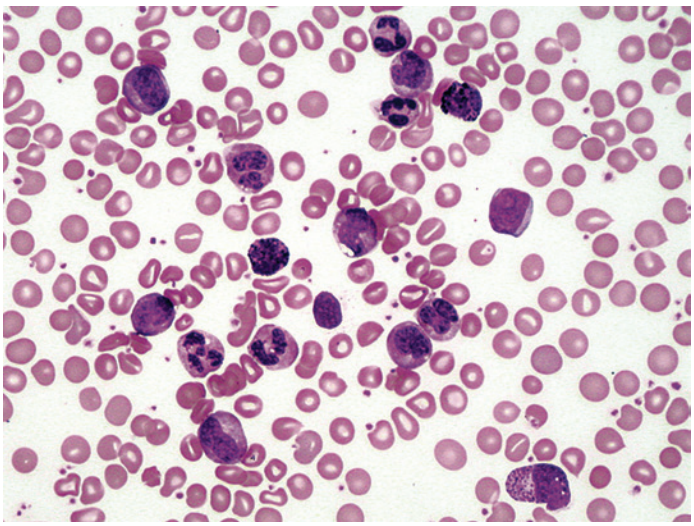


Figure 33-12 Chronic myeloid leukemia with increased segmented neutrophils, myelocytes, and basophils and an occasional blast (500×).

NEOPLASTIC DISORDERS PRIMARILY INVOLVING LEUKOCYTES

OVERVIEW OF HEMATOPOIETIC NEOPLASMS

Hematopoietic neoplasms consist of a diversity of disorders that have in common their derivation from hematopoietic stem cells of the BM or lymphoid organs, and which are known or assumed to be clonal processes arising as the result of genetic errors. Given the diversity and regulatory complexity of hematopoietic cells, it is not surprising that neoplasms involving these tissues are quite diverse, differing in predominant cells within a neoplasm, degree of differentiation, rates of proliferation and apoptosis, clinical features, and response to therapy. Diagnosis and classification of hematopoietic tumors have changed with our understanding of disease. In the 19th century, "leukemia" referred to the white or pale color of blood, which contained increased leukocytes compared with red corpuscles, neither of which could be microscopically seen in detail without differential staining. **Chlorosis** and **chloroma** referred to the grossly greenish tinge of granulocytic cells. **Lymphoma,** first used by Virchow, referred to tumors of the lymph glands.

After the development of Romanowsky's stains (such as Wright-Giemsa) and, later, hematoxylin and eosin (H&E), as well as improvements in microscopes, hematopoietic tumors could be classified by morphology, clinical features, and location of the abnormal proliferations. Hematopoietic tumors were referred to as leukemias when they primarily involved the blood and BM, and as lymphomas or sarcomas when they primarily involved the soft tissue. "Acute" referred to diseases with aggressive clinical courses, and "chronic" to those which progressed more slowly. Morphologic subtyping based on predominant cell types progressed into the 1950s and 1960s with the development of cytochemical stains to differentiate subtypes of myeloid cells and some lymphoid cells (such as HCL).

Since about 1970, an explosion of knowledge and new technology has provided many new tools for understanding these tumors. These include the discovery of B cells; T cells and other immunologic compartments; monoclonal antibodies and leukocyte differentiation antigens; cytogenetic karyotyping; immunoglobulin and T cell gene rearrangements; PCR; nucleic acid arrays; and, most recently, proteomic assays. Many, although certainly not all, hematopoietic tumors can now be characterized at the level of the genetic abnormality and the resultant intracellular pathway perturbations. This has led to therapies targeted to the specific abnormalities. Early examples include (1) chronic myeloid leukemia, with a t(9;22)(q34;q11) *BCR/ABL* translocation and resultant abnormal tyrosine kinase, which has been targeted by the drug Gleevec (imatinib mesylate) (Druker et al, 2001), and (2) acute promyelocytic leukemia with t(15;17)(q22;q12) *PML/RARA* and an abnormal receptor for retinoic acid, which responds to all-*trans* retinoic acid (Huang et al, 1988).

Classification of leukemias, confusing for decades as our technology and understanding evolved, is now unified and described by the World Health Organization (WHO) (Swerdlow et al, 2008). The classification recognizes the predominance of the abnormal biology of each tumor, and utilizes a combination of diagnostic techniques, varying with each tumor, to arrive at the diagnosis. Morphology, immunophenotype, cytogenetics, and molecular genetics are all utilized, and cytochemical assays are used in some cases. Many of the tumors may present as leukemias or soft-tissue tumors (lymphomas), and these terms remain descriptively useful. The

WHO classification also utilizes a two-tiered approach for acute myeloid leukemias, which recognizes that in many areas of the world molecular and cytogenetic testing is not available and, where it is, it is not always productive. For such cases (acute myelogenous leukemia [AML], not otherwise classified), morphologic criteria are based on the earlier FAB classification. Progress in molecular diagnosis is at the same time progressing rapidly.

CHRONIC MYELOPROLIFERATIVE DISORDERS

The chronic myeloproliferative disorders recognized by the WHO are chronic myeloid leukemia, *BCR-ABL1* positive (CML); chronic neutrophilic leukemia (CNL); polycythemia vera (PV); primary myelofibrosis (PM); essential thrombocythemia (ET); MPN with eosinophilia and abnormalities of *PDGFRA*, *PDGFRB*, or *FGFR1*; chronic eosinophilic leukemia; mastocytosis; and myeloproliferative neoplasm, unclassifiable (Swerdlow et al, 2008). These are clonal proliferations of a pluripotential stem cell that can differentiate along granulocytic, erythroid, and megakaryocytic lines. Each has a chronic course that may terminate as acute leukemia, myelofibrosis, or a coagulopathy. One, CML, has a characteristic 9;22 translocation; another, PV, exhibits a mutation of *JAK2 V617F* that is shared with approximately 50% each of ET and PMF, most of the remainder of which carry Calreticulin or other mutations, while mastocytosis is characterized by *KIT* mutation. Key features of the major disorders and of myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative diseases are summarized in Table 33-1.

Chronic Myelogenous Leukemia

Clinical Features

CML occurs in young and middle-aged adults. The age-specific incidence, however, increases markedly after 50 years of age. Onset is insidious, and the disorder may be discovered accidentally on a routine blood test. The patient may have symptoms of anemia and weight loss or simply may complain of malaise. The spleen enlarges progressively, and the patient begins to lose weight and have fever and night sweats associated with increased metabolism as a result of granulocyte turnover. The discomfort associated with an enlarged spleen may bring the patient to the doctor. Infarcts in the spleen may produce left upper quadrant pain. Excessive bleeding or bruising may occur in the later stages of the disease. Lymphadenopathy, although often present, is rarely prominent.

Laboratory Features

Blood. The leukocyte count is usually over 5×10^9/L and may exceed 30×10^9/L. The differential count is characteristic. There is a complete spectrum of granulocytic cells, from a few myeloblasts to mature neutrophils, with myelocyte and neutrophil "peaks" (see Fig. 33-12). Myeloblasts account for less than 10% of the cells. The relative percentage of neutrophil myelocytes increases as the total leukocyte count increases. Basophilia is consistently present and eosinophilia is almost always noted, along with the presence of eosinophil myelocytes. Monocytes are also absolutely increased in most patients.

TABLE 33-1
Key Features of Major Myeloproliferative and Myelodysplastic/Myeloproliferative Disease

Disorder	Demographics	Laboratory Features, Morphology	Cytogenetics	Prognosis
CML	Middle-aged	*BCR-ABL* present	t(9:22)(q34;q11) *BCR-ABL1*	Dependent on response to TKI
CNL	Older adults	Neutrophilia > 2K/μL	*CSF3R mutation*	Indolent
PV	Middle-aged, M > F	Major criteria: Hb >18.5 g/dL in M or >16.5 g/dL; *JAK2 V617F* (or Exon 12) Minor criteria: hypercellular marrow with panmyelosis; ↓EPO; endogenous erythroid colony formation in vitro; 2 major plus 1 minor, or first major plus 2 minor criteria	*JAK2 V617F* (or Exon 12) negative t(9;22)	10-20 years
PMF	>50 years	Major criteria: megakaryocyte proliferation/atypia with marrow fibrosis; CML, PV, MDS ruled out; *JAK2 V617F* Minor criteria: leukoerythroblastosis, ↑LD, anemia, splenomegaly; all three major plus two minor criteria	*JAK2* V617F Calreticulin; *TET2,* ASXL1, EZH2, CBL, IDH1/IDH2, TP53 and SRSF2 *mutations;* +8, +9, del(20q), del(13q), del(1p), negative t(9;22)	Dependent on phase: ≈10 years in early prefibrotic phase; ≈5 years in fibrotic phase
ET	5th decade (M = F), second peak in 30s (F > M)	Platelet count >450 K; BM with proliferation of mature megakaryocytes; PV, PMF, CML, MDS ruled out; *JAK2 V617F* NOTE: All four criteria must be met.	*JAK2 V617F* in 50%; Calreticulin 40%; del(13q22), +8, +9 seen in 5%-10% of cases; negative t(9;22)	Stable for many years (most cases)
CMML	Median, 65-75 years, M > F	Monocytosis >1000, cytopenias, myeloid dysplasias, <20% blasts	+8, –7, 12p abnormalities in 20%-40% of cases; negative t(9;22)	20-40 months with progression to AML in 15%-30%
JMML	Younger than 3 years, M > F	Monocytosis >1000, blasts <20%, plus two of ↑Hb F, immature granulocytes, WBC >10K, clonal abnormalities, GM-CSF hypersensitivity	Monosomy 7, negative t(9;22)	Poor; possible benefit from BMT
Myeloid/lymphoid neoplasms w/↑eos and *PDGFR/FGFR1*	M 25-55 years	PB w/inc eos, BM eos with mast cells	*FIP1L1-PDGFRA, PDGFRB, FGFR*	Variable response to TKI
Mastocytosis	All ages	Mononuclear w/central nuclei, variable basophilic granules (often not seen in fixed tissue); dense aggregates of spindle cells	*KIT* D816V	Cutaneous, indolent; systemic, variable; leukemia, aggressive
CEL NOS, idiopathic HES	Usually adult M; any age or sex	PB ≥1.5 K eos/μL, <20% blasts	+8, i(17q) 8p11 w/various partners	Indolent, 80% 5-year survival

AML, Acute myelogenous leukemia; *BM,* bone marrow; *BMT,* bone marrow transplant; *CEL,* chronic eosinophilic leukemia; *CIM,* chronic idiopathic myelofibrosis; *CML,* chronic myeloid leukemia; *CMML,* chronic myelomonocytic leukemia; *eos,* eosinophils; *EPO,* erythropoietin; *ET,* essential thrombocythemia; *F,* female; *GM-CSF,* granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *Hb,* hemoglobin; *HES,* hypereosinophilic syndrome; *inc,* increased; *JMML,* juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia; *LD,* lactate dehydrogenase; *M,* male; *MDS,* myelodysplastic syndrome; *NAP,* neutrophil alkaline phosphatase; *NOS,* not otherwise specified; *PB,* peripheral blood; *PMF,* primary myelofibrosis; *PV,* polycythemia vera; *TKI,* tyrosine kinase inhibitor; *WBC,* white blood cell.

Normocytic anemia is present in the majority of patients at diagnosis, and a few normoblasts can usually be found. Thrombocytosis occurs in over half, while less than 15% have thrombocytopenia.

Marrow. The marrow is markedly hypercellular, primarily as a result of granulocytic proliferation, with all stages represented. Eosinophil and basophil precursors are usually increased. Normoblasts tend to be relatively decreased. Frequently, the marrow cannot be aspirated because of the density of cellularity or (especially later in the disease) because of increased reticulin, which can be demonstrated on marrow biopsy. Macrophages laden with blue pigment (sea-blue histiocytes) or macrophages indistinguishable from Gaucher's cells are found in some patients.

It is well to remember that even a typical BM is not diagnostic of CML in absence of genetic studies. On the other hand, the diagnosis can be made from the peripheral blood film in most cases.

Neutrophil Alkaline Phosphatase. The neutrophil alkaline phosphatase (NAP) is greatly reduced or absent in more than 90% of patients with CML. It is greatly elevated in polycythemia vera; elevated, normal, or low in idiopathic myelofibrosis; and normal or elevated in leukemoid reactions. Its use is largely of historic interest in light of genetic testing.

Cytogenetic Abnormalities. In more than 95% of patients with typical CML, cultured cells from the blood or bone marrow possess the cytogenetic abnormality t(9;22)(q34;q11), involving the *ABL1* gene on the long arm of chromosome 9 and the *BCR* gene on the long arm of chromosome 22. An abnormally small chromosome formed by this translocation is called the Philadelphia (Ph′) chromosome (Nowell, 1960; Nowell & Hungerford, 1961, 2007). The *BCR-ABL1* gene fusion results in a novel RNA transcript and subsequently a protein growth factor with tyrosine kinase activity higher than that of the normal p145 protein coded for by *ABL1*. Variant translocations involving additional genes and cryptic translocations requiring molecular detection occur. Most translocations involve a *BCR* breakpoint at the major breakpoint region (M-BCR) with resultant p210 protein, and an occasional breakpoint at the μ region results in a p230 protein. Minor breakpoint region (m-BCR) translocations with resultant p190 protein are usually associated with acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), but rare m-BCR translocations in CML are associated with increased monocytosis, and small amounts of p190 may be found in standard CML (Vardiman et al, 2008).

Other Findings. Serum cobalamin and transcobalamins are usually increased considerably as a result of increased transcobalamin I, and are thought to reflect the size of the total blood granulocyte pool. Serum muramidase (lysozyme) is also increased.

Course

A synthetic tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI) (imatinib mesylate; Gleevec) specifically targets the BCR-ABL protein and results in long-term remission for most patients. Treatment failures occur due to secondary mutations, and newer-generation TKIs are often helpful (Jabbour & Kantarjian, 2014; Soverini et al, 2014). In the past, treatment (busulfan or hydroxyurea) controlled the disease only in the chronic phase.

Prior to TKI therapy and in patients who fail treatment, the disease changes after a variable period into a more aggressive or accelerated phase. This is characterized by one or more features of progressive myeloproliferation: increased blood or marrow blasts of 10% to 19%; peripheral blood basophilia >20%; persistent thrombocytopenia unrelated to therapy $<10 \times 10^9$/L; thrombocytosis $>100 \times 10^9$/L; increasing leukocytosis and splenomegaly unresponsive to therapy; or cytogenetic clonal evolution. Granulocytic dysplasia, increased small dysplastic megakaryocytes, and reticulin fibrosis are also suggestive.

Blast phase is essentially a progression to acute leukemia and is defined by >20% blasts in the blood or BM and large aggregates of blasts in the marrow or in extramedullary locations. Blast lineage is myeloid in 70% of cases and may include any myeloid cell types (neutrophilic, eosinophilic, basophilic, monocytic, erythroid, or megakaryocytic), although Auer rods are rarely found. In approximately one third of cases, however, the appearance is that of ALL. Usually, these are of precursor B-lineage. Occasional cases are precursor T-lineage. Myeloid antigens are often coexpressed, and bilineal myeloid/lymphoid cases are rarely found. Occasionally, a patient will initially present in blast phase.

Chronic Neutrophilic Leukemia

Chronic neutrophilic leukemia is a rare myeloproliferative disorder characterized by persistent and unexplained neutrophilia of $>25 \times 10^9$/L mature granulocytes resembling reactive neutrophilia (Elliott et al, 2001; Bain et al, 2008). It typically affects older adults and presents with splenomegaly and sometimes hepatomegaly, often with mucocutaneous bleeding, pruritus, or gout. There may be a left shift with bands present and toxic granulation. BM findings include hypercellularity with granulocytic hyperplasia showing a myeloid/erythroid ratio of up to 20:1 and a predominance of mature neutrophils to myelocytes. Erythroid cellularity and megakaryocytes may be increased, but dysplasia is not present. Cytogenetics are usually (90%) normal, with some cases showing abnormalities including +8, +9, del(20q), and del(11q). Cases with variant Ph′-positive chromosome and neutrophilia are considered CML.

Mutations of **CSF3R** (T618I and T615A) have been associated with CNL (Elliott & Tefferi, 2014; Gotlib et al, 2013; Maxson et al, 2013). Reactive processes due to occult malignancy or other causes of inflammation may induce marked neutrophilia mimicking CNL.

Polycythemia Vera

Polycythemia vera is a clonal stem cell proliferation affecting primarily the erythroid series, characterized by excessive proliferation of erythroid and also usually granulocytic and megakaryocytic elements in the marrow (panmyelosis). It is genetically characterized by mutation of Janus 2 kinase, *JAK2* V617F, or another functionally similar mutation such as *JAK2* exon 12 mutation (Levine & Gilliland, 2008). *JAK2* mutation occurs in essentially all patients with PV but is also present in approximately 50% of patients with thrombocythemia and primary myelofibrosis. The disease is manifested in the blood by an absolute increase in red cell mass, leukocytosis, and thrombocytosis. Serum and urine erythropoietin are decreased. The production of erythrocytes is autonomous with **endogenous erythroid colonies (EECs)** growing in vitro without erythropoietin. There is initially a proliferative phase and eventually a spent phase with iron depletion and associated anemia, marrow fibrosis, increased splenomegaly, and extramedullary hematopoiesis.

Clinical Features

The disease is slightly more frequent in men than in women. It usually begins in middle age. Affected patients exhibit ruddy cyanosis, and splenomegaly is present in two thirds. Thrombotic or hemorrhagic phenomena occur in about half of patients, and thrombosis is most common. Myocardial infarction, cerebral thrombosis, splenic or pulmonary infarcts, and thrombophlebitis account for the most frequent thrombotic episodes; upper gastrointestinal bleeding, often from peptic ulcer, is the most common bleeding problem. Pruritus, especially after bathing, is common.

Laboratory Features

Blood. Erythrocytes exceed 6 to 12×10^{12}/L, and the hemoglobin is >18.5 g/dL (males) or >16.5 g/dL (females). Mean cell volume (MCV), mean cell hemoglobin (MCH), and mean cell hemoglobin concentration (MCHC) are normal or low. The erythrocytes become hypochromic and microcytic if chronic blood loss has occurred. Macrocytes, polychromatic cells, and normoblasts may be found but are not a prominent feature of the disease. Red cell production is increased. Red cell destruction is normal during the period of erythrocytosis; later in the disease, as splenomegaly develops, red cell survival diminishes. The total blood volume is increased, primarily because of increased red cell mass, and the plasma volume may also be elevated to a lesser degree. Blood viscosity is high, and it may be difficult to prepare good blood films. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) is reduced.

The platelet count is increased in about two thirds of patients, often to levels exceeding 1000×10^9/L. In 80% of untreated patients, functional platelet abnormalities are present with decreased aggregation in response to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and epinephrine. No consistent abnormality of secondary hemostasis is present.

Moderate neutrophilic leukocytosis in the range of 10 to 30×10^9/L is common. Immature granulocytes are seen in about one half of cases, and basophils are often absolutely increased. The NAP is markedly elevated in 80% of patients.

The arterial oxygen saturation is normal. Hyperuricemia appears in many patients with PV as a result of increased nucleic acid metabolism; in some patients, secondary gout or renal uric acid stones occur.

Marrow. The marrow is moderately to markedly hypercellular, with prominent normoblastic erythroid hyperplasia in panmyelosis. Megakaryocytes show an increase in and clustering of variable small and large megakaryocytes associated with an increase in dilated sinuses and frequently cluster around sinusoids (Fig. 33-13). Increased reticulin is often present, and storage iron is decreased or absent in 95% of cases.

Diagnosis

WHO criteria for the diagnosis of polycythemia vera (Swerdlow et al, 2008) are as follows:

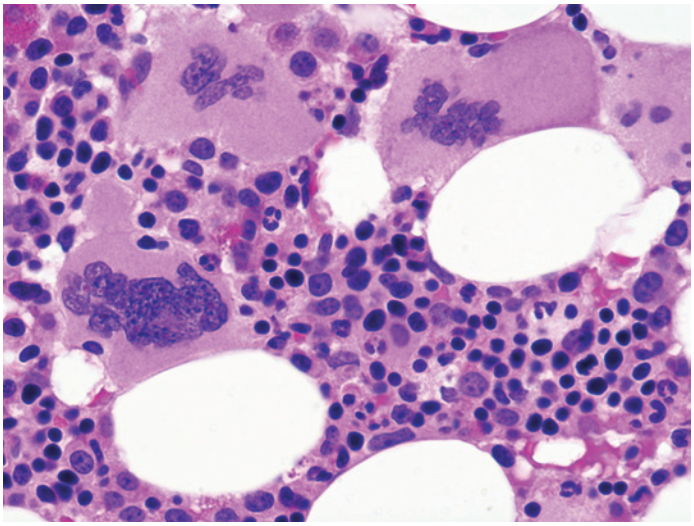


Figure 33-13 Bone marrow biopsy in polycythemia vera shows panmyelosis with normoblastic hyperplasia (500×).

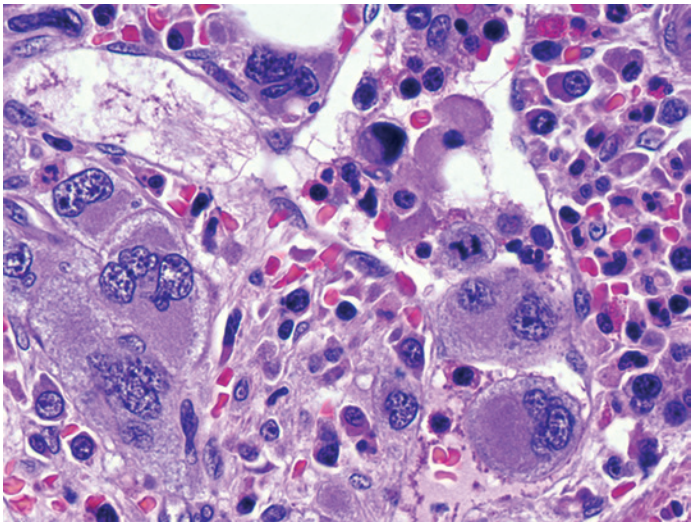


Figure 33-14 Bone marrow biopsy in chronic idiopathic myelofibrosis, with increased spacing between cells suggesting fibrosis and intrasinusoidal hematopoiesis (500×).

Major criteria:

1. Elevated Hb >18.5 (males) or 16.5 (females) g/dL, or other evidence of increased red cell volume.
2. Presence of *JAK2* V617F or similar mutation such as *JAK2* exon 12 mutation.

Minor criteria:

1. Panmyelosis with erythroid and megakaryocytic proliferation
2. Low serum erythropoietin
3. Endogenous colony formation in vitro

Both major criteria must be present, along with any single minor criterion. Alternatively, the diagnosis may be made by the first major and two minor criteria.

In addition to *JAK2* V617F or exon 12 mutations, there is emerging information on other genetic abnormalities including mutations of *TET2*, expression of STAT5B, and varied signaling abnormalities (Levine, 2009; Rampal et al, 2014; Rice et al, 2011; Tefferi et al, 2009).

Polycythemia vera is a chronic disease; patients usually live 10 to 20 years under good control. Phlebotomy, chlorambucil, radioactive phosphorus (^{32}P), and hydroxycarbamide (hydroxyurea) have been used to control the manifestations of the disease.

In about 20% to 40% of patients, the spent or postpolycythemic phase occurs with progressive anemia, gradual splenic enlargement, and further elevation of the leukocyte count, with more immature granulocytes and more circulating nucleated red cells. Many erythrocytes become oval, and teardrop cells (dacryocytes) become prominent. BM aspiration becomes impossible because of myelofibrosis, and splenomegaly increases, owing to extramedullary hematopoiesis. Manifestations at this stage of the disease are indistinguishable from those of myelofibrosis with myeloid metaplasia. Another late complication of polycythemia vera is acute leukemia or myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), associated with ^{32}P and alkylators but not with hydroxyurea (Bjorkholm et al, 2011).

Primary Myelofibrosis

This is a chronic, progressive clonal panmyelosis characterized by megakaryocytic and often granulocytic hyperplasia with varying degrees of reactive fibrosis of the marrow and extramedullary hematopoiesis (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Typically, leukoerythroblastic anemia occurs with marked red cell abnormalities, circulating normoblasts, immature granulocytes, and atypical platelets. Chronic idiopathic myelofibrosis (CIM) is an uncommon disease with an incidence one-third that of CML. It occurs typically in persons over 50 years of age and has an insidious onset, with weight loss, anemia, and abdominal discomfort due to the large spleen. Often the liver is enlarged as well, and the patient may be slightly jaundiced. Radiograph shows patchy osteosclerosis in up to half of patients, but osteoporosis may also be seen.

A prefibrotic stage in 20% to 30% of cases is characterized by mild normocytic anemia with poikilocytosis, including dacryocytes, nucleated RBCs, thrombocytosis, and mild leukocytosis with some immature forms. The marrow is hypercellular and contains abnormal megakaryocytes, which cluster around sinuses and trabeculae. The histopathology of the BM is dominated by atypical, enlarged, and immature megakaryocytes with cloudlike immature nuclei, and also small megakaryocytes (Michiels et al, 1999; Michiels et al, 2014). Fibrosis may be minimal initially. Intrasinusoidal hematopoiesis is often present (Fig. 33-14).

Characteristic findings of presentation in the fibrotic stage include moderate normochromic, normocytic anemia (often with some hypochromic cells and basophilic stippling), moderate anisocytosis, and marked poikilocytosis, including prominent teardrop forms (dacryocytes) and elliptocytes. Normoblasts are often increased out of proportion to the degree of anemia with slight reticulocytosis. The anemia may have a complicated origin, with components of marrow failure, ineffective erythropoiesis, and hemolysis. Splenomegaly due to extramedullary hematopoiesis is typical.

The leukocyte count is moderately increased; immature neutrophils and occasionally myeloblasts are present. Basophils are often increased. Platelets are normal or decreased in number (rarely increased) and often atypical with distinct clear "zones." Micromegakaryocytes the size of lymphocytes with both nucleus and cytoplasm or small megakaryoblasts may usually be found if searched for; on rare occasions, they are present in considerable numbers.

In vitro blood cell culture shows increased colonies (CFU-GM) similar to those in CML. Serum GM-CSF is high, serum uric acid is frequently increased, and cobalamin is normal or elevated.

It is usually impossible to aspirate marrow, and biopsy is necessary. The marrow is fibrotic, with residual islands of atypical megakaryocytes, erythroid, and granulocytic precursors. The fibrosis is of loose connective tissue with scanty collagen, but reticulin fibers are abundant. Foci of osteoid and/or new bone formation in endophytic plaques may be found, and bony trabeculae may be irregularly thickened (myelosclerosis). The marrow may show a mixture of hyperplasia and fibrosis in one sample or may vary in different sites of the body. Megakaryocytes with abnormal nuclei cluster or form sheets that may be found in sinuses with other marrow precursors. Extramedullary hematopoiesis is found in the spleen and liver.

Biology

Although the proliferating megakaryocytes are neoplastic, the stromal proliferation is reactive because of inappropriate release of megakaryocyte/platelet-derived growth factors, including platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), transforming growth factor (TGF)-β, basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) and calmodulin (Reilly, 1998).

Approximately 50% of patients show *JAK2* V617F mutation. Forty percent show mutation of *CALR* (Calreticulin) (Tefferi et al, 2014). A small number, up to 5%, have an *MPL* W515K/L gene mutation. Testing for these is important for prognostication. *TET2* may be a predisposing mutation, and modifying mutations include ASXL1, EZH2, CBL, IDH1/IDH2, TP53, and SRSF2. Chromosomal studies show absence of *BCR/ABL*, but variable cytogenetic changes: +8, +9, del(20q), del(13q)(q12-22), partial trisomy 1q, del(5q), and der(6)t(1;6)(q21-23;p21.3). Additional cytogenetic abnormalities may be associated with cytotoxic therapy and/or progression of disease.

Course

The natural course is increasing fibrosis with progressive anemia and enlargement of the spleen. Hemolysis frequently becomes an increasing element in the anemia, and infection may be a serious problem. Portal hypertension occurs in 10% to 20% of cases and may result in bleeding esophageal varices. Hypertension may be due to portal vein thrombosis or intrahepatic obstruction as a result of myeloid metaplasia coupled with increased portal blood flow.

The median survival has been about 5 years, considerably less than that of polycythemia vera; however, some patients live longer, and in those the terminal event is frequently acute leukemia. Therapy has been largely palliative, but JAK kinase inhibitors may alter the disease course.

Occasionally, patients exhibit cytopenias and marrow fibrosis due to other causes, some of which may show favorable response to specific therapies. These include metastatic tumors, primary hematopoietic tumors such as HCL or plasma cell dyscrasia, damage from radiation, and rarely autoimmune myelofibrosis. Malnourished children with vitamin D deficiency (rickets) sometimes show myelofibrosis. Solvent exposure may be a factor; benzene has been most often suspected and is a known inducer of AML at threshold levels of exposure. Current environmental exposure appears much lower than levels likely to be associated with hematologic malignancies (Duarte-Davidson et al, 2001). Peritrabecular marrow fibrosis occurs in primary hyperparathyroidism or secondary hyperparathyroidism of chronic renal failure.

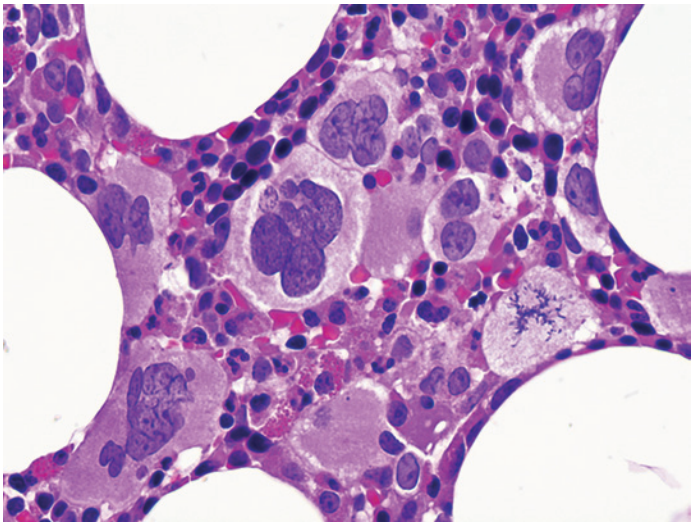


Figure 33-15 Bone marrow biopsy in essential thrombocythemia, with increased and clustered megakaryocytes (500×). Nuclei in this case are unusual, resembling primary myelofibrosis.

Essential Thrombocythemia

Thrombocythemia is a clonal myeloproliferative disorder primarily affecting the megakaryocytic lineage with the principal manifestation of sustained thrombocytosis. Forty percent to 50% carry a *JAK2* V617F mutation, and 25% a *CALR* mutation. It most often occurs in the fifth decade, with equal sex distribution, with another peak of incidence in females in their 30s (Tefferi et al, 2014).

Clinical Features

Patients often (50%) present with asymptomatic thrombocytosis, but up to half of patients present with hemorrhage or thrombosis. The latter occurs as arterial or venous thrombosis or as microvascular occlusion resulting in transient ischemic attacks (TIAs) or digital ischemia. Characteristic recurrent, spontaneous mucosal hemorrhages are most common in the GI tract or the upper airway. Hemorrhages are occasionally preceded or accompanied by thrombosis. Mild splenomegaly occurs in 50% of cases.

Laboratory Features

Blood. The most striking feature is the marked increase in platelets (≥450 × 10^9/L; usually >1000 × 10^9/L), often with abnormal and giant forms, and usually accompanied by fragments of megakaryocytes. Neutrophilic leukocytosis is sometimes present. Hypochromic microcytic anemia due to chronic blood loss is present in many cases. Platelet function defects in thrombocythemia are frequently demonstrable. The most typical finding is decreased aggregation in response to epinephrine.

Marrow. The marrow shows increased and enlarged megakaryocytes with mature cytoplasm and multilobulated nuclei and a tendency to cluster in a normal or only slightly hypercellular BM (Michiels et al, 1999) (Fig. 33-15). Megakaryocyte nuclei are not described as atypical but often are distinctive and resemble other myeloproliferative disorders (MPDs). Erythroid proliferation may be present secondary to blood loss. Biopsy features may be indistinguishable from those of PV, but usually with less erythroid prominence. Splenic extramedullary hematopoiesis may be present.

Diagnosis

WHO criteria for the diagnosis of thrombocythemia (Swerdlow et al, 2008) are as follows:

1. Sustained platelet count ≥450 × 10^9/L.
2. BM biopsy showing proliferation of mainly megakaryocytes with enlarged mature nuclei; no increase or left shift of granulopoiesis or erythropoiesis.
3. Not meeting WHO criteria for polycythemia vera, PMF, BCR-ABL1–positive CML, MDS, or other myeloid neoplasm.
4. Demonstration of *JAK2* V617F mutation or, in its absence, no evidence of reactive thrombocytosis. The *CALR* mutation carries similar weight as *JAK2* V617F (Tefferi et al, 2014).

Genetics

Forty percent to 50% of cases carry a *JAK2* V617F mutation. Most other cases carry a mutation of Calreticulin (*CALR)* that is mutually exclusive to *JAK2* mutation and carries reduced or no risk for transformation to polycythemia vera (Cazzola & Kralovics, 2014). *BCR/ABL* translocations must be ruled out to exclude CML. Some cases show +8, abnormalities of 9q or del(20q). Mutations seen in PMF are seen in reduced frequency in ET (Cazzola & Kralovics, 2014; Martinez-Aviles et al, 2012), although this raises the possibility of early PMF mimicking ET.

Most cases are stable for many years, but a small proportion may merge into other chronic myeloproliferative disorders or, rarely, develop into acute leukemia. Current treatment recommendations are based on clinical risk stratification to guide cytoreduction, platelet inhibition, and anticoagulation (Tefferi & Barbui, 2013).

Chronic Myeloproliferative Disease, Unclassifiable

Chronic myeloproliferative disease, unclassifiable (CMPD, U) includes disorders with features of MPD but which do not meet criteria for a specific entity or have intermediate features (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Examples of CMPD, U include prefibrotic CIM, prepolycythemic PV, and postpolycythemic PV (without prior diagnosis), as well as cases with features of MPD but presenting with some dysplasia or increased blasts. BCR/ABL and other specific cytogenetic abnormalities are absent. This category overlaps with myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative disease, unclassifiable. Often, with follow-up, characteristic findings develop that allow definite diagnosis (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Chronic Eosinophilic Leukemia, Not Otherwise Specified, and Idiopathic Hypereosinophilic Syndrome

Chronic eosinophilic leukemia (CEL) is a clonal proliferation of eosinophils with chronic increase in the blood and often organ damage due to tissue infiltration. The blood contains ≥1.5 × 10^9/L mostly mature eosinophils and often increased but fewer than 20% blasts in the blood or marrow. A working conference on eosinophil disorders has recommended that the term HE *(hypereosinophilia)* be used for these cases, subcategorized as HE_{FA} for familial cases, HE_{US} for cases of undetermined significance, HE_N for those due to clonal neoplasms, and HE_R for reactive eosinophilias (Valent et al, 2012). A lymphocyte variant of HE is associated with clonal T cells showing abnormal antigen expressions (Gotlib, 2014). Some other neoplasms, including T cell lymphoma and Hodgkin lymphoma, are often causes of secondary eosinophilia due to cytokine production (IL2, IL3, IL5, GM-CSF). When associated with a defined CMD, the eosinophilia is considered a component of that disease and not termed CEL. Myeloproliferative diseases with eosinophilia and *PDGFRA*, *PDGFRB*, or *FGFR1* gene abnormalities are classified separately, as earlier.

Some cases of CEL have clonal cytogenetic abnormalities; +8, i(17q) or 8p11 translocations including t(8;13)(p11;q12), t(8;9)(p11;q32-34) and t(6;8)(q27;p11). The 8p11 translocation may also occur in AML, precursor B-ALL, or precursor T-ALL. Other abnormalities, including *JAK2* V617F mutation and trisomy 10, may occur. The clinical outcome of CEL and HES is usually indolent with 5-year survival of about 80%.

Mastocytosis

Mastocytosis is a clonal neoplastic proliferation of mast cells involving skin, BM, lymph nodes, and/or spleen (Akin & Valent, 2014; Swerdlow et al, 2008), with variable degrees of malignancy. Subtypes are described based on distribution of disease and clinical manifestations. Symptoms are complex and arise from secretion of vasoactive amines, including histamine and serotonin, as well as from mass effects.

Mastocytosis is associated with mutations of the *KIT* proto-oncogene that encodes the tyrosine kinase receptor for stem cell factor (SCF), most frequently, *KIT* D816V with CD117 expression. Morphologically, increased mast cells are found in involved organs, often with associated fibrosis. Mast cells normally are mononuclear cells with central nuclei, clumped chromatin, and dense basophilic granules. They are frequently difficult to identify, however, as mast cell granules are not well preserved in fixed tissue, and cells may appear like bland clear cells, histiocytes, fibroblasts, or others. Mast cells may be identified in tissue using Giemsa or toluidine blue stain and immunohistochemistry. Mast cell tryptase is the most specific marker, but cells also express CD117, as well as CD45, CD33, CD68, CD2, and CD25. Mast cells lack myeloperoxidase but often express chloroacetate esterase. Diagnostic testing should include immunologic assays (immunohistochemistry and/or flow cytometry) for CD117, CD2, CD25, and tryptase, as well as assays for *KIT* D816V mutation in marrow, blood, or other extracutaneous organs for systemic disease.

Urticaria with melanin pigmentation is common with skin involvement and is referred to as **urticaria pigmentosa (UP)** or **maculopapular cutaneous mastocytosis (MPCM).** This form occurs in both children and adults. In children, lesions are often large and papular, or are associated with blistering in children younger than 3 years old. It is often self-limited or may spontaneously regress. Histology shows aggregates of spindle-shaped mast cells filling the papillary dermis and extending into reticular dermis (Swerdlow et al, 2008). A diffuse cutaneous variant is referred to as **diffuse cutaneous mastocytosis,** and a localized variant as **mastocytoma of skin.**

Systemic mastocytosis is defined by involvement of at least one extracutaneous organ with or without skin involvement. It presents with variable cutaneous and constitutional symptoms, including urticaria, pruritus and dermatographism, symptoms of systemic histamine release, bone pain, arthralgia and fractures, splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, or lymphadenopathy.

BM involvement is sometimes difficult to identify, with paratrabecular and perivascular aggregates of increased lymphocytes, eosinophils, neutrophils, mast cells, and fibroblasts. Marrow biopsy of most cases shows multifocal, sharply demarcated compact aggregates of mast cells. These may be spindle shaped and lacking in apparent granules on H&E stain, or may consist of mixed infiltrates of mast cells, lymphocytes, eosinophils, histiocytes, and fibroblasts, with a peripheral rim or central core of lymphocytes. Compact infiltrates of hypergranular mast cells also occur and are referred to as **tryptase-positive round cell infiltrates,** or TROCI. The latter may also be seen in basophilic leukemia or acute myeloid leukemia. Mast cells are frequently increased in hematologic neoplasms such as HCL, lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma, and myeloid neoplasm and are most apparent around BM particles on aspirate smears. Reactive mast cells do not typically show compact aggregates.

In addition, systemic mastocytosis (SM) not infrequently presents simultaneously with or in close temporal relationship with other hematopoietic neoplasms, including acute leukemia, myeloproliferative and/or myelodysplastic neoplasms, and occasionally other hematopoietic neoplasia. SM is sometimes detected only after treatment for an acute process (Figs. 33-16 and 33-17). These cases are referred to as systemic mastocytosis with associated clonal non–mast cell lineage disease (SM-AHNMD). The non–mast cell (MC) disease is categorized by criteria for the same disorder without SM.

Mast cell leukemia also occurs and is defined by the presence of atypical mast cells constituting more than 20% of a marrow aspirate. More than 10% of the circulating cells are usually mast cells (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Chronic forms and a prephase with 5% to 29% mast cells in the BM occur. Myelomastic leukemia (MML) is a related entity in which mastocytic differentiation in advanced myeloid neoplasms occurs without SM (Valent et al, 2014).

Mast cell sarcoma refers to localized, destructive extramedullary tumors of highly atypical mast cells, occurring in larynx, bowel, meninges, bone, and skin. Extracutaneous mastocytoma of mature granulated mast cells occurs rarely in the lung.

The outcome is highly variable, with cutaneous disease usually indolent. In children, it usually regresses. Systemic disease without skin involvement is more aggressive than with skin disease, and mast cell leukemia and sarcoma are highly aggressive.

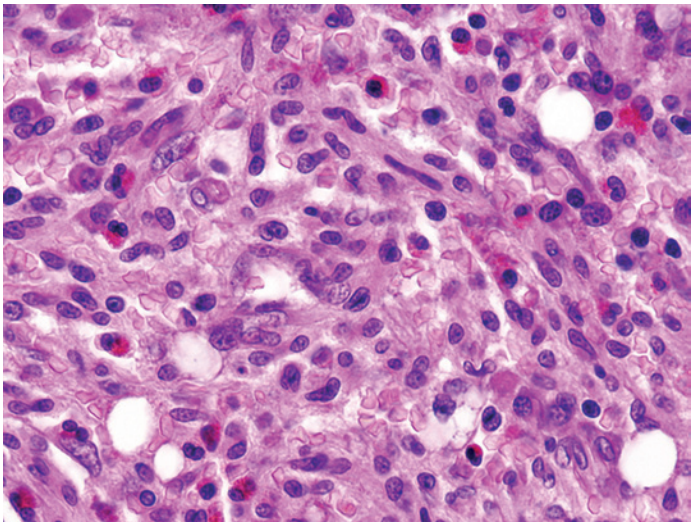


Figure 33-16 Mastocytosis in the bone marrow, presenting after treatment for acute myeloid leukemia (500×).

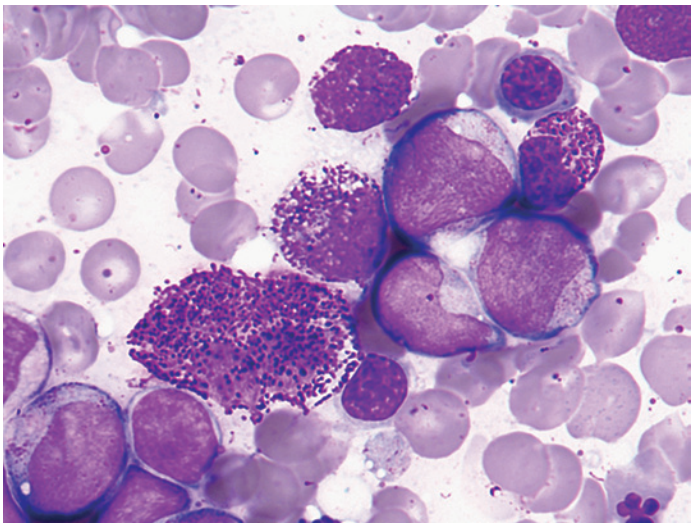


Figure 33-17 Acute leukemia with early mast cell disease before therapy (earlier specimen from case shown in Figure 33-16) (1000×).

Myeloproliferative Neoplasm, Unclassifiable

These are disorders with features of myeloproliferative neoplasm (MPN) but which do not meet criteria for a specific entity or have intermediate features (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Examples of CMPD, U include prefibrotic CIM, prepolycythemic PV, and postpolycythemic PV (without prior diagnosis) cases with features of MPN but presenting with some dysplasia or increased blasts, and those with convincing evidence of MPN that is, however, obscured by a concurrent inflammatory or neoplastic condition. *BCR/ABL* and other specific cytogenetic abnormalities are absent. This category overlaps with myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative disease, unclassifiable. Often, with follow-up, characteristic findings develop that allow definitive diagnosis.

Myeloid and Lymphoid Neoplasms with Eosinophilia and Abnormalities of *PDGFRA, PDGFRB,* or *FGFR1*

This disease category was established in the 2008 WHO classification for a group of myeloid neoplasms associated with eosinophilia that have genetic abnormalities resulting in abnormal tyrosine kinases that may be successfully treated with tyrosine kinase inhibitors, the first two of which are responsive to imatinib and/or similar tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKI). (Gotlib, 2014; Swerdlow et al, 2008)

MPN with rearrangement of *PDGFRA* is most often associated with a FIP1L1-PDGFRA fusion protein resulting from a cryptic deletion at

4q12. The disease usually presents as chronic eosinophilic leukemia with peripheral eosinophil counts >1.5 × 10^9/L, with multisystem involvement and organ damage. BM eosinophilia is often accompanied by increased mast cells that are considered part of the disease. It usually occurs in men between 25 and 55 years of age, but also may occur in others. Presentation also occurs as AML and as T-lymphoblastic lymphoma/leukemia (T-LBL). Diagnosis and appropriate therapy depend on identification of the genetic abnormality by reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) or by cytogenetic FISH assay for deletion of the *CHIC2* gene, or use of a break-apart probe encompassing *FIP1L1* and *PDGFRA*. Other genetic variants have been described and are generally imatinib sensitive (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Rearrangement of *PDGFRB* at 5q31~33, usually due to t(5;12)(q31~33;p12) with production of *ETV6- PDGFRB*, resembles CMML with eosinophilia. Variant translocations involving *PDGFRB* may be associated with other morphologies, including CEL, MPN, and others. This disease occurs most often in middle age, but with a wide age range and a 2 : 1 M/F ratio. Diagnosis of MPN with PDGFRB (rather than a morphologic diagnosis as MPN, NOS or CMML) is imperative because it is sensitive to TKI therapy (Cheah et al, 2014). Diagnostic testing is by cytogenetics to detect t(5;12) and/or by RT-PCR. Secondary trisomy 21 is frequent.

Hematologic neoplasms involving *FGFR1* at chromosome region 8p11 are heterogeneous and may present as CEL, AML, T- or less often B-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, or mixed phenotype acute leukemia (MPAL). Eosinophilia is present in 90% of cases overall. Although an abnormal tyrosine kinase is produced, it is not imatinib sensitive. The genetic abnormalities are most often translocations, and karyotyping may be diagnostic. It was formerly called *8p11 stem cell syndrome* or similar name. Prognosis is currently poor (Gotlib, 2014; Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Myelodysplastic and Myelodysplastic/Myeloproliferative Neoplasms

Myeloproliferative diseases, in general, are disorders in which proliferation of hematopoietic cells outpaces apoptosis, and cellular elements in the blood are increased while the morphology of hematopoiesis is near normal. Myelodysplastic diseases or syndromes are disorders in which apoptosis predominates, hematopoiesis is ineffective, and cytopenias occur. The myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative disorders show features of both, with variable increases in cells, as well as cytopenias and morphologic dysplasia. These include chronic myelomonocytic leukemia (CMML), atypical chronic myeloid leukemia (aCML), *BCR-ABL1* negative, juvenile chronic myelomonocytic leukemia (JCMML), and myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative neoplasm, unclassifiable.

MDS occurs primarily in persons over 50 years of age and usually is present as an anemia refractory to hematinics (iron, folate, B_{12}), with or without neutropenia and thrombocytopenia. Liver, spleen, or lymph nodes are not usually enlarged. The marrow is hypercellular with abnormal maturation in one or more of the three hematopoietic cell lines, and blast cells are often increased. This group of disorders has also been called *dysmyelopoietic syndromes* or *preleukemias* because of the high proportion of cases that ultimately progress to overt acute leukemia (Bennett et al, 1976; Bennett et al, 1982; Swerdlow et al, 2008). A scoring system for predicting survival and risk for acute leukemic transformation has been developed based on percentage of blasts, cytogenetics, and extent of cytopenias. In general, blast count >5% elevates risk and >10% increases risk further; complex chromosomal abnormalities or chromosome 7 abnormalities are high risk; del(5q), isolated del(2q), -Y, and normal cytogenetics are low risk; other cytogenetic findings are intermediate risk; and more than one cytopenia increases risk.

Genetics and Epigenetics

Molecular genetic analyses suggest that MDS occurs due to initial oncogenic driver mutations and that progression occurs with accumulating mutations. Most patients have 2 to 3 driver mutations occurring in genes of RNA splicing *(SF3B1, SRSF2, U2AF1, ZRSR2)*, DNA methylation *(TET2, DNMT3A, IDH1/2)*, chromatin modification (*ASXL1, EZH2*), transcription regulation *(RUNX1)*, DNA repair *(TP53)*, signal transduction *(CBL, NRAS, KRAS)*, and/or cohesin (STAG2) (Cazzola et al, 2013; Papaemmanuil et al, 2013; Lin et al, 2014). Abnormalities of the "spliceosome" and of DNA methylation lead to epigenetic disruption.

Types of Abnormal Cellular Maturation

Dyserythropoiesis resembles megaloblastic change and includes nuclear fragmentation or karyorrhexis, multinuclearity, nuclear budding or bridging, basophilic stippling, and ring sideroblasts. These features may also be seen in toxicity due to drugs, chemotherapy, heavy metals, alcohol, and other toxins (Figs. 33-18 and 33-19). Erythroid cells may be decreased or increased in number. Erythrocytic abnormalities in the blood film include presence of oval macrocytes, anisochromia, basophilic stippling, dacryocytes, and reticulocytopenia.

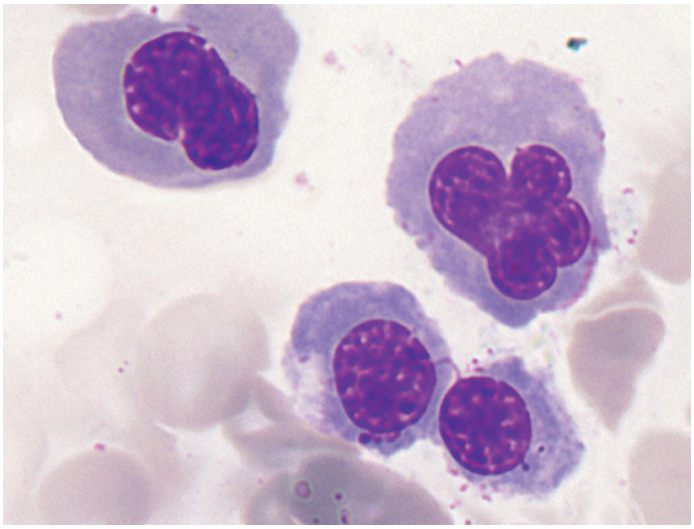


Figure 33-18 Drug-induced dyserythropoiesis, with irregular nuclear lobation in the cells above right, compared with two relatively normal normoblasts (1000×).

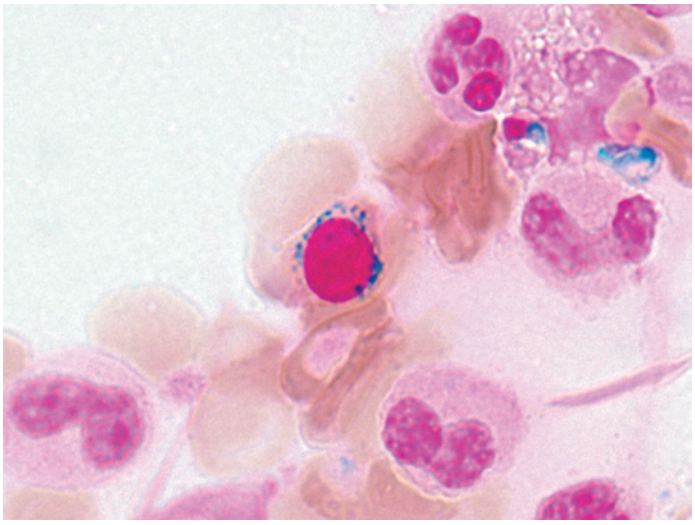


Figure 33-19 A ring sideroblast is present in the center of the field (1000×).

Dysgranulopoiesis includes nuclear/cytoplasmic asynchrony, hypogranulation, nuclear hyposegmentation with increased chromatin condensation, occasionally abnormal large azurophilic granules, inappropriately prominent nucleoli, or other abnormalities. Neutrophil precursors and monocytes often resemble one another. Neutrophils with mature chromatin but with decreased granulation and bilobed or unilobed nuclei resemble the cells of Pelger-Huët anomaly and are termed **pseudo-Pelger-Huët** cells (Figs. 33-20 and 33-21).

Dysmegakaryocytopoiesis includes large megakaryocytes with unsegmented nuclei, micromegakaryocytes, and megakaryocytes with two or more small, unconnected nuclei (Fig. 33-22). Megakaryocytes may be decreased in number. In the blood film, giant hypogranular platelets are frequent, and micromegakaryocytes are seen rarely.

Myelodysplastic/Myeloproliferative Neoplasms

Chronic Myelomonocytic Leukemia. CMML is a clonal stem cell disorder in which the predominant feature is persistent monocytosis (>1 × 10^9/L for longer than 3 months) for which other causes have been excluded (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Typically, cytopenias are present in the blood (anemia, thrombocytopenia, and/or neutropenia), but neutrophilia with

morphologic abnormalities also occurs. There is absence of a Philadelphia chromosome or *BCR/ABL*, dysplasia of one or more myeloid lineages, and less than 20% blasts plus promonocytes in the marrow (Fig. 33-23). The marrow also shows monocytosis and often has increased promonocytes, which may be distinguished from abnormal myelocytes by nonspecific esterase (α-napthyl acetate, or α-napthyl butyrate esterase) staining or strong labeling with antilysozyme or CD68. Eosinophilia or basophilia may be present, and plasmacytoid-appearing monocytes are seen frequently. When eosinophils exceed 1.5×10^9/L, the WHO recommends the subcategory of CMML with eosinophilia.

In CMML and also in the acute myeloid leukemias with monocytic differentiation, promonocytes are considered equivalent to blasts and are included with them for determining the blast percentage. Promonocytes are monocytic precursors that have recognizable monocyte morphology but immature chromatin and finely convoluted or cerebriform nuclei (Fig. 33-24). Blast percentages typically are <5% in the blood and <10% in the marrow, and such cases are referred to as *CMML-1*. The subcategory CMML-2 refers to cases with 5% to 19% blasts in the blood, with 10% to 19% in the marrow, or with the presence of Auer rods. This indicates aggressive disease with likely impending transformation to acute leukemia.

The immunophenotype is CD13/CD33+, with variable CD14/CD68/CD64/CD4-positive. Plasmacytoid monocytes may be seen and may express CD14, CD43, CD56, CD68, and CD4, with variable CD2/CD5. Cytogenetic abnormalities in 20% to 40% of cases include +8, –7/del, and abnormalities of 12p. *TET2* and *SRSF2* comutation are associated with CMML (Cazzola et al, 2013; Itzykson et al, 2013a, 2013b).

CMML occurs most often at older age (median, 65 to 75 years) with a male predominance. Symptoms are usually those related to cytopenias (fatigue, infection, bleeding) or hypermetabolic state (fever, weight loss, night sweats). Hepatosplenomegaly may be present, particularly in patients with elevated WBCs. Lymphadenopathy may be associated with granulocytic sarcoma and evolution to acute leukemia. Median survival is 20 to 30 months, with progression to AML in 15% to 30%.

Atypical Chronic Myeloid Leukemia, BCR-ABL1 Negative. This disease shows myelodysplastic and myeloproliferative features, a predominant component of increased neutrophils and precursors with dysplastic features, and dysplasia of other cell lines (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Ph′ chromosome or BCR/ABL is absent. These cases were previously considered along with CML or CMML, but they are Ph′ chromosome and BCR/ABL negative, and, although monocytosis is often present, it is less prominent than neutrophilia. Clinical features may include anemia, thrombocytopenia, or splenomegaly. The marrow is hypercellular with variable features of each lineage. A variant, *syndrome of abnormal chromatin clumping*, shows exaggerated chromatin condensation, as well as other dysplastic features.

Cytogenetics show +8, +13, del(20q), i(17q), or del(12p) in up to 80% of cases. *SETBP1* mutation is found in 25% (Piazza et al, 2013). There is no *BCR-ABL1* fusion gene, and cases with *PDGFRA* or *PDGFRB* rearrangements are excluded. This disease usually occurs in later years, although with a wide reported age distribution down to the teen years. It has a generally poor outcome with a median survival of 20 months, and a 25% to 40% transformation to acute leukemia.

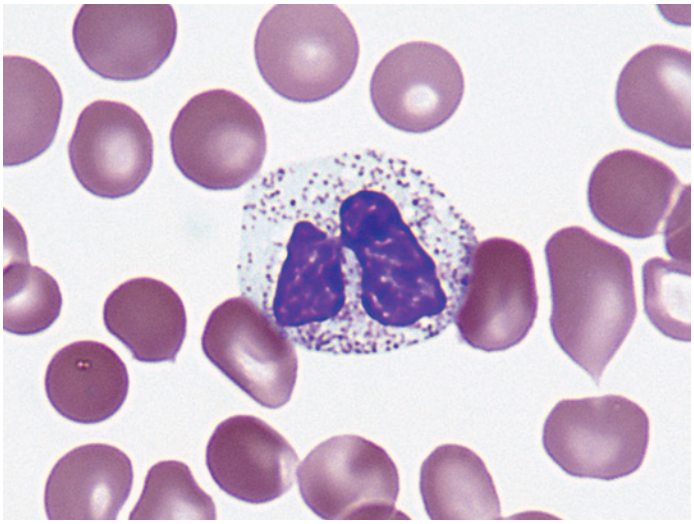


Figure 33-20 Pseudo–Pelger-Huët neutrophil (1000×).

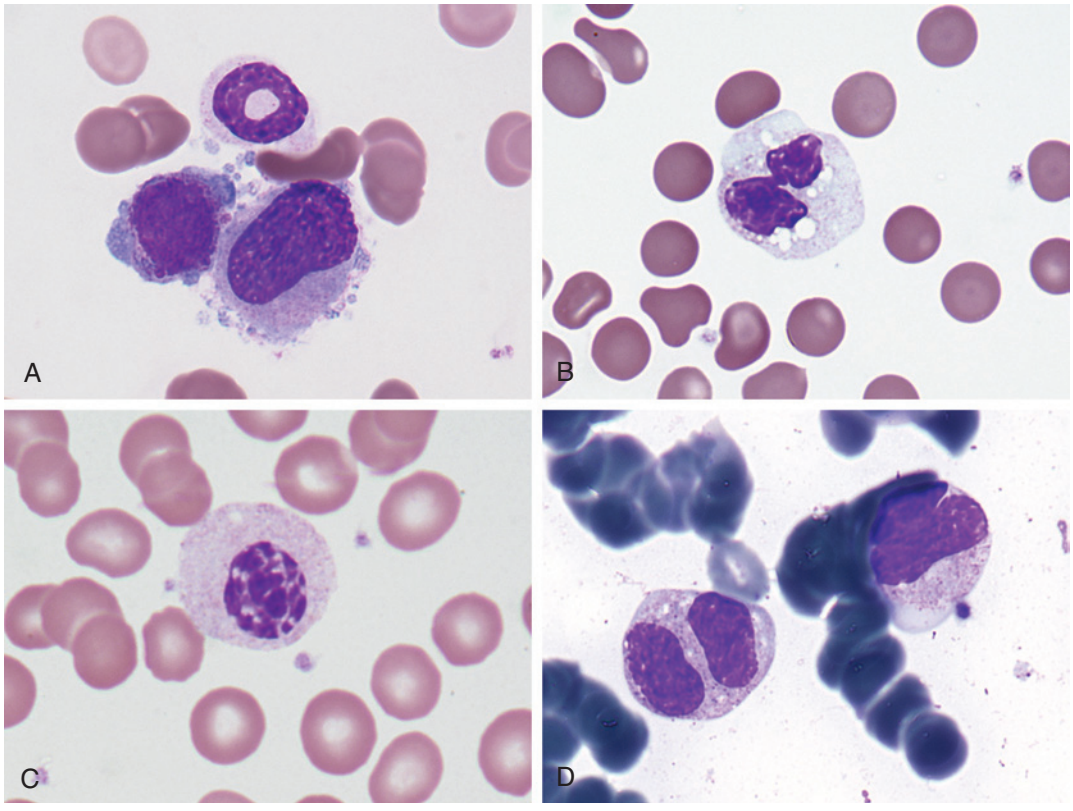


Figure 33-21 **Other forms of neutrophil dysplasia. A,** Ring neutrophil along with dysplastic erythroid and megakaryocytic cells in the marrow (1000×). **B,** Pelger-Huët neutrophil resembling a monocyte (1000×). **C,** Mononuclear Pelger-Huët cell (1000×). **D,** Large, irregularly lobulated and granulated neutrophil precursors (1000×).

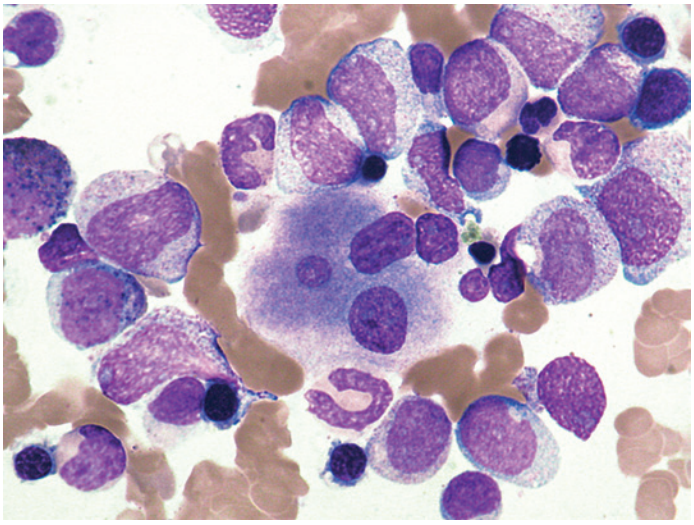


Figure 33-22 **A dysplastic megakaryocyte showing unconnected nuclear lobes.** Mononuclear forms are also frequent in myelodysplasia (500×).

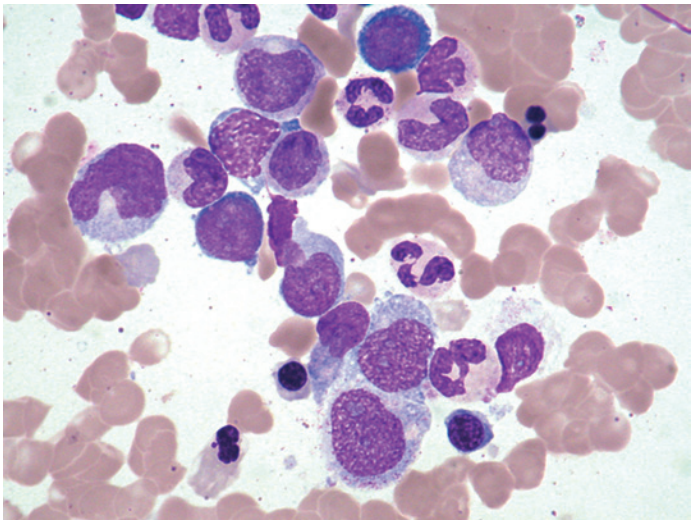


Figure 33-23 **This case of chronic myelomonocytic leukemia shows moderate trilineage dysplasia and monocytosis (500×).**

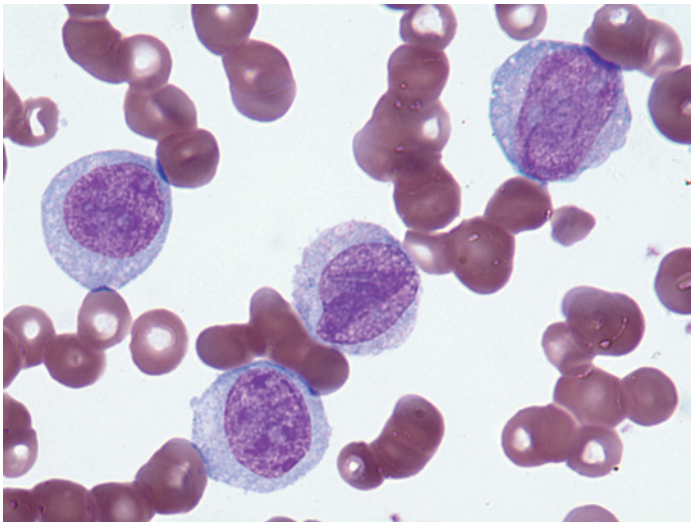


Figure 33-24 **Promonocyte *(center)* shows immature chromatin and finely convoluted nuclear folds in comparison with monoblasts.**

Criteria for diagnosis include the following (Swerdlow et al, 2008):

- Leukocytosis (WBC ≤13 × 10^9/L) due to increased neutrophils and precursors with prominent dysgranulopoiesis
- Prominent dysgranulopoiesis
- No Ph′ chromosome or *BCR/ABL-1* fusion gene
- No rearrangement of *PDGFRA* or *PDGFRB*
- Neutrophil precursors (promyelocytes, myelocytes, metamyelocytes) ≥10% of WBCs
- Minimal absolute basophilia; basophils usually <2% of leukocytes
- No or minimal absolute monocytosis; monocytes <10% of WBCs
- Hypercellular marrow with granulocytic proliferation and granulocytic dysplasia, with or without dysplasia of erythroid and megakaryocytic lineages
- Less than 20% blasts in blood or marrow

Juvenile Myelomonocytic Leukemia. Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia (JMML) is a clonal disorder of predominantly granulocytic and monocytic lineages, with dysplasia in these and frequently other lineages, occurring in children or young adolescents (Swerdlow et al, 2008). *BCR/ABL-1* is absent, and *RAS/MAPK* pathway mutations are characteristic. The occurrence is 1.3 cases per million children younger than 14 years of age, and most affected children are younger than 3 years of age, with a 2:1 male predominance. JMML is frequent in children with neurofibromatosis type 1.

In all, 25% of patients show monosomy 7, 35% exhibit mutations of *PTPN11* (encoding SHP2), and 20% each have mutations in *NRAS*, *KRAS2*, and *NF1*. Some infants with Noonan syndrome and *PTPN11* mutation may have spontaneous recovery or accelerated disease. Patients with normal karyotype often have markedly increased hemoglobin F. Immune phenomena of hypergammaglobulinemia and autoantibodies are frequent.

Blood shows leukocytosis, thrombocytopenia, and often anemia. The WBC is relatively high, usually 25 to 30 × 10^9/L, and mature neutrophils predominate, while monocytosis is also present. Circulating nucleated red blood cells (NRBCs) are frequent. The marrow is hyperplastic with granulocytic hyperplasia, variable erythroid cellularity, and often decreased megakaryocytes. Cutaneous leukemic infiltrates are common.

The prognosis is poor, and death is usually due to organ failure from leukemic infiltrates, although some patients benefit from BM transplant.

WHO criteria for diagnosis of JMML are as follows (Swerdlow et al, 2008):

- Peripheral blood monocytosis >1 × 10^9/L
- Absence of Ph′ chromosome or *BCR/ABL-1*
- Blasts and promonocytes less than 20% of blood and marrow

Plus two of the following:

- Hemoglobin F increased for age
- Immature granulocytes in the blood
- WBCs >10 × 10^9/L
- Clonal chromosomal abnormality (may be monosomy 7)
- GM-CSF hypersensitivity of myeloid progenitors in vitro

Myelodysplastic/Myeloproliferative Disease, Unclassifiable

This category of the WHO classification is used for those cases with features of myelodysplastic disease, but with the addition of prominent myeloproliferative features, including thrombocytosis ≥450 × 10^9/L with megakaryocytic hyperplasia or WBC >13 × 10^9/L, with or without splenomegaly, no previous CMPD or MDS, and absence of a chromosomal abnormality specific to another disease (no *BCR/ABL* or rearrangement of *PDGFRA*, *PDGFRB*, or *FGFR1;* no del[5q], t[3;3][q21;q26] or inv[3][q21;q26]) (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Refractory Anemia with Ring Sideroblasts Associated with Marked Thrombocytosis

This disorder is included in the WHO classification under the category of MDS/MPD, unclassified, because of not-yet-resolved questions regarding whether it is truly a distinct entity or an overlap syndrome of coexisting disorders. It is characterized by features of myelodysplastic neoplasm and refractory anemia with ring sideroblasts (RARS; see description later), along with features similar to essential thrombocythemia, with peripheral thrombocytosis ≥450 × 10^6/L, and increased, large atypical BM megakaryocytes. A majority of cases (60%) carry a *JAK2* V617F mutation identical to that in MPN; occasional cases show a *MPL W515K/L* mutation. *SF3B1* mutation is frequent in RARS-t as well as in RARS, and it is hypothesized that *SF3B1* mutation is the driver and that *JAK2* V617F or

TABLE 33-2

Key Features of the Major Myelodysplastic Syndromes

Disorder	Demographics	Laboratory Features, Morphology	Cytogenetics	Risk Group
Refractory cytopenia with unilineage dysplasia, anemia (RA), thrombocytopenia, or neutropenia	Median age, 65-70 years	Peripheral blood (PB) with unicytopenia or bicytopenia, blasts <1%; bone marrow (BM) with >10% unilineage dysplasia and <5% blasts	Del (20q), +8, abnormalities of chromosome 5 or 7	Low
Refractory anemia with ringed sideroblasts	Median age, 60-73 years	Similar to RA with >15% ringed sideroblasts in BM	Rare abnormalities of single chromosome	Low
Refractory cytopenia with multilineage dysplasia	Median age, 70 years	PB with cytopenias of ≥2 cell lines, <1% blasts, <1 × 10^9/L monocytes; BM with dysplasia of ≥10% of precursors of ≥2 cell lines, <5% blasts	+8, –5, –7, del(7q), del(20q), complex in up to 50%	Intermediate
Refractory anemia with excess blasts (RAEB)	Over 50 years of age	RAEB-1: PB with <5% blasts, <1 × 10^9/L monocytes; BM with hypercellularity, dyspoiesis, 5%-9% blasts without Auer rods; RAEB-2: PB with 5%-9% blasts, or 10%-19% BM blasts, or Auer rods	+8, –5, del(5q), –7, del(7q), del(20q)	RAEB-1, intermediate; RAEB-2, high
5q– syndrome	Middle-aged to older females	PB with thrombocytosis, <5% blasts; BM with increased, hypolobulated megakaryocytes, <5% blasts	5q– is sole abnormality	Low

MLP mutations are secondary events leading to thrombocytosis (Malcovati & Cazzola, 2013).

Myelodysplastic Syndromes

Cytopenias describe these clonal hematopoietic neoplasms characterized by cytopenias due to ineffective hematopoiesis and increased apoptosis. They show morphologic dysplasia of at least one and usually more lineages and have varied cytogenetic findings (but not typically those associated with myeloproliferative neoplasms), and many have a propensity to progress to acute leukemia (Table 33-2).

Refractory Cytopenia with Unilineage Dysplasia

This category consists of neoplasms, with dysplasia affecting >10% of one myeloid cell lineage, and cytopenia of the affected cell line, with <10% dysplasia of other lineages.

Refractory Anemia

This clonal disorder involves primarily the erythroid lineage with ineffective erythropoiesis but without increased blasts. Anemia (Hb <10 g/dL) with reticulocytopenia and abnormal erythrocytes are the presenting findings. Abnormal granulocytes are rare, and blasts are less than 1% in the blood. The marrow is normocellular to hypercellular with erythroid hyperplasia and/or dyserythropoiesis and less than 5% blasts. Survival is relatively good (>5 years), and progression to acute leukemia (AL) low (6%).

Refractory Neutropenia

The absolute neutrophil count is <1.8 × 10^9/L. Dysplasia usually consists of nuclear hypolobation and hypogranulation. Toxic/secondary neutropenia is excluded.

Refractory Thrombocytopenia

Platelets are <100 × 10^9/L. More than 10% of at least 30 megakaryocytes evaluated in smears and sections show dysplastic features of hypolobation, binucleation or multinucleation, and/or micromegakaryocytes.

Refractory Anemia with Ring Sideroblasts

In RARS, in addition to the findings of RA, ring sideroblasts are present and constitute 15% or more of marrow erythroid precursors. These are nucleated RBC precursors in which stainable iron particles (iron-encrusted mitochondria) form a ring of 10 or more closely associated with and encircling at least one third of the nucleus (see Fig. 33-19). Defective cytoplasmic maturation and anisochromic erythrocytes are associated abnormalities. Survival is similar to RA, with a lower progression to AL (≤2%). Mutation of *SF3B1* is found in more than 62% of cases, usually with mutations of additional genes including *DNMT3* and *RUNX1* (Lin et al, 2014).

Refractory Cytopenia with Multilineage Dysplasia

Refractory cytopenia with multilineage dysplasia (RCMD) is a clonal disorder with bicytopenias or pancytopenia and dysplasia of 10% or more of the precursors of two or more lineages. Blasts are not increased, with <1% in the blood and <5% in the marrow. Ring sideroblasts may be present; when numerous (>15%), the case is classified as RCMD with ring sideroblasts (RCMD-RS).

This disease usually occurs in older individuals (median age, ≈70 years). In contrast to RA and RARS, which infrequently show cytogenetic abnormalities (<10%), RCMD and RCMD-RS show them in up to 50%. These include trisomy 8, monosomy 7, del(7q), monosomy 5, del(5q), del(20q), and complex karyotypes. Survival is ≈33 months, and AL conversion is 11%.

Refractory Anemia with Excess Blasts

In refractory anemia with excess blasts (RAEB), the blood shows cytopenia in two or three of the cell lines, and less than 5% circulating blasts. The marrow is hypercellular, with variable erythroid or granulocytic hyperplasia. Dyspoietic changes are present in all three cell lines, and 5% to 9% of marrow cells are blasts. Less than 5% blasts are present in the blood, and no Auer rods are found. Clusters of 5 to 8 blasts and promyelocytes in the marrow interstitium are frequently seen on sections and have been referred to as *abnormal localization of immature precursors (ALIP)*. Hypocellular marrow is seen in a minority of cases (10% to 15%). These may be difficult to interpret, as the patients are often older, with decreased cellularity to begin with, and because marrow stress in hypoplastic anemia often causes some dysplasia. A diagnosis of MDS should be made cautiously when the marrow is hypoplastic.

Cases of RAEB with concurrent myelofibrosis are referred to as RAEB with fibrosis (RAEB-F). Megakaryocytes are increased and dysplastic, and reticulin fibrosis is significant, often resulting in a dry tap.

RAEB-2 has findings similar to RAEB, but with any of the following: (1) greater than 5% blasts in the blood, (2) 10% to 19% blasts in the marrow, or (3) the presence of Auer rods. Cytogenetic abnormalities include +8, -5, del(5q), -7, del(7q), and del(20q). Survival is usually less than 2 years in RAEB-1 or -2, with progressive marrow failure and cytopenias or progression to AL in 25% for RAEB and in 33% for RAEB-2.

Myelodysplastic Syndrome with Isolated del(5q)

This disorder is characterized by anemia and/or thrombocytosis with increased megakaryocytes and isolated deletion of chromosome region 5q. Some cases also exhibit a *JAK2* V617F mutation. Blasts are less than 5% in the marrow and blood; lymphoid aggregates are often present. Megakaryocytes are usually small and hypolobulated. Anemia may be severe and macrocytic, and an otherwise normocellular to hypercellular marrow may have erythroid hypoplasia. Outcome is relatively favorable.

Myelodysplastic Syndrome, Unclassified

The myelodysplastic syndrome, unclassified category is used when clinical and hematologic findings of myelodysplasia exist, but without specific features to allow placement in one of the other categories. Patients usually have neutropenia or thrombocytopenia with a hypercellular BM and

dysplasia of granulocytic or megakaryocytic lineage. Less than 5% blasts are found in the BM, and they are not increased in the blood.

Childhood Myelodysplastic Syndrome; Refractory Cytopenia of Childhood

In the WHO classification, it is recognized that MDS, although rare in children, does occur but tends to show different features than in adults. Refractory cytopenia of childhood (RCC) is defined as MDS with persistent cytopenia with <5% blasts in the BM and <2% in the blood, and dysplasia. The marrow is also frequently hypocellular. Pancytopenia is frequent, with macrocytic anemia showing anisopoikilocytosis. The cytogenetic abnormality of monosomy 7 is the most common genetic abnormality and is associated with progressive disease. Cases with trisomy 8 may show a long stable period. This disorder may be morphologically indistinguishable from results of infection, vitamin deficiency (B_{12}, folate, vitamin E), metabolic or autoimmune disease, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), or acquired aplastic anemia.

ACUTE MYELOID LEUKEMIA

AML is the most common form of acute leukemia during the first few months of life, but during childhood and adolescence it accounts for approximately one third of AL. In the middle and later years of life, it becomes the most frequent AL, with a median age of 60 years, and an occurrence of 10/100,000 per year in those older than 60 years of age. Viruses, radiation, cytotoxic chemotherapy, benzene, and smoking have been linked to increased incidence, but most cases are not known to be associated with such factors.

The onset often resembles acute infection and includes signs of granulocytic insufficiency, with ulcerations of mucous membranes (especially of the mouth and throat) and fever. Enlargement of lymph nodes, spleen, and liver is not pronounced. Marked prostration and general malaise may be present. In untreated cases, the course is rapidly progressive (Box 33-11).

AML classification currently utilizes a multilayered approach that recognizes recurrent acquired cytogenetic abnormalities associated with specific types, history of predisposing factors (prior cytotoxic therapy), association with MDS or related abnormalities, and morphologic stratification for those for which none of these can be appreciated. This approach requires, or at least encourages, attempts to define the morphology, cytogenetics, and immunophenotype of each case. With advances in molecular cytogenetics and FISH, and with widespread adoption of these and other methods, it is likely that most cases will eventually be categorized by their genetic abnormalities. See Tables 33-3 and 33-4.

The French-American-British Cooperative Group published proposals in 1976 for the classification of acute leukemias (Bennett et al, 1976) based on morphology of cells in Romanowsky's-stained blood and marrow films and certain supplemental cytochemical reactions or serum lysozyme levels. These criteria have been superseded by the current WHO classification (Swerdlow et al, 2008), but basic morphologic tenets remain, and FAB criteria serve as the basis for subtyping AML, not otherwise specified.

The diagnosis of AML requires the presence of 20% blasts in the marrow or blood. Myeloblasts generally have central nuclei with fine, uncondensed chromatin and often prominent nucleoli (usually three to five) but have variable cytoplasm and may have some cytoplasmic granules. Primitive myeloblasts are identified by monoclonal antibodies against myeloid-associated antigens (MPO, CD13, CD33, CD117). More mature myeloblasts can also be identified by cytochemical reactions with granulocyte-associated enzymes using MPO, Sudan black B (SBB), and chloroacetate esterase (CAE) assays, although flow cytometric assays are utilized more often in current practice. Monoblasts are frequently large

BOX 33-11

Clinical and Laboratory Features of Acute Myeloid Leukemia

- Affects all ages, but increases with older age (>60 years)
- May resemble acute infection at presentation
- Requires 20% blasts in blood or marrow for diagnosis
- Key myeloid antigens: myeloperoxidase, CD13, CD33, CD117, and CD14/CD64
- Recurrent cytogenetic abnormalities that characterize defined subtypes
- Classification made by morphology, cytogenetics, flow cytometry, cytochemistry

TABLE 33-3

Key Features of the Major Acute Myeloid Leukemias

Category	Cell Morphology	Cell Surface Markers	Cytogenetics	Prognosis
AML with t(8;21)	≥20% blasts, ≥10% maturing granulocytes, Auer rods, dysplasia, abnormal granules	CD13, CD33, CD117, CD19, CD34	t(8;21)(q22;q22) AML1/ETO	More favorable
AML with inv(16)	Blasts with both monocytic and neutrophilic differentiation, increased eosinophils/immature eosinophils	CD13, CD33, CD14, CD4, CD64	inv(16)(p13;q22) or t(16;16)(p13;q22)	More favorable
APL with t(15;17)	Promyelocytes with azurophilic granules, Auer rods	CD13, CD33 CD2, ± CD117	t(15;17)(q22;q12) PML/RARα; Variants all involve 17q12	More favorable if responsive to ATRA
AML with t(9;11)	Monoblasts and promonocytes predominate	CD33, CD65, CD4, HLA-DR	t(9;11)(p22;q23) MLLT3-MLL	Intermediate
AML, therapy related	Multilineage dysplasia, RS, increased basophils	CD13, CD33, CD34, ± CD56, CD57	11q23 abnormality seen with topoisomerase II inhibitor–associated AML	Less favorable
AML with t(6;9)	Any morphology may be seen but myelomonocytic is most common	CD13, CD33, CD38, HLA-DR, CD117	DEK-NUP214; t(6;9)(p23;q35)	Less favorable
AML with inv(3) or t(3;3)	Any morphology may be seen except APL	CD13, CD33, HLA-DR, CD34, CD38	Inv(3)(q21;q26.2) or t(3;3)(q21;q26.2) RPN1-EVI1	Less favorable
AML with t(1;22)	Megakaryoblastic morphology with small and large megakaryocytes	CD41, CD61, ± CD13, CD33	t(1;22)(p13;q13) RBM15-MKL1	Less favorable
AML with *FLT3* mutation/duplication	Any	Any	t(6;9)(p23;q34), t(15;17)(q22;q12) or normal	Less favorable
AML with *NPM1* mutation	Myelomonocytic and monocytic features	CD13, CD33, CD34 is negative	*NPM1* mutation, cytoplasmic expression	More favorable in absence of *FLT3*
AML with *CEBPA* mutation	Variable, generally similar to less differentiated AMLs in FAB scheme (M1, 2)	CD13, CD33, CD65, CD11b, CD15	*CEBPA* mutation	More favorable

AML, Acute myeloid leukemia; *APL,* acute promyelocytic leukemia; *ATRA,* all-*trans* retinoic acid; *PML,* promyelocytic leukemia; *PB,* peripheral blood; *RARα,* retinoid acid receptor gene-α.

TABLE 33-4

Key Features of the Acute Myeloid Leukemias, Not Otherwise Specified

Category	Cell Morphology	Cell Surface Markers
All categories	≥20% blasts in BM and/or blood	Myeloid differentiation, any lineage
AML, minimally differentiated	Myeloblasts, <3% positive for SBB, MPO, or ANA	CD13, CD33, CD117
AML without maturation	Myeloblasts ≥90% of nonerythroids in BM, ≥3% positive for MPO	CD13, CD33, CD117
AML with maturation	Same as for AML with t(8;21)	CD13, CD33, CD117
Acute myelomonocytic leukemia	Monocytic and granulocytic cells, each 20%-80%	Variable CD13, CD33, CD14, CD4, CD11b, CD11c, CD64, CD36, CD68
Acute monoblastic/monocytic leukemia	≥80% of nonerythroid monoblasts (M5a) or differentiating monos (M5b)	CD13, CD33, CD117, CD14, CD4, CD11b, CD11c, CD64, CD68, CD36
Erythroleukemia	≥50% erythroid precursors and ≥20% of nonerythroids are myeloblasts; pure erythroleukemia without myeloid blasts is rare	Glycophorin A in erythroids; CD13, CD33, CD117 in myeloblasts
Acute megakaryoblastic leukemia	Blasts with cytoplasmic blebs, often clusters; PB may show megakaryocytic fragments; MPO negative	CD41, CD61, CD36, often CD13, CD33

AML, Acute myeloid leukemia; *ANA,* antinuclear antibody; *BM,* bone marrow; *MPO,* myeloperoxidase; *PB,* peripheral blood; *SBB,* Sudan black B.

with abundant cytoplasm, diffuse chromatin, and often prominent nucleoli. Monoblasts are characterized by strong reaction with α-naphthyl acetate esterase (ANA), which is inhibited in monocytes by sodium fluoride, or with α-naphthyl butyrate esterase (ANB), or antibodies including antilysozyme, CD68, CD64, and CD36. For cases with monocytic differentiation, promonocytes are considered equivalent to blasts (see Fig. 33-24). Promonocytes are immature recognizable monocytes with some chromatin condensation but with fine nuclear convolutions. Abnormal promyelocytes are also considered blast equivalents for the diagnosis of acute promyelocytic leukemia. Megakaryoblasts are identified by antibodies against platelet-associated antigens or electron microscopy for platelet peroxidase.

Initial assessment for suspected AML is based on a differential WBC count of the blood and a 500-cell count of the marrow aspirate. Acute leukemia is diagnosed when blasts exceed 20% of the marrow or blood. Otherwise, it is necessary to calculate the percentage of erythroid precursor cells. The diagnosis of AML-erythroleukemia is established when more than 50% of BM cells are erythroid precursors, and when myeloblasts represent more than 20% of the remaining nonerythroid (NE) cells (i.e., nucleated cells not including erythroid precursors, lymphocytes, or plasma cells). MDS is suggested when less than 20% of the nucleated marrow cells, or less than 20% of nonerythroid cells (when RBC precursors exceed 50%) are myeloblasts. Once the diagnosis of AML has been made, only nonerythroid cells should be considered in the differential count for the further assignment of morphologic subtypes.

A helpful finding in the diagnosis of AML is the presence of Auer rods, eosinophilic rod–like cytoplasmic inclusions derived from myeloperoxidase-positive primary granules. Phi bodies, which appear as strings of eosinophilic beadlike granules, are derived from catalase-positive microperoxisomes and are seen in larger numbers in AML and also in MDS. They are not, however, generally given the same diagnostic import as Auer rods. With Romanowsky's stains, Auer rods are linear or spindle-shaped red-purple inclusions in myeloblasts or promyelocytes (Fig. 33-25). Less commonly, they may be seen in more mature neutrophils (in AML with t[8;21]). Auer rods, derivatives of azurophilic granules, stain positively for SBB, MPO, CAE, and acid phosphatase. Auer rods can be found in any of the subtypes of AML, but they are especially associated with those with granulocytic differentiation.

The main categories of AML in the WHO classification are (1) AML with recurrent cytogenetic abnormalities; (2) AML with multilineage dysplasia; (3) AML, therapy related; and (4) AML, not otherwise specified (subclassified by morphology and immunophenotype). Many biologic factors vary the risk of adverse outcome, but few are definitive (Liersch et al, 2014).

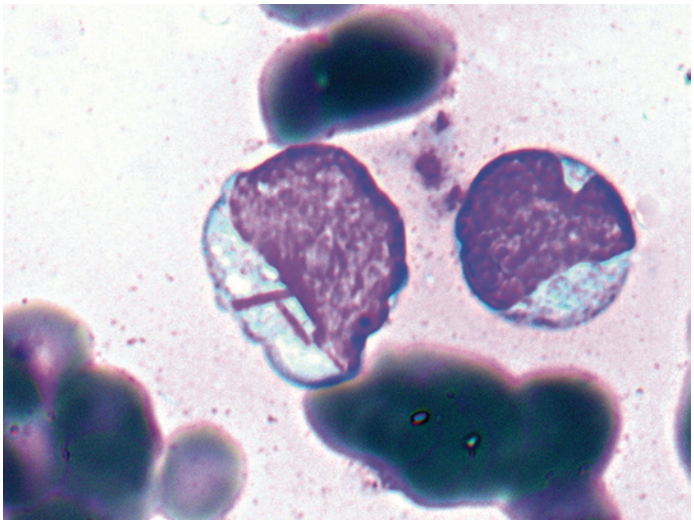


Figure 33-25 **Auer rods vary from prominent, as in this cell, to thin and delicate.**

Acute Leukemia with Recurrent Genetic Abnormalities (Swerdlow et al, 2008)

AML with Balanced Translocations/Inversions

AML with t(8;21)(q22;q22), RUNX1-RUNX1T1. The morphology usually corresponds to acute myeloid leukemia with neutrophilic maturation, and these represent 5% to 12% of AML, with predominance in young patients. Blasts are 20% or greater in the marrow (or blood), and maturing neutrophilic precursors constitute more than 10% of marrow nucleated cells (not including NRBCs, lymphocytes, and plasma cells). Morphologic findings are characteristic but variable: large blasts with abundant basophilic cytoplasm; maturing neutrophil precursors with peripheral cytoplasmic basophilia; frequent Auer rods, often long, sharp, and tapered, and sometimes present in myelocytes and mature forms up to segmented neutrophils; abnormal granulation, including giant Chédiak-Higashi–like or secondary granules or homogeneous waxy-appearing secondary granulation; and nuclear dysplasia with bilobed nuclei that may be widely separated (Fig. 33-26). Monocytosis is not prominent, and monocytes are less than 20% of the marrow. Eosinophilia is common, and basophils or mast cells may be increased. The immunophenotype is distinctive with high-intensity CD34 along with myeloid markers MPO and CD13, but relatively weak CD33 and sometimes CD56. One or more B cell markers—CD19, PAX5, and cytoplasmic CD79a—are often coexpressed.

The presence of t(8;21) is diagnostic of AML, even when blasts appear to be less than 20%. This disease is referred to as a **core binding factor leukemia** because RUNX1, also known as *AML1* or *core binding factor α (CBFA)*, encodes a transcription factor required for hematopoieses. The outcome of AML with t(8;21) is generally more favorable than AML without recurrent genetic abnormalities, or with MDS-associated abnormalities. Additional genetic abnormalities also occur, including *KIT* mutations associated with less favorable outcome and mutations of *ASXL1/2* (Micol et al, 2014; Wichmann et al, 2015).

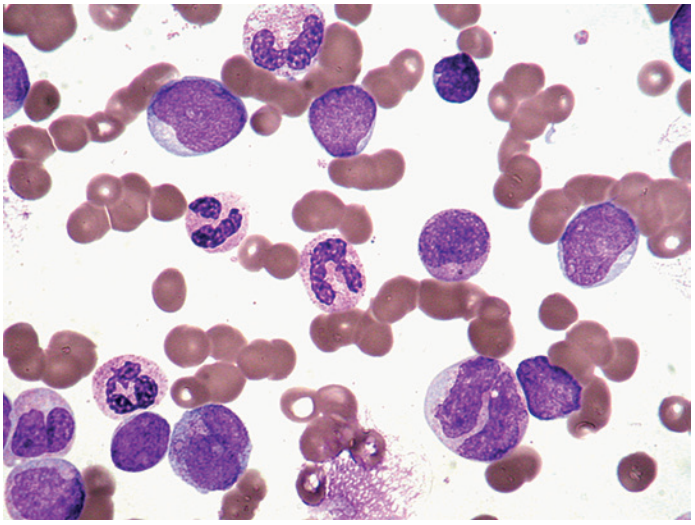


Figure 33-26 This case of acute myelogenous leukemia with t(8;21) shows granulocyte maturation with abnormal granulation and bilobed precursors (500×).

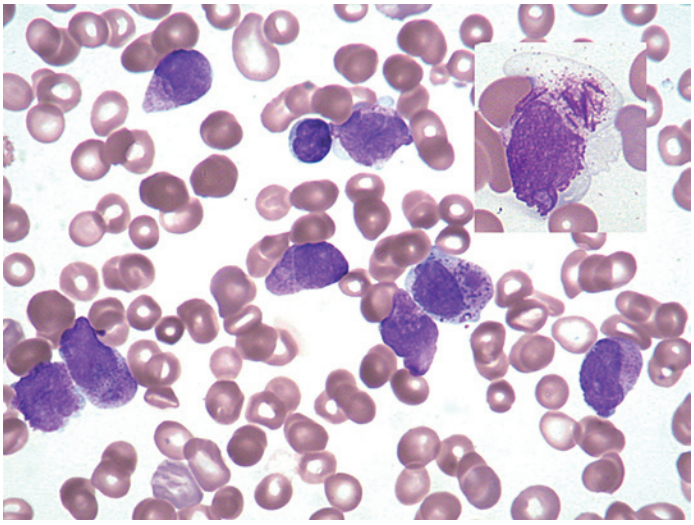


Figure 33-28 Acute promyelocytic leukemia with t(15;17) shows predominantly abnormal promyelocytes (500×). *Inset (top right),* Abnormal promyelocytes with bundles of Auer rods are known as **faggot cells** from their resemblance to bundles of firewood, or faggots (1000×).

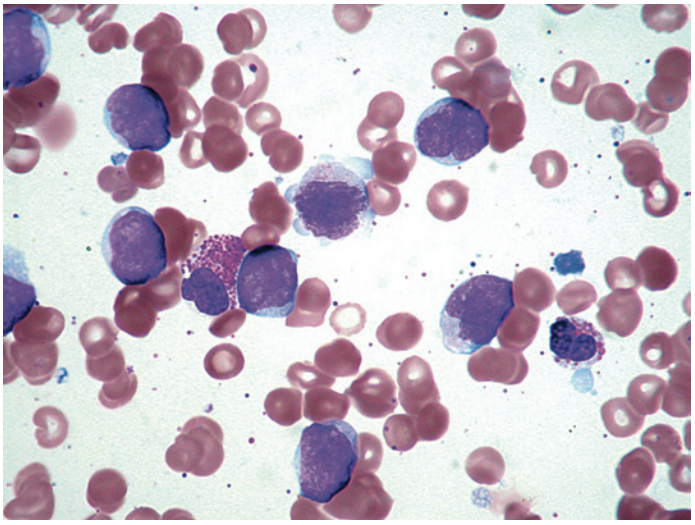


Figure 33-27 Acute myelogenous leukemia with inv16 shows myelomonocytic differentiation with eosinophilia. (Two eosinophils are present in this view.)

AML with inv(16)(p13q22) or t(16;16)(p13.1;q22), CBFβ/MYH11. These correspond to acute myelomonocytic leukemia with abnormal eosinophils. Occurrence and outcome are similar to AML with t(8;21). These cases show >20% blasts in marrow and/or blood with differentiation to monocytic and neutrophilic lineages (≥20% each). Eosinophils are characteristically increased (Fig. 33-27), including those with large basophilic granules (as in eosinophil promyelocytes), and cytoplasmic positivity is often weak for chloroacetate esterase. This type is associated with the chromosomal abnormality inv(16)(p13q22) or its variant t(16;16)(p13.1;q22) with fusion of the *CBFB* gene on 16q and *MYH11* on 16p and variable resultant chimeric mRNAs (due to differing breakpoints) and a BCGB-MYH11 fusion protein. This additional core binding factor leukemia generally has relatively favorable outcomes compared with other AMLs. In addition to karyotyping, RT-PCR or FISH is useful for timely diagnosis. Secondary genetic abnormalities are common, including trisomy 22, trisomy 8, *KIT*, *FLT3*, *WT1*, and *RAS* mutations (Krauth et al, 2015; Paschka et al, 2013).

The immunophenotype typically shows both granulocytic (CD13, CD15, CD33, CD65, MPO) and monocytic (CD4, CD14, CD64, CD36, CD11b, CD11c, and lysozyme) markers, sometimes with CD2 coexpression.

Acute Promyelocytic Leukemia with t(15;17)(q22;q12), PML/RARA, and Variants. Promyelocytes instead of myeloblasts predominate in the marrow in hypergranular promyelocytic leukemia (PML) (M3) (McKenna et al, 1982) (Fig. 33-28). Azurophilic granules are abundant and intensely stained. Auer rods are found in most cases and frequently are multiple (10 or more) in a given cell (see Fig. 33-28). Hemorrhagic complications are frequent as the result of disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), apparently initiated by procoagulant material from leukemic cell granules.

The characteristic chromosomal abnormality t(15;17)(q22;q21) shows fusion of the retinoid acid receptor gene-α *(RARA)* on chromosome 17 with the *PML* gene on chromosome 15. The *RARA-PML* fusion gene is transcribed as a chimeric mRNA. Leukemia usually responds to therapy with all-*trans* retinoic acid (ATRA), which is usually given in addition to chemotherapy, and the prognosis is relatively favorable. The molecular genetic abnormality may be detected in the laboratory by cytogenetics, RT-PCR, or FISH. Achievement of remission often occurs as a slow "maturation" process, rather than therapy-induced aplasia followed by remission as seen in treatment of other acute leukemias.

Variant translocations include t(11;17)(q23;q21), t(5;17)(q32;q12), and t(11;17)(q13;q21). Some variants, such as t(11;17)(q23;q21), do not respond to ATRA. *FLT3* mutations are frequent and are associated with decreased survival, and *WT1* mutations occur in about 6% (Krauth et al, 2015).

Hypogranular or microgranular variants of M3 (M3V) occur in which cytoplasmic granules appear sparse by light microscopy, and numerous but smaller by electron microscopy (Bennett et al, 1980). Nuclei of most leukemic cells are bilobed or reniform, and confusion with an atypical monocytic leukemia is frequent. Cytochemical staining reactions are somewhat less positive than in the hypergranular M3. Auer rods, single or multiple, and typical hypergranular promyelocytes are found in variable numbers, and there appears to be a spectrum between typical and hypogranular types. The WBC may be high.

In acute promyelocytic leukemia, a majority of leukemic cells stain for MPO, SBB, and CAE, along with ANA in 25%. The immunophenotype is typically bright CD33; heterogeneous CD13, CD64, and CD117; and dim to absent HLA-DR, CD34, CD11a, CD11b, CD15, CD18, and CD64.

AML with t(9;11)(p22;q23); MLLT3-MLL. The 11q23 abnormalities are present in a more diverse group of leukemias than other recurrent genetic abnormalities. Chromosome band 11q23 abnormalities, which involve the *MLL* gene, are not specific for AML, but are also found in ALL, mixed lineage leukemias, and occasionally in lymphomas. The most common translocation in AML involving this region is t(9;11)(p22;q23). Others include t(6;11)(q27;q23), t(10;11)(p12;q23), t(11;17)(q23;q21), and t(11;19)(q23;p13). Most cases of t(9;11) show monocytic differentiation (monoblastic or myelomonocytic) (Fig. 33-29). In general, the prognosis of AML with 11q23 abnormalities is less favorable than that of other AMLs with standard chemotherapy, but cases with t(9;11)(p22;q23) may have intermediate prognosis (Chen et al, 2013).

AML with t(6;9)(p23;q34); DEK-NUP214. This disease shows variable morphology and granulocytic and/or monocytic differentiation but is usually associated with multilineage dysplasia and basophilia of marrow and blood (>2%). Immunophenotype includes usual MPO, CD13,

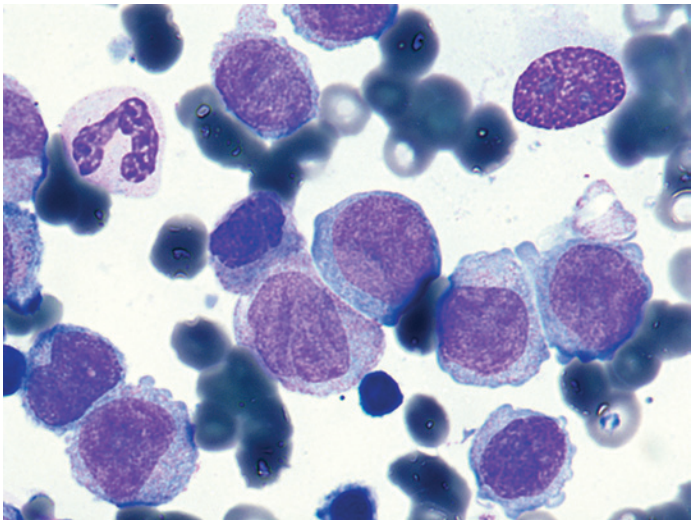


Figure 33-29 Acute myelogenous leukemia with monocytic differentiation and 11q23 abnormality (1000×).

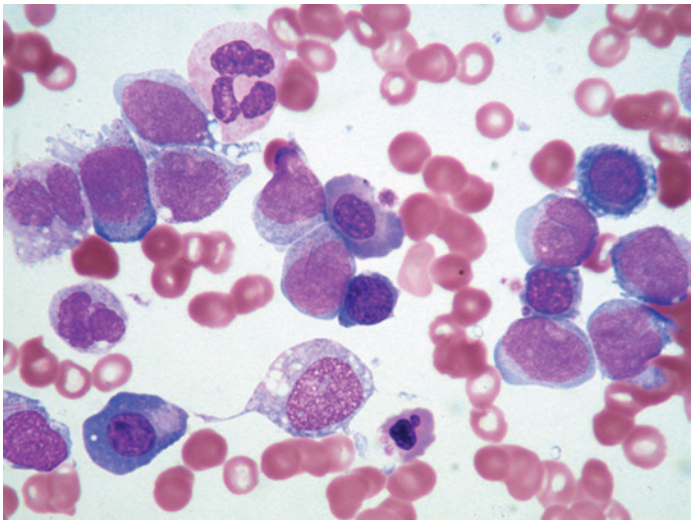


Figure 33-30 Acute myelogenous leukemia with MDS-related changes showing dysgranulopoiesis and dyserythropoiesis (1000×).

CD33, CD38, and HLA-DR, with variably positive CD117, CD34, CD64, and Tdt, but not lymphoid lineage-associated antigens. A DEK-NUP214 fusion protein acts as an abnormal transcription and nuclear transport factor. *FLT3-ITD* mutations are present in most cases. Prognosis is generally poor (Gupta et al, 2010; Tarlock et al, 2014).

AML with inv(3)(q21q26.2) or t(3;3)(q21;q26.2); RPN1-EVI1. This disease shows multilineage dysplasia, increased atypical megakaryocytes with monolobed or bilobed nuclei, and normal to increased platelet counts. Pseudo–Pelger-Huët cells are common, and differentiation may be granulocytic and/or monocytic. Marrow eosinophils, basophils, and/or mast cells are often increased. EVI1 is a transcription factor which, likely promoted by RPN1, induces proliferation and transformation while impairing differentiation. Monosomy 7 is a frequent secondary event, and t(3;3) variants show increased N-RAS mutations. This is an aggressive disease with short survival, and adverse prognosis is enhanced by monosomy 7 (Lugthart et al., 2010).

AML (Megakaryoblastic) with t(1;22)(p13;q13); RBM15-MKL1. This is an acute leukemia of infants and young children, more often reported in girls, presenting as acute megakaryoblastic leukemia with hepatosplenomegaly. This form is not associated with Down syndrome. Blasts are usually medium-sized to large with fine reticular chromatin, one to three nucleoli, and basophilic cytoplasm with blebs or pseudopods. Cytochemistry/immunophenotype shows absence of MPO and SBB and expression of platelet markers CD41 and CD61 (best demonstrated by cytoplasmic labeling techniques), CD36, and variable CD13, CD33, and CD34. Micromegakaryocytes are often found, and biopsy sections show reticulin fibrosis. Patients may respond well to chemotherapy.

AML with Gene Mutations

Although many cases of AML have been associated with recurring translocations or inversions, many have shown normal karyotype. Most if not all of these carry genetic mutations not detectable by Giemsa banding morphology; mutations are also found in cases with karyotypic abnormalities. Several carry prognostic implications. As these continue to be investigated, new, specific categories of AML are certain to be described. Biologic and clinical associations are available for some common AML-associated mutations, and two of these are recognized by provisional categories in the WHO classification.

AML with FLT3 Mutation. Mutations of fms-related tyrosine kinase 3 *(FLT3)*, encoding a tyrosine kinase receptor involved in hematopoietic proliferation and differentiation, occur in about one third of cases of AML. Two types of *FLT3* mutations have been noted: one change of length type involving internal tandem duplications (*FLT3*-ITD), and another affecting the tyrosine kinase domain (*FLT3*-TK) at codon 835 or 836. *FLT3* mutations are seen in any AML, but primarily those with t(6;9), t(15;17), and normal karyotype. *FLT3*-ITD mutations are associated with less favorable prognosis, particularly in cases with normal karyotype. Targeted *FLT3* inhibitors are being tested in clinical trials (Wander et al, 2014).

AML with *NPM1* Mutation. While listed as a provisional entity in the 2008 WHO classification, it is now known that NPM1, encoding the nuclear shuttle protein nucleophosmin, is a primary driver mutation in AML. It is found in one half of cases with normal karyotype and is associated with favorable prognosis. This favorable association is especially noted in cases with normal karyotype and without *FLT3* mutation. *NPM1* mutation may be detected by immunohistochemical assay of sections, in which the affected cells show abnormal cytoplasmic localization of NPM protein, or it may be detected by PCR assays. Most cases have monocytic or myelomonocytic differentiation, but cases with multilineage dysplasia, erythroid differentiation, and other patterns are also found (Falini et al, 2011).

AML with *CEBPA* Mutation. *CEBPA* encodes the CCAAT/enhancer binding protein-α, another hematopoietic proliferation- and differentiation-inducing transcription factor. Bi-allelic CEBPA mutation is associated with improved prognosis in AML. It is found in less than 20% of cases. The morphology is most often AML without differentiation or AML with differentiation, although monocytic differentiation may also occur. Immunophenotype includes usually CD34, frequently CD7, with myeloid markers HLA-DR, CD11b, CD13, CD15, CD33, and CD65.

***KIT* mutations** are also seen in cases of AML, as well as in GI stromal tumors and mast cell disease. In core binding factor leukemias, *KIT* mutation has shown adverse but variable prognostic effect (Foran, 2010).

Acute Myeloid Leukemia with Myelodysplasia-Related Changes (Swerdlow et al, 2008)

These leukemias show morphologic features of myelodysplasia or history of prior MDS or MDS/MPN, or they have MDS-related cytogenetic abnormalities. Patients with a history of cytotoxic chemotherapy or radiation for another malignancy are not included. These cases are characterized by 20% or more blasts in blood and/or marrow, as well as dysplasia in ≥50% of cells of at least two lineages. Dysplastic features are similar to those of MDS of various types (Fig. 33-30).

Cytogenetic abnormalities qualifying for this disorder include –5/del(5q), i(17q)/t(17p), –13/del(13q), del(11q), del(12p)/t(12p), del(9q), idic(X)(q13), t(11;16)(q23;p13.3.), t(3;21)(q26.2;q22.1), t(1;3(p36.3;q21.1), t(2;11)(p21;q23), t(5;12)(q33;p12), t(5;7)(q33;q11.2), t(5;17)(q33;p13), t(5;10)(q33;q21), and t(3;5)(q25;q34). The immunophenotype often includes primitive blasts with myeloid phenotype and CD34 expression, CD56, and/or CD7. Prognosis is generally poor.

Therapy-Related Myeloid Neoplasms

These disorders are related to prior radiation or cytotoxic chemotherapy utilizing alkylating agents or topoisomerase inhibitors. They include cases of AML, MDS, and MDS/MPN. Most patients have been treated for prior malignancies, but some have been treated for nonneoplastic conditions.

Most commonly, disease is related to mutagenic effects of alkylating agents (including chlorambucil, cyclophosphamide, thiotepa, and busulfan) or radiation. These effects usually occur 5 to 10 years postexposure and most often present as MDS. Cytogenetic features are similar to those of MDS and AML with multilineage dysplasia. Loss of portions of chromosome 5 or 7 is common. Response to therapy and outcomes are poor.

Cases secondary to prior chemotherapy with topoisomerase II inhibitors (including epipodophyllotoxins etoposide and teniposide, and doxorubicin) occur after a shorter latency period of 1 to 5 years and most often are associated with overt AML with balanced chromosomal translocations involving 11q23 (*MLL*) or 21q22 (*RUNX1*). These most often show AML with maturation, monocytic, or myelomonocytic morphology.

Acute Myeloid Leukemia, Not Otherwise Specified

These cases do not fulfill criteria for the previous categories, or cytogenetic studies were unsuccessful or could not be performed. Categorization is similar to French-American-British Cooperative Group criteria (Bennett et al, 1976; Bennett et al, 1985; Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Genomic Variation in AML with Normal Karyotype

AML with normal karyotype, considered intermediate risk, or AML, NOS in the WHO classification, represents up to 50% of AML cases. While genomic studies have tended to support prior discoveries and clinical correlates associated with genetic subtypes in AML, additional mutations have been identified that may narrow this group and provide targets for new therapies (Abdel-Wahab & Levine, 2013; Cagnetta et al, 2014; Cancer Genome Atlas Research Network, 2013). These include recurrent mutations in *TET2*, *DNMT3A*, *IDH1/2*, and *ASXL1*, involved in epigenetic regulation, and others including *WT1*. Incorporation of genomic and epigenetic analyses into clinical settings is ongoing.

Acute Myeloblastic Leukemia, Minimally Differentiated

In acute myeloblastic leukemia, minimally differentiated, myeloblasts display less than 3% positivity with SBB, MPO, or ANA (Bennett et al, 1991). When examined for myeloid and lymphoid markers using flow cytometry or immunocytochemistry, however, at least 20% of the blasts exhibit myeloid-associated antigens (CD13, CD33, CD117, and/or MPO). Stem cell antigens CD34, CD38, HLA-DR, and TdT are often expressed, while lineage-specific lymphoid markers cCD3, cCD20, and cCD79a are absent. Some primitive markers often associated with lymphoid lineage, including CD2, CD7, and CD19, are not lineage specific and are sometimes expressed (Fig. 33-31).

Acute Myeloblastic Leukemia without Maturation (M1)

In this category, myeloblasts represent at least 90% of nonerythroid cells in the BM (Bennett et al, 1985a, 1985b) and at least 3% of blasts labeled with MPO or SBB. Positive staining for CAE is sometimes also present but is less sensitive. CD13, CD33, CD117, and/or MPO antigens are usually detectable, as are other, less specific markers. CD3, CD20, and CD79a are usually absent (Fig. 33-32).

Acute Myeloblastic Leukemia with Maturation

Myeloblasts represent 20% (per WHO) to 89% of total marrow cells, granulocytes from promyelocytes to neutrophils are greater than 10% of nonerythroid cells, and monocytes and their precursor cells are less than 20% (Fig. 33-33). Most blasts stain with MPO, SBB, and CAE.

Cases with t(8;21)(q22;q22) are categorized as AML with recurrent cytogenetic abnormality t(8;21).

Acute Myelomonocytic Leukemia

In acute myelomonocytic leukemia, myeloblasts constitute more than 20% of total marrow cells. The sum of the monoblasts, promonocytes, and monocytes is greater than 20% but is less than 80% of nonerythroid cells. Cells of the granulocytic series (myeloblasts, promyelocytes, myelocytes, and other more mature forms) also represent 20% to 80% of nonerythroid cells (Fig. 33-34). Peripheral blood monocytosis ($\geq 5 \times 10^9$/L) is usually present.

In myelomonocytic leukemia, variable staining of leukemic cells with MPO, SBB, CAE, and periodic acid–Schiff (PAS) has been noted. In most cases, leukemic cells exhibit diffuse and intense staining with ANA and ANB. In some cases, these nonspecific esterases cannot be demonstrated, and the diagnosis may be made on the basis of Romanowsky's stains and/or immunophenotyping.

Immunologic markers are variable but usually show myeloid antigens CD13 and/or CD33, as well as variable expression of monocytic markers CD14, CD4, CD11b, CD11c, CD64, CD36, CD68, and lysozyme. Some pure myeloblasts may be present, including those with CD34 and CD117 expression, and a second population of variably mature monocytes. Cases with recurrent cytogenetic abnormalities are categorized separately.

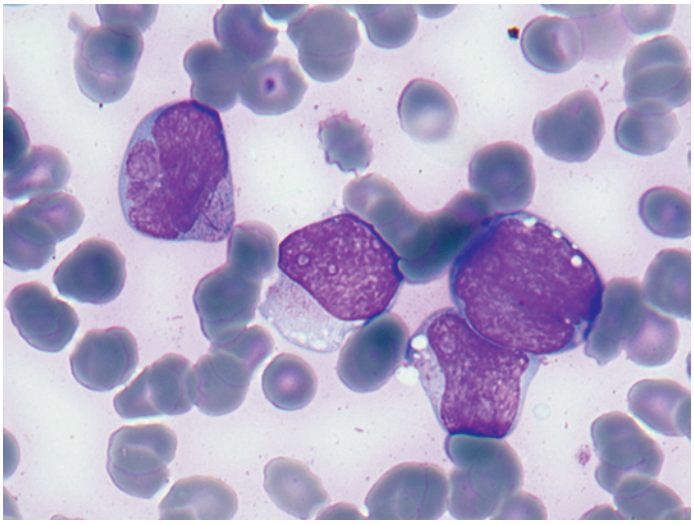


Figure 33-32 **Acute myelogenous leukemia without maturation shows blasts with less than 10% maturing neutrophils.** Auer rods are present in the cell at upper left.

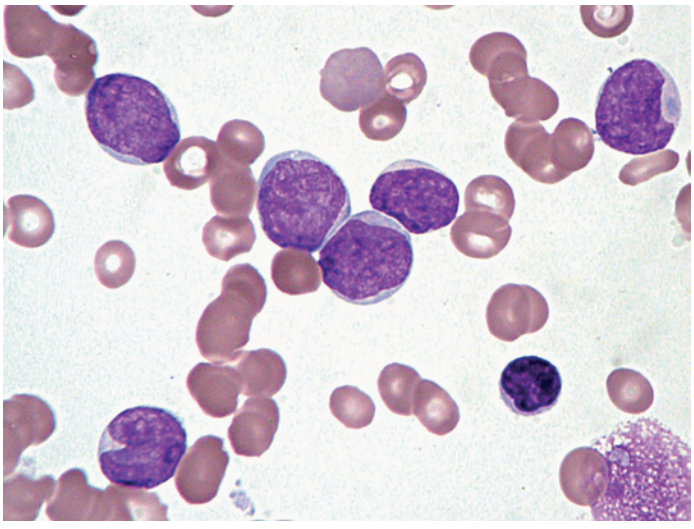


Figure 33-31 **Acute myelogenous leukemia, minimally differentiated, resembles acute lymphoblastic leukemia and requires immunophenotyping for diagnosis (500×).**

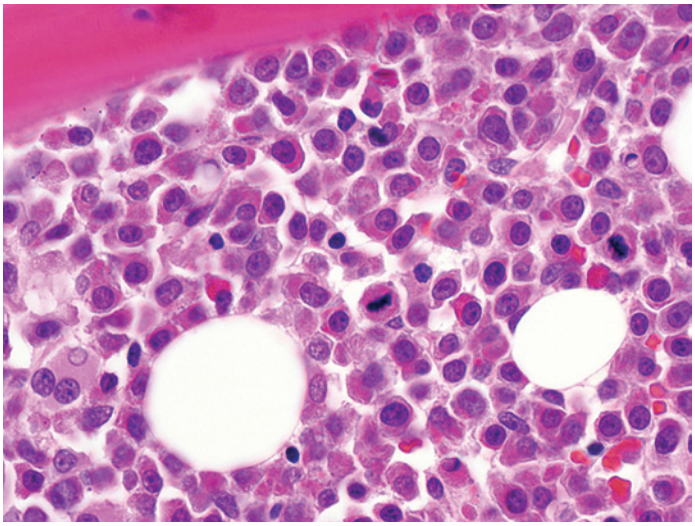


Figure 33-33 **Acute myelogenous leukemia with maturation shows maturing granulocytic cells on this biopsy (200×).**

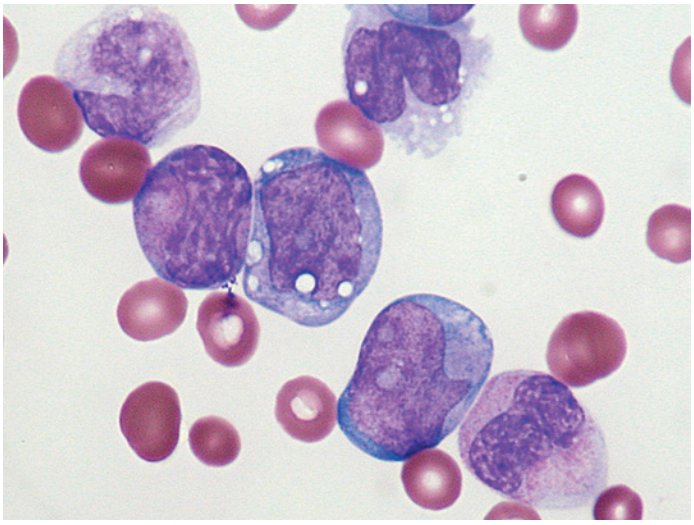


Figure 33-34 Acute myelomonocytic leukemia shows blasts and dual differentiation to granulocytes and monocytes (1000×). Acute monocytic leukemia shows monoblasts and maturing monocytes. Promonocytes are counted as blasts and show finely convoluted nuclei (1000×).

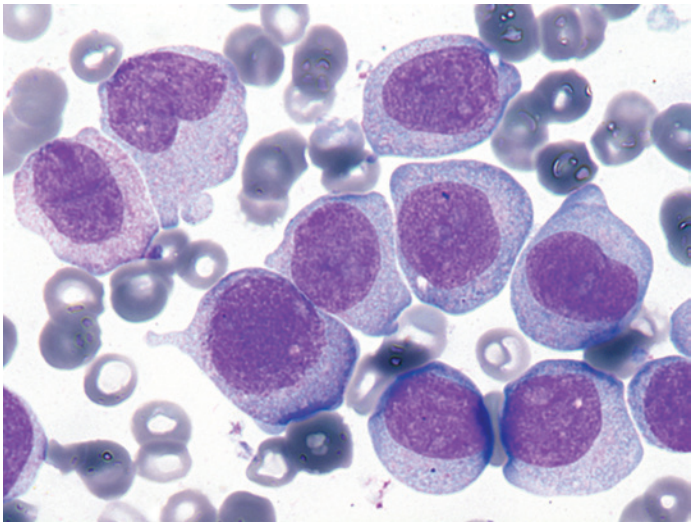


Figure 33-35 Acute monoblastic leukemia shows predominantly monoblasts (1000×).

Acute Monoblastic and Acute Monocytic Leukemia

In this disorder, 80% or more of marrow nonerythroid cells are monoblasts, promonocytes, or monocytes (see Figs. 33-34 and 33-35). Two subtypes are recognized. The monoblastic subtype is characterized by large blasts accounting for 80% or more of marrow monocytic cells. The monocytic subtype has fewer monoblasts (<80% of marrow monocytic cells) and greater numbers of promonocytes and monocytes (Bennett et al, 1985b). In both, ANA and ANB label the leukemic cells diffusely and intensely (80% or more of leukemic cells). Occasional cases fail to show nonspecific esterases, and the diagnosis is made from Romanowsky's stains and/or immunophenotypic techniques. Antilysozyme and CD68 are particularly useful on slides. Both myeloid and monocytic markers are frequently expressed, as in acute myelomonocytic leukemia. The translocation t(8;16)(p11;p13) has been associated with AML-M5 (or M4) with erythrophagocytosis.

Erythroleukemia

The diagnosis of erythroleukemia is made when more than 50% of nucleated cells of the BM are erythroblasts, and 20% or more of nonerythroid cells are myeloblasts. In most cases termed *erythroleukemia* (erythroid/myeloid), a mixture of variable proportions of dysplastic erythroid precursors and myeloblasts is seen. Sometimes abnormal monocytic and megakaryocytic elements are present as well (Fig. 33-36). The immunophenotype frequently includes myeloid-associated markers CD13, CD33, CD117 (KIT), and MPO, with or without expression of CD34 and HLA-DR (Zuo et al, 2010).

Very rarely, there is virtually no granulocytic involvement in the neoplastic process, and primitive erythroblasts predominate. This has been known as erythremic myelosis and is now known as *pure erythroid leukemia.* Morphologic abnormalities of erythroblasts are often pronounced, with atypical megaloblastic features, bizarre nuclear shapes, and multinucleated giant forms. The cytoplasm may contain pseudopods and/or vacuoles, particularly in the probasophilic and basophilic erythroblasts. CD71 (dim), hemoglobin A, glycophorin A, spectrin, ABH blood group antigens, and HLA-DR are frequently expressed with absence of myeloid-associated markers including MPO. Complex karyotypes are frequent, often including monosomy 5 or del(5q), monosomy 7 or del(7q), trisomy 811q abnormalities, 17p abnormalities, del(20q) and/or +13.

In some cases, erythroid cells may show strong cytoplasmic PAS positivity (Fig. 33-37). This is granular in early erythroid precursors and diffuse in later stages. Erythroid precursors are PAS negative in normal individuals and in most diseases, including nutritional megaloblastic anemia. They are sometimes positive, however, in iron deficiency anemia, thalassemia, and RARS. Ring sideroblasts may be seen in erythroleukemia, and myeloblasts usually stain with SBB, MPO, and CAE. A nonspecific esterase-positive monocytic component may also be present. Neoplastic erythroid precursors are sometimes positive for ANA and ANB.

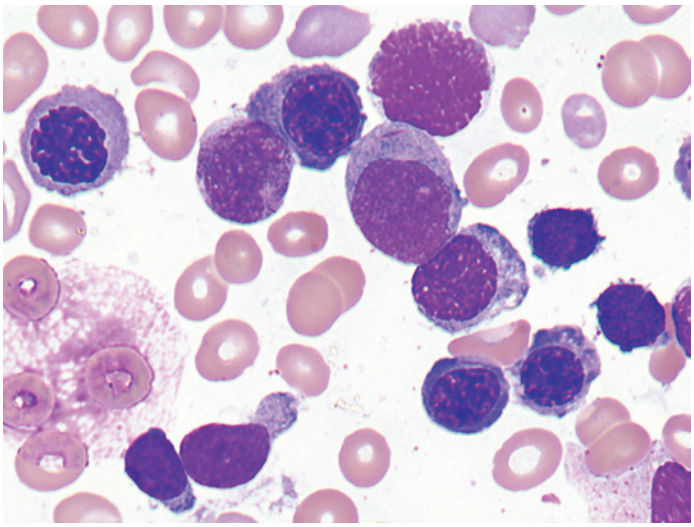


Figure 33-36 Erythroleukemia, erythroid/myeloid, shows predominance of erythroid precursors with myeloblasts constituting 20% or more of nonerythroid cells. An Auer rod is seen in the blast at upper center (1000×).

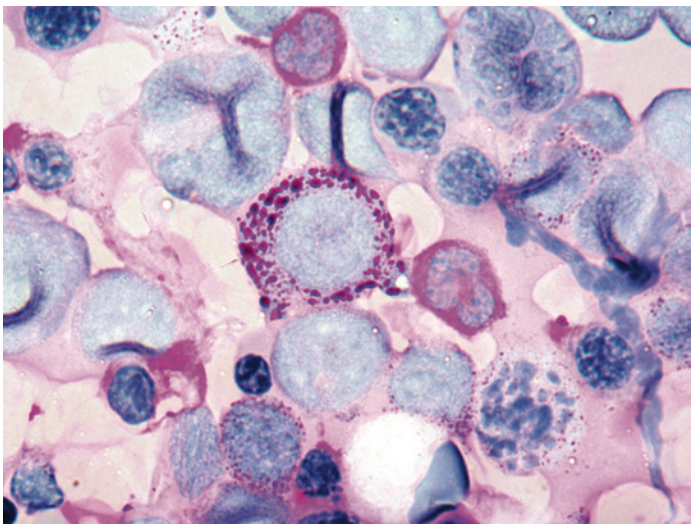


Figure 33-37 Coarse periodic acid–Schiff–positive granules are often seen in erythroid precursors in erythroleukemia (1000×).

Acute Megakaryoblastic Leukemia

The diagnosis of acute megakaryoblastic leukemia, like other forms of acute myeloid leukemia, requires ≥20% blasts in the marrow. Megakaryoblasts are highly polymorphic; some blasts simulate lymphoblasts, while others are larger and have pseudopods or stringy cytoplasmic projections. The cytoplasm is usually light blue and may or may not possess granules (Fig. 33-38). The nuclei often have one to three nucleoli. Micromegakaryocytes may be present and are not counted as blasts.

The blasts are cytochemically undifferentiated. They do not stain with SBB, MPO, CAE, or ANB. However, ANA is usually positive in a focal cytoplasmic pattern (Fig. 33-39). The PAS reaction shows diffuse and peripheral granular (often in large blocks) staining.

Megakaryocytic lineage is most often (Bennett et al, 1985a) demonstrated by immunophenotyping using monoclonal antibodies against platelet glycoprotein Ib (CD41) or IIb/IIIa (CD61). Blasts are often also positive for myeloid antigens CD13 and CD33, and characteristically for CD36. Care must be taken to differentiate this disease from AML with minimal differentiation by flow cytometry, which may show artifactual positivity for platelet markers due to adherence of platelets to blasts; this can be done by immunochemical examination of cytospins.

In the peripheral blood, there is usually pancytopenia with marked leukopenia and anemia. Megakaryocytic fragments are sometimes present in the blood. The BM shows variable and sometimes pronounced myelofibrosis.

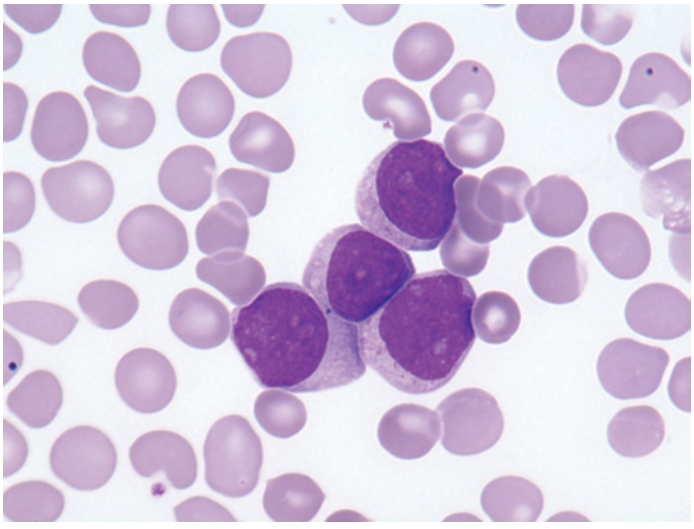


Figure 33-38 Blasts sometimes cluster in acute megakaryocytic leukemia (1000×).

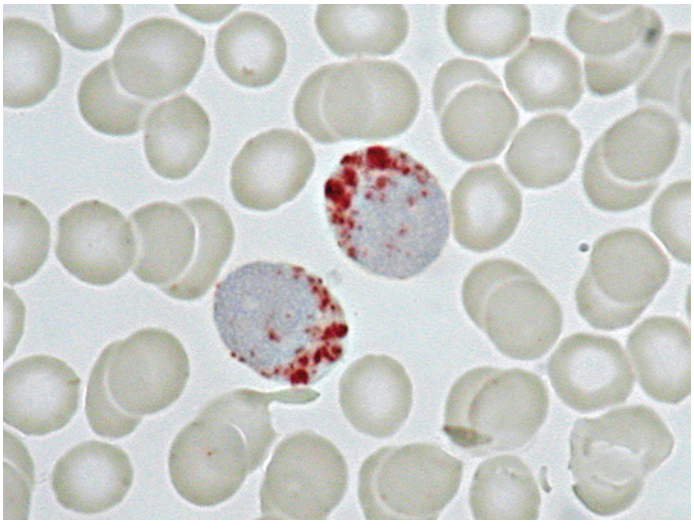


Figure 33-39 Alpha naphthyl acetate esterase-positive granules in megakaryoblasts.

Clumping of blasts may simulate metastatic tumor such as neuroblastoma or small cell carcinoma. Infants with t(1;22)(p13;q13) often show marrow infiltration mimicking neuroblastoma.

Young children (through 4 years of age) with Down syndrome (trisomy 21) have an increased incidence of megakaryoblastic leukemia, preceded in 30% by transient myeloproliferative disorder/transient abnormal myelopoiesis (TMD/TAM) of Down syndrome and by a dysplastic prephase in 70%. See also later.

Acute Basophilic Leukemia

Acute basophilic leukemia is a rare form of AML in which the blastic cells differentiate along the basophil lineage. The peripheral blood usually demonstrates anemia and thrombocytopenia with leukocytosis. The BM is infiltrated by blastic cells simulating lymphoblasts or myeloblasts. Blasts are generally negative for Sudan black B and myeloperoxidase. An increase in mature basophils or in blasts staining with toluidine blue may occur. Diagnosis historically rests on the identification of blasts with basophilic granules by ultrastructural methods, and the literature consists of isolated reports with a variety of AML genotypes. The differential diagnosis includes myelomastic leukemia.

Acute Panmyelosis with Myelofibrosis

This is a rare form of acute leukemia with panmyeloid proliferation and marrow fibrosis. Pancytopenia is typically seen. Red blood cells show minimal poikilocytosis, but dysplastic features in myeloid cells are often seen, as are atypical platelets.

The BM sample frequently shows a dry tap; on biopsy, clusters of blasts, late erythroid precursors, and dysplastic megakaryocytes are seen in a variably fibrotic background (Fig. 33-40). This is differentiated from acute megakaryoblastic leukemia by involvement of all three myeloid lineages, rather than only the megakaryocytic.

Myeloid Sarcoma

This neoplasm has been called *myeloblastic sarcoma*, *granulocytic sarcoma*, *extramedullary myeloid cell tumor*, and *chloroma*. It represents a localized tumor of myeloblasts or monoblasts, with or without maturation, infiltrating extramedullary sites (Fig. 33-41). Myeloid sarcomas may occur at any age in patients with acute myeloid leukemia or other known myeloproliferative disorder, or de novo. The diagnosis is equivalent to that of AML, and marrow involvement usually follows if it is not antecedent. These tumors occur in the skin, lymph nodes, nasopharyngeal and upper respiratory tract tissues, breast, ovary, bone, perineural and epidural structures, and the eye and other orbital structures, as well as in a variety of soft tissues.

The diagnosis depends on recognizing the nature of the primitive cells that can often be mistaken for solid tumors, including non-HLs, amelanotic melanomas, or undifferentiated carcinoma (Hutchison et al, 1990). The diagnosis is facilitated by making touch imprint preparations of cut sections of the tumor and staining them with Romanowsky's stains, by cytochemical reactions, and by immunophenotyping. Anti-MPO and

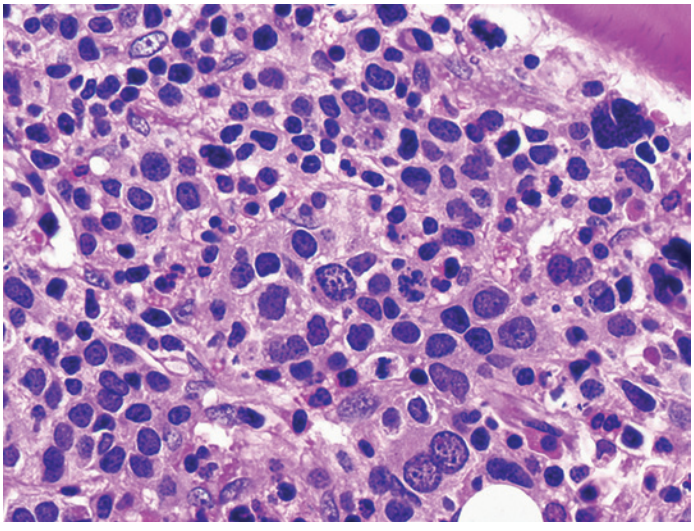


Figure 33-40 Acute panmyelosis with myelofibrosis shows involvement of all three myeloid lineages, with fibrosis (200×).

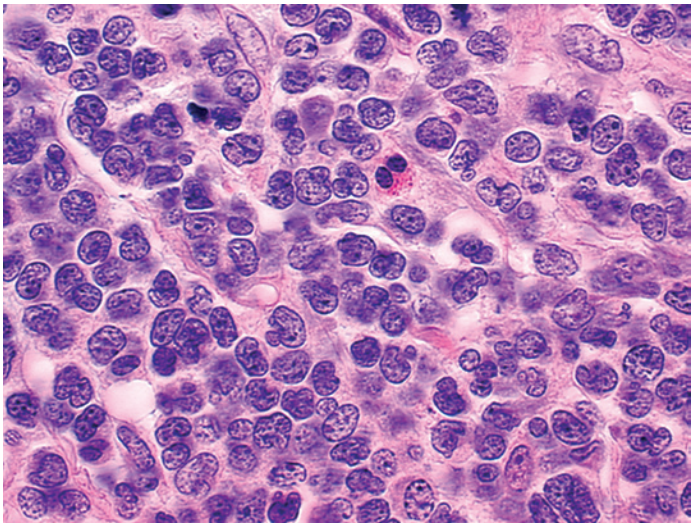


Figure 33-41 Granulocytic sarcoma, in this case presenting in the skin, resembles lymphoma but with large blastic or monocytoid cells. Eosinophils or precursors are frequently present (500×).

CD68 are particularly useful for granulocytic or monocytic lineage in paraffin sections.

Myeloid Proliferations Related to Down Syndrome

Children and adults with Down syndrome have a much higher frequency of leukemia than those without the syndrome. This includes ALL and AML, and diagnostic considerations for most are similar to leukemia occurring outside the syndrome. In addition, two specific and likely related disorders are unique to this group of patients.

Transient Abnormal Myelopoiesis

Transient abnormal myelopoiesis (TAM) occurs in 10% of neonates with Down syndrome and in a small number who are phenotypically normal but have trisomy 21 mosaicism. It presents as acute megakaryoblastic leukemia, frequently with thrombocytopenia and leukocytosis, often with higher blast proportions in blood than in marrow, and hepatosplenomegaly. It is characterized by mutations of *GATA1*. Blasts may express CD34, CD33, glycophorin A, and/or CD7. Uniquely, this disorder resolves spontaneously in the vast majority of cases. However, 20% to 30% subsequently develop nonremitting AML, as discussed later.

Myeloid Leukemia Associated with Down Syndrome

AML of Down syndrome occurs most often in the first 3 to 5 years at an incidence greater than 50 times that of others. It is usually of megakaryocytic lineage and may be preceded by a preleukemic phase similar to RCC, or by TAM. Blasts are of megakaryocytic/myeloid lineage, and express CD41 and CD61, as well as CD34, CD117, CD13, CD33, CD7, CD4, CD42, CD36, and/or CD71. Genetics show trisomy 21 and *GATA1* mutations, often with additional copies of chromosome 8 and/or 21, monosomy 7 or 5, and/or 5q– (Roy et al, 2009). AML also occurs with less frequency in older patients with Down syndrome, but in older patients *GATA1* mutations are usually absent.

Blastic Plasmacytoid Dendritic Cell Neoplasm

This tumor used to be included in the WHO classification with the lymphomas and was called blastic NK-cell lymphoma or CD4+ CD56+ hematodermic neoplasm. It is now known to be derived from plasmacytoid dendritic cell precursors and presents in skin with frequent involvement of blood and marrow, and often lymph nodes. Skin lesions may be nodules, plaques, or patches. Tumors resemble lymphoblastic lymphomas with monomorphic dermal infiltrates of blasts with fine chromatin and irregular nuclei, along with agranular cytoplasm. Cytochemical stains for myeloid precursors are absent, and immunohistochemistry shows characteristic findings of CD4, CD56, CD43, and CD45RA. Plasmacytoid dendritic cell markers CD123, TCL1, CLA, MxA, and BDCA-2/CD303 are positive. CD99 is reported positive. CD7, CD68, and CD33 are often expressed, and CD3, CD5, CD13, CD34, CD117, CD20, and CD79a are negative. Cytotoxic T cell markers are also negative in tissue sections. Immunoglobulin and usually T cell receptor genes are germline. The disease is aggressive, usually relapsing after initial therapy, but occasionally responding well to aggressive therapy.

BOX 33-12

Lineage Requirements in Mixed Phenotype Acute Leukemia

Myeloid lineage
Myeloperoxidase or monocyte differentiation markers (NSE, lysozyme, CD14, CD64, CD11c)
T lineage
Cytoplasmic or surface CD3B lineage
Strong CD19 + strong CD79a, cytoplasmic CD22, or CD10
Or
Weak CD19 + at least two: strong CD79a, cytoplasmic CD22, or CD10

From Swerdlow S, Campo E, Harris N, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, ed 4, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC.
NSE, Neuron-specific enolase.

Acute Leukemias of Ambiguous Lineage (Swerdlow et al, 2008)

Some cases of acute leukemia have features that are indeterminate between lymphoid and myeloid lineage, or have features of more than one lineage (Swerdlow et al, 2008; Bene & Porwit, 2012). This is a controversial area of difficult-to-classify leukemia. Many leukemias that appear to be of defined lineage have one or more immunologic markers that are aberrant, or show lineage infidelity. A single such marker is usually insignificant. ALL with myeloid markers responds similarly to other types of ALL, and lymphoid markers in AML are primarily important if they help suggest a subtype, such as CD19 expression in AML with t(8;21).

Ambiguous acute leukemias fall into two main categories per the WHO classification: acute undifferentiated leukemia (AUL) and mixed phenotype acute leukemia (MPAL). MPAL is divided into several entities. The term **bilineal acute leukemia** has been applied to rare disorders in which there are distinct blast populations of more than one lineage. Biphenotypic leukemia has referred to those with one population of leukemic cells showing multiple lineage expression (Box 33-12). Subcategories of MPAL are listed in the following sections.

Undifferentiated Acute Leukemia

These are rare acute leukemias in which the predominant cells are blast forms that cannot be classified using morphologic, cytochemical, ultrastructural, immunologic, or DNA analytic methods. CD34, CD38, and HLA-DR are frequently expressed, and CD7 and TdT may be expressed as well.

Mixed Phenotype Acute Leukemia with t(9;22)(q34;q11.2); BCR-ABL1

These are cases of MPAL with t(9;22) translocation and associated *BCR-ABL1*. They are rare disorders, more common in adults than in children. Cases with prior CML are excluded.

Mixed Phenotype Acute Leukemia with t(v;11q23); MLL Rearranged

This disease is more common in children than in adults. Dimorphic blast populations are frequent and consist of monoblasts and lymphoblasts. Prognosis is generally poor.

Mixed Phenotype Acute Leukemia, B/Myeloid, NOS

Myeloperoxidase or monocytic differentiation and CD19 with CD79a, cCD22, and/or CD10; neither t(9;11) nor 11q23 translocation occurs.

Mixed Phenotype Acute Leukemia, T/Myeloid, NOS

Myeloperoxidase or monocytic differentiation and cytoplasmic or surface CD3; neither t(9;11) nor 11q23 translocation occurs.

Mixed Phenotype Acute Leukemia, NOS—Other Rare Types

This category includes T- and B-lineage disease and cases with trilineage differentiation.

Natural Killer Cell Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma

This category considers the possibility of bilineage NK and T-lineage lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, but such an entity remains ambiguous.

PRECURSOR LYMPHOID NEOPLASMS

Historically, lymphoid leukemias and lymphomas were classified separately. Leukemias are hematopoietic malignancies primarily involving BM and blood and have been most extensively categorized by the FAB group. Lymphomas are those primarily involving lymphoid organs or other soft tissues and have been subject to numerous classification schemes that evolved rapidly because of advances in immunology, oncology, and genetics. Since publication of the Revised European-American Lymphoma (REAL) classification, lymphoid leukemias and lymphomas have been classified by biologic features of the disease, rather than by anatomic distribution, and an international consensus in classification has generally been attained (Berard & Hutchison, 1997; Harris et al, 1994, 2000). The WHO classification deals with neoplasia of bone marrow, blood, and lymphoid tissues and focuses on cytogenetic and molecular findings whenever possible (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma

Clinical Features

This category of malignancy most often presents as leukemia and is the prototype of ALL. The other major type of ALL is T lymphoblastic, which is less common and tends to present as lymphoma or concurrently as both leukemia and lymphoma. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia is the most common malignancy of children and adolescents. In the United States, 3000 to 4000 new cases are reported per year, two thirds of which affect children. The evolution of treatment with combination chemotherapy, CNS treatment, intensified therapy for high-risk categories with identification of minimal residual disease (MRD), and increasing understanding of molecular and genetic risk categories has led to cure rates of greater than 80% in children (Pui et al, 2011; Pui & Evans, 2013; Zhou et al, 2012). Favorable factors include age 5 to 10 years, hyperdiploidy (best, 54 to 62 with trisomy 4, 10, and/or 17), and t(12;21). Poor risk factors include age younger than 1 year, t(9;22), t(4;11), MRD after therapy, and ancestry factors that have varied with therapies. Proper therapy has reduced some adverse risk factors, and molecular genetic characterization has identified targets for therapy, such as genotypes sensitive to ABL1 inhibitors.

Among adults, only 30% to 40% are cured, in part because of the higher frequency of adverse genetic abnormalities. Adult ALL incidence increases in middle to older age, similarly to genetically high-risk AML. Individuals with this disorder often present with symptoms of fatigue, fever, and bleeding. Generalized lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and hepatomegaly are common findings. Because leukemic cells infiltrate many tissues of the body, other symptoms may occur. Leg pain can be associated with periosteal infiltrates, as well as headache, nausea, and vomiting with meningeal leukemia. Rapid onset of unconsciousness may indicate subarachnoid hemorrhage.

Presentation occurs occasionally in skin, bone, and/or lymph node without BM involvement (<25% blasts in the marrow). These cases are referred to as *lymphoma*. They most often occur in young people (<18 years of age) and show overlapping features with precursor B-ALL, with TdT and B-lineage markers. Morphology in tissue sections shows diffuse infiltrations of small cells (nuclei smaller than histiocyte nuclei) with diffuse chromatin, inconspicuous nucleoli, scant cytoplasm, high mitotic rate, and frequently a "starry-sky" pattern of admixed histiocytes (indicating high apoptotic rate).

Anemia, usually normocytic, is present in precursor B-ALL when clinical manifestations are fully developed. Frequently, nucleated red cells are present. Thrombocytopenia of moderate to marked degree is the rule. The leukocyte count occasionally is very high (>100 × 10^9/L), often is slightly elevated, but is perhaps most frequently normal or decreased. The predominant cell is the lymphoblast.

Marrow

By the time the patient is symptomatic, hematopoietic cells and fat are usually replaced by a diffuse infiltration of lymphoblasts. Blast percentage is usually greater than 50%. Predominance of small blasts with high nuclear/cytoplasmic (N/C) ratios and inconspicuous nucleoli (L1 type in the FAB classification) is most common in childhood ALL (Fig. 33-42). Chromatin is diffuse in some cells but may show variable condensation, and blasts may be difficult to distinguish from the normal lymphocytes of young children. Larger blasts with more abundant cytoplasm, prominent nucleoli, and often irregular nuclei (FAB L2) also occur and tend to predominate in adult ALL.

The blasts are negative for SBB, peroxidase, and naphthol ASD CAE. Azurophilic granules may be present, but they are SBB and peroxidase negative. In other cases, ALL blasts may exhibit some SBB reactivity, but peroxidase is negative.

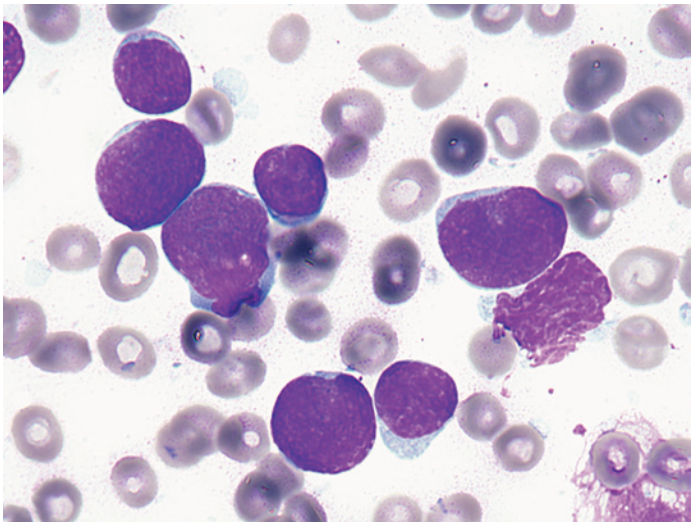


Figure 33-42 B lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma with small to medium-sized blasts and lack of conspicuous nucleoli (1000×).

Blasts characteristically express TdT, cytoplasmic CD22 and CD79a, CD19, and HLA-DR. CD10 (common ALL antigen) is expressed in many, and expression of CD34 is variable. Cytoplasmic μ immunoglobulin heavy chain (cyt-μ) indicates a slightly more mature state, but surface immunoglobulin is negative. Myeloid-associated antigens CD13, CD33, and CD15 may be expressed.

Cytogenetics

Cytogenetic findings are increasingly important in diagnosis and prognostication in ALL and have been previously reviewed (Mrozek et al, 2004). The current WHO classification divides B-ALL into groups based on frequently found (recurrent) cytogenetic findings (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma with t(9;22)(q34;q11.2); BCR-ABL1

The Ph′ chromosome t(9;22) with production of a fusion BCR-ABL occurs in about 30% of cases of adult (20% detected at karyotyping) and 6% of cases of childhood ALL. The t(9;22) is the most frequent adult ALL translocation and is associated with poor prognosis. Two types are found: that identical to CML, involving the bcr region of BCR with resultant p210 kD fusion protein, occurring in half of adult cases of Ph′-positive ALL; and another with breakpoint upstream of bcr, producing a smaller chimeric message and p190 kD protein. The latter occurs in most childhood Ph′-positive cases. Ph′-positive ALL is most often of precursor B cell lineage but also may present with biphenotypic myeloid differentiation.

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma with t(v;11q23); MLL Rearranged

Abnormalities of the *MLL* gene at chromosome region 11q23 are seen in 5% to 7% of cases of ALL, as well as in AML, and are often associated with *FLT3* overexpression. ALL with t(4;11)(q21;q23) is associated with poor prognosis, high WBC count, and immature B-lineage phenotype with lack of CD10 or CD24 but with CD15 expression. It involves *MLL* and the partner gene *AF4*. It is most common in infants, and many cases of ALL with this abnormality are biphenotypic. Translocation t(11;19)(q23;p13.3) is the next most frequent MLL abnormality in ALL but also occurs in AML (monocytic). Overall, 11q23 (MLL) abnormalities, with the possible exception of t(9;11) in AML, confer poor prognosis.

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma with t(12;21)(p12;q22); TEL-AML1 (ETV6-RUNX1)

This constitutes approximately 25% of B-ALL, correlates with high-density CD10 and HLA-DR expression with negative CD9 and CD20, and is associated with good prognosis. The *TEL* gene at 12p12 is fused with the *AML1* gene at 21q22 with a resultant fusion protein. *AML1 (RUNX1)* is a transcription factor involved in hematopoietic differentiation/proliferation. The abnormality is difficult to detect by karyotyping but can be detected by RT-PCR analysis for the chimeric mRNA or by FISH.

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma with t(1;19)(q23;p13.3); E2A-PBX1 (TCF3-PBX1)

Another translocation, t(1;19)(q23;p13), and variants are associated with pre–B cell ALL (with cytoplasmic μ Ig). It involves the *E2A* gene at 19p13, which encodes transcription factors, and *PBX* at 1q23. This has also been associated with decreased response to therapy.

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma with t(5;14)(q31;q32); IL3-IGH

This rare variant of B-ALL is associated with eosinophilia. The rearrangement results in constitutive expression of *IL3* and interleukin effects. The immunophenotype is CD19+, CD10+.

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma with Hyperdiploidy

B-ALL with multiple trisomies and between 50 and 66 chromosomes (normal = 46) is referred to as *hyperdiploid*. This usually occurs in children and implies favorable prognosis. Trisomies of chromosome 4, 10, and 17 are considered markers for low-risk disease in pediatric leukemia protocols. Blasts usually express CD19, CD10, and CD34 but often are CD45 negative.

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma with Hypodiploidy

Hypodiploid B-ALL shows fewer than the normal 46 chromosomes. Prognosis is unfavorable, especially when chromosomes are fewer than 45, and even more so when fewer than 44.

B Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma, Not Otherwise Specified (Refers to All Other B-ALL)

Other genetic factors are recognized in B-ALL. *IKZF1* deletion in B-ALL is associated with a high risk for relapse. *PAX5* deletions or mutations are observed in approximately 30% of cases. Deletion or mutation of *CDKN2A/B* occurs in 21% to 36% of pediatric B-ALL and 50% of adult cases. Abnormalities in JAK-STAT signaling occur with various *JAK* mutations (excluding *JAK2* V617F), as well as increased expression of cytokine receptor CRLF2, and mutations of *PAX5* and *RAS* are also frequent (Zhou et al, 2012).

Precursor T Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoblastic Lymphoma

Precursor T lymphoblastic leukemia (T-LBL), which accounts for 10% to 20% of cases of ALL, occurs predominantly in boys who tend to be slightly older than children with precursor B lymphoblastic ALL. Patients with T-lineage ALL often have a high leukocyte count and mediastinal involvement. Blast morphology is heterogeneous, similar to B-ALL, and immunophenotyping is required for diagnosis. The immunophenotype reflects thymic T cells that have a distinct maturation pattern (Reinherz et al, 1980), and the blasts show varying maturity. Most cases exhibit TdT, CD7, and cytoplasmic CD3 with variable CD1a, CD2, and CD5. Some cases of early thymic phenotype lack CD4 or CD8, but most (midcortical thymic phenotype, particularly in lymphoma presentation) coexpress CD4 and CD8. In late cortical thymic phenotype, CD4 or CD8 alone may be present, and in these, TdT and/or CD1a is particularly helpful for diagnosis. Myeloid markers such as CD13, CD33, and/or CD117 may be present, and CD79a may be present occasionally. A unique category with poor prognosis is referred to as *early T cell precursor ALL*, comprises 15% of T ALL, lacks expression of CD1a and CD8 with weak or absent CD5, and displays aberrant expression of myeloid and hematopoietic stem cell markers CD13, CD33, CD34, and CD117. A mutational spectrum resembles AML (Zhang et al, 2012).

Presentation as lymphoma often shows a more mature thymic phenotype than leukemic presentation (Crist et al, 1988). These are relatively common lymphomas of adolescents and young adults (one third of pediatric NHLs) and also occur later in life. They typically present in the mediastinum and/or peripheral lymph nodes, and pleural effusions are common. Airway compromise or superior vena cava syndrome is frequently present, resulting in emergent need for therapy and limiting diagnostic procedures.

Morphology. T-LBL usually shows diffuse tissue involvement by blasts with nuclei smaller than those of histiocytes or reactive endothelial cells (Fig. 33-43), although some show nuclei similar in size to Burkitt lymphoma. Chromatin is usually finely dispersed to slightly clumped, but rarely as much as Burkitt lymphoma. Mitotic rates are high, and there is often a "starry sky" pattern similar to Burkitt. Neoplastic cells sometimes show selective T-zone involvement of lymph nodes and/or a leukemia-like infiltration pattern in soft tissue.

The differential diagnosis of T-LBL in young patients primarily involves it, BL, and occasionally large B cell lymphoma (LBCL). Mediastinal location favors T-LBL over BL, but not LBCL. In adults, the differential diagnosis includes blastoid and blastic variants of mantle cell lymphoma. Granulocytic sarcoma is also in the differential in any age group. Expression of TdT and lineage-specific T cell markers without B or myeloid markers is usually diagnostic.

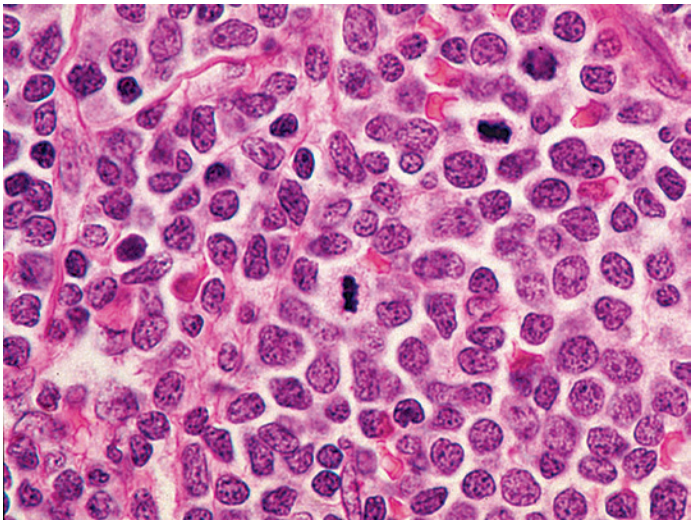


Figure 33-43 T lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma (500×).

Genetics. T cell receptor genes are frequently rearranged, but Ig heavy chain genes may also be rearranged (Racke, 2011). Patients with T cell ALL frequently show translocations of α and δ T cell receptor loci at 14q11.2, the β locus at 7q35, or the γ locus at 7p14-15, usually with genes encoding transcription factors. Partner genes include *MYC* (8q24.1), *TAL1* (1p32), *RBTN1* (11p15), *RBTN2* (11p13), *HOX11* (10q24), *HOX11L2* (5q35), and *LCK* (1p34.3-35). TAL1 regulatory gene deletions occur in 25% of cases, and del(9p) involving *CDKN2* is also frequent (Mrozek et al, 2004). Early T-cell precursor ALL shows activating mutations in genes regulating cytokine receptor and RAS signaling (NRAS, KRAS, FLT3, IL7R, JAK3, JAK1, SH2B3, and BRAF), inactivating lesions disrupting hematopoietic development (GATA3, ETV6, RUNX1, IKZF1, and EP300), histone-modifying genes (EZH2, EED, SUZ12, SETD2, and EP300), and/or recurrent mutations DNM2, ECT2L, and RELN (Zhang et al, 2012).

MATURE B CELL NEOPLASMS

These constitute the most numerous and possibly the most diverse group of hematopoietic neoplasms. Overall rates vary geographically, with 15 in 100,000 in the United States. There is also geographic variation in histologic types, with follicular and diffuse large B cells predominating in Western developed countries, constituting 50% of NHLs; myeloma is also common. The cells affected in mature B cell malignancies are those making up the humoral immune system, which is characterized by innumerable clones of B lymphocytes with genetically distinct immunoglobulin gene rearrangements, many states of maturation, and interaction with regulatory pathways. Clinical behaviors relate to clonal escape from regulation, the balance of proliferation and apoptosis, and modulation by therapy. Features of major categories are shown in Table 33-5 (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Monoclonal B Cell Lymphocytosis

Diagnosis of chronic lymphocytic leukemia requires the presence of leukocytosis of $\geq 5 \times 10^9$/L monoclonal lymphocytes with chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) phenotype (see later) for at least 3 months, or lower counts with the presence of cytopenias and/or disease-related symptoms. Otherwise, a diagnosis of monoclonal B cell lymphocytosis is made, analogous to the concept of monoclonal gammopathy of unknown significance (MGUS) (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia/Small Lymphocytic Lymphoma

This is a clonal proliferation of small B lymphocytes involving BM, blood, and lymph nodes. It is common, usually indolent, at least initially, but difficult if not impossible to cure (Muller-Hermelink et al, 2008). Cases

TABLE 33-5

Key Features of Major Mature B Cell Neoplasms

Lymphoma	Demographics, Clinical and Laboratory Presentations	Morphology	CELL SURFACE MARKERS		Cytogenetics
			Positive	Negative	
CLL/SLL	M > F, over 60 years; insidious onset of fatigue, lymphadenopathy; WBC >5 K/μL, anemia, thrombocytopenia, occasionally AIHA	Small lymphocytes with condensed chromatin	CD19, CD20, CD5, CD22, CD23, CD79a, dim sIg	CD10, bcl-6, FMC-7	+12, del(13q14.3), del(11q22-23), del(17q)(TP53)
B cell PLL	M > F, mean age 65 years; massive splenomegaly, minimal lymphadenopathy, WBC >100 K	Prolymphocytes ≥55%	CD19, CD20, FMC-7, bright sIg	CD5, CD23, often negative	Occ del(17p), del(13q14)
Hairy cell leukemia	M > F, median age 50 years; insidious onset with splenomegaly, leukopenia with monocytopenia	Medium-sized cells with round to oval indented nuclei, reticular chromatin, frayed cytoplasmic borders	CD20, CD22, CD79a, CD103, CD25, CD11c	CD5, CD10, CD23	BRAF (V600e) mutation
Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma	M > F, mean age 63 years; BM, nodal, and splenic involvement, symptomatic IgM paraprotein	Plasmacytoid lymphocytes and plasma cells with PAS-positive inclusions (Dutcher bodies)	CD19, CD20, CD22, CD25, CD38, CD79a, bright sIgM, cIgM	CD5, CD10, CD23, CD103, bcl-6	MYD88 mutation del(6q), +3, +4, +18, none specific
Heavy chain disease (α-HCD, immunoproliferative small intestinal disease, prototype)	Younger adults in poorer Mediterranean communities with malabsorption, diarrhea	Lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate of intestinal mucosa, variant of MALT	NA	NA	
Marginal zone lymphomas: splenic, nodal, MALT	F > M, median age 61 years; indolent course involving stomach, other mucosal sites, spleen, or nodes	Lymphocytes with condensed chromatin and moderate cytoplasm; lymphoepithelial lesions in MALT type	CD20, CD79a, sIgM, bcl-2	CD5, CD10, CD23, bcl-6	+3, t(11;18)(q21;q21) in MALT type, 7q abnormalities
Follicular lymphoma	F > M, median age 59 years; lymphadenopathy, BM and splenic involvement frequent	Follicle-like structures with centrocytes and varying numbers of centroblasts	CD19, CD20, CD22, CD23, CD79a, CD10, bcl-2, bcl-6, sIgM	CD5, CD43	t(14;18)(q32;q21)
Mantle cell lymphoma	M > F, median age 60 years; lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, BM involvement; typically refractory	Atrophic germinal centers, prominent mantle zones, small lymphs with irregular nuclei; blastoid/pleomorphic variants	CD5, CD43, FMC-7, bcl-2, cyclin D1, sIgM	CD10, CD23, bcl-6	t(11;14)(q13;q32)
Diffuse large B cell lymphoma	M > F, all ages, moderately aggressive but responds to chemo and anti-CD20	Diffuse infiltrate of large B cells, variable morphology	CD19, CD20, CD22, CD79a, sIg, bcl-2±, bcl-6±, CD30±, MUM1 in post-GC types	CD5 (usually)	t(14;18) in 20%, 3q27 (bcl-6) abnormalities in 30%, C-MYC translocation in "double hit"
Mediastinal large B cell lymphoma	F > M, young to middle-aged adults; airway compression, superior vena cava syndrome	Sclerotic lesions with clear, multilobulated, or RS-like cells	CD19, CD20, CD22, CD79a, CD30	CD5, CD10	Amplifications of 9p24, 2p15, others
Primary effusion lymphoma	Rare, associated with HHV-8 in immunosuppressed younger male homosexuals; pleural effusion	Immunoblastic or anaplastic cells	CD45, CD30, CD38, CD138	CD19, CD20, CD79a, sIg, bcl-6	
Plasmablastic lymphoma	Rare, associated with EBV in immunosuppressed	Plasmacytoid	CD45, CD38, CD138, CD79a	CD45, CD20, PAX-5 negative or weak	
EBV associated; chronic inflammation of the elderly, lymphomatoid granulomatosis, posttransplant	Immunosuppressed, elderly, others	Variable	CD20, EBV-EBER		
Burkitt lymphoma	1. Endemic: children in Africa, jaw mass, M > F 2. Sporadic: children to young adults, worldwide, M > F 3. Immunodeficiency-associated: HIV patients	Uniform cells with round to oval nuclei, multiple nucleoli, high mitotic rate	CD19, CD20, CD10, bcl-6, sIg	TdT, bcl-2	t(8;14)(q24;q32), t(2;8)(p12;q24), t(8: 22)(q24;q11)
Intermediate BL/DLBCL lymphoma	Children w/rapidly growing mass, adults	Intermediate between BL and DLBCL	CD19, CD20, CD10, bcl-6, sIg		t(8;14)(q24;q32), 8q24/MYC, variable, others

AIHA, Autoimmune hemolytic anemia; *BL,* Burkitt lymphoma; *BM,* bone marrow; *cIg,* cytoplasmic immunoglobulin; *CLL,* chronic lymphocytic leukemia; *EBER,* EBV-encoded RNA; *DLBCL,* diffuse large B cell lymphoma; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *F,* female; *GC,* germinal center; *HHV,* human herpesvirus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *M,* male; *MALT,* mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue; *MYC,* c-Myc gene; *NA,* not applicable; *PAS,* periodic acid–Schiff; *PLL,* prolymphocytic leukemia; *RS,* Reed-Sternberg; *sIg,* surface immunoglobulin; *SLL,* small lymphocytic lymphoma; *TdT,* deoxyribonucleotidyl transferase; *WBC,* white blood cell.

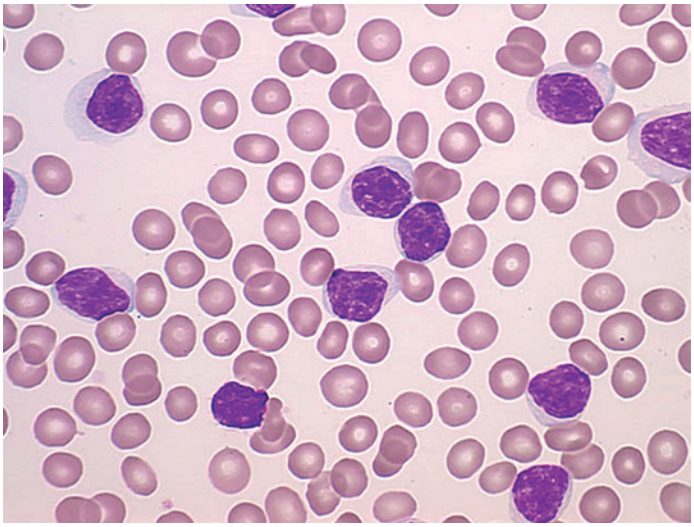


Figure 33-44 B cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia (1000×).

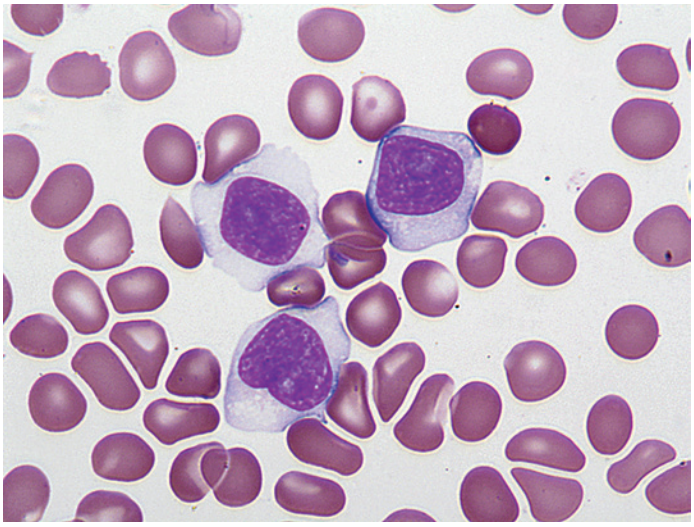


Figure 33-45 B cell prolymphocytic leukemia typically shows high white blood cell count, large lymphocytes with moderately abundant cytoplasm, and prominent nucleoli, although variability is noted (1000×).

with predominant involvement in the marrow and blood are traditionally called CLL, and lymphomas are called small lymphocytic lymphoma (SLL), but these are considered manifestations of a single entity. A majority of cases are leukemic and constitute 90% of chronic lymphoid leukemias in the United States and Europe. It is rare in those younger than 40 years of age; most cases occur in those over 60 years of age, and the condition is more than twice as common in men as in women. Onset is insidious, and the disease is commonly discovered by chance during the investigation of another problem. Most patients are >50 years of age.

The tumors show diffuse infiltrates of small mature lymphocytes with clumped chromatin and scant to moderate cytoplasm (Fig. 33-44). Admixed prolymphocytes and proliferation centers (containing increased prolymphocytes and lymphocytes with increased cytoplasm) are characteristic. Mitotic rates are very low.

CLL/SLL shows a characteristic phenotype of monoclonal B cells (CD19/CD20/CD79a) with dim surface Ig (single light chain with IgM or IgM and IgD), coexpression of usual T cell marker CD5, and expression of CD23 and CD200 (Alapat et al, 2012; Sandes et al, 2013). CD10, BCL-6, and cyclin D1 are negative. This pattern is very useful in distinguishing CLL/SLL from mantle cell, follicular, and marginal zone lymphomas.

Ig heavy and (monotypic) light chain genes are rearranged, and IGH genes have undergone somatic hypermutation of V regions as occurs in germinal centers (GC or memory-like) in 50% to 60%. Unmutated (naïve) *IGHV* is associated with adverse prognosis and with expression of the tyrosine kinase ZAP-70, normally expressed in T-cells. ZAP-70 can be detected by flow cytometry, but the protein undergoes degradation in vitro and is technically variable. DNA methylation profiles can also be used to separate CLL into naïve B cell–like, intermediate, and memory B cell–like groups with prognostic significance (Queiros et al, 2015). A prior concept that CLLs with mutated *IGHV* have experienced the germinal center (GC) environment while CLLs with unmutated *IGHV* (naïve B-cell) have not was recently challenged by gene expression profiling (GEP) studies showing similar profiles for both (Gaidano et al, 2012). It has been suggested that unmutated *IGHV* may be associated with other adverse factors such as *NOTCH1* mutation. *SF3B1* and *BRC3* mutations are also negative indicators of prognosis. Aberrant methylation may deregulate *BCL2*, *TCL1*, and *ZAP-70* (Rodriguez-Vicente et al, 2013).

Cytogenetic studies show del 13q14.3 in 50%, with disruption of the tumor suppressor locus DLEU2/MIR15A/MIR16A, trisomy 12 in 20%, del(11q22-23) affecting the ataxia telangiectasia mutated *(ATM)* gene in 20%, del(17p13) at the p53 locus in 10%, and del(6q21) in 5%. The first of these is associated with favorable outcome, and the latter three with adverse outcome. Cytogenetic abnormalities vary with mutation status. These abnormalities often cannot be detected by karyotype because CLL cells are minimally proliferative in culture, but are detectable by FISH probes. Other adverse features include expression of CD38, doubling of lymphocyte count in <12 months, and elevated β_2-microglobulin.

In the typical type of CLL, 90% or more of the cells are small lymphocytes that are monotonously similar in appearance and usually look normal. Nuclear chromatin may be coarsely condensed and more sharply separated by parachromatin than in normal lymphocytes, or, in some cases, the chromatin is less condensed than normal. Nucleoli are evident in many of the lymphocytes. Size variation is minimal, and the amount of cytoplasm is slight to moderate. Less than 10% of lymphocytes are prolymphocytes or reticular lymphocytes (transformed lymphocytes).

Often there is neither anemia nor thrombocytopenia at the time of diagnosis. Anemia due to impaired production does develop as the marrow is replaced by leukemic cells. In addition, erythrocyte life span in some patients with CLL may be reduced. This is especially true when there is marked splenomegaly. Autoimmune hemolytic anemia develops in about 10% of patients. Thrombocytopenia is often slight and occasionally becomes severe as the disease progresses, so that hemorrhagic manifestations appear. Thrombocytopenia is usually due to hypoproliferation but may also be secondary to an immune process or splenic sequestration. Patchy, nodular, or interstitial involvement of the BM by neoplastic lymphocytes is associated with a relatively good outcome. A diffuse infiltrate of the BM, however, usually correlates with a poor prognosis and/or advanced disease. An increasing proportion of prolymphocytes (between 10% and 55%; mixed CLL/PLL) may indicate aggressive disease. Atypical morphology with nuclear irregularities is associated with trisomy 12 (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

B Cell Prolymphocytic Leukemia

Prolymphocytic leukemia was originally described as a variant of CLL (Galton et al, 1974). The male/female ratio is 6.5:1, and the mean age is 65 years. PLL is characterized by a very marked lymphocytosis (usually greater than $100 \times 10^3/\mu L$), massive splenomegaly, moderate hepatomegaly, and inconspicuous lymphadenopathy. The malignant lymphoid cells have a large vesicular nucleolus, condensed nuclear chromatin, and a moderate amount of cytoplasm (Fig. 33-45). More than 55% of blood leukemic cells are prolymphocytes. Immunophenotype varies from SLL/CLL by bright surface Ig (monoclonal IgM with or without IgD), lack of CD5 in two thirds of cases, and usually lack of CD23 and presence of FMC-7. Abnormalities of *p53* are frequent, and deletions at 11q23 and 13q14 occur. *MYC* amplification or translocation with deregulation appears to be frequent (Flatley et al, 2014; Put et al, 2012). Prolymphocytic leukemia is usually less responsive to treatment than CLL in general, and it has a poorer prognosis.

Splenic Marginal Zone Lymphoma

Splenic marginal zone lymphoma (SMZL) has many clinical, laboratory, and morphologic features similar to HCL and features similar to SLL/CLL (Swerdlow et al, 2008). The disease is more common in men than in women. Patients are often in their seventh decade of life when they present with splenomegaly.

In the spleen, the neoplastic infiltrate expands from the white pulp into the red pulp. Some patients (≈⅓) show a small monoclonal gammopathy, usually IgM. The BM may demonstrate patchy infiltrates or massive involvement. The tumor arises from splenic marginal zones, which in

reactive processes are seen as an outer zone of pale lymphocytes with moderately abundant cytoplasm surrounding the white pulp and imparting a target-like appearance. In some cases, reactive follicles with germinal centers are present, and an expanded marginal zone surrounds the white pulp and involves the red pulp. Marginal zone hyperplasia may mimic this disorder. Other cases show predominantly red pulp involvement (Figs. 33-46 and 33-47). Red cell lakes are not present, and lymph nodes are not characteristically involved. The tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase (TRAP) stain is usually negative, although positive reactions have been recorded.

The immunophenotype is mature B cell with surface IgM/IgD (similar to SLL/CLL), positive CD20, CD79, and other pan–B cell markers. CD5, CD10, CD23, cyclin D1, CD103, annexin A1, and CD43 are characteristically negative.

Immunoglobulin genes are clonally rearranged, and half of cases show somatic mutations, most frequently in *NOTCH2* (Baliakas et al, 2014; Parry et al, 2013). Translocation/loss of 7q21-32 is noted in 40% of cases, and trisomy 3q in some. Bcl-2 is variable.

SMZL is indolent but has shown poor response to therapy. New approaches utilizing chemotherapy combined with anti-CD20 therapy appear promising (Arcaini et al, 2004).

Hairy Cell Leukemia

Bouroncle (1958) initially described this disorder, which is clinically variable in its manifestations. HCL occurs more frequently in males than in females. The mean age of afflicted patients is 50 years. It has an insidious onset and is characterized by proliferation of abnormal cells in the reticuloendothelial organs and blood. Splenomegaly is the predominant physical finding (Foucar et al, 2008). Pancytopenia or depression of only two cell lines is the usual finding, with variable numbers of hairy cells. Monocytopenia is characteristic, and hairy cells are usually infrequent in the blood, although they may result in leukocytosis. In most cases, BM aspiration is difficult. Marrow biopsy shows a marrow that varies in cellularity, often having both hypocellular and hypercellular areas and reticulin fibrosis. Hypocellular cases of HCL occur and mimic aplastic anemia. Morphologically, the cells are medium sized (10 to 20 μm in diameter) with round to oval nuclei, although many are notched or dumbbell or bean shaped. The chromatin pattern is usually uniformly reticular, and nucleoli are small and inconspicuous. In some cells, chromatin is more condensed, resembling that of a lymphocyte. The cytoplasm is moderate in amount, is light blue-gray, and exhibits numerous hairlike projections and frayed borders, most prominent on electron micrographs (Fig. 33-48).

In marrow sections, cells with small central nuclei, abundant cytoplasm, and reticulin fibrosis produce a characteristic fried-egg appearance, which may resemble erythroid islands when involvement is not extensive (Fig. 33-49). Chromatin is usually more delicate and nuclei more irregular than in erythroid precursors. In small or poorly preserved biopsies, HCL may be mistaken for large B cell lymphoma.

Splenectomy specimens are usually diagnostic, with red pulp infiltrates of cells similar to those in the marrow. In addition, the cells tend to line splenic sinuses, obliterating the endothelium and producing red cell

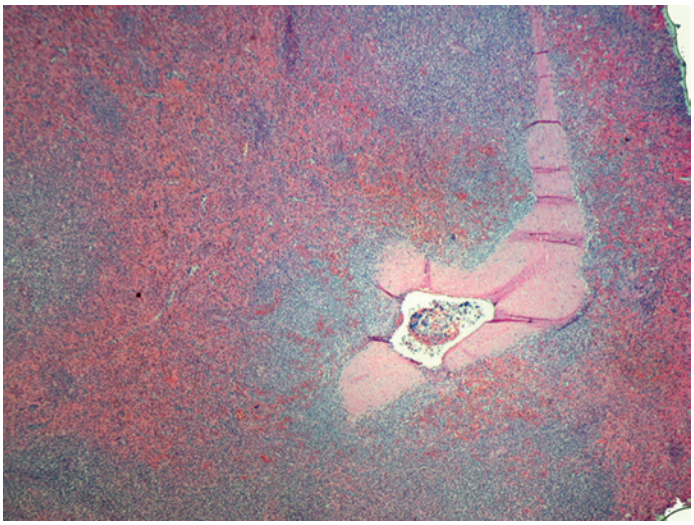


Figure 33-46 Splenic marginal zone lymphoma showing mild white pulp expansion and patchy red pulp involvement (100×).

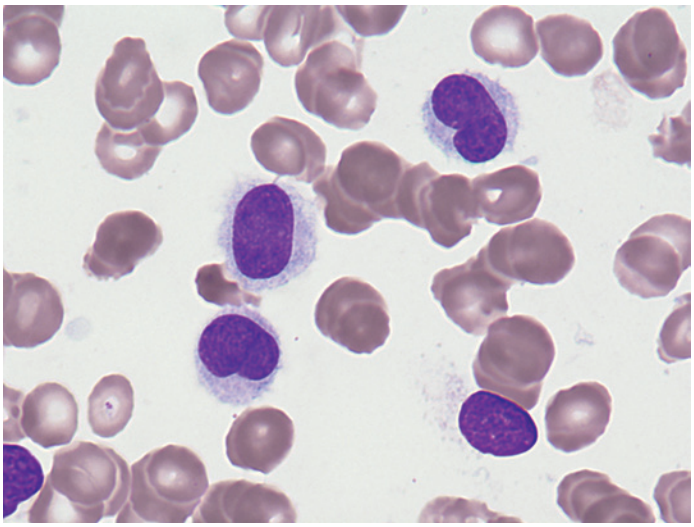


Figure 33-48 Hairy cell leukemia shows lymphoid cells with foamy cytoplasm and cytoplasmic projections, and oval or indented nuclei with reticular chromatin (1000×).

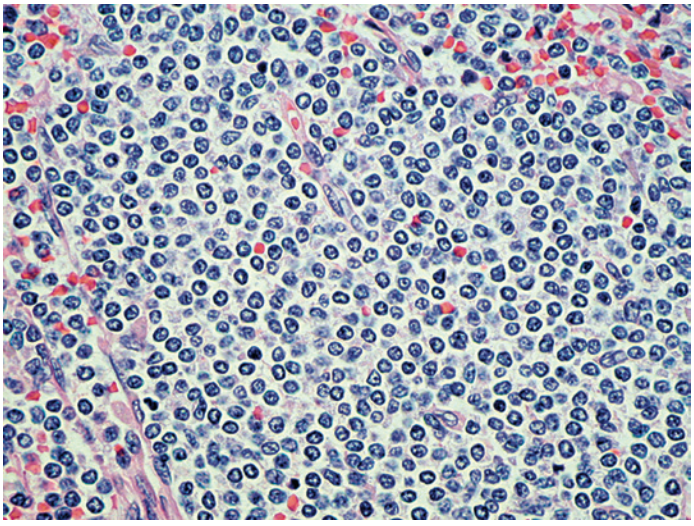


Figure 33-47 Higher-power view of splenic red pulp involvement by monocytoid splenic marginal zone cells in splenic marginal zone lymphoma (200×).

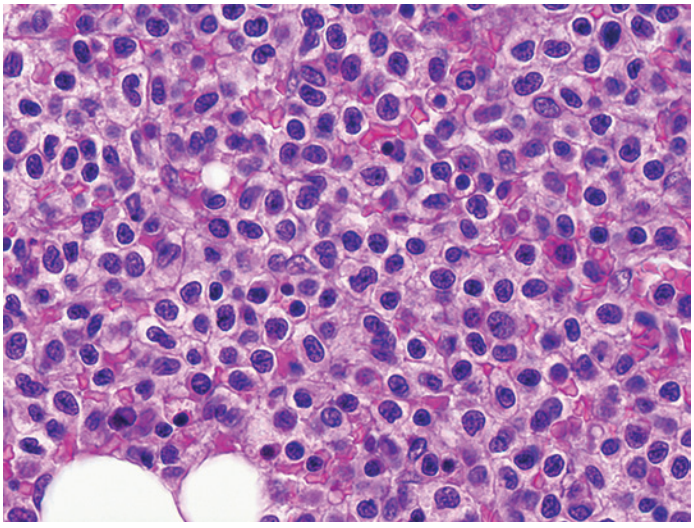


Figure 33-49 Hairy cell leukemia in a bone marrow biopsy shows small nuclei with moderate cytoplasm and distinct cytoplasmic boundaries (500×).

"lakes," which lack visible endothelium. Lymph nodes may show paracortical infiltrates, and the liver may show sinus infiltration.

Cytochemically, these cells contain acid phosphatase, which is resistant to inhibition by tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase; this is in contrast to the isoenzymes of acid phosphatase present in other hemic cells (Yam et al, 1971).

Immunophenotype is mature B cell (CD19, CD20, CD22, CD79a, DBA.44, FMC-7, and surface membrane immunoglobulin [SMIg]) with expression of hairy cell–associated markers CD103, CD25, CD11c, annexin A1 (ANXA1), and (dim) cyclin D1 (Falini et al, 2004). Cells are negative for CD5, CD10, and CD23. Immunoglobulin heavy and light chain genes are rearranged, with somatic mutation of V gene regions. HCL shows consistent *BRAF* V600E mutation (Tiacci et al, 2011; Waterfall et al, 2014).

The clinical course is usually chronic but may be acute or subacute. Median survival is between 5 and 6 years. Traditionally, splenectomy has offered significant benefit to many patients. Treatment with α-interferon provided the first chemotherapy remissions, but 2′-deoxycoformycin and 2-chlordeoxyadenosine now produce more durable remissions.

Splenic B Cell Lymphoma/Leukemia, Unclassifiable

Splenic Diffuse Red Pulp Small B Cell Lymphoma

This is a lymphoma of small B cells with diffuse splenic red pulp involvement and involvement of BM sinusoids and blood. At least some cases were previously referred to as *splenic lymphoma with circulating villous lymphocytes* due to circulating neoplastic cells with short cytoplasmic villi, often with a polar distribution (Fig. 33-50). Neoplastic lymphocytes show clumped chromatin and moderate basophilic cytoplasm. Patients have massive splenomegaly but often low levels of lymphocytosis. Neoplastic cells may circulate in the blood, even in the absence of marrow involvement. The phenotype is B cell with expression of DBA.44 and surface IgG, but usually absent CD103 and absent Annexin A1.

Hairy Cell Leukemia Variant

Most cases of hairy cell variant (HCL-v) are described as lymphoproliferative disorders resembling HCL but with high WBCs and the presence of prominent nucleoli (Sainati et al, 1990), and not closely related biologically. These cases have morphology and clinical features intermediate between HCL and PLL (Fig. 33-51). Response to chemotherapy is poor, but the clinical course is chronic, and remission may be attained with splenectomy. TRAP and CD103 are variable, and CD25 and Annexin A1 are usually negative. A very rare form of variant HCL has been described, mostly in Japanese patients, and is referred to as *Japanese variant*. This disorder shows slightly more prominent nucleoli than typical HCL, but less so than prolymphocytoid variants, also variable CD103 and TRAP, negative CD25, and usually lack of surface Ig. It shows clonal rearrangement of Ig genes and must be distinguished from polyclonal B cell lymphocytosis with similar morphology. Many cases of HCL-v exhibit *MAP2K1* mutations (Waterfall et al, 2014).

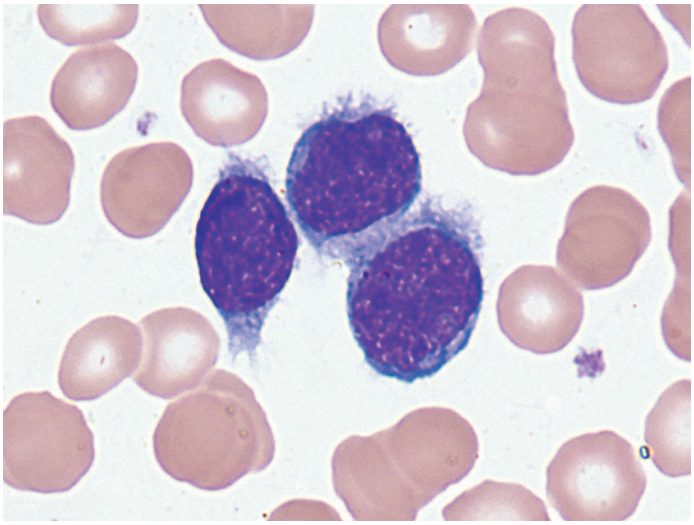


Figure 33-50 Villous lymphocytes (1000×).

Lymphoplasmacytic Lymphoma

Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma (LPL), a term derived from the Kiel classification (Stansfeld et al, 1988), refers to tumors of small lymphocytes with plasmacytoid differentiation and plasma cells, secretion of a monoclonal IgM paraprotein, and lack of CD5 expression. They usually involve BM, lymph nodes, and spleen (Fig. 33-52).

Lymph nodes show diffuse infiltrates of lymphocytes, plasmacytoid lymphocytes, and plasma cells. Proliferation centers are not present, and monocytoid B cells are not seen. The infiltrate may be paracortical with sparing of sinuses. PAS-positive inclusions are often seen in the cytoplasm, and Golgi-centered inclusions frequently invaginate into the nucleus of the lymphoid cells, forming **Dutcher bodies.** Tissue mast cells are frequently increased.

The BM usually shows nodular and/or diffuse interstitial infiltrates of similar cells. Blood involvement may be present, but with lower WBCs than CLL.

The immunophenotype shows B cell markers CD19, CD20, CD22, and CD79a with bright surface and cytoplasmic IgM (occasionally IgG or IgA) but not IgD, and a monoclonal κ or λ light chain. It differs from CLL by absence of CD5 and bright immunoglobulin expression. CD10 and CD23 are also negative; CD38 is positive, and CD43 is variable.

Ig heavy and light chain genes are clonally rearranged, and there is somatic mutation of variable regions, consistent with a postantigen

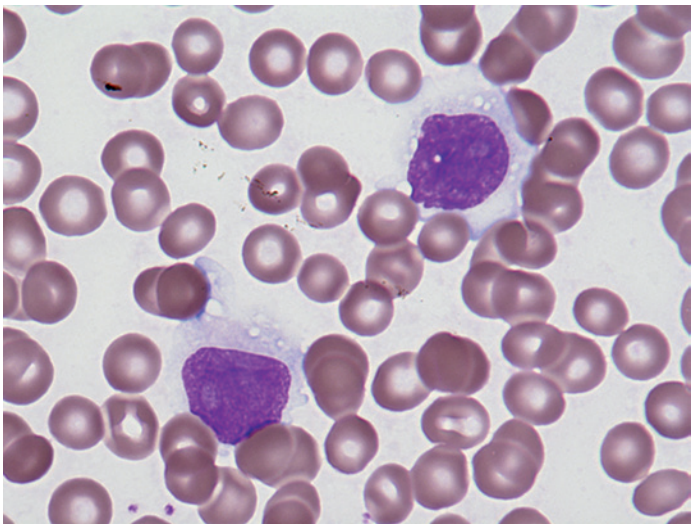


Figure 33-51 Hairy cell leukemia (HCL) variant shows morphology intermediate between usual HCL and prolymphocytic leukemia.

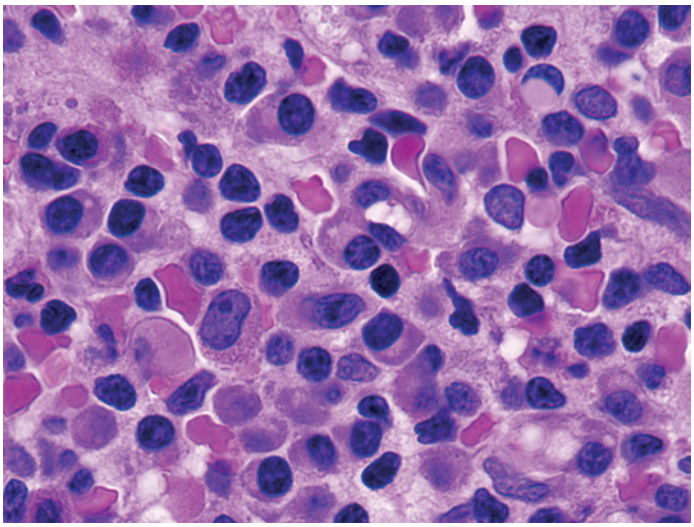


Figure 33-52 **Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma involving the marrow, with associated Waldenström's macroglobulinemia.** Lymphocytes, plasma cells, plasmacytoid lymphocytes, and a rare Dutcher body *(upper right)* can be seen (1000×).

selection (postgerminal center) state of maturation and differing from CLL (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

MYD88 L265P mutation has emerged as a defining genetic feature of LPL, and *CXCR1* mutations also occur (Hamadeh et al, 2015; Patkar et al, 2015; Treon et al, 2014; Varettoni et al, 2013). Del6q21 and trisomy 4 are frequent in LPL, and trisomies 3 and 18 and other abnormalities are sporadically reported.

The term **Waldenström's macroglobulinemia (WM)** refers to LPL with BM involvement and a monoclonal IgM paraprotein. It has a peak incidence between 60 and 70 years of age. Symptoms of increased viscosity include visual disturbances, neurologic symptoms, impaired kidney function, and congestive heart failure. Hemorrhagic phenomena may occur as the result of interference of complexes with platelets and clotting factors. Cryoglobulinemia occurs somewhat more frequently than with myeloma and often results in Raynaud's phenomenon.

Normochromic, normocytic anemia is sometimes associated with thrombocytopenia or pancytopenia. Relative or slight absolute lymphocytosis is usually found. Marked rouleaux formation is evident on the blood film, and the sedimentation rate is usually extremely rapid, although it may be low if macrocryoglobulins are present and the test is carried out at a lower temperature. Anemia is occasionally hemolytic with a positive Coombs' test. Some cases of WM may be due to marginal zone lymphoma, but diagnostic test for *MYD88* mutation will likely clarify this possibility.

Heavy Chain Diseases

A small number of patients produce and excrete heavy chain fragments without associated light chains (Bianchi et al, 2014). Some of these proteins show structural mutations. The classification of associated lymphoproliferative disorders is somewhat ambiguous. Lymphoproliferative disorders associated with γ heavy chain disease often resemble LPL or plasmacytoma; μ heavy chain disease may resemble CLL, and α heavy chain disease is associated with MALT lymphoma.

γ Heavy Chain Disease

γ heavy chain disease (HCD) is a lymphoproliferative disorder characterized by secretion of a truncated γ-chain without light chain binding sites. It presents with lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, fever, and propensity to infection. Anemia is constantly present, often with leukopenia and thrombocytopenia. Atypical lymphocytes or plasma cells are frequently present in the blood, and a few cases have terminated in plasma cell leukemia. The marrow is usually abnormal, with increased plasma cells, lymphocytes, and eosinophils. A rather broad serum protein "spike" has been found in the βγ-region in most patients, accompanied by hypogammaglobulinemia. The diagnosis is made by showing that the protein reacts on immunoelectrophoresis with antisera to γ-chains but not to light chains. The protein is also found in urine in varying amounts, although concentration techniques may be necessary to demonstrate it.

α Heavy Chain Disease

α heavy chain disease appears to be more common than γ-HCD and involves a younger age group. The uniform clinical pattern in most patients is malabsorption and diarrhea accompanying a massive lymphoplasmacytic infiltration of intestinal mucosa, sometimes evolving to large B cell lymphoma. It has also been referred to as Mediterranean abdominal lymphoma and immunoproliferative small intestinal disease (IPSID). In a few patients, the respiratory tract has been involved instead. BM and other lymphoid organs have not been involved. Usually, routine protein electrophoresis is negative, but small amounts of α-chain may be detected in the serum and sometimes in the urine with immunoelectrophoresis. The abnormal protein does not contain light chains. It is most common in Mediterranean areas and is associated with poor living conditions in low socioeconomic groups. Similar to MALT lymphoma, many cases may initiate an infectious antigen-driven proliferation.

μ Heavy Chain Disease

The few patients who have been described with μ heavy chain disease have had chronic lymphocytic leukemia with vacuolated plasma cells in the marrow. Routine serum electrophoresis showed only hypogammaglobulinemia. The μ heavy chain was detected by serum immunoelectrophoresis; it was not found in the urine. In most patients, however, the urine contained κ light chain in large amounts (Franklin, 1975).

Plasma Cell Neoplasms

Clonal neoplasms of mature plasma cells are common neoplasms that have been difficult to treat and are greatly feared. They are now known, however, to consist of a spectrum of disease varying from indolent and nonprogressive to highly aggressive and refractory to therapy. The best measures of disease course are the clinical findings themselves, and treatments using new agents are rapidly evolving to increase efficacy and improve outcome. Major categories now are monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance, smoldering or asymptomatic myeloma, and symptomatic myeloma (Box 33-13).

BOX 33-13

Diagnostic Criteria for Monoclonal Gammopathy of Undetermined Significance, Indolent and Smoldering Myeloma, and Plasma Cell Myeloma

Monoclonal Gammopathy of Undetermined Significance

M-protein in serum <30 g/L
Marrow plasmacytosis <10%
No lytic bone lesions
No myeloma-related symptoms (no CRAB)

Asymptomatic (Smoldering) Myeloma

Serum M-component >30 g/L
Marrow plasmacytosis >10%
No organ or tissue impairment (no CRAB)

Plasma Cell Myeloma

M-protein in serum or urine (no specific level needs to be met)
Bone marrow clonal plasma cells
Organ or tissue impairment (CRAB)

CRAB, Hypercalcemia, renal insufficiency, anemia, or bone lesions.

Monoclonal Gammopathy of Undetermined Significance

Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance is the term utilized when a monoclonal serum immunoglobulin is present but no myeloma is detectable. Most cases (75%) are IgG, with smaller proportions of IgM (15%) and IgA (10%). It is a preneoplastic condition with progression to myeloma in about 1% of affected patients per year. The condition consists of a monoclonal Ig (M-component) of <30 g/L IgG, <10% clonal plasma cells in the marrow, absence of lytic bone lesions, no melanoma-related organ or tissue impairment (CRAB: hypercalcemia, renal insufficiency, anemia, or bone lesions), and no evidence of other B cell lymphoproliferative disorder. Cytogenetic and immunophenotypic abnormalities are similar to those in myeloma, and none is known to be predictive of progression (Landgren, 2013).

Plasma Cell Myeloma

Plasma cell myeloma is a neoplastic proliferation of plasma cells, occurring primarily in the BM. Although plasma cells also proliferate in lymph nodes and spleen, these organs are rarely enlarged. Symptomatic myeloma is defined by the WHO 2008 classification as the presence of M-protein in serum or urine, BM clonal plasma cells or plasmacytoma, and the presence of CRAB.

Multiple myeloma is rare in those younger than 40 years of age. The mean age at the time of diagnosis is 62 years with an equal sex distribution. Bone pain is the most common symptom, and pathologic fractures are frequent. Neurologic symptoms may be prominent from encroachment of tumor that has broken through the bony cortex on spinal nerves or spinal cord. Bone destruction leads to calcium mobilization, with increased calcium in the serum and metastatic calcification. Growth of myeloma cells in the marrow produces multiple tumors, which appear on a radiograph as multiple punched-out osteoporotic lesions; occasionally, the growth is diffuse and appears as diffuse osteoporosis. A propensity to infection is common because of impaired production of antibodies.

There is usually normochromic, normocytic anemia, and normoblasts may be present in the blood. The leukocyte count is slightly decreased, normal, or slightly increased. Occasionally a myeloid left shift to the myeloblast may be noted. The platelet count is usually normal but may be decreased. The most striking feature of the blood film is the marked degree of rouleaux formation.

The BM shows the presence of plasma cells or myeloma cells, ranging from less than 1% to over 90%, depending on the degree of involvement at the site of the aspirated marrow. Diagnosis of myeloma and its variants is based on both pathology and clinical findings, including serum monoclonal immunoglobulin and radiologic evidence of lytic bone lesions. Lytic bone lesions are associated with increased osteoclastic activity,

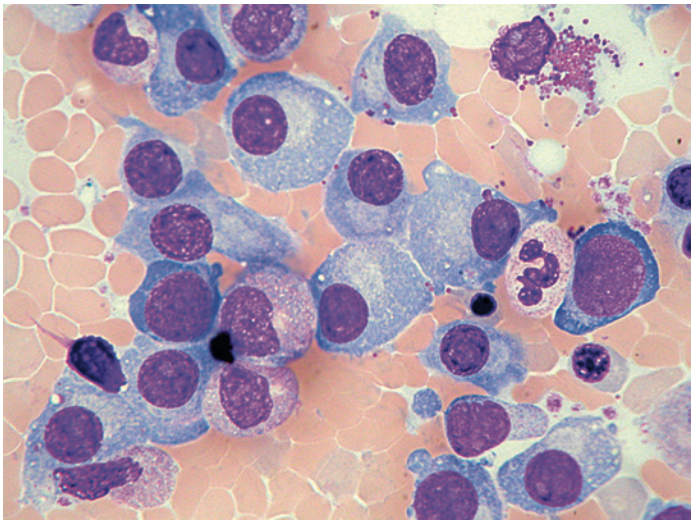


Figure 33-53 Myeloma in the bone marrow showing large plasma cells with nucleoli (1000×).

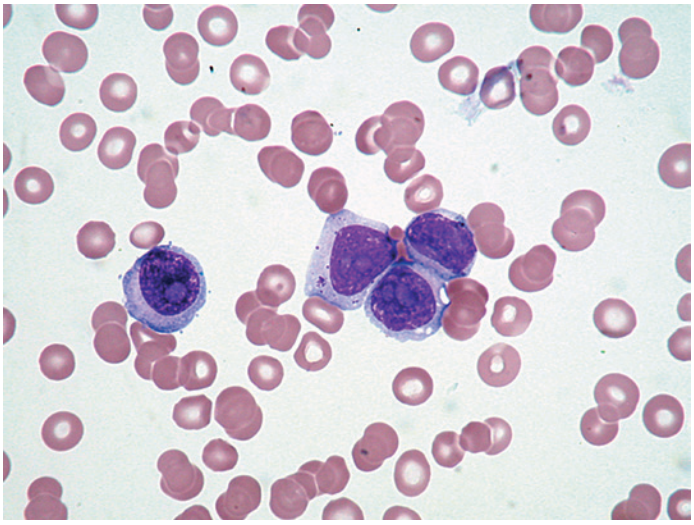


Figure 33-54 Plasma cell leukemia with cells resembling immunoblasts (1000×).

hypercalcemia, and neurologic changes. This may be related to activity of the receptor activator for NF κB (RANK) ligand.

Cytologically, the cells may be indistinguishable from normal plasma cells, but they usually show abnormal chromatin, with less clumping of nuclear chromatin, large nucleoli, lack of perinuclear clear zones, lighter blue cytoplasm, or varying degrees of anaplasia (Fig. 33-53). Immature, plasmablastic, and anaplastic variants are described.

The immunophenotype is variable, most typically with expression of CD38 and CD138, loss of CD19 expression (normally present on plasma cells), and absence of CD20, but with abnormal acquisition of CD56 and often CD117. Immunohistochemical labeling or mRNA in situ hybridization of BM sections for κ and λ usually identifies monoclonal plasma cells. Cyclin D1 expression is associated with t(11;14).

Cytogenetic analysis divides myeloma into two main groups: hyperdiploid with multiple trisomies involving odd-numbered chromosomes and associated with good prognosis; and hypodiploid associated with adverse prognosis. Karyotype and FISH studies show frequent del13q14 (50% of cases), translocations t(4;14) with associated overexpression of *MSET* and *FGFR3*, t(14;16) with associated *MAF* overexpression, t(14;20), or deletion of TP53 (del 17p13) that, along with aneuploidy, are unfavorable. In contrast, t(11;14) or t(6;14) are favorable. Losses of 8, 13, 14, and X are common. Biologic features may be used for prognostic grouping and to identify therapeutic targets (Landgren & Morgan, 2014; Vincent Rajkumar, 2014; Zhou et al, 2009).

Serum globulin is usually increased, often strikingly so. This increase is responsible for the tendency toward rouleaux formation and an elevated ESR. Serum protein electrophoresis usually shows an M-spot, a homogeneous band in the γ- or β-region; less commonly, there is hypogammaglobulinemia (when only light chains are produced by the neoplastic plasma cells). Immunoelectrophoresis indicates that the monoclonal protein is IgG in over 50% of cases, IgA in about 20%, IgD in less than 1%, and IgE very rarely. Roughly 5% of myeloma proteins are cryoglobulins, that is, proteins that precipitate from cooled serum and redissolve on warming. Some tumors secrete free monoclonal light chains (Bence Jones protein), in addition to the whole immunoglobulin molecule, and in about 25%, only light chains are produced. Hypogammaglobulinemia is found in the latter group because light chains are filtered through the renal glomerulus, leaving little or none in the serum, in addition to the fact that immunoglobulin production by nonmalignant plasma cells is greatly reduced. If renal damage has occurred, albumin and whole immunoglobulin molecules are also found in the urine. Excretion of light chains sometimes results in obstruction and loss of nephrons and so-called *myeloma kidney*. Renal insufficiency is common and is the presenting feature of multiple myeloma in some cases. Amyloidosis, which is present in about 10% to 15% of cases of multiple myeloma, may be a factor in renal failure.

Median survival after diagnosis of multiple myeloma has been approximately 3 to 4 years, but new drugs are likely altering this.

Clinical Variants

Asymptomatic (smoldering) myeloma. Smoldering myeloma shows M-protein at myeloma levels (>30 g/L) and/or 10% or more clonal plasma cells in the marrow with no related organ/tissue impairment (CRAB). Patients with solitary plasmacytoma and bone lesions detected only by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) are included. These asymptomatic patients differ from those with MGUS primarily by a higher rate of progression: 10% per year for the first 5 years, 3% for the next 5 years, and then 1% per year (Landgren, 2013).

Nonsecretory myeloma. These patients are similar to others with myeloma, except that tumor cells do not produce (15%) or secrete (85%) immunoglobulin. The incidences of renal insufficiency, hypercalcemia, and depression of normal Ig are less.

Plasma cell leukemia. Often in multiple myeloma, a few plasma cells are found in the peripheral blood. Only in the rare instances of myeloma in which large numbers of plasma cells circulate (either >20% of blood leukocytes, or $>2 \times 10^9$/L) is the term *plasma cell leukemia* used (Fig. 33-54). Patients with plasma cell leukemia tend to have tissue infiltration, advanced-stage disease, and poor survival (Fernandez de Larrea et al, 2013). The immunophenotype varies from usual myeloma in that CD56 is often absent.

Solitary plasmacytoma of bone. These patients show no clinical features of myeloma but may have a monoclonal immunoglobulin without suppression of normal immunoglobulin. Tumors are controlled by radiation, but two thirds of cases eventually progress to myeloma.

Extraosseous plasmacytoma. Extramedullary solitary plasmacytomas occur in the GI tract, bladder, CNS, breast, thyroid, testis, parotid gland, lymph nodes, or skin, and are irradiated. They recur in one quarter of patients but progress to myeloma in only about 15%.

Monoclonal Immunoglobulin Deposition Diseases

Primary Amyloidosis

Primary amyloidosis, an uncommon presentation of plasma cell neoplasms of various types, results from abnormal polymerization of immunoglobulin into β-pleated sheets in connective tissue. A variety of amyloid types occur, including hereditary, secondary associated with chronic inflammation, the type associated with Alzheimer's disease, and others. All amyloid is biochemically composed of an A protein component and a P component. In plasma cell dyscrasia, the A component is derived from immunoglobulin light (L) chains and is referred to as *AL amyloid*. It may be detected by homogeneous pink staining of thickened blood vessels in abdominal fat, BM, rectum, or other tissues. Congo Red stain shows characteristic apple-green birefringence under polarized light. It may also be detected by thioflavin T, antibodies against amyloid P, and antibodies against immunoglobulin light chains. It may involve the heart with subsequent congestive failure, liver with hepatomegaly, kidney with nephrotic syndrome or renal failure, nerves with sensory/motor loss, and other organs. It may occur in overt myeloma (20%), but most often it is seen in patients with disease otherwise fulfilling criteria for MGUS.

Monoclonal Light and Heavy Chain Deposition Diseases

Nonamyloid immunoglobulin deposition may result in organ dysfunction in rare disorders known as *light chain deposition disease (LCDD)* or *heavy chain deposition disease (HCDD)* (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Osteosclerotic Myeloma

This is a syndrome of polyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy, monoclonal gammopathy, and skin changes (POEMS) associated with osteosclerotic multiple myeloma showing marrow fibrosis and sclerosis, and with lymph node changes resembling plasma cell Castleman's disease. The plasma cells usually express λ light chain, and heavy chain is IgG or IgA.

Extranodal Marginal Zone B Cell Lymphoma of Mucosa-Associated Lymphoid Tissue

Extranodal marginal zone B cell lymphoma of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue is an indolent lymphoma of mucosal tissue, including stomach, other GI tract, bronchi, salivary glands, thyroid, skin, and other areas. MALT lymphoma of the stomach is in many cases an antigen-driven clonal B cell proliferation related to infection by *Helicobacter pylori*, which is also associated with gastric ulcer; early cases may respond to antibacterial therapy. Other patients have autoimmune disorders such as Sjögren's syndrome or Hashimoto's thyroiditis. The terminology of MALT lymphomas refers only to those of predominantly small cells, although large cell and other aggressive lymphomas may arise in the same tissues. α heavy chain disease, or IPSID, is considered a special subtype of this disease (see earlier).

Gastric or other mucosa is infiltrated by small lymphocytes that form clusters within the epithelium, referred to as *lymphoepithelial lesions* (Fig. 33-55). Submucosa contains diffuse infiltrates of small lymphocytes, centrocytes, monocytoid lymphocytes, and plasma cells. Germinal centers, apparently reactive to the entire process, are usually present. Plasma cells often are abundant at the periphery of the lesions and generally are monoclonal.

The immunophenotype is B cell (CD19, CD20, CD22, CD79a) with surface Ig. CD5, CD10, bcl-6, and usually CD23 are negative. Bcl-2 is frequently positive, and CD43 is variable. Follicular dendritic cell–associated markers CD21 and CD35 often reveal expanded follicular meshworks and colonized germinal centers. Ig genes are clonal with somatic mutations. Trisomies 3 and 18 occur frequently. Translocation 11;18 creates an *API2-MALT1* fusion and occurs in gastric MALT tumors not responsive to *H. pylori* treatment. Translocations 1;14 and 14;18 deregulate *BCL10* and *MALT1*, respectively. Each translocation deregulates NfKappaB (Isaacson, 2005). These tumors are typically indolent with good response to radiation therapy.

Nodal Marginal Zone Lymphoma

These tumors are derived from post–germinal center marginal zone B cells and show small lymphocytes surrounding reactive follicles and expanding in the interfollicular zones. They may resemble nodal involvement by MALT lymphoma or splenic marginal zone lymphoma (Fig. 33-56). Germinal center colonization is frequent, as are plasma cell differentiation and occasional eosinophilia. Increased large cells may be present and do not apparently affect prognosis, although transformation to diffuse large B cell lymphoma may occur.

The immunophenotype is similar to MALT or SMZL, with surface Ig (IgM/IgD, IgM, less often IgA or IgG), B cell markers (CD19, CD20, CD22, CD79a), expression of CD23, variable CD43, and absence of CD5 or CD10. Bcl-2 is expressed in a majority of cases, and survivin is overexpressed in about 50%, suggesting activation of antiapoptotic pathways. Nodal MZL is heterogeneous at the molecular and immunohistochemical levels (Camacho et al, 2003). Ig heavy and (monotypic) light chain genes are rearranged. Trisomies 3, 7, and 18 may occur, and 5-year survival is greater than 50%.

Pediatric Nodal Marginal Zone Lymphoma

A clinical subtype of nodal marginal zone lymphoma occurs in the pediatric age group, usually in boys, with localized lymphadenopathy of the head and neck. Tumors contain progressively transformed germinal center and resemble reactive lymphadenopathy, but show clonal immunoglobulin gene rearrangement. Children have excellent outcomes with conservative treatment.

Follicular Lymphoma

Follicular lymphoma (FL) is a group of related lymphomas of germinal center–derived B cells. Morphologic distinction between the subgroups is based on the numbers of centroblasts in the neoplastic follicles (Harris et al, 2011).

The overall morphologic pattern (Fig. 33-57) shows recapitulation of lymph node follicles, but with limited diversity of cell type and lack of

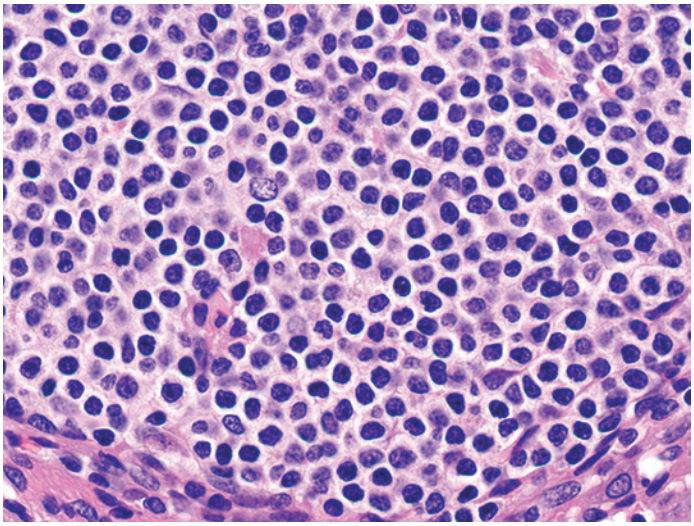


Figure 33-56 Nodal marginal zone lymphoma showing a nodule of monocytoid B cells (200×).

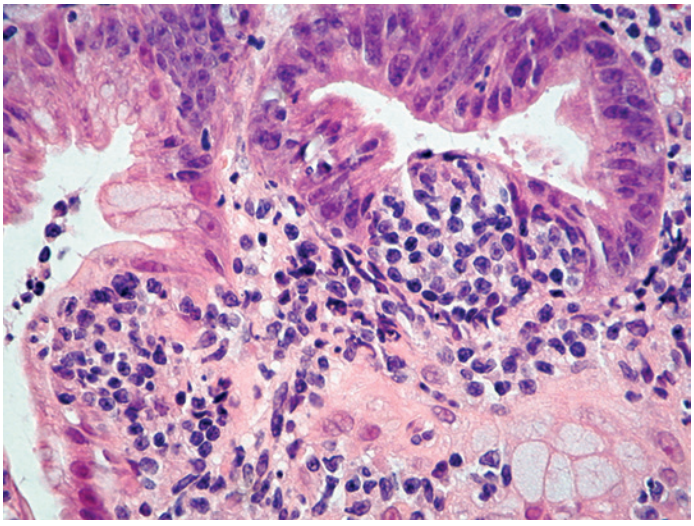


Figure 33-55 Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma with nests in lymphocytes in gastric epithelium (500×).

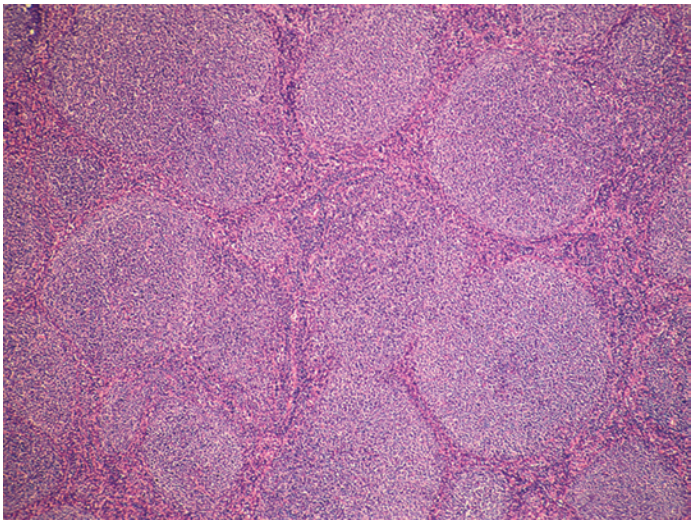


Figure 33-57 Low-power view of follicular lymphoma, recapitulating lymph node germinal centers (200×).

TABLE 33-6
Follicular Lymphoma: Grading and Variants

Grading	Definition
Grade 1	0-5 centroblasts per hpf
Grade 2	6-15 centroblasts per hpf
Grade 3	>15 centroblasts per hpf
3a	Centrocytes present
3b	Solid sheets of centroblasts
Reporting of Pattern	**Proportion Follicular***
Follicular	>75%
Follicular and diffuse	25%-75%
Focally follicular	<25%
Follicular Lymphoma: Variants	
Diffuse large B cell lymphoma with follicular lymphoma	Presence of diffuse areas with >15 centroblasts per hpf

From Swerdlow S, Campo E, Harris N, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, ed 4, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC.
hpf, High-power field of 40× lens with 10 × 18-mm eyepiece or 50× lens with 10 × 22-mm eyepiece (average of 10 fields within follicles).
*Give approximate percentage in report.

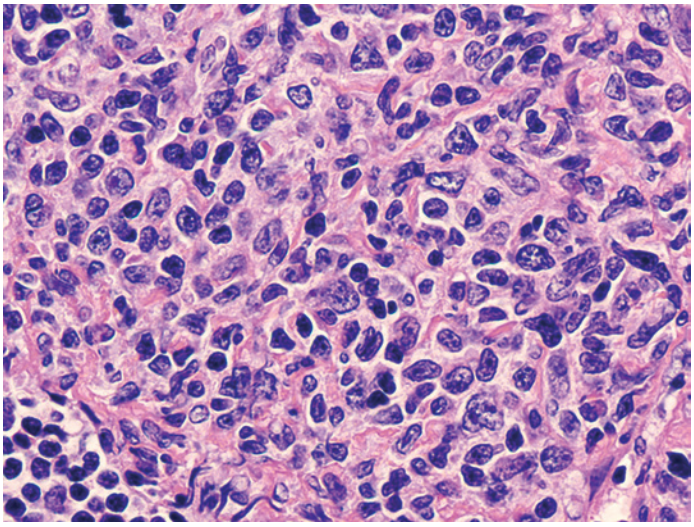


Figure 33-58 **Follicular lymphoma, grade 2, showing centrocytes with 5 to 15 centroblasts per high-power field (hpf).** Grade 1 shows <5 centroblasts per hpf.

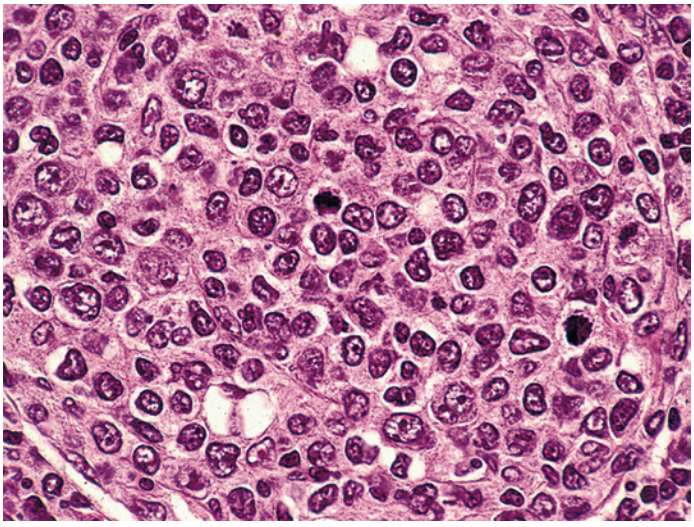


Figure 33-59 **Follicular lymphoma, grade 3a, shows centrocytes with >15 centroblasts per high-power field (hpf) (500×).**

proliferation of other lymph node structures. The tumors generally show crowded follicles of more than usual uniformity, lacking distinct mantles and with little intervening paracortex, and lacking normal germinal center **tingible body** macrophages and polarization. Most often, small irregular cells (small cleaved cells or centrocytes) predominate with variable numbers of admixed large cells (large cleaved and noncleaved cells or centroblasts). There may be diffuse infiltrates as well. The term **follicular** indicates a greater than 75% follicular pattern; **follicular and diffuse** refers to cases that are 25% to 75% follicular; **focally follicular** refers to cases with less than 25% follicular pattern; and **diffuse** indicates that no follicular component is present (Table 33-6). BM involvement is frequent and usually first involves the paratrabecular regions, often in a spotty fashion.

Cytologic grading is based on the average number of centroblasts (CBs) per high-power field (hpf) within neoplastic follicles (Figs. 33-58 and 33-59). It is now recommended that grades 1 and 2 be combined into grade 1-2. An hpf is defined as that with a 40× lens and a 10× ocular with an 18-mm field of view. A 50× lens with a 22-mm 10× ocular, often used in wet hematology, provides a nearly equivalent field of view.

Marginal zone or monocytoid B cell differentiation occurs in up to 10% of cases. It usually appears around follicles and in interfollicular areas and resembles a composite lymphoma. FL shows an immunophenotype of mature B cells with bright monoclonal surface Ig, CD19, CD20, CD22, CD23, CD79a, and CD10 expression. Bcl-2 (cytoplasmic) and bcl-6 (nuclear) are both usually expressed, which helps to separate FL from reactive hyperplasia (bcl-2–negative/bcl-6–positive) and other lymphomas not of germinal center cell (GCC) derivation (bcl-6–negative). CD5 and CD43 are typically absent.

IgH is clonally rearranged along with a light chain Ig gene, and there is t(14;18)(q32;q21) with juxtaposition of IgH and *BCL-2*. Bcl-2 protein is inappropriately expressed, and subsequent inhibition of apoptosis is considered a primary pathogenic mechanism of FL. Deletions of 9p or 17p13 involving TP53 (both associated with large cell transformation) may be seen, and rearrangements or mutations of *BCL6* at 3q27, and abnormalities of X, 1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 12, 13, and 18. Genomic studies show driver mutations of chromatin regulators *KREB2*, *EZH2*, *KMT2D (MLL2)*, and mutations occurring at time of transformation in *EBF1*, *MYD88*, and *TNFAIP3* (Okosun et al, 2014).

Prognosis is variable, with grade 1 and 2 disease generally showing an indolent course but lack of cure. Grade 3 is more aggressive but likely more curable. Attempts to identify patients requiring aggressive therapy have led to a follicular lymphoma international prognostic index (FLIPI) based on age, stage, hemoglobin, number of nodal areas involved, and LDH. Diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL) is considered by WHO authors to be a different entity even when it arises in FL (Swerdlow et al, 2008). In these situations, two diagnoses are recommended, such as "follicular lymphoma, grade 3/3 (75%), with diffuse large B cell lymphoma (25%)," when the DLBCL occupies 25% of the sampled tumor. Leukemic involvement by FL may also occur and is sometimes known as **lymphosarcoma cell leukemia.** Flow cytometry is helpful to distinguish between that, CLL, and leukemic mantle cell or marginal zone lymphomas.

Diffuse follicular lymphoma is essentially a diffuse transformation of grade 1 or 2 FL. Diagnosis requires phenotyping and/or cytogenetic studies to rule out mantle cell or marginal zone lymphoma, and includes previous categories of diffuse small cleaved cell, centrocytic diffuse, diffuse mixed small cleaved, and large cell and centrocytic/centroblastic diffuse.

Follicular lymphoma occurring in the pediatric age group (pediatric follicular lymphoma) is a distinct entity that usually lacks t(14;18) or bcl-2 expression and behaves in an indolent fashion. Most cases are grade 3. Primary intestinal follicular lymphoma may occur in duodenal polyps and is usually indolent, as are many other extranodal follicular lymphomas. Intrafollicular in situ follicular lymphoma of bcl-2–positive follicle cells has been described.

Primary Cutaneous Follicle Center Lymphoma

This is the most common primary cutaneous B cell lymphoma and consists of variably distinct follicular to diffuse lesions in the dermis composed of bcl-6/CD20/CD79a–positive centrocytes and admixed centroblasts, with a background of CD21/CD35 positive follicular dendritic cells. Bcl-2 is usually negative, and CD10 is associated with more distinct follicular patterns. A bcl-2–positive follicular lymphoma in the skin suggests extension of disease from another location. Prognosis is excellent with typical response to radiation.

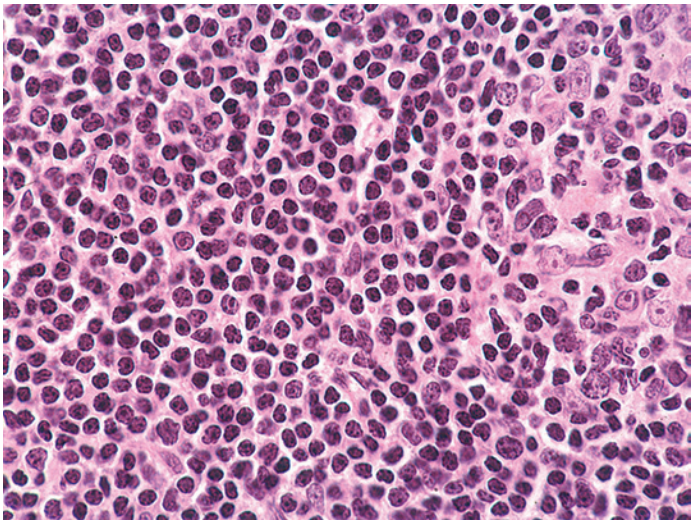


Figure 33-60 Mantle cell lymphoma, showing an expanded mantle around residual germinal center.

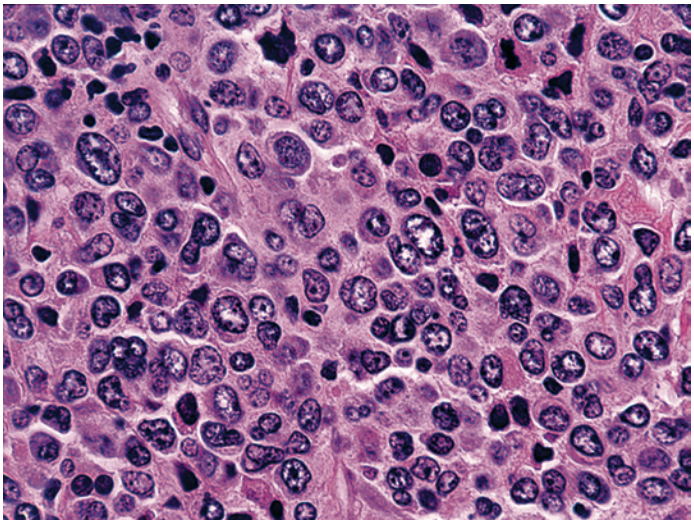


Figure 33-61 Diffuse large B cell lymphoma with centroblasts and admixed centrocytes (500×).

Mantle Cell Lymphoma

Since the REAL classification was published, it has become recognized that mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) is a dangerous form of lymphoma that combines refractoriness to therapy with an aggressive clinical course and poor survival. Refractoriness is likely due in part to strong expression of Bcl-2, also seen in normal mantle cells, follicular lymphomas, and some other leukemias, lymphomas, and solid tumors. Bcl-2 inhibits apoptotic pathways.

The tumor usually shows a diffuse or sometimes mantle zone pattern (Swerdlow et al, 2008). In the mantle zone pattern, atrophic germinal centers are often seen in the center of nodules, and these may be seen as occasional small naked follicles within a diffuse infiltrate. Nuclei are small to medium sized with clumped to moderately dispersed chromatin and a moderately increased mitotic rate. Nuclear membranes are typically slightly irregular with occasional small round and cleaved nuclei also present. Scattered histiocytes with lightly eosinophilic cytoplasm are often present. A blastic or "blastoid" variant shows slightly larger nuclei with blastlike chromatin and a higher mitotic rate, simulating lymphoblastic lymphoma (Fig. 33-60).

These are monoclonal (monotypic surface IgM and IgD) B cells (CD19, CD20, CD22) with characteristic coexpression of CD5 (and CD43) and absence of CD23 or CD200. Bcl-2 and cyclin-D1 are expressed, while bcl-6 and CD10 are negative. Rare cases occur without CD5 expression or without cyclin D1. SOX11 is a useful marker for cyclin D1–negative cases and SOX11-negative MCL may be more indolent than usual MCL.

Immunoglobulin heavy and (monotypic) light chain genes are rearranged. A majority of cases have t(11;14)(q13;q32) involving the Ig heavy chain gene and bcl-1 with overexpression of PRAD-1, which encodes cyclin-D1. The t(11;14) translocation is usually detected by FISH. Complex karyotype, p16 deletion or p53 deletion is often seen in advanced, blastoid or pleomorphic variants. Secondary 8q24 abnormalities, sometimes included among "double hit" lymphomas, are associated with blastic/blastoid morphology and leukemic presentation (Setoodeh et al, 2013; Vose, 2013). BCL-2 rearrangements are absent.

Diffuse Large B Cell Lymphoma, NOS

DLBCL includes a variety of morphologies, all of which share a diffuse pattern, large cells, and mature B cell phenotype (Swerdlow et al, 2008). It occurs in both nodal and extranodal sites and at all ages. It is frequent in immunosuppressed patients (often in association with EBV in these) and is the most common lymphoma of the CNS. Various morphologies are mimicked by peripheral T cell lymphomas, and phenotyping is required for diagnosis.

DLBCL presents with diffuse infiltration by large B cells (nuclei larger than histiocytes or endothelial cell nuclei) with variable morphology. They may be centroblasts and/or centrocytes with scant cytoplasm and multiple nucleoli (centroblastic morphologic variant) (Fig. 33-61). Some cases show plasmacytoid immunoblasts with large nuclei, one or more prominent nucleoli, and abundant amphophilic cytoplasm that may be eccentric (immunoblastic variant). Other cases of DLBCL show polymorphic cell morphology with large and small cells and Reed-Sternberg–like giant cells

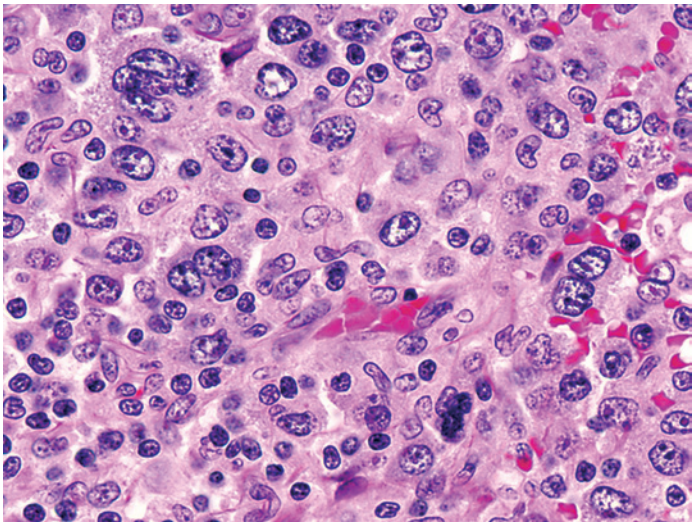


Figure 33-62 Diffuse large B cell lymphoma, with polymorphism and Reed-Sternberg–like cells (1000×).

(anaplastic variant) (Fig. 33-62). Still others occasionally show large cells with clear cytoplasm.

Neoplastic cells show surface Ig, sometimes cytoplasmic Ig, and B cell markers (CD19, CD20, CD22, CD79a). CD30 is occasionally present in variable numbers of cells. CD20 expression by immunohistochemistry (IHC) is usually very helpful in paraffin-section diagnosis. CD10 and/or BCL6 suggests germinal center differentiation, and IRF4/MUM1 suggests post–germinal center differentiation.

In DLBCL, Ig heavy and (monotypic) light chain genes are rearranged. Bcl-2 and/or bcl-6 abnormalities and protein expression are frequent (Skinnider et al, 1999; Capello et al, 2000).

Gene array studies have separated DLBCL into at least four major expression groups; germinal center B cell (GCB), activated B cell (ABC)-like, type 3, and mediastinal large B cell (MLBC) lymphoma. Of the first three, GCB shows better response to therapy than ABC or type 3. *BCL2* and *BCL6* are in the gene cluster of GCC-like tumors, and may be surrogates for this category. GC cases frequently show the t(14;18) translocation, deletion of *PTEN*, amplification of the miR-17-92 cluster, and/or TP53 mutations. *EZH2*, *MLL2* and *CREBBP* mutations are found in over 20%, and *MEF2* mutations in 12% (Jardin, 2014). ABC type often shows t(3;14) translocation, trisomy 3, deletion of the *INK4A-ARF* locus, and BCL2 amplification, and shares *MLL2* mutations with GCB in about 30%. Genomic studies in DLBCL also show frequent abnormalities of DNA methyltransferases (*DNMT1-3*), histone deacetylases and methyltransferases, and transcription repressor *EZH2* that are targetable with azacytidin, histone deacetylase inhibitors (HDACs), and other targeted drugs (Cerchietti & Leonard, 2013).

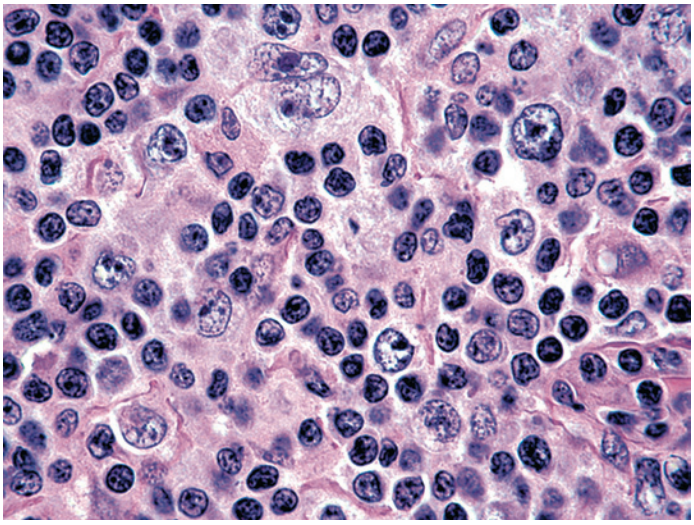


Figure 33-63 T cell and histiocyte-rich large B cell lymphoma resembles lymphocyte-predominant Hodgkin lymphoma, but is diffuse and most small cells are T cells (500×).

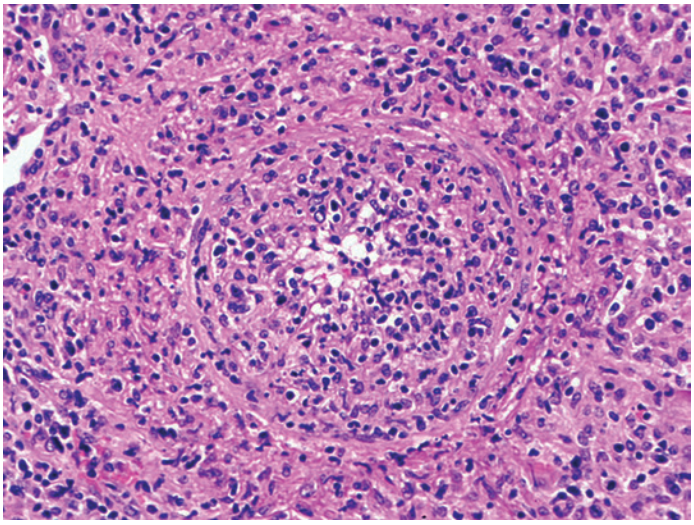


Figure 33-64 Lymphomatoid granulomatosis, showing a polymorphous angiodestructive pulmonary infiltrate (200×). (Courtesy Dr. Anna-Luise Katzenstein.)

Subgrouping by immunophenotyping roughly follows expression grouping. Cases with CD10 expression (>30% of cells) or CD10-, BCL-6+, and IRF4/MUM1 are considered germinal center types. All others are non–germinal center types. A variety of other specific types of DLBCL are also described by the WHO classification, as follows (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

T Cell/Histiocyte-Rich Large B Cell Lymphoma

T cell/histiocyte-rich large B cell lymphoma (TCHRLBCL) is characterized by a diffuse infiltrate of large B cells scattered among small T cells and histiocytes (Fig. 33-63). Large B cells constitute 10% or less of total cells, while T cells constitute the majority (Tousseyn & De Wolf-Peeters, 2011). The neoplastic cells may appear as centroblasts or immunoblasts or resemble lymphocyte and histiocytic (L&H) cells of LPHL, and include Reed-Sternberg–like cells (see Fig. 33-62). It is often difficult to distinguish it from nodular lymphocyte–predominant HL (NLPHL), but the distinction is important, as this is a usually aggressive tumor that presents with advanced stage, while lymphocyte-predominant HL (LPHL) is often localized and indolent and requires less therapy. The phenotype is similar to LPHL, with CD20, CD79a, and epithelial membrane antigen (EMA) positivity. J-chain, Oct-2, and BOB-1 are also expressed. Surface/cytoplasmic Ig, if monoclonal, is somewhat helpful, but LPHL is also now considered a clonal B cell disease. Helpful distinctions are the diffuse infiltrate, T cell background, lack of CD3/CD57 rosettes around neoplastic cells in a nodular B cell background as seen in nodular LPHL, lack of residual IgD-positive mantle cells, and lack of a follicular dendritic meshwork by CD21/CD23/CD35 staining. Advanced-stage presentation also suggests TCHRLBCL, but rare cases of NLPHL may present with disseminated disease.

Primary DLBCL of the CNS

CNS DLBCL usually presents in middle age as supratentorial tumors with various neurologic symptoms. Homogeneous to focally necrotic on MRI, they frequently show characteristic perivascular tumor cell accumulations on biopsy. These express pan–B cell markers with BCL-6 and strong IRF4/MUM1 positivity in most and variable BCL-2 expression, and they are typically EBV negative. Tumors typically respond to modern chemotherapy. MYD88 mutations are present in more than 35% (Jardin, 2014).

Primary Cutaneous DLBCL, Leg Type

These are aggressive B cell lymphomas that typically arise in older adults, women more often than men, and often on the lower legs, although they may occur anywhere in the skin. They are composed of monotonous sheets of large B cells with expression of pan–B cell markers, with monotypic Ig, strong BCL2, IRF4/MUM1, and FOX-P1. BCL-6 is usually positive, and CD10 negative. NGS studies show mutations in the ***CD79B, MYD88,*** and ***CARD11*** genes (Jardin, 2014).

EBV-Positive DLBCL of the Elderly

These are DLBCLs arising in patients older than 50 years of age and associated with EBV. Histology varies from mostly large cells to a more polymorphic distribution of cell sizes, often geographic necrosis, with EBV demonstrable by antibody staining for EBV LMP-1 and by ISH for EBV-encoded ribonucleotides. CD10 and BCL6 are negative, IRF4/MUM1 is usually positive, and CD30 is frequently expressed. NFkappaB is generally activated (Ok et al, 2013). These aggressive tumors are similar to DLBCL arising in immunosuppressed patients, and a form of age-related immunosuppression is surmised. There is, correspondingly, a spectrum of age-related EBV-associated lymphoid proliferations varying from reactive hyperplasia to overt lymphoma (Dojcinov et al, 2011).

DLBCL Associated with Inflammation

This is another EBV-associated tumor that arises in situations with protracted chronic inflammation, the prototype being pyothorax-associated lymphoma (PAL). Features are similar to EBV+ DLBCL of the elderly.

Lymphomatoid Granulomatosis

This is an angiocentric lymphoproliferative disorder involving the lung and/or other sites, including the brain, kidney, liver, skin, upper respiratory tract, and GI tract (Katzenstein et al, 1979). It is considered to be an EBV-driven B cell neoplasm with a prominent reactive T cell component, sometimes in a setting of immunosuppression (Katzenstein & Peiper, 1990; Wilson et al, 1996). It has histologic features similar to NK/T cell lymphoma of nasal type (Pittaluga et al, 2008).

Presentation is usually cough, dyspnea, and chest pain with constitutional symptoms, including fever, malaise, weight loss, GI symptoms, myalgias, and neurologic symptoms. Bilateral mid to lower lung nodules are most commonly seen, often with nodules in the brain, kidney, skin, and subcutaneous tissue.

Histology shows an angiocentric and angiodestructive infiltrate of polymorphic lymphocytes, plasma cells, immunoblasts, and histiocytes, with inconspicuous neutrophils and eosinophils and without well-formed granulomas. Fibrinoid necrosis of vessels is often seen (Fig. 33-64), as is tissue infarction.

Immunophenotyping shows variable numbers of CD79a, usually CD20-positive B cells with EBV LMP-1 and EBER expression, variable CD30, and lack of CD15. A majority of background cells are reactive T cells with CD4 predominance. Higher-grade lesions (with more B cells) show clonal rearrangement of the IgH receptor genes. T cell receptor genes are not clonally rearranged.

Grading is related to the number of clonal EBV-positive lymphocytes. Grade I lesions are polymorphic with only occasional large cells. Grade II is mixed with large pleomorphic cells in a mixed inflammatory background. Grade III is essentially diffuse large B cell lymphoma.

Outcome is variable, with waxing and waning, sometimes spontaneous remissions, and often progression to pulmonary failure in a median of 2 years. Appropriate therapy is related to determination of grade. Grade III lesions are treated with systemic chemotherapy, and grades I and II may be treated with α-interferon.

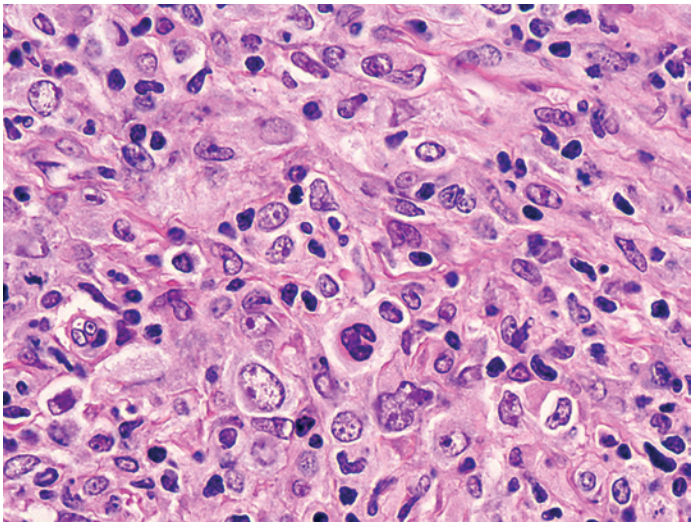


Figure 33-65 Mediastinal large B cell lymphoma with sclerosis (500×).

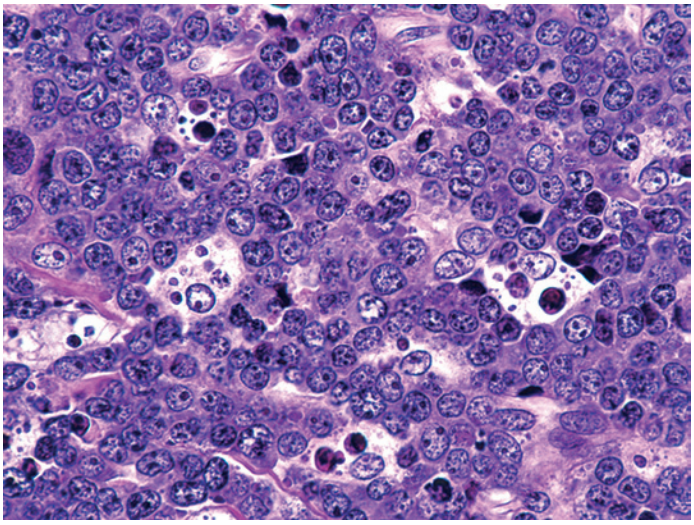


Figure 33-66 Burkitt lymphoma (500×).

Primary Mediastinal (Thymic) Large B Cell Lymphoma

Primary mediastinal (thymic) large B cell lymphoma (PMBL) often appears in young adulthood to middle age and is more frequent in women. Histology is variable, but diffuse or compartmentalizing sclerosis is frequent, and clear cells, multilobulated cells, or Reed-Sternberg–like cells may be present (Fig. 33-65). Symptoms are often related to location, with airway compression or superior vena cava syndrome and often local invasion and local recurrence after therapy. CD45, CD19, and CD20 are expressed, but not CD5 or CD10 (Swerdlow et al, 2008). CD30 is expressed in some cases, but not with the phenotype of classical HL. Ig genes are clonally rearranged; *IgV* and *Bcl-6* gene hypermutations are consistent with GCC cell derivation but occur similarly to normal thymic B cells (Csernus et al, 2004). Gene expression array analysis shows MLBCL to be similar to nodular sclerosis classical HL (Savage et al, 2003). Mutations of *PTPN*1 are frequent (Jardin, 2014).

Intravascular Large B Cell Lymphoma

Intravascular large B cell lymphoma is a rare tumor that is largely restricted to the intravascular lumina of small vessels (Swerdlow et al, 2008). It is very aggressive, widely disseminated at diagnosis, and often undiagnosed until autopsy. Findings often include hemorrhage, thrombosis, and/or necrosis of tissues throughout the body, with tumor only inconspicuously present in the small vessels. B cell markers are expressed (CD19, CD20, CD22, D79a) and CD5 in some. Rare T cell cases are described. Diagnosis is difficult but may be made from blood by morphology and flow cytometry (Patel et al, 2014).

ALK-Positive Large B Cell Lymphoma

These are diffuse large B cell lymphomas with expression of full-length ALK protein and plasmablastic or anaplastic morphology. Most described cases show t(2;17)(p23;q23) with clathrin gene involvement (CLTL-ALK); other rare abnormalities include t(2;5)(p23;q23), as in typical ALCL. They are of B cell derivation with expression of CD79a but absent CD20 and frequently lack CD30 expression (Chikatsu et al, 2003; De Paepe et al, 2003; Gascoyne et al, 2003). Molecular studies show constitutive STAT3 activation with a plasmablastic differentiation program of BLIMP1, XBP1, and C-Myc expression, but not PAX-5 and without Myc translocation (Valera et al, 2013).

Plasmablastic Lymphoma

Plasmablastic lymphoma shows immunoblastic morphology with expression of plasma cell antigens CD38 and CD138 and is frequently but not always associated with EBV. CD20, CD45, and PAX5 are weak to absent, but CD79a and IRF4/MUM1 are positive. There is cytoplasmic IgG. It has an aggressive behavior and has been reported primarily in the oral cavity of HIV patients, but is now known to occur in other patients and other locations as well. Patients with HIV, immunocompetent patients, and posttransplant patients show different frequency levels or frequency of EBV, CD45 expression, and C-myc aberrations (Morscio et al, 2014).

Large B Cell Lymphoma Arising in HHV8-Associated Multicentric Castleman's Disease

This tumor, arising in multicentric Castleman's disease and frequently in patients with HIV, resembles an IgM-producing plasmablastic lymphoma. CD20 and CD38 are variably expressed, CD79a and CD138 are negative, and EBER is negative. HHV-8 is detectable by IHC. The disease is aggressive.

Primary Effusion Lymphoma

This is another rare tumor presenting in serous effusions but without tumors. Cytology is usually immunoblastic or anaplastic. It is associated with the Kaposi sarcoma virus human herpesvirus-8 (HHV-8) in immunodeficient patients. Tumor cells label as B cells and have Ig rearrangements, though T cell varieties have been reported. EBV can usually be detected using in situ hybridization (ISH) (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Burkitt Lymphoma

BL was first described in the jaws of African children by Dennis Burkitt in 1958 (Burkitt, 1958; Ferry, 2006). It represents approximately one third of pediatric NHL, but also occurs in adults. Several epidemiologic types of BL exist. The prototype is **endemic** BL, which occurs predominantly in children in Africa and other equatorial regions and is associated with EBV. **Sporadic** BL occurs worldwide in children and adults and is not usually associated with EBV. Patients with HIV or other immune suppression often have EBV-related BL, which is, however, different from the endemic form at the molecular level. BL is a highly proliferative tumor that grows very rapidly.

The tumor shows a diffuse infiltrate with pushing borders of medium-sized relatively uniform cells with round to oval nuclei containing three to five moderately prominent nucleoli in relatively clear parachromatin (Fig. 33-66). Cytoplasm is moderate and basophilic, and tends to square off between adjacent cells. Lipid-laden cytoplasmic vacuoles are seen in imprints (Fig. 33-67). Both high mitotic and high apoptotic rates are noted, along with a prominent pattern of "starry sky" macrophages. In most cases, the histology is distinctive, but some overlap is seen with both DLBCL and occasionally lymphoblastic lymphoma.

Burkitt leukemia/lymphoma exhibits leukemic cells with moderately clumped chromatin and basophilic vacuolated cytoplasm (see Fig. 33-66) with surface immunoglobulin restricted to one light chain. Typically, they show lack of TdT, presence of B cell antigens CD19, CD22, CD20, CD79a, and often CD10, and expression of monoclonal surface Ig. Rare cases show lack of surface membrane immunoglobulin or expression of TdT, and these require cytogenetic confirmation. Burkitt leukemia/lymphoma shows very high proliferative rates and rapid disease progression. Although the condition is rapidly fatal if untreated, recent results of therapy in pediatric patients have shown long-term survival of better than 90% (Patte et al, 2001). Outcome in adults has also improved (Rizzieri et al, 2014).

Burkitt leukemia/lymphoma shows characteristic cytogenetic abnormalities consisting of translocation of c-myc on chromosome region 8q24

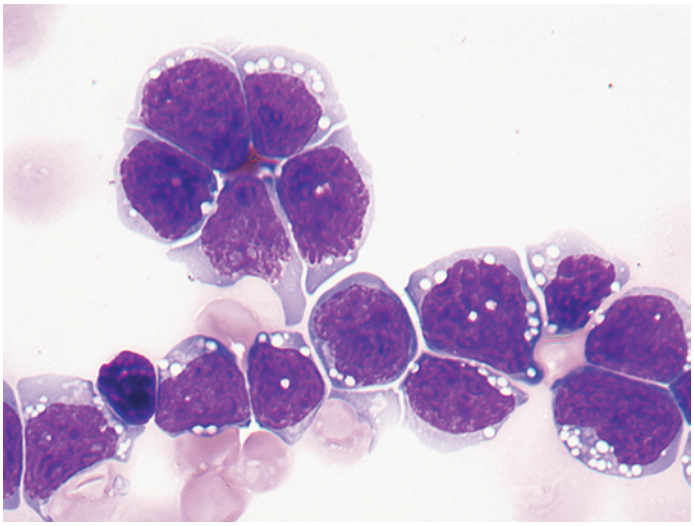


Figure 33-67 Burkitt lymphoma cytology (1000×).

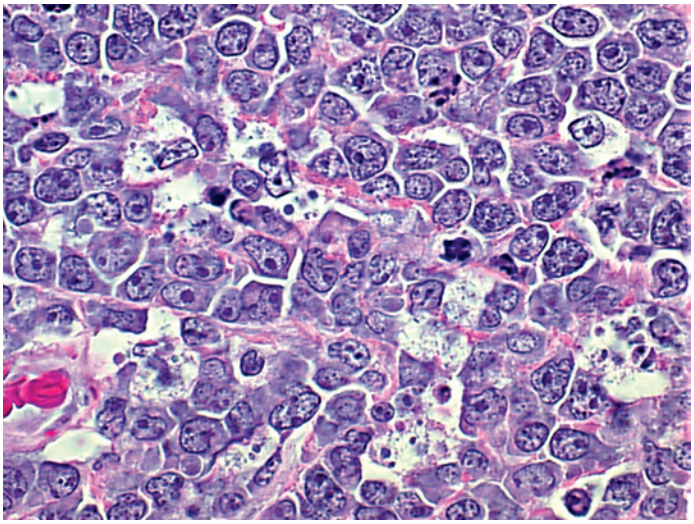


Figure 33-68 Atypical Burkitt or Burkitt-like lymphoma, with moderate pleomorphism and increased numbers of prominent nucleoli (500×).

to one of the immunoglobulin genes (heavy chain-14q32, kappa-2q11, or lambda-22q11) to give t(8;14), t(2;8), or t(8;22). Most cases show t(8;14)(q24;q32). C-myc promotes both proliferation and apoptosis and presumably causes uncontrolled proliferation of immunoglobulin-bearing B cells. Genomic studies show additional involvement of *TCF3* activation, with downstream effects on *PTPN6 (SHP1)*, tonic B-cell receptor (BCR) stimulation of PI3K signaling, and *CCND3* transactivation (Schmitz et al, 2014). BL is sensitive to chemotherapy, however.

B Cell Lymphoma, Unclassifiable, with Features Intermediate between DLBCL and Burkitt Lymphoma

Cases of lymphoma occur with histologic and clinical features intermediate between Burkitt and large B cell lymphoma. The histology is similar to BL, except that generally more pleomorphism is seen with the presence of large cells (up to 25%) and medium-sized cells, and with greater irregularity of nuclei and more prominent nucleoli than in typical Burkitt (Fig. 33-68). Cytoplasm is usually less distinct than in BL.

This category includes many cases of so-called "double-hit" lymphoma in which Bcl-2 and C-myc translocations are both present, imparting a poor prognosis (Li et al, 2013; Smith et al, 2010). Those with *BCL2* translocation and C-MYC overexpression but not translocation are also aggressive but are poorly defined. In children, such cases are generally treated as Burkitt lymphoma and may be treated more aggressively than DLBCL in adult patients.

B Cell Lymphoma, Unclassifiable, with Features Intermediate between DLBCL and Classical Hodgkin Lymphoma

These are essentially **gray zone tumors** with overlap features that prevent precise diagnosis. Mediastinum is often involved, and the differential diagnosis is usually between PMBL and classical HL. These disorders have shown overlap by gene expression studies, so it is not surprising that morphologic overlap occurs.

MATURE T CELL AND NATURAL KILLER CELL NEOPLASMS

T cell and NK cell lymphomas and leukemias are a diverse group of neoplasms that are uncommon to rare compared with B cell lymphomas. Although they account for only about 12% of lymphomas overall, an approximately equal number of categories is recognized by the WHO. Most of these are typified by clonal rearrangement of genes encoding CD3. True NK cell neoplasms do not, however, show clonal rearrangement of T cell receptor genes by clinical methods. Features of major T and NK neoplasms are summarized in Table 33-7. Most are highly malignant, although some indolent diseases are also in this category (Gaulard & de Leval, 2014).

A majority of postthymic (peripheral) T cells express αβ-chains of the T cell receptor (TCR); a small minority do not, but rather express γδ-chains. NK cells express only ε-chains with cytoplasmic CD3. T cell clonality studies in the laboratory usually focus on γδ-receptor rearrangement, which is present in all or most T cells. This is because in early T cell development, the γ- and β-chain genes rearrange simultaneously, with TCR commitment dependent on expression of surrogate α-chain and development of a pre-TCR (Kang et al, 1998; Kreslavsky et al, 2010). Flow cytometry assays using antibodies for each TCR V beta family is also useful and rapid (Tembhare et al, 2011).

Mature αβ T cells express CD2, CD3, CD5, CD7, and either CD4 or CD8. They are negative for TdT and CD1. Normal resting lymphoid tissue usually shows a CD4/CD8 ratio of 2:1. Differentiation to one or the other in the thymus involves activation or silencing of CD4 or CD8 from $CD4^+/CD8^+$ cells, but is poorly understood (Yasutomo et al, 2000). Primarily mature CD4 cells proliferate in the postthymic environment (Foa et al, 1980). The CD4/CD8 ratio drops in acute inflammation and rises to often high levels in recovery and chronic inflammation, so that these are not good markers of clonality. Peripheral T cell neoplasms often lose expression of a normal pan–T cell antigen such as CD7 and show predominance of CD4 or CD8 (Knowles, 1989). Care must be taken to distinguish abnormal αβ T cells from normal NK cells.

γδ T cells typically are doubly negative for CD4 and CD8 and are also often CD5 negative with CD2 expression and show a maturation sequence of CD7. Because they usually account for only 1% to 2% of normal T cells, an increase in these cells is a suspicious finding in itself. NK cells are highly variable in expression of pan–T cell antigens CD2 and CD7, are often CD5 negative, and typically express CD16 (a low-affinity Fc receptor also found on monocytes and granulocytes), with variable CD56 and CD57. CD3 is detectable in the cytoplasm with polyclonal antibodies but is also present on the surface in some NK neoplasms. Cytotoxic granule constituents TIA-1, granzyme-B, and perforin are usually present in NK cells and cytotoxic T cells.

T-Prolymphocytic Leukemia

T-prolymphocytic leukemia is an uncommon disorder with a median age of 69 years, and the disease is slightly more frequent in males than in females. Patients present with a marked lymphocytosis (>100 × 10^9/L), anemia, and thrombocytopenia. In most cases, the neoplastic cell is a prolymphocyte with a prominent **punched-out** nucleolus showing distinct perinucleolar chromatin and moderately abundant cytoplasm. In approximately 20% of patients, however, the lymphocytes lack distinctive features and do not possess a prominent nucleolus. Hepatosplenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, and skin involvement are common.

The immunophenotype is most often CD4+ peripheral T cell (60%), with CD4/CD8 coexpression in 25%, and CD8+ in 15%. CD7 is strong, and surface CD3 weak.

There is clonal TCR αβ (and γδ) rearrangement. In all, 80% show inv(14)(q11;q32), and 10% t(14;14)(q11;q32) involve TCR αβ locus and oncogenes TCL1 and TCL1b. Chromosome 8 abnormalities t(8;8)(p11-12;q12) or trisomy 8q is seen in 70%; other abnormalities include t(X;14)(q28;q11) and deletions at 11q23.

TABLE 33-7

Key Features of the Major Mature T and NK Cell Neoplasms

Lymphoma	Demographics; Clinical and Laboratory Presentations	Morphology	CELL SURFACE MARKERS (TYPICAL PROFILE)		Gene Rearranged, Involved
			Positive	Negative	
T cell PLL	M > F; median age, 65 years; lymphocytosis >100 × 10^3/μL, anemia, thrombocytopenia, HSM, skin lesions	Prolymphocyte	CD7; CD4 (60%), CD4/8 (25%), CD8 (15%)		TCR-γδ TCR-αβ inv(14)(q11;q32)
LGL leukemia	Median age, 63 years; neutropenia causing infection, anemia, mild lymphocytosis (>2 × 10^3/μL)	Moderately sized cell with condensed chromatin, abundant pale blue cytoplasm, azurophilic granules	CD3, CD8, CD57, TCR-γδ; some variants are CD4+ or CD4/8+ or CD4/8–	CD4	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ
Aggressive NK cell leukemia	Asian teens to young adults; constitutional symptoms, HSM, variable WBC count	Variable, may resemble LGL cells or appear blastic	cCD3ε, CD2, CD56	sCD3, 57	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ Clonal EBV, del(6)(q21;q25)
Adult T cell leukemia/lymphoma	Associated with HTLV-1, frequent in Japan, Caribbean, Central Africa; acute variant with skin, lymph node involvement, hypercalcemia	Moderately large blastic cells with convoluted nuclei (floret cells), agranular, basophilic cytoplasm	CD2, CD3, CD4, CD5, CD25, often CD30	CD 7, 8	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ
Extranodal NK/T cell lymphoma, nasal type	Most prevalent in Asia, Native Americans of Mexico and Central and South America	Angiocentric and destructive, involving upper aerodigestive tract	CD2, CD56, cytotoxic granules, cyto CD3ε	Surface CD3	Germline receptor genes
Enteropathy-associated T cell lymphoma	All ages and regions; increased in celiac disease (may present concurrently), jejunum and ileum	Large cells with inflammatory background, occasionally monomorphic (type II) medium-sized cells	CD3, CD7, CD103; CD3, CD8, CD56 (type II)	CD4, CD5	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ
Hepatosplenic T cell lymphoma	Rare, increased in adolescents and young adults and with chronic immunosuppressive therapy; involves liver/spleen/marrow	Medium-sized cells involving splenic red pulp and sinuses of liver and marrow	CD3, CD8±, CD56±	CD4, CD5, often CD4/CD8 double negative	TCR-γδ
Subcutaneous panniculitis-like T cell lymphoma	Rare, F > M; subcutaneous panniculitis with neoplastic cells	Involves fat lobules, spares septa, variable-sized monomorphic cells, rimming of fat cells, histiocytes	CD3, βF1, CD8, cytotoxic granules	CD4, CD56	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ
PTCL, NOS	Peripheral nodes, disseminated disease, sometimes cutaneous	Varies in cell size and from polymorphic to monomorphous	Variable with CD3, CD4, other pan-T cell markers	CD7, CD5, others often lost	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ
Angioimmunoblastic T cell lymphoma	Middle-aged and elderly; generalized disease, systemic symptoms, hypergammaglobulinemia	Partial nodal effacement involving paracortex, increased venules, clear cell clusters, EBV+ B cells	CD3, CD2, CD5, CD4, (reactive CD8), CD10, CXCL13	CD8	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ +3, +5, +X
Mycosis fungoides/Sézary syndrome (SS)	M > F, middle-aged to older; dermatitis progressing to ulcerated lesions; PB involvement in SS	Dermal bandlike infiltrates of lymphocytes with cerebriform nuclei, microabscesses	CD2, CD3, CD4	CD7, CD8	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ
Primary cutaneous CD30-positive lymphoproliferative disorder	M > F, adults to elderly; limited to skin lesions	Polymorphic lymphoid cells, some anaplastic	CD4, CD30	Often CD2, CD3, CD5, ALK	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ
Anaplastic large cell lymphoma	M > F, teens, young adults; peripheral, abdominal adenopathy, extranodal and BM involvement, frequent B symptoms	Pleomorphic large cells, wreathlike nuclei, multiple nucleoli, abundant cytoplasm	CD30 (cytoplasmic and Golgi), CD2, CD4, CD5	CD3, CD7, EBV	TCR-γδ TCR-αβ t(2;5)(p23;q35) Other variants involve 2p23

BM, Bone marrow; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *HSM,* hepatosplenomegaly; *HTLV,* human T lymphotropic virus type 1; *LGL,* large granular lymphocyte; *NK,* natural killer; *NOS,* not otherwise specified; *PB,* peripheral blood; *PLL,* prolymphocytic leukemia; *PTCL,* peripheral T cell lymphoma; *TCR,* T cell receptor; *WBC,* white blood cell.

T-prolymphocytic leukemia is a rapidly progressive malignancy with survival usually less than 1 year. Recent progress has been made with new therapies, including alemtuzumab (Campath-1H) (Dearden, 2012).

Large Granular Lymphocyte Leukemia

This is a clonal proliferation of CD3(+) cytotoxic T-lymphocytes, and sometimes CD3(–) NK cells (Zhang & Loughran, 2012). The median age is 63 years, and 60% to 70% of patients are symptomatic with recurrent infections due to neutropenia. Anemia or rheumatoid arthritis is also common. Lymphocytosis is usually mild (up to 20 × 10^9/L), and lymphocyte number may be normal. Large granular lymphocyte (LGL) cells are usually at least 2 × 10^9/L. Chronic neutropenia is frequent, splenomegaly may be present, and there may be anemia and/or thrombocytopenia. LCLs are at least relatively increased and show moderate size with abundant light blue cytoplasm and condensed chromatin. Azurophilic cytoplasmic granules vary in number and size (Fig. 33-69). The BM exhibits a moderate

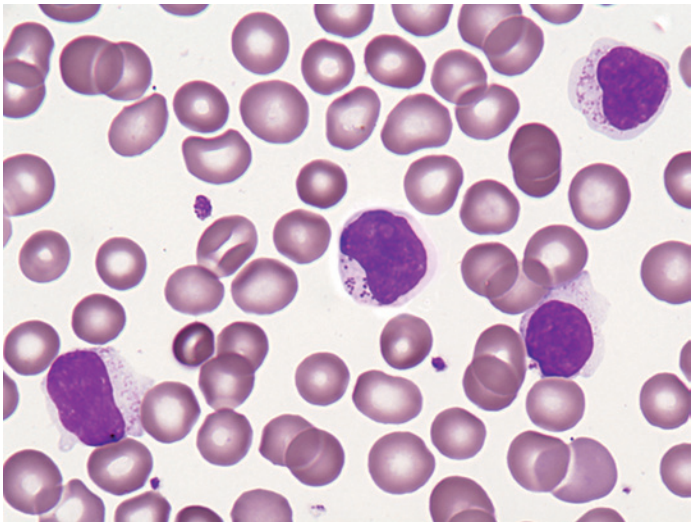


Figure 33-69 Large granular lymphocyte leukemia (1000×).

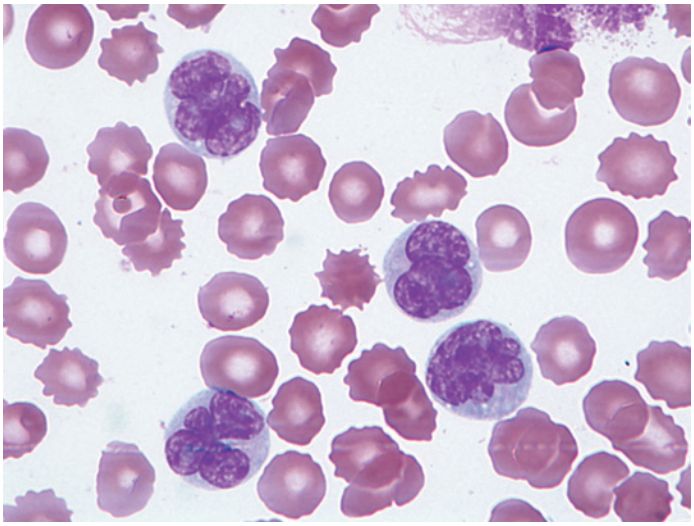


Figure 33-70 Natural killer cell leukemia in an adult, with floret cells resembling adult T cell leukemia.

interstitial infiltrate of granulated lymphocytes. Erythroid and myeloid elements may be normal or hypoplastic in occasional cases. The spleen typically shows red pulp infiltrates. The common variant is CD3/CD8/CD57/TCR alpha-beta+; CD4-negative. Benign LGL lymphocytosis following bone marrow transplantation is not unusual.

TCR γ-gene rearrangement is usually clonal by PCR, and TCR-β is also usually rearranged. Although a single clonal band usually confirms a suspicious diagnosis, PCR assays may show a dominant clone emerging from an oligoclonal population of autoimmune origin. This, along with a typically indolent course, makes cases with low WBCs very difficult to diagnose. Therapy is generally based on low-dose methotrexate or cyclophosphamide.

Chronic Lymphoproliferative Disorders of NK Cells

Chronic lymphocytosis of LCLs of NK phenotype occurs rarely. These are generally indolent asymptomatic processes that come to light as incidental findings or may be associated with neutropenia and/or anemia. They resemble LGL leukemia but are CD3 negative, with expression of CD16, dim CD56, cytotoxic granule markers TIA-1 and granzyme B and M, and variable CD2, CD7, and CD57. CD5 and CD8 are often expressed. KIR NK-receptors (NKRs) are often expressed in restricted fashion, possibly related to exogenous antigens such as from viral infections, but are not frequently assayed in clinical laboratories (Zambello et al, 2014). T cell receptors are not clonally rearranged, and there are no characteristic cytogenetic abnormalities. EBV is not associated.

Aggressive NK Cell Leukemia

This is a rare aggressive leukemia of NK cells associated with EBV and usually occurring in Asian teens and young adults. It usually presents with constitutional symptoms. The WBC is variable, and hepatosplenomegaly is common; it sometimes shows lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, coagulopathy, hemophagocytic syndrome, and/or multiorgan failure (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Morphology of leukemic cells is variable, sometimes resembling LGL leukemia, sometimes showing larger lymphoid cells with condensed chromatin and basophilic cytoplasm, and sometimes showing blastic or transformed cells.

The immunophenotype is surface CD3 negative and cytoplasmic CD3 ε/CD2/CD56 positive, and it expresses cytotoxic molecules (TIA-1, granzyme-B, and/or perforin). CD16 is variable, and CD57 negative.

TCR genes are not rearranged. Clonality may be established by detecting clonal episomal EBV (analyzing tandem repeats by Southern blot) or finding clonal cytogenetic abnormalities such as del(6)(q21;q25).

Indolent NK cell proliferation also occurs and is characterized by adult onset, lack of constitutional symptoms, lack of EBV, and a CD57+ phenotype (along with CD2, CD16, and CD56, with negative surface CD3) (Fig. 33-70).

EBV-Positive T Cell Lymphoproliferative Disorders of Childhood

These are rare lymphomas occurring most often in Asian or Native Americans from Central or South America that are associated with EBV (Swerdlow et al, 2008). These appear to be unique clinicopathologic and geographically related disorders, but may overlap with other more usual forms of chronic EBV-associated disorders (Hong et al, 2013; Rodriguez-Pinilla, 2011; Wang et al, 2014).

Systemic EBV-positive T cell lymphoproliferative disease of childhood is an aggressive, often fulminant disease following acute or chronic EBV infection and characterized by indistinct monoclonal infiltrates of small T cells, occasionally with some pleomorphism, associated with hepatosplenomegaly and hemophagocytic syndrome involving these organs and BM. Cells are mature T cells with CD2, CD3, and TIA-1 expression, variable CD4 (chronic EBV) or CD8 (acute EBV), and negative CD56.

Hydroa vacciniforme–like lymphoma is an EBV-positive cutaneous T cell lymphoma of sun-exposed skin. The infiltrate is that of CD56+ cytotoxic T or NK cells predominantly involving the dermis. The disease course is variable and tends to be initially indolent, but more aggressive following dissemination.

Adult T Cell Leukemia-Lymphoma

Adult T cell leukemia-lymphoma (ATLL) is a highly variable but often clinically aggressive T cell leukemia-lymphoma associated with HTLV-1 retrovirus infection (Ishitsuka & Tamura, 2014; Poiesz et al, 1980; Qayyum & Choi, 2014; Tobinai et al, 2012; Yoshie & Matsushima, 2015). It is most endemic in southwestern Japan but also in the Caribbean basin, the southeastern United States, and central Africa. Transmission of HTLV-1 may occur vertically (from mother to child), or through sexual contact, intravenous drug abuse, or blood transfusion. Only a minority of individuals infected with HTLV-1 (2.5%) develop ATLL, typically after a latent period of many years. Acute infection results in a flulike syndrome.

The acute variant typically shows leukemia, skin involvement, generalized lymphadenopathy, lytic bone lesions, and hypercalcemia. The blood film demonstrates anemia and thrombocytopenia with the presence in blood and marrow of moderately large blastic cells with convoluted or clover-leafed nuclei and condensed chromatin **(floret cells).** Nucleoli are small or absent, and the cytoplasm is agranular and basophilic. Admixed blastlike cells are present. Marrow involvement is often patchy with increased osteoclastic activity. Skin lesions resemble mycosis fungoides, including the presence of Pautrier's microabscesses, but often with more pleomorphic cells.

Lymph nodes in acute or lymphomatous variants show highly variable morphology, often with features and diversity reminiscent of anaplastic large cell lymphoma. Histology may resemble common ALCL, small cell variant, HL, or typical large cell lymphoma (Fig. 33-71).

The chronic variant often resembles mycosis fungoides, and the smoldering variant shows low-level leukemic involvement with <5% circulating neoplastic cells. Clonal integration of HTLV-1 is an invariable finding and is essentially diagnostic (Yamaguchi & Watanabe, 2002), but it should be noted that HTLV-1 infection is chronic, and these patients may have other hematologic diseases, just as other people do.

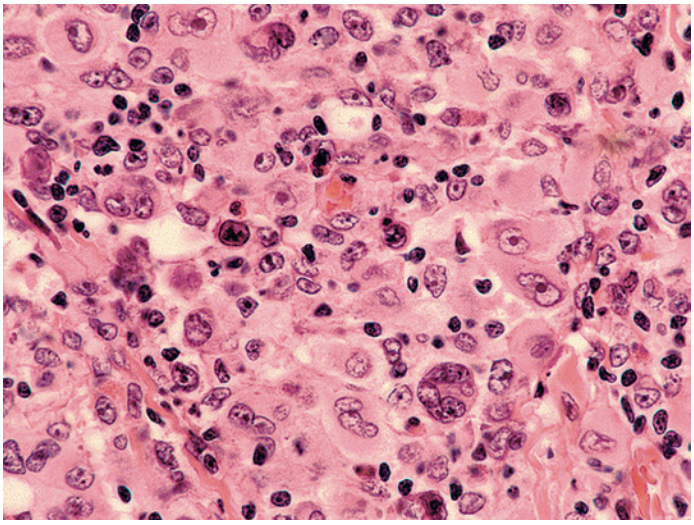


Figure 33-71 Adult T cell leukemia-lymphoma, with anaplastic features (500×).

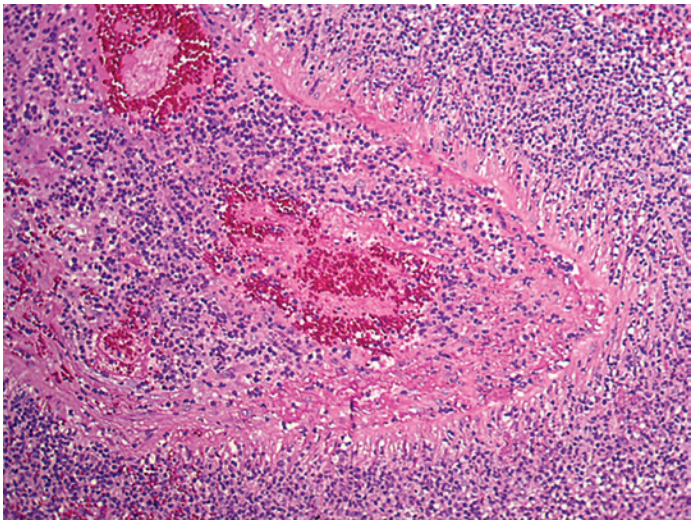


Figure 33-72 Nasal/nasal-like T/natural killer cell lymphoma, showing angioinvasion and destruction (200×).

The immunophenotype of ATLL is CD2/CD3/CD5/CD25 positive, usually CD4+ and CD7 negative. CD30 is often positive, but ALK is negative. Cytotoxic markers are negative. TCR genes are clonally rearranged. Occasional patients with smoldering disease show a Hodgkin-like lymphoproliferative disorder of EBV-infected B cells with CD30 and CD15 expression, likely related to chronic immunosuppression. It may be noted that both HTLV-1 and EBV are potent inducers of CD30. New therapies include those targeting chemokine receptor CCR4 that is highly expressed on these cells that show T regulatory (T-reg) features.

Extranodal NK/T Cell Lymphoma, Nasal Type

These lymphomas have been referred to as lethal midline granulomas, polymorphic reticulosis, and angiocentric T cell lymphoma. They are extranodal lymphomas usually of NK cell derivation that are associated with EBV and are most common in Asia and Latin America. They typically involve the nasopharynx, palate, skin, GI tract, testes, or other sites. The hemophagocytic syndrome is sometimes associated (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

The histology shows diffuse infiltrates of lymphoid cells of varying, often polymorphic, cytology, from small lymphocytes to large cells, immunoblasts, and/or anaplastic cells. Typically, mucosal ulcerations are present, and some areas show an angiocentric and angioinvasive pattern (Fig. 33-72) with fibrinoid necrosis of vessels and associated infarction-like necrosis.

The immunophenotype is usually CD2/CD56 positive, with cCD3-ε and expression of cytotoxic molecules. CD43, CD45Ro, HLA-DR, CD25, CD95, and FAS ligand are also expressed, but CD4, CD8, CD5, CD16, and CD57 are negative.

TCR αβ and γδ and IgH genes are germline, but clonal episomal EBV is present. EBER ISH is positive. Del(6)(q21;q25) is occasionally described. Prognosis is variable.

Enteropathy-Associated T Cell Lymphoma

This is a clonal T cell malignancy of intraepithelial T cells. It is associated with celiac disease, but patients often present simultaneously with malabsorption and lymphoma (Swerdlow et al, 2008). It usually occurs in the jejunum or ileum, with other locations in or outside of the GI tract reported.

Morphology shows variable small, medium-sized to large neoplastic cells, often with pale to eosinophilic cytoplasm and eccentric angulated nuclei. In some cases, the cytology is similar to anaplastic large cell lymphoma with wreathlike multinucleation and horseshoe nuclei (Fig. 33-73). Other cases have bland-appearing small lymphocytes. Histiocytes and eosinophils are often abundant.

The phenotype is CD3, CD7, CD103 positive, CD8 variable, CD4 negative, often with double-negative CD4/CD8. Small cell variants are CD8/CD56 positive. Cytotoxic molecules are expressed. TCR genes are clonally rearranged, and patients with celiac disease typically have HLA DQA1*0501 and DQB1*0201. This is usually an aggressive disease.

Hepatosplenic T Cell Lymphoma

This is a rare neoplasm, usually of γδ T cells, which shows sinusoidal infiltration of spleen, liver, and BM. It is most common in adolescent or young adult males. Patients present with massive splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, pronounced thrombocytopenia, and sometimes leukocytosis and anemia (Swerdlow et al, 2008, 2014).

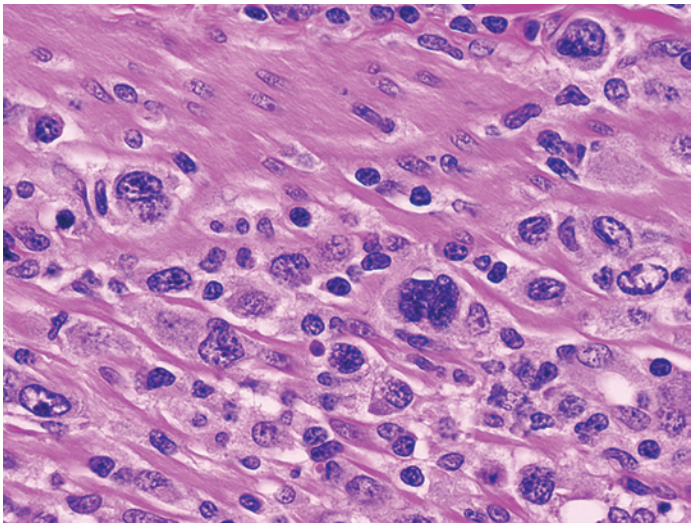


Figure 33-73 Enteropathy-associated T cell lymphoma infiltrating the muscularis of the small bowel (500×).

Histology shows diffuse splenic red pulp involvement by small to medium-sized lymphoid cells with slightly dispersed chromatin and moderate cytoplasm. Liver shows similar cells in sinuses. Diagnosis is best made in the BM with presence of a characteristic infiltration of sinuses but otherwise intact architecture and hematopoiesis (Fig. 33-74). Immunophenotyping of sections is extremely helpful because of inconspicuous morphology on H&E.

The immunophenotype is CD3 and TIA-1 positive, with double-negative CD4 and CD8, negative CD5, granzyme B, and perforin (Belhadj et al, 2003). TCR δ1 antibodies are positive and TCR αβ negative, although some cases of αβ type occur.

TCR γ PCR is positive, and TCR β is occasionally positive. Most cases are EBV negative, but EBV-positive cases may occur (Taguchi et al, 2004). Isochromosome 7q is usually described, with occasional trisomy 8. The disease is aggressive, with early responses to therapy but usual relapse and progression.

Subcutaneous Panniculitis-Like T Cell Lymphoma

Subcutaneous panniculitis-like T cell lymphoma (SPLTCL) is a neoplasm of cytotoxic T cells that usually occurs as multiple nodules in the subcutaneous fat of the trunk or extremities and mimics benign panniculitis. The overlying epidermis and dermis are not involved, but the septa of

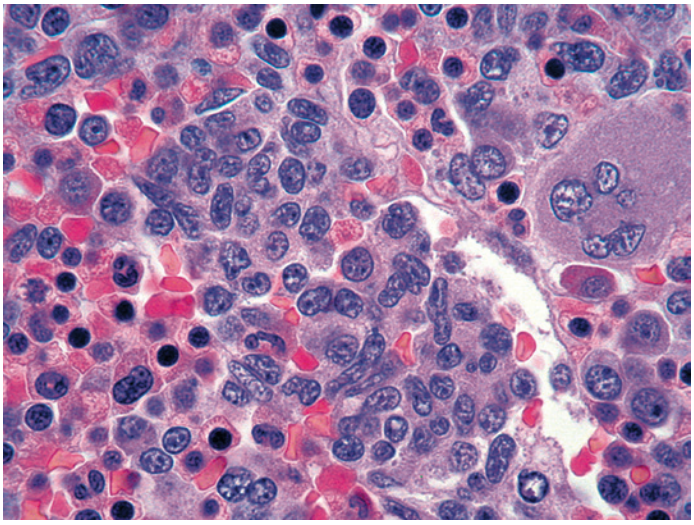


Figure 33-74 Hepatosplenic T cell lymphoma showing intrasinusoidal involvement of the bone marrow (500×).

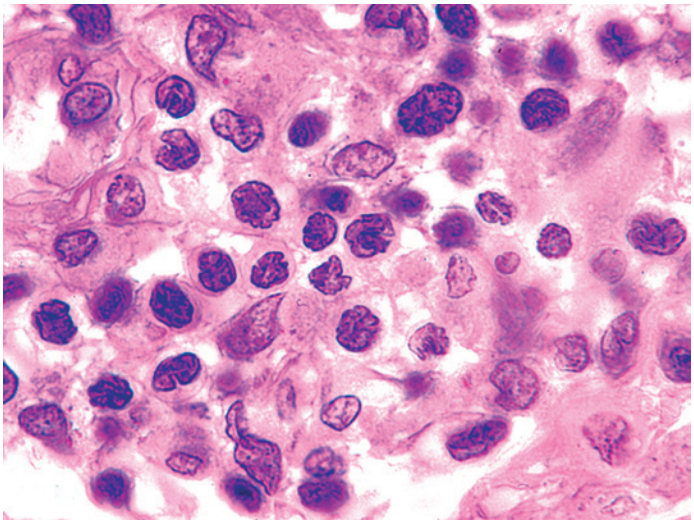


Figure 33-76 Neoplastic lymphocytes with convoluted nuclei in mycosis fungoides (1000×).

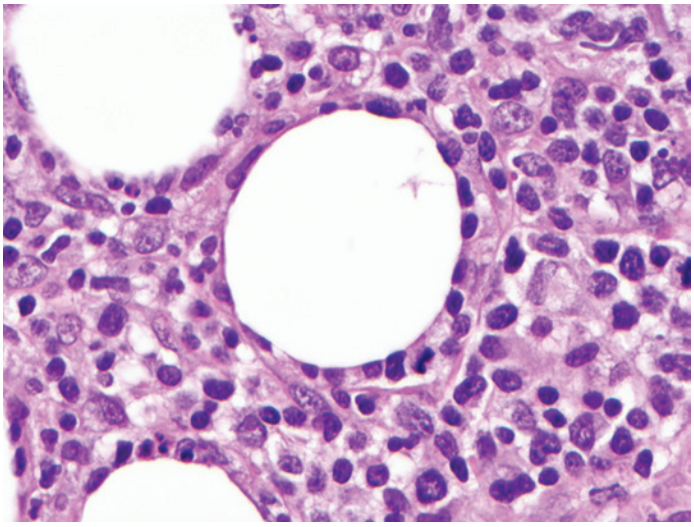


Figure 33-75 Subcutaneous panniculitis-like T cell lymphoma (500×).

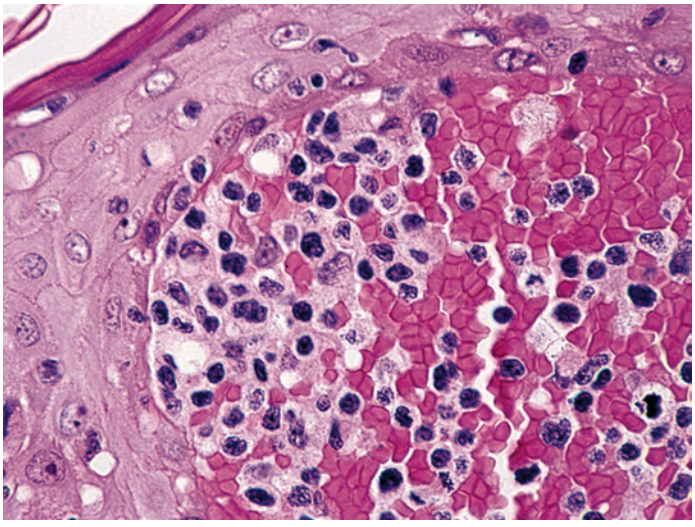


Figure 33-77 Cutaneous T cell lymphoma, showing a large Pautrier's microabscess (20×).

subcutaneous adipose are infiltrated. The lymphoid infiltrate is polymorphic and may be deceptively bland, although some large cells are usually present (Fig. 33-75). There is rimming of fat cells by lymphocytes and usually vascular involvement with areas of necrosis and histiocytic infiltrates. Acute inflammatory cells are not typically present as they are in benign panniculitis, and multinucleated giant cells usually are not seen.

The immunophenotype is usually mature CD8+ T cell with expression of granzyme B, perforin, and TIA-1, with a genotype of clonal αβ T cell type (Go & Wester, 2004). Twenty-five percent are γδ T cell with double-negative CD4/CD8 and expression of CD56 (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

The disease is typically aggressive, and hemophagocytic syndrome is seen in about 37%. Median survival is approximately 27 months, but long-term remissions may be obtained with anthracycline-based therapy (Go & Wester, 2004; Swerdlow et al, 2014).

Mycosis Fungoides and Sézary Syndrome

Mycosis fungoides (MF) occurs twice as frequently in men as in women. It usually affects individuals in their middle to late years. The disorder first appears as an eczematoid, psoriasiform, or nonspecific exfoliative dermatitis. The lesions tend to form plaques and then tumors that often ulcerate. Some patients develop generalized erythroderma.

Biopsies of the skin reveal bandlike lymphocytic infiltrates in the dermis (see Fig. 33-71), often with admixed histiocytes and occasional eosinophils (LeBoit, 2011). T cells with irregular nuclei (Fig. 33-76) show single-cell infiltration of the epidermis and often form clusters known as *Pautrier's abscesses* (Fig. 33-77). These are usually accompanied by parakeratosis and acanthosis, typically with minimal or no spongiosis, and elongation of rete pegs. The nuclei of at least a portion of neoplastic cells typically have a cerebriform appearance. The extent of the cutaneous infiltrate is not always directly correlated with severity of disease. Communication with the dermatologist or other treating physician is important, and even subtle changes in a clinically suspicious patient should be taken seriously. Diagnostic features and pitfalls have been recently reviewed by an international consensus conference (Song et al, 2013).

The phenotype is usually mature T cell with CD8 expression and lack of CD7, but this is not usually conclusive. *TCR* genes are clonally rearranged, and PCR analysis of formalin-fixed biopsy tissue should be attempted in suspicious cases.

In advanced stages of the disease, neoplastic cells infiltrate the lymph nodes, liver, spleen, and other organs. Early nodal involvement (category I) shows dermatopathic changes with scattered atypical cerebriform lymphocytes. Category II shows partial nodal effacement, and category III shows diffuse involvement.

Rare atypical mononuclear cells with cerebriform nuclei (Sézary cells) may be present in the peripheral blood (Fig. 33-78). Lymphocytosis with these cells (especially in the erythremic patient) is called *Sézary syndrome*.

The disorder may follow a prolonged chronic course. However, following lymph node infiltration, the disease becomes more progressive, and death, usually due to infection, occurs within 2 years.

Therapy is topical in early cases. More advanced disease has been treated with PUVA, retinoids, α-interferon, and, more recently, alemtuzumab or vorinostat.

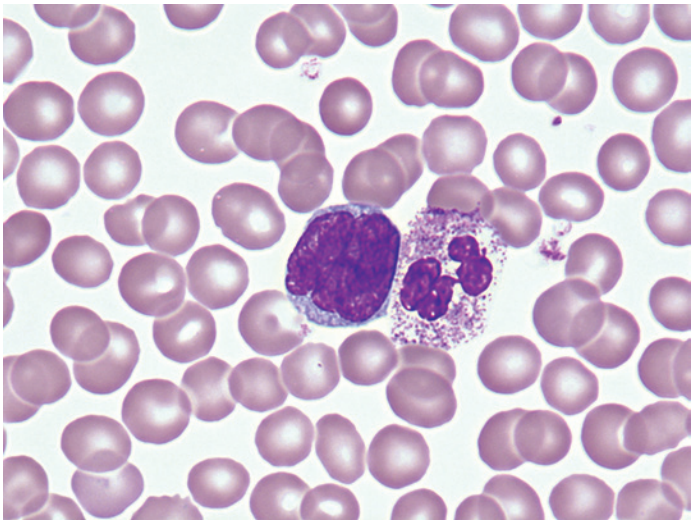


Figure 33-78 Sézary cell in the blood, along with a neutrophil (1000×).

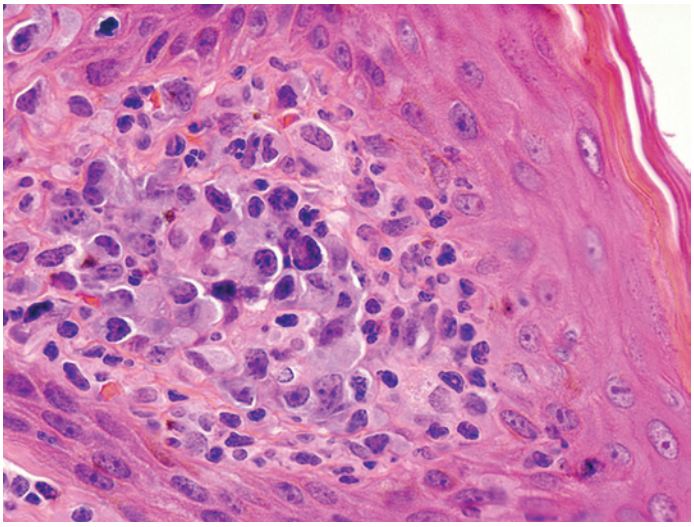


Figure 33-79 Cutaneous anaplastic large cell lymphoma (1000×).

Primary Cutaneous CD30-Positive T Cell Lymphoproliferative Disorder

This category in the WHO classification includes primary cutaneous ALK negative, lymphomatoid papulosis, and borderline lesions (Querfeld et al, 2010; Quintanilla-Martinez et al, 2013; Swerdlow et al, 2008). These disorders share the features of dermal infiltrates of polymorphic lymphoid cells, including variable proportions of anaplastic or Reed-Sternberg–like cells with expression of CD30, and a typically relapsing/remitting clinical course.

Cutaneous ALCL resembles systemic ALCL (Fig. 33-79), except that it is indolent and does not exhibit detectable ALK expression or genetic translocations. Lymphomatoid papulosis has been considered a variant of pityriasis lichenoides et varioliformis acuta (PLEVA), with an inverted vaselike lymphoid infiltrate containing variable numbers of CD30-positive large cells. It has been associated with HL in a number of instances.

Both disorders share the phenotype of CD4-positive mature T cells with variable loss of pan–T cell antigens, expression of cytotoxic molecules, and strong CD30 expression. ALK is negative, and *TCR* genes are clonally rearranged. *IRF4* translocations detectable by FISH are strongly associated with cutaneous ALCL and closely related mucosal ALCL (Wada et al, 2011).

Primary Cutaneous γδ T Cell Lymphoma

Primary cutaneous γδ T cell lymphoma is a rare lymphoma of adults consisting of a heterogeneous pattern of presentation (dermal, epidermal, and/or subcutaneous) in the skin of adults comprising γδ T cells. These express CD3, CD2, and CD56, often dually negative for CD4 and CD8 or CD8 positive, with lack of CD5 and βF1. They express TCR γ receptor, and TCR-γ is clonally rearranged. Histologically, they may mimic SPLTCL or MF.

Primary cutaneous CD8-positive aggressive epidermotropic cytotoxic T cell lymphoma is another rare cutaneous T cell lymphoma of cytotoxic T cells. Cells are small-medium or medium-large and often pleomorphic or blastlike. They express CD3, βF1, CD8, and granzymes B and TIA-1, with variable CD2 and CD7, but negative CD4 and CD5. These often resemble MF in their epidermotropism. The disease is aggressive.

Primary cutaneous CD4-positive small-medium T cell lymphoma is characterized by pleomorphic CD4 positive T cells, without clinical patches or plaques (as seen in MF). It lacks epidermotropism and is difficult to separate from reactive hyperplasia or from early MF. It has an indolent course (Lan et al, 2014).

Angioimmunoblastic T Cell Lymphoma

This disorder has been termed *angioimmunoblastic lymphadenopathy with dysproteinemia (AILD)* and *abnormal immune response*. It is a clonal T cell lymphoma that presents with constitutional symptoms and polyclonal hypergammaglobulinemia. Although once thought to be initially a reactive process with a spectrum of progression to lymphoma, it is now believed to be neoplastic from the onset.

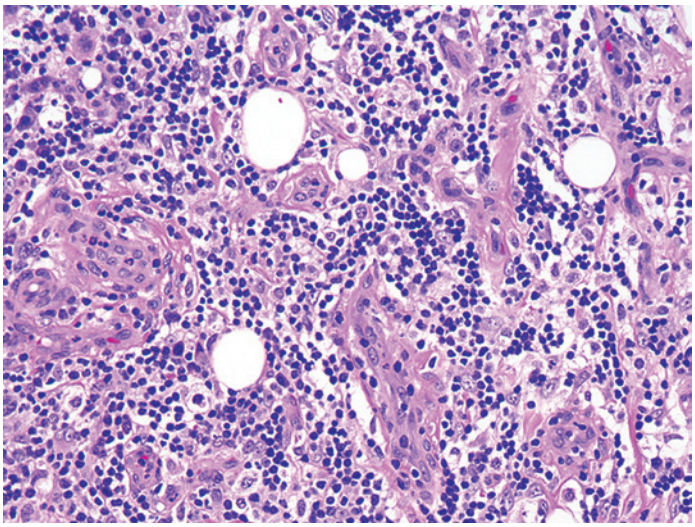


Figure 33-80 **Angioimmunoblastic lymphoma showing arborizing vessels and lymphoid infiltrate infiltrating fat.** In other areas of this case, plasma cells and immunoblasts are present. Clear cells are also frequently present (200×).

Histology shows paracortical lymph node hyperplasia with depletion of lymphocytes, increased plasma cells, and prominent high endothelial postcapillary venules with PAS-positive hyalinization and "burned-out" residual follicles (Fig. 33-80). Clusters of lymphocytes with small nuclei but moderately abundant clear cytoplasm are usually present and increase in prominence with progression. The tumor is derived from follicular T-helper cells (THCs). The immunophenotype is mature T cell with CD4 predominance but often abundant reactive CD8 cells; coexpression of CD10, CXCL13, and PD-1; polyclonal plasma cells and B-immunoblasts; and prominent dendritic cells near vessels detected by CD21/CD23 (Miyoshi et al, 2012). CD20 is occasionally expressed, and secondary clonal B cell proliferations occur that are usually associated with EBV (Jaffe et al, 2013).

TCR genes are usually rearranged, and *IgH* genes are also rearranged in a minority of cases, at least some of which are associated with EBV and/or immunosuppression. Trisomy 3 or 5 or an additional X chromosome have each been described. The disease is aggressive, and infectious complications are common (Swerdlow et al, 2008).

Peripheral T/NK Cell Lymphoma, Unspecified

Peripheral T/NK cell lymphoma (PTCL), unspecified, is characteristically diverse and may consist of sheets of large cells (Fig. 33-81), paracortical lymph node expansion by mixed small and large cells, clear cells, predominantly small cells, and cases with striking pleomorphism resembling ALCL or HL. Abnormal patterns of T-antigen expression are helpful for

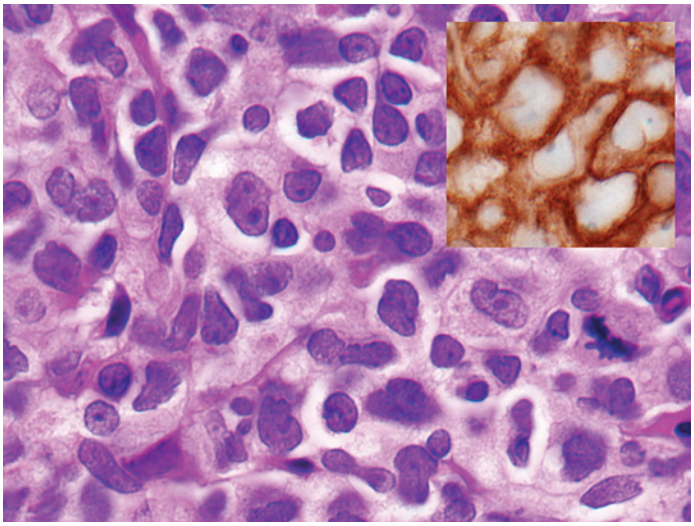


Figure 33-81 Peripheral T/natural killer cell lymphoma, unspecified; CD3 expression is seen in inset (1000×).

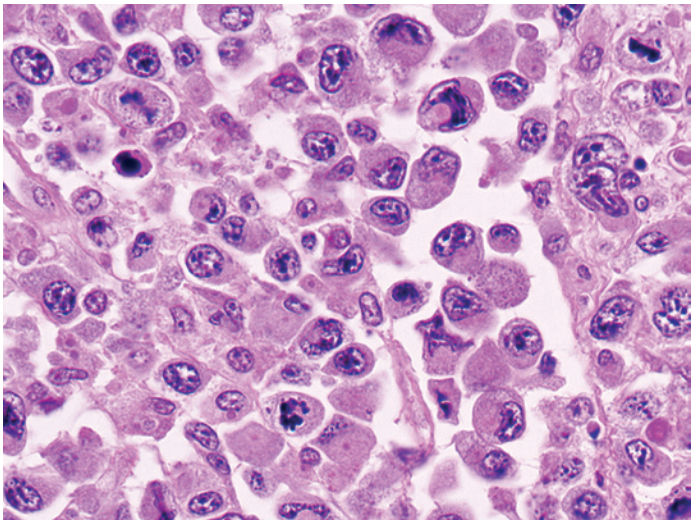


Figure 33-82 Anaplastic large cell lymphoma in an adolescent (500×).

diagnosis. Pan–T cell antigens (CD3, CD2, CD5, CD7) are usually present in some combination, but one or more are often aberrantly not expressed. CD4+ cases are more frequent than CD8+, but both double-positive and double-negative cases may occur (Swerdlow et al, 2008). In paraffin sections, CD3, CD45Ro, and CD43 are helpful if positive, but the latter two are also present in myeloid tumors and some B cell lymphomas. CD68 is rarely expressed.

T-zone variant of PTCL, unspecified, shows paracortical expansion with preserved GCC. The cytomorphology is variable with small and medium-sized cells, lymphocytes, plasma cells, endothelial hyperplasia, and sometimes clusters of clear cells and/or cells resembling those in HL.

The lymphoepithelioid variant, formerly known as *Lennert's lymphoma*, exhibits clusters of epithelioid histiocytes.

These tumors are typically aggressive and often belie their sometimes bland or reactive appearance. Clonal rearrangement of *TCR* genes is essential for confident diagnosis.

Anaplastic Large Cell Lymphoma

ALCL was first recognized relatively recently as NHL reactive with the Hodgkin-associated antibody Ki-1 (anti-CD30) (Stein et al, 1985). ALK+ ALCL is most common in adolescents and young adults and accounts for about 10% to 15% of pediatric lymphomas.

ALCL usually shows diffuse infiltrates or aggregates of large, sometimes pleomorphic cells with abundant cytoplasm and indented or horseshoe-shaped nuclei and sometimes wreathlike multilobulated nuclei (Fig. 33-82). Lymph node sinus and superficial paracortical involvement are common, cohesive sheets of tumor cells often simulate carcinoma, and some cases show a polymorphic Hodgkin-like pattern. True Reed-Sternberg cells are not seen.

Histologic variants include monomorphic, small cell, and lymphohistiocytic types, but these also express ALK and show a similar phenotype otherwise.

ALK+ ALCL is usually associated with chromosomal abnormalities involving chromosome region 2p23 such as t(2;5)(p23;q35) in which the gene for a tyrosine kinase anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) is fused to that of the nucleolar shuttle protein nucleophosmin (NPM), with a resultant NPM-ALK fusion protein, with both nuclear and cytoplasmic expression (Morris et al., 1994). Variant translocations involving ALK also occur, usually with ALK expression in only nucleus or cytoplasm by immunohistochemistry.

Essentially all exhibit CD30. Slightly more than half show peripheral T cell phenotype by IHC, but with variable expression of CD3, CD5, CD4, CD43, and CD45Ro. CD3 seems to be most often positive. There is also variable expression of CD45, CD25, and EMA. CD68 or CD15 is only occasionally expressed. T cell surface marker–negative cases usually show TCR rearrangements.

CD56, TIA-1, and myeloid markers CD13 and CD33 are often positive (Bovio & Allan, 2008). Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) is overexpressed, with activation of antiapoptotic pathways, increased expression of BCL2, BCL-XL, and survivin. *JUNB* amplification/overexpression is related to CD30 expression (Amin & Lai, 2007; Atsaves et al, 2014; Eyre et al, 2014).

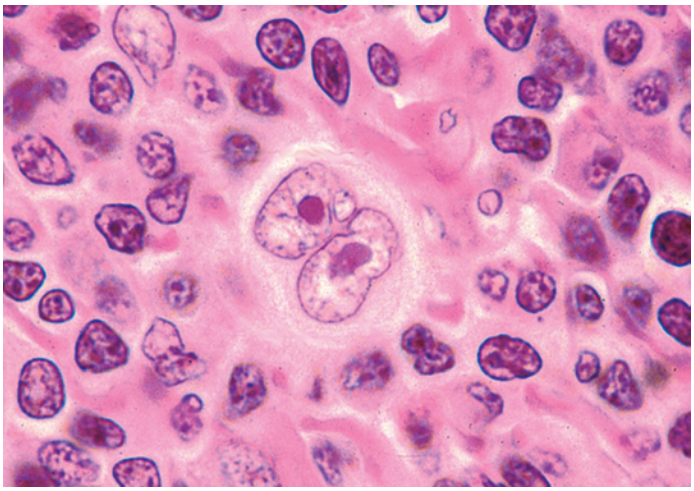


Figure 33-83 A Reed-Sternberg cell in a case of mixed cellularity Hodgkin lymphoma (1000×).

The majority exhibit t(2;5)(p23;q35), but variants include: t(1;2)(q25;p23) involving *TPM3* that encodes a tropomyosin; inv(2)(p23;q35) involving *ATIC*; and t(2;3)(p23;q35) involving *TFG* (TRAK fused gene). These all show cytoplasmic without nuclear ALK. Other partner genes include *TPM4*, *CLTC*, *MSN*, *ALO17*, and *MYH9*. Those with t(2;17)(p23;q23),CLTC-ALK are diffuse large B cell lymphoma (CD20-negative, CD79a+) with IgH rearrangement and, rarely, also TCR rearrangement. They show granular cytoplasmic staining with ALK.

Anaplastic Large Cell Lymphoma, ALK–

Lymphomas with similar histology and immunophenotype to ALK+ ALCL occur primarily in adults and are clinically varied. These lack ALK translocations, but 30% show translocations involving DUSP22, possibly associated with improved prognosis, and some (8%) with translocations involving TP63 and poor prognosis (Parrilla Castellar et al, 2014). A variety of "secondary" ALCLs (including progressions of other lymphomas, posttransplant tumors, and EBV- and HTLV-1-associated lymphomas) also express CD30.

HODGKIN LYMPHOMA

The nomenclature of HL, also called Hodgkin's disease, is little changed from that of the Rye Conference (Lukes & Butler, 1966). The hallmark of HL is the Hodgkin Reed-Sternberg (HRS vs. RS) cell, which is a large binucleated, multinucleated, or mononuclear (Hodgkin) cell with each nucleus bearing a very large inclusion-like nucleolus (Fig. 33-83).

These neoplastic cells appear in an immunoproliferative background containing variable numbers of lymphocytes, histiocytes, eosinophils, and plasma cells. Degenerating "mummified" neoplastic cells are also often present.

Classical Hodgkin Lymphoma

Mixed cellularity, nodular sclerosis, lymphocyte-depleted, and lymphocyte-rich classical subtypes have similar biology, and a common neoplastic cell referred to as the *Hodgkin Reed-Sternberg cell (HRS)*. They are all referred to as "classical" HL (King et al, 2014; Swerdlow et al, 2008; Venkataraman et al, 2014).

The most common phenotype of HRS cells in classical HL is expression of CD30, CD15, and fascin with absence of CD45 and T cell markers. B cell–associated markers CD20 and/or CD79 are expressed in a minority of cases (<30%) and are usually focal and weak. Occasional cases show strong CD20 expression. B cell transcription factors Oct2 and BOB.1 are absent, as is immunoglobulin J chain. Light chain immunoglobulin antibodies may show generalized cytoplasmic labeling. Standard Ig and *TCR* gene rearrangement studies are negative in classical HL, but sequencing of amplified single-cell *IgH* genes suggests that most cases of HL are derived from clonal B lymphocytes. EBV is associated with a substantial portion of cases of classical HL.

HL may occur from early childhood to old age. Increased frequency is noted between 15 and 35 years and after 50 years of age. Males predominate, especially in childhood; disease in females younger than 30 years of age is usually nodular sclerosis in type (Table 33-8).

Nodular Sclerosis

Nodular sclerosis (NS) is characterized by broad bands of collagen separating nodules of lymphoid tissue and the presence of **lacunar variants** of HRS cells with pale cytoplasm and variable nucleoli (Figs. 33-84 and 33-85). Classic HRS cells are variable in number. Fibrosis may be inconspicuous in early lesions, but neoplastic cell clustering is usually present.

NS HL is graded on the basis of the number of neoplastic cells. When sheets of neoplastic cells are present in 25% or more of nodules, the tumor is designated grade 2. This is frequently associated with necrosis and has been termed *syncytial variant*. The NS variety of HL is common, often presenting as a mediastinal mass in a young woman.

Mixed Cellularity

Mixed cellularity shows a diffuse polymorphic infiltrate of lymphocytes, plasma cells, eosinophils, histiocytes, and Reed-Sternberg cells, which sometimes are numerous (Fig. 33-86). Necrosis and disorderly fibrosis may be present. This subtype is less common in young people than is NS, and it is the most frequent subtype with EBV involvement.

Lymphocyte Depletion

This type is uncommon, often presents at older age, and may be associated with diffuse fibrosis. Neoplastic cells predominate, and lymphocytes are relatively diminished compared with other forms of HL (Fig. 33-87). It is sometimes associated with an acute febrile illness accompanied by pancytopenia and lymphocytopenia. BM involvement is common, but lymphocytosis and thrombocytosis, often seen in other types of HL, are usually absent.

Normocytic anemia is seen in about 50% of HL cases. Leukocyte and platelet counts are variable, and eosinophilia may be present. Blood and marrow findings and many of the histologic features appear to be manifestations of host responses to the disease. Immunologic studies in HL have shown that cell-mediated immunity is defective when extensive disease is present.

Clinical staging defines stage I disease as limited to lymph nodes in one anatomic region or two contiguous regions on one side of the diaphragm. Stage II disease involves more than two contiguous regions or two noncontiguous regions on one side of the diaphragm. Stage III disease is present on both sides of the diaphragm but is confined to lymphoid tissue. Stage IV disease involves BM or any other organ, in addition to lymphoid

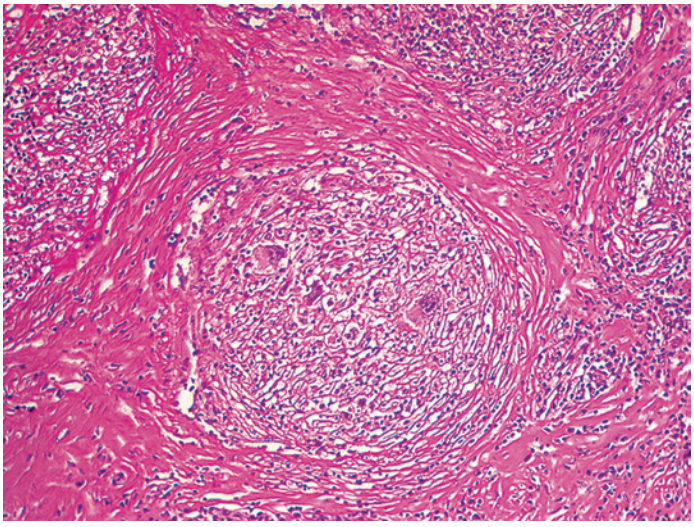


Figure 33-84 **Dense fibrosis in a case of nodular sclerosis Hodgkin lymphoma (200×).**

TABLE 33-8
Key Features of Hodgkin Lymphomas

Lymphoma	Demographics, Clinical Presentation	Morphology	Cell Surface Markers	Prognosis
Nodular, lymphocyte predominant (NLPHL)	M > F, 30-50 years, with peripheral lymphadenopathy	Mononuclear cells with convoluted nuclei (popcorn or L&H cells) loosely aggregated in nodules of small B cells	CD45, CD20, bcl-6, J-chain, Oct-2, BOB.1, EBV absent in LP cells	Excellent for stages I, II
Nodular sclerosis	M = F, <30 years with mediastinal mass, occasional spleen or lung involvement; 40% have B symptoms; most patients present with stage II disease	Broad bands of collagen, nodules of lymphoid tissue with aggregates of HRS cells and lacunar cells, multinucleated variants	CD15, CD30, CD45-EBV in 1%-40%	Good with systemic therapy
Mixed cellularity	M > F; median age, 38 years; peripheral lymphadenopathy common, spleen, BM; B symptoms common; patients often stage III or IV	Classic HRS cells in mixture of lymphocytes, plasma cells, eosinophils, histiocytes	CD15, CD30, CD45-EBV in 75%	Good with systemic therapy
Lymphocyte depletion	M > F; median age, 30-37 years; B symptoms, advanced stage common; associated with HIV	Classic HRS cells common with paucity of background lymphocytes; pleomorphic HRS cells mimic sarcoma	CD15, CD30, CD45-EBV positive in HIV-affected patients	Associated with advanced stage
Lymphocyte-rich classical	M > F, older age; peripheral lymphadenopathy; B symptoms rare; most patients with stage I or II disease	Scattered classic HRS cells among numerous small lymphocytes; nodular growth pattern	CD15, CD30; Oct2 and BOB.1 vary; J-chain absent; EBV in 40%-75%	Good, similar to NLPHL

BM, Bone marrow; *CHL,* classical Hodgkin lymphoma; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *F,* female; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HRS,* Hodgkin Reed-Sternberg; *L&H,* lymphocytic and histiocytic; *LP,* lymphoplasmacytic; *M,* male.

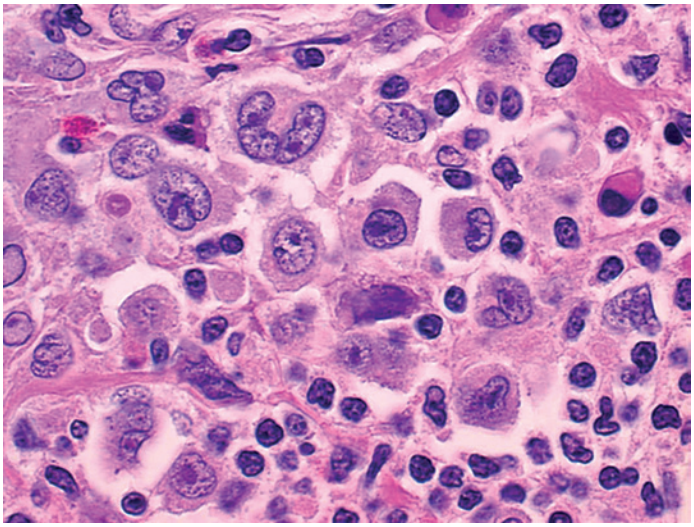


Figure 33-85 A cluster of Hodgkin Reed-Sternberg cells in a nodule of nodular sclerosis Hodgkin lymphoma (500×).

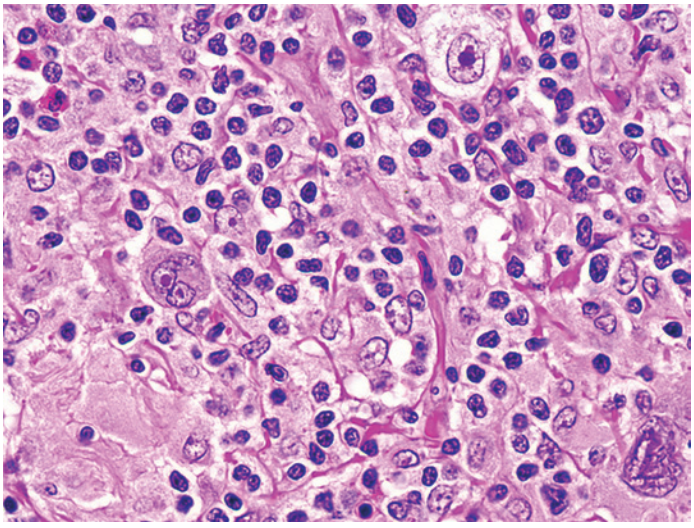


Figure 33-86 Scattered Hodgkin Reed-Sternberg cells in mixed cellularity Hodgkin lymphoma (500×).

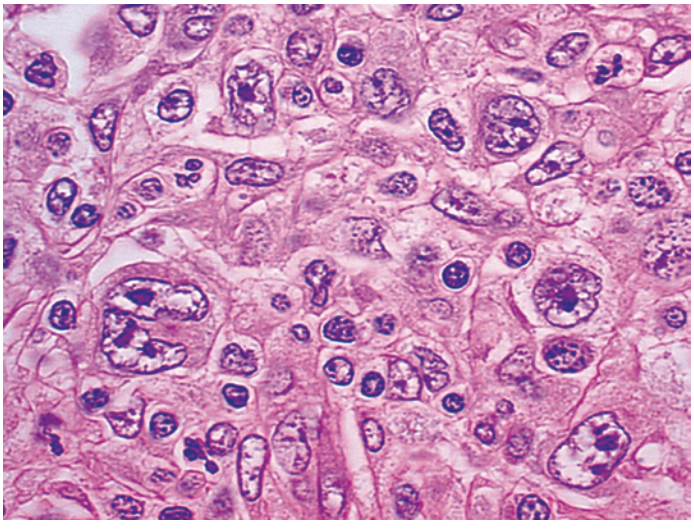


Figure 33-87 Lymphocyte-depleted Hodgkin lymphoma shows predominance of neoplastic cells with few lymphocytes (500×).

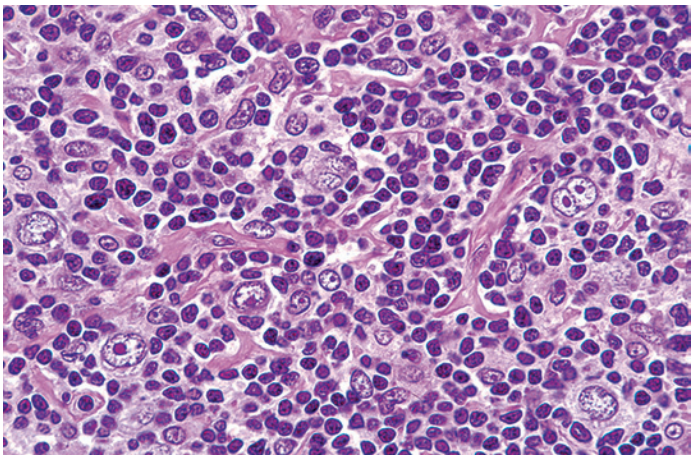


Figure 33-88 Lymphocyte-predominant Hodgkin lymphoma, with lymphocyte and histiocytic cells showing round rather than popcorn nuclei (500×).

tissue. The incidence of BM involvement in untreated cases of HL is approximately 10%. All stages are additionally classified as "A" if systemic symptoms are absent and "B" if they are present. An aggressive approach to the management of HL has resulted in improved survival with many cures, especially in young patients.

Nodular Lymphocyte-Predominant HL

The histology of NLPHL consists of effacement of lymph node architecture by a nodular infiltrate of small B cells with an associated follicular dendritic network and clustered or scattered large cells referred to as *L&H cells*, after the original Lukes and Butler terminology of lymphocytic and histiocytic HL. Nodularity may be vague. L&H cells are variable in cytology from case to case, although they are usually more uniform within a case. The appearance most often described exhibits large nuclei with vesicular chromatin, moderately prominent nucleoli, and convoluted nuclei resembling popcorn ("popcorn cells"). Cytoplasm is moderate in amount and clear, retracted, or slightly eosinophilic. Probably more often, the neoplastic cells show round to oval nuclei with distinct eosinophilic or basophilic nucleoli, but less prominent than in HRS cells (Fig. 33-88). With experience, these cells become distinctive. Occasional HRS cells may be seen but are not always present and rarely predominate. Their phenotype, however, is different from that of classic HRS cells. L&H cells are usually loosely aggregated in the centers of nodules but are scattered elsewhere.

The phenotype of L&H cells is mature B cell, expressing CD45, CD20, CD22, CD79a, bcl-6, BOB.1, Oct-2, CD75, and usually J-chain (Swerdlow et al, 2008). CD30 is absent or weak, and EMA is frequently expressed. The nodules are composed mostly of B cells but with abundant admixed CD3 and CD3/CD57-positive T cells, which tend to form rosettes around L&H cells. These are not always present, but are diagnostically helpful when they are. Nodules contain a follicular dendritic network that may be illuminated by CD21, CD35, or CD23 antibodies. Cytoplasmic Ig is present but does not appear clonal, even though B cells have been proven to be monoclonal by single-cell PCR.

IgH is clonally rearranged by sensitive assays in the research setting, but this usually is not detectable in routine clinical laboratory settings. L&H cells are of germinal center or post–germinal center derivation with somatic mutations of *Ig* genes that are ongoing in about half of studied cases (Braeuninger et al, 1997).

Histologic variants have been described including those with a diffuse T cell rich pattern and with increased L&H cells outside of B cell nodules, with more advanced stage and greater risk for progression or relapse (Hartmann et al, 2013). Male gender and low albumin may also increase risk (Fanale, 2013). Cases of NLPHL are also noted with involvement by EBV, with atypical features including CD30, weak PAX5, and pleomorphic cells that mimic classical HL (Huppmann et al, 2014).

Progressive transformation of lymph node germinal centers (PTGC) has been described as a precursor lesion to NLPHL, but no relationship has been proven. Most cases of PTGC do not lead to lymphoma.

Nodular Lymphocyte-Rich Classical HL

Nodular lymphocyte-rich classical Hodgkin lymphoma (NLRCHL) is a type of HL that morphologically and clinically resembles NLPHL but shows immunophenotypic characteristics of classical Hodgkin lymphoma

(CHL). Typically, germinal centers are preserved and HRS cells are found in the mantle zones. It usually presents in peripheral lymph nodes with early-stage disease. The HRS cells in this type express CD30 and uniformly lack immunoglobulin J-chain that is present in NLPHL (Anagnostopoulos et al, 2000). Recent studies show overlap between NLRCHL and NLPHL in expression of B cell factors bcl-6, Oct-2, and BOB.1, which are variable in NLRCHL but nearly constant in NLPHL. CD15 and MUM-1 are more frequent in NLRCHL, and Pax-5 is expressed in most cases of both types (Nam-Cha et al, 2009). A large clinical study has shown that patients with NLRCHL are older than those with other CHL, and that response and outcome are excellent, resembling NLPHL (Shimabukuro-Vornhagen et al, 2005).

IMMUNODEFICIENCY-ASSOCIATED LYMPHOPROLIFERATIVE DISORDERS

Lymphomas and uncontrolled polyclonal lymphoid proliferations occur with increased frequency in patients with immune dysfunction (Swerdlow et al, 2008). These dysfunctional states fall into three main categories: primary (congenital) immune deficiency states, HIV infection, and iatrogenic immunodeficiency, particularly due to posttransplant immunosuppression but also due to prolonged immunosuppressive therapy for other reasons.

Most of these are B cell lymphoproliferative disorders associated with infection or reactivation of EBV or other virus and include large B cell lymphoma and variants, BL, and polymorphic B cell hyperplasia. Hodgkin and peripheral T cell lymphomas occur rarely. See Box 33-14 for a summary of lymphoid diseases associated with EBV.

Primary immune deficiencies are rare disorders and include Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS), ataxia-telangiectasia (AT), common variable immunodeficiency syndrome (CVID), severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), X-linked immunoproliferative disorder (XLP), Nijmegan breakage syndrome (NBS), hyper-IgM syndrome, and autoimmune lymphoproliferative disorder (ALPS) (Chadburn, 2013). There are now hundreds of different genetic PIDs recognized, diagnosed in adults as well as in children, and with genomic techniques the list is likely to continue to expand (Chou et al, 2012; O'Gorman, 2008; Verma et al, 2013). Cytopenias are frequent, often due to autoimmune phenomena (Seidel, 2014).

ALPS involves inherited mutations of the *FAS* gene, which blocks apoptosis. This involves different mutations of varying effect, may be more common than previously thought, and shows an adult onset in some cases. Clinically, it shows lymphadenopathy and presence of CD4/CD8 double-negative T cells. Hyper-IgM syndrome results from mutations in CD40 ligand with inhibition of T/B cell interaction and B cell maturation. AT and NBS are abnormalities of DNA repair. WAS is a syndrome of thrombocytopenia, skin rash, and recurrent infections that is fatal but curable with allogeneic bone marrow transplantation.

Fatal EBV infectious mononucleosis is a common occurrence in XLP and SCID. Large B cell lymphomas are the most common tumors in most primary immunodeficiencies, and lymphomatoid granulomatosis is increased in WAS.

HIV-Associated Lymphomas

HIV-associated lymphomas include Burkitt, diffuse large B cell lymphoma (CG, ABC or primary CNS types), plasmablastic lymphoma (usually in the oral cavity), and primary effusion lymphoma (PEL). Other types, including classical HL, are "rare" but occur at higher frequency in HIV patients than in the general population (Little & Dunleavy, 2013). The incidence of HIV-associated lymphomas has dropped substantially in developed nations since the introduction of combination antiretroviral therapy (cART), and varies inversely with the CD4 count. Lymphoma is particularly frequent when CD4 cells are less than 200/μL. Forty percent of HIV-related lymphomas are also EBV-associated. Primary effusion lymphomas in HIV are associated with KHSV/HHV-8 infection and multicentric Castleman's disease (Gloghini et al, 2013).

Posttransplant Lymphoproliferative Disorders

PTLDs comprise a unique spectrum of lymphoproliferative disorders occurring due to therapeutic immunosuppression associated with organ transplantation (Swerdlow et al, 2008). A majority, but not all, are EBV-associated (Parker et al, 2010). In many cases, the tumors regress when immunosuppressive therapy is reduced, but this is unpredictable.

Plasmacytic hyperplasia (PH) is composed of numerous plasma cells and scattered immunoblasts. Infectious mononucleosis–like PTLD shows paracortical expansion of lymph nodes with increased immunoblasts. Both are early or low-grade lesions with a slow progression.

Polymorphic PTLD shows increased immunoblasts and plasma cells in a lymphoid background. Monomorphic PTLD is essentially diffuse lymphoma, usually large B cell. A Hodgkin-like PTLD is likely to be a large B cell lymphoma with Hodgkin-like features, previously called *polymorphic immunoblastic* in the Working Formulation (Fig. 33-89). Monomorphic T cell lymphomas also occur rarely.

A spectrum of disorders similar to PTLD also may occur with chronic immunosuppression for other reasons, such as the use of methotrexate in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. (See also previous descriptions of large B cell lymphomas of the elderly and those occurring in chronic inflammation, which are also EBV related.)

HISTIOCYTIC AND DENDRITIC CELL NEOPLASMS

These are rare disorders that affect lymph nodes and soft tissues, and occasionally the BM. **Histiocytic sarcoma**, also known as true histiocytic lymphoma, is a malignant tumor of noncirculating cells of monocyte macrophage lineage (Swerdlow et al, 2008). The differential diagnosis includes monocytic leukemia and large B or peripheral T cell lymphoma. It resembles a large cell lymphoma or histiocytic sarcoma of monocytic lineage (Fig. 33-90). Tumor cells show nuclear features of malignancy. These label with CD68, lysozyme, α_1-antitrypsin, and antichymotrypsin; others label with other monocyte macrophage markers (e.g., CD64, CD14). Some hemophagocytosis may be seen.

Hemophagocytic Syndromes, or Hemophagocytic Lymphohistiocytosis (HLH)

These present with hepatosplenomegaly, fever and other constitutional symptoms, cytopenias, and infiltrates of macrophages in involved organs

BOX 33-14

EBV Associations

Mononucleosis-type illness
Hodgkin lymphoma: MC > LR > NS; LD seen in HIV patients
Immunodeficiency-associated lymphoproliferative disorders
Posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorders
Some DLBCL cases (associated w/inflammations, in elderly)
Lymphomatoid granulosis
Primary effusion lymphoma
EBV+ lymphoproliferative disorders of childhood
Burkitt lymphoma (endemic and HIV associated)
Nasal NK-T cell lymphoma
Angioimmunoblastic lymphoma
Plasmablastic lymphoma

DLBCL, Diffuse large B cell lymphoma; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *LD,* lymphocyte depletion; *LR,* lymphocyte-rich classical; *MC,* mixed cellularity; *NS,* nodular sclerosis.

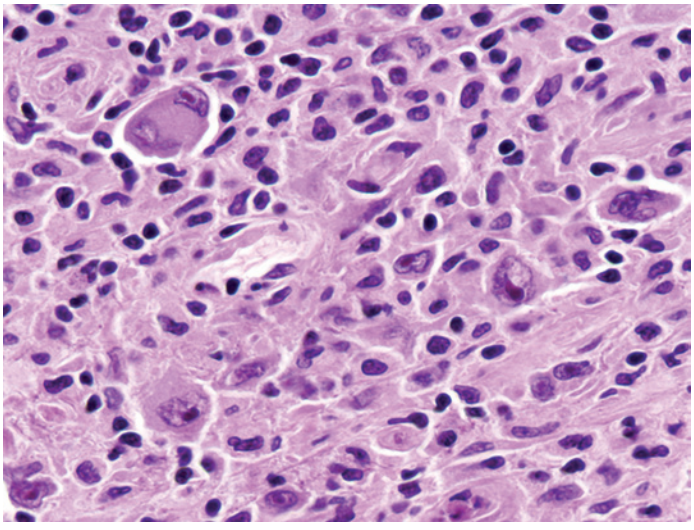


Figure 33-89 **Large B cell lymphoma (anaplastic subtype) arising in polymorphic posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorder, in the gastrointestinal tract (500×).**

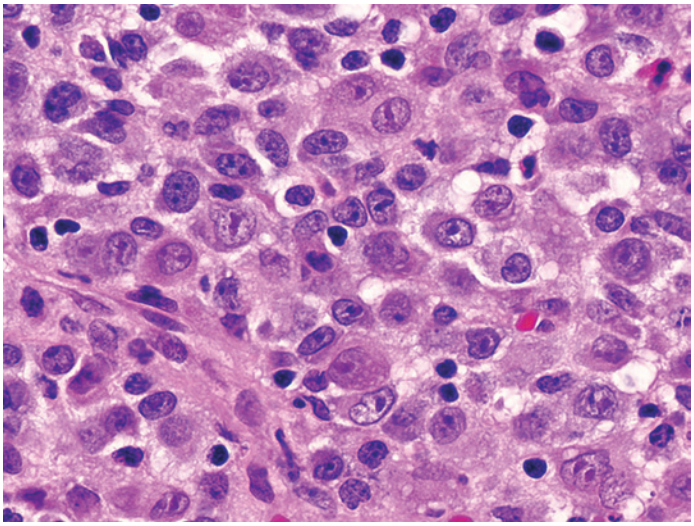


Figure 33-90 Histiocytic sarcoma in a child. This case showed expression of monocytic markers and enzymes, lack of lymphoid markers, and lack of lymphoid gene rearrangements (500×).

including bone marrow and sometimes lymph nodes. Hemophagocytosis may include red blood cells (Fig. 33-91) or may be limited to platelets and leukocytes. It is often difficult to identify, or not seen at all, in a bone marrow sample. Diagnostic criteria include cytopenias affecting at least two lineages in the peripheral blood, hypofibrinogenemia, strikingly elevated ferritin levels, and hypertriglyceridemia (Faitelson & Grunebaum, 2014; Rosado & Kim, 2013). Acquired HLH is usually associated with viral infection and related to neoplasms or to primary immune deficiencies. Familial hemophagocytic syndromes also occur and are associated with perforin and other gene mutations. The cause of acquired HLH is often cryptic, but the disorder frequently follows an aggressive course. Approximately 60% of patients succumb within 2 months, but some patients respond to therapy that often includes etoposide.

Langerhans Cell Histiocytosis

Langerhans cell histiocytosis (LCH) is a neoplastic proliferation of Langerhans cells, which are dendritic cells normally found primarily in the skin (Jaffe R, 1999; Swerdlow et al, 2008). It presents in a variety of ways, including unifocal disease, usually in the bone, and occasionally in the lymph node, skin, or lung, of an adolescent or young adult. These have been termed *eosinophilic granuloma.*

Multifocal unisystem disease usually involves bone in children with frequent spread to adjacent soft tissues, and is also known as Hand-Schüller-Christian disease. Skull involvement may lead to diabetes insipidus, tooth loss, or exophthalmos. Multiple lung lesions may be seen in adults.

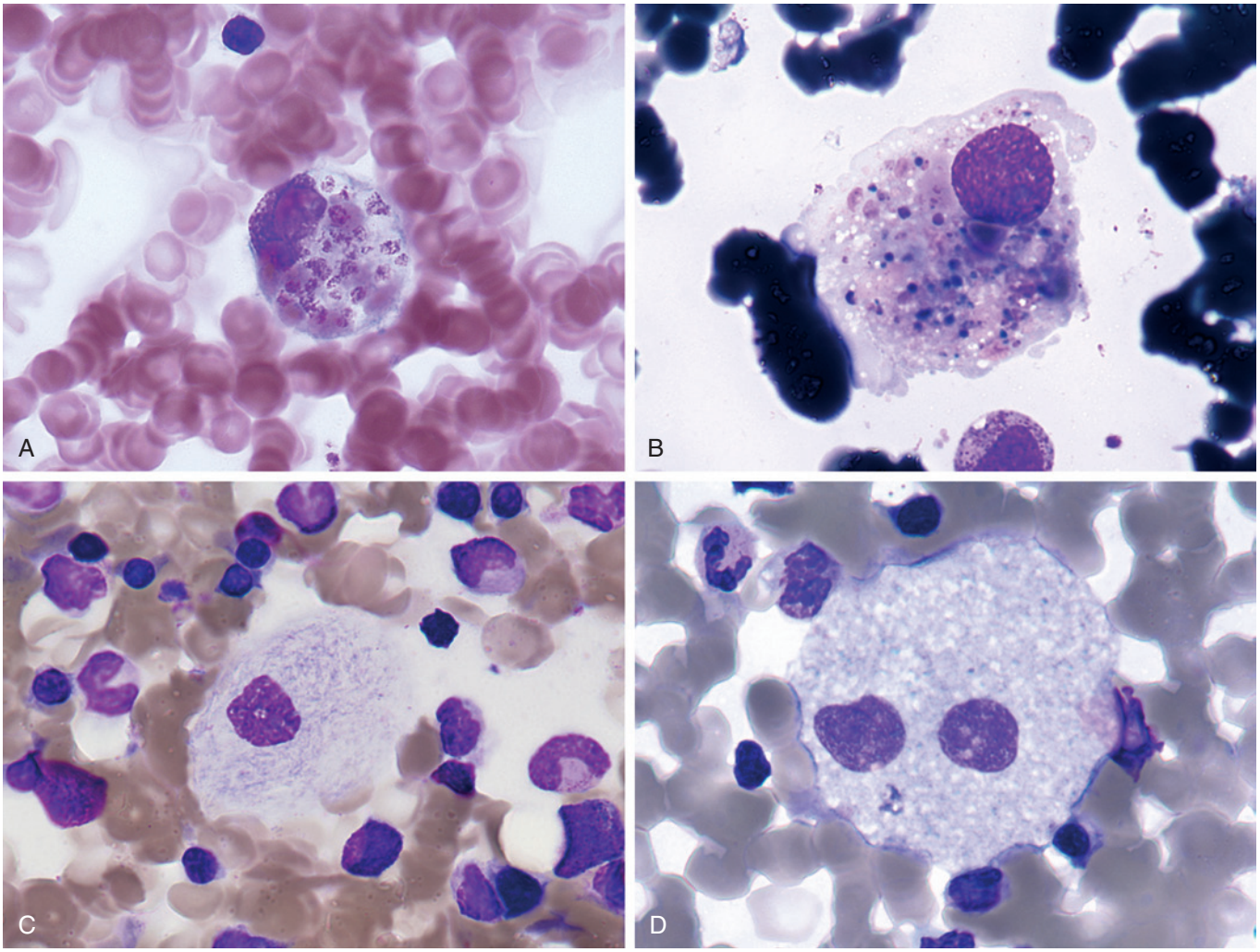


Figure 33-91 A, Histiocytic hyperplasia occurring in infection-associated hemophagocytic syndrome; this macrophage contains platelets as well as erythrocytes (1000×). Compare with **B,** a histiocyte containing cell debris in a patient with human immunodeficiency virus (1000×); **C,** an abnormal macrophage in Gaucher's disease (1000×); and **D,** one in Niemann-Pick disease (1000×).

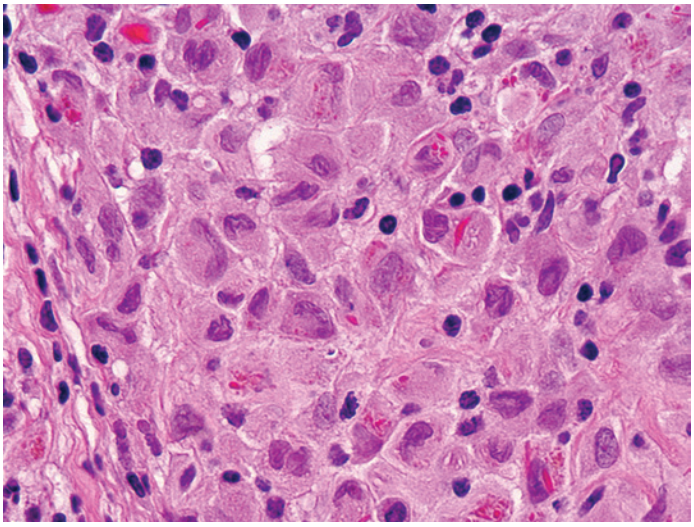


Figure 33-92 Langerhans cell histiocytosis, showing typical nuclear folding and grooves (500×).

Multifocal multisystem disease, known as *Letterer-Siwe disease*, occurs in infants. It is an aggressive disease with fever, skin rash, hepatosplenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, bone involvement, and pancytopenia.

Histologically, all forms of LCH consist of infiltrates of Langerhans cells. They are dendritic cells that resemble benign histiocytes but have a coffee bean–shaped nucleus with a linear central groove (Fig. 33-92). Variable numbers of eosinophils and lymphocytes are usually present. The infiltrates form nodules in bone, involve the upper dermis of the skin, and may involve lymph node sinuses and splenic red pulp. Giant cells are sometimes present but differ from multinucleated histiocytes (as in juvenile xanthogranuloma) by the presence of the characteristic nuclei.

Immunophenotyping shows reactivity for CD1a and S-100 protein and may be weakly reactive with CD45 and CD68, but is negative for T and B cell–specific antibodies and follicular dendritic markers CD21 and CD35. Electron microscopy remains useful in some cases because of characteristic Birbeck granules, which are pentalaminar racket-shaped structures pathognomonic of Langerhans cells.

Outcome is largely dependent on extent of organ involvement, with localized disease showing a high rate of event-free survival and extensive disease showing only a variable response to chemotherapy. Pulmonary disease in adults may remit spontaneously on cessation of smoking.

A cytologically malignant form of LCH has been termed *Langerhans cell sarcoma* (Zwerdling et al, 2014). Patients usually present with multiorgan disease, a high mitotic rate, and aggressive behavior.

Interdigitating Dendritic Cell Sarcoma/Tumor

Interdigitating dendritic cell sarcoma/tumor (IDCS) is a rare tumor of lymph node paracortical interdigitating dendritic cells (Swerdlow et al, 2008). It has the gross and microscopic appearance of a sarcoma and is tan in color, with a firm lobulated appearance, sometimes with hemorrhage or necrosis and microscopic fascicles, whorls, and/or a storiform pattern. Lymphocytes are scattered throughout, and plump epithelioid cells may be present. Atypia is variable.

Immunophenotyping is essential to diagnosis. The tumor cells are positive for S-100, with variable weak positivity for CD45 and monocyte markers CD68 and lysozyme. CD1a, CD21, and CD35 are negative. Other myeloid B and T cell markers, EMA, and CD30 are also negative. Background lymphocytes are reactive T cells. Prognosis is variable.

Follicular Dendritic Cell Sarcoma/Tumor

This is another rare dendritic cell tumor derived from follicular dendritic cells, which are phenotypically different from IDCS. Involvement is usually cervical lymph nodes, with axillary, mediastinal, mesenteric, and retroperitoneal node involvement also described. Microscopically, nodes show fascicles, a storiform pattern, and/or complete whorls.

The immunophenotype shows positivity for CD21, CD23, and CD35, with variable S-100 and CD68, negative CD1a, and occasional CD45 and CD20. Other myeloid T and B cell markers, cytokeratins, and HMB-45 are negative. CD117 is also negative.

These tumors are indolent, with frequently good response to simple resection.

Dendritic Cell Sarcoma, Not Otherwise Specified

Dendritic cell sarcomas that do not fall into the previous specific categories may be termed *DCS, not otherwise specified.* They are also called *indeterminate cell sarcoma* and express CD1a and S-100 without Birbeck granules.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Chadburn A: Immunodeficiency-associated lymphoid proliferations (ALPS, HIV, and KSHV/HHV8), *Semin Diagn Pathol* 30:113–129, 2013.

This provides a recent and comprehensive review of immunodeficiency-associated lymphoid proliferations.

Hernandez AM: Peripheral blood manifestations of lymphoma and solid tumors, *Clin Lab Med* 22:215–253, 2002.

This article describes the correlation of findings identified on peripheral blood films in patients with various types of lymphoid leukemia and lymphoma, including morphology of various lymphoma cells in the circulating blood during disease.

Jaffe ES, Harris NL, Vardiman JW, et al: *Hematopathology*, Philadelphia, 2011, Saunders.

This is a comprehensive, authoritative, and up-to-date review of hematopathology, incorporating the 2008 WHO classification.

Kroft SH: Infectious diseases manifested in the peripheral blood, *Clin Lab Med* 22:253–277, 2002.

A review of both nonspecific hematopoietic changes in the peripheral blood during infection as well as findings for the few diseases in which peripheral blood film review plays a primary diagnostic role.

Paraskevas F: Lymphocytes and lymphatic organs. In Greer JP, Arber DA, Glader B, et al, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 13, Baltimore, 2014, Williams & Wilkins, pp 227–250.

This provides an excellent basic discussion of post–bone marrow lymphopoiesis.

Pui CH, Carroll WL, Meshinchi S, et al: Biology, risk stratification, and therapy of pediatric acute leukemias: An update, *J Clin Oncol* 29:551–565, 2011.

This review describes progress in treatment related to advances in biologic understanding and of risk stratification for pediatric acute leukemia. These lessons are also applicable to adult leukemia in a broad sense.

Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, et al, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, ed 4, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC.

This provides a comprehensive and uniform classification of hematopoietic neoplasms. It was commissioned by the WHO through the major organizations of hematopathology, with clinical input from cooperative groups and cancer centers, and is intended to provide standard diagnositic criteria for worldwide use.

Tefferi A, Thiele J, Vannucchi A, et al: An overview on CALR and CSF3R mutations and a proposal for revision of WHO diagnostic criteria for myeloproliferative neoplasms, *Leukemia* 28:1407–1413, 2014.

This article describes recently discovered mutations in myeloproliferative (MPN) neoplasms that help explain the origin of several disorders that have been puzzling for many years, and help place MPN diagnosis/classification on solid footing.

REFERENCES

Abdel-Wahab O, Levine RL: Mutations in epigenetic modifiers in the pathogenesis and therapy of acute myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 121:3563–3572, 2013.

Akasheh N, Walsh MT, Costello RW: Eosinophil peroxidase induces expression of cholinergic genes via cell surface neural interactions, *Mol Immunol* 62:37–45, 2014.

Akin C, Valent P: Diagnostic criteria and classification of mastocytosis in 2014, *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 34:207–218, 2014.

Alapat D, Coviello-Malle J, Owens R, et al: Diagnostic usefulness and prognostic impact of CD200 expression in lymphoid malignancies and plasma cell myeloma, *Am J Clin Pathol* 137:93–100, 2012.

Alder A: Uber konstitutionell bedingte Granulationsveranderungen den Leukocyten, *Archives Klinische Medizinn* 138:372–378, 1939.

Alizon M, Sonigo P, Barre-Sinoussi F, et al: Molecular cloning of lymphadenopathy-associated virus, *Nature* 312:757–760, 1984.

Amin HM, Lai R: Pathobiology of ALK+ anaplastic large-cell lymphoma, *Blood* 110:2259–2267, 2007.

Anagnostopoulos I, Hansmann ML, Franssila K, et al: European Task Force on Lymphoma project on lymphocyte predominance Hodgkin disease: histologic and immunohistologic analysis of submitted cases reveals 2 types of Hodgkin disease with a nodular growth pattern and abundant lymphocytes, *Blood* 96: 1889–1899, 2000.

Arcaini L, Orlandi E, Scotti M, et al: Combination of rituximab, cyclophosphamide, and vincristine induces complete hematologic remission of splenic marginal zone lymphoma, *Clin Lymphoma* 4:250–252, 2004.

Atsaves V, Lekakis L, Drakos E, et al: The oncogenic JUNB/CD30 axis contributes to cell cycle deregulation in ALK+ anaplastic large cell lymphoma, *Br J Haematol* 167:514–523, 2014.

Auerbach AD: Fanconi anemia and its diagnosis, *Mutat Res* 668:4–10, 2009.

Bain BJ, Brunning RD, Vardiman J, et al: Chronic neutrophilic leukemia. In Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, et al, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC Press, pp 38–39.

Baliakas P, Strefford JC, Bikos V, et al: Splenic marginal-zone lymphoma: ontogeny and genetics, *Leuk Lymphoma* 56:301–310, 2014.

Barre-Sinoussi F, Chermann JC, Rey F, et al: Isolation of a T-lymphotropic retrovirus from a patient at risk for acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), *Science* 220:868–871, 1983.

Belhadj K, Reyes F, Farcet JP, et al: Hepatosplenic gammadelta T-cell lymphoma is a rare clinicopathologic entity with poor outcome: report on a series of 21 patients, *Blood* 102:4261–4269, 2003.

Bellan C, De Falco G, Lazzi S, et al: Pathologic aspects of AIDS malignancies, *Oncogene* 22:6639–6645, 2003.

Bene MC, Porwit A: Acute leukemias of ambiguous lineage, *Semin Diagn Pathol* 29:12–18, 2012.

Bennett JM, Catovsky D, Daniel MT, et al: Proposals for the classification of the acute leukaemias. French-American-British (FAB) co-operative group, *Br J Haematol* 33:451–458, 1976.

Bennett JM, Catovsky D, Daniel MT, et al: A variant form of hypergranular promyelocytic leukaemia (M3), *Br J Haematol* 44(1):169–170, 1980.

Bennett JM, Catovsky D, Daniel MT, et al: Proposals for the classification of the myelodysplastic syndromes, *Br J Haematol* 51:189–199, 1982.

Bennett JM, Catovsky D, Daniel MT, et al: Criteria for the diagnosis of acute leukemia of megakaryocyte lineage (M7). A report of the French-American-British Cooperative Group, *Ann Intern Med* 103:460–462, 1985a.

Bennett JM, Catovsky D, Daniel MT, et al: Proposed revised criteria for the classification of acute myeloid leukemia: a report of the French-American-British Cooperative Group, *Ann Intern Med* 103:620–625, 1985b.

Bennett JM, Catovsky D, Daniel MT, et al: Proposals for the recognition of minimally differentiated acute myeloid leukaemia (AML-MO), *Br J Haematol* 78: 325–329, 1991.

Berard CW, Hutchison RE: The problem of classifying lymphomas: an orderly prescription for progress, *Ann Oncol* 8(Suppl 2):3–9, 1997.

Bianchi G, Anderson KC, Harris NL, et al: The heavy chain diseases: clinical and pathologic features, *Oncology (Williston Park)* 28:45–53, 2014.

Bjorkholm M, Derolf AR, Hultcrantz M, et al: Treatment-related risk factors for transformation to acute myeloid leukemia and myelodysplastic syndromes in myeloproliferative neoplasms, *J Clin Oncol* 29:2410–2415, 2011.

Boeckh M: Complications, diagnosis, management, and prevention of CMV infections: current and future, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2011:305–309, 2011.

Borges AH, Dubrow R, Silverberg MJ: Factors contributing to risk for cancer among HIV-infected individuals, and evidence that earlier combination antiretroviral therapy will alter this risk, *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 9:34–40, 2014.

Bovio IM, Allan RW: The expression of myeloid antigens CD13 and/or CD33 is a marker of ALK+ anaplastic large cell lymphomas, *Am J Clin Pathol* 130: 628–634, 2008.

Braeuninger A, Kuppers R, Strickler JG, et al: Hodgkin and Reed-Sternberg cells in lymphocyte predominant Hodgkin disease represent clonal populations of germinal center-derived tumor B cells, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 94:9337–9342, 1997.

Brito-Babapulle F: The eosinophilias, including the idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome, *Br J Haematol* 121:203–223, 2003.

Brunning R: Morphologic alterations in nucleated blood and marrow cells in genetic disorders, *Hum Pathol* 1:99, 1970.

Burkitt D: A sarcoma involving the jaws in African children, *Br J Surg* 46:218–223, 1958.

Cagnetta A, Adamia S, Acharya C, et al: Role of genotype-based approach in the clinical management of adult acute myeloid leukemia with normal cytogenetics, *Leuk Res* 38:649–659, 2014.

Camacho FI, Algara P, Mollejo M, et al: Nodal marginal zone lymphoma: a heterogeneous tumor. A comprehensive analysis of a series of 27 cases, *Am J Surg Pathol* 27:762–771, 2003.

Cancer Genome Atlas Research Network: Genomic and epigenomic landscapes of adult de novo acute myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 368:2059–2074, 2013.

Capello D, Vitolo U, Pasqualucci L, et al: Distribution and pattern of BCL-6 mutations throughout the spectrum of B-cell neoplasia, *Blood* 95:651–659, 2000.

Castella A, Croxson TS, Mildvan D, et al: The bone marrow in AIDS: a histologic, hematologic, and microbiologic study, *Am J Clin Pathol* 84:425–432, 1985.

Cazzola M, Della Porta MG, Malcovati L: The genetic basis of myelodysplasia and its clinical relevance, *Blood* 122:4021–4034, 2013.

Cazzola M, Kralovics R: From Janus kinase 2 to calreticulin: the clinically relevant genomic landscape of myeloproliferative neoplasms, *Blood* 123:3714–3719, 2014.

Cerchietti L, Leonard JP: Targeting the epigenome and other new strategies in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: beyond R-CHOP, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2013:591–595, 2013.

Chalayer E, French M, Cathebras P: Bone marrow fibrosis as a feature of systemic lupus erythematosus: a case report and literature review, *Springerplus* 3:349-1801-3-349. eCollection 2014, 2014.

Cheah CY, Burbury K, Apperley JF, et al: Patients with myeloid malignancies bearing PDGFRB fusion genes achieve durable long-term remissions with imatinib, *Blood* 123:3574–3577, 2014.

Chen Y, Kantarjian H, Pierce S, et al: Prognostic significance of 11q23 aberrations in adult acute myeloid leukemia and the role of allogeneic stem cell transplantation, *Leukemia* 27:836–842, 2013.

Chikatsu N, Kojima H, Suzukawa K, et al: ALK+, CD30-, CD20- large B-cell lymphoma containing anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) fused to clathrin heavy chain gene (CLTC), *Mod Pathol* 16:828–832, 2003.

Chou J, Ohsumi TK, Geha RS: Use of whole exome and genome sequencing in the identification of genetic causes of primary immunodeficiencies, *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 12:623–628, 2012.

Christensen RD, Calhoun DA: Congenital neutropenia, *Clin Perinatol* 31:29–38, 2004.

Clark TA: Changing pertussis epidemiology: everything old is new again, *J Infect Dis* 209:978–981, 2014.

Colella R, Hollensead SC: Understanding and recognizing the Pelger-Huet anomaly, *Am J Clin Pathol* 137:358–366, 2012.

Crist WM, Shuster JJ, Falletta J, et al: Clinical features and outcome in childhood T-cell leukemia-lymphoma according to stage of thymocyte differentiation: a Pediatric Oncology Group study, *Blood* 72:1891–1897, 1988.

Csernus B, Timar B, Fulop Z, et al: Mutational analysis of IgVH and BCL-6 genes suggests thymic B-cells origin of mediastinal (thymic) B-cell lymphoma, *Leuk Lymphoma* 45:2105–2110, 2004.

Dainiak N: Hematologic consequences of exposure to ionizing radiation, *Exp Hematol* 30:513–528, 2002.

Dale DC: Cyclic and chronic neutropenia: an update on diagnosis and treatment, *Clin Adv Hematol Oncol* 9:868–869, 2011.

Davey FR, Huntington S: Age-related variation in lymphocyte subpopulations, *Gerontology* 23:381–389, 1977.

Dearden C: B- and T-cell prolymphocytic leukemia: antibody approaches, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2012:645–651, 2012.

De Paepe P, Baens M, van Krieken H, et al: ALK activation by the CLTC-ALK fusion is a recurrent event in large B-cell lymphoma, *Blood* 102:2638–2641, 2003.

Dinauer MC: Disorders of neutrophil function: an overview, *Methods Mol Biol* 1124:501–515, 2014.

Dojcinov SD, Venkataraman G, Pittaluga S, et al: Age-related EBV-associated lymphoproliferative disorders in the Western population: a spectrum of reactive lymphoid hyperplasia and lymphoma, *Blood* 117:4726–4735, 2011.

Dorfman RF, Remington JS: Value of lymph-node biopsy in the diagnosis of acute acquired toxoplasmosis, *N Engl J Med* 289:878–881, 1973.

Dotta L, Badolato R: Primary immunodeficiencies appearing as combined lymphopenia, neutropenia, and monocytopenia, *Immunol Lett* 161:222–225, 2014.

Dotta L, Tassone L, Badolato R: Clinical and genetic features of Warts, Hypogammaglobulinemia, Infections and Myelokathexis (WHIM) syndrome, *Curr Mol Med* 11:317–325, 2011.

Druker BJ, Talpaz M, Resta DJ, et al: Efficacy and safety of a specific inhibitor of the BCR-ABL tyrosine kinase in chronic myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 344:1031–1037, 2001.

Duarte-Davidson R, Courage C, Rushton L, et al: Benzene in the environment: an assessment of the potential risks to the health of the population, *Occup Environ Med* 58:2–13, 2001.

Elliott MA, Dewald GW, Tefferi A, et al: Chronic neutrophilic leukemia (CNL): a clinical, pathologic and cytogenetic study, *Leukemia* 15:35–40, 2001.

Elliott MA, Tefferi A: Chronic neutrophilic leukemia 2014: Update on diagnosis, molecular genetics, and management, *Am J Hematol* 89:651–658, 2014.

Eyre TA, Khan D, Hall GW, et al: Anaplastic lymphoma kinase-positive anaplastic large cell lymphoma: current and future perspectives in adult and paediatric disease, *Eur J Haematol* 93:455–468, 2014.

Faitelson Y, Grunebaum E: Hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis and primary immune deficiency disorders, *Clin Immunol* 155:118–125, 2014.

Falini B, Martelli MP, Bolli N, et al: Acute myeloid leukemia with mutated nucleophosmin (NPM1): is it a distinct entity? *Blood* 117:1109–1120, 2011.

Falini B, Tiacci E, Liso A, et al: Simple diagnostic assay for hairy cell leukaemia by immunocytochemical detection of annexin A1 (ANXA1), *Lancet* 363:1869–1870, 2004.

Fanale M: A novel prognostic scoring system for NLPHL, *Blood* 122:4154–4155, 2013.

Fernandez de Larrea C, Kyle RA, Durie BG, et al: Plasma cell leukemia: consensus statement on diagnostic requirements, response criteria and treatment recommendations by the International Myeloma Working Group, *Leukemia* 27:780–791, 2013.

Ferry JA: Burkitt's lymphoma: clinicopathologic features and differential diagnosis, *Oncologist* 11:375–383, 2006.

Flatley E, Chen AI, Zhao X, et al: Aberrations of MYC are a common event in B-cell prolymphocytic leukemia, *Am J Clin Pathol* 142:347–354, 2014.

Foa R, Lauria F, Catovsky D: Evidence that T colony formation is a property of T mu (helper) lymphocytes, *Clin Exp Immunol* 42:152–155, 1980.

Foran JM: New prognostic markers in acute myeloid leukemia: perspective from the clinic, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2010:47–55, 2010.

Franklin EC: gamma- and mu-Heavy chain diseases and related disorders, *J Clin Pathol Suppl (Assoc Clin Pathol)* 6:65–71, 1975.

Foucar K, Falini B, Catovsky D, et al: Hairy cell leukaemia. In Swerdlow S, Campo E, Harris N, et al, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, ed 4, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC Press, pp 188–190.

Furuta GT, Atkins FD, Lee NA, et al: Changing roles of eosinophils in health and disease, *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 113:3–8, 2014.

Gaidano G, Foa R, Dalla-Favera R: Molecular pathogenesis of chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *J Clin Invest* 122:3432–3438, 2012.

Galton DA, Goldman JM, Wiltshaw E, et al: Prolymphocytic leukaemia, *Br J Haematol* 27:7–23, 1974.

Garg H, Mohl J, Joshi A: HIV-1 induced bystander apoptosis, *Viruses* 4:3020–3043, 2012.

Gascoyne RD, Lamant L, Martin-Subero JI, et al: ALK-positive diffuse large B-cell lymphoma is associated with Clathrin-ALK rearrangements: report of 6 cases, *Blood* 102:2568–2573, 2003.

Gaulard P, de Leval L: Pathology of peripheral T-cell lymphomas: where do we stand? *Semin Hematol* 51:5–16, 2014.

Gessain A, Rua R, Betsem E, et al: HTLV-3/4 and simian foamy retroviruses in humans: discovery, epidemiology, cross-species transmission and molecular virology, *Virology* 435:187–199, 2013.

Gloghini A, Dolcetti R, Carbone A: Lymphomas occurring specifically in HIV-infected patients: from pathogenesis to pathology, *Semin Cancer Biol* 23:457–467, 2013.

Go RS, Wester SM: Immunophenotypic and molecular features, clinical outcomes, treatments, and prognostic factors associated with subcutaneous panniculitis-like T-cell lymphoma: a systematic analysis of 156 patients reported in the literature, *Cancer* 101:1404–1413, 2004.

Gombart AF, Shiohara M, Kwok SH, et al: Neutrophil-specific granule deficiency: homozygous recessive inheritance of a frameshift mutation in the gene encoding transcription factor CCAAT/enhancer binding protein—epsilon, *Blood* 97:2561–2567, 2001.

Gotlib J: World Health Organization-defined eosinophilic disorders: 2014 update on diagnosis, risk stratification, and management, *Am J Hematol* 89:325–337, 2014r.

Gotlib J, Maxson JE, George TI, et al: The new genetics of chronic neutrophilic leukemia and atypical CML: implications for diagnosis and treatment, *Blood* 122: 1707–1711, 2013.

Granger JM, Kontoyiannis DP: Etiology and outcome of extreme leukocytosis in 758 nonhematologic cancer patients: a retrospective, single-institution study, *Cancer* 115:3919–3923, 2009.

Gulino AV, Moratto D, Sozzani S, et al: Altered leukocyte response to CXCL12 in patients with warts hypogammaglobulinemia, infections, myelokathexis (WHIM) syndrome, *Blood* 104:444–452, 2004.

Gulley ML, Tang W: Laboratory assays for Epstein-Barr virus-related disease, *J Mol Diagn* 10:279–292, 2008.

Gupta M, Ashok Kumar J, Sitaram U, et al: The t(6;9)(p22;q34) in myeloid neoplasms: a retrospective study of 16 cases, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 203:297–302, 2010.

Hamadeh F, MacNamara SP, Aguilera NS, et al: MYD88 L265P mutation analysis helps define nodal lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma, *Mod Pathol* 28(4):564–574, 2015.

Harrington DS, Weisenburger DD, Purtilo DT: Epstein-Barr virus-associated lymphoproliferative lesions, *Clin Lab Med* 8:97–118, 1988.

Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Diebold J, et al: Lymphoma classification—from controversy to consensus: the R.E.A.L. and WHO Classification of lymphoid neoplasms, *Ann Oncol* 11(Suppl 1):3–10, 2000.

Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Stein H, et al: A revised European-American classification of lymphoid neoplasms: a proposal from the International Lymphoma Study Group, *Blood* 84:1361–1392, 1994.

Harris NL, de Leval L, Ferry JA: Follicular lymphoma. In Jaffe ES, Harris NL, Vardiman JW, et al, editors: *Hematopathology*, Philadelphia, 2011, WB Saunders, pp 267–290.

Hartmann S, Eichenauer DA, Plutschow A, et al: The prognostic impact of variant histology in nodular lymphocyte-predominant Hodgkin lymphoma: a report from the German Hodgkin Study Group (GHSG), *Blood* 122:4246–4252, quiz 4292, 2013.

Hauck F, Klein C: Pathogenic mechanisms and clinical implications of congenital neutropenia syndromes, *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 13:596–606, 2013.

Helbig G: Advances in the diagnosis and treatment of eosinophilia, *Curr Opin Hematol* 21:3–7, 2014.

Hess RD: Routine Epstein-Barr virus diagnostics from the laboratory perspective: still challenging after 35 years, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3381–3387, 2004.

Himmelmann A, Gautschi O, Nawrath M, et al: Persistent polyclonal B-cell lymphocytosis is an expansion of functional IgD(+)CD27(+) memory B cells, *Br J Haematol* 114:400–405, 2001.

Holland SM: Chronic granulomatous disease, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 27:89–99, viii, 2013.

Hong M, Ko YH, Yoo KH, et al: EBV-Positive T/NK-Cell lymphoproliferative disease of childhood, *Korean J Pathol* 47:137–147, 2013.

Hoxie JA: Hematologic manifestations of AIDS. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ, Shattil SJ, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice*, New York, 1995, Churchill Livingstone.

Hsu AP, Sampaio EP, Khan J, et al: Mutations in GATA2 are associated with the autosomal dominant and sporadic monocytopenia and mycobacterial infection (MonoMAC) syndrome, *Blood* 118:2653–2655, 2011.

Huang ME, Ye YC, Chen SR, et al: Use of all-trans retinoic acid in the treatment of acute promyelocytic leukemia, *Blood* 72:567–572, 1988.

Hudnall SD, Molina CP: Marked increase in L-selectin-negative T cells in neonatal pertussis. The lymphocytosis explained? *Am J Clin Pathol* 114:35–40, 2000.

Huppmann AR, Nicolae A, Slack GW, et al: EBV may be expressed in the LP cells of nodular lymphocyte-predominant Hodgkin lymphoma (NLPHL) in both children and adults, *Am J Surg Pathol* 38:316–324, 2014.

Hutchison RE, Kurec AS, Davey FR: Granulocytic sarcoma, *Clin Lab Med* 10:889–901, 1990.

Introne W, Boissy RE, Gahl WA: Clinical, molecular, and cell biological aspects of Chediak-Higashi syndrome, *Mol Genet Metab* 68:283–303, 1999.

Isaacson PG: Update on MALT lymphomas, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 18:57–68, 2005.

Ishitsuka K, Tamura K: Human T-cell leukaemia virus type I and adult T-cell leukaemia-lymphoma, *Lancet Oncol* 15:e517–e526, 2014.

Itzykson R, Kosmider O, Renneville A, et al: Prognostic score including gene mutations in chronic myelomonocytic leukemia, *J Clin Oncol* 31:2428–2436, 2013a.

Itzykson R, Kosmider O, Renneville A, et al: Clonal architecture of chronic myelomonocytic leukemias, *Blood* 121:2186–2198, 2013b.

Jabbour E, Kantarjian H: Chronic myeloid leukemia: 2014 update on diagnosis, monitoring, and management, *Am J Hematol* 89:547–556, 2014.

Jaffe R: The histiocytoses, *Clin Lab Med* 19:135–155, 1999.

Jaffe ES, Nicolae A, Pittaluga S: Peripheral T-cell and NK-cell lymphomas in the WHO classification: pearls and pitfalls, *Mod Pathol* 26(Suppl 1):S71–S87, 2013.

Jardin F: Next generation sequencing and the management of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: from whole exome analysis to targeted therapy, *Discov Med* 18:51–65, 2014.

Kalyanaraman VS, Sarngadharan MG, Robert-Guroff M, et al: A new subtype of human T-cell leukemia virus (HTLV-II) associated with a T-cell variant of hairy cell leukemia, *Science* 218:571–573, 1982.

Kang J, Coles M, Cado D, et al: The developmental fate of T cells is critically influenced by TCRgammadelta expression, *Immunity* 8:427–438, 1998.

Katzenstein AL, Carrington CB, Liebow AA: Lymphomatoid granulomatosis: a clinicopathologic study of 152 cases, *Cancer* 43:360–373, 1979.

Katzenstein AL, Peiper SC: Detection of Epstein-Barr virus genomes in lymphomatoid granulomatosis: analysis of 29 cases by the polymerase chain reaction technique, *Mod Pathol* 3:435–441, 1990.

King RL, Howard MT, Bagg A: Hodgkin lymphoma: pathology, pathogenesis, and a plethora of potential prognostic predictors, *Adv Anat Pathol* 21:12–25, 2014.

Klein E, Kis LL, Klein G: Epstein-Barr virus infection in humans: from harmless to life endangering virus-lymphocyte interactions, *Oncogene* 26:1297–1305, 2007.

Knowles DM: Immunophenotypic and antigen receptor gene rearrangement analysis in T cell neoplasia, *Am J Pathol* 134:761–785, 1989.

Kraut EH: Clinical manifestations and infectious complications of hairy-cell leukaemia, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 16:33–40, 2003.

Krauth MT, Alpermann T, Bacher U, et al: WT1 mutations are secondary events in AML, show varying frequencies and impact on prognosis between genetic subgroups, *Leukemia* 29:660–667, 2015.

Kreslavsky T, Gleimer M, Garbe AI, et al: alphabeta versus gammadelta fate choice: counting the T-cell lineages at the branch point, *Immunol Rev* 238:169–181, 2010.

Kupfer GM: Fanconi anemia: a signal transduction and DNA repair pathway, *Yale J Biol Med* 86:491–497, 2013.

Lagergren J: The white blood cell count and the erythrocyte sedimentation rate in pertussis, *Acta Paediatr* 52:405–409, 1963.

Lairmore MD, Haines R, Anupam R: Mechanisms of human T-lymphotropic virus type 1 transmission and disease, *Curr Opin Virol* 2:474–481, 2012.

Lan TT, Brown NA, Hristov AC: Controversies and considerations in the diagnosis of primary cutaneous CD4(+) small/medium T-Cell lymphoma, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 138:1307–1318, 2014.

Landgren O: Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance and smoldering multiple myeloma: biological insights and early treatment strategies, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2013:478–487, 2013.

Landgren O, Morgan GJ: Biologic frontiers in multiple myeloma: from biomarker identification to clinical practice, *Clin Cancer Res* 20:804–813, 2014.

LeBoit PE: Mycosis fungoides and Sezary syndrome. In Jaffe ES, Harris NL, Vardiman JW, et al, editors: *Hematopathology*, Philadelphia, 2011, Saunders, pp 588–603.

Levine RL: Mechanisms of mutations in myeloproliferative neoplasms, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 22:489–494, 2009.

Levine RL, Gilliland DG: Myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood* 112:2190–2198, 2008.

Li S, Lin P, Young KH, et al: MYC/BCL2 double-hit high-grade B-cell lymphoma, *Adv Anat Pathol* 20:315–326, 2013.

Liersch R, Muller-Tidow C, Berdel WE, et al: Prognostic factors for acute myeloid leukaemia in adults—biological significance and clinical use, *Br J Haematol* 165:17–38, 2014.

Lin CC, Hou HA, Chou WC, et al: SF3B1 mutations in patients with myelodysplastic syndromes: the mutation is stable during disease evolution, *Am J Hematol* 89:E109–E115, 2014.

Little RF, Dunleavy K: Update on the treatment of HIV-associated hematologic malignancies, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2013:382–388, 2013.

Liu X, Loughran TP Jr: The spectrum of large granular lymphocyte leukemia and Felty's syndrome, *Curr Opin Hematol* 18:254–259, 2011.

Lugthart S, Groschel S, Beverloo HB, et al: Clinical, molecular, and prognostic significance of WHO type inv(3)(q21q26.2)/t(3;3)(q21;q26.2) and various other 3q abnormalities in acute myeloid leukemia, *J Clin Oncol* 28:3890–3898, 2010.

Lukes RJ, Butler JJ: The pathology and nomenclature of Hodgkin's disease, *Cancer Res* 26:1063–1083, 1966.

Malcovati L, Cazzola M: Refractory anemia with ring sideroblasts, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 26:377–385, 2013.

Maldonado JE, Hanlon DG: Monocytosis: a current appraisal, *Mayo Clin Proc* 40:248–259, 1965.

Martinez-Aviles L, Besses C, Alvarez-Larran A, et al: TET2, ASXL1, IDH1, IDH2, and c-CBL genes in JAK2- and MPL-negative myeloproliferative neoplasms, *Ann Hematol* 91:533–541, 2012.

Maxson JE, Gotlib J, Pollyea DA, et al: Oncogenic CSF3R mutations in chronic neutrophilic leukemia and atypical CML, *N Engl J Med* 368:1781–1790, 2013.

Mbulaiteye SM, Parkin DM, Rabkin CS: Epidemiology of AIDS-related malignancies: an international perspective, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 17:673–696, 2003.

McKenna RW, Parkin J, Bloomfield CD, et al: Acute promyelocytic leukaemia: a study of 39 cases with identification of a hyperbasophilic microgranular variant, *Br J Haematol* 50:201–214, 1982.

Michiels JJ, Berneman Z, Schroyens W, et al: Changing concepts of diagnostic criteria of myeloproliferative

disorders and the molecular etiology and classification of myeloproliferative neoplasms: From Dameshek 1950 to Vainchenker 2005 and beyond, *Acta Haematol* 133:36–51, 2014.
Michiels JJ, Kutti J, Stark P, et al: Diagnosis, pathogenesis and treatment of the myeloproliferative disorders essential thrombocythemia, polycythemia vera and essential megakaryocytic granulocytic metaplasia and myelofibrosis, *Neth J Med* 54:46–62, 1999.
Micol JB, Duployez N, Boissel N, et al: Frequent ASXL2 mutations in acute myeloid leukemia patients with t(8;21)/RUNX1-RUNX1T1 chromosomal translocations, *Blood* 124:1445–1449, 2014.
Miyoshi H, Sato K, Niino D, et al: Clinicopathologic analysis of peripheral T-cell lymphoma, follicular variant, and comparison with angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma: Bcl-6 expression might affect progression between these disorders, *Am J Clin Pathol* 137:879–889, 2012.
Montgomery ND, Dunphy CH, Mooberry M, et al: Diagnostic complexities of eosinophilia, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 137:259–269, 2013.
Morris SW, Kirstein MN, Valentine MB, et al: Fusion of a kinase gene, ALK, to a nucleolar protein gene, NPM, in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Science* 263:1281–1284, 1994.
Morscio J, Dierickx D, Nijs J, et al: Clinicopathologic comparison of plasmablastic lymphoma in HIV-positive, immunocompetent, and posttransplant patients: single-center series of 25 cases and meta-analysis of 277 reported cases, *Am J Surg Pathol* 38:875–886, 2014.
Mrozek K, Heerema NA, Bloomfield CD: Cytogenetics in acute leukemia, *Blood Rev* 18:115–136, 2004.
Muller-Hermelink H, Montserrat E, Catovsky D, et al: Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma. In Swerdlow S, Campo E, Harris N, et al, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, ed 4, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC Press, pp 180–182.
Nam-Cha SH, Montes-Moreno S, Salcedo MT, et al: Lymphocyte-rich classical Hodgkin's lymphoma: distinctive tumor and microenvironment markers, *Mod Pathol* 22:1006–1015, 2009.
Nauseef WM: Diagnostic assays for myeloperoxidase and myeloperoxidase deficiency, *Methods Mol Biol* 1124:537–546, 2014.
Nowell PC: A minute chromosome in human chronic granulocytic leukemia, *Science* 132:1497, 1960.
Nowell PC: Discovery of the Philadelphia chromosome: a personal perspective, *J Clin Invest* 117:2033–2035, 2007.
Nowell PC, Hungerford DA: Chromosome studies in human leukemia. II. Chronic granulocytic leukemia, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 27:1013–1035, 1961.
Nyamweya S, Hegedus A, Jaye A, et al: Comparing HIV-1 and HIV-2 infection: Lessons for viral immunopathogenesis, *Rev Med Virol* 23:221–240, 2013.
O'Gorman MR: Recent developments related to the laboratory diagnosis of primary immunodeficiency diseases, *Curr Opin Pediatr* 20:688–697, 2008.
Ok CY, Papathomas TG, Medeiros LJ, et al: EBV-positive diffuse large B-cell lymphoma of the elderly, *Blood* 122:328–340, 2013.
Okosun J, Bodor C, Wang J, et al: Integrated genomic analysis identifies recurrent mutations and evolution patterns driving the initiation and progression of follicular lymphoma, *Nat Genet* 46:176–181, 2014.
Papaemmanuil E, Gerstung M, Malcovati L, et al: Clinical and biological implications of driver mutations in myelodysplastic syndromes, *Blood* 122:3616–3627, quiz 3699, 2013.
Park S, Ko YH: Epstein-Barr virus-associated T/natural killer-cell lymphoproliferative disorders, *J Dermatol* 41:29–39, 2014.
Park SI, Rogers BB: Monocytopenia as a diagnostic clue to pediatric B-lymphoblastic leukemia with rare circulating blasts, *Pediatr Dev Pathol* 2013. E-pub ahead of print.
Parker A, Bowles K, Bradley JA, et al: Diagnosis of post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder in solid organ transplant recipients—BCSH and BTS Guidelines, *Br J Haematol* 149:675–692, 2010.
Parrilla Castellar ER, Jaffe ES, Said JW, et al: ALK-negative anaplastic large cell lymphoma is a genetically heterogeneous disease with widely disparate clinical outcomes, *Blood* 124:1473–1480, 2014.
Parry M, Rose-Zerilli MJ, Gibson J, et al: Whole exome sequencing identifies novel recurrently mutated genes in patients with splenic marginal zone lymphoma, *PLoS ONE* 8:e83244, 2013.
Paschka P, Du J, Schlenk RF, et al: Secondary genetic lesions in acute myeloid leukemia with inv(16) or t(16;16): a study of the German-Austrian AML Study Group (AMLSG), *Blood* 121:170–177, 2013.
Patel SS, Aasen GA, Dolan MM, et al: Early diagnosis of intravascular large B-cell lymphoma: clues from routine blood smear morphologic findings, *Lab Med* 45:248–252, 2014.
Patkar N, Subramanian PG, Deshpande P, et al: MYD88 mutant lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma/Waldenström macroglobulinemia has distinct clinical and pathological features as compared to its mutation negative counterpart, *Leuk Lymphoma* 56:420–425, 2015.
Patte C, Auperin A, Michon J, et al: The Societe Francaise d'Oncologie Pediatrique LMB89 protocol: highly effective multiagent chemotherapy tailored to the tumor burden and initial response in 561 unselected children with B-cell lymphomas and L3 leukemia, *Blood* 97:3370–3379, 2001.
Pecci A, Klersy C, Gresele P, et al: MYH9-related disease: a novel prognostic model to predict the clinical evolution of the disease based on genotype-phenotype correlations, *Hum Mutat* 35:236–247, 2014.
Perkins SL: Appendix A: normal blood and bone marrow values in humans. Table A: leukocyte count and differential count reference values in children. In Greer JP, Foerster J, Lukens JN, et al, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 11, Philadelphia, 2004, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, p 2702.
Piazza R, Valletta S, Winkelmann N, et al: Recurrent SETBP1 mutations in atypical chronic myeloid leukemia, *Nat Genet* 45:18–24, 2013.
Pick AM, Nystrom KK: Nonchemotherapy drug-induced neutropenia and agranulocytosis: could medications be the culprit? *J Pharm Pract* 27:447–452, 2014.
Pittaluga S, Wilson WH, Jaffe ES: Lymphomatoid granulomatosis. In Swerdlow S, Campo E, Harris N, et al, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, ed 4, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC Press, pp 247–249.
Plo I, Zhang Y, Le Couedic JP, et al: An activating mutation in the CSF3R gene induces a hereditary chronic neutrophilia, *J Exp Med* 206:1701–1707, 2009.
Poiesz BJ, Ruscetti FW, Gazdar AF, et al: Detection and isolation of type C retrovirus particles from fresh and cultured lymphocytes of a patient with cutaneous T-cell lymphoma, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 77:7415–7419, 1980.
Pui CH, Evans WE: A 50-year journey to cure childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Semin Hematol* 50:185–196, 2013.
Put N, Van Roosbroeck K, Konings P, et al: Chronic lymphocytic leukemia and prolymphocytic leukemia with MYC translocations: a subgroup with an aggressive disease course, *Ann Hematol* 91:863–873, 2012.
Qayyum S, Choi JK: Adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 138:282–286, 2014.
Queiros AC, Villamor N, Clot G, et al: A B-cell epigenetic signature defines three biologic subgroups of chronic lymphocytic leukemia with clinical impact, *Leukemia* 29:598–605, 2015.
Querfeld C, Khan I, Mahon B, et al: Primary cutaneous and systemic anaplastic large cell lymphoma: clinicopathologic aspects and therapeutic options, *Oncology (Williston Park)* 24:574–587, 2010.
Quintanilla-Martinez L, Jansen PM, Kinney MC, et al: Non-mycosis fungoides cutaneous T-cell lymphomas: report of the 2011 Society for Hematopathology/European Association for Haematopathology workshop, *Am J Clin Pathol* 139:491–514, 2013.
Ramirez MJ, Titos E, Claria J, et al: Increased apoptosis dependent on caspase-3 activity in polymorphonuclear leukocytes from patients with cirrhosis and ascites, *J Hepatol* 41:44–48, 2004.
Rampal R, Al-Shahrour F, Abdel-Wahab O, et al: Integrated genomic analysis illustrates the central role of JAK-STAT pathway activation in myeloproliferative neoplasm pathogenesis, *Blood* 123:e123–e133, 2014.
Reilly JT: Pathogenesis and management of idiopathic myelofibrosis, *Baillières Clin Haematol* 11:751–767, 1998.
Reilly WA: The granules in the leukocytes in gargoylism, *Am J Dis Child* 62:489–491, 1941.
Reinherz EL, Kung PC, Goldstein G, et al: Discrete stages of human intrathymic differentiation: analysis of normal thymocytes and leukemic lymphoblasts of T-cell lineage, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 77:1588–1592, 1980.
Remington JS, Thulliez P, Montoya JG: Recent developments for diagnosis of toxoplasmosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:941–945, 2004.
Rice KL, Lin X, Wolniak K, et al: Analysis of genomic aberrations and gene expression profiling identifies novel lesions and pathways in myeloproliferative neoplasms, *Blood Cancer J* 1:e40, 2011.
Rizzieri DA, Johnson JL, Byrd JC, et al: Improved efficacy using rituximab and brief duration, high intensity chemotherapy with filgrastim support for Burkitt or aggressive lymphomas: cancer and Leukemia Group B study 10002, *Br J Haematol* 165:102–111, 2014.
Rodriguez-Vicente AE, Diaz MG, Hernandez-Rivas JM: Chronic lymphocytic leukemia: a clinical and molecular heterogenous disease, *Cancer Genet* 206:49–62, 2013.
Rosado FG, Kim AS: Hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis: an update on diagnosis and pathogenesis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 139:713–727, 2013.
Roy A, Roberts I, Norton A, et al: Acute megakaryoblastic leukaemia (AMKL) and transient myeloproliferative disorder (TMD) in Down syndrome: a multi-step model of myeloid leukaemogenesis, *Br J Haematol* 147:3–12, 2009.
Sainati L, Matutes E, Mulligan S, et al: A variant form of hairy cell leukemia resistant to alpha-interferon: clinical and phenotypic characteristics of 17 patients, *Blood* 76:157–162, 1990.
Sandes AF, de Lourdes Chauffaille M, Oliveira CR, et al: CD200 has an important role in the differential diagnosis of mature B-cell neoplasms by multiparameter flow cytometry, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 2013. doi: 10.1002/cytob.21128.
Saposnik B, Binard S, Fenneteau O, et al: Mutation spectrum and genotype-phenotype correlations in a large French cohort of MYH9-related disorders, *Mol Genet Genomic Med* 2:297–312, 2014.
Savage KJ, Monti S, Kutok JL, et al: The molecular signature of mediastinal large B-cell lymphoma differs from that of other diffuse large B-cell lymphomas and shares features with classical Hodgkin lymphoma, *Blood* 102:3871–3879, 2003.
Schmitz R, Ceribelli M, Pittaluga S, et al: Oncogenic mechanisms in Burkitt lymphoma, *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 4:pii: a014282, 2014.
Seidel MG: Autoimmune and other cytopenias in primary immunodeficiencies: pathomechanisms, novel differential diagnoses, and treatment, *Blood* 124:2337–2344, 2014.
Setoodeh R, Schwartz S, Papenhausen P, et al: Double-hit mantle cell lymphoma with MYC gene rearrangement or amplification: a report of four cases and review of the literature, *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 6:155–167, 2013.
Shah S, Wu E, Rao VK, et al: Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome: an update and review of the literature, *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep* 14:462–014-0462-4, 2014.
Shimabukuro-Vornhagen A, Haverkamp H, Engert A, et al: Lymphocyte-rich classical Hodgkin's lymphoma: clinical presentation and treatment outcome in 100 patients treated within German Hodgkin's Study Group trials, *J Clin Oncol* 23:5739–5745, 2005.
Sixbey JW, Nedrud JG, Raab-Traub N, et al: Epstein-Barr virus replication in oropharyngeal epithelial cells, *N Engl J Med* 310:1225–1230, 1984.
Skinnider BF, Horsman DE, Dupuis B, et al: Bcl-6 and bcl-2 protein expression in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and follicular lymphoma: correlation with 3q27 and 18q21 chromosomal abnormalities, *Hum Pathol* 30:803–808, 1999.
Smith SM, Anastasi J, Cohen KS, et al: The impact of MYC expression in lymphoma biology: beyond Burkitt lymphoma, *Blood Cells Mol Dis* 45:317–323, 2010.
Song SX, Willemze R, Swerdlow SH, et al: Mycosis fungoides: report of the 2011 Society for Hematopathology/European Association for Haematopathology workshop, *Am J Clin Pathol* 139:466–490, 2013.
Soverini S, Branford S, Nicolini FE, et al: Implications of BCR-ABL1 kinase domain-mediated resistance in chronic myeloid leukemia, *Leuk Res* 38:10–20, 2014.
Stansfeld AG, Diebold J, Noel H, et al: Updated Kiel classification for lymphomas, *Lancet* 1:292–293, 1988.
Starkebaum G: Chronic neutropenia associated with autoimmune disease, *Semin Hematol* 39:121–127, 2002.

Starr-Spires LD, Collman RG: HIV-1 entry and entry inhibitors as therapeutic agents, *Clin Lab Med* 22:681–701, 2002.

Stein H, Mason DY, Gerdes J, et al: The expression of the Hodgkin's disease associated antigen Ki-1 in reactive and neoplastic lymphoid tissue: evidence that Reed-Sternberg cells and histiocytic malignancies are derived from activated lymphoid cells, *Blood* 66:848–858, 1985.

Swerdlow S, Campo E, Harris N, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, ed 4, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC.

Swerdlow SH, Jaffe ES, Brousset P, et al: Cytotoxic T-cell and NK-cell lymphomas: current questions and controversies, *Am J Surg Pathol* 38:e60–e71, 2014.

Taguchi A, Miyazaki M, Sakuragi S, et al: Gamma/delta T cell lymphoma, *Intern Med* 43:120–125, 2004.

Tarlock K, Alonzo TA, Moraleda PP, et al: Acute myeloid leukaemia (AML) with t(6;9)(p23;q34) is associated with poor outcome in childhood AML regardless of FLT3-ITD status: a report from the Children's Oncology Group, *Br J Haematol* 166:254–259, 2014.

Tefferi A, Barbui T: Personalized management of essential thrombocythemia—application of recent evidence to clinical practice, *Leukemia* 27:1617–1620, 2013.

Tefferi A, Pardanani A, Lim KH, et al: TET2 mutations and their clinical correlates in polycythemia vera, essential thrombocythemia and myelofibrosis, *Leukemia* 23:905–911, 2009.

Tembhare P, Yuan CM, Xi L, et al: Flow cytometric immunophenotypic assessment of T-cell clonality by Vbeta repertoire analysis: detection of T-cell clonality at diagnosis and monitoring of minimal residual disease following therapy, *Am J Clin Pathol* 135:890–900, 2011.

Tesfa D, Keisu M, Palmblad J: Idiosyncratic drug-induced agranulocytosis: possible mechanisms and management, *Am J Hematol* 84:428–434, 2009.

Tiacci E, Trifonov V, Schiavoni G, et al: BRAF mutations in hairy-cell leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 364:2305–2315, 2011.

Tobinai K, Takahashi T, Akinaga S: Targeting chemokine receptor CCR4 in adult T-cell leukemia-lymphoma and other T-cell lymphomas, *Curr Hematol Malig Rep* 7:235–240, 2012.

Torres E, Rivera R, Cardona N, et al: Evaluation of IgG anti-toxoplasma avidity and polymerase chain reaction in the postnatal diagnosis of congenital toxoplasmosis, *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 32:693–695, 2013.

Tousseyn T, De Wolf-Peeters C: T cell/histiocyte-rich large B-cell lymphoma: an update on its biology and classification, *Virchows Arch* 459:557–563, 2011.

Treon SP, Cao Y, Xu L, et al: Somatic mutations in MYD88 and CXCR4 are determinants of clinical presentation and overall survival in Waldenström macroglobulinemia, *Blood* 123:2791–2796, 2014.

Troussard X, Cornet E, Lesesve JF, et al: Polyclonal B-cell lymphocytosis with binucleated lymphocytes (PPBL), *Onco Targets Ther* 1:59–66, 2008.

Valent P, Klion AD, Horny HP, et al: Contemporary consensus proposal on criteria and classification of eosinophilic disorders and related syndromes, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 130:607–612.e9, 2012.

Valent P, Sotlar K, Sperr WR, et al: Refined diagnostic criteria and classification of mast cell leukemia (MCL) and myelomastocytic leukemia (MML): a consensus proposal, *Ann Oncol* 25:1691–1700, 2014.

Valera A, Colomo L, Martinez A, et al: ALK-positive large B-cell lymphomas express a terminal B-cell differentiation program and activated STAT3 but lack MYC rearrangements, *Mod Pathol* 26:1329–1337, 2013.

van de Vijver E, van den Berg TK, Kuijpers TW: Leukocyte adhesion deficiencies, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 27:101–116, viii, 2013.

Vardiman JW, Melo JV, Baccarani M, et al: Chronic myelogenous leukemia, BCR-ABL1 positive. In Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, et al, editors: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, ed 4, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC Press, pp 32–37.

Varettoni M, Arcaini L, Zibellini S, et al: Prevalence and clinical significance of the MYD88 (L265P) somatic mutation in Waldenström's macroglobulinemia and related lymphoid neoplasms, *Blood* 121:2522–2528, 2013.

Venkataraman G, Mirza MK, Eichenauer DA, et al: Current status of prognostication in classical Hodgkin lymphoma, *Br J Haematol* 165:287–299, 2014.

Verma N, Thaventhiran A, Gathmann B, et al: Therapeutic management of primary immunodeficiency in older patients, *Drugs Aging* 30:503–512, 2013.

Vincent Rajkumar S: Multiple myeloma: 2014 Update on diagnosis, risk-stratification, and management, *Am J Hematol* 89:999–1009, 2014.

Voehringer D: Regulation of type 2 immunity by basophils, *Adv Exp Med Biol* 785:37–41, 2013.

Vose JM: Mantle cell lymphoma: 2013 Update on diagnosis, risk-stratification, and clinical management, *Am J Hematol* 88:1082–1088, 2013.

Vouloumanou EK, Rafailidis PI, Falagas ME: Current diagnosis and management of infectious mononucleosis, *Curr Opin Hematol* 19:14–20, 2012.

Wada DA, Law ME, Hsi ED, et al: Specificity of IRF4 translocations for primary cutaneous anaplastic large cell lymphoma: a multicenter study of 204 skin biopsies, *Mod Pathol* 24:596–605, 2011.

Wander SA, Levis MJ, Fathi AT: The evolving role of FLT3 inhibitors in acute myeloid leukemia: quizartinib and beyond, *Ther Adv Hematol* 5:65–77, 2014.

Wang RC, Chang ST, Hsieh YC, et al: Spectrum of Epstein-Barr virus–associated T-cell lymphoproliferative disorder in adolescents and young adults in Taiwan, *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 7:2430–2437, 2014.

Waterfall JJ, Arons E, Walker RL, et al: High prevalence of MAP2K1 mutations in variant and IGHV4-34-expressing hairy-cell leukemias, *Nat Genet* 46:8–10, 2014.

Welte K, Zeidler C: Severe congenital neutropenia, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 23:307–320, 2009.

Wichmann C, Quagliano-Lo Coco I, Yildiz O, et al: Activating c-KIT mutations confer oncogenic cooperativity and rescue RUNX1/ETO-induced DNA damage and apoptosis in human primary CD34+ hematopoietic progenitors, *Leukemia* 29:279–289, 2015.

Wilson WH, Kingma DW, Raffeld M, et al: Association of lymphomatoid granulomatosis with Epstein-Barr viral infection of B lymphocytes and response to interferon-alpha 2b, *Blood* 87:4531–4537, 1996.

Yam LT, Li CY, Lam KW: Tartrate-resistant acid phosphatase isoenzyme in the reticulum cells of leukemic reticuloendotheliosis, *N Engl J Med* 284:357–360, 1971.

Yamaguchi K, Watanabe T: Human T lymphotropic virus type-I and adult T-cell leukemia in Japan, *Int J Hematol* 76:240–245, 2002.

Yasutomo K, Doyle C, Miele L, et al: The duration of antigen receptor signalling determines CD4+ versus CD8+ T-cell lineage fate, *Nature* 404:506–510, 2000.

Yoshie O, Matsushima K: CCR4 and its ligands: from bench to bedside, *Int Immunol* 27:11–20, 2015.

Zambello R, Teramo A, Barila G, et al: Activating KIRs in chronic lymphoproliferative disorder of NK Cells: protection from viruses and disease induction? *Front Immunol* 5:72, 2014.

Zhang J, Ding L, Holmfeldt L, et al: The genetic basis of early T-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, *Nature* 481:157–163, 2012.

Zhang D, Loughran TP Jr: Large granular lymphocytic leukemia: molecular pathogenesis, clinical manifestations, and treatment, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2012:652–659, 2012.

Zhou Y, Barlogie B, Shaughnessy JD Jr: The molecular characterization and clinical management of multiple myeloma in the post-genome era, *Leukemia* 23:1941–1956, 2009.

Zhou Y, You MJ, Young KH, et al: Advances in the molecular pathobiology of B-lymphoblastic leukemia, *Hum Pathol* 43:1347–1362, 2012.

Zuo Z, Polski JM, Kasyan A, et al: Acute erythroid leukemia, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 134:1261–1270, 2010.

Zwerdling T, Won E, Shane L, et al: Langerhans cell sarcoma: case report and review of world literature, *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 36:419–425, 2014.

CHAPTER 34

THE FLOW CYTOMETRIC EVALUATION OF HEMATOPOIETIC NEOPLASIA

Brent L. Wood, Sindhu Cherian, Michael J. Borowitz

TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS, 659
Instrumentation, 659
Reagents, 660
Panel Design, 661
Specimen Handling and Sample Preparation, 663
Data Acquisition, 663
INTERPRETIVE CONSIDERATIONS, 663
Normal Patterns of Antigen Expression, 663
Abnormal Patterns of Antigenic Expression in Hematopoietic Neoplasia, 663
SUMMARY, 677
SELECTED REFERENCES, 679

KEY POINTS

- Flow cytometry is a powerful, rapid, and cost-effective technique for the identification and monitoring of hematopoietic neoplasms.
- Successful implementation of flow cytometry requires careful attention to details of instrument and reagent performance.
- Normal hematopoietic cells are characterized by a reproducible gain and loss of antigen expression with maturation.
- Hematopoietic neoplasms show deviation from the normal patterns of antigen expression, allowing for their diagnosis and classification.
- The flow cytometric detection of residual disease following therapy allows for the monitoring of therapeutic response.

The diagnosis, classification, and posttherapeutic monitoring of hematopoietic neoplasms have greatly benefited from the widespread application of immunophenotypic studies over the past 2 decades. The subdivision of hematopoietic neoplasms by their correspondence to normal hematopoietic lineages and stages of differentiation is a basic tenet of current classification systems (e.g., the World Health Organization [WHO] classification) (Swerdlow et al, 2008). This information is largely provided by immunophenotyping and has resulted in the incorporation of immunophenotypic data into the definition of many hematopoietic neoplasms to the extent that certain diagnoses cannot be confidently made without immunophenotypic studies.

Flow cytometry is a rapid and convenient technique for generating immunophenotypic data. The ability to perform multiparametric analysis on an individual cellular basis is a unique feature of the technique and offers distinct advantages over competing immunophenotypic methods such as immunohistochemistry. Guidelines on the use of flow cytometry for the immunophenotyping of leukemic cells in the clinical laboratory have been published (Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, 2007), and National Institutes of Health–sponsored consensus conferences on the flow cytometric analysis of leukemia and lymphoma were convened in 1995 (U.S.-Canadian Consensus, 1997) and 2006 (Davis et al, 2007; Wood, 2007) to attempt standardization of clinical practice. Despite these efforts, considerable heterogeneity exists in the clinical application of this technique to the evaluation of leukemia and lymphoma, and this lack of standardization represents a significant challenge to the ability to consistently provide high-quality results.

Medical indications for performing flow cytometry in the setting of hematopoietic neoplasms can currently can be divided into four basic areas:

1. The diagnosis and classification of hematopoietic neoplasms. The ability to accurately identify abnormal subpopulations of cells, assign lineage, and determine maturational stage adds improved reproducibility to the diagnosis of hematopoietic neoplasms, particularly for chronic lymphoproliferative disorders and acute leukemias. Flow cytometry is widely used for this purpose.
2. Detection of antigens used as therapeutic targets. A variety of immunologic reagents are now available for therapeutic use that specifically target antigens expressed by hematopoietic neoplasms (e.g., CD20, CD52, CD33). Confirmation of expression of the antigen of interest by the tumor is a necessary prerequisite for use of these expensive therapies.
3. Detection of residual neoplastic cells following therapy. The ability of flow cytometry to routinely identify and quantitate the presence of abnormal hematopoietic cells with a sensitivity of 0.01% is increasingly being used as a surrogate measure of response to therapy and impending relapse in a variety of hematopoietic neoplasms (Campana, 2003; Borowitz et al, 2008; Buccisano et al, 2012; Paiva et al, 2015).
4. Assessment of biological parameters associated with prognosis. This is perhaps the most controversial of the listed indications and is theoretical in many disease entities. However, the expression of specific molecules on the neoplastic population or comparisons between the neoplastic population and background cells made by flow cytometry at the time of diagnosis have been associated with clinical outcome in some settings. One example is the expression of CD38 or Zap-70 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), where increased expression of either has been associated with poor long-term survival (Damle et al, 1999; Crespo et al, 2003). Another example is the demonstration by flow cytometry of residual normal plasma cells in patients with myeloma, a finding associated with improved clinical outcomes (Paiva et al, 2009). As will be discussed below, in some settings the prognostic impact conferred by flow cytometry can be accounted for by genetic signatures, therefore further study will be needed to determine the evolving role of this potential indication.

TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Several technical considerations critical for producing high-quality flow cytometric data are discussed later. Those interested in a more in depth discussion of validation of various pre- and post-analytical variables applicable in flow cytometry are referred to the "Practice Guidelines from the ICSH and ICCS" for the "validation of cell-based fluorescence assays" (Barnett et al, 2013; Davis et al, 2013; Tanqri et al, 2013; Wood et al, 2013).

INSTRUMENTATION

The basic principle of flow cytometry relies on the injection of a monodisperse suspension of particles (cells) into the center of a flowing stream of fluid (sheath) that then passes through a small quartz capillary tube at a constant velocity (Shapiro, 2003). The sheath fluid serves to maintain the particles in the center of the flowing stream, where they may be illuminated by one or more focused light sources, typically lasers. The light scattered by the particles is collected by detectors positioned at a variety of angles around the capillary to obtain information about the cross-sectional area, and hence size (low-angle or forward scatter) or complexity/granularity (high-angle or side scatter) of each individual particle as it transits the capillary. In addition, if fluorescent molecules or fluorochromes are attached to the particles, they may be excited by the incident light,

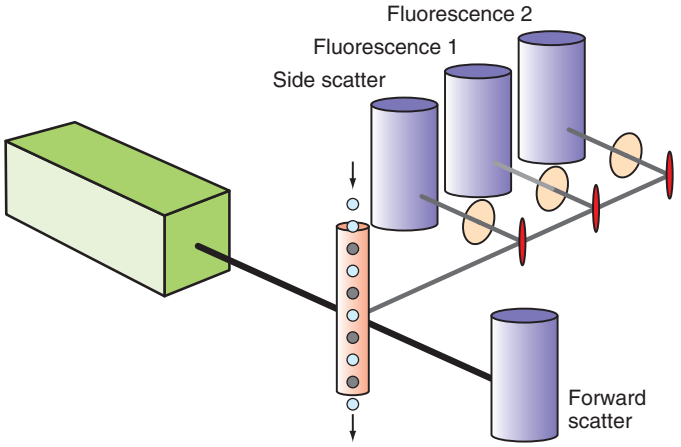


Figure 34-1 Schematic of a flow cytometer. A flowing stream of particles *(center)* is illuminated by a laser *(left)* and the resulting low angle (forward scatter) or right angle (side scatter) light scatter is collected by appropriately positioned detectors. In addition, fluorescent molecules attached to the particles may be excited by the laser light and the resulting emission routed through a series of optical mirrors and filters to the appropriate detectors (fluorescence 1 and fluorescence 2).

giving rise to fluorescent emission that can be collected with the use of additional detectors and optical filters (Fig. 34-1). The net result is a multiparametric analysis of each individual particle with the number of parameters evaluated dependent on the number of fluorescent molecules used and the complexity of instrument design. Modern clinical instrumentation is capable of assessing up to 10 simultaneous fluorochromes (Wood, 2006).

Optimization and standardization of instrument performance are critical for the success of any flow cytometric study, but are of particular importance in the analysis of hematopoietic neoplasms because of the wide range of signal intensities that must be detected. The preferred approach is to define a set of instrument conditions that allow for optimal instrument performance and perform daily quality control of the instrument to consistently achieve that level of performance. Adherence to a consistent and fixed level of instrument performance greatly simplifies quality control and provides reproducible data for interpretation. Daily assessment of the fluorescence intensity and coefficient of variation, using particles that have stable, moderately bright fluorescence and assessment of instrument noise using nonfluorescent particles, is the cornerstone of instrument quality control.

The operator has control over relatively few instrument variables on a flow cytometer, principally detection threshold, detector gain, rate of sample flow and, for some multilaser instruments, laser delay time. The detection threshold or discriminator is associated with a single parameter and is the value that must be achieved for the system to recognize that a particle has passed through the capillary to initiate signal processing. Typically, forward scatter is used to identify particles that have a size greater than some desired value (e.g., cells equal to or larger than lymphocytes). Of particular importance is the gain or voltage supplied to each detector, commonly a photomultiplier tube, as this has a direct impact on the ability to separate signals of interest from background instrument noise (signal-to-noise ratio). The voltage applied to each detector should be adjusted to optimize the signal-to-noise ratio and allow detection of the weakest required signals for each detector. This often results in positioning of negative cellular populations in such a way that they completely occupy the lowest decade of a logarithmic scale. Finally, for instruments having multiple lasers that intersect the capillary stream at different points (spatially separated lasers), a parameter must be supplied to allow synchronization of signal processing to account for the different times at which a single particle encounters each laser as it transits through the capillary. This laser delay time should be adjusted to maximize signal intensity for each laser. It should be noted that the laser delay time is highly dependent on the transit time of the particle through the capillary, and so requires a stable fluidic system to remain constant—a problem historically on certain instruments.

The rate at which the sample is introduced or aspirated through the system can be controlled by the operator but is limited by two factors: the rate at which the instrument electronics can process signals that are generated, and sample concentration. If particles pass through the instrument more rapidly than they can be processed by the electronics, the data for a subset of the particles will be lost, and another subset will show unusual and undesirable artifacts, typically variable loss of signal intensity over a wide range. It is critically important to select a sample aspiration rate and concentration appropriate to the instrument to be used. One additional phenomenon related to sample concentration is termed **coincidence,** the simultaneous presence of more than one particle in the laser, resulting in a single recorded event that has composite characteristics of the particles involved. Coincidence can represent a significant problem for rare event detection and can be minimized using methods for doublet discrimination during analysis—techniques beyond the scope of this chapter (Wood, 2006).

REAGENTS

The identification of cellular characteristics beyond those provided by light scatter measurements commonly utilizes fluorochromes that directly interact with cellular structures such as DNA or that indirectly interact through conjugation to antibodies. Each fluorochrome has a unique excitation and emission spectrum that partly determines the performance characteristics of the reagent and dictates which fluorochromes may be used simultaneously (Fig. 34-2). In an effort to increase the number of usable simultaneous fluorochromes possible from a single excitation source, tandem fluorochromes have been devised (e.g., PE-Cy5) that rely on excitation of a primary fluorochrome that transfers its energy to a secondary fluorochrome (Cy5), providing the predominant fluorochrome emission at a longer wavelength. Tandem fluorochromes are required for high-level multicolor flow cytometry, but they have more complex emission spectra, as well as decreased fluorochrome stability under some circumstances. The other important fluorochrome characteristic, the intensity of emission, is related to the relative efficiency of excitation by the light sources utilized and the quantum efficiency of the fluorochrome itself (Fig. 34-3). Differences in emission intensity directly correlate with differences in detection sensitivity and are a key consideration in the design of reagent panels, as discussed later.

The use of multiple simultaneous fluorochromes (i.e., multicolor flow cytometry) is required for the analysis of leukemia and lymphoma. Although three was noted to be the minimum number recommended under prior consensus guidelines (U.S.-Canadian Consensus, 1997), the use of more simultaneous fluorochromes is currently typical in most clinical flow cytometry laboratories. The use of four or greater simultaneous fluorochromes is now common, with 6 to 10 being utilized in some settings. The benefits of increased numbers of simultaneous fluorochromes is most pronounced in situations in which the abnormal population is small, the background is heterogeneous, and/or the abnormal population does not have uniform immunophenotypic characteristics. In addition, having more fluorochromes makes it possible to extract more information from limited samples. Because most fluorochromes have overlapping emission spectra, determination of the fluorescence due to a specific fluorochrome in a single detector requires subtraction of the portion of the signals contributed by each of the other fluorochromes in the sample, a process termed **compensation.** The appropriate amount of each signal to subtract (i.e., compensation coefficient) may be represented by an *n*-by-*n* matrix, where *n* is the number of fluorochromes. Consequently, as the number of fluorochromes used increases, the number of compensation coefficients that must be determined increases geometrically, and software rapidly becomes required to do this process correctly. To determine the compensation coefficients, a series of samples singly labeled with each fluorochrome are evaluated, with the positive population as bright as the brightest signal one plans to evaluate. Because the spectral characteristics of the tandem fluorochromes can vary significantly between lots and manufacturers, separate compensation controls are often required for each lot and conjugate of these reagents. Software, either on the instrument or on offline computers, is used to analyze the resulting data and to calculate compensation coefficients.

Although the process of determining and correctly applying compensation is now made simple through software, the use of multiple fluorochromes can result in significant display artifacts that are reflected in compromised low-level detection sensitivity (Roederer, 2001). This is a particular problem when one attempts to detect low-level signals in the presence of brightly overlapping fluorochrome emissions. Understanding the impact of compensation-related effects represents a major challenge in interpretation of multicolor flow cytometry. The implications of overlapping fluorochrome emission have direct consequences for panel design and data interpretation (Fig. 34-4). When compensation settings are not

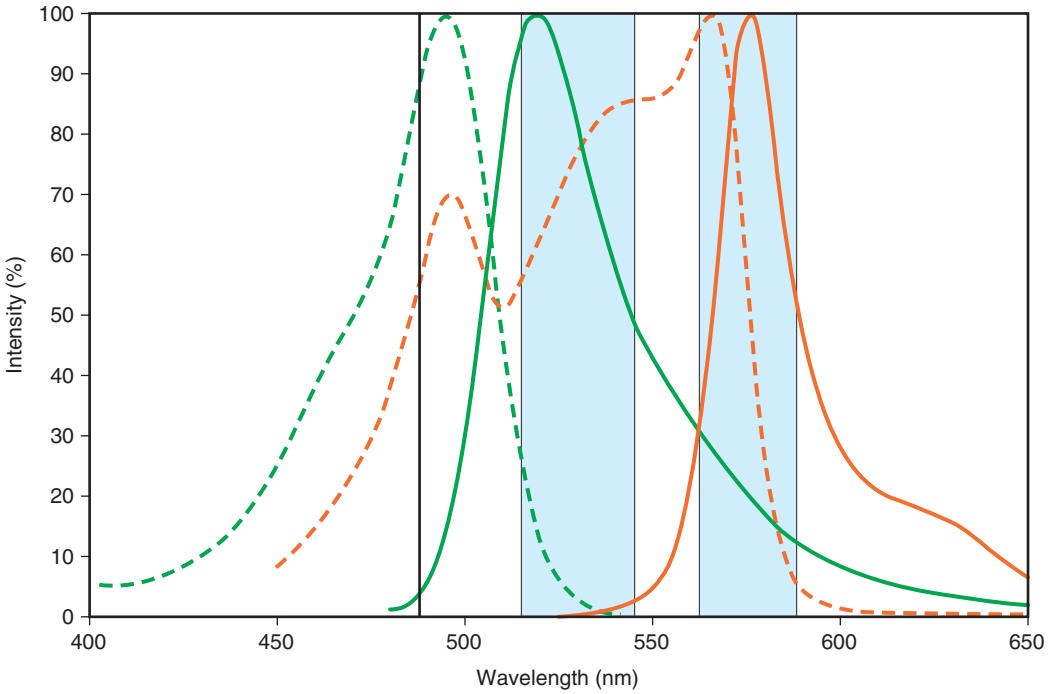


Figure 34-2 **Fluorochrome emission spectra.** Each fluorescent molecule possesses a characteristic absorption *(dotted line)* and emission spectrum *(solid line)* whose wavelength maxima are spectrally separated; the degree of separation is termed the **Stokes shift.** Although a small amount of fluorescein emission occurs at the same wavelength as phycoerythrin, the fluorescence emission of fluorescein *(green)* can be separated from that of phycoerythrin *(orange)* using appropriate optical filters *(shaded areas)*. The 488-nm laser commonly used to excite each of these fluorochromes is indicated by a black, vertical line.

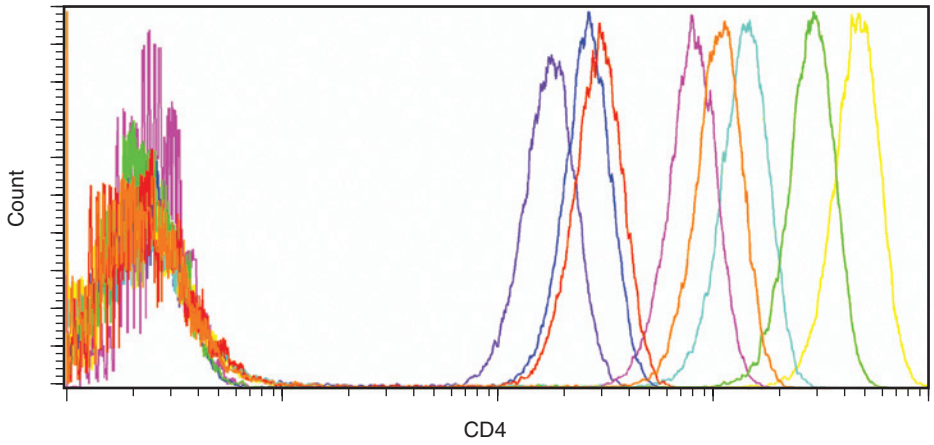


Figure 34-3 **Comparison of fluorochrome emission intensity.** Fluorochromes are characterized by differences in relative intensity of emission that are important to take into account to achieve optimal sensitivity. The relative fluorescence intensity for CD4 expression on lymphocytes is pictured for fluorescein (FITC) *(blue),* phycoerythrin (PE) *(green),* PE-Texas-Red *(orange),* PE-Cy5 *(yellow),* PerCP-Cy5.5 *(red),* PE-Cy7 *(light blue),* allophycocyanin (APC) *(magenta),* and APC-Cy7 *(purple).* The actual intensities observed are dependent on the clone of antibody used, the ratio of fluorochrome to protein in the antibody conjugate, the method of specimen preparation used, the instrument performance characteristics, and the method of instrument setup.

appropriate for the reagents used, artifacts arise that can lead to both the misattribution of low-level positivity and an inability to recognize the presence of subpopulations (Fig. 34-5). The use of software compensation provides a nondestructive method for data collection and allows the adjustment of compensation settings following acquisition, thereby supplying a way to correct for inadvertent compensation errors.

Antibodies are an integral part of the immunophenotypic evaluation of leukemia and lymphoma. It is important to determine the correct amount of each antibody to use by evaluating a series of samples labeled with different concentrations of antibodies (i.e., titering) (Stewart & Mayers, 2000). The object of titering is to maximize the signal-to-noise ratio by providing as bright a signal as possible on positive populations, while maintaining a low level of background nonspecific binding. For high-specificity antibodies used for cell surface labeling, one should be able to achieve saturation, a consistent intensity on positive populations at higher antibody concentrations, without significant increases in background on negative populations. The inability to do so indicates a poor-quality antibody. For intracellular labeling, saturation typically is not achieved because of relatively high levels of nonspecific antibody binding by intracellular constituents, generally a linear function of antibody concentration, and optimization of signal-to-noise by titering becomes critical for adequate reagent performance.

PANEL DESIGN

The pairing of reagents with appropriate fluorochromes is a key factor in ensuring appropriate signal intensity and detection sensitivity. The following four steps can aid in the construction of appropriate reagent panels:

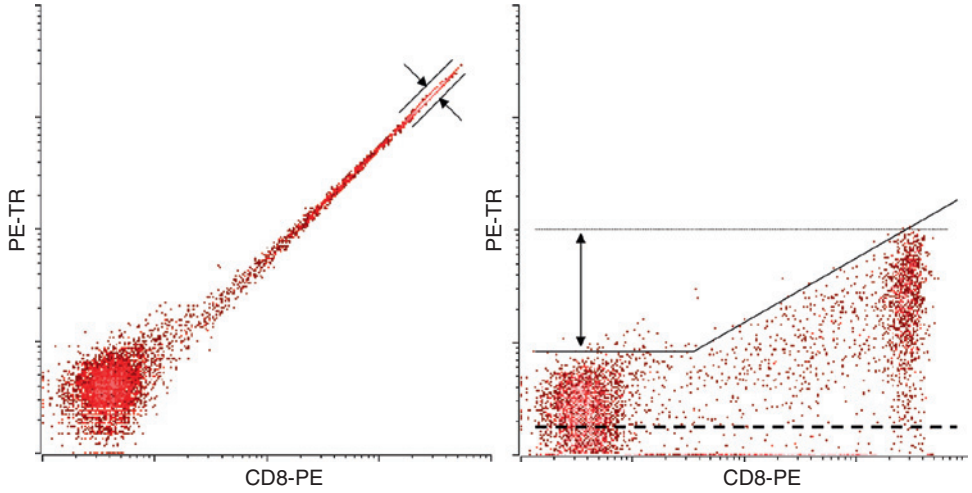


Figure 34-4 Compensation. The fluorescence emission of lymphocytes labeled with CD8-PE appears in both PE and PE-Texas Red detectors as the result of emission of PE in both regions of the spectrum examined by these detectors. Note that no PE-Texas Red conjugated antibody is used in this experiment. Without compensation applied *(left),* cells expressing abundant CD8 show bright signals for both PE and PE-Texas Red with a width to the population *(arrows)* due to measurement errors inherent in the method. Once compensation is correctly applied *(right),* the centers of the positive and negative populations have the same low level of PE-Texas Red emission *(dotted line),* with many events lying on the horizontal axis. However, the PE-positive population shows a much broader degree of apparent PE-Texas Red background fluorescence than the PE-negative population *(solid line and arrow).* If a PE-Texas Red conjugated antibody had been used, CD8-positive cells might have been erroneously interpreted as doubly positive, but this apparent "positivity" is a direct result of measurement errors and logarithmic data display. The practical result is that the sensitivity for the detection of low-level PE-Texas Red is compromised in the presence of bright PE fluorescence.

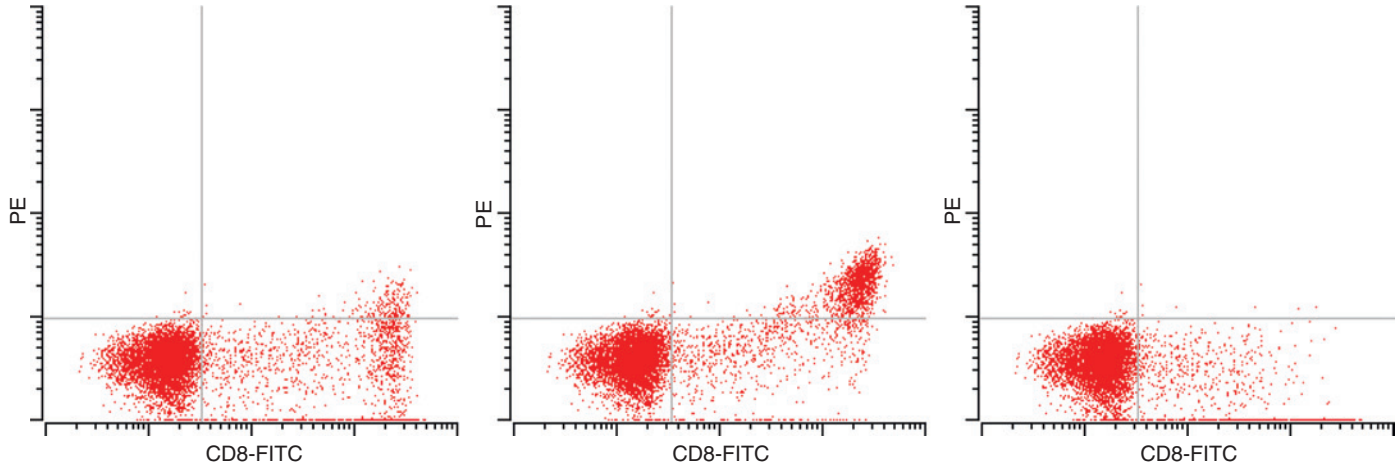


Figure 34-5 Inappropriate compensation. The fluorescence emission of lymphocytes singly labeled with CD8-FITC shows minimal apparent PE fluorescence when 8% of the FITC signal is subtracted from the PE signal (i.e., appropriate compensation) *(left).* If the degree of compensation is decreased to 7.2% *(center),* the CD8-positive population appears to express low PE and could be misinterpreted as immunophenotypic aberrancy, depending on the PE antibody included. Note the lack of symmetry and the pointed end of the positive population as a clue to the inaccurate compensation. If the compensation is increased to 8.8%, the positive population is compressed on the *x*-axis and appears not to exist.

1. Determine the purpose for each potential combination of reagents. Each reagent combination should have a clearly defined objective or should not be further pursued.
2. Select a group of cellular targets. The selected group of targets or antigens should be able to successfully address the purpose of the reagent combination and should be relatively independent of fluorochrome or availability of commercial conjugates. The reagent combination should be the minimum needed to answer the question being asked. Antibodies are commonly combined in a variety of ways for use in the identification of abnormal hematopoietic populations, but these generally fall into one of the categories outlined in Table 34-1.
3. Assign a fluorochrome to each target. The basic principle is that highly expressed antigens should be coupled with dim fluorochromes, and dimly expressed antigens should be coupled with bright fluorochromes. This principle provides reasonable signal intensities and avoids compensation problems due to excessively bright fluorescence. A second principle involves selecting fluorochrome combinations to avoid compensation problems. Three general classes of these problems include: (1) spillover from one fluorochrome into an adjacent fluorochrome detected at a higher wavelength (as in the example in Figure 34-4); (2) cross-laser excitation, most commonly from direct excitation by the red laser of the cyanine dyes used in tandem conjugates (e.g., PE-Cy5 emitting as APC); and (3) tandem fluorochromes having variable emission of the parent fluorochrome (e.g., APC-Cy7 emitting as APC). For a more in-depth discussion of such considerations, the reader is referred to Wood, 2006.
4. Test reagent combinations. The reagent combination must be empirically tested to ensure that signal intensities are as expected, that low-level sensitivity is appropriate where important, and that unexpected interactions between reagents do not occur. A sample prepared with all reagents of interest should be compared with the same sample prepared with a series of preparations, each lacking one of the component reagents (fluorescence-minus-one controls), as well as with a second series containing each single reagent independently (single-stained controls). Unexpected changes in intensity of one or more reagents indicate potential problems with the reagent combination.

TABLE 34-1
Reagent Panel Design Strategies for the Detection of Hematopoietic Neoplasms

Principle	Example Implementation
At least one reagent for population identification	CD45 for general cell type Lineage-associated antigen for specific cell lineage (e.g., CD19 for B cells)
Multiple antigens of same lineage and maturational stage to identify inappropriate expression levels	Use of CD2, CD3, CD4, CD5, CD7, or CD8 simultaneously to evaluate mature T cells
Multiple antigens of same lineage but different maturational stages to identify normal maturation and asynchronous expression	Use of CD13 and CD16 simultaneously to demonstrate neutrophilic maturation
Separation of different cell lineages	Use of CD11b and CD15 simultaneously to separate monocytic and neutrophilic maturation
Demonstration of clonality	Use of κ and λ in combination with a B cell lineage reagent (e.g., CD19)
Identification of frankly aberrant antigen expression	Use of T or NK cell–associated antigens such as CD7 or CD56 in combination with CD34 to demonstrate aberrant nonlineage antigen expression on a myeloid blast

NK, Natural killer.

SPECIMEN HANDLING AND SAMPLE PREPARATION

Any specimen from which a single cell suspension can be generated is suitable for flow cytometric immunophenotyping, including peripheral blood, bone marrow, and lymph node, to name a few. Blood and bone marrow may be anticoagulated with ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), heparin, or acid citrate dextrose, with heparin generally preferred because of improved stability with specimen age. Tissue specimens are best transported and stored in tissue culture media, such as RPMI 1640, and a single cell suspension is generated by mechanical disaggregation using scalpel and forceps, needle and syringe, or wire screen mesh (Braylan & Benson, 1989), followed by filtration through fine-gauge wire mesh to remove aggregates. Specimens of all types are commonly stored at room temperature before preparation, although refrigeration will retard degradation when preparation must be delayed.

Analysis of white blood cells in peripheral blood or bone marrow requires erythrocyte removal for efficient evaluation. Density-gradient centrifugation (e.g., ficoll-hypaque) was historically used for this purpose, but it leads to selective loss of cellular subpopulations and gives relatively poor recovery on bone marrow specimens. Erythrocyte lysis using ammonium chloride or a variety of commercial preparations has become the standard technique for sample preparation in clinical laboratories (Carter et al, 1992). Currently recommended methods involve the addition of antibodies to an aliquot of blood or marrow, followed by erythrocyte lysis and washing with a buffered salt solution such as phosphate-buffered saline to remove cell debris, the lysing reagent, and unbound antibody. Inclusion of a small amount of formaldehyde (0.25% to 0.5%) with the lysing reagent or following washing is a convenient way to stabilize both the specimen and antibody binding. When analysis of light chain expression on B cells is required, plasma immunoglobulin (Ig) must be removed by repeated washing before antibody addition. Once prepared, samples should be acquired on the instrument as soon as reasonably possible to avoid sample and fluorochrome degradation, although fixation and refrigerated storage will delay degradation.

DATA ACQUISITION

As the prepared sample is evaluated on the flow cytometer, it is important to collect enough events to allow detection of the population of interest. For populations that represent a large percentage of the total, relatively few events need to be acquired, but infrequent populations require the acquisition of larger numbers of events. Because in the evaluation of hematopoietic neoplasms, one rarely knows what the likely population frequency will be for a given sample, it is most convenient to acquire a fixed number of total events that ensures the desired minimum level of sensitivity. For example, if a sensitivity of 0.1% is desired and 50 events are determined to be adequate for confident population identification, then 50,000 total white blood cell events will need to be acquired. The acquisition of fewer events will compromise the ability to detect low-frequency populations—an important consideration when evaluating for residual disease following therapy and in other situations in which the population of interest is present at low levels.

Instrument carryover between samples becomes a significant concern when evaluating for the presence of small abnormal populations. Most commercial instruments have a manufacturer's specification for carryover of roughly 1%—a relatively high level when one is looking for infrequent populations. To minimize carryover, a small amount of water should be run between each aliquot of sample acquired until background returns to an acceptably low level. Failure to do so will result in the sporadic appearance of populations having unexpected immunophenotypes that can be mistaken for neoplastic disease.

INTERPRETIVE CONSIDERATIONS

The identification of hematopoietic neoplasia by immunophenotyping relies on the principle that neoplastic cells express patterns of antigen expression that are distinctly different from those of their normal counterparts. Antigen expression in normal cells is a tightly regulated process, resulting in a characteristic pattern of antigen acquisition and loss with maturation that is cell-lineage specific. Neoplastic cells commonly show nonrandom alterations in antigen expression that include the following:

1. Gain of antigens not normally expressed by cell type or lineage
2. Abnormally increased or decreased levels of expression (intensities) of antigens normally expressed by cell type or lineage, including the complete loss of normal antigens in some instances
3. Asynchronous antigen expression (i.e., expression of antigens normally expressed by cell type or lineage, but at an inappropriate time during maturation)
4. Abnormally homogeneous expression of one or more antigens by a population that normally exhibits more heterogeneous expression

The consequence is that the immunophenotypic identification of hematopoietic neoplasia rests on a thorough knowledge of the normal patterns of antigens expressed by hematopoietic cells.

NORMAL PATTERNS OF ANTIGEN EXPRESSION

All hematopoietic cells arise from the hematopoietic stem cell, a quiescent cell population that possesses long-term regenerative potential and is present at a low frequency in the bone marrow. The stem cell population in humans can be identified if a sufficient number of cells are evaluated and show expression of bright CD34 and CD133, intermediate CD45, dim to absent CD38, variable CD90, and dim CD123, CD117, HLA-DR, CD13, and CD33. Maturation toward lineage-committed progenitors is accompanied by a slight decrease in CD34 and CD45, loss of CD133 and CD90, and an increase in CD38 and HLA-DR. Further maturation along each lineage occurs in the bone marrow until mature, functional, albeit naïve progeny are released into the peripheral blood. The one exception is T cells, whose earliest precursors migrate to the thymus, where maturation to functional forms occurs. The patterns of antigenic change with maturation for B cell, T cell, neutrophilic, monocytic, and erythroid lineages have been elucidated by multiple investigators (Loken et al, 1987, 1988; Inghirami et al, 1990; Terstappen et al, 1990a; Terstappen et al, 1990b; Terstappen & Loken, 1990; Terstappen et al, 1992b; Harada et al, 1993; Hoffkes et al, 1996; Ginaldi et al, 1996b; Almasri et al, 1998; Lucio et al, 1999; McClanahan et al, 1999; Wood, 2004), and a summary of each lineage is presented in Figures 34-6 to 34-10.

ABNORMAL PATTERNS OF ANTIGENIC EXPRESSION IN HEMATOPOIETIC NEOPLASIA

Most hematopoietic neoplasms have abnormal immunophenotypes that are characteristic enough to allow their detection, even at relatively low levels of involvement. In some cases, the immunophenotype is characteristic enough to allow classification using immunophenotypic data alone. However, each group has sufficient variability that correct diagnosis relies on recognition of the overall immunophenotypic pattern, and not on the

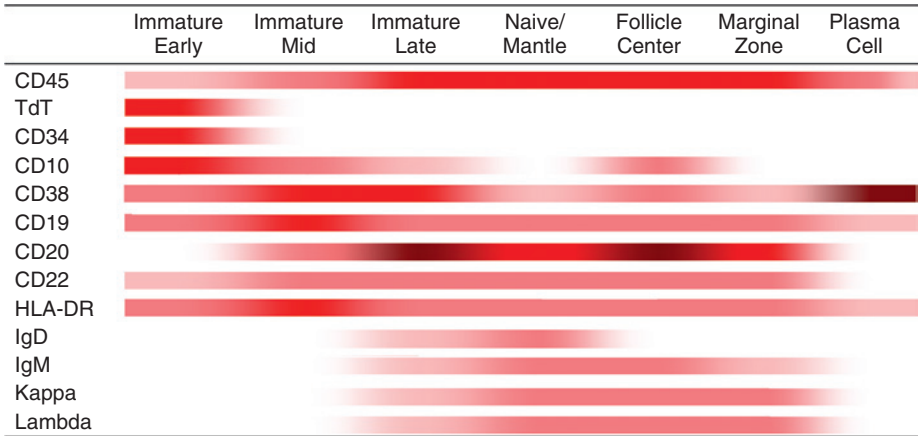


Figure 34-6 **B cell differentiation.** The intensity of antigen expression throughout B cell maturation is depicted for antigens commonly used in the clinical laboratory. Normal mature B cells express κ or λ light chains, never both. Darker colors represent higher levels of antigen expression.

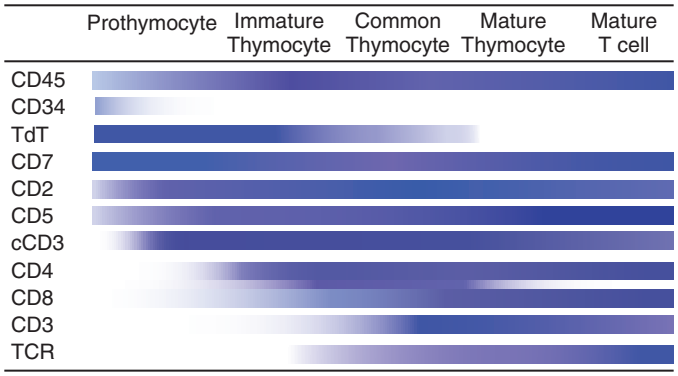


Figure 34-7 **T cell differentiation.** The intensity of antigen expression throughout T cell maturation is depicted for antigens commonly used in the clinical laboratory. T cell maturation occurs largely in the thymus, and most maturational stages will not be seen outside of that organ. At the common thymocyte stage, immature T cells express both CD4 and CD8, with subsequent stages showing expression of one or the other, but not both. Darker colors represent higher levels of antigen expression.

expression of individual antigens or the rigid application of immunophenotypic profiles. The following discussion emphasizes general immunophenotypic principles useful for the diagnosis and classification of hematopoietic neoplasia, as a complete discussion of the antigenic abnormalities seen in each subtype of disease is beyond the scope of this chapter (Craig & Foon, 2008; Cherian and Wood, 2011).

Acute Leukemia

Diagnosis and Classification

Flow cytometry plays a critical role in both identifying expanded progenitor populations (i.e., blasts or blast equivalents), allowing for a diagnosis of acute leukemia, and assigning lineage, thereby facilitating classification of acute leukemia.

By flow cytometry, progenitor populations can be identified using a combination of CD45 versus side scatter characteristics and expression of markers of immaturity that may include the following: CD34, CD117, CD133, CD99, and terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT). White blood cells express CD45 at distinct levels of intensity characteristic of both lineage and stage of differentiation that when used in conjunction with orthogonal light scatter (side scatter), allow delineation of the basic white blood cell populations (Borowitz et al, 1993; Stelzer et al, 1993) (Fig. 34-11). CD45 versus side scatter gating is particularly useful for the identification of progenitors, which express intermediate CD45 and low side scatter. CD45 versus side scatter analysis has become standard practice in the clinical laboratory for this purpose. However, CD45 versus side scatter gating should not be used in isolation for progenitor identification as not all populations of blast equivalents fall in the CD45 versus side scatter defined blast gate. For instance, the abnormal promyelocytes found in acute promyelocytic leukemia and immature monocytic cells that characterize acute leukemia with monocytic differentiation are often excluded from a standard CD45 versus side scatter defined blast gate. Further confounding analysis in some cases is the fact that some populations that are not blasts or blast equivalents can occupy the CD45 versus side scatter defined blast gate. Specifically, basophils, plasmacytoid dendritic cells, and hypogranular neutrophils, populations that can be increased in myeloid neoplasms, will be found within the CD45 versus side scatter defined blast gate.

Using current (2008) WHO criteria, most acute leukemias show ≥20% blasts in the peripheral blood and/or bone marrow (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Although flow cytometry is an excellent tool for identifying and characterizing expanded populations of progenitors, two issues suggest caution when utilizing flow cytometric blast percentages to make an initial diagnosis of acute leukemia. First, the blast percentage obtained from bone marrow specimens is often inaccurate because of a combination of peripheral blood dilution (artifactual decrease) and compromise of nucleated erythroid precursors during specimen processing using lysing reagents (artifactual increase). Second, progenitors identified by immunophenotyping do not always directly correspond to blasts as identified by morphology. This is true because leukemic populations, similar to normal populations, consist of a maturational continuum, and there is no perfect concordance between specific antigenic changes and the arbitrary morphologic changes that distinguish blasts from more differentiated cells. Nevertheless, if one takes into consideration these limitations, the diagnosis of acute leukemia can generally be correctly suggested by flow cytometry.

In addition to facilitating the diagnosis of acute leukemia, flow cytometry can be extremely useful in excluding a diagnosis of acute leukemia when the marrow is populated by an expanded proliferation of cells that mimic acute leukemia. A common situation in which this can occur is the presence of increased normal B cell precursors (hematogones), which may be seen in a variety of reactive settings. Although hematogones may resemble primitive lymphoblasts morphologically, multiparameter flow cytometry can distinguish these normal immature precursors (hematogones) from acute leukemia (Lucio et al, 1999; Weir et al, 1999; McKenna et al, 2001). Additionally, some nonhematolymphoid tumors such as small cell carcinoma or pediatric small round cell tumors can resemble leukemic blasts on smears but are readily distinguished from leukemic blasts by flow cytometry, where they appear as CD45-negative cells lacking specific markers of B cell, T cell, or myeloid lineage, often with higher side scatter than might be expected for a cell with so little cytoplasm (Chang et al, 2003).

The major role for flow cytometry in acute leukemia is classification. Classification is largely a matter of lineage assignment and correlation with normal maturational stage. The determination of lineage in particular is a decision of major therapeutic importance, with the primary distinction being whether the leukemia is of myeloid or lymphoid lineage. The immunophenotypic characteristics of acute myeloid leukemia (Terstappen et al, 1992a; Reading et al, 1993; Bradstock et al, 1994; Macedo, 1995a, 1995b; Khalidi et al, 1999; Weir & Borowitz, 2001; Orfao et al, 2004) and acute lymphoblastic leukemia (Farahat et al, 1995; Khalidi et al, 1998; Weir et al, 1999) and their similarities to normal populations have been well described in numerous publications. In general, it is the overall pattern of antigen expression rather than expression of any single antigen that allows determination of lineage. This is due in part to the lack of lineage

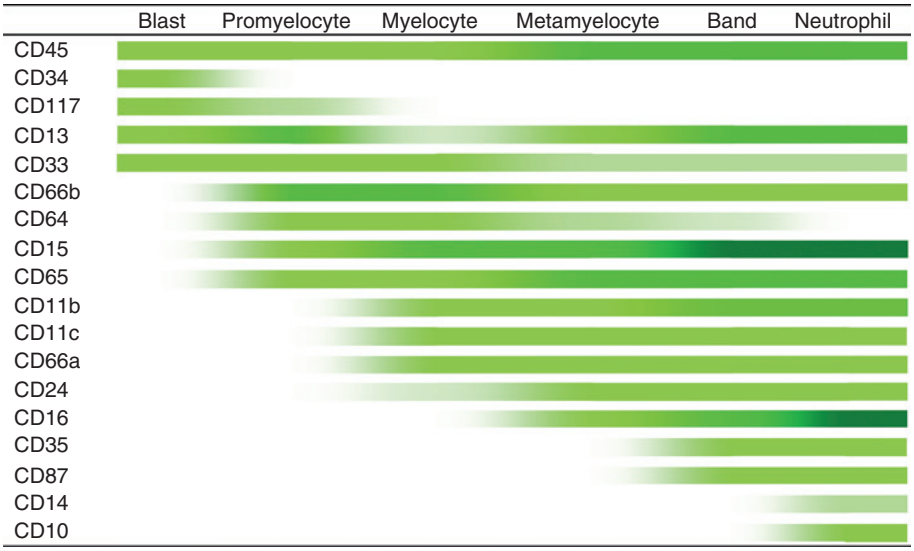


Figure 34-8 Neutrophil differentiation. The intensity of antigen expression throughout neutrophil maturation is depicted for antigens commonly used in the clinical laboratory. Darker colors represent higher levels of antigen expression.

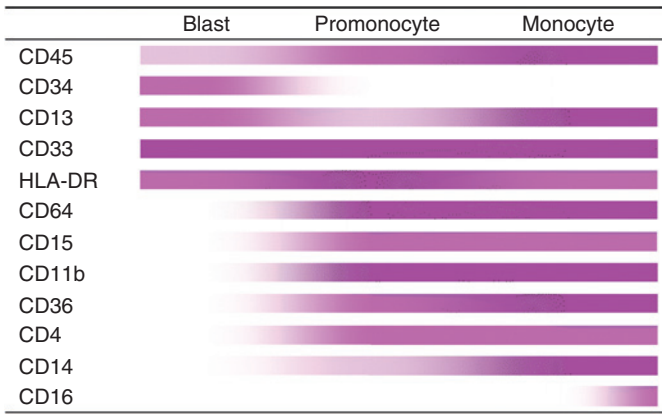


Figure 34-9 Monocyte differentiation. The intensity of antigen expression throughout monocyte maturation is depicted for antigens commonly used in the clinical laboratory. Darker colors represent higher levels of antigen expression.

specificity of many antigens commonly used for immunophenotyping. As a rule, the more closely an antigen is expressed to the level commonly seen in cells of that lineage, the more likely it accurately reflects lineage differentiation. For example, dim expression of the B cell antigen CD19 has relatively poor lineage specificity, as it may be seen in acute myeloid leukemia, but brighter and more uniform CD19 expression at the level seen on normal B cells is more typical of precursor B cell lymphoblastic leukemia. A subset of cytoplasmic antigens includes the most lineage-restricted antigens currently known, and these are used to arbitrate lineage assignment in cases in which the surface immunophenotype is unclear. Table 34-2 lists antigens commonly used for lineage assignment. In rare cases, the leukemic cells may show differentiation along more than one lineage (Hanson et al, 1993; Bene et al, 1995; Matutes et al, 1997; Swerdlow et al, 2008), most commonly either myeloid and B cell or myeloid and T cell, as evidence of the stem cell nature of these forms of acute leukemia. If a single blast population shows such differentiation, it is commonly termed **biphenotypic acute leukemia;** if two abnormal blast populations are present, each having a distinct and different lineage, this is termed **bilineal acute leukemia.** Both biphenotypic acute leukemia and bilineal acute leukemia are considered mixed phenotype acute leukemia (MPAL) using 2008 WHO criteria. Examples of immunophenotypic patterns seen in acute leukemia are provided in Figures 34-12 to 34-15. A diagnostic algorithm for evaluating acute leukemia by flow cytometry is shown in Figure 34-16.

Prognostic Factors

Although several reports have discussed the prognostic significance of particular surface markers in both acute lymphoid and myeloid leukemia (Schabath et al, 2003; Webber et al, 2008), for the most part, these have

TABLE 34-2
Antigens Used for Lineage Assignment in Acute Leukemia

	AML	ALL–B Cell	ALL–T Cell
Definitive	Cytoplasmic MPO	None	Cytoplasmic CD3 Surface CD3 T cell receptor
Strongly associated	CD117	Cytoplasmic CD79a Cytoplasmic CD22 CD19 CD10—bright	CD7—bright
Moderately associated	CD13 CD33	TdT—moderate to bright	CD5 CD2

ALL, Acute lymphoblastic leukemia; *AML,* acute myeloid leukemia. *MPO,* myeloperoxidase.

Using 2008 WHO criteria (Swerdlow et al, 2008), if considering a diagnosis of mixed phenotype acute leukemia (MPAL), lineage is defined as follows:
1. Myeloid: MPO or evidence of monocytic differentiation
2. T cell: Cytoplasmic CD3 at the level of a mature T cell
3. B cell: Strong CD19 and one additional B cell marker or weak CD19 and two additional B cell markers (can include CD22, CD79a, CD10)

Note: These criteria need not be met to assign lineage outside the setting of MPAL.

not stood the test of time, and they currently do not have a significant impact on therapy. One reason for this is that the presence of recurrent cytogenetic or molecular abnormalities in acute leukemia is now recognized as an important prognostic feature that has therapeutic implications; these are now an integral part of the WHO classification of acute leukemia (Swerdlow et al, 2008). In many cases, the underlying cytogenetic abnormality is associated with characteristic immunophenotypic features that aid in suggesting an appropriate classification (Porwit-MacDonald et al, 1996; Orfao et al, 1999; Hrusak & Porwit-MacDonald, 2002). With few exceptions, once cytogenetic abnormalities are accounted for, immunophenotype is no longer prognostic. For instance, AML with t(8;21) is associated with an improved prognosis as compared to AML with a normal karyotype. This subtype of AML typically shows coexpression of B cell markers such as CD19 with variable expression of CD56 in a subset of cases. CD56 expression in acute myeloid leukemia (AML) with t(8;21) (Baer et al, 1997) has been associated with an adverse prognosis within that cytogenetically defined leukemia; however, more recently, it has been suggested that this prognostic disadvantage may be secondary to the association of cKIT-activating mutations and CD56 expression in t(8;21) AML (De et al, 2007). A summary of phenotypic features associated with cytogenetic or molecular abnormalities is provided in Table 34-3.

Therapeutic Targets

In AML, CD33 is the most commonly used therapeutic target that can be interrogated by flow cytometry and is the target of anti-CD33

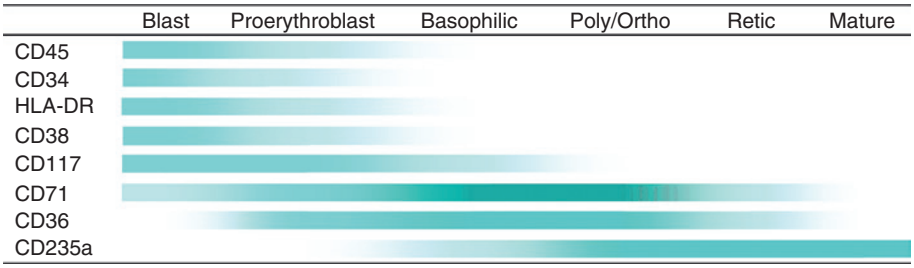


Figure 34-10 Erythroid differentiation. The intensity of antigen expression throughout erythrocyte maturation is depicted for antigens commonly used in the clinical laboratory. Darker colors represent higher levels of antigen expression.

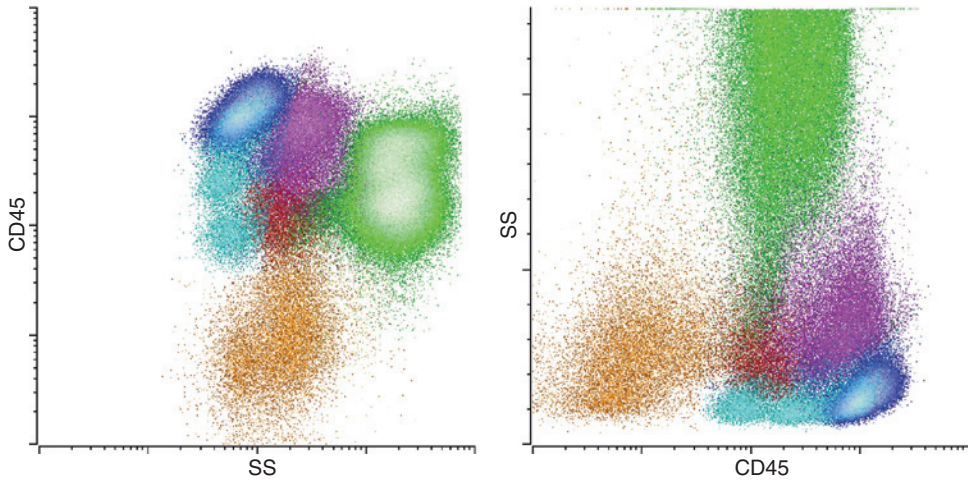


Figure 34-11 CD45 versus side scatter. The display of CD45 versus side scatter is increasingly used in the clinical laboratory as a starting point for the identification of white blood cell populations. Data are commonly displayed with side scatter on a logarithmic *(left)* or linear *(right)* scale. Major white cell populations colored are lymphocytes *(blue),* B cells *(light blue),* monocytes *(purple),* maturing neutrophils *(green),* blasts *(red),* basophils *(dark purple),* and maturing erythrocytes *(orange).*

(gemtuzumab ozogamicin). CD33 is expressed in the great majority of cases of AML, although its level of expression correlates with response to anti-CD33 therapy (Walter et al, 2007). Relatively little is known about the role of monitoring changes in CD33 expression.

In acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), therapeutic trials have been described using either targeted monoclonal antibodies or T cells expressing chimeric antigen receptors with targets including CD19, CD20, and CD22. Flow cytometry can be used to determine the suitability of different targeted therapies in ALL. It is important to recognize potential implications that such therapies may have for population identification. For instance, CD19 would no longer be adequate for B cell identification in a patient undergoing anti-CD19 therapy.

Residual Disease Monitoring in Acute Leukemia

Many of the large number of antibodies that can be used to help classify acute leukemia are not, in and of themselves, essential for determination of lineage. However, a larger panel of antibodies, properly selected, can be very useful in identifying specific differences between the leukemic population and background normal elements, thereby enhancing the ability to use flow cytometry to detect small abnormal populations. Thus, the purpose of flow cytometric immunophenotyping in acute leukemia at diagnosis goes beyond simple assignment of lineage and extends to the description of a "leukemia-associated immunophenotype" characteristic of that leukemia, knowledge of which is useful in assessing follow-up samples (Campana, 2003). An important caveat is that immunophenotypic changes between diagnostic samples and persistent or recurrent disease are frequently observed in both ALL (Borowitz et al, 2005; Galpa et al, 2008; Roshal et al, 2010) and AML (Baer et al, 2001; Voskova et al, 2004). Accordingly, it is necessary that one monitor more than one antigenic pattern and not expect exactly the same immunophenotype seen at diagnosis to persist after therapy. The detection of minimal residual disease in acute leukemia has been demonstrated to be correlated with risk for relapse and overall survival for both AML (San Miguel et al, 2001; Feller et al, 2004; Maurillo et al, 2008; Loken et al, 2012) and ALL (Coustan-Smith et al, 2000; Dworzak et al, 2002; Borowitz et al, 2008) and is increasingly used to guide therapeutic decision making. An example of minimal residual disease detection in ALL is shown in Figure 34-17.

TABLE 34-3
Association of Immunophenotype with Cytogenetic Abnormalities in Acute Leukemia

	Immunophenotype
Acute Myeloid Leukemia	
t(15;17)	HLA-DR negative, CD15 low to absent*, CD33 bright, CD34 low to absent
t(8;21)	CD34 bright, CD56 positive, CD19 dim
Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia	
t(12;21) (by FISH)	CD10 positive, CD20 low to negative, CD9 low to negative
MLL rearrangement (e.g., t[4;11])	CD10 negative, CD15 positive

MLL, Mixed lineage leukemia.
*This is a distinguishing feature from normal promyelocytes, which express relatively increased levels of CD15.

Lymphoma

Diagnosis and Classification

As with leukemia, flow cytometry can contribute both to the diagnosis and to the classification of lymphoma. The immunophenotypic diagnosis of lymphoma relies on the identification of an expanded population of abnormal mature lymphocytes. The most common way in which such an

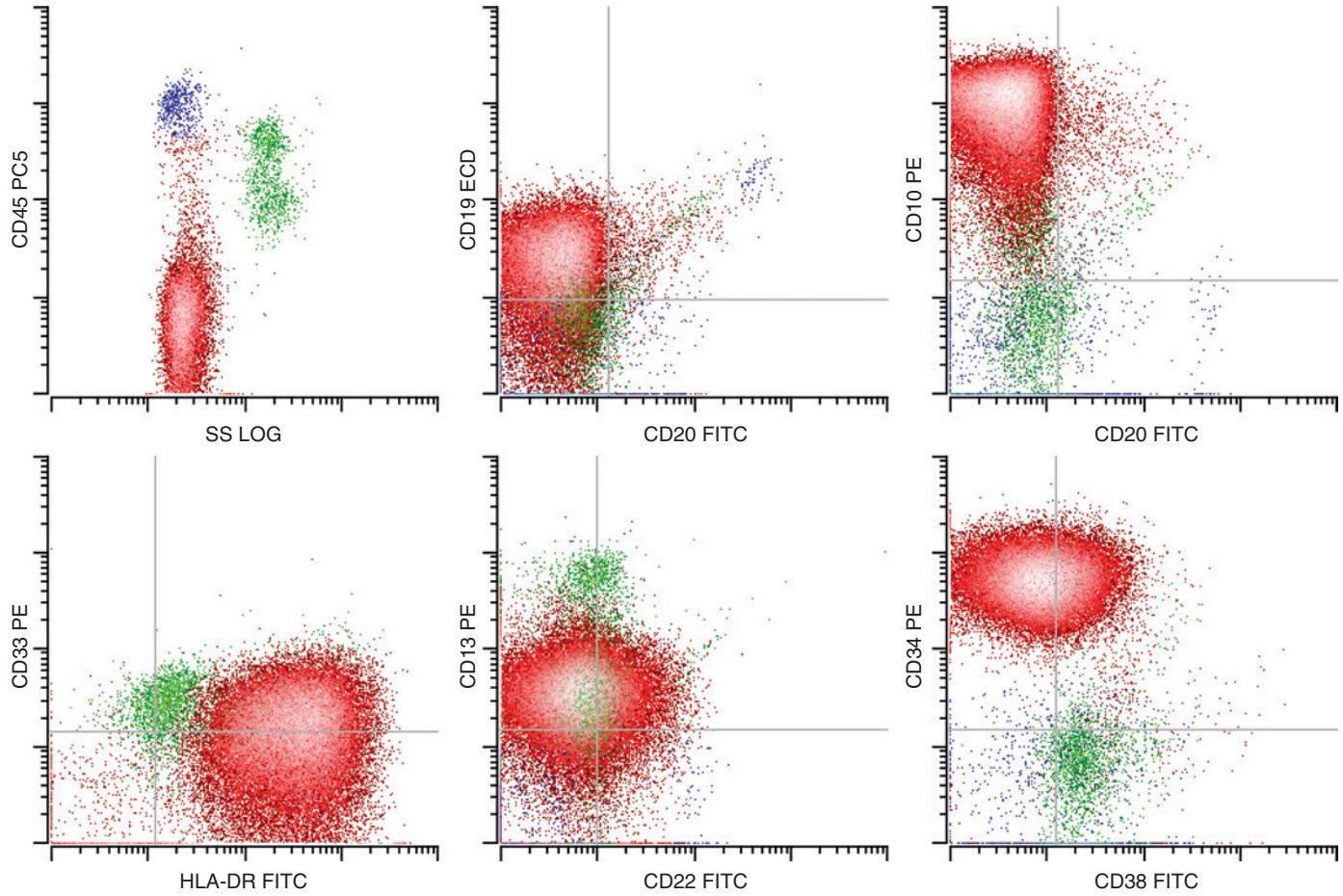


Figure 34-12 Precursor B cell lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma (acute lymphoblastic leukemia). The neoplastic cell population *(red)* in comparison with normal immature B cells shows abnormal expression of B cell–associated antigens CD19 (dim), CD22 (very dim), and CD10 (bright), along with aberrant expression of CD45 (absent), CD34 (bright), and CD38 (dim). In addition, the low-level expression of myeloid-associated antigens CD13 and CD33 is seen—a feature frequently seen in this neoplasm and not suggesting myeloid differentiation by itself. The cells have low side scatter, as is typical of lymphoid blasts.

expansion is assessed by flow cytometry is through the demonstration of light chain restriction in B cell proliferations. As with all neoplastic cells, neoplastic lymphocytes arise from a single precursor that undergoes clonal expansion. However, unlike most cells, each lymphocyte normally expresses one of a series of polymorphic molecules on its surface that provides a unique identity; in the case of B cells, this identifying molecule is Ig. Because individual Ig molecules contain one of two forms of light chain—κ or λ—reagents directed against light chains can be used as markers of clonality for B cells (Braylan et al, 1993; Geary et al, 1993; Fukushima et al, 1996).

In the case of T cell proliferations, the T cell receptor genetic locus is more complex, but a larger series of reagents directed against the β-chain families of the T cell receptor can be used to demonstrate clonality for T cells (Lima et al, 2001; Morice et al, 2004). The use of reagents directed against killer-inhibitory receptors (KIR antigens) has even been suggested to allow demonstration of natural killer cell clonality (Morice et al, 2003). The assumption behind all of these assays is that clonality equates with malignancy. Although clonality is a necessary consequence of neoplasia, clonal expansion is also a normal and necessary component of the immune response following antigenic stimulation, so the demonstration of clonality by itself is not sufficient for the diagnosis of lymphoma.

It is increasingly recognized that a subset of otherwise normal individuals may contain small clonal populations of lymphocytes, best documented in the case of B cells (Rawstron et al, 2002; Chen et al, 2004; Kussick et al, 2004). It is not clear whether these clonal populations represent an early subclinical stage of disease, a precursor population without the full complement of genetic abnormalities required for neoplasia, or an incidental finding of no clinical consequence; however, a subset of individuals with such small clonal populations do appear to develop overt lymphoma over time (Rawstron et al, 2008; Shanafelt & Hanson, 2009; Xochelli et al, 2014). The term **monoclonal B cell lymphocytosis** has been adopted to describe such small populations in the peripheral blood, and clinical and numeric criteria have been suggested to allow their distinction from true neoplasia (Shanafelt et al, 2009). Consequently, it is necessary that flow cytometric findings suggesting lymphoma be put in a morphologic and clinical context before a definitive diagnosis of lymphoma is made.

In addition to light-chain restriction or restricted T-cell receptor β-chain usage, lymphomas, like leukemias, show alterations in antigen expression that deviate from normal maturation. In many cases, these alterations also provide evidence of neoplasia. Moreover, specific alterations are seen in association with different categories of lymphoma, thereby permitting classification as well as diagnosis in many cases. For example, increased expression of the T cell–associated antigen CD5 is seen in CLL or mantle cell lymphoma (Matutes et al, 1994b; Tworek et al, 1998), while expression of the germinal center cell marker CD10 characterizes follicular lymphoma (Mantei and Wood, 2009; Ray et al, 2005). Alteration in the intensity of Ig expression is also a common abnormality in B cell lymphoma and can be useful in distinguishing normal and neoplastic B cells. With B cell lymphoma, Ig can be increased, decreased, or even absent (Li et al, 2002). Similarly, T cell lymphoma often shows alterations in the expression of one or more T cell antigens (Picker et al, 1987; Ginaldi et al, 1996a). However, special care must be taken in interpreting small populations of phenotypically abnormal T cells, especially in unusual sites, because a large number of reactive conditions can be associated with expansions of populations that are not commonly seen in normal blood or lymph nodes (McClanahan et al, 1999).

An even more powerful method to diagnose lymphoma is to combine the detection of clonality with the ability to identify alterations in antigen intensity through multicolor flow cytometry. For instance, coupling the identification of follicle center B cells using CD19 and CD10 with the detection of κ and λ light chains in a four-color analysis allows one

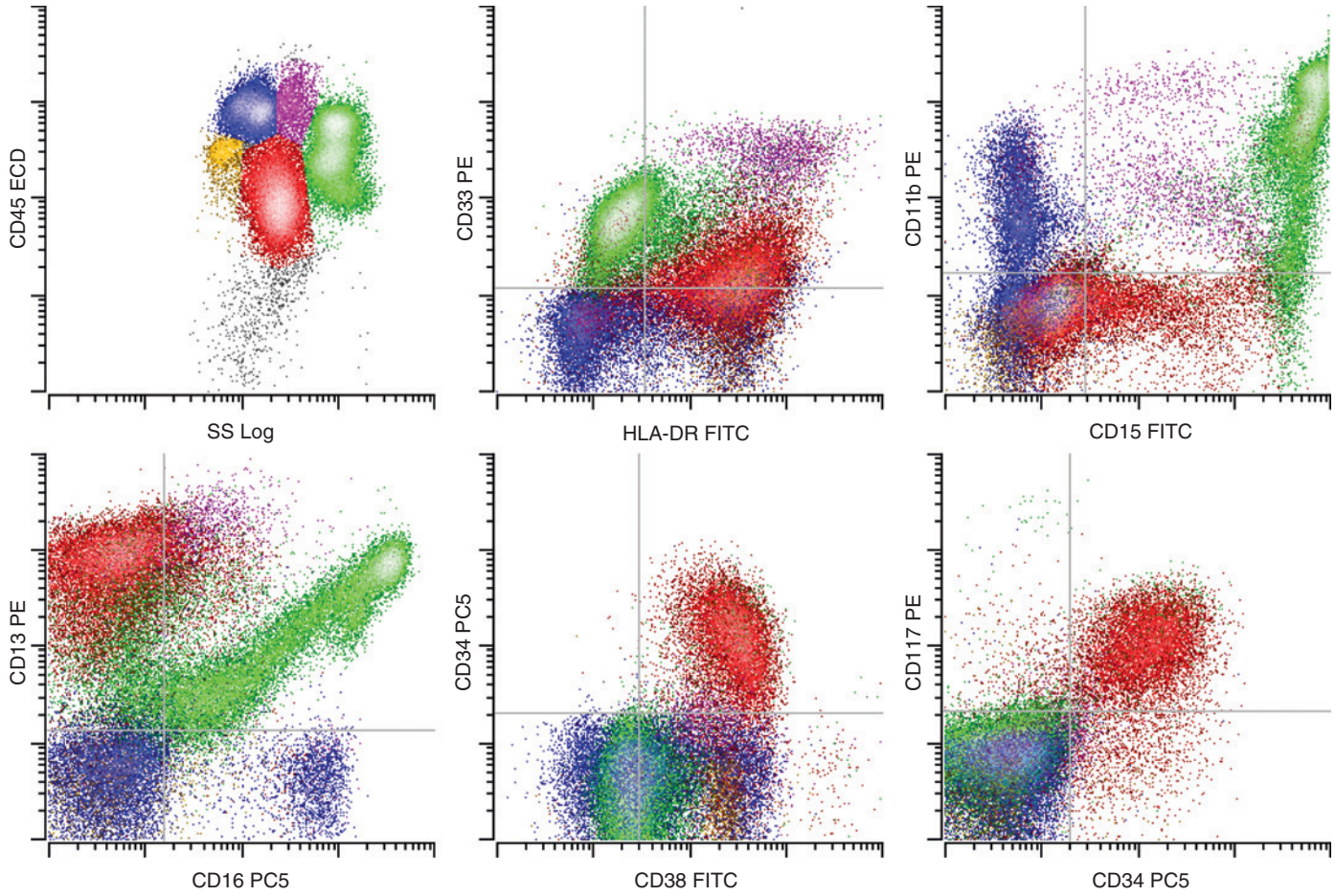


Figure 34-13 **Acute myeloid leukemia with differentiation.** The neoplastic cell population consists of blasts *(red)* showing abnormal expression of the myeloid-associated antigens CD33 (dim), CD13 (bright), and CD15 (dim partial) in association with immature antigens CD34 and CD117. The blasts do not express the more mature neutrophilic antigens CD11b and CD16, and are typical of the relatively immature forms seen in many cases of acute myeloid leukemia. Background maturing granulocytes *(green)*, monocytes *(purple)*, hematogones *(yellow),* and lymphocytes *(blue)* are present that are normal and are not part of the leukemic population. All plots show all viable cells.

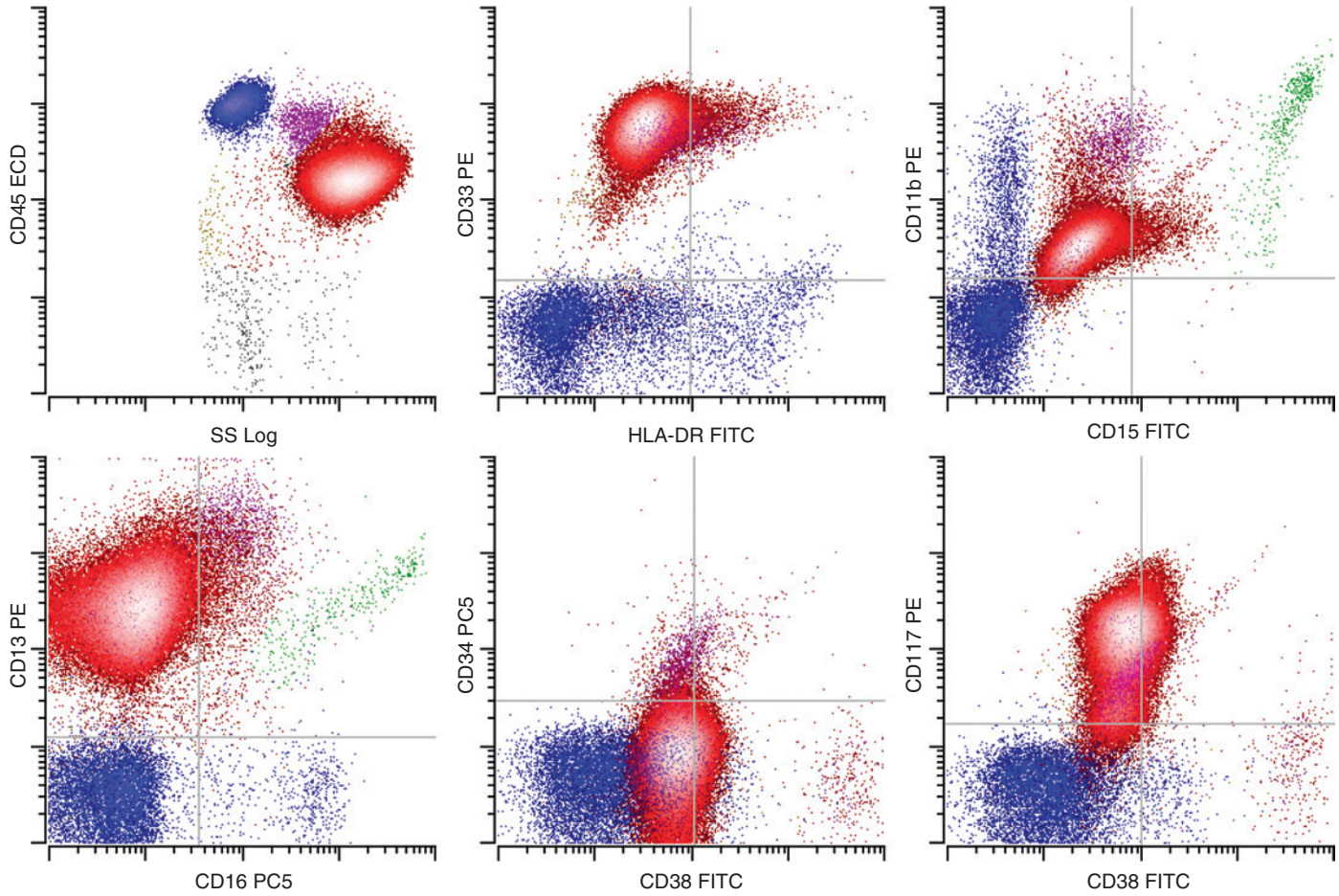


Figure 34-14 **Acute promyelocytic leukemia.** The neoplastic cell population consists of promyelocytes *(red)* showing abnormal expression of the myeloid-associated antigens CD33 (bright) and CD13 (intermediate), with high side scatter indicating abundant cytoplasmic granularity. The population lacks expression of CD34 and HLA-DR, antigens commonly present on true myeloid blasts, and retains expression of CD117, as is seen on a subset of normal promyelocytes. However, in contrast to normal promyelocytes, abnormal cells lack significant expression of CD15, a characteristic and common abnormality in this neoplasm.

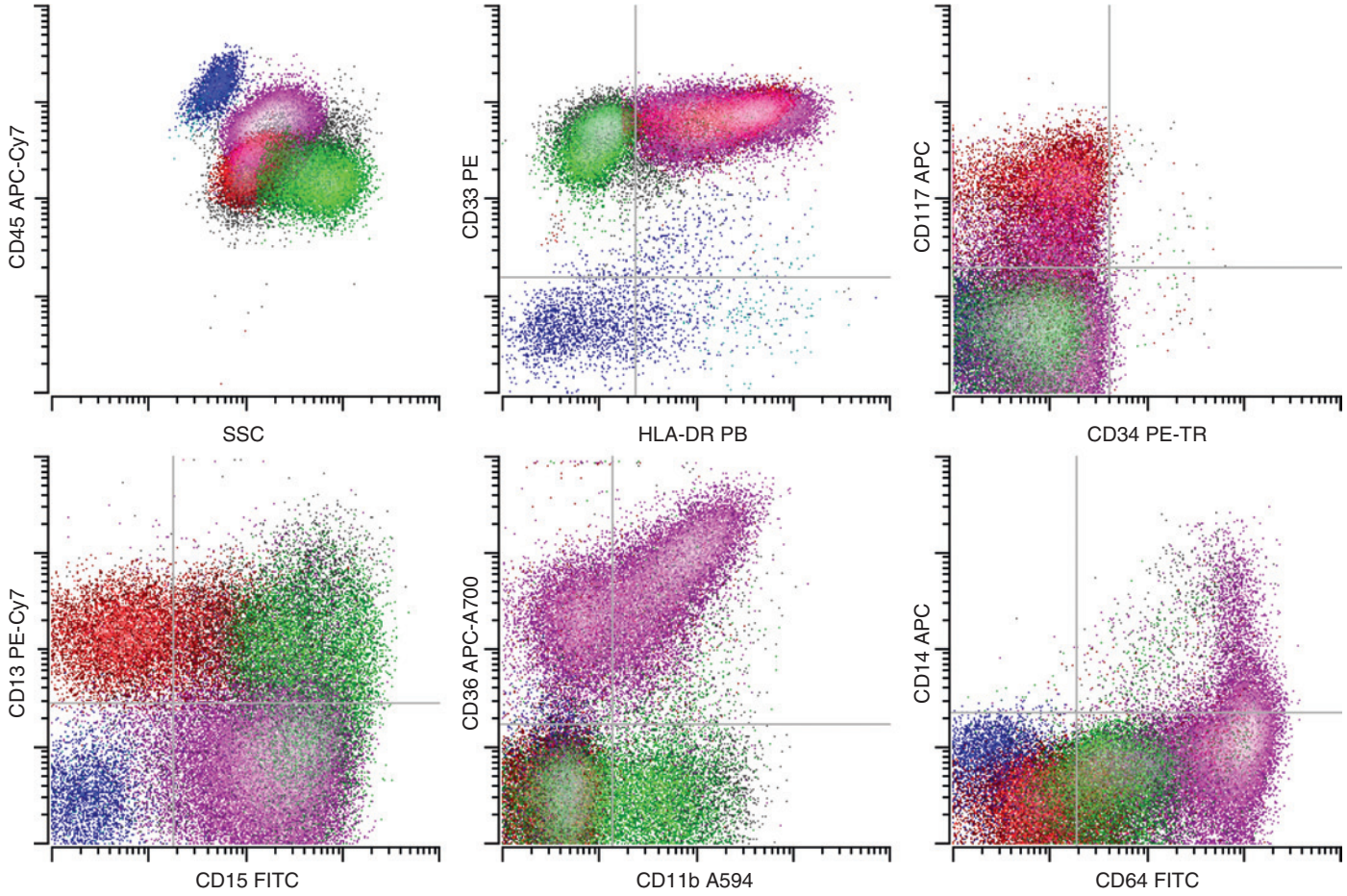


Figure 34-15 **Acute myelomonocytic leukemia.** The neoplastic cells consist of a relatively small population of blasts *(red)* with a larger population of cells showing monocytic differentiation *(violet)*. The blasts show abnormal expression of CD33 (bright), CD13 (intermediate), HLA-DR (intermediate), and CD117 (intermediate) without CD34. The monocytic differentiation is reflected in the acquisition of early monocyte antigens CD64 (bright) and CD36 (intermediate to bright), along with other more mature myelomonocytic antigens CD15 (intermediate) and CD11b (low to intermediate), without significant acquisition of the mature monocyte antigen CD14 (absent) or marked gain in the expression of CD45, as is seen in mature monocytes. This finding suggests differentiation to the promonocyte stage, a population usually included in morphologic blast counts. In addition, a lesser degree of neutrophilic differentiation *(green)* is present.

to identify the presence of light chain restriction specifically within the follicle center B cell population, greatly increasing both the specificity and the sensitivity of the analysis. Examples of immunophenotypic patterns seen in lymphoma are provided in Figures 34-18 to 34-23. Figure 34-24 provides a diagnostic algorithm for classifying B cell lymphoma of small to intermediate sized cells. One important limitation of this type of analysis is that neoplasms containing relatively rare, large abnormal cells (e.g., Hodgkin lymphoma) may be difficult to recognize unless an appropriate antibody combination is used and a sufficiently large number of events are acquired (Fromm et al, 2009). In this regard, the approach is essentially similar to minimal residual disease detection. An example of the flow cytometric detection of classical Hodgkin lymphoma is shown in Figure 34-25.

The classification of lymphoma relies on the recognition of specific patterns of antigenic expression that are similar to some normal maturational stage, yet deviate sufficiently to allow identification of the abnormal population. Among B cell lymphomas, there are two entities that can be both diagnosed and classified with a high degree of confidence based on immunophenotypic data alone: chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma (CLL/SLL) and hairy cell leukemia. CLL/SLL is characterized by the coexpression of CD5 by abnormal B cells; decreased intensity of clonal light chain expression; decreased expression of a variety of mature B cell antigens, including CD20, CD22, and CD79b; presence of the activation antigen CD23 with the membrane glycoprotein CD200 but without significant expression of FMC7; and an activation epitope of CD20 (Serke et al, 2001) (see Fig. 34-18). This constellation of immunophenotypic findings is specific for CLL/SLL (Matutes et al, 1994b; Tworek et al, 1998; Palumbo et al, 2009; Alapat et al, 2012) and will allow for a definitive diagnosis if ≥5000 abnormal cells per microliter are identified in the blood. The only other B cell neoplasm that consistently expresses CD5 is mantle cell lymphoma, a more aggressive lymphoma that is important to distinguish from CLL/SLL. In contrast to CLL/SLL, mantle cell lymphoma shows relatively bright expression of mature B cell antigens such as CD20 and CD79b, expresses clonal Ig at a relatively normal to high level, and expresses FMC7 without significant CD23 or CD200 (see Fig. 34-19). Although mantle cell lymphoma generally can be readily distinguished from CLL/SLL, because some other low-grade lymphoproliferative disorders can occasionally express CD5 and mimic the mantle cell phenotype, a definitive diagnosis of mantle cell lymphoma requires either fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) documenting a t(11;14) or demonstration of overexpression of cyclin D1 by immunohistochemistry. These other rare CD5-positive B cell neoplasms cannot be distinguished by their immunophenotypic criteria, and a combination of clinical history, morphology, and cytogenetic abnormalities is often required to reach a correct classification.

Hairy cell leukemia is characterized by increased expression of a variety of B cell antigens, including CD19, CD20, and CD22; clonal surface light chain restriction; markedly increased expression of the cell adhesion molecules CD11c and CD103; expression of the α-chain of the interleukin-2 receptor CD25; and expression of the α-chain of the IL-3 receptor CD123 (see Fig. 34-20) (Robbins et al, 1994; Matutes et al, 1994a; Venkataraman et al, 2011). In addition, the cells exhibit a variable degree of increased side scatter caused by the abundant cytoplasm they possess, often giving the cells light scatter characteristics similar to those of monocytes. This finding, in combination with the monocytopenia that is common in this disorder, is a frequent cause of false-negative results, particularly when one relies on relatively tight gates to identify the lymphocyte population by light scatter parameters alone or with CD45 versus side scatter.

DIAGNOSTIC ALGORITHM: ACUTE LEUKEMIA

Step 1: Demonstrate an increase in blasts/blast equivalents

1. Identify an expanded population in the CD45 versus SSC defined blast gate
   Note: Not all blast equivalents are located in the CD45 versus SSC defined blast gate: promyelocytes, monoblasts, and promonocytes may fall outside the "blast gate"

2. Confirm that this population represents blasts/blast equivalents using specific markers that indicate immaturity: i.e., CD34, TdT, CD117

Step 2: Define the lineage of the blasts; appropriate antigens may include the following:

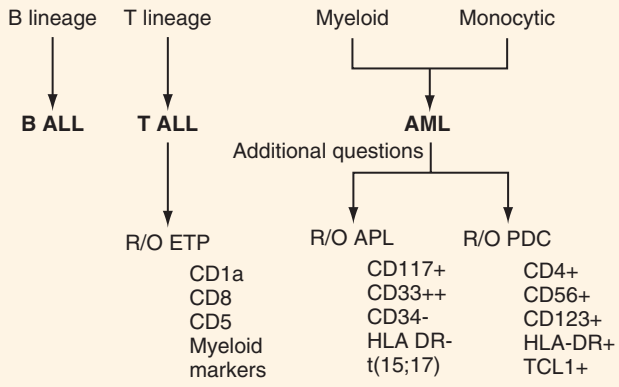
Myeloid:	CD13, CD15, CD33, CD117, MPO
Monocytic:	CD14, CD33 (bright), CD64
B cell:	CD19, CD20, CD10, CD22, CD79a
T cell:	CD2, CD3*, CD4, CD5, CD7, CD8, CD56
Other:	CD38, HLA-DR, CD123

Note 1: Lineage assignment is determined by a combination of antigens not by expression of one specific antigen

Note 2: Antigen expression near levels of the normal counterpart is more likely lineage specific

Note 3: Aberrant expression of non-lineage markers is common**

Initial panel allows lineage assignment



Initial panel does not allow lineage assignment

Perform additional markers:

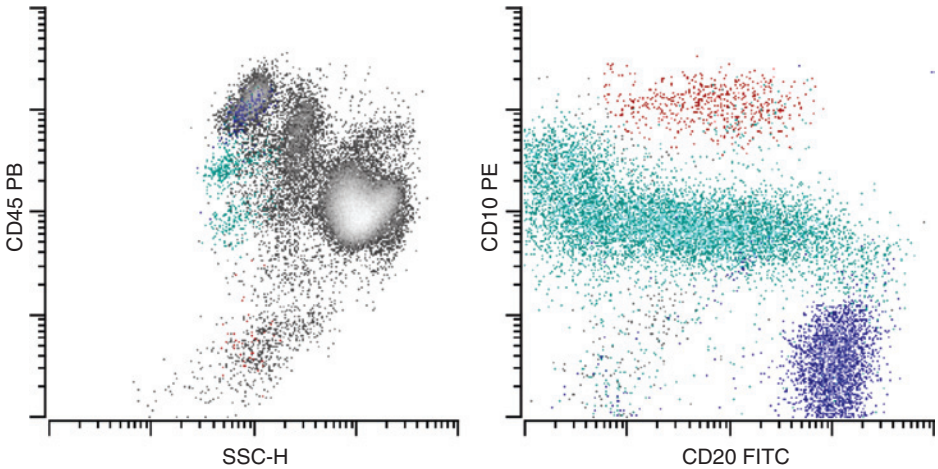
CD235a+ → **AML-M6**

CD41+, CD61+ → **AML-M7**

MPAL
Bi-phenotypic or bi-lineal AL, see table 34-2 for WHO 2008 criteria

Undifferentiated AL
Inadequate expression markers for confident lineage assignment

Figure 34-16 **This diagnostic algorithm can assist in diagnosis and classification of acute leukemia.** *SSC,* Side scatter; *AL,* acute leukemia; *AML,* acute myeloid leukemia; *ALL,* acute lymphoblastic leukemia; *APL,* acute promyelocytic leukemia; *ETP TALL,* early thymocyte precursor T cell lymphoblastic leukemia; *PDC,* plasmacytoid dendritic cell neoplasm; *R/O,* rule out. *Surface and cytoplasmic. **Myeloid markers (often CD13 and CD33 and occasionally CD15) may be aberrantly coexpressed on ALL, while CD5, CD7, CD19, and CD56 may be aberrantly coexpressed on AML. When present, such nonlineage antigen expression may suggest an underlying genetic change. For instance, AML with t(8;21) often express CD19 and sometimes CD56, while B-ALL with an MLL rearrangement may express CD15.



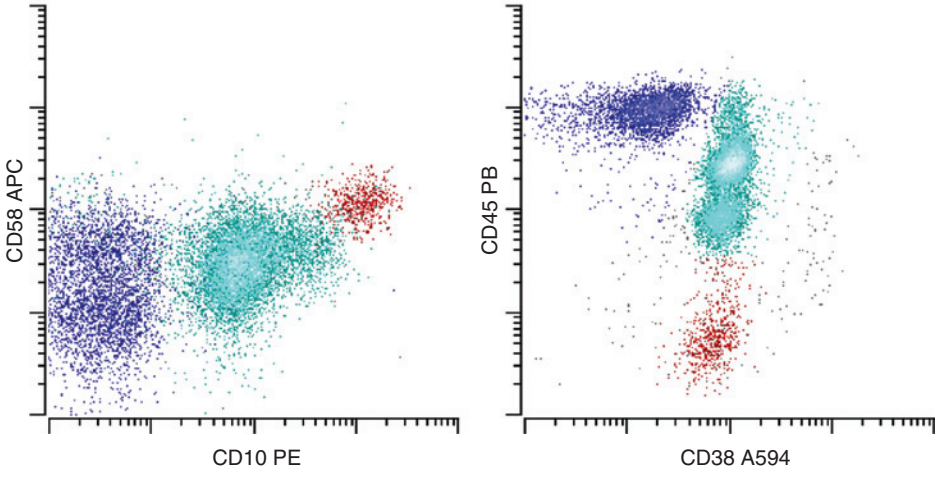
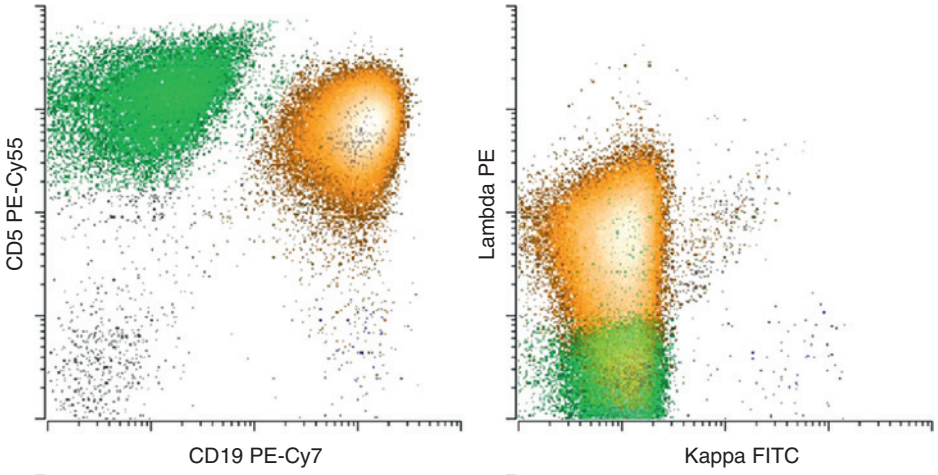


Figure 34-17 Minimal residual disease detection. An abnormal population of immature B cells is identified *(red)* that have abnormally increased expression of CD10 and CD58, abnormally decreased expression of CD45, and normal expression of CD20 and CD38. This composite immunophenotype is different from normal immature B cells *(cyan)* or mature B cells *(dark blue),* allowing its discrete identification at a level of 0.1% of white cells.



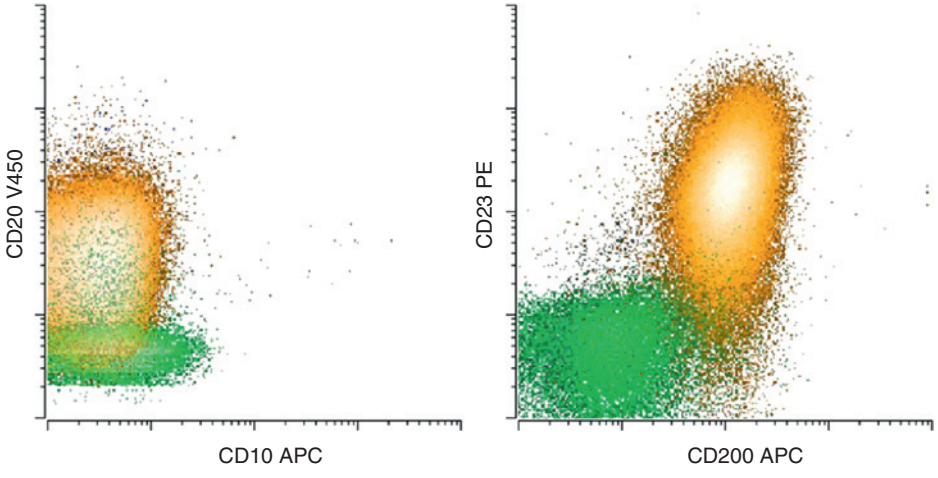


Figure 34-18 Chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma (CLL/SLL). The neoplastic B cell population *(gold)* shows abnormal expression of the B cell antigens CD19 (intermediate) and CD20 (low) with surface λ light chain expression (low) and coexpression of CD5 and CD23 (intermediate) with CD200. The expression of CD5 with low-level light chain restriction, low-level CD20, and CD23 is characteristic of CLL/SLL. CLL/SLL is typically positive for CD200 without FMC7 *(data not shown).* The immunophenotype of CLL/SLL should be contrasted with mantle cell lymphoma (see Fig. 34-19). All plots show all lymphoid cells; background reactive T cells are shown in green.

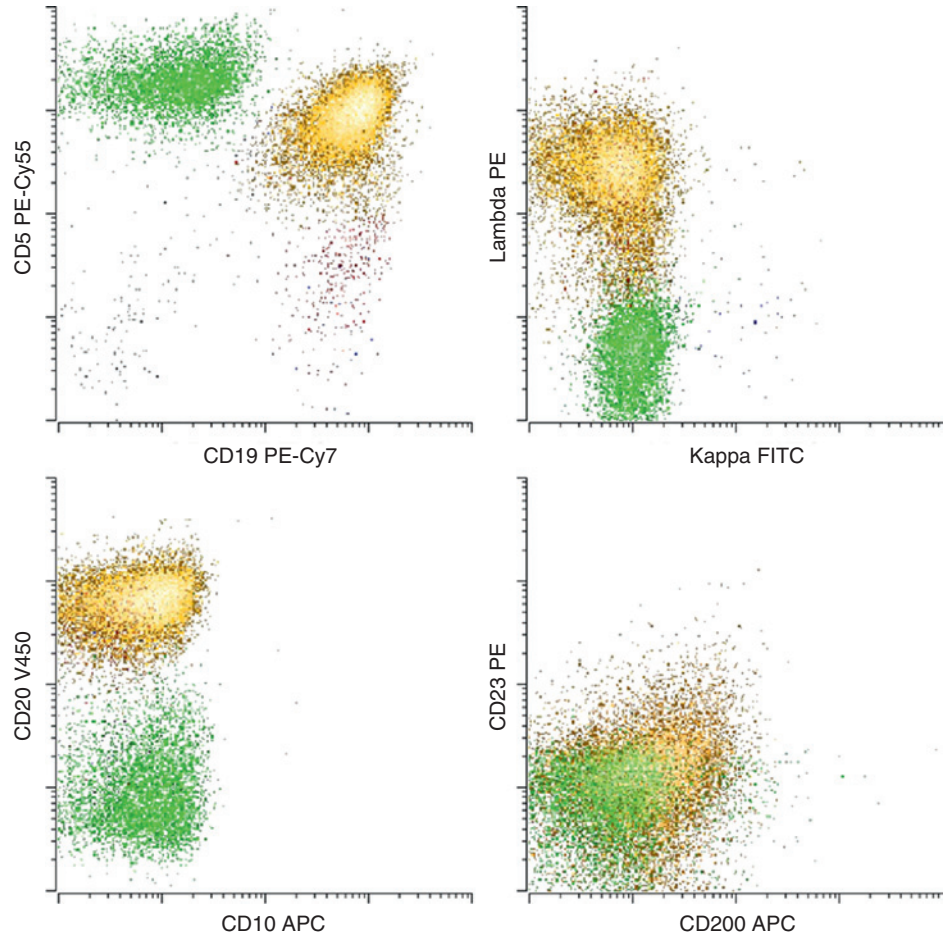


Figure 34-19 Mantle cell lymphoma. The neoplastic B cell population *(gold)* shows expression of B cell antigens CD19 (intermediate) and CD20 (intermediate) with κ light chain restriction (bright). CD5 (intermediate) is expressed by the neoplastic B cells, while CD23 and CD200 are very low to absent. Mantle cell lymphoma shows intermediate expression of FMC7 *(data not shown)*. Although both CLL/SLL and mantle cell lymphoma express CD5, the intensity of CD20 and light chain, coupled with the level of expression of CD23, CD200, and FMC7 allow distinction of these B cell neoplasms in most cases (contrast with Fig. 34-18). Confirmation of a suspected diagnosis of mantle cell lymphoma requires demonstration of t(11;14) by FISH or cyclin D1 overexpression by immunohistochemistry. All plots show all lymphoid cells; background reactive T cells are shown in green.

Another immunophenotypic finding that aids in the classification of B cell lymphoma is expression of CD10, an antigen present on immature B cells and on normal mature B cells as they transit through the follicle center. Among B cell lymphomas, CD10 is expressed in most cases of follicular lymphoma (Almasri et al, 1998) (see Fig. 34-21), in a significant subset of large B cell lymphomas, and in Burkitt lymphoma, in each of these cases indicating origin from the follicle center. In follicular lymphoma, the expression of CD10 is often coupled with decreases in CD19 and CD38 intensity (Ray et al, 2005; Yang et al, 2005; Mantei & Wood, 2009) that differ from the normal somewhat higher levels seen in reactive germinal center B cells. Demonstration of Bcl-2 overexpression by the CD10-positive B cell population can be useful in confirming neoplasia (Cook et al, 2003), particularly in cases lacking surface light chain expression, and reflects the presence of an underlying t(14;18) characteristic of follicular lymphoma. Although CD10 positivity alone does not allow definitive classification, its presence significantly reduces the possible entities that must be considered, with morphology generally being required to allow definitive classification.

The role of immunophenotyping in the classification of T cell lymphoma is less well described, although certain associations have been noted that require larger studies for validation. The majority of T cell lymphomas are composed of T cells that exhibit abnormal patterns of antigenic expression. T cell lymphomas can express CD4 or CD8 and rarely may be either negative for both CD4 and CD8 or positive for both these markers.

Among T cell lymphomas, CD4 expression is most commonly seen. In angioimmunoblastic T cell lymphoma, abnormal T cells are CD4-positive and commonly show loss or decreased expression of surface CD3 (Serke et al, 2000) with abnormal coexpression of CD10 (Attygalle et al, 2002) (see Fig. 34-23). In mycosis fungoides/Sézary syndrome, abnormal T cells are also typically CD4-positive and can show a variety of immunophenotypic abnormalities, commonly including alterations in the intensity of CD3 and CD4 and decreased expression or loss of CD7 (Bogen et al, 1996; Lima et al, 2003) and CD26 (Kelemen et al, 2008). CD7 can, however, be variably decreased on CD4-positive T cells outside the setting of neoplasia. Decreased expression of CD7 is associated with a normal memory immunophenotype, and expanded subpopulations with this immunophenotype may be seen in a variety of reactive conditions, including inflammatory skin lesions (Murphy et al, 2002). Consequently, demonstration of the loss of CD7 by itself does not allow definitive classification nor a definitive diagnosis of lymphoma and generally requires the presence of additional antigenic abnormalities to be informative. CD26 loss appears to be more common in Sézary syndrome than in mycosis fungoides; but, similar to CD7, is not specific for neoplasia (Kelemen et al, 2008). Adult T cell leukemia/lymphoma characteristically expresses CD4 and also shows loss of CD7 and CD26. This entity often shows decreased expression of surface CD3 and is uniformly positive for CD25 (Shao et al, 2010). The immunophenotype is not diagnostic in isolation, and confirmation of a suspected diagnosis requires demonstration of exposure to HTLV-1, usually via serology studies. T cell prolymphocytic leukemia is most often CD4-positive and can also coexpress CD8 or express CD8 without CD4 in some cases. Variable loss of pan–T cell antigens may be seen; however, the immunophenotype is not specific, and a suspected diagnosis can be confirmed by genetic testing for a *TCL1* rearrangement (Chen and Cherian, 2013). Anaplastic large cell lymphoma may also be positive for CD4 but is sometimes negative and can infrequently express CD8. Expression of CD30 (often strong) in combination with an aberrant pattern of T cell antigen expression on a population with forward scatter characteristics of large cells can be useful in the

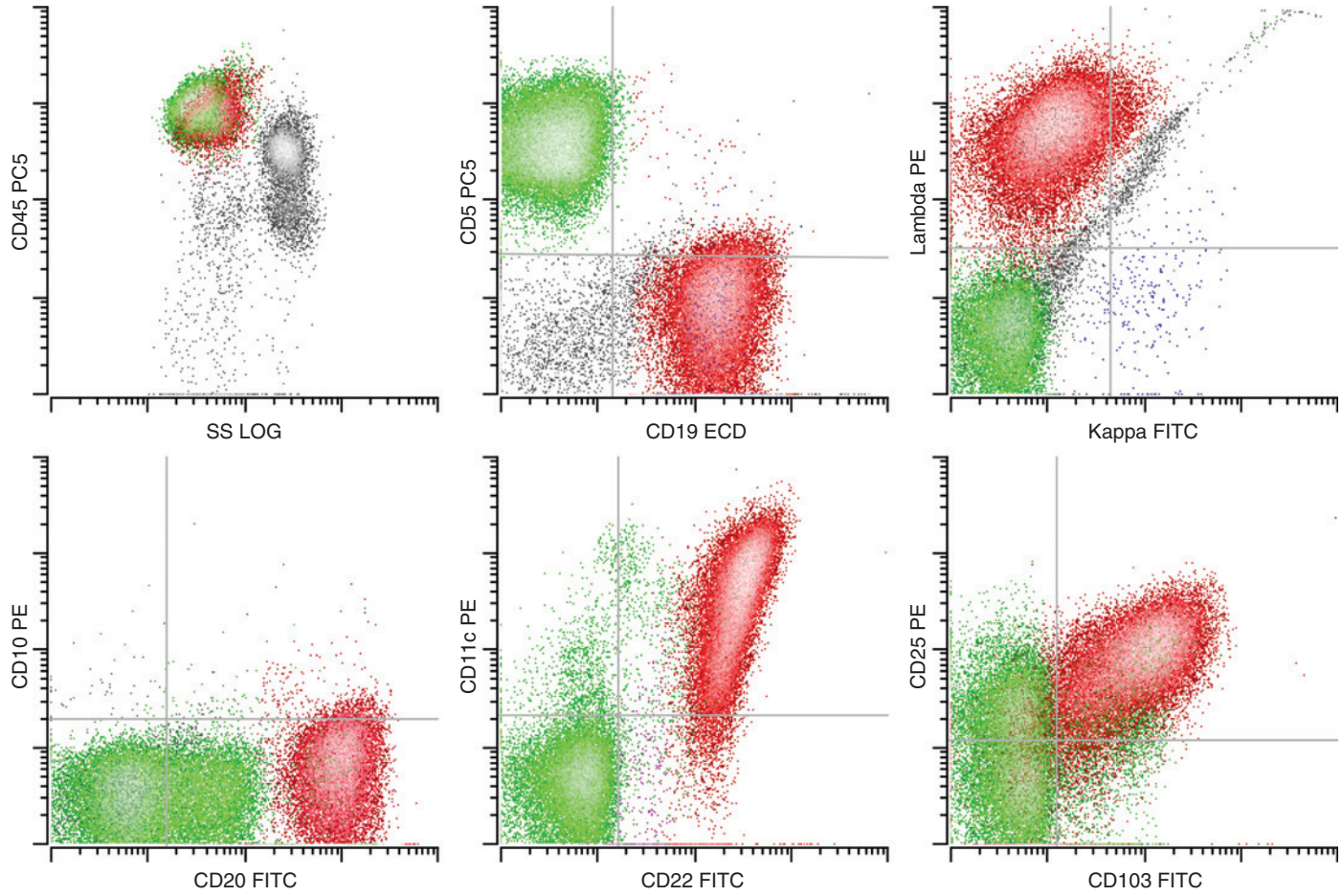


Figure 34-20 Hairy cell leukemia. The neoplastic B cell population *(red)* shows expression of B cell antigens CD19 (intermediate), CD20 (bright), CD22 (bright) and surface λ light chain restriction (intermediate) with aberrant expression of the adhesion molecules CD11c (variably bright), CD103 (intermediate), and CD25 (intermediate). This immunophenotype is diagnostic for hairy cell leukemia. Note the absence of monocytes by CD45 versus side scatter, a characteristic finding in hairy cell leukemia.

identification of anaplastic large cell lymphoma (Juco et al, 2003; Muzzafar et al, 2009).

CD8 expression is less common in T cell neoplasms. Large granular lymphoproliferative disorder (large granular lymphocytic leukemia) is generally characterized by clonal expansion of CD8-positive T cells having variably decreased expression of CD5 or CD7 and expression of NK cell–associated antigens such as CD57 or CD16 (Richards et al, 1995). However, similar clonal expansions may be seen in a wide variety of reactive conditions, and knowledge of the clinical context is required for an understanding of the clinical significance of an expanded large granular lymphocyte population.

Prognostic Factors

As noted earlier, flow cytometry can be used to assess markers of prognostic significance in CLL, including CD38 (Damle et al, 1999) and ZAP-70 (Crespo et al, 2003). Although these assays are widely available, problems with interpretation and standardization have been reported. The distribution of CD38 on CLL cells is often continuous, not discrete, and arbitrary criteria have been used to distinguish positive from negative cases. This problem is even greater in the case of ZAP-70 assessment, where expression is often very dim, and where questions have been raised about the best method to determine positivity. Nonetheless, most cases are either clearly positive or clearly negative for each of these markers, and many papers, using varying techniques, have demonstrated their prognostic significance (Rassenti et al, 2008). Cases with borderline positivity are best considered as indeterminate for expression. To date, there are no prognostic markers in other types of lymphoma that are as well established as those in CLL/SLL.

Therapeutic Targets

The most widely used therapeutic antibody is anti-CD20 (rituximab). CD20 is expressed by the great majority of B cell lymphomas; however, determination of CD20 expression is essential to establish the suitability of this therapy. Following therapy, B cells may persist but show loss of CD20 expression. In such cases, assessment of samples using more than one B cell marker, for instance, a combination of CD19 and CD20, is helpful in demonstrating the presence of residual B cells lacking CD20. Anti-CD52 (alemtuzumab) is occasionally used to treat cases of refractory lymphoma. Because of the profound immunosuppression associated with this therapy, documentation of CD52 expression is important, although the great majority of lymphomas will indeed express CD52.

Minimal Residual Disease Detection

Detecting low levels of involvement can be important in accurately staging patients with lymphoma (Douglas et al, 1999). This is particularly applicable to studies of bone marrow, where detection of small populations of light chain–restricted B cells can be seen in cases in which morphology is either negative or equivocal (Duggan et al, 2000; Palacio et al, 2001; Sanchez et al, 2002; Stacchini et al, 2003), although the cost-effectiveness of this approach has been questioned (Hanson et al, 1999). Similarly, the peripheral blood may be evaluated for lymphoma to aid in the timing or advisability of stem cell collection, and the resulting harvested stem cell product may be tested for the presence of residual lymphoma to minimize the amount of tumor reinfused in patients undergoing bone marrow transplantation. In addition, as in acute leukemia, minimal residual disease studies have been used in patients with CLL and have demonstrated an association between the presence of residual disease following therapy and

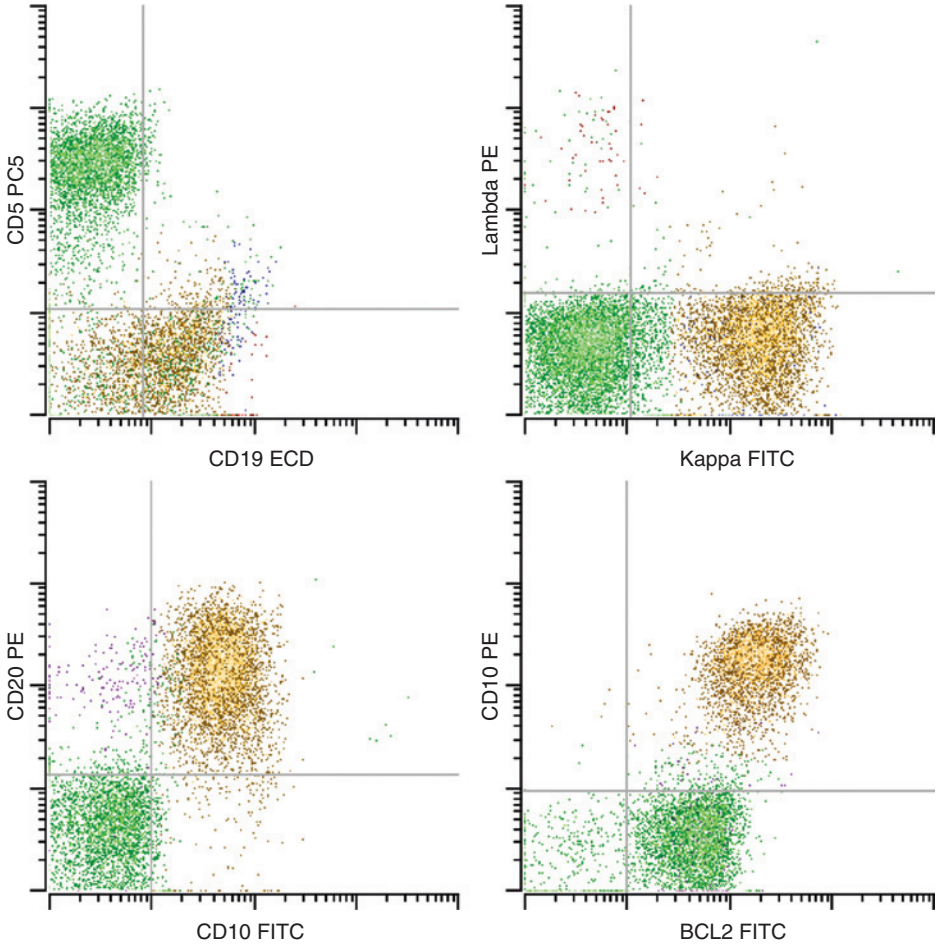


Figure 34-21 Follicular lymphoma. The neoplastic B cell population *(gold)* shows abnormal expression of the B cell antigens CD19 (dim), CD20 (intermediate), and surface κ light chain restriction (intermediate) with coexpression of the follicle center–associated antigen CD10 (intermediate). In addition, the neoplasm shows overexpression of cytoplasmic Bcl-2 due to the presence of the t(14;18) characteristic of follicular lymphoma (i.e., Bcl-2 is expressed at a higher level on the neoplastic population than on the normal background T cells) *(green)*. Overexpression of Bcl-2 by itself is not diagnostic of follicular lymphoma, but its combined expression with CD10 is much more specific, as normal CD10-positive follicular B cells would be expected to be negative. All plots show all lymphoid cells.

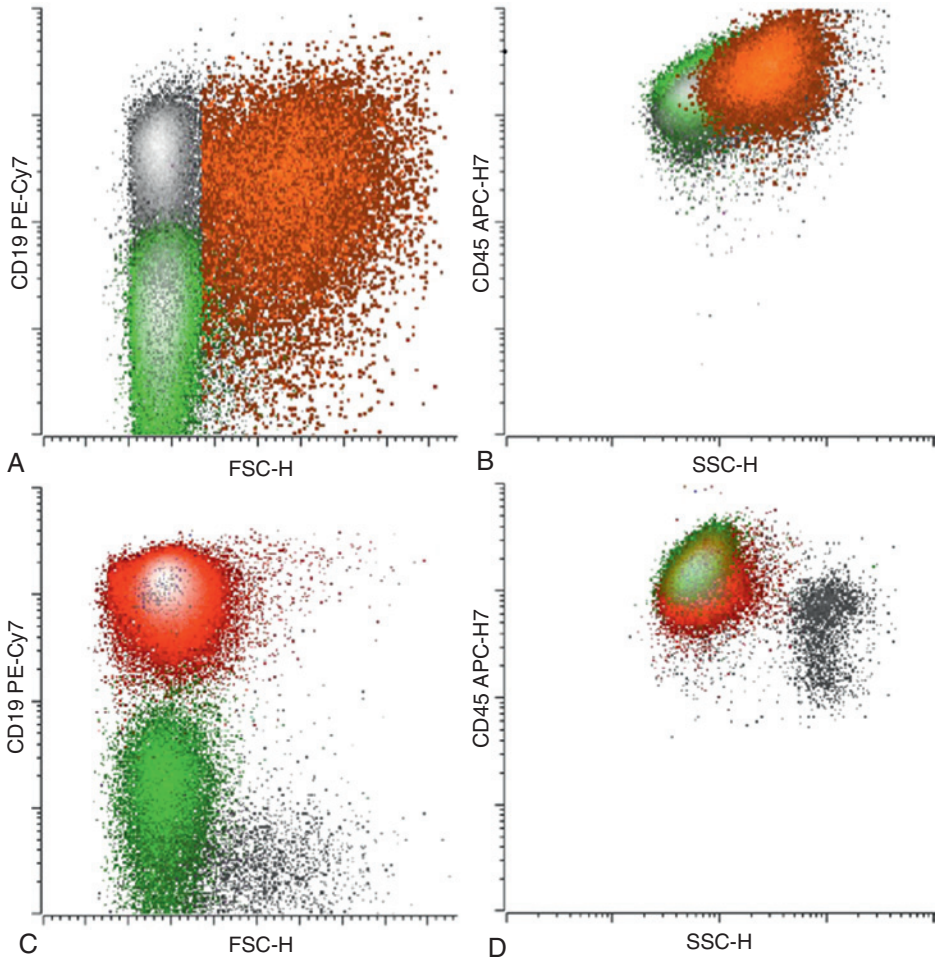


Figure 34-22 Diffuse large B cell lymphoma. All plots show all viable cells. **(A, B)** The upper dot plots show an example of diffuse large B cell lymphoma. The neoplastic cells are colored orange and highlighted, while normal T cells are shown in green and normal B cells are shown in gray **(C, D).** The lower dot plots show an example of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) for comparison (neoplastic cells are shown in red, while normal background T cells are shown in green). The forward and side scatter characteristics of the abnormal cells in the case of diffuse large B cell lymphoma are increased compared to the background T cells, the background B cells, and the CLL cells. Note that the position of the abnormal large B cell population (panel B) on a CD45 versus side scatter plot overlaps with the typical CD45 versus side scatter position of monocytes rather than normal lymphocytes. A stringent lymphocyte gating strategy relying on side scatter with either CD45 or forward scatter would exclude the bulk of the abnormal population.

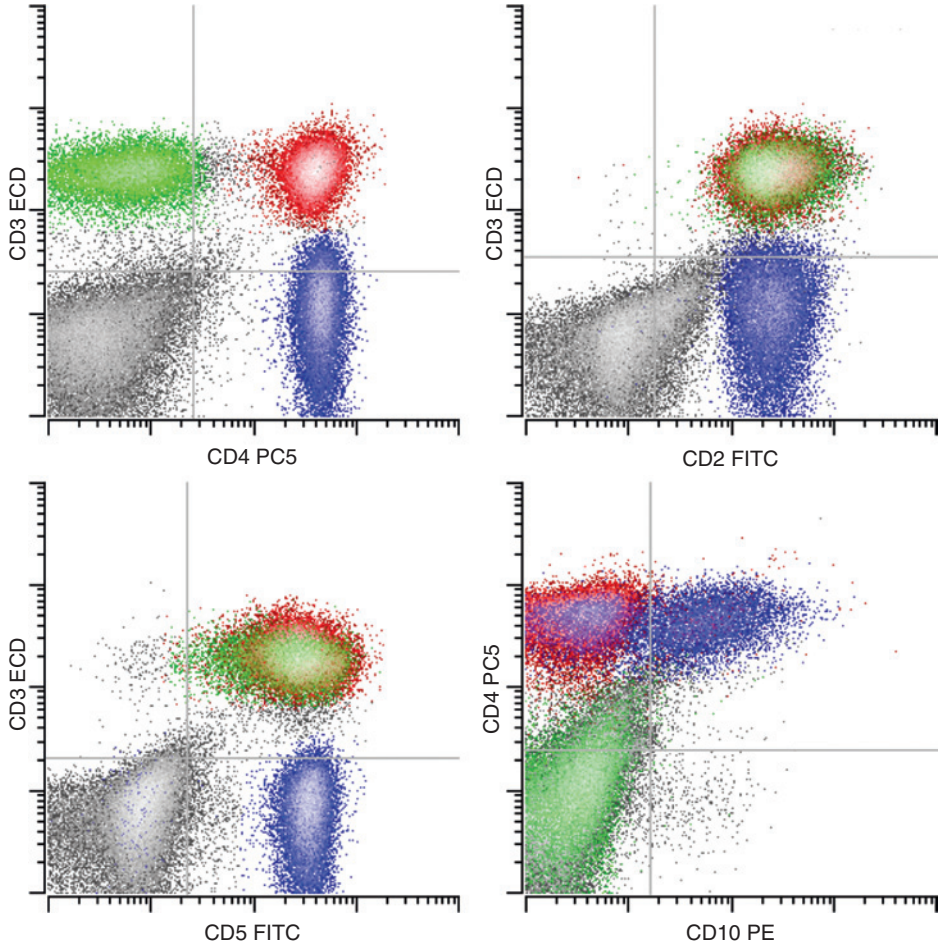


Figure 34-23 Angioimmunoblastic T cell lymphoma. The neoplastic T cell population *(blue)* shows expression of the T cell–associated antigens CD2 (intermediate) and CD5 (intermediate), along with the helper T cell antigen CD4, but without surface CD3. In addition, the neoplastic cells coexpress CD10. The composite immunophenotype is characteristic of that seen in angioimmunoblastic T cell lymphoma. All plots show all lymphocytes. Normal CD4- and CD8-positive T cells are shown in red and green, respectively.

both event-free and overall survival (Rawstron et al, 2001; Moreton et al, 2005). In these cases, methods to demonstrate clonal populations of light chain–restricted B cells are not as sensitive as methods that rely on the presence of small phenotypically aberrant populations using principles similar to those used in acute leukemia.

Plasma Cell Neoplasms

Plasma cell neoplasms generally are not difficult to identify by flow cytometry (Ruiz-Arguelles, 1994; Ocqueteau, 1998; Paiva et al, 2010; Tembhare et al, 2014), and their immunophenotype at diagnosis (Paiva et al, 2009) and detection following therapy are associated with outcome (Paiva et al, 2008). The expression of bright CD38 and/or CD138 is used to identify the plasma cell population, with common abnormalities being decreased CD45, decreased CD19, mildly decreased CD38, and abnormal coexpression of CD56 or CD117 in combination with the identification of cytoplasmic light chain restriction. The abnormalities listed earlier may be seen in plasma cell neoplasms ranging from monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS) to smoldering myeloma to multiple myeloma and do not allow confident distinction of these entities, although some studies suggest subtle differences in immunophenotype (Tembhare et al, 2014). Distinction of normal and abnormal plasma cells in patients with plasma cell neoplasms appears to have some predictive value. MGUS and smoldering myeloma with a higher proportion of abnormal plasma cells is more likely to progress (Perez-Persona et al, 2010), while persistence of normal background plasma cells has been associated with an improved prognosis in multiple myeloma (Paiva et al, 2009). An example of immunophenotypic abnormalities seen in plasma cell neoplasms is presented in Figure 34-26. It is important to recognize that flow cytometric analysis typically underestimates the percentage of plasma cells present in a specimen, sometimes dramatically, possibly because of plasma cell aggregation, apoptosis, and peripheral blood dilution. With more sensitive methods, the role of flow cytometry in prognostication and minimal residual disease detection in plasma cell neoplasms is likely to grow in the future (Rawstron et al, 2013; Paiva et al, 2014).

Myelodysplastic Syndromes and Myeloproliferative Disorders

The same principles used to identify other hematopoietic neoplasms can be used to identify the chronic myeloid stem cell neoplasms, e.g., the myelodysplastic syndromes and myeloproliferative neoplasms (Elghetany, 1998; Stetler-Stevenson et al, 2001; Wells et al, 2003, Kussick & Wood, 2003a, 2003b; Wood, 2007; Matarraz et al, 2008). Abnormalities in antigen expression can be identified on myeloid blasts, maturing neutrophils, and maturing monocytes. Common abnormalities include (1) alterations in the intensity of expression of CD34, CD117, and HLA-DR, and aberrant expression of antigens such as CD7 or CD56 on myeloid blasts (Wells et al, 2003; Kussick & Wood, 2003b; Matarraz et al, 2008), (2) abnormal patterns of CD13 and CD16 expression and decreased side scatter on maturing neutrophils, and (3) aberrant CD56 expression on maturing monocytes (Wells et al, 2003; Kussick & Wood, 2003b). Abnormalities in erythroid maturation have also been described (Della Porta et al, 2006). Although abnormalities can be demonstrated in most chronic myeloid stem cell neoplasms having cytogenetic abnormalities, low-grade myelodysplasia predominantly affecting the erythroid lineage is not consistently identified by flow cytometry currently, and new methods are needed. An example of immunophenotypic abnormalities seen in myelodysplasia is presented in Figure 34-27.

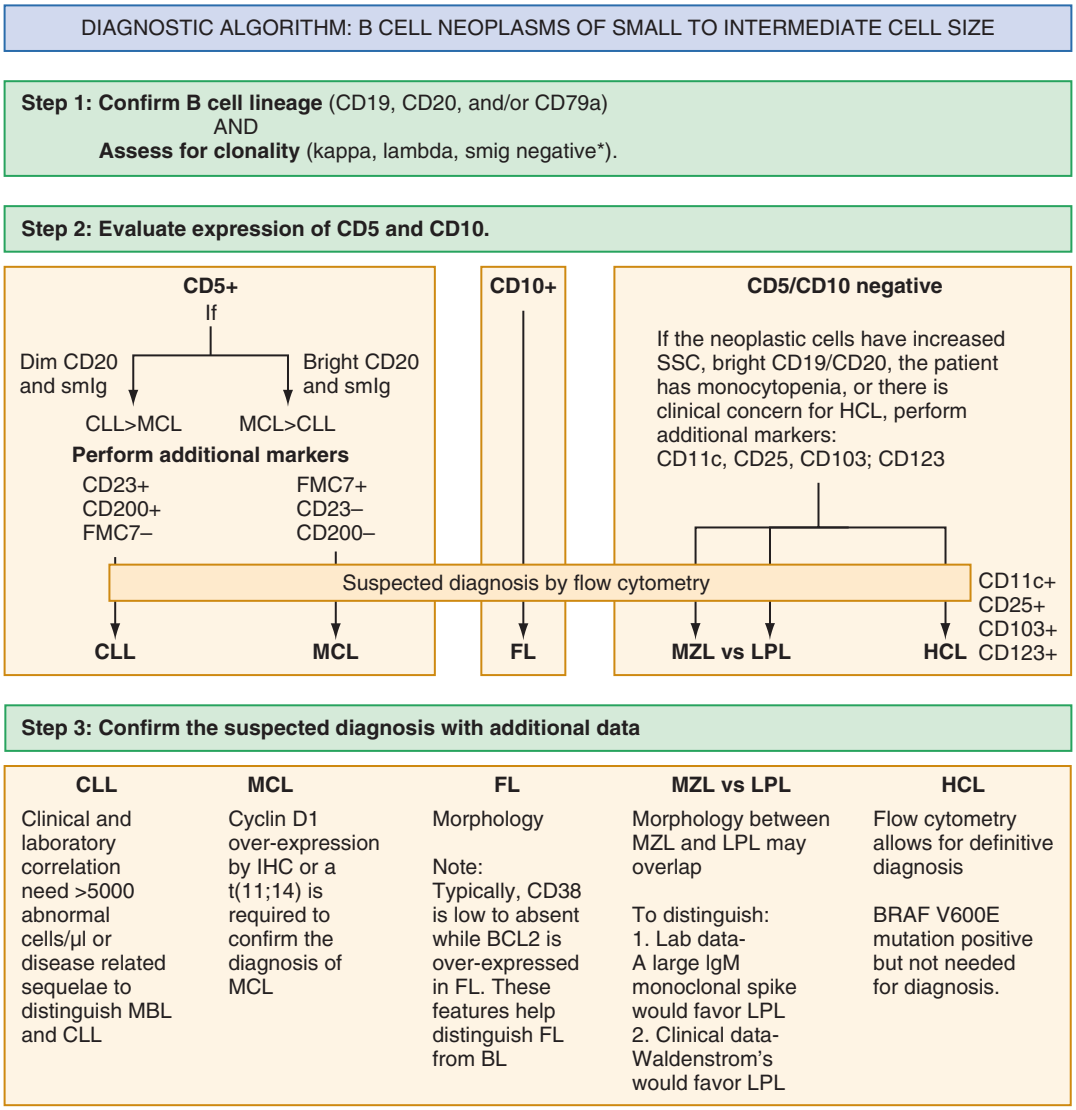


Figure 34-24 **This diagnostic algorithm outlines the steps in classification of B cell lymphomas composed of cells of small to intermediate size.** *SmIg,* Surface immunoglobulin; *CLL,* chronic lymphocytic leukemia; *MCL,* mantle cell lymphoma; *FL,* follicular lymphoma; *MZL,* marginal zone lymphoma; *LPL,* lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma; *HCL,* hairy cell leukemia; *MBL,* monoclonal B cell lymphocytosis; *BL,* Burkitt lymphoma.

Among myeloproliferative neoplasms, chronic myeloid leukemia and myelofibrosis (primary or secondary) are most likely to show immunophenotypic abnormalities. By contrast, uncomplicated essential thrombocythemia and polycythemia vera are unlikely to show abnormalities by flow cytometry, and neither isolated thrombocytosis or erythrocytosis are considered to be indications for flow cytometry (Davis et al, 2007). Although flow cytometry has been less well studied in the myeloproliferative neoplasms, the abnormalities seen in the blasts in this group of diseases are similar to the abnormalities described earlier in association with myelodysplastic syndromes and may be seen in conjunction with basophilia (Kussick & Wood, 2003a).

Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria

Certain nonneoplastic hematopoietic disorders can be diagnosed using the same principles used to identify hematopoietic neoplasms. Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH) is an acquired clonal stem cell disorder characterized by the loss of a variety of cell surface proteins on all progeny of the hematopoietic stem cell, including erythrocytes, neutrophils, monocytes, lymphocytes, and platelets. The loss of these proteins is the result of a somatic mutation of a key enzyme required for synthesis of the glycosyl-phosphatidyl-inositol (GPI) linkage used to attach these proteins to the cell surface. Detection of the loss of GPI-linked proteins is readily accomplished by flow cytometry (Richards et al, 2000, Sutherland et al, 2014), and flow cytometry of the peripheral blood serves as the principal diagnostic method for this disorder. For clinical testing, it is recommended that at least two different cell lineages be evaluated (Borowitz et al, 2010; Fletcher et al, 2014). When considering white blood cells (namely granulocytes and monocytes), evaluation of at least two GPI-linked reagents, one of which should be the fluorescent derivative of bacterial proaerolysin (FLAER), is recommended (Brodsky et al, 2000; Borowitz et al, 2010). One recent recommendation is to use a four-color combination of FLAER, **CD24**, CD15, and CD45 for high-sensitivity testing of neutrophils; FLAER, **CD14**, CD64, and CD45 for monocytes; and two-color CD235a/**CD59** for RBCs (Fletcher et al, 2014). In these combinations, FLAER binds the GPI anchor and the antigens listed in bold are GPI-linked, while the remaining reagents are used for population identification. CD157 is another GPI-linked protein that may be used in a single-tube high-sensitivity assay to simultaneously asses for GPI-deficient monocytes and neutrophils (Sutherland et al, 2014). Platelets and lymphocytes are generally not evaluated. An example of PNH is shown in Figure 34-28.

SUMMARY

Flow cytometry is a powerful, rapid, and cost-effective technique for the identification and monitoring of hematopoietic neoplasms. Successful implementation requires careful attention to instrument and reagent performance, as well as a strong working knowledge of normal patterns of antigenic expression on hematopoietic cells.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

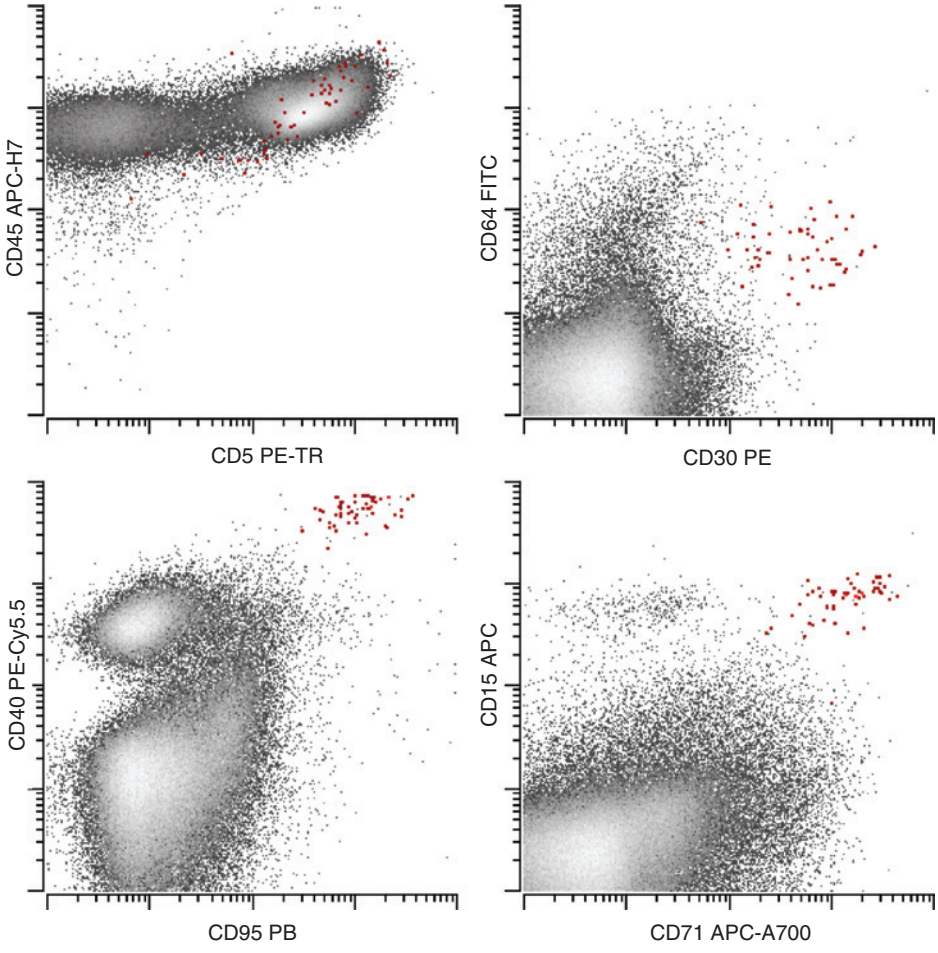


Figure 34-25 **Classical Hodgkin lymphoma.** A discrete population of cells *(red)* is identified that differs from normal lymphocytes and macrophages, having expression of CD15, CD30, high CD40, high CD71, and high CD95. This immunophenotype is typical for classical Hodgkin lymphoma. Note that these cells commonly show increased autofluorescence that appears as apparent low positivity for FITC-labeled reagents (CD64 in the current example). Also note that Hodgkin cells commonly are rosetted by T cells, giving apparent positivity for CD5 and CD45 *(top left panel)*.

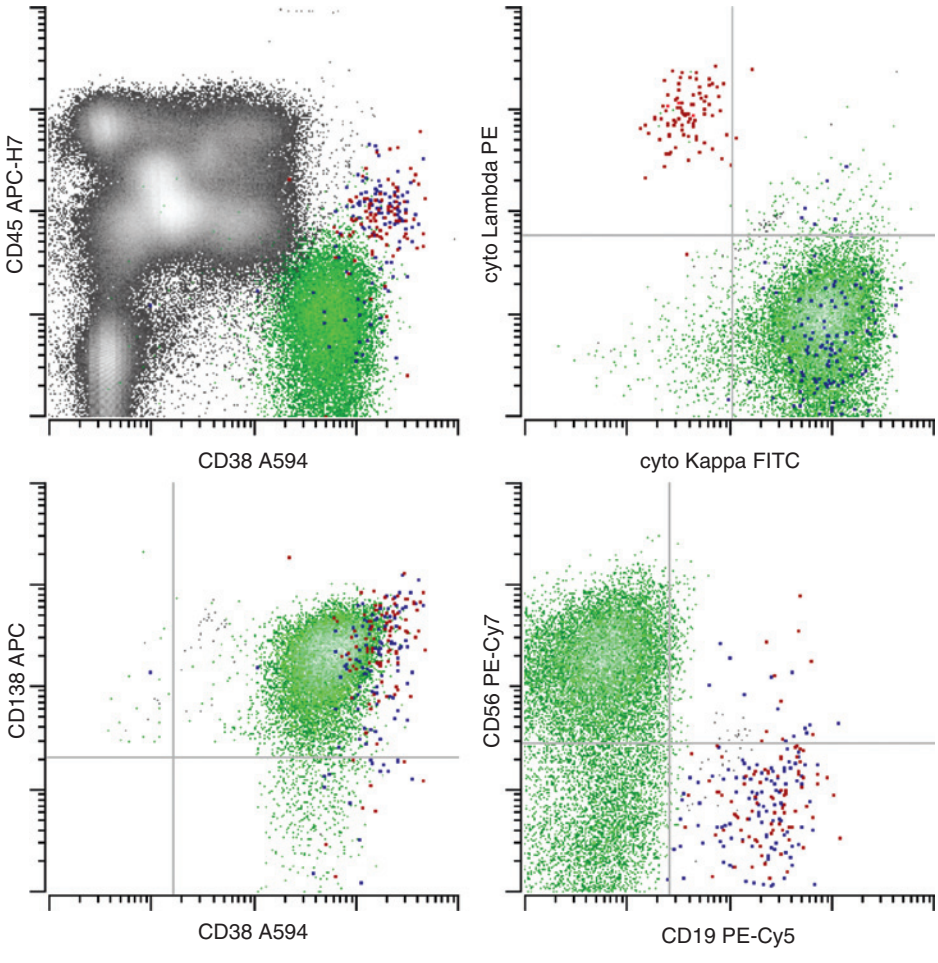


Figure 34-26 **Plasma cell neoplasm.** The neoplastic plasma cell population *(green)* is identified by the bright expression of CD38 and CD138, but both are slightly decreased in comparison with the few normal polyclonal plasma cells *(emphasized in blue and red)*. Abnormal plasma cells show abnormal expression of CD45 (low to absent) and CD19 (absent), express cytoplasmic κ light chain restriction, and demonstrate aberrant expression of CD56. This immunophenotype is characteristic of that seen in a variety of plasma cell neoplasms, including multiple myeloma, plasmacytoma, and monoclonal gammopathy of uncertain significance (MGUS). Definitive classification requires clinical and laboratory correlation.

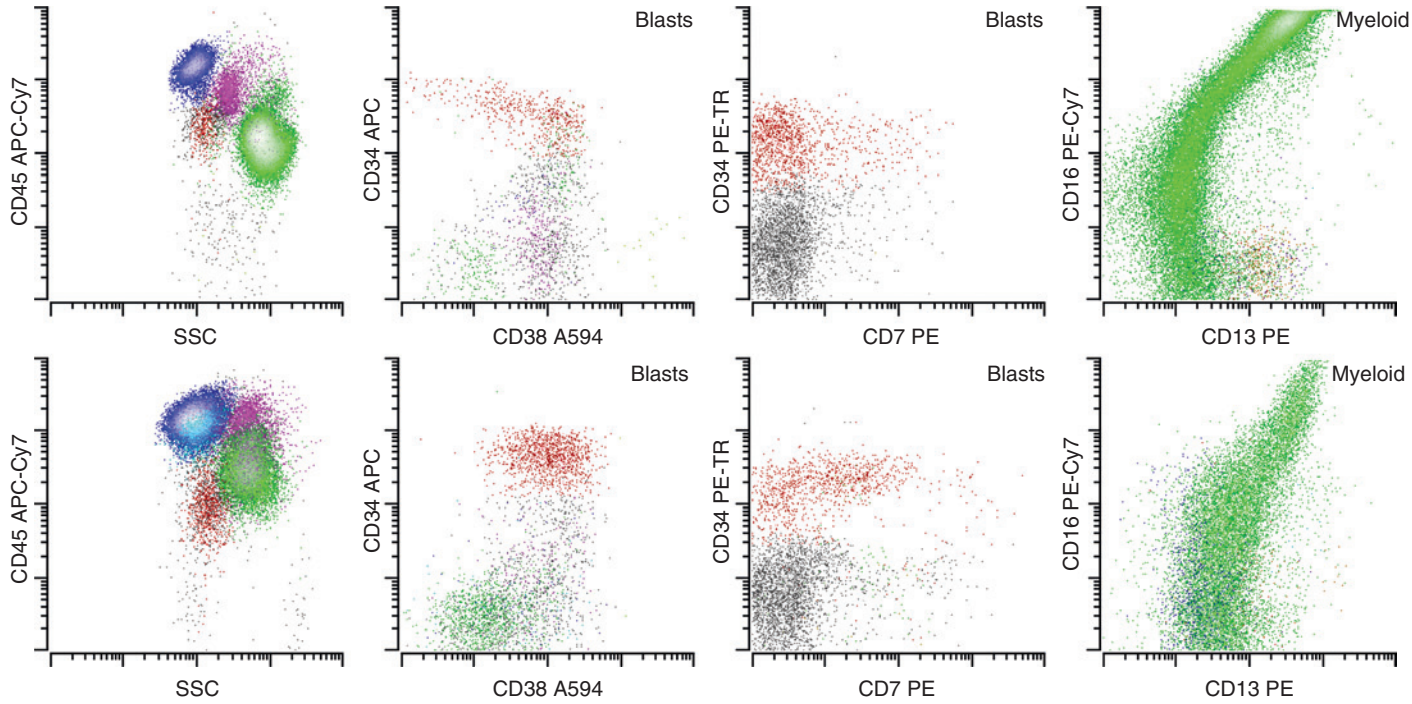


Figure 34-27 **Myelodysplasia.** A sample from a patient with low-grade myelodysplasia *(lower row)* is compared with normal bone marrow *(upper row)*. Myeloid blasts are shown in *red*, maturing myeloid forms in *green*, monocytes in *purple*, and lymphocytes in *blue*. Abnormalities commonly seen in myelodysplasia include neutrophil hypogranularity as indicated by decreased side scatter *(left)*, decreased CD45 expression by the blasts *(left)*, homogeneous expression of markers usually expressed at varying levels on myeloid blasts *(CD38, left center)*, acquisition of lymphoid-associated antigens (CD2, CD5, CD7, and CD56) by myeloid blasts *(right center)*, and abnormal patterns of myelomonocytic maturation, such as abnormal CD13 and CD16 on maturing neutrophilic forms *(right)*. Decreased side scatter is best noted by comparing the relative positions of neutrophils *(green)* and monocytes *(purple)*. It is the combined presence of these abnormalities, rather than a single abnormality, that suggests a myeloid stem cell disorder, such as myelodysplasia.

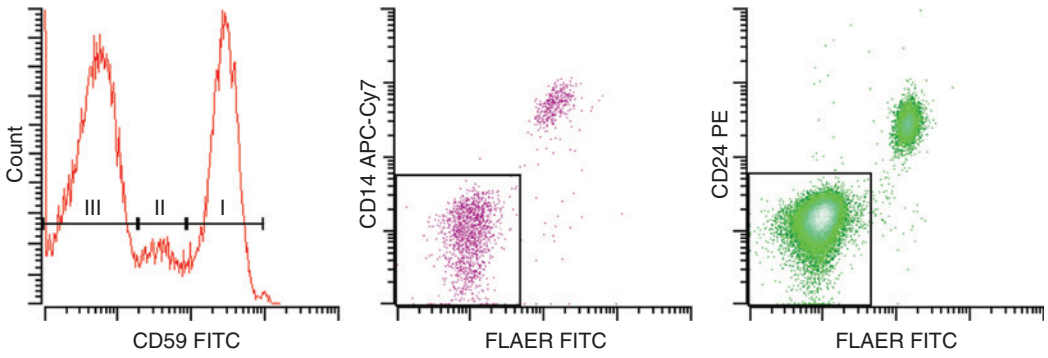


Figure 34-28 **Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.** Erythrocytes *(left panel)* identified by light scatter properties show differing levels of CD59 expression, corresponding to normal (Type I, 36%), partially deficient (Type II, 9%), and completely deficient (Type III, 54%) forms. A single 6 color tube is used for identification of GPI-deficient monocyte and granulocyte populations: FLAER, CD24, CD14, CD15, CD33, and CD45. Monocytes *(center panel)*, identified by a combination of CD45, CD15 (low), CD33 (high), and side scatter (intermediate), show a mixture of normal (positive for CD14 and fluorescent aerolysin [FLAER]) and GPI-deficient forms (gated, 81%). Granulocytes *(right panel)*, identified by a combination of CD45, CD15 (high), CD33 (low), and side scatter (high), show a mixture of normal (positive for CD24 and FLAER) and GPI-deficient forms (gated, 85%). Note the greater percentage of GPI-deficient monocytes and granulocytes compared with GPI-deficient erythrocytes, a common finding in PNH.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Cherian S, Wood BL: *Flow cytometry in evaluation of hematopoietic neoplasms: A case-based approach*, Northfield, Ill, 2012, CAP Press.
An atlas of clinical neoplastic flow cytometry.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Clinical flow cytometric analysis of neoplastic hematolymphoid cells: approved guideline*, ed 2, Wayne, Pa, 2007, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. CLSI Document H43-A2.
A useful reference document on technical issues related to the clinical performance of flow cytometry for leukemia and lymphoma.

Craig FE, Foon KA: Flow cytometric immunophenotyping for hematopoietic neoplasms, *Blood* 111:3941–3967, 2008.
A comprehensive review of clinical flow cytometry.

Shapiro HM: *Practical flow cytometry*, ed 4, New York, 2003, Wiley Liss.
A definitive exposition of technical issues related to flow cytometry.

Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, et al, editors: *World Health Organization classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC Press.
A definitive and well-illustrated text expounding the first revision of the most modern and comprehensive classification of human hematopoietic disease achieved through international consensus.

Stewart CC, Mayers GL: Kinetics of antibody binding to cells. In Stewart C, Nicholson JKA, editors: *Immunophenotyping*, ed 1, New York, 2000, Wiley-Liss, pp 1–22.
The entire volume is an excellent, modern general reference on the use of immunophenotyping in a variety of settings.

U.S.-Canadian consensus recommendations on the immunophenotypic analysis of hematologic neoplasia by cytometry. Bethesda, Md., November 16-17, 1995, *Cytometry* 30:213–274, 1997.
Comprehensive description of consensus guidelines for the practical performance of clinical flow cytometry for the diagnosis of leukemia and lymphoma.

REFERENCES

Alapat D, Coviello-Malle J, Owens R, et al: Diagnostic usefulness and prognostic impact of CD200 expression in lymphoid malignancies and plasma cell myeloma, *Am J Clin Pathol* 137:93–100, 2012.

Almasri NM, Iturraspe JA, Braylan RC: CD10 expression in follicular lymphoma and large cell lymphoma is different from that of reactive lymph node follicles, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 122:539–544, 1998.

Attygalle A, Al-Jehani R, Diss TC, et al: Neoplastic T cells in angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma express CD10, *Blood* 99:627–633, 2002.

Baer MR, Stewart CC, Dodge RK, et al: High frequency of immunophenotype changes in acute myeloid leukemia at relapse: implications for residual disease detection (Cancer and Leukemia Group B Study 8361), *Blood* 97:3574–3580, 2001.

Baer MR, Stewart CC, Lawrence D, et al: Expression of the neural cell adhesion molecule CD56 is associated with short remission duration and survival in acute myeloid leukemia with t(8;21)(q22;q22), *Blood* 90:1643–1648, 1997.

Barnett D, Louzao R, Gambell P, et al: Validation of cell-based fluorescence assays: practice guidelines from the ICSH and ICCS—part IV—postanalytic considerations, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 84:309–314, 2013.

Bene MC, Castoldi G, Knapp W, et al: Proposals for the immunological classification of acute leukemias. European Group for the Immunological Characterization of Leukemias (EGIL), *Leukemia* 9:1783–1786, 1995.

Bogen SA, Pelley D, Charif M, et al: Immunophenotypic identification of Sezary cells in peripheral blood, *Am J Clin Pathol* 106:739–748, 1996.

Borowitz MJ, Craig FE, Digiuseppe JA, et al: Guidelines for the diagnosis and monitoring of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria and related disorders by flow cytometry, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 78(4):211–230, 2010.

Borowitz MJ, Devidas M, Hunger SP, et al: Clinical significance of minimal residual disease in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia and its relation to other prognostic factors: a Children's Oncology Group study, *Blood* 111:5477–5485, 2008.

Borowitz MJ, Guenther KL, Shults KE, et al: Immunophenotyping of acute leukemia by flow cytometric analysis: use of CD45 and right-angle light scatter to gate on leukemic blasts in three-color analysis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 100:534–540, 1993.

Borowitz MJ, Pullen DJ, Winick N, et al: Comparison of diagnostic and relapse flow cytometry immunophenotypes in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia: implications for residual disease detection: a report from the Children's Oncology Group, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 68:18–24, 2005.

Bradstock K, Matthews J, Benson E, et al: Prognostic value of immunophenotyping in acute myeloid leukemia. Australian Leukaemia Study Group, *Blood* 84: 1220–1225, 1994.

Braylan RC, Benson NA: Flow cytometric analysis of lymphomas, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 113:627–633, 1989.

Braylan RC, Benson NA, Iturraspe J: Analysis of lymphomas by flow cytometry: current and emerging strategies, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 677:364–378, 1993.

Brodsky RA, Mukhina GL, Li S, et al: Improved detection and characterization of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria using fluorescent aerolysin, *Am J Clin Pathol* 114:459–466, 2000.

Buccisano F, Maurillo L, Del Principe MI, et al: Prognostic and therapeutic implications of minimal residual disease detection in acute myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 119(2):332–341, 2012.

Campana D: Determination of minimal residual disease in leukemia patients, *Brit J Haematol* 121:823–838, 2003.

Carter PH, Resto-Ruiz S, Washington GC, et al: Flow cytometric analysis of whole blood lysis, three anticoagulants, and five cell preparations, *Cytometry* 13:68–74, 1992.

Chang A, Benda PM, Wood BL, et al: Lineage-specific identification of nonhematopoietic neoplasms by flow cytometry, *Am J Clin Pathol* 119:643–655, 2003.

Chen W, Asplund SL, McKenna RW, et al: Characterization of incidentally identified minute clonal B-lymphocyte populations in peripheral blood and bone marrow, *Am J Clin Pathol* 122:588–595, 2004.

Chen X, Cherian S: Immunophenotypic characterization of T-cell prolymphocytic leukemia, *Am J Clin Pathol* 140:727–735, 2013.

Cook JR, Craig FE, Swerdlow SH: bcl-2 expression by multicolor flow cytometric analysis assists in the diagnosis of follicular lymphoma in lymph node and bone marrow, *Am J Clin Pathol* 119:145–151, 2003.

Coustan-Smith E, Sancho J, Hancock ML, et al: Clinical importance of minimal residual disease in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 96:2691–2696, 2000.

Crespo M, Bosch F, Villamor N, et al: ZAP-70 expression as a surrogate for immunoglobulin-variable-region mutations in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 348:1764–1775, 2003.

Damle RN, Wasil T, Fais F, et al: Ig V gene mutation status and CD38 expression as novel prognostic indicators in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Blood* 94: 1840–1847, 1999.

Davis BH, Dasgupta A, Kussick S, et al: Validation of cell-based fluorescence assays: practice guidelines from the ICSH and ICCS—part II—preanalytical issues, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 84:286–290, 2013.

Davis BH, Holden JT, Bene MC, et al: 2006 Bethesda international consensus recommendations on the immunophenotypic analysis of hematolymphoid neoplasia by flow cytometry: medical indications, *Cytometry* 72B:S5–S13, 2007.

Della Porta MG, Malcovati L, Invernizzi R, et al: Flow cytometry evaluation of erythroid dysplasia in patients with myelodysplastic syndrome, *Leukemia* 20:549–555, 2006.

Douglas VK, Gordon LI, Goolsby CL, et al: Lymphoid aggregates in bone marrow mimic residual lymphoma after rituximab therapy for non-Hodgkin lymphoma, *Am J Clin Pathol* 112:844–853, 1999.

Duggan PR, Easton D, Luider J, et al: Bone marrow staging of patients with non-Hodgkin lymphoma by flow cytometry: correlation with morphology, *Cancer* 88:894–899, 2000.

Dworzak MN, Froschl G, Printz D, et al: Prognostic significance and modalities of flow cytometric minimal residual disease detection in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 99:1952–1958, 2002.

Elghetany MT: Surface marker abnormalities in myelodysplastic syndromes, *Haematologica* 83:1104–1115, 1998.

Farahat N, Lens D, Zomas A, et al: Quantitative flow cytometry can distinguish between normal and leukaemic B-cell precursors, *Br J Haematol* 91:640–646, 1995.

Feller N, van der Pol MA, van Stijn A, et al: MRD parameters using immunophenotypic detection methods are highly reliable in predicting survival in acute myeloid leukaemia, *Leukemia* 18:1380–1390, 2004.

Fletcher M, Sutherland R, Whitby L, et al: Standardizing leucocyte PNH clone detection: An international study, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 86B:311–318, 2014.

Fromm JR, Thomas A, Wood BL: Flow cytometry can diagnose classical Hodgkin lymphoma with high sensitivity and specificity, *Am J Clin Pathol* 131:322–332, 2009.

Fukushima PI, Nguyen PK, O'Grady P, et al: Flow cytometric analysis of kappa and lambda light chain expression in evaluation of specimens for B-cell neoplasia, *Cytometry* 26:243–252, 1996.

Galpa G, Basso G, Aliprandi S, et al: Prednisone induces immunophenotypic modulation of CD10 and CD34 in nonapoptotic B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 74:150–155, 2008.

Geary WA, Frierson HF, Innes DJ, et al: Quantitative criteria for clonality in the diagnosis of B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma by flow cytometry, *Mod Pathol* 6:155–161, 1993.

Ginaldi L, Farahat N, Matutes E, et al: Differential expression of T cell antigens in normal peripheral blood lymphocytes: a quantitative analysis by flow cytometry, *J Clin Pathol* 49:539–544, 1996a.

Ginaldi L, Matutes E, Farahat N, et al: Differential expression of CD3 and CD7 in T-cell malignancies: a quantitative study by flow cytometry, *Br J Haematol* 93:921–927, 1996b.

Hanson CA, Abaza M, Sheldon S, et al: Biphenotypic leukaemia: immunophenotypic and cytogenetic analysis, *Br J Haematol* 84:49–60, 1993.

Hanson CA, Kurtin PJ, Katzmann JA, et al: Immunophenotypic analysis of peripheral blood and bone marrow in the staging of B-cell malignant lymphoma, *Blood* 94:3889–3896, 1999.

Harada H, Kawano MM, Huang N, et al: Phenotypic difference of normal plasma cells from mature myeloma cells, *Blood* 81:2658–2663, 1993.

Hoffkes HG, Schmidtke G, Uppenkamp M, et al: Multiparametric immunophenotyping of B cells in peripheral blood of healthy adults by flow cytometry, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 3:30–36, 1996.

Hrusak O, Porwit-MacDonald A: Antigen expression patterns reflecting genotype of acute leukemias, *Leukemia* 16:1233–1258, 2002.

Inghirami G, Zhu BY, Chess L, et al: Flow cytometric and immunohistochemical characterization of the gamma/delta T-lymphocyte population in normal human lymphoid tissue and peripheral blood, *Am J Pathol* 136:357–367, 1990.

Juco J, Holden JT, Mann KP, et al: Immunophenotypic analysis of anaplastic large cell lymphoma by flow cytometry, *Am J Clin Pathol* 19:205–212, 2003.

Kelemen K, Guitart J, Kuzel TM, et al: The usefulness of CD26 in flow cytometric analysis of peripheral blood in Sezary syndrome, *Am J Clin Pathol* 129:146–156, 2008.

Khalidi HS, Chang KL, Medeiros LJ, et al: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia: survey of immunophenotype, French-American-British classification, frequency of myeloid antigen expression, and karyotypic abnormalities in 210 pediatric and adult cases, *Am J Clin Pathol* 111:467–476, 1999.

Khalidi HS, Medeiros LJ, Chang KL, et al: The immunophenotype of adult acute myeloid leukemia: high frequency of lymphoid antigen expression and comparison of immunophenotype, French-American-British classification, and karyotypic abnormalities, *Am J Clin Pathol* 109:211–220, 1998.

Kussick SJ, Kalnoski M, Braziel RM, et al: Prominent clonal B-cell populations identified by flow cytometry in histologically reactive lymphoid proliferations, *Am J Clin Pathol* 121:464–472, 2004.

Kussick SJ, Wood BL: Four-color flow cytometry identifies virtually all cytogenetically abnormal bone marrow samples in the workup of non-CML myeloproliferative disorders, *Am J Clin Pathol* 120:854–865, 2003a.

Kussick SJ, Wood BL: 4 color flow cytometry to identify abnormal myeloid populations, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 127:1140–1147, 2003b.

Li S, Eshleman JR, Borowitz MJ: Lack of surface immunoglobulin light chain expression by flow cytometric immunophenotyping can help diagnose peripheral B-cell lymphoma, *Am J Clin Pathol* 118:229–234, 2002.

Lima M, Almeida J, dos Anjos Teixeira M, et al: Utility of flow cytometry immunophenotyping and DNA ploidy studies for diagnosis and characterization of blood involvement in CD4+ Sezary's syndrome, *Haematologica* 88:874–887, 2003.

Lima M, Almeida J, Santos AH, et al: Immunophenotypic analysis of the TCR-Vbeta repertoire in 98 persistent expansions of CD3(+)/TCR-alphabeta(+) large granular lymphocytes: utility in assessing clonality and insights into the pathogenesis of the disease, *Am J Pathol* 159:1861–1868, 2001.

Loken MR, Alonzo TA, Pardo L, et al: Residual disease detected by multidimensional flow cytometry signifies high relapse risk in patients with de novo acute myeloid leukemia: a report from Children's Oncology Group, *Blood* 120:1581–1588, 2012.

Loken MR, Shah VO, Dattilio KL, et al: Flow cytometric analysis of human bone marrow. II. Normal B lymphocyte development, *Blood* 70:1316–1324, 1987.

Loken MR, Shah VO, Hollander Z, et al: Flow cytometric analysis of normal B lymphoid development, *Pathol Immunopathol Res* 7:357–370, 1988.

Lucio P, Parreira A, van den Beemd MW, et al: Flow cytometric analysis of normal B cell differentiation: a frame of reference for the detection of minimal residual disease in precursor-B-ALL, *Leukemia* 13:419–427, 1999.

Macedo A, Orfao A, Gonzalez M, et al: Immunological detection of blast cell subpopulations in acute myeloblastic leukemia at diagnosis: implications for minimal residual disease studies, *Leukemia* 9:993–998, 1995a.

Macedo A, Orfao A, Vidriales MB, et al: Characterization of aberrant phenotypes in acute myeloblastic leukemia, *Ann Hematol* 70:189–194, 1995.

Mantei K, Wood BL: Flow cytometric evaluation of CD38 expression assists in distinguishing follicular hyperplasia from follicular lymphoma, *Cytometry* 76B:315–320, 2009.

Matarraz S, Lopez A, Barrena S, et al: The immunophenotype of different immature, myeloid, and B cell lineage-committed CD34+ hematopoietic cells allows discrimination between normal/reactive and myelodysplastic syndrome precursors, *Leukemia* 22:1175–1183, 2008.

Matutes E, Morilla R, Farahat N, et al: Definition of acute biphenotypic leukemia, *Haematologica* 82:64–66, 1997.

Matutes E, Morilla R, Owusu-Ankomah K, et al: The immunophenotype of hairy cell leukemia (HCL): proposal for a scoring system to distinguish HCL from B-cell disorders with hairy or villous lymphocytes, *Leuk Lymphoma* 14(Suppl 1):57–61, 1994a.

Matutes E, Owusu-Ankomah K, Morilla R, et al: Immunological profile of B-cell disorders and proposal of a scoring system for the diagnosis of CLL, *Leukemia* 8:1640–1645, 1994b.

Maurillo L, Buccisano F, Del Principe MI, et al: Toward optimization of postremission therapy for residual disease-positive patient with acute myeloid leukemia, *J Clin Oncol* 26:4944–4951, 2008.

McClanahan J, Fukushima PI, Stetler-Stevenson M: Increased peripheral blood gamma delta T-cells in patients with lymphoid neoplasia: a diagnostic dilemma in flow cytometry, *Cytometry* 38:280–285, 1999.

McKenna RW, Washington LT, Aquino DB, et al: Immunophenotypic analysis of hematogones (B-lymphocyte precursors) in 662 consecutive bone marrow specimens by 4-color flow cytometry, *Blood* 98:2498–2507, 2001.

Moreton P, Kennedy B, Lucas G, et al: Eradication of minimal residual disease in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia after alemtuzumab therapy is associated with prolonged survival, *J Clin Oncol* 23:1–9, 2005.

Morice WG, Kimlinger T, Katzmann JA, et al: Flow cytometric assessment of TCR-Vbeta expression in the evaluation of peripheral blood involvement by T-cell lymphoproliferative disorders: a comparison with conventional T-cell immunophenotyping and molecular genetic techniques, *Am J Clin Pathol* 121: 373–383, 2004.

Morice WG, Kurtin PJ, Leibson PJ, et al: Demonstration of aberrant T-cell and natural killer-cell antigen expression in all cases of granular lymphocytic leukaemia, *Br J Haematol* 120:1026–1036, 2003.

Murphy M, Fullen D, Carlson JA: Low CD7 expression in benign and malignant cutaneous lymphocytic infiltrates: experience with an antibody reactive with paraffin-embedded tissue, *Am J Dermatopathol* 24:6–16, 2002.

Muzzafar T, Wei EX, Lin P, et al: Flow cytometric immunophenotyping of anaplastic large cell lymphoma, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 133:49–56, 2009.

Ocqueteau M, Orfao A, Almeida J, et al: Immunophenotypic characterization of plasma cells from monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance patients: implications for the differential diagnosis between MGUS and multiple myeloma, *Am J Pathol* 152:1655–1665, 1998.

Orfao A, Chillon MC, Bortoluci AM, et al: The flow cytometric pattern of CD34, CD15, and CD13 expression in acute myeloblastic leukemia is highly characteristic of the presence of PML-RAR alpha gene rearrangements, *Haematologica* 84:405–412, 1999.

Orfao A, Ortuno F, de Santiago M, et al: Immunophenotyping of acute leukemias and myelodysplastic syndromes, *Cytometry* 58A:62–71, 2004.

Paiva B, Almeida J, Perez-Andres M, et al: Utility of flow cytometry immunophenotyping in multiple myeloma and other clonal plasma cell–related disorders, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 78:239–252, 2010.

Paiva B, Chandia M, Puig N, et al: The prognostic value of multiparameter flow cytometry minimal residual disease assessment in relapse multiple myeloma, *Haematologica* 100:e53–e55, 2015.

Paiva B, Vidriales MB, Cervero J, et al: Multiparameter flow cytometric remission is the most relevant prognostic factor for multiple myeloma patients undergoing autologous stem cell transplantation, *Blood* 112:4017–4023, 2008.

Paiva B, Vidriales MB, Mateo G, et al: The persistence of immunophenotypically normal residual bone marrow plasma cells at diagnosis identifies a good prognostic subgroup of symptomatic multiple myeloma patients, *Blood* 114:4369–4372, 2009.

Palacio C, Acebedo G, Navarrete M, et al: Flow cytometry in the bone marrow evaluation of follicular and diffuse large B-cell lymphomas, *Haematologica* 86:934–940, 2001.

Palumbo GA, Parrinello N, Fargione G, et al: CD200 expression may help in differential diagnosis between mantle cell lymphoma and B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Leuk Res* 33:1212–1216, 2009.

Perez-Persona E, Mateo G, Garcia-Sanz R, et al: Risk of progression in smouldering myeloma and monoclonal gammopathies of unknown significance: comparative analysis of the evolution of the monoclonal component and multiparameter flow cytometry of bone marrow plasma cells, *Br J Haematol* 148:110–114, 2010.

Picker LJ, Weiss LM, Medeiros LJ, et al: Immunophenotypic criteria for the diagnosis of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Am J Pathol* 128:181–201, 1987.

Porwit-MacDonald A, Janossy G, Ivory K, et al: Leukemia-associated changes identified by quantitative flow cytometry. IV. CD34 overexpression in acute myelogenous leukemia M2 with t(8;21), *Blood* 87:1162–1169, 1996.

Rassenti LZ, Jain S, Keating MJ, et al: Relative value of Zap-70, CD38 and immunoglobulin mutation status in predicting aggressive disease in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Blood* 112:1923–1930, 2008.

Rawstron AC, Bennett FL, O'Connor SJ, et al: Monoclonal B-cell lymphocytosis and chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 359:575–583, 2008.

Rawstron AC, Child JA, de Tute RM, et al: Minimal residual disease assessed by multiparameter flow cytometry in multiple myeloma: impact on outcome in the Medical Research Council Myeloma IX Study, *J Clin Pathol* 31:2540–2547, 2013.

Rawstron AC, Green MJ, Kuzmicki A, et al: Monoclonal B lymphocytes with the characteristics of "indolent" chronic lymphocytic leukemia are present in 3.5% of adults with normal blood counts, *Blood* 100:635–639, 2002.

Rawstron AC, Kennedy B, Evans PA, et al: Quantitation of minimal disease levels in chronic lymphocytic leukemia using a sensitive flow cytometric assay improves the prediction of outcome and can be used to optimize therapy, *Blood* 98:29–35, 2001.

Ray S, Craig FE, Swerdlow SH: Abnormal patterns of antigenic expression in follicular lymphoma: a flow cytometric study, *Am J Clin Pathol* 124:576–583, 2005.

Reading CL, Estey EH, Huh YO, et al: Expression of unusual immunophenotype combinations in acute myelogenous leukemia, *Blood* 81:3083–3090, 1993.

Richards SJ, Rawstron AC, Hillmen P: Application of flow cytometry to the diagnosis of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, *Cytometry* 42:223–233, 2000.

Richards SJ, Short M, Scott CS: Clonal CD3+CD8+ large granular lymphocyte (LGL)/NK-associated (NKa) expansions: primary malignancies or secondary reactive phenomena?, *Leuk Lymphoma* 17:303–311, 1995.

Robbins BA, Ellison DJ, Spinosa JC, et al: Diagnostic application of two-color flow cytometry in 161 cases of hairy cell leukemia, *Blood* 82:1277–1287, 1994.

Roederer M: Spectral compensation for flow cytometry: visualization artifacts, limitations, and caveats, *Cytometry* 45:194–205, 2001.

Roshal M, Fromm JR, Winter S, et al: Immaturity associated antigens are lost during induction for T cell lymphoblastic leukemia: implications for minimal residual disease detection, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 78:139–146, 2010.

Ruiz-Arguelles GJ, San Miguel JF: Cell surface markers in multiple myeloma, *Mayo Clin Proc* 69:684–690, 1994.

Sanchez ML, Almeida J, Vidriales MB, et al: Incidence of phenotypic aberrations in a series of 467 patients with B chronic lymphoproliferative disorders: basis for the design of specific four-color stainings to be used for minimal residual disease investigation, *Leukemia* 16:1460–1469, 2002.

San Miguel JF, Vidriales MB, Lopez-Berges C, et al: Early immunophenotypical evaluation of minimal residual disease in acute myeloid leukemia identifies different patient risk groups and may contribute to postinduction treatment stratification, *Blood* 98:1746–1751, 2001.

Schabath R, Ratei R, Ludwig WD: The prognostic significance of antigen expression in leukaemia, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 16:613–628, 2003.

Serke S, Schwaner I, Yordanova M, et al: Monoclonal antibody FMC7 detects a conformational epitope on the CD20 molecule: evidence from phenotyping after rituxan therapy and transfectant cell analyses, *Cytometry* 46:98–104, 2001.

Serke S, van Lessen A, Hummel M, et al: Circulating CD4+ T lymphocytes with intracellular but no surface CD3 antigen in five of seven patients consecutively diagnosed with angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma, *Cytometry* 42:180–187, 2000.

Shanafelt T, Hanson CA: Monoclonal B-cell lymphocytosis: definitions and natural history, *Leuk Lymphoma* 50:493–497, 2009.

Shanafelt TD, Kay NE, Jenkins G, et al: B-cell count and survival: differentiating chronic lymphocytic leukemia from monoclonal B-cell lymphocytosis based on clinical outcome, *Blood* 113:4188–4196, 2009.

Shao H, Yuan CM, Xi L, et al: Minimal residual disease detection by flow cytometry in adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma, *Am J Clin Pathol* 133:592–601, 2010.

Stacchini A, Demurtas A, Godio L, et al: Flow cytometry in the bone marrow staging of mature B-cell neoplasms, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 54:10–18, 2003.

Stelzer GT, Shults KE, Loken MR: CD45 gating for routine flow cytometric analysis of human bone marrow specimens, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 677:265–280, 1993.

Stetler-Stevenson M, Arthur DC, Jabbour N, et al: Diagnostic utility of flow cytometric immunophenotyping in myelodysplastic syndrome, *Blood* 98:979–987, 2001.

Sutherland DR, Action E, Keeney M, et al: Use of CD157 in FLAER-based assays for high sensitivity PNH granulocyte and PNH monocyte detection, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 86:44–55, 2014.

Tanqri S, Vall H, Kaplan D, et al: Validation of cell-based fluorescence assays: practice guidelines from the ICSH and ICCS—part III—analytical issues, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 84:291–308, 2013.

Tembhare PR, Yuan CY, Venzon D, et al: Flow cytometric differentiation of abnormal and normal plasma cells in the bone marrow in patients with multiple myeloma and its precursor diseases, *Leuk Res* 38:371–376, 2014.

Terstappen LW, Hollander Z, Meiners H, et al: Quantitative comparison of myeloid antigens on five lineages of mature peripheral blood cells, *J Leukoc Biol* 48:138–148, 1990a.

Terstappen LW, Huang S, Picker LJ: Flow cytometric assessment of human T-cell differentiation in thymus and bone marrow, *Blood* 79:666–677, 1992a.

Terstappen LW, Johnsen S, Segers-Nolten IM, et al: Identification and characterization of plasma cells in normal human bone marrow by high-resolution flow cytometry, *Blood* 76:1739–1747, 1990b.

Terstappen LW, Loken MR: Myeloid cell differentiation in normal bone marrow and acute myeloid leukemia assessed by multi-dimensional flow cytometry, *Anal Cell Pathol* 2:229–240, 1990.

Terstappen LW, Safford M, Konemann S, et al: Flow cytometric characterization of acute myeloid leukemia. Part II. Phenotypic heterogeneity at diagnosis, *Leukemia* 6:70–80, 1992b.

Tworek JA, Singleton TP, Schnitzer B, et al: Flow cytometric and immunohistochemical analysis of small lymphocytic lymphoma, mantle cell lymphoma, and plasmacytoid small lymphocytic lymphoma, *Am J Clin Pathol* 110:582–589, 1998.

Venkataraman G, Aguhar C, Kreitman RJ, et al: Characteristic CD103 and CD123 expression pattern defines hairy cell leukemia: usefulness of CD123 and CD103 in the diagnosis of mature B-cell lymphoproliferative disorders, *Am J Clin Pathol* 136:625–630, 2011.

Voskova D, Schoch C, Schnittger S, et al: Stability of leukemia-associated aberrant immunophenotypes in patients with acute myeloid leukemia between diagnosis and relapse: comparison with cytomorphologic, cytogenetic, and molecular genetic findings, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 62:25–38, 2004.

Walter RB, Gooley TA, van der Velden VH, et al: CD33 expression and P-glycoprotein-mediated drug efflux inversely correlate and predict clinical outcome in patients with acute myeloid leukemia treated with gemtuzumab ozogamicin monotherapy, *Blood* 109: 4168–4170, 2007.

Webber BA, Cushing MM, Li S: Prognostic significance of flow cytometric immunophenotyping in acute myeloid leukemia, *Int J Clin Exper Pathol* 1:124–133, 2008.

Weir EG, Borowitz MJ: Flow cytometry in the diagnosis of acute leukemia, *Semin Hematol* 38:124–138, 2001.

Weir EG, Cowan K, LeBeau P, et al: A limited antibody panel can distinguish B-precursor acute lymphoblastic

leukemia from normal B precursors with four color flow cytometry: implications for residual disease detection, *Leukemia* 13:558–567, 1999.
Wells DA, Benesch M, Loken MR, et al: Myeloid and monocytic dyspoiesis as determined flow cytometric scoring in myelodysplastic syndrome correlates with the IPSS and with outcome after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, *Blood* 102:394–403, 2003.
Wood BL: Multicolor immunophenotyping: human immune system hematopoiesis, *Methods Cell Biol* 75:559–576, 2004.
Wood BL: 9 and 10 color flow cytometry in the clinical laboratory, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 130:680–690, 2006.
Wood BL: Myeloid neoplasms: myelodysplasia, myeloproliferative disorders, and acute myeloid leukemia, *Clin Lab Med* 27:551–575, 2007.
Wood BL, Arroz M, Barnett D, et al: 2006 Bethesda international consensus recommendations on the immunophenotypic analysis of hematolymphoid neoplasia by flow cytometry: optimal reagents and reporting for the flow cytometric diagnosis of hematopoietic neoplasia, *Cytometry* 72B:S14–S22, 2007.
Wood B, Jevremovic D, Bene MC, et al: Validation of cell-based fluorescence assays: practice guidelines from the ICSH and ICCS—part V—assay performance criteria, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 84:315–323, 2013.
Yang W, Agrawal N, Patel J, et al: Diminished expression of CD19 in B-cell lymphomas, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 63:28–35, 2005.
Xochelli A, Kalpadakis C, Gardiner A, et al: Clonal B-cell lymphocytosis exhibiting immunophenotypic features consistent with a marginal-zone origin: is this a distinct entity?, *Blood* 123:1199–1206, 2014.

CHAPTER 35

IMMUNOHEMATOLOGY

Laura Cooling, Theresa Downs

BASIC IMMUNOHEMATOLOGIC CONCEPTS, 680
Blood Group Antigens, 680
Blood Group Alloantibodies and Autoantibodies, 681
The Complement System and Blood Banking, 682

ERYTHROCYTE ANTIGENS AND ANTIBODIES, 683
ABO and H Blood Group Systems (ISBT No. 001 and 018), 684
MNS Blood Group System (ISBT No. 002), 686
P1PK, GLOB, and FORS Blood Group Systems (ISBT No. 003, 028, and 031), 688
Rh and RhAg Blood Group Systems (ISBT No. 004 and 030), 690
Lutheran Blood Group System (ISBT No. 005), 695
Kell and Kx Blood Group Systems (ISBT No. 006 and 019), 697
Lewis Blood Group System (ISBT No. 007), 699
Duffy Blood Group System (ISBT No. 008), 700
Kidd Blood Group System (ISBT No. 009), 702
Diego Blood Group System (ISBT No. 010), 703
Cartwright Blood Group System (ISBT No. 011), 704
Xg Blood Group System (ISBT No. 012), 704
Scianna Blood Group System (ISBT No. 013), 705
Dombrock Blood Group System (ISBT No. 014), 706
Colton Blood Group System (ISBT No. 015), 706
LW Blood Group System (ISBT No. 016), 707
Chido/Rodgers Blood Group System (ISBT No. 017), 707
Gerbich Blood Group System (ISBT No. 020), 708
Cromer Blood Group System (ISBT No. 021), 709
Knops Blood Group System (ISBT No. 022), 710
Indian Blood Group System (ISBT No. 023), 710
OK Blood Group System (ISBT No. 024), 711
RAPH Blood Group System (ISBT No. 025), 712
JMH Blood Group System (ISBT No. 026), 712
I Blood Group System (ISBT No. 027), 712
GIL Blood Group System (ISBT No. 029), 713
JR Blood Group System (ISBT No. 032), 714
LAN Blood Group System (ISBT No. 033), 714
VEL Blood Group System (ISBT No. 034), 714
CD59 Blood Group System (ISBT No. 035), 714

IMMUNOHEMATOLOGY TESTS AND PROCEDURES, 715
Basic Principles—Hemagglutination, 715
The Antihuman Globulin Test, 716
Compatibility Testing, 719
Antibody Detection, 722
Special Antibody Identification Techniques, 726
Investigation of Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia, 731

POSITIVE DIRECT ANTIGLOBULIN TESTS AND HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA INDUCED BY MEDICATION, 733
Stimulation of Red Cell Autoantibody Production, 734

SELECTED REFERENCES, 734

KEY POINTS

- Blood group antigens play a variety of physiologic roles as membrane structures involved in maintaining erythrocyte cytoskeleton integrity, as well as in membrane transport, cell signaling, and immune complement regulation, and as receptors/modulators of disease.
- The ABO histo-blood group antigens are widely expressed throughout the body and are the single most important blood group for selection and transfusion of blood products, as well as a major consideration in solid organ and bone marrow transplantation.
- The recipient immune response to exposure to foreign red cell antigens through transfusion or pregnancy may include antibody production and complement activation, resulting in hemolysis (e.g., transfusion reaction, hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn).
- Pretransfusion and perinatal blood testing is performed to prevent transfusion reactions and hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn, and must include the key serologic evaluations of ABO and Rh antigen typing, antibody detection/identification, and crossmatching.
- Antihuman globulin reagents as used in direct or indirect testing are integral to virtually all red cell antibody detection and identification techniques.
- Patients with complex serologic problems, such as antibodies to high-frequency antigens and autoantibodies, may require utilization of a variety of special immunohematologic studies (enzymes, adsorption, elution) to identify compatible blood for transfusion.

BASIC IMMUNOHEMATOLOGIC CONCEPTS

The term *immunohematology* refers to the serologic, genetic, biochemical, and molecular study of antigens associated with membrane structures on the cellular constituents of blood, as well as the immunologic properties and reactions of blood components and constituents. Fundamental discoveries in the area of immunohematology have played an integral role in the development of transfusion medicine, which includes the transfusion of blood, its components, and its derivatives (see Chapter 36). In this integrated relationship, immunohematologists perform and interpret a wide variety of serologic and molecular assays to aid in the diagnosis, prevention, and management of immunization associated with transfusion, pregnancy, and organ transplantation. Over the years, research in the field of immunohematology has contributed significantly to the fundamental understanding of human genetics and immunology, with broad applications to membrane physiology and function, epidemiology, anthropology, and forensic science.

BLOOD GROUP ANTIGENS

The term *blood group* refers not only to genetically encoded erythrocyte antigens but also to the immunologic diversity expressed by other blood constituents, including leukocytes, platelets, and plasma. Most blood group genes, with few exceptions, are located on the autosomal chromosomes and are inherited following Mendelian rules of inheritance. A majority of blood group alleles demonstrate codominance as well, meaning that genetic heterozygotes at a particular locus will express both gene products.

Many membrane-associated structures on blood cells may be defined as antigens because they have the capability of reacting with a complementary antibody or cell receptor. A majority of these antigens are also immunogens, in that they are able to elicit an antibody-mediated immunologic response in a responsive host. Each antigen may have a variety of different epitopes or specific antigenic determinants. Epitopes are discrete, immunologically active regions of the antigen, whose molecular configuration can interact with specific lymphocyte membrane receptors or secreted complementary antibody. Clinically, about a dozen antigen systems are significant and are commonly encountered on the transfusion service. In general, these antigens demonstrate polymorphic epitopes with varied distribution, often along racial or ethnic lines, in the population. Patients who lack certain antigens may form antibodies when exposed to them, and these antibodies may be detected on routine testing in the blood bank.

Immunogenicity

The ability of an antigen to elicit an immune response is known as its *immunogenicity*. The immunogenicity of an antigen is determined not only by certain innate characteristics of the antigen itself but also by the host's genetically determined immune responsiveness. Characteristics of antigens that determine their immunogenicity include degree of foreignness; molecular size and configuration, which may change with temperature, pH, and ionic environment; and antigenic complexity, as measured by the number of available epitopes or antigenic determinants.

Blood group antigens vary greatly in their ability to elicit an immune response. The A, B, and RhD antigens are certainly the most immunogenic; thus all blood transfused must be matched for these antigens between the blood donor and the recipient. Approximately 50% to 75% of D-negative individuals would produce anti-D if transfused with only one unit of D-positive blood. After the D antigen, K is the next most immunogenic, followed by Fy^a and common Rh antigens, based on the frequency with which their corresponding antibodies are encountered. Using the same criteria, other common blood group antigens such as Fy^b, Jk^a, Jk^b, and s are much less immunogenic. The relative immunogenicities of some clinically important red cell antigens are listed in Table 35-1.

Chemical Characteristics

The chemical composition, complexity, and molecular size of an antigen determine most of its physical and biological properties, including immunogenicity. As a general rule, pure polysaccharides are not immunogenic except in certain species such as humans and mice (Virella & Bierer, 2001). Pure lipid and nucleic acids are not immunogenic but can be antigenic because they can serve as haptens. Haptens are well-defined chemical groupings that are too small to be immunogenic by themselves but can induce an antibody response when attached to a carrier protein.

Although pure protein may be immunogenic, the most potent immunogens are usually complex macromolecular glycoproteins and lipoproteins. Thus it is not surprising that red blood cell (RBC) antigens are glycoproteins, lipoproteins, and glycolipids. Experiments with peptide chain polymers have shown that aromatic amino acids, such as tyrosine and phenylalanine, can contribute significantly to overall immunogenicity (Virella & Bierer, 2001). In glycoproteins, immunogenicity may also be influenced by the extent of branching in the polysaccharide side chains. Whereas the immunogenicity of an antigen relates to the total complex molecular structure, the areas where antigen combines with specific antibody (i.e., the epitopes) are usually limited to one or a few simple structures (terminal sugars, amino acids) exposed on the exterior, mobile surface of the molecule. These are often referred to as *immunodominant structures* because they determine the specificity and optimal binding energy of antigen–antibody interactions.

Antigen Density

The number of antigenic sites on a foreign substance, whether a complex molecule or a cell, will contribute to the strength of an immunologic response. Studies of blood group antigens have demonstrated that antigen density contributes to the efficiency of antibody binding and the extent of complement activation, thus determining the likelihood of RBC hemolysis.

Various techniques have been used over the years to determine the number of copies of specific blood group antigens on the RBC membrane. Historically, radioimmunoassay, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, electron microscopy using ferritin-labeled anti-immunoglobulin, and flow cytometry have been used to indirectly calculate the number of antigen sites on RBC membranes. Table 35-2 lists the estimated densities of common RBC antigens.

BLOOD GROUP ALLOANTIBODIES AND AUTOANTIBODIES

A majority of clinically significant blood group antibodies are IgG or IgM, although occasionally an IgA antibody is encountered. Blood group antibodies are usually classified as (1) an *alloantibody*, which reacts with a foreign antigen not present on the patient's own erythrocytes, or (2) an *autoantibody*, which reacts with an antigen on the patient's own cells. RBC autoantibodies are discussed later in this chapter.

TABLE 35-1
Relative Immunogenicity of Selected Clinically Important Blood Group Antigens*

Antigen	Relative Potency	Antigen	Relative Potency
D	0.70	K	0.10
C	0.041	E	0.0338
k	0.030	e	0.0112
Fy^a	0.0046	C	0.0022
Jk^a	0.0014	S	0.0008
Jk^b	0.0006	s	0.0006

*These figures represent the approximate percentage of persons negative for a specific antigen who, if transfused with one unit of corresponding antigen-positive blood, would develop antibodies to that specific antigen. When the relative potency of K antigen is 0.1, as estimated by Kornstad and Heisto (1958), the relative potency of other blood groups can be estimated as shown by Klein and Anstee (2006).

TABLE 35-2
Number of Membrane Sites for Selected Native Erythrocyte Antigens Estimated by Radioimmunoassay*

Antigen	Phenotype	Number of Antigenic Sites	Antigen	Phenotype	Number of Antigenic Sites
A	A_1 adult	$810\text{-}1170 \times 10^3$	D	DCce	$9.9\text{-}14.6 \times 10^3$
	Newborn	$250\text{-}370 \times 10^3$		Dce	$12\text{-}20 \times 10^3$
	A_2 adult	$240\text{-}290 \times 10^3$		DcEe	$14\text{-}16.6 \times 10^3$
	Newborn	140×10^3		DCe	$14.5\text{-}19.3 \times 10^3$
	A_1B adult	$460\text{-}850 \times 10^3$		DcE	$15.5\text{-}33.3 \times 10^3$
	Newborn	220×10^3		DCcEe	$23\text{-}21 \times 10^3$
	A_2B adult	140×10^3		D– –	$110\text{-}202 \times 10^3$
B	B adult	750×10^3		Weak D (D^u)	$0.8\text{-}3 \times 10^3$
	A_1B adult	430×10^3	c	c+C–	$70\text{-}85 \times 10^3$
I	I+	500×10^3		c+C+	$37\text{-}53 \times 10^3$
K	K+k–	6.1×10^3	e	e+E–	$18.2\text{-}24.4 \times 10^3$
	K+k+	3.5×10^3		e+E+	$13.4\text{-}14.5 \times 10^3$
			E	e–E+	$0.45\text{-}25.6 \times 10^3$

*Figures taken from Klein and Anstee (2006).

Some alloantibodies to erythrocyte antigens are called *naturally occurring*—that is, the antigenic stimulus is unknown. Naturally occurring antibodies may appear regularly in the serum of persons who lack the corresponding antigen, such as in the ABO blood group system. Other naturally occurring antibodies are produced only in a small subset of individuals.

Most blood group alloantibodies are produced as the result of immunization to foreign erythrocyte antigens by exposure through transfusion of blood components or through pregnancy. Alloantibodies to RBCs frequently require the selection of specific antigen-negative components for transfusion. Identification of alloantibodies and selection of compatible blood components remain the most important functions of a transfusion medicine service.

THE COMPLEMENT SYSTEM AND BLOOD BANKING

Complement plays a key role in the pathophysiology of hemolysis through its involvement in the sensitization and destruction of transfused RBCs by alloantibody or the destruction of autologous RBCs by autoantibody. Complement is also important in immunohematologic testing.

Role of Complement in Erythrocyte Destruction

Antibody binding to RBC antigens is the most common reason for complement activation on the RBC membrane in vivo. Complement may also be activated on RBCs via a carrier–hapten antibody complex such as penicillin-coated RBCs and antipenicillin antibodies. Complement components may also be attached to the membrane via a nonspecific mechanism induced by certain drugs, or when erythrocytes are innocent bystanders in another immune reaction.

RBC–antibody complexes usually activate complement by the classical pathway. However, the mode of destruction and the extent of RBC hemolysis depend primarily on the class of Ig involved and the activity of an individual's reticuloendothelial (RE) system.

Intravascular Hemolysis

Intravascular RBC hemolysis is usually caused by antibodies directed against the ABO antigens. Rarely, other IgM blood group antibodies, as well as some complement-fixing IgG antibodies (e.g., anti-Kidd antibodies), can induce intravascular hemolysis. Intravascular lysis occurs when large amounts of complement are rapidly activated, resulting in complete activation of the complement cascade with assembly of the terminal membrane attack complex (C5b6789). This complex polymerizes to form pores in the RBC membrane, so extracellular fluid enters the cell, causing it to swell and burst by osmotic lysis.

Extravascular Hemolysis

IgG antibodies cause the majority of extravascular hemolysis via the RE system, which removes complement-coated RBCs. When IgG antibodies bind RBCs and activate complement, complement regulatory proteins generally stop the activation process at the C3/C4 level. RBC-bound C3b is degraded to iC3b, which is enzymatically inactive, by factor I and factor H. iC3b is further degraded to C3c and C3dg by factor I and CR1, a cofactor and C3b/C4b receptor (Freedman & Semple, 1994) (Fig. 35-1). Decay accelerating factor (DAF) participates by inhibiting C3 convertase (C4b2b) formation and by promoting C3 convertase degradation. On RBCs, CR1 and DAF carry the Knops and Cromer blood group antigens, respectively.

Initially, C3b/iC3b-coated RBCs are rapidly sequestered in the liver by monocytes and macrophages, which have receptors for C3b (Table 35-3). Although phagocytic cells also have receptors for C4b, the role, if any, of C4b in immune hemolysis of erythrocytes is not defined (Freedman & Semple, 1994). A portion of the RBCs sequestered in the liver are immobilized and destroyed by phagocytosis with a half-life of about 2 minutes (Klein & Anstee, 2006). Within 15 to 20 minutes, however, destruction slows, and many of the cells escape extravascular destruction through the action of the complement regulatory protein, factor I, as previously described. C3dg, the iC3b fragment produced by factor I cleavage, remains attached to RBCs but has no enzymatic or opsonic properties. As a result, sequestered C3dg-coated RBCs are released back into the circulation and survive normally (see Fig. 35-1). In the circulation, C3dg is cleaved, leaving C3d attached to the RBC membrane.

In the absence of complement activation, IgG-coated RBCs are removed by phagocytic cells via Fcγ receptors. Although phagocytosis is not complement dependent, Mollison (1989) demonstrated that RBCs coated with both IgG and complement tend to show accelerated removal

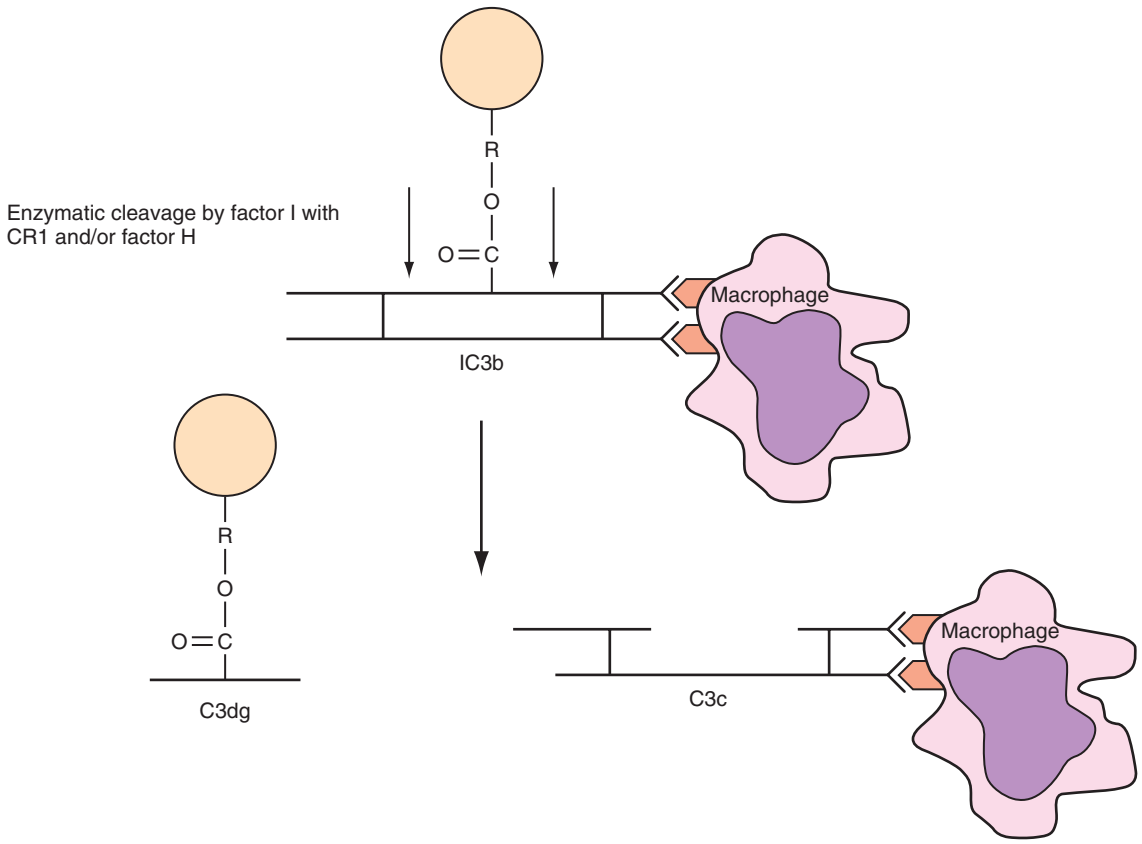


Figure 35-1 Action of factor I in the release of C3b-coated erythrocytes from reticuloendothelial system sequestration.

TABLE 35-3
Complement Receptors on Human Cells

Receptor	Ligand	Distribution
CR1 (CD35)	C3b, C4b	Erythrocytes, neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, B lymphocytes, follicular dendritic cells
CR2 (CD21)	C3d, C3dg, iC3b	B cells
CR3 (CD11b/CD18)*	iC3b	Monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, natural killer cells
CR4 (CD11c/CD18)*	iC3b	

*Members of the integrin receptor family.

by the liver, whereas RBCs coated only with IgG tend to be destroyed more slowly in the spleen, displaying a linear pattern of removal with a minimum half-life of 20 minutes. Theoretically, RBCs coated only with IgG antibody could also be the targets of antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity mechanisms (Klein & Anstee, 2006), because natural killer cells possess Fcγ receptors.

ERYTHROCYTE ANTIGENS AND ANTIBODIES

More than 700 erythrocyte antigens have been reported in the literature and have been organized into 35 blood group systems by the International Society of Blood Transfusion (ISBT) (Table 35-4). Many described erythrocyte antigens are high-frequency or public antigens expressed by most donors (>90% to 99%), whereas others are extremely rare (private antigens). In the following section, we review the more common RBC antigens

TABLE 35-4
Terminology for Blood Group System Genes and Gene Products

TRADITIONAL NOMENCLATURE		ISBT NOMENCLATURE		ISGN NOMENCLATURE		
Name	**Symbol**	**Symbol**	**Number**	**Gene**	**Chromosome**	**Gene Product Name**
ABO	ABO	ABO	001	*ABO*	9q34.1	α1,3 *N*-acetyl-galactosaminyltransferase (A antigen) α1,3-galactosyltransferase (B antigen)
MNS	MNS	MNS	002	*GYPA* *GYPB* *GYPE*	4q28.2	Glycophorin A (CD235 A) Glycophorin B (CD235B) Glycophorin E (CD235E)
P1Pk	P1	P1	003	*A4GALT1*	22q13	P1 antigen
Rh	Rh	RHD RHCE	004	*RHD* *RHCE*	1p36.1	RhD protein (CD240) RhCE protein
Lutheran	Lu	LU	005	*LU*	19q13.3	Lutheran glycoprotein, B-CAM
Kell	K	KEL	006	*KEL*	7q34	Kell glycoprotein
Lewis	Le	LE	007	*FUT3*	19p13.3	α-3/4-fucosyltransferase
Duffy	Fy	FY	008	*DARC*	1q23	Duffy-associated receptor cytokine glycoprotein
Kidd	Jk	JK	009	*SLC14A1*	18q12	Urea transporter (HUT11)
Diego	Di	DI	010	*SLC4A1*	17q21.3	Anion exchanger 1 (AE1, Band 3)
Yt	Yt	YT	011	*ACHE*	7q22	Acetylcholinesterase
Xg	Xg	XG	012	*XG*	Xp22.3	Xg glycoprotein (CD99)
Scianna	Sc	SC	013	*ERMAP*	1p34	Human erythroid membrane–associated protein
Dombrock	Do	DO	014	*ART4*	12p13.2	ADP-ribosyltransferase (CD297)
Colton	Co	CO	015	*AQPI*	7p14	Aquaporin-1 (CHIP)
Landsteiner-Wiener	LW	LW	016	*LW*	19p13.3	ICAM (CD242)
Chido/Rodgers	Ch/Rg	CH/RG	017	*C4A, C4B*	6p21.3	C4A, C4B complement glycoproteins
Hh	Hh	H	018	*FUT1*	19q13.3	α1,2-fucosyltransferase
Kx	Kx	XK	019	*XK*	Xp21.1	Kx glycoprotein
Gerbich	Ge	GE	020	*GYPC*	2q14	Glycophorin C and glycophorin D (CD236)
Cromer	Cromer	CROM	021	*DAF*	1q32	Decay-accelerating factor (CD55)
Knops	Kn	KN	022	*CR1*	1q32	Complement receptor 1 (CD35)
Indian	In	IN	023	*CD44*	11p13	CD44
Ok	Ok	OK	024	*CD147*	19p13.3	CD147Basigin
Raph	Raph	RAPH	025	*CD151*	11p15.5	Tetraspanin (CD151)
John Milton Hagen	JMH	JMH	026	*SEMA7A*	15q24.3	Semaphorin (CD108)
I	I	I	027	*GCNT2*	6p24.2	β1,6 *N*-acetylglucosaminyltransferase
Globoside	P(Gb4)	GLOB	028	*B3GALNT1*	3q26	β1,3 *N*-acetylgalactosaminyltransferase
GIL	Gill	GIL	029	*AQP3*	9p13	Aquaglyceroporin
RHAG	RHAg	RHAG	030	*RhAG*	6p21-qter	Rh-associated glycoprotein (CD241)
Forssman	Fors	FORS	031	*GBGT1*	9q34.13	α1,3 *N*-acetylgalactosaminyltransferase
Jr	Jr	JR	032	*ABCG2*	4q22	ATP-binding cassette, G family
Lan	Lan	LAN	033	*ABCB6*	2q36	ATP-binding cassette, B family
Vel	Vel	VEL	034	*SMIM1*	1p36.32	Small integral membrane protein 1
CD59	CD59	CD59	035	*CD59*	11p13	Membrane inhibitor of reactive lysis

From Daniels (2002), Daniels et al (2004), Reid & Lomas-Francis (2012), and the International Society of Blood Transfusion.
ADP, Adenosine diphosphate; *CHIP,* channel-forming integral protein; *ICAM,* intercellular adhesion molecule; *ISBT,* International Society of Blood Transfusion; *ISGN,* International Society for Gene Nomenclature.

TABLE 35-5
Serologic Characteristics and Clinical Significance of Red Cell Alloantibodies

Antibody	Usual Ig Class	MOST COMMON PHASE OF REACTIVITY			CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE		APPROXIMATE % OF COMPATIBLE DONORS	
		Sal	Alb	AGT	HTR	HDFN	Caucasian	Black
D	IgG	Few	X	X	Yes	Yes	15	8
C	IgG		X	X	Yes	Yes	30	68
E	IgG	Few	X	X	Yes	Yes	70	98
c	IgG		X	X	Yes	Yes	20	1
e	IgG		X	X	Yes	Yes	2	2
Cw	IgG/IgM	Some	X	X	Yes	Yes	98	100
K	IgG	Rare		X	Yes	Yes	91	97
k	IgGX				Yes	Yes	0.2	0.1
Kp^a	IgG	Rare		X	Yes	Yes	98	99.9
Kp^b	IgG		X		Yes	Yes	<0.1	0.1
Js^a	IgG		X		Yes	Yes	>99.9	81
Js^b	IgG		X		Yes	Yes	<0.1	1
Fy^a	IgG		X		Yes	Yes	34	90
Fy^b	IgG		X		Yes	Yes	17	77
Jk^a	IgG		X		Yes	Yes	23	9
Jk^b	IgG		X		Yes	Yes	28	5
M*	IgM	X			Few	Yes	22	30
N	IgM	X			Rare	Rare	28	26
S	IgG/IgM		Some	X	Yes	Yes	45	69
s	IgG			X	Yes	Yes	11	3
U	IgG			X	Yes	Yes	0	1
$Lu^{a\dagger}$	IgM	X			?	Yes	92	96
$Lu^{b\dagger}$	IgG		X		Yes	Mild	<0.1	<0.1
P1‡	IgM	X	Some		Rare	No	21	6
P	IgM	X	Some	Some	Probable	Yes	<0.1	0.1
$PP_1P^{k\dagger}$	IgG/IgM	X	Some	Some	Probable	Yes	<0.1	0.1
$Le^{a\ddagger}$	IgM	X	Some		Yes	No	78	77
$Le^{b\ddagger}$	IgM	X			Yes	No	28	45
I	IgM	X	Few		Rare	No	<0.1	<0.1
i	IgM	X	Few		?	No	<0.1	<0.1

AGT, Antihuman globulin test*; Alb,* albumin; *HDFN,* hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn; *HTR,* hemolytic transfusion reaction; *Sal,* saline.
*Most examples of anti-M also have a small but significant IgG component.
†Exhibits characteristic mixed-field agglutination pattern.
‡May occasionally show in vitro hemolysis.

and antibodies encountered on the transfusion service. Table 35-5 summarizes several commonly encountered RBC alloantibodies according to their Ig class, serologic phase of detection, clinical significance, and statistics on finding compatible blood.

ABO AND H BLOOD GROUP SYSTEMS (ISBT NO. 001 AND 018)

Originally discovered in 1900, the ABO blood group system is the single most important blood group for the selection and transfusion of blood. As histo-blood group antigens, ABO epitopes are found on many tissues and body fluids, including RBCs, platelets, and endothelial cells (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). Because they are so widely expressed, ABO antigens are a major consideration in solid organ and bone marrow transplantation (Rowley et al, 2011).

The ABO blood group system consists of two antigens—A and B—and four phenotypes—groups A, B, AB, and O. A and B are autosomal codominant antigens (ISTB No. 001) and are expressed on group A, B, and AB red cells, respectively. In contrast, the group O phenotype is an autosomal recessive phenotype, reflecting the absence of a functional ABO gene. Group O individuals express the H antigen (ISBT No. 018), the biosynthetic precursor of both A and B antigens (Fig. 35-2). Group O is the most frequent ABO phenotype in most populations tested, particularly among Native Americans. Expression of ABO antigens on RBCs is usually accompanied by the presence of naturally occurring antibodies against the missing antithetical antigen(s). Table 35-6 shows the serologic reactions and frequencies of the four major ABO phenotypes.

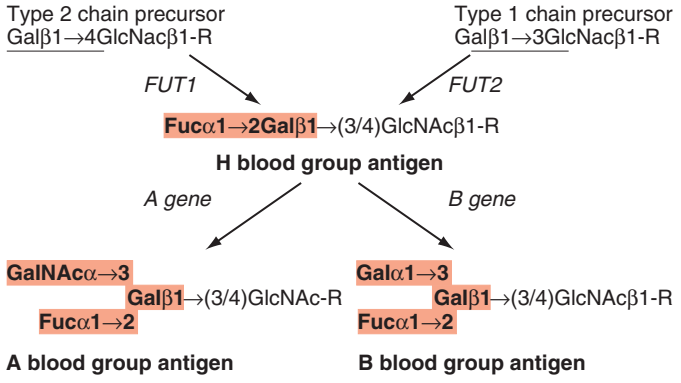


Figure 35-2 Synthesis of type 1 and type 2 chain H and AB antigens. Type 1 chain and type 2 chain precursors *(underlined)* are fucosylated by *FUT1* and *FUT2* fucosyltransferases to form H antigen. H antigen then serves as a substrate for *A* and *B* glycosyltransferases. The terminal carbohydrate epitopes denoting blood group H, A, and B antigens are highlighted in amber. *Fuc,* Fucose; *Gal,* galactose; *GalNAc, N*-acetylgalactosamine; *R,* other oligosaccharide.

Null and Weak Phenotypes

The ABO system also contains several phenotypes associated with weakened, anomalous, or complete absence of ABO antigen expression. The most common ABO subtypes encountered in the blood bank are A_1 and A_2. A_1 red cells are distinguished from A_2 (and other weak A subtypes) by

TABLE 35-6

Routine ABO Grouping Results and Phenotype Frequencies

CELLS AGAINST KNOWN ANTISERA		SERUM AGAINST RED CELLS OF KNOWN PHENOTYPE				FREQUENCIES IN U.S. POPULATION, %			
Anti-A	**Anti-B**	**A**	**B**	**O**	**Interpretation**	**Caucasian**	**Black**	**Native American**	**Asian**
–	–	+	+	–	O	45	49	79	40
+	–	–	+	–	A	40	27	16	28
–	+	+	–	–	B	11	20	4	27
+	+	–	–	–	AB	4	4	<1	5
–	–	+	+	+	Bombay	rare	rare	rare	rare

Composite figures calculated from Mourant et al (1976).

agglutination with the lectin *Dolichos biflorus*. Comparison of A_1, A_2, and other weak A subtypes indicates both quantitative and qualitative differences in A antigen expression (Issitt & Anstee, 1998; Swensson et al, 2005). A_2 is the most commonly encountered weak subtype in whites, accounting for nearly 20% of all group A donors. The ABO system contains additional weak A and weak B phenotypes, including several that can cause ABO discrepancies during routine testing (Fung, 2014).

Anomalous ABO expression can be inherited (*cis*-AB, B[A]) or acquired (acquired B). In the *cis*-AB phenotype, A and B antigens are synthesized by the same enzyme and are inherited as a single, autosomal dominant allele. Likewise, the B(A) phenotype, an autosomal dominant phenotype characterized by trace A antigen expression on group B RBCs, is due to synthesis of A antigen by the *B*-gene enzyme. The acquired B phenotype, on the other hand, is an acquired enzymatic modification of group A_1 red cells in vivo. The acquired B phenotype usually occurs in the setting of bacterial infection or cancer and reflects enzymatic deacetylation of group A antigen to form a B-like antigen on RBCs. The *cis*-AB, B(A), and acquired B phenotypes are usually detected because of discrepancies in ABO typing (Issitt & Anstee, 1998; Fung, 2014).

Bombay and para-Bombay are two rare null phenotypes characterized by an absence of all ABH antigens on RBCs. In the classic Bombay phenotype (O_h), neither AB nor H antigens are present on RBCs or in secretions. Para-Bombay also shows few or no ABH antigens on RBCs, sometimes accompanied by normal expression of ABH antigens in secretions and body fluids.

Biochemistry

The ABO antigens are carbohydrate antigens and, therefore, represent a posttranslation modification of glycoproteins and glycolipids. On RBC glycoproteins and polylactosaminylceramides, ABO antigens are usually expressed on type 2 chain oligosaccharides, characterized by repeating lactosaminyl (Galβ1–4GlcNAcβ1–3)$_n$ motifs (see Fig. 35-2). On glycosphingolipids, ABO antigens can be expressed on multiple (type 1, 2, 3, and 4 chain) oligosaccharide precursors. ABH antigens expressed on RBC glycoproteins and most glycosphingolipids (type 2, 3, and 4 chain) are of RBC origin. In contrast, type 1 chain ABO antigens are synthesized by gastrointestinal mucosa, secreted into plasma, and passively adsorbed onto red cell membranes. Synthesis of type 1 chain ABO antigens is linked to the Lewis blood group system.

The first step in the synthesis of ABH antigens is the synthesis of the H or group O antigen, the immediate biosynthetic precursor of both A and B antigens. The H antigen is formed by the addition of fucose (Fuc), in an α1–2 linkage, to a terminal galactose. This reaction is catalyzed by two different enzymes, depending on whether the fucose is being added to a type 1 or type 2 chain oligosaccharide acceptor. Fucosyltransferase type 1 (*FUT1*), the product of the H or *FUT1* gene, catalyzes the formation of type 2 chain H antigen. In contrast, fucosyltransferase type 2 (*FUT2*), the product of the *Secretor* gene, catalyzes the transfer of fucose to type 1 chain precursors to form type 1 chain H or Le^d antigen (Lowe, 1994). Inactivating mutations in *FUT1* are responsible for the Bombay and para-Bombay phenotypes (Kelly et al, 1994). Bombay and para-Bombay nonsecretors also have inactivating mutations in *FUT2* (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Once H antigen is formed, it can serve as a substrate for *A* gene and *B* gene glycosyltransferases. The A antigen is formed by *A* gene (*ABO*A*) glycosyltransferase, which adds an *N*-acetylgalactosamine (GalNAc), in an α1–3 linkage, to the subterminal galactose of H antigen. Likewise, the B antigen is formed by the addition of an α1–3 galactose (Gal) to the same galactose by the *B* gene (*ABO*B*) glycosyltransferase. Biochemically, the A and B antigens are very similar, differing only by the presence of an *N*-acetyl group. It is fascinating that such a minor chemical modification should have such profound immunologic consequences. Removal of the *N*-acetyl group on A antigen by circulating deacetylase enzymes is responsible for the acquired B phenotype (Issitt & Anstee, 1998).

TABLE 35-7

Key Amino Acids in Distinguishing A, B, and Hybrid Glycosyltransferases*

	AMINO ACID NUMBER OF A/B GLYCOSYLTRANSFERASE					
ABO Allele	**176**	**234**	**235**	**266**	**268**	**Gene Type†**
ABO*A.01	Arg	Pro	Gly	Leu	Gly	AAAA
ABO*B.01	Gly	Pro	Ser	Met	Ala	BBBB
ABO*cisAB.01	Arg	Pro	Gly	Leu	**Ala**	AAAB
ABO*cisAB.04	**Gly**	Pro	Gly	**Met**	Gly	AABA
ABO*cisAB.02	**Gly**	Pro	**Ser**	Leu	Ala	BBAB
ABO*BA.03	**Gly**	Pro	Gly	**Met**	**Ala**	BABB
ABO*BA.02	**Gly**	**Ala**	**Ser**	**Met**	**Ala**	BBBB
ABO*O.02	Arg	Pro	Gly	Leu	**Arg‡**	AAAX

*Modified from Reid & Lomas-Francis (2004) and Daniels (2002). Amino acids that differ from the *ABO*A.01* (A_1 type) consensus allele are highlighted in bold.

†Gene type refers to amino acid positions 176, 235, 266, and 268. These four positions differ between A (AAAA) and B alleles. Amino acids at 235, 266, and 268 strongly influence substrate specificity. Hybrid glycosyltransferases have amino acids matching both A and B consensus alleles at these positions.

‡*ABO*O.02* allele (historically *O^2*, *O03*), associated with a group O phenotype, possesses an inactivating missense mutation at amino acid 268.

Molecular Biology

FUT1 (*H* gene) and *FUT2* (*Se* gene) are located together on chromosome 19q13.3 and reflect a gene duplication (Lowe, 1994). FUT1 is a 365 amino acid, type II transmembrane glycoprotein, composed of a large, 240 amino acid, carboxy-terminal catalytic domain, which is anchored within the Golgi lumen by a short transmembrane and a cytosolic domain. *FUT1* mRNA is widely expressed in most tissues, with the exception of salivary and parotid glands (Yamamoto et al, 2003). The last is the basis for testing saliva to determine ABH secretor status. ISBT currently lists more than 40 mutant *FUT1* alleles, including 19 null alleles and 23 weak alleles (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

The *ABO* gene locus is located on chromosome 9q34 and encodes the A and B glycosyltransferases (Yamamoto, 1995). The gene is large, spanning 19.5 kb, and contains seven exons, although exons 6 and 7 encode the majority of the active enzyme (66%). The product of the *ABO* gene is a 41-kD, 354 amino acid type II transmembrane glycoprotein. Comparison of A and B enzymes shows nearly 98% identity, differing by four key amino acids at residues 176, 235, 266, and 268 (Table 35-7). Amino acids 235, 266, and 268 are critical in determining A versus B enzyme activity: The polymorphism at 176 is not biologically active. Because both A and B recognize the type 2 chain acceptor, any differences in amino acids 235, 266, and 268 dictate whether the enzyme will recognize UDP-GalNAc or UDP-Gal nucleotide sugar donor. Crystallography data indicate that the amino acids associated with *ABO*A* gene product are smaller and able to accommodate the larger UDP-GalNAc donor. To date, more than 200 ABO alleles have been identified.

The cloning and sequencing of the *ABO* gene locus have also uncovered the molecular basis of group O and weak ABO subtypes. Group O is an autosomal-recessive phenotype due to homozygosity for amorph *ABO* alleles (*ABO*O*). There are many *ABO*O* alleles described to date; however, most ABO alleles can be classified as either O^1 or O^2. Alleles belonging to the O^1 family (*ABO*O1*) share a nucleotide deletion and frameshift (G251D, fs88stop) and account for 95% of all ABO*O alleles. O^2 alleles (*ABO*O2; O03*) carry a G802>A, leading to Gly268Arg in the translated protein (see Table 35-7). O^2 and related alleles (Aw08) have been linked to ABO typing discrepancies by an absence of anti-A and/or anti-B in these individuals (Wagner et al, 2005). It has been suggested that the absence of anti-A or anti-B is the result of weak residual enzyme activity (Seltsam et al, 2005); however, this has not been confirmed (Yazer et al, 2008).

Weak ABO subtypes are the result of mutations at the *ABO* gene locus. Most mutations are located within exon 7, which encodes the catalytic domain of the molecule. The majority of described mutations are single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), although nonsense, frameshift, and translation-initiator mutations are known (Yamamoto, 1995; Seltsam et al, 2006; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). A2, the most common weak A subtype, is the result of a single nucleotide deletion (nucleotide 1060) and frameshift, resulting in the loss of a stop codon and synthesis of a longer A enzyme with decreased enzyme activity. The *cis*-AB and B(A) phenotypes are the consequence of hybrid alleles, with characteristics of both A_1 and *B* gene consensus alleles. cis-AB and B(A) individuals can synthesize both A and B antigens (see Table 35-7) (Yamamoto, 1995; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

ABO Antibodies

Antibodies against ABO antigens are the most important antibodies in transfusion medicine. The practicing pathologist should note that the routine antibody screen does not test for ABO antibodies. All reagent cells in the antibody screen are group O. Patients demonstrate anti-A or anti-B on reverse typing (vide infra). A valid ABO type requires agreement between the forward and reverse types.

In general, ABO antibodies are naturally occurring. It is believed that the immune stimulus for the formation of ABO antibodies may be exposure to ABH-like substances found in nature, particularly on the bacterial polysaccharides (Cooling, 2015). It is interesting that ABO titers have progressively decreased over the past 2 decades with increasing consumption of pasteurized, commercially packaged foods that are relatively sterile (Mazda et al, 2007). This trend may be reversed with increasing use of probiotic nutritional supplements that contain live bacteria. The latter have been shown to stimulate ABO antibodies, with marked increases in ABO titers within several months (Daniel-Johnson et al, 2009).

ABO antibodies are weak or absent in the sera of newborns until 3 to 6 months of age. Adult levels of ABO antibodies are reached by 5 to 10 years of age and decrease only slightly with advancing age (Auf der Maur et al, 1993). Anti-A,B is found exclusively in group O individuals and appears to recognize an epitope common to both A and B antigens. Before the development of anti-A and anti-B monoclonal antibody typing reagents, anti-A,B was useful in identifying weak and B subgroups. Anti-A,B is still used for typing donor units and cord samples (see ABO Grouping section).

In general, ABO antibodies are detected as room temperature, saline agglutinins with optimal reactivity at 4° C (see Table 35-5). Most naturally occurring ABO antibodies are of IgM isotype, although IgA and IgG antibodies with ABO specificity are also present (Rieben et al, 1991). ABO IgG antibodies, reactive at 37° C, can also occur following immune stimulation by transfusion or pregnancy. These antibodies generally are of higher titer and are less readily neutralized by soluble blood group substances. ABO antibodies can fix complement and can cause hemolysis in vivo and in vitro.

Clinically, ABO antibodies are a cause of hemolytic transfusion reactions and hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN). ABO antibodies are also a cause of acute rejection in solid organ transplantation. As a result, solid organ transplants should be ABO compatible with the recipient's sera. Rare exceptions to the latter are heart transplantation in children younger than 6 to 8 months of age, who have not yet developed ABO antibodies (West & Platt, 2010), and transplantation of A_2 organs, which have very weak ABO expression on epithelium and vascular endothelium (Hurst et al, 2010). In ABO-incompatible bone marrow transplantation, ABO antibodies can result in hemolysis and a delay in erythroid and megakaryocyte engraftment (Rowley et al, 2011; Cooling & Gorlin, 2012). For additional information on ABO-incompatible marrow and organ transplants, see the section on Antibody Titers.

Less Common ABO Antibodies

Anti-A_1. Anti-A_1 is a naturally occurring antibody found in the sera of some A_2, A_2B, and other weak A subtypes. Anti-A_1 hemagglutinates A_1 RBCs, but not A_2 and other weak A phenotypes. Although uncommon, anti-A_1 has been implicated in transfusion reactions and solid organ rejection.

Anti-H. Anti-H is usually a benign, naturally occurring antibody in the sera of A_1 and A_1B nonsecretors. Anti-H reacts most strongly with group O erythrocytes, followed by A_2, B, A_2B, A_1, and A_1B (see Table 35-41). Because H antigen is present to some degree on all RBCs, anti-H is an autoantibody in most individuals. In contrast, alloanti-H is a clinically significant alloantibody in Bombay (O_h) and para-Bombay individuals. These individuals require transfusion of rare O_h red cells.

Biological Role

The biological role of ABH antigens is still not known. Multiple studies have linked specific ABO types with a higher incidence of many diseases, including autoimmune, neoplastic, and infectious disorders. A and B antigen expression may stabilize the clustering and spatial organization of sialoglycoproteins (Cohen et al, 2009). Depression of A and B antigen expression can occur in malignancy and is often associated with increased metastatic potential. Group A,B and AB individuals also have a twofold higher risk of thrombotic events, including venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism (Franchini & Mannucci, 2014). This may correlate to ABO differences in circulating von Willebrand factor, LDL, cholesterol, and P- and E-selectin. *Plasmodium falciparum* has been shown to bind A and B antigens with rosette formation, a possible risk factor in cerebral malaria (Cooling, 2015). Group O is a receptor for many gastrointestinal pathogens, including norovirus, rotavirus, *H. pylori*, *C. jejuni*, and *V. cholerae* El Tor (Cooling, 2015). Group O may be protective against some infections due to anti-A and anti-B, including some enveloped viruses (HIV, SARS-CoV), schistosomiasis, *E. coli*, and other gram-negative organisms (Cooling, 2015).

MNS BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 002)

Discovered in 1927, the MNSs blood group was the second blood group system identified after ABO. Today, the MNSs blood group system consists of more than 46 antigens, although only four (M/N and S/s) are commonly encountered in the clinical setting (Reid, 2009). As shown in Table 35-8, the M and N antigens are fairly evenly distributed in both blacks and Caucasians, with approximately 25% of donors homozygous for M or N antigen. In contrast, the S antigen is nearly twice as frequent in Caucasians (57%) as in blacks (30%). In a minority (<1%) of blacks, an S–s– or null phenotype can be observed. As with Rh antigens, the MNSs blood group antigens are expressed only on RBCs. Approximately 1 million M/N and 170,000 to 250,000 S/s epitopes are present per RBC.

Null Phenotypes

Three major null phenotypes are present in the MNSs system: U–, M^k, and En (a–). The U– phenotype is the most common and is observed exclusively in blacks. In S–s–U– individuals, complete loss or a recombination of glycophorin B occurs, leading to altered expression of S/s and U antigens. Recombinant glycophorin B, such as the Henshaw phenotype, can react weakly with some examples of human anti-U and are known as U variants ($S–s–U^{var}$). The En (a–) phenotype is the result of recombination between glycophorin *A* and *B* genes to form a Lepore-type A-B hybrid (exons A1-B2-B5) lacking most of glycophorin A (GYPA). The M^kM^k phenotype lacks all MNSs antigens, including En(a), as the result of recombination and deletion of glycophorins A and B (GYPA and GYPB). Loss of GYPA can coincide with loss of Wr^b expression, an antigen on Band 3. It is believed that Wr^b requires an electrostatic interaction between a glutamic acid (Glu658) on Band 3 and the ENEP antigen on glycophorin A (Poole et al, 1999).

Biochemistry

The M/N antigens reside on GYPA (CD235A), a major RBC membrane glycoprotein. In the membrane, GYPA is present as a dimer, usually in association with Band 3, the erythrocyte anion exchanger (Burton & Bruce, 2011). Following cleavage of a 19 amino acid leader sequence, the mature GYPA is a 31-kD, 131 amino acid, type 1 glycoprotein composed of a large, 72 amino acid extracellular domain, a transmembrane domain, and a short cytoplasmic tail (Fig. 35-3). The molecule is heavily glycosylated, possessing 15 *O*-linked and one *N*-linked carbohydrate side chain. The *O*-linked glycans consist predominantly of a disialotetrasaccharide linked

TABLE 35-8

Phenotypes of the MNSs System

GLYCOPHORIN A ANTIGENS			GLYCOPHORIN B ANTIGENS					PHENOTYPE FREQUENCIES, %	
M	**N**	**En (a)**	**"N"**	**S**	**s**	**U**	**Phenotype**	**Caucasian**	**Black**
+	0	+					M+N–	28	26
+	+	+					M+N+	50	44
0	+	+					M–N+	22	30
			+	+	0	+	S+s–U+	11	3
			+	+	+	+	S+s+U+	44	28
			+	0	+	+	S–s+U+	45	69
Null Phenotypes									
0	0	0	+	+/0	+/0	+	En (a–)	Rare	Rare
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	M^kM^k	Rare	Rare
			0	0	0	0	S–s–U–	Rare	<1
			0	0	0	wk+	$S–s–U^{var}$ (23% Henshaw+)	Rare	<1

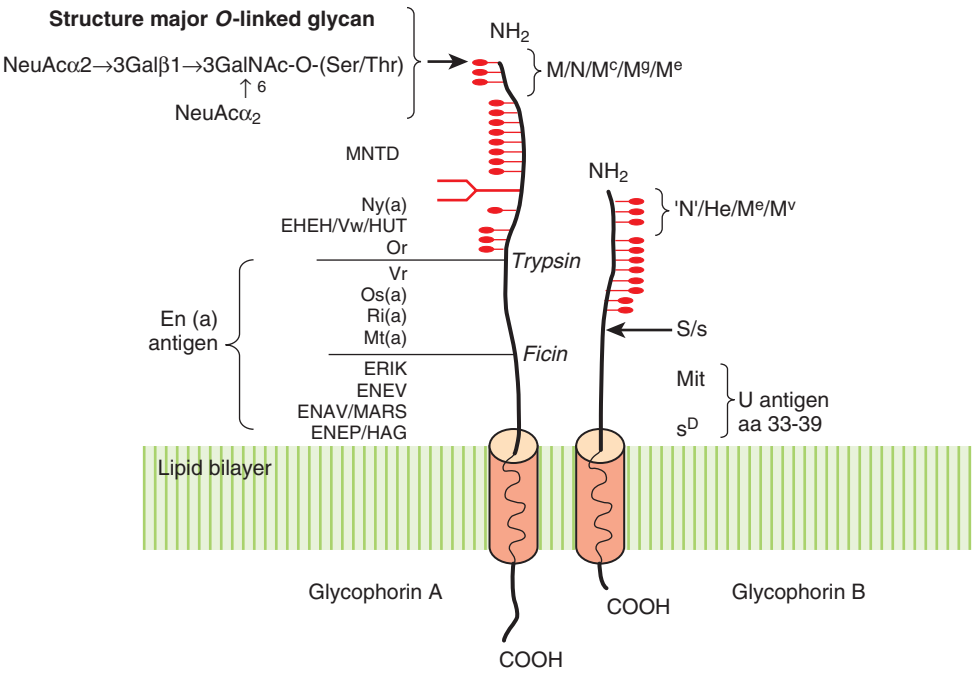


Figure 35-3 Glycophorin A (GYPA) and B (GYPB). GYPA and GYPB possess 11 to 15 *O*-linked glycans (—), consisting predominantly of a disialotetrasaccharide (78%), along the amino-terminal half of the extracellular domain. GYPA also possesses a single, biattenary *N*-glycan, indicated by a branched structure. The single transmembrane domain for both molecules is indicated by a solid amber cylinder. The allelic antigens, M and N, reside at the extreme amino-terminus of GYPA and differ by only two amino acids at residues 1 and 5. The N antigen is also present at the amino-terminus of GYPB and is designated "N" antigen. The S/s antigens are located at amino acid 29 of GYPB. The locations of high- and low-incidence antigens are shown. The En (a) and U antigens involve large stretches of protein near the lipid bilayer and are missing in deletion and recombinant glycophorins.

to a serine or threonine residue. Because of the large number of sialylated *O*-linked glycans on GYPA, nearly 60% and 50% of the total molecular weight is carbohydrate and sialic acid, respectively. Not surprisingly, GYPA is the major sialomucin on RBCs and contributes significantly to the overall negative charge or ζ potential (Huang & Blumenfeld, 1995). The M and N antigens reside on the extreme amino-terminus of GYPA.

The S/s and U antigens reside on GYPB(CD235B), a related RBC glycoprotein (see Fig. 35-3). Like GYPA, GYPB undergoes posttranslational processing, resulting in a 20-kD, 72 amino acid glycoprotein composed of a large, extracellular *N*-terminal domain containing 11 *O*-linked glycans. Although GYPB shares considerable homology with GYPA at the amino-terminus, GYPB is smaller, lacking both an *N*-glycan and a cytoplasmic tail. In the membrane, GYPB appears to be closely associated with Diego at the AE1-ankyrin and junctional complexes, often as a heterodimer with GYPA (Burton & Bruce, 2011). The S/s epitope (Met48Thr) is located at amino acid 29 in the mature protein (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Molecular Biology

The genes for GYPA (*GYPA*) and GYPB (*GYPB*) reside on chromosome 4q28-q31 as part of a 330-kb gene cluster encoding *GYPA*, *GYPB*, and glycophorin E (*GYPE*) (5′-A-B-E-3′). Studies indicate that *GYPB* and *GYPE* arose from GYPA by gene duplication and nonhomologous recombination. Similar to many erythroid-specific genes, the promoter region contains consensus sequences for Sp1 and GATA-1, an erythroid transcription regulatory binding factor (Rahuel et al, 1994). The greater stability of *GYPA* mRNA (>24 hours) over *GYPB* mRNA (<17 hours) may explain the four- to fivefold greater numbers of GYPA on RBCs (Rahuel et al, 1994).

There are 18 allelic GYPA variants reported to date that are responsible for several high- and low-incidence antigens. The biochemical nature of the MNSs antigens has long been known. The M and N antigens lie at the extreme amino-terminus of GYPA (amino acids 1 to 5) and include both protein and carbohydrate as part of the immune epitope. It is amino

TABLE 35-9
MNSs Blood Group Alleles

ISBT No.	Antigen	Glycophorin	Allele	Amino Acid Change*
MNS1	M	GYPA	*GYPA*01*	Ser^{20}-Ser-Thr-Thr-Gly^{24}*
MNS2	N	GYPA	*GYPA*02*	Leu^{20}-Ser-Thr-Thr-Glu^{24}*
MNS8	Mc	GYPA	*GYPA*08*	Ser^{20}-Ser-Thr-Thr-Glu^{24}
MNS11	Mg	GYPA	*GYPA*11*	Ser^{20}-Ser-Thr-Asn^{23}-Gly
MNS30	"N"	GYPB	*GYPB*01*	Leu^{20}-Ser-Thr-Thr-Glu^{24}
MNS6	He	GYPB	*GYPB*06*	Trp^{20}-Ser-Thr-Ser^{23}-Gly^{24}
MNS3	S	GYPB	*GYPB*03*	Met48*
MNS4	s	GYPB	*GYPB*04*	Thr48*
Null phenotypes				
MNS: -1, -2	M-N- En (a–)	No GYPA	*GYPA*01N*	Δ *GYPA* Exons 2-7 Δ *GYPB* Exon 1
MNS: -3, -4, -5	S-s-U-	No GYPB	*GYPB*01N*	Δ *GYPB* Exons 2-5
MNS: -1, -2, -3, -4, -5	M-N-	No GYPA	*GYP*01N*	Δ *GYPA* Exons 2-7
MkMk	S-s-U-	No GYPB		Δ *GYPB* Exons 1-5

*The first 19 amino acids are cleaved, with the mature glycophorin A and B starting at amino acid 20. M/N antigens reside along the first 5 amino acids on the mature GYPA protein (aa1 to aa5). Likewise, the S/s polymorphism resides at amino acid 29 on the mature GYPB protein. Allele nomenclature per ISBT.

acid differences at positions 20 and 25 (1 and 5 in the mature protein), however, that define the *M*/N antigens (Table 35-9). It is not surprising that several low-incidence M and N antigen variants are the result of different amino acid substitutions (M^g, M^c) and/or altered expression of *O*-linked glycans (M_1, Tm, Can). In addition to GYPA, the N antigen is expressed on the extreme amino-terminus of GYPB. The latter is referred to as the "N" antigen to distinguish it from N antigen on GYPA (Issitt & Anstee, 1998).

Eleven *GYPB* alleles are recognized, responsible for S/s, Mv+, Mit+, S^D+, and U^{var} phenotypes. Unlike the complexity of the *M*/N antigens, the S/s antigen is a single amino acid polymorphism on GYPB (Met29Thr on mature protein). The U antigen is a high-incidence antigen (amino acids 33 to 39 on mature GYPB). Loss of S, s, and U antigens can be observed with M^k and some recombinant *GYPB* alleles such as Henshaw. It is estimated that 90% Henshaw+ RBCs are U– or U^{var} and account for 23% of all S–s–U– patients.

Over 20 deletion and recombinant *GYPA* and *GYPB* alleles are known. Recombination and gene conversion are responsible for several rare MNS antigens that were historically part of the Miltenberger system. These include misalignments with single crossovers leading to A-B Lepore-type (e.g., Hil) and B-A anti-Lepore (Dantu) variants, as well as double crossover events, in which segments of one glycophorin are inserted into the other to form B-A-B and A-B-A hybrids (Reid, 2009; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). Deletion mutants include En(a–), a GYPA null phenotype due to a Lepore A-B hybrid. The M^k allele is characterized by a large deletion of GYPA and GYPB due to recombination between *GYPA* and *GYPE*. Mutant GYP molecules are frequently accompanied by loss of high-frequency MNS antigens and can display unusual resistance or sensitivity to enzyme treatment (Reid, 2009). Some mutant GYPs are associated with increased AE1/Band 3 (Diego) expression (Hsu et al, 2009).

MNSs Antibodies

Anti-M and Anti-N

Antibodies against M and N antigens are naturally occurring antibodies of IgM isotype, usually detected as room temperature saline agglutinins (see Table 35-5). Anti-M and anti-N may show dosage, reacting more weakly with heterozygous (M/N) cells than with homozygous (M/M or N/N) cells. Because the M and N antigens reside on GYPA, the reactivity of anti-M and anti-N is destroyed by pretreatment of RBCs with proteolytic enzymes or neuraminidase. Some examples of anti-M and anti-N can be enhanced by acidification of serum to pH 6.5, use of an albumin diluent, or preincubation of RBCs in a glucose-containing solution.

Clinically, anti-M is a commonly encountered antibody in the blood bank. In contrast, anti-N is distinctly uncommon, despite the fact that 25% of patients are negative for N antigen (M homozygous). The rarity of anti-N is due to the presence of "N" antigen on GYPB. When observed, anti-N is usually an autoantibody, reacting with both N and "N" antigens. An autoanti-N (anti-N_f) was reported in hemodialysis patients in the past, caused by the use of formaldehyde to sterilize membranes. Formaldehyde reacted with the terminal leucine on N and "N" antigens, creating a neoantigen (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). In general, anti-M and anti-N are clinically insignificant antibodies and only rarely cause hemolytic transfusion reactions or HDFN. In contrast, potent hemolytic alloanti-N is observed in patients lacking GYPB (M+N–S–s– phenotype). In these patients, severe hemolytic transfusion reactions and HDFN can occur after transfusion of N+ RBCs.

Anti-S, -s, and -U

Unlike anti-M and anti-N, antibodies against S, s, and U antigens are always clinically significant (see Table 35-5). All are antibodies of IgG isotype, reactive at 37° C, arising from immune stimulation. Some examples of anti-S and anti-s show dosage. Enzymatic modification of RBCs with proteases, but not neuraminidase, can decrease the reactivity of some anti-S and anti-s. The reactivity of anti-U is resistant to proteolytic digestion. Anti-S, -s, and -U are causes of hemolytic transfusion reactions and HDFN.

Biological Role

Despite the prevalence of GYPA and GYPB on RBCs, their biological role is still unknown: Their absence is not associated with any known hematologic or pathologic sequelae. Because they are rich in *O*-glycans and sialic acid, GYPA and GYPB contribute significantly to the ζ potential of red cells, decreasing homotypic and heterotypic red cell adhesion. GYPA also facilitates transport and expression of Band 3 (AE1/Diego), a critical protein in gas exchange. Increased Band 3 expression and osmotic resistance can be observed with Miltenberger type III red cells, a GYP B-A-B hybrid (Hsu et al, 2009). Finally, GYPA and GYPB play a role in *Plasmodium falciparum* infections. *P. falciparum* can adhere to RBCs via sialic acid, which is highly expressed on glycophorins. Glycophorin-deficient phenotypes, such as En (a–) and U-, are relatively resistant to *P. falciparum* in vitro. Similar results can be obtained after neuraminidase treatment of RBCs (Cooling, 2015). GYPA is also a receptor for Babesia, another intraerythrocytic parasite (Cooling, 2015).

P1PK, GLOB, AND FORS BLOOD GROUP SYSTEMS (ISBT NO. 003, 028, AND 031)

Historically, the P blood group system consisted of three antigens; P_1, P^k, and P. With the cloning of the glycosyltransferases necessary for their synthesis, the "P group" is now classified into three separate blood group systems containing six antigens. The antigens are assigned based on the last glycosyltransferase necessary for their synthesis. The P1PK system (ISBT 003) encompasses P^k, P_1, and NOR antigens, which all share a terminal α1,4-Gal. GLOB (ISBT 028) contains P and PX2 antigens, which share a terminal β1,3-GalNAc. FORS (ISBT 031) contains a single antigen, Forssman, present on rare Apae RBC. The LKE or Luke antigen is still classified under GLOB collection 209. Related antigens include globo-ABH (type 4 chain ABH) and galactosylgloboside (Gb5). Globo-A is a characteristic feature of A_1 RBC and may account for antigenic differences between A_1 and A_2 RBC.

TABLE 35-10

P Blood Group System

RBC Phenotype	RBC Antigens	Possible Antibodies	MOLECULAR BASIS		FREQUENCIES, %	
			A4GalT1	*B3GALNT1*	Caucasian	Black
P_1	P^k, P, P_1	None	Normal	Normal	79	94
P_2	P^k, P	Anti-P_1	Alternate start codon, intron 1 SNPs*	Normal	21	6
Null Phenotypes						
P_1^k	↑P^k, P_1	Anti-P	Normal	Null allele†	Rare	Rare
P_2^k	↑P^k	Anti-P, anti-P_1	Alternate start codon, intron 1 SNPs*	Null allele†	Rare	Rare
p	None	Anti-P^kPP_1 (Tj^a)	Null allele‡	Normal	Rare	Rare
Weak Phenotypes						
Variant P^k	↑P^k, ↓P	Anti-P	Unknown	Unknown	Rare	Rare
Weak P	↓P^k, ↓P	None	Unknown	Unknown	Rare	Rare

RBC, Red blood cell.
*Recent studies suggest that P_1 is transcribed by an alternate *A4GALT1* transcript and/or regulated by polymorphisms in intron 1 (Thuresson et al, 2011; Lai et al, 2014).
†Multiple inactivating mutations have been identified in *B3GALNT1* open reading frame associated with the P^k phenotype.
‡Multiple inactivating mutations have been identified in *A4GALT1* open reading frame associated with the p phenotype (Steffensen et al, 2000).

Similar to the Lewis system (see later), the P blood group antigens are glycosphingolipids, consisting of an antigenically active carbohydrate moiety covalently linked to a ceramide lipid tail. P^k and P antigens are high-frequency antigens on most donor RBCs (>99.9%). RBCs are particularly rich in P antigen, which makes up nearly 6% of the total RBC lipid (Van Deenen et al, 1974). P^k and P antigens are also expressed on nonerythroid cells, including lymphocytes, platelets, plasma, kidney, lung, heart, endothelium, placenta, uroepithelium, fibroblasts, and synovium. In contrast, the P_1 antigen is uniquely expressed on RBCs. Approximately 79% of Caucasian and 94% of black donors express P_1 on their RBCs (Table 35-10). P_1 strength is variable between individuals and can be lost with in vitro storage.

Null/Weak Phenotypes

Several P blood group phenotypes have been described (see Table 35-10). The P_1 and P_2 phenotypes account for more than 99% of donors. Both possess P^k and P antigens and differ only in expression of the P_1 antigen. Three autosomal recessive null phenotypes have been identified, as well as weak variants (Kundu et al, 1978; 1980; Issitt & Anstee, 1998). The molecular basis for the null phenotypes has been elucidated (Steffensen et al, 2000; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). An association between the P^k variant and Luke (LKE)-negative phenotype has been noted in some donors (Cooling & Kelly, 2001; Cooling et al, 2003a). Because they lack P antigen, p and P^k individuals are resistant to parvovirus B19 (Brown et al, 1994).

Biochemistry

Synthesis of the P^k, P, and P_1 antigens proceeds from the stepwise addition of sugars to lactosylceramide, a ceramide dihexose (CDH) (Fig. 35-4). The first step is the synthesis of the P^k antigen, the ultimate precursor of all globo-type glycosphingolipids. To make P^k antigen, Gb_3 synthase (α4GalT1) adds a galactose, in an α1–4 linkage, to CDH. The P^k antigen can then serve as a substrate for Gb_4 synthase (β3GalNAcT1). In some cells, including RBCs, the P antigen is further elongated to form additional, globo-family antigens such as Luke (LKE), Forssman, NOR, and type 4 chain ABH antigens (globo-ABH) (Fung, 2014).

Unlike P^k and P antigens, the P_1 antigen is not a globo-glycosphingolipid but is a member of the neolacto-family (type 2 chain glycosphingolipids). In P_1 individuals, a terminal α1,4 galactose is added to paragloboside to form P_1. The P_1 antigen is not expressed on RBC glycoproteins despite the presence of multiple type 2 chain precursors (polylactosamine) on *N*-linked glycans (Yang et al, 1994). PX2 is a related neolacto-GSL formed by the action of β3GalNAcT1. PX2 is expressed by rare p cells and can react with alloanti-P.

Molecular Biology

The genes responsible for P^k, P_1, and P have been cloned. As noted, P^k, P_1, and NOR antigens are synthesized by α4GalT1, an α1,4 galactosyltransferase (Steffensen et al, 2000; Iwamura et al, 2003). The *α4GalT1* gene resides on chromosome 22q13 and is organized into three exons, of which only one (exon 3) encodes the enzyme. The α4GalT1 enzyme is a 353 amino acid type II glycoprotein containing two *N*-glycosylation sites and five cysteine residues. Similar to many metal-dependent galactosyltransferases, it possesses a DXD motif or a UDP-Gal binding site. A point mutation (C631>G), leading to a Q211E in the mature enzyme, is responsible for the NOR phenotype (Kaczmarek et al, 2014). The p phenotype is the result of null *A4GALT1* alleles, leading to a loss of all globo-GSL synthesis. To date, over 30 null alleles are reported due to either missense or frameshift mutations (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012; Kaczmarek et al, 2014).

The molecular basis for the P_1 and P_2 phenotypes is still under investigation. It was originally reported that P_2 was a consequence of a mutation in the *A4GALT1* promoter leading to decreased transcription (Iwamura et al, 2003); however, subsequent studies questioned these findings (Tilley et al, 2006). A later study identified a minor *A4GALT1* mRNA arising from an alternate exon and transcription start site. The minor transcript included an additional 28 amino acid peptide and contained a single SNP linked to lower *A4GALT1* transcription and P_2 phenotype (Thuresson et al, 2011). This study has now been challenged by a third group. Lai and colleagues (2014) identified 11 SNPs within intron 1, including 8 that showed a linkage with the P_1/P_2 phenotypes. One SNP (G3084>T; rs4741348) was associated with P_2 and lower *A4GALT1* transcription. It is hypothesized that intron 1 contains transcription factor binding sites that regulate P^k and P_1 synthesis.

Globoside or P antigen, a β1,3 *N*-acetylgalactosaminyltransferase, is the product of *B3GALNT1* (β3GalT3 in original literature; Okajima et al, 2000). The gene resides on chromosome 3q25 and contains six exons, although only exon 6 encodes the enzyme. A member of the β1,3 galactosyltransferase family, β3GalNAcT1 possesses seven conserved domains common to most β1,3 galactosyltransferases, as well as a DXD motif. The gene is ubiquitously expressed in most tissues. Seven null alleles have been reported associated with the P^k phenotype (Reid et al, 2014). In mice, the absence of *β3GALNT1* is lethal (Vollrath et al, 2001).

Forssman antigen is the product of *GBGT1*, an α1,3 galactosaminyltransferase related to the ABO gene (Yamamoto et al, 2012). Forssman antigen is expressed on many animal species but is typically absent from humans and old world apes. In humans, *GBGT1* is located on 9q24 as a pseudogene. *GBGT1* mRNA can be identified in tissues; however, Forssman antigen is not expressed due to two inactivating mutations (Gly230Ser, Gln296Arg) in the translated enzyme. Forssman expression can be observed in the rare weak Apae phenotype. Apae individuals possess an Arg296Gln mutation that restores partial enzyme activity (Yamamoto et al, 2012). Forssman antigen can react with human polyclonal anti-A due to the terminal α1,3-GalNAc epitope.

P Blood Group Antibodies

Anti-P_1

Clinically, the most common antibody observed is anti-P_1, which is detected in one quarter to two thirds of P_2 donors (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). Anti-P_1 is a naturally occurring antibody of IgM isotype and is often

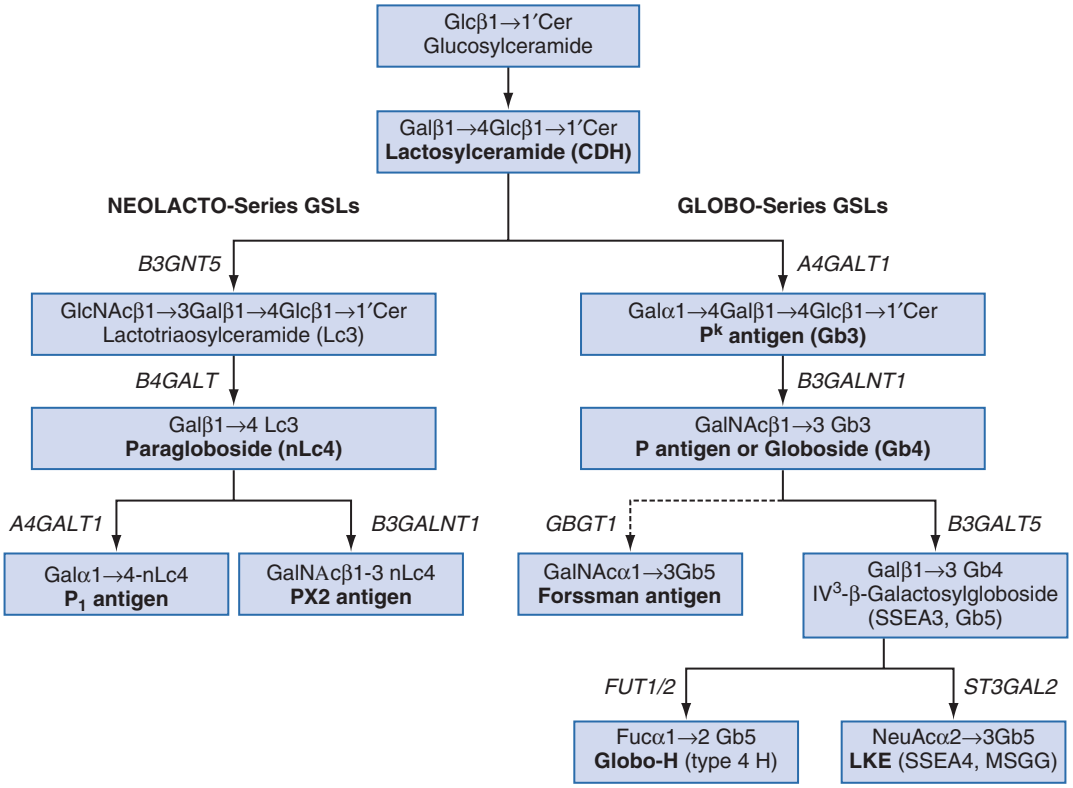


Figure 35-4 **Synthesis of P blood group antigens.** *Cer,* Ceramide; *Gal,* galactose; *GalNAc, N*-acetylgalactosamine; *Glc,* glucose; *GlcNAc, N*-acetylglucosamine; *SSEA,* stage-specific embryonic antigen; *NeuAc,* acetylneuraminic acid.

detected as a weak, room temperature agglutinin. Rare examples of anti-P_1 are reactive at 37° C or show in vitro hemolysis. Because P_1 expression varies in strength among individuals, anti-P_1 may not react with all P_1-positive cells tested. Anti-P_1 can bind complement and may be detected in the indirect antiglobulin test (IAT) if polyspecific antihuman globulin (AHG) is used. Antibody reactivity can be eliminated by prewarming sera or by adding soluble P1 substance from hydatid cyst fluid, earthworms, and bird eggs. Anti-P_1 titers are often elevated in patients with hydatid cyst disease or fascioliasis (liver fluke) and in bird fanciers (Issitt & Anstee, 1998; Cooling, 2015). Some examples of anti-P_1 have I blood group specificity (anti-IP_1).

In general, anti-P_1 is not clinically significant, and its presence rarely requires transfusion of antigen-negative blood. The exception is seen in patients with an anti-P_1 showing in vitro hemolysis. Because of the risk of immediate and delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions, these patients should receive P_1-negative (P_2), crossmatch compatible units. Anti-P_1 is not a cause of HDFN.

Alloanti-PP_1P^k

Anti-PP_1P^k (historically known as anti-Tj^a) is a separable mixture of anti-P, anti-P_1, and anti-P^k in the sera of p individuals. These antibodies are naturally occurring and may be IgM only or IgM plus IgG (IgG3). Because anti-PP_1P^k antibodies are potent hemolysins, patients can be transfused only with p RBCs. In women, alloanti-PP_1P^k and alloanti-P are associated with HDFN and spontaneous abortion. Early and frequent plasmapheresis has been used with therapeutic success in alloimmunized pregnant women of the p and P^k phenotypes (Kaczmarek et al, 2014).

Alloanti-P

Anti-P is also a naturally occurring IgM alloantibody in the serum of P^k (and p) individuals. It is a potent hemolysin and can cause in vivo hemolysis following transfusion of P-positive (P_1 and P_2) RBCs. Some alloanti-P can react with PX2 present on p red cells with hemolysis. Alloanti-P is a cause of HDFN and is associated with spontaneous abortions.

Auto-Anti-P (Donath-Landsteiner)

An autoantibody with anti-P specificity is seen in patients with paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria (PCH), a clinical syndrome that may occur in children following viral infection. In PCH, autoanti-P is an IgG, biphasic hemolysin capable of binding RBCs at colder temperatures, followed by intravascular hemolysis at body temperature. This characteristic can be demonstrated in vitro in the Donath-Landsteiner test. See a full description in later sections on immunohematologic methods.

Biological Role

Unlike many antigens, the physiologic role of the P blood group antigens is not known. As GSLs, they are frequently organized into glycolipid-enriched microdomain (GEM) or lipid rafts in the outer cell membrane. GEMs can function as a glycosynapse as well as an organizing platform for glycoproteins, cell adhesion, and cell signaling (Cooling, 2015). Not surprisingly, globo-GSLs demonstrate differential expression during embryogenesis, cellular differentiation, and neoplastic transformation (Jacewicz et al, 1995; Cooling et al, 2003b). In mice, P and extended globo-GSLs are necessary for embryonic development (Vollrath et al, 2001). The P^k antigen is a marker of apoptosis in germinal center B cells, Burkitt lymphoma, and lymphoblastic leukemia (Mangeney et al, 1991). LKE is a marker of embryonic and mesenchymal stem cells (Gang et al, 2007) and is implicated in adhesion, cell signaling, and metastasis in renal cell and breast carcinoma (Satoh et al, 1996; Steelant et al, 2002).

Several P blood group antigens are receptors for microbial pathogens. The P blood group antigen is the receptor for parvovirus B19, a single-stranded DNA virus associated with multiple clinical sequelae, including aplastic crises (Brown et al, 1994; Cooling, 2015). P^k can bind human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and may confer resistance to HIV infection (Lund et al, 2009). P, P^k, and LKE blood group antigens on uroepithelium are cell receptors for P-fimbriae, a bacterial adhesin and colonization factor expressed on uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* strains. The P antigen was recently found to bind the LPS receptor TLR4-MD2 complex, acting as an antagonist to LPS and blunting inflammation (Kondo et al, 2013).

The P_1 and P^k antigens are receptors for shiga toxins, produced by *Shigella dysenteriae* and enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* (EHEC) strains (Cooling, 2015). In addition to gastroenteritis, EHEC infection is the most common cause of community-acquired hemolytic-uremic syndrome, probably reflecting toxin binding to P^k antigen on glomerular vascular endothelium and platelets (Mayer et al, 2012). The P^k antigen also serves as a receptor for *Streptococcus suis* (Cooling, 2015).

RH AND RHAG BLOOD GROUP SYSTEMS (ISBT NO. 004 AND 030)

The first and most clinically important characterization of the Rh system antigens came when Landsteiner and Wiener (1940) published studies of

animal experiments involving the immunization of guinea pigs and rabbits with rhesus monkey RBCs. The resulting antiserum agglutinated 85% of human RBCs, and the antigen defined was called the Rh (rhesus) factor. This anti-Rh was later reported to have the same specificity as antibodies studied earlier by Levine and Stetson (1939) that were responsible for HDFN. It is interesting to note that the anti-Rh developed by Landsteiner and Wiener was later shown to recognize a different blood group antigen, named LW for its discoverers.

Today, the Rh system is probably the most complex red cell antigen system in humans, encompassing over 50 antigens, many phenotypic variants, and complex serologic relationships. Hence, the following review is basic and highlights the most current information. For a detailed, historical review of the Rh system, readers should consult Issitt and Anstee (1998) and Daniels (2002).

Theories of Rh Inheritance and Classification System

Using five basic antisera—anti-D, anti-C, anti-E, anti-c, and anti-e—Wiener identified five different factors or antigens (Table 35-11) that, from population and family studies, appeared to be inherited as two complexes of up to three factors each. Eight possible combinations of three-factor complexes were identified if one included "d" as designating the lack of D, because no anti-d had ever been demonstrated. Wiener proposed a single-locus inheritance system with eight alternative common alleles coding for two Rh agglutinogens, capable of expressing up to three different antigenic determinants. Wiener's nomenclature for the eight different genes and allelic frequencies is provided in Tables 35-12 and 35-13.

Fisher and Race later proposed a different inheritance theory and nomenclature system based on genetic evidence of the antithetical or allelic nature of the C/c and E/e antigens (Race, 1948). These investigators proposed a system of three closely linked loci or subloci on each chromosome, which were inherited as a block of genes (haplotype). They also introduced the DCE nomenclature to name the alleles, including the use of "d" to designate the lack of D locus (see Table 35-11). Rosenfeld proposed a numeric system of naming the antigens in 1962, because the increasing number of Rh antigens rendered an alphabetic notation impractical (Table 35-14). It was also appreciated that this nomenclature contained no inferences as to the genetic inheritance of the antigens.

Biochemistry

Tremendous progress has been made in deciphering the biochemistry and molecular biology of the Rh blood group system. It is now clear that the Rh complex consists of three integral membrane proteins: RhD, RhCE, and Rh-associated glycoprotein (RhAg). RhD and RhCE are highly homologous proteins, differing by approximately 30 amino acids. Both are 30-kD, 416 amino acid multipass proteins containing 12 transmembrane domains, six extracellular loops, and a cytoplasmic amino- and

TABLE 35-11
Comparison of Wiener, Fisher-Race, and Rosenfield Nomenclatures for Antigens of the Rh Blood Group System

Wiener	Fisher-Race	Rosenfield
Rho	D	RH1
rh′	C	RH2
rh″	E	RH3
hr′	c	RH4
hr″	e	RH5

TABLE 35-12
Wiener and Fisher-Race Nomenclatures for the Rh Haplotypes and Their Population Frequencies*

		FREQUENCIES IN U.S. POPULATION			
Wiener	Fisher-Race†	Caucasian	Black	Native American	Asian
R0	Dce	0.04	0.44	0.02	0.03
R_1	DCe	0.42	0.17	0.44	0.70
R_2	DcE	0.14	0.11	0.34	0.21
Rz	DCE	0.00	0.00	0.06	0.01
r	ce	0.37	0.26	0.11	0.03
r′	Ce	0.02	0.02	0.02	0.02
r″	cE	0.01	0.00	0.01	0.00
r^y	CE	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00

*Composite figures calculated from Mourant et al (1976).
†In historical Fisher-Race nomenclature, RhD-negative was designated as "d." At this time, RhD-negative phenotypes using Fisher-Race denote only the RHCE antigens present on red cells.

TABLE 35-13
Frequencies of Common Rh Phenotypes*

REACTION WITH ANTI-†					PHENOTYPE		GENOTYPE		FREQUENCIES, N (%)‡			
D	C	c	E	e	Rh	DCE	Rh	DCE	Caucasian	Black	Native American	Asian
+	+	+	+	+	Rh_1Rh_2	DCcEe	R^1R^2	DCe/DcE	0.1176 (89)	0.0374 (100)	0.2992 (89)	0.294 (97)
							R^1r''	DCe/cE	0.0084 (6)		0.0088 (3)	
							$r'R^2$	Ce/DcE	0.0056 (5)		0.0135 (4)	0.0084 (2.8)
							rR^z	ce/DCE			0.0132 (4)	0.0006 (0.2)
+	+	+	–	+	Rh_1rh	DCce	R^1R^0	DCe/Dce	0.0168 (5)	0.1495 (63)	0.0176 (15)	0.042 (50)
							R^1r	DCe/ce	0.3108 (95)	0.0884 (37)	0.0968 (85)	0.042 (50)
+	–	+	+	+	Rh_2rh	DcEe	R^2R^0	DcE/Dce	0.0112 (10)	0.0968 (63)	0.0136 (15)	0.0126 (50)
							R^2r	DcE/ce	0.1035 (90)	0.0572 (37)	0.0748 (85)	0.0126 (50)
+	+	–	–	+	Rh_1Rh_1	DCe	R^1R^1	DCe/DCe	0.176 (91)	0.029 (81)	0.194 (92)	0.490 (93)
							R^1r'	DCe/Ce	0.017 (9)	0.007 (19)	0.017 (8)	0.028 (7)
+	+	–	+	+	Rh_1Rhz	DCEe	R^1R^z	DCe/DCE		0.053 (100)		
+	–	+	+	–	Rh_2Rh_2	DcE	R^2R^2	DcE/DcE	0.02 (88)	0.012 (100)	0.116 (94)	0.044 (100)
							R^2r''	DcE/cE	0.003 (12)		0.007 (6)	
+	+	+	+	–	Rh_2Rhz	DCcE	R^2R^z	DcE/DCE			0.041 (100)	
+	–	+	–	+	Rh_0Rh_0	Dce	R^0R^0	Dce/Dce	0.0016 (5)	0.1936 (46)	0.0004 (8)	0.0009 (33)
							R^0r	Dce/ce	0.0296 (95)	0.2286 (54)	0.0044 (92)	0.0018 (67)
–	–	+	–	+	rhrh	ce	rr	ce/ce	0.1369 (100)	0.0676 (100)	0.0121 (100)	0.0009 (100)
–	+	+	–	+	rh′rh	Cce	rr′	ce/Ce	0.0055 (100)	0.0014 (100)	0.0044 (100)	0.0012 (100)
–	–	+	+	+	rh″rh	cEe	rr″	ce/cE	0.0028 (100)		0.0022 (100)	

*Estimated from haplotype frequencies (p, q from Table 35-12), using p2 for homozygotes and 2pq for heterozygotes.
†+, Positive; –, negative.
‡%, Percentage of genotypes within a given phenotype.

TABLE 35-14

Molecular Basis for RH and RHAG Antigens

ISBT	Name	Frequency, %	RH Protein (D or CE)	Molecular Basis (Protein or Gene Exon)	Comments
RH (ISBT 004)					
RH1	D	85-92	D	RHD, loops 3,4,6	
RH2	C	68% Caucasians 27% blacks	CE	Ser103 + Cys16	Antithetical RH4
RH3	E	22-29	CE	Pro226	Antithetical RH5
RH4	c	80	CE	Pro103	Antithetical RH2
RH5	e	80	CE	Ala226 Dependence on Arg229	Antithetical RH3
RH6	f	65	CE	Pro103 + Ala226 Dependence on Arg229	Compound antigen
RH7	Ce	27-28	CE	Ser103 + Ala226	Compound antigen
RH8	C^w	1-2	CE	Gln41>Arg	Antithetical RH51
RH9	C^x	<0.01	CE	Ala36>Thr	Antithetical RH51
RH10	V	30% blacks	CE	Leu235>Val, +Gly336	Often with RH20
RH11	E^w	<0.01	CE	Met167>Lys	E variant type I
RH12	G	84-92	D, CE	Ser103	Anti-C+D
RH17	Hr_0	100	CE	RHCE loops 3,4,6	
RH18	Hr	100	CE	Met238	
RH19	hr^S	98	CE	Ala226, Met238	
RH20	VS	40% blacks	CE	Leu226>Val	Often with RH10
RH21	C^G	68	CE	Ser103	
RH22	CE	1	CE	Ser103 + Pro226	Compound antigen
RH23	D^w	<0.01	Partial D	Gln233, RHD loop 3,6	
RH26	c-like	80	CE	Gly96 + Pro103	
RH27	cE	22-28	CE	Pro103 + Pro226	Compound antigen
RH28	hr^H	<0.01	?	Unknown	
RH29	Total Rh	100	CE + D	RHD + RHCE	Made by Rh_{null}
RH30	Go^a	2% blacks	Partial D	On DIV^a	
RH31	hr^B	98	CE	Unknown	Missing on R2R2
RH32	RN	<1% blacks	Partial D	Exons D4–CE5	Antithetical RH46
RH33	Har	<0.01	Partial D	Exons CE4–D5	R_0^{Har}
RH34	Hr^B	100	D + CE	Cys336	
RH35	1114(CeMA)	<0.01	CE	Unclear; CeMA is JAL+	Weak C,e
RH36	Be^a	<0.1	CE	Pro221>Arg	Weak c,e,f
RH37	Evans	<0.01	D–CE hybrid	Exons D6–CE7	
RH39	C-like	100	?	Unknown	On C– and C+ RBCs
RH40	Tar	<0.01	D	Leu100>Pro	
RH41	Ce-like	70	CE	Exon 2, Ala226	
RH42	Ce^S	2% blacks	Partial D	Leu245>Val	Associated $dCce^S$
RH43	Crawford	0.7% D- blacks	CE	Gln223>Glu, VS+	ce^S variant; VS+, V+
RH44	Nou	100	?	Unknown	
RH45	Riv	<0.01	Partial D	On DIVa	
RH46	Sec	100	CE	CE exon 4	Antithetical RH32
RH47	Dav	100	CE	Exon 7	
RH48	JAL	<0.01	CE	Arg114>Trp or Glu	Antithetical RH57
RH49	STEM	0.4% Indians	CE	W16C,M238V, L278V	
RH50	FPTT	<0.01	Partial D	Exons CE4–D5	
RH51	MAR	>99	CE	Ala36, Gln41	Antithetical RH8,9
RH52	BARC	<0.01	Partial D	Exons CE6–D7	
RH53	JAHK	<0.01	CE	Exon D2 (Ser103), no Cys16	
RH54	DAK	<0.01	Partial D	Unknown	
RH55	LOCR	<0.01	CE	Gly95>Ser	Weak c,e,f ; Rh26±
RH56	CeNR	<0.01	CE–D hybrid	Complex epitope	D– –; RH32+
RH57	CEST	>99	CE	Arg114	Antithetical RH48 (Jal)
RH58	CELO	<0.01	CE	Trp16,Gln233,Leu245	Antithetical RH43
RH59	CEAG	<0.01	CE	Ala85	RH31(-), partial e
RHAG (ISBT 030)					
RHAG1	Duclos	>99	RhAg	Gln106>Glu	
RHAG2	Ol^a	<0.01	RhAg	Ser227>Leu	Weak Rh expression
RHAG3	DSLK	>99	RhAg	Lys164>Gln	
RHAG4	RHAG4	<0.01	RhAg	Val270Ile	

From Wagner and Flegel (2004), Reid (2012), and Westhoff et al (2004).
ISBT, International Society of Blood Transfusion.

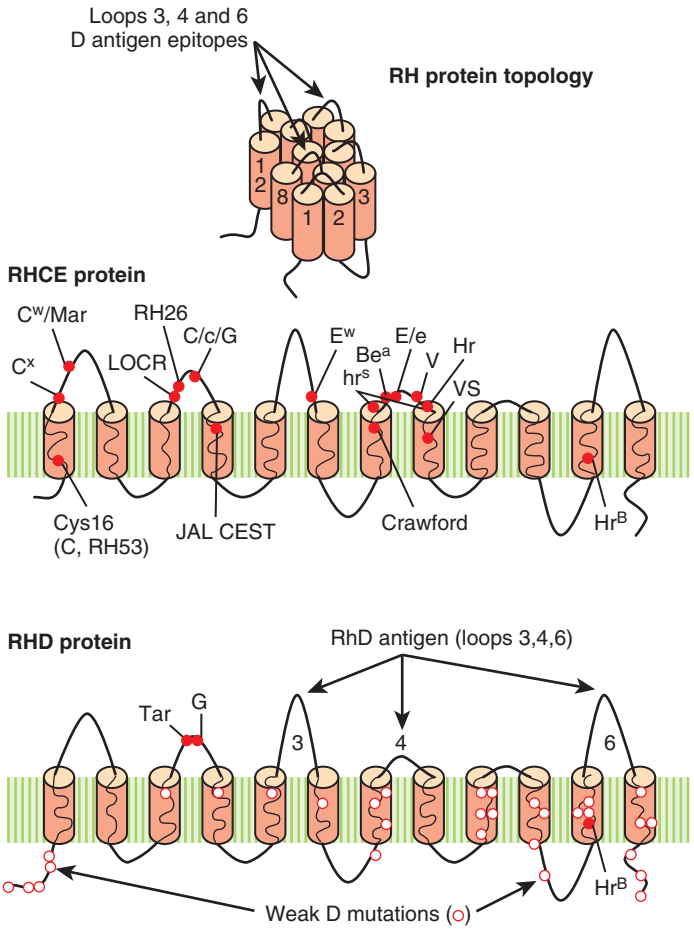


Figure 35-5 RH proteins. Both RHD and RHCE proteins are multipass proteins with 12 transmembrane domains, indicated by solid amber cylinders. The location of Rh antigens denoted by single–amino acid polymorphisms is denoted by *red circles*. The RhD epitope is a complex antigen involving structures on the third, fourth, and sixth extracellular loops. Missense mutations in RHD, leading to weak D expression, are indicated by open circles (o).

carboxy-terminus (Fig. 35-5). Both proteins possess two to three molecules of palmitate (C16 fatty acid) covalently linked to transmembrane cysteine residues. Palmitoylation of Rh proteins may help maintain the phospholipid asymmetry of the RBC membrane (Avent, 1999).

RhAg is a 45- to 70-kD multipass glycoprotein, evolutionarily related to RhD and RhCcEe glycoproteins. RhAg is a 409 amino acid glycoprotein with 12 transmembrane domains and a single, large *N*-linked carbohydrate side chain on the first extracellular loop. Overall, approximately 170,000 molecules each of Rh and RhAg proteins are present per RBC. RhD, RhCE, and RhAg are erythroid-specific proteins (Avent, 1999).

In the RBC membrane, RhD, RhCE, and RhAg proteins exist as a trimer, composed of three molecules of Rh (RhD and RhCE) and RhAg (Eyers et al, 1994). The importance of RhAg for the expression and correct assembly of Rh proteins cannot be understated. In the absence of functional RhAg protein, neither RhD nor RhCE proteins will be expressed (Rh_{null} and Rh_{mod} phenotypes). In addition to RhAg, Rh proteins may be topologically associated with CD47 (Lutheran), ICAM4 (LW), DARC (Duffy), Band 3 (Diego), and GYPB. At least two non-Rh antigens, Fy5 and U, may require noncovalent interactions between Rh, DARC glycoprotein (Fy5), and GYPB (U), respectively (Ridgwell et al, 1994). Rh is associated with the Band 3-ankyrin metabolon.

Molecular Biology

The genes for RhD (*RHD*) and RhCE (*RHCE*) proteins span 65 kb on chromosome 1p34-36.1 and share nearly 92% sequence identity. The two genes are separated by only 30 kb and have opposite orientations, facing each other at their 3′ ends (Fig. 35-6). The *RHD* gene is also flanked by two homologous sequences known as rhesus boxes. The *RHAG* gene (*RHAG*) resides on chromosome 6p11.1 and shares 36% homology with the *RHD* and *RHCE* genes. All three genes possess 10 exons and at least one GATA-1 consensus sequence in the promoter region (Cherif-Zahar et al, 1994; Iwamoto et al, 1998). It is believed that *RHAG* and *RH* genes arose by gene duplication 250 to 350 million years ago. A second gene duplication 8 to 11 million years ago resulted in the ce and D alleles (cDe or R_0 haplotype). The remaining RHCe alleles are believed to be the product of point mutations, recombination, and gene conversion of the *RHD* and *RHCE* genes (Avent, 1999).

D Antigen

The cloning of *RHD* and *RHCE* genes opened the door to understanding the complex immunology of many Rh antigens and phenotypes. The D antigen, the most immunogenic of all the Rh antigens, resides on the RHD protein. Current evidence suggests that D is a highly complex antigen, depending on both specific amino acids and the tertiary structure of the RHD protein itself. At least nine "D-specific" amino acids (Met169, Met170, Ile172, Phe223, Ala226, Glu233, Asp350, Ala353, and Gly354) have been identified as functional D epitopes. The nine amino acids lie along the third, fourth, and sixth external loops of the RHD protein, creating six distinct D-epitope clusters or footprints (see Fig. 35-5). How the immune system recognizes these clusters remains a matter of intense investigation (Avent, 1999).

Weak D Antigen

Approximately 1% of D-positive individuals type as weak D (historically known as D^u), characterized by weak or absent RBC agglutination by anti-D during routine serologic testing. In weak D individuals, the D antigen usually requires enhancement with AHG owing to a quantitative decrease in RhD protein. In these individuals, the number of RhD molecules is decreased 40- to 100-fold, ranging from 66 to 5200 molecules per red cell (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

A weak D phenotype can occur with many partial D phenotypes, Ce *in trans* with suppression of *RHD*, in the Rh_{mod} phenotype, and via autosomal recessive inheritance of two weak *RHD* alleles. The latter accounts for the majority of weak D phenotypes present in the general population. To date, 17 different weak D phenotypes and more than 40 different weak RhD alleles are recognized. Nearly all possess missense mutations, leading to amino acid substitutions, along the transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains (see Fig. 35-5). Because of their location, it is hypothesized that these mutations may interfere with the assembly or efficient insertion of the RhD protein. Furthermore, because all the mutations are intramembranous or intracellular, it is assumed they do not significantly alter the presentation of D epitopes on the extracellular loops (Wagner et al, 1999). This may explain why most weak D individuals do not make alloanti-D when transfused with D-positive blood (see later).

Partial D Antigen

Partial D antigens are RHD proteins with missing D epitopes. Although they type as D-positive, persons with partial D antigens can make alloanti-D antibodies reactive with allogeneic, but not autologous, RBCs. The alloanti-D produced by these individuals recognizes D-specific epitopes missing on their own RBCs (see Fig. 35-6). Partial D can result from missense mutations or from genetic recombination of *RHD* and *RHCE* genes (Avent, 1999). Partial D phenotypes arising from genetic recombination are frequently associated with the generation of new, low-incidence antigens (see Table 35-14).

Rh-Negative Phenotype

Rh-negative (D–) occurs in approximately 15% of white donors, almost always in association with a ce/ce or rr phenotype. In most Caucasians, D– reflects a deletion of the entire *RHD* gene (see Fig. 35-6). In blacks, D– can result from gene deletion or from inheritance of an *RHD* pseudogene. Nearly 60% of D-negative black people inherit a mutant RHD allele (RHψD) containing a 37–base pair (bp) internal duplication, frameshift, and premature stop codon (Avent, 1999). *RHD* genes containing nonsense mutations and nucleotide deletions have also been reported in some D-negative Japanese and Caucasian donors (Daniels, 2002; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

C/c, E/e, and Compound Rh Antigens

In contrast to the complexity of the D antigen epitope, the C/c and E/e antigens are single–amino acid polymorphisms on the RhCE protein (see Fig. 35-5). Three additional amino acid polymorphisms (Cys16Trp, Ile-60Leu, and Ser68Asn) may help stabilize the C and c antigens. Arg229 appears critical to e and f expression (Chen et al, 2004). Because C/c and E/e epitopes are present on the same protein, alloantibodies dependent on the expression of both C/c and E/e antigens can occur. Four alloantibodies with "compound" Rh specificity have been described: anti-ce (f or RH6),

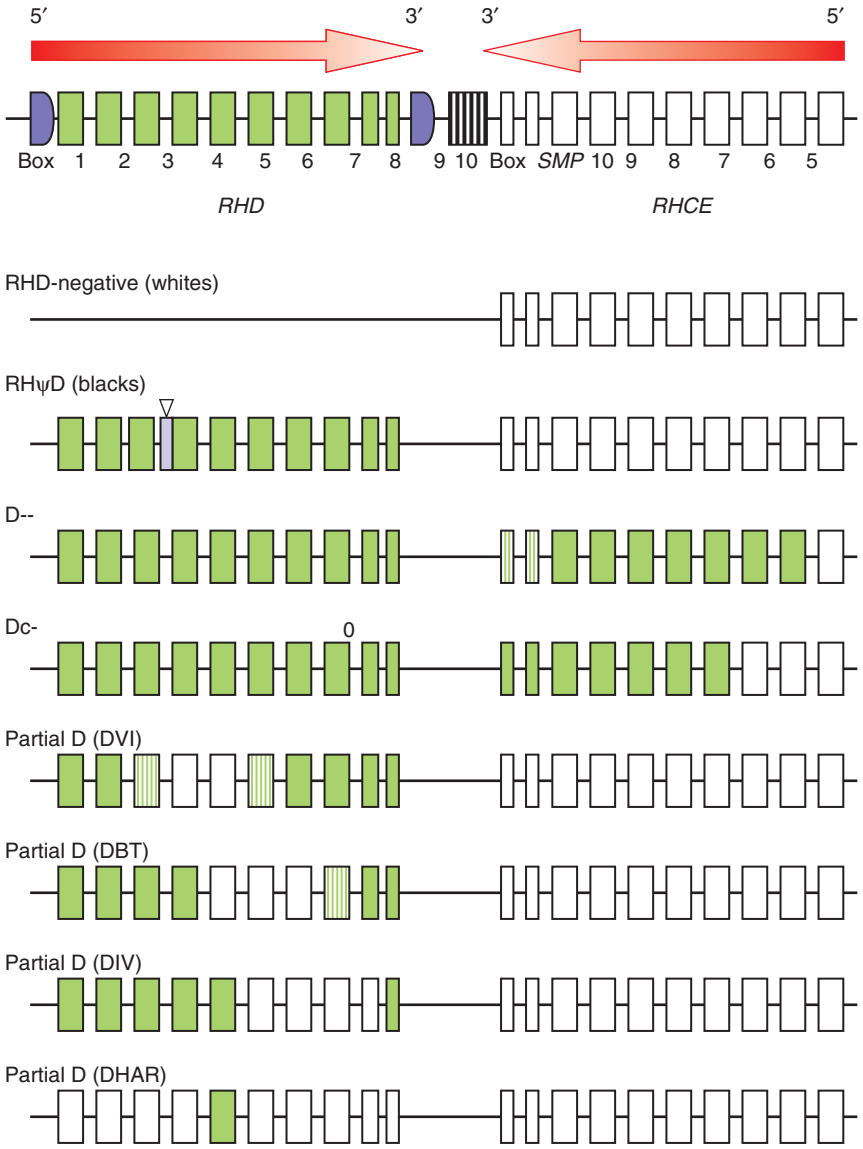


Figure 35-6 **The *Rh* gene cluster.** *RHD* and *RHCE* genes are closely situated and face each other at their 3′ ends. The *RHD* gene is also flanked by Rh boxes. *SMP* is an unrelated gene. RHD-negative phenotype can result from deletion of the *RHD* gene or, in blacks, a 37–base pair (bp) insertion leading to a frameshift (pseudogene). Also shown are examples of partial D and CE phenotypes that are the result of recombination between *RHD* and *RHCE* genes.

anti-Ce (RH7), anti-cE (RH27), and anti-CE (RH22). These antibodies react only with RBCs carrying the appropriately paired antigens, in *cis*, on the same RhCE protein (see Table 35-14). The RHCE protein is home to several additional high- and low-incidence antigens.

G Antigen

The G antigen (RH12) is a high-frequency antigen present on virtually all D-positive and C-positive RBCs. G has been identified as Ser103, a C-type antigen, on RHD and RHCE proteins (see Fig. 35-5). It is not surprising that anti-G alloantibodies have both anti-C and anti-D specificity (anti-C + D) and are frequently accompanied by anti-C (anti-G + anti-C) (Shirey et al, 1997).

Weak and Deletion C/c and E/e Phenotypes

Similar to D, phenotypes with weakened or absent C/c and E/e are known. *RHCE* alleles with point mutations, deletions, and recombinations can lead to weakened CcEe expression. African ethnic groups, in particular, show significant molecular diversity in *RHCE* alleles. A recent study reported partial C [(C)ce^{S}] phenotype in nearly 25% of sickle cell patients (Noizat-Pirenne et al, 2009). Although these patients serologically type as C+c+, rare patients can produce an alloanti-c (Ong et al, 2009; Pham et al, 2009). Likewise, point mutations and rearrangements resulting in weakened e expression and alloantibody formation (anti-e, hr^{S}) are well known (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012; Vege et al, 2009).

The deletion phenotypes D••, D— (↑D+, C–c–E–c–), DC–, and Dc– are the result of genetic recombination between *RHCE* and *RHD* genes to yield RHCE-D-CE hybrids (see Fig. 35-6). As a consequence, total ablation of Ee and/or Cc epitopes occurs, with many recombinants expressing new low-frequency Rh antigens (see Table 35-14). Furthermore, many recombinants (e.g., D••, D—) demonstrate exalted D antigen expression on serologic testing owing to a double dose of some D epitopes on both RHD and mutant RHCE-D-CE proteins. For a detailed summary, the reader is referred to Reid and Lomas-Francis (2004).

RHAG Alloantigens

RHAG is a separate blood group system with three antigens: Ol^{a}, Duclos, and DSLK (Tilley et al, 2010; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). All three are the result of an amino acid polymorphism in the RhAg protein. Both Duclos and DSLK are associated with weak U expression, suggesting an interaction between RhAg and GYPB.

Rh_{null} Phenotype

Rh_{null} erythrocytes lack all Rh antigens as a result of an apparent absence of RhD and RhCE proteins. In addition, Rh_{null} erythrocytes lack the high-frequency antigens Fy5 and LW and may have markedly decreased expression of S/s and U antigens. The absence of these non-Rh antigens reflects the complex topologic association of Duffy, LW, and GYPB proteins with Rh proteins on RBC membranes.

Extremely rare (<1 in 6 million), Rh_{null} cells have abnormalities in RBC morphology (spherocytes, stomatocytes), water content, cell volume, cation fluxes, carbon dioxide (CO_2) permeability, and phospholipid asymmetry (Issitt & Anstee, 1998; Endeward et al, 2006). Rh_{null} cells show increased osmotic fragility and a shortened circulating half-life, often accompanied by a mild hemolytic anemia (Rh deficiency syndrome). Because Rh_{null} individuals can become sensitized to multiple Rh antigens, including high-frequency antigens, transfusion support can be quite difficult. Some alloimmunized Rh_{null} individuals can produce anti-RH29, which reacts with all RBCs except Rh_{null}.

The Rh_{null} phenotype can arise from two distinct genetic backgrounds: regulator and amorph. The Rh_{null}-amorph type is the result of nonsense mutations in the *RHCE* gene in D-negative people. Because of the absence of RhD and RhCE proteins, Rh_{null}-amorph RBCs have reduced (but not absent) expression of RhAg protein (Daniels, 2002). The Rh_{null} regulator type arises from mutations in *RHAG* (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Rh_{mod} Phenotype

Mutations in *RHAG* are also observed in the Rh_{mod} phenotype. Rh_{mod} RBCs have markedly decreased Rh and RhAg expression, detectable only by careful adsorption and elution studies. Similar to Rh_{null} individuals, persons with Rh_{mod} may have laboratory evidence of Rh deficiency syndrome with a mild hemolytic anemia. Three Rh_{mod} samples have been studied, each containing a single, different missense mutation in the *RHAG* gene (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Rh Antibodies

Antibodies against Rh antigens are routinely encountered in the blood bank (see Table 35-5). D is the most immunogenic Rh antigen, followed by c, E, C, and e (Harmening, 2012). In general, antibodies against Rh antigens are the result of immune stimulation by transfusion or pregnancy. Exceptions include some examples of anti-C^w and anti-E, which can be naturally occurring. Most antibodies against Rh antigens are of IgG isotype (IgG_1 and IgG_3), although rare examples of IgM and IgA are known. Anti-Rh antibodies are reactive at 37° C and are usually detected in the AHG phase of testing. The reactivity of anti-Rh antibodies can be enhanced with enzyme-treated RBCs. The gel method is extremely sensitive for the detection of Rh antibodies (Weisbach et al, 2006).

Clinically, antibodies against Rh are associated with hemolytic transfusion reactions. However, because Rh antibodies do not fix complement, incompatible RBCs are almost always cleared through extravascular destruction. To prevent sensitization to the D antigen, Rh-negative patients should be transfused with Rh-negative RBCs. This is particularly true for young girls and women of childbearing age. For transfusion in alloimmunized patients, RBC units should be negative for the Rh antigen of interest and crossmatch compatible with the recipient's serum through the AHG phase of testing. One possible exception may be R_1R_1 (DCe/DCe) patients who have developed anti-E alloantibodies. Because these patients are at increased risk of delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions because of the subsequent development of anti-c, many blood bankers advocate transfusing only R_1R_1 units to R_1R_1 patients (Shirey et al, 1994).

Antibodies against Rh antigens are also a major cause of HDFN. All Rh-negative women should receive Rh immune globulin (IgG anti-D) prophylactically in midpregnancy, following an invasive procedure (i.e., amniocentesis) and immediately after delivery to prevent alloimmunization. Rh immune globulin prophylaxis is also recommended in women with partial D phenotypes because these women can be at risk for D alloimmunization (Ansart-Pirenne et al, 2004). Rh immune globulin may also be given following transfusion of RhD+ platelet concentrates or after accidental transfusion of RhD+ RBCs. In the latter, Rh immune globulin is given after two-volume RBC exchange with RhD-negative RBCs (Nester et al, 2004). Administration of one vial of Rh immune globulin is recommended for every 30 mL whole blood or 15 mL packed RBCs transfused (Fung, 2014). Rh immune globulin should be given within 72 hours of exposure to prevent active immunization. Rh immune globulin is not given to Rh-negative women who are already immunized to D antigen (i.e., have anti-D).

It is also recommended to give Rh immune globulin to Rh-negative women with anti-G alloantibodies. As stated earlier, anti-G behaves as an anti-C + anti-D because of recognition of a Ser103 or C-type antigen on both RhD and RhCE proteins. In general, HDFN secondary to anti-G or anti-C + anti-G is mild when compared with HDFN due to anti-D. However, because these women may still become immunized to D-specific epitopes on the RhD protein, many blood bankers advocate giving Rh immune globulin to Rh-negative women with anti-G antibodies (Shirey et al, 1997). Separation of anti-G from a true anti-C + anti-D is very laborious, requiring sequential adsorption and elution (Yesus & Akhter, 1985). One clue suggesting the presence of anti-G is an anti-C titer at least fourfold higher than anti-D (Shirey et al, 1997). It is not necessary, however, to separate anti-G from anti-C + anti-D for routine transfusion. With very rare exceptions, RBCs negative for D and C antigens are also negative for G antigen.

Biological Role

The specific physiologic function of the Rh proteins is still unclear; however, there is a strong belief that Rh proteins may constitute a membrane transporter. The Rh proteins are homologous with ammonium transporters of the Mep/Amt family. In addition, Rh-like homologues have been discovered in invertebrate life forms such as the nematode worm *Caenorhabditis elegans* and a marine sponge, *Geodia cydonium* (Avent, 1999). Evidence suggests that RhAG is capable of facilitating NH_4 transport.

LUTHERAN BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 005)

The Lutheran (Lu) blood group system contains 19 antigens, including four pairs of allelic antigens and 11 high-incidence antigens. Lutheran is a minor constituent of RBC membranes, averaging only 2000 to 5000 molecules per cell, and can vary in strength between donors (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). Even within a single individual, considerable heterogeneity in Lutheran expression is seen, with only 40% to 50% of red cells positive for Lutheran antigens by flow cytometry (El Nemer et al, 1998). Lutheran appears on red cells at the orthochromatic erythroblast stage, concurrent with binding of red cells to laminin (Daniels, 2009). Lutheran antigens are ubiquitously expressed on human tissues. In addition to RBCs, Lutheran glycoprotein is expressed by colon, small intestine, ovary, testis, prostate, thymus, spleen, pancreas, kidney, skeletal muscle, liver, lung, placenta, brain, heart, and bone marrow (Rahuel et al, 1996).

Null/Weak Phenotypes

A Lu(a–b–) phenotype can occur in three settings with distinct patterns of inheritance: autosomal recessive, autosomal dominant (*In[Lu]*), and X-linked recessive (Table 35-15). The autosomal recessive phenotype is a true null phenotype, characterized by complete absence of all Lutheran antigens on RBCs. As a consequence, these individuals can make an alloantibody to Lutheran glycoprotein (anti-Lu3) that reacts with all Lu-positive RBCs. The Lu_{null} phenotype is extremely rare and is not associated with altered expression of other red cell antigens.

The autosomal dominant and X-linked recessive forms are characterized by very weak Lutheran expression, often detected only after adsorption and elution. *In(Lu)* is an autosomal dominant Lu_{mod} phenotype with an incidence of 0.02% to 0.12% (Daniels, 2009). In addition to Lutheran antigens, *In(Lu)* red cells can show weakened expression of P_1, i, Indian/CD44, and Knops/CD35 antigens and enhanced expression of CDw75 (Daniels, 2009). The X-linked Lu_{mod} phenotype has weakened Lutheran; enhanced i and CDw75; and normal P_1, i, and CD44 expression. Because both *In(Lu)* and X-linked recessive Lu_{mod} phenotypes express some Lutheran antigen on RBCs and other tissues, neither is associated with the development of anti-Lu3. *In(Lu)* RBCs can display subtle abnormalities, including increased poikilocytosis and increased hemolysis, during in vitro storage (Ballas et al, 1992).

Biochemistry

The Lutheran antigens reside on two isomeric, type 1 glycoproteins: Lu-glycoprotein (85kD) and epithelial cancer antigen (B-CAM, 78kD) (Daniels, 2009). The 85-kD glycoprotein is the predominant isoform found on RBCs and normal tissues. Members of the Ig superfamily, the 78- and 85-kD glycoproteins share a common, large (518 amino acid) extracellular domain with five Ig regions and five potential *N*-glycosylation sites (Fig. 35-7). Three Ig domains are of the constant-region-2 (C2) type, whereas the remaining two are variable-region (V) domains. A laminin binding site resides in a flexible hinge region between C2 and V domains.

The 7-kD difference between the 78-kD and 85-kD isoforms reflects the length of the COOH-terminal cytoplasmic tail. In addition to its longer length, the cytoplasmic domain of the 85-kD isoform possesses an SH3 motif, a potential binding site for Src protein. The cytoplasmic domain also interacts with spectrin, a cytoskeletal protein (Kroviarski et al, 2004). Because it is a highly folded protein, stabilized by disulfide bonds, Lutheran is destroyed by sulfhydryl-reducing agents and many proteases.

TABLE 35-15
Phenotypes of the Lutheran System

REACTIONS WITH ANTI-				FREQUENCY IN U.S. POPULATION, %		
Lu^a	**Lu^b**	**Lu-3**	**Phenotype**	**Caucasian**	**Black**	**Comments**
+	0	+	Lu (a+b–)	0.1	0.1	
+	+	+	Lu (a+b+)	7	5	
0	+	+	Lu (a–b+)	93	95	
Null Phenotypes (Lu$_{null}$)						
0	0	0	Lu (a–b–)	Very rare	Very rare	Autosomal recessive Normal CD44, i/I, CD75 Make an anti-Lu-3
0/W*	0/w*	w*	Lu (a–b–)	Very rare	Very rare	In (Lu), autosomal dominant ↓CD44, I/i; ↑CD75 *ELKF* mutation
0/W*	0/w*	w*	Lu (a–b–)	Very rare	Very rare	X-linked recessive, GATA1 mutation nl CD44, i, P1

*Weak Lu antigens detected only by adsorption and elution techniques.

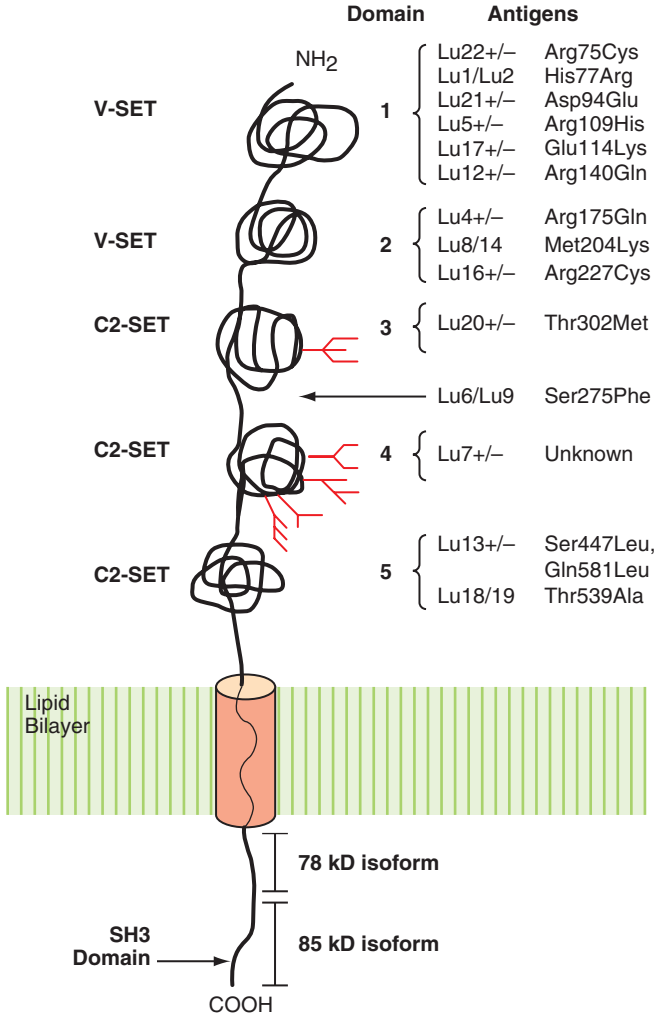


Figure 35-7 Lutheran glycoprotein. The Lutheran antigens reside on one of five immunoglobulin domains (V, C2-like). The transmembrane domain is indicated by a solid amber cylinder. The length of the cytoplasmic domain can vary from 19 amino acids (78-kD isoform) to 59 amino acids (85-kD isoform). The latter also possesses a consensus-binding motif for Src protein (SH3 domain).

Molecular Biology

The gene for Lutheran (*LU*) resides on chromosome 19q13.2-13.3. It is a 12.5-kb gene containing 15 exons: Alternate splicing of exon 13 is responsible for the 78-kD minor isoform (Rahuel et al, 1996; El Nemer et al, 1997). Although no TATA or CAAT boxes are present in the 5′ flanking or promoter region of the gene, it does possess consensus sequences for several *cis*-regulatory elements, including the ubiquitous Sp1, AP2, EGR-1, EKLF, Ets, and GATA-1, an erythroid transcription binding protein (El Nemer et al, 1997; Singleton et al, 2008).

The molecular basis for most Lutheran antigens is now known (see Fig. 35-7). Lub is the consensus allele (*LU*02*). Most Lu antigens are the result of SNPs including Lu^a (His77) and Lu^b (Arg77) (Daniels, 2009). The autosomal recessive, true Lu$_{null}$ phenotype arises from inheritance of two silent amorph *LU* alleles due to nonsense mutations and deletions (Daniels, 2009; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). The molecular basis for the autosomal dominant *In(Lu)* phenotype was finally identified in 2008. Most *In(Lu)* individuals are heterozygous for a mutant *EKLF* gene, an erythroid transcription factor active in late erythroid differentiation (Singleton et al, 2008). The *In(Lu)* phenotype, therefore, is the result of reduced transcriptional activation and expression of LU glycoprotein. Reduced EKLF activity likely accounts for decreased expression of other blood group antigens. The basis for the X-linked recessive (XS2) has been identified as mutations in the transcription factor GATA1, which resides on the X chromosome.

Lutheran Antibodies

In general, Lutheran antibodies are not clinically significant and are only rarely associated with HDFN and hemolytic transfusion reactions. Anti-Lu^a is the most common Lutheran alloantibody encountered in the blood bank and is often an IgM, room temperature agglutinin. Because not all RBCs express detectable Lu antigens (El Nemer et al, 1998), anti-Lu^a can display mixed field agglutination. Antibodies against Lu^b and other Lutheran antigens are most often of IgG isotype, reacting best in the IAT. Reactivity of anti-Lu^a, Lu^b, and other Lutheran antibodies can be inhibited by pretreatment of RBCs with chymotrypsin, trypsin, 2-aminoethylisothiouronium bromide (AET), and dithiothreitol (DTT).

Biological Role

Biologically, Lutheran is a high-affinity receptor for laminin, a basement membrane protein involved in cell differentiation, adhesion, migration, and proliferation. Overexpression of LU glycoprotein in ovarian carcinoma and other cancers is hypothesized to facilitate tumor cell adhesion and metastasis (Rahuel et al, 1996). In sickle cell patients, increased Lutheran expression on reticulocytes and sickle cells may contribute to the pathophysiology of vaso-occlusive crises. Patients with sickle cell disease have indirect evidence of chronic vascular injury with shedding of microvascular endothelial cells and exposure of vascular basement membrane (Solovey et al, 1997). In these patients, increased exposure of laminin on the thrombotic subendothelium, coupled with increased expression of laminin receptor on reticulocytes and sickle cells, may promote red cell adhesion and circulatory stasis (El Nemer et al, 1998; Parsons et al, 2001). Likewise, LU glycoprotein may contribute to thrombosis in polycythemia

vera. The *JAK2* mutation was shown to increase phosphorylation of LU glycoprotein and red cell adhesion (Daniels, 2009). In normal erythropoiesis, LU may play a role in migration of maturing erythroid cells out of the marrow (Daniels, 2009).

KELL AND KX BLOOD GROUP SYSTEMS (ISBT NO. 006 AND 019)

First identified in 1945, the Kell (KEL) blood group system currently consists of 34 high- and low-frequency antigens (Tables 35-16 and 35-17). Eleven Kell antigens belong to five sets of allelic antigens, whereas the remainder are predominantly high-incidence antigens (>99% of the population). Many low-incidence Kell antigens (K, Js^a, Ul^a, Kp^a, Kp^c) show distinct racial differences. The Kell antigen is found on RBCs, erythroid and megakaryocyte progenitors, skeletal muscle, and testis. RBCs express approximately 2000 to 6000 copies of Kell protein per cell (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Null and Weak Phenotypes

K_0K_0 is an autosomal recessive, null phenotype that completely lacks all Kell antigens (see Table 35-22). As a consequence, these individuals can make an alloantibody to the Kell glycoprotein (anti-Ku). Unlike McLeod RBCs (see later), K_0K_0 RBCs have enhanced expression of Kx antigen, present on the XK protein. Unlike Rh_{null} red cells, K_0K_0 red cells have no decrease in CO_2 permeability (Endeward et al, 2006). A K_0K_0 RBC can be produced in the laboratory by treating Kell-positive RBCs with sulfhydryl-reducing agents.

Kell antigens are significantly depressed/absent on McLeod RBCs, an X-linked recessive phenotype characterized by the absence of XK protein on RBCs (Kx antigen, XK1; ISBT 019), acanthocytes, and neuromuscular disorders. Because McLeod individuals lack XK and Kell proteins, these individuals can make alloantibodies directed against both proteins. As a consequence, McLeod individuals are incompatible with both Kell-positive and K_0K_0 RBCs. Depressed Kell expression is also observed on K_{mod} and Gerbich-negative RBCs, two autosomal recessive phenotypes. As with the K_0K_0 phenotype, some $Kell_{mod}$ individuals have increased Kx (KEL15) expression and can develop an anti-KEL5 (anti-Ku) following RBC transfusion. Transient depression and masking of Kell antigens have been reported in septic patients and in autoimmune hemolytic anemia due to anti-Kell autoantibodies (Judd et al, 1981; Issitt & Anstee, 1998; Bosco et al, 2009). Kell antigens are also depressed (up to 80%) in alleles bearing KEL3 in *cis* (e.g., KKp^a, KEL*1,3; kKp^a, KEL*2,3) (Poole et al, 2006; Kormoczi et al, 2009).

Biochemistry

The Kell antigens (ISBT No. 006) reside on a 93-kD, 732 amino acid glycoprotein (CD238), possessing a short 47 amino acid amino-terminal cytosolic domain; a single transmembrane domain; and a large, 665 amino acid extracellular domain that includes the carboxy-terminus and 4-5 *N*-linked glycans (Fig. 35-8). In the KEL1 phenotype, a Thr183>Met

TABLE 35-16
Kell and XK Blood Group Antigens*

ANTIGEN (HIGH FREQUENCY)					ANTIGEN (LOW FREQUENCY)	
ISBT	**Name**	**Percent Donors**	**Amino Acid Change (High→Low Frequency)**	**Percent Donors**	**Name**	**ISBT**
KEL2	k	99.8	Thr193>Met	9	K	KEL1
			Thr193>Ser	Rare		
			Ala423>Val	Unknown		Weak KEL2
KEL4	Kp^b	99.9	Arg281>Trp	2	Kp^a	KEL3
			Arg281>Gln	<0.1	Kp^c	KEL21
KEL7	Js^b	>99.9	Leu597>Pro	<1% Caucasians 19.5% blacks	Js^a	KEL6
KEL5	Ku	>99.9	Heterogeneous	0.8	K_0	K_{null}
			Heterogeneous	Rare	K_{mod}	
KEL20	Km	>99.9	unknown			
XK1	Kx	>99.9	Mutation XK protein	Rare	McLeod	

ISBT, International Society of Blood Transfusion.
*As referenced in Daniels (2002), Daniels et al (2004, 2007), and Reid & Lomas-Francis (2012).

TABLE 35-17
Phenotype Frequencies in the Kell System

REACTIONS WITH ANTI-										FREQUENCY IN U.S. POPULATION, %	
K	**k**	**Kp^a**	**Kp^b**	**Js^a**	**Js^b**	**Ku**	**Km**	**Kx**	**Phenotype**	**Caucasian**	**Black**
+	0					++	++	w	K+k–	0.2	Rare
+	+					++	++	w	K+k+	8.8	2
0	+					++	++	w	K–k+	91	98
		+	0			++	++	w	Kp(a+b–)	Rare	0
		+	+			++	++	w	Kp(a+b+)	2.3	Rare
		0	+			++	++	w	Kp(a–b+)	97.7	100
				+	0	++	++	w	Js(a+b–)	0	1
				+	+	++	++	w	Js(a+b+)	Rare	19
				0	+	++	++	w	Js(a–b+)	100	80
Null Phenotypes											
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	++	K_0	Exceedingly rare	
0/w	0/w	0/w	0/w	0/w	0/w	w	w	++	K_{mod}	Rare	
0/w	0/w	0/w	0/w	0/w	0/w	0/w	0	0	McLeod	Rare	

++, Strong reactivity; *w,* weak reactivity.

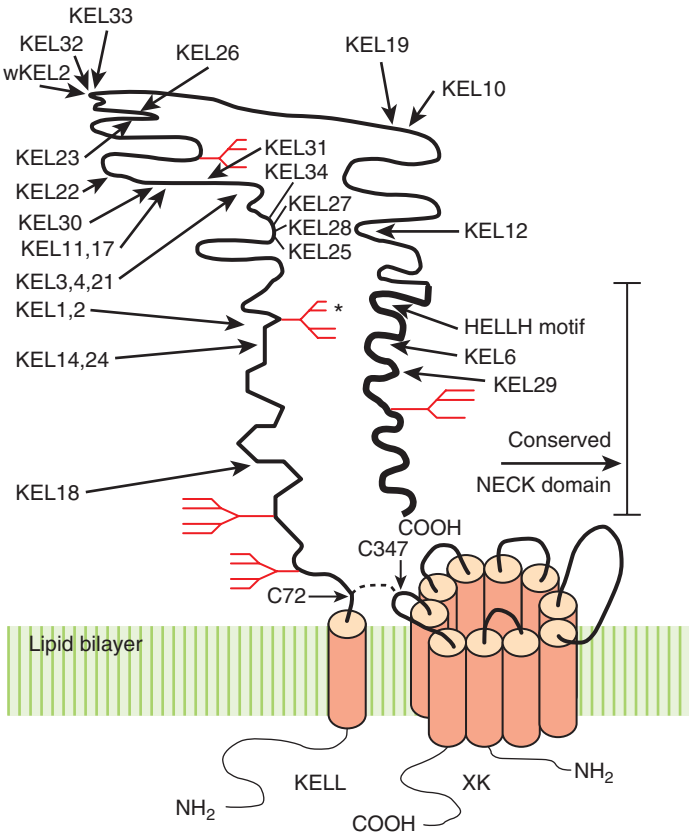


Figure 35-8 Diagram of KELL and XK protein. KELL is covalently linked to the XK protein by a disulfide bond (- - - -) through Cys72 of Kell and Cys347 of XK. The sites of different Kell antigens are indicated by solid lines. The highlighted area at the carboxy-terminus of KELL represents the domain sharing the most homology to other NECK family proteins (NEP-24.11, ECE-1, PEX). The zinc-binding motif (HELLH) is a consensus sequence shared by zinc-dependent metalloproteinases. The transmembrane domains of KELL and XK protein are indicated by solid amber cylinders. The *N*-glycosylation sites are indicated by branched structures. The *N*-glycosylation site marked by an asterisk is not present in individuals of the KEL1-positive phenotype.

substitution voids a glycosylation site, resulting in only four *N*-linked glycans (Lee, 1997).

Overall, the molecule has a complex, folded tertiary structure due to the formation of multiple disulfide bonds by the 15 cysteine residues present in the extracellular domain of the molecule (Lee, 1997). Because of its highly folded nature, the Kell glycoprotein is fairly resistant to proteolytic digestion but is exquisitely sensitive to sulfhydryl-reducing agents such as DTT, AET, 2-mercaptoethanol (2-ME), and ZZAP, a combination of DTT and cysteine-activated papain.

In the RBC membrane, the Kell glycoprotein is covalently linked to the XK protein (ISBT No. 019), a 444 amino acid, nonglycosylated, multipass protein containing 10 transmembrane domains. Encoded by a gene on chromosome Xp21, the XK protein is hypothesized to be a membrane transport protein. On RBCs, the XK protein is covalently linked to the Kell protein through a disulfide bond at C347 on the fifth extracellular loop of XK protein and C72 of Kell. In the absence of XK protein (McLeod phenotype), Kell expression is decreased on RBCs, suggesting that XK protein may help transport Kell. Transfection studies in COS cells, however, show normal transport and folding of the Kell protein in the absence of XK protein (Russo et al, 1998). Nor is expression of XK dependent on Kell expression. The XK protein is expressed on several nonerythroid tissues, including liver, skeletal muscle, heart, brain, and pancreas (Ho et al, 1994).

Molecular Biology

Cloned in 1991, the Kell gene (*KEL*) contains 19 exons spanning 21.5 kb on chromosome 7q34 near the cystic fibrosis gene. The promoter region and exon 1 contain several consensus-binding sequences for GATA-1, an erythroid transcription regulatory binding factor. Kell is a member of the M13 neprilysin family of zinc neutral endopeptidases and shares homology with common acute lymphocytic leukemia antigen (CALLA, CD10), endothelin-converting enzyme-1 (ECE-1), neutral endopeptidase 24.11 (NEP-24.11), and PEX. The region of greatest homology lies in the carboxy-terminal half of the molecule (amino acids 550 to 652) and is sometimes referred to as the *NECK domain* (N-24.11, EC-1, K family). This relatively conserved region shares 34% to 36% homology with the carboxy-terminal catalytic domains of NEP-24.11 and ECE-1, as well as a pentameric zinc-binding motif (HELLH), a common feature of zinc-dependent metalloproteinases (Lee, 1997).

With cloning of the Kell gene, the molecular and biochemical basis of several Kell antigens became possible. As shown in Table 35-16, all the Kell alloantigens identified and sequenced are single–amino acid polymorphisms in the translated Kell protein, generally in the amino half of the molecule (Lee, 1997). The consensus allele *KEL*02* encodes 20 high-frequency antigens including k, Kp^b, and Js^b (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Several individuals with absent or depressed Kell expression have also been studied. K_0K_0 phenotype arises from homozygosity for a silent *KEL* amorph gene. Thirty K^0 alleles (*KEL*02N*) are recognized, including splice-site mutations and premature stop codons (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). K_{mod} is the result of missense mutations and may occur on either K1 or k background. Twelve K_{mod} alleles are recognized by ISBT. Several mutations have been identified in the *XK* protein on Xp21, responsible for the McLeod phenotype (Russo et al, 2002). At present, 29 mutant *XK* alleles have been described, including deletion mutants (15), splice site (5), and nonsense mutations (6). The molecular basis for decreased Kell antigen expression with Gerbich-negative phenotypes is unknown. It is speculated that Kell and glycophorin C (Gerbich) may be near neighbors on the RBC membrane.

Kell Antibodies

Alloantibodies against antigens in the Kell blood group system are clinically significant (see Table 35-5). They can be associated with both immediate and delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions. Anti-Kell antibodies are also associated with HDFN. HDFN secondary to maternal anti-Kell antibodies is often characterized by reticulocytopenia, with little or no bilirubinemia. It is now known that maternal anti-Kell (anti-KEL1 or K1) directly suppresses erythroid progenitors, leading to a severe reticulocytopenic anemia in the fetus (Vaughan et al, 1998) with up to 30% of affected infants presenting with fetal hydrops (Van den Akker et al, 2008). Anti-K1 is present in approximately 1% of pregnancies, with HDFN affecting 40% of K1-positive infants (Finning et al, 2007). Several centers now routinely screen and refer prenatal patients with Kell antibodies, with improved perinatal outcomes (Kamphuis et al, 2008). Reports have also described neonatal thrombocytopenia due to suppression of marrow megakaryocytes (Wagner et al, 2000). In general, thrombocytopenia is mild, with only 2% of infants having platelet counts of less than 100×10^9/L (Van den Akker et al, 2008). Similar to RHD, fetal genotyping can be performed on maternal plasma (Finning et al, 2007).

The most commonly encountered antibody against the Kell blood group system is anti-K1, which is second only to Rh D in immunogenicity. Antibodies against Kell antigens are of IgG isotype, arising from immune stimulation via transfusion or pregnancy. There are rare reports of naturally occurring anti-K1 antibodies following severe bacterial infections and may be the result of crossreactive antibodies against bacterial neprilysin homologues (Cooling, 2015), although examples of naturally occurring anti-Kell alloantibodies are known (Judd et al, 1981). Because Kell antigens are sensitive to sulfhydryl-reducing agents, the activity of anti-Kell antibodies can be eliminated by pretreatment of RBCs with AET, DTT, 2-ME, or ZZAP.

Biological Role

Kell cleaves endothelin-3, a vasoactive peptide that functions in endothelial cell migration, neovascularization, axonal growth, and neural crest development. In a murine $Kell_{null}$ model, absence of Kell led to only subtle effects, including decreased blood pressure, blunting endothelin-3 activation of Ca^{++}-dependent K^+ channels, decreased microvascular formation, and mild changes in motor function (Zhu et al, 2009). Because endothelin-3 is also cleaved by ECE-1, a related endothelin converting enzyme, Kell may have only a minor physiologic role in endothelin-3 homeostasis. The ability of anti-Kell to suppress fetal erythropoiesis also suggests a possible role for Kell during erythroid differentiation and maturation (Vaughan et al, 1998); however, only minor differences in mean corpuscular volume, mean corpuscular hemoglobin, hemoglobin (Hg), and reticulocyte counts were observed in $Kell_{null}$ mice (Zhu et al, 2009).

In contrast to Kell, the absence of XK protein is strongly associated with several abnormal clinical and laboratory findings. McLeod RBCs have shortened survival, decreased permeability to water, and abnormal morphology (acanthocytes). The McLeod syndrome, characterized by both

hematologic and neuromuscular abnormalities, typically presents with areflexia, dystonia, and choreiform movements late in life. Late-onset muscular dystrophy and cardiomyopathy can also be seen. Both hematologic and neuromuscular defects in McLeod patients are believed to result from the absence of XK protein on red cells, brain, heart, and skeletal muscle (Ho et al, 1994). It is interesting that the Huntington's disease gene, another neurodegenerative disorder, is located near the *XK* gene on the X chromosome (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). In fact, modern historians have hypothesized that a K1+ McLeod phenotype might explain Henry VIII's physical and psychological decline late in life, as well as his wives' high miscarriage rate (Whitley & Kramer, 2010).

The McLeod phenotype can also be associated with chronic granulomatous disease (CGD), a functional neutrophil defect resulting in severe, recurrent, life-threatening bacterial infections. In two thirds of patients, CGD results from a deletion or mutation of the cytochrome *b* gene *(CYBB)* on the X chromosome. Because of the proximity of the *CYBB* and *XK* genes on the X chromosome, approximately 7% of patients with X-linked CGD also express a McLeod phenotype (Curnutte & Bemiller, 1995).

LEWIS BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 007)

The Lewis blood group system is unusual in that the Lewis antigens are not of erythroid origin. It primarily consists of two antigens: Lewis^a (Le^a, LE1) and Lewis^b (Le^b, LE2). Four additional antigens (Le^{ab}, Le^{bH}, ALe^b, BLe^b) reflect the influence of ABO on Lewis synthesis and antigenicity. On RBCs, the Lewis antigens reside on glycosphingolipids, composed of a Lewis-active carbohydrate head group linked to a ceramide (*N*-acyl sphingosine) lipid tail. Lewis antigens are synthesized in the gastrointestinal tract and passively adsorbed onto RBCs from a soluble pool of secreted Lewis substance in plasma (Hauser, 1995). Tissues and fluids expressing Lewis include plasma, saliva, RBCs, platelets, lymphocytes, endothelium, uroepithelium, and bowel mucosa. In some tissues, Lewis antigens are expressed on glycosphingolipids, glycoproteins, and mucins (Cooling, 2015).

Three Lewis phenotypes are observed in adults: Le (a+b–), Le (a–b+), and Le (a–b–). The Le (a+b+) is only rarely observed, usually on RBCs of very young children and some individuals of Polynesian, Japanese, or Taiwanese ancestry (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). As shown in Table 35-18, the Le (a–b–) phenotype is five times more common in blacks than in Caucasians. The Le (a–b–) phenotype is also increased in neonates owing to developmentally delayed expression of the *Lewis* and *Secretor* genes. By 5 years of age, most children will express adult levels of Lewis antigens on their RBCs. The amount of Lewis antigen on RBCs is also influenced by ABO type. Le (a–b+) RBCs from group O donors appear to have more Le^b than A_1 and B cells. As will be discussed later, group A_1 and B donors can convert Le^b to ALe^b and BLe^b, respectively (Issitt & Anstee, 1998).

Biochemistry

Although biosynthetically related to each other, the Le^a and Le^b antigens are not allelic antigens. They represent the complex interaction of two distinct glycosyltransferases: fucosyltransferase type II (FUT2) and fucosyltransferase type III (FUT3). FUT3 is the product of the Lewis gene *(Le/FUT3)* and is an α1–3/4 fucosyltransferase. FUT2, the product of the *Secretor* gene *(Se)*, is an α1–2 fucosyltransferase related to the *H* gene, FUT1. How *Le*, *Se*, and *ABO* genes interact to yield the different combinations of RBC and plasma phenotypes is shown in Table 35-18 and Figure 35-9.

The precursor molecule for Lewis and related antigens is a type 1 chain precursor, historically known as the Le^c antigen. In Le (a+b–) donors, FUT3 or Lewis adds an α1–4 linked fucose to Le^c to form the Le^a antigen. Because these donors lack the *Se/FUT2* gene *(se/se)*, no type 1 chain H (Le^d) is made. As a result, only Le^a antigen is present in plasma, saliva, and RBCs. The Le (a–b+) red cell phenotype results from the inheritance of both *Le* and *Se* genes. FUT3 still converts a small amount of type 1 chain precursor to Le^a antigen. However, most Le^c substance is converted to type 1 chain H or Le^d by FUT2 (see Fig. 35-9). FUT3 subsequently adds a second fucose to form Le^b antigen (Lowe, 1994). In group A and B persons, type 1 chain H is further modified by the A/B glycosyltransferase to form type 1 chain A and B antigens. Similar to type 1 chain H and Le^c antigens, these molecules can serve as substrates for FUT3 to form ALe^b and BLe^b (see Fig. 35-9). In group A_1 donors, ALe^b is the major Le^b antigen found in plasma (Lindstrom et al, 1992).

The Le (a–b–) red cell phenotype occurs in individuals who lack the *Le/FUT3* gene. Individuals who are negative for both *Le* and *Se* alleles *(le/le, se/se)* are unable to synthesize Le^a antigen or type 1 chain H antigens. As a result, only type 1 chain precursor or Le^c antigen is present in secretions and plasma. In contrast, individuals who inherit at least one Se allele can express type 1 chain glycolipids with ABH activity.

Molecular Biology

The *FUT3* or *Lewis* gene resides on chromosome 19p13.3 near two other α1–3 fucosyltransferase genes: *FUT5* and *FUT6*. All three α1–3 fucosyltransferases are highly homologous, consistent with gene duplication (Weston et al, 1992). The gene encodes a 361 amino acid type II glycoprotein with both α1→4 (Le^a) and α1→3 (LeX) fucosyltransferase activity. *FUT3* is highly expressed in colon, stomach, small intestine, lung, and kidney, with weaker expression in salivary gland, bladder, uterus, and liver. *FUT6* is coexpressed with *FUT3* in most tissues (Cameron et al, 1995).

The Le (a–b–) or null phenotype arises from inactivating mutations in *FUT3*. More than 37 *FUT3* null alleles have been reported, with most (89%) possessing at least two mutations (Blood Group Antigen Gene Database, 2015). Many alleles show distinct geographic and ethnic distributions. In Caucasians, Le (a–b–) is most commonly associated with alleles containing mutations at Trp68Arg and Thr105Met ($le^{202,314}$). In contrast, *FUT3* null alleles common in Asia include le^{59}, $le^{59,508}$, and $le^{59,1067}$ (Cooling, 2015). The Lewis weak (Le^w) phenotype, often characterized by a Le (a–b–) RBC phenotype and the presence of Lewis-active substance in saliva, is due to a single missense mutation in the transmembrane domain (T59>G). The latter has decreased Golgi retention and reduced activity with glycolipid substrates, leading to discrepant Lewis expression on red cells, saliva, and gastrointestinal tissues (Mollicone et al, 1994; Nishara et al, 1999). Le^w and a Le (a–b–) RBC phenotype can also be a consequence of gene dosage: *Le/le* heterozygous individuals show 50% decreased FUT3 activity in saliva and tissues (Cooling, 2015).

The *FUT2 (Se)* gene resides on chromosome 19q13.3 as part of a 100-kb gene cluster that includes the *H* gene (*FUT1*) and *Sec1*, an inactive *FUT2*-like pseudogene (Kelly et al, 1995). Multiple null alleles have been reported, with distinct geographic and ethnic distributions. Most null alleles are the result of nonsense mutations (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). There are also examples of recombination among *FUT1*, *FUT2*, and *Sec1* (Koda et al, 1996; Soejima et al, 2008). Weak *FUT2* alleles are known and common in Asia (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012; Cooling, 2015). The most common partial secretor phenotype has been linked to an Ile129>Phe mutation and is associated with a Le (a+b+) phenotype (Yu et al, 1995).

Lewis Antibodies

Similar to ABO, antibodies against Le^a and Le^b antigens are naturally occurring IgM antibodies (see Table 35-5), but unlike ABO antibodies,

TABLE 35-18
The Lewis Blood Group System

	FREQUENCIES IN U.S. ADULTS, %		POSSIBLE GENOTYPE		ABH AND LEWIS SUBSTANCES IN SALIVA AND PLASMA		
Phenotype	**Caucasian**	**Black**	***Le* Gene**	***Se* Gene**	**Group O**	**Group A**	**Group B**
Le (a+b–)	22	23	*Le/Le* or *Le/le*	*se/se*	Le^a	Le^a	Le^a
Le (a–b+)	72	55	*Le/Le* or *Le/le*	*Se/Se* or *Se/se*	Type 1H Le^a, Le^b	Type 1H, A Le^a, Le^b, ALe^b	Type 1H, B Le^a, Le^b, BLe^b
Le (a–b–)	6	22	*le/le* *le/le*	*Se/se* *se/se*	Type 1H Type 1 chain precursor (Le^c)	Type 1H, A Type 1 chain precursor (Le^c)	Type 1H, B Type 1 chain precursor (Le^c)

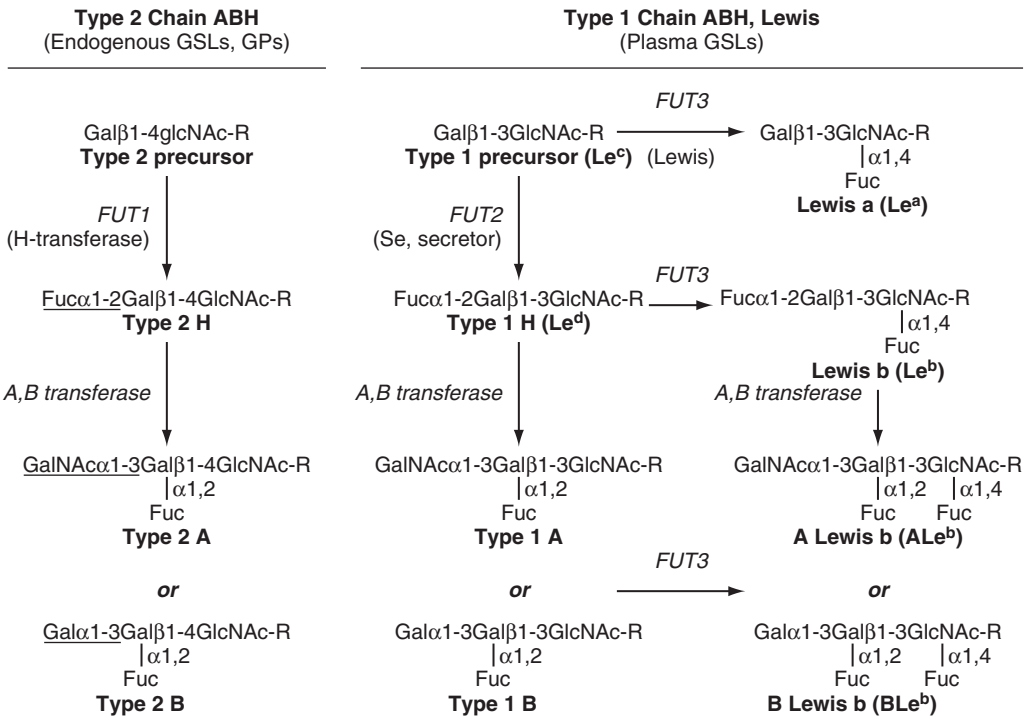


Figure 35-9 **Synthesis of Lewis and type 1 chain ABH antigens.** *Fuc,* Fucose; *Gal,* galactose; *GalNAc, N*-acetylgalactosamine; *Glc,* glucose; *GlcNAc, N*-acetylglucosamine; *Le,* Lewis; *R,* ceramide.

anti-Lewis antibodies are seldom clinically significant. Most examples are detected as room temperature agglutinins; however, some examples are reactive in the IAT. Although uncommon, some examples demonstrate in vitro hemolysis. Because Le^a and Le^b are glycosphingolipids, antibody reactivity can be enhanced by pretreatment of RBCs with enzymes. Antibody reactivity is neutralized by the addition of commercially available soluble Lewis substance or plasma containing the soluble Lewis antigen of interest. Anti-Le^b can be observed in individuals of Le (a+b–) or Le (a–b–) phenotype, whereas anti-Le^a is observed only in Le (a–b–) individuals. Anti-Le^a is not observed in the Le (a–b+) phenotype because these individuals synthesize a small amount of Le^a. It is interesting to note that some Le (a–b+) women can transiently become phenotypically Le (b–), with the development of anti-Le^b, during pregnancy. Some examples of anti-Le^b can demonstrate ABH specificity (anti-LebH, anti-ALe^b, anti-BLe^b), reacting more strongly with Le^b-positive RBCs of specific ABO types.

They are not associated with HDFN and are only rarely associated with hemolytic transfusion reactions. It is speculated that they could play a role in renal graft rejection in black, Le (a–b–) individuals (Spitalnik et al, 1984). For transfusion, patients with anti-Lewis antibodies reactive only at room temperature may be safely transfused with crossmatch–compatible RBCs. In contrast, rare examples of anti-Le^a or anti-Le^b that are hemolytic in vitro should receive antigen-negative, crossmatch-compatible RBCs. If antigen-negative blood is not available, infusion of plasma containing the soluble Lewis antigen of interest may be helpful in neutralizing or inhibiting circulating antibody before RBC transfusion (Klein & Anstee, 2006).

Biological Role

The Lewis blood group antigens play an important role in disease. Le (a–b–) is linked to a twofold increased risk of atherosclerotic disease and coronary death, with the strongest association observed in Le (a–b–) individuals carrying the le^{59} allele (Ellison et al, 1999; Djousse et al, 2007). Aberrant expression of sialyl-Le^a occurs in many gastrointestinal and urothelial cell cancers and may contribute to tumor metastasis. Sialyl-Le^a is a ligand for the endothelial adhesion molecule E-selectin and may mediate tumor cell–endothelium interactions (Takada et al, 1993). Sialyl-Le^a is also the epitope for the tumor marker CA 19-9, a useful serologic marker for monitoring patients with gastrointestinal and other malignancies.

Secretor status is a host susceptibility factor in several infectious diseases. *Helicobacter pylori*, a causative agent of gastritis and ulcers, binds H, Le^b, and Le^y antigens via BabA recognition of a terminal Fucα1–2Gal epitope (Boren et al, 1993; Cooling, 2015). The latter might explain the increased incidence of ulcers and stomach cancer among blood group O secretors (Yamaoka, 2008). A Lewis null and/or nonsecretor phenotype has also been linked with a higher incidence of recurrent *Candida* vaginitis and urinary tract infection (Cooling, 2015). Le^b and type 1 H antigen are also receptors for most norovirus and rotavirus strains. Several epidemiologic studies have shown that nonsecretors have inherent resistance against infection (Cooling, 2015). In contrast, nonsecretor was recently identified as a risk factor for necrotizing enterocolitis and sepsis in premature infants (Morrow et al, 2011).

DUFFY BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 008)

The Duffy (FY) blood group system was discovered in 1951 and contains five antigens: Fy^a, Fy^b, Fy3, Fy5, and Fy6. Fy^a and Fy^b are autosomal codominant antigens, whereas Fy3, Fy5, and Fy6 are high-incidence antigens present on all RBCs except the Duffy null phenotype. The Fy4 antigen, originally described on Fy (a–b–) RBCs, is now thought to be a distinct, unrelated antigen and is no longer included in the FY system.

Fy^a and Fy^b antigens are common in Caucasians, whereas the Duffy null or Fy (a–b–) phenotype is the predominant phenotype in blacks (Table 35-19). Fy^x is generally characterized by extremely weak Fy^b expression. In addition to RBCs, the Duffy antigens are expressed on cerebellar Purkinje cells and postcapillary venule endothelial cells. Duffy antigens have also been reported on endothelial cells of renal glomeruli, vasa recta, thyroid, and pulmonary capillaries, as well as on alveolar type 1 squamous cells and epithelial cells of renal collecting tubules (Chaudhuri et al, 1997; Hadley & Peiper, 1997). RBCs possess approximately 12,000 to 14,000 copies of DARC glycoprotein (DARC) per cell (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Biochemistry

The Duffy antigens reside on DARC or Duffy antigen receptor for chemokines (Fig. 35-10). The latter is a 338 amino acid, integral membrane glycoprotein, containing a 62 amino acid extracellular amino-terminus, seven transmembrane domains, and an intracellular carboxy-terminus rich in serine and threonine residues. The amino-terminal domain possesses three *N*-glycans (Czerwinski et al, 2007) and is linked to the third extracellular loop by a disulfide bond to form a hepatohelical structure. A second disulfide bond exists between the first and second extracellular loops. DARC exists as a homodimer or as a hetero-oligomer with CCR5, a β-chemokine receptor that plays a role in HIV internalization (Chakera et al, 2008).

The Fy^a, Fy^b, and Fy6 antigens reside on the amino-terminal domain of DARC and are sensitive to proteolytic cleavage. The negatively charged amino-terminal domain is the binding site for *P. vivax* PvDBP ligand. Site-directed mutagenesis has confirmed that amino acids 19 to 26, the

TABLE 35-19

Phenotype Frequencies in the Duffy System

REACTIONS WITH ANTI-				CAUCASIANS		BLACKS	
Fy^a	**Fy^b**	**Fy3**	**RBC Phenotype**	**Frequency***	**Genotypes†**	**Frequency***	**Genotypes†**
+	–	+	Fy (a+b–)	17	*FY*A/FY*A*	9	*FY*A/FY*A* *FY*A/FY*B^{ES}*
+	+	+	Fy (a+b+)	49	*FY*A/FY*B*	1	*FY*A/FY*B*
–	+	+	Fy (a–b+)	34	*FY*B/FY*B*	22	*FY*B/FY*B* FY*B/FY*B^{ES}
–	–	–	Fy (a–b–)	Very rare	*FY*amorph*	68	*FY*B^{ES}/FY*B^{ES}*
+/–	w	w	Fy (a+b^w) Fy (a–b^w)	<0.1%	*FY*A/FY*X* *FY*X/FY*X*	Very rare	*FY*A/FY*X* *FY*X/FY*B^{ES}*

++, Strong reactivity; *w,* weak reactivity.
*Frequency (%) U.S. population.
†*FY*A,* Fy^a allele; *FY*B,* Fy^b allele; *FY*B^{ES},* FY*B allele carrying a GATA-1 promoter mutation; *FY*X, FY*B* gene containing missense with weak Fy^b expression; *FY*amorph,* silent *FY* gene containing disruptive mutations (deletion, frameshift, nonsense). See accompanying text.

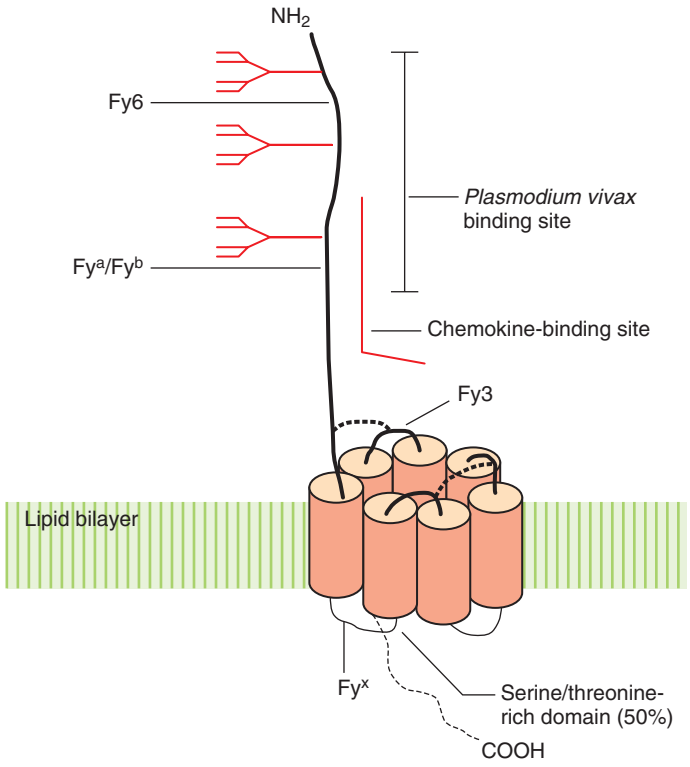


Figure 35-10 Duffy glycoprotein or Duffy antigen receptor for chemokine molecule (DARC). DARC contains a 62 amino acid, extracellular amino-terminal domain and seven transmembrane domains, indicated by solid amber cylinders. A disulfide bond exists between the amino-terminal domain and the third extracellular loop. A second disulfide bond exists between the first and second extracellular loops. Three *N*-glycosylation sites are indicated by branched structures. The sites of the Fy3, Fy6, and Fy^a/Fy^b antigens are shown where indicated. The binding site for *Plasmodium vivax* exists between amino acids 8 and 44 and includes the Fy6 and Fy^a/Fy^b antigens. The chemokine-binding site lies in a cleft between the amino-terminal domain and the third extracellular loop. The mutation leading to the Fy^x phenotype, characterized by weak Fy^b expression, is present in the first cytoplasmic loop.

Fy6 epitope, are critical for *P. vivax* binding (Tournamille et al, 2005). The high-incidence antigen Fy3 is believed to reside on the third extracellular loop (Hadley & Peiper, 1997; Wasniowska et al, 2004).

Molecular Biology

Located on chromosome 1q22-23, the Duffy gene *(FY)* is a 1014-bp gene containing two exons, a small upstream exon encoding the first seven amino acids, and a second exon encoding the rest of the molecule (Hadley & Peiper, 1997). The promoter region contains consensus sequences for multiple *cis*-regulatory elements, including AP-1, Sp1, and GATA-1, an erythroid transcription activator-binding protein that controls transcription of DARC in erythroid cells (Iwamoto et al, 1996). Phylogenetic studies indicate that *FY*B* is the ancestral gene of human and nonhuman primates (Li et al, 1997). Genetic studies have identified four Duffy alleles—*FY*A*, *FY*B*, *FY*B^{ES}*, and *FY*X*—responsible for the Fy^a, Fy^b, Fy_{null}, and Fy^x phenotypes, respectively (see Table 35-19). The codominant alleles, *FY*A* and *FY*B*, differ by a single amino acid (Gly42Asp). The Fy^x phenotype *(FY*X)*, characterized by extremely weak Fy^b expression (10% normal), arises from an R89C substitution in the first cytoplasmic loop, leading to protein instability (Yazdanbakhsh et al, 2000; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). Although rare, an *FY*A* allele bearing the R89C and weak Fy^a expression has been identified (Cooling, 2015).

Three distinct mechanisms are responsible for the Fy_{null} or Fy (a–b–) serologic phenotype. In Caucasians, the *FY* gene is disrupted *(FY*amorph)*, leading to complete absence of DARC on all tissues (Reid et al, 2014). As a result, these individuals can make alloantibodies to all Duffy antigens, including high-incidence antigens (Fy3, Fy5). In contrast, black Fy (a–b–) individuals are homozygous for *FY*B^{ES}*, an *FY*B* variant that possesses a point mutation in the *FY* gene promoter (–33T>C) that abrogates the consensus binding site for GATA-1. As a result, there is a selective loss of *FY* transcription in RBCs; however, FY transcription is retained in endothelial and epithelial cells, which utilize other promoter enhancer elements. Because Fy^b is expressed on nonerythroid cells, black Fy (a–b–) individuals do not make anti-Fy^b and only rarely make anti-Fy3. Finally, there is increasing recognition that some individuals, particularly donors, who historically typed as Fy (a–b–) by serology are actually Fy (a–b^{+w}) on genotyping (*FY*B^{ES}/FY*X*).

Duffy Antibodies

Antibodies against Fy^a, Fy^b, and other Duffy antigens are clinically significant. They are associated with HDFN and both immediate and delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions. They are usually of IgG isotype, reactive at 37° C, and are detected only in the IAT. Antibodies against Fy^a, Fy^b, and Fy6 antigens, which reside on the long amino-terminal domain of DARC, can be inhibited by prior protease digestion of RBCs. In contrast, Fy5 and Fy3 antigens are relatively resistant to protease digestion. Antibodies against Duffy antigens can demonstrate dosage.

Clinically, anti-Fy^a is the most common alloantibody encountered and can be observed in Fy (a–) individuals of all races. Anti-Fy^b is relatively uncommon and is observed primarily in nonblacks. Alloantibodies against the high-incidence antigens Fy3 and Fy5 are relatively rare, occurring predominantly in white, Fy_{null} individuals. Anti-Fy3 behaves like an anti-Fy^{a+b}, reacting with all Duffy-positive RBCs. Occasionally, potent anti-Fy3 can be produced by sickle cell, Fy (a–b–) patients despite the expression of Fy^b on nonerythroid tissues (Castilho et al, 2009). Anti-Fy5 also reacts like an anti-Fy^{a+b} but requires the presence of Rh antigens for reactivity. Anti-Fy6 has not been observed clinically but is the epitope for an anti-Duffy monoclonal antibody that blocks *P. vivax* binding (Tournamille et al, 2005).

Biological Role

DARC is a chemokine-binding protein, capable of binding several inflammatory chemokines from the C-X-C and C-C families (Gardner et al, 2004), including interleukin-8, RANTES (regulated upon activation, normal T cell–expressed and presumably secreted), and monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (see Fig. 35-10). Because DARC lacks a DRY motif, DARC does not transmit an intracellular signal upon binding chemokines. DARC can form heterodimers with the β-chemokine and HIV receptor

CCR5, suppressing CCR5 signaling (Chakera et al, 2008). DARC may facilitate leukocyte recruitment to sites of inflammation by establishing a chemokine gradient and transporting chemokines across activated endothelium (Horne & Woolley, 2009). In murine models, DARC functions in chemokine homeostasis and neutrophil recruitment, particularly during inflammatory insults. It is interesting to note that the absence of DARC in mice was protective against acute lung injury (Zarbock et al, 2010).

In humans, no distinct clinical syndrome is associated with a Fy_{null} phenotype; however, the Fy_{null} phenotype has been linked to lower neutrophil counts, susceptibility to infection, renal disease, and reduced graft survival following renal transplantation. Studies have linked low neutrophil counts in people of African ancestry to the FY^*B^{ES} allele (Reich et al, 2009), leading to speculation regarding the impact of the Fy_{null} phenotype and recovery from chemotherapy and other marrow insults. The role of DARC and Fy phenotype in renal transplantation is mixed, with some studies showing an increase in rejection and chronic lesions (Lerut et al, 2007; Horne et al, 2009). In patients with sickle cell disease, the Fy_{null} phenotype is associated with increased chronic organ damage and proteinuria (Afenyi-Annan et al, 2008). In contrast, it is believed that lower neutrophil counts could be beneficial against cerebral malaria (Cooling, 2015).

DARC is also the receptor for *P. vivax*, which binds DARC via PvDBP protein at the Fy6 epitope. Fy_{null} individuals are resistant to most *P. vivax* strains, providing a selective advantage to populations living in malaria endemic areas (Howes et al, 2011). Fy^a may also be protective against *P. vivax* and may account for the high incidence of Fya in Asia. Fy^a is a less efficient receptor, binding 40% to 50% less PvDBP than Fy^b. In the Amazon, the Fy(a+b–) phenotype is associated with a 250% lower risk of *P. vivax* infection (King et al, 2011). Finally, the Fy_{null} phenotype FY*BES/FY*BES) may play a role in HIV susceptibility; however, there are conflicting reports regarding the latter (Cooling, 2015).

KIDD BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 009)

The Kidd (JK) blood group system is strongly associated with delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions and with intravascular hemolysis (recall that most hemolysis with non-ABO antibodies is extravascular). It consists primarily of two allelic antigens: Jk^a and Jk^b. Inheritance is autosomal codominant with three predominant phenotypes (Table 35-20). A fourth phenotype, Jk_{null} or Jk (a–b–), is very rare, except among Polynesians (≤1%) and Finns. Weak or altered Jk expression due to novel *JK* alleles is also known (Whorley et al, 2009). In addition to RBCs, Kidd antigens are expressed along descending vasa recta endothelial cells of the renal medulla. Evidence suggests low-level, constitutive expression of Kidd on heart, skeletal muscle, colon, small intestine, thymus, brain, pancreas, spleen, prostate, bladder, and liver (Olives et al, 1996). More than 14,000 Kidd epitopes are present per human RBC (Lucien et al, 2002).

Null Phenotypes

Jk_{null} is autosomal recessive, reflecting homozygosity for a JK^{null} or amorph allele (see Table 35-20). *In(Jk)* is a second Jk (a–b–) phenotype that is characterized by very weak Kidd expression. Similar to *In(Lu)*, the *In(Jk)* phenotype is autosomal dominant owing to a suppressor gene at a distant, unrelated locus. It is interesting to note that Jk_{null} RBCs are resistant to lysis by 2M urea, a lytic agent used by some automated hematology analyzers. *In(Jk)* RBCs have intermediate resistance to urea (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). No change in gas permeability is seen with Jk_{null} cells (Endeward et al, 2006).

Biochemistry

Apparent resistance to urea by Jk_{null} RBCs became clear with cloning and isolation of the human erythroid urea transporter (UT-B). The latter is a 43- to 45-kD multipass glycoprotein, which shares 60% homology with the vasopressin-sensitive urea transporter of rabbits (UT2) and humans (HUT2, UT-A) (Lucien et al, 1998). The molecule is a 391 amino acid protein with 10 transmembrane domains and a cytosolic amino- and carboxy-terminus (Fig. 35-11). A single *N*-glycan is present on the third extracellular loop (Asn222) and expresses ABO antigens (Lucien et al, 2002). The Jk^a/Jk^b antigens reside on the fourth extracellular loop at amino acid 280. The third extracellular loop may play a key role in urea transport.

Molecular Biology

The Kidd glycoprotein is encoded by a 30-kb gene *(JK, SLC14A1, UT-B)* on chromosome 18q12-21. This is the same location as the human *HUT2/UT-A* urea transporter (61% homology), suggesting that the two genes arose by gene duplication. The *JK* gene is organized over 11 exons, although only exons 4 to 11 encode the mature protein (Lucien et al, 1998). Similar to many blood group genes, the promoter region contains a GATA-1 consensus sequence, as well as other *cis*-regulatory elements (AP-2, AP-3, NF-ATp, Sp1, Ets-1). A single-bp transition (G823A) is the molecular basis of the Jk^a/Jk^b polymorphism, resulting in an Asp280 (Jk^a) or Asn280 (Jk^b) (Lucien et al, 2002). Seven alleles containing missense mutations are responsible for weak Jk^a (*JK*01W*) and Jk^b (*JK*02W*) expression, and 14 null alleles (*JK*0N*) are recognized by ISBT. The etiology of the *In(Jk)* phenotype is unknown.

Kidd Antibodies

Clinically, anti-Jk or Kidd antibodies are a common cause of hemolytic transfusion reactions, accounting for nearly one-quarter of all delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions and 75% of those with true hemolytic

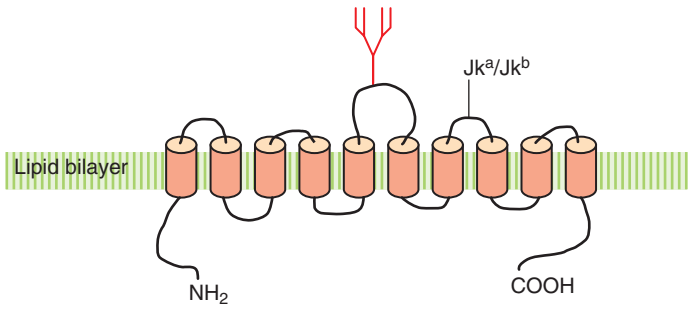


Figure 35-11 The Kidd/urea transporter glycoprotein. The site of Jk^a/Jk^b polymorphism at residue 280 is indicated. The *N*-glycosylation site is indicated by a branched structure on the third extracellular loop. The 10 transmembrane domains are represented by amber cylinders.

TABLE 35-20
Phenotypes of the Kidd System

REACTIONS WITH ANTI-				FREQUENCY (%) U.S. POPULATION		
Jk^a	**Jk^b**	**Jk3**	**Phenotype**	**Caucasian**	**Black**	**Comments**
+	0	+	Jk (a+b–)	28	57	Autosomal codominant
+	+	+	Jk (a+b+)	49	34	Sensitive 2M urea
0	+	+	Jk (a–b+)	23	9	
Null Phenotypes (Jk_{null})						
0	0	0	Jk (a–b–)	Very rare	Very rare	Autosomal recessive Resistant 2M urea
0/w*	0/w*	w*	Jk (a–b–)	—	—	*In (Jk)*, autosomal dominant Rare, Japanese only Partially resistant 2M urea

*Weak Jk antigens detected only by adsorption and elution techniques.

sequelae (Ness et al, 1990). They are usually of IgG1 or IgG3 isotype and are capable of activating complement (see Table 35-5). Antibody reactivity can be enhanced with enzyme-treated RBCs and by the presence of complement. Anti-Jk is not enhanced by polybrene. An anti-Jk3, which reacts with all RBCs except Jk_{null}, is observed in Jk_{null} individuals (see Table 35-20). Anti-Jk3 is reported to react with some Jk(a+^{w}) phenotypes (Whorley et al, 2009). Jk(a+^{w}) and Jk(b+^{w}) can also give discordant typing with commercial typing reagents (Whorley et al, 2009).

Anti-Jk antibodies can be difficult to detect or identify in the blood bank. Anti-Jk antibodies are often of low titer with weak avidity and can display dosage in vitro. Furthermore, anti-Jk antibodies are frequently transient, disappearing rapidly after immune stimulation. As a consequence, patients previously sensitized to Kidd antigens may be negative for anti-Jk antibodies in later blood samples. Following transfusion of crossmatch-compatible, Jk-positive RBCs, sensitized patients can mount a brisk anamnestic antibody response with rapid and extensive in vivo hemolysis as RBCs are cleared by extravascular and intravascular hemolysis. Although uncommon, anti-Jk can cause a mild HDFN.

Biological Role

Biologically, JK/UT-B functions in the facilitated transport of urea. In kidney, transport of urea by JK/UT-B on vasa recta endothelial cells is thought to help stabilize osmotic gradients in the renal medulla during the concentration of urine. On RBCs, JK/UT-B may help preserve the osmotic stability of RBCs as they pass through the kidney. Although Jk_{null} individuals exhibit a slightly decreased capacity to concentrate urine, the absence of JK/UT-B is not associated with a clinical syndrome. It is likely that other mechanisms exist to compensate or reduplicate the function of JK/UT-B on tissues (Lucien et al, 1998). Because Jk antigens are strongly expressed by kidney, there is some suggestion they could act as alloantigens in renal transplant patients. Four case reports describe the concurrent allograft rejection with new Jk alloantibodies several years after transplantation and transfusion exposure (Rourk & Squires, 2012).

DIEGO BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 010)

The Diego blood group system (DI) consists of 22 antigens, including five sets of allelic antigens: Di^{a}/Di^{b} (DI1/DI2), Wr^{a}/Wr^{b} (DI3/DI4), Hg(a+)/Mo(a+) (DI12/DI11), Wu/DISK (DI9/DI22), and Sw(a)/SW1 (DI14/DI22). Most antigens (20/22) are rare, low-incidence antigens present on less than 1% of donors. In general, there are no apparent racial differences except Di^{a}, which is rare in all populations except those of Mongolian ancestry, Asians, and native South American Indians. In some South American Indian populations, the frequency of Di^{a} can reach 50% (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). In addition to RBCs, Diego antigens are expressed by human kidney along the collecting ducts (Tanner, 1993). One million copies of Diego glycoprotein (AE1) are present per RBC.

Biochemistry

The Diego blood group system resides on Band 3, also known as AE1. AE1 is a 100-kD, 991 amino acid glycoprotein containing two functionally distinct domains: a large 40-kD amino-terminal cytoplasmic domain and a transmembrane domain comprising the carboxy-terminal half of the molecule (Fig. 35-12). On RBCs, AE1 is an oligomer, usually existing as a dimer or tetramer through the formation of intramolecular disulfide bonds. The carboxy-terminal is associated with carbonic anyhydrase, whereas the amino-terminal cytoplasmic domain binds several key cytoskeletal proteins (band 4.1, band 4.2, and ankyrin) and glycolytic enzymes: glutaraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, aldolase, and phosphofructokinase. Binding of hemochromes or denatured Hg to the extreme

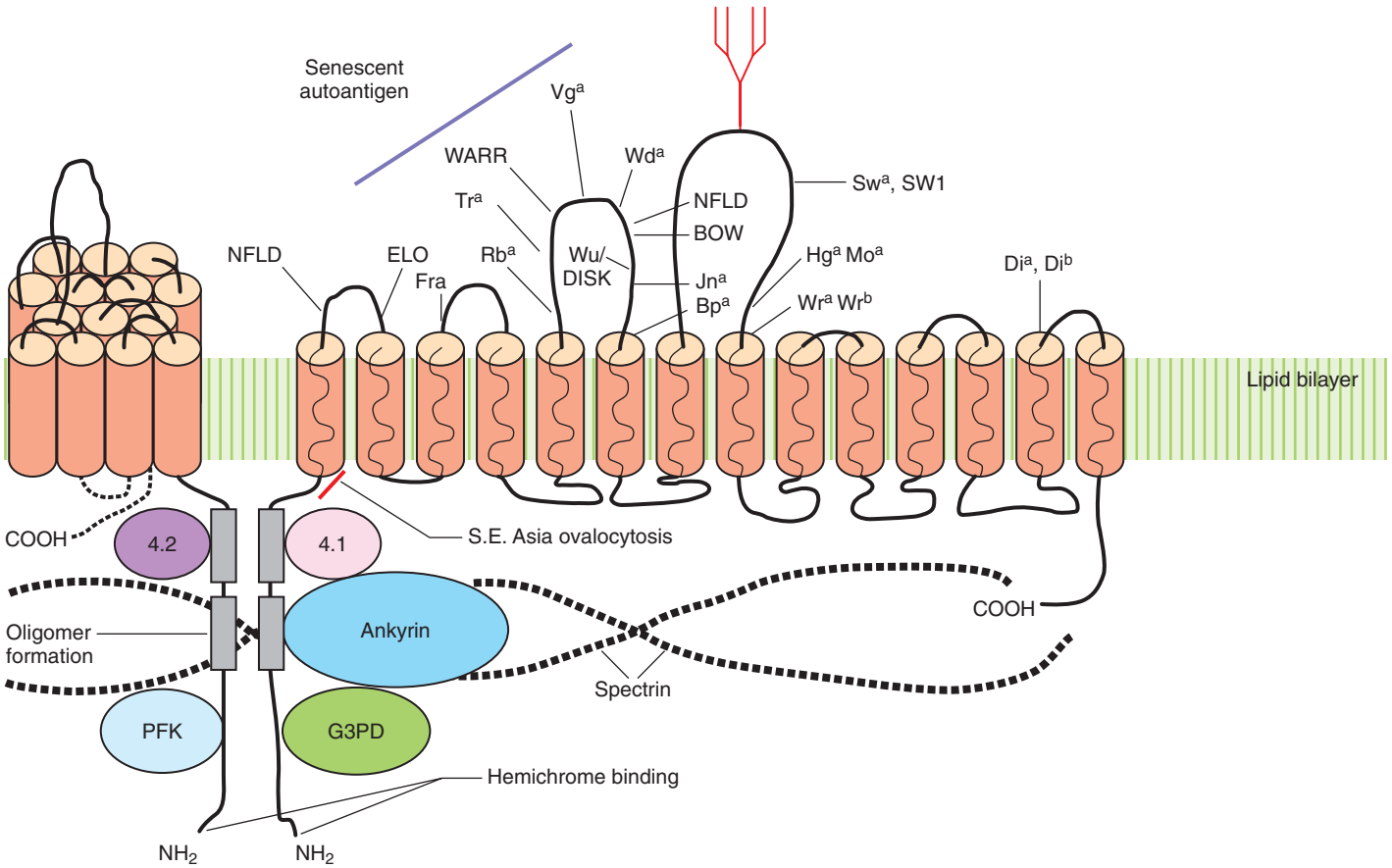


Figure 35-12 Structure of anion exchange protein AE1 (Band 3). AE1 is a multipass glycoprotein with 14 transmembrane domains, indicated by solid amber cylinders. The Diego blood group antigens reside along the extracellular loops and are indicated by solid lines. The AE1 senescent autoantigen is on the third extracellular loop between Rb^{a} and Vg^{a} antigens. The massive *N*-glycan is shown by a branched structure on the fourth extracellular loop. The large cytoplasmic domain has binding sites for cytoskeletal proteins 4.2, 4.1, and ankyrin, as well as the glycolytic enzymes phosphofructokinase (PFK) and glutaraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (G3PD). In the red cell membrane, AE1 exists as oligomers (dimers, tetramers) linked by interchain disulfide bonds along the amino-terminal cytoplasmic domain *(solid rectangles)*. An 8 amino acid deletion at the boundary of the amino-terminal cytoplasmic domain and the first transmembrane domain is responsible for Southeast Asia ovalocytosis (SAO).

amino-terminus of AE1 is believed to play a role in Heinz body formation. AE1 is a critical element in both ankyrin and junctional complexes that provide vertical and lateral stability to the membrane, respectively (Burton & Bruce, 2011).

The remainder of AE1 is membrane associated, containing 12 to 14 transmembrane domains, which constitute the carboxy-terminal half of the molecule. Whereas the amino-terminal domain is involved in membrane stability, the carboxy-terminal domain functions as an anion transporter, facilitating transfusion of Cl^- and HCO_3^- anions across the cell membrane (Tanner, 1993). AE1 is closely associated with several membrane proteins important to red cell function that is often referred to as a *band 3 metabolon* or *macrocomplex* (Burton & Bruce, 2011). Other proteins physically associated with AE1 include Rh complex, glycophorins, aquaporin, glucose transporter, CD47, and carbonic anhydrase. The extracellular domain is also the site of all the Diego antigens described to date. There is a single *N*-glycosylation site, which displays a massive, highly branched, polylactosaminoglycan with both ABO and I blood group activity (Cooling, 2010). It is estimated that nearly half of all ABO epitopes on RBCs are associated with AE1.

Molecular Biology

AE1 is the product of a 20-exon, 17-kb gene *(SLC4A1)* on chromosome 17q21-q22. Di(b+) is considered the reference allele (DI*02). Every Diego antigen identified to date is the result of an amino acid polymorphism in the translated protein (see Table 35-26 and Fig. 35-12). The Diego system also contains two examples of allelic, low-incidence antigens: Mo^a/Hg^a and Jn^a/KREP. In each case, two distinct amino acid substitutions at the same amino acid residue lead to different alloantigens. A similar example exists in the Kell system (Kp^a, Kp^b, and Kp^c).

The most interesting Diego antigen, however, is Wr^b. As stated earlier, AE1 is topically associated with GYPA in the RBC membrane. RBCs lacking GYPA (En [a–] phenotype) are phenotypically Wr (a–b–), implying that Wr^b is on GYPA. Available evidence now suggests that Wr^b is formed by an electrostatic interaction between GYPA and the Wr^b antigen (Glu658) (Poole et al, 1999). Which specific amino acid on GYPA is critical to Wr^b formation is still a matter of debate, but clearly part of the Wr^b epitope involves amino acids on GYPA (see Fig. 34-3).

Diego Antibodies

Antibodies against Diego blood group antigens can be immune stimulated or naturally occurring. Antibodies against Di^a, Di^b, Wr^b, and ELO are usually immune stimulated. These antibodies are of IgG isotype and are detected in the AHG phase of testing. Anti-Di^a, Di^b, and Wr^b can be associated with decreased red cell survival, hemolytic transfusion reactions, and HDFN. Anti-Wr^b is also associated with autoimmune hemolytic anemia (Issitt & Anstee, 1998).

In contrast, antibodies against the majority of other Diego antigens are usually naturally occurring, room temperature, saline agglutinins. Anti-Wr^a is particularly common, occurring in 1 in 100 donors. Antibodies against Wd^a and WARR are also fairly common, with anti-WARR reported in 13% to 18% of donors (Issitt & Anstee, 1998).

Biological Role

Functionally, AE1 plays a critical role in gas transport and acid-base equilibrium. To facilitate the removal of CO_2, RBCs hydrate CO_2 via carbonic anhydrase to form bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-), which is readily soluble in plasma. As the level of intracellular HCO_3^- rises, RBCs exchange HCO_3^- ions for Cl^- in plasma (the Cl^- shift, or Hamburger shift). This process is mediated by AE1 as RBCs pass through capillaries and small capillary venules. Because of the high copy number of AE1 on the RBC membrane, anion exchange is 90% complete within 0.4 to 0.5 second. An increase in HCO_3^- capacity and osmotic resistance is observed with Miltenberger III red cells owing to significantly higher AE1 expression (Hsu et al, 2009). In the kidney, AE1 is expressed along the basolateral membrane of type A intercalated cells of renal collecting ducts, where it functions in acid secretion and bicarbonate readsorption (Tanner, 1993). Given the physiologic importance of AE1, it is not surprising that Diego null phenotype is considered embryonic lethal.

AE1 also plays a role in the RBC cytoskeleton, impacting membrane stability and red cell circulation (see Fig. 35-12). Not surprisingly, mutations in AE1 are associated with red cell abnormalities. Southeast Asia ovalocytosis (SAO) is due to a 27 bp deletion (SLC4A1Δ27) in the amino-cytoplasmic domain and is common in malaria-endemic areas of the Pacific. Affected individuals are heterozygous for the mutation and have an apparent increased resistance to severe malaria (Cooling, 2015). The mutation affects AE1 oligomerization, membrane diffusion, and rigidity, suggesting that SAO red cells may be more susceptible to splenic clearance. AE1 is a target of senescent autoantibodies (Kay, 1994). In addition, red cell damage is often accompanied by AE1 clustering, facilitating removal of red cells damaged by malaria, cold storage, or other insults (Karon et al, 2009; Cooling, 2015).

Finally, AE1 was recently identified as a receptor for *Bartonella*, the cause of Oroya fever, trench fever, bacillary angiomatosis and "cat scratch" disease (Cooling, 2015). Unlike malaria, *Bartonella* does not impact red cell survival or function, leading to prolonged and chronic bacteremia. There is no correlation between *Bartonella* and Di^a phenotype, despite the high incidence of both in some areas of South America.

CARTWRIGHT BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 011)

Discovered in 1956, the Cartwright (Yt) blood group system consists of two autosomal codominant antigens: Yt^a and Yt^b. Yt^a is a high-incidence antigen expressed by 99.8% of Caucasian donors. The incidence of Yt^b varies by race, ranging from 0% in Japanese to 24% to 26% in the Mideast (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). Yt antigens are missing on PNH III RBCs, which are devoid of all glycophosphoinositol (GPI)-linked glycoproteins. In addition to RBCs, Cartwright antigens are expressed on neural synapses and neuromuscular junctions (Masson et al, 1994). A total of 7000 to 10,000 molecules of Yt glycoprotein are present per RBC.

Biochemistry

The Cartwright antigens are located on acetylcholinesterase (AChE), a β-carboxyesterase responsible for degradation of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine. Several different molecular forms of AChE have been isolated, including large heteromeric forms composed of several catalytic subunits covalently linked to collagen. On RBCs, AChE is expressed as a palmitoylated, GPI-linked glycoprotein (Fig. 35-13) (Li et al, 1991). Human erythrocyte AChE is unique in the palmitoylation or covalent linkage of a palmitic fatty acid to the inositol ring, which renders the molecule resistant to phospholipase C. In RBC membranes, AChE usually exists as a 160-kD dimer and possesses both *N*- and *O*-linked glycans.

Molecular Biology

The gene for AChE possesses four exons, spanning 4.5 to 4.7 kb, on chromosome 7q22. Alternate splicing of exon 3 is responsible for the GPI-linked form of AChE observed in RBCs (Li et al, 1991). The Yt^a and Yt^b antigens represent a single–amino acid polymorphism at residue 322, where His322 is Yt^a and Asn322 is Yt^b (Bartels et al, 1993). The Yt^a/Yt^b polymorphism is not located near the catalytic site of the enzyme and has no effect on enzyme activity (Masson et al, 1994).

Cartwright Antibodies

In general, anti-Yt^a and anti-Yt^b are usually clinically benign, although shortened red cell survival and even delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions have been reported. Neither antibody is associated with HDFN (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). Anti-Yt^a and anti-Yt^b are of IgG isotype, arising from immune stimulation, and are usually detected in the IAT. Despite the high incidence of Yt^a in the general population, anti-Yt^a is more common than anti-Yt^b, suggesting that Yt^a is the more immunogenic antigen. Anti-Yt^a is also more likely to cause a positive monocyte-monolayer assay with decreased red cell survival (Arndt & Garratty, 2004).

Biological Role

AChE is a critical enzyme required for the rapid degradation of acetylcholine on postsynaptic membranes of nerves and muscles. The role of AChE in RBCs is unknown.

XG BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 012)

The Xg blood group system contains a single antigen, Xg^a. As a result, only two phenotypes are known: Xg^a-positive and Xg^a-negative. Because the Xg^a antigen is encoded by a gene on the X chromosome, the incidence of the Xg^a-positive phenotype is higher among women. Among Caucasians, approximately 89% of women and 66% of men are Xg^a-positive. Similar results have been found in other ethnic populations (Johnson, 2011). Xg appears to be specific for RBCs. Approximately 9000 molecules of Xg^a are present per RBC (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Biochemistry and Molecular Biology

The Xg^a antigen is located on a 24- to 29-kD, 180 amino acid glycoprotein named XG protein. A type 1 glycoprotein, XG protein possesses a large,

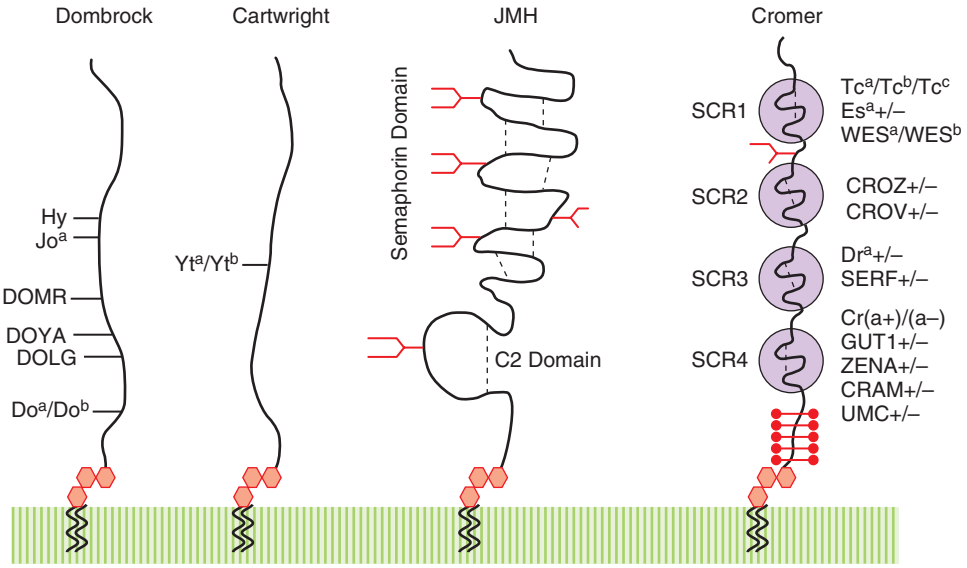


Figure 35-13 Blood group antigens on glycophosphoinositol-linked glycoproteins.

TABLE 35-21
Scianna Blood Group Antigens

Antigen (High Frequency)	Percent Donors	Amino Acid Change (High→Low Frequency)	Percent Donors	Antigen (Low Frequency)
Sc1	99	Gly57>Arg	0.7	Sc2
Sc3	100	307delGA	Rare	SC_{null}
		Arg332stop		
		Pro>Ala	Rare	(Rd) Sc4
Sc5 (STAR)	100	Glu>Lys		
Sc6 (SCER)	100	Arg81>Gln		
Sc7 (SCAN)	100	Gly35>Ser		

From Reid and Lomas-Francis (2012).

117 amino acid, amino-terminal extracellular domain; a single transmembrane domain; and a short, carboxy-terminal cytoplasmic tail. Of 11 potential *O*-glycosylation sites, only three appear to be glycosylated. The protein is encoded by a 2.4-kb gene *(XG)* located on the X chromosome at the pseudoautosomal boundary/X-specific boundary (pAB1X).

In the RBC membrane, the XG protein is associated with a second 32 kD sialoglycoprotein, MIC2 or CD99, possibly as a heterodimer. Evidence suggesting a near-neighbor relationship of the XG and MIC2 proteins includes MIC2 inhibition of anti-Xg^a antibodies and coimmunoprecipitation of MIC2 by anti-Xg^a. In women, Xg(a–) is always associated with low CD99 expression. Conversely, CD99 is elevated in Xg(a–) men (Johnson, 2011).

Xg^a Antibodies

Anti-Xg^a is not associated with hemolytic transfusion reactions or HDFN (Johnson, 2011). Anti-Xg^a may be immune stimulated or naturally occurring. Most examples are of IgG isotype, including some capable of activating complement. Because of differences in Xg^a-positive phenotype between men and women, most examples (>85%) of anti-Xg^a are observed in men.

SCIANNA BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 013)

The Scianna (Sc) blood group system contains seven antigens. Sc1 and Sc2 are antithetical antigens, with most individuals typing as Sc:1,-2. Sc2 and Sc4/Rd are low-incidence antigens, whereas Sc3, Sc5, Sc6, and Sc7 are high-incidence antigens (Table 35-21) (Brunker et al, 2011). Sc3 is a high-incidence antigen present on all RBCs except Sc_{null} (Sc: –1, –2, –3). Sc-1,2 is more common among oceanic populations of the Pacific Ocean, whereas Sc4 is found most often in Slavic and Ashkenazi Jews. Scianna appears to be specific for RBCs and erythropoietic tissues.

Biochemistry

Scianna antigens reside on *e*rythrocyte *m*embrane-*a*ssociated *p*rotein (ERMAP), a 60- to 68-kD, 446 amino acid glycoprotein. Similar to Lutheran, Ok, and LW proteins, ERMAP is a member of the Ig superfamily. The molecule is a type 1 single-pass transmembrane protein possessing a single IgV domain and a large cytoplasmic domain that is likely involved in signal transduction. The latter possess both SH3 and B30.2 domains, as well as multiple phosphorylation sequences for protein kinase C, tyrosine kinase, and casein kinase II. The molecule possesses 11 cysteine residues and is sensitive to sulfhydryl-reducing agents.

Molecular Biology

The *ERMAP* gene resides on chromosome 1p34 and consists of 11 exons spanning 19 kb. Most Sc antigens are the result of an SNP and amino acid polymorphism (see Table 35-21). Two Sc-null alleles are reported: *SC01N.01*, which contains a nucleotid deletion and frameshift, and *SC01N.02*, which contains a nonsense mutation (R332Stop). An additional amino acid polymorphism (His26>Tyr) has been identified in the leader sequence, which is not expressed on the mature red cell protein (Brunker & Flegel, 2011). Approximately 25% of Caucasians are positive for the His26>Tyr polymorphism.

Scianna Antibodies

Anti-Scianna antibodies are rare and generally benign. They are usually of IgG isotype, with some examples binding complement. Most examples are immune stimulated; however, naturally occurring anti-Sc2 antibodies are known. The antigens are relatively resistant to enzymes but can be weakened with DTT and AET. They are not a cause of transfusion reactions but can lead to delays due to difficulty in finding crossmatch-compatible blood. Anti-Sc4 and anti-Sc2 have been associated with HDFN. Autoantibodies against Sc1 and Sc3 antigens have been associated with warm autoimmune hemolytic anemia (Brunker & Flegel, 2011). Anti-Scianna antibodies can be neutralized with soluble recombinant ERMAP protein (Seltsam et al, 2009).

Biological Role

The biological role of ERMAP is unknown, although its structure suggests that it may play a role in RBC adhesion and signaling. The IgV domain possesses a C1q recognition sequence that may mediate adhesion between marrow macrophages and erythroblasts in erythroid islands. Because ERMAP shares homology with the B7 family of proteins (CD80, CD86) and neural autoantigens, it is speculated that ERMAP could be involved in immune recognition and autoimmune anemia (Brunker & Flegel, 2011).

TABLE 35-22
Phenotypes of the Dombrock System

REACTIONS WITH ANTI-DOMBROCK ANTIBODIES							Phenotype	ISBT	Amino Acid Change	FREQUENCY (%) U.S. POPULATION	
Do^a	Do^b	Gy^a	Jo^a	Hy	D06	D07				Caucasian	Black
+	0	+	+	+	+	+	Do (a+b–)	DO1	Asn265	18	11
+	+	+	+	+	+	+	Do (a+b+)			49	44
0	+	+	+	+	+	+	Do (a–b+)	DO2	Asp265	33	45
Null/Weak Phenotypes											
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Gy(a–) or Do$_{null}$[†]	DO3	Loss exon 2*	Rare	Rare
0	w	w	0/w	0	w	+	Hy(–)	DO4	Gly108>Val	Rare	Rare
w	0/w	+	0	w	w	0/w	Jo(a–)	DO5	Thr117>Ile	Rare	Rare
0	0	w	w	w	0	?	DOYA(–)	DO6	Tyr183>Asp	Rare	Rare
0	+	0	w	w	?	0	DOMR(–)	DO7	Ala144>Glu	Rare	Rare
+	0	+	+	+	?	?	DOLG (-)	DO8	Leu225Gln	Rare	Rare
+	0	+	+	+	+	?	DOLC (-)	DO9	Thr189Met	Rare	Rare

ISBT, International Society of Blood Transfusion.
*Loss of exon 2 has been associated with splice-site, frameshift, and nonsense mutations (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2004).
[†]Also associated with PNH III red blood cells (RBCs), which lack all glycophosphoinositol (GPI)-linked glycoproteins, including Dombrock, Cartwright, Cromer, JMH, and CD59 antigens.

DOMBROCK BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 014)

The Dombrock blood group system contains seven antigens. Do^a (DO1) and Do^b (DO2) are autosomal codominant antigens expressed by 67% and 82% of white donors, respectively (Table 35-22). Gy^a, Hy, Jo^a, DOYA, and DOMR are high-incidence antigens found on virtually all donors. In addition to RBCs, Dombrock mRNA has been identified in fetal liver and spleen (Gubin et al, 2000).

Null/Weak Phenotypes

The Do$_{null}$ or Gy(a–) phenotype is a rare, autosomal recessive phenotype (see Table 35-28). An acquired Do$_{null}$ phenotype can be observed in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria type III (PNH-III). A hematopoietic stem cell disorder, PNH III is characterized by chronic hemolysis due to an absence of all GPI-linked glycoproteins, including Cromer, Dombrock, and Cartwright antigens.

Loss of one high-incidence Dombrock antigen is often accompanied by weakened expression of other Dombrock antigens (see Table 35-22). This is due to the heterogeneity of Dombrock alleles, which carry different combinations of Dombrock antigens (Reid, 2005; Baleotti et al, 2006). Hy(–) and DOMR(–) individuals typically have weakened Do^b and Gy^a and weak/absent Jo^a expression, whereas Jo(a–) is often associated with weak Do^a, Hy, and Gy expression (Reid, 2005; Costa et al, 2009). The one example of DOYA(–) types as Co(a–-b–), with weakened expression of Gy, Hy, and Jo^a (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Biochemistry

Dombrock antigens reside on an adenosine diphosphate (ADP)-ribosyltransferase (CD297), which catalyzes the transfer of ADP-ribose from nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) to a protein acceptor. The cloned molecule is a 47- to 58-kD, 314 amino acid glycoprotein that is anchored into the RBC membrane via a GPI glycolipid tail (GPI-linked; see Fig. 35-13). The molecule has five potential *N*-glycosylation sites, two myristoylation sites, and five cysteine residues (Gubin et al, 2000; Daniels, 2002). As a consequence, Dombrock can be destroyed by disulfide-reducing agents and phosphatidylinositol phospholipase C, which cleaves GPI-linked proteins (Gubin et al, 2000).

Molecular Biology

The gene for Dombrock *(ART4)* spans 14 kb on chromosome 12p13.2-12.1. The gene consists of three exons, although exon 2 encodes more than 70% of the translated protein and includes all seven Dombrock antigens. Do^a, Do^b, Jo^a, Hy, DOYA, and DOMR are the result of a single–amino acid polymorphism (see Table 35-22). The Do$_{null}$ or Gy(a–) phenotype is the result of mutations that abolish exon 2 (Reid, 2005).

Dombrock Antibodies

Anti-Dombrock antibodies can be clinically significant, although many examples are benign. They are commonly found in mixtures of alloantibodies and can be difficult to identify. Anti-Dombrock antibodies are capable of causing shortened RBC survival and acute and delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions. Transfusion reactions and accelerated clearance due to anti-Dombrock antibodies can be missed in routine testing, with implicated units often testing as crossmatch-compatible, even in a full IAT crossmatch. Moreover, a posttransfusion direct antiglobulin test and eluate can be negative with no observable rise in antibody titer with time (Reid, 2005; Baumgarten et al, 2006). Anti-Dombrock is not associated with HDFN.

Antibodies against Dombrock antigens are usually of IgG isotype, arising from immune stimulation by transfusion or pregnancy. Antibody reactivity can be enhanced by the use of papain- or ficin-treated RBCs. Conversely, antibody reactivity is reduced or abolished by the treatment of red cells with sulfhydryl-reducing agents (DTT, AET), trypsin, chymotrypsin, and pronase. Anti-Dombrock can deteriorate with in vitro storage, complicating pretransfusion testing (Baumgarten et al, 2006). In addition, Dombrock titers may decrease over time in vivo, falling below the level of detection (Reid, 2005).

Biological Role

Although Dombrock is an ADP-ribosyltransferase, no enzyme activity has been reported on RBC membranes (Reid, 2005). No known clinical syndrome is associated with a Do$_{null}$ phenotype. It has been hypothesized that Dombrock may play a role in clearing circulating NAD+ and/or post-translational modification of proteins (Reid, 2005). Dombrock may also contribute to integrin-mediated cell adhesion via an RGD motif at the Do^b antigen; the RGD motif is abolished in the Do^a phenotype.

COLTON BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 015)

The Colton blood group system was initially identified in 1967 and consists of two autosomal codominant antigens, Co^a and Co^b, and a third high-incidence antigen ("TOR") (Arnaud et al, 2008). Co^a is a high-incidence antigen present on 99.7% of donors. Co^b is expressed by less than 11% of donors, with only 0.3% being Co (a–b+). Although very rare, a Co (a–b–) or null phenotype is reported. Colton antigens are expressed on RBCs, renal proximal tubules, thin descending limb of Henle, renal vasa recta endothelium, choroid plexus, ciliary body, microvessels, gallbladder, placenta, and some epithelial cells. More than 120,000 to 160,000 molecules of Colton glycoprotein are present per RBC.

Biochemistry

The Colton blood group antigens reside on aquaporin 1 (AQP-1) or channel-forming integral protein, a water-selective membrane channel (Fig. 35-14). Cloned in 1991, AQP-1 is a 269 amino acid multipass integral membrane protein containing six transmembrane domains. Crystallographic studies suggest that the first intracellular and third extracellular loops fold back into the plasma membrane, overlapping at two Asp-Pro-Ala (NPA) sequences to form a water channel. A single *N*-glycosylation

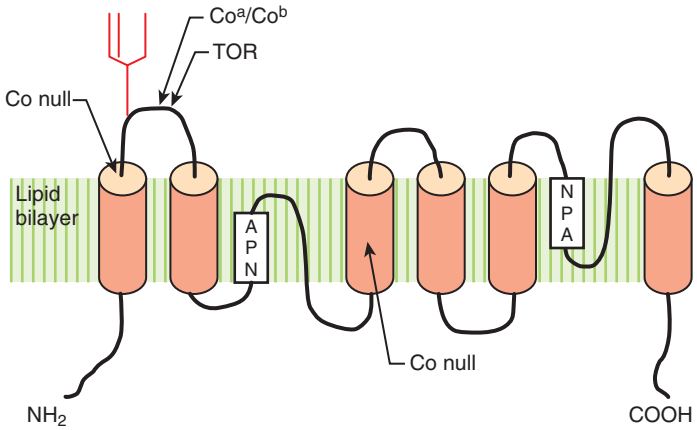


Figure 35-14 Structure of aquaporin-1 (AQP-1, channel-forming integral protein [CHIP]). AQP-1 is a multipass protein containing six transmembrane domains, indicated by solid amber cylinders. The first cytoplasmic and third extracellular loops fold back into the lipid bilayer, overlapping at two Asp-Pro-Ala (NPA) motifs, to form a water channel. The *N*-glycosylation site is indicated by a branched structure on the first extracellular loop. The Co^a/Co^b polymorphism at amino acid 45 is indicated by a solid line. TOR is a rare antigen adjacent to the Co^a/Co^b polymorphism at amino acid 47. The sites of two mutations leading to a Colton null phenotype are also shown.

site (Asn42), capable of expressing ABH antigens, is found in the first extracellular loop near the Co^a/Co^b and TOR epitopes (residues 45 and 47). The latter is variably glycosylated in vivo, leading to a spectrum of AQP-1 glycoforms, ranging from 40 to 60 kD (Agre et al, 1994). In RBC membranes, AQP-1 exists as a homotetramer, a square array of AQP-1 monomers, which may help stabilize the structure and functional integrity of individual monomers (Knepper, 1994). AQP-1 co-localizes with AE1-ankyrin metabolon complex (Burton & Bruce, 2011).

Molecular Biology

AQP-1 is a 17-kb gene on chromosome 7p14. The gene has four exons and both TATA and Sp1 consensus sequences in the promoter region (Moon et al, 1993). The Co^a and Co^b antigens are the result of an A314T polymorphism, leading to Ala45 (Co^a; *CO*01*) or Val45 (Co^b; *CO*02*) (Smith et al, 1994). A third polymorphism (Gln47>Arg) just distal to the Co^a/Co^b polymorphism was recently identified in an alloimmunized Turkish patient (TOR) with an apparent anti-Co3 (Arnaud et al, 2008). Six CO-null alleles are described, as well as a Co-3 weak allele (Co$_{mod}$; Pro38>Leu). An acquired Co$_{null}$ phenotype is also reported in rare patients with monosomy 7 and congenital dyserythropoietic anemia (Agre et al, 1994).

Colton Antibodies

Anti-Colton antibodies can be clinically significant: They can be associated with shortened RBC survival, hemolytic transfusion reactions, and HDFN (see Table 35-5). Antibodies to Co^a and Co^b are usually of the IgG isotype, resulting from immune stimulation by transfusion or pregnancy. Some examples of anti-Co^a and anti-Co^b are reported to bind complement. Anti-Colton antibodies are detectable in the AHG phase of testing and are enhanced with protease-treated RBCs. Rare Co$_{null}$ and "TOR-negative" individuals can make an anti-Co3 (anti-Co^{a+b}), an alloantibody that reacts with both Co (a+b–) and Co (a–b+) RBCs (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012; Arnaud et al, 2008).

Biological Role

Biologically, AQP-1 is a major molecular water channel on RBCs that facilitates the concentration of urine in kidney (Verkman, 2009). Co$_{null}$ red cells also have decreased CO_2 permeability (Endeward et al, 2006). Despite its importance in water regulation, Colton-null individuals show few or no adverse clinical effects. Co$_{null}$ RBCs appear morphologically normal in appearance and number, although mild decreases in RBC life span are reported (Mathai et al, 1996). The absence of any clinically significant hematologic sequelae in Co$_{null}$ individuals is most likely due to the presence of a second aquaporin, AQP-3. A glycerol and, perhaps, urea transporter, AQP-3 (GIL blood group) is moderately permeable to water and appears to account for the residual water permeability on Co$_{null}$ RBCs (Roudier et al, 1998; Verkman, 2009).

LW BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 016)

Named in honor of its discoverers, the LW, or Landsteiner-Wiener, blood group system is most important for its role in the history of the Rh blood group system. Landsteiner and Wiener originally developed antibodies against the LW antigens by immunizing rabbits with rhesus monkey red cells. The resulting "anti-Rh" antibodies were initially believed to recognize the RhD antigen; however, later investigators proved that the antibodies developed by Landsteiner and Wiener recognized a non-Rh (LW) antigen.

The LW blood group system consists of two allelic antigens: LW^a and LW^b. LW^a is a high-frequency antigen (99% of white donors). Expression of LW antigen is dependent on RhD protein expression, with the highest expression observed on RhD-positive red cells and weaker expression on RhD-negative cells. LW antigens are absent from Rh$_{null}$ erythrocytes. An LW (a–b–) or null phenotype can also be seen in very rare individuals who are homozygous for a silent LW allele. The LW antigen is expressed on RBCs and placenta. Approximately 3600 to 5000 molecules of LW glycoprotein are present per RBC (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Biochemistry

The LW antigens reside on intracellular adhesion molecule type 4 (ICAM-4, CD242), a 40- to 47-kD type 1 glycoprotein. The protein undergoes processing with cleavage of a 30 amino acid leader sequence, resulting in a mature 241 amino acid protein. A member of the Ig superfamily, ICAM consists of two extracellular C2-like domains: a single transmembrane domain and a short cytoplasmic tail. Four *N*-glycosylation sites are present, along with evidence of *O*-glycosylation, which may influence adhesion (Toivanen et al, 2008). Although several amino acids are critical for ICAM-4/integrin binding, the first C2 or Ig domain is most critical (Toivanen et al, 2008). The molecule has three disulfide bonds and is sensitive to reducing agents such as DTT (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Molecular Biology

The *ICAM4* gene resides on chromosome 19p13. The LW^a and LW^b antigens arise from an SNP (A308G), leading to Gln100 (LW^a) or Arg100 (LW^b). Of two LW$_{null}$ individuals studied, one possessed a 10-bp deletion in the coding sequence (Hermand et al, 1995).

LW Antibodies

Clinically benign, anti-LW antibodies are rarely a cause of hemolytic transfusion reactions or HDFN. They usually are of IgG isotype and are detected in the IAT. Antibody activity can be reduced by ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) and pretreatment of RBCs with sulfhydryl-reducing agents (DTT, AET). In addition to anti-LW^a and anti-LW^b, LW$_{null}$ individuals can make an anti-LW^{ab}, which reacts with both LW (a+b–) and LW (a–b+) erythrocytes.

Biological Role

LW glycoprotein is a potential counterreceptor for the β2-integrin protein Mac1 (CD11b/CD18), LFA-1 (CD11a/CD18), and platelet GPIIb/IIIa. It is hypothesized that the LW glycoprotein may participate in adhesive interactions during early erythroid development. Mice lacking ICAM-4 have a decrease in erythroblastic islands in their marrow, although peripheral red cell mass is normal (Toivanen et al, 2008). LW expression is elevated in sickle cell patients and may be involved in microvascular occlusion (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). LW glycoprotein may also be involved in red cell senescence by binding to CD11/CD18 integrin on splenic macrophages (Toivanen et al, 2008).

CHIDO/RODGERS BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 017)

The Chido/Rodgers (Ch/Rg) blood group system contains 10 antigens, including two pairs of antithetical antigens and three conformational antigens. The latter require coexpression of two spatially distinct Ch/Rg antigens that together generate a third, conformational antigen (Table 35-23). Most Ch/Rg antigens are high-incidence antigens (>90%). Similar to Lewis blood group antigens, Ch/Rg antigens are of plasma origin and are passively adsorbed onto RBC membranes. Ch/Rg antigens are weakly expressed on cord RBCs and some GYPA-deficient RBCs (Issitt & Anstee, 1998).

Biochemistry/Molecular Biology

Ch/Rg antigens are antigenic determinants on the C4d fragment of the C4 complement molecule. C4 is the product of two highly homologous

TABLE 35-23
Chido/Rodgers Blood Group Antigens

Chido (Ch) Antigens		Name	Frequency*	Amino Acid	Frequency*	Name	Rodgers (Rg) Antigens	
CH/RG3†	CH/RG1	Ch1	96%	Arg1191>Leu Ala1188>Val	98%	Rg1	CH/RG11	CH/RG12†
	CH/RG6	Ch3	93%	Conformational epitope	95%	Rg2	CH/RG13	
		Ch6	96%	Ser1157>Asn	95%	Rg3		
CH/RG7†		WH	Rare	Conformational epitope (Ch6+Rg1) His1106>Asp Ile1105>Leu				
CH/RG2†	CH/RG4	Ch4	96%	Ser1102>Lys Leu1101 Pro				
		Ch2	91%	Conformational epitope (Ch4+Ch5)				
	CH/RG5	Ch5	94%	Gly1054>Asp				

*Calculated from Giles (1987) and Issitt and Anstee (1998).
†Conformational epitopes I require the presence of two Ch/Rg antigenic determinants.

TABLE 35-24
Gerbich Blood Group Antigens

HIGH FREQUENCY					LOW FREQUENCY	
ISBT	Name	Frequency	GP*	Amino Acid Change (High→Low)	Frequency	Name	ISBT
GE2	Ge2	>99%	GYPD	aa 1-19			
GE3	Ge3	>99%	GYPC GYPD	aa 43-50 aa 22-29			
GE4	Ge4	>99%	GYPC	N-terminus			
	Wb(–)	>99%	GYPC	Ser8>Asn, loss of *N*-glycan	Rare	Webb	GE5
			GYPC+D	Duplication of exon 3	2% blacks 1.5% Finnish	Ls[a]	GE6
	An(a–)	>99%	GYPD	Ser2>Ala	0.01%	An[a]	GE7
	Dh(a–)	>99%	GYPC	Leu14>Ala	<0.01%	Dh[a]	GE8
			GYPC+D	Thr32Asn (GYPC), Thr11Asn (GYPD)	Very rare	GEIS	GE9
GE10	GEPL	>99%	GYPC+D	Pro45Leu (GYPC), Pro24Leu (GYPD)	Rare	GEPL(–)	
GE11	GEAT	>99%	GYPC	Asp19Val	Rare	GEAT(–)	
GE12	GETI	>99%	GYPC+D	Thr27Ile (GYPC), Thr6Ile (GYPD)	Rare	GETI (–)	
Gerbich Null Phenotypes†							
			GYPC	Deletion exon 2	Rare	Yus	(Ge–2, 3, 4)
			GYPC	Deletion exon 3	10% to 50% Melanesians	Gerbich	(Ge–2, –3, 4)
			GYPC	Deletion exons 3+4	Rare	Leach	(Ge–2, –3, –4)

ISBT, International Society of Blood Transfusion.
*Glycophorin C (GYPC) or glycophorin D (GYPD).
†Yus and Gerbich phenotypes are the result of mutant GPC alleles. No GPD is found in Yus, Gerbich, or Leach phenotypes.

genes (99% identity), *C4A* and *C4B*, on chromosome 6p21.3 near the HLA locus. At present, more than 50 C4 alleles have been identified, including null alleles, making the genetics of this system difficult. Each gene spans approximately 22 kb and is organized into 41 exons. Four amino acids in exon 26 are responsible for distinguishing C4A from C4B. Most Ch/Rg antigens are determined by amino acid polymorphisms encoded in exons 25 and 28 (Giles et al, 1988). In general, Chido antigens are on C4B, and Rodgers antigens are on C4A, although examples of C4B-expressing Rodgers antigens (and vice versa) are known (Giles, 1987; Giles et al, 1988). On protein electrophoresis, C4A migrates faster than C4B.

Chido/Rodgers Antibodies

Antibodies against Ch/Rg antigens do not cause hemolytic transfusion reactions or HDFN. Rare reports have described anaphylaxis following transfusion of plasma and platelets (Westhoff et al, 1992). Anti-Ch/Rg antibodies are of IgG isotype and are usually detected with AHG. Antibody reactivity can be enhanced by incubating RBCs in a low–ionic sucrose solution. Antibody reactivity can be inhibited by plasma or by treatment of RBCs with proteases (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Biological Role

C4 deficiency is associated with autoimmune disorders and susceptibility to bacterial meningitis. Specific C4 allotypes have been linked to several autoimmune disorders, including rheumatoid arthritis and Graves' disease.

GERBICH BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 020)

The Gerbich (Ge) blood group system contains 11 antigens: 6 high-frequency (>99%; Table 35-24) and 5 low-frequency antigens. The Gerbich glycoproteins (GPC/D; Fig. 35-15) are on fetal and adult RBCs, platelets, and kidney and fetal liver. Between 180,000 and 250,000 molecules of Gerbich are present per RBC (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Null/Weak Phenotypes

Three autosomal recessive phenotypes are associated with the loss of high-incidence Gerbich antigens: Yus (Ge-2,3,4), Gerbich (Ge-2,-3,4), and Leach (Ge-2,-3,-4). The Gerbich phenotype (GYPCΔex3) is common in New Guinea, a holoendemic area for malaria. All three null phenotypes

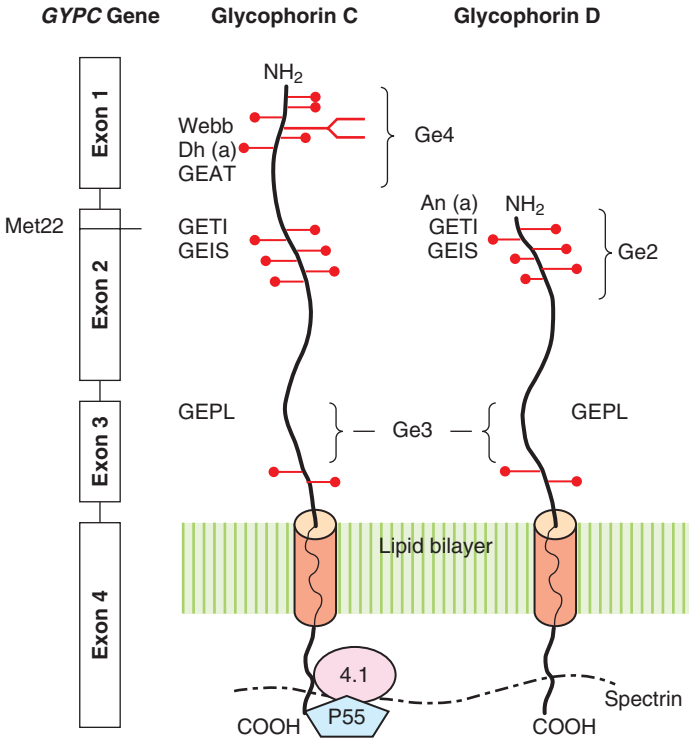


Figure 35-15 **Gerbich antigens on glycophorin C (GYPC) and glycophorin D (GYPD).** *O*-linked (●—) and *N*-linked glycans are shown. Also shown is the relationship of the *GYPC* gene to both proteins. GYPD is the result of alternative translation at Met22 in exon 2. Deletions of different exons are responsible for the three Gerbich null phenotypes. GYPC and GYPD may interact with spectrin, protein 4.1, and p55 of the cytoskeleton.

are associated with ovalocytosis. Gerbich antigens are also decreased in patients with hereditary elliptocytosis due to mutations in actin and other cytoskeletal proteins (An & Mohandas, 2008).

Biochemistry

Gerbich antigens are expressed on two biosynthetically related type 1 glycoproteins: glycophorin C (GYPC; see Fig. 35-15) and glycophorin D (GYPD). GYPC is a 40-kD, 128 amino acid glycoprotein bearing one *N*-linked and 12 *O*-linked glycans. GYPD is a 107 amino acid variant, lacking 21 amino acids at the amino-terminus (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). GYPC and GYPD are members of the RBC junctional complex, which is responsible for maintaining the lateral stability of the membrane (Burton & Bruce, 2011; An & Mohandas, 2008). The cytoplasmic domain interacts with AE1 and several cytoskeletal proteins, including spectrin, protein 4.1, and p55. Defects in junctional complex proteins can lead to ovalocytosis.

Molecular Biology

GYPC and GYPD are the products of a single gene, *GYPC*, on chromosome 2q14-121. The gene spans 13.5 kb and is organized into four exons. Exons 1 to 3 encode the extracellular domain; exon 4 is responsible for the transmembrane domain and the cytoplasmic tail. The promoter region contains classical CCAC and TATA sequences, as well as transcription factor binding sites for Sp1, GATA-1, and NF-E6. GYPD is the product of leaky translation at a downstream, alternative AUG residue (Met22).

As shown in Table 35-24, the high-frequency antigens Ge2 and Ge4 are the NH_2-termini of GYPD and GYPC, respectively. Ge3 is encoded by exon 3 and is shared by both molecules. With the exception of Ls^a, low-frequency Ge antigens are the result of single–amino acid polymorphisms. The Leach phenotype results from deletion of exons 3 and 4. As a result, no GYPC or GYPD protein is expressed (see Fig. 35-15). The Yus and Gerbich phenotypes (GYPCΔex3) are deletion mutants characterized by variant GYPC synthesis and complete loss of GYPD synthesis. As a result, Yus and Gerbich can express high-incidence antigens present on GYPC (Ge3, Ge4) but not on GYPD (Ge2). Gerbich-negative red cells also show altered glycosylation, with expression of an immature, high-mannose *N*-glycan and decrease in sialylated *O*-glycans (Mayer et al, 2006). The formation of an upstream start codon with synthesis of GYPC is relatively new and is limited to humans (Wilder et al, 2009).

Gerbich Antibodies

Anti-Gerbich antibodies are usually, but not always, clinically significant. Reports have described shortened RBC survival and delayed hemolysis following transfusion of Gerbich-incompatible RBCs. One report described severe HDFN. Autoantibodies against Gerbich antigens have been associated with severe autoimmune hemolytic anemia (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2004).

Anti-Gerbich antibodies can be of IgM or IgG isotype. Most are immune stimulated, although naturally occurring anti-Ge are known. They may be detected at room temperature and are enhanced by AHG. Gerbich antigens are resistant to chymotrypsin but are sensitive to other proteases (trypsin, pronase).

Biological Role

GYPC and GYPD, in conjunction with AE1, help anchor the membrane to the underlying cytoskeleton. GYPC is also a receptor *P. falciparum* EBA140/BAEBL protein, a sialic acid-dependent invasion protein that recognizes the *N*-glycan on GYPC. Gerbich-negative RBC (GYPCΔex3) show increased resistance to *P. falciparum* infection in vitro. It is hypothesized that the high incidence of Gerbich-negative is a selective advantage against severe malaria, although this has not yet been demonstrated (Cooling, 2015). Because they are rich in sialic acid, GYPC and GYPD can also bind influenza virus.

CROMER BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 021)

The Cromer system (Cr/CROM) contains 16 antigens, including 5 antithetical antigens, 10 high-incidence antigens, and 23 possible phenotypes (Table 35-25; Fig. 35-13). Cromer antigens are present on DAF (CD55), which is widely expressed on tissues and in secretions. DAF has been identified on all hematopoietic cells, vascular endothelium, gastrointestinal and genitourinary epithelium, brain, and body fluids (Storry & Reid, 2002). Cromer is expressed on cord RBCs and placental trophoblasts.

Null/Weak Phenotypes

Inab or Cromer null phenotype is a rare autosomal recessive phenotype, characterized by complete absence of all Cromer antigens but normal expression of CD59 and other GPI-linked glycoproteins. Many individuals with the Inab phenotype suffer from chronic gastrointestinal disorders, particularly a chronic protein-losing gastroenteropathy. CD55/Cromer is also missing on PNH III RBCs, which lack all GPI-linked glycoproteins. Weak Cromer expression (40% normal) is observed in the Dr(a–) phenotype.

Biochemistry

CD55/DAF is a highly glycosylated, 319 amino acid, 70-kD GPI-linked glycoprotein (see Fig. 35-13). The extracellular domain consists of four short consensus repeat (SCR) domains, capable of binding complement components (C3b/C4b), followed by a 70 amino acid, rigid stalk-region rich in *O*-linked glycans (50% serine/threonine) that may protect the molecule from proteolysis. Each SCR domain contains four highly conserved cysteine residues, resulting in two intrachain disulfide bonds per SCR. As a consequence, DAF is sensitive to sulfhydryl-reducing agents. The molecule contains a single *N*-glycosylation site near SCR1 (Medof et al, 1987). SCR2 and SCR3 are the binding sites for the C3 convertase complexes C3bBb or C4b2a (Lublin, 2005). All four SCR domains are home to Cromer antigens.

Molecular Biology

The *DAF* gene spans 40 kb on chromosome 1q32 and is organized into 11 exons. Cr^a is the reference allele (*CROM*01*). Most Cromer antigens reflect single–amino acid polymorphisms (see Table 35-25; see Fig. 35-13) (Hue-Roye et al, 2007; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). The Inab phenotype is the result of nonsense and frameshift mutations. The Dr(a–) phenotype is the consequence of a SNP (596C>T) that leads to both an Ser199>Leu polymorphism and an alternative splice site. In Dr(a–) individuals, two mRNA species are observed, encoding a truncated mutated protein arising from alternate splicing (major transcript) and the full DAF bearing the Leu165 polymorphism (minor transcript). Dr(a–) RBCs have weakened expression of DAF and all Cromer antigens (Storry & Reid, 2002).

Cromer Antibodies

The clinical significance of anti-Cromer antibodies is variable. In some individuals, anti-Cromer antibodies are associated with decreased RBC

TABLE 35-25
Cromer Blood Group Antigens

HIGH-FREQUENCY ANTIGENS			Amino Acid Change (High→Low)	LOW-FREQUENCY ANTIGENS		
ISBT	Name	Frequency		Frequency	Name	ISBT
CROM1	Cr^a	>99%	Ala227>Pro	Rare		
CROM2	Tc^a	>99%	Arg52>Leu	6% blacks 0% Caucasians	Tc^b	CROM3
			Arg52>Pro	Rare	Tc^c	CROM4
CROM5	Dr^a	>99%	Ser199>Leu	Rare	Dr(a–)	
CROM6	Es^a	>99%	Ile80>Asn	Rare		
CROM7	IFC	>99%	Heterogeneous	Rare	Inab	
CROM9	Wes^b	>99%	Leu82>Arg	2% blacks <0.5% Caucasians	Wes^a*	CROM8
CROM10	UMC	>99%	Thr250>Met	Rare		
CROM11	GUT1	>99%	Arg240>His	15% Muapuche Indians	GUT1(–)	
CROM12	SERF	>99%	Pro216>Leu	1% Thai	SERF(–)	
CROM13	ZENA	>99%	His242>Gln			
CROM14	CROV	>99%	Glu156>Lys			
CROM15	CRAM	>99%	Gln247>Arg			
CROM16	CROZ	>99%	Arg130>His	Rare	CROZ(–)	

ISBT, International Society of Blood Transfusion.
*Because of their proximity, Wes^a weakens Es^a expression.

survival and hemolytic transfusion reactions. Cromer antibodies do not cause HDFN owing to adsorption of antibodies by DAF on trophoblast epithelium (Storry & Reid, 2002; Lublin, 2005). In several cases, a transient loss of anti-Cromer antibodies was noted in the second and third trimesters, with reappearance of the antibody following delivery (Hue-Roye et al, 2007).

Anti-Cromer antibodies are usually of IgG isotype, arising from immune stimulation. They are detected in the IAT and can give weak, variable results (historically, high-titer, low-avidity [HTLA] antibodies). Anti-Cromer can be inhibited by plasma, urine, and platelet concentrates. Antibody reactivity is highly sensitive to pretreatment of RBCs with chymotrypsin and pronase, but not with other proteases. Cromer antigens are weakened, but not destroyed, by AET and DTT.

Biological Role

CD55/DAF protects cells from complement by promoting the decay of two C3 convertases: C4b2a and C3bBb. In murine models of induced autoimmune disease, CD55 knockout mice demonstrate increased disease severity (Lublin, 2005). CD55 is also a receptor for intestinal *E. coli* strains bearing Afa/Dr adhesins, which recognize SCR3. CD55 is an alternate ligand for *H. pylori* and is upregulated in chronic infections. CD55 is also a receptor for several viruses, including hantavirus, coxsackie virus, enterovirus ENV70, and multiple echovirus strains (Cooling, 2015).

KNOPS BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 022)

The Knops blood group contains 9 allelic antigens, including six antithetical antigens (see Table 35-32). Several Knops antigens (Kn^b, Mc^b, Sl^a, KCAM) are racially segregated. Knops antigens are present on adult and cord RBCs, neutrophils, B lymphocytes, and dendritic cells (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). Knops can vary in strength between individuals (200 to 1200 molecules/RBC), with approximately 1% of donors showing extremely weak Knops expression (50 to 150 molecules/RBC, Helgeson phenotype). Knops/CR1 can be decreased in the setting of infection and autoimmune disorders due to high levels of circulating immune complexes (Moulds, 2010).

Biochemistry

Knops resides on complement receptor 1 (CR1, CD35), a 220-kD glycoprotein (Moulds, 2010). The extracellular domain consists of 30 SCRs, arranged into four long homologous regions (LHRA-D), each containing 7 SCR. LHRA-C each contain a complement binding domain that is capable of binding C4b, C3b, and C5a, as well as malaria (Cooling, 2015) The KNOPS antigens reside in SCR25 and 26 in LHRD. LHRD is also a receptor for mannose-binding lectin. The molecule also possesses six to eight *N*-glycosylation sites.

Molecular Biology

The *CR1* gene resides on chromosome 1q32. Four CR1 isoforms (CR*1 to 4) are possible, but CR1*1 is the most common (Moulds, 2010). Variation in CR1 strength and copy number is a genetically determined trait and may have arisen due to selective pressure by malaria. To date, all Knops antigens arise from amino acid polymorphisms (Table 35-26; Covas et al, 2007; Moulds, 2010). SL3 is a conformation antigen that requires Sl1 and S14 coexpression.

Knops Antibodies

Knops antibodies are clinically insignificant. Knops-incompatible RBCs have normal survival following transfusion. Knops antibodies are of IgG isotype, arising from immune stimulation, and are usually detected only with AHG. Historically classified as an HTLA antibody, Knops antibodies are notoriously difficult to work with because of their low avidity, biological variation in Knops expression, antigen degradation, and the common presence of additional alloantibody specificities. Knops antigens are resistant to proteases but are weakened by sulfhydryl-reducing agents (AET, DTT).

Biological Role

A complement regulatory protein, CR1 can bind C3b/C4b immune complexes, promoting their degradation to iC3b and iC4b by factor 1. CR1 also binds C5a and can accelerate the decay of C3 and C5 convertases. CR1 also enhances phagocytosis of C3b/C4b-coated particles. The latter may promote bacterial adhesion and/or intracellular uptake by *Leishmania* and *S. pneumoniae* (Li et al, 2010; Cooling, 2015). It is hypothesized that CR1 may play a role in *Mycobacterium* infections, possibly via LHRD and mannose-binding lectin (Cooling, 2015).

CR1 is a receptor for the *P. falciparum* invasion protein PfRH4. PfRH4 recognizes the C3b/C4b binding site in LHRA (SCR1-3) (Tham et al, 2010). Several genomic studies have confirmed that low CR1 expression is protective against malaria (Cooling, 2015). CR1 can also bind some PfEMP variants. PfEMP is a malarial protein expressed on infected RBC and is responsible for RBC rosetting. Some older studies have reported associations between malarial risk and select Knops antigens (Kn^b, McC^b, Sl2), but these have not been observed in recent genomic studies. Furthermore, in vitro studies using CR1 constructs bearing specific combinations of McC and Sl antigens found no difference in PfRH4 binding (Tetteh-Quarcoo et al, 2012).

INDIAN BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 023)

The Indian (IN) blood group contains two autosomal codominant antigens: In^a (IN1) and In^b (IN2). In^b is a high-frequency allele (99% Caucasians), whereas In^a is relatively rare except among Indian (4%) and Arab

TABLE 35-26

Knops Blood Group Antigens

HIGH FREQUENCY					LOW FREQUENCY	
ISBT	**Name**	**Frequency**	**Amino Acid Change (High→Low)**	**Frequency**	**Name**	**ISBT**
KN1	Kn[a]	99%	Val1561>Met	4% Caucasians	Kn[b]	KN2
KN3	Mc[a]	99%	Lys1590>Glu	45% blacks	Mc[b]	KN6
KN4	SI1 (Sla)	98% Caucasians 52% blacks	Arg1601>Gly	Blacks only	SI2 (Vil)	KN7
	SI4*	100% blacks 96% Caucasians	Ser1610>Thr	4% Caucasians	SI5*	
KN8	SI3†		Arg1601+Ser1610			
KN9	KCAM	80% to 98% Caucasians	Ile1615>Val	70% to 80% West Africans, Afro-Brazilians	KCAM(–)	
KN5	Yk[a]	92% Caucasians 98% blacks	Unknown			

ISBT, International Society of Blood Transfusion.
*SI4 and SI5 are theoretical antigens not formally added to the Knops family at this time.
†SI3 is a conformational antigen that requires the presence of both SI1 (Arg1601) and "SI4" (Ser1610).

populations (11% to 12%). Three additional high-incidence antigens are known: IN3, IN4, and AnWj. Rare IN3- and IN4- have been identified only in Moroccans and Pakistanis, respectively (Poole et al, 2007). Indian antigens are carried by the CD44 glycoprotein and are widely expressed on all hematopoietic cells, epithelial cells, and neural tissue. Approximately 6000 to 10,000 CD44 molecules are present per RBC (Byrne & Byrne, 2004; Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Null/Weak Phenotypes

Indian antigens, including AnWj, are depressed on *In(Lu)* RBCs. They are transiently depressed on cord RBCs during pregnancy and autoimmune hemolytic anemia as a result of autoanti-AnWj (Daniels, 2002).

Biochemistry

Indian antigens are present on CD44, a ubiquitous glycoprotein on many cell membranes. CD44 is heterogeneous between tissues owing to tissue-specific differences in mRNA processing and glycosylation. In RBCs, CD44 is an 80- to 85-kD, 341 amino acid type 1 glycoprotein bearing a large, heavily glycosylated extracellular domain containing six cysteine residues, six *N*-glycans, three chondroitin sulfate glycans, and several *O*-linked glycans. The globular head domain is the binding site for hyaluronic acid. The carboxyterminal cytoplasmic domain interacts with the cytoskeleton (band 4.1, ankyrin, ezrin, moesin, radixin) and intracellular signaling molecules (Src, Lck, Fyn, protein kinase C) (Ponta et al, 2003).

Molecular Biology

CD44 resides on chromosome 11p13. The gene spans 50 kb and contains 20 exons, which are able to generate an array of splice-form variants. In RBCs, CD44 is encoded by exons 1 through 5, 16, 17, 18, and 20. A single–amino acid polymorphism is responsible for the In[a] (IN1, P46) and In[b] (IN2, R46) antigens. Missense mutations are responsible for the loss of high-incidence antigens IN3 (H85Q) and IN4 (T163R) (Poole et al, 2007). The basis of the AnWj antigen is unknown, but the antigen may reside along the O-linked stalk of the molecule, proximal to the lipid bilayer.

Indian Antibodies

Antibodies against both Indian and AnWj antigens can be clinically significant, with shortened RBC survival and transfusion reactions. They are not associated with HDFN. Autoimmune anemia due to autoanti-AnWj has been reported. Anti-Indian antibodies are usually of IgG isotype, arising from immune stimulation. They can present as saline agglutinins and are enhanced by AHG. With the exception of AnWj, Indian antigens are destroyed by proteases and AET. Anti-Indian antibodies are also inhibited by plasma, which contains soluble CD44.

Biological Role

CD44 is a major adhesion molecule on leukocytes. CD44 binds a spectrum of extracellular matrix proteins, including collagen, fibronectin, laminin, and hyaluron. In bone marrow, CD44 may participate in the adhesion of erythroid progenitors to stromal fibroblasts. In leukocytes, CD44 may facilitate white blood cell (WBC)–endothelial adhesion, helping to localize WBC to sites of inflammation. CD44 has been implicated in tumor metastasis, wound remodeling, and embryonic differentiation. CD44 is a receptor for invasive *S. pyogenes* via the hyaluronic acid–binding domain, leading to disruption of the cytoskeleton and tissue penetration (Cooling, 2015). Similarly, CD44 plays a critical role in *Shigella* and *Listeria* invasion. The AnWj antigen is believed to be a receptor for *H. influenzae* type b.

OK BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 024)

The OK system resides on CD147 or Basigin and contains three high-frequency antigens: Ok[a], OKGV, and OKVM. CD147 is widely expressed on epithelium, blood cells, retina, and neural cells (Muramatsu, 2012). There are approximately 3000 molecules of CD147 per RBC. CD147 is highest on red cells but decreases with red cell age.

Biochemistry and Molecular Biology

Ok[a] resides on CD147, a 35- to 68-kD, 251 amino acid *N*-linked glycoprotein. A member of the Ig superfamily, CD147 possesses IgC2 and IgV domains. In the membrane, CD147 is present as a homodimer, often in complex with other proteins, including CD44 (Indian), β1-integrins, caveolin, and monocarboxylic acid transporters (Muramatsu, 2012).

The gene for CD147 resides on chromosome 19p13.2-pter and shows a high degree of conservation in primates. The Ok(a–) phenotype arises from a E92K polymorphism (Daniels, 2002). Single–amino acid polymorphisms are also responsible for the OKVM- (Val60Met) and OKGV-negative phenotypes (Gly59Val) (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012). Four additional amino acid polymorphisms are known but have not been implicated in alloantibody formation to date (Wanaguru et al, 2013).

CD147 Antibodies

Anti-Ok[a] is rare and has been described only in Japan. Anti-Ok[a] is of IgG isotype, arising from immune stimulation, and is associated with shortened RBC survival following transfusion of Ok[a]-incompatible RBCs. It is not associated with HDFN. The Ok[a] antigen is resistant to enzymes, sialidases, and sulfhydryl-reducing agents. Three monoclonal antibodies against Ok[a] were recently developed by the New York Blood Center (Tian & Halverson, 2009).

Biological Role

On WBCs, CD147 is a leukocyte activation–associated protein and may participate in cell adhesion, tumorigenesis, and wound healing via stimulation of enzymes required for remodeling of the extracellular matrix (Muramatsu, 2012). CD147 also plays a role in red cell trafficking and splenic recirculation; its loss with aging is associated with splenic clearance of senescent red cells (Coste et al, 2001; Khandelwal & Saxena, 2006). More important, CD147 is the receptor for PfRH5, a malarial adhesion protein absolutely essential for *P. falciparum* infection and may underlie *P. falciparum*'s tropism for humans (Wanaguru et al, 2013). CD147 is also a receptor for cyclophilin A and B. Cyclophilins are incorporated into

several viral proteins and facilitate infection by HIV, SARS-coronavirus, and measles (Cooling, 2015).

RAPH BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 025)

The RAPH blood group system contains a single antigen, RAPH or MER2, located on CD151 or tetraspanin (TM4). CD151 is widely expressed on epithelium, fibroblasts, endothelium, muscle, renal glomeruli and tubules, CD34 cells, early erythroid precursors, megakaryocytes, and platelets. CD151 is strongly expressed in early erythroblasts but is progressively lost with increasing maturation. As a result, MER2 expression is variable among adult donors, with 92% typing MER2-positive and 8% typing MER2-negative. MER2-negative donors strongly express CD151 on other cell lines such as platelets and lymphocytes.

Null Phenotypes

A MER2-negative, autosomal recessive phenotype was identified in three individuals of Indian ancestry (Crew et al, 2004). All three individuals had nephrotic syndrome with end-stage renal disease and neurosensory deafness. In addition, two individuals had severe pretibial epidermolysis bullosa, bilateral lacrimal duct stenosis, and nail dystrophy. Renal biopsies revealed splitting and fragmentation of the tubular and glomerular basement membranes, respectively. Likewise, skin biopsies showed classic separation of the epidermis with focal edema.

Biochemistry

CD151 or tetraspanin is a 253 amino acid, 28- to 32-kD multipass protein with four transmembrane domains, four cysteine residues, two extracellular loops, and a single *N*-glycosylation site. The second, large extracellular loop contains a QRD motif for integrin binding (aa 194) and is the site of polymorphisms associated with alloantibody formation (Crew et al, 2008). In the cell membrane, tetraspanins are associated with integrins ($\alpha3\beta1$, $\alpha6\beta1$, $\alpha7\beta1$) and are implicated in cell adhesion, tumor metastasis, and signaling.

Molecular Biology

CD151 (TSPAN24) is located on chromosome 11p15 and consists of eight exons: Exons 2 through 8 encode the translated protein. The MER2 null phenotype with renal disease has been linked to a nucleotide insertion (exon 5, G383) and a frameshift mutation, leading to a 140 amino acid, nonfunctional protein (Crew et al, 2004). In addition, two SNPs (R171C, R178H) have been identified in three individuals with MER2 alloantibodies (Crew et al, 2004; 2008).

MER2 Antibodies

Six examples of anti-MER2 are known in patients of Indian, Turkish, and Pakistani origin (Crew et al, 2004; 2008). All were of IgG isotype, arising from transfusion and pregnancy. Three examples fixed complement. Reactivity is sensitive to disulfide-reducing agents and most proteases except papain (Crew et al, 2004). No reports have described HDFN due to anti-MER2. MER2 can cause hemolytic transfusion reactions in some patients. A monocyte-monolayer assay may be helpful in determining the clinical significance of anti-MER2 antibodies (Crew et al, 2008).

Biological Role

The occurrence of renal disease and neurosensory deafness in all three patients with frameshift mutations suggests that CD151 is critical for basement membrane assembly in the kidney and inner ear. The clustering of tetraspanin (CD151) and β1 integrins, which are important in laminin adhesin, also supports a role for CD151 in basement membrane function and assembly (Crew et al, 2004). Raph is a receptor for HPV and HCV and facilitates *Neisseria meningitidis* adhesion (Cooling, 2015).

JMH BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 026)

The JMH (John Milton Hagen) system contains six high-incidence antigens and can vary in strength among individuals. In addition to RBCs, JMH is found on lymphocytes, activated macrophages, thymus, brain, respiratory epithelium, placenta, testes, and spleen (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Variant and Null Phenotypes

JMH weak, JMH variant, and JMH negative have been described (Seltsam et al, 2007). An acquired, JMH weak to negative phenotype can occur in the elderly, accompanied by the occurrence of JMH autoantibodies. Five distinct, autosomal recessive JMH variants have been described as the result of single missense mutations. At least one example of an autosomal dominant, JMH-negative phenotype, has been described.

Biochemistry

JMH is carried on CD108 (SEMA7A), a semaphorin family glycoprotein (see Fig. 35-13). The protein is a 666 amino acid protein composed of a large 500 amino acid SEMA domain, a C2-type Ig domain, and five *N*-glycosylation and six myristoylation sites. The molecule contains an RGD sequence essential for promoting axonal growth (Seltsam et al, 2007). The molecule is anchored into the cell membrane by a GPI tail (GPI-linked) and is absent on PNH III RBCs. The molecule contains 19 cysteine residues and is sensitive to sulfhydryl-reducing agents.

Molecular Biology

SEMA7A resides on chromosome 15q24.1 and consists of 14 exons ranging from 42 to 362 bp in size (Seltsam et al, 2007). JMH variants are the result of missense mutations at two mutational hotspots in propellar 3 (R203W, R203H) and propellar 7 domains (R460H, R461C). All four mutations may lead to conformational changes based on molecular modeling. An additional missense mutation has been identified in four Native Americans (R347L; St-Louis et al, 2009).

No mutations were identified among JMH-weak and JMH-negative samples. It is interesting to note that *SEMA7A* mRNA can be identified in reticulocytes from JMH-negative individuals, suggesting that the absence of JMH on red cells is posttranscriptional. The absence of JMH on red cells was not due to PNH or related defects in GPI biosynthesis: CD55 and CD59 expression on JMH-negative red cells was normal (Seltsam et al, 2007).

JMH Antibodies

Anti-JMH antibodies do not cause hemolytic transfusion reactions or HDFN, although shortened RBC survival has been documented in some patients. The latter may reflect true alloantibodies in JMH-variant individuals. The antibodies are of IgG isotype and can be naturally occurring. The JMH antigen is sensitive to proteases and DTT. An assay for detection of anti-JMH antibodies was recently developed for gel using immobilized recombinant SEMA7A on polystyrene beads (Seltsam et al, 2008).

Biological Role

Semaphorin proteins are implicated in cell signaling. In hematopoietic cells, SEMA7A can modulate cellular immunity via effects on T cells, monocytes, and natural killer (NK) cells. SEMA7A inhibits NK cell proliferation (Figueiredo et al, 2009) and is a negative regulator of T cell activation. Conversely, SEMA7A stimulates chemotaxis, secretion of inflammatory cytokines, and dendritic cell maturation in monocytes (Ji & Ivashkiv, 2009). SEMA7 was recently identified as a possible receptor for the *P. falciparum* invasin protein MTRAP, which is expressed by merozoites (Bartholdson et al, 2012).

I BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 027)

The I blood group system contains two biosynthetically related antigens: I and i. The system was named "I" for "individuality" after an extensive search of 22,000 individuals identified only five I– adult donors (Cooling, 2010). The biosynthetic precursor to I antigen, i antigen, is strongly expressed on cord cells because of developmental delays in the enzyme responsible for I antigen synthesis. By 3 months of age, there is a perceptible decrease in i antigen, accompanied by increased I antigen, with an adult I+i– phenotype by 18 to 24 months of age (Marsh, 1961). Increases in I antigen are accompanied by parallel increases in A and B antigens (Cooling, 2010). Both I and i antigens are ubiquitously expressed on glycolipids and glycoproteins on red cells and other tissues.

Null Phenotype

The i_{adult} phenotype is a rare, autosomal recessive phenotype found in fewer than 1 out of 10,000 donors. In Asia, the i_{adult} phenotype can be associated with congenital cataracts (Inaba et al, 2003; Yu et al, 2003). Elevated i antigen is also observed on cord RBCs and reticulocytes and in megaloblastic anemia, leukemia, and chronic hemolytic states as a sign of stressed erythropoiesis (Cooling, 2010). Elevated i antigen is also observed in HEMPAS (hereditary erythroblastic multinuclearity with positive acidified-serum test), a congenital dyserythropoietic anemia associated with chronic hemolysis, binucleated erythroblasts, and altered red cell glycosylation (Denecke & Marquardt, 2009). The molecular basis of HEMPAS was recently identified as altered Golgi trafficking due to mutations in SEC23B, a COPII protein (Schwarz et al, 2009).

Biochemistry

Type 2 chain oligosaccharides, both i and I antigens, terminate in a Galβ1→4GlcNAc or lactosaminyl epitope and differ only in complexity and multivalency. As shown in Figure 35-16, the i antigen is a linear oligosaccharide containing at least two successive lactosamine epitopes. The I antigen is derived from i antigen by the action of a β1–6 *N*-acetylglucosaminyltransferase, a first step in the synthesis of large, branched multivalent complex polylactosamines (see Fig. 35-16). Both i and I can be further modified by other glycosyltransferases to yield ABH, LeX, and related antigens (Cooling, 2010).

Molecular Biology

The I antigen, a β1–6 glucosaminyltransferase, is the product of the *GCNT2* or *IGnT* gene. The gene spans approximately 100 kb in an Alu-rich region on chromosome 6p24. The gene contains five exons, including three tissue-specific exons 1 (Fig. 35-17). As a consequence, three different *GCNT2* splice-forms are possible, depending on which exon 1 is utilized (Inaba et al, 2003). *GCNT2*A* is ubiquitously expressed, whereas *GCNT2*B* is primarily expressed in human lens epithelia, fetal brain, and cerebellum (Yu et al, 2003). *GCNT2*C*, composed of exons E1C, E2, and E3, is the predominant transcript in erythroblasts and reticulocytes. In hematopoietic stem cells, erythroid differentiation is accompanied by transcriptional upregulation of *GCNT2*C* (Twu et al, 2007). The promoter for *GCNT2*C* contains transcription factor binding sites for Sp1, Oct-2, and C/EBPα. C/EBPα phosphorylation and binding is critical for transcriptional activation (Twu et al, 2007).

The translated GCNT2 protein consists of 402 amino acids with five *N*-glycosylation sites and 9 conserved cysteine residues. Unlike most galactosyl- and glucosaminyltransferases, GCNT2 does not contain a DXD motif. The enzyme is likely highly folded, based on crystallography data from C2GnT, a closely related β1,6 glucosaminyltransferase (Pak et al, 2006; Cooling, 2010). Sequence differences in exon 1, which encodes 77% of the translated enzyme, may account for the enhanced enzyme activity observed with the GCNT2*C isoform (Yu et al, 2003). Oligosaccharide analysis and enzyme studies indicate that the minimum acceptor for enzyme activity is a tetrasaccharide composed of two lactosamine motifs (Cooling, 2010).

Both the i_{adult} phenotype and congenital cataracts have been linked to mutations in *GCNT2*. In i_{adult} individuals without cataracts, missense mutations have been found in exon E1C, leading to an isolated loss of GCNT2*C activity in RBCs (Inaba et al, 2003; Cooling, 2010). In contrast, i_{adult} with cataracts is the result of mutations in exon E2 or E3 or a major deletion of the *IGnT* gene. As a result, GCNT2 activity is lost in all tissues, including RBC and lens (Yu et al, 2003; Cooling, 2010). Loss of GCNT2*B activity in the lens is believed to underlie the formation of cataracts in humans; however, a direct causal link has yet to be established. No increase in cataracts was observed in a *GCNT2*-knockout mouse model (Chen et al, 2005).

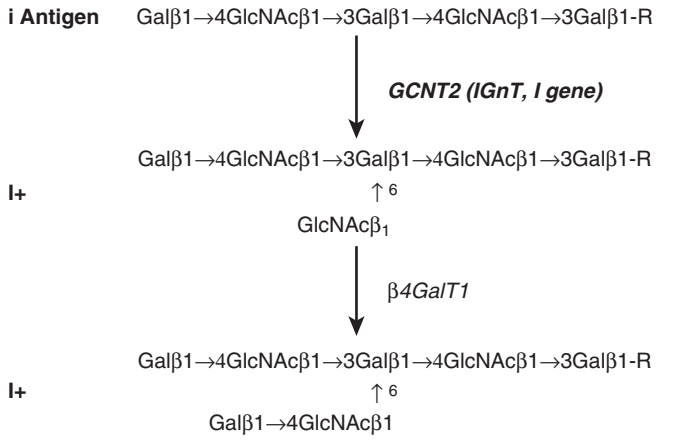


Figure 35-16 **Structure of the I and i antigens.** The I antigen is composed of two successive lactosaminyl subunits. I antigen requires the action of GCNT2, a 1-6-*N*-acetylglucosaminyltransferase. *Gal,* Galactose; *GlcNAc,* *N*-acetylgalactosamine; *R,* other oligosaccharide.

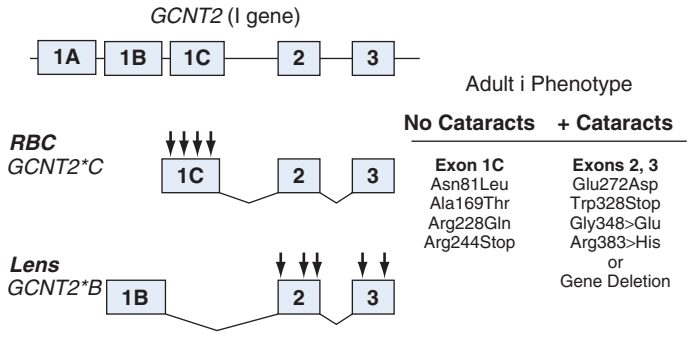


Figure 35-17 **The *I* gene, showing three different exons 1.** In human red blood cells (RBCs) and lens, a different *GCNT2* mRNA is translated, based on which exon 1 is utilized. Mutations in the *GCNT2* gene can result in an i_{adult} phenotype and cataracts. In Europeans, mutations usually are seen only in exon 1C and affect I antigen synthesis in RBCs. In Asia, i_{adult} phenotype involves gene deletion or mutations in exons 2 and 3. As a result, loss of GCNT2 activity is seen in all tissues.

Anti-I and Anti-i Antibodies

Anti-I and anti-i are antibodies of IgM isotype, reactive at room temperature (see Table 35-5). Autoantibodies to I are relatively common and are usually low-titered cold agglutinins. Some anti-I can have IH specificity, reacting stronger with group O and A_2 RBC (refer to Table 35-41). Although generally benign, hemolysis secondary to high-titered anti-I is observed in cold autoimmune hemolytic anemia (CAIHA). CAIHA can occur in the setting of malignancy and occasionally infection (e.g., *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*). These antibodies display high thermal amplitude, often agglutinating RBCs at temperatures of 30° to 34° C. In contrast, alloanti-I is relatively rare and is found as a naturally occurring antibody in i_{adult} individuals. Anti-i is also uncommon but has been reported in CAIHA, infectious mononucleosis, choriocarcinomatosis, and alcoholic cirrhosis.

Biological Role

Despite the common occurrence of major maternal-fetal ABO incompatibility, severe HDFN due to ABO incompatibility is rare (0.04%). It is hypothesized that the developmental delay in I antigen synthesis may play a protective role against HDFN-ABO by minimizing the number of ABH antigens expressed on fetal red cells (Cooling, 2010). This is supported by parallel increases in I and ABH during the first 2 years of life. Additional evidence comes from extended studies of the *N*-glycan on Band 3, which accounts for 50% of the ABH antigen on red cells. Adult red cells had a fourfold increase in ABH expression on Band 3 owing to chain extension and branching (Cooling, 2010).

Ii are oncofetal antigens and can show variable expression with malignancy. *GCNT2* is overexpressed in metastatic breast cancer and was recently identified as a possible disease modifier in breast cancer (Gaudet et al, 2013). The i antigen is a marker of human mesenchymal stem cells and may serve as a ligand for galectin-3 (Hirvonen et al, 2012). Galectin-3 is a soluble lectin protein that recognizes polylactosamines (Salomonsson et al, 2010). It is hypothesized to play a role in the immunosuppressive properties of mesenchymal cells, chronic inflammation, and neutrophil activation.

GIL BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 029)

The GIL blood group system contains one high-incidence antigen: GIL (100% donors). The GIL protein is highly expressed on RBCs, kidney, small intestine, stomach, colon, spleen, eye, and respiratory tract (Reid & Lomas-Francis, 2012).

Biochemistry

GIL is carried by aquaglyceroporin (AQP-3), a member of the major intrinsic protein family of water channels. Similar to Colton (AQP1), AQP3 is a 46-kD, 292 amino acid multipass protein containing six transmembrane domains and a single *N*-glycosylation site. The molecule is present in the cell membrane as dimers, trimers, and tetramers (Daniels, 2002).

Molecular Biology

The *AQP3* gene spans 6 kb on chromosome 9p13 and is organized into six exons. The one example of a GIL-negative phenotype is the result of splice site and frameshift mutations, resulting in a truncated 218 amino acid protein. In general, AQP3 is highly conserved; no missense mutations in the translated protein were identified in a recent study of European and

African individuals. Two SNPs were identified in the promoter region (A-14G, C-46A); however, neither polymorphism had an impact on AQP3 mRNA levels (Bahamontes-Rosa et al, 2008).

GIL Antibodies

Anti-GIL is associated with hemolytic transfusion reactions. No reports have described clinical HDFN due to anti-GIL despite a positive DAT. Anti-GIL is usually of IgG isotype, reactive at 37° C, and enhanced with AHG. The antigen is resistant to proteases, sialidases, and DTT.

Biological Role

AQP3/Gil is a membrane channel capable of transporting urea and glycerol. On red cells, AQP3 may play a role in malaria infection. AQP3 was shown to be internalized during *P. falciparum* infection as part of the parasitophorous vacuole (Bietz et al, 2009). Because AQP3 protects against hydroxyl radicals and osmotic stress, internalization and loss of AQP3 from the red cell extracellular membrane could accelerate red cell damage (Bahamontes-Rosa et al, 2008).

AQP is present on immature dendritic cells and is implicated in the uptake of soluble antigen by micropinocytosis. AQP3 is highly expressed in epidermis and cutaneous T cells, where it plays a role in skin differentiation, hydration, and inflammation (Boury-Jamot et al, 2009).

JR BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 032)

Jr is a high-prevalence RBC antigen present on ABCG2 (ATP-binding cassette, subfamily G, member 2) (Zelinski et al, 2012). At this time, Jr contains a single high-incidence antigen Jr(a). Jr/ABCG2 is widely expressed, including cord and mature RBC, stem cells, placenta, cerebral endothelium, lung, renal proximal tubules, liver, breast, and intestinal epithelium (Castilho & Reid, 2013). ABCG2 is a membrane transporter implicated in folate, porphyrin, urate transport, multidrug resistance, and removal of toxic metabolites.

Biochemistry

ABCG2 is a 655 amino acid, 72-kDa glycoprotein. Like Diego/AE1, ABCG2 has two functional domains: a membrane transporter domain consisting of six transmembrane domains and a long intracellular amino-terminal signaling domain containing three nucleotide-binding motifs. Similar to other RBC transporters (AE1, Colton, GIL), ABCG2 probably exists as dimers and tetramers in the RBC membrane. ABCG2 has a single *N*-glycan site on the third extracellular loop.

Molecular Biology

The *ABCG2* gene is located on chromosome 4q22 and is organized over 16 exons. The gene is highly polymorphic with nearly 1300 SNPs reported (Castilho & Reid, 2013). The Jr(a–) phenotype is an autosomal-recessive phenotype due to *ABCG2*-null alleles. Nearly 20 Jr(a–) and Jr(a^w) alleles are described, including nonsense (8), frameshift (6), and deletion (1) mutants. The Jr(a^{+w}) phenotype is a consequence of heterozygous inheritance of a null and Jr(a) weak allele (Jr(a^{+w}/–). Of the three Jr(a) weak alleles described, all contain an amino acid polymorphism in the third extracellular loop (Castilho & Reid, 2013).

Jr Antibodies

The Jr(a–) phenotype is rare with the highest incidence in Japan (0.03 to 0.12%) (Castilho & Reid, 2013). Anti-Jr^a is generally of IgG isotype and arises as a result of immune stimulation by transfusion or pregnancy. Antibody reactivity can be enhanced by enzyme treatment. Anti-Jr^a can cause shortened RBC survival and delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions. Anti-Jr^a is associated with mild to severe HDFN, presumably due to suppression of erythropoiesis (Castilho & Reid, 2013).

LAN BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 033)

Lan is a high-incidence antigen expressed on ABCB6 (ATP-binding cassette, family B, member 6) (Helias et al, 2012). The system contains a single antigen: Lan. ABCB6 is expressed on RBC, including early precursors, fetal liver, heart, and skeletal muscle. ABCB6 is found on cell membranes and intracellular organelles, including lysosomes and Golgi. Defects in ABCB6 have been associated with familial pseudohyperkalemia and ocular coloboma (Reid et al, 2014).

Biochemistry and Molecular Biology

ABCG6, like ABCG2/Jr, is a large (842 amino acid) multipass, glycoprotein that is present as homodimers in the cell membrane. The gene resides on chromosome 4q22 and is organized over 19 exons. Fifteen null alleles have been described to date due to frameshift (9), nonsense (5), deletion (1), and splice site mutations (Reid et al, 2014). An additional 4 alleles are associated with weak Lan expression.

Lan Antibodies

Anti-Lan are generally of IgG isotype arising from immune stimulation. Anti-Lan can be enhanced by enzyme-treated RBC. Anti-Lan are a cause of hemolytic transfusion reactions and HDFN.

VEL BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 034)

The Vel blood group system contains a single high-incidence antigen (Vel). Vel resides on SMIM1 or small integral membrane protein 1. SMIM1 is highly expressed on erythoblasts and red cells but not other hematopoietic cells and may be an erythroid-specific protein. In zebra fish, *smim1* expression is associated with erythropoiesis, with reduced erythrocyte production in smim1-knockdown zebra fish (Cvejic et al, 2013). Likewise, there is a correlation between *SMIM1* mRNA and mean hemoglobin content in human RBCs. It is hypothesized that SMIM1 plays a role in the formation and hemoglobinization of RBC (Cvejic et al, 2013).

Biochemistry and Molecular Biology

SMIM1 is a small, 78 amino acid, 18-kDa glycoprotein containing 1 *N*-glycan, several *O*-glycans, 3 cysteine residues, and a GXXXG transmembrane motif (Ballif et al, 2013; Storry et al, 2013). Current evidence suggests that SMIM1 is a type I transmembrane protein with a 50 amino acid extracellular domain (Storry et al, 2013). SMIM1 likely is present as a homodimer in the membrane (Ballif et al, 2013).

SMIM1 gene resides on chromosome 1p36 near the *RHD* gene (Ballif et al, 2013; Storry et al, 2013). The gene contains four exons and several GATA1 sites in the promoter region (Cvejic et al, 2013). Most Vel(–) individuals possess a 17-nt deletion in the transmembrane region (Ballif et al, 2013; Cvejic et al, 2013; Storry et al, 2013). Vel-weak individuals tend to be heterozygous for the common *SMIM1*-null allele. There is also evidence of a modifier allele regulating *SMIM1* expression. Genome-wide association studies have found an SNP located in intron 2 (rs1175550) associated with decreased *SMIM1* mRNA levels (Cvejic et al, 2013). Some heterozygous Vel-weak individuals (SMIM1–/+) also carried a Met51Arg missense mutation: It is unknown whether this polymorphism impacts membrane expression or alters an immune epitope (Cvejic et al, 2013).

Vel Antibodies

The Vel negative phenotype occurs in 0.0002% to 0.0006% of donors (Ballif et al, 2013). Anti-Vel antibodies are highly significant, capable of causing acute and delayed HTR, as well as HDFN. Anti-Vel was historically considered a high-titer, low-avidity antibody and can be missed in routine testing. Rare Vel-negative units are required for transfusion support.

CD59 BLOOD GROUP SYSTEM (ISBT NO. 035)

CD59 (membrane inhibitor of reactive lysis, membrane attack complex inhibitory factor) is a high-incidence antigen on RBC, white cells, placenta, seminal fluid, and other tissues (Kimberely et al, 2007). It plays a critical role in protecting cells from complement-mediated lysis through inhibition of the terminal C5b-C9 membrane attack complex. CD59 is also implicated in T cell activation, LPS binding, apoptosis, and reproduction.

Biochemistry and Molecular Biology

Like CD55 (DAF, Cromer blood group), CD59 is a GPI-linked glycoprotein and is missing on PNH-red cells. CD59 is a globular glycoprotein with one *N*-glycan, several *O*-glycans, and several sulhydryl bonds, and it is sensitive to DTT (Anliker et al, 2014). The gene for CD59 spans over 20 kb on chromosome 11p13 and contains a GC-rich promoter and four exons. Exons 2 through 4 encode the translated protein.

CD59 Antibodies

There are rare cases of isolated CD59 deficiency due to *CD59*-null alleles. There is one recent case report of an alloanti-CD59 in a patient with inherited CD59 deficiency (Anliker et al, 2014). The antibody was an IgG, enhanced by enzymes and inhibited by soluble CD59. It is presumed that the antibody is clinically significant.

IMMUNOHEMATOLOGY TESTS AND PROCEDURES

BASIC PRINCIPLES—HEMAGGLUTINATION

Specific hemagglutination is the single most important in vitro immunologic reaction in blood banking because it is the endpoint of almost all test systems designed to detect RBC antigens and antibodies. The hemagglutination process actually occurs in two stages. The first stage, often referred to as *RBC sensitization*, is simply the combination of paratope and epitope in a reversible reaction that follows the law of mass action and has an associated equilibrium constant. Antigen and antibody are held together by noncovalent attractions. In stage two, multiple RBCs with bound antibody form a stable latticework through antigen-antibody bridges formed between adjacent cells. This latticework is the basis of all visible agglutination reactions.

Formation of the latticework during the second stage of hemagglutination is naturally impeded by the fact that RBCs in solution normally repel one another. This is due to the net negative charge of the RBC membrane created by sialic acid. If RBCs are suspended in an ionic medium such as normal saline, cations arrange themselves around each cell to form an ionic cloud. Cations closest to the cell membrane are firmly bound and move with the RBC, whereas the outer cations move freely. The difference in charge at the surface between the inner and outer cation layers, called the surface of shear, creates an electrical potential named the ζ potential (Fig. 35-18). The ζ potential keeps RBCs in solution about 25 nm apart (Harmening, 2012). Another factor that may be important in keeping RBCs apart is the water of hydration. Proponents of this theory suggest that the hydrophilic polar heads of lipid molecules making up the outer cell membrane bilayer attract water molecules. The water thus creates a surface tension that helps to keep the cells apart.

One situation whereby the natural influence of the ζ potential to keep RBCs apart is circumvented is the phenomenon of rouleaux formation or "pseudoagglutination." Patients with multiple myeloma, Waldenström's macroglobulinemia, and hyperviscosity syndromes have high concentrations of abnormal serum proteins that change the net surface charge on the RBC membrane. The cells thus cluster together in clumps that resemble macroscopic hemagglutination. Plasma expanders, such as dextran and hydroxyethyl starch, as well as some intravenous x-ray contrast materials, can also cause rouleaux formation. Rouleaux can be differentiated from true agglutination by direct microscopy (1) by the classical "stacked-coin" formation in rouleaux and (2) by the loss of rouleaux after washing and resuspension in saline. Nonspecific agglutination can also be seen in cord blood samples contaminated with Wharton's jelly. The presence of hyaluronic acid and albumin in cord blood is responsible for this problem.

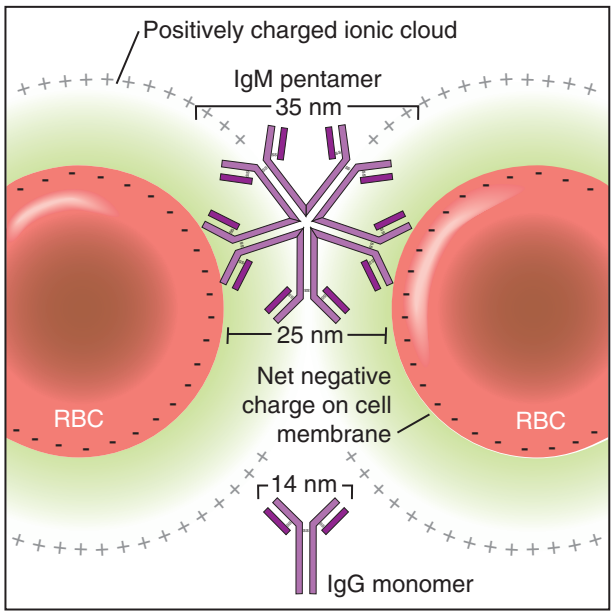


Figure 35-18 Erythrocytes are kept apart in an ionic medium by the ζ potential, which in turn influences the agglutinating capacity of immunoglobulin (Ig) G and IgM.

Factors Affecting Specific Hemagglutination

The extent of RBC sensitization and the facilitation of second-stage latticework formation are influenced first by inherent characteristics of the specific antigens and antibodies involved. In most immunohematology procedures, IgM antibodies can facilitate the second stage of hemagglutination because of their large diameter (35 nm) and multivalency, which allows them to span the distance between two adjacent RBCs in solution (see Fig. 35-18). Because of their innate agglutinating ability, IgM antibodies are frequently referred to as *direct agglutinins*. Most IgG antibodies, on the other hand, are considerably smaller (14 nm) and are unable to induce visible agglutination without the assistance of secondary enhancing reagents. Thus IgG antibodies are commonly referred to as *indirect agglutinins*.

The density and accessibility of specific antigens on the RBC membrane are also critical in second-stage latticework formation. This can be illustrated by comparing the ABO and Rh antigens. Approximately 1 million ABO antigens are present per RBC, displayed on large *N*-glycans of extramembranous glycoproteins. Because of their high density and easy accessibility, ABO antibodies can readily bind exposed ABO antigens and agglutinate RBCs. In contrast, only 10,000 to 30,000 Rh antigens are readily accessible per RBC and, as multipass integral membrane proteins, are considered intramembranous. As a consequence, Rh antigens are less easily agglutinated by Rh antisera. In another example of the influence of antigen density, RBCs that are homozygous for a particular blood group gene will often give stronger reactions than heterozygous cells. This is because homozygotes express twice as many copies, or a double dose, of antigen per cell. In immunohematologic testing, this phenomenon is frequently referred to as *dosage*.

Secondarily to inherent antigen and antibody characteristics, the first and second stages of the hemagglutination reaction may also be influenced by manipulating various physical and/or chemical parameters of the reaction environment. An outline of how these various parameters may be controlled is shown in Table 35-27.

Grading of Hemagglutination Reactions

Hemagglutination in blood bank testing is observed and graded according to the strength of the reaction. Currently, three methods are available for evaluating visual hemagglutination reactions: tube testing, column agglutination (gel technology), solid-phase, and/or microtiter plate technology. In test tube reactions, reagents and patient sample are added to a test tube and centrifuged, creating a cell button at the bottom of the test tube. The cell button is gently dislodged while observing for macroscopic agglutination. Column agglutination or gel technology utilizes a dextran acrylamide gel microtube prepared by the manufacturer. The gel traps agglutinates at the top of the chamber if hemagglutination has occurred, while unagglutinated cells pass through the gel layer and form a pellet at the bottom of the microtube. Microtiter plate technology uses serologic techniques in micro well plates instead of test tubes. In solid-phase technology, a microplate is the vessel for the reaction. Reagent or reagent cells (as a monolayer of cells or cell stroma) coat the well, to which patient sample is added. Following incubation and washing, indicator cells are added. When hemagglutination occurs, there is a diffuse adherence of RBC to the well. If no reaction occurs, the RBCs settle to the bottom of the well.

Automated testing systems use column agglutination and solid-phase and microtiter-plate technologies to process samples for ABO, Rh, crossmatch, DAT, and so on. Depending on the instrument, some or all of the testing processes are controlled by the system's computer. Parameters set in the software may determine reaction or require a human interface to review the reaction.

Tube Reactions

Hemolysis is considered the strongest positive reaction that can occur and indicates the presence of a potent, complement-fixing antibody. After recipient serum and reagent RBCs are incubated and centrifuged at 37° C, the serum should first be examined for hemolysis before the cell button is resuspended. When reading for agglutination, the tube should be shaken, using a gentle wrist action, until all cells are dislodged. This is most easily accomplished by gently holding the test tube at the top in a vertical fashion and using the wrist to gently dislodge the cell button, while watching closely for agglutinates. As the cell button begins to resuspend, tip the tube gently to observe for agglutinates. Proper illumination with a concave mirror is an invaluable aid for macroscopic reading. By placing the tube about 2.5 inches above a 3-inch concave mirror, aggregates can be differentiated easily from the free cells by looking at the mirror, not at the tube.

TABLE 35-27
Factors Affecting the Hemagglutination Reaction

Reaction Parameter	Effect	Manipulation
Temperature	Influences the equilibrium constant and/or reaction rate, depending on the class of antibody involved	Decreasing the temperature to 24° C or even to 4° C enhances the reaction of IgM antibodies Prewarming or maintaining a reaction temperature of 37° C provides the optimum temperature for detection of IgG antibodies, while preventing most IgM antibodies from reacting
Incubation time	Different Ag/Ab reactions reach equilibrium over different time periods	Increasing the time of incubation in a given test system may enhance the detection of a weakly reactive antibody
pH	At a pH range of 6.5 to 7.5, chemical groups on Ag and Ab are oppositely charged, providing optimal ionic forces of attraction for most blood group antibodies	Changing the pH affects the equilibrium constant for selected antibodies that may react preferentially in a more acidic environment (e.g., anti-M, anti-Pr)
Ionic strength	In an isotonic saline medium, sodium cations and chloride anions cluster around erythrocyte Ag and blood group Ab, respectively, acting to neutralize Ag/Ab attractive forces	Addition of LISS reduces the shielding effect on oppositely charged Ab and Ag, thus increasing the rate of reaction and the equilibrium constant for red cell sensitization
Antibody concentration	Can affect first- and second-stage agglutination by influencing the number of antibody molecules attached to each erythrocyte	Increasing the serum-to-cell concentration increases the rate and/or affects the equilibrium constant of red cell sensitization by IgG antibodies May help to induce second-stage agglutination by IgM antibodies Addition of PEG, a large space-occupying molecule, effectively increases the relative concentrations of ag and ab respective to the volume of the reaction, greatly increasing the rate of reaction; is used only in AHG testing to detect IgG antibodies
ζ Potential	Causes red cells to repel one anothe in solution; if the ζ potential can be reduced or the red cells brought together by physical means, second-stage agglutination of sensitized red cells can be facilitated	Centrifugation—forcing cells closer together facilitates latticework formation Enzymes—cleave sialic acid residues to lower the ζ potential and improve accessibility of certain blood group antigens Albumin—reduces ζ potential and/or water of hydration to allow red cells to approach one another more closely Polybrene/protamine—provides an excess of cations that neutralize the repulsive force between red cells, producing both nonspecific aggregation and antibody-mediated latticework formation; the final addition of sodium citrate disperses nonspecific aggregates, while specific ag/ab agglutinates remain

ab, Antibody; *ag,* antigen; *AHG,* antihuman globulin; *LISS,* low–ionic strength saline; *PEG,* polyethylene glycol.

TABLE 35-28
Grading and Scoring of Hemagglutination

Grade	Appearance	Score
H	Hemolysis—presence of free hemoglobin in the serum	10
4+	One solid aggregate	10
3+	Several medium to large aggregates	8
2+	Many small to medium aggregates with a clear background	5
1+	Many small aggregates with a turbid background	3
+ or w	Few small aggregates with many unagglutinated cells	2
$\pm^m$ or $+^m$	Aggregates visible only under microscopic magnification	1
0	Negative—absence of aggregates; all cells unagglutinated	0
mf	Mixed-field agglutination—presence of minor population of agglutinated cells superimposed on a negative background	NA
R	Rouleaux—nonspecific aggregation appearing like a stack of coins; disappears with addition of saline	NA

NA, Not applicable.

Table 35-28 lists two protocols for evaluating the strength of agglutination using numeric grading and/or scoring. Figure 35-19 shows the appearance of different agglutination grades. Although the agglutination grade gives an approximate idea regarding the potency or strength of a particular antibody, the scoring method is much more useful in semiquantitative procedures, particularly when used in conjunction with titration to compare the relative antibody strengths of two different sera.

Unlike tube testing, microcolumn gel technology and solid-phase red cell adherence reactions are fixed after the centrifugation phase. The card or well is ready to read without the need to dislodge the cell button. (See Figures 35-22 and 35-23 for examples of reactions in gel and solid phase.)

THE ANTIHUMAN GLOBULIN TEST

Many IgG antibodies are not able to directly produce detectable hemagglutination, even after centrifugation and the use of enhancement media and techniques such as polyethylene glycol, low–ionic strength saline (LISS), albumin, or enzymes. To visualize reactions by these antibodies, AHG reagents, which contain specific antibodies to human Igs or complement components, must be utilized. The antibodies in AHG sera act as bridges between RBCs already sensitized with antibody or complement to produce the characteristic latticework of second-stage hemagglutination (Fig. 35-20). This is the basis of the AHG test.

The AHG test is also called the Coombs test, in honor of one of the investigators who first developed the test for laboratory use (Coombs et al, 1945), although the principle was actually described much earlier (in 1908) by Moreschi (Harmening, 2012). When the test is used to detect antibodies or complement bound to RBCs in vivo, it is called the direct antiglobulin test (DAT). When the test is used to detect the reaction of antibody and RBCs in vitro after an appropriate incubation phase, it is called the indirect antiglobulin test (IAT). The red cell antibody screen is an example of an IAT.

Antihuman Globulin Reagents and Procedures

Various preparations of AHG sera are available for blood bank testing, depending on the application (direct or indirect) and whether one wishes to detect RBC sensitization by IgG, complement, or both.

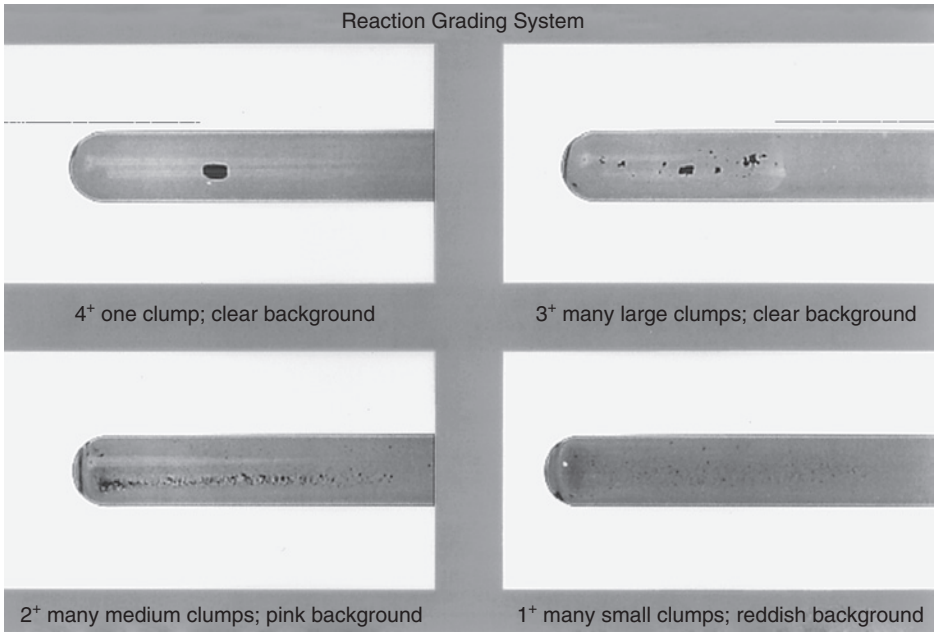


Figure 35-19 Agglutination grading system showing macroscopic hemagglutination reactions.

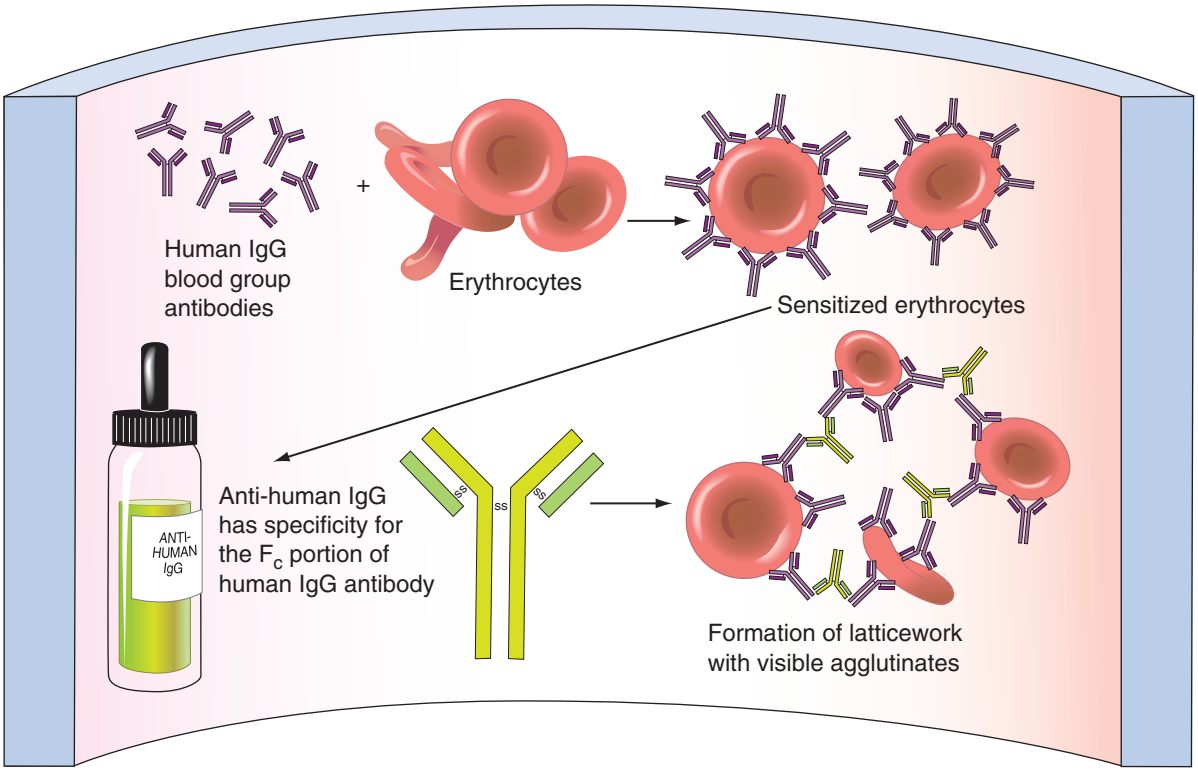


Figure 35-20 Antihuman globulin antibodies form a bridge between adjacent erythrocytes sensitized with human immunoglobulin (Ig)G or complement components.

Polyspecific Reagents

Polyclonal, polyspecific AHG reagents are produced by hyperimmunizing animals, usually rabbits, with purified Ig or complement to produce high-titered, high-avidity IgG antibodies. For a given batch of reagent, animal sera are harvested, pooled, adsorbed to remove heterophil agglutinins, and then titrated to ascertain the dilution necessary for optimal reactivity in routine use. Conventional polyspecific (also called broad-spectrum) AHG contains polyclonal IgG antibodies to the spectrum of human IgG subclasses and the C3 complement cleavage products C3b and C3d. Some anti-C4b and anti-C4d activity may also be present. However, most manufacturers adsorb out anti-C4 activity from their polyspecific AHG reagents because it has been shown that in vitro complement activation by clinically insignificant cold agglutinins results in much more C4d than C3d binding (Klein & Anstee, 2006). Excluding anti-C4 activity thus reduces the number of false-positives in both DAT and IAT testing using polyspecific reagents. Because immunization against IgG will also produce anti–light chain antibodies in a polyclonal response, one should remember that polyclonal antiglobulin sera may cross-react with IgA or IgM light chains unless the manufacturer specifies that the anti-IgG component is heavy chain specific.

At present, the most commonly used polyspecific AHG reagents consist of rabbit polyclonal anti-IgG blended with murine monoclonal antibodies to C3b and C3d complement components. AHG is a polyspecific reagent derived exclusively from murine monoclonal antibodies to IgG, C3b, and

C3d is available. The activity of anti-IgG and anticomplement in polyspecific antisera, whether polyclonal or monoclonal, will vary somewhat among different manufacturers and among lots produced by the same manufacturer. However, all AHG sera must contain levels of anti-IgG and anti-C3d activity that meet or exceed the reference standards of the FDA (21CFR660.52; Code of Federal Regulations, 2001a, 2001b).

Monospecific Reagents

Commercially available FDA-licensed monospecific reagents include anti-IgG, anti-C3b+C3d, and anti-C3d. Monospecific anti-IgG or anticomplement may also be polyclonal or monoclonal in origin. For monoclonal anti-IgG, manufacturers must blend monoclonals against a variety of IgG epitopes or select a clone with specificity for an epitope common to all variants of IgG to ensure that the spectrum of human IgG subclasses will react with their reagent. With polyclonal monospecific anti-IgG, again one should keep in mind that it may contain anti–light chain activity unless the manufacturer labels it as heavy chain specific. Production of murine monoclonal blends of monospecific anticomplement has allowed manufacturers to develop reagents containing quantities of purified anti-C3b and anti-C3d of known potency that are less likely to give false-positive results by other anticomplement activities found in polyclonal reagents (Harmening, 2012).

Choosing Which AHG Reagent to Use

The DAT is an important diagnostic serologic technique used for the detection of antibody binding to RBC membranes in vivo. Laboratory indications include testing cord cells for HDFN, investigation in HTR, and in AIHA studies. The reason for the testing will indicate the type of reagent that should be used. Polyspecific AHG reagents containing both anti-IgG and anticomplement activity are typically used for initial DAT evaluation. This is especially important when the DAT is being performed to aid in the diagnosis of CAIHA and some forms of drug-induced hemolytic anemia in which complement may be the only evidence of immune-mediated hemolysis. Circulating red cells that have been involved in complement activation will have mostly C3d on their surface as the result of complement regulatory protein degradation of C3b (see Fig. 35-1). Therefore, polyspecific AHG sera used in DAT testing must contain anti-C3d reactivity and usually contain some anti-C3b reactivity as well. One notable exception to the use of polyspecific AHG for DAT testing is cord blood. Because *only* IgG can cross the placenta, the DAT may be performed with an anti-IgG reagent only (see Prenatal and Postnatal Testing section).

A positive DAT with all reagents tested (polyspecific, IgG, C3) may indicate spontaneous agglutination or autoagglutination. Cells already heavily coated with IgG can agglutinate upon centrifugation in the absence of AHG reagent. IgM cold autoagglutinins that were not dissociated during the washing procedure can also cause autoagglutination. All positive DAT tests should be tested with an inert control such as saline or 6% albumin before positive test reactions are concluded.

The IAT is used for detection of in vitro antibody binding to RBCs, regardless of the antibody's ability to fix complement. Laboratory indications include antibody detection (crossmatch and antibody screening), antibody identification, antibody titration, and RBC phenotyping. It is unclear whether polyspecific AHG, which contains anticomplement reactivity, improves serum antibody detection by the IAT. Rare reports have described antibodies that were detected only by their ability to bind complement in vitro and would have been missed with the use of monospecific anti-IgG reagents (Fung, 2014; Harmening, 2012). In addition, polyspecific AHG can yield stronger reactions in the IAT than monospecific anti-IgG alone (Wright & Issitt, 1979). A major disadvantage of polyspecific AHG is unwanted detection of complement activation by clinically insignificant cold-reactive autoagglutinins or alloantibodies. As a result, many laboratories choose to use monospecific anti-IgG in antibody detection and identification tests and in crossmatch procedures.

Table 35-29 compares various applications for DAT and IAT techniques. Antiglobulin testing may be performed using test tubes, capillary tubes, microtiter plates, or gel microtube techniques (see later section on Compatibility Testing). These procedures may be semiautomated or fully automated, particularly in facilities that perform large-volume testing, such as blood collection centers. Unless otherwise specified, procedures referred to in this chapter employ tube testing. *The AABB Technical Manual* (Fung, 2014), *Judd's Methods in Immunohematology* (Judd et al, 2008), and *Immunohematology Methods* (Mallory, 1993) are excellent general references for most common procedures, as well as more specialized techniques.

Quality Control of the Antihuman Globulin Test

To standardize antiglobulin sera and to confirm true-negative antiglobulin reactions, two types of quality control RBCs are normally used: those coated with IgG and those coated with C3b and/or C3d. To sensitize RBCs

TABLE 35-29
Applications for Direct and Indirect Antiglobulin Techniques

	Applications	Purpose	What Is Detected
Direct antiglobulin test (DAT)	Investigation of HTR	To detect circulating donor red cells that are sensitized with recipient antibody. A positive DAT is the first immunohematologic evidence of a hemolytic reaction after transfusion	DAT positive owing to IgG and/or C3d depending on the antibodies responsible
	Diagnosis of HDFN	To detect maternal antibodies that have crossed the placenta to sensitize fetal red cells	DAT almost always positive as a result of IgG; occasionally C3d if ABO antibodies involved
	Diagnosis of AIHA	To detect autoantibody sensitizing a patient's own red cells	Warm autoantibodies: DAT almost always positive owing to IgG Cold autoantibodies: DAT may be due to C3d only
	Investigation of drug-induced hemolysis	To detect antidrug/red cell antibodies and/or subsequent activation of the complement system	DAT may be positive owing to IgG, C3d, or both, depending on the mechanism involved (see under Investigation of Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia section)
			Indirect antiglobulin test
	Antibody detection (or antibody screen)	To detect clinically significant IgG alloantibodies in the recipient	Recipient IgG antibodies bound to reagent screening cells*
	Antibody identification	To specifically identify those antibodies detected by reagent screening cells or by donor red cells	Recipient IgG antibodies bound to reagent cells from a panel of 10-12 donors*
	Crossmatching	To detect antibodies that may have been missed by the antibody screen because of absence of the corresponding antigen or presence of a dosing antibody	Recipient IgG antibodies bound to donor red cells*
	Red cell antigen typing	To type patient or donor red cells for antigens that can be detected by IgG antisera reactive only by the AGT. A common example of this would be the weak D test	Specific binding of reagent IgG antibodies to red cells positive for the corresponding antigen

AGT, Antihuman globulin test; *AIHA,* autoimmune hemolytic anemia; *HDFN,* hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn; *HTR,* hemolytic transfusion reaction; *Ig,* immunoglobulin.
*If complement is fixed in vitro, it may be detected if polyspecific antiglobulin is used.

with IgG, Rh antibodies are usually used. RBCs coated with C3b are prepared by incubation of whole blood in low ionic strength saline (LISS) or with human anti-Le^a or anti-I. C3d-coated RBCs are prepared by incubating C3b-coated cells with fresh serum or trypsin to split C3b→C3d. IgG or complement-coated control cells should give a 1+ to 2+ reaction (see Fig. 35-19) when tested with anti-IgG or anti-C3b+C3d.

Quality control cells for the antiglobulin test are referred to as *check cells* or *Coombs control cells*. In a true-negative test, free active antiglobulin reagent should remain. Control cells, sensitized with IgG and/or C3, are added to all negative tests and centrifuged. Hemagglutination of check cells confirms both the presence and the reactivity of the AHG reagent, thus validating a negative test result. If the control cells fail to agglutinate in any tube, the tests must be repeated because they are invalid and may have yielded false-negative results. False-negative tests can occur for a variety of reasons and are listed in Table 35-30.

Sensitivity of the Antihuman Globulin Test

Although the antiglobulin test is extremely sensitive, a negative test does not exclude the possible presence of antibodies on RBCs. It is estimated that 200 to 500 IgG or C3 molecules bound per cell are required for detection by antiglobulin antibodies (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). A negative reaction can occur with small quantities of bound IgG and C3. In addition, AHG sera may possess greater activity against some subclasses of IgG than against others. Consequently, certain AHG sera may produce negative results with RBCs coated by a particular IgG subclass.

COMPATIBILITY TESTING

The term *compatibility testing* has historically been used synonymously with the serologic crossmatch test. In its broader context, however, compatibility testing is an entire quality process composed of many procedures designed to provide the safest blood product possible for the recipient of a transfusion. These procedures include proper record keeping, accurate donor and recipient identification, and actual serologic testing of the recipient specimen before transfusion. Under certain conditions, an electronic crossmatch may be performed instead of a serologic crossmatch. Outlined in the following sections and in Table 35-31 are the steps in compatibility testing required by the AABB Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services (Levitt, 2014), referred to henceforth as the AABB Standards.

Specimen Requirements

Recipient Sample Identification

A physician order is required before blood is drawn for a type and screen. The order may be verbal (followed by a written order), on paper, or electronic. Proper identification of patient blood samples and donor units is absolutely essential in blood banking. Recipient blood specimens must be labeled by the phlebotomist at the bedside directly from information on the patient's wristband. If the patient's wristband is not attached for any reason, signed confirmation of the patient's identity by nursing staff should be obtained before the blood is drawn. The recipient's blood specimen

TABLE 35-30

Basic Procedures for Direct and Indirect Antiglobulin Testing by Tube Method

		REASONS FOR INVALID REACTIONS IN ANTIGLOBULIN TESTING	
Procedure		**False-Positive**	**False-Negative**
Direct antiglobulin test (DAT)	1. Prepare a 3% to 5% suspension in normal saline of the red cells to be tested. 2. Add 1 drop of red cell suspension to a tube and wash three to four times with saline. 3. Blot the tube after the last wash. 4. Add 2 drops of polyspecific AHG (anti-IgG + anticomplement). 5. Centrifuge and examine for agglutination.* 6. Add check cells to all negative tubes (see Quality Control of the Antihuman Globulin Test section). Note: For DAT, blood samples should be collected in EDTA to prevent fixation of complement in vitro by clinically insignificant cold autoagglutinins.	• Overcentrifugation • Direct agglutination by strong cold agglutinins • Overincubation with enzyme-treated cells • Improper use of PEG or polycation enhancement reagents • Inadequate resuspension of cell button • Rouleaux formation‡ • Dirty glassware • Small fibrin clots may trap cells and mimic agglutination • Cells with a positive DAT will yield false-positive results in any indirect antiglobulin test	• AHG reagent failure† • Failure to add AHG reagents† • Improper or inadequate washing† • Delayed washing (elution of weakly attached antibody) • Serum/cell ratio too low • Failure to add test serum or enhancement reagents • Undercentrifugation • Resuspension of cell button too vigorous
Indirect antiglobulin test (IAT)	1. Add 2 to 3 drops of patient serum or the recommended number of drops of commercially prepared antisera to each tube. 2. Place 1 drop of the 3% to 5% red cell suspension to be tested in a tube (e.g., donor cells, reagent screening cells). 3. Add recommended number of drops of enhancement media (e.g., LISS, PEG) if indicated. 4. Incubate at 37° C for the time period indicated for the assay being performed (from 15 to 60 minutes). 5. If indicated in the procedure, centrifuge and examine the serum for hemolysis and the cells for agglutination. 6. Whether step 5 is performed or not, continue by washing the tube(s) three to four times with normal saline. 7. Blot tubes dry after the last wash. 8. Add 2 drops of antiglobulin sera (polyspecific or monospecific anti-IgG) to all tubes. 9. Centrifuge and examine for agglutination.* 10. Add check cells to all negative tubes,		

AHG, Antihuman globulin; *EDTA,* ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *LISS,* low–ionic strength saline; *PEG,* polyethylene glycol.
*Protocol may include optional microscopic examination to confirm macroscopically negative tests.
†Will be detected by the use of Coombs control cells.
‡Rouleaux will cause false-positive results in indirect tests read after 37° C incubation.

TABLE 35-31
Required Steps in Pretransfusion Compatibility Testing*

Physician (or other authorized health professional) order	Written (paper or electronic) order for type and screen test • Type and screen • Crossmatch red blood cells • Special requests such as irradiation, cytomegalovirus (CMV)-negative, antigen-matched, etc. • Oral orders may be accepted if followed by the written request
Phlebotomy/recipient identification	Phlebotomist must positively identify the recipient and the recipient's blood sample • Transfusion request and labeled patient blood sample must contain at least two pieces of independent identifying information for that patient (e.g., name, hospital number, date of birth) • Mechanism to identify the date of sample and the phlebotomist (paper or electronic) • Transfusion service will ensure that identifying information on the requisition and sample label are in agreement
Recipient testing	Perform ABO and Rh typing on recipient's blood specimen—red cell and serum or plasma testing are required Review previous records for comparison with current typing results • Clinically significant antibodies • Significant adverse events to transfusion • Special transfusion requirements • Previous ABO group and Rh type • Difficulty in blood typing Test recipient's serum or plasma to detect clinically significant antibodies • Method must include 37° C incubation with conversion to antihuman globulin using reagent red cells that are not pooled
Donor testing	Confirm ABO and Rh types on donor red cell units as required • Confirmation testing for ABO group required on all units (serum testing not required) • Confirmation of Rh type required only on those units labeled as Rh-negative (weak D testing is not required)
Crossmatch	Select ABO- and Rh-compatible red cell components for transfusion Perform serologic or electronic crossmatch of red cell components • Full antiglobulin crossmatch required if current antibody screen is positive or the patient has a known history of clinically significant antibodies
Labeling	Label all red cell products or other components with the recipient's identifying information • Label must contain at least two independent patient identifiers, donor unit number, and compatibility test results, if performed

*Requirements paraphrased from Fung (2014). See AABB Standards (Levitt, 2014) for specific wording.

label should be legible and should include at least the patient's full name, hospital identification number, and specimen collection date, and it should be securely attached to the specimen tube when it is accepted by blood bank personnel. Unlabeled or improperly labeled blood specimens are unacceptable under any circumstances. During testing, all test tubes or other types of aliquot or reaction containers must be accurately identified directly from the label on the recipient sample.

Each pretransfusion blood sample should be accompanied by an appropriate order or requisition, containing at least the patient's full name and hospital identification number. The signature or initials of the phlebotomist should be on the requisition, because the test requisition is a permanent record of that particular specimen collection. With increasing use of electronic order entry, a computer-based system may record the physician order and capture the person performing the phlebotomy. The phlebotomist, however, should still sign the specimen for verification and matching against the electronic record. Upon specimen receipt, the label on the tube is compared with the information on the requisition for any discrepancies. If there is any doubt as to the proper identity of the sample, another sample must be obtained.

Type of Sample

Although serum has traditionally been the preferred specimen for compatibility testing, plasma is increasingly used owing to newer testing technologies (e.g., gel test). If serum is used, blood samples should be collected in siliconized plain tubes without serum separator gel. Other test methods, such as gel column agglutination, microtiter plates, and automated testing systems, may require a specific type of sample per manufacturer instructions.

Problems with plasma in conventional antiglobulin techniques are primarily technical. Plasma can be associated with small fibrin clots that can trap RBCs and resemble agglutination. Fibrin may also trap serum and cause neutralization of AHG reagent if not removed before washing. Finally, plasma can enhance rouleaux formation if fibrinogen levels are particularly high.

Appearance

Most blood bank laboratories have policies in place to reject grossly hemolyzed recipient blood samples as unacceptable for pretransfusion testing unless there is no other choice. Using serum that is already hemolyzed may mask antibody-induced hemolysis that would ordinarily be detectable in antibody screening tests. Lipemia may rarely cause difficulty in evaluating agglutination results, although lipemia is not usually a cause for rejection of a pretransfusion sample. Automated instruments may have additional specifications regarding sample appearance. For example, a grossly hemolyzed or lipemic sample can give false-positive readings with an automated gel technology instrument.

Age of Sample

According to AABB Standards, a pretransfusion specimen for testing and red cell transfusion is valid for 72 hours. After 72 hours, a new sample must be drawn. Requiring a new pretransfusion sample every 72 hours on previously transfused or pregnant individuals ensures that the sample being tested is fairly representative of the patient's current immune status.

In elective surgery patients, some facilities will extend the age of a preoperative sample up to 1 month provided that the patient (1) has a negative antibody screen, (2) has no history of clinically significant antibodies, (3) is not pregnant, and (4) has not been transfused within the preceding 3 months. Patients failing to meet these criteria are required to have a sample drawn within 72 hours of planned surgery (Banderanko, 2014).

Sample Storage

AABB Standards require that all pretransfusion samples be stored at 1° to 6° C for at least 7 days after testing is completed, along with at least one representative segment from each of the donor units crossmatched on the recipient. The purpose of this is to ensure that repeat or additional testing of the donor or patient may be performed later if the patient experiences a delayed hemolytic reaction or other adverse effect of transfusion.

Documentation and Record Keeping

General Considerations

All blood banks must have a manual or computerized system of record keeping that contains the results or outcomes of all tests and activities carried out in the blood bank. Records must be complete and retrievable within a reasonable time frame. Transfer or dissemination of information from any patient records must conform to requirements of the institution's confidentiality policies in accordance with federal and state laws and regulations. Records must be preserved for different periods of time, depending on federal, state, and accrediting agency requirements.

Documentation of the entire compatibility testing process must include records of patient identification, order entry, individual special transfusion needs, date and time of testing, results of patient testing, identity of the technologist who performed the testing, and blood component issues. A computerized system is ideal for capturing this information and enables rapid and easy retrieval of these data for a given patient, including records of ABO and Rh type, antibody problems, transfusion history, and requirements for special types of blood products. From a more global perspective, computerized retrieval of data for groups of patients also greatly enhances the monitoring of blood product utilization within the facility, including blood ordering and transfusion practices of physicians.

Results and interpretations of all patient testing should be documented on appropriate manual worksheets or entered into the computer immediately upon observation of the results. In a manual record-keeping system, all forms should be filled out with ink, not pencil. If results must be changed on manual worksheets, original results must not be obliterated; a single line should be placed through them, and the new results dated and initialed by the technologist making the change. A continuously updated list of initials used by all personnel working in the blood bank on all shifts must be part of the permanent blood bank records. Changes to computerized results must also be completely documented as part of the computerized result record with ability to track both original and corrected data (Fung, 2014).

Check of Previous Records

Manual or computerized records must be checked for previous results on a given patient when a new sample is received. ABO and Rh tests on the current specimen should be checked against previous results, if available, to help verify that the specimen was collected from the correct individual. Information on any unexpected antibodies identified previously is also extremely important because the titer of an antibody may fall to levels that cannot be detected by antibody screening procedures. If a clinically significant antibody was previously identified, the patient must receive RBCs negative for the corresponding antigen (antigen-negative) even if current antibody screening tests are negative. Previous significant adverse events to transfusions and special requirements should also be reviewed before crossmatching is done.

ABO Grouping

Antisera and reagent RBCs for ABO grouping are standardized and readily available commercially. Most blood bank laboratories use monoclonal reagent antisera derived from antibodies produced by hybridoma cell lines. ABO grouping consists of two parts, commonly referred to as *red cell grouping* (forward type) and *serum grouping* (back type). In forward grouping, a 3% to 5% RBC suspension is tested with commercially prepared anti-A and anti-B to test for antigens on the RBC membrane. In reverse grouping, patient or donor serum is tested against reagent cells of known A_1 and B phenotype to test for the expected ABO antibodies in the patient's serum (see Table 35-6). ABO grouping is carried out at room temperature, with only an immediate-spin centrifugation step required to promote a macroscopic agglutination reaction. The manufacturer's directions must be followed for all commercial reagents.

ABO Grouping of Donors

The collecting facility is required to perform a forward and reverse ABO type on all donors. The transfusion service or other laboratory responsible for compatibility testing must confirm the ABO group of all units of RBCs or whole blood received. RBC forward grouping is performed from an integral segment attached to each donor unit. For units labeled as group O, anti-A,B alone may be used for donor confirmatory testing because only group O RBCs will fail to hemagglutinate with anti-A,B.

ABO Grouping of Recipients

Every pretransfusion patient blood specimen must also be tested for ABO group. Both cell and serum groupings are required for initial ABO testing of all patient samples, and the results of RBC and serum testing should agree with each other (see Table 35-6) before any results are reported and blood is transfused.

Some blood banks routinely include the use of anti-A,B in the RBC grouping procedure, although this reagent does not usually yield any additional useful information except for the detection of A_x or B_x weak subgroups. Anti-A,B is used as a convenient reagent in repeat testing to confirm initial typing of a group O patient. Anti-A,B may be used for confirmatory typing with neonate and infant samples, especially when the infant has been transfused with group O RBCs. Infant red cells may show weaker reactions on forward typing owing to the decreased number of ABO antigens on infant red cells (see ABO and I Blood Group sections).

ABO Grouping Discrepancies

Interpretation of ABO blood grouping results is generally straightforward. In the event that the results of RBC and serum grouping do not agree, testing is repeated to rule out any clerical or technical error. If results still disagree, an ABO discrepancy is present owing to problems with the patient's serum or cells that must be resolved before an ABO type can be confirmed. Table 35-32 lists some of the many reasons for ABO discrepancies. Several references are available that provide a complete description of these problems and the protocols for resolution (Harmening, 2012; Fung, 2014).

TABLE 35-32
Some Causes of ABO Grouping Discrepancies

	Problems with Red Cell Testing	Problems with Serum Testing
Unexpected positive reactions	Acquired B antigen associated with colon and gastric cancers, intestinal obstructions Cord cells contaminated with Wharton's jelly Autoagglutination caused by cold autoantibodies Cells heavily coated with warm autoantibody Polyagglutination Acriflavine antibody (against dye used in anti-B) Genetic chimerism* Bone marrow transplants* Administration of red cells outside ABO group* B(A) phenomenon Fetomaternal hemorrhage*	Rouleaux-forming proteins present (e.g., plasma expanders, monoclonal gamma globulins) Room temperature alloantibody present (e.g., anti-M, N, P1) Room temperature alloantibody in immunoglobulin (Ig)M phase (e.g., anti-c) Cold autoagglutinin present (e.g., anti-I, IH) Passively acquired ABO antibodies, (e.g., incompatible plasma transfusion) Passenger lymphocyte-derived antibody associated with minor incompatible bone marrow or solid organ transplant Subgroup of A with anti-A1 in serum *Cis*-AB with weak anti-B in serum
Unexpected negative reactions	A or B subgroups Antigen depression due to leukemia or other disease state High levels of soluble blood group substances Massive transfusion with compatible red cells outside of ABO group Bone marrow transplants	Age of patient (elderly, newborn) Hypogammaglobulinemia or agammaglobulinemia Immunosuppression Bone marrow transplants ABO subgroups Long-term parenteral nutrition

*Look for mixed-field appearance of reactions with reagent antisera.

Screening Cell Master List

		Rh								Kell				Duffy		Kidd		Sex linked	Lewis		MNSs				P	Lutheran	
Vial	Donor	D	C	E	c	e	f	C^w	V	K	k	Kp^a	Js^a	Fy^a	Fy^b	Jk^a	Jk^b	Xg^a	Le^a	Le^b	S	s	M	N	P1	Lu^a	Lu^b
I	R1R1	+	+	0	0	+	0	0	0	+	+	0	0	0	+	+	0	+	0	+	+	+	+	0	+	0	+
II	R2R2	+	0	+	+	0	0	0	0	0	+	0	0	+	0	0	+	+	+	0	0	+	0	+	+	0	+

Figure 35-21 The "antigram" accompanying each lot of reagent screening red blood cells.

If a blood transfusion is needed emergently and an ABO discrepancy occurs that cannot be resolved in a timely manner, group O packed RBCs, AB plasma components, or both may be given. However, it is important to be certain that a sufficient pretransfusion blood specimen is obtained from the patient so that the workup may be continued. In some cases, it may be necessary to send a pretransfusion specimen to a reference laboratory for further evaluation.

Rh Typing

Several types of antisera are available for detection of the RhD antigen. Today, the most commonly utilized anti-D typing reagents in tube testing are monoclonal blends from several different clones. Some reagents also contain a blend of IgM and IgG anti-D to allow for immediate spin testing and indirect antiglobulin testing for weak D with the same reagent. Manufacturers may offer a control reagent as well to be used with the anti-D reagent. The anti-D used for column agglutination testing is a monoclonal IgM. It is crucial to understand the different anti-D reagents in order to select the appropriate reagent for the facility, patient population and laboratory use. The manufacturer's instructions detail the specifics of their reagent, uses, and contraindications.

Direct typing for the D antigen is carried out at room temperature by the immediate spin technique, after mixing one drop of saline-suspended 3% to 5% RBCs and one drop of commercial anti-D. If weak D testing is necessary, RBCs are tested by IAT with an IgG anti-D. A parallel test with a negative diluent control is always included for the weak D test.

Rh Typing of Donors

As required by the AABB Standards, all whole blood donor units are tested by the collecting facility for the D antigen by direct agglutination methods. All donor units testing as Rh-negative by direct agglutination are tested for a weak D phenotype by the IAT. If routine D testing or weak D testing is positive, the unit is labeled Rh-positive. The transfusion service must reconfirm the D type of all RBC units labeled Rh-negative by testing red cells from an integral attached segment by a direct anti-D agglutination method. Repeat testing of donor units by the transfusion service for weak D is not required by the AABB Standards.

Rh Typing of Recipients

Every pretransfusion recipient blood specimen must be tested for the D antigen by direct typing. Indirect testing for weak D in recipients is not necessary: Patients who fail to agglutinate after direct agglutination are typed as Rh-negative. Some blood banks do perform weak D testing for prenatal specimens; however, more recent data show that many individuals typing as weak D possess a partial D phenotype and are at risk for RhD alloimmunization. Erythrocyte typing for the C, c, E, and e antigens of the Rh system is not performed routinely but may be done to determine the most probable Rh genotype in the evaluation of antibody problems, in parentage studies, and in patients with long-term transfusion requirements.

ANTIBODY DETECTION

All specimens submitted for pretransfusion testing must be screened for clinically significant antibodies in the recipient serum (antibody screen). Because clinically significant antibodies typically react at body temperature, most laboratories omit room temperature incubation entirely. AABB Standards require that the method used incorporate incubation at physiologic or body temperature (37° C), followed by conversion to the IAT. If a method other than the IAT is used, it must have documented and validated equivalent sensitivity in its ability to detect clinically significant antibodies (Fung, 2014). A variety of antibody screening protocols, utilizing different technologies, are in use today.

Reagent Red Blood Cells

Reagent RBCs or screening cells used for the detection and identification of antibodies in a patient's serum are usually obtained from commercial manufacturers. AABB Standards require that antibody detection in recipients be performed using reagent cells that are not pooled. Typically, antibody screening cells consist of two to three group O reagent cells selected from different donors of known phenotype. Sets of cells are prepared so that all antigens to the most commonly encountered blood group antibodies are represented and must include C, c, D, E, e, Fy^a, Fy^b, Jk^a, Jk^b, K, k, Le^a, Le^b, P_1, M, N, S, and s antigens. An *antigram* that lists the blood group antigenic makeup of each cell (Fig. 35-21) accompanies each lot of screening RBCs. When possible, cells that are homozygous for selected antigens are used, which increases the likelihood of detecting weak or dose-dependent antibodies. A three-cell screening panel ensures homozygosity for more antigens such as Jk^a, Jk^b, Fy^a, Fy^b, S, and s, against which the corresponding antibodies are likely to exhibit dosage, but the additional cell adds expense to pretransfusion testing. Several studies (Cordle et al, 1990; Judd, 2002) have shown that using three red blood samples for antibody detection rarely reveals a clinically significant antibody not detected by a two-cell screening procedure.

Antibody Detection Protocols

Tube Tests

In conventional test tube methods, one volume 3% to 5% screening reagent cells and two volumes patient serum (giving an average volume/volume ratio of serum to cells of approximately 50:1) are incubated at 37° C with an enhancement medium for the time specified by the manufacturer and are centrifuged and examined for hemolysis or agglutination. The screening cells are then washed three to four times with saline, and AHG reagent is added for final detection of IgG alloantibodies.

Because different blood group antibodies commonly show characteristic reaction patterns by IAT technique (see Table 35-5), close examination at different phases of testing in this conventional protocol may yield helpful information in evaluating cases in which the screen is positive:

- Direct agglutination of the cells in albumin or LISS after 37° C incubation frequently indicates the presence of an Rh antibody.
- IgM antibodies possessing a wide thermal range, such as anti-I, anti-P_1, and Lewis antibodies, may show reactions in albumin or LISS. However, these reactions generally become much weaker after conversion to the IAT.
- With rare exceptions, in vitro hemolysis of reagent cells after 37° C indicates the presence of Lewis, Kidd, Ii, P, PP_1P^k, or Vel antibodies.
- The vast majority of IgG antibodies, with the exception of Rh, will not be detected until after washing and conversion to the IAT.
- Reactions of different screening cells in multiple phases or with varying strengths usually indicate that more than one antibody is present.

Column Agglutination Technologies

Column agglutination is an alternative method for alloantibody detection used by many transfusion services. This technology utilizes the differential migration of RBC agglutinates through a small microtube containing a dextran acrylamide size exclusion gel column (Lapierre et al, 1990). A plastic card with six to eight microtubes per card can be used to perform antibody screening or identification, crossmatching, and DAT testing. Gel cards for ABO/Rh typing are also available.

For testing, precisely measured volumes of screening reagent RBCs (0.8% suspension in LISS) and plasma are incubated at 37° C in the reaction chamber above the column matrix. Following incubation, the plastic cards are centrifuged under carefully controlled conditions. IgG-coated RBCs agglutinate as they come into contact with the AHG reagent in the matrix and are trapped. Reaction strength and size determine the migration of the agglutinates, ranging from the largest (4+) agglutinates at the

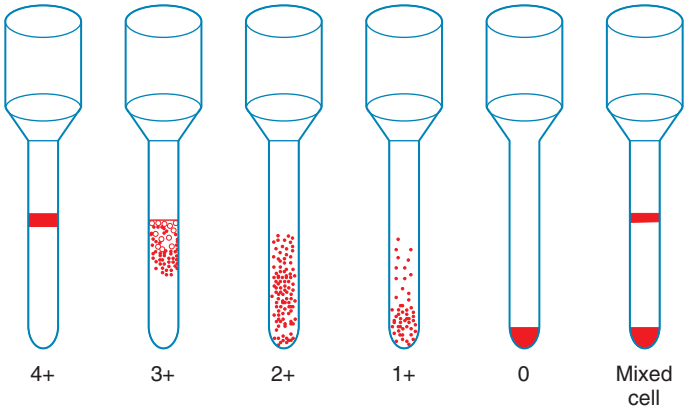


Figure 35-22 Appearance of reaction patterns and grading for gel or column agglutination technology.

top to migration of weaker, smaller agglutinates farther into the gel column (Fig. 35-22). Unagglutinated RBCs pass easily through the column and are found as a pellet at the bottom. Because the plasma or serum remains in the reaction chamber above the matrix, repeated washing steps and addition of control cells to check the activity of the AHG reagent are unnecessary. The endpoint hemagglutination reactions are very stable, allowing the cards to be kept for supervisory review of questionable reactions. The cards can be photocopied or digitally photographed and downloaded as permanent laboratory data. Dual populations of cells produce a striking picture with two distinct populations: unagglutinated cells at the bottom of the tube and agglutinated cells at the top of the well.

Column agglutination or gel technology has equivalent sensitivity to standard LISS tube testing for antibody detection and is particularly sensitive for detection of anti-Rh antibodies (Weisbach et al, 2006). Gel testing can offer several advantages over conventional tube procedures. It is more standardized than conventional tube testing with a reliable, stable agglutination endpoint, making it an attractive method for small facilities with cross-trained generalists. It is also less sensitive to clinically insignificant cold antibodies, eliminating unnecessary antibody workups. Additional time savings are achieved through the elimination of repetitive washing steps and manual macroscopic and/or microscopic readings. Finally, testing can be automated, permitting high-throughput testing, electronic interpretation and validation, and digital documentation of results.

Solid-Phase Adherence Tests

Another alternative to tube tests for alloantibody detection is indirect solid-phase adherence test systems. In this application, reagent RBCs are bound to the bottom of microplate wells. Serum and an enhancement reagent are added and incubated at 37° C, allowing the alloantibody to bind to the solid phase. After washing to remove unbound serum globulins, indicator RBCs coated with antihuman IgG are added, and the plates are centrifuged. If a reaction has occurred between the reagent cells and the serum alloantibody, the antiglobulin-coated indicator cells will bind and cover the bottom surface of the well, whereas a discrete button in the bottom of the well indicates a negative reaction (Fig. 35-23). Wells may be read manually or with an automated reading device. As with column agglutination, positive reactions are very stable, so the plate may be covered, stored at 2° to 8° C, and read up to 2 days later.

Direct solid-phase test systems are also available for applications such as ABO and Rh typing of red cells. For these tests, microplate wells are coated with the appropriate antibodies. Test cells are added and incubated, and the plates are then centrifuged. For positive reactions, the RBCs adhere to the entire bottom surface of the antibody-coated well; negative reactions result in a tightly packed cell button in the bottom of the well. Instrumentation is available for automated and semiautomated testing using solid-phase technology.

Antibody Identification

When red cell alloantibodies are detected in the serum of a prospective blood recipient, as indicated by a positive antibody screen, the antibody must be identified so that antigen-negative blood can be provided for transfusion, if required. Antibody identification is accomplished by first testing an extended panel of reagent RBCs of known phenotype against the recipient's serum by the IAT technique. An autocontrol is always included as part of the testing to help differentiate whether autoantibody,

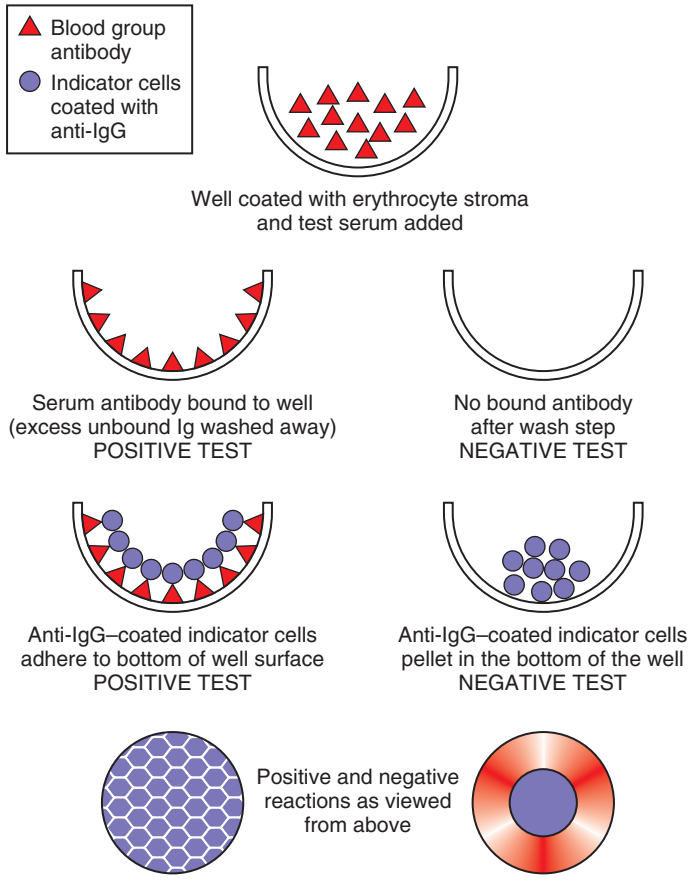


Figure 35-23 Principle of solid-phase adherence technology with appearance of positive and negative reactions.

TABLE 35-33
Simple Panel Example

Cells in A Panel	KNOWN ANTIGENIC COMPOSITION					TEST SERUM	
	D	C	c	E	e	Y	Z
No. 1	+	+	+	0	0	+	0
No. 2	+	+	0	+	+	+	+
No. 3	+	0	+	0	+	+	0
No. 4	0	0	+	0	+	0	0
No. 5	0	0	+	0	+	0	0
No. 6	0	+	0	+	+	0	+

alloantibody, or both are present. The immunohematologist then compares the pattern of positive and negative serum reactions against the antigen phenotype pattern on the printed worksheet that accompanies each panel to find a match.

Interpreting the Results of Antibody Identification

Table 35-33 is a simple example of an antibody panel. Serum Y reacts with cell numbers 1 through 3, which are positive for the D antigen, but it does not react with cell numbers 4 through 6, which are negative for the D antigen. The pattern of positive and negative serum reactions matches the phenotype pattern for the D antigen; therefore, serum Y appears to contain anti-D. Similarly, the pattern of reactivity for serum Z matches the phenotype pattern for the E antigen; thus serum Z appears to contain anti-E. Before such identification can be conclusively stated, one must be sure that enough cells of differing antigenic composition are tested to definitively identify a single antibody or combination of antibodies in a given serum.

Fisher's exact method has traditionally been used to statistically calculate the probability that a single antibody has been correctly identified within a confidence interval of 95% (i.e., the probability that the same

results would be obtained by random chance because of a different antibody is 1 in 20). This method compares the numbers of positive and negative results against the number of cells tested that express or lack the corresponding antigen and against the total number of cells tested (Race & Sanger, 1975).

Table 35-34 lists the probability values calculated by Fisher's exact method that are achieved with differing combinations of positive and negative cells in the total number tested. It can be seen that a *p* value of 0.05 can be achieved with a minimum of six cells, with three cells being positive for an antigen reacting with the antibody, and three cells negative for the antigen failing to react with the antibody. Most manufacturers supply reagent cell panels with 10 or 11 cells, with at least one of the combinations of positive and negative cells from Table 35-34, for most of the antigens to which unexpected antibodies are commonly encountered. Consequently, most simple antibody identifications are valid at a *p* value considerably less than 0.05, except in cases where there are antibodies to low- or high-frequency antigens, or where multiple antibodies are present in the same serum. In these situations, additional cells from other panels may have to be tested to achieve identification within the 95% confidence interval.

TABLE 35-34

Probability Values Based on Fisher's Exact Method

Total Number of Cells Tested	Antigen-Positive Cells That React with Antibody	Antigen-Negative Cells That Do Not React with Antibody	*p* Value
5	3	2	0.100
6	4	2	0.067
6	3	3	0.050
7	5	2	0.048
7	4	3	0.029
8	6	2	0.036
8	5	3	0.018
8	4	4	0.014
9	7	2	0.028
9	6	3	0.012
10	8	2	0.022
10	7	3	0.008
10	6	4	0.005
10	5	5	0.004

Figure 35-24 shows the results of a panel tested against patient serum with a conventional tube antiglobulin testing method and examined for agglutination after the 37° C incubation phase, and finally after the addition of AHG. In a quick overview of the panel results, an immunohematologist will at once notice that there is agglutination with different cells after centrifugation in both phases of the test, indicating the probable presence of multiple antibodies.

Following is an outline of the strategy used in evaluating antibody identification results:

1. The autocontrol is negative, indicating that the serum reactivity is most probably due to alloantibodies. However, if the autocontrol is positive, it is important that DAT testing be performed to confirm or rule out prior in vivo sensitization of the patient's cells. The DAT should be examined closely for the appearance of mixed-field agglutination. In recently transfused patients, attachment of alloantibody to a minor population of transfused donor RBCs causes classic mixed-field agglutination and is frequently the first sign of a developing immune response that may result in a delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction. In a massively transfused patient, only a small percentage of cells may be DAT-positive.
2. The first step that is performed by many immunohematologists in evaluating antibody identification results is to rule out those antibodies where the serum has failed to react with a cell known to carry the corresponding antigen. Although not required, whenever possible it is best to rule out antibodies based on lack of reactivity with cells demonstrating the homozygous form of an antigen, so as not to erroneously rule out weakly reactive antibodies that show dosage. Using the homozygous "rule of thumb" for ruling out antibodies, cell numbers 3, 5, 6, and 7 are not reactive with the serum and may be used to rule out anti-D, anti-C, anti-c, anti-e, anti-M, anti-N, anti-s, anti-P_1, anti-Lu^b, anti-k, anti-Fy^b, anti-Jk^a, and anti-Jk^b. Expression of the antigens f, V, Le^a, Le^b, and Xg^a cannot be characterized as homozygous owing to the mechanisms of their inheritance, but because at least one of the four cells above is positive for these antigens and the serum did not react with them, the corresponding antibodies may be eliminated from consideration.
3. Because of reactions seen in different phases and demonstrating different agglutination strengths, at least two antibodies are likely present in the serum:
   - Cell numbers 4 and 10 show direct agglutination in the 37° C phase, followed by stronger agglutination in the AHG phase, which is very typical of Rh system antibodies. These are the only two cells on the panel positive for the E antigen, which has not been ruled out. Thus it is likely that anti-E is one of the antibodies involved.

Name *John Doe*

Hospital number *0001234.56*

		Rh								MNSs				P	Lewis		Lutheran		Kell*				Duffy		Kidd			Vial			
Rh phenotype		D	C	E	c	e	f	C^w	V	M	N	S	s	P_1	Le^a	Le^b	Lu^a	Lu^b	K	k	Kp^a	Js^a	Fy^a	Fy^b	Jk^a	Jk^b	Xg^a		37C	AHG	CC
1	rr	0	0	0	+	+	+	0	0	+	0	+	0	+	+	0	0	+	0	+	0	0	+	+	+	0	+	1	0	1	
2	rr	0	0	0	+	+	+	0	0	+	+	0	+	+	0	+	0	+	+	+	0	0	0	+	0	+	+	2	0	3	
3	r′r	0	0	0	+	+	+	0	0	+	0	+	+	+	0	+	0	+	0	+	0	0	0	+	0	+	0	3	0	0	2
4	r″r	0	0	+	+	+	+	0	0	+	+	+	+	0	0	+	+	+	0	+	0	0	0	+	0	+	0	4	1	2	
5	rr	0	0	0	+	+	+	0	0	0	+	+	+	+	0	+	0	+	0	+	0	0	0	+	0	+	+	5	0	0	2
6	R_or	+	0	0	+	+	+	0	+	+	+	0	+	+	0	0	0	+	0	+	0	0	0	0	+	0	0	6	0	0	2
7	R_1R_1	+	+	0	0	+	+	0	0	+	0	+	+	0	+	0	0	+	0	+	0	0	0	+	+	+	0	7	0	0	2
8	R_1R_1	+	+	0	0	+	+	0	0	+	+	+	+	+	0	+	0	+	+	+	0	0	+	0	0	+	+	8	0	3	
9	$R_1R_1^w$	+	+	0	0	+	+	+	0	+	+	0	+	+	0	+	0	+	0	+	0	0	+	+	+	+	+	9	0	1	
10	R_2R_2	+	0	+	+	0	+	0	0	+	+	0	+	+	+	0	0	+	0	+	0	+	0	0	+	+	+	10	1	2	
11	rr	0	0	0	+	+	+	0	0	0	+	0	+	+	0	+	+	+	0	+	+	0	+	+	+	0	0	11	0	1	
																												Auto	0	0	2

Figure 35-24 A typical panel worksheet showing an example of antibody identification results. *AHG,* Antihuman globulin; *CC,* Coombs control cells. *Unless otherwise specified, it is understood that all cells are positive for the high-frequency antigens Kp^b and Js^b.

- Cell numbers 2 and 8 show very strong agglutination in the AHG phase only. Upon examining the antigens across the top of the panel that have not been ruled out, one sees that the phenotype of the panel cells for the K antigen fits the serum reactivity of these two cells. Thus it is likely that anti-K is a second antibody involved.
- The remaining serum reactions with cells numbers 1, 9, and 11 cannot be explained by anti-E or anti-K but may be explained by anti-Fy^a, because all three of these cells are positive for the Fy^a antigen, and Fy^a has not been ruled out.

4. Anti-S should be ruled out by testing another cell positive in the homozygous state for S antigen that at the same time is negative for Fy^a, K, and E antigens.
5. Antibodies to low-frequency antigens such as C^w, Lu^a, Kp^a, and Js^a may be ruled out by testing appropriate cells if available. When antibodies to low-frequency antigens are not ruled out, an antiglobulin crossmatch is used to detect any potential incompatibility between donor cells and the theoretical presence of one or more of these antibodies in the patient's serum.
6. Ruling out of additional antibodies may sometimes be accomplished by typing the patient's cells for selected antigens. This is particularly helpful when a patient's serum contains multiple antibodies and the reagent cell resources available to the blood bank are limited. If one of the antibodies that must be ruled out in a mixture of antibodies is anti-Jk^b, for example, the patient's cells may be typed for the Jk^b antigen with specific antisera. If the patient expresses the Jk^b antigen, then the presence of an alloantibody to Jk^b can be conclusively eliminated.
7. On the panel in Figure 35-24, there are at least three cells negative for all three antigens—Fy^a, K, and E—that do not react with the serum. However, to conclusively identify all three antibodies within the 95% confidence interval, three separate cells must be positive only for Fy^a antigen, three positive only for K antigen, and three positive only for E antigen that do react with the serum. Thus anti-Fy^a can be identified with confidence; however, two more cells positive for K antigen and one more cell positive for E antigen must be tested with the serum to conclusively identify the presence of anti-K and anti-E.
8. If antibody identification is being performed for the first time on a particular patient, it is common practice to type patient RBCs for the antigens to which he or she has developed antibodies as a confirmation of the antibody identification. The patient's RBCs should lack the antigens corresponding to the antibodies present.

Crossmatching

For many years, a major serologic crossmatch was required before the transfusion of whole blood or packed RBCs. This protocol required a 37° C incubation, followed by conversion to the IAT. In 1984, this requirement was eliminated by the AABB Standards as long as (1) the current antibody screen on the patient is completely negative, and (2) there is no past history of clinically significant antibodies. For patients who meet these criteria, an abbreviated procedure designed to detect ABO incompatibility may be used. This may consist of an immediate spin crossmatch or an electronic crossmatch.

Immediate Spin Serologic Crossmatch

The serologic test to detect ABO incompatibility commonly consists of an immediate spin protocol employing a 3% to 5% saline suspension of donor RBCs prepared from an integral segment taken from the selected donor unit. Cells usually are washed once to remove any anticoagulant or plasma protein that could interfere with the testing. A drop of donor cell suspension is mixed with recipient serum, centrifuged immediately, and examined for hemolysis and/or agglutination. This procedure has come to be known as the abbreviated or immediate-spin crossmatch.

Use of the immediate-spin crossmatch procedure in clinical settings has shown it to be a safe and cost-effective alternative to the antiglobulin crossmatch (Judd et al, 1988; Cordle et al, 1990; Shulman, 1990), although reports indicate that this technique may fail to detect ABO incompatibility when recipient ABO antibodies are of low titer or when donor cells belong to a weak ABO subgroup (Berry-Dortch et al, 1985; Shulman et al, 1987). Rare false-negative results can occur as the result of a prozone effect in group O/group A major incompatibility, particularly if a delay in centrifugation occurs (Judd et al, 1988). The prozone/delay apparently allows for the fixation of C1 complement on RBC membranes, which sterically hinders hemagglutination. Suspension of donor cells in EDTA-saline eliminates this problem by chelating calcium necessary for formation of the C1 complement complex. In addition to false-negatives, the immediate-spin crossmatch can cause false-positive results due to rouleaux, cold-reactive antibodies, and fibrin—all of which may cause delays in issuing the blood for transfusion. In a multicenter study involving 1.3 million immediate-spin crossmatches, the observed risk of acute hemolytic reaction using the immediate-spin crossmatch technique was 0.0004% (Shulman, 1990).

Electronic Crossmatch

In 1994, Butch and colleagues first reported on a proposed standard operating procedure that would replace the immediate-spin serologic crossmatch with a computer electronic crossmatch, or EXM. Similar to the immediate-spin crossmatch, the electronic crossmatch may be used only for patients who have no currently detected clinically significant antibodies or any history of alloantibodies. The EXM reduces human error by assigning final verification of ABO compatibility between donor and recipient by the laboratory computer system (Judd, 1991). In addition, it eliminates time-consuming investigation of false-positive serologic reactions.

The EXM is permissible provided that specific testing criteria are met and extensive validation of the blood bank information system has been performed to meet current AABB Standards and FDA requirements as outlined in a 1997 FDA internal document (Judd, 2002). Critical elements required in computer validation for the EXM (Judd, 1998) include updated hardware, instrumentation interfaces, historical records checks, reaction interpretation algorithms, prevention functions and warnings for ABO assignment/release, and personnel competency assessment. Because the safety of this procedure will be only as good as the electronic information that is entered and stored in the system, maximal use of bar codes to identify both donors and patients should be implemented. After extensive experience with electronic crossmatching at the University of Michigan, Judd (1998) recommended that bar-coded patient identification be mandatory, both at the time of sample collection and prior to transfusion, and that pretransfusion specimen labels be generated at the bedside from the bar code on the patient identification wristband. Box 35-1 summarizes the AABB Standards requirements.

Antiglobulin Crossmatch

If the pretransfusion antibody screen detects a clinically significant antibody, or a check of patient records indicates that such antibodies have been detected previously, an antiglobulin crossmatch must be performed. In the antiglobulin crossmatch, compatibility between recipient serum and donor red cells is tested by the antiglobulin method that is routinely used by the laboratory. Red cell units chosen for transfusion should lack the antigen of interest (antigen-negative) by phenotyping units with commercially

BOX 35-1

Requirements for Implementation of the Electronic Crossmatch

- Computer system has been validated onsite to ensure that only ABO-compatible whole blood or red blood cell components are selected for transfusion.
- There have been at least two determinations of the recipient's ABO group, one of which is from the current sample and the second by one of the following methods:
  - Testing a second current sample
  - Comparison with previous records
  - Retesting the same sample
- The system contains the following data items:
  - Donation identification number
  - Component name
  - ABO/Rh type of component
  - Confirmed unit ABO group
  - Two unique identifiers for recipient
  - Recipient's ABO group/Rh type
  - Recipient's current antibody screen results†
  - Interpretation of compatibility
- A method exists to verify the correct entry of data prior to the release of components.
- The software contains logic to warn user of discrepancies between donor ABO group and Rh type on the unit label and those determined by blood group confirmatory tests, and to ABO incompatibility between the recipient and donor unit.

*Requirements paraphrased from *Standards for blood banks and transfusion services,* 29th edition (Levitt, 2014).

†The electronic crossmatch can be used only if current antibody detection tests on the recipient are negative and there is no known history of clinically significant blood group antibodies.

available antisera. When commercially available antisera is not available, donor genotyping may be approved for use by the medical director.

Some blood bank laboratories still choose to perform a full antiglobulin crossmatch for all transfusions, regardless of history and pretransfusion testing results. For patients with a negative antibody screen, the full crossmatch may *rarely* detect alloantibodies to low-frequency antigens not present on the screening cells (e.g., Kp^a, Wr^a). In addition, antibody detection tests could theoretically fail because of the presence of an antibody displaying dosage, deterioration of antigen from the reagent cells during storage, or technical error. Despite these concerns, the actual incidence of missing a clinically significant antibody with an abbreviated crossmatch is very low: less than 0.05% (Mintz et al, 1982; Cordle et al, 1990).

Compatibility Testing in Emergencies

In urgent situations, blood may have to be released for transfusion before the completion of compatibility tests or even before a patient blood specimen is available. If the ABO and Rh types of the patient are not known, group O–packed RBCs are released. Practice varies when selecting the Rh of emergency blood components. Some facilities use Rh-negative only for females under 50 years of age, whereas others may start with Rh-negative and switch to Rh-positive after 4 (or more) units. If a blood specimen is available and there is time to perform ABO and Rh typing, type-specific blood may be released. All units must be conspicuously labeled to indicate that they are uncrossmatched and that the patient's serum has not been screened for unexpected antibodies. In these situations, the patient's physician must sign a release form stating that the clinical situation warrants the release of uncrossmatched blood. In such cases, the antibody screen is promptly completed, and crossmatches are performed according to the laboratory's protocol. In the event of a positive screen or incompatible crossmatch, the physician should be notified immediately of any antibodies or incompatibility detected.

Massive transfusion occurs when the number of emergently transfused RBCs equals or exceeds the patient's blood volume in a relatively short time frame (<24 hours). Under these circumstances, many blood banks initiate a massive transfusion policy that permits switching to an immediate-spin or electronic crossmatch, even in a patient with known RBC alloantibodies. In these instances, serum antibody is typically diluted and undetectable in vitro owing to the large volume of donor blood and fluids transfused. Most protocols for massive transfusion return to use of the routine crossmatch procedure within 24 hours of the time the patient is stabilized. Transfusion of antigen-positive units could result in an increase in antibody titer and lead to a delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction in patients with alloantibodies. Communication with the patient's physician is critical in such cases to monitor the patient for hemolysis.

Preoperative Crossmatch Protocols

Most transfusion services have adopted a type and screen–only protocol for elective surgical procedures that do not routinely require transfusion. Blood orders for elective surgical procedures requiring transfusion are set at a level that reflects actual usage patterns for a given operative procedure at a particular institution. The type and screen–only protocol, when used in conjunction with preoperative blood ordering guidelines (maximum surgical blood order schedule [MSBOS]); (Friedman et al, 1976; Henry et al, 1977; Banderanko, 2014), allows for much more efficient blood inventory management and reduction in the crossmatch/transfusion (C/T) ratio. The MSBOS should undergo periodic review and revision, using electronic data from the LIS and EMR, as new surgical procedures are adopted and techniques are refined (Frank et al, 2013).

The preoperative type and screen protocol requires no further serologic work as long as the patient's antibody screen is negative and there is no known history of clinically significant antibodies. If a patient unexpectedly requires transfusion during surgery, ABO- and Rh-compatible units are selected, and an immediate-spin crossmatch or EXM may be performed. If no ABO incompatibility is detected, the blood can be safely released to the operating room with a minimal turnaround time. If the preoperative antibody screen is positive, or if previous records indicate a known clinically significant antibody, standard operating procedures should specify a minimum number of antigen-negative units that would be held by the blood bank for use by the patient during surgery. These units must be crossmatched with the patient's serum using a full antiglobulin crossmatch procedure prior to transfusion.

Prenatal, Postnatal, and Infant Testing

All women should be screened as soon as possible for red cell alloantibodies and the potential for HDFN. The initial test is generally a blood type and antibody screen. If clinically significant antibodies are detected, the pregnancy is monitored with titration studies and other clinical diagnostic tests at specific intervals. Note that RhD-negative women who have received Rh immune globulin prophylaxis can have a weak anti-D on testing. In addition, Rh immune globulin can cross the placenta and cause a positive antibody screen in fetal and cord samples.

At birth, all cord samples are typed for ABO, RhD, and DAT, if indicated: A type and screen is not routinely performed because cord samples are frequently contaminated with maternal blood. Because only IgG antibodies cross the placenta, the DAT can be tested with anti-IgG only. A comparison should be made between mother and infant blood type to evaluate the potential for ABO HDFN. If the mother has clinically significant antibodies, the cord should have a DAT and be phenotyped for the corresponding antigens of interest. An antibody identification should be performed using maternal or cord sample, although maternal blood is often used owing to insufficient serum/plasma in cord samples. If the cord DAT is positive, and the mother does not have clinically significant antibodies, the laboratory should decide whether an eluate procedure should be routinely performed. The cord sample may be used for antibody identification and for eluates if needed.

In RhD-negative women, special precautions and testing are taken both prepartum and postpartum in an effort to prevent RhD alloimmunization (see Rh System). Prepartum, the father may be typed for RhD to determine the risk for HDFN. Alternatively, the fetus may be genotyped to determine RhD status (Finning et al, 2007). Unless the fetus or the father is confirmed as RhD-negative, the mother must receive prophylatic Rh immune globulin at 28 weeks and after invasive procedures. Once delivery has occurred, a fetal RhD type is performed on cord blood to determine the need for additional Rh immune prophylaxis. If the infant is RhD-negative or if the mother has become sensitized, Rh immune globulin is not given. However, if the infant is RhD-positive and the mother is not sensitized, the mother should receive additional Rh immune globulin. To determine how much Rh immune globulin should be administered postpartum, the mother should be screened for a possible maternal fetal bleed.

The most common screening test for a possible fetal bleed in an RhD-negative mother is the rosette test, which can detect approximately 10 mL of fetal cells in the mother's circulation (Bayliss et al, 1991). To perform the test, maternal blood is incubated with anti-D, which will bind circulating RhD-positive fetal red cells but not maternal RhD-negative red cells. After incubation and washing, indicator red cells are added, and the sample is centrifuged and then examined under a microscope. If fetal red cells are present, indicator red cells will bind to anti-D on fetal red cells, forming a rosette. If no fetal red cells are present, the mixture will be smooth without rosettes.

If the fetal bleed screen is positive, additional studies are necessary to quantitate the extent of the bleed. The Kleihauer-Betke test and flow cytometry are two methods used to calculate the quantity of fetal red cells in maternal circulation. The Kleihauer-Betke test is based on the resistance of fetal Hg to acid, which looks bright pink in a sea of adult red cell ghosts on a peripheral blood smear. The percentage of fetal red cells present is manually determined and then multiplied by 50 to determine the volume (mL) of fetal blood present (Fung, 2014). Flow cytometric methods are less labor intensive and are used to calculate the percentage of RhD-positive fetal cells by immunofluorescence (Radel et al, 2008). Once the size of the bleed is determined, the mother should receive sufficient Rh immune globulin to neutralize all circulating fetal red cells. Calculations to determine the size of the fetal bleed and the number of Rh vials required are available in the *AABB Technical Manual* (Fung, 2014). In general, one vial of Rh immune globulin will suppress immunization of 15 mL of RhD-positive red cells.

SPECIAL ANTIBODY IDENTIFICATION TECHNIQUES

Patients who have undergone repeated transfusions may respond by forming multiple unexpected blood group antibodies. Autoantibodies and alloantibodies to high-frequency antigens will react with all cells tested, including all RBCs used for antibody identification, making it extremely difficult to detect other underlying alloantibodies. When complicated problems such as these are encountered, special techniques are required to resolve the problem and find compatible units for transfusion. Special techniques used in antibody identification frequently involve (1) an attempt to eliminate selected antibody reactivity that is interfering with identification of other specificities in the same serum or (2) an effort to enhance or more clearly characterize the reactivity of an antibody that thus far has escaped definitive identification. Some of these techniques are outlined later in this chapter, as well as in Tables 35-35 and 35-36. The reader is

TABLE 35-35

Special Techniques in Antibody Identification: Serum Procedures*

	Procedure	Application/Effect
Hemagglutination inhibition	Inhibit antibody reactivity by mixing serum with a specific soluble antigen source in parallel with a dilution control; retest against known antigen-positive cells	Confirm specificity by neutralizing the following antibodies: anti-P1, anti-Le^a and Le^b, anti-Sd^a, anti-ABH, anti-I, anti-Ch/Rg. May also allow for easier identification of other antibodies in a mixture
Serum adsorption	Adsorb serum antibodies with autologous cells, selected allogeneic cells, or rabbit erythrocyte stroma (REST) at appropriate temperature for reactivity of antibody	Physically removes broadly reactive autoantibodies or alloantibodies from serum by reacting with absorbing cells to allow for detection of underlying IgG antibodies—particularly useful in cases of WAIHA. May be combined with elution in complicated cases involving identification of multiple antibodies
Sulfhydryl reagents	Pretreat serum with sulfhydryl reagents such as 2-mercaptoethanol (2-ME) or dithiothreitol (DTT)	Destroys pentameric structure of agglutinating IgM antibodies, effectively bypassing cold-reactive autoantibodies and alloantibodies to allow for detection of underlying IgG alloantibodies
Titration	Prepare serial twofold dilutions of serum and test against antigen-positive indicator cell	Aids in identification of HTLA antibodies (titer of 1:64 or greater) Used to measure increase in production of IgG antibodies during pregnancy ABO-incompatible organ transplantation May rarely be useful in identifying alloantibodies of a higher titer present with a warm autoantibody
Prewarming	Keep all test components (test tubes, cells, serum, saline) at 37° C prior to testing; use monospecific anti-IgG AHG reagents	Bypasses reactivity of cold autoagglutinins or alloagglutinins of limited titer and thermal amplitude—prevents direct agglutination of test cells and/or in vitro complement activation in antibody detection and identification tests
Saline replacement	For tests in which patient or test red cells are suspended in serum and are suspected to have formed rouleaux, the serum is removed and replaced with equal volume of saline	Useful in obtaining valid results in ABO serum grouping or evaluating the presence of apparent agglutination when examining screening cells after 37° C incubation and centrifugation. Pseudoagglutination due to rouleaux will be dispersed by removal of the offending proteins and addition of a high–ionic strength medium

AHG, Antihuman globulin; *HTLA,* high-titer, low-avidity; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *WAIHA,* warm autoimmune hemolytic anemia.
*See also Table 35-30 for effects of antibody concentration, pH, incubation time, etc.

also referred to the *AABB Technical Manual* (Fung, 2014), *Applied Blood Group Serology* (Issitt & Anstee, 1998), *Judd's Methods in Immunohematology* (Judd et al, 2008), and *Immunohematology Methods* (Mallory, 1993) as excellent references for most common procedures, in addition to more specialized techniques.

Serum Procedures to Eliminate Antibody Reactivity

Hemagglutination Inhibition

Hemagglutination inhibition is used to neutralize selected blood group antibodies with their corresponding antigen found in soluble form in human saliva, serum, or other body fluids, as well as in substances in nature (Table 35-37). Recently, reagents for antibody neutralization have been synthesized using modern molecular techniques (Seltsam et al, 2009). The identity of a suspected antibody is confirmed if it no longer agglutinates antigen-positive reagent cells after addition of soluble antigen. Hemagglutination inhibition may be particularly useful when working with a serum specimen containing multiple specificities. The principle of hemagglutination inhibition is also used to determine the secretor status of individuals with weak ABO subgroups. Care must be taken in interpreting results because weak reactions may be diluted by the inhibition substance. A control set of tubes containing an inert substance (typically saline) should be used in parallel to verify that a negative reaction was the result of inhibition and not of sample dilution.

Antibody Adsorption

Adsorption is a process used to physically remove antibodies from sera. The adsorption procedure may be performed using washed and/or enzyme-treated autologous RBCs, phenotypically matched allogeneic cells, cells selected to be positive for a specific combination of blood group antigens, or RBC stroma. The incubation temperature and times used in the adsorption process depend on the Ig class and the thermal range of the antibodies being adsorbed. In general, using a low antibody/cell ratio will increase adsorption efficiency.

Adsorption using allogeneic cells is helpful in separating multiple alloantibodies in a complex mixture (differential adsorption) or in eliminating the reactivity of an alloantibody to a high-frequency antigen. In patients with autoantibodies, adsorption with autologous RBCs, phenotypically matched cells, and rabbit erythrocyte stroma (REST) is often used to selectively remove warm- and cold-reactive autoantibodies, respectively. Removal of autoantibodies is necessary to identify any potential underlying alloantibodies that the patient may have (see later in Investigation of Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia section; Fig. 35-25).

It is crucial to verify transfusion information before performing an adsorption because recently transfused individuals will have multiple red cell populations. In these patients, circulating donor cells could adsorb an alloantibody of interest. If the patient's phenotype is available, testing can be performed with allogeneic phenotype-matched red cells. If the phenotype is not known, three separate adsorptions with R_1R_1, R_2R_2, and rr cells can be performed and tested, and the results compared.

Thiol Reagents

Sulfhydryl compounds such as 2-ME or DTT cleave disulfide bonds and are frequently used to inactivate the agglutinating capacity of IgM antibodies by cleaving intersubunit disulfide bonds, as well as bonds linking IgM subunits to the J-chain (Klein & Anstee, 2006), thus destroying the pentameric structure of the IgM molecule. These reagents are useful in investigating the presence of clinically significant IgG alloantibodies in a serum that contains broadly agglutinating IgM cold autoantibodies. They can also be used to dissociate autoagglutination caused by cold antibodies that may interfere with ABO/Rh typing and DAT testing. In prenatal studies, sulfhydryl reagents are frequently utilized to evaluate a serum containing an antibody such as anti-M that commonly has both IgM and IgG components. By destroying the agglutinating anti-M, the serum can be tested for IgG anti-M that is capable of crossing the placenta to cause a mild HDFN.

Serum Antibody Titration

Serum titration is a method used to semiquantitatively determine the amount of antibody present in a given serum/plasma. Serial twofold dilutions of serum are prepared and then tested with RBCs possessing the corresponding antigen. Each dilution is read for macroscopic agglutination, and the titer of the antibody is expressed as the reciprocal of the highest serum dilution that gives macroscopic agglutination. Titers are performed in obstetric patients, ABO-incompatible solid organ and bone marrow transplantation, and, occasionally, antibody identification studies.

In prenatal studies, clinically significant IgG alloantibodies capable of causing HDFN are titrated periodically in the maternal serum during pregnancy (Judd, 2005). An increasing titer usually indicates that fetal cells

TABLE 35-36
Special Antibody Identification Techniques: Red Cell Procedures

	Procedure	Application/Effect
Enzyme treatment	Two-stage procedure (preferred): • Incubate test red cells with enzyme solution at 37° C. • Wash cells thoroughly to remove enzyme completely and retest cells with serum being investigated	• Eliminates some antibody reactivity by destroying corresponding antigen structures—MNS, Duffy, Ch/Rg; may be easier to pick out different specificities in a serum containing multiple antibodies • Enhances sensitization, agglutination, and/or hemolysis by other antibodies—Rh, Kidd, many IgM blood group antibodies; may allow for easier identification of weakly reactive antibodies
AET/DTT	Pretreat test red cells with AET or DTT; wash away reagent and retest cells with serum being investigated	Effectively creates Kell "null" cells for use in identifying alloantibodies in a mixture containing antibody to a high-frequency antigen in the Kell system
Elution	Remove and recover antibody from red cells by techniques such as glycine acid, organic solvents	Concentrates antibody that was coating red cells into a solution suitable for further identification procedures. Used in investigating positive DAT in cases of HDFN, HTR, autoimmune hemolytic anemia
Chloroquine diphosphate	• Washed packed red cells are incubated in a 1:4 ratio with chloroquine at room temperature • Reagent is removed by multiple saline washes	Dissociates IgG from patient red cells with a positive DAT so that they may be typed with blood grouping reagents that require an indirect antiglobulin technique. Only anti-IgG should be used as the AHG reagent, as complement proteins are not dissociated with chloroquine.
ZZAP	For adsorption purposes, aliquots of washed, packed red cells are incubated with ZZAP at 37° C. Cells are then washed with large volumes of saline to remove ZZAP. The combination of DTT and enzymes destroys coating of IgG autoantibodies.	• Removal of autoantibodies from patient cells provides free antigen sites for adsorption of autoantibody from the serum • ZZAP also can be used to destroy Kell, Cartwright, Gerbich, and Dombrock system antigens
Dispersal of IgM-mediated autoagglutination	Incubate cell suspension with sulfhydryl reagents or wash cells multiple times with 37° C saline	Dissociation of cold autoagglutination permits valid ABO red cell typing and may aid in evaluating DAT results
Lectin typing	Reagents commonly derived from plant seeds are used to test for the presence or absence of a specific blood group antigen on the red cell membrane—used in place of an antibody reagent	Useful in typing for specific antigens such as A_1, H, and N and in classifying different polyagglutinable red cell conditions
Cell separation techniques	• Washed cells from the patient are centrifuged in microhematocrit tubes, and the top 5 mm containing the lightest cells is harvested • Differential agglutination may be performed based on known differences in antigen phenotype between donor and recipient	Useful in the following: • Phenotyping of autologous cells in recently transfused individuals • Evaluating whether a DHTR may be evolving in a patient with autoimmune hemolytic anemia • Estimating survival of transfused cells

AET, 2-Aminoethylisothiouronium bromide; *AHG,* antihuman globulin; *DAT,* direct antiglobulin test; *DHTR,* delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction; *DTT,* dithiothreitol; *HDFN,* hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn; *HTR,* hemolytic transfusion reaction; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *ZZAP,* combination of DTT and cysteine-activated papain.

TABLE 35-37
Sources of Soluble Antigens for Hemagglutination Inhibition

Soluble Substance	Source
ABH	Secretor saliva
Le^a, Le^b	Secretor saliva
P1	Hydatid cyst fluid or pigeon eggs
Sd^a	Human or guinea pig urine
Ch, Rg	Plasma from Ch/Rg (+) individuals
I	Human milk

possess the corresponding antigen and are stimulating the mother to produce more antibody, thus providing valuable information to the physician regarding how the pregnancy should be managed. Because of the clinical importance of consistency in prenatal titer reporting, some laboratories require that the initial titer be performed by two technologists for agreement. If a discrepancy exists, a third technologist should perform the titration. The intial sample should be frozen for future studies. When the next titer request is submitted, the initial sample should be tested in parallel with the new sample.

Titers are also performed in the rare setting of major ABO-incompatible solid organ transplantation, which has risen in popularity with improvements in immunosuppressive therapy. ABO-incompatible heart transplants can be performed in children younger than 6 to 8 months, owing to low-titer ABO antibodies in early infancy (West & Platt, 2010). ABO-incompatible living donor kidney transplants, once unthinkable because of the risk of hyperacute rejection, have also been performed in adult patients. To prevent hyperacute rejection, intended recipients undergo an aggressive course of immunosuppression and therapeutic apheresis before and after transplant to reduce ABO titers below a critical threshold (Fehr & Stussi, 2012). Similar to obstetric patients, these patients require a series of ABO titers to monitor treatment efficacy and screen against humoral rejection. Finally, ABO titers may be necessary in ABO-incompatible allogeneic bone marrow transplants. In contrast to peripheral blood stem cells, bone marrow contains significant quantities of red cells and can place the recipient at risk for severe acute HTRs. ABO titers are performed before transplant to assess the risk of hemolysis and the need for pretransplant therapeutic apheresis (Rowley et al, 2011; Cooling & Gorlin, 2012).

Antibody titration can also be used in the presumptive identification of so-called "HTLA" antibodies. These antibodies are often directed against Ch/Rg, JMH, and Knops antigens. HTLA antibodies characteristically give the same weak (+/– or $+/^{-m}$) reactions at multiple serum dilutions, often reacting at dilutions equal to or greater than 1:64. In contrast, other weak alloantibodies will seldom react at dilutions greater than 1:2. If an HTLA antibody is suspected, a titration is performed to demonstrate that the weakly reactive antibody is still reactive at a high dilution, thus allowing its classification as an HTLA.

It is important to note that both serologic technique and cell selection can affect titer results. For example, if the initial titer was tested against a cell with homozygous antigen expression, all subsequent titers should also be tested with a homozygous cell. Likewise, some laboratories use a tube technique without additives (saline), and others may use a LISS, tube, or gel method—all of which can yield significantly different end titers in parallel testing. Each laboratory should have a policy regarding appropriate cell selection and should perform titers using a technique approved by

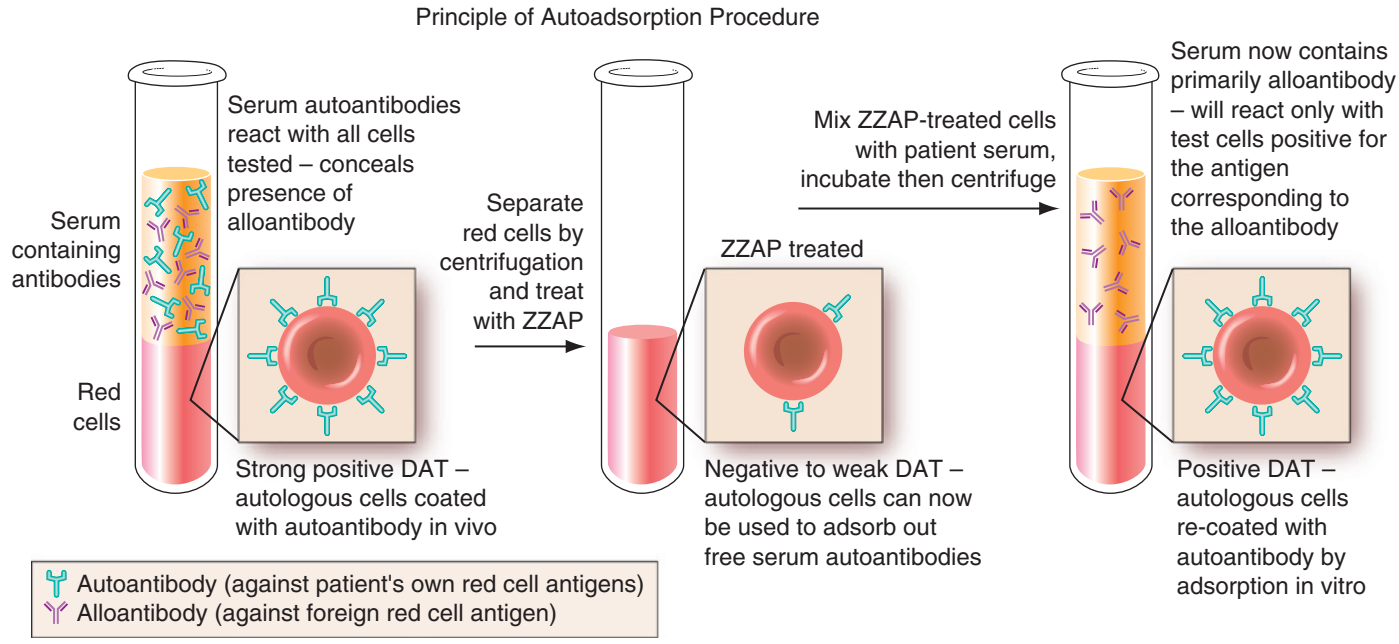


Figure 35-25 **Autoadsorption procedure used to evaluate whether underlying alloantibodies are present in a patient with autoimmune hemolytic anemia.**

the laboratory director with proper validation. Titer results and their meaning should be communicated clearly to the physician. Any change in procedure or method *must* be communicated because this can affect titer results and have a direct impact on patient care.

Special Red Cell Procedures for Antibody Identification

Reagent or patient RBCs can be modified in various ways by the immunohematologist to abolish or enhance the reactivity of corresponding antibodies. Patient cells are also subjected to procedures designed to remove antibody that has bound in vivo so that the antibody may be recovered and identified (eluate) and/or may provide RBCs for further testing.

Destruction of Red Cell Antigens

Several reagents are available for treating RBCs, including various proteolytic enzymes (e.g., papain, ficin, trypsin), neuraminidase (removes sialic acid), ZZAP, AET, and DTT. In a serum containing multiple alloantibodies, selective pretreatment of RBCs with enzymes can destroy specific antigens, eliminating specific alloantibody reactivity. Enzymes are also thought to remove the water of hydration and decrease the ζ potential, allowing RBCs to more closely approach one another. As a result, they can enhance the reactivity of a weak, potentially significant antibody and facilitate its identification. Table 35-38 lists antibodies whose reactivity will be enhanced or eliminated by enzyme treatment of test RBCs. Note: AET and DTT can be used to create RBCs negative for all antigens of the Kell blood group system (except Kx); these reagents may also destroy certain antigens reacting with HTLA antibodies.

Antibody Elution

Elution is the process used to remove antibodies bound to RBCs, as indicated by a positive DAT. Elution is commonly used to concentrate and solubilize antibodies from RBCs for subsequent identification studies. The elution of an antibody with known blood group and/or drug specificity can be diagnostic in the evaluation of acute and delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions, HDFN, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, and immune hemolytic anemia induced by medication.

Elution may be accomplished by a variety of methods that alter or reverse the forces of attraction that hold the antigen and antibody together. Various methods involve adding heat, disrupting antigen structure by exposing the RBC membrane to freezing and thawing, using organic solvents, and altering the pH to dissociate RBC–antibody complexes. Freeze-thaw and heat elution techniques work well for removal of cold-reactive antibodies, whereas organic solvents and pH alteration are used to remove warm-reactive IgG antibodies. Because organic solvents are carcinogenic, many laboratories have a commercially available acid elution kit.

TABLE 35-38
Effect on Antigen Expression/Antibody Reactivity by Enzyme* Treatment of Test Cells

Effect	Antigens
Destroyed	Fy^a, Fy^b M, N HTLA- Ch/Rg, JMH Pr Xg^a
Variable	Lu^a, Lu^b S, s Yt^a, Yt^b
Enhanced	ABH I/I Jk^a, Jk^b Le^a, Le^b P1 Rh U Di^a, Di^b
Usually unaffected	Kell

Data from Issitt and Anstee (1998), Judd et al (2008), and Fung (2014).
HTLA, High-titer, low-avidity; *JMH,* John Milton Hagen.
*Using ficin or papain.

All methods require numerous washes before elution to remove any serum containing unbound antibody. To ensure the complete removal of serum antibody, the saline from the last wash must be tested against appropriate cells to detect any residual unbound antibody. The last wash control should show an absence of antibody reactivity before the elution procedure is performed. Optimally, eluates should be tested on the same day they are prepared but may be stored at –20° C or lower if there is a delay in testing. Table 35-39 lists some of the common elution methods and their applications. For a more comprehensive listing and specific descriptions of elution procedures, see Mallory (1993) and Judd and colleagues (2008).

Removal of Antibody from Red Cells to Facilitate Antigen Typing

Many antisera used for RBC antigen typing require the IAT technique. As a result, RBC samples with a positive DAT cannot be used for antigen typing because these cells are already coated with IgG antibody and will yield a false-positive result. Most elution methods that remove blood group antibodies from the surface of erythrocytes destroy the cells or the antigens. However, treatment of antibody-coated RBCs with chloroquine

TABLE 35-39
Antibody Elution Techniques

Method	Principle*	Application
Heat	Addition of heat changes equilibrium constant of antigen–antibody reaction, and antibodies are released	• Recovery of ABO antibodies in cases of ABO HDFN • Gentle heat elution (at 45° C) may be useful for removing antibody from cells that is causing false-positive direct hemagglutination tests
Freeze-thaw	Damage to the red cell membrane by hemolysis alters complementary fit between antigen and antibody	Recovery of ABO antibodies in cases of ABO HDFN
Acid (e.g., digitonin acid, glycine acid/EDTA)	At an acid pH, antigen and antibody become negatively charged and repulse each other	• Good recovery of most IgG blood group antibodies (may be less sensitive for Kidd) • Glycine/EDTA also used to dissociate antibody but leaves red cells intact for phenotyping
Organic solvents (e.g., chloroform, xylene, ether)	Disrupts lipid bilayer of red cell membrane, altering complementary fit and/or reversing selected attractive forces between antigen and antibody	High-yield recovery of most IgG blood group antibodies

EDTA, Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; *HDFN,* hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn; *Ig,* immunoglobulin.
*From Issitt and Anstee (1998).

TABLE 35-40
Lectins Useful in Immunohematologic Testing

Lectin	Activity Inhibited by	Serologic Specificity	Application
Ulex europaeus	α-L-Fucose	Anti-H	Secretor status testing, classification of weak A subgroups, investigation of possible Bombay phenotype
Vicia graminea	*O*-linked *N* blood group tetrasaccharides (galactose [β1,3] *N*-acetyl-galactosamine)	Anti-N	Red cell antigen typing
Griffonia simplicifolia I*	α-D-galactose	Anti-B, Tn	• Red cell antigen typing • Investigation of acquired B/polyagglutination
Dolichos biflorus	Terminal α-*N*-acetyl-D-galactosamine	Anti-A, Tn, Cad	Classification of A subgroups, investigation of polyagglutination
Griffonia simplicifolia II*	α- or β-*N*-acetyl-D-glucosamine	Anti-Tk	Confirmation of Tk polyagglutination
Helix pomatia	α-*N*-acetyl-D-galactosamine	Anti-A, Tn, Cad	Gives distinctive mixed-field reaction with VA polyagglutination
Arachis hypogaea	β-D-Galactose	Anti-T, Tk, Th, Tx	Investigation of polyagglutination
Glycine soja (max)	α-*N*-acetyl-D-galactosamine	Anti-T, Tn	
Leonurus cardiaca	α-*N*-acetyl-D-galactosamine	Anti-Cad specific at appropriate dilution	
Salvia sclerea	α-*N*-acetyl-D-galactosamine	Anti-Tn specific	
Salvia horminum	α-*N*-acetyl-D-galactosamine	Anti-Tn, Cad (separable)	
Vicia cretia	Galactose (β1,3) *N*-acetyl-galactosamine	Anti-T, Th	

*Formerly known as *Bandeiraea simplicifolia* I and II.

diphosphate dissociates antibody, while leaving the antigens relatively intact (Edwards et al, 1982). Glycine/EDTA can also be used under carefully controlled conditions to dissociate IgG from RBCs, but overtreatment with this reagent can cause irreversible damage to the RBC membrane. After chloroquine or glycine treatment, RBCs can be antigen typed with AHG-reactive antisera. Note that glycine/EDTA treatment destroys Kell protein. As a result, glycine/EDTA cells cannot be phenotyped for Kell system antigens.

Care should be exercised when interpreting antigen typing results with chloroquine-treated cells. Reports indicate that Rh antigens, and possibly other blood group antigens, can be weakened, resulting in false-negative reactions. Saline-reactive antisera, including monoclonal grouping reagents, should not be used with chloroquine-treated cells (Gamma Biologicals Inc., 2001). For chloroquine or glycine/EDTA, it is prudent to treat known antigen-positive cells in parallel as a control. Only monospecific anti-IgG should be used in the IAT because complement components are not dissociated by chloroquine from DAT-positive RBCs.

Red Blood Cell Typing with Lectin Reagents

Lectin typing reagents contain proteins that will recognize specific carbohydrates on the RBC membrane, causing direct hemagglutination. Lectin reagents are usually derived from plant seeds, but these receptor proteins are also found in some invertebrate animals and lower vertebrates. Because the potency of lectin reagents may vary with the preparation, each lot should be standardized before use. Although many lectins have been described, only a few have been found useful in blood banking (Bird, 1988). Sources for selected lectin reagents and their applications are listed in Table 35-40. Procedures for preparation of purified lectins may be found in *Judd's Methods in Immunohematology* (Judd et al, 2008).

Separation of Autologous from Transfused Red Cells

In transfused patients, it may be necessary to separate autologous from transfused cells. Autologous RBCs for antigen typing may be necessary (1) in a transfused patient with multiple alloantibodies, (2) with a warm autoantibody and possible alloantibodies, or (3) with an antibody to a high-incidence antigen. Performing a DAT, and possibly even elution, on separated autologous and/or transfused cells can help determine whether a recently transfused individual with a warm autoimmune hemolytic anemia (WAIHA) is developing a delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction (DHTR) due to new alloantibodies. In rare cases, DAT testing on separated autologous RBCs may be required to differentiate a WAIHA from a DHTR involving a high-incidence antigen. In a final application, one

could roughly estimate the proportion of surviving, transfused RBCs when a DHTR is suspected.

Two basic techniques for separating autologous from transfused RBCs are differential agglutination and density separation using centrifugation. In the first technique, antibodies are used to agglutinate only one population of cells, based on known antigenic differences between recipient and donor. Unagglutinated cells are physically removed from the agglutinates and are sequentially reacted with more antisera until no more agglutinates are formed. In the second technique, washed and packed RBCs are centrifuged in multiple sealed microhematocrit tubes. Transfused cells are older, smaller, and denser than newly formed autologous cells (reticulocytes) and will spin toward the bottom of the tube. After centrifugation, the top 5 mm of each tube is cut away, and the cells are harvested from these small segments. These sections will contain the larger and lighter autologous cells. This method will be effective only if the patient is producing normal or high numbers of reticulocytes. When testing separated red cells, nonseparated cells should be tested in parallel as a control. The separated red cells should show clear positives and negatives, and the nonseparated cells should show mixed field agglutination.

Hypotonic cell lysis is a third method that is available for harvesting autologous red cells in patients with sickle cell disease. The method is based on the resistance of Hg S red cells to hypotonic saline. The patient sample is repeatedly washed with 0.3% hypotonic saline to lyse normal donor red cells until gross hemolysis is no longer present. The cells are then washed and resuspended in 0.9% saline for antigen typing. Because sickle cell patients are regularly transfused, this technique is useful for facilities that provide antigen-matched red cells for their sickle cell patients.

Molecular Typing

Because most common blood group antigens are the consequence of SNPs, several commercial and home-brew assays have been developed to genotype donors and patients. The ability to genotype individuals for blood group antigens is extremely useful for multitransfused patients in whom standard serologic typing cannot be performed as a result of circulating donor red cells. Several transfusion services routinely genotype all hemoglobinopathy patients (e.g., sickle cell anemia, β-thalassemia) who have long-term transfusion needs and require antigen-negative units. Genotyping is also useful in patients with multiple alloantibodies or autoantibodies, in whom it can be difficult to exclude an antibody to a high-incidence antigen because of the lack of commercial reagents (e.g., Dombrock). Likewise, serologic phenotyping often cannot be performed in patients with a positive DAT because many reagents require the addition of anti-IgG for typing. Genotyping is commonly used in prenatal testing to identify a fetus at risk for HDFN. Fetal genotyping can often be performed with a maternal blood sample, offering a significant safety advantage over serologic testing, which requires fetal blood sampling (Finning et al, 2007). Finally, large-scale genotyping of donors has the potential to increase the availability of antigen-negative units for patients with clinically significant alloantibodies (Montpetit et al, 2006).

Several methods have been developed for red cell and platelet genotyping, including restriction fragment length polymorphism, allele-specific PCR, real-time PCR, direct sequencing, and microarray technology (see Chapters 65, 66, and 67). High-throughput screening methods, such as microarray, are amenable to semiautomated processes and permit extended typing for high- and low-incidence antigens. It is important to stress that genotype does not always reflect red cell phenotype because most genotyping methods focus on known common polymorphisms. Unknown polymorphisms may alter protein or gene expression not detected by the primers used. A well-known example is Fy(a–b–) phenotype in blacks, who genotype as FY^*B^{ES} but lack Fy expression on red cells because of a promoter mutation. Likewise, many partial RhD and RhCE phenotypes can lead to discrepancies between phenotype and genotype (see Rh section).

INVESTIGATION OF AUTOIMMUNE HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA

Autoantibodies, in general, are produced by an individual's own immune system against self or an antigen that is present in that same individual. Although produced against self-antigens, these antibodies typically react with the same antigen found in other normal individuals. If the antibodies produced are against blood cell constituents, the pathologic result could be hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, or leukopenia. In many cases, these autoantibodies cause no demonstrable clinical symptoms.

The DAT is integral to the diagnosis of autoimmune hemolytic anemia (AIHA) because it can confirm the presence of antibody that has attached to the patient's own red cells in vivo. The DAT can help differentiate AIHA from congenital anemias caused by abnormalities in RBC cytoskeleton, enzymes, or Hg. The DAT may be positive owing to IgG and/or complement components, depending on the class or subclass of autoantibody involved. A positive DAT by itself, however, does not mean that an individual has AIHA. Approximately 8% of hospitalized patients have a positive DAT without any signs of hemolysis (Petz, 1993). In patients with suspected AIHA, the antibody screen may also be positive because of free autoantibody in the serum.

Autoantibodies are categorized as cold (usually IgM) or warm (usually IgG), based on the temperature of in vitro reactivity in the IAT. In some cases, patients may have mixed-type AIHA with both cold and warm reactive autoantibodies. The causative antibodies of these categories of anemias will be described here; additional information regarding the origin and pathophysiology of AIHA is provided in Chapter 32.

Warm Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia

Individuals with warm reactive autoantibodies account for approximately 70% to 80% of cases of AIHA, having an overall incidence of about 1 in 50,000 to 1 in 80,000 (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). WAIHA may be classified as primary or idiopathic (of unknown origin), or as secondary. Secondary WAIHA is often observed in autoimmune diseases (frequently systemic lupus erythematosus), in lymphoproliferative disorders, and following viral infections. With the advent of improved diagnostic procedures, the percentage of WAIHA classified as idiopathic has dropped to about 30% of cases (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). Patients with warm autoantibodies and a positive DAT will not all present with symptomatic anemia but may exist in a chronic compensated state for some time before progressing to overt clinical anemia.

Serologic Characteristics

Autoantibodies in WAIHA are usually IgG and polyclonal in nature, showing optimal in vitro reactivity at 37° C. A vast majority of warm autoantibodies present in serum and/or recovered in eluates from patients' RBCs can be demonstrated only by the IAT technique. The DAT will be positive in approximately 80% of cases. The DAT profiles in several large studies show that 40% to 50% are due to IgG only, 45% to 60% are caused by IgG and complement, and 0 to 15% are the result of complement only (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). In those instances where the DAT is negative, the use of more sensitive techniques, such as radioisotope or enzyme-labeled DAT, can demonstrate low levels of IgG or, less frequently, IgM and IgA on red cells (Englefriet et al, 1992).

Ig subclass studies in WAIHA indicate that causative antibodies are predominantly IgG1 and/or IgG3. Despite the ability of these subclasses to activate complement, immune destruction of the patient's autologous cells occurs largely through the spleen and liver via extravascular pathways. Patients whose RBCs are coated with IgG3 antibodies are more likely to show overt anemia, apparently because of the greater capacity of IgG3 for binding to Fc receptors on macrophages (Englefriet et al, 1992). A more recent study shows that the presence of multiple IgG subclasses, rather than a single subclass, has a synergistic effect on the severity of hemolysis (Fabijanska-Mitek et al, 1997).

In general, warm autoantibodies display a broad specificity, reacting with all normal RBCs. Many broadly reactive antibodies can show Rh specificity, as evidenced by weak or absent reactivity to Rh_{null} red cells. On occasion, autoantibodies will demonstrate Rh pseudospecificity such as anti-e (most frequently), anti-c, and anti-E. Studies with recombinant cell lines show that in most instances, these antibodies are broadly reacting with the RhCE, RhD, and Band 3 proteins, regardless of Rh phenotype (Iwamoto et al, 2001). Notable exceptions to the latter are African Americans with partial RhCE proteins, who serologically type as c- and/or e-positive, but can produce true alloanti-c and alloanti-e after immune stimulation (see Rh section). Autoantibodies with apparent specificity for Kell, Kidd, MNSs, ABO, Vel, and LW antigens have also been reported. Relatively few individuals with WAIHA will show a single simple specificity (Issitt & Anstee, 1998).

Serologic Testing beyond the DAT

Transfusion is usually avoided for as long as possible in patients with WAIHA. If transfusion is necessary, it is important to characterize the autoantibody and exclude the presence of RBC alloantibodies (Eder, 2005). Typical investigation strategies should always include adsorption of the serum, followed by antibody detection and identification on the adsorbed serum. Subsequent testing can also be performed on eluted antibody, although it seldom yields further useful information *unless* the serum is nonreactive.

TABLE 35-41
Differentiating Characteristics of Cold Red Cell Autoagglutinins

Antibody Specificity	Clinical Significance	IAT Antibody Screen*	Ig Class	RELATIVE REACTION STRENGTHS WITH SELECTED RED CELLS AT ROOM TEMPERATURE†				
				O adult	O cord	A_1 adult	A_2 adult	Autologous
I	Acute CAD associated with *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* with antibody titers >1000 at 4° C	Pos	IgM	3+	w+	3+	3+	3+
i	Acute CAD associated with mononucleosis	Pos	IgM	w+	3+	w+	w+	Weaker than O cord
Pr	Rare cause of CAD‡	Pos	Reported cases of IgM, IgA, IgG	3+	3+	3+	3+	3+
P	PCH associated with certain viral infections in children	Neg	IgG§	Negative in routine agglutination tests; autoanti-P is a biphasic hemolysin (Donath-Landsteiner antibody)				
H	Benign except as alloantibody in Bombay phenotype	Weak to neg	IgM	3+	3+	1+	2+	0 to w+
IH	Benign	Weak to neg	IgM	3+	1+	1+	2+	0 to w+

CAD, Cold agglutinin disease; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *Neg,* negative; *PCH,* paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria; *Pos,* positive.
*Antigen expression: O adult (I+i– H+s); O cord (I–i+ H+s); A_1 (I+i– H+w); A_2 (I+i– H+).
†Reagent cells showing agglutination in 37° C phase may be much weaker after conversion to indirect antiglobulin test (IAT).
‡May be differentiated from anti-I by enzymes or increasing pH; anti-Pr reactivity is decreased by both techniques.
§Autoanti-P is the only pathologic cold autoantibody known to be routinely of the IgG class to IAT.

Autoadsorption. Because a strong, broadly reactive serum autoantibody can mask the presence of significant alloantibodies, adsorption studies should be performed in these patients. Autoadsorption using autologous cells can be performed on patients who have not been recently transfused (within the last 3 months). For patients who have a strong positive DAT, autologous cells should be treated with ZZAP (Branch & Petz, 1982) before adsorption. ZZAP contains DTT, which reduces disulfide bonds in the IgG autoantibodies coating the RBCs. This destabilizes the Ig structure, rendering the autoantibodies susceptible to digestion by cysteine-activated papain, the second component of ZZAP. By stripping bound autoantibody from cells, ZZAP treatment increases the adsorptive capacity of autologous RBCs (see Fig. 35-25). If the serum contains a high concentration of autoantibody, multiple, sequential autoadsorptions may be necessary to remove all autoantibody activity. If available in sufficient quantity, autoadsorbed serum may be used to perform crossmatching, particularly if antibody detection studies reveal the presence of underlying alloantibodies.

If the patient has had recent RBC transfusions, and the patient's red cell phenotype is known, adsorption may be performed using allogeneic cells of the same phenotype as the patient. Alternatively, if the patient's RBC phenotype is unknown, differential adsorptions may be performed on three separate aliquots of the patient's serum with different red cell samples of R_1, R_2, and rr phenotypes. One of the red cell samples should lack Jk^a and one should lack Jk^b (Fung, 2014). ZZAP treatment of the adsorbing cells will effectively destroy Fy^a, Fy^b, all Kell system antigens, and the M, N, S, and s antigens, thereby conferring on the adsorbing cell samples the capacity to remove autoantibody activity, while preserving potential alloantibodies in the serum. The different aliquots of serum are then tested against cells of known phenotype to detect and/or identify alloantibody specificity.

Elution. In most cases of WAIHA, an eluate of the patient's cells will demonstrate the same broadly reactive antibody seen in serum. In the rare instances where the serum is only weakly reactive or negative, an eluate may concentrate the warm autoantibody to facilitate identification and evaluation of its spectrum of reactivity. If the eluate is nonreactive with normal reagent RBCs, the presence of drug-induced autoantibodies should be investigated (see later).

Cold Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia

Cold autoantibodies may be detected in the serum of many normal individuals if tested under the right conditions. However, most of these antibodies are benign cold agglutinins that show optimal reactivity at 4° C and little or no reactivity at 37° C. Cold agglutinins are often a nuisance that can interfere with ABO/Rh typing, antibody detection, and crossmatching when polyspecific AHG is used. Although usually ignored as clinically insignificant, cold agglutinins may become pathologic by virtue of expanded thermal amplitude and a significant increase in titer, frequently in association with certain disease states. DAT, serum titration, and characterization of thermal amplitude are the most important serologic tests in evaluating a possible diagnosis of CAIHA. Table 35-41 outlines some of the serologic differentiating characteristics of various cold agglutinating autoantibodies, both pathologic and benign.

Cold Agglutinin Disease

Cold agglutinin disease (CAD) accounts for about 20% of total cases of AIHA (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). As with WAIHA, CAD may be idiopathic or secondary following infection or malignancy. Anti-I is the most frequent autoantibody in idiopathic CAD and *M. pneumoniae* infections. In contrast to the anti-I cold agglutinins found in normal sera (usually less than 1:64 when tested at 4° C), anti-I in CAD is often of very high titer, with ranges of 1:10,000 to 1:1,000,000 (Cooling, 2010). The antibody also has expanded thermal amplitude, reacting with RBCs at temperatures in the range of 30° to 34° C in vitro, especially in tests with albumin-suspended RBCs (Issitt & Anstee, 1998). The DAT is typically positive with polyspecific and anti-C3 reagents.

In vivo hemolysis is the result of binding of antibody to a patient's RBCs in the peripheral vessels of the extremities, which are cooler (32° C and lower). As the cells recirculate to the body core and warm to 37° C, complement is activated and cells are destroyed. Hemolysis of cells may occur intravascularly but occurs more commonly via extravascular (C3b) pathways by macrophages in the reticuloendothelial system. Hemolysis may be chronic or episodic, depending on the thermal range of the antibody, and may be triggered by exposure to cold temperatures.

Because anti-I reacts broadly with virtually all adult RBCs, the antibody can cause great difficulty in compatibility testing. As with warm autoantibodies, one of the primary concerns is to detect and identify any potential underlying IgG alloantibodies. Techniques to circumvent the autoanti-I in serum testing may include prewarming, cold autoadsorption, adsorption with REST, or treatment of the serum with sulfhydryl reagents such as DTT or 2-ME (see Special Antibody Identification Techniques section).

Anti-i and anti-Pr are two additional specificities associated with CAD. Anti-i can be observed in patients with infectious mononucleosis and certain lymphoproliferative disorders. Up to 10% to 20% of patients with infectious mononucleosis will have elevated cold agglutinin titers; however, few will actually develop clinical hemolysis (Eder, 2005; Cooling, 2010). Anti-i is usually an IgM, reacting more strongly with cord cells than with adult cells. Distinguishing anti-i from anti-I may require titrating patient

TABLE 35-42

Selected Drugs Associated with a Positive DAT and/or Hemolysis Due to Drug-Induced Autoantibodies

Reported Mechanism	Drug
Drug-independent autoantibody induction	Cladribine, fludarabine, levodopa, mefenamic acid, methyldopa, procainamide
Drug-dependent (reactivity with drug-coated cells)	Aminopyrine, amoxicillin, carbromal, cefamandole, cefazolin, cephalexin, erythromycin, insulin, nafcillin, penicillin, tetracycline, tolbutamide
Drug-dependent (reactivity with uncoated cells)	Acetaminophen, amphotericin B, antazoline, butizide, ceftriaxone, chlorpropamide, diethylstilbestrol, etodolac, 9-hydroxy-methyl-ellipticinium, naproxen, phenacetin, probenecid, propyphenazone, quinine, sodium pentothal, stibophen, sulfamethoxazole, sulfasalazine, trimethoprim
Nonimmunologic protein adsorption	Clavulanate potassium, diglycoaldehyde, sulbactam sodium, suramin, tazobactam sodium
Combination mechanisms	Ampicillin, carbimazole, carboplatin, cefixime, cefotaxime, cefotetan, cefoxitin, ceftazidime, ceftizoxime, cephalothin, chlorinated hydrocarbons, chlorpromazine, cisplatin, cyanidanol, diclofenac, dipyrone, fenoprofen, fluorescein, hydrochlorothiazide, isoniazid, mefloquine, methotrexate, nomifensine, oxaliplatin, piperacillin, quinidine, ranitidine, rifampicin, streptomycin, sulindac, suprofen, teicoplanin, teniposide, ticarcillin, tolmetin, triamterene, zomepirac

DAT, Direct antiglobulin test.
Data from Fung (2014).

sera with group O adult and cord red cells at 4° C, 24° C, and 37° C (Fung, 2014).

Anti-Pr specificities may initially react similarly to anti-I, but may be differentiated by equally strong reactions with cord and adult RBCs (Table 35-42). In addition, anti-Pr is sensitive to trypsin and ficin and is nonreactive with enzyme-treated red cells, unlike anti-I and anti-i, which are enhanced by enzyme treatment. It is believed that anti-Pr recognizes the O-linked tetrasaccharide on glycophorin A and B (Issitt & Anstee, 1998; Cooling, 2015). Anti-Pr in patients with severe CAD is usually monoclonal and may be IgG, IgM, or IgA (Issitt & Anstee, 1998).

Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria

PCH is an autoimmune hemolytic syndrome most often seen in children following infection by mumps, chickenpox, measles, and other viruses. Historically, PCH was also seen in syphilitic patients. It can present suddenly with severe hemolysis with an initial Hg of 7 g/dL or lower. In addition to laboratory findings of intravascular hemolysis, PCH patients may have erythrophagocytosis on peripheral blood smear. The latter is highly unusual and should trigger an investigation for possible PCH (Eder, 2005).

Autoanti-P, also known as the Donath-Landsteiner (DL) antibody, is the most common causative antibody in PCH. It is an IgG, biphasic autohemolysin capable of binding to RBCs at cold temperatures and causing intravascular hemolysis of those cells at body temperature (see Table 35-41). This characteristic can be demonstrated in vitro by the diagnostic DL procedure to aid in the confirmation of PCH. In this test, three sets of tubes containing patient serum and group O cells are incubated—one at 4° C followed by 37° C, one only at 4° C, and one only at 37° C. If the first set shows hemolysis, but the other two do not, this indicates the presence of the biphasic hemolysin characteristic of PCH. The DL test requires that a fresh blood sample be used to ensure that an adequate supply of complement is available, because complement is relatively unstable and deteriorates during storage. The sample should be drawn and immediately stored at 37° C until clot formation. It is also important not to draw the blood into an anticoagulant such as EDTA because chelation of calcium ions will prevent complement activation and thus in vitro hemolysis.

Because the autoantibody in PCH rarely reacts above 4° C in vitro, routine antibody detection tests are usually negative, and crossmatches are compatible. Patient RBCs sensitized by the DL antibody will most commonly give a positive DAT, owing to C3 only. In addition, the DAT is positive only during or immediately after an episode of hemolysis (Eder, 2005). Because the antibody dissociates easily from RBCs during washing, the DAT is usually negative with anti-IgG. IgG may be detected, however, if the cells are washed with cold saline and tested with cold anti-IgG reagent (Fung, 2014).

Because the antibody is biphasic, many clinicians recommend keeping the patient warm and utilizing a blood warmer for transfusion. Although PCH is due to an autoanti-P, it is not necessary to transfuse the patient with rare, P-negative red cells. Most patients will have an acceptable transfusion response with routine allogeneic red cells (Eder, 2005).

Mixed-Type AIHA. A "mixed" AIHA occurs in less than 10% of patients and is characterized by the presence of warm and cold autoantibodies (Eder, 2005). The DAT is usually positive with both C3 and IgG, and the patient's serum will react in all phases of testing (at room temperature and at 37° C) in the IAT. The cold-reactive antibody is typically anti-I or anti-i, and the warm-reactive antibody is typically a 37° C reactive IgG autoantibody. To adsorb autoantibody in a mixed AIHA, the sample is sequentially adsorbed at 37° C to adsorb warm-reactive autoantibody, followed by incubation in an ice bath for 30 minutes to adsorb cold-reactive antibody. Clinically, mixed AIHA usually is similar to WAIHA, although some patients may have symptoms of both WAIHA and CAD.

POSITIVE DIRECT ANTIGLOBULIN TESTS AND HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA INDUCED BY MEDICATION

At this time, more than 130 drugs have been implicated in drug-induced hemolytic anemia, with an incidence of 1 in 1 to 2 million individuals (Salama, 2009). An even larger number of therapeutic drugs can be associated with a positive DAT (see Table 35-42). It is also well documented that a positive DAT may be produced in patients receiving high-dose intravenous gammaglobulin therapy, owing to passively acquired specific blood group antibodies, as well as nonspecific binding to RBCs by IgG dimers and aggregates in the gammaglobulin preparation (Knezevic-Maramica & Kruskall, 2003). Several theories regarding the immunologic process underlying drug-induced antibodies have been put forth, many of which remain unproven. Moreover, some drugs appear to work by more than one mechanism, further complicating the picture. An example of the latter is the group of cephalosporins, which now account for 93% of drug-induced hemolysis (Garratty, 2004).

Historically, drug-induced hemolytic anemia has been subclassified into four types, based on its serologic characteristics. Drug-independent antibodies do not require the addition of drug into the test system for detection, even though the drug is responsible for inducing hemolytic anemia. Drug-dependent antibodies, on the other hand, require the presence of the drug for serologic reactivity. Drug-dependent antibodies can be subclassified into two types, depending on whether antibody reactivity requires drug-coated red cells or simply the presence of drug in serum. Antibody reactivity against drug-coated red cells appears to be directed against the drug itself. Alternatively, reactivity observed after concurrent incubation of red cells, serum, and free drug is believed to reflect immune complex formation between drug and "antidrug" antibody. Finally, nonimmunologic protein adsorption proposes that a change in the red cell membrane causes immune globulins and other plasma proteins to be adsorbed nonspecifically to the red cell membrane.

A unifying model has been suggested that may be applicable to many different drugs thought to be operating via the mechanisms mentioned previously (Garratty, 2004). The hypothesis suggests that the immune process is initiated by a primary interaction between RBCs and the drug or its metabolites, even though the drug may be only loosely bound to

RBCs in vivo. This provides the composite determinants (or neoantigen) necessary for production of drug-dependent antibodies, as in the drug adsorption and immune complex mechanisms, or of drug-independent autoantibodies that recognize subtle alterations in the RBC membrane.

STIMULATION OF RED CELL AUTOANTIBODY PRODUCTION

Drug-Induced Immune Hemolytic Anemia (DIIHA)

Rarely, individuals develop antibodies after receiving therapeutic drugs. There are at least 120 drugs that have been described in the literature associated with DIIHA. The DAT may be positive with IgG and/or C3. The antibodies are classified into four types: drug-dependent (two subtypes), drug-independent, and nonimmunologic protein adsorption.

Drug-Independent Autoantibodies

Drug-independent autoantibodies can be detected without the presence or addition of the drug to the test system. The best-known example is methydopa (Aldomet), a hypertensive drug still used in obstetrics. About 20% of hypertensive patients who receive methyldopa for longer than 3 to 6 months will eventually develop a positive DAT, but only 0.8% will develop a hemolytic anemia (Petz, 1993). The DAT gradually becomes negative after stopping methyldopa treatment, although it may take months to longer than 2 years. Serologically, autoantibodies eluted from RBCs, or free in the serum, are indistinguishable from autoantibodies found in patients with WAIHA. The antibodies are usually of the IgG class, with both κ and λ light chains, and many show Rh specificity. Drug-independent antibodies may be found alone as warm autoantibodies (methyldopa, procainamide, and fludarabine) or in combination with drug-dependent antibodies (cefotetan). About 10% of patients with Parkinson's disease receiving L-dopa, a closely related drug, develop RBC autoantibodies, but these rarely result in overt hemolysis (Petz, 1993).

Drug-Dependent Autoantibodies (Two Types)

Reactivity with Drug-Coated Cells

About 3% of patients receiving large doses of penicillin intravenously (>10 $\times 10^6$ IU/day) develop a positive DAT, although only a few of these patients will have hemolytic anemia (Salama, 2009). Breakdown products of benzyl penicillin exhibit a high binding affinity for the RBC membrane, which results in the formation of haptenic benzylpenicilloyl determinants. Certain patients can form high-titered antibodies against penicillin metabolites and, to a lesser extent, red cell membrane components. The resulting antibody–drug–RBC complex yields a positive DAT with IgG and sometimes with anti-C3. The DAT becomes negative again within days to several weeks after discontinuing penicillin. Both the patient's serum and eluates prepared from the patient's RBCs usually react only with penicillin-coated RBCs in in vitro testing.

Penicillin antibodies may consist of IgM or IgG. IgM antibodies are very common if a sensitive method is used for detection. Those antibodies associated with immune hemolytic anemia are usually of IgG isotype (Salama, 2009). Hemolysis occurs usually through extravascular destruction mediated by cells of the RE system, although rare cases of complement-mediated intravascular hemolysis have been reported. Several cases of acquired hemolytic anemia have also been reported in association with cephalosporins through a mechanism similar to that of penicillin (Garratty, 2004; Salama, 2009).

Reactivity with Uncoated Cells

A wide variety of drugs may cause hemolytic anemia via the so-called immune complex mechanism (see Table 35-42). In the unifying concept, these drugs loosely bind to the RBC membrane with subsequent formation of antibodies reacting with both drug and membrane components. The cell–drug–antibody complex then may stimulate activation of the complement cascade. Drugs acting by this mechanism most often are associated with episodes of acute intravascular hemolysis with hemoglobinemia and hemoglobinuria that may prove fatal (Petz, 1993). The DAT in these cases is usually positive with anti-C3d only. The antibodies implicated may be IgM or IgG (Fung, 2014). They can be detected only in test systems where serum/eluate, test cells, and free drug are all present simultaneously. Although the mechanism leading to antibody production may be similar to that of so-called drug adsorption, the drugs in this category are classified separately primarily by the DAT result (C3d+) and characteristic severe intravascular hemolysis.

Nonimmunologic Adsorption of Serum Proteins

Patients taking high-dose cephalothin (6 to 14 g/day) for prolonged periods have been reported to develop a positive DAT, with a frequency ranging widely from 3% to 81% (Garratty, 2004). Hemolysis is rarely, if ever, associated with the phenomenon (Fung, 2014). It was subsequently shown that RBCs exposed to cephalothin in vitro are able to nonspecifically adsorb plasma and serum proteins (albumin, Igs, complement). In the case of some cephalosporins, a decrease in CD55 and CD58 can be documented (Garratty, 2004). These proteins can be detected by polyspecific AHG sera in the DAT. It has been hypothesized that adsorption occurs because of a change in erythrocyte membrane properties induced by cephalothin and other drugs.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Daniels G: *Human blood groups*, 2nd ed, Oxford, 2002, Blackwell Science.
Summarizes each blood group system, including serology, biochemistry, and molecular basis for the major blood group antigen systems.

Friedman BA, Oberman HA, Chadwick AR, et al: The maximum surgical blood order schedule and surgical blood use in the United States, *Transfusion* 16:380–387, 1976.
The historical standard for the design, use, and implementation of the MSBOS for blood ordering.

Fung M, editor: *Technical manual*, 18th ed, Bethesda, Md., 2014, American Association of Blood Banks.
Techniques and policies for the collection, processing, testing, and dispensing of blood components.

Issitt PD, Anstee DJ: *Applied blood group serology*, 4th ed, Durham, N.C., 1998, Montgomery Scientific Publications.
A comprehensive text detailing the history, serology, disease associations, and possible biological roles of blood group antigens and antibodies.

Levitt J: *Standards for blood banks and transfusion services (Committee Chair)*, 29th ed, Bethesda, Md., 2014, American Association of Blood Banks.
Regulatory standards governing the collection, testing, processing, dispensing, transfusion, and tracking of blood components.

Reid RE, Lomas-Francis C: *The blood group antigen facts book*, 3rd ed, San Diego, 2012, Academic Press.
A succinct listing of the required serologic and molecular testing for each blood group antibody and antigen.

REFERENCES

Afenyi-Annan A, Kail M, Combs MR, et al: Lack of Duffy antigen expression is associated with organ damage in patients with sickle cell disease, *Transfusion* 48:917–924, 2008.

Agre P, Smith BL, Baumgarten R, et al: Human red cell aquaporin CHIP: Expression during normal fetal development and in a novel form of congenital dyserythropoietic anemia, *J Clin Invest* 94:1050–1058, 1994.

An X, Mohandas N: Disorders of red cell membrane, *Br J Haematol* 141:367–375, 2008.

Anliker M, von Zabern I, Hochsmann B, et al: A new blood group antigen is defined by anti-CD59, detected in a CD59-deficient patient, *Transfusion* 54:1817–1822, 2014.

Ansart-Pirenne H, Asso-Bonnet M, Le Pennec P-Y, et al: RhD variants in Caucasians: Consequences for checking clinically relevant alleles, *Transfusion* 44: 1282–1286, 2004.

Arnaud L, Helias V, Menanteau C, et al: A functional allele of aquaporin-1 mimics a Colton-null phenotype [Abstract], *Transfusion* 48S:13A, 2008.

Arndt PA, Garratty G: A retrospective analysis of the value of monocyte monolayer assay results for predicting the clinical significance of blood group alloantibodies, *Transfusion* 44:1273–1281, 2004.

Auf der Maur C, Hodel M, Nydegger UE, et al: Age dependency of ABO histo-blood group antibodies: Reexamination of an old dogma, *Transfusion* 33:915–918, 1993.

Avent ND: The rhesus blood group system: Insights from recent advances in molecular biology, *Transfus Med Rev* 13:245–266, 1999.

Bahamontes-Rosa N, Tena-Tomas C, Wolkow J, et al: Genetic conservation of the GIL blood group determining aquaporin 3 gene in African and Caucasian populations, *Transfusion* 48:1164–1168, 2008.

Baleotti W, Rios M, Reid ME, et al: Dombrock gene analysis in Brazilian people reveals novel alleles, *Vox Sang* 91:81–87, 2006.

Ballas SK, Marcolina MJ, Crawford MN: In vitro storage and in vivo survival studies of red cells from persons with the In(Lu) gene, *Transfusion* 32:607–611, 1992.

Ballif BA, Helias V, Peyrard T, et al: Disruption of SMIM1 causes the Vel- blood type, *EMBO Mol Med* 5:751–761, 2013.

Banderanko N, editor: *Blood transfusion therapy: A physician's handbook*, 11th ed, Bethseda, Md, 2014, American Association of Blood Banks.

Bartels CF, Zelinski T, Lockridge O: Mutation at codon 322 in the human acetylcholinesterase (ACHE) gene accounts for YT blood group polymorphism, *Am J Hum Genet* 52:928–936, 1993.

Bartholdson JS, Bustamante LY, Crosnier C, et al: Semaphorin-7A is an erythrocyte receptor for P. falciparum merozoite-specific TRAP homolog, MTRAP, *PLoS Pathog* 8:e1003031, 1-13, 2012. doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003031.

Baumgarten R, van Gelder W, van Wintershoven J, et al: Recurrent acute hemolytic transfusion reactions by antibodies against Do^a antigens, not detected by crossmatching, *Transfusion* 46:244–249, 2006.

Bayliss KM, Kueck BD, Johnson ST, et al: Detecting fetomaternal hemorrhage: A comparison of five methods, *Transfusion* 31:303–307, 1991.

Berry-Dortch S, Woodside CH, Boral LI: Limitations of the immediate spin crossmatch when used for detecting ABO incompatibility, *Transfusion* 25:176–178, 1985.

Bietz S, Montilla I, Kulzer S, et al: Recruitment of human aquaporin 3 to internal membranes in the *Plasmodium falciparum* infected erythrocyte, *Mol Biochem Parasitol* 167:48–53, 2009.

Bird GWG: Lectins: A hundred years, *Immunohematology* 4:45–48, 1988.

Blood Group Antigen Gene Mutation Database: 2015. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/projects/gv/mhc/xslcgi.cgi:cmd=bgmut.

Boren T, Falk P, Roth KA, et al: Attachment of *Helicobacter pylori* to human gastric epithelium mediated by blood group antigens, *Science* 262:1892–1895, 1993.

Bosco A, Xenocostas A, Kinney J, et al: An autoanti-Kpb immunoglobulin M that simulates antigen suppression, *Transfusion* 49:750–756, 2009.

Boury-Jamot M, Daraspe J, Bonte F, et al: Skin aquaporins: Function in hydration, wound healing, and skin epidermis homeostasis. In Beitz E, editor: *Handbook of experimental pharmacology 2009*, Berlin, Heidelberg, Germany, 2009, Springer-Verlag.

Branch DR, Petz LD: A new reagent (ZZAP) having multiple applications in immunohematology, *Am J Clin Pathol* 78:161–167, 1982.

Brown KE, Hibbs FR, Gallinella G, et al: Resistance to parvovirus B19 infection due to a lack of virus receptor (erythrocyte P antigen), *N Engl J Med* 330:1192–1196, 1994.

Brunker PAR, Flegel WA: Scianna: The lucky 13th blood group system, *Immunohematology* 27:41–57, 2011.

Burton MN, Bruce LJ: Modelling the structure of the red cell membrane, *Biochem Cell Biol* 89:200–215, 2011.

Butch SH, Judd WJ, Steiner EA, et al: Electronic verification of donor-recipient compatibility: The computer crossmatch, *Transfusion* 34:105–109, 1994.

Byrne KM, Byrne PC: Review: Other blood group systems—Diego, Yt, Xg, Scianna, Dombrock, Colton, Landsteiner-Wiener, and Indian, *Immunohematology* 20:50–58, 2004.

Cameron HS, Szczepaniak D, Weston BW: Expression of human chromosome 19p α (1,3) fucosyltransferase genes in normal tissues, *J Biol Chem* 270:20112–20122, 1995.

Castilho L, Credidio CD, Ribeiro K, et al: Anti-Fy3 in sickle cell disease patients genotyped as FY*B^{-33}/FY*B^{-33} [Abstract], *Transfusion* 49S:35A, 2009.

Castilho L, Reid ME: A review of the JR blood group system, *Immunohematology* 29:63–68, 2013.

Chakera A, Seeber RM, John AE, et al: The Duffy antigen/receptor for chemokines exists in an oligomeric form in living cells and functionally antagonizes CCR5 signaling through hetero-oligomerization, *Mol Pharmacol* 73:1362–1370, 2008.

Chaudhuri A, Nielsen S, Elkjaer ML, et al: Detection of Duffy antigens in the plasma membranes and caveolae of vascular endothelial and epithelial cells of nonerythroid organs, *Blood* 89:701–712, 1997.

Chen GY, Muramatsu H, Kondo M, et al: Abnormalities caused by carbohydrate alterations in I β1,6-*N*-acetylglucosaminyltransferase-deficient mice, *Mol Cell Biol* 225:7828–7838, 2005.

Chen XY, Peng J, Novaretti M, et al: Deletion of arginine codon 229 in the *Rhce* gene alters e and f but not c expression, *Transfusion* 44:391–398, 2004.

Cherif-Zahar B, Le Van Kim C, Rouillac C, et al: Organization of the gene *(RHCE)* encoding the blood group RhCcEe antigens and characterization of the promoter region, *Genomics* 19:68–74, 1994.

Code of Federal Regulations: *Title 21—Food and drugs, Part 606, Subpart H—Laboratory controls*, Washington, DC, 2001a, U.S. Government Printing Office.

Code of Federal Regulations: *Title 21—Food and drugs, Part 660, Subpart F—Anti-human globulin*, Washington, DC, 2001b, U.S. Government Printing Office.

Cohen M, Hurtado-Ziola N, Varki A: ABO blood group glycans modulate sialic acid recognition on erythrocytes, *Blood* 114:3668–3676, 2009.

Cooling L: Polylactosamines, there's more than meets the "Ii": A review of the Ii system, *Immunohematology* 26:133–155, 2010.

Cooling L: Blood groups in infection and host susceptibility, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 28:1–70, 2015.

Cooling L, Gorlin JB: Transfusion reactions associated with hematopoietic progenitor cell reinfusion. In Popovsky MA, editor: *Transfusion reactions*, 4th ed, Bethesda, Md., 2012, AABB Press, pp 289–326.

Cooling L, Hwang D, Gu Y: Globoside synthase can regulate P^k and LKE expression on human RBC: Evidence for the Pk-variant phenotype among some LKE-weak and LKE-negative donors [Abstract], *Transfusion* 43:SP194, 2003a.

Cooling LL, Kelly K: Inverse expression of P^k and Luke blood group antigens on human RBCs, *Transfusion* 41:898–907, 2001.

Cooling LLW, Zhang D-S, Naides SJ, et al: Glycosphingolipid expression in acute nonlymphocytic leukemia: Common expression of shiga toxin and parvovirus B19 receptors on early myeloblasts, *Blood* 101:711–721, 2003b.

Coombs RRA, Mourant AE, Race RR: A new test for the detection of weak and incomplete Rh agglutinins, *Br J Exp Pathol* 26:255–266, 1945.

Cordle DG, Strauss RG, Snyder EL, et al: Safety and cost containment data that advocate abbreviated pretransfusion testing, *Am J Clin Pathol* 94:428–431, 1990.

Costa FP, Ferreira EC, Hue-Roye K, et al: A new antibody in the Dombrock blood group system, anti-DOMR, masquerades as anti-Hy [Abstract], *Transfusion* 49S:48A, 2009.

Coste I, Gauchat J-F, Wilson A, et al: Unavailability of CD147 leads to selective erythrocyte trapping in the spleen, *Blood* 97:3984–3988, 2001.

Covas DT, de Oliveira FS, Rodrigues ES, et al: Knops blood group haplotypes among distinct Brazilian populations, *Transfusion* 47:147–153, 2007.

Crew VK, Burton N, Kagan A, et al: CD151, the first member of the tetraspanin (TM4) superfamily detected on erythrocytes, is essential for the correct assembly of human basement membranes in kidney and skin, *Blood* 104:2217–2223, 2004.

Crew VK, Poole J, Long S, et al: Two MER2-negative individuals with the same novel *CD151* mutation and evidence for clinical significance of anti-MER2, *Transfusion* 48:1912–1916, 2008.

Curnutte J, Bemiller L: Chronic granulomatous disease with McLeod phenotype: An uncommon occurrence [Abstract], *Transfusion* 35:S239, 1995.

Cvejic A, Haer-Wigman L, Stephens JC, et al: *SMIM1* underlies the Vel blood group and influences red blood cell traits, *Nat Genet* 45:542–545, 2013.

Czerwinski M, Kern J, Grodecka M, et al: Mutational analysis of the *N*-glycosylation sites of Duffy antigen/receptor for chemokines, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 356:816–821, 2007.

Daniel-Johnson J, Leitman S, Klein H, et al: Probiotic-associated high-titer anti-B in a group A platelet donor as a cause of severe hemolytic transfusion reactions, *Transfusion* 49:1845–1849, 2009.

Daniels G: Lutheran, *Immunohematology* 25:152–159, 2009.

Daniels G, Flegel WA, Fletcher A, et al: International Society of Blood Transfusion Committee on Terminology for Red Cell Surface Antigens: Cape Town report, *Vox Sang* 92:250–253, 2007.

Daniels G, Fletcher A, Garratty G, et al: Blood group terminology 2004: From the International Society of Blood Transfusion Committee on Terminology for Red Cell Surface Antigens, *Vox Sang* 87:304–316, 2004.

Denecke J, Marquardt T: Congenital dyserythropoietic anemia type II (CDAII/HEMPAS): Where are we now? *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1792:915–920, 2009.

Djousse L, Karamohamed S, Herbert AG, et al: Fucosyltransferase 3 polymorphism and atherothrombotic disease in the Framingham offspring study, *Am Heart J* 153:636–639, 2007.

Eder AF: Transfusion therapy in autoimmune hemolytic anemia. In Mintz PD, editor: *Transfusion therapy: Clinical principles and practice*, 2nd ed, Bethesda, Md, 2005, AABB Press, pp 27–56.

Edwards JM, Moulds JJ, Judd WJ: Chloroquine dissociation of antigen-antibody complexes: A new technique for typing red blood cells with a positive direct antiglobulin test, *Transfusion* 22:59–61, 1982.

El Nemer W, Gane P, Colin Y, et al: The Lutheran blood group glycoproteins, the erythroid receptors for laminin, are adhesion molecules, *J Biol Chem* 273:16686–16693, 1998.

El Nemer W, Rahuel C, Colin Y, et al: Organization of the human *LU* gene and molecular basis of the Lu^a/Lu^b blood group polymorphism, *Blood* 89:4608–4616, 1997.

Ellison RC, Zhang Y, Myers RH, et al: Lewis blood group phenotype as an independent risk factor for coronary heart disease (The NHLBI Family Heart Study), *Am J Cardiol* 83:345–348, 1999.

Endeward V, Cartron J-P, Ripoche P, et al: Red cell membrane CO_2 permeability in normal human blood and in blood deficient in various blood groups, and effect of DIDS, *Transfus Clin Biol* 13:123–127, 2006.

Englefriet CP, Overbeeke MAM, von dem Borne AEG: Autoimmune hemolytic anemia, *Semin Hematol* 29:3–12, 1992.

Eyers SAC, Ridgwell K, Mawby WJ, et al: Topology and organization of human Rh (rhesus) blood group related polypeptides, *J Biol Chem* 269:6417–6423, 1994.

Fabijanska-Mitek J, Lopienska H, Zupanska B: Gel test application for IgG subclass detection in auto-immune haemolytic anaemia, *Vox Sang* 72:233–237, 1997.

Fehr T, Stussi G: ABO-incompatible kidney transplantation, *Curr Opin Organ Transplant* 17:376–385, 2012.

Figueiredo C, Zenk J, Blasczyk R, et al: Blood group protein semaphorin 7A: A new modulator of NK cell function, *Transfusion* 49S:47A, 2009.

Finning K, Martin P, Summers J, et al: Fetal genotyping for the K (Kell) and Rh C, c, and E blood groups on cell-free fetal DNA in maternal plasma, *Transfusion* 47:2126–2133, 2007.

Franchini M, Mannucci PM: ABO blood group and thrombotic vascular disease, *Thromb Haemost* 112: 1103–1109, 2014.

Frank SM, Rothschild JA, Masear CG, et al: Optimizing preoperative blood ordering with data acquired from an anesthesia information management system, *Anesthesiology* 118:1286–1297, 2013.

Freedman J, Semple JW: Complement in transfusion medicine. In Garraty G, editor: *Immunobiology of transfusion medicine*, New York, 1994, Marcel Dekker, pp 403–434.

Gamma Biologicals, Inc: *Gamma-Quin chloroquine diphosphate solution for removal of red-cell-bound immunoglobulin—Directions for use*, Houston, 2001, Gamma Biologicals, Inc.

Gang EJ, Bosnakovski D, Figueiredo CA, et al: SSEA-4 identifies mesenchymal stem cells from bone marrow, *Blood* 109:1743–1751, 2007.

Gardner L, Patterson AM, Ashton BA, et al: The human Duffy antigen binds selected inflammatory but not homeostatic chemokines, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 321:306–312, 2004.

Garratty G: Review: Drug-induced immune hemolytic anemia—The last decade, *Immunohematology* 20:138–146, 2004.

Gaudet MM, Kuchenbeacker KB, Vijai J, et al: Identification of a BRAC2-specific locus at 6p24 related to breast cancer risk, *PLoS Genet* 9:e1003172, 1–14, 2013. doi: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1003173.

Giles CM: Three Chido determinants detected on the B5Rg+ allotype of human C4: Their expression in Ch-typed donors and families, *Hum Immunol* 18:111–112, 1987.

Giles CM, Uring-Lambert B, Goetz J, et al: Antigenic determinants expressed by human C4 allotypes: A study of 325 families provides evidence for the structural antigenic model, *Immunogenetics* 27:442–448, 1988.

Gubin AN, Njoroge JM, Wojda U, et al: Identification of the Dombrock blood group glycoprotein as a polymorphic member of the ADP-ribosyltransferase gene family, *Blood* 96:2621–2627, 2000.

Hadley TJ, Peiper SC: From malaria to chemokine receptor: The emerging physiologic role of the Duffy blood group antigen, *Blood* 89:3077–3091, 1997.

Harmening DM, editor: *Modern blood banking and transfusion practices*, 6th ed, Philadelphia, 2012, FA Davis.

Hauser R: Le^a and Le^b tissue glycosphingolipids, *Transfusion* 35:577–581, 1995.

Helias V, Saison C, Ballif BA, et al: ABCB6 is dispensable for erythropoiesis and specifies the new blood group system Langereis, *Nat Genet* 44:170–173, 2012.

Henry JB, Mintz PD, Webb W: Optimal blood ordering for elective surgery, *JAMA* 237:451, 1977.

Hermand P, Gane P, Mattei MG, et al: Molecular basis and expression of the LW^a/LW^b blood group polymorphism, *Blood* 86:1590–1594, 1995.

Hirvonen T, Suila H, Kotovouri A, et al: The I blood group antigen as a marker for umbilical cord blood-derived mesenchymal stem cells, *Stem Cells Dev* 21:455–464, 2012.

Ho M, Chelly J, Carter N, et al: Isolation of the gene for McLeod syndrome that encodes a novel membrane transport protein, *Cell* 77:869–880, 1994.

Horne K, Woolley IJ: Shedding light on DARC: The role of the Duffy antigen/receptor for chemokines in inflammation, infection and malignancy, *Inflamm Res* 58:431–435, 2009.

Howes RE, Patil AP, Piel FB, et al: The global distribution of the Duffy blood group, *Nat Commun* 2:226, 2011. http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/ncomms1265.

Hsu K, Chi N, Gucek M, et al: Miltenberger blood group antigen type III (Mi.III) enhances the expression of band 3, *Blood* 114:1919–1928, 2009.

Huang CH, Blumenfeld O: MNSs blood groups and major glycophorins. In Carton JP, Rouger P, editors: *Blood cell biochemistry*, vol 6, New York, 1995, Plenum Press, pp 153–188.

Hue-Roye K, Lomas-Francis C, Balygorod L, et al: Three new high-prevalence antigens in the Cromer blood group system, *Transfusion* 47:1621–1629, 2007.

Hurst FP, Sajjad I, Elster EA, et al: Transplantation of A2 kidneys into B and O recipients leads to reduction in waiting time: USRDS experience, *Transplantation* 89:1396–1402, 2010.

Inaba N, Hiruma T, Togayachi A, et al: A novel I-branching β1,6-*N*-acetylglucosaminyltransferase involved in human blood group I antigen expression, *Blood* 101:2870–2876, 2003.

Iwamura K, Furukawa K, Uchikawa M, et al: The blood group P_1 synthase gene is identical to the Gb3/CD77 synthase gene, *J Biol Chem* 278:44429–44438, 2003.

Iwamoto S, Kamesaki T, Oyamada T, et al: Reactivity of autoantibodies of autoimmune hemolytic anemia with recombinant rhesus blood group antigens and anion transporter band 3, *Am J Hematol* 68:106–114, 2001.

Iwamoto S, Li J, Sugimoto N, et al: Characterization of the Duffy gene promoter: Evidence for tissue-specific abolishment of expression in Fy(a-b-) of black individuals, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 222:852–859, 1996.

Iwamoto S, Omi T, Yamasaki M, et al: Identification of 5′ flanking sequence of *RH50* gene and the core region for erythroid-specific expression, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 243:233–240, 1998.

Jacewicz MS, Acheson DWK, Mobassaleh M, et al: Maturational regulation of globotriaosylceramide, the shiga-like toxin 1 receptor, in cultured human gut epithelial cells, *J Clin Invest* 96:1328–1335, 1995.

Ji JD, Ivashkiv LB: Roles of semaphorins in the immune and hematopoietic system, *Rheumatol Int* 29:727–734, 2009.

Johnson NC: XG: The forgotten blood group system, *Immunohematology* 27:68–71, 2011.

Judd WJ: Are there better ways than the crossmatch to demonstrate ABO incompatibility? *Transfusion* 31:192–194, 1991.

Judd WJ: Requirements for the electronic crossmatch, *Vox Sang* 74:409–417, 1998.

Judd WJ: Red blood cell immunology and compatibility testing. In Simon TL, Dzik WH, Snyder EL, editors: *Rossi's principles of transfusion medicine*, 3rd ed, Philadelphia, 2002, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, pp 69–88.

Judd WJ: *Guidelines for prenatal and perinatal immunohematology*, Bethseda, Md., 2005, AABB Press.

Judd WJ, Johnson S, Storry S: *Judd's Methods in immunohematology*, 3rd ed, Durham, N.C., 2008, Montgomery Scientific Publications.

Judd WJ, Steiner EA, O'Donnell DB, et al: Discrepancies in reverse ABO typing due to prozone: How safe is the immediate-spin crossmatch? *Transfusion* 28:334–338, 1988.

Judd WJ, Walter WJ, Steiner EA: Clinical and laboratory findings on two patients with naturally occurring anti-Kell agglutinins, *Transfusion* 21:184–188, 1981.

Kaczmarek R, Buczkowska A, Mikolajewicz H, et al: P1PK, GLOB, FORS blood group systems and GLOB collection: Biochemical and clinical aspects. Do we understand it all yet? *Transfus Med Rev* 28:126–136, 2014.

Kamphuis MM, Lindenburg I, van Kamp I, et al: Implementation of routine screening for Kell antibodies: Does it improve perinatal survival? *Transfusion* 48:953–957, 2008.

Karon BS, Hoyer JD, Stubbs JR, et al: Changes in band 3 oligomeric state precede cell membrane phospholipid loss during blood bank storage of red blood cells, *Transfusion* 49:1435–1442, 2009.

Kay MMB: Cellular and molecular biology of senescent antigen. In Garratty G, editor: *Immunobiology of transfusion medicine*, New York, 1994, Marcel Dekker, pp 173–198.

Kelly RJ, Ernst LK, Larsen RD, et al: Molecular basis for H blood group deficiency in Bombay (O_h) and para-Bombay individuals, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 91:5843–5847, 1994.

Kelly RJ, Rouquier S, Giorgi D, et al: Sequence and expression of a candidate for the human secretor blood group α (1,2) fucosyltransferase gene *(FUT2)*, *J Biol Chem* 270:4640–4649, 1995.

Khandelwal S, Saxena RK: Assessment of survival of aging erythrocyte in circulation and attendant changes in size and CD147 expression by a novel two step biotinylation method, *Exp Gerontol* 41:855–861, 2006.

Kimberely FC, Sivasankar B, Morgan BP: Alternative roles for CD59, *Mol Immunol* 44:73–81, 2007.

King LC, Adams JH, Xianli J, et al: Fy^a/Fy^b antigen polymorphism in human erythrocyte Duffy antigen affects susceptibility to Plasmodium vivax malaria, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 108:20113–20118, 2011.

Klein HG, Anstee DJ: *Mollison's blood transfusion in clinical medicine*, 11th ed, Oxford, 2006, Blackwell Scientific Publications.

Knepper MA: The aquaporin family of molecular water channels, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 91:6255–6258, 1994.

Knezevic-Maramica I, Kruskall MS: Intravenous immune globulins: An update for clinicians, *Transfusion* 43:1460–1480, 2003.

Koda Y, Soejima M, Liu Y, et al: Molecular basis for secretor type α(1,2)-fucosyltransferase gene deficiency in a Japanese population: A fusion gene generated by unequal crossover responsible for the enzyme deficiency, *Am J Hum Genet* 59:343–350, 1996.

Kondo Y, Ideda K, Tokuda N, et al: TLR4-MD-2 complex is negatively regulated by an endogenous ligand, globotetraosylceramide, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 110:4714–4719, 2013.

Kormoczi GF, Scharberg EA, Gassner C: A novel KEL*1,3 allele with weak Kell antigen expression confirming the cis-modifier effect of KEL3, *Transfusion* 49:733–739, 2009.

Kornstad L, Heisto H: The frequency of formation of Kell antibodies in recipients of Kell-positive blood. In: Proceedings of the 6th Congress of the European Society of Haematology, Copenhagen, Denmark, August 1958, pp 754–758.

Kroviarski Y, El Nemer W, Gane P, et al: Direct interaction between the Lu/B-CAM adhesion glycoproteins and erythroid spectrin, *Br J Haematol* 126:255–264, 2004.

Kundu SK, Evans A, Rizvi J, et al: A new P^k phenotype in the P blood group system, *J Immunol* 7:431–439, 1980.

Kundu SK, Steane SM, Bloom JEC, et al: Abnormal glycolipid composition of erythrocytes with a weak P antigen, *Vox Sang* 35:160–167, 1978.

Lai YJ, Wu WY, Yang CM, et al: A systematic study of single-nucleotide polymorphisms in the *A4GALT1* gene suggests a molecular basis for the P_1/P_2 blood groups, *Transfusion* 54:3222–3231, 2014.

Landsteiner K, Wiener AS: An agglutinable factor in human blood recognized by immune sera for rhesus blood, *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 43:223–224, 1940.

Lapierre Y, Rigal D, Adam J, et al: The gel test: A new way to detect red cell antigen-antibody reactions, *Transfusion* 30:109–113, 1990.

Lee S: Molecular basis of Kell blood group, *Vox Sang* 73:1–11, 1997.

Lerut E, Van Damme B, Noizat-Pirenne F, et al: Duffy and Kidd blood group antigens: Minor histocompatibility antigens involved in renal allograft rejection? *Transfusion* 47:28–40, 2007.

Levine P, Stetson RE: An unusual case of intragroup agglutination, *JAMA* 113:126, 1939.

Li Y, Camp S, Rachinsky TL, et al: The gene structure of mammalian acetylcholinesterase, *J Biol Chem* 266:23083–23090, 1991.

Li J, Iwamoto S, Sugimoto N, et al: Dinucleotide repeat in the 3′ flanking region provides a clue to the molecular evolution of the Duffy gene, *Hum Genet* 99:573–577, 1997.

Li J, Wang JP, Ghiran I, et al: Complement receptor 1 expression on mouse erythrocytes mediates clearance of Streptococcus pneumonia by immune adherence, *Infect Immun* 78:3129–3135, 2010.

Lindstrom K, Breimer ME, Jovall P-A, et al: Non-acid glycosphingolipid expression in plasma of an A_1 Le (a-b+) secretor human individual: Identification of an ALe^b heptaglycosylceramide as major blood group component, *J Biochem* 111:337–345, 1992.

Lowe JB: Carbohydrate-associated blood group antigens: The ABO, H/Se, and Lewis loci. In Garratty G, editor: *Immunobiology of transfusion medicine*, New York, 1994, Marcel Dekker, pp 3–36.

Lublin DM: Review: Cromer and DAF: Role in health and disease, *Immunohematology* 21:39–47, 2005.

Lucien N, Sidoux-Walter F, Olives B, et al: Characterization of the gene encoding the human Kidd blood group/urea transporter protein, *J Biol Chem* 273:12973–12980, 1998.

Lucien N, Sidoux-Walter F, Roudier N, et al: Antigenic and functional properties of the human red blood cell urea transporter hUT-B1, *J Biol Chem* 277:34101–34108, 2002.

Lund N, Olsson ML, Ramkumar S, et al: The human P(k) histo-blood group antigen provides protection against HIV-1 infection, *Blood* 133:4980–4991, 2009.

Mallory D, editor: *Immunohematology methods*, 1st ed, Rockville, Md., 1993, The American National Red Cross.

Mangeney M, Richard Y, Coulaud D, et al: CD77: An antigen of germinal center B cells entering apoptosis, *Eur J Immunol* 21:1131–1140, 1991.

Marsh WL: Anti-i: A cold antibody defining the Ii relationship in human red cells, *Br J Haematol* 7:200–209, 1961.

Masson P, Froment MT, Sorenson RC, et al: Mutation His322Asn in human acetylcholinesterase does not alter electrophoretic and catalytic properties of the erythrocyte enzyme, *Blood* 83:3003–3005, 1994.

Mathai JC, Mori S, Smith BL, et al: Functional analysis of aquaporin-1 deficient red cells, *J Biol Chem* 271:1309–1313, 1996.

Mayer DCG, Jiang L, Achur RN, et al: The glycophorin C N-linked glycan is a critical component of the ligan for the *Plasmodium falciparum* erythrocyte receptor BAEBL, *PNAS* 103:2358–2362, 2006.

Mayer CL, Leibowitz CS, Kurosawa S, et al: Shiga toxins and the pathophysiology of hemolytic uremic syndrome in humans and animals, *Toxins (Basel)* 14:1261–1287, 2012.

Mazda T, Yabe R, NaThalang O, et al: Differences in ABO antibody among blood donors: A comparison between past and present Japanese, Laotian, and Thai populations, *Immunohematology* 23:38–41, 2007.

Medof ME, Lublin DM, Holers VN, et al: Cloning and characterization of cDNAs encoding the complete sequence of decay-accelerating factor of human complement, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 84:2007–2011, 1987.

Mintz PD, Haines AL, Sullivan MF: Incompatible crossmatch following nonreactive antibody detection test: Frequency and cause, *Transfusion* 22:107–110, 1982.

Mollicone R, Reguigne I, Kelly RJ, et al: Molecular basis for Lewis α(1,3/4)-fucosyltransferase gene deficiency *(FUT3)* found in Lewis-negative Indonesian pedigrees, *J Biol Chem* 269:20987–20994, 1994.

Mollison PL: Further observations on the patterns of clearance of incompatible red cells, *Transfusion* 39:347–354, 1989.

Montpetit A, Phillips MS, Mongrain I, et al: High-throughput molecular profiling of blood donors for minor red blood cell and platelet antigens, *Transfusion* 46:841–848, 2006.

Moon C, Preston GM, Griffin CA, et al: The human aquaporin-CHIP gene, *J Biol Chem* 268:15772–15778, 1993.

Morrow AL, Meinzen-Derr J, Huang P, et al: Fucosyltransferase 2 non-secretor and low secretor status predicts severe outcomes in premature infants, *J Pediatr* 158:745–751, 2011.

Moulds JM: The Knops blood group system: a review, *Immunohematology* 26:2–7, 2010.

Mourant AE, Kopec AC, Domaniewska-Sobczak K: *The distribution of the human blood groups and other biochemical polymorphisms*, 2nd ed, Oxford, 1976, Oxford University Press.

Muramatsu T: Basigin: A multifunctional membrane protein with an emerging role in infections by malaria parasites, *Expert Opin Ther Targets* 16:999–1011, 2012.

Ness PM, Shirey RS, Thomas SK, et al: The differentiation of delayed serologic and delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions: Incidence, long-term serologic findings, and clinical significance, *Transfusion* 30:688–693, 1990.

Nester TA, Rumsey DM, Howell CC, et al: Prevention of immunization to D+ red blood cells with red blood cell exchange and intravenous RH immune globulin, *Transfusion* 44:1720–1723, 2004.

Nishara S, Hiraga T, Ikehara Y, et al: Molecular behavior of mutant enzymes in vivo, *Glycobiology* 9:373–382, 1999.

Noizat-Pirenne F, Meunier-Costes N, Costes B, et al: Partial RhC antigen in sickle cell disease patients: Clinical relevance and prevention [Abstract], *Transfusion* 49S:17A, 2009.

Okajima T, Nakamura Y, Uchikawa M, et al: Expression cloning of human globoside synthase cDNAs, *J Biol Chem* 275:40498–40503, 2000.

Olives B, Martial S, Mattei M-G, et al: Molecular characterization of a new urea transporter in the human kidney, *FEBS Lett* 386:156–160, 1996.

Ong J, Walker PS, Schmulbach E, et al: Alloanti-c in a c-positive, JAL-positive patient, *Vox Sang* 96:240–243, 2009.

Pak JE, Arnoux P, Zhou S, et al: X-ray crystal structure of leukocyte type core 2 β1,6-*N*-acetylglucosaminyltransferase: Evidence for a convergence of metal ion-independent glycosyltransferase mechanism, *J Biol Chem* 281:26693–26701, 2006.

Parsons SF, Lee G, Spring FA, et al: Lutheran blood group and its newly characterized mouse homologue specifically bind α5 chain-containing human laminin with high affinity, *Blood* 97:312–320, 2001.

Petz LD: Drug-induced autoimmune hemolytic anemia, *Transfus Med Rev* 8:242–254, 1993.

Pham B-N, Peyrard T, Juszczak G, et al: Alloanti-c (RH4) revealing that the (C)ce^{s} haplotype encodes a partial c antigen, *Transfusion* 49:1329–1334, 2009.

Ponta H, Sherman L, Herrlich PA: CD44: From adhesion molecules to signaling regulators, *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 4:33–45, 2003.

Poole J, Banks J, Bruce LJ, et al: Glycophorin A mutation Ala65→Pro gives rise to a novel pair of MNS alleles ENEP (MNS39) and HAG (MNS41) and altered Wr^{b} expression: Direct evidence for GPA/band 3 interaction necessary for normal Wrb expression, *Transfus Med* 9:167–174, 1999.

Poole J, Tilley L, Warke N, et al: Two missense mutations in the *CD44* gene encode two new antigens of the Indian blood group system, *Transfusion* 47:1306–1311, 2007.

Poole J, Warke N, Hustinx H, et al: A *KEL* gene encoding serine at position 193 of the Kell glycoprotein results in expression of KEL1 antigen, *Transfusion* 46:1879–1885, 2006.

Race RR: The Rh genotypes and Fisher's theory, *Blood* 3:27–42, 1948.

Race RR, Sanger R: *Blood groups in man*, 6th ed, Oxford, 1975, Blackwell Scientific Publications.

Radel DJ, Penz CS, Dietz AB, et al: A combined flow cytometry-based method for fetomaternal hemorrhage and maternal D, *Transfusion* 48:1886–1891, 2008.

Rahuel C, Elouet J-F, Cartron J-P: Post-transcriptional regulation of the cell surface expression of glycophorins A, B, and E, *J Biol Chem* 269:32752–32758, 1994.

Rahuel C, Le Van Kim C, Mattei MG, et al: A unique gene encodes spliceoforms of the B-cell adhesion molecule cell surface glycoprotein of epithelial cancer and of the Lutheran blood group glycoprotein, *Blood* 88:1865–1872, 1996.

Reich D, Nalls MA, Kao WHL, et al: Reduced neutrophil count in people of African descent is due to a regulatory variant in the Duffy antigen receptor for chemokines gene, *PLoS Genet* 5:e1000360, 2009.

Reid ME: The complexities of the Dombrock blood group system revealed, *Transfusion* 45:92S–99S, 2005.

Reid ME: MNS blood group system: A review, *Immunohematology* 25:95–101, 2009.

Reid ME, Hue-Roye K, Huang A, et al: Alleles of the LAN blood group system: Molecular and serologic investigations, *Transfusion* 54:398–404, 2014.

Ridgwell K, Eyers SAC, Mawby W, et al: Studies on the glycoprotein associated with Rh (rhesus) blood group antigen expression in the human red blood cell membrane, *J Biol Chem* 269:6410–6416, 1994.

Rieben R, Buchs JP, Fluckiger E, et al: Antibodies to histo-blood group substances A and B: Agglutination titers, Ig class, and IgG subclasses in healthy persons of different age categories, *Transfusion* 31:607–615, 1991.

Roudier N, Verbavatz J-M, Maurel C, et al: Evidence for the presence of aquaporin-3 in human red blood cells, *J Biol Chem* 273:8407–8412, 1998.

Rourk A, Squires JE: Implications of the Kidd blood group system in renal transplantation, *Immunohematology* 28:91–94, 2012.

Rowley SD, Donato ML, Bhattacharyya P: Red blood cell-incompatible allogeneic hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 46:1167–1185, 2011.

Russo D, Redman C, Lee S: Association of XK and Kell blood group proteins, *J Biol Chem* 273:13950–13956, 1998.

Russo DCW, Lee S, Reid ME, et al: Point mutations causing the McLeod phenotype, *Transfusion* 42:287–293, 2002.

Salama A: Drug-induced immune hemolytic anemia, *Expert Opin Drug Saf* 8:73–79, 2009.

Salomonsson E, Carlsson MC, Osla V, et al: Mutational tuning of galectin-3 specificity and biological function, *J Biol Chem* 285:35079–35091, 2010.

Satoh M, Handa K, Saito S, et al: Disialosyl galactosylgloboside as an adhesion molecule expressed on renal cell carcinoma and its relationship to metastatic potential, *Cancer Res* 56:1932–1938, 1996.

Schwarz K, Iolascon A, Verissimo F, et al: Mutations affecting the secretory COPII coat component SEC23B cause congenital dyserythropoietic anemia type II, *Nat Genet* 41:936–940, 2009.

Seltsam A, Agaylan A, Grueger D, et al: Rapid detection of JMH antibodies with recombinant Sema7A (CD108) protein and the particle gel immunoassay, *Transfusion* 48:1151–1155, 2008.

Seltsam A, Das Gupta C, Bade-Doeding C, et al: A weak blood group A phenotype caused by a translation-initiator mutation in the ABO gene, *Transfusion* 46:434–440, 2006.

Seltsam A, Das Gupta C, Wagner FF, et al: Nondeletional *ABO*O* alleles express weak blood group A phenotypes, *Transfusion* 45:359–365, 2005.

Seltsam A, Grueger D, Blasczyk R, et al: Easy identification of antibodies to high-prevalence Scianna antigens and detection of admixed alloantibodies using soluble recombinant Scianna proteins, *Transfusion* 49:2090–2096, 2009.

Seltsam A, Strigens S, Levene C, et al: The molecular diversity of Sema7A, the semaphorin that carries JMH blood group antigens, *Transfusion* 47:133–146, 2007.

Shirey RS, Edwards RE, Ness PM: The risk of alloimmunization to c (Rh4) in R_1R_1 patients who present with anti-E, *Transfusion* 34:756–758, 1994.

Shirey RS, Mirabella DC, Lumadue JA, et al: Differentiation of anti-D, -C, and -G: Clinical relevance in alloimmunized pregnancies, *Transfusion* 37:493–496, 1997.

Shulman IA: The risk of an overt hemolytic transfusion reaction following the use of an immediate spin crossmatch, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 114:412–414, 1990.

Shulman IA, Nelson JM, Lam HT, et al: Additional limitations of the immediate spin crossmatch to detect ABO incompatibility [Letter], *Am J Clin Pathol* 87:677, 1987.

Singleton BK, Burton NM, Green C, et al: Mutations in *EKLF/KLF1* form the molecular basis of the rare blood group In(Lu) phenotype, *Blood* 112:2081–2088, 2008.

Smith BL, Preston GM, Spring FA, et al: Human red cell aquaporin CHIP: molecular characterization of ABH and Colton blood group antigens, *J Clin Invest* 94:1043–1049, 1994.

Soejima M, Fujihara J, Takeshita H, et al: *Sec1-Fut2-Sec1* hybrid allele generated by interlocus gene conversion, *Transfusion* 48:488–492, 2008.

Solovey A, Lin Y, Browne P, et al: Circulating activated endothelial cells in sickle cell anemia, *N Engl J Med* 337:1584–1590, 1997.

Spitalnik S, Pfaff W, Cowles J, et al: Correlation of humoral immunity to Lewis blood group antigens with renal transplant rejection, *Transplantation* 37:265–268, 1984.

Steelant WF, Kawakami Y, Ito A, et al: Monosialosyl-Gb5 organized with cSrc and FAK in GEM of human breast carcinoma MCF-7 cells defines their invasive properties, *FEBS Lett* 531:83–98, 2002.

Steffensen R, Carlier K, Wiels J, et al: Cloning and expression of the histo-blood group P^{k} UDP-galactose: Galβ1-4Glcβ1-1Cer α1,4 galactosyltransferase, *J Biol Chem* 275:16723–16729, 2000.

St-Louis M, Laurent J, Perreault J, et al: A new Sema7A variant in four Native Americans with anti-JMH, *Transfusion* 49S:118A, 2009.

Storry JR, Joud M, Kronborg Chrisophersen M, et al: Homozygosity for a null allele of *SMIM1* defines the Vel-negative blood group phenotype, *Nat Genet* 45:537–541, 2013.

Storry JR, Reid ME: The Cromer blood group system: A review, *Immunohematology* 18:95–103, 2002.

Swensson L, Rydberg L, Hellberg A, et al: Novel glycolipid variations revealed by monoclonal antibody immunochemical analysis of weak ABO subgroups of A, *Vox Sang* 89:27–38, 2005.

Takada A, Ohmori K, Yoneda T, et al: Contribution of carbohydrate antigens sialyl Lewis A and sialyl Lewis X to adhesion of human cancer cells to vascular endothelium, *Cancer Res* 53:354–361, 1993.

Tanner MJA: Molecular and cellular biology of the erythrocyte anion exchanger (AE1), *Semin Hematol* 30:34–57, 1993.

Tetteh-Quarcoo PB, Schmidt CQ, Tham W-H, et al: Lack of evidence from studies of soluble protein fragments that Dnops blood group polymorphisms in complement receptor type 1 are driven by malaria,

PLoS ONE 7:e34820, 2012. http://dx.doi.org/10.1037/journal.pone.0034820.
Tham W-H, Wilson DW, Lopaticki S, et al: Complement receptor 1 is a host erythrocyte receptor for *Plasmodium falciparum* PfRH4 invasion ligand, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 107:17327–17332, 2010.
Thuresson B, Westman JS, Olsson ML: Identification of a novel *A4GALT1* exon reveals the genetic basis of the P1/P2 histo-blood groups, *Blood* 117:678–687, 2011.
Tian MH, Halverson GR: Characterization of three novel monoclonal anti-Ok^a, *Immunohematology* 25: 174–178, 2009.
Tilley L, Green C, Daniels G: Sequence variation in the 5′ untranslated region of the human *A4GALT1* gene is associated with, but does not define, the P1 blood group-group polymorphism, *Vox Sang* 90:198–203, 2006.
Tilley L, Green C, Poole J, et al: A new blood group system, RHAG: Three antigens resulting from amino acid substitutions in the Rh-associated glycoprotein, *Vox Sang* 98:151–159, 2010.
Toivanen A, Ihanus E, Mattila M, et al: Importance of molecular studies on major blood groups intercellular adhesion molecule-4, a blood group antigen involved in multiple cellular interactions, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1780:456–466, 2008.
Tournamille C, Filipe A, Badaut C, et al: Fine mapping of the Duffy antigen binding site for the *Plasmodium vivax* Duffy-binding protein, *Mol Biochem Parasitol* 144:100–103, 2005.
Twu Y-C, Chen C-P, Hsieh C-Y, et al: I branching formation in erythroid differentiation is regulated by transcription factor C/EBPα, *Blood* 110:4526–4534, 2007.
Van Deenen LLM, de Grier J: Lipids of the red cell membrane. In Surgenor DM, editor: *The red cell membrane*, 2nd ed, New York, 1974, Academic Press, pp 147–156.
Van den Akker ES, Klumper FJ, Brand A, et al: Kell alloimmunization in pregnancy: Associated with fetal thrombocytopenia? *Vox Sang* 95:66–69, 2008.
Vaughan JI, Manning M, Warwick RM, et al: Inhibition of erythroid progenitor cells by anti-Kell antibodies in fetal alloimmune anemia, *N Engl J Med* 338:798–803, 1998.
Vege S, Nickle PA, Shirey R, et al: A novel 245G>C (Al85Gly) change associated with partial Rhe and alloanti-e [Abstract], *Transfusion* 49S:15A, 2009.
Verkman AS: Knock-out models reveal new aquaporin functions. In Beits E, editor: *Aquaporins, handbook of experimental pharmacology*, Berlin, 2009, Springer-Verlag, pp 359–381.
Virella G, Bierer BE: The induction of an immune response: Antigens, lymphocytes, and accessory cells. In Virella G, editor: *Medical immunology*, 5th ed, New York, 2001, Marcel Dekker, pp 51–76.
Vollrath B, Fitzgerald KJ, Leder P: A murine homologue of the Drosophila brainiac gene shows homology to glycosyltransferases and is required for preimplantation development of the mouse, *Mol Cell Biol* 21:5688–5697, 2001.
Wagner T, Bernascher G, Geissler K: Inhibition of megakaryocytopoiesis by Kell-related antibodies [Letter], *N Engl J Med* 343:72, 2000.
Wagner FF, Blasczyk R, Seltsam A: Nondeletional ABO*O alleles frequently cause blood donor typing problems, *Transfusion* 45:1331–1334, 2005.
Wagner FF, Flegel WA: Review: The molecular basis of the Rh blood group phenotypes, *Immunohematology* 20:23–36, 2004.
Wagner FF, Gassner C, Muller TH, et al: Molecular basis of weak D phenotypes, *Blood* 93:385–393, 1999.
Wanaguru M, Liu W, Hahn BH, et al: RH5-Basigin interaction plays a major role in the host tropism of *Plasmodium falciparum*, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 110:20735–20740, 2013.
Wasniowska K, Lisowska E, Halverson GR, et al: The Fy^a, Fy6, and Fy3 epitopes of the Duffy blood group system recognized by new monoclonal antibodies: Identification of a linear Fy3 epitope, *Br J Haematol* 124:118–122, 2004.
Weisbach V, Kohnhauser T, Zimmermann R, et al: Comparison of the performance of microtube column systems and solid-phase systems and the tube low-ionic-strength solution additive indirect antiglobulin test in the detection of red cell alloantibodies, *Transfus Med* 16:276–284, 2006.
West LJ, Platt JL: And justice for all: Consideration of ABO compatibility in allocation of hearts for infant transplantation, *Circulation* 121:1884–1886, 2010.
Westhoff CM, Sipherd BD, Wylie DE, et al: Severe anaphylactic reactions following transfusions of platelets to a patient with anti-Ch, *Transfusion* 32:576–579, 1992.
Westhoff CM, Storry JR, Walker P, et al: A new hybrid *RHCE* gene (CeNR) is responsible for expression of a novel antigen, *Transfusion* 44:1047–1051, 2004.
Weston BW, Nair RP, Larsen RD, et al: Isolation of a novel human α (1,3) fucosyltransferase gene and molecular comparison to the human Lewis blood group α (1,3/4) fucosyltransferase gene, *J Biol Chem* 267:4152–4160, 1992.
Whitley CB, Kramer K: A new explanation for the reproductive woes and midlife decline of Henry VIII, *The Historical Journal* 53:827–848, 2010.
Whorley T, Vege S, Kosanke J, et al: JK alleles associated with altered Kidd antigen expression [Abstract], *Transfusion* 49S:48A, 2009.
Wilder JA, Hewett EK, Ganser ME: Molecular evolution of GYPC: evidence for recent structural innovation and positive selection in humans, *Mol Biol Evol* 26:2679–2687, 2009.
Wright MS, Issitt PD: Anticomplement and the indirect antiglobulin test, *Transfusion* 19:688–694, 1979.
Yamamoto FI: Molecular genetics of the ABO histo-blood group system, *Vox Sang* 69:1–7, 1995.
Yamamoto M, Cid E, Yamamoto F: Molecular basis of the human Forssman glycolipid antigen negativity, *Sci Rep* 2:975, 2012. doi: 10.1038/srep00975.
Yamamoto M, Yamamoto F, Luong TT, et al: Expression profiling of 68 glycosyltransferase genes in 27 different human tissues by the systematic multiplex reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction method revealed clustering of sexually related tissues in hierarchical clustering algorithm analysis, *Electrophoresis* 24:2295–2307, 2003.
Yamaoka Y: Roles of *Helicobacter pylori* BabA in gastroduodenal pathogenesis, *World J Gastroenterol* 14:4265–4272, 2008.
Yang Z, Bergstrom J, Karlsson K-A: Glycoproteins with Galα 1-4Gal are absent from human erythrocyte membranes, indicating that glycolipids are the sole carriers of P blood group activities, *J Biol Chem* 269:14620–14624, 1994.
Yazdanbakhsh K, Rios M, Storry JR, et al: Molecular mechanisms that lead to reduced expression of Duffy antigens, *Transfusion* 40:310–320, 2000.
Yazer MH, Hult AK, Hellberg A, et al: Investigation into A antigen expression on O^2 heterozygous group O-labeled red blood cell units, *Transfusion* 48:1650–1657, 2008.
Yesus YW, Akhter JE: Hemolytic disease of the newborn due to anti-C and anti-G masquerading as anti-D, *Am J Clin Pathol* 84:769–772, 1985.
Yu L-C, Twu Y-C, Cou M-L, et al: The molecular genetics of the human I locus and molecular background explain the partial association of the adult I phenotype with congenital cataracts, *Blood* 101:2081–2092, 2003.
Yu L-C, Yang Y-H, Broadberry RE, et al: Correlation of a missense mutation in the human secretor α 1,2-fucosyltransferase gene with the Lewis (a+b+) phenotype: A potential molecular basis for the weak secretor allele (Se^w), *Biochem J* 312:329–332, 1995.
Zarbock A, Bishop J, Muller H, et al: Chemokine homeostasis vs. chemokine presentation during acute lung injury: The other side of the Duffy antigen receptor for chemokines, *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 298:L462–L471, 2010.
Zelinski T, Coghlan G, Liu X-Q, et al: *ABCG2* null alleles define the Jr(a-) blood group phenotype, *Nat Genet* 44:131–132, 2012.
Zhu X, Rivera A, Golub MS, et al: Changes in red cell ion transport, reduced intratumoral neovascularization, and some mild motor function abnormalities accompany targeted disruption of the mouse Kell gene (Kel), *Am J Hematol* 94:492–498, 2009.

CHAPTER 36

TRANSFUSION MEDICINE

*Matthew Elkins, Robertson Davenport, Paul D. Mintz**

BACKGROUND, 735

BLOOD COLLECTION, 735

BLOOD COMPONENT MANUFACTURE, 737
Red Blood Cells, 737
Plasma, 737
Cryoprecipitated Antihemophilic Factor, 738
Platelet Concentrates, 738
Leukocyte Components, 738
Leukocyte-Reduced Blood Components, 738
Special Components, 738
Pathogen Reduction, 739

SELECTION OF BLOOD COMPONENTS, 739
Red Blood Cells, 739
Platelets, 739

PRETRANSFUSION TESTING, 740

TRANSFUSION ADMINISTRATION, 740
Blood Component Therapy, 741
Massive Transfusion, 744
Neonatal and Pediatric Transfusion, 744

TRANSFUSION REACTIONS, 745
Febrile Nonhemolytic Reactions, 745
Allergic Reactions, 745
Severe Allergic (Anaphylactic) Reactions, 745
Acute Hemolytic Reactions, 746
Delayed Hemolytic Reactions, 746
Bacterial Contamination of Blood Components, 746
Transfusion-Related Acute Lung Injury, 747
Transfusion-Associated Circulatory Overload, 747
Graft-versus-Host Disease, 747
Hypotensive Reactions, 748
Nonimmune Hemolysis, 748
Transfusion-Transmitted Disease, 748

CONCLUSION, 750

SELECTED REFERENCES, 750

KEY POINTS

- Criteria for blood donor eligibility are established by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to minimize risks to both the donor and the transfusion recipient.
- Blood components (red blood cells, platelet concentrates, fresh frozen plasma, cryoprecipitate) are manufactured and stored in a manner to minimize functional loss of desired constituents.
- Leukocyte reduction of blood components reduces alloimmunization to human leukocyte antigens, cytomegalovirus transmission, and febrile reactions. Irradiation of blood components can prevent graft-versus-host disease.
- Accurate identification of the pretransfusion blood sample and the intended recipient is the most important step in preventing acute hemolytic transfusion reactions.
- Restrictive red cell transfusion (hemoglobin target 7 to 9 g/dL) is associated with improved outcomes in some patient populations.
- Platelet transfusion is generally indicated for microvascular bleeding, platelet count <10,000/μL, or platelet count <50,000/μL before an invasive procedure.
- Failure to respond to platelet transfusion may be due to immune causes (human leukocyte antigens or platelet-specific antibodies), nonimmune clinical causes (bleeding, splenomegaly, disseminated intravascular coagulation, medications), or product-specific causes (ABO incompatibility, age of component).
- Plasma transfusion is generally indicated for coagulation factor deficiency, disseminated intravascular coagulation, dilutional coagulopathy, urgent warfarin reversal, and thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura.
- Potentially severe adverse effects of transfusion include hemolytic reactions, allergic reactions, transfusion-related acute lung injury, bacterial contamination, and graft-versus-host disease.
- Current risks of transfusion-transmitted human immunodeficiency virus or hepatitis are very low, but the risk for other transfusion-transmitted diseases (cytomegalovirus, parvovirus B-19) may be significant in some populations.

BACKGROUND

Transfusion medicine is a multidisciplinary specialty encompassing all aspects of blood donation, blood component preparation, blood cell serology, and blood transfusion therapy. The term **blood banking** has largely been superseded by *transfusion medicine* to emphasize the importance of patient care and clinical outcomes.

Operationally, transfusion medicine is divided between blood centers and transfusion services. Blood centers recruit and collect blood from donors and manufacture and distribute blood components. Transfusion services perform pretransfusion compatibility testing, select and issue blood components for patients, and provide medical support for blood transfusion. Most hospital transfusion services do not collect their own blood, but rather rely on regional blood centers.

Blood centers and transfusion services (collectively known as *blood establishments*) are regulated by the FDA. All blood establishments must be registered with the FDA, and blood centers that manufacture blood components must be licensed for distribution in interstate commerce. Criteria for the acceptability of blood donors, performance of pretransfusion testing, manufacture of blood components, donor infectious disease testing, and evaluation and reporting of adverse events associated with transfusion are all defined by the FDA. Blood establishments are subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA. Compliance with federal regulations is an essential aspect of transfusion medicine. In addition, professional organizations such as AABB (formerly known as the American Association of Blood Banks), the College of American Pathologists, and The Joint Commission have put forth accreditation standards for transfusion services and conduct voluntary peer inspections.

BLOOD COLLECTION

Approximately 60% of the adult U.S. population is eligible to donate blood, although only about 4.5% actually do so annually. Approximately 16 million units of whole blood and red blood cells (RBCs) are collected annually in the United States (U.S. Department of Health and Human

*This book chapter reflects the views of the authors and should not be construed to represent the FDA's views or policies.

Services, 2011). Virtually all donors are voluntary and noncompensated. The average blood donor is a college-educated male between 30 and 50 years of age, who is married and has above average income. However, donations among women and minority groups are increasing. Although the utilization of blood components has decreased in recent years, tightening of donor eligibility requirements and decreased donations have resulted in continued challenges in meeting the demand for blood components. Ongoing efforts to recruit additional donors are critical to ensure an adequate blood supply.

Donor criteria are established for the protection of the blood donor and the transfusion recipient. Current U.S. (2015) donor qualification criteria are listed in Table 36-1. Criteria for donor protection include a minimum age of 16 years, a minimum weight of 110 pounds, normal vital signs, a minimum hemoglobin (Hb) concentration, and a specified donation interval. Criteria for the protection of the recipient include history or risk factors for infectious disease transmission (hepatitis, human immunodeficiency virus [HIV], malaria, and others), risk for bacteremia, ingestion of certain medications, and history of malignancy. Blood centers are required to maintain a registry of deferred donors, and each donor must be checked against this registry before any donation is made. Finally, every donation must be tested for infectious disease markers as defined by FDA regulations. Current U.S. (2014) donor testing requirements are indicated in Box 36-1.

Blood must be collected in a manner to minimize the risk for bacterial contamination. The skin at the venipuncture site must be prepared with an antibacterial scrub. Whole blood is collected into sterilized bag sets containing anticoagulant and attached satellite bags to facilitate component manufacture in a closed system. The rate of blood flow must be sufficient to prevent clot formation during phlebotomy. The volume of blood withdrawn is less than 10.5 mL/kg, including samples for testing. Typically, whole blood donations are 450 or 500 mL.

Blood components can also be collected by apheresis. The advantage of apheresis donation is that a greater volume of the desired components may be obtained from a single donation. The most common use of the

TABLE 36-1
Requirements of Allogeneic Donor Qualification

Category	Criteria
Age	At least 16 years or minimum age determined by state law
Whole blood volume collected	Maximum of 10.5 mL/kg
Donation interval	8 weeks after whole blood donation 16 weeks after two-unit red cell collection 4 weeks after infrequent apheresis At least 2 days after plasma, platelet, or leukocyte apheresis
Blood pressure	Systolic pressure between 90 mm Hg and 180 mm Hg; diastolic pressure between 50 mm Hg and 100 mm Hg Regular and between 50 and 100 beats per minute
Pulse	Regular and between 50 and 100 beats per minute
Temperature	≤37.5° C orally
Hemoglobin/hematocrit	Females: ≥12.5 g/dL/38%; males: ≥13.0 g/dL/39%
Drug therapy	Finasteride, isotretinoin—defer 1 month after last dose Dutasteride—defer 6 months after last dose Acitretin—defer 3 years after last dose Etretinate—defer indefinitely Bovine insulin manufactured in the United Kingdom—defer indefinitely Ingestion of medications that irreversibly inhibit platelet function (aspirin) within 36 hours of donation precludes use of donor as sole source of platelets
General medical history	Free of major organ disease, cancer, abnormal bleeding tendency Family history of CJD or recipient of dura mater or human pituitary growth hormone—defer indefinitely
Pregnancy	Defer if pregnant within the past 6 weeks
Recipient of blood transfusion or tissue transplant	Defer for 12 months from time of transfusion/transplant
Vaccinations and immunizations	Recipient of toxoid, synthetic, or killed viral, bacterial, or other vaccine—no deferral Recipient of live, attenuated intranasal flu vaccine—no deferral Recipient of live attenuated viral or bacterial vaccine—2- or 4-week deferral from the time of vaccination Smallpox vaccine—refer to current FDA guidance Other vaccines including unlicensed vaccines—12-month deferral from time of vaccination
Infectious diseases—indefinite deferral	Viral hepatitis after 11th birthday Positive test for hepatitis B surface antigen or HBV NAT Repeat reactive test for anti-HBc on more than one occasion Clinical or laboratory evidence of HCV, HTLV, HIV, or *T. cruzi* infection by current FDA regulations Previous donation associated with hepatitis, HIV, or HTLV transmission History of babesiosis or Chagas' disease Stigma of parenteral drug use Injection of nonprescribed drugs Risk for vCJD according to current FDA guidelines
Infectious diseases—12-month deferral	Mucous membrane exposure to blood Nonsterile skin or needle penetration Sexual contact with an individual with a confirmed positive test for hepatitis B surface antigen Sexual contact with an individual with viral hepatitis Sexual contact with an individual with HIV infection or behavioral risk for HIV infection according to current FDA guidance Incarceration in a correctional institution for longer than 72 consecutive hours History of syphilis or gonorrhea
West Nile virus	Defer according to current FDA guidance
Malaria	Confirmed diagnosis—defer for 3 years after becoming asymptomatic Travel to or residence in an endemic area as defined by the CDC—defer according to FDA guidance

CDC, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; *CJD,* Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease; *FDA,* U.S. Food and Drug Administration; *HBV,* hepatitis B virus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HTLV,* human T cell lymphotropic virus; *NAT,* nucleic acid test; *vCJD,* variant of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease.

BOX 36-1

Current U.S. Donor Infectious Disease Testing

Hepatitis B surface antigen (EIA)
Hepatitis B core antibody (EIA)
Hepatitis C virus antibody (EIA)
HIV-1 and HIV-2 antibodies (EIA)*
HTLV-I and HTLV-II antibodies (EIA)
Trypanosoma cruzi antibodies (EIA)
Serologic test for syphilis
Hepatitis C RNA (nucleic acid test)
HIV RNA (nucleic acid test)
West Nile virus DNA (nucleic acid test)
Hepatitis B DNA (nucleic acid test)

EIA, Enzyme immunoassay; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HTLV,* human T cell lymphotropic virus.
*Combined HIV p24 antigen, HIV-1 antibodies, and HIV-2 antibodies acceptable.

apheresis donation is the collection of platelets (commonly called *single donor platelets*). Plasma may also be collected, typically concurrently with platelets. Apheresis donation allows for the collection of two units of RBCs from suitable donors. Leukocytes may also be collected by apheresis. This is most commonly utilized for the collection of hematopoietic progenitor cells for autologous or allogeneic transplantation. Granulocytes or mononuclear cells may be collected by apheresis for special applications.

Autologous donation is the collection of blood from a patient in advance of scheduled surgery for transfusion during or after the procedure to compensate for expected blood loss. Autologous transfusion prevents the transmission of blood-borne pathogens from allogeneic donors and is desired by some patients. It is not completely free of risk, however, particularly of bacterial contamination. Whether or not autologous transfusion actually decreases the need for allogeneic transfusion or improves patient outcome is controversial. Benefit in reducing allogeneic blood exposure or improving outcome has not been shown in controlled prospective randomized trials. For patients with antibodies to very common RBC antigens, autologous donation may be used to provide compatible blood products if compatible allogeneic components cannot be located. Candidates for autologous donation must not have underlying disease that would put them at risk from this procedure. They must not be significantly anemic, although a lower Hb level of 11.0 g/dL is allowed. They must not be at risk for bacteremia because the most serious adverse consequence of autologous transfusion is bacterial contamination. Patients with heart disease, particularly aortic stenosis, may be unable to tolerate phlebotomy. Pregnancy does not itself constitute a contraindication to autologous donation; however, the value of autologous donation except in certain high-risk situations such as placenta previa is minimal. Autologous donations can occur more frequently than allogeneic donations. Typically, two or three units may be collected several weeks before surgery. Optimally, there should be sufficient time from donation to surgery to allow for recovery of a substantial portion of the collected red cell mass. This may require iron supplementation. Erythropoietin stimulation has been used as an adjunct to autologous donation.

Some patients desire to select donors for themselves (directed or designated donation) rather than receiving blood from the community blood supply. This provides some patients with the perception of greater safety, although no evidence suggests that directed donation reduces the risk for transfusion-transmitted disease. Directed donors must meet all criteria for allogeneic blood donation. In addition, directed donors must be compatible with the intended recipient. In certain situations, directed donation is contraindicated. Donation of any plasma-containing blood component from a mother to her child is particularly problematic because the formation of human leukocyte antigens (HLA) antibodies to fetal antigens is common in pregnancy, and transfusion of such antibodies can precipitate transfusion-related acute lung injury (see later). Transfusions from close relatives should be avoided in recipients of hematopoietic progenitor cell transplants because of the risk for immunization to HLA and other histocompatibility antigens, which may endanger graft survival. There are rare circumstances under which directed donation may be desirable. These include rare blood group compatibility requirements and limitations of donor exposure for patients with long-term expected transfusion requirements such as aplastic anemia. In cases of neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia, collection of maternal platelets may be the best way of providing compatible antigen-negative platelets. In the past, donor-specific transfusion was utilized in kidney transplantation. However, with current immunosuppressive regimens, donor-specific transfusion for prolonging renal graft survival is not used.

Adverse effects may occur with blood donations. Minor reactions, mostly presyncope, occur during 2.5% of whole blood donations (Eder et al, 2009). Major reactions, including loss of consciousness, nerve or arterial injury, allergic reaction, and citrate reaction, occur during about 0.07% of whole blood and 0.05% of apheresis platelet collections. Up to 36% of donors interviewed 3 weeks after donation report some adverse effect, mostly minor, such as arm bruise or soreness (Newman et al, 2003). More serious adverse effects such as vasovagal symptoms were reported in about 5%, and nausea and vomiting in about 1%. Repeat donors are less likely to have reactions than first-time donors. Smaller donors are at greater risk for postdonation syncope. Most syncopal reactions occur shortly after donation. However, delayed reactions can occur, and if the donor is at work or is driving, these can be very serious. Seizures following blood donation have been reported, although it is unlikely that there is a causal relationship (Krumholz et al, 1995). Some highly apprehensive donors hyperventilate, leading to respiratory alkalosis and tetany. This can usually be managed easily by having the donor breathe into a paper bag.

Personnel at a collection site should be prepared to treat donor reactions. Vasovagal syncope can usually be managed easily by placing the donor into a supine position and applying a cold compress to the forehead. It is rare that intravenous fluids are required. A physician should be available to donor site personnel for consultation, and emergency medical support should be available, if necessary. Vasovagal reactions can be minimized by prior hydration of the donor, or by the use of caffeine (Sauer & France, 1999; Newman et al, 2007).

BLOOD COMPONENT MANUFACTURE

Whole blood donations are commonly manufactured into components. This facilitates the treatment of different patients with requirements for RBCs, plasma proteins, or platelets. The goals of component manufacture are to maintain viability and function, and to prevent detrimental changes or contamination of desired constituents.

RED BLOOD CELLS

RBCs are prepared from whole blood by centrifugation and removal of plasma. RBCs prepared in the preservative solution CPDA-1, supplemented with dextrose and adenine to preserve red cell adenosine triphosphate levels, may be stored for up to 35 days at 1° to 6°C. RBCs may also have an additive solution containing glucose and other substrates added during manufacture. Such additive solutions permit a longer storage period (42 days) and have a lower hematocrit (Hct). During storage, red cells undergo senescence changes similar to aging in vivo, such that a portion of transfused red cells are rapidly cleared by the spleen. The maximum allowable storage time for RBCs is defined by the requirement for recovery of 75% of transfused cells 24 hours after transfusion. Leakage of intracellular potassium occurs during red cell storage due to lack of ATP to fuel the potassium pump. The potassium concentration in the supernatant of RBCs can reach levels of 76 mmol/L, which may appear alarmingly high. However, the total amount of potassium in a unit of RBCs at outdate is small compared with daily physiologic requirements, and hyperkalemia following transfusion is rare except in special circumstances (see later). Hypokalemia may also occur secondary to RBC transfusion due to influx of potassium into transfused RBCs. After transfusion, the intracellular ATP levels are restored and the ATPase potassium pump resumes activity. Red cells lose intracellular 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG) during storage, resulting in a shift of the Hb-oxygen dissociation curve to the left. Thus, shortly after transfusion, stored red cells have relatively high oxygen affinity. Normal levels of 2,3-DPG are restored within 24 hours of transfusion. The shift in oxygen association with storage is rarely clinically significant.

PLASMA

Plasma is separated from whole blood and frozen for extended preservation. In the liquid state at refrigerator temperatures, there is loss of labile clotting factors, particularly factor VIII and factor V. Fresh frozen plasma (FFP) is separated from the RBCs and is placed at –18°C within 8 hours of collection. Plasma frozen within 24 hours after phlebotomy (FP24) is manufactured similarly to FFP but may be frozen at any time up to 24 hours after collection. The coagulation factor content of FP24 is

essentially equivalent to FFP (Scott et al, 2009). Frozen plasma may be stored for up to 1 year at –18°C or lower. Before transfusion, both FFP and FP24 are thawed at 37°C and must be transfused within 24 hours. Thawed plasma not used within 24 hours may be relabeled as "thawed plasma." Thawed plasma can be kept at refrigerator temperatures for up to 5 days, with maintenance of adequate levels of factors V and VIII (Downes et al, 2001; Scott et al, 2009).

CRYOPRECIPITATED ANTIHEMOPHILIC FACTOR

Cryoprecipitated antihemophilic factor (cryoprecipitate or cryo) is the cold insoluble portion of plasma remaining after FFP has been thawed at refrigerator temperatures. It contains approximately 50% of the factor VIII and 20% to 40% of the fibrinogen present in the original plasma unit. Cryo also contains von Willebrand factor (vWF) and factor XIII. FDA regulations require that a unit of cryoprecipitate contain at least 80 IU of factor VIII (21CFR640.56), although most blood centers achieve higher levels routinely. A unit of cryoprecipitate contains approximately 250 mg of fibrinogen, but testing for the fibrinogen content is not required. Cryoprecipitated antihemophilic factor was a major advance in the treatment of hemophilia A before the development of safe purified clotting factor concentrates. Currently, cryo is used mainly as a source of fibrinogen.

PLATELET CONCENTRATES

Platelet concentrates (PCs) are prepared from whole blood by centrifugation of platelet-rich plasma and removal of platelet-poor plasma. PCs must contain at least 5.5×10^{10} platelets per unit. They are stored at room temperature (20° to 24°C) because platelets stored at refrigerator temperature (1° to 6°C) have greatly diminished posttransfusion survival. Current FDA regulations allow PCs to be stored for up to 5 days with continuous gentle agitation to encourage gas exchange. At the end of storage, the pH of the PCs must be 6.0 or higher. PCs typically contain a small number of red cells, which are visibly apparent and can cause alloimmunization to red cell antigens. PCs contain 30 to 50 mL of plasma. It is typically necessary to pool five or more PCs to obtain a therapeutic dose for a typical adult patient.

PCs that are pooled using an open system must be transfused within 4 hours. PCs can be pooled and leukocyte reduced at the time of manufacture, using a system that maintains sterility, often referred to as *prepooled platelets*. Because the integrity of the container is not compromised in this process, prepooled platelets can be stored for up to 5 days.

PCs prepared by apheresis (platelets, pheresis, or single-donor platelets) are stored and handled in the same manner as platelet concentrates prepared from whole blood. Each apheresis platelet unit should contain a minimum of 3.0×10^{11} platelets. It is possible to collect two or more platelet units in a single apheresis session from some donors. One apheresis platelet unit will typically provide a therapeutic dose for an adult patient.

LEUKOCYTE COMPONENTS

Granulocytes can be prepared by apheresis. Granulocytes may be stored at room temperature for up to 24 hours. However, after even brief in vitro storage, granulocytes may have reduced ability to circulate and migrate to areas of inflammation (McCullough et al, 1983). It is desirable that they be transfused as soon as possible after collection. Donor stimulation with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) is usually necessary to obtain a sufficient number of granulocytes to be a therapeutic dose for an adult patient (Heuft et al, 2002). Granulocyte units contain a substantial number of RBCs and must be ABO compatible with the recipient.

Mononuclear cells collected by apheresis can be a source of hematopoietic progenitor cells (HPCs) for autologous or allogeneic transplantation. The number of circulating HPCs can be increased by growth factor (G-CSF or granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor [GM-CSF]) stimulation, recovery from chemotherapy, or the chemokine receptor blocker plerixafor (Cashen, 2009; Nakasone et al, 2009). Autologous HPCs for transplantation in patients with lymphoma or other malignancies are typically collected when the bone marrow is recovering from chemotherapy because there are relatively high numbers of circulating stem cells at that time. HPCs may be stored frozen after addition of a cryoprotective agent, such as DMSO, for an extended period of time. After thawing at 37°C, HPCs should be transfused as soon as possible. Mononuclear cells can also be used as a source of lymphocytes for induction of graft-versus-tumor effect, known as *donor lymphocyte infusion* (Gilleece & Dazzi, 2003), or for future manufacturing to produce cellular therapy products.

LEUKOCYTE-REDUCED BLOOD COMPONENTS

Leukocytes present in blood components, particularly RBCs and PCs, may cause adverse effects. Such untoward effects include febrile nonhemolytic transfusion reactions, immunization to leukocyte (particularly HLA) antigens with subsequent refractoriness to platelet transfusions, transmission of leukocyte-associated viruses, and graft-versus-host disease. To minimize most of these adverse impacts, many blood centers and transfusion services have instituted the use of leukocyte-reduced components for all transfusions (universal leukocyte reduction). It must be noted that leukocyte reduction has not been shown to prevent posttransfusion graft-versus-host disease and is not used for this purpose. To be considered leukocyte reduced, blood components must be prepared by a method known to reduce the total number of residual leukocytes to fewer than 5×10^6 per unit for RBCs and fewer than 8.3×10^5 for whole blood–derived PCs (Levitt, 2014).

Leukocyte reduction is typically accomplished by filtration at the time of component manufacture (prestorage leukocyte reduction) or at the time of transfusion (poststorage leukocyte reduction). Both methods are effective for removing leukocytes. However, prestorage leukocyte reduction has the advantage of preventing accumulation of leukocyte-derived biologic response modifiers, particularly cytokines, which may cause adverse reactions (Heddle et al, 1999). In addition, filtration at the time of manufacture allows for better process control. Certain apheresis devices can reliably produce platelet concentrates containing fewer than 1×10^6 leukocytes. Subtle differences have been noted in the distribution of leukocyte subsets between such components and those produced by filtration (Pennington et al, 2001). These differences, however, are unlikely to be clinically significant.

Leukocyte reduction failures may occur during filtration of blood from donors with sickle trait. Such filtration failures may be due to Hb S polymerization in an environment of low oxygen tension and high osmolality (Beard et al, 2004). Leukocyte reduction is not an effective means of preventing graft-versus-host disease (Hayashi et al, 1993). Clearly, granulocytes and hematopoietic progenitor cells cannot be leukocyte reduced.

SPECIAL COMPONENTS

Cryoprecipitate-reduced plasma (cryopoor plasma) is the supernatant remaining from the production of cryoprecipitate. It is relatively deficient in high molecular weight forms of vWF but retains normal levels of the vWF-cleaving metalloprotease ADAMTS 13 (Blackall et al, 2001). For these reasons, cryoprecipitate-reduced plasma is an attractive alternative to FFP for the treatment of patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. However, at present, no definitive evidence indicates that plasma exchange with cryoprecipitate-reduced plasma results in improved patient outcome.

Red blood cells can be stored in the frozen state after addition of a cryoprotective agent, such as glycerol. Frozen RBCs can be stored in mechanical freezers or liquid nitrogen for up to 10 years. Frozen units are thawed rapidly at 37°C. The cryoprotective agent must be removed by progressive addition of washing solutions with decreasing osmolality. Failure to properly deglycerolize frozen RBCs can result in hemolysis. Cryopreservation and deglycerolization of sickle trait red cells by standard methods can result in the formation of a jellylike mass. This can be overcome by using a modified process (Meryman & Hornblower, 1976). After deglycerolization, red cells can be stored for up to 1 day at 1° to 6°C if processed by an open method, or up to 14 days if processed by a closed method. The main use of frozen RBCs is to maintain an inventory of rare antigen-negative units.

RBCs and PCs can be washed to remove plasma proteins and electrolytes. Washing can be accomplished by manual or automated methods. Loss of cells during the washing process can be substantial. In addition, washing of platelets can result in clumping and activation with reduced viability (Pineda et al, 1989). Because this is an open process, washed red cells may be stored for 24 hours at refrigerator temperatures, and washed platelets must be transfused within 4 hours of initiation of washing, when prepared using an open system. The main use of washed components is the prevention of severe allergic reactions to plasma components. Washing is not an effective means of leukocyte reduction.

Transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (TA-GVHD) can be prevented by irradiation of components containing viable lymphocytes (RBCs, PCs, granulocytes, and nonfrozen plasma). This can be accomplished by exposure to γ-rays or x-rays. The minimum dose should be 25 Gy delivered to the center of the blood container and no less than 15 Gy to the periphery. Irradiation causes chromosomal damage, which prevents

replication of transfused lymphocytes in the recipient. However, irradiated cells remain immunogenic. Thus, irradiation is not equivalent to leukocyte reduction. Irradiation also causes damage to red cell membranes with increased potassium leakage and decreased posttransfusion survival (Moroff et al, 1999). Irradiated red cells must have their outdate shortened to no more than 28 days from the date of irradiation. Platelets appear to sustain minimal damage from irradiation, and so their expiration date need not be altered, although the increment in platelet count may be reduced (Sweeney et al, 1994; Slichter et al, 2005). Clearly, hematopoietic progenitor cells must not be irradiated. Irradiation is not sufficient to prevent transmission of viral infections, including cytomegalovirus, or bacterial contamination.

PATHOGEN REDUCTION

Although great progress has been made in reducing the risk for transfusion-transmitted diseases, some risk remains. At present, there are multiple diseases that may be transmitted by transfusion for which there are no FDA-approved screening tests (e.g., babesiosis, dengue, Chikungunya). In addition, new transmissible diseases will continue to emerge as a threat to blood safety. For these reasons, strategies to inactivate contaminating microorganisms (pathogen reduction) are presently under active development. Blood derivatives such as albumin, coagulation factor concentrates, and immunoglobulins are commonly treated by a variety of methods, including heat and solvent-detergent, which are highly effective against viruses, including HIV, hepatitis B virus (HBV), and hepatitis C virus (HCV). The solvent-detergent treatment process disrupts the lipid envelope of viruses such as HIV, HBV, and HCV. However, it is ineffective against nonlipid-enveloped viruses. In addition, it destroys cell membranes and so is not applicable to cellular blood components. Solvent-detergent–treated plasma contains predictable levels of all coagulation factors and is effective in the treatment of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) (Horowitz et al, 1992; Moake et al, 1994). It may, however, contain reduced levels of protein S and has been associated with thrombotic complications (Doyle et al, 2003).

On December 18, 2014, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved the Intercept Blood System (IBS) for platelets, the first pathogen reduction system to be made available in the United States to treat single-donor apheresis platelets (Cerus Corporation, Concord, Calif.). The system is for use by blood establishments that collect and manufacture blood and blood components to prepare pathogen-reduced platelets to reduce the risk for transfusion-transmitted infections. On December 16, 2014, the FDA also approved the IBS for the preparation of plasma to reduce the risk for transfusion-transmitted infections.

Another pathogen reduction technology for platelets and plasma, not available in the United States but marketed elsewhere, is the Mirasol PRT System (Terumo BCT, Lakewood, Colo.) (McClaskey et al, 2009).

Both of these treatments are effective against broad ranges of viruses, bacteria, and protozoans, but not against prions since these pathogens do not contain nucleic acids (Lin et al, 2004; Ruane et al, 2004).

Psoralen compounds used in the IBS intercalate between bases of RNA and DNA and, when exposed to ultraviolet (UV) light, form covalent cross-links that prevent replication. Intercept-treated platelet concentrate has been shown to be safe and effective in a randomized trial (McCullough et al, 2004). The treatment process does result in a statistically significant, and possibly clinically significant, reduction in posttransfusion platelet recovery. Riboflavin, used in the Mirasol PRT system, causes strand cleavage of nucleic acids when activated by UV light. Because these methods require exposure to light, their applicability to RBCs is limited. Both the Intercept and Mirasol processes have been shown to presumably preclude the need for irradiation of blood components to prevent TA-GVHD (Mintz, 2011). Although each of these techniques is promising, questions regarding their role in transfusion practice remain.

SELECTION OF BLOOD COMPONENTS

Blood components must be serologically compatible with the recipient. ABO compatibility is the primary consideration. Transfused red cells must be compatible with recipient antibodies, and transfused plasma must be compatible with recipient red cells. Therefore, whole blood must be of identical ABO type to the recipient. Red blood cells contain a limited amount of plasma and need to be compatible but not necessarily identical to the ABO type of the recipient. Similarly, plasma and platelet concentrates contain few, if any, red cells. ABO-compatible blood component selection is summarized in Table 36-2. Red blood cells must also be negative for clinically significant antigens when transfused to alloimmunized recipients. It is highly desirable to transfuse only Rh-negative red cells to Rh-negative recipients because there is approximately a 30% risk for immunization to Rh(D) (Frohn et al, 2003). This is particularly important for women of childbearing potential because of the risk for hemolytic disease of the newborn in subsequent pregnancies.

TABLE 36-2
ABO Compatibility

	RECIPIENT TYPE			
Donor Type	**O**	**A**	**B**	**AB**
O	R P	R	R	R
A	 P	R P		R
B			R P	R
AB	 P	 P	 P	R P

P, Plasma-containing components (platelets, fresh frozen plasma) are compatible; *R,* red cells are compatible.

Special considerations apply to recipients of ABO-incompatible hematopoietic progenitor cell transplants. During the course of transplantation, such individuals will change their blood type. Transfused red cells should be compatible with both donor and recipient isohemagglutinins, and transfused plasma–containing components should be compatible with both donor and recipient red cells. Thus, the optimal choice for such a patient will depend on current and expected future typing results.

RED BLOOD CELLS

The primary consideration in selection of RBCs is serologic compatibility for the prevention of hemolytic transfusion reactions. Because the posttransfusion survival of red cells is inversely related to length of storage, it is desirable to select fresh (typically less than 10 days old) units in situations in which it is particularly desirable to limit the number of transfusions, such as intrauterine and neonatal transfusion. For large-volume transfusions of pediatric patients (such as exchange transfusion or cardiac surgery), it may be desirable to select Hb S–negative (sickle-negative) units. It is also preferable to select sickle-negative red cells for transfusion to patients with sickle cell disease because the presence of Hb S in donor red cells may complicate monitoring of the effectiveness of transfusion therapy. However, it has never been shown that red cell transfusion from asymptomatic sickle trait donors is deleterious, and in some cases, such as rare blood requirements, the use of a sickle trait donor may be the only option. Heavily transfused patients, particularly those with sickle cell disease, are at risk for alloimmunization and hemolytic transfusion reactions (Vichinsky et al, 1990). Such patients may benefit from prophylactic administration of antigen-matched red cells, particularly Rh and Kell antigens (Ambruso et al, 1987; Castellino et al, 1999).

Exchange transfusion of the neonate with hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN) is a special case. In this situation, antigen-negative red cells and plasma (for oncotic pressure and bilirubin-binding capacity) are needed. Red cells must be compatible with the maternal antibodies, including ABO antibodies. Reconstituted whole blood, prepared by combining RBC and compatible FFP to a desired Hct (typically 50%), is commonly used, although whole blood may be used if available.

PLATELETS

Major ABO compatibility is less of an issue in platelet transfusion than in red cell transfusion. ABO antigens are expressed weakly on platelets. ABO-incompatible platelet transfusions may result in lower posttransfusion survival, although this usually is not clinically significant. Transfusion of isohemagglutinins contained in the plasma of apheresis platelets from donors with high-titer anti-A or anti-B can cause an acute hemolytic reaction (Larsson et al, 2000). Therefore, if non–ABO-identical platelets must be transfused, overriding consideration is typically given to plasma compatibility with the recipient. Some centers will screen apheresis platelets to ensure that high-titer incompatible anti-A or anti-B (e.g., <1:200 reactivity at immediate spin) is not transfused.

Failure to achieve an expected platelet count increment after platelet transfusion on two or more occasions is commonly considered refractoriness. Platelet refractoriness may be due to immune causes (HLA or platelet-specific antibodies), nonimmune clinical causes (bleeding, splenomegaly, disseminated intravascular coagulation [DIC], medications), product-specific causes (ABO incompatibility; older products give lower increments), or the fact that some donors' platelets store poorly. A poor increment following a single platelet transfusion must not be presumed to be due to alloimmunization. The refractoriness is often multifactorial and changes with the patient's underlying condition and therapy. HLA antibodies are the most common cause of immune-mediated platelet refractoriness. HLA class I antigens are expressed on platelets, and class I antibodies are common in patients who have been previously pregnant or transfused with non–leukocyte-reduced blood components. Leukocyte reduction has been shown to effectively prevent both alloimmunization and platelet refractoriness in previously unexposed patients with leukemia (Trial to Reduce Alloimmunization to Platelets Study Group, 1997). Antibodies to platelet-specific antigens are a relatively rare cause of platelet refractoriness. Several effective strategies are known for selection of platelets for the alloimmunized refractory recipient. The use of cross-match–compatible platelets is usually the first line (O'Connell & Schiffer, 1990). If the patient's HLA antibody specificities can be defined, it may be possible to select antigen-negative donors (Petz et al, 2000). Donors matched for HLA class I antigens may be selected. However, owing to constraints of donor availability, finding optimal matches may be very difficult. Even with a large donor base, many "HLA-matched" transfusions are mismatched for at least one antigen (Dahlke & Weiss, 1984).

PRETRANSFUSION TESTING

The most critical step in pretransfusion testing is proper collection and identification of the recipient blood sample. The most common cause of an acute hemolytic transfusion reaction is misidentification of the sample or patient (Sazama, 1990; Linden et al, 2000). Each transfusion service must develop and implement policies and procedures for patient identification and specimen collection. The pretransfusion samples should be labeled at the time of phlebotomy by comparison with the patient's permanent identifier (typically a wristband). The label should contain at least two unique identifiers, such as patient name and hospital registration number. The date of sample collection and the identity of the phlebotomist must also be documented. In emergency situations when the patient's identity is unknown, a unique identifier must be assigned. This identifier must remain with the patient throughout the course of transfusion even if the patient is subsequently identified. Policies and procedures must be in place for management of patients with confidential or alias names.

Samples for pretransfusion testing should be collected no more than 3 days before transfusion, unless it is known that the patient has not been pregnant or transfused within the preceding 3 months. The common practice of patient admission on the same day as elective surgery presents special challenges. In this setting, pretransfusion samples may be collected during a preceding outpatient visit. One option is to require such patients to wear an identification wristband, although many patients find this undesirable. Another alternative is to assign a unique number to the pretransfusion specimen and affix this number to an identification form that the patient must provide on the day of surgery (Butch et al, 1994). Pretransfusion samples must be retained until at least 7 days after each transfusion. Typically, transfusion services retain pretransfusion samples for a fixed time.

Routine pretransfusion recipient testing consists of ABO and Rh(D) typing and screening for unexpected red cell antibodies. If the antibody screen is positive, antibody identification tests should be performed. Results of current testing should be compared with records of the previous testing, if available. Clinically significant red cell antibodies may become undetectable over time but may cause delayed hemolytic reactions owing to an anamnestic response. Therefore, a history of a clinically significant red cell antibody should be honored by providing only antigen-negative red cells for transfusion. Any discrepancy in current testing or disagreement with previous records must be resolved before pretransfusion testing can be concluded.

Some patients present particular challenges in pretransfusion testing. Newborns typically have weak or absent isohemagglutinins. Expected ABO antibodies may not be present until 6 months of age. The occurrence of a weakly expressed Rh(D) antigen may complicate pretransfusion testing. Recently transfused patients may show a mixture of circulating red cells, if they have not received ABO-identical units. Unexpected red cell antibodies can be acquired passively from transfusion of platelet concentrates or immunoglobulins. Some patients may lack expected isohemagglutinins because of disease or immunosuppressive therapy. Recipients of allogeneic HPC transplants may have complex and variable typing results, which necessitate conclusion of a "declared" blood type. In urgent situations when the blood type cannot be concluded, selection of group O red cells and group AB plasma is usually safe. If antibody identification tests cannot be completed, a medical judgment must be made regarding the urgency of transfusion and the risk for incompatibility. It may be desirable to issue red cells lacking antigen specificities that cannot be excluded, if available.

The final step of pretransfusion compatibility testing is the cross-match. The purpose of the cross-match is a final check of ABO compatibility and, to a lesser extent, detection of unidentified antibodies. A major cross-match is performed between the recipient's serum or plasma and donor red cells. A minor cross-match, between recipient red cells and donor or plasma, is usually unnecessary. In the absence of unexpected red cell antibodies, a cross-match can be performed by direct agglutination ("immediate spin") for detection of ABO incompatibility. When unexpected red cell antibodies are present, the cross-match should be performed by antiglobulin technique. For antibodies judged to be clinically significant, antigen-negative cells are selected for cross-match. An alternative for ensurance of ABO compatibility is the so-called *computer cross-match*. This is applicable when at least two determinations of the recipient's ABO group have been made, at least one on a current sample, and there are no unexpected antibodies (Butch & Oberman, 1997). A validated computer system can then ensure that issued blood components are ABO compatible. The presence of red cell autoantibodies presents a special problem. In this setting, it is essential that alloantibodies be excluded. Typically, the cross-match will be positive. Many transfusion services have a policy of issuing "least reactive" units, although the value of this policy has been called into question (Petz, 2003).

In urgent situations, emergency release of blood complements before completion of compatibility testing may be indicated. The goals of emergency release are to provide red cells for oxygen-carrying capacity and plasma for coagulation factor content to a rapidly bleeding patient. ABO compatibility is the first priority (see earlier discussion of component selection). Antibodies to other blood group antigens typically do not cause acute hemolytic reactions and therefore are of lower priority. However, when there is a history of prior antibodies, or when antibody identification tests are partially complete, it may be preferable to select antigen-negative RBCs, if available. Finally, documentation of the medical order for emergency release of blood components should be obtained.

TRANSFUSION ADMINISTRATION

The transfusion service is responsible for developing and implementing policies and procedures for the administration of blood components. A physician's order is required to prepare, dispense, and administer blood components. Optimally, venous access should be established before a blood component is issued. The selection of location and type of access depends on the volume, timing, and expected duration of transfusion therapy. Peripheral access with an 18-gauge needle or catheter is typically sufficient. Smaller catheters may be used; however, high-pressure flow through a small lumen may cause hemolysis (de la Roche & Gauthier, 1993). Central venous access is desirable for high-volume administration or long-term therapy.

Before administration of a transfusion, accurate identification of the component and the intended recipient is essential. This process should include at least two unique recipient identifiers, such as name and registration number, and comparison with a permanent identifier, such as a wristband. Additionally, the unit identifier on the blood container should be checked against the associated documentation (transfusion form or attached tag). The ABO and the Rh type on the unit label must agree with the associated documentation, and compatibility with the patient's recorded blood type should be verified. The expiration time and date of the blood component should be verified as acceptable. Many institutions require that two qualified individuals perform the identity check before transfusion. The physician's order and the patient's consent for transfusion should also be verified. Finally, the blood component unit should be inspected before transfusion for signs of contamination, clot formation, or bacterial growth, including particulates, change in color, gas formation, and clumping of cellular elements.

All blood components must be administered through a filter intended to retain clots and particles, typically 170 to 260 μm pore size. Administration sets should contain a drip chamber, attached compatible intravenous

solution, and a means of controlling the flow rate. During surgery, it is routine practice to add a microaggregate filter through which the blood component flows first. This decreases the metabolic burden placed on the recipient to process aggregates of fibrin and cellular debris that accumulate during storage, and helps to preserve the patency of the intravascular line. Care should be taken to avoid admixture of the blood components with incompatible intravenous solutions. Normal saline is the preferred solution for all transfusions. Calcium-containing solutions should be avoided, as these may precipitate clotting. RBCs should not be administered with 5% dextrose, hypertonic saline, or hypotonic saline, as this may cause hemolysis. Medications should not be added to blood components. Leukocyte reduction filters may be used for transfusion of RBCs or PCs, if the blood component has not already been prestorage leukocyte-reduced, to reduce the incidence of febrile transfusion reactions, HLA alloimmunization, or cytomegalovirus (CMV) transmission. The appropriate filter must be selected for the blood component because clogging or filter failure may occur if improperly used.

It may be desirable to administer refrigerated blood components (RBCs or plasma) through a blood-warming device. Transfusion of cold components faster than 100 mL per minute for 30 minutes may increase the risk for cardiac arrest (Boyan & Howland, 1963). Blood-warming devices should have a visible thermometer and an audible alarm to avoid exceeding temperature limits. Blood components should never be warmed by the use of tap water, conventional microwave ovens, or any other nonapproved warming device.

The desirable rate of administration depends on the patient's blood volume, cardiac status, and hemodynamic state. Except for urgent resuscitation, the transfusion should be started slowly (approximately 2 mL/minute for the first 15 minutes). The patient should be carefully observed for the first 15 minutes of infusion because severe reactions such as hemolysis, anaphylaxis, or sepsis may manifest after a small volume has entered the circulation. Subsequently, the administration rate may be increased. In general, it is desirable to complete a red cell transfusion within 2 hours and a platelet or plasma transfusion within 30 to 60 minutes. Any transfusion should be completed within 4 hours of initiation. Patients at risk for volume overload may require slower administration. If the total administration time exceeds 4 hours, smaller-volume blood components should be provided. When high flow rates are required, such as in some resuscitation or surgical situations, an FDA-approved pressure infusion device may be used. When such devices are used, care must be taken to avoid mechanical hemolysis or air embolism. During transfusion, the patient's vital signs should be checked at regular intervals, and any suspected reaction should prompt interruption of the transfusion and immediate investigation.

BLOOD COMPONENT THERAPY

All transfusion decisions are clinical judgments that should be made while taking into account clinical and laboratory data. There are no absolute indications, and few absolute contraindications, to blood transfusion.

Red Cell Transfusion

Red blood cells provide oxygen-carrying capacity. Red cell transfusion may be used to treat acute or chronic anemia. A patient's ability to tolerate anemia depends on the degree of anemia, physiologic adaptive mechanisms, and cardiac or respiratory disease. Normal physiologic adaptations to anemia include increased cardiac output, redistribution of blood flow, increased oxygen extraction, and increased red cell 2,3-DPG, resulting in rightward shift of the oxygen-Hb dissociation curve. General guidelines for red cell transfusion are summarized in Box 36-2. Symptomatic anemia, regardless of Hb concentration, in a euvolemic patient is an indication for RBC transfusion. Symptoms of anemia include fatigue, tachycardia, tachypnea, dyspnea on exertion, postural hypotension, and impaired mentation. Anemia may precipitate angina in patients with coronary artery disease. Generally, acute blood loss of greater than 15% of a patient's blood volume may be an indication for red cell transfusion. Studies of postsurgical morbidity in patients who refused blood transfusion have indicated that for patients with a preoperative Hb of at least 6 g/dL, without underlying coronary artery disease, and sustaining operative blood loss of less than 2 g/dL of Hb, there is little relationship between mortality and degree of preoperative anemia (Carson et al, 1996). Mortality increases with preoperative Hb levels below 6 g/dL (Spence et al, 1990). However, with a Hb loss of 2 to 4 g/dL, perioperative mortality increases with preoperative Hb levels below 10 g/dL. This risk is magnified by the presence of cardiovascular disease (angina, myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, or peripheral vascular disease). One study of patients undergoing elective operations demonstrated no mortality despite Hb levels as low as 6 g/dL, provided that the blood loss was less than 500 mL (Carson et al, 1988).

BOX 36-2

Red Cell Transfusion Guidelines

Symptomatic anemia in a euvolemic patient
Acute blood loss of >15% of estimated blood volume
Preoperative Hb <9.0 g/dL with expected blood loss >500 mL
Hb <7.0 g/dL in a critically ill patient
Hb <7.0 g/dL in non-exsanguinating upper GI bleeding
Hb <8.0 g/dL in a patient with an acute coronary syndrome
Hb <10.0 g/dL with uremic or thrombocytopenic bleeding
Sickle cell disease
- Acute sequestration: Hb <5.0 g/dL or decrease of 20% from baseline
- Acute chest syndrome: Target Hb = 10 g/dL, HbS fraction <30%
- Stroke prophylaxis: Target HbS fraction <30%
- General anesthesia: Target Hb = 10.0 g/dL, HbS fraction <60%

Hb, Hemoglobin.

The Transfusion Requirements in Critical Care (TRICC) study was the first randomized prospective trial comparing restrictive and liberal transfusion strategies (Hebert et al, 1999). The TRICC trial enrolled 838 critically ill patients with Hb levels <9.0 g/dL. Subjects were randomized to receive liberal or restrictive transfusion regimens. The liberal regimen was a transfusion trigger of 10 g/dL with a target of 10 to 12 g/dL. The restrictive regimen was a transfusion trigger of 7.0 g/dL with a target of 7.0 to 9.0 g/dL. The primary result was no statistically significant difference in 30-day mortality, although a trend favoring lower mortality was noted in the restrictive strategy group (18.7% vs. 23.3%; $p = 0.11$). Cardiac events, primarily pulmonary edema and myocardial infarction, occurred more frequently in the liberal than in the restrictive transfusion group (21.0% vs. 13.2%; $p < 0.001$). Subgroup analysis showed lower mortality in the restrictive strategy group among patients with lower disease severity measured by APACHE II scores (8.7% vs. 16.1%; $p = 0.03$) and among patients younger than 55 years of age (5.77% vs. 13.07%; $p = 0.02$). Thus, it appears that many critically ill adult patients can tolerate Hb levels less than 10 g/dL.

Whether the results of the TRICC trial are generalizable to patients with acute coronary syndromes has been debated. A large retrospective cohort study of patients >65 years of age with acute myocardial infarction has examined the association between admission Hb and 30-day mortality (Wu et al, 2001). This showed a clear relationship between increasing mortality and lower initial Hb. Furthermore, among patients who received transfusion, lower adjusted odds of 30-day mortality were noted when the admission Hct was less than 33%, whereas the odds of death were higher for transfused patients with admission Hct >36% after adjustment for clinical factors, medication, and predictors of transfusion. These results suggested that red cell transfusion may result in lower short-term mortality among older adult patients with acute myocardial infarction who survived at least 2 days, if the Hct on admission is 30% or lower. However, inherent drawbacks of the retrospective study design, such as survivor bias, limit the conclusions that can be drawn from this study. A pilot study by Carson and colleagues (2013) examined the outcome of 110 patients with symptomatic ACS treated using either a liberal (Hb <10) or restrictive transfusion threshold (Hb <8 or symptomatic). The patients in the liberal arm had a nonsignificant trend toward worse outcomes, although the patient populations were not completely matched. A larger trial of similar construction is needed to determine if these findings are generalizable to patients with ACS. An analysis of transfusion effects on 30-day mortality in patients with acute coronary syndromes presented somewhat different results (Rao et al, 2004). This was a reanalysis of three interventional drug trials with the primary outcome measure being 30-day mortality. Ten percent of subjects in the study were transfused. Transfused subjects were more likely to have comorbidities, including a higher Killip class, than nontransfused subjects. Cumulative mortality among transfused subjects was greater than in nontransfused subjects ($p < 0.001$). For subjects with a nadir Hct of 20%, no statistically significant difference in odds of death was observed between transfused and nontransfused individuals.

The Transfusion Trigger Trial for Functional Outcomes in Cardiovascular Patients Undergoing Surgical Hip Fracture Repair (FOCUS) addressed the red cell transfusion trigger in surgical patients with cardiac disease (Carson et al, 2011). The goal of this randomized clinical trial was to determine whether a more aggressive transfusion strategy in patients with cardiovascular disease or cardiovascular disease risk factors

undergoing surgery for repair of hip fracture is associated with improved functional recovery and decreased risk for adverse postoperative outcomes. Subjects were randomly allocated to a 10 g/dL transfusion threshold or a symptomatic strategy. The study population consisted of patients 50 years of age or older who underwent surgical repair of a hip fracture, with Hb concentrations below 10 g/dL within 3 days after surgery, and who had clinical evidence of cardiovascular disease or cardiovascular risk factors. The primary outcome measure was ability to walk 10 feet (or across a room) without human assistance at 60 days after randomization, and the major secondary outcome measure was in-hospital acute coronary syndrome or death within 30 days. The FOCUS trial enrolled more than 2600 subjects, making it the largest and best-powered clinical trial to date in transfusion medicine.

A randomized clinical trial of transfusion strategies in acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding compared the efficacy and safety of a restrictive transfusion strategy (hemoglobin trigger of 7 g/dL) with those of a liberal transfusion strategy (hemoglobin trigger of 9 g/dL) (Villaneuva et al, 2013). The primary outcome measure was overall survival at 42 days. The trial enrolled 921 patients, all of whom also received endoscopy and appropriate interventions to control bleeding. Approximately one third of patients had cirrhosis with portal hypertension. The probability of survival at 6 weeks was higher in the restrictive-strategy group than in the liberal-strategy group (95% vs. 91%). Further bleeding occurred in 10% of the patients in the restrictive-strategy group as compared with 16% of the patients in the liberal-strategy group, and adverse events occurred in 40% as compared with 48%. Improved survival with restrictive transfusion was most notable in patients with cirrhosis and Child-Pugh class A or B disease.

A randomized clinical trial for transfusion strategies in septic shock also compared outcomes of patients assigned to a restrictive transfusion strategy (hemoglobin trigger of 7 g/dL) with those of a liberal transfusion strategy (hemoglobin trigger of 9 g/dL) (Holst et al, 2014). The primary outcome measure was survival at 90 days. The trial enrolled 1005 patients who met criteria for severe septic shock. The results showed that the survival rates at 90 days were equivalent between the two groups (57% in the restrictive group compared to 55% in the liberal group). The results were similar in analyses adjusted for risk factors at baseline and in analyses of the per-protocol populations. The numbers of patients who had serious adverse events, including ischemic events, and who required life support, were similar in the two intervention groups.

Transfusion of the patient with sickle cell disease (SCD) presents unique challenges. The indications for transfusion are to augment oxygen-carrying capacity in severe anemia and to improve microvascular circulation by decreasing the proportion of sickle red cells. Oxygen delivery in SCD represents a balance between oxygen-carrying capacity and blood viscosity. Optimal oxygen delivery is usually achieved when the posttransfusion Hct is about 30% (Schmalzer et al, 1987). No universally accepted laboratory parameters are available for transfusion in SCD. Hb values less than 5 g/dL and an acute drop of 20% from baseline during an acute illness are general indications for red cell transfusion. Acute splenic sequestration can produce sudden hypovolemia and cardiovascular collapse, necessitating prompt transfusion. In this setting, the rise in Hb following transfusion may be greater than expected because of release of sequestered red cells. Careful monitoring is essential to avoid overtransfusion (Powell et al, 1992). Acute chest syndrome may be life threatening. Prompt transfusion may prevent progression to respiratory failure (Mallouh & Asha, 1988). Exchange transfusion with a goal of achieving Hb S level of 30% or less and Hct of 30% is a typical approach. Long-term transfusion therapy can reduce the risk for stroke in SCD. In children, transfusion with the goal of maintaining Hb S levels below 30% can reduce the risk for stroke (Adams et al, 1998). How long a chronic transfusion regimen must be maintained is an open question. Termination, even after several years of therapy, can result in reversion to high risk for stroke (Adams et al, 2004). Iron overload can develop if simple transfusions are performed for chronic management rather than exchange transfusions. Iron chelators are used to slow or prevent iron accumulation and the sequelae of iron overload. Before general anesthesia is administered, transfusion is indicated to achieve an Hb of 10 g/dL and an Hb S level of less than 60% (Vichinsky et al, 1995). In uncomplicated pregnancy, prophylactic red cell transfusion is not beneficial. However, transfusion may be indicated in high-risk pregnancy or with a history of previous fetal loss (Seoud et al, 1994).

In autoimmune hemolytic anemia, transfusion may be indicated if cardiac or neurologic symptoms are present. Most patients with autoimmune hemolytic anemia tolerate transfusion of incompatible red cells, if alloantibodies have been excluded (Salama et al, 1992). Transfused red cells usually are not cleared any more rapidly than the patient's own red cells. It is important to note that a necessary red cell transfusion must never be withheld because of cross-match incompatibility. It is far more dangerous to not give such a transfusion to a patient with autoimmune hemolytic anemia than it is to provide it.

Red cell transfusion may be beneficial in bleeding associated with uremia, although administration of desmopressin is more effective in these patients. An inverse relationship between Hct and bleeding time has been noted in patients with chronic renal failure. Transfusion to an Hb of 10 g/dL may be beneficial in the bleeding uremic patient (Fernandez et al, 1985).

Transfusion of 1 unit of RBCs to an adult patient can usually be expected to raise the Hb by 1 g/dL and the Hct by 3%. However, the expected Hct increase may range from about 2% to 9%, depending on the patient's vascular volume (Gorlin & Cable, 2000).

An area of interest and considerable investigation is the effect of the storage age of RBCs on patient outcomes, since potentially damaging substances accumulate in older blood and the red cells undergo multiple changes that may interfere with oxygen delivery. Observational studies have shown conflicting results to date about the impact of RBC storage time.

In 2012, Wang and colleagues published a meta-analysis of 21 studies that had compared outcomes of using RBCs transfused after longer and shorter storage times (Wang et al, 2012). Three of these studies were randomized controlled trials (RCTs), and 18 were observational studies (6 prospective, 12 retrospective). Older blood was associated with a significantly increased risk for death (odds ratio, 1.16; 95% confidence interval, 1.07 to 1.24).

In contrast, the results of the two RCTs published since this analysis have not demonstrated an adverse effect from the use of older stored RBCs.

The Age of RBCs in Premature Infants (ARIPI) study was the first large RCT examining the effect of red cell storage on clinical outcomes. 377 neonates in 6 Canadian tertiary neonatal intensive care units weighing <1250 g and requiring a RBC transfusion were randomized to receive leukoreduced RBCs ≤7 days or be treated by the standard practice of transfusing dedicated units (Fergusson et al, 2012). The study was performed between May 2006 and June 2011. The average age of the RBCs in the fresh group was 5.1 days, and the average age in the control group was 14.6 days. The primary outcome was a composite of death, intraventricular hemorrhage, necrotizing enterocolitis, bronchopulmonary dysplasia, and retinopathy of prematurity. There was no difference in the two groups with respect to the primary outcome (52.9% vs. 52.7%). The rates for the individual morbidities and mortality were similar. Subgroup analyses did not show any differences in patients receiving fresher or older RBCs. The authors concluded that in this trial the use of fresh RBCs compared with standard blood bank practice did not improve outcomes in premature, very low-birth-weight infants requiring a transfusion.

Steiner and colleagues recently reported the results of an RCT of 1098 evaluable patients undergoing complex/redo cardiac surgery conducted from 2010 to 2014 at 33 U.S. centers (Steiner et al, 2014). Participants ≥12 years old and >40 kg were randomized preoperatively to receive leukocyte-reduced RBCs stored either ≤10 days or ≥21 days for all transfusions through hospital discharge, death, or day 28. The primary endpoint was change in preoperative Multiple Organ Dysfunction Score (ΔMODS) to the highest composite MODS through day 7 (or death/discharge, if earlier), adjusted for baseline MODS. Secondary endpoints included adverse events and day 28 mortality. RBC storage duration was not significantly associated with 7-day ΔMODS, serious adverse events, or 28-day mortality.

At present there is equipoise with respect to whether red blood cell RBC storage age affects patient outcomes. Additional RCTs are being conducted.

Platelet Transfusion

Platelet transfusion is indicated for prevention or treatment of hemorrhage due to thrombocytopenia or platelet dysfunction, as summarized in Box 36-3. The AABB recently published evidence-based guidelines addressing the indications for platelet transfusion (Kaufman et al, 2015). The guidelines recommend prophylactic platelet transfusion to reduce the risk for spontaneous bleeding in hospitalized adult patients with therapy-induced hypoproliferative thrombocytopenia and a platelet count ≤10,000/μL as a "strong recommendation." In addition, the guidelines make the following "weak recommendations":

1. Prophylactic platelet transfusion for patients undergoing elective central venous catheter placement with a platelet count below 20,000/μL.
2. Prophylactic platelet transfusion for patients undergoing elective diagnostic lumbar puncture with a platelet count below 50,000/μL.

BOX 36-3

Platelet Transfusion Guidelines

Thrombocytopenia due to decreased production
Stable patient: platelet count <10,000/μL
Invasive procedure with low risk for bleeding: platelet count <20,000/μL
Bleeding, invasive procedure with high risk for bleeding, or surgery with high risk for bleeding: platelet count <50,000/μL
Retinal or central nervous system (CNS) bleeding or surgery: platelet count <100,000/μL
Microvascular bleeding due to platelet dysfunction

3. Prophylactic platelet transfusion for patients undergoing major elective non-neuraxial surgery with a platelet count below 50,000/μL.
4. Platelet transfusion for CABG patients with perioperative bleeding and thrombocytopenia or suspected platelet dysfunction.

For bleeding patients, or for those undergoing an invasive procedure with high risk for bleeding, including some endoscopic and surgical procedures, the goal of platelet transfusion therapy is to achieve sustained levels above 50,000/μL (Kumar et al, 2015). This usually ensures hemostasis, although it may take longer than normal to achieve. For this reason, for patients experiencing bleeding in critical spaces, such as the retina or central nervous system, a target of 100,000/μL is the standard of practice, as this level typically ensures no abnormal delay in hemostasis. In bleeding associated with platelet dysfunction, or thrombocytopenic bleeding associated with coagulopathy, there is no single transfusion threshold, and therapy must be guided by the patient's clinical condition. Cardiopulmonary bypass may result in a transient acquired platelet dysfunction that may manifest as microvascular bleeding. The platelet count is not usually a useful indicator in such situations. The AABB Guidelines suggest against routine prophylactic platelet transfusion for patients undergoing CABG surgery (Kaufman et al, 2015).

The Prophylactic Platelet Dose (PLADO) trial addressed the optimal prophylactic platelet dose in patients with hypoproliferative thrombocytopenia from stem cell transplantation or chemotherapy (Slichter et al, 2010). Subjects were randomized to one of three arms: a low platelet dose of 1.1×10^{11} platelets/m^2 (half the medium dose), a medium dose of $2.2 \times 10^{11}/m^2$, or a high dose of $4.4 \times 10^{11}/m^2$ (twice the medium dose). The primary outcome measure was the percentage of patients in each dose arm who had at least one episode of World Health Organization (WHO) grade 2 or higher bleeding. The incidence of grade 2 bleeding, higher-grade bleeding, and other adverse events was similar among the three groups. The median number of platelets transfused in the low-dose group was significantly lower than in the other groups, but the number of platelet transfusions was higher. Bleeding events were more common on days when the platelet count was 5000/μL or lower, regardless of treatment assignment. This trial demonstrated that low-dose prophylactic platelet transfusion is safe in hypoproliferative thrombocytopenia, but may not reduce total platelet transfusions.

The platelet transfusion is relatively contraindicated in immune thrombocytopenic purpura. In this setting, posttransfusion platelet survival is extremely brief, and platelet transfusion is indicated only if there is severe hemorrhage. Clearly, transfusion in the setting of intravascular platelet consumption should be undertaken with great caution. Platelet transfusion in heparin-induced thrombocytopenia or thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura may be deleterious, though this risk has not been demonstrated in recent trials (Swisher et al, 2009; Zhou et al, 2015).

Transfusion of one apheresis platelet unit, or an equivalent pool of whole blood–derived platelet concentrates, can typically be expected to raise the platelet count of an adult by 20,000 to 40,000/μL. As a practical matter, it can be estimated that approximately 1 hour posttransfusion, the blood platelet count should increase by 8000 to 10,000/μL for each 1×10^{11} platelets transfused for each square meter of body surface area (Strauss, 1995). However, there are many reasons why this increment may not be achieved. Consumption or bleeding, splenomegaly, platelet antibodies, and drugs are all causes of a poor response to platelet transfusion. Drugs that can cause an inadequate platelet increment include antibiotics, heparin, antiplatelet agents (clopidogrel, tirofiban), quinidine, and antithymocyte globulin, along with many others. In assessing platelet transfusion effectiveness, it is useful to take into account dose and body size by calculating the corrected count increment (CCI; Box 36-4).

A CCI >7500 at 1 hour or a CCI >4500 at 24 hours generally indicates a successful transfusion. Obtaining a platelet count within 1 hour of completing the transfusion may be helpful in distinguishing immune from nonimmune causes of platelet refractoriness. Typically, immune refractoriness will result in an inadequate platelet increment when measured at 1 hour. Typically nonimmune refractoriness will manifest as an adequate CCI at 1 hour but shortened survival time, so that the platelet count by 24 hours may be back to baseline. It must be appreciated that the CCI does not indicate that an adequate platelet count has been achieved. It indicates only the adequacy of a platelet count increment in relation to the number of platelets transfused.

BOX 36-4

Corrected Count Increment

$$CCI = \frac{Platelet\ count\ increment \times BSA}{Number\ of\ platelets\ transfused \times (10^{11})}$$

where *BSA* is the body surface area (m^2)

Example

Pretransfusion platelet count = 8000/μL
Posttransfusion platelet count = 36,000/μL
BSA = 1.5 m^2
Platelet dose = 3.0×10^{11}

$$CCI = \frac{24{,}000 \times 1.5}{3} = 12{,}000$$

BOX 36-5

Plasma Transfusion Guidelines

Coagulation factor deficiency, factor concentrate unavailable, and bleeding or prior to surgery
Dilutional coagulopathy
Hemorrhage in liver disease
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
Coumadin reversal
Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)
Acute trauma resuscitation

Plasma Transfusion

Guidelines for plasma transfusion are summarized in Box 36-5. Plasma may be used to replace any plasma protein deficiency. Purified protein concentrates, such as factor VIII, albumin, or immunoglobulin, are preferable for replacement of specific deficiencies because these are highly purified and standardized, and carry extremely low risk for infectious disease transmission. Plasma is most commonly used either for replacement of coagulation factor deficiencies when no factor concentrate is available or for replacement of multiple factors. Multifactorial deficiencies are common in liver disease, massive bleeding, multiorgan system failure, and warfarin therapy. The degree to which factor deficiency may contribute to bleeding in such cases is controversial. Standard coagulation tests such as prothrombin time (PT) and activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) are commonly used to assess the need for plasma transfusion; however, these tests are poorly predictive of bleeding risk. For nonbleeding patients, there is no change in bleeding risk for patients with a PT or aPTT less than 1.7 times the midpoint of the reference range (which will generally equate to an international normalized ratio [INR] less than 1.7), and thus no benefit will be gained by plasma transfusion. For maximal hemostatic effect, plasma should be transfused immediately before an invasive procedure is performed. For the bleeding patient, plasma transfusion may have to be repeated every 3 to 4 hours to maintain adequate coagulation factor levels. In general, a dose of 10 to 20 mL per kilogram is necessary to achieve a hemostatic effect. Plasma may be used for rapid reversal of warfarin, although 4-factor prothrombin complex concentrate (PCC) provides faster and more complete reversal of coagulopathy (Kinard & Sarode, 2014). Plasma is a source of ADAMTS 13, the vWF protease that is commonly deficient or inhibited in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura.

Cryoprecipitate Transfusion

General guidelines for the transfusion of cryo are summarized in Box 36-6. Cryo can be used for factor VIII or vWF replacement. High purity or recombinant factor concentrates, however, are better alternatives for each. Cryo is a good source of fibrinogen and factor XIII. Most patients with hypofibrinogenemia also have deficiencies of other coagulation factors and

BOX 36-6

Cryoprecipitate Transfusion Guidelines

Factor VIII deficiency, factor concentrate unavailable, and bleeding or prior to surgery
von Willebrand disease, factor concentrate unavailable, and bleeding or prior to surgery
Hypofibrinogenemia (fibrinogen <100 mg/dL) and bleeding or prior to surgery
Factor XIII deficiency and bleeding or prior to surgery
Uremic bleeding (DDAVP preferred)
Topical fibrin sealant (commercial product preferred)

DDAVP, Desmopressin.

are better treated with FFP. Some trauma patients may require additional supplementation of fibrinogen using cryo or fibrinogen concentrate (Rourke et al, 2012). Two trials are currently running to determine the clinical utility of fibrinogen supplementation in trauma (CRYOSTAT in the UK and FiTIC in Australia). Some evidence suggests that cryo may be effective in the treatment of uremic bleeding, possibly by providing high molecular weight forms of the vWF (Triulzi & Blumberg, 1990). Desmopressin (DDAVP) is a preferred therapy for this situation. However, DDAVP may become ineffective after repeated short-term use, at which point cryo transfusion could be initiated. Cryo, when mixed with calcium and thrombin, can also be used to make a topical fibrin sealant for surgery, although more concentrated, virally inactivated commercial products are available. Each unit of cryo can be assumed to contain at least 80 units of factor VIII activity and 250 mg of fibrinogen, although the actual content is variable.

MASSIVE TRANSFUSION

Massive transfusion, usually defined as replacement of one blood volume within 24 hours or ongoing blood loss of 150 mL/minute, necessitates a systematic approach. Large-volume blood loss is often due to trauma but also occurs in gastrointestinal hemorrhage (particularly with chronic liver disease), ruptured aortic aneurysms, obstetric emergencies, and some surgical procedures such as liver transplantation. No single massive transfusion protocol will be optimal for all patients, although establishing an institutional policy is helpful because these cases can become chaotic. Special attention should be paid to patient and sample identification to avoid transfusion errors.

The priorities in transfusion management of massive bleeding are prevention or treatment of hypovolemic shock, maintenance of adequate oxygen-carrying capacity, maintenance of oncotic pressure, correction or prevention of coagulopathy, and avoidance of adverse effects of transfusion. Initial patient evaluation should include pertinent medical history (especially liver, kidney, cardiovascular, and hematologic diseases), history of previous transfusions or pretransfusion testing problems, examination for microvascular bleeding, complete blood count (CBC), and coagulation profile (PT, APTT, fibrinogen, thromboelastography). Note that in hypovolemia, the CBC will underestimate blood loss. A sample for pretransfusion testing should be obtained and processed as soon as possible. Red cell transfusion should be considered if greater than 15% loss of estimated blood volume (about 1000 mL in a typical adult) occurs with ongoing bleeding. RBC transfusions should be fully cross-matched if possible; however, the patient should not suffer adversely for want of serologically compatible RBCs. Transfusion can be started with group O uncrossmatched RBCs. If the patient's Rh type is unknown, Rh(D)-negative RBCs are preferable, especially for females with childbearing potential.

Coagulopathies may occur during massive transfusion as the result of dilution, consumption, and/or dysfunction. During resuscitation with RBCs and crystalloid/colloid fluids, measured factor levels and platelet counts may be higher than would be expected on a purely dilutional basis (Counts et al, 1979; Murray et al, 1995), with considerable variation between patients. Consumptive coagulopathies occur with DIC, burns, brain injury, hyperthermia, and sepsis. These usually manifest by prolonged PT and APTT, lower than expected fibrinogen and platelet counts, and the presence of fibrin degradation products or D-dimers. Platelet or coagulation factor dysfunction can occur in hypothermia, acidosis, liver disease, or renal failure.

No single protocol has been established for plasma or platelet transfusion in massive bleeding. However, in retrospective studies, several protocols have been associated with improved outcomes (Cotton et al, 2009; Dente et al, 2009; Riskin et al, 2009). Such protocols call for transfusion of RBCs, plasma, and platelets in fixed ratios approximating re-constitution of whole blood in the patient. Several retrospective studies in both military and civilian acute trauma resuscitation have suggested that more aggressive plasma transfusion is associated with lower mortality and improved outcomes (Holcomb et al, 2008; Cotton et al, 2009; Zehtabchi & Nishijima, 2009; Zink et al, 2009; Mitra et al, 2010). However, many confounding factors in these studies make causal inference problematic. Lacking randomized clinical trials, it is not possible to say definitively that a protocol-driven approach is superior to individualized clinical judgment.

In a laboratory-driven approach, plasma, platelets, and cryoprecipitate are given based on laboratory-determined need, while RBC and crystalloid are given based on perceived blood loss and hypovolemia. Using traditional laboratory testing, plasma is typically given if PT or APTT is greater than 1.5 times the reference range, and platelets are typically given for counts less than 50,000. It may be prudent to reserve platelet transfusion until after surgical control of major bleeding has been attained because it is likely to be ineffective during rapid blood loss. Cryoprecipitate may be given if the fibrinogen is less than 100 mg/dL, but hypofibrinogenemia is usually accompanied by deficiency of other factors, so plasma is often a better choice. Two trials are currently running to determine the clinical utility of fibrinogen supplementation in trauma (CRYOSTAT in the United Kingdom and FiTIC in Australia). Therapy is best guided by frequent assessment of coagulation parameters. Thromboelastography and thromboelastometry are functional whole-blood clot assay systems that may also be used in massive transfusion to direct administration of plasma, platelets, cryoprecipitate, tranexamic acid, and coagulation factor concentrates (Whiting & DiNardo, 2014).

Complications of massive transfusion include hypothermia, hypocalcemia, and acid-base disorders. Hypothermia can be avoided with the use of high-flow warming devices. When the transfusion rate exceeds about 100 mL/minute, a clinically significant drop in ionized calcium may occur as the result of accumulation of citrate, and calcium supplementation may be indicated. Liver disease, hypotension, and hypothermia may exacerbate hypocalcemia. Monitoring the corrected QT interval is useful. Measurement of total calcium will not accurately indicate the level of ionized calcium. During rapid transfusion of RBCs, a modest decrease in arterial pH may be seen (Vretzakis et al, 2000); metabolic alkalosis is common after massive transfusion because of metabolism of citrate.

BOX 36-7

Guidelines for Neonatal Transfusion

RBC Transfusion

Hct <20% with symptomatic anemia
Hct <30% with supplemental O_2 <35% or mechanical ventilation with MAP <6 cm H_2O
Hct <35% with supplemental O_2 >35% or mechanical ventilation with MAP >6 cm H_2O
Hct <45% with cyanotic congenital heart disease or extracorporeal oxygenation

Plasma Transfusion

Coagulation factor deficiency, factor concentrate unavailable, and bleeding or prior to surgery
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)

Platelet Transfusion

Platelet count <30,000/μL in term infant with platelet production failure
Platelet count <50,000/μL in stable premature infant
Platelet count <100,000/μL in unstable premature infant

Adapted from Roseff SD, Lugan NLC, Manno CS: Guidelines for assessing appropriateness of pediatric transfusion, *Transfusion* 42:1398–1413, 2002.
Hct, Hematocrit; *MAP,* mean arterial pressure.

NEONATAL AND PEDIATRIC TRANSFUSION

Neonates receive RBC transfusions because of anemia of prematurity, HDN, or iatrogenic blood loss. The unique physiology of the neonatal period and the relative fragility of the developing brain vasculature necessitate some differences from the approach to older children or adults. Guidelines for neonatal transfusion are summarized in Box 36-7. RBC transfusion of 15 mL/kg will typically increase the Hb by 2 to 3 g/dL, and platelet transfusion of 10 mL/kg will typically increase the platelet count

by 40,000 to 50,000/μL. For large-volume transfusion, as in exchange transfusion or cardiac surgery, selection of fresh RBCs (typically <10 days old) may be indicated. However, with transfusion of 15 mL/kg, most infants tolerate transfusion of RBCs stored until outdate, without adverse effects (Strauss et al, 1996). For a premature infant with an expected ongoing transfusion requirement, the use of aliquots of a single unit until outdate can significantly reduce donor exposures. Premature and low-birthweight infants are at greater risk for CMV infection and graft-versus-host disease (see later).

Exchange transfusion of the neonate for hyperbilirubinemia is usually indicated if the total bilirubin is greater than 25 mg/dL. Relating the total bilirubin to hours since birth is predictive of kernicterus risk (Bhutani et al, 1999). A two-blood volume exchange is typically used, which can be expected to reduce the total bilirubin by 25% and the fetal red cell mass by about 70%. Whole blood or RBCs reconstituted with compatible plasma to Hct of 45% can be used.

TRANSFUSION REACTIONS

Transfusion reactions are a diverse group of adverse reactions to transfusion that usually present during or shortly after transfusion. The workup and treatment of a transfusion reaction must be predicated on the clinical picture, especially in atypical cases. If a transfusion reaction occurs while a transfusion is in progress, the transfusion should be stopped immediately, and the intravenous line should be kept open with saline. It is important to recognize that the unit a patient is reacting to is not necessarily the one that is being infused. All suspected transfusion reactions should be reported to the blood bank or transfusion service.

FEBRILE NONHEMOLYTIC REACTIONS

A febrile transfusion reaction is defined as a rise in temperature of 1°C or greater, possibly accompanied by chills or rigors. Symptoms usually occur during the transfusion but may be delayed for up to 1 hour after the procedure has been completed. A patient who is hypothermic at the start of a transfusion and then manifests an expected temperature rise to normal, without symptoms, is not having a febrile reaction. In some patients, it may be impossible to distinguish between a febrile transfusion reaction and disease-related fever.

It is important to rule out a hemolytic transfusion reaction or bacterial contamination of the unit. Antipyretics, such as acetaminophen (325 to 500 mg) can be administered. Antipyretics are not necessarily required, as the fever of nonhemolytic transfusion reactions is self-limited and usually resolves within 2 to 3 hours. Diphenhydramine (25 to 50 mg) is commonly administered in this setting but probably has no effect on the course of febrile reactions.

Controversy continues as to whether the transfusion can be restarted after a febrile reaction has been diagnosed and the patient has been treated. The principal argument in favor of restarting the transfusion is the reduction in the number of donor exposures, especially if pooled platelet concentrates are involved (Oberman, 1994). Arguments against restarting the transfusion include the possibility that the patient may have a continued febrile reaction to the unit, and, if a hemolytic reaction or bacterial contamination has not been definitely excluded, a severe reaction may ensue (Widmann, 1994). The decision to restart the transfusion should be driven by the clinical condition of the patient and the results of transfusion reaction testing.

Premedication with antipyretics is often used to prevent febrile reactions, although studies thus far have failed to show prevention of febrile reactions by premedication with acetaminophen and/or diphenhydramine even in patients with prior febrile reactions (Tobian et al, 2007). Febrile reactions have been attributed to the accumulation of pyrogenic cytokines in units during storage (Muylle et al, 1993). These biologic mediators are produced primarily by leukocytes. Filtration at the time of transfusion will not remove pyrogenic cytokines from blood units, although it may remove other cytokines and activated complement components (Snyder et al, 1996). The use of prestorage leukocyte reduction has been shown to reduce the generation of cytokines in stored platelets and red cells and may be more effective than poststorage leukocyte reduction in preventing febrile reactions (Federowicz et al, 1995). Some, but not all, studies have shown a reduction in the incidence of febrile reactions since the introduction of universal leukocyte reduction (Uhlmann et al, 2001; Dzik et al, 2002; Ibojie et al, 2002). It is clear though that leukocyte reduction does not prevent all febrile reactions. Accumulated cytokines can be removed by plasma reduction or the washing of cellular blood components (Heddle et al, 1994). Plasma removal appears to be equivalent to prestorage leukocyte reduction in prevention of febrile reactions (Heddle et al, 2002). Plasma removal will not prevent all febrile reactions. Febrile reactions to platelet transfusion can be reduced by using platelet concentrates less than 4 days old (Kelley et al, 2000).

ALLERGIC REACTIONS

Mild allergic reactions to transfusion are commonplace. They may occur with any type of blood component, including autologous RBCs (Domen & Hoeltge, 2003). Presenting symptoms may include pruritus, urticaria, erythema, and cutaneous flushing. About 10% of allergic reactions have pulmonary signs and symptoms but not cutaneous involvement. Gastrointestinal involvement may include nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and diarrhea.

Should an allergic reaction occur, the transfusion should be discontinued and intravenous access maintained. If there is upper airway involvement, prompt intubation may be necessary. Oxygen should be administered if there is dyspnea or evidence of desaturation. Mild allergic reactions usually will respond to intravenous antihistamines such as diphenhydramine (50 to 100 mg). More severe reactions may require epinephrine. In mild cutaneous reactions, the transfusion usually can be restarted after treatment without recurrence or worsening of the symptoms. In more serious reactions, particularly if there is airway involvement, restarting the transfusion is not advisable.

With rare exceptions (e.g., IgA and haptoglobin deficiencies), the specific antigen to which the patient is reacting cannot usually be identified. Premedication with an antihistamine, such as diphenhydramine, 25 to 50 mg, administered orally or intravenously, has historically been given to prevent mild allergic reactions, although the evidence showing benefit from premedication has not been shown in recent studies (Tobian et al, 2007). Steroids such as hydrocortisone (100 mg) may help patients who manifest repeated allergic reactions, although the efficacy of steroids has not been proven.

Patients who have had repeated or significant allergic reactions may benefit from the concentration of cellular blood components through the removal of most of the plasma or by the washing of red cells and platelets. However, the routine use of washed components for patients with cutaneous allergic reactions is unwarranted.

SEVERE ALLERGIC (ANAPHYLACTIC) REACTIONS

In addition to the signs of typical milder allergic reactions, anaphylactic or anaphylactoid reactions manifest cardiovascular instability, including hypotension, tachycardia, loss of consciousness, cardiac arrhythmia, shock, and cardiac arrest. Respiratory involvement with dyspnea or stridor may be more pronounced than is seen usually in typical allergic reactions.

If an anaphylactic reaction occurs, the transfusion should be discontinued and intravenous access maintained. Supportive care, including intubation, oxygen, intravenous fluids, and placement of the patient in the Trendelenburg position, should be instituted promptly. Epinephrine should be available immediately. For hypotension unresponsive to supportive measures or for significant bronchospasm, subcutaneous epinephrine 0.3 to 0.5 mg (0.3 to 0.5 mL of a 1:1000 solution) can be given. This dose can be repeated every 20 to 30 minutes for up to three doses. Alternatively, 0.5 mg of epinephrine may be given intravenously (5 mL of a 1:10,000 solution) and repeated every 5 to 10 minutes for refractory hypotension.

An antihistamine such as diphenhydramine, 50 to 100 mg, can be given intravenously, particularly when there are cutaneous manifestations such as urticaria. Aminophylline (6 mg/kg loading dose) may be useful when there is bronchospasm. Steroids are probably not effective in the acute situation, but if symptoms persist, a drug such as hydrocortisone (500 mg) may be given.

Patients with IgA deficiency who develop IgE anti-IgA can have anaphylactic reactions (Vyas et al, 1969). Patients who have significant allergic reactions should be evaluated for their quantitative IgA levels. Recent transfusion may elevate serum IgA levels falsely. However, if IgA deficiency has been established, anti-IgA testing should be done, usually by a reference laboratory. IgA-deficient plasma can be obtained from rare donor registries, if necessary. Red cells and platelets can be washed to remove sufficient amounts of IgA to prevent reactions.

Patients with haptoglobin deficiency can have similar anaphylactic transfusion reactions due to IgG or IgE antihaptoglobin (Shimada et al, 2002). Haptoglobin deficiency is rare in North American populations but is more common than IgA deficiency among Japanese patients suffering anaphylactic reactions.

ACUTE HEMOLYTIC REACTIONS

Acute hemolytic transfusion reactions (AHTRs), by definition, present within 24 hours of transfusion. AHTRs are most commonly caused by transfusion of RBC units that are positive for an antigen against which the recipient has formed antibodies. AHTRs may also be seen with transfusion of antibodies (in donor plasma or IVIG) into recipients whose RBCs bear the antigen recognized by those antibodies. Presenting signs include fever and chills, nausea, vomiting, pain, dyspnea, tachycardia, hypotension, bleeding, and hemoglobinuria. Fever is the most sensitive initial sign of an AHTR. Therefore, any increase in temperature of 1°C or greater should result in a transfusion being stopped and a laboratory evaluation initiated. Renal failure is a later complication. Pain during an AHTR has been reported as localizing to the flanks, back, abdomen, chest, head, and infusion site. A subjective feeling of distress is reported sometimes. Unexpected bleeding may be due to DIC. During surgery, hypotension and excessive bleeding may be the only signs of an AHTR. Both may be attributed to other causes; therefore, physicians must be mindful of the possibility of a hemolytic reaction in this circumstance.

Laboratory findings in AHTRs include hemoglobinemia, hemoglobinuria, elevated lactate dehydrogenase, hyperbilirubinemia, and low haptoglobin. The blood urea nitrogen and creatinine will be elevated if renal injury has occurred. The direct antiglobulin test (DAT) may show positive results with a mixed-field pattern if transfused incompatible red cells are present in the circulation. Red cell antibody identification studies may or may not show positive results, depending on the specificity of the antibody involved and the amount of antibody in the serum. ABO incompatibility due to a clerical error is the most common cause of AHTRs.

In the event of an AHTR, the transfusion should be discontinued and intravenous access maintained. The identity of the patient and the unit or units of RBCs should be reconfirmed, and other units of RBCs that have been dispensed for the patient should be located and quarantined. The reaction must be reported to the blood bank promptly. If a misidentification is discovered, another patient (e.g., with a similar name) may also be at risk for receiving incompatible blood.

Treatment of an AHTR must be guided by the clinical response of the patient. Patients who have minimal symptoms may be managed best by careful observation. However, in severe reactions, early vigorous intervention may be lifesaving. It bears repeating that the severity of AHTRs is related directly to the volume of incompatible blood transfused. Thus, early recognition, discontinuation of the transfusion, and prevention of the transfusion of additional incompatible units are the essential first steps of treatment. Initial attention must be paid to cardiovascular support. If hypotension is present, fluid resuscitation and pressor support may be indicated. Care should be taken to avoid fluid overload, however, especially in patients with impaired cardiac or renal function.

Because renal failure is a significant problem in some patients, attention should be given to prevention. Early treatments of hypotension and DIC are the most important interventions to limit the extent of possible renal impairment. Maintenance of urine output with intravenous fluids and diuretics, mannitol or furosemide, early in the course of the reaction has been used successfully. Hydration with normal saline and 5% dextrose (1 : 1 ratio) at a rate of 3000 mL/m^2 per day and administration of sodium bicarbonate to maintain the urine pH above 7.0 have been recommended (Nussbaumer et al, 1995). Infusion of an initial dose of 20% mannitol 100 mL/m^2 given over 30 to 60 minutes followed by 30 mL/m^2 per hour for the next 12 hours has also been recommended (Slavc et al, 1992). However, if oliguria in the face of euvolemia is present, fluid loading may be contraindicated.

Since the load of incompatible red cells in the circulation dictates the severity and course of AHTRs, an exchange transfusion with antigen-negative blood may be considered in severe hemolytic transfusion reactions. The decision to perform an exchange transfusion must be guided by the clinical response of the patient to initial treatments. It is not appropriate to expose a patient to the added risk for infectious disease if the hemolytic process is well tolerated. With ABO incompatibility, however, an exchange transfusion may greatly reduce the chance of morbidity or death.

Further transfusion of red cells should be avoided until the cause of the reaction has been established. Foremost, however, no patient should be allowed to exsanguinate for lack of serologically compatible blood. Group O RBCs lacking other known clinically significant antigens to which the patient currently has an antibody should be obtained, if possible. The results of serologic tests performed up to this point must be considered, and clinical judgment exercised. Although the focus of attention in most AHTRs is on red cells, care should be taken to avoid the transfusion of plasma or platelets that may aggravate hemolysis, especially when ABO incompatibility is a possible cause. Undue haste in both serologic evaluation and decision making must be avoided because human errors are committed most often under pressure.

DELAYED HEMOLYTIC REACTIONS

By definition, delayed hemolytic transfusion reactions (DHTRs) occur at least 24 hours after transfusion of the offending unit. The time from transfusion to diagnosis of a DHTR is variable. Most patients present within the first 2 weeks after receiving the transfusion. However, clinical DHTR may be recognized more than 6 weeks later. Almost all DHTRs are due to an anamnestic response to a red cell antigen to which the patient has previously made an antibody, the concentration of which was too low to detect in pretransfusion testing. Rarely, a DHTR may be due to primary alloimmunization to a red cell antigen. Typically, hemolysis is extravascular, but intravascular hemolysis may occur also. Fortunately, these reactions tend to be much less severe than AHTRs; accordingly, they may be overlooked. Some patients will present with only unexpected anemia. Other clinical signs include fever or chills, jaundice, pain, or dyspnea. Rarely, renal failure may ensue. In patients with sickle cell disease, DHTRs may precipitate a sickle crisis (Mintz & Williams, 1986).

Laboratory findings in DHTRs include anemia, elevated lactate dehydrogenase, hyperbilirubinemia, low haptoglobin, leukocytosis, the presence of a new red cell antibody, and a positive reaction on a DAT. The degree of hyperbilirubinemia will depend on the rate and amount of hemolysis, as well as on liver function. Typically, unconjugated bilirubin levels are elevated during active hemolysis. Depressed haptoglobin levels do not necessarily indicate intravascular hemolysis, as they may be seen with extravascular hemolysis as well.

Many patients tolerate DHTRs well and may need only to be followed carefully. Generally, fluid loading and diuresis are not indicated unless there is active intravascular hemolysis. Complications, such as renal failure or sickle crisis, should be treated as such. If there is a large burden of antigen-positive red cells, an exchange transfusion should be considered. In general, transfusion should be avoided until the causative antibody can be identified and antigen-negative units obtained. However, as with AHTRs, a patient should not be allowed to have significant morbidity from anemia for lack of serologically compatible blood. The selection of red cells for transfusion needs to be based on the results of serologic testing and good communication between the medical director of the blood bank and the patient's physician.

Because extravascular hemolysis is similar to autoimmune hemolytic anemia, in which high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) infusion may be useful, IVIG may be considered in the treatment of DHTRs also. A single dose of IVIG, 400 mg/kg, infused within 24 hours of transfusion, has been used successfully to prevent transfusion reactions in alloimmunized patients for whom compatible blood could not be obtained (Kohan et al, 1994). Five patients so treated had sustained increases in Hct. No transfusion reaction developed in any of the cases.

BACTERIAL CONTAMINATION OF BLOOD COMPONENTS

The clinical presentation of a transfusion reaction caused by bacterially contaminated blood components is usually dramatic. Onset of symptoms in most cases occurs during the transfusion or shortly after it; delayed presentation of more than 1 day has rarely been reported with contaminated platelet transfusions. Fever, chills, hypotension, shock, nausea, and vomiting are the most commonly reported symptoms (Kuehnert et al, 2001; Perez et al, 2001). Dyspnea, pain, and diarrhea also may occur. High fever and hypotension during or shortly after transfusion are particular clues that a contaminated unit may have been transfused. The clinical complications due to bacterial contamination are significant, often resulting in shock, renal failure, DIC, and death. The mortality rate is high and depends on the type of component involved, the identity and amount of the causative organism, and the clinical condition of the patient. Patient factors associated with clinical reactions include thrombocytopenia and pancytopenia. Risk factors for fatality include contamination by gram-negative rods, greater patient age, smaller volume of component transfused, and younger age of stored platelet concentrate. The latter two factors most likely reflect greater numbers of organisms in the component. The organism involved depends on the type and storage of the blood component. RBCs have been found to contain *Acinetobacter*, *Escherichia*, *Staphylococcus*, *Yersinia*, and *Pseudomonas* species. Gram-positive cocci such as *Staphylococcus* and *Streptococcus*, gram-negative rods such as *Acinetobacter*,

Klebsiella, *Salmonella*, *Escherichia*, and *Serratia*, and gram-positive rods such as *Propionibacterium* have been reported in platelet concentrates (Kuehnert et al, 2001; Andreu et al, 2002). Some transfusion services culture for bacteria all platelet concentrates that have caused a febrile transfusion reaction because, if a red cell concentrate from the same donation exists, it can be withdrawn.

Usually, treatment must be initiated before the causative organism has been identified. If a reaction occurs, the transfusion should be discontinued, the unit with its associated tubing should be removed, and any other blood bags that have been recently transfused should be recovered. Supportive care of circulation and respiration should be initiated as required. Antibiotic therapy initially should include broad-spectrum coverage such as a β-lactam and an aminoglycoside until microbiologic stains or cultures indicate the causative organism. From the remaining blood component unit, a sample should be taken for Gram stain and culture. Blood cultures from the transfusion recipient should also be collected at the time of reaction to compare with the results of the unit culture.

AABB standards require that blood banks and transfusion services have methods to detect and limit bacterial contamination of platelets. FDA cleared or approved methods include culture, measurement of oxygen consumption, and rapid qualitative immunoassay (AuBuchon et al, 2002; Ortolano et al, 2003). Measurements of pH or glucose and inspection for "swirling" have been used as indicators of contamination but are not sufficiently sensitive to meet current AABB standards (Wagner & Robinette, 1996). Some studies have found that apheresis platelets have a lower incidence of septic reactions than pooled whole blood–derived platelets (Ness et al, 2001). Because skin flora, if present, enter the collection at venipuncture, diversion of the first 20 mL decreases the risk by 50% (Eder et al, 2009). Most blood centers culture apheresis platelets and prepooled platelets at the time of manufacture. The components then are held for a brief time (typically at least 12 hours) and are released for distribution if the culture is negative. Although this approach is operationally efficient, it is not optimal in that the culture is taken at a time when the bacterial load is low. The residual risk for a septic reaction with culture-negative apheresis platelets is approximately 1:75,000 (Eder et al, 2007). An FDA cleared or approved method may be used for detection of bacterial contamination in platelets closer to the time of issue (Platelet PGD Test, Verax Biomedical Incorporated, Worcester, Mass.; BacTx Rapid Assay System, Immunentics, Boston, Mass.). Although these tests hold promise for potentially reducing the risk for septic reactions, their use as a supplement to culture screening has not shown any significant increase in identification of contaminated platelet units (Dunbar et al, 2013). Pathogen reduction technology appears to significantly reduce, if not eliminate, bacterial contamination. As noted previously, the IBS is now available in the United States for platelets (as well as for plasma).

TRANSFUSION-RELATED ACUTE LUNG INJURY

Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI) usually presents during or within hours of transfusion. Its symptoms include dyspnea, hypoxemia, tachycardia, fever, hypotension, and cyanosis (Kleinman et al, 2004). Fever and hypotension, when present, are usually moderate and respond quickly to antipyretics and fluids. Characteristically, there is a lack of abnormal breath sounds. A chest x-ray usually shows pulmonary edema, most commonly in a generalized pattern rather than only along the major vasculature, as seen in cardiac failure. By definition, there are no signs of cardiac failure. Patients with hematologic malignancy or cardiac disease appear to be at higher risk for TRALI (Silliman et al, 2003). This may reflect the fact that these patient groups receive the majority of platelet transfusions. Reported mortality is approximately 20%, depending on the severity of the lung injury and the underlying clinical status of the patient. A wide range of severity is seen in this transfusion reaction; milder forms may not be readily recognized.

The differential diagnosis includes circulatory overload, bacterial contamination, allergic reactions, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), pulmonary embolism, and pulmonary hemorrhage. The diagnosis is established by findings of noncardiogenic pulmonary edema. Pulmonary artery wedge pressure is not elevated. An increase in brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) from pre- to post-transfusion is found in circulatory overload, but not in TRALI (Zhou et al, 2005; Tobian et al, 2008). Characteristically, TRALI resolves within 48 to 96 hours from outset (Popovsky et al, 1992). Failure of the patient to improve substantially after this time should call the diagnosis into question. Although chest x-ray findings may persist beyond 7 days, no permanent pulmonary sequelae are evident, unlike with ARDS. A decrease in leukocyte or platelet count may be a useful clue in TRALI caused by transfusion of HLA class I antibodies (Cooling et al, 2002).

The treatment of TRALI is supportive. If a transfusion is in progress, it should be discontinued, and blood bags from recently transfused units should be recovered. The blood bank should be consulted regarding the evaluation of TRALI. Usually, oxygen is indicated. Severely affected patients may require mechanical ventilation. Corticosteroids appear to be of little, if any, value. Diuresis is not indicated in the absence of signs of fluid overload.

TRALI has been attributed to the presence of antibodies in the plasma of the transfused unit that are directed against HLA or granulocyte antigens present on recipient leukocytes (Kopko et al, 2002). Plasma from multiparous female donors may carry a greater risk for TRALI (Palfi et al, 2001). It also has been attributed to the presence in the unit of lipid inflammatory mediators that activate already primed recipient neutrophils (from surgery, trauma, or inflammation) to cause capillary injury and leakage (Silliman et al, 2003).

TRANSFUSION-ASSOCIATED CIRCULATORY OVERLOAD

Circulatory overload is an all-too-common and preventable transfusion reaction. It presents as congestive heart failure during or shortly after transfusion. Signs and symptoms can include dyspnea, orthopnea, cyanosis, tachycardia, elevated blood pressure, pulmonary edema, jugular venous distention, pedal edema, and headache. The differential diagnosis includes TRALI, allergic reactions, and causes of congestive failure not related to transfusion, such as valvular heart disease. Clearly, patients with preexisting heart disease are at risk for circulatory overload with transfusion. The diagnosis of circulatory overload on clinical and radiologic examination may be difficult. Elevation of brain natriuretic peptide can be helpful in making the diagnosis (Zhou et al, 2005; Tobian et al, 2008).

Volume overload should be anticipated in at-risk patients and prevented readily. Blood should be transfused slowly. Although a transfusion usually should be completed within 4 hours, the duration may be extended if medically indicated. If longer than 6 hours is required, however, alternative strategies should be considered. Small volumes can be transfused with adequate time between transfusions to allow for diuresis. To avoid additional donor exposures, a unit can be split using sterile technique and a portion retained in the blood bank for later transfusion. Units can also be concentrated by plasma removal. A diuretic can be administered before or during the transfusion.

GRAFT-VERSUS-HOST DISEASE

Transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (TA-GVHD) can occur when viable donor T cells proliferate and are not recognized by the recipient's immune system as foreign, but recognize and reject the host as foreign. Patients with marked cellular immunodeficiencies are at risk for TA-GVHD (Box 36-8). These include congenital cellular immunodeficiencies (DiGeorge syndrome, severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome), immaturity of the immune system (intrauterine transfusions, very-low-birthweight infants), disease-associated immunodeficiencies (Hodgkin lymphoma), and therapy-associated cellular immunodeficiencies (hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation, fludarabine treatment). Humoral immunodeficiencies, such as common variable immunodeficiency (CVID), are not a risk factor for GVHD. HIV infection, although it may cause marked T cell dysfunction, does not increase the risk for TA-GVHD. Common immunosuppressive regimens for solid organ transplantation and typical chemotherapy regimens for solid tumors do not increase the risk for TA-GVHD. However, TA-GVHD has been reported with highly aggressive chemotherapy for neuroblastoma and some other tumors. Patients with normal immunity may be at risk for TA-GVHD if the donor is homozygous for an HLA haplotype and the recipient is heterozygous but shares one haplotype. In this case, recipient lymphocytes are unable to recognize transfused lymphocytes as foreign, but transfused cells see recipient cells as foreign (Fig. 36-1). This is most likely to occur with donations from close (first- or second-degree) relatives but may also occur owing to chance, particularly in populations that are relatively homogeneous (Aoun et al, 2003).

TA-GVHD typically manifests 2 to 50 days after transfusion. Characteristic findings include rash, diarrhea, fever, liver dysfunction, and pancytopenia. Mortality is greater than 90%, with most patients dying of infection. In contrast to the expected GVHD of allogeneic HPC transplantation, the bone marrow in TA-GVHD is of recipient type and is a target organ. Aggressive immunosuppressive treatments have been tried but with rare exceptions have been unsuccessful. Thus, preventive measures are of paramount importance.

BOX 36-8

Indications for Irradiation of Blood Components for Prevention of TA-GVHD

Absolute Indications

Congenital cellular immunodeficiency
Hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation
Hodgkin lymphoma
Granulocyte transfusions
Intrauterine transfusions (IUTs)
Transfusion to neonates who have received IUT
Transfusions from biologic relatives
Chemotherapy with purine analogs (fludarabine)

Probable Indications

Low-birthweight infants (<1200 g)
Hematologic malignancies other than Hodgkin lymphoma
HLA-matched platelet concentrates
High-dose chemotherapy, radiation therapy, and/or aggressive immunotherapy

Controversial Indications

Large-volume or exchange transfusion of infants who did not receive IUT
Aplastic anemia
Absolute lymphopenia (absolute lymphocyte count <500/mL)

Irradiation not Indicated

Solid organ transplantation
HIV infection
Hemophilia
Small-volume transfusions of term infants who did not receive IUT
Older adult patients
Typical dose immunosuppressive therapy (other than purine analogs)
Immunocompetent surgical patients
Pregnancy
Red cell membrane, metabolic, or hemoglobin disorders (e.g., thalassemia, SCD)

Adapted from Gorlin JB, Mintz PD: Transfusion-associated graft-vs-host disease. In Mintz PD, editor: *Transfusion therapy: clinical principles and practice*, ed 3, Bethesda, Md., 2011, AABB Press, p 650.
HIV, Human immunodeficiency virus; *HLA,* human leukocyte antigen; *SCD,* sickle cell disease; *TA-GVHD,* transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease.

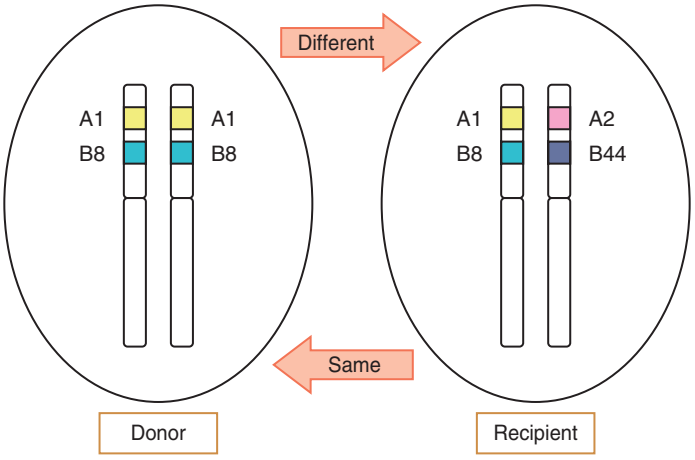


Figure 36-1 Mechanism of TA-GVHD in immunocompetent patients. The donor is homozygous at the HLA class I locus. The recipient is heterozygous and shares one haplotype with the donor. Engrafted donor T cells recognize the recipient as foreign, but the recipient's T cells do not identify donor T cells as foreign. *HLA,* Human leukocyte antigens; *TA-GVHD,* transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease.

The minimum number of viable transfused T cells necessary to cause TA-GVHD has not been established, but it is clear that current leukocyte reduction methods are not sufficient (Hayashi et al, 1993). Exposure to ionizing radiation (γ-rays or x-rays) can cause chromosomal damage and prevent replication of transfused leukocytes. Current FDA guidelines suggest a midplane dose of 25 Gy, with a minimum dose of 15 Gy to any point of the blood container (see the Special Components section earlier in the chapter). It is possible that pathogen reduction technology based on nucleic acid modification may be effective in preventing TA-GVHD (Mintz, 2011), but this remains to be established with certainty. Many centers using these technologies do not irradiate platelets for TA-GVHD prevention.

HYPOTENSIVE REACTIONS

Transfusion-associated hypotension is defined as hypotension that occurs during transfusion in the absence of signs or symptoms of other transfusion reactions, such as fever, chills, dyspnea, urticaria, or flushing. The degree of hypotension required for the diagnosis is controversial but could be defined reasonably as a drop of at least 10 mm Hg in systolic or diastolic arterial blood pressure from the pretransfusion baseline. However, if the immediate pretransfusion blood pressure is elevated from the patient's typical blood pressure and the arterial pressure does not fall below the patient's usual blood pressure, this should not be considered a hypotensive reaction. Hypotension begins during the transfusion and resolves quickly when the transfusion is discontinued. If hypotension persists beyond 30 minutes after discontinuation of the transfusion, another diagnosis should be strongly considered. Hypotensive reactions have been associated with red cell and platelet transfusions. Some reactions have been associated with the use of bedside leukocyte reduction filters (Fried et al, 1996; Abe et al, 1997).

If hypotension occurs, the transfusion should be discontinued and intravenous access maintained. The patient should be positioned with head down and feet elevated (Trendelenburg position), and isotonic fluids should be administered. Pressor support is indicated only if the hypotension is severe and refractory to intravenous fluids.

The cause of transfusion-associated hypotension has not been established definitively. However, the condition is most likely due to the release of bradykinin through activation of the contact pathway of coagulation. Some reactions have been associated with angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE)–inhibitor drugs in the recipient and/or the use of leukocyte-reduction filters. ACE is the major enzyme that breaks down bradykinin in the circulation. Some bedside filters, particularly those with a net-negative surface charge, appear to cause activation of kallikrein and cleavage of high molecular weight kininogen, which results in the release of bradykinin (Davenport & Penezina, 1997; Shiba et al, 1997; Mair & Leparc, 1998). However, there is variability because not all such filtered units show activation.

NONIMMUNE HEMOLYSIS

Lysis of red cells can occur as a result of storage, handling, or transfusion conditions. Hyperosmotic or hypo-osmotic fluids mixed with red cells can result in significant lysis. Patients who receive lysed red cells may tolerate them remarkably well. However, transient hemodynamic, pulmonary, and renal impairment may occur, and death due to transfusion of lysed red cells has been reported (Sazama, 1990). The transfusion of autologous blood from a patient with sickle Hb can result in hemolysis and death (DeChristopher & Orlina, 1990). The clinical signs are usually hemoglobinemia and hemoglobinuria. Hyperkalemia may occur, particularly in patients with renal failure. Fever also may occur. Finding lysis of RBCs in the transfused unit and excluding other causes, such as hemolytic transfusion reactions, establishes the diagnosis. All RBC units will show a slight degree in hemolysis with prolonged storage, but this will not result in clinical signs after transfusion. The principal reported complications of nonimmune hemolysis are renal failure and cardiac arrhythmia due to hyperkalemia. Hemolytic transfusion reactions can rarely occur when no red cell antibody is identifiable (Davey et al, 1980). Differentiation of this condition from nonimmune hemolysis may be impossible without careful investigation of the transfusion circumstances.

Should nonimmune hemolysis occur, the transfusion should be discontinued and intravenous access maintained. The blood bag, together with attached tubing and intravenous fluids, should be saved for further investigation. A hemolytic transfusion reaction needs to be ruled out. The serum potassium level should be checked and an electrocardiogram obtained to assess hyperkalemia. Care is supportive. Urine output should be maintained with hydration unless there is a contraindication such as renal failure.

TRANSFUSION-TRANSMITTED DISEASE

Improvements in donor screening and testing have resulted in dramatic reductions in transfusion-transmitted disease risk over the past 2 decades. For example, the risk for transmitting HIV by blood transfusion in the

TABLE 36-3
Approximate Current Per-Unit Risks for Infectious Disease Transmission

HIV	1:1,860,000
HBV	1:765,000 to 1:1,006,000
HCV	1:1,660,000
HTLV-I/II	1:3,390,000
West Nile virus	≈1:7,000,000

Data from Stramer SL, Notari EP, Krysztof DE, et al: Hepatitis B virus testing by minipool nucleic acid testing: does it improve blood safety?, *Transfusion* 53:2449–2458, 2013; Busch MP, Glynn SA, Stramer SL, et al: A new strategy for estimating risks of transfusion-transmitted viral infections based on rates of detection of recently infected donors, *Transfusion* 45:254–264, 2005; and Zou S, Stramer SL, Dodd RY: Donor testing and risk: current prevalence, incidence, and residual risk of transfusion-transmissible agents in US allogeneic donations, *Transfus Med Rev* 26:119–128, 2012.

HBV, Hepatitis B virus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HTLV,* human T cell lymphotropic virus.

United States has been reduced from approximately 1 in 100 in certain urban areas in the early 1980s to approximately 1 in 1,860,000 throughout the United States at present (Zou et al, 2012). It is virtually impossible to accurately measure current risk for hepatitis and HIV transmission by epidemiologic methods. Risk estimates for HIV, HBV, and HCV are now based on mathematical models that take into account the probability of marker-negative window-phase donations, viral strains not reliably detected by current assays, persistent antibody-negative carriers, and testing errors (Dodd et al, 2002). Current (2012) risk estimates are summarized in Table 36-3.

Hepatitis

Historically, HCV has accounted for the majority of cases of posttransfusion hepatitis (PTH). Approximately 10% of chronic HCV is attributable to blood transfusion (Alter et al, 1999). PTH is asymptomatic in the majority of cases. Three patterns of transaminase elevation have been observed: monophasic, polyphasic, and plateau (Pastore et al, 1985). Approximately 75% to 85% of individuals have persistent HCV infection, and about 50% of these have evidence of chronic hepatitis. As many as 10% of patients with HCV PTH eventually manifest clinical liver disease (Seeff et al, 1992). Acute PTH due to HBV is typically more severe, with 25% to 30% of individuals having jaundice, and with an incubation time of 40 to 60 days (Walsh et al, 1970; Seeff et al, 1975). Less than 10% of infected individuals progress to chronic hepatitis. If acquired before 5 years of age, acute HBV infection is usually less severe, but the risk for chronic hepatitis is much greater. Hepatitis D virus (HDV) requires coinfection with HBV for replication. If acquired simultaneously with HBV, HDV can cause severe hepatitis and liver failure. If acquired during chronic HBV infection (superinfection), HDV significantly increases the risk for severe chronic liver disease. Transfusion-transmitted HDV is rare, and screening methods for HBV are also effective against HDV. Hepatitis A virus and hepatitis E virus have relatively short periods of viremia and do not progress to a chronic carrier state. Transmission of these viruses by transfusion is rare but has occurred (Sherertz et al, 1984; Matsubayashi et al, 2004). Hepatitis G virus (GBV-C) has a prevalence rate of about 1% in asymptomatic blood donors (Roth et al, 1997). Although it is clearly transmissible by transfusion, no causal relationship between GBV-C infection and hepatitis or chronic liver disease has been established (Alter et al, 1997).

Human Immunodeficiency Virus

The clinical manifestations of transfusion-transmitted HIV are similar to those of HIV infection acquired through other routes. An acute viral syndrome occurs in about 60% of cases. Untreated, asymptomatic infection persists for about 10 years before acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)-defining illness occurs, although progression tends to be more rapid in older individuals (Blaxhult et al, 1990). The time to AIDS progression for transfusion recipients may be shorter than that for the implicated donor, but this may reflect the effects of age and other cofactors (Busch et al, 1994). Until recently, Group O viral isolates were not reliably detected by enzyme immunoassay (EIA) tests. Currently, the prevalence of group O HIV in the United States is low, but it is endemic in some parts of western Africa, and transfusion-transmission by emigrants from such areas has occurred (Pau et al, 1996). Therefore, residence in or emigration from such areas has been a reason for permanent donor deferral. However, a combined immunoassay for simultaneous detection of HIV p24 antigen and HIV-1 and HIV-2 antibodies that detects group O HIV has been FDA approved for donor testing (Sickinger et al, 2008). Blood centers that have implemented this test have now discontinued geographic deferral for HIV group O.

Human T Cell Lymphotropic Virus

Human T cell lymphotropic virus type I (HTLV-I) is causally associated with adult T cell lymphoma/leukemia and HTLV-associated myelopathy (HAM) (Hall et al, 1996; Manns et al, 1999). Most carriers are asymptomatic. ATL or HAM develops in a small minority of cases after a latent period of many years. HTLV-I is rare in the United States. HTLV-II is prevalent in intravenous drug users in the United States and is also associated with HAM (Murphy et al, 1997).

Cytomegalovirus

CMV is common in the general population. In immunologically competent individuals, it causes minor symptoms but becomes latent in virtually all cases (Larsson et al, 1998). Approximately 50% of blood donors are CMV seropositive, although the estimated risk for transmission by a seropositive transfusion is about 1% (Preiksaitis et al, 1988). In patients with cellular immunodeficiency, CMV can cause pneumonitis, hepatitis, retinitis, and multisystem organ failure. CMV transmission can be minimized by the use of seronegative blood components, although many studies have shown a low rate of CMV infection in such patients. Whether this is due to failure to detect potentially infectious donors or whether viral transmission occurred by other routes is unclear. Several studies, including a prospective randomized trial, have shown that leukocyte-reduced blood components are as effective as seronegative components in reducing the risk for CMV transmission (Bowden et al, 1995). Due to the prevalence of leukoreduction and low risk for CMV transmission causing disease, most blood collection centers do not screen all units for CMV antibodies.

Parvovirus B-19

Parvovirus B-19 is also common in the general population. The incidence of viremia among blood donors is variable, with episodic peaks, but it averages around 1:5000 (Hitzler & Runkel, 2002). In most individuals, parvovirus B-19 causes a mild self-limited febrile illness. However, it is trophic for erythrocyte precursors in the bone marrow and can cause aplasia, particularly in the setting of accelerated erythropoiesis. Transfusion-transmitted parvovirus infection has been implicated in causing chronic anemia after bone marrow transplantation and in thalassemia (Zanella et al, 1995; Cohen et al, 1997). Due to the prevalence of seropositivity in the general public, donor centers do not regularly screen for parvovirus antibodies.

West Nile Virus

West Nile virus (WNV) arrived in the United States in 1999. From its initial outbreak in New York, it has spread across the country. Birds are the natural reservoir, with mosquitoes serving as the vector of transmission. Humans are an accidental host, with infection occurring during times of mosquito activity. Most acute WNV infections are asymptomatic, with a febrile illness occurring in about 1 in 5 infections and neuroinvasive disease in about 1 in 150 infections (Petersen & Marfin, 2002). In 2002, 23 confirmed cases of transfusion-transmitted WNV were reported by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (Pealer et al, 2003). In areas of peak WNV activity in 2002, the estimated rate of viremia among blood donors was 1.5 in 1000 (Biggerstaff & Petersen, 2002). Donor screening for WNV by nucleic acid testing (NAT) was implemented in July 2003 in North America. Subsequently, rare cases of WNV transmission by blood transfusion have been reported, most likely due to the low viral copy number that escaped detection (Macedo de Oliveira & Beecham, 2004).

Malaria

About 1300 cases of malaria are reported annually in the United States. Transfusion-transmission of malaria still occurs rarely (1 to 2 cases annually). Implicated donors usually have a history of travel to an endemic area (Mungai et al, 2001). At present, donors are screened by a questionnaire detailing travel to endemic areas and symptomatology. Donor centers are not currently performing laboratory testing to identify malaria-contaminated donations.

Babesiosis

Babesia species are endemic in North American mammals and are transmitted by ticks of the genus *Ixodes*. Many cases of babesiosis are asymptomatic

or mild. However, it may be more severe in the asplenic or immunosuppressed patient. The parasite is capable of survival in refrigerated red cells. About 40 cases of transfusion-transmitted babesiosis have been reported in the United States, although it is possible that transmission in endemic areas may be as high as 1 in 1800 red cell units (Cable et al, 2001; Lux et al, 2003). There are nucleic acid–based as well as serologic tests currently in development, although none are available at this point in the United States.

Trypanosoma cruzi

T. cruzi is the cause of Chagas' disease and is endemic in parts of Central and South America. There may be more than 300,000 chronic carriers of *T. cruzi* in the United States, largely as the result of immigration (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2015). Rare cases of transfusion-transmitted Chagas' disease have been reported in the United States (Nickerson et al, 1989). The risk is dependent on the demographics of the donor population. Seropositivity rates among blood donors have been estimated to be 1:25,000 nationally and as high as 1:2000 in Los Angeles (Leiby et al, 2002; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2006-2007). Since the FDA approval of a donor screening EIA test, more than 2000 confirmed positive donors have been detected in the United States (AABB, 2015). Estimates of the residual risk for transfusion-transmitted Chagas' disease since implementation of donor testing in the United States have not been published to date.

Transmissible Spongiform Encephalopathies

Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs) are caused by a protein, called a *prion*, which is capable of assuming an abnormal configuration that is resistant to enzymatic degradation and serves as a template for further abnormal prion deposition. Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (vCJD) is a human TSE that emerged from an epidemic of bovine spongiform encephalopathy, probably as a result of entry of the pathogenic prion into the human food supply from affected cattle. The transmissibility of vCJD by blood in experimental models suggests a possible risk for transmission by transfusion. The magnitude of such a risk is presently unknown. However, four cases of prion acquisition have been reported in individuals who received transfusions from donors who were themselves diagnosed with vCJD (Chohan et al, 2010). However, it is notable that no cases of transfusion transmission of sporadic or familial CJD have been found to date, despite ongoing surveillance (Dorsey et al, 2009). Currently, there is no available serologic test suitable for testing donated units; thus donor centers defer at-risk donors based on exposure (vCJD) and family history (familial CJD) risk as determined by a predonation questionnaire.

CONCLUSION

Discovery of the A, B, and O blood groups by Carl Landsteiner in 1900 led to the widespread use of blood transfusion therapy early in the 20th century. This treatment directly afforded a remarkable evolution in surgical, trauma, and medical care. Although remarkable progress has been made in identifying and reducing transfusion-transmitted infection, the incidence of the principal noninfectious risks—TRALI and mistransfusion due to clerical error—has remained stable for many years. Increasing attention has been focused recently on these latter hazards, and it is hoped that this will lead to a substantial reduction in their occurrence. Despite the continuing risk for transfusion, a much greater threat is posed by withholding a blood component that is clinically indicated than by transfusing it.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Adams RJ, McKie VC, Hsu L, et al: Prevention of a first stroke by transfusions in children with sickle cell anemia and abnormal results on transcranial Doppler ultrasonography, *N Engl J Med* 339:5–11, 1998.

This prospective randomized trial showed that chronic transfusion to maintain Hb S <30% reduced the risk for stroke in children with sickle cell disease.

Bowden RA, Slichter SJ, Sayers M, et al: A comparison of filtered leukocyte-reduced and cytomegalovirus (CMV) seronegative blood products for the prevention of transfusion-associated CMV infection after marrow transplant, *Blood* 86:3598–3603, 1995.

This prospective randomized trial demonstrated that leukocyte reduction is equivalent to CMV seronegative blood components in preventing CMV transmission. However, CMV disease was more common in the group receiving leukocyte-reduced components, which is a point of controversy.

Carson JL, Duff A, Poses RM, et al: Effect of anaemia and cardiovascular disease on surgical mortality and morbidity, *Lancet* 348:1055–1060, 1996.

This retrospective cohort study showed that low preoperative hemoglobin or a substantial operative blood loss increases the risk of death or serious morbidity more in patients with cardiovascular disease than in those without.

Dzik WH, Anderson JK, O'Neill EM, et al: A prospective, randomized clinical trial of universal WBC reduction, *Transfusion* 42:1114–1122, 2002.

This prospective randomized trial showed that universal leukocyte reduction was associated with fewer febrile transfusion reactions, but not with in-hospital mortality, length of stay, or hospital costs. These latter points are controversial.

Hebert PC, Wells G, Blajchman MA, et al: A multicenter, randomized, controlled clinical trial of transfusion requirements in critical care, *N Engl J Med* 340:409–417, 1999.

This prospective randomized trial showed that a restrictive strategy of red-cell transfusion is at least as effective as, and possibly superior to, a liberal transfusion strategy in critically ill patients, with the possible exception of patients with acute myocardial infarction and unstable angina.

Heddle NM, Klama L, Singer J, et al: The role of the plasma from platelet concentrates in transfusion reactions, *N Engl J Med* 331:670–671, 1994.

This prospective randomized trial showed that most febrile reactions to platelet transfusion are due to a constituent in the plasma supernatant, most likely pyrogenic cytokines released during storage.

Kleinman S, Caulfield T, Chan P, et al: Towards an understanding of transfusion related acute lung injury: statement of a consensus panel, *Transfusion* 44:1774–1789, 2004.

This consensus panel statement summarizes the current understanding of the causes, incidence, outcomes, and strategies for reducing transfusion-related acute lung injury.

Linden JV, Wagner K, Voytovich AE, et al: Transfusion errors in New York State: an analysis of 10 years' experience, *Transfusion* 40:1207–1213, 2000.

This analysis of transfusion errors reported to the New York State Department of Health showed that transfusion errors are a significant risk. Most errors result from human actions and thus may be preventable. A majority of events occur outside the blood bank.

McCullough J, Vesole DH, Benjamin RJ, et al: Therapeutic efficacy and safety of platelets treated with a photochemical process for pathogen inactivation: the SPRINT trial, *Blood* 104:1534–1541, 2004.

This prospective randomized trial showed that photochemically treated platelets are substantially equivalent to conventional platelets, although posttransfusion platelet count increments and days to next transfusion were decreased compared with conventional platelets.

Petz LD, Garratty G, Calhoun L, et al: Selecting donors of platelets for refractory patients on the basis of HLA antibody specificity, *Transfusion* 40:1446–1456, 2000.

This retrospective study showed that a strategy of selecting platelet donors based on the recipient's HLA antibody specificities was as effective as HLA matching or crossmatching and allowed for a much larger pool of potential donors.

Rebulla P, Finazzi G, Marangoni F, et al: The threshold for prophylactic platelet transfusions in adults with acute myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 337:1870–1875, 1997.

This prospective randomized trial demonstrated that prophylactic platelet transfusion at <10,000/μL is as safe and effective as transfusion at <10,000/μL in acute leukemia and substantially reduces the number of transfusions.

Trial to Reduce Alloimmunization to Platelets Study Group: Leukocyte reduction and ultraviolet B irradiation of platelets to prevent alloimmunization and refractoriness to platelet transfusions, *N Engl J Med* 337:1861–1869, 1997.

This prospective randomized trial demonstrated that reduction of leukocytes by filtration and ultraviolet B irradiation of platelets are equally effective in preventing alloantibody-mediated refractoriness to platelets during chemotherapy for acute myeloid leukemia. Platelets obtained by apheresis from single random donors provided no additional benefit as compared with pooled platelet concentrates from random donors.

Vichinsky EP, Haberkern CM, Neumayr L, et al: A comparison of conservative and aggressive transfusion regimens in the perioperative management of sickle cell disease, *N Engl J Med* 333:206–213, 1995.

This prospective randomized trial showed that a conservative transfusion strategy (increase the hemoglobin level to 10 g/dL) is as effective as an aggressive transfusion regimen (decrease the hemoglobin S level to <30%) in preventing perioperative complications in patients with sickle cell anemia and results in substantially fewer transfusions.

REFERENCES

AABB: Chagas Biovigilance Network, 2015. Available at: http://www.aabb.org/research/hemovigilance/Pages/chagas.aspx.

Abe H, Ikebuchi K, Shimbo M, et al: Hypotensive reactions with a white cell-reduction filter: activation of kallikrein-kinin cascade in a patient (abstract), *Transfusion* 37(Suppl):39S, 1997.

Adams RJ, Brambilla DJ, Granger S, et al: Stroke and conversion to high risk in children screened with transcranial Doppler ultrasound during the STOP study, *Blood* 103:3689–3694, 2004.

Alter MJ, Kruszon-Moran D, Nainan DV, et al: The prevalence of hepatitis C virus infection in the United States, 1988 through 1994, *N Engl J Med* 341:556–562, 1999.

Alter HJ, Nakatsuji Y, Melpolder J, et al: The incidence of transfusion-associated hepatitis G virus infection and its relation to liver disease, *N Engl J Med* 336:747–754, 1997.

Ambruso DR, Githens JH, Alcorn R, et al: Experience with donors matched for minor blood group antigens in patients with sickle cell anemia who are receiving chronic transfusion therapy, *Transfusion* 27:94–98, 1987.

Andreu G, Morel P, Forestier F, et al: Hemovigilance network in France: organization and analysis of immediate transfusion incident reports from 1994 to 1998, *Transfusion* 42:1356–1364, 2002.

Aoun E, Shamseddine A, Chehal A, et al: Transfusion-associated GVHD: 10 years' experience at the American University of Beirut-Medical Center, *Transfusion* 43:1672–1676, 2003.

AuBuchon JP, Cooper LK, Leach MF, et al: Experience with universal bacterial culturing to detect contamination of apheresis platelet units in a hospital transfusion service, *Transfusion* 42:855–861, 2002.

Beard MJ, Cardigan R, Seghatchian J, et al: Variables determining blockage of WBC-depleting filters by Hb sickle cell trait donations, *Transfusion* 44:422–430, 2004.

Bhutani VK, Johnson L, Sivieri EM: Predictive ability of a predischarge hour-specific serum bilirubin for subsequent significant hyperbilirubinemia in healthy term and near-term newborns, *Pediatrics* 103:6–14, 1999.

Biggerstaff BJ, Petersen LR: Estimated risk of West Nile virus transmission through blood transfusion during an epidemic in Queens, New York City, *Transfusion* 42:1019–1026, 2002.

Blackall DP, Uhl L, Spitalnik SL: Transfusion Practices Committee: Cryoprecipitate-reduced plasma: rationale for use and efficacy in the treatment of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Transfusion* 41:840–844, 2001.

Blaxhult A, Granath F, Lidman K, et al: The influence of age on the latency period to AIDS in people infected by HIV through blood transfusion, *AIDS* 4:125–129, 1990.

Boyan CP, Howland WS: Cardiac arrest and temperature of bank blood, *JAMA* 183:58–60, 1963.

Busch MP, Glynn SA, Stramer SL, et al: A new strategy for estimating risks of transfusion-transmitted viral infections based on rates of detection of recently infected donors, *Transfusion* 45:254–264, 2005.

Busch MP, Operskalski EA, Mosley JW, et al: Epidemiologic background and long-term course of disease in human immunodeficiency virus type 1-infected blood donors identified before routine laboratory screening, *Transfusion* 34:858–864, 1994.

Butch SH, Oberman HA: The computer or electronic crossmatch, *Transfus Med Rev* 11:256–264, 1997.

Butch SH, Stoe M, Judd WJ: Solving the same-day admission identification problem, *Transfusion* 34(Suppl):93S, 1994.

Cable RG, Badon S, Trauem-Trend J, et al: Evidence for transmission of *Babesia microti* from Connecticut blood donors to recipients, *Transfusion* 41(Suppl):12S–13S, 2001.

Carson JL, Brooks MM, Abbott JD, et al: Liberal versus restrictive transfusion thresholds for patients with symptomatic coronary artery disease, *Am Heart J* 165:964–971, 2013.

Carson JL, Poses RM, Spence RK, et al: Severity of anaemia and operative mortality and morbidity, *Lancet* 1:727–729, 1988.

Carson JL, Terrin ML, Noveck H, et al: Liberal or restrictive transfusion in high-risk patients after hip surgery, *N Engl J Med* 365:2453–2462, 2011.

Cashen AF: Plerixafor hydrochloride: a novel agent for the mobilization of peripheral blood stem cells, *Drugs Today* 45:497–505, 2009.

Castellino SM, Combs MR, Zimmerman SA, et al: Erythrocyte autoantibodies in paediatric patients with sickle cell disease receiving transfusion therapy: frequency, characteristics and significance, *Br J Haematol* 104:189–194, 1999.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Blood donor screening for Chagas disease—United States, 2006-2007, *MMWR* 56:141–143, 2007.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Chagas disease, epidemiology & risk factors, 2015. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/chagas/epi.html.

Chohan G, Llewelyn C, Mackenzie J, et al: Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease in a transfusion recipient: coincidence or cause?, *Transfusion* 50:1003–1006, 2010.

Cohen BJ, Beard S, Knowles WA, et al: Chronic anemia due to parvovirus B19 infection in a bone marrow transplant patient after platelet transfusion, *Transfusion* 37:947–952, 1997.

Cooling L, Distenfeld A, Kopko PM, et al: Transfusion-related acute lung injury, *JAMA* 288:315–316, 2002.

Cotton BA, Au BK, Nunez TC, et al: Predefined massive transfusion protocols are associated with a reduction in organ failure and postinjury complications, *J Trauma* 66:41–48, 2009.

Counts R, Haisch C, Simon T, et al: Hemostasis in massively transfused trauma patients, *Ann Surg* 190:91–96, 1979.

Dahlke MB, Weiss KL: Platelet transfusion from donors mismatched for crossreactive HLA antigens, *Transfusion* 24:299–302, 1984.

Davenport RD, Penezina OP: Cleavage of high molecular weight kininogen induced by filtration of platelet concentrates, *Transfusion* 37(Suppl):104S, 1997.

Davey RJ, Gustafson M, Holland PV: Accelerated immune red cell destruction in the absence of serologically detectable alloantibodies, *Transfusion* 20:348–353, 1980.

DeChristopher PJ, Orlina AR: *Sudden death associated with autologous transfusion in a surgical patient with hemoglobin SC disease*. ISBT and AABB 1990 Joint Congress: book of abstracts, Bethesda, Md., 1990, American Association of Blood Banks, p 119.

de la Roche MR, Gauthier L: Rapid transfusion of packed red blood cells: effects of dilution, pressure, and catheter size, *Ann Emerg Med* 22:1551–1555, 1993.

Dente CJ, Shaz BH, Nicholas JM, et al: Improvements in early mortality and coagulopathy are sustained better in patients with blunt trauma after institution of a massive transfusion protocol in a civilian level I trauma center, *J Trauma* 66:1616–1624, 2009.

Dodd RY, Notari EP IV, Stramer SL: Current prevalence and incidence of infectious disease markers and estimated window-period risk in the American Red Cross blood donor population, *Transfusion* 42:975–979, 2002.

Domen RE, Hoeltge GA: Allergic transfusion reactions: an evaluation of 273 consecutive reactions, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 127:316–320, 2003.

Dorsey K, Zou S, Schonberger LB, et al: Lack of evidence of transfusion transmission of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease in a US surveillance study, *Transfusion* 49:977–984, 2009.

Downes KA, Wilson E, Yomtovian R, et al: Serial measurement of clotting factors in thawed plasma stored for 5 days, *Transfusion* 41:570, 2001.

Doyle S, O'Brien P, Murphy K, et al: Coagulation factor content of solvent/detergent plasma compared with fresh frozen plasma, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 14:283–287, 2003.

Dunbar NM, Kreuter JD, Marx-Wood CR, et al: Routine bacterial screening of apheresis platelets on Day 4 using a rapid test: a 4-year single-center experience, *Transfusion* 53(10):2307–2313, 2013.

Eder AF, Kennedy JM, Dy BA, et al: Bacterial screening of apheresis platelets and the residual risk of septic transfusion reactions: the American Red Cross experience (2004-2006), *Transfusion* 47:1134–1142, 2007.

Eder AF, Kennedy JM, Dy BA, et al: Limiting and detecting bacterial contamination of apheresis platelets: inlet-line diversion and increased culture volume improve component safety, *Transfusion* 49:1554–1563, 2009.

Federowicz I, Barrett B, Andersen J, et al: Characterization of reactions after transfusion of prestorage leukoreduced cellular blood components, *Blood* 86(Suppl): 608a, 1995.

Fergusson DA, Hébert P, Hogan DL, et al: Effect of fresh red blood cell transfusions on clinical outcomes in premature, very low-birth-weight infants: the ARIPI randomized trial, *JAMA* 308:1443–1451, 2012.

Fernandez F, Goudable C, Sie P, et al: Low haematocrit and prolonged bleeding time in uraemic patients: effect of red cell transfusions, *Br J Haematol* 59:139–148, 1985.

Fried MR, Eastlund T, Christie B, et al: Hypotensive reactions to white cell-reduced plasma in a patient undergoing angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor therapy, *Transfusion* 36:900–903, 1996.

Frohn C, Dumbgen L, Brand JM, et al: Probability of anti-D development in D– patients receiving D+ RBCs, *Transfusion* 43:893–898, 2003.

Gilleece MH, Dazzi F: Donor lymphocyte infusions for patients who relapse after allogeneic stem cell transplantation for chronic myeloid leukaemia, *Leuk Lymphoma* 44:23–28, 2003.

Gorlin JB, Cable R: What is a unit?, *Transfusion* 40:263–265, 2000.

Hall WW, Ishak R, Zhu SW, et al: Human T lymphotropic virus type II (HTLV-II): epidemiology, molecular properties, and clinical features of infection, *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol* 13(Suppl 1):S204–S214, 1996.

Hayashi H, Nishiuchi T, Tamura H, et al: Transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease caused by leukocyte-filtered stored blood, *Anesthesiology* 79: 1419–1421, 1993.

Heddle NM, Blajchman MA, Meyer RM, et al: A randomized controlled trial comparing the frequency of acute reactions to plasma-removed platelets and prestorage WBC-reduced platelets, *Transfusion* 42: 556–566, 2002.

Heddle NM, Klama L, Meyer R, et al: A randomized controlled trial comparing plasma removal with white cell reduction to prevent reactions to platelets, *Transfusion* 39:231–238, 1999.

Heuft HG, Goudeva L, Sel S, et al: Equivalent mobilization and collection of granulocytes for transfusion after administration of glycosylated G-CSF (3 μg/kg) plus dexamethasone versus glycosylated G-CSF (12 μg/kg) alone, *Transfusion* 42:928–934, 2002.

Hitzler WE, Runkel S: Prevalence of human parvovirus B19 in blood donors as determined by a haemagglutination assay and verified by the polymerase chain reaction, *Vox Sang* 82:18–23, 2002.

Holcomb JB, Wade CE, Michalek JE, et al: Increased plasma and platelet to red blood cell ratios improves outcome in 466 massively transfused civilian trauma patients, *Ann Surg* 243:447–458, 2008.

Holst LB, Haase N, Wetterslev J, et al: Lower versus higher hemoglobin threshold for transfusion in septic shock, *N Engl J Med* 371:1381–1391, 2014.

Horowitz B, Bonomo R, Prince AM, et al: Solvent/detergent-treated plasma: a virus-inactivated substitute for fresh frozen plasma, *Blood* 79:826–831, 1992.

Ibojie J, Greiss MA, Urbaniak SJ: Limited efficacy of universal leucodepletion in reducing the incidence of febrile nonhaemolytic reactions in red cell transfusions, *Transfus Med* 12:181–185, 2002.

Kaufman R, Djulbegovic B, Gernsheimer T, et al: Platelet transfusion: a clinical practice guideline, *Ann Intern Med* 162:205–213, 2015.

Kelley DL, Mangini J, Lopez-Plaza I, et al: The utility of ≤3-day-old whole-blood platelets in reducing the incidence of febrile nonhemolytic transfusion reactions, *Transfusion* 40:439–442, 2000.

Kinard TN, Sarode R: Four factor prothrombin complex concentrate (human): review of the pharmacology and clinical application for vitamin K antagonist reversal, *Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther* 12:417–427, 2014.

Kohan AI, Niborski RC, Rey JA, et al: High-dose intravenous immunoglobulin in non-ABO transfusion incompatibility, *Vox Sang* 67:195–198, 1994.

Kopko PM, Marshall CS, MacKenzie MR, et al: Transfusion-related acute lung injury: report of a clinical look-back investigation, *JAMA* 287:1968–1971, 2002.

Krumholz A, Ness PM, Hauser WA, et al: Adverse reactions in blood donors with a history of seizures or epilepsy, *Transfusion* 35:470–474, 1995.

Kuehnert MJ, Roth VR, Haley NR, et al: Transfusion-transmitted bacterial infection in the United States, 1998 through 2000, *Transfusion* 41:1493–1499, 2001.

Kumar A, Mhaskar R, Grossman BJ, et al: Platelet transfusion: a systematic review of the clinical evidence, *Transfusion* 55:1116–1127; quiz 1115, 2015.

Larsson LG, Welsh VJ, Ladd DJ: Acute intravascular hemolysis secondary to out-of-group platelet transfusion, *Transfusion* 40:902–906, 2000.

Larsson S, Soderberg-Naucler C, Wang FZ, et al: Cytomegalovirus DNA can be detected in peripheral blood mononuclear cells from all seropositive and most seronegative healthy blood donors over time, *Transfusion* 38:271–278, 1998.

Leiby DA, Herron RM Jr, Read EJ, et al: *Trypanosoma cruzi* in Los Angeles and Miami blood donors: impact of evolving donor demographics on seroprevalence and implications for transfusion transmission, *Transfusion* 42:549–555, 2002.

Levitt J, editor: *Standards for blood banks and transfusion services*, ed 29, Bethesda, Md, 2014, AABB.

Lin L, Dikeman R, Molini B, et al: Photochemical treatment of platelet concentrates with amotosalen and long-wavelength ultraviolet light inactivates a broad spectrum of pathogenic bacteria, *Transfusion* 44:1496–1504, 2004.

Lux JZ, Weiss D, Linden JV, et al: Transfusion-associated babesiosis after heart transplant, *Emerg Infect Dis* 9:116–119, 2003.

Macedo de Oliveira A, Beecham BD: West Nile virus blood transfusion–related infection despite nucleic acid testing, *Transfusion* 44:1695–1699, 2004.

Mair B, Leparc GF: Hypotensive reactions associated with platelet transfusions and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, *Vox Sang* 74:17–30, 1998.

Mallouh AA, Asha M: Beneficial effect of blood transfusion in children with sickle cell chest syndrome, *Am J Dis Child* 142:178–182, 1988.

Manns A, Hisada M, La Grenade L: Human T-lymphotropic virus type I infection, *Lancet* 353: 1951–1958, 1999.

Matsubayashi K, Nagaoka Y, Sakata H, et al: Transfusion-transmitted hepatitis E caused by apparently indigenous hepatitis E virus strain in Hokkaido, Japan, *Transfusion* 44:934–940, 2004.

McClaskey J, Xu M, Snyder EL, et al: Clinical trials for pathogen reduction in transfusion medicine: a review, *Transfus Apheresis Sci* 41:217–225, 2009.

McCullough J, Weiblen BJ, Fine D: Effects of storage of granulocytes on their fate in vivo, *Transfusion* 23:20–24, 1983.

Meryman HT, Hornblower M: Freezing and deglycerolizing sickle-trait red blood cells, *Transfusion* 16:627–632, 1976.

Mintz PD: Cesium cessation? An advantage of pathogen reduction treatments, *Transfusion* 51:1369–1376, 2011.

Mintz PD, Williams ME: Cerebrovascular accident during a delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction in a patient with sickle cell anemia, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 16:214–218, 1986.

Mitra B, Mori A, Cameron PA, et al: Fresh frozen plasma (FFP) use during massive blood transfusion in trauma resuscitation, *Injury* 41:35–39, 2010.

Moake J, Chintagumpala M, Turner N, et al: Solvent/detergent-treated plasma suppresses shear-induced platelet aggregation and prevents episodes of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Blood* 84:490–497, 1994.

Moroff G, Holme S, AuBuchon JP, et al: Viability and in vitro properties of AS-1 red cells after gamma irradiation, *Transfusion* 39:128–134, 1999.

Mungai M, Tegtmeier G, Chamberland M, et al: Transfusion-transmitted malaria in the United States from 1963 through 1999, *N Engl J Med* 344:1973–1978, 2001.

Murphy EL, Fridey J, Smith JW, et al: HTLV-associated myelopathy in a cohort of HTLV-I and HTLV-II-infected blood donors, *Neurology* 48:315–320, 1997.

Murray DH, Pennell BJ, Weinstein SL, et al: Packed red cells in acute blood loss: dilutional coagulopathy as a cause of surgical bleeding, *Anesth Analg* 80:336–342, 1995.

Muylle L, Joos M, Wouters E, et al: Increased tumor necrosis factor α (TNF α), interleukin 1, and interleukin 6 (IL-6) levels in the plasma of stored platelet concentrates: relationship between TNF α and IL-6 levels and febrile transfusion reactions, *Transfusion* 33:195–199, 1993.

Nakasone H, Kanda Y, Ueda T, et al: Retrospective comparison of mobilization methods for autologous stem cell transplantation in multiple myeloma, *Am J Hematol* 84:809–814, 2009.

Ness P, Braine H, King K, et al: Single-donor platelets reduce the risk of septic platelet transfusion reactions, *Transfusion* 41:857–861, 2001.

Newman BH, Pichette S, Pichette D, et al: Adverse effects in blood donors after whole-blood donation: a study of 1000 blood donors interviewed 3 weeks after whole-blood donation, *Transfusion* 43:598–603, 2003.

Newman B, Tommolino E, Andreozzi C, et al: The effect of a 473-mL (16-oz) water drink on vasovagal donor reaction rates in high-school students, *Transfusion* 47:1524–1533, 2007.

Nickerson P, Orr P, Schroeder ML, et al: Transfusion-associated *Trypanosoma cruzi* infection in a non-endemic area, *Ann Intern Med* 111:851–853, 1989.

Nussbaumer W, Schwaighofer H, Gratwohl A, et al: Transfusion of donor-type red cells as a single preparative treatment for bone marrow transplants with major ABO incompatibility, *Transfusion* 35:592–595, 1995.

Oberman HA: Controversies in transfusion medicine: should a febrile transfusion response occasion the return of the blood component to the blood bank?, *Transfusion* 34:353–355, 1994.

O'Connell BA, Schiffer CA: Donor selection for alloimmunized patients by platelet crossmatching of random-donor platelet concentrates, *Transfusion* 30: 314–317, 1990.

Ortolano GA, Freundlich LF, Holme S, et al: Detection of bacteria in WBC-reduced PLT concentrates using percent oxygen as a marker for bacteria growth, *Transfusion* 43:1276–1285, 2003.

Palfi M, Berg S, Ernerudh J, et al: A randomized controlled trial of transfusion-related acute lung injury: is plasma from multiparous blood donors dangerous?, *Transfusion* 41:317–322, 2001.

Pastore G, Monno L, Santantonio T, et al: Monophasic and polyphasic pattern of alanine aminotransferase in acute non-A, non-B hepatitis: clinical and prognostic implications, *Hepatogastroenterology* 32:155–158, 1985.

Pau CP, Hu DJ, Spruill C, et al: Surveillance for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 group O infections in the United States, *Transfusion* 36:398–400, 1996.

Pealer LN, Marfin AA, Petersen LR, et al: Transmission of West Nile virus through blood transfusion in the United States in 2002, *N Engl J Med* 349:1236–1245, 2003.

Pennington J, Garner SF, Sutherland J, et al: Residual subset population analysis in WBC-reduced blood components using real-time PCR quantitation of specific mRNA, *Transfusion* 41:1591–1600, 2001.

Perez P, Salmi LR, Folléa G, et al: Determinants of transfusion-associated bacterial contamination: results of the French Bacthem case-control study, *Transfusion* 41:862–872, 2001.

Petersen LR, Marfin AA: West Nile virus: a primer for the clinician, *Ann Intern Med* 137:173–179, 2002.

Petz LD: "Least incompatible" units for transfusion in autoimmune hemolytic anemia: should we eliminate this meaningless term? A commentary for clinicians and transfusion medicine professionals, *Transfusion* 43:1503–1507, 2003.

Pineda AA, Zylstra VW, Clare DE, et al: Viability and functional integrity of washed platelets, *Transfusion* 29:524–527, 1989.

Popovsky MA, Chaplin HC Jr, Moore SB: Transfusion-related acute lung injury: a neglected, serious complication of hemotherapy, *Transfusion* 32:589–592, 1992.

Powell RW, Levine GL, Yang YM, et al: Acute splenic sequestration crisis in sickle cell disease: early detection and treatment, *J Pediatr Surg* 27:215–218, 1992.

Preiksaitis JK, Brown L, McKenzie M: The risk of cytomegalovirus infection in seronegative transfusion recipients not receiving exogenous immunosuppression, *J Infect Dis* 157:523–529, 1988.

Rao SV, Jollis JG, Harrington RA, et al: Relationship of blood transfusion and clinical outcomes in patients with acute coronary syndromes, *JAMA* 292:1555–1562, 2004.

Riskin DJ, Tsai TC, Riskin L, et al: Massive transfusion protocols: the role of aggressive resuscitation versus product ratio in mortality reduction, *J Am Coll Surg* 209:198–205, 2009.

Roth WK, Waschk D, Marx S, et al: Prevalence of hepatitis G virus and its strain variant, the GB agent, in blood donations and their transmission to recipients, *Transfusion* 37:651–656, 1997.

Rourke C, Curry N, Khan S, et al: Fibrinogen levels during trauma hemorrhage, response to replacement therapy, and association with patient outcomes, *J Thromb Haemost* 10:1342–1351, 2012.

Ruane PH, Edrich R, Gampp D, et al: Photochemical inactivation of selected viruses and bacteria in platelet concentrates using riboflavin and light, *Transfusion* 44:877–885, 2004.

Salama A, Berghofer H, Mueller-Eckhardt C: Red blood cell transfusion in warm-type autoimmune haemolytic anaemia, *Lancet* 340:1515–1517, 1992.

Sauer LA, France CR: Caffeine attenuates vasovagal reactions in female first-time blood donors, *Health Psychol* 18:403–409, 1999.

Sazama K: Reports of 355 transfusion-associated deaths: 1976 through 1985, *Transfusion* 30:583–590, 1990.

Schmalzer EA, Lee JO, Brown AK, et al: Viscosity of mixtures of sickle and normal red cells at varying hematocrit levels: implications for transfusion, *Transfusion* 27:228–233, 1987.

Scott E, Puca K, Heraly J, et al: Evaluation and comparison of coagulation factor activity in fresh-frozen plasma and 24-hour plasma at thaw and after 120 hours of 1 to 6 degrees C storage, *Transfusion* 49:1584–1591, 2009.

Seeff LB, Buskell-Bales Z, Wright EC, et al: Long-term mortality after transfusion-associated non-A, non-B hepatitis, *N Engl J Med* 327:1906–1911, 1992.

Seeff LB, Wright EC, Zimmerman HJ, et al: VA cooperative study of post-transfusion hepatitis, 1969-1974: incidence and characteristics of hepatitis and responsible risk factors, *Am J Med Sci* 270:355–362, 1975.

Seoud MA, Cantwell C, Nobles G, et al: Outcome of pregnancies complicated by sickle cell and sickle-C hemoglobinopathies, *Am J Perinatol* 11:187–191, 1994.

Sherertz RJ, Russell BA, Reuman PD: Transmission of hepatitis A by transfusion of blood products, *Arch Intern Med* 144:1579–1580, 1984.

Shiba M, Tadokoro K, Sawanobori M, et al: Activation of the contact system by filtration of platelet concentrates with a negatively charged white cell–removal filter and measurement of venous blood bradykinin level in patients who received filtered platelets, *Transfusion* 37:457–462, 1997.

Shimada E, Tadokoro K, Watanabe Y, et al: Anaphylactic transfusion reactions in haptoglobin-deficient patients with IgE and IgG haptoglobin antibodies, *Transfusion* 42:766–773, 2002.

Sickinger E, Jonas G, Yem AW, et al: Performance evaluation of the new fully automated human immunodeficiency virus antigen-antibody combination assay designed for blood screening, *Transfusion* 48: 584–593, 2008.

Silliman CC, Boshkov LK, Mehdizadehkashi Z, et al: Transfusion-related acute lung injury: epidemiology and a prospective analysis of etiologic factors, *Blood* 101:454–462, 2003.

Slavc I, Urban CH, Schwinger W, et al: ABO-incompatible bone marrow transplantation: prevention of hemolysis by alkaline hydration with mannitol diuresis in conjunction with red cell reduced buffy coat bone marrow, *Wien Klin Wochenschr* 104:93–96, 1992.

Slichter SJ, Davis K, Enright H, et al: Factors affecting posttransfusion platelet increments, platelet refractoriness, and platelet transfusion intervals in thrombocytopenic patients, *Blood* 105:4106–4114, 2005.

Slichter SJ, Kaufman RM, Assmann SF, et al: Dose of prophylactic platelets and prevention of hemorrhage, *N Engl J Med* 362:600–613, 2010.

Snyder EL, Mechanic S, Baril E, et al: Removal of soluble biologic response modifiers (complement and chemokines) by a bedside leukoreduction filter, *Transfusion* 36:707–713, 1996.

Spence RK, Carson JA, Poses R, et al: Elective surgery without transfusion: influence of preoperative hemoglobin level and blood loss on mortality, *Am J Surg* 159:320–324, 1990.

Stramer SL, Notari EP, Krysztof DE, et al: Hepatitis B virus testing by minipool nucleic acid testing: does it improve blood safety?, *Transfusion* 53:2449–2458, 2013.

Steiner MF, Triulzi DJ, Assmann SF, et al For the Transfusion Medicine/Hemostasis Network: Randomized

trial results: red cell storage age is not associated with a significant difference in multiple-organ dysfunction score or mortality in transfused cardiac surgery patients, *Transfusion* 54(Suppl):15A (abstract P2-030A), 2014.
Strauss RG: Clinical perspectives of platelet transfusions: defining the optimal dose, *J Clin Apheresis* 10:124–127, 1995.
Strauss RG, Burmeister LF, Johnson K, et al: AS-1 red cells for neonatal transfusions: a randomized trial assessing donor exposure and safety, *Transfusion* 36: 873–878, 1996.
Sweeney JD, Holme S, Moroff G: Storage of apheresis platelets after gamma radiation, *Transfusion* 34:779–783, 1994.
Swisher KK, Terrell DR, Vesely SK, et al: Clinical outcomes after platelet transfusions in patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Transfusion* 49:873–887, 2009.
Tobian AA, King KE, Ness PM: Transfusion premedications: a growing practice not based on evidence, *Transfusion* 47:1089–1096, 2007.
Tobian AA, Sokoll LJ, Tisch DJ, et al: N-terminal probrain natriuretic peptide is a useful diagnostic marker for transfusion-associated circulatory overload, *Transfusion* 48:1143–1150, 2008.
Triulzi DJ, Blumberg N: Variability in response to cryoprecipitate treatment for hemostatic defects in uremia, *Yale J Biol Med* 63:1–7, 1990.
Uhlmann EJ, Isgriggs E, Wallhermfechtel M, et al: Prestorage universal WBC reduction of RBC units does not affect the incidence of transfusion reactions, *Transfusion* 41:997–1000, 2001.
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services: *The 2011 national blood collection and utilization survey report*, Washington, DC, 2011, DHHS.
Vichinsky EP, Earles A, Johnson RA, et al: Alloimmunization in sickle cell anemia and transfusion of racially unmatched blood, *N Engl J Med* 322:1617–1621, 1990.
Villanueva C, Colomo A, Bosch A, et al: Transfusion strategies for acute upper gastrointestinal bleeding, *N Engl J Med* 368:11–21, 2013.
Vretzakis F, Papaziogas B, Matsaridou E, et al: Continuous monitoring of arterial blood gasses and pH during intraoperative rapid blood administration using a Paratrend sensor, *Vox Sang* 78:158–163, 2000.
Vyas GN, Holmadahl L, Perkins HA, et al: Serologic specificity of human anti-IgA and its significance in transfusion, *Blood* 34:573–581, 1969.
Wagner SJ, Robinette D: Evaluation of swirling, pH, and glucose tests for the detection of bacterial contamination in platelet concentrates, *Transfusion* 36: 989–993, 1996.
Walsh JH, Purcell RH, Morrow AG, et al: Posttransfusion hepatitis after open-heart operations: incidence after the administration of blood from commercial and volunteer donor populations, *JAMA* 211:261–265, 1970.
Wang D, Sun J, Solomon SB, et al: Transfusion of older stored blood and risk of death: a meta-analysis, *Transfusion* 52:1184–1195, 2012.
Whiting D, DiNardo JA: TEG and ROTEM: technology and clinical applications, *Am J Hematol* 89:228–232, 2014.
Widmann FK: Controversies in transfusion medicine: should a febrile transfusion response occasion the return of the blood component to the blood bank?, *Transfusion* 34:356–358, 1994.
Wu WC, Rathore SS, Wang Y, et al: Blood transfusion in elderly patients with acute myocardial infarction, *N Engl J Med* 345:1230–1236, 2001.
Zanella A, Rossi F, Cesana C, et al: Transfusion-transmitted human parvovirus B19 infection in a thalassemic patient, *Transfusion* 35:769–772, 1995.
Zehtabchi S, Nishijima DK: Impact of transfusion of fresh-frozen plasma and packed red blood cells in a 1:1 ratio on survival of emergency department patients with severe trauma, *Acad Emerg Med* 16:371–378, 2009.
Zink KA, Sambasivan CN, Holcomb JB, et al: A high ratio of plasma and platelets to packed red blood cells in the first 6 hours of massive transfusion improves outcomes in a large multicenter study, *Am J Surg* 197:565–570, 2009.
Zhou L, Giacherio D, Cooling L, et al: Use of B-natriuretic peptide (BNP) as a diagnostic marker in the differential diagnosis of transfusion-associated circulatory overload (TACO), *Transfusion* 45:1056–1063, 2005.
Zhou A, Mehta RS, Smith RE: Outcomes of platelet transfusion in patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura: a retrospective case series study, *Ann Hematol* 94:467–472, 2015.
Zou S, Stramer SL, Dodd RY: Donor testing and risk: current prevalence, incidence, and residual risk of transfusion-transmissible agents in US allogeneic donations, *Transfus Med Rev* 26:119–128, 2012.

CHAPTER 37

HEMAPHERESIS

Emily Rupp Patterson, Jeffrey L. Winters

INTRODUCTION, 751
Definitions, 751
Basic Principles, 752

DONOR CYTAPHERESIS, 753
Donor Plateletapheresis, 753
Donor Leukocytapheresis, 754
Donor Erythrocytapheresis, 756
Multicomponent Apheresis Donation, 757
Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Collection by Apheresis, 757

DONOR PLASMAPHERESIS, 761
Plasma Products, 761
Plasma Donor Selection, 761
Plasma Donor Concerns, 761

INDICATIONS FOR THERAPEUTIC HEMAPHERESIS, 761
Therapeutic Cytapheresis, 765
Therapeutic Plasma Exchange, 769

DONOR/PATIENT COMPLICATIONS COMMON TO ALL HEMAPHERESIS PROCEDURES, 777
Electrolyte and Acid-Base Disturbances, 778
Allergic, Anaphylactoid, and Anaphylactic Reactions, 780
Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors, 780
Hypovolemia and Vasovagal Reactions, 780
Hydroxyethyl Starch and Coagulopathy, 781
Hydroxyethyl Starch and Renal Dysfunction, 781
Hydroxyethyl Starch and Other Side Effects,781
Air Embolus, 781

SUMMARY, 781

SELECTED REFERENCES, 781

KEY POINTS

- Hemapheresis is the process of removing normal or abnormal components from circulating blood.
- Cytapheresis involves the removal of cellular components; plasmapheresis involves the removal of plasma, the liquid component.
- Separation of the blood components is based on size (filtration instruments), density (centrifugation instruments), or a combination of both.
- Donor apheresis maximizes the collection of a scarce resource by allowing donors to donate only what is needed, returning the remaining components back to the donor.
- Donor apheresis is highly regulated. Donor eligibility requirements, frequency of donation, and amount of product allowed to be collected vary according to the components being collected, the instruments being used for the collection, and the frequency of the apheresis donations.
- Hematopoietic progenitor cell–apheresis (HPC-A) collection has advantages over hematopoietic progenitor cell–marrow (HPC-M) harvest, including faster time to engraftment, avoidance of general anesthesia for the donor, quicker donor recovery, decreased expense, and greater donor acceptance.
- There is a dearth of randomized placebo-controlled clinical trials involving apheresis. To address this, the American Society for Apheresis (ASFA) categorizes diseases treated with apheresis according to the strength of the evidence supporting its use.
- Therapeutic cytoreduction for leukocytosis or thrombocytosis is indicated for primary disorders where symptoms of hyperviscosity or risk factors for complications are present.
- A 1 to 1.5 plasma volume plasma exchange will remove 70% of a substance located within the plasma. The treatment of additional plasma volumes results in the removal of a fixed percentage of the remaining substance, leading to diminishing returns in treating greater than 1.5 plasma volumes.
- Therapeutic plasma exchange (TPE) is nonselective, removing pathologic substances as well as beneficial substances such as coagulation factors and protein-bound drugs.
- Complications of donor apheresis are less common than complications seen with whole blood donation, although the rate of reactions requiring hospitalization has been reported to be greater.
- The most common reactions to donor apheresis, in decreasing frequency, are hematoma/pain; hypocalcemia due to the citrate anticoagulant; vasovagal reactions with syncope; and vasovagal reactions without syncope.
- Complications have been reported to occur in approximately 5% of patients undergoing therapeutic apheresis treatments. If complications due to central venous access placement are included, the complication rate has been reported to be 17%.
- The most common reactions due to therapeutic apheresis procedures, in decreasing frequency, are transfusion reactions from replacement fluids, hypocalcemia due to citrate anticoagulant, hypotension, vasovagal reactions, tachycardia, respiratory distress, tetany/seizure, and rigors/chills.

INTRODUCTION

DEFINITIONS

The word **apheresis** is derived from the Greek word "aphaeresis," which means "to separate," "to take away by force," or "to remove." The year 2014 marks the 100th anniversary of apheresis, when authors Abel, Rowntree, and Turner first described apheresis procedures involving the separation of canine blood into cellular and plasma components (Abel et al, 1914). Hemapheresis is the process of removing normal (donor) or abnormal (patient) blood constituents from circulating blood. It can be divided into cytapheresis, removal of the cellular component of blood, and plasmapheresis, removal of the plasma fraction. Cytapheresis can be selective with removal of red blood cells (erythrocytapheresis), platelets (plateletapheresis), or white blood cells (leukocytapheresis). If the red blood cells removed during an erythrocytapheresis are replaced with donor red blood cells in a therapeutic procedure, this is referred to as a *red blood cell exchange.* When a plateletapheresis procedure is performed as a therapeutic procedure, it is referred to as a *thrombocytapheresis*. If, during a plasmapheresis procedure, the removed plasma is replaced by a replacement fluid, the procedure is referred to as a *therapeutic plasma exchange (TPE).* Plasmapheresis, in contrast, removes and discards less than 15% of the total plasma volume and does not require replacement fluid. It is important to realize that the terms **plasmapheresis** and **plasma exchange** are not equivalent, even if they are commonly used in this way.

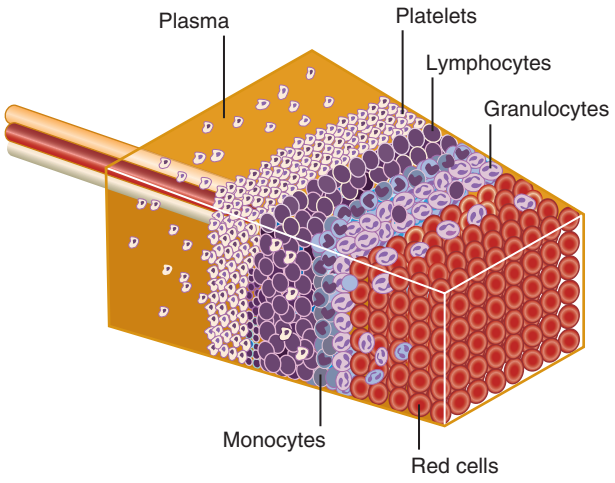


Figure 37-1 Separation of blood components within a centrifugal separation chamber. Blood components placed in a centrifuge are separated based on their density. The densest elements (red blood cells) are farthest from the axis of rotation, and the least dense element (plasma) is closest. (Image courtesy of Sergio Torloni, MD, Director of Transfusion Medicine, Mayo Clinic, Scottsdale Ariz.)

BASIC PRINCIPLES

Apheresis can be performed using either centrifugation or filtration methods. All early apheresis instruments separated whole blood into its components by centrifugation. Centrifugal force is applied to whole blood such that the various components separate according to their specific gravity (density). The most dense component (red blood cells) layers farthest from the axis of rotation and the least dense component (plasma) layers closest to the axis of rotation, with components of intermediate density layering in between (Burgstaler, 2010) (Figure 37-1). Some mixing does occur at the interfaces of the various layers, resulting in some contamination by components of the adjacent layers. For example, red blood cells are present within the granulocyte layer and vice versa. Depending on whether the whole blood is processed in discrete batches with repetitive cycles or processed continuously, the centrifugation separators are referred to as *intermittent flow* or *continuous flow* centrifuges, respectively (Burgstaler, 2010).

In addition to centrifugation, apheresis can be accomplished by filtration. In this method, components of whole blood are separated based on size rather than density. The whole blood flows over a membrane containing pores of a specific size, which only allow the component of interest to pass through. The remaining elements are then returned to the donor/patient. The separators used in the filtration process may be hollow fiber or flat plate systems, each of which utilize pore size to separate cellular components from plasma (Burgstaler, 2010).

Centrifugation and filtration can also be combined. In these instruments, blood enters a stationary chamber containing a central rotating filter. As the filter rotates, the blood begins to move and separate into layers. The result is that the more dense elements move away from the filter with the plasma being located directly adjacent to the filter. The plasma can then pass through the filter and be drawn off while the cellular elements are collected from the periphery of the stationary chamber. The advantage of the combination of centrifugation and filtration in this arrangement is that the cellular elements cannot clog the pores of the filter. This means that filters with smaller surface areas than filtration instruments and lower *g* forces than centrifugation instruments can be used (Burgstaler, 2010).

Another basic aspect of apheresis involves determining appropriate volumes to be processed in the various procedures described in this chapter. This is necessary because of the need to limit the amount of blood within the instrument and tubing connected to the donor/patient—the extracorporeal circuit—to avoid hypotension and associated complications. According to Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services, the maximum amount of blood allowed to be out of the donor is 10.5mL/kg of the donor's weight (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). Calculations of blood volume, however, are still necessary to "prescribe" appropriate processing volumes during therapeutic cytapheresis. This is most often accomplished through nomograms or as a calculation performed by the instrument used for the procedure, with input of donor/patient-specific data by the instrument operator, typically height, weight, gender, and hematocrit. A number of equations and rules are available for this determination (Nadler et al, 1962; Gilcher, 1996). For example, Equations 37-1 and 37-2 can be used to determine blood volume in males and females, respectively (Nadler et al, 1962):

$$\text{Males: } BV = (0.3669 \times H^3) + (0.03719 \times W) + 0.6041 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 37-1)}$$

$$\text{Females: } BV = (0.3561 \times H^3) + (0.03308 \times W) + 0.1833 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 37-2)}$$

where

BV is blood volume in liters
H is height in meters
W is weight in kilograms

Because the blood volume of tissues varies according to the ratio of adipose tissue present, such calculations may overestimate the blood volume in obese patients and underestimate it in muscular patients. These biases are partially corrected for by formulas that cube the height of the patient (Mollison et al, 1998). Additionally, for TPE, the blood volume can be used to further calculate the plasma volume, as given by Equation 37-3 (Buffaloe & Heineken, 1983):

$$PV = BV\,[1 - (0.91)(0.96)\,VCH/100] \quad \textbf{(Eq. 37-3)}$$

where *PV* is plasma volume in liters, and *VCH* is venous centrifuge hematocrit.

Finally, the plasma volume can be used to calculate the exchange volume, the volume processed in a TPE procedure, as given by Equation 37-4 (Buffaloe & Heineken, 1983):

$$EV = PV \times PVE \quad \textbf{(Eq. 37-4)}$$

where

EV is exchange volume in liters and *PVE* is desired number of plasma volumes to exchange.

Another basic aspect of hemapheresis that is applicable to all procedures, therapeutic and donor-related, is venous access. In donor hemapheresis, peripheral venous access is used, usually the veins of the antecubital fossa. The use of central venous access in this setting, with the potential for serious complications, would be too risky for the donor. If a donor's peripheral venous access is such that it cannot be used, then another donor should be located. The possible exception to this would be in the setting of allogeneic peripheral hematopoietic progenitor cell harvest, in which an alternative donor may not be available. Obviously, the risks to the donor and the benefits to the recipient must be carefully considered, and the donor must give informed consent before central venous access can be used.

In the setting of therapeutic hemapheresis procedures, it is often assumed that central access is essential because of damage to peripheral veins from previous medical treatment (e.g., chemotherapy), as well as the need for long-term therapy for some diseases. The Canadian Cooperative Multiple Sclerosis Study Group (Noseworthy et al, 1989) found that among 294 multiple sclerosis patients undergoing weekly TPE procedures for 20 weeks, only 4.4% of patients could not be treated because of poor peripheral venous access. Of those who started the course of therapy, only 5.4% lost peripheral venous access such that the course could not be completed (Noseworthy et al, 1989). In a similar study looking at 46 patients with neurologic diseases requiring hemapheresis, 50% of patients could complete their course of therapy using peripheral access alone. Factors associated with the requirement of central venous access included Guillain-Barré syndrome or hospitalization within a medical intensive care unit (Grishaber et al, 1992). Contrary to popular belief, these authors also found no difference between peripheral venous access and central venous access with regard to the time required to perform the therapeutic procedures (Grishaber et al, 1992). These studies indicate that peripheral venous access, with its lower rate of complications, should be tried initially in therapeutic hemapheresis. Central venous access should be reserved for occasions in which peripheral access fails.

When peripheral venous access is not possible, then both the hemapheresis service and the physician placing the catheter must determine the type of central catheter to be placed. Many routinely used central venous catheters are inadequate for hemapheresis because their walls are too soft and collapse, their length is too long, or their diameter is too small. These characteristics result in pressure alarms from the instruments. The ideal catheters have large diameters and short lengths, creating the lowest possible resistance to blood flow according to Poiseuille's equation:

$$R = 8nL/\pi r^4 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 37-5)}$$

where

R is the resistance to flow
n is the viscosity of blood
L is the length of the vessel
r is the radius

A rule of thumb is that if a catheter can be used for dialysis, in which flow rates are greater than those seen in apheresis, it can be used for apheresis.

One last basic principle is the distinction between apheresis and dialysis, as this is often a point of confusion. In dialysis, a highly permeable membrane called the dialyzer functions like the kidney by filtering the blood and removing harmful toxins, most often small waste molecules. Dialysis does not remove plasma proteins or clotting factors and does not require volume replacement, therefore potentially being used to significantly decrease a patient's volume status. In contrast, apheresis affects only the intravascular volume and removes either a pathologic cellular or noncellular component by either centrifugation or filtration techniques. If plasma is removed during apheresis, larger proteins, including clotting factors, are also removed. In apheresis procedures where plasma is removed, a replacement fluid such as albumin or donor plasma is given. The result is that in contrast to dialysis, apheresis procedures generally do not significantly or intentionally alter a donor/patient's volume status.

DONOR CYTAPHERESIS

DONOR PLATELETAPHERESIS

Benefits of Apheresis Platelets

The use of apheresis platelets has increased from 25% of platelets transfused in 1987 (Wallace et al, 1993) to 91.1% in 2011 (Whitaker et al, 2011). In part, this is due to the inability to increase platelets derived from whole blood donations. In addition, there is a perception that apheresis platelets offer advantages over those produced from whole blood. The reported benefits of apheresis platelet products are given in Box 37-1.

An additional advantage of apheresis platelets over pooled nonapheresis products is simplification of inventory management. Pooled products, because they are prepared in an open system, have a 4-hour shelf life after pooling. Apheresis products do not need to be pooled and as a result retain their 5-day shelf life. In situations in which platelet products are initially requested but then are not transfused, the use of apheresis products could avoid wastage. The disadvantages of apheresis platelets are the additional expense to obtain them and limited availability in some areas.

Platelet Product Requirements

Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services require that the minimum number of platelets in an apheresis product should be 3.0×10^{11} in 90% of units tested (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014); the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) requires a minimum of 3.0×10^{11} in 75% of units tested (Code of Federal Regulations [CFR], 2014). The result of these requirements, however, is that an apheresis platelet product contains at least as many platelets as a pool of platelets from six whole blood donations.

Plateletapheresis Donor Selection

The donor requirements for plateletapheresis are the same as those for whole blood donation (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). The FDA has issued additional requirements, as outlined in guidance issued in December 2007, "Guidance for Industry and FDA Review Staff: Collection of Platelets by Automated Methods" (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2007). FDA guidelines include a proscription on the collection of apheresis platelets from a donor who has ingested aspirin or piroxicam (Feldene) within 2 days of donation. Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services (2014) also require that the use of platelets from a donor taking "medications known to irreversibly inhibit platelet function shall be evaluated." Finally, donors who have taken clopidogrel (Plavix) or ticlopidine (Ticlid) are deferred from apheresis platelet donation for 14 days after the last dose (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2007).

Additional plateletapheresis-specific requirements include a minimum platelet requirement prior to collection and restrictions on the frequency and number of donations. First, donors must have a platelet count of at least 150,000/μL in order to donate. They can donate as often as twice per week, but there must be a 2-day interval between hemapheresis procedures. A donor cannot donate more than 24 times per year. Finally, if a donor donates multiple plateletapheresis products, such as a double- or triple-platelet product, the donor is deferred from additional hemapheresis donation for 1 week. These concerns will be discussed further later.

According to FDA guidelines, donors must have a precollection minimum platelet count of 150,000/μL to be eligible to donate. This count should be used for current and future eligibility determination and to program the hemapheresis instrument to determine the platelet yield of the collection. The count may be completed before the procedure starts or immediately following the start of the procedure. If the platelet count cannot be obtained before the collection starts or immediately afterward (e.g., collections on a mobile drive), an average of previous measurements from the donor or a default count can be used to program the instrument. In this case, a triple-platelet collection cannot be performed. The sample collected, however, must be tested. Finally, the FDA also requires that the hemapheresis device be programmed such that the donor's platelet count will not fall below 100,000/μL (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2007).

Individuals donating after whole blood donation, or after an instrument failure resulting in the inability to return the extracorporeal blood volume, must wait 8 weeks before donating by apheresis. Exceptions are if the extracorporeal volume of the instrument is less than 100mL, or if the loss of red blood cells is less than 200mL. In these cases, the donor is eligible to donate by apheresis after the normal deferral period (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). The FDA has provided further guidance on donor eligibility after red blood cell loss, as outlined in Table 37-1. The FDA has also defined limits on the total amount of plasma that can be removed during an apheresis platelet collection. Donors weighing less than 175 lb can have no more than 500 mL removed; in those weighing greater than or equal to 175 lb, 600 mL can be collected. An exception to these limits exists in that the manufacturer of the plateletapheresis collection device can define a different volume in the labeling of the device (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2007).

Donor selection for plateletapheresis may be influenced by a number of factors, in addition to regulatory considerations. The yield of a

BOX 37-1
Reported Benefits of Apheresis Platelet Products

Decreased donor exposure with decreased risk for transfusion-transmitted disease

Decreased donor exposure with delay in alloimmunization to HLA (Sintnicolaas et al, 1981)

Decreased risk of septic platelet transfusion reactions (Ness et al, 2001)

Prestorage leukocyte reduction with delay in alloimmunization to HLA (Trial to Reduce Alloimmunization to Platelets Study Group, 1997), decreased febrile transfusion reactions (Heddle, 1995), and decreased cytomegalovirus infection (Bowden et al, 1995)

HLA, Human leukocyte antigen.

TABLE 37-1
Donor Eligibility Following Red Blood Cell Loss

Initial Red Blood Cell Loss	Combined Initial Red Blood Cell Loss and Second Red Blood Cell Loss within 8 Weeks	Eligibility
<200 mL	<200 mL	No deferral
<200 mL	>200 mL but ≤300 mL	Defer for 8 weeks from second donation
>200 mL but ≤300 mL	NA	Defer for 8 weeks from first donation
<200 mL	>300 mL	Defer for 16 weeks from second loss
≥300 mL	NA	Defer for 16 weeks from loss

Data from Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2007.

plateletapheresis procedure is determined, to a large extent, by the platelet count of the donor, with higher counts associated with a higher yield (Glowitz & Slichter, 1980; Goodnough et al, 1999). Some collection centers will screen whole blood donors for high normal platelet counts and will recruit these individuals for plateletapheresis to maximize the yield of each collection procedure. Female donors, on average, have higher platelet counts than males (Glowitz & Slichter, 1980; Goodnough et al, 1999), with some evidence also supporting higher platelet yields from female donors (Glowitz & Slichter, 1980). The presence of a higher plasma volume in females enhances the separation and collection of platelets by some instruments, and could contribute to the higher yield. The difficulty with female donors is that because of prior pregnancies, they are at increased risk for sensitization against human leukocyte antigen (HLA) and neutrophil antigens. Antibodies toward these antigens have been implicated in the development of transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI). The AABB issued Association Bulletin #06-07 in November 2006 to address the risk for TRALI. In this bulletin, the AABB requires collection centers to "implement interventions to minimize the preparation of high plasma-volume components from donors known to be leukocyte-alloimmunized or at increased risk of leukocyte alloimmunization" (Strong & Lipton, 2007). Because of this, collection centers have adopted policies of deferring all females from plateletapheresis donation, deferring females who have been pregnant from plateletapheresis donation, or testing female donors for the presence of HLA and anti-neutrophil antibodies (Powers et al, 2008). A proposed standard from the AABB would require testing for HLA antibodies for all female apheresis platelet donors who have been pregnant (AABB, 2014). For a more complete discussion of TRALI, the reader is referred to Chapter 36. Additional donor considerations arise in the selection of platelet products for alloimmunized patients. These patients, through transfusion or previous pregnancies, develop antibodies to antigens expressed on platelets, most frequently antibodies to HLA class I antigens. The result is the development of an immune refractory state as defined by inadequate posttransfusion platelet increments as measured by platelet count collected between 10 minutes and 1 hour after the completion of a platelet transfusion. Immune refractoriness accounts for one third of all patients who are refractory to platelet transfusions (Doughty et al, 1994) and requires a search for compatible platelet donors. Three general strategies have been employed to achieve this. First, if the specificities of the HLA alloantibodies and the HLA class I phenotype of the plateletapheresis donor are known, attempts can be made to obtain platelets from a donor lacking these antigens (Schiffer, 1987; Hussein et al, 1996). A second strategy that is used if the HLA class I type of the patient is known and the HLA antibody specificities are unknown or broad, is to attempt to match the HLA type of the patient and of the donor as closely as possible (Duquesnoy, 1978). Finally, if the HLA class I types of the recipient or potential donors are unknown, or if poor increments continue despite HLA matching, platelet cross-matching can be performed. Such testing involves combining donor platelets with recipient serum in a solid-phase red blood cell adherence assay (Schiffer, 1987; Bock et al, 1989; Murphy & Waters, 1991; O'Connell et al, 1992).

Plateletapheresis Donor Concerns

The typical platelet donor experiences a 20% to 29% drop in platelet count (Szymanski et al, 1973; Heyns et al, 1985), with that among females typically being greater (Rogers et al, 1995; Dettke et al, 1998). The fall in platelet count is, however, less than that predicted by the yield from the plateletapheresis procedure due to mobilization of platelets from the spleen (Heyns et al, 1985). The time required for return to baseline following apheresis platelet donation is 4 days in males. For females, a delay in the increase of thrombopoietin levels causes delayed return to normal platelet counts (Dettke et al, 1998). Gender-specific differences in absolute blood volume and absolute mass of circulating platelets may explain the differences in recovery of platelet counts post-plateletapheresis in males versus females (Dettke et al, 1998).

In donors undergoing alternate-day collections, platelet count and apheresis yields have been shown to return to baseline levels by day 10 of collection, with stable counts and yields obtained during subsequent collection procedures (Glowitz & Slichter, 1980). A rebound state characterized by increased platelet yield following repeat procedures has also been seen (Szymanski et al, 1973). In donors with low platelet counts (150,000 to 180,000/mL), employing prolonged collection times to achieve the required platelet yield demonstrated no clinically significant problems in 291 procedures, despite postprocedure platelet counts as low as 69,000/mL (Rogers et al, 1995). The results of these studies indicate that even with repeated plateletapheresis, platelet counts return to normal levels promptly, and bleeding complications are uncommon.

Although studies have shown that platelet counts recover quickly following platelet donation, initial studies suggested that long-term platelet donation could result in declines in platelet counts (Lazarus et al, 2001). These findings raised concerns that frequent apheresis platelet donations could produce thrombocytopenia, and prompted the FDA to suggest restrictive policies on donation. Subsequent studies have failed to demonstrate declines in platelet count with long-term donation or with donation of high-yield products such as double- or triple-platelet products (Richa et al, 2008). As a result, less restrictive guidance was provided by the FDA in the form of the 2007 guidance document mentioned earlier.

Plateletapheresis using early hemapheresis instruments was associated with losses of donor lymphocytes as great as 5 to 10×10^9 per procedure (Strauss, 1994). Based on studies involving therapeutic lymphocytapheresis and chronic thoracic duct drainage, it had been shown that abnormal cell-mediated immunity could be achieved by the loss of 1 to 1.5×10^{11} lymphocytes within a few weeks (Strauss, 1994). As a result of this and studies showing decreased total lymphocytes, T lymphocytes, and immunoglobulin IgG levels 8 months after donation, regulations were created limiting the number of plateletapheresis donations to 24 per year (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014) and warning potential plateletapheresis donors about the possibility of lymphocyte depletion (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 1988). Some authors suggest that donors be deferred if their lymphocyte counts are below 1.2×10^9/L (Strauss, 1994). More recent studies of donors donating with newer hemapheresis instruments have shown no differences in lymphocyte counts, lymphocyte subsets, or IgG levels when non-donors, plateletapheresis donors, and whole blood donors were compared (Lewis et al, 1999). In fact, the loss of lymphocytes over the course of 24 donations using modern hemapheresis equipment is equivalent to the loss of lymphocytes in a single whole blood donation (Strauss, 1994).

DONOR LEUKOCYTAPHERESIS

Granulocyte Transfusions

Granulocytes are sometimes transfused to neutropenic patients who have infections that are refractory to antibiotic therapy, but clinical trials testing the efficacy of granulocyte transfusions are few. Seven controlled trials comparing antibiotics versus antibiotics and granulocyte transfusions have appeared in the literature and were reviewed by Strauss (1993). In these studies, the granulocyte donors were stimulated with steroids alone. Five of seven trials reported at least partial success of granulocyte transfusions. The data from these studies were subsequently analyzed by quantitative meta-analysis and demonstrated that the dose of neutrophils transfused, as well as the survival rate of the controls, was primarily responsible for the differing success rates reported in the studies (Vamvakas & Pineda, 1996). The authors stated that granulocyte transfusions should be considered in neutropenic patients with infections associated with high mortality rates, and that the highest possible granulocyte doses ($>4 \times 10^{10}$ neutrophils) should be used (Vamvakas & Pineda, 1996). Only one randomized trial involving G-CSF–stimulated donors has been published. This study demonstrated no difference between study groups with regard to survival (Hubel et al, 2002). Most of the studies and reports describing granulocyte transfusions in adults have dealt with neutropenic patients with unresponsive bacterial infections. Studies have looked at the utility of granulocyte transfusions in patients with fungal infections, but the results of such trials have been mixed (van Burik, 2003).

Another group of patients frequently considered for granulocyte transfusions are septic neonates. Six controlled studies have been published evaluating granulocyte transfusions in this setting, four of which found benefit (Laurenti et al, 1981; Christensen et al, 1982; Baley et al, 1987; Cairo et al, 1987, 1984; Wheeler et al, 1987). Quantitative meta-analysis of these studies identified granulocyte dose as the primary reason for disagreement in study outcomes. Those studies using buffy coat–derived granulocytes demonstrated no advantage, and those using leukocytapheresis-derived granulocytes demonstrated benefit (Vamvakas & Pineda, 1996). Again, all of these trials were conducted before G-CSF became available. No trials of transfusion of G-CSF–stimulated granulocytes have been reported.

Granulocyte transfusions may benefit neutropenic patients, especially if large doses can be collected. Recommendations regarding who should be considered for granulocyte transfusions include adult patients who are profoundly neutropenic and are anticipated to remain neutropenic for at least 1 week, and those whose infections have progressed despite appropriate antibiotic therapy (Schiffer, 1990). In addition, the patient should have a possibility of recovery of granulocyte production. In neonates, indications for granulocyte transfusion include evidence of bacterial sepsis with

an absolute neutrophil count below 3000/μL and decreased marrow store of neutrophils, with less than 7% (of nucleated cells) metamyelocytes or more mature forms (Blanchette et al, 1991; Strauss, 1991).

Granulocyte Product Requirements

One of the critical factors in the success of granulocyte transfusions is the dose of granulocytes provided. Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services require that 75% of granulocyte components collected have a minimum of 1.0×10^{10} granulocytes (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). It must be realized that this dose represents a minimum, and that higher doses are desirable.

Granulocytes are stored at room temperature (20° to 24°C) without agitation and have an expiration date of 24 hours (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). Neutrophils, however, undergo apoptosis throughout storage. Accumulation of transfused granulocytes at sites of inflammation decreases with increasing time of storage; they should, therefore, be transfused as soon as possible after collection (Price & Dale, 1979).

Granulocyte Donor Selection

As with plateletapheresis, leukocytapheresis donors must fulfill all of the requirements applicable to whole blood donation. In addition, platelets are removed during the collection, and application of the 150,000/μL platelet count requirement to granulocyte donors may be prudent. Another consideration in selecting donors is the ABO type of both recipient and donor. Significant numbers of red blood cells are present within granulocyte products. Because the red blood cell content is greater than 2mL, Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services require that the product be cross-match compatible (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014).

Also important in donor selection is the cytomegalovirus status of the donor and recipient. Granulocyte transfusions have been linked to cases of cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection in CMV seronegative recipients (Winston et al, 1980; Buckner et al, 1983). Therefore, donors for CMV seronegative patients must also be CMV seronegative. Finally, in alloimmunized patients it is critical that human leukocyte antigen (HLA) or cross-match compatible donors be selected. Studies of alloimmunized patients have demonstrated minimal to no recovery, survival, or localization to sites of infection using granulocytes from random donors (Dutcher et al, 1983; McCullough et al, 1986).

Granulocyte Donor Stimulation

Granulocyte dose is critical for the effectiveness of granulocyte therapy. The most commonly used method to increase granulocyte yield is to administer steroids to donors 10 to 12 hours before collection. Administration of oral prednisone (MacPherson et al, 1976; Jendiroba et al, 1998) or dexamethasone (Higby et al, 1977) increases granulocyte yield up to twice that of unstimulated donors. In a study of 153 unrelated granulocyte donors who received either prednisolone given intravenously 4 hours before collection or dexamethasone given orally 12 hours before collection, an equal absolute amount of circulating granulocytes were collected in each group (Kolovratova et al, 2012). This suggests that the decision for whether to use prednisolone or dexamethasone for granulocyte mobilization should be at the discretion of the physician and donor. The effects of steroids appear to result from mobilization of granulocytes from marrow stores, as well as delayed granulocyte apoptosis (Liles et al, 1995). Studies have shown no effect of steroid stimulation on the ability of neutrophils to phagocytose particles or fungi, to kill bacteria, or to undergo chemotaxis when compared with granulocytes from nonstimulated donors (Glasser et al, 1977). In addition, studies have suggested that steroid stimulation has no effect on accumulation of transfused granulocytes at sites of injury (Price & Dale, 1979).

The availability of G-CSF has resulted in the ability to generate even larger granulocyte doses and has led to a resurgence of interest in granulocyte transfusions. Administration of 5μg/kg of G-CSF or every other day resulted in granulocyte collections four to five times those seen in unstimulated donors and greater than those seen with prednisone stimulation (Jendiroba et al, 1998). The use of G-CSF–stimulated granulocyte transfusions has been shown to result in significant and sustained increments in neutrophil counts in patients (Adkins et al, 1997b). The optimum timing for granulocyte collection in G-CSF–stimulated donors is 12 hours after administration of the G-CSF (Price, 1998).

As with steroids, concerns have arisen over the function of G-CSF–stimulated granulocytes. Studies have demonstrated normal phagocytosis, chemotaxis, chemiluminescence, and superoxide anion production (Caspar et al, 1993) and normal accumulation at sites of injury (Adkins et al, 1997a). G-CSF has been shown to enhance microbicidal activity (Lieschke & Burgess, 1992), as well as to inhibit neutrophil apoptosis during storage (Adachi et al, 1994). Concern has also been raised as to whether repeated doses of G-CSF will adversely affect granulocyte function. Again, enhanced phagocytosis and oxidative burst were seen with multiple G-CSF administrations (Joos et al, 2002).

Studies have been performed to evaluate the effect of the combination of steroids and G-CSF (Dale et al, 1998; Liles et al, 1997). Eight milligrams of dexamethasone with 300 or 600 μg of G-CSF resulted in higher granulocyte yields than either agent alone, leading to a 10-fold increase in neutrophil count at 12 hours. The combination of dexamethasone with 600 μg of G-CSF versus 300 μg of G-CSF resulted in a significantly greater yield (Liles et al, 1997). Granulocyte function with this combined regimen demonstrated no defects (Dale et al, 1998). Subsequent studies comparing 450 μg versus 600 μg doses of G-CSF with 8-mg of dexamethasone found equivalency with regard to both the donor's absolute neutrophil count (ANC) at 12 hours and donor side effects (Liles et al, 2000). Although the study by Liles and colleagues mentioned earlier utilized 450-μg doses of G-CSF in their comparison, vials of G-CSF are currently available only as 480-μg doses. There are no data comparing the efficacy of the currently available 480-μg doses of G-CSF with the 450-μg doses utilized by Liles and colleagues in the study mentioned earlier.

Finally, the route of administration of G-CSF, when given with dexamethasone, also influences granulocyte kinetics. Subcutaneous administration gives a higher sustained ANC compared with IV administration (Stroncek et al, 2002).

Granulocyte Collection Procedure

Red blood cells and granulocytes have similar densities and sedimentation rates, resulting in poor separation during centrifugation. The addition of sedimenting agents such as hydroxyethyl starch (HES) can improve this separation and thereby enhance granulocyte collection (Iacone et al, 1981). The mechanism of action of HES is the induction of rouleaux formation among red blood cells. The resulting greater red cell sedimentation rate and greater upward flow of plasma during centrifugation enhances separation (Lee et al, 1995). Different types of HES include the high molecular weight hetastarch and the low molecular weight pentastarch. While both of these agents have been shown to have equivalent safety profiles (Strauss et al, 1986; Strauss et al, 1987), pentastarch has the benefit of being rapidly excreted with less danger of accumulation. Although the safety profile of pentastarch may be superior, a controlled study has shown greater granulocyte yields with hetastarch (Lee et al, 1995). When used as a volume expander, HES has been found to increase mortality and the requirement for renal replacement therapy in critically ill patients, patients with compromised renal function, septic patients, and patients at risk for bleeding (FDA, 2013) (See discussion under Donor/Patient Complications Common to All Hemapheresis Procedures). It may, therefore, be prudent to evaluate granulocyte donors for the presence of renal disease.

Granulocyte Donor Concerns

In addition to granulocytes, platelets and significant numbers of red blood cells are present in the leukocytapheresis product. The donor's hematocrit typically drops by 7% following a granulocyte collection (Hester et al, 1995). This drop is due not only to loss of red blood cells but also to dilutional effects of volume expansion caused by the HES used during the procedure. Platelet count typically drops by 22% after each procedure—an equivalent drop to that seen with plateletapheresis (Hester et al, 1995). Again, a degree of dilutional effect is present. An additional cause for a fall in platelet count is seen in donors stimulated with G-CSF (Bensinger et al, 1993). Healthy donors receiving G-CSF for 10 days typically have a decline in platelet count starting at day 8, with significant differences from baseline at days 10 and 11. The mechanism behind this effect is uncertain and may represent changed platelet distribution, decreased platelet production, or increased intravascular volume (Korbling, 1998). In addition, recovery of platelet count appears to be prolonged, requiring 7-10 days among stem cell donors versus 4-6 days among platelet donors (Stroncek et al, 1996b).

G-CSF and corticosteroids can cause a number of other side effects (Table 37-2). These side effects are very common, occurring in 90% of allogeneic donors receiving G-CSF for apheresis collection of hematopoietic progenitor cell (HPC-A) (Stroncek et al, 1996a), are usually mild, and are treated symptomatically. For example, bone pain and headache, which tend to be dose related (Stroncek et al, 1996a; Murata et al, 1999), typically respond to mild analgesics. Nausea and vomiting are more common in women, and headache is more common in those younger than 35 years (Murata et al, 1999). More significant but rare side effects of G-CSF include splenic rupture, anaphylaxis, acute iritis, marginal keratitis, gouty arthritis, autoimmune thyroiditis, rheumatoid arthritis exacerbation,

TABLE 37-2
Short-Term Side Effects of Medications Used in Granulocyte Mobilization

Medication	Side Effects
Corticosteroids	Headache Flushing Insomnia Euphoria Palpitations Epigastric acidity Hyperglycemia
G-CSF	Bone pain Myalgias Arthralgias Headache Fever Chills Gastrointestinal discomfort Paresthesias Chest pain Edema Fatigue

Data from Volk EE, Domen RE, Smith ML: An examination of ethical issues raised in the pretreatment of normal volunteer granulocyte donors with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 123:508–513, 1999.
G-CSF, Granulocyte-colony stimulating factor.

TABLE 37-3
Diseases/Conditions that are Relative Contraindications to Medications Used for Granulocyte Mobilization

Medication	Condition
Corticosteroids	Hypertension Diabetes Peptic ulcer disease
G-CSF	Inflammatory conditions Gout Risk factors for thrombosis

Data from Korbling M: Effects of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor in healthy subjects, *Curr Opin Hematol* 5:209–214, 1998 and Technical Manual Committee, Roback JD, Combs MR, et al, editors: *Technical manual*, ed 16, Bethesda, Md, 2008, AABB.
G-CSF, Granulocyte-colony stimulating factor.

BOX 37-2
Advantages and Disadvantages of Double Red Blood Cell Collections

Advantages

Decreased incidence of donor reactions compared with whole blood donation (Benjamin et al, 2009)
Better inventory management of needed blood types (Benjamin et al, 2009)
Standardized red blood cell dose (Moog, 2013)
More consistent and controlled component quality (Benjamin et al, 2009)
Decreased donor exposure if a patient receives both parts of a double red cell collection (Moog, 2013)

Disadvantages

Stricter donation guidelines for minimum weight, height, hemoglobin, and hematocrit (Benjamin et al, 2009)
Longer donation interval (Benjamin et al, 2009)
Potential for citrate toxicity and device-related complications (Benjamin et al, 2009)

thrombosis, erythema multiforme, acute lung injury, and capillary leak syndrome (Korbling, 1998; Volk et al, 1999; Azevedo & Tabak, 2001; Arimura et al, 2005; Tigue et al, 2007; Veerappan et al, 2007). These are believed to represent exacerbation of underlying donor/patient illnesses. Donors, whether for granulocyte or HPC-A collection, should be evaluated for these illnesses in determining suitability for donation (Table 37-3).

Although the short-term effects of G-CSF are predominantly mild, the long-term effects are uncertain. Concerns have been expressed over the possibility of recipients developing hematologic diseases such as myelodysplasia or chronic myelogenous leukemia (Korbling, 1998; Volk et al, 1999). This is due in part to the occurrence of leukemic transformation after G-CSF therapy in 10%–15% of patients with congenital neutropenia receiving long-term G-CSF therapy (Bonilla et al, 1994). In addition, studies of normal donors receiving G-CSF have demonstrated the following findings: induction of a small population of tetraploid myeloid cells (Kaplinsky et al, 2003), temporary asynchronous allele replication and persistent aneuploidy up to 265 days following G-CSF administration (Nagler et al, 2004), abnormal DNA relaxation and de novo DNA synthesis (Shapira et al, 2003), and alterations in gene expression (Hernandez et al, 2005; Amariglio et al, 2007). These findings were similar to those that have been seen in hematologic malignancies. It has been estimated that to detect a 10-fold increase in the frequency of leukemia above the population background of 0.05%, a study following 2000 stimulated donors for a minimum of 10 years would be needed (Pamphilion et al, 2008). Two registries have published data that almost meet these requirements. The European Bone Marrow Transplant Registry examined unstimulated bone marrow donors and stimulated donors collected by HPC-A, between the years 1990 and 2003. Among bone marrow donors, 9 of 28,134 (0.032%) donors developed hematologic malignancies compared with 5 of 16,432 (0.030%) stimulated HPC-A donors (Grupp et al, 2006). The National Marrow Donor Program (NMDP) examined 4015 healthy unrelated allogeneic donors who had donated between 1997 and 2007. Twenty cases of malignancy were identified and this incidence was consistent with the age-adjusted U.S. incidence of cancer in adults. No cases of hematologic malignancy were seen (Confer & Miller, 2007). Despite these reassuring findings, donors undergoing G-CSF stimulation should give informed consent before stimulation, and appropriate institutional review should be obtained for use of G-CSF in this non–FDA-approved role.

Long-term steroid treatment is associated with a number of well-known side effects, including the development of posterior subcapsular cataracts (PSCs). Because these complications appear with long-term use, it would seem that short-term steroid stimulation of granulocyte donors should not be associated with them. This may not be the case, however. A single-center double-blind study compared the presence of cataracts in 9 apheresis platelet donors and 11 granulocyte donors matched for age, gender, and number of respective donations (Ghodsi & Strauss, 2001). The frequency of cataracts not associated with steroid administration was equivalent between the two groups, but those associated with steroid administration—PSCs—were more frequent in the granulocyte donors when all eyes were considered (5 of 22 eyes vs. 0 of 18; $p = .040$) (Ghodsi & Strauss, 2001). A subsequent multicenter study examined 89 granulocyte donors and 89 control donors (Burch et al, 2005). The granulocyte donors had donated a mean of 13 donations (range, 5 to 39). Six of the granulocyte donors and four of the control donors had evidence of PSC on photographic examination. This was not a statistically significant difference though only granulocyte donors demonstrated the presence of bilateral PSCs (Burch et al, 2005). This better powered study suggests that cataract formation may not be a concern among granulocyte donors.

DONOR ERYTHROCYTAPHERESIS

Benefits of Erythrocytapheresis

A single unit of red blood cells or the equivalent of two units of red blood cells can be collected by apheresis. Advantages and disadvantages of double red blood cell collections are given in Box 37-2.

Erythrocytapheresis Product Requirements

The Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services requires that apheresis red blood cells be collected and prepared by a method that is known to result in a mean hemoglobin >60g or a packed red cell volume of 180 mL. In addition, at least 95% of the units sampled must have >50g of hemoglobin or 150 mL packed red cell volume (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). If the red blood cell units are leukocyte reduced, then the mean hemoglobin must be >51g or 153 mL packed red cell volume. Here, at least 95% of tested units must have >42.5g of hemoglobin or 128mL packed red blood cell volume (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014).

The FDA does not define product requirements for red blood cells—single or double—collected by apheresis but instead states that 95% of the products collected must meet "expected or target RBC volume" and "any

other target parameters specified in the device's operator manual" (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2001). The FDA also defines how such validation and testing is to be performed, with the initial validation consisting of testing "100 consecutive RBC units," while subsequent testing must include at least 50units per month, consisting of both single and double red blood cell products. If a center collects less than 50 units, all units must be tested (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2001).

Erythrocytapheresis Donor Selection

Allogeneic apheresis red blood cell donors must meet the criteria defined by the FDA and the AABB for whole blood donation. In addition, they are required to meet any other selection criteria defined by the device's operator manual (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2001).

The FDA and the AABB do not define a minimum hemoglobin/hematocrit for double red cell donation. Instead, it is required that the collection center follow the instrument manufacturer's recommendations (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2001; Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). The FDA does, however, require that the hemoglobin/hematocrit be determined by a quantitative method (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2001). As a result, the copper sulfate method cannot be used to qualify a donor for double red cell donation.

The AABB limits the total volume of red blood cells removed, such that the donor's hematocrit and hemoglobin are not <30% and <10g/dL, respectively, after volume replacement (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). The FDA makes no specific limitations, requiring that the manufacturer's recommendations be followed (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2001).

The type of product collected determines the donation interval following hemapheresis red blood cell donations. Donors donating a single unit of red blood cells are deferred for 8 weeks. The exception to this would be that, as described in the section on donor plateletapheresis, they could donate platelets or platelets with concurrent plasma, as long as the extracorporeal red blood cell volume of the collecting instrument is less than 100mL (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2001). Donors donating two units of red blood cells are deferred for 16 weeks, and no automated or manual collections are allowed during this time (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2001).

If a donor experiences an incomplete procedure, that is, the targeted collection is not reached, the FDA defines the length of deferral based on the absolute loss of red blood cells during the initial collection and subsequent collections, as outlined in Table 37-1 (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 2007).

Erythrocytapheresis Donor Concerns

Owing to the removal of two units of red blood cells, one of the most frequent concerns is whether reactions are more frequent with double red blood cell collections when compared with whole blood collections. Benjamin and colleagues compared 4,348,686 whole blood collections with 206,570 double red cell collections in 26 regional blood centers. They found an age-dependent risk for mild reactions, with donors older than 20 years experiencing more reactions and donors younger than 20 years experiencing fewer reactions when comparing double red cell collections with whole blood collections (Benjamin et al, 2009). Hematomas and citrate reactions were more common with double red cell collections, while vasovagal-reactions, loss of consciousness, and arterial puncture were more common with whole blood collections (Benjamin et al, 2009). Most reactions with double red cell collections were citrate-related and resolved within 5-10 minutes after saline infusion or a decrease in plasma return rate (Moog, 2013). In donors of all ages, fewer major systemic complications were seen with double red cell collections when compared with whole blood collections (10.2 vs. 14.3 per 10,000 collections; odds ratio, 0.71; confidence interval, 0.32-0.89) (Benjamin et al, 2009). These results suggest that double red cell collections may be most beneficial for younger donors, who are also more likely to experience adverse events with whole blood collections. The overall lower rate of reactions with double red cell collections despite the removal of a greater red blood cell mass results from the fact that donors are isovolemic at the end of the collection as a result of the infusion of saline. Additionally, with double red cell collections, a specified and controlled absolute red blood cell volume is collected while, with whole blood collections, the red blood cell volume collected depends on donor hematocrit and blood volume (Moog, 2013).

BOX 37-3

Combinations of Blood Products Available for Multicomponent Collections

- Red blood cell and plasma
  - Red blood cell and platelet
  - Red blood cell, plasma, and platelet
  - Double red blood cell
  - Double or triple platelet
  - Platelet and single or double plasma
  - Double platelet and single plasma
  - Double or triple plasma

Another concern with double red blood cell donations is whether donors making such donations are at greater risk of developing iron deficiency than whole blood donors, particularly for younger donors who have lower iron stores and require more iron during periods of rapid growth (Benjamin et al, 2009). Radtke and colleagues (2004) studied the effect of iron supplementation in double red cell donations and found that compared with placebo, daily iron supplementation in double red cell donations was associated with higher, more stable ferritin and hemoglobin levels. Further investigation is needed to fully understand the optimal screening for hemoglobin and iron balance in red cell donors.

MULTICOMPONENT APHERESIS DONATION

With current instrumentation, different combinations of blood products can be collected from the same donor. This allows for the optimum utilization of each donor. For example, the maximum amount of plasma would be collected from an AB donor, while his or her red blood cells, which frequently outdate before they are transfused, would not be collected. An O Rh-negative or Rh-positive donor would provide a double red blood cell collection but plasma, which is usually in adequate supply, would not be collected. The various combinations of collections currently available are given in Box 37-3. It should be mentioned that all of the various regulations that apply to individual apheresis collections with regard to donor criteria and donor frequency apply to multiple-component collections. For example, a donor undergoing a double red cell collection with a concurrent plasma collection would have to meet the requirements for a double red cell collection as well as the requirements for frequent or infrequent plasma collection. This would include tracking red blood cell loss (see Table 37-1) and total plasma volume loss (see discussion of plasma donation later).

HEMATOPOIETIC PROGENITOR CELL COLLECTION BY APHERESIS

Benefits of Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Collection

Hematopoietic progenitor cell collection by apheresis (HPC-A) was developed in the 1980s and has replaced the collection of hematopoietic progenitor cells by bone marrow harvest (HPC-M) for many donors and patients. Donors tolerate hemapheresis better than bone marrow harvest since it is an outpatient procedure and does not require general anesthesia. As a result, HPC-A is less expensive, more convenient, and safer. Also, the donor recovers more quickly from the procedure without the pain and temporary disability that often accompany bone marrow harvest (Winters, 2009; Tanhehco et al, 2013). The use of peripheral blood HPCs in transplantation restores hematopoietic and immune function more rapidly than bone marrow HPCs, with engraftment of white cells and platelets occurring approximately 1 week earlier (Winters, 2009). This means fewer days of immune suppression and fewer exposures to allogeneic blood products in the recipient (Moog & Muller, 1998; Bensinger et al, 2001). Additionally, in autologous transplantation, collection of peripheral HPCs by hemapheresis can be performed when marrow involvement by malignancy or prior pelvic irradiation is present and would preclude bone marrow harvest (Tanhehco et al, 2013).

Although HPC-A collection provides a number of benefits over bone marrow harvest, it also has disadvantages, including possible adverse effects of mobilization regimens, a greater length of time required for collection, the possibility of a larger volume of component to be transfused at the time of transplantation, and the necessity for central venous access in many cases, along with the accompanying risks and complications (Lee & Klein,

1995). In addition, conflicting evidence in allogeneic transplantation suggests a greater frequency of chronic graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) (Duhrsen et al, 1988; Brown et al, 1997) or GVHD more refractory to standard therapy (Flowers et al, 2002). This may result from the larger number of T cells within peripheral blood stem cell products compared with bone marrow. However, in many patients, the more rapid engraftment with peripheral blood HPC transplantation outweighs the possible increased risk of GVHD.

Autologous versus Allogeneic Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Harvest

Due to the use of chemotherapy as the original mobilizing agent for HPCs, HPC-A collections were initially limited to autologous transplantation and restricted to patients with Hodgkin lymphoma (HL), non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL), and multiple myeloma (MM). The use of HPCs was subsequently expanded to include transplantation for leukemias (Lee & Klein, 1995; Gillespie & Hillyer, 1996; Moog & Muller, 1998). As methods for mobilization that do not depend upon chemotherapy have become available, HPC-A collection hasve expanded to include allogeneic donations as well.

Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Dose

An important factor in determining the success of HPC transplantation is the dose of HPCs infused. Unfortunately, a method for definitively enumerating HPCs is not available. Table 37-4 compares the different methods for estimating HPC dose. It is known that HPCs are found within the mononuclear cell component of blood; as a result, the mononuclear cell count (MNC) can be used as an indicator of when to discontinue HPC collection. Another way of measuring HPC dose is by assessing colony-forming unit granulocyte-macrophage (CFU-GM) colonies grown on soft agar. Finally, a third and most widely used method of determining HPC dose is the measurement of CD34+ cell count within the product. Since HPCs represent a subset of CD34+ cells, the measurement of CD34+ cells gives a better indication of HPC dose than MNC and also correlates with CFU-GM (Lee & Klein, 1995). Although minimal numbers of CD34+ cells/kg are needed for prompt engraftment, too many cells have been associated with an increased risk of chronic graft-versus-host disease in some studies (Zaucha et al, 2001; Heimfeld, 2003). Zaucha and colleagues (2001) found a higher incidence of extensive chronic graft-versus-host disease in allogeneic transplant patients receiving greater than 8.0×10^6 CD34+ cells/kg.

Some authors have suggested that the dose of CD34+ cells needed for engraftment may vary with the number of HPC collection procedures performed (Smolowicz et al, 1999). It is thought that a higher total dose is necessary when CD34+ cells are collected over multiple procedures. This is believed to be due to changes in CD34+ cell subsets seen during the course of multiple collections (Smolowicz et al, 1999).

TABLE 37-4
Comparison of Methods for Measuring HPCs

	MNC	CFU-GM	CD34+ Cell Count
Minimal dose for engraftment	6.0 to 6.5×10^8 MNC/kg	0.5 to 2.0×10^5 CFU GM/kg	2.5×10^6 CD34+ cells/kg
Correlation with HPC count	Lower	Higher	Higher
Ability to measure	Easy	Challenging	Easy
Turnaround time	Fast (hours)	Slow (2 weeks)	Fast (hours)
Standardization between laboratories	Easy	Challenging	Challenging

Data from Kessinger (1989, 1995); Bender JG, To LB, Williams S, et al: Defining a therapeutic dose of peripheral blood stem cells, *J Hematother* 1:329–341, 1992; Lee JH, Klein HG: Collection and use of circulating hematopoietic progenitor cells, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 9:1–22, 1995a; Bensinger (1995); and Korbling M, Huh YO, Durett A, et al: Allogeneic blood stem cell transplantation: peripheralization and yield of donor-derived primitive hematopoietic progenitor cells (CD34+ Thy-1dim) and lymphoid subsets, and possible predictors of engraftment and graft-versus-host disease, *Blood* 86:2842–2848, 1995.

CFU-GM, Colony-forming unit granulocyte-macrophage colonies; *MNC,* mononuclear cell count.

Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Mobilization

Early attempts at harvesting hematopoietic progenitor cells from peripheral blood were successful but labor and resource intensive. Peripheral blood contains only 10% of the fraction of CD34+ cells found in bone marrow (Lee & Klein, 1995). This means that when HPCs are collected during steady state (i.e., without mobilization), the number of procedures necessary to achieve a sufficient dose may be large, for example, 12 procedures in one study (Moog & Muller, 1998). The discovery that peripheral hematopoietic progenitor cells could be mobilized from the bone marrow meant that therapeutic doses of HPCs could be collected by hemapheresis in fewer procedures, making the method more attractive. Chemotherapy, cytokines, or a combination of chemotherapy and cytokines can mobilize HPCs from bone marrow (Lee & Klein, 1995; Gillespie & Hillyer, 1996; Moog & Muller, 1998). The effects of chemotherapy and cytokines on mobilization are independent of one another, with even greater numbers of HPCs collected when chemotherapy and cytokines are used together than when either regimen is used alone. Table 37-5 gives a general comparison of the effectiveness of these three mobilization regimens. The mechanisms of action of the mobilization regimens are summarized in Figure 37-2 and are discussed in more detail later.

The regimen initially used for mobilization was chemotherapy. During the period of rebound hematopoiesis following chemotherapeutic treatment, the number of HPCs present within the peripheral blood increases dramatically (see Table 37-5). This allows for the effective HPC-A collection while decreasing the tumor burden within the patient. The limitation of mobilization with chemotherapy is that it can be applied only to autologous transplants.

Cytokines such as G-CSF and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) dramatically increase the presence of HPCs within the peripheral blood and have the additional benefit of providing minimal short-term toxicity (see Table 37-2). This therefore allows for the mobilization of HPCs in normal donors in preparation for allogeneic transplantation. The mechanism of action of these cytokines is indirect. HPCs in the marrow are bound to stromal cells by adhesion molecules. These molecules include VLA-4 and CXCR4 on the HPCs and VCAM-1 and SDF-1 on the stromal cells. G-CSF increases the number of neutrophils in the marrow, with a subsequent increase in neutrophil-derived proteolytic enzymes such as elastase and MMP-9. These enzymes cleave VCAM-1 and SDF-1, resulting in the release of HPCs from the stromal cells, allowing them to enter the peripheral circulation (Lapidot & Petit, 2002) (see Figure 37-2).

Overall, the magnitude of increase in CD34+ cells and the time to peak CD34+ cell count is the same with G-CSF and GM-CSF, but differences in recipient recovery of hematopoiesis and donor side effects exist between the two agents. Recipients of GM-CSF–mobilized HPCs experience a longer time until recovery of platelet production than do recipients of G-CSF–mobilized HPCs (13 days vs. 18 days) (Gillespie & Hillyer, 1996). Although donors receiving GM-CSF experience the same symptoms as those receiving G-CSF, they tend to have more severe side effects (Bolwell et al, 1994). In December of 2009, a new medication was approved by the FDA for the mobilization of HPC-A from patients with NHL and MM. This medication, plerixafor, is a CXCR4 inhibitor that was initially investigated as an anti–human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) medication. Plerixafor blocks the interaction between HPCs and stromal cells, resulting in mobilization of HPCs from the marrow (Tanhehco et al, 2013).

TABLE 37-5
Comparison of Different Mobilization Regimens

Regimen	Approximate Day When Peak HPC Concentrations Are Reached	Increase in HPCs Above Steady State
Chemotherapy	Day 14 after completion of chemotherapy	5-15×
Cytokines (G-CSF and GM-CSF)	Day 5 after initiation of cytokine therapy	60×
Chemotherapy and cytokines	Day 5 after initiation of cytokine therapy	1000×

Data from Gillespie TW, Hillyer CD: Peripheral blood progenitor cells for marrow reconstitution: mobilization and collection strategies, *Transfusion* 36:611–624, 1996.

G-CSF, Granulocyte–colony stimulating factor; *GM-CSF,* granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; *HPC,* hematopoietic progenitor cell.

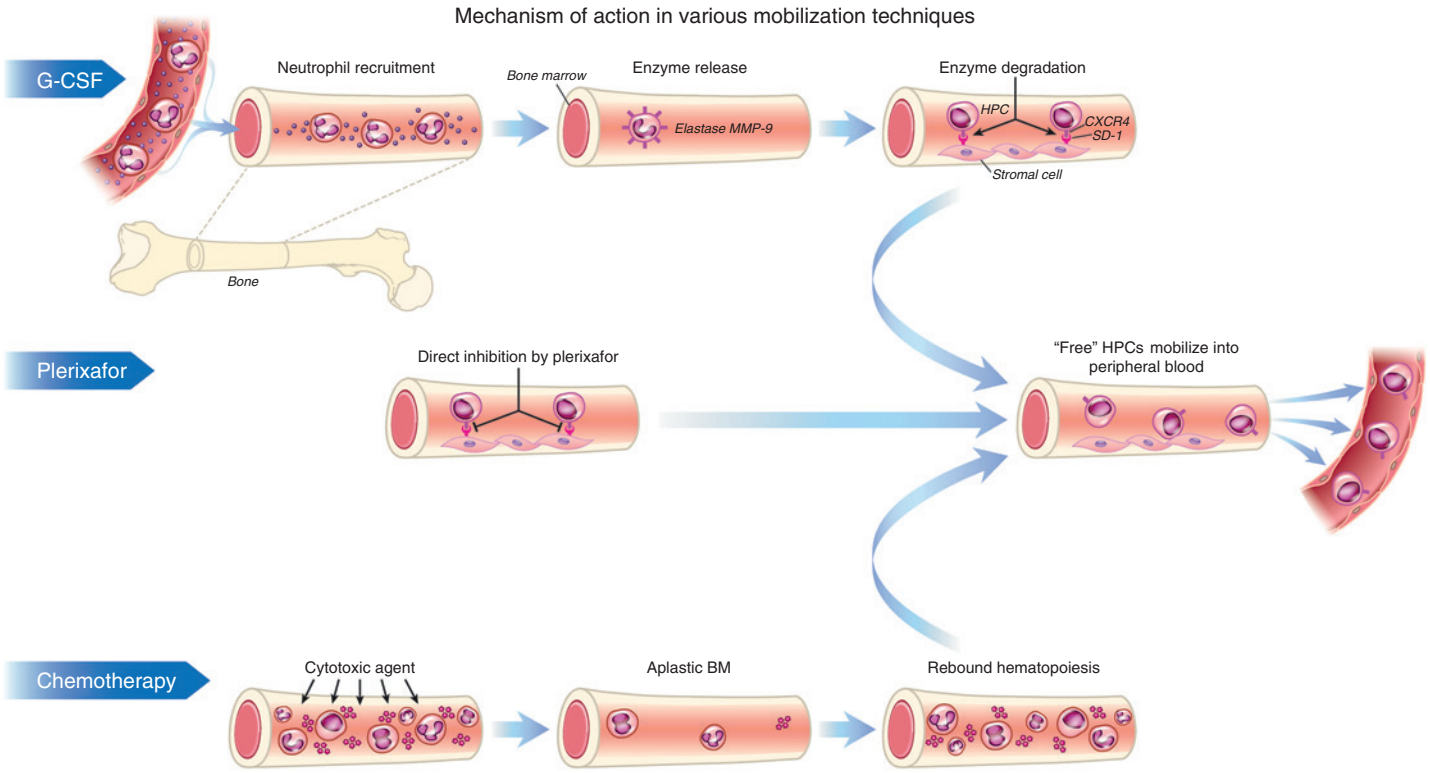


Figure 37-2 Mechanisms of action in various mobilization techniques. G-CSF, Plerixafor, and chemotherapy all have different intrinsic mechanisms of action; however, they share the same common final pathway with release of hematopoetic progenitor cells into the peripheral blood. (Figure illustration created by Paul Honermann, scientific illustrator, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, Minn.).

Currently, plerixafor has been approved for the mobilization of HPC-A from patients who have failed previous mobilization and is given in addition to G-CSF. Plerixafor is not currently approved for use by normal donors or patients with HL, although studies are underway to investigate these possible indications. Plerixafor is also not approved as a mobilizing agent in patients with acute leukemia, as it causes mobilization of leukemic cells in addition to HPCs. However, newer research points to a beneficial effect of plerixafor in the treatment of acute leukemia. By disrupting the SDF-1 and CXCR4 interactions, plerixafor causes loss of proliferation and adhesion signals for leukemic cells with loss of protective survival signals and displacement of leukemic cells into the peripheral blood. Here the leukemic cells are more easily targeted with chemotherapy (Tanhehco et al, 2013). Depending on the mobilization agent in use, the composition of the mobilized stem cell product differs and may affect transplant outcomes. Based on microarray analysis, proportionally more B cells, T cells, and mast cell genes are collected with plerixafor compared to more neutrophil and mononuclear phagocytic genes collected with G-CSF (Tanhehco et al, 2013). Furthermore, when plerixafor and G-CSF are used together, genes are upregulated that were not upregulated from either mobilizing agent alone. The composition of the stem cell product also varies in terms of the mature lymphocyte component, with plerixafor inducing greater numbers of mature lymphocytes. Two retrospective studies showed a strong positive correlation between the absolute lymphocyte count (ALC) in the collected product and the ALC in post-transplant patients with NHL and MM on Day 15. Higher ALC in the collected product also correlated with longer posttransplant overall survival and progression-free survival (Tanhehco et al, 2013).

Additionally, a number of other cytokines and monoclonal antibodies against stem cell adhesion molecules are being evaluated for their effects on HPC mobilization. These include stem cell factor, Gro-β, and hrPTH (Pusic & DiPersio, 2008).

In healthy allogeneic donors, the optimum mobilization regimen appears to be 10–16 μg/kg of G-CSF split into two doses and administered subcutaneously (Kroger & Zander, 2002). Twice-daily dosing has been shown to be superior to single dosing, likely due to the relatively short half-life of G-CSF of 3 to 4 hours (Kroger & Zander, 2002). In donors who are poor mobilizers, higher doses of G-CSF can be given; however, when G-CSF doses larger than 10–16 μg/kg are used, more adverse donor effects are seen without significant improvement in CD34+ cell yield. In autologous donors, mobilization is complicated by both the underlying disease and previous therapy. For this reason G-CSF doses >16μg/kg are needed in autologous HPC collection. If poor mobilization occurs, the patient may need to be remobilized with chemotherapy followed by growth factor, higher doses of growth factor, sequential stimulation with G-CSF and GM-CSF, or the use of plerixafor (Kessinger & Sharp, 2003; Pusic & DiPersio, 2008; Cashen, 2009).

In addition to these mobilization regimens, HPCs are mobilized by the collection procedure itself. Studies of the kinetics of HPCs during hemapheresis procedures have shown that larger numbers of HPCs are recovered than would be expected based solely on the number of cells present in the peripheral blood. This means that during the procedure, as HPCs are removed, additional HPCs are released from the marrow (Smolowicz et al, 1999).

Unfortunately, despite attempts to optimize mobilization regimens, not every patient collects a dose of peripheral blood HPCs sufficient for transplantation. Approximately 5% to 10% of patients receiving non-plerixafor mobilization will fail the mobilization attempt. In these cases of previous mobilization failure, when plerixafor is used with G-CSF, success rates of mobilization are greater than 60% (Tanhehco et al, 2013). Factors that have been found to adversely affect HPC harvest are given in Box 37-4. Some authors have found that the number of CD34+ cells within the bone marrow is a predictor of the ability of a patient to mobilize and could be used to assist in deciding whether a patient should undergo hemapheresis or bone marrow harvest (Passos-Coelho et al, 1995a).

Although mobilization increases the number of HPCs present in the peripheral blood, it can also have detrimental effects on the donor and on the HPC product. As discussed in the section on donor concerns in granulocyte collection, G-CSF is associated with minimal short-term side effects, as well as unknown long-term side effects. While these side effects may be unimportant relative to the risks from underlying disease in autologous transplantation, in the setting of allogenic donation the uncertainty of long-term risks of mobilization must be explained to the donor during the consent process. The delay in platelet recovery seen following G-CSF treatment and granulocyte collection is also seen with HPC harvest (Gillespie & Hillyer, 1996; Stroncek et al, 1996b). In autologous donors, this combined with marrow suppression from recent chemotherapy may result in the need for platelet transfusion. Mobilization is also associated with increased risk of catheter thrombosis (Lee & Klein, 1995). Finally, in

addition to mobilizing HPCs, the regimens described previously have been shown to mobilize tumor cells into the peripheral blood by some (Brugger et al, 1994; Gazitt et al, 1996) but not all authors (Passos-Coelho et al, 1995b). The study by Brugger and colleagues (1994) demonstrated mobilization of tumor cells on days 1 through 7 following the start of chemotherapy in patients without bone marrow involvement, and on days 9 through 16 in those with marrow involvement. Mobilization of tumor cells in these latter patients occurred within the time frame of HPC collection. Gazitt and colleagues (1996) found that mobilization of plasma cells in MM patients occurred later—days 5 and 6—than mobilization of stem cells—days 1 through 3. Differences in mobilization of tumor cells versus HPCs have led many to suggest that single collections early in the course of mobilization may be better than multiple collections. It should be realized that although tumor contamination does occur, the effect of this contamination on relapse is uncertain.

Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Collection Procedure

One of the first things to consider in performing an HPC collection is when to initiate the collection. In allogeneic donors, initiating collection on the fifth day after the start of G-CSF administration appears to be the preferred practice. This is due to the relatively reproducible response of healthy allogeneic donors to G-CSF administration (Kroger & Zander, 2002). For autologous donors, a number of criteria can be used in determining whether to initiate therapy. Criteria that have been used include myelocytosis and rising monocyte levels (Lee & Klein, 1995), a twofold increase in total white blood cell count in 24 hours (Lee & Klein, 1995), time of first platelet count increase (Gillespie & Hillyer, 1996), day 14 after initiation of chemotherapy (Gillespie & Hillyer, 1996), and a white blood cell (WBC) count of 10,000/μL (Dreger et al, 1993). With regard to this last indicator, Dreger and colleagues (1993) demonstrated a peak in CFU-GM 1 to 2 days after the WBC count reached 10,000/μL. Starting collection at this time avoided missing the subsequent peak in CFU-GM. Another widely used method is serial CD34+ cell counts by flow cytometry. This can be used to detect a rise in CD34+ cells and to trigger HPC harvest. Trigger levels described in the early literature should be viewed with caution because of lack of standardization in CD34+ cell measurements in the past (Lee & Klein, 1995). While a standardized protocol, the International Society of Hematotherapy and Graft Engineering (ISHAGE) protocol (Keeney et al, 1998), has been widely adopted it is not utilized by all institutions and even in those utilizing it, some variability still exists (Whitby et al, 2012). Individual institutions must determine their own trigger criteria.

Once the decision to initiate collection has been made, a number of aspects of the procedure can be modified that will influence the quality of the product. First, the instrument used to collect the HPCs determines the characteristics of the product. A number of instruments are available, including the Amicus (Fresenius, Lake Zurich, Ill.), the COM.TEC (Fresenius, Lake Zurich, Ill.), the COBE Spectra (TerumoBCT, Lakewood, Colo.), and the Spectra Optia (Terumo BCT, Lakewood, Colo.). Characteristics of these devices are given in Table 37-6. Another variable to consider is the whole blood flow rate during the procedure. It would seem that higher flow rates would result in a higher volume processed and a concurrent larger number of HPCs collected. However, in donors/patients with high white blood cell counts (greater than 35,000/μL), high whole blood flow rates have been shown to decrease CD34+ cell collection efficiency and result in lower CD34+ cell yields. (Burgstaler & Pineda, 2004; Cooling et al, 2010)

Although the whole blood flow rate can adversely affect collection efficiency, the concept of increasing the amount of blood processed to increase the HPC yield is a valid one. Standard HPC collection involves the processing of approximately 1.5 to 3 blood volumes per procedure (Lee & Klein, 1995). Alternatively, large-volume leukocytapheresis (LVL) involves processing more than 5 blood volumes, or more than 15 L (Reik et al, 1997). The benefits of such procedures include the collection of large numbers of HPCs per procedure, with the resulting need for fewer collection procedures, as well as greater mobilization of HPCs during the

BOX 37-4

Factors That Negatively Influence Mobilization for Transplantation

Premobilization Factors

Age >60 years
Progressive disease
Severe BM involvement
Type of disease (NHL)
Number of previous chemotherapy or radiation cycles
Type of chemotherapy (methotrexate, lenalidomide)
History of previous failed mobilization

Postmobilization Factors

Low CD34+ cell count on Day +4 onward
Low yield with first collection
Low white blood cell count
Platelet nadirs
Neutropenic fever
Need for platelet transfusions
Low peak CD34+ cell counts

Data from Tanhehco YC, Vogl DT, Stadtmauer EA, et al: The evolving role of plerixafor in hematopoietic progenitor cell mobilization, *Transfusion* 53:2314–2326, 2013.

TABLE 37-6

Comparison of Instrumentation for the Collection of Mononuclear Cells

	TerumoBCT COBE Spectra	TerumoBCT Spectra Optia	Fresenius COM.TEC	Fresenius Amicus
Variables				
CD 34+ cell collection efficiency	++	++	++	++
Degree of automation	+	+++	+++	+++
Flexibility with manual operation	+++	++	++	++
Mobility of device	+	+++	+	+++
Approval for both therapeutic and donor procedures in the United States	++++	++++	+	++
Extracorporeal volume	+++	+	+	+
Platelet loss	++++	+++	++	+
Time per procedure	++	++	++	+++
Sensitivity to high white blood cell count and/or high platelet count	+++	+++	Data not available	+++
Anticipated length of device support	+	+++	+++	+++

Data from Burgstaler EA: Current instrumentation for apheresis. In McLeod BC, Szczepiorkowski ZM, Weinstein R, et al, editors. *Apheresis: Principles and practice,* ed 3, Bethesda, Md, 2010, AABB Press, pp 95–130; Reinhardt P, Brauninger S, Bialleck H, et al: Automatic interface-controlled apheresis collection of stem/progenitor cells: results from an autologous donor validation trial of a novel stem cell apheresis device, *Transfusion* 51:1321–1330, 2011; Brauninger S, Bialleck H, Thorausch K, et al: Mobilized allogeneic peripheral stem/progenitor cell apheresis with Spectra Optia v.5·0, a novel, automatic interface-controlled apheresis system: Results from the first feasibility trial, *Vox Sang* 101:237–246, 2011; Brauninger S, Bialleck H, Thorausch K, et al: Allogeneic donor peripheral blood "stem cell" apheresis: Prospective comparison of two apheresis systems, *Transfusion* 52:1137–1145, 2012; Rox JM, Wenzel F, Kobbe G, et al: Influence of high inlet flow rates on efficacy of stem cell apheresis using the Spectra Optia Apheresis System, *Vox Sang* 101:337, 2011; and Kim SR, Choung HK, Kim DW, et al: Evaluation of a new cell separator for collection of peripheral blood CD34+ progenitor cells in pediatric patients, *Transfusion* 51:306–312, 2011.

procedure (Lee & Klein, 1995; Moog & Muller, 1998). In addition to these, improved yield of HPCs in patients who mobilize poorly has been seen (Smolowicz et al, 1997). Disadvantages of LVL include longer time required to complete the procedure and an increased incidence of citrate reactions (see discussion at the end of the chapter) (Moog & Muller, 1998). In standard leukocytapheresis procedures, thrombosis of central catheters is the most common complication (Goldberg et al, 1995), but in LVL, citrate reactions predominate, occurring in 33% of donations (Lin et al, 1995). This is due to the greater amount of citrate anticoagulant that is infused. Some authors have attempted to minimize this by adding heparin to the anticoagulant before the procedure (Reik et al, 1997) and/or providing IV calcium supplementation during the procedure (Bolan et al, 2002; Buchta et al, 2003).

Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Donor Concerns

Compared with other apheresis procedures, there are several unique considerations for HPC donors. These include the use of mobilizing agents, the need to process large volumes of blood, and the requirement for HLA matching between donor and recipient, which results in pediatric HPC donors who would otherwise be ineligible for other donation procedures (Winters, 2009). In adult HPC donors, the most common reactions are related to the mobilization and include bone pain in approximately 80% of donors and headache in approximately 50%. In general, the frequency of HPC reactions is less in pediatric patients, with a substantial decrease in those reactions caused by mobilization. Compared with approximately 80% of adult patients, mobilization-related reactions occur in only 15% to 17.5% of pediatric patients (Winters, 2009). Common and rare reactions associated with G-CSF are discussed earlier in the section on granulocyte collections.

The large volume (20-30 liters) of processed blood required for HPC donation may require central venous access, which is associated with a threefold increase in complications, including pneumothorax, hemothorax, thrombosis, bleeding, vascular injury and infection. Fortunately, the majority of allogenic adult HPC donors (80%-95%) can be collected using peripheral access (Winters, 2009). For pediatric donors there is a greater need for central venous access, a need which is inversely related to age. In one study, children less than 6 years were collected peripherally only 1% of the time, compared with the 80% of children greater than 13 years of age who were collected peripherally (Winters, 2009). Another effect of the large amount of blood processed in HPC collection is the greater exposure to citrate anticoagulant and therefore greater risk of hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia, hypokalemia, and metabolic alkalosis. A more detailed discussion of the effects of citrate toxicity is included in the Donor/Patient Complications Common to all Hemapheresis Procedures section later in the chapter.

In addition to common reactions, G-CSF is associated with changes in several hematologic parameters including a predictable increase in the leukocyte count, an increase in the lymphocyte count, and a decrease in the platelet count. Platelet loss can be significant, ranging from 15% to 50% decline from preprocedure platelet count depending upon the apheresis device used (Burgstaler & Pineda, 2004; Kobbe et al, 1997). In addition, patients undergoing autologous peripheral blood stem cell collections may be thrombocytopenic from the chemotherapy routinely used as part of the mobilization regimen. Bleeding complications in these patients are uncommon (Goldberg et al, 1995); however, patients may require platelet transfusions before or after collections to avoid bleeding complications.

DONOR PLASMAPHERESIS

PLASMA PRODUCTS

Two types of plasma products are collected by donor plasmapheresis: fresh frozen plasma and source plasma. Source plasma is plasma that is subsequently used to manufacture derivative products. These derivative products include albumin, immunoglobulins, coagulation factor concentrates, and laboratory reagents. Fresh frozen plasma (FFP) is the liquid component of whole blood that has been frozen within 6 to 8 hours after collection. The benefit of collecting FFP by plasmapheresis is that 600 to 700mL of plasma can be collected from a single donor. This can then be divided into multiple units of a volume equivalent to FFP derived from whole blood donations. Alternatively, the entire volume can be frozen as "jumbo plasma." These large units have the benefit of limiting donor exposure in patients requiring large volumes of FFP, such as in TPE for thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. An additional benefit is that the large volume of collection can maximize the production of frequently used or rare products such as type AB FFP or IgA-deficient FFP.

PLASMA DONOR SELECTION

The donor criteria for plasmapheresis vary according to the frequency of donation. Donors donating plasma less frequently than every 4 weeks are classified as "infrequent" donors and must fulfill whole blood donor requirements. In addition, AABB Standards require that donors taking warfarin be deferred from plasma donation for 1 week following their last dose of medication (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). This is due to the fact that the plasma of individuals taking this medication will have decreased vitamin K–dependent coagulation factor activity.

If the donor donates more frequently than every 4 weeks, he or she is classified as a "frequent" donor and must fulfill criteria outlined in the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) (Standards Committee of the AABB, 2014). These requirements are similar in many ways to those for whole blood donation, with differences in deferrals for malaria and transfusion-transmitted disease exposure (CFR, 2014). In addition, the CFR requires that frequent plasma donors have a total serum protein of at least 6.0 g/dL; this is determined before each donation. Donors must also have a serum protein electrophoresis or quantitative immunodiffusion performed every 4 months as well as an annual physical examination by a physician (CFR, 2014). Frequent plasma donors are limited to two donations within a 7-day period with at least 2 days between donations (CFR, 2014).

Both frequent and infrequent plasma donors, as well as those donors donating multicomponent collections or plateletapheresis, are limited in the amount of plasma that they can donate within a 12-month period. Donors weighing 110 to 175 lb can donate up to 12 L; those weighing more than 175 lb can donate 14.4 L (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, 1995).

PLASMA DONOR CONCERNS

The risks of donor plasmapheresis are those common to any hemapheresis procedure. In addition, concern arises over possible depletion of immunoglobulins or removal of coagulation factors faster than they can be replenished, especially in frequent donors. Studies of long-term donors (Wasi et al, 1991), as well as donors undergoing frequent donations (Ciszewski et al, 1993), have not supported these concerns.

INDICATIONS FOR THERAPEUTIC HEMAPHERESIS

Therapeutic apheresis procedures, both cytapheresis and TPE, have been used to treat a wide variety of illnesses, often without a clear scientific basis. Although the number of publications related to therapeutic apheresis has been increasing, the percentage of randomized controlled trials has been decreasing. Additionally, many of the available randomized controlled trials lack adequate power to draw definitive conclusions (Winters & King, 2013). In this way, apheresis has been analogous to the bloodletting of the early 18th century, with which it has frequently been compared. As a result, it is difficult in some cases to determine for which diseases and disorders hemapheresis is truly indicated. To help determine when hemapheresis procedures are indicated, the American Society for Apheresis (ASFA) publishes regularly updated recommendations and guidance on the use of apheresis (Schwartz et al, 2013). Diseases are grouped into four indication categories, as given in Table 37-7. In addition, each indication is assigned a recommendation grade that indicates the strength of the ASFA recommendation, as well as the quality of the evidence supporting the recommendation. These are defined in Table 37-8. Table 37-9 lists diseases that have been categorized by the ASFA in the most recent publication of the categorization.

A discussion of all of the disorders listed in Table 37-9 is beyond the scope of this chapter. The interested reader is referred to three sources: the textbooks *Apheresis: Principles and Practice* (McLeod et al, 2010) and *Therapeutic Apheresis: A Physician's Handbook* (Winters & King, 2013), both published by the AABB, and the special issue of the *Journal of Clinical Apheresis* entitled "Guidelines on the Use of Therapeutic Apheresis in Clinical Practice—Evidence-Based Approach from the Apheresis Applications Committee of the American Society for Apheresis, The Sixth Special Issue" published by the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

A final consideration is that not every possible disorder that has or could be treated by hemapheresis is included in the resources mentioned here. Similarly, not every potential disorder has been classified by the ASFA. In circumstances in which requests are made to perform therapeutic hemapheresis procedures for category III indications, or for those indications that have not been categorized, a physician must determine whether or not hemapheresis is indicated by evaluating the pathophysiology of the

TABLE 37-7
ASFA Categorization of Apheresis Indications

Category	Description
I	Disorders for which apheresis is accepted as first-line therapy, either as a primary standalone treatment or in conjunction with other modes of treatment.
II	Disorders for which apheresis is accepted as second-line therapy, either as a standalone treatment or in conjunction with other modes of treatment.
III	Optimum role of apheresis therapy is not established. Decision making should be individualized.
IV	Disorders for which published evidence demonstrates or suggests apheresis to be ineffective or harmful. Institutional review board (IRB) approval is desirable if apheresis is undertaken in these circumstances.

Data from Schwartz J, Winters JL, PadmanabhanA, et al: Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice: evidence-based approach from the Apheresis Applications Committee of the American Society for Apheresis. The Sixth Special Issue, *J Clin Apheresis* 28:145–284, 2013.
ASFA, American Society for Apheresis.

TABLE 37-8
ASFA Recommendation Grades

Recommendation Grade	Description
1A	Strong recommendation with high-quality evidence. Can apply to most patients in most circumstances without reservation.
1B	Strong recommendation with moderate-quality evidence. Can apply to most patients in most circumstances without reservation.
1C	Strong recommendation with low-quality or very-low-quality evidence. May change when higher-quality evidence becomes available.
2A	Weak recommendation with high-quality evidence. Best action may differ depending on circumstances or patient or societal values.
2B	Weak recommendation with moderate-quality evidence. Best action may differ depending on circumstances or patient or societal values.
2C	Weak recommendation with low-quality or very-low-quality evidence. Other alternatives may be equally reasonable.

Data from Schwartz J, Winters JL, Padmanabhan A, et al: Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice: evidence-based approach from the Apheresis Applications Committee of the American Society for Apheresis. The Sixth Special Issue, *J Clin Apheresis* 28:145–284, 2013.
ASFA, American Society for Apheresis.

TABLE 37-9
Diseases Treated by Hemapheresis

Disorder	Hemapheresis Procedure	ASFA Category	ASFA Recommendation Grade
ABO incompatible stem cell transplant			
Hematopoietic progenitor cell (HPC)-M (marrow)	Plasma exchange (TPE)	II	1B
HPC-A (apheresis)	TPE	II	2B
Acute disseminated encephalomyelitis (ADEM)	TPE	II	2C
Acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (Guillain-Barré syndrome)	TPE	I	1A
After IVIG treatment	TPE	III	2C
Acute liver failure	TPE	III	2B
Age-related macular degeneration (AMD); Dry AMD	Double-filtration plasmapheresis	I	1B
Amyloidosis	TPE	IV	2C
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)	TPE	IV	1C
Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA)-associated rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis (Wegner's granulomatosis)			
Dialysis independent	TPE	III	2C
Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage	TPE	I	1C
Dialysis dependent	TPE	I	1A
Anti–basement membrane antibody disease (Goodpasture's syndrome)			
Dialysis independent	TPE	I	1B
Diffuse alveolar hemorrhage	TPE	I	1C
Dialysis dependent	TPE	III	2B
Aplastic anemia	TPE	III	2C
Autoimmune hemolytic anemia			
Warm autoimmune hemolytic anemia	TPE	III	2C
Cold agglutinin disease	TPE	II	2C
Babesiosis			
Severe	Red cell exchange (RCE)	I	1C
High-risk patient	RCE	II	2C
Burn shock resuscitation	TPE	III	2B
Catastrophic antiphospholipid antibody syndrome (CAPS)	TPE	II	2C
Chronic focal encephalitis (Rasmussen's encephalitis)	TPE Immunoadsorption (IA)	III III	2C 2C
Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (CIDP)	TPE	I	1B
Coagulation factor inhibitors			

TABLE 37-9

Diseases Treated by Hemapheresis—cont'd

Disorder	Hemapheresis Procedure	ASFA Category	ASFA Recommendation Grade
Alloantibody	TPE	IV	2C
	IA	III	2B
Autoantibody	TPE	III	2C
	IA	III	1C
Cryoglobulinemia			
Symptomatic/severe	TPE	I	2A
Symptomatic/severe	IA	II	2B
Cutaneous T cell lymphoma			
Erythrodermic	Extracorporeal photopheresis (ECP)	I	1B
Nonerythrodermic	ECP	III	2C
Dilated cardiomyopathy (New York Heart Association Functional Class II-IV)	TPE	III	2C
	IA	II	1B
Familial hypercholesterolemia			
Homozygotes	Low-density lipoprotein apheresis (LDL-A)	I	1A
Heterozygotes	LDL-A	II	1A
Heterozygotes with small blood volume	TPE	II	1C
Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis, recurrent	TPE	I	1B
Graft-versus-host disease			
Chronic cutaneous	ECP	II	1B
Acute cutaneous	ECP	II	1C
Acute or chronic noncutaneous	ECP	III	2B
Heart transplant rejection			
Prophylaxis of acute cellular rejection (ACR)	ECP	II	2A
Treatment of ACR/recurrent rejection	ECP	II	1B
Desensitization, donor-specific human leukocyte antigen (HLA) antibodies	TPE	III	2C
Treatment of antibody-mediated rejection (AMR)	TPE	III	2C
Hemolytic-uremic syndrome (HUS)			
Typical HUS (infection-associated)			
E. coli	TPE	IV	1C
S. pneumonia	TPE	III	2C
Atypical HUS	TPE	II	2C
Complement factor gene mutations	TPE	I	2C
Autoantibodies to factor H: MCP mutations	TPE	IV	1C
Henoch-Schönlein Purpura (HSP)			
Crescentic	TPE	III	2C
Severe extrarenal disease	TPE	III	2C
Hyperleukocytosis			
Leukostasis	Leukocytapheresis	I	1B
Prophylaxis	Leukocytapheresis	III	2C
Hypertriglyceridemic pancreatitis	TPE	III	2C
Hyperviscosity in monoclonal gammopathy			
Symptomatic	TPE	I	1B
Prophylaxis for rituximab	TPE	I	1C
Immune thrombocytopenia (ITP), refractory	TPE	IV	2C
	IA	III	2C
Immune complex rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis	TPE	III	2B
Immunoglobulin A nephropathy			
Crescentic	TPE	III	2B
Chronic progressive	TPE	III	2C
Inclusion-body myositis	TPE	IV	2C
	Leukocytapheresis	IV	2C
Inflammatory bowel disease			
Ulcerative colitis	Adsorptive cytapheresis (AC)	II/III	1B/2B
Crohn's disease	AC	III	1B
Crohn's disease	ECP	III	2C
Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome	TPE	II	2C
Liver transplant, ABO incompatible			
Desensitization, living donor	TPE	I	1C

Continued

TABLE 37-9
Diseases Treated by Hemapheresis—cont'd

Disorder	Hemapheresis Procedure	ASFA Category	ASFA Recommendation Grade
Desensitization, deceased donor	TPE	III	2C
Humoral rejection	TPE	III	2C
Lung allograft rejection			
Bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome	ECP	II	1C
Antibody mediated rejection	TPE	III	2C
Malaria	RCE	II	2B
Multiple sclerosis			
Acute central nervous system (CNS) demyelination	TPE	II	1C
Chronic progressive	IA	III	2C
	TPE	III	2B
Myasthenia gravis			
Moderate to severe	TPE	I	1B
Prophylaxis prethymectomy	TPE	I	1C
Myeloma cast nephropathy	TPE	II	2B
Nephrogenic systemic fibrosis	TPE	III	2C
	ECP	III	2C
Neuromyelitis optica			
Acute	TPE	II	1B
Maintenance	TPE	III	2C
Overdose and poisoning			
Mushroom poisoning	TPE	II	2C
Envenomation	TPE	III	2C
Natalizumab-associated progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML)	TPE	III	2C
Tacrolimus	TPE	III	2C
Other compounds	TPE	III	2C
Paraneoplastic neurologic syndromes	TPE	III	2C
	IA	III	2C
Paraproteinemic polyneuropathies			
Immunoglobulin (Ig)G/IgA	TPE	I	1B
IgM	TPE	I	1C
Multiple myeloma	TPE	III	2C
IgG/IgA/IgM	IA	III	2C
Pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders associated with streptococcal infections (PANDAS); Sydenham's chorea	TPE	I	1B
Pemphigus vulgaris	TPE	III	2B
	ECP	III	2C
	IA	III	2C
Phytanic acid storage disease (Refsum's disease)	TPE	II	2C
	LDL-A	II	2C
Polycythemia vera and erythrocytosis			
Polycythemia vera	Erythrocytapheresis	I	1B
Secondary erythrocytosis	Erythrocytapheresis	II	1C
POEMS syndrome	TPE	IV	1C
Polymyositis/dermatomyositis	TPE	IV	2A
	Lymphocytapheresis	IV	2A
Posttransfusion purpura (PTP)	TPE	III	2C
Psoriasis	TPE	IV	2C
	AC	III	2C
Disseminated pustular	Lymphocytapheresis	III	2C
	ECP	III	2B
Pure red cell aplasia	TPE	III	2C
Red cell alloimmunization in pregnancy	TPE	III	2C
Renal transplant			
ABO compatible			
Antibody-mediated rejection	TPE	I	1B
Desensitization, living donor with donor-specific human leukocyte antigen (HLA)	TPE	I	1B
Desensitization, deceased donor with high panel reactive alloantibody (PRA)	TPE	III	2C
ABO incompatible			
Desensitization, living donor	TPE	I	1B
Humoral rejection	TPE	II	1B

TABLE 37-9
Diseases Treated by Hemapheresis—cont'd

Disorder	Hemapheresis Procedure	ASFA Category	ASFA Recommendation Grade
Group A2/A2B into B, deceased donor	TPE	IV	1B
Rheumatoid arthritis	TPE	IV	1B
Scleroderma (progressive systemic sclerosis)	TPE	III	2C
	ECP	III	2B
Schizophrenia	TPE	IV	1A
Sepsis with multiorgan failure	TPE	III	2B
Sickle cell disease			
Acute			
Stroke	RCE	I	1C
Chest syndrome, severe	RCE	II	1C
Priapism	RCE	III	2C
Multiorgan failure	RCE	III	2C
Splenic/hepatic sequestration	RCE	III	2C
Nonacute			
Prophylaxis for stroke	RCE	II	1C
Prevention of iron overload	RCE	II	1C
Vaso-occlusive pain crisis	RCE	III	2C
Preoperative management	RCE	III	2A
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)			
Severe (e.g., cerebritis, diffuse alveolar hemorrhage)	TPE	II	2C
Nephritis	TPE	IV	1B
Thrombocytosis			
Symptomatic	Thrombocytapheresis	II	2C
Prophylactic or secondary	Thrombocytapheresis	III	2C
Thrombotic microangiopathy, drug-associated			
Gemcitabine	TPE	IV	2C
Cyclosporine/Tacrolimus	TPE	III	2C
Quinine	TPE	IV	2C
Ticlopidine	TPE	I	1B
Clopidogrel	TPE	III	2B
Thrombotic microangiopathy, hematopoietic progenitor cell transplant associated, refractory	TPE	III	2C
Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)	TPE	I	1A
Thyroid storm	TPE	III	2C
Wilson's disease with fulminant hepatic failure and hemolysis	TPE	I	1C

Data from Schwartz J, Winters JL, Padmanabhan A, et al: Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice: Evidence-based approach from the Apheresis Applications Committee of the American Society for Apheresis. The Sixth Special Issue, *J Clin Apheresis* 28:145–284, 2013.
ASFA, American Society for Apheresis.
See Table 37-7 for explanation of ASFA categories and Table 37-8 for explanation of recommended grades.

disease process, the evidence that exists in the medical literature, and the risks of the hemapheresis procedure to the patient, including financial risks (Shaz et al, 2014). Hemapheresis procedures should not be attempted solely because, "We tried everything else," or because, "When in doubt, pheresis it out." The interested reader is referred to the article "How we developed and use the ASFA guidelines for therapeutic apheresis procedures" (Shaz et al, 2014), for a discussion of clinical decision-making in such circumstances.

THERAPEUTIC CYTAPHERESIS

Therapeutic Plateletapheresis

Thrombocytosis

Thrombocytosis is defined as an increase in the number of platelets present in the blood. This can range from mild increases to increases resulting in platelet counts greater than 1,000,000/μL. Thrombocytosis is most often acquired and can be divided into either primary (essential thrombocytosis, ET) or secondary causes (Table 37-10). Secondary thrombocytosis, also known as *reactive thrombocytosis (RT)*, accounts for more than 85% of thrombocytosis, even when platelet values are extremely elevated (Sulai & Tefferi, 2012). Correct classification of thrombocytosis is important because thromboembolic complications are rare in RT (unless provoked by underlying malignancy or atherosclerosis) but are more common in ET (Sulai & Tefferi, 2012). In one study, thromboembolic complications occurred in 4% of patients with RT but 56% in ET (Buss et al, 1994).

TABLE 37-10
Diseases Associated with Thrombocytosis

Primary	Essential thrombocythemia
	Agnogenic myeloid metaplasia
	Polycythemia vera
	Chronic myelogenous leukemia
Secondary (reactive)	Splenectomy
	Acute hemorrhage
	Iron deficiency
	Chronic inflammatory diseases
	Solid malignancies
	Rebound after myelosuppression

Reprinted from Buss DH, Cashell AW, O'Connor ML, et al: Occurrence, etiology, and clinical significance of extreme thrombocytosis: a study of 280 cases, *Am J Med* 96:247–253, 1994, with permission from Excerpta Medica, Inc.

Both thrombotic and hemorrhagic events may complicate thrombocytosis, with thrombotic events predominating (Sulai & Tefferi, 2012). Hemorrhagic complications include epistaxsis, gingival bleeding, and mild

BOX 37-5

Factors Associated with Complications in Primary Thrombocytosis

Thrombosis

Increasing age
Previous thrombotic event
Longer duration of thrombocythemia

Hemorrhage

Platelet count >2,000,000/μL
NSAID ingestion

Data from Cortelazzo S, Viero P, Finazzi G, et al: Incidence and risk factors for thrombotic complications in a historical cohort of 100 patients with essential thrombocythemia, *J Clin Oncol* 8:556–562, 1990; Tefferi A, Hoagland HC: Issues in the diagnosis and management of essential thrombocythemia, *Mayo Clin Proc* 69:651–655, 1994.

NSAID, Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug.

gastrointestinal or genitourinary hemorrhage. Arterial thrombotic events are more common than venous events and include both microvascular thrombosis, such as erythromelalgia, and macrovascular thrombosis, such as myocardial infarction. Particularly catastrophic outcomes are seen in patients with occlusion of large abdominal vessels and cerebral sinus thrombosis. Risk factors found to be associated with thrombotic and hemorrhagic complications in primary thrombocytosis are given in Box 37-5.

Because of concern over the occurrence of these complications, studies have focused on efforts to reduce elevated platelet counts. Treatments include medications and therapeutic thrombocytapheresis. The decision to treat and the level of treatment is based on the patient's risk stratification for thrombohemorrhagic events. Low-risk patients may simply be monitored or treated with daily aspirin, while higher-risk patients may be treated with cytoreductive agents. Hydroxyurea is the current first-line cytoreductive therapy. However, leg ulcers are a known complication of hydroxyurea and may prohibit its use. Second-line therapies include anagrelide and interferon-α. Compared with anegrelide, hydroxyurea is associated with significantly less thrombohemorrhagic events (36 vs. 55) (Sulai & Tefferi, 2012). Anagrelide also causes dose-dependent symptoms including headaches, heart palpitations, diarrhea, and fluid retention that typically resolve after 4 to 8 weeks of treatment but may be intolerable for some patients. Interferon-α is notably safe to use in pregnancy and has been shown to induce remission in 80% to 90% of patients (Sulai & Tefferi, 2012). In high-risk patients, antiplatelet therapies are often used in combination with cytoreductive therapies. Therapeutic thrombocytapheresis will be discussed later and is reserved as a temporary treatment for patients symptomatic from their thrombocytosis.

Therapeutic Thrombocytapheresis Indications

The role of hemapheresis in the treatment of thrombocytosis is to intervene when patients become symptomatic and to stabilize their condition until medical management reduces the platelet count. The platelet count itself does not correlate with the risk for thrombosis, even when the count is >1,000,000/μL (Schafer, 1984, 1996; Buss et al, 1994; Tefferi & Hoagland, 1994). Thrombocytapheresis can also be used in the preoperative setting to possibly prevent bleeding, and in the treatment of pregnant women (Isbister, 1997). The benefit of thrombocytapheresis in this latter patient group is again uncertain, as there is a lack of correlation between platelet count and pregnancy outcome (Schafer, 1996). It must be stressed that the effects of thrombocytapheresis in thrombocytosis are temporary, lasting hours to days, and medical management must be instituted at the same time.

Thrombocytapheresis procedures in this setting can be performed on any instrument that can collect platelets from donors. Typically, the goal of the procedure is to process 1 to 1.5 blood volumes (Baron et al, 1993), or to process for a defined length of time such as 3 hours (Burgstaler & Pineda, 1994). In a study comparing the ability of apheresis systems to reduce platelet counts, Burgstaler and Pineda (1994) found that processing for 3 hours resulted in a 43% reduction in platelet count using the COBE Spectra. Just as there is no defined level at which thrombosis occurs, no target for platelet reduction has been defined. The patient's symptoms should be treated, with improvement/resolution being the desired endpoint.

Thrombocytapheresis for symptomatic thrombocytosis is a category II indication with a 2C recommendation grade, and prophylactic thrombocytapheresis for asymptomatic thrombocytosis is a category III indication with a 2C recommendation grade, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Therapeutic Leukocytapheresis

Hyperleukocytosis

Hyperleukocytosis is an extreme elevation in white blood cell count. The causes of such elevations include malignant and nonmalignant disease, with the former resulting in the highest counts. This can produce a number of symptoms, including central nervous system leukostasis, characterized by neurologic deficits, and pulmonary leukostasis, characterized by poor oxygenation and chest pain (Isbister, 1997). Traditionally, because white blood cells are more rigid than red blood cells, hyperleukocytosis was thought to result in increased viscosity with changes in blood flow within the microvasculature (Isbister, 1997). Occlusion of the microvasculature would in turn result in leukostasis and ischemia. However, this may not represent the entire picture. The white blood cell count does not necessarily correlate with the onset of symptoms. More recent evidence suggests that the interactions of adhesion molecules expressed on the leukemic blasts and endothelial cells may also contribute to vascular occlusion and endothelial injury (Liesveld, 1997; Porcu et al, 2000; Stucki et al, 2001).

In addition to vascular occlusive symptoms of hyperleukocytosis, another potential problem resulting from markedly elevated white blood cell count is tumor lysis syndrome (Isbister, 1997). This most often occurs during the patient's initial chemotherapy and results from the release of massive quantities of intracellular tumor contents, producing damage to the kidneys and/or initiating disseminated intravascular coagulation.

Higher mortality rates occur during the first week of therapy among patients with white blood cell counts greater than 100,000/μL. These deaths were associated with a significantly greater number of central nervous system (CNS) hemorrhages than in those with white blood cell counts <50,000/μL (Dutcher et al, 1987). Similarly, the presence of pulmonary leukostasis is also associated with early mortality (Lester et al, 1985). In one study, average survival of patients with pulmonary leukostasis was 0.2 months versus 15.4 months in those with CNS leukostasis (Lester et al, 1985). As in thrombocytosis, the definitive treatment of these elevated white blood cell counts is to treat the underlying disease, in this case leukemia.

Therapeutic Leukocytapheresis Indications

As in therapeutic thrombocytapheresis, the role of leukocytapheresis in hyperleukocytosis is to decrease the white blood cell count to relieve symptoms and/or prevent tumor lysis syndrome. As with thrombocytapheresis, the indication for treating a patient is the presence of symptoms indicating leukostasis. Additionally, leukocytapheresis can be used to treat pregnant women to prolong pregnancy until the child can be delivered and the mother can be started on chemotherapy. Again, hemapheresis represents an adjunct to therapy and not a primary treatment modality. The definitive therapy is chemotherapy that should be started at the same time or shortly after hemapheresis is initiated, since the reduction in white blood cell counts with leukocytapheresis is temporary. Although hemapheresis can reverse or lessen leukostasis symptoms in some patients, no correlation has been found between the degree of leukoreduction, as an absolute value or as a percentage, and overall survival (Porcu et al, 1997). Limited observational studies have suggested that leukocytapheresis may improve 2- to 3-week mortality rates after diagnosis but does not appear to affect the long-term or overall survival rates of these patients (Porcu et al, 1997; Thiébaut et al, 2000; Giles et al, 2001; Tan et al, 2005). A recent meta-analysis, however, found that neither leukocytapheresis nor low-dose chemotherapy influenced early mortality (Oberoi et al, 2014). The role of leukocytapheresis in the treatment of hyperleukocytosis is therefore unclear.

Leukocytapheresis procedures share similarities with granulocyte collections, as previously described. Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) can be used to enhance the separation of cellular components during centrifugation, resulting in more efficient white blood cell removal. This is especially important when the cells are more mature granulocytes, as seen in chronic-phase chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML). The total blood volume processed is usually 8 to 10 L or two blood volumes (McLeod et al, 1993). With this strategy, reductions in white blood cell count of 50% to 85% have been reported (Burgstaler & Pineda, 1994). As in therapeutic thrombocytapheresis, no goal has been defined for the reduction in white blood cells, and improvement/resolution of the patient's symptoms is the endpoint. Hyperleukocytosis with leukostasis is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade for leukocytapheresis. Prophylactic leukocytapheresis for asymptomatic hyperleukocytosis is a category III indication

with a 2C recommendation grade, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Red Cell Exchange

Red cell exchange (RCE), or therapeutic erythrocytapheresis, is a form of cytapheresis that removes the patient's red blood cells and replaces them with allogeneic red blood cells. This form of hemapheresis has been used occasionally to treat hyperparasitemia in malaria and other parasitic infections of red blood cells such as babesiosis (Powell & Grima, 2002). It is most commonly used in the treatment of sickle cell disease (SCD).

Sickle Cell Anemia

SCD is an inherited autosomal recessive disorder present in 1 in 200 to 500 African American newborns (Wayne et al, 1993); it is also seen in people from sub-Saharan and Western Africa, Arab countries, the Mediterranean basin, and India (Davies & Roberts-Harewood, 1997). SCD results from a mutation that substitutes a valine for a glutamic acid at position six of the β-globin chain of hemoglobin, producing hemoglobin S (Davies & Roberts-Harewood, 1997). This change decreases the solubility of hemoglobin when deoxygenated, causing crystal formation that alters the shape of the red blood cells and damages their membranes. Repeated episodes lead to irreversible sickling of the cells. Even in the absence of sickling, the red blood cells in sickle cell anemia are abnormally "sticky." The combination of this "stickiness" and sickling leads to occlusion of small vessels, endothelial damage, and thrombosis (Wayne et al, 1993; Davies & Roberts-Harewood, 1997).

SCD is characterized by chronic hemolytic anemia and episodes of acute sickling crises. Crises are most often due to vascular occlusion and infarction and include crises of pain, aplasia, splenic sequestration, hemolysis, cerebrovascular accidents, acute chest pain syndrome, and priapism. They are treated by correcting factors that enhance sickling, namely, dehydration, hypoxia, and acidosis. This is done through hydration, alkalinization, and the administration of supplemental oxygen (Wayne et al, 1993; Davies & Roberts-Harewood, 1997). In addition, painful crises are treated by the administration of analgesics and sometimes by red blood cell transfusion.

Red cell transfusion in SCD can be divided into three categories: acute simple transfusion, chronic simple transfusion, and red cell exchange transfusion (RCE). Acute simple transfusion consists of the transfusion of red blood cells to increase oxygen-carrying capacity and is indicated for the treatment of symptomatic anemia, splenic sequestration crisis, aplastic crisis, blood loss, accelerated hemolysis, and preoperative preparation (Wayne et al, 1993). Chronic simple transfusion consists of regular transfusions of red blood cells in an attempt to suppress endogenous red cell production with the goal of keeping the percentage of red cells containing hemoglobin S below 30%. This form of therapy is indicated for cerebrovascular disease and debilitating vaso-occlusive symptoms. It can also be used to treat SCD complicated by pulmonary disease, cardiac disease, or high-risk pregnancy, and for preoperative preparation (Wayne et al, 1993).

RCE in SCD is used to remove hemoglobin S–containing red blood cells, while replacing them with hemoglobin A–containing red blood cells. The goal of RCE is to leave the patient with a hematocrit of approximately 30% and a "sicklecrit"—the percentage of cells containing hemoglobin S—of less than 30% (Wayne et al, 1993; Davies & Roberts-Harewood, 1997). To do this, the fraction of red cells remaining (FCR) must be calculated based on the patient's current hemoglobin S percentage and the desired hemoglobin S percentage. This can be calculated by Equation 37-6. If the patient's hematocrit is to be increased by the procedure, then the adjusted FCR must be calculated according to Equation 37-7 (COBE BCT, 1997). It should be noted that increasing the hematocrit too much can result in decreased oxygen delivery owing to increased viscosity. This results from the fact that the sickle cells, as well as the endothelium, of these patients are "stickier" than normal.

$$\text{Desired FCR\%} = (\text{Desired hemoglobin S}/\text{Current hemoglobin S}) \times 100 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 37-6)}$$

$$\text{Adjusted FCR\%} = \text{Desired FCR\%} \times (\text{Current hematocrit}/\text{Desired hematocrit}) \times 100 \quad \textbf{(Eq. 37-7)}$$

These values are then entered into the hemapheresis instrument along with other values to determine the volume of red blood cells necessary to perform the procedure. The benefits of RCE over the other strategies of transfusion are given in Box 37-6.

BOX 37-6

Benefits of Red Blood Cell Exchange by Apheresis Compared with Simple or Chronic Transfusion

- Decreased amount of hemoglobin S without increasing hematocrit and, therefore, viscosity
- Use of fewer units of red blood cells to achieve the same percentage of hemoglobin S
- Decreased contribution to iron overload in chronically transfused patients

Reprinted from McLeod BC: Introduction to the third special issue: Clinical applications of therapeutic apheresis, *J Clin Apheresis* 15:1–5, 2000, with permission of Wiley-Liss, Inc., a subsidiary of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Acute chest syndrome is a crisis characterized by respiratory symptoms, chest and abdominal pain, infiltrates on chest radiograph, and an abnormal chest examination. Its etiology is multifactorial and includes underlying infection. The result is hypoxia leading to occlusion of small vessels in the lung and possible thrombosis of the pulmonary arteries (Davies & Roberts-Harewood, 1997). It occurs in 20% to 50% of sickle cell patients and has a mortality rate of 2% to 14%, with a higher mortality rate in adults. Repeated episodes may progress to chronic pulmonary disease (Wayne et al, 1993). Treatment includes hydration, supplemental oxygen, and antibiotics. RCE is used to remove hemoglobin S–containing cells and has been associated with improvement (Wayne et al, 1993).

Priapism is a painful, sustained erection that results from occlusion of vessels in the corpus cavernosum by sickled cells. It is associated with dehydration and acidosis and is treated with supplemental oxygen, hydration, and analgesics (Wayne et al, 1993). It is seen in 40% of adult males and 6% of preadolescent males with SCD. If prolonged (over 6 hours), priapism is referred to as fulminant priapism and may require surgical intervention or RCE. A significant percentage of patients will suffer from impotence if not treated (Davies & Roberts-Harewood, 1997). Although RCE has been reported as effective in treating priapism, it is not without risks. A syndrome of neurologic events called ASPEN syndrome (association of sickle cell disease, priapism, exchange transfusion, and neurologic events) has been reported to occur in some patients treated with RCE. It consists of neurologic events ranging from headache and seizure activity to obtundation requiring ventilator support. The syndrome is thought to be due to decreased cerebral blood flow from the abrupt elevation in hematocrit, as well as the release of vasoactive substances from the penile detumescence. Aggressive treatment has been associated with complete neurologic recovery (Siegel et al, 1993). Patients suffering from priapism undergoing RCE should be monitored for symptoms of ASPEN syndrome.

Stroke is a common and devastating symptom of SCD, which occurs in 11% of patients by 20 years of age (Adams et al, 1998). Two studies have addressed the role of chronic red cell transfusion therapy to prevent first stroke in children with SCD, commonly referred to as the STOP trial and the STOP II trial (Adams et al, 1998; Adams & Brambilla, 2005). In the STOP trial, 130 children defined to be at high risk for stroke through transcranial Doppler screening were randomized to receive either standard care or chronic red cell transfusion every 3 to 4 weeks (simple transfusion or RCE). There were 11 stroke events in the standard care group versus only 1 stroke event in the transfusion group (Adams et al, 1998). Due to the evidence that transfusion greatly decreases the risk for first stroke in children, the STOP trial was halted prematurely.

The STOP II trial then investigated how long SCD patients should undergo chronic transfusion therapy. Children with SCD who were at high risk for stroke and had already received red cell transfusions for 30 months or longer with normal Doppler results were randomized to either continue or stop transfusion. The STOP II trial was also halted early given the development of high-risk Doppler results in 14 patients and stroke in 2 patients who stopped transfusions early, compared with no high-risk Doppler results or stroke in the patients who remained on chronic transfusion therapy. The mean number of months between last transfusion and either high-risk Doppler results or stroke was 4.6 months (Adams & Brambilla, 2005). In practice, the risks of chronic transfusion, including iron overload, alloimmunization, and infectious disease transmission must be weighed against the risk for stroke in each SCD patient. In all SCD patients undergoing chronic transfusions, appropriate management may alleviate some of the risks associated with transfusion, for example decreasing alloimmunization by matching for ABO, C, D, E, and Kell antigens. Additional crises and disorders in SCD patients for which RCE is indicated include cerebrovascular accident, retinal artery vaso-occlusion, hepatic

failure, and septic shock. RCE has also been used to decrease the percentage of hemoglobin S at the initiation of chronic simple transfusion therapy, to prevent sickling due to contrast dye during cerebral angiograms, and in preparation for surgery (Wayne et al, 1993). It should be noted that a study has shown no benefit of RCE versus a conservative transfusion regimen designed to increase hemoglobin to 10g/dL in preventing complications of surgery (Vichinsky et al, 1995).

Stroke in SCD is a category I indication with a 1C recommendation grade for RCE. Acute chest syndrome, stroke prophylaxis, and prophylaxis for iron overload in sickle cell anemia are all category II indications with 1C recommendation grades for RCE. Non-acute indications for RCE in SCD patients according to the ASFA include primary or secondary stroke prevention (category II indication, 1C recommendation grade), multiorgan failure (category III indication, 2C recommendation grade), vaso-occlusive pain crisis (category III indication, 2C recommendation grade), and, finally, preoperative management (category III indication, 2A recommendation grade) (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Other indications for RCE, which are not specific to patients with SCD include treatment of severe malaria or babesiosis. Severe malaria is a category II indication with a 2B recommendation grade for RCE. Severe babesiosis is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade, and treatment of high-risk babesiosis patients without severe symptoms is a category II indication with a 2C recommendation grade for RCE (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Extracorporeal Photopheresis

Extracorporeal photopheresis, also called *extracorporeal photochemotherapy (ECP)* or *photopheresis*, is a form of leukocytapheresis. In this procedure, a small percentage of a patient's white blood cells are collected by hemapheresis. These cells are then treated by incubation with a psoralen compound and are exposed to ultraviolet A (UVA) irradiation within the instrument. Following this, the treated cells are reinfused into the patient (Zic et al, 1999). This then appears to result in a disease-dependent immunomodulatory effect that may stimulate or suppress an immune response. Currently, this therapy is approved by the FDA only for the treatment of cutaneous T cell lymphoma (CTCL). In 2006, the Centers for Medicare Services (CMS) expanded their approval of ECP to include not only CTCL but also chronic graft-versus-host disease and acute cardiac allograft rejection. In 2012, CMS further expanded their approval to include the treatment of chronic rejection characterized by bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome in patients with lung transplantation. For coverage, however, CMS requires that the treated patient be enrolled in a research protocol fulfilling certain criteria.

Extracorporeal Photopheresis Indications

Cutaneous T Cell Lymphoma. The first disease treated by ECP was CTCL, a skin-based T cell lymphoma characterized by a long premalignant phase (4 to 10 years) of eczematous skin lesions. Following this, the disease progresses through a series of phases characterized by increasing skin involvement until the development of the tumor phase, characterized by cutaneous masses. CTCL may then progress to a leukemic phase known as *Sézary syndrome*, in which malignant clonal CD4+ T cells are found circulating in the blood. Median survival depends on the stage of the disease at diagnosis; 10-year survival ranges from 85% for the initial plaque phase to 20% for the tumor stage (Zic et al, 1999).

In 1987, Edelson reported responses in 64% of 37 CTCL patients treated with ECP (Edelson et al, 1987). Combined analysis of more than 400 patients reported in the literature has found an overall response rate of CTCL to ECP of 55.7%, with 17.6% of patients having a complete response. Response rates vary from 64% for stage IB patients (generalized patches and plaques) to 27.3% for stage IVB patients (visceral involvement) (Zic, 2003). Factors predictive of response to ECP are given in Box 37-7. The median time until clearing of skin lesions in such patients is 11 months; patients who show an early response (clearing in 6 to 8 months) maintain their response (Zic et al, 1999). ECP has also been associated with longer survival from time of diagnosis (longer than 60 months among ECP-treated patients versus 31 months for patients receiving chemotherapy) (Christensen & Heald, 1991).

The mechanism of action of ECP in CTCL has not been completely elucidated. ECP is known to induce a CD8+ T cell response toward expanded pathologic T cell clones within the patient (Zic, 2003). It is thought that upon exposure to UVA, 8-methoxypsoralen (8-MOP) reacts with cellular constituents, irreversibly binding to DNA, proteins, and lipids. This induces an increase in the number of HLA class I molecules present on the exposed cell, as well as apoptosis of the targeted lymphocytes. It is interesting to note that apoptosis occurs in exposed lymphocytes, including malignant T cells, but not monocytes. Monocytes, as a result of their exposure to subphysiologic temperatures and contact with walls of the tubing during collection and photoactivation, undergo selective gene activation and transcription allowing them to differentiate into immature dendritic cells (DCs). Newer evidence suggests that platelets are the driving force behind the monocyte-to-DC maturation pathway (Edelson, 2014). First, plasma fibrinogen coats the ECP plastic flow chamber allowing resting platelets to adhere to the fibrinogen with their αIIbβ3 receptors. The adherent platelets are then activated to express P-selectin, which serves as a receptor for monocyte binding via ligand PSGL-1. Activated monocytes can then bind additional platelet ligands and are induced to mature into DCs. These DCs phagocytose the apoptotic malignant T cells and can present the tumor antigens from these cells within their HLA class I molecules. Upon reinfusion of the UVA-exposed ECP product, these antigen-presenting cells can then activate cytotoxic T cells, resulting in an immune response toward the abnormal T cell clones (Zic, 2003). This is associated with a shift in the patient's cytokine profile from that of a Th2 response to a Th1 response (Zic, 2003). The beneficial effects of the procedure do not result from direct cytotoxicity of 8-MOP and UVA on abnormal T cells or tumor cells, as only 10% to 15% of the lymphocyte pool is harvested, and less than 5% of cutaneous T cell lymphoma cells are treated (Christensen & Heald, 1991).

Erythrodermic CTCL is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade for ECP, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013). Nonerythrodermic CTCL is a category III indication with a 2C recommendation grade for ECP (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Graft-versus-Host Disease and Solid Organ Rejection. Chronic graft-versus-host disease (cGVHD) occurs in 27% to 50% of matched related sibling donor transplants and in 42% to 72% of unrelated bone marrow or peripheral blood stem cell transplants (Foss et al, 2002). Factors associated with cGVHD are given in Box 37-8.

A number of studies have reported the use of ECP in cGVHD (Foss et al, 2002). In these studies, patients with cGVHD unresponsive to other therapies have shown improvement in skin, oral, and visceral (hepatic) lesions with the use of ECP. Treatment has been associated with normalization of CD4/CD8 ratios, decreased numbers of NK cells, earlier tapering of steroid doses, and maintenance of the response for a median of 12 months. No increase in infection rates or CMV activation was noted in the patients studied (Foss et al, 2002). Those patients who were more likely to respond were those who started therapy within 10 months of transplant.

As with CTCL, the mechanism behind ECPin cGVHD is unclear. It is remarkable that therapy associated with immune activation in one disease (CTCL) is associated with immune suppression in another (cGVHD). Platelet-induced monocyte-to-DC maturation (previously

BOX 37-7

Characteristics Indicating Best Responders to Extracorporeal Photopheresis among CTCL Patients

Erythrodermic skin stage
WBC count <15,000/mm^3
Disease of short duration
Normal percentage of CD8+ T cells
Immunocompetent patient
Absence of bulky lymph nodes or visceral disease
Presence of Sézary cells in the circulation

Data from Zic JA: The treatment of cutaneous T-cell lymphoma with photopheresis, *Dermatol Ther* 16:337–346, 2003.
CTCL, Cutaneous T cell lymphoma; *WBC,* white blood cell.

BOX 37-8

Factors Associated with the Development of Chronic Graft-versus-Host Disease

Increased donor age
Increased recipient age
Human leukocyte antigen (HLA) disparity
Unrelated donor
Prior acute graft-versus-host disease (GVHD)
Alloimmunized female donor

Data from Foss FM, Gorgun G, Miller KB: Extracorporeal photopheresis in chronic graft-versus-host disease, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 29:719–725, 2002.

discussed in CTCL) may also be an essential component of ECPs effects in cGVHD. Edelson proposed that it is the level of maturity of DCs that determines whether ECP has an upregulatory or downregulatory effect on T cell responses (Edelson, 2014). When monocytes are exposed to UVA-activated 8-MOP, exposure is not uniform, but occurs in a Gaussian distribution. Those monocytes that receive higher exposures have truncated maturation and become tolerizing immunosuppressive immature DCs, while those monocytes that receive minimal exposure mature into long-living immunostimulatory DCs. Given that ECP's therapeutic effect occurs much faster with GVHD and organ transplant rejection than with CTCL, the less mature immunosuppressive DCs might dominate early while the fully mature immunostimulatory DCs would dominate later. In cGVHD patients, ECP is also associated with a decrease in antigen recognition and processing by DCs, as well as decreased numbers of DCs. This, in turn, decreases CD8+ T cell stimulation, with a shift in Th1 response to a Th2 response through inhibition of Th2 cytokine secretion (Foss et al, 2002). The result is decreased alloreactivity by T cells.

Similar to cGVHD, solid organ rejection is a disorder of alloreactive T cells. ECP has similarly been used to treat rejection in heart, lung, kidney, and liver transplant. In cardiac transplantation, the use of ECP has been reported to histologically reverse 89% of treated rejection episodes without side effects. Similar rates have been reported with other transplant types (Dall'Amico & Murer, 2002).

Chronic cutaneous GVHD is a category II indication with a 1B recommendation grade. Acute cutaneous GVHD is a category II indication with a 1C recommendation grade. Treatment of cardiac allograft rejection depends on whether the rejection is humoral (category III, 2C recommendation grade) or cellular (category II, 1B recommendation grade). Prophylaxis of cardiac allograft rejection is a category I indication with a 1A recommendation grade. GVHD involving organs other than the skin and heart, whether acute or chronic, is a category III indication with a 2C recommendation grade for ECP, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Other Diseases. Additional diseases that have been treated with ECP are listed in Table 37-11. Many, but not all, of these diseases have a common thread of T cell alloreactivity or autoreactivity. Some of these diseases have been assigned categories and recommendation grades by the ASFA; the reader is referred to Table 37-9.

TABLE 37-11

Diseases in Which Extracorporeal Photopheresis Has Been Reported as Effective

Disease Category	Specific Example
Malignancy	Cutaneous T cell lymphoma (CTCL)
Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD)	Mucocutaneous GVHD Hepatic GVHD
Organ rejection	Heart Kidney Lung
Autoimmune diseases	Systemic lupus erythematosus Rheumatoid arthritis Juvenile dermatomyositis Pemphigus vulgaris Epidermolysis bullosa acquisita Crohn's disease Psoriasis Sclerodema
Infectious diseases	Chronic Lyme arthritis AIDS-related complex (ARC)
Other diseases	Severe atopic dermatitis Psoriasis Nephrogenic systemic fibrosis

Data from van Iperen HP, Beijersbergen van Henegouwen GM: Clinical and mechanistic aspects of photopheresis, *J Photochem Photobiol* B 39:99–109, 1997; Zic JA, Miller JL, Stricklin GP, et al: The North American experience with photopheresis, *Ther Apher* 3:50–62, 1999; Mathur K, Morris S, Deighan C: Extracorporeal photopheresis improves nephrogenic fibrosing dermopathy/nephrogenic systemic fibrosis: Three case reports and review of literature, *J Clin Apher* 23:144–150, 2008; and Schwartz J, Winters JL, Padmanabhan A, et al: Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice: Evidence-based approach from the Apheresis Applications Committee of the American Society for Apheresis. The Sixth Special Issue, *J Clin Apheresis* 28:145–284, 2013.

Extracorporeal Photopheresis Procedure

The ECP procedure is performed using the UVAR XTS or CELLEX photopheresis system (Therakos, Inc., Exton, Pa.) with the UVAR XTS scheduled for discontinuation by 2016. For the UVAR XTS, following venipuncture, 125mL or 225mL of whole blood is collected in a Latham centrifuge bowel, where the components are separated. Heparin or acid-citrate-dextrose (ACD) can be used as the anticoagulant. The buffy coat is retained in a collection bag, and the remaining blood components are returned to the patient. Because this is an intermittent centrifuge, six cycles (12-mL bowl) or three cycles (22-mL bowl) of whole blood collection are performed to collect a 270-mL MNC suspension. This consists of 80mL of plasma, 90mL of saline, and 100mL of MNC. After completion of the collection, 8-MOP is added to the bag. The MNC suspension is then pumped through a photoactivation chamber. This consists of transparent acrylic plates between which is sandwiched a tortuous channel. Adjacent to the plate is a UVA light source that irradiates the 8-MOP–containing buffy coat. The MNC suspension is photoactivated for 30 minutes. Following completion of photoactivation, the buffy coat is then reinfused into the patient. The general process for the CELLEX device is similar to that for the UVAR XTS, in that a buffy coat is harvested, exposed to 8-MOP, photoactivated, and reinfused to the patient. CELLEX differs from UVAR XTS, however, in that it is a continuous flow device, can be used to perform a double- or single-needle procedure, and has peristaltic pumps, as opposed to pneumatic pumps. This device also has only a single-size centrifugation bowl. Results of these changes are that the extracorporeal volume of the CELLEX is less than that of the UVAR XTS (216 to 266 mL for the CELLEX vs. 220 to 620 mL for the UVAR XTS), and the total procedure time is less (1.5 hours for the CELLEX vs. 3 hours for the UVAR XTS). In addition, the CELLEX provides greater flexibility in programming of the device (Burgstaler, 2010). This means that much smaller patients, including pediatric patients, who could not be treated previously can now receive ECP. A typical course of ECP for CTCL consists of two treatments on consecutive days every 4 weeks (Christensen & Heald, 1991). Following improvement in disease symptoms, the interval between procedures may be prolonged, and the patient weaned from ECP. For other indications, the frequency of treatment varies; the reader is referred to the ASFA guidelines for additional information (Schwartz et al, 2013).

An important aspect of this procedure is the clean separation of whole blood into plasma and buffy coat. The product must allow the transmission of UVA light to photoactivate the 8-MOP. The presence of significant numbers of red blood cells within the leukocytapheresis product will reflect or absorb the UVA irradiation, resulting in failure to photoactivate the product. As a result, it is critical that the hematocrit of the leukocytapheresis product be less than 7% (Zic et al, 1999). Similarly, it is important that excess plasma not be present. Excess plasma will dilute the white blood cells, resulting in fewer passages of each cell through the photoactivation chamber (Zic et al, 1999).

Two complications of this procedure are photosensitivity and possible leukemogenesis. Patients undergoing ECP are sensitive to sunlight (Knobler et al, 1993). They should avoid direct or indirect sunlight exposure for 24 hours following completion of the procedure by covering exposed skin, using sunscreen, and wearing wraparound ultraviolet (UV) protective eyewear. Another possible complication of ECP could be mutagenesis from DNA damage caused by photoactivation of the 8-MOP. This theoretically could result in the reinfusion of cells with damaged DNA still capable of cell division. These cells could then give rise to hematologic malignancies. Although evidence has not been found to support this concern, it is still a theoretical risk of the procedure (van Iperen et al, 1997).

THERAPEUTIC PLASMA EXCHANGE

Mechanisms of Action of Plasma Exchange

Several different disease-dependent mechanisms of action are responsible for the beneficial effects of therapeutic plasma exchange (TPE). The two most obvious and well-understood mechanisms include removal of disease-causing substances from the blood (i.e., IgM in Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia) and replacement of deficient substances by utilizing plasma from healthy donors as the replacement fluid (i.e., FFP as a replacement source of ADAMTS13 in TTP). However, more recent studies suggest that the beneficial effects of TPE in many diseases may be more than is explained by simple removal of humoral factors or replacement of deficient molecules and represents alterations in the immune system (Reeves & Winters, 2014). Table 37-12 lists possible mechanisms of action of TPE

TABLE 37-12
Mechanisms of Action of Therapeutic Plasma Exchange by Disease

Mechanism	Disease
Removal of pathologic antibodies	Multiple myeloma, Goodpasture's syndrome, pretransplant desensitization, and so on
Replacement of deficient plasma components	TTP (ADAMTS13 in donor FFP)
Increased sensitivity of lymphocytes and plasma cells to chemotherapy	AIDP, systemic sclerosis, CNS demyelinating disease
Removal of immune complexes with enhanced monocyte/macrophage function	SLE
Removal of proinflammatory cytokines and adhesion molecules	MG, ANCA + vasculitis, TTP, therapy-resistant sepsis
Changes in lymphocyte numbers	AIDP, systemic sclerosis, SLE
Increased T regulatory cells and T suppressor activity	AIDP, CIDP, SLE
Correction of Th1/Th2 ratio favoring Th1 predominance	AIDP, SLE

Data from Reeves HM, Winters JL: The mechanisms of action of plasma exchange, *Br J Haematol* 164:342–351, 2014.

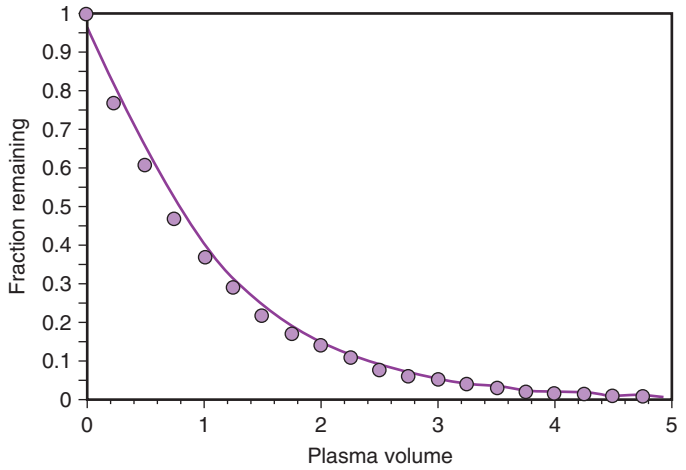


Figure 37-3 Removal of substances during plasma exchange. The removal of substances limited to the intravascular compartment, whether pathologic or normal, can be predicted by an exponential equation (see Equation 37-8). A fixed percentage of the remaining substance is removed with each blood volume. This means that as the number of blood volumes processed increases, a progressively smaller amount of the substance is removed, resulting in diminishing returns.

for different diseases, including many novel mechanisms involving alterations in immune function.

Several more recently investigated mechanisms of action of TPE are briefly discussed later. By removing pathologic antibodies pretransplant in recipients of cross-match or ABO-incompatible organs, TPE combined with immunosuppression has greatly improved our ability to perform successful incompatible organ transplants. When used to treat autoimmune diseases, such as AIDP or systemic sclerosis, TPE can cause a postprocedure rebound in which the antibody-producing cells have increased sensitivity to immunosuppressant agents. This is thought to be due to the loss of negative feedback on the antibody-producing cells induced by removal of sufficient immunoglobulin during TPE (Reeves & Winters, 2014). In diseases mediated by immune complexes, such as SLE, TPE not only directly removes immune complexes, but may indirectly aid in immune complex destruction and clearance through enhanced monocyte function, improved reticuloendothelial function, and upregulation of complement-clearing receptors on red blood cells. Another proposed mechanism of action of TPE includes cytokine removal, although the supporting evidence is mixed with several studies also indicating cytokine production through contact with the apheresis device (Reeves & Winters, 2014). In patients with autoimmune diseases, alterations in the immune system may explain some of the mechanisms of action for TPE. These changes include decreased B cells, increased T cells, increased T suppressor cell function, and a shift from Th2 to Th1 response. While in some disorders the mechanism of action of TPE may simply involve removal of pathologic immunoglobulin or replacement of deficient protein, in most autoimmune diseases, the mechanism involves complex alterations in immune function that are not well understood.

Efficacy of Removal

The goal of TPE is to remove a pathologic substance present within the plasma by removing the patient's plasma and replacing it with a substitution fluid. The removal is nonspecific in that all of the substances present in the plasma, including normal substances, are removed. Removal of a substance can be predicted by Equation 37-8, as shown in Figure 37-3 (Derksen et al, 1984b):

$$Y = Y_0 e^{-x} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 37-8)}$$

where

Y is the final concentration of the substance
Y_0 is the initial concentration of the substance
x is the total number of times the patient's volume is exchanged

This model assumes that the intravascular compartment is closed, and that exchange between the intravascular and extravascular compartments does not occur. Based on this equation, 30% of the initial quantity of a substance will remain within the patient's plasma after one plasma volume exchange, and 10% will remain after the exchange of two plasma volumes. As more plasma volumes are exchanged, a fixed percentage of the remaining substance is removed (approximately 70%), such that a smaller and smaller total amount is removed. As can be seen in Figure 37-3, the marginal benefit of removing additional plasma volumes declines after 1.5 to 2 plasma volumes, so most TPE procedures are limited to 1 to 1.5 plasma volume exchanges.

The assumption that no exchange occurs between intravascular and extravascular compartments during the procedure is not valid for all substances. As a result, the amount removed as well as the concentration in the plasma at the end of the procedure may not match that predicted. For example, IgM is located predominantly within the intravascular space (76%), with negligible influx from the extravascular space (Derksen et al, 1984b). As a result, during TPE, the equation will accurately predict the removal of IgM. IgA, however, is evenly distributed between the intravascular space and the extravascular space and can move between the two compartments. During TPE, as the concentration of IgA within the intravascular space falls, IgA within the extravascular space follows its concentration gradient and moves into the intravascular space. The result is that after the procedure is complete, the plasma concentration of IgA is not as low as predicted; this would lead one to believe that the procedure was not as efficient as expected (Derksen et al, 1984b). If one measures the IgA within the collection bag, one would see that the total amount of IgA removed was greater than predicted, and that the procedure was more efficient than expected. Not only was IgA being removed from the intravascular compartment, it was also being removed from the extravascular compartment (Derksen et al, 1984b).

Four patterns of removal in TPE using 5% albumin as the replacement fluid have been identified. In the first pattern, seen with fibrinogen and C3, the concentration decreases to a greater extent than expected. This is due to the combination of removal and consumption of these factors during the procedure. In the second pattern, such as with IgM, cholesterol, and alkaline phosphatase, the change in concentration is what is predicted. These substances are confined to the intravascular space or have little exchange between compartments. In the third pattern, as seen with lactate dehydrogenase (LD) and creatinine phosphokinase (CPK), the concentration is less than predicted owing to movement of these substances between compartments. Finally, in the fourth pattern, concentrations are much greater than predicted or do not change at all, which may be due to rapid equilibration. This pattern is seen with small inorganic and organic molecules such as potassium, bicarbonate, and glucose (Orlin & Berkman, 1980).

The pattern of removal of immunoglobulins during TPE depends on whether normal immunoglobulin or a paraprotein is involved. The removal of normal IgG has been reported to be predictable by Equation 37-8; it behaves as if it is entirely intravascular (Chopek & McCullough, 1980; Orlin & Berkman, 1980). Others, however, have reported behavior similar to that of a substance equilibrating between the two compartments (Derksen et al, 1984b). In the case of paraproteins, the removal of

immunoglobulins may appear to be half of what is expected when looking at plasma concentrations (Chopek & McCullough, 1980). This difference is attributed to expansion of the patient's plasma volume due to the presence of the paraprotein (Chopek & McCullough, 1980). In other words, the plasma volume of the patient is greater than what is predicted by standard equations (e.g., Equation 37-3), such that if these are used to calculate a 1.5 plasma volume exchange, the real volume exchanged will be less.

In addition to the effect on removal of the substance from the plasma, the distribution between the intravascular and extravascular compartments and the ability to move between these compartments will influence the rise in plasma levels of the substance following TPE. The concentrations of substances that diffuse rapidly and have a large extravascular component will rise rapidly. The increase in concentrations of those substances that are predominantly intravascular will depend on the rate of synthesis of the substance. Most substances return to normal levels within 48 to 72 hours. Exceptions to this include fibrinogen, complement, and immunoglobulins, for which mean recoveries at 48 hours were 65%, 65%, and 44% of initial values, respectively. Cholesterol also shows a slow recovery, with 67% to 72% of preapheresis values achieved 1 week after hemapheresis (Orlin & Berkman, 1980).

For the majority of substances removed by TPE, the rate of synthesis does not increase following the procedure (Derksen et al, 1984a). For some substances, especially the immunoglobulins, rebound may occur. Rebound is an increase in concentration after completion of a procedure to a level greater than that seen initially (Derksen et al, 1984a; Dau, 1995). This may result from the removal of inhibitory substances by the procedure or the removal of negative feedback on the responsible cell. As a result of this, concurrent treatment with cytotoxic agents during the procedure is suggested to prevent rebound (Dau, 1995). In addition, TPE may enhance the efficacy of cytotoxic agents by increasing the metabolic activity of autoreactive immune cells, making them more sensitive to such agents (Dau, 1995). Another point related to this is that TPE will only temporarily decrease the level of a pathologic substance unless additional therapy is instituted to stop its production. This means that in most cases, TPE should be viewed as an adjunct to other therapies.

Replacement Fluids

In TPE, 1 to 1.5 plasma volumes are removed; therefore, this volume must be replaced with another fluid. A number of replacement fluids are available, each of which has advantages and disadvantages. Replacement fluids used in TPE include 5% albumin, FFP, plasma cryoprecipitate reduced (cryopoor plasma), saline, and HES.

Albumin in a concentration of 5% is the most widely used replacement fluid. It is a hyperoncotic fluid for most patients and therefore will result in the net flow of fluid from the extravascular space. This can result in a mild dilutional anemia (Chopek & McCullough, 1980). The main advantage of 5% albumin is that it does not transmit viral diseases. Disadvantages, however, are that it is expensive and has at times been in short supply because of FDA-mandated recalls. Hypotensive reactions due to prekallikrein activation (Alving et al, 1978) and febrile reactions due to pyrogens have been reported (Pool & McLeod, 1995). Both of these reactions are rare. In addition, the albumin may not function comparably to the albumin present in the plasma before exchange. Although exchange with 5% albumin provides physiologic concentrations of the protein, the drug- and metabolite-binding sites of this albumin are occupied by preservatives such as sodium caprylate and may not be available for normal physiologic functions (Koch-Weser & Sellers, 1976). Standard practice is to use a 5% albumin solution for 60% to 70% of the replacement volume. The remaining volume is replaced by crystalloid (normal saline).

FFP is used as the primary replacement fluid in treating thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) (see discussion of this disease) and may also be used to prevent the dilutional coagulopathy seen with repeated TPE. Advantages of FFP are that it is relatively inexpensive and provides physiologic concentrations of coagulation factors. Disadvantages include the danger of transmission of transfusion-transmitted viral diseases, transfusion reactions, the need to have an ABO-compatible product, and an increase in the frequency of citrate reactions (see discussion at the end of the chapter). This last disadvantage results from the fact that the patient is infused not only with citrate anticoagulant but also with the citrate within the FFP. When used to treat TTP, 60% to 70% of the replaced volume will be FFP, and the remainder will be normal saline. When used to prevent coagulopathy, units of FFP can be given at the end of the procedure, with most of the replacement volume being 5% albumin.

Plasma cryoprecipitate reduced is also used in the treatment of TTP, specifically in those unresponsive to TPE with FFP. The advantages and disadvantages of plasma cryoprecipitate reduced are the same as those for FFP, with the exception that plasma cryoprecipitate reduced does not provide physiologic concentrations of all coagulation factors, lacking fibrinogen and factor VIII.

Saline is used for a portion of most TPE procedures (30% to 40%); it is used to prime the instrument and to make the anticoagulant solution. The use of saline for greater volumes is problematic in that it is a crystalloid and not a colloid and can redistribute into the extravascular space, resulting in hypotension and edema following the procedure. The advantages of saline are that it is inexpensive and does not carry the risk for transmitting disease.

The final option is the use of synthetic colloidal fluid such as HES. HES is derived from plant starches and consists of large starch molecules that can be added to saline to generate a colloidal solution, which will remain in the intravascular space. TPE using HES as the replacement fluid have been described (Burgstaler & Pineda, 1990; Rock et al, 1997). The benefits of HES are that it is inexpensive and does not carry infectious disease transmission risks. The disadvantages include allergic reactions and renal dysfunction (see discussion at the end of this chapter). Also, high molecular weight HES hetastarch has a half-life of 25.5 hours, so significant amounts can persist after frequent TPE procedures, resulting in volume expansion and alterations in partial thromboplastin time, total protein, albumin, hematocrit, and fibrinogen (Rock et al, 1997). These changes are less frequent with pentastarch, a low molecular weight HES, because of its shorter half-life. HES is an alternative replacement solution for those who have reactions to albumin or FFP (Burgstaler & Pineda, 1990). It can also be used in those who require TPE, but whose religious beliefs preclude the use of replacement fluids derived from blood.

Patient Concerns

TPE is a relatively safe procedure but, like any procedure, it can be associated with complications that are significantly higher when FFP is used as the replacement fluid (Basic-Jukic et al, 2005; Shemin et al, 2007; See the "Donor/Patient Complications Common to All Hemapheresis Procedures" section later in the chapter). Many of the concerns about patients undergoing TPE involve the removal of unintended substances such as therapeutic drugs and coagulation factors. Despite the fact that TPE has been a treatment modality for a variety of diseases for over 50 years, little information is available regarding its effects on therapeutic drugs. The effects of TPE on a variety of medications are given in Box 37-9. From a practical standpoint, because TPE may remove a portion of a drug

BOX 37-9

Effects of Plasma Exchange on Medications as Reported in the Literature

Medications That Do Not Require Dose Supplementation Because of Insignificant Removal, Redistribution from Tissue Stores, or Drug Binding to Red Blood Cells	Medications That Are Removed and May Require Dose Supplementation
Acyclovir	Basiliximab
Azathioprine	Ceftazidime
Carbamazepine	Ceftriaxone
Cyclophosphamide	Chloramphenicol
Cyclosporine	Cisplatin
Digitoxin	Diltiazem
Digoxin	Interferon-α
Oxcarbazepine	Intravenous immune globulin (IVIG)
Phenobarbital	Palivizumab
Phenytoin	Propoxyphene
Prednisolone	Propranolol
Prednisone	Rituximab
Propranolol	Tobramycin
Quinine	Verapamil
Tacrolimus	Vincristine
Valproic acid	
Vancomycin	

Data from Kale-Pradhan PB, Woo MH: A review of the effects of plasmapheresis on drug clearance, *Pharmacotherapy* 17:684–695, 1997; Kintzel PE, Eastlund T, Calis KA: Extracorporeal removal of antimicrobials during plasmapheresis, *J Clin Apher* 18:194–205, 2003; Ibrahim RB, Liu C, Cronin SM, et al: Drug removal by plasmapheresis: An evidence-based review, *Pharmacotherapy* 27:1529–1549, 2007.

dose, drugs that are given once daily should be withheld until after the procedure, if possible. Drugs that are administered more often should also be scheduled, so they are not given directly prior to TPE.

Two of the most important determinants of drug removal by TPE are the percentage of protein-bound drug and the volume of distribution (Vd). A highly protein-bound drug that is predominantly limited to the intravascular compartment (low Vd) should be efficiently removed, while a poorly protein-bound drug which is distributed throughout the body tissues and fat (high Vd) will not be efficiently removed. However, some studies cite the time between drug administration and start of TPE as the most influential determinant on drug removal, surpassing the effects of protein-binding and Vd (Ibrahim & Balogun, 2012). The distribution half-life of the drug determines the time for the drug to be fully distributed in the extravascular space, and thus determines how much time is needed between the last dose of the drug and the start of TPE. TPE can also indirectly affect drugs. For example, TPE removes circulating anticholinesterase antibodies thus prolonging the effects of anticholinesterase medications (Ibrahim & Balogun, 2012). Such agents should be avoided immediately following TPE. It is important to note that serum drug levels do not always correlate with clinical effects; therefore, even though TPE may decrease drug levels, this decrease does not necessarily alter the biologic effect (Ibrahim & Balogun, 2012).

The majority of available research regarding TPE's effect on drug removal has focused on assessing serum drug concentrations. However, this method tends to overestimate drug removal because it fails to include other important determinants such as redistribution, postprocedure rebound, endogenous drug clearance, and underlying organ dysfunction. Ibrahim and Balogun recommend examining the amount of drug in the waste plasma rather than in the serum for a more accurate estimate of drug removal (Ibrahim & Balogun, 2012). When waste plasma has been examined, most studies found diminished to no effect of TPE on drug removal when compared to studies examining preprocedure and postprocedure serum drug concentrations (Ibrahim & Balogun, 2012).

The often unintentional effect of drug removal seen with TPE is occasionally cited as a desirable effect in certain cases of drug overdose or drug toxicity. For example, reports of TPE to treat overdoses of the highly-protein bound drug amlodipine have been successful (Ibrahim & Balogun, 2012). TPE has been used to treat amiodarone-induced thyrotoxicosis through transient removal of total and free T4/T3. Other applications of TPE to treat drug toxicity include treating severe rituximab infusion reactions and preventing digoxin toxicity in patients with renal failure (Ibrahim & Balogun, 2012). However, caution is recommended, as much of the available research using TPE to treat overdoses comes from case reports and studies with significant experimental pitfalls.

Following TPE using 5% albumin as a replacement fluid, decreases in the levels and activities of coagulation factors (Flaum et al, 1979; Orlin & Berkman, 1980), as well as abnormal coagulation tests (Flaum et al, 1979) have been seen. Flaum and colleagues (1979) demonstrated significant decreases in the levels of factors V, VII, VIII, IX, and X, and von Willebrand factor (vWF) activity following TPE. These deficits returned to normal in 24 hours, with the exception of factors VIII and IX and vWF activity, which returned to normal in 4 hours (Flaum et al, 1979). Orlin and Berkman noted reductions in fibrinogen levels to 25% of preapheresis levels, with levels reaching 66% of preapheresis levels at 72 hours (Orlin & Berkman, 1980). These studies indicate that a risk for bleeding exists in hemostatically challenged patients following TPE. In one study of 1727 TPE procedures, the frequency of exit site bleeding was 1.2% (Shemin et al, 2007). In another study reviewing 4857 TPE procedures, the frequency of puncture-site hematoma was 2.4%, and the frequency of hemorrhage was 0.06% (Basic-Jukic et al, 2005). Although significant hemorrhage is uncommon, the risk for bleeding is especially relevant for patients undergoing serial procedures on consecutive days. At-risk patients, such as those who have undergone or will undergo surgical procedures or biopsies in proximity to their TPE, may require FFP as a portion of their replacement fluid. This should be given at the end of the procedure to prevent its removal.

In addition to increased risk for bleeding, increased risk for thrombosis is possible. Because of the nonspecific nature of TPE removal, inhibitors of coagulation, such as antithrombin III, are also removed during TPE (Ibrahim & Balogun, 2012). This could theoretically lead to thrombosis. In one study of 4857 TPE procedures, the risk for TPE-related clotting was 1.7% (Basic-Jukic et al, 2005).

Finally, platelets are also lost during TPE (Perdue et al, 2001). In a study of 71 patients undergoing TPE with the COBE Spectra, Fresenius AS104 (Fresenius HemoCare, Redmond, Wash.) or the Haemonetics LN9000 (Haemonetics, Braintree, Mass.), platelet loss ranged from 0% to 71% (Perdue et al, 2001). Factors found to influence platelet loss included the instrument used, with the Fresenius AS104 having relatively increased loss (18.6% vs. 2.6% and 1.6% for the Haemonetics LN9000 and the COBE Spectra, respectively), and the disease being treated. Patients with hyperviscosity syndrome due to dysproteinemia had the greatest loss, but no bleeding complications occurred (Perdue et al, 2001). Greater platelet loss with the Fresenius AS104 in comparison with the COBE Spectra was felt to be due to differences in *g* force and dwell time between the two instruments (Burgstaler& Pineda, 2001).

Special concerns for bleeding may apply to patients on warfarin undergoing TPE without plasma replacement. Although warfarin and TPE without plasma replacement have known independent effects on coagulation, limited data exist evaluating their combined effect. In one prospective, observational study of 8 patients undergoing 121 single plasma volume TPE procedures with 5% albumin replacement, average preprocedure to postprocedure values showed an increase in INR (2.09 to 4.12) with a decrease in fibrinogen (263 to 105 mg/dL) and Factor II (29% to 13%) following TPE (Zantek et al, 2014). Preprocedure coagulation values were predictive of postprocedure values. In addition, the effect of TPE on INR was less pronounced in patient's starting with normal or mildly elevated INR values. Only one bleeding complication was reported, consisting of minor catheter site oozing. As previously discussed, the effect of TPE on coagulation parameters is temporary. Although a concern for bleeding exists for patients on warfarin undergoing TPE without plasma replacement, the risk for bleeding must be weighed against the risk of plasma transfusion. More studies are needed to clarify optimal management of patients on anticoagulants scheduled to undergo TPE without plasma replacement.

Procedures for Selective Removal of Plasma Components

As previously discussed, TPE is nonselective. Each TPE removes approximately 150g of plasma proteins (110g of albumin and 40g of globulin) (Randerson et al, 1982; Lysaght & Samtleben, 1985) to eliminate 1 to 2g of pathologic substance. Repeated TPE can result in bleeding due to loss of coagulation factors and immunodeficiency due to loss of immunoglobulins. If other replacement fluids are used, additional risks may be present, including disease transmission and allergic reactions. Because of these disadvantages, a number of procedures have been developed to selectively remove a plasma component, allowing return of the patient's "cleansed" plasma. The benefits of such procedures are that depletion of normal plasma components and the need for substitution fluids are avoided. The drawbacks to such procedures are that they are more expensive to perform than TPE because of the costs of selective removal columns. In addition, although many devices are available worldwide to perform these types of procedures, only two are available in the United States and have been licensed by the FDA.

Selective removal procedures most often involve an initial separation step, in which the cellular elements of whole blood are separated from the plasma. The plasma is then perfused through the selective removal device, where the substance of interest is removed by chemical, physical, or immunologic means. The treated plasma is then recombined with the cellular components and reinfused. The selective removal device may then be regenerated with the bound substance removed and diverted to a waste collection bag. Following this, the selective removal device is used to treat additional plasma. If the device cannot be regenerated, then it is discarded. Examples of selective removal procedures are discussed in the following sections.

Selective Removal of Low-Density Lipoproteins

Lipoprotein apheresis, also called *LDL-apheresis*, is indicated for the treatment of familial hypercholesterolemia (FH) in homozygotes and in heterozygotes unresponsive to drug therapy (Winters, 2012). This disorder results in accelerated atherosclerosis due to the inability of the liver to clear LDL cholesterol from the blood caused by mutations in the hepatic LDL receptor. While TPE has been previously used to treat these patients, TPE results in the nonselective removal of both LDL and the cardioprotective high-density lipoprotein (HDL); in contrast, lipoprotein apheresis selectively removes LDL while maintaining the beneficial effects of retained HDL. Criteria for the treatment of patients with LDL-apheresis vary worldwide and are given in Box 37-10. Comparisons of the life expectancy of patients treated with these techniques and their untreated siblings, as well as series and case reports of treated patients, have been reported. Significant reductions in cholesterol, improvements in xanthomas, disappearance of electrocardiographic (ECG) abnormalities, regression of

BOX 37-10

Criteria for Use of Low-Density Lipoprotein (LDL) Apheresis in Familial Hypercholesterolemia (FH)

U.S. Food and Drug Administration Criteria

- Functional FH homozygotes with an LDL cholesterol >500 mg/dL
- Functional FH heterozygotes with an LDL cholesterol ≥300 mg/dL who have failed a 6-month trial of maximal drug therapy and an American Heart Association Step II diet
- Functional FH heterozygotes with an LDL cholesterol ≥200mg/dL and documented coronary artery disease who have failed a 6-month trial of maximal drug therapy and an American Heart Association Step II diet

German Committee of Physicians and Health Insurance Funds

- Homozygotes for FH
- Patients with severe hypercholesterolemia in whom maximal dietary and drug therapies for >1 year have failed to lower cholesterol sufficiently

International Panel on Management of FH

- Homozygotes for FH
- Heterozygotes for FH with symptomatic heart coronary artery disease in whom LDL cholesterol is >4.2 mmol/L or decreases by <40% despite maximal medical management

Heart—United Kingdom

- Homozygotes for FH in whom LDL cholesterol is reduced by <50% and/or >9 mmol/L with drug therapy
- Homozygotes for FH in whom LDL cholesterol is reduced by <50% and/or >9 mmol/L with drug therapy
- Progressive coronary artery disease, severe hypercholesterolemia, and Lp(a) >60 mg/dL in whom LDL cholesterol remains elevated despite drug therapy.

Data from Thompson GR: HEART-UK LDL Apheresis Working Group. Recommendations for the use of LDL apheresis, *Atherosclerosis* 198:247–255, 2008.

coronary artery lesions, improvement in exercise tolerance, and prolongation of life span have been seen (Winters, 2012).

Following lipoprotein apheresis, there is a temporary decrease in LDL by 60% to 65%. This is followed by a rapid increase in LDL during the next 48 hours and a continued slower increase in LDL during the next 1 to 2 weeks. Repeated lipoprotein apheresis procedures cause repetitive acute drops in LDL with a decrease in the average LDL over time. The goal of lipoprotein apheresis is to reduce the time-averaged LDL cholesterol by ≥60% of baseline or to reduce the total cholesterol by >50% of baseline (Winters, 2012). The following equation (37-9) can be used to calculate the time-averaged LDL cholesterol:

$$C\text{mean} = C\text{min} + K\,(C\text{max} - C\text{min}) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 37-9)}$$

where

*C*mean is the time-averaged cholesterol
*C*min is the cholesterol level immediately after the apheresis procedure
K is the rebound coefficient
*C*max is the cholesterol level immediately prior to the apheresis procedure

A number of methods are available for the selective removal of LDL. These methods include double-filtration plasmapheresis, heparin-induced extracorporeal low-density lipoprotein precipitation (HELP), dextran sulfate absorption, immunoadsorption, direct adsorption of lipoproteins from whole blood, and dextran sulfate whole blood perfusion. However, only the dextran sulfate system and the HELP system are currently FDA approved for use in the United States.

In the dextran sulfate absorption method (Liposorber, Kaneka, Osaka, Japan), two columns of dextran sulfate are used to continuously remove LDL cholesterol. Plasma is separated from whole blood using a hollow fiber separator and is pumped through the dextran sulfate column. The negatively charged dextran sulfate interacts with the positively charged apolipoprotein B of the LDL cholesterol, resulting in its removal. When the first column becomes saturated, flow is switched to the second column and the first column is regenerated with 4.1% NaCl and then lactated Ringer's solution. Treated plasma is mixed with the cellular elements and returned to the patient. Studies using this system have demonstrated a 53% reduction in cholesterol with one plasma volume exchange (Thompson et al, 1995), as well as a 36% reduction in fibrinogen and a 5% loss of high-density lipoprotein (HDL) (Schulzeck et al, 1992).

The second method of lipoprotein apheresis approved by the FDA for use in the United States is heparin-induced extracorporeal low-density lipoprotein precipitation (HELP) (B Braun Medical Inc., Bethlehem, Pa.). With this technique, plasma is separated from whole blood using a hollow fiber separator. A sodium acetate buffer of pH 4.84 containing heparin is added to the plasma to precipitate the LDL. This precipitate is then removed by filtration, with the heparin being adsorbed from the plasma by a diethylaminoethyl cellulose filter. The acetate and extra volume are then removed through bicarbonate dialysis/ultrafiltration. The treated plasma is combined with the cellular elements and returned to the patient (Winters, 2012). Results of treatment in one trial demonstrated reductions in LDL cholesterol of greater than 30%, with reductions in HDL and fibrinogen of 15% and 58%, respectively (Lane et al, 1993). Comparisons of these two FDA-approved systems for lipoprotein apheresis have shown similar reductions in LDL cholesterol, lipoprotein a (Lp(a)), HDL, and other plasma components; reductions in HDL, fibrinogen, and other plasma components are less than those seen with TPE. These systems have also demonstrated similar reaction rates but differ in terms of cost and simplicity of the operation (Winters, 2012).

Some systems, such as the HELP system and secondary filtration, remove additional plasma components such as fibrinogen. Because of the removal of large macromolecules other than LDL, these systems have been used to alter blood flow characteristics in certain disease states. This form of apheresis has been referred to as *rheophoresis*. These devices have been used to treat age-related macular degeneration (Klingel et al, 2003), sudden sensorineural hearing loss (Suckfull et al, 1999; Suckfull, 2002), stroke (Jaeger et al, 1999), and myocardial ischemia (Jaeger et al, 1999). According to the ASFA, homozygous FH is a category I indication for lipoprotein apheresis with a grade 1A recommendation. Heterozygous FH is a category II indication for lipoprotein apheresis with a grade 1A recommendation. TPE is a category II indication with a grade 1C recommendation for FH homozygotes whose blood volume is too small for them to be treated with a selective removal system (Schwartz et al, 2013).

While LDL is the most well-studied risk factor for coronary artery disease, elevated levels of Lp(a) have emerged as having an independent association with cardiovascular disease (Leebmann et al, 2013). Lp(a) is composed of an LDL particle with bound apolipoprotein B and apolipoprotein (a). Patients with elevated Lp(a) have an increased risk for coronary artery disease, cerebrovascular disease, and peripheral artery disease, with Lp(a) contributing to vascular inflammation and atherothrombosis. Two studied variants in the gene encoding Lp(a), *rs10455872* and *rs3798220*, have odds ratios of 1.70 and 1.92 for coronary artery disease (Leebmann et al, 2013). A prospective observational study of 170 patients with Lp(a)-hyperlipoproteinemia and progressive cardiovascular disease evaluated the incidence of cardiovascular events in the 2 years prior to treatment with lipoprotein apheresis and in the 2 years after starting chronic lipoprotein apheresis. The rates for mean annual major adverse coronary events (MACE) decreased from 142 before lipoprotein apheresis to 31 during lipoprotein apheresis with a calculated number needed to treat of three patients in order to prevent one MACE per patient per year (Leebmann et al, 2013).

According to the ASFA, Lp(a) hyperlipoproteinemia is a category II indication for lipoprotein apheresis with a grade IB recommendation.

Therapeutic Plasma Exchange Indications

Therapeutic plasma exchange (TPE) is justified if at least one of the following general indications are met: (1) removal of substances too big to be removed by other procedures, (2) removal of substances with a long enough half-life to provide a therapeutic period of decreased serum concentration, and (3) removal of substances that are acutely toxic and resistant to removal by other methods (Basic-Jukic et al, 2005). Selected disorders for which TPE is indicated will be briefly discussed in the following sections.

Neurologic Disorders

TPE is well described for acute inflammatory and chronic demyelinating polyneuropathy and for myasthenia gravis; these diseases are common indications for TPE.

Acute Inflammatory Demyelinating Polyneuropathy. Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS), also known as *acute inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy (AIDP)*, is a neurologic disorder of immune origin and is the most frequently encountered paralytic disorder (Guillain-Barré Syndrome Study Group, 1985; Ropper, 1992). It affects males more frequently than females and is more common with increasing age (Hughes, 1993). The disorder is characterized initially by leg weakness, which progresses proximally to involve the arm, face, and oropharyngeal muscles

(Ropper, 1992). Sensory loss is mild but may include paresthesias of fingers and toes. Disease progression stops by the third week of the illness and then improves after a variable period of stability (Ropper, 1992).

The pathophysiology of GBS/AIDP is thought to be one of antibody-mediated damage to peripheral nerve myelin followed by inflammatory response. Complement-fixing antibodies to peripheral myelin have been identified in GBS/AIDP patients (Koski et al, 1985), with antibody titers correlating with both the clinical course (Koski et al, 1986) as well as the response to TPE and relapse following TPE (Vriesendorp et al, 1991). Treatment of GBS/AIDP consists of supportive care to provide adequate nutrition, ventilatory support, and avoidance of infection and pulmonary embolism (Ropper, 1992). Intravenous immune globulin (IVIG) is also beneficial in the treatment of GBS/AIDP (Plasma Exchange/Sandoglobulin Guillain-Barré Syndrome Trial Group, 1997), but corticosteroids are not (Hughes et al, 1978) and may interfere with the response to hemapheresis (Mendell et al, 1985). Trials comparing TPE and IVIG in the treatment of patients with GBS/AIDP have shown equivalency with respect to both safety profiles and to patient improvement (length of ventilator support and time to unaided walking) (Winters et al, 2011). However, when direct costs for five IVIG infusion sessions were compared with five TPE procedures, IVIG cost $10,329.85, which was more than twice the cost of TPE at $4,638.16. The authors suggest that combined with efficacy and safety profiles, financial considerations may favor the use of TPE as first-line therapy in GBS/AIDP patients (Winters et al, 2011). TPE is associated with improvement in disability, greater likelihood of recovering function, and a shortened course (Guillain-Barré Syndrome Study Group, 1985). Unfortunately, patients requiring ventilation support for several days before initiation of TPE are not likely to benefit immediately from the procedure. However, they have been found to have a shorter course of ventilator dependency (Guillain-Barré Syndrome Study Group, 1985). TPE should be initiated within 14 days of the onset of symptoms and should consist of five to six procedures over 8 to 13 days (Guillain-Barré Syndrome Study Group, 1985; Plasma Exchange/Sandoglobulin Guillain-Barré Syndrome Trial Group, 1997). Replacement fluid should be albumin. Treatments should continue for at least 10 to 14 days, as cessation of TPE during the active phase of the disorder is characterized by relapse (Ropper et al, 1988). Ten percent of patients may relapse 16 to 21 days after therapy (Ropper et al, 1988).

A review of the Cochrane Neuromuscular Disease Group Register summarized the results of randomized and quasi-randomized trials of TPE versus sham exchange or supportive therapy (Raphael et al, 2002). A total of six trials involving 649 patients were identified that fulfilled the criteria for evaluation. According to the authors of the review, results showed that TPE is the "first and only treatment that has been proven to be superior to supportive treatment alone" (Raphael et al, 2002). In addition, the authors found that TPE was most effective if started within 7 days of disease onset; two sessions of TPE are superior to none in mild GBS/AIDP, four sessions are superior to two in moderate GBS/AIDP, and six sessions are no better than four in severe GBS/AIDP (Raphael et al, 2002).

GBS/AIDP is a category I indication with a 1A recommendation grade for TPE. In GBS/AIDP patients first treated with IVIG, TPE is a category III indication with a 2C recommendation grade, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Chronic Inflammatory Demyelinating Polyneuropathy. Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (CIDP) is a neurologic disorder, probably of autoimmune origin, characterized by progressive or relapsing motor and/or sensory peripheral nerve dysfunction involving more than one limb and developing over 2 months (Cornblath et al, 1991). Hyporeflexia or areflexia is also present, with nerve conduction studies indicating demyelination, and nerve biopsy showing demyelination and remyelination (Cornblath et al, 1991). Other causes of polyneuropathy, such as toxin exposure, must be excluded. Patients demonstrate a male predominance with peak age of onset in the fifth and sixth decades (Dyck et al, 1975). Patients typically present with burning dysesthesias, muscle pain, and shooting pain, as well as distal muscle weakness (Dyck et al, 1975). The pathophysiology is thought to be immune-mediated damage to peripheral nerve myelin. Evidence in support of an immune mechanism includes the presence of demyelination in monkeys when given patient-derived immune globulin (Heininger et al, 1984), deposition of immunoglobulin in nerve biopsies (Dalakas & Engel, 1980), and monoclonal IgG in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of some patients (Dalakas et al, 1980b). Some CIDP patients respond to corticosteroids but are prone to the complications of these medications because of the need for long-term treatment (Dyck et al, 1975). IVIG has been found to be beneficial (van Doorn et al, 1990), especially in a select group of patients demonstrating specific clinical findings (van Doorn et al, 1991).

The first double-blind, sham-controlled crossover study of TPE in CIDP demonstrated an improvement in 5 of 15 patients undergoing two procedures per week for 3 weeks. The benefits of therapy gradually disappeared 10 to 14 days following discontinuation (Dyck et al, 1986). A second study involving more frequent procedures (four the first week, three the second week, two the third week, and one the fourth week) demonstrated improvement in 80% of patients, usually becoming apparent on the third to sixth days of treatment (Hahn et al, 1996). Unfortunately, 66% of responders relapsed after stopping therapy (Hahn et al, 1996). Comparison of TPE and IVIG has demonstrated similar rapid response with both treatment modalities (Dyck et al, 1994). Therapy usually consists of an initial intensive course of four to six procedures over 2 weeks, followed by one to two treatments per week or at longer intervals as tolerated. Improvement is usually seen within 1 week (Hahn et al, 1996) but lasts only 2 weeks (Dyck et al, 1986). Five percent albumin is used as the replacement fluid.

CIDP is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade for TPE, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Myasthenia Gravis. Myasthenia gravis (MG) is an autoimmune disorder characterized by weakness of voluntary muscle groups. It may involve only the extraocular muscles or may be generalized, involving appendicular and trunk muscles. The presence of bulbar muscle weakness can lead to aspiration in the setting of a weakened diaphragm. This can result in severe respiratory compromise and was the major cause of death in these patients in the past. MG is caused by autoantibodies directed against the acetylcholine receptor (AChR) on the motor endplate in 90% of patients. In 40% to 70% of patients without AChR antibodies, antibodies to muscle-specific kinase (MuSK) are present (Vincent & Rothwell, 2004). These autoantibodies prevent normal functioning of the motor endplate by increasing receptor turnover, blocking the binding of acetylcholine, and fixing complement with degradation of the receptor (Lindstrom et al, 1976; Maselli, 1994). The disorder can be associated with other autoimmune phenomena and is associated with thymic abnormalities, including thymoma (Sanders & Scoppetta, 1994). Treatment of myasthenia gravis is directed toward increasing the amount of acetylcholine at the motor endplate through the use of acetylcholine esterase inhibitors such as pyridostigmine and neostigmine, as well as decreasing antibody production through immunosuppressive medications such as corticosteroids or azathioprine, and surgical removal of the thymus (Sanders & Scoppetta, 1994). Of note, MuSK-positive MG is less responsive to acetylcholinesterase inhibitors and is usually not associated with thymic abnormalities. In addition, IVIG has been used to treat MG with beneficial effects and has been found to produce effects similar to TPE (Gajdos et al, 1997).

TPE is performed to lower the level of anti–acetylcholine receptor antibody, although it has also been reported to be successful in 10% to 15% patients with symptoms of MG who do not have detectable antibody. Intensive courses of TPE are recommended for those patients with MG who have severe disease with impaired respiratory function, swallowing, and locomotion (Sanders, 1994), as well as to prepare patients for thymectomy or surgery (Iwasaki et al, 1993). This may consist of 1 to 1.5 plasma volume exchanges performed daily for 5 to 6 days (Dau et al, 1977). Patients with stable chronic disease who experience mild exacerbations can be treated with shorter courses of 2–3 TPE (Antozzi et al, 1991); some patients can be treated with as few as 1 to 4 exchanges per month (Dau, 1980). The course of therapy should be individualized to the needs of the patient. Five percent albumin is used as the replacement fluid. Concurrent immunosuppressive therapy is also performed to prevent rebound of the antibody (Dau et al, 1977).

Moderate to severe myasthenia gravis is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade for TPE, according to the ASFA. Prophylactic treatment prior to thymectomy is a category I indication with a 1C recommendation grade (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Hematologic Disorders

Thrombotic Microangiopathies. Thrombotic microangiopathies (TMAs) are defined as a clinical syndrome characterized by non–immune-mediated hemolysis, fragmented cells in the peripheral blood, and thrombocytopenia. The two main types of primary TMA include thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) and hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS). While often clinically challenging, it is important to distinguish TTP and HUS as treatment and prognosis differ (Cataland & Wu, 2014). Additionally, primary TMA must be distinguished from secondary causes of TMA, where treating the underlying disease or addressing the underlying condition is the goal for therapeutic response.

TTP is a disorder characterized by thrombocytopenia, microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, neurologic dysfunction, fever, and some degree

of renal dysfunction. Laboratory abnormalities, in addition to thrombocytopenia, include schistocytes and nucleated red blood cells on peripheral smear, as well as elevated LDH. TTP can be divided into two variants, congenital TTP (Upshaw-Shulman syndrome) and acquired TTP. Histologic study of tissue from patients with TTP has demonstrated the presence of platelet thrombi within the microvasculature. Immunohistochemistry has demonstrated these to consist of platelets and vWF with little fibrin (Asada et al, 1985). In addition, studies have shown that early in the course of TTP, unusually large multimers of vWF (UL vWF) circulate in the patient's plasma (Moake & McPherson, 1989). These multimers have an increased affinity for glycoprotein Ib-IX on platelets and are thought to induce platelet aggregation under high shear stress conditions. Normally, these UL vWF multimers are located within the endothelium, and when released into the circulation are cleaved into smaller fragments by a metalloprotease called **ad**isintegrin **a**nd **m**etalloprotease with **t**hrombo**s**pondin Type I motifs **13** (ADAMTS13) (Sarode et al, 2014). It has been demonstrated in patients with congenital TTP that ADAMTS13 is absent due to an inherited deficiency while in acquired TTP, an autoantibody is present that decreases ADAMTS13 enzyme activity (Sarode et al, 2014). In acquired TTP, autoantibodies are present in 51% to 93% of cases, with severe deficiency of ADAMTS13 activity (<5%) (Sarode et al, 2014). Patients with ticlopidine-induced TTP and HIV-induced TTP also demonstrate autoantibodies to ADAMTS13 with decreased activity.

The primary treatment of TTP is TPE. Prior to the use of TPE, the mortality rate of TTP was 95%. Following the widespread use of TPE, the mortality rate has decreased to 15% (Rock et al, 1991). The mechanism of TPE is thought to be the combination of autoantibody removal, UL vWF removal, and ADAMTS13 infusion. An alternative therapy to TPE is plasma infusion. In most cases, however, this is not as effective as TPE (Rock et al, 1991). This is due to the fact that the volume of plasma that can be infused is limited by the ability of the patient's cardiovascular system to withstand the volume. Coppo and colleagues (2003) studied large-volume plasma infusion compared with TPE. In their trial, they sought to infuse as much plasma as was given during a TPE. They demonstrated no significant difference with regard to outcome between patients randomized to TPE and those assigned to plasma infusion who could tolerate the infusion. They did, however, see greater complications in the plasma infusion group due to volume overload, and 8 of the 19 patients in that arm had to be switched to TPE because of this complication (Coppo et al, 2003). There are two settings in which plasma infusion is indicated in the treatment of TTP. First, patients with congenital TTP can be given a regular plasma infusion to prevent exacerbation. In addition, plasma infusion can be used to treat a patient while arrangements are being made to perform TPE. Additional therapies for TTP include corticosteroids, cyclosporine, cyclophosphamide, rituximab, and splenectomy (Sarode et al, 2014).

Treatment of TTP consists of daily TPE of 1 to 1.5 volumes using plasma (FFP, thawed plasma, cryosupernatant plasma) as a replacement fluid until the platelet count is greater than 150,000/μL for two consecutive days, the LDH is normalizing, and no evidence of neurologic dysfunction is present (Schwartz et al, 2013). Once this goal has been achieved, TPE can either be tapered or stopped abruptly. It should be noted that the benefits of tapering have not been proven (Bandarenko & Brecher, 1998). Regardless of whether the TPE is discontinued abruptly or tapering occurs, close monitoring of neurologic status, platelet count, and LDH should be performed. It is important to note that at the time the TPE is discontinued, the presence or absence of schistocytes does not affect relapse and is not a criterion for the discontinuation of treatment (Egan et al, 2004). In patients not responding to TPE with FFP or thawed plasma, switching to cryosupernatant plasma as the replacement fluid may be beneficial and has been shown to induce remission in some patients (Rock et al, 1996). This is thought to be possibly due to the lack of vWF in plasma cryoprecipitate-reduced. Because of this finding, a frequent question is whether plasma cryoprecipitate-reduced should be routinely used as the replacement fluid in TPE for TTP. The North American TTP Group performed a multi-institutional prospective randomized trial comparing FFP and plasma cryoprecipitate-reduced as replacement fluids in acquired TTP during initial presentation. This trial showed the two replacement fluids to be equivalent in this population (Zeigler et al, 2001). A second trial by the Canadian Apheresis Study group also found no benefit of plasma cryoprecipitate-reduced compared with FFP in the treatment of acquired TTP (Rock et al, 2005). In addition, cryosupernatant plasma is not routinely available in many blood centers, as it is discarded as a byproduct of cryoprecipitate production.

While TTP is defined by the severely decreased ADAMTS13 activity or the presence of an antibody inhibitor to ADAMTS13, HUS is defined as a TMA with renal impairment and greater than 10% ADAMTS13 activity. HUS is further subdivided into typical or atypical HUS (aHUS). Typical HUS is associated with Shiga toxin-producing organisms (STEC) that classically cause bloody diarrhea. Diarrhea-negative HUS or aHUS is caused by complement dysregulation, either congenital or acquired, leading to uncontrolled complement activation. There is significant clinical and laboratory overlap between TTP and HUS: Gastrointestinal symptoms are classically associated with HUS, but commonly present in patients with TTP; acute renal failure is more common in HUS, but can be seen in TTP; neurologic symptoms are more common in TTP, but can also be present in HUS; decreased levels of ADAMTS13 can be seen in HUS, although generally not as low as seen in TTP; finally, only half of aHUS patients have low C3 and C4 levels, and patients with TTP can also demonstrate complement activation, making complement level testing neither sensitive nor specific for diagnosing aHUS (Cataland & Wu, 2014).

The overlap between TTP and HUS complicates distinction of these two diseases and necessitates early initiation of TPE. If the pretreatment ADAMTS13 level is not severely deficient (<10%) and no other cause for the TMA is established, this suggests a diagnosis of aHUS and warrants discontinuing the TPE and starting therapy with eculizumab (Cataland & Wu, 2014). Eculizumab is an anti-C5 antibody that prevents formation of the membrane attack complex, decreasing the end-organ injury mediated by dysregulated complement activation in aHUS. The beneficial effects of eculizumab in aHUS patients are time-dependent, with earlier initiation of eculizumab associated with improved renal function; however, the time to response with eculizumab also depends on the extent and duration of complement-mediated end-organ damage (Cataland & Wu, 2014). The rationale for TPE in aHUS is based on the removal of circulating autoantibodies and abnormal complement regulatory proteins with replacement of deficient or defective complement regulators. Prospective studies of TPE for aHUS are not available, and most evidence supporting the use of TPE in aHUS is anecdotal. TPE recommendations in aHUS are generally considered similar to those for TTP, that is, daily TPE with 1 to 1.5 L volume exchange and plasma as the replacement fluid for 5 days followed by a tapering regimen (Schwartz et al, 2013). Treatment for typical, STEC-associated HUS is supportive therapy. There is no role for TPE in treatment of typical HUS, unless of course aHUS and TTP are still in the clinical differential diagnosis, in which case TPE should be initiated immediately.

TTP is a category I indication with a 1A recommendation grade for TPE, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013). ASFA guidelines for aHUS vary based on the molecular defect identified: Factor H autoantibodies impart a category I indication with a 2C recommendation grade, complement factor gene mutations impart a category II indication with a 2C recommendation grade, and membrane cofactor protein mutations impart a category IV indication with a 1C recommendation grade. Infection-associated HUS is a category III or IV indication with a 1C or 2C recommendation grade for TPE, based on whether the infectious agent is *Streptococcus pneumonia* or Shiga toxin producing *Escherichia coli*, respectively (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Hyperviscosity Syndrome. Hyperviscosity syndrome is characterized by mental status changes, a bleeding diathesis involving the mucosa and gastrointestinal tract, retinopathy with hemorrhage and papilledema, and hypervolemia with congestive heart failure (Foerster, 1993b). Hyperviscosity syndrome occurs in less than 5% of multiple myeloma (MM) patients but in as many as 70% of patients with Waldenström's macroglobulinemia (Foerster, 1993b). It may rarely be seen with polyclonal increases in immunoglobulin. Differences in frequencies in plasma cell disorders are due to differences in the monoclonal proteins produced in these two diseases. In MM, the immunoglobulin produced is usually IgG or IgA, but in Waldenström's macroglobulinemia, the protein is IgM. In hyperviscosity syndrome, the presence of large concentrations of paraprotein increases blood viscosity and results in decreased oxygen delivery with organ ischemia (McGrath & Penny, 1976). Symptoms usually occur when the viscosity increases to greater than 4 centipoise with almost all patients symptomatic above 8 centipoise (normal blood viscosity is 1.5 to 1.8 centipoise), but patients may be asymptomatic at very high protein concentrations and viscosities (Buskard et al, 1977). Although the viscosity is dependent on the concentration, demonstrating an exponential relationship (Bloch & Maki, 1973), it is also dependent on the nature of the protein. The exponential nature of the relationship between concentration and viscosity means that after a critical concentration, small changes result in a large increase or decrease in viscosity.

The treatment of hyperviscosity syndrome is twofold. First, the long-term goal is to decrease paraprotein production with chemotherapy. The second goal is to decrease the protein concentration and improve blood

flow. This second goal can be achieved with TPE by exchanging 1 to 1.5 plasma volumes with 5% albumin or equal volumes of albumin and saline. In hyperviscosity syndrome due to an IgM monoclonal protein, one to two TPE may be sufficient to remove enough protein to improve viscosity, as IgM is located almost entirely within the intravascular space. With IgG or IgA paraproteins, the immunoglobulin is also present within the extravascular space, and more procedures may be necessary to decrease paraprotein levels. The goal of therapy should be relief of symptoms, with the subsequent frequency tailored to the needs of the patient. In instances of Waldenström's macroglobulinemia resistant to therapy, repeated TPE alone has been used to control hyperviscosity for extended periods of time—as long as 17 years (Salmon & Cassady, 1997). It should be noted that because of the presence of extravascular immunoglobulin in MM, patients might experience hypovolemia following procedures, as oncotic pressure results in movement of fluid from the intravascular space. Finally, there are reports of paradoxical increases in serum IgM in Waldenström's macroglobulinemia following administration of rituximab (Treon et al, 2004). Because of this, prophylactic TPE has been performed prior to administration of rituximab in patients with IgM levels greater than 5000 mg/dL.

Symptomatic hyperviscosity is a category I indication and a 1B recommendation grade for TPE, according to the ASFA. Prophylactic TPE to treat hyperviscosity prior to the administration of rituximab is a category I indication with a 1C recommendation grade (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Myeloma with Acute Renal Failure

Acute renal failure occurs in 3% to 9% of MM patients and is associated with a poor prognosis (Bear et al, 1980; Johnson & Kyle, 1980; Solling & Solling, 1988). Renal failure is caused by filtration of monoclonal light chains with deposition in the renal tubules resulting in tubular dilatation and atrophy, and eventually cast nephropathy (DeFronzo et al, 1978; Bernstein & Humes, 1982; Cohen et al, 1984). When the free light chains are excreted and identified in the urine, they are referred to as "Bence Jones proteins." Unlike in hyperviscosity syndrome, the amount or characteristics of the light chain do not correlate with the disease. The diagnosis of cast nephropathy is made by renal biopsy, as other causes of renal failure may be seen in patients with MM (Leung et al, 2008). Development of this complication is prevented by treatment of the underlying disease. Additional treatment includes alkalization of the urine to enhance excretion of the protein.

TPE is used in the treatment of cast nephropathy in MM to decrease the quantity of light chains present. Although this can also be accomplished with dialysis, TPE has been found to be more effective (Bear et al, 1980; Johnson & Kyle, 1980; Solling & Solling, 1988). Renal failure in MM is associated with poor prognosis; however, two controlled trials (Zucchelli et al, 1984; Johnson et al, 1990) have demonstrated recovery of renal function in some patients on dialysis with cast nephropathy by using the combination of chemotherapy and TPE. A larger multicenter randomized controlled trial, however, failed to demonstrate efficacy of TPE in myeloma kidney (Clark et al, 2005). This trial was criticized for using composite endpoints, failing to biopsy patients to ensure that cast nephropathy was present, and obtaining lower rates of dialysis dependency compared with other trials (Leung, 2006). The role of TPE in myeloma kidney remains controversial (Leung et al, 2008). In cast nephropathy, the TPE is performed daily to three times per week for 1 to 4 weeks until renal function improves.

MM cast nephropathy is a category II indication with a 2B recommendation grade for TPE, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Nephrologic Disorders

Anti–Basement Membrane Antibody Disease. Anti–basement membrane antibody disease (Goodpasture's syndrome) is a rare disorder characterized by the combination of pulmonary and renal hemorrhage. It affects men more commonly then women and is most frequent between 18 and 35 years of age. The disorder is autoimmune with an antibody directed against type IV collagen within the glomerular and pulmonary basement membrane. The antibody is usually transient and may be triggered by damage to the respiratory system, as the syndrome is frequently preceded by an infectious or chemical insult. Patients usually present with pulmonary symptoms of cough, hemoptysis, and dyspnea. Laboratory values show evidence of renal failure and renal inflammation. Mortality rate may be as high as 50%. Treatment of Goodpasture's syndrome focuses on suppressing antibody production and inflammation and removing the antibody. The former goals are accomplished through the use of immunosuppressive agents such as cyclophosphamide and prednisone (Wiseman, 1993).

TPE is used to remove the anti–basement membrane antibody. Treatment consists of 1 to 1.5 plasma volume exchanges using 5% albumin for replacement. Therapy is usually performed daily for 7 to 14 days and, in the presence of concurrent immunosuppression, results in decreased antibody levels and clinical improvement (Erickson et al, 1979; Pusey et al, 1983; Johnson et al, 1985). Because the antibody is only transiently present, treatment longer than 6 months is uncommon (Pusey et al, 1983). It should be noted that TPE should be started early, as recovery of renal function is unlikely once scarring and atrophy of glomeruli and tubules occur (Johnson et al, 1978). Patients who present needing dialysis, who have a creatinine greater than 6.8 mg/dL, who are oliguric, and who have 100% crescentic glomeruli on renal biopsy are unlikely to benefit from TPE (Levy et al, 2001). In this setting, TPE may be reserved for the onset of pulmonary hemorrhage (Levy et al, 2001). Patients with a creatinine of less than 5.7 g/dL and who have less than 50% crescentic glomeruli on renal biopsy have overall and "renal" survivals at 1 year of 100% and 95%, respectively (Levy et al, 2001).

Anti–basement membrane antibody disease in dialysis-independent patients is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade for TPE, according to the ASFA. If patients are dialysis dependent and lack pulmonary hemorrhage, TPE is a category III indication with a 2B recommendation grade. In patients with pulmonary hemorrhage, irrespective of renal function, TPE is a category I indication with a 1C recommendation grade (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Cryoglobulinemia. Cryoglobulins are immunoglobulins that reversibly precipitate at cold temperature. Three categories of cryoglobulins exist. Type I cryoglobulin consists of a single monoclonal protein and is usually seen in MM, Waldenström's macroglobulinemia, or other lymphoproliferative disorders. Usually, the immunoglobulin is IgG or IgM (Foerster, 1993a). Type II cryoglobulin consists of a mixture of polyclonal immunoglobulins with a monoclonal protein, usually IgM, directed toward polyclonal IgG. Type II cryoglobulinemia is associated with chronic hepatitis C infection, autoimmune disorders, and IgM-producing malignancies (Foerster, 1993a). Finally, Type III cryoglobulin consists of polyclonal immunoglobulins, usually IgM, that have activity toward polyclonal IgG. They are associated with autoimmune conditions, as well as infections (Foerster, 1993a). Cryoglobulins produce symptoms by precipitating in areas of low temperature, such as the skin or extremities, resulting in vascular occlusion. This produces a wide variety of symptoms, including acrocyanosis, Raynaud's phenomenon, skin ulcers, skin purpura, and glomerulonephritis (Foerster, 1993a).

Cryoglobulin precipitation is dependent on the concentration of the immunoglobulin, with higher concentrations corresponding with higher temperatures at which the protein precipitates (Hillyer & Berkman, 1996). As a result, some patients may experience symptoms with only small decreases in temperature, such as those occurring in the distal extremities when patients are exposed to the outdoor environment.

Treatment of cryoglobulinemia is directed at the underlying disease (Berkman & Orlin, 1980). In addition, TPE can be used to reduce the protein concentration, thereby decreasing the temperature at which precipitation occurs (Berkman & Orlin, 1980; McLeod & Sassetti, 1980). Treatment usually consists of 1 to 1.5 volume exchange using 5% albumin. Again, the intensity, duration, and frequency of therapy are determined by patient symptoms. As these proteins precipitate at room temperature, blood warmers (on both the draw and return lines) may be necessary to prevent precipitation in the apheresis instrument. In some patients with high cryoglobulin concentrations and resulting precipitation at higher temperatures, it may be necessary to perform hemapheresis procedures at room temperature of 37° C or higher to prevent precipitation (Hillyer & Berkman, 1996).

Severe symptomatic cryoglobulinemia is a category I indication with a 2A recommendation grade for TPE, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Glomerulonephritis. Many of the glomerulonephritides result from deposition of antigen-antibody complexes within the glomeruli, leading to glomerular damage. These complexes, as well as their constituent components, can be found circulating within the bloodstream. Because of this, it is theoretically possible for TPE to be used to remove these substances, thereby halting and possibly reversing further glomerular injury. A number of glomerulonephritides have been treated with TPE. As with many of the diseases treated by hemapheresis, investigations have been limited to case studies and small case series without randomized, controlled trials.

Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS), IgA nephropathy, and Henoch-Schönlein Purpura (HSP) are three glomerulonerphritides in which TPE has shown some success. In FSGS, an unknown circulating plasma factor injures the glomeruli causing a characteristic tissue biopsy

pattern of focal sclerosis and a mixture of both intact and damaged glomeruli. TPE results in the removal of this damaging plasma factor thus improving proteinuria. TPE has been reported to have variable efficacy in treating FSGS in a native kidney, but when combined with other immunosuppressive treatments, TPE can be used to treat recurrent FSGS in a renal allograft. The accepted treatment schedule generally starts with three daily TPE procedures for the first 3 weeks, followed by a gradual tapering over several months, in combination with immunosuppressive medications. Clinically, decreasing proteinuria and creatinine indicate that TPE is successful, but the timing of clinical response is variable (Schwartz et al, 2013).

IgA nephropathy is due to an abnormal immune reaction in which immune complexes (IgA-IgA and IgG-IgA) are abnormally deposited in glomeruli causing gross hematuria, hypertension, and some degree of proteinuria. The goal when using TPE to treat IgA nephropathy is to remove the pathologic IgA deposits and related immune complexes. Studies of TPE to treat IgA nephropathy have mainly focused on the rapidly progressive crescentic type and show greater treatment response in patients with more cellular crescents and less sclerotic and scarred glomeruli. However, in general TPE delays but does not stop disease progression in IgA nephropathy, with all patients progressing to end-stage renal disease once TPE is discontinued (Schwartz et al, 2013).

HSP is a child-predominant small-vessel vasculitis that occurs following upper respiratory infection and causes arthralgias, abdominal pain, kidney injury, and palpable purpura. While most cases are self-limiting, IgA-containing immune complexes and IgG autoantibodies can cause renal injury, cerebritis, and severe gastrointestinal or skin manifestations. TPE is indicated only for the treatment of these severe complications and is not routinely used in HSP. The mechanism of TPE in HSP is removal of disease-mediating immune complexes. For treatment of severe gastrointestinal disease or cerebritis, daily TPE for 1 to 6 procedures is recommended until symptom resolution; in contrast, HSP-induced rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis may require longer courses of therapy with measurements of creatinine (Schwartz et al, 2013).

TPE for treatment of recurrent FSGS in a transplanted kidney is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade, according to the ASFA. IgA nephropathy is a category III indication for TPE with a 2B or 2C recommendation grade, depending on whether the disease is the crescentic or chronic progressive type, respectively. HSP is a category III indication for TPE with a 2C recommendation grade, according to the ASFA (Schwartz et al, 2013).

Conditioning Therapy for Renal Transplantation

Kidney transplantation represents the current optimal therapy for chronic renal failure, and TPE plays an adjunctive role by reducing ABO isoagglutinins and/or anti-HLA titers. Unfortunately, the supply of deceased donor kidneys is inadequate to meet the need for organs in the United States, with 150,933 people listed on the deceased donor kidney waiting list as of June 7, 2014 (Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network, 2014). The waiting time for deceased donor kidney transplantation exceeds 4 years (Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network, 2014). If a patient is blood group O or blood group B, the average waiting time is even longer. In addition, in 2007, 5000 of the 50,000 listed on the waiting list have panel reactive alloantibodies (PRA) >80% (United Network for Organ Sharing, 2008). Fewer than 300 of these patients are transplanted each year, with many of the most highly sensitized patients requiring a perfect HLA-matched kidney. Because so few of these highly sensitized patients receive deceased donor kidneys, a waiting time cannot be calculated for this group (Stegall et al, 2002).

While these individuals await an ABO-compatible or HLA-compatible deceased donor kidney, their medical condition deteriorates. This wait is associated with a 5% to 8% mortality rate per year (Ojo et al, 2001). Attempts to transplant ABO-incompatible or cross-match incompatible kidneys have, in the past, been associated with the development of hyperacute rejection. Preformed ABO isoagglutinins or anti-HLA antibodies bind to target antigens present upon the vascular endothelium of the incompatible organ at the time of reperfusion of the graft. The result is fixation of complement followed by endothelial injury, thrombosis, and occlusion of the microvasculature of the organ, resulting in immediate loss of the organ. To circumvent hyperacute rejection and increase the availability of organs, a number of protocols have been developed that use TPE or immunoabsorption in combination with immunosuppression to reduce ABO isoagglutinin or anti-HLA antibody titers. These protocols have been reported to allow successful transplantation of incompatible kidneys from living donors.

Tanabe and colleagues (1998) used three to four immunoabsorption procedures and/or one to two double-filtration TPE procedures in an attempt to reduce ABO isoagglutinin titers to fewer than 16 before transplantation of ABO-incompatible living donor kidneys. This treatment, in conjunction with intensive immunosuppression and splenectomy at the time of transplantation, resulted in no instances of hyperacute rejection among 67 patients. Patient survival among ABO-incompatible transplant recipients was equivalent to that of ABO-compatible recipients. Graft survival was significantly less up to 3 years after transplant (79%) but showed equivalence at 4 years after transplant and beyond (Tanabe et al, 1998). Our group reported on the use of four TPE before transplant to reduce isoagglutinin titers to fewer than four. This, and an intensive immunosuppression regimen with splenectomy, allowed for successful transplantation without hyperacute rejection among 26 ABO-incompatible transplants (Winters et al, 2004). One-year graft and patient survivals were slightly lower than in ABO-compatible transplants performed during the same time period (89 vs. 96% and 94 vs. 99%, respectively) (Gloor et al, 2003b).

TPE is associated with reductions in isoagglutinin titers at the time of transplantation (Aikawa et al, 2001; Winters et al, 2004). Following transplant, however, titers will rise to levels greater than those seen at transplant but less than those seen initially (Aikawa et al, 2001; Winters et al, 2004). In addition, ABO antigen levels are maintained on the graft (Aikawa et al, 2001). Despite these increases in antibody titers, rejection episodes are limited to the early transplant course and can be reversed with TPE and increased immunosuppression (Winters et al, 2004). Studies have suggested that "accommodation" occurs in the setting of ABO-incompatible kidney transplantation (Delikouras & Dorling, 2003). This appears to be due to active self-protection of the graft through the alteration of gene expression (Park et al, 2003).

Humoral rejection in ABO-incompatible renal transplantation is a category II indication with a 1B recommendation grade for TPE, according to the ASFA. For desensitization with ABO-incompatible renal transplantation, TPE is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade if the donor is living versus a category IV indication with a 1B recommendation grade if the donor is deceased (Schwartz et al, 2013).

A number of groups have reported success in transplanting cross-match–incompatible living donor kidneys using the combination of TPE, IVIG, immunosuppression, and splenectomy (Montgomery et al, 2000; Schweitzer et al, 2000; Gloor et al, 2003a). Four to six TPE with concurrent immunosuppressive therapy and IVIG were successful in converting patients with low-titer anti-HLA antibodies (<16) to cross-match compatibility on the day of transplantation. None of the patients treated developed hyperacute rejection. Acute humoral rejection episodes were seen in 43% of patients (Gloor et al, 2003a), but these episodes were reversed with additional TPE and steroids. Graft survivals of 100% (Schweitzer et al, 2000) and 79% (Gloor et al, 2003a) have been reported at 12 months following transplantation. Unlike ABO-incompatible transplants, for cross-match–incompatible kidneys, reports have described durable, sustained loss of donor-specific HLA antibodies following conditioning and transplantation (Zachary et al, 2003). In addition, as in ABO-incompatible accommodated transplants, cross-match– incompatible accommodated transplants demonstrate altered gene expression that results in downregulation of apoptosis of the graft's endothelial cells (Salama et al, 2001).

TPE for desensitization in cross-match incompatible renal transplantation with a living donor kidney is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade, according to the ASFA. TPE for desensitization in patients awaiting a cadaveric renal transplant with high PRA scores is a category III indication with a 2C recommendation grade. In antibody-mediated rejection in cross-match incompatible renal transplantation, TPE is a category I indication with a 1B recommendation grade (Schwartz et al, 2013).

DONOR/PATIENT COMPLICATIONS COMMON TO ALL HEMAPHERESIS PROCEDURES

Hemapheresis procedures, both donor and therapeutic, are safe procedures with minimal risk for complications. Those that do occur are generally traumatic complications associated with venous access or physiologic complications, including citrate-mediated, allergic-type, and volume-related problems. Because citrate-mediated reactions are common and may require the attention of the physician, they are discussed in some detail in the following paragraphs. Reaction rates among hemapheresis donors in the American Red Cross System has been found to be 577.5/10,000 donations for platelet donations and 538.3/100,000 donations for double red cell donations. This compares to a reaction rate 348.9/10,000 donations

for whole blood donors (Eder et al, 2008). Reactions requiring outside medical care (i.e., reactions that could not be addressed at the donation site) were 3.2, 2.9, and 2.9/10,000 donations for whole blood, platelet, and double red cell donations, respectively. There was no statistically significant difference between the frequencies of these more severe reactions, though the types of reactions differed. In whole blood donors, 46% of those reactions requiring outside medical care were syncopal reactions, while in hemapheresis donors, 39% were phlebotomy related such as large hematomas or nerve injury (Eder et al, 2008). In older studies, the rate of serious reactions—those requiring hospitalization—has been found to be 0.01% (2 out of 19,736 donations) (Despotis et al, 1999), which is 20 times greater than that reported to occur with allogeneic whole blood donation (1 out of 198,119 donations; 0.0005%) (Popovsky et al, 1995). Therefore, although apheresis donation appears to have a lower reaction rate than whole blood donation, the risk for serious reactions, although small, is greater.

The most common reactions seen among apheresis donors are due to venipuncture (McLeod et al, 1998; Eder et al, 2008). Table 37-13 lists the adverse effects of apheresis donation reported by McLeod, their frequency, and comparable frequency among whole blood donors. As with whole blood donation, first-time donors had reactions more frequently than repeat donors (McLeod et al, 1998; Eder et al, 2008).

Reactions were found to be more frequent among platelet donors than among plasma or granulocyte donors (5.9% and 9.4%, respectively, vs. 12%), which may have been due to a greater number of first-time donors in this group (McLeod et al, 1998). Reactions are also more frequent among platelet donors than double red cell donors (Eder et al, 2008). Despotis and colleagues (1999) found associations between citrate/hypotensive reactions and the associated donor weight, gender, and type of collection instrument used. For venipuncture-related complications, only female gender was associated as a risk factor (Despotis et al, 1999). The instrument used for collection also influenced reaction rates. McLeod found that the Fenwal CS3000 had fewer reactions than other instruments. This could possibly be due to lower citrate infusion rates with this instrument and the lack of single-needle procedures performed on this instrument. Such single-needle procedures, which alternate between drawing and returning through the single intravenous line, result in larger extracorporeal volumes (McLeod et al, 1998). Despotis and colleagues (1999) noted that the relationship between donor weight and citrate reactions was different when the COBE Spectra and the Fenwal CS3000 were compared. Donors with lower weights had a higher probability of citrate reactions on the Fenwal CS3000, and those with higher weights had a higher probability on the COBE Spectra. The authors of this study believed that this was due to the methods by which these instruments determine the anticoagulant infusion rate (Despotis et al, 1999). Finally, Eder and colleagues (2008) also found a correlation between reactions during both platelet and double red cell donation and age (younger, more reactions) and sex (females, more reactions) (Eder et al, 2008).

Reactions among therapeutic hemapheresis procedures have been reported to occur in 4.75% of procedures (McLeod et al, 1999). The reactions identified and their overall frequencies are given in Table 37-14. The rate of reactions varied with regard to procedure, replacement fluid, and patient. For example, the reaction rate for TPE using albumin was 3.35% as compared with 7.81% for TPE using plasma as the replacement fluid. Leukocytapheresis demonstrated a reaction rate of 5.71%, HPC-A collection had a rate of 1.66%, and no reactions occurred in the 18 patients who underwent therapeutic thrombocytapheresis. Patients with neurologic disorders were more likely than other categories of patients to experience vasovagal reactions (McLeod et al, 1999).

In a more recent review, Shemin and colleagues (2007) examined the frequency of complications during the performance of TPE. Of 1727 TPE procedures in 174 patients, 614 procedures (36%) were complicated by a reaction. Most complications were mild, and no deaths occurred. Of the reactions, 0.2% required discontinuation of the procedure and 0.1% required additional medical management beyond that available in the apheresis unit. The most common reactions were fever (7.7%), urticaria (7.4%), and hypocalcemic symptoms (7.3%). Similar to that reported by McLeod, differences were seen based on the replacement fluid used. Urticaria and pruritus were more common with the use of FFP as a replacement fluid; hypotension was more common with the use of albumin and saline (Shemin et al, 2007).

It should be noted that the study by McLeod did not include complications or reactions due to venous access but that by Shemin and colleagues did. Studies that included these data have noted higher reaction rates with TPE. For example, Couriel and Weinstein (1994) noted adverse effects in 17% of therapeutic apheresis procedures. These were predominantly mild, consisting of citrate reactions, but 6.15% of procedures were complicated by severe reactions, reactions that were life-threatening, or reactions that resulted in termination of the procedure. All of these reactions were due to central venous access and consisted of a pneumothorax, a hemopneumothorax, catheter-related bacteremia, and a sternocleidomastoid hematoma. The patient with the hemopneumothorax exsanguinated because of the complication (Couriel & Weinstein, 1994). Of the two severe reactions requiring additional medical intervention reported by Shemin and colleagues (2007), one was due to arterial puncture during central line placement. Although only one death due to therapy was reported by Couriel and Weinstein, and no deaths attributable to therapeutic hemapheresis were reported in the studies by McLeod and Shemin, additional deaths have been reported by other authors. A majority of such deaths have been ascribed to cardiopulmonary arrest during hemapheresis; additional causes have included anaphylaxis, pulmonary embolus, and vascular perforation due to central venous access. Huestis (1989) estimated a mortality rate for therapeutic hemapheresis of 3 per 10,000 procedures (0.03%), and Mokrzycki and Kaplan (1994) estimated the mortality rate to be 0.05% of procedures, based on a review of the literature available at that time.

As discussed under the description of each procedure, specific complications are associated with specific procedures, such as those due to G-CSF administration in granulocyte harvest. A discussion of complications and risks common to all hemapheresis procedures follows.

ELECTROLYTE AND ACID-BASE DISTURBANCES

Citrate is used as the primary anticoagulant in both donor and therapeutic apheresis procedures because it effectively prevents coagulation while being short acting and easily reversible, unlike heparin. Citrate ions chelate calcium ions, producing a soluble complex that is excreted in the urine. As a result, the chelated calcium ions are unavailable for biological reactions such as those involved in the coagulation cascade. Within the apheresis instrument, plasma citrate concentrations reach 15 to 24 mmol/L, lowering the calcium ion concentration below 0.2 to 0.3 mmol/L, the level necessary for coagulation (Strauss, 1996). Without compensatory

TABLE 37-13
Reaction Rates among Apheresis and Whole Blood Donors

Reaction	Apheresis Donations	Whole Blood Donations
Hematoma or pain	1.15%	9%-16%
Citrate toxicity	0.4%	N/A
Mild vasovagal	0.05%	2%-5%
Vasovagal with syncope	0.08%	0.1%-0.3%

Data from McLeod BC, Price TH, Owen H, et al: Frequency of immediate adverse effects associated with apheresis donation, *Transfusion* 38:938–943, 1998 (apheresis); and Newman BH: Donor reactions and injuries from whole blood donation, *Transfus Med Rev* 11:64–75, 1997 (whole blood).
N/A, Not available.

TABLE 37-14
Reaction Rates among Patients Undergoing Therapeutic Apheresis Procedures

Reaction	Frequency
Transfusion reactions	1.6%
Citrate toxicity	1.2%
Hypotension	1.0%
Vasovagal reactions	0.5%
Pallor and diaphoresis	0.5%
Tachycardia	0.4%
Respiratory distress	0.3%
Tetany and seizure	0.2%
Chills or rigors	0.2%

Data from McLeod BC, Sniecinski I, Ciavarella D, et al: Frequency of immediate adverse effects associated with therapeutic apheresis, *Transfusion* 39:282–288, 1999.

mechanisms from the donor/patient, the resulting hypocalcemia would be incompatible with life. Upon return of blood from the apheresis instrument to the donor/patient, the citrate is diluted throughout total extracellular fluid. In addition, the liver, kidneys, and muscles rapidly metabolize citrate, releasing the bound calcium (Strauss, 1996). The body responds to the decrease in ionized calcium by increasing parathyroid hormone levels, resulting in mobilization of calcium from skeletal stores and increased absorption by the kidneys (Silberstein et al, 1986). Finally, calcium bound to albumin is also mobilized and buffers the decline (Bolan et al, 2003a).

In TPE procedures, the volume of plasma removed must be replaced by a similar volume of replacement fluid. When plasma is used as the replacement fluid, additional citrate is infused in the form of the anticoagulant present in this solution, further increasing the risk for citrate toxicity seen in these patients. If albumin is used as the replacement fluid, one would therefore expect less citrate toxicity, however, this is not always the case. Normally, 40% to 55% of serum calcium is bound to albumin, with the unbound portion representing the physiologically active ionized calcium. Albumin preparations are depleted of this calcium and, as a result, bind patient calcium when infused during TPE. This can lead to a drop in ionized calcium with subsequent hypocalcemia. Goss and Weinstein (1999) demonstrated a higher incidence of citrate reactions and greater decreases in ionized calcium levels in neurology patients receiving TPE with 5% albumin as the replacement fluid when compared with those receiving 10% pentastarch as the replacement fluid. A subsequent study demonstrated that the addition of calcium gluconate to the albumin preparation before administration more effectively reduced the incidence of citrate toxicity when compared with IV calcium gluconate or oral calcium carbonate (Weinstein, 1996). The effect was due to the saturation of calcium binding sites on the albumin, thereby maintaining ionized calcium levels in the patient.

Despite compensatory mechanisms, citrate infusion can result in a decrease in ionized calcium levels to the point where symptoms develop in the donor/patient. These result from a decrease in ionized calcium to levels at which the excitability of nerve membranes increases causing spontaneous depolarization (Strauss, 1996). Resulting signs and symptoms of acute citrate toxicity can include perioral paresthesias, acral paresthesias, shivering, lightheadedness, twitching, and tremors. In addition, some patients experience nausea and vomiting. As the ionized calcium levels fall farther, these symptoms may progress to carpopedal spasm, tetany, and seizure (Strauss, 1996). It is therefore important to elicit the presence of early symptoms from the donor/patient, so that interventions can occur before the more severe symptoms manifest. In addition to the symptoms described previously, other reported symptoms include prolongation of the QT interval on electrocardiogram, depressed myocardial contraction, and fatal arrhythmias (Strauss, 1996). Hypotension may also be seen with citrate reactions (Goodnough et al, 1999) and may be due to depressed myocardial function and vascular smooth muscle relaxation (Bunker et al, 1962).

Factors that have been found to influence the rate of citrate reactions in donor and therapeutic apheresis include alkalosis due to hyperventilation (Strauss, 1996), the rate of infusion of the anticoagulant solution (Strauss, 1996), the amount of citrate infused (Strauss, 1996), and the donor's serum albumin level before the start of the procedure (Bolan et al, 2003a). It should be noted that intermittent-flow hemapheresis procedures tend to have a greater frequency of citrate reactions, as the rate of citrate infusion is higher when the separation chamber is emptied than during continuous apheresis procedures. Also, the method by which an instrument calculates the dose of anticoagulant may influence the rate of reactions among certain donor subgroups (Despotis et al, 1999).

The treatment of acute citrate reactions is relatively simple when reactions are identified early. Treatment includes slowing the reinfusion rate to allow for dilution and metabolism of the citrate, increasing the donor/patient blood/citrate ratio to decrease the amount of citrate infused, giving oral calcium in the form of calcium antacids, and giving intravenous calcium (Strauss, 1996). Bolan and colleagues (2003a, 2003b) found that administration of 2g of oral calcium carbonate was associated with a statistically significant reduction in the severity of paresthesias (Bolan et al, 2003b). Physiologically, this dose was also associated with the greatest improvement in ionized and total calcium levels among the doses examined (Bolan et al, 2003a). However it did not reduce overall symptom development, and it did not affect the occurrence of more severe symptoms (Bolan et al, 2003b).

Administration of intravenous calcium, in the form of calcium gluconate or calcium chloride, is usually not necessary in donor procedures but is common in the setting of therapeutic apheresis procedures. In HPC-A collections, the continuous infusion of calcium gluconate or calcium chloride has been found to prevent hypocalcemic symptom development (Bolan et al, 2002; Buchta et al, 2003), with calcium chloride maintaining higher ionized calcium levels (Buchta et al, 2003). In a study comparing whether calcium gluconate was infused continuously, prophylactically at the start of HPC collection, or at the time of symptom development, continuous infusion maintained higher calcium levels, and changes in calcium levels were insignificant with the other two modes of administration (Kishimoto et al, 2002). When administered to treat symptoms, the usual dose is 10 mL of calcium gluconate IV infused over 10 to 15 minutes (Hester et al, 1983). In patients with low ionized calcium levels before the start of the procedure, calcium gluconate can be given prophylactically.

While the acute effects of citrate toxicity are well documented, the long-term effects are still being investigated. Amrein and colleagues (2010) compared 102 frequent plasma/platelet donors to 102 matched controls and found that bone mineral density scores were significantly lower in the apheresis donors than in the control group, with a mean difference up to 3.5%. They hypothesized that citrate exposure in apheresis causes repetitive stress to the donor/patient's calcium homeostasis. Additionally, repeated loss of serum proteins, notably albumin, may have untoward effects on bone mineral homeostasis. Additional research focused on citrate's effect on bone metabolism is needed to clarify appropriate donation/treatment intervals based on risk/benefit ratios. Magnesium is another physiologically important divalent cation. Similarly to calcium, magnesium is bound by citrate. As a result, the infusion of citrate in the setting of plateletapheresis decreases ionized magnesium by 30% (Mercan et al, 1997). Mercan and colleagues (1997) also found that magnesium levels fall more rapidly than calcium levels during citrate infusion, and they recover more slowly. Hypomagnesemia can induce signs and symptoms similar to hypocalcemia, including muscle spasms, muscle weakness, decreased vascular tone, and impaired cardiac contractility. In addition, hypomagnesemia can impair calcium and potassium homeostasis, including inhibition of the release of parathyroid hormone when markedly decreased (Mercan et al, 1997). As a result, patients with low magnesium levels before undergoing apheresis may exhibit signs and symptoms of citrate toxicity due to hypomagnesemia and not hypocalcemia. Patients who cannot rapidly metabolize citrate are at higher risk for symptoms due to hypocalcemia and hypomagnesemia because less of the free active forms of the cations are available (Kamochi et al, 2002). These symptoms may be unresponsive to the administration of calcium supplementation. To avoid hypomagnesemia, it is common at some institutions to measure magnesium levels before initiation and to supplement magnesium before performing procedures if indicated. Reports have described the use of prophylactic magnesium infusions similar to those done with calcium. Haddad and colleagues (2005) investigated prophylactic administration of magnesium to allogeneic HPC-A donors. Supplementation was associated with normal ionized magnesium levels during the procedure, as well as greater parathyroid hormone response and higher blood glucose levels. However, no differences were seen with regard to the symptoms (mild paresthesias, coldness, and nausea) (Haddad et al, 2005).

As described, citrate is rapidly metabolized. This process consumes hydrogen ions; as a result, metabolic alkalosis due to citrate infusion may develop. The risk for this occurrence is greatest in patients with renal disease, who cannot adequately excrete bicarbonate (Kelleher & Schulman, 1987), and in those receiving replacement fluids containing citrate (Kelleher & Schulman, 1987; Dzik & Kirkley, 1988). A study comparing patients with TTP undergoing TPE with FFP replacement versus patients with myasthenia gravis undergoing TPE with albumin demonstrated increased frequency of metabolic alkalosis in the former group (Marques & Huang, 2001). Patients with TTP demonstrated a mean creatinine level of 1.3mg/dL and mean blood urea nitrogen (BUN) of 24.8mg/dL (Marques & Huang, 2001). Although the metabolic alkalosis seen in these patients did not reach critical levels (>35mEq/L HCO_3^-) and resolved following cessation of TPE, it was associated with a critical decline in potassium (<3.0 mEq/L) during the procedures (Mercan et al, 1997). The presence of alkalosis can worsen hypocalcemia (Edmondson et al, 1975) and slow citrate metabolism (Dzik & Kirkley, 1988). Unfortunately, the symptoms of metabolic alkalosis are nonspecific, usually presenting as worsening symptoms of hypocalcemia. Alkalosis resolves with time or dialysis and can be avoided by reducing the amount of citrate infused by adjusting the blood/citrate ratio and/or using replacement fluids that lack citrate (Pearl & Rosenthal, 1985).

Metabolic alkalosis results in a shift in hydrogen ions from intracellular locations (in an attempt to compensate pH) with a concurrent flux of potassium into these cells to maintain electrical neutrality. The result is that significant drops in potassium can occur during large-volume hematopoietic progenitor cell collections, in addition to those seen in the TTP

patients described previously. Schlenke and colleagues (2000) found an average drop in potassium levels of 11.3±7% in a study of 96 large-volume leukapheresis procedures. Despite this decline, none of the patients in this study experienced symptoms attributable to hypokalemia. Symptoms of hypokalemia include weakness, hypotonia, and cardiac arrhythmia (Schlenke et al, 2000). Treatment of such complications would consist of replacement of the potassium, orally or intravenously. A prudent option would be to prevent the reaction by determining the potassium level before the start of the procedure and supplementing if indicated.

ALLERGIC, ANAPHYLACTOID, AND ANAPHYLACTIC REACTIONS

Allergic, anaphylactoid, and anaphylactic reactions result from the release of vasoactive substances from mast cells and basophils. When the target antigen binds to the IgE molecule, substances including histamine, leukotriene C4, leukotriene D4, prostaglandin D2, and platelet-activating factor are released. This causes smooth muscle contraction, increased vascular permeability, and vasodilation, resulting in a variety of symptoms. Mast cells and basophils can also be activated by complement-derived factors such as C3a and C5a, which can be produced by antigen–IgG interactions and other mechanisms (Vamvakas & Pineda, 2001). These types of reactions can range from mild urticarial reactions to life-threatening anaphylactic reactions. Signs and symptoms of these reactions include pruritus, urticaria, erythema, flushing, angioedema, upper and lower airway obstruction, hypotension, shock, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea (Vamvakas & Pineda, 2001).

Allergic reactions have been reported in both donors and patients undergoing hemapheresis procedures. Among donors, reactions have been reported among platelet, plasma, and granulocyte donors. In platelet and plasma donors, reactions to ethylene oxide gas used to sterilize the tubing sets used for the procedures have been described (Leitman et al, 1986; Muylle et al, 1986). These reactions have occurred predominantly in donors who had undergone numerous previous procedures. It is thought that during the procedures, ethylene oxide present within the plastic binds to proteins within the plasma. The proteins serve as carrier molecules and the ethylene oxide as a hapten, with the result being an immune response with the generation of IgE antibodies toward ethylene oxide. In most of the donors who experienced allergic phenomena, IgE antibodies to ethylene oxide were identified (Leitman et al, 1986). Reactions ranged from urticaria, flushing, and periorbital edema (Leitman et al, 1986) to an anaphylactic reaction consisting of wheezing, flushing, swelling of the lips, and hypotension (Muylle et al, 1986). The overall rate of allergic reaction in one study was 1.0% of platelet donors. The reactions also showed an increased frequency with the Fenwal CS3000 than with the Haemonetics V-50 (Haemonetics, Braintree, Mass.). This was thought to be due to the fact that at the start of processing with the CS3000, a mixture of saline and anticoagulant that was used to prime the bag was infused into the patient. This was not the case with the V-50. It was postulated that this resulted in a bolus of ethylene oxide that produced the symptoms (Leitman et al, 1986). Of importance is that manufacturers of hemapheresis tubing sets are now utilizing gamma irradiation to sterilize the kits avoiding donor exposure to ethyleneoxide.

Allergic reactions have been reported among granulocyte donors as well. In addition to ethylene oxide reactions, granulocyte donors are exposed to low or high molecular weight HES to enhance red cell sedimentation. Although these substances are poor immunogens and have not been able to induce antibody formation, allergic reactions have occurred in the setting of HES use in hemapheresis (Dutcher et al, 1984) and as a volume expander (Ring & Messmer, 1977). The mechanism behind the production of anaphylactoid reactions with HES is thought to be due to the ability of HES to activate the alternative complement cascade. This would result in the production of C3a and C5a, both of which can cause mast cell and basophil release (Dutcher et al, 1984). Reactions reported to occur with HES include mild urticarial reactions and severe reactions with respiratory and cardiac arrest. The rate of allergic reaction in a study of patients receiving HES for volume expansion was 0.085%, with severe (anaphylactic) reactions occurring in 0.006% (Ring & Messmer, 1977). Reactions have occurred with both high molecular weight (hetastarch) (Ring & Messmer, 1977) and low molecular weight HES (pentastarch) (Kannan & Milligan, 1999). Because of this risk, Dutcher and colleagues (1984) recommended excluding people with a history of allergies as granulocyte donors.

Among therapeutic hemapheresis patients, reactions to ethylene oxide or HES could occur. In addition, TPE procedures frequently use plasma products as replacement solutions. As a result, patients are also at risk for allergic and anaphylactic reactions due to transfusion reactions. The most common allergic reaction within the setting of plasma product infusion is the urticarial reaction. This reaction occurs in 1% to 3% of plasma infusions and consists of hives scattered over the body. In 1 in 20,000 to 47,000 transfusions, anaphylaxis occurs (Vamvakas & Pineda, 2001). The most common cause of this last reaction is the infusion of plasma containing IgA into an IgA-deficient individual who possesses anti-IgA antibodies (Vamvakas & Pineda, 2001).

The treatment of allergic, anaphylactoid, and anaphylactic reactions depends on their severity. In donor reactions, the procedure should be stopped. Simple reactions such as urticaria can then be treated with oral antihistamines (e.g., diphenhydramine). The same treatment can be provided with therapeutic procedures, although in this case the procedure can be restarted following antihistamine administration. A simple allergic reaction is the only type of reaction in which the procedure can be restarted following treatment. In addition, the patient can be premedicated with antihistamines before subsequent procedures are performed.

Anaphylactic reactions are life-threatening. The procedure, whether donor or therapeutic, must be immediately discontinued. Vascular access should be kept open using saline. For less severe reactions, epinephrine 0.3 to 0.5mg can be given subcutaneously, with the dose repeated every 20 to 30 minutes for up to three doses. In addition, aminophylline 6mg/kg can be given for bronchospasm. This loading dose should be followed by an infusion of 0.5 to 1mg/kg/hour. Volume expansion with normal saline or lactated Ringer's solution can be given for hypotension. Oxygen should be given for respiratory distress. For severe reactions, epinephrine 0.5mg can be given intravenously, with repeated dosing every 5 to 10 minutes. Dopamine can also be given for hypotension unresponsive to volume. The airway must be protected, and endotracheal intubation may be indicated (Vamvakas & Pineda, 2001).

Obviously, the best course of action is to avoid such reactions. Donors who have experienced such reactions should be deferred from future donation. Patients with mild reactions should be premedicated with antihistamines. Those with severe reactions due to IgA should receive IgA-deficient replacement fluids. For most procedures, this could be albumin or saline. For procedures requiring plasma as a replacement fluid, as in TPE for TTP, IgA-deficient plasma products must be used.

ANGIOTENSIN-CONVERTING ENZYME INHIBITORS

The use of angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors by patients undergoing hemapheresis procedures is associated with reactions similar in many respects to the allergic reactions described previously. These reactions consist of flushing, hypotension, bradycardia, and dyspnea (Strauss, 1996) and have been seen in patients undergoing TPE (Owen & Brecher, 1994), lipoprotein apheresis using dextran sulfate columns (Agishi, 1994), and treatment with staphylococcal A protein columns (Owen & Brecher, 1994). These reactions result from activation of the kinin system and generation of bradykinin when patient plasma comes in contact with the negatively charged plastic of the apheresis set. Normally, bradykinin is rapidly inactivated by kininase I and II. ACE inhibitors, however, block the actions of these enzymes such that high levels accumulate, producing the symptoms described previously (Strauss, 1996). During TPE with albumin, prekallikrein-activating factor present in the albumin can trigger the formation of bradykinin (Owen & Brecher, 1994). Again, the presence of ACE inhibitors prevents degradation of this substance. These reactions can be avoided by withholding ACE inhibitors for 24 to 48 hours before hemapheresis procedures (Owen & Brecher, 1994). Some newer ACE inhibitors have longer half-lives; withholding these drugs for longer periods or switching to ACE inhibitors with shorter half-lives may be necessary.

HYPOVOLEMIA AND VASOVAGAL REACTIONS

Hypotension can be seen during both donor and therapeutic hemapheresis procedures. This can be the result of two different pathophysiologic mechanisms. In hypovolemia, hypotension results from intravascular volume depletion due to too much volume being present within the extracorporeal circuit. Such reactions are characterized by both increased vascular tone and increased cardiac output as the sympathetic nervous system attempts to compensate for the hypovolemia (Strauss, 1996). Increasing both heart rate and contractility produces the increase in cardiac output. These reactions are not common among hemapheresis donors, as Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services limit the amount of volume that that can be present within the extracorporeal circuit to 10.5 mL/kg (Standards

Committee of the AABB, 2014), and the donors fulfill health and weight requirements. In therapeutic procedures, the patient has an underlying disease that may make hypovolemia more likely. For example, the presence of hypotension has been found to be more common in patients with neurologic disease (McLeod et al, 1999). Standards for Blood Banks and Transfusion Services do not prescribe limits on extracorporeal volume during therapeutic hemapheresis procedures, although application of the limits used during donor hemapheresis procedures would seem prudent (Strauss, 1996).

The second mechanism causing hypotension during hemapheresis procedures is the vasovagal reaction. In contrast to hypovolemia, in which the body compensates for hypotension by increasing sympathetic tone, during a vasovagal reaction parasympathetic output increases disproportionately, resulting in slowing of the heart rate and decreased vascular tone (Strauss, 1996). Factors that have been associated with such reactions in whole blood donors include younger age, low weight, first-time donation, and inattentive staff (Newman, 1997). Tomita and colleagues (2002) examined the incidence of vasovagal reactions among apheresis donors and whole blood donors at the same collection center. They noted that the incidence of these reactions among apheresis donors increased with age, unlike what has been reported with whole blood donors. The age-related increase in vasovagal reactions was even more common in women and was thought to result from a lower circulating blood volume in these populations (older adults and women), leading to a greater percentage of the donor's blood being within the extracorporeal circuit during collection. It was also noted that the incidence of reactions increased with increasing cycles during a collection, and it was theorized that hypocalcemia was involved in the onset of vasovagal reactions (Tomita et al, 2002).

Hypovolemic and vasovagal reactions are treated similarly. The procedure should be temporarily interrupted, and a fluid bolus should be infused. If the reaction is due to hypovolemia, blood pressure should increase and pulse rate should decrease in response to this intervention. If the reaction is due to a vasovagal reaction, this may not occur. Additional treatments for vasovagal reactions include placing the donor/patient in the Trendelenburg position (supine position with feet higher than head), applying cold compresses to the forehead and neck, and reassuring the donor/patient (Strauss, 1996).

HYDROXYETHYL STARCH AND COAGULOPATHY

As discussed under the section dealing with TPE, removal of plasma from a patient and replacement of the volume with albumin or some other fluid that does not contain coagulation factors can result in mild, temporary abnormalities in coagulation. These changes are usually short-lived, with return of most coagulation factors to normal levels within 24 to 48 hours. The use of HES as volume replacement or as a sedimenting agent is also associated with changes in coagulation factor levels. Both high molecular weight HES, such as hetastarch, and low molecular weight HES, such as pentastarch, result in prolongation of the partial thromboplastin time (PTT) as well as decreases in fibrinogen levels. This is thought to result from the dilutional effects produced when these substances are infused. High molecular weight, but not low molecular weight HES is also associated with decreases in factor VIII activity, factor VIII antigen, and vWF antigen, as well as prolongation of bleeding time (Strauss et al, 1988). It is thought that this last effect is a result of the decrease in vWF antigen levels and may represent an acquired von Willebrand disease–like state. The risk of coagulopathy with HES appears to be dose dependent. In the setting of volume expansion in critical care, the maximum dose of HES needed to avoid such complications has been suggested to be 20mL/kg/24-hour period. Doses up to 3600mL have been given in this setting without difficulty (Nearman & Herman, 1991). The danger in hemapheresis procedures is that multiple collections or therapeutic procedures may be necessary in a given donor/patient over consecutive days. Because HES, especially high molecular weight HES, has a long half-life, this may result in an accumulation of HES over the course of the hemapheresis procedures and the potential danger of coagulopathy.

HYDROXYETHYL STARCH AND RENAL DYSFUNCTION

HES can cause new or worsening renal dysfunction, particularly incritically ill patients. Three randomized controlled trails published in 2012 highlight the increased risk for mortality and renal injury in patients with sepsis and those admitted to the intensive care unit (ICU) (Perner et al, 2012; Guildet et al, 2012; Myburgh et al, 2012). Based on these studies, on June 24, 2013, the FDA added a black box warning to HES (FDA, 2013). HES should be avoided in critically ill patients with sepsis, patients in the ICU, and patients or donors with preexisting renal dysfunction. Additionally, renal function should be monitored in patients/donors for up to 90 days after HES administration. HES should not be used in critically ill patients or patients with renal insufficiency unless the benefits outweigh the risks. How these recommendations apply to the use of HES in hemapheresis procedures is unclear, because in granulocyte collections or therapeutic leukapheresis the volume of HES utilized is less than that used in volume resuscitation examined in the three trials.

HYDROXYETHYL STARCH AND OTHER SIDE EFFECTS

As has been mentioned, HES has a long half-life. This is dependent upon the metabolism of HES by α-amylase and subsequent renal excretion of the breakdown products (Yacobi et al, 1982). Persistent pruritus due to deposition of HES in the skin has been reported as one of the most frequent complications of HES administration. Skin deposits have been detected for up to 4 years following administration (Sirtl et al, 1999; Stander et al, 2001).

In addition to skin deposition, a case report has described marrow and organ failure in a patient undergoing chronic TPE (20 months) with HES used as the replacement fluid. In this patient, foamy macrophages containing HES were found replacing bone marrow, as well as infiltrating duodenal mucosa, liver, peritoneum, and dura mater. These cells were also present in ascitic fluid (Auwerda et al, 2002).

AIR EMBOLUS

Air embolus is a rare complication of hemapheresis procedures. It occurs when air enters the venous system through a leak in the hemapheresis instrument or the venous access. Air entering the right ventricle and pulmonary artery results in obstruction to right ventricular output and pulmonary artery vasoconstriction (Montacer-Kuhssari et al, 1994). Symptoms of air embolism include dyspnea, tachypnea, cyanosis, tachycardia, and hypotension. The reason for the rarity of this complication is that all modern hemapheresis instruments possess sensors that can detect air within the extravascular circuit and stop the procedure. Should air embolism occur, however, treatment consists of placing the donor/patient in the Trendelenburg position on the left side. This traps the air in the apex of the right ventricle, away from the pulmonary outflow tract, improving right ventricular outflow. Over time, the air will dissolve.

SUMMARY

In summary, hemapheresis represents a safe and effective technique for the production of needed blood components, as well as for the treatment of a variety of diseases. Although hemapheresis is often compared with the 18th century practice of bloodletting, it shares little with this practice. Hemapheresis is selective in what is removed from the donor/patient and is generally a safe procedure. However, hemapheresis is not without risk and should be applied only to those diseases and disorders for which the possibility of benefit exists, and for which evidence in support of this benefit has been shown.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Ibrahim RB, Liu C, Cronin SM, et al: Drug removal by plasmapheresis: an evidence-based review, *Pharmacotherapy* 27:1529–1549, 2007.

An extensive review of the literature concerning the effects of plasma exchange on drug clearance and metabolism. The article provides suggestions for therapy modification, as well as for future research.

Ibrahim RB, Balogun RA: Medications in patients treated with therapeutic plasma exchange: prescription dosage, timing, and drug overdose, *Semin Dial* 25:176–189, 2012.

A review of the published literature of the removal of medications, both overdose and therapeutic concentrations, by plasma exchange. Describes the pharmacokinetic parameters and procedure parameters that determine the degree of removal of a drug.

McLeod BC, Weinstein R, Winters JL, et al, editors: *Apheresis: principles and practice*, ed 3, Bethesda, Md, 2010, AABB Press.

A comprehensive textbook that addresses both donor and therapeutic apheresis, including the history of apheresis,

currently available instrumentation, and an in-depth discussion of the mechanism of action and the physiology of apheresis.

Raphael JC, Chevret S, Hughes RA, et al: Plasma exchange for Guillain-Barré syndrome, *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* (2):CD001798, 2002.

A comprehensive and critical review of all available literature concerning the effectiveness of plasma exchange in the treatment of AIDP.

Schwartz J, Winters JL, Padmanabhan A, et al: Guidelines on the use of therapeutic apheresis in clinical practice: evidence-based approach from the Apheresis Applications Committee of the American Society for Apheresis. The Sixth Special Issue, *J Clin Apheresis* 28:145–284, 2013.

A comprehensive review of the use of therapeutic apheresis. Includes one-page summaries describing treatment recommendations and technical considerations for more than 50 diseases. Also provides categorization and strength of evidence for the use of apheresis in the diseases discussed.

Shaz BH, Schwartz J, Winters JL: How we developed and use the ASFA guidelines for therapeutic apheresis procedures, *Transfusion* 54:17–25, 2014.

A discussion of the clinical decision-making process to be used when considering performing a therapeutic hemapheresis procedure and how to utilize the ASFA guidelines in this process.

REFERENCES

AABB [Internet]: Association bulletin, #14-07, 2014. Available at: http://www.aabb.org/programs/publications/bulletins/Documents/ab14-07.pdf.

Abel JJ, Rowntree LC, Turner BB: Plasma removal with return of corpuscles, *J Pharmacol Exper Ther* 5:625–641, 1914.

Adachi S, Kubota M, Lin Y, et al: In vivo administration of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor promotes neutrophil survival in vitro, *Eur J Haematol* 53:129–134, 1994.

Adams RJ, Brambilla D: Discontinuing prophylactic transfusions used to prevent stroke in sickle cell disease, *N Engl J Med* 353:2769–2778, 2005.

Adams RJ, McKie VC, Hsu L, et al: Prevention of a first stroke by transfusions in children with sickle cell anemia and abnormal results on transcranial Doppler ultrasonography, *N Engl J Med* 339:5–11, 1998.

Adkins D, Goodgold H, Hendershott L, et al: Indium-labeled white blood cells apheresed from donors receiving G-CSF localize to sites of inflammation when infused into allogeneic bone marrow transplant recipients, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 19:809–812, 1997a.

Adkins D, Spitzer G, Johnston M, et al: Transfusions of granulocyte-colony-stimulating factor-mobilized granulocyte components to allogeneic transplant recipients: analysis of kinetics and factors determining posttransfusion neutrophil and platelet counts, *Transfusion* 37:737–748, 1997b.

Agishi T: Anion-blood contact reaction (ABC reaction) in patients treated by LDL apheresis with dextran sulfate-cellulose column while receiving ACE inhibitors, *JAMA* 271:195–196, 1994.

Aikawa A, Hadano T, Ohara T, et al: Donor specific antibody suppression in ABO incompatible kidney transplantation, *Transplant Proc* 33:395–397, 2001.

Alving BM, Hojima Y, Pisano JJ, et al: Hypotension associated with prekallikrein activator (Hageman-factor fragments) in plasma protein fraction, *N Engl J Med* 299:66–70, 1978.

Amariglio N, Jacob-Hirsch J, Shimoni A, et al: Changes in gene expression pattern following granulocyte colony-stimulating factor administration to normal stem cell sibling donors, *Acta Haematol* 117:68–73, 2007.

Amrein K, Katschnig C, Sipurzynski S, et al: Apheresis affects bone and mineral metabolism, *Bone* 46:789–795, 2010.

Antozzi C, Gemma M, Regi B, et al: A short plasma exchange protocol is effective in severe myasthenia gravis, *J Neurol* 238:103–107, 1991.

Arimura K, Inoue H, Kukita T, et al: Acute lung injury in a healthy donor during mobilization of peripheral blood stem cells using granulocyte-colony stimulating factor alone, *Haematologica* 90:e27–e29, 2005.

Asada Y, Sumiyoshi A, Hayashi T, et al: Immunohistochemistry of vascular lesion in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, with special reference to factor VIII related antigen, *Thromb Res* 38:469–479, 1985.

Auwerda JJ, Wilson JH, Sonneveld P: Foamy macrophage syndrome due to hydroxyethyl starch replacement: a severe side effect in plasmapheresis, *Ann Intern Med* 137:1013–1014, 2002.

Azevedo AM, Tabak DG: Life-threatening capillary leak syndrome after G-CSF mobilization and collection of peripheral blood progenitor cells for allogeneic transplantation, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 28:311–312, 2001.

Baley JE, Stork EK, Warkentin PI, et al: Buffy coat transfusions in neutropenic neonates with presumed sepsis: a prospective, randomized trial, *Pediatrics* 80:712–720, 1987.

Bandarenko N, Brecher ME: United States Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura Apheresis Study Group (US TTP ASG): multicenter survey and retrospective analysis of current efficacy of therapeutic plasma exchange, *J Clin Apheresis* 13:133–141, 1998.

Baron BW, Mick R, Baron JM: Combined plateletpheresis and cytotoxic chemotherapy for symptomatic thrombocytosis in myeloproliferative disorders, *Cancer* 72:1209–1218, 1993.

Basic-Jukic N, Kes P, Glavas-Boras S, et al: Complications of therapeutic plasma exchange: Experience with 4857 treatments, *Ther Apher Dial* 9:391–395, 2005.

Bear RA, Cole EH, Lang A, et al: Treatment of acute renal failure due to myeloma kidney, *Can Med Assoc J* 123:750–753, 1980.

Bender JG, To LB, Williams S, et al: Defining a therapeutic dose of peripheral blood stem cells, *J Hematother* 1:329–341, 1992.

Benjamin RJ, Dy BA, Kennedy JM, et al: The relative safety of automated two-unit red blood cell procedures and manual whole-blood collection in young donors, *Transfusion* 49:1874–1883, 2009.

Bensinger WI, Martin PJ, Storer B, et al: Transplantation of bone marrow as compared with peripheral-blood cells from HLA-identical relatives in patients with hematologic cancers, *N Engl J Med* 344:175–181, 2001.

Bensinger WI, Price TH, Dale DC, et al: The effects of daily recombinant human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor administration on normal granulocyte donors undergoing leukapheresis, *Blood* 81:1883–1888, 1993.

Berkman EM, Orlin JB: Use of plasmapheresis and partial plasma exchange in the management of patients with cryoglobulinemia, *Transfusion* 20:171–178, 1980.

Bernstein SP, Humes HD: Reversible renal insufficiency in multiple myeloma, *Arch Intern Med* 142:2083–2086, 1982.

Blanchette VS, Hume HA, Levy GJ, et al: Guidelines for auditing pediatric blood transfusion practices, *Am J Dis Child* 145:787–796, 1991.

Bloch KJ, Maki DG: Hyperviscosity syndromes associated with immunoglobulin abnormalities, *Semin Hematol* 10:113–124, 1973.

Bock M, Heim MU, Schleich I, et al: Platelet crossmatching with Capture P: clinical relevance, *Infusionstherapie* 16:183–185, 1989.

Bolan CD, Cecco SA, Wesley RA, et al: Controlled study of citrate effects and response to i.v. calcium administration during allogeneic peripheral blood progenitor cell donation, *Transfusion* 42:935–946, 2002.

Bolan CD, Cecco SA, Yau YY, et al: Randomized placebo-controlled study of oral calcium carbonate supplementation in plateletpheresis: II. Metabolic effects, *Transfusion* 43:1414–1422, 2003a.

Bolan CD, Wesley RA, Yau YY, et al: Randomized placebo-controlled study of oral calcium carbonate administration in plateletpheresis: I. Associations with donor symptoms, *Transfusion* 43:1403–1413, 2003b.

Bolwell BJ, Goormastic M, Yanssens T, et al: Comparison of G-CSF with GM-CSF for mobilizing peripheral blood progenitor cells and for enhancing marrow recovery after autologous bone marrow transplant, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 14:913–918, 1994.

Bonilla MA, Dale D, Zeidler C, et al: Long-term safety of treatment with recombinant human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (r-metHuG-CSF) in patients with severe congenital neutropenias, *Br J Haematol* 88:723–730, 1994.

Bowden RA, Slichter SJ, Sayers M, et al: A comparison of filtered leukocyte-reduced and cytomegalovirus (CMV) seronegative blood products for the prevention of transfusion-associated CMV infection after marrow transplant, *Blood* 86:3598–3603, 1995.

Brauninger S, Bialleck H, Thorausch K, et al: Mobilized allogeneic peripheral stem/progenitor cell apheresis with Spectra Optia v.5·0, a novel, automatic interface-controlled apheresis system: results from the first feasibility trial, *Vox Sang* 101:237–246, 2011.

Brauninger S, Bialleck H, Thorausch K, et al: Allogeneicdonor peripheral blood "stem cell" apheresis: prospective comparison of two apheresis systems, *Transfusion* 52:1137–1145, 2012.

Brown RA, Adkins D, DiPersio J, et al: Allogeneic peripheral blood stem cell transplantation is associated with an increased risk of chronic graft versus host disease, *Blood* 90:225a, 1997.

Brugger W, Bross KJ, Glatt M, et al: Mobilization of tumor cells and hematopoietic progenitor cells into peripheral blood of patients with solid tumors, *Blood* 83:636–640, 1994.

Buchta C, Macher M, Bieglmayer C, et al: Reduction of adverse citrate reactions during autologous large-volume PBPC apheresis by continuous infusion of calcium-gluconate, *Transfusion* 43:1615–1621, 2003.

Buckner CD, Clift RA, Thomas ED, et al: Early infectious complications in allogeneic marrow transplant recipients with acute leukemia: effects of prophylactic measures, *Infection* 11:243–250, 1983.

Buffaloe GW, Heineken FG: Plasma volume nomograms for use in therapeutic plasma exchange, *Transfusion* 23:355–357, 1983.

Bunker JP, Bendixen HH, Murphy AJ: Hemodynamic effects of intravenously administered sodium citrate, *N Engl J Med* 266:372–377, 1962.

Burch JW, Mair DC, Meny GM, et al: The risk of posterior subcapsular cataracts in granulocyte donors, *Transfusion* 45:1701–1708, 2005.

Burgstaler EA: Current instrumentation for apheresis. In McLeod BC, Szczepiorkowski ZM, Weinstein R, et al, editors: *Apheresis: principles and practice*, ed 3, Bethesda, Md, 2010, AABB Press, pp 95–130.

Burgstaler EA, Pineda AA: Hydroxyethylstarch as replacement in therapeutic plasma exchange, *Prog Clin Biol Res* 337:395–397, 1990.

Burgstaler EA, Pineda AA: Therapeutic cytapheresis: continuous flow versus intermittent flow apheresis systems, *J Clin Apheresis* 9:205–209, 1994.

Burgstaler EA, Pineda A: Therapeutic plasma exchange: a paired comparison of Fresenius AS104 vs. COBE Spectra, *J Clin Apheresis* 16:61–66, 2001.

Burgstaler EA, Pineda AA, Winters JL: Hematopoietic progenitor cell large volume leukapheresis (LVL) on the Fenwall Amicus blood separator, *J Clin Apheresis* 19:103–111, 2004.

Buskard NA, Galton DA, Goldman JM, et al: Plasma exchange in the long-term management of Waldenström's macroglobulinemia, *Can Med Assoc J* 117:135–137, 1977.

Buss DH, Cashell AW, O'Connor ML, et al: Occurrence, etiology, and clinical significance of extreme thrombocytosis: a study of 280 cases, *Am J Med* 96:247–253, 1994.

Cairo MS, Rucker R, Bennetts GA, et al: Improved survival of newborns receiving leukocyte transfusions for sepsis, *Pediatrics* 74:887–892, 1984.

Cairo MS, Worcester C, Rucker R, et al: Role of circulating complement and polymorphonuclear leukocyte transfusion in treatment and outcome in critically ill neonates with sepsis, *J Pediatr* 110:935–941, 1987.

Cashen AF: Plerixafor hydrochloride: a novel agent for the mobilization of peripheral blood stem cells, *Drugs Today* 45:497–505, 2009.

Caspar CB, Seger RA, Burger J, et al: Effective stimulation of donors for granulocyte transfusions with recombinant methionyl granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, *Blood* 81:2866–2871, 1993.

Cataland SR, Wu HM: How I treat: the clinical differentiation and initial treatment of adult patients with atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome, *Blood* 123:2478–2484, 2014.

Chopek M, McCullough J: Protein and biochemical changes during plasma exchange. In Berkman EM, Umlas J, editors: *Therapeutic hemapheresis*, Washington, DC, 1980, AABB, pp 13–52.

Christensen I, Heald P: Photopheresis in the 1990s, *J Clin Apheresis* 6:216–220, 1991.

Christensen RD, Rothstein G, Anstall HB, et al: Granulocyte transfusions in neonates with bacterial infection, neutropenia, and depletion of mature marrow neutrophils, *Pediatrics* 70:1–6, 1982.

Ciszewski TS, Ralston S, Acteson D, et al: Protein levels and plasmapheresis intensity, *Transfus Med* 3:59–65, 1993.

Clark WF, Stewart AK, Rock GA, et al; the Canadian Apheresis Group: Plasma exchange when myeloma presents as acute renal failure: a randomized, controlled trial, *Ann Intern Med* 143:777–784, 2005.

COBE BCT: *COBE Spectra red blood cell exchange inservice student workbook*, Lakewood, Colo, 1997, COBE BCT.

Code of Federal Regulations: *21 CFR 640*, Washington, DC, April 1, 2014, Government Printing Office.

Cohen DJ, Sherman WH, Osserman EF, et al: Acute renal failure in patients with multiple myeloma, *Am J Med* 76:247–256, 1984.

Confer DL, Miller JP: Long-term safety of filgrastim (rhG-CSF) administration, *Br J Haematol* 137:77–78, 2007.

Cooling L, Hoffman S, Herrst M, et al: A prospective randomized trial of two popular mononuclear cell collection sets for autologous peripheral blood stem cell collection in multiple myeloma, *Transfusion* 50:100–119, 2010.

Coppo P, Bussel A, Charrier S, et al: High-dose plasma infusion versus plasma exchange as early treatment of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura/hemolytic-uremic syndrome, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 82:27–38, 2003.

Cornblath DR, Asbury AK, Albers JW, et al: Research criteria for diagnosis of chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (CIDP): report from an ad hoc subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology AIDS Task Force, *Neurology* 41:617–618, 1991.

Cortelazzo S, Viero P, Finazzi G, et al: Incidence and risk factors for thrombotic complications in a historical cohort of 100 patients with essential thrombocythemia, *J Clin Oncol* 8:556–562, 1990.

Couriel D, Weinstein R: Complications of therapeutic plasma exchange: a recent assessment, *J Clin Apheresis* 9:1–5, 1994.

Dalakas MC, Engel WK: Immunoglobulin and complement deposits in nerves of patients with chronic relapsing polyneuropathy, *Arch Neurol* 37:637–640, 1980.

Dalakas MC, Houff SA, Engel WK, et al: CSF "monoclonal" bands in chronic relapsing polyneuropathy, *Neurology* 30:864–867, 1980b.

Dale DC, Liles WC, Llewellyn C, et al: Neutrophil transfusions: kinetics and functions of neutrophils mobilized with granulocyte-colony-stimulating factor and dexamethasone, *Transfusion* 38:713–721, 1998.

Dall'Amico R, Murer L: Extracorporeal photochemotherapy: a new therapeutic approach for allograft rejection, *Transfus Apheresis Sci* 26:197–204, 2002.

Dau PC: Plasmapheresis therapy in myasthenia gravis, *Muscle Nerve* 3:468–482, 1980.

Dau PC: Immunologic rebound, *J Clin Apheresis* 10:210–217, 1995.

Dau PC, Lindstrom JM, Cassel CK, et al: Plasmapheresis and immunosuppressive drug therapy in myasthenia gravis, *N Engl J Med* 297:1134–1140, 1977.

Davies SC, Roberts-Harewood M: Blood transfusion in sickle cell disease, *Blood Rev* 11:57–71, 1997.

DeFronzo RA, Cooke CR, Wright JR, et al: Renal function in patients with multiple myeloma, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 57:151–166, 1978.

Delikouras A, Dorling A: Transplant accommodation, *Am J Transplant* 3:917–918, 2003.

Derksen RH, Schuurman HJ, Gmelig Meyling FH, et al: Rebound and overshoot after plasma exchange in humans, *J Lab Clin Med* 104:35–43, 1984a.

Derksen RH, Schuurman HJ, Meyling FH, et al: The efficacy of plasma exchange in the removal of plasma components, *J Lab Clin Med* 104:346–354, 1984b.

Despotis GJ, Goodnough LT, Dynis M, et al: Adverse events in platelet apheresis donors: a multivariate analysis in a hospital-based program, *Vox Sang* 77:24–32, 1999.

Dettke M, Hlousek M, Kurz M, et al: Increase in endogenous thrombopoietin in healthy donors after automated plateletpheresis, *Transfusion* 38:449–453, 1998.

Doughty HA, Murphy MF, Metcalfe P, et al: Relative importance of immune and non-immune causes of platelet refractoriness, *Vox Sang* 66:200–205, 1994.

Dreger P, Marquardt P, Haferlach T, et al: Effective mobilisation of peripheral blood progenitor cells with "Dexa-BEAM" and G-CSF: timing of harvesting and composition of the leukapheresis product, *Br J Cancer* 68:950–957, 1993.

Duhrsen U, Villeval JL, Boyd J, et al: Effects of recombinant human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor on hematopoietic progenitor cells in cancer patients, *Blood* 72:2074–2081, 1988.

Duquesnoy RJ: Donor selection in platelet transfusion therapy of alloimmunized thrombocytopenic patients. In Greenwalt TJ, Jamieson GA, editors: *The blood platelet in transfusion therapy*, New York, 1978, Alan R. Liss, pp 229–243.

Dutcher JP, Aisner J, Hogge DE, et al: Donor reaction to hydroxyethyl starch during granulocytapheresis, *Transfusion* 24:66–67, 1984.

Dutcher JP, Schiffer CA, Johnston GS, et al: Alloimmunization prevents the migration of transfused indium-111-labeled granulocytes to sites of infection, *Blood* 62:354–360, 1983.

Dutcher JP, Schiffer CA, Wiernik PH: Hyperleukocytosis in adult acute nonlymphocytic leukemia: impact on remission rate and duration, and survival, *J Clin Oncol* 5:1364–1372, 1987.

Dyck PJ, Daube J, O'Brien P, et al: Plasma exchange in chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy, *N Engl J Med* 314:461–465, 1986.

Dyck PJ, Lais AC, Ohta M, et al: Chronic inflammatory polyradiculoneuropathy, *Mayo Clin Proc* 50:621–637, 1975.

Dyck PJ, Litchy WJ, Kratz KM, et al: A plasma exchange versus immune globulin infusion trial in chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy, *Ann Neurol* 36:838–845, 1994.

Dzik WH, Kirkley S: Citrate toxicity during massive blood transfusion, *Transfus Med Rev* 2:76–94, 1988.

Edelson RL: Mechanistic insights into extracorporeal photochemotherapy: Efficient induction of monocyte-to-dendritic cell maturation, *Transfus Apher Sci* 50:322–329, 2014.

Edelson R, Berger C, Gasparro F, et al: Treatment of cutaneous T-cell lymphoma by extracorporeal photochemotherapy. Preliminary results, *N Engl J Med* 316:297–303, 1987.

Eder AF, Dy BA, Kennedy JM, et al: The American Red Cross donor hemovigilance program: complications of blood donation reported in 2006, *Transfusion* 48:1809–1819, 2008.

Edmondson JW, Brashear RE, Li T: Tetany: quantitative interrelationships between calcium and alkalosis, *Am J Physiol* 228:1082–1086, 1975.

Egan JA, Hay SN, Brecher ME: Frequency and significance of schistocytes in TTPHUS patients at the discontinuation of plasma exchange therapy, *J Clin Apher* 19:165–167, 2004.

Erickson SB, Kurtz SB, Donadio JV Jr, et al: Use of combined plasmapheresis and immunosuppression in the treatment of Goodpasture's syndrome, *Mayo Clin Proc* 54:714–720, 1979.

Flaum MA, Cuneo RA, Appelbaum FR, et al: The hemostatic imbalance of plasma-exchange transfusion, *Blood* 54:694–702, 1979.

Flowers ME, Parker PM, Johnston LJ, et al: Comparison of chronic graft-versus-host disease after transplantation of peripheral blood stem cells versus bone marrow in allogeneic recipients: long-term follow-up of a randomized trial, *Blood* 100:415–419, 2002.

Foerster J: Cryoglobulins and cryoglobulinemia. In Lee GR, Bithell TC, Foerster J, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 9, Philadelphia, 1993a, Lea & Febiger, pp 2284–2293.

Foerster J: Plasma cell dyscrasias: general considerations. In Lee GR, Bithell TC, Foerster J, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 9, Philadelphia, 1993b, Lea & Febiger, pp 2202–2218.

Food and Drug Administration [Internet]: Place unknown, Publisher unknown, date unknown. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/SafetyAvailability/ucm358271. updated 2013 Nov 26; cited 2014 Sept 6.

Food and Drug Administration (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research): *Guideline for the collection of platelets, pheresis prepared by automated methods*, Bethesda, Md, 1988, FDA.

Food and Drug Administration (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research): *Memorandum to registered blood and source plasma establishments. Revision of FDA memorandum of August 27, 1982. Requirements for infrequent plasmapheresis donors*, Bethesda, Md, 1995, FDA.

Food and Drug Administration (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research): *Recommendations for collecting red blood cells by automated apheresis methods*, Bethesda, Md, 2001, FDA.

Food and Drug Administration (Division of Blood and Blood Products, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research): *Guidance for industry and FDA review staff: collection of platelets by automated methods*, Rockville, Md, 2007, FDA.

Foss FM, Gorgun G, Miller KB: Extracorporeal photopheresis in chronic graft-versus-host disease, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 29:719–725, 2002.

Gajdos P, Chevret S, Clair B, et al: Clinical trial of plasma exchange and high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin in myasthenia gravis. Myasthenia Gravis Clinical Study Group, *Ann Neurol* 41:789–796, 1997.

Gazitt Y, Tian E, Barlogie B, et al: Differential mobilization of myeloma cells and normal hematopoietic stem cells in multiple myeloma after treatment with cyclophosphamide and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, *Blood* 87:805–811, 1996.

Ghodsi Z, Strauss RG: Cataracts in neutrophil donors stimulated with adrenal corticosteroids, *Transfusion* 41:1464–1468, 2001.

Gilcher RO: Apheresis: principles and practice. In Rossi EC, Simon TL, Moss GS, et al, editors: *Principles of transfusion medicine*, ed 2, Baltimore, Md, 1996, Williams & Wilkins, pp 537–545.

Giles FJ, Shen Y, Kantarjian HM, et al: Leukapheresis reduces early mortality in patients with acute myeloid leukemia with high white cell counts but does not improve long-term survival, *Leuk Lymphoma* 42:67–73, 2001.

Gillespie TW, Hillyer CD: Peripheral blood progenitor cells for marrow reconstitution: mobilization and collection strategies, *Transfusion* 36:611–624, 1996.

Glasser L, Huestis DW, Jones JF: Functional capabilities of steroid-recruited neutrophils harvested for clinical transfusion, *N Engl J Med* 297:1033–1036, 1977.

Gloor JM, DeGoey SR, Pineda AA, et al: Overcoming a positive crossmatch in living-donor kidney transplantation, *Am J Transplant* 3:1017–1023, 2003a.

Gloor JM, Lager DJ, Moore SB, et al: ABO-incompatible kidney transplantation using both A2 and non-A2 living donors, *Transplantation* 75:971–977, 2003b.

Glowitz RJ, Slichter SJ: Frequent multiunit plateletpheresis from single donors: effects on donors' blood and the platelet yield, *Transfusion* 20:199–205, 1980.

Goldberg SL, Mangan KF, Klumpp TR, et al: Complications of peripheral blood stem cell harvesting: review of 554 PBSC leukaphereses, *J Hematother* 4:85–90, 1995.

Goodnough LT, Ali S, Despotis G, et al: Economic impact of donor platelet count and platelet yield in apheresis products: relevance for emerging issues in platelet transfusion therapy, *Vox Sang* 76:43–49, 1999.

Goss GA, Weinstein R: Pentastarch as partial replacement fluid for therapeutic plasma exchange: effect on plasma proteins, adverse events during treatment, and serum ionized calcium, *J Clin Apheresis* 14:114–121, 1999.

Grishaber JE, Cunningham MC, Rohret PA, et al: Analysis of venous access for therapeutic plasma exchange in patients with neurological disease, *J Clin Apheresis* 7:119–123, 1992.

Grupp SA, Frangoul H, Wall D, et al: Use of G-CSF in matched sibling donor pediatric allogeneic transplantation: a consensus statement from the Children's Oncology Group (COG) transplant discipline committee and Pediatric Blood and Marrow Transplant Consortium (PBMTC) executive committee, *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 46:414–421, 2006.

Guildet B, Martinet O, Boulain T, et al: Assessment of hemodynamic efficacy and safety of 6% hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.4 vs. 0.9% NaCl fluid replacement in patients with severe sepsis: The CRYSTMAS study, *Critical Care* 16:R94, 2012.

Guillain-Barré Syndrome Study Group: Plasmapheresis and acute Guillain-Barré syndrome, *Neurology* 35:1096–1104, 1985.

Haddad S, Leitman SF, Wesley RA, et al: Placebo-controlled study of intravenous magnesium supplementation during large-volume leukapheresis in healthy allogeneic donors, *Transfusion* 45:934–944, 2005.

Hahn AF, Bolton CF, Pillay N, et al: Plasma-exchange therapy in chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy: a double-blind, sham-controlled, cross-over study, *Brain* 119:1055–1066, 1996.

Heddle NM: Febrile nonhemolytic transfusion reactions to platelets, *Curr Opin Hematol* 2:478–483, 1995.

Heimfeld S: Bone marrow transplantation: how important is CD34 cell dose in HLA-identical stem cell transplantation? *Leukemia* 17:856–858, 2003.

Heininger K, Liebert UG, Toyka KV, et al: Chronic inflammatory polyneuropathy: reduction of nerve conduction velocities in monkeys by systemic passive transfer of immunoglobulin G, *J Neurol Sci* 66:1–14, 1984.

Hernandez-Bernal F, Garcia-Garcia I, Gonzalez-Delgado CA, et al: Bioequivalence of the two recombinant granulocyte colony-stimulating factor formulations in healthy male volunteers, *Biopharm Drug Dispos* 26:151–159, 2005.

Hester JP, Dignani MC, Anaissie EJ, et al: Collection and transfusion of granulocyte concentrates from donors primed with granulocyte stimulating factor and response of myelosuppressed patients with established infection, *J Clin Apheresis* 10:188–193, 1995.

Hester JP, McCullough J, Mishler JM, et al: Dosage regimens for citrate anticoagulants, *J Clin Apheresis* 1:149–157, 1983.

Heyns AP, Badenhorst PN, Lotter MG, et al: Kinetics and mobilization from the spleen of Indium-111-labeled platelets during platelet apheresis, *Transfusion* 25:215–218, 1985.

Higby DJ, Henderson ES, Burnett D, et al: Filtration leukapheresis: effects of donor stimulation with dexamethasone, *Blood* 50:953–959, 1977.

Hillyer CD, Berkman EM: Plasma exchange in dysproteinemias. In Rossi EC, Simon TL, Moss GS, et al, editors: *Principles of transfusion medicine*, ed 2, Baltimore, Md, 1996, Williams & Wilkins, pp 569–575.

Hubel K, Carter RA, Liles WC, et al: Granulocyte transfusion therapy for infections in candidates and

recipients of HPC transplantation: a comparative analysis of feasibility and outcome for community donors versus related donors, *Transfusion* 42:1414–1421, 2002.
Huestis DW: Risks and safety practices in hemapheresis procedures, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 113:273–278, 1989.
Hughes RA: Plasma exchange in Guillain-Barré syndrome and related disorders, *Transfus Sci* 14:3–8, 1993.
Hughes RA, Newsom-Davis JM, Perkin GD, et al: Controlled trial prednisolone in acute polyneuropathy, *Lancet* 2:750–753, 1978.
Hussein MA, Lee EJ, Fletcher R, et al: The effect of lymphocytotoxic antibody reactivity on the results of single antigen mismatched platelet transfusions to alloimmunized patients, *Blood* 87:3959–3962, 1996.
Iacone A, Di Bartolomeo P, Di Girolamo G, et al: Hydroxyethyl starch and steroid improved collection of normal granulocytes with continuous flow centrifugation gravity leukapheresis, *Haematologica* 66:645–655, 1981.
Isbister JP: Cytapheresis: the first 25 years, *Ther Apher* 1:17–21, 1997.
Iwasaki Y, Kinoshita M, Ikeda K, et al: Neuropsychological function before and after plasma exchange in myasthenia gravis, *J Neurol Sci* 114:223–226, 1993.
Jaeger BR, Marx P, Pfefferkorn T, et al: Heparin-mediated extracorporeal LDL/fibrinogen precipitation—H.E.L.P.—in coronary and cerebral ischemia, *Acta Neurochir Suppl (Wien)* 73:81–84, 1999.
Jendiroba DB, Lichtiger B, Anaissie E, et al: Evaluation and comparison of three mobilization methods for the collection of granulocytes, *Transfusion* 38:722–728, 1998.
Johnson WJ, Kyle RA, Dahlberg PJ: Dialysis in the treatment of multiple myeloma, *Mayo Clin Proc* 55:65–72, 1980.
Johnson WJ, Kyle RA, Pineda AA, et al: Treatment of renal failure associated with multiple myeloma: plasmapheresis, hemodialysis, and chemotherapy, *Arch Intern Med* 150:863–869, 1990.
Johnson JP, Moore J Jr, Austin HA III, et al: Therapy of anti-glomerular basement membrane antibody disease: analysis of prognostic significance of clinical, pathologic and treatment factors, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 64:219–227, 1985.
Johnson JP, Whitman W, Briggs WA, et al: Plasmapheresis and immunosuppressive agents in antibasement membrane antibody-induced Goodpasture's syndrome, *Am J Med* 64:354–359, 1978.
Joos K, Herzog R, Einsele H, et al: Characterization and functional analysis of granulocyte concentrates collected from donors after repeated G-CSF stimulation, *Transfusion* 42:603–611, 2002.
Kale-Pradhan PB, Woo MH: A review of the effects of plasmapheresis on drug clearance, *Pharmacotherapy* 17:684–695, 1997.
Kamochi M, Aibara K, Nakata K, et al: Profound ionized hypomagnesemia induced by therapeutic plasma exchange in liver failure patients, *Transfusion* 42:1598–1602, 2002.
Kannan S, Milligan KR: Moderately severe anaphylactoid reaction to pentastarch (200/0.5) in a patient with acute severe asthma, *Intensive Care Med* 25:220–222, 1999.
Kaplinsky C, Trakhtenbrot L, Hardan I, et al: Tetraploid myeloid cells in donors of peripheral blood stem cells treated with rhG-CSF, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 32:31–34, 2003.
Kelleher SP, Schulman G: Severe metabolic alkalosis complicating regional citrate hemodialysis, *Am J Kidney Dis* 9:235–236, 1987.
Keeney M, Chin-Yee I, Weir K, et al: Single platform flow cytometric absolute CD34+ cell counts based on the ISHAGE guidelines. International Society of Hemotherapy and Graft Engineering, *Cytometry* 34:61–70, 1998.
Kessinger A, Armitage JO, Smith DM, et al: High-dose therapy and autologous peripheral blood stem cell transplantation for patients with lymphoma, *Blood* 74:1260–1265, 1989.
Kessinger A, Bishop MR, Anderson JR, et al: Comparison of subcutaneous and intravenous administration of recombinant human granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor for peripheral blood stem cell mobilization, *J Hematother* 4:81–84, 1995.
Kessinger A, Sharp JG: The whys and hows of hematopoietic progenitor and stem cell mobilization, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 31:319–329, 2003.
Kim SR, Choung HK, Kim DW, et al: Evaluation of a new cell separator for collection of peripheral blood CD34+ progenitor cells in pediatric patients, *Transfusion* 51:306–312, 2011.
Kintzel PE, Eastlund T, Calis KA: Extracorporeal removal of antimicrobials during plasmapheresis, *J Clin Apher* 18:194–205, 2003.
Kishimoto M, Ohto H, Shikama Y, et al: Treatment for the decline of ionized calcium levels during peripheral blood progenitor cell harvesting, *Transfusion* 42:1340–1347, 2002.
Klingel R, Fassbender C, Fassbender T, et al: Clinical studies to implement rheopheresis for age-related macular degeneration guided by evidence-based-medicine, *Transfus Apheresis Sci* 29:71–84, 2003.
Knobler RM, Trautinger F, Graninger W, et al: Parenteral administration of 8-methoxypsoralen in photopheresis, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 28:580–584, 1993.
Kobbe G, Soehngen D, Heyll A, et al: Large volume leukapheresis maximizes the progenitor cell yield for allogeneic peripheral blood progenitor donation, *J Hematother* 6:125–131, 1997.
Koch-Weser J, Sellers EM: Binding of drugs to serum albumin (first of two parts), *N Engl J Med* 294:311–316, 1976.
Kolovratova V, List J, Worel P, et al: Administration of Prednisolone intravenously or Dexamethason orally in random donors reveals equal results in granulocyte collection: a single centre experience, *Vox Sang* 103:75–78, 2012.
Korbling M: Effects of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor in healthy subjects, *Curr Opin Hematol* 5:209–214, 1998.
Korbling M, Huh YO, Durett A, et al: Allogeneic blood stem cell transplantation: peripheralization and yield of donor-derived primitive hematopoietic progenitor cells (CD34+ Thy-1dim) and lymphoid subsets, and possible predictors of engraftment and graft-versus-host disease, *Blood* 86:2842–2848, 1995.
Koski CL, Gratz E, Sutherland J, et al: Clinical correlation with anti-peripheral-nerve myelin antibodies in Guillain-Barré syndrome, *Ann Neurol* 19:573–577, 1986.
Koski CL, Humphrey R, Shin ML: Anti-peripheral myelin antibody in patients with demyelinating neuropathy: quantitative and kinetic determination of serum antibody by complement component 1 fixation, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 82:905–909, 1985.
Kroger N, Zander AR: Dose and schedule effect of G-GSF for stem cell mobilization in healthy donors for allogeneic transplantation, *Leuk Lymphoma* 43:1391–1394, 2002.
Lane DM, McConathy WJ, Laughlin LO, et al: Weekly treatment of diet/drug-resistant hypercholesterolemia with the heparin-induced extracorporeal low-density lipoprotein precipitation (HELP) system by selective plasma low-density lipoprotein removal, *Am J Cardiol* 71:816–822, 1993.
Lapidot T, Petit I: Current understanding of stem cell mobilization: the roles of chemokines, proteolytic enzymes, adhesion molecules, cytokines, and stromal cells, *Exp Hematol* 30:973–981, 2002.
Laurenti F, Ferro R, Isacchi G, et al: Polymorphonuclear leukocyte transfusion for the treatment of sepsis in the newborn infant, *J Pediatr* 98:118–123, 1981.
Lazarus EF, Browning J, Norman J, et al: Sustained decreases in platelet count associated with multiple, regular plateletpheresis donations, *Transfusion* 41:756–761, 2001.
Lee JH, Klein HG: Collection and use of circulating hematopoietic progenitor cells, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 9:1–22, 1995.
Lee JH, Leitman SF, Klein HG: A controlled comparison of the efficacy of hetastarch and pentastarch in granulocyte collections by centrifugal leukapheresis, *Blood* 86:4662–4666, 1995.
Leebmann J, Roeseler E, Julius U, et al: Lipoprotein apheresis in patients with maximally tolerated lipid-lowering therapy, lipoprotein(a)-hyperlipoproteinemia, and progressive cardiovascular disease: prospective observational multicenter study, *Circulation* 128:2567–2576, 2013.
Leitman SF, Boltansky H, Alter HJ, et al: Allergic reactions in healthy plateletpheresis donors caused by sensitization to ethylene oxide gas, *N Engl J Med* 315:1192–1196, 1986.
Lester TJ, Johnson JW, Cuttner J: Pulmonary leukostasis as the single worst prognostic factor in patients with acute myelocytic leukemia and hyperleukocytosis, *Am J Med* 79:43–48, 1985.
Leung N: Plasma exchange in multiple myeloma, *Ann Intern Med* 144:455, 2006.
Leung N, Gertz MA, Zeldenrust SR, et al: Improvement of cast nephropathy with plasma exchange depends on the diagnosis and on reduction of serum free light chains, *Kid Int* 73:1282–1288, 2008.
Levy JB, Turner AN, Rees AJ, et al: Long-term outcome of anti-glomerular basement membrane antibody disease treated with plasma exchange and immunosuppression, *Ann Intern Med* 134:1033–1042, 2001.
Lewis SL, Kutvirt SG, Bonner PN, et al: Effect of long-term platelet donation on lymphocyte subsets and plasma protein concentrations, *Transfus Sci* 18:205–213, 1999.
Lieschke GJ, Burgess AW: Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (2), *N Engl J Med* 327:99–106, 1992.
Liesveld JL: Expression and function of adhesion receptors in acute myelogenous leukemia: parallels with normal erythroid and myeloid progenitors, *Acta Haematol* 97:53–62, 1997.
Liles WC, Dale DC, Klebanoff SJ: Glucocorticoids inhibit apoptosis of human neutrophils, *Blood* 86:3181–3188, 1995.
Liles WC, Huang JE, Llewellyn C, et al: A comparative trial of granulocyte-colony-stimulating factor and dexamethasone, separately and in combination, for the mobilization of neutrophils in the peripheral blood of normal volunteers, *Transfusion* 37:182–187, 1997.
Liles WC, Rodger E, Dale DC: Combined administration of G-CSF and dexamethasone for the mobilization of granulocytes in normal donors: optimization of dosing, *Transfusion* 40:642–644, 2000.
Lin JS, Burgstaler EA, Pineda AA, et al: Effects of whole blood flow rates on mononuclear cell yields during peripheral blood stem cell collection using Fenwal CS 3000 Plus, *J Clin Apheresis* 10:7–11, 1995.
Lindstrom JM, Seybold ME, Lennon VA, et al: Antibody to acetylcholine receptor in myasthenia gravis: prevalence, clinical correlates, and diagnostic value, *Neurology* 26:1054–1059, 1976.
Lysaght MJ, Samtleben WS: Closed-loop plasmapheresis. In MacPherson JL, Kasprisin DO, editors: *Therapeutic hemapheresis*, Boca Raton, Fla, 1985, CRC Press, pp 149–168.
MacPherson JL, Nusbacher J, Bennett JM: The acquisition of granulocytes by leukapheresis: a comparison of continuous flow centrifugation and filtration leukapheresis in normal and corticosteroid-stimulated donors, *Transfusion* 16:221–228, 1976.
Marques MB, Huang ST: Patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura commonly develop metabolic alkalosis during therapeutic plasma exchange, *J Clin Apheresis* 16:120–124, 2001.
Maselli RA: Pathophysiology of myasthenia gravis and Lambert-Eaton syndrome, *Neurol Clin* 12:285–303, 1994.
Mathur K, Morris S, Deighan C: Extracorporeal photopheresis improves nephrogenic fibrosing dermopathy/nephrogenic systemic fibrosis: three case reports and review of literature, *J Clin Apher* 23:144–150, 2008.
McCullough J, Clay M, Hurd D, et al: Effect of leukocyte antibodies and HLA matching on the intravascular recovery, survival, and tissue localization of 111-indium granulocytes, *Blood* 67:522–528, 1986.
McGrath MA, Penny R: Paraproteinemia: blood hyperviscosity and clinical manifestations, *J Clin Invest* 58:1155–1162, 1976.
McLeod BC: Introduction to the third special issue: clinical applications of therapeutic apheresis, *J Clin Apheresis* 15:1–5, 2000.
McLeod BC, Price TH, Owen H, et al: Frequency of immediate adverse effects associated with apheresis donation, *Transfusion* 38:938–943, 1998.
McLeod BC, Sassetti RJ: Plasmapheresis with return of cryoglobulin-depleted autologous plasma (cryoglobulinpheresis) in cryoglobulinemia, *Blood* 55:866–870, 1980.
McLeod BC, Sniecinski I, Ciavarella D, et al: Frequency of immediate adverse effects associated with therapeutic apheresis, *Transfusion* 39:282–288, 1999.
McLeod BC, Strauss RG, Ciavarella D, et al: Management of hematological disorders and cancer, *J Clin Apheresis* 8:211–230, 1993.
Mendell JR, Kissel JT, Kennedy MS, et al: Plasma exchange and prednisone in Guillain-Barré syndrome: a controlled randomized trial, *Neurology* 35:1551–1555, 1985.

Mercan D, Bastin G, Lambermont M, et al: Importance of ionized magnesium measurement for monitoring of citrate-anticoagulated plateletpheresis, *Transfusion* 37:418–422, 1997.

Moake JL, McPherson PD: Abnormalities of von Willebrand factor multimers in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura and the hemolytic-uremic syndrome, *Am J Med* 87:9N–15N, 1989.

Mokrzycki MH, Kaplan AA: Therapeutic plasma exchange: complications and management, *Am J Kidney Dis* 23:817–827, 1994.

Mollison PL, Engelfriet CP, Contreras M: Appendix 5. In *Blood transfusion in clinical medicine*, ed 10, Malden, Mass, 1998, Blackwell Science, p 561.

Montacer-Kuhssari J, Voller H, Keller F: Pulmonary air embolism, *Intensive Care Med* 20:166–167, 1994.

Montgomery RA, Zachary AA, Racusen LC, et al: Plasmapheresis and intravenous immune globulin provides effective rescue therapy for refractory humoral rejection and allows kidneys to be successfully transplanted into cross-match-positive recipients, *Transplantation* 70:887–895, 2000.

Moog R: Collection of red blood cell units by apheresis, *Transfus Apher Sci* 48:141–143, 2013.

Moog R, Muller N: Technical aspects and performance in collecting peripheral blood progenitor cells, *Ann Hematol* 77:143–147, 1998.

Murata M, Harada M, Kato S, et al: Peripheral blood stem cell mobilization and apheresis: analysis of adverse events in 94 normal donors, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 24:1065–1071, 1999.

Murphy MF, Waters AH: Clinical aspects of platelet transfusions, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 2:389–396, 1991.

Muylle L, Baeten M, Avonts G, et al: Anaphylactoid reaction in platelet-pheresis donor with IgE antibodies to ethylene oxide, *Lancet* 2:1225, 1986.

Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al: CHEST Investigators. Australian and New Zealand Intensive Care Society Clinical Trials Group. Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care, *N Engl J Med* 367:1901–1911, 2012.

Nadler SB, Hidalgo JU, Bloch T: Prediction of blood volume in normal human adults, *Surgery* 5:224, 1962.

Nagler A, Korenstein-Ilan A, Amiel A, et al: Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor generates epigenetic and genetic alterations in lymphocytes of normal volunteer donors of stem cells, *Exp Hematol* 32:122–130, 2004.

Nearman HS, Herman ML: Toxic effects of colloids in the intensive care unit, *Crit Care Clin* 7:713–723, 1991.

Ness P, Braine H, King K, et al: Single-donor platelets reduce the risk of septic platelet transfusion reactions, *Transfusion* 41:857–861, 2001.

Newman BH: Donor reactions and injuries from whole blood donation, *Transfus Med Rev* 11:64–75, 1997.

Noseworthy JH, Shumak KH, Vandervoort MK: Long-term use of antecubital veins for plasma exchange. The Canadian Cooperative Multiple Sclerosis Study Group, *Transfusion* 29:610–613, 1989.

Oberoi S, Lehrnbecher T, Phillips B, et al: Leukapheresis and low-dose chemotherapy do not reduce early mortality in acute myeloid leukemia hyperleukocytosis: A systemic review and meta-analysis, *Leuk Res* 38:460–468, 2014.

O'Connell BA, Lee EJ, Rothko K, et al: Selection of histocompatible apheresis platelet donors by cross-matching random donor platelet concentrates, *Blood* 79:527–531, 1992.

Ojo AO, Hanson JA, Meier-Kriesche H, et al: Survival in recipients of marginal cadaveric donor kidneys compared with other recipients and wait-listed transplant candidates, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 12:589–597, 2001.

Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network: Internet, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, 2014. Available at: http://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/.

Orlin JB, Berkman EM: Partial plasma exchange using albumin replacement: removal and recovery of normal plasma constituents, *Blood* 56:1055–1059, 1980.

Owen HG, Brecher ME: Atypical reactions associated with use of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and apheresis, *Transfusion* 34:891–894, 1994.

Pamphilion D, Nacheva E, Navarrete C, et al: The use of granulocyte-colony-stimulating factor in volunteer unrelated hematopoietic stem cell donors, *Transfusion* 48:1495–1501, 2008.

Park WD, Grande JP, Ninova D, et al: Accommodation in ABO-incompatible kidney allografts, a novel mechanism of self-protection against antibody-mediated injury, *Am J Transplant* 3:952–960, 2003.

Passos-Coelho JL, Braine HG, Davis JM, et al: Predictive factors for peripheral-blood progenitor-cell collections using a single large-volume leukapheresis after cyclophosphamide and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor mobilization, *J Clin Oncol* 13:705–714, 1995a.

Passos-Coelho JL, Ross AA, Moss TJ, et al: Absence of breast cancer cells in a single-day peripheral blood progenitor cell collection after priming with cyclophosphamide and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, *Blood* 85:1138–1143, 1995b.

Pearl DG, Rosenthal MH: Metabolic alkalosis due to plasmapheresis, *Am J Med* 79:391–393, 1985.

Perdue JJ, Chandler LK, Vesely SK, et al: Unintentional platelet removal by plasmapheresis, *J Clin Apheresis* 16:55–60, 2001.

Perner A, Haase N, Guttormsen AB, et al: Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.42 versus Ringer's acetate in severe sepsis, *N Engl Med* 367:124–134, 2012.

Plasma Exchange/Sandoglobulin Guillain-Barré Syndrome Trial Group: Randomised trial of plasma exchange, intravenous immunoglobulin, and combined treatments in Guillain-Barré syndrome, *Lancet* 349:225–230, 1997.

Pool M, McLeod BC: Pyrogen reactions to human serum albumin during plasma exchange, *J Clin Apheresis* 10:81–84, 1995.

Popovsky MA, Whitaker B, Arnold NL: Severe outcomes of allogeneic and autologous blood donation: frequency and characterization, *Transfusion* 35:734–737, 1995.

Porcu P, Cripe LD, Ng EW, et al: Hyperleukocytic leukemias and leukostasis: a review of pathophysiology, clinical presentation and management, *Leuk Lymphoma* 39:1–18, 2000.

Porcu P, Danielson CF, Orazi A, et al: Therapeutic leukapheresis in hyperleucocytic leukaemias: lack of correlation between degree of cytoreduction and early mortality rate, *Br J Haematol* 98:433–436, 1997.

Powell VI, Grima K: Exchange transfusion for malaria and babesia infection, *Transfus Med Rev* 16:239–250, 2002.

Powers A, Stowell CP, Dzik WH, et al: Testing only donors with a prior history of pregnancy or transfusion is a logical and cost-effective transfusion-related acute lung injury prevention strategy, *Transfusion* 48:2549–2558, 2008.

Price TH: Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor-mobilized granulocyte concentrate transfusions, *Curr Opin Hematol* 5:391–395, 1998.

Price TH, Dale DC: Blood kinetics and in vivo chemotaxis of transfused neutrophils: effect of collection method, donor corticosteroid treatment, and short-term storage, *Blood* 54:977–986, 1979.

Pusey CD, Lockwood CM, Peters DK: Plasma exchange and immunosuppressive drugs in the treatment of glomerulonephritis due to antibodies to the glomerular basement membrane, *Int J Artif Organs* 6(Suppl 1):15–18, 1983.

Pusic I, DiPersio JF: The use of growth factors in hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, *Curr Pharm Des* 14:1950–1961, 2008.

Radtke H, Mayer B, Rocker L, et al: Iron supplementation and 2-unit red blood cell apheresis: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, *Transfus* 44: 1463–1467, 2004.

Randerson DH, Blumenstein M, Habersetzer R, et al: Mass transfer in membrane plasma exchange, *Artif Organs* 6:43–49, 1982.

Reeves HM, Winters JL: The mechanisms of action of plasma exchange, *Br J Haematol* 164:342–351, 2014.

Reik RA, Noto TA, Fernandez HF: Safety of large-volume leukapheresis for collection of peripheral blood progenitor cells, *J Clin Apheresis* 12:10–13, 1997.

Reinhardt P, Brauninger S, Bialleck H, et al: Automatic interface-controlled apheresis collection of stem/progenitor cells: results from an autologous donor validation trial of a novel stem cell apheresis device, *Transfusion* 51:1321–1330, 2011.

Richa E, Krueger O, Burgstaler EA, et al: The effect of double- and triple-apheresis platelet product donation on apheresis donor platelet and white blood cell counts, *Transfusion* 48:1325–1332, 2008.

Ring J, Messmer K: Incidence and severity of anaphylactoid reactions to colloid volume substitutes, *Lancet* 1:466–469, 1977.

Rock GA, Anderson D, Clark W, et al: Does cryosupernatant plasma improve outcome in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura? No answer yet, *Br J Haematol* 129:79–86, 2005.

Rock GA, Shumak KH, Buskard NA, et al: Comparison of plasma exchange with plasma infusion in the treatment of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *N Engl J Med* 325:393–397, 1991.

Rock G, Shumak KH, Sutton DM, et al: Cryosupernatant as replacement fluid for plasma exchange in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. Members of the Canadian Apheresis Group, *Br J Haematol* 94:383–386, 1996.

Rock G, Sutton DM, Freedman J, et al: Pentastarch instead of albumin as replacement fluid for therapeutic plasma exchange. The Canadian Apheresis Group, *J Clin Apheresis* 12:165–169, 1997.

Rogers RL, Johnson H, Ludwig G, et al: Efficacy and safety of plateletpheresis by donors with low-normal platelet counts, *J Clin Apheresis* 10:194–197, 1995.

Ropper AH: The Guillain-Barré syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 326:1130–1136, 1992.

Ropper AE, Albert JW, Addison R: Limited relapse in Guillain-Barré syndrome after plasma exchange, *Arch Neurol* 45:314–315, 1988.

Rox JM, Wenzel F, Kobbe G, et al: Influence of high inlet flow rates on efficacy of stem cell apheresis using the Spectra Optia Apheresis System, *Vox Sang* 101:337, 2011.

Salama AD, Delikouras A, Pusey CD, et al: Transplant accommodation in highly sensitized patients: a potential role for Bcl-xL and alloantibody, *Am J Transplant* 1:260–269, 2001.

Salmon SE, Cassady RJ: Plasma cell neoplasms. In DeVita VT, Hellman S, Rosenberg SA, editors: *Cancer: principles and practice of oncology*, ed 2, New York, 1997, Lippincott-Raven, pp 2344–2386.

Sanders DB, Scoppetta C: The treatment of patients with myasthenia gravis, *Neurol Clin* 12:343–368, 1994.

Sarode R, Bandarenko N, Brecher ME, et al: Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura: 2012 American Society for Apheresis (ASFA) consensus conference on classification, diagnosis, management, and future research, *J Clin Apher* 29:148–167, 2014.

Schafer AI: Bleeding and thrombosis in the myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood* 64:1–12, 1984.

Schafer AI: Management of thrombocythemia, *Curr Opin Hematol* 3:341–346, 1996.

Schiffer CA: Management of patients refractory to platelet transfusion—an evaluation of methods of donor selection, *Prog Hematol* 15:91–113, 1987.

Schiffer CA: Granulocyte transfusions: an overlooked therapeutic modality, *Transfus Med Rev* 4:2–7, 1990.

Schlenke P, Frohn C, Steinhardt MM, et al: Clinically relevant hypokalemia, hypocalcemia, and loss of hemoglobin and platelets during stem cell apheresis, *J Clin Apheresis* 15:230–235, 2000.

Schulzeck P, Olbricht CJ, Koch KM: Long-term experience with extracorporeal low-density lipoprotein cholesterol removal by dextran sulfate cellulose adsorption, *Clin Investig* 70:99–104, 1992.

Schweitzer EJ, Wilson JS, Fernandez-Vina M, et al: A high panel-reactive antibody rescue protocol for cross-match-positive live donor kidney transplants, *Transplantation* 70:1531–1536, 2000.

Shapira MY, Kaspler P, Samuel S, et al: Granulocyte colony stimulating factor does not induce long-term DNA instability in healthy peripheral blood stem cell donors, *Am J Hematol* 73:33–36, 2003.

Shemin D, Briggs D, Greenan M: Complications of therapeutic plasma exchange: a prospective study of 1,727 procedures, *J Clin Apheresis* 22:270–276, 2007.

Siegel JF, Rich MA, Brock WA: Association of sickle cell disease, priapism, exchange transfusion and neurological events: ASPEN syndrome, *J Urol* 150:1480–1482, 1993.

Silberstein LE, Naryshkin S, Haddad JJ, et al: Calcium homeostasis during therapeutic plasma exchange, *Transfusion* 26:151–155, 1986.

Sintnicolaas K, Vriesendorp HM, Sizoo W, et al: Delayed alloimmunisation by random single donor platelet transfusions: a randomised study to compare single donor and multiple donor platelet transfusions in cancer patients with severe thrombocytopenia, *Lancet* 1:750–754, 1981.

Sirtl C, Laubenthal H, Zumtobel V, et al: Tissue deposits of hydroxyethyl starch (HES): dose-dependent and time-related, *Br J Anaesth* 82:510–515, 1999.
Smolowicz AG, Villman K, Berlin G, et al: Kinetics of peripheral blood stem cell harvests during a single apheresis, *Transfusion* 39:403–409, 1999.
Smolowicz AG, Villman K, Tidefelt U: Large-volume apheresis for the harvest of peripheral blood progenitor cells for autologous transplantation, *Transfusion* 37:188–192, 1997.
Solling K, Solling J: Clearances of Bence-Jones proteins during peritoneal dialysis or plasmapheresis in myelomatosis associated with renal failure, *Contrib Nephrol* 68:259–262, 1988.
Standards Committee of the AABB, Price TH, editors: *Standards for blood banks and transfusion services*, ed 29, Bethesda, Md, 2014, AABB.
Stander S, Szepfalusi Z, Bohle B, et al: Differential storage of hydroxyethyl starch (HES) in the skin: an immunoelectron-microscopical long-term study, *Cell Tissue Res* 304:261–269, 2001.
Stegall MD, Dean PG, McBride MA, et al: Survival of mandatorily shared cadaveric kidneys and their paybacks in the zero mismatch era, *Transplantation* 74:670–675, 2002.
Strauss RG: Transfusion therapy in neonates, *Am J Dis Child* 145:904–911, 1991.
Strauss RG: Therapeutic granulocyte transfusions in 1993, *Blood* 81:1675–1678, 1993.
Strauss RG: Effects on donors of repeated leukocyte losses during plateletpheresis, *J Clin Apheresis* 9:130–134, 1994.
Strauss RG: Mechanisms of adverse effects during hemapheresis, *J Clin Apheresis* 11:160–164, 1996.
Strauss RG, Hester JP, Vogler WR, et al: A multicenter trial to document the efficacy and safety of a rapidly excreted analog of hydroxyethyl starch for leukapheresis with a note on steroid stimulation of granulocyte donors, *Transfusion* 26:258–264, 1986.
Strauss RG, Stansfield C, Henriksen RA, et al: Pentastarch may cause fewer effects on coagulation than hetastarch, *Transfusion* 28:257–260, 1988.
Strauss RG, Villhauer PJ, Imig KM, et al: Selecting the optimal dose of low-molecular-weight hydroxyethyl starch (pentastarch) for granulocyte collection, *Transfusion* 27:350–352, 1987.
Stroncek DF, Clay ME, Petzoldt ML, et al: Treatment of normal individuals with granulocyte-colony-stimulating factor: donor experiences and the effects on peripheral blood CD34+ cell counts and on the collection of peripheral blood stem cells, *Transfusion* 36:601–610, 1996a.
Stroncek DF, Clay ME, Smith J, et al: Changes in blood counts after the administration of granulocyte-colony-stimulating factor and the collection of peripheral blood stem cells from healthy donors, *Transfusion* 36:596–600, 1996b.
Stroncek DF, Matthews CL, Follmann D, et al: Kinetics of G-CSF-induced granulocyte mobilization in healthy subjects: effects of route of administration and addition of dexamethasone, *Transfusion* 42:597–602, 2002.
Strong MD, Lipton KS: *Transfusion-related acute lung injury*, Bethesda, Md, 2007, AABB. Association Bulletin #06-07.
Stucki A, Rivier AS, Gikic M, et al: Endothelial cell activation by myeloblasts: molecular mechanisms of leukostasis and leukemic cell dissemination, *Blood* 97:2121–2129, 2001.
Suckfull M: Fibrinogen and LDL apheresis in treatment of sudden hearing loss: a randomised multicentre trial, *Lancet* 360:1811–1817, 2002.
Suckfull M, Thiery J, Schorn K, et al: Clinical utility of LDL-apheresis in the treatment of sudden hearing loss: a prospective, randomized study, *Acta Otolaryngol* 119:763–766, 1999.
Sulai NH, Tefferi A: Why does my patient have thrombocytosis? *Hematol Oncol Clin N Am* 26:285–301, 2012.
Szymanski IO, Patti K, Kliman A: Efficacy of the Latham blood processor to perform plateletpheresis, *Transfusion* 13:405–411, 1973.
Tan D, Hwang W, Goh YT: Therapeutic leukapheresis in hyperleukocytic leukaemias—the experience of a tertiary institution in Singapore, *Ann Acad Med Singapore* 34:229–234, 2005.
Tanabe K, Takahashi K, Sonda K, et al: Long-term results of ABO-incompatible living kidney transplantation: a single-center experience, *Transplantation* 65:224–228, 1998.
Tanhehco YC, Vogl DT, Stadtmauer EA, et al: The evolving role of plerixafor in hematopoietic progenitor cell mobilization, *Transfusion* 53:2314–2326, 2013.
Technical Manual Committee, Roback JD, Combs MR, et al, editors: *Technical manual*, ed 16, Bethesda, Md, 2008, AABB.
Tefferi A, Hoagland HC: Issues in the diagnosis and management of essential thrombocythemia, *Mayo Clin Proc* 69:651–655, 1994.
Thiébaut A, Thomas X, Belhabri A, et al: Impact of pre-induction therapy leukapheresis on treatment outcome in adult acute myelogenous leukemia presenting with hyperleukocytosis, *Ann Hematol* 79:501–506, 2000.
Thompson GR: HEART-UK LDL Apheresis Working Group. Recommendations for the use of LDL apheresis, *Atherosclerosis* 198:247–255, 2008.
Thompson GR, Maher VM, Matthews S, et al: Familial Hypercholesterolaemia Regression Study: a randomised trial of low-density-lipoprotein apheresis, *Lancet* 345:811–816, 1995.
Tigue CC, McKoy JM, Evens AM, et al: Granulocyte-colony stimulating factor administration to healthy individuals and persons with chronic neutropenia or cancer: an overview of safety considerations from the Research on Adverse Drug Events and Reports project, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 40:185–192, 2007.
Tomita T, Takayanagi M, Kiwada K, et al: Vasovagal reactions in apheresis donors, *Transfusion* 42:1561–1566, 2002.
Treon SP, Branagan AR, Hunter Z, et al: Paradoxical increase in serum IgM and viscosity levels following rituximab in Waldenstrom's macroglobulonemia, *Ann Oncol* 15:1481–1483, 2004.
Trial to Reduce Alloimmunization to Platelets Study Group: Leukocyte reduction and ultraviolet B irradiation of platelets to prevent alloimmunization and refractoriness to platelet transfusions, *N Engl J Med* 337:1861–1869, 1997.
United Network for Organ Sharing, Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, Office of Special Programs, Division of Transplantation: *2008 annual report of the US Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network and the Scientific Registry for Transplant Recipients: transplant data 1998-2007*, Rockville Md, 2008, UNOS.
Vamvakas EC, Pineda AA: Meta-analysis of clinical studies of the efficacy of granulocyte transfusions in the treatment of bacterial sepsis, *J Clin Apheresis* 11:1–9, 1996.
Vamvakas EC, Pineda A: Allergic and anaphylactic reactions. In Popovsky MA, editor: *Transfusion reactions*, ed 2, Bethesda, Md, 2001, AABB Press, pp 83–127.
van Burik JA: Granulocyte transfusions as treatment or prophylaxis for fungal infections? *Curr Opin Investig Drugs* 4:921–925, 2003.
van Doorn PA, Brand A, Strengers PF, et al: High-dose intravenous immunoglobulin treatment in chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover study, *Neurology* 40:209–212, 1990.
van Doorn PA, Vermeulen M, Brand A, et al: Intravenous immunoglobulin treatment in patients with chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy: clinical and laboratory characteristics associated with improvement, *Arch Neurol* 48:217–220, 1991.
van Iperen HP, Beijersbergen van Henegouwen GM: Clinical and mechanistic aspects of photopheresis, *J Photochem Photobiol B* 39:99–109, 1997.
Veerappan R, Morrison M, Williams S, et al: Splenic rupture in a patient with plasma cell myeloma following G-CSF/GM-CSF administration for stem cell transplantation and review of the literature, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 40:361–364, 2007.
Vichinsky EP, Haberkern CM, Neumayr L, et al: A comparison of conservative and aggressive transfusion regimens in the perioperative management of sickle cell disease. The Preoperative Transfusion in Sickle Cell Disease Study Group, *N Engl J Med* 333:206–213, 1995.
Vincent A, Rothwell P: Myasthenia gravis, *Autoimmunity* 37:17–19, 2004.
Volk EE, Domen RE, Smith ML: An examination of ethical issues raised in the pretreatment of normal volunteer granulocyte donors with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 123:508–513, 1999.
Vriesendorp FJ, Mayer RF, Koski CL: Kinetics of antiperipheral nerve myelin antibody in patients with Guillain-Barré syndrome treated and not treated with plasmapheresis, *Arch Neurol* 48:858–861, 1991.
Wallace EL, Surgenor DM, Hao HS, et al: Collection and transfusion of blood and blood components in the United States, 1989, *Transfusion* 33:139–144, 1993.
Wasi S, Santowski T, Murray SA, et al: The Canadian Red Cross plasmapheresis donor safety program: changes in plasma proteins after long-term plasmapheresis, *Vox Sang* 60:82–87, 1991.
Wayne AS, Kevy SV, Nathan DG: Transfusion management of sickle cell disease, *Blood* 81:1109–1123, 1993.
Weinstein R: Prevention of citrate reactions during therapeutic plasma exchange by constant infusion of calcium gluconate with the return fluid, *J Clin Apheresis* 11:204–210, 1996.
Wheeler JG, Chauvenet AR, Johnson CA, et al: Buffy coat transfusions in neonates with sepsis and neutrophil storage pool depletion, *Pediatrics* 79:422–425, 1987.
Whitaker BI, Henry RA, Hinkins S: *The 2011 national blood collection and utilization survey report*, Washington, DC, 2011, Department of Health and Human Services [Internet]. Available at: http://www.hhs.gov/ash/bloodsafety/2011-nbcus.pdf. Cited 2014 Dec 15.
Whitby A, Whitby L, Fletcher M, et al: ISHAGE protocol: Are we doing it correctly? *Cytometry Part B* 82B:9–17, 2012.
Winston DJ, Ho WG, Young LS, et al: Prophylactic granulocyte transfusions during human bone marrow transplantation, *Am J Med* 68:893–897, 1980.
Winters JL: Chapter 7—Unique considerations for allogeneic peripheral blood hematopoietic progenitor cell (HPC) donors. In Eder A, Goldman M, editors: *Blood Donor Health and Safety*, Bethesda, Md, 2009, AABB Press, pp 123–145.
Winters JL: Low density lipoprotein (LDL) apheresis: principles and indications, *Semin Dial* 25:145–151, 2012.
Winters JL: Randomized controlled trials in therapeutic apheresis, *J Clin Apheresis* 28:48–55, 2013.
Winters JL, Brown D, Hazard E, et al: Cost-minimization analysis of the direct costs of TPE and IVIg in the treatment of Guillain-Barré syndrome, *BMC Health Serv Res* 11:1472–6963, 2011.
Winters JL, Gloor JM, Pineda AA, et al: Plasma exchange conditioning for ABO-incompatible renal transplantation, *J Clin Apheresis* 19:79–85, 2004.
Winters JL, King KE: *Therapeutic apheresis: a physician's handbook*, ed 4, Bethesda, Md, 2013, AABB.
Wiseman KC: New insights on Goodpasture's syndrome, *ANNA J* 20:17–26, 1993.
Yacobi A, Stoll RG, Sum CY, et al: Pharmacokinetics of hydroxyethyl starch in normal subjects, *J Clin Pharmacol* 22:206–212, 1982.
Zachary AA, Montgomery RA, Ratner LE, et al: Specific and durable elimination of antibody to donor HLA antigens in renal-transplant patients, *Transplantation* 76:1519–1525, 2003.
Zantek ND, Morgan S, Zantek PF, et al: Effect of therapeutic plasma exchange on coagulation parameters in patients on warfarin, *J Clin Apheresis* 29:75–82, 2014.
Zaucha JM, Gooley T, Bensinger WI, et al: CD34 cell dose in granulocyte colony-stimulating factor-mobilized peripheral blood mononuclear cell grafts affects engraftment kinetics and development of extensive chronic graft-versus-host disease after human leukocyte antigen-identical sibling transplantation, *Blood* 98:3221–3227, 2001.
Zeigler ZR, Shadduck RK, Gryn JF, et al: Cryoprecipitate poor plasma does not improve early response in primary adult thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), *J Clin Apheresis* 16:19–22, 2001.
Zic JA: The treatment of cutaneous T-cell lymphoma with photopheresis, *Dermatol Ther* 16:337–346, 2003.
Zic JA, Miller JL, Stricklin GP, et al: The North American experience with photopheresis, *Ther Apher* 3:50–62, 1999.
Zucchelli P, Pasquali S, Cagnoli L, et al: Plasma exchange therapy in acute renal failure due to light chain myeloma, *Trans Am Soc Artif Intern Organs* 30:36–39, 1984.

CHAPTER 38

TISSUE BANKING AND PROGENITOR CELLS

Nicholas J. Greco, Matthew Elkins

SOURCES OF TISSUE, 783

TISSUE BANK ACTIVITIES, 783
Donor Screening, 784
Cryopreservation, 784

SKIN BANKING, 785

MUSCULOSKELETAL TISSUES, 785

CARDIAC VALVES, 786

CORNEA, 786

REPRODUCTIVE TISSUE, 786

HEMATOPOIETIC PROGENITOR CELL BANKING, 787
Sources of Hematopoietic Grafts, 787
Conditioning Regimens for Hematopoietic Graft Recipients, 789
T-Cell Depletion, 790
Cryopreservation of Hematopoietic Grafts, 790
Reinfusion of Progenitor Cell Products, 790
Ex Vivo Manipulation of Hematologic Cells, 790
Use of Dendritic Cells in Cancer Immunotherapy, 790
Adoptive Cell Transfer/Chimeric Antigen Receptors, 791

SELECTED REFERENCES, 791

KEY POINTS

- A wide range of allogeneic tissues are used for transplantation.
- Allograft tissue is screened, tested, and processed to improve its safety.
- Allograft tissue is stored by a variety of methods, including cryopreservation.
- Risks and complications are associated with the use of allograft tissue.
- A wide range of assisted reproductive techniques are available to infertile couples and individuals.
- Hematopoietic progenitor cells can be derived from multiple sources and transplanted in different ways, depending on the needs of the recipient.
- It is important to consider the balance between the graft-versus-host reaction and the graft-versus-leukemia effect.

Throughout the United States, tissue banks routinely provide hundreds of products that not only extend life but also in many instances significantly improve the quality of life for the patients they serve. More than 1 million bone allografts (American Association of Tissue Banks, 2010) and 76,000 corneas (Eye Bank Association of America, 2014) are transplanted annually in the United States—a number that far exceeds the approximately 30,000 solid organ transplants per year (Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network [OPTN] and Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients [SRTR], 2013). Clinical applications of allogeneic and autologous tissue and the types of tissue available have grown exponentially in the last 2 decades. Yet, aside from the patients and physicians served by these tissue banks, many people are unaware of the vast scope of activities in today's health care environment that are under the umbrella of tissue banking. Over the past 25 years, tissue banking in the United State has evolved from a system of incidental hospital bone or sperm banks to a system of regulated, accredited facilities, much like blood banks, providing an expanding variety of high-quality, carefully screened and tested products for use by physicians (Box 38-1).

Many tissue banks provide a wide range of products and services in skin, bone, and heart valve procurement; processing; and storage. Other tissue banks focus their services in specialized areas such as reproductive tissue or hematopoietic progenitor cells (HPCs). One bank may recruit donors and procure and process tissue such as skin for burn patients or bone for orthopedic repairs; another may collect, process, and store HPCs for life-saving bone marrow transplants. Processing of musculoskeletal tissues and cardiac valves, which requires extensive equipment, personnel, and quality assurance, is performed primarily by a few large tissue banks that subcontract with other tissue banks, which, in turn, collect, store, and issue these products. In addition, an exponential growth has occurred over the past 2 decades in reproductive banks that provide assistance to infertile couples or individuals.

We gratefully acknowledge the contribution of Lazaro Rosales and Charlene Hubbel, who authored this chapter in previous editions.

SOURCES OF TISSUE

Tissues used for transplantation come from two primary sources: living donors and deceased donors. Living donors may be individuals who donate for their own use (autologous HPCs or sperm), as directed donors for a given individual (allogeneic HPCs or sperm donation), or altruistically for unknown recipients (surgical discard bone, sperm donation, allogeneic HPCs through the National Marrow Donor Program). A large majority of bone, skin, and cardiac valves used for transplantation, as well as eye tissue, come from deceased donors. Unlike solid organ donation, where there is a need for the organs to be obtained while circulation is maintained, deceased donor tissue can be obtained for several hours after death and up to 24 hours later if the body is refrigerated. This substantially increases the number of available tissue donors. Because corneal tissue has relatively minimal contact with the circulatory system, some individuals who would otherwise be excluded as tissue donors may still be eye donors.

Deceased donor tissue is procured primarily from hospital operating rooms or morgues and medical examiners' offices. Harvesting of tissue is performed in a sterile or clean environment using aseptic techniques. Many tissues, such as bone, are then frozen for subsequent processing and refreezing or freeze-drying. Specialized tissues such as cornea are processed immediately and stored for only a short time (48 to 72 hours) before use. Tissue from living donors is procured in the operating room (surgically salvaged bone or bone marrow) or in specialized clean environments that hemapheresis centers and sperm banks are equipped to provide. These tissues are collected under sterile conditions, processed immediately, and either used within 24 hours or frozen for subsequent use.

TISSUE BANK ACTIVITIES

The major activities of tissue banks are outlined in Box 38-2. A major impetus for the movement to formal, accredited tissue banks in our nation was the concern about transfusion-transmitted disease. As with blood banks and transfusion services (see Chapters 36 and 37), donor recruitment, screening, and testing are critical functions of the tissue bank. Since the early 1990s, cases involving disease transmission documented that careful screening by both review of the medical record and serologic testing, as well as maintenance of detailed records, was critical to safe tissue

BOX 38-1

Categories of Transplantable Tissue

Musculoskeletal
Bone
Cartilage
Meniscus
Tendon
Ligament
Fascia
Skin
Cardiovascular
Heart valves
Saphenous vein
Corneal (eye)
Reproductive
Sperm
Ova
Embryo
Hematopoietic
Bone marrow
Peripheral blood progenitor cells
Umbilical cord blood progenitor cells
Other
Ear ossicles
Dura mater
Parathyroids
Pancreatic islet cells

BOX 38-2

Tissue Banking Activities

Donor recruitment
Acquisition of tissues
Processing and storage of tissues
Provision of tissues for transplantation
Public and professional education
Quality assurance and record keeping
Recipient records

BOX 38-3

Comprehensive Donor Testing

Donor Screening

Review of medical history and medical records
Infectious diseases (including history of foreign travel)
Malignant disease
Collagen and immune complex diseases
History of genetic diseases
Trauma
Exposure to drugs, toxic substances, or biological hazards
Physical examination of living donors
Review of autopsy records for deceased donors
Review of social history for risk behaviors

Donor Serologic Testing

Antibody to human immunodeficiency virus (confirmation by nucleic acid testing)
Antibody to human T-cell lymphotropic virus
Antibody to hepatitis C virus (confirmation by nucleic acid testing)
Hepatitis B surface antigen
Antibody to hepatitis B core antigen
Serologic tests for syphilis
Antibody to West Nile virus
Antibody to *Trypanosomacruzi* (Chagas' disease)
Bacteriologic testing of tissue product

banking practices and thus acceptance of allograft tissue by both the public and health care providers. Concerns still remain that physicians who utilize these tissues recognize and report these adverse reactions, primarily infection, to the originating tissue bank. The Joint Commission (TJC) has standards for tissue banking practices that are targeted primarily at the transplantation facility. These standards focus on the necessity for implantation facilities to keep clear, precise records regarding tissue receipt, storage, and use so all allogeneic tissues can be traced from donor to recipient. TJC standards also require institutions to establish a mechanism for physicians to report adverse reactions and the originating tissue bank to be notified. Accredited full-service tissue banks, in the same manner as blood banks, investigate suspected reactions or complications extensively. "Look-back" reviews should include reviews of the complications associated with other tissue from the same donor; the current health of the donor, if living; and quarantining of other tissue from the same donor. The American Association of Tissue Banks (AATB) provides strict standards and accreditation for organizations involved in any area of tissue banking. Several states also require tissue banks to be licensed, and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulates the screening, processing, and storage of donor tissue used for transplantation purposes (FDA, 2014).

DONOR SCREENING

Tissue donors are carefully screened to prevent the transmission of bacterial, viral, and/or genetic disease, as well as to ensure the quality of the tissue obtained (Box 38-3). With deceased tissue donors, unlike blood donors, information regarding medical and social history is obtained from the family or close friends, as well as from physicians' records.

Reports of tissue transplant complications in the early 1990s focused on the transmission of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (Simonds et al, 1992) and hepatitis C (Conrad et al, 1995). More recently, attention has been focused on testing of tissue donors for additional disease transmission vectors (*Trypanosomacruzi*, West Nile virus, and H1N1), as well as for transmission of nonscreened viruses such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (Centers for Disease Control, 2003) and others (Kainer et al, 2004) by serologically negative tissue. Isolated cases of transmission of uncommon pathogens by tissue and organ donors will, however, likely continue to occur. The impracticality of screening for all transmissible diseases emphasizes the continued need for careful screening of tissue and organ donors by medical history and family interview, as well as laboratory testing. Asking the right questions in the correct manner is a critical function that needs to be performed by well-trained, experienced individuals who are able to identify possible risks in the donor medical history, in information about possible risk behaviors, or in available laboratory data.

Other parts of the review process are targeted at ensuring the quality of the donated tissue. Musculoskeletal donors need to be carefully screened for any history of trauma that might result in a weakened structural bone graft. Sperm donations are reviewed not only for genetic disease but also to ensure viable sperm that will have a reasonable chance of resulting in successful fertilization. The use of umbilical cord blood for unrelated allogeneic bone marrow and peripheral blood transplantation requires screening and testing of the mother and of the cord blood. When tissue is procured from living donors, with the exception of HPCs, the tissue is frozen and quarantined for a minimum of 180 days, at the end of which the donor serologic testing is repeated. This prevents the use of tissue from any donor who was in the "window" period for HIV or hepatitis C—that is, those who had been exposed to the virus but did not demonstrate antibody at the time of donation. The addition of nucleic acid testing for hepatitis C and HIV1/2 has also increased the safety of donated allograft tissue by decreasing the time between donor exposure and a positive laboratory test (AABB). Because of concerns about the sensitivity of testing specimens from deceased donors, tissue banks that process these tissues must utilize test kits that have been approved by the FDA for the testing of deceased donors (FDA, 2014).

CRYOPRESERVATION

Tissues such as HPCs, sperm, and skin and some types of musculoskeletal tissue require the presence of viable cells and have a very short shelf life at refrigerator temperatures, thus requiring cryopreservation. The goal of all cryopreservation techniques is to extend the usable storage period of the material being frozen by reducing the metabolic demand of cells at lower temperatures with no loss of viability due to the freezing or thawing procedures. Cryopreservation of animal sperm has been an established agricultural practice for decades, and human researchers have been able to gain from their experiences. Generally, cryopreservation of human tissues uses cryoprotectant agents such as dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) or glycerol, balanced tissue culture media, and some form of protein supplementation, such as autologous plasma, albumin, or other colloidal suspensions. The actual freezing is often performed using a controlled-rate freezer, a

mechanical device that controls the rate at which freezing of the tissue takes place, usually –1° C/minute down to temperatures of –80° C. DMSO is the cryoprotective agent of choice for tissues such as skin, HPCs, and other nucleated cell suspensions or tissues; glycerol is generally used for the freezing of sperm. Cryoprotectant agents function by preventing the formation of intracellular ice crystals during freezing and balancing the osmotic pressure and concentration of intracellular versus extracellular water during the thawing process. The formation of extracellular ice crystals or too rapid an increase in extracellular osmotic pressure with resulting dehydration of the cell during thawing can result in damage to the cells and thus loss of viability. Cryoprotectant agents, such as DMSO, work by slowing the rate at which this change occurs (Gorin, 1986). Most tissue banks use liquid nitrogen and controlled-rate freezing processors that are programmed to compensate for the heat released, called the "heat of fusion," at the change from the liquid state to the frozen state (Gorin, 1986). Uncompensated, the heat of fusion can result in decreased viability of the cells or frozen tissue.

Once frozen, cryopreserved tissues are stored at varied temperatures from 50° to 86° C in a mechanical freezer to vapor (–150° C) or liquid (–196° C) phase liquid nitrogen. Expiration dates for cryopreserved tissues are generally 5 years after collection, although these are arbitrary limits, and the actual length of storage possible for many tissues has not been determined. For example, the definitive expiration date for cord blood units is currently unknown due to different processing and storage methods and the effects of long-term storage on unit potency. Therefore, expiration dates are determined based on the cord blood bank's own viability and recovery data. Other tissues that do not require the presence of viable cells, such as structural bone, may be frozen or freeze-dried by a variety of other methods. Some freeze-dried tissues have expiration dates of 5 years, and others may be stored indefinitely.

SKIN BANKING

The most common use of allogeneic skin grafts is as a temporary cover for patients with extensive third-degree burns, until autologous or autogeneic skin can be recovered and grafted. Because of the concentrations of histocompatibility antigens and antigen-presenting cells (APCs), all allogeneic skin grafts are eventually rejected (Zhou et al, 2013). When used to cover burns, the grafts are generally replaced periodically until autografting can be performed. Most deceased donor skin provided as an allograft is a split-thickness graft with a thin layer of epidermis without dermis, and therefore ABO matching is not required (Eastlund, 1998). As a temporary graft, however, split-thickness skin grafts provide vital, immediate cover as a barrier against infection plus fluid, electrolyte, and heat loss from extensive burns, allowing for patient stabilization and eventual autografting.

Generally, skin is harvested from deceased donors with uninfected, unblemished skin who have a body surface area less than 1.75 m^2. The skin is harvested with a dermatome from areas of the back, legs, and upper arms. The skin is generally disinfected before harvest and is soaked in antibiotic-containing tissue culture solution until it is used or frozen.

Skin can be stored at 2° to 8° C for several days (Kagan et al, 2005) or cryopreserved and stored for several years. Because of today's need for extensive review of the donor's history and laboratory records, skin grafts are more commonly frozen for subsequent use. The cryoprotectant of choice is 10% to 15% glycerol (American Association of Tissue Banks, 2002), and the graft is generally incubated for a period of time (20 to 30 minutes) in the freezing solution to allow the solution to permeate the graft. The skin is then frozen in strips supported by gauze mesh and is frozen flat (Eastlund, 1998). Skin can be frozen with or without controlled-rate freezing and is easily stored at –50° to –80° C; however, lower temperatures are commonly used for longer storage by many tissue banks (Kearney, 1998). Frozen skin allografts are thawed rapidly at 37° C and are used immediately or washed with physiologic solutions to dilute the cryoprotectant.

The limited supply of human skin allografts has stimulated efforts targeted at xenogeneic substitutions, such as pigskin and artificial barriers. More recently, attempts have been made to culture epithelial cells to expand the available supply of autologous skin (Wang et al, 2007). Multiple commercial products are currently available that are acellular dermal matrix grafts either made from human or xenogeneic skin or artificial protein matrices. This framework allows for fibroblast infiltration, collagen deposition, and neoepithelization. Because the immunologically active cells are removed, the graft is tolerated (not rejected) significantly longer than traditional human skin allografts. Additional products combine these frameworks with either autologous or allogeneic cultured fibroblasts. The fibroblasts provide additional tropic factors resulting in improved healing rates and scar formation, generally with end results similar to allogeneic skin grafts (Shahrokhi et al, 2014). These products have not only been employed as skin graft for burns, but they also have applications in ophthalmic, plastic, ear, nose and throat, and dental surgeries (Shorr et al, 2000). The products made from allogeneic human tissue require the identical patient consents and tracking required for other human tissue products.

MUSCULOSKELETAL TISSUES

Bone banking began several decades ago, when physicians first stored surgical discard bone, mostly femoral heads from joint replacement surgery, for future use in spinal fusions and other orthopedic procedures. Generally, this involved simple storage of the bone in an unmonitored freezer somewhere in the hospital. Often, no testing or processing of the surgical discard bone was performed, nor were monitoring of storage conditions and tracking of tissue sources or recipients conducted. In some situations, the original donor/patient was not even asked for consent. Today, these practices have been almost eliminated by the use of musculoskeletal tissue from registered, accredited tissue banks, so patients can confidently elect to have a bone allograft as part of a surgical procedure (Tomford, 1993). In addition to autogeneic bone grafts, living donor bone donation is still used as a source of some types of bone. Living donors are now screened and tested and must provide informed consent. In addition, the bone tissue obtained is further processed to reduce the risk of infectious disease transmission, and detailed records of the source donor and recipient are kept for tracking and follow-up purposes.

Surgical discard bone and deceased donor bone are processed in a similar fashion. Extraneous tissue, blood, and marrow elements are removed by high-pressure pulse washing, and the tissue is soaked in antibiotic solutions. Bacteriologic culturing of the tissue is done at collection, during processing, and before freezing. Tissue that requires the presence of viable cells such as cartilage, femoral head, tibia, whole bone, or tendon is usually washed, soaked, and frozen at temperatures between –60° and –150° C. With other tissues, where viability is not an issue, ethanol soaks may used to remove lipid content, generally in the preparation of demineralized, lyophilized bone, which also decreases the infectivity of the tissue. Most bone tissue is further sterilized by the use of low-dose irradiation. In addition, lyophilization, which is possible with bone products such as cancellous and cortical bone chips, appears to reduce the immunogenicity and the infectivity of these products. The use of ethlyene oxide to end-sterilize bone tissue has been generally eliminated, because adverse reactions were reported in multiple recipients (Jackson et al, 1990). The bone tissue is cut and shaped and then is preserved by freezing or freeze-drying.

Bone allografts serve mainly as a mechanical support and a framework for the host's bone-forming cells to replace lost tissue. The osteoinductive function of the allograft bone is dependent in part on the presence of certain growth factor glycoproteins (Mohan & Baylink, 1991), but they do not appear to cause any significant allograft reaction on the part of the host. Because bone tissue is processed to remove blood, marrow, and other extraneous tissue, most studies have failed to demonstrate the presence of ABO antigens (Ezra-Cohn & Cook, 1961). The antigenicity of the resulting product is low, so histocompatibility or blood type matching is not required. Because large osteoarticular grafts, such as whole bone-patellar-tendon grafts, are not extensively processed, they may contain residual red blood cells, and instances of immunization to Rh system antigens have been reported (Hill et al, 1974). Many surgeons using these larger grafts will attempt to provide Rh-compatible tissue to Rh-negative females of childbearing age.

In addition to autogeneic bone, allograft bone is used for spinal fusion surgery, replacement of failed prosthetic joints, packing of benign bone cysts, reconstruction of maxillofacial deficits, restoration of alveolar bone in periodontal pockets, and even replacement of resected bone for tumors such as osteosarcoma (Kagan et al, 2005). Tendon and cartilage allografts are used primarily for knee repair surgery. Some patients will be confronted with the option of having autologous tissue recovered from their iliac crest for many elective orthopedic procedures, or of receiving allograft tissue from a tissue bank. Advantages and disadvantages are associated with each (i.e., autograft vs. allograft). Autografts appear to incorporate quicker, are not immunogenetic, and do not transmit disease; however, they are associated with longer anesthesia time, increased blood loss, and prolonged recovery from the donor site. Because of the wide supply of allografts, an exact fit can usually be made. No donor site recovery is needed, and the surgical procedure is generally shorter. Although the risk of transmitted

disease is greatly reduced by today's procedures, it is still present. Allografts also have a poorer capacity for osteoconduction and osteoinduction (Torroni, 2009), which makes them unsatisfactory for larger grafts.

Recent investigation and clinical trials have focused on the use of synthetic scaffolds or cages infused with the patient's own bone marrow stromal cells and various bone morphogenetic proteins to create a graft that is almost identical to an autologous graft without the necessity of a donor site (Torroni, 2009). Bone morphogenetic proteins allow the marrow stromal cells to differentiate into osteoprogenitor cells, eventually resulting in the formation of new bone.

CARDIAC VALVES

Aortic valve replacement may utilize human heart valves or pig valves. With the use of human valve tissue, anticoagulants are not required, and the incidence of thromboembolism or infection is lower. Human valves are ideal for use in children, pregnant women, or patients with a history of bacterial endocarditis. They are, however, utilized less often overall because procedures to place them are more technically difficult. Aortic and pulmonic valves are commonly procured from deceased organ donors when the whole heart is rendered unsuitable for transplantation because of events such as cardiac arrest that do not affect the integrity or function of the aortic or pulmonic valves. Procurement is performed in the operating room. The valves are carefully dissected with a cuff of myocardium, inspected for valve integrity, and frozen by controlled-rate freezing in liquid nitrogen using DMSO as the cryoprotective agent (O'Brien et al, 1988). Although blood group antigens have been demonstrated on the endothelium of cryopreserved hearts, the major mechanical function of these is dependent only on the nonviable connective tissue. After transplantation, host cells eventually replace the donor endothelium. Several studies have documented that neither ABO compatibility (Weipert et al, 1995) nor human leukocyte antigen (HLA) compatibility (Yap et al, 2006) is necessary for long-term function of these allograft valves. However, the use of allograft valves does induce the formation of HLA antibodies, especially in children, and may create difficulty in identifying a compatible donor for those patients later requiring whole heart transplantation (Hooper et al, 2005). Because thawing of the allograft valves is generally performed by operating room personnel, and not by experienced tissue bank technologists, detailed instructions and protocols are necessary to prevent cracking of the valve.

Recently, some cardiothoracic surgeons have attempted the use of saphenous vein allografts for performing coronary artery bypass procedures, vascular reconstruction during abdominal organ surgeries, or for bypassing obstructed lower limb arteries when autografts are not available. Because the role of ABO matching in the long-term function of these tissues has been controversial, ABO-compatible tissue is generally used (Laub et al, 1992). Although the use of allograft valves has been a successful practice for several years, the results of most vein allograft studies to date are disappointing (Fahner et al, 2006).

CORNEA

Corneal transplantation has been regularly performed in the United States since 1961, although the first corneal transplant is recorded to have taken place in 1905. Presently, more than 68,000 corneal transplants are performed each year (Eye Bank Association of America, 2012). There are 86 accredited eye banks in the United States involved in recruitment, screening, procurement, and transplantation of corneal tissue, as well as public and professional education. Loss of vision due to corneal disease can result from infection, trauma, burns, or congenital disease. Long-term (>10 years) success rates for corneal allografts are well above 90%.

Corneal donation is possible from many donors when other tissues are not retrievable because of age, trauma, or disease. Corneal tissue is recovered from donors up to 80 years of age. Generally, eye enucleation is performed in the operating room or morgue from deceased donors within 6 hours of death. Subsequently, the cornea is then removed in a sterile environment in the eye bank and is placed in supplemented, sterile tissue culture media. The corneas are stored at 4°C and are transplanted within 48 to 72 hours. This allows for appropriate serologic screening of the donor but ensures maximum viability of the graft.

The corneal graft has long been considered an "immunologically privileged site" (Medawar, 1948). Because the cornea is almost entirely avascular, host APCs and effector lymphocytes do not circulate through the allograft cornea. Histocompatibility and blood group matching therefore are not required. In a small percentage of corneal grafts, vascularization occurs, and some grafts are rejected. The use of HLA-matched corneal transplants in an attempt to provide successful grafts for this group of patients has met with varying success rates (Volker-Dieben et al, 1987). Artificial corneas generally have worse long-term outcomes and are currently used for patients in whom donor cornea transplantation has failed. The ideal criteria for the selection of transplanting donor versus artificial corneas in these patients has not been determined (Akpek et al, 2014).

REPRODUCTIVE TISSUE

Because of the exponential growth in knowledge of fetal development and reproductive technologies, particularly in vitro fertilization (IVF), approximately 1% of births in the United States now occur with assisted reproductive technologies (CDC, 2012). Reproductive banks are currently able to assist more individuals and couples who wish to maintain or achieve fertility. Most reproductive banks in the United States today function as for-profit corporations. Despite this, and because of a number of factors, including consumer demand, the need for consumer confidence, and government regulation, sperm banks in the twenty-first century function in keeping with the highest medical and ethical standards, and physicians and patients can use their services without concern. Guidelines and standards for anonymous-donation sperm banking have been established by the American Society for Reproductive Medicine and the American Association of Tissue Banks.

Reproductive banks serve two types of donors: client-directed donors and anonymous bank donors. These include men and women who are about to undergo chemotherapy, radiation therapy, or surgery for malignant diseases that will affect their reproductive ability. Client-directed sperm donations are generally targeted to intimate partners of men who, for a variety of reasons, are concerned about future fertility. Other men will predeposit their sperm before vasectomy as insurance against life changes when they may wish to father additional children. Individuals with low sperm counts may bank their sperm to allow collection of sufficient gametes for fertilization of the intimate partner. Less frequently, males who have occupational exposure (such as nuclear power plant employees) that may lead to infertility or the potential for genetic defects may elect to store their sperm. Sperm collected and stored for intimate partners is tested in the same manner in which anonymous donor collections are screened. Semen from infected donors, which still may be usable by the intimate partner, must be quarantined and stored separately from other client deposits. Directed donations are also made to sperm banks for specific individuals who are not intimate partners.

Historically, attempts at ova banking (egg banking) had not been as successful as embryo cryopreservation due to unfertilized ova having a very low rate of fertilization when they are subsequently thawed and attempts at IVF are made. Recently, improvements in the cryopreservation strategies, particularly vitrification rather than slow freezing, have increased the oocyte survival, fertilization rates, and pregnancy rates (Boldt, 2011). Attempts have also been made at cryopreserving ovarian tissue for future implantation with very limited success in humans. Of continuing concern is an increase in chromosomal abnormalities in both oocyte and ovarian tissue banking. Continuing research is needed in this area to provide women with the opportunity for future fertility with a chosen partner (Porcu et al, 2008).

Female patients confronted with loss of fertility due to age, disease, or chemotherapy, and who have an intimate partner are still frequently guided to IVF with cryopreservation of the resulting embryos for later implantation. Many reproductive banks also provide donor ova collection for infertile individuals. These donors are screened in the same manner in which anonymous sperm donors are tested.

Sperm banks also provide sperm from anonymous donors for infertile couples or individuals. Sperm banks maintain libraries of sperm donors so individuals can select donors with similar physical characteristics such as hair and eye color, race, and the like. Anonymous sperm donors are rigorously screened, not only to ensure the safety of the recipient and potential offspring but also to provide the highest probability of successful fertilization. Sperm collected from anonymous donors is quarantined for 180 days before issue. During these 180 days, the donor is tested monthly, not only by the standard serologic assays employed for all tissue donors but also for infections such as cytomegalovirus, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, and *Chlamydia*. Sperm donors are tested for genetic diseases such as Tay-Sachs disease, cystic fibrosis, sickle cell disease, and thalassemia. Generally, complete genetic karyotyping is performed on anonymous sperm donors. Collections are also examined for sperm number, function, and viability. Not until all of these criteria have been met and reviewed by the medical director of the sperm bank are tissues released for use.

IVF and embryo banking are also offered by many reproductive banks, as well as hospital-based fertility centers. Since the original success attained with IVF as a treatment for tubal obstruction in 1983 (Steptoe & Edwards, 1983), significant advances have been made in this area that improve the success rate of IVF. They include technical innovations in culture media, embryo cryopreservation, and morphologic criteria for selection of the best embryo to transfer (Houghton et al, 2002; Boldt et al, 2003). In addition to its use for women with fallopian disease, the success of intracytoplasmic sperm injection of the oocyte (Palermo et al, 1992) has made IVF the preferred technique for many infertile couples, utilizing either the partner's sperm or donor sperm, as it results in higher fertilization rates as compared with artificial insemination (Boyle et al, 2004). In addition, IVF offers couples with certain genetic diseases, such as hemophilia and cystic fibrosis, the opportunity for preimplantation genetic diagnosis with subsequent selection of embryos in an attempt to reduce the risk of disease transmission to their offspring.

Collected semen is mixed with a glycerol–egg yolk solution that acts as a cryoprotectant, the egg yolk providing supplemental protein that assists in preserving the sperm during the thawing process. The semen-preservative mixture is aliquoted into straws or vials, precooled to a temperature of 5°C, frozen by controlled-rate freezing with liquid nitrogen, and stored in the liquid phase of liquid nitrogen at –196°C. Cryopreserved sperm can be used for artificial insemination or in vitro fertilization. Client-directed donations are kept indefinitely, and anonymous sperm bank donor samples are usually stored for 5 years. For those individuals desiring artificial insemination, these attempts are not always successful, and individuals are counseled to deposit adequate sperm for several reproductive procedures.

The advent of all these technologies has raised many ethical and scientific issues related to disposition of unused embryos, preimplantation screening of embryos, multiple gestations, and the possibility of unknown genetic risks to the health of children conceived through IVF (Lucifero et al, 2004). Thus a multidisciplinary approach to this field is needed to include members of the public, as well as scientific and medical professionals (Cetin & Pardi, 2003).

HEMATOPOIETIC PROGENITOR CELL BANKING

Hematopoietic cell transplantation had its beginning in 1959 with bone marrow transplants performed between genetically identical individuals (identical twins) in the setting of high-dose, myeloablative chemotherapy and/or radiation therapy as an attempt to cure hematopoietic malignancies (Thomas et al, 1959). Earlier work had demonstrated the presence of colony-forming units (CFUs) or cells in the spleen or marrow of mice that were able to restore hematopoietic function to their lethally irradiated, genetically identical littermates (Lorenz et al, 1951). Restoration of hematopoiesis in the human recipient is dependent on the transplantation of sufficient numbers of pluripotential hematopoietic progenitor cells (HPCs) that make up about 1% of normal marrow cells and are capable of both replication and differentiation into all lineages of blood cells (see Chapter 31). Identification of the HLA system as the major histocompatibility system in humans and the ability of tissue-typing laboratories to identify individuals' HLA types at the allele level allowed bone marrow transplantation to be performed between HLA-matched individuals, generally first-degree relatives, who were not genetically identical. Today, progenitor cell banks exist as highly specialized tissue banks that collect, process, store, and distribute HPC products. These are obtained from bone marrow, peripheral blood, or umbilical cord blood for patients with a wide variety of diseases, and further applications for HPCs are an active area of research (Box 38-4). In 2012, approximately 20,000 patients in the United States were treated with some form of a hematopoietic graft (Pasquini & Wang, 2013). Terminology of the various HPC products is shown in Table 38-1. Data from both autologous and allogeneic hematopoietic transplants are now maintained by the Center for International Blood and Marrow Transplant Research (CIBMTR), which is a joint effort of the National Marrow Donor Program in the United States and the International Bone Marrow Transplant Registry. CIBMTR has been funded since 2006 by a contract from Heath and Human Services to gather and maintain data on clinical and research activities in hematopoietic transplantation (www.CIBMTR.org).

SOURCES OF HEMATOPOIETIC GRAFTS

Hematopoietic tissue for transplantation may come from one or more sources (Table 38-2). Individuals who have autologous or autogeneic grafts donate their own cells, which are frozen before high-dose chemotherapy and/or radiation therapy. Following this myeloablative therapy, the patient's own cells are thawed and reinfused. The patient's own hematopoietic progenitor cells in the transplant will home and reengraft in the

BOX 38-4

Indications for Hematopoietic Transplantation

Acute myeloid leukemia
Acute lymphoblastic leukemia
Chronic myelogenous leukemia
Multiple myeloma
Non-Hodgkin lymphoma
Myelodysplastic syndromes
Hodgkin disease
Neuroblastoma
Ewing's sarcoma
Rhabdomyosarcoma
Aplastic anemia
Sickle cell anemia
Thalassemia
Severe combined immunodeficiency

TABLE 38-1

Terminology of Hematopoietic Progenitor Cells Products

HPC	Hematopoietic progenitor cells, formerly hematopoietic stem cells
HPC, apheresis	Hematopoietic progenitor cells, apheresis, formerly peripheral blood progenitor cells or hematopoietic stem cells
HPC, marrow	Bone marrow–derived hematopoietic progenitor cells
HPC, umbilical cord blood	Cord blood–derived hematopoietic progenitor cells

HPC, Hematopoietic progenitor cell.

TABLE 38-2

Comparison of Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Sources and Products with Collection and Complications

	Cord Blood (HPC, UCB)*	Autologous (HPC, Apheresis + Marrow)*	Allogeneic (HPC, Apheresis + Marrow)*
Type of donor	Umbilical cord blood	Patient	Related or unrelated matched donor
Product	Cord blood progenitor/stem cells	Bone marrow or peripheral blood progenitor cells	Bone marrow or peripheral blood progenitor cells
Collection	Placenta umbilical cord at birth	Intraoperative marrow or hemapheresis	Intraoperative marrow or hemapheresis
Major complication	Insufficient progenitor cells	Recurrence of original disease	Graft-versus-host disease

**HPC* (hematopoietic progenitor cell), *apheresis* = PBPCs (peripheral blood hematopoietic progenitor cells); *HPC, marrow* = BMPCs (bone marrow hematopoietic progenitor cells); *HPC, UCB* (umbilical cord blood) = UCBPCs (umbilical cord blood hematopoietic progenitor cells).

marrow stroma and differentiate into mature blood cell–forming elements. Patients who are not candidates for autologous transplantation, such as those with acute leukemia or circulating tumor cells, congenital hematologic disease, or an inability to harvest autologous HPCs, will be candidates for an allogeneic transplant from a closely HLA-matched individual (Storb, 2003). The donor is chosen based on HLA similarity to the recipient because the degree of dissimilarity between the donor and recipient HLA determines the likelihood of rejection of the transplant by the recipient. Additionally, hematopoietic tissue contains viable committed lymphocytes that are capable of recognizing the foreign HLA antigens of the host and creating a graft-versus-host (GVH) reaction. This immune response of the graft to the host can vary from mild (Grade 1) to severe (Grades 3 and 4). The GVH reaction, particularly Grades 3 and 4, remains one of the most significant morbidity and mortality risks associated with allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. For these reasons, donors are selected who are the best HLA match available. Donors may be HLA-matched siblings or other family members, or the patient may receive a graft from an unrelated HLA-matched individual identified through one of several worldwide donor registries. These registries, the largest in the United States being the National Marrow Donor Program, recruit healthy individuals who are willing to altruistically donate their bone marrow or peripheral blood progenitor cells (PBPCs). Marrow or PBPCs from registry donors are obtained at a hospital or blood center close to their own home, and the graft is then transported by courier to the transplant center. Anonymity is maintained for both donor and recipient. Because of the need for an almost perfect HLA match, registries must have millions of volunteers if they are to have a reasonable chance of finding a match for a given patient. Because pluripotential hematopoietic progenitor cells do not express ABO antigens, they will engraft in the marrow stroma of ABO-incompatible individuals, thus abrogating the need for donors to be ABO compatible but requiring the removal of mature red cells from these grafts.

Despite these resources, ideal HLA-matched HPC donors may not be identified for all patients. One option currently under investigation is transplantation from a haploidentical donor (Handgretinger & Lang, 2008). Using haploidentical dornors increases the pool of potential donors but brings with it the increased risk of graft failure and GVH reactions. Recent advances suggest improved outcomes in haploidentical transplants with selective T-cell depletion (Ciurea et al, 2012). An additional source of HPCs for patients requiring an allogeneic transplant is HPCs harvested from umbilical cord blood. These cord blood HPC units do not require as close an HLA match and are available immediately (because cord blood units are collected prospectively by cord blood banks). Cord blood HPC units may be stored privately for the use of the donor's family or are distributed through international registries.

Bone Marrow

Bone marrow is harvested from the iliac crest of the donor in the operating room under sterile conditions. Donors will elect to have general or spinal anesthesia. The amount of marrow to be collected is dependent on the recipient size. Generally, sufficient marrow is collected to provide at least 2×10^8 nucleated cells per kilogram of recipient body weight. For a 70-kg adult, this will generally require the collection of about 700 mL of marrow. The technique involves the collection of approximately 3 to 5 mL per aspiration into a heparinized syringe. Aspirating too large a volume from one site will result in dilution of the marrow with peripheral blood. Usually, two individuals will harvest marrow at the same time from each side of the donor iliac crest. As it is collected, the aspirated marrow is filtered through large-pore filters to remove bone spicules or clots, and supplemental anticoagulant is added. Because the hematopoietic progenitor cells are contained within the nucleated cell fraction, the collected marrow is often further processed to reduce the volume by separating the buffy coat from a large proportion of the red cells and plasma volume. The buffy coat may be further processed to remove all red cells if the donor and the recipient are ABO incompatible or T-cell depleted if desired. Generally, bone marrow from allogeneic marrow donations is collected immediately before transplant, but it can be successfully frozen and stored for later use.

Although bone marrow harvested from the iliac crest was the original and long-standing source of HPCs for transplantation, the last 25 years have seen the development of technologies that allow the collection of these cells from the peripheral blood of both patients and normal donors, as well as from placental or umbilical cord blood.

Peripheral Blood Progenitor Cells

The stimulation for the development of technologies that would allow the collection of HPCs from peripheral blood was the potential for use in the autologous transplant setting, where concerns about marrow contamination with tumor cells are high. Because of the relative ease of hemapheresis collection over marrow harvest and the increased rate of engraftment, progenitor cells obtained from the peripheral blood are increasingly being used in the allogeneic setting as well. Currently, about 50% of allogeneic hematopoietic transplants employ HPCs from peripheral blood, approximately 30% use umbilical cord blood–derived HPCs, and the remaining 20% are obtained from marrow. Offering hemapheresis collection as an option over traditional bone marrow harvest has positively affected the recruitment of volunteer donors for the national marrow donor programs. The instrumentation and procedures used for peripheral blood progenitor cell harvest are described in Chapter 37.

The greatest advantage of peripheral blood progenitor cells over marrow is the time to neutrophil and platelet engraftment, averaging 8 to 12 days for mobilized peripheral blood progenitor cells, compared with 2 to 4 weeks for bone marrow (Gianni et al, 1989). This increased engraftment is typically ascribed to the increased number of HPCs collected through hemapheresis compared to traditional bone marrow harvest. This rapid recovery reduces morbidity and mortality associated with profound neutropenia/thrombocytopenia and reduces the costs associated with hospital stay, transfusion support, treatment of complications, and so forth.

HPCs were known 3 decades ago to be present in the peripheral blood following chemotherapy recovery (Richman et al, 1976). However, later, hemapheresis systems were developed that allow the safe collection of adequate numbers of these cells to provide for engraftment of the recipient after chemotherapy (Kessinger et al, 1988). In most patients undergoing autologous transplantation, large-volume apheresis collection (14 to 20 L/procedure) is now well established as an efficient means of collecting adequate numbers of HPCs in a reasonable number of procedures to provide for adequate, timely hematopoietic recovery.

HPCs are morphologically indistinguishable from other mononuclear cells seen in the marrow or peripheral blood, yet collection of adequate numbers of cells is essential to ensuring marrow engraftment in the recipient. Bone marrow collections have traditionally been targeted at collecting sufficient nucleated cells to ensure a minimum number of progenitor cells. Bone marrow grafts could be assayed for progenitor cell activity by the use of colony-forming assays (Iscove et al, 1971). With this technique, a sample of mononuclear cells from the graft is cultured in methylcellulose media supplemented with hematopoietic growth factors and essential amino acids for 10 to 14 days. At the end of this period, the plates are examined for the numbers and types of characteristic CFUs, including burst-forming unit-erythroid (BFU-E), granulocyte-macrophage (CFU-GM), and mixed colonies: granulocyte, erythrocyte, monocyte, and megakaryocyte (CFU-GEMM). Clusters containing more than 50 cells are scored as a colony. Collections containing greater than 1×10^5 CFUs per kilogram of recipient weight are considered adequate.

With increasing use of peripheral blood hemapheresis procedures to obtain progenitor cell grafts, it became necessary to develop an assay that could be completed on the same day and used to determine the number of hemapheresis collections required. Quantitation of the number of cells bearing the CD34 antigen by flow cytometry has become the widely accepted method for assessing the adequacy of peripheral blood progenitor cell collections. The CD34 antigen is restricted to primitive cells of all lineages (Civin et al, 1989). Collection of hemapheresis products using CD34+ cell enumeration as an index of graft efficacy has proved to result in enduring hematopoietic engraftment (Berenson et al, 1991). Standardization of the CD34 cell assay and availability of flow cytometric analysis have resulted in the use of CD34+ cell measurements by most programs to determine the number and adequacy of peripheral blood progenitor cell collections (Keeney et al, 2004). Generally, peripheral blood progenitor cell collections containing greater than 3×10^6 CD34+ cells per kilogram of recipient body weight are considered adequate to provide for neutrophil engraftment in 8 to 10 days.

Collection of HPCs in the nonmobilized patient or donor would require multiple apheresis procedures or collections, because the numbers of HPCs in the peripheral blood are about $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{100}$ of the number in the marrow and are typically less than 0.01% of circulating nucleated cells. Thus mobilization therapies are required to increase the numbers of circulating HPCs and thus improve the efficiency of hemapheresis collection. Richman and colleagues (1976) recognized that although there was a drop in the number of circulating CD34+ cells following chemotherapy, this was followed by a fourfold to fivefold increase in the percentage of circulating CD34+ cells just as the absolute neutrophil count began to recover, usually around 14 to 21 days following therapy. This increase in circulating CD34+ cells is greatest with chemotherapeutic agents such as cyclophosphamide and etoposide. If hemapheresis collection is performed in this

window, large numbers of HPCs can be recovered with a limited number of procedures, even though the total white count may be less than 10,000/μL. Because the period of increased numbers of circulating CD34+ cells is short (2 to 3 days), close monitoring of the patient's white count and peripheral blood CD34+ cell counts and timing of the hemapheresis collection are critical. In addition, some investigators have felt that collecting autologous HPCs in the recovery phase of chemotherapy decreases the likelihood of tumor cells contaminating the apheresis product. The use of hematopoietic growth factors such as granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) also results in a significant increase in the numbers of circulating CD34+ cells in peripheral blood (Siena et al, 1989). Doses of 5 to 10 μg/kg of body weight for 4 to 5 days will result in a fivefold to tenfold increase in the number of HPCs in the peripheral blood. The use of G-CSF alone has proved to be more efficient than chemotherapy priming for the collection of CD34+ cells. The combination of chemotherapy priming and the use of growth factors (primarily G-CSF) results in the maximum mobilization of PBPCs and the need for the fewest number of hemapheresis procedures to collect a transplant dose of HPCs—a strategy employed by most autogeneic transplant programs. The use of G-CSF in the healthy allogeneic donor to mobilize HPCs has been investigated and, aside from mild effects such as bone pain and headache, is well tolerated (Anderlini et al, 1997). In 2008, the FDA approved the use of Plerixafor as an additional mobilization drug (Hopman & DiPersio, 2014). This drug blocks the CXCR4-SDF-1 interaction that is required for HPC targeting to the bone marrow niche. This blockage results in increased mobilization of HPCs. Plerixafor is generally well tolerated, with gastrointestinal irritation the most commonly observed side effect. Increasingly, transplant programs are using peripheral blood rather than harvested marrow as a source of HPCs for allogeneic and autogeneic transplants. The higher risk of GVHD in allogeneic recipients of peripheral blood HPCs versus marrow (Cutler et al, 2001) has stimulated trials of new technologies to modify these grafts (see T-Cell Depletion section).

Umbilical Cord Blood

The fact that high numbers of CFU cells or progenitor cells are present in umbilical cord blood was known for many years, but it was not until 1989 that the first attempts were made to use cells recovered from placenta umbilical cords for hematopoietic transplantation (Gluckman et al, 1989). The apparent success of many of these early cord blood transplants led to the organization of several cord blood banks in this country and in Europe in an attempt to provide another source of progenitor cell tissue for patients requiring an allogeneic transplant from an unrelated donor. The Cord Blood Transplantation Study (COBLT), which collected data from 1997 to 2004, established standardized procedures for donor screening, HLA matching, cord blood processing, and storage and data collection. These data clearly established that cord blood transplants in children with a wide range of malignant and nonmalignant conditions could result in a high degree of engraftment and 2-year event-free survivals of 55% for children with high-risk malignancies and 78% for children with nonmalignant conditions (Martin et al, 2006; Kurtzberg, 2009). In addition, because the progenitor cells are obtained from cord blood, there appears to be a greater degree of tolerance for some degree of HLA incompatibility between donor and recipient without the appearance of a Grade 3 or 4 GVH reaction; thus hematopoietic transplantation might become available for some patients who otherwise have no HLA-matched donor (Barker et al, 2005). An additional advantage of cord blood HPC over both bone marrow and apheresis products is that the cord blood is banked and is more immediately available for use, thus reducing the time to transplantation.

Umbilical cord progenitor cells are harvested by cannulation of the placental vessels while the placenta is still in utero or, more commonly, following delivery. The number of HPCs recovered is directly proportional to the volume of cord blood collected, which varies with the size of the infant/placenta and with the experience of the individual performing the collection (Wagner et al, 1992). Volumes ranging from 40 to 150 mL are common for experienced centers. This will result in the harvesting of approximately 4 to 11 $\times$ 10^8 nucleated cells. Collections that are not adequate in volume (<40 mL) are usually discarded. Generally, umbilical cord blood collections are not further processed to reduce their volume but are then frozen directly with DMSO and liquid nitrogen storage. Some collection centers use specially trained staff deployed to the delivery room who are not distracted by the care of the mother and/or the infant. The use of a dedicated staff results in larger volume collections and reduction in the risk of bacterial contamination of the cord blood.

Careful screening and testing of the mother are essential to ensure the safety of the cord blood product, as well as the absence of genetic disease. In addition to FDA-approved laboratory measurements for serologically transmissible disease and confirmation by nucleic acid testing (NAT) on a maternal sample, bacteriologic testing on a sample of the umbilical cord blood unit is completed.

Although umbilical cord blood banking offers the exciting potential for improved histocompatibility and thus availability for more patients, the remaining critical issue is the lack of sufficient hematopoietic progenitor cells in most cord blood to successfully engraft adults, although transplantation in adults is successful. This smaller dose of HPCs results in delayed or failed engraftment, with resultant increased morbidity and mortality. Transplantation of two cord-blood units has extended the use of cord-blood transplantation to adults, but the engraftment remains inferior to that achieved with marrow or peripheral-blood stem cells (De Lima, 2002; Barker et al, 2005; Haspel et al, 2008). One approach to address the low numbers of HPCs in cord blood units is expansion of the HPC population in vitro. Co-culture with bone marrow–derived mesenchymal stromal cells results in expansion of both primitive and mature hematopoietic progenitors in unfractionated cord blood (Robinson et al, 2006; De Lima, 2012). Expanded cord blood transplanted in combination with unmanipulated cord blood significantly improved engraftment as compared with unmanipulated cord blood only. The median time to neutrophil engraftment was 15 days in the recipients of expanded cord blood, as compared with 24 days in historical controls who received unmanipulated cord blood only ($p < .001$); the median time to platelet engraftment was 42 days and 49 days, respectively ($p = .03$) (De Lima, 2012). Success has been found in clinical trials with the in vitro expansion of one of the two units using treatments with PGE1, fucolsylation, and other reagents (e.g., StemEX).

CONDITIONING REGIMENS FOR HEMATOPOIETIC GRAFT RECIPIENTS

Over the last several decades, transplant-related mortality has decreased due to improved supportive care, better approaches to prevent severe infections, and the clinical practice of reduced-intensity conditioning protocols (Oudin, 2014). Classically, HPC transplants are performed with the use of otherwise lethal doses of chemotherapy and/or radiation therapy (myeloablative transplants) in patients with malignant disease and to restore normal function in patients with defects of hematopoiesis (aplastic anemia, sickle cell anemia). However, bone marrow ablative conditioning regimens prior to transplants using high-dose chemotherapy and/or radiation therapy (total body irradiation [TBI]) have not always been successful in eliminating cancer cells before HPC transplant. These high-dose regimens are also associated with increased morbidity and mortality, and many patients are excluded as candidates for traditional HPC grafts because of comorbidities. These factors, along with data demonstrating greater benefit from allogeneic versus autologous HPC grafts, led to the utilization of nonmyeloablative transplant protocols (Chakraverty et al, 2002), now more commonly referred to as reduced intensity allogeneic HPC grafts.

Use of reduced-intensity conditioning regimens in the allogeneic transplant setting has led to a significant decrease in nonrelapse mortality to 16% to 23% (Henig & Zuckerman, 2014; Mewawalla & Nathan, 2014). Earlier concerns that reduced-intensity conditioning regimens would require intense immune suppression leading to increased rates of viral and invasive fungal infection have not been observed, and infections rates are equivalent to full myeloablative protocols (Satwani et al, 2009). Decreased toxicity alleviated many of the early concerns regarding the use of transplant using reduced intensity/toxicity protocols in the pediatric nonmalignant patient population (Abikoff & Cairo, 2014).

Early murine studies showed that recipients of allogeneic grafts had better survival than recipients of syngeneic grafts (Barnes et al, 1957). Later studies in humans identified a "graft-versus-leukemia effect" in patients transplanted for acute leukemias that appeared to correlate with the development of chronic graft-versus-host disease in the recipient (Weiden et al, 1981). That this effect was dependent on donor T lymphocytes was further demonstrated by the high relapse rate that occurred in patients receiving T-cell–depleted HPC grafts (Marmont et al, 1989). Initial efforts focused on the infusion of donor T lymphocytes after HPC grafting in patients who had relapsed (Kolb et al, 1990). This technique became known as donor lymphocyte infusion (DLI). Because these patients received no additional chemotherapy, the next approach was to attempt HPC peripheral blood grafts with no conditioning (Porter et al, 1999). Some conditioning therapy, primarily immunosuppressive, was necessary to allow donor cells to engraft. Conditioning regimens in reduced-intensity conditioning of HPC transplants are now focused on providing sufficient immunosuppression to allow engraftment of donor cells without complete elimination of the tumor burden. The larger number of T lymphocytes in

peripheral blood HPC grafts versus marrow appears to decrease the risk of graft rejection by overwhelming host T lymphocytes and favoring the development of a graft-versus-leukemia effect. DLI may also be given at a later date if insufficient donor T-cell engraftment or disease relapse is evident.

In the reduced-intensity conditioning of HPC grafts, disease control is mediated by recognition of host residual tumor cells by donor T-cells and requires establishment of at least partial donor T lymphocyte chimerism, if not full replacement by donor T-cells. The kinetics of T-cell engraftment in nonmyeloablative HPC transplants is such that up to a year may be required for the patient to achieve complete disease remission (Childs et al, 1999). Therefore, this therapy is not appropriate for patients with acute leukemia who are not in remission or for those with other aggressive malignancies likely to relapse at an early date. Although the morbidity and mortality associated with the conditioning regimen in nonmyeloablative HPC grafts are lower, the risk of GVHD is the same as that seen following high-dose conditioning regimens (Malladi et al, 2009). Because of the higher risk of GVHD and graft rejection in unrelated HPC grafts, particularly HLA-mismatched ones, it remains to be seen whether this group of patients will benefit from nonmyeloablative HPC grafts (Koreth et al, 2009).

Reduced toxicity of the preparative regimen allows its use in older patients and is associated with less transfusion burden and shorter hospital stays (Weissinger et al, 2001). Studies are currently under way to look at the efficacy of reduced-intensity conditioning in such diseases as multiple myeloma (Cook et al, 2009), in which the patient population tends to be older. Reduced toxicity and improved outcomes seen with this therapy have contributed to its rapid growth in the hematopoietic transplant community.

T-CELL DEPLETION

Techniques to reduce the numbers of T lymphocytes in allogeneic hematopoietic grafts have been targeted at reducing the incidence and severity of GVHD. Techniques either target the HPCs (positive selection) or the T-cells (negative selection). Techniques specifically targeting T-cells have included soybean lectin agglutination, E-rosette formation, combinations of the two, counterflow elutriation, monoclonal antibodies, and the application of monoclonal antibodies in vivo in the recipient post transplant to reduce donor T-cells (Reisner et al, 1982; Noga et al, 1990).

The major disadvantage of T-cell depletion is the resultant increase in the incidence of disease relapse. Patients who demonstrate mild GVHD appear to have a lower incidence of relapse of neoplastic disease than do those patients who have no GVHD. The presence of the donor T-cell population is apparently critical to "graft-versus-leukemia effect," with recognition of host antigens by donor T-cells generating an immune response that eliminates residual host tumor cells.

CRYOPRESERVATION OF HEMATOPOIETIC GRAFTS

Because HPC grafts from all autogeneic and many allogeneic collections are cryopreserved and stored before use, the cryopreservation process directly affects the efficacy and quality of HPC transplants. PBSC products are routinely cryopreserved in a saline solution mixture and supplemented with a protein, usually albumin or autologous plasma, and cryoprotectants such as dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) without or with 1% dextran-40. The most common protocol involves the use of 10% DMSO as a cryoprotective agent, controlled-rate freezing at 1°C/minute until heat of fusion, then 1°C/minute until –40°C, then 10°C/minute until –50° to 86°C, and finally stored in liquid nitrogen in either the vapor or liquid phase (≤150°C per FDA requirements). The use of DMSO provides significant improvement in postthaw viability over glycerol. Because toxicities are associated with the postthaw infusion of progenitor cell products containing DMSO, other investigators have looked at using lower concentrations or adding hetastarch or other additives. Attempts to wash products following thaw to reduce the amount of DMSO present resulted in significant loss of progenitor cells. Therefore, strategies using DMSO are now targeted at reducing the volume of the prefreezing product, thus lowering the amount of DMSO necessary, or new additive solutions that allow decreased DMSO concentrations (Clarke et al, 2009; Stylianou et al, 2006).

REINFUSION OF PROGENITOR CELL PRODUCTS

Regardless of the source of the progenitor cell graft, HPCs are infused to the recipient in a manner very similar to that of any blood product transfusion. Pluripotential progenitor cells, with their unique membrane receptors, will home to the marrow space, engraft, and replicate. Products that have been cryopreserved with DMSO in most cases are thawed and immediately reinfused, typically without washing. Some programs do wash HPCs prior to infusion for patients who are at higher risk of toxicity (e.g., neonatal). HPCs collected by hemapheresis that are not further processed may contain large numbers of red blood cells. Cryopreservation in DMSO does not maintain mature red blood cell membrane integrity, and these products will contain a large amount of free hemoglobin when thawed. Recipient reactions to both the free hemoglobin and DMSO vary from mild—characterized by nausea, chills, or headache—to more severe reactions that can include hypotension, vomiting, SIRS, renal failure, cardiac arrest, and neurologic ischemia/toxicity (Stroncek et al, 1991; Hoyt et al, 2000). Such adverse reactions are shown in Table 38-3. Recipients of cryopreserved progenitor cell products are generally premedicated with antihistamines and/or antiemetics. Adequate hydration and the use of diuretics are indicated to decrease renal toxicities associated with free hemoglobin and larger-volume infusions.

TABLE 38-3
Adverse Reactions Observed in Patients Transfused with Cryopreserved Progenitor Cell Products

Common	Contributing Factors
Chills	Volume of product reinfused
Nausea	Type and amount of cryoprotectant reinfused
Emesis	Volume of incompatible red cells (allogeneic products)
Fever	Bacterial contamination
Headache	
Dyspnea	
Uncommon	
Renal failure	
Cardiac arrest	
Hypotension	
Sepsis	

EX VIVO MANIPULATION OF HEMATOLOGIC CELLS

A majority of adult B-cell malignancies, including acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), and non-Hodgkin lymphoma, are ultimately incurable despite currently available therapies, even those including HPC transplant. Another approach to treat patients with hematological malignancies is immunotherapy that involves the engineering of a patient's own immune cells to recognize and attack their tumors. Two primary strategies show significant promise at this time: sensitization in vivo or ex vivo of a patient's T-cells through their dendritic cells (similar to a vaccination for infectious disease) and genetically engineering the patient's T-cells ex vivo to target the tumor cells. These approaches have generated some remarkable responses in patients with advanced cancer.

USE OF DENDRITIC CELLS IN CANCER IMMUNOTHERAPY

Dendritic cells (DCs) are used in cancer immunotherapy in an attempt to harness the power and specificity of the patient's own immune system to treat the tumors. The aim of the DC immunotherapy approach is to induce antigen-specific expansion of effector and memory CD8+ T-cells that will directly reduce the tumor mass and that can also induce an immunological memory to control tumor relapse. For an optimal functioning vaccine, the vaccine-elicited CD8+ T-cells should meet several criteria. They should be of high avidity, able to recognize peptide-MHC class I complexes on tumor cells, able to express high levels of granzyme and perforin (essential proteins for cytotoxic activity against cancer cells), able to enter a tumor microenvironment, and able to overcome the immunomodulatory mechanisms operational in a tumor cell. Dendritic cells initiate an immunological response by presenting the captured antigen, in the form of peptide–major histocompatibility complex molecule complexes, to naive cells and therefore are at the center of the immune system owing to their ability to control both tolerance and immune responses. These key properties of DCs render them the central candidates for antigen delivery and

vaccination, including therapeutic vaccination against cancer. There are two approaches used with DCs. In one, a vaccination approach is utilized in which the antigen is provided together with an adjuvant to elicit a therapeutic T-cell response in vivo. Alternately, autologous antigen-specific dendritic cells are isolated and expanded ex vivo and then reinfused into the patient.

Dendritic cells are generated ex vivo by culturing hematopoietic progenitor cells or monocytes with cytokine combinations (Palucka & Banchereau, 2012; Strioga et al, 2013). These expanded DCs have been tested as therapeutic vaccines for a variety of neoplastic conditions. A consistent conclusion from these studies is that dendritic cell–based vaccines are safe and can induce the expansion of circulating CD4+ T-cells and CD8+ T-cells that are specific for tumor antigens. Improved clinical outcomes have been seen in trials for treatment of prostate cancer, melanoma, and glioblastoma multiforme, among others (Higano et al, 2009; Kantoff et al, 2010; Okada et al, 2011; Schwartzentruber et al, 2011). Sipuleucel-T is an FDA-approved commercial system based on this paradigm for treatment of prostate cancer (Higano et al, 2009; Kantoff et al, 2010).The efficacy ex vivo generation of sensitized DCs may be assayed using immune monitoring assays such as MHC-peptide tetramer staining, cytokine flow cytometry, and enzyme-linked immunospot (Maecker et al, 2005; Strioga et al, 2013).

ADOPTIVE CELL TRANSFER/CHIMERIC ANTIGEN RECEPTORS

T-cells can be genetically engineered to target tumor-associated antigens through the introduction of genes encoding artificial T-cell receptors, called chimeric antigen receptors (CAR), specific to cancer-associated antigens (Mansoor et al, 2005). CARs are proteins that allow the T-cells to recognize a specific protein (antigen) on tumor cells. Most CARs are comprised of an antigen-binding domain, an extracellular spacer/hinge region, a transmembrane domain, and an intracellular signaling domain resulting in T-cell activation after antigen binding (Curran et al, 2012). There are numerous ongoing clinical trials using CARs to treat a wide range of hematologic and nonhematologic malignancies. Targeted T-cells, using the CAR mechanism, have been successfully used to treat advanced melanoma, colon cancer, and B-cell lymphomas (Dudley et al, 2005; Morgan et al, 2006; Johnson et al, 2009; Besser et al, 2010; Kalos et al, 2011).

In cellular therapeutic approaches using dendritic cells and adoptive cell transfer with altered lymphocytes, the general approach is for staff from a tissue or blood bank to isolate cells (e.g., dendritic or lymphocytes) by leukapheresis with or without immunomagnetic cell isolation, purify, test, store, and culture under Current Good Tissue Practice (cGTP)/Current Good Manufacturing (cGMP) conditions and FDA-approved Investigational New Drug (IND) guidelines (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2011). These are subsequently infused or cryopreserved and then infused after thaw. Before vaccination, aliquots of cryopreserved DCs are further manipulated (treated and/or expanded) before patient treatment, all under FDA guidelines. For CAR treatments, a similar handling and manipulation of cells is followed using a combination of a routine hospital-based tissue banking facility and a cGTP/cGMP facility. Because these cells are used under IND, the Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Control section of an FDA-reviewed IND ensures that handling and manipulations do not adversely affect the therapeutic cells, and release criteria (viability, recovery, purity, identity, stability, and potency) are established for the clinical trial.

Tissue banking arose from a need to organize and ensure the quality and efficacy of transplanted human tissue. The scope of tissue banks has expanded, and they are likely to continue to increase in importance.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Boyle KE, Vlahos N, Jarow JP: Assisted reproductive technology in the new millennium: part II, *Urology* 63:217–224, 2004.
This, with part I, is an excellent review of current approaches to infertility.

Cetin I, Pardi G: A multidisciplinary approach to the future of reproduction, *Placenta* 24:s3–s4, 2003.
This is a good review of reproductive options for cancer patients.

Chakraverty R, Peggs K, Chopra R, et al: Limiting transplantation-related mortality following unrelated donor stem cell transplantation by using a nonmyeloablative conditioning regimen, *Blood* 99:1071–1078, 2002.
Outlines the risks, benefits, and new methods in hematologic transplants for patients without a matched related donor.

Gorin NC: Collection, manipulation and freezing of haemopoietic stem cell. In Gladstone AH, editor: *Clinics in haematology*, London, 1986, WB Saunders, pp 19–48.
A lengthy but comprehensive description of cell freezing physiology and practices.

Kessinger A, Armitage JO, Landmark JD, et al: Autologous peripheral hematopoietic stem cell transplantation restores hematopoietic function following marrow ablative therapy, *Blood* 71:723, 1988.
Provides the earliest work and later refinements in autologous hematopoietic transplants by one of the first groups to describe this therapy.

Kurtzberg J: Update on umbilical cord blood transplantation, *CurrOpinPediatr* 21:22–29, 2009.
This is an excellent review of the state of the art of cord blood transplantation by one of the leading experts in this discipline.

Storb R: Allogenic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation—yesterday, today, and tomorrow, *Exp Hem* 31:1–10, 2003.
Interesting, nontechnical review by one of the leaders in hematopoietic transplantation.

REFERENCES

Abikoff CM, Cairo MS: Reduced intensity conditioning and hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in pediatric nonmalignant disease: a new therapeutic paradigm, *J Pediatr* 164(5):952–953, 2014.

Akpek EK, Alkharashi M, Hwang FS, et al: Artificial corneas versus donor corneas for repeat corneal transplants, *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 11:2014.

American Association of Tissue Banks: *2007 American Association of Tissue Banks (AATB) annual survey of accredited tissue banks in the United States*, McLean, Va, 2010, AATB.

Anderlini P, Korbling M, Dale D, et al: Allogeneic blood stem cell transplantation: Consideration for donors, *Blood* 90:903–908, 1997.

Barker JN, Weisdorf DJ, DeFor TE, et al: Transplantation of 2 partially HLA-matched umbilical cord blood units to enhance engraftment in adults with hematologic malignancy, *Blood* 105:1343–1347, 2005.

Barnes DWH, Corp MJ, Loutit JF: Treatment of murine leukemia with x-rays and homologous bone marrow II, *Br J Haematol* 3:241–252, 1957.

Berenson RJ, Bensinger WI, Hill RS, et al: Engraftment after infusion of CD34+ marrow cells in patients with breast cancer or neuroblastoma, *Blood* 77:1717–1722, 1991.

Besser MJ, Shapira-Frommer R, Treves AJ, et al: Clinical responses in a phase II study using adoptive transfer of short-term cultured tumor infiltration lymphocytes in metastatic melanoma patients, *Clin Cancer Res* 16(9):2646–2655, 2010.

Boldt J: Current results with slow freezing and vitrification of the human oocyte, *Reprod Biomed Online* 23(3):314–322, 2011.

Boldt J, Cline D, McLaughlin D: Human oocyte cryopreservation as an adjunct to IVF-embryo transfer cycles, *Hum Reprod* 18:1250–1255, 2003.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Update: Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease associated with cadaveric dura mater grafts—Japan, 1979–2003, *MMWR* 52:1179, 2003.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Assisted Reproductive Technology, 2012. ART Fertility Clinic Success Rates Report.

Childs R, Clave E, Contentin N, et al: Engraftment kinetics after nonmyeloablative allogenic peripheral blood stem cell transplantation: Full donor T-cell chimerism precedes alloimmune responses, *Blood* 94: 3234–3241, 1999.

Ciurea SO, Mulanovich V, Saliba RM, et al: Improved early outcomes using a T-cell replete graft compared with T-cell depleted haploidentical hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant* 18(12):1835–1844, 2012.

Civin C, Trischman T, Fackler MJ, et al: Summary of CD34 cluster workshop section. In Knapp W, Dorken B, Gilks WR, et al, editors: *Leukocyte typing IV*, Oxford, 1989, Oxford University Press, pp 818–824.

Clarke DM, Yadock DJ, Nicoud IB, et al: Improved post-thaw recovery of peripheral blood stem/progenitor cells using a novel intracellular-like cryopreservation solution, *Cytotherapy* 11(4):472–479, 2009.

Conrad EU, Gretch D, Obermeyer KR, et al: The transmission of hepatitis C virus by tissue transplantation, *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 77:214–224, 1995.

Cook G, Bird JM, Marks DI: In pursuit of the alloimmune response in multiple myeloma: Where do we go from here?, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 43:91–99, 2009.

Curran KJ, Pegram HJ, Brentjens RJ: Chimeric antigen receptors for T-cell immunotherapy: Current understanding and future directions, *J Gene Med* 14(6):405–415, 2012.

Cutler C, Giri S, Jeyapalan S, et al: Acute and chronic graft-versus-host disease after allogeneic peripheral blood stem-cell and bone marrow transplantation: A meta-analysis, *J ClinOncol* 19:3685–3691, 2001.

De Lima M, St John LS, Wieder ED: Double-chimaerism after transplantation of two human leucocyte antigen mismatched, unrelated cord blood units, *Br J Haematol* 119(3):773–776, 2002.

De Lima M, McNiece I, Robinson SN, et al: Cord-blood engraftment with ex vivo mesenchymal-cell coculture, *N Engl J Med* 367(24):2305–2315, 2012.

Dudley ME, Wunderlich JR, Yang JC, et al: Adoptive cell transfer therapy following non-myeloablative but lymphodepleting chemotherapy for the treatment of patients with refractory metastatic melanoma, *J Clin Oncol* 23(10):2346–2357, 2005.

Eastlund T: The histo-blood group ABO system and tissue transplantation, *Transfusion* 38:975–988, 1998.

Eye Bank Association of America: *2014 Statistical report*, 2014, www.restoresight.org.

Ezra-Cohn HE, Cook SF: Blood typing compact human bone tissue, *Nature* 191:1267–1268, 1961.

Fahner PJ, Mirza MI, van Gulik TM, et al: Systematic review of preservation methods and clinical outcomes of infrainguinal vascular allografts, *J VascSurg* 44:518–524, 2006.

Gianni AM, Bregni M, Siena S, et al: Rapid and complete hematopoietic reconstitution following combined transplantation of autologous blood and bone marrow cells: A changing role for high-dose chemo-radiotherapy?, *HematolOncol* 7:139–148, 1989.

Gluckman E, Broxmeyer H, Auerbach A, et al: Hematopoietic reconstitution in a patient with Fanconi's anemia by means of umbilical-cord blood from an HLA-identical sibling, *N Engl J Med* 321:1174–1178, 1989.

Handgretinger R, Lang P: The history and future prospective of haplo-identical stem cell transplantation, *Cytotherapy* 10:443–451, 2008.

Haspel RL, Kao G, Yeap BY, et al: Preinfusion variables predict the predominant unit in the setting of reduced-intensity double cord blood transplantation, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 41:523–529, 2008.

Henig I, Zuckerman T: Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation-50 years of evolution and future perspectives, *Rambam Maimonides Med J* 5(4):e0028, 2014.

Higano CS, Schellhammer PF, Small EJ, et al: Integrated data from 2 randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trials of active cellular immunotherapy with Sipuleucel-T in advanced prostate cancer, *Cancer* 115:3670–3679, 2009.

Hill Z, Vacl J, Kalasova E, et al: Haemolytic disease of the newborn due to anti-D antibodies in a Du positive mother, *Vox Sang* 27:92–94, 1974.

Hooper DK, Hawkins JA, Fuller TC, et al: Panel-reactive antibodies late after allograft implantation in children, *Ann ThoracSurg* 79:641–644, 2005.

Hopman RK, DiPersio JF: Advances in stem cell mobilization, *Blood Rev* 28(1):31–40, 2014.

Houghton FD, Hawkhead JA, Humpherson PG, et al: Non-invasive amino acid turnover predicts human embryo developmental capacity, *Hum Reprod* 17:999–1005, 2002.

Hoyt R, Szer J, Grigg A: Neurological events associated with the infusion of cryopreserved bone marrow and/or peripheral blood progenitor cells, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 25:1285–1287, 2000.

Iscove NN, Senn JS, Till JE, et al: Colony formation by normal and leukemic human marrow cells in culture: Effect of conditioned medium from human leukocytes, *Blood* 37:1–5, 1971.

Jackson DW, Windler GE, Simon TM: Intraarticular reaction associated with the use of freeze-dried, ethylene oxide-sterilized bone-patella tendon-bone allografts in the reconstruction of the anterior cruciate ligament, *Am J Sports Med* 18:1–10, 1990.

Johnson LA, Morgan RA, Dudley ME, et al: Gene therapy with human and mouse T-cell receptors mediates cancer regression and targets normal tissues expressing cognate antigen, *Blood* 114(3):535–546, 2009.

Kagan RJ, Robb EC, Plessinger MS: Human skin banking, *Clin Lab Med* 25:587–605, 2005.

Kainer MA, Linden JV, Whaley DN, et al: Clostridium infections associated with musculoskeletal-tissue allografts, *N Engl J Med* 350:2564–2571, 2004.

Kalos M, Levine BL, Porter DL, et al: T cells with chimeric antigen receptors have potent antitumor effects and can establish memory in patients with advanced leukemia, *Science Translational Medicine* 3(95):95ra73, 2011.

Kantoff PW, Higano CS, Shore ND, et al: IMPACT study investigators. Sipuleucel-T immunotherapy for castration-resistant prostate cancer, *NEJM* 363:411–422, 2010.

Kearney JN: Quality issues in skin banking: A review, *Burns* 24:299–305, 1998.

Keeney M, Gratama JW, Sutherland DR: Critical role of flow cytometry in evaluating peripheral blood hematopoietic stem cell grafts, *Cytometry* 58A:72–75, 2004.

Kolb HJ, Mittermulller J, Clemm CH, et al: Donor leukocyte transfusions for treatment of recurrent chronic myelogenous leukemia in marrow transplant patients, *Blood* 76:2462–2465, 1990.

Koreth J, Stevenson KE, Kim HT, et al: Bortezomib, tacrolimus, and methotrexate for prophylaxis of graft-versus-host disease after reduced-intensity conditioning allogeneic stem cell transplantation from HLA-mismatched unrelated donors, *Blood* 114:3956–3959, 2009.

Laub GW, Muralidharan S, Clancy R: Cryopreserved allograft veins as alternative coronary artery bypass conduits: Early phase results, *Ann ThoracSurg* 54:826–831, 1992.

Lorenz E, Uphoff D, Reid TR, et al: Modification of irradiation injury in mice and guinea pigs by bone marrow injections, *Natl Cancer Inst* 12:197–201, 1951.

Lucifero D, Chaillet JR, Trasler JM: Potential significance of genomic imprinting defects for reproduction and assisted reproductive technology, *Hum Reprod* 10:3–18, 2004.

Maecker HT, Moon J, Bhatia S, et al: Impact of cryopreservation on tetramer, cytokine flow cytometry, and ELISPOT, *BMC Immunol* 6:17, 2005.

Malladi RK, Peniket AJ, Littlewood TJ, et al: Alemtuzumab markedly reduces chronic GVHD without affecting overall survival in reduced-intensity conditioning sibling allo-SCT for AML, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 43:709–715, 2009.

Mansoor W, Gilham DE, Thistlethwaite FC, et al: Engineering T-cells for cancer therapy, *Br J Cancer* 93:1085–1091, 2005.

Marmont AM, Gale RP, Butturini A, et al: T-cell depletion in allogenic bone marrow transplantation: Progress and problems, *Haematologica* 74:235–248, 1989.

Martin PL, Carter SL, Kernan NA, et al: Results of the cord blood transplantation study (COBLT): Outcomes of unrelated donor umbilical cord blood transplantation in pediatric patients with lysosomal and peroxisomal storage diseases, *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant* 12:184–194, 2006.

Medawar PB: Immunity to homologous grafted skin. III. The fate of skin homografts transplanted to the brain, to subcutaneous tissue and to the anterior chamber of the eye, *Br J ExpPathol* 29:58–62, 1948.

Mewawalla P, Nathan S: Role of allogeneic transplantation in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia in the era of novel therapies: a review, *Ther Adv Hematol* 5(5):139–152, 2014.

Mohan S, Baylink DJ: Bone growth factors, *ClinOrthop* 263:30–48, 1991.

Morgan RA, Dudley ME, Wunderlich JR, et al: Cancer regression in patients after transfer of genetically engineered lymphocytes, *Science* 314(5796):126–129, 2006.

Noga SJ, Wagner JE, Rowley SD, et al: Using elutriation to engineer bone marrow allografts, *ProgClinBiol Res* 333:345–359, 1990.

O'Brien MF, Stafford EG, Gardner MAH: Cryopreserved viable allograft aortic valves. In Yankoh AC, Hetzer R, Miller DC, et al, editors: *Cardiac valve allografts 1972–1987*, New York, 1988, Springer-Verlag, pp 311–318.

Okada H, Kalinski P, Ueda R, et al: Induction of CD8+ T-cell responses against novel glioma-associated antigen peptides and clinical activity by vaccinations with α-type 1 polarized dendritic cells and polyinosinic-polycytidylic acid stabilized by lysine and carboxymethylcellulose in patients with recurrent malignant glioma, *J Clin Oncol* 29(3):330–336, 2011.

Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network (OPTN) and Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients (SRTR): *OPTN/SRTR 2012 annual data report*, Rockville, Md, 2013, Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, Healthcare Systems Bureau, Division of Transplantation.

Oudin C, Chevallier P, Furst S, et al: Reduced-toxicity conditioning prior to allogeneic stem cell transplantation improves outcome in patients with myeloid malignancies, *Haematologica* 99(11):1762–1768, 2014.

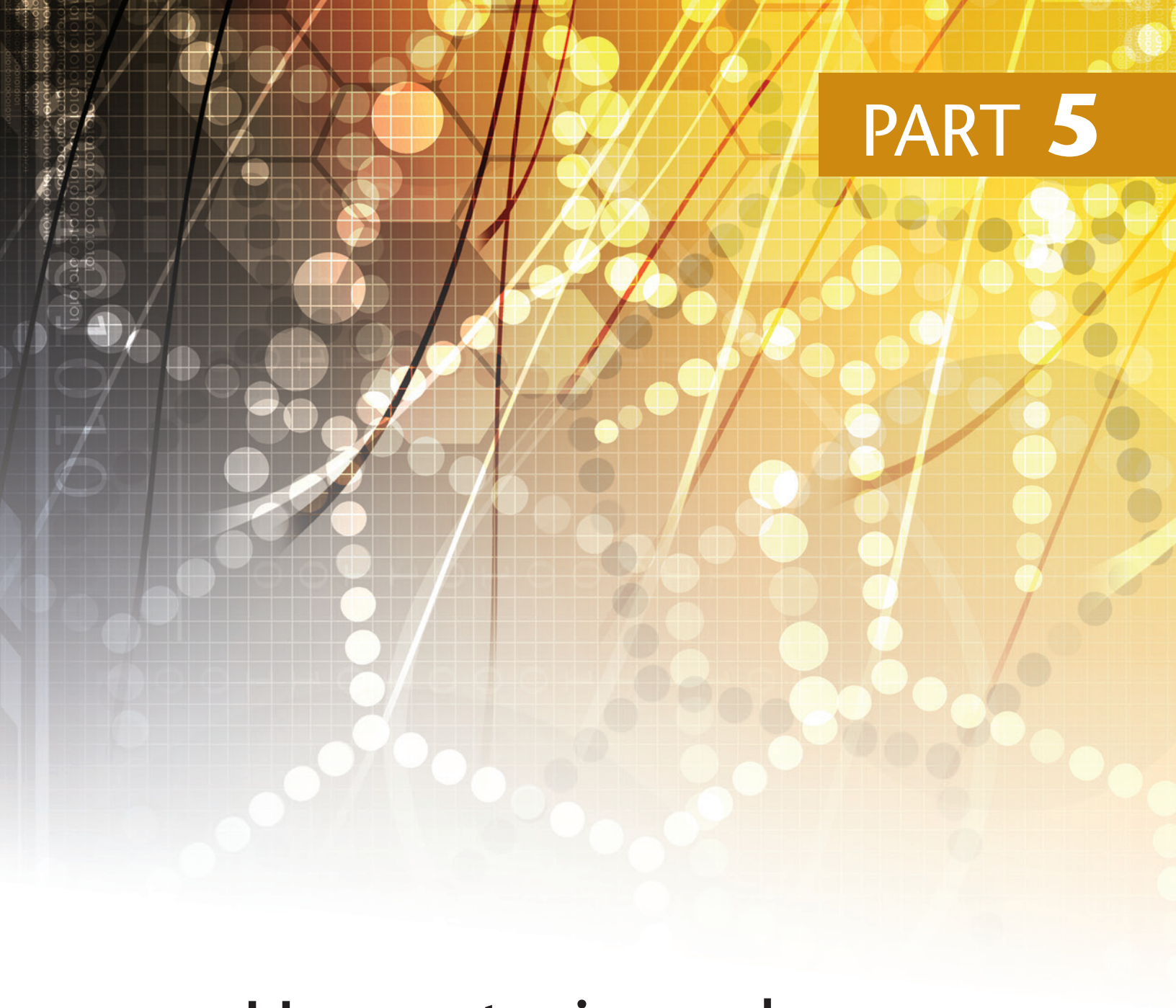
Palermo GD, Joris H, Devroey P: Pregnancies after intracytoplasmic injection of a single spermatozoan into an oocyte, *Lancet* 340:17–18, 1992.

Palucka K, Banchereau J: Cancer immunotherapy via dendritic cells, *Nat Rev Cancer* 12(4):265–771, 2012.

Pasquini MC, Wang Z Current use and outcome of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: CIBMTR

Summary Slides, 2013. Available at: http://www.cibmtr.org.
Porcu E, Bazzocchi A, Notarangelo L, et al: Human oocyte cryopreservation in infertility and oncology, *CurrOpinEndocrinol Diabetes Obes* 15:529–535, 2008.
Porter DL, Connors JM, Van Deerlin VM, et al: Graft-versus-tumor induction with donor leukocyte infusions as primary therapy for patients with malignancies, *J ClinOncol* 17:1234, 1999.
Reisner Y, Kapoor N, Hodes MZ, et al: Enrichment for CFU-C from murine and human bone marrow using soybean agglutinin, *Blood* 59:360–363, 1982.
Richman CM, Weiner RS, Yankee RA: Increase in circulating stem cells following chemotherapy in man, *Blood* 47:1031–1039, 1976.
Robinson SN, Ng J, Niu T, et al: Superior ex vivo cord blood expansion following co-culture with bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 37(4):359–366, 2006.
Satwani P, Baldinger L, Freedman J, et al: Incidence of viral and fungal infections following busulfan-based reduced-intensity versus myeloablative conditioning in pediatric allogeneic stem cell transplantation recipients, *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant* 15(12):1587–1595, 2009.
Schwartzentruber DJ, Lawson DH, Richards JM, et al: gp100 peptide vaccine and interleukin-2 in patients with advanced melanoma, *NEnglJMed* 2;364(22):2119–2127, 2011.
Shahrokhi S, Arno A, Jeschke MG: The use of dermal substitutes in burn surgery: Acute phase, *Wound Repair Regen* 22(1):14–22, 2014.
Shorr N, Perry J, Goldberg RA, et al: The safety and applications of acellular human dermal allograft in ophthalmic plastic and reconstructive surgery: A preliminary report, *Ophthalm Plast Reconstr Surg* 16:223–230, 2000.
Siena S, Bregni M, Brando B, et al: Circulation of CD34+ hematopoietic stem cells in the peripheral blood of high-dose cyclophosphamide-treated patients: Enhancement by intravenous recombinant human granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor, *Blood* 74:1905–1914, 1989.
Simonds RJ, Holmberg SD, Hurwitz RL, et al: Transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 from a seronegative organ and tissue donor, *N Engl J Med* 326:726–732, 1992.
Steptoe P, Edwards R: Pregnancy in an infertile patient after transfer of an embryo fertilized in vitro, *Brit Med J* 286:1351–1352, 1983.
Strioga MM, Felzmann T, Powell DJ Jr, et al: Therapeutic dendritic cell-based cancer vaccines: The state of the art, *Crit Rev Immunol* 33(6):489–547, 2013.
Stroncek DF, Fautsch SK, Lasky LC, et al: Adverse reactions in patients transfused with cryopreserved marrow, *Transfusion* 31:521–526, 1991.
Stylianou J, Vowels M, Hadfield K: Novel cryoprotectant significantly improves the post-thaw recovery and quality of HSC from CB, *Cytotherapy* 8(1):57–61, 2006.
Thomas ED, Lochte HL, Cannon JH, et al: Supralethal whole body irradiation and isologous marrow transplantation in man, *J Clin Invest* 38:1709–1716, 1959.
Tomford WW: *Musculoskeletal tissue banking*, New York, 1993, Raven Press.
Torroni A: Engineered bone grafts and bone flaps for maxillofacial defects: State of the art, *J Oral MaxillofacSurg* 67:1121–1127, 2009.
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research. Guidance for industry-current good tissue practice (CGTP) and additional requirements for manufacturers of human cells, tissues, and cellular and tissue-based products (HCT/Ps) 2011: http://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/default.htm.
U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Current good tissue practice for human cell, tissue and cellular and tissue-based product establishments, inspection and enforcement, final rule. 21 Code of Federal Regulations, part 1271, last updated February 21, 2014.
Volker-Dieben HJ, D'Amaro J, Kok-van Alphen CC: Hierarchy of prognostic factors for corneal allograft survival, *Aust N Z J Ophthalmol* 15:11–18, 1987.
Wagner WE, Broxmeyer HE, Cooper S: Umbilical cord and placental blood hematopoietic stem cells: Collection, cryopreservation and storage, *J Hematother* 1:167–175, 1992.
Wang X, Tse-Chao H, Da-Wen S, et al: Cryopreservation of tissue-engineered dermal replacement in ME_2SO: Toxicity study and effects of concentration and cooling rates on cell viability, *Cryobiology* 55:60–65, 2007.
Weiden PL, Sullivan KM, Flourneoy N, et al: Antileukemic effects of chronic graft vs. host disease: Contribution to improved survival after allogenic marrow transplantation, *N Engl J Med* 304:1529–1533, 1981.
Weipert J, Meisner H, Mendler N: Allograft implantation in pediatric cardiac surgery: Surgical experience from 1982–1994, *Ann ThoracSurg* 60(Suppl):S101–S104, 1995.
Weissinger F, Sandmaier BM, Maloney DG, et al: Decreased transfusion requirements for patients receiving nonmyeloablative allogenic hematopoietic stem cell transplants from HLA-identical siblings, *Blood* 98:3584–3588, 2001.
Yap CH, Skillington PD, Matalanis G, et al: Anti-HLA antibodies after cryopreserved allograft valve implantation does not predict valve dysfunction at three-year follow-up, *J Heart Valve Dis* 15:540–544, 2006.
Zhou J, He W, Luo G, et al: Fundamental immunology of skin transplantation and key strategies for tolerance induction, *Arch Immunol Ther Exp* 61(5):397–405, 2013.

This page intentionally left blank



PART 5

Hemostasis and Thrombosis

EDITED BY
A. Koneti Rao
Matthew R. Pincus

CHAPTER 39

COAGULATION AND FIBRINOLYSIS

Mariasanta Napolitano, Alvin H. Schmaier, Craig M. Kessler

OVERVIEW OF COAGULATION AND FIBRINOLYSIS, 794

PHYSIOLOGIC HEMOSTASIS, 795
Endothelium and Platelets, 795
Coagulation Protein System, 796
The Formation of Fibrin and the Fibrinolytic System, 797
The Anticoagulation Protein Systems, 798
Current Hypothesis for Initiation of the Hemostatic System, 799

CLINICAL LABORATORY HEMOSTASIS, 800
Physiologic Hemostasis versus Clinical Assays, 800
Screening Tests for Coagulation Disorders, 800
Assays Used in Clinical Coagulation Testing, 801
Practical Approach to Patients with Coagulation Disorders, 801

HEREDITARY COAGULATION PROTEIN DEFECTS, 804
Deficiency of Factor VIII (Hemophilia A) or Factor IX (Hemophilia B), 804
Hereditary Deficiencies of Other Coagulation Factors, 806

ACQUIRED COAGULATION DISORDERS, 809
Thrombotic Disorders and Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation, 809
Liver Disease, 810
Vitamin K Deficiency, 810
Massive Transfusion, 810
Acquired Coagulation Protein Inhibitors and Lupus Anticoagulant, 810

SELECTED REFERENCES, 811

KEY POINTS

- Physiologic hemostasis consists of the plasma coagulation, fibrinolysis, and anticoagulation protein systems.
- Physiologic hemostasis is initiated by factor VIIa and tissue factor; thrombosis is also initiated by factor VIIa and tissue factor, but it is amplified by factor XII activation on injured tissue and platelet thrombus.
- The adequacy of physiologic hemostasis cannot be fully assessed by current assays to detect coagulation abnormalities such as the activated partial thromboplastin time and prothrombin time.
- Current assays to assess coagulation protein abnormalities have good diagnostic power to recognize specific defects in coagulation proteins.
- Acquired coagulation protein defects more commonly reflect general medical disorders than specific protein defects.

OVERVIEW OF COAGULATION AND FIBRINOLYSIS

Hemostasis is the physiologic process by which the clotting system seals a vascular injury to limit blood loss; it must be quick, localized, and well regulated. Blood clotting cascade both in normal hemostasis and in pathologic thrombosis involves a number of factors. The coagulation system determines thrombin generation that initiates the proteolysis of fibrinogen, leading to fibrin clot formation. The role of the fibrinolytic system is to dissolve the clot formed by thrombin. The role of the anticoagulation system is to regulate all enzymes of the coagulation and fibrinolytic systems so no inappropriate excess of clotting or bleeding occurs. These three protein systems, together with the vessel wall endothelium, are in delicate balance to ensure adequate hemostasis with limitations on thrombosis formation.

Recent years have seen an evolution in our understanding of the physiologic hemostatic system (Fig. 39-1). For decades, the hemostatic system has been referred to as the *coagulation cascade*, based on the waterfall hypothesis of Ratnoff and Davies and MacFarland, who published, almost simultaneously, a sequence of proteolytic reactions starting with factor XII (Hageman factor) activation and ending with formed thrombin proteolyzing fibrinogen to form a clot (MacFarland, 1964; Ratnoff & Davies, 1964). However, at the onset, this hypothesis for physiologic hemostasis was untenable because it was known that factor XII (FXII) deficiency was not associated with bleeding (Ratnoff & Margolius, 1955). Thus the physiologic basis of this pathway was questioned because FXII is not essential for hemostasis. Further, by the mid-1970s, the cofactors for FXII activation—that is, prekallikrein and high molecular weight kininogen—were identified, and deficiencies of these proteins also were not associated with a bleeding state (Weuppers & Cochrane, 1972; Colman et al, 1975; Saito et al, 1975). Other mechanisms for physiologic hemostasis were sought. Osterud and Rappaport (1977) recognized that FVIIa is able to activate FIX to FIXa. Later, Broze and colleagues recognized that the kinetics of tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI) was such that under physiologic circumstances the FVIIa–tissue factor complex cannot directly activate FX but instead requires the involvement of FIX (Broze, 2003). These latter two studies indicate the important role of the FVIIa–tissue factor pathway in physiologic hemostasis. A key remaining question was how FXI, whose deficiency is associated with bleeding, becomes activated under physiologic circumstances. Gailiani and Broze (1991) found that formed thrombin activates FXI in the presence of dextran sulfate and high molecular weight kininogen, resulting in amplification of the coagulation system under stress. More recent evidence indicates that if FXI is poorly activated by thrombin, if FIX is poorly activated by FXIa, or if an antibody prevents FXIa activation of FIX, thrombin generation in plasma is reduced (Kravtsov et al, 2009). Under the same conditions, an antibody to FXIIa activation of FXI does not influence thrombin generation (Kravtsov et al, 2009). Furthermore, mice with total deficiency of FXII and low tissue factor (TF) are viable and phenotypically similar to low-TF mice with normal FXII expression. In contrast, superimposed FXI deficiency on the low-TF background results in death in utero (Spronk et al, 2009). Thus FXII is not essential for hemostasis, but FXI is. Presently, physiologic hemostasis is understood to be an interacting system of activation and amplification of several zymogens that become serine proteases. The initiator of physiologic hemostasis is FVIIa when bound to its cofactor, tissue factor. Regulation of expression of tissue factor constitutes a major modulation of physiologic hemostasis. Thrombin in turn amplifies the process by activating FXI, leading to additional FIX activation.

It is important for the reader to understand the physiologic basis of hemostasis. However, clinical laboratory assays used to examine the coagulation system are based on the original coagulation cascade hypothesis. Although these tests do not represent physiologic hemostasis, they are still very useful for diagnosis of potential bleeding disorders. Thus one needs to understand the distinction between physiologic coagulation, fibrinolysis, and anticoagulation and the tests that we use to measure these systems. This chapter endeavors to clarify this distinction for the reader. In the first part of this chapter, the details of physiologic coagulation, fibrinolysis, and

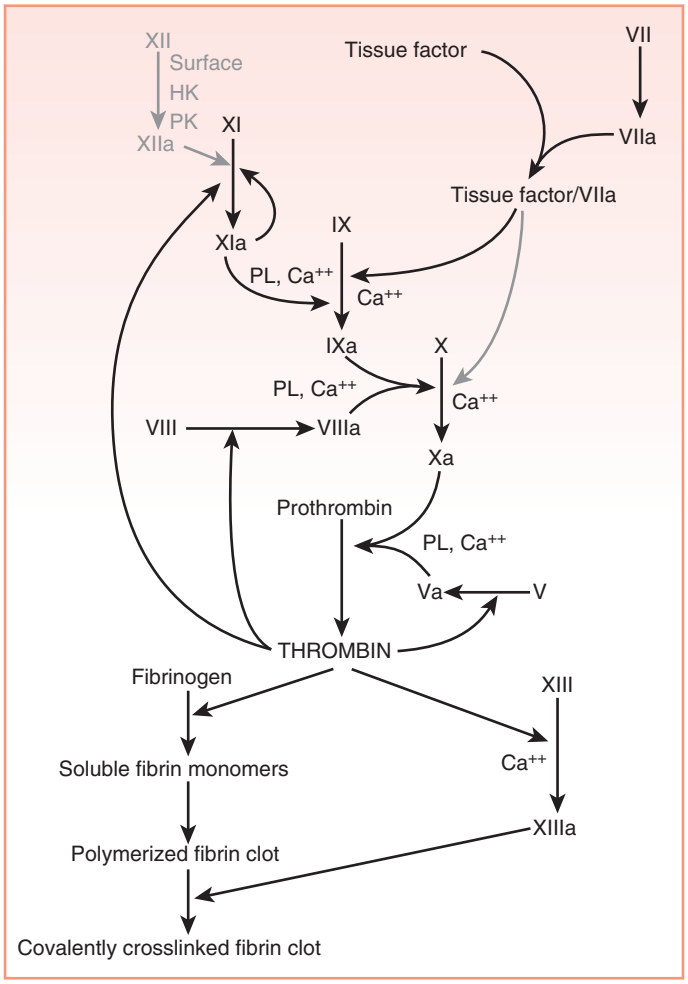


Figure 39-1 **Schematic diagram of physiologic blood coagulation.** Note that labels for the "contact phase" factors constituting factor XII (FXII), high molecular weight kininogen (HK), and prekallikrein (PK) are shown grayed. Although FXI is activated by FXIIa on a surface under artificial in vitro conditions, such as in the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT), this pathway is not believed to contribute to normal physiologic hemostasis. Similarly, whereas tissue factor (TF)/FVIIa can directly activate X to Xa in the in vitro prothrombin time (PT) test under conditions in which supraphysiologic concentrations of TF are employed, this reaction is shown as grayed because it does not contribute significantly to clot formation under normal in vivo physiologic conditions. Normal clotting in vivo is initiated when sufficient TF/FVIIa becomes available to activate FIX to FIXa. Subsequently, FIXa in the presence of FVIIIa activates FX to FXa, which, in turn, activates prothrombin to thrombin in the presence of FVa. Thrombin not only then proceeds to clot fibrinogen and to activate platelets but additionally exerts critically important positive feedback by activating both factor VIII and factor V. Physiologic amplification of thrombin formation is believed to result from thrombin activating FXI to FXIa, thereby providing an additional pathway for the activation of FIX. Phospholipid (PL) protein complexes present on the surface membranes of platelets in vivo. Ca^{++}, Calcium ions.

the regulation of coagulation are presented. In the second part, a description of the assays performed to measure bleeding disorders is presented, together with a discussion of the limitations of these assays for characterizing physiologic hemostasis. In the third part, an overview of congenital bleeding disorders is presented. Finally, this chapter presents the acquired bleeding disorders—the most common forms of bleeding states one actually encounters in clinical practice.

PHYSIOLOGIC HEMOSTASIS

The physiologic hemostatic system, a tightly regulated balance between formation and dissolution of hemostatic plugs modulated by a series of enzymes and scaffolding proteins, has two major parts. The first part is its cellular component, which consists mostly of platelets and endothelial cells but also includes neutrophils and monocytes. The second part is a large group of plasma proteins, which participate in clot formation (coagulation), dissolution of clots (fibrinolysis), and the action of naturally occurring serine protease inhibitors (anticoagulation) that terminate activity of a number of enzymes of the coagulation and fibrinolytic systems.

ENDOTHELIUM AND PLATELETS

Normal hemostasis involves interplay among the cellular components and proteins involved in clot formation and lysis. Endothelium that lines the vascular wall in a physiologic state exerts an anticoagulant action. When the vascular integrity is breached, blood coagulation is initiated. Endothelial cells have glycosaminoglycans that bind antithrombin (Marcum et al, 1984). Thrombomodulin on endothelial cell membranes is a locus that binds protein C to be activated by low levels of thrombin (Esmon & Owen, 1981). Intact endothelial cells secrete an ectonucleotidase, CD39, that degrades adenosine diphosphate (Pinsky et al, 2002). Endothelial cells also secrete prostacyclin and nitric oxide, which prevent platelet activation, thereby reducing the risk of arterial thrombosis (Hong, 1980; Palmer et al, 1987; Shariat-Madar et al, 2006). Endothelial cells additionally bind plasminogen, tissue plasminogen activator, and single-chain urokinase, all of which contribute to fibrinolysis and maintenance of an anticoagulant state (Barnathan et al, 1988; Cesarman et al, 1994).

In a canonical model for hemostasis that most investigators have agreed with for decades, when a vessel wall is injured, collagen is exposed, and platelets adhere to the site of injury (Van der Meijden et al, 2009). Von Willebrand factor helps platelets adhere to the injured vessel wall by binding both to this exposed collagen and to the platelet receptor GP Ib/IX/V complex (He et al, 2003). This adhesion event activates platelets, initiating a signaling cascade within them (Zaffran et al, 2000). The stimulated platelets release the contents of their granules, recruit additional platelets to aggregate to those already adherent, and provide a surface favoring the activation of multiple coagulation factors. Furthermore, in flowing blood, factor XII autoactivates if exposed to collagen or in the milieu of activated platelets, leading to the cascade of proteolytic events producing thrombin (Van der Meijden et al, 2009). Together, these events promote hemostatic plug formation as a physiologic event and in pathophysiologic states may lead to thrombus formation.

Once prothrombin has been activated to thrombin in the intravascular compartment, the resulting thrombin stimulates endothelium to upregulate TF, and TF forms a complex with FVIIa. The complex of FVIIa–TF activates FIX to FIXa, which converts zymogen FX to enzymatically active FXa (see Fig. 39-1). In the presence of FVa from liver or injured endothelium, FXa activates prothrombin (FII) to thrombin (FIIa). Under normal circumstances, the rate-limiting component of prothrombinase complex formation and the ultimate generation of thrombin activity is the concentration of FXa (Rand et al, 1996). Thrombin then proteolyzes fibrinogen to form fibrin. In static, in vitro systems, as little as 5 to 10 pM TF is sufficient to induce clot formation, leading to a 1000- to 2000-fold amplification of the process that increases the concentration of thrombin to 10 to 20 nM, which is sufficient to initiate clot formation (Mann, 2003). In a static model of blood coagulation, the addition of 5 pM TF results in an average clot time of approximately 5 minutes—a time sufficiently fast for physiologic hemostasis. Thrombin also is a major physiologic activator of platelets, together with other agonists such as collagen, ADP, platelet-activating factor, and epinephrine. Unactivated platelets probably circulate without promoting coagulation. When platelets are activated (see Chapter 40), their membranes become a site for additional thrombin formation. According to a cell-based model of coagulation (Hoffman & Monroe, 2001), activated platelets offer the most important source of negatively charged phospholipids (mainly phosphatidylserine) and procoagulant membranes (Furie & Furie, 2005) needed for coagulation factors action in the propagation phase. This pathway for thrombin formation conjoins with FXII autoactivation on exposed vessel collagen and downstream elaboration of thrombin as well (Van der Meijden et al, 2009). Critical reactions to form FXa and thrombin are accelerated 300,000-fold on the platelet surface. Platelets control three important phases of coagulation: thrombin generation, fibrin formation, and clot retraction (Heemskerk et al, 2013). Physiologically important coagulation and fibrinolytic reactions are likely to occur on the surface of cells in the intravascular compartment.

More recently, a noncanonical model for hemostasis has been proposed, stating that vessel wall tissue factor is the initial nidus for physiologic and pathophysiologic vessel clot formation (Day et al, 2005). In a normal mouse model of arterial injury, thrombin generation was initiated mainly by TF from endothelial cells than platelet activation. Fluorescent labeled factors Xa and Va were observed bound to the endothelium and not to platelets near the site of injury (Ivanciu et al, 2014). Further, in *KLKB1*$^{-/-}$ mice, constitutive thrombosis delay was merely due to reduced

TABLE 39-1
Proteins of the Plasma Coagulation System

Surface-Bound Zymogens	Vitamin K–Dependent Zymogens	Cofactors/Substrates
Factor XII	Factor VII	High molecular weight kininogen
Prekallikrein	Factor IX	Factor VIII
Factor XI	Factor X	Factor V
	Factor II	Fibrinogen
	Protein C	Protein S

vessel wall TF (Stavrou et al, 2015). It remains to be proven whether this novel noncanonical model for hemostasis and thrombosis becomes the dominant hypothesis in the future.

COAGULATION PROTEIN SYSTEM

Characterization of Coagulation Proteins

The proteins that constitute the coagulation system consist of zymogens and cofactors (Table 39-1). The zymogens (proenzymes) of the coagulation system can be grouped into the phospholipid-bound and the surface-bound. Phospholipid-bound zymogens make up the physiologically important hemostatic system. These proteins are vitamin K–dependent. Vitamin K is required for an essential γ-carboxylation reaction that takes place on the glutamic acid residue of each of these proteins located in their amino-terminal regions (see Chapter 42, Fig. 42-1). This carboxylation reaction allows these proteins to bind to phospholipid and cell membranes, where they are activated. Without this carboxylation reaction, these proteins do not function normally in the hemostatic system. Proenzymes include FX, FIX (Christmas factor), FVII, and FII (prothrombin). Protein C is a vitamin K–dependent phospholipid-bound zymogen, but when activated, it functions as an inhibitor (see later and Chapter 41). Protein S is a vitamin K–dependent cofactor for activated protein C.

The surface-bound proenzymes are proteins of the plasma kallikrein/kinin system (see Table 39-1). Surface-bound proenzymes include FXII (Hageman factor), prekallikrein (Fletcher factor), and FXI. These protein zymogens are also known as the *contact system* because FXII autoactivates when associated with a negatively charged surface, such as a glass tube and several physiologic substances (see later) (Wiggins & Cochrane, 1979; Miller et al, 1980). The autoactivation phenomenon of FXII allows for a common laboratory test, the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT), which is used to assess the integrity of the coagulation system (see later). This assay is an important diagnostic test that is performed more than 200 million times annually in the United States alone to assess many coagulation proteins. Thus it is important to be aware that assays to assess coagulation proteins (e.g., APTT, activated clotting time) are based on the event of FXII autoactivation. Although absolutely essential for a normal APTT, the proteins of the plasma kallikrein/kinin system do not have a role in hemostasis. These proteins (factor XII, prekallikrein, and high molecular weight kininogen) do participate in blood pressure regulation, fibrinolysis, inflammation, angiogenesis, and thrombosis (Schmaier, 2002; 2003; 2004; Shariat-Madar et al, 2006; Maas et al, 2008; LaRusch et al, 2010). Mice deficient in FXII, kininogen, the bradykinin B2 receptor, and prekallikrein are protected from arterial thrombosis (Renne et al, 2005; Shariat-Madar et al, 2006; Merkoulov et al, 2008; Stavrou et al, 2015).

Under physiologic circumstances in vivo, prekallikrein, when assembled on endothelial cells, may be first activated by an endothelial enzyme, prolylcarboxypeptidase (K_m = 9 nM), with FXII activation secondary to the formed plasma kallikrein (Rojkjaer et al, 1998; Shariat-Madar et al, 2002). Finally, the role of the surface-activated proteins that participate in in vitro blood coagulation assays has been reevaluated. Although deficiencies of FXII, prekallikrein, and high molecular weight kininogen are not associated with bleeding, investigations indicate that they have a role in arterial and venous thrombosis. Recently, activation of the contact factor coagulation pathway has been shown to occur in vivo from negatively charged surfaces such as polyphosphate, extracellular RNA, and collagen. In detail, polyphosphate (PolyP) in humans consists of 60 to 100 phosphate units, and it is released from platelet dense granules upon platelet activation. PolyP has prohemostatic, prothrombotic, and proinflammatory properties. It has been identified as an activator of the contact phase (Morrissey, 2012); it is a potent activator of thrombin and coagulation FXI; and it accelerates factor V activation and abolishes the inhibitory effect of tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI).

FXII participates in in vivo thrombus formation, presumably by autoactivation on released polyphosphates from activated platelets, vessel wall, or bacteria; extracellular ribonucleic acid; aggregated proteins; or exposed collagen in the intravascular compartment in flowing blood (Smith et al, 2006; Kannemeier et al, 2007; Maas et al, 2008; Van der Meijden et al, 2009).

The hemostatic cofactors for the enzymatic reactions of the coagulation system may be considered to act as receptors for coagulation proteins. For example, high molecular weight kininogen serves as a receptor for prekallikrein binding to endothelial cells (Schmaier et al, 1988; Motta et al, 1998). Factors VIIIa and Va function as coreceptors of factors IXa and Xa, respectively (Miletich et al, 1978; Ahmad et al, 2000). All three of these proteins serve as cofactors that accelerate the reactions in which they participate. For example, high molecular weight kininogen accelerates the activation of prekallikrein and FXI by FXIIa. Factors VIIIa and Va accelerate FX and prothrombin activation, respectively, by factors IXa and Xa. Each cofactor also functions as a substrate of one or more enzymes that participate in their formation and inactivation. High molecular weight kininogen accordingly is a substrate of FXIIa, plasma kallikrein, and FXIa. Factors VIII and V are substrates of thrombin, and factors VIIIa and Va of activated protein C. Fibrinogen is a substrate of thrombin.

FVIII (antihemophilic factor) is a 330-kDa protein. When activated to FVIIIa, it is a cofactor for FIXa in the activation of FX. Its absence is associated with the most severe clinically recognized bleeding disorder, hemophilia A. FV is also a 330-kDa protein with homology to FVIII. When activated to FVa, it serves as a cofactor for FXa in the activation of FII (prothrombin) to thrombin. Fibrinogen is a 330-kDa protein that not only is the main substrate of thrombin (FIIa) but is also the principal adhesive molecule subserving platelet aggregation. When it is proteolyzed by thrombin, a fibrin monomer is formed. This monomer associates end-to-end and side-to-side to form a fibrin clot. The clot is stabilized by activated FXIII, a tissue transglutaminase that cross-links the strands of associating fibrin (Fig. 39-2). FXIIIa mediates the retention of red blood cells in venous thrombosis, enabling it to control clot size (Aleman et al, 2014). TF (47-kDa protein) is an essential cofactor for activated FVIIa. It is found in most tissues and cells. Upregulation of TF results in the formation of complexes with FVII that produce the initiation of hemostatic reactions. Last, high molecular weight kininogen (HK, also known as Fitzgerald factor or Williams factor) is a 120-kDa protein that acts as a cofactor for the activation of FXII, prekallikrein, and FXI.

Physiologic Protein Assemblies

Certain critical protein assemblies in hemostatic reactions accelerate these proteolytic events. The proteins of the coagulation system that are essential for hemostasis or control of bleeding were originally identified by observation of affected patients, and more recently through mouse knockout studies. Deficiencies in coagulation factors VIII and IX are the most prominent bleeding disorders that occur in patients who survive gestation and birth. Rare patients who have apparent congenital deficiencies of coagulation factors VII, X, V, and II usually do not have severe bleeding states. In contrast, murine models have demonstrated that mouse embryos containing complete genetic knockouts of factor VII, X, V, or II die of massive hemorrhage during gestation or at birth (Cui et al, 1996; Rosen et al, 1997; Sun et al, 1998; Dewerchin et al, 2000). This information suggests that the human patient who has a deficiency of factor VII, X, V, or II may have some factor, albeit less than 1%, to allow for a milder clinical phenotype than that seen in mouse models, or, alternatively, other compensatory mechanisms may be operative in the human patient. All of these proteins participate in two critically important assemblies that are essential for normal hemostasis: tenase and prothrombinase.

The tenase complex comprises the assembly of FIXa and thrombin-activated FVIIIa on phospholipid surfaces or cell membranes in an ordered structure, with FX to accelerate its activation to FXa. When all of these components are present, the rate of FX activation by FIXa is increased 1.4×10^8-fold over the rate of FX activation by FIXa alone. The prothrombinase complex in analogous fashion comprises the assembly of FXa and thrombin-activated FVa on phospholipid membranes or cell membranes in an ordered structure with FII (prothrombin) to accelerate its activation to FIIa (thrombin). When all of these components are present, the rate of FII activation by FXa is increased 1.7×10^8-fold over the rate of FII activation by FXa alone. Because these coagulation reactions occupy critical regulatory points within the physiologic hemostatic system, they are also

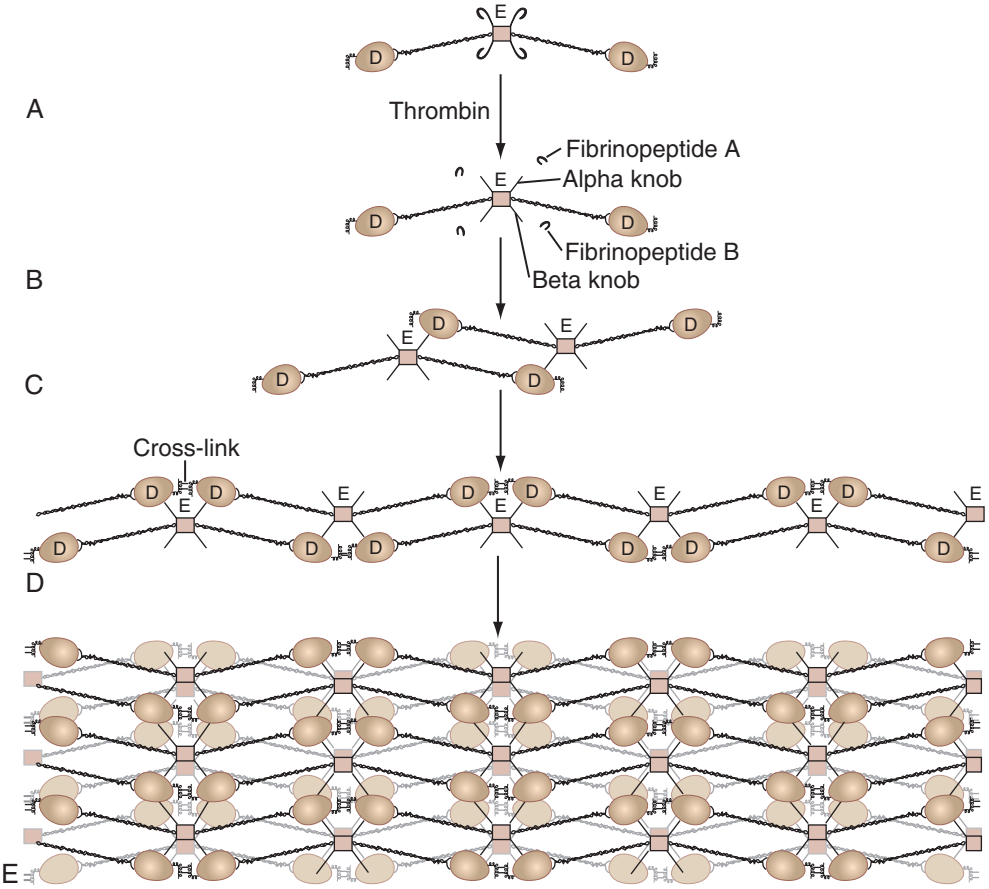


Figure 39-2 **Formation of a fibrin clot. A,** Schematic of fibrinogen. **B,** Thrombin proteolyzes fibrinopeptides A and B from fibrinogen to leave soluble fibrin monomer. Soluble fibrin monomer then associates side-to-side **(C)** and end-to-end (not shown, for clarity) to form fibrin polymers. **D,** Thrombin-activated factor XIII (factor XIIIa) covalently cross-links the fibrin polymers into an increasingly complex structure and an ultimately insoluble clot **(E).** Note that "E" corresponds to the central domain of the original fibrinogen molecule, and "D" to the peripheral domains. (Modified with permission from Doolittle RF: Fibrinogen and fibrin. *Sci Am* 245:126–135, 1981.)

the target of a number of anticoagulant agents for venous thrombosis that are currently in use or are being developed.

THE FORMATION OF FIBRIN AND THE FIBRINOLYTIC SYSTEM

The six peptide chains of the fibrinogen molecule are organized into a structure described as having a central E domain and two terminal D domains. When thrombin is formed, it cleaves fibrinopeptide A from the Aα chain and fibrinopeptide B from the Bβ chain of fibrinogen in the E domain region (Doolittle, 1981). The remainder of this thrombin-proteolyzed fibrinogen is called soluble fibrin monomer. Soluble fibrin monomers then assemble with end-to-end and side-to-side association to form a noncovalent fibrin polymer (see Fig. 39-2). Activated FXIII, a transglutaminase, cross-links fibrin monomeric subunits into an insoluble, cross-linked fibrin clot. When insoluble, cross-linked fibrin is made, a new linkage between the D domains of two adjacent fibrin monomers occurs, and in the process a neo-epitope of interaction is formed (see Fig. 39-2).

The fibrinolytic system consists of serine proteases able to counterbalance clot formation determining fibrin degradation and clot dissolution. In the final step of fibrinolysis, the circulating zymogen plasminogen is converted in its active form plasmin. Plasminogen is activated to plasmin mainly by endogenous tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) (Draxler & Medcalf, 2015). Two other plasminogen activators are single-chain urokinase plasminogen activator (ScuPA) and two-chain urokinase plasminogen activator (TcuPA). These activators are found in the endothelium, as well as in neutrophils and monocytes. The natural plasminogen activators tPA, ScuPA, and TcuPA convert zymogen plasminogen to the active enzyme plasmin (Fig. 39-3). tPA is produced constitutively, and ScuPA is increased in inflammatory states. Plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1) is the major inhibitor of tPA and TcuPA. α_2-Antiplasmin, a serine protease inhibitor (serpin), is the most potent and highly selective inhibitor of plasmin. However, the plasma concentration of α_2-antiplasmin, even if high

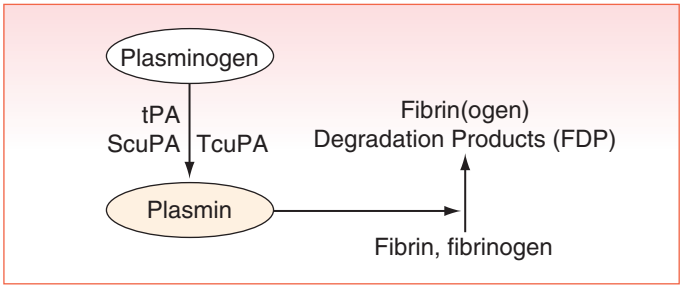


Figure 39-3 **Fibrinolysis.** Zymogen plasminogen is converted to plasmin by tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), single-chain urokinase plasminogen activator (ScuPA), and two-chain urokinase plasminogen activator (TcuPA). Formed plasmin degrades fibrinogen or fibrin to form fibrinogen or fibrin degradation products, respectively.

(approximately 1 mM), is only about half the plasma concentration of plasminogen. The fibrinolytic system is also regulated by thrombin activatable fibrinolysis inhibitor (TAFI) (Vercauteren et al, 2013). TAFI is a carboxypeptidase able to remove lysine residues from fibrin, so it indirectly controls plasmin by interfering with the binding of plasminogen and tPA to fibrin.

The binding of both plasminogen and tPA to fibrin is able to increase plasmin generation by two orders of magnitude. The active plasmin molecule is a potent protease, and it recognizes multiple substrates. Plasmin will degrade soluble fibrinogen to produce fibrinogen degradation products (Fig. 39-4, *A*). Plasmin cleaves fibrinogen into an X fragment of similar molecular mass by eliminating portions of the α-chain (Marder & Budzynski, 1974). Plasmin then cleaves the X fragment asymmetrically between the D and E domains to produce fragment Y. Plasmin further

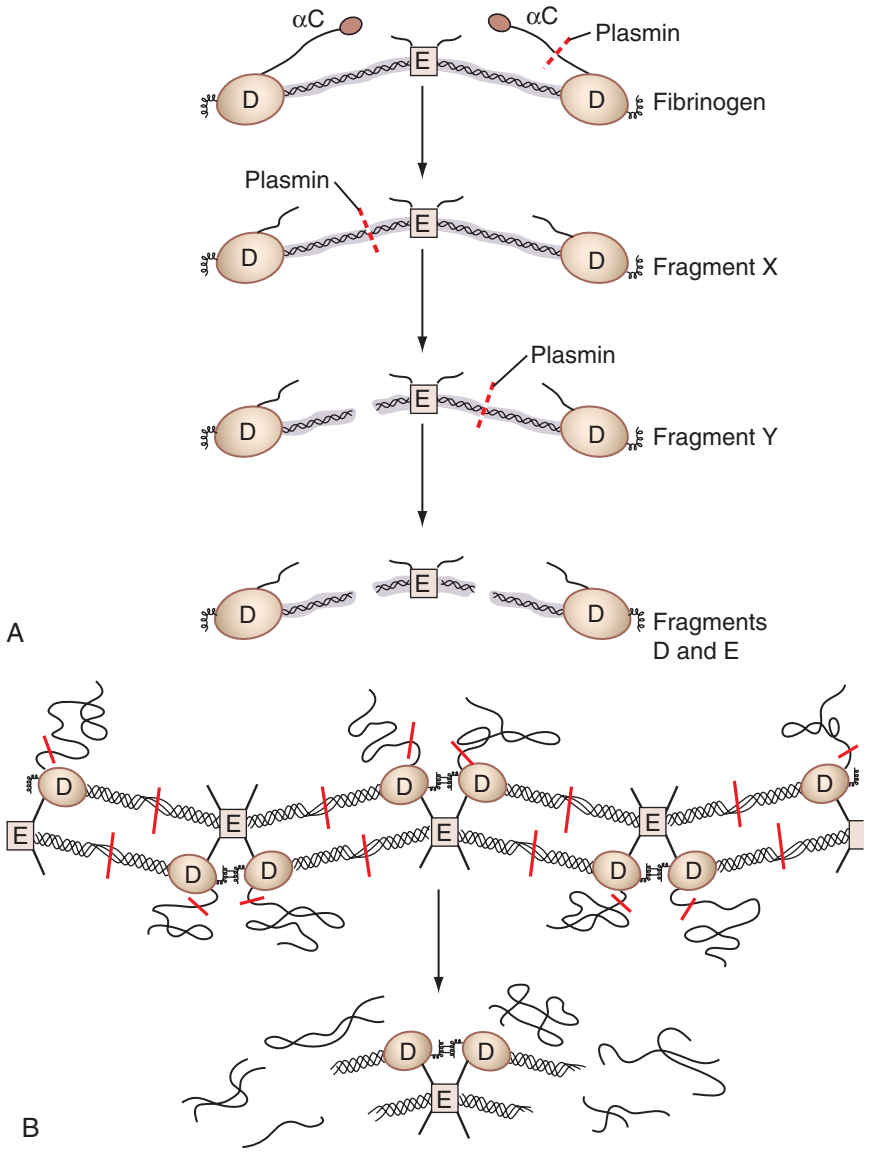


Figure 39-4 **A,** Plasmin-cleaved soluble fibrinogen or fibrin. When plasmin cleaves fibrinogen, initially small portions from the α-chain (αC) are removed to make Fragment X. Fragment X is then asymmetrically cleaved into Fragment D and Fragment Y. Fragment Y is further cleaved by plasmin into Fragments D and E. (Modified with permission from Greenberg CS, Lai T-S: Fibrin formation and stabilization. In Loscalzo J, Schafer AI, editors: *Thrombosis and hemorrhage*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2003, Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, p 83, Fig. 5-3, B.) **B,** Plasmin-cleaved insoluble, cross-linked fibrin. When insoluble, cross-linked fibrin is proteolyzed by plasmin, the neo-epitope between the D-domains is preserved, and the liberated fragment consists of the D-dimer together with an E domain. (Modified with permission from Doolittle RF: Fibrinogen and fibrin. *Sci Am* 245:126–135, 1981.)

degrades the Y fragment to produce soluble D and E domains that are called soluble fibrinogen degradation products or, in the case of fibrin digestion by plasmin, fibrin degradation products. Their presence indicates that plasmin has been formed. Plasmin will also degrade insoluble, crossed-linked fibrin (Fig. 39-4, *B*). When it does so, it liberates a D-D-dimer domain formed as a result of the neo-epitope between these two domains (see Fig. 39-4, *B*) (Marder et al, 1976). The presence of soluble D-dimer indicates that first thrombin has been formed, then clotting has occurred, then the clot has been cross-linked by FXIIIa, and finally plasmin has been formed and has cleaved the insoluble, cross-linked fibrin clot.

THE ANTICOAGULATION PROTEIN SYSTEMS

Coagulation is tightly regulated by natural anticoagulants and the fibrinolytic system to avoid thrombus formation and extension. Three major anticoagulant systems regulate the enzymes of the coagulation protein system to help to inhibit clot formation. These systems are the protein C/protein S system, the plasma serine protease inhibitor system, and TFPI, a Kunitz-type serine protease inhibitor. Antithrombin (antithrombin III) is the main serine protease inhibitor of coagulation enzymes of the plasma serine protease inhibitor system. Each of these systems plays a critical role in proper regulation of the coagulation system. Moreover, in murine deletion models, complete deficiencies of protein C, protein S, antithrombin, and TFPI are incompatible with survival of mammalian gestation, delivery, or life ex utero (Huang et al, 1997; Jalbert et al, 1998; Hayashi et al, 2006; Burstyn-Cohen et al, 2009).

Protein C/Protein S System

When activated, protein C, a 62-kDa vitamin K–dependent protein, is an enzyme that functions as an inhibitor. Protein C is activated by thrombin when bound to an endothelial cell protein called thrombomodulin. Its activation is increased when protein C binds to the endothelial protein C receptor (EPCR). The complex formed by APC+EPCR needs to dissociate in order to allow binding of APC with Protein S to inactivate factor Va and factor VIIIa (Esmon, 2006). Thrombomodulin forms a trimolecular complex with protein C and thrombin. Protein S, a 69-kDa vitamin K–dependent protein, is not an enzyme. It is a cofactor, or receptor, for activated protein C on cell membranes. It allows activated protein C to bind to cell surfaces in such a manner as to orient itself to inactivate factors Va and VIIIa. The enzyme uses this cofactor as a receptor to localize its activity to perform its inhibitory function. Plasma protein S is in equilibrium between the free form and a bound form that is complexed

to C4b-binding protein; only the free form functions as a cofactor for activated protein C. Activated protein C also binds to three receptors on endothelial cells: (1) endothelial cell protein C receptor to activate (2) protease-activated receptor (PAR)1 and (3) apolipoprotein E receptor 2 (ApoER2) (Esmon, 1999; Coughlin, 2000; Yang et al, 2009). Activation of PAR1 on endothelial cells may contribute to the anticoagulant function of activated protein C by liberating tPA. Activated protein C on endothelial cells also has an inflammatory effect via activation of sphingosine-1-phosphate receptor transactivation and activation of ApoER2 (Finigan et al, 2005; Yang et al, 2009). Thus activated protein C reduces thrombin formation, stimulates fibrinolysis, and initiates inflammation to reduce thrombosis risk.

Antithrombin

This serpin is a 58-kDa protein that inhibits each of the following hemostatic enzymes: IIa, Xa, VIIa, IXa, XIa, kallikrein, and XIIa. It exerts its anticoagulant effect primarily by inhibiting factors IIa and Xa (see Fig. 39-5). Antithrombin has two functional sites: the heparin binding site (at the amino terminus of the protein) and the reactive site (Arg329-Ser394). The ability of antithrombin to function as an inhibitor of coagulation protein enzymes is potentiated by endogenous and exogenous heparins. In fact, it is the presence of antithrombin that gives heparin its anticoagulant properties. In the presence of heparins, antithrombin undergoes a conformational change that increases from 1000-fold to 4000-fold its inhibitor effect on factor IIa (Perry, 1994). Trace amounts of circulating TF or TF transiently exposed by damaged vessels contributes to FVIIa inactivation by antithrombin (Vatsyayan et al, 2014).

In addition to antithrombin, other serpins regulate the enzymes of the hemostatic and inflammatory systems. Heparin cofactor II is a serpin that specifically inhibits thrombin in the presence of dermatan sulfate. Protein Z inhibitor is a serpin that specifically inhibits factor Xa in the presence of its cofactor protein Z—a vitamin K–dependent protein. C1 inhibitor (C1 esterase inhibitor) is the most potent inhibitor of FXIIa, kallikrein, and FXIa in plasma. Its main function is to regulate the amount of free bradykinin in the intravascular compartment and reduce inflammatory events (Han et al, 2002; Schmaier, 2002; Maas et al, 2008). The absence of C1 inhibitor is the causative factor for types I and II hereditary angioedema, a disorder associated with excessive bradykinin delivered to tissues.

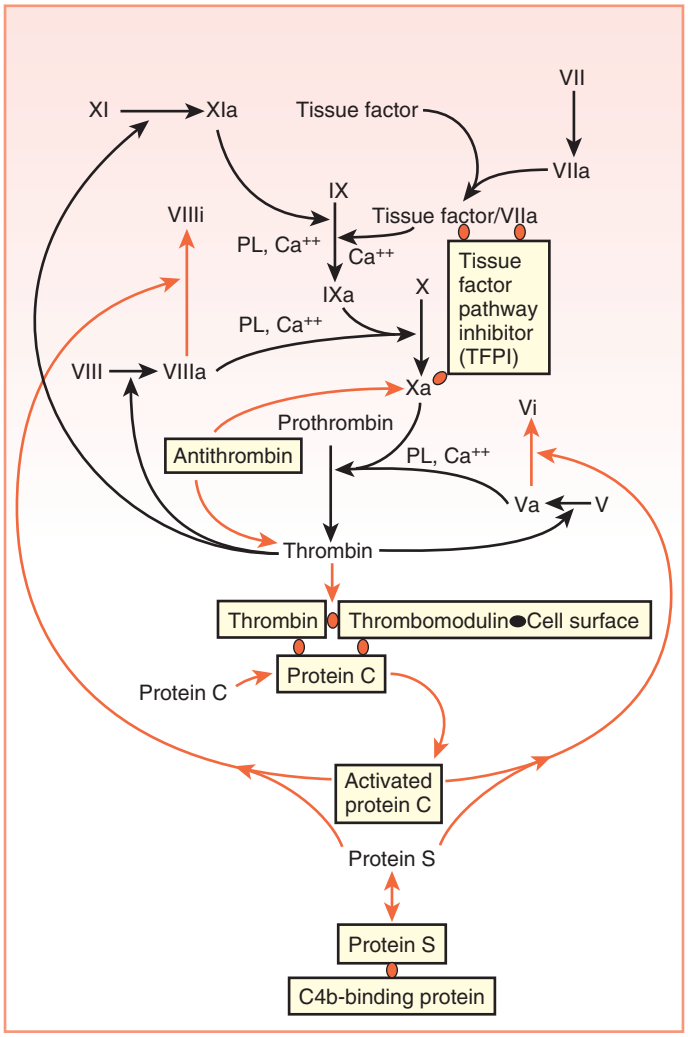


Figure 39-5 Natural inhibitors of coagulation: antithrombin (AT); components of the protein C pathway (thrombomodulin, protein C, protein S); and tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI). Three major anticoagulant systems are recognized. Antithrombin inhibits factor Xa and thrombin to prevent thrombosis. It is important to note that antithrombin inhibits every enzymatic form of blood coagulation serine proteases (factor XIIa, plasma kallikrein, factor XIa, factor IXa, and factor VIIa), even though this is not indicated in the figure for readability purposes. The protein C system requires that this zymogen is activated to activated protein C by thrombin when bound to the endothelial cell membrane protein thrombomodulin. Protein S is a cofactor for activated protein C to inactivate factors Va and VIIIa. C4b-binding protein regulates protein S activity. TFPI makes a quaternary complex with tissue factor/factor VIIa and factor Xa to inhibit both enzymes.

Tissue Factor Pathway Inhibitor

In addition to the serpins, there is the Kunitz-type serine protease inhibitor, TFPI (Crawley & Lane, 2008). TFPI is the most potent inhibitor of the FVIIa–tissue factor complex. Under physiologic conditions, TFPI exerts its inhibitory effects by forming a quaternary complex with FVIIa, TF, and FXa (see Fig. 39-5). It is noteworthy that the murine TFPI knockout is embryonically lethal (Jalbert et al, 1998). TFPI is produced by microvascular endothelium, and it seems mainly associated to glycosaminoglycans on the endothelial wall. Only approximately 20% of TFPI circulates in plasma associated with lipoproteins (Caplice et al, 2001). Another family of Kunitz-type serine protease inhibitors, the amyloid β-protein precursor (AβPP) and related members, is present in platelets and brain and regulates factors XIa, IXa, Xa, VIIa/TF, and plasmin (Van Nostrand et al, 1990; Schmaier et al, 1993; 1995; Mahdi et al, 1995; 2000). This inhibitor does not inhibit thrombin. The exact function of this inhibitor is not completely known, but it is believed to be a cerebral anticoagulant (Del Zoppo, 2009). AβPP and amyloid precursor–like/protein 2 gene–deleted mice survive gestation but have an accelerated rate of thrombosis in a carotid artery thrombosis model (Xu et al, 2009).

Prostacyclins and Nitric Oxide and Thrombospondin-5

In physiologic conditions, endothelial cells (ECs) produce vasoactive hormones able to control the primary phase of hemostasis. ECs express the cyclooxygenase-2 enzyme that produces prostacyclins (PGI_2) from arachidonic acid (Mitchell et al, 2008). PGI_2 is a vasodilator, and it inhibits platelet aggregation. The actions of prostacyclins are mediated by cell membrane prostacyclin (IP) receptors and intracellular peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARβ and γ). Endothelial cells also express the nitric oxide synthase enzyme (eNOS, NOS3), and they release nitric oxide (NO) derived from L-arginine. NO is a potent vasodilator, and it also inhibits platelet adhesion and aggregation. NO activates guanylate cyclase and cGMP. Activated platelets adhering to collagen seem also able to produce NO under shear flow (Cozzi et al, 2015), thus controlling platelet adhesion and vasoconstriction directly at the sites of vessel damage. *KLKB1*$^{-/-}$ (prekallikrein deficient) and *Bdkrb2*$^{-/-}$ (bradykinin B2 receptor knockout) mice have delayed thrombosis due to elevated prostacyclin (Stavrou et al, 2015; Shariat-Madar et al, 2006) and NO (Shariat-Madar et al, 2006), respectively.

Thrombospondin-5, also known as cartilage oligomeric matrix protein (COMP), is an extracellular protein able to control vascular tone. COMP is released by a variety of cartilage and muscle tissues and also activated platelets. COMP inhibits thrombin and acts as a natural anticoagulant in mice (Liang et al, 2015). It determines a dose-dependent prolongation of thrombin time.

CURRENT HYPOTHESIS FOR INITIATION OF THE HEMOSTATIC SYSTEM

More proteins participate in coagulation reactions in vitro than are critical for hemostatic reactions in vivo. The original coagulation cascade waterfall hypothesis initiated by FXII has been replaced by one whereby TF and FVIIa are initiators (Gailiani & Broze, 1991). TF is ubiquitous throughout the body, although it is rich in brain, lung, and placenta. Its expression is upregulated after injury. Regulation of the expression of TF is a major control mechanism for the initiation of hemostasis. Some investigators believe that a circulating form of TF is also present. TF is not fully active on intact cells; it becomes able to activate coagulation when cell membrane properties are modified. This process is called "decryption" of "encrypted" TF, and it is still not completely understood. Different mechanisms of TF

decryption have been proposed: exposition of phosphatidylserine, dimerization of TF, and oxidation of a specific disulfide bond in TF (Smith et al, 2015). In conditions where vessel wall injury is limited to endothelial activation, blood-borne TF has been characterized on microparticles released by leukocytes and involved in the initiation of coagulation (Furie & Furie, 2005). Activated macrophages have been shown to express TF on their cell membrane and microparticles involved in physiologic hemostasis and thrombosis (Rak, 2014). Last, as indicated above, there is a developing notion that endothelial cell TF is the initial nidus that leads to hemostasis and thrombosis (Furie, 2009; Ivanciu et al, 2014).

The FVIIa–TF complex activates FIX, leading in turn to FX activation. It must be noted that at the concentrations of factors ordinarily present in the body, VIIa/TF does not directly activate appreciable amounts of FX because of the presence of TFPI—a point emphasized diagrammatically in Figure 39-1 by the graying of this reaction. Once FX has been activated to FXa, this Xa in turn contributes to the activation of thrombin from prothrombin. Thrombin then proteolyzes fibrinogen to form fibrin. Although TF-dependent coagulation reactions are rapidly inhibited by TFPI, if the stimulus for thrombin formation is sufficiently strong, coagulation is maintained through the activation of FXI by thrombin (Meijers et al, 2000). Activation of FXI to FXIa results in increased activation of FIX and eventually increased formation of thrombin. Further modulation of hemostatic balance in the direction of clot formation is exerted by TAFI, the thrombin-activatable fibrinolysis inhibitor (also known as carboxypeptidase U). Among its actions, TAFI cleaves C-terminal lysine residues from fibrin, thereby decreasing the binding of plasminogen to the clot and diminishing clot lysis (Leurs et al, 2005).

CLINICAL LABORATORY HEMOSTASIS

The clinical approach to a bleeding patient requires an accurate diagnostic workup to determine the cause of the problem. The underlying cause in almost all cases will derive from a defect or deficiency in a plasma protein, a defect in platelet number or function, or a defect in adhesive interactions between platelets and the vessel wall.

Any coagulation protein defect can be a true protein deficiency, an inhibitor to the active site of the protein, an abnormal protein that cannot participate in its physiologic function(s), or an apparent deficiency that arises as the result of enhanced clearance of protein. In general, inhibitors to a coagulation protein are immunoglobulins, although hypergammaglobulinemic states or abnormal production of endogenous heparin, fibronectin, or cryoglobulins as acquired inhibitors to coagulation proteins have also been reported. Abnormal proteins that are present but do not function normally occur as a result of missense or deletion mutations, or translocations of DNA. Last, enhanced clearance of coagulation proteins usually occurs as a result of antigen–antibody complex formation. Resultant increased clearance of the protein gives the appearance of a deficiency, but the real mechanism is enhanced clearance.

Typical clinical presentations of bleeding disorders are shown in Table 39-2. In general, hemarthrosis and spontaneous soft tissue and intramuscular hemorrhage characterize plasma protein defects such as hemophilia A and B (factors VIII and IX deficiency). Soft tissue petechiae, purpura, or ecchymosis characterizes von Willebrand disease or disorders of platelet number or function. However, at times, it is difficult to distinguish the potential mechanism for bleeding. Thus the clinical laboratory is essential for definitive diagnosis of a bleeding disorder in the patient.

TABLE 39-2
Patterns of Clinical Bleeding in Disorders of Hemostasis

Characteristics	Primary Hemostasis (Platelet/Vascular Problem)	Secondary Hemostasis (Coagulation Factor Problem)
Onset	Spontaneous, immediate after trauma	Delayed after trauma
Sites	Skin, mucous membranes	Deep tissues
Form	Petechiae, ecchymosis	Hematomas
Mucous membrane	Common (nasal, oral, gastrointestinal, genitourinary)	Less common
Other sites	Rare	Joint, muscle, central nervous system, retroperitoneal space
Clinical examples	Thrombocytopenia, platelet defects, von Willebrand disease, scurvy	Factor deficiency, liver disease, acquired inhibitors

PHYSIOLOGIC HEMOSTASIS VERSUS CLINICAL ASSAYS

In the practice of clinical hemostasis, a dichotomy is seen between physiologic hemostasis and assays used in the clinical laboratory to recognize coagulation protein defects. As indicated previously in Figure 39-1, physiologic hemostasis is initiated by an increase in the formation of TF–FVIIa complexes. At present, no good assays are available in the clinical laboratory to assess this early event specifically. Instead, the relatively late event of actual clot formation is monitored. The two assays most commonly used to examine the coagulation system are (1) the activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT), induced by surface (contact) activation of the system, and (2) the prothrombin time (PT), induced by the addition of excess tissue factor. Contact activation of the coagulation system occurs because FXII in the presence of artificial, negatively charged particles in the reagent supports FXII autoactivation, which in turn initiates the cascade of proteolytic reactions of the coagulation system. As is discussed later, this test measures more proteins than those necessary for hemostasis. With the PT test, the addition of excess TF creates a very unphysiologic change in the normal stoichiometric relationships of factors, thereby allowing FVIIa to overcome the inhibitory effect of TFPI and favoring direct activation of FX to FXa. Both assays are extremely useful for assessing the integrity of the blood coagulation system and for recognizing potential bleeding problems in a patient (see later), and they are also referred as "point of care" tests (Perry et al, 2010) because they can be performed using devices located at or near the patient (home, operating rooms).

SCREENING TESTS FOR COAGULATION DISORDERS

When a patient with a bleeding problem is addressed in the clinical laboratory, several screening tests are used to classify and diagnose the basis of this disorder. The term *primary hemostasis* refers to platelet reactivity at the site of vessel injury; this topic is covered in Chapter 40. The platelet count is an example of a screening assay for primary hemostasis. This section describes assays for what has been called *secondary hemostasis*—that is, the coagulation of plasma. However, more recent studies employing animal model systems suggest the need for caution in accepting this distinction too literally—for example, in vivo visualization studies of arterial thrombus formation in at least some models suggest that platelet accumulation and fibrin generation may actually occur simultaneously or after initial thrombus formation on the vessel wall (Falati et al, 2002; Furie, 2009; Ivanciu et al, 2014). Regardless of the true order of events occurring in vivo, however, when performed simultaneously on a sample of plasma, these coagulation assays identify almost all of the diagnostic categories for a coagulopathy. The 50-year-old cascade hypothesis for hemostasis still has merit in explaining the mechanism(s) for clot formation seen in the screening tests for coagulation reactions. In this hypothesis, coagulation proteins are classified as members of the so-called intrinsic system, extrinsic system, or common pathway (Fig. 39-6). This approach allows for a practical differential diagnosis of which protein(s) may be affected, based on the results of a series of screening tests. The specific coagulation factors involved in each test are shown schematically in Figure 39-6. Methodologic aspects of these tests (Fig. 39-7) are discussed in the following paragraphs. Accurate coagulation testing also requires appropriate blood sample collection, transport, and processing according to established guidelines.

Activated Partial Thromboplastin Time

To perform this common coagulation assay (Fig. 39-7, *A*), a mixture of a negatively charged surface, phospholipid, and anticoagulated patient plasma is incubated for several minutes. The recommended anticoagulant is 3.2 g% sodium citrate because less variation is seen in blood specimens from normal patients and those on anticoagulants collected in this concentration of anticoagulant (Adcock et al, 1997; 1998). Sodium citrate is a reversible chelator of calcium that prevents coagulation protein activation. When whole blood is collected, the ratio of anticoagulant to whole blood is 1 part anticoagulant to 9 parts whole blood. After incubation of patient plasma with reagent for a prescribed time, depending on the assay, the sample is recalcified with excess calcium chloride, and the time required for clot formation is measured. The APTT assesses the coagulation proteins of the so-called intrinsic system and common pathways (see later).

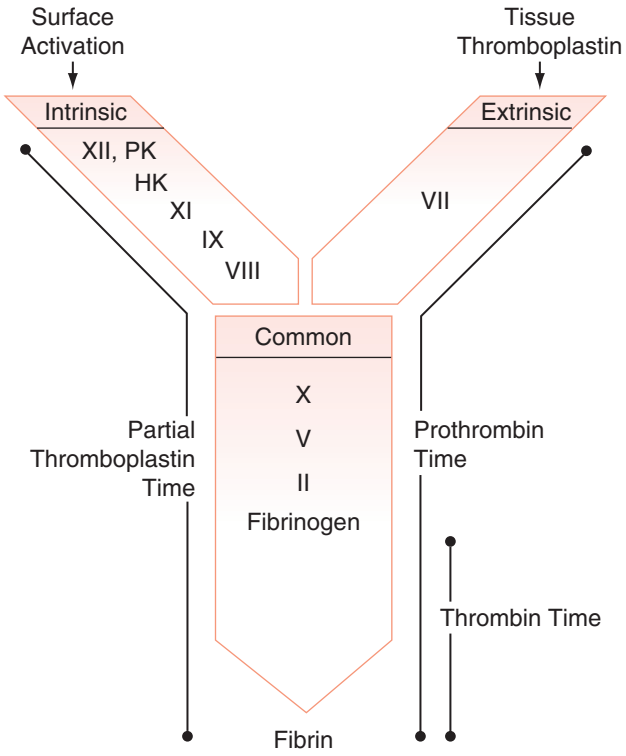


Figure 39-6 Organization of the coagulation system based on current assays. The intrinsic coagulation system consists of the protein factors XII, XI, IX, and VIII and prekallikrein (PK) and high molecular weight kininogen (HK). The extrinsic coagulation system consists of tissue factor (tissue thromboplastin) and factor VII. The common pathway of the coagulation system consists of factors X, V, and II, and fibrinogen (I).

This assay is commonly referred to as the partial thromboplastin time (PTT), but it is really an "activated" PTT in that its reagents contain a negatively charged surface that accelerates the rate of the reaction (Proctor & Rapaport, 1961).

Prothrombin Time

To perform this common coagulation assay (Fig. 39-7, *B*), tissue thromboplastin (recombinant human or isolated animal tissue factor) and patient plasma are incubated for several minutes, after which the citrated plasma mixture is recalcified by the addition of excess $CaCl_2$, and the time required for clot formation is measured. The PT assesses the coagulation proteins of the so-called extrinsic system and common pathway (see later) (Quick et al, 1935). Tissue thromboplastin traditionally has been a crude preparation of animal brain TF. Presently, recombinant TF is used in the preparation of several commercial PT reagents. In general, the range of prolongation of time of an abnormal PT increases when recombinant TF is used. This fact makes for a more sensitive assay. The PT serves as the basis for the international normalized ratio (INR) value used to monitor anticoagulation with warfarin or other vitamin-antagonists. As discussed in Chapter 42, the INR is the ratio of patient PT divided by geometric mean normal PT for the local laboratory (based on a population of normal individuals assessed with identical sample collection, reagents, and machines), raised to the power of the international sensitivity index (ISI). Although the INR is clearly the most appropriate measure to use in conjunction with oral anticoagulant monitoring, for hemostatic evaluation of the nonwarfarinized patient, actual PT values in seconds may be used, referencing the laboratory's locally established reference interval for the PT test.

Thrombin Time

To perform the thrombin time (also referred to as thrombin clotting time), purified exogenous thrombin is added to plasma to determine the time to clot formation (Fig. 39-7, *C*). It is a direct measure of fibrinogen function and may be used to ascertain if there is a defect in fibrinogen function. The thrombin time will be prolonged in hypofibrinogenemic states, if an abnormal protein fibrinogen (dysfibrinogenemia) is present, or if a thrombin inhibitor (heparin, direct thrombin inhibitors, and heparin-like compounds) is present in the plasma sample.

ASSAYS USED IN CLINICAL COAGULATION TESTING

Clinical coagulation testing is based on functional assays that examine the rate of clot formation. In these assays, a sequence of proteolytic reactions takes place, leading to thrombin formation and its proteolysis of fibrinogen (Mann, 2003). Proteolysis of fibrinogen results in clot formation, precipitation of soluble proteins, which is detected by increased impedance or turbidity, or decreased optical clarity, based on the instrumentation used to measure the result. Any defect along the pathway to clot formation will give an abnormal final result. Furthermore, because a series of reactions need to take place for final clot formation to occur, any defect below a specific factor will lead to an abnormal result in measuring that factor. For example, a high-titer inhibitor of FVIII will produce an abnormal FXI assay. Similarly, deficient or abnormal fibrinogen will affect the results of all clotting tests.

All coagulation factors of the intrinsic system (XII, prekallikrein, high molecular weight kininogen, XI, IX, and VIII) are measured in assays using the APTT as its platform. These specific factor assays became readily available because of the recognition of patients and the commercial availability of specific factor-deficient plasmas that serve as substrate. For example, an FVIII assay is a mixture of APTT reagent, FVIII-deficient plasma, and test (unknown) plasma from the patient (Landell et al, 1953). After incubation for a few minutes, the time to clot is initiated by the addition of calcium chloride. FVII, together with coagulation factors of the common pathway (X, V, II and fibrinogen), is usually measured by assays using the PT as the platform. For example, an FX assay is a mixture of PT reagent that contains TF (thromboplastin), FX-deficient plasma, and test or patient (unknown) plasma. After incubation for a few minutes, time to clot is initiated by the addition of calcium chloride. The amount of factor present in a given patient sample is determined by comparing the patient sample against a standard curve made with plasma samples containing varying amounts of the specific factor to be assayed mixed with factor-deficient plasma, as well as the appropriate APTT or PT reagent for the assay.

Coagulation-based assays are sensitive and specific. They are much simpler to perform than antigen assays for each of the coagulation proteins. These assays provide information on the functional presence of the coagulation protein. Additional coagulant-based assays such as thrombin time (see earlier) and reptilase time (see later) specifically examine the integrity of fibrinogen to liberate its fibrinopeptides, resulting in fibrin clot formation. When establishing a clinically useful thrombin time, it is important to reduce the thrombin concentration to about 1 to 2 NIH U/mL (≈8 to 16 nM human α-thrombin at 3000 U/mg specific activity) so the time of a normal assay is about 20 seconds. Such an assay will allow for reproducibility and sufficient sensitivity to detect subtle protein abnormalities. Coagulation-based assays examine the function of the protein; antigen assays establish the presence of the proteins; and combined, the two assays characterize any protein with reduced function but with normal antigen. A dysfunctional protein has reduced protein function with normal levels of antigen. Such a situation arises commonly when fibrinogen is examined. The most useful means to determine whether fibrinogen is abnormal (i.e., dysfibrinogenemia) is to measure clottable fibrinogen and fibrinogen antigen. If fibrinogen clottability is less than 90% of the amount of fibrinogen antigen present, this finding would suggest that the protein produced is abnormal in some way.

Chromogenic assays are used to measure certain enzymes (plasmin, activated protein C) and various plasma protease inhibitors (antithrombin, C1 inhibitor, α_2-antiplasmin, PAI, tPA). Neutralizing the enzymatic activity of FXa or thrombin is a useful way to assay for the level of anticoagulants that inhibit FXa or thrombin (see Chapter 42). Such assays can be used to measure the therapeutic levels of unfractionated heparin, low molecular weight heparin, fondaparinux, rivaroxaban, and apixaban (these last two molecules do not require routine monitoring clinically). An assay for any future parenteral or oral FXa or thrombin inhibitor is developed by using the agent's ability to neutralize its enzymatic activity. Last, a direct chromogenic assay for FXa has been useful in assessing the degree of anticoagulation for the occasional patient on warfarin who has a lupus anticoagulant (see Chapter 41) of sufficient potency to interfere not only with the APTT but with the PT as well.

PRACTICAL APPROACH TO PATIENTS WITH COAGULATION DISORDERS

Screening tests for coagulation proteins allow identification of qualitative and quantitative abnormalities of coagulation proteins (Table 39-3; see

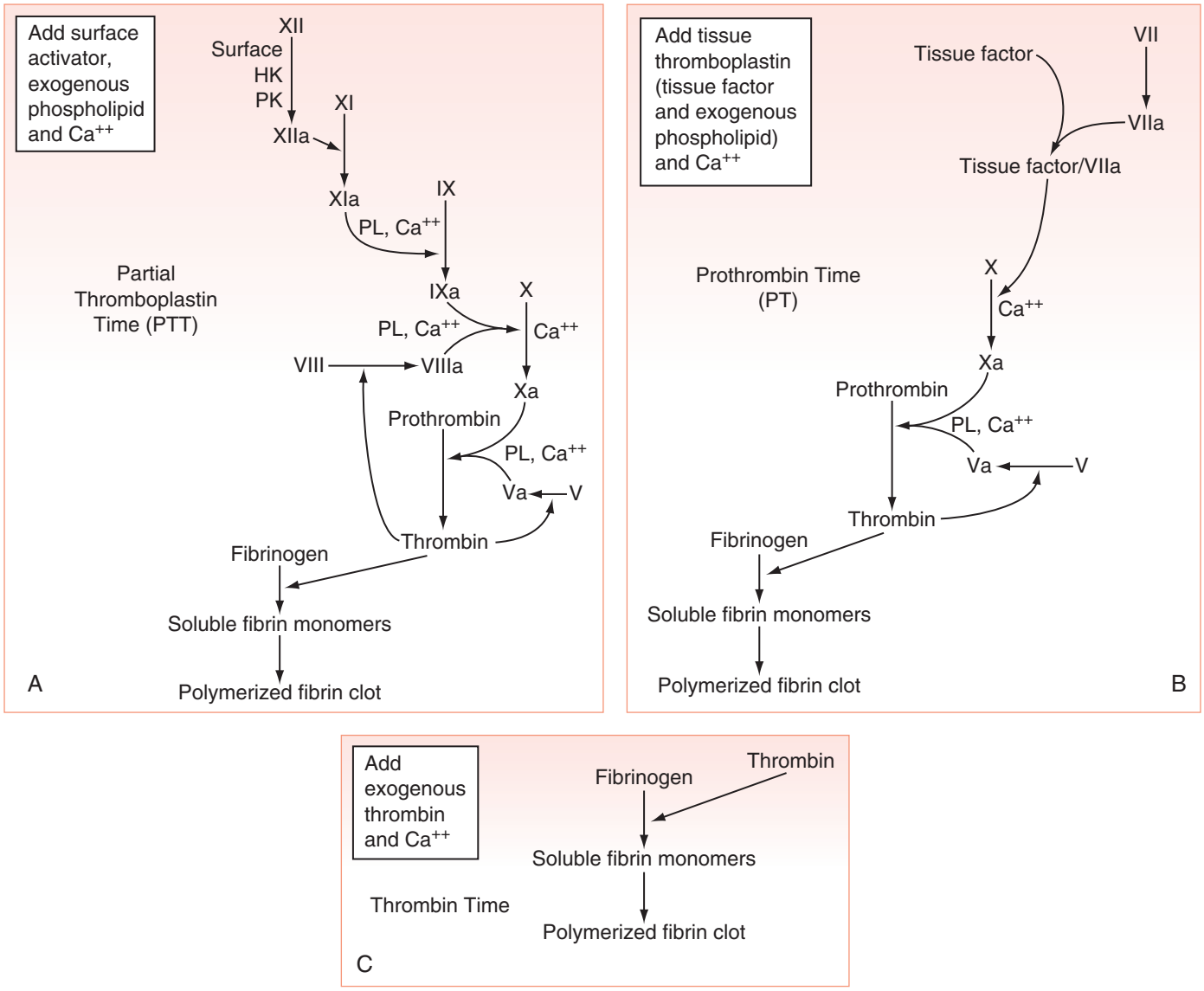


Figure 39-7 **Coagulation screening tests. A,** Activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT, "PTT" on the figure) requires the presence of every protein except tissue factor and factor VII. **B,** Prothrombin time (PT) requires tissue factor and factors VII, X, V, and II and fibrinogen. **C,** In the thrombin time (or thrombin clotting time), exogenous thrombin is added to plasma to proteolyze (clot) fibrinogen. The endpoint in each of these tests is the number of seconds until detection of a clot, following addition of the indicated reagents to citrated platelet-free patient plasma. Because virtually all measuring systems employed detect the formation of a polymerized fibrin clot, whether or not any cross-linking of fibrin occurs, none of these tests will provide information with respect to factor XIIIa activity.

Fig. 39-6). With the APTT, FXII autoactivation on an artificial, negatively charged surface initiates the sequence of reactions of the coagulation cascade. The APTT (labeled "PTT" in the figure) measures proteins of the intrinsic coagulation system (FXII, prekallikrein, high molecular weight kininogen, FXI, FIX, and FVIII) and proteins of the common pathway (factors X, V, II, and fibrinogen) (see Fig. 39-7, *A*). It is important to realize that a coagulation factor has to be decreased to different levels before screening assays are sensitive and show an abnormality. For example, most commercial APTT reagents will detect a decrease in FVIII when the level of the protein is down to 35% to 45% of normal (i.e., 0.35 to 0.45 U/mL). In contrast, FXII and high molecular weight kininogen at a level of 10% to 15% may not prolong an otherwise normal APTT. When evaluating new lots of coagulation reagents, it is important to determine their level of sensitivity to detect coagulation protein deficiencies. Additionally, very high levels of FVIII can mask a defect in other coagulation factors. High levels of FVIII can also mask a low protein C level in a clot-based activated protein C assay.

The PT measures the extrinsic coagulation pathway of coagulation, which consists of activated FVII (FVIIa) and TF and proteins of the common pathway (factors X, V, II, and fibrinogen) (see Fig. 39-7, *B*). FVII levels below 35% to 40% will begin to be detected by prolongation of the PT. The thrombin time measures only the ability of exogenous thrombin to proteolyze (clot) fibrinogen (see Fig. 39-7, *C*). It is used to characterize fibrinogen function.

With knowledge of what each test measures, the following approach can be used to evaluate bleeding risk among patients who have one or more of these assays prolonged (see Table 39-3 and Fig. 39-6). For example, if a patient has an isolated prolonged APTT, determination of the patient's risk to bleed can begin with the addition of some historical information. If isolated prolongation of the APTT in a male patient is associated with bleeding, then the differential diagnosis in decreasing likelihood of frequency is FVIII, FIX, or FXI deficiency. These disorders are discussed in the next section. If the APTT alone is prolonged and there is no history of bleeding, the most common cause is a lupus anticoagulant. The specific proteins of the so-called intrinsic coagulation system associated with a prolonged APTT but no bleeding history include, in decreasing frequency, FXII, prekallikrein, and high molecular weight kininogen. Knowing about these latter three proteins is essential in evaluating a prolonged APTT even though the patient is not at bleeding risk, so patients neither get unnecessary plasma replacement therapy nor experience unnecessary delays in scheduled surgical procedures.

Alternatively, if the patient has an isolated PT prolongation that is associated with bleeding, this finding usually indicates partial FVII deficiency. Of note, FVII Padua (a substitution of glutamine for arginine at

TABLE 39-3
Differential Diagnosis of Abnormal Coagulation Screening Tests

Abnormal Activated Partial Thromboplastin Time (APTT) Alone
Associated with bleeding: VIII, IX, and XI defects
Not associated with bleeding: XII, prekallikrein (PK), high molecular weight kininogen, lupus anticoagulants
Abnormal Prothrombin Time (PT) Alone
Factor VII defects
Combined Abnormal APTT and PT
Medical conditions: Anticoagulants, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), liver disease, vitamin K deficiency, massive transfusion
Rarely dysfibrinogenemia; factor X, V, and II defects

residue 304) renders the human FVII molecule less activatable in the presence of some nonhuman forms of TF (Girolami et al, 1979; Pollak et al, 2006). Individuals who may not even have a true bleeding disorder typically come to attention owing to a long PT performed with nonhuman TF. FVII assayed using this same source of TF may also appear to be decreased. Repeat assays employing recombinant human TF should provide more normal results for these tests. At times, defects in some common pathway proteins (fibrinogen, factors II, V, and X) may first produce an isolated PT prolongation, although, if severe, these latter protein defects will lead to prolongations of the PT and APTT. This arises because when a sensitive TF is used in the assay, a subtle abnormality in the common pathway proteins is first observed in PT-based assays. Usually, however, defects in the common pathway proteins (fibrinogen, factors II, V, X) result in prolonged PT and APTT. When approaching a patient's laboratory results of prolonged PT and APTT, it is important not simply to consider the specific proteins mentioned earlier but also to address the differential diagnosis from general medical states such as anticoagulation therapy, disseminated intravascular coagulation, liver disease, vitamin K deficiency, and massive transfusion. Each of these entities is described later in the section on acquired bleeding disorders.

Routine blood coagulation and platelet screening tests cannot recognize the diagnosis of a few rare bleeding disorders. In order of frequency, these entities include FXIII defects, α_2-antiplasmin defects, PAI-1 defects, and α_1-antitrypsin$_{\text{PITTSBURGH}}$ (Aoki et al, 1980; Owen et al, 1983; Fay et al, 1992; Anwar & Miloszewski, 1999; Hua et al, 2009). FXIII deficiency is discussed below. α_2-Antiplasmin defects and PAI-1 defects, both congenital and acquired (see later), produce hyperfibrinolytic states as a result of reduced inhibition of plasmin, tPA, or urokinase. α_1-Antitrypsin$_{\text{PITTSBURGH}}$ is a rare entity and is a bleeding disorder that may result from a mutation in antitrypsin that leads to potent thrombin inhibition, thereby preventing any clot from forming.

When presented with a prolonged coagulation assay, the differential diagnosis is often between a true deficiency and inhibition of a specific coagulation protein. Two approaches can be used to obtain a specific diagnosis. The first approach consists of performing a mixing study in which the plasma under study is mixed in a 1:1 ratio with pooled normal plasma and the abnormal test is repeated. The rationale of the 1:1 mixing is based on two principles. The first states that coagulation factors determine normal clotting test results when 50% activity is present, so mixing 1:1 with normal plasma will correct the test results if there is a factor deficiency. The second states that antibodies interfering with clotting factors usually continue to exert their action after a 1:1 dilution, so if the test does not correct after mixing, an inhibitor can be suspected and the following dilutions can be performed. Some types of inhibitors to coagulation factors show a delayed reactivity. Immediately after 1:1 mixing, they can correct the coagulation test, but they can determine abnormal results after 1 or 2 hours of incubation at 37°C.

In the second approach to abnormal coagulation tests, the specific defect of a prolonged coagulation assay can be identified by performing all relevant coagulation factor assays. If any one test is decreased, then a specific coagulation factor inhibitor assay can be performed for that factor. One general approach to a specific inhibitor study can be employed by mixing various ratios of patient plasma to normal plasma (e.g., 1:1, 2:1, 4:1, 1:2, 1:4), incubating the samples for 2 hours at 37°C and assaying the level of the specific factor in the mixture. Simultaneously, patient plasma and normal plasma used in the mixing study are also incubated under the same conditions. At the time of assay, the percentages of activity of the specific factor under study in normal plasma, patient plasma, and each of the mixtures are obtained. If the observed value at any given ratio of patient plasma to control plasma is less than the calculated expected value of mixing the two plasmas at various ratios (e.g., 1:1, 2:1, 1:2), then one can conclude that an inhibitor is present in patient plasma that transfers to the normal plasma sample. For example, if 100% activity (1 U/mL) of the factor being studied is observed in an undiluted sample, then a 1:1 dilution of normal plasma with factor-deficient plasma should yield a level of about 50% activity. If the same normal plasma was incubated with patient plasma at a 1:1 ratio, and the value came back as 32% activity, one should conclude that there is something in patient plasma that transfers and inhibits the factor's activity in normal plasma (i.e., the definition of an inhibitor). This approach serves as a general, nonquantitative method of assessing a coagulation factor inhibitor. In the section on hereditary coagulation protein defects (later), a specifically quantitative method for determining inhibitors to FVIII is presented; this approach is applicable to any factor that is measured by coagulant assay.

A second way to approach the problem of determining a specific coagulation factor defect is to begin with a mixing test of patient and normal plasma. Mixing studies based on the PT or APTT are interpreted with knowledge of the fact that a 50% level of any coagulation factor alone gives normal PT and APTT values. The reason that 50% of any coagulation factor will have normal PT and APTT values is that both of these screening assays have hyperbolic sensitivity curves (i.e., a decrease in any one factor does not lead to linear prolongation of either of these two assays). Only with values well below 50% will the PT and APTT start to be prolonged. As indicated earlier, the sensitivity of the PT and APTT to prolongation with lowering of clotting factors varies as to the factor and the reagent made by the manufacturer. Thus if patient plasma is mixed 1:1 with normal plasma, the PT or APTT should be normal if no inhibitory factor was present in the patient plasma. If, however, the mixture does not correct to within normal values, one can consider that something in patient plasma interferes with function of the protein in normal plasma.

How one does screening assays for inhibitors has been somewhat subjective for individual laboratories; this individual laboratory variability in performance of the assay is the main problem when a screening inhibitor assay is used as the first step in patient disease diagnosis. Almost no studies have provided evidence-based laboratory medicine on how to proceed with inhibitor screening studies. Some approaches to the use of mixing studies have been developed for testing for lupus anticoagulants, which has its own peculiar aspects (Brandt et al, 1995a, 1995b). Critical issues in performing mixing studies include the ratio of patient plasma to normal plasma (1:1 to 4:1), the time of incubation from mixing to assay (immediate to 2 hours), and the assays to be used to measure the result (PT, APTT). One investigation examined the sensitivity and specificity of mixing studies in assessing factor deficiencies and anticoagulants (Chang et al, 2002). In this study, patient plasma and normal plasma were incubated at 37°C for 1 hour before assay at a ratio of 1:1 or 4:1 (patient:normal). With an APTT mix of 1:1 and a percent correction of 70% to 75% calculated by a specific formula (see reference for formula), the sensitivity/specificity for recognizing a factor deficiency or anticoagulant was 100%/33% or 33%/100%, respectively. When the percent correction was 50%, calculated from a ratio of 4:1 (patient:normal) in the plasma mix for APTT, the sensitivity/specificity in recognizing a factor deficiency or anticoagulant improved to 88%/100% or 100%/88%, respectively (Chang et al, 2002). Similarly, on a PT mix of 1:1 with a percentage correction of 70% to 75% calculated by a specific formula (see reference for formula), the sensitivity/specificity in recognizing a factor deficiency or anticoagulant was 95%/50% or 50%/95%, respectively. When the percentage correction was greater than 40%, as calculated from a ratio of 4:1 (patient:normal) in the plasma mix for PT, the sensitivity/specificity for recognizing a factor deficiency or anticoagulant improved to 96%/100% or 100%/96%, respectively (Chang et al, 2002). Additional studies showed that the assay after an immediate mix versus 1-hour incubation at 37°C had lower sensitivity and specificity.

Multiple factor deficiencies, such as those seen when a patient is on warfarin, often do not correct, owing both to deficiencies in plasma levels of multiple proteins and to the production of abnormal coagulant molecules resulting from the carboxylation inhibition defect that proceed to function as inhibitors in coagulant-based assays. Once it is determined that an inhibitor is present, specific factor assays still need to be performed to isolate the specific protein toward which the inhibitor is directed. In general, most institutions start with a mixing study to diagnose a novel coagulation protein defect. Regardless of the diagnosis of a deficiency or inhibitor, all relevant factors that could be producing that defect need to be assessed. The alternative approach is to assay for all relevant factors initially to isolate the defect and then to determine, if appropriate, whether

an inhibitor is present. The latter approach usually speeds the time to patient diagnosis. If multiple factors are low, consideration should be given to the possibilities of factitious warfarin, heparin, myeloma proteins, hypodysfibrinogenemia, cryoglobulins, and so forth.

Global Hemostasis Assays

PT and APTT assays have never been evaluated for their role in predicting bleeding risk and monitoring acute bleeding. On the other hand, the reporting capacity of traditional coagulation assays like PT and APTT mostly stops at the moment of "thrombin burst." These tests inform on the initiation of clotting but not on the hemostatic capacity in terms of clot formation and maximal thrombin generation. The development of the so-called global hemostasis assays has gained attention in the last decades, in particular in the management of acute hemorrhage. Global tests have been adopted for detecting and treating coagulopathy in intensive care, cardiac surgery, and liver transplantation.

Hartert (1948) elaborated the first viscoelastic test, named thromboelastography. The basic principle of global viscoelastic assays is to record the viscoelastic clot changes occurring during clot initiation, formation, and lysis. Whole blood is added with a coagulation activator in a cup exposed to a constant torsion wire. The gradual clot formation and stability progressively interfere with the torsion wire, which becomes almost fixed at the time of maximum clot stability. The most adopted viscoelastic assays are TEG (Haemonetics, United States) and ROTEM (Pentapharm, Switzerland). ROTEM uses a fixed cup with a pin that is rotating, and TEG uses a rotating cup (Ganter & Hofer, 2008). Both assays allow, in real time, the analysis of the process of clot formation, clot stability, and clot resolution due to fibrinolysis. The elasticity of the clot is related to several factors, including platelet contraction during clot retraction, platelet levels (Tynngård et al, 2006; Agren et al, 2013), hematocrit, FXIII, fibrinogen concentration (Winstedt et al, 2013), and thrombin generated during coagulation (Johansson et al, 2009). Different activators can now be added to whole blood or platelet-rich plasma in order to specifically evaluate different aspects of the coagulation process.

Thrombin Generation

Thrombin generation (TG) assay measures the overall tendency of a plasma sample to form thrombin after initiation of coagulation. It can be performed both on platelet-rich plasma (PRP) and platelet-poor plasma (PPP). TG is performed with a semiautomated fluorescence assay, where the fluorescence of the sample is compared to a calibrator. TG curve obtains data on the following variables: lag-time, maximum thrombin concentration (Cmax), time required to reach Cmax (Tmax), and endogenous thrombin potential (ETP). TG is affected by coagulation factor deficiencies (FII, FV, FVIII, FIX, FX, fibrinogen, FXIII, and FVII) (Matsumoto et al, 2013).

Overall Hemostasis Potential

The overall hemostasis potential (OHP) is a plasma-based spectrophotometric global assay. OHP reports the registration of the fibrin-aggregation curve in platelet-poor plasma added with exogenous thrombin, tissue-type plasminogen activator, and calcium. The overall coagulation potential and overall fibrinolytic potential are ancillary parameters of OHP. OHP has been evaluated in different hyper- and hypocoagulable states and during anticoagulant treatment (Antovic, 2010). There are concerns related to the standardization of global hemostasis assays; however, wide variation in results is currently accepted in emergency clinical settings.

HEREDITARY COAGULATION PROTEIN DEFECTS

As described earlier, protein or factor deficiencies can be quantitative or qualitative. In quantitative disorders, the factor level determined by routine clot-based methods (functional activity assays) is similar to that obtained by immunologic (antigen) assays. In qualitative disorders, the functional assay result is decreased, but the antigen level is significantly higher or normal, indicating the presence of a dysfunctional protein or an inhibitor to the function of that protein.

DEFICIENCY OF FACTOR VIII (HEMOPHILIA A) OR FACTOR IX (HEMOPHILIA B)

Hemophilia A (FVIII deficiency) is the most common severe congenital bleeding disorder that allows for normal gestation and delivery, affecting 1 in 5000 to 10,000 males. Hemophilia B (FIX deficiency, Christmas disease) is also a severe congenital bleeding disorder, affecting 1 in 25,000 to 30,000 males. The factor VIII and IX genes are both located on the X chromosome, with the result that hemophilia A and B are X-linked recessive disorders primarily affecting males. Females carrying a hemophilia mutation on one of their two X chromosomes are carriers. Hemophilia A can affect females when carriers have imbalanced lyonization of the normal X chromosome or Turner's syndrome (XO), or when they are daughters of an affected male and a carrier female.

TABLE 39-4
Classification of Hemophilia A and B

	CLASSIFICATION		
	Severe	**Moderate**	**Mild**
Percentage of patients	50-70	10	30-40
Factor VIII or factor IX activity, %	<1	1-5	6-30
Pattern of bleeding episodes	~2-4 per month	~4-6 per year	Uncommon
Cause(s) of bleeding	Spontaneous	Minor trauma	Major trauma Surgery

Hemophilia is defined as mild, moderate, or severe, depending on the baseline factor activity level (Blanchette et al, 2014). This factor level is expressed as a percent of normal or in international units (IU)/mL (Table 39-4). Factor levels correlate with the degree of bleeding symptoms (Pavlova & Oldenburg, 2013). However, among patients, there is a considerable variability in bleeding pattern.

Severe hemophilia A and B, which are sex-linked recessive coagulation factor deficiencies, often manifest themselves very early in life, often as cephalohematomas at birth (whether a vaginal or cesarean section delivery), routine administration of intramuscular vitamin K, or with newborn heel-stick screening. The classic presentation of the hemophilias was provided in the Talmud, which emphasized the risk of bleeding associated with circumcision. Surprisingly, it is uncommon to observe bleeding at the umbilical stump in those affected by hemophilia A or B. As the child progresses into toddler age, bleeding predominantly manifests as acute and recurrent hemarthroses and muscle and soft tissue hematomas and then gum and dental bleeding associated with loss of deciduous teeth. In childhood through adulthood, the bleeding frequency increases in proportion to activity intensity and trauma; however, even the frequency of spontaneous bleeds increases—for example, those bleeds unassociated with known trauma. This suggests that even the stress of weight-bearing, normal torque on the joints and supportive structures can precipitate bleeding events. The hinge joints remain the primary sites of hemophilia-related bleeding complications throughout life, such as ankles, knees, and elbows, although even the ball-and-socket joints can bleed occasionally. Repeat bleeds into the same joint often lead to restricted range of motion, support muscle atrophy with disability, acute and chronic pain, and structural deterioration. Iron uptake into the joint synovium triggers the local release of proinflammatory and proteolytic cytokines, particularly IL-1 beta and IL-6, which in turn induce chondrocyte apoptosis and cartilage damage (Van Vulpen et al, 2015). Life-threatening bleeds usually occur into the brain and paratracheal regions and are typically related to trauma (see Table 39-2). Severe hemophilia requires frequent treatment or prophylactic therapy with replacement factor products. Mild hemophilia is rarely symptomatic for spontaneous bleeding, but it manifests with prolonged bleeding after trauma or major surgery, and patients rarely need intravenous factor replacement.

Hemophilia is suspected on the basis of bleeding symptoms or a family history of hemophilia. About one third of hemophilia A cases arise from spontaneous mutations. Laboratory evaluation of patients with such a bleeding history should include an APTT and PT and platelet count. Diagnosis is confirmed by an FVIII or FIX assay. Hemophilia can be diagnosed as early as the birth of a male neonate with a positive family history, because factor VIII and IX levels can be directly measured on cord blood.

It is important to appreciate that in the coagulation laboratory, measurement of at least two dilutions of patient-citrated plasma should be assayed in duplicate against standard curves for FVIII or FIX coagulant activity in order to fully characterize the severity of disease in those with severe FVIII or FIX deficiency, because the dilution curves are not linear at lower values. FVIII levels above 10% are easier to evaluate because the

standard curve spans between 10% and 150% FVIII/FIX activity. Variations of the one-stage assay method are the most commonly employed techniques to measure FVIII or FIX activities in plasma. Unfortunately, these assays are fraught with shortcomings due to preanalytic variables (poor venipuncture techniques, leading to the presence of preactivated clotting factors, which will lead to overestimation of FVIII or FIX activity), type of APTT reagent used, type of automated instrument platform used, and type of clotting factor concentrate administered—for example, assay discrepancies of up to 40% are possible during clinical monitoring of recombinant factor IX concentrate versus plasma-derived FIX concentrates (EMA, 2014). Inter- and intralaboratory variability can be reduced by using calibrated international standards for FVIII/FIX and using chromogenic assays to measure FVIII and FIX.

Several additional pertinent comments regarding hemophilia care include the following:

1. Only 25% of the world's hemophilia population receive adequate care, and opportunities are still available to provide enough clotting factor concentrate to prevent joint damage, long-term morbidity from bleeding complications, and death from bleeding.
2. The standard of care for severe hemophilia A and B in the developed world now includes the initiation of primary prophylaxis with administration of clotting factor replacement therapy either before or shortly after the first bleeding event in childhood.
3. Primary prophylaxis is not perfect in its ability to prevent joint deterioration, even when the individual has not experienced any clinical bleeds. In addition, there are those rare individuals who manifest no joint deterioration despite recurrent bleeding events (Manco-Johnson et al, 2007).
4. All of the currently available clotting factor concentrates for FVIII or IX replacement are viral safe without any reported transmission of HIV, HCV, HBV, and so on. The viral attenuation processes for the pooled human plasma–derived factor concentrates have rendered these products free from transmitting such lipid-enveloped infectious agents as SARS, West Nile virus, and so forth, but these products still may potentially transmit non-lipid-coated viruses, such as parvovirus B19, despite ultrafiltration.
5. The most common cause of severe hemophilia A is partial inversion of the FVIII gene up to and including intron 22, which accounts for up to 40% to 45% of such patients (Naylor et al, 1992; Lakich et al, 1993). These inversions are due to homologous recombination between the region that includes the *F8A* gene in intron 22 and one of the two other homologous regions located more than 400 kb 5′ (telomeric) to the FVIII gene (Lakich et al, 1993; Kaufman et al, 2001). Several types of these inversions have been described (Kaufman et al, 2001). If the intron 22 inversion is not detected, definition of the responsible mutation is difficult because of the large size of the FVIII gene (approximately 186,000 bp long). In contrast, the FIX gene is one-fifth the size of the FVIII gene, and the mutations responsible for hemophilia B are easier to define by genetic analysis.

More diagnostic testing may be required for patients with mild to moderate deficiency of FVIII for whom a diagnosis of hemophilia A may be less apparent (e.g., a female patient with low FVIII and apparent autosomal inheritance). In patients with von Willebrand disease, a secondary deficiency of FVIII may occur (see Chapter 40) because FVIII is normally bound to von Willebrand factor in the plasma (Weiss et al, 1977). Further, a unique von Willebrand factor abnormality has been described in which a missense mutation in von Willebrand factor impairs the capacity of von Willebrand factor to bind to and promote FVIII secretion into plasma. This abnormality, first described in a French patient from Normandy, has been named von Willebrand disease "Normandy," or type 2N. It should be suspected in a patient with normal von Willebrand factor antigen and functional studies (see Chapter 40) but reduced FVIII levels, whose inheritance is autosomal recessive rather than sex-linked (Schneppenheim et al, 1996).

FIX activity levels during childhood remain at about 75% of adult levels. A 25% increment in FIX expression begins at puberty in both sexes (Andrew et al, 1992). It has been assumed that this is a result of steroid hormone action. It is interesting to note that a rare form of FIX deficiency, hemophilia B Leyden, undergoes postpubertal phenotypic resolution. Patients with this condition present with hemophilia B in early childhood, with FIX activity ranging from less than 1% to 13% of normal. Plasma levels rise to as high as 70% of normal after the onset of puberty with resolution of bleeding complications (Reitsma, 2001). Mutations in hemophilia B Leyden have been identified in the promoter region of the FIX gene, within which a consensus sequence for steroid receptor binding is located (Crossley et al, 1992).

Evaluation of Carriers

Detection of carriers is useful for prediction of symptoms and prenatal counseling. Carriers are expected to have approximately 50% of normal factor activity, a value generally able to prevent bleeding. However, some hemophilia carriers may experience menorrhagia and other bleeding symptoms, such as in males with mild hemophilia (Arun & Kessler, 2001; Plug et al, 2006). In hemophilia A, if the mutation is known, the potential carrier may be tested for that mutation. Otherwise, the woman should be tested for the common intron 22 inversion or get whole exosome sequencing. Detailed genetic analysis of the woman, the affected male, and intervening family members may define the mutation. These techniques provide an extremely high likelihood of detection of carriers when all family members are available for study. Even if, compared with the genetic testing, the determination of coagulation factor activity levels is inaccurate in the diagnosis of a carrier due to a significant overlap between carriers and the unaffected population. The woman's ratio of FVIII activity to the level of von Willebrand factor antigen may be used to predict carrier status. Abnormally decreased ratios have been reported to identify 91% to 99% of hemophilia A carriers (Fishman et al, 1982; Graham et al, 1986; Green et al, 1986).

Prenatal diagnosis of the hemophilias can be performed at a number of high-risk obstetric centers by chorionic villous sampling at 12 weeks' gestation or by amniocentesis after the sixteenth week. If the genetic basis of the disease is known within a family, then mutational analysis or examination for the intron 22 inversion can be performed on the cell samples (Ljung, 1999; Arun & Kessler, 2001). Fetoscopic blood sampling can be performed at 20 weeks' gestation for coagulation factor analysis, although it carries a higher risk and is less precise. However, because fetal DNA is detectable in maternal circulation within 10 days of conception, collection of maternal plasma should be sufficient to make a prenatal diagnosis of hemophilia presently, obviating the use of the invasive diagnostic techniques listed above. In hemophilia B, 30% to 40% of carriers will be missed by measurement of FIX activity, and mutation analysis is important for defining carrier status (Graham, 1979; Ljung, 1999). Similar to hemophilia A, hemophilia B arises spontaneously in one third of patients.

Treatment of Hemophilia

Recombinant factor products are now the standard of care for treatment of hemophilia A and B in developed countries. Clotting factors are dosed on the basis of weight and desired plasma activity. Plasma with 100% clotting factor activity has 1 U/mL of that clotting factor. By convention, one unit of a coagulation factor is the amount of that factor present in 1 mL of normal pooled human plasma. Each unit of recombinant FVIII/kg ideally raises the plasma FVIII activity by about 2%, and each unit of recombinant FIX/kg raises the plasma FIX activity by about 1%. To raise the FVIII plasma activity of a 70-kg man by 100%, the calculated dose will be as follows:

Body weight (kg) × 0.5 international units/kg
× FVIII activity increase desired (%)
= Dose required, or (70 kg)(0.5)(100) = 3500 units to be infused

The plasma half-life of FVIII is about 12 hours. To raise the FIX plasma activity of a 70-kg man by 100%, the calculated dose will be as follows (Shapiro et al, 2005):

Body weight (kg) × desired FIX increase (%)
×1 international unit/kg = Dose required, or
(70 kg)(100) = 7000 units to be infused

About one third of FIX-deficient patients have a lower recovery after recombinant FIX infusion, requiring 20% higher dosing. The plasma half-life of FIX is about 24 hours.

The pharmacopeia for hemophilia replacement products is rapidly increasing as new constructs of FVIII and FIX concentrates enter the commercial market. Most of these new products extend the circulating half-life of the specific factor protein so that the frequency of administration of replacement products can be reduced. There is a growing tendency to tailor the dosing of these products according to the specific needs of the individual's activity lifestyle. Thus the very active person with hemophilia may wish to maintain a trough clotting factor activity level of 15% to minimize bleeding events during rigorous athletics or work-related requirements. In contrast, the sedentary individual can exist very

satisfactorily with a trough level of 1%. Many hemophilia treaters advocate personal- or population-based pharmacokinetic trials with the new products to ensure that these expensive products can be used in the most efficacious and economic manner. A summary of the characteristics of these new products can be observed in the real-time updated format provided by the Medical and Scientific Advisory Council of the National Hemophilia Foundation (www.hemophilia.org/Researchers-Healthcare-Providers/Medical-and-Scientific-Advisory-Council-MASAC/MASAC-Recommendations/MASAC-Recommendations-Concerning-Products-Licensed-for-the-Treatment-of-Hemophilia-and-Other-Bleeding-Disorders).

Complications of Treatment

An important complication of replacement therapy, occurring mainly in patients with severe hemophilia, is the development of autoantibodies (inhibitors) that interfere with the coagulation factor. Inhibitors occur in approximately 25% of patients with severe hemophilia A and 3% to 5% with severe hemophilia B. They are quite uncommon in patients with moderate or mild hemophilia, probably because the infused factor is not recognized as a foreign antigen in these individuals (Eckhardt et al, 2013). Inhibitors reduce or abolish, depending on their titer or the response to replacement therapy. Inhibitor screening is very important for effective and prompt management of this complication (Soucie et al, 2014).

Studies to detect the emergence of an inhibitor may be undertaken periodically, and most particularly when doses of replacement factor therapy thought sufficient to control a bleeding challenge prove unsuccessful. It can be very helpful when trying to assess the emergence of an inhibitor to draw blood at multiple times following the infusion of the replacement factor. An acceleration in the fall-off rate of factor level plotted against time will typically occur with the development of an inhibitor against that factor.

Characterization of a specific inhibitor to FVIII or FIX or any other coagulation protein requires careful quantitation. This analysis is important to perform because the degree of inhibitor titer has a major bearing on the choice of therapy for the patient. In general, lower-titer FVIII inhibitors (less than 5 Bethesda units [BU], see later) can still be treated with replacement factor; in contrast, higher-titer inhibitors (above 10 BU, see later) typically need the administration of the so-called bypassing agents: recombinant FVIIa, FEIBA (FVIII inhibitor bypassing agent that is an activated prothrombin complex concentrate), and recombinant porcine FVIII (Hay et al, 2006). A simple mixing test as described previously for the APTT can underestimate the presence of an inhibitor. Further, as indicated earlier, there is no unanimity on how such mixing assays should be performed. In order to diagnose the presence of an FVIII or FIX inhibitor, a formal FVIII or FIX "Bethesda" inhibitor assay should be performed (Kasper et al, 1975). In general, this approach to assay for coagulation factor inhibitors is reliable for all coagulation protein inhibitors. This assay standardizes the amount of plasma in the mixture and the time of incubation and normalizes interpretation of the inhibitor, so it is universally interpretable. In the classic Bethesda assay, one part patient plasma is mixed with one part normal plasma and is incubated for 2 hours at 37° C. The control is a 1 : 1 mix of normal plasma with buffer. In a variation of the original Bethesda assay, known as the Nijmegen modification, the control of pooled normal plasma is incubated with FVIII-deficient plasma, and the pooled normal plasma used in the assay is buffered to prevent pH shifts during the 2-hour incubation (Verbruggen et al, 1995). After incubation, the patient mixture and the control mixture are assayed for FVIII activity, and the percentage of residual FVIII activity is determined at each dilution by the ratio of patient mixture to control mixture. The Nijmegen modification seems to be more specific and reliable, especially with lower titer inhibitors, because it increases the intrinsic buffering effect following serial dilutions. It is used less commonly in the United States (Peerschke et al, 2009). An arbitrary BU has been devised to quantify coagulation factor inhibitors determined by this method. Thus in the case of FVIII, 1 BU is defined as the amount of patient plasma that inhibits half the FVIII activity in the control plasma (Fig. 39-8). Therefore, patient plasma producing a residual FVIII activity of 50% is considered to contain 1 BU of inhibitor per milliliter. If this same plasma had been diluted tenfold before assaying for the inhibitor, then this result would indicate an inhibitor value of 10 BU/mL.

This assay is sensitive, but at times it is difficult to reproduce. A common observation is that varying dilutions of plasma may yield different estimates of the inhibitor titer. For assigning the level of BUs, the dilution that comes closest to the 50% residual factor is chosen for calculation of the FVIII inhibitor titer. Values on the standard curve should be read only at between 25% and 75% residual FVIII activity. If below 25%, higher dilutions of the sample are needed. If residual activity using the least diluted patient specimen is above 75%, a demonstrable inhibitor may not be present. It is in fact important for the laboratory to determine a lower limit of sensitivity for this assay, typically in the range of less than 0.4 to less than 0.6 BU, below which it reports lack of laboratory evidence for the presence of inhibitor. It is additionally of note that a plot made of residual FVIII activity versus increasing volume of original patient plasma in the Bethesda assay may distinguish between an inhibitor capable of reducing FVIII activity into the unmeasurable range (type I inhibitor) and an inhibitor that preserves some degree of residual FVIII activity, even at high inhibitor titer (type II inhibitor), presumably reflecting a target epitope at a less critical region of the FVIII molecule (Gawryl & Hoyer, 1982; Luna-Zaizar et al, 2009).

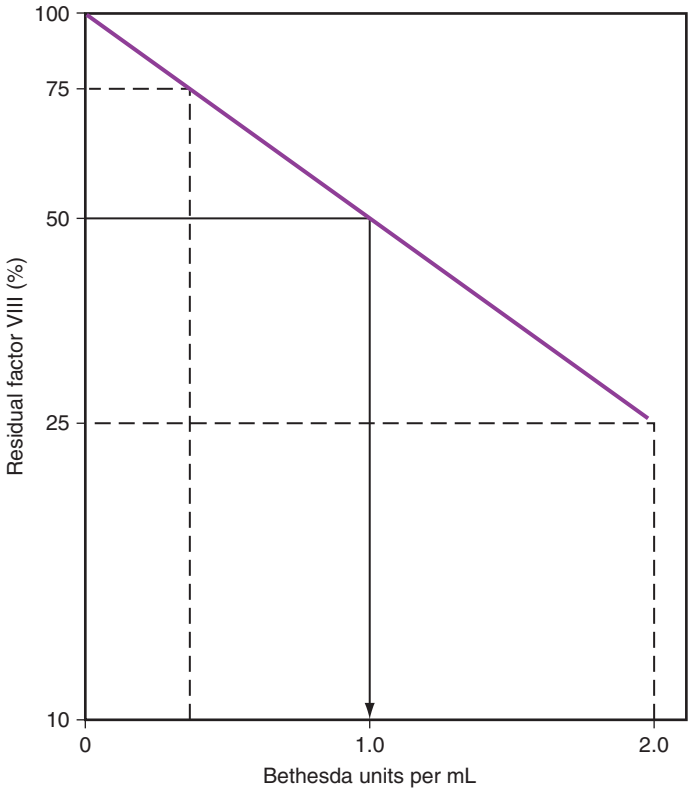


Figure 39-8 Expression of factor VIII inhibitor titer in Bethesda units. In this assay for an inhibitor to factor VIII, the percent of residual factor VIII activity in normal plasma is determined after incubation with patient plasma. By convention, 1 international Bethesda unit of inhibitor is the amount of antibody that destroys 0.5 U factor VIII activity after 2 hours' incubation at 37° C. As shown in the figure, the percent of residual factor VIII activity on a log scale is plotted against Bethesda units/mL in a linear scale. For a sample to be evaluable in this assay, the level of factor VIII activity should fall between 25% and 75%. Patient samples that produce residual factor VIII activity below 25% need to be diluted further so the 50% residual factor VIII activity point can be found. (Redrawn with permission from Bockenstedt PL: Laboratory methods in hemostasis. In Loscalzo J, Schafer AI, editors: *Thrombosis and hemorrhage,* ed 3, Philadelphia, 2003, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, p 370, Fig. 21-7.)

HEREDITARY DEFICIENCIES OF OTHER COAGULATION FACTORS

The other hereditary deficiencies of coagulation factors have autosomal inheritance (Table 39-5). With the exception of FXI deficiency, these disorders are very rare. However, they have a higher prevalence in areas where consanguineous marriage is practiced (Mannucci et al, 2004). Deficiencies of factors XIII, X, VII, V, and II are defined rare inherited coagulation disorders (RICDs) and they represent 2% to 5% of inherited coagulation factor defects in the general population. The most common RICDs include deficiencies of factor XI and factor VII, followed by factor V, factor X, fibrinogen, and factor XIII (Ruiz-Saez, 2013).

In general, most patients with RICDs have partial defects because they have relatively mild bleeding disorders. Most coagulation-based assays have difficulty detecting these factors once their levels are below 5% to 10%. In vivo, however, the presence of even this small level of coagulation

TABLE 39-5

Characterization of Coagulation Factors and Their Deficiencies

Factor	Molecular Weight, kDa	Gene Location	Normal Circulating Half-Life	Incidence	Inheritance	Bleeding Severity
Fibrinogen	330	4q31.3-q32.1	2-4 days	1:1 million	Recessive	Mild–severe*
II	72	11p11.2	3-4 days	Very rare	Recessive	Mild–moderate
V	330	1q24.2	36 hours	1:1 million	Recessive	Moderate
V and VIII combined	—	LMAN1:18q21.32 MCFD2:2p21	36 hours for FV; 10-14 hours for FVIII	1:2 million	Recessive	Mild–moderate
VII	50	13q34	3-6 hours	1:500,000	Recessive	Mild–severe
VIII	330	Xq28	10-14 hours	1:10,000	Sex-linked	Mild–severe
IX	56	Xq27	18-24 hours	1:30,000	Sex-linked	Mild–severe
X	58	13q34	40-60 hours	1:500,000	Recessive	Mild–severe
XI	160	4q35.2	40-70 hours	Rare†	Recessive	Mild–moderate
XII	80	5q33-qter	50-70 days	Rare	Recessive	No bleeding
PK	88	4q33-q35	Not known	Very rare	Recessive	No bleeding
HK	120	3q27	9-10 hours	Extremely rare	Recessive	No bleeding
XIII	320	A:6p25.1 B:1q31.3	11-14 days	<1:1 million	Recessive	Moderate–severe

HK, High molecular weight kininogen; *PK,* prekallikrein.
*May be associated with thrombosis.
†Rare except in those of Ashkenazi Jewish descent.

factor can greatly influence bleeding risk. In contrast, findings with knockout mice indicate that a true null of each of these proteins is associated with virtually 100% mortality from hemorrhage before or at the time of birth. With hereditary factor deficiencies, heterozygous deficient individuals have approximately 50% (most commonly 30% to 60%) of the normal level of the affected factor. The symptoms of these disorders are quite variable. Coagulation factor deficiencies may be suspected on the basis of symptoms, family history, or abnormal screening tests, and the laboratory diagnosis is confirmed by specific factor assays. Once a specific protein deficiency is recognized, clinical history usually distinguishes a congenital from an acquired defect (see later).

Disorders with Prolonged APTT and Normal PT

Factor XI

Factor XI deficiency is common in Ashkenazi Jews, in whom heterozygote frequency is 8% (Asakai et al, 1991; Emsley et al, 2010). This ethnic population constitutes about 50% of the FXI-deficient patients seen in the United States. Most patients with FXI deficiency rarely have spontaneous hemorrhage. This notion is further supported by the lack of any spontaneous bleeding reported in a recent trial in which antisense treatment was administered to decrease the activity of factor XI to 25% normal in knee replacement surgery with the aim to reduce the incidence of venous thrombosis (Buller et al, 2015). Bleeding typically occurs after trauma or surgery, particularly involving areas of the body with high fibrinolytic activity (mouth, nose, genitourinary tract). Women can experience menorrhagia and postpartum hemorrhage. Bleeding can occur in heterozygotes and does not necessarily correlate with the residual FXI level (Leiba et al, 1965; Bolton-Maggs et al, 1988). However, the bleeding tendency may be modified by additional defects such as hemophilia, von Willebrand disease, and platelet function defects (Brenner et al, 1997). Diagnosis depends on determination of FXI activity below the reference range. Most widely used APTT reagents will have prolonged APTT results for patient samples with FXI activity below 20% to 25% and mixed results when levels are 25% to 60%. The lower limit of the normal range is probably between 60% and 70% (Bolton-Maggs et al, 1995). Therefore, a normal APTT does not rule out a mild FXI deficiency. In cases where marked elevation of FVIII may be present, the APTT can be normalized even when other factors are reduced (Lawrie et al, 1998). Thrombin generation assay performed in specific sample conditions appears to be able to identify the bleeding phenotype of patients with factor XI deficiency (Pike et al, 2015). In all patients with FXI deficiency, preoperative management is critical to prevent bleeding complications. Patients with severe deficiency (FXI <10% to 20%) should receive treatment with fresh frozen plasma to raise their FXI levels. Usually, replacement therapy of 20 mL/kg loading dose with a maintenance dose of 5 to 10 mL/kg every 24 hours is sufficient to cover patients with severe FXI deficiency through elective surgery (Kessler et al, 1996). Patients with levels from 20% to 70% may bleed.

A human plasma–derived factor XI is available in France, but it can have a prothrombotic effect (Bauduer et al, 2015). A bleeding history and the nature of the proposed surgery will then guide management. The development of inhibitors to FXI in patients with FXI deficiency has been described, although these are rare (Salomon et al, 2003).

FXII, Prekallikrein, and High Molecular Weight Kininogen

As discussed previously, FXII, prekallikrein, and HK deficiencies are associated with prolonged APTT but are not associated with any bleeding risk. FXII deficiency is most common, occurring in all racial and ethnic backgrounds. It is associated with a very long PTT. Prekallikrein deficiency is less common (Girolami et al, 2014) but is seen in the United States in all ethnic groups. It is associated with a slightly prolonged APTT that corrects to normal when sitting on the bench for 1 hour at 37°C. HK deficiency is a rare disorder that also is associated with a very long APTT. These protein deficiencies are not associated with bleeding—a point emphasized diagrammatically in Figure 39-1 by graying of this portion of the coagulation "cascade." Because no replacement therapy for hemostasis is necessary for FXII, PK, or HK deficiency, it is important to recognize these defects to prevent unnecessary treatment. Deficiencies of FXII, PK, and HK have been associated with reduced thrombosis risk. Deletions of these proteins in mice are associated with delayed times to thrombosis in arterial thrombosis models (Renne et al, 2005; Stavrou et al, 2015; Merkoulov et al, 2008). When a deficiency in the proteins of the kallikrein/kinin system is suspected, an FXII assay should be performed first, because it is the most common.

Disorders with Prolonged APTT and PT

Prolonged PT and APTT most commonly is due to general medical conditions described later under acquired disorders of blood coagulation. When hereditary disorders are considered, the following list, although much less common, should be considered.

Disorders of Fibrinogen

Hereditary fibrinogen abnormalities include two categories of plasma fibrinogen defects: type I, afibrinogenemia or hypofibrinogenemia, with absent or low plasma fibrinogen antigen levels (quantitative fibrinogen deficiencies), and type II, dysfibrinogenemia or hypodysfibrinogenemia, which determines normal or reduced antigen levels associated with disproportionately low functional activity (qualitative fibrinogen deficiencies). In the type I disorder, null mutations occur in the FGA, FGB, and FGG fibrinogen encoding genes (de Moerloose et al, 2013).

Fibrinogen deficiencies may prolong the PT and APTT if the plasma concentration of the protein is sufficiently low, usually less than 100 mg/dL. Afibrinogenemia is a bleeding disorder of variable severity (Fried & Kaufman, 1980; Lak et al, 1999). Umbilical stump and mucosal bleeding are the most common symptoms, as is an increased incidence of

musculoskeletal and central nervous system bleeding. Patients also exhibit poor wound healing. Hypofibrinogenemia determines a decreased level of normal fibrinogen, and it has a similar but milder pattern of bleeding. Both afibrinogenemia and hypofibrinogenemia are associated with recurrent miscarriage, as well as with antepartum and postpartum hemorrhage (Goodwin, 1989; Kobayashi et al, 2000). Paradoxically, reports have described thrombotic events in patients with afibrinogenemia (Chafa et al, 1995; Lak et al, 1999; Dupuy et al, 2001).

Dysfibrinogenemia is a qualitative fibrinogen deficiency characterized by the production of a dysfunctional fibrinogen (Miesbach et al, 2010). Most patients with congenital dysfibrinogenemia are heterozygous because of molecular defects in produced protein, although rare homozygous cases have been reported. Dysfibrinogenemias are most commonly acquired in association with liver disease. Acquired dysfibrinogenemias are mainly due to posttranslational modifications of the fibrinogen protein as a result of synthesis in an abnormal liver. These defects are common in patients with hepatitis B and C. Patients with dysfibrinogenemia are usually asymptomatic or have mild bleeding, but in some cases, thrombosis has been reported, with or without a bleeding history (Hanss & Biot, 2001). The thrombin time and reptilase time, which measure clotting time during the conversion of fibrinogen into fibrin, are often prolonged in dysfibrinogenemia. When thrombin proteolyzes fibrinogen in the thrombin time, fibrinopeptides A and B are released from the Aα and Bβ chains of fibrinogen. Reptilase clots fibrinogen by liberating only fibrinopeptide A (Funk et al, 1971). Proteolysis of fibrinopeptide A from fibrinogen is sufficient to induce clot formation. Fibrinopeptide B liberation increases the rate of association of the fibrin monomers, but not the actual physiologic clot (Martinelli & Scheraga, 1980; Nawarawong et al, 1991). Bleeding risk is associated only with fibrinopeptide A release defects, not with fibrinopeptide B release defects. Therefore, a patient can have long PT and APTT from a fibrinopeptide B release defect and not have any bleeding risk—hence the reason for using both the thrombin time and reptilase time to assess dysfibrinogenemias. Assays that measure clottable fibrinogen will show lower levels than assays that measure fibrinogen antigen. A normal fibrinogen has a ratio of clottable fibrinogen activity to fibrinogen antigen greater than 95%. Ratios less than this raise the possibility of a dysfibrinogenemia. For many years, cryoprecipitate has served as a good source of fibrinogen when replacement is needed. A number of virally inactivated fibrinogen concentrates are now available for therapeutic administration both in Europe and North America.

FII Deficiency

Prothrombin deficiency may be the rarest inherited coagulation factor deficiency (1:2,000,000) (Bolton-Maggs et al, 2004). A true prothrombin deficiency in the mouse is incompatible with life after birth (Sun et al, 1998). Hypoprothrombinemia (type I deficiency) manifests as a concomitant reduction in prothrombin activity and antigen levels. Bleeding symptoms include mucosal bleeding, hematomas, and hemarthrosis. Dysprothrombinemia (type II deficiency) presents with reduced activity and normal antigen levels. The clinical presentation of dysprothrombinemia is less predictable, and patients may be asymptomatic or may have only mild bleeding manifestations (Bolton-Maggs et al, 2004). Depending on the sensitivity of the reagents, both PT and APTT may be prolonged in prothrombin deficiency. However, a specific factor II assay is best if there is clinical suspicion or a positive family history in the presence of normal screening tests. A PT reagent-based prothrombin assay with factor-deficient plasma is most convenient. Purified or recombinant factor II are currently not available. Prothrombin complex concentrates are the treatment of choice, although fresh frozen plasma can serve as an alternative source of prothrombin. The half-life of the protein is long (2 to 4 days), so replacement therapy every 3 to 4 days is typically sufficient.

FV Deficiency

Heterozygous FV deficiency is usually asymptomatic. Homozygous FV deficiency is rare (1:1,000,000), presenting in children with a mild to severe bleeding phenotype (Girolami et al, 1998; Lak et al, 1999). Individuals with severe factor V deficiency (FV:c <1%) may well have some functional FV, considering that 50% of true null mice die at the time of development of the cardiovascular system (days 9 to 11), and the other half die at birth from hemorrhage (Cui et al, 1996). A biologic reason for a milder than expected bleeding phenotype in FV-deficient subjects may be related to the presence of residual factor V activity in platelets (Bouchard et al, 2015). The most frequent symptoms are mucosal tract bleeding and bleeding after invasive procedures. FV deficiency is associated with prolongation of both the APTT and PT (but a normal thrombin time), and it is confirmed by a PT reagent-based, single-stage FV assay. Patients with FV deficiency should also have an FVIII assay performed to evaluate for combined deficiency of factors V and VIII (see later) (Nichols et al, 1998; Zhang & Ginsburg, 2004). The only suitable replacement product available is fresh frozen plasma (solvent/detergent if available). Human platelets contain 20% of total plasma FV, and they can also be a source of this protein in acute bleeding (Tracy et al, 1982). The goal of replacement therapy should be to elevate the FV level to at least 10% to 15% (Peyvandi & Mannucci, 1999). The half-life of FV is quite short (16 to 36 hours), so to achieve the hemostatic level of 20%, daily infusions may be needed. During treatment, secondary volume overload needs to be taken into account and actively treated. Acquired inhibitors to FV are relatively common from the surgical use of topical bovine thrombin to aid incision hemostasis. Most cases are not severe, but their management can be challenging due to the lack of specific replacement therapy (Ardillon et al, 2014).

FX Deficiency

Heterozygous FX deficiency is asymptomatic. Homozygous FX deficiency is a severe bleeding disorder that presents in infancy. The bleeding phenotype correlates well with FX activity levels. Symptoms include umbilical cord bleeding, mucosal bleeding, severe soft tissue hematomas, and hemarthroses (Peyvandi et al, 1998a). One-stage PT-based FX assays are sufficient for diagnosis, although additional assays are commercially available. Before the diagnosis of an inherited deficiency is made, it is important to rule out a vitamin K deficiency or other acquired causes for the FX deficiency. For example, FX deficiency is the most common factor deficiency associated with primary amyloidosis, occurring in less than 10% of patients and probably due to adsorption of FX onto amyloid fibrils (Uprichard & Perry, 2002). Factor X concentrates are available in some countries in Europe. Bleeding can also be treated with prothrombin complex concentrates, fresh frozen plasma, and recombinant FVIIa (Boggio & Green, 2001). The half-life of factor X (40 to 60 hours) may require daily treatment or continuous infusion to keep FX levels above 20%.

Combined Deficiency of FV and FVIII

Combined FV and FVIII deficiency is a rare autosomal recessive disorder that results from a single gene defect rather than from coinheritance of defects in both FV and FVIII genes. Patients typically have FV and FVIII levels between 5% and 30%, their bleeding phenotype is mild to moderate, and it is weakly related to factor level activity. In two thirds of patients, this results from null expression of LMAN1 (previously known as ERGIC-53) (Nichols et al, 1998). LMAN1 shuttles between the endoplasmic reticulum and the Golgi and is believed to facilitate protein trafficking through the secretion pathway (Zhang et al, 2003). Other patients have a mutation of *MCFD2*, which directly interacts with LMAN1 (Zhang et al, 2003). Bleeding manifestations include epistaxis, easy bruising, menorrhagia, and postpartum hemorrhage, as well as bleeding following surgery, dental extraction, and trauma (Seligsohn et al, 1982; Peyvandi et al, 1998b). Testing usually demonstrates disproportionate prolongation of the PTT compared with the PT. Replacement therapy is usually reserved for surgical, traumatic, or gynecologic bleeding (Mumford et al, 2014). It includes both FVIII concentrates and fresh frozen plasma (as a source of FV).

Combined Deficiency of Vitamin K–Dependent Clotting Factors

Vitamin K–dependent clotting factor deficiency affecting multiple vitamin K–dependent coagulation (II, VII, IX, and X) and anticoagulant (protein S and protein C) factors occurs with vitamin K deficiency and hepatic dysfunction, but it also results from heritable dysfunction of hepatic enzyme γ-glutamyl carboxylase (type I) or the vitamin K epoxide reductase enzyme complex (type II) (Brenner et al, 1998; Zhang & Ginsburg, 2004). Severely affected individuals may present as neonates with fatal hemorrhages, umbilical stump bleeding, or spontaneous intracranial hemorrhage; in infancy or early childhood with hemarthroses, soft tissue hematomas, or gastrointestinal hemorrhages; or as adults with easy bruising, mucosal bleeding, and bleeding following surgery. Diagnosis is established by prolongation of both the APTT and PT and associated reductions in levels of vitamin K–dependent clotting factors. These patients may respond to vitamin K (oral or parenteral) supplementation with normalization of the APTT, PT, and factor levels, as well as resolution of bleeding symptoms. This fact makes the establishment of a diagnosis of an inherited abnormality difficult, in that other acquired causes of vitamin K deficiency (hemorrhagic disease of the newborn, liver disease, and prolonged use of broad-spectrum antibiotics) or factitious warfarin administration could manifest similarly. For patients who do not respond fully to vitamin K administration, fresh frozen plasma can be used for acute bleeding or

surgery. In addition, prothrombin complex concentrates and combination therapy with recombinant activated FVII and vitamin K supplementation may constitute alternative treatment options (Napolitano et al, 2010).

Disorders with Normal APTT and Prolonged PT

FVII Deficiency

FVII deficiency is the most common rare hereditary coagulation factor deficiency (Mariani & Bernardi, 2009). The bleeding manifestations are variable, with epistaxis, mucosal bleeding, and menorrhagia commonly reported (Peyvandi et al, 1997). Severe FVII deficiency is autosomal recessive, often presenting shortly after birth, and may have dramatic presentation with intracranial hemorrhage in 15% to 60% of cases (Ragni et al, 1981). The diagnosis is suspected with the finding of isolated prolongation of the PT. However, FVII, a vitamin K–dependent clotting factor, is low in the newborn period and will also be low in the presence of vitamin K deficiency. Therefore, reevaluation of infants with mild deficiencies is required after they reach a few months of age or after vitamin K replacement in older patients. Functional FVII activity is measured by a PT-based, FVII-deficient plasma coagulant assay. The use of recombinant human thromboplastin will yield results that are more likely to reflect in vivo FVII levels. Samples for FVII testing should not be stored at 4°C, as this can lead to cold activation of FVII as a result of C1 inhibitor inactivation and FXIIa formation in the tube with FVII activation (Kitchen et al, 1992). Cold activation of FVII results in an overestimation of the actual plasma FVII level. Therapeutic options include fresh frozen plasma, prothrombin complex concentrates, and recombinant FVIIa. For major surgery, plasma FVII levels of at least 20% are sufficient (Bolton-Maggs et al, 2004).

Disorders with Normal APTT and PT

FXIII Deficiency

Factor XIII stabilizes and crosslinks fibrin (Hsieh & Nugent, 2008). Factor XIII deficiency can determine delayed bleeding, usually 24 to 36 hours after surgery or trauma; spontaneous bleeding also occurs. Coagulation assays like PT, aPTT, and TT are normal. A reduced plasma factor XIII activity, determined with an immunoassay for factor XIII, leads to the diagnosis. Clot dissolution in 5M urea or monochloroacetic acid is useful for the diagnosis (Lorand et al, 1980), but these assays are not standardized and have a low sensitivity. More robust quantitative activity assays are based on cross-linking of glycine–ethyl ester into a specific peptide (Fickenscher et al, 1991), incorporation of an amine substrate into fibrinogen (Kohler et al, 1998), or incorporation of a biotinylated peptide to spermine attached to microtiter plates (Hitomi et al, 2009).

Testing for FXIII deficiency is suggested for individuals with a positive bleeding history, particularly with features such as delayed bleeding, umbilical stump bleeding, or miscarriage, in which the PT and APTT are normal (Anwar & Miloszewski, 1999). Thirty percent of severely FXIII-deficient patients die in middle age from spontaneous intracerebral hemorrhage unless they are receiving prophylactic therapy (Lorand et al, 1980). Acquired deficiency of FXIII has been described in a variety of diseases, including Henoch-Schönlein purpura, isoniazid treatment for tuberculosis, various forms of colitis, erosive gastritis, and some forms of leukemia (Board et al, 1993), although FXIII level determination and therapeutic management are controversial. The half-life of FXIII is very long, so replacement with fresh frozen plasma is usually sufficient for most patients. FXIII recombinant concentrates are currently commercially available (Dorey, 2014).

Hereditary Hemorrhagic Disorders of Fibrinolysis

Hereditary bleeding disorders resulting from excessive fibrinolysis are rare. α_2-antiplasmin deficiency determines enhanced plasmin activity and fibrinolysis (Fay et al, 1992; Aoki et al, 1980). Patients have a normal platelet and blood coagulation system function, and they typically present with delayed bleeding. Prolonged bleeding, simulating hemophilia, can also occur. Measurement of alpha-2-antiplasmin with either immunologic or functional assays leads to the diagnosis. Plasma transfusion and oral fibrinolysis inhibitors can control bleeding episodes and enable surgical procedures.

Acquired α_2-antiplasmin deficiency has been described in amyloidosis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, acute promyelocytic leukemia malignancies, severe liver disease (impaired synthesis), nephrotic syndrome (increased renal excretion), abdominal aortic aneurysm, and following the administration of thrombolytic agents (Okajima et al, 1994). Although not recommended for routine use as a screening assay, the whole blood clot lysis time can be helpful as a first-order test to detect deficiencies of α_2-antiplasmin. In brief, whole blood is allowed to clot, and then the time to clot lysis is recorded. In normal individuals, the presence of α_2-antiplasmin effectively prevents lysis from occurring in this in vitro setting, even 24 hours after initial clot formation. In contrast, in the presence of a severe deficiency of α_2-antiplasmin or in some fibrinolytic states, clot lysis can be observed after several hours. In such instances, follow-up testing specific for α_2-antiplasmin activity should be employed. Also, an euglobin lysis time (ELT) can be assayed to evaluate the global function of the fibrinolytic system: Plasma is admixed with dilute acid to precipitate a plasma fraction relatively rich in plasminogen activator, plasminogen (euglobin fraction), and fibrinogen but relatively poor in antiplasmins. This euglobulin fraction is then redissolved in buffer and clotted by recalcification, and the time for clot lysis is then measured. Euglobulin clot lysis is normally complete in 2 to 5 hours, but the time may be shortened with increased fibrinolysis associated with increased plasminogen activator activity. A shortened ELT is expression of a hyperfibrinolytic state, and it can be adopted also to rule out acquired disorders like DIC. Plasminogen activator, plasminogen, and plasminogen activator inhibitor may be assayed directly.

ACQUIRED COAGULATION DISORDERS

Acquired bleeding disorders are due to anticoagulation, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), liver disease, vitamin K deficiency, massive transfusion, and unique inhibitors to coagulation proteins. The topic of anticoagulation is addressed extensively in Chapter 42. In general, prolongations of the PT and APTT arising in a patient should raise the possibility, as discussed in the following sections, of anticoagulants, DIC, liver disease, vitamin K deficiency, and massive transfusion. Only after these clinical states have been excluded should attention be directed to specific protein defects influencing the PT and PTT.

THROMBOTIC DISORDERS AND DISSEMINATED INTRAVASCULAR COAGULATION

Risk factors underlying the development of thrombosis are discussed in detail in Chapter 41. Regardless of origin, however, the formation of a fibrin clot, cross-linking of that clot, and subsequent lysis of that clot by the fibrinolytic system are central features of the process.

DIC is a clinicopathologic condition in which activation of the coagulation and fibrinolysis systems results in the simultaneous formation of thrombin and plasmin with consumption of coagulation factors and inhibitors of the system, resulting in the clinical laboratory phenotype of prolonged PT, APTT, and thrombocytopenia. It is a systemic process potentially able to determine thrombosis and hemorrhage. DIC can have an acute, life-threatening, or chronic clinical course, depending on variables like the degree of the process and the underlying causative disorders. Identifying DIC and the underlying condition responsible for it are critical to an adequate management.

DIC can occur in patients with sepsis, malignancy, obstetric complications, or massive tissue injury (Schmaier, 1991). DIC can also arise during surgery as a result of the release of thromboplastic material. In circulatory arrest operations on the arch of the aorta or the main pulmonary arteries, DIC is a frequent complication related to chilling of the patient and tissue destruction. Abruptio placentae and placenta previa are associated with acute hemorrhagic DIC, whereas retained dead fetus is associated with a DIC that is not hemorrhagic but prothrombotic. DIC due to sepsis can also occur in the postoperative period. DIC with sepsis is most commonly seen with gram-negative infection but can occur with gram-positive infection and in the immunosuppressed patient with fungemia. The balance between thrombin and plasmin formation in the individual patient clinically translates into a prothrombotic versus hemorrhagic state, respectively.

The diagnosis of DIC is clinical and laboratory, and it depends on appropriate clinical test results in the correct clinical setting. The finding of a prolonged PT and APTT with reduced fibrinogen and platelet count is highly suspicious for DIC in the hospitalized patient until proven otherwise (Colman et al, 1972). At peripheral blood smear examination, microangiopathic hemolytic anemia (MAHA) with schistocytes and helmet cells can be observed both in acute and chronic DIC. However, the absence of MAHA never excludes the diagnosis. This clinical laboratory phenotype of DIC most probably results from a hyperfibrinolytic state and is the form of DIC most commonly recognized. A prothrombotic state as the result of DIC is usually associated with normal PT and APTT with mildly reduced platelet count and normal or elevated fibrinogen. The diagnosis of DIC is made by using confirmatory tests that show the simultaneous presence of thrombin and plasmin formation. Currently, the D-dimer assay is the confirmatory test that, if positive, shows that both thrombin

and plasmin have been formed. The D-dimer measures plasmin-cleaved, insoluble, cross-linked fibrin that originally arose from thrombin cleavage of fibrinogen (see Figs. 39-2 and 39-4, *B*). The D-dimer can be performed by immunonephelometric assay or by latex agglutination assay, and the results can be obtained rapidly, facilitating the use of this test in clinical decision making (Reber & Moerloose, 2009). As would be anticipated, the D-dimer is elevated in a wide variety of thrombotic conditions, including DIC (Koracevic, 2009). By careful establishment of a cutoff value, the D-dimer may be judiciously used in concert with clinical findings as a negative predictive test to exclude deep vein thrombosis or pulmonary embolism (Ceriani et al, 2010). The level of D-dimer may decrease in response to anticoagulation. In the past, fibrin degradation (split) products (FDPs) were used to recognize DIC (see Fig. 39-4, *A*). However, depending on the specificity of epitopes recognized by antibodies employed in the particular test systems, FDP may variably represent plasmin-cleaved fibrinogen, soluble fibrin, or insoluble fibrin. The finding of increased FDPs accordingly does not necessarily translate into a measure of plasmin-cleaved, insoluble, cross-linked fibrin equivalent to that obtained with the D-dimer assay. Fibrin monomer is the large molecular mass protein of fibrinogen that remains after fibrinopeptides A and B are liberated. It can be elevated in DIC, but if DIC is severe, it may be absent. Thus it is an unreliable assay for use in recognizing DIC. A scoring system that combines in a quantitative fashion the results of four commonly employed laboratory tests that may be helpful, in the appropriate clinical setting, to evaluate the likelihood of DIC is presented in Table 39-6 (Levi et al, 2009).

LIVER DISEASE

Most coagulation factors are synthesized in the liver, so it is important to diagnose a liver disease in patients with active bleeding or abnormal coagulation assay results. Liver disease may be associated with reduced synthesis of clotting factors and a prolonged TT; however, it is also associated with a decreased production of anticoagulant proteins. Patients with liver disease are at risk for thrombotic and bleeding complications, and standard tests do not always mirror the overall hemostatic balance (Tripodi & Mannucci, 2011).

Patients with serious liver disease will have a prolonged PT and APTT. Coagulation proteins can show quantitative or qualitative abnormalities functioning as inhibitors of normal coagulation proteins. For example, abnormal fibrinogens (dysfibrinogenemias) are very common in patients with liver disease. As already mentioned, if these proteins have defects in fibrinopeptide A or B release, the thrombin time will be abnormal; the reptilase time is abnormal only in fibrinopeptide A release defects. Overall, abnormal fibrinogens can be appreciated by an abnormal ratio of clottable fibrinogen (an activity measure) to fibrinogen antigen (measured by radial immunodiffusion or another immunoassay). Finding less activity in relation to the mass of the protein is characteristic of an abnormal molecule. Similarly, all vitamin K–dependent proteins (factors II, VII, IX, and X and proteins C, S, and Z) are decreased in liver disease. These proteins may have abnormal γ-carboxylation reactions of the glutamic acid residues within their amino-terminal portion, thus producing reduced factor activity with relatively higher levels of that factor's antigen (see the next section). In general, PK is one of the first proteins and fibrinogen one of the last proteins to be decreased in liver disease. Factors VIII and V become absent in the anhepatic stage of liver transplantation, but FVIII is elevated in patients with inflammatory hepatocellular disease. Moreover, antithrombin and other serpin plasma protein inhibitors are also decreased in liver disease. This decrease along with lowered protein C and S indicates that in sum, patients with severe liver disease may be at greater risk for thrombosis.

TABLE 39-6
ISTH Diagnostic Scoring System for DIC

Risk assessment: Does the patient have an underlying disorder known to be associated with overt DIC?
- If yes, proceed.
- If not, do not use this algorithm.

Order global coagulation tests (PT, platelet count, fibrinogen, D-dimer)

Score the test results:
- Platelet count (>100 k/μL = 0, <100 k/μL = 1, <50 k/μL = 2)
- Elevated D-dimer (<0.4 μg/mL = 0, 0.4-4.0 μg/mL = 2, >4.0 μg/mL = 3)
- Prolonged PT (<3 sec = 0, >3 sec but <6 sec = 1, >6 sec = 2)
- Fibrinogen level (>100 mg/dL = 0, <100 mg/dL = 1)

Calculate score:
- If ≥5, compatible with overt DIC: Repeat score daily.
- If <5, suggestive (not affirmative) for nonovert DIC: Repeat next 1-2 days.

DIC, Disseminated intravascular coagulation; *ISTH,* International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis; *PT,* prothrombin time.
Note that in this example of score implementation, a D-dimer test having an upper normal limit of 0.4 μg/mL was employed. More generally, for the particular analyte employed as an "elevated fibrin marker," no increase = 0, moderate increase = 2, and strong increase = 3.

VITAMIN K DEFICIENCY

Vitamin K, a lipid-soluble vitamin, is provided by dietary intake of leafy green vegetables and by synthesis of intestinal flora. In clinical medicine, vitamin K deficiency is seen most often in the very ill patient on antibiotics who has subsisted on parenteral nutrition. Not infrequently, intravenous fluids are not supplemented with vitamin K. After 4 to 6 weeks of parenteral nutrition and antibiotic treatment, the patient becomes vitamin K–deficient. Vitamin K deficiency can also be seen in patients who have anatomic bypass of the small intestine, malabsorption, biliary tract obstruction, and, rarely, reduced dietary intake. For example, alcoholics are often vitamin K deficient. Warfarin also inhibits the enzymatic pathway necessary for vitamin K utilization (see Fig. 42-1 in Chapter 42). Vitamin K has a critical role in the γ-carboxylation reaction of a number of glutamic acid residues within coagulation factors II, VII, IX, and X and proteins C, S, and Z. This γ-carboxylation is critical for the proteins to bind to cells and phospholipids so they can participate in physiologic coagulation reactions. Thus patients will have reduced clottable factor levels for the vitamin K–dependent factors II, VII, IX, and X. If antigen levels of these patients are measured, they will frequently be higher. In general, patients with a therapeutic level of warfarin (i.e., an INR between 2 and 3) have approximately 5% to 15% clottable factor activities, whereas their antigen factor levels are in the range of 25% to 40%.

MASSIVE TRANSFUSION

Massive transfusion has been defined as the replacement of more than 1.5 blood volume in 24 hours. For example, in a 70-kg man, 7% of body weight, or 4.9 kg or L, is the blood volume (~16-19 units, assuming that a unit of blood is 250-300 mL). Hemostatic failure can result from dilution of clotting factors, DIC, or acquired platelet dysfunction. Dilutional coagulopathy results from replacement with packed red blood cells and normal saline and lack of clotting factors or platelets. Tests of hemostasis typically show prolongation of the PT and APTT, reduced fibrinogen, and thrombocytopenia (Leslie & Toy, 1991). Additionally, in the massively transfused patient, an anticoagulant effect is seen as well, resulting from citrate in the transfused blood products.

ACQUIRED COAGULATION PROTEIN INHIBITORS AND LUPUS ANTICOAGULANT

Acquired inhibitors to coagulation proteins occur and, in some cases, increase the risk of bleeding. The clinical laboratory phenotype of these patients depends on the protein toward which the coagulation protein inhibitor is directed. The most common severe acquired coagulation protein inhibitor is that against FVIII. These patients present with bleeding and a long APTT. Characteristically, one sees this inhibitor in elderly patients, patients with B cell malignancies, patients with connective tissue disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus, and postpartum patients. These patients are managed acutely with high-dose FVIII, activated vitamin K–dependent coagulation factor concentrates, or rVIIa, but long-term, management may require immunosuppression with Cytoxan, prednisone, or rituximab (Lian et al, 1989; Aggarwal et al, 2005). Management decisions in these patients are influenced by the severity of bleeding and by the titer of the inhibitor to FVIII, as determined by the Bethesda assay.

Acquired deficiencies or inhibitors are also seen in a number of medical conditions. Systemic amyloidosis is associated with decreases in plasma factor X or IX as a result of adsorption of the coagulation proteins onto the amyloid protein (McPherson et al, 1977; Furie et al, 1981; Mumford et al, 2000; Thompson et al, 2010). In the case of factor X, the PT and APTT may be affected; in the case of factor IX, only the APTT. Hypergammaglobulinemic states seen with multiple myeloma or Waldenström's

macroglobulinemia (IgM) can be associated with pan-inhibitors to coagulation protein function (Glaspy, 1992). Dysfibrinogenemias are also common in these patients.

The last type of inhibitor seen is the lupus anticoagulant or antiphospholipid antibody that influences coagulation protein reactions. Briefly, these inhibitors are antibodies directed to epitopes of proteins bound to phospholipids (Lafer et al, 1981; Levine et al, 2002). The lupus anticoagulant (LA) phenomenon relates to the ability of antiphospholipid antibody to prolong in vitro clotting assays like the APTT, the dilute Russell viper venom time (dRVVT), the kaolin clotting time (KCT), and, less frequently, the prothrombin time. APTT prolongation is not reversed after dilution 1:1 with normal platelet-free plasma (Pengo et al, 2009). The degree of interference depends on the nature of the commercial reagent. Paradoxically, unless these patients have additionally developed an inhibitor against a specific coagulation factor, they are not at bleeding risk; rather, they may be at risk for thrombosis, which at times can be a vicious prothrombotic state (Mueh et al, 1980; Rand, 2003). Antiphospholipid antibodies may also interfere with several anticoagulation mechanisms such as annexin V, thus enhancing prothrombinase on endothelial cells and prostacyclin production from endothelial cells. For a more detailed discussion of lupus anticoagulants and the antiphospholipid syndrome, see Chapter 41.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Adcock DM, Kressin DC, Marlar RA: Effect of 3.2% vs 3.8% sodium citrate concentration on routine coagulation testing, *Am J Clin Pathol* 107:105–110, 1997.
Important paper that justifies the use of 3.2 g% sodium citrate as the anticoagulation standard for collection of samples for clinical coagulation testing.

Brandt JT, Triplett DA, Alving B, et al: Criteria for the diagnosis of lupus anticoagulant: An update, *Thromb Haemost* 74:1185–1190, 1995a.
Important paper that begins to define criteria for making the diagnosis of a lupus anticoagulant.

Chang SH, Tillema V, Scherr D: A percent correction formula for evaluation of mixing studies, *Am J Clin Pathol* 117:62–73, 2002.
Helpful paper that begins to provide some evidence-based laboratory medicine on how screening mixing studies should be performed.

Colman RW, Robboy SJ, Minna JD: Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC): An approach, *Am J Med* 52:679–689, 1972.
Classic paper on disseminated intravascular coagulation.

Gailiani D, Broze G: Factor XI activation in a revised model of blood coagulation, *Science* 253:909–912, 1991.
Classic paper that presents for the first time the modern view of assembly and interaction of proteins of the coagulation system.

Levine JS, Branch W, Rauch J: The antiphospholipid syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 346:752–763, 2002.
Important paper that presents criteria for diagnosis of the antiphospholipid antibody syndrome.

Marder VJ, Budzynski AZ, Barlow GH: Comparison of the physio-chemical properties of fragment D derivatives of fibrinogen and fragment D-D of cross-linked fibrin, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 427:1–14, 1976.
Classic paper describing the D-dimer.

Proctor RR, Rapaport SI: The partial thromboplastin time with kaolin: A simple screening test for first stage plasma clotting factor deficiencies, *Am J Clin Pathol* 36:212–219, 1961.
Description of activated partial thromboplastin time.

Quick AJ, Stanley-Brown M, Bancroft FW: A study of the coagulation defect in hemophilia and in jaundice, *Am J Med Sci* 190:501–511, 1935.
Description of prothrombin time.

Shariat-Madar Z, Mahdi F, Schmaier AH: Identification and characterization of prolylcarboxypeptidase as an endothelial cell prekallikrein activator, *J Biol Chem* 277:17962–17969, 2002.
Paper that identifies a physiologic activator of the plasma kallikrein/kinin system, the so-called contact activation system.

REFERENCES

Adcock DM, Kressin DC, Marlar RA: Minimum specimen volume requirements for routine coagulation testing: Dependence on citrate concentration, *Am J Clin Pathol* 109:595–599, 1998.

Aggarwal A, Grewal R, Green RJ, et al: Rituximab for autoimmune haemophilia: A proposed treatment algorithm, *Haemophilia* 11:13–19, 2005.

Agren A, Wikman AT, Holmstrom M, et al: Thromboelastography (TEG(R)) compared to conventional coagulation tests in surgical patients—A laboratory evaluation, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 73:214–220, 2013.

Ahmad SS, Scandura JM, Walsh PN: Structural and functional characterization of platelet receptor-mediated factor VIII binding, *J Biol Chem* 275:13071–13081, 2000.

Aleman MM, Bymes JR, Wang JG, et al: Factor XIII activity mediates red blood cell retention in venous thrombi, *J Clin Invest* 124:3590–3600, 2014.

Andrew M, Vegh P, Johnston M, et al: Maturation of the hemostatic system during childhood, *Blood* 80:1998–2005, 1992.

Antovic A: The overall hemostasis potential: A laboratory tool for the investigation of global hemostasis, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 36:772–779, 2010.

Anwar R, Miloszewski KJ: Factor XIII deficiency, *Br J Haematol* 107:468–484, 1999.

Aoki N, Sakata Y, Matsuda M, et al: Fibrinolytic states in a patient with congenital deficiency of alpha 2-plasmin inhibitor, *Blood* 55:483–488, 1980.

Ardillon L, Lefrançois A, Graveleau J, et al: Management of bleeding in severe factor V deficiency with a factor V inhibitor, *Vox Sang* 107(1):97–99, 2014.

Arun B, Kessler CM: Clinical manifestations and therapy of the hemophilias. In Colman RW, Hirsh J, Marder VJ, et al, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis: Basic principles and clinical practice*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2001, Lippincott-Raven.

Asakai R, Chung DW, Davie EW, et al: Factor XI deficiency in Ashkenazi Jews in Israel, *N Engl J Med* 325:153–158, 1991.

Barnathan ES, Kuo A, van der Keyl H, et al: Binding of tissue type plasminogen activator to human endothelial cells: Evidence for two distinct binding sites, *J Biol Chem* 263:7792–7799, 1988.

Bauduer F, de Raucourt E, Boyer-Neumann C, et al: French Postmarketing Study Group. Factor XI replacement for inherited factor XI deficiency in routine clinical practice: Results of the HEMOLEVEN prospective 3-year postmarketing study, *Haemophilia* 21(4):481–489, 2015.

Blanchette VS, Key NS, Ljung LR, et al: Definitions in hemophilia: Communication from the SSC of the ISTH, *J Thromb Haemost* 12(11):1935–1939, 2014.

Board PG, Losowsky MS, Miloszewski KJ, et al: Inherited and acquired deficiency, *Blood Rev* 7:229–242, 1993.

Bockenstedt PL: Laboratory methods in hemostasis. In Loscalzo J, Schafer AI, editors: *Thrombosis and hemorrhage*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2003, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Boggio L, Green D: Recombinant human factor VIIa in the management of amyloid-associated factor X deficiency, *Br J Haematol* 112:1074–1075, 2001.

Bolton-Maggs PH, Patterson DA, Wensley RT, et al: Definition of the bleeding tendency in factor XI–deficient kindreds—A clinical and laboratory study, *Thromb Haemost* 73:194–202, 1995.

Bolton-Maggs PH, Perry DJ, Chalmers EA, et al: The rare coagulation disorders—Review with guidelines for management from the United Kingdom Haemophilia Centre Doctors' Organisation, *Haemophilia* 10:593–628, 2004.

Bolton-Maggs PH, Young Wan-Yin B, McCraw AH, et al: Inheritance and bleeding in factor XI deficiency, *Br J Haematol* 69:521–528, 1988.

Bouchard BA, Chapin J, Brummel-Ziedins KE, et al: Platelets and platelet-derived factor Va confer hemostatic competence in complete factor V deficiency, *Blood* 125(23):3647–3650, 2015.

Brandt JT, Barna LK, Triplett DA: Laboratory identification of lupus anticoagulants: Results of the second-ary international workshop for identification of lupus anticoagulants, *Thromb Haemost* 74:1597–1603, 1995b.

Brenner B, Laor A, Lupo H, et al: Bleeding predictors in factor-XI–deficient patients, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 8:511–515, 1997.

Brenner B, Sanchez-Vega B, Wu SM, et al: A missense mutation in gamma-glutamyl carboxylase gene causes combined deficiency of all vitamin K–dependent blood coagulation factors, *Blood* 92:4554–4559, 1998.

Broze GJ Jr: The rediscovery and isolation of TFPI, *J Thromb Haemost* 1:1671–1675, 2003.

Büller HR, Bethune C, Bhanot S, et al: Factor XI antisense oligonucleotide for prevention of venous thrombosis, *N Engl J Med* 372:232–240, 2015.

Burstyn-Cohen T, Heeb MJ, Lemke G: Lack of protein S in mice causes embryonic lethal coagulopathy and vascular dysgenesis, *J Clin Invest* 119:2942–2953, 2009.

Caplice NM, Panetta C, Peterson TE, et al: Lipoprotein (a) binds and inactivates tissue factor pathway inhibitor: A novel link between lipoproteins and thrombosis, *Blood* 98(10):2980–2987, 2001.

Ceriani E, Combescure C, Le Gal G, et al: Clinical prediction rules for pulmonary embolism: A systematic review and meta-analysis, *J Thromb Haemost* 8: 957–970, 2010.

Cesarman GM, Guevara CA, Hajjar KA: An endothelial cell receptor for plasminogen/tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA). II. Annexin II–mediated enhancement of t-PA–dependent plasminogen activation, *J Biol Chem* 269:21198–21203, 1994.

Chafa O, Chellali T, Sternberg C, et al: Severe hypofibrinogenemia associated with bilateral ischemic necrosis of toes and fingers, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 6:549–552, 1995.

Colman RW, Bagdasarian A, Talarnos RC, et al: Williams trait: Human kininogen deficiency with diminished levels of plasminogen proactivator and prekallikrein associated with abnormalities of the Hageman factor–dependent pathways, *J Clin Invest* 56:1650–1662, 1975.

Coughlin SR: Thrombin signaling and protease-activated receptors, *Nature* 407:258–264, 2000.

Cozzi MR, Guglielmini G, Battiston M, et al: Visualization of nitric oxide production by individual platelets during adhesion in flowing blood, *Blood* 125(4):697–705, 2015.

Crawley JTB, Lane DA: The haemostatic role of tissue factor pathway inhibitor, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 28:233–242, 2008.

Crossley M, Ludwig M, Stowell KM, et al: Recovery from hemophilia B Leyden: An androgen-responsive element in the factor IX promoter, *Science* 257:377–379, 1992.

Cui J, O'Shea KS, Purkayastha A, et al: Fatal haemorrhage and incomplete block to embryogenesis in mice lacking coagulation factor V, *Nature* 384:66–68, 1996.

Day SM, Reeve JL, Pedersen B, et al: Macrovascular thrombosis is driven by tissue factor derived primarily from the blood vessel wall, *Blood* 106:192–198, 2005.

Del Zoppo GJ: Bleeding in the brain: Amyloid-β may keep clots away, *Nat Med* 15:1132–1133, 2009.

de Moerloose P, Casini A, Neerman-Arbez M: Congenital fibrinogen disorders: An update, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 39(6):585–595, 2013.

Dewerchin M, Liang Z, Moons L, et al: Blood coagulation factor X deficiency causes partial embryonic lethality and fatal neonatal bleeding in mice, *Thromb Haemost* 83:185–190, 2000.

Doolittle RF: Fibrinogen and fibrin, *Sci Am* 245:126–135, 1981.

Dorey E: First recombinant factor XIII approved, *Nat Biotechnol* 32(3):210, 2014.

Draxler DF, Medcalf RL: The fibrinolytic system—More than fibrinolysis?, *Transfus Med Rev* 29(2):102–109, 2015.

Dupuy E, Soria C, Molho P, et al: Embolized ischemic lesions of toes in an afibrinogenemic patient: Possible relevance to in vivo circulating thrombin, *Thromb Res* 102:211–219, 2001.

Eckhardt CL, van Velzen AS, Peters M, et al: Factor VIII gene (F8) mutation and risk of inhibitor development in nonsevere hemophilia A, *Blood* 122:1954–1962, 2013.

Emsley J, Mcewan PA, Gailani D: Structure and function of factor XI, *Blood* 115:2569–2577, 2010.

Esmon CT: The endothelial protein C receptor, *Curr Opin Hematol* 13:382, 2006.

Esmon CT: Endothelial protein C receptor, *Thromb Haemost* 82:251–258, 1999.

Esmon CT, Owen WG: Identification of an endothelial cell cofactor for thrombin—Catalytic activation of protein C, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 78:2249–2252, 1981.

European Medicines Agency (EMA): Workshop report: Characterisation of new clotting factor concentrates (FVIII, FIX) with respect to potency assays used for labelling and testing of post infusion samples. Human Medicines Development and Evaluation. 26 June 2014 EMA/135928/2014.

Falati S, Gross P, Merrill-Skoloff G: Real-time in vivo imaging of platelets, tissue factor and fibrin during arterial thrombus formation in the mouse, *Nat Med* 8:1175–1180, 2002.

Fay WP, Shapiro AD, Shih JL, et al: Brief report: Complete deficiency of plasminogen-activator inhibitor type 1 due to a frame-shift mutation, *N Engl J Med* 327:1729–1733, 1992.

Fickenscher K, Aab A, Stuber W: A photometric assay for blood coagulation factor XIII, *Thromb Haemost* 65:535–540, 1991.

Finigan JH, Dudek SM, Singleton PA, et al: Activated protein C mediates novel lung endothelial barrier enhancement: Role of sphingosine 1-phosphate receptor transactivation, *J Biol Chem* 280:17286–17293, 2005.

Fishman DJ, Jones PK, Menitove JE, et al: Detection of the carrier state for classic hemophilia using an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), *Blood* 59:1163–1168, 1982.

Fried K, Kaufman S: Congenital afibrinogenemia in 10 offspring of uncle–niece marriages, *Clin Genet* 17:223–227, 1980.

Funk C, Gmür J, Herold R, et al: Reptilase-R—A new reagent in blood coagulation, *Br J Haematol* 21:43–52, 1971.

Furie B: Pathogenesis of thrombosis, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 255–258, 2009.

Furie B, Furie BC: Thrombus formation in vivo, *J Clin Invest* 115:3355–3362, 2005.

Furie B, Voo L, McAdam KP, et al: Mechanism of factor X deficiency in systemic amyloidosis, *N Engl J Med* 304:827–830, 1981.

Ganter MT, Hofer CK: Coagulation monitoring: Current techniques and clinical use of viscoelastic point-of-care coagulation devices, *Anesth Analg* 106: 1366–1375, 2008.

Gawryl MS, Hoyer LW: Inactivation of factor VIII coagulant activity by two different types of human antibodies, *Blood* 60:1103–1109, 1982.

Girolami A, Cattarozzi G, Dal Bo Zanon R, et al: Padua$_2$: Another factor VII abnormality with defective ox brain thromboplastin activation and a complex hereditary pattern, *Blood* 54:46–53, 1979.

Girolami A, Simioni P, Scarano L, et al: Hemorrhagic and thrombotic disorders due to factor V deficiencies and abnormalities: An updated classification, *Blood Rev* 12:5–51, 1998.

Girolami A, Vidal J, Salagh M, et al: The old and the new in prekallikrein deficiency: Historical context and a family from Argentina with PK deficiency due to a new mutation (Arg541Gln) in exon 14 associated with a common polymorphysm (Asn124Ser) in exon 5, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 40(5):592–599, 2014.

Glaspy JA: Hemostatic abnormalities in multiple myeloma and related disorders, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 6:1301–1314, 1992.

Goodwin TM: Congenital hypofibrinogenemia in pregnancy, *Obstet Gynecol Surv* 44:157–161, 1989.

Graham JB: Genotype assignment (carrier detection) in the haemophilias, *Clin Haematol* 8:115–145, 1979.

Graham JB, Rizza CR, Chediak J, et al: Carrier detection in hemophilia A: A cooperative international study. I. The carrier phenotype, *Blood* 67:1554–1559, 1986.

Green PP, Mannucci PM, Briet E, et al: Carrier detection in hemophilia A: A cooperative international study. II. The efficacy of a universal discriminant, *Blood* 67:1560–1567, 1986.

Greenberg CS, Lai T-S: Fibrin formation and stabilization. In Loscalzo J, Schafer AI, editors: *Thrombosis and hemorrhage*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2003, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Han ED, MacFarlane RC, Mulligan AN, et al: Increased vascular permeability in C1 inhibitor–deficient mice mediated by the bradykinin type 2 receptor, *J Clin Invest* 109:1057–1063, 2002.

Hanss M, Biot F: A database for human fibrinogen variants, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 936:89–90, 2001.

Hartert H: Blutgerinnungsstudien mit der Thrombelastographie: Einem neuen Untersuchungsverfahren, *Klin Wochenschr* 26:577–583, 1948.

Hay CRM, Brown S, Collins PW, et al: The diagnosis and management of factor VIII and IX inhibitors: a guideline from the United Kingdom Haemophilia Center Doctors Organization, *Br J Haematol* 133:591–605, 2006.

Hayashi M, Matsushita T, Mackman N, et al: Fatal thrombosis of antithrombin-deficient mice is rescued differently in the heart and liver by intercrossing with low tissue factor mice, *J Thromb Haemost* 4:177–185, 2006.

He L, Pappan LK, Grenache DG, et al: The contributions of the alpha 2 beta 1 integrin to vascular thrombosis in vivo, *Blood* 102:3652–3657, 2003.

Heemskerk JW, Mattheij NJ, Cosemans JM: Platelet-based coagulation: Different populations, different functions, *J Thromb Haemost* 11(1):2–16, 2013.

Hitomi K, Kitamura M, Perez Alea M, et al: A specific colorimetric assay for measuring transglutaminase 1 and factor XIII activities, *Anal Biochem* 394:281–283, 2009.

Hoffman M, Monroe DM: A cell-based model of hemostasis, *Thromb Haemost* 85(6):958–965, 2001.

Hong SL: Effect of bradykinin and thrombin on prostacyclin synthesis in endothelial cells from calf and pig aorta and human umbilical cord vein, *Thromb Res* 18:787–795, 1980.

Hsieh L, Nugent D: Factor XIII deficiency, *Hemophilia* 14:1190–1200, 2008.

Hua B, Fan L, Liang Y, et al: Alpha-1-antitrypsin Pittsburgh in a family with bleeding tendency, *Haematologica* 94:881–884, 2009.

Huang Z-F, Higuchi D, Lasky N, et al: Tissue factor pathway inhibitor gene disruption produces intrauterine lethality in mice, *Blood* 90:944–951, 1997.

Ivanciu L, Krishnaswamy S, Camire RM: New insights into the spatiotemporal localization of prothrombinase in vivo, *Blood* 124:1705–1714, 2014.

Jalbert LR, Rosen ED, Moons L, et al: Inactivation of the gene for anticoagulant protein C causes lethal perinatal consumptive coagulopathy in mice, *J Clin Invest* 102:1481–1488, 1998.

Johansson PI, Stissing T, Bochsen L, et al: Thrombelastography and tromboelastometry in assessing coagulopathy in trauma, *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med* 17:45, 2009.

Kannemeier C, Shibamiya A, Nakazawa F, et al: Extracellular RNA constitutes a natural procoagulant cofactor in blood coagulation, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 104:6388–6393, 2007.

Kasper CK, Aledort L, Counts RB, et al: A more uniform measurement of factor VIII inhibitors, *Thromb Diath Haemorrh* 34:869–872, 1975.

Kaufman RJ, Antonarakis SE, Fay PJ, et al: Factor VIII and hemophilia A. In Colman RW, Hirsh J, Marder VJ, et al, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2001, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, pp 135–156.

Kessler CM, Hoyer L, Feinstein DI: The hemophilias. In McArthur JR, Schechter GP, editors: *Hematology: The educational program of the American Society of Hematology*, Washington, DC, 1996, American Society of Hematology, pp 95–105.

Kitchen S, Malia RG, Preston FE: A comparison of methods for the measurement of activated factor VII, *Thromb Haemost* 68:301–305, 1992.

Kobayashi T, Kanayama N, Tokunaga N, et al: Prenatal and peripartum management of congenital afibrinogenaemia, *Br J Haematol* 109:364–366, 2000.

Kohler HP, Ariens RA, Whitaker P, et al: A common coding polymorphism in the FXIII α-subunit gene (FXIIIVal34Leu) affects cross-linking activity, *Thromb Haemost* 80:704, 1998.

Koracevic GP: Pragmatic classification of the causes of high D-dimer, *Am J Emerg Med* 27:1016.e5–1016.e7, 2009.

Kravtsov DV, Matafonov A, Tucker EI, et al: Factor XI contributes to thrombin generation in the absence of factor XII, *Blood* 114:452–458, 2009.

Lafer EM, Rauch J, Andrzejewski C Jr, et al: Polyspecific monoclonal lupus autoantibodies reactive with both polynucleotides and phospholipids, *J Exp Med* 153: 897–909, 1981.

Lak M, Keihani M, Elahi F, et al: Bleeding and thrombosis in 55 patients with inherited afibrinogenaemia, *Br J Haematol* 107:204–206, 1999.

Lakich D, Kazazian H, Antonarakis SE, et al: Inversions disrupting the factor VIII gene are a common cause of severe hemophilia A, *Nat Genet* 5:236–241, 1993.

Landell RD, Wagner RH, Brinkhous KM: Effect of antihemophilic factor on one-stage clotting tests: A presumptive test for hemophilia and a simple one-stage antihemophilic factor assay procedure, *J Lab Clin Med* 41:637–647, 1953.

LaRusch GA, Mahdi F, Shariat-Madar Z, et al: Factor XII stimulates ERK1/2 and Akt through uPAR, integrins, and the EGFR to initiate angiogenesis, *Blood* 115:5111–5120, 2010.

Lawrie AS, Kitchen S, Purdy G, et al: Assessment of actin FS and actin FSL sensitivity to specific clotting factor deficiencies, *Clin Lab Haematol* 20:179–186, 1998.

Leiba H, Ramot B, Many A: Heredity and coagulation studies in ten families with factor XI (plasma thromboplastin antecedent) deficiency, *Br J Haematol* 11: 654–665, 1965.

Leslie SD, Toy PT: Laboratory hemostatic abnormalities in massively transfused patients given red blood cells and crystalloid, *Am J Clin Pathol* 96:770–773, 1991.

Leurs J, Hendriks D: Carboxypeptidase U (TAFIa): A metallocarboxypeptidase with a distinct role in haemostasis and a possible risk factor for thrombotic disease, *Thromb Haemost* 94:471–487, 2005.

Levi M, Toh CH, Tachil J, et al: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of disseminated intravascular coagulation, *Br J Haematol* 145:24–33, 2009.

Lian EC, Larcada AF, Chiu AY: Combination immunosuppressive therapy after factor VIII infusion for acquired factor VIII inhibitor, *Ann Intern Med* 110:774–778, 1989.

Liang Y, Fu Y, Qi R, et al: Cartilage oligomeric matrix protein is a natural inhibitor of thrombin, *Blood* 126:905–914, 2015.

Ljung RCR: Prenatal diagnosis of haemophilia, *Haemophilia* 5:84–87, 1999.

Lorand L, Losowsky MS, Miloszewski KJM: Human factor XIII: Fibrin-stabilizing factor. In Spaet TH, editor: *Progress in hemostasis and thrombosis*, New York, 1980, Grune and Stratton, pp 245–249.

Luna-Zaizar H, Esparza-Flores MA, Lopez-Guido B, et al: Kinetics of factor VIII: C inhibitors and treatment response in severe hemophilia patients, *Int J Lab Hematol* 31:673–682, 2009.

Maas C, Govers-Riemslag JW, Bouma B, et al: Misfolded proteins activate factor XII in humans, leading to kallikrein formation without initiating coagulation, *J Clin Invest* 118:3208–3218, 2008.

MacFarland D: An enzyme cascade in the blood clotting mechanism, and its functions as a biochemical amplifier, *Nature* 202:498–499, 1964.

Mahdi F, Rehemtulla A, Van Nostrand WE, et al: Protease nexin-2/amyloid β-protein precursor regulates factor VIIa and the factor VIIa–tissue factor complex, *Thromb Res* 99:267–276, 2000.

Mahdi F, Van Nostrand WE, Schmaier AH: Protease nexin-2/amyloid β-protein precursor inhibits factor Xa in the prothrombinase complex, *J Biol Chem* 270:23468–23474, 1995.

Manco-Johnson MJ, Abshire TC, Shapiro AD, et al: Prophylaxis versus episodic treatment to prevent joint disease in boys with severe hemophilia, *N Engl J Med* 357:535–544, 2007.

Mann KG: Thrombin formation, *Chest* 124:4S–10S, 2003.

Mannucci PM, Duga S, Peyvandi F: Recessively inherited coagulation disorders, *Blood* 104:1243–1252, 2004.

Marcum JA, McKenney JB, Rosenberg RD: Acceleration of thrombin-antithrombin complex formation in rat hindquarters via heparinlike molecules bound to endothelium, *J Clin Invest* 74:341–350, 1984.

Marder VJ, Budzynski AZ: Degradation products of fibrinogen and cross-linked fibrin-projected clinical applications, *Thromb Diath Haemorrh* 32:49–56, 1974.

Mariani G, Bernardi F: Factor VII deficiency, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:400–406, 2009.

Martinelli RA, Scheraga HA: Steady state kinetic study of the bovine thrombin-fibrinogen interaction, *Biochemistry* 19:2343–2350, 1980.

Matsumoto T, Nogami K, Shima M: Simultaneous measurement of thrombin and plasmin generation to assess the interplay between coagulation and fibrinolysis, *Thromb Haemost* 110:761–768, 2013.

McPherson RA, Onstad JW, Ugoretz RJ, et al: Coagulopathy in amyloidosis: Combined deficiency of factors IX and X, *Am J Hematol* 3:225–235, 1977.

Meijers JCM, Tekelenburg WL, Bouma BN, et al: High levels of coagulation factor XI as a risk factor for venous thrombosis, *N Engl J Med* 342:696–701, 2000.

Merkoulov S, Komar AA, Schmaier AH, et al: Deletion of the murine kininogen gene 1 (mKng1) causes loss of plasma kininogen and delays thrombosis, *Blood* 111:1274–1281, 2008.

Miesbach W, Scharrer I, Henschen A, et al: Inherited dysfibrinogenemia: Clinical phenotypes associated with five different fibrinogen structure defects, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 21:35–40, 2010.

Miletich JP, Majerus DW, Majerus PW: Patients with congenital factor V deficiency have decreased factor Xa binding sites on their platelets, *J Clin Invest* 62: 824–831, 1978.

Miller G, Silberberg M, Kaplan AP: Autoactivability of human Hageman factor, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 92:803–810, 1980.

Mitchell JA, Ali F, Bailey L, et al: Role of nitric oxide and prostacyclin as vasoactive hormones released by the endothelium, *Exp Physiol* 93(1):141–147, 2008.

Morrissey JH: Polyphosphate: A link between platelets, coagulation and inflammation, *Int J Hematol* 95:346–352, 2012.

Motta G, Rojkjaer R, Hasan AK, et al: High molecular weight kininogen regulates prekallikrein assembly and activation on endothelial cells: A novel mechanism for contact activation, *Blood* 91:516–528, 1998.

Mueh JR, Herbst KD, Rapaport SI: Thrombosis in patients with the lupus anticoagulant, *Ann Intern Med* 92:156–159, 1980.

Mumford AD, Ackroyd S, Alikhan R, et al: Guideline for the diagnosis and management of the rare coagulation disorders: A United Kingdom Haemophilia Centre Doctors' Organization guideline on behalf of the British Committee for Standards in Haematology, *Br J Haematol* 167(3):304–326, 2014.

Mumford AD, O'Donnell J, Gillmore JD, et al: Bleeding symptoms and coagulation abnormalities in 337 patients with AL-amyloidosis, *Br J Haematol* 110:454–460, 2000.

Napolitano M, Mariani G, Lapecorella M: Hereditary combined deficiency of the vitamin K–dependent clotting factors, *Orphanet J Rare Dis* 5:21, 2010.

Nawarawong W, Wyshock E, Meloni FJ, et al: The rate of fibrinopeptide B release modulates the rate of clot formation: A study with an acquired inhibitor to fibrinopeptide B release, *Br J Haematol* 79:296–301, 1991.

Naylor JA, Green PM, Rizza CR, et al: Factor VIII gene explains all cases of haemophilia A, *Lancet* 340:1066–1067, 1992.

Nichols WC, Seligsohn U, Zivelin A, et al: Mutations in the ER-Golgi intermediate compartment protein ERGIC-53 cause combined deficiency of coagulation factors V and VIII, *Cell* 93:61–70, 1998.

Okajima K, Kohno I, Soe G, et al: Direct evidence for systemic fibrinogenolysis in patients with acquired alpha-2-plasmin inhibitor deficiency, *Am J Hematol* 45:16–24, 1994.

Osterud B, Rappaport SI: Activation of factor IX by the reaction product of tissue factor and factor VII, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 74:5260–5264, 1977.

Owen MC, Brennan SO, Lewis JH, et al: Mutation of antitrypsin to antithrombin: Alpha-1-antitrypsin Pittsburgh (358 Met to Arg), a fatal bleeding disorder, *N Engl J Med* 309:694–698, 1983.

Palmer RMJ, Ferrige AG, Moncada S: Nitric oxide release accounts for the biologic activity of endothelium-derived relaxing factor, *Nature* 327:524–526, 1987.

Pavlova A, Oldenburg J: Defining severity of hemophilia: More than factor levels, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 39(7):702–710, 2013.

Peerschke EI, Castellone DD, Ledford-Kraemer M, et al: Laboratory assessment of factor VIII inhibitor titer: The North American Specialized Coagulation Laboratory Association experience, *Am J Clin Pathol* 131:552–558, 2009.

Pengo V, Tripodi A, Reber G, et al: Update of the guidelines for lupus anticoagulant detection. Subcommittee on Lupus Anticoagulant/Antiphospholipid Antibody of the Scientific and Standardisation Committee of the International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis, *J Thromb Haemost* 7:1737, 2009.

Perry DJ: Antithrombin and its inherited deficiencies, *Blood Rev* 8(1):37–55, 1994.

Perry DJ, Fitzmaurice DA, Kitchen S, et al: Point-of-care testing in haemostasis, *Br J Haematol* 150:501–514, 2010.

Peyvandi F, Mannucci PM: Rare coagulation disorders, *Thromb Haemost* 82:1207–1214, 1999.

Peyvandi F, Mannucci PM, Asti D, et al: Clinical manifestations in 28 Italian and Iranian patients with

severe factor VII deficiency, *Haemophilia* 3:242–246, 1997.
Peyvandi F, Mannucci PM, Lak M, et al: Congenital factor X deficiency: Spectrum of bleeding symptoms in 32 Iranian patients, *Br J Haematol* 102:626–628, 1998a.
Peyvandi F, Tuddenham EG, Akhtari AM, et al: Bleeding symptoms in 27 Iranian patients with the combined deficiency of factor V and factor VIII, *Br J Haematol* 100:773–776, 1998b.
Pike GN, Cumming AM, Hay CR, et al: Sample conditions determine the ability of thrombin generation parameters to identify bleeding phenotype in FXI deficiency, *Blood* 126(3):397–405, 2015.
Pinsky DJ, Broekman MJ, Peschon JJ, et al: Elucidation of the thromboregulatory role of CD39/ectoapyrase in the ischemic brain, *J Clin Invest* 109:1031–1040, 2002.
Plug I, Mauser-Bunschoten EP, Bröcker-Vriends AH, et al: Bleeding in carriers of hemophilia, *Blood* 108:52–56, 2006.
Pollak ES, Russell TT, Ptashkin B, et al: Asymptomatic factor VII deficiency in African Americans, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126:128–132, 2006.
Ragni MV, Lewis JH, Spero JA, et al: Factor VII deficiency, *Am J Hematol* 10:79–88, 1981.
Rak J: New checkpoint of the coagulant phenotype, *Blood* 124:3511–3513, 2014.
Rand JH: Antiphospholipid syndrome and lupus anticoagulants. In Loscalzo J, Schafer AI, editors: *Thrombosis and hemorrhage*, Philadelphia, 2003, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
Rand MD, Lock JB, van't Veer C, et al: Blood clotting in minimally altered whole blood, *Blood* 88:3432–3445, 1996.
Ratnoff OD, Davies E: Waterfall sequence for intrinsic blood coagulation, *Science* 145:1310–1312, 1964.
Ratnoff OD, Margolius A Jr: Hageman trait: An asymptomatic disorder of blood coagulation, *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 68:149–153, 1955.
Reber G, de Moerloose P: Standardization of D-dimer testing. In Olson JD, Kitchen S, Preston FE, editors: *Quality in laboratory hemostasis and thrombosis*, 1st ed, West Sussex, UK, 2009, Blackwell Publishing Ltd, pp 99–109.
Reitsma PH: Genetic principles underlying disorders of procoagulation and anticoagulation proteins. In Colman RW, Hirsh J, Marder VJ, et al, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis: Basic principles and clinical practice*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2001, Lippincott-Raven.
Renne T, Pozgajova M, Gruner S, et al: Defective thrombus formation in mice lacking coagulation factor XII, *J Exp Med* 202:271–281, 2005.
Rojkjaer R, Hasan AAK, Motta G, et al: Factor XII does not initiate prekallikrein activation on endothelial cells, *Thromb Haemost* 80:74–81, 1998.
Rosen ED, Chan JCY, Idusogie E, et al: Mice lacking factor VII develop normally but suffer fatal perinatal bleeding, *Nature* 390:290–294, 1997.
Ruiz-Saez A: Occurrence of thrombosis in rare bleeding disorders, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 39:684–692, 2013.
Saito H, Ratnoff OD, Waldmann R, et al: Fitzgerald trait: Deficiency of a hitherto unrecognized agent, Fitzgerald factor, participating in surface mediated reactions of clotting, fibrinolysis, generation of kinins, and the property of diluted plasma enhancing vascular permeability, *J Clin Invest* 55:1082–1089, 1975.
Salomon O, Zivelin A, Livnat T, et al: Prevalence, causes, and characterization of factor XI inhibitors in patients with inherited factor XI deficiency, *Blood* 101:4783–4788, 2003.
Schmaier AH: Disseminated intravascular coagulation—Pathogenesis and management, *J Intens Care Med* 6: 209–228, 1991.
Schmaier AH: The plasma kallikrein/kinin system counterbalances the renin angiotensin system, *J Clin Invest* 109:1007–1009, 2002.
Schmaier AH: The kallikrein/kinin and the renin angiotensin systems have a multi-layered interaction, *Am J Physiol Reg Integr Comp Physiol* 285:R1–R13, 2003.
Schmaier AH: The physiologic basis of assembly and activation of the plasma kallikrein/kinin system, *Thromb Haemost* 91:1–3, 2004.
Schmaier AH, Dahl LD, Hasan AAK, et al: Factor IXa inhibition by protease nexin-2/amyloid β-protein precursor on phospholipid vesicles and cell membranes, *Biochemistry* 34:1171–1178, 1995.
Schmaier AH, Dahl LD, Rozemuller AJM, et al: Protease nexin-2/amyloid β-protein precursor: A tight-binding inhibitor of coagulation factor IXa, *J Clin Invest* 92:2540–2545, 1993.
Schmaier AH, Kuo A, Lundberg D, et al: Expression of high molecular weight kininogen on human umbilical vein endothelial cells, *J Biol Chem* 263:16327–16333, 1988.
Schneppenheim R, Budde U, Krey S, et al: Results of a screening for von Willebrand disease type 2N in patients with suspected haemophilia A or von Willebrand disease type 1, *Thromb Haemost* 76:598–602, 1996.
Seligsohn U, Zivelin A, Zwang E: Combined factor V and factor VIII deficiency among non-Ashkenazi Jews, *N Engl J Med* 307:1191–1195, 1982.
Shapiro AD, Paola JD, Cohen A, et al: The safety and efficacy of recombinant human blood coagulation factor IX in previously untreated patients with severe or moderately severe hemophilia B, *Blood* 105:518–525, 2005.
Shariat-Madar Z, Mahdi F, Warnock M, et al: Bradykinin B2 receptor knockout mice are protected from thrombosis by increased nitric oxide and prostacyclin, *Blood* 108:192–199, 2006.
Smith SA, Mutch NJ, Baskar D, et al: Polyphosphate modulates blood coagulation and fibrinolysis, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 103:903–908, 2006.
Smith SA, Travers RJ, Morrissey JH: How it all starts: Initiation of the clotting cascade, *Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol* 1–11, 2015.
Soucie JM, Miller CH, Kelly FM, et al, Haemophilia Inhibitor Research Study Investigators: A study of prospective surveillance for inhibitors among persons with haemophilia in the United States, *Haemophilia* 20:230–237, 2014.
Spronk MH, Wihlem S, Heemskerk JW, et al: Feedback activation of factor XI by thrombin is essential for haemostasis in vivo, *J Thromb Haemost* 7, 2009.
Stavrou EX, Fang C, Merkulova A, et al: Reduced thrombosis on *KLKB1*$^{-/-}$ mice is mediated by increased Mas receptor, prostacyclin, Sirt1 and KLF4 and decreased tissue factor, *Blood* 125:710–719, 2015.
Sun WY, Witte DP, Degen JL, et al: Prothrombin deficiency results in embryonic and neonatal lethality in mice, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 95:7597–7602, 1998.
Thompson CA, Kyle R, Gertz M, et al: Systemic AL amyloidosis with acquired factor X deficiency: A study of perioperative bleeding risk and treatment outcomes in 60 patients, *Am J Hematol* 85:171–173, 2010.
Tracy PB, Eide LL, Bowie EJ, et al: Radioimmunoassay of factor V in human plasma and platelets, *Blood* 60:59–63, 1982.
Tripodi A, Mannucci PM: The coagulopathy of chronic liver disease, *N Engl J Med* 365:147, 2011.
Tynngård N, Lindahl T, Ramström S, et al: Effects of different blood components on clot retraction analysed by measuring elasticity with a free oscillating rheometer, *Platelets* 17:545–554, 2006.
Uprichard J, Perry DJ: Factor X deficiency, *Blood Rev* 16:97–110, 2002.
Van der Meijden PEJ, Munnix ICA, Auger JM, et al: Dual role of collagen in factor XII–dependent thrombus formation, *Blood* 114:881–890, 2009.
Van Nostrand WE, Schmaier AH, Farrow JS, et al: Protease nexin-II (amyloid β-protein precursor): A platelet α-granule protein, *Science* 248:745–748, 1990.
Van Vulpen LF, Schutgens RE, Coeleveld K, et al: IL-1β, in contrast to TNFα, is pivotal in blood-induced cartilage damage and is a potential target for therapy, *Blood* 126:2239–2246, 2015.
Vatsyayan R, Kothari H, Mackman N, et al: Inactivation of factor VIIa by antithrombin in vitro, ex vivo and in vivo: Role of tissue factor and endothelial cell protein C receptor, *PLoS ONE* 9(8):e103505, 2014.
Verbruggen B, Novakova I, Wessels H, et al: The Nijmegen modification of the Bethesda assay for FVIII: C inhibitors—Improved specificity and reliability, *Thromb Haemost* 73:247–251, 1995.
Vercauteren E, Gils A, Declerck PJ: Thrombin activatable fibrinolysis inhibitor: A putative target to enhance fibrinolysis, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 39(4):365–372, 2013.
Weiss HJ, Sussman II, Hoyer LW: Stabilization of factor VIII in plasma by the von Willebrand factor: Studies on posttransfusion and dissociated factor VIII and in patients with von Willebrand's disease, *J Clin Invest* 60:390–404, 1977.
Weuppers KD, Cochrane CG: Plasma prekallikrein: Isolation, characterization, and mechanism of action, *J Exp Med* 135:1–20, 1972.
Wiggins RC, Cochrane CC: The autoactivability of human Hageman factor, *J Exp Med* 150:1122–1133, 1979.
Winstedt D, Tynngard N, Olanders K, et al: Free oscillation rheometry monitoring of haemodilution and hypothermia and correction with fibrinogen and factor XIII concentrates, *Scand J Trauma Resusc Emerg Med* 21:20, 2013.
Xu F, Previti M, Nieman M, et al: A βPP/APLP2 family of Kunitz serine protease inhibitors regulate cerebral thrombosis, *J Neurosci* 29:5666–5670, 2009.
Yang XV, Banerjee Y, Fernandez JA, et al: Activated protein C ligation of ApoER2 (LRP8) causes Dab1-dependent signaling in U937 cells, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 106:274–279, 2009.
Zaffran Y, Meyer SC, Negrescu E, et al: Signaling across the platelet adhesion receptor glycoprotein Ib-IX induces αIIbβ3 activation in both platelets and a transfected Chinese hamster ovary cell system, *J Biol Chem* 275:16779–16787, 2000.
Zhang B, Cunningham MA, Nichols WC, et al: Bleeding due to disruption of a cargo-specific ER-to-Golgi transport complex, *Nat Genet* 34:220–225, 2003.
Zhang B, Ginsburg D: Familial multiple coagulation factor deficiencies: New biologic insight from rare genetic bleeding disorders, *J Thromb Haemost* 2:1564–1572, 2004.

CHAPTER 40

PLATELET DISORDERS AND VON WILLEBRAND DISEASE

Jonathan L. Miller, A. Koneti Rao

NORMAL PLATELET BIOLOGY, 812
Platelet Structure, 812
Platelet Membrane Glycoproteins and Phospholipids, 813
Role of Platelets in Hemostasis and Platelet-Activation Mechanisms, 813

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF PLATELET FUNCTION DISORDERS, 814
Initial Laboratory Evaluation, 814
Studies of Platelet Function, 814
Platelet Aggregation and Secretion Studies, 816
Evaluation of Platelet Function Using Flow Cytometry, 816

QUANTITATIVE PLATELET DISORDERS, 816
Thrombocytopenia, 816
Thrombocytosis, 821

INHERITED DISORDERS OF PLATELET FUNCTION, 821
Disorders of Platelet Adhesion, 822
Disorders of Platelet Aggregation, 823
Disorders of Platelet Secretion and Granules, 823
Disorders of Platelet Secretion and Signaling Pathways, 824
Defects in Cytoskeletal Linking Proteins, 825
Disorders of Platelet Procoagulant Activities: Scott Syndrome, 825
Transcription Factor Mutations and Associated Platelet Dysfunction, 825
Relative Frequencies of Various Inherited Platelet Disorders, 826
Evaluation of Patients with Suspected Congenital Platelet Disorders, 826
Therapy of Congenital Platelet Function Defects, 826

ACQUIRED DISORDERS OF PLATELET FUNCTION, 826
Myeloproliferative Neoplasms, 826
Acute Leukemias and Myelodysplastic Syndromes, 827
Dysproteinemias, 827
Uremia, 827
Acquired Storage Pool Disease, 827
Antiplatelet Antibodies and Platelet Function, 828
Drugs That Inhibit Platelet Function, 828

VON WILLEBRAND FACTOR, VON WILLEBRAND DISEASE, AND THROMBOTIC THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA, 829
Von Willebrand Factor Biology, 829
Laboratory Tests for von Willebrand Factor, 830
Von Willebrand Disease, 830
Acquired von Willebrand Syndrome, 831
Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura, 832

SELECTED REFERENCES, 833

KEY POINTS

- Platelets are highly complex cells that participate in critical steps central to hemostasis and thrombosis, including adhesion to subendothelium, aggregation, secretion of granule contents, and provision of membrane surface for activation of coagulation factors.
- Abnormalities of either platelet number or of platelet function can play an important role in the balance of hemostasis and thrombosis.
- Almost unique to laboratory medicine and pathology, assessment of platelet pathology may be performed in real time upon living cells obtained from the patient.
- Von Willebrand factor is a multimeric protein synthesized by endothelial cells and megakaryocytes that plays a central role in platelet adhesive interactions.
- A number of inherited and acquired disorders, autoimmune processes, and drugs affect platelet counts and platelet function.

NORMAL PLATELET BIOLOGY

PLATELET STRUCTURE

Blood platelets are highly complex, anucleate cells that derive from bone marrow megakaryocytes. The peripheral blood film offers the opportunity for evaluation of platelet numbers, size, distribution, and structure under the light microscope. Although subtle abnormalities of platelet structure usually require electron microscopy, absence or gross abnormalities of granules and grossly aberrant platelet structure may be evident. In films from nonanticoagulated fingerstick specimens, some platelet clumping is expected. When abnormalities are observed, artifacts resulting from improper specimen collection or handling should be considered, and a repeat specimen may need to be obtained.

Electron microscopy allows more precise characterization of the structural abnormalities (White, 2004), with the opportunity to examine in greater detail the specific platelet organelles (Clauser & Cramer-Borde, 2009).

Platelet features that may be visualized ultrastructurally are shown in Figure 40-1. The outer surface of the platelet, the *glycocalyx*, is rich in glycoproteins. A submembranous band of *microtubules*, composed of the protein tubulin, provides structural support for the normally discoid cell. Contractile *microfilaments* may also be seen. These are composed principally of actin and myosin. An extensive *open canalicular system* within the platelet is in direct communication with the extracellular environment. Often seen in close proximity to the open canalicular system is the *dense tubular system*. This system, apparently derived from the smooth endoplasmic reticulum, shows positive staining for platelet peroxidase activity (Breton-Gorius & Guichard, 1972), in accord with its role as a site for arachidonic acid metabolism. The dense tubular system also functions as a calcium-sequestering pump, maintaining low levels of cytoplasmic calcium in the resting platelet.

A variety of inclusions may be recognized within the platelet cytoplasm, including *mitochondria*, *glycogen*, *and granules*. Lighter staining α-granules, less frequent dense core (or "bull's-eye") granules, lysosomes, and peroxisomes are also seen. Three-dimensional electron microscopic studies have revealed morphologically distinct α-granule subtypes, and demonstrated that high spatial segregation of different stored proteins exists within individual α-granules (van Nispen tot Pannerden et al, 2010). The α-granule proteins derive both from endocytic uptake and de novo

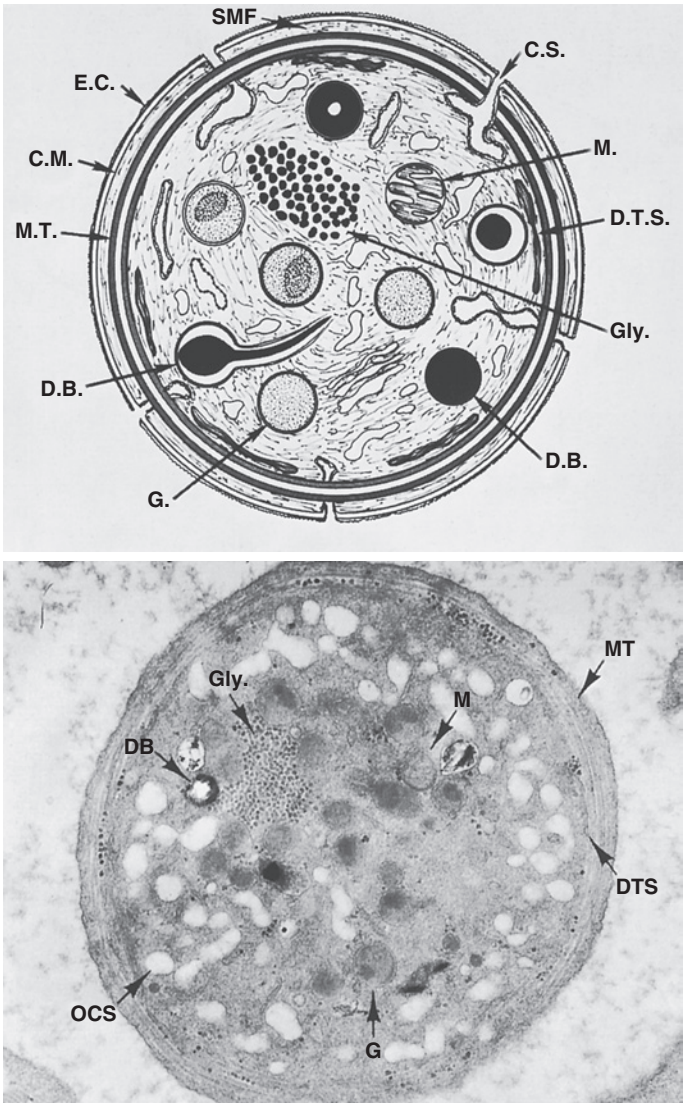


Figure 40-1 Discoid platelets. Shown are ultrastructural features observed in thin sections of discoid platelets cut in the equatorial plane. The peripheral zone includes the exterior coat (EC), the trilaminar unit membrane (CM), and the submembrane area containing specialized filaments (SMFs) that form the wall of the platelet and line channels of the surface-connected canalicular system (also referred to as the *open canalicular system,* or OCS). The matrix of the platelet interior is the sol-gel zone containing actin microfilaments, structural filaments, the circumferential band of microtubules (MTs), and glycogen (Gly). Formed elements embedded in the sol-gel zone include mitochondria (M), granules (G), and dense bodies (DBs). Collectively, they constitute the organelle zone. The membrane systems include the OCS and the dense tubular system (DTS), which serve as the platelet sarcoplasmic reticulum. The electron micrograph shows a platelet sectioned in the equatorial plane (30,000×), which reveals most of the structures indicated on the diagram. (With permission from White JG, Bloom AL, Forbes CD, et al, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis,* New York, 1994, Churchill Livingstone.)

synthesis by megakaryocytes, and include fibrinogen, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), von Willebrand factor (vWF), the factor V binding protein multimerin, β-thromboglobulin (βTG), and the heparin-neutralizing platelet factor (PF)4. P-selectin, a constituent of the alpha granule membrane, translocates to the plasma membrane of the platelet when alpha granule contents are released. The dense granules contain a nonmetabolic pool of adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and adenosine triphosphate (ATP), 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT, serotonin), calcium, and inorganic polyphosphate (polyP).

PLATELET MEMBRANE GLYCOPROTEINS AND PHOSPHOLIPIDS

Historically, detailed analyses of platelet surface glycoproteins in patients with congenital platelet disorders were key to our current understanding of how the various platelet glycoproteins subserve specific platelet function. Table 40-1 summarizes the platelet membrane glycoproteins that function as receptors for adhesive ligands. The GPIIb-IIIa receptor complex (also referred to as *integrin αIIbβ3*), which in its activated form serves as a receptor for fibrinogen, is the most abundant platelet receptor, with ~80,000 to 100,000 copies per platelet (Wagner et al, 1996; Buitrago et al, 2015). This is followed by the major platelet receptor for von Willebrand factor, GPIbα, at ~30,000 copies. GPIbα is disulfide linked to GPIbβ and noncovalently linked to GPIX and GPV, and together these glycoproteins make up the GPIb-IX-V complex (Gardiner & Andrews, 2014). The copy number for other platelet surface glycoproteins is lower.

Platelet membranes contain several phospholipids that play a major role in platelet function, including phosphatidylinositol, phosphatidylcholine, phosphatidylserine (PS), and phosphatidylethanolamine. Phosphatidylinositides are the source of signaling molecules inositoltrisphosphate and diacylglycerol that are produced following platelet activation. Negatively charged PS is expressed in the inner membrane leaflet of the resting platelet (Zwaal et al, 2005); on platelet activation, PS translocates to the outer leaflet, an essential step in the formation of a procoagulant platelet surface that is critical in several blood coagulation mechanisms (Solum, 1999). This activation-associated change in PS exposure can be assessed using flow cytometry as increased binding of annexin V to the platelet surface.

ROLE OF PLATELETS IN HEMOSTASIS AND PLATELET-ACTIVATION MECHANISMS

Following injury to the blood vessel, platelets adhere to exposed subendothelium by a process (adhesion) that involves the interaction of a plasma protein, von Willebrand factor (vWF), and a specific glycoprotein complex on the platelet surface, GPIb-IX-V (Fig. 40-2), which binds vWF particularly under conditions of high shear stress. Adhesion is followed by recruitment of additional platelets, which interact with each other to form clumps, a process called *aggregation*. This involves binding of fibrinogen to specific platelet surface receptors—a complex composed of GPIIb-IIIa, which is platelet- and megakaryocyte-specific and binds vWF as well. Resting platelets do not bind fibrinogen. Stimulation of platelets leads to a series of intracellular signaling responses, including binding of the adapter proteins talin and kindlin to the cytoplasmic tails of the GPIIb-IIIa receptor complexes (Smyth et al, 2010; Kahner et al, 2012). These binding events produce conformational changes in the GPIIb-IIIa complex that expose binding sites for fibrinogen, a prerequisite for platelet aggregation. Activated platelets release contents of their granules (secretion or release reaction), such as ADP and serotonin from the dense granules, which cause recruitment of additional platelets. In addition, platelets play a major role in coagulation mechanisms; several key enzymatic reactions occur on the platelet membrane lipoprotein surface. During platelet activation, the negatively charged phospholipid PS is exposed on the platelet surface, and this is essential for the role of platelets in accelerating specific coagulation reactions (platelet coagulant activity).

Platelet Activation and Signaling Events (see Fig. 40-2)

Several physiologic agonists interact with specific receptors on the platelet surface to induce events that culminate in the well-recognized responses, including a change in platelet shape from discoid to spherical (shape change), aggregation, secretion, and thromboxane A2 (TxA2) production (Shattil & Newman, 2004; Smyth et al, 2010). These agonists include ADP, collagen, thrombin, TxA2, epinephrine, and platelet-activating factor, and they induce signaling events in platelets. Platelets possess at least three well-defined purinergic receptors that mediate the responses to ADP: P2Y1, P2Y12, and P2X1. The P2Y1 receptor mediates the rise in cytoplasmic Ca^{2+}; the P2Y12 receptor mediates inhibition of adenylyl cyclase to lower cAMP levels in platelets and is the receptor targeted by antiplatelet agents, including clopidogrel, ticlopidine, prasugrel, and ticagrelor. P2X1 has attributes of an ion channel and may play a role in amplifying the initial phase of platelet activation (Hu & Hoylaerts, 2010). Thrombin induces platelet responses through the protease-activated receptors (PAR); human platelets possess PAR1 and PAR4 receptors. GPVI is the principal collagen receptor in platelets and is a member of the immunoglobulin receptor superfamily. Ligation of the platelet receptors by agonists such as thrombin, TxA2, and ADP initiates the production and release of several intracellular messenger molecules including products of hydrolysis of phosphoinositides (PI) by phospholipase C (diacylglycerol, and inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate [IP3]) and

TABLE 40-1
Selective List of Adhesive Platelet Membrane Glycoproteins

	Alternate Designation(s)	Structural Family	Principal Ligand(s)	Major Function
GPIIb-IIIa	CD41-CD61, $\alpha_{IIb}\beta_3$,	Integrin	Fibrinogen, von Willebrand factor (vWF)	Aggregation (platelet-platelet interaction)
GPIb-IX-V	CD42a-d complex	Leucine-rich glycoprotein	vWF, thrombin, P-selectin, coagulation contact factors	Adhesion (platelet-subendothelium interaction)
GPVI		Immunoglobulin receptor superfamily	Collagen	Signaling following platelet-collagen interaction
GPIa-IIa	CD49b-CD29, $\alpha_2\beta_1$,	Integrin	Collagen	Adhesion (platelet-collagen interaction)
P-selectin	CD62P, GMP 140, PADGEM	Selectin	P-selectin–glycoprotein ligand-1 (PSGL-1)	Platelet-leukocyte interaction
PECAM-1	CD31	Immunoglobulin receptor superfamily	PECAM-1/PECAM-1 homophilic interactions	Platelet-endothelial cell interaction
GPIV	CD36, GPIIIb	Scavenger receptor family	Thrombospondin, collagen, oxidized low-density lipoproteins	Scavenger, adhesion

conversion of arachidonic acid to TxA2. These mediators induce or modulate the various platelet responses of Ca^{2+} mobilization, protein phosphorylation, aggregation, secretion, and thromboxane production. The interaction between the platelet surface receptors and the key intracellular enzymes (e.g., phospholipases A2 and C, adenylyl cyclase) is mediated by a group of distinct proteins called *G-proteins* that bind and are modulated by GTP. As in most secretory cells, platelet activation results in a rise in cytoplasmic ionized calcium concentration; IP3 functions as a messenger to mobilize Ca^{2+} from intracellular stores. This increase in cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} levels regulates other events, such as the activation of phospholipase A2, leading to TxA2 production, and phosphorylation by myosin light-chain kinase of myosin light chain, which is involved in shape change and secretion. DAG activates the protein kinase C (PKC) family of enzymes that phosphorylate several proteins, including pleckstrin. PKC activation is considered to play a major role in platelet responses, including secretion and the activation of GPIIb-IIIa. Platelets possess several families of G-proteins that function as molecular switches in transmitting the signal from the surface receptors to the intracellular effectors. For example, PLC activation and calcium mobilization on activation by ADP (P2Y1), TxA2, or thrombin is mediated by Gαq, whereas signaling through the P2Y12 ADP receptor and inhibition of adenylyl cyclase is mediated by Gαi. Another well-recognized response of platelets to activation is synthesis of TxA2. The initial and rate-limiting step in TxA2 production is the mobilization of arachidonic acid (AA) from phospholipids (predominantly phosphatidylcholine) by phospholipase A2. Free AA is converted by cyclooxygenase to prostaglandins (PG) G2 and H2, which are converted by thromboxane synthase to TxA2. Binding of fibrinogen to the GPIIb-IIIa complex results in the activation of tyrosine kinases and associated events ("outside-in signaling") (Shattil & Newman, 2004). Numerous other mechanisms and events occur in platelets on activation, involving small GTPases, tyrosine kinases, and phosphatases; these are beyond the scope of this chapter. While the agonists mentioned earlier activate platelets to function in hemostasis, there are other agonists, such as prostacyclin (PGI2), produced by endothelial cells, which inhibit platelet responses. PGI2 does this by increasing platelet cAMP levels through activation of adenylyl cyclase.

Upon stimulation, platelets change in shape from discoid to spherical, extend pseudopods, undergo internal contraction resulting in centralization of their α-granules and dense granules, and release the granule contents. Depending upon the strength of the stimulus, the contents of the α-granules, dense granules, and lysosomal granules are released.

Following vascular injury, blood platelets rapidly adhere to the exposed subendothelium. Under lower shear conditions, as in the venous circulation, platelets may bind directly to exposed collagen by means of GP VI and GP Ia-IIa ($\alpha_2\beta_1$). Under the higher shear conditions present in the arterial circulation, adhesion is initiated by circulating vWF binding to exposed subendothelial collagen, and the surface-bound vWF then binding to the platelet via the GPIb-IX-V receptor complex (Auger et al, 2005).

Platelet Coagulant Activity

Platelets play a vital role in coagulation. Numerous proteins, including coagulation factor V and fibrinogen, are released from α-granules, and ADP, ATP, serotonin, and the pro-hemostatic polyphosphates (Smith & Morrissey, 2014) are released from dense granules. Importantly, several of the key enzymatic reactions leading to factor X and prothrombin activation, and to thrombin generation, require the platelet membrane surface to proceed at an optimum rate (Smyth et al, 2010). Following platelet activation, there is a progressive loss of platelet membrane phospholipid asymmetry, which results from movement or "flip-flop" of PS and other phospholipids from the internal to the external surface of the membrane (Zwaal et al, 2005). This is essential to the role of platelets in blood coagulation mechanisms.

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF PLATELET FUNCTION DISORDERS

INITIAL LABORATORY EVALUATION

The initial laboratory evaluation of platelet disorders includes a platelet count, a routine component of the complete blood count in an era of electronic particle counting. The normal platelet count is 150 to 400 × 10^9/L. Many instruments additionally provide the mean platelet volume (MPV) and a histogram of MPV. In healthy individuals, the MPV varies inversely with platelet count, so that interpretation of MPV is best done with reference to the platelet count (Bessman et al, 1981). Some automated instruments additionally assess platelet maturity, as reflected by the RNA content of "reticulated platelets"—analogous to reticulocyte measurements in the erythroid series (Hoffmann, 2014; Dusse & Freitas, 2015). Such measurements offer the opportunity to detect a thrombopoietic response from the bone marrow one or more days earlier than might otherwise be detected. Evaluation of the peripheral blood film provides valuable information regarding platelet count and size distribution, and on associated changes in other blood cells.

Because platelets may undergo activation and spreading in the preparation of the blood film, the apparent size distribution of platelets in the blood film may deviate from the MPV. In severe thrombocytopenia below the established linearity of a given automated instrument, or whenever cellular fragments may be spuriously affecting the automated count, a manual phase contrast count with a hemocytometer chamber may be required. However, such manual counts performed on a relatively small number of platelets have a much higher coefficient of variation than is obtained when automated instruments are used within their linear ranges, and the counts may be unreliable unless they are performed by an experienced individual.

STUDIES OF PLATELET FUNCTION

Bleeding Time

No currently available laboratory test faithfully reflects the enormously complex platelet role in hemostasis (Gorog & Fuster, 2013). For many years, the template bleeding time test was used as a "global" test for the adequacy of primary hemostasis. In such testing, a standardized cut was made on the volar surface of the forearm, the resulting drops of blood were blotted with filter paper, and the duration it took for the bleeding to stop constituted the bleeding time. An extensive review (Rodgers & Levin, 1990) of publications reporting clinical bleeding in various settings

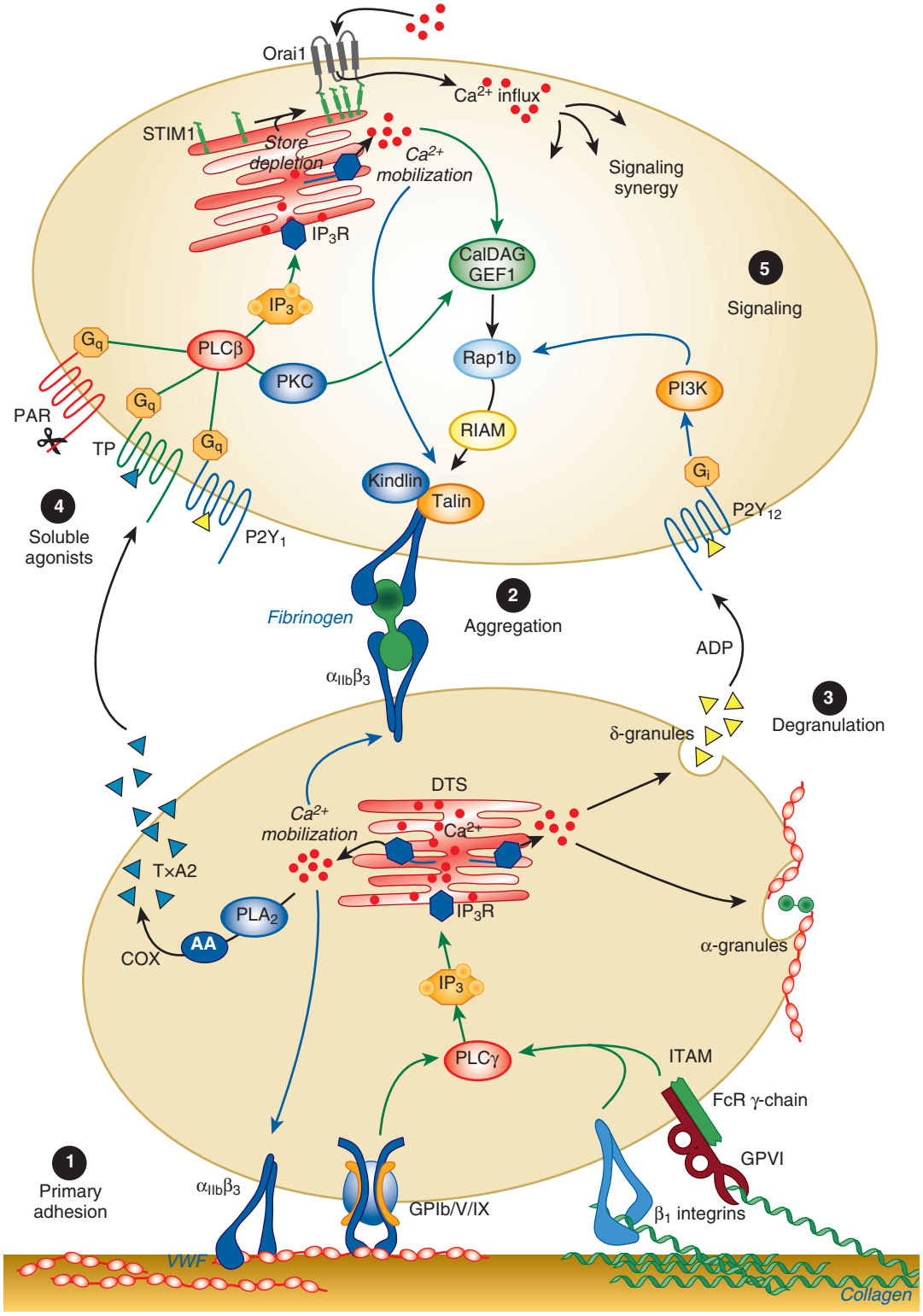


Figure 40-2 **Platelet proteins and molecular pathways important for hemostasis.** The stages of hemostatic plug formation are broadly divided into platelet adhesion and initial signaling events, platelet aggregation, secretion, soluble agonist receptor activation, and subsequent signaling. *AA,* Arachidonic acid; *AC,* adenylyl cyclase; *Ca^{2+},* calcium; *CalDAG GEF1,* calcium and diacylglycerol-regulated guanine nucleotide exchange factor; *COX,* cyclooxygenase; *DTS,* dense tubular system; *IP3,* inositol (1,4,5)-trisphosphate; *IP3R,* IP3 receptor; *ITAM,* immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif; *PAR,* protease-activated receptor; *PGH_2,* prostaglandin H_2; *PIP2,* phosphatidylinositol (4,5)-bisphosphate; *PI3K,* PI3-kinase; *PKC,* protein kinase C; *PLA_2,* phospholipase A_2; *PLC,* phospholipase C; *RIAM,* Rap1-GTP interacting adapter molecule; *Src,* Src family kinases; *STIM1,* stromal interaction molecule 1; *TP,* thromboxane receptor. (For discussion in greater depth of these molecules and their roles in platelet activation, please see Wei AH, Schoenwaelder SM, Andrews RK: New insights into the haemostatic function of platelets, *Brit J Haematol* 47:415–430, 2009 from which this figure is reproduced with permission.)

concluded that bleeding time results provided relatively poor predictive value of actual clinical bleeding. Moreover, the degree of bleeding from a standardized template cut in the skin could not be relied upon in an individual patient to predict the risk for bleeding elsewhere in the body, such as at operative sites. Because of these limitations, the risk for scarring, and the considerable technical expertise and time required in performance of the bleeding time, its use has declined considerably.

PFA-100/200

In parallel with decreased reliance upon the bleeding time has been the increased popularity of in vitro measures, most notably the platelet function analyzer (PFA-100 and PFA-200) (Favaloro & Bonar, 2014). In this instrument, anticoagulated whole blood is flowed under high shear force through a narrow hole punched out of a membrane coated with collagen and either epinephrine or ADP. The combination of biophysical shear and chemical stimulation initially promotes platelet adhesion to the outer edges of the cut membrane, and subsequently platelet-platelet aggregation leads to full occlusion of the channel, which is recorded as "closure time." This is dependent on plasma levels of vWF, platelet count and function, and hematocrit. Whereas inhibition of the platelet cyclooxygenase by aspirin or other mild-moderate impairments of platelet function prolong closure times with the collagen/epinephrine membranes, only more profound impairment of platelet function or of vWF prolong closure times in the collagen/ADP cartridges. Although abnormal in some platelet disorders, this instrument does not have sufficient sensitivity or specificity to be relied upon as a screening tool for platelet disorders (Hayward et al, 2006). Definitive identification of abnormalities of platelets or vWF requires more specific studies.

Several additional ex vivo experimental systems to assess platelet function have been developed in which shear forces play a major role. Notable among these is the development of the Impact-R instrument based upon the cone and plate method for generation of shear (Varon et al, 1998). Limitations of this method both in the diagnosis of bleeding disorders (Revel-Vilk et al, 2009) and in monitoring antiplatelet therapy (van Werkum et al, 2010) have been described. Several other methods aiming to detect inherited and acquired disorders relating both to platelets and to vWF have been developed, but their role in clinical practice still remains to be defined (Harrison & Lordkipanidze, 2013).

PLATELET AGGREGATION AND SECRETION STUDIES

Platelet function can be evaluated in vitro through study of platelet aggregation and secretion in response to a battery of platelet-stimulating agents. These studies are performed using platelet-rich plasma (PRP) harvested from blood collected using sodium citrate as the anticoagulant. Sodium citrate lowers Ca^{2+} in the blood to prevent clotting of blood, but not to the extent lowered by EDTA routinely used to collect samples for blood counts. EDTA dissociates the GPIIb-IIIa complexes on the platelet surface; thus, aggregation studies cannot be performed using such a sample. When citrated PRP is continuously stirred in a platelet aggregometer and a light beam is passed through the suspension, platelet aggregation in response to an added agonist can be monitored by changes in light transmittance. Change in platelet shape from discoid to spheroid is seen as an initial decrease in transmittance, whereas the subsequent formation of platelet clumps allows more light to pass through the suspension to the photodetector and is recorded as an increase in light transmittance (Harrison et al, 2011). Detailed recommendations from the International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis (ISTH) for the standardization of light-transmission aggregometry have also been published (Cattaneo et al, 2013). In instruments equipped with a second channel for monitoring secretion, the release of ATP from platelet-dense granules is simultaneously measured (Fig. 40-3). This is accomplished by adding the firefly luminescence substrate and enzyme, luciferin and luciferase, to the PRP; released ATP then functions as a cofactor in the light-producing luciferin-luciferase reaction, and light emission is recorded with a second photodetector. Thus, aggregation and secretion can be monitored independently and simultaneously (Miller, 1984). Some laboratories have also employed this methodology to assess ATP release without the concurrent measurement of platelet aggregation (Pai et al, 2011). The release of ATP may in most cases be assumed to reflect the release of the other constituents of dense granules, which are less easily measured (i.e., ADP, serotonin, calcium). Direct measurements of serotonin, ATP, and ADP can also be performed (Holmsen & Dangelmaier, 1989). As an alternative to lumiaggregometry studies, platelet-dense granule secretion may be studied in parallel with aggregation by labeling platelets with ^{14}C-serotonin and then measuring the release of radioactivity following platelet activation (Lan & Schmaier, 2005).

Platelets have receptors for a wide variety of agonists on their surface (see Fig. 40-2). A number of agonists may be used in the laboratory to determine if response to one or more of these is impaired. Frequently employed agonists include collagen, epinephrine, ADP, U46619 (a TxA2 analog), arachidonic acid, ristocetin, PAR-1 agonist (SFLLRN), and the calcium ionophore A23187. Platelet responses to these stimuli with the exception of ristocetin are dependent on active metabolic processes in platelets. In contrast, ristocetin-induced clumping of platelets occurs to a large degree even in the presence of metabolic inhibitors and in formalin-fixed platelets; therefore it is often referred as *agglutination*.

Although of paramount importance as a platelet stimulus in vivo, thrombin is difficult to employ with PRP, because of interference from fibrin formation. The partially trypsinized γ-thrombin, however, retains platelet-stimulating activity but largely lacks clotting activity and can be useful (Charo et al, 1977). Platelet responses to thrombin are mediated by a G-protein–coupled seven-transmembrane receptor that is cleaved by thrombin. Thus, thrombin receptor–activating peptide (TRAP), consisting of amino acid sequence SFLLRN, derived from the extracellular "tethered ligand" region of the thrombin receptor (Furman et al, 1998), is useful in platelet function testing. Strong agonists such as collagen, thrombin, and TxA2 are capable of directly inducing secretion and TxA2 synthesis in addition to inducing aggregation. In contrast, secretion and TxA2 synthesis following platelet stimulation with weaker agonists such as ADP or epinephrine may be considered secondary responses following attainment of a threshold level of aggregation (Cattaneo, 2009). The potential diagnostic yields and limitations of aggregation and secretion studies have been recently reviewed (Mezzano et al, 2009; Dawood et al, 2012).

Other methods have also been developed to test platelet function. Electrical impedance measurements, as opposed to monitoring light transmission, have been used to study platelet aggregation not only in PRP but also in whole blood (Cardinal & Flower, 1980). Following the addition of an agonist to the stirred sample, the conductance between two electrodes falls as platelets aggregate upon the electrode surfaces. The resulting curves of electrical impedance over time share many similarities to those of light transmittance recordings, although there are characteristic differences between these two approaches (Ingerman-Wojenski & Silver, 1984; Joseph et al, 1987). When impedance aggregometry is combined with ATP secretion measurement on whole-blood samples (Ingerman-Wojenski & Silver, 1984), relatively rapid evaluation of platelet function, requiring only a small volume of blood, may be performed (McGlasson & Fritsma, 2009). Additionally, platelet aggregation in whole blood may be monitored optically by means of the coaggregation of fibrinogen-coated beads impregnated with a dye that absorbs light in the infrared region of the electromagnetic spectrum. This approach has been applied for assessing the effect of treatment with platelet inhibitors (see later).

The contractile abilities of activated platelets also result in contraction (or "retraction") of formed clots. In the test tube, *clot retraction* may be quantitatively assessed. In thrombocytopenia or Glanzmann thrombasthenia, clot retraction is delayed or incomplete. GPIIb-IIIa (Coller et al, 1983) as well as a number of additional platelet proteins (de Witt et al, 2014) are required for effective clot retraction.

EVALUATION OF PLATELET FUNCTION USING FLOW CYTOMETRY

Flow cytometry has proved useful not only for assessing the expression of specific glycoprotein receptors on the platelet surface but also for assessing the effect of platelet activation, including ability of GPIIb-IIIa to undergo conformational change and expression of markers of platelet secretion (e.g., P-selectin) (Fig. 40-4). Platelet activation leads to translocation of P-selectin from α-granules to the platelet surface, where it may be readily assessed by flow cytometry. In addition, flow cytometry has been used to assess expression of platelet annexin V and dense granules, and release of microparticles from platelets. Due to the small volumes of blood required to perform flow cytometry, this technique can be particularly valuable in diagnostic evaluations of children and neonates (Israels, 2009).

QUANTITATIVE PLATELET DISORDERS

THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Decreased platelet production and increased platelet destruction (Table 40-2) constitute two of the major causes of thrombocytopenia.

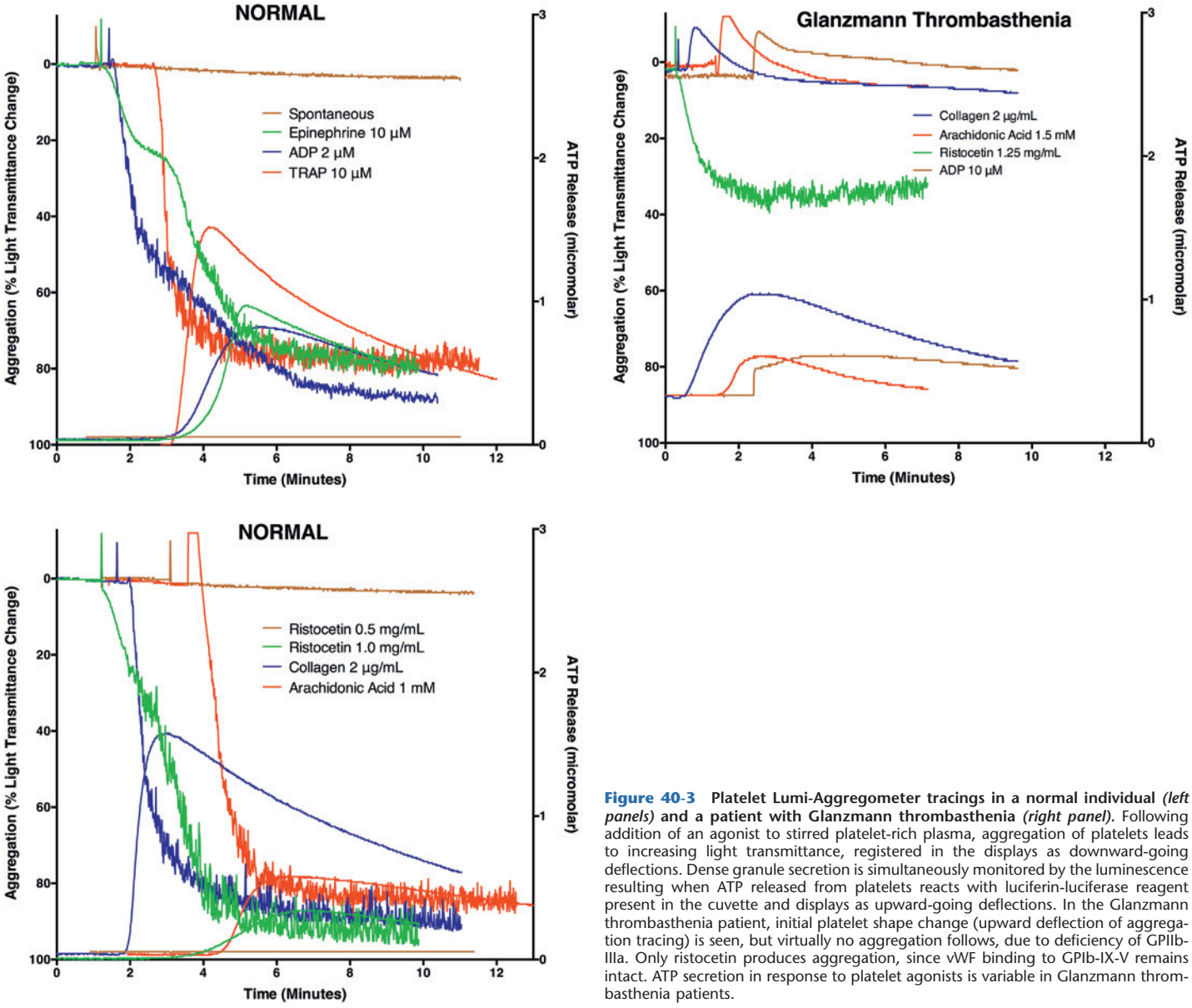


Figure 40-3 **Platelet Lumi-Aggregometer tracings in a normal individual *(left panels)* and a patient with Glanzmann thrombasthenia *(right panel)*.** Following addition of an agonist to stirred platelet-rich plasma, aggregation of platelets leads to increasing light transmittance, registered in the displays as downward-going deflections. Dense granule secretion is simultaneously monitored by the luminescence resulting when ATP released from platelets reacts with luciferin-luciferase reagent present in the cuvette and displays as upward-going deflections. In the Glanzmann thrombasthenia patient, initial platelet shape change (upward deflection of aggregation tracing) is seen, but virtually no aggregation follows, due to deficiency of GPIIb-IIIa. Only ristocetin produces aggregation, since vWF binding to GPIb-IX-V remains intact. ATP secretion in response to platelet agonists is variable in Glanzmann thrombasthenia patients.

Additionally, thrombocytopenia may be seen with splenomegaly of any cause, because of increased splenic sequestration of platelets.

Congenital Thrombocytopenias

Congenital thrombocytopenias are being recognized with increasing frequency, and several distinct genetic abnormalities have been documented in such patients (Althaus & Greinacher, 2009; Balduini et al, 2013a, 2013b; Kumar & Kahr, 2013; Noris et al, 2014). These patients may present with isolated thrombocytopenia or in conjunction with characteristic syndromes. In some patients, the platelets have defects in function as well.

From a mechanistic perspective, inherited thrombocytopenias are associated with mutations in genes with diverse function, although for some the specific function in megakaryocytes/platelets is unclear. The genes implicated include transcription factors *(RUNX1, FLI1, GATA1, GFI1b, HOXA11)*, thrombopoietin receptor *MpL*, cytoskeletal proteins and related signaling *(MYH9, TUBB1, ACTN1, FLNA, WASP)*, surface membrane glycoproteins and related signaling *(GPIBA, GPIBB, GPIX, ITGA2B, ITGB3)*, proteins involved in vesicle transport *(NBEAL2)*, exon-junction complex involved in RNA processing *(RBM8A)*, and cAMP-dependent protein kinase *(PRKACG)* (Balduini et al, 2013a; Kumar & Kahr, 2013; Manchev et al, 2014; Monteferrario et al, 2014; Noris et al, 2014; Rao & Songdej, 2015b). Mutations in the *ANKRD26 5′* untranslated region result in loss of RUNX1 and FLI1 binding, and ANKRD26 silencing (Bluteau et al, 2014; Marquez et al, 2014).

A better understanding of inherited thrombocytopenias is important in clinical practice, beyond recognizing predisposition to bleeding, which is highly variable and often mild. First, many of these patients are initially recognized in their adulthood (Balduini et al, 2013a), and in the absence of a family history of thrombocytopenia, there is the risk for misdiagnosis as immune thrombocytopenia that may lead to unnecessary therapy (including splenectomy). Second, some gene mutations have prognostic implications, such as the association with myeloid malignancies in the case of *RUNX1* and *ANKRD26* mutations; or worsening renal function or hearing loss, as with *MYH9* mutations. Further, there may be therapeutic implications, as in the potential role of eltrombopag in patients with *MYH9* mutations (Balduini et al, 2013a). Moreover, previously described pedigrees have documented recurrence of leukemia following hematopoietic stem cell transplantation from an undiagnosed sibling donor with a *RUNX1* mutation (Owen et al, 2008). Lastly, some entities are associated with platelet function abnormalities as well, as in patients with *RUNX1* mutations (Rao, 2013a, 2013c; Songdej & Rao, 2015).

From a practical point of view, patients with congenital thrombocytopenias may be characterized based on the inheritance patterns or on platelet size (Table 40-3) or diameter (Balduini et al, 2013a, 2013b; Kumar & Kahr, 2013; Noris et al, 2013, 2014).

Autosomal Dominant Thrombocytopenias

A diverse group of autosomal dominant syndromes, referred to as *MYH9-related macrothrombocytopenias*, include the May-Hegglin anomaly, Fechtner syndrome, Epstein syndrome, and Sebastian syndrome and

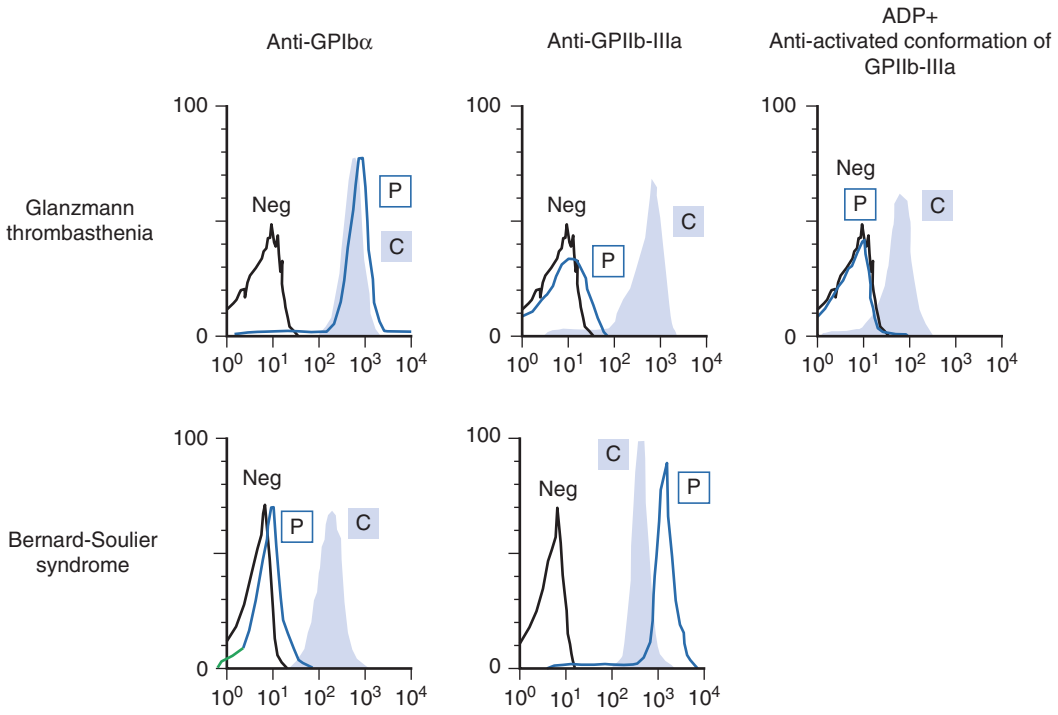


Figure 40-4 **Flow cytometric evaluation of platelet membrane glycoprotein (GP) disorders, Glanzmann thrombasthenia and Bernard-Soulier syndrome.** Platelets from normal controls (C) or from patients (P) were incubated with monoclonal antibodies against GPIbα, GPIIb-IIIa, or a monoclonal antibody (PAC-1) that recognizes only the conformationally altered active form of GPIIb-IIIa that occurs following platelet activation (e.g., in response to ADP). In the patient with Glanzmann thrombasthenia *(upper panel),* there is virtual absence of GPIIb-IIIa, although GPIbα is present at normal levels. In the patient with Bernard-Soulier syndrome *(lower panel),* a severe deficiency of GPIbα expression but no decrease in GPIIb-IIIa expression is seen. (Modified with permission from Nurden AT, George JN: Inherited disorders of the platelet membrane: Glanzmann thrombasthenia, Bernard-Soulier syndrome, and other disorders. In Colman RW, editor: *Hemostasis and thrombosis: basic principles and clinical practice,* ed 4. Philadelphia, 2001, Lippincott.)

TABLE 40-2
Mechanisms of Platelet Destruction

Type of Thrombocytopenia	Specific Example(s)
Immune Mediated	
Autoantibody-mediated platelet destruction by reticuloendothelial system (RES)	Primary immune thrombocytopenic purpura; secondary immune thrombocytopenia associated with lymphoproliferative disease; collagen vascular disease; infections such as infectious mononucleosis; human immunodeficiency virus syndrome
Alloantibody-mediated platelet destruction by RES	Neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia; posttransfusion purpura; passive alloimmune thrombocytopenia; alloimmune platelet transfusion refractoriness
Drug-dependent, antibody-mediated platelet destruction by RES	Drug-induced immune thrombocytopenic purpura (e.g., quinine)
Platelet activation by binding of immunoglobulin G (IgG) Fc of drug-dependent IgG to platelet FcγIIa receptors	Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia
Non–Immune Mediated	
Platelet activation by thrombin or proinflammatory cytokines	Disseminated intravascular coagulation; septicemia/systemic inflammatory response syndromes
Platelet destruction via ingestion by macrophages (hemophagocytosis)	Infections; certain malignant lymphoproliferative disorders
Platelet destruction through platelet interactions with altered von Willebrand factor	Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura; hemolytic-uremic syndrome; aortic stenosis
Platelet losses on artificial surfaces	Cardiopulmonary bypass surgery; use of intravascular catheters
Decreased platelet survival associated with cardiovascular disease	Congenital and acquired heart disease; cardiomyopathy; pulmonary embolism

Modified with permission from Warkentin TE, Kelton JG: Thrombocytopenia due to platelet destruction and hypersplenism. In Hoffman R, Benz EJ Jr, Shattil SJ, et al, editors: *Hematology: basic principles and practice.* Philadelphia, 2005, Elsevier Churchill Livingstone, pp 2305–2325.

share features of increased platelet size, cytoplasmic inclusions in leukocytes (Döhle bodies), and premature release of platelets. These entities arise from mutations in *MYH9* encoding the nonmuscle myosin heavy chain IIA, a contractile cytoskeletal protein. All of the *MYH-9* syndromes have macrothrombocytopenia; other features such as nephritis, sensorineural deafness, and cataracts serve to distinguish them (Althaus & Greinacher, 2009). In patients having the familial platelet disorder with predisposition to acute myeloid leukemia (FPD/AML), the autosomal dominant thrombocytopenia is secondary to mutations in the *RUNX1/CBFA2/AML1* gene (Song et al, 1999; Songdej & Rao, 2015). In these patients, platelet size is normal and their function is abnormal (Rao, 2013a, 2013c; Songdej & Rao, 2015). Patients with platelet-type vWD are characterized by thrombocytopenia, gain-of-function mutations in *GPIBA*, and enhanced responsiveness to ristocetin on platelet aggregation

TABLE 40-3

Classification of Inherited Thrombocytopenias by Platelet Size

Small Platelets (MPV <7 fL)	Normal-Sized Platelets (MPV 7-11 fL)	Large Platelets (MPV>11 fL)
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	Congenital amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia	*MYH9*-related disorders
X-linked thrombocytopenia	Thrombocytopenia absent radius syndrome	Bernard-Soulier syndrome
	Radioulnar synostosis with amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia	Gray platelet syndrome
	RUNX1 mutations (FPD/AML)	Velocardiofacial syndrome
	ANKRD26-related thrombocytopenia	*GATA*-1 mutations
	CYCS-related thrombocytopenia	Type 2B von Willebrand disease
		Platelet-type von Willebrand disease
		Paris-Trousseau (Jacobsen) syndrome
		TUBB1-related macrothrombocytopenia
		Thrombocytopenia associated with sitosterolemia

Modified with permission from Kumar R, Kahr WHA: Congenital thrombocytopenia: Clinical manifestations, laboratory abnormalities, and molecular defects of a heterogeneous group of conditions. In Rao AK, editor: *Hematology/oncology Clinics of North America: disorders of the platelets* (vol 27), Philadelphia, 2013, Elsevier, pp 465–494.

(Miller, 1996). Other congenital thrombocytopenias inherited in an autosomal dominant manner include velocardiofacial syndrome and DiGeorge syndrome, which arise due to deletions within chromosome 22q11 and are associated with cardiac abnormalities, parathyroid and thymus insufficiencies, cognitive impairment, and facial dysmorphology (velocardiofacial only); and the Paris-Trousseau/Jacobsen syndrome, which is characterized by psychomotor retardation and facial and cardiac abnormalities, and arises due to deletion of a portion of chromosome 11,11q23-24, which encompasses the transcription factor *FLI-1* gene. Platelets in the latter disorder are increased in size and have giant α-granules. A dominant form of macrothrombocytopenia (Mediterranean macrothrombocytopenia, Bolzano variant) has been described in southern Europe, and this has been associated with mutations in GPIbα and considered a heterozygous form of Bernard-Soulier syndrome (Savoia et al, 2001). Autosomal dominant Bernard-Soulier syndrome resulting from a point mutation in a leucine tandem repeat of GPIbα has been described in the American population (Miller et al, 1992). An autosomal dominant thrombocytopenia been reported in association with mutations in the genes encoding cytoskeletal protein beta-1 tubulin TUBB1 *(TUBB1)* and alpha actinin-1 *(ACTN1)*, cytochrome c *(CYCS)*, and *ANKRYD26*, (Balduini et al, 2013a, 2013b; Kumar & Kahr, 2013; Noris et al, 2014). It has also been reported in association with mutations in GPIIb or GPIIIa; these mutations lead to constitutive activation of the GPIIb-IIIa integrin complex (Balduini et al, 2013a, 2013b).

Autosomal Recessive Thrombocytopenias

In the classical Bernard-Soulier syndrome, the macrothrombocytopenia results from biallelic mutations involving the GPIb-IX-V complex (see later). Congenital amegakaryocytic thrombocytopenia (CAMT) is an autosomal recessive disorder associated with mutations in the thrombopoietin receptor *MPL* and is characterized by severe thrombocytopenia and absence of megakaryocytes in the bone marrow. Other causes of congenital thrombocytopenia include gray platelet syndrome (see later), linked to mutations in the *NBEAL2* gene, which encodes a BEACH protein involved in vesicular trafficking. (Albers et al, 2011; Gunay-Aygun et al, 2011; Kahr et al, 2011). The thrombocytopenia with absent radii (TAR) syndrome is associated with skeletal abnormalities and inherited in an autosomal recessive manner.

Sex-Linked Inherited Thrombocytopenias

Patients with Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS) and the related X-linked thrombocytopenia have mutations in the *WAS* gene, with patients characteristically having small platelets, and the thrombocytopenia may occur in the absence of other immunologic features of the syndrome. Mutations in transcription factor GATA-1 are associated with thrombocytopenia, anemia, and alteration in red cell morphology.

Immune Thrombocytopenias

Immune thrombocytopenias (ITPs) are a heterogeneous group of disorders characterized by autoimmune-mediated platelet destruction (Rodeghiero et al, 2009; Provan et al, 2010). These disorders are also associated with impaired platelet production (Rodeghiero et al, 2009). *Primary* ITP is a diagnosis of exclusion, made in the absence of other causes or disorders associated with thrombocytopenia. *Secondary* ITP (Table 40-4, *upper panel*) consists of all forms of immune-mediated thrombocytopenia except primary ITP. The clinical history is usually helpful in arriving at a tentative diagnosis, and in particular in distinguishing between the newly diagnosed, persistent, chronic, and severe forms of secondary ITP, as defined in Table 40-4. A platelet count of <100,000 platelets/μL has been recommended as a threshold for diagnosis of ITP (Rodeghiero et al, 2009). This threshold seeks to avoid overdiagnosis of disease in apparently healthy people with platelet counts of 100 to 150,000/μL, and also to avoid inclusion of many women with pregnancy-related thrombocytopenia. An international consensus conference report (Provan et al, 2010) addressed a number of critical issues concerning the diagnosis and management of ITP. No single laboratory test for the diagnosis of ITP constitutes a gold standard status by this group. A variety of laboratory approaches were deemed to be either of "potential utility" or of "unproven or uncertain benefit," as shown in Table 40-4 *(lower panel)*.

Of particular interest, antecedent infectious diseases appear to be present in approximately 60% of pediatric ITP patients. Molecular mimicry, in which immune responses initially directed against an infectious organism cross-react with platelet antigens in both children and adults, appears likely in a number of instances, including infection with HIV and HCV (Karpatkin & Nardi, 1992; Karpatkin et al, 1995; Cines et al, 2009a; Stasi et al, 2009; Zhang et al, 2009). There has also been attention focused on the association between *H. pylori* infection and ITP (Semple, 2009; Stasi et al, 2009). A possible mechanistic explanation for the thrombocytopenia is that the *H. pylori* organisms may trigger P-selectin–dependent platelet aggregation and increased PS expression (Yeh et al, 2010).

In addition to the accelerated platelet destruction in ITP, there is also defective platelet production (McMillan, 2007; Cines et al, 2009a, 2009b). The observations that thrombopoietin mimetic agents are effective in increasing the platelet counts in these patients add further support for impaired platelet production in ITP (McMillan, 2007).

The role of the clinical laboratory in helping to establish a diagnosis of ITP remains elusive. In 1996, a distinguished panel of experts from the American Society of Hematology (ASH) (George et al, 1996) concluded that there was little evidence in support of laboratory tests to detect antiplatelet antibodies in ITP patients. Fifteen years later, a subsequent evidence-based ASH panel on ITP (Neunert et al, 2011) concluded both for children and adults that they had "found insufficient evidence to recommend or suggest the routine use of antiplatelet, antiphospholipid and antinuclear antibodies, thrombopoietin levels, or platelet parameters obtained on automated analyzers in the evaluation of patients with suspected ITP." Efforts to establish the usefulness of in vitro testing do nonetheless continue, particularly with respect to identification of patient antibodies directed against specific platelet membrane GP targets. The closest to what could be considered a reference methodology would be the "MAIPA" technique, or "monoclonal antibody immobilization of platelet antigen" (Kiefel et al, 1987). Through incubation of freshly obtained donor platelets with patient serum or with eluates from patient platelets, the MAIPA optimally preserves the native conformations of the platelet membrane GP against which the patient antibodies are usually targeted. Because it is labor intensive and requires the availability of previously characterized platelet donors, the MAIPA and closely related techniques have proved challenging for most clinical laboratories, and even specialized laboratories have found it difficult to achieve consensus of findings when evaluating shared workshop samples (Sachs et al, 2012). The principal challenge for alternative approaches has been to

TABLE 40-4

Immunologic Thrombocytopenic Purpura (ITP)

PROPOSED DEFINITIONS OF DISEASE

Primary ITP	Secondary ITP: All Forms of Immune-Mediated Thrombocytopenia Except Primary ITP*
• Primary ITP is an autoimmune disorder characterized by isolated thrombocytopenia (peripheral platelet count $<100 \times 10^9$/L) in the absence of other causes and disorders that may be associated with thrombocytopenia. • The diagnosis of primary ITP remains one of exclusion; no robust clinical or laboratory parameters are currently available to establish this diagnosis with accuracy. • The main clinical problem with primary ITP is an increased risk for bleeding, although bleeding symptoms may not always be present.	• Newly diagnosed ITP: within 3 months from diagnosis • Persistent ITP: between 3 and 12 months from diagnosis; includes patients not reaching spontaneous remission and not maintaining complete response off therapy • Chronic ITP: lasting for longer than 12 months • Severe ITP: presence of bleeding symptoms at presentation sufficient to mandate treatment, or occurrence of new bleeding symptoms requiring additional therapeutic intervention with a different platelet-enhancing agent or an increased dose

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR THE DIAGNOSIS OF ITP IN CHILDREN AND ADULTS

Basic Evaluation	Tests of Potential Utility in the Management of an ITP Patient	Tests of Unproven or Uncertain Benefit
Patient history	Glycoprotein-specific antibody	TPO
Family history	Antiphospholipid antibodies (including anticardolipin and lupus anticoagulant)	Reticulated platelets
Physical examination	Antithyroid antibodies and thyroid function	PaIgG
Complete blood count and reticulocyte count	Pregnancy test in women of childbearing potential	Platelet survival study
Peripheral blood film	Antinuclear antibodies	Bleeding time
Quantitative immunoglobulin measurement*	Viral PCR for parvovirus and CMV	Serum complement
Bone marrow examination (in selected patients)		
Blood group (Rh)		
Direct antiglobulin test		
Helicobacter pylori†		
HIV†		
HCV†		

Upper panel: ITP: proposed definitions of disease.
Modified with permission from Rodeghiero F, Stasi R, Gernsheimer T: Standardization of terminology, definitions and outcome criteria in immune thrombocytopenic purpura of adults and children: report from an international working group, *Blood* 113:2386–2393, 2009.
*The acronym ITP should be followed by the name of the associated disease (for thrombocytopenia after exposure to drugs, the term *drug-induced* should be used) in parentheses, for example, "secondary ITP (lupus-associated)," "secondary ITP (HIV-associated)," and "secondary ITP (drug-induced)."
Lower panel: recommendations for the diagnosis of ITP in children and adults.
Modified with permission from Provan D, Stasi R, Newland AC: International consensus report on the investigation and management of primary immune thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 115:168–186, 2010.
CMV, Cytomegalovirus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *PaIgG,* platelet-associated immunoglobulin G; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *Rh,* rhesus; *TPO,* thrombopoietin.
*Quantitative immunoglobulin level measurement should be considered in children with ITP and is recommended in children with persistent or chronic ITP as part of the reassessment evaluation.
†Recommended by the majority of international consensus panel members for adult patients regardless of geographic locale.

develop assays that react patient-derived antibodies with platelet GP targets presented in a standardized format, such as immobilized by murine monoclonal antibodies to microplate wells or attached to bead surfaces. Some pathologic antibodies may simply fail to recognize their epitopes within the GP targets provided in this artificial manner. Additionally, false-positive results may occur if anti-mouse antibodies are present in human serum (Leach & Aubuchon, 2003). Techniques using flow-cytometric detection of antiplatelet GP antibodies captured onto fluorescent beads have also been introduced (Nguyen et al, 2004; Porcelijn et al, 2014), but their usefulness in the diagnostic evaluation of ITP remains unestablished.

Drug-Induced Immune Thrombocytopenia (DITP)

Thrombocytopenia can be caused by a large number of drugs. Excluding those recognized to cause dose-dependent bone marrow suppression, such as the chemotherapeutic agents, there is strong evidence that immunologic mechanisms are the cause of platelet destruction. DITP may be induced by classic drug-dependent antibodies (e.g., quinine), haptens (e.g., penicillin), fiban-dependent antibodies (e.g., tirofiban, integrilin), monoclonal antibodies (abciximab), autoantibodies (e.g., gold), and immune-complex formation (e.g., heparin, protamine) (Aster et al, 2004; Aster, 2007a; Al-Nouri & George, 2012; Arnold et al, 2013; Chong et al, 2013). Most commonly implicated drugs include quinine, quinidine, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, vancomycin, and pipericillin/tazobactam (Von Drygalski et al, 2007; Arnold et al, 2013, 2015). A list of drugs implicated in DITP is provided in several publications (Aster & Bougie, 2007; Al-Nouri & George, 2012; Arnold et al, 2013), and more information is available at www.uptodate.com/contents/drug-induced-thrombocytopenia.

The clinical features of DITP include a platelet count less than 20,000/μL and bleeding symptoms that typically begin 5 to 10 days after starting the drug. Interestingly, with GPIIb-IIIa antagonist drugs ("fibans") eptifibatide and tirofiban, acute severe thrombocytopenia may occur, even following the first exposure to the drug (Aster & Bougie, 2007). This acute thrombocytopenia results from preexisting antibodies in the patients binding to novel epitopes exposed in the drug-bound GPIIb-IIIa complex. With abciximab, which is a chimeric human-mouse Fab fragment specific for GPIIIa, preexisting antibodies causing the DITP target structural elements in the abciximab molecule that are of murine origin (Aster et al, 2004). The targets of drug-dependent antibodies in patients with DITP due to quinine, sulfonamides, and others are often epitopes on platelet GPIIb-IIIa or GPIb-IX. In the case of gold and procainamide, autoantibodies are induced that have specificity for platelet GP. Heparins (see later) and protamine (Bakchoul et al, 2013; Cuker & Cines, 2013; Lee et al, 2013) induce thrombocytopenia by formation of immune complexes that bind and activate platelets.

Laboratory assessment for DITP employs normal test platelets as the target for antibody binding in the presence, but not the absence, of added drug. Recommendations regarding such testing recently published by the ISTH include the following (Arnold et al, 2015): Blood should be collected during the acute episode of thrombocytopenia as soon as DITP is suspected, and EDTA anticoagulant should be avoided. Test platelets obtained from blood group O/HPA-1a positive donors can be studied either by flow cytometry or by enzyme immunoassay. Drug-solubility

limitations must be addressed, with the drug being maintained at constant concentration throughout all washing steps. If a positive control serum from a patient known to contain the drug-dependent antibody, and/or a negative control serum from a patient who received the drug in question but did not develop DITP, is not available, suitable alternative controls must be developed. While a positive test generally carries high specificity for DITP, a negative test result does not necessarily exclude DITP, due to the low sensitivity that has been observed with such testing (Arnold et al, 2015).

The laboratory approach to heparin-induced thrombocytopenia is discussed in Chapter 42.

THROMBOCYTOSIS

In most patients, thrombocytosis is acquired. In the rare patients with congenital thrombocytosis, this results from gain-of-function mutations in either thrombopoietin or its receptor (MPL) (Skoda, 2009; Sulai & Tefferi, 2012). Acquired thrombocytosis may be primary, related to autonomous clonal bone marrow disorders, such as the myeloproliferative neoplasms (MPN) and essential thrombocytosis, or reactive and secondary to conditions such as infections, chronic inflammation, malignancy, hemolysis, iron-deficiency anemia, or splenectomy (Box 40-1) (Skoda, 2009; Harrison et al, 2010; Sulai & Tefferi, 2012; Griesshammer et al, 1999; Schafer, 2004) (see later). The blood film should be reviewed to confirm the increase in platelets. A number of clinical and laboratory findings may provide clues as to whether one is dealing with an autonomous clonal process or a reactive process (Table 40-5). This distinction is important because of the implications regarding the potential for thrombohemorrhagic complications, which are common in MPN, and regarding treatment strategies (cytoreduction). The extent of elevation in platelet counts does not provide a reliable clue in this distinction. Patients with MPN may have abnormalities in platelet and megakaryocyte structure and platelet function (see later). The presence of cytogenetic abnormalities, such as in JAK2V617F and calreticulin, are strongly associated with primary thrombocytosis (Campbell & Green, 2006; Skoda, 2009; Klampfl et al, 2013; Nangalia et al, 2013). Lastly, recent studies utilizing platelet transcript profiling of patients with thrombocytosis have shown that specific biomarker gene subsets may predict their thrombocytosis class (Gnatenko et al, 2010; Nagalla & Bray, 2010).

Patients with MPN may develop bleeding or thrombotic events. In a meta-analysis, platelet counts failed to achieve significance as a risk factor for thrombosis in patients with essential thrombocythemia (Finazzi & Barbui, 2008). Unless additional associated risk factors, such as malignancy, are present, thrombotic events are unlikely in reactive thrombocytosis (Griesshammer et al, 1999; Ho et al, 2012). However, in one study (Ho et al, 2012), reactive thrombocytosis occurred in about 10% of patients in the recovery phase after an admission to the intensive care unit, and this was associated with an increase in venous thromboembolism.

BOX 40-1

Reactive Conditions in Which Elevated Platelet Counts May Be Found

Transient Processes

Acute blood loss
Recovery (rebound) from thrombocytopenia
Acute infection or inflammation
Response to exercise

Sustained Processes

Iron deficiency
Hemolytic anemia
Asplenia (e.g., after splenectomy)
Cancer
Chronic inflammatory or infectious diseases
Connective tissue disorders
Temporal arteritis
Inflammatory bowel disease
Tuberculosis
Chronic pneumonitis
Drug reactions
- Vincristine
- All-*trans*-retinoic acid
- Cytokines
- Growth factors

Reprinted with permission from Schafer AI: Thrombocytosis, *N Engl J Med* 350:1211–1219, 2004.

INHERITED DISORDERS OF PLATELET FUNCTION

OVERVIEW

Box 40-2 provides a classification based on the platelet functions or responses that are abnormal (Fig. 40-5). Although several of these disorders are rare, they shed enormous light on platelet physiology. Of note, not all of the disorders resulting in an impaired platelet role in hemostasis are due to a defect in the platelets *per se*. Some, such as vWD and afibrinogenemia, result from deficiencies of plasma proteins essential for normal platelet function. Moreover, in most patients with inherited abnormalities of platelet aggregation and secretion, the underlying molecular mechanisms remain unknown. In patients with defects in platelet-vessel wall interactions (adhesion disorders), adhesion of platelets to subendothelium is abnormal. The two disorders in this group are von Willebrand disease (vWD), due to a deficiency or abnormality in plasma vWF, and Bernard-Soulier syndrome (BSS), in which platelets are deficient in the GPIb-IX-V complex; in both disorders, platelet-vWF interaction is compromised. Binding of fibrinogen to the GPIIb-IIIa complex is a prerequisite for platelet aggregation. Disorders characterized by abnormal platelet-platelet interactions (aggregation disorders) arise because of a severe deficiency of plasma fibrinogen (congenital afibrinogenemia) or because of a quantitative or qualitative abnormality in the platelet membrane GPIIb-IIIa complex (Glanzmann thrombasthenia). Patients with defects in platelet secretion and signal transduction are a heterogeneous group lumped

TABLE 40-5

Clinical Findings That May Distinguish Between Clonal and Secondary (Reactive) Thrombocytosis

Finding	Clonal Thrombocytosis*	Secondary (Reactive) Thrombocytosis
Underlying systemic disease	No	Often clinically apparent
Digital or cerebrovascular ischemia	Characteristic	No
Large-vessel arterial or venous thrombosis	Increased risk	No
Bleeding complications	Increased risk	No
Splenomegaly	Yes, in about 40% of patients	No
Peripheral blood smear	Variable, may include giant platelets	Normal platelets
Platelet function	May be abnormal	Normal
Bone marrow megakaryocytes:		
• Number	Increased	Increased
• Morphologic features	Giant, dysplastic forms with increased ploidy; associated with large masses of platelet debris	Normal
Presence of cytogenetic abnormalities (mutations in *JAK2, MPL, CALR, BCR-ABL1*)	Present	Absent

JAK2, Janus kinase 2; *MPL*, thrombopoietin receptor gene; *CALR*, calreticulin; *BCR-ABL1*, fusion gene formed by translocation between chromosomes 9 and 22.
Modified with permission from Schafer AI: Thrombocytosis, *N Engl J Med* 50:1211–1219, 2004.
*Clonal thrombocytosis includes essential thrombocythemia and other myeloproliferative disorders.

BOX 40-2

Classification of Inherited Disorders of Platelet Function

1. Defects in platelet-vessel wall interaction (disorders of adhesion)
   a. von Willebrand disease (deficiency or defect in plasma vWF)
   b. Bernard-Soulier syndrome (deficiency or defect in GPIb)
2. Defects in platelet-platelet interaction (disorders of aggregation)
   a. Congenital afibrinogenemia (deficiency of plasma fibrinogen)
   b. Glanzmann thrombasthenia (deficiency or defect in GPIIb-IIIa)
3. Disorders of platelet secretion and abnormalities of granules
   a. Storage pool deficiency (δ, α, αδ)
   b. Quebec platelet disorder
4. Disorders of platelet secretion and signaling (primary secretion defects)
   a. Defects in platelet-agonist interaction (receptor defects) (ADP, thromboxane A2, collagen, epinephrine)
   b. Defects in G-proteins and their activation
      Abnormalities in Gαq, Gαs, or Gαi
      Calcium and diacylglycerol (DAG)-regulated guanine exchange factor-1 (CalDAG-GEF1) deficiency
   c. Defects in phosphatidylinositol metabolism and protein phosphorylation
      Phospholipase C-β2 deficiency
      PKC-θ deficiency
   d. Abnormalities in arachidonic acid pathways and thromboxane A_2 synthesis
      Phospholipase A_2 deficiency
      Cyclooxygenase deficiency
      Thromboxane synthase deficiency
5. Defects related to cytoskeletal-linking and structural proteins
   a. Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein
   b. Kindlin-3 deficiency–leukocyte adhesion defect (LAD)
6. Disorders of platelet coagulant-protein interaction (Scott syndrome)
7. Abnormalities of transcription factors leading to platelet dysfunction
   RUNX1 (familial platelet dysfunction with predisposition to acute myelogenous leukemia)
   GATA-1
   FLI-1
   GFI1b

Modified with permission from Rao AK: Inherited platelet function disorders: overview and disorders of granules, secretion, and signal transduction, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 27:585–611, 2013c.

together for convenience of classification rather than on the basis of an understanding of the specific underlying abnormality. The major common characteristics in these patients, as currently perceived, are abnormal aggregation responses and an inability to release dense granule contents upon activation of platelet-rich plasma with agonists such as ADP, epinephrine, and collagen. In aggregation studies, the second wave of aggregation is blunted or absent. The platelet dysfunction in such patients may arise from diverse mechanisms. A small proportion of these patients have a deficiency of dense granule stores (storage pool). In some of the others, impaired platelet function arises due to aberrations in signal transduction events that lead to secretion and aggregation. Another group consists of patients who have an abnormality in interactions of platelets with proteins of the coagulation system; the best described is Scott syndrome, characterized by impaired transmembrane migration of phospholipid phosphatidylserine (Weiss, 1994, 2009; Kodigepalli et al, 2015). Defects related to platelet cytoskeleton or structural proteins may also be associated with platelet dysfunction, as in Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. Recent studies document impaired platelet function associated with mutations in transcription factors (RUNX1, GATA1, FLI1, and GFI1b) that regulate megakaryocyte biology and expression of platelet proteins. In addition to the above groups, there are patients who have abnormal platelet function associated with systemic disorders, such as Down syndrome and the May-Hegglin anomaly, where the specific aberrant platelet mechanisms are unclear.

DISORDERS OF PLATELET ADHESION

Bernard-Soulier Syndrome

Bernard-Soulier syndrome (BSS) is a rare autosomal recessive platelet function disorder resulting from an abnormality in the platelet GPIb-IX-V complex, which consists of four polypeptides and distinct gene products (*GPIbα*, *GPIbβ*, *GPIX* and *GPV*) (Lopez et al, 1998; Diz-Kucukkaya & Lopez, 2013; Rao & Coller, 2015a). This complex mediates the binding of vWF to platelets and thus plays a major role in platelet adhesion to the subendothelium, especially at the higher shear rates. The platelet GPIb-IX-V complexes are markedly reduced in number or functionally abnormal in BSS. Although GPV is also decreased in BSS platelets, it is not required for platelet surface GPIb-IX expression. The bleeding time is markedly prolonged, the platelet counts are moderately decreased, and, on the

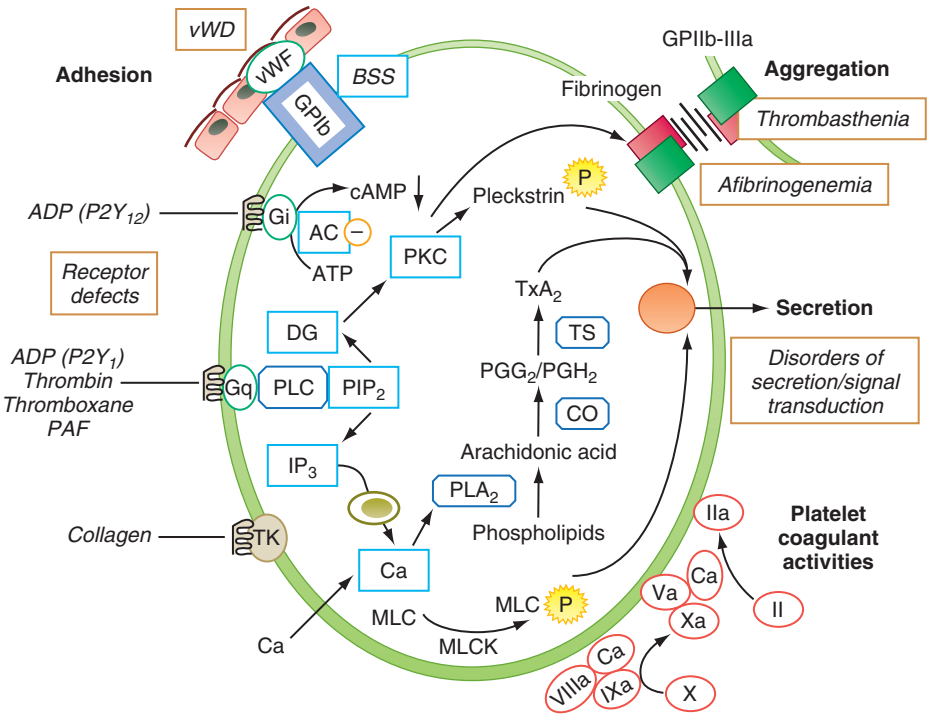


Figure 40-5 **A schematic representation of selected platelet responses to activation and inherited disorders of platelet function.** *AC,* Adenylyl cyclase; *BSS,* Bernard-Soulier syndrome; *CO,* cyclooxygenase; *DAG,* diacylglycerol; *G,* GTP-binding protein; *IP3,* inositol trisphosphate; *MLC,* myosin light chain; *MLCK,* myosin light chain kinase; *P2Y1, P2Y12,* G-protein–coupled adenosine diphosphate (ADP) receptors; *PAF,* platelet-activating factor; *PGG2/PGH2,* prostaglandins G2 and H2; arachidonic pathway intermediates; *PIP2,* phosphatidylinositol bisphosphate; *PKC,* protein kinase C; *PLA_2,* phospholipase A_2; *PLC,* phospholipase C; *TK,* tyrosine kinase; *TS,* thromboxane synthase; *vWD,* von Willebrand's disease; *vWF,* von Willebrand factor. The Roman numerals in the circles represent coagulation factors. (Modified with permission from Rao AK: Congenital disorders of platelet function: disorders of signal transduction and secretion, *Am J Med Sci* 316:69–76, 1998.)

peripheral smear, the platelets are markedly increased in size. In platelet aggregation studies, the responses to the commonly used agonists ADP, epinephrine, thrombin, and collagen are normal. Characteristically, the aggregation in PRP in response to ristocetin is decreased or absent. These findings in the aggregometer are almost the reciprocal of those in Glanzmann thrombasthenia. Although ristocetin-induced aggregation is impaired in both vWD and BSS, the plasma vWF and factor VIII are normal in BSS.

Moreover, in BSS the addition of exogenous vWF (present in plasma cryoprecipitate fractions) does not restore ristocetin-induced agglutination of platelets. This important difference is attributable to the finding that, whereas in vWD there is a deficiency in plasma vWF, in BSS the deficiency is in the platelet membrane receptor for vWF. Thrombin-induced dense granule secretion may also be decreased.

Platelets from patients with BSS have a striking decrease in surface membrane glycoprotein Ib (Nurden & Caen, 1975; Nurden, 2014a), and this can be demonstrated using flow cytometry. Numerous specific point mutations or deletions in GPIbα, GPIbβ, and GPIX, when present in homozygous or doubly heterozygous fashion, result in a classic BSS phenotype. Mutations in the gene coding GPIbα are the most common. A point mutation in the leucine-rich region of the GPIbα chain may also produce a Bernard-Soulier phenotype even when expressed only by a single allele (Miller et al, 1992; Ware et al, 1993).

DISORDERS OF PLATELET AGGREGATION

Glanzmann Thrombasthenia

Glanzmann thrombasthenia is a rare autosomal recessive disorder characterized by markedly impaired platelet aggregation in response to activation with all physiologic agonists, a prolonged bleeding time, and relatively more severe mucocutaneous bleeding manifestations than most platelet function disorders (Nurden & George, 2001; Diz-Kucukkaya & Lopez, 2013; Nurden & Nurden, 2014; Rao & Coller, 2015a). It has been reported in clusters in populations where consanguinity is common. The primary abnormality in thrombasthenia is a quantitative or qualitative defect in the GPIIb-IIIa complex, a heterodimer consisting of GPIIb and GPIIIa whose synthesis is governed by distinct genes located on chromosome 17. Thus, thrombasthenia may arise due to a mutation in either gene, with decreased platelet surface expression of the complex. Because of this, fibrinogen binding to platelets on activation and aggregation are impaired. Numerous distinct mutations involving GPIIb and GPIIIa have been described in thrombasthenia (Franchini et al, 2010; Rao & Coller, 2015a). Clot retraction, a function of the interaction of GPIIb-IIIa with the platelet cytoskeleton, is also impaired. Investigation of Glanzmann thrombasthenia has advanced the understanding of platelet pathophysiology and development of major antiplatelet agents (Coller & Shattil, 2008).

In non-anticoagulated blood films prepared from patients with Glanzmann thrombasthenia, platelets are normal in number and appearance but show a characteristic tendency to remain isolated, without the platelet-platelet clumping seen in normal blood films. The diagnostic hallmark of thrombasthenia is absence or marked decrease of platelet aggregation (see Fig. 40-3) in response to virtually all platelet agonists (except ristocetin), with absence of both the primary and secondary wave of aggregation; the shape change response is preserved. Platelet dense granule secretion may be decreased with weak agonists (e.g., ADP) but normal on activation with thrombin. Heterozygotes have approximately half the number of platelet GPIIb-IIIa complexes, but platelet aggregation responses are normal.

Because the platelet antigen Pl^{A1} is associated with glycoprotein IIIa, this antigen is typically decreased in patients with Glanzmann thrombasthenia (Kunicki & Aster, 1978; Von dem Borne et al, 1981). The diagnosis of Glanzmann thrombasthenia can be established by demonstrating a marked decrease in platelet GPIIb-IIIa using flow cytometry (Giannini et al, 2008; Miller, 2009), as illustrated in Figure 40-4. Definitive characterization of the mutations in GPIIb or GPIIIa may be undertaken by molecular techniques (Nurden et al, 2011; Buitrago et al, 2015; Rao & Coller, 2015a). Although congenital afibrinogenemia is also characterized by a similar absence of platelet aggregation, in this disorder the PT, aPTT, and thrombin time are markedly prolonged, whereas they are normal in thrombasthenia.

DISORDERS OF PLATELET SECRETION AND GRANULES

As a unifying theme, patients lumped in this heterogeneous group of disorders of secretion generally manifest impaired secretion of granule contents and absence of the second wave of aggregation upon stimulation of PRP with ADP or epinephrine; responses to collagen, thromboxane analog (U46619), arachidonic acid, and platelet-activating factor (PAF) may also be impaired. Conceptually, platelet function is abnormal in these patients either when the granule contents are diminished (storage pool deficiency [SPD]) or when there is an aberration in the activation mechanisms governing aggregation and secretion (see Box 40-2).

Deficiency of Granule Stores

The term *SPD* refers to patients with deficiencies in platelet content of dense granules (δ-SPD), α-granules (α-SPD, gray platelet syndrome) or both types of granule (αδ-SPD) (Hayward, 1997; Gunay-Aygun et al, 2004; Rao, 2013c; Rao & Coller, 2015a).

δ-Storage Pool Deficiency

Patients with δ-storage pool deficiency (δ-SPD) have a mild to moderate bleeding diathesis associated with a variably prolonged bleeding time. In the platelet studies, the second wave of aggregation in response to ADP and epinephrine is absent or blunted, and the collagen response is markedly impaired. However, both impaired (Weiss & Lages, 1981) and normal (Ingerman et al, 1978) aggregation responses to arachidonic acid have been noted. The responses to epinephrine may also be variable; a second wave of aggregation is noted in some patients (Weiss & Lages, 1988). Interestingly, some patients with δ-SPD have had prolonged bleeding times and normal aggregation (Nieuwenhuis et al, 1987; Israels et al, 1990). Thrombin-induced secretion of acid hydrolases is also impaired in SPD platelets; this is corrected by addition of exogenous ADP (Lages et al, 1988).

Normal platelets possess three to eight dense granules per platelet (each 200 to 300 nm in diameter) (Nieuwenhuis et al, 1987; Israels et al, 1990). Under the electron microscope, dense granules are decreased in SPD platelets (White et al, 1971; Israels et al, 1990). Other methods to demonstrate a decrease in the dense granules include fluorescence microscopy after staining platelets with mepacrine (quinacrine), which localizes in the dense granules because of high affinity for ATP; and specific staining by uranyl ions (uranaffin reaction) of both the membrane and core of the dense granules. Flow cytometry can also be applied to assess the fluorescent staining of dense granules (Linden et al, 2004). By direct biochemical measurements, the total platelet and granule ATP and ADP contents are decreased (Holmsen, 1979) along with other dense granule constituents, calcium, polyphosphate, and serotonin. Two-thirds of platelet ATP and ADP resides in the dense granules with a smaller amount in the metabolic pool, and there is proportionally more ADP than ATP in dense granules (Holmsen, 1979). Thus, in δ-SPD platelets, the ratio of total ATP to ADP increases (>2.5) compared to that in normal platelets. Incubation of normal platelets with ^{14}C-serotonin results in its incorporation into dense granules, and subsequent secretion upon activation. In SPD platelets, the initial rate of uptake of ^{14}C-serotonin is normal, but its retention over 4 to 6 hours is decreased.

Other abnormalities reported in δ-SPD include decreased synthesis of prostaglandins, TxA2, and malondialdehyde in platelets activated with collagen and epinephrine, but not arachidonate (Weiss & Lages, 1988). Impaired liberation of arachidonic acid from membrane phospholipids (Rendu et al, 1978), and enhanced ADP-induced, but not thrombin-induced, rise in cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} levels have also been found (Lages & Weisss, 1997). Platelet procoagulant activity (prothrombinase activity) induced upon activation has been reported to be impaired in association with an inability to maintain elevated intracellular Ca^{2+} levels (Weiss & Lages, 1997).

δ-SPD has been reported in association with other syndromic inherited disorders such as Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome (HPS) (oculocutaneous albinism and increased reticuloendothelial ceroid), Chédiak-Higashi syndrome, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, thrombocytopenia with absent radii syndrome, and Griscelli syndrome (Menasche et al, 2000; Gunay-Aygun et al, 2004; Huizing et al, 2008). The simultaneous occurrence of δ-SPD and defects in skin pigment granules, as in HPS, points to the interrelatedness of the two kinds of granules with respect to genetic control, a concept further advanced by animal models (Huizing et al, 2001, 2008; Novak et al, 1984; Menasche et al, 2000; Gunay-Aygun et al, 2004).

Dense granule membranes possess the lysosomal proteins lysosomal-associated membrane protein (LAMP)2 and CD63 (granulophysin or LAMP3) (Nishibori et al, 1993; Israels et al, 1996) as well as P-selectin and GPIIb-IIIa. Granulophysin is deficient in HPS platelets (Gerrard et al, 1991). Studies with anti-granulophysin antibody demonstrated the presence of the normal number of granules in platelets of two non-albino SPD patients (McNicol et al, 1994); these patients, therefore, may have the granules but with reduced contents.

A substantial amount of our information in SPD has been obtained from patients with HPS, which is characterized by oculocutaneous albinism, platelet SPD, and lipofuscinosis (Gunay-Aygun et al, 2004; Huizing et al, 2008). There is a large group of HPS patients in northwest Puerto Rico, where HPS occurs in 1 in every 1800 individuals (gene frequency 1 in 21) (Witkop et al, 1990; Gahl et al, 1998). There are at least nine known HPS-causing genes leading to various subtypes of human HPS, with most patients being in HPS-1 and from Puerto Rico (Gunay-Aygun et al, 2004; Huizing et al, 2008; Cullinane et al, 2011). There are at least 14 mouse models of HPS reported to date; several of these constitute models for the human subtypes (Gunay-Aygun et al, 2004; Huizing et al, 2008). Together, the human disease and mouse models have been an invaluable source of information about vesicle formation and trafficking. The human HPS subtypes are autosomal recessive, and the heterozygotes have no clinical findings. In addition to the albinism, which is variable between the HPS subtypes, most patients have congenital nystagmus and decreased visual acuity. There are two additional manifestations in HPS patients: granulomatous colitis and pulmonary fibrosis (Gahl et al, 1998; Gunay-Aygun et al, 2004). Interestingly, some patients described to have δ-SPD have been subsequently shown to have mutations in *RUNX1* (Weiss et al, 1979b; Michaud et al, 2002; Connelly et al, 2014), indicating that multiple genetic abnormalities are associated with δ-SPD.

Chédiak-Higashi syndrome is a rare autosomal recessive disorder characterized by oculocutaneous albinism, immune deficiency, neurologic dysfunction, and the presence of giant cytoplasmic inclusions in different cells (Huizing et al, 2001, 2008). Chediak-Higashi syndrome patients have defective cytotoxic T and natural killer (NK) cell function. It arises from mutations in the lysosomal trafficking regulator *(LYST)* gene on chromosome 1. The protein coded by this gene (CHS1) is a member of the BEACH protein family and is considered to participate in intracellular membrane fusion reactions and vesicle trafficking (Huizing et al, 2001, 2008; Tchernev et al, 2002).

Gray Platelet Syndrome

The term *gray platelet syndrome* (GPS) has been derived from the initial observation by Raccuglia of a gray appearance of platelets with paucity of granules in peripheral blood smears from a patient with a lifelong bleeding disorder (Raccuglia, 1971). Characterized by an isolated deficiency of α-granule contents, GPS is a heterogeneous disorder (Nurden & Nurden, 2007, 2008). GPS patients have a lifelong bleeding diathesis, mild thrombocytopenia, and a prolonged bleeding time (Nurden & Nurden, 2008). Under the electron microscope, platelets and megakaryocytes reveal absent or markedly decreased α granules. The platelets are severely and selectively deficient in α-granule proteins: PF4, β-thromboglobulin, vWF, thrombospondin, fibronectin, factor V, high molecular weight kininogen, and PDGF. Platelet aggregation responses have been variable. Responses to ADP and epinephrine were normal in most patients; in some patients, aggregation responses to thrombin, collagen, and ADP have been impaired. Impaired thrombin-induced Ca^{2+} mobilization and an increase in Ca^{2+} transport have also been reported. Plasma PF4 levels are elevated in some patients. There is increased reticulin in the bone marrow from GPS patients, attributed to elevated PDGF levels. Studies on megakaryocytes cultured from peripheral blood of three GPS patients show that vWF is synthesized but is secreted into extracellular space instead of normal α-granule packaging (Drouin et al, 2001).

The molecular mechanisms leading to α-granule deficiency are heterogeneous and include failure of α-granule maturation during megakaryocyte differentiation, transport or targeting of proteins to α-granules, and/or synthesis of granule membranes (Nurden & Nurden, 2007; Maynard et al, 2010). Proteomic studies in a GPS patient suggested a failure to incorporate endogenously synthesized megakaryocytic proteins into α-granules (Maynard et al, 2010). Some GPS patients have elevated plasma PF4 (Nurden & Nurden, 2007), suggesting that PF4 synthesis was normal and the primary defect was impaired granule biogenesis with leakage of PF4. Some patients with decreased α-granule contents have a mutation in transcription factor RUNX1 (Michaud et al, 2002; Weiss et al, 1979b), and PF4 is a transcriptional target of RUNX1 (Aneja et al, 2011). This suggests that decreased platelet PF4 levels represent a defect in PF4 synthesis. X-linked thrombocytopenia GPS has been reported in association with a mutation in *GATA-1* (Tubman, 2007). Three groups (Albers et al, 2011; Gunay-Aygun et al, 2011; Kahr et al, 2011) have reported mutations in *NBEAL2* in patients with autosomal recessive GPS; *NBEAL2* encodes for a protein linked to vesicle transport. Autosomal dominant GPS due to mutations in transcription factor gene *GFI1B* has been reported in two kindreds (Stevenson et al, 2013; Monteferrario et al, 2014). Mutations in *VPS33B* and *VPS16B* genes encoding proteins involved in vesicle trafficking have also been associated with human α-granule deficiency in arthrogryposis multiplex congenita, renal dysfunction, and cholestasis (ARC) syndrome (Urban & Christensen, 2012). Thus, multiple mechanisms can lead to GPS. The inheritance of α-granule deficiency has been autosomal recessive in most reports, but autosomal dominant and sex-linked cases are also described (Weiss, 1979b; Michaud et al, 2002; Nurden & Nurden, 2007; Tubman et al, 2007).

Quebec Platelet Syndrome

Quebec platelet syndrome is an autosomal dominant disorder associated with delayed mucocutaneous bleeding and abnormal proteolysis of α-granule proteins due to increased amounts of platelet urokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA) (Kahr et al, 2001; Blavignac et al, 2011). These patients are characterized by normal to reduced platelet counts, proteolytic degradation of α-granule proteins, deficiency of the factor V–binding protein multimerin, and defective aggregation selectively with epinephrine. Platelet factor V, but not plasma factor V, is degraded along with other α-granule proteins, including fibrinogen, vWF, thrombospondin, osteonectin, fibronectin, and P-selectin. The increased expression of uPA in QPD megakaryocytes is due to a *cis*-regulatory defect linked to the *uPA* gene (Diamandis et al, 2008). This leads to an increase in intraplatelet generation of plasmin, which degrades several α-granule proteins. Patients with QPD suffer from mucocutaneous bleeding following injury that is unresponsive to platelet transfusions but responsive to fibrinolytic inhibitors (McKay et al, 2004).

DISORDERS OF PLATELET SECRETION AND SIGNALING PATHWAYS

Signal transduction mechanisms encompass processes that are initiated by the interaction of agonists with specific platelet receptors and include responses such as G-protein activation and activation of effector enzymes such as phospholipase C and phospholipase A2 (see Fig. 40-5). (See the "Platelet Activation and Signaling Events" section earlier in the chapter.) If the key components in signal transduction are the surface receptors, the G-proteins, and the effectors, evidence now exists for specific platelet abnormalities at each of these levels.

Defects in Receptors

Patients with defects in platelet-agonist interaction have impaired responses because of an abnormality in the platelet surface receptor for a specific agonist. Such receptor defects have been documented for epinephrine, collagen, ADP, TxA2, and platelet activating factor (Bennett & Rao, 2013; Rao, 2013c; Rao & Coller, 2015a). Several patients have been described with mutation in the thromboxane A2 receptor. Hirata and colleagues described an Arg 60–to–Leu mutation of the human TxA2 receptor in a dominantly inherited bleeding disorder (Hirata et al, 1994). Other mutations (*D304N* and *V2416*) have also been described (Mumford et al, 2010; Flamm et al, 2012). Several patients have been described with a defect in the P2Y12 ADP receptor (Cattaneo et al, 1992, 1997; Nurden et al, 1995; Daly et al, 2009), which is coupled to inhibition of adenylyl cyclase. Because ADP and TxA2 play a synergistic role in platelet responses to several agonists, these patients with receptor defects manifest abnormal responses to multiple agonists. Specific deficiencies in the P2Y1 (Oury et al, 1999) and P2X (Oury et al, 2000) ADP receptors have also been documented, but are less well characterized.

A few patients have been described with isolated blunting of platelet responses to collagen associated with deficiencies in platelet GPIa and GPVI (Khan, 2004; Rao & Coller, 2015a; Nieuwenhuis et al, 1985, 1986; Kehrel et al, 1988). Reduced surface expression by flow cytometry of GPIa on the platelets of 18 individuals from two unrelated families with an autosomally dominant bleeding disorder has been reported; Western blot analysis also showed mildly reduced GPIa. However, no mutations in either GPIa or GPIIa could be demonstrated (Noris et al, 2006). Abnormalities of GPVI have been associated with increased bleeding tendency in several families, and associated with mutations in GPVI (Khan, 2004; Rao & Coller, 2015a). In some of these patients, evidence has been provided for a defect in GPVI signaling. Deficiency of platelet GPVI in some patients has been attributed to anti-GPVI antibody-mediated loss of this GP (Boylan et al, 2004).

Defects in G-Proteins and Their Activation

G-proteins are a heterogeneous group of proteins that link surface receptors and intracellular effector enzymes, and defects in G-protein

activation can impair signal transduction. Patients with deficiencies in the level of Gαq (Gabbeta et al, 1997) and Gαi1 (Patel et al, 2003) have been described. A patient with Gαq deficiency had a mild bleeding disorder, abnormal aggregation and secretion responses to a number of agonists, and diminished GTPase activity (a reflection of G-protein α-subunit function) on activation. Additionally, impaired platelet responses have been reported in association with Gαs hyperfunction (which leads to increased cAMP levels) and alterations in the Gαs gene *(GNAS1)* (Freson et al, 2001b). More recently, a family has been described with abnormal platelet responses and a mutation in RAS guanyl-releasing protein-2 *(RASGRP2)*, the gene encoding for the protein calcium and diacylglycerol (DAG)-regulated guanine exchange factor-1 (CalDAG-GEF1) (Canault et al, 2014).

Defects in Phospholipase C Activation, Calcium Mobilization, and Protein Phosphorylation

Platelet signal transduction is also impaired by defects in phospholipase C activation, calcium mobilization, and protein phosphorylation. Several patients have been identified who have a relatively mild bleeding diathesis and impaired dense granule secretion, although their platelets have normal granule stores and, in general, synthesize substantial amounts of TxA2. On laboratory testing, these patients have abnormal aggregation and secretion, particularly in response to weaker agonists (ADP, epinephrine, PAF); the response to relatively stronger agonists such as arachidonate and high concentrations of collagen may be normal. Such patients appear to be more common than those with SPD or defects in TxA2 synthesis. Defects in early platelet activation events, including Ca^{2+} mobilization, phosphatidylinositol hydrolysis, and phosphorylation of pleckstrin (a protein phosphorylated by protein kinase C) have been described (Rao et al, 2004; Coller et al, 2010; Bennett & Rao, 2013; Rao, 2013c; Rao & Coller, 2015a). Specific deficiencies at the level of phospholipase C-β2 (Lee et al, 1996; Yang et al, 1996) and protein kinase C-θ (Sun et al, 2004) have been documented. Activation of GPIIb-IIIa and platelet fibrinogen-binding is a prerequisite for aggregation and is a signal-transduction–dependent process. Defects in GPIIb-IIIa activation due to upstream signal-transduction defects have been noted in some patients (Gabbeta et al, 1996).

Abnormalities in Arachidonic Acid Metabolism and Thromboxane Synthesis

A major platelet response to activation is liberation of arachidonic acid from phospholipids and its subsequent conversion to TxA2, which plays a synergistic role in the response to several agonists. Patients have been described with impaired liberation of arachidonic acid from membrane phospholipids related to an abnormality in phospholipase A2 (Adler et al, 2008), as well as with congenital deficiencies of cyclooxygenase and thromboxane synthase (Bennett & Rao, 2013; Rao, 2013c; Rao & Coller, 2015a); these lead to diminished TxA2 production on platelet stimulation.

DEFECTS IN CYTOSKELETAL LINKING PROTEINS

Wiskott-Aldrich Syndrome

Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS) is an X-linked inherited disorder affecting T lymphocytes and platelets, characterized by thrombocytopenia, small platelets, immunodeficiency, and eczema (Remold-O'Donnell et al, 1996; Massaad et al, 2013; Buchbinder et al, 2014). Bleeding manifestations are variable and driven by the thrombocytopenia. WAS arises from mutations in the gene coding for the WAS protein, a multidomain protein that relays signals from the cell surface to the actin cytoskeleton and regulates its reorganization. It has also been implicated in GPIIb-IIIa outside-in signaling (Shcherbina et al, 2010). Platelet abnormalities, including dense granule SPD and deficiencies of platelet GPIb, GPIIb-IIIa, and GPIa, have been reported; platelet aggregation responses have been variable from decreased to enhanced (Buchbinder et al, 2014; Rao & Coller, 2015a).

Kindlin-3 Deficiency–Leukocyte Adhesion Deficiency

Mutations in another cytoskeletal linking protein, kindlin-3, encoded by the *FERMTS3* gene, is associated with markedly abnormal aggregation responses to multiple agonists resembling Glanzmann thrombasthenia and features of mild leukocyte adhesion–deficiency disorder (LAD) (Pasvolsky et al, 2007; Moser et al, 2008; Malinin et al, 2009). This disorder, called LAD-III, is characterized by a hemorrhagic diathesis in combination with a variable predisposition to infections and inflammation without pus formation, and poor wound healing. Kindlin-3 binds to the cytoplasmic domain of the integrin β3 subunit of αIIbβ3. Platelet aggregation studies demonstrate defects similar to those observed in GT, with the absence of both the primary and secondary waves of aggregation (Pasvolsky et al, 2007; Moser et al, 2008; Malinin et al, 2009).

DISORDERS OF PLATELET PROCOAGULANT ACTIVITIES: SCOTT SYNDROME

Platelets play a major role in blood coagulation by providing the surface on which several specific key enzymatic reactions occur. Platelet activation results in redistribution of PS to the outer surface; this is important in the expression of platelet procoagulant activities (PCA). A few patients have been described in whom the platelet contribution to blood coagulation is impaired, but aggregation and secretion responses are normal, and this is referred to as *Scott syndrome* (Weiss, 1994, 2009). Defects in PCA may also be secondary to abnormalities in platelet aggregation, such as in patients with SPD and thrombasthenia. Patients with Scott syndrome have a bleeding disorder; the bleeding time and platelet aggregation responses have been normal, along with a normal PT and PTT. In the original patient described by Weiss, platelet factor Xa binding sites as well as the platelet binding of factors IXa and VIIIa were diminished, associated with a decreased surface expression of PS following platelet activation (Weiss, 1994). In patients with Scott syndrome, the serum prothrombin time, which reflects the consumption of prothrombin and completeness of clotting of whole blood, is abnormally short, indicating incomplete coagulation (Weiss et al, 1979a). More specific assays of "platelet factor 3," the phenomenologic designation of the platelet contribution to accelerating clot formation, are also abnormal. A review of additional patients presenting with forms of Scott syndrome has been presented (Weiss, 2009). Mutations in *TMEM16F* (transmembrane protein 16F) have been identified in two patients with Scott syndrome (Suzuki et al, 2010; Castoldi et al, 2011).

TRANSCRIPTION FACTOR MUTATIONS AND ASSOCIATED PLATELET DYSFUNCTION

Transcription factors regulate the expression of proteins in platelets and megakaryocytes, megakaryopoiesis, and platelet production. Several reports have linked mutations in transcription factors RUNX1, FLI1, GATA-1, and GFI1B to inherited platelet dysfunction and thrombocytopenia (Rao, 2013a; 2013c; Songdej & Rao, 2015). Thus, in some patients with impaired platelet aggregation and secretion responses on an inherited basis, the genetic defect may be in a transcription factor. These mutations may be more common in such patients than generally considered (Rao, 2013a; Stockley et al, 2013).

RUNX1/CBFA2 Mutations (Familial Platelet Disorder with Predisposition to Acute Myelogenous Leukemia)

An association between inherited platelet function abnormalities, thrombocytopenia, and a predisposition to acute myeloid leukemia has been reported in several families and linked to mutations in the *RUNX1* gene *(AML1, CBFA2)* (Song et al, 1999; Sun et al, 2004; Rao & Coller, 2015a; Songdej & Rao, 2015) (see Chapter 78 for a discussion of RUNX1 in AML). This disorder is inherited as an autosomal dominant trait. Platelet abnormalities include impaired aggregation and secretion, α and δ granule deficiency, abnormal GPIIb-IIIa activation, decreased platelet myosin light chain and pleckstrin phosphorylation, selective decrease in platelet protein kinase C-θ and 12-lipoxygenase, and decreased platelet thrombopoietin receptors (Mpl) (Song et al, 1999; Sun et al, 2004; Kaur et al, 2010; Rao, 2013c; Songdej & Rao, 2015).

GATA-1 Mutations

GATA-1 mutations have been associated with an X-linked syndrome consisting of dyserythropoiesis, anemia, thrombocytopenia, and large platelets (Drachman, 2004), selectively impaired responses to collagen and ristocetin related to abnormalities in GPIbβ, diminished levels of platelet GαS protein and mRNA, and a form of GPS (Freson et al, 2001a; Drachman, 2004; Hughan et al, 2005; Tubman et al, 2007).

FLI1

FLI1, a member of the E-twenty-six (ETS) family of TFs, regulates expression of several megakaryocytic genes, including *ITGA2B*, *GP1BA*, *GP9*, and *c-MPL* (Kumar & Kahr, 2013). Distal deletion of chromosome 11 that includes the *FLI1* locus (11q23.3-24) is associated with a rare autosomal dominant disorder, Jacobsen syndrome, and its accompanying platelet disorder, Paris-Trousseau syndrome (Favier et al, 2003; Raslova et al, 2004; Shivdasani, 2004). The clinical features of Jacobsen syndrome include mental retardation, abnormal craniofacial appearance, and

abnormalities in multiple organ systems (Jacobsen et al, 1973; Kumar & Kahr, 2013). Paris-Trousseau syndrome is characterized by congenital macrothrombocytopenia with giant α-granules in a subpopulation of circulating platelets (1% to 5%) and bone marrow dysmegakaryopoiesis. Thrombin-induced platelet release of α-granule contents has also been found to be impaired.

GFI1B

Two studies have implicated mutations in *GFI1B* in autosomal dominant platelet disorders characterized by dysmegakaryopoiesis, macrothrombocytopenia, α-granule deficiency, and variable bleeding tendency. The first study identified a single nucleotide insertion in exon 7 (c880-881insC) that leads to a frameshift mutation in a family with a bleeding disorder originally described in 1976 (Ardlie et al, 1976; Stevenson et al, 2013; Monteferrario et al, 2014). The family also had red cell anisopoikilocytosis, impaired platelet aggregation responses, and decreased platelet P-selectin, fibrinogen, glycoprotein Ibα, and glycoprotein IIIa (Stevenson et al, 2013). The second study uncovered a truncating mutation (c.859C>T) in a family originally reported in 1968 and subsequently diagnosed with GPS (Kurstjens et al, 1968; Monteferrario et al, 2014). The family members also had reduced platelet factor 4 and β thromboglobulin, as well as evidence of bone marrow myelofibrosis and emperipolesis (Monteferrario et al, 2014).

RELATIVE FREQUENCIES OF VARIOUS INHERITED PLATELET DISORDERS

The relative frequency of the various disorders remains largely unknown. The entities commonly thought about—Glanzmann thrombasthenia, BSS, and SPD—are distinctly rare or uncommon, with the exception of some pockets on a worldwide basis. Patients currently lumped in the markedly heterogeneous category of defects in platelet secretion and signal transduction probably constitute the more frequently encountered inherited platelet function abnormalities, excluding vWD. In most of them, the specific underlying molecular mechanisms are unknown. In our experience, dense granule SPD appears to be present in less than 10% to 15% of patients. Abnormalities in thromboxane production occur in about 20% of these patients, but multiple mechanisms may contribute to this. A large proportion of patients with abnormal aggregation and secretion demonstrate adequate dense granule stores and produce substantial amounts of TxA2, and yet have abnormalities in platelet aggregation and secretion on activation responses. In some of these patients, there is strong evidence for defects in the signaling mechanisms (Dawood et al, 2012; Rao, 2013c; Rao & Coller, 2015a). Of particular importance, some patients have simultaneous abnormalities in multiple structural, biochemical, and functional aspects, as evidenced by the finding of mutations in hematopoietic transcription factors (Rao, 2013a; Rao & Coller, 2015a; Songdej & Rao, 2015).

EVALUATION OF PATIENTS WITH SUSPECTED CONGENITAL PLATELET DISORDERS

The evaluation of patients with a clinical history suggesting a bleeding tendency involves consideration of the coagulation and fibrinolytic systems as well as of the blood platelets. A carefully conducted history, including the family history, and physical examination is important. A platelet count may help determine whether the bleeding tendency is explicable by thrombocytopenia alone. A prolonged PFA-100 or bleeding time may suggest a platelet defect is present. However, both may be normal in patients with platelet function defects. Because vWD may be more common than congenital platelet defects in patients with mucocutaneous bleeding manifestations, a simultaneous evaluation of plasma factor VIII and vWF would be indicated (see later).

The bleeding manifestations in patients with inherited platelet function defects are highly variable. The usual reasons for referral for evaluation have been mucocutaneous bleeding manifestations, excessive bleeding following a procedure or surgery, and a prolonged PFA-100 closure time or bleeding time with a reasonable platelet count. In patients suspected to have a platelet function defect, possible studies include a platelet count, bleeding time, PFA-100, and studies to assess platelet aggregation and secretion responses in vitro. The platelet studies are usually performed using PRP harvested from anticoagulated blood, and responses are monitored to various agonists. The patterns of responses observed may often provide clues to the nature of the underlying platelet defect, although specific techniques, largely available in research laboratories, are required to delineate the precise platelet mechanisms that are altered. Patients with classical Glanzmann thrombasthenia are characterized by the absence of both the primary and the secondary waves of aggregation in response to all the commonly used agonists, except ristocetin (see Fig. 40-3). Impaired or absent response to ristocetin but with normal aggregation response to other agonists suggests vWD or the BSS. In the latter disorder, the platelet counts are decreased, and the platelet size is increased. Although these findings may occur in some variants of vWD (e.g., type 2B), plasma levels of vWF and factor VIII, as well as the multimeric pattern of vWF, are normal in BSS, but abnormalities are observed in vWD (see later). Patients with impaired granule secretion or diminished dense granule contents generally show a decreased or absent second wave of aggregation in response to ADP, epinephrine, and PAF, and blunted responses to other agonists (collagen, U46619), associated with a markedly decreased release of granule contents.

THERAPY OF CONGENITAL PLATELET FUNCTION DEFECTS

Platelet transfusions and 1-desamino-8D-arginine vasopressin (DDAVP) administration have been the mainstays of therapy for patients with inherited platelet defects. Because of highly variable bleeding manifestations, therapeutic approaches need to be individualized. Platelet transfusions are effective in controlling the bleeding manifestations but come with potential risks associated with blood products, including alloimmunization. Patients with Glanzmann thrombasthenia and BSS may develop antibodies against the missing platelet glycoproteins, and these may compromise the efficacy of subsequent platelet transfusions. An alternative to platelet transfusions is intravenous administration of DDAVP, which was shown to shorten the bleeding time in a substantial number of patients with platelet function defects (Rao et al, 1995; Mannucci, 1998). The effect on the bleeding time lasted about 4 to 5 hours. This response appears to be dependent on the abnormalities leading to the platelet dysfunction. Most patients with Glanzmann thrombasthenia have not responded to DDAVP infusion with a shortening of the bleeding time. Responses in patients with disorders of platelet secretion, signal transduction, or storage pool deficiency have been variable, with a shortening of bleeding time in some patients. DDAVP administration induces a rise in plasma vWF, factor VIII, and tissue plasminogen activator. DDAVP does not correct the abnormal in vitro platelet aggregation or secretion responses in patients with platelet defects (Rao et al, 1995). Recombinant factor VIIa has developed into an important agent for the management of bleeding events in patients with Glanzmann thrombasthenia, particularly those with antibodies against platelet GP, and some other inherited defects (Poon & d'Oiron, 2000; Almeida et al, 2003). Additional approaches that have been utilized to improve hemostasis in patients with inherited platelet defects include the administration of antifibrinolytic agents such as ε-aminocaproic acid or tranexamic acid, and a short (3- to 4-day) course of prednisone (20 to 50 mg) (Mielke et al, 1981). Allogeneic bone marrow transplantation has now been successfully performed with complete correction in patients with thrombasthenia, although the development of antibodies directed against the GPIIb-IIIa complex remains a potential problem (Flood et al, 2005; Fujimoto et al, 2005).

ACQUIRED DISORDERS OF PLATELET FUNCTION

Alterations in platelet function occur in many acquired disorders of diverse etiologies (Rao, 2013a; Rao & Bennett, 2013). The specific biochemical and pathophysiologic aberrations leading to platelet dysfunction are poorly understood in most of them. In some, such as the myeloproliferative neoplasms (MPNs), there is production of intrinsically abnormal platelets by the bone marrow. In others, the dysfunction results from interaction of platelets with exogenous factors, such as pharmacologic agents, artificial surfaces (cardiopulmonary bypass), compounds that accumulate in plasma due to renal failure, and antibodies. In these disorders, the bleeding is usually mucocutaneous with a wide and often unpredictable spectrum of severity. The laboratory tests that generally identify the platelet dysfunction are an abnormal bleeding time, prolonged PFA-100 closure time, and abnormal *in vitro* platelet aggregation studies. In general, the correlation between the abnormalities observed in these studies and clinical bleeding remains weak.

MYELOPROLIFERATIVE NEOPLASMS

Bleeding tendency, thromboembolic complications, and qualitative platelet defects are all recognized in myeloproliferative neoplasms (MPNs), which include essential thrombocythemia, polycythemia vera, chronic idiopathic myelofibrosis, and chronic myelogenous leukemia (Schafer, 1984; Pearson,

2002; Kessler, 2004; Papadakis et al, 2010) (see Chapter 33). The frequency of thrombotic events exceeds that of hemorrhagic events. The platelet abnormalities reflect their development from an abnormal clone of stem cells, but some alterations may be secondary to enhanced platelet activation in vivo. Increased blood viscosity (as in polycythemia vera), the increased platelet counts, and endothelial and leukocyte dysfunction also contribute to the hemorrhagic events. Bleeding is usually mucocutaneous, but may manifest after surgery or trauma. Thrombosis can involve arteries, veins, and the microvasculature and may occur in unusual locations such as abdominal wall vessels or the hepatic, portal, and mesenteric circulations. Indeed, MPNs account for a substantial proportion of patients with Budd-Chiari syndrome or portal vein thrombosis. Erythromelalgia, characterized by redness and burning pain in the extremities, is strongly associated with ET and PV and is thought to be due primarily to arteriolar platelet thrombi (van Genderen et al, 1995; Michiels et al, 2006). Predictors for arterial thrombosis are age older than 60 years, a history of thrombosis, cardiovascular risk factors, leukocytosis, and the presence of the *JAK2* V617F mutation.

Several studies have examined platelet function and morphology in patients with MPN (Schafer, 1984; Landolfi et al, 1997; Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013). Under the electron microscope, the platelet findings include reduction in dense and α-granules, alterations in the open canalicular and dense tubular systems, and a reduction of mitochondria (Maldonado et al, 1974). The bleeding time is prolonged in a minority (≈17%) of MPN patients and does not correlate with an increased risk for bleeding (Schafer, 1984). Platelet aggregation responses are highly variable in MPN patients and often vary in the same patient over time. Decreased platelet responses are more common, although some patients demonstrate enhanced responses to agonists. In one analysis (Schafer, 1984) responses to ADP, collagen, and epinephrine were decreased in 39%, 37%, and 57% of patients, respectively. The impairment in aggregation in response to epinephrine is more commonly encountered than with other agonists; however, a diminished response to epinephrine is not pathognomonic of an MPN. The impaired responsiveness to epinephrine in MPN has been attributed to a decrease in the number of platelet α_2-adrenergic receptors. Diminished epinephrine-induced TxA2 production, dense granule secretion, and Ca^{2+} mobilization have also been reported. Decreases in platelet surface GPIIb-IIIa complexes, GPIb-IX, and GPIa-IIa have been documented in MPN, as well as impaired signal transduction–dependent activation of GPIIb-IIIa. Platelet GPIV (CD36), a membrane GP related to platelet-collagen and platelet-thrombospondin interactions, and platelet receptors for the Fc portion of IgG have been noted to be increased in MPN patients.

Platelet activation results in the release of free arachidonic acid, which is metabolized by the cyclooxygenase pathway leading to TxA2 production and by the 12-lipoxygenase pathway. Reduced formation of lipoxygenase products has been reported in MPN patients, and this was associated with enhanced TxA2 production (Schafer, 1982). Other abnormalities reported in MPN patients include defects in platelet signaling mechanisms, including in calcium mobilization and protein phosphorylation; decreased PGD2-induced activation of adenylyl cyclase and a 50% reduction in platelet PGD2 receptors, indicating an impairment in platelet inhibitory mechanisms; and reduced expression of the thrombopoietin receptor (MpL) in polycythemia vera and idiopathic myelofibrosis, but not ET or chronic myelogenous leukemia (Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013). Abnormalities in plasma vWF and AVWS may occur in MPN patients and contribute to the hemostatic defect (see the "Acquired von Willebrand Syndrome" section later in the chapter) (Budde & van Genderen, 1997; Elliott & Tefferi, 2005).

A major advance in understanding the pathogenesis of the MPN is the identification of gain-of-function mutations in the *JAK2* or *MPL* genes in approximately 95% of patients with PV and approximately 50% to 60% of patients with ET and MV (Skoda, 2009; Kiladjian, 2012; Sulai & Tefferi, 2012; Rao & Bennett, 2013). Some studies, but not others, have suggested that the presence of the *JAK2* V617F or a high *JAK2* V617F allele burden confers increased thrombotic risk in essential thrombocythemia (Skoda, 2009; Kiladjian, 2012; Rao & Bennett, 2013).

ACUTE LEUKEMIAS AND MYELODYSPLASTIC SYNDROMES

The major cause of bleeding in these conditions is thrombocytopenia. However, these disorders may be associated with platelet dysfunction (Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013). Acquired platelet defects associated with clinical bleeding are more common in acute myelogenous leukemia, but have been reported in acute lymphoblastic and myelomonoblastic leukemias, hairy cell leukemia, and myelodysplastic syndromes. Reduced aggregation responses to ADP, epinephrine, and collagen have been reported along with diminished nucleotide secretion, TxA2 production, and platelet PDGF and β-thromboglobulin. Acquired forms of vWD and a Bernard-Soulier–like platelet defect have been described in hairy cell leukemia and myelodysplastic syndromes. In acute leukemias and myelodysplastic syndromes, platelets may be morphologically abnormal, and ultrastructural studies have shown decreased microtubules, reduced number and abnormal sizes of dense granules, and excessive membranous systems. The megakaryocytes exhibit dysplasia.

DYSPROTEINEMIAS

Excessive clinical bleeding may occur in patients with dysproteinemias, and this appears to be related to multiple mechanisms including platelet dysfunction, specific coagulation abnormalities, hyperviscosity, and amyloid deposition in blood vessels (Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013). Platelet dysfunction in these patients has been attributed to coating of platelets by the paraprotein.

UREMIA

The hemostatic defect in uremia has been attributed to platelet dysfunction and impaired platelet–vessel-wall interaction as the major mechanisms (Gangji et al, 2006; Sohal et al, 2006; Pavord & Myers, 2011; Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013). Patients on dialysis have increased circulating reticulated platelets, indicating accelerated platelet turnover. The bleeding time was demonstrated many years ago to be prolonged in uremia. The prolonged bleeding times are typically shortened following red cell transfusions or treatment with erythropoietin (Livio et al, 1982; Moia et al, 1987), indicating that anemia also contributes to the prolonged bleeding time. Multiple platelet abnormalities are recognized in uremia (Boccardo et al, 2004). Adhesion of platelets to the subendothelium, an initial step in hemostasis, involves the interaction of vWF, platelets, and the subendothelium. Adhesion of platelets from uremic whole blood perfused over de-endothelialized rabbit aorta has been reported to be impaired (Castillo et al, 1986). Most studies have found normal or increased plasma vWF antigen levels and activity (ristocetin cofactor), although in some, vWF activity was consistently lower than the antigen level. The multimeric structure of vWF has been shown to be normal. The number of GPIb and GPIIb-IIIa sites per platelet has been reported to be normal in uremia (Gralnick et al, 1988). Many studies have shown impaired platelet aggregation responses to several agonists in uremia, with sometimes conflicting results. Plasma levels of PF4 and β-thromboglobulin are elevated in uremia and increase further with hemodialysis, reflecting reduced renal clearance as well as platelet activation by membrane dialyzers. Several studies have shown reductions in products of arachidonic acid metabolism (PGG2/PGH2, TxA2) in uremic platelets. The reduced TxA2 may arise due to a dysfunctional cyclooxygenase or defect in the liberation of arachidonic acid from phospholipids by phospholipase A2 activation. Other platelet defects described in uremia include increased platelet cAMP levels and adenylyl cyclase (which can inhibit platelet responses), and decreased agonist-induced Ca^{2+} mobilization, clot retraction, and platelet procoagulant activity. Lastly, evidence has been presented for changes in the expression of selective platelet miRNAs and mRNAs in chronic kidney disease (Ple et al, 2012).

The pathogenesis of the hemostatic defect in uremia has also been linked to accumulation of dialyzable and non-dialyzable molecules in the uremic plasma. One such compound, guanidinosuccinic acid, accumulates in uremic plasma, inhibits platelets in vitro, and stimulates generation of nitric oxide, which inhibits platelet adhesion and platelet responses by increasing cGMP levels (Boccardo et al, 2004; Sohal et al, 2006). Exposure of human endothelial cells to uremic plasma leads to enhanced nitric oxide production. Enhanced prostacyclin-like activity has been observed in uremic plasma (Remuzzi et al, 1978). Aggressive dialysis is an important component of the overall management and corrects the bleeding diathesis in some patients, but is only partially effective in others (Gangji et al, 2006; Galbusera et al, 2009). Elevation of the hematocrit with packed red blood cells or recombinant erythropoietin shortens the bleeding time and corrects mild bleeding in uremic patients.

ACQUIRED STORAGE POOL DISEASE

Several patients have been reported in whom the dense granule SPD appears to be acquired (Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013). In general, this

defect probably reflects in vivo release of platelet dense granule contents due to activation or a production of abnormal platelets by the marrow. Acquired SPD has been observed in patients with antiplatelet antibodies, systemic lupus erythematosus, chronic ITP, disseminated intravascular coagulation, hemolytic-uremic syndrome, renal transplant rejection, multiple congenital cavernous hemangioma, MPN, acute and chronic leukemias, severe valvular disease; in patients undergoing CPB; and in platelet concentrates stored for transfusion.

ANTIPLATELET ANTIBODIES AND PLATELET FUNCTION

Binding of an antibody to platelets may induce several effects, including accelerated destruction, platelet activation, cell lysis, aggregation, secretion of granule contents, and outward exposure of PS. Platelet-antibody interaction may lead to impaired function, both as a consequence of activation and due to antibody binding to specific glycoproteins. Patients with ITP have decreased platelet survival, and may have impaired platelet function and abnormally prolonged bleeding times even at adequate counts. Antibodies may induce platelet dysfunction by multiple mechanisms. In many patients, the antibodies are directed against specific platelet surface membrane glycoproteins GPIb-IX-V (Woods et al, 1984b), GPIIb-IIIa (Woods et al, 1984a), GPIa-IIa (Deckmyn et al, 1994), GPVI (Sugiyama et al, 1987; Boylan et al, 2004), and glycosphingolipids (van Vliet et al, 1987; Koerner et al, 1989). In one report, the anti-GPVI antibody induced clearance of the GPVI/FcRγ complex from the platelet surface (Boylan et al, 2004). Some of these antibodies, in effect, induce acquired forms of BSS and thrombasthenia.

DRUGS THAT INHIBIT PLATELET FUNCTION

Many drugs affect platelet function (Box 40-3) (Rao & Bennett, 2013). For several, the effects on platelets have been studied in vitro, and the relevance of such findings to the drug levels achieved in clinical practice is not well established. Even among those shown to alter platelet responses ex vivo, the impact on hemostasis often remains unclear. Moreover, the impact of concomitant administration of multiple drugs, each with a mild effect on platelet function, is unknown, although this is clinically relevant. Because of their widespread use, aspirin and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory agents are an important cause of platelet inhibition in clinical practice. Aspirin ingestion results in inhibition of platelet aggregation and secretion upon stimulation with ADP, epinephrine, and low concentrations of collagen. Aspirin irreversibly acetylates and inactivates the platelet cyclooxygenase, leading to the inhibition of synthesis of endoperoxides (PGG2 and PGH2) and TxA2. It is recommended that aspirin be discontinued 5 to 7 days prior to platelet aggregation studies. Several other nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs also impair platelet function by inhibiting the cyclooxygenase enzyme and may prolong bleeding time. Compared with aspirin, the inhibition of cyclooxygenase by these agents is generally short-lived and reversible.

Ticlopidine, clopidogrel, and prasugrel are orally administered thienopyridine derivatives that inhibit platelet function by inhibiting the binding of ADP to the platelet P2Y12 receptor. While these three are prodrugs that are metabolized to active compounds in vivo, ticagrelor is a direct-acting P2Y12 antagonist. All of them prolong the bleeding time and inhibit platelet aggregation responses to several agonists, including ADP, collagen, epinephrine, and thrombin, to various extents depending on agonist concentrations. GPIIb-IIIa receptor antagonists are a class of compounds that inhibit fibrinogen binding and platelet aggregation. These include a monoclonal antibody against the GPIIb-IIIa receptor (abciximab), a synthetic peptide containing the KGD sequence (eptifibatide), and a peptidomimetic (tirofiban). They are potent inhibitors of aggregation (both primary and secondary) in response to all the usual agonists except ristocetin; they all prolong bleeding time and are far more potent as platelet inhibitors than aspirin. Immune-mediated thrombocytopenia is a potential complication of the GPIIb-IIIa antagonists (Aster & Bougie, 2007) (see Chapter 42).

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) inhibit platelet function. These include fluoxetine, sertraline, paroxetine, fluvoxamine, citalopram, and escitalopram. Serotonin in plasma is taken up by platelets, incorporated into dense granules, and secreted on platelet activation. The SSRIs inhibit serotonin uptake, and platelet aggregation and secretion responses to activation. In epidemiologic studies, patients on SSRIs have had increased gastrointestinal bleeding and increased bleeding with surgery (Movig et al, 2003; McCloskey et al, 2008).

BOX 40-3

Drugs That Affect Platelet Function

Cyclooxygenase Inhibitors

Aspirin

Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory agents

- Indomethacin, phenylbutazone, ibuprofen, sulfinpyrazone, sulindac, meclofenamic acid, and others

Adenosine Diphosphate (ADP) Receptor Antagonists

Ticlopidine, clopidogrel, prasugrel, ticagrelor

Glycoprotein (GP)IIb-IIa Receptor Antagonists

c7E3 (abciximab), tirofiban, eptifibatide

Drugs That Increase Platelet Cyclic Adenosine Monophosphate (cAMP) or Cyclic Guanosine Monophosphate (cGMP)

Adenylate cyclase activators

- Prostaglandins I_2, D_2, E_1, and analogs

Phosphodiesterase inhibitors

- Dipyridamole
- Cilostazol
- Anagrelide
- Milrinone
- Methylxanthines (caffeine, theophylline, aminophylline)

Nitric Oxide and Nitric Oxide Donors

Antimicrobials

Penicillins
Cephalosporins
Nitrofurantoin
Hydroxychloroquine
Miconazole

Cardiovascular Drugs

β-Adrenergic blockers (propranolol)
Vasodilators (nitroprusside, nitroglycerin)
Diuretics (furosemide)
Calcium channel blockers
Quinidine
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors

Anticoagulants

Heparin

Thrombolytic Agents

Streptokinase, tissue plasminogen activator, urokinase

Psychotropics and Anesthetics

Tricyclic antidepressants

- Imipramine, amitriptyline, nortriptyline

Phenothiazines

- Chlorpromazine, promethazine, trifluoperazine

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors

- Fluoxetine, sertraline, paroxetine, and others

Local anesthetics
General anesthesia (halothane)

Chemotherapeutic Agents

Mithramycin
Carmustine
Daunorubicin

Miscellaneous Agents

Dextrans and hydroxyethyl starch
Lipid-lowering agents (clofibrate, halofenate)
ε-Aminocaproic acid
Antihistaminics
Ethanol
Vitamin E
Radiographic contrast agents
Food items (omega-3 fatty acids, vitamin E, onions, garlic, ginger, cumin, turmeric, cloves, black tree fungus, *Gingko biloba*, ginseng)

Modified with permission from Rao AK: Acquired disorders of platelet function. In Colman RW, editor: *Hemostasis and thrombosis: basic principles and clinical practice*, Philadelphia, 2006, Lippincott.

β-Lactam antibiotics, including penicillins and cephalosporins, inhibit platelet aggregation responses, and may contribute to a bleeding diathesis at high doses (Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013). These include carbenicillin, penicillin G, ticarcillin, ampicillin, nafcillin, azlocillin, cloxacillin, mezlocillin, oxacillin, piperacillin, and apalcillin. The platelet inhibition appears to be dose-dependent, taking about 2 to 3 days to manifest and 3 to 10 days to abate after drug discontinuation. Cephalosporins may also impair platelet function. Moxalactam has been reported to induce platelet dysfunction associated with prolonged bleeding times and clinical hemorrhage; it inhibits synthesis of vitamin-dependent coagulation factors as well. Other third-generation cephalosporins appear to show little effect on normal platelet function. In general, the clinical significance of the effect of antibiotics on platelet function remains unclear. The general context in which the bleeding events are encountered in patients on antibiotics prevents identification of the precise role played by the antimicrobials, because of the presence of concomitant factors (thrombocytopenia, DIC, infection, vitamin K deficiency). Discontinuation of a specifically indicated antibiotic may not be an option or necessary.

A host of other medications (see Box 40-3) (Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013) and agents, including food substances, inhibit platelet responses but the clinical significance for many is unclear (Rao, 2013b; Rao & Bennett, 2013). Given the increasing use of herbal medicines, such as gingko *(Gingko biloba)*, and food supplements, such as garlic *(Allium sativum)*, their role and interaction with pharmaceutical drugs needs to be considered in the evaluation of patients with unexplained bleeding.

VON WILLEBRAND FACTOR, VON WILLEBRAND DISEASE, AND THROMBOTIC THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

VON WILLEBRAND FACTOR BIOLOGY

Von Willebrand factor (vWF) plays key roles both in primary hemostasis and in secondary hemostasis. In the latter role, vWF serves as a carrier protein for factor VIII; in the absence of vWF, plasma factor VIII is rapidly cleared (see Chapter 39). In primary hemostasis, vWF mediates platelet adhesion to exposed collagen at sites of vascular injury. Plasma vWF derives from secretion by endothelial cells. This secretion has a major constitutive component, but there is an additional releasable pool of vWF that is stored in the endothelial Weibel-Palade bodies. Megakaryocytes also synthesize vWF, which is stored in the platelet α-granules and released upon platelet activation. Although such released vWF may not raise the plasma vWF appreciably, a local increase of vWF at sites of injury may be significant.

The *vWF* gene is located on chromosome 12 and is 178 kB long with 52 exons. There is a partial, but nonfunctional, duplication of the *vWF* gene on chromosome 22 (*vWF* pseudogene), which is of importance in the design of primers for amplification of the *vWF* gene. Following cleavage of an N-terminal propeptide fragment, the mature 2050 amino acid vWF protein is composed of a series of functional domains and subdomains (Springer, 2014; Lenting et al, 2015). The *vWF* gene and its resulting gene products are shown schematically in Figure 40-6. The individual vWF monomeric units are bound together by multiple disulfide bonds, occurring both near the N-termini and C-termini (Tsai, 2003). The resulting multimers may achieve molecular weights exceeding 20 MDa. The higher molecular weight multimers are subsequently lost when vWF released into the circulating plasma comes in contact with and activates the metalloproteinase ADAMTS-13 (Muia et al, 2014). ADAMTS-13 cleaves between Tyr842 and Met843 within the A2 domain of vWF multimeric subunits. Following initial proteolysis, the ADAMTS13 proteolysis of potential sites within vWF comes to a halt, presumably due to steric hindrance of the ADAMTS13 penetrating deeper into the vWF multimeric structure. Deficiency of ADAMTS13, either due to a congenital abnormality or to the formation of autoantibodies against the enzyme, results in "unusually large" vWF multimers circulating in the plasma. These forms are capable of spontaneously aggregating platelets, as well as forming large strands anchored to endothelial P-selectin that can result in RBC fragmentation—two characteristic attributes of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP).

At sites of vessel injury, vWF binds to exposed subendothelial collagen. The bound vWF and the GPIbα on the platelet surface interact, effectively

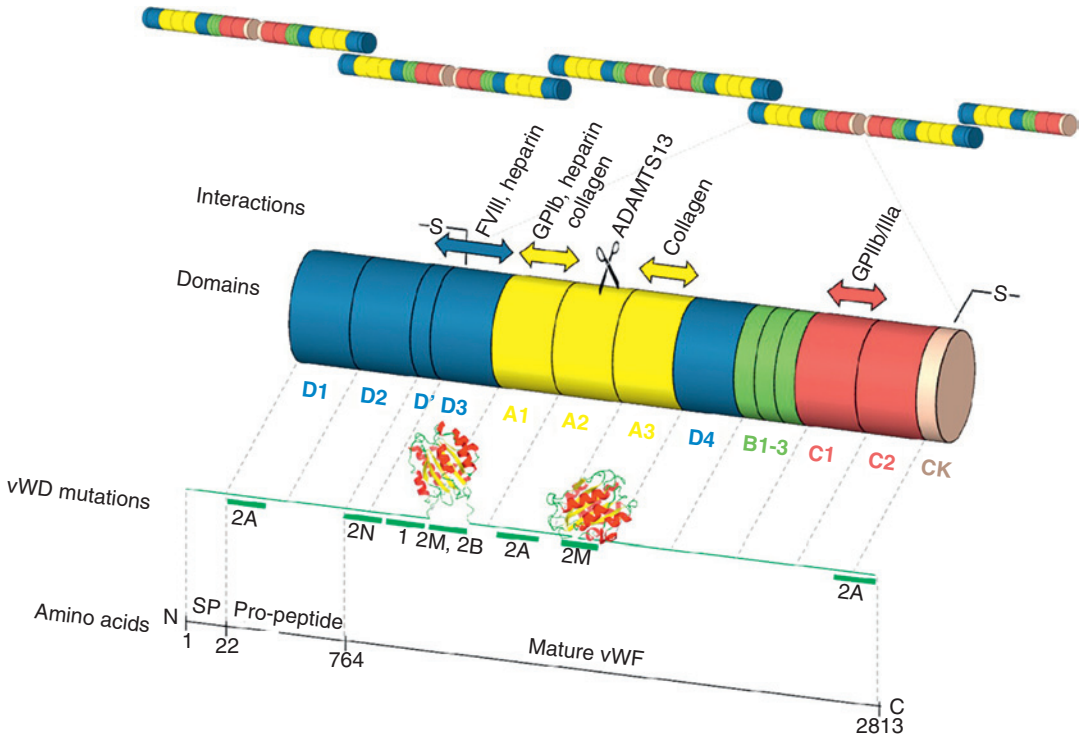


Figure 40-6 Schematic representation of von Willebrand factor (vWF). vWF is synthesized as a pre-pro-vWF molecule that comprises a 22-residue signal peptide, a 741-residue propeptide, and the 2050-residue mature subunit. After removal of the signal peptide (SP), pro-vWF subunits associate in the endoplasmic reticulum in "tail-to-tail" dimers by the formation of disulfide bonds, after which dimers further multimerize by forming "head-to-head" disulfide bonds between the amino-terminal regions. The propeptide and the mature subunit form pro-vWF (2791 residues) consisting of four types of repeated domains as indicated. Crystal structures within the A1 and A3 domains are depicted. The main binding sites that are important for the hemostatic function of vWF are indicated, together with the ADAMTS13 cleavage site. Major regions in which mutations have been found that are associated with vWD types 1 and 2 are also shown. (Reprinted with permission from De Meyer SF, Deckmyn H, Vanhoorelbeke K: von Willebrand factor to the rescue, *Blood* 113:5049–5057, 2009.)

tethering the platelet to the injury site. This ligand-receptor interaction produces an outside-to-inside signaling across the platelet membrane, leading to platelet activation. One component of this platelet activation consists of a subsequent inside-to-outside signaling event within GPIIb-IIIa that allows it to bind fibrinogen. In the laboratory, vWF may be assayed antigenically, functionally, and even structurally. While the vWF antigen (vWF:Ag) was formerly quantified by a variety of gel electrophoretic approaches, it may now be measured with high precision by rapid methods such as ELISA or immunoturbidometric procedures.

LABORATORY TESTS FOR VON WILLEBRAND FACTOR

vWF is capable of binding to a number of different molecules (see Fig. 40-6). The functional tests currently employed in the evaluation of patients assess vWF binding to platelets, collagen, and factor VIII. vWF binds to the GPIbα chain of the platelet GPIb-IX-V complex. This receptor was discovered by Brinkhous and Read in 1978 to possess the unusual, but certainly convenient, property of retaining reactivity with its ligand vWF even in formalin-fixed, lyophilized platelets in an aqueous suspension (Brinkhous & Read, 1978). The antibiotic ristocetin enhances the binding of vWF to platelet GPIbα. The "ristocetin cofactor" assay of vWF reactivity with platelets has served as the primary measure of vWF functional activity for many years. When formalin-fixed platelets are incubated under stirring conditions with ristocetin and plasma, the rate and extent of platelet aggregation is a function of the amount of plasma vWF. This test may be performed either manually in a standard platelet aggregometer or by a variety of automated approaches. It is the higher molecular weight multimers that are most active in binding to platelets, so that ristocetin cofactor activity is diminished when there is a deficiency in the higher molecular weight multimers, even if the total amount of vWF is normal because of relative abundance of lower-molecular-weight multimers).

Ristocetin cofactor activity assays using platelets have suffered a relatively high coefficient of variation (i.e., low precision) compared to other tests performed in the coagulation laboratory (Kitchen et al, 2006). Thus, alternative approaches to quantify vWF-platelet interaction have been pursued. Most notable is the replacement of platelets (whether fresh or formalinized) by recombinant GPIbα in functional ELISA assays of vWF "ristocetin cofactor" activity (Federici et al, 2004; Hui et al, 2007; Flood et al, 2009). An interesting modification of such assays employs GPIbα with increase-of-function mutations such as those seen in platelet-type vWD (see later), and does not require the addition of ristocetin for vWF binding. This approach may be particularly useful in individuals possessing phenotypically normal variations in vWF who would otherwise be classified as a type 2M vWD (see later) solely because their variant form of vWF lacks the ability to bind ristocetin (Flood et al, 2009). However, the new ELISA-based functional assays in some instances provide discordant results both with each other and with traditional ristocetin cofactor assays, potentially leading to differences in vWD subtyping (Timm et al, 2015).

Functional ELISA tests have also been developed for quantitation of vWF collagen binding activity (vWF:CBA). Typically wells are coated with type 3 or a mixture of types 1 and 3 collagen, patient plasma incubated in the wells, and bound vWF subsequently quantitated by means of conjugated anti-vWF antibody. vWF:CBA is strongly dependent upon the binding of high molecular weight vWF multimers. vWF also binds to type 4 and type 6 collagen; some mutations within the vWF A1 domain appear to alter binding to these collagens (Flood et al, 2015). Assays for vWF binding to types 4 and 6 collagen are not presently in clinical use.

Evaluation of the ability of a patient's plasma vWF to bind Factor VIII (also referred to as vWF:FVIIIB) has progressed from a laborious multiday procedure to a same-day standardized ELISA procedure, and is now available commercially in some countries (see the "Type 2N (Normandy)" section later in the chapter) (Veyradier et al, 2011; Lillicrap, 2013a).

Multimeric analysis of plasma vWF has made substantial contributions to defining the various phenotypes of vWD. At low resolution, multimeric analysis determines the relative distribution of vWF by molecular weight range (Fig. 40-7). At higher resolution, abnormal patterns of the multimers within a narrow size range may additionally be resolved. It should be noted that platelet α-granules contain megakaryocyte-synthesized vWF that, like the endothelial vWF, has not been exposed to ADAMTS-13. vWF isolated from endothelial cells or platelets, accordingly, contains higher multimers than plasma vWF.

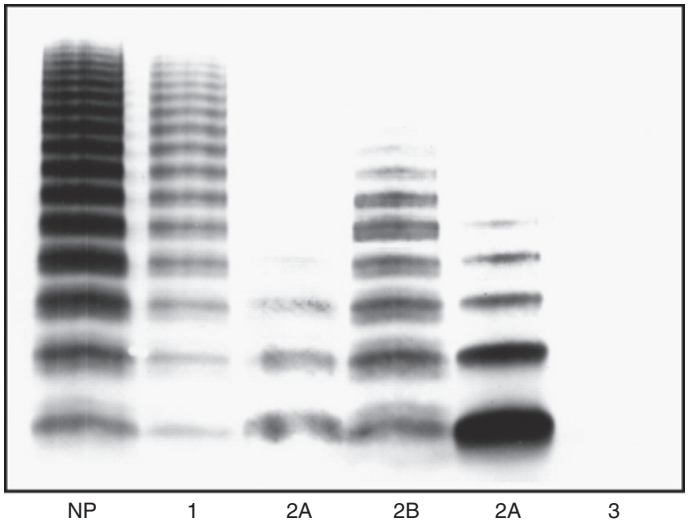


Figure 40-7 Multimeric patterns in selected variants of von Willebrand disease (vWD). Plasma samples were analyzed for von Willebrand factor (vWF) by sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS)-agarose gel electrophoresis and Western blotting. Patterns are shown for pooled normal plasma (NP) and patients with the indicated types of vWD. Note that in the vWD 2A and 2B there is relative loss of higher molecular weight multimers, although to varying extents. Of note, the extent of multimer loss is variable in each subtype, and the differences in extent of multimer loss between the 2A and 2B subtypes do not distinguish these subtypes in diagnostic studies. Functional studies such as platelet aggregation in response to ristocetin are required to distinguish between the decrease-of-function 2A subtype and the increase-of-function 2B subtype (see text). (Adapted with permission from Sadler JE: New concepts in von Willebrand disease, *Annu Rev Med* 56:173–191, 2005; and Sadler JE: von Willebrand disease. In Bloom AL, Forbes CD, Thomas DP, Tuddenham EGD, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis*, New York, 1994, Churchill Livingstone, pp 843–857.)

VON WILLEBRAND DISEASE

The term *von Willebrand disease* (vWD) encompasses a broad array of quantitative and qualitative inherited abnormalities of vWF (Table 40-6). Overall, the prevalence of vWD associated with significant bleeding has been estimated to be 1:10,000 (Ng et al, 2015), although higher estimates have been reported in population-based studies (Federici et al, 2014).

Type 1 vWD: Partial Quantitative Abnormality

In type 1 vWD, vWF molecules are present in decreased amount in plasma, but are qualitatively normal. The entire size spectrum of vWF multimers is present, albeit at decreased amounts (see Fig. 40-7). Type 1 is the most commonly diagnosed vWD subtype, estimated at 75% of all cases (Lillicrap, 2013b). vWF gene mutations have been detected in approximately two thirds of cases. In addition to loci within the vWD gene itself, studies are also being undertaken to detect mutations at alternative genetic loci that contribute to vWF synthesis, secretion, and clearance (Lillicrap, 2013b). In type 1 vWD, there is roughly commensurate decrease in vWF, whether measured antigenically or with respect to its various functions—i.e., interacting with platelets (vWF:RCo activity), with collagen (vWF:CBA activity), or in its chaperone role for circulating factor VIII. In normal plasma, the ratio of vWF functional activity to that of vWF:Ag is expected to be ≥0.6 (Ng et al, 2015). Flood and colleagues have reported that using a cutoff of 0.6 for the ratio of vWF:CBA/vWF:Ag, sensitivity of these assays with respect to vWF multimer abnormalities was 100% for healthy controls, 99% for type 1 vWD patients, and 100% for patients with type 2A and type 2B vWD (see later) (Flood et al, 2013).

Multigenic factors influence the level of circulating vWF, which adds complexity to efforts to diagnose type 1 vWD (Sanders et al, 2015). Not only genes encoding vWF, but also genes encoding intracellular transporter proteins, ABO genes affecting posttranslational modifications of the vWF molecule, genes affecting vWF proteolysis, and still other genetic factors influence the quantity and functionality of vWF. The ABO antigenic system exerts a particularly strong effect upon plasma vWF levels, which are approximately 25% lower in type O individuals than in those whose blood group is non–blood group O (Franchini et al, 2014). In some instances, this could make the difference between being considered normal or deficient in vWF level. Differences in vWF clearance between blood

group O and non–blood group O individuals appear related to their blood group status, but not to the actual ABH antigenic loading on vWF molecules (Groeneveld et al, 2015). While ABO status appears to affect vWF clearance rates, the underlying mechanism for this variability still remains unclear. A recent analysis evaluating clinical bleeding, laboratory measures of vWF, and vWF sequencing concluded that treatment considerations should be based solely upon baseline vWF level and not modified because of ABO blood group status (Gill et al, 2014).

Because of the relatively high prevalence both of mild bleeding symptoms and of mild deficiencies of vWF, it may be erroneous to conclude that simply demonstrating a mild to moderate decrease in plasma vWF level is actually the *cause* of an individual patient's increased bleeding tendency (Sadler, 2003a). It is important to consider other etiologies for the hemostatic abnormality as well, such as a platelet defect. The approach to patients with mild deficiencies of vWF continues to be debated (Gudmundsdottir et al, 2007; Onundarson et al, 2008). It has been proposed that, unless more diagnostic family or personal information is available, an individual with a vWF level of 30 to 50 U/dL may better be considered to have a "low vWF level" rather than "type 1 vWD" (Nichols et al, 2009; Sadler, 2009) (see Table 40-6).

A subset of type 1 patients has been designated type 1C, where the "C" serves to indicate abnormally increased clearance of vWF from the circulation (Haberichter et al, 2006). The laboratory identification of these patients has been facilitated by measurement of plasma level of mature vWF protein in relation to that of the vWF propeptide (vWFpp). Cleavage of vWFpp from the immature vWF molecule after residue 763 releases the 2050-residue mature subunit of vWF (see Fig. 40-6). The finding of an increased vWFpp/vWF:Ag ratio in the context of a reduced vWF antigen has shown success in identifying the type 1C subtype (Haberichter et al, 2006, 2008).

Type 3 vWD: Severe Quantitative Abnormality

In type 3 vWD, there is a severe, if not in fact total, absence of vWF gene product. Whereas type 1 vWD is generally expressed in autosomal dominant fashion, type 3 is autosomal recessive, with neither parent typically showing symptomatic disease. Since vWF serves as a carrier molecule for factor VIII, type 3 patients not only suffer with respect to platelet function but also because of factor VIII levels (typically <10%) (James & Lillicrap, 2012).

Qualitative Abnormalities: Type 2A, Type 2B, Type 2M, and Type 2N vWD

Patients with type 2 vWD subtypes have a qualitative abnormality of this complex protein. These patients are divided into the following subtypes:

Type 2A

In type 2A vWD, there is a lack of higher molecular weight multimers in plasma (see Fig. 40-7), with corresponding loss of vWF functionality. They arise due to vWF mutations that prevent proper multimerization or to mutations that increase the susceptibility of fully formed vWF to proteolysis by ADAMTS13 or other enzymes. The interaction of the plasma vWF with platelets is characteristically impaired, so that both measurement of plasma vWF:RCo and ristocetin-induced aggregation of the patient's PRP are decreased. The ratios of vWF:RCo/vWF:Ag and of vWF:CBA/vWF:Ag are generally <0.6.

Type 2B

In type 2B vWD, point mutations within the vWF molecule confer an increase-of-function capability with respect to its ability to bind the platelet GPIb. This enhanced binding of the abnormal type 2B vWF molecules to circulating platelets leads to a depletion of the higher molecular weight multimers in plasma (see Fig. 40-7) and often to a mild to moderate thrombocytopenia. This increase of function can be demonstrated by the ability of abnormally low ristocetin concentrations of ~0.3 to 0.5 mg/mL to aggregate the PRP of such patients. As in the case of type 2A, the ratios of vWF:RCo/vWF:Ag and of vWF:CBA/vWF:Ag are typically <0.6.

Type 2M

Patients with type 2M vWD have a decrease-of-function phenotype resembling type 2A, yet their vWF contains the normal full complement of molecular weight components in multimeric analysis. The original patients fitting this subtype had missense mutations that led to loss of interaction with the platelet GPIb-IX-V complex. Such patients usually have a decreased ratio of vWF:RCo/vWF:Ag, yet may retain a normal vWF:CBA/vWF:Ag ratio. More recently, however, the 2M subtype has been considered also to include several missense mutations leading to selective decrease in collagen binding, in which case the only phenotypic test that may be abnormal is the vWF:CBA ratio (Lillicrap, 2013a, 2013b).

Type 2N (Normandy)

These patients have point mutations within the vWF molecule that specifically impair its ability to bind factor VIII. They may show quite normal levels of vWF antigen and even ristocetin cofactor activity, but will have abnormally low plasma factor VIII. Since the *vWF* gene is transmitted autosomally, type 2N vWD should be suspected when there appears to be an autosomal inheritance pattern of factor VIII deficiency. Definitive diagnosis is made by demonstrating impaired binding of normal factor VIII to the patient vWF, such as by ELISA test, and by molecular diagnostic methods (James & Lillicrap, 2012). Evaluation of a commercial ELISA procedure in the French population reported that it detected all patients with type 2N vWD (vWF:FVIIIB values <15%), as well as all heterozygous carriers of a known 2N mutation (values between 30% and 65%), and that no hemophilia A patients or carriers, nor normal subjects, exhibited a markedly decreased vWF:FVIIIB level (Veyradier et al, 2011). These authors went on to estimate that type 2N vWD might actually account for around 10% of patients with decreased FVIII:C together with a FVIII:C/vWF:Ag ratio lower than 0.6 (Veyradier et al, 2011). The great majority of mutations resulting in a type 2N vWD phenotype are clustered within the FVIII-binding D'/D3 region of vWF (see Fig. 40-6), and genotypic/phenotypic associations have emerged from DNA sequence analyses. For example, the R816W and T791M mutations result in FVIII levels <10% with poor DDAVP responsiveness, while the R854 Q mutation is associated with FVIII levels of around 25% and a greater likelihood of responsiveness to DDAVP (Lillicrap, 2013a).

Platelet-Type vWD

In the autosomal dominant bleeding disorder termed *platelet-type vWD* (Miller & Castella, 1982; Weiss et al, 1982) the genetic defect is not in vWF but a gain-of-function defect in platelet GPIbα. This results in enhanced binding of normal vWF to platelets and in its clearance from plasma. Additionally, the heightened binding in vivo of vWF to the mutant GPIbα may induce a conformational change in the vWF and enhanced proteolysis by ADAMTS13 (Nishio et al, 2004). Laboratory assessment of plasma vWF and enhanced responsiveness of patient PRP to low concentrations of ristocetin in this entity are indistinguishable from type 2B vWD. Genetic analysis of platelet GPIbα and of vWF provides the definitive distinction between platelet-type vWD and type 2B vWD. Several point mutations in a conformationally sensitive portion of the *GPIbα* gene (Miller et al, 1991; Russell & Roth, 1993; Woods et al, 2014), as well as a 9–amino acid deletion in an unexpectedly distant region of the glycoprotein Ib α chain (Othman et al, 2005), have been reported in this rare disorder.

ACQUIRED VON WILLEBRAND SYNDROME

The term *acquired von Willebrand syndrome* (AVWS) describes patients with recent onset, yet no prior personal or family history of an increased bleeding tendency, whose laboratory studies show abnormalities similar to those seen in inherited vWD (Tiede et al, 2011). This is a heterogeneous group with a varied set of disease associations. In most patients, a quantitative or qualitative loss of vWF activity is due to one of the following three pathophysiologic mechanisms (Federici et al, 2013): (1) Abnormally increased shearing of vWF leading to proteolysis of high molecular weight vWF multimers, as seen in aortic stenosis or with cardiac-assist devices; (2) Development of a neutralizing or non-neutralizing autoantibody that binds to the patient's vWF, leading to its removal from the circulation; (3) Adsorption of vWF to circulating cells, most often lymphoproliferative or other malignant cell clones. Decreased vWF synthesis has also been invoked in patients with hypothyroidism (Levesque et al, 1993) and those receiving valproate (Kreuz et al, 1990). Additionally, increased proteolytic degradation of vWF by plasmin or other proteases may occur (Federici et al, 2013).

Analysis of the patient's plasma provides a picture similar to that of inherited vWD, particularly type 2 variants with the loss of the highest multimers. In AVWS associated with pathophysiologically high shear such as in aortic stenosis (Sadler, 2003b; Vincentelli et al, 2003), angiodysplasias (Veyradier et al, 2001), or following placement of cardiac-assist devices, the largest vWF multimers are missing. The most common bleeding events are gastrointestinal, and in fact the association of aortic

TABLE 40-6
Laboratory Patterns of Different Types of von Willebrand Disease

	vWF:Ag	vWF:RCo	vWF:RCo/vWF:Ag	FVIII:C	Multimeric Pattern	Platelet Count	Specialized Testing
Quantitative Disorders of vWF							
Type 1	↓	↓	≥0.6	Normal to ↓	Normal	Normal	
Type 1C	↓	↓	≥0.6	Normal to ↓	Normal	Normal	Increased ratio of vWFpp/vWF:Ag
Low vWF levels	↓	↓	≥0.6	Normal to ↓	Normal	Normal	
Type 3	↓↓↓	↓↓↓	≥0.6	↓↓↓	Absent	Normal	
Qualitative Disorders of vWF							
Type 2A	↓	↓↓	≤0.6	Normal to ↓	Loss of HMW-vWF	Normal	
Type 2B	↓	↓↓	≤0.6	Normal to ↓	Loss of HMW-vWF	↓↓	LD-RIPA enhanced with patient-derived plasma (vWF)
Platelet-type vWD	↓	↓↓	≤0.6	Normal	Loss of HMW-vWF	↓↓	LD-RIPA enhanced with patient-derived platelets
Type 2M	↓	↓↓	≤0.6	Normal to ↓	Normal	Normal	
Type 2N	Normal to ↓	Normal to ↓	≥0.6	↓↓	Normal	Normal	Decreased vWF:FVIII-binding capacity

Modified with permission from Ng C, Motto DG, Di Paola J: Diagnostic approach to von Willebrand disease, *Blood* 125:2029–2037, 2015.

stenosis with gastrointestinal bleeding preceded our understanding of the role of vWF in its pathophysiology (Heyde, 1958). Dramatic correction of bleeding following surgical repair of aortic stenosis was a landmark finding (Vincentelli et al, 2003). In a study of 31 patients with advanced heart failure who had received continuous-flow left ventricular–assist devices, the mean levels of vWF:RCo activity and vWF:Ag were 102% and 204%, respectively, yet with decreased or absent high molecular weight multimers in all patients (Uriel et al, 2010). Six of these patients received heart transplants, following which the vWF multimeric patterns returned to normal.

Abnormalities in plasma vWF also occur in MPN patients and may contribute to the hemostatic defect. Plasma vWF, particularly the large vWF multimers, are decreased, inversely related to the platelet counts, and have improved following cytoreduction (Budde & van Genderen, 1997). These changes in plasma vWF occur in patients with reactive thrombocytosis as well. It has been postulated that enhanced vWF proteolysis by ADAMTS-13 may be occurring, possibly because of platelet-induced conformational effects upon the plasma vWF (Elliott & Tefferi, 2005).

Defining the etiology of AVWS may be difficult in some patients, especially in those without obvious cardiovascular causes. In contrast to the laboratory's ability to identify autoantibodies to clotting factors such as factor VIII (see Chapter 39), mixing studies in AVWS based upon vWF functional activity rarely identify neutralizing autoantibodies directed against vWF; however, efforts to develop novel assays capable of detecting such antibodies are ongoing (Franchi et al, 2014).

THROMBOTIC THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

The thrombotic microangiopathies (TMAs) comprise a syndrome of disorders of diverse etiologies that produce characteristic vascular pathologic abnormalities (George & Nester, 2014). In recent years, our understanding has greatly increased with respect to the role of vWF in the TMAs. Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) may be either congenital (Upshaw-Schulman syndrome) or acquired, the pathophysiologies of which have recently been extensively reviewed (Zheng, 2015). Neurologic abnormalities or other signs of organ injury (renal, cardiac) are characteristically seen; notably, in the congenital forms, severe acute kidney injury is rare (George & Nester, 2014). Laboratory studies reveal thrombocytopenia together with a microangiopathic hemolytic anemia. In 1998, two independent groups (Furlan et al, 1998; Tsai & Lian, 1998) demonstrated that the pathogenesis of TTP was related to deficient activity of the plasma metalloproteinase ADAMTS-13, which normally cleaves the higher molecular weight vWF molecules (so-called "unusually large" vWF multimers) that have been released into the circulation from endothelial cells. The enzyme deficiency results in the persistence in the plasma of these highly reactive forms of vWF (Fig. 40-8) (Perez-Rodriguez et al, 2014) capable of binding both to endothelial cells and to platelets, and consequently producing a pathologic meshwork of platelet-rich thrombi in the microcirculation (Moake et al, 1986; Tsai & Lian, 1998; Padilla et al, 2004; Chauhan et al, 2007; Perez-Rodriguez et al, 2014; Zheng, 2015).

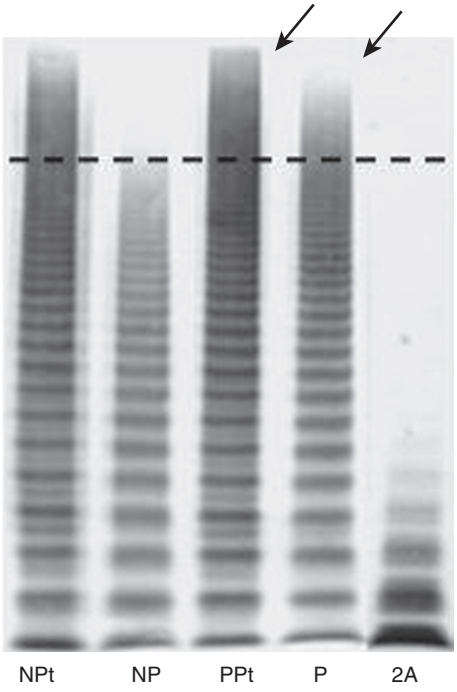


Figure 40-8 Ultra-large von Willebrand factor (vWF) multimers in platelets and plasma from a healthy normal subject and a patient with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP). vWF within normal platelets (NPt) and normal endothelial cells *(not shown)* comprises a very large range of multimer sizes. Once released into the circulation from cellular stores (predominantly endothelial), the vWF undergoes limited proteolysis by ADAMTS-13. The resulting upper extent of vWF multimer size observed in normal plasma (NP) is indicated by the dashed line. In TTP, where there is a characteristic deficiency of ADAMTS-13, patient plasma (P) retains the full distribution of vWF multimers, including the ultra-large forms, present in the patient platelets (PPt) or endothelial cells *(not shown)*. (Modified with permission from Perez-Rodriguez A, Loures E, Rodriguez-Trillo A: Inherited ADAMTS13 deficiency (Upshaw-Schulman syndrome): a short review, *Thromb Res* 134:1171–1175, 2014.)

In the etiologically distinct TMA termed *Shiga toxin–related hemolytic uremic syndrome* (HUS), plasma ADAMTS-13 levels are not decreased to the low levels associated with TTP (Furlan et al, 1998; George & Nester,

TABLE 40-7
Etiology, Epidemiology, and Pathogenesis of TTP, HUS, and ADAMTS-13–related Parameters

	Congenital TTP	Acquired TTP	HUS
Etiology	ADAMTS-13 mutation	Antibody to ADAMTS-13, endothelial cell activation	*Escherichia coli* or other microorganisms
Epidemiology	5-10 cases per year per million	≤1 case per year per million	1-5 cases per year per million, mainly in children
Pathogenesis	Defective cleavage of vWF multimers, massive secretion of ultra-large vWF multimers, increased platelet deposition under shear condition, occlusion of blood vessels in microcirculation		Intoxication with Shiga-like toxin, damage of endothelial cells, enterohemorrhagic colitis, renal disorder
ADAMTS-13 antigen	Very low or absent	Low or variable	Normal or moderately decreased
ADAMTS-13 activity	≤5%-10%	≤5%-10% or variable	30% to 100%
Inhibitor against ADAMTS-13	No	Mostly yes	No

2014). Nevertheless, in the typical forms of *E. coli*– or *Shigella* toxin–associated diarrheal HUS, long vWF strings have been observed to bind both to endothelial cells and to platelets, and the possibility raised that the toxin may interfere with ADAMTS-13 binding to the vWF strings (Moake, 2009). Characteristic clinical and laboratory aspects of TTP and of HUS are summarized in Table 40-7 (Shenkman & Einav, 2014).

ADAMTS-13 testing has increasingly been found to be helpful both for the purpose of prognostication and for guidance in treatment, such as the decision to institute rituximab anti-B lymphocyte immunotherapy (Coppo et al, 2010; Hovinga et al, 2010; Zheng, 2010). An ADAMTS-13 level below 10%, with or without a demonstrable anti-ADAMTS-13 antibody, in a patient having both thrombocytopenia and microangiopathic hemolytic anemia provides strong support for a diagnosis of TTP (Sayani & Abrams, 2015). However, there are limits for both the specificity and the sensitivity of ADAMTS-13 testing with respect to TTP diagnosis. For ADAMTS-13 levels in the range of 10% to 40%, in addition to TTP, other conditions such as connective tissue disorders (see later), uremia, inflammation, and pregnancy may need to be considered as well. Moreover, neither a normal level of ADAMTS-13 nor the absence of demonstrable neutralizing antibodies excludes this diagnosis (George et al, 2004; Peyvandi et al, 2004). A recent study of acquired TTP reported a positive predictive value of 91% and negative predictive value of 100% using a 20% activity level cutoff for ADAMTS-13 activity (Barrows & Teruya, 2014). Reduced ADAMTS13 levels have been reported in a number of disease states including systemic connective tissue disorders (Mannucci et al, 2003), ITP, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (Moore et al, 2001).

The original ADAMTS-13 assays involved a number of steps, including reacting the patient's plasma with a protease-free vWF substrate previously denatured with guanidine or urea, performing gel electrophoresis on the degraded vWF, immunoblotting, and then demonstrating an abnormal persistence of the higher molecular weight vWF multimers. There have been efforts to simplify the ADAMTS-13 assays. An early modification of this method was in the final step, where a vWF collagen-binding assay was substituted for vWF multimeric analysis (Gerritsen et al, 1999). Subsequently, efforts were directed toward the development of simplified assays employing synthetic peptides that recapitulated the critical residues of vWF required for proteolysis by ADAMTS-13 (Kokame et al, 2004; Whitelock et al, 2004). Such assays, whether based on chromogenic or fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) changes following proteolytic cleavage, offer the advantage of ease of performance, as well as rapid turnaround times. Variation in results among the available ADAMTS-13 assays, however, can be significant (Mackie et al, 2013). Additionally, these same assay formats can be used to assess plasma inhibitory activity directed against ADAMTS-13, with results expressed in Bethesda-style units similar to what is done for factor VIII antibodies (Muia et al, 2013) (see Chapter 39).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Arnold DM, Curtis BR, Bakchoul T: Recommendations for standardization of laboratory testing for drug-induced immune thrombocytopenia: communication from the SSC of the ISTH, *J Thromb Haemost* 13:676–678, 2015.
A recent consensus report on drug-induced immune thrombocytopenias.

Aster RH, Bougie DW: Drug-induced thrombocytopenia, *N Engl J Med* 357:580–587, 2007.
A review of mechanisms of drug-induced thrombocytopenias.

Cattaneo M, Cerletti C, Harrison P: Recommendations for the Standardization of Light Transmission Aggregometry: A Consensus of the Working Party from the Platelet Physiology Subcommittee of SSC/ISTH, *J Thromb Haemost* 2013. doi: 10.1111/jth.12231.
A recent consensus report on platelet aggregation testing.

Coller BS, Shattil SJ: The GPIIb/IIIa (integrin alpha IIb beta 3) odyssey: a technology-driven saga of a receptor with twists, turns, and even a bend, *Blood* 112:3011–3025, 2008.
A historical review of Glanzmann thrombasthenia.

Federici AB, Budde U, Castaman G: Current diagnostic and therapeutic approaches to patients with acquired von Willebrand syndrome: a 2013 update, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 39:191–201, 2013.
A recent review of acquired von Willebrand syndrome.

Furlan M, Robles R, Galbusera M: von Willebrand factor-cleaving protease in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura and the hemolytic-uremic syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 339:1578–1584, 1998.
A landmark paper leading to the recognition of ADAMTS13.

George JN, Nester CM: Syndromes of thrombotic microangiopathy, *N Engl J Med* 371:654–666, 2014.
A recent review of thrombotic microangiopathies.

Kumar R, Kahr WHA: Congenital thrombocytopenia: Clinical manifestations, laboratory abnormalities, and molecular defects of a heterogeneous group of conditions. In Rao AK, editor: *Hematology/oncology Clinics of North America: disorders of the platelets* (vol 27), Philadelphia, 2013, Elsevier, pp 465–494.
A recent review of congenital thrombocytopenias.

Lenting PJ, Christophe OD, Denis CV: Von Willebrand factor biosynthesis, secretion and clearance: connecting the far ends, *Blood* 125:2019–2028, 2015.
A recent review of von Willebrand factor biology.

Neunert C, Lim W, Crowther M: The American Society of Hematology 2011 evidence-based practice guideline for immune thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 117:4190–4207, 2011.
A recent consensus report on ITP.

Ng C, Motto DG, Di Paola J: Diagnostic approach to von Willebrand disease, *Blood* 125:2029–2037, 2015.
A recent review of von Willebrand disease.

Nurden AT: Platelet membrane glycoproteins: a historical review, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 40:577–584, 2014a.
A recent historical review of platelet membrane glycoproteins.

Provan D, Stasi R, Newland AC: International consensus report on the investigation and management of primary immune thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 115:168–186, 2010.
A recent consensus report on immune thrombocytopenia.

Rao AK, Bennett JS: Acquired disorders of platelet function. In Marder VJ, Aird WC, Bennett JS, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis: basic principles and clinical practice*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2013, Lippincott, pp 820–828.
A recent review of acquired platelet function disorders.

Rao AK, Coller BS: Hereditary qualitative platelet disorders. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman M, Kipps T, editors: *Williams hematology*, New York, 2015, McGraw-Hill.
A recent review of inherited platelet function disorders.

Rodgers RPC, Levin J: A critical reappraisal of the bleeding time, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 16:1–20, 1990.
A landmark article (and entire journal issue) demonstrating the poor predictive value of bleeding time in a wide variety of clinical settings.

Tsai HM, Lian EC: Antibodies to von Willebrand factor-cleaving protease in acute thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *N Engl J Med* 339:1585–1594, 1998.
A landmark paper leading to the recognition of ADAMTS13.

Vincentelli A, Susen S, Le Tourneau T: Acquired von Willebrand syndrome in aortic stenosis, *N Engl J Med* 349:343–349, 2003.
A landmark paper showing correction of acquired von Willebrand syndrome by surgical repair of aortic stenosis that reduced vascular shear.

REFERENCES

Adler DH, Cogan JD, Phillips JA: Inherited human cPLA(2alpha)deficiency is associated with impaired eicosanoid biosynthesis, small intestinal ulceration, and platelet dysfunction, *J Clin Invest* 118:2121–2131, 2008.

Al-Nouri ZL, George JN: Drug-induced thrombocytopenia: an updated systematic review, 2012, *Drug Saf* 35:693–694, 2012.

Albers CA, Cvejic A, Favier R: Exome sequencing identifies NBEAL2 as the causative gene for gray platelet syndrome, *Nat Genet* 43:735–737, 2011.

Almeida AM, Khair K, Hann I: The use of recombinant factor VIIa in children with inherited platelet function disorders, *Br J Haematol* 121:477–481, 2003.

Althaus K, Greinacher A: MYH9-related platelet disorders, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:189–203, 2009.

Aneja K, Jalagadugula G, Mao G: Mechanism of platelet factor 4 (PF4) deficiency with RUNX1 haplodeficiency: RUNX1 is a transcriptional regulator of *PF4*, *J Thromb Haemost* 9:383–391, 2011.

Ardlie NG, Coupland WW, Schoefl GI: Hereditary thrombocytopathy: a familial bleeding disorder due to impaired platelet coagulant activity, *Aust N Z J Med* 6:37–45, 1976.

Arnold DM, Curtis BR, Bakchoul T: Recommendations for standardization of laboratory testing for drug-induced immune thrombocytopenia: communication from the SSC of the ISTH, *J Thromb Haemost* 13:676–678, 2015.

Arnold DM, Nazi I, Warkentin TE: Approach to the diagnosis and management of drug-induced immune thrombocytopenia, *Transfus Med Rev* 27:137–145, 2013.

Aster RH, Bougie DW: Drug-induced immune thrombocytopenia, *N Engl J Med* 357:580–587, 2007.

Aster RH, Curtis BR, Bougie DW: Thrombocytopenia resulting from sensitivity to GPIIb-IIIa inhibitors, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30:569–577, 2004.

Auger JM, Kuijpers MJ, Senis YA: Adhesion of human and mouse platelets to collagen under shear: a unifying model, *FASEB J* 19:825–827, 2005.

Bakchoul T, Zollner H, Amiral J: Anti-protamine-heparin antibodies: incidence, clinical relevance, and pathogenesis, *Blood* 121:2821–2827, 2013.

Balduini CL, Pecci A, Noris P: Diagnosis and management of inherited thrombocytopenias, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 39:161–171, 2013a.

Balduini CL, Savoia A, Seri M: Inherited thrombocytopenias frequently diagnosed in adults, *J Thromb Haemost* 11:1006–1019, 2013b.

Barrows BD, Teruya J: Use of the ADAMTS13 activity assay improved the accuracy and efficiency of the diagnosis and treatment of suspected acquired thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 138:546–549, 2014.

Bennett JS, Rao AK: Hereditary disorders of platelet function. In Marder VJ, Aird WC, Bennett JS, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis: basic principles and clinical practice*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2013, Lippincott, pp 805–819.

Bessman JD, Williams LJ, Gilmer PR: Mean platelet volume, *Am J Clin Pathol* 76:289–293, 1981.

Blavignac J, Bunimov N, Rivard GE: Quebec platelet disorder: update on pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 37:713–720, 2011.

Bluteau D, Balduini A, Balayn N: Thrombocytopenia-associated mutations in the ANKRD26 regulatory region induce MAPK hyperactivation, *J Clin Invest* 124:580–591, 2014.

Boccardo P, Remuzzi G, Galbusera M: Platelet dysfunction in renal failure, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30:579–589, 2004.

Boylan B, Chen H, Rathore V: Anti-GPVI-associated ITP: an acquired platelet disorder caused by autoantibody-mediated clearance of the GPVI/FcRgamma-chain complex from the human platelet surface, *Blood* 104:1350–1355, 2004.

Breton-Gorius J, Guichard J: Ultrastructural localization of peroxidase activity in human platelets and megakaryocytes, *Am J Pathol* 66:277–293, 1972.

Brinkhous KM, Read MS: Preservation of platelet receptors for platelet aggregating factor/von Willebrand Factor by air drying, freezing, or lyophilization: New stable platelet preparations for von Willebrand Factor assays, *Thromb Res* 13:591–597, 1978.

Buchbinder D, Nugent DJ, Fillipovich AH: Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome: diagnosis, current management, and emerging treatments, *Appl Clin Genet* 7:55–66, 2014.

Budde U, van Genderen PJ: Acquired von Willebrand disease in patients with high platelet counts, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 23:425–431, 1997.

Buitrago L, Rendon A, Liang Y: αIIbβ3 variants defined by next-generation sequencing: Predicting variants likely to cause Glanzmann thrombasthenia, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 112:E1898–E1907, 2015.

Campbell PJ, Green AR: The myeloproliferative disorders, *N Engl J Med* 355:2452–2466, 2006.

Canault M, Ghalloussi D, Grosdidier C: Human CalDAG-GEFI gene (RASGRP2) mutation affects platelet function and causes severe bleeding, *J Exp Med* 211:1349–1362, 2014.

Cardinal DC, Flower RJ: The electronic aggregometer: A novel device for assessing platelet behavior in blood, *J Pharmacol Methods* 3:135–158, 1980.

Castillo R, Lozano T, Escolar G: Defective platelet adhesion on vessel subendothelium in uremic patients, *Blood* 68:337–342, 1986.

Castoldi E, Collins PW, Williamson PL: Compound heterozygosity for 2 novel TMEM16F mutations in a patient with Scott syndrome, *Blood* 117:4399–4400, 2011.

Cattaneo M: Light transmission aggregometry and ATP release for the diagnostic assessment of platelet function, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:158–167, 2009.

Cattaneo M, Cerletti C, Harrison P: Recommendations for the Standardization of Light Transmission Aggregometry: A Consensus of the Working Party from the Platelet Physiology Subcommittee of SSC/ISTH, *J Thromb Haemost* 2013. doi: 10.1111/jth.12231.

Cattaneo M, Lecchi A, Randi AM: Identification of a new congenital defect of platelet function characterized by severe impairment of platelet responses to adenosine diphosphate, *Blood* 80:2787–2796, 1992.

Cattaneo M, Lombardi R, Zighetti ML: Deficiency of (^{33})P-2MeS-ADP binding sites on platelets with secretion defect, normal granule stores and normal thromboxane A_2 production, *Thromb Haemost* 77:986–990, 1997.

Charo IF, Feinman RD, Detwiler TC: Interrelations of platelet aggregation and secretion, *J Clin Invest* 60:866–873, 1977.

Chauhan AK, Goerge T, Schneider SW: Formation of platelet strings and microthrombi in the presence of ADAMTS-13 inhibitor does not require P-selectin or beta(3) integrin, *J Thromb Haemost* 5:583–589, 2007.

Chong BH, Choi PY, Khachigian L: Drug-induced immune thrombocytopenia, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 27:521–540, 2013.

Cines DB, Bussel JB, Liebman HA: The ITP syndrome: pathogenic and clinical diversity, *Blood* 113:6511–6521, 2009a.

Cines DB, Liebman H, Stasi R: Pathobiology of secondary immune thrombocytopenia, *Semin Hematol* 46:S2–S14, 2009b.

Clauser S, Cramer-Borde E: Role of platelet electron microscopy in the diagnosis of platelet disorders, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:213–223, 2009.

Coller BS, French DL, Rao AK: Hereditary qualitative platelet disorders. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman M, Beutler E, editors: *Williams hematology*, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, pp 1933–1970.

Coller BS, Peerschke EI, Scudder LE: A murine monoclonal antibody that completely blocks the binding of fibrinogen to platelets produces a thrombasthenic-like state in normal platelets and binds to glycoproteins IIb and/or IIIa, *J Clin Invest* 72:325–338, 1983.

Coller BS, Shattil SJ: The GPIIb/IIIa (integrin alpha IIb beta 3) odyssey: a technology-driven saga of a receptor with twists, turns, and even a bend, *Blood* 112:3011–3025, 2008.

Connelly JP, Kwon EM, Gao Y: Targeted correction of RUNX1 mutation in FPD patient-specific induced pluripotent stem cells rescues megakaryopoietic defects, *Blood* 124:1926–1930, 2014.

Coppo P, Schwarzinger M, Buffet M: Predictive features of severe acquired ADAMTS13 deficiency in idiopathic thrombotic microangiopathies: The French TMA Reference Center experience, *PLoS ONE* 5:e10208, 2010.

Cuker A, Cines DB: Protamine-induced thrombocytopenia? *Blood* 121:2818–2819, 2013.

Cullinane AR, Curry JA, Carmona-Rivera C: A BLOC-1 mutation screen reveals that PLDN is mutated in Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome type 9, *Am J Hum Genet* 88:778–787, 2011.

Daly ME, Dawood BB, Lester WA: Identification and characterization of a novel P2Y 12 variant in a patient diagnosed with type 1 von Willebrand disease in the European MCMDM-1VWD study, *Blood* 113:4110–4113, 2009.

Dawood BB, Lowe GC, Lordkipanidze M: Evaluation of participants with suspected heritable platelet function disorders including recommendation and validation of a streamlined agonist panel, *Blood* 120:5041–5049, 2012.

de Witt SM, Verdoold R, Cosemans JM, et al: Insights into platelet-based control of coagulation, *Thromb Res* 133(Suppl 2):S139–S148, 2014.

Deckmyn H, Zhang J, Van Houtte E: Production and nucleotide sequence of an inhibitory human IgM autoantibody directed against platelet glycoprotein Ia/IIa, *Blood* 84:1968–1974, 1994.

Diamandis M, Paterson AD, Rommens JM: Quebec platelet disorder is linked to the urokinase plasminogen activator gene (PLAU) and increases expression of the linked allele in megakaryocytes, *Blood* 113:1543–1546, 2008.

Diz-Kucukkaya R, Lopez JA: Inherited disorders of platelets: membrane glycoprotein disorders, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 27:613–627, 2013.

Drachman JG: Inherited thrombocytopenia: when a low platelet count does not mean ITP, *Blood* 103:390–398, 2004.

Drouin A, Favier R, Masse JM: Newly recognized cellular abnormalities in the gray platelet syndrome, *Blood* 98:1382–1391, 2001.

Dusse LMS, Freitas LG: Clinical applicability of reticulated platelets, *Clin Chim Acta* 439:143–147, 2015.

Elliott MA, Tefferi A: Thrombosis and haemorrhage in polycythaemia vera and essential thrombocythaemia, *Br J Haematol* 128:275–290, 2005.

Favaloro EJ, Bonar R: External quality assessment/proficiency testing and internal quality control for the PFA-100 and PFA-200: an update, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 40:239–253, 2014.

Favier R, Jondeau K, Boutard P: Paris-Trousseau syndrome: clinical, hematological, molecular data of ten new cases, *Thromb Haemost* 90:893–897, 2003.

Federici AB, Bucciarelli P, Castaman G: The bleeding score predicts clinical outcomes and replacement therapy in adults with von Willebrand disease, *Blood* 123:4037–4044, 2014.

Federici AB, Budde U, Castaman G: Current diagnostic and therapeutic approaches to patients with acquired von Willebrand syndrome: a 2013 update, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 39:191–201, 2013.

Federici AB, Canciani MT, Forza I: A sensitive ristocetin co-factor activity assay with recombinant glycoprotein Ib alpha for the diagnosis of patients with low von Willebrand factor levels, *Haematologica* 89:77–85, 2004.

Finazzi G, Barbui T: Evidence and expertise in the management of polycythemia vera and essential thrombocythemia, *Leukemia* 22:1494–1502, 2008.

Flamm MH, Colace TV, Chatterjee MS: Multiscale prediction of patient-specific platelet function under flow, *Blood* 120:190–198, 2012.

Flood VH, Friedman KD, Gill JC: Limitations of the ristocetin cofactor assay in measurement of von Willebrand factor function, *J Thromb Haemost* 7:1832–1839, 2009.

Flood VH, Gill JC, Friedman KD: Collagen binding provides a sensitive screen for variant von Willebrand disease, *Clin Chem* 59:684–691, 2013.

Flood VH, Johnson FL, Boshkov LK: Sustained engraftment post bone marrow transplant despite antiplatelet antibodies in Glanzmann thrombasthenia, *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 45:971–975, 2005.

Flood VH, Schlauderaff AC, Haberichter SL: Crucial role for the VWF A1 domain in binding to type IV collagen, *Blood* 125:2297–2304, 2015.

Franchi F, Biguzzi E, Stufano F: A two-step approach (Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and confirmation assay) to detect antibodies against von Willebrand factor in patients with Acquired von Willebrand Syndrome, *Thromb Res* 134:1316–1322, 2014.

Franchini M, Crestani S, Frattini F: ABO blood group and von Willebrand factor: biological implications, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 52:1273–1276, 2014.

Franchini M, Favaloro EJ, Lippi G: Glanzmann thrombasthenia: An update, *Clin Chim Acta* 411:1–6, 2010.

Freson K, Devriendt K, Matthijs G: Platelet characteristics in patients with X-linked macrothrombocytopenia because of a novel GATA1 mutation, *Blood* 98:85–92, 2001a.

Freson K, Hoylaerts MF, Jaeken J: Genetic variation of the extra-large stimulatory G protein alpha-subunit leads to Gs hyperfunction in platelets and is a risk factor for bleeding, *Thromb Haemost* 86:733–738, 2001b.

Fujimoto TT, Kishimoto M, Ide K: Glanzmann thrombasthenia with acute myeloid leukemia successfully treated by bone marrow transplantation, *Int J Hematol* 81:77–80, 2005.

Furlan M, Robles R, Galbusera M: von Willebrand factor-cleaving protease in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura and the hemolytic-uremic syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 339:1578–1584, 1998.

Furman MI, Liu L, Benoit SE: The cleaved peptide of the thrombin receptor is a strong platelet agonist, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 95:3082–3087, 1998.

Gabbeta J, Yang X, Kowalska MA: Platelet signal transduction defect with G alpha subunit dysfunction and diminished G alpha(q) in a patient with abnormal platelet responses, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 94:8750–8755, 1997.

Gabbeta J, Yang X, Sun L: Abnormal inside-out signal transduction-dependent activation of glycoprotein IIb-IIIa in a patient with impaired pleckstrin phosphorylation, *Blood* 87:1368–1376, 1996.

Gahl WA, Brantly M, Kaiser-Kupfer MI: Genetic defects and clinical characteristics of patients with a form of oculocutaneous albinism (Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome), *N Engl J Med* 338:1258–1264, 1998.

Galbusera M, Remuzzi G, Boccardo P: Treatment of bleeding in dialysis patients, *Semin Dial* 22:279–286, 2009.

Gangji AS, Sohal AS, Treleaven D: Bleeding in patients with renal insufficiency: a practical guide to clinical management, *Thromb Res* 118:423–428, 2006.

Gardiner EE, Andrews RK: Structure and function of platelet receptors initiating blood clotting, *Adv Exp Med Biol* 844:263–275, 2014.

George JN, Nester CM: Syndromes of thrombotic microangiopathy, *N Engl J Med* 371:654–666, 2014.

George JN, Vesely SK, Terrell DR: The Oklahoma Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura-Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome (TTP-HUS) Registry: a community perspective of patients with clinically diagnosed TTP-HUS, *Semin Hematol* 41:60–67, 2004.

George JN, Woolf SH, Raskob GE: Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura: A practice guideline developed by explicit methods for the American Society of Hematology, *Blood* 88:3–40, 1996.

Gerrard JM, Lint D, Sims PJ: Identification of a platelet dense granule membrane protein that is deficient in a patient with the Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome, *Blood* 77:101–112, 1991.

Gerritsen HE, Turecek PL, Schwarz HP: Assay of von Willebrand factor (vWF)-cleaving protease based on decreased collagen binding affinity of degraded vWF: a tool for the diagnosis of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), *Thromb Haemost* 82:1386–1389, 1999.

Giannini S, Mezzasoma AM, Guglielmini G: A new case of acquired Glanzmann's thrombasthenia: diagnostic value of flow cytometry, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 74:194–199, 2008.

Gill JC, Flood VH, Christopherson PA, et al: The management of bleeding risk in Von Willebrand disease: Should blood group O make a difference? *Blood* 124:2829, 2014.

Gnatenko DV, Zhu W, Xu X: Class prediction models of thrombocytosis using genetic biomarkers, *Blood* 115:7–14, 2010.

Gorog DA, Fuster V: Platelet function tests in clinical cardiology: unfulfilled expectations, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 61:2115–2129, 2013.

Gralnick HP, McKeown LP, Williams SB: Plasma and platelet von Willebrand's factor defects in uremia, *Amer J Med* 85:806–810, 1988.

Griesshammer M, Bangerter M, Sauer T: Aetiology and clinical significance of thrombocytosis: analysis of 732 patients with an elevated platelet count, *J Intern Med* 245:295–300, 1999.

Groeneveld DJ, van Bekkum T, Cheung KL: No evidence for a direct effect of von Willebrand factor's ABH blood group antigens on von Willebrand factor clearance, *J Thromb Haemost* 13:592–600, 2015.

Gudmundsdottir BR, Marder VJ, Onundarson PT: Risk of excessive bleeding associated with marginally low von Willebrand factor and mild platelet dysfunction, *J Thromb Haemost* 5:274–281, 2007.

Gunay-Aygun M, Falik-Zaccai TC, Vilboux T: NBEAL2 is mutated in gray platelet syndrome and is required for biogenesis of platelet alpha-granules, *Nat Genet* 43:732–734, 2011.

Gunay-Aygun M, Huizing M, Gahl WA: Molecular defects that affect platelet dense granules, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30:537–547, 2004.

Haberichter SL, Balistreri M, Christopherson P: Assay of the von Willebrand factor (VWF) propeptide to identify patients with type 1 von Willebrand disease with decreased VWF survival, *Blood* 108:3344–3351, 2006.

Haberichter SL, Castarnan G, Budde U: Identification of type 1 von Willebrand disease patients with reduced von Willebrand factor survival by assay of the VWF propeptide in the European study: Molecular and Clinical Markers for the Diagnosis and Management of Type 1 VWD (MCMDM-1VWD), *Blood* 111:4979–4985, 2008.

Harrison CN, Bareford D, Butt N: Guideline for investigation and management of adults and children presenting with a thrombocytosis, *Br J Haematol* 149: 352–375, 2010.

Harrison P, Lordkipanidze M: Clinical tests of platelet function. In Michelson AD, editor: *Platelets*, ed 3, San Diego, 2013, Elsevier, pp 519–545.

Harrison P, Mackie I, Mumford A: Guidelines for the laboratory investigation of heritable disorders of platelet function, *Br J Haematol* 155:30–44, 2011.

Hayward CP, Harrison P, Cattaneo M: Platelet function analyzer (PFA)-100 closure time in the evaluation of platelet disorders and platelet function, *J Thromb Haemost* 4:312–319, 2006.

Hayward CPM: Inherited disorders of platelet α-granules, *Platelets* 8:197–209, 1997.

Heyde EC: Gastrointestinal bleeding in aortic stenosis, *N Engl J Med* 259:196, 1958.

Hirata T, Kakizuka A, Ushikubi F: Arg60 to Leu mutation of the human thromboxane A2 receptor in a dominantly inherited bleeding disorder, *J Clin Invest* 94:1662–1667, 1994.

Ho KM, Yip CB, Duff O: Reactive thrombocytosis and risk of subsequent venous thromboembolism: a cohort study, *J Thromb Haemost* 10:1768–1774, 2012.

Hoffmann JJ: Reticulated platelets: analytical aspects and clinical utility, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 52:1107–1117, 2014.

Holmsen H: Secretable storage pools in platelets, *Annu Rev Med* 30:119–134, 1979.

Holmsen H, Dangelmaier CA: Measurement of secretion of serotonin, *Methods Enzymol* 169:205–211, 1989.

Hovinga JAK, Vesely SK, Terrell DR: Survival and relapse in patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Blood* 115:1500–1511, 2010.

Hu H, Hoylaerts MF: The P2X(1) ion channel in platelet function, *Platelets* 21:153–166, 2010.

Hughan SC, Senis Y, Best D: Selective impairment of platelet activation to collagen in the absence of GATA1, *Blood* 105:4369–4376, 2005.

Hui SKR, Biswas TK, Miller JL: Development of a functional ELISA for von Willebrand factor activity using the extracellular domain of human platelet glycoprotein Ib alpha secreted from Chinese hamster ovary cells, *Am J Clin Pathol* 128:60, 2007.

Huizing M, Anikster Y, Gahl WA: Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome and Chediak-Higashi syndrome: disorders of vesicle formation and trafficking, *Thromb Haemost* 86:233–245, 2001.

Huizing M, Helip-Wooley A, Westbroek W: Disorders of lysosome-related organelle biogenesis: clinical and molecular genetics, *Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet* 9:359–386, 2008.

Ingerman CM, Smith JB, Shapiro S: Hereditary abnormality of platelet aggregation attributable to nucleotide storage pool deficiency, *Blood* 52:332–344, 1978.

Ingerman-Wojenski CM, Silver MJ: A quick method for screening platelet dysfunctions using the whole blood lumi-aggregometer, *Thromb Haemost* 51:154–156, 1984.

Israels S: Diagnostic evaluation of platelet function disorders in neonates and children, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:181–188, 2009.

Israels SJ, McMillan EM, Robertson C: The lysosomal granule membrane protein, LAMP-2, is also present in platelet dense granule membranes, *Thromb Haemost* 75:623–629, 1996.

Israels SJ, McNicol A, Robertson C: Platelet storage pool deficiency: Diagnosis in patients with prolonged bleeding times and normal platelet aggregation, *Br J Haematol* 75:118–121, 1990.

Jacobsen P, Hauge M, Henningsen K: An (11;21) translocation in four generations with chromosome 11 abnormalities in the offspring. A clinical, cytogenetical, and gene marker study, *Hum Hered* 23:568–585, 1973.

James PD, Lillicrap D: von Willebrand disease: clinical and laboratory lessons learned from the large von Willebrand disease studies, *Am J Hematol* 87(Suppl 1):S4–S11, 2012.

Joseph R, Welch KMA, D'Andrea G: Epinephrine does not induce platelet aggregation in citrated whole blood, *Thromb Res* 45:871–872, 1987.

Kahner BN, Kato H, Banno A: Kindlins, integrin activation and the regulation of talin recruitment to αIIbβ3, *PLoS ONE* 7:e34056, 2012.

Kahr WH, Hinckley J, Li L: Mutations in NBEAL2, encoding a BEACH protein, cause gray platelet syndrome, *Nat Genet* 43:738–740, 2011.

Kahr WH, Zheng S, Sheth PM: Platelets from patients with the Quebec platelet disorder contain and secrete abnormal amounts of urokinase-type plasminogen activator, *Blood* 98:257–265, 2001.

Karpatkin S, Nardi M: Autoimmune anti-HIV-1gp120 antibody with antiidiotype-like activity in sera and immune complexes of HIV-1-related immunologic thrombocytopenia, *J Clin Invest* 89:356–364, 1992.

Karpatkin S, Nardi MA, Hymes KB: Sequestration of anti-platelet GPIIIa antibody in rheumatoid factor immune complexes of human immunodeficiency virus 1 thrombocytopenic patients, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 92:2263–2267, 1995.

Kaur G, Jalagadugula G, Mao G: RUNX1/core binding factor A2 regulates platelet 12-Lipoxygenase gene (ALOX12): studies in human RUNX1 haplodeficiency, *Blood* 115:3128–3135, 2010.

Kehrel B, Balleisen L, Kokott R: Deficiency of intact thrombospondin and membrane glycoprotein Ia in platelets with defective collagen-induced aggregation and spontaneous loss of disorder, *Blood* 71:1074–1078, 1988.

Kessler CM: Propensity for hemorrhage and thrombosis in chronic myeloproliferative disorders, *Semin Hematol* 41:10–14, 2004.

Khan ML: Platelet-collagen responses: Molecular basis and therapeutic promise, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30:419–425, 2004.

Kiefel V, Santoso S, Weisheit M: Monoclonal antibody-specific immunobilization of platelet antigens (MAIPA): A new tool for the identification of platelet-reactive antibodies, *Blood* 70:1722–1726, 1987.

Kiladjian JJ: The spectrum of JAK2-positive myeloproliferative neoplasms, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2012:561–566, 2012.

Kitchen S, Jennings I, Woods TAL: Laboratory tests for measurement of von Willebrand factor show poor agreement among different centers: Results from the United Kingdom National External Quality Assessment Scheme for Blood Coagulation, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 32:492–498, 2006.

Klampfl T, Gisslinger H, Harutyunyan AS: Somatic mutations of calreticulin in myeloproliferative neoplasms, *N Engl J Med* 369:2379–2390, 2013.

Kodigepalli KM, Bowers K, Sharp A: Roles and regulation of phospholipid scramblases, *FEBS Lett* 589:3–14, 2015.

Koerner TA, Weinfeld HM, Bullard LS: Antibodies against platelet glycosphingolipids: detection in serum by quantitative HPTLC-autoradiography and association with autoimmune and alloimmune processes, *Blood* 74:274–284, 1989.

Kokame K, Matsumoto M, Fujimura Y: VWF73, a region from D1596 to R1668 of von Willebrand factor, provides a minimal substrate for ADAMTS-13, *Blood* 103:607–612, 2004.

Kreuz W, Linde R, Funk M: Induction of von Willebrand disease type I by valproic acid, *Lancet* 335:1350–1351, 1990.

Kumar R, Kahr WHA: Congenital thrombocytopenia: Clinical manifestations, laboratory abnormalities, and molecular defects of a heterogeneous group of conditions. In Rao AK, editor: *Hematology/Oncology Clinics of North America: disorders of the platelets* (vol 27), Philadelphia, 2013, Elsevier, pp 465–494.

Kunicki TJ, Aster RH: Deletion of the platelet-specific alloantigen Pl^{A1} from platelets in Glanzmann's thrombasthenia, *J Clin Invest* 61:1225–1231, 1978.

Kurstjens R, Bolt C, Vossen M: Familial thrombopathic thrombocytopenia, *Br J Haematol* 15:305–317, 1968.
Lages B, Dangelmaier CA, Holmsen H: Specific correction of impaired acid hydrolase secretion in storage pool-deficient platelets by adenosine diphosphate, *J Clin Invest* 81:1865–1872, 1988.
Lages B, Weiss HJ: Enhanced increases in cytosolic Ca^{2+} in ADP-stimulated platelets from patients with delta-storage pool deficiency—a possible indicator of interactions between granule-bound ADP and the membrane ADP receptor, *Thromb Haemost* 77:376–382, 1997.
Lan Z, Schmaier AH: Platelet aggregation testing in platelet-rich plasma—Description of procedures with the aim to develop standards in the field, *Am J Clin Pathol* 123:172–183, 2005.
Landolfi R, Marchioli R, Patrono C: Mechanisms of bleeding and thrombosis in myeloproliferative disorders, *Thromb Haemost* 78:617–621, 1997.
Leach MF, Aubuchon JP: False reactivity in GTI Pak Plus ELISA kits due to the presence of anti-mouse antibody in patients' samples, *Immunohematology* 19:112–116, 2003.
Lee GM, Welsby IJ, Phillips-Bute B: High incidence of antibodies to protamine and protamine/heparin complexes in patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass, *Blood* 121:2828–2835, 2013.
Lee SB, Rao AK, Lee KH: Decreased expression of phospholipase C-beta 2 isozyme in human platelets with impaired function, *Blood* 88:1684–1691, 1996.
Lenting PJ, Christophe OD, Denis CV: Von Willebrand factor biosynthesis, secretion and clearance: connecting the far ends, *Blood* 125:2019–2028, 2015.
Levesque H, Borg JY, Cailleux N: Acquired von Willebrand's syndrome associated with decrease of plasminogen activator and its inhibitor during hypothyroidism, *Eur J Med* 2:287–288, 1993.
Lillicrap D: Translational medicine advances in von Willebrand disease, *J Thromb Haemost* 11(Suppl 1):75–83, 2013a.
Lillicrap D: von Willebrand disease: advances in pathogenetic understanding, diagnosis, and therapy, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2013:254–260, 2013b.
Linden MD, Frelinger AL III, Barnard MR: Application of flow cytometry to platelet disorders, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30:501–511, 2004.
Livio M, Gotti E, Marchesi D: Uraemic bleeding: role of anemia and beneficial effect of red cell transfusions, *Lancet* II:1013–1015, 1982.
Lopez JA, Andrews RK, Afshar-Kharghan V: Bernard-Soulier syndrome, *Blood* 91:4397–4418, 1998.
Mackie I, Langley K, Chitolie A: Discrepancies between ADAMTS13 activity assays in patients with thrombotic microangiopathies, *Thromb Haemost* 109:488–496, 2013.
Maldonado JE, Pintado T, Pierre RV: Dysplastic platelets and circulating megakaryocytes in chronic myeloproliferative diseases. I. The platelets: ultrastructure and peroxidase reaction, *Blood* 43:797–809, 1974.
Malinin NL, Zhang L, Choi J: A point mutation in KINDLIN3 ablates activation of three integrin subfamilies in humans, *Nat Med* 15:313–318, 2009.
Manchev VT, Hilpert M, Berrou E: A new form of macrothrombocytopenia induced by a germ-line mutation in the PRKACG gene, *Blood* 124:2554–2563, 2014.
Mannucci PM: Hemostatic drugs, *N Engl J Med* 339:245–253, 1998.
Mannucci PM, Vanoli M, Forza I: Von Willebrand factor cleaving protease (ADAMTS-13) in 123 patients with connective tissue diseases (systemic lupus erythematosus and systemic sclerosis), *Haematologica* 88:914–918, 2003.
Marquez R, Hantel A, Lorenz R: A new family with a germline ANKRD26 mutation and predisposition to myeloid malignancies, *Leuk Lymphoma* 55:2945–2946, 2014.
Massaad MJ, Ramesh N, Geha RS: Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome: a comprehensive review, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1285:26–43, 2013.
Maynard DM, Heijnen HF, Gahl WA: The alpha granule proteome: novel proteins in normal and ghost granules in gray platelet syndrome, *J Thromb Haemost* 8:1786–1796, 2010.
McCloskey DJ, Postolache TT, Vittone BJ: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors: measurement of effect on platelet function, *Transl Res* 151:168–172, 2008.
McGlasson DL, Fritsma GA: Whole blood aggregometry for diagnostic platelet function testing, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:168–180, 2009.
McKay H, Derome F, Haq MA: Bleeding risks associated with inheritance of the Quebec platelet disorder, *Blood* 104:159–165, 2004.
McMillan R: The pathogenesis of chronic immune thrombocytopenic purpura, *Semin Hematol* 44:S3–S11, 2007.
McNicol A, Israels SJ, Robertson C: The empty sack syndrome: a platelet storage pool deficiency associated with empty dense granules, *Br J Haematol* 86:574–582, 1994.
Menasche G, Pastural E, Feldmann J: Mutations in RAB27A cause Griscelli syndrome associated with haemophagocytic syndrome, *Nat Genet* 25:173–176, 2000.
Mezzano D, Quiroga T, Pereira J: The level of laboratory testing required for diagnosis or exclusion of a platelet function disorder using platelet aggregation and secretion assays, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:242–254, 2009.
Michaud J, Wu F, Osato M: In vitro analyses of known and novel RUNX1/AML1 mutations in dominant familial platelet disorder with predisposition to acute myelogenous leukemia: implications for mechanisms of pathogenesis, *Blood* 99:1364–1372, 2002.
Michiels JJ, Berneman Z, Van Bockstaele D: Clinical and laboratory features, pathobiology of platelet-mediated thrombosis and bleeding complications, and the molecular etiology of essential thrombocythemia and polycythemia vera: therapeutic implications, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 32:174–207, 2006.
Mielke CH Jr, Levine PH, Zucker S: Preoperative prednisone therapy in platelet function disorders, *Thromb Res* 21:655–662, 1981.
Miller JL: Platelet function testing: An improved approach utilizing lumi-aggregation and an interactive computer system, *Am J ClinPathol* 81:471–476, 1984.
Miller JL: Platelet-type von Willebrand disease, *Thromb Haemost* 75:865–869, 1996.
Miller JL: Glycoprotein analysis for the diagnostic evaluation of platelet disorders, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:224–232, 2009.
Miller JL, Castella A: Platelet-type von Willebrand's disease: Characterization of a new bleeding disorder, *Blood* 60:790–794, 1982.
Miller JL, Cunningham D, Lyle VA: Mutation in the gene encoding platelet glycoprotein Iba in platelet-type von Willebrand disease, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 88:4761–4765, 1991.
Miller JL, Lyle VA, Cunningham D: Mutation of leucine-57 to phenylalanine in a platelet glycoprotein Ib alpha leucine tandem repeat occurring in patients with an autosomal dominant variant of Bernard-Soulier disease, *Blood* 79:439–446, 1992.
Moake J: Thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura (TTP) and other thrombotic microangiopathies, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 22:567–576, 2009.
Moake JL, Turner NA, Stathopoulos NA: Involvement of large plasma von Willebrand factor (vWF) multimers and unusually large vWF forms derived from endothelial cells in shear stress-induced platelet aggregation, *J Clin Invest* 78:1456–1461, 1986.
Moia M, Mannucci PM, Vizzotto L: Improvement in the haemostatic defect of uraemia after treatment with recombinant human erythropoietin, *Lancet* 8570: 1227–1229, 1987.
Monteferrario D, Bolar NA, Marneth AE: A dominant-negative GFI1B mutation in the gray platelet syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 370:245–253, 2014.
Moore JC, Hayward CP, Warkentin TE: Decreased von Willebrand factor protease activity associated with thrombocytopenic disorders, *Blood* 98:1842–1846, 2001.
Moser M, Nieswandt B, Ussar S: Kindlin-3 is essential for integrin activation and platelet aggregation, *Nat Med* 14:325–330, 2008.
Movig KL, Janssen MW, de Waal Malefijt J: Relationship of serotonergic antidepressants and need for blood transfusion in orthopedic surgical patients, *Arch Intern Med* 163:2354–2358, 2003.
Muia J, Gao W, Haberichter SL: An optimized fluorogenic ADAMTS13 assay with increased sensitivity for the investigation of patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *J Thromb Haemost* 11:1511–1518, 2013.
Muia J, Zhu J, Gupta G: Allosteric activation of ADAMTS13 by von Willebrand factor, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 111:18584–18589, 2014.
Mumford AD, Dawood BB, Daly ME: A novel thromboxane A2 receptor D304N variant that abrogates ligand binding in a patient with a bleeding diathesis, *Blood* 115:363–369, 2010.
Nagalla S, Bray PF: Platelet RNA chips dip into thrombocytosis, *Blood* 115:2–3, 2010.
Nangalia J, Massie CE, Baxter EJ: Somatic CALR mutations in myeloproliferative neoplasms with nonmutated JAK2, *N Engl J Med* 369:2391–2405, 2013.
Neunert C, Lim W, Crowther M: The American Society of Hematology 2011 evidence-based practice guideline for immune thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 117:4190–4207, 2011.
Ng C, Motto DG, Di Paola J: Diagnostic approach to von Willebrand disease, *Blood* 125:2029–2037, 2015.
Nguyen XD, Dugrillon A, Beck C: A novel method for simultaneous analysis of specific platelet antibodies: SASPA, *Br J Haematol* 127:552–560, 2004.
Nichols WL, Rick ME, Ortel TL: Clinical and laboratory diagnosis of von Willebrand disease: A synopsis of the 2008 NHLBI/NIH guidelines, *Am J Hematol* 84:366–370, 2009.
Nieuwenhuis HK, Akkerman J-WN, Sixma JJ: Patients with a prolonged bleeding time and normal aggregation tests may have storage pool deficiency: Studies on one hundred six patients, *Blood* 70:620–623, 1987.
Nieuwenhuis HK, Akkerman JW, Houdijk WP: Human blood platelets showing no response to collagen fail to express surface glycoprotein Ia, *Nature* 318:470–472, 1985.
Nieuwenhuis HK, Sakariassen KS, Houdijk PM: Deficiency of platelet membrane glycoprotein Ia associated with a decreased platelet adhesion to subendothelium: A defect in platelet spreading, *Blood* 68:692–695, 1986.
Nishibori M, Cham B, McNicol A: The protein CD63 is in platelet dense granules, is deficient in a patient with Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome, and appears identical to granulophysin, *J Clin Invest* 91:1775–1782, 1993.
Nishio K, Anderson PJ, Zheng XL: Binding of platelet glycoprotein Ib alpha to von Willebrand factor domain A1 stimulates the cleavage of the adjacent domain A2 by ADAMTS13, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 101:10578–10583, 2004.
Noris P, Biino G, Pecci A: Platelet diameters in inherited thrombocytopenias: analysis of 376 patients with all known disorders, *Blood* 124:e4–e10, 2014.
Noris P, Guidetti GF, Conti V: Autosomal dominant thrombocytopenias with reduced expression of glycoprotein Ia, *Thromb Haemost* 95:483–489, 2006.
Noris P, Klersy C, Gresele P: Platelet size for distinguishing between inherited thrombocytopenias and immune thrombocytopenia: a multicentric, real life study, *Br J Haematol* 162:112–119, 2013.
Novak EK, Swank RT, Hui SW: Platelet storage pool deficiency in mouse pigment mutations associated with seven distinct genetic loci, *Blood* 63:536–544, 1984.
Nurden AT: Platelet membrane glycoproteins: a historical review, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 40:577–584, 2014a.
Nurden AT, Caen JP: Specific roles for platelet surface glycoproteins in platelet function, *Nature* 255:720–722, 1975.
Nurden AT, Fiore M, Nurden P: Glanzmann thrombasthenia: a review of ITGA2B and ITGB3 defects with emphasis on variants, phenotypic variability, and mouse models, *Blood* 118:5996–6005, 2011.
Nurden AT, George JN: Inherited abnormalities of the platelet membrane. In Colman RW, Hirsh J, Marder VJ, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis: Basic principles and practice*, Philadelphia, 2001, Lippincott, pp 921–943.
Nurden AT, Nurden P: The gray platelet syndrome: clinical spectrum of the disease, *Blood Rev* 21:21–36, 2007.
Nurden AT, Nurden P: Congenital platelet disorders and understanding of platelet function, *Br J Haematol* 165:165–178, 2014.
Nurden AT, Nurden P, Bermejo E: Phenotypic heterogeneity in the Gray platelet syndrome extends to the expression of TREM family member, TLT-1, *Thromb Haemost* 100:45–51, 2008.
Nurden P, Savi P, Heilmann E: An inherited bleeding disorder linked to a defective interaction between ADP and its receptor on platelets. Its influence on glycoprotein IIb-IIIa complex function, *J Clin Invest* 95:1612–1622, 1995.
Onundarson PT, Gudmundsdottir BR, Marder VJ: On the significance of marginally low von Willebrand factor, *Thromb Haemost* 100:1213–1214, 2008.
Othman M, Notley C, Lavender FL: Identification and functional characterization of a novel 27-bp deletion in the macroglycopeptide-coding region of the *GPIBA* gene resulting in platelet-type von Willebrand disease, *Blood* 105:4330–4336, 2005.

Oury C, Lenaerts T, Peerlinck K: Congenital deficiency of the phospholipase C coupled platelet P2Y1 receptor leads to a mild bleeding disorder, *Thromb Haemost* (Suppl):20–21, 1999.

Oury C, Toth-Zsamboki E, Van Geet C: A natural dominant negative P2X1 receptor due to deletion of a single amino acid residue, *J Biol Chem* 275:22611–22614, 2000.

Owen CJ, Toze CL, Koochin A: Five new pedigrees with inherited RUNX1 mutations causing familial platelet disorder with propensity to myeloid malignancy (FPD/AML), *Blood* 112:4639–4645, 2008.

Padilla A, Moake JL, Bernardo A: P-selectin anchors newly released ultralarge von Willebrand factor multimers to the endothelial cell surface, *Blood* 103:2150–2156, 2004.

Pai M, Wang G, Moffat KA: Diagnostic usefulness of a lumi-aggregometer adenosine triphosphate release assay for the assessment of platelet function disorders, *Am J Clin Pathol* 136:350–358, 2011.

Papadakis E, Hoffman R, Brenner B: Thrombohemorrhagic complications of myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood Rev* 24:227–232, 2010.

Pasvolsky R, Feigelson SW, Kilic SS: A LAD-III syndrome is associated with defective expression of the Rap-1 activator CalDAG-GEFI in lymphocytes, neutrophils, and platelets, *J Exp Med* 204:1571–1582, 2007.

Patel YM, Patel K, Rahman S: Evidence for a role for Galphai1 in mediating weak agonist-induced platelet aggregation in human platelets: reduced Galphai1 expression and defective Gi signaling in the platelets of a patient with a chronic bleeding disorder, *Blood* 101:4828–4835, 2003.

Pavord S, Myers B: Bleeding and thrombotic complications of kidney disease, *Blood Rev* 25:271–278, 2011.

Pearson TC: The risk of thrombosis in essential thrombocythemia and polycythemia vera, *Semin Oncol* 29:16–21, 2002.

Perez-Rodriguez A, Loures E, Rodriguez-Trillo A: Inherited ADAMTS13 deficiency (Upshaw-Schulman syndrome): a short review, *Thromb Res* 134:1171–1175, 2014.

Peyvandi F, Ferrari S, Lavoretano S: von Willebrand factor cleaving protease (ADAMTS-13) and ADAMTS-13 neutralizing autoantibodies in 100 patients with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Br J Haematol* 127:433–439, 2004.

Ple H, Maltais M, Corduan A: Alteration of the platelet transcriptome in chronic kidney disease, *Thromb Haemost* 108:605–615, 2012.

Poon MC, d'Oiron R: Recombinant activated factor VII (NovoSeven) treatment of platelet-related bleeding disorders. International Registry on Recombinant Factor VIIa and Congenital Platelet Disorders Group, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 11(Suppl 1):55–68, 2000.

Porcelijn L, Huiskes E: Comijs-van Osselen I. A new bead-based human platelet antigen antibodies detection assay versus the monoclonal antibody immobilization of platelet antigens assay, *Transfusion* 54:1486–1492, 2014.

Provan D, Stasi R, Newland AC: International consensus report on the investigation and management of primary immune thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 115:168–186, 2010.

Raccuglia G: Gray platelet syndrome. A variety of qualitative platelet disorder, *Am J Med* 51:818–828, 1971.

Rao AK: Spotlight on FLI1, RUNX1, and platelet dysfunction, *Blood* 122:4004–4006, 2013a.

Rao AK: Acquired disorders of platelet function. In AD Michelson, editor: *Platelets*, Amsterdam, 2013b, Academic Press, pp 1049–1073.

Rao AK: Inherited platelet function disorders: overview and disorders of granules, secretion, and signal transduction, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 27:585–611, 2013c.

Rao AK, Bennett JS: Acquired disorders of platelet function. In Marder VJ, Aird WC, Bennett JS, editors: *Hemostasis and thrombosis: basic principles and clinical practice*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2013, Lippincott, pp 820–828.

Rao AK, Coller BS: Hereditary qualitative platelet disorders. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman M, Kipps T, editors: *Williams hematology*, New York, 2015a, McGraw-Hill.

Rao AK, Ghosh S, Sun L: Effect of mechanism of platelet dysfunction on response to DDAVP in patients with congenital platelet function defects. A double-blind placebo-controlled trial, *Thromb Haemost* 74:1071–1078, 1995.

Rao AK, Jalagadugula G, Sun L: Inherited defects in platelet signaling mechanisms, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30:525–535, 2004.

Rao AK, Songdej N: Inherited thrombocytopenias: the beat goes on, *Blood* 125:748–750, 2015b.

Raslova H, Komura E, Le Couedic JP: FLI1 monoallelic expression combined with its hemizygous loss underlies Paris-Trousseau/Jacobsen thrombopenia, *J Clin Invest* 114:77–84, 2004.

Remold-O'Donnell E, Rosen FS, Kenney DM: Defects in Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome blood cells, *Blood* 87: 2621–2631, 1996.

Remuzzi GD, Marchesi M, Livio AE: Altered platelet and vascular prostaglandin-generation in patients with chronic renal failure and prolonged bleeding times, *Thromb Res* 13:1007–1115, 1978.

Rendu F, Breton-Gorius J, Trugnan G: Studies on a new variant of the Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome: qualitative, ultrastructural, and functional abnormalities of the platelet-dense bodies associated with a phospholipase A defect, *Amer J Hemat* 4:387–399, 1978.

Revel-Vilk S, Varon D, Shai E: Evaluation of children with a suspected bleeding disorder applying the Impact-R [Cone and Plate(let) Analyzer], *J Thromb Haemost* 7:1990–1996, 2009.

Rodeghiero F, Stasi R, Gernsheimer T: Standardization of terminology, definitions and outcome criteria in immune thrombocytopenic purpura of adults and children: report from an international working group, *Blood* 113:2386–2393, 2009.

Rodgers RPC, Levin J: A critical reappraisal of the bleeding time, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 16:1–20, 1990.

Russell SD, Roth GJ: Pseudo-von Willebrand disease: A mutation in the platelet glycoprotein Iba gene associated with a hyperactive surface receptor, *Blood* 81:1787–1791, 1993.

Sachs UJ, Kiefel V, Kroll H: Report on the 15th International Society of Blood Transfusion platelet immunology workshop, *Vox Sang* 103:343–351, 2012.

Sadler JE: Von Willebrand disease type 1: a diagnosis in search of a disease, *Blood* 101:2089–2093, 2003a.

Sadler JE: Aortic stenosis, von Willebrand factor, and bleeding, *N Engl J Med* 349:323–325, 2003b.

Sadler JE: Low von Willebrand factor: sometimes a risk factor and sometimes a disease, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2009:106–112, 2009.

Sanders YV, van der Bom JG, Isaacs A, et al: CLEC4M and STXBP5 gene variation contribute to von Willebrand factor level variation in von Willebrand disease, *J Thromb Haemost* 13:956–966, 2015.

Savoia A, Balduini CL, Savino M: Autosomal dominant macrothrombocytopenia in Italy is most frequently a type of heterozygous Bernard-Soulier syndrome, *Blood* 97:1330–1335, 2001.

Sayani FA, Abrams CS: How I treat refractory thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Blood* 125:3860–3867, 2015.

Schafer AI: Deficiency of platelet lipoxygenase activity in myeloproliferative disorders, *N Engl J Med* 306:381–386, 1982.

Schafer AI: Bleeding and thrombosis in the myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood* 64:1–12, 1984.

Schafer AI: Thrombocytosis, *N Engl J Med* 350:1211–1219, 2004.

Semple JW: Infections, antigen-presenting cells, T cells, and immune tolerance: their role in the pathogenesis of immune thrombocytopenia, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 23:1177–1192, 2009.

Shattil SJ, Newman PJ: Integrins: dynamic scaffolds for adhesion and signaling in platelets, *Blood* 104:1606–1615, 2004.

Shcherbina A, Cooley J, Lutskiy MI: WASP plays a novel role in regulating platelet responses dependent on αIIbβ3 integrin outside-in signalling, *Br J Haematol* 148:416–427, 2010.

Shenkman B, Einav Y: Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura and other thrombotic microangiopathic hemolytic anemias: diagnosis and classification, *Autoimmun Rev* 13:584–586, 2014.

Shivdasani RA: Lonely in Paris: when one gene copy isn't enough, *J Clin Invest* 114:17–19, 2004.

Skoda RC: Thrombocytosis, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2009:159–167, 2009.

Smith SA, Morrissey JH: Polyphosphate: a new player in the field of hemostasis, *Curr Opin Hematol* 21:388–394, 2014.

Smyth SS, Whitehart S, Italiano JE: Platelet morphology, biochemistry, and function. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, editors: *Williams hematology*, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill, pp 1735–1814.

Sohal AS, Gangji AS, Crowther MA: Uremic bleeding: pathophysiology and clinical risk factors, *Thromb Res* 118:417–422, 2006.

Solum NO: Procoagulant expression in platelets and defects leading to clinical disorders, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 19:2841–2846, 1999.

Song WJ, Sullivan MG, Legare RD: Haploinsufficiency of CBFA2 causes familial thrombocytopenia with propensity to develop acute myelogenous leukaemia, *Nat Genet* 23:166–175, 1999.

Songdej N, Rao A: Hematopoietic transcription factor mutations and inherited platelet dysfunction, *F1000Prime Rep* 7:66, 2015.

Springer TA: von Willebrand factor, Jedi knight of the bloodstream, *Blood* 124:1412–1425, 2014.

Stasi R, Willis F, Shannon MS: Infectious causes of chronic immune thrombocytopenia, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 23:1275–1297, 2009.

Stevenson WS, Morel-Kopp MC, Chen Q: GFI1B mutation causes a bleeding disorder with abnormal platelet function, *J Thromb Haemost* 11:2039–2047, 2013.

Stockley J, Morgan NV, Bem D, et al: Enrichment of FLI1 and RUNX1 mutations in families with excessive bleeding and platelet dense granule secretion defects, *Blood* 122:4090–4093, 2013.

Sugiyama T, Okuma M, Ushikubi F: A novel platelet aggregating factor found in a patient with defective collagen-induced platelet aggregation and autoimmune thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 69:1712–1720, 1987.

Sulai NH, Tefferi A: Why does my patient have thrombocytosis?, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 26:285–301, viii, 2012.

Sun L, Mao G, Rao AK: Association of CBFA2 mutation with decreased platelet PKC-θ and impaired receptor-mediated activation of GPIIb-IIIa and pleckstrin phosphorylation: proteins regulated by CBFA2 play a role in GPIIb-IIIa activation, *Blood* 103:948–954, 2004.

Suzuki J, Umeda M, Sims PJ: Calcium-dependent phospholipid scrambling by TMEM16F, *Nature* 468:834–838, 2010.

Tchernev VT, Mansfield TA, Giot L: The Chediak-Higashi protein interacts with SNARE complex and signal transduction proteins, *Mol Med* 8:56–64, 2002.

Tiede A, Rand JH, Budde U: How I treat the acquired von Willebrand syndrome, *Blood* 117:6777–6785, 2011.

Timm A, Hillarp A, Philips M: Comparison of automated von Willebrand factor activity assays, *Thromb Res* 135:684–691, 2015.

Tsai HM: Shear stress and von Willebrand factor in health and disease, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 29:479–488, 2003.

Tsai HM, Lian EC: Antibodies to von Willebrand factor-cleaving protease in acute thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *N Engl J Med* 339:1585–1594, 1998.

Tubman VN, Levine JE, Campagna DR: X-linked gray platelet syndrome due to a GATA1 Arg216Gln mutation, *Blood* 109:3297–3299, 2007.

Urban D, Li L, Christensen H, et al: The VPS33B binding protein VPS16B is required in megakaryocyte and platelet α-granule biogenesis, *Blood* 120:5032–5040, 2012.

Uriel N, Pak SW, Jorde UP: Acquired von Willebrand syndrome after continuous-flow mechanical device support contributes to a high prevalence of bleeding during long-term support and at the time of transplantation, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 56:1207–1213, 2010.

van Genderen PJ, Michiels JJ, van Strik R: Platelet consumption in thrombocythemia complicated by erythromelalgia: reversal by aspirin, *Thromb Haemost* 73:210–214, 1995.

van Nispen tot Pannerden H, de Haas F, Geerts W: The platelet interior revisited: electron tomography reveals tubular alpha-granule subtypes, *Blood* 116:1147–1156, 2010.

van Vliet HH, Kappers-Klunne MC, van der Hel JW: Antibodies against glycosphingolipids in sera of patients with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Br J Haematol* 67:103–108, 1987.

van Werkum JW, Bouman HJ, Breet NJ: The Cone-and-Plate(let) analyzer is not suitable to monitor clopidogrel therapy: a comparison with the flowcytometric VASP assay and optical aggregometry, *Thromb Res* 126:44–49, 2010.

Varon D, Lashevski I, Brenner B: Cone and plate(let) analyzer: monitoring glycoprotein IIb/IIIa antagonists and von Willebrand disease replacement therapy by testing platelet deposition under flow conditions, *Am Heart J* 135:S187–S193, 1998.

Veyradier A, Balian A, Wolf M: Abnormal von Willebrand factor in bleeding angiodysplasias of the digestive tract, *Gastroenterology* 120:346–353, 2001.
Veyradier A, Caron C, Ternisien C: Validation of the first commercial ELISA for type 2N von Willebrand's disease diagnosis, *Haemophilia* 17:944–951, 2011.
Vincentelli A, Susen S, Le Tourneau T: Acquired von Willebrand syndrome in aortic stenosis, *N Engl J Med* 349:343–349, 2003.
Von dem Borne AEG, van Leeuwen EF, von Reisz LE: Neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia: detection and characterization of the responsible antibodies by the platelet immunofluorescence test, *Blood* 57:649–656, 1981.
Von Drygalski A, Curtis BR, Bougie DW: Vancomycin-induced immune thrombocytopenia, *N Engl J Med* 356:904–910, 2007.
Wagner CL, Mascelli MA, Neblock DS: Analysis of GPIIb/IIIa receptor number by quantification of 7E3 binding to human platelets, *Blood* 88:907–914, 1996.
Ware J, Russell SR, Marchese P: Point mutation in a leucine-rich repeat of platelet glycoprotein Ib alpha resulting in the Bernard-Soulier syndrome, *J Clin Invest* 92:1213–1220, 1993.
Weiss HJ: Scott syndrome: a disorder of platelet coagulant activity, *Semin Hematol* 31:312–319, 1994.
Weiss HJ: Impaired platelet procoagulant mechanisms in patients with bleeding disorders, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:233–241, 2009.
Weiss HJ, Lages B: Platelet malondialdehyde production and aggregation responses induced by arachidonate, prostaglandin-G_2, collagen, and epinephrine in 12 patients with storage pool deficiency, *Blood* 58:27–33, 1981.
Weiss HJ, Lages B: The response of platelets to epinephrine in storage pool deficiency—Evidence pertaining to the role of adenosine diphosphate in mediating primary and secondary aggregation, *Blood* 72:1717–1725, 1988.
Weiss HJ, Lages B: Platelet prothrombinase activity and intracellular calcium responses in patients with storage pool deficiency, glycoprotein IIb-IIIa deficiency, or impaired platelet coagulant activity—a comparison with Scott syndrome, *Blood* 89:1599–1611, 1997.
Weiss HJ, Meyer D, Rabinowitz R: Pseudo von Willebrand's disease: An intrinsic platelet defect with aggregation by unmodified human factor VIII/von Willebrand factor and enhanced adsorption of its high-molecular-weight multimers, *N Engl J Med* 306:326–362, 1982.
Weiss HJ, Vicic WJ, Lages BA: Isolated deficiency of platelet procoagulant activity, *Am J Med* 67:206–213, 1979a.
Weiss HJ, Witte LD, Kaplan KL: Heterogeneity in storage pool deficiency: Studies on granule-bound substances in 18 patients including variants deficient in alpha-granules, platelet factor 4, beta-thromboglobulin, and platelet-derived growth factor, *Blood* 54:1296–1319, 1979b.
White JG: Electron microscopy methods for studying platelet structure and function, *Methods Mol Biol* 272:47–63, 2004.
White JG, Edson JR, Desnick SJ: Studies on platelets in a variant of the Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome, *Am J Pathol* 63:319, 1971.
Whitelock JL, Nolasco L, Bernardo A: ADAMTS-13 activity in plasma is rapidly measured by a new ELISA method that uses recombinant VWF-A2 domain as substrate, *J Thromb Haemost* 2:485–491, 2004.
Witkop CJ, Babcock MN, Rao GHR: Albinism and Hermansky-Pudlak syndrome in Puerto Rico, *Bol Asoc Med P R* 82:333–339, 1990.
Woods AI, Sanchez-Luceros A, Bermejo E: Identification of p.W246L as a novel mutation in the GP1BA gene responsible for platelet-type von Willebrand disease, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 40:151–160, 2014.
Woods VL Jr, Oh EH, Mason D: Autoantibodies against the platelet glycoprotein IIb/IIIa complex in patients with chronic ITP, *Blood* 63:368–375, 1984a.
Woods VL Jr, Kurata Y, Montgomery RR: Autoantibodies against platelet glycoprotein Ib in patients with chronic immune thrombocytopenic purpura, *Blood* 64:156–160, 1984b.
Yang X, Sun L, Ghosh S: Human platelet signaling defect characterized by impaired production of 1,4,5 inositoltrisphosphate and phosphatic acid, and diminished pleckstrin phosphorylation. Evidence for defective phospholipase C activation, *Blood* 88:1676–1683, 1996.
Yeh JJ, Tsai S, Wu DC: P-selectin-dependent platelet aggregation and apoptosis may explain the decrease in platelet count during Helicobacter pylori infection, *Blood* 115:4247–4253, 2010.
Zhang W, Nardi MA, Borkowsky W: Role of molecular mimicry of hepatitis C virus protein with platelet GPIIIa in hepatitis C-related immunologic thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 113:4086–4093, 2009.
Zheng XL: ADAMTS13 testing: why bother?, *Blood* 115:1475–1476, 2010.
Zheng XL: ADAMTS13 and von Willebrand factor in thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, *Annu Rev Med* 66:211–225, 2015.
Zwaal RF, Comfurius P, Bevers EM: Surface exposure of phosphatidylserine in pathological cells, *Cell Mol Life Sci* 62:971–988, 2005.

CHAPTER 41

LABORATORY APPROACH TO THROMBOTIC RISK

John V. Mitsios, Jacob H. Rand

ENDOGENOUS ANTICOAGULANT PATHWAYS, 834

THROMBOPHILIC PROTEINS OR FACTORS, 835
Antithrombin, 835
Protein C, 837
Protein S, 837
Activated Protein C Resistance and Factor V_{Leiden}, 838
Prothrombin g20210a, 838
Elevation of Other Coagulation Factor Levels, 838
Tissue Factor Pathway Inhibitor, 838
Dysfibrinogenemia, 839
Annexin A5, 839
Hypofibrinolytic Mechanisms, 839

ACQUIRED HYPERCOAGULABLE STATES, 839
Antiphospholipid Syndrome and Lupus Anticoagulant, 839
Other Coagulation Abnormalities, 840
Hyperhomocysteinemia, 841

GENERAL ASPECTS OF THE LABORATORY EVALUATION FOR THROMBOTIC RISK, 841

SELECTED REFERENCES, 841

KEY POINTS

- Several important regulatory mechanisms control the extent of fibrin formation after coagulation is triggered. Under normal conditions, these are designed to achieve hemostasis while preventing intravascular clot formation that would lead to thrombosis and embolism. Major systems include the antithrombin mechanism, the protein C–protein S system, the fibrinolytic system, and the tissue factor pathway inhibitor mechanism.
- Deficiencies of the main regulatory proteins (antithrombin, protein C, and protein S) increase the risk for venous thrombosis.
- Increased levels of procoagulant factors or polymorphisms (causing functional change) also increase the risk for venous thrombosis. A polymorphism in factor V (factor V_{Leiden}) reduces the proteolysis of factor Va by activated protein C. Increased levels of prothrombin due to a promoter polymorphism at base pair 20210 and elevated levels of factor VIII also increase the risk for development of venous thrombosis.
- Other inherited or acquired defects in hemostasis (dysfibrinogenemia and fibrinolysis) and in nonhemostatic systems (homocysteine) also increase the risk of venous thrombosis.
- Antiphospholipid syndrome is an autoimmune disorder that increases the risk of venous and arterial thrombosis as well as pregnancy complications attributable to a reduction in placental perfusion. The antibodies in this disorder are heterogeneous and are detected with a variety of laboratory abnormalities, including immunoassays and coagulation assays that paradoxically report antibody-mediated inhibition of phospholipid-dependent coagulation reactions.
- When evaluating a patient for thrombotic risk, it is important to select the appropriate diagnostic tests, to understand their clinical significance, and to plan the timing of testing appropriately because acute thrombosis, anticoagulant therapy, pregnancy, and acute phase reactions can affect the levels of these endogenous anticoagulant factors.

Hemostatic regulatory mechanisms limit the amount, location, and duration of clot formation to effectively seal blood vessels at the site of injury and at the same time manage to prevent the growth of the hemostatic plug into an occlusive thrombus. Dysfunction in these regulatory systems may lead to the pathologic condition of excessive clot formation (thrombosis). Both genetic and acquired deficiencies and abnormalities of such regulatory factors are capable of increasing the risk for thromboembolism. This chapter discusses a number of factors that influence the balance toward bleeding or toward thrombosis, as well as the role of the laboratory in identifying abnormalities associated with these factors.

The authors would like to thank the previous authors, Drs. Mallar, Fink, and Miller, for their contribution to the previous iteration of this chapter.

ENDOGENOUS ANTICOAGULANT PATHWAYS

The endogenous anticoagulants play a key role in maintaining a balance between an adequate hemostatic response to injury that would result in bleeding and an excessive response that would lead to thrombosis. (For a schematic overview of physiologic anticoagulant pathways, see also Fig. 39-5 in Chapter 39.) Coagulation is triggered by tissue factor and a protein named tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI, or TFPI-1) (Fig. 41-1) limits the activity of this protein in the manner described below (Smithies & Weaver, 2004; Crawley & Lane, 2008). TFPI has two reactive binding sites: one for factor Xa that has just been activated by the tissue factor–factor VIIa complex, and a second binding site for the tissue factor–factor VIIa complex itself (Esmon, 2003b). TFPI thereby "locks up" the tissue factor–factor VIIa enzymatic machinery, but only after coagulation has generated some factor Xa. In this way, TFPI provides a negative feedback mechanism for downregulating the coagulation process without inhibiting the formation of a quantity of fibrin sufficient to achieve hemostasis.

A second major antithrombotic regulatory system is the protein C pathway, a multipronged mechanism that includes a major anticoagulant component (Fig. 41-2), along with an indirect fibrinolysis promoting component (Esmon, 2009). Protein C, the central player in this system, is a vitamin K–dependent proenzyme that binds to the endothelial cell protein C receptor (EPCR) (Stearns-Kurosawa et al, 1996). The system is initiated when excess thrombin that is not bound to fibrin rapidly binds to an endothelial cell transmembrane glycoprotein, thrombomodulin (TM in Fig. 41-2). This TM bound-thrombin undergoes a change in substrate specificity that converts it from a potent procoagulant enzyme to specificity for activating protein C that is bound to the EPCR by rapidly cleaving a small activation peptide (Esmon, 2004). This process generates activated protein C (APC), an active serine protease. A second vitamin K–dependent inhibitory plasma protein, protein S (see Fig. 41-2), serves as a critical cofactor for the enzymatic activity of APC. Protein S is a nonenzymatic cofactor molecule that binds in equilibrium to a large complement protein, C4b-binding protein (Rigby & Grant, 2004). Only the unbound (or "free") form of protein S possesses APC cofactor activity. The complexes of APC and protein S inactivate factor Va and factor VIIIa, thereby greatly diminishing additional thrombin formation and consequently the rate of fibrin formation (Esmon, 2003a; 2003b). Again, similar to the TFPI system, inhibition of coagulation occurs after its activation—that is, thrombin exhibits anticoagulant properties only after there has been sufficient thrombin to achieve hemostasis.

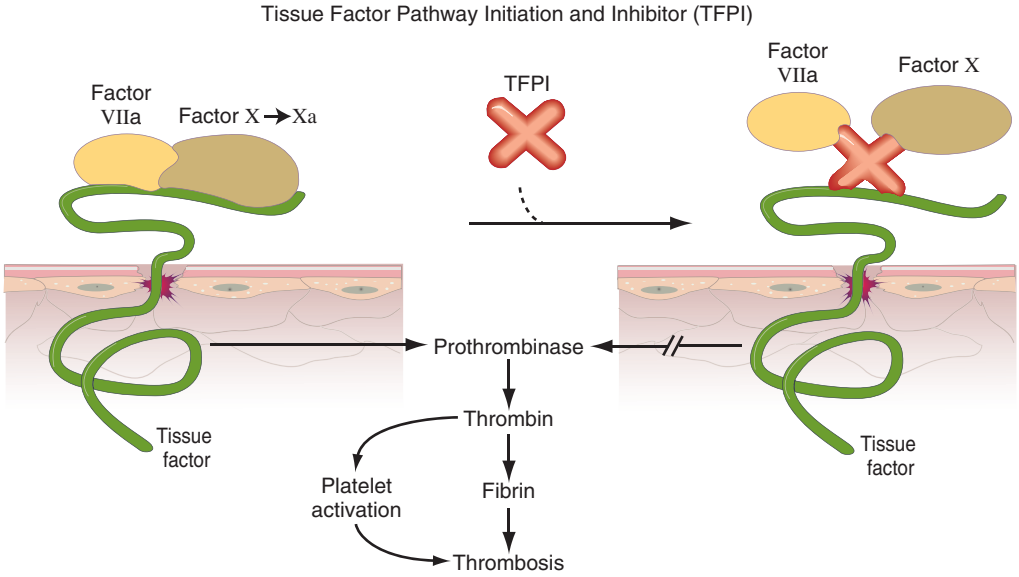


Figure 41-1 **Tissue factor pathway initiation and inhibitor mechanisms.** *TFPI,* Tissue factor pathway inhibitor.

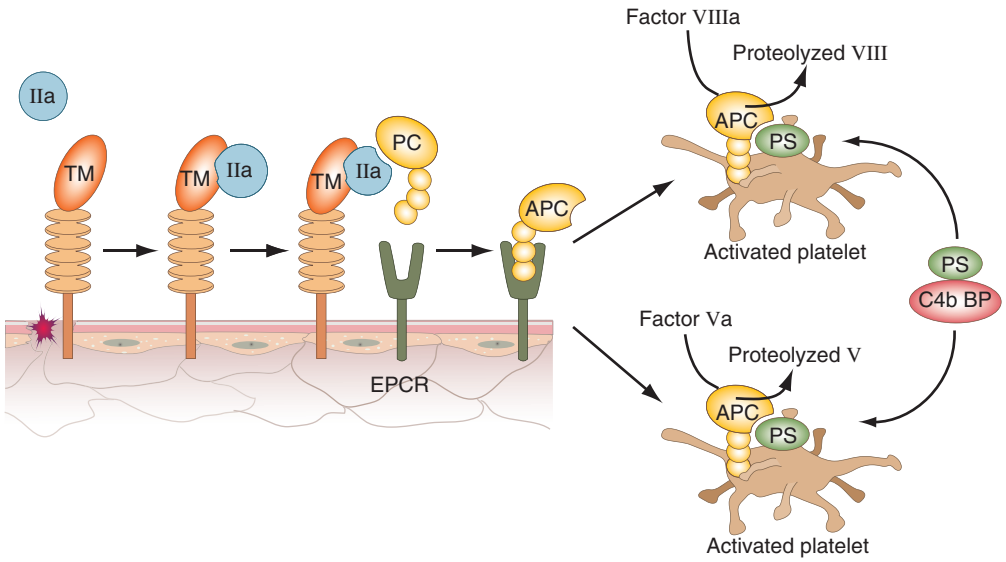


Figure 41-2 **Protein C pathway.** *APC,* Activated protein C; *C4b BP,* complement factor 4b-binding protein; *EPCR,* endothelial cell protein C receptor; *IIa,* thrombin; *PC,* protein C; *PS,* protein S; *TM,* thrombomodulin.

In addition to proteolysis of factors Va and VIIIa, the protein C system also appears to exert significant, although indirect, profibrinolytic activity. This appears to involve the thrombin-activated fibrinolytic inhibitor (TAFI) (Van de Wouwer et al, 2004) along with plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1) (Madden et al, 1991; Meltzer et al, 2010). TAFI is a plasma carboxypeptidase that is rapidly activated by the thrombin–thrombomodulin complex (Van de Wouwer et al, 2004). The active form of the carboxypeptidase cleaves C-terminal lysine residues from fibrin that has already undergone proteolytic cleavage by plasmin. Loss of these residues impairs the efficient binding of plasminogen-activating proteins to fibrin, thereby downregulating the fibrinolytic process. APC, via inactivation of factor Va, causes a decrease in thrombin generation, thus also slowing TAFI activation. PAI-1 is inhibited by APC, thereby increasing overall fibrinolytic activity (Madden et al, 1991). In addition to its anticoagulant function, there is evidence suggesting that the protein C system may have other important defense properties, including anti-inflammatory activity and regulation of complement activity (Castellino & Ploplis, 2009; Esmon, 2003a).

Antithrombin (also known as antithrombin III) is a circulating plasma serine protease inhibitor that regulates thrombin and factor Xa, and to a lesser extent the other serine protease—that is, factors IXa, XIa, XIIa, and VIIa (Stassen et al, 2004). The function of antithrombin is greatly enhanced by glycosaminoglycans on the endothelial cell surface. The enhancement is mediated by cell-bound glycosaminoglycans (heparan sulfate, dermatan sulfate, and small amounts of heparin) (Fig. 41-3), while pharmacologically this is accomplished by heparins (discussed extensively in Chapter 42).

THROMBOPHILIC PROTEINS OR FACTORS

An increase in procoagulant factors or a decrease in regulatory factors can tip the balance to excessive fibrin production, resulting in thrombus formation. These imbalances can be caused by genetic or acquired factors or by a combination of the two (Tables 41-1 and 41-2). A complete assessment of the recognized and established risk factors must be made to determine the overall risk potential for an individual (see Table 41-2). The following factors are the major known components involved in increased risk for thrombus development (see Table 41-1 for a summary of prevalence and relative risk).

ANTITHROMBIN

Both hereditary and acquired deficiencies of antithrombin have been identified (Egeberg, 1965; Bloemenkamp et al, 2003; Patnaik & Moll, 2008). Genetic deficiency of antithrombin is a rare disorder (approximately 1 in 10,000 individuals) in the general population, and about 1% of patients with familial venous thrombosis are diagnosed for this deficiency (Adcock

et al, 1997). Antithrombin deficiency is an autosomal trait, having an apparent dominant expression and high penetrance, with a large number of known mutants throughout the gene (Adcock et al, 1997; Lane et al, 1997). Heterozygous individuals have plasma antithrombin levels around 50% of normal and develop thrombosis; this is in contrast to heterozygous carriers for the genes for coagulation factor deficiencies, who are typically asymptomatic. Both type I (decreased activity with concomitant decreased antigen) and type II (decreased activity with normal levels of antigen) antithrombin mutations have been described in antithrombin-deficient individuals (Lane et al, 1997). Except for unique type II mutations in the heparin-binding region, where patients typically manifest venous thrombosis, homozygous antithrombin deficiency is incompatible with life (Kuhle et al, 2001). The most common clinical presentation is deep venous thrombosis in the lower extremities and pulmonary embolus. Thrombi may also occur in the retinal, mesenteric, and splenic veins (Bloemenkamp et al, 2003). Acquired deficiencies of antithrombin occur in disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) (Asakura et al, 2001), liver disease, the nephrotic syndrome, the acute period following venous thrombosis, and during heparin therapy (Marlar & Mastovich, 1990). In some cases, acquired defects can cause plasma levels to drop to 30% to 50% of normal and may be mistaken for genetic deficiencies. In the newborn period, antithrombin is also characteristically low, reaching adult levels by the age of 6 months (Streif et al, 1999).

Both antithrombin activity and antigen levels in plasma can be determined by using commercially available assays. Antithrombin activity is determined by inhibition of thrombin or factor Xa, which can be measured in the presence of heparin (heparin cofactor activity), or in the absence of heparin (progressive antithrombin therapy), or using a chromogenic assay. Advantages to the heparin cofactor activity assay include its sensitivity for all types of antithrombin deficiencies, lack of interferences from lupus anticoagulants, variations in coagulation factors, or heparin. However, there are some disadvantages in that the assay requires an instrument with spectrophotometric capability in which interferences can be observed in the presence of high concentrations of hemoglobin, triglycerides, and

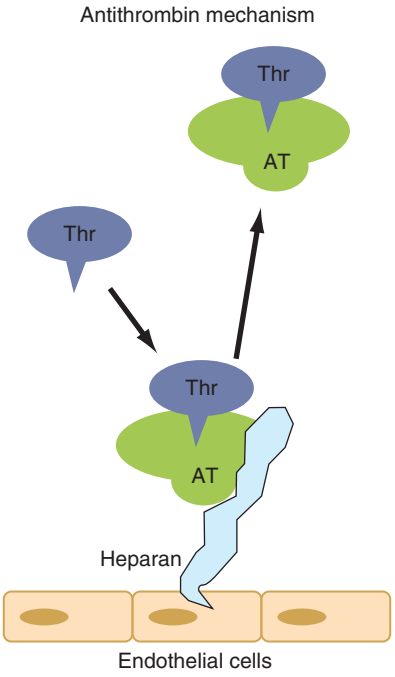


Figure 41-3 Antithrombin inhibitor mechanisms. *AT,* Antithrombin (formally termed *antithrombin III*); *Heparan,* heparan sulfate (a glycosaminoglycan); *Thr,* thrombin (or another coagulation enzyme such as factor X).

TABLE 41-2
Estimated Thrombotic Risk for Cooperativeness of Multiple Factors

Risk Factor 1	Risk Factor 2	Combined Risk (Fold Greater)
Protein C	Factor V_{Leiden} (heterozygous)	25-45
Protein S	Factor V_{Leiden} (heterozygous)	25-50
Factor V_{Leiden} (heterozygous)	Elevated factor VIII	12-20
Factor V_{Leiden} (heterozygous)	Oral contraceptives	8-20
Factor V_{Leiden} (heterozygous)	Pregnancy	25-40

TABLE 41-1
Prevalence and Estimated Increased Thrombotic Risk of Thrombophilic Factors

Risk Factors for Thrombosis	Prevalence in General Population, %	Prevalence in Thrombophilic Population, %	Estimated Thrombotic Risk, Fold
Decreased antithrombin	0.02-0.17**	1-3**	10-20**
Decreased protein C	0.14-0.5**	3-5**	10**
Decreased protein S	0.03-0.13**	1-5**	10**
Factor V_{Leiden} (heterozygous)	1-5*,**	10-50**	5**
Factor V_{Leiden} (homozygous)	<0.01%	2-4	10-15
Prothrombin G20210A	2-5*,**	6-18*	3
Elevated factor VIII	11**	25**	2-4.5
Elevated fibrinogen	5-12	20-30	2-3
Dysfibrinogenemia	<0.1	<1	Variable
Thrombomodulin mutations	<0.01	0.2-0.8	2-4
Elevated homocysteine	5**	10**	3**
Lupus anticoagulant	1-5	10-30	2-10
Oral contraceptives	N/A	N/A2-3	
Pregnancy	N/A	N/A	4-8

N/A, Not applicable.
*Factor V_{Leiden} and Prothrombin 20210 prevalence for heterozygosity in Caucasian general population; however, both very low (<0.1%) in African and East Asian populations.
**De Stefano et al, 1996; Rosendaal, 1999.
Data also from Abdollahi M, Cushman M, Rosendaal FR, et al: Obesity: Risk of venous thrombosis and the interaction with coagulation factor levels and oral contraceptive use, *Thromb Haemost* 89:493–498, 2003; Bauer KA, Rosendaal FR, Heit JA: Hypercoagulability: Too many tests, too much conflicting data, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2002;353–368, 2002; Franco RF, Rosendaal FR: Genetic risk factors of venous thrombosis, *Hum Genet* 109:369–384, 2001; Goldhader SZ, Grodstein F, Stampfer MJ, et al: A prospective study of risk factors for pulmonary embolism in women, *JAMA* 277:642–645, 1997; Grady D, Wenger NK, Herrington D, et al: Post-menopausal hormone therapy increases risk for venous thromboembolic disease. The heart and estrogen/progestin replacement study, *Ann Intern Med* 132:689–696, 2000; Heit JA, Silverstein MD, Mohr DN, et al: Risk factors for deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism: A population-based case-control study, *Arch Intern Med* 160:809–815, 2000; Kim V, Spandorfer J: Epidemiology of venous thromboembolic disease, *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 19:839–859, 2001; and Overby DW, Kohn GP, Cahan MA, et al: Prevalence of thrombophilias in patients presenting for bariatric surgery, *Obes Surg* 19:1278–1286, 2009.

bilirubin. On the other hand, antithrombin antigen can be determined by multiple methods, including Laurell electroimmunodiffusion, radial immunodiffusion, or enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), or by nephelometry, in which the latter two are the most common. Care must be taken in distinguishing type I from type II antithrombin deficiency, because both deficiencies exhibit decreased heparin cofactor antithrombin activity, which is the most sensitive method for detecting antithrombin deficiency. In order to distinguish type I from type II antithrombin deficiency, both antithrombin antigen and activity must be performed. However, few medical centers offer this test as part of their routine testing; it is typically found only in specialized reference laboratories. This can result in patients being incorrectly labeled as having type I deficiency as a result of incorrect laboratory evaluation. In addition, the antithrombin antigen assays are often insensitive screening tests because the antigen levels are usually normal in patients with type II antithrombin deficiency. There is no significant difference in clinical presentation between type I and II antithrombin deficiencies. Type II antithrombin deficiency has been further subclassified into IIa (decreased thrombin inactivation, decreased factor Xa inactivation, and decreased heparin affinity), IIb (decreased thrombin inactivation and normal heparin affinity), and IIc (normal thrombin inactivation and factor Xa and decreased heparin affinity) based on the location of the defect on the antithrombin molecule. However, the type of antithrombin deficiency does not influence clinical management. Still, knowledge of the type may provide prognostic information regarding the risk of thrombosis. As an example, type IIb is the most common type and has been associated with lower penetrance for thrombosis. A high risk of venous thromboembolic disease is seen in patients with type I antithrombin deficiency and in patients with type II specifically with defects affecting the thrombin binding domain. The reference ranges for both antithrombin activity and antigen are fairly narrow, usually around 80% to 120% of normal (Adcock et al, 1997; Kuhle et al, 2001) and should be calibrated against the International Reference Standard.

PROTEIN C

Protein C, the central protein in the protein C pathway, is a vitamin K–dependent serine protease zymogen that regulates thrombin generation by inactivating factors Va and VIIIa. Both genetic and acquired deficiencies of protein C can increase the risk for thrombosis. The clinical presentation of severe protein C deficiency includes venous thromboembolism, neonatal purpura, warfarin-induced skin necrosis (Moll, 2004; Tai et al, 2004; Goldenberg & Manco-Johnson, 2008), and fetal loss. As with antithrombin deficiency, two subtypes, type I and II, have been described. Type I is characterized by a decrease in synthesis of a fully functional protein (antigen = activity), while mutations associated with type II protein C deficiency translate into a dysfunctional protein (antigen > activity) (Marlar & Mastovich, 1990; Marlar et al, 1990; Lane et al, 1996). A survey of individuals from the general population reported that 1 in 60 healthy adults have levels consistent with heterozygous deficiency and are not detectably associated with a risk of thrombosis (Miletich et al, 1987). In addition to the hereditary deficiency, a number of conditions can give rise to acquired protein C deficiency, including liver disease, severe infection (including meningococcemia), septic shock, and disseminated intravascular coagulation.

Testing for protein C function in plasma is performed using clotting activity (end point is fibrin formation) or chromogenic activity (hydrolysis of activated protein C–specific chromogenic substrate) assays; antigen levels are measurable with several types of immunoassays. The key component of the clotting assays is the in vitro activation of protein C by Akistrodon contortix (southern copperhead) snake venom (Protac®), which substitutes for the natural activator thrombin-thrombomodulin. Protein C activation is independent of calcium ion concentration and the degree of protein C gamma carboxylation. The clotting method is typically a two-stage phospholipid assay based on either the activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) or thromboplastin (PT)-based coagulation assays. In the first stage, the patient's plasma is incubated with Protac® to completely activate protein C; the second stage consists of the addition of an activator (aPTT, PT, or Russell viper venom reagent) to initiate the clotting process. The time until detection of the fibrin clot or hydrolysis of the substrate is proportional to the plasma protein C activity—that is, prolongation of the clotting time correlates with increased protein C activity. The clot-based assays provide some advantages in that there is increased sensitivity for detecting both type I and type II protein C deficiencies, as well as increased sensitivity for most coagulation instruments regardless of fibrin clot detection methods. On the negative side, however, clot-based assays may underestimate protein C, particularly under conditions in which there is a deficiency of other factors involved in protein C activation, such as low protein S, factor V_{leiden}, warfarin antagonism, or vitamin K deficiency. In addition, an underestimation can also occur with increased factor VIII activation. Similarly, conditions that prolong the clotting time may result in overestimation of protein C activity; examples include the presence of heparin in the patient's plasma, direct thrombin inhibitors, specific factor inhibitors, or the presence of a lupus anticoagulant.

The majority of the commercially available assays are ELISA, in which different combinations of capture and detection protein C antibodies are used. These assays exhibit variable sensitivities for uncarboxylated protein C and protein C/inhibitor complexes. All of the immunoassays cross-react with protein C type II mutations and should not be used for screening purposes, but they can help in distinguishing between type I and II in patients with low protein C activity. In type I protein C deficiency, functional activity and antigen level are decreased to about 50% of normal, whereas in type II deficiency, the functional level is decreased on average to 50% of normal, but the antigen level remains normal (Marlar & Mastovich, 1990; Marlar et al, 1990). Type I heterozygous protein C deficiency is the most common of the two and reflects structurally normal protein C. Homozygous type I protein C deficiency reflects a complete absence of the protein. This rare disorder manifests as neonatal purpura fulminans. Type II protein C deficiency reflects a qualitative defect. The chromogenic functional assays are not subject to quantitative or qualitative variations in protein C, coagulation factors, anticoagulants, or inhibitors and are more precise than the clot-based method, but they may erroneously report activity for mutant protein C molecules that only recognize the synthetic chromogenic substrate but are not active in vivo.

PROTEIN S

Both genetic and acquired deficiencies of protein S are associated with increased risk of thrombosis (Esmon, 2003a; 2009). As discussed above, protein S together with activated protein C (APC) binds to the phospholipid surface of a platelet or other cell, enhancing the enzymatic inactivation of factors Va and VIIIa (Hackeng et al, 1994; van Wijnen et al, 1996). About 40% of the protein S is free in plasma, whereas the remaining 60% is bound to the complement system protein, C4b-binding protein (C4b BP) (Nelson & Long, 1992). Several different pathologic and physiologic conditions can alter the ratio of free and bound protein S, thereby effectively modulating the protein C inhibitory pathway (Mackie et al, 2001). The level of protein S characteristically decreases during pregnancy, with values averaging only 60% of those of controls from the tenth week of pregnancy onward (Cerneca et al, 1997; ten Kate & van der Meer, 2008).

The autosomal gene encoding protein S is expressed with variable penetrance (Rezende et al, 2004). As with antithrombin and protein C, the classical quantitative type I deficiency (decreased protein S activity with concomitant decreased total antigen) and a qualitative type II deficiency (decreased protein S activity with normal levels of free and total antigen) have been reported. A third type of mutation, type III deficiency, is characterized by total protein S antigen measurements within the normal range and selectively reduced concentrations of free protein S and functional activity because of increased binding to C4b BP. Several studies have reported that type III individuals might not have increased risk for thrombosis (Brouwer et al, 2005; Libourel et al, 2005). Homozygous protein S deficiency with severely decreased protein S activity (<1%) has been reported with the same presentation and similar treatment regimens as homozygous protein C deficiency (Brouwer et al, 2005). The clinical presentation includes purpura fulminans and DIC during the newborn period, with ophthalmic and neurologic complications having developed in utero. This disorder requires replacement therapy (i.e., fresh frozen plasma) and anticoagulant therapy soon after birth.

Plasma protein S levels may be measured with protein S clotting activity assays, as well as with antigenic assays for free protein S and total protein S antigen. Definitive diagnosis of protein S deficiency can be very difficult owing to the complexity of protein S interaction with C4b BP (Nelson and Long, 1992; Goodwin et al, 2002; Persson et al, 2003; ten Kate & van der Meer, 2008). The functional assay methods are based on the activity of protein S to serve as a cofactor for the anticoagulant effects of APC (Wolf et al, 1989; Preda et al, 1990). A major disadvantage of functional protein S assays is poor specificity (false-positive results). However, some of the assays are not specific for protein S because they are also sensitive to the defect that is characterized by activated protein C resistance (APC-R) due to factor V_{Leiden} mutation (Faioni et al, 1993) (see below). To eliminate this problem, a screening of the plasma samples for APC-R prior to the performance of the functional protein S assays may be beneficial. The original method for determining free protein S antigen

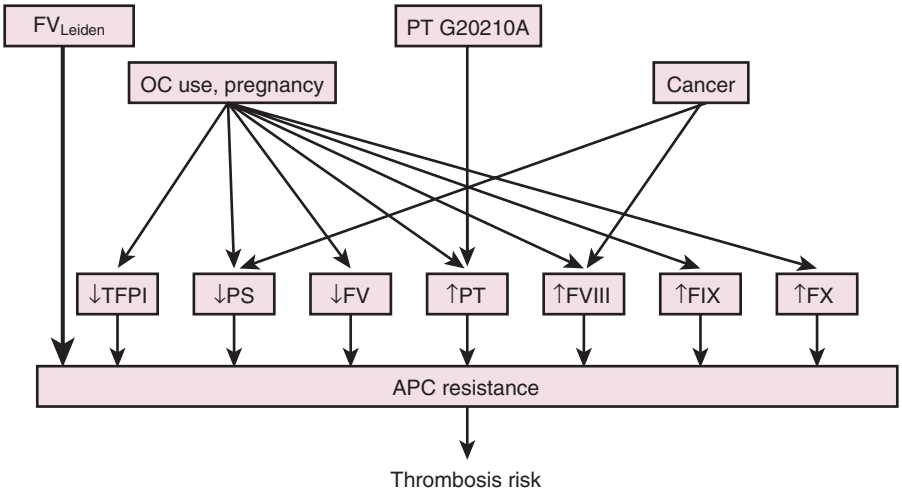


Figure 41-4 Activated protein C (APC) resistance as a complex phenotype. (Redrawn with permission from Castoldi E, Rosing J: APC resistance: Biological basis and acquired influences, *J Thromb Haemost* 8:445–53, 2010.)

concentrations, which involved precipitation of bound protein S complexes with polyethylene glycol (PEG), has been replaced by immunoassays that measure protein S specifically using monoclonal antibody-based assays or ligand sorbent assays. Two types of antigen assays are available: Assays whose measurement includes both free protein S and the bound fraction are considered to be measuring the total amount of protein S in a plasma sample (total protein S antigen). Assays for free protein S measure only the unbound portion of protein S by employing a monoclonal antibody specific for unbound protein S (Comp et al, 1986; Goodwin et al, 2002; Persson et al, 2003; ten Kate & van der Meer, 2008). Reaching a definitive diagnosis of congenital deficiency of protein S can be challenging, given the complexity of the interaction of protein S with C4b BP, the acquired conditions, which can change the equilibrium of free and bound forms and the presence of vitamin K antagonists (Simmonds et al, 1998; Mackie et al, 2001; Goodwin et al, 2002; Rezende et al, 2004; ten Kate & van der Meer, 2008). Reference intervals for both antigen and activity typically range from 60% to 150%, and separate reference ranges for women who may be on oral contraceptives or pregnant are typically not provided, therefore complicating the interpretation of "low values" in this patient population.

ACTIVATED PROTEIN C RESISTANCE AND FACTOR V_{Leiden}

Activated protein C resistance (APC-R) is reported when the addition of exogenous APC to plasma does not result in the expected anticoagulant effect, as manifested by prolongation of clotting time tests such as the aPTT (Dahlback, 1999; Castoldi & Rosing, 2010). APC-R is most often attributable to factor V_{Leiden}, which is considered one of the most common genetic risk factors for venous thrombosis, with a prevalence in individuals with European ancestry of about 4% (Ridker et al, 1995; Heijmans et al, 1998). The polymorphism that renders the site resistant to APC cleavage at one of the cleavage sites in factor Va is an arginine residue substituted by a glutamine residue (R506Q) (Aparicio & Dahlback, 1996). The amino acid substitution is due to a single nucleotide change in the gene for factor V_{Leiden} (Bertina et al, 1994). Factor V_{Leiden} increases the relative risk of thrombosis about fivefold in the heterozygous condition and tenfold to fifteenfold in the homozygous individual (Svensson et al, 1997; De Stefano et al, 1999; Castoldi & Rosing, 2010). The presence of factor V_{Leiden}, even in heterozygotes, will reduce the APC-mediated prolongation of coagulation and thereby produce a reduction of the ratio of clotting times of APC-treated plasma compared to plasma that was not treated with APC.

There are several variations of these assays, with an exogenous source of factor V–deficient plasma frequently employed to increase specificity for abnormalities attributable to a genetic abnormality of the patient's own factor V. As mentioned, a pair of clotting tests are performed: with and without the addition of APC. If the ratio of clotting time with added APC divided by clotting time in the absence of added APC is sufficiently high (in most assays >1.8 or 2.0), then APC-R or factor V_{Leiden} is excluded. Lower ratios, in contrast, suggest that the sample is APC resistant and that the patient may have factor V_{Leiden} (or another factor V variant, or possibly acquired APC resistance), which should be confirmed by genetic testing (Aparicio & Dahlback, 1996; Tripodi et al, 1997; Castoldi & Rosing, 2010). Also of potential clinical importance, however, are those cases of acquired APC-R not associated with a genetic abnormality of the patient's factor V molecule. As shown in Figure 41-4, several abnormalities may affect regulation of the coagulation pathways and may additionally exert a prothrombotic influence by virtue of increasing APC-R (Cumming et al, 1995; Graf et al, 2003; Castoldi & Rosing, 2010). Detection of such forms of APC-R will be more frequent when assays are employed that do not include the addition of exogenous factor V–deficient plasma.

PROTHROMBIN g20210a

This polymorphism in the prothrombin gene at base pair number 20210 results in a guanine-to-adenine substitution in the 3′-untranslated region of the gene (Colucci et al, 2004). Heterozygosity for this polymorphism imparts approximately a threefold greater risk for venous thrombosis (Eikelboom et al, 1999). Heterozygous individuals characteristically have levels of plasma prothrombin approximately 15% to 30% higher than those in individuals lacking this polymorphism, although even these higher levels usually fall within the established reference interval for prothrombin activity of most laboratories. Accordingly, molecular diagnostic procedures are required for the diagnosis of prothrombin 20210 (Poort et al, 1996; Gruenewald et al, 2000). Prothrombin 20210 is a common genetic risk factor for venous thrombosis in populations of European descent (about 3%), with lower prevalence in non-European populations (De Stefano et al, 1999).

ELEVATION OF OTHER COAGULATION FACTOR LEVELS

Elevations of several other coagulation factors have also been reported to impart an increased risk of thrombosis. As levels of factors VII, VIII, IX, XI, or fibrinogen are elevated, the relative risks for developing thrombosis are proportionately increased (1.5-fold to 6-fold) (Kannel et al, 1987; O'Donnell et al, 1997; Kyrle et al, 2000; Meijers et al, 2000). The most studied of these reported risk factors is factor VIII. Factor VIII is regulated by genetic mechanisms and additionally by physiologic mechanisms that increase the release of stored factor VIII in times of stress and exercise. Some familial elevation of factor VIII has been reported, but transiently high levels can be seen in patients with a concomitant increase in plasma von Willebrand factor level and in patients with stress due to a variety of clinical conditions (Vormittag et al, 2009). There is a stratified increase of risk, with patients having factor VIII levels of 120% to 150% reported to have a 1.5-fold to 2-fold greater risk of venous thrombosis; levels of 300% to 400% have an increased relative risk of 3-fold to 6-fold (O'Donnell et al, 1997).

TISSUE FACTOR PATHWAY INHIBITOR

Tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI) impedes the early stages of coagulation by exhibiting a high-affinity inhibition of two coagulation proteases: TF-VIIa (Girard et al, 1989; Baugh et al, 1998; Maroney et al, 2013) and

factor Xa (Girard et al, 1989; Maroney et al, 2013). Transgenic mice lacking the K1 domain of TFPI succumb to embryonic lethality from an apparent consumptive coagulopathy (Huang et al, 1997). Mice heterozygous for this TFPI mutation appear to exhibit normal growth and development, reproductive capability, and survival, but do exhibit a mild prothrombotic state in an experimental vein injury model (Maroney et al, 2008). Complete absence of TFPI has not been described in humans, suggesting that it may produce embryonic lethality. Partial TFPI deficiency might be a weak prothrombotic risk factor in humans because patients with plasma TFPI levels below 10% of the normal reference range were found to have a slightly increased risk for venous thrombosis (Dahm et al, 2003) and an increased risk for the development of coronary artery disease (Morange et al, 2004). Also, oral estrogen therapy reduces total plasma TFPI concentration and activity in humans by about 25% (Harris et al, 1999) and may be contribute to estrogen-associated thrombosis.

DYSFIBRINOGENEMIA

There are few published reports of abnormalities associated with increased risk of thrombosis due to dysfunctional fibrinogen molecules (Haverkate & Samama, 1995; de Moerloose et al, 2010). A recent study that evaluated 101 patients with congenital dysfibrinogenemia concluded that these patients, in addition to their relatives, are not only at a higher risk for major bleeding, including postpartum hemorrhage, but also for a thrombotic event (Casini et al, 2015). The incidence of recognized cases of dysfibrinogenemia in familial thrombosis is about 0.8%. Presently, the assays commonly employed to assess fibrinogen are functional assays of clottability and antigenic assays. As discussed in Chapter 39, an imbalance in the ratio of such assays provides an indication of a decrease-of-function dysfibrinogenemia. Subtleties in the ability of fibrinogen—and, perhaps more important, of the resulting fibrin—to bind proteins having an influence on the balance of hemostasis and thrombosis (e.g., tissue plasminogen activator) are not detected by such assays. Accordingly, it is possible that the frequency by which dysfibrinogenemias underlie thrombotic events may be higher than is presently recognized.

ANNEXIN A5

Annexin A5 (AnxA5) is a natural anticoagulant, with a high affinity for anionic phospholipids (Funakoshi et al, 1987; Tait et al, 1988), that inhibits the binding and activation of coagulation factors (Tait et al, 1988; Andree et al, 1992; Reviakine et al, 1998). AnxA5 is expressed on trophoblasts and vascular endothelial cells, as well as other cells that have a barrier function, and is therefore in an ideal anatomic location to play a role in thromboresistance. In solution, AnxA5 is monomeric but spontaneously forms tightly bound trimers after interacting with artificial/cell phospholipid membranes (van Genderen et al, 2008). Crystallographic and solution studies indicate that Arg^{23} is a major determinant in the binding of AnxA5 to phospholipids, specifically participating in the formation of a salt bridge, which is key for trimer formation (Arg^{23}, Lys^{27}, and Arg^{149}) on the membrane surface (Mo et al, 2003). The anticoagulant effects of AnxA5 stem from this ability to form two-dimensional crystals on the surface of the phospholipid membranes that form a protective shield against the binding of coagulation enzymes, thereby inhibiting phospholipid-dependent coagulation reactions.

Although transgenic AnxA5 null mice have been shown to have fetal loss and impaired placental function (Ueki et al, 2012), the clinical correlation to human pregnancy–related morbidity has been inconclusive (Gris et al, 2000; Arnold et al, 2001; Nojima et al, 2001). A recent study by de Jong and colleagues (de Jong et al, 2015) showed no association between AnxA5 genetic variants and the development of deep vein thrombosis (DVT). However, non-M2 carriers (functional AnxA5 promoter activity), including haplotypes H1 and H2, are associated with different AnxA5 concentrations in healthy controls (Hiddink et al, 2012). Although the data regarding the association between plasma concentrations of AnxA5 and DVT are lacking, the differentiation among the non-M2 control group with respect to AnxA5 concentration may be of clinical importance. For example, these differences could play a role in recurrent pregnancy loss in which the clinical features are related to AnxA5 concentration (Rand et al, 2006). On the other hand, antibodies to phospholipids, as are typically found in patients with antiphospholipid syndrome, were shown to interfere with the protective effects of AnxA5 by promoting the competitive binding of anti-β2-glycoprotein I (β2GPI) immune complexes that interfered with ordered crystallization of the shield and exposed anionic phospholipids leading to thrombus formation (Rand et al, 2008). Further work is still needed to elucidate the role of AnxA5 in pregnancy and thrombosis.

HYPOFIBRINOLYTIC MECHANISMS

Impaired function of the fibrinolytic system increases the risk of thrombosis, but there remains a need for robust global clinical assays that allow estimation of the degree of that risk (Collen, 1999; Meltzer et al, 2009). The euglobulin clot lysis time provides a measure of some aspects of the fibrinolytic system (Sartori et al, 2003). In brief, citrated plasma is diluted and acidified, resulting in the selective precipitation of many proteins that include fibrinogen, plasminogen activator, and plasminogen, whereas other molecules, including α_2-antiplasmin, remain in solution. This precipitated euglobulin fraction is then redissolved in appropriate buffer and clotted by thrombin, and the time to clot lysis is measured. An abnormal rate of euglobulin clot lysis helps to direct the subsequent laboratory evaluation to an underlying abnormality of a critical component of the fibrinolytic system. Such a result adds support to the decision to proceed to more detailed testing of the fibrinolytic system, such as specific assays for plasminogen activator, plasminogen, and other proteins upregulating or downregulating fibrinolysis (Meltzer et al, 2009). In many cases the euglobulin clot lysis test has been replaced by functional assays like the TEG thromboelastography (see below), which are considerably faster and simpler, though more costly.

Although a variety of defects in the fibrinolytic system might contribute to the increased risk of thrombosis, consensus has been difficult to achieve with respect to assessment through system-based assays, specific component functional assays, or molecular analysis studies with respect to the individual patient. Deficiencies of plasminogen, the zymogen precursor of plasmin—the major enzyme responsible for fibrin clot breakdown (see Chapter 39)—have been reported, but the association with increased thrombotic risk is not well founded (Schulman & Wiman, 1996). Assessment of the mechanical properties of clots throughout the period of their formation and subsequent lysis with thromboelastography or similar devices represents a different approach, which, with sufficient standardization, may permit the detection of abnormal fibrinolysis (Kamada et al, 2001; Salooja and Perry, 2001; Vig et al, 2001; Meltzer et al, 2009). These types of instruments work by detecting clot rigidity or strength during the clot formation and breakdown process (Kamada et al, 2001; Salooja & Perry, 2001; Vig et al, 2001; Meltzer et al, 2009; Kupesiz et al, 2010) and accordingly may offer the potential for real-time assessment of fibrinolytic state, which could be of particular benefit in conjunction with the monitoring of active antifibrinolytic therapy (Kupesiz et al, 2010).

ACQUIRED HYPERCOAGULABLE STATES

Numerous acquired conditions have been associated with increased risk of venous thrombosis. The relative risk for many of these has been determined and appears to combine with genetic causes to increase the overall risk for thrombosis. Common conditions that have a strong association with venous thrombosis include trauma, surgery and the postoperative state, pregnancy, immobility, obesity and diet, smoking, and previous thrombosis. Additionally, malignancy, chronic DIC, oral contraceptive use and hormone replacement use, heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, nephrotic syndrome, essential thrombocythemia, polycythemia vera, and inflammatory conditions have all been associated with increased risk of venous thrombosis. Finally, as discussed in Chapter 40, abnormalities of the enzyme ADAMTS13 have been associated with the thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura.

ANTIPHOSPHOLIPID SYNDROME AND LUPUS ANTICOAGULANT

The antiphospholipid antibody syndrome (APS), a clinical disorder characterized by recurrent arterial and venous thrombotic events, is one of the most common risk factors for thrombosis, pregnancy complications, and fetal loss (Bizzaro et al, 2005; Palomo et al, 2009; Pengo et al, 2009). Venous or arterial thrombosis may occur, with venous manifestations being more common (Eby, 2009). The syndrome is an autoimmune disorder with antibodies directed against protein–phospholipid (PL) complexes. A strong association has been noted between immunoglobulin (Ig) G antibodies directed against domain I of β2GPI and thrombotic and obstetric complications in APS. Autoantibodies directed against additional PL-binding proteins such as prothrombin or annexin A2 may also be seen, although the clinical significance of these antibodies is unclear. The binding of β2GPI to platelet plasma membranes and the subsequent interaction of anti-β2GPI involving both platelet GPIbα and a truncated splice variant of LRP-8 (a member of the low density lipoprotein-receptor family present on platelets, also known as ApoER2) may trigger platelet

activation (de Groot & Derksen, 2005; Giannakopoulos et al, 2007; de Groot et al, 2010).

The term *lupus anticoagulant* (LA), which is used to describe in vitro phospholipid-dependent inhibitors of coagulation, is misleading because the presence of an LA raises concern for clinical thrombosis rather than for clinical bleeding (hence the term *lupus anticoagulant paradox*), and most patients with LA do not have systemic lupus erythematosus. The initial studies identifying the antiphospholipid antibodies (APAs) used cardiolipin in the binding assays (anticardiolipin antibodies [ACAs]). Many of the ACAs are responsible for the false-positive results observed in Venereal Disease Research Laboratory testing for syphilis. In turn, many infections and autoimmune diseases and a variety of medications are associated with a positive ACA (McCrae et al, 2001; Galli et al, 2003; Riboldi et al, 2003).

In a number of studies, abnormal LA or elevated ACA have been reported to occur in 1% to 5% of an asymptomatic general population, with many of these being transitory (Biggioggero & Meroni, 2010). Patients who maintain a persistent LA together with high titers of anti-β2GPI show the highest correlation with thrombosis (de Laat et al, 2009). The combination of anti-β2GPI, ACA, and LA test positivity has the highest association with recurrent venous thromboembolism (Pengo et al, 2006).

The mechanisms by which APA affect coagulation and hemostasis are probably multifactorial owing to the diversity of PL-associated proteins. Reports on the in vivo mechanism for hypercoagulability include interference with AnxA5 anticoagulant activity, interference with TFPI, down-regulation of TM, interference with protein S, platelet activation, and endothelial perturbation. In particular, platelet-associated binding of antibodies against β2GPI may cause platelet activation (see earlier). Recommendations for standardizing LA assays have been offered (Pengo et al, 2010b). Although there is no uniform approach for in vitro diagnosis of LA, it is clear that because of the heterogeneity of these antibodies, the presence of an LA cannot be excluded by simply failing to detect it in any single assay. Most commonly, the aPTT and the dilute Russell viper venom time (dRVVT) are employed. Because these assays recognize different aspects of PL-dependent coagulation reactions, the combination is best for detecting LA. In the dRVVT test, the coagulation cascade is initiated later than in the aPTT, with direct factor X activation by the venom in a PL-dependent fashion.

The various aPTT reagents have different sensitivities to LAs. The clotting time of plasma from LA patients is prolonged in these assays. When mixed with equal parts of normal pooled plasma, the plasma from LA patients will prolong the clotting time of the mixture beyond the clotting time of the normal control plasma itself. Whereas specific factor inhibitors, such as those directed against factor VIII, are typically time- and temperature-dependent (see Chapter 39), LAs more commonly are immediate-acting even at room temperature. It is important to note that LAs may artifactually interfere with quantitative measurement of coagulation factors assayed in an aPTT-based system, leading to misdiagnosis of factor deficiencies. A telltale pattern that should itself arouse suspicion of an LA is a persisting increase in apparent factor activity, with increasing dilutions of patient plasma used in the assay: Such apparent increases in factor activity, also known as "nonparallelism" or "crossing lines," result from decreased interference by progressive dilutions of LA.

Preincubation of LA plasma with an excess quantity of PL will neutralize the LA and result in significant shortening of a subsequently performed clotting time compared to plasmas that do not have the excess PL added. Sources of neutralizing PL that have been used for this purpose include purified PLs, purified hexagonal phase PLs, and complex PLs derived from frozen and thawed washed platelets (platelet neutralization procedure [PNP]) (Favaloro & Wong, 2008, 2009).

International consensus statements on investigational criteria for APS (Miyakis et al, 2006; Favaloro & Wong, 2009) combine the clinical criteria of vascular thrombosis and pregnancy complications with laboratory criteria. These laboratory criteria include a positive LA, an ACA of IgG or IgM of greater than 40 IU, and medium- or high-titer IgG or IgM anti–β2GPI antibodies. To establish the diagnosis, the tests should be abnormal when repeated at least 12 weeks apart before a diagnosis of APA is made. The clinical course of high-risk patients diagnosed with APS reveals an extensive increase in recurrence of thrombosis, which can be markedly reduced by adequate anticoagulation (Pengo et al, 2010b). Current approaches deriving from recommendations by the International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis related to the diagnosis of APS are shown in Box 41-1. Important considerations in implementing such an approach include (1) processing to ensure that the specimen is platelet-poor; (2) choosing two tests, such as the dRVVT or a silica-activated aPTT with low PL content; (3) eliminating the influence of anticoagulants in mixing studies; (4) correcting prolonged clotting time in the presence of excess PL; and (5) ensuring that specific comments on the laboratory's reference ranges and interpretations accompany the LA profile and the ACA and β2GPI antibody assays (Ledford-Kraemer, 2008; Pengo et al, 2009; Pengo et al, 2010a).

BOX 41-1

Laboratory Detection of Lupus Anticoagulants (LAs)

A. Blood collection
   1. Blood should be collected before the start of any anticoagulant drug regimen or a sufficient period after its discontinuation.
   2. Fresh venous blood in 0.109 M sodium citrate (ratio 9:1)
   3. Double centrifugation removes residual platelets.
   4. Quickly frozen plasma required if LA assays are postponed.
   5. Frozen plasma must be thawed at 37° C.

B. Initial testing
   1. Use two separate screening tests based on different principles, each with a *low level of phospholipid (PL):*
      a. Dilute Russell viper venom time (dRVVT)
      b. LA-sensitive activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) (preferably with silica activator)
   2. Exclude the presence of heparin, LMW heparin, direct thrombin inhibitors, or factor Xa inhibitors.
      a. Indirect (heparin) and direct thrombin inhibitors should be suspected from prolongation of the thrombin time.
   3. Results of screening tests are potentially suggestive of LA when their clotting times are longer than the local cutoff value.*

C. Mixing studies for prolonged LA-sensitive APTT or dRVVT
   1. Pooled normal plasma (PNP) for mixing studies should ideally be prepared in-house. Alternatively, adequate commercial frozen or lyophilized PNP can be used.
   2. Plasma with prolonged screening values should be mixed as 1 part patient plasma with 1 part PNP and reassayed without incubation (i.e., <30 minutes after mixing).
   3. Results of mixing tests are suggestive of LA when their clotting times are longer than the local cutoff value.†

D. Confirmatory tests for prolonged APTT or dRVVT
   1. Confirmatory tests are performed by increasing the PL concentration beyond that used in the screening tests.
   2. Bilayer or hexagonal (II) phase PL should be used to increase the concentration of PL.
   3. Results are confirmatory of LA if the % correction is above the local cutoff value.‡

E. A report with an explanation of the results should be given.§

Adapted from Pengo V, Tripodi A, Reber G, et al: Update of the guidelines for lupus anticoagulant detection. Subcommittee on Lupus Anticoagulant/Antiphospholipid Antibody of the Scientific and Standardisation Committee of the International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis, *J Thromb Haemost* 7:1737–1740, 2009.

APTT, Activated partial thromboplastin time; *LMW,* low molecular weight.

*The cutoff value is the 99th percentile of the distribution of clotting times performed on plasmas from healthy donors. Testing described should be performed with the *local* reagent/instrument combination on plasmas from at least 40 adult healthy donors younger than 50 years of age. Cutoff values established elsewhere should not be substituted, even if they refer to the same method and instrument.

†In the case of mixing studies, the cutoff value would be the 99th percentile of the distribution of clotting times when plasmas from healthy donors are mixed in equal parts with PNP; alternatively, the distribution may be of a derived "index of circulating anticoagulant" = $[(b - c)/a] \times 100$, where a, b, and c are the clotting times of the patient plasma, mixture, and PNP, respectively.

‡In the case of confirmatory testing, a distribution of values for "% correction" = [(screen – confirm)/screen] × 100, based upon testing of plasmas from healthy donors at low (screen) and high (confirm) PL concentrations is first obtained. A patient result above the cutoff value assigned to this distribution (e.g., above the 99th percentile) would then be considered as a positive confirmatory test. Note that the clotting time of the confirmatory test in LA-positive samples is not always shortened to within the normal range of controls. Accordingly, to avoid false-negative results, confirmatory tests are recommended to be performed in all normal controls, and these results should be used to establish the cutoff value.

§International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis (ISTH) guidelines further state, "Results should be expressed as ratio of patient-to-PNP for all procedures (screening, mixing, and confirm)."

Additional ISTH subcommittee explanations and qualifications are reported in detail in the original source of this table (Pengo et al, 2009).

OTHER COAGULATION ABNORMALITIES

Abnormalities in several other coagulation regulatory proteins and platelet proteins have been reported. However, difficulty in assessment of these proteins and lack of conclusive correlation with increased thrombotic risk have not yet established them as important risk factors for venous

thrombosis. Thrombomodulin (labeled as "TM" in Fig. 41-2) defects have been reported by several groups to have good association with thrombosis (2 to 6×). Numerous defects appear to span a large portion of the TM gene (Ohlin & Marlar, 1995; Ohlin et al, 1997), and new advances in gene sequencing technologies may simplify their recognition. Heparin cofactor II, a homologous inhibitor of antithrombin, has not been demonstrated to be associated with increased risk of thrombosis (Tollefsen, 2002). The PLA1/PLA2 polymorphism, as well as other platelet glycoprotein polymorphisms, has been of interest with respect to potential prothrombotic contributory roles (Lindoff et al, 1997; Heit et al, 2000; Robert et al, 2000; Paganin et al, 2003), with ongoing efforts to assess whether or not such variations actually achieve clinical significance (Ivanov et al, 2008; Zuern et al, 2010). Additionally, the non-O types of the ABO blood groups have been reported as increased thrombotic risk factors compared with type O, possibly owing to increased levels of von Willebrand factor and factor VIII (Wu et al, 2008). A gain of function mutation of factor IX, factor IX Padua, has recently been described that is associated with juvenile thrombophilia (Simioni et al, 2009). This mutation involves a substitution of leucine for arginine at position 338 (R338L) in the factor IX gene (factor IX-R338L) and is associated with shortened aPTT as well as markedly elevated factor IX levels.

HYPERHOMOCYSTEINEMIA

Homocysteine is an amino acid that is an intermediate molecule for the production and regulation of the sulfur-containing amino acid methionine (Guba et al, 1996; Refsum et al, 1998; Cattaneo, 2001). Perturbations, genetic or acquired, in the regulatory mechanism of this pathway can lead to elevated levels of homocysteine and to an associated increased risk of thrombosis. The most devastating of these is the cystathione-β-synthetase gene, which, in the homozygous state, leads to severe thrombosis and atherosclerosis (Mudd et al, 1985). Acquired causes mostly associated with diet and vitamin intake also are significant factors raising homocysteine levels in plasma. The associated risk for thrombosis with elevated homocysteine levels may correlate with the degree of elevation in homocysteine. Two common polymorphisms associated with the homocysteine-metabolizing enzyme, methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR), were previously thought to be associated with increased risk of thrombosis, but this hypothesis has not been sustained. More recent studies have failed to establish MTHFR as an independent risk factor for thrombosis in adults (Tosetto et al, 1997; Franco et al, 1999), although a possible relationship with childhood stroke remains less clear (Prengler et al, 2001). Accordingly, it is currently not recommended to evaluate MTHFR polymorphisms as a cause of venous thrombosis (Legnani et al, 1997; Franco et al, 1999) in adults.

Nevertheless, hyperhomocysteinemia itself is a risk factor for the development of pulmonary embolisms and DVT (den Heijer et al, 1996; 1998; Ray, 1998). Meta-analysis of case-controlled studies have reported an odds ratio of 2.5: 2.95 for venous thromboembolic disease in patients with elevated homocysteine concentration—that is, homocysteine concentrations greater than two standard deviations above the mean of the control group (den Heijer et al, 1998; Ray, 1998). Interestingly, some studies have suggested that the risk of thrombosis increases ten- to fiftyfold in patients who have both homocysteinemia and an inherited thrombophilia (for example, factor V_{Leiden}) (Ridker et al, 1997; Margaglione et al, 1998), but other studies have failed to confirm these findings (De Stefano et al, 2000). At this time, it is fair to conclude that genetic testing for MTHFR variants is unlikely to be helpful, but plasma levels of homocysteine may nevertheless be included as part of an investigation for possible thrombophilia.

GENERAL ASPECTS OF THE LABORATORY EVALUATION FOR THROMBOTIC RISK

The laboratory evaluation of thrombophilic conditions is complex, including the appropriate tests to order, on whom to perform them, and the appropriate timing for testing (Foy & Moll, 2009). Among the major issues are (1) there is currently no global test to grade the thrombotic risk status of an individual, so a series of individual tests must be ordered for assessment of risk, and (2) there is a broad range of thrombotic risk among the various thrombophilias—ranging from a very high risk associated with hereditary antithrombin deficiency to a much lower risk associated with carriership for the prothrombin g20210a variant. Several questions must be considered when evaluating patients for testing: Does the patient (and family) history justify an evaluation? Are the tests to be ordered appropriate for addressing major accepted risk factors? Is the timing appropriate to provide proper evaluation? Are there underlying therapeutic, pathologic, or physiologic conditions that interfere with interpretation of results?

Ideally, evaluations should be performed when the patient is asymptomatic, at least several months after the acute thrombotic event, and off anticoagulant therapy. Unfortunately, during the immediate postthrombotic period before anticoagulation, plasma factors are consumed, thus inviting the potential for erroneous diagnoses. Heparin significantly decreases antithrombin levels, increases protein S levels, and may mask LAs (unless a heparin-neutralizing molecule such as protamine or polybrene, or the enzyme heparinase, is included in the assay). Warfarin decreases protein C and protein S levels. Only genetic risk markers can be evaluated at any time by molecular diagnostic techniques. Attempts have been made to circumvent the test abnormalities produced by oral anticoagulation by using ratios of protein C or protein S to one or another of the vitamin K–dependent coagulation factors. However, the variability of such ratios is considerable, inviting the opportunity for misdiagnosis. Thus this approach is not recommended. An erroneous diagnosis can be made when plasma factor levels decrease during a variety of acquired conditions such as pregnancy, hormone therapy, and after surgery.

Perhaps even more than in many other areas of clinical medicine, it is of critical importance to communicate the implications of these laboratory results to the referring physician and to the patient in a manner that accurately reflects the patient's risk for thrombosis. Decisions such as whether or not to prescribe oral contraceptives, how to manage pregnancies, and whether or not to recommend long-term anticoagulant therapy are often not straightforward. In the case of inherited disorders, genetic counselors may be a helpful resource for consultation. In all such instances, knowledge not only of available testing but also of limits in interpretation of these tests will contribute greatly toward reaching the most appropriate clinical decisions.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Bertina RM, Koeleman BP, Koster T, et al: Mutation in blood coagulation factor V associated with resistance to activated protein C, *Nature* 369:64–67, 1994.
Classic paper describing Factor V_{Leiden}.

Casini A, Blondon M, Lebreton A, et al: Natural history of patients with congenital dysfibrinogenemia, *Blood* 125:553–561, 2015.
An article that looks at patients with congenital dysfibrinogenemia.

Castellino FJ, Ploplis VA: The protein C pathway and pathologic processes, *J Thromb Haemost* 7:140–145, 2009.
Review of the protein C pathway and the disease pathogenesis.

Esmon CT: Basic mechanisms and pathogenesis of venous thrombosis, *Blood Rev* 23:225–229, 2009.
Review on the pathogenesis of venous thrombosis.

Giannakopoulos B, Passam F, Ioannou Y, et al: How we diagnose the antiphospholipid syndrome, *Blood* 113:985–994, 2009.
Review of the antiphospholipid syndrome.

Pengo V, Tripodi A, Reber G, et al: Subcommittee on Lupus Anticoagulant/Antiphospholipid Antibody of the Scientific and Standardisation Committee of the International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis. Update of the guidelines for lupus anticoagulant detection, *J Thromb Haemost* 7:1737–1740, 2009.
Consensus group report on standardization of lupus anticoagulant testing.

Poort SR, Rosendaal FR, Reitsma PH, et al: A common genetic variation in the 3′-untranslated region of the prothrombin gene is associated with elevated plasma prothrombin levels and an increase in venous thrombosis, *Blood* 88:3698–3703, 1996.
Classic paper describing prothrombin gene variant associated with elevated thrombotic risk.

ten Kate MK, van der Meer J: Protein S deficiency: A clinical perspective, *Haemophilia* 14:1222–1228, 2008.
A review that describes protein S deficiency.

REFERENCES

Adcock DM, Fink L, Marlar RA: A laboratory approach to the evaluation of hereditary hypercoagulability, *Am J Clin Pathol* 108:434–449, 1997.

Andree HA, Stuart MC, Hermens WT, et al: Clustering of lipid-bound annexin V may explain its anticoagulant effect, *J Biol Chem* 267:17907–17912, 1992.

Aparicio C, Dahlback B: Molecular mechanisms of activated protein C resistance. Properties of factor V isolated from an individual with homozygosity for the Arg506 to Gln mutation in the factor V gene, *Biochem J* 313:467–472, 1996.

Arnold J, Holmes Z, Pickering W, et al: Anti-beta 2 glycoprotein 1 and anti-annexin V antibodies in women with recurrent miscarriage, *Br J Haematol* 113:911–914, 2001.

Asakura H, Ontachi Y, Mizutani T, et al: Decreased plasma activity of antithrombin or protein C is not due to consumption coagulopathy in septic patients with disseminated intravascular coagulation, *Eur J Haematol* 67:170–175, 2001.

Baugh RJ, Broze GJ Jr, Krishnaswamy S: Regulation of extrinsic pathway factor Xa formation by tissue factor pathway inhibitor, *J Biol Chem* 273:4378–4386, 1998.

Biggioggero M, Meroni PL: The geoepidemiology of the antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, *Autoimmun Rev* 9:A299–A304, 2010.

Bizzaro N, Tonutti E, Villalta D, et al: Prevalence and clinical correlation of anti-phospholipid-binding protein antibodies in anticardiolipin-negative patients with systemic lupus erythematosus and women with unexplained recurrent miscarriages, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 129:61–68, 2005.

Bloemenkamp KW, Helmerhorst FM, Rosendaal FR, et al: Thrombophilias and gynaecology, *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol* 17:509–528, 2003.

Brouwer JL, Veeger NJ, van der Schaaf W, et al: Difference in absolute risk of venous and arterial thrombosis between familial protein S deficiency type I and type III. Results from a family cohort study to assess the clinical impact of a laboratory test-based classification, *Br J Haematol* 128:703–710, 2005.

Castoldi E, Rosing J: APC resistance: Biological basis and acquired influences, *J Thromb Haemost* 8:445–453, 2010.

Cattaneo M: Hyperhomocysteinemia and thrombosis, *Lipids* 36:S13–S26, 2001.

Cerneca F, Ricci G, Simeone R, et al: Coagulation and fibrinolysis changes in normal pregnancy. Increased levels of procoagulants and reduced levels of inhibitors during pregnancy induce a hypercoagulable state, combined with a reactive fibrinolysis, *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 73:31–36, 1997.

Collen D: The plasminogen (fibrinolytic) system, *Thromb Haemost* 82:259–270, 1999.

Colucci M, Binetti BM, Tripodi A, et al: Hyperprothrombinemia associated with prothrombin G20210A mutation inhibits plasma fibrinolysis through a TAFI-mediated mechanism, *Blood* 103:2157–2161, 2004.

Comp PC, Thurnau GR, Welsh J, et al: Functional and immunologic protein S levels are decreased during pregnancy, *Blood* 68:881–885, 1986.

Crawley JT, Lane DA: The haemostatic role of tissue factor pathway inhibitor, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 28:233–242, 2008.

Cumming AM, Tait RC, Fildes S, et al: Development of resistance to activated protein C during pregnancy, *Br J Haematol* 90:725–727, 1995.

Dahlback B: Activated protein C resistance and thrombosis: Molecular mechanisms of hypercoagulable state due to FVR506Q mutation, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 25:273–289, 1999.

Dahm A, Van Hylckama Vlieg A, Bendz B, et al: Low levels of tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI) increase the risk of venous thrombosis, *Blood* 101:4387–4392, 2003.

de Groot PG, Derksen RH: Pathophysiology of the antiphospholipid syndrome, *J Thromb Haemost* 3:1854–1860, 2005.

de Groot PG, Derksen RH, Urbanus RT: The role of LRP8 (ApoER2') in the pathophysiology of the antiphospholipid syndrome, *Lupus* 19:389–393, 2010.

de Jong PG, Hiddink L, Meijers JC, et al: No association between Annexin A5 genetic variants and deep venous thrombosis, *Br J Haematol* 169:301–304, 2015.

de Laat B, Pengo V, Pabinger I, et al: The association between circulating antibodies against domain I of beta2-glycoprotein I and thrombosis: An international multicenter study, *J Thromb Haemost* 7:1767–1773, 2009.

de Moerloose P, Boehlen F, Neerman-Arbez M: Fibrinogen and the risk of thrombosis, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 36:7–17, 2010.

De Stefano V, Casorelli I, Rossi E, et al: Interaction between hyperhomocysteinemia and inherited thrombophilic factors in venous thromboembolism, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 26:305–311, 2000.

De Stefano V, Finazzi G, Mannucci PM: Inherited thrombophilia: Pathogenesis, clinical syndromes, and management, *Blood* 87:3531–3544, 1996.

De Stefano V, Martinelli I, Mannucci PM, et al: The risk of recurrent deep venous thrombosis among heterozygous carriers of both factor V Leiden and the G20210A prothrombin mutation, *N Engl J Med* 341:801–806, 1999.

den Heijer M, Koster T, Blom HJ, et al: Hyperhomocysteinemia as a risk factor for deep-vein thrombosis, *N Engl J Med* 334:759–762, 1996.

den Heijer M, Rosendaal FR, Blom HJ, et al: Hyperhomocysteinemia and venous thrombosis: A meta-analysis, *Thromb Haemost* 80:874–877, 1998.

Eby C: Antiphospholipid syndrome review, *Clin Lab Med* 29:305–319, 2009.

Egeberg O: Inherited antithrombin deficiency causing thrombophilia, *Thromb Diath Haemorrh* 13:516–530, 1965.

Eikelboom JW, Ivey L, Ivey J, et al: Familial thrombophilia and the prothrombin 20210A mutation: Association with increased thrombin generation and unusual thrombosis, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 10:1–5, 1999.

Esmon CT: Inflammation and thrombosis, *J Thromb Haemost* 1:1343–1348, 2003a.

Esmon CT: The protein C pathway, *Chest* 124:26S–32S, 2003b.

Esmon CT: Structure and functions of the endothelial cell protein C receptor, *Crit Care Med* 32:S298–S301, 2004.

Faioni EM, Franchi F, Asti D, et al: Resistance to activated protein C in nine thrombophilic families: Interference in a protein S functional assay, *Thromb Haemost* 70:1067–1071, 1993.

Favaloro EJ, Wong RC: Antiphospholipid antibodies and the antiphospholipid syndrome II: Limitations, standardization, and clinical utility of laboratory testing, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 34:309–312, 2008.

Favaloro EJ, Wong RC: Current clinical and laboratory practice for the investigation of the antiphospholipid syndrome: Findings from the 2008 Australasian antiphospholipid antibody survey, *Pathology* 41:666–675, 2009.

Foy P, Moll S: Thrombophilia: 2009 update, *Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med* 11:114–128, 2009.

Franco RF, Morelli V, Lourenco D, et al: A second mutation in the methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase gene and the risk of venous thrombotic disease, *Br J Haematol* 105:556–559, 1999.

Funakoshi T, Heimark RL, Hendrickson LE, et al: Human placental anticoagulant protein: Isolation and characterization, *Biochemistry* 26:5572–5578, 1987.

Galli M, Luciani D, Bertolini G, et al: Lupus anticoagulants are stronger risk factors for thrombosis than anticardiolipin antibodies in the antiphospholipid syndrome: A systematic review of the literature, *Blood* 101:1827–1832, 2003.

Giannakopoulos B, Passam F, Rahgozar S, et al: Current concepts on the pathogenesis of the antiphospholipid syndrome, *Blood* 109:422–430, 2007.

Girard TJ, Warren LA, Novotny WF, et al: Functional significance of the Kunitz-type inhibitory domains of lipoprotein-associated coagulation inhibitor, *Nature* 338:518–520, 1989.

Goldenberg NA, Manco-Johnson MJ: Protein C deficiency, *Haemophilia* 14:1214–1221, 2008.

Goodwin AJ, Rosendaal FR, Kottke-Marchant K, et al: A review of the technical, diagnostic, and epidemiologic considerations for protein S assays, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 126:1349–1366, 2002.

Graf LL, Welsh CH, Qamar Z, et al: Activated protein C resistance assay detects thrombotic risk factors other than factor V Leiden, *Am J Clin Pathol* 119:52–60, 2003.

Gris JC, Quere I, Sanmarco M, et al: Antiphospholipid and antiprotein syndromes in non-thrombotic, non-autoimmune women with unexplained recurrent primary early foetal loss. The Nimes Obstetricians and Haematologists Study—NOHA, *Thromb Haemost* 84:228–236, 2000.

Gruenewald M, Germowitz A, Beneke H, et al: Coagulation factor II activity determination is not useful as a screening tool for the G20210A prothrombin gene allele, *Thromb Haemost* 84:141–142, 2000.

Guba SC, Fink LM, Fonseca V: Hyperhomocysteinemia. An emerging and important risk factor for thromboembolic and cardiovascular disease, *Am J Clin Pathol* 106:709–722, 1996.

Hackeng TM, van't Veer C, Meijers JC, et al: Human protein S inhibits prothrombinase complex activity on endothelial cells and platelets via direct interactions with factors Va and Xa, *J Biol Chem* 269:21051–21058, 1994.

Harris GM, Stendt CL, Vollenhoven BJ, et al: Decreased plasma tissue factor pathway inhibitor in women taking combined oral contraceptives, *Am J Hematol* 60:175–180, 1999.

Haverkate F, Samama M: Familial dysfibrinogenemia and thrombophilia. Report on a study of the SSC Subcommittee on Fibrinogen, *Thromb Haemost* 73:151–161, 1995.

Heijmans BT, Westendorp RG, Knook DL, et al: The risk of mortality and the factor V Leiden mutation in a population-based cohort, *Thromb Haemost* 80:607–609, 1998.

Heit JA, Mohr DN, Silverstein MD, et al: Predictors of recurrence after deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism: A population-based cohort study, *Arch Intern Med* 160:761–768, 2000.

Hiddink L, de Visser MC, van Heerde WL: Polymorphisms in the Annexin A5 gene influence circulating Annexin A5 levels in healthy controls, *Thromb Res* 129:815–817, 2012.

Huang ZF, Higuchi D, Lasky N, et al: Tissue factor pathway inhibitor gene disruption produces intrauterine lethality in mice, *Blood* 90:944–951, 1997.

Ivanov P, Komsa-Penkova R, Kovacheva K, et al: Impact of thrombophilic genetic factors on pulmonary embolism: Early onset and recurrent incidences, *Lung* 186:27–36, 2008.

Kamada Y, Yamakage M, Niiya T, et al: Celite-activated viscometer Sonoclot can measure the suppressive effect of tranexamic acid on hyperfibrinolysis in cardiac surgery, *J Anesth* 15:17–21, 2001.

Kannel WB, Wolf PA, Castelli WP, et al: Fibrinogen and risk of cardiovascular disease. The Framingham Study, *JAMA* 258:1183–1186, 1987.

Kuhle S, Lane DA, Jochmanns K, et al: Homozygous antithrombin deficiency type II (99 Leu to Phe mutation) and childhood thromboembolism, *Thromb Haemost* 86:1007–1011, 2001.

Kupesiz A, Rajpurkar M, Warrier I, et al: Tissue plasminogen activator induced fibrinolysis: Standardization of method using thromboelastography, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 21:320–324, 2010.

Kyrle PA, Minar E, Hirschl M, et al: High plasma levels of factor VIII and the risk of recurrent venous thromboembolism, *N Engl J Med* 343:457–462, 2000.

Lane DA, Bayston T, Olds RJ, et al: Antithrombin mutation database: 2nd (1997) update. For the Plasma Coagulation Inhibitors Subcommittee of the Scientific and Standardization Committee of the International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis, *Thromb Haemost* 77:197–211, 1997.

Lane DA, Mannucci PM, Bauer KA, et al: Inherited thrombophilia: Part 1, *Thromb Haemost* 76:651–662, 1996.

Ledford-Kraemer MR: Laboratory testing for lupus anticoagulants: Pre-examination variables, mixing studies, and diagnostic criteria, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 34:380–388, 2008.

Legnani C, Palareti G, Grauso F, et al: Hyperhomocyst(e)inemia and a common methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase mutation (Ala223Val MTHFR) in patients with inherited thrombophilic coagulation defects, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 17:2924–2929, 1997.

Libourel EJ, Bank I, Veeger NJ, et al: Protein S type III deficiency is no risk factor for venous and arterial thromboembolism in 168 thrombophilic families: A retrospective study, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 16:135–140, 2005.

Lindoff C, Ingemarsson I, Martinsson G, et al: Pre-eclampsia is associated with a reduced response to activated protein C, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 176:457–460, 1997.

Mackie IJ, Piegsa K, Furs SA, et al: Protein S levels are lower in women receiving desogestrel-containing combined oral contraceptives (COCs) than in women receiving levonorgestrel-containing COCs at steady

state and on cross-over, *Br J Haematol* 113:898–904, 2001.
Madden RM, Levin EG, Marlar RA: Thrombin and the thrombin-thrombomodulin complex interaction with plasminogen activator inhibitor type-1, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 2:471–476, 1991.
Margaglione M, D'Andrea G, d'Addedda M, et al: The methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase TT677 genotype is associated with venous thrombosis independently of the coexistence of the FV Leiden and the prothrombin A20210 mutation, *Thromb Haemost* 79:907–911, 1998.
Marlar RA, Adcock DM, Madden RM: Hereditary dysfunctional protein C molecules (type II): Assay characterization and proposed classification, *Thromb Haemost* 63:375–379, 1990.
Marlar RA, Mastovich S: Hereditary protein C deficiency: A review of the genetics, clinical presentation, diagnosis and treatment, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 1:319–330, 1990.
Maroney SA, Cooley BC, Sood R, et al: Combined tissue factor pathway inhibitor and thrombomodulin deficiency produces an augmented hypercoagulable state with tissue-specific fibrin deposition, *J Thromb Haemost* 6:111–117, 2008.
Maroney SA, Ellery PE, Wood JP, et al: Comparison of the inhibitory activities of human tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI)alpha and TFPIbeta, *J Thromb Haemost* 11:911–918, 2013.
McCrae KR, Feinstein DI, Cines DB: Antiphospholipid antibodies and antiphospholipid syndrome. In Hirsh J, Colman W, Marder VJ, et al, editors: *Haemostasis and thrombosis*, Philadelphia, 2001, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
Meijers JC, Tekelenburg WL, Bouma BN, et al: High levels of coagulation factor XI as a risk factor for venous thrombosis, *N Engl J Med* 342:696–701, 2000.
Meltzer ME, Doggen CJ, de Groot PG, et al: The impact of the fibrinolytic system on the risk of venous and arterial thrombosis, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 35:468–477, 2009.
Meltzer ME, Lisman T, de Groot PG, et al: Venous thrombosis risk associated with plasma hypofibrinolysis is explained by elevated plasma levels of TAFI and PAI-1, *Blood* 116:113–121, 2010.
Miletich J, Sherman L, Broze G Jr: Absence of thrombosis in subjects with heterozygous protein C deficiency, *N Engl J Med* 317:991–996, 1987.
Miyakis S, Lockshin MD, Atsumi T, et al: International consensus statement on an update of the classification criteria for definite antiphospholipid syndrome (APS), *J Thromb Haemost* 4:295–306, 2006.
Mo Y, Campos B, Mealy TR, et al: Interfacial basic cluster in annexin V couples phospholipid binding and trimer formation on membrane surfaces, *J Biol Chem* 278:2437–2443, 2003.
Moll S: Warfarin-induced skin necrosis, *Br J Haematol* 126:628, 2004.
Morange PE, Simon C, Alessi MC, et al: Endothelial cell markers and the risk of coronary heart disease: The Prospective Epidemiological Study of Myocardial Infarction (PRIME) study, *Circulation* 109:1343–1348, 2004.
Mudd SH, Skovby F, Levy HL, et al: The natural history of homocysteinuria due to cystathionine beta-synthase deficiency, *Am J Hum Genet* 37:1–31, 1985.
Nelson RM, Long GL: Binding of protein S to C4b-binding protein. Mutagenesis of protein S, *J Biol Chem* 267:8140–8145, 1992.
Nojima J, Kuratsune H, Suehisa E, et al: Association between the prevalence of antibodies to beta(2)-glycoprotein I, prothrombin, protein C, protein S, and annexin V in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus and thrombotic and thrombocytopenic complications, *Clin Chem* 47:1008–1015, 2001.
O'Donnell J, Tuddenham EG, Manning R, et al: High prevalence of elevated factor VIII levels in patients referred for thrombophilia screening: Role of increased synthesis and relationship to the acute phase reaction, *Thromb Haemost* 77:825–828, 1997.
Ohlin AK, Marlar RA: The first mutation identified in the thrombomodulin gene in a 45-year-old man presenting with thromboembolic disease, *Blood* 85:330–336, 1995.
Ohlin AK, Norlund L, Marlar RA: Thrombomodulin gene variations and thromboembolic disease, *Thromb Haemost* 78:396–400, 1997.
Paganin F, Bourde A, Yvin JL, et al: Venous thromboembolism in passengers following a 12-h flight: A case-control study, *Aviat Space Environ Med* 74:1277–1280, 2003.
Palomo I, Segovia F, Ortega C, et al: Antiphospholipid syndrome: A comprehensive review of a complex and multisystemic disease, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 27:668–677, 2009.
Patnaik MM, Moll S: Inherited antithrombin deficiency: A review, *Haemophilia* 14:1229–1239, 2008.
Pengo V, Banzato A, Bison E, et al: Antiphospholipid syndrome: Critical analysis of the diagnostic path, *Lupus* 19:428–431, 2010a.
Pengo V, Ruffatti A, Iliceto S: The diagnosis of the antiphospholipid syndrome, *Pathophysiol Haemost Thromb* 35:175–180, 2006.
Pengo V, Ruffatti A, Legnani C, et al: Clinical course of high-risk patients diagnosed with antiphospholipid syndrome, *J Thromb Haemost* 8:237–242, 2010b.
Persson KE, Dahlback B, Hillarp A: Diagnosing protein S deficiency: Analytical considerations, *Clin Lab* 49:103–110, 2003.
Preda L, Tripodi A, Valsecchi C, et al: A prothrombin time-based functional assay of protein S, *Thromb Res* 60:19–32, 1990.
Prengler M, Sturt N, Krywawych S, et al: Homozygous thermolabile variant of the methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase gene: A potential risk factor for hyperhomocysteinaemia, CVD, and stroke in childhood, *Dev Med Child Neurol* 43:220–225, 2001.
Rand JH, Arslan AA, Wu XX, et al: Reduction of circulating annexin A5 levels and resistance to annexin A5 anticoagulant activity in women with recurrent spontaneous pregnancy losses, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 194:182–188, 2006.
Rand JH, Wu XX, Quinn AS, et al: Resistance to annexin A5 anticoagulant activity: A thrombogenic mechanism for the antiphospholipid syndrome, *Lupus* 17:922–930, 2008.
Ray JG: Meta-analysis of hyperhomocysteinemia as a risk factor for venous thromboembolic disease, *Arch Intern Med* 158:2101–2106, 1998.
Refsum H, Ueland PM, Nygard O, et al: Homocysteine and cardiovascular disease, *Annu Rev Med* 49:31–62, 1998.
Reviakine II, Bergsma-Schutter W, Brisson A: Growth of protein 2-D crystals on supported planar lipid bilayers imaged in situ by AFM, *J Struct Biol* 121:356–361, 1998.
Rezende SM, Simmonds RE, Lane DA: Coagulation, inflammation, and apoptosis: Different roles for protein S and the protein S-C4b binding protein complex, *Blood* 103:1192–1201, 2004.
Riboldi P, Gerosa M, Raschi E, et al: Endothelium as a target for antiphospholipid antibodies, *Immunobiology* 207:29–36, 2003.
Ridker PM, Hennekens CH, Selhub J, et al: Interrelation of hyperhomocyst(e)inemia, factor V Leiden, and risk of future venous thromboembolism, *Circulation* 95:1777–1782, 1997.
Ridker PM, Miletich JP, Stampfer MJ, et al: Factor V Leiden and risks of recurrent idiopathic venous thromboembolism, *Circulation* 92:2800–2802, 1995.
Rigby AC, Grant MA, Protein S: A conduit between anticoagulation and inflammation, *Crit Care Med* 32:S336–S341, 2004.
Robert A, Aillaud MF, Eschwege V, et al: ABO blood group and risk of venous thrombosis in heterozygous carriers of factor V Leiden, *Thromb Haemost* 83:630–631, 2000.
Rosendaal FR: Venous thrombosis: A multicausal disease, *Lancet* 353:1167–1173, 1999.
Salooja N, Perry DJ: Thrombelastography, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 12:327–337, 2001.
Sartori MT, Saggiorato G, Spiezia L, et al: Influence of the Alu-repeat I/D polymorphism in t-PA gene intron 8 on the stimulated t-PA release after venous occlusion, *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost* 9:63–69, 2003.
Schulman S, Wiman B: The significance of hypofibrinolysis for the risk of recurrence of venous thromboembolism. Duration of Anticoagulation (DURAC) Trial Study Group, *Thromb Haemost* 75:607–611, 1996.
Simioni P, Tormene D, Tognin G, et al: X-linked thrombophilia with a mutant factor IX (factor IX Padua), *N Engl J Med* 361:1671–1675, 2009.
Simmonds RE, Ireland H, Lane DA, et al: Clarification of the risk for venous thrombosis associated with hereditary protein S deficiency by investigation of a large kindred with a characterized gene defect, *Ann Intern Med* 128:8–14, 1998.
Smithies MN, Weaver CB: Role of the tissue factor pathway in the pathogenesis and management of multiple organ failure, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 15:S11–S20, 2004.
Stassen JM, Arnout J, Deckmyn H: The hemostatic system, *Curr Med Chem* 11:2245–2260, 2004.
Stearns-Kurosawa DJ, Kurosawa S, Mollica JS, et al: The endothelial cell protein C receptor augments protein C activation by the thrombin-thrombomodulin complex, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 93:10212–10216, 1996.
Streif W, Mitchell LG, Andrew M: Antithrombotic therapy in children, *Curr Opin Pediatr* 11:56–64, 1999.
Svensson PJ, Zoller B, Dahlback B: Evaluation of original and modified APC-resistance tests in unselected outpatients with clinically suspected thrombosis and in healthy controls, *Thromb Haemost* 77:332–335, 1997.
Tai CY, Ierardi R, Alexander JB: A case of warfarin skin necrosis despite enoxaparin anticoagulation in a patient with protein S deficiency, *Ann Vasc Surg* 18:237–242, 2004.
Tait JF, Sakata M, McMullen BA, et al: Placental anticoagulant proteins: Isolation and comparative characterization four members of the lipocortin family, *Biochemistry* 27:6268–6276, 1988.
Tollefsen DM: Heparin cofactor II deficiency, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 126:1394–1400, 2002.
Tosetto A, Missiaglia E, Frezzato M, et al: The VITA project: C677T mutation in the methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase gene and risk of venous thromboembolism, *Br J Haematol* 97:804–806, 1997.
Tripodi A, Negri B, Bertina RM, et al: Screening for the FV:Q506 mutation—Evaluation of thirteen plasma-based methods for their diagnostic efficacy in comparison with DNA analysis, *Thromb Haemost* 77:436–439, 1997.
Ueki H, Mizushina T, Laoharatchatathanin T, et al: Loss of maternal annexin A5 increases the likelihood of placental platelet thrombosis and foetal loss, *Sci Rep* 2:827, 2012.
Van de Wouwer M, Collen D, Conway EM: Thrombomodulin-protein C-EPCR system: Integrated to regulate coagulation and inflammation, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 24:1374–1383, 2004.
van Genderen HO, Kenis H, Hofstra L, et al: Extracellular annexin A5: Functions of phosphatidylserine-binding and two-dimensional crystallization, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1783:953–963, 2008.
van Wijnen M, Stam JG, van't Veer C, et al: The interaction of protein S with the phospholipid surface is essential for the activated protein C-independent activity of protein S, *Thromb Haemost* 76:397–403, 1996.
Vig S, Chitolie A, Bevan DH, et al: Thromboelastography: A reliable test?, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 12:555–561, 2001.
Vormittag R, Simanek R, Ay C, et al: High factor VIII levels independently predict venous thromboembolism in cancer patients: The cancer and thrombosis study, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 29:2176–2181, 2009.
Wolf M, Boyer-Neumann C, Martinoli JL, et al: A new functional assay for human protein S activity using activated factor V as substrate, *Thromb Haemost* 62:1144–1145, 1989.
Wu O, Bayoumi N, Vickers MA, et al: ABO(H) blood groups and vascular disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis, *J Thromb Haemost* 6:62–69, 2008.
Zuern CS, Geisler T, Lutilsky N, et al: Effect of comedication with proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) on post-interventional residual platelet aggregation in patients undergoing coronary stenting treated by dual antiplatelet therapy, *Thromb Res* 125:e51–e54, 2010.

CHAPTER 42

ANTITHROMBOTIC THERAPY

Thomas L. Ortel

VITAMIN K ANTAGONISTS, 842

ANTITHROMBIN-DEPENDENT PARENTERAL ANTICOAGULANTS, 845
Unfractionated Heparin, 845
Low Molecular Weight Heparin, 846
Fondaparinux, 846
Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia, 846

TARGET-SPECIFIC ANTICOAGULANTS, 849
Parenteral Agents, 849
Oral Agents, 849

ANTIPLATELET THERAPY, 851
Aspirin, 851
P2Y12 Inhibitors, 852
Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa Inhibitors, 853

SELECTED REFERENCES, 853

KEY POINTS

- Warfarin has historically been the most commonly used oral anticoagulant. It is a vitamin K antagonist and blocks γ-carboxylation of a series of glutamic acid residues during the synthesis of factors II, VII, IX, and X, and proteins C and S. The resulting decreased functionality of the coagulation factors leads to prolongation of the prothrombin time, which is monitored as the international normalized ratio, and the partial thromboplastin time.
- Heparin binds to antithrombin and increases its ability to inhibit thrombin, factor Xa, and, to a lesser extent, other serine protease coagulation factors. Heparin is thus considered to be an "indirect" thrombin inhibitor. The anticoagulant effect of heparin is commonly monitored by prolongation of the partial thromboplastin time, with actual quantitation of heparin anticoagulant activity being assayed as anti–factor Xa activity. Where necessary to monitor low molecular weight heparin or fondaparinux, this is done by measuring its anti–factor Xa activity.
- Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) is a complication of heparin therapy in which antibodies develop against complexes of heparin and platelet factor 4 (PF4). The antibody/PF4/heparin complexes bind to platelets through the Fcγ receptor and cause platelet activation, leading to arterial and/or venous thrombosis. Both immunologic and functional assays are employed in the evaluation of possible HIT.
- Target-specific oral anticoagulants directly inhibit either thrombin or factor Xa. These anticoagulant agents do not typically need to be monitored, but they have variable effects on the PT and aPTT. The oral thrombin inhibitor dabigatran etexilate can be monitored by a dilute thrombin time or an ecarin clot time, and the factor Xa inhibitors rivaroxaban, apixaban, and edoxaban can be monitored by anti–factor Xa assays.
- Antiplatelet therapy is used primarily for the prevention of recurrent stroke or myocardial infarction. The laboratory can monitor the resulting reactivity of platelets from treated patients and, in some instances, can detect apparent resistance to aspirin or other therapeutic agents.

Antithrombotic therapy, which includes therapies targeting platelets as well as the coagulation system, is used to prevent and treat thromboembolic disease. Antiplatelet agents are most frequently used to prevent stroke and myocardial infarction, but they are also used in patients with peripheral arterial disease and may have some benefit in preventing recurrent venous thromboembolism (VTE). Anticoagulant agents are most frequently used to prevent and treat VTE, to prevent stroke and peripheral arterial embolism in patients with atrial fibrillation, and to prevent thromboembolic complications in patients with prosthetic heart valves. The clinical laboratory plays a critical role in the evaluation and management of patients on these therapies.

I gratefully acknowledge the contribution of Louis M. Fink, Richard A. Marlar, and Jonathan L. Miller, who authored this chapter in previous editions.

VITAMIN K ANTAGONISTS

Warfarin is the most commonly prescribed of the oral vitamin K antagonists. It is a racemic mixture of the stereoisomers S-warfarin and R-warfarin, with S-warfarin being the more potent in producing an anticoagulant effect. Warfarin inhibits vitamin K reductase (vitamin K 2,3-epoxide reductase, or VKOR) and blocks regeneration of the active form of vitamin K, which is necessary for γ-carboxylation of specific glutamate residues within the amino-terminal Gla domains of factors II, VII, IX, and X and proteins C and S (Fig. 42-1). With the decreasing extent of γ-carboxylation of glutamic acid within these domains, the affected proteins are unable to bind into the highly ordered protein/Ca^{++}/phospholipid membrane complexes that are essential for normal hemostatic activity (Ageno et al, 2012). Consequently, those laboratory tests that are dependent on the proper function of these factors become more abnormal with increasing antagonism of vitamin K.

The degree of anticoagulation with warfarin is typically assessed by measuring the prothrombin time (PT), although the activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) is also typically prolonged. The thrombin time (TT) is unaffected by warfarin therapy, because fibrinogen synthesis is not vitamin K–dependent. Prolongation of the PT is determined by decreases in the activity of three of the vitamin K–dependent coagulation factors, specifically factors VII, X, and II. Initial prolongation of the PT will primarily be due to the effect on factor VII, which has the shortest half-life (4-6 hours). Therapeutic efficacy depends on decreased levels of factors X and II, however, which have longer half-lives (24-48 hours and 48-72 hours, respectively). The different half-lives of the vitamin K–dependent factors is why 4 to 6 days of therapy with warfarin is generally recommended before assuming that laboratory monitoring actually reflects a steady-state level of anticoagulation. For clinical situations that require a more rapid onset of effective anticoagulation (e.g., treatment of acute VTE), heparin or low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) is administered concomitantly with the warfarin until steady-state efficacy of the warfarin is confirmed by laboratory testing. Because warfarin also interferes with the γ-carboxylation of proteins C and S, which are part of the natural anticoagulant system, there are certain clinical settings where initiation of warfarin can be associated with a paradoxical prothrombotic state, such as in patients with protein C deficiency (McGehee et al, 1984), protein S deficiency (Berkompas, 1991), or acute heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) (Warkentin et al, 1997).

The PT is performed by adding a source of phospholipid and tissue factor (referred to as thromboplastin), and calcium, to citrated plasma, and the time to clot formation is then measured by mechanical or optical methods. Individual thromboplastin reagents can vary substantially in their sensitivity to the decreased levels of the vitamin K–dependent factors, however, and this variable sensitivity is also affected by the instrument system used to measure the PT (D'Angelo et al, 1989). To correct for these differences, the international normalized ratio (INR) was developed in

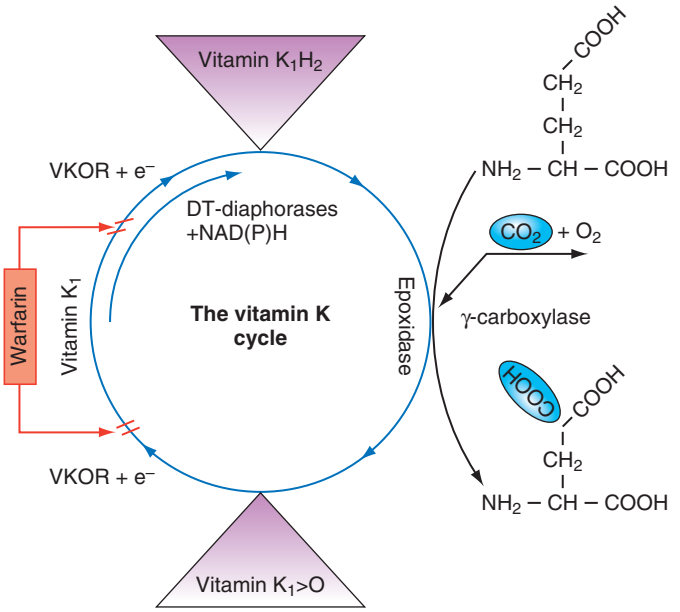


Figure 42-1 The vitamin K–dependent γ-carboxylation system. The γ-carboxylase converts vitamin K–dependent proteins to γ-carboxyglutamic acid (Gla) containing proteins by adding carbon dioxide (CO_2) to glutamic acid (Glu) residues in newly synthesized proteins. The γ-carboxylase requires reduced vitamin K_1 (vitamin K_1H_2) as a cofactor for this posttranslational modification reaction. Concomitant with γ-carboxylation, vitamin K_1H_2 is converted to vitamin K_1 2,3-epoxide (vitamin K_1>O). The epoxide is reduced by the warfarin-sensitive enzyme vitamin K_1 2,3-epoxide reductase (VKOR) to the vitamin K_1H_2 cofactor. This cyclic interconversion of vitamin K metabolites constitutes the vitamin K cycle. At high tissue concentrations, vitamin K_1 quinone (vitamin K_1) can be reduced to vitamin K_1H_2 by the alternative pathway of the cycle. This pathway is catalyzed by NAD(P)H dehydrogenases (DT-diaphorases), which are not inhibited by warfarin. (From Wallin R, Hutson SM: Warfarin and the vitamin K-dependent gamma-carboxylation system, *Trends Mol Med* 10:299–302, 2004.)

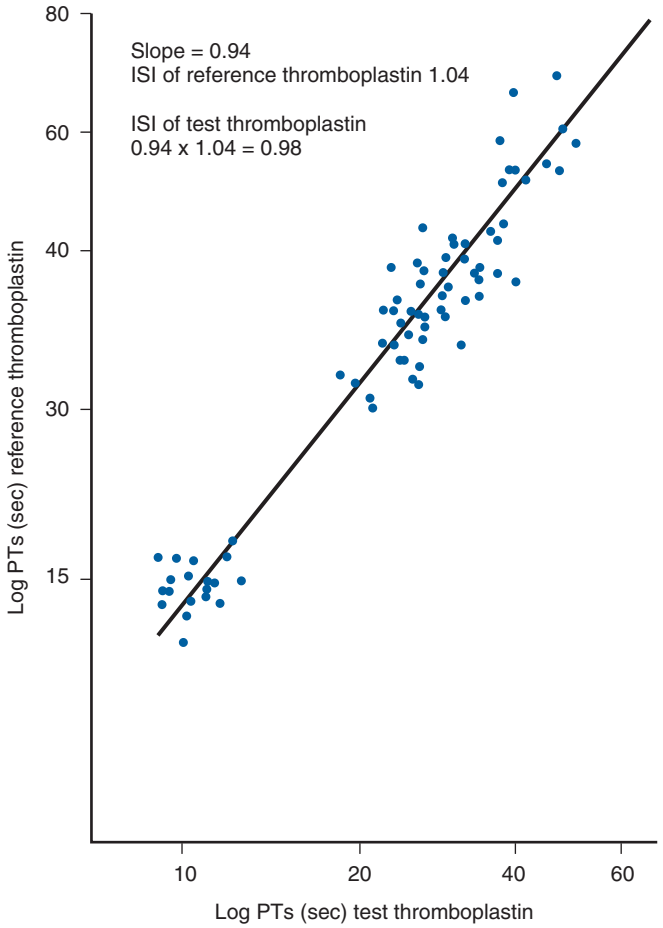


Figure 42-2 An example of a thromboplastin calibration using the World Health Organization (WHO) international sensitivity index (ISI) model. Prothrombin times were performed on a series of normal subjects and patients on stable warfarin anticoagulation with a reference thromboplastin (*y*-axis) and a test thromboplastin (*x*-axis) under calibration. (From Kitchen S, Preston FE: Standardization of prothrombin time for laboratory control of oral anticoagulant therapy, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 25:17–25, 1999.)

order to improve standardization of PT reporting worldwide (Kirkwood, 1983). To calculate an INR, the logarithms of PT results obtained on normal individuals and patients on warfarin using a primary international reference thromboplastin are plotted against the logarithms of PT results obtained using the testing laboratory's thromboplastin reagent (Fig. 42-2). The resulting slope of this plot is the international sensitivity index (ISI) for that particular thromboplastin reagent and instrumentation combination (Kitchen & Preston, 1999; Adcock & Johnston, 2002; Poller, 2004; Van den Besselaar et al, 2004; Favaloro & Adcock, 2008). The PT ratio is determined by dividing the patient PT result by the geometric mean normal PT for the local laboratory (determined by using a population of normal individuals with the same reagent/instrumentation), and this PT ratio is then raised to the power of the ISI to determine the INR, according to the following equation:

$$\text{INR} = (\text{patient PT in seconds}/\text{mean normal PT in seconds})^{\text{ISI}}$$

The INR seeks to represent the PT ratio that would be obtained if the international reference thromboplastin had actually been used to test the patient. Although the concept of generating the INR sounds straightforward, actually obtaining an accurate INR result can be difficult in practice (Cunningham et al, 1994; Favaloro et al, 2010).

Because of the importance of accurate monitoring of anticoagulant therapy with the vitamin K antagonists, several additional points regarding the ISI and the INR need to be taken into consideration. First, the ISI must be correctly specified not only for each type of PT reagent but also for each new *lot* of thromboplastin, in addition to specifying the coagulation instrument model being used in a given laboratory. Second, in plasma samples from patients being treated with warfarin and a second anticoagulant (for example, heparin in the acute management of venous thromboembolism), the prolonged PT will reflect the combined effect of both anticoagulant agents. Heparin can either be removed or neutralized to more specifically assess the anticoagulant contribution of the warfarin alone, as described below. An analogous strategy does not exist for the removal or neutralization of the parenteral direct thrombin inhibitors argatroban and bivalirudin, which are used in the treatment of patients with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (see later). Transitioning the patient to warfarin can be difficult because of the effect the parenteral direct thrombin inhibitors have on the PT and the INR (Hursting et al, 1999; Kelton et al, 2013). Third, although most lupus anticoagulants exert a more pronounced effect upon the aPTT than the PT, the presence of a lupus anticoagulant in some patients may render the PT inaccurate as a means of monitoring warfarin therapy. This may depend on the reagents used (Moll & Ortel, 1997). In such instances, a direct chromogenic assay for factor X (rather than a clotting assay) may aid in monitoring of anticoagulant intensity (Rosborough & Shepherd, 2004). Finally, thromboplastins are prepared from a variety of sources, spanning recombinant human tissue factor as well as nonhuman-derived materials. In some cases, a thromboplastin originating from a nonhuman source may contribute to an abnormally prolonged PT (and thus an increased INR) that would not have been obtained had a human thromboplastin been used instead. This phenomenon has been reported in patients with factor VII Padua, who have a nonpathogenic polymorphism in their factor VII molecule that supports normal hemostatic interactions with human tissue factor but diminished interaction with tissue factor of various animal origins, notably rabbit (Pollak et al, 2006; Kirkel et al, 2010).

The plasma half-life of warfarin is 20 to 60 hours, with a mean of 40 hours. The maximum effect of a dose lasts for up to 48 hours after administration. S-warfarin is metabolized by CYP2C9, and R-warfarin is metabolized by the CYP1A2 and CYP3A4 enzymes. Genetic polymorphisms in CYP2C9 lead to an alteration in the pharmacokinetics of warfarin (Aithal et al, 1999; Taube et al, 2000). In addition, mutations in genes encoding for VKORC1, which generates the reduced form of vitamin K necessary for γ-carboxylation, have been identified to lead to variable sensitivity to inhibition by warfarin, affecting pharmacokinetics and dosing (Rieder et al, 2005). Specific allelic combinations of CYP2C9 and VKORC1 are associated with a wide range of warfarin sensitivities (Table 42-1). Allelic frequencies and their relationships to race and therapeutic warfarin dose are shown in Table 42-2. Although observational studies

TABLE 42-1
Phenotype Characteristics of Warfarin Metabolism Genotype Combinations*

	GENOTYPE COMBINATION			
Warfarin Sensitivity	**VKORC1**	**CYP2C9**	**Prevalence N (%)**	**Clinical Considerations**
Very high	A/A G/A	*1/*3, *2/*2, *2/*3, *3/*3 *3/*3	23 (2.6%)	May need a lower dose and more frequent INR monitoring
High	A/A G/A G/G	*1/*2 *2/*3 *3/*3	36 (4.0%)	Lower dose and frequent INR monitoring
Moderate	A/A G/A G/G	*1/*1 *1/*2, *1/*3, *2/*2 *2/*3	238 (26.6%)	Lower dose and frequent INR monitoring
Mild	G/G	*1/*2, *1/*3, *2/*2	109 (12.2%)	Frequent INR monitoring
Normal	G/A	*1/*1	262 (29.2%)	Standard INR monitoring
Less than normal	G/G	*1/*1	228 (25.4%)	May require higher dose to maintain optimal INR

*Genotype is defined by the combination of measured allelic variations in CYP2C9 and VKORC1. Phenotype is the expected warfarin sensitivity based on the genotype. From Epstein et al, 2010.

TABLE 42-2
Allele Frequencies in Derivation Cohort (N = 1015) and Relationship to Race and Therapeutic Warfarin Dose*

SNP Alleles	Gene Location	White (N = 838)	African American (N = 153)	Other or Mixed Race (N = 24)	Univariate Association with Dose in Total Population, Per Allele (95% CI)
CYP2C9*2 (C > T)	3608C > T	13.1%	5.2%	10.4%	–17% (–22% to –12%)
CYP2C9*3 (A > C)	42614A > C	6.0%	1.0%	4.2%	–30% (–36% to –24%)
CYP2C9*5 (C > G)	42619C > G	0%	1.3%	2.1%	NS
VKORC1 861 C > A	–4451C > A	36.0%	8.8%	26.1%	14% (9% to 18%)
VKORC1 3673 G > A	–1639G > A	36.6%	9.5%	41.7%	–29% (–31% to 26%)
VKORC1 5808 T > G	IVS1 + 324T > G	25.1%	4.6%	8.3%	25% (29% to 22%)
VKORC1 6853 G > C	IVS2 + 124G > C	37.2%	24.3%	41.7%	–37% (–42% to –32%)
VKORC1 9041 G > A	626 G > A	39.4%	51.3%	41.7%	18% (14% to 23%)
F2 Thr165Met	494 C > T	13.3%	1.3%	30.0%	–5.8% (–11.4% to 0.0%)

*Frequency values are reported for the variant allele at each SNP. CYP2C9 gene locations are taken from http://www.cypalleles.ki.se/cyp2c9.htm. From Gage et al, 2008.
CI, Confidence interval; *NS,* not significant; *SNP,* single-nucleotide polymorphism.

suggested potential benefits from genotype-guided dosing of vitamin K antagonists (Epstein et al, 2010; Anderson et al, 2012), three large, prospective, randomized clinical trials demonstrated that pharmacogenetic-based dosing resulted in either no (Kimmel et al, 2013; Verhoef et al, 2013) or minimal (Pirmohamed et al, 2013) improvement in the time that the INR was in the therapeutic range for the first 4 to 12 weeks of therapy. Whether CYP2C9 or VKORC1 genotype data will be beneficial in other aspects of warfarin management needs to be determined.

True genetic resistance to warfarin therapy, characterized by exceptionally high doses of warfarin (e.g., >100 mg/day) to achieve a target therapeutic range, is uncommon (O'Reilly et al, 1964). In instances where inappropriate responses to warfarin are marked and persistent, the metabolites can be measured using high-performance liquid chromatography (Lombardi et al, 2003). These measurements can also be used to confirm medication compliance. More commonly, drugs that affect S-warfarin metabolism may markedly alter the potency of warfarin treatment (Box 42-1). Some drugs or herbal medications induce CYP2C9 and cause warfarin to be metabolized faster, thus necessitating an increased dose to achieve the same anticoagulant effect. Other drugs interfere with the metabolism of warfarin and thus enhance the anticoagulant effect. In fact, several hundred compounds are known to alter the metabolism of warfarin (Ansell et al, 2008). Antibiotics may interfere with the metabolism of warfarin, or they may suppress the gut flora, which supplies a significant amount of vitamin K in humans. Rifampin, for example, may dramatically increase the metabolism of warfarin, thereby necessitating very high doses of warfarin to achieve anticoagulation (Krajewski, 2010). Foods, particularly green leafy vegetables rich in vitamin K, may make anticoagulation with warfarin more difficult. Different warfarin products may vary in potency, so that switching to, or between, different generic formulations may require more frequent monitoring and dosage adjustments (Bongiorno & Nutescu, 2004).

BOX 42-1
Drug and Supplement Interactions with Warfarin

Increased clearance of warfarin (decreased INR)
- Barbiturates
- Rifampin
- Hyperforin (present in St. John's wort)

Decreased clearance of warfarin (increased INR)
- Amiodarone
- Fluconazole
- Miconazole
- Phenylbutazone
- Sulfamethoxazole

Warfarin is considered an agent with a narrow therapeutic index, and a target INR has been established for most clinical indications in which it is used. For patients with atrial fibrillation, and for the prevention and treatment of VTE, a target INR of 2.5 (range, 2-3) is recommended (Kearon et al, 2012; You et al, 2012). For patients with mechanical aortic valves (bileaflet and newer-generation tilting disk), the recommended target INR is also 2.5 (range, 2-3). The recommended target INR for patients with mechanical mitral valves, or patients with older mechanical aortic valves (for example, the caged-ball valve), is higher, at 3.0 (range, 2.5-3.5) (Whitlock et al, 2012). The INR is regularly monitored to keep patients on warfarin therapy within the target range to prevent thrombotic complications but minimize the risk for potential hemorrhagic complications. The most important factor influencing the risk of bleeding is the intensity of anticoagulant therapy, represented by the target INR (Ageno et al, 2012). Other variables include a prior history of bleeding, advanced

age, serious comorbid conditions such as renal insufficiency or liver disease, and the use of concomitant therapies, particularly antiplatelet agents (Ageno et al, 2012).

Efforts to improve the control of warfarin therapy have led to several advances, including the formation of anticoagulation clinics dedicated to the management of warfarin therapy and the development of point-of-care monitors that use capillary blood obtained by a fingerstick to provide immediate feedback with the INR result. These monitors measure a thromboplastin-mediated clotting time using a capillary whole blood or a nonanticoagulated venous whole blood sample, converting the result to a PT and/or an INR (Leaning & Ansell, 1996). Results obtained with different point-of-care PT instruments and laboratory-based instruments may not be comparable (Nutescu, 2004). Indeed, even the patient specimen itself will vary in terms of being whole blood directly sampled by the point-of-care monitor, as opposed to a citrated plasma sample routinely used in the clinical laboratory setting. Quality assurance and quality control plans should be in place to oversee point-of-care INR testing (Van Cott, 2009). In general, markedly out-of-range INR measurements obtained with a point-of-care monitor should be confirmed by analyzing a sample of citrated plasma in the clinical laboratory (Sunderji et al, 2005).

ANTITHROMBIN-DEPENDENT PARENTERAL ANTICOAGULANTS

UNFRACTIONATED HEPARIN

Heparin is a natural polymer of sulfated glycosaminoglycans with a wide range of molecular weights that is prepared from porcine intestinal mucosa. Heparin is cleared through a combination of a rapid saturable mechanism and a much slower first-order mechanism, resulting in a nonlinear response to an increasing dose. The apparent biologic half-life of heparin increases from approximately 30 minutes after an IV bolus of 25 units/kg to approximately 60 minutes after a bolus of 100 units/kg (Garcia et al, 2012). Heparin exerts its anticoagulant effect by binding to the plasma protein antithrombin, a circulating natural anticoagulant. The antithrombotic effect is derived from the accelerated inhibition of the serine proteinase coagulation factors, with the most critical inhibition being that of thrombin (factor IIa) and factor Xa (Fig. 42-3). Additional effects of heparin include the release of tissue factor pathway inhibitor, an increase in tissue plasminogen activator and thereby fibrinolysis, and impairment of platelet function (Salzman et al, 1980). Unfractionated heparin (UFH) can be given subcutaneously or intravenously, with a rapid onset of action (Garcia et al, 2012), and may be used prophylactically or therapeutically for the treatment of venous as well as arterial thromboembolism. The rapid anticoagulant effect of heparin is particularly important in the acute management of patients with VTE, because inadequate anticoagulation early in treatment can lead to an increased risk for subsequent thrombotic complications (Kearon et al, 2012).

A variety of laboratory methods can be used to measure UFH. These include the aPTT, the thrombin time, anti–factor Xa activity, the activated clotting time (ACT), and protamine reversal. For patients receiving heparin for the treatment of VTE, as well as for most other nonsurgical indications for therapy with UFH, the aPTT is the most commonly used assay. In contrast to the case of warfarin monitoring, for which the international community has established the INR to minimize performance variations in reagent/instrument combinations, comparable standardization has not been developed for the aPTT when used for monitoring heparin. Historically, many clinicians targeted a 1.5- to 2.5-fold increase in the aPTT over an individual patient's baseline aPTT, or the midpoint of the laboratory's normal reference interval for the aPTT, for the treatment of patients with VTE. This target was based on a study from the 1970s that reported that maintaining the aPTT in this range was associated with a reduced risk of recurrent VTE (Basu et al, 1972). However, subsequent studies demonstrated that aPTT results could vary markedly for samples containing the same amount of UFH, depending on the reagent and the laboratory instrumentation (Shapiro et al, 1977; Kitchen et al, 1996). For example, with heparin levels of 0.3 to 0.7 units/mL, determined by an anti–factor Xa assay standardized with UFH, aPTT ratios have been reported to range from 1.6 to 2.7 to 3.7 to 6.2 times the control value (Garcia et al, 2012). Consequently, the therapeutic aPTT range at an individual institution needs to be determined based on the responsiveness of the reagent and the instrumentation in use (Garcia et al, 2012).

Establishing a therapeutic aPTT range for heparin therapy requires performing a linear regression analysis of the aPTT plotted against anti–factor Xa heparin levels for patients undergoing therapeutic heparin anticoagulation. An example of such an analysis is shown in Figure 42-4. This relationship must be reevaluated each time a change in reagent lot (or instrumentation) occurs for either of these tests. Furthermore, it is recommended that the relationship between the aPTT and anti–factor Xa levels should be determined using plasma samples obtained from patients actually undergoing heparin therapy and not by using normal plasma samples spiked with exogenous heparin (Olson et al, 1998). This approach would incorporate the heterogeneity encountered with individual patient samples, which exhibit variability in the levels of factor VIII, fibrinogen,

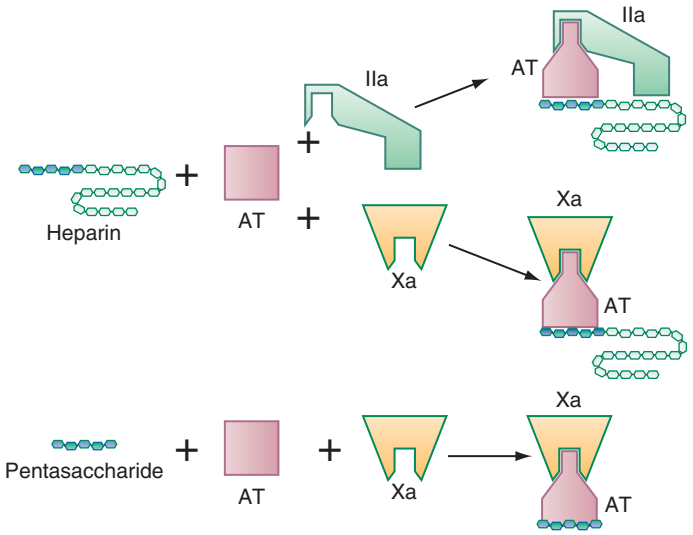


Figure 42-3 Hypothetical mechanisms for heparin/heparan sulfate regulation of protein–protein interactions. Binding of a specific pentasaccharide sequence of heparin present in unfractionated heparin (UFH) and low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) or in isolated form (fondaparinux) to antithrombin (AT) produces a conformational change in AT sufficient for inhibition of the serine protease factor Xa. Effective inhibition of thrombin (factor IIa) additionally requires direct interaction with a region of the heparin molecule distinct from the pentasaccharide sequence, necessitating a longer glycosaminoglycan sequence. Such thrombin-binding regions are characteristically more available in UFH than in the LMWH products. (Modified from Nugent MA: Heparin sequencing brings structure to the function of complex oligosaccharides, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 97:10301–10303, 2000.)

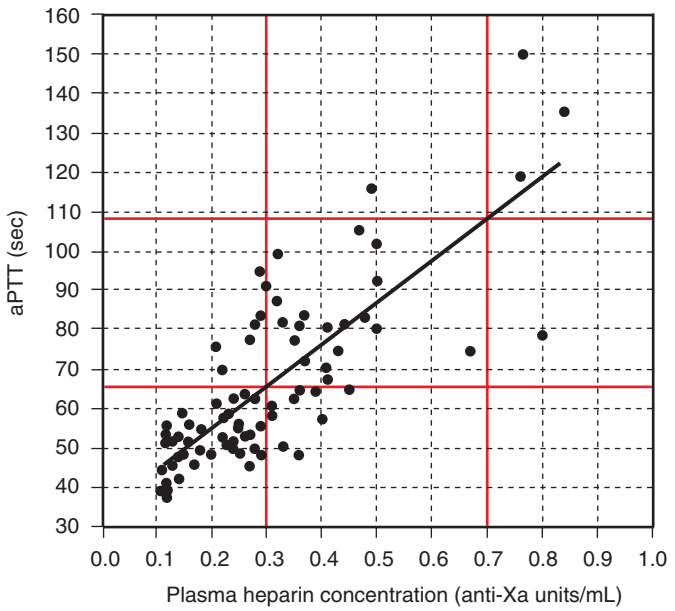


Figure 42-4 Linear regression analysis of relationship between activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) and anti–factor Xa (Xa) heparin level performed on plasma samples from patients undergoing heparin therapy. With this particular reagent/instrument combination, the regression analysis yields an aPTT range of 66 to 108 seconds that would correspond to an anti–factor Xa range of 0.3 to 0.7 U/mL.

antithrombin, the contact factors (factor XII, high molecular weight kininogen, and prekallikrein), as well as the possible presence of a lupus anticoagulant.

In addition to the heterogeneity encountered in different patient samples, there is also variability observed among the different anti–factor Xa assays performed with the various available reagent/instrument combinations. One contributor to such variability is whether or not the particular assay system includes the addition of exogenous antithrombin (Lehman et al, 2006). Providing an excess of antithrombin may produce a higher heparin level for the patient who is deficient in endogenous antithrombin. In a sense, this yields the more accurate measurement of the amount of heparin present in the circulation. Viewed from a different perspective, however, the more appropriate measurement to guide dosing may be the one that reflects the actual inhibitory ability of infused heparin—that is, the method that remains dependent on the patient's own antithrombin level. Regardless of the approach taken, using the anti–factor Xa assay to define specific aPTT ranges did not improve interlaboratory assessment of 44 inpatients receiving heparin therapy in a cross-validation study (Cuker et al, 2009). Although debate continues regarding the optimal approach to monitor heparin therapy, it is generally recommended that for patients who have a prolonged baseline aPTT before initiation of heparin therapy, a more specific method such as the anti–factor Xa assay should be employed.

Heparin is also used extensively to prevent clot formation during cardiac bypass surgery, as well as during a number of interventional vascular procedures. In these settings, the concentration of heparin (e.g., 2-4 anti–factor Xa U/mL) is typically higher than that used in the treatment of VTE. At these levels of UFH, the aPTT is prolonged into a range where it does not perform optimally. The ACT, which uses glass beads, kaolin, or diatomaceous earth to activate whole blood samples obtained from the patient, is frequently used to guide heparin therapy during such procedures. As for all of the coagulation assays used to monitor an anticoagulant effect, the importance of establishing local reference intervals using normal controls for ACT testing cannot be overemphasized. It is vital to obtain a baseline ACT value before heparin therapy is instituted and to realize that for occasional patients with a markedly prolonged baseline ACT (such as one who may have a lupus anticoagulant or a severe contact factor deficiency), an alternative approach to monitoring should be considered—typically, an anti–factor Xa heparin assay.

Heparin Resistance

Heparin resistance refers to a clinical situation in which a patient appears to require unusually high doses of heparin in order to achieve a target aPTT (e.g., >35,000 units/day in a patient receiving heparin for the treatment of venous thromboembolism) (Garcia et al, 2012). Heparin resistance is also occasionally encountered during cardiac bypass procedures, defined as an inability to achieve a target ACT prior to, or during, the procedure (Finley & Greenberg, 2013). Causes of heparin resistance include massive thrombosis with release of heparin-binding proteins (e.g., platelet factor 4, fibronectin); elevated factor VIII levels (often evidenced by short aPTT prior to starting UFH); treatment with nitroglycerin; severe obesity; antithrombin deficiency (<30% activity); heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT); and cancer (Edson et al, 1967; Bharadwaj et al, 2003; Francis & Groce, 2004). In some instances of apparent heparin resistance as measured by the aPTT, such as in the case of elevated factor VIII levels, simply changing to anti–factor Xa assays will provide a more accurate measure of the circulating heparin level (Garcia et al, 2012). As noted above, whether a measured heparin level within the target range represents an accurate anticoagulant effect in a patient with a subtherapeutic aPTT remains unclear. Race has also been shown to be a variable, contributing to differences in sensitivity to the anticoagulant effect of heparin (Shimada et al, 2010).

LOW MOLECULAR WEIGHT HEPARIN

Low molecular weight heparins (LMWHs) are derived from UFH by chemical or enzymatic depolymerization, resulting in shorter fragments that exhibit reduced binding to proteins and cells and a more predictable pharmacokinetic profile (Garcia et al, 2012). The elimination half-life of the LMWHs is dose independent and approximately 3 to 6 hours following a subcutaneous injection (Garcia et al, 2012). The LMWHs have a mean molecular weight of approximately 4000 to 5000, which corresponds to about 15 saccharide units. This chain length is sufficient to promote the inactivation of factor Xa by antithrombin, but it is insufficient to promote the inactivation of thrombin by antithrombin, which requires a slightly longer chain length (Gray et al, 2008). Consequently, the LMWHs primarily inhibit factor Xa, with less inhibitory activity directed against thrombin. Anti–factor Xa assays, rather than the aPTT, should be used when measurement of an LMWH is needed (Boneu & de Moerloose, 2001). Monitoring plasma levels of LMWH is typically not required, but it may be helpful in certain patient populations, including children and newborns, pregnant women, morbidly obese patients, and patients with renal failure (because these agents are primarily cleared by the kidney). When monitoring is performed, blood should be drawn approximately 4 hours after the last administered dose because this is when the peak level is anticipated to occur (Bounameaux & de Moerloose, 2004; Harenberg, 2004). Target peak anti–factor Xa levels for selected low molecular weight heparins are provided in Table 42-3. In some situations, measurement of the anti–factor Xa level at a trough (i.e., immediately prior to a dose) may be useful in determining whether the drug is accumulating in an individual patient, but levels at this time point have not been established.

TABLE 42-3
Target Peak Anti–Factor Xa Results for Therapeutic Low Molecular Weight Heparins and Fondaparinux

Agent and Frequency of Administration	Target Range* (Anti–Factor Xa units/mL, Except Where Indicated)
Enoxaparin, twice daily	0.6-1.0
Enoxaparin, once daily	>2.0
Dalteparin, once daily	1.05
Tinzaparin, once daily	0.85
Nadroparin, twice daily	0.6-1.0
Nadroparin, once daily	1.3
Fondaparinux, once daily	1.20-1.26 mg/L†

Adapted from Garcia et al, 2012.
*Measured 4 hours after drug administration.
†Measured 3 hours after drug administration.

FONDAPARINUX

Fondaparinux is a small synthetic pentasaccharide that represents the minimal glycosaminoglycan sequence needed for binding to antithrombin. This binding is sufficient to enhance the reactive site of antithrombin binding to factor Xa, neutralizing the enzyme (see Fig. 42-3). Fondaparinux exhibits essentially no antithrombin activity because of its short length. It has a longer half-life than heparin or LMWH (terminal half-life of 17 hours in young subjects, and 21 hours in older individuals) and can be given subcutaneously once daily; dose is based on weight and does not ordinarily require measurement of blood levels (Garcia et al, 2012). It will cause a modest prolongation of the PT as well as the aPTT, but this is typically only by a few seconds at most (Smogorzewska et al, 2006). If necessary, the level can be measured by an anti–factor Xa assay, but this should be done with fondaparinux as the agent used to generate the standard curves (Smogorzewska et al, 2006). Fondaparinux is cleared by the kidneys, and the dose must be reduced in patients with compromised renal function (Nagler et al, 2012).

HEPARIN-INDUCED THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Thrombocytopenia arising in the setting of heparin therapy is not infrequent. A transient mild drop in the platelet count early after the initiation of heparin therapy is common and reflects a nonimmune process. This drop is not associated with any clinical manifestations and characteristically resolves with continued administration of UFH. In contrast, a platelet count drop that begins within 5 to 10 days of starting heparin therapy is consistent with an immune-mediated disorder referred to as heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) (Arepally & Ortel, 2010; Greinacher, 2015). Paradoxically, the dropping platelet count in HIT is associated with an increased risk for venous and/or arterial thromboembolism, which is referred to as heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and thrombosis (HITT). HIT is mediated by antibodies that bind macromolecular complexes formed by a platelet factor 4 (PF4), a protein found in platelet alpha granules and free in plasma, in complex with heparin (Greinacher et al, 1994). When multiple IgG molecules bind to the resultant PF4/heparin complexes, the Fc regions of these antibodies can bind to the FcγRIIA receptors on platelet surfaces, causing platelet activation and release of highly procoagulant microparticles (Arepally & Ortel, 2010). The relationship

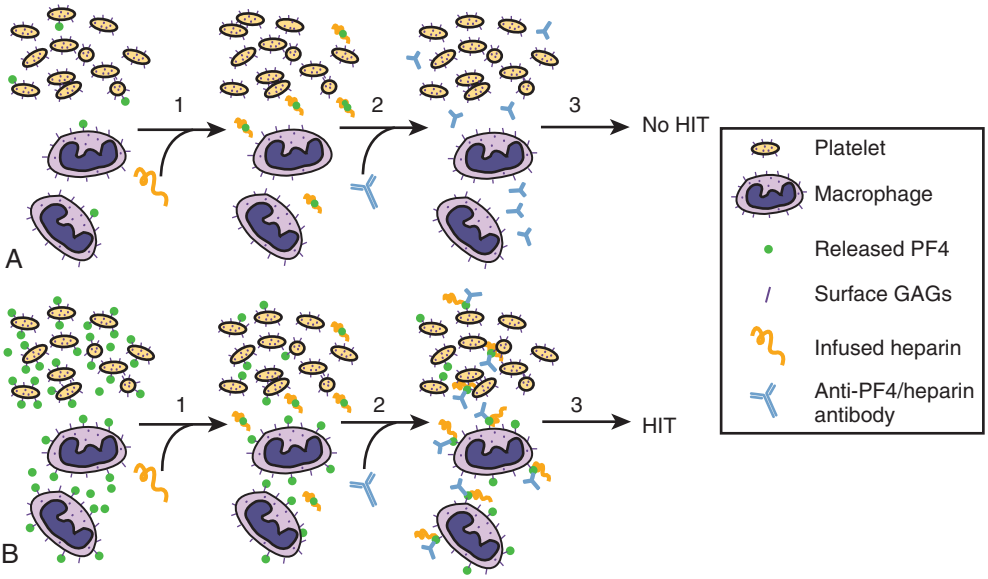


Figure 42-5 **Mechanistic basis of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT). A,** Platelets and monocytes from a patient with little released platelet factor 4 (PF4) on the left. Following heparinization (1), the small amount of surface-bound PF4 becomes complexed to the higher-affinity circulating heparin and induces anti–PF4/heparin antibody production (2). Because there are not many surface PF4/GAG complexes for the antibodies to bind, they largely remain unattached to cells and do not activate the platelets or the monocytes (3). The patient does not develop HIT. **B,** Same as (**A**), but with a great deal of released PF4 bound to the GAGs on the surface of both platelets and monocytes. After heparinization (1), some PF4/surface GAG complexes remain. Circulating free PF4/heparin induces antibody production (2), and because there remain antigenic targets on platelets and monocytes, the antibodies bind to these cells and activate them (3), resulting in both thrombocytopenia and the prothrombotic state seen in HIT. (Modified from Kowalska MA, Rauova L, Poncz M: Role of the platelet chemokine platelet factor 4 [PF4] in hemostasis and thrombosis, *Thromb Res* 125:292–296, 2010.)

TABLE 42-4

Pretest Scoring System for Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia: the 4T's Score*

Clinical Feature	2	1	0
Thrombocytopenia	>50% fall and platelet nadir 20-100 × 10^9 L^{-1}	30% to 50% fall or platelet nadir 10-19 × 10^9 L^{-1}	Fall <30% or platelet nadir <10 × 10^9 L^{-1}
Timing of fall in platelet count or other sequelae	Clear onset between days 5 and 10; or ≤1 day (if heparin exposure within past 30 days)	Consistent with days 5-10 fall, but not clear (e.g., missing platelet counts); or onset after day 10; or fall ≤1 day (prior heparin exposure 30-100 days ago)	Fall in platelet count <4 days without recent heparin exposure
Thrombosis or other sequelae (e.g., skin lesions)	New thrombosis; skin necrosis; postheparin bolus acute systemic reaction	Progressive or recurrent thrombosis; erythematous skin lesions; suspected thrombosis not yet proven	None
Other cause for thrombocytopenia not evident	None apparent	Possible	Definite

*MA score (2, 1, or 0) is assigned for each clinical feature. Cumulative scores are then used to assign pretest probability scores of high (6-8 points), intermediate (4-5 points), or low (≤3 points) likelihood of disease. Clinical laboratory testing is typically not necessary for a 4T score of 3 points or less.
Adapted from Lo et al, 2006.

between the amount of released PF4 and circulating platelets and monocytes contributes to the development of the syndrome (Fig. 42-5). Rarely, antibodies to other chemokines that have shared sequence structures with PF4 (the CXC family of chemokines), such as interleukin-8 (IL-8) and neutrophil-activating protein-2, may also cause HIT (Amiral et al, 1996). The development of this immune response is associated with substantial morbidity and mortality, necessitating early diagnosis and initiation of appropriate therapeutic measures, described later.

A presumptive diagnosis of HIT is made on clinical grounds, particularly in cases where the time course and the extent of the drop in platelet count fit together convincingly with the patient's history of heparin therapy. Treatment decisions will frequently need to be made prior to obtaining the results of confirmatory laboratory testing (Linkins et al, 2012). Several algorithmic approaches have been developed that attempt to assess the pretest likelihood of true HIT in the individual patient, most notably the 4T system (Table 42-4). Patients with a low 4T score have a very low probability of having HIT (0% to 3%), and testing for antibodies to PF4/heparin in this situation is generally not indicated (Arepally & Ortel, 2010). This is important, because the frequency of positive laboratory results can be quite high in certain patient populations, even though the syndrome itself is relatively infrequent (e.g., following cardiac bypass surgery; medical or surgical ICU patients) (Arepally & Ortel, 2006). Although a low 4T score is a very robust means to exclude a diagnosis of HIT, an intermediate or high 4T score is less useful for the identification of patients who do have HIT. In a systematic review and meta-analysis, the positive predictive value of the 4T score for patients with intermediate or high 4T scores was 0.14 (0.09-0.24) and 0.64 (0.40-0.82), respectively (Cuker et al, 2014).

Greinacher and colleagues (2011) have postulated that a background level of antibody directed against PF4 bound to glycosaminoglycans may routinely arise as part of the body's antibacterial response to infectious organisms whose glycosaminoglycans also bind PF4. This hypothesis not only would account for a number of apparent biologic false-positive results observed in HIT testing, but it also would provide an explanation for what otherwise would appear to be an unusually short minimal time (about 5 days) to the appearance of antibodies following exposure to heparin (Greinacher et al, 2009). Rarely, patients may spontaneously develop an autoimmune form of HIT in the absence of heparin exposure, most often after major surgery (especially knee replacement) or recent infection (Warkentin et al, 2014).

A clinical diagnosis of HIT needs to be confirmed with a laboratory test demonstrating heparin-dependent antibodies. Immunoassays detect antibodies that bind to platelet factor 4/heparin complexes, whereas functional assays detect antibodies capable of activating platelets. A test that

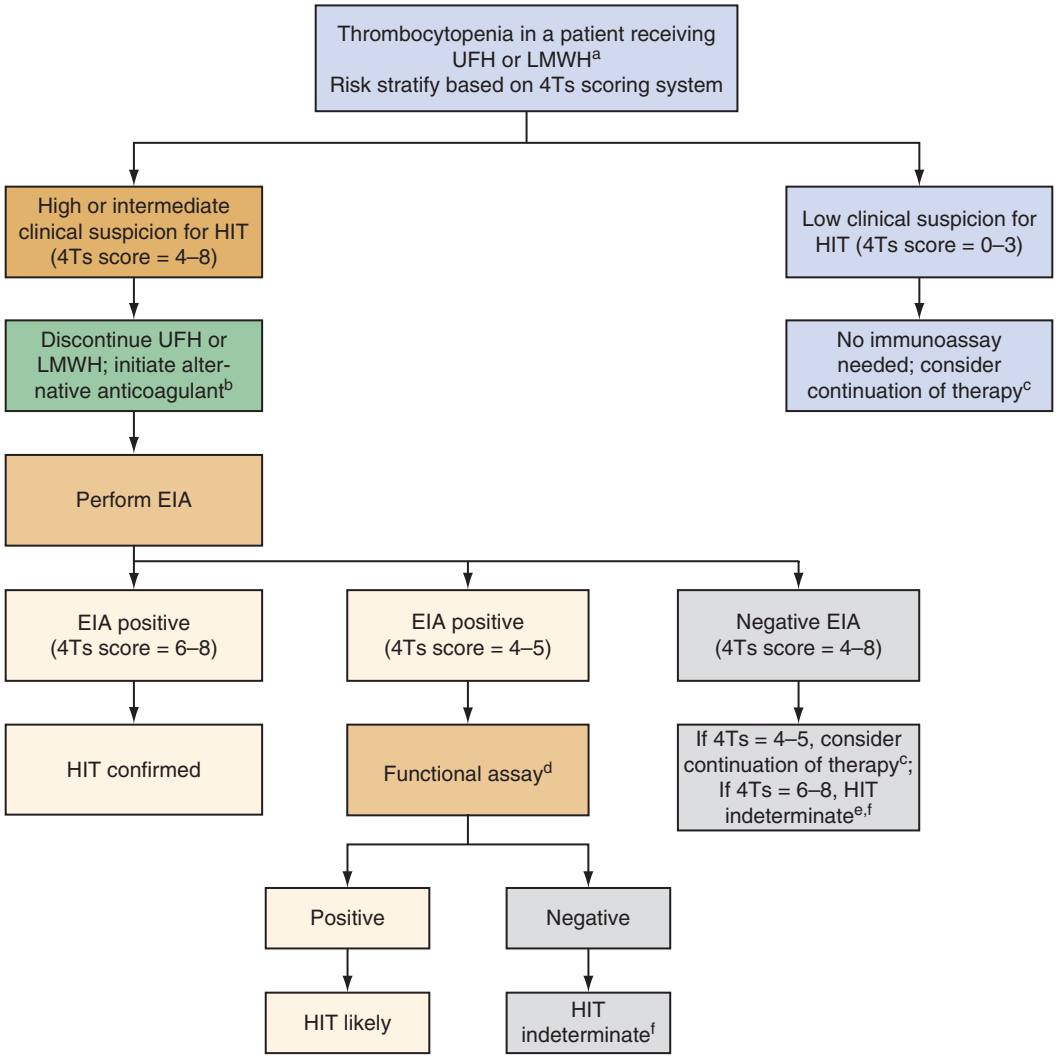


Figure 42-6 Diagnostic algorithm for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT). *UFH,* Unfractionated heparin; *LMWH,* low molecular weight heparin; *EIA,* enzyme-linked immunoassay. [a]Thrombocytopenia can be absolute (<150,000/μL) or relative (>30% decrease in platelet counts from the highest platelet count prior to initiation of heparin therapy). [b]Decision to initiate alternative anticoagulant therapy should be guided by assessment of patient's bleeding risk and comorbidities. [c]Decision to continue UFH or LMWH should be individualized. [d]Functional assay recommended, if clinically available. [e]Antibodies with non-PF4/heparin specificity may be causative of disease. [f]Decision to continue alternative anticoagulant therapy should be individualized. (Illustration from Arepally GM, Ortel TL: Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *Annu Rev Med* 61:77–90, 2010.)

has perfect sensitivity and specificity and could be performed rapidly in a cost-effective fashion would be ideal. Many laboratories use a testing strategy in which the initial (and, in most cases, the only) test is a readily performed PF4–enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) that has high sensitivity but lower specificity. Sensitivity has been reported to be as high as 98.1% for the polyspecific ELISA (detects IgG, IgM, and IgA isotypes), but specificity is lower—only 89.4% in one analysis (Cuker & Ortel, 2009). Several strategies have been studied in an effort to improve the diagnostic specificity of the ELISA assay. Higher absorbance values in the ELISA are associated with an improved ability to identify patients more likely to have HIT and a thromboembolic complication (Zwicker et al, 2004) and are more likely to be associated with a positive functional assay (Warkentin et al, 2008). The ability to block antibody binding with excess heparin added to the patient plasma sample has also been shown to improve the specificity of the assay (Whitlatch et al, 2010; McFarland et al, 2012), although this approach appears to be most beneficial in patients with weakly positive ELISA results (Althaus et al, 2011). The IgG-specific ELISA has also been shown to improve assay specificity (McFarland et al, 2012), although with a slight loss in sensitivity (Cuker & Ortel, 2009). Anti-PF4/heparin antibodies of the IgM and IgA classes appear to have only a minor role in the development of HIT (Greinacher et al, 2007), although rare cases have been reported. Regardless of the laboratory strategy used to optimize sensitivity and specificity, however, the most important variable to improve diagnostic specificity is careful assessment of the clinical likelihood of HIT prior to requesting laboratory testing. A diagnostic strategy that combines the 4T scoring system with laboratory testing is shown in Figure 42-6.

Once a positive ELISA test has been obtained, a functional test can be helpful to provide further laboratory support for the presence, or absence, of HIT. Functional tests typically are much more demanding to perform but provide higher specificity, in addition to high sensitivity. In North America, the gold standard of functional testing for HIT has been the serotonin release assay, in which washed platelets that have taken up exogenous ^{14}C-labeled serotonin are challenged with patient plasma in the presence of different heparin concentrations, and the amount of released serotonin is measured as the endpoint. Although relatively few laboratories in North America offer this test, it is available through several reference laboratory services. Alternative functional assays include a heparin-induced platelet activation assay that has a comparable sensitivity and specificity as the serotonin-release assay (Eichler et al, 1999) and flow cytometric methods that detect the formation of platelet microparticles (Mullier et al, 2010) or expression of phosphatidylserine on platelet surfaces using a fluorescein-labeled annexin A5 (Poley & Mempel, 2001). Important considerations in all of these assays include appropriate use of positive and negative control samples (Warkentin et al, 2011a), as well as selection of appropriate platelet donors for these assays.

The complex relationship between the clinical syndrome of HIT and the presence of anti-PF4/heparin antibodies detected by a functional assay or by ELISA is shown in Figure 42-7. Patients receiving treatment with LMWH can also develop HIT, although less frequently than patients

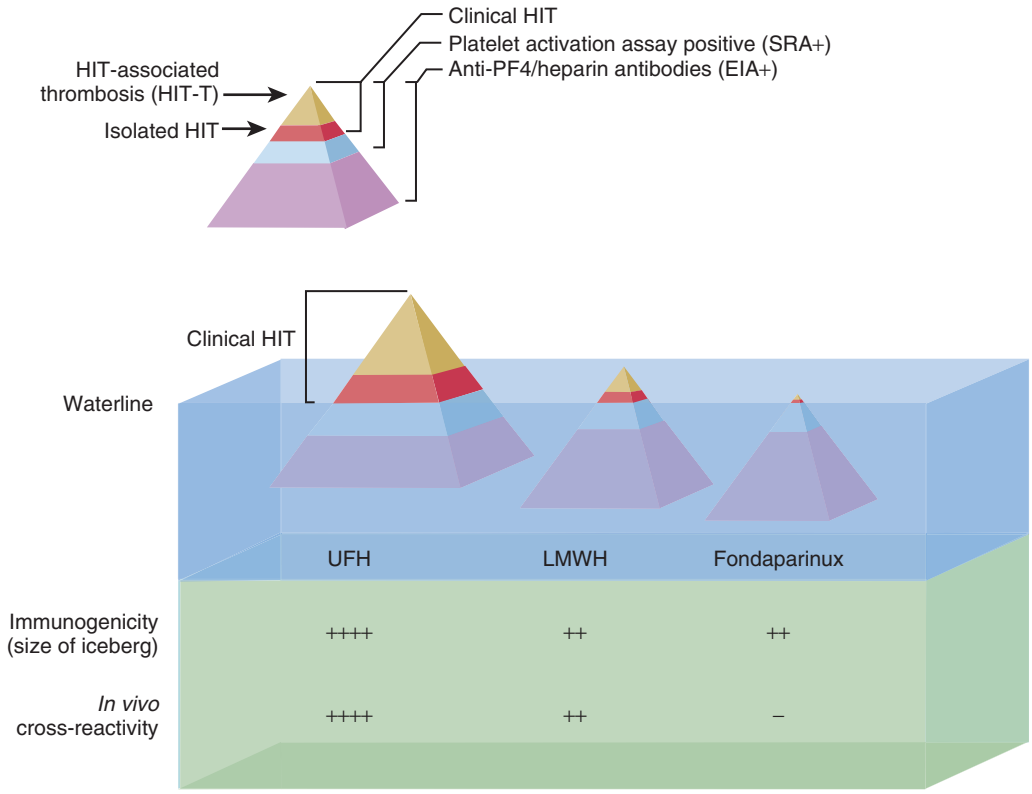


Figure 42-7 The relationship between the clinical manifestations of HIT (with or without thrombosis), the type of heparin administered, and the antibodies that cause HIT. This can be conceptualized as an "iceberg." The visible component of the iceberg (the portion above the waterline) represents clinically evident features of HIT, such as thrombocytopenia and/or thrombosis. The mass of the iceberg corresponds to the entire spectrum of anti–platelet factor 4 (PF4)/heparin antibodies generated. Some of these antibodies will be biologically active (platelet activating), and others will be non-platelet-activating, which may make them unlikely to cause clinical consequences. The type of heparin given to the patient determines the overall size of the iceberg, with unfractionated heparin (UFH) being the largest (most immunogenic), and low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) and fondaparinux having lesser immunogenicity. Also illustrated in this figure is in vivo cross-reactivity. UFH forms antigens that are readily recognized by HIT antibodies. In contrast, fondaparinux forms poorly recognized antigens. LMWH is intermediate. (Illustration by Chen AY, from Kelton JG, Warkentin TE: Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: A historical perspective, *Blood* 112:2607–2616, 2008.)

being treated with UFH. Anti-PF4/heparin antibodies that develop in a patient receiving UFH will cross-react with LMWHs, so these agents should not be administered to a patient with known HIT. Fondaparinux is the least immunogenic of the glycosaminoglycans and does not appear to cross-react with circulating anti-PF4/heparin antibodies in vivo, and fondaparinux has been safely used as an anticoagulant in patients with HIT (Warkentin et al, 2011b; Kang et al, 2015). Several patients with what appears to be fondaparinux-induced thrombocytopenia have been described (Warkentin et al, 2007), but this event is extremely rare.

The laboratory sometimes will be called upon to perform testing for HIT on individuals who have been positive for HIT at some time in the past but are currently not thrombocytopenic. Given variability among patients in the rate of disappearance of detectable antibodies, together with variability in the manifestation of an anamnestic response upon reexposure to heparin, testing may be required before reexposure to heparin is considered, as well as subsequent to the initiation of such therapy if instituted. Although it has been demonstrated that HIT-associated antibodies frequently do not recur if the patient is rechallenged with heparin more than 6 months following loss of detectable antibody (Warkentin & Sheppard, 2014), close laboratory monitoring of such rechallenged patients is critical. In the event that an anamnestic response does develop, the reemergence of antibody can be dramatic, necessitating rapid detection of falling platelet counts, as well as repeat testing for anti-PF4/heparin antibodies.

TARGET-SPECIFIC ANTICOAGULANTS

PARENTERAL AGENTS

The parenteral direct thrombin inhibitors are primarily used for the management of patients with HIT. Lepirudin, a recombinant form of the leech protein hirudin, was approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in the United States in 1998 for the treatment of patients with HIT, but production was halted in Europe in 2011 and North America in 2012 for business reasons (Kelton et al, 2013). Argatroban, a short-acting reversible direct thrombin inhibitor (half-life, 40-50 minutes), is approved in the United States for the treatment of HIT (Kelton et al, 2013). A therapeutic target of 1.5 to 3.0 times the baseline aPTT has been suggested as the effective anticoagulant range of argatroban (Kelton et al, 2013). Argatroban is metabolized in the liver and can be used in patients with impaired renal function, but it should be used with caution in patients with significant hepatic insufficiency (e.g., if the baseline PT is prolonged). Bivalirudin, a hirudin-analogue that binds to both the active and fibrin-binding sites of circulating and clot-bound thrombin (half-life, 24 minutes), is approved for use in the United States for percutaneous coronary intervention in patients who have or are at risk for HIT. When used in patients with HIT, the bivalirudin dose is adjusted to achieve a target aPTT similar to the strategy with argatroban. In addition to prolonging the aPTT, each of these agents also has an effect on the PT, most notably argatroban. The thrombin time will be markedly prolonged with each of these agents, but a dilute thrombin time (1:4 dilution of patient plasma with normal plasma) can be used to monitor these agents (Love et al, 2007).

ORAL AGENTS

Dabigatran etexilate, an oral prodrug of the direct thrombin inhibitor dabigatran, was approved by the FDA for the prevention of thromboembolic complications in patients with atrial fibrillation and for the treatment of patients with venous thromboembolism. Rivaroxaban, apixaban, and edoxaban are three factor Xa–specific inhibitors that are also approved for the treatment of patients with atrial fibrillation and venous thromboembolism. Rivaroxaban and apixaban have also received approval for thromboprophylaxis following major orthopedic surgery. Unlike the oral vitamin K antagonists, these agents are administered in fixed doses and do not require routine laboratory monitoring (Connolly et al, 2009; Granger et al, 2011; Patel et al, 2011). Measurement of the anticoagulant activity may be desirable in selected clinical settings, however, including

hemorrhage, prior to surgical procedures, recurrent thromboembolism, and in certain high-risk populations, including those at the extremes of body weight, the elderly, and those with renal insufficiency. The characteristics of these target-specific oral anticoagulants are summarized in Table 42-5.

The target-specific oral anticoagulants differ in their effects on the commonly used screening hemostasis tests, and different test reagents exhibit variable sensitivities to the individual drugs. Individual laboratories should perform dose-response studies using calibration standards to determine the sensitivity of their particular reagents to these agents. In addition, given the relatively short half-life of these drugs, interpretation of the data obtained from an individual patient needs to be considered in the context of when the most recent dose was administered. Given the unique characteristics of each agent, we will review them separately.

Dabigatran etexilate. Dabigatran has relatively little effect on the PT/INR at clinically relevant plasma concentrations, with only modest increases observed at the higher concentrations (Lindahl et al, 2011). However, considerable variability in sensitivity exists between the different thromboplastin reagents (Cuker et al, 2014). In addition, two studies have found that PT/INR results are more prolonged when performed using a point-of-care INR meter compared to results obtained using a laboratory, plasma-based PT (Van Ryn et al, 2012; Hawes et al, 2013). The aPTT is more sensitive to dabigatran than the PT, but the response is curvilinear and exhibits a varying relationship between drug level and anticoagulant effect (Van Ryn et al, 2010; Lindahl et al, 2011). The thrombin time is exquisitely sensitive to the presence of dabigatran, and a normal thrombin time can be used to effectively exclude the presence of drug anticoagulant effect. A modification of this assay, which dilutes the patient sample, has been developed as an assay that can be used to assess the anticoagulant effect of dabigatran (Van Ryn et al, 2010). The ecarin clotting time has also been shown to provide a linear response to dabigatran over a broad range (Hawes et al, 2013), but it is limited by lack of standardization, variable sensitivity of different lots of ecarin, and limited availability (Cuker et al, 2014). The importance of considering the time elapsed between when the last dose of dabigatran was taken and when the blood sample for testing was obtained is shown in Figure 42-8.

Dabigatran also has an effect on several other coagulation assays that might be obtained in these patients. The ACT is prolonged with higher concentrations of dabigatran, but this test is relatively insensitive at concentrations that would be encountered in patients taking approved therapeutic doses of the drug (Douxfils et al, 2012; Hawes et al, 2013). Thromboelastography has been reported to display a prolonged R-value in the presence of therapeutic levels of dabigatran (Davis et al, 2012), but the sensitivity of this assay to lower concentrations has not been

TABLE 42-5
Oral Target-Specific Oral Anticoagulants

	Dabigatran Etexilate	Rivaroxaban	Apixaban	Edoxaban
Target	Thrombin	Factor Xa	Factor Xa	Factor Xa
Bioavailability	6.5%	80%	~66%	~50%
Time-to-peak effect	2 hr	2-3 hr	1-2 hr	1-2 hr
Half-life	12-14 hr	7-13 hr	8-13 hr	5-11 hr
Elimination	80% renal, 20% hepatobiliary	67% renal (30% inactive), 33% hepatobiliary	25% renal, 75% hepatobiliary	35% renal, 65% hepatobiliary
Interactions	Potent P-gp inhibitors/inducers	Strong dual CYP 3A4 and P-gp inhibitors/inducers	Strong dual CYP 3A4 and P-gp inhibitors/inducers	P-gp
Antidote	No	No	No	No

gp, Glycoprotein.
Data from Yeh et al, 2012; Bauer, 2013; Graff & Harder, 2013.

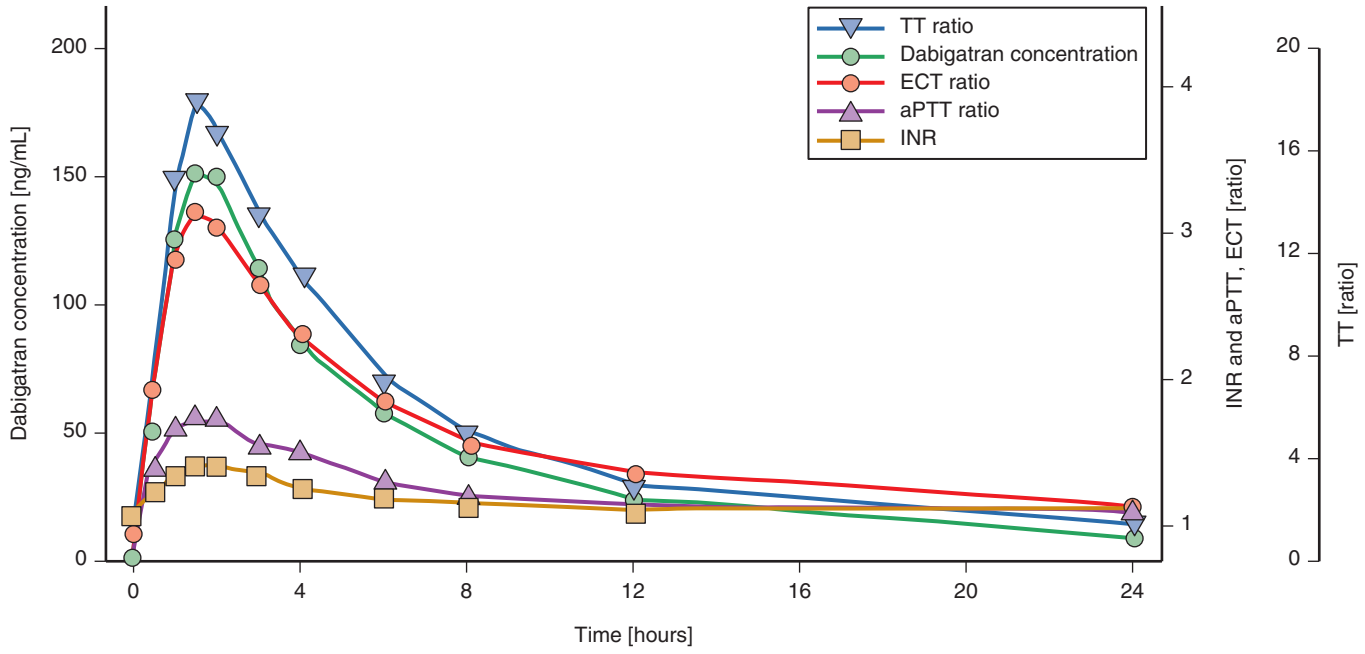


Figure 42-8 Effect of time following a single dose of dabigatran on coagulation test results. Geometric means of aPTTs, INRs, thrombin time results, ecarin clotting time results, and plasma concentrations of dabigatran are graphed against time following a single oral dose of 200 mg dabigatran etexilate (N = 6). The aPTT, thrombin time, and ecarin clotting time results are depicted as a ratio compared to the baseline value. (Illustration from van Ryn J, et al: Dabigatran etexilate—a novel, reversible, oral direct thrombin inhibitor: Interpretation of coagulation assays and reversal of anticoagulant activity, *Thromb Haemost* 103:1116–1127, 2010.)

determined. Fibrinogen levels can be significantly underestimated at higher concentrations of dabigatran with assays that use a lower amount of thrombin (Lindahl et al, 2011).

Rivaroxaban. Rivaroxaban prolongs the PT in a concentration-dependent, linear fashion, but assay sensitivity varies considerably among thromboplastin reagents (Cuker et al, 2014). At peak levels, most PT values are prolonged regardless of the reagent (Francart et al, 2014). At trough levels, however, the PT is relatively insensitive (Francart et al, 2014). The aPTT is also prolonged in a dose-dependent manner, but the relationship between rivaroxaban concentration and aPTT prolongation is nonlinear (Cuker et al, 2014). As with the PT, considerable variability exists between reagents. Neither the thrombin time nor the ecarin clot time is affected by rivaroxaban, because it has no inhibitory activity against thrombin. Several studies have demonstrated that a linear, concentration-dependent relationship can be obtained between rivaroxaban concentration and anti–factor Xa activity over a wide range of concentrations (Asmis et al, 2012). Standard curves for the anti–factor Xa assays should be generated with rivaroxaban calibrators and controls.

Apixaban. Apixaban prolongs the PT in a concentration-dependent manner, but it is relatively insensitive to the presence of apixaban at therapeutic concentrations (Douxfils et al, 2013). The aPTT is also prolonged in a concentration-dependent manner, but the response reaches a plateau at higher concentrations (Douxfils et al, 2013). As with rivaroxaban, there is no effect on the thrombin time or ecarin clotting time, and there is a linear, concentration-dependent response in an anti–factor Xa assay (Barrett et al, 2010; Douxfils et al, 2013).

Edoxaban. Edoxaban prolongs the PT in a dose-dependent, linear fashion, but there is variability in the magnitude of PT prolongation with different thromboplastin reagents (Morishima & Kamisato, 2015), and there is insufficient sensitivity at low drug levels (Cuker & Husseinzadeh, 2015). Edoxaban also prolongs the aPTT, although it is relatively insensitive to on-therapy levels of the drug (Cuker & Husseinzadeh, 2015). Anti–factor Xa activity correlates linearly with edoxaban over a broad range of concentrations from typical trough to peak levels (Cuker & Husseinzadeh, 2015).

Although the target-specific oral anticoagulants have different effects on the individual coagulation assays, which vary depending on the individual reagents and instruments being used, there are certain approaches that can be suggested when the laboratory is asked to evaluate a particular patient sample. Important information that would help with interpretation of the data would include the specific drug administered, the time since the last dose, and clinical objectives for which the data are needed. A suggested approach is provided in Table 42-6.

ANTIPLATELET THERAPY

Several classes of compounds are currently used to diminish or block platelet activity (Michelson, 2010). These include the cyclooxygenase inhibitor aspirin, adenosine diphosphate (ADP) receptor antagonists, the phosphodiesterase inhibitor dipyridamole, and platelet surface glycoprotein (GP) IIb/IIIa receptor antagonists. In contrast to treatment with warfarin or heparin, antiplatelet therapy traditionally has not been as closely monitored in the clinical laboratory. Increasingly, however, the laboratory, including point-of-care strategies, is coming to play a greater role. Questions that can potentially be answered by laboratory testing include the following: (1) whether or not a patient's platelets are resistant to inhibition by a particular agent; (2) what dose of agent is required to achieve a desired intensity of inhibition; (3) when, following termination of therapy, platelet function has returned to an adequate level to withstand significant hemostatic challenges such as surgery; and (4) whether thrombocytopenia observed following antiplatelet therapy may reasonably be attributed to the specific therapy itself.

ASPIRIN

No currently used drug has a longer and more eventful history than aspirin (Rosendaal & Reitsma, 2014). Aspirin is rapidly absorbed but has a short half-life (~15-20 minutes) due to hepatic clearance. It irreversibly acetylates cyclooxygenase-1 and -2. In the case of the anucleate platelet, this effectively means that recovery from aspirin inhibition occurs only as platelets newly released from megakaryocytes enter the circulation. Although human platelets circulate in the blood for an average of 10 days, substantial normalization of platelet functional responsiveness occurs within 5 to 7 days following termination of aspirin therapy. This phenomenon may be due to the ability of thromboxane A2, the active product from the platelet cyclooxygenase pathway, released by newly released platelets unaffected by aspirin, to stimulate nearby platelets whose cyclooxygenase has been acetylated by aspirin. However, individual patient responses to therapeutic aspirin administration vary (Sanderson et al, 2005). Because relative resistance to the platelet inhibitory effects of aspirin may imply the need for additional or alternative antiplatelet treatment in some clinical settings, the laboratory may play a useful role in measuring such resistance.

Two main approaches have been used to assess platelet resistance to aspirin. First, because platelets are the principal cell type to produce thromboxane, assay of this substance provides a measure of the activity of platelet cyclooxygenase. Thromboxane A2 undergoes conversion to thromboxane B2 and thence to the more stable 11-dehydro-thromboxane B2, and measurement of this metabolite has been used as an indirect measure of platelet cyclooxygenase activity (Catella et al, 1986). Assay of urinary 11-dehydro-thromboxane B2 has been employed for this purpose (Eikelboom et al, 2002).

A second approach that more directly assesses actual platelet function is the measurement of platelet aggregation following stimulation of platelets in vitro by an agonist entirely dependent on an intact cyclooxygenase pathway. Arachidonic acid is typically employed as an agonist using platelet-rich plasma and light transmittance aggregometry. Of great importance for the validation of such functional assays, however, is rigorous standardization of the testing procedure and inclusion of appropriate controls. Alternative methods have been developed to provide comparable information directly on anticoagulated whole blood. For example, the VerifyNow (Accumetrics, San Diego, Calif.) instrument permits optical platelet aggregation studies to be performed using whole blood. In this approach, fibrinogen-coated plastic beads impregnated with an infrared dye are added to citrated whole blood. Following the addition of arachidonic acid, the fibrinogen-coated beads coaggregate with the platelets, presumably through fibrinogen binding to the stimulated platelets through the conformationally active forms of platelet surface glycoprotein IIb/IIIa (GPIIb/IIIa). Whereas erythrocytes had previously precluded optical aggregometry with whole blood, the introduction of infrared techniques

TABLE 42-6
Suggested Approach to Laboratory Assessment of the Target-Specific Oral Anticoagulants

	DETERMINE PRESENCE OF DRUG *BELOW* REPORTED ON-THERAPY DRUG LEVELS		ESTIMATE DRUG LEVELS WITHIN ON-THERAPY RANGE		ESTIMATE DRUG LEVELS *ABOVE* REPORTED ON-THERAPY DRUG LEVELS	
Drug	**Suggested Tests**	**Interpretation**	**Suggested Tests**	**Interpretation**	**Suggested Tests**	**Interpretation**
Dabigatran	TCT	Normal TCT likely excludes clinically relevant drug levels	Dilute TCT, ECT	May help to assess compliance	Dilute TCT, ECT	Provides best approach to quantitate excess drug levels
Rivaroxaban, apixaban, and edoxaban	Anti–factor Xa	Normal anti–factor Xa likely excludes clinically relevant drug levels	Anti–factor Xa	May help to assess compliance	Anti–factor Xa	Provides best approach to quantitate excess drug levels

ECT, Ecarin clotting time; *TCT,* thrombin clotting time.
Adapted from Cuker et al, 2014.

TABLE 42-7
P2Y12 ADP Receptor Antagonists

Name	Mechanism of Action	Time to Maximum Level	Elimination Half-Life	Notes
Clopidogrel	Irreversible inhibition	1 hour for circulating drug; 3-7 days for maximal antiplatelet effect	8 hours for circulating drug	More rapid inhibition of platelet function can be achieved with a loading dose; antiplatelet effect lasts up to 10 days
Prasugrel	Irreversible inhibition	30 minutes	7 hours	Antiplatelet effect lasts 5-7 days
Ticagrelor	Reversible inhibition	1.5 hours	7 hours	Residual antiplatelet effect decreased to 30% after ~2.5 days

Data from Eikelboom et al, 2012; Ortel, 2012.

has permitted rapid quantitation of platelet aggregation (as increasing infrared light transmittance) and of its inhibition by aspirin or other antiplatelet agents (Smith et al, 1999; Wang et al, 2003).

In addition to aggregometry, other methods may be employed to detect activation of the platelet by agonists, and, consequently, inhibition of that activation by antiplatelet therapies. Flow cytometry may be used for this purpose through the detection of markers of platelet activation. Translocation of P-selectin from the intracellular α-granule of the resting platelet to the extracellular membrane following sufficient platelet stimulation provides one such marker, although the relatively small number of P-selectin molecules detectable even on the fully activated platelet limits the dynamic range of this marker (Michelson et al, 2001). Antibodies sensitive to conformational change in the GPIIb/IIIa molecule associated with platelet activation (e.g., PAC-1) potentially offer a greater dynamic range of signal, extending from resting to fully activated platelets (Michelson, 2009).

P2Y12 INHIBITORS

Several drugs that interfere with ADP signaling through the P2Y12 receptor are available (Table 42-7). Clopidogrel and prasugrel are thienopyridines that are metabolized by the cytochrome P450 system in the liver to active agents that irreversibly inhibit platelet function. In contrast, ticagrelor is a direct-acting, reversible P2Y12 antagonist that exhibits a rapid onset and offset of antiplatelet effect (Michelson, 2010). Efforts to detect residual ADP purinergic P2Y12 receptors on the platelet surface following treatment by P2Y12 receptor antagonists have been difficult. The reasons for this are several-fold. First, the presence on the platelet surface of the additional P2Y1 class of ADP receptors that remains responsive to ADP following P2Y12 receptor antagonism complicates interpretation of residual responsiveness to ADP challenge in treated patients. Second, analysis of P2Y12 receptor antagonist therapy is almost universally undertaken in the setting of patients who are taking aspirin as well as a P2Y12 antagonist. Third, it has become increasingly common for patients to be started on combined P2Y12 receptor antagonist and aspirin therapy very early in the course of their evaluation for possible acute coronary syndrome or other potentially catastrophic thrombotic disorders. Accordingly, there is no opportunity in such instances to establish a baseline platelet function study that might be used to assess reduction in responsiveness following initiation of P2Y12 receptor antagonist therapy. Rather than identifying a true reduction in responsiveness that can reliably be attributed to antiplatelet therapy, the laboratory will be able to provide only a snapshot of platelet responsiveness for the patient already under treatment.

Through comparison of response to ADP by the patient's platelets versus their responsiveness to other platelet agonists, derived estimates of the inhibition attributable to P2Y12 receptor antagonism have been proposed. As recently demonstrated, for levels of derived percent inhibition greater than approximately 20%, the correspondence of these values to true percent reduction of posttreatment responses compared with pretreatment responses using the VerifyNow whole blood device appears reasonably good (Fig. 42-9) (Varenhorst et al, 2009). In addition to whole blood aggregation, assessments of responsiveness to ADP receptor antagonists may be made by traditional light transmittance aggregometry of patient platelet-rich plasma, arguably a gold standard for assessment of platelet function. Flow cytometric approaches have also been introduced that assess the phosphorylation of intracellular vasodilator-stimulated phosphoprotein—the degree of which reflects with some measure of specificity the downstream signaling following the binding of ADP to platelet P2Y12 receptors (Harrison, 2012).

Efforts to sort out the relative merits of these different methods have been described in a number of recent publications (Alstrom et al, 2009; Gremmel et al, 2009; Varenhorst et al, 2009; Bidet et al, 2010; Bouman et al, 2010; Cuisset et al, 2010). Nevertheless, caution is still in order with respect to how much reliance can be placed upon current assays of platelet function to guide therapy (Chan et al, 2014). Lordkipanidze and colleagues (2008), at the conclusion of a double-blind study assessing four different methodologic approaches in 116 patients with coronary artery disease, remarked, "The assessment of platelet function inhibition by clopidogrel is highly test-specific. Decision to increase clopidogrel dosage may vary on the basis of the assay used, thus highlighting the need for unambiguous guidelines with respect to assay selection, as platelet function assays are not interchangeable. At present, platelet function testing evaluating clopidogrel efficacy cannot be recommended in routine clinical practice." Similarly, based on a study of 1069 patients on clopidogrel undergoing elective coronary stent implantation, caution was expressed by the authors, who concluded, "None of the tests provided accurate prognostic information to identify low-risk patients at higher risk of bleeding following stent implantation" (Breet et al, 2010). These conclusions were confirmed by the GRAVITAS investigators (Price et al, 2011), who found that using a high-dose clopidogrel regimen in patients with high on-treatment platelet reactivity defined by the VerifyNow assay did not reduce the incidence of death from cardiovascular causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or stent thrombosis compared to a standard-dose regimen of clopidogrel. Accordingly, it appears fair to say that the clinical usefulness of platelet function testing related to P2Y12 receptor inhibition to date has been modest at best.

Analogous to the use of pharmacogenetics to guide oral anticoagulant therapy with warfarin (reviewed earlier), significant effort has been devoted to developing a role for assessing genotypic variations affecting the metabolism of P2Y12 inhibitors. In particular, clopidogrel is a prodrug that acquires its ability to antagonize P2Y12 receptors only after it has been transformed in vivo to active metabolite. Cytochrome (CYP) 2C19 plays

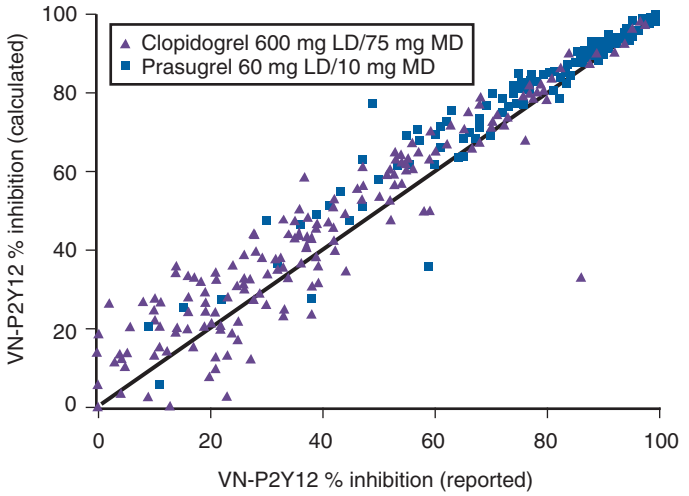


Figure 42-9 Association of "percent inhibition" reported by VerifyNow P2Y12 (*x*-axis) based solely on posttreatment measurement and calculated percent inhibition (*y*-axis) based on decrease in PRU (P2Y12 reaction units) posttreatment compared with pretreatment baseline PRU. Correlation coefficient (r) was calculated using Lin's concordance method. ■, Prasugrel; ▲, clopidogrel; filled line, unity line. (From Varenhorst C, James S, Erlinge D, et al: Assessment of P2Y(12) inhibition with the point-of-care device VerifyNow P2Y12 in patients treated with prasugrel or clopidogrel coadministered with aspirin, *Am Heart J* 157:562.e1–9, 2009.)

an important role in the in vivo bioactivation of clopidogrel (Kazui et al, 2010), and certain polymorphisms have been found to be associated with a lower clopidogrel responsiveness (Hulot et al, 2006; Brandt et al, 2007) and a higher risk of adverse cardiac events (Sibbing et al, 2009; Simon et al, 2009). The potential significance of this was spotlighted by a warning label mandated for Plavix (clopidogrel) by the FDA in March 2010, accompanied by the following announcement on the FDA website (http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/PostmarketDrugSafetyInformationforPatientsandProviders/ucm203888.htm):

> The liver enzyme CYP2C19 is primarily responsible for the formation of the active metabolite of Plavix. Pharmacokinetic and antiplatelet tests of the active metabolite of Plavix show that the drug levels and antiplatelet effects differ depending on the genotype of the CYP2C19 enzyme. The following represent the different alleles of CYP2C19 that make up a patient's genotype:
> - The CYP2C19*1 allele has fully functional metabolism of Plavix.
> - The CYP2C19*2 and *3 alleles have no functional metabolism of Plavix. These two alleles account for most of the reduced function alleles in patients of Caucasian (85%) and Asian (99%) descent classified as poor metabolizers.
> - The CYP2C19*4, *5, *6, *7, and *8 and other alleles may be associated with absent or reduced metabolism of Plavix but are less frequent than the CYP2C19*2 and *3 alleles.
>
> A patient with two loss-of-function alleles (as defined above) will have poor metabolizer status.

Shortly after the appearance of this boxed warning, the American College of Cardiology Foundation (ACCF) and the American Heart Association (AHA) published a consensus document providing guidance on this issue (Holmes et al, 2010). These groups recommended that "adherence to existing ACCF/AHA guidelines for the use of antiplatelet therapy should remain the foundation for therapy" and "the evidence base is insufficient to recommend either routine genetic or platelet function testing at the present time" (Holmes et al, 2010). It was also noted that there was no information that routine testing improved the outcome in subgroups of patients with specific genotypes. Nevertheless, the extent to which genotyping of individual patients actually contributes to their clinical management continues to be a subject of investigation (Shuldiner et al, 2009; Sibbing et al, 2010; Tresukosol et al, 2014).

GLYCOPROTEIN IIb/IIIa INHIBITORS

Therapeutic agents that interfere with the platelet surface receptor GPIIb/IIIa include abciximab, eptifibatide, and tirofiban (Eikelboom et al, 2012). These agents are primarily used in the acute setting, and generally laboratory assessment of residual platelet function is not necessary. In those situations where this might be needed, platelet aggregation studies using whole blood as well as platelet-rich plasma have proven helpful in defined clinical settings such as percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) for assessing the degree of residual platelet reactivity following inhibition of platelets by abciximab, eptifibatide, and other antagonists of the platelet GPIIb/IIIa complex (Hezard et al, 2000; Matzdorff et al, 2001). Flow cytometric approaches have also been used to monitor residual functionality of the GPIIb/IIIa complex following treatment of patients with GPIIb/IIIa inhibitors (Hezard et al, 2000; Matzdorff et al, 2001), as well as to quantify platelet microparticles as an indicator of platelet activation (Craft et al, 2004).

Following the introduction of GPIIb/IIIa antagonists in PTCA and other invasive procedures, recognition that thrombocytopenia can complicate administration of this drug has been increasing (Abrams & Cines, 2004; Aster et al, 2009). In some instances, this fall in the platelet count appears to be due to an immediate interaction between drug and platelet, possibly caused by preformed drug-dependent antibodies (Aster et al, 2004). This thrombocytopenia with all of the currently available agents is driven by naturally occurring antibodies and may occur in patients not previously exposed to the drug. In other instances, the time course of the thrombocytopenia suggests the development of antibodies to the drug itself or to a neo-epitope formed by binding of the drug to its platelet target (Curtis et al, 2002, 2004; Nurden et al, 2004). Although definitively establishing such a drug-dependent cause by laboratory methods is difficult and at times may simply prove elusive, available methods currently employed for evaluation of such acquired thrombocytopenia include flow cytometry, monoclonal antibody-specific immobilization of platelet antigens, and related techniques.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Ageno W, Gallus AS, et al: Oral anticoagulant therapy: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines, *Chest* 141(2 Suppl):e44S–e88S, 2012.
Excellent comprehensive review of oral anticoagulant therapy. Review on the diagnosis and management of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia.

Aster RH, Curtis BR, et al: Thrombocytopenia resulting from sensitivity to GPIIb-IIIa inhibitors, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30(5):569–577, 2004.
Important review of thrombocytopenia secondary to antiplatelet therapy.

Chan NC, Eikelboom JW, et al: Role of phenotypic and genetic testing in managing clopidogrel therapy, *Blood* 124(5):689–699, 2014.
Excellent review on the role of laboratory testing in managing therapy with clopidogrel.

Cuker A, Siegal DM, et al: Laboratory measurement of the anticoagulant activity of the non-vitamin K oral anticoagulants, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 64(11):1128–1139, 2014.
Reviews the role of the laboratory in evaluating the target-specific oral anticoagulants.

Garcia DA, Baglin TP, et al: Parenteral anticoagulants: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines, *Chest* 141(2 Suppl):e24S–e43S, 2012.
Summarizes the characteristic properties of heparin, low molecular weight heparin, fondaparinux, and the parenteral direct thrombin inhibitors.

Greinacher A: Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *N Engl J Med* 373:252–261, 2015.
Review on the diagnosis and management of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia.

Holmes DR Jr, Dehmer GJ, et al: ACCF/AHA Clopidogrel clinical alert: approaches to the FDA "boxed warning": A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation Task Force on Clinical Expert Consensus Documents and the American Heart Association, *Circulation* 122(5):537–557, 2010.
Response to the FDA boxed warning concerning clopidogrel.

Kelton JG, Arnold DM, et al: Nonheparin anticoagulants for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *N Engl J Med* 368(8):737–744, 2013.
Summarizes the properties and use of the parenteral direct thrombin inhibitors.

Kimmel SE, French B, et al: A pharmacogenetic versus a clinical algorithm for warfarin dosing, *N Engl J Med* 369(24):2283–2293, 2013.
Randomized trial investigating the utility of pharmacogenetic data in the initial management of warfarin therapy.

REFERENCES

Abrams CS, Cines DB: Thrombocytopenia after treatment with platelet glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors, *Curr Hematol Rep* 3(2):143–147, 2004.

Adcock DM, Johnston M: Evaluation of frozen plasma calibrants for enhanced standardization of the international normalized ratio (INR): A multi-center study, *Thromb Haemost* 87(1):74–79, 2002.

Ageno W, Gallus AS, et al: Oral anticoagulant therapy: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines, *Chest* 141(2 Suppl):e44S–e88S, 2012.

Aithal GP, Day CP, et al: Association of polymorphisms in the cytochrome P450 CYP2C9 with warfarin dose requirement and risk of bleeding complications, *Lancet* 353(9154):717–719, 1999.

Alstrom U, Granath F, et al: Platelet inhibition assessed with VerifyNow, flow cytometry and PlateletMapping in patients undergoing heart surgery, *Thromb Res* 124(5):572–577, 2009.

Althaus K, Strobel U, et al: Combined use of the high heparin step and optical density to optimize diagnostic sensitivity and specificity of an anti-PF4/heparin enzyme-immunoassay, *Thromb Res* 128(3):256–260, 2011.

Amiral J, Marfaing-Koka A, et al: Presence of autoantibodies to interleukin-8 or neutrophil-activating peptide-2 in patients with heparin-associated thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 88(2):410–416, 1996.

Anderson JL, Horne BD, et al: A randomized and clinical effectiveness trial comparing two pharmacogenetic algorithms and standard care for individualizing warfarin dosing (CoumaGen-II), *Circulation* 125(16):1997–2005, 2012.

Ansell J, Hirsh J, et al: Pharmacology and management of the vitamin K antagonists: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines (8th Edition), *Chest* 133(6 Suppl):160S–198S, 2008.

Arepally GM, Ortel TL: Clinical practice: Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *N Engl J Med* 355(8):809–817, 2006.

Arepally GM, Ortel TL: Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *Annu Rev Med* 61:77–90, 2010.

Asmis LM, Alberio L, et al: Rivaroxaban: Quantification by anti-FXa assay and influence on coagulation tests—A study in 9 Swiss laboratories, *Thromb Res* 129(4):492–498, 2012.

Aster RH, Curtis BR, et al: Drug-induced immune thrombocytopenia: Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and management, *J Thromb Haemost* 7(6):911–918, 2009.

Barrett YC, Wang Z, et al: Clinical laboratory measurement of direct factor Xa inhibitors: Anti-Xa assay is preferable to prothrombin time assay, *Thromb Haemost* 104(6):1263–1271, 2010.

Basu D, Gallus A, et al: A prospective study of the value of monitoring heparin treatment with the activated partial thromboplastin time, *N Engl J Med* 287(7):324–327, 1972.

Bauer KA: Pros and cons of new oral anticoagulants, *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 2013:464–470, 2013.

Berkompas DC: Coumadin skin necrosis in a patient with a free protein S deficiency: case report and literature review, *Indiana Med* 84(11):788–791, 1991.

Bharadwaj J, Jayaraman C, et al: Heparin resistance, *Lab Hematol* 9(3):125–131, 2003.

Bidet A, Jais C, et al: VerifyNow and VASP phosphorylation assays give similar results for patients receiving clopidogrel, but they do not always correlate with platelet aggregation, *Platelets* 21(2):94–100, 2010.

Boneu B, de Moerloose P: How and when to monitor a patient treated with low molecular weight heparin, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 27(5):519–522, 2001.

Bongiorno RA, Nutescu EA: Generic warfarin: Implications for clinical practice and perceptions of anticoagulation providers, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30(6): 619–626, 2004.

Bouman HJ, Parlak E, et al: Which platelet function test is suitable to monitor clopidogrel responsiveness? A pharmacokinetic analysis on the active metabolite of clopidogrel, *J Thromb Haemost* 8(3):482–488, 2010.

Bounameaux H, de Moerloose P: Is laboratory monitoring of low-molecular-weight heparin therapy necessary? No, *J Thromb Haemost* 2(4):551–554, 2004.

Brandt JT, Close SL, et al: Common polymorphisms of CYP2C19 and CYP2C9 affect the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic response to clopidogrel but not prasugrel, *J Thromb Haemost* 5(12):2429–2436, 2007.

Breet NJ, van Werkum JW, et al: Comparison of platelet function tests in predicting clinical outcome in patients undergoing coronary stent implantation, *JAMA* 303(8):754–762, 2010.

Catella F, Healy D, et al: 11-Dehydrothromboxane B2: A quantitative index of thromboxane A2 formation in the human circulation, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 83(16):5861–5865, 1986.

Connolly SJ, Ezekowitz MD, et al: Dabigatran versus warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation, *N Engl J Med* 361(12):1139–1151, 2009.

Craft JA, Masci PP, et al: Increased platelet-derived microparticles in the coronary circulation of percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty patients, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 15(6):475–482, 2004.

Cuisset T, Frere C, et al: Clopidogrel response: Head-to-head comparison of different platelet assays to identify clopidogrel non responder patients after coronary stenting, *Arch Cardiovasc Dis* 103(1):39–45, 2010.

Cuker A, Husseinzadeh H: Laboratory measurement of the anticoagulant activity of edoxaban: A systematic review, *J Thromb Thrombolysis* 39:288–294, 2015.

Cuker A, Ortel TL: ASH evidence-based guidelines: Is the IgG-specific anti-PF4/heparin ELISA superior to the polyspecific ELISA in the laboratory diagnosis of HIT? *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 250–252, 2009.

Cuker A, Ptashkin B, et al: Interlaboratory agreement in the monitoring of unfractionated heparin using the anti-factor Xa-correlated activated partial thromboplastin time, *J Thromb Haemost* 7(1):80–86, 2009.

Cunningham MT, Johnson GF, et al: The reliability of manufacturer-determined, instrument-specific international sensitivity index values for calculating the international normalized ratio, *Am J Clin Pathol* 102(1):128–133, 1994.

Curtis BR, Divgi A, et al: Delayed thrombocytopenia after treatment with abciximab: A distinct clinical entity associated with the immune response to the drug, *J Thromb Haemost* 2(6):985–992, 2004.

Curtis BR, Swyers J, et al: Thrombocytopenia after second exposure to abciximab is caused by antibodies that recognize abciximab-coated platelets, *Blood* 99(6):2054–2059, 2002.

D'Angelo A, Seveso MP, D'Angelo SV, et al: Comparison of two automated coagulometers and the manual tilt-tube method for the determination of prothrombin time, *Am J Clin Pathol* 92(3):321–328, 1989.

Davis PK, Musunuru H, et al: The ex vivo reversibility of dabigatran-induced whole-blood coagulopathy as monitored by thromboelastography: Mechanistic implications for clinical medicine, *Thromb Haemost* 108(3):586–588, 2012.

Douxfils J, Chatelain C, et al: Impact of apixaban on routine and specific coagulation assays: A practical laboratory guide, *Thromb Haemost* 110(2):283–294, 2013.

Douxfils J, Mullier F, et al: Impact of dabigatran on a large panel of routine or specific coagulation assays. Laboratory recommendations for monitoring of dabigatran etexilate, *Thromb Haemost* 107(5):985–997, 2012.

Edson JR, Krivit W, et al: Kaolin partial thromboplastin time: High levels of procoagulants producing short clotting times or masking deficiencies of other procoagulants or low concentrations of anticoagulants, *J Lab Clin Med* 70(3):463–470, 1967.

Eichler P, Budde U, et al: First workshop for detection of heparin-induced antibodies: Validation of the heparin-induced platelet-activation test (HIPA) in comparison with a PF4/heparin ELISA, *Thromb Haemost* 81(4):625–629, 1999.

Eikelboom JW, Hirsh J, et al: Aspirin-resistant thromboxane biosynthesis and the risk of myocardial infarction, stroke, or cardiovascular death in patients at high risk for cardiovascular events, *Circulation* 105(14): 1650–1655, 2002.

Eikelboom JW, Hirsh J, et al: Antiplatelet drugs: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines, *Chest* 141(2 Suppl):e89S–e119S, 2012.

Epstein RS, Moyer TP, et al: Warfarin genotyping reduces hospitalization rates results from the MM-WES (Medco-Mayo Warfarin Effectiveness study), *J Am Coll Cardiol* 55(25):2804–2812, 2010.

Favaloro EJ, Adcock DM: Standardization of the INR: How good is your laboratory's INR and can it be improved? *Semin Thromb Hemost* 34(7):593–603, 2008.

Favaloro EJ, McVicker W, et al: Improving the harmonisation of the International Normalized Ratio (INR): Time to think outside the box? *Clin Chem Lab Med* 48(8):1079–1090, 2010.

Finley A, Greenberg C: Review article: Heparin sensitivity and resistance: Management during cardiopulmonary bypass, *Anesth Analg* 116(6):1210–1222, 2013.

Francart SJ, Hawes EM, et al: Performance of coagulation tests in patients on therapeutic doses of rivaroxaban. A cross-sectional pharmacodynamic study based on peak and trough plasma levels, *Thromb Haemost* 111(6):1133–1140, 2014.

Francis JL, Groce JB 3rd: Challenges in variation and responsiveness of unfractionated heparin, *Pharmacotherapy* 24(8 Pt 2):108S–119S, 2004.

Gage BF, Eby C, et al: Use of pharmacogenetic and clinical factors to predict the therapeutic dose of warfarin, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 84(3):326–331, 2008.

Graff J, Harder S: Anticoagulant therapy with the oral direct factor Xa inhibitors rivaroxaban, apixaban and edoxaban and the thrombin inhibitor dabigatran etexilate in patients with hepatic impairment, *Clin Pharmacokinet* 52(4):243–254, 2013.

Granger CB, Alexander JH, et al: Apixaban versus warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation, *N Engl J Med* 365(11):981–992, 2011.

Gray E, Mulloy B, et al: Heparin and low-molecular-weight heparin, *Thromb Haemost* 99(5):807–818, 2008.

Greinacher A, Holtfreter B, et al: Association of natural anti-platelet factor 4/heparin antibodies with periodontal disease, *Blood* 118(5):1395–1401, 2011.

Greinacher A, Juhl D, et al: Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: A prospective study on the incidence, platelet-activating capacity and clinical significance of antiplatelet factor 4/heparin antibodies of the IgG, IgM, and IgA classes, *J Thromb Haemost* 5(8):1666–1673, 2007.

Greinacher A, Kohlmann T, et al: The temporal profile of the anti-PF4/heparin immune response, *Blood* 113(20):4970–4976, 2009.

Greinacher A, Potzsch B, et al: Heparin-associated thrombocytopenia: Isolation of the antibody and characterization of a multimolecular PF4-heparin complex as the major antigen, *Thromb Haemost* 71(2):247–251, 1994.

Gremmel T, Steiner S, et al: Comparison of methods to evaluate clopidogrel-mediated platelet inhibition after percutaneous intervention with stent implantation, *Thromb Haemost* 101(2):333–339, 2009.

Harenberg J: Is laboratory monitoring of low-molecular-weight heparin therapy necessary? Yes, *J Thromb Haemost* 2(4):547–550, 2004.

Harrison P: Advances in the monitoring of P2Y12 therapy, *Platelets* 23(7):510–525, 2012.

Hawes EM, Deal AM, et al: Performance of coagulation tests in patients on therapeutic doses of dabigatran: a cross-sectional pharmacodynamic study based on peak and trough plasma levels, *J Thromb Haemost* 11(8): 1493–1502, 2013.

Hezard N, Metz D, et al: Use of the PFA-100 apparatus to assess platelet function in patients undergoing PTCA during and after infusion of c7E3 Fab in the presence of other antiplatelet agents, *Thromb Haemost* 83(4):540–544, 2000.

Hulot JS, Bura A, et al: Cytochrome P450 2C19 loss-of-function polymorphism is a major determinant of clopidogrel responsiveness in healthy subjects, *Blood* 108(7):2244–2247, 2006.

Hursting MJ, Zehnder JL, et al: The International Normalized Ratio during concurrent warfarin and argatroban anticoagulation: Differential contributions of each agent and effects of the choice of thromboplastin used, *Clin Chem* 45(3):409–412, 1999.

Kang M, Alahmadi M, et al: Fondaparinux for the treatment of suspected heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: A propensity score-matched study, *Blood* 125(6): 924–929, 2015.

Kazui M, Nishiya Y, et al: Identification of the human cytochrome P450 enzymes involved in the two oxidative steps in the bioactivation of clopidogrel to its pharmacologically active metabolite, *Drug Metab Dispos* 38(1):92–99, 2010.

Kearon C, Akl EA, et al: Antithrombotic therapy for VTE disease: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of

Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines, *Chest* 141(2 Suppl):e419S–e494S, 2012.
Kirkel D, Lin TW, et al: Asymptomatic factor VII deficiency: Gene analysis and structure-function relationships, *Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis* 21(1):91–94, 2010.
Kirkwood TB: Calibration of reference thromboplastins and standardisation of the prothrombin time ratio, *Thromb Haemost* 49(3):238–244, 1983.
Kitchen S, Jennings I, et al: Wide variability in the sensitivity of APTT reagents for monitoring of heparin dosage, *J Clin Pathol* 49(1):10–14, 1996.
Kitchen S, Preston FE: Standardization of prothrombin time for laboratory control of oral anticoagulant therapy, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 25(1):17–25, 1999.
Krajewski KC: Inability to achieve a therapeutic INR value while on concurrent warfarin and rifampin, *J Clin Pharmacol* 50(6):710–713, 2010.
Leaning KE, Ansell JE: Advances in the monitoring of oral anticoagulation: Point-of-care testing, patient self-monitoring, and patient self-management, *J Thromb Thrombolysis* 3(4):377–383, 1996.
Lehman CM, Rettmann JA, et al: Comparative performance of three anti-factor Xa heparin assays in patients in a medical intensive care unit receiving intravenous, unfractionated heparin, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126(3):416–421, 2006.
Lindahl TL, Baghaei F, et al: Effects of the oral, direct thrombin inhibitor dabigatran on five common coagulation assays, *Thromb Haemost* 105(2):371–378, 2011.
Linkins LA, Dans AL, et al: Treatment and prevention of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines, *Chest* 141(2 Suppl):e495S–e530S, 2012.
Lo GK, Juhl D, et al: Evaluation of pretest clinical score (4 T's) for the diagnosis of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia in two clinical settings, *J Thromb Haemost* 4(4):759–765, 2006.
Lombardi R, Chantarangkul V, et al: Measurement of warfarin in plasma by high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and its correlation with the international normalized ratio, *Thromb Res* 111(4–5):281–284, 2003.
Lordkipanidze M, Pharand C, et al: Comparison of four tests to assess inhibition of platelet function by clopidogrel in stable coronary artery disease patients, *Eur Heart J* 29(23):2877–2885, 2008.
Love JE, Ferrell C, et al: Monitoring direct thrombin inhibitors with a plasma diluted thrombin time, *Thromb Haemost* 98(1):234–242, 2007.
Matzdorff AC, Kuhnel G, et al: Comparison of GP IIB/IIIA inhibitors and their activity as measured by aggregometry, flow cytometry, single platelet counting, and the rapid platelet function analyzer, *J Thromb Thrombolysis* 12(2):129–139, 2001.
McFarland J, Lochowicz A, et al: Improving the specificity of the PF4 ELISA in diagnosing heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *Am J Hematol* 87(8):776–781, 2012.
McGehee WG, Klotz TA, et al: Coumarin necrosis associated with hereditary protein C deficiency, *Ann Intern Med* 101(1):59–60, 1984.
Michelson AD: Methods for the measurement of platelet function, *Am J Cardiol* 103(Suppl):20A–26A, 2009.
Michelson AD: Antiplatelet therapies for the treatment of cardiovascular disease, *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 9(2):154–169, 2010.
Michelson AD, Barnard MR, et al: Circulating monocyte-platelet aggregates are a more sensitive marker of in vivo platelet activation than platelet surface p-selectin. Studies in baboons, human coronary intervention, and human acute myocardial infarction, *Circulation* 104:1533–1537, 2001.
Moll S, Ortel TL: Monitoring warfarin therapy in patients with lupus anticoagulants, *Ann Intern Med* 127(3):177–185, 1997.
Morishima Y, Kamisato C: Laboratory measurements of the oral direct factor Xa inhibitor edoxaban. Comparison of prothrombin time, activated partial thromboplastin time, and thrombin generation assay, *Am J Clin Pathol* 143:241–247, 2015.
Mullier F, Bailly N, et al: Contribution of platelet microparticles generation assay to the diagnosis of type II heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *Thromb Haemost* 103(6):1277–1281, 2010.
Nagler M, Haslauer M, et al: Fondaparinux—Data on efficacy and safety in special situations, *Thromb Res* 129(4):407–417, 2012.
Nurden P, Clofent-Sanchez G, et al: Delayed immunologic thrombocytopenia induced by abciximab, *Thromb Haemost* 92(4):820–828, 2004.
Nutescu EA: Point of care monitors for oral anticoagulant therapy, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 30(6):697–702, 2004.
Olson JD, Arkin CF, et al: College of American Pathologists Conference XXXI on laboratory monitoring of anticoagulant therapy: Laboratory monitoring of unfractionated heparin therapy, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 122(9):782–798, 1998.
O'Reilly RA, Aggeler PM, et al: Hereditary transmission of exceptional resistance to coumarin anticoagulant drugs. The first reported kindred, *N Engl J Med* 271:809–815, 1964.
Ortel TL: Perioperative management of patients on chronic antithrombotic therapy, *Blood* 120(24):4699–4705, 2012.
Patel MR, Mahaffey KW, et al: Rivaroxaban versus warfarin in nonvalvular atrial fibrillation, *N Engl J Med* 365(10):883–891, 2011.
Pirmohamed M, Burnside G, et al: A randomized trial of genotype-guided dosing of warfarin, *N Engl J Med* 369(24):2294–2303, 2013.
Poley S, Mempel W: Laboratory diagnosis of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: Advantages of a functional flow cytometric test in comparison to the heparin-induced platelet-activation test, *Eur J Haematol* 66(4):253–262, 2001.
Pollak ES, Russell TT, et al: Asymptomatic factor VII deficiency in African Americans, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126(1):128–132, 2006.
Poller L: International Normalized Ratios (INR): The first 20 years, *J Thromb Haemost* 2(6):849–860, 2004.
Price MJ, Berger PB, et al: Standard- vs high-dose clopidogrel based on platelet function testing after percutaneous coronary intervention. The GRAVITAS randomized trial, *JAMA* 305(11):1097–1105, 2011.
Rieder MJ, Reiner AP, et al: Effect of VKORC1 haplotypes on transcriptional regulation and warfarin dose, *N Engl J Med* 352(22):2285–2293, 2005.
Rosborough TK, Shepherd MF: Unreliability of international normalized ratio for monitoring warfarin therapy in patients with lupus anticoagulant, *Pharmacotherapy* 24(7):838–842, 2004.
Rosendaal FR, Reitsma PH: 5000 years old and still going strong, *J Thromb Haemost* 12(11):1763, 2014.
Salzman EW, Rosenberg RD, et al: Effect of heparin and heparin fractions on platelet aggregation, *J Clin Invest* 65(1):64–73, 1980.
Sanderson S, Emery J, et al: Narrative review: Aspirin resistance and its clinical implications, *Ann Intern Med* 142(5):370–380, 2005.
Shapiro GA, Huntzinger SW, et al: Variation among commercial activated partial thromboplastin time reagents in response to heparin, *Am J Clin Pathol* 67(5):477–480, 1977.
Shimada YJ, Nakra NC, et al: Relation of race (Asian, African-American, European-American, and Hispanic) to activated clotting time after weight-adjusted bolus of heparin during percutaneous coronary intervention, *Am J Cardiol* 105(5):629–632, 2010.
Shuldiner AR, O'Connell JR, et al: Association of cytochrome P450 2C19 genotype with the antiplatelet effect and clinical efficacy of clopidogrel therapy, *JAMA* 302(8):849–857, 2009.
Sibbing D, Braun S, et al: Platelet reactivity after clopidogrel treatment assessed with point-of-care analysis and early drug-eluting stent thrombosis, *J Am Coll Cardiol* 53(10):849–856, 2009.
Sibbing D, Koch W, et al: Cytochrome 2C19*17 allelic variant, platelet aggregation, bleeding events, and stent thrombosis in clopidogrel-treated patients with coronary stent placement, *Circulation* 121(4):512–518, 2010.
Simon T, Verstuyft C, et al: Genetic determinants of response to clopidogrel and cardiovascular events, *N Engl J Med* 360(4):363–375, 2009.
Smith JW, Steinhubl SR, et al: Rapid platelet-function assay: An automated and quantitative cartridge-based method, *Circulation* 99(5):620–625, 1999.
Smogorzewska A, Brandt JT, et al: Effect of fondaparinux on coagulation assays: Results of College of American Pathologists proficiency testing, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 130(11):1605–1611, 2006.
Sunderji R, Gin K, et al: Clinical impact of point-of-care vs laboratory measurement of anticoagulation, *Am J Clin Pathol* 123(2):184–188, 2005.
Taube J, Halsall D, et al: Influence of cytochrome P-450 CYP2C9 polymorphisms on warfarin sensitivity and risk of over-anticoagulation in patients on long-term treatment, *Blood* 96(5):1816–1819, 2000.
Tresukosol D, Suktitipat B, et al: Effects of cytochrome P450 2C19 and paraoxonase 1 polymorphisms on antiplatelet response to clopidogrel therapy in patients with coronary artery disease, *PLoS ONE* 9(10):e110188, 2014.
Van Cott EM: Point-of-care testing in coagulation, *Clin Lab Med* 29(3):543–553, 2009.
Van den Besselaar AM, Barrowcliffe TW, et al: Guidelines on preparation, certification, and use of certified plasmas for ISI calibration and INR determination, *J Thromb Haemost* 2(11):1946–1953, 2004.
Van Ryn J, Baruch L, et al: Interpretation of point-of-care INR results in patients treated with dabigatran, *Am J Med* 125(4):417–420, 2012.
Van Ryn J, Stangier J, et al: Dabigatran etexilate—A novel, reversible, oral direct thrombin inhibitor: Interpretation of coagulation assays and reversal of anticoagulant activity, *Thromb Haemost* 103(6):1116–1127, 2010.
Varenhorst C, James S, et al: Assessment of P2Y(12) inhibition with the point-of-care device VerifyNow P2Y12 in patients treated with prasugrel or clopidogrel coadministered with aspirin, *Am Heart J* 157(3):562.e1–562.e9, 2009.
Verhoef TI, Ragia G, et al: A randomized trial of genotype-guided dosing of acenocoumarol and phenprocoumon, *N Engl J Med* 369(24):2304–2312, 2013.
Wang JC, Aucoin-Barry D, et al: Incidence of aspirin nonresponsiveness using the Ultegra Rapid Platelet Function Assay-ASA, *Am J Cardiol* 92(12):1492–1494, 2003.
Warkentin TE, Basciano PA, et al: Spontaneous heparin-induced thrombocytopenia syndrome: 2 new cases and a proposal for defining this disorder, *Blood* 123:3651–3654, 2014.
Warkentin TE, Elavathil LJ, et al: The pathogenesis of venous limb gangrene associated with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *Ann Intern Med* 127(9):804–812, 1997.
Warkentin TE, Greinacher A, et al: Laboratory testing for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: A conceptual framework and implications for diagnosis, *J Thromb Haemost* 9(12):2498–2500, 2011a.
Warkentin TE, Maurer BT, et al: Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia associated with fondaparinux, *N Engl J Med* 356(25):2653–2655; discussion 2653-2655, 2007.
Warkentin TE, Pai M, et al: Fondaparinux treatment of acute heparin-induced thrombocytopenia confirmed by the serotonin-release assay: A 30-month, 16-patient case series, *J Thromb Haemost* 9(12):2389–2396, 2011b.
Warkentin TE, Sheppard JI: Serological investigation of patients with a previous history of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia who are reexposed to heparin, *Blood* 123(16):2485–2493, 2014.
Warkentin TE, Sheppard JI, et al: Quantitative interpretation of optical density measurements using PF4-dependent enzyme-immunoassays, *J Thromb Haemost* 6(8):1304–1312, 2008.
Whitlatch NL, Kong DF, et al: Validation of the high-dose heparin confirmatory step for the diagnosis of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *Blood* 116(10):1761–1766, 2010.
Whitlock RP, Sun JC, et al: Antithrombotic and thrombolytic therapy for valvular disease: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines, *Chest* 141(2 Suppl):e576S–e600S, 2012.
Yeh CH, Fredenburgh JC, et al: Oral direct factor Xa inhibitors, *Circ Res* 111(8):1069–1078, 2012.
You JJ, Singer DE, et al: Antithrombotic therapy for atrial fibrillation: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines, *Chest* 141(2 Suppl):e531S–e575S, 2012.
Zwicker JI, Uhl L, et al: Thrombosis and ELISA optical density values in hospitalized patients with heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, *J Thromb Haemost* 2(12):2133–2137, 2004.

This page intentionally left blank

PART 6

Immunology and Immunopathology

EDITED BY
H. Davis Massey
Richard A. McPherson

CHAPTER 43

OVERVIEW OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM AND IMMUNOLOGIC DISORDERS

Richard A. McPherson, H. Davis Massey

LYMPHOID CELLS, 856
T Lymphocytes, 856
B Lymphocytes, 857
Antigen-Presenting Cells, 857
Natural Killer Cells, 857

NONLYMPHOID CELLS, 857
Neutrophils and Eosinophils, 857
Basophils and Mast Cells, 857

HUMORAL FACTORS, 857
Immunoglobulins, 857
Complement, 858
Cytokines, 858

HISTOCOMPATIBILITY ANTIGENS, 858

MECHANISMS OF IMMUNOLOGIC INJURY, 859

LABORATORY APPLICATIONS OF IMMUNOLOGIC ASSESSMENT, 859

THERAPEUTICS IN IMMUNOLOGY, 860

SELECTED REFERENCES, 861

KEY POINTS

- The immune system consists of cellular and humoral components that defend the body against invading microorganisms. Deficiency of individual factors of the immune system can leave an individual susceptible to different infections.
- The lymphoid cells of the immune system are composed of T cells that act directly against foreign antigens, and B cells that differentiate into immunoglobulin-secreting plasma cells capable of synthesizing immunoglobulins that combine with foreign antigens. Antigen-presenting cells are crucial for cell-to-cell communication during the direction of an immune response.
- The mechanisms by which lymphocytes differentiate into T cells and B cells involve rearrangement of genes for the T cell antigen receptor and of genes for immunoglobulins, respectively.
- Lymphocytes from patient specimens are characterized by detection of surface proteins, termed *cluster of differentiation,* or *CD markers,* which designate their subset and function.
- Additional cellular elements are natural killer lymphocytes plus neutrophils, eosinophils, and the effectors of immunoglobulin (Ig) E-mediated hypersensitivity—basophils and mast cells.
- In addition to immunoglobulins or antibodies, humoral elements include a cascading series of enzyme activation in the complement system that results in enzymatic destruction of foreign cells and recruitment of inflammatory cells by cytokine actions.
- Histocompatibility antigens play a major role in antigen presentation to T cells and form the immunologic identity of an individual, which is important in rejection of organ transplants.
- Immunologic injury can occur as the result of excessive response to specific antigenic exposures, as in an allergic response, or as a result of circulating immune complexes.
- Autoimmune disease results when the mechanisms for maintaining immunologic tolerance to self-(auto) antigens fail, resulting in the formation of various autoantibodies plus activation of the cellular immune system against the patient's own tissues.
- Laboratory measurements of the immune system involve relatively simple techniques for counting lymphocytes and their subsets, as well as for quantifying overall concentrations of immunoglobulins and complement proteins. More complex methods such as detection of gene rearrangements, autoantibody characterization, and allergen reactivity with IgE are useful for diagnosing various disorders of the immune system.
- Therapeutic approaches to disorders of the immune system include stimulation or replacement of deficient components and reduction or removal of other factors that are abnormal or are present in excess.

The immune system is structured to recognize, respond to, and destroy a wide variety of invading organisms such as bacteria, viruses, fungi, and parasites that otherwise would be capable of promoting infection that is harmful to the body. Discovery of components of the immune system has very often followed investigation of serious infections and the specific reactions that the body uses to combat pathogenic organisms. In general, this immunologic function can be summarized as searching for foreign (or nonself) antigens that do not belong in the body and then destroying them. In this process, the immune system also maintains surveillance over the appearance of new or foreign antigens on tumor cells and attempts to destroy them while leaving unharmed the normal (or self) antigens on healthy cells. Disease states may arise as a result of various aspects of immunologic function going awry, as in hypersensitivity reactions, autoimmune disease, and various immunodeficiency disorders. When functioning properly, the immune system is responsible for rejection of allogeneic organ/tissue transplants and graft-versus-host disease; the quest for tolerance in transplantation continues. This overview highlights components of the immune system and their functions, along with some of the significant clinical disorders of immunity.

LYMPHOID CELLS

The lymphoid cells of the body reside in the lymph nodes, the spleen, the mucosal surfaces, and the circulation. They derive from multipotential hematopoietic stem cells, with their production moving progressively from the yolk sac in the embryo to the liver in the fetus, and finally to the bone marrow in the infant through adult ages (Weissman, 1994). The various lymphoid cells are conveniently identified by the presence of unique protein markers on their surfaces that endow those cells with particular functions.

T LYMPHOCYTES

T lymphocytes undergo differentiation in the thymus. After originating in the bone marrow, prothymocytes pass from the cortex to the medulla of the thymus, during which time they undergo maturation. This process involves a selection process such that self-reactive thymocytes are eliminated, while thymocytes that can recognize antigens through interactions with molecules of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) are retained (Nossal, 1994; von Boehmer, 1994). During maturation, they undergo genetic programming in which the gene for the T cell antigen receptor (TCR) is rearranged to produce protein receptors that are invariant in their antigen specificity for the life span of that T lymphocyte, as well as for all its descendant cells. T lymphocytes account for about 60% to 70% of all lymphocytes in the blood; they are also found in paracortical areas of lymph nodes and within periarteriolar lymphoid sheaths in the spleen.

A majority (>95%) of T lymphocytes have antigen receptors made of α- and β-subunits linked with disulfide bonds to form a molecular

heterodimer that resides on the outer membrane of the cell in association with the CD3 molecular complex (CD3 is a pan–T cell marker). The α- and β-subunit TCR proteins have variable, joining, and constant regions (α also contains a diversity region), with corresponding encoding regions in the *TCR* gene that undergo rearrangement, resulting in high specificity binding for a particular antigen. The CD3 proteins assist transduction of the signal to the interior of the cell when an antigen binds to the TCR on the lymphocyte surface (Janeway & Bottomly, 1994; Weiss & Littman, 1994). A small percentage of T lymphocytes have a TCR composed of γ- and δ-subunits that similarly interact with CD3; these cells are generally found at mucosal surfaces of the gastrointestinal and respiratory tracts. T cell proliferations may be characterized as neoplastic (clonal) or benign (polyclonal), according to whether their DNA shows predominantly a single form of *TCR* gene rearrangement or a complete spectrum of such rearrangements, as normally occurs in a heterogeneous lymphocyte population.

Examination of T lymphocytes by flow cytometry focuses on a variety of surface markers. CD4 is found on about 60% of $CD3^+$ cells; these are helper/inducer T cells that direct the functions of other cells of the immune system by secreting cytokines that stimulate various functions. Two distinct subpopulations of $CD4^+$ helper cells have been identified: Th1 cells, which secrete interleukin (IL)-2 and interferon (IFN)-γ; and Th2 cells, which secrete IL-4 and IL-5. Th1 cells facilitate macrophage activation, delayed-type hypersensitivity, and the production of antibodies with opsonizing action; Th2 cells direct synthesis of other antibodies such as IgE and activate eosinophils. The marker CD8 is found on about 30% of T cells (thus the normal ratio of $CD4^+$ to $CD8^+$ cells in the blood is typically 2:1). These $CD8^+$ T cells exhibit cytotoxicity and suppressor activity in the immune response.

The mechanism of antigen recognition is different between $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ subsets of T lymphocytes. CD4 molecules bind to the MHC class II molecules on antigen-presenting cells, whereas CD8 molecules interact with MHC class I molecules. Accordingly, $CD4^+$ T cells recognize antigens only in the context of MHC class II antigens, and $CD8^+$ T cells recognize them only through MHC class I antigens. A subset of T helper cells termed *T regulatory (Treg) cells* are important for immune tolerance and prevention of autoimmune disorders (see Chapter 50). Treg cells have surface markers for CD4 and CD25 (IL-2 receptor) and so are driven by IL-2. The transcription factor FOXP3 plays a role in Treg function, and mutation in the *foxp3* gene results in dysregulation of immune tolerance and progression to autoimmune diseases.

B LYMPHOCYTES

B lymphocytes make up roughly 10% to 20% of peripheral lymphocytes in the blood; they also are found in the bone marrow, lymph nodes, spleen, and other lymphoid tissues. In the spleen and lymph nodes, they aggregate into lymphoid follicles. Differentiation of B lymphocytes occurs in the bone marrow, where both positive selection and negative selection take place, as well as at peripheral locations. Antigenic stimulation of B cells leads to the formation of plasma cells that secrete immunoglobulins—the basis of specificity in humoral immunity. The B cell antigen receptor complex uses surface IgM as the antigen-binding component. The antigen specificity of immunoglobulins derives from a rearrangement process in which both heavy and light chain genes are realigned. The heavy chain has variable, diversity, joining, and constant regions, whereas the light chain gene has variable, joining, and constant regions. Maturation of an antibody response entails switching from IgM to another heavy chain type (usually IgG) as the result of further gene rearrangement, although the light chain type remains fixed (Corcoran, 2005).

B cells have on their surfaces receptors for complement (CD21, which is also the receptor for Epstein-Barr virus [EBV] and thus makes these cells susceptible to EBV infection) and for the Fc region of immunoglobulins; they have CD19 and CD20, which are frequently used for immunologic identification of B cells.

ANTIGEN-PRESENTING CELLS

Macrophages function as mononuclear phagocytes in inflammation; they also process ingested antigens and present them to immune effector cells in association with MHC molecules on their membranes (Fig. 43-1). T cells are not activated by soluble antigens, and so presentation of antigens in this manner is necessary for T cell stimulation and induction of cell-mediated immunity (Germain, 1994; Trombetta & Mellman, 2005). Macrophages also secrete cytokines such as IL-1 for modulation of inflammatory processes; they can directly lyse tumor cells in their role of immunosurveillance, and they are effector cells for some types of cell-mediated immunity (e.g., delayed hypersensitivity).

Dendritic cells (found in lymphoid tissues and in interstitial regions of other organs) and Langerhans cells (found in the epidermis) have extensive dendritic cytoplasmic processes that are rich in MHC class II molecules. Consequently, they are very efficient at presenting antigens (although they probably are not phagocytic) and are considered to be extremely important in that task within the entire immune system (Park & Chio, 2005).

NATURAL KILLER CELLS

Natural killer (NK) cells constitute 10% to 15% of lymphocytes in the peripheral blood. They are neither T cells nor B cells and were formerly called **null cells.** NK cells have the function of lysing other cells without prior sensitization. They can attack tumor cells, cells infected with viruses, and others as well; consequently, they form the initial defense against aberrant cells. NK cells are characterized by the surface markers CD16 and CD56, which are commonly used for their identification. CD16 is the Fc receptor for IgG; hence NK cells are able to lyse selectively those cells that are coated with antibodies (antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity, which is important in some hypersensitivity reactions). NK cells also secrete cytokines such as IFN-γ. It is interesting to note that NK cells are recognizable on examination of standard stained blood smears as large granular lymphocytes (Kronenberg, 2005).

NONLYMPHOID CELLS

These cells are not genetically programmed to recognize specific antigens or to interact with lymphoid cells in the induction of an immune response. Instead, they are effectors of immune reactions that are triggered by various factors.

NEUTROPHILS AND EOSINOPHILS

Neutrophils are drawn to regions of inflammation by chemoattractants such as IL-8; they then release from their granules toxic substances and enzymes that digest cellular structures indiscriminately; neutrophils also ingest cellular debris, as do eosinophils, and remove it from tissue sites.

BASOPHILS AND MAST CELLS

Basophils (and their counterparts in tissues, the mast cells) have on their surfaces high-affinity Fc receptors that bind circulating IgE. Uptake of IgE onto the membranes of basophils apparently is not antigen dependent; instead, it is driven by mass action between the amount of total IgE and the available basophils. When the antigen (or allergen) comes into contact with basophil surface-bound IgE that recognizes it, those basophils become activated and release substances such as histamine, which mediate some hypersensitivity reactions. Thus, basophil specificity is directed by the particular IgE that is bound to its surface from the blood; theoretically, a basophil could have multiple different IgE molecules on its surface and so could react with many different allergens.

HUMORAL FACTORS

IMMUNOGLOBULINS

Antibody molecules can be bound to B cell surfaces for stimulation of further immunoglobulin secretion; they also circulate in the blood and appear at mucosal surfaces of the respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts, where they are likely to come into contact with potentially pathogenic microorganisms. The major immunoglobulins in the blood are IgM, IgG, and IgA; these antibodies presumably arise following exposure to a multitude of foreign antigens and may remain for years with continued secretion to replace molecules that are lost through normal clearance of proteins from the circulation. At mucosal surfaces, the primary type of antibody is dimeric IgA, which is secreted at that site (Fagarasan, 2004) (see Chapter 46). The other immunoglobulins are IgD (which resides on B cell surfaces, where it may be involved in immune signal transduction but does not achieve substantial concentrations as free molecules in the blood) and IgE (which functions by binding to surfaces of basophils and stimulates the release of vasoactive substances from those cells in the presence of specific allergens).

Immunoglobulins in the blood function by attaching to antigens on the surfaces of foreign cells, bacteria, viruses, and the like, and by facilitating their destruction through nonspecific effectors such as complement

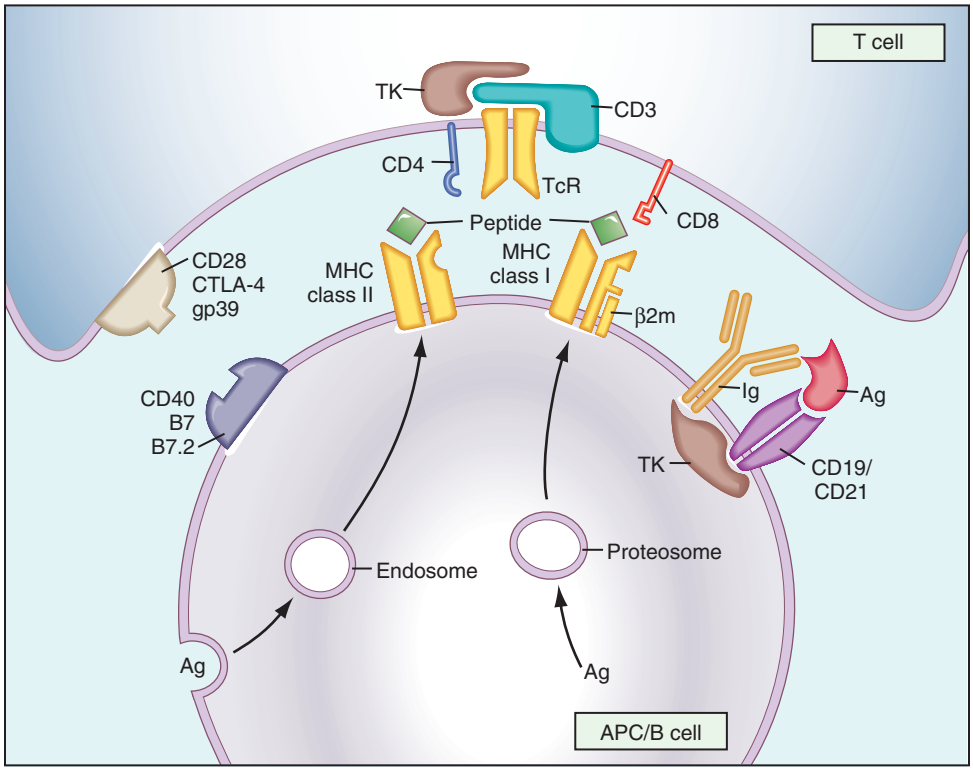


Figure 43-1 Cellular interactions in the immune system. Antigen-presenting cells (APCs) process external or internal antigens (Ag) and present antigen peptide fragments, in association with a major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule, to T cells. On the T cell, a specific antigen receptor (TcR), along with the coreceptor CD4 or CD8 molecule, recognizes the antigen–MHC complex. Cellular activation proceeds through the CD3 complex and activation of tyrosine kinases (TKs). The B cell receptor is composed of membrane-bound immunoglobulin (Ig) complexed to associated membrane proteins, and the CD19/21 coreceptor. On antigen recognition, cellular TKs are also activated. Costimulatory activation of T cells or B cells is provided by cellular receptors binding their ligands (the ligand B7 or B7.2 for T cell costimulation through CD28 and CTLA-4 molecules, and the gp39 ligand for the B cell CD40 molecule). (Redrawn with permission from Paul W, Seder R: Lymphocytic responses and cytokines, *Cell* 76:229, 1994; and Weiss A, Littman D: Signal transduction by lymphocyte antigen receptors, *Cell* 76:263, 1994.)

and NK cell activation. Disease monitoring by immunoglobulin testing includes qualitative analysis for clonal versus polyclonal detection (e.g., for diagnosis of multiple myeloma) and quantitative analyses both for overall concentrations of IgM, IgG, and IgA (to detect possible selective or combined deficiencies or overproduction of immunoglobulin classes) and for titers of specific antibodies against individual antigens (e.g., isohemagglutinins, *Pneumococcus*, *Haemophilus*, tetanus, diphtheria).

COMPLEMENT

This set of interacting proteins has the role of enzymatically destroying targets (e.g., cells, bacteria) to which they have been directed by antibodies or through other means (see Chapter 47). Measurements of complement components have two major uses in clinical diagnosis: to detect congenital deficiencies (which are relatively rare) that may predispose to certain disorders such as infection or progression to autoimmune disease, and to detect acquired complement level reductions that reflect current activity of systemic autoimmune diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus (Wen et al, 2004).

CYTOKINES

These soluble substances are the means by which cellular immune responses are regulated; they are short-acting mediators that are elaborated by some cells and diffuse to other cells, where they act (Leonard, 2003). Many cytokines are pleiotropic in that they can act on different cell types. They can act in an endocrine manner by stimulating cells at a distance, they can act on cells in their immediate vicinity (paracrine), and they can stimulate the same cells that secreted them (autocrine). The specific actions of cytokines include hematopoiesis through colony-stimulating factors that induce granulocyte and macrophage production, natural immune responses (through IL-1, tumor necrosis factor [TNF]-α, interferons, and IL-8), stimulation of lymphocyte growth and activation (through IL-2 and others), and activation of nonspecific inflammatory cells (see Chapter 48). Cytokines are still being discovered as more details emerge regarding cell-to-cell communication.

Clinical use of cytokines includes both suppression of the immune response in allogeneic organ transplantation by drugs such as cyclosporine, which blocks production of IL-2, and enhancement of the immune response in therapies against cancer or infection. These latter treatments are largely experimental, although it has been shown that pretreatment with antibodies against TNF-α can prevent deleterious Jarisch-Herxheimer reactions resulting from antibiotic treatment of *Borrelia recurrentis* infection in sheep (Fekade et al, 1996). This model very probably presages a host of new therapies by which immune responses will be selectively enhanced or suppressed according to particular clinical needs.

HISTOCOMPATIBILITY ANTIGENS

The MHC (also called the *human leukocyte antigen [HLA] complex*) is encoded on human chromosome 6 and includes class I molecules (HLA A, B, and C), class II molecules (HLA DP, DQ, and DR), and the intervening class III molecules of some complement components and TNF-α and TNF-β (see Chapter 49). The functions of class I and class II antigens have already been discussed briefly in terms of how they participate in antigen presentation to T cells. These antigens were discovered and their highly polymorphic natures were described in studies of immune tolerance and rejection of transplanted allogeneic organs. Consequently, one of the most important clinical uses of HLA typing involves matching potential organ or tissue donors with recipients who are in need of a transplant. Another significant clinical application is seen in the typing of affected patients and their family members to establish their risk for developing some diseases that are associated with particular HLA types (e.g., ankylosing spondylitis with HLA B27) (see Chapter 50). Still another use of HLA typing involves providing matched platelets for patients who have become refractory to platelet transfusions as the result of HLA antibody formation after exposure to multiple donors (e.g., following transfusion support for chemotherapy or hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation) (see Chapter 38).

MECHANISMS OF IMMUNOLOGIC INJURY

Immunologic responses can cause injury to normal tissues and to invading organisms that may have triggered a response. These injurious responses are conveniently classified into four types of hypersensitivity. Type I is anaphylactic or allergic in nature; it is mediated by IgE bound to the surface of basophils and mast cells. When specific antigens (or allergens) bind to surface IgE, the basophils are stimulated to release histamine and other vasoactive substances that are the immediate mediators of allergic reactions (Kemp & Lockey, 2002). Clinical strategies for treatment of asthma and allergies have addressed different aspects of this sequence of events, from counteracting the effects or release of histamine back to desensitization. Successful use of a recombinant humanized monoclonal antibody against IgE to treat such individuals has been demonstrated (Milgrom et al, 1999); in the future, this therapy could be based in part on measurement of IgE concentrations in serum.

Type II occurs when antibodies bind to antigens on the surfaces of cells; damage may occur as the result of binding and activation of complement (e.g., immune hemolysis), antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (e.g., lysis of tumor cells or parasites), or antibody-mediated interference with cellular functions (e.g., autoantibodies against acetylcholine receptors in myasthenia gravis).

Type III results from immune complex formation between exogenous antigens such as bacteria or viruses and antibodies, or between endogenous autoantigens and autoantibodies. Typical tissue damage occurs in organs that contain numerous small blood vessels wherein circulating immune complexes deposit, or in places where endogenous antigens naturally occur.

Type IV is cell-mediated or delayed hypersensitivity, which depends on functioning $CD4^+$ T cells or other cytotoxicity from $CD8^+$ T cells. Type IV is the basis of the immune reaction to viruses, fungi, protozoa, and parasites, and also to intracellular microbes such as mycobacteria. Patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome are susceptible to infection with these and other opportunistic agents when they lose $CD4^+$ T cells.

LABORATORY APPLICATIONS OF IMMUNOLOGIC ASSESSMENT

Examinations of the immune system for evaluation of potential deficiencies or disorders are listed in Box 43-1.

Cellular immunity has several levels of investigation, beginning with leukocyte count and differential commonly available on automated hematology analyzers as part of the complete blood cell count. Deficiencies of neutrophils often occur with chemotherapy for malignancy, whereas elevation of neutrophils is a sign of acute infection, particularly with bacteria. Rare individuals may have normal numbers of neutrophils but may be susceptible to infection owing to defects of function (e.g., chronic granulomatous disease) that can be assessed by neutrophil activation (by oxidative burst) in response to stimuli, or by bacterial killing assays.

Different populations of lymphocytes are enumerated by flow cytometric techniques that quantitate cells according to the expression of surface protein markers specific for T cells (CD2, CD3), subsets of T cells (CD4, CD8), B cells (CD19, CD20), monocytes (CD14), and natural killer cells (CD16, CD56). Because the most common cause of lymphocyte disorder today is infection with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the most frequently monitored lymphocyte surface markers are CD4 and CD8, for the effects of HIV infection and prediction of susceptibility to opportunistic infection. HIV infection is usually diagnosed by detection of anti-HIV antibodies confirmed by Western blot; monitoring of HIV infection also includes quantitative viral loads by molecular diagnostic methods such as reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction, and use of antiretroviral drugs is guided by HIV genotyping (and on rare occasion by phenotype testing of drug resistance). Lymphocyte function is not often measured directly, but this can be done by stimulation assays that look at lymphocyte proliferation (e.g., by incorporation of tritiated thymidine into DNA) or by cell cycle analysis performed with flow cytometry after stimulation. Of course, skin testing is a direct reflection of T cell response to antigens in vivo.

Humoral immunity is often assessed by quantitative immunoglobulin measurements of total IgG, IgA, and IgM; deficiency of one or more immunoglobulin classes can lead to increased susceptibility to infection. Measurement of IgG subclasses can also be useful in this type of evaluation. Serum protein electrophoresis and immunofixation electrophoresis provide additional information regarding the clonality of immunoglobulins. A monoclonal band of immunoglobulins indicates a clonal population of B cells or plasma cells that have escaped regulation and might result in a plasma cell dyscrasia such as multiple myeloma. In contrast, a polyclonal distribution of immunoglobulins is generally taken to indicate a reactive process of an otherwise normal immune system.

Direct measurement of immunoglobulin function is done by evaluating the titers of antibodies against specific antigens. The presence of isohemagglutinins against ABO blood group antigens is conveniently examined to detect anti-A and anti-B antibodies in persons who lack those blood groups. Common immunizations result in the presence of detectable antibodies against the protein antigens of diphtheria and the tetanus toxoid, and against the carbohydrate antigens of *Pneumococcus* and *Haemophilus.* Measurements of antibodies against these antigens are standard procedures for evaluation of immunodeficiencies; if they are lacking, reimmunization can be done to elicit evidence of an immune response.

Longitudinal profiling of **transcriptomics** plus other omics of genome, metabolism, and autoantibodies has been accomplished as proof of principle in a single individual over 14 months (Chen et al, 2012). Although this methodology is currently very costly, it points the way to future examinations to study disease states, particularly in the evaluation of inflammatory states and whether their etiologies can be established as anti-infectious, autoimmune, anti-tumor, or other condition. This approach possibly may serve as a guide to early and specific therapy.

A novel approach to cancer diagnosis has emerged in which antibodies to tumors are detected according to their pattern of binding, in

BOX 43-1

Domains of Immunology Testing

Cellular Immunity

- Complete blood count and differential
- Lymphocyte enumeration (CD2, CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19, CD20, CD56) for T cells, B cells, NK cells
- HIV antibodies/viral load/genotype
- Skin testing for anergy
- Lymphocyte function/activation
- Neutrophil activation (oxidative burst)
- Lymphocyte adhesion defect (CD11a, CD11b, CD11c, CD18)

Humoral Immunity

- Quantitative immunoglobulins (IgG, IgA, IgM)
- IgG subclasses
- Immunoglobulin function/stimulation (protein antigens: tetanus, diphtheria; carbohydrate antigens: *Pneumococcus, Haemophilus*); ABO blood group isohemagglutinins

Complement

- C3, C4 for consumption
- Screening for deficiency: CH50
- Confirming deficiency: C1-C9
- C4d deposition
- Circulating immune complexes

Cytokines

- Interleukins
- Interferons
- Tumor necrosis factors

Human Leukocyte Antigens (HLAs)

- HLA antibodies for matching organs and bone marrow in allogeneic transplants
- Identity testing
- HLA genotyping (high-resolution)
- HLA typing for disease association (HLA-B27)

Autoimmune Diseases

- Systemic rheumatic diseases: Antinuclear antibodies; anti-dsDNA, anti-Sm, anti-RNP, anti-SSA, anti-SSB, anti-Scl70, anticardiolipin, anti-CCP
- Organ-specific diseases: Antithyroid, anti–parietal cell, antiendomysial, antiadrenal, antiskin, antimitochondria, anti–smooth muscle
- Vasculitis: Cryoglobulins (RF), c-ANCA, p-ANCA

Allergy/Hypersensitivity/Asthma

- Total IgE
- Allergen-specific IgE: Foods, pollens, animals, insects, mold
- Skin tests for allergy

c-ANCA, Classical antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *NK,* natural killer; *p-ANCA,* protoplasmic-staining antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies; *RF,* rheumatoid factor.

a microarray, to thousands of random sequence peptides representing essentially all possible epitopes (Stafford et al, 2014). The **immunosignature** of the peptides to which patient serum antibodies bind has allowed the successful classification of cancers in patients with over 98% accuracy. This system has the promise to provide comprehensive analysis of the immune response for the early diagnosis of malignancies and, potentially, any disease condition in which antibodies are produced, including infectious diseases (Richer et al, 2015).

The **complement system** is most frequently examined by measurement of C3 and C4 components to look for depressions that suggest consumption through activation. Although circulating immune complexes (CICs) are the presumptive cause of decreased C3 and C4 concentrations, CICs are rarely measured directly; however, deposition of CICs in tissues can be detected by immunofluorescent staining for immunoglobulin and C3 or C4d. Hereditary deficiencies of individual complement components are screened for by the CH50 test, which traditionally used antibody-coated horse erythrocytes in a hemolysis assay (now often replaced by an equivalent assay using liposomes in place of erythrocytes) and then are confirmed with specific immunoasssays for deficiencies of individual complement proteins.

Determinations of **cytokine** concentrations are usually considered investigational procedures without definitive application, despite the understanding we have of the roles they play in pathophysiology. Some of the potential candidates for future monitoring are the interleukins IL-1β, IL-2, IL-2 receptor, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-8, IL-10, IL-12, and IL-13. These factors can be elaborated as locally acting messengers in many different inflammatory processes, and so lack specificity for distinguishing different etiologies such as infection versus autoimmune. They act at sites of tissue injury or inflammation and so do not reach easily measured concentrations in blood. Perhaps by looking at concentrations of multiple factors simultaneously both in blood and at the tissue level, interpretation will be feasible using patterns related to specific stimuli and physiologic insults. Other substances that fall into this category of immunomodulating agents include TNF-α and IFN-α, -β, and -γ. A recent clinical application utilizes the quantitation of IFN-γ released by lymphocytes in a peripheral blood specimen after in vitro stimulation with mycobacterial antigens to determine previous exposure status of a patient to that organism.

HLA testing and cross-matching between donors and recipients form the basis of solid organ and bone marrow transplantation. Traditional serologic testing for antigens and antibodies has now been expanded with high-resolution HLA genotyping. HLA typing has also been used for matching platelet transfusions in select refractory patients. HLA typing has been used for identity testing, and some antigenic types (e.g., HLA-B27) are recognized to be associated with specific autoimmune disorders.

Applications of testing to **autoimmune diseases** are multiple. Systemic rheumatic diseases such as lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, and scleroderma are commonly diagnosed with a battery of autoantibody assays, including the antinuclear antibody plus individual antibodies such as anti-DNA, anti-Sm, anti-RNP, anti-SS-A, anti-SS-B, Scl-70, anticardiolipin, rheumatoid factor, and anti–cyclic citrullinated peptide. Organ-specific autoimmune diseases are characterized by tissue or organelle reactive autoantibodies such as antithyroid, anti–parietal cell, antiskin, antiendomysial (antitissue transglutaminase), antimitochondrial, anti–smooth muscle, antiadrenal, and so forth. Antibodies important in vasculitis include cryoglobulins and classical antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies/protoplasmic-staining antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies. Although some autoantibodies are etiologic and serial measurements of their titers are important for monitoring disease progress, other antibodies are nonetiologic and so are most useful for diagnosis alone.

For decades, the automated methods for measuring autoantibodies and other serologies have largely been based on ELISA technologies (see Chapter 44). Newer methods have been developed in which antigens are coated on small beads using combinations of two colored dyes to identify the antigen. The beads are then allowed to bind immunoglobulin, which is detected by fluorescent-labeled anti-Ig. This configuration allows multiplexing of different assays in the same reaction mixture resulting in labor saving and faster turnaround times. Many of these bead assays are likely to yield results somewhat different from ELISAs because they detect relatively high-avidity antibodies, but not the low-avidity antibodies that can be detected by ELISA. This feature is particularly important for quantitating anti-dsDNA antibodies, and is likely to cause some initial confusion among clinicians as immunoassays are converted to the new platform. On the positive side, high avidity anti-dsDNA antibody measurement by bead immunoassay correlates well with the Farr assay, which also detects high-avidity antibodies that are recognized to have clinical significance (Venner et al, 2013).

Immunoassays for syphilis also have gone through changes in which the order of testing has been reversed, so that the treponemal-specific assay for antibody against treponemal protein is done first; positive specimens then are tested with the rapid plasma reagin (RPR) as a confirmatory test (Binnicker et al, 2012). This reversal in test order is due to the ability to automate immunoassays for antibodies against proteins, but not against cardiolipin, in the RPR. Discrepant results from these two assays should be evaluated by a third assay that relies on a different principle.

Allergies, hypersensitivities, and asthma have common pathways in which allergens are recognized by specific IgE that is bound to the surfaces of basophils and mast cells, thereby liberating histamine and creating allergic symptoms. Diagnostic evaluation of allergies includes measurements of total IgE plus allergen-specific IgE to determine which allergens are significant for particular patients. Typical allergens for this testing include foods, pollens, molds, animal dander, and insects. Skin testing in vivo with these allergens is complementary because a positive response depends on the presence of reactive IgE plus competent T cells with CD4.

Evaluation for possible immunodeficiency is usually initiated when a young child presents with numerous and often life-threatening infections. However, for children born with **severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)**, waiting for repeat infections before initiating a diagnostic workup may allow fatal infections to develop in the first few months of life. Accordingly, many states have now implemented SCID screening of newborns using heel-stick blood samples that are already collected for other neonatal congenital disease testing (see Chapter 51). SCID screening is based on quantitation of the T-cell receptor excision circles (TRECs) of DNA that are normally present in mature lymphocytes (Puck, 2012). This approach can lead to early diagnosis and curative hematopoietic stem cell transplant prior to a first major infection in affected children.

THERAPEUTICS IN IMMUNOLOGY

Therapeutic targets in the immune system are important to consider because of the need to measure the effects of such treatments to make adjustments and guide clinical management (Box 43-2). Of course, one of the most common abnormalities of cellular immunity today is HIV infection, for which antiretroviral drugs are essential with monitoring that includes viral load measurements as well as genotyping to predict response to specific drugs.

Cellular immunity is the target of several different drugs that act against T cells and so are often used to suppress immune responses against allogeneic solid organ transplants, as well as graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) from allogeneic bone marrow transplants. These drugs include the cyclophilin-binding drugs cyclosporine and tacrolimus, which inhibit calcineurin, and the immunosuppressants sirolimus and mycophenolate, both of which block activation of T cells and B cells. Therapeutic drug monitoring of blood concentrations of these immunosuppressants is useful to achieve therapeutic effect (usually as a synergistic action of agents from different drug classes) while avoiding drug toxicities. Polyclonal antilymphocyte globulin is used to reduce the circulating numbers of T cells in an effort to block transplant rejection. Also used is monoclonal anti-CD3 antibody, which binds to that molecule on T cells to reduce their numbers. Experimental anti–IL-2 receptor (CD25) antibody has also been used to block organ transplant rejection. Extracorporeal photopheresis has been successfully applied in the treatment of GVHD, and even for cellular rejection of transplanted solid organs, beyond its well-established role in controlling cutaneous T cell lymphoma.

Humoral immunity can be enhanced by passive intravenous infusion of immunoglobulin (IVIG) fractions pooled from multiple individuals who can be expected to contain antibodies against a multitude of infectious agents; high-titer immunoglobulins against specific microorganisms are also available (e.g., against hepatitis B virus). IVIG is also used to modulate some autoimmune disorders such as myasthenia gravis, possibly by interfering with the attachment of harmful autoantibodies to tissue sites. Alternatively, harmful antibodies can be removed by plasma exchange using apheresis, in which plasma proteins are replaced by another protein solution such as 5% albumin.

Monoclonal antibodies designed to interact with very specific antigens on cell surfaces or in the blood are now in use for several clinical applications (Griggs & Zinkewich-Peotti, 2009). Because of the potential side effects of stimulating immune or even allergic responses, these large-molecule drugs have been reconfigured to appear as naturally occurring proteins by humanizing them with constant regions derived from human immunoglobulin genes. An example of such a chimeric antibody is anti-CD20, which has application in treating B cell lymphomas, as well as in modulating the synthesis of some autoantibodies.

BOX 43-2

Therapeutic Targets in the Immune System

Cellular Immunity

- Glucocorticoids
- Anti–T cell drugs (e.g., calcineurin inhibitors)
- Anti-CD20 (e.g., rituximab)
- Antilymphocyte globulin
- Photopheresis
- Interleukin-2
- Antiretroviral drugs

Humoral Immunity

- Intravenous immunoglobulins (pooled)
- Plasma exchange (to remove harmful antibodies, cryoglobulins)
- Humanized monoclonal/chimeric antibodies for target antigen neutralization (e.g., anti-CD20)

Complement

- Plasmapheresis to remove complement-activating immune complexes
- Eculizumab to inhibit terminal complement activity

Cytokines

- Interferons
- Anti–tumor necrosis factor-α
- Granulocyte–colony stimulating factor (G-CSF)

Human Leukocyte Antigens

- Organ transplant rejection: plasmapheresis
- Graft-versus-host disease: photopheresis

Autoimmune Diseases

Suppression of cellular or humoral immunity by:

- Glucocorticoids
- Alkylating agents (e.g., cyclophosphamide)
- Antimetabolites (e.g., methotrexate, azathioprine)
- Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs
- Anti–T cell drugs

Allergy/Hypersensitivity/Asthma

- Antihistamines
- Glucocorticoids
- Allergen desensitization injections
- Leukotriene antagonists
- β-Adrenergic agonists

Complement consumption through CICs can be addressed therapeutically by plasmapheresis to remove those CICs (usually in the form of cryoglobulins), and thus lower the harmful deposition burden in tissues such as the renal glomeruli or other vessels. Eculizumab is a therapeutic preparation of a humanized monoclonal antibody that is a terminal complement inhibitor, specifically acting against complement protein C5. It is used for treatment of paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (Hillmen et al, 2006) and of atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (Noris et al, 2010), and is being evaluated for use in other conditions in which complement activation plays a key role.

Cytokines in regular clinical use include IFN-α for combating infection with hepatitis B virus or hepatitis C virus, and IFN-γ for stimulating immune responsiveness. TNF-α can be neutralized in the circulation by specific therapeutic antibodies or a modified receptor molecule to decrease undesired inflammatory responses in conditions such as rheumatoid arthritis and Crohn's disease. Granulocyte–colony stimulating factor is used regularly in clinical practice to rescue patients who have developed leukopenia after chemotherapy, and to mobilize hematopoietic stem cells for collection from the peripheral blood to prepare for transplantation. Administration of IL-2 does succeed in raising CD4 counts, but this approach has not yet been found to improve outcome in HIV infection (INSIGHT-ESPRIT Study Group, 2009). It is likely that other stimulators or inhibitors of cytokines will come into clinical practice in the future.

HLA mismatches in allogeneic transplanted organs are typically dealt with by administration of immunosuppressant drugs but can also be treated with extracorporeal photopheresis to diminish cellular immune rejection, as well as with plasmapheresis to remove HLA antibodies that the host might have previously formed or later formed in response to the transplanted organ.

Autoimmune diseases have been treated with different groups of drugs to reduce the inflammatory response, such as corticosteroids, alkylating agents (e.g., cyclophosphamide), antimetabolites (e.g., methotrexate, azathioprine), nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, and even some of the immunosuppressants normally used to reduce T cell activity in preventing organ transplant rejection. A new medication under trial for systemic lupus erythematosus is a monoclonal antibody against B lymphocyte stimulator, which is a member of the TNF family that acts to stimulate B cell proliferation and immunoglobulin secretion (Cancro et al, 2009). Other future therapies of autoimmune disorders will likely involve stimulation or suppression of specific sites in the immune response by specific monoclonal antibodies; bone marrow transplantation has also been successful in some cases.

Allergies and hypersensitivities are often treated long term by desensitization methods in which allergens are used to stimulate IgG that competes with IgE to neutralize those allergens that are known to cause problems in individual patients. Medications that are commonly used to control symptoms acutely and chronically are antihistamines, corticosteroids, leukotriene antagonists, and adrenergic agonists.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Kemp SF, Lockey RF: Anaphylaxis: a review of causes and mechanisms, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 110:341–348, 2002.

An excellent review article covering the immunopathology, the pathophysiology, and many causative agents of anaphylaxis, as well as its clinical management.

Kronenberg M: Toward an understanding of NKT cell biology: progress and paradoxes, *Annu Rev Immunol* 26:877–900, 2005.

This comprehensive review discusses the present state of knowledge of natural killer T cells.

Park C, Chio YS: How do follicular dendritic cells interact intimately with B cells in the germinal center?, *Immunology* 114:2–10, 2005.

In this review, the function and interaction of follicular dendritic cells with B cells are nicely presented, along with good illustrations.

Puck JM: Laboratory technology for population-based screening for severe combined immunodeficiency in neonates: The winner is T-cell receptor excision circles, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 129:607–616, 2012.

This article describes the molecular basis for measurement of T-cell receptor excision circles that is now used in screening for severe combined immunodeficiency in heel-stick blood sample from neonates.

Trombetta ES, Mellman I: Cell biology of antigen processing in vitro and in vivo, *Annu Rev Immunol* 23:975–1028, 2005.

This extensive review covers in detail the properties of antigen-presenting cells, as well as regulation, processing, and transport of antigen.

Wen L, Atkinson JP, Giclas PC: Clinical and laboratory evaluation of complement deficiency, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 113:585–593, 2004.

This article presents a brief description of the three complement pathways, an organ system review of the effect of complement deficiencies, and a diagnostic screening approach for complement-deficient states.

REFERENCES

Binnicker MJ, Jespersen DJ, Rollins LO: Direct comparison of the traditional and reverse syphilis screening algorithms in a population with a low prevalence of syphilis, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:148–150, 2012.

Cancro MP, D'Cruz DP, Khamashta MA: The role of B lymphocyte stimulator (BLyS) in systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Clin Invest* 119:1066–1073, 2009.

Chen R, Mias GI, Li-Pook-Than J, et al: Personal omics profiling reveals dynamic molecular and medical phenotypes, *Cell* 148:1293–1307, 2012.

Corcoran AE: Immunoglobulin locus silencing and allelic exclusion, *Semin Immunol* 17:141–154, 2005.

Fagarasan S: Regulation of IgA synthesis at mucosal surfaces, *Curr Opin Immunol* 16:277–283, 2004.

Fekade D, Knox K, Hussein K, et al: Prevention of Jarisch-Herxheimer reactions by treatment with antibodies against tumor necrosis factor α, *N Engl J Med* 335:311–315, 1996.

Germain R: MHC-dependent antigen processing and peptide presentation: providing ligands for T lymphocyte activation, *Cell* 76:287–299, 1994.

Griggs J, Zinkewich-Peotti K: The state of the art: immune-mediated mechanisms of monoclonal antibodies in cancer therapy, *Br J Cancer* 101:1807–1812, 2009.

Hillmen P, Young NS, Schubert J, et al: The complement inhibitor eculizumab in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, *N Engl J Med* 355(12):1233–1243, 2006.

Janeway C, Bottomly K: Signals and signs for lymphocytic responses, *Cell* 76:275–285, 1994.

Leonard WJ: Type 1 cytokines and interferons and their receptors. In Paul WE, editor: *Fundamental immunology*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2003, Lippincott, p 701.

Milgrom H, Fick RB, Su JQ, et al: Treatment of allergic asthma with monoclonal anti-IgE antibody, *N Engl J Med* 341:1966–1973, 1999.

Noris M, Caprioli J, Bresin E, et al: Relative role of genetic complement abnormalities in sporadic and familial aHUS and their impact on clinical phenotype, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 5:1844–1859, 2010.

Nossal G: Negative selection of lymphocytes, *Cell* 76:229–239, 1994.

Paul W, Seder R: Lymphocyte responses and cytokines, *Cell* 76:241–245, 1994.

Richer J, Johnston SA, Stafford P: Epitope identification from fixed-complexity random-sequence peptide microarrays, *Mol Cell Proteomics* 14:136–147, 2015.

Stafford P, Cichacz Z, Woodbury NW, et al: Immunosignature system for diagnosis of cancer, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 111:E3072–E3080, 2014.

The INSIGHT-ESPRIT Study Group and SILCAAT Scientific Committee: Interleukin-2 therapy in patients with HIV infection, *N Engl J Med* 361:1548–1559, 2009.

Venner AA, Ibanez D, Gladman DD, et al: Comparison of three anti-dsDNA assays: Performance and correlation with systemic lupus erythematosus disease activity, *Clin Biochem* 46:317–320, 2013.

Von Boehmer H: Positive selection of lymphocytes, *Cell* 76:219–228, 1994.

Weiss A, Littman D: Signal transduction by lymphocyte antigen receptors, *Cell* 76:263–274, 1994.

Weissman I: Developmental switches in the immune system, *Cell* 76:207–218, 1994.

CHAPTER 44

IMMUNOASSAYS AND IMMUNOCHEMISTRY

Katsumi Aoyagi, Yoshihiro Ashihara, Yasushi Kasahara

IMMUNOASSAYS AND IMMUNOCHEMISTRY, 862
General Characteristics of Antigen–Antibody Reaction, 862
Characteristics of Antigens, 863
Characteristics of Antibodies, 863
Kinetics of Antigen–Antibody Reaction, 863

OVERVIEW OF GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF IMMUNOASSAYS, 863
Classes of Immunoassays, 863
Conjugation Chemistry, 864
Characteristics of the Solid Phase, 864

PRECIPITIN AND NEPHELOMETRIC IMMUNOASSAYS, 865
Background and Principles of Precipitin Reaction, 865
Nephelometric Immunoassays, 866

PARTICLE IMMUNOASSAY, 866
Principle of Particle Agglutination, 866
Summary, 868

RADIOIMMUNOASSAY, 870
Background, 870
Assay Principles and Methods, 870
Summary, 872

ENZYME IMMUNOASSAY, 872
Background and Classification, 872
Heterogeneous Enzyme Immunoassays, 872
Homogeneous Enzyme Immunoassays, 874
Summary, 878

FLUORESCENT IMMUNOASSAY, 878
Background and Classification, 878
Heterogeneous Fluorescent Immunoassay, 878
Fluoroimmunometric Method, 878
Radial Partition Immunofluorometric Assay, 879
Time-Resolved Fluoroimmunoassay, 879
Homogeneous Fluorescent Immunoassay, 879
Fluorescence Polarization Assay, 879
Fluorescence Excitation Transfer Immunoassay, 880
Fluorescent Protection Immunoassay, 880

CHEMILUMINESCENT IMMUNOASSAY, 880
Background, 880
Chemiluminescent Immunoassay Using Acridinium Esters as Labels, 880
Electrochemiluminescent Immunoassay, 880

NONCOMPETITIVE IMMUNOASSAY FOR SMALL MOLECULES, 881
Background, 881
Anti-Idiotype Antibody-Based Immunoassay, 881
Open-Sandwich Immunoassay, 882
Antimetatype Antibody-Based Immunoassay, 882

SENSITIVE IMMUNOASSAY USING SPECIMEN-PRETREATMENT METHODS, 882
Background, 882
Highly Sensitive Immunoassay for Viral Antigen Using Specimen-Pretreatment Method, 882

INSTRUMENT AUTOMATION AND MODULATION OF ASSAY SYSTEMS, 883
Homogeneous Assay Systems, 883
Heterogeneous Immunoassay Systems, 883
Practical Flow of the Immunoassay in the Analytic System, 883
Instrumentation and Key Points for Heterogeneous Immunoassay, 884
High-Throughput Fully Automated Heterogeneous Immunoassay Systems, 884
Remote Maintenance, 885

RAPID AND SIMPLE TEST DEVICES FOR POINT-OF-CARE TESTING, 885
Background, 885
Immunochromatographic Devices, 885
Magnetic Biosensor Assay, 886
Summary, 887

SIMULTANEOUS MULTIPLE IMMUNOASSAYS, 887
Background, 887
Microspot Assay, 887
Multianalyte Microarray Immunoassay, 887
Flow Cytometric Immunoassay, 887
Microchannel Assay Using Compact Discs, 888
Summary, 888

SINGLE MOLECULE DETECTION, 888
Single-Molecule ELISA, 888
Single-Fluorescent Immunoassay, 888
Summary, 888

SELECTED REFERENCES, 889

IMMUNOASSAYS AND IMMUNOCHEMISTRY

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF ANTIGEN–ANTIBODY REACTION

Biological ligands based on the affinity between molecules, such as enzyme and substrate, hormone and receptor, antigen and antibody, play an important role in living organisms. Specific recognition characteristics of immunoassays (antigen–antibody [Ag–Ab] reactions) have become widely used as analytic tools, adding to the wide range of methods available in clinical laboratory testing.

Immunoassays can be used for the detection of antigens or antibodies. For antigen detection, the corresponding specific antibody should be prepared as one of the reagents. The reverse is true for antibody detection. The sensitivity of immunoassays has been enhanced through the development of new types of signal detection systems and solid-phase technology. Immunoassays have been optimized to detect less than 0.1 pg/mL of antigen present in blood. They can be applied to the detection of haptens

as small molecules; proteins and protein complexes as macromolecules; and any antibody to allergens, infectious agents, and autologous antigens.

CHARACTERISTICS OF ANTIGENS

An *antigen* can be defined as any substance that can represent antigenic sites (epitopes) to produce corresponding antibodies, from small molecules such as haptens and hormones to macromolecules such as proteins, glycoproteins, glycolipids, and other natural products. Artificial chemical compounds can also be antigens acting as haptens. Antigens should have at least one epitope. Epitopes that can be recognized by antibodies include amino acid sequences of peptides in proteins and high-dimensional protein structures such as neoantigenic sites.

CHARACTERISTICS OF ANTIBODIES

Immunoglobulin, an important plasma protein, refers to antibodies in the context of the biological functions of immunoglobulin specific to antigens. Antibodies, therefore, are produced in response to antigenic stimulation. Antibodies are formed of both functional and heterogeneous molecules that bind antigens via the antigen-combining site. Five classes (isotypes) of immunoglobulin have been identified: IgG, IgM, IgA, IgD, and IgE. IgG is further divided into four subclasses, and both IgA and IgM have two subgroups. All known antibody molecules have a heavy chain with a κ or a λ light chain. The molecular structure of antibodies is composed of variable regions and constant regions. The hypervariable domain (epitope-binding spot) can be assembled to interact with a wide variety of epitopes (antigen determinants). In laboratory medicine, two categories of antibodies can be distinguished: antibodies as reactants and antibodies as analytes. Antibodies as analytes are often classified by IgG, IgM, and IgA subtypes. Antibodies as reactants are prepared from antiserum obtained through animal immunization with purified antigen.

Polyclonal Antibodies

A polyclonal antibody can be obtained through immunization with an antigen, which presents various epitopes. In other words, the antibody generated is specific against each epitope. The avidity of a polyclonal antibody to a complex antigen is usually stronger than a single monoclonal antibody. Carrier proteins may be needed for the immunization of smaller molecules, such as haptens or hormones.

Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies (Koehler & Milstein, 1975) have been developed using the biotechnologies somatic cell fusion, selection of the resulting hybridoma, and limiting dilution to ensure the clone is derived from a single cell. They are defined as uniform homogeneous antibodies directed to specific epitopes. An established cell line allows the secretion of all reactive immunoglobulin specific to single epitopes. Monoclonal antibodies have made it possible to analyze molecules on an epitope-to-epitope basis because of their narrow specificity. Yet, monoclonal antibodies, in contrast to polyclonal antibodies, do not have the ability to recognize the entire molecule. For monoclonal antibodies, different antigens with a common epitope appear to be the same antigen. CA 19-9 antibody (Magnani et al, 1983) as a tumor marker can detect different sizes and shapes of molecules that have common carbohydrate epitopes. Monoclonal antibodies enable identification of isoenzymes, subtypes, and isotypes of protein, and conformational changes in molecules because they can discern the slightest differences in molecules.

Monoclonal antibodies may be cross-reactive with different antigens. This cross-reactivity can be explained by the probable existence of the same amino acid sequences, carbohydrates, or lipids on different molecules. Monoclonal antibody technology has allowed the development of extremely useful and nearly ideal immunoassay systems for clinical laboratory testing.

The production methods and applications of monoclonal antibodies have been extensively reviewed (Nakamura, 1983; Zola, 1987). Advantages of monoclonal antibodies are as follows:

- Monoclonal antibodies provide a well-defined reagent.
- Monoclonal antibody production can yield an unlimited quantity of homogeneous reagent with highly consistent affinity and specificity.
- Monoclonal antibodies can be prepared through immunization with a nonpurified antigen.
- Monoclonal antibodies have certain limitations in their use, as follows:
  - Insufficient reactivity is seen in precipitation or agglutination because network formation in the immunocomplex is weak or does not occur when single monoclonal antibodies are used.
  - Antigens with multiple heterogeneous epitopes are more difficult to characterize immunochemically with a single monoclonal antibody.

Antibody Production by Recombinant Technology

Skerra and Pluckthun (1988) developed an expression system for the Fv fragment of variable domains of an antibody specific to phosphoryl choline using recombinant technology in *Escherichia coli*. This technology makes it possible to produce chimeric antibody fused to an enzyme.

A new technology called phage display has emerged for the production of antibodies (Winter et al, 1994). In this method, antibody fragments of predetermined binding specificity are constructed from a repertoire of antibody variable (*V*) genes, thereby eliminating the need for immunization and hybridoma technology. The *V* genes can be assembled in vitro. The phage selected from the repertoire by binding to antigen and antibody fragments is expressed in infected bacteria. Furthermore, the binding affinity of the antibodies is improved through mutation. In the near future, this technology will allow the use of specific antibodies with high avidity.

KINETICS OF ANTIGEN–ANTIBODY REACTION

Certain aspects of equilibrium or the law of mass action in chemistry can be applied to the Ag–Ab reaction. The kinetics of the reversible Ag–Ab reaction is as follows (Steward, 1986):

$$Ag + Ab \underset{K_2}{\overset{K_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} AgAb \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 44-1)}$$

where:

Ag = free antigen
Ab = free antibody sites
$AgAb$ = antigen–antibody complex concentration
K_1 and K_2 = association and disassociation rate constants, respectively

The rate of formation of the antigen–antibody complex is represented as follows:

$$d[AgAb]/dt = K_1[Ag][Ab] - K_2[AgAb] \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 44-2)}$$

and at equilibrium, the net rate is zero. Therefore,

$$K_1/K_2 = [AgAb]/[Ag][Ab] = K_a \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 44-3)}$$

(association equilibrium constant or affinity constant).

K_a is the parameter limited to site-to-site reactions, although antigens and antibodies often have multiple binding sites on the molecule. The apparent association constant for multiple antigen and antibody reactions may be referred to as *avidity* instead of affinity. The K_a value may be obtained from the following equations and experimental data:

$$[Ab] = [Ab]_t - [AgAb] \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 44-4)}$$

where:

$[Ab]$ = antibody concentration at equilibrium
$[Ab]_t$ = total original antibody concentration

$$K_a = B/([Ab]_t - B)\,F \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 44-5)}$$

where:

F = free antigen or analyte
B = bound antigen or analyte

A Scatchard plot is produced when the amount of antigen bound (B) is plotted on the x-axis and the bound over free (B/F) ratio of analytes is plotted on the y-axis. The two parameters that can be determined from the Scatchard plot are the dissociation or affinity constant from the slope of the line and the concentration of antibody-binding sites from the X-intercept (Scatchard, 1949).

OVERVIEW OF GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF IMMUNOASSAYS

CLASSES OF IMMUNOASSAYS

A brief classification and a list of features of various immunoassays appear in Table 44-1. Precipitation immunoassays provide the simplest method for antigens and antibodies to react with each other without involving the detection of any labels. The resulting Ag–Ab complex in gel or liquid phase

TABLE 44-1
Classification of Various Immunoassays and Their Characteristics

	Labels (Reporter Groups)	B/F Separation*	Signal Detection	Sensitivity
Precipitation immunoassays	Not required	Not required	Naked eye, turbidity, nephrometry	~10 μg/mL[1]
Particle immunoassays	Blood cells, artificial particles (gelatin, particles, latex, etc.)	Not required	Naked eye, pattern analyzer, spectrophotometry, particle counting	~5 ng/mL[2]
Radioimmunoassays	Radioisotopes (^{125}I, ^{3}H)	Required	Photon counting	~5 pg/mL
Enzyme immunoassays	Enzymes	Required	Spectrophotometry, fluorometry photon counting (CL-EIA)	~5 pg/mL ~0.1 pg/mL[3]
Fluorescence immunoassays	Fluorophores	Required	Photon counting	~5 pg/mL[4]
Chemiluminescence immunoassays	Chemiluminescent compounds	Required	Photon counting	~5 pg/mL[4]

Data from Ritchie R: *Automated immunoanalysis, Part I and Part II*, New York, 1978, Marcel Dekker; Haux P, Dybois H, McGovern M, et al: Evaluation of the TIna-quant ferritin assay on the Boehringer Mannheim/Hitachi 704 System, *Clin Chem* 34:1174, 1988. Abstract; Isomura M, Ueno M, Shimada K, et al: Highly sensitive chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassay with gelatin-coated ferrite solid phase, *Clin Chem* 40:1830, 1994; and Sgoutas DS, Barton EG, Hammarstrom M, et al: Four sensitive thyrotropin assays critically evaluated and compared, *Clin Chem* 25:1785–1789, 1989.
B/F, Bound over free.
*Washing step for separation of bound labels in immunocomplex from free labels. Homogeneous assays included are not required for B/F separation.

may be observed qualitatively as a precipitant by the naked eye and quantitatively with a detector.

The particle agglutination immunoassay (Kasahara, 1992b) uses inert particles as labels, as opposed to direct precipitation of the Ag–Ab complexes. Antigens or antibodies attached to particles such as erythrocytes, latex, or metal sol react with the analyte in the specimen. As a result of this immune reaction, large particles show significant agglutination patterns that may be seen by the naked eye. Yalow and Berson (1959) reported on the development of a radioimmunoassay (RIA) using radioisotopes as labels. This breakthrough allowed for the quantitative detection of a trace level of analytes and contributed to the advancement of basic research and clinical medicine. Insulin, for example, was quantified by RIA, which subsequently replaced the insulin bioassay. RIA may be formatted in a solid-phase procedure for easy separation of bound and free labels. Since the development of RIAs, the search for alternative labels to hazardous radioisotopes has intensified, with the aim of developing nonisotopic immunoassays using enzymes, fluorescent labels, and other reporter groups.

The enzyme immunoassay (EIA), using enzymes as labels, was developed in the early 1970s (Engvall & Perlman, 1971; Van Weeman & Schuurs, 1971) and rapidly gained wide popularity. Enzymes can amplify signals, depending on the turnover of enzyme catalytic activity. Efforts to improve substrates and to increase sensitivity have led to the introduction of chromophore, fluorophore, and later chemiluminescent compounds. Depending on the substrate chosen, the assay method can be defined as a fluorescent enzyme immunoassay or as a chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassay (Thorpe et al, 1984).

Fluorescent immunoassays (FIAs) use fluorophores as labels. Fluorophores require optimal wavelength light energy for their excitation to produce detectable emission light. FIA sensitivity is likely to decrease because of the nonspecific background fluorescence present in biological specimens. Fluorophores that have a delayed fluorescence emission time of 100 ns (nanoseconds) are suitable for application on time-resolved FIA. The introduction of a new class of fluorescent compounds has resulted in improvements in FIA such as the elimination of background noise. Sophisticated instrumentation has been introduced that can detect low concentrations (10^{-15} M) of analytes using FIAs.

Chemiluminescent immunoassays use chemiluminescent compounds as labels. Chemiluminescent compounds include chemically synthesized molecules as well as natural products such as aequorin. Unlike fluorophores, most chemiluminescent compounds require chemical rather than light energy to generate emission light. The reduction–oxidation reaction is a process common to all chemiluminescent assays. Signal amplification is not expected of chemiluminescent labels because chemiluminescent molecules generate just one photon through molecular decomposition. A series of new and innovative compounds for electrochemiluminescence have proved suitable for application on immunoassays. Metal chelate with tribiphenyls emits light through a continuous reduction–oxidation reaction on the surface of electrodes (Blackburn et al, 1991).

In the various types of assays mentioned earlier, the main factors affecting assay sensitivity are the association constant (affinity or avidity) of the reactant, the signal intensity of the labels, and the signal/noise ratio of the detection signal reduced by background from the signals themselves or by a nonspecific reaction.

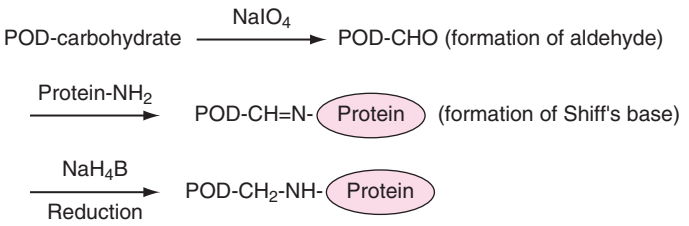


Figure 44-1 **Coupling scheme for conjugation of protein with horseradish peroxidase (POD) based on the Nakane method.**

Iodine-125 (^{125}I) requires about 7 million molecules to generate 1 photon/second, based on half-life calculations of radioisotopes (Bounaud et al, 1987). Chemiluminescent substrates to enzymes can increase events by an order of magnitude six times greater than that of iodine-125. This is attributable to the catalytic amplification capacity of enzymes.

CONJUGATION CHEMISTRY

Depending on the assay chosen, the method of conjugation that couples one molecule to others, enzymes (or cofactors) to antigens (or antibodies), or antigens (or antibodies) to solid phase may vary. The coupling reaction applied should be performed under conditions that avoid the reduction of any of the biological activities of the protein. In the glutaraldehyde method (Avrameas et al, 1978), glutaraldehyde, along with two (or possibly more) aldehyde groups as coupling reagents, has been used for conjugation of protein amino groups. This method is based on mixed reactions, including aldol condensation at high pH (the pKa of the NH residue is 8.6 to 10.8). With this method, shown in Figure 44-1, the resulting conjugate has different forms because of the existence of multiple active sites for coupling. The periodate oxidation method (Nakane & Pierce, 1966) for the conjugation of antibodies uses horseradish peroxidase, which contains carbohydrates in its molecules. The methods mentioned earlier are not suitable for regulation of site-specific reactions, such as when configurational stereospecificity of conjugates is required.

As shown in Figure 44-2, new coupling methods (Kato et al, 1975; Kitagawa et al, 1978) have been developed using a sophisticated coupling reagent, M-maleimidobenzyl-*N*-hydroxysuccinimide ester (MBS). The MBS is a bivalent reagent consisting of an activated ester and maleimide, and it can react with an NH_2 group and an SH group, respectively. The carboxy group can also be used as a specific site for conjugating with α- or ε-NH_2 residues of proteins using *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (NHS) as the coupling reagent. The NHS coupling reagent extends to conjugate protein or the carboxyl group introduced on the solid phase.

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE SOLID PHASE

All heterogeneous immunoassays using conjugate with labels, including radioisotopes, require at least one separation step to distinguish the reacted

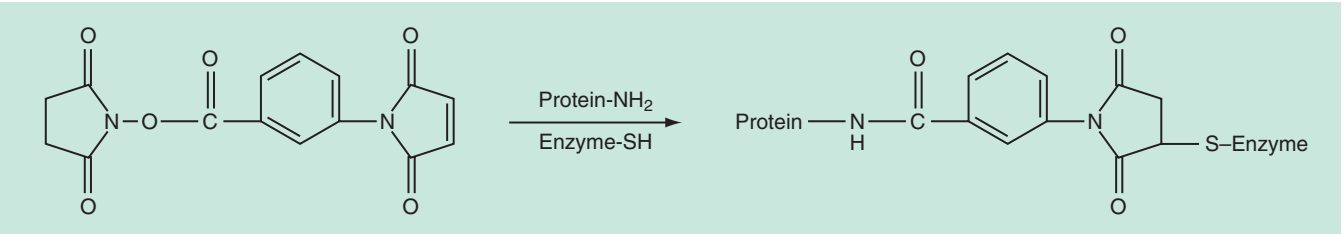


Figure 44-2 Preparation of enzyme–protein conjugate using hetero-bifunctional coupling reagent.

TABLE 44-2
Particles Used as Labels for Particle Agglutination Immunoassay

	Assay Method	Supply
Human erythrocyte	Direct hemagglutination (Landsteiner) Erythrocyte antibody hemagglutination: titer plate/slide	ABO blood type Human immunodeficiency virus antibody
Avian erythrocyte	Direct hemagglutination	Human influenza virus antibody
Fixed animal erythrocyte	Passive hemagglutination: titer plate Reverse passive hemagglutination: titer plate	*Treponema pallidum* antibody Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)
Latex	Reverse passive agglutination: slide Reverse passive agglutination: turbidimetry Reverse passive agglutination	Chorionic gonadotropin Immunoglobulin (Ig)E Ferritin
Latex (color)	Immunochromatography	Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)
Microcapsule	Passive agglutination: titer plate	*T. pallidum* antibody
Gelatin particle	Passive agglutination: titer plate Reverse passive agglutination: charge-coupled device (CCD) camera	HIV, *T. pallidum* antibody Human hemoglobin (hHb)
Polypeptide particle	Passive and reverse agglutination	*T. pallidum* antibody, HBs antibody
Silicate particle	Passive agglutination: titer plate/CCD camera	*T. pallidum* antibody
Gold particle	Reverse agglutination enhancement photometry	Total estrogen
Metal sols	Reverse agglutination	hCG, hHb

From Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y: Heterogeneous enzyme immunoassays. In Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology. Reproduced with permission.

immunocomplex (bound) from unreacted materials (free). Immobilization of antigens or antibodies for solid phase is performed by covalent binding or physical adsorption through noncovalent interactions. Gel particles made of agarose, polyacrylamide, and plastic beads, or titer plates composed of polystyrene, have been used as the solid phase, as well as particles coated with iron oxide that can be separated by a magnetic field.

The inner wall of a tube or a microtiter well is commonly used as a solid phase. With these relatively large solid phases, shaking of the reaction mixture may be needed to shorten the time required for the immune reaction to take place. The prozone phenomenon or hook effect caused by high concentrations of the analyte is likely to be observed in one-step immunoassay when limited quantities of solid-phase antibody or labeled antibody are employed. Microtiter or strip-type plates may cause an "edge effect." This effect can be explained by the different kinetics of the immune reaction or enzyme activity with variations in temperature. A difference in temperature may be present between the wells located at the edge of the microtiter plate and the center of the plate. A difference of about 2°C may be observed with an infrared thermometer between the edge and the center of wells at ambient temperature. The size and shape of the solid phase are critical factors affecting the immunoreaction kinetics and the capturing capacity of solid-phase antibody or antigen. Small spherical magnetic particles or latex particles with 3000 Å diameters provide a larger total surface area for immunoabsorbency than is usually obtained with other solid phases. The larger total surface area helps shorten the immunologic reaction time (Nishizono et al, 1991).

The particles used for the particle agglutination assay are listed in Table 44-2. The phenomenon of particle agglutination (direct agglutination) caused by an immunoreaction was first observed in tests after incubation with infected patient serum. Agglutination of erythrocytes after incubation with serum led to the discovery of ABO blood types. Particle immunoassays are based on the agglutination principle and use the reactant of an antibody or an antigen attached to the inert particle as a label, as opposed to direct precipitation of an Ag–Ab immunocomplex. As a label, the particle can significantly increase the immunoassay sensitivity, regardless of whether the resulting agglutination is detected by the naked eye or with spectrophotometric instruments for quantification.

Erythrocytes, gelatin particles, liposomes, metal sols, and various kinds of latex particles, including latex modified with iron oxide or dyes, are all suitable solid phases. The diameter of these particles used for agglutination reactions varies from 0.01 to 7 μm. No single theory can explain the kinetics of agglutination (Kasahara, 1992a) because of the wide variety of particle sizes used as labels. Brownian motion is not significant at room temperature for dispersed particles larger than 3 to 5 μm. However, the theory of potential energy of interaction between particles, or the theory of colloidal coagulation reaction, can apply to small particles such as latex microparticles. The IgM antibody, being multivalent, is estimated to be 750 times more efficient than the bivalent IgG antibody in an agglutination reaction. The distance between particles in flocculation should be less than or equal to 120 Å because of the molecular length of the antibody. In summary, important factors to consider in an immunoreaction are the surface properties of particles, such as charge and hydrophobicity, and the stability of dispersion.

PRECIPITIN AND NEPHELOMETRIC IMMUNOASSAYS

BACKGROUND AND PRINCIPLES OF PRECIPITIN REACTION

The precipitate that forms when large complexes of antigen and antibody combine to form an insoluble lattice has been widely used to identify and quantify immunoprecipitin reactions. The modes of application of precipitin techniques have the advantages of sensitivity, specificity, and simplicity. The sensitivity limitation of these assays is a major consideration. Even under the best conditions of enhanced sensitivity afforded by newer light-scattering techniques, the lower limit of sensitivity of immunoprecipitin assays remains in the range of 0.1 to 0.5 mg/dL. This lower limit

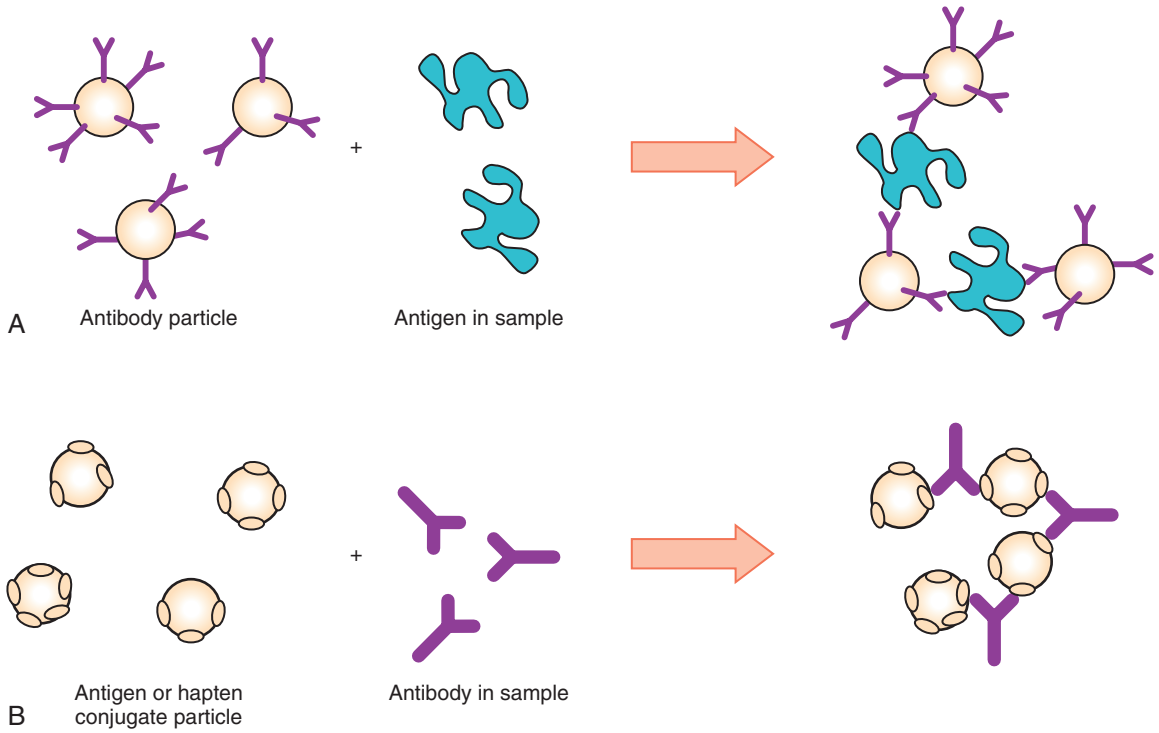


Figure 44-3 **Principles of passive particle agglutination immunoassay for detection of antigen with multiple A,** epitopes or **B,** antibodies. (From Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

of sensitivity appears to be sufficient for the quantification of many major serum proteins. The precipitin reaction forms the basis for many quantitative and qualitative immunochemical techniques now used in the clinical laboratory (Kabat, 1961).

Factors affecting the precipitin reaction were extensively investigated by Heidelberg in 1935, who found that the relative proportions of reactants; conditions of temperature, pH, and ionic strength of the medium; and antibody characteristics of avidity and affinity were all important in the formation of the immune precipitate (Heidelberg & Kendall, 1935). On the pattern of precipitin formation, it can be noted that there is a point at which precipitation is maximum or optimal, which is designated as *the point of equivalence.* Continued addition of antigen once the point of equivalence has been reached produces a solubilizing effect on the precipitate. The dynamic range suitable for the determination of analytes should be up to the zone of equivalence. Optimization of the antibody concentration as a reactant is necessary, in addition to optimization of buffer solutions. Typical precipitant reaction methods are as follows:

1. Qualitative Precipitant Assay Methods
   - Single immunodiffusion (Williams & Chase, 1970)
   - Double immunodiffusion (Garvey et al, 1977)
   - Double immunodiffusion in two dimensions (Williams & Chase, 1970)
   - Electroimmunodiffusion reaction (Ritzmann & Daniels, 1975)
   - Immunoelectrophoresis (Rose, 1973)
2. Semiquantitative Precipitant Assay Methods
   - Single radial immunodiffusion (Fahey & McKelvey, 1965; Mancini et al, 1965)
   - Single-dimension electroimmunodiffusion ("rocket" electrophoresis) (Axelsen, 1975)

NEPHELOMETRIC IMMUNOASSAYS

A number of techniques for immunoprecipitin analysis have been developed that use light-scattering devices (Ritchie, 1978). The occurrence of immune complex formation has been related to the amount of such light scattering and has been used as a basis for antigen quantitation. Sophisticated instruments have been designed to rapidly measure light scattering. Measurements of scattered light are generally referred to as *turbidimetry* or *nephelometry.*

PARTICLE IMMUNOASSAY

PRINCIPLE OF PARTICLE AGGLUTINATION

The agglutination reaction may be used to detect antibodies in specimens with specific antigens sensitized to a particle (passive or direct agglutination; Fig. 44-3, *B*). Reverse agglutination using a corresponding antibody sensitized to particles can be employed to detect soluble antigens in the specimen (Fig. 44-3, *A*). A hapten unit single-binding site (for drugs, hormones, or small particles) does not form a cross-linking structure and thus cannot become agglutinated unless it is immobilized on the solid phase. As shown in Figure 44-4, *A* and *B*, when a particle or carrier immobilized with a hapten is used as a reactant, an agglutination inhibition reaction occurs that allows detection of the hapten. This assay is based on a competitive-type principle in which agglutination of hapten particles with a limited amount of antibody, whether free or sensitized on particles, is inhibited by the hapten present in the specimen. Also, labeled particles can react with reactants fixed on the solid phase of the membrane. After immunoreaction, particles within the immunocomplex can be developed to show color on part of the membrane. This type of assay has been popular as a simple device for the qualitative detection of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) and other analytes.

Hemagglutination

Hemagglutination tests (Boyden, 1951) are simple to perform and do not require special equipment. For this reason, both advanced and developing countries have adopted a variety of hemagglutination tests. A popular worldwide hemagglutination test is used for the detection of antibody to *Treponema pallidum*, marketed as Serodia-TP, by Fujirebio, Inc. (Tokyo, Japan). In the United States, the hemagglutination test for *T. pallidum* was approved in 1981 by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. It was also recommended by the World Health Organization because of its superiority over other tests in terms of specificity and sensitivity (Kasahara, 1992b).

In the *T. pallidum* agglutination test, the reagent consists of sensitized and unsensitized sheep red cells, as well as a serum diluent solution for the reconstitution of lyophilized sensitized cells as a positive control. Both qualitative and semiquantitative tests can be carried out using the following serum dilution protocol and a titer plate as a reaction container as follows:

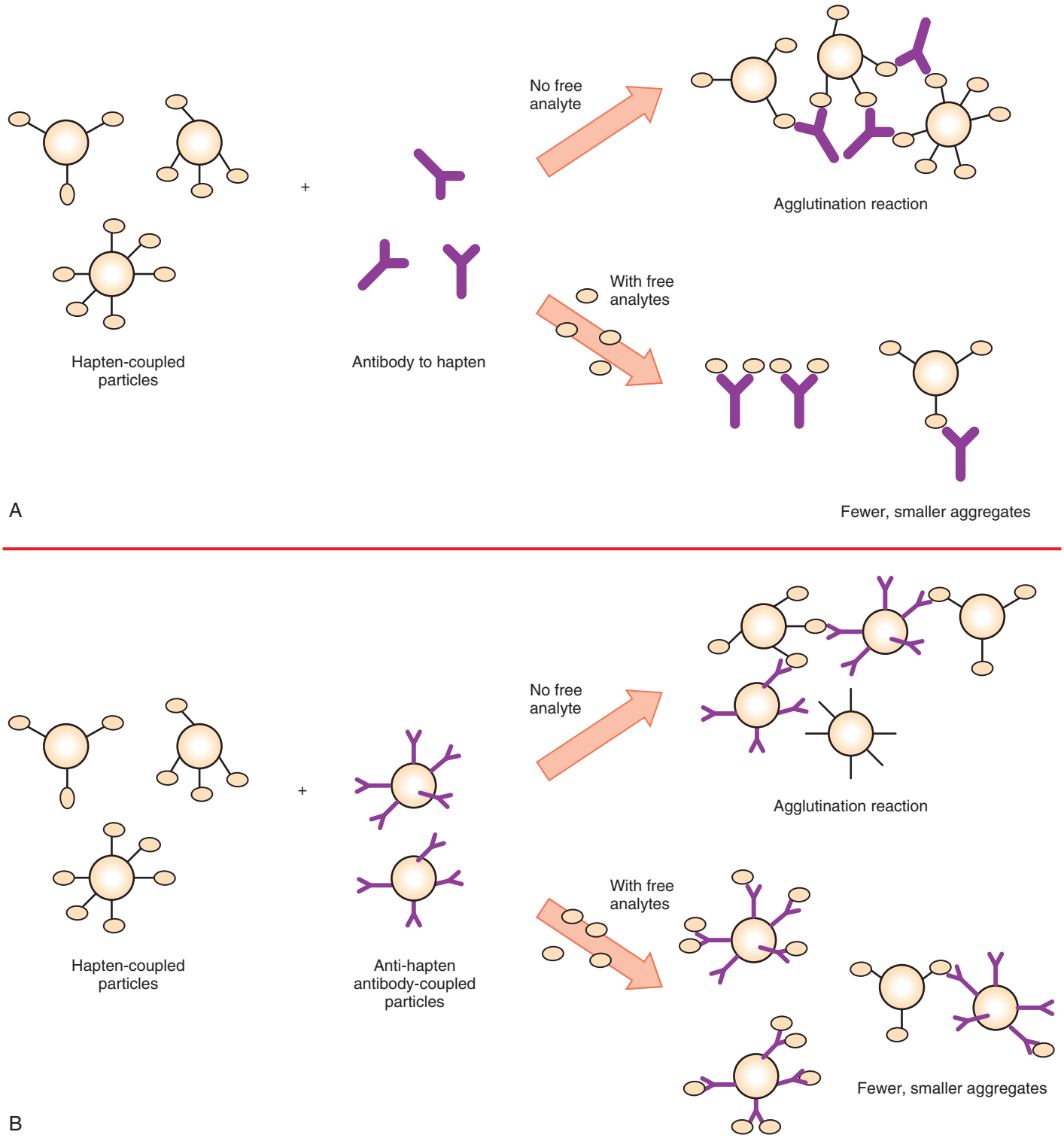


Figure 44-4 Principles of particle inhibition immunoassay for detection of antigen with single epitope (hapten), using antigen particle with **(A)** free or **(B)** fixed antibody. (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

Using a 25-µL pipette dropper, place four drops 100 µL of serum diluent in well 1 (Fig. 44-5) and one drop in wells 2 to 4 for the qualitative assay (wells 2 to 8 are used for the quantitative assay). The resulting agglutination patterns are shown in Figure 44-6. Negative patterns, indicating that immunoreaction has not taken place, show condensed flocculation particles with a cross-packing structure at the bottom of the microtiter well. On the other hand, positive patterns, indicating that immunoreaction has occurred, show an expanded agglutination pattern of particles. Agglutinated particles cannot be sedimented any further to obtain condensation as negative patterns, because their global shape is lost on account of the agglutination of particles. In the first and second rows, serum and unsensitized cells (negative control) were used, respectively. Specimens 1 and 2 show negative results. Specimens 3 to 8 show negative or positive results, depending on the specimen dilution. A positive result is observed for both specimens 7 and 8 up to 1:2560 (rows 3 to 8).

Hemagglutination kits are now available for the detection of antibodies to hepatitis type B virus (HBV), hepatitis type C (HCV), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV1/2), thyroglobulin, thyroid microsome, and other substances. Reverse hemagglutination tests are used for the detection of HBV surface antigen, α-fetoprotein (AFP), human hemoglobin in stool

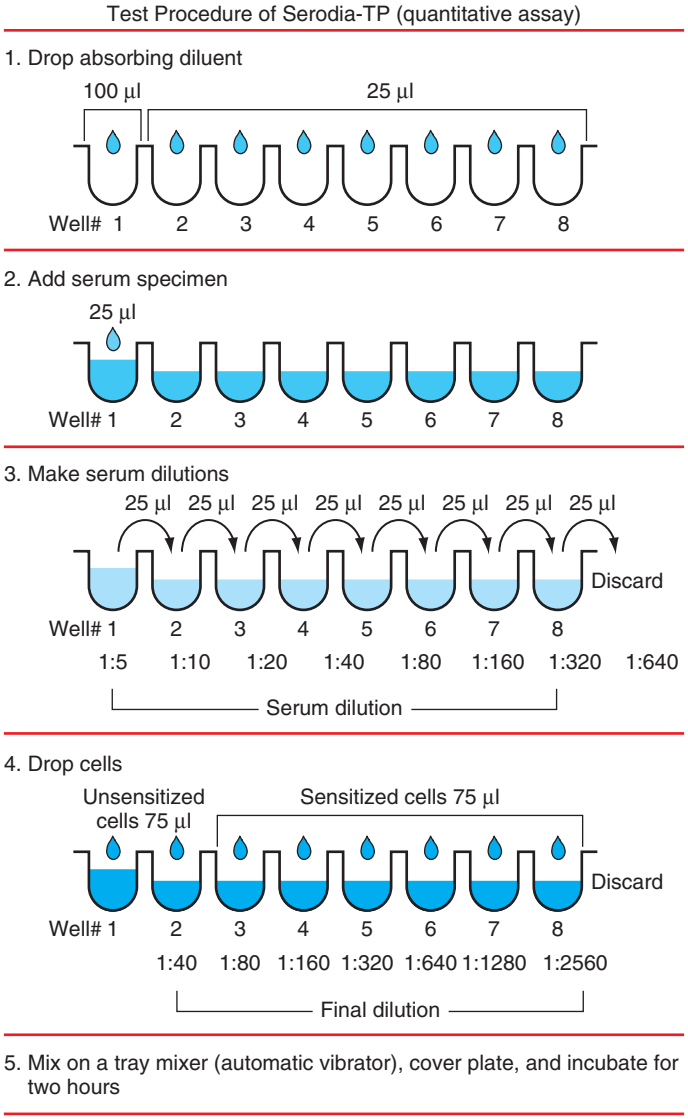


Figure 44-5 Hemagglutination assay for detection of *Treponema pallidum* antigen (Serodia-TP, Fujirebio, Inc., Tokyo, Japan) based on semiquantitative test protocols. (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

specimens, and so forth. The sensitivity of hemagglutination tests is approximately 50 ng/mL for antigen (analyte) detection. Kemp and colleagues (1988) developed a hemagglutination assay that uses a mouse monoclonal antibody specific to the surface antigen of human erythrocytes. The antibody can recognize an epitope common to different types of red cells or to abnormal cells, such as those found in sickle cell anemia. As shown schematically in Figure 44-7, blood cells in the specimens are used as solid-phase particles, and the resulting agglutination can be observed by the naked eye. Bivalent antibodies are conjugated chemically, so one antibody specifically reacts with the surface epitopes of the blood cell and the other is specific to the target antigen or analyte. The assay is applied for the detection of antibody to HIV, as well as for the detection of various antigens. Unlike conventional agglutination formats, the separation of plasma or serum is not required. This assay is simple, saves time, and offers safety advantages because it eliminates the need for serum separation for hazardous HIV- or HBV-positive specimens.

Gelatin Particle Agglutination

The development of a special gelatin particle with a highly hydrophilic surface that is able to prevent nonspecific binding of materials present in a specimen has provided an alternative to erythrocytes (Ikeda, 1984). This particle is made by phase separation and three-dimensional cross-linkage at 40° C and optimum pH. The resulting particle is fixed with formaldehyde or glutaraldehyde, and its diameter is about 3 µm. The physical properties of gelatin particles in comparison with those of erythrocytes are shown in Figure 44-8. A gelatin particle has no antigenicity and is therefore free from problems associated with heterophilic antibodies when erythrocytes are used as particles. This type of artificial particle requires much less serum dilution to avoid nonspecific binding and guarantees a more sensitive detection than with blood cells. Other synthetic particles (Hirayama et al, 1991) made from block copolymer composed of L-glutamic acid and derivatives have been developed by Hirayama and colleagues (1991) as alternatives to gel particles. These synthetic particles can be stained with dye of any color because the particles themselves are colorless, as are gelatin particles. The gelatin particle agglutination test was initially applied to the detection of antibodies to human T-cell lymphotropic virus, which was first discovered as a retrovirus in humans. This agglutination test (Ikeda, 1984) soon became very popular for blood screening for HIV, HBV, and HCV because of its high sensitivity and specificity and its simplicity, and the fact that strict temperature control is not required to perform the tests. Gelatin particle agglutination can replace any assay based on hemagglutination, with the exception of assays that use red blood cells in specimens as particles.

Latex Agglutination

Latex agglutination (Galvin, 1984), using latex as particles, has been employed for the detection of various analytes, such as hCG for qualitative pregnancy tests, and for the quantitative detection of other plasma proteins with or without instrumentation. The format of this qualitative assay is simple. For example, one might have to mix only a couple of drops of latex sensitized with reactant and specimen using a stick on a black slide. Two to three minutes later, phase inversion agglutination resulting from the immunoreaction can be observed by the naked eye. Latex agglutination was adapted for quantitative assays using light detection methods based on turbidimetry (light absorption) or nephelometry (light scattering). With these techniques, latex agglutination achieves an enhanced sensitivity of subnanograms per milliliter, while the sensitivity of the assay measuring intact precipitation of the Ag–Ab complex remains below 0.5 µg/mL.

Latex Turbidimetric Assay

Light adsorption (light loss by scattering on the surface of a particle) is proportional to the diameter of the particle and depends on the wavelength of light used. Most latex reagents commercially available use latex with a diameter of less than 1 µm and are applied in automated chemistry analyzers using photometric measuring principles. To further improve sensitivity, efforts were made to upgrade reagents and instrumentation and to optimize particle size, selection of appropriate wavelength, and improvements in computer software for integration of data. Automated systems now use latex particles that can perform about 200 tests per hour at a subnanogram-per-milliliter sensitivity.

Particle-Counting Immunoassay

The particle-counting immunoassay (PACIA) (Masson & Holy, 1986) uses optical cell counting to assess the decrease in the number of unagglutinated particles after an immunoreaction. In the PACIA format, the rate assay—that is, the rate of decrease in the number of unagglutinated particles—or the endpoint of the assay reaction can be measured. The endpoint assay can be used to obtain a sensitivity at the nanogram-per-milliliter level; however, a longer incubation time is required for an endpoint immunologic reaction.

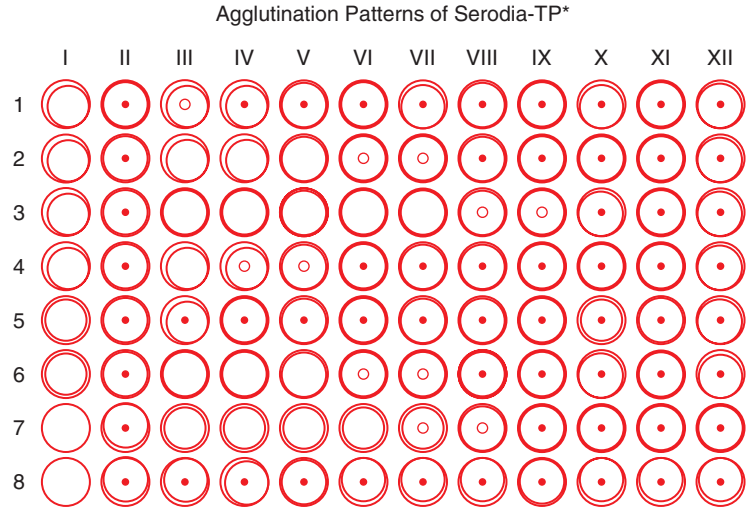
Other Particle Immunoassays

Quasielastic scattering immunoassays were developed using a measurement of the change in response to particle size distribution (Yarmush et al, 1987). This technique uses a laser light beam to measure the reduction in the mean diffusion coefficient of particles as a result of immunoreaction. Other methods measure the change in angular anisotropy of scattered light with the increasing average size of the particle. Particles with diameters about equal to the size of a wavelength achieve a size-dependent angular variation of scattered light.

SUMMARY

Indirect hemagglutination and gelatin particle agglutination tests using microtiter plates are popular procedures for qualitative and semiquantitative determination of various analytes. These tests do not require additional instrumentation or strict temperature control. Most important, they guarantee a sensitivity equal to or greater than conventional enzyme

A



B

Row no.	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	XI	XII	
Type of cells added		Unsensitized cells	Sensitized cells										Result
Final dilution of serum specimen		1:40	1:80	1:160	1:320	1:640	1:1280	1:2560	1:5120	1:10240	1:20480	Medium control	Titer
Serum specimen													
No. 1	–	–		–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Inconclusive
No. 2	–	–	++	++	+	+	–	–	–	–	–	–	1:640
No. 3	–	–	++	++	++	++	++	+	–	–	–	–	1:2560
No. 4	–	–	+	+	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1:160
No. 5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Negative
No. 6	–	–	++	++	++	+	–	–	–	–	–	–	1:640
No. 7	–	–	++	++	++	++	+	–	–	–	–	–	1:1280
No. 8	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	Negative

*Trademark for agglutination test for *T. pallidum* antibody, Fujirebio, Inc., Tokyo, Japan

Figure 44-6 Hemagglutination patterns for detection of **(A)** anti–Treponema pallidum antibody, and **(B)** interpretation as positive or negative at final serum dilution. (From Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

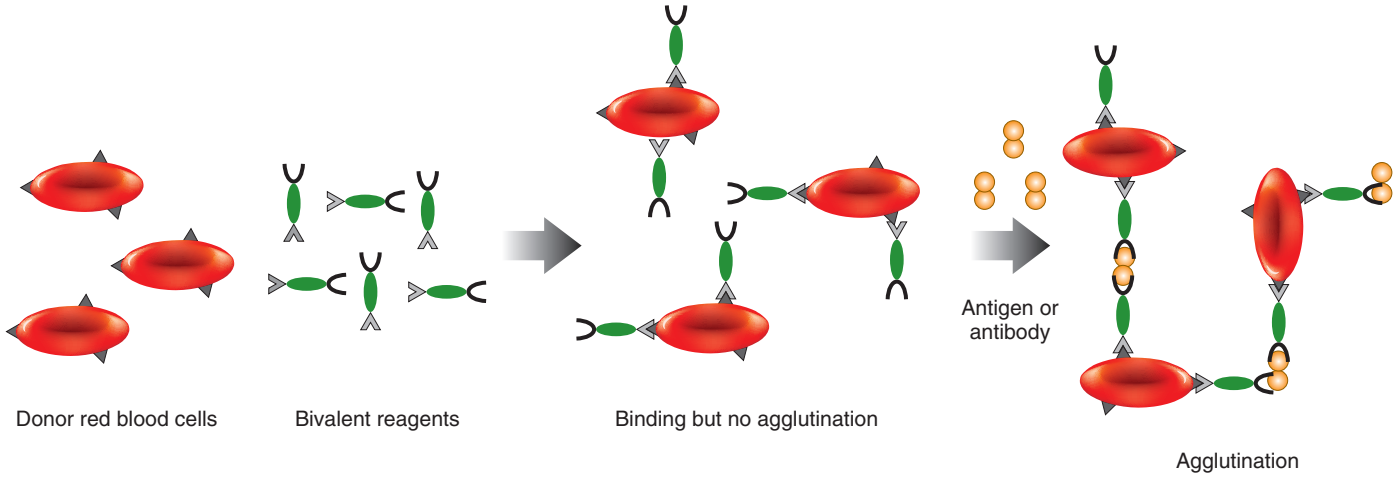
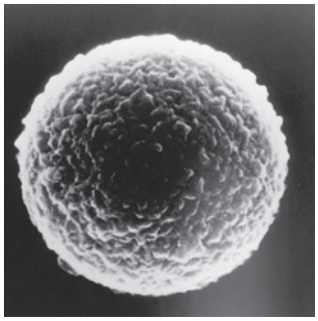


Figure 44-7 **Schematic presentation of an assay based on autologous erythrocyte agglutination, using erythrocytes in the specimen as particles.** (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)



Physical properties	Carrier	
	Gelatin particles	Sheep erythrocytes
Diameter, μm	2 to 6	6
Specific gravity	1.05 to 1.10	1.10
Electrophoretic mobility; μm/s/V/cm	–0.75 to –1.85	–1.15

Figure 44-8 **Electron micrograph (×25,000) and physical properties of gelatin particles in comparison with sheep erythrocytes.** (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology, p 139.)

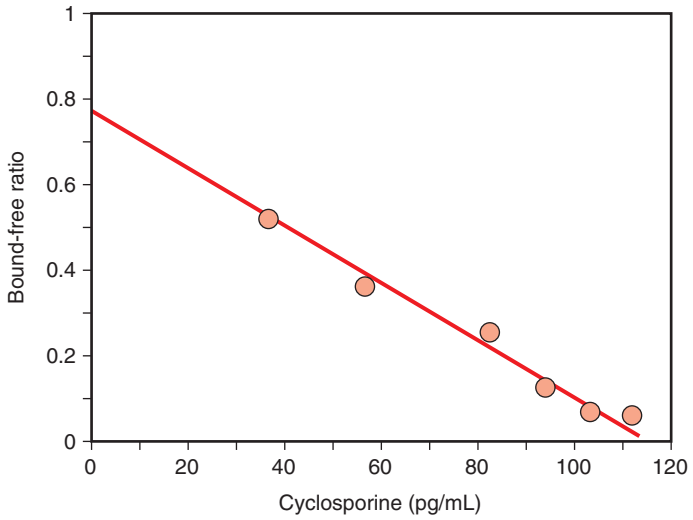


Figure 44-9 **Scatchard plot of cyclosporine antibody binding characteristics ($K_a = 8.1 \times 10^9$ L/M).**

immunoassays when applied to antibody detection of infectious agents. Latex as a solid phase provides great kinetic advantages, such as a shorter immunoreaction time. For this reason, it was possible to adapt latex for use in existing or sophisticated instruments by applying different principles, resulting in an assay sensitivity of about three orders of magnitude greater than standard immunoprecipitation assays. Latex is susceptible to interferences from unknown factors present in specimens. To eliminate this problem, various absorbents have to be used in both the reagent and the incubation medium. The great advantage of particle immunoassay is its simplicity, because it does not require separation of bound and free reactants.

RADIOIMMUNOASSAY

BACKGROUND

Since radioimmunoassay (RIA) technology using radioisotopes as labels was first developed by Yalow and Berson (1959), it has been improved dramatically in sensitivity and precision. Numerous variations in the method have been introduced into the clinical laboratory. Two main RIA techniques, competitive and noncompetitive heterogeneous formats, require washing steps to separate bound and free labels (conjugates). The competitive assay follows the law of mass action, which specifies the reaction between analytes and binding proteins, receptors, and antibody. The key factor in assay optimization is the binding affinity of the antibody. The Scatchard plot of the ratio of bound to free antibody to analyte concentration is commonly used to evaluate antibody performance. Figure 44-9 shows the Scatchard plot for cyclosporine determination. As described earlier in the Kinetics of Antigen-Antibody Reaction section, from the following equation:

$$B/F = K_a([Ab]_t - B) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 44-6)}$$

the *y*-axis is the *B/F* ratio that is proportional to free $[Ab]$ from $[Ab]_t - B$, equal to free $[Ag]$. Therefore, K_a represents the slope of the plot. In Figure 44-9, the affinity constant K_a is 8.1×10^9 L/M for the antibody specific to cyclosporine. Radioactive emissions, such as γ-rays of iodine-125 labels, can be measured in terms of counts per minute (CPM) using a γ-scintillation counter. Typical radioisotopes used as labels and their properties are shown in Table 44-3. The choice of label affects the assay protocol considerably. For example, the most popular label, iodine-125, requires a rather short time for signal counting but has a limited shelf life because of its short half-life. On the other hand, the tritium (^{3}H) label requires a longer time for counting, thereby increasing the total assay time. Most RIAs now use iodine-125 as labels to expedite the conjugation process and to retain the biological activity of the reactants. A commonly used method for conjugation of iodine-125 with proteins is the chloramine-T method (Hunter & Greenwood, 1962). Tyrosine, in particular, has greater reactivity with iodate because of its hydroxy group at the para-position on the aromatic ring. The signal can be measured in terms of CPM as γ-ray emissions.

TABLE 44-3
Properties of Radioisotopes Used as Labels for Radioimmunoassays

Isotope	Half-Life	Type of Decay	Specific Activity (mCi/mmol)
^{125}I	60 days	γ	2200
^{131}I	8.1 days	β^-, γ	16,100
^{3}H	12.3 years	β^-	29
^{14}C	5760 years	β^-	6062
^{32}P	14.3 days	β^-	9120

Unlike enzymes, isotopes as labels with a small Stokes radius are not likely to disrupt antigenic activity because of the lack of steric hindrance when isotopes are conjugated with small antigens (haptens).

ASSAY PRINCIPLES AND METHODS

Various methods (antigen excess) based on the competitive binding reaction (Ekins, 1960) to antibodies between labeled antigens and nonlabeled antigens (analytes present in the specimen) have been developed for a wide variety of analytes. A conventional competitive method is shown in Figure 44-10. At first, known amounts of labeled antigen and antigen in the specimen are mixed and reacted competitively with a constant amount of antibody coated on a solid phase, such as sepharose beads or the inner wall of plastic tubes. After the immune reaction reaches its equilibrium, the mixture is washed to remove unreacted conjugates and antigens, and the immune complex trapped on the solid phase is separated. The washing step is referred to as B/F separation. Applying the competitive principle, the plot of antigen-bound percentage against logarithmic concentration of analyte provides the standard curve shown in Figure 44-10. The CPM plot on the standard curve gives the concentration of analytes.

A second antibody method is shown in Figure 44-11. The first antibody specific to a particular antigen (analyte) reacts competitively with both the conjugate and the antigen. Then, the immune complex is captured by the second antibody specific to the first antibody, on the solid phase. When the second antibody is coated on a fine solid phase, the immune complex on the second reaction can be separated as a precipitant from the unreacted molecules. For antibody determination, labeled antibody and antibody in the specimen react competitively with the antigen (analyte) fixed on the solid phase. The steeper slope of the standard curve provides more precise data. Competitive methods require lesser amounts of antibody or antigen (analyte) than the sandwich-type assays described later. Noncompetitive assays, originally demonstrated by Miles and Hales (1968), have recently gained greater popularity.

Immunoradiometric assays and sandwich assays (Fig. 44-12) have alternative relationships between analyte and antibody. The classical

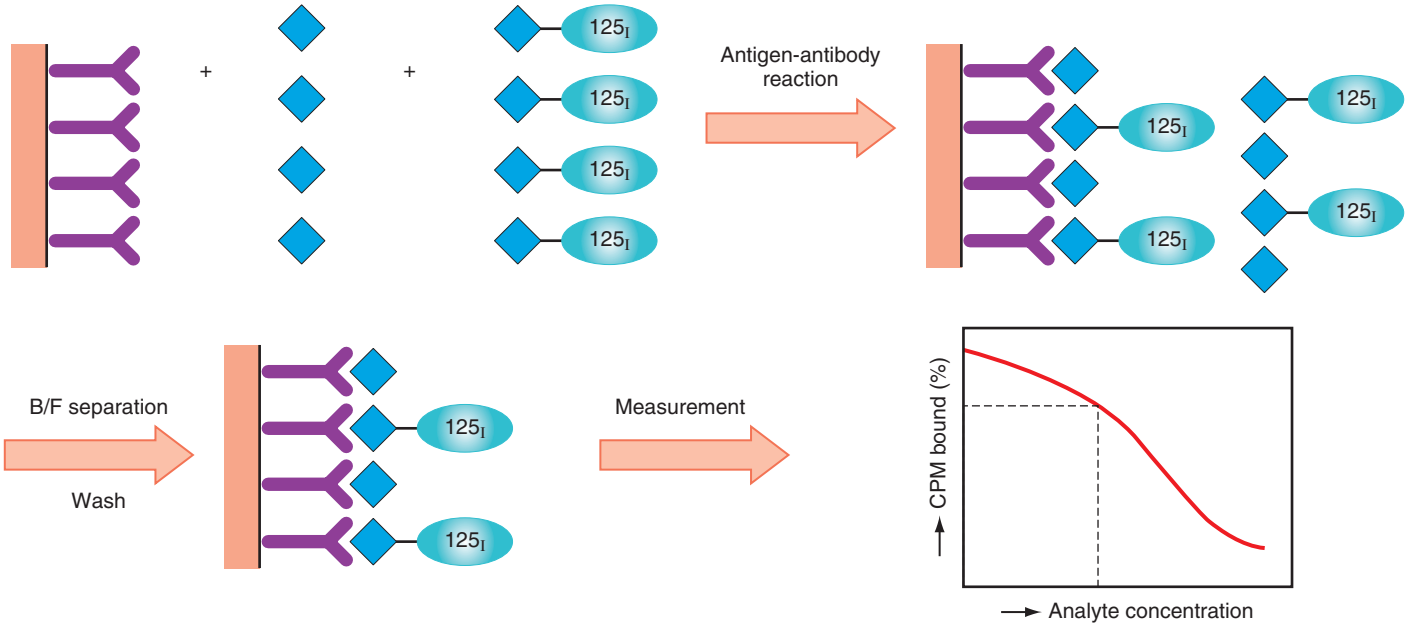


Figure 44-10 Assay principle of competitive radioimmunoassay (RIA) using first antibody as solid phase.

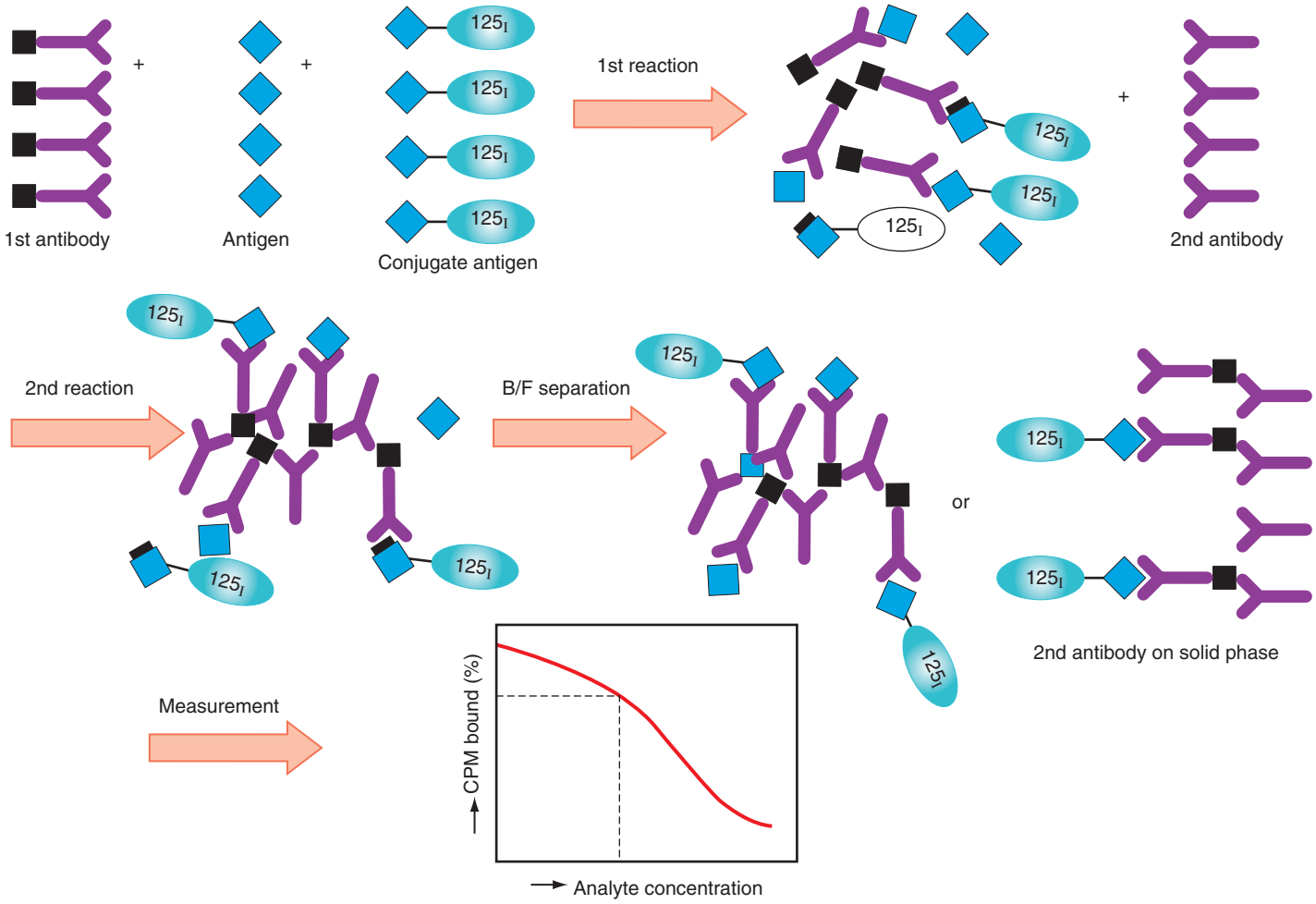


Figure 44-11 Assay principle of competitive radioimmunoassay (RIA) method using second antibody for B/F (bound/free) separation.

competitive assay achieves an immunologic response with a minimum amount of antibody; the sandwich assay uses a large amount of antibody on the solid phase. Monoclonal antibody technology has made it possible to manufacture large quantities of specific antibodies at moderate costs, thereby allowing the sandwich assay to be exploited. The sandwich assay, which uses excess antibody, is more sensitive than the competitive assay. When background noise is completely omitted, the ultimate theoretical sensitivity of the sandwich assay is one molecule of analyte, which is possible when the amount of antibody used in the assay system approaches infinity. As shown in Figure 44-12, the antibody on the solid phase first

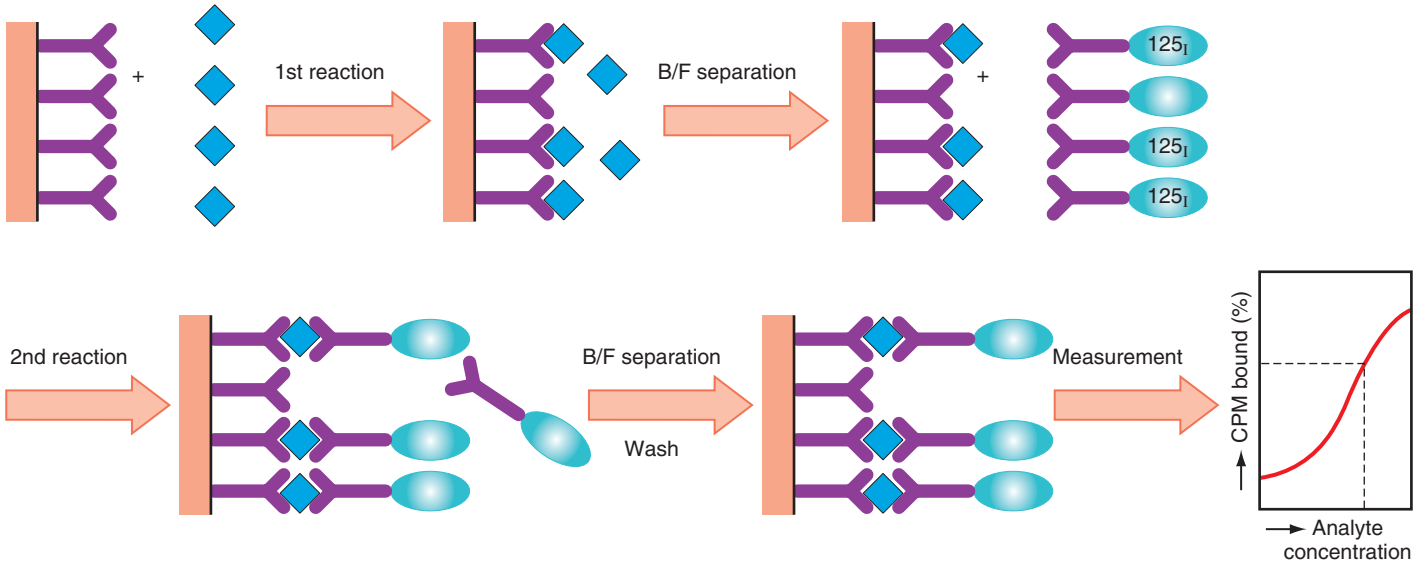


Figure 44-12 **Assay principle of sandwich radioimmunoassay (RIA) method using solid phase, also referred to as immunoradiometric assay.** *B/F,* Bound/free.

TABLE 44-4
Comparison of Radioimmunoassay, Heterogeneous Enzyme Immunoassay, and Homogeneous Enzyme Immunoassay

Assay	Immunologic Reaction Steps	Enzyme Reaction Steps	Signal Detection Steps
Radioimmunoassay Sample + (labeled analyte or Ab) – ^{125}I	Immunoreaction with washing steps for separation	Not required	Radioactive decay (γ-ray)
Heterogeneous enzyme immunoassay Sample + (labeled analyte or Ab) – enzyme	Immunoreaction with washing steps for separation	Enzyme reaction with additional reagent	Optical density Fluorescence Luminescence
Homogeneous enzyme immunoassay Sample + (labeled analyte or Ab) – enzyme or cofactors	Immunoreaction and/or systemic reaction is carried out in one solution, which includes reagent for signal development of enzyme.	Immunoreaction and/or systemic reaction is carried out in one solution, which includes reagent for signal development of enzyme.	Optical density Fluorescence Luminescence

Ab, Antibody.

captures the antigen (analyte) in the specimen. Following B/F separation, the conjugate reacts with the antigen (analyte) fixed on the solid phase; the signal can then be counted after the elimination of free conjugates through a washing step. This assay requires antigens with more than two antigenic sites. When two different antibodies (i.e., a solid-phase antibody specific to one antigenic site and a conjugate antibody specific to another antigenic site) are used, the assay protocol can be simplified by performing a one-step sandwich. Thus the solid phase can mix together with the antigen in the specimen and the conjugate simultaneously. Interference does not occur because the antibodies on both the solid phase and the conjugate are capable of recognizing different antigenic sites. In this assay, the signal generated is proportional to the analyte concentration present in the specimen, as in the two-step sandwich assay. This assay method can be applied to antibody detection with an assay format using antigen as the solid phase or labeled antigen. For a two-step format, antigen as the solid phase or labeled antibody specific to the target antibody can be used. Using the sandwich format, assay sensitivity (Rodriguez-Espinosa et al, 1987) is high. An example is seen when an immunoradiometric assay is used for determination of the peptide hormone thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH); the level of assay sensitivity is below 0.07 μU/mL of TSH, as compared with about 0.7 μU/mL with conventional competitive antigen-labeled assay.

SUMMARY

Compared with other immunoassays, RIAs are advantageous for a number of reasons, including precision and high sensitivity, ease of isotope conjugation, signal detection without optimization, and stability against interference from the assay environment, among others. Disadvantages of RIAs are the short shelf-life of the reagents and the need to protect against hazardous radioactivity. Furthermore, as discussed later, RIAs may not be applied to homogeneous immunoassays because signals from isotopes cannot modulate Ag–Ab reactions.

ENZYME IMMUNOASSAY

BACKGROUND AND CLASSIFICATION

Quantitative immunoassays using enzymes as labels were developed as alternatives to radioisotopes (Avrameas & Guilbert, 1971; Engvall & Perlman, 1971; Van Weeman & Schuurs, 1971). The most widely used are the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), the EIA, and the enzyme-multiplied immunoassay technique (EMIT), which is a registered trade name of SYVA Co. (Dade Behring Inc., Cupertino, Calif.) (Rubenstein et al, 1972). Essentially, heterogeneous EIAs are similar to RIAs, except that they use enzymes as labels. Enzymes make it possible to develop homogeneous EIAs, eliminating the otherwise necessary washing steps for B/F separation. Table 44-4 compares the features of heterogeneous and homogeneous EIAs versus RIAs. Improvements in EIAs have provided many innovative formats with different degrees of speed, sensitivity, simplicity, and precision. Advantages and disadvantages of EIAs are listed in Box 44-1 (Nakamura & Kasahara, 1992).

HETEROGENEOUS ENZYME IMMUNOASSAYS

The assay principle of heterogeneous EIAs is similar to that of RIAs, except that enzyme activity, not radioactivity, is measured. EIAs require a secondary process to obtain signals through the catalytic reaction of enzymes. Microtiter plate wells, plastic beads, plastic tubes, magnetic particles, and latex with filters, among others, can be used as the solid phase for the separation of bound and free conjugates. The use of small magnetic

particles and latex allows shortening of the immunoreaction time, thereby reducing the total assay time. The development of substrates to be cleaved by enzymes was marked by the introduction of colorimetric and fluorometric substrates, and later chemiluminescent substrates, which increased the signal sensitivity. The enzymes commonly used in various heterogeneous EIAs are horseradish peroxidase, alkaline phosphatase, β-galactosidase, glucose oxidase, urease, and catalase. The most widely used enzymes and their characteristics are listed in Table 44-5. Assay sensitivity using enzymes may be determined by the turnover rate of each enzyme and by selection of signal measurement in which chemiluminometry is the most sensitive method.

The assay format of heterogeneous EIAs, similar to RIAs, can be divided into competitive and noncompetitive assays (Fig. 44-13). Competitive assays (analyte excess) use antigen–enzyme conjugates (Fig. 44-13, *A*), and noncompetitive assays (reactant excess) include two-site immunometric sandwich assays (Fig. 44-13, *B1*) and indirect assays to measure antibodies (Fig. 44-13, *B2*). Immunometric sandwich assays have gained much popularity for the determination of antigens such as tumor markers, plasma proteins, and infectious agents. Indirect assays for antibody measurement (Fig. 44-13, *B2*) have been adopted for the detection of antibodies to infectious agents (e.g., HIV, HBV, HCV) and to autoantibodies.

Heterogeneous EIA (see Fig. 44-13) consists of the following steps:

1. The solid phase with the attached reactants is mixed with analyte, regardless of whether the assay is based on the competitive or the noncompetitive format.
2. Following the addition of conjugate and incubation, washing steps are performed with a buffer solution containing a detergent, one or two steps after the immunoreaction. The immunoreaction should reach certain yields to obtain a stable and precise assay.
3. The solid phase, with the immunocomplex containing enzyme-labeled antigen or antibody, is incubated at constant temperature with the enzyme–substrate solution.
4. The enzyme reaction is stopped (stopping is not needed in rate assay), and the substrate reaction product is measured with various detectors, depending on the substrate used.

BOX 44-1

Advantages and Disadvantages of Enzyme Immunoassay

A. Advantages
   1. Sensitive assays can be developed by the amplification effect of enzymes.
   2. Reagents are relatively cheap and can have a long shelf life.
   3. Multiple simultaneous assays can be developed.
   4. A wide variety of assay configurations can be developed.
   5. Equipment can be inexpensive and is widely available.
   6. No radiation hazards occur during labeling or disposal of wastes.

B. Disadvantages
   1. Measurement of enzyme activity can be more complex than measurement of the activity of some types of radioisotopes.
   2. Enzyme activity may be affected by plasma constituents.
   3. Homogeneous assays at the present time have the sensitivity of 10^{-9} M and are not as sensitive as radioimmunoassays.
   4. Homogeneous EIAs for large protein molecules have been developed but require complex immunochemical reagents.

EIA, Enzyme immunoassay.

From Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y: Heterogeneous enzyme immunoassays. In Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology. Reproduced with permission.

Colorimetric Enzyme Immunoassay

In this assay, enzyme reaction is performed by using chromogenic substrates to develop a color by prime catalytic reaction—for example, horseradish peroxidase, catalyzing ABTS (diammonium salt of 2,2′-azino-di[{3-ethyl-benzothiazoline-6-sulfonate}]) with H_2O_2 to form a green color, and alkaline phosphatase specific to the *p*-nitrophenylphosphate to form a yellow color. Both enzymes are the most commonly used types of colorimetric enzyme immunoassays. A spectrophotometer is used to measure the optical density of the resulting chromogen. Many instruments are available for the measurement of optical density in tubes or microtiter plates, ranging from a fully automated system that performs sample pipetting and data printout to simpler manual devices. When the EIA reaction is performed on nitrocellulose membrane (Western blotting method) or other membranes, substrates that generate insoluble dyes are utilized. An hCG pregnancy test with an immunoassay format that is sold as an over-the-counter test commonly uses benzidine derivatives to react with peroxidase or indoxyl phosphate derivatives to react with alkaline phosphatase to generate insoluble dyes. The dye accumulating on the solid phase through enzyme reaction can be read by the naked eye. Theoretically, the measurement of optical density is limited to a range of 0 to 2.0. Therefore, the determination of optical density for analytes that require determination of a wide dynamic range can be problematic, even when an excess amount of conjugate and a solid phase with sufficient capturing capacity are used with a sandwich-type assay.

Efforts to improve EIAs, the milestone of nonisotopic immunoassays, have brought to light several disadvantages of RIAs, such as hazardous isotopic waste, radiolysis of labeled analytes, and the short half-life of iodine-125. Ishikawa and Kohono (1989) developed an ultrasensitive EIA capable of detecting 3 fmol of specific IgG antibody. But to achieve this level of sensitivity, several tedious steps are required, such as immunocomplex transfer from a first solid phase to another solid phase to reduce background signals.

Fluorescent Enzyme Immunoassay

Fluorescent EIAs are identical to other EIAs, except that they use fluorescent substrates. In the fluorescent EIA, a fluorophore is generated by an enzyme reaction. Following excitation of the fluorophore at its optimal light excitation wavelength, light at a characteristic wavelength is emitted. Instruments such as a fluorometer require both a supplier of the excitation light source and a photomultiplier tube as a detector of the emission fluorescence. Substances that emit fluorescent light may be present in the specimen. These substances may increase the background signal, which may interfere with the assay's sensitivity. Thus close attention should be paid to the selection of substrates for EIAs to avoid interfering factors. Compared with colorimetric EIAs, fluorescent assays generate a signal intensity that is at least one order of magnitude greater.

Chemiluminescent Enzyme Immunoassay

Chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassays (CL-EIAs) use chemiluminescent substrates that react with various enzymes employed as labels. The chemiluminescent enzymatic reaction generates light, similar to bioluminescence, which involves the use of natural substrates such as luciferin–adenosine triphosphate. Over the past 20 years, much attention has been

TABLE 44-5

Characteristics of Typical Enzymes Used as Labels for Enzyme Immunoassay

Enzyme Characteristic	Peroxidase (EC1.11.1.7)	β-Galactosidase (EC3.2.1.23)	Alkaline Phosphatase (EC3.1.3.1)
Source	Horseradish	*Escherichia coli*	Bovine intestine
Molecular weight, daltons	40,000	530,000	100,000
Specific activity	250 U/mg	600 U/mg	2500-5000 U/mg
Turnover rate*	10,000	318,000	250,000
Measurement of enzyme	Colorimetry, fluorometry, luminometry	Colorimetry, fluorometry, luminometry	Colorimetry, fluorometry, luminometry
Highly sensitive measurement	Luminometry	Fluorometry	Luminometry
Method for enzyme labeling	Periodate oxidation (Nakane method)	Dimaleimide method, cross-linking reagent†	Glutaraldehyde method, cross-linking reagent†

*Number of substrate molecules produced by a molecule of enzyme for 1-minute reaction; molecule number/minute.
†The reagent contains chemically reactive groups such as maleimide and succinimide.

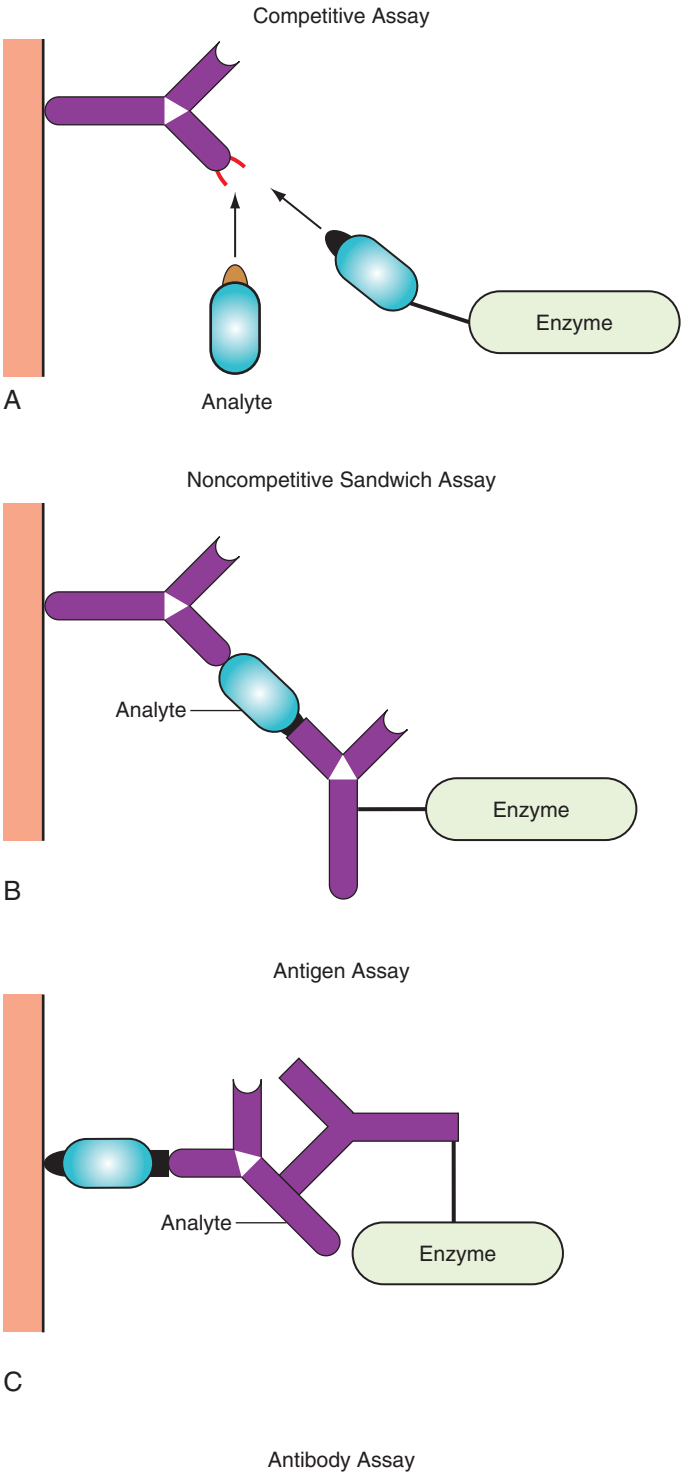


Figure 44-13 **Assay principles of heterogeneous enzyme immunoassay (EIA) using solid phase. A,** Competitive assay. **B** and **C,** Noncompetitive sandwich assay.

paid to the application of chemiluminescence in immunoassays, and a variety of systems consisting of substrates and enzymes have been developed. Current systems using luminol derivatives to peroxidase with an enhancer or dioxetane derivatives to alkaline phosphatase achieve highly sensitive immunoassays. These assays are effective tools in practical diagnosis. The enzymatic oxidation reaction of luminol analogs has long been used for CL-EIA. Use of peroxidase with H_2O_2 is a common method that is interchangeable with an alternative coupling enzyme producing H_2O_2, such as glucose oxidase or uricase. The discovery of enhancers by Thorpe and colleagues (1985) for luminol-based chemiluminescence remarkably improved the assay's sensitivity. Enhancers include phenol derivatives and aromatic compounds. For example, luminol-peroxidase with *p*-iodophenol as an enhancer achieves a light emission increase of up to 2800-fold in the optimized reaction mixture. This assay is able to detect TSH at 0.04 µU/mL when serum is used as the specimen. However, oxidative reactions, such as those for luminol, are likely to be interfered with by multiple factors that cause increased nonspecific background signals (noise).

Bronstein and colleagues (1989a) developed a chemiluminescent substrate for alkaline phosphatase that differs considerably from other compounds. This new substrate is known as AMPPD (disodium 3-(4-methylspiro [1,2-dioxetane-3,2′-tricyclo-[3.3.1.1]decan]-4-yl) phenyl phosphate), an adamantyl dioxetane derivative. It requires no additional molecules for the emission of chemiluminescent light, unlike luminol, which needs oxidative compounds from outside the luminol molecules. AMPPD is a novel molecule that is a complete substrate because it is composed of the adamantyl group as a stabilizer of the entire molecule, the dioxetane bond as an energy source, and phosphoryl ester as a cleavage site of the enzyme, along with a phenyl group for chemiluminescence—all assembled within one molecule. The structure of the molecule and the reaction process for light generation are shown in Figure 44-14. Cleavage of the phosphoester bond of AMPPD by alkaline phosphatase triggers chemically initiated electron exchange luminescence by releasing electron-rich dioxetane. A chemiluminescent signal with maximum wavelength of 477 nm can be detected within a couple of minutes to a few hours, depending on the substrate concentration. The alkaline phosphatase with AMPPD assay system has a sensitivity of less than 10^{-20} mol (Bronstein et al, 1989b, 1991; Kricka, 1991).

CL-EIA uses AMPPD as a substrate to react with alkaline phosphatase, which is used as the enzyme label. CL-EIA can be performed on a fully automated instrument. This novel substrate made it possible to develop an extremely sensitive chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassay system. Ferrite particles 0.3 µm in diameter as the solid phase shorten immunoreaction time to within 30 minutes and provide a larger surface area for the immunoabsorbent. The relationship between the chemiluminescent signal and the concentration of analytes is linear up to about seven orders of dynamic range. The sensitivity of CL-EIA (Nishizono et al, 1991) was tenfold greater than that of conventional RIAs when AFP was assayed; AFP was detected at a level of 30 pg/mL, with an assay time of 30 minutes. Thus the new chemiluminescent EIA systems are a definite improvement over RIAs in terms of sensitivity, time efficiency, and procedural simplicity, and they are increasing in popularity.

HOMOGENEOUS ENZYME IMMUNOASSAYS

Background

Two options are available to eliminate tedious assay procedures. One is to design fully automated instruments to access heterogeneous types of reagents, and the other is to develop innovative reagents that do not require complicated washing steps, such as those needed for heterogeneous EIAs. Enzymes and their cofactors are advantageous labels in homogeneous EIAs because enzyme activity can be modulated easily by changing factors in the microenvironment of the Ag–Ab reaction. This is not the case when radioisotope decay is used as the signal. At present, homogeneous EIAs are generally less sensitive than their heterogeneous counterparts. Conventional heterogeneous EIAs have equal sensitivity to RIAs in many applications, whereas homogeneous EIAs (Nakamura & Robbins, 1988) remain one or two orders of magnitude less sensitive than RIAs. Homogeneous EIAs may require complex immunochemical reagents, but the assay systems are rapid and simple and are adaptable to conventional instruments. Various types of homogeneous EIAs are available. In each of these assays, the Ag–Ab interaction modulates the activity of the enzyme or enzyme label in the presence of the substrate. Modulation of the enzyme activity reflects the degree of the immunochemical reaction. Table 44-6 lists the characteristics of typical homogeneous EIAs. Homogeneous EIAs can be classified as competitive and noncompetitive binding assays. Competitive assays usually consist of enzyme-labeled antigens. However, the antigen (analyte) may be conjugated to the substrate or to a prosthetic group of the enzyme in other assay formats. In contrast, noncompetitive binding assays use a conjugate of antibody labeled with enzyme. Among the various methods reported, five homogeneous EIAs deserve our attention.

Enzyme-Multiplied Immunoassay Technique

EMIT, the first homogeneous EIA, was developed by Rubenstein and Schneider (1972). The EMIT system is illustrated in Figure 44-15. In EMIT, the conjugation of enzymes to haptens does not disrupt enzyme activity; however, the binding of hapten-specific antibodies to haptens results in inhibition of enzyme activity. Free haptens in the standard or sample relieve this inhibition by competing for antibodies. Thus in the presence of antibodies, enzyme activity is proportional to the

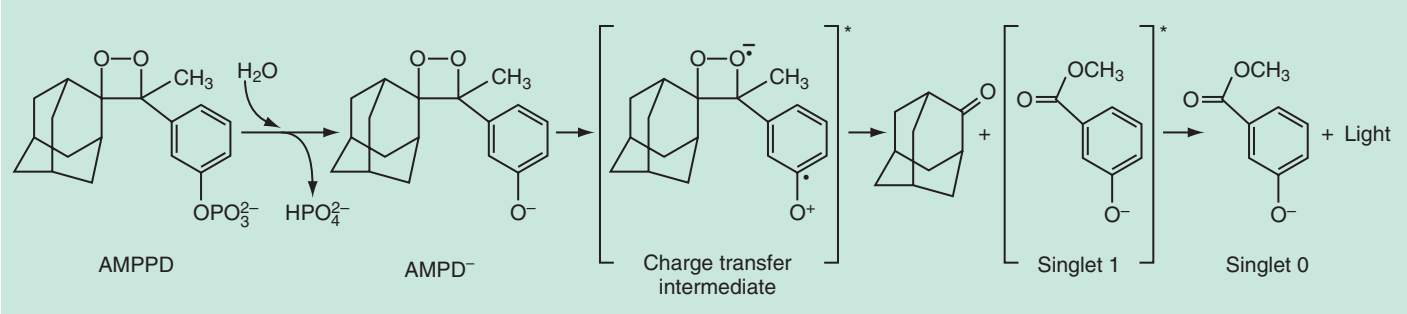


Figure 44-14 Adamantyl 1,2-dioxetane phenyl phosphate (AMPPD): a chemiluminescent substrate for alkaline phosphatase (ALP) detection. Hydrolytic phosphate cleavage by ALP triggers chemically initiated electron exchange luminescence (CIEEL) decomposition of AMPPD by releasing the electron-rich dioxetane phenolate ($AMPD^-$). Charge transfer from the phenolate to the dioxetane ring takes place, forming the charge transfer (CT) intermediate and subsequent breakdown of the cyclic peroxide. Release of energy occurs with light emission.

TABLE 44-6
Classification and Characteristics of Typical Homogeneous Enzyme Immunoassays*

Name and Assay Type	Conjugate	Manner of Modulation
Competitive		
EMIT	Antigen with lysozyme, G6PD*	Steric hindrance
SLFIA	Antigen with substrate	Steric hindrance
ARIS	Antigen with prosthetic group	Steric hindrance
Enzyme-channeling immunoassay	Antigen with G6PDH* and hexokinase*	Enhancement by proximity
Biotin-enzyme avidin immunoassay	Antigen with avidin	Steric hindrance
CEDIA	Antigen with fragments of subunit	Steric hindrance
Noncompetitive		
Hybrid antibody immunoassay	Hybrid antibodies specific to antigen and to inhibitor	Steric hindrance
Proximal linkage immunoassay	Antibody with G6PDH* and hexokinase*	Substrate cascade by proximity
EIHIA	Antibody with amylase*	Steric hindrance
Enzyme enhancement immunoassay	Antibody with β-galactosidase* and succinyl antibody	Charge effect
AEST	Antibody with peroxidase	Stabilization

From Kasahara Y: Principles and applications of particle immunoassay. In Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology. Reproduced with permission.
ARIS, Apoenzyme reactivation immunoassay; *CEDIA,* cloned enzyme donor immunoassay; *EIHIA,* enzyme inhibitory homogeneous immunoassay; *EMIT,* enzyme-multiplied immunoassay technique; *G6PD,* glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase; *SLFIA,* substrate-labeled fluorescent immunoassay.
*Enzyme discussed in detail in the text.

concentration of free haptens. As a general rule, the antibody inhibits the enzyme by inducing or preventing conformational changes necessary for enzyme activity (Rowley et al, 1975). The exception to this inhibition mechanism is the EMIT thyroxine assay, which uses malate dehydrogenase. In this assay, the thyroxine-malate dehydrogenase conjugate is enzymatically inactive, but it becomes activated when it is bound by thyroxine antibody (Ullman et al, 1979). It is believed that conjugated thyroxine inhibits the enzyme by binding to the active site, thus increasing the "apparent" K_m of the substrate. The antibody reactivates the enzyme by "pulling" the thyroxine out of the active site. In the EMIT assay system, malate dehydrogenase and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase have been found to be most useful because they are less likely to be affected by serum constituents. These assays generally measure drugs at a concentration of milligrams per liter. However, the digoxin assay has a much lower limit of sensitivity in the range of 0.8 to 2 μg/L.

Substrate-Labeled Fluorescent Immunoassay

The substrate-labeled fluorescent immunoassay (SLFIA) (Burd et al, 1977) uses a characteristic fluorogenic substrate, umbelliferyl β-galactoside, attached to the antigen (analyte) as a conjugate. Umbelliferone is the fluorescent product produced when the substrate is cleaved with the enzyme β-galactosidase, which cannot cleave the substrate–antigen complex when it is reacted with the specific antibody. The free antigen (analyte) in the specimen solution competes with the antigen conjugated with the substrate to form the immunocomplex (Fig. 44-16). The antigen concentration in the sample is proportional to the fluorescent intensity of the cleaved fluorescent product. SLFIA can be used to assay drugs and haptens, as well as protein ligands such as IgG and IgM. A disadvantage of this method is that the amplification properties of the enzyme are not utilized, and thus the assay system has limited sensitivity in the range of 10^{-9} to 10^{-10} molar concentration of the analyte.

Apoenzyme Reactivation Immunoassay

The apoenzyme reactivation immunoassay (ARIS) is a homogeneous assay developed by Morris and colleagues (1981), using the prosthetic group consisting of flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD)-conjugated antigen (analyte) and glucose oxidase apoenzyme. As shown in Figure 44-17, the antigen (analyte) and a constant amount of analyte–FAD conjugate compete for a limited amount of specific antibody. At equilibrium, the level of free conjugate is proportional to the amount of antigen (analyte) in the specimen. The apoenzyme combines with the free but not with the antibody-bound form of conjugate to reactivate glucose oxidase activity in proportion to the amount of free conjugate in the mixture. Active enzyme is generated in the procedure, and an amplification mechanism is built into this assay. ARIS has been used to assay for theophylline and IgG (Morris et al, 1981; Morris, 1985). This FAD-labeled conjugate assay is readily adapted to the measurement of high-molecular-weight proteins (e.g., thyroid binding globulin) (Schroeder et al, 1985), as well as other haptens such as phenytoin and hormones.

Enzyme Inhibitory Homogeneous Immunoassay

The enzyme inhibitory homogeneous immunoassay (EIHIA), developed by Ashihara and colleagues (1988), consists of antibody conjugated with enzyme and insoluble substrate. This assay is most suitable for the determination of large antigens (analytes). The EIHIA can be made to be homogeneous because the immunocomplex of conjugate with large antigen blocks the enzyme reaction with the solid substrate (Fig. 44-18). α-Amylase has been used as a labeled enzyme for the determination of ferritin and

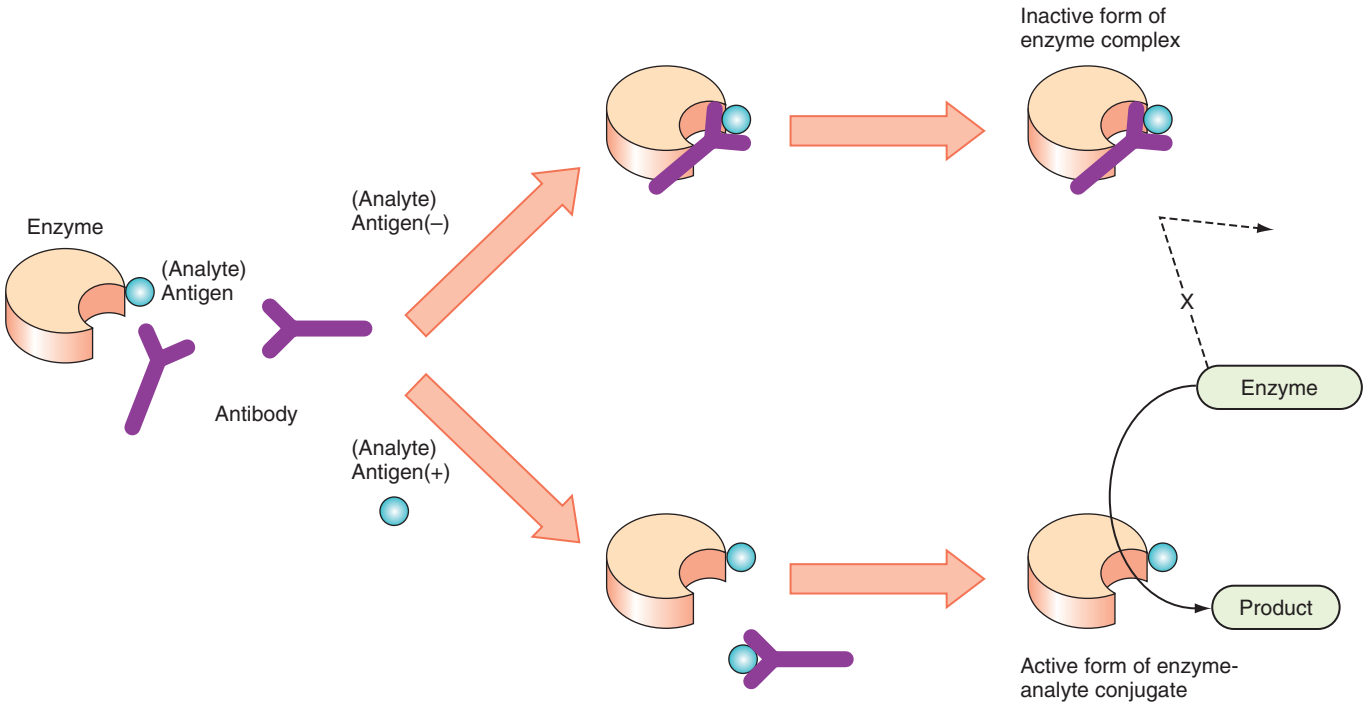


Figure 44-15 **Enzyme-multiplied immunoassay technique (EMIT) system diagram.** The activity of an enzyme as a label is inhibited by the binding of antibody to antigen (analyte) conjugated with enzyme. The analyte is usually a hapten. Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) and lysozyme are usually used as enzymes. In the assay, enzyme activity is proportional to the concentration of the analyte. (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

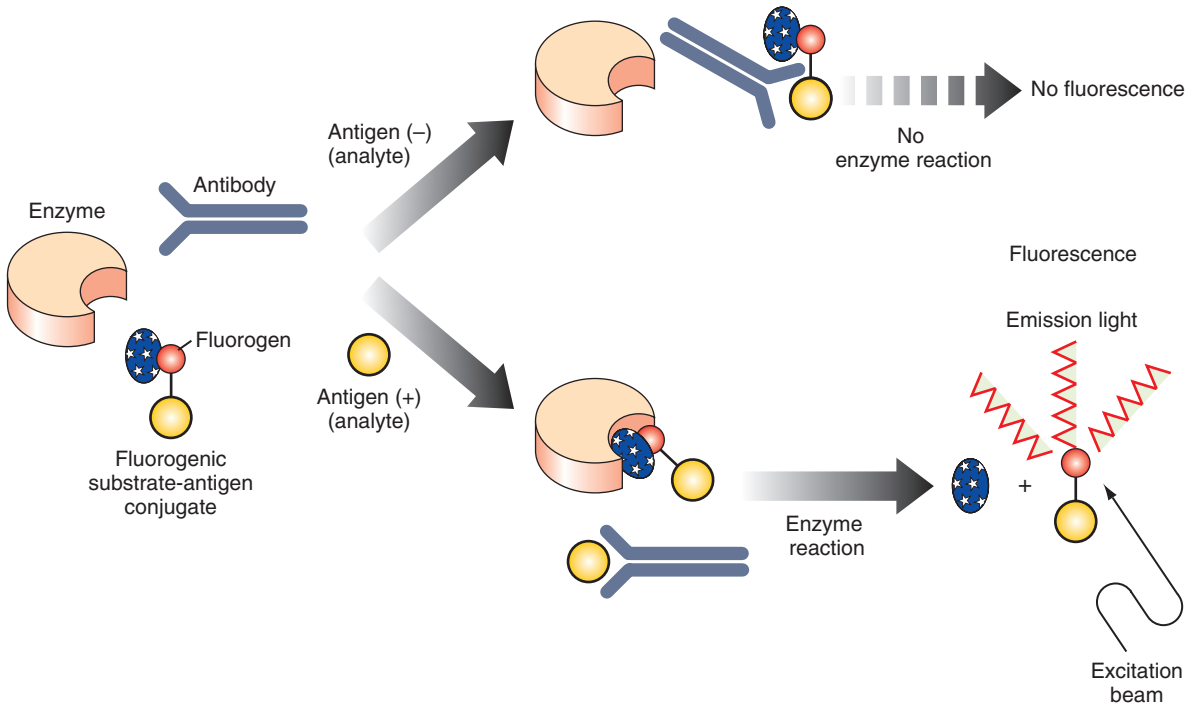


Figure 44-16 **Substrate-labeled fluorescent immunoassay (SLFIA).** The substrate β-galactosylumbeliferone is conjugated with the antigen (analyte) and forms a nonfluorescent substrate. The substrate can be cleaved by the enzyme β-galactosidase to form a fluorescent product. However, when the substrate–antigen conjugate is allowed to react with specific antibody to the antigen, no cleavage of the substrate complex with the β-galactosidase enzyme occurs. In this assay, the concentration of the antigen (analyte) is directly proportional to the fluorescent intensity measured. (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

AFP. The immunoreaction of analyte with enzyme-labeled antibody can reach a plateau within 10 minutes; thus EIHIA based on a noncompetitive binding assay requires less incubation time to achieve a sensitive detection level. Using this method, the measuring range of ferritin in serum is 10 to 800 ng/mL, and for AFP, it is 5 to 200 ng/mL. Dextranase has been used as an alternative enzyme (Nishizono et al, 1988). EIHIA has also been applied to a simple dry-film format (Ashihara et al, 1991). The dry film consists of three major layers, each containing a developing zone for immunologic and enzymatic reaction, a barrier zone, and a color-developing zone. An inhibitor specific to human amylase present in serum

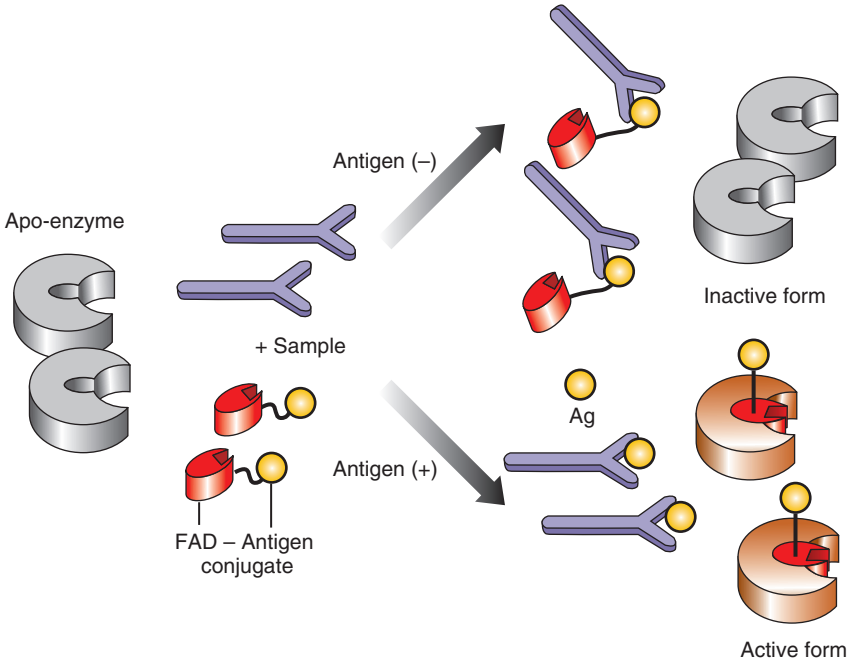


Figure 44-17 **Apoenzyme reactivation immunoassay (ARIS).** Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD) attached to the antigen is used. The apoenzyme is apoglucose oxidase, which requires FAD cofactor for activity. In the assay, the concentration of antigen (analyte) is proportional to the enzyme activity generated. (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

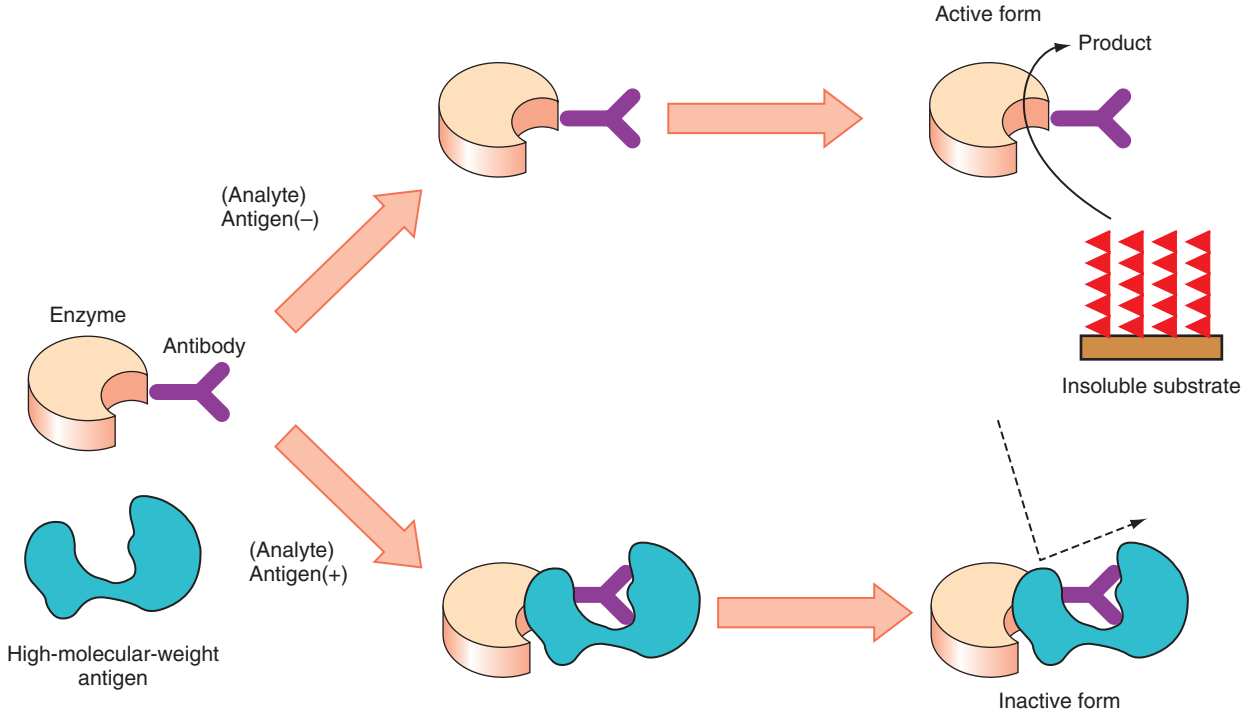


Figure 44-18 **Enzyme inhibitory homogeneous immunoassay (EIHIA).** The enzyme α-amylase from *Bacillus subtilis* or dextranase from *Chaetomium gracile* is conjugated to the specific antibody to the high-molecular-weight antigen. The high-molecular-weight antigen can be ferritin or α-fetoprotein. The α-amylase enzyme is inactive when the enzyme antibody conjugate reacts with specific antibody. The active enzyme form can react with the starch-insoluble substrate. The antigen concentration is directly proportional to the enzyme activity of the assay reaction. (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

is used to prevent serum background. The assay for serum C-reactive protein is completed in only 6 minutes by simply placing the specimen on the slide using dry chemistry instrumentation. Nevertheless, the sensitivity of the system remains inadequate for application to analytes such as tumor markers.

Cloned Enzyme Donor Immunoassay

The cloned enzyme donor immunoassay was first achieved through the application of recombinant DNA technology to homogeneous immunoassays by Henderson and colleagues (1986). Microgenics Corp. (Concord,

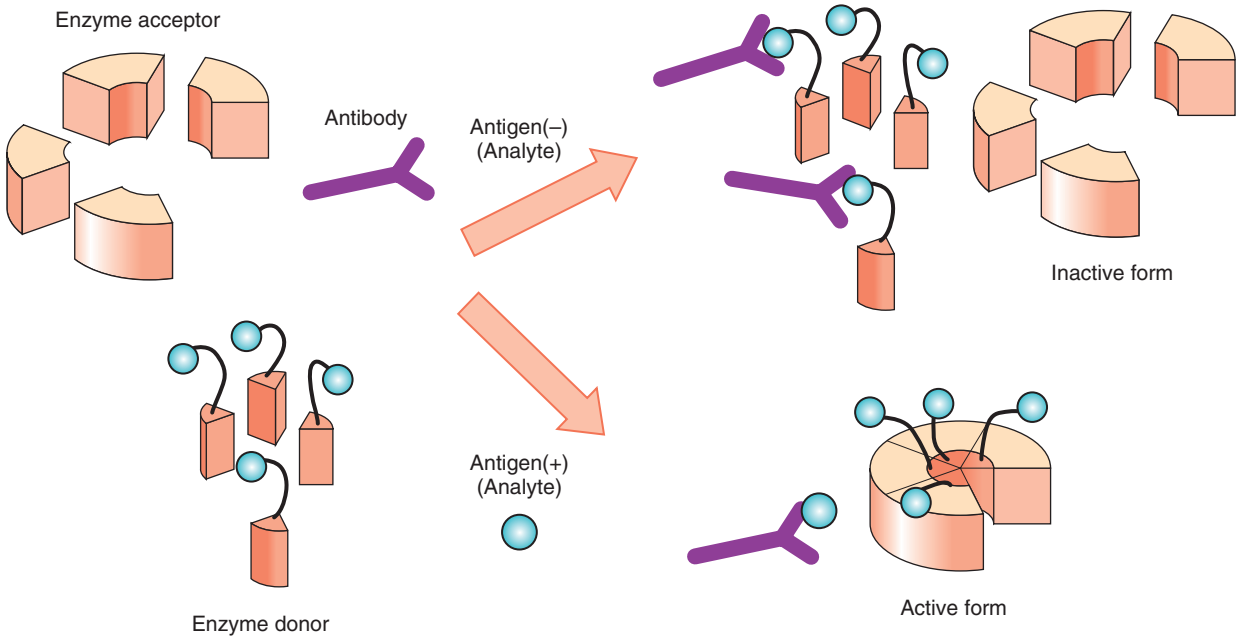


Figure 44-19 Cloned enzyme donor immunoassay (CEDIA). Enzyme acceptors associate with enzyme donors to form an active β-galactosidase tetramer. The antibody inhibits the association of enzyme acceptor with enzyme donor–antigen conjugate. (With permission from Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assay and biosensor technology for the 1990s,* Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology.)

Calif.) was able to engineer β-galactosidase protein into a large polypeptide (an enzyme acceptor [EA]) and a small polypeptide (an enzyme donor [ED]). EAs and EDs assemble to form enzymatically active tetramers. In the assay (Fig. 44-19), a hapten antigen (analyte) is attached to an ED, and an analyte-specific antibody is used to inhibit spontaneous assembly of the active enzyme. The antigens (analytes) in patient serum compete with the analytes in the analyte–ED conjugate for antibody, modulating the amount of active β-galactosidase formed. The signal generated by enzyme substrates is directly proportional to the analyte concentration in the patient serum. The test for digoxin is a colorimetric assay that requires no serum pretreatment or predilution. The assay system is suitable for use with automated chemistry analyzers.

SUMMARY

EIAs can be applied to all Ag–Ab systems, including those involving serum protein, hormones, drugs, and other antigens and the antibodies directed against pathogens. Heterogeneous EIAs using chromogenic substrates can have a sensitivity comparable with that of RIAs, and they have gained wide acceptance for application in various immunoassays. Heterogeneous EIAs using sophisticated substrates that generate chemiluminescent light and small particles as the solid phase are sensitive enough to detect less than 1 pg/mL of analytes. Their sensitivity is thus much higher than that of RIAs. In addition, the assay manipulation is greatly simplified by fully automated instruments. Compared with heterogeneous EIAs, homogeneous EIAs have certain limitations in sensitivity, dynamic range, and large analyte application. Also, high background signals (noise) and relatively low assay signals are inevitable because of elimination of the washing steps for the separation of bound and free conjugates. Homogeneous EIAs are advantageous because they are based on a simple assay format and can be adapted to existing automatic instrumentation. At this time, heterogeneous EIAs with fully automated instruments remain the best choice in terms of sensitivity and simplicity, as well as for safety reasons, because they do not require the use of radioisotopes.

FLUORESCENT IMMUNOASSAY

BACKGROUND AND CLASSIFICATION

Coons and colleagues (1941) first introduced the use of fluorescent compounds as immunochemical labels to detect antigens in tissue sections. Immunofluorescence assays on tissue sections are currently very well established in the pathology laboratory. Over the past several years, many FIA procedures have been developed to detect the concentrations of drugs, hormones, and a wide variety of proteins and polypeptides (Nakamura & Kasahara, 1992). In the initial stages of development, analytic FIAs were hindered by a decrease in sensitivity caused by background fluorescence of biological samples. Gradually, the sensitivity of fluorometric methods improved, and detection of analytes at concentrations of 10^{-15} M became possible. Further advancements were achieved through improvements in instrumentation and the introduction of unique substrates with various immunochemical and enzymatic reactions.

Selection of the fluorochrome label is important. The label should be stable and should demonstrate high molar extinction coefficiency and quantum yield. It should also emit at appropriate wavelengths without interference with ligand–antibody reactions. When most fluorophores or fluorescent molecules are irradiated with light at appropriate wavelengths, an electron in the ground state is transited into the excited state of the molecule. As the electron returns to the ground state, physical energy is released in the form of a photon of lower energy (longer wavelength) than the exciting light. The fluorescence spectrum reveals a wavelength of maximal emission, characteristic of a particular fluorescent compound. One of the typical labels, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), has a less than 1-nanosecond time interval between excitation and emission, whereas other compounds (e.g., europium) exhibit delayed fluorescence with an interval of several hundred nanoseconds. The various FIAs may be classified as heterogeneous and homogeneous, ligand or antibody labeled, competitive or noncompetitive, and solid or nonsolid phase. The most common methods are discussed here.

HETEROGENEOUS FLUORESCENT IMMUNOASSAY

Heterogeneous FIA procedures include a washing step to separate bound from free fluorescent labels. The assay procedure is similar to that of heterogeneous enzyme immunoassays and RIAs. Most commercially available assays use a solid-phase antigen or antibody system. The assay can be competitive or noncompetitive—a property shared by RIAs and EIAs.

FLUOROIMMUNOMETRIC METHOD

With the fluoroimmunometric method, the analyte reacts with excess labeled antibodies in the solution. Residual labeled antibodies bind to excess solid-phase bound antigens. The solid-phase matrix is washed, and fluorescence intensity is inversely related to the analyte concentration. This method can be adapted to the assay of haptens and complex

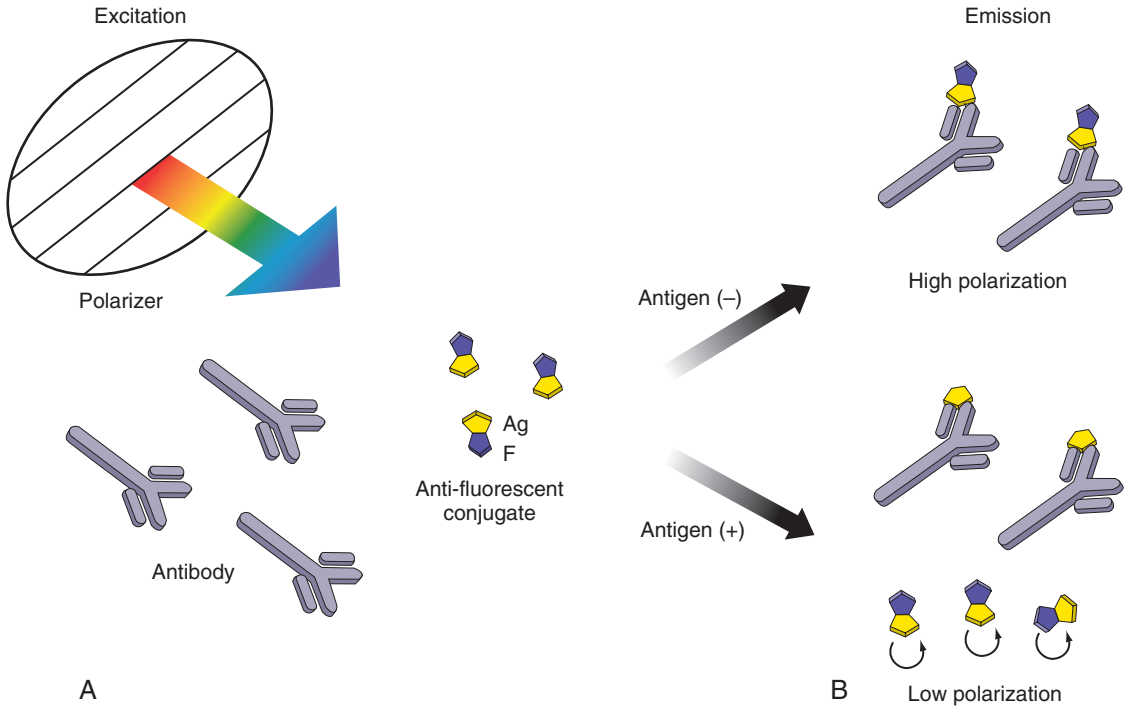


Figure 44-20 **Assay principle of fluorescence polarization immunoassay (FPIA). A,** A polarized beam can excite both an unbound conjugate and the conjugate bound to antibody (Ab) existing at the same angle as the irradiating beam. The conjugate consists of hapten (H) with a fluorescent molecule (F). **B,** Orientation of the molecules at the time of fluorescence emission. Small hapten conjugates free of antibody can quickly change their orientation and emit fluorescence at different angles that is not detected. However, the conjugate bound to the antibody still remains at the same angle because of its very slow movement, and it emits fluorescence that is detected.

proteins. Solid-phase FIA procedures were developed for the serologic assay of antibodies to rubella, toxoplasmosis, viral antigens, and antinuclear antibodies. Heterogeneous FIA methods for antigen determination were developed for serum proteins and hormones, including immunoglobulins, cortisol, progesterone, and thyroxine. The major advantage of heterogeneous FIAs is the significant reduction in interference by naturally fluorescent substances in patient samples, caused by the physical removal of interference factors during the separation step.

RADIAL PARTITION IMMUNOFLUOROMETRIC ASSAY

In radial partition immunoassays, radial chromatography is used and the assay is carried out on glass-fiber filter papers (Giegel et al, 1982). This procedure has been automated for the assay of hCG and several other analytes in serum (Rogers et al, 1986).

TIME-RESOLVED FLUOROIMMUNOASSAY

This method uses special instrumentation and fluorescent labels to increase assay sensitivity. It involves the use of fluorescent labels exhibiting delayed fluorescence with a time period of 100 ns or longer between excitation and emission. Because most substances responsible for background fluorescence have a short decay period, measurement of the delayed fluorescence signal will significantly reduce the effects of background fluorescence. This is accomplished with the time-resolved fluorometer, a special instrument that produces a fast light pulse that excites the fluorophore. Fluorescence is measured a little while after excitation. Thus the effect of nonspecific background, which generally decays in less than 10 nanoseconds, can be removed (Halonen et al, 1973; Soini & Kojola, 1983). Fluorophores exhibiting delayed fluorescence that have been used in these assays (Soini & Hemmila, 1979) include the following:

- Pyrene derivatives with a decay time of almost 100 ns
- Rare earth metal chelate labels with a very long decay time of almost 50 to 100 µs. These include europium (Eu^{3+}), samarium (Sm^{3+}), and terbium (Tb^{3+}).
- Time-resolved fluoroimmunoassays have been developed to measure many analytes, including hCG, IgG, cortisol, insulin, and others.

HOMOGENEOUS FLUORESCENT IMMUNOASSAY

By definition, these immunoassays are performed on homogeneous specimen samples. They do not require the separation of bound from free conjugates and usually are not sensitive to background interference in the samples. Homogeneous FIAs also have the advantage of being quick to perform. However, when compared with heterogeneous assays, they show certain disadvantages. Homogeneous FIAs have a limited sensitivity near 10^{-10} m/L with standard instrumentation. Labeled impurities in the sample may increase background interference. The assays require relatively pure labeled antigen or specific antibody, as well as special instrumentation, to achieve higher sensitivity.

FLUORESCENCE POLARIZATION ASSAY

A polarizing lens or prism can resolve light into rays in a single plane. When viewed at the right angle of an excitation beam of vertically polarized light, fluorescent compounds in solutions emit partially polarized fluorescence. The fluorescence polarization principle was first applied to immunoassay procedures by Dandliker and colleagues (Dandliker & de Saussure, 1970; Dandliker et al, 1973). Polarized light transmitted through the sample can excite the fluorescent label, regardless of binding to antibody. However, as shown in Figure 44-20, random thermal motion causes small molecules labeled with a hapten to tumble freely in solution, losing their polarized orientation. When the labeled antigen is bound to antibody with a molecular mass greater than 160 kDa, the molecular motion is slowed enough to increase the polarized signal.

Studies using labeled antibody or antibody fragments showed no change in polarization upon mixing antigen and labeled antibody, even though immunoreaction had occurred. This method is most useful for the measurement of small antigens and haptens (Jolley, 1981). Abbott Laboratories has adapted this approach for the assay of many therapeutic and abused drugs on the TDx (Abbott Diagnostics, Abbott Park, Ill.). They developed a next-generation analyzer, the IMx, to measure molecules with large masses such as tumor markers, hormones, and infection-related antigens or antibodies (Fiore et al, 1988). They combined two assay principles: fluorescence polarization and microparticle enzyme immunoassay. The demand for random access capabilities led Abbott to develop a fully

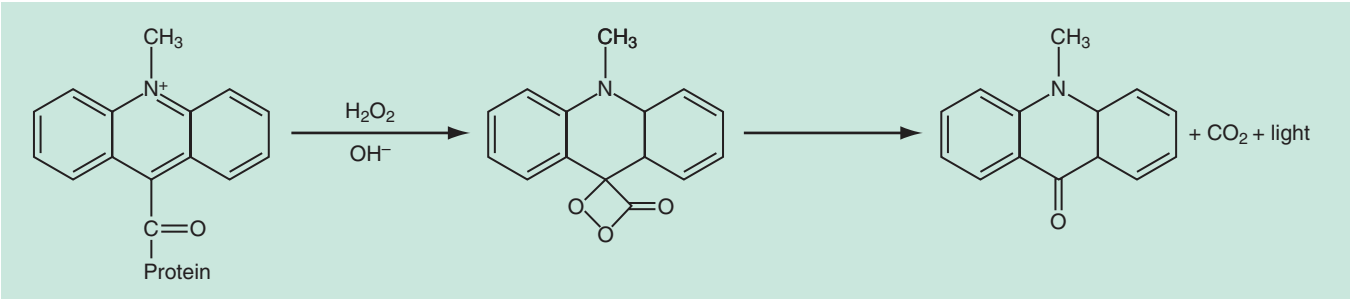


Figure 44-21 Chemiluminescent immunoassay mechanism with acridinium ester based on oxidative decomposition.

automated, high-throughput random access analyzer named the AXSYM. This system is being used in clinical laboratories (Smith et al, 1993).

FLUORESCENCE EXCITATION TRANSFER IMMUNOASSAY

The fluorescence excitation transfer immunoassay (FETI) method (Ullman et al, 1976) uses two labels: fluorescein as the donor fluorescent label and rhodamine as the acceptor or quencher. FITC has a maximum emission of 525 nm, and tetraethylrhodamine has a strong absorption peak at 525 nm. Therefore, when FITC-labeled antigen and rhodamine-labeled antibody bind, quenching of FITC fluorescence occurs. This phenomenon involves an energy transfer from an electronically excited fluorescent dye to an acceptor dye. The rate of energy transfer is inversely proportional to the sixth power of the distance between donor and acceptor molecules. For adequate reduction of fluorescence with quenching, the donor–acceptor distance between labels should be about 50 to 70 Å. This method is useful for the assay of antigen with multivalent antigenic determinants. Separate portions of specific antibody are labeled with fluorescein and rhodamine. The mixture of differently labeled fluorescein-tagged antibody and rhodamine-labeled antibody reduces the intensity of the fluorescein label by adjusting the ratio and amount of donor and acceptor molecules so they can react in close proximity to permit energy transfer. These problems have been overcome using new fluorescent compounds. The FETI method has been improved with the use of a fluorescence marker such as europium (III) (Eu[III]) trisbipyridine cryptate as a donor, and a fluorophore such as allopycocyanin as an acceptor (Alpha et al, 1987; Mathis, 1995). These transient compounds reveal a large Stokes shift in which the excited europium at 337 nm transfers energy through an acceptor molecule at an excitation of 620 nm and eventually emits fluorescent light at 665 nm, as in the time-resolved mode. Mathis (1993) developed the fluorescence resonance energy transfer using cryptate-chelating rare metal and applied it to the detection of AFP and carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) in serum. CIS Bio International (Ceze, France) developed an automated homogeneous immunoassay system, KRYPTOR, for the detection of cancer markers such as CEA, CA 19-9, CA 125, and AFP, using the time-resolved amplified cryptate emission. The sensitivity for AFP was 0.25 ng/mL for 9 minutes' incubation.

FLUORESCENT PROTECTION IMMUNOASSAY

In this assay (Nargessi et al, 1979), the protein antigen is labeled with fluorescein and then is reacted with specific antibody to the antigen. The antigen-specific antibody will sterically inhibit the reaction of a second antibody specific to fluorescein, which functions to quench the fluorescence of fluorescein when it binds to the fluorophore. The ability of the specific antifluorescein antibody to interact with fluorescein coupled to the surface of the antigen will decrease. The procedure may be used to assay for antibody concentration or for antigen (analyte) concentration in a homogeneous system.

CHEMILUMINESCENT IMMUNOASSAY

BACKGROUND

Chemiluminescent immunoassays (CLIAs) use chemiluminescence-generating molecules as labels, such as luminol derivatives, acridinium esters, or nitrophenyl oxalate derivatives and ruthenium tri-bipridyl [$Ru(bpy)_3^{2+}$] with tripropylamine for electrochemiluminescence. Basically, the assay method does not differ from that of heterogeneous immunoassays, RIAs, and FIAs. Light generation of luminol derivatives requires OH^-/H_2O_2 as a chemical trigger or H_2O_2 with peroxidase as an enhanced chemiluminescent trigger. Acridinium esters chemically triggered with OH^-/H_2O_2 display a relatively high chemiluminescent quantum yield for light emission compared with luminol. Other chemiluminescent molecules include aequorin, a natural compound (Actor et al, 1998). Labels of chemiluminescent compounds produce light electrochemically on the surface of electrodes and can be applied to homogeneous assay formats. Both CLIAs using acridinium esters and electro-CLIAs are applicable for practical diagnostic testing. Their characteristics are described in the following section.

CHEMILUMINESCENT IMMUNOASSAY USING ACRIDINIUM ESTERS AS LABELS

In this method (Weeks et al, 1983), acridinium esters (Fig. 44-21) are directly conjugated with protein molecules. Acridinium esters can oxidatively react with H_2O_2 under alkaline conditions to produce high-energy intermediates that decompose to the excited fragment, generating light. The light emission of acridinium esters is extremely fast, within 5 to 10 seconds after initiation of the oxidation reaction. Flash-type chemiluminescence, as this process is called, has a much steeper spectrum of light emission to reactive time than glow-type chemiluminescence triggered by enzymes. The sensitivity of this assay is higher than that of RIA, and testing is less time consuming. The solubility of acridinium esters and the stability of conjugates with proteins in storage have been improved through modification of the molecule and conjugation chemistry. This technology is likely to bring improvements in the assay of haptens, such as hormones.

ELECTROCHEMILUMINESCENT IMMUNOASSAY

Electrochemiluminescent immunoassay (ECLIA) uses electrochemical compounds that generate light electrochemically, linked with the cycle reaction of the oxidative reduction. With optimization of reaction solutions, selection of appropriate conjugation method, and development of suitable compounds such as $Ru(bpy)_3^{2+}$ and TPA, it became possible to apply electrochemiluminescent technology to immunoassays (Blackburn et al, 1991). $Ru(bpy)_3^{2+}$ has a reaction site for the conjugation of analytes using activation reagent such as NHS. $Ru(bpy)_3^{2+}$, thus conjugated with antibodies, can be applied to sandwich-type assays for large molecules. The conjugate generates light on the surface of gold electrodes. $Ru(bpy)_3^{2+}$ on solid phase and TPA are oxidized on the surface of electrodes to form $Ru(bpy)_3^{2+}$ and TPA^+, respectively. TPA^+ spontaneously loses electrons. $Ru(bpy)_3^{3+}$ can generate emission light at 620 nm when it returns to $Ru(bpy)_3^{2+}$ as a ground state through reduction with TPA. The efficiency of light generation (quantum yield) depends on the proximity between the electrode and the conjugate, and thereby on the diffusion mobility of the conjugate. Free conjugates can generate more light than conjugates fixed on the solid phase as a result of immunoreaction. This allows easy access to the homogeneous assay format, but relatively high background noise interferes with assay sensitivity, as it does in other homogeneous assays. The assay protocol for the determination of analytes is as follows: Magnetic microparticles coated with antibody as the solid phase and sample mix together for immunoreaction. After washing for bound and free conjugates by magnetic separation according to the assay format, the solid-phase suspension is introduced into the detector with the electrode to measure chemiluminescence. The detection limit of ECLIAs has been reported as 0.2 to 0.4 ng/mL for CEA and 0.4 ng/mL for AFP. This assay does not require complicated instruments. A further advantage is that

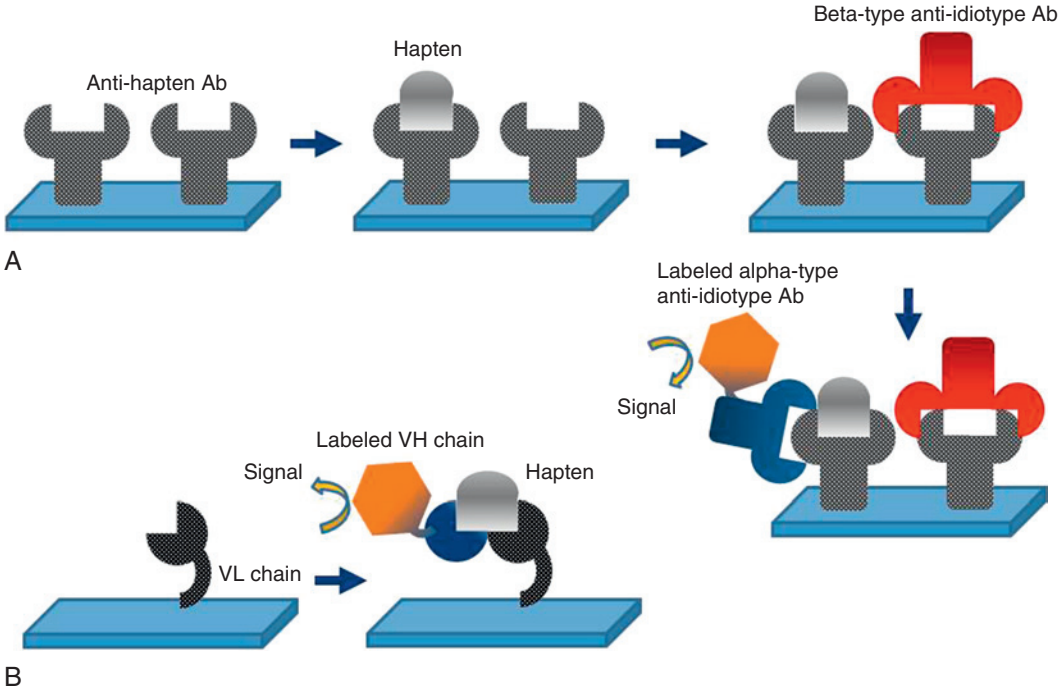


Figure 44-22 **Assay principle of two kinds of hapten immunoassays. A**, Idiometric assay using anti-idiotype antibodies. **B**, Open sandwich immunoassay

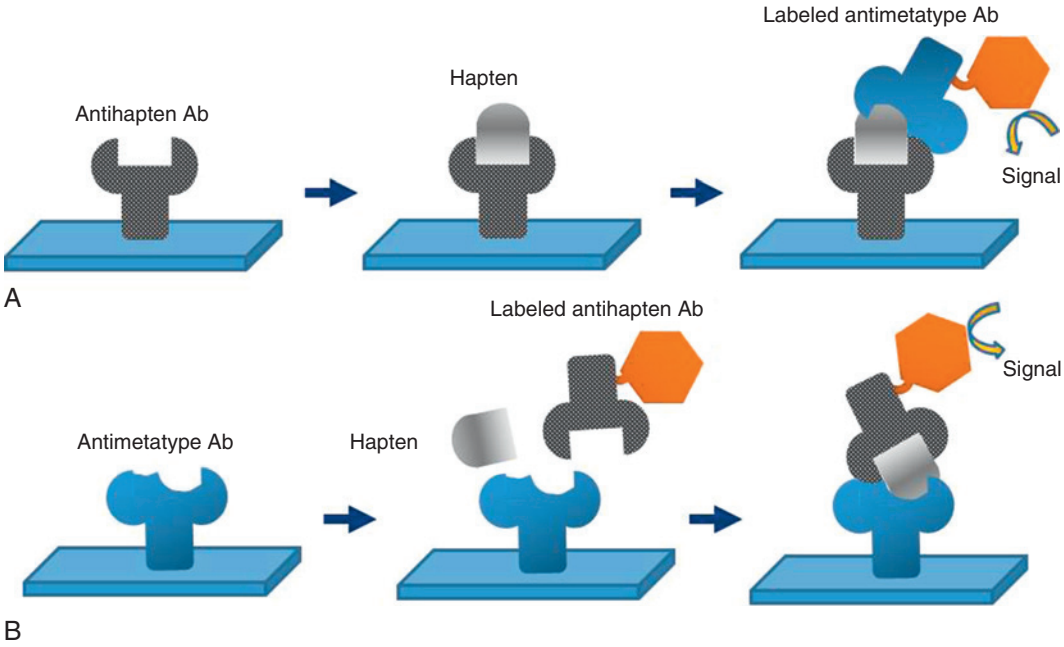


Figure 44-23 **Hapten Immunoassay procedure using antimetatype antibody. A,** Combination of antihapten antibody for the solid phase and labeled antimetatype antibody for the conjugate. **B**, Combination of antimetatype antibody for the solid phase and labeled antihapten antibody for the conjugate.

ECLIAs requires less time for signal detection, similar to FIAs and other CLIAs.

NONCOMPETITIVE IMMUNOASSAY FOR SMALL MOLECULES

BACKGROUND

Haptens such as hormones, vitamins, drugs, or toxins play a wide variety of roles in biology, and their accurate measurement is essential in biomedical fields. Haptens have mainly been measured using competitive immunoassays, because in general their limited molecular size impedes the simultaneous binding of two antibodies to one hapten molecule for sandwich immunoassays, already mentioned in the Assay Principles and Methods section. Several methodologies have been developed for smaller haptens, including idiometric assay using anti-idiotype antibodies (Barnard & Kohen, 1990; Kobayashi et al, 2000); open-sandwich immunoassay (Lim et al, 2007); and antimetatype antibody–based immunoassay (Towbin et al, 1995; Voss, 1996). The general assay principle for each of these methods is shown in Figures 44-22 and 44-23.

ANTI-IDIOTYPE ANTIBODY-BASED IMMUNOASSAY

The idiometric assay needs two main types of anti-idiotype antibodies. The alpha-type recognizes an epitope within the variable region of the primary antihapten antibody, but it can bind to the primary antihapten

antibody in the presence or absence of the hapten analyte at the binding site. On the other hand, the beta-type antibody competes with the hapten at the binding site. Briefly, after the hapten in samples reacts with primary antihapten antibody on the solid phase, the beta-type antibody reacts with the binding sites of the primary antihapten antibody that are not occupied by haptens. Then the labeled alpha-type antibody results in the binding of the primary antihapten antibody with hapten. Kobayashi and colleagues (2000) applied it to detect UDCA 7-NAG and 11-deoxycortisol (Kobayashi et al, 2003). Recently, it was reported that an idiometric assay for cortisol was threefold more sensitive than a competitive assay and could determine normal urinary cortisol levels.

OPEN-SANDWICH IMMUNOASSAY

The open-sandwich immunoassay is based on the association of separated VH and VL chains from the variable domain of antibodies by the presence of antigen (Ihara et al, 2009; Islam et al, 2011). As shown in Figure 44-22, *B*, the VL fragment on the solid phase was incubated with the labeled VH fragment and antigen in sample. This assay was also developed to detect hapten molecules in the homogeneous assays without the washing step.

ANTIMETATYPE ANTIBODY–BASED IMMUNOASSAY

The antimetatype antibody–based immunoassay is the only nonconventional sandwich immunoassay that enables the simultaneous recognition of a hapten by two antibodies. Generating an antimetatype antibody is a key benefit of developing sensitive and specific immunoassays for hapten. Few studies have so far confirmed that antimetatype antibodies for haptens such as digoxin and angiotensin II can be established by classical immunization procedures (Towbin et al, 1995). The development of antimetatype antibodies by classical immunization procedures suitable for wide application is highly improbable because the hapten-antibody immune-complex structure is very difficult to maintain.

A recent report describes the development of a novel and widely applicable sandwich assay for haptens based on antimetatype antibodies (Omi et al, 2015). Omi and colleagues employed an ex vivo antibody development system (Autonomously Diversifying Library system) generated from chicken DT40 B-lymphocyte line (Seo et al, 2005; 2006). In this system, antimetatype antibodies recognizing hapten-primary antibody immunocomplexes were selected from artificial antibody libraries using a magnetic beads–based affinity isolation method; this led to the successful development of sandwich assays for two haptens: estradiol and 25-OH vitamin D. This sandwich assay proved sensitive and specific enough for routine diagnostic use. A reagent allowing for equal detection of 25-OH vitamin D_2 and 25-OH vitamin D_3 on an automated immunoassay instrument was further developed commercially as the first sandwich-type immunoassay reagent with antimetatype antibody. Therefore, this method provides a simple, practical approach for the routine assay of haptens, a development that is expected to facilitate major advances in analytic and clinical chemistry.

SENSITIVE IMMUNOASSAY USING SPECIMEN-PRETREATMENT METHODS

BACKGROUND

Nowadays, nucleic acid amplification detection technologies are very sensitive for virus genome detection and useful for virus infection diagnosis. On the other hand, the sensitive immunoassay for viral antigen has several merits when compared with nucleic acid amplification detection systems. Immunoassay can generally detect quantities with lower variance, it is not expensive, and it has less contamination risk. In addition, targeted antigens in immunoassay remain more stable in long-term storage than virus RNA as an analyte.

However, in general, the viral antigens lie on the surface or capsid of the virus particle, and antibodies to the viral antigens are produced in the blood. It has to overcome these factors of obstruction for the quantitative approach of viral antigen. New highly sensitive immunoassays for viral antigens in the presence or absence of antiviral antigen antibody have been reported using a simple specimen-pretreatment method for clinical application. (Aoyagi et al, 1999; 2001; Kimura et al, 2002).

HIGHLY SENSITIVE IMMUNOASSAY FOR VIRAL ANTIGEN USING SPECIMEN-PRETREATMENT METHOD

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) core antigen is a suitable candidate for the detection of the HCV protein (Fig. 44-24). The core antigen exists as a capsid protein in free HCV particles or HCV particles associated with immunoglobulins or very-low-density lipoproteins. In the blood of HCV-infected patients, there are numerous anti-HCV core antibodies that inhibit the detection of the core antigen. Therefore, for the detection of HCV core antigen in blood to be successful, the targeted viral antigen needs to be freed from all associated materials; this can be achieved by the destruction of the complex containing the HCV particles and the inactivation of the

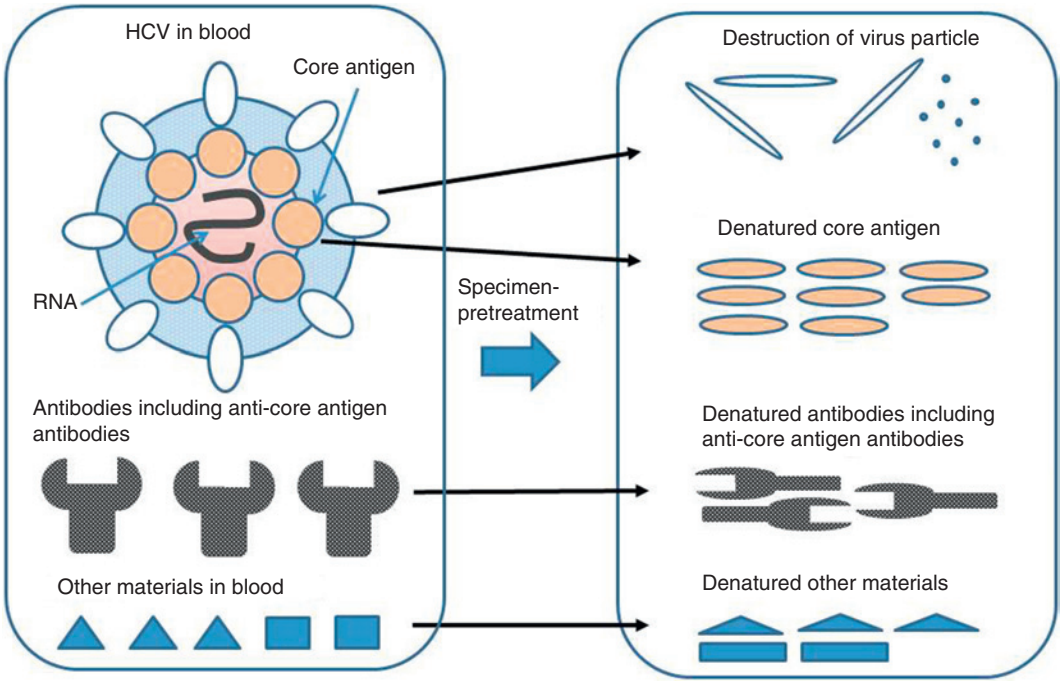


Figure 44-24 Effect of the specimen-pretreatment method for the detection of HCV core antigen.

anti-HCV core antibody present in the blood. To individually isolate the proteins, including targeted viral antigen and antiviral antigen antibodies in blood, Aoyagi and colleagues (1999; 2001) developed a simple specimen-pretreatment method using a higher concentration of detergent or denaturant such as sodium dodecyl sulfate. They then demonstrated that this simple pretreatment method allowed for the highly sensitive detection of the viral antigen using monoclonal antibodies recognizing the denatured antigen. The limitation of detection in this assay was 0.06 pg of recombinant HCV core antigen/mL. In addition, because the high correlation with commercially available quantitative nucleic acid reagent was shown in anti-HCV antibody positive sera, the pretreatment process has sufficient function to inactivate the anti-HCV antibody in sera.

This specimen-pretreatment method was also applied to the detection of hepatitis B virus (HBV) core antigen or HBV core-related antigen, thereby highlighting new clinical utilities (Kimura et al, 2003; Rokuhara et al, 2003; Tanaka et al, 2008). Specifically, the HBV core-related antigen assay can detect HBV core antigen, p22 core-related antigen, and HBV envelope antigen simultaneously using monoclonal antibodies that recognize these denatured antigens by specimen-pretreatment methods (Kimura et al, 2002). This assay reflects the HBV load in the liver and is useful for monitoring HBV patients undergoing various drug therapies. The highly sensitive detection of denatured and free-formed antigens by dissociation from most associating materials through specimen-pretreatment process will be applied to other target antigens or proteins.

INSTRUMENT AUTOMATION AND MODULATION OF ASSAY SYSTEMS

HOMOGENEOUS ASSAY SYSTEMS

Although many homogeneous immunoassays have been developed for manual protocol as described in this chapter, most have not yet been automated. For the EMIT method, fully automated generic chemistry analyzers can be adapted to use these (Boyd et al, 1985). A few instruments are available for homogeneous FIAs, and these assay systems are not interchangeable with one another. The BRAHMS KRYPTOR system, which is the newest, has been developed with special features, including the use of a time-resolved fluorescence detector. It uses a two-wavelength method for internal standard correction of fluorescence intensity at 620 nm and 665 nm, making it possible to increase the sensitivity of the detection limit.

HETEROGENEOUS IMMUNOASSAY SYSTEMS

Until the early 1980s, most heterogeneous labeled immunoassays were manually performed. Then Boehringer Mannheim (which merged with Roche Diagnostics in 1998) developed a fully automated random access analyzer, the ES-600, based on colorimetric enzyme immunoassays, using horseradish peroxidase as the enzyme (Wu et al, 1987). From the late 1980s onward, many companies endeavored to develop fully automated EIA systems, which were high-throughput, sensitive, randomly accessible systems. Antigens associated with early onset of infectious disease, cytokines, growth factors, and hormones such as calcitonin exist at extremely low concentrations in serum, thus requiring a highly sensitive detection method for measuring these analytes (Nishizono et al, 1991; Isomura et al, 1994; 1999). Among the various methods, chemiluminescent immunoassays and their enzymes are the most sensitive assay systems capable of detecting analytes present at very low concentrations.

The fully automated instruments currently available are also capable of using fluorescent enzyme immunoassays. These assay systems are classified into several groups based on the generation and detection of signals and the type of solid phase. With respect to the detection signal, the AIA2000, 360 (Tosoh, Tokyo, Japan) and the AxSYM (Abbott, Abbott Park, Ill.) employ a fluorescent method of the EIA that uses alkaline phosphatase and a specific substrate, 4-methylumbelliferylphosphate. Three types of systems are available for chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassays. Lumipulse (Fujirebio, Tokyo, Japan), Access (Beckman Coulter, Brea, Calif.), and Immulite (Siemens Healthcare, Erlangen, Germany) have used a stable chemiluminescent substrate, phenyl phosphoryl adamantyl dioxetane, for alkaline phosphatase (Babson et al, 1991; Nishizono et al, 1991; Patterson et al, 1994). Acridinium ester as a chemiluminescent label was applied to the ADVIA Centaur XP (Siemens Healthcare, Erlangen, Germany) and Architect i2000 (Abbott Diagnostics, Lake Forest, Ill.), and later to the Centaur (Siemens Healthcare, Erlangen, Germany). In the Cobas e411 (Roche Diagnostics, Basel, Switzerland), $Ru(bpy)_3^{2+}$ is used as an electrochemiluminescent label (Erler, 1998).

PRACTICAL FLOW OF THE IMMUNOASSAY IN THE ANALYTIC SYSTEM

The market demands that instrumentation be able to perform a large number of tests with random access capability. To meet these criteria, it is necessary to improve reagents and avoid tediousness in performing heterogeneous immunoassays. To simplify the system for application in a fully automated assay system, individual cartridges of prepackaged reagents or predispensed reaction cuvette reagents were designed. A generic system for heterogeneous labeled immunoassays is depicted schematically in Figure 44-25. The operator selects the desired test items by means of a computer program and loads reagent cartridges or bottles for each test. For a particular analyte, the cartridges and the reaction cuvette are fed automatically into the instrument. Samples are transported to the appropriate position for dispensing. The assay is designed to use reaction trays or carousels that automate mixing and separation steps that depend on

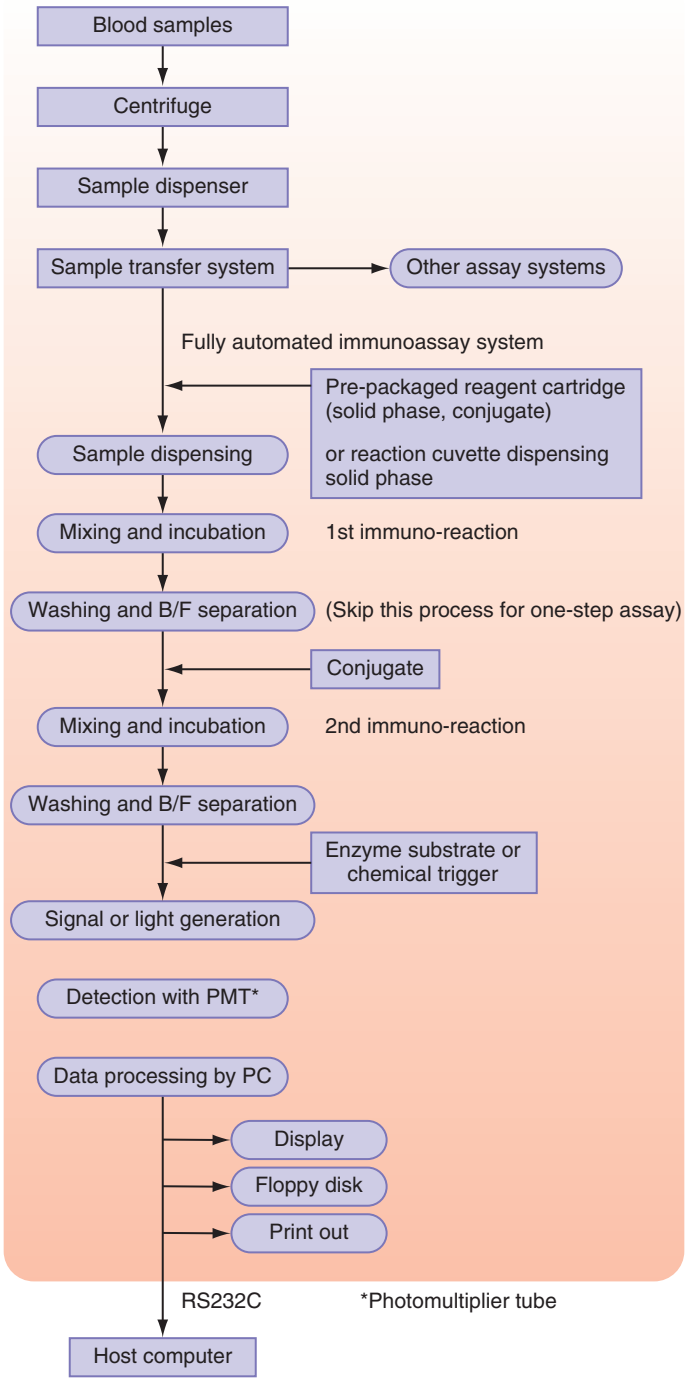


Figure 44-25 Brief diagram of fully automated immunoassay system in clinical laboratory automation.

performance through first and second immunoreactions and the signal generation reaction. All steps of the assay are carried out sequentially on the reaction line, and the signals generated are measured by a detector. Test results are printed out within 20 to 40 minutes and are sent automatically online to the host computer. The system can treat about 60 to 200 tests per hour, processing 10 to 20 analytes in each sample specimen by the random access manner.

INSTRUMENTATION AND KEY POINTS FOR HETEROGENEOUS IMMUNOASSAY

Although the assay principle is similar in many instruments, big differences among instruments may be noted with respect to sampling format, heating control, B/F separation, carryover, waste flow, and so forth. Thus we should pay attention to how well the instrument performs after implementation.

Reaction Cuvette

In an immunoassay system, the design of cuvette features is very important to obtain reproducible data. Manufacturers use certain types of cuvettes to achieve easy access and rapid handling of reagents. An all-in-one–type cuvette containing the reagents and the reaction cell has been introduced in the Lumipulse system. The Immulite system utilizes a unique reaction cell for B/F separation. The AxSYM (Abbott, Abbott Park, Ill.) uses another unique reaction vessel consisting of a reagent, an incubation well, and a sample well within a cuvette for B/F separation. The system combines the content of this assay cuvette into a matrix cell. The latter can be used to capture the solid latex phase followed by B/F separation and the second immunoreaction of the labeled antibody and the solid phase.

Sampling and Fluid Delivery Type

In general, fluid delivery is selected from two different types: a disposable chip or a fixed-probe nozzle. Cross-contamination of samples should be avoided in all assay systems. The disposable chip can completely prevent cross-contamination. In the case of the fixed-probe system, even though the original sample is divided into several small aliquots, cross-contamination still occurs. Therefore, the disposable chip system is the best way to avoid cross-contamination and to minimize biohazardous waste. On the other hand, the running cost of using chips for the assay is higher than that of the probe assay. Environmental effects of the disposable chips must be considered.

Carryover

Carryover from an extremely high concentration of analyte in one sample to the next sample sometimes causes misjudgment in clinical diagnosis. A disposable plastic tube is the simplest way to prevent this problem. On the other hand, the fixed-probe nozzle has several cost advantages, as mentioned earlier. Thus most of the technologies concerned with sample engineering have focused on minimizing sample carryover through washing and tip maintenance steps. Now, several fixed-probe tips have made it possible to limit carryover to less than the order of 10^{-7}. Even with such low carryover, some samples still create problems (e.g., a hepatitis B surface antigen [HBsAg] strong positive sample followed by a negative). In this case, a software system can be used to check the subsequent result by automatically retesting weakly positive values following strong positive results.

Bound/Fixed Separation and Washing Systems

In a heterogeneous immunoassay, the bound conjugate has to be separated from the free label. This B/F separation depends on the characteristics of the solid phase. The IMx and AxSYM systems use latex microparticles as the solid phase and employ a porous membrane to entrap the latex for separation of particles of the solid phase from particles of the liquid phase. The Diagnostics Product Corporation has developed a unique cell for B/F separation systems, in which the reaction solution spins out from an inner cell to an outer waste cell, while the bound phase stays in a solid-phase bead (¼-inch bead). Advantages of this format are the avoidance of cross-contamination or carryover from one reaction mixture to the next and the fact that no excess washing process is required. All other systems use magnetic particles and magnetic beads, for which easy and rapid separation can be achieved by applying a magnetic field.

HIGH-THROUGHPUT FULLY AUTOMATED HETEROGENEOUS IMMUNOASSAY SYSTEMS

Table 44-7 compares several of the commercial high-throughput immunoassay systems that have been introduced in the past few years. It shows the instrument specifications of each analyzer. By reducing the incubation

TABLE 44-7
High-Throughput Fully Automated Heterogeneous Immunoassay Systems

	AIA-2000, Tosoh	ADVIA Centaur XP, Siemens	ARCHITECT i2000, Abbott	Lumipulse Presto II, Fujirebio	Cobas e411, Roche
Package of reagent	Freeze-drying in portion package	Reagent pack (solution)	Solution in bottle	Solution in bottle	Reagent pack (solution)
Reaction cuvette	Reagent cup	Disposable cuvette	Disposable cuvette	Disposable cuvette	Disposable cuvette
Reaction principle	Fluorescent enzyme immunoassay	Chemiluminescent immunoassay	Chemiluminescent immunoassay	Chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassay	Electrochemiluminescent immunoassay
Labeled substance	Alkaline phosphatase	Acridinium ester	Acridinium ester	Alkaline phosphatase	Ruthenium
Enzyme substrate	4-Methylumbelliferyl phosphate	None	None	Adamantyl 1,2-dioxetane phenyl phosphate	None
Detector signal	Fluorescence	Chemiluminescence	Chemiluminescence	Chemiluminescence	Chemiluminescence
Assay format	S-1, S-2, competitive	S-1, S-2, competitive	S-1, S-2, competitive	S-1, S-2, competitive; delayed S-1	S-1, S-2, competitive; delayed backtitration
Pretreatment	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Reaction flow	Turntable	Turntable	Turntable	Turntable	Turntable
Cycle time, seconds	30	15	18	15	42
Reaction time, minutes	10, 20, or 40	18	29	20	9, 18, or 27
Reaction temperature	37°C	37°C	37°C	37°C	37°C
Maximum analyte number	48	30	25	24	18
Throughput, tests/hour	200	240	200	240	86
Solid phase	Magnetic bead	Magnetic particle	Magnetic particle	Magnetic particle	Magnetic particle
First result time, minutes	~18	18	15/29	32	9
B/F separation	Magnetic field	Magnetic field	Magnetic field	Magnetic field	Magnetic field
Sampling method	Disposable chip	Disposable chip	Fixed probe	Disposable chip	Disposable chip
Sample auto dilution	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

B/F, Bound over free.

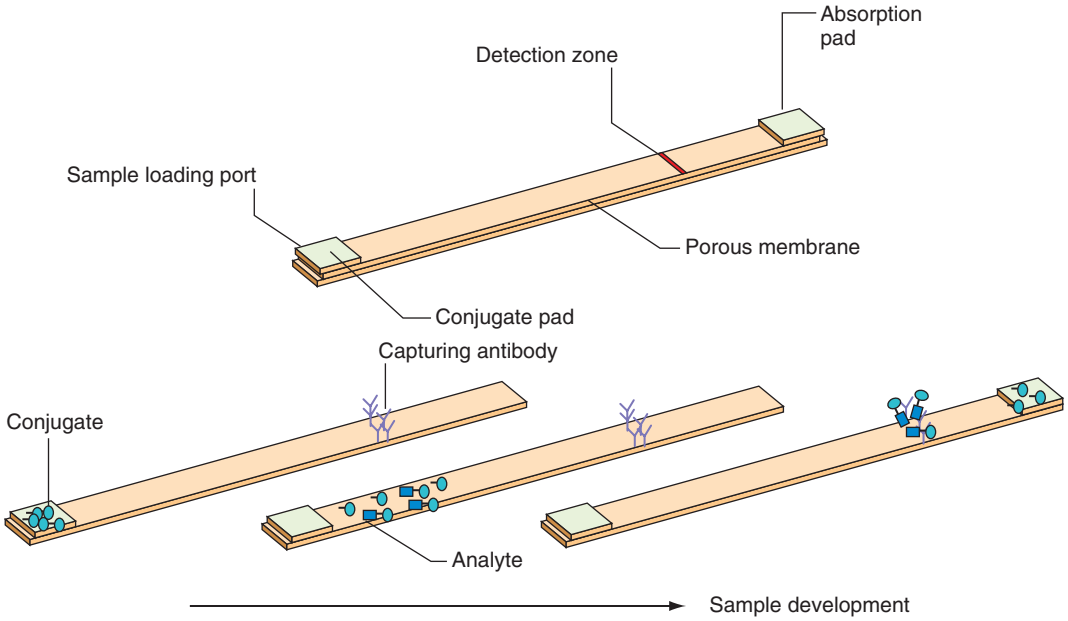


Figure 44-26 Typical immunochromatographic test strip by sample loading. Assay flows are illustrated in the lower part of the figure. In general, the proximal end of the lateral flow serves as the sample loading portion consisting of a pad containing antibody or antigen labeled with colored latex or colloidal gold. Analyte in the sample forms a complex with the conjugate and migrates to the detection zone, thereby immobilizing the capturing antibody to form a positive colored line. Excess amounts of conjugate and sample migrate to the distal end of the strip.

and reaction times, a rapid result can be obtained in 10 to 25 minutes. Thus a high-throughput machine performing approximately 200 tests/hour is possible. Furthermore, several manufacturers have demonstrated a new system concept that aligns the different analytic systems needed in a clinical laboratory. Many clinical laboratories have introduced an automated sample transporting line, which is connected to different analytic instruments controlled independently. However, several analyzers are not amenable to this approach because the speed of the instrument throughput or cycle time cannot be harmonized easily. To solve these problems, ARCHITECT (Abbott, Abbott Park, Ill.) is an example of a new machine concept in which one system computer can control several immunoassay analyzers connected to one chemistry analyzer called a *modular system*. Several other combinations still under development are based on this concept, which will make it possible to simplify the clinical laboratory and to lower total assay cost.

REMOTE MAINTENANCE

The daily maintenance of immunoassay analyzers has traditionally been a manual task assigned to laboratory technicians. However, certain system abnormalities are difficult to identify, especially with the sampling unit, reaction units, signal detection unit, and data storage. Recent progress in software development and information systems has recently made it possible to ensure high-quality system performance (Truchaud et al, 1997). Using a remote tracking system via the Internet, system conditions can be collected for data reliability analysis and troubleshooting. IVD systems make it possible for users to monitor system reliability in terms of data reproducibility, system performance, and quality control by using specifically assigned control values supplied by IVD system suppliers or third parties. Remote maintenance allows users to prevent daily glitches that would otherwise affect hospital management. Remote maintenance makes it possible to do the following:

1. Monitor daily performance
2. Detect parts abnormalities and conduct replacement
3. Minimize downtime
4. Improve mean time between failures
5. Detect data abnormalities
6. Provide system improvement information

A number of versatile software supplied by third parties can be used for remote maintenance. Under a customer agreement, IVD system manufacturers provide versatile software to ensure the system's safe management for security, including software validation compliance and personal information.

RAPID AND SIMPLE TEST DEVICES FOR POINT-OF-CARE TESTING

BACKGROUND

A strong demand for a home test (e.g., hCG for pregnancy diagnosis) has simplified the immunoassay format: The test must be simple, rapid, and reproducible. With these goals in mind, many hCG tests have been developed and have resulted in the first-generation test format with a flow-through enzyme immunoassay.

IMMUNOCHROMATOGRAPHIC DEVICES

To eliminate stepwise reagent additions in these two formats, further improvement has been accomplished with the use of immunochromatographic techniques that ensure a simpler and quicker immunoassay. Immunochromatography consists of simultaneous B/F separation and signal generation followed by lateral flow on porous materials such as a nitrocellulose membrane or a glass-fiber sheet. Through the capillary action of the membrane, the analyte in the sample can migrate from the proximal end to the distal end, where an absorbent pad is set to maintain a constant capillary flow rate. The sample loading zone, labeling zone, and detection zone are set between the two ends. The immunochromatographic method is classified into several formats (Figure 44-26). The proximal end is employed as the sample loading port connected to a pad containing labeled antigen or antibody, under which a nitrocellulose membrane is in contact with the pad, which serves as a fixed detection zone. The distal end of the membrane is attached to the absorbent pad as a source of capillary force. The sample, loaded by means of a dropper, reconstitutes the conjugate antibody or antigen labeled with colloidal gold or colored latex, which forms an immunocomplex with the analyte being detected, and the complex migrates to the detection zone. The antibody or antigen immobilized in the detection zone can capture the complex and form a positive red or blue line. Excess labeling substance migrates to the absorbent pad. The mobile phase for sample migration is the sample itself. Therefore, samples strongly colored owing to the presence of a high concentration of bilirubin or hemoglobin may interfere with judgment in reading the results with the naked eye. In this format, the signal to be read is produced directly in the detection zone as a concentrated zone of colored particles.

Yamauchi and colleagues (1997) established a novel platform format in which EIA can be performed automatically, including a washing procedure. The device is depicted schematically in Figure 44-27. In this format,

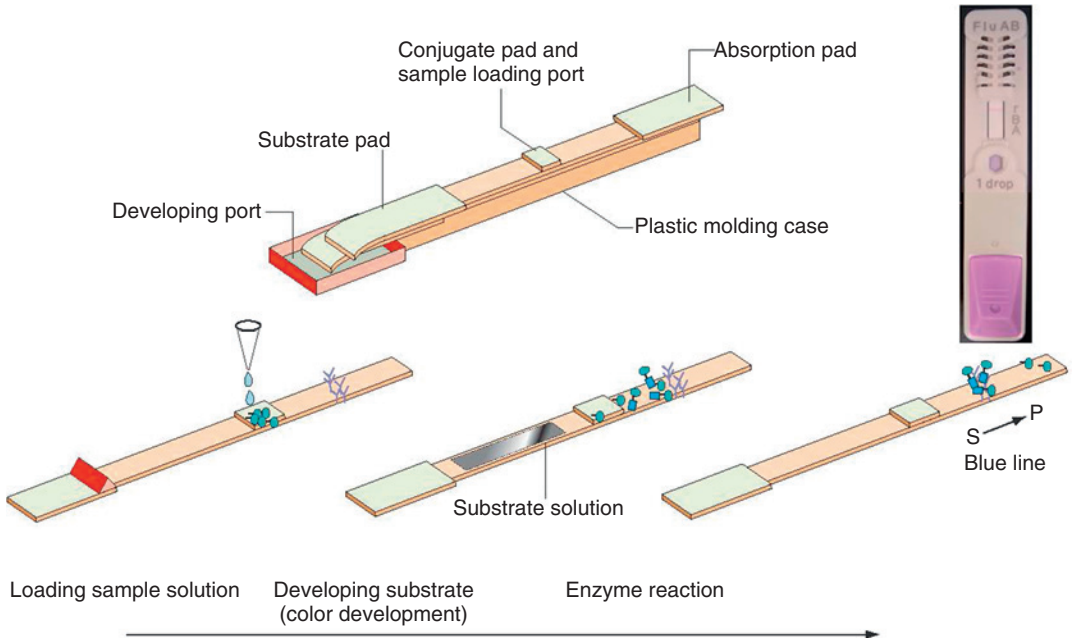


Figure 44-27 Immunochromatographic device using enzyme immunoassay (EIA). A sensitive amplification method is applied for immunochromatography using an enzyme. The sample is applied to the sample loading portion at the center of the strip. With this method, a developing solution is employed as the mobile phase and can serve as a washing buffer. The picture on the right part of the figure shows the plastic molded housing and assay results for *Treponema pallidum* (TP) antibody.

TABLE 44-8
Simple and Rapid Immunoassay Device Specifications

Assay Principle	Kit Name (Analyte)	Sample Specimens	Sample Volume, μL	Mobile Phase	Reaction Time, min	Sensitivity	Housing	Manufacturer
Immunochromatographic Format								
One step (all in one)	Biocard Troponin I test	Serum	150-200	Serum	15	0.1 ng/mL	MP	ANIBIOTECH OY
	QuickVue hCG	Urine	3 drops (75)	Urine	3	25 mIU/mL	MP	QUIDEL
	Cardiac TROP T sensitive	Blood	150	Plasma	5-20	0.1 ng/mL	MP	Roche Diagnostics
	Determine HBsAg	Blood/serum	50	Plasma/serum	15	2.0-3.5 IU/mL	TS	Alere
	Alere Triage Cardiac Panel	Blood	250	Plasma	15	—	MP	Alere
	Espline Flu AB	Nasal passage	20	Developer	15	1.1×10^4 pfu/mL (A/New Caledonia/20/99)	MP	Fujirebio Inc.
	OraQuick ADVANCE Rapid HIV-1/2 Antibody Test	Oral fluid, plasma, blood	—	Developer	20-40	—	MP	OraSure Technologies, Inc.
	ImmunoCard ST HpSA	Stool	100	Developer	10	64 ng/mL	MP	Meridian Bioscience, Inc.

MP, Molded plastic housing; *TP,* test strip.

the positioning of each of the zones is completely different from that of other immunochromatography formats mentioned previously. The proximal end has a developer solution, which makes it possible to carry out the washing process to take place spontaneously with capillary force. The sample is applied to a pad that is set in the center portion of the device and that contains the labeled conjugate in dry form. The distal end connects to an absorbent pad. Two drops of sample are dropped on the sample pad to react with the conjugate following reconstitution of the dried conjugate. The reaction mixture containing the immunocomplex formed between the analyte and the labeled antibody can spread to both ends. Once the reservoir of developing solution is ruptured, the dried substrate is reconstituted to become the soluble enzyme substrate in the detection zone. At this time, fluidic flow is directed toward the distal end. Serum components and excess nonreacted conjugate can be washed away to the absorbent. If the sample contains analyte, then the immobilized antibody captures the complex in the detection zone to form a colored line. This method has a number of advantages over other immunochromatographic devices developed by the sample. With such devices, hemolytic serum or lipemic serum may interfere with assay judgment by the naked eye, owing to high background color. However, with this new device, which is equipped with a connected reservoir, interference by colored components does not occur. This device has been useful in detecting HBsAg, anti-HBs antibody (Yamauchi et al, 1997), and antibody to *T. pallidum* (Hasegawa et al, 1995). Most of its components, such as the membrane, the absorbent pad, and the sample compartment, have built-in molded plastic housing.

MAGNETIC BIOSENSOR ASSAY

Bruls and colleagues (2009) developed a magnetic actuated immunosensor using magnetic nanoparticles as both coated solid phase with ligand such as antibodies or antigens and signal. Ten microliters of blood sample are injected into the inlet of the cartridge and mixed with beads coated with antibody; the beads are then actuated by magnetic fields using a handheld instrument. The bead-captured antigens are then separated on the active device wall whose surface is coated with second capturing antibodies by a magnetic field. Then the second magnetic fields are set on the opposite

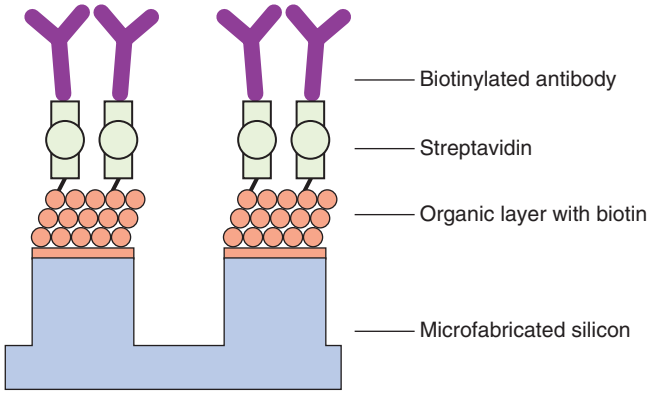


Figure 44-28 Protein biochip using fluorescence immunoassay (FIA). Sandwich FIA is applied for multiple detections using microfabricated silicon as a solid substrate. The surfaces of more than 1000 pillars are coated with an organic polymer layer containing biotin. Streptavidin that is bound to biotin then binds to biotinylated antibody specific to analyte and reacts with antigen in the sample. The silicon device containing different antibodies specific to different antigens is set in a molded plastic device.

side of the wall. Unbound beads are migrated to the opposite wall without any washing step. The signals on the active wall are detected by counting nanoparticles with a combination of an LED and a photodetector, using the FTIR principle. Magnetic particles on the surface are cut off from the LED beam. Reduced beams correspond to magnetic particles. This method can detect pico molar levels of intact PTC with less than 10 minutes incubation. Recent data show that TnI in blood have been detected at levels of subpico molar at 5 minutes' incubation.

SUMMARY

Rapid and simple immunoassay devices can be classified into three major types: flow-through, dipping, and immunochromatography, along with combination formats of these three types. Several immunochromatographic formats are summarized in Table 44-8. Most immunochromatographic devices employ direct-labeled conjugate, colloidal metal, or colored latex. These types of formats are actually well suited for direct migration of the immunocomplex, along with migration of the sample solution. However, many of these devices require a large volume of sample, in the range of 100 to 200 µL. On the other hand, the EIA-type device allows the assay to be carried out using a smaller amount of sample—25 µL—but a developer is required. The current stream of rapid tests for point-of-care testing (POCT) is strongly oriented toward devices using immunochromatography because, unlike other immunoassay devices, special skills are not required to perform the test correctly; one simply needs to follow the manufacturer's directions for genetic testing, and a certain number of protein assays could be shifted to nucleic acid assays, even in the field of POCT, particularly for the diagnosis of infectious diseases.

SIMULTANEOUS MULTIPLE IMMUNOASSAYS

BACKGROUND

Recent immunoassay advancements have led to the development of novel technology concepts that allow simultaneous multiple detection as a way to reduce the reagent cost. This means that anywhere from 5 to 100 analytes can be detected simultaneously in an individual sample. These technologies are classified into two broad categories in terms of the type of solid phase used. The first, microsectioning technology, is adapted to immunoassays using a microchip as the solid phase, and the second uses microparticles as the solid phase. In the second, two technologies have been applied to the recognition of individual assay analyte parameters. One is direct recognition of the solid phase using fluorolabeled latex, and the other involves the use of particles of different sizes. In the latter case, limited recognition is possible because the resolution is dependent on particle size. Miniaturized technologies such as these are considered highly advantageous for minimizing the cost of reagents, saving energy, and protecting the environment, because of the small mass of reagent and sample volumes required.

MICROSPOT ASSAY

The microchip solid surface is fractionated into small areas using microdotting technology. A total of 100 to 200 reaction sites are produced in a 3-mm-diameter area of a polystyrene flat plate (Ekins, 1998). In each site, a spotting area 80 µm in diameter receives a volume of less than 1 nL of solution ink-jetted automatically. With this method, the ambient assay theory established by Ekins has been applied, and the sensitivity and the detection limit depend on the antibody occupancy but not on the surface area on the solid phase. The detection limit for TSH was found to be 0.01 mIU/L in an 18-hour assay, using this ambient analyte assay method. Therefore, it is evident that a highly sensitive assay can be achieved even on the microspot area. Boehringer Mannheim, which later merged with Roche Diagnostics, applied an avidin-coated solid phase uniformly to the surface area and then ink-jetted biotin-binding antibody or antigen on the spot. Multiple parameters, including HIV antibody, HBsAg, anti–hepatitis C antigens, and rubella, can be detected simultaneously on the microchip made of polystyrene. The assay format is a three-step fluorescent immunoassay. Finally, a confocal laser scanner detects the fluorescent signal on the chip. This chip assay is also available for the application of DNA detection.

MULTIANALYTE MICROARRAY IMMUNOASSAY

Silzel and colleagues (1998) developed an analyte mass assay that measures total analyte mass within a sample. Therefore, the basic concept of this method is different from that of the ambient assay, which measures analyte concentration. A polystyrene film was used as the solid phase. An 80-pL droplet was ink-jetted onto the film, and DBCY5 was adopted as the labeling marker because of the long Stokes shift from the excitation wavelength at 670 nm to the emission wavelength at 710 nm, with near-infrared fluorescence emission. The detection apparatus used in this method consists of a microscope attached to a Pelitier-cooled charge-coupled device camera and a GaAlAs diode laser. In this format, 10^5 molecules of DBCY5 per 80 pL area could be detected in calibration solutions. The IgG subclass was applied to the present system for multiparameter detection. Four parameters—IgG1, 2, 3, and 4—were detected, and the sensitivity was shown to be comparable with that of ELISA, although a much smaller amount of antibody (100 times less) sufficed to cover the surface area as compared with an ELISA plate.

Protein chips microfabricated with highly dense spotting sites having 1250 reaction sites per 1×2 cm have been developed by Zyomyx (Hayward, Calif.) The protein chip is composed of silicon-based substrate as a solid phase and six lanes with a 5×50 array/lane (Peluso et al, 2003). Isomura employed the chip and applied a simultaneous fluorescent sandwich immunoassay for some target proteins (e.g., AFP, interleukin [IL]-6, Erk-2, c-Jun, Grb2, c-Src, H-Ras) (Isomura & Okamura, 2003). As shown in Figure 44-28, reaction sites are microfabricated to a pillar structure and then are coated with titanium oxide. The surface is coated with poly L-lysine polymer linking with polyethylene glycol-biotin. After binding of streptavidin to biotin, the solid streptavidin can bind to biotinylated antibodies. The assay can be performed in a flow device. The detection limit for IL-6 was found to be 5 to 50,000 ng/L in a 3-hour assay with the use of this protein biochip assay method.

Efforts to find better diagnostic markers are ongoing. The proteomics assay based on matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization is expected to serve as a tool for the discovery of new markers. Advancements in glycomics (Finkelstein, 2007), the systematic study of the structure and physiologic function of carbohydrates, should lead to the development of new markers as well. The combination of these with existing markers will be evaluated for the enhancement of multiple marker assays.

FLOW CYTOMETRIC IMMUNOASSAY

Luminex (Austin, Tex.) has developed a simultaneous multiparameter fluorescent immunoassay using flow cytometric technology in which two types of fluorophores for recognition of the analyte serve to mark the latex particles used as solid phase (Fulton et al, 1997; Oliver et al, 1998). Two different types of fluorophores and fluorescence intensities mark the analyte mapping of each particle. More than 60 analytes can be detected simultaneously in principle. The assay procedure is as follows. The sample is mixed with antibody labeled with R-phycoerythrin, and a second antibody is immobilized on latex as the solid phase. The mixture is incubated for 10 to 30 minutes and then is injected into the flow system. A total of 1000 particles are separated, as in flow cytometry, and both an enhanced fluorescence signal from the excited R-phycoerythrin as a result of the

labeling and two fluorescence signals on the particle are detected simultaneously by laser scanner. Carson and Vignali (1999) applied this approach to the simultaneous detection of 15 cytokines such as IL-1, IL-2, IL-4, and IL-6. Simultaneous detection was less sensitive than the assay of individual cytokines. However, it is still a sensitive assay compared with conventional ELISA, and sensitivity was 100 pg/mL for IL-2, 10 pg/mL for IL-4, 100 pg/mL for granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, and 200 pg/mL for interferon-γ.

From the point of view of clinical application, simultaneous multiple assays may not appear as attractive as might have been expected. In some cases, the sensitivity and specificity of this technique need to be assessed more carefully. However, simultaneous multiple assays based on miniaturization technology should be the ultimate goal for laboratory diagnostics, given the advantages they offer in terms of cost containment, reduction of burden on patients from phlebotomy, and clinical utility.

The logistic regression model, using multiple markers, has improved the sensitivity and accuracy of diagnostic immunology but has met with only limited success. Recent advancements in laboratory pharmacogenomic testing for selection of the appropriate therapeutic drug in the right dosage for the right patient require further statistical calculation to obtain additional valuable test results. Pharmacogenomic testing is useful for protein assay as well. The Multivariate Index Assay by Vermillion Inc. (Fremont, Calif.), which was approved by the FDA in 2009, is a multiple-protein assay that comprises five conventional biomarker assays developed with certain types of algorithms. Several genetic testing methods based on algorithms have been approved by the FDA for laboratory testing, but not as kits. Genetic testing for multiple markers, as well as protein or carbohydrate testing, is likely to provide reliable options for diagnostics and for selection of therapeutic drugs.

MICROCHANNEL ASSAY USING COMPACT DISCS

Gyros AB (Uppsala, Sweden) developed a simultaneous microfluidic fluorescent immunoassay using a compact disc (CD) as microlaboratory technology in which the microfluidic flow can be obtained by centrifugal force (Poulsen et al, 2004). On the CD, 104 assays can be performed simultaneously by fluorescent column immunoassay. The solid phase consists of plastic microparticles bound to streptavidin. Specific antibody binding with biotin is applied to the column. A total of 100 nL of sample can be automatically metered by separation of the hydrophobic breaking valve in which the wall has been coated with hydrophobic polymer. The valve can open by centrifugal force, and several types of break settings in the channel of the CD make it possible to perform a rapid and simple assay by changing the rpm to control reactions. This assay has been applied to the detection of human IgG, with a sensitivity of 1 ng/mL.

SAMSUNG (Seoul, Korea) commercialized a unique compact disc–type POCT system that consists of multianalyte tests and a small fully automated immunochemistry analyzer, LABGEO^{IB10}. Five hundred μL whole blood samples are pipetted onto and spun down the disc of a handheld instrument, triggering a centrifugal force that separates plasma and blood cells. After a period of 20 minutes, the signal for D-dimer can be detected (Song et al, 2014). Three analytes can be tested simultaneously as multiple assays, including Troponin I, NT-proBNP, CK-MB, and myoglobin as cardiac markers (Belenky et al, 2013). Assay performance for troponin-I shows 50 to 30,000 ng/L of measurable range and 9.2% to 12.6% of whole assay C.V.

SUMMARY

Remarkable technological advancements have been made in the development of micro-channel assays in the past 10 to 15 years. Moreover, recent progress made in assay miniaturization has made it possible to overcome several difficulties with microfluidic movement of sample and reagent and sample evaporation using capillary flow, small vacuum pumps, and capillary electrophoresis in combination with a handheld instrument.

SINGLE MOLECULE DETECTION

BACKGROUND

Current various immunoassay systems have made it possible to produce high sensitivity at atto-molar levels in 10 to 40 minutes' reaction time in clinical laboratories. However, it is still difficult to detect clinical markers in very low concentrations of less than atto-molar levels. Due to recent advances in highly sensitive measurement technology, we may soon be able to determine the normal distribution values of TNF-alfa and interleukins, which is very difficult to define in blood.

SINGLE-MOLECULE ELISA

Rissin and colleagues (2010) developed a single-molecule ELISA for serum protein detection at subfemtomolar concentrations. This is an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, which differs from conventional ELISA, defined as digital ELISA (D-ELISA), in which a single bead as solid phase can be set in each well in the plate. In digital ELISA, femtoliter well arrays are used as reaction vessels to obtain a single signal, while in conventional ELISA, 96 well plates are used as direct solid phase binding capture antibodies. In femtoliter well arrays, each of the wells can accommodate a single bead. Magnetic particles with a 2.7-μm diameter as solid phase are used in D-ELISA. The procedure is almost identical to that of conventional ELISA—namely, 100 μL of sample is incubated with 200,000 beads for 2 hours at 23°C. Then, B/F separation using conventional magnet equipment is performed by a washing procedure. β-galactosidase–labeled second-captured antibodies are added and incubated in wells for 45 minutes, and the second B/F step is performed. After reaction with streptavidin-enzyme, D-ELISA requires one additional step: concentrated beads in 10 μL buffer are transferred into femtoliter well arrays and reacted with fluorescent substrate. Signals in each well are detected using image CCD camera (558 nm excitation, 577 emission). TNF-α and PSA were measured in this platform and showed extremely high sensitivity for PSA, LOD of 200 aM in whole serum; for TNF-α, it was 600 aM in whole serum.

SINGLE-FLUORESCENT IMMUNOASSAY

Singulex (Alameda, Calif.) developed the Erenna Immunoassay System on the basis of the fluorescent immunoassay. In this system, single molecules of fluorescence can be detected by releasing a fluorescent conjugate from the immune-complex consisting of solid-phase antibodies, antigens, and fluorescent-labeled antibodies (Todd et al, 2007). The immunoassay platform itself is a conventional fluorescent immunoassay that uses magnetic particles as solid phase and fluorescent dye–labeled antibodies. The fluorescent dye released by elution buffer is loaded into the capillary flow cell, and the fluorescent signal as a single molecule is detected by a confocal microscope. The immunoassay reaction lasts 1 to 2 hours. The linear response for interleukin (IL)-17 is shown from 60 pg/mL to 1 μg/mL. In the case of cTnl, the frequency distribution in 100 normal plasma samples appears from 0.3 to 9 ng/L. LOD and 10% CV were 0.2 ng/L and between 0.78 and 1.6 ng/L, respectively. By releasing fluorescent antibodies from the magnetic particles, the nonspecific binding signal coming from the fluorescent conjugate on the particles could be minimized, resulting in extremely sensitive detection.

SUMMARY

Single-molecule detection immunoassays made it possible to demonstrate reference values of various cytokines or cTnI in serum or plasma. However, the single-molecule detection platforms still require longer incubation times, needing more than 1 hour and several assay steps. Further research and development efforts will achieve shortened assay times and simpler procedures.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Aoyagi K, Ohue C, Iida K, et al: Development of a simple and highly sensitive enzyme immunoassay for hepatitis C virus core antigen, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:1802–1808, 1999.

A new highly sensitive immunoassay for antigens in viral particles in the presence or absence of antiviral antigen antibodies is described using a simple pretreatment method for clinical application. This specimen-pretreatment method can be also applied to the more precise measurement of other viral antigens and can lead to new clinical utilities in various infectious diseases.

Ekins R: Ligand assays: From electrophoresis to miniaturized microarrays, *Clin Chem* 44:2015–2030, 1998.

A new sensitive immunoassay in a miniaturized microarray format is described in this report. This method can be applied to immunoassays and to DNA/RNA analysis and may well revolutionize the diagnostic and pharmaceutical fields as the DNA chip and the protein chip have done.

Kasahara Y: Homogeneous enzyme immunoassays. In Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s*, Washington, DC, 1992a, American Society for Microbiology, pp 169–182.

In this review, Kasahara describes the historical progression of immunoassay development, and reviews homogeneous enzyme immunoassays; it also addresses test sensitivity and procedure simplification and their applicability to small haptens and large proteins.

Kasahara Y, Ashihara Y: Simple devices and their possible application in clinical laboratory downsizing, *Clin Chim Acta* 267:87–102, 1997.

Immunochromatographic assays are powerful tools for point-of-care testing and near-patient testing. This report describes immunochromatographic assays in a simplified immunoassay format for point-of-care testing and near-patient testing and discusses laboratory downsizing and laboratory automation, with specific reference to the situation in Japan.

Kricka LJ: Chemiluminescent and bioluminescent techniques, *Clin Chem* 37:1472–1481, 1991.

In this review, Kricka describes the characteristics and mechanisms of light emission from most of the chemiluminescent and bioluminescent molecules employed as detection signals in immunoassays and nucleic acid detection. This is an excellent review.

Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y: Heterogeneous enzyme immunoassays. In Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s*, Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology, pp 149–167.

In this reference, assay principles and assay performance are discussed, and practical application of heterogeneous enzyme immunoassays is described. This review will help the general reader gain an understanding of nonisotopic immunoassays and will assist the researcher in developing enzyme immunoassays.

REFERENCES

Actor JK, Kuffner T, Dezzutti CS, et al: A flash-type bioluminescent immunoassay that is more sensitive than radioimaging: Quantitative detection of cytokine cDNA in activated and resting human cells, *J Immunol Methods* 211:65–77, 1998.

Alpha B, Lehn JM, Mathis G: Energy transfer luminescence of Eu(III) and Tb(III) cryptases of macrobicyclic polypyridine ligands, *Angew Chem Int Ed Engl* 26:266–267, 1987.

Aoyagi K, Iida K, Ohue C, et al: Performance of a conventional enzyme immunoassay for hepatitis C virus core antigen in the early phases of hepatitis C infection, *Clin Lab* 47:119–127, 2001.

Ashihara Y, Hiraoka T, Makino Y, et al: Immunoassay for determining low- and high-MR antigens with a dry multilayer film, *Clin Chem* 37:1525–1526, 1991.

Ashihara Y, Nishizono I, Miyagawa E, et al: Homogeneous enzyme immunoassay for high molecular weight antigen (I), *J Clin Lab Anal* 2:138–142, 1988.

Avrameas S, Guilbert B: Dosage enzymoimmunologique de proteines a l'aide d'immunoabsorbants et d'antigenes marques aux enzymes, *CR Acad Sci* 273:205–207, 1971.

Avrameas S, Ternynck T, Guesdon JL: Coupling of enzymes to antibodies and antigens, *Scand J Immunol* 7(Suppl):7–23, 1978.

Axelsen NH: Quantitative immunoelectrophoresis: New developments and applications, *Scand J Immunol* (Suppl 2):1–230, 1975.

Babson AL, Olson DR, Palmieri T, et al: The IMMULITE assay tube: A new approach to heterogeneous ligand assay, *Clin Chem* 37:1521–1522, 1991.

Barnard G, Kohen F: Idiometric assay: Noncompetitive immunoassay for small molecules typified by the measurement of estradiol in serum, *Clin Chem* 36:1945–1950, 1990.

Belenky A, Brennan E: Samsung point of care systems—Cardiac/acute care biomarkers—LABGEO^{IB} clinical chemistry analytes—LABGEO^{PT}. XVII Forum—National Days of Laboratory Medicine of Russia, 2013. http://www.mma-expo.ru/lab/2013/visitors/presentations/5-1%20-%20Belenky%20Alexander%20-%20Samsung%20POINT%20OF%20CARE%20Systems.pdf.

Blackburn GF, Shah HP, Kenten JH, et al: Electrochemiluminescence detection for development of immunoassay and DNA probe assays for clinical diagnostics, *Clin Chem* 37:1534–1539, 1991.

Bounaud MP, Bounara JY, Bouin-Pineau MH, et al: Chemiluminescence immunoassay of thyrotropin with acridinium-ester-labeled antibody evaluated and compared with two other immunoassays, *Clin Chem* 33:2096–2100, 1987.

Boyd JC, Savory MG, Margrey M, et al: Adaptation of EMIT drug assays to a random-access automated clinical analyzer, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 15:39–44, 1985.

Boyden SV: The absorption of protein on erythrocytes treated with tannic acid and subsequent hemagglutination by antiprotein sera, *J Exp Med* 93:107–120, 1951.

Bronstein I, Edwards B, Voyta JC: 1,2-Dioxetanes: Novel chemiluminescent enzyme substrates—Applications to immunoassays, *J Biolumin Chemilumin* 4:99–111, 1989a.

Bronstein I, Juo RR, Voyta JC: Novel chemiluminescent adamantyl 1,2-dioxetane enzyme substrate. In Stanley P, Kricka LJ, editors: *Bioluminescence and chemiluminescence*, Chichester, UK, 1991, John Wiley & Sons, pp 74–82.

Bronstein I, Voyta J, Thorpe G, et al: Chemiluminescent assay of alkaline phosphatase applied in an ultrasensitive enzyme immunoassay of thyrotropin, *Clin Chem* 35:1441–1446, 1989b.

Bruls DM, Evers TH, Kahlman JA, et al: Rapid integrated biosensor for multiplexed immunoassays based on actuated magnetic nanoparticles, *Lab Chip* 9:3504–3510, 2009.

Burd JF, Wong RC, Feeney JE, et al: Homogeneous reactant-labeled fluorescent immunoassay for therapeutic drugs exemplified by gentamicin determination in human serum, *Clin Chem* 23:1402–1408, 1977.

Carson RT, Vignali DA: Simultaneous quantitation of 15 cytokines using a multiplexed flow cytometry assay, *J Immunol Methods* 227:41–52, 1999.

Coons AH, Creech JH, Jones RN: Immunologic properties of an antibody containing a fluorescent group, *Prop Soc Exp Biol Med* 47:200, 1941.

Dandliker WB, de Saussure VA: Fluorescence polarization in immunochemistry, *Immunochemistry* 7:799–828, 1970.

Dandliker WB, Kelly RJ, Dandliker J, et al: Fluorescence polarization immunoassay: Theory and experimental method, *Immunochemistry* 10:219–227, 1973.

Ekins RP: The estimation of thyroxine in human plasma by an electrophoretic technique, *Clin Chem Acta* 5:453–459, 1960.

Engvall E, Perlman P: Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA): Quantitative assay of immunoglobulin G, *Immunochemistry* 8:871–874, 1971.

Erler K: Elecsys immunoassay systems using electrochemiluminescence detection, *Wien Klin Wochenschr Suppl* 3:5–10, 1998.

Fahey JL, McKelvey EM: Quantification determination of serum immunoglobulins in antibody-agar plates, *J Immunol* 94:84–90, 1965.

Finkelstein J: Glycochemistry and glycobiology, *Nature* 446:999–1051, 2007.

Fiore M, Mitchell J, Doan T, et al: The Abbott IMx automated benchtop immunochemistry analyzer system, *Clin Chem* 34:1726–1732, 1988.

Fulton RJ, McDade RL, Smith PL, et al: Advanced multiplexed analysis with the FlowMetrix system, *Clin Chem* 43:1749–1756, 1997.

Galvin JP: Particle enhanced immunoassays—A review, diagnostic immunology. In Rippey JH, Nakamura RM, editors: *Technology assessment*, Skokie, Ill, 1984, College of American Pathologists, pp 18–30.

Garvey JS, Cremer NE, Sussdorf DH: *Methods in immunology*, ed 3, Reading, Mass., 1977, WA Benjamin, pp 273–327.

Giegel JL, Brotherton MM, Cronen P, et al: Radial partition immunoassay, *Clin Chem* 28:1894–1898, 1982.

Halonen P, Meurman O, Lovgren T, et al: Detection of viral antigens by time resolved fluoroimmunoassay. In Bachman PA, editor: *Current topics in microbiology and immunology*, New York, 1973, Springer-Verlag, pp 133–146.

Hasegawa A, Andoh A, Ashihara Y: Simple and rapid detection of antibodies to HIV-1/2 using immunochromatography. Presented at: IUVDT World STD/AIDS Congress 1995; March 19–23, 1995; Singapore, p. 145. Abstract.

Haux P, Dybois H, McGovern M, et al: Evaluation of the TIna-quant ferritin assay on the Boehringer Mannheim/Hitachi 704 System, *Clin Chem* 34:1174 Abstract, 1988.

Heidelberg M, Kendall FE: The precipitin reaction between type III pneumococcus polysaccharide and homologous antibody, *J Exp Med* 61:563–591, 1935.

Henderson DR, Freidman SB, Harris JD, et al: CEDIA, a new homogeneous immunoassay system, *Clin Chem* 32:1637–1641, 1986.

Hirayama C, Ihara H, Shibata M, et al: Polypeptide artificial carrier particles for use in passive agglutination immunoassay, *Polymer J* 23:161, 1991.

Hunter WH, Greenwood FC: Preparation of iodine-131 labeled human growth hormone of high specific activity, *Nature* 194:495–496, 1962.

Ihara M, Suzuki T, Kobayashi N, et al: Open-sandwich enzyme immunoassay for one-step noncompetitive detection of corticosteroid 11-deoxycortisol, *Anal Chem* 81:8298–8304, 2009.

Ikeda M: New agglutination test for serum antibodies to adult T-cell leukemia virus, *Gann* 75:845–848, 1984.

Ishikawa E, Kohono T: Development and applications of sensitive enzyme immunoassay for antibodies, *J Clin Lab Anal* 3:252–265, 1989.

Islam KN, Ihara M, Dong J, et al: Direct construction of an open-sandwich enzyme immunoassay for one-step noncompetitive detection of thyroid hormone T4, *Anal Chem* 83:1008–1014, 2011.

Isomura M, Honda N, Kawada A, et al: Development of a highly sensitive enzyme immunoassay for human calcitonin using solid phase coupled with multiple antibodies, *Ann Clin Biochem* 36:629–635, 1999.

Isomura M, Okamura C: Microfabricated protein biochip for multiple fluorescent sandwich immunoassay, *Clin Chem* 49:A13, 2003.

Isomura M, Ueno M, Shimada K, et al: Highly sensitive chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassay with gelatin-coated ferrite solid phase, *Clin Chem* 40:1830, 1994.

Jolley ME: Fluorescence polarization immunoassay for the determination of therapeutic drug levels in human plasma, *J Anal Toxicol* 5:236–240, 1981.

Kabat EA: *Kabat and Meyer's experimental immunochemistry*, ed 2, Springfield, Ill, 1961, Charles C Thomas.

Kasahara Y: Principles and applications of particle immunoassay. In Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s*, Washington, DC, 1992b, American Society for Microbiology, pp 127–147.

Kato K, Hamaguchi Y, Fukui H, et al: Enzyme-linked immunoassay—A simple method for synthesis of the rabbit antibody-β-D-galactosidase complex and its general applicability, *J Biochem* 78:423–425, 1975.

Kemp BE, Rylatt DB, Bundesen PG, et al: Autologous red cell agglutination assay for HIV-I antibodies: Simplified test with whole blood, *Science* 241:1352–1354, 1988.

Kimura T, Rokuhara A, Sakamoto Y, et al: Sensitive enzyme immunoassay for hepatitis B virus core-related antigens and their correlation to virus load, *J Clin Microbiol* 40:439–445, 2002.

Kimura T, Rokuhara A, Matsumoto A, et al: New enzyme immunoassay for detection of hepatitis B virus core antigen (HBcAg) and relation between levels of HBcAg and HBV DNA, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:1901–1906, 2003.

Kitagawa T, Fujitake T, Taniyama H, et al: Enzyme immunoassay of viomycin, new cross-linking reagent for enzyme-labelling and a preparation method for antiserum of viomycin, *J Biochem* 83:1493–1501, 1978.

Kobayashi N, Oiwa H, Kubota K, et al: Monoclonal antibodies generated against an affinity-labeled immune complex of an anti-bile acid metabolite antibody: An approach to noncompetitive hapten immunoassays based on anti-idiotype or anti-metatype antibodies, *J Immunol Methods* 245:95–108, 2000.

Kobayashi N, Shibusawa K, Kubota K, et al: Monoclonal anti-idiotype antibodies recognizing the variable region of a high-affinity antibody against 11-deoxycortisol. Production, characterization and application to a sensitive noncompetitive immunoassay, *J Immunol Methods* 274:63–75, 2003.

Koehler G, Milstein C: Continuous cultures of fused cells secreting antibody of predefined specificity, *Nature* 256:495, 1975.

Lim SL, Ichinose H, Shinoda T, et al: Noncompetitive detection of low molecular weight peptides by open sandwich immunoassay, *Anal Chem* 79:6193–6200, 2007.

Magnani JL, Steplewski Z, Koprowski H: Identification of the gastrointestinal and pancreatic cancer-associated antigen detected by monoclonal antibody 19-9 in the sera of patients as a mucin, *Cancer Res* 43:5489–5492, 1983.

Mancini G, Carbonara AO, Hereman JF: Immunochemical quantitation of antigens by single radial immunodiffusion, *Immunochemistry* 2:235, 1965.

Masson PL, Holy HW: Immunoassay by particle counting. In Rose NR, Friedman H, Fahey JL, editors: *Manual of clinical laboratory immunology*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 1986, American Society for Microbiology, pp 43–48.

Mathis G: Rare earth cryptates and homogeneous fluoroimmunoassays with human sera, *Clin Chem* 39: 1953–1959, 1993.

Mathis G: Probing molecular interactions with homogeneous techniques based on rare earth cryptates and fluorescence energy transfer, *Clin Chem* 41:1391–1397, 1995.

Miles LEM, Hales CM: Labelled antibodies and immunological assay systems, *Nature* 219:186–189, 1968.

Morris DL: Effect of antibodies to glucose oxidase in the apoenzyme reactivation immunoassay system, *Anal Biochem* 151:235–241, 1985.

Morris DL, Ellis PB, Carrico FJ, et al: Flavin adenine dinucleotide as label in homogeneous colorimetric immunoassays, *Anal Chem* 53:658–665, 1981.

Nakamura RM: Monoclonal antibodies: Methods and clinical applications, *Clin Physiol Biochem* 1:160–172, 1983.

Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y: Fluorescence immunoassays. In Nakamura RM, Kasahara Y, Rechnitz GA, editors: *Immunochemical assays and biosensor technology for the 1990s*, Washington, DC, 1992, American Society for Microbiology, pp 205–227.

Nakamura RM, Robbins BA: Current status of homogeneous enzyme immunoassays, *J Clin Lab Anal* 2:51, 1988.

Nakane PK, Pierce GB: Enzyme-labeled antibodies: Preparation and application for localization of antigens, *J Histochem Cytochem* 14:929–931, 1966.

Nargessi RD, Landon J, Smith DS: Use of antibodies against the label in non-separation non-isotopic immunoassay; "indirect quenching" fluoroimmunoassay of protein, *J Immunol Methods* 26:307–313, 1979.

Nishizono I, Ashihara Y, Tsuchiya H, et al: Homogeneous enzyme immunoassay for high molecular weight antigens (II), *J Clin Lab Anal* 2:143–147, 1988.

Nishizono I, Iida S, Suzuki N, et al: Rapid and sensitive chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassay for measuring tumor markers, *Clin Chem* 37:1639–1644, 1991.

Oliver KG, Kettman JR, Fulton RJ: Multiplexed analysis of human cytokines by use of the FlowMetrix system, *Clin Chem* 44:2057–2060, 1998.

Omi K, Ando T, Sakyu T, et al A novel noncompetitive immunoassay detection system for haptens based on anti-metatype antibodies, *Clin Chem* 61:627–635, 2015.

Patterson W, Werness P, Payne WJ, et al: Random and continuous-access immunoassays with chemiluminescent detection by Access automated analyzer, *Clin Chem* 40:2042–2045, 1994.

Peluso P, Wilson D, Do D, et al: Optimizing antibody immobilization strategies for the construction of protein microarrays, *Anal Biochem* 312:113–124, 2003.

Poulsen E, Sandegren F: CD microlaboratories—A fully automated solution for fast and flexible IgG quantification in biopharmaceutical process development. IBC Antibody Therapeutics, November 30–December 2, 2004. Available online at: www.gyos.com/tech-presentation.html.

Rissin DM, Kan CW, Campbell TG, et al: Single-molecule enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay detects serum proteins at subfemtomolar concentrations, *Nat Biotechnol* 28:595–599, 2010.

Ritchie R: *Automated immunoanalysis, part I and part II*, New York, 1978, Marcel Decker.

Ritzmann SE, Daniels JC, editors: *Serum protein abnormalities—Diagnostic and clinical aspects*, Boston, 1975, Little, Brown and Co.

Rodriguez-Espinosa J, Mora-Brugues J, Ordonez-Llanos J, et al: Technical and clinical performances of six sensitive immunoradiometric assays of thyrotropin in serum, *Clin Chem* 33:1439–1445, 1987.

Rogers LC, Kahn SE, Oeser TH, et al: The stratus immunofluorometric assay system evaluated for quantifying human chorionic gonadotropin in serum, *Clin Chem* 32:1402, 1986.

Rokuhara A, Tanaka E, Matsumoto A, et al: Clinical evaluation of a new enzyme immunoassay for hepatitis B virus core-related antigen; a marker distinct from viral DNA for monitoring lamivudine treatment, *J Viral Hepat* 10:324–330, 2003.

Rose NR, Bigazzi PE, editors: *Methods in immunodiagnosis*, New York, 1973, John Wiley and Sons, pp 1–30.

Rowley GL, Rubenstein JE, Huisjen J, et al: Mechanism by which antibodies inhibit hapten-malate dehydrogenase conjugates, *J Biol Chem* 250:3759–3766, 1975.

Rubenstein KE, Schneider RS, Ullman EF: Homogeneous enzyme immunoassay: A new immunological technique, *Biochim Biophys Res Commun* 47:846–851, 1972.

Scatchard G: The attractions of proteins for small molecules and ions, *Ann N Y Acad Sci U S A* 51:660–672, 1949.

Schroeder HR, Dean CL, Johnson PK, et al: Coupling aminohexyl-FAD to proteins with dimethyladipimidate, *Clin Chem* 31:1432–1437, 1985.

Seo H, Hashimoto S, Tsuchiya K, et al: An ex vivo method for rapid generation of monoclonal antibodies (ADLib system), *Nat Protoc* 1:1502–1506, 2006.

Seo H, Masuoka M, Murofushi H, et al: Rapid generation of specific antibodies by enhanced homologous recombination, *Nat Biotechnol* 23:731–735, 2005.

Sgoutas DS, Barton EG, Hammarstrom M, et al: Four sensitive thyrotropin assays critically evaluated and compared, *Clin Chem* 25:1785–1789, 1989.

Silzel JW, Cercek B, Dodson C, et al: Mass-sensing, multianalyte microarray immunoassay with imaging detection, *Clin Chem* 44:2036–2043, 1998.

Skerra A, Pluckthun A: Assembly of a functional immunoglobulin Fv fragment in *Escherichia coli*, *Science* 240: 1038–1041, 1988.

Smith J, Osikowicz G: Abbott AxSYM random and continuous access immunoassay system for improved workflow in the clinical laboratory, *Clin Chem* 39:2063–2069, 1993.

Soini E, Hemmila I: Fluoroimmunoassay: Present status and key problems, *Clin Chem* 25:353–361, 1979.

Soini E, Kojola H: Time resolved fluorometer for lanthanide chelates: A new generation of nonisotopic immunoassays, *Clin Chem* 29:65–68, 1983.

Song J, Kweon TD, Song Y, et al: Analytical and clinical performance of a new point of care LABGEOIB D-dimer test for diagnosis of venous thromboembolism, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 44:254–261, 2014.

Steward MW: Overview: Introduction to methods used to study the affinity and kinetics of antibody-antigen reactions. In Weir M, editor: *Handbook of experimental immunology, vol I, Immunochemistry*, ed 4, London, UK, 1986, Blackwell Scientific Publications, p 25.

Tanaka E, Matsumoto A, Yoshizawa K, et al: Hepatitis B core-related antigen assay is useful for monitoring the antiviral effects of nucleoside analogue therapy intervirology, *Intervirology* 51:3–6, 2008.

Thorpe GH, Haggart R, Kricka LJ, et al: Enhanced luminescent enzyme immunoassays for rubella antibody, immunoglobulin E and digoxin, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 119:481–487, 1984.

Thorpe GH, Kricka LJ, Moseley SB, et al: Phenols as enhancers of the chemiluminescent horseradish peroxidase-luminol-hydrogen peroxide reaction: Application in luminescence-monitored enzyme immunoassays, *Clin Chem* 31:1335–1341, 1985.

Towbin H, Motz J, Oroszlan P, et al: Sandwich immunoassay for the hapten angiotensin II. A novel assay principle based on antibodies against immune complexes, *J Immunol Methods* 181:167–176, 1995.

Todd J, Freese B, Lu A, et al: Ultrasensitive flow-based immunoassays using single-molecule counting, *Clin Chem* 53:1990–1995, 2007.

Truchaud A, Neel TL, Brochard H, et al: New tools for laboratory design and management, *Clin Chem* 43: 1709–1715, 1997.

Ullman EF, Schwartzberg M, Rubenstein KD: Fluorescent excitation transfer assay: A general method for determination of antigen, *J Biol Chem* 251:4172–4178, 1976.

Ullman EF, Yoshida RA, Blakemore J, et al: Mechanism of inhibition of malate dehydrogenase by thyroxine derivatives and reactivation by antibodies: Homogeneous enzyme immunoassay for thyroxine, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 567:66–74, 1979.

Van Weeman BD, Schuurs AH: Immunoassay using antigen enzyme conjugates, *FEBS Lett* 15:232, 1971.

Voss EW Jr: Perturbation of antibody bound bifluorescent-ligand probe by polyclonal anti-metatype antibodies interacting with epitopes proximal to the liganded antibody active site, *Mol Immunol* 33:79–88, 1996.

Weeks I, Beheshti I, McCapra F, et al: Acridinium esters as high specific activity labels in an immunoassay, *Clin Chem* 29:1474–1479, 1983.

Williams CA, Chase MW: *Methods in immunology and immunochemistry* (vol III), New York, 1970, Academic Press.

Winter G, Griffiths AD, Hawkins RE, et al: Making antibodies by phage display technology, *Annu Rev Immunol* 12:433–455, 1994.

Wu AH, Wong SS, Waldron C, et al: Automated quantification of choriogonadotropin: Analytical correlation between serum and urine with creatinine correction, *Clin Chem* 33:1424–1426, 1987.

Yalow RS, Berson SA: Assay of plasma insulin in human subjects by immunological methods, *Nature* 184:1648–1649, 1959.

Yamauchi S, Fujiwara Y, Hasegawa A, et al: Simple devices for sensitive and rapid detection of HBs-Ag and HBs-Ab by immunochromatography using enzyme, *Clin Chem* 43:S242, 1997.

Yarmush DM, Morel G, Yarmush ML: A new technique for mapping epitope specificities of monoclonal antibodies using quasi-elastic light scattering spectroscopy, *J Biochem Biophys Methods* 14:279–289, 1987.

Zola H: *Monoclonal antibodies: A manual of techniques*, Boca Raton, Fla, 1987, CRC Press.

CHAPTER 45

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF THE CELLULAR IMMUNE SYSTEM

Roger S. Riley

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF CELLULAR IMMUNOLOGY, 891
Lymphocyte Activation and Proliferation, 891
T Cell Recognition Activation and Signal Transduction, 892
Signal Transduction Following Antigen-Specific Stimulation, 892
T Cell Responses, 892
B Cell Responses in Cellular Immunity, 894

FLOW AND IMAGE CYTOMETRY IN EVALUATION OF CELLULAR IMMUNITY, 894
The Flow Cytometer and Other Tools, 895

GATING AND DATA ANALYSIS, 897
Immunophenotypic Analysis, 897
DNA Analysis, 898
Quantitative Flow Cytometry, 900

CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF CELLULAR IMMUNE TESTING, 900

CLINICAL INTERPRETATION OF CELLULAR IMMUNE TESTING, 901
Age and the Immune Response, 901
Malnutrition and the Immune Response, 901
Cancer and the Immune Response, 901

METHODOLOGIC APPROACH TO CELLULAR IMMUNE TESTING, 901
Stages of Study: The Screening Stage, 902
Stages of Study: The Confirming Stage, 903
Stages of Study: Analytic Immune Studies, 903

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF LYMPHOCYTE FUNCTION, 904
Lymphocyte Transformation Assays, 904
Cytotoxicity Assays, 905

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF GRANULOCYTE AND MONOCYTE FUNCTION, 907
Assays of Neutrophilic Activation, 907
Assays of Phagocytosis and Endocytosis, 908
Assays of Enzymatic Activity and Intracellular Killing, 909
Assays of Opsonization, 910
Assays of Membrane Permeability, 910

QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE IN THE CELLULAR LABORATORY, 910

SELECTED REFERENCES, 911

KEY POINTS

- Humoral immune tests assess production of specific antibody responses to past or recent infections, and cellular immune assays measure current immune responses.
- The immune system changes with age and nutritional status. Differences in immune responses of test subjects associated with immaturity, immunosenescence, or malnutrition should be taken into account when evaluating the results of specific tests.
- Primary immunodeficiency may be associated with an increased incidence of malignancy; malignancy, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy can significantly suppress the immune response and alter cellular immune assay results.
- Evaluation of the cellular immune response is undertaken in a graduated sequence of stages that may include both in vitro and in vivo testing to identify areas of immune deficiency.
- Measurement of lymphocyte activation may be accomplished in vitro by flow cytometry using activation-specific fluorescent-labeled monoclonal antibodies and vital dyes. The usefulness of this approach has increased significantly with the development of fluorochromes with different excitation spectra.

The understanding of the immune system is greatly enhanced by the detection of specific abnormalities in patients with suspected immune deficiency. These advances have come from studies of immune cell differentiation and function, experimental gene deletion, and detailed analysis of human immunodeficiency syndromes. New experimental approaches have helped to elucidate the mechanisms and functional basis of immune dysregulation in patients with primary (congenital) genetic mutations of the immune system or secondary (acquired) infections. Because some immune deficiencies cannot be accurately diagnosed by the combination of clinical symptoms and appropriate immune function assays, genetic information is becoming an increasingly important component of diagnostic testing and interpretation. The mission of the clinical immunology laboratory is to translate new research leads into highly standardized and clinically relevant tests for the individual patient.

Studies of the human cellular immune system have principally focused on three areas: primary immune deficiency, which reveals the impact of congenital immune defects on host defense; acquired immune deficiency, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, in which infection damages the immune system directly; and autoimmune diseases, in which the effect of excessive or inappropriate immune activity is evident. In addition, cellular immune defects in patients with diseases with immune dysfunctional features, such as chronic infection, cancer, malnutrition, or traumatic injury, provide crucial insight into immune-mediated host defense.

The general concept of **immunity** is often equated with humoral immunity, because antibodies to infectious agents introduced by natural infection or by immunization have been studied for more than a century. Cellular immunology, as currently practiced in the clinical and research laboratory, is a relatively new science (Silverstein, 1979; Moulin, 1989; Good, 2002). The modern science of cellular immunology developed during the 1980s through a series of independent events and major research discoveries, including the use of monoclonal antibodies to identify immune cells, the development of analytic and sorting capabilities of the flow cytometer, the discovery of cytokine regulation of immune response, the birth of molecular immunology, and, above all, the tremendous need to understand and control the emerging HIV epidemic (Herzenberg, 2004). The appearance of HIV occurred virtually in parallel with the potential to identify $CD4^+$ T cells. The first analyses of cellular immune functional deficiency in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) were based on analysis of lymphocyte proliferative response (Masur et al, 1981; Siegal et al, 1981) and have since evolved into a range of functional approaches (Perfetto et al, 2004; Mittag & Tarnok, 2011; Virgo & Gibbs, 2012; Cossarizza et al, 2013).

In contrast to humoral immunity, cellular immune function is both fundamentally complex and difficult to measure. Basic humoral immune

tests measure the specific antibody product of a past response to a specific virus or microbe; by contrast, most cellular immune assays measure current responses. Because a majority of peripheral blood lymphocytes are resting cells, the cellular immune reaction must be recreated or generated freshly within the test system. The system must be capable of triggering the response, supporting the reaction by providing all needed elements available in vivo, and having a measurable endpoint.

This chapter presents current cellular immunologic tests in light of future trends. Cellular immune assessment is moving away from single assays and single-number fixed endpoints toward an integrated analysis of cell function at several levels that reflect cellular interactions as a dynamic process.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF CELLULAR IMMUNOLOGY

Two main immune cell types are known: T lymphocytes (T cells) and B lymphocytes (B cells) (Janeway et al, 2004; LeBien & Tedder, 2008; Chaplin, 2010; Masopust & Schenkel, 2013; Bodduluru et al, 2015). T lymphocytes are defined by expression of the T lymphocyte receptor, which binds to antigen and CD3, a surface determinant associated with the T cell receptor (TCR) that is essential for activation. T lymphocytes have different, clonally variable receptors for a large range of antigens, require thymic maturation for normal function, and mediate cellular immunity. B lymphocytes are identified by surface immunoglobulin (detected by monoclonal antibodies such as CD19 or CD20) and upon appropriate activation develop into plasma cells secreting specific antibody and thus mediating humoral immunity. Loss of the normal thymus will compromise T lymphocyte function and affect T-dependent B lymphocyte activation. Failure at the bone marrow level can affect both T lymphocyte and B lymphocyte immune responses, although specific linkages may be involved.

The distinction between a specific and a nonspecific immune response is a fundamental necessity because the system must be able to distinguish between self and nonself (LeGuern, 2003; Smith, 2004). In general, self-recognition is accomplished by incorporating the molecular major histocompatibility complex (MHC) self-antigen system into the antigen recognition phase. Antigen must be processed and presented in the context of self-MHC to be recognized and to lead to response and development of immune memory. The antigen-processing function is carried out by antigen-presenting cells (APCs); the best studied is the monocyte. This response triggers lymphocyte activation and proliferation, and may include production of effector cells and triggering of B lymphocytes to produce antibody. This type of immunity, often termed *adaptive immunity*, is retained as "memory" and typically is elicited following immunization or natural infection (LeGuern, 2003; Smith, 2004). Lack of expression of MHC class II antigen can be detected on lymphocytes by flow cytometry using monoclonal antibodies against human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DR or HLA-DQ and is a hallmark of MHC class II deficiency.

A second fundamental type of immunity can be described as innate immunity. This type of immunity is an ancient host response to infectious agents or self cells with absent or altered self-recognition molecules; it is encoded within the genome, does not have memory, and is not improved by repeated contact (Janeway & Medzhitov, 2002; Turvey & Broide, 2010). The innate immune system consists of external barriers (i.e., skin, mucosal surfaces) to prevent microorganisms from entering the body and a programmed, coordinated series of events to destroy microorganisms that penetrate the external barriers. These events include both chemically mediated (cytokines, complement, interferon) and cellular (phagocytes, natural killer [NK] cells) components. The modern era of discovery about innate immunity began in 1989, when the late Charles Janeway, an immunologist at Yale University, predicted that sentinel cells (i.e., macrophages, dendritic cells) have nonclonal, germline "pattern recognition" receptors that directly recognize some invariant molecular signatures of microbes (pathogen-associated molecular patterns) not found in the host. In 1997, studies of *Drosophila melanogaster* (fruit fly) identified the toll-like receptor (TLR) as the major effector of the innate immune response in the fly, which has no adaptive immune system. Since that time, multiple TLRs have been found in humans, largely on macrophage and neutrophil membrane, as well as on epithelial cells lining the respiratory and gastrointestinal systems. TLRs can be thought of as a primitive, highly conserved alarm system that recognizes bacterial pathogens and stimulates the expression of molecules that initiate the local inflammatory response and phagocytosis (Beutler, 2009; Kumar et al, 2009). TLRs are highly conserved molecules characterized by an extracellular domain of leucine-rich repeats and an intracellular signaling domain with homology to that of the interleukin (IL)-1 and IL-18 receptor family. TLR signaling initiates the transcriptional expression of genes that constitute a core inflammatory response, including proinflammatory cytokines, such as IL-1α, IL-β, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, and IL-6, as well as numerous chemokines and cell surface receptors that regulate T and B cell immune responses (Iwasaki & Medzhitov, 2010; Kawai & Akira, 2010).

Other pattern recognition receptors are believed to play a less important role in the binding of bacteria and fungi by phagocytes in preparation for phagocytosis. These include a large family of lectin receptors (including the mannose receptor), some integrins, CD14, and scavenger receptors. Lectin receptors are carbohydrate receptors that specifically bind sugar residues found in the cell walls of certain bacteria. Scavenger receptors bind many anionic bacterial ligands.

Unlike phagocytic cells, NK cells are not functionally developed at birth, probably because the key cytokine, interferon (IFN)-γ, which is needed for development and maturation of this system, is also downregulated at birth. The NK cell, once called the "K" cell, "null" cell, or "third population," has neither surface immunoglobulin nor a rearranged TCR (Sinkovics & Horvath, 2005; Cooper et al, 2009; Bonavida, 2014). The NK system is constitutively active and does not have to be primed by antigen to kill (Yokoyama et al, 2004; Hamerman et al, 2005). NK cells make up a diverse population that has eluded conventional classification by cell lineage analysis. However, CD56 is currently considered the most definitive immunophenotypic marker for the NK cell (Trinchieri, 1995). NK cells have been best known as cells that can kill nonspecifically (naturally) virus-infected cells and bacteria, and can prevent tumor cell metastasis. However, NK cells also regulate T and B cell functions, as well as hematopoiesis. These functions of NK cells are probably dependent on their ability to produce lymphokines, particularly IFN-γ. NK cells are important for antigen-independent activation of phagocytic cells early in infection and for favoring the development of antigen-specific T-helper type 1 (Th1) cells. When armed with specific antibody, however, these cells can kill specifically.

LYMPHOCYTE ACTIVATION AND PROLIFERATION

Although the immune system is classically divided into humoral and cellular components, this separation is in no way absolute, in that considerable interdependence is seen between B and T cells. The most commonly measured functional cellular immune parameter is lymphocyte proliferation (Perfetto et al, 2002). Measurement of lymphocyte activation/proliferation has evolved substantially since the late 1950s and early 1960s, when cell division was determined by counting the number of lymphocytes that had transformed into blasts. The latter method was later replaced by the quantitation of incorporated radiolabeled nucleic acid precursors (tritiated thymidine) into newly synthesized deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). Although this "bulk assay" remains the most commonly used laboratory procedure for measuring cellular proliferation, new reagents and new procedures have recently become available to assess lymphocyte activation and proliferation. These include commercially available cell surface proliferation markers, the ability to measure the percentages of cells in specific phases of the cell cycle, the quantitation of cell-associated and secreted cytokines/cytokine receptors, and the ability to assess the number of cell divisions in lymphocytes labeled with "tracking dyes." In this section, we review the molecular events involved in T lymphocyte activation and proliferation, and review some of the new methods that have been developed to assess the functions of the cellular immune system.

Unraveling the Biochemical Pathways of Lymphocyte Activation

Specific interaction of mitogen or antigen/MHC with the appropriate lymphocyte receptors leads to a cascade of cellular processes that include changes in membrane transport, rearrangement of the cytoskeletal system (polarizing the lymphocyte toward APC), and activation of several signaling pathways (Harding & Neefjes, 2005). These changes ultimately lead to a number of outcomes, including T cell differentiation, cytokine secretion, proliferation, anergy, or apoptosis. Ongoing investigations are unraveling the complex molecular and biochemical pathways that drive the activated T cell down these pathways. Specific abnormalities in these pathways are constantly being discovered and underlie many of the primary immunodeficiency diseases. Unfortunately, abnormalities in a bulk proliferation assay indicate only that there is limited or no cell division and provide no information regarding the underlying abnormality in lymphocyte activation. Therefore, more sophisticated assays are required to investigate underlying T cell abnormalities.

Antigen-Induced Activation of T Lymphocytes

Antigen/MHC-induced activation of T lymphocytes involves a series of complex and defined events that differ slightly between the activation of a naive T cell versus the activation of a memory T cell. Antigen is processed by B cells or monocytes, leading to the assembly of immunogenic peptides into class I or class II products of MHC genes (van der Merwe & Davis, 2003). The peptide–MHC complex is presented to T cells bearing the appropriate TCR (Chakraborty & Weiss, 2014). In addition, the APC expresses a series of adhesion and costimulatory molecules that interact with appropriate ligand/counterreceptors on the T cell surface. Ligation of the TCR alone is not sufficient for activation of the T cell, which has led to the development of the "two-signal model" for T cell activation (Bretscher, 2004). The first signal delivered via the T cell antigen receptor/CD4/CD8 modulates transition of the T cell from the early stages of activation (i.e., G_0 to G_1). Signal two is delivered via the costimulatory pathways, most notably CD28, and to lesser extents, LFA-3, CD2, CD5, and CD7, and leads to the induction of IL-2 and other cytokine genes required for T cell proliferation and differentiation to effector cells.

T CELL RECOGNITION, ACTIVATION, AND SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION

Lymphocytes are unique in that they express surface receptors able to identify virtually any molecule or foreign substance (antigen). Structural diversity within these receptors is created by the differential rearrangement of TCR genes. In general, only a limited number of circulating lymphocytes are able to recognize any single antigen. When a lymphocyte recognizes a foreign antigen in vivo, cells proliferate rapidly in a clonal manner to generate a large number of both effector and memory cells.

The TCR complex is composed of both a heterodimeric antigen recognition structure (i.e., the TCR) and a noncovalently bound transducing complex referred to as CD3 (Malissen, 2003; Chakraborty & Weiss, 2014). The TCR cannot be expressed on the cell surface without CD3 and has no inherent signaling capabilities of its own. The antigen recognition structure is composed of structurally divergent α and β chains (or, less frequently, γ and δ chains), and the CD3-transducing complex is composed of five invariant polypeptide chains: α, β, ε, η, and a ζ chain dimer. Each of the CD3 proteins contains a motif called the immune tyrosine activation motif (ITAM), which binds the SH2 domains of protein tyrosine kinases. The ζ chain (which exists as a ζ homodimer, a ζ with an η, or a ζ with an Fc ε RI γ chain) contains three ITAMs and is the most significant component of the TCR complex involved in signal transduction from the TCR (Weiss & Littman, 1994; Alarcon et al, 2003). Originally described by Reth, these motifs play an essential role in early events following T cell activation (Reth, 1989; Irving, 1991; Chakraborty & Weiss, 2014). CD4 and CD8 molecules on the surfaces of T cells are also noncovalently attached to the TCR complex. They bind to HLA class II and class I molecules, respectively, on the APC and are also involved in transduction of activation signals (Fig. 45-1). Processed antigen is presented to T cells in the context of the MHC antigens. In general, $CD4^+$ T cells respond to exogenously processed antigens presented in the context of MHC class II, and $CD8^+$ T cells respond to endogenously processed antigens presented in the context of MHC class I. CD4 and CD8 are also associated with tyrosine kinases involved in the early events following T cell activation. In addition to these interactions and the costimulatory molecular interactions, another group of molecules (adhesion molecules) present on both the APC and the responding T cell bind to each other and serve to increase the avidity of the binding.

Costimulatory molecules identified on APCs include B7 (CD80) (Linsley et al, 1991), B7.2 (Azuma et al, 1993), and heat-stable antigen (HSA) (Liu et al, 1992), among others (Wingren et al, 1995; Foletta et al, 1998). On T cells, CD28 is the primary costimulatory molecule and binds B7; CTLA-4, on the other hand, binds both B7 and B7.2 and is involved in downmodulating T cell activation (Linsley et al, 1991). The receptor on T cells for HSA has not been identified. Antigen presentation in the presence of reagents that block the costimulatory molecules leads to anergic response (tolerance) on subsequent exposure to that specific antigen but does not affect the responses to other antigens (Tan et al, 1993). The ability to make nonimmunogenic transplantable tumors immunogenic by transfecting them with the B7 gene (Chen et al, 1992; Baskar et al, 1993; Townsend & Allison, 1993; Janeway & Bottomly, 1994) suggests that costimulatory molecules play an important role in T cell activation in vivo.

SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION FOLLOWING ANTIGEN-SPECIFIC STIMULATION

The presentation of antigen to T cells leads to aggregation of the TCR–CD3 complexes and activation of protein tyrosine kinases (PTKs). The TCR itself has a small cytoplasmic tail with no known transducing activity. It is the associated ζ chains of the CD3 complex that contain the ITAM motifs and that have been shown to coprecipitate PTK activity. Two well-known classes of cytoplasmic PTK families are involved in the very early events following TCR aggregation: Src and Syk/ZAP-70. Signaling cascades downstream from the TCR–CD3 complex and the CD28 costimulatory pathway are fairly well understood (Foletta et al, 1998; Samelson, 2002). Activation of TCR-associated tyrosine kinases ZAP70, $p59^{fyn}$, and $p56^{lck}$ leads to activation of three pathways: $p21^{ras}$, calcium/calcineurin, and protein kinase C (PKC). Activation of $p21^{ras}$ activates mitogen-activated protein kinases, which, in turn, phosphorylate several transcription factors, thereby regulating gene expression. Activation of the PTKs also activates phospholipase C, which hydrolyzes phosphatidyl inositol and leads to generation of the second messengers diacyl glycerol (DAG) and inositol triphosphate (IP_3). DAG activates PKC, and IP_3 leads to rapid and sustained increases in cytoplasmic calcium. The increase in free calcium activates the calmodulin-dependent phosphatase calcineurin. These events also lead to the induction of DNA-binding proteins and the transcription of numerous genes, including IL-2 and the IL-2 receptor required for T cell proliferation.

Understanding the pathways leading to T cell activation has led to the discovery of molecular defects in several acquired immunodeficiency diseases and may ultimately help provide therapeutic strategies to correct these deficiencies (Rosen, 2000; Milner & Holland, 2013; Ochs & Hagin, 2014). For example, mutations in the protein tyrosine kinase ZAP-70 have been reported and are associated with the autosomal form of severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) syndrome in humans (Elder, 1998). Mutations in the common γ chain of the interleukin receptors IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-9, and IL-15 lead to transduction abnormalities and are associated with the X-linked form of SCID (Noguchi et al, 1993). It is interesting to note that another form of autosomally inherited SCID is associated with mutations in the downstream Janus family protein tyrosine Jak3, the only signaling molecule associated with the common γ chain (Pesu et al, 2005). As more and more of the underlying abnormalities leading to T cell immunodeficiency are discovered, including at least 10 different molecular defects for SCID alone (Fischer et al, 2005; Sponzilli & Notarangelo, 2011), it has been proposed that these disorders be classified using a comprehensive system that would identify the disorders according to abnormalities in differentiation, maturation, and function (Gelfand, 1993). These designations would begin to focus on the actual physiologic or biochemical defect and may ultimately provide new options for therapy, including gene therapy (Buckley, 2004; Conley, 2005; Booth et al, 2011; Ochs & Hagin, 2014).

T-CELL RESPONSES

Recently, the designation of T-cell type I versus type II cytokine responses has been preferred for those T-cell responses that lead to cytokine secretion patterns known to be involved in cellular immunity versus cytokine secretion patterns observed in humoral immunity, respectively. Type I responses are characterized by the secretion of cytokines known to enhance inflammation (proinflammatory) and induce activation and proliferation of T cells and monocytes—namely, IL-2, IFN-γ, and IL-12. Type II responses are characterized by the secretion of cytokines that suppress inflammation (anti-inflammatory) and stimulate B cells to divide and differentiate into immunoglobulin-secreting cells (i.e., IL-4, IL-5, IL-10, and IL-13). Evidence suggests that secretion of type I cytokines regulates the secretion of type II cytokines and vice versa (Paul, 1993). For example, in the presence of IL-4 both in vivo (Chatelain et al, 1992) and in vitro (Seder et al, 1992; 1993), T-cells will not develop into IFN-γ–secreting cells (i.e., this environment favors the development of a humoral immune response). It has been suggested that the relative amounts of IL-4 and IL-12 that are present during stimulation of naive T cells will shift the response one way or the other (Paul & Seder, 1994).

Several factors are involved in regulating the type of T cell response that ensues following antigenic stimulation. In addition to the cytokine environment, evidence suggests that the dose of antigen influences the type of response (Bretscher, 1992; Madrenas et al, 1995). The predominant response that develops following T cell activation has significant clinical implications. It has been postulated that the development of a type I response to HIV infection may lead to protective immunity (Clerici &

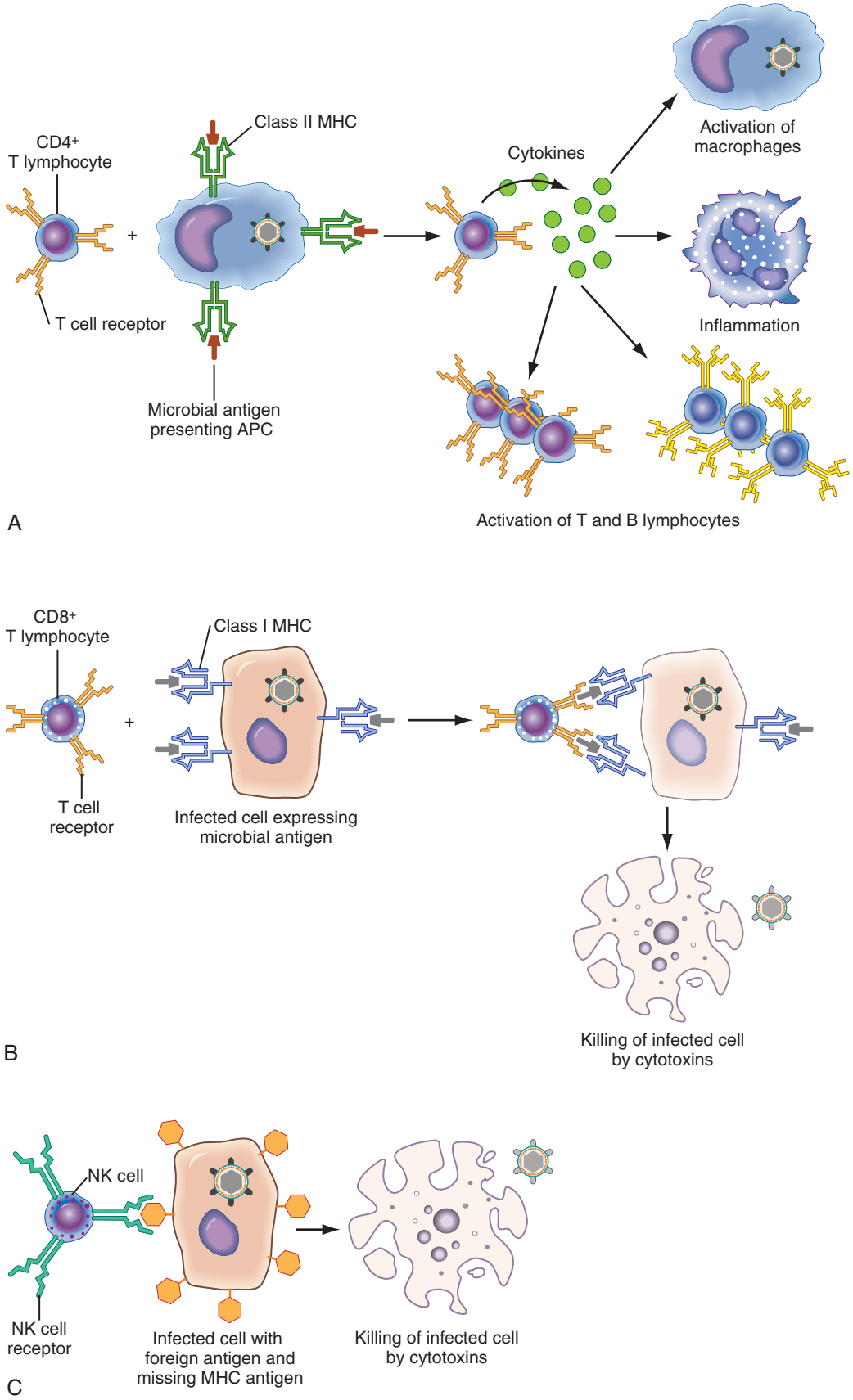


Figure 45-1 **A schematic illustration of immune cell function. A,** Function of helper T lymphocytes. Helper T cells are activated by contact with an antigen-processing cell (APC) that has ingested and processed a foreign or altered self substance and displays processed antigen fragments bound to a class II self–major histocompatibility complex (MHC) receptor. Simultaneous binding of the T cell receptor (TCR) complex in conjunction with a CD4 coreceptor activates the T cell primarily through a complex signaling mechanism involving the SRC kinase family. Activated T cell coordinates the immune response by secreting cytokines that have a multitude of effects, including recruitment and activation of macrophages, activation of the inflammatory system, and activation of cytotoxic T lymphocytes and other helper T lymphocytes. **B,** Function of cytotoxic T lymphocytes. Cytotoxic, CD8-positive cells are activated primarily by contact with infected, damaged, dysplastic, or neoplastic self cells expressing processed microbial or abnormal self-antigens bound to the class I MHC. Activation of the cell occurs via the TCR in conjunction with the CD8 coreceptor that is specific for the class I MHC. The target cell is killed by the release of cytotoxic chemicals, including perforin, granzymes, and granulysin. **C,** Function of natural killer (NK) cells. NK cells are activated by cytokines or interferons and directly recognize "missing-self" virally infected or tumor cells that have only low levels of MHC I self-antigen. Unlike cytotoxic T cells, prior sensitization is not required. Killing of the target cell occurs via the release of cytotoxic chemicals, similar to cytotoxic T lymphocytes. (Diagrams courtesy Dr. Peter Ping, Motifolio, Inc., Ellicott City, Md.)

Shearer, 1994). Clearly, a type II response is not protective, because most infected persons seroconvert and eventually succumb to profound immunosuppression. Clerici and Shearer (1993; 1994) argue that repeated exposure to low-dose HIV-1 may lead to protective type I cellular immunity. Results reported by this group indicate that between 39% and 75% of peripheral blood mononuclear cells of HIV-1–seronegative and polymerase chain reaction–negative high-risk individuals (i.e., homosexual men, intravenous drug users, and infants born to HIV-1–positive mothers) secreted IL-2 in response to the env protein in vitro. These scientists propose that seronegative high-risk individuals develop protective cell-mediated immunity as a result of low-dose immunization or infection.

B CELL RESPONSES IN CELLULAR IMMUNITY

Antibody-producing B cells govern the humoral immune response to contain and eliminate primarily extracellular pathogens and, to a lesser extent, intracellular threats. Initiation of B-cell activation involves initial antigen binding and requires costimulatory signals. These signals, in some cases—as in nonpeptide antigens, for example—may be delivered by the antigen itself, by TLRs, by surface immunoglobulin cross-linking, or by other mechanisms (Mond et al, 1995). Alternatively, the Th2 subset of $CD4^+$ helper T cells provides important costimulatory triggers to activate B cells in response to peptide antigens (Fig. 45-2).

Surface immunoglobulin on naive B-cells binds antigen and transmits intracellular signals. It also delivers antigen into the cell, where it is processed into peptide fragments and then distributed and bound to MHC class II surface receptors. Epitopes of these fragments are recognized by specific Th2 class helper T cells primed by related antigen exposure, and costimulatory signals are transmitted between CD40-ligand (CD154) on T cells and CD40 receptor molecules on B cells (Jones & Janeway, 1981). These interactions generate T cell cytoskeletal changes and subsequent release of cytokines, including IL-4, which binds to B cells to favor cell cycle progression and thus clonal expansion, and also promotes isotype switching to immunoglobulin (Ig)G1 and IgE. These engaged T cells also release transforming growth factor (TGF)-β, which has been shown to induce isotype switching to IgG2B and IgA, along with IL-5 and IL-6, which promote B cell differentiation into plasma cells (Isakson et al, 1982). These cellular interactions occur in the T cell/B cell zone borders of primary lymphoid organs. Differentiation into effectors/plasma cells with antibody secretion appears to be sentinel for the primary/early focus of humoral immune response. Some activated B cells migrate into germinal centers and undergo further enhancement, including affinity maturation, IgH variable gene alteration, and isotype switching, to provide what is thought of as a more durable, prolonged response. A subset of memory cells is also produced that provide low-level surveillance with an associated rapid amnestic response upon antigen reexposure.

FLOW AND IMAGE CYTOMETRY IN EVALUATION OF CELLULAR IMMUNITY

Since its development 3 decades ago, laser-based single-cell analysis (flow and image cytometry) has become an essential tool for the medical research laboratory and the standard of laboratory clinical practice in the study of the cellular immune response (Herzenberg, 2004; Dean & Hoffman, 2007; Pierzchalski et al, 2011; Virgo & Gibbs, 2012). Measures of immune competence and immune modulation of specific surface markers and receptors, characterization of lineage by the immunophenotyping of lymphomas and leukemias, the definition of malignancy using specific chromosome probes, and the study of tumor heterogeneity by multiparameter DNA measures are analyses that are commonly performed in many laboratories, as detailed by many authors (Mittag & Tarnok, 2011; Vajpayee & Mohan, 2011; Jaye et al, 2012; Virgo & Gibbs, 2012). Classification of cell types by these means enables the definition of biologic and effector functions on a molecular basis and allows these measures to be related to disease process and definition. These are but a few of the applications that are possible when laser-based technologies are applied.

Two major technologies are used. The first is flow-through, in which the particles that are being counted and their physical and chemical characteristics are measured by particles passing in a fluid stream in a single-cell suspension (Keren, 1989; Givan, 2004; Stewart & Stewart, 2004). In the second, known as static analysis, the particles are stationary and the stage or the laser moves as in image analysis (Cossarizza & Radbruch, 2013). Image analysis technology is slowly making its mark in the laboratory in the evaluation of touch preparations or cytospins, chromosome preparations, and tissue sections for certain applications, such as DNA and fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). Advances in recent years in the availability of fluorescent probes for use in FISH and chromosome painting will make these analyses more relevant and useful tools in the clinical laboratory (Weinberg, 1993; Stewart et al, 2002). As with many techniques, including cell cycle analysis in DNA, each of the new markers and new techniques must be defined and evaluated and correlated with patient outcomes before absolute clinical utility is imparted, or not. There is great interest in instrumentation that combines the strengths of flow cytometry and the static advantages of image analysis. These instruments, known as

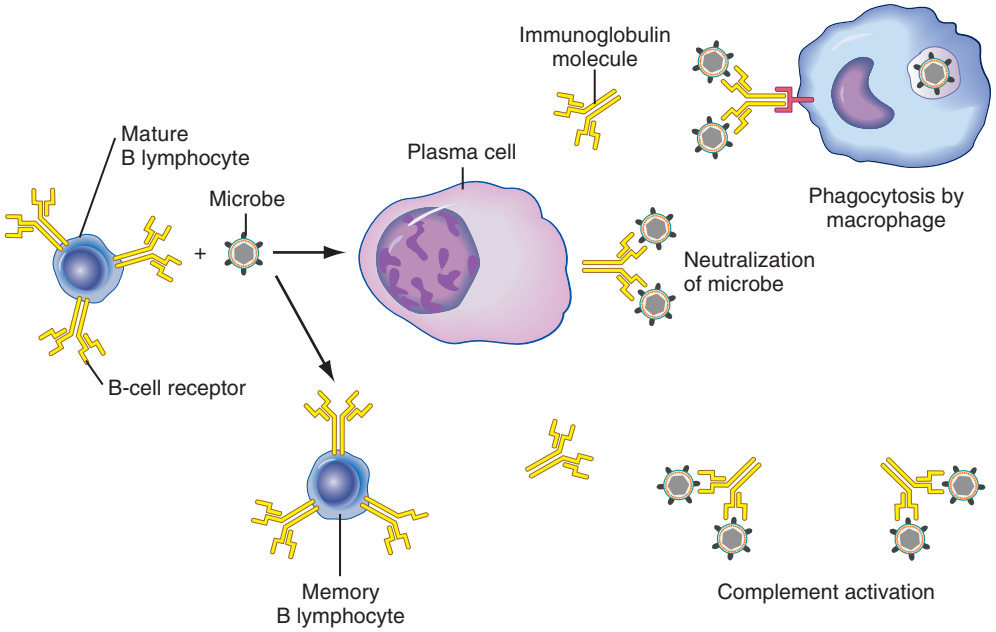


Figure 45-2 **Function of B lymphocytes.** Each B lymphocyte has a unique variable domain in its surface immunoglobulin molecules (B cell receptor) that permits it to recognize a specific antigen. An encounter with this specific antigen, in conjunction with a cytokine signal from a T helper cell, results in activation of the B cell. An activated B cell can differentiate into an antibody-producing plasma cell or a memory T cell. In the lymph node, the activated B cell may also undergo a germinal center reaction, resulting in hypermutation of the variable region of the immunoglobulin gene. (Diagram courtesy Dr. Peter Ping, Motifolio, Ellicott City, Md.)

scanning laser cytometers, use the traditional flow cytometry measures of forward scatter, side scatter, and fluorescence on cells in suspension or fixed onto a glass slide. Experience with these systems will reveal whether this approach offers measurement advantages not available with the current flow cytometric and image system configurations (Mach et al, 2010; McGrath et al, 2011; Pozarowski et al, 2013). Scanning image cytometers and image analysis are not discussed further in this chapter.

Combined advances in electronic pulse processing, optics, and data storage, along with advances in computer technology and software, have allowed flow cytometry technology to become a routine tool in the clinical and research laboratory. Furthermore, the wide availability of workshop-clustered monoclonal antibodies now numbering 371 (Engel, 2015), labeled in multicolor, directly conjugated, and in premixed formats, has allowed the simultaneous detection of multiple surface antigens, as well as cytoplasmic and nuclear constituents. The ability to perform multiparameter analysis is the greatest strength of flow cytometry (Mittag & Tarnok, 2011; Pierzchalski et al, 2011). Measurement of both phenotypic and intracellular markers is now done routinely in many laboratories. The major manufacturers have turned the art of flow cytometry into a routine laboratory measurement—a "black box" science—much to the dismay of many (Chapman, 2000). As described, this black box approach phenomenon is largely the result of the use of flow cytometry in the phenotyping of T cell subsets in monitoring patients with HIV (Mandy, 2004; Cossarizza et al, 2013). Before the onset of the HIV epidemic, flow cytometry was used in the clinical laboratory primarily for the characterization of leukemias and other hematologic malignancies and for DNA analysis of tumors for synthesis phase (S phase) and DNA index (DI). Although flow cytometry technology may be trending more toward a black box application, the HIV epidemic has brought the power of the flow cytometer to a much larger number of institutions and laboratories. This has allowed the technology to become an integral part of many diagnoses and to be used as an important adjunct in the treatment of patients (Woo et al, 2014). Despite its simplification, many issues with regard to U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulation, proficiency testing, data management, and reproducibility of data remain. Although all current flow cytometers can adequately perform routine immunophenotyping and other assays, most laboratory problems are related to the nonavailability of standard quality control reagents and calibrators, and the lack of reliable, rapid methods for data transfer and storage that are compatible with laboratory information systems. More important for clinicians is an understanding of the technology, along with its strengths and pitfalls, and how it can be used for quality control and quality assurance, specimen preparation, and data interpretation. Some of these issues are discussed below, although it is not the purview of this chapter to describe all the nuances of flow cytometic analysis.

THE FLOW CYTOMETER AND OTHER TOOLS

The Light Source and Signal Processing

Today's clinical flow cytometer is rarely used for cell separation (i.e., cell sorting); this property continues to be associated with research instruments in the highly specialized laboratory. Most multifaceted clinical flow cytometers use one to three lasers with four or more photomultiplier tubes to perform 5- to 10-color immunophenotypic analysis (Fig. 45-3) (Shapiro, 2004; Zucker & Fisher, 2013). Research laboratories interested in performing more than 5 colors of analyses with Hoescht's ultraviolet-stimulated probes use larger water-cooled 5W lasers in combination with air-cooled lasers, although new instrument systems with new lasers are eliminating the need for water-cooled lasers. At present, commercial manufacturers of flow cytometers and cell sorters include ACEA Biosciences, Inc. (San Diego, Calif.), Apogee Flow Systems (Hertfordshire, U.K.), Applied Biosystems (Grand Island, N.Y.), Becton Dickinson (San Jose, Calif.), Beckman Coulter (Fullerton, Calif.), Bio-Rad Laboratories (Hercules, Calif.), CompuCyte Corp. (Westwood, Mass.), EMD Millipore (Billerica, Mass.), Fluid Imaging Technologies, Inc. (Yarmouth, Maine), Luminex Corporation (Austin, Tex.), Miltenyi Biotec (Bergisch Gladbach, Germany), ORFLO Technologies, LLC (Ketchum, Idaho), Sony Biotechnology, Inc. (Champlain, Ill.), Stratedigm Corporation (San Jose, Calif.), Sysmex Partec GmbH (Munster, Germany), and Union Biometrica, Inc. (Holliston, Mass.). Analytic software is provided by the instrument manufacturers, as well as by several independent software companies, including Applied Cytometry (Sheffield, U.K.), CyFlo Ltd. (Turku, Finland), Cytognos S.L. (Santa Marta de Tormes, Spain), De Novo Software (Los Angeles, Calif.), eBioscience, Inc. (San Diego, Calif.), Tree Star, Inc. (Ashland, Ore.), Verity Software House (Topsham, Maine), and Walter and Eliza Hall Institute of Medical Research (Melbourne, Australia).

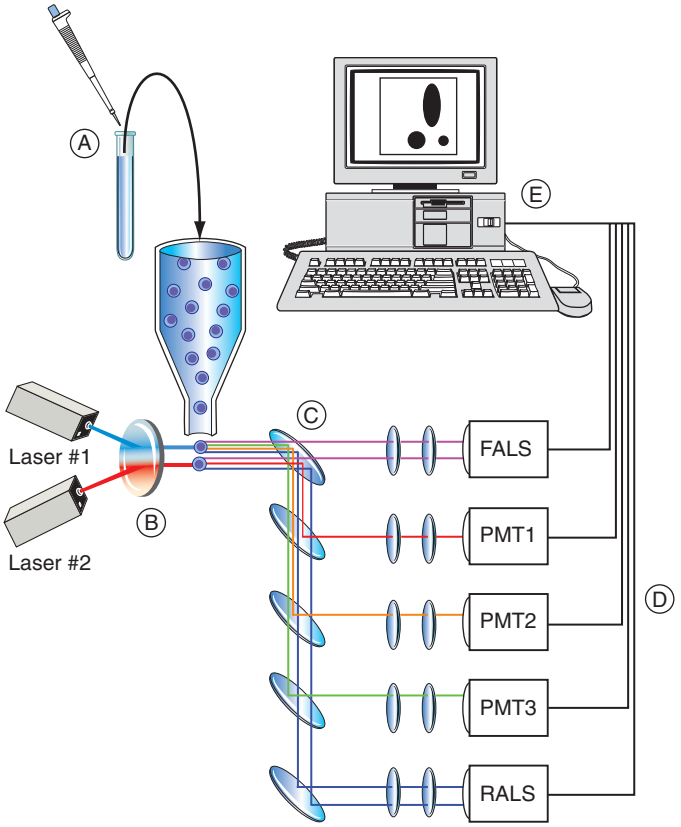


Figure 45-3 **Structural components and function of the flow cytometer.** **A,** Fluorochrome-labeled monoclonal antibody solutions are added to a cell suspension from peripheral blood, bone marrow aspirate, or a lymph node. The tubes are incubated at room temperature for a short time. **B,** Labeled cell suspensions are passed through the flow cell of a flow cytometer. Many flow cytometers are automated, but some models require the operator to process the tubes individually. More than 10,000 cells from each tube are typically analyzed to produce statistically valid information. **C,** Each cell passes individually through the highly focused laser beam of the flow cytometer, a process termed *single cell analysis*. The fluorochrome of each labeled monoclonal antibody attached to the cell is excited by the laser light and emits light of a certain wavelength. The cells also scatter light at multiple angles. Photodetectors placed at forward and right angles to the axis of the laser beam collect the emitted or scattered light. Forward and right angle scatter signals, and as many as five fluorochrome signals, can be detected from each cell (multiparametric analysis). **D,** The signals from each photodiode are digitized and passed to a computer for storage, display, and analysis. Typically, all data recorded from each cell are stored for possible later recall for further analysis (list mode data storage). **E,** A variety of histograms for visual display can be generated automatically or at the discretion of the operator. List mode data can also be transferred to a separate computer for analysis. Presently, most commercial flow cytometers utilize a standardized file format for list mode storage, and a variety of computer programs are commercially available for data analysis and display.

The Flow Cell and Fluidics

Two common flow cells are used in the clinical laboratory, but because most clinical instruments are used in the measurement of CD4 cells in the monitoring of HIV disease, a closed system is used as a biohazard precaution (Bogh & Duling, 1993; Chapman, 2000; McCoy, 2002). The first, known as a stream-in-air or flow-in-air flow cell, allows the optical measurement point to be directly on the sample stream. This type of flow cell minimizes the distance between the flow chamber and the sample injector tip and thus minimizes carryover between specimens and the sample wash time necessary between samples. This chamber allows greater sample flow rate variability than a closed system. Other advantages of the stream-in-air tips are important in cell sorting and are not considered here. With the closed system, often referred to as a quartz tip flow cell, the focal point is within the chamber. Disadvantages of these quartz systems include the thickness of the quartz and thus the diffraction of the laser beam or the scattering of the signal. Additionally, the relatively large cross section (200 μm^2) makes the flow rate more difficult to control. The success of these quartz flow cells in the clinical system depends on illumination and collection optics. Flow cytometric manufacturers have made many advances in these systems to provide both safety and maximum sensitivity with the use of low-power, laser-based systems (Austin Suthanthiraraj & Graves, 2013; Sack & Tarnok, 2013; Piyasena & Graves, 2014).

Many terms are used in the definition of flow cytometry systems, including flow rate, sheath pressure, core size, resulting particle velocity, resulting coefficients of variation (CVs), and so forth. However, the most important factor for a laboratory worker to understand is that in DNA analysis, the cells are analyzed at a slow flow rate to increase the time a particle spends in the beam, allowing greater sensitivity and better CVs. In immunophenotyping, sensitivity typically is not an issue, and the particle flow rate can be increased. Most clinical systems were developed with compromises to accommodate the most common application of immunophenotypic analysis (Baumgarth & Roederer, 2000). Research flow cytometers offer much greater flexibility and operator control over sample flow rate, differential pressure, and time.

Colors and More Colors: Applications of Fluorochromes

Most laboratories are still using the most common fluorochromes—fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC; 530-nm emission) and phycoerythrin (PE; 575-nm emission)—for immunophenotyping, and propidium iodide (PI) (625-nm emission) in the measurement of DNA (McCoy, 2002). FITC and PE are directly conjugated by the antibody of interest and are simultaneously added to a patient's sample. Use of a secondary antibody such as a goat antimouse (GAM) IgG labeled with fluorescein is no longer necessary for extra sensitivity; therefore, the background fluorescence is minimized. Most clinically used antibodies in the study of HIV are premixed and prediluted for use in whole blood technologies. PI can be used simultaneously with cell surfaces made in multiparameter DNA analysis, although this requires preservation of the cell membrane (Clevenger & Shankey, 1993).

New dyes that have become available to the clinical laboratory allow the simultaneous measurement of five or more colors with directly labeled monoclonal antibodies excited by single or dual lasers (Sewell & Smith, 2011; Virgo & Gibbs, 2012). This availability is revolutionizing the current performance of flow cytometry in laboratory practice. These dyes with a red and far red emission include PE Texas Red tandems (625-nm emission), PE-Cy-5 tandems (675-nm emission), and allophycocyanin (675-nm emission), to name a few (Table 45-1). In addition, several violet-excitable dyes, with emission maxima ranging from 450 to 535 nm, have recently become available (Abrams et al, 2013). The early tandems were problematic because of excess free PE in solution, leading to excess background fluorescence. New technologies for the synthesis of these dyes are exploding, solving most of the technical issues, and new dyes are constantly being added for use in the clinical laboratory (Sewell & Smith, 2011; Virgo & Gibbs, 2012). With multiparametric flow cytometric analysis using violet-excitable, red, and far red dyes, complex immunophenotypic studies, such as leukemia analysis, can be performed in several tubes, and HIV subset analysis can be performed in a single tube with greater surety (Nicholson et al, 1993). For example, for HIV subset analysis, a single tube with 100 µL of whole blood is simultaneously stained with CD45 PE-Cy-5, CD3 PE Texas Red, CD8 FITC, and CD4 PE. With the new digitized signal processing, compensation (vide infra) is easily performed, and the analysis is completed using CD45 as a gating agent with side scatter (SSC) and the simultaneous analysis of CD3, CD4, and CD8 (Fig. 45-4).

Another interesting phenomenon is that these new dyes have allowed the use of fluorescence as a trigger in place of the usual forward light scatter parameter. This is possible because the far red dye spectra are not found in components of most cells, or they do not have autofluorescence competition in nature, as was found with FITC. Furthermore, they can be excited at wavelengths that minimize the autofluorescence from cell constituents such as riboflavin. Therefore, when performing a rare event (cells present at <0.1% of total population) analysis using a fluorescent trigger, many cells can be analyzed very rapidly. This method is also used to label leukocytes in unlysed blood using fluorescence as a trigger. A dye that marks the nuclei or cytoplasm of the leukocytes, and not the erythrocytes, is used.

The use of multicolor fluorescence has allowed the concept of multiparameter analysis to become a reality in most laboratories. For example, parameters can evaluate different functional subsets of a particular cell population using an intracellular fluorescent probe; the use of multiple colors to identify small clusters of otherwise unidentifiable events (as in detection of minimal residual disease [MRD]); the activation status of cells at a particular disease stage (e.g., use of HLA-DR and CD38 on CD4 and CD8s in HIV staging using an anchor gate approach); and cell surface expression and the DI or S phase of a particular cell population, as in defining the CD19 S phase in acute leukemia. Obviously, the possible combinations are nearly infinite, and their sophistication is enhanced by

TABLE 45-1
Representative Fluorochromes Used in Flow Cytometric Analysis

Fluorochrome	Ex, nm	Em, nm	Excitation Laser Lines, nm	Comment
Hoechst 33342	343	461	355	Nucleic acid probe, AT-selective
DAPI	359	461	355	Nucleic acid probe, AT-selective
Pacific Blue	410	455	360, 405, 407	
Pacific Orange	400	551	360, 405, 407	
CFSE		517	488	
Fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)	493	525	488	pH sensitive
Alexa Fluor 488	495	519	488	Good photostability
Acridine orange (AO)	510	530	488	Nucleic acid probe
R-Phycoerythrin (PE)	496, 565	575	488, 532, 561	High quantum yield, poor photostability
PE/Texas Red (Red 613)	496, 565	613	488, 532, 561	
Propidium iodide (PI)	305, 540	620	325, 360, 488	Nucleic acid probe, DNA intercalating, used as viability dye
Thiazole orange (TO)	510	530	488	Nucleic acid probe
7-Amino actinomycin D (7-ADD)	546	647	488	Nucleic acid probe, GC-selective, used as viability dye
PE/Cy5 conjugates	496, 565	670	488	Tandem dyes, Cychrome, R670, Tri-Color, Quantum Red
Peridinin chlorophyll protein (PerCP)	482	675	488	
PerCP/Cy 5.5	482	690	488	Tandem dye
PE/Cy 5.5	496, 565	695	488	Tandem dye
PE/Cy 7	496, 565	774	488	Tandem dye
Texas Red	589	615	595, 633	Sulfonyl chloride
Allophycocyanin (APC)	645	660	595, 633, 635, 647	
Alexa Fluor 647	650	668	595, 633, 635, 647	
APC/Cy7 (PharRed)	650, 755	785	595, 633, 635, 647	

Em (nm), Emission wavelength in nanometers; *Ex (nm),* excitation wavelength in nanometers.

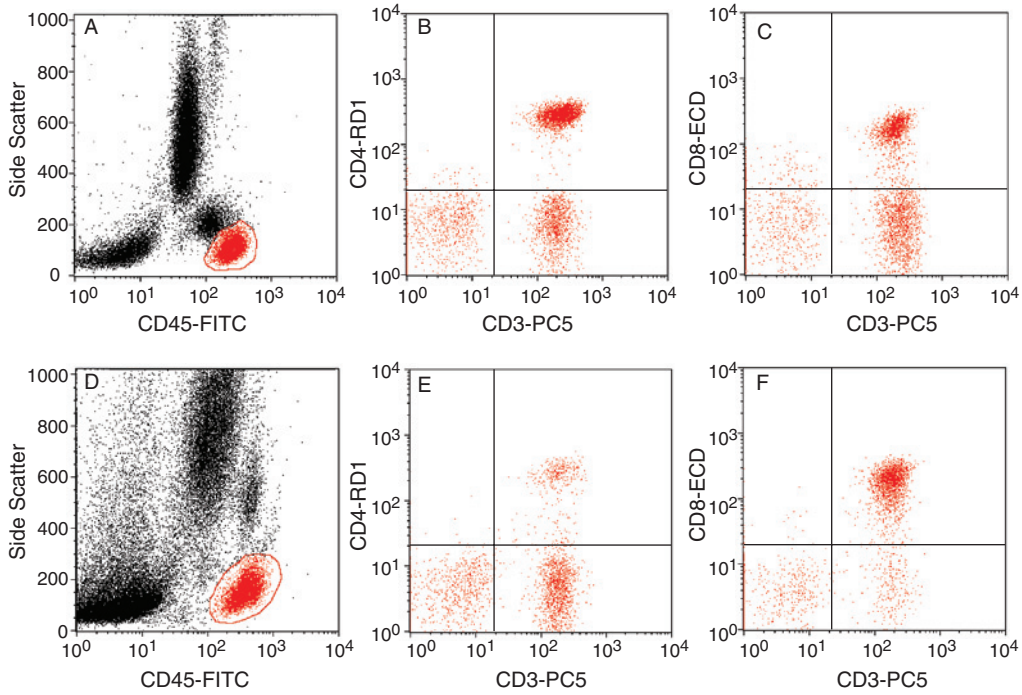


Figure 45-4 **Flow cytometric immunophenotypic lymphocyte subset analysis.** Use of four-color flow cytometry for the performance of peripheral blood lymphocyte subset enumeration. **A,** A dot-plot histogram of CD45 fluorescence intensity (CD45-FITC) versus side scatter (SS) as a gating strategy to discriminate lymphocytes (gated area) from other peripheral blood cells in a normal control individual. **B** and **C,** Dot-plot histograms of $CD3^+CD4^+$ and $CD3^+CD8^+$ cell populations. **D** through **F,** Corresponding histograms from a human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)–infected individual, demonstrating a marked decrease in $CD4^+$ lymphocytes and the corresponding relative increase in $CD8^+$ lymphocytes. Directly conjugated monoclonal antibodies were conjugated with fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), phycoerythrin (PE), energy-coupled dye (ECD), or a PE-Cy5 tandem (PC5).

the specific dyes and DNA/ribonucleic acid (RNA) probes that are now available. A discussion of some of these approaches and techniques follows.

GATING AND DATA ANALYSIS

IMMUNOPHENOTYPIC ANALYSIS

Analysis of cell populations with the flow cytometer uses a combination of parameters that, when applied, define a specific cell population. Flow cytometry uses parameters similar to those that have been used for many years in hematology, including size (forward light scatter), cytoplasmic granularity (side scatter), and affinities for specific dyes, and combines them with the immunologic tools already mentioned. These include multiple fluorescent dyes bound to antibodies or probes, DNA measurements as obtained using PI or 4′6-diamidino-2-phenylindole, and other nuclear markers. The key is the simultaneous detection of these parameters with today's analytic systems. For many years, the clinical laboratory flow cytometer could use only three simultaneous measurements. Staining of cell populations was limited by the unavailability of directly conjugated monoclonal antibodies, necessitating the use of a secondary GAM reagent or the use of biotin-labeled antibodies. Definitions of positive and negative populations in high-background cases made it necessary to use a subtraction channel-by-channel algorithm to differentiate positive from negative (Bagwell, 1993). In cases in which the cell population had a defined boundary between negative and positive, a cursor was set so that no more than 2% of the events considered negative fell to the right of the cursor, thereby defining the positive events when a matched isotypic control was used. Although this approach seemed reasonable at the time (Lewis, 1993) and worked well with bright cell clusters, it has become cumbersome when identifying leukemic cells or performing analyses of cell activation markers. However, hematopoietic neoplasms are particularly problematic because each neoplastic clone has its own "relative" fluorescent intensity, and isotype controls may have little relevance. Applying hard and fast rules to cursor settings led to the underestimation of positive clusters. The failure of this approach is especially dramatic in the analysis of monoclonality by κ and λ light chain expression, where small, but significant, differences were often lost.

Use of isotype controls in certain situations has been challenged on many fronts, both from technical aberrations associated with their use and from added costs to the laboratory. New software algorithms have the capability of making intensity measurements and defining clusters based on population means intensities, including relative fluorescent intensities, as well as actual molecules of equivalent soluble fluorochrome quantitation (vide infra). Clearly, the need to remember what we are measuring and an understanding of the biology of the population of interest need to be considered in designing an analysis protocol. Fortunately, some sophisticated software approaches and better reagents have allowed us to use multiparameter gating to define populations, rather than trying to make estimates of fluorescence expression using cursor values. Many investigators have used the multiparameter approach in defining cluster and other populations of interest (Loken et al, 1990; Baumgarth & Roederer, 2000; Kraan et al, 2003; Stewart & Stewart, 2004). These approaches take many forms, a few of which are reviewed here.

With the arrival of multicolor fluorescence came the need to analyze the numbers of cells expressing one or more colors at the same time in a particular cell population defined by forward angle light scatter (FALS) and SSC regions (Loken, 1976; 1977). When this method was first developed, scientists were thinking basically about the mathematics and the accounting of all cells and the numbers of these cells expressing one or more colors. A binary approach to this analysis was developed, known as Prism (Coulter, Hialeah, Fla.). These analysis regions were hard-gated and were set into the instrument by the operator and could not be redefined at a later time using list mode analysis. This approach was later modified to allow some regating, and other manufacturers, as well as third-party software applications, made this Prism binary approach work on a post-analysis basis. Loken then defined bone marrow populations using CD45 versus SSC gating—a unique approach to defining the heterogeneous populations found in bone marrow (Loken et al, 1990; Stelzer et al, 1993). This approach became particularly relevant with the discovery that the vast majority of acute leukemia blast cells, both of lymphoid and myeloid origin, show downregulated CD45 expression, permitting the use of CD45 fluorescence intensity and light scatter to separate acute leukemia populations from lymphocytes, monocytes, and maturing myeloid cells (Posekany et al, 1991; Borowitz, 1992). Loken further promoted the use of CD45 and CD14 dual-parameter analysis gated on the lymphocyte region of FALS versus SSC for peripheral blood. Many agencies embraced this approach for HIV flow cytometry panels to minimize the effects of contaminating monocytes in the lymphocyte population, because they might

interfere with a true CD4 lymphocyte count, as monocytes have CD4 receptors on their surface (Passlick et al, 1989). Agencies that promoted this type of analysis included the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (Centers for Disease Control, 1992), the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease, Division of AIDS (DAIDS) (Calvelli et al, 1993), the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS) (Standards NCfCL, 1992), and the College of American Pathologists (CAP).

Unfortunately, even though this approach solved a lot of problems, it did not ensure that each tube in the panel had the same contents as the tubes containing CD45 and CD14, and the required purity correction might be overestimated, leading to incorrect values for CD4. These issues were reviewed during a conference held by the CDC a year after the HIV guidelines for the performance of CD4 counts were published (Stelzer et al, 1993). Other analyses of this approach have been performed by the AIDS Clinical Trial Group (ACTG) Flow Advisory Committee in the DAIDS Proficiency CD4/CD8 program (Kagan et al, 1993) and by CAP in its proficiency testing program (Homburger et al, 1993).

A new approach to gating was evaluated in HIV panels that followed from Loken's original approach to a bone marrow definition of clusters (Loken et al, 1990). The use of CD45 as a gating parameter has simplified the analysis of bone marrow, leukemias, and HIV panels. In bone marrow and leukemia workups, CD45 is usually set as the third or fourth color and is paired with forward light scatter or side scatter; this allows the definition of a blast (potentially malignant) population. The blast population is then defined using a panel of monoclonals and the three available color parameters. In the HIV, one-tube, four-color method, CD45 allows the definition of a large lymphocyte-gated region, which is secondarily gated for CD45. This can also be done without the use of light scatter parameters, as was previously described, or with the use of a two-tube, three-color panel. Newer analytic reagent products from some manufacturers include precounted beads in the monoclonal antibody–containing tube, thus permitting an absolute lymphocyte count, known as a flow differential, to be performed at the same time as the lymphocyte subset enumeration (van de Geijn et al, 2011). This removes the requirement of needing a hematology counter when performing T cell enumerations and avoids the problems of white cell deterioration with shipping and the performance of an accurate differential to get accurate T cell numbers. These methods are just becoming incorporated into ACTG HIV trial work and that of other laboratories. Recently, there is great interest in simplified, inexpensive flow cytometric instruments and protocols for the evaluation of HIV diagnosis and monitoring in resource-limited regions of the world (Pattanapanyasat, 2012; Koyalta, 2013). The inclusion of fluorochrome-labeled DNA primers may also provide a relatively simple, inexpensive procedure for the monitoring of the HIV viral load (Greve et al, 2009; Lizard, 2009).

Another gating strategy is the use of two- or three-color definition of a particular subset of interest. This approach, commonly referred to now as an *anchor gate*, uses the particular properties of some cells to investigate another set of parameters. When applied specifically to T lymphocytes, it is referred to as a *T gate* (Mandy et al, 1992). An anchor gate (Paxton et al, 1995) is especially useful when looking at activation markers, as in the HIV subsets of CD3/CD8 expressing CD38 and HLA-DR, or when looking at the expression of CD45Ra and CD45Ro against CD3/CD4 or CD3/CD8. The advantage of this method is that it is intuitive, and each color acts as a quality control check for the other subset. Furthermore, one has the choice to define the expression of biologically relevant markers in relation to functional or biologically relevant populations. This approach lends itself well to quantitative fluorescence. Although the concept of quantitative fluorescence is not new, the techniques used to measure fluorescence equivalents or fluorescence thresholds or other similar designations are new. Quantitative fluorescence measurements will be described after DNA gating and analysis.

Another approach to anchor gating involves CD34 harvesting, which uses CD34 and CD45 staining with or without 7-amino-actinomycin D (7-AAD) as a viability assessment in the identification and enumeration of CD34 progenitor cells. With these methods, beads can also be used to obtain the number of cells recovered. These methods have great utility in bone marrow transplantation protocols in which progenitor cells are harvested from cord blood, bone marrow, or peripheral blood (e.g., the International Society for Hematotherapy and Graft Engineering) and reinfused. This approach has become the standard for most laboratories performing transplants. A commercial system called ProCount (Becton Dickinson) uses a similar approach and reagents to automate the process (Pranke et al, 2006). Complex immunophenotypic analysis with five or more monoclonal antibodies is becoming more common in clinical and research laboratories for the detection of minor lymphocyte subpopulations of clinical relevance in patients with autoimmune and immunodeficiency diseases; small, immunologically aberrant subpopulations; and minimal residual disease in patients with hematologic malignancy. In this regard, multiparametric flow cytometric analysis using 17 fluorescent colors has been reported (Perfetto, 2004).

DNA ANALYSIS

General Aspects

Conceptually, DNA analysis should be less complex than immunophenotyping analysis, but a review of the literature and its prognostic capabilities, as well as performance by laboratories on proficiency tests, indicates otherwise (Tirindelli Danesi et al, 1997). Because publication of several thousand reports in the 1980s and the early 1990s yielded conflicting findings regarding the diagnostic and prognostic significance of ploidy and S phase activity in various human tumors, a DNA consensus conference was held and the proceedings published in *Cytometry* (Shankey et al, 1993). This report was a historical review of major tumor types (in fresh, frozen, and paraffin samples) and the clinical value of the performance of ploidy by DI and the value of the S phase. These parameters were analyzed in terms of their effectiveness as prognostic markers. The 1994 CAP Conference looked at the previous markers and some additional potential tumor surrogates. In each case, the DI and the S phase were less predictable as prognostic markers than was hoped. This was largely attributed to the variability in technical performance and analysis of these assays (both instrument and samples preparation) and the inherent risk of tumor heterogeneity and therefore of appropriate sampling of the tumor. Specific recommendations were made with each tumor type for appropriate quality control measures that should be taken and for proper deconvolution of the histograms. Since that time, the routine utilization of DNA analysis in the clinical laboratory has considerably declined. Because of the high degree of variability and the lack of prognostic significance, it was suggested by some that clinical DNA measurements be performed only by expert laboratories or be completely eliminated (ASCO, 1996). The FDA to date has not cleared any methods and still considers this a research test. However, several groups have made significant inroads into solving some of the issues associated with DNA analysis (Fig. 45-5) (Shankey & Rabinovitch, 2002; Corver & ter Haar, 2011; Krueger & Wilson, 2011). The future of this technique in clinical medicine is further discussed later in the chapter.

Sample Preparation

DNA preparative methods are reasonably simple and inexpensive to perform. Many references for the original methods exist, as do many modifications. The most common methods are those used on fresh and frozen tissues and developed by Krishan, Vindelov, Crissman, Steinkamp, and others (Rabinovitch, 1993; Vindelov & Christensen, 1994) and those used on paraffin blocks (Hedley et al, 1983). In each case, whether the cells are enucleated or the cell membrane is preserved, the DNA dye PI is used most commonly in the majority of clinical laboratories and has already been described. PI staining is straightforward as long as timing, saturation, and removal of RNA parameters are followed. Measures of gross karyotypic abnormalities are made by comparing the peak (fluorescence intensity, PI uptake) of the tumor versus a diploid calibrator. Factors affecting this measurement include the CVs of the peaks for both the calibrator and the suspected tumor, the G_2/G_1 ratio, the linearity of the instrument, and linearity as measured by the deconvolution software package and the percent of tumor present (sampling) in the sample (Shankey & Rabinovitch, 2002). It is common to find laboratories reporting out a diploid tumor result on a sample containing "no" tumor. Tumors with near diploid values need stringent rules of interpretation, as does the definition of tetraploidy. Additional problems are associated with the definitions of aggregates, doublets, and debris; the treatment of sliced and cut nuclei; and the S phase population. The descriptive and semiquantitative acronym BAD is used by software analysis packages to model the effects of background, aggregates, and doublets (Rabinovitch, 1993; 1994). The impact of this parameter on the analysis is controversial.

The resulting S phase and DI measurements based on a single-parameter mode of analysis (PI only) are subject to these deconvolution algorithms, leading to great interlaboratory variability (Coon et al, 1994). These deconvolution algorithms for DNA have been studied extensively, but many models used for analysis need further study. The DNA consensus document makes specific recommendations applicable to certain tumor types and suggests that laboratories perform their analyses accordingly, but even with these guidelines, a level of ambiguity remains in the interpretation and performance of the clinical laboratory that contributes to the discordance of results in comparative studies and in proficiency tests (Coon

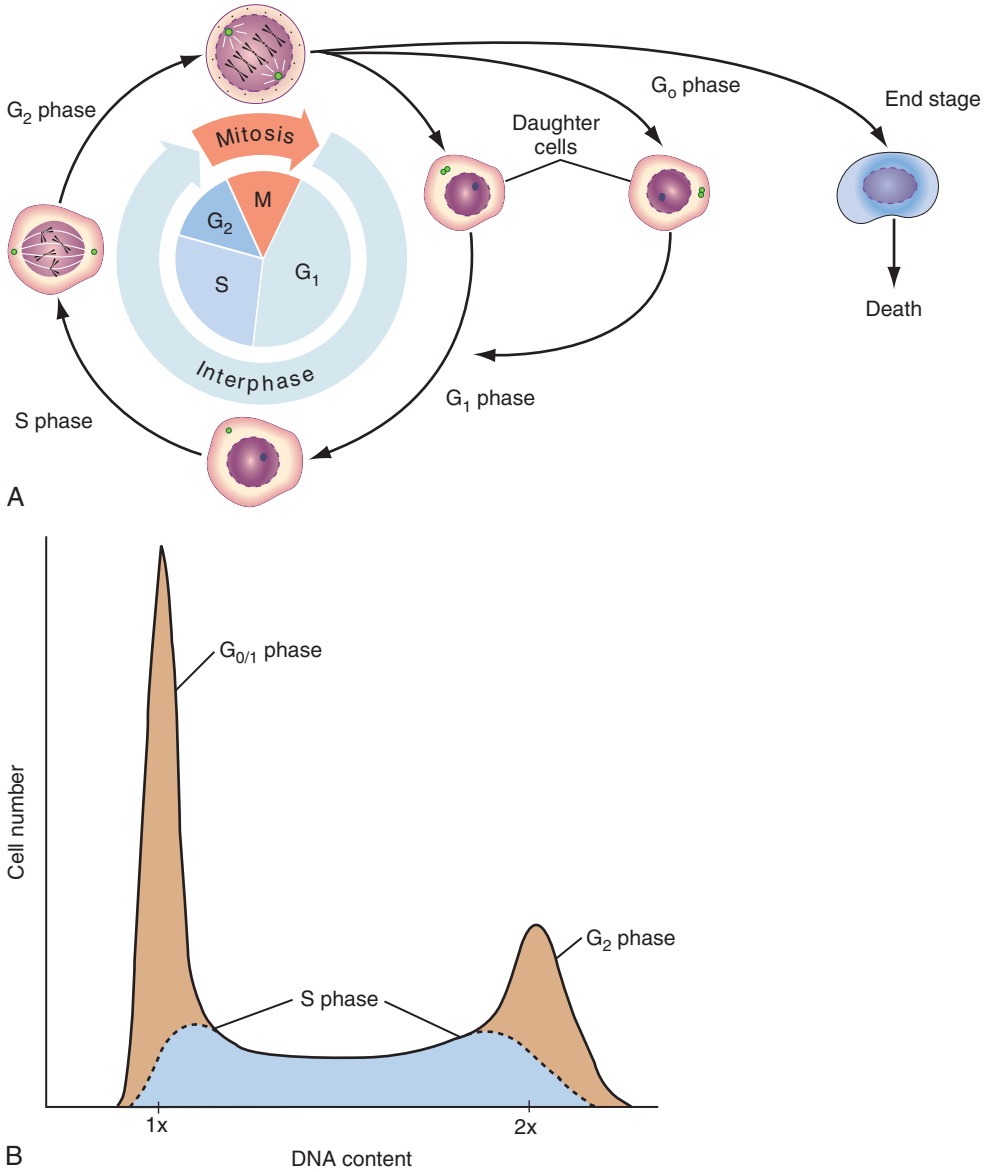


Figure 45-5 **The cell cycle. A,** Schematic illustration of the cell cycle of an asynchronous cell population. Most cells are in the resting (G_0) or early proliferative (G_1) stage of the cell cycle and have diploid (2N or 2C) DNA content. Cells that are actively synthesizing DNA (S phase) have increased DNA content (2N-4N), and cells in the second gap (G_2) phase or undergoing mitosis (M) contain precisely twice the diploid amount of DNA (4N or 4C). **B,** Flow cytometric DNA histogram of a normal proliferating cell population stained with propidium iodide. Cells in the $G_0/_1$, S, and G_2M phases of the cell cycle can be differentiated by this technique. Resolution of DNA analysis depends on the fluorochrome utilized for staining DNA, resolution of the instrument, and other factors. Mathematical modeling is required for analysis of cell cycle data because of "overlap" of the S phase curve into the $G_0/_1$ and G_2M regions. (Reprinted with permission from Riley RS, Mahin EJ, Ross W: *Clinical applications of flow cytometry.* New York, 1993, Igaku-Shoin Medical Publishers.)

et al, 1988, 1994; Wheeless et al, 1991). Difficulty in achieving consensus makes interpretation of results more difficult for the novice laboratory, as well as for clinicians who are trying to compare their laboratory results with recent literature on the treatment of their patients. This is especially true in the classification of S phase values. S phase measures are subject to the effects of debris and aggregate modeling as described by Rabinovitch and others (Bagwell, 1993; Shankey et al, 1993; Rabinovitch, 1994). Furthermore, it is critical that decisions made with regard to which mathematical model is used for a particular tumor be kept constant and that the list mode data be retained without modeling in case further analysis is necessary.

Other approaches using DNA and RNA probes, such as thymidine derivatives, bromodeoxyuridine, and acridine orange (RNA), are used to improve the quality of the models in the estimation of proliferative and kinetic properties of a specific tumor. It is important to remember that proliferation measures are not the same as measures of S phase quantitation, which provide a static model or a picture in time of all cells being analyzed. Integration of the area for the number of cells between 2C and 4C in a DNA histogram is not capable of giving any information with regard to cells "stuck" in S_0 (cells actually stop DNA synthesis), nor of measuring the number of infiltrating normal cells that also might be proliferating. The S phase value may often be higher than the actual proliferative capacity owing to artifacts of tumor heterogeneity. The single-parameter histogram yields reasonable results when dealing with an asynchronous, relatively homogeneous cell population. Pulse labeling is most commonly used in larger academic settings and to measure the effectiveness of radiation and chemotherapy by obtaining true measures of G_0/G_1 cells and $G_2 + M$ compartments, which are not possible to attain using single-parameter measures of S phase.

Other approaches using nuclear and cytoplasmic probes as well as surface markers can be used to separate a population of interest from a mixture of cell types (Darzynkiewicz, 2010). This type of multiparameter analysis is especially useful in the measure of S phase in hematologic malignancy. Specific blast populations can be identified by FITC fluorescence and FALS, and those events can be analyzed for DNA content and S phase using PI. Staining methods are altered to preserve cell surface

properties or nuclear properties (Clevenger & Shankey, 1993; Ramaekers & Hopman, 1993; Bauer & Jacobberger, 1994; Carothers, 1994). These methods usually involve staining the surface marker of interest (e.g., KI-67, cyclin B1, cytokeratin, CD10) with the monoclonal antibody, fixing it in an alcohol (or commercial fixation and permeabilization reagent), and then treating it with a detergent to allow penetration of PI or another nuclear dye. Staining methods are selectively modified to preserve specific membrane and nuclear properties specific to the probe of interest (Bauer & Jacobberger, 1994). Cell fixation with zinc salts has recently been reported as a more optimal technique to permit simultaneous multiparametric analysis of cell surface and intracellular proteins, DNA content, and other measurements, while permitting long-term storage of the labeled cells (Christensen et al, 2011; Jensen et al, 2010).

DNA Studies of Interest in Cellular Immunology

There has been an explosion of literature on the subject of apoptosis (i.e., programmed cell death) and its relevance to traditional DNA parameters and other phenotypic considerations. It is not within the scope of this chapter to handle this topic. Although many studies are ongoing, apoptotic measurements are still not part of the routine clinical laboratory (Telford et al, 2011).

As mentioned earlier, laboratory DNA analysis has recently come under much scrutiny, and in some regions, these studies are no longer being reimbursed. Several investigators in the field had challenged the wholesale expulsion of this test from the laboratory, as it is useful in certain tumors. The reexamination of a set of retrospective breast cases has been undertaken by Bagwell and others (2004) to attempt to develop a unified prognostic model for node-negative breast cancer patients. It is hoped that these studies and others will resurrect what could be a useful prognostic and diagnostic tool that perhaps was previously underestimated in its complexity.

QUANTITATIVE FLOW CYTOMETRY

The definition of cell types in immunologic terms such as effector cells implies the property of these cells to regulate, whether up or down, specific molecular functions through surface receptors. Known as immunologic phenotypes (Poncelet et al, 1993), these cells need other measurable properties to define their biologic roles in maturation and in disease processes. One of the observed phenomena is the differential expression of cell surface antigens (CDs) in relative terms and in absolute quantitative terms. Before the availability of absolute measures, descriptive terms such as bright or dim, bimodal, and so forth, were used in the literature to describe a visual phenomenon of antigen density differences. Although descriptive, these terms are difficult to define and to standardize between laboratories and between patients. They also lack precision in defining an event and cannot be objectively used to monitor patients' treatment or cell definition (cell type) by measures of CD expression and overlapping expression. Evidence suggests that quantitative differences in antigen expression in chronic lymphocytic leukemia and other leukemias may be important in determining the prognosis (Poncelet & Carayon, 1985). These measures are also used in the definition of MRD and in the investigation of a viral effect or activation in HIV disease (Poncelet et al, 1991). The percent of a specific cell present often does not give the true clinical picture. This is particularly true in leukopenic cases and when the blast population represents a relatively small percentage of total cells present.

Quantitative flow cytometry is defined as the quantitation of fluorescence intensity (FI) as determined by the antibody-binding capacity of a given fluorochrome antibody conjugate; it is an indirect measure of the amount of cell surface antigen present per individual cell (Stelzer et al, 1997; Marti et al, 2003; Wang et al, 2011). Investigators have described the use of polystyrene beads or cell lines coated with saturating amounts of antibody to determine the absolute numbers of receptors or antigenic sites per cell, also referred to as *antigen density* (Poncelet et al, 1993). ABC units are defined as a measure of relative antibody-binding capacity. This method does not need to match the fluorescein/protein ratio, because both the cells and the standards are being stained with the same antibody. Use of FI measurements should give the user a means to avoid this situation. More information can be obtained by referring to the 1997 U.S./Canadian consensus document that reviews the necessary parameters for standardization (Stelzer et al, 1997).

Although early in its development, quantitative phenotypes will help us define cluster analysis software programs for cell quantification and identification by establishing mean channel FI as a means of separating cells of different functional phenotypes.

BOX 45-1

Presentation of Possible Immunodeficiency

- Frequent bacterial infection
- Unusually severe systemic reaction to a virus
- Development of infection with an unusual organism such as fungus or protozoan
- Systemic reaction following live virus vaccination
- Family history of recurrent infections
- Exposure to the human immunodeficiency virus

CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF CELLULAR IMMUNE TESTING

The decision to test the immune response is usually made in the context of the patient's clinical presentation, as described in Box 45-1. The most common reasons for the initiation of a clinical laboratory request include increased or unexplained susceptibility to infection, increased severity of common infections, or an unusual reaction to immunization. Unusual infections, especially those caused by opportunistic agents or severe infections that are unresponsive to treatment, and certain allergic or atopic states, may also prompt immune testing. In recent years, potential HIV infection has replaced possible primary immune deficiency as the leading presumptive diagnosis. Because few, if any, cellular immune tests are totally and specifically diagnostic, and because they may be expensive and time consuming, the request for laboratory evaluation should be approached with caution and a clear understanding of how the result will lead to improved management of the patient. Under these circumstances, the responsibility of the clinical immunology laboratory is to establish a sufficient range of tests to enable judicious testing for determination of the nature and extent of the immune alteration, as well as interpretation of the results in the context of the current clinical presentation and past medical history.

The principal task of the clinical immunologist, aided by the laboratory, is often to distinguish the features of primary immune deficiency, or suspected acquired immune deficiency due to HIV infection, from immune changes associated with other clinical conditions that may produce immune changes that could appear phenotypically identical to primary immunodeficiency (Tebo et al, 2014). In this regard, immune changes may accompany many clinical entities such as malignancy, traumatic injury such as burns or accidents resulting in major blood loss or organ damage, hematologic disease such as Fanconi's anemia, hemophilia, immune thrombocytopenia, lymphoproliferative disorders such as histiocytosis, the hemoglobinopathies such as sickle cell anemia, thalassemia, and a fairly wide range of chromosomal abnormalities such as DiGeorge syndrome, Down syndrome, Bloom syndrome, William congenital dyskeratosis, epidermolysis bullosa, and Duncan syndrome (X-linked lymphoproliferative disorder). Autoimmune diseases such as rheumatic disease, mixed connective tissue disease, type 1 diabetes mellitus, systemic lupus erythematosus, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, multiple sclerosis, and myasthenia gravis may be associated with cellular immune changes and are discussed further elsewhere in this book.

Primary immune deficiency disorders nearly always present in the context of infection or hematologic change. Laboratory evaluation of these disorders requires a stepwise approach to minimize blood drawing and to logically choose among available tests for the purpose of differential diagnosis. Some presumptive diagnoses may appear to be too frequently suspected—for example, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome—although this does need to be ruled out in cases of unexplained thrombocytopenia. However, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome may be missed if response to mitogens alone rather than to antigens as well is not tested, and the immune defect may become more marked with time, so follow-up testing may be needed.

HIV infection can be readily diagnosed by direct testing, but the clinical immunology laboratory is sometimes used as a proving ground before the patient or guardian is approached for informed consent for HIV testing. This is based on the observation that an inverted CD4/CD8 ratio is virtually always found among HIV-positive adults. Thus as a result of the current AIDS epidemic, the inverted CD4/CD8 ratio has become identified as a marker of HIV infection. However, a number of diseases other than HIV involve the immune system and can produce an inverted CD4/CD8 ratio, or extremely low CD4 cell numbers. These include, but are not limited to, DiGeorge syndrome, benign thymoma, the early phase of hepatitis C virus infection, Kawasaki disease, protein-calorie malnutrition, and malignancy.

CLINICAL INTERPRETATION OF CELLULAR IMMUNE TESTING

The clinician or laboratorian interpreting cellular immune function assays is often confronted by the issue of how to evaluate the potential clinical significance of an impaired in vitro immune response. Studies of even relatively well-defined disorders have shown that very significant differences in clinical symptoms may occur. However, newer testing strategies can be helpful in subclassifying patients by the level and extent of the defect.

For example, DiGeorge syndrome (22q11.2 deletion syndrome) (DiGeorge, 1974) is classically a triad of thymic and parathyroid aplasia and conotruncal defects. Patients with DiGeorge syndrome show marked differences in severity of infection in spite of relatively similar findings of reduced numbers of mature T lymphocytes and a poor response to mitogens. Initially, a very high degree of fatality was associated with this syndrome. Improved surgical and anesthesia methods have led to a significant decrease in the incidence of severe infection, although some infants still develop intractable and ultimately fatal infection (Bastian et al, 1989). Recently, it has been possible to use more exact lymphocyte phenotype analysis to determine the severity of the immune defect and to more accurately predict clinical outcome. Using longitudinal testing over several months and a multiple parametric approach, it now seems that severity may be predictable from consistently low $CD4^+$ T-cell numbers, an inverted CD4/CD8 ratio, and reduced lymphokine IL-2 production (Cunningham-Rundles et al, 1994). Investigation into the significance of monosomic deletions of chromosome 22q11.2, which are the leading causes of DiGeorge syndrome, velocardiofacial syndrome, and conotruncal anomaly face syndrome, illustrates the importance of new genetic information. Although only DiGeorge syndrome was originally described as an immunodeficiency disorder, new studies looking at the frequency of immunodeficiency in the other clinical syndromes associated with the chromosome 22q11.2 microdeletion have shown that more than 75% of patients have evidence of immunocompromise, the severity of which does not correlate with any particular phenotypic feature (Sullivan et al, 1998).

T-cell function may be as important, or more important, in HIV infection than the loss of $CD4^+$ T cells or the rate of loss. In some viral-associated illnesses, considerable uncertainty exists as to how close the association is between an immune deficit detected ex vivo and the patient's in vivo immune function (Landay et al, 1991; Lloyd et al, 1992). In other diseases, immune abnormalities have been identified as disease markers, but there is no clear understanding of cause and effect. An example is seen in some forms of chronic fatigue syndrome associated with altered orthostatic response (Rowe et al, 1999) and increased plasma levels of TNF-α (Moss et al, 1999).

AGE AND THE IMMUNE RESPONSE

Current studies demonstrate that the immune system changes as part of the aging process (Weiskopf et al, 2009; Nikolich-Zugich, 2012; Montecino-Rodriguez et al, 2013; Fulop et al, 2014). Although considerable variation in this is seen, and much is a consequence of altered nutritional status (Monk et al, 2011; Afacan et al, 2012; Maijo et al, 2014), it is essential that the clinical laboratory provide relevant laboratory values for age-matched controls.

The study of pediatric patients presents particular issues for the laboratory diagnosis of immune deficiency. Development of the immune system in the child is not complete at birth; in addition, children have not been exposed to a wide variety of abnormal environmental agents and may have vulnerability to infection (Ygberg & Nilsson, 2012; Rytter et al, 2014). Congenital viral exposure or prematurity alone may be associated with immune abnormalities. Key differences in the pediatric immune response include marked lymphocytosis and deficit in endogenous antibodies at birth, elevated B cells that show a deficient response to polysaccharide antigen, increased $CD4^+/CD8^+$ T cell ratio, few NK cells, decreased cytokine production, and oligoclonal T cell expansions (Wedderburn et al, 2001; Marodi, 2006; Philbin & Levy, 2009). These differences are reflected in marked differences in the normal range of lymphocyte subsets and must be taken into account during evaluation of results (Denny et al, 1992; Bonilla & Oettgen, 1997; Shearer et al, 2003; Tosato et al, 2015). Also, marked differences in response to various activators have been noted as compared with adults. The neonatal response of premature infants to certain microbial activators may be stronger than that of adults or full-term infants because of rapid changes in immune regulation (Veber et al, 1991; Cunningham-Rundles & Nessin, 2000) or because of fundamental differences in perinatal programming (Prescott et al, 1998). The immune system of elderly individuals also shows changes in comparison with that of younger adults. In particular, cumulative alterations in critical B and T cell subpopulations, altered cell signaling and cytokine production, and other changes may contribute to the increased incidence of autoimmune disease and cancer in this group (Hakim et al, 2004; Alvarez-Rodriguez et al, 2012; Montecino-Rodriguez et al, 2013). The deterioration of immune responses with increasing age has been designated immunosenescence (Malaguarnera et al, 2001). Zinc deficiency appears to be one of many factors that may lead to immunosenescence (Maywald & Rink, 2015).

MALNUTRITION AND THE IMMUNE RESPONSE

Although it is generally believed that malnutrition is relatively rare in developed countries, growing evidence suggests that malnutrition is fairly common, especially in certain age groups (Pennington, 1996). Malnutrition is associated with immune deficiency and causes significant vulnerability to infection (Cunningham-Rundles et al, 1996; Keusch, 2003). For example, zinc deficiency can present as a profound immune deficiency that may be related to the primary lack of zinc uptake at the gastrointestinal tract, to acrodermatitis enteropathica, or to lack of adequate zinc in the diet (Moynahan, 1974; Prasad, 2009; Tuerk & Fazel, 2009). Persons with hypogammaglobulinemia and associated malabsorption affecting zinc levels may show poor proliferative response in vitro and infections that resolve with zinc repletion (Cunningham-Rundles et al, 1981). This is associated with the fact that zinc is required for the biologic activity of thymic hormone, is needed for the production of functionally mature T cells and for activation of T cells, and may play a role in intercellular signaling within the immune system (Cunningham-Rundles & Lin, 1998; Prasad, 1998; Haase et al, 2008; Hirano et al, 2008). Increasing evidence suggests that micronutrient imbalance will alter immune response through specific effects on the immune response (Amati et al, 2003; Savino & Dardenne, 2010; Tilg & Moschen, 2013). In many clinical settings, malnutrition may be a complicating factor. The interaction of infection with altered metabolism secondary to the acute phase response can cause temporal shifts in trace elements, leading to transient suppression of the immune response. Physical stress may have a similar effect and may lead to enhanced vulnerability to infection in the context of immune suppression (Cunningham-Rundles, 1999). This is a two-way process. Growth failure may be the first sign of HIV infection in an HIV-positive child (Peters et al, 1998). For this and other reasons, immune evaluation should be an ongoing process in the context of continuing treatment or other testing.

CANCER AND THE IMMUNE RESPONSE

Primary immunodeficiency is associated with an increased incidence of cancer (Cunningham-Rundles et al, 1987), and it is increasingly clear that tumors develop in association with infection by HIV and other viruses and bacteria (Aoki & Tosato, 2004; Engels et al, 2008; Grivennikov et al, 2010). In the patient with cancer, generalized immune deficiency or reduction in response to antigenic challenge may appear in association with the development of primary malignancy, may occur during metastasis, or may be caused by the side effects of therapeutic intervention. Reduced immune response to nonspecific activators studied ex vivo in proliferation assays does correlate with stage of disease and has prognostic significance for survival (Heimdal et al, 1999). An inverted CD4/CD8 ratio and increased suppressor cell activity are often observed in untreated cancer patients, and changes in cytokine production have been observed (Livingston et al, 1987; Smyth, 2004). Experimental studies have shown that tumors may be surprisingly immunogenic but may drive the immune response toward a nonprotective response (Loose & Van de Wiele, 2009).

The development of new immunotherapeutic approaches is increasing, suggesting that response to tumor-specific antigens will be used more in the future (Schultes & Nicodemus, 2004; Steinman & Mellman, 2004; Waller, 2004). Immune response assays may also be used to track and evaluate response to treatments such as IL-2 (Lissoni et al, 1999) and cancer vaccines (Yannelli & Wroblewski, 2004). In many patients, chemotherapy will produce transient suppression of immune response that resolves within a short time, and radiation may have longer-term effects (Katz & Fauci, 1993). Assessment of immune response in the cancer patient requires highly selective and discriminating use of tests and activators, which reflect relevant processes, as well as specificity of response.

METHODOLOGIC APPROACH TO CELLULAR IMMUNE TESTING

Human studies have been based on observation of peripheral blood immune cells because the peripheral compartment is most accessible and

readily measured, but this approach may not reflect regional events. Knowledge of the differences between systemic and mucosal immune response may ultimately explain many current paradoxes that arise when immune response measured in vitro or ex vivo is compared with host defense in vivo (Xu-Amano et al, 1993). Systemic cellular immune function appears to be regulated through functionally distinct T-helper–type cytokine patterns ("the cytokine network"), such that when Th1 cytokines, IL-2, and IFN-γ are produced, cellular immune host defense is favored. When Th2 cytokines, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, and IL-10 are produced, B lymphocyte response is induced (Balkwill & Burke, 1989; Yamamura et al, 1991; Muller, 2006; Seillet et al, 2014).

In contrast to systemic immunity, the primary activity of the mucosal immune response is to protect the mucosa by blocking microbial, toxin, and antigen entry through secretion and transport of IgA to the lumen of the gut—a process mediated by the innate immune system and a special type of memory T lymphocyte with reduced proliferative capacity capable of providing B cell help (Cheroutre, 2004; Nochi & Kiyono, 2006; McDermott & Huffnagle, 2014). Both lamina propria T lymphocytes and intraepithelial T lymphocytes develop in relative independence of the thymus and function differently from peripheral blood T cells in using the CD2 signal transduction pathway rather than the TCR/CD3 pathway.

At present, tests of mucosal immunity usually are not performed in the clinical immunology laboratory, and, with rare exceptions, the immune cells under study are from the peripheral blood compartment. For this reason, use of in vivo skin testing and examination of humoral immune response to previously encountered vaccines are useful to the cellular immunologist, as these provide other means of assessment. In all cases, the use of a stepwise approach and repeated testing is highly informative.

STAGES OF STUDY: THE SCREENING STAGE

Evaluation of immune function in a patient with a possible immune deficiency is normally achieved in stages (Fig. 45-6). The first stage is a screening analysis of possible areas of deficiency in correlation with the medical history, the family history, and physical examination findings (Box 45-2). A complete blood count and leukocyte differential count must be obtained in all patients, and the peripheral blood film reviewed. Other critical assays include serum immunoglobulin levels (IgG, IgA, IgM, IgD, IgE), complement levels, and isohemagglutinin titers (Cassimos et al, 2009). These screening studies should be accompanied by appropriate flow cytometric analysis of lymphocyte subpopulations, and in children they must include the use of a B cell marker to assess possible B cell shifts, which may occur transiently in the neonate and may be reflected in low T cell populations. The use of an NK cell marker is also strongly recommended in young children older than 3 months of age, because NK cell levels in this population may be reduced or absent at birth (Zola et al, 1983).

Although there is frequently a limitation on the quantity of blood to be drawn for such studies, it is essential that the first evaluation be performed on blood specimens obtained at the same time. Functional studies need to be performed on fresh anticoagulated blood whenever possible (or blood stored at room temperature in the dark for less than 24 hours) before mononuclear cells are isolated. When blood is being sent by air or transport to a distant laboratory, it is extremely important to include a control specimen drawn in parallel from a healthy person to serve as an internal standard for the shipping process. The type of tube chosen to draw the blood is important. The use of lithium heparin– or ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid–containing tubes is not recommended for any lymphocyte functional studies. Sodium heparin (preservative free) or acid citrate dextrose tubes must be used. Blood collected in heparinized tubes can also be

BOX 45-2

Basic Screening Immunology Studies

- Complete blood count with leukocyte differential count
- Isohemagglutinin titers
- Lymphocyte subpopulation analysis (numbers and percentages of T and B cells) by flow cytometry
- Lymphocyte activation in vitro to mitogens and microbial activators
- Serum immunoglobulins, including immunoglobulin subclasses if evidence of clinical infection with encapsulated bacteria. In some cases, immunoglobulin levels are normal, but heterogeneous nonbinding antibodies are produced; thus additional studies are needed.

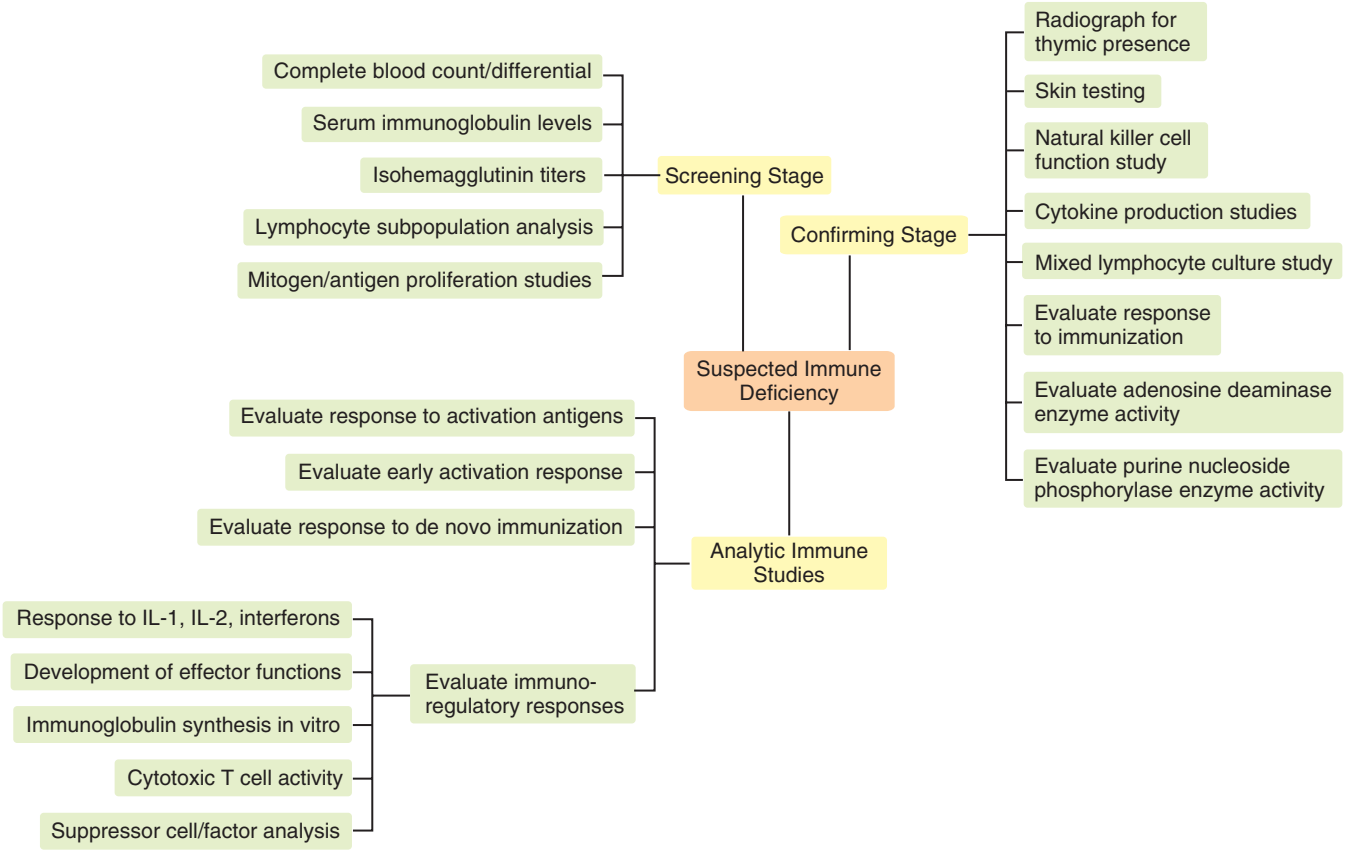


Figure 45-6 The three phases of the clinical evaluation of a suspected deficiency of cellular immunity.

used for flow cytometric analysis, although the timing of specimen preparation and analysis is critical (Standards NCfCL, 1992; Nicholson & Green, 1993).

The question of when the blood should be drawn is important. In general, most data have been obtained from blood drawn in the morning, and circadian effects may influence results. When this cannot be done, it is helpful to continue to maintain uniformity of drawing time for an individual patient. This is most critical when measuring absolute numbers of T lymphocyte subsets in the monitoring of HIV disease or as part of a clinical trial (Malone et al, 1990).

The screening stage also includes a panel approach to assess mitogenic and antigenic proliferative response. The proliferative response of lymphocytes to a range of activators continues to be one of the most sensitive tools to assess normal function, and, when this includes an appropriate T cell and B cell activator, it can be useful in defining the areas of defect. Although this is not always done, the use of multiple concentrations of each activator is strongly recommended.

STAGES OF STUDY: THE CONFIRMING STAGE

General Aspects

Once the screening of the individual has been achieved and evidence of a potential immune deficiency has been observed, initial findings should be confirmed by repeated tests. Minimally, a positive and a negative (normal range and abnormal range) test should be carried out. Additional tests sometimes may be added to the panel; this may provide the beginning phase of analytic studies.

It is important to make appropriate arrangements to draw blood when the patient is in the most clinically stable state. Double baseline studies are recommended before intervention is undertaken, and these can encompass the confirming phase. In some cases of apparent immune deficiency, sequestration of immune cells is reflected in low percentages of T lymphocytes in the peripheral compartment. The confirmation stage should also include a careful reevaluation of the patient's medical history and family history. Studies that may be used at this confirming stage are shown in Box 45-3.

Thymic Presence

The roentgenogram for thymic shadow may be inadequate because the thymus is highly prone to stress depletion and is no longer visible (Dooley & Liston, 2012; Gui et al, 2012; Simanovsky et al, 2012; Rezzani et al, 2014). Although it is difficult to determine with accuracy, the actual size of the thymus assessed by magnetic resonance imaging has been found to correlate with the $CD4^+$ T lymphocyte number in HIV infection (Vigano et al, 1999). Recent studies suggest that the human thymus can be thought of as a chimeric organ that comprises both central and peripheral lymphoid tissues. These studies also have shown that thymic involution is an integral part of immunosenescence, mediated by a complex process involving multiple molecular mediators, including cytokines and steroid hormones (Haynes et al, 2000; Dooley & Liston, 2012). As described in the subsequent specific section on flow cytometric evaluation of T lymphocyte subsets, expression of normal maturation antigens acquired during thymic development will suffice to identify the presence of a working thymus.

Skin Testing

The use of a skin test panel can be important at this point. This approach to cellular immune assessment originally served as the departure point for the development of the cellular immune functional tests because it measures delayed-type hypersensitivity directly in vivo. Experience with the delayed-type hypersensitivity skin test has shown good overall correlation between lack of reactivity—termed *anergy*—and immune deficiency (Deodhar, 1983; Maas et al, 1998), but it has not been useful as an analytic tool to dissect out the reason for lack of response. In addition, the skin test is not very quantifiable. Use of the purified protein derivative skin test to assess the possible presence of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is an exception, although anergic individuals do not respond; in addition, false-positives are seen in persons who have been vaccinated with bacille Calmette-Guérin (Huebner et al, 1993). The relative effectiveness of a standardized *Candida albicans* skin test product in children has been reported (Ohri et al, 2004).

Reasons for lack of skin test response are shown in Box 45-4. Some studies have been based on a de novo immunization skin test using dinitrofluorobenzene. Although this once was used rather extensively, the approach is no longer considered useful because of ambiguities in the underlying mechanism of reaction. The introduction of the "skin window" test may ultimately provide a more quantitative and informative measure of in vivo immune response because the reaction can be used to test autologous tumor response (Black et al, 1988). However, despite some reservations, the importance of the skin test as a convincing demonstration that immune defects noted in vitro may have prognostic significance in vivo should not be underestimated.

STAGES OF STUDY: ANALYTIC IMMUNE STUDIES

Analytic studies are outlined generally in Box 45-5. Although a complete description of these approaches is beyond the scope of this discussion, in general these studies attempt to identify the underlying mechanism of immune defect by proceeding through a series of steps. Although there are different possible ways of doing this, one good way is to assess the general level of defect by following the general plan of assessing the presence of cell types and the relative proportions of all in light of areas of diminished general function, and then to perform studies of effector function.

If cell populations have been determined to be essentially intact in the absence of activation, the issue of intrinsic failure may be studied by many different approaches, including the use of expanded lymphocyte surface marker analysis, framework determinants to the TCR, and activation antigens such as CD25, CD38, and HLA-DR (Box 45-6). Absence of MHC class II upregulation in response to IFN-γ is one example. Although cell populations may express a reference normal differentiation antigen, they may also coexpress others inappropriately, and this may be a key to

BOX 45-3
Confirming and First-Stage Analytic Studies

Radiograph for thymic shadow
Skin test
Natural killer cell activity (if child is 6 months or older)
Cytokine production in response to activation T-helper 1, T-helper 2 (interleukin [IL]-2, interferon [IFN]-γ, IL-4, and so on)
Mixed lymphocyte culture reaction with patient as stimulator and patient as responder
Response to immunization
- Test for presence of age-appropriate specific antibodies
- Naturally occurring antibody response to isohemagglutinins (anti-A and anti-B blood group substances) if patient has A, B, or O blood type
- Test for adenosine deaminase and purine nucleoside phosphorylase enzyme deficiency

BOX 45-4
Causes of Skin Test Anergy

- Lack of appropriate antigenic history when panel does not include ubiquitous activators
- Primary immunodeficiency
- Viral infection
- Malnutrition
- Granulomatous disease
- Neoplasia

BOX 45-5
Analytic and Immunoregulatory Studies

Development of activation antigens during response to stimulation, such as Tac antigen, transferrin receptor, upregulation for MHC class II on T cells, soluble receptors, and so on
Early activation response (e.g., calcium channels)
Immunoregulation
- Response to IL-1, IL-2, interferons
- Development of effector functions
- Immunoglobulin synthesis in vitro
- Cytotoxic T cell activity
- Suppressor cell/factor analysis

Gene activation, cell cycle analysis
Response to immunization: de novo immunization

IL, Interleukin; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex.

BOX 45-6

Immunophenotyping Lymphocyte Subpopulations

Basic peripheral blood panel (whole blood, lysed red blood cells*)
- CD45/CD14
- Isotype mouse immunoglobulin controls
- CD3/CD19
- CD3/CD4
- CD3/CD8
- CD3/CD56 and 16

Isolated mononuclear cells, activation panel†
- CD45/CD14

Isotype mouse immunoglobulin controls
- CD3/CD25 (IL-2R)
- CD3/HLA-DR

HLA, Human leukocyte antigen; *IL,* interleukin.
*If low CD3, then repeat and add CD2. Further, monoclonals against TCR paired with CD3 may be added. Monocyte markers also may be evaluated. These may be performed using three- or four-color reagents using CD45 gating.
†After 2 days of culture, remove cells and wash before staining with monoclonal antibodies listed; analyze control cells containing no activator, then analyze activated cells. Activators may include mitogen, IL-2, and/or interferon-γ.

functional abnormality. For example, $CD8^+$ T cells coexpressing CD38 are not functionally the same as CD8 cells that do not express this marker and are expanded in HIV disease (Giorgi & Detels, 1989). Absence of expression of certain molecules, such as CD28, is another important indicator. In some primary immune deficiency syndromes, upregulation of the IL-2 receptor in response to IL-2 may be abnormal. Receptors may not be translocated normally, or receptors may be shed prematurely (Cunningham-Rundles et al, 1990).

Development of the immune response may be kinetically abnormal because of delayed secondary recruitment during the amplification phase. This should be tested by doing time course studies. In some cases, cytokines may not be made, or they may be functionally altered. Effector functions may be missing or impaired. Evaluation of this may require a detailed approach. Attempts to restore response by addition of cytokine may be useful, although this may circumvent the lesion through compensation rather than fill in the actual deficiency. New testing strategies may utilize whole blood rather than isolated mononuclear cells (Bocchieri et al, 1995). This system provides an excellent ex vivo mirror of immune response, because the actual relationships among cells are not altered. Furthermore, this system can be used to measure cytokine production (Petrovsky & Harrison, 1995; Suni et al, 1998).

The cellular immunology laboratory is advised to choose basic analytic studies that are normally done on a routine basis, so a basis for comparison is available. Establishment of laboratory normal ranges and maintenance of reagent quality control, especially for certain variable elements, are essential for the accuracy and sensitivity of these tests.

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF LYMPHOCYTE FUNCTION

Developmental defects, inherited genetic abnormalities, and acquired infections cause profound immunodeficiency states. Additionally, severe burns, trauma, and therapeutic intervention may lead to immunodeficiency. Bulk assays can be used to ascertain whether or not an individual has a decreased T cell proliferative response and have been available for some time, but they are limited both by poor reproducibility and by the limited information garnered from bulk assays. Recent technological developments have allowed for the production of a variety of reagents that can be used to assess multiple activities along the pathway of T cell activation. These reagents include monoclonal antibodies specific for T cell activation markers, reagents and systems for the detection of intracellular cytokines, and tracking dyes and nonradioactive DNA precursors developed to assess lymphocyte proliferation.

LYMPHOCYTE TRANSFORMATION ASSAYS

Principles of Lymphocyte Transformation

The most common in vivo procedure used to assess cellular immunity is a simple skin test. A positive skin test for the detection of a delayed-type hypersensitivity response implies intact cellular immunity, as well as intact monocyte chemotaxis (Borut et al, 1980; Ananworanich & Shearer, 2002). Although skin testing is easily performed, negative results are difficult to interpret, especially in young children, and skin testing is not as sensitive as in vitro lymphocyte stimulation assays (Borut et al, 1980). Other in vivo correlates of cell-mediated immunity include contact sensitivity, granuloma formation, and allograft rejection.

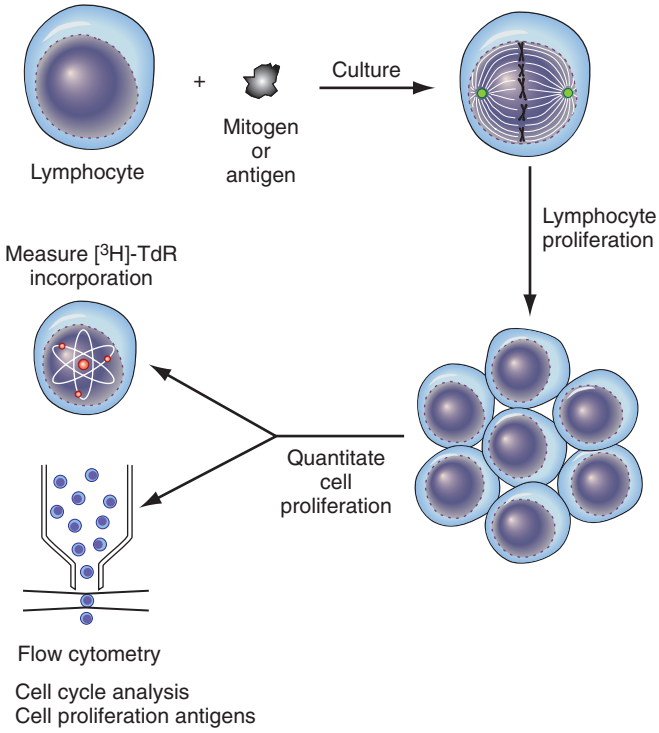


Figure 45-7 Principle of lymphocyte stimulation assay. Lymphocytes are cultured with antigen or mitogen. If stimulation occurs, a proliferative reaction takes place, with the formation of daughter cells. The amount of proliferation can be determined from tritiated thymidine (^{3}H-TdR) incorporation, by flow cytometric cell cycle kinetic analysis, or by measuring a cell proliferation antigen such as Ki-67. (Reprinted with permission from Riley RS, Mahin EJ, Ross W: *Clinical applications of flow cytometry.* New York, 1993, Igaku-Shoin Medical Publishers.)

Mitogen-Induced Blastogenesis

Most laboratories assess the proliferative capacity of lymphocytes by measuring the rate of incorporation of radiolabeled DNA nucleosides (tritiated thymidine) following prolonged incubation of peripheral blood mononuclear cell cultures with mitogens (3 to 4 days) or antigens (5 to 10 days) (Maluish & Strong, 1986). In general, only a limited number of T cells respond to any one antigen in vitro; therefore, cells must be cultured from 5 to 10 days to detect a response. In vitro lymphocyte transformation in response to a mitogen was first reported by Nowell (1960). Mitogens and IL-2 in general are the most potent stimuli, because they induce the rapid proliferation of the largest proportion of lymphocytes. For this reason, proliferation can be detected in 3 to 4 days and thus provides an effective screening tool. Of the mitogens, phytohemagglutinin and concanavalin A (Con A) induce T cell blastogenesis, and pokeweed mitogen and staphylococcal protein A trigger B cell activation. The cellular signaling pathways of mitogen-induced B cell activation have recently been described (Nikitin et al, 2014).

In the standard mitogen-induced blastogenesis procedure, lymphocytes are isolated with Ficoll-Hypaque density gradient centrifugation and cultured for several days with a mitogen or a specific soluble antigen in media enriched with human AB serum. Tritiated thymidine is added to the culture media, and the plates are incubated for an additional 4 to 24 hours. The cells are isolated (harvested) from the plates using a special device (cell harvester) and are transferred to disks of filter paper (Fig. 45-7). These disks are placed in scintillation fluid, and radioactive emissions are measured in a liquid scintillation counter. The mitogen-induced blastogenesis technique is classified as a **bulk assay method** because the response of the entire cell population is measured.

Several controls are necessary in bulk assays of lymphocyte proliferation because the assays may be influenced by the number of cultured cells, incubation time and temperature, mitogen concentration, and various inhibitory factors that may be present. The results are expressed as a

stimulation index, which is the ratio of radioisotope incorporation into the test versus control cells. The relative proliferation index is the ratio of the δ counts per minute (cpm) of the test subject (cpm of stimulated cells minus unstimulated control cells) to the δ cpm of a panel of normal individuals tested simultaneously.

Bulk assays, in addition to their inherent technical problems, provide no information on the specific cell subsets that are responding. Cram and colleagues (1976) were among the first to resolve this problem through analysis of blastogenesis at the single cell level by flow cytometry. Since that time, flow cytometry with its inherent multiparameter potential has become the instrument of choice for analysis of lymphocyte transformation and other aspects of the cellular immune response. Comprehensive reviews of flow cytometry and methods used to assess lymphocyte activation and proliferation have been published by Maluish and Perfetto (Maluish & Strong, 1986; Perfetto et al, 2002).

Precise measurement of the proportion of lymphocytes in the various phases of the cell cycle (i.e., cell cycle analysis) is critical for flow cytometric studies of blastogenesis and lymphocyte proliferation. In general, two distinct approaches are used in cell cycle analysis. In the past, the preferred approach was to measure the level of fluorescence intensity emitted by DNA staining dyes. The most commonly used dye was propidium iodide, a phenanthridinium-based compound that intercalates stoichiometrically into DNA (i.e., the amount or intensity of fluorescence is proportional to the amount of DNA in a cell). Using complex mathematical modeling, the percentages of cells in the G_0/G_1, S, and G_2 phases can be determined from the distribution of the fluorescence intensity. Most peripheral blood lymphocytes are in the resting phase of the cell cycle, with fewer than 5% of cells in the S phase. Many fluorescent dyes with different DNA binding affinities and spectral properties have also been used, including ethidium bromide, DAPI, Hoechst 33258, and Hoechst 33342. Bromodeoxyuridine (5-bromo-2-deoxyuridine, BrdU) is another substance used to measure the proliferation of lymphocytes and other cells. BrdU is a synthetic analog of thymidine that is incorporated into the DNA of replicating cells, while substituting for thymidine. Fluorochrome-labeled antibodies specific for BrdU are used to measure BrdU incorporation and cell proliferation. The quantitation of cell cycle–related nuclear proliferation antigens is another approach for the measurement of cell cycling and proliferation in lymphocyte and other cell populations. Ki-67 antigen is a nuclear protein expressed by proliferating cells in all phases of the cell cycle, but not by resting cells (Sawhney & Hall, 1992). Labeled monoclonal antibodies specific for Ki-67 can be measured by flow cytometric or immunohistochemical techniques to obtain the **Ki-67 proliferation index**.

The use of dyes that stably integrate into the membranes of live lymphocytes or other cells is the most recently described means of measuring lymphocyte proliferation. After washing away excess dye, the lymphocytes are stimulated to divide. With each successive division, the amount of dye per cell is halved. The fluorescence emitted from the cells after culture can be modeled, and the number of cell divisions can be estimated. This method has been standardized into a kit that includes both the software required for analyses and the tracking dye (Sigma Immunochemicals, St. Louis, Mo.). The evaluation of multiple dyes by many investigators has revealed PKH26, PKH67, carboxyfluorescein diacetate succinimidyl ester (CFSE), and CellVue Claret as most suitable for their ability to quantify lymphocyte proliferation (Tario et al, 2007, 2011, 2012; Gil et al, 2009; Begum et al, 2013; Zolnierowicz, 2013; Tosevski & Mair, 2014). This assay may provide the most accurate assessment of cell proliferative response in in vitro culture systems with the substantial advantage over standard bulk assays of allowing the measurement of specific lymphocyte subsets. CFSE indices appear to correlate more closely with TdR assays than measurement of $CD69^+$ cells (Angulo & Fulcher, 1998).

Some laboratories have replaced the tritiated thymidine incorporation assays with a combination of cell surface marker induction assays and measurement of the percentage of cells at various phases of the cell cycle following activation (Cost et al, 1993).

The recently developed ability to measure the production of cell-associated cytokines at the single-cell level also has significant potential as a clinical tool for evaluation of the cellular immune response (Nomura et al, 2008; Suni & Maino, 2011; Freer, 2014). Cytokine flow cytometry (intracellular cytokine detection) is performed by stimulating target cells for 4 to 6 hours in the presence of membrane transport blocking reagents (brefeldin A or monensin) to prevent the secretion of cytokines. Cells are then labeled with subset-specific monoclonal antibodies, fixed, permeabilized, and labeled with fluorescently tagged monoclonal antibodies specific for the cytokine of interest (Freer & Rindi, 2013; Qiu et al, 2014). The assay has been developed with the presence of costimulatory antibodies for the sensitive detection of antigen responses in whole blood cultures after relatively short incubation periods (Suni et al, 1998). Special attention is being focused on the development of antibodies that recognize the nascent forms of the cytokines (within the Golgi) and optimization of the timing of culture to detect maximal cytokine response (Mascher et al, 1999). Clinical studies have begun to demonstrate the potential utility of this technique. For example, patients suffering very severe burns who show a shift to a Th2 cytokine response may be at increased risk for the development of multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (Zedler et al, 1999), and clinically active multiple sclerosis patients may show increased production of IL-10 (Inoges et al, 1999). Expansion of this technique to incorporate the ability to simultaneously measure proliferation and specific cytokine synthesis at the single-cell level has been reported but has not yet been evaluated in a clinical setting (Mehta & Maino, 1997).

Clearly, new assays are being developed that measure different events involved in T-cell activation. Methods and reagents are available to measure the earliest phosphorylation/dephosphorylation events through signal transduction, gene transcription, and cell division. As these methods are adapted for routine clinical use, we will have a veritable armamentarium of methods to assess many of the processes involved in lymphocyte activation and proliferation. Although many of these new technologies are still within the domain of research laboratories, the methods are constantly being simplified and adapted for use and evaluation in clinical laboratories.

Mixed Lymphocyte Culture

The mixed lymphocyte culture (MLC) assay is a special type of lymphocyte stimulation assay based on the ability of histoincompatible lymphocytes from one individual to stimulate the lymphocytes of another individual (mixed lymphocyte reaction) (Bach & Segall, 1974; Dupont et al, 1976; Mickelson & Hansen, 1990). Although complex in origin, the D locus of the HLA system is the major determinant of the MLC phenomenon. When two cells share common D loci, they are not able to stimulate each other, but when the D loci are different, the cells are stimulated. The MLC is unilateral (one way) when one group of cells are made incapable of responding (by treatment with radiation or mithromycin); it is bidirectional (two way) when no radiation or mithromycin is utilized. In the one-way MLC, untreated cells are termed the *responder population*, and treated cells are the *stimulator population* (Fig. 45-8).

Numerous factors must be considered in performance and interpretation of the MLC. Because the reaction is complex, lack of stimulation between two cell types cannot be considered as conclusive evidence of histocompatibility at the HLA-D locus. Other minor histocompatibility loci may also be involved, as well as some non-HLA loci. In addition, specific and nonspecific serum factors can inhibit the assay, and lymphocytes from diseased individuals may not perform well. Numerous controls (including autologous controls) must be included, and the assay must be performed as expected for the results to be accepted as valid. The principal clinical use of the MLC assay is to assist in the selection of a compatible donor for a bone marrow transplant, because the MLC is a predictor of host response to a transplanted organ. To prevent graft rejection or graft-versus-host disease, donor and recipient cells must be mutually nonstimulatory (El-Agroudy et al, 2004).

Flow cytometric quantitation of the mixed lymphocyte reaction has been reported. In the method reported by both Cram and Kanda, nuclear DNA content during lymphocyte blastogenesis was determined with a DNA-specific fluorochrome (PI) (Cram et al, 1976; Kanda et al, 1985). With this technique, the proliferative index (percentages of cells in the S phase and G_2M phase of the cell cycle) is a direct measurement of de novo DNA synthesis. A good correlation ($r = 0.9493$) was observed between the flow cytometric measurement of the mixed lymphocyte reaction and the results using a traditional MLC with ^{3}H-thymidine incorporation. Other investigators have utilized BrdU, Ki-67, or CFSE for the flow cytometric quantitation of T cell proliferation in the MLR (Palutke et al, 1987, 1989; Bontadini et al, 1990; Marin et al, 2003; Onoe et al, 2003; Tanaka et al, 2005). Multiparametric analysis has also been used to measure nuclear DNA content in conjunction with T cell subsets, activation antigens, apoptosis, cytokine secretion, and other parameters during the MLR (Williams et al, 1984; Uchida et al, 1987, 1988; Lavergne & del Llano, 1990; Nguyen et al, 2003; Suresh et al, 2005).

CYTOTOXICITY ASSAYS

Cell death (cytotoxicity) is the endpoint commonly used in functional assays of the cellular immune system. In these assays, cell cytotoxicity may occur as the result of complement activity (complement-mediated cytotoxicity) or may be due to the direct effect of one cell on another

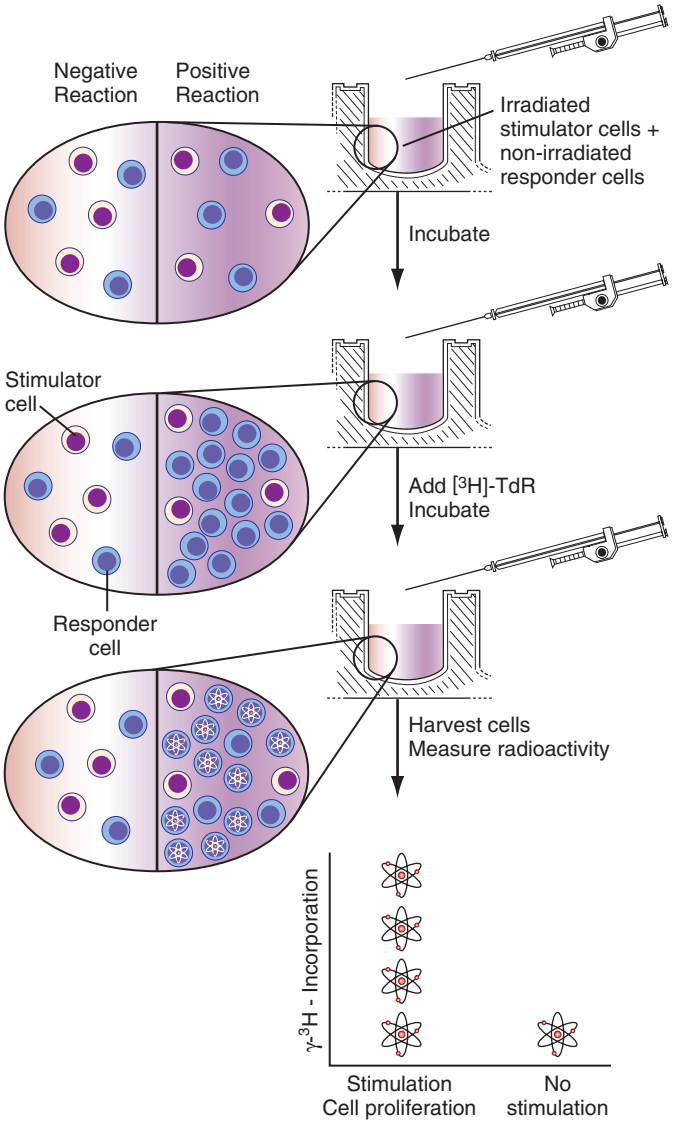


Figure 45-8 **The one-way mixed lymphocyte culture (MLC) assay.** Irradiated stimulator cells, which are incapable of cell division, are mixed with nonirradiated responder cells, which can proliferate and divide. After incubation under cell culture conditions for approximately 1 week, responder cells proliferate in the presence of a disparity in the human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-D locus *(right side of diagram)*, but no proliferation occurs if the responder and stimulator cells are HLA-D compatible *(left side of diagram)*. Tritiated thymidine is added to the reaction mixture, and the degree of proliferation is determined by liquid scintillation counting. (Reprinted with permission from Riley RS: Basic principles of immunodiagnosis. In McClatchey KD, editor: *Clinical laboratory medicine*, Baltimore, 1994, Williams & Wilkins.)

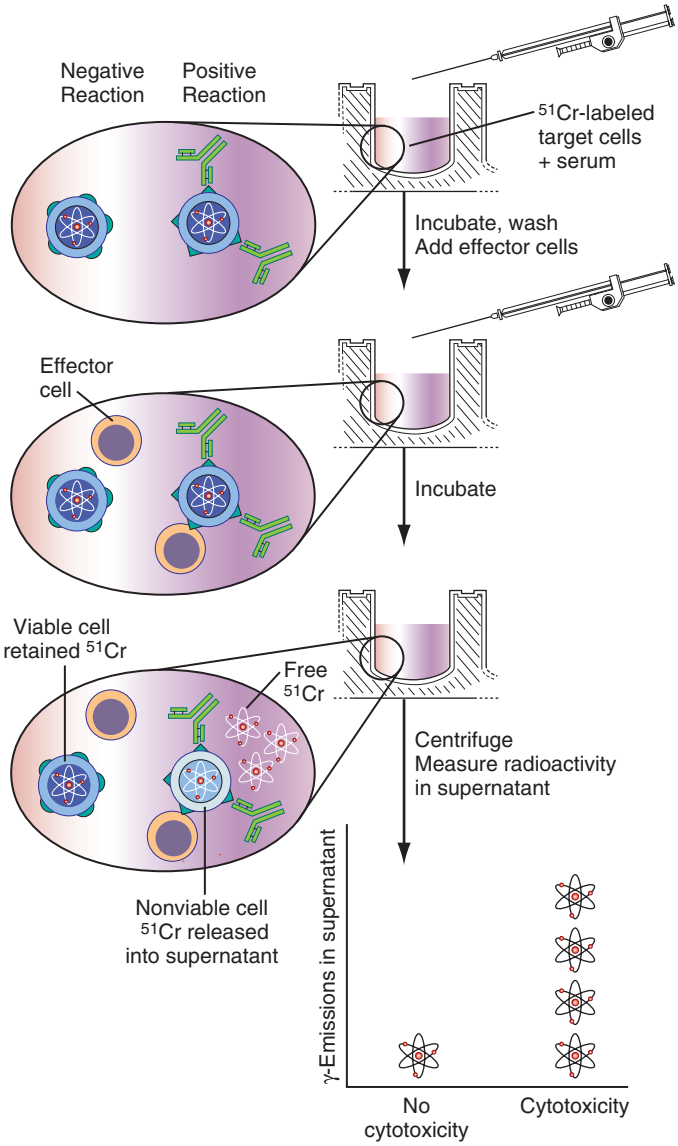


Figure 45-9 **Principle of the antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) assay.** This assay is performed with mononuclear cells from a kidney organ donor or from several unrelated individuals (panel cells), which are stimulated with phytohemagglutinin (PHA) and labeled with ^{51}Cr. Following incubation with eluate from another nephrectomy specimen or from normal human serum, labeled cells are washed and incubated with effector cells from a normal unrelated individual. Radioactivity (γ-emissions) in the cells at the end of the experiment represents unlysed cells. The results are expressed as % cytotoxicity. (Reprinted with permission from Riley RS: Basic principles of immunodiagnosis. In McClatchey KD, editor: *Clinical laboratory medicine*, Baltimore, 1994, Williams & Wilkins.)

(cell-mediated cytotoxicity). Conventionally, target cell lysis is determined by the release of a substance such as ^{51}chromium (^{51}Cr) from the target cell upon death or by the incorporation of a vital dye such as eosin or tryptan blue. A variation of these assays, the microlymphocytotoxicity assay, is widely used in the clinical histocompatibility laboratory for human organ transplantation. However, the accuracy and reproducibility of these assays are often compromised by the length and technical complexity of the assays, technical problems such as poor uptake or nonspecific release of the marker, or the need for subjective interpretation of the results. The advent of new markers, in combination with the quantitative and multiparametric abilities of the flow cytometer, has made cytotoxicity assays much more practical for biomedical research studies. Other than in histocompatibility testing, these assays have not achieved widespread utilization in patient care.

Cytotoxic T Cell (CTL) Assays

Cytotoxic T cells (CTLs, T killer cells, cytolytic T cells, CD8$^+$ T cells, killer T cells) constitute a subset of T cells that are important in the host defense against altered class I MHC-positive self cells, especially cells infected with a virus or other pathogen. CTLs recognize altered target cells by the presence of peptide fragments produced by processing of the foreign antigen and presented by the class I MHC receptor to the T cell antigen receptor. Recognition of an MHC complex on a target cell by a CTL induces cell death by apoptosis by the granule-exocytosis pathway (granule endocytosis) or the FAS-FAS ligand pathway (Barry & Bleackley, 2002; Lieberman, 2003).

Transfused ^{51}Cr-labeled cells, especially red blood cells, have been used since the early 1950s to study cellular in vivo distribution and kinetics. In the mid-1960s, Goodman (1961), Sanderson (1964), and Wigzell (1965) independently described the use of ^{51}Cr-labeled mouse tumor of lymph node cells to study antibody-dependent complement-mediated cytotoxicity. Since that time, the **chromium release assay** has become the standard technique for the measurement of complement- or cell-mediated cytotoxicity. In the chromium release assay for cytotoxic T cell activity, the binding of CTLs to infected ^{51}Cr-labeled target cells with virus peptide on syngeneic class I MHC induces apoptosis with the proportional release of ^{51}Cr into the supernatant (Fig. 45-9) (Levin, 1978). Alternatives for the chromium release assay were developed because of the disadvantages of the assay, including its relatively limited sensitivity and use of a radioisotope. The most widely employed alternative techniques include flow

cytometry and variations of the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA).

Measurement of antibody- or cell-mediated cytotoxicity by flow cytometry is based on the discrimination of viable and nonviable cells with fluorescent dyes (Liu et al, 2004; Alheim, 2013; Popescu et al, 2014). In addition to relatively high sensitivity, flow cytometry permits multiparametric analysis, with simultaneous detection of up to 12 markers at the single-cell level. The permeability of the cell membrane is the most widely used parameter of cell viability measured by flow cytometry. Damaged or nonviable cells have altered membrane permeability, and many leak some intracellular substances into the supernatant, while losing the ability to prevent other dyes from penetrating the cell membrane. PI and 7-AAD were the first fluorescent dyes to be used for flow cytometric measurements of cell viability because they are excluded by live cells but rapidly penetrate cells with damaged membranes. Fluorescein diacetate, carboxyfluorescein diacetate (CFDA), and calcein are lipid-soluble, nonfluorescent probes that are metabolized by cytoplasmic esterases to produce a charged, fluorescent product that is retained within the cell if the cell membrane is intact (Zarcone et al, 1986; Talbot et al, 1987). Other dyes used for viability determination include PKH-1 (Slezak & Horan, 1989), hydroxystilbamidine methanesulfonate (Fluoro-Gold [FG]) (Barber et al, 1999), SYTO13 (Shenkin, 2007), Cell Tracker Orange (Kim et al, 2007), and calcofluor white M2R (Berglund et al, 1987). In many cases, the simultaneous use of two or more markers permits the most accurate measurement of cytotoxicity. One example is the use of PKH-1 in conjunction with PI. PKH-1 is a fluorochrome that emits light in the green region of the spectrum, binds avidly to the cytoplasmic membrane, and is not transferred to other cells. In one application, PKH-1 is used to label the target cells, while a second fluorochrome with a red emission signal (PI) is used to detect nonviable cells (Slezak & Horan, 1989). This combination of markers allows statistically valid quantitation of both dead and live effectors and targets, permitting the simultaneous determination of percent target lysis, effector-to-target ratio, viability of the effector cells at the termination of the assay, and viable effector-to-target cell ratios.

The enzyme-linked immunosorbent spot (ELISPOT) assay is a very sensitive, extremely versatile adaptation of sandwich ELISA (Kalyuzhny, 2005, 2009). Originally described by Czerkinsky and colleagues in 1983 to detect individual B cells secreting antigen-specific antibodies, the ELISPOT was rapidly adapted to detect T cell cytokine excretion (Czerkinsky et al, 1983; Arvilommi, 1996; Schmittel et al, 2000; Stott, 2000; Sedgwick, 2005). Because the ELISPOT assay can reproducibly detect the proportion of antigen-specific or cytokine-secreting cells at a sensitivity of $^{1}/_{100,000}$ to $^{1}/_{1,000,000}$, it has achieved widespread use in research involving cancer, infectious disease, immune disease, and solid organ transplantation (Slota et al, 2011; Augustine & Hricik, 2012; Lehmann & Zhang, 2012). Clinically, the ELISPOT is used in immune monitoring and the detection of latent tuberculosis infection (Achkar et al, 2011). The ELISPOT utilizes polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF)–backed microplates coated with a monoclonal or polyclonal capture antibody specific for the desired analyte, usually IFN-γ (Kalyuzhny, 2005; Weiss, 2012). A cell suspension and appropriate antigens or mitogens are added to the microplates, and they are incubated in a humidified carbon dioxide (CO_2) incubator at 37° C for a specified time. The plates are washed to remove cells and debris, a biotinylated polyclonal antibody specific for the analyte is added, the plates are washed a second time to remove unbound antibody, and avidin-horseradish peroxidase and a precipitating substrate are added to develop the assay. Colored spots on the plate represent individual analyte-producing cells (Fig. 45-10). The spots can be manually or automatically detected and counted. A variation of this assay using fluorochrome-labeled antibodies (Fluorospot assay) permits the simultaneous detection of two or three cytokines (Gazagne et al, 2005; Rebhahn et al, 2008; Ahlborg & Axelsson, 2012; Janetzki et al, 2014). A variation of the ELISPOT for the detection of granzyme B, rather than IFN-γ, has shown better correlation with the chromium release assay for the measurement of cytotoxic T cell activity (Salk et al, 2013; Ranieri et al, 2014).

Natural Killer Cell–Mediated Cytotoxicity

NK cells are critical members of the innate immune system characterized by their capability to lyse target cells without prior sensitization, termed **spontaneous cell-mediated cytotoxicity** (Crome et al, 2013; Moretta et al, 2014; Bodduluru et al, 2015). NK cells can be subdivided into two functional and immunophenotypically distinct groups defined by the surface density of CD56 (i.e., CD56bright, CD56dim) (Morice, 2007; Milush et al, 2009; Bryceson et al, 2010; Lanier, 2014). Release of ^{51}Cr from labeled target cells is the standard method for the characterization of NK cells (Friberg et al, 1996). The chronic myeloid leukemia cell line K562 has been used as the standard target in these assays. A variety of other techniques are under evaluation because the ^{51}Cr-release technique has many disadvantages, including the use of radioisotopes, low sensitivity, and the spontaneous release of ^{51}Cr. These methods include the incorporation of radioactive nucleotides during cell proliferation, dye exclusion, target cell enzyme release, and flow cytometry. Flow cytometric analysis has been performed using a wide variety of markers to differentiate live and dead target cells, including CFDA, PI, Hoechst 33342, fluorochrome octadecylamine-fluorescein isothiocyanate (F-18), usually in combination with multiparametric analysis of cell surface makers, degranulation, cytokine production, and other parameters (Bryceson et al, 2010; Scherbakova et al, 2013; Lee et al, 2014; Mhatre et al, 2014; Ortaldo et al, 2014).

Microlymphocytotoxicity Assay

The dye exclusion lymphocytotoxicity assay is the standard technique for the detection of an antibody–antigen interaction on a cell surface. The lymphocytotoxicity assay was introduced by Terasaki and McClelland in 1964 and was later accepted as the National Institutes of Health standard procedure for histocompatibility testing (Terasaki & McClelland, 1964). In the histocompatibility laboratory, variations of the lymphocytotoxicity assay are used for HLA typing, detection of anti-HLA antibodies, and crossmatch testing (Duquesnoy & Marrari, 2003; Fidler, 2012).

In the lymphocytotoxicity procedure, viable cells (usually lymphocytes) are incubated with serum-containing antisera. If a cell surface antigen is present that is recognized by antibodies in the sera, an antigen–antibody complex will form on the surface. These complexes are detected by the sequential addition of rabbit complement and a vital dye, such as eosin, to the reaction mixture. The occurrence of complement fixation on the cell membrane leads to activation of the terminal complement components, and eventually to cell lysis and death. Dead cells are detected and counted by phase microscopy after differential uptake of the eosin dye and fixation with formalin. Antibody-bound lymphocytes will die, take up the eosin dye, and give a positive reaction; unbound lymphocytes will remain viable, exclude the eosin dye, and give a negative reaction (dye exclusion) (Fig. 45-11).

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF GRANULOCYTE AND MONOCYTE FUNCTION

Monocytes and granulocytes are extremely important in the early inflammatory response, and abnormalities in their functions lead to profound deficiencies in cellular immunity. The activity of neutrophils and macrophages is complex and involves activation of the cell, margination and passage through the vessel wall (diapedesis), movement toward an inflammatory stimulus (chemotaxis, chemokinesis), opsonization, engulfment of the offending agent (phagocytosis), and intracellular killing via the generation of toxic oxygen radicals (Seely et al, 2003; Zarbock & Ley, 2009). Until the modern era of flow cytometry, laboratory analysis of these nonspecific immune parameters was difficult to measure, with available assays being subjective and lacking standardized methods and quality control. In contrast to the subjective assays, many flow cytometric studies are rapid, reproducible, and statistically valid. In addition, the multiparametric capabilities of the flow cytometer permit the simultaneous determination of several cell functions, as well as an assessment of the interrelationship between cell function and other parameters (O'Gorman et al, 2011; Elloumi & Holland, 2014). Flow cytometric assays have been described for the measurement of phagocytosis of microorganisms, degranulation and enzymatic activity, intracellular killing and degradation of microorganisms, exocytosis, opsonization, oxidative metabolism, membrane potential, phagosomal pH, calcium mobilization, F-actin assembly, cell volume, apoptosis, receptor expression, adhesion and aggregation, and other parameters (van Eeden et al, 1999; Elbim & Lizard, 2009; Zarbock & Ley, 2009; Nordenfelt, 2014; Sharma et al, 2014).

ASSAYS OF NEUTROPHILIC ACTIVATION

Neutrophil activation results when stimulatory substances (e.g., chemotactic factors, immune complexes, opsonized particles) bind to surface receptors to initiate metabolic and structural changes in the cell that result in locomotion, degranulation, phagocytosis, the oxidative burst, and other processes. Early studies of neutrophil activation utilized 7-nitrobenz-2-oxa-1,3-diazole-phallacidin, a fluorescent derivative of an acidic phallotoxin isolated from mushrooms of the *Amanita* genus to measure changes in the equilibrium of F-actin that occur during cell activation (Belloc et al,

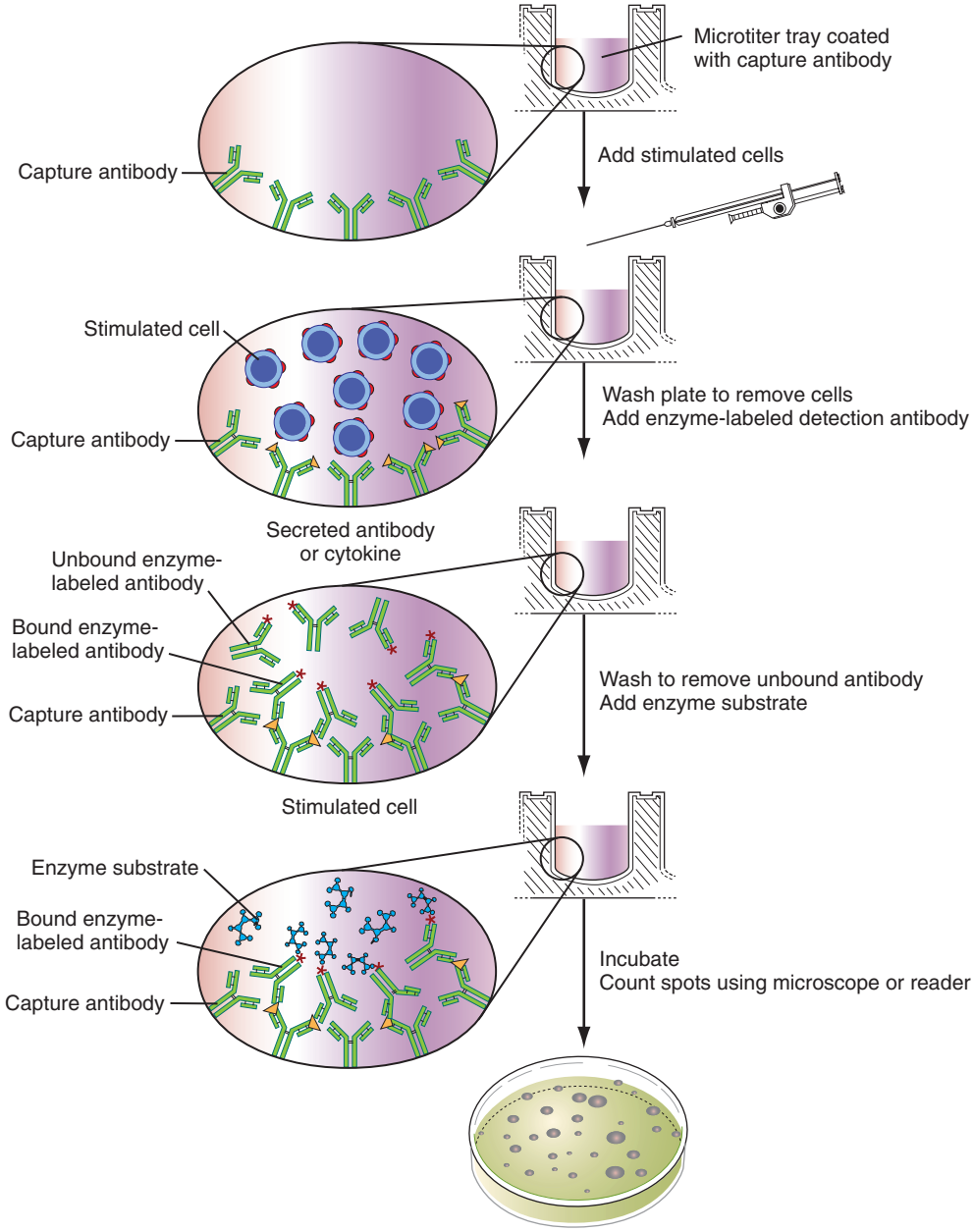


Figure 45-10 Principle of the enzyme-linked immunosorbent spot (ELISPOT) assay. ELISPOT assays bear many similarities to conventional sandwich enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays. A polyvinylidene difluoride (PVDF)–backed microplate is immobilized with an antibody specific for the analyte under evaluation. Immune cells are stimulated with an appropriate antigen or mitogen and then are pipetted into the wells of the microplate. The microplate is incubated in a humidified carbon dioxide (CO_2) chamber at 37° C for a specified period of time, during which stimulated immune products, such as cytokines and antibodies, are secreted. The secreted analyte binds to the immobilized antibody on the microplate. The microplate is washed to remove cells and unbound substances, and a biotinylated polyclonal antibody specific for the chosen analyte is added. Unbound biotinylated antibody is removed by washing, and streptavidin conjugated with alkaline-phosphatase conjugate is added. Following another wash to remove unbound enzyme, the reaction is completed by the addition of the enzyme substrate solution (BCIP/NBT). Dark, blue-black precipitate spots mark the original locations of analyte-secreting cells. The spots can be counted manually under a stereomicroscope, or automatically with a commercial automated ELISPOT reader system.

1990; Packman & Lichtman, 1990). However, the flow cytometric detection of neutrophil activation antigens, especially CD11b, CD13, and CD64, has become the standard technique for studies of neutrophil activation, usually performed in conjunction with other measurements of intercellular neutrophil function, such as the oxidative burst and measurement of the production and release of neutrophil secretion products such as myeloperoxidase, neutrophil elastase, and lactoferrin (Alvarez-Larran et al, 2005; Grey et al, 2011).

ASSAYS OF PHAGOCYTOSIS AND ENDOCYTOSIS

Conventional analysis of phagocytosis uses particles that are visible within the cell and can be counted after ingestion or an ingestible substance that can be extracted from the cell and measured. Live or heat-killed *Candida albicans* or staphylococci fulfill the first criterion and permit a simple, convenient means of measuring phagocytosis. Target cells (i.e., neutrophils and monocytes) are incubated with yeast particles in the fresh serum, Giemsa-stained cell preparations are made, and 200 cells are examined and counted for the presence of ingested microorganisms (Lehrer & Cline, 1969; Lehrer, 1970). The results are expressed as the percentage of target cells showing phagocytosis and the number of particles per phagocytic neutrophil. Oil droplets containing dissolved oil red O stain and coated with *Escherichia coli* liposaccharide and C3 complement have also been used for the measurement of phagocytosis.

Flow cytometric assays of phagocytosis are quantitative and more accurate than subjective studies using visual counting of phagocytosed

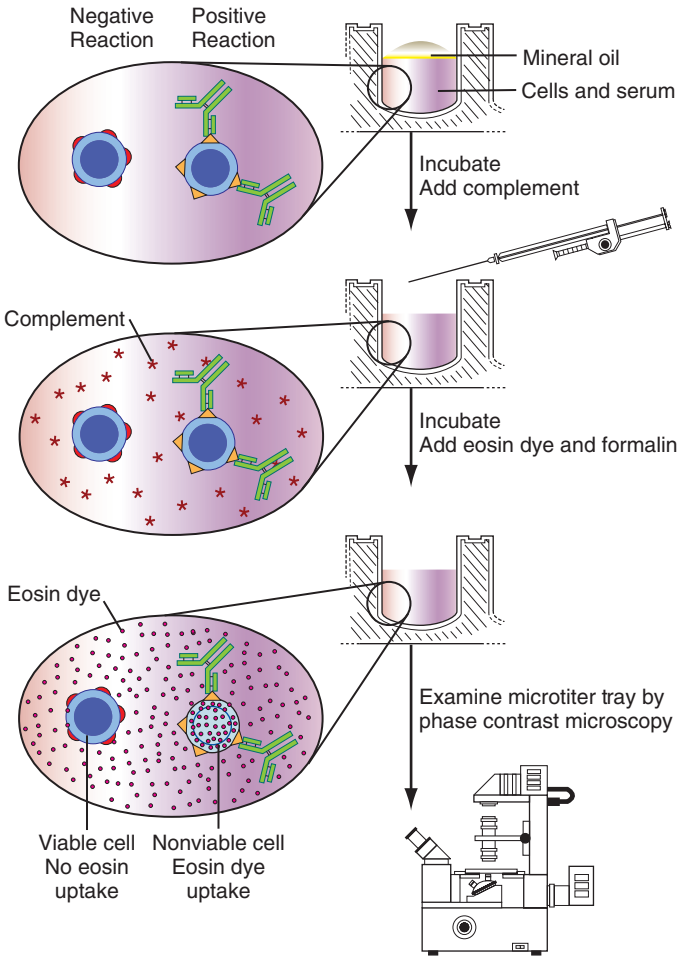


Figure 45-11 Principle of microlymphocytotoxicity by dye exclusion. Cells and serum are incubated together in the wells of a microtiter tray. Mineral oil at the top of the wells prevents fluid evaporation. Complement is added, and a second incubation is performed. The cells are washed, eosin is added, and the cells are fixed with formalin. Cells that fixed antibody and were killed through the action of complement take up eosin and appear dark and nonrefractive under a phase-contrast microscope. In contrast, living cells are refractive and are easily identified by phase-contrast microscopy. Variations of the microlymphocytotoxicity assay are used for human leukocyte antigen (HLA) typing, HLA crossmatch, and detection of anti-HLA antibodies. (Reprinted with permission from Riley RS, Mahin EJ, Ross W: *Clinical applications of flow cytometry*, New York, 1993, Igaku-Shoin Medical Publishers.)

microorganisms (Bjerknes et al, 1989). Different investigators have used a variety of labeled targets to study phagocytosis by both neutrophils and monocytes. Labeled targets have included fluorescent beads coated with opsonins (Dunn & Tyrer, 1981; Steinkamp et al, 1982; Bassøe et al, 1983; Bjerknes, 1984; Bjerknes & Bassøe, 1984; Bassøe & Bjerknes, 1985; Ogle et al, 1988), fluorescein-labeled *C. albicans* (Busetto et al, 2004), FITC-labeled zymosan particles (Nuutila & Lilius, 2005), fluorescein-labeled *Staphylococcus aureus* (Carvalho et al, 2009), fluorescein-labeled *E. coli* (Hirt et al, 1994; Cacciapuoti et al, 2007; Danikas et al, 2008), enhanced green fluorescent protein (EGFP)–expressing *E. coli* (Gille et al, 2006; Bicker et al, 2008), bis-carboxyethyl-carboxyfluorescein pentaacetoxymethylester-labeled *C. albicans* (Pattanapanyasat et al, 2007), and Oregon Green (Nordenfelt, 2014). For example, green fluorescent microspheres coated with C3b, iC3b, IgG, mixtures of these substances, bovine serum albumin, or human F(ab′)2 are utilized in the technique developed by Ogle and colleagues (1988). In this assay, neutrophils are incubated with coated microspheres alone or in the presence of cytochalasin D to inhibit phagocytosis. Externally bound microspheres are then stained with a red-labeled antibody against the immobilized ligand(s), and flow cytometric analysis is performed. The ratio of red-to-green fluorescence in the cytochalasin D–inhibited mixtures is used to correct the uninhibited mixtures for externally bound, nonphagocytosed particles. Net phagocytosis is thus represented by the corrected green fluorescence. The specificity of this technique was confirmed with the use of fluid phase C3b and iC3b and monoclonal antibodies to the receptors.

Receptor-mediated endocytosis is a common method for the cellular uptake of viruses, hormones, proteins, toxins, and other ligands. Endocytosis is a complex process that involves capping, internalization of the ligand, intracellular movement, and entry of the ligand into a subcellular compartment. Fluorescent dyes were first used to study endocytosis by Ohkuma and Poole (1978), who studied intralysosomal pH in living cells using a fluorometer and FITC-dextran. Subsequent investigators have used flow cytometry and fluorescent-labeled ligands or liposomes to follow the internalization of various ligands, while others have utilized changes in pH sensitivity to study internalization and/or intracellular movement (Metezeau et al, 1982; Finney & Sklar, 1983; Truneh et al, 1983; Murphy, 1984a, 1984b; van Deurs et al, 1984; Elguindi et al, 1985; Ruud et al, 1989; Becker et al, 1997). A different technique was utilized by Wang Yang (Wang Yang et al, 1988), who used flow cytometric pulse profiles to study capping and endocytosis by mouse B lymphocytes and BCL_1 cells. In this assay, the cells were stained with FITC-labeled anti-immunoglobulin and were permitted to undergo changes in a temperature-controlled flow cytometer sample compartment. Cap formation resulted in decreases in area values from pH-dependent quenching as the internalized antibody entered the acidic subcellular compartments. Fattorossi described a related procedure utilizing FITC-conjugated, heat-killed *C. albicans* (F-Ca) opsonized with purified antibodies, or normal human serum (Fattorossi et al, 1989). Neutrophils were first incubated with the labeled, opsonized *Candida* particles and subsequently with ethidium bromide. Although ethidium bromide does not penetrate intact cell membranes, it binds to membrane-bound particles and causes a shift from green to red fluorescence through resonance energy transfer. Because internalized particles retain green fluorescence, the number of internalized or surface-bound particles can be ascertained by contour plot analysis. Fluoresceinated derivatives of α-fetoprotein and transferrin were used by Torres to study the endocytosis of these substances (Torres et al, 1990), and Fibach studied the uptake of a fluorescent fatty acid derivative [12-(1-pyrene) dodecanoic acid] by a variety of peripheral blood cells (Fibach et al, 1988). Flow cytometry and electron microscopy were used by Kershaw to study the endocytosis and intracellular trafficking of chemokine CCR5 (Kershaw et al, 2009).

ASSAYS OF ENZYMATIC ACTIVITY AND INTRACELLULAR KILLING

Intracellular killing of microorganisms is mediated by complex enzymatic mechanisms. Oxygen-dependent mechanisms of cell killing are the most important, although oxygen-independent mechanisms have also been described. The increase in oxidative metabolism during phagocytosis is referred to as the **oxidative burst.** During this process, the key event is the activation of a membrane-bound pyridine nucleotide-dependent oxidase (NADPH oxidase), which reduces oxygen to O_{2^-} (superoxide anion) and oxidizes NAD(P)H to $NAD(P)^+$. Subsequently, hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), hydroxyl radical (OH), and singlet oxygen are generated. All of these compounds are directly toxic to the cell, with the $H_2O_{2^-}$ halide-myeloperoxidase system being the most important mechanism of bacterial killing. In the presence of H_2O_2 and halide ions (I^-, Cl^-), myeloperoxidase catalyzes direct halogenation of the bacterial cell wall and causes damage to the cell wall by converting amino acids into aldehydes.

In the clinical laboratory, the nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction assay is the conventional method for determination of the oxidative capacity of the neutrophil. NBT is a yellow dye in its oxidized state, but when reduced, it forms formazan, a crystalline substance that has a deep blue color (Fig. 45-12) (Urban & Jarstrand, 1979). NBT can be attached to latex particles or microorganisms to permit phagocytosis, or it can be ingested in soluble form by neutrophils that have been stimulated by endotoxin or other means. If the normal oxidizing environment in the phagolysosome is present, the resultant blue particles can be detected microscopically, or the formazan can be extracted and measured spectrophotometrically. Approximately 10% of normal unstimulated neutrophils ingest and reduce NBT, but this is increased to 80% with stimulated neutrophils.

A flow cytometric variation of the NBT assay has been described. With this technique, neutrophils are incubated for a short time with FITC-labeled Con A, rendering the cell membrane fluorescent (Fattorossi et al, 1990). The cells are then incubated with NBT and an agent to trigger respiratory activity, such as phorbol myristate acetate. The formazan that is subsequently produced has a distinct fluorescent peak at 520 nm that corresponds with the peak emission of fluorescein, and fluorescence quenching of surface fluorescence by formazan is proportional to the intensity of the respiratory burst. In addition, simultaneous changes in cell size and forward light scatter occur.

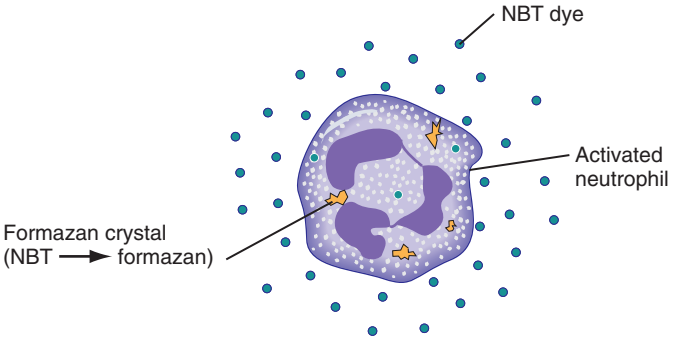


Figure 45-12 Principle of the nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction assay. Neutrophils are incubated with NBT. Enzymatic activity in the activated neutrophil converts NBT into an insoluble brownish-black precipitate (formazan), which is visible under the microscope. The proportion of neutrophils with intracytoplasmic precipitated material is determined. (Reprinted with permission from Riley RS: Basic principles of immunodiagnosis. In McClatchey KD, editor: *Clinical laboratory medicine,* Baltimore, 1994, Williams and Wilkins.)

Bass described one of the first non–NBT-based flow cytometric–based assays to measure neutrophil oxidative metabolism and oxidative burst at the single-cell level (Bass et al, 1983). This technique uses the fluorogenic substrate dichlorofluorescein-diacetate (DCFH-DA) to quantitate H_2O_2 production during the oxidative burst (Bass et al, 1983). DCFH-DA is a small, nonpolar substance that is actively taken up by the cell and deacetylated by intracellular esterases into a nonfluorescent compound (2′,7′-dichlorofluorescein [DCFH]), which is trapped within the cell. In the presence of H_2O_2 and peroxidase, DCFH is oxidized into dichlorofluorescein, which is highly fluorescent in the green region of the spectrum (Fig. 45-13) (Bass et al, 1983). Other fluorochromes that have been used to directly measure the oxidative burst include dihydrorhodamine 123, dihydrotetramethylrosamine, 4-carboxydihydrotetramethylrosamine succinimidyl ester, and hydroethidine (Smith & Weidemann, 1993; Model et al, 1997; Walrand et al, 2003; Elbim & Lizard, 2009; Chen & Junger, 2012).

Flow cytometric measurements of the oxidative burst have been combined with the quantitation of other metabolic or antigenic changes in the phagocytic cell to fully utilize the multiparametric power of the flow cytometer. In particular, several investigators have described flow cytometric techniques for the simultaneous measurement of phagocytosis and intracellular killing. In one of the earliest studies, phagocytic activity was determined by the internalization of viable, FITC-labeled *C. albicans* (Bjerknes & Bassøe, 1984). At selected intervals, fungi were extracted from the cells, and the fraction of killed fungi was measured by the uptake of PI. Later variations of this technique were developed to simultaneously measure phagocytosis and the oxidative burst (Trinkle et al, 1987; Prodan et al, 1995; Lehmann et al, 1998; McCloskey & Salo, 2000; Carvalho et al, 2009).

A technique for the assessment of surface antigen expression, phagocytosis, and cell proliferation in human bone marrow cells was described by Lund-Johansen (Lund-Johansen et al, 1990). With this technique, incubation of leukocytes with ethidium monoazide–labeled *C. albicans*, followed by staining with an FITC-labeled monoclonal antibody, permitted correlation of surface antigen expression with phagocytic capacity. After incubation with the labeled *C. albicans*, aliquots of the cells were fixed and stained with PI for cell cycle analysis. Haynes reported a novel method to measure protein digestion within the phagocytic vacuole based on the fluorescent quenching that occurs when rhodamine is attached to albumin at a high molar ratio (Haynes et al, 1990). In the phagocytic vacuole, digestion of albumin releases free rhodamine and restores fluorescence. This method was affected less by vacuole pH than fluorescein-based methods and measured digestion even in the presence of abnormal phagocytosis.

ASSAYS OF OPSONIZATION

Phagocytosis of microorganisms and other foreign bodies is greatly enhanced by the presence of certain chemical substances (opsonins) on the surface of the foreign body. In patients with certain immunoglobulin and complement deficiencies, increased susceptibility to infection results in part from decreased opsonization. Opsonins in the serum can be detected by incubating the serum with normal neutrophils and yeast particles and by visually quantitating phagocytosis of yeast particles by normal neutrophils. In addition, flow cytometric methods have been used for the measurement of serum opsonin function (Bassøe & Bjerknes, 1984; Sjursen et al, 1987a, 1987b; Sjursen et al, 1989). In this assay, live FITC-labeled *Neisseria meningitidis* organisms were preopsonized by incubation with serum for 7.5 minutes and then were incubated with human polymorphonuclear neutrophilic leukocytes (PMNLs) for 5 minutes at a bacteria-to-PMNL ratio of 20:1. Results were expressed in the number of bacteria incubated per phagocyte.

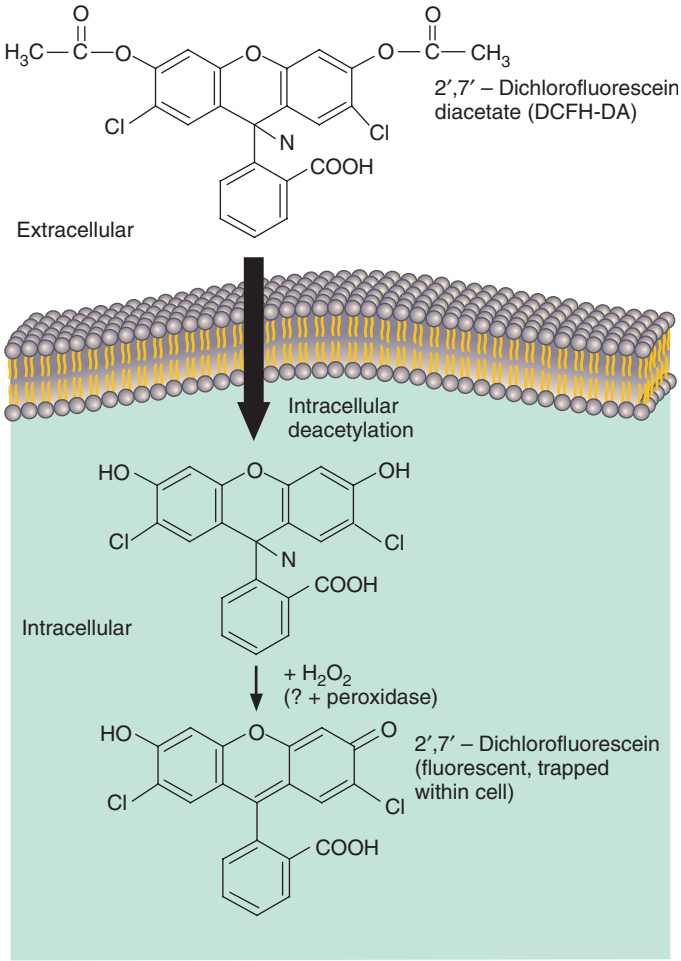


Figure 45-13 Flow cytometric analysis of the oxidative burst of polymorphonuclear leukocytes. In this assay, dichlorofluorescein-diacetate (DCFH-DA) is taken up by the cell and is trapped by deacetylation, with the formation of 2′,7′-dichlorofluorescein. During the oxidative burst, nonfluorescent 2′,7′-dichlorofluorescein is converted into the fluorescent product dichlorofluorescein. The fluorescent intensity in the green region of the spectrum is proportional to the oxidative capacity of the cell. (Reprinted with permission from Bass DA, Parce JW, Dechatelet LR, et al: Flow cytometric studies of oxidative product formation by neutrophils: a graded response to membrane stimulation, *J Immunol* 130:1910–1917, 1983.)

ASSAYS OF MEMBRANE PERMEABILITY

Fluorescein diacetate has been extensively utilized to monitor changes in membrane permeability. In this regard, fluorescein diacetate is enzymatically hydrolyzed within the cell, with the production of fluorescein. Free fluorescein is released into the extracellular environment across the cell membrane through a process that follows energy-dependent, first-order kinetics and that is dependent on membrane integrity and permeability. The efflux of fluorescein is inhibited by metabolic poisons and glucose depletion, and it has been used to study the effects of a variety of agents on the cell membrane (Prosperi et al, 1985; 1986). Prosperi showed that the fluorescein efflux is also related to the ionic gradient (membrane potential) of the cell (Prosperi, 1990).

QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE IN THE CELLULAR LABORATORY

Throughout this chapter, we have tried to point out areas where the clinician and laboratory staff must pay particular attention to the methods used

and the interpretations made in evaluation of the cellular response. Quality assurance and quality control parameters are not well defined in this area of the laboratory, and few absolute standards exist as compared with chemistry analytes or humoral antibody measures. The success of the cellular laboratory rests in its approach to the problem and the longitudinal assessment of the condition being diagnosed. It was clearly pointed out that baseline studies need to be repeated if the original evaluation is performed at a time of immunologic stress.

Basic parameters of diurnal variations in lymphocyte subsets are obvious but are often forgotten or overlooked. Malone and colleagues (1990) pointed out that variability in CD4 measures of absolute counts is 50% owing to biology, with the other 50% related to other technical issues. Fei and colleagues (1993) reviewed the factors affecting the longitudinal evaluation of CD4 absolute counts in a clinical trial setting. Furthermore, Fahey and colleagues (1990) reviewed the prognostic value of both humoral and cellular assays in HIV. With other clinical cellular assays, variability is inherent in the assay, owing to lack of standard formats and methods, as well as reagents. Furthermore, instrument calibration and sensitivity are not well monitored. Cytotoxic T lymphocyte assays are particularly difficult to standardize. Historic assays such as mitogen proliferation are also fraught with variability between laboratories. Therefore, laboratories that offer these immunologic tests must have an extensive database by which they can interpret an individual patient's result. Cellular laboratories must establish normal ranges for their assays and must be aware that adult normal ranges are not applicable to pediatric assays. This is particularly problematic because pediatric normal ranges are difficult to determine, owing to lack of available subjects in the first year of life, and correct interpretation of laboratory results depends on these normal values. Data between laboratories should be compared carefully.

When available, a cellular immunology laboratory must use available standards in the performance of flow cytometry and DNA analysis and should be aware of state and federal regulations with regard to the laboratory, including the Human Health and Services Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act of 1988. Furthermore, laboratory staff should participate in proficiency testing, when available, and should be involved in continuing education seminars, including competency evaluations for all personnel involved in testing. All assays performed in the laboratory must include a normal control and, when possible, in-process controls to establish the validity of the assay. Shipped samples must be carefully monitored for exposure to heat and cold and time since patient procurement. A clinical history should accompany the samples for particular studies being ordered so that the laboratory director can take the correct approach to testing.

A consensus document with recommendations on the immunophenotypic analysis of hematologic neoplasia by flow cytometry has been published (Braylan et al, 1997). This document was painstakingly developed by concerned providers in the medical community to cover laboratory procedures, selection of antibodies for identification of neoplasms, data analysis and interpretation, medical reporting, and indications in the absence of standardized kits and other devices. The FDA has put into effect the Analyte Specific Regulation, which moves reagents such as monoclonals from research use status to ASRs (Analyte Specific Regulation, 1997). This rule does not allow manufacturers to tell laboratory users how to use their reagents. They cannot specify intended use. The ASR rule does provide for stable, well-defined reagents manufactured under good manufacturing practices. All laboratories using these reagents as a "home brew test" must perform their own clinical trial and validation studies and must use a disclaimer in the final report. The consensus document allows a laboratory to perform its assays in a consistent manner and in keeping with the definition of clinical significance used across a large number of laboratories and institutions. The document is not a standard but is consistent with other published standards from NCCLS that are already in use.

The cellular laboratory is faced with a more difficult job of interpretation because the data are not easily standardized. Furthermore, quality assurance of the sample and the evaluation being performed depends on careful documentation of biologic and logical parameters that may influence the results. The future of tests used in evaluation of the cellular component of the immune response resides in the development of new methods that may lend themselves to better standardization.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Ananworanich J, Shearer WT: Delayed-type hypersensitivity skin testing. In Rose NR, Hamilton RG, Detrick B, editors: *Manual of clinical laboratory immunology*, ed 6, Washington, DC, 2002, ASM Press, pp 212–219.

This paper provides a practical and comprehensive review of skin testing for evaluation of the cellular immune response.

Balkwill FR, Burke F: The cytokine network, *Immunol Today* 10:299–304, 1989.

A concise review of cytokines and cytokine function.

Barry M, Bleackley RC: Cytotoxic T lymphocytes: All roads lead to death, *Nat Rev Immunol* 2:401–409, 2002.

This paper provides a thorough review of cytotoxic T cell function.

Baumgarth N, Roederer M: A practical approach to multicolor flow cytometry for immunophenotyping, *J Immunol Methods* 243:77–97, 2000.

This article describes basic multicolor flow cytometry, technical problems that may be expected, and artifacts frequently encountered, and offers suggestions for handling them.

Beutler BA: TLRs and innate immunity, *Blood* 113:1399–1407, 2009.

This article is a succinct, up-to-date review of innate immunity and the role of toll-like receptors.

Bjerknes R, Bassøe C-F, Sjursen H, et al: Flow cytometry for the study of phagocyte functions, *Rev Infect Dis* 11:16–33, 1989.

The authors present a comprehensive review of the evaluation of phagocytic cell function by flow cytometry.

Bryceson YT, Fauriat C, Nunes JM, et al: Functional analysis of human NK cells by flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 612:335–352, 2010.

This article is a current, thorough review of NK cell function analysis by flow cytometry.

Chaplin DD: Overview of the immune response, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 125:S3–S23, 2010.

This article provides a concise, well-written, up-to-date summary of the immune system.

Cossarizza A, De Biasi S, Gibellini L, et al: Cytometry, immunology, and HIV infection: Three decades of strong interactions, *Cytometry A* 83:680–691, 2013.

A review of the research and clinical applications of flow cytometry in HIV infection, emphasizing the integration of basic discoveries in diagnosis, treatment, and monitoring.

Elbim C, Lizard G: Flow cytometric investigation of neutrophil oxidative burst and apoptosis in physiological and pathological situations, *Cytometry A* 75:475–481, 2009.

An excellent review of fluorescent probes and flow cytometric techniques for evaluation of neutrophil function, with an emphasis on primary immunodeficiency disease.

Ghanekar SA, Maecker HT, Maino VC: Monitoring of immune response using cytokine flow cytometry. In Detrick B, Hamilton RJ, Folds JD, editors: *Manual of molecular and clinical laboratory immunology*, ed 7, Washington, DC, 2006, ASM Press, pp 353–360.

A practical, useful review on cytokine flow cytometry.

Good RA: Cellular immunology in a historical perspective, *Immunol Rev* 185:136–158, 2002.

A classic review of historical developments in cellular immunology, written by a pioneer in the field.

Herzenberg LA, Herzenberg LA: Genetics, FACS, immunology, and redox: A tale of two lives intertwined, *Annu Rev Immunol* 22:1–31, 2004.

A historical account of the development of the flow cytometer from the inventors.

Janeway CA Jr, Medzhitov R: Innate immune recognition, *Annu Rev Immunol* 20:197–216, 2002.

A classic review of the innate immune system from the immunologists who discovered the system.

Kalyuzhny AE: ELISPOT assay on membrane microplates, *Methods Mol Biol* 536:355–365, 2009.

A recent, detailed review of the ELISPOT assay.

Keren DF: Surface marker assays in immunodeficiency diseases. In Keren DF, editor: *Flow cytometry in clinical diagnosis*, Chicago, 1989, ASCP Press, pp 213–247.

A comprehensive review of the flow cytometric diagnosis of immunodeficiency diseases by a major leader in the field.

Malaguarnera L, Ferlito L, Imbesi RM, et al: Immunosenescence: A review, *Arch Gerontol Geriatr* 32:1–14, 2001.

This review provides a good summary of age-related changes that occur in both arms of the immune system.

Maluish AE, Strong DM: Lymphocyte proliferation. In Rose NR, Friedman H, Fahey JL, editors: *Manual of clinical laboratory immunology*, Washington, DC, 1986, American Society for Microbiology, pp 274–281.

An excellent summary of laboratory techniques for the measurement of lymphocyte proliferation.

Mandy FF: Twenty-five years of clinical flow cytometry: AIDS accelerated global instrument distribution, *Cytometry A* 58:55–56, 2004.

An article highlighting the role of HIV evaluation in development of the flow cytometer.

McCoy JP Jr: Basic principles of flow cytometry, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 16:229–243, 2002.

An excellent summary of flow cytometric analysis, emphasizing instrument operation and function.

Morice WG: The immunophenotypic attributes of NK cells and NK-cell lineage lymphoproliferative disorders, *Am J Clin Pathol* 127:881–886, 2007.

An excellent review of NK cells and NK cell function.

Nomura L, Maino VC, Maecker HT: Standardization and optimization of multiparameter intracellular cytokine staining, *Cytometry A* 73:984–991, 2008.

A recent and important article on the standardization of flow cytometric analysis for cytokine analysis.

Ochs HD, Hagin D: Primary immunodeficiency disorders: General classification, new molecular insights, and practical approach to diagnosis and treatment, *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 112:489–495, 2014.

A comprehensive review of the primary immunodeficiency diseases, emphasizing early diagnosis and the significance of new molecular discoveries and techniques.

Perfetto SP, Chattopadhyay PK, Roederer M: Seventeen-colour flow cytometry: Unravelling the immune system, *Nat Rev Immunol* 4:648–655, 2004.

This paper describes a powerful form of flow cytometry capable of simultaneously examining several physical parameters and 17 fluorescent colors.

Perfetto SP, Currier J, Birx DL: T-lymphocyte activation and cell signaling. In Rose NR, Hamilton RG, Detrick

B, editors: *Manual of clinical laboratory immunology*, ed 6, Washington, DC, 2002, ASM Press, pp 224–237.

This paper provides a comprehensive review of the theoretical and practical aspects of T cell function and evaluation.

Sedgwick JD: ELISPOT assay: A personal retrospective, *Methods Mol Biol* 302:3–14, 2005.

A historical account of the development of the ELISPOT assay.

Sinkovics JG, Horvath JC: Human natural killer cells: A comprehensive review, *Int J Oncol* 27:5–47, 2005.

A thorough, comprehensive review of the NK cell.

Stewart CC, Goolsby C, Shackney SE: Emerging technology and future developments in flow cytometry, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 16:477–495, 2002.

A review of emerging applications and the future role of the flow cytometer in the medical sciences, from a leader in the field.

Tebo AE, Detrick B, Hamilton RG, et al: Clinical laboratory immunology: An indispensable player in laboratory medicine, *Am J Clin Pathol* 142:437–444, 2014.

A review of the increasing importance of, but declining emphasis on, clinical laboratory immunology in medical education.

Virgo PF, Gibbs GJ: Flow cytometry in clinical pathology, *Ann Clin Biochem* 49:17–28, 2012.

A comprehensive review of the principles, technological aspects, and applications of flow cytometry in clinical hematology and immunology.

Woo J, Baumann A, Arguello V: Recent advancements of flow cytometry: New applications in hematology and oncology, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 14:67–81, 2014.

A comprehensive review of the applications of flow cytometry in clinical hematology and immunology, with an emphasis on new discoveries and technology.

REFERENCES

Abrams B, Diwu Z, Guryev O, et al: New violet-excitable reagents for multicolor flow applications, *Cytometry A* 83:752–762, 2013.

Achkar JM, Lawn SD, Moosa MY, et al: Adjunctive tests for diagnosis of tuberculosis: Serology, ELISPOT for site-specific lymphocytes, urinary lipoarabinomannan, string test, and fine needle aspiration, *J Infect Dis* 204(Suppl 4):S1130–S1141, 2011.

Afacan NJ, Fjell CD, Hancock RE: A systems biology approach to nutritional immunology—Focus on innate immunity, *Mol Aspects Med* 33:14–25, 2012.

Ahlborg N, Axelsson B: Dual- and triple-color fluorospot, *Methods Mol Biol* 792:77–85, 2012.

Alarcon B, Gil D, Delgado P, et al: Initiation of TCR signaling: Regulation within CD3 dimers, *Immunol Rev* 191:38–46, 2003.

Alheim M: Flow cytometry-based cytotoxicity and antibody binding assay, *Curr Protoc Cytom* 66:Unit 6 34, 2013.

Alvarez-Larran A, Toll T, Rives S, et al: Assessment of neutrophil activation in whole blood by flow cytometry, *Clin Lab Haematol* 27:41–46, 2005.

Alvarez-Rodriguez L, Lopez-Hoyos M, Munoz-Cacho P, et al: Aging is associated with circulating cytokine dysregulation, *Cell Immunol* 273:124–132, 2012.

Amati L, Cirimele D, Pugliese V, et al: Nutrition and immunity: Laboratory and clinical aspects, *Curr Pharm Des* 9:1924–1931, 2003.

Analyte Specific Regulation MD.: Classification/reclassification; restricted devices; analyste specific reagents, *Fed Reg* 62243–62260, 1997.

Angulo R, Fulcher DA: Measurement of Candida-specific blastogenesis: comparison of carboxyfluorescein succinimidyl ester labelling of T cells, thymidine incorporation, and CD69 expression, *Cytometry* 34: 143–151, 1998.

Aoki Y, Tosato G: Neoplastic conditions in the context of HIV-1 infection, *Curr HIV Res* 2:343–349, 2004.

Arvilommi H: ELISPOT for detecting antibody-secreting cells in response to infections and vaccination, *APMIS* 104:401–410, 1996.

ASCO.: Clinical practice guidelines for the use of tumor markers in breast and colorectal cancer. Adopted May 17, 1996, by American Society of Clinical Oncology, *J Clin Oncol* 14:2843–2877, 1996.

Augustine JJ, Hricik DE: T cell immune monitoring by the ELISPOT assay for interferon gamma, *Clin Chim Acta* 413:1359–1363, 2012.

Austin Suthanthiraraj PP, Graves SW: Fluidics, *Curr Protoc Cytom* 1:Unit 1.2, 2013.

Azuma M, Ito D, Yagita H, et al: B70 antigen is a second ligand for CTLA-4 and CD28, *Nature* 366:76–79, 1993.

Bach F, Segall M: Pooled stimulating cells as a "standard stimulator" in mixed lymphocyte culture, *Transplantation* 22:117–135, 1974.

Bagwell CB: Theoretical aspects of flow cytometry data analysis. In Bauer D, Duque RE, Shankey TV, editors: *Clinical flow cytometry: Principles and applications*, Baltimore, 1993, Williams & Wilkins, pp 41–61.

Bagwell CB: DNA histogram analysis for node-negative breast cancer, *Cytometry A* 58:76–78, 2004.

Barber L, Prince HM, Rossi R, et al: Fluoro-Gold: An alternative viability stain for multicolor flow cytometric analysis, *Cytometry* 36:349–354, 1999.

Baskar S, Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Nabavi N, et al: Constitutive expression of B7 restores immunogenicity of tumor cells expressing truncated major histocompatibility complex class II molecules, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 90:5687–5690, 1993.

Bass DA, Parce JW, Dechatelet LR, et al: Flow cytometric studies of oxidative product formation by neutrophils: A graded response to membrane stimulation, *J Immunol* 130:1910–1917, 1983.

Bassøe C-F, Bjerknes R: Phagocytosis by human leukocytes, phagosomal pH, and degradation of seven species of bacteria measured by flow cytometry, *J Med Microbiol* 19:115–125, 1985.

Bassøe C-F, Laerum OD, Glette J, et al: Simultaneous measurement of phagocytosis and phagosomal pH by flow cytometry: Role of polymorphonuclear neutrophilic leukocyte granules in phagosome acidification, *Cytometry* 4:254–262, 1983.

Bassøe CF, Bjerknes R: The effect of serum opsonins on the phagocytosis of Staphylococcus aureus and zymosan particles, measured by flow cytometry, *Acta Pathol Microbiol Immunol Scand [C]* 92:51–58, 1984.

Bastian J, Law S, Vogler L, et al: Prediction of persistent immunodeficiency in the DiGeorge anomaly, *J Pediatr* 115:391–396, 1989.

Bauer KD, Jacobberger JW: Analysis of intracellular proteins, *Methods Cell Biol* 41:351–376, 1994.

Becker D, Kuhn U, Lempertz U, et al: Flow-cytometric screening for the modulation of receptor-mediated endocytosis in human dendritic cells: Implications for the development of an in vitro technique for predictive testing of contact sensitizers, *J Immunol Methods* 203:171–180, 1997.

Begum J, Day W, Henderson C, et al: A method for evaluating the use of fluorescent dyes to track proliferation in cell lines by dye dilution, *Cytometry A* 83:1085–1095, 2013.

Belloc F, Vincendeau P, Freyburger G, et al: Flow cytometric study of the activation of polymorphonuclear cells, *J Leukoc Biol* 48:353–358, 1990.

Berglund DL, Taffs RE, Robertson NP: A rapid analytical technique for flow cytometric analysis of cell viability using calcofluor white M2R, *Cytometry* 8:421–426, 1987.

Bicker H, Hoflich C, Wolk K, et al: A simple assay to measure phagocytosis of live bacteria, *Clin Chem* 54:911–915, 2008.

Bjerknes R: Flow cytometric assay for combined measurement of phagocytosis and intracellular killing of *Candida albicans*, *J Immunol Methods* 72:229–241, 1984.

Bjerknes R, Bassøe C-F: Phagocyte C3-mediated attachment and internalization: Flow cytometric studies using a fluorescent quenching technique, *Blut* 49:315–323, 1984.

Black MM, Zachrau RE, Hankey BF, et al: Skin window reactivity to autologous breast cancer. An index of prognostically significant cell-mediated immunity, *Cancer* 62:72–83, 1988.

Bocchieri MH, Talle MA, Maltese LM, et al: Whole blood culture for measuring mitogen induced T cell proliferation provides superior correlations with disease state and T cell phenotype in asymptomatic HIV-infected subjects, *J Immunol Methods* 181:233–243, 1995.

Bodduluru LN, Kasala ER, Madhana RM, et al: Natural killer cells: The journey from puzzles in biology to treatment of cancer, *Cancer Lett* 357:454–467, 2015.

Bogh LD, Duling TA: Flow cytometry instrumentation in research and clinical laboratories, *Clin Lab Sci* 6:167–173, 1993.

Bonavida B: NK cell phenotypic and functional heterogeneities and molecular mechanisms of cytotoxicity, *Crit Rev Oncog* 19:21–45, 2014.

Bonilla FA, Oettgen HC: Normal ranges for lymphocyte subsets in children, *J Pediatr* 130:347–349, 1997.

Bontadini A, Conte R, Dinota A, et al: Mixed lymphocyte reactions evaluated by means of bromodeoxyuridine incorporation, *Haematologica* 75:7–11, 1990.

Booth C, Gaspar HB, Thrasher AJ: Gene therapy for primary immunodeficiency, *Curr Opin Pediatr* 23:659–666, 2011.

Borowitz MJ: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia. In Knowles DM, editor: *Neoplastic hematopathology*, Baltimore, 1992, Williams & Wilkins, pp 1295–1314.

Borut TC, Ank BJ, Gard SE, et al: Tetanus toxoid skin test in children: correlation with in vitro lymphocyte stimulation and monocyte chemotaxis, *J Pediatr* 97:567–573, 1980.

Braylan RC, Atwater SK, Diamond L, et al: U.S.-Canadian Consensus recommendations on the immunophenotypic analysis of hematologic neoplasia by flow cytometry: data reporting, *Cytometry* 30:245–248, 1997.

Bretscher P: The two-signal model of lymphocyte activation twenty-one years later, *Immunol Today* 13:74–76, 1992.

Bretscher P: Living with the ups and downs of the two signal model, *Immunol Cell Biol* 82:141–148, 2004.

Buckley RH: Molecular defects in human severe combined immunodeficiency and approaches to immune reconstitution, *Annu Rev Immunol* 22:625–655, 2004.

Busetto S, Trevisan E, Patriarca P, et al: A single-step, sensitive flow cytofluorometric assay for the simultaneous assessment of membrane-bound and ingested Candida albicans in phagocytosing neutrophils, *Cytometry A* 58:201–206, 2004.

Cacciapuoti C, Terrazzano G, Barone L, et al: Glycosylphosphatidyl-inositol-defective granulocytes from paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria patients show increased bacterial ingestion but reduced respiratory burst induction, *Am J Hematol* 82:98–107, 2007.

Calvelli T, Denny TN, Paxton H, et al: Guideline for flow cytometric immunophenotyping: a report from the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, Division of AIDS, *Cytometry* 14:702–715, 1993.

Carothers AD: Counting, measuring, and mapping in FISH-labelled cells: sample size considerations and implications for automation, *Cytometry* 16:298–304, 1994.

Carvalho RP, Mesquita JS, Bonomo A, et al: Relationship of neutrophil phagocytosis and oxidative burst with the subgingival microbiota of generalized aggressive periodontitis, *Oral Microbiol Immunol* 24:124–132, 2009.

Cassimos DC, Liatsis M, Stogiannidou A, et al: Children with frequent infections: A proposal for a stepwise assessment and investigation of the immune system, *Pediatr Allergy Immunol* 21:463–473, 2009.

Centers for Disease Control: Guidelines for the performance of CD4+ T cell determinations in persons with human immunodeficiency virus infection, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 41:1–17, 1992.

Chakraborty AK, Weiss A: Insights into the initiation of TCR signaling, *Nat Immunol* 15:798–807, 2014.

Chapman GV: Instrumentation for flow cytometry, *J Immunol Methods* 243:3–12, 2000.

Chatelain R, Varkila K, Coffman RL: IL-4 induces a Th2 response in Leishmania major-infected mice, *J Immunol* 148:1182–1187, 1992.

Chen L, Ashe S, Brady WA, et al: Costimulation of antitumor immunity by the B7 counterreceptor for the T lymphocyte molecules CD28 and CTLA-4, *Cell* 71:1093–1102, 1992.

Chen Y, Junger WG: Measurement of oxidative burst in neutrophils, *Methods Mol Biol* 844:115–124, 2012.

Cheroutre H: Starting at the beginning: new perspectives on the biology of mucosal T cells, *Annu Rev Immunol* 22:217–246, 2004.

Christensen R, Owens DM, Thomsen A, et al: Zinc fixation for flow cytometry analysis of intracellular and surface epitopes, DNA content, and cell proliferation, *Curr Protoc Cytom* 7:Unit 7.40, 2011.

Clerici M, Shearer GM: A TH1→TH2 switch is a critical step in the etiology of HIV infection, *Immunol Today* 14:107–111, 1993.

Clerici M, Shearer GM: The Th1-Th2 hypothesis of HIV infection: New insights, *Immunol Today* 15:575–581, 1994.

Clevenger CV, Shankey TV: Cytochemistry II: Immunofluorescence measurement of intracellular antigens. In Bauer KD, Duquer RE, Shankey TV, editors: *Clinical flow cytometry: Principles and applications*, Baltimore, 1993, Williams & Wilkins, pp 157–175.

Conley ME: Molecular basis of immunodeficiency, *Immunol Rev* 203:5–9, 2005.

Coon JS, Deitch AD, de Vere White RW, et al: Interinstitutional variability in DNA flow cytometric analysis of tumors. The National Cancer Institute's Flow Cytometry Network Experience, *Cancer* 61:126–130, 1988.

Coon JS, Paxton H, Lucy L, et al: Interlaboratory variation in DNA flow cytometry. Results of the College of American Pathologists' Survey, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 118:681–685, 1994.

Cooper MA, Colonna M, Yokoyama WM: Hidden talents of natural killers: NK cells in innate and adaptive immunity, *EMBO Rep* 10:1103–1110, 2009.

Corver WE, ter Haar NT: High-resolution multiparameter DNA flow cytometry for the detection and sorting of tumor and stromal subpopulations from paraffin-embedded tissues, *Curr Protoc Cytom* 7:Unit 7.37, 2011.

Cossarizza A, Radbruch A: Cytometry for immunology: A stable and happy marriage, *Cytometry A* 83:673–675, 2013.

Cost KM, Fineman D, Steger S: A flow cytometry-based screening assay for lymphocyte proliferation, *Clin Immunol Newslett* 13:82–85, 1993.

Cram LS, Gomez ER, Thoen CO, et al: Flow microfluorometric quantitation of the blastogenic response of lymphocytes, *J Histochem Cytochem* 24:383–387, 1976.

Crome SQ, Lang PA, Lang KS, et al: Natural killer cells regulate diverse T cell responses, *Trends Immunol* 34:342–349, 2013.

Cunningham-Rundles C, Cunningham-Rundles S, Iwata T, et al: Zinc deficiency, depressed thymic

hormones, and T lymphocyte dysfunction in patients with hypogammaglobulinemia, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 21:387–396, 1981.
Cunningham-Rundles C, Siegal FP, Cunningham-Rundles S, et al: Incidence of cancer in 98 patients with common varied immunodeficiency, *J Clin Immunol* 7:294–299, 1987.
Cunningham-Rundles S: Issues in assessment of human immune function. In *Military Strategies for Sustainment of Nutrition and Immune Function in the Field*, 1999, Institute of Medicine National Academy Press, pp 235–248.
Cunningham-Rundles S, Cervia JS: Malnutrition and host defense. In Walker WA, Watkins JB, editors: *Pediatrics: Basic science and clinical application*, ed 2, New York, 1996, Marcel Dekker, pp 295–307.
Cunningham-Rundles S, Harbison M, Guirguis S, et al: New perspectives on use of thymic factors in immune deficiency, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 730:71–83, 1994.
Cunningham-Rundles S, Lin DH: Nutrition and the immune system of the gut, *Nutrition* 14:573–579, 1998.
Cunningham-Rundles S: Nessin M. Bacterial infections in the immunologically compromised host. In Nataro JP, Blaser MJ, Cunningham-Rundles S, editors: *Persistent bacterial infections*, Washington, DC, 2000, American Society for Microbiology Press, pp 145–164.
Cunningham-Rundles S, Yeger-Arbitman R, Nachman SA, et al: New variant of MHC class II deficiency with interleukin-2 abnormality, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 56:116–123, 1990.
Czerkinsky CC, Nilsson LA, Nygren H, et al: A solid-phase enzyme-linked immunospot (ELISPOT) assay for enumeration of specific antibody-secreting cells, *J Immunol Methods* 65:109–121, 1983.
Danikas DD, Karakantza M, Theodorou GL, et al: Prognostic value of phagocytic activity of neutrophils and monocytes in sepsis. Correlation to CD64 and CD14 antigen expression, *Clin Exp Immunol* 154:87–97, 2008.
Darzynkiewicz Z: Cytometry of the cell cycle: In search for perfect methodology for DNA content analysis in tissue specimens, *Cell Cycle* 9:3395–3396, 2010.
Dean PN, Hoffman RA: Overview of flow cytometry instrumentation, *Curr Protoc Cytom* 1:Unit 1.1, 2007.
Denny T, Yogev R, Gelman R, et al: Lymphocyte subsets in healthy children during the first 5 years of life, *JAMA* 267:1484–1488, 1992.
Deodhar SD: Basics in practical applications and standardization of techniques of cellular immunology, *Lab Res Methods Biol Med* 8:71–78, 1983.
DiGeorge AM: Congenital absence of the thymus and its immunologic consequences: Concurrence with congenital hypothyroidism. In D B, editor: *Birth defects immunologic deficiency disease in man*, White Plains, NY, 1974, The National Foundation-March of Dimes, p 116.
Dooley J, Liston A: Molecular control over thymic involution: from cytokines and microRNA to aging and adipose tissue, *Eur J Immunol* 42:1073–1079, 2012.
Dunn PA, Tyrer HW: Quantitation of neutrophil phagocytosis, using fluorescent latex beads. Correlation of microscopy and flow cytometry, *J Lab Clin Med* 98:374–381, 1981.
Dupont B, Hansen JA, Yunis EJ: Human mixed lymphocyte culture reactions: Genetics, specificity, and biological implications, *Adv Immunol* 23:107–202, 1976.
Duquesnoy RJ, Marrari M: Multilaboratory evaluation of serum analysis for HLA antibody and crossmatch reactivity by lymphocytotoxicity methods, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 127:149–156, 2003.
El-Agroudy AE, Ismail AM, El-Chenawy FA, et al: Pretransplant mixed lymphocyte culture still has an impact on graft survival, *Am J Nephrol* 24:296–300, 2004.
Elder ME: ZAP-70 and defects of T cell receptor signaling, *Semin Hematol* 35:310–320, 1998.
Elguindi I, Redziniak G, Metezeau P, et al: Modulation of membrane receptor endocytosis by chemical effectors of membrane fluidity, *Biol Cell* 54:199–205, 1985.
Elloumi HZ, Holland SM: Diagnostic assays for chronic granulomatous disease and other neutrophil disorders, *Methods Mol Biol* 1124:517–535, 2014.
Engel P: New CD molecules, 2015. Accessed at www.hcdm.org/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=32&Itemid=218.
Engels EA, Biggar RJ, Hall HI, et al: Cancer risk in people infected with human immunodeficiency virus in the United States, *Int J Cancer* 123:187–194, 2008.
Fahey JL, Taylor JM, Detels R, et al: The prognostic value of cellular and serologic markers in infection with human immunodeficiency virus type 1, *N Engl J Med* 322:166–172, 1990.
Fattorossi A, Nisini R, Le Moli S, et al: Flow cytometric evaluation of nitro blue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction in human polymorphonuclear leukocytes, *Cytometry* 11:907–912, 1990.
Fattorossi A, Nisini R, Pizzolo JG, et al: New, simple flow cytometry technique to discriminate between internalized and membrane-bound particles in phagocytosis, *Cytometry* 10:320–325, 1989.
Fei DT, Paxton H, Chen AB: Difficulties in precise quantitation of CD4+ T lymphocytes for clinical trials: a review, *Biologicals* 21:221–231, 1993.
Fibach E, Giloh H, Rachmilewitz EA, et al: Flow cytofluorometric analysis of the uptake of the fluorescent fatty acid pyrene-dodecanoic acid by human peripheral blood cells, *Cytometry* 9:525–528, 1988.
Fidler SJ: Crossmatching by complement-dependent lymphocytotoxicity, *Methods Mol Biol* 882:359–377, 2012.
Finney DA, Sklar LA: Ligand/receptor internalization: A kinetic, flow cytometric analysis of the internalization of N-formyl peptides by human neutrophils, *Cytometry* 4:54–60, 1983.
Fischer A, Le Deist F, Hacein-Bey-Abina S, et al: Severe combined immunodeficiency: A model disease for molecular immunology and therapy, *Immunol Rev* 203:98–109, 2005.
Foletta VC, Segal DH, Cohen DR: Transcriptional regulation in the immune system: All roads lead to AP-1, *J Leukoc Biol* 63:139–152, 1998.
Freer G: Intracellular staining and detection of cytokines by fluorescence-activated flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 1172:221–234, 2014.
Freer G, Rindi L: Intracellular cytokine detection by fluorescence-activated flow cytometry: Basic principles and recent advances, *Methods* 61:30–38, 2013.
Friberg DD, Bryant JL, Whiteside TL: Measurements of natural killer (NK) activity and NK-cell quantification, *Methods* 9:316–326, 1996.
Fulop T, Le Page A, Fortin C, et al: Cellular signaling in the aging immune system, *Curr Opin Immunol* 29:105–111, 2014.
Gazagne A, Malkusch W, Vingert B, et al: Fluorospot assay: methodological analysis, *Methods Mol Biol* 302:289–296, 2005.
Gelfand EW: Abnormalities of signal transduction and T cell immunodeficiency. In Gupta S, Griscelli C, editors: *New concepts in immunodeficiency disease*, New York, 1993, John Wiley & Sons, pp 231–248.
Gil L, Alonso R, Lopez C, et al: A CFSE-based assay of proliferative response of lymphocytes to stimulation with dengue viruses, *Acta Virol* 53:147–152, 2009.
Gille C, Spring B, Tewes L, et al: A new method to quantify phagocytosis and intracellular degradation using green fluorescent protein-labeled Escherichia coli: Comparison of cord blood macrophages and peripheral blood macrophages of healthy adults, *Cytometry A* 69:152–154, 2006.
Giorgi JV, Detels R: T cell subset alterations in HIV-infected homosexual men: NIAID Multicenter AIDS cohort study, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 52:10–18, 1989.
Givan AL: Flow cytometry: An introduction, *Methods Mol Biol* 263:1–32, 2004.
Goodman HS: A general method for the quantitation of immune cytolysis, *Nature* 190:269–270, 1961.
Greve B, Weidner J, Cassens U, et al: A new affordable flow cytometry based method to measure HIV-1 viral load, *Cytometry A* 75:199–206, 2009.
Grey D, Sack U, Scholz M, et al: Increased CD64 expression on polymorphonuclear neutrophils indicates infectious complications following solid organ transplantation, *Cytometry A* 79:446–460, 2011.
Grivennikov SI, Greten FR, Karin M: Immunity, inflammation, and cancer, *Cell* 140:883–899, 2010.
Gui J, Mustachio LM, Su DM, et al: Thymus size and age-related thymic involution: Early programming, sexual dimorphism, progenitors and stroma, *Aging Dis* 3:280–290, 2012.
Haase H, Ober-Blobaum JL, Engelhardt G, et al: Zinc signals are essential for lipopolysaccharide-induced signal transduction in monocytes, *J Immunol* 181:6491–6502, 2008.
Hakim FT, Flomerfelt FA, Boyiadzis M, et al: Aging, immunity and cancer, *Curr Opin Immunol* 16:151–156, 2004.
Hamerman JA, Ogasawara K, Lanier LL: NK cells in innate immunity, *Curr Opin Immunol* 17:29–35, 2005.
Harding CV, Neefjes J: Antigen processing and recognition, *Curr Opin Immunol* 17:55–57, 2005.
Haynes AP, Fletcher J, Garnett M, et al: A novel flow cytometric method for measuring protein digestion within the phagocytic vacuole of polymorphonuclear neutrophils, *J Immunol Methods* 135:155–161, 1990.
Haynes BF, Sempowski GD, Wells AF, et al: The human thymus during aging, *Immunol Res* 22:253–261, 2000.
Hedley DW, Friedlander ML, Taylor IW, et al: Method for analysis of cellular DNA content of paraffin-embedded pathological material using flow cytometry, *J Histochem Cytochem* 31:1333–1335, 1983.
Heimdal JH, Aarstad HJ, Klementsen B, et al: Peripheral blood mononuclear cell (PBMC) responsiveness in patients with head and neck cancer in relation to tumour stage and prognosis, *Acta Otolaryngol* 119:281–284, 1999.
Hirano T, Murakami M, Fukada T, et al: Roles of zinc and zinc signaling in immunity: Zinc as an intracellular signaling molecule, *Adv Immunol* 97:149–176, 2008.
Hirt W, Nebe T, Birr C: Phagotest and Bursttest (Phagoburst): Test kits for study of phagocyte functions, *Wien Klin Wochenschr* 106:250–252, 1994.
Homburger HA, Rosenstock W, Paxton H, et al: Assessment of interlaboratory variability of immunophenotyping. Results of the College of American Pathologists Flow Cytometry Survey, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 677:43–49, 1993.
Huebner RE, Schein MF, Bass JB Jr: The tuberculin skin test, *Clin Infect Dis* 17:968–975, 1993.
Inoges S, Merino J, Bandres E, et al: Cytokine flow cytometry differentiates the clinical status of multiple sclerosis (MS) patients, *Clin Exp Immunol* 115:521–525, 1999.
Irving BA, Weiss A: The cytoplasmic domain of the T cell receptor zeta chain is sufficient to couple to receptor-associated signal transduction pathways, *Cell* 64:891–901, 1991.
Isakson PC, Pure E, Vitetta ES, et al: T cell-derived B cell differentiation factor(s). Effect on the isotype switch of murine B cells, *J Exp Med* 155:734–748, 1982.
Iwasaki A, Medzhitov R: Regulation of adaptive immunity by the innate immune system, *Science* 327:291–295, 2010.
Janetzki S, Rueger M, Dillenbeck T: Stepping up ELISpot: Multi-level analysis in FluoroSpot assays, *Cells* 3:1102–1115, 2014.
Janeway CA Jr, Bottomly K: Signals and signs for lymphocyte responses, *Cell* 76:275–285, 1994.
Janeway CA Jr, Travers P, Walport M, et al: *Immunobiology*, ed 6, New York, 2004, Garland Publishing.
Jaye DL, Bray RA, Gebel HM, et al: Translational applications of flow cytometry in clinical practice, *J Immunol* 188:4715–4719, 2012.
Jensen UB, Owens DM, Pedersen S, et al: Zinc fixation preserves flow cytometry scatter and fluorescence parameters and allows simultaneous analysis of DNA content and synthesis, and intracellular and surface epitopes, *Cytometry A* 77:798–804, 2010.
Jones B, Janeway CA Jr: Cooperative interaction of B lymphocytes with antigen-specific helper T lymphocytes is MHC restricted, *Nature* 292:547–549, 1981.
Kagan J, Gelman R, Waxdal M, et al: NIAID Division of AIDS flow cytometry quality assessment program, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 677:50–52, 1993.
Kalyuzhny AE: Chemistry and biology of the ELISPOT assay, *Methods Mol Biol* 302:15–31, 2005.
Kanda H, Matsuura T, Akiyama T, et al: A flow-cytometric DNA analysis in mixed lymphocyte reaction, *Transplant Proc* 17:2157–2158, 1985.
Katz P, Fauci AS: Immunosuppressives and immunoadjuvants. In Samter M, Talmage DW, Frank MM, editors: *Immunological diseases*, ed 4, Boston, 1993, Little, Brown & Co., pp 675–698.
Kawai T, Akira S: The role of pattern-recognition receptors in innate immunity: Update on Toll-like receptors, *Nat Immunol* 11:373–384, 2010.
Kershaw T, Wavre-Shapton ST, Signoret N, et al: Analysis of chemokine receptor endocytosis and intracellular trafficking, *Methods Enzymol* 460:357–377, 2009.
Keusch GT: The history of nutrition: Malnutrition, infection, and immunity, *J Nutr* 133:336S–340S, 2003.
Kim GG, Donnenberg VS, Donnenberg AD, et al: A novel multiparametric flow cytometry-based cytotoxicity assay simultaneously immunophenotypes effector

cells: Comparisons to a 4 h 51Cr-release assay, *J Immunol Methods* 325:51–66, 2007.
Koyalta D, Jenabian MA, Nadjiouroum N, et al: Single-platform, volumetric, CD45-assisted pan-leucogating flow cytometry for CD4 T lymphocytes monitoring of HIV infection according to the WHO recommendations for resource-constrained settings, *BMC Res Notes* 6:169, 2013.
Kraan J, Gratama JW, Keeney M, et al: Setting up and calibration of a flow cytometer for multicolor immunophenotyping, *J Biol Regul Homeost Agents* 17:223–233, 2003.
Krueger SA, Wilson GD: Flow cytometric DNA analysis of human cancers and cell lines, *Methods Mol Biol* 731:359–370, 2011.
Kumar H, Kawai T, Akira S: Toll-like receptors and innate immunity, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 388:621–625, 2009.
Landay AL, Jessop C, Lennette ET, et al: Chronic fatigue syndrome: Clinical condition associated with immune activation, *Lancet* 338:707–712, 1991.
Lanier LL: Of snowflakes and natural killer cell subsets, *Nat Biotechnol* 32:140–142, 2014.
Lavergne JA, del Llano AM: Assessment of cellular activation by flow cytometric methods, *Pathobiology* 58:107–117, 1990.
LeBien TW, Tedder TF: B lymphocytes: How they develop and function, *Blood* 112:1570–1580, 2008.
Lee SB, Cha J, Kim IK, et al: A high-throughput assay of NK cell activity in whole blood and its clinical application, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 445:584–590, 2014.
LeGuern C: Regulation of T cell functions by MHC class II self-presentation, *Trends Immunol* 24:633–638, 2003.
Lehmann AK, Halstensen A, Bassøe CF: Flow cytometric quantitation of human opsonin-dependent phagocytosis and oxidative burst responses to meningococcal antigens, *Cytometry* 33:406–413, 1998.
Lehmann PV, Zhang W: Unique strengths of ELISPOT for T cell diagnostics, *Methods Mol Biol* 792:3–23, 2012.
Lehrer RI: Measurement of candidacidal activity of specific leukocyte types in mixed cell populations. I. Normal, myeloperoxidase-deficient, and chronic granulomatous disease neutrophils, *Infect Immunol* 1970:42–47, 1970.
Lehrer RI, Cline MJ: Interaction of Candida albicans with human leukocytes and serum, *J Bacteriol* 98:996–1004, 1969.
Levin AC, Massey RJ, Deinhardt F: Spontaneous human mononuclear cell cytotoxicity to cultured tumor cells: Reproducibility of serial measurements with the use of a chromium-51-release microcytotoxicity assay, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 60:1283–1294, 1978.
Lewis DE: Cytochemistry I: Cell surface immunofluorescence. In Bauer KD, Duque RE, Shankey TV, editors: *Clinical flow cytometry: Principles and applications*, Baltimore, 1993, Williams & Wilkins, pp 143–156.
Lieberman J: The ABCs of granule-mediated cytotoxicity: New weapons in the arsenal, *Nat Rev Immunol* 3:361–370, 2003.
Linsley PS, Brady W, Grosmaire L, et al: Binding of the B cell activation antigen B7 to CD28 costimulates T cell proliferation and interleukin 2 mRNA accumulation, *J Exp Med* 173:721–730, 1991.
Linsley PS, Brady W, Urnes M, et al: CTLA-4 is a second receptor for the B cell activation antigen B7, *J Exp Med* 174:561–569, 1991.
Lissoni P, Brivio F, Viviani S, et al: Which immunological parameters are clinically essential to monitor IL-2 cancer immunotherapy?, *J Biol Regul Homeost Agents* 13:110–114, 1999.
Liu L, Packard BZ, Brown MJ, et al: Assessment of lymphocyte-mediated cytotoxicity using flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 263:125–140, 2004.
Liu Y, Jones B, Aruffo A, et al: Heat-stable antigen is a costimulatory molecule for CD4 T cell growth, *J Exp Med* 175:437–445, 1992.
Livingston PO, Cunningham-Rundles S, Marfleet G, et al: Inhibition of suppressor-cell activity by cyclophosphamide in patients with malignant melanoma, *J Biol Response Mod* 6:392–403, 1987.
Lizard G: Diagnosing HIV infection using flow cytometry: From antigenic analyses to a specifically dedicated bead-based assay to measure viral load, *Cytometry A* 75:172–174, 2009.
Lloyd A, Hickie I, Hickie C, et al: Cell-mediated immunity in patients with chronic fatigue syndrome, healthy control subjects and patients with major depression, *Clin Exp Immunol* 87:76–79, 1992.
Loken MR, Brosnan JM, Bach BA, et al: Establishing optimal lymphocyte gates for immunophenotyping by flow cytometry, *Cytometry* 11:453–459, 1990.
Loken MR, Parks DR, Herzenberg LA: Two-color immunofluorescence using a fluorescence-activated cell sorter, *J Histochem Cytochem* 25:899–907, 1977.
Loken MR, Sweet RG, Herzenberg LA: Cell discrimination by multiangle light scattering, *J Histochem Cytochem* 24:284–291, 1976.
Loose D, Van de Wiele C: The immune system and cancer, *Cancer Biother Radiopharm* 24:369–376, 2009.
Lund-Johansen F, Bjerknes R, Laerum OD: Flow cytometric assay for the measurement of human bone marrow phenotype, function and cell cycle, *Cytometry* 11:610–616, 1990.
Maas JJ, Roos MT, Keet IP, et al: In vivo delayed-type hypersensitivity skin test anergy in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection is associated with T cell nonresponsiveness in vitro, *J Infect Dis* 178:1024–1029, 1998.
Mach WJ, Thimmesch AR, Orr JA, et al: Flow cytometry and laser scanning cytometry—A comparison of techniques, *J Clin Monit Comput* 24:251–259, 2010.
Madrenas J, Wange RL, Wang JL, et al: Zeta phosphorylation without ZAP-70 activation induced by TCR antagonists or partial agonists, *Science* 267:515–518, 1995.
Maijo M, Clements SJ, Ivory K, et al: Nutrition, diet and immunosenescence, *Mech Ageing Dev* 136-137:116–128, 2014.
Malissen B: An evolutionary and structural perspective on T cell antigen receptor function, *Immunol Rev* 191:7–27, 2003.
Malone JL, Simms TE, Gray GC, et al: Sources of variability in repeated T-helper lymphocyte counts from human immunodeficiency virus type 1-infected patients: Total lymphocyte count fluctuations and diurnal cycle are important, *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 3:144–151, 1990.
Mandy FF, Bergeron M, Recktenwald D, et al: A simultaneous three-color T cell subsets analysis with single laser flow cytometers using T cell gating protocol. Comparison with conventional two-color immunophenotyping method, *J Immunol Methods* 156:151–162, 1992.
Marin L, Minguela A, Torio A, et al: Flow cytometric quantification of apoptosis and proliferation in mixed lymphocyte culture, *Cytometry A* 51:107–118, 2003.
Marodi L: Innate cellular immune responses in newborns, *Clin Immunol* 118:137–144, 2006.
Marti GE, Vogt RF Jr, Stetler-Stevenson M: Clinical quantitative flow cytometry: "Identifying the optimal methods for clinical quantitative flow cytometry.", *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 55:59, 2003.
Mascher B, Schlenke P, Seyfarth M: Expression and kinetics of cytokines determined by intracellular staining using flow cytometry, *J Immunol Methods* 223:115–121, 1999.
Masopust D, Schenkel JM: The integration of T cell migration, differentiation, and function, *Nat Rev Immunol* 13:309–320, 2013.
Masur H, Michelis MA, Greene JB, et al: An outbreak of community-acquired Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia: Initial manifestation of cellular immune dysfunction, *N Engl J Med* 305:1431–1438, 1981.
Maywald M, Rink L: Zinc homeostasis and immunosenescence, *J Trace Elem Med Biol* 29:24–30, 2015.
McCloskey PS, Salo RJ: Flow cytometric analysis of group B streptococci phagocytosis and oxidative burst in human neutrophils and monocytes, *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 27:59–65, 2000.
McDermott AJ, Huffnagle GB: The microbiome and regulation of mucosal immunity, *Immunology* 142:24–31, 2014.
McGrath MA, Morton AM, Harnett MM: Laser scanning cytometry: Capturing the immune system in situ, *Methods Cell Biol* 102:231–260, 2011.
Mehta BA, Maino VC: Simultaneous detection of DNA synthesis and cytokine production in staphylococcal enterotoxin B activated CD4+ T lymphocytes by flow cytometry, *J Immunol Methods* 208:49–59, 1997.
Metezeau P, Djavadi-Ohaniance L, Goldberg ME: The kinetics and homogeneity of endocytosis of a receptor-bound ligand in a heterogeneous cell population studied by flow cytofluorometry, *J Histochem Cytochem* 30:359–363, 1982.
Mhatre S, Madkaikar M, Ghosh K, et al: Rapid flow cytometry-based cytotoxicity assay for evaluation of NK cell function, *Indian J Exp Biol* 52:983–988, 2014.
Mickelson EM, Hansen JA: The mixed lymphocyte culture (MLC) test. In Zachary AA, Teresi GA, editors: *ASHI Laboratory Manual*, ed 2, New York, 1990, American Society for Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics, pp 339–356.
Milner JD, Holland SM: The cup runneth over: Lessons from the ever-expanding pool of primary immunodeficiency diseases, *Nat Rev Immunol* 13:635–648, 2013.
Milush JM, Long BR, Snyder-Cappione JE, et al: Functionally distinct subsets of human NK cells and monocyte/DC-like cells identified by coexpression of CD56, CD7, and CD4, *Blood* 114:4823–4831, 2009.
Mittag A, Tarnok A: Recent advances in cytometry applications: Preclinical, clinical, and cell biology, *Methods Cell Biol* 103:1–20, 2011.
Model MA, KuKuruga MA, Todd RF 3rd.: A sensitive flow cytometric method for measuring the oxidative burst, *J Immunol Methods* 202:105–111, 1997.
Mond JJ, Lees A, Snapper CM: T cell-independent antigens type 2, *Annu Rev Immunol* 13:655–692, 1995.
Monk JM, Hou TY, Chapkin RS: Recent advances in the field of nutritional immunology, *Expert Rev Clin Immunol* 7:747–749, 2011.
Montecino-Rodriguez E, Berent-Maoz B, Dorshkind K: Causes, consequences, and reversal of immune system aging, *J Clin Invest* 123:958–965, 2013.
Moretta L, Montaldo E, Vacca P, et al: Human natural killer cells: Origin, receptors, function, and clinical applications, *Int Arch Allergy Immunol* 164:253–264, 2014.
Moss RB, Mercandetti A, Vojdani A: TNF-alpha and chronic fatigue syndrome, *J Clin Immunol* 19:314–316, 1999.
Moulin AM: Immunology old and new: The beginning and the end. In Paulin MH, editor: *Essays on the history of immunolog*, Toronto: Wall and Thompson, 1989, pp 292–298.
Moynahan EJ: Letter: Acrodermatitis enteropathica: A lethal inherited human zinc-deficiency disorder, *Lancet* 2:399–400, 1974.
Muller W: Dissecting the cytokine network, *Cell Immunol* 244:162–164, 2006.
Murphy RF, Bisaccia E, Cantor CR, et al: Internalization and acidification of insulin by activated human lymphocytes, *J Cell Physiol* 121:351–356, 1984a.
Murphy RF, Tse DB, Cantor CR, et al: Acidification of internalized class I major histocompatibility complex antigen by T lymphoblasts, *Cell Immunol* 88:336–342, 1984b.
Nguyen XD, Eichler H, Dugrillon A, et al: Flow cytometric analysis of T cell proliferation in a mixed lymphocyte reaction with dendritic cells, *J Immunol Methods* 275:57–68, 2003.
Nicholson JK, Jones BM, Hubbard M: CD4 T-lymphocyte determinations on whole blood specimens using a single-tube three-color assay, *Cytometry* 14:685–689, 1993.
Nicholson JKA, Green TA: Collaborating laboratories: Selection of anticoagulants for lymphocyte immunophenotyping—Effect of specimen age on results, *J Immunol Methods* 165:31–35, 1993.
Nikitin PA, Price AM, McFadden K, et al: Mitogen-induced B cell proliferation activates Chk2-dependent G1/S cell cycle arrest, *PLoS ONE* 9:e87299, 2014.
Nikolich-Zugich J: The aging immune system: Challenges for the 21st century, *Semin Immunol* 24:301–302, 2012.
Nochi T, Kiyono H: Innate immunity in the mucosal immune system, *Curr Pharm Des* 12:4203–4213, 2006.
Noguchi M, Yi H, Rosenblatt HM, et al: Interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain mutation results in X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency in humans, *Cell* 73:147–157, 1993.
Nordenfelt P: Quantitative assessment of neutrophil phagocytosis using flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 1124:279–289, 2014.
Nowell PC: Phytohemagglutinin: An initiator of mitosis in cultures of normal human leukocytes, *Cancer Res* 20:462–466, 1960.
Nuutila J, Lilius EM: Flow cytometric quantitative determination of ingestion by phagocytes needs the distinguishing of overlapping populations of binding and ingesting cells, *Cytometry A* 65:93–102, 2005.
O'Gorman MR, Zollett J, Bensen N: Flow cytometry assays in primary immunodeficiency diseases, *Methods Mol Biol* 699:317–335, 2011.
Ogle JD, Noel JG, Sramkoski RM, et al: Phagocytosis of opsonized fluorescent microspheres by human neutrophils—A two-color flow cytometric method for

the determination of attachment and ingestion, *J Immunol Methods* 115:17–29, 1988.
Ohkuma S, Poole B: Fluorescence probe measurement of the intralysosomal pH in living cells and the perturbation of pH by various agents, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 75:3327–3331, 1978.
Ohri LK, Manley JM, Chatterjee A, et al: Pediatric case series evaluating a standardized Candida albicans skin test product, *Ann Pharmacother* 38:973–977, 2004.
Onoe T, Ohdan H, Ochi M, et al: Multiparameter flow cytometric mixed lymphocyte reaction assay using fluorescent cytoplasmic dye for assessing phenotypic property of T cells responding to allogeneic stimulation, *Transplant Proc* 35:557–558, 2003.
Ortaldo JR, Wiltrout RH, Reynolds CW: Natural killer activity: Early days, advances, and seminal observations, *Crit Rev Oncog* 19:1–13, 2014.
Packman CH, Lichtman MA: Activation of neutrophils: Measurement of actin conformational changes by flow cytometry, *Blood Cells* 16:193–205, 1990.
Palutke M, KuKuruga D: Tabaczka P. A flow cytometric method for measuring lymphocyte proliferation directly from tissue culture plates using Ki-67 and propidium iodide, *J Immunol Methods* 105:97–105, 1987.
Palutke M, Tabaczka PM, Kukuruga DL, et al: A method for measuring lymphocyte proliferation in mixed lymphocyte cultures using a nuclear proliferation antigen, Ki-67, and flow cytometry, *Am J Clin Pathol* 91:417–421, 1989.
Passlick B, Flieger D, Ziegler-Heitbrock HW: Identification and characterization of a novel monocyte subpopulation in human peripheral blood, *Blood* 74:2527–2534, 1989.
Pattanapanyasat K: Immune status monitoring of HIV/AIDS patients in resource-limited settings: A review with an emphasis on CD4+ T-lymphocyte determination, *Asian Pac J Allergy Immunol* 30:11–25, 2012.
Pattanapanyasat K, Sukapirom K, Tachavanich K, et al: Flow cytometric quantitation of opsonophagocytosis and intracellular killing of Candida albicans using a whole blood microassay, *Cytometry A* 71:1027–1033, 2007.
Paul WE: *Fundamental immunology*, New York, 1993, Bauer Press.
Paul WE, Seder RA: Lymphocyte responses and cytokines, *Cell* 76:241–251, 1994.
Paxton H, Pins M, Denton G, et al: Comparison of CD4 cell count by a simple enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay using the TRAx CD4 test kit and by flow cytometry and hematology, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 2:104–114, 1995.
Pennington JA: Intakes of minerals from diets and foods: Is there a need for concern?, *J Nutr* 126:2304S–2308S, 1996.
Pesu M, Candotti F, Husa M, et al: Jak3, severe combined immunodeficiency, and a new class of immunosuppressive drugs, *Immunol Rev* 203:127–142, 2005.
Peters VB, Rosh JR, Mugrditchian L, et al: Growth failure as the first expression of malnutrition in children with human immunodeficiency virus infection, *Mt Sinai J Med* 65:1–4, 1998.
Petrovsky N, Harrison LC: Cytokine-based human whole blood assay for the detection of antigen-reactive T cells, *J Immunol Methods* 186:37–46, 1995.
Philbin VJ, Levy O: Developmental biology of the innate immune response: Implications for neonatal and infant vaccine development, *Pediatr Res* 65:98R–105R, 2009.
Pierzchalski A, Mittag A, Tarnok A: Introduction A: Recent advances in cytometry instrumentation, probes, and methods—Review, *Methods Cell Biol* 102:1–21, 2011.
Piyasena ME, Graves SW: The intersection of flow cytometry with microfluidics and microfabrication, *Lab Chip* 14:1044–1059, 2014.
Poncelet P, Carayon P: Cytofluorometric quantification of cell-surface antigens by indirect immunofluorescence using monoclonal antibodies, *J Immunol Methods* 85:65–74, 1985.
Poncelet P, George F, Lavabre-Bertrand T: Immunological detection of membrane bound antigens and receptors, *Cells Tissues Methods Immunol Anal* 3:389–417, 1993.
Poncelet P, Poinas G, Corbeau P, et al: Surface CD4 density remains constant on lymphocytes of HIV-infected patients in the progression of disease, *Res Immunol* 142:291–298, 1991.
Popescu I, Pipeling M, Akulian J, et al: Phenotypic and functional characterization of cytotoxic T lymphocytes by flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 1186:21–47, 2014.
Posekany KJ, Riley RS, Gagnon GA, et al: Bimodal CD45 fluorescence distribution in precursor B cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Am J Clin Pathol* 96:423–424, 1991.
Pozarowski P, Holden E, Darzynkiewicz Z: Laser scanning cytometry: Principles and applications—An update, *Methods Mol Biol* 931:187–212, 2013.
Pranke P, Hendrikx J, Alespeiti G, et al: Comparative quantification of umbilical cord blood CD34+ and CD34+ bright cells using the ProCount-BD and ISHAGE protocols, *Braz J Med Biol Res* 39:901–906, 2006.
Prasad AS: Zinc and immunity, *Mol Cell Biochem* 188:63–69, 1998.
Prasad AS: Zinc: Role in immunity, oxidative stress, and chronic inflammation, *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 12:646–652, 2009.
Prescott SL, Macaubas C, Holt BJ, et al: Transplacental priming of the human immune system to environmental allergens: Universal skewing of initial T cell responses toward the Th2 cytokine profile, *J Immunol* 160:4730–4737, 1998.
Prodan M, Tulissi P, Perticarari S, et al: Flow cytometric assay for the evaluation of phagocytosis and oxidative burst of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and monocytes in myelodysplastic disorders, *Haematologica* 80:212–218, 1995.
Prosperi E: Intracellular turnover of fluorescein diacetate: Influence of membrane ionic gradients on fluorescein efflux, *Histochem J* 22:227–233, 1990.
Prosperi E, Croce AC, Bottiroli G, et al: Influence of daunorubicin on membrane permeability properties: Detection by means of intracellular accumulation and efflux of fluorescein, *Chem Biol Interact* 54:271–280, 1985.
Prosperi E, Croce AC, Bottiroli G, et al: Flow cytometric analysis of membrane permeability properties influencing intracellular accumulation and efflux of fluorescein, *Cytometry* 7:70–75, 1986.
Qiu JG, Mei XL, Chen ZS, et al: Cytokine detection by flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 1172:235–242, 2014.
Rabinovitch PS: Practical considerations for DNA content and cell cycle analysis. In Bauer KD, Duque RE, Shankey TV, editors: *Clinical flow cytometry: Principles and applications*, Baltimore, 1993, Williams & Wilkins, pp 143–156.
Rabinovitch PS: DNA content histogram and cell-cycle analysis, *Methods Cell Biol* 41:263–296, 1994.
Ramaekers FC, Hopman AH: Detection of genetic aberrations in bladder cancer using in situ hybridization, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 677:199–213, 1993.
Ranieri E, Popescu I, Gigante M: CTL ELISPOT assay, *Methods Mol Biol* 1186:75–86, 2014.
Rebhahn JA, Bishop C, Divekar AA, et al: Automated analysis of two- and three-color fluorescent Elispot (Fluorospot) assays for cytokine secretion, *Comput Methods Programs Biomed* 92:54–65, 2008.
Reth M: Antigen receptor tail clue, *Nature* 338:383–384, 1989.
Rezzani R, Nardo L, Favero G, et al: Thymus and aging: Morphological, radiological, and functional overview, *Age (Dordr)* 36:313–351, 2014.
Rosen FS: A brief history of immunodeficiency disease, *Immunol Rev* 178:8–12, 2000.
Rowe PC, Barron DF, Calkins H, et al: Orthostatic intolerance and chronic fatigue syndrome associated with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, *J Pediatr* 135:494–499, 1999.
Ruud E, Michaelsen T, Kindberg GM, et al: Heterogeneity of degradation of B cell endocytosed monoclonal antibodies reacting with different sIgM epitopes, *Scand J Immunol* 29:299–308, 1989.
Rytter MJ, Kolte L, Briend A, et al: The immune system in children with malnutrition—A systematic review, *PLoS ONE* 9:e105017, 2014.
Sack U, Tarnok A: Harmonization of cytometry instrumentation and technologies, *Cytometry A* 83:1055–1056, 2013.
Salk HM, Haralambieva IH, Ovsyannikova IG, et al: Granzyme B ELISPOT assay to measure influenza-specific cellular immunity, *J Immunol Methods* 398-399:44–50, 2013.
Samelson LE: Signal transduction mediated by the T cell antigen receptor: The role of adapter proteins, *Annu Rev Immunol* 20:371–394, 2002.
Sanderson AR: Cytotoxic reactions of mouse isoantisera: Preliminary considerations, *Br J Exp Pathol* 45:398–408, 1964.
Savino W, Dardenne M: Nutritional imbalances and infections affect the thymus: Consequences on T cell-mediated immune responses, *Proc Nutr Soc* 69:636–643, 2010.
Sawhney N, Hall PA: Ki67—Structure, function, and new antibodies, *J Pathol* 168:161–162, 1992.
Scherbakova A, Lust H, Everaus H, et al: A mathematical model of natural killer cell activity, *Cytometry A* 83:585–591, 2013.
Schmittel A, Keilholz U, Thiel E, et al: Quantification of tumor-specific T lymphocytes with the ELISPOT assay, *J Immunother* 23:289–295, 2000.
Schultes BC, Nicodemus CF: Using antibodies in tumour immunotherapy, *Expert Opin Biol Ther* 4:1265–1284, 2004.
Seder RA, Gazzinelli R, Sher A, et al: Interleukin 12 acts directly on CD4+ T cells to enhance priming for interferon gamma production and diminishes interleukin 4 inhibition of such priming, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 90:10188–10192, 1993.
Seder RA, Paul WE, Davis MM, et al: The presence of interleukin 4 during in vitro priming determines the lymphokine-producing potential of CD4+ T cells from T cell receptor transgenic mice, *J Exp Med* 176:1091–1098, 1992.
Seely AJ, Pascual JL, Christou NV: Science review: Cell membrane expression (connectivity) regulates neutrophil delivery, function, and clearance, *Crit Care* 7:291–307, 2003.
Seillet C, Belz GT, Mielke LA: Complexity of cytokine network regulation of innate lymphoid cells in protective immunity, *Cytokine* 70:1–10, 2014.
Sewell WA, Smith SA: Polychromatic flow cytometry in the clinical laboratory, *Pathology* 43:580–591, 2011.
Shankey TV, Rabinovitch PS: DNA content flow cytometry. In Rose NR, Hamilton RG, Detrick B, editors: *Manual of clinical laboratory immunology*, ed 6, Washington, DC, 2002, ASM Press, pp 171–184.
Shankey TV, Rabinovitch PS, Bagwell B, et al: Guidelines for implementation of clinical DNA cytometry. International Society for Analytical Cytology, *Cytometry* 14:472–477, 1993.
Shapiro HM: Lasers for flow cytometry, *Curr Protoc Cytom* 9:Unit 9.6, 2004.
Sharma L, Wu W, Dholakiya SL, et al: Assessment of phagocytic activity of cultured macrophages using fluorescence microscopy and flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 1172:137–145, 2014.
Shearer WT, Rosenblatt HM, Gelman RS, et al: Lymphocyte subsets in healthy children from birth through 18 years of age: The Pediatric AIDS Clinical Trials Group P1009 study, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 112:973–980, 2003.
Shenkin M, Babu R, Maiese R: Accurate assessment of cell count and viability with a flow cytometer, *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 72:427–432, 2007.
Siegal FP, Lopez C, Hammer GS, et al: Severe acquired immunodeficiency in male homosexuals, manifested by chronic perianal ulcerative herpes simplex lesions, *N Engl J Med* 305:1439–1444, 1981.
Silverstein AM: History of immunology. Cellular versus humoral immunity: Determinants and consequences of an epic 19th century battle, *Cell Immunol* 48:208–221, 1979.
Simanovsky N, Hiller N, Loubashevsky N, et al: Normal CT characteristics of the thymus in adults, *Eur J Radiol* 81:3581–3586, 2012.
Sjursen H, Bjerknes R, Halstensen A, et al Serum opsonins to group B meningococci, *Acta Pathol Microbiol Immunol Scand C* 95:283–289, 1987a.
Sjursen H, Bjerknes R, Halstensen A, et al: Flow cytometric assay for the measurement of serum opsonins to Neisseria meningitidis serogroup B, serotype 15, *J Immunol Methods* 116:235–243, 1989.
Sjursen H, Bjerknes R, Halstensen A, et al: Serum opsonins to group B meningococci in patients and vaccinated volunteers [abstract no. 204], *Cytometry* 8(Suppl 1):38, 1987b.
Slezak SE, Horan PK: Cell-mediated cytotoxicity—A highly sensitive and informative flow cytometric assay, *J Immunol Methods* 117:205–214, 1989.
Slota M, Lim JB, Dang Y, et al: ELISpot for measuring human immune responses to vaccines, *Expert Rev Vaccines* 10:299–306, 2011.
Smith JA, Weidemann MJ: Further characterization of the neutrophil oxidative burst by flow cytometry, *J Immunol Methods* 162:261–268, 1993.
Smith KA: The quantal theory of how the immune system discriminates between "self and non-self," *Med Immunol* 3:1–22, 2004.

Smyth MJ, Cretney E, Kershaw MH, et al: Cytokines in cancer immunity and immunotherapy, *Immunol Rev* 202:275–293, 2004.
Sponzilli I, Notarangelo LD: Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID): From molecular basis to clinical management, *Acta Biomed* 82:5–13, 2011.
Standards NCfCL: *Clinical applications of flow cytometry: Quality assurance and immunophenotyping of peripheral blood lymphocytes. NCCLS Document H42-T (ISBN 1-56238-155-5)*, Villanova, Pa., 1992, National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards.
Steinkamp JA, Wilson JS, Saunders GC, et al: Phagocytosis: Flow cytometric quantitation with fluorescent microspheres, *Science* 215:64–66, 1982.
Steinman RM, Mellman I: Immunotherapy: Bewitched, bothered, and bewildered no more, *Science* 305:197–200, 2004.
Stelzer GT, Marti G, Hurley A, et al: U.S.-Canadian Consensus recommendations on the immunophenotypic analysis of hematologic neoplasia by flow cytometry: Standardization and validation of laboratory procedures, *Cytometry* 30:214–230, 1997.
Stelzer GT, Shults KE, Loken MR: CD45 gating for routine flow cytometric analysis of human bone marrow specimens, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 677:265–280, 1993.
Stewart CC, Stewart SJ: Multiparameter data acquisition and analysis of leukocytes, *Methods Mol Biol* 263:45–66, 2004.
Stott DI: Immunoblotting, dot-blotting, and ELISPOT assays: Methods and applications, *J Immunoassay* 21:273–296, 2000.
Sullivan KE, Jawad AF, Randall P, et al: Lack of correlation between impaired T cell production, immunodeficiency, and other phenotypic features in chromosome 22q11.2 deletion syndromes, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 86:141–146, 1998.
Suni MA, Maino VC: Flow cytometric analysis of cell signaling proteins, *Methods Mol Biol* 717:155–169, 2011.
Suni MA, Picker LJ, Maino VC: Detection of antigen-specific T cell cytokine expression in whole blood by flow cytometry, *J Immunol Methods* 212:89–98, 1998.
Suresh V, Carey BS, Shaw S, et al: A retrospective study of the prognostic impact of cytokine secretion in mixed lymphocyte culture on long-term graft function following allogeneic renal transplantation, *Transpl Int* 18:1067–1071, 2005.
Talbot D, Shenton BK, Givan AL, et al: A rapid, objective method for the detection of lymphocytotoxic antibodies using flow cytometry, *Clin Genet* 31:25–34, 1987.
Tan P, Anasetti C, Hansen JA, et al: Induction of alloantigen-specific hyporesponsiveness in human T lymphocytes by blocking interaction of CD28 with its natural ligand B7/BB1, *J Exp Med* 177:165–173, 1993.
Tanaka Y, Ohdan H, Onoe T, et al: Low incidence of acute rejection after living-donor liver transplantation: Immunologic analyses by mixed lymphocyte reaction using a carboxyfluorescein diacetate succinimidyl ester labeling technique, *Transplantation* 79:1262–1267, 2005.
Tario JD Jr, Gray BD, Wallace SS, et al: Novel lipophilic tracking dyes for monitoring cell proliferation, *Immunol Invest* 36:861–885, 2007.
Tario JD Jr, Humphrey K, Bantly AD, et al: Optimized staining and proliferation modeling methods for cell division monitoring using cell tracking dyes, *J Vis Exp* 13(70):e4287, 2012.
Tario JD Jr, Muirhead KA, Pan D, et al: Tracking immune cell proliferation and cytotoxic potential using flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 699:119–164, 2011.
Telford WG, Komoriya A, Packard BZ, et al: Multiparametric analysis of apoptosis by flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 699:203–227, 2011.
Terasaki PI, McClelland JD: Microdroplet assay of human serum cytotoxins, *Nature* 204:998–1000, 1964.
Tilg H, Moschen AR: Malnutrition and microbiota—A new relationship?, *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 10:261–262, 2013.
Tirindelli Danesi D, Spano M, Altavista P, et al: Quality control study of the Italian Group of Cytometry on flow cytometry DNA content measurements: II. Factors affecting inter- and intralaboratory variability, *Cytometry* 30:85–97, 1997.
Torres JM, Esteban C, Aguilar J, et al: Quantification of alpha-fetoprotein and transferrin endocytosis by lymphoid cells using flow cytometry, *J Immunol Methods* 134:163–170, 1990.
Tosato F, Bucciol G, Pantano G, et al: Lymphocytes subsets reference values in childhood, *Cytometry A* 87:81–85, 2015.
Tosevski V, Mair F: Tracking cells and monitoring proliferation, *Methods Mol Biol* 1193:51–54, 2014.
Townsend SE, Allison JP: Tumor rejection after direct costimulation of CD8+ T cells by B7-transfected melanoma cells, *Science* 259:368–370, 1993.
Trinchieri G: Natural killer cells wear different hats: Effector cells of innate resistance and regulatory cells of adaptive immunity and of hematopoiesis, *Semin Immunol* 7:83–88, 1995.
Trinkle LS, Wellhausen SR, McLeish KR: A simultaneous flow cytometric measurement of neutrophil phagocytosis and oxidative burst in whole blood, *Diagn Clin Immunol* 5:62–68, 1987.
Truneh A, Machy P, Barbet J, et al: Endocytosis of HLA and H-2 molecules on transformed murine cells measured by fluorescence dequenching of liposome-encapsulated carboxyfluorescein, *EMBO J* 2:2285–2291, 1983.
Tuerk MJ, Fazel N: Zinc deficiency, *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 25:136–143, 2009.
Turvey SE, Broide DH: Innate immunity, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 125:S24–S32, 2010.
Uchida A, Moore M, Klein E: Autologous mixed lymphocyte-tumor reaction and autologous mixed lymphocyte reaction. I. Proliferation of two distinct T cell subsets, *Int J Cancer* 40:165–170, 1987.
Uchida A, Moore M, Klein E: Autologous mixed lymphocyte-tumor reaction and autologous mixed lymphocyte reaction. II. Generation of specific and non-specific killer T cells capable of lysing autologous tumor, *Int J Cancer* 41:651–656, 1988.
Urban T, Jarstrand C: Nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction by bacteria: Some properties of the reaction and its possible use, *Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand [B]* 87:227–233, 1979.
Vajpayee M, Mohan T: Current practices in laboratory monitoring of HIV infection, *Indian J Med Res* 134:801–822, 2011.
van de Geijn GJ, van Rees V, van Pul-Bom N, et al: Leukoflow: Multiparameter extended white blood cell differentiation for routine analysis by flow cytometry, *Cytometry A* 79:694–706, 2011.
van der Merwe PA, Davis SJ: Molecular interactions mediating T cell antigen recognition, *Annu Rev Immunol* 21:659–684, 2003.
van Deurs B, Röpke C, Thorball N: Kinetics of pinocytosis studied by flow cytometry, *Eur J Cell Biol* 34:96–102, 1984.
van Eeden SF, Klut ME, Walker BA, et al: The use of flow cytometry to measure neutrophil function, *J Immunol Methods* 232:23–43, 1999.
Veber MB, Cunningham-Rundles S, Schulman M, et al: Acute shift in immune response to microbial activators in very-low-birth-weight infants, *Clin Exp Immunol* 83:391–395, 1991.
Vigano A, Vella S, Principi N, et al: Thymus volume correlates with the progression of vertical HIV infection, *AIDS* 13:F29–F34, 1999.
Vindelov LL, Christensen IJ: Detergent and proteolytic enzyme-based techniques for nuclear isolation and DNA content analysis, *Methods Cell Biol* 41:219–229, 1994.
Waller EK: Cellular immunotherapy and cancer, *Semin Oncol* 31:87–90, 2004.
Walrand S, Valeix S, Rodriguez C, et al: Flow cytometry study of polymorphonuclear neutrophil oxidative burst: A comparison of three fluorescent probes, *Clin Chim Acta* 331:103–110, 2003.
Wang L, Gaigalas AK, Yan M: Quantitative fluorescence measurements with multicolor flow cytometry, *Methods Mol Biol* 699:53–65, 2011.
Wang Yang M-C, Harvey NE, Cuchens MA, et al: Pulse profile analyses of endocytosis in capped B lymphocytes and BCL1 cells, *Cytometry* 9:131–137, 1988.
Wedderburn LR, Patel A, Varsani H, et al: The developing human immune system: T cell receptor repertoire of children and young adults shows a wide discrepancy in the frequency of persistent oligoclonal T cell expansions, *Immunology* 102:301–309, 2001.
Weinberg DS: Relative applicability of image analysis and flow cytometry in clinical medicine. In Bauer KD, Duque RE, Shankey TV, editors: *Clinical flow cytometry: Principles and applications*, Baltimore, 1993, Williams & Wilkins, pp 359–371.
Weiskopf D, Weinberger B, Grubeck-Loebenstein B: The aging of the immune system, *Transpl Int* 22:1041–1050, 2009.
Weiss A, Littman DR: Signal transduction by lymphocyte antigen receptors, *Cell* 76:263–274, 1994.
Weiss AJ: Overview of membranes and membrane plates used in research and diagnostic ELISPOT assays, *Methods Mol Biol* 792:243–256, 2012.
Wheeless LL, Coon JS, Cox C, et al: Precision of DNA flow cytometry in inter-institutional analyses, *Cytometry* 12:405–412, 1991.
Wigzell H: Quantitative titrations of mouse H-2 antibodies using Cr-51-labelled target cells, *Transplantation* 3:423–431, 1965.
Williams JM, Loertscher R, Cotner T, et al: Dual parameter flow cytometric analysis of DNA content, activation antigen expression, and T cell subset proliferation in the human mixed lymphocyte reaction, *J Immunol* 132:2330–2337, 1984.
Wingren AG, Parra E, Varga M, et al: T cell activation pathways: B7, LFA-3, and ICAM-1 shape unique T cell profiles, *Crit Rev Immunol* 15:235–253, 1995.
Xu-Amano J, Kiyono H, Jackson RJ, et al: Helper T cell subsets for immunoglobulin A responses: Oral immunization with tetanus toxoid and cholera toxin as adjuvant selectively induces Th2 cells in mucosa associated tissues, *J Exp Med* 178:1309–1320, 1993.
Yamamura M, Uyemura K, Deans RJ, et al: Defining protective responses to pathogens: Cytokine profiles in leprosy lesions, *Science* 254:277–279, 1991.
Yannelli JR, Wroblewski JM: On the road to a tumor cell vaccine: 20 years of cellular immunotherapy, *Vaccine* 23:97–113, 2004.
Ygberg S, Nilsson A: The developing immune system—From foetus to toddler, *Acta Paediatr* 101:120–127, 2012.
Yokoyama WM, Kim S, French AR: The dynamic life of natural killer cells, *Annu Rev Immunol* 22:405–429, 2004.
Zarbock A, Ley K: Neutrophil adhesion and activation under flow, *Microcirculation* 16:31–42, 2009.
Zarcone D, Tilden AB, Cloud G, et al: Flow cytometry evaluation of cell-mediated cytotoxicity, *J Immunol Methods* 94:247–255, 1986.
Zedler S, Bone RC, Baue AE, et al: T cell reactivity and its predictive role in immunosuppression after burns, *Crit Care Med* 27:66–72, 1999.
Zola H, Moore HA, Bradley J, et al: Lymphocyte subpopulations in human cord blood: Analysis with monoclonal antibodies, *J Reprod Immunol* 5:311–317, 1983.
Zolnierowicz J, Ambrozek-Latecka M, Kawiak J, et al: Monitoring cell proliferation in vitro with different cellular fluorescent dyes, *Folia Histochem Cytobiol* 51:193–200, 2013.
Zucker RM, Fisher NC: Evaluation and purchase of an analytical flow cytometer: Some of the numerous factors to consider, *Curr Protoc Cytom* 1:Unit 1.28, 2013.

CHAPTER 46

LABORATORY EVALUATION OF IMMUNOGLOBULIN FUNCTION AND HUMORAL IMMUNITY

Richard A. McPherson, Roger S. Riley, H. Davis Massey

STRUCTURAL PROPERTIES OF ANTIBODIES, 913
Antibody Molecules, 913
Antibody–Antigen Interaction, 915
THE GENETIC BASIS OF ANTIBODY DIVERSITY, 916

GENERAL PROPERTIES OF IMMUNOGLOBULINS, 917
Immunoglobulin M, 917
Immunoglobulin G, 918
Immunoglobulin A, 918
Immunoglobulin D, 920
Immunoglobulin E, 920
Summary, 920

CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF IMMUNOGLOBULINS, 920
Disease Pathogenesis, 920
Disease Diagnosis, 922
Disease Prevention and Therapy, 927
SELECTED REFERENCES, 928

KEY POINTS

- Five different classes of antibody are known—immunoglobulin (Ig)M, IgG, IgA, IgD, and IgE—each with a distinct heavy chain.
- Two different light chain types have been identified: κ and λ.
- Antigens react with antibodies at the Fab region, which contains variable regions of both heavy and light chains.
- The Fc region on the heavy chains determines what other proteins will bind to the antibody (e.g., complement).
- IgG is prevalent in blood and tissue fluids; IgM is found mainly in the blood; secretory IgA is found primarily on epithelial surfaces; IgD is bound mostly to B cells; and IgE is bound largely to basophils and mast cells.
- Polyclonal increases in immunoglobulins occur as part of the immune response and may be found in chronic disease.
- Monoclonal increases in immunoglobulins suggest a plasma cell dyscrasia.
- Diagnosis of disorders of immunoglobulins is aided by their quantitative measurement, in addition to qualitative measures of their clonality by immunofixation electrophoresis and by determination of free light chain concentrations.
- Cryoglobulins can arise as excess monoclonal immunoglobulin (type I), which causes hyperviscosity, or as an IgM autoantibody against IgG (types II and III), which forms circulating immune complexes and causes vasculitis.
- Oligoclonal bands of immunoglobulin in cerebrospinal fluid suggest autoimmune disorders such as demyelinating disease or infection.
- Antibodies are the effector molecules of humoral (B cell–mediated) immunity. They are immunoglobulins that react specifically and bind with the antigens that stimulated their production. By mass, immunoglobulins make up about 20% of plasma proteins in healthy individuals. Antibody activity is associated with the slowest migrating proteins on electrophoresis: the γ-globulins. The focus of this chapter is to discuss the general structural and functional properties of immunoglobulins, their laboratory evaluation, and their clinical significance.

STRUCTURAL PROPERTIES OF ANTIBODIES

ANTIBODY MOLECULES

The molecular structure of antibodies has been well elucidated (Padlan, 1991; Poljak, 1991; Tedford & Stimson, 1991). An immunoglobulin molecule is a Y-shaped glycoprotein. It has two identical antigen-binding sites at the tips of the Y (Fab region) and binding sites for complement components and/or various cell surface receptors on the tail of the Y (Fc region). Each immunoglobulin molecule is composed of two identical heavy (H) chains and two identical light (L) chains. These polypeptide chains are held together by noncovalent interactions that are stabilized by disulfide bonds. Parts of both the H and L chains form the antigen-binding sites. Each immunoglobulin L and H chain consists of a variable region of about 110 amino acid residues at its amino-terminal end (the tips of the Y), which forms the antigen-binding site, linked to a constant region. The H constant region is three or four times larger than that of the L chain. Each chain is composed of repeating, similarly folded domains: An L chain has one variable region (VL) and one constant region (CL) domain, whereas an H chain has one variable region (VH) and three or four constant region (CH) domains (Fig. 46-1). The amino acid sequence variation in the variable regions of both L and H chains is for the most part confined to three small hypervariable regions that come together at the amino-terminal end of the molecule to form the antigen-binding site. Each antigen-binding site is only large enough to bind an antigenic determinant the size of five or six sugar residues.

Five different heavy chain isotypes (γ, α, μ, δ, ε) and two light chain isotypes (κ and λ) have been identified, with some of the isotypes having further subtypes. For example, γ has subtypes γ1, γ2, γ3, and γ4. The isotypes are formed as a result of variations in the constant regions of the heavy and light chains. These isotypic designations are the basis for the nomenclature of antibodies. Because the heavy chain alone determines effector functions, immunoglobulins are conveniently referred to by their heavy chain isotype (class) using an English letter terminology (IgG, IgA, IgM, IgD, and IgE).

Antibodies have two identical antigen-binding sites. An antigen-binding site is made up of amino acids from one H chain class and one L chain class. Thus the four-chain Y monomer molecules (see Fig. 46-1) possess two identical antigen-combining sites and are said to be **bivalent.** Such antibody molecules can cross-link antigen molecules into a large lattice if the antigen molecules each have three or more antigenic determinants. Once the lattice reaches a certain size, it precipitates out of solution (Davies & Metzer, 1983). This cross-linking is physiologically important because it enhances the engulfment of antigen, such as that expressed by bacteria and by phagocytic leukocytes. It is also involved in activation of the complement system. In addition, cross-linking may be required for the triggering of antibody-producing cells (B lymphocytes) by antigen. The efficiency of antigen-binding and cross-linking reactions by antibodies is greatly increased by a flexible hinge region, where the arms of the Y join the tail, allowing the distance between the two antigen-binding sites to vary.

Multivalence affects the avidity with which an antibody can bind certain types of antigens. A particulate antigen (such as a bacterium or virus) has repeating antigenic determinants on its surface. An antibody molecule may interact with a single particle in such a manner that both of its

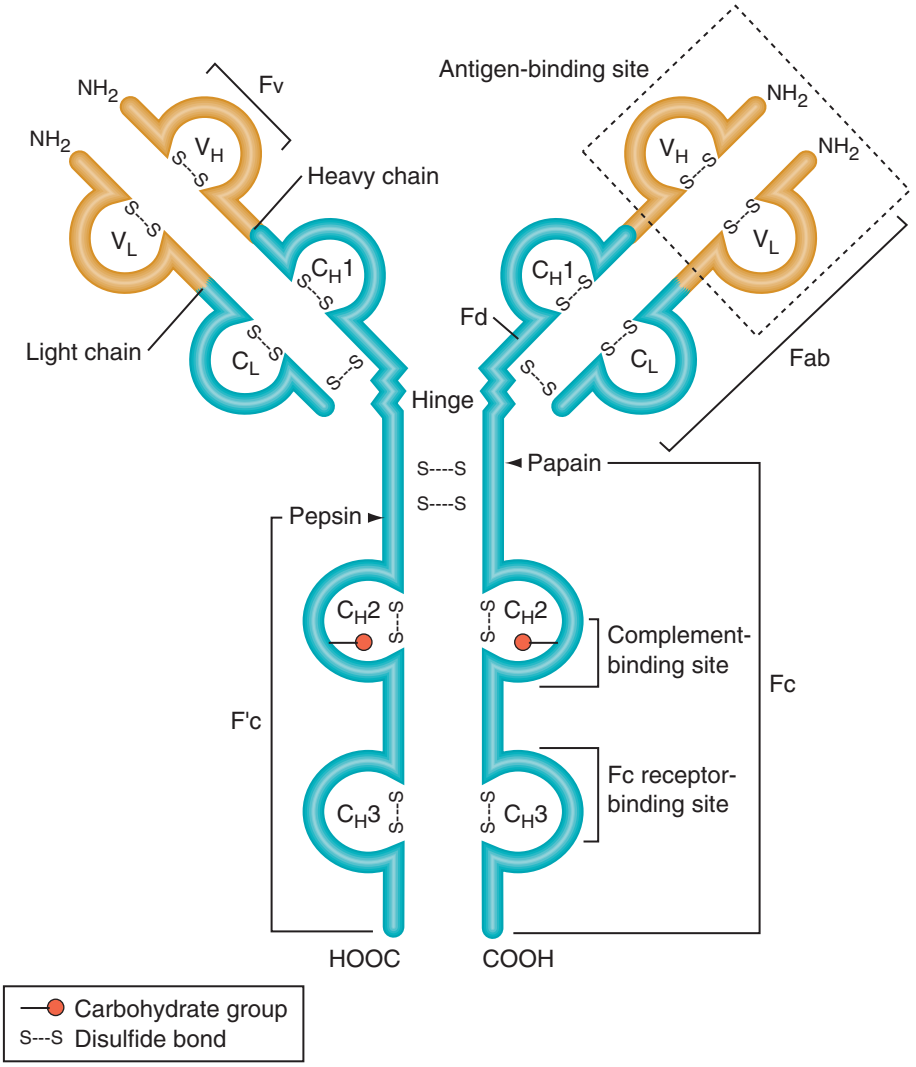


Figure 46-1 **Schematic representation of immunoglobulin G molecule.** The relative positions of the interchain disulfide bonds and the intrachain disulfide bonds that form the loop regions are shown. Each of the loops delineates the domain of the light and heavy chain labeled accordingly. Probable sites of enzymatic cleavage in the "hinge" region by papain or pepsin are indicated. The papain fragments are designated Fab and Fc. The pepsin fragments are Fc′ and Fab′2 (2 Fab fragments disulfide-linked). Digestion of Fab with pepsin under proper conditions yields the fragment Fv (VH and VL non-covalently associated). The part of the heavy chain that contributes to the Fab fragment is designated Fd.

antigen-combining sites are bound to antigenic determinants on that particle rather than to antigenic determinants on two adjacent particles. When this type of binding occurs, the effective energy of interaction or avidity is greatly increased compared with that associated with monovalent attachments to two particles. This mechanism has been shown to be physiologically important in the neutralization of viruses by antibodies of relatively low binding affinity.

The protective effect of immunoglobulins is not due simply to their ability to bind antigen. They engage in a variety of biological activities mediated by the tail of the Y, the Fc region of the molecule. This part of the antibody molecule determines what will happen to the antigen once it is bound. Immunoglobulins with the same antigen-binding capacity can have a variety of different Fc regions and therefore different functional properties, such as activating the complement system and attaching to Fc receptors on macrophages, thereby aiding phagocytosis of antigens.

Because of its exposed location and loosely folded structure, the **hinge region** is readily attacked by various proteolytic enzymes. As the name suggests, the hinge region confers a certain amount of flexibility on the molecule, allowing it to assume the Y-shaped structure. This permits an antibody to become attached to a single particle (e.g., a bacterium) through both of its antigen-combining sites or, alternatively, to stretch out to its full length to join two particles. The unique properties conferred by the hinge region on Ig molecules are related to its rich content of proline and hydrophilic amino acid residues. The inter–H chain disulfide bonds of IgG, IgA, and IgD molecules are located in the hinge region (see Fig. 46-1).

The proteolytic enzymes papain and pepsin cleave antibody molecules into different characteristic fragments that lead to an understanding of the structure–function relationship of the protein. Papain cleavage produces two separate and identical Fab (fragment antigen-binding) fragments, each with one antigen-binding site, and one Fc fragment (so-called because in nonhuman primates, it readily crystallizes). On the other hand, pepsin cleavage produces one F(ab′)2 fragment, so-called because it consists of two covalently linked F(ab′) fragments (each slightly larger than a Fab fragment); the rest of the molecule is broken down into smaller fragments of various sizes (see Fig. 46-1). Because F(ab′)2 fragments are bivalent, they can still cross-link antigens and form precipitates. This is not true of the univalent Fab fragments. Neither of these fragments (subunits of antibodies) has the other biological properties of intact antibody molecules because they lack the tail (the Fc region) that mediates these properties. However, monovalent Fab is the form of postimmunization monospecific, affinity-purified ovine antibody that is used therapeutically in patients for such applications as removing toxic levels of digoxin (Digibind) or neutralizing crotalid snake venoms (CroFab).

Each B cell clone makes antibody molecules with a unique antigen-binding site. Initially, the molecules are inserted into the plasma membrane, where they serve as cell surface receptors for antigen. When antigen binds to the membrane-bound antibodies, B cells are activated to multiply, differentiate to a plasma cell, and synthesize a large amount of soluble antibody with the same antigen-binding site, which is secreted into the blood. Humoral antibodies defend humans and animals against infection

TABLE 46-1
Biological Properties of Immunoglobulin Domains

Domain	Known or Probable Function
CH3	1. Cytotrophic reactions involving: a. Macrophages and monocytes b. Heterologous mast cells c. Cytotoxic killer (K) cells d. B cells 2. Noncovalent assembly of heavy and light chains
CH2	1. Binding of complement (C1q) 2. Control of catabolic rate
CH1/CL	1. Noncovalent assembly of heavy and light chains 2. Covalent assembly of heavy and light chains 3. Spacers between interdomain interactions involving antigen binding and effector functions VH/VL1.
	1. Antigen binding 2. Noncovalent bonding of heavy and light chains

Used with permission from Dorrington KJ, Painter RH: Biological activities of the constant region of immunoglobulin G. In Mandel TE, et al, editors: *Progress in immunology III,* Canberra, 1977, Australian Academy of Science.

by inactivating viruses and bacterial toxins via VH/VL domains and by recruiting complement and various cells to kill and ingest invading microorganisms via CL domains in the Fc region of the molecule. The biological properties of the various immunoglobulin domains are summarized in Table 46-1.

ANTIBODY–ANTIGEN INTERACTION

The binding of an antigen to antibody is reversible. The affinity and the number of binding sites contribute to the strength of an antibody–antigen interaction. This reversible binding is a result of many relatively weak noncovalent forces, including hydrophobic and hydrogen bonds, van der Waals forces, and ionic interactions. These weak forces are effective only when the antigen molecule is close enough to allow some of its atoms to fit into complementary recesses (regions) on the antibody surface. The complementary regions of a four-chain antibody unit are its two identical antigen-binding sites, whereas the corresponding region on the antigen is an antigenic determinant. Most antigenic macromolecules have many different antigenic determinants; if two or more of them are identical, the antigen is said to be multivalent.

The **affinity** of an antibody molecule reflects the tightness of fit of an antigenic determinant to a single antigen-binding site, and it is independent of the number of antigenic sites. However, the total **avidity** of an antibody for a multivalent antigen, such as a polymer with repeating subunits, is defined as the total binding strength of all of its binding sites together. A typical IgG molecule binds at least 10,000 times more strongly to a multivalent antigen if both antigen-binding sites are engaged than if only one site is involved.

For the same reason, if the affinity of the antigen-binding sites in an IgG and an IgM molecule is the same, the IgM molecule (because it is a pentamer and thus has 10 binding sites) will have much greater avidity for a multivalent antigen than an IgG molecule (which has two binding sites). This difference in avidity is important in view of the fact that antibodies produced early in an immune response usually have much lower affinities than those produced later. The increase in the average affinity of antibodies produced as time passes after immunization is called **affinity maturation.** This occurs because the antibody response to an antigen is heterogeneous—that is, antibodies with different antigen-combining sites are elicited against the antigen by the responding clones of B lymphocytes. Because of its high total avidity, IgM (the major Ig class produced early in immune responses) can function even when each of its binding sites has only low affinity.

Avidity of an antibody can be assessed by introducing a chaotropic agent such as urea into the assay mixture to break apart low-energy molecular interactions; under these conditions, high-avidity antibodies remain bound to their antigens, whereas those of low avidity dissociate from their antigens and are not detected. Measurement of IgG antibody avidity is applied clinically for differentiating recent infections from previous infections in cases where the IgM response is prolonged and therefore not useful for this purpose. As an example, West Nile virus infection shows low-avidity IgG antibodies in recent infections (2 to 43 days after onset of symptoms) but high-avidity IgG antibodies at 6 months or more after

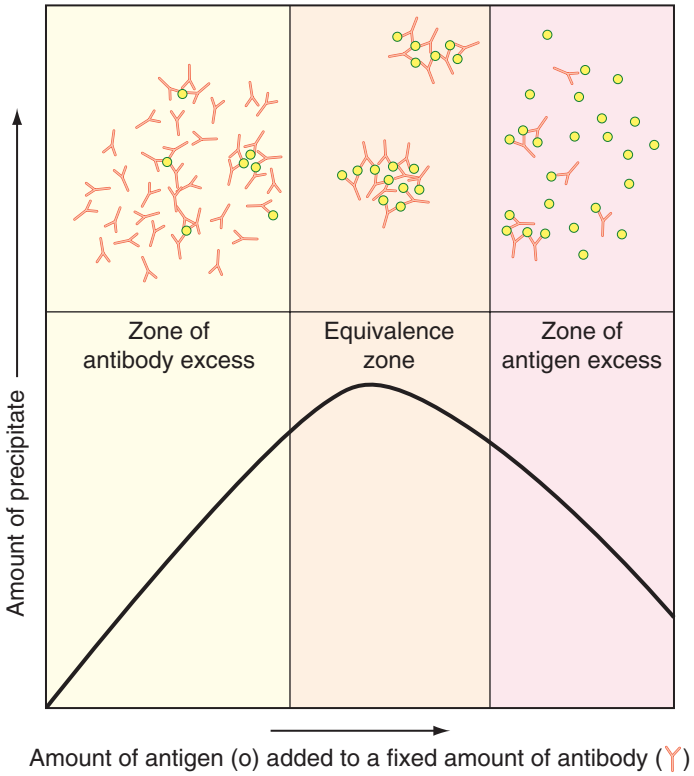


Figure 46-2 Antibody and antigen concentrations influence the size of antigen–antibody complexes formed. The largest complexes are formed when both molecules are present at approximately the same molar concentration (zone of equivalence), whereas the smallest complexes are formed when the antigen is present in great excess. Note that the small complexes formed in antigen excess have only a few antibody molecules per complex; for this reason, they are inefficiently cleared from the extracellular fluids by macrophages.

onset (Levett et al, 2005). Similar use of antibody avidity measurements to distinguish recent/acute from longer-term/chronic infections has been applied to human immunodeficiency viruses (Keating et al, 2012); hepatitis C virus (Kanno & Kazuyama, 2002); toxoplasmosis (Rodrigues et al, 2015); human cytomegalovirus (De Paschale et al, 2014); measles, mumps, and rubella (Kontio et al, 2012); and other infectious agents.

The size of the antigen–antibody complex is determined by the valence of the antigen and the relative concentrations of the antigen and the antibody. The antigen–antibody precipitation reaction is based on cross-linking of multivalent antigens by bivalent antibodies. If only one species of antibody (a monoclonal response) is present, molecules with only one antigenic determinant cannot be cross-linked. If an antigen is bivalent, it can form small cyclic complexes or linear chains with antibody, whereas an antigen with three or more antigenic determinants can form large three-dimensional lattices that readily precipitate. However, most antisera elicited against an antigen contain a variety of different antibodies (a polyclonal response) that react with different determinants on the antigen and can cooperate in cross-linking the antigen. By contrast, homogeneous (monoclonal) antibodies can precipitate molecules only if they contain repeating identical antigenic determinants.

Given valence conditions that allow the formation of large aggregates, the size of the antigen–antibody complexes that form depends critically on the relative molar concentrations of the two reactants. If an excess of antigen or antibody is present, large complexes are unlikely to form (Fig. 46-2). This property is crucial to understanding seemingly paradoxical reactions in some immunoassays that depend on antigen–antibody complex formation. For example, a vast excess of antigen can completely saturate all antibody-binding sites, leading to a negative signal (i.e., no agglutination). This phenomenon is sometimes referred to as the *prozone effect*. The prozone effect remains a potential problem for modern assay systems, including syphilis testing, in which extremely high-titer antibodies can be missed unless the specimen is tested at dilutions (Smith & Holman, 2004) and even in immunofixation electrophoresis (see later, Fig. 46-6, *E*).

The prozone effect, or **hook effect,** occurs in many different immunoassays, particularly those based on sandwich formation involving a capture antibody (usually sold phase) that binds antigen plus a second

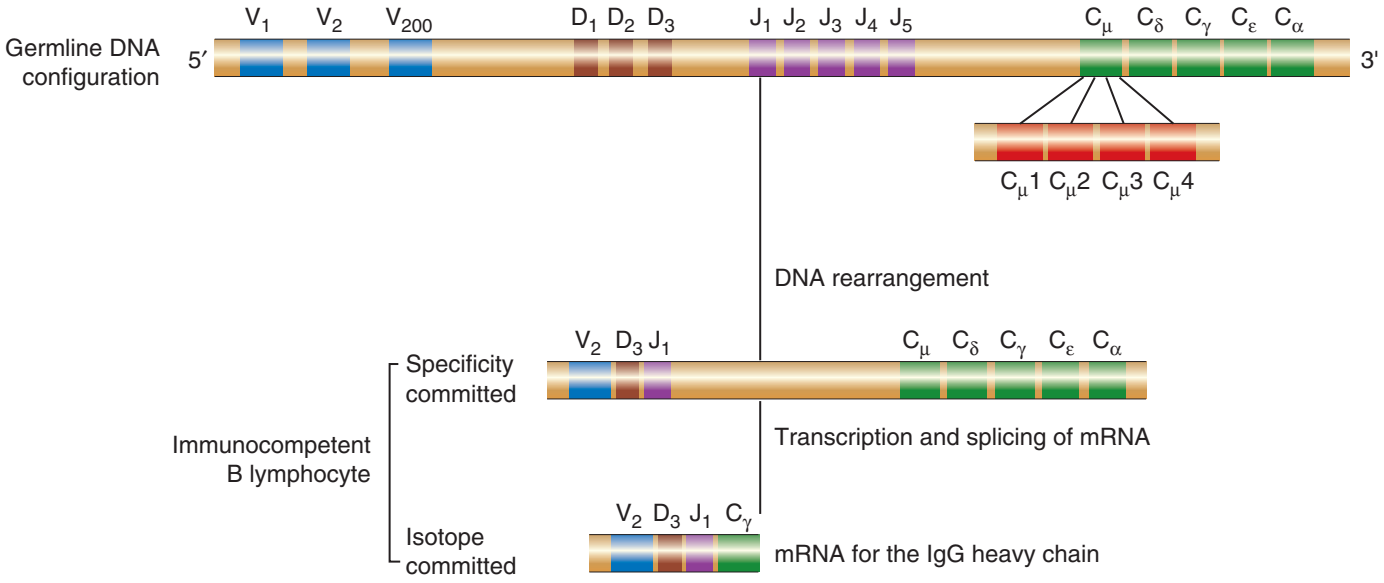


Figure 46-3 Organization and rearrangement of heavy chain immunoglobulin (Ig) genes (exons) on the mouse 12 chromosome. Each VH gene also has a leader sequence, which is not shown. The constant region genes are identified by the heavy chain isotype, and more than one gene exists for the Cγ and Cα isotypes. Unlike Cγ and Cα genes, CH genes are composed of multiple exons, as illustrated for the Cμ gene (Cμ1 to Cμ4 domains). The switch sites are located at the 5′ end of each of the CH genes and are not shown. The solid line represents the intervening sequences (introns) between genes or gene segments. Each heavy chain is encoded by four distinct gene segments: V, D, J, and C. (Redrawn with permission from Marcu KB: Immunoglobulin heavy-chain constant region genes, *Cell* 29:719, 1982. Copyright © by Cell Press.)

reporter antibody (typically labeled with an enzyme, a fluorescent or chemiluminescent dye, or radioactivity) also directed against the antigen. When antigen is present in excess, it can saturate both capture and reporter antibodies, thereby preventing sandwich formation. This situation is analogous in part to the right side of Figure 46-2, where signal strength diminishes at high antigen concentration. Assay results can be inappropriately low or even nonreactive with exceedingly high antigen concentrations; as the specimen is further diluted and reassayed, the measured value paradoxically increases as antigen concentration falls back into the assay range. This manifestation of the prozone is termed the *hook effect* after the shape of the dose response curve, which is directly proportional to antigen concentration in most specimens but reverses and falls off at much higher antigen concentrations. The hook effect occurs in immunoassays in which the antigen concentration can vary over several orders of magnitude. The assay may be configured to measure antigens over only two or three orders of magnitude, but when antigen concentration ranges over 4, 5, or more orders of magnitude, the hook effect will likely occur, giving rise to falsely low results. Immunoassays in which the hook effect can be prominent include those for human chorionic gonadotropin, immunoglobulin A (especially in IgA myeloma), and immunoglobulin light chains.

The size and composition of antibody–antigen complexes are not only important in influencing precipitation reactions in vitro, but they are crucial in determining the fate of the complexes in the body. Complexes formed at equivalence or in antibody excess have multiple protruding Fc regions and therefore bind strongly to Fc receptors in macrophages, which ingest and degrade them. Small complexes, formed in antigen excess, have only one Fc region per complex. Therefore, they bind poorly to Fc receptors on macrophages and are less efficiently destroyed. Instead, they may be deposited in small blood vessels in the skin, kidneys, joints, and brain, where they may activate the complement system, causing inflammation and the destruction of tissue.

Although it appears that antigen–antibody complexes have a rigid "lock-and-key" appearance, antibodies are dynamic entities that undergo structural fluctuations (Karplus & McCammon, 1983; Wilson et al, 1991). Conformational changes may even be required for binding. These adjustments include side chain shifts of up to 20 to 30 nm, aromatic ring rotations, conformational changes, and even small rotations between VH and VL domains (Bhat et al, 1990; Standfield et al, 1990; Herron et al, 1991).

THE GENETIC BASIS OF ANTIBODY DIVERSITY

It is estimated that a human is able to make at least 10^6 to 10^9 different antibody molecules. Special genetic mechanisms have evolved to produce the very large number of immunoglobulin molecules that develop in response to antigen stimulation without the need for an excessive number of genes (Max, 2003).

Immunoglobulin molecules are produced by three separate gene pools encoding the κ, λ, and H chains, respectively. The gene pools for light and heavy chains reside on different chromosomes. In each pool, separate gene segments that encode for different parts of the variable regions of light and heavy chains can be brought together by site-specific recombination events during B cell differentiation. The light chain gene pools contain one or more constant (C) genes and sets of variable (V) and joining (J) gene segments. The H chain gene pool contains a set of C genes and sets of V, diversity (D), and J gene segments. To make an antibody molecule, a VL gene segment is recombined with a JL gene segment to produce a V gene for the light chain, and a VH gene segment is recombined with D and JH segments to produce a V gene for the heavy chain (Fig. 46-3). Each of the assembled gene segments is then cotranscribed with the appropriate constant region sequence to produce a messenger RNA molecule that encodes for the complete polypeptide chain. By variously combining inherited gene segments encoding for VL and VH regions, vertebrates can make thousands of different light chains and thousands of different H chains that can associate to form millions of different antibody molecules.

The baseline repertoire of antibody molecules can be expanded still further by somatic hypermutation, which seems to be activated by exposure to antigen. Thus the selective role of antigen in the presence of somatic mutation appears to lead to fine tuning of the immune response and to a virtually unlimited diversity of antibody molecules. Somatic point mutations in immunoglobulin genes occur in B cells (not germ cells) during the lifetime of the animal or of humans (Tonegawa, 1983). The somatic hypermutations are largely confined to the H chain and L chain variable region genes and the introns immediately surrounding them. It is estimated that close to one mutation will occur in the H or L chain V region of an individual cell with each cell division. This not only increases antibody diversity but may cause a change in the affinity with which the antibody binds its ligand. Those emerging B cells that can bind the antigen more avidly have an advantage over other B cells that do not bind the antigen as avidly. As the concentration of antigen falls, those B cells that have more avid receptors dominate the population of responding cells. This results in greater affinity of the antibodies being produced on rechallenge than in the initial response. Thus this process of somatic hypermutation can result in the presence in immunized individuals of high-affinity antibodies that are much more effective on a weight basis.

All B cells initially make IgM antibodies. Some later switch to make antibodies of other classes (isotypes: IgG, IgA, etc.) that have the same

TABLE 46-2
Summary of Immunoglobulin Variants

Type of Variation	Distribution	Variant	Location	Examples
Isotypic	All variants present in serum of a normal individual	Classes Subclasses Types Subtypes Subgroups	C_H C_H C_L C_L V_L, V_H	IgM, IgE IgA1, IgA2 κ, λ λOz+, λOz– $V_{κI}$, $V_{κII}$, V_{HI}, V_{HII}
Allotypic	Allelic forms not present in all individuals	Allotypes	Mainly C_H/C_L Occasionally V_H/V_L	Gm group (human γ chain; e.g., IgG1, G1m3, G1m17) b_4, b_5, b_6, b_9 (rabbit light chain)
Idiotypic	Antigenic individuality specific to each Ig molecule	Idiotypes	V_H/V_L	Determinant identified by antibody specific to an individual immunoglobulin

Modified with permission from Sell S: *Immunology, immunopathology, and immunity,* ed 4. New York, 1987, Elsevier Science.

TABLE 46-3
Physical Properties of Human Immunoglobulins

WHO Designation	IgM	IgG	IgA	IgD	IgE
Heavy chains	μ	γ	α	δ	ε
Heavy chain subclasses	$μ_1$, $μ_2$	$γ_1$, $γ_2$, $γ_3$, $γ_4$	$α_1$, $α_2$	—	—
Light chains	κ or λ	κ or λ	κ or λ	κ or λ	κ or λ
Molecular formula	IgM(κ) $(2μ2κ)_5$ IgM(λ) $(2μ2λ)_5$	IgG(κ) 2γ2κ IgG(λ) 2γ2λ	IgA(κ) $(2α2κ)_{1-3}$ IgA(λ) $(1α2λ)_{1-3}$ IgA(κ) $(2α2κ)_2S$† IgA(λ) $(2α2λ)_2S$	IgD(κ) 2δ2κ IgD(λ) 2δ2λ	IgE(κ) 2ε3κ IgE(λ) 2ε2λ
Number of four-chain units per molecule	5	1	1-3	1	1
Heavy chain molecular weight, kDa	70	50-60	55	62	70
Light chain molecular weight, kDa	23	23	23	23	23
Sedimentation coefficient, S20W	18.0-19.0	6.7-7.0	6.6-14.0	6.9-7.0	7.9-8.0
Molecular weight, kDa	900	143-160	159-447	177-185	187-200
Electrophoretic mobility	γ1-β1	γ2-α1	γ2-β2	γ1	γ1
Carbohydrate content, %	7-14	2.2-3	7.5-9.0	12-13	11-12
Heavy chain allotypes	—	Gm	Am	—	—
Light chain allotypes	Km(κ)*	Km(κ)*	Km(κ)*	Km(κ)*	Km(κ)
Valency for antigen binding	5 (10)	2	2.4 (? polymeric forms)	2	2
Number of domains on the heavy chains	5	4	4	4	5

*Formerly designated Inv marker.
†Dimer in external secretions carries secretory component -S.

antigen-binding site (idiotype) as the original IgM antibodies (**allelic exclusion**) (Table 46-2). Such class switching in combination with allelic exclusion allows the same antigen-binding sites (same VH and light chain) to be distributed among antibodies with many different biological properties (secondary effector functions) (Corcoran, 2005).

Thus the gene organization mechanism permits the assembly of immunoglobulin molecules with a variety of specificities. Antibody diversity depends on the presence of multiple gene segments, their rearrangement into different sequences, the combination of different light and heavy chains in the assembly of immunoglobulin molecules, and somatic mutations.

GENERAL PROPERTIES OF IMMUNOGLOBULINS

The various classes of human immunoglobulins and their properties (Spiegelberg, 1974; Kolar & Capra, 2003) are summarized in Tables 46-3 and 46-4.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN M

This glycoprotein is the major class of antibody secreted into the blood in the early stages of a **primary** antibody response. Normally, the secreted form of IgM is a pentamer composed of five four-chain units, a macroglobulin with a 19S sedimentation rate, and a molecular weight of 900 kDa. However, in human autoimmune disorders, such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), the monomeric 7S form may be detected in appreciable amounts in serum. Selective IgM deficiency is a rare disorder associated with the absence of IgM and normal levels of other immunoglobulin classes. The cause of this disorder is unknown.

Because pentameric IgM has a total of 10 antigen-binding sites, it is more efficient than 7S monomeric IgM or IgG molecules in cross-linking antigen and in activating the complement system when bound to antigen. Thus this high efficiency in binding and activating complement, coupled with its early appearance during the course of infection, makes IgM a particularly potent agent in combating microbial invasions.

Each IgM pentamer contains one copy of another polypeptide chain, called a **J (joining) chain,** which has a molecular weight of 15 kDa. This accessory polypeptide is produced by IgM-secreting cells. It is an acidic glycoprotein with a high content of cysteine residues and thus is disulfide linked between two adjacent IgM monomeric Fc regions at the carboxy-terminal end. Presumably, oligomerization is initiated at this site.

IgM is also the first class of antibody to be produced by developing B cells. The immediate precursors of B cells, called pre-B cells, make μ chains but not light chains, which accumulate in the cells. Pre-B cells then begin to synthesize light chains, which combine with μ chains to form four-chain monomer IgM molecules. The two μ-chain and two light-chain component is inserted into the plasma membrane, where it functions as a receptor for antigen. At this point, the cells have become B lymphocytes and can respond to antigen.

Perhaps because of its large size, secreted pentamer IgM is not found to any significant extent in tissue spaces; it is confined to the blood

TABLE 46-4
Properties of Human Immunoglobulins

	IgM	IgG	IgA	IgD	IgE
Physiologic					
Normal adult serum concentration, mg/mL	1.2-4.0	8.0-16.0	0.4-2.2	0.03	17-450 ng/mL
International units/mL	69-322	92-207	54-268	—	<100
Percentage total immunoglobulin	13	80	6	1	0.002
Intravascular distribution, %	41	48	76	75	51
Synthetic rate, mg/kg/day	2.2	35	24	0.4	0.003
Catabolic rate in serum, % per day (or half-life, days)	10.6 (5-6)	6 (18-23)	24 (5-6.5)	37 (2.8)	90
Biological					
Agglutinating capacity	+4	±	+2	–	–
Complement-fixing capacity via classical pathway	+4	+	–	–	–
Homologous anaphylactic hypersensitivity	–	–	–	–	+4
Heterologous guinea pig anaphylaxis	–	+	–	–	–
Fixation to homologous mast cells and basophils	–	±	–	–	+4
Cytophilic binding to macrophages	–	+	±	–	–
Placental transport to fetus	–	+	–	–	–
Rheumatoid factor–binding activity	–	+	–	–	–
Present in external secretions	±	+	+4	–	+2
Other Characteristic Properties					
IgM—Produced early in immune response, first effective defense against bacteremia					
IgG—Combats microorganisms and their toxins in extravascular fluids					
IgA—Defends external body surfaces					
IgD—Present on lymphocyte surface of immunocompetent cells, important for B cell activation and/or immunoregulation					

circulation and does not cross the placenta. IgM is a minor component of secretory immunoglobulins at mucosal surfaces and in breast milk.

IgM is phylogenetically the most primitive of the immunoglobulins, and most variants of the genes from the μ chain appear to have evolved into heavy chain genes for the other immunoglobulin classes. Additional physical and biological properties of IgM, as well as the other classes of immunoglobulin, are given in Tables 46-3 and 46-4.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN G

IgG is the best-studied isotype at both structural and functional levels (Burton, 1985). Antibodies of this class constitute the major immunoglobulin in the blood. They are copiously produced during the **secondary** immune response. The Fc region of IgG molecules binds to specific receptors on phagocytic cells, such as macrophages and polymorphonuclear leukocytes, thereby increasing the efficiency with which the phagocytic cells can ingest and destroy infecting microorganisms that have become coated with IgG antibodies in response to infection. These receptors on antibodies attached to target cells also guide natural killer (NK) lymphocytes to destroy them through the process of antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC). The best-known function of IgG is complement activation via the classical cascade. The Fc region of IgG can bind to and thereby activate the first component of the complement system, which unleashes a biochemical attack that kills the microorganisms. At least two molecules of IgG are required for complement activation compared with one molecule of IgM, which has five Fc regions.

IgG molecules are the only antibodies that can pass from mother to fetus. Cells of the placenta that are in contact with maternal blood have receptors that bind the Fc region of IgG molecules and mediate their passage to the fetus. The antibodies first are ingested by receptor-mediated endocytosis and then are transported across the cell and released by exocytosis into the fetal blood. Other classes of antibodies do not bind to these receptors and therefore cannot pass across the placenta. The ability of IgG to cross the placenta provides a major line of defense against infection for the first weeks of an infant's life. Normally, the human fetus begins to receive significant quantities of maternal IgG transplacentally at around 12 weeks' gestation. The quantity increases steadily until, at birth, cord serum contains a concentration of IgG comparable with that of maternal serum. Barring any immunologic disorders, adult levels of IgG are reached by the seventh year of life and remain relatively constant thereafter.

IgG antibodies have a high diffusion coefficient, which enables them to diffuse into the extravascular body spaces more readily than other Ig classes. IgG, being the predominant immunoglobulin in these spaces, carries the major burden of neutralizing bacterial toxins and of binding microorganisms to enhance their phagocytosis. Furthermore, only IgG antibodies coating target cells, such as tumor cells, can sensitize them for extracellular killing by ADCC; the NK cells responsible for ADCC also possess Fc receptors for IgG.

There are four subclasses of human IgG. These four subclasses reflect the existence of four antigenetically distinct H chains (γ1 to γ4), which are similar but not identical in amino acid sequence and general properties. For example, IgG1 is the dominant subclass in adult humans. IgG3 is the most effective binder of complement, followed by IgG1 and IgG2. IgG4 in most cases fails completely to bind complement by the classical pathway. All the subclasses except IgG2 have been demonstrated to cross the placenta. A summary of the physical and biological properties of IgG is given in Tables 46-3 and 46-4, and for the subclasses in Table 46-5.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN A

Antibodies of this class constitute the major class of antibody in secretions (milk, saliva, tears, and respiratory and intestinal secretions). It exists as a four-chain monomer (like IgG) or as a dimer of two such monomer units. IgA molecules in secretions are dimers that carry a single J chain, similar to the one associated with pentameric IgM, and an additional glycopolypeptide chain of 70 kDa called **secretory component** (SC). IgA dimers pick up SC from the surface of the epithelial cells lining the intestine, the bronchi, or the milk, salivary, or tear ducts. Secretory component is synthesized by the epithelial cells and is initially exposed on the nonluminal (external) surface of these cells, where it serves as a receptor for binding dimer IgA. The resulting dimer IgA–receptor complexes are ingested by receptor-mediated endocytosis and are transferred across the epithelial cell cytoplasm in the form of a membrane vesicle, which fuses with the plasma membrane on the luminal side of the epithelial cell. The extramembrane portion of the IgA receptor is then enzymatically cleaved and released as part of the secretory IgA molecule ($[\alpha_2,L_2,]_2$ – Jα) into the lumen. The amino-terminus of the dimer IgA receptor remaining attached to dimer IgA is the SC (Fig. 46-4). Thus the fully assembled dimeric secretory IgA molecule is the synthetic product of two distinct types of cells: plasma cells and epithelial cells. In addition to this transport role, SC may protect the

TABLE 46-5

Properties of Human Immunoglobulin G Subclasses

	IgG1	IgG2	IgG3	IgG4
Physiologic				
Percentage distribution of total normal serum IgG	66 ± 8	23 ± 8	7.3 ± 3.8	4.2 ± 2.6
Synthetic rate, mg/kg/day in serum	25	?	3.4	?
Fraction catabolic rate, % per day (half-life, day)	8 (23)	6.9 (23)	16.8 (7)	6.9 (23)
Ratio of κ/λ	1.4-2.4	1.0-1.1	1.1-1.3	5.0-7.0
Allotypic markers (Gm types)	a, z, f, x	n	bo, bi, bz, g, st, etc.	?
Biological				
Complement-fixing capacity via classical pathway	+2	±	+3	–
Heterologous skin-binding capacity	+	–	+	+
Placental transport to fetus	+	±	+	+
Macrophage receptor	+	–	+	–
Reaction with protein A	+	+	–	+
Dominant Antibody Activities				
Antitetanus toxoid	+2	+	+	±
Antidiphtheria toxoid	+2	+	+	±
Antithyroglobulin	+2	+	+	±
Anti-DNA	+2	+2	±	±
Anti-Rh	+2	–	–	±
Anti-factor VIII	–	–	–	+
Antidextran	–	+	–	–
Antilevan	–	+	–	–
Antiteichoic acid	–	+	–	–
Number of interheavy chain disulfide bonds in hinge region	2	4	5	2
Position of light–heavy chain disulfide bond on the heavy chain	N214	N131	N131	N131

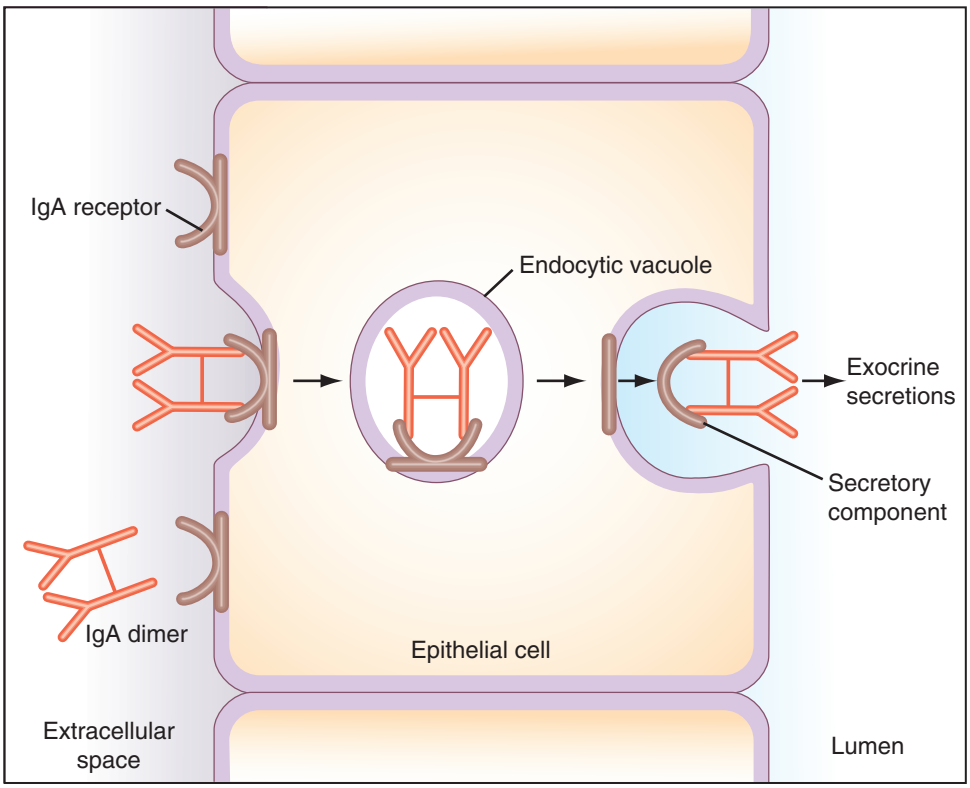


Figure 46-4 The mechanism by which the secretory component mediates the transport of a dimeric immunoglobulin (Ig)A molecule across an epithelial cell. The entire complex is transported from the extracellular fluid into the lumen of the epithelial tube. The secretory component is synthesized by the epithelial cell as a transmembrane glycoprotein and serves as a receptor on its basolateral surface for binding the IgA dimer. The receptor–IgA complex enters the cell in an endocytotic vesicle, which crosses the cell and is exocytosed at the apical surface. Cleavage of the receptor frees the dimer IgA for discharge at the exterior surface (lumen side). The portion of the receptor that remains attached to the IgA dimer is called the secretory component. This transport mechanism is responsible for depositing IgA in various exocrine secretions (e.g., saliva, milk, bile, tears, sweat), as well as in the mucous layer that protects the inner lining of the nasopharyngeal passages, intestine, and genitourinary tract.

dimer IgA molecules from being digested by proteolytic enzymes in secretions.

In humans it has been possible to classify IgA antibodies into two subclasses—IgA1 and IgA2—based on differences in antigenic structure and variation in the arrangement of interchain disulfide bridges. Whereas IgA2 is a minor component of serum IgA, this subclass is the dominant form in secretions. Furthermore, secretory IgA reaches adult levels sooner than serum IgA. The IgA system in the intestinal tract of humans, for example, may be fully developed by 2 years of age, whereas serum IgA levels do not normally reach adult concentrations until 12 years of age.

Because of its presence near external membranes, secretory IgA constitutes a first line of defense against microorganisms in the external environment. It has been postulated that IgA inhibits the adherence of microorganisms to the surface of mucosal cells, thereby preventing their entry into body tissues. One property of secretory IgA that is important in this respect is its multivalence, which is associated with high avidity of binding to antigens; this may be especially relevant in the neutralization of viruses. Antiviral activity by IgA antibodies has been demonstrated in individuals given either of the polio vaccines. Secretory IgA may also combine with certain antigens in food, preventing their absorption into the bloodstream and thus reducing the incidence of allergic reactions. For example, IgA immunodeficiencies can lead to increased levels and incidence of humoral antibodies directed against antigens derived from food and intestinal organisms.

IgA possesses the following effective properties: It fixes complement through the alternative pathway; through a specific Fc receptor on macrophages, it can serve as an opsonin for phagocytosis, and it can induce eosinophil degranulation through a specific receptor, which has implicated IgA in antiparasitic responses. The physical and biological properties of IgA are listed in Tables 46-3 and 46-4.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN D

Although only a minor component of the serum, IgD is a major membrane immunoglobulin found on the surface of a high proportion of B lymphocytes, especially in newborns. During the course of B cell differentiation, these cells synthesize and display IgD molecules, as well as IgM molecules. Whereas this appears to contradict the "one-cell-one-immunoglobulin" rule, the antigen-binding sites (idiotype) of the two types of molecules and their light chains are identical. Only their CH regions differ. The membrane-bound IgD may serve as one of the receptors with which B cells bind antigen and are stimulated to undergo clonal proliferation. Some evidence suggests that IgM-bearing B cells can respond to certain T-independent antigens and that the acquisition of IgD is needed for B cells (IgM- and IgD-bearing) to respond to the T cell help required for T-dependent antigen responsiveness.

Furthermore, if IgD molecules are selectively removed from IgM- and IgD-bearing B cells by taking advantage of the much greater sensitivity of the δ chain to papain, these cells are rendered susceptible to becoming tolerant. The precise role played by surface IgD in an immune response remains unknown, but the generally held view is that it turns on, turns off, or modulates (controls) B cell division or differentiation.

IgD usually is detected in serum at about 6 months of age, and its concentration throughout life is always very low. In disease states, however, IgD concentration can vary greatly. In chronic infection, IgD serum levels increase, as do those of the other immunoglobulins. To date, no specific increase in IgD has been associated with a particular disease. Patients with allergies and autoimmune diseases do not show an abnormal IgD concentration. IgD is usually absent in hypogammaglobulinemic individuals.

To date, IgD has not been assigned a specific biological role as a humoral antibody. IgD activity against a number of antigens has been reported on occasion. Surface IgD, which has proteins similar to those of surface IgM, is a marker for mature B cells, and its role as a receptor is generally accepted, even though the nature and purpose of the signal it transmits remains controversial (Carsetti et al, 1993; Roes & Rajewski, 1993). IgD does not bind complement, does not cross the placenta, and does not bind to cells through its Fc region. The secreted form of IgD, as well as that of the other immunoglobulins, lacks the carboxy-terminal transmembrane peptide that anchors it to the surface of B cells. Tables 46-3 and 46-4 list additional properties of IgD.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN E

Of the various classes of immunoglobulin, IgE is present at the lowest serum concentration (see Table 46-4). It has the ability to attach to human skin (homocytotropic antibody) and to initiate aspects of the allergic reaction (reaginic antibody). The biological activity of IgE is accounted for by its property of binding through the Fc region to basophils and to their tissue equivalent: mast cells. IgE may also be important in the humoral immune response to parasitic disease because it is often found at high levels in the serum of patients with helminthic infection. IgE may play a part in allowing white blood cells (WBCs), antibodies, and complement components to enter sites of inflammation, leading to an immediate hypersensitivity reaction. IgE antibodies provide a striking example of the **bifunctional** nature of antibody molecules. The Fc portion of the molecule binds to the target cells, whereas the Fab portion binds the allergen (see Chapter 55 for the role of IgE in allergic diseases and related assays).

As with IgA, IgE is produced mainly in the linings of the respiratory and intestinal tracts and is part of the external secretory system of antibody. A deficiency of IgE has been inconsistently associated with deficiency of IgA in individuals with impaired immunity, who present with undue susceptibility to infection. IgE does not cross the placenta, and IgE–antigen complexes do not bind complement by the classical pathway (see Table 46-4).

SUMMARY

Five different classes of antibody (IgM, IgG, IgA, IgD, and IgE), four subclasses of IgG antibody (IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4), and two subclasses of IgA antibody (IgA1 and IgA2) are present in humans. Each of these antibody isotypes possesses a distinct H chain (μ, γ, α, δ, ε, γ1, γ2, γ3, and γ4, and α1, α2, respectively). The H chains contain the Fc region of the antibody, which determines what other proteins will bind to the antibody and therefore the biological properties of the class and subclass. Either type of L chain (κ or λ) can be associated with any class of H chain.

Structural differences among the five classes of immunoglobulins correspond to functional differences in their sites of production and action, their relative levels of production in primary and secondary immune responses, and their roles as physiologic effectors. For example, IgG is prevalent in both blood and tissue fluids, whereas IgM is chiefly confined to the blood, and secretory IgA is found primarily on epithelial surfaces. IgD and IgE are principally bound to cells, IgD to B cells, and IgE to basophils and mast cells.

CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF IMMUNOGLOBULINS

Immunoglobulins play important roles in disease pathogenesis, diagnosis, prevention, and therapy.

DISEASE PATHOGENESIS

Monoclonal hyperimmunoglobulinemia is a prominent feature of multiple myeloma and Waldenström's macroglobulinemia. Antibodies against native antigens may result in autoimmune disease, as discussed in Chapters 52 and 54. Hypoglobulinemia or agammaglobulinemia is often the prime characteristic of some immunodeficiency disorders (see Chapter 51). Polyclonal hypergammaglobulinemia can result from chronic inflammation or other disorders such as cirrhosis of the liver due to excess pan–B cell stimulation.

Hyperimmunoglobulinemia

Serum Immunoglobulin Levels

Valid interpretation of serum immunoglobulin levels requires recognition of biological variations that exist throughout the life span of individuals. The most important of these variables are age, sex, and race. In neonates, levels of circulating immunoglobulins are much lower than at all other ages, because essentially all immunoglobulins at that stage were passively transferred from mother to fetus in utero. Immunoglobulin levels rise through childhood to more stable concentrations in mature adults. Normal IgG, IgA, and IgM concentrations at any particular age can vary as much as tenfold from lower to upper limits of the reference ranges. A very large study of immunoglobulin concentrations in a northern New England (99% Caucasian) population of 115,017 serum samples demonstrated the expected rise from infancy, more stable values after adolescence, and then in older individuals further slight increase in IgA, nearly stable IgG, and slight reduction in IgM (Ritchie et al, 1998). Little difference was noted between males and females in terms of IgA and IgG median levels, whereas males exhibited lower IgM than females at all ages except the very young. That study might be considered definitive for age

and gender through the sheer number of subjects, although the population was not racially diverse.

A smaller but still reasonably large group of healthy white subjects (3213) from a single community (Tecumseh, Michigan) showed that mean concentrations of IgG and IgA increased with age, with slight but significant differences between the sexes. Females had higher serum levels of IgG and lower levels of IgA. Although these sex differences for IgG and IgA are statistically significant, their biological meaning is not apparent. IgM levels in these subjects remained relatively constant with age. However, females had higher mean levels of IgM (1.06 mg/mL) than males (0.77 mg/mL) (Cassidy et al, 1974).

Several studies have reported that immunoglobulin levels are higher in persons with pigmented skin. A study of a healthy biracial population in Evans County, Georgia, demonstrated that black people had higher levels of the three major immunoglobulins (IgM, IgG, and IgA) when compared with white people (Lichtman et al, 1967). The most prominent difference was seen in IgG. No urban–rural difference in immunoglobulin levels was noted in this study. White subjects in Rochester, New York, had serum levels of IgM and IgG that were similar to those of white subjects in rural Georgia. A triracial study in Durban, Natal, South Africa, showed that Bantu male adults had significantly higher levels of IgM (32% more), IgG (40% more), and IgA (32% more) in their sera than comparable white male adults in this community who were born in the same year and had the same ABO blood group. Healthy Asiatic male adults had about 20% more IgG, 23% more IgA, and 7% more IgM than comparable white male adults. A study of subjects in the Washington, D.C., metropolitan area revealed that black people had significantly higher IgG levels than white people but similar IgA and IgM levels (Tollerud et al, 1995). Control groups used in these studies were matched for age, sex, and race, as well as for several environmental factors. Increases in gammaglobulin often are first noted after serum protein electrophoresis, measurement of total protein, or measurements of albumin and γ-globulin fractions.

Increases in immunoglobulins are referred to as monoclonal or polyclonal. Monoclonal immunoglobulins from any one individual are structurally identical and are believed to result from the clonal expansion of a single immunoglobulin-producing lymphoid cell, and thus are specific for a particular antigen. Polyclonal immunoglobulins in the same individual are structurally different from one another in one or more important ways: by class, as polyclonal IgG, IgA, or IgM; by light chain; or by antigen specificity. Polyclonal immunoglobulins arise from the expansion of several to many different immunoglobulin-producing lymphoid cells.

Polyclonal Immunoglobulins

Polyclonal increases in immunoglobulins have been associated with many disease states (Table 46-6) (Cushman & Grieco, 1973; Buckley, 1977). Serum protein electrophoresis is often sufficient to establish this condition. Immunoelectrophoresis, immunofixation, and determination of individual immunoglobulins or immunoglobulin light chains may be helpful at times to confirm a polyclonal distribution or an increased concentration in one or more immunoglobulin classes. Increases in serum immunoglobulins may result from decreased catabolism and increased synthesis. The control mechanisms for these events are not well understood. The implications of elevated immunoglobulins are unknown. Most immunoglobulins appear not to be directed toward a definable specific antigenic determinant or set of specific antigenic determinants. It should also be noted that most autoantibodies are not monoclonal but polyclonal. In general, persistent polyclonal increases in gammaglobulin are thought to be related to antigenic stimulation of a chronic nature or loss of immunoglobulin regulation.

TABLE 46-6
Polyclonal Hyperimmunoglobulinemias: Some Associated Disease States

Condition	Immunoglobulin (Ig) Classes
Immunodeficiency Diseases	
Hyperimmunoglobulin E and recurrent infections	IgE
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	IgA, IgE
"Dysgammaglobulinemia type I"	IgM
Hyperimmunoglobulin A and recurrent infections	IgA
Acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)	All classes
Infections	
Congenital infections (syphilis, toxoplasmosis, rubella, cytomegalovirus)	IgM
Infectious mononucleosis	IgM or all
Trypanosomiasis	IgM or all
Intestinal parasitism	All classes
Several helminthic infections	IgE
Visceral larva migrans	All classes
Chronic granulomatous disease of childhood	All classes
Leprosy	All classes
Chronic infection in general	All classes, with a preference for IgG
Liver Diseases	
Chronic active hepatitis	IgG predominates
Acute hepatitis	IgG predominates
Biliary cirrhosis	IgM predominates
Lupoid hepatitis	All classes
Pulmonary Disorders	
Pulmonary hypersensitivity syndrome	All classes
Sarcoidosis	All classes
Berylliosis	All classes
"Autoimmune" Disorders	
Systemic lupus erythematosus	All classes
Rheumatoid arthritis	IgA or all
Many "autoimmune" states such as thyroiditis	All classes
Scleroderma	All classes
Cold agglutinin disease	IgM
Anaphylactoid purpura	IgA
Miscellaneous	
Down syndrome	All classes
Amyloidosis	All classes
Narcotic addiction	IgM
Renal tubular disease	All classes

Monoclonal Immunoglobulins

Monoclonal immunoglobulins or fragments of immunoglobulins have been associated with a number of disease conditions (Box 46-1) (Wells & Fudenberg, 1974; Benbassat et al, 1976; Atkinson et al, 1977; Schaefer et al, 1978; Kelly et al, 1985). These immunoglobulins have also been referred to as immunoglobulins with restricted heterogeneity. Protein electrophoresis of serum and urine (Fig. 46-5) is commonly used to screen for monoclonal gammopathy.

The incidence of monoclonal immunoglobulins (M components) in unselected population studies is estimated to be 0.9% (Bachman, 1965; Axelsson & Hellen, 1968; Cohen, 1985). Of course, a much higher percentage of positive results is found in clinical laboratories where the sera to be tested are preselected. Multiple myeloma, Waldenström's macroglobulinemia, and B cell neoplasms are some of the diseases that are associated with elevated levels of monoclonal immunoglobulins. It was earlier believed that monoclonal gammopathies were rare in cases of chronic lymphocytic leukemia or well-differentiated lymphocytic lymphoma. It has now been shown that when high-resolution electrophoresis and immunofixation are combined to study samples from these patients, most are found to have a monoclonal gammopathy (Keren et al, 1988). Monoclonal gammopathies have also been demonstrated in patients with Burkitt lymphoma and B cell acute lymphocytic leukemia.

Although the antigen-combining specificities of monoclonal gammopathies generally are not known, some result in paraproteinemic neuropathies. This clinical syndrome is generally due to the interaction of an IgM paraprotein with myelin-associated glycoprotein (MAG), gangliosides (e.g., GM1 in motor neuropathy, GD1b in sensory neuropathy), or other glycosphingolipids (Ropper & Gorson, 1998).

The term *monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance* (MGUS) was coined by Kyle to categorize individuals in whom a monoclonal component is demonstrated in the serum but who lack other key features for diagnosing a malignant condition (Kyle, 1982). As many as 3% of individuals over the age of 70 have an MGUS (Kyle & Rajkumar, 2003). Subjects

BOX 46-1

Selected Conditions Associated with Monoclonal Immunoglobulins

- Multiple myeloma
- Macroglobulinemia of Waldenström
- Chronic lymphocytic leukemia
- Other leukemias
- Lymphomas
- "Benign" monoclonal gammopathy
- Systemic capillary leak syndrome
- Amyloidosis
- Chronic liver disease such as chronic active hepatitis, primary biliary cirrhosis
- Autoimmune disorders, including rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, thyroiditis, pernicious anemia, polyarteritis nodosa, Sjögren's syndrome
- Gaucher's disease
- Malignancies of various types
- Hereditary spherocytosis
- HIV infection, including AIDS

AIDS, Acquired immune deficiency syndrome; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus.

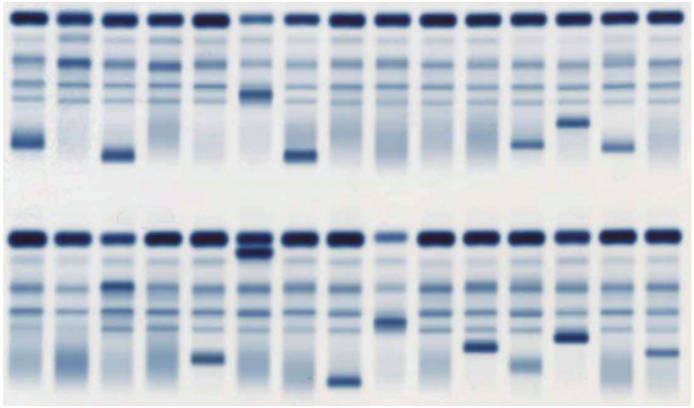
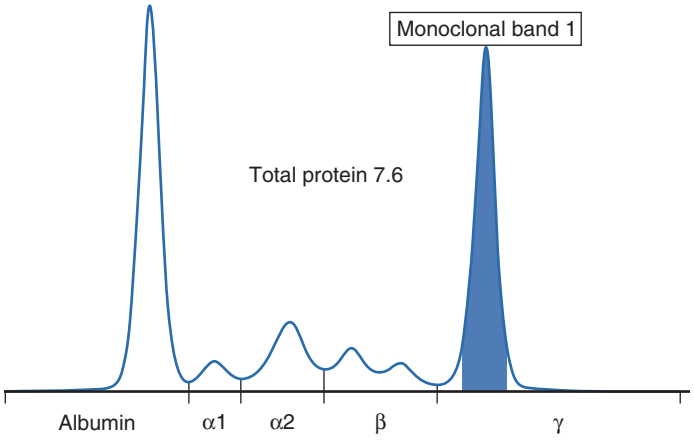


Figure 46-5 Serum protein electrophoresis performed in agarose gel. This gel demonstrates the variation in electrophoretic migration of monoclonal bands as typically encountered in diagnosing and monitoring patients with plasma cell disorders, such as multiple myeloma. This routine analysis of serum specimens from two controls and 28 patients included 14 individuals with monoclonal bands.



Fractions	%	Ref. %	g/dL	Ref. g/dL
Albumin	**38.1**<	59.1 - 73.2	2.9	3.5 - 5.6
Alpha 1	**4.0**>	1.6 - 3.2	0.3	0.1 - 0.3
Alpha 2	**12.1**>	6.8 - 11.2	0.9	0.2 - 1.0
Beta	**10.5**	7.5 - 13.1	0.8	0.5 - 1.1
Gamma	**35.3**>	7.5 - 16.9	2.7	0.5 - 1.5

Monoclonal band	%	g/dL
Monoclonal band 1	32.3	2.5

Figure 46-6 Quantitation of monoclonal band (MCB) concentration from densitometric tracing of serum protein electrophoresis. The MCB demarcated as the solid section constituted 32.3% of the area under the entire tracing for all serum fractions. Multiplying 32.3% × total protein of 7.6 g/dL yields the concentration of MCB as 2.5 g/dL.

with MGUS may have as many as 10% plasma cells in the bone marrow. This is considerably less than the bone marrow plasmacytosis associated with multiple myeloma. About 20% of individuals with MGUS will develop a malignant B cell lymphoproliferative disorder—most commonly multiple myeloma—over a 10-year period. Some of the other cases develop into chronic lymphocytic leukemia, amyloidosis, well-differentiated lymphocytic lymphoma, and other B cell proliferative diseases. Subjects with MGUS have quantities of M component ranging from 300 mg/dL to greater than 3000 mg/dL and usually do not have Bence Jones protein in the urine. It is recommended that such patients be followed with serum protein electrophoresis every 6 to 12 months to determine whether the process is progressing or regressing.

The risk of progression with MGUS is about 1% per year even after 25 years of a stable condition (Kyle & Rajkumar, 2003). A 31-year follow-up study of MGUS in New Zealand showed progression to hematologic malignancy in 64% of 11 patients originally detected by screening 2192 subjects in a town in 1967 (Colls, 1999).

A special consideration is MGUS that is observed in organ transplant patients who have received immunosuppressive drugs that alter T lymphocyte functions, including the modulation of B cell responsiveness. These monoclonal gammopathies may be transient in up to 75% of cases (Radl et al, 1985). They may occur in both monoclonal and oligoclonal forms (Stanko et al, 1989), and they may coincide with infections of cytomegalovirus or Epstein-Barr virus (Drouet et al, 1999). Their progression is likely stimulated by high circulating levels of interleukin-6 (Nickerson et al, 1994).

Cryoglobulins

Cryoglobulins are immunoglobulins that precipitate upon storage at refrigerated temperatures (4°C), and as a group are associated with hematologic, autoimmune, and chronic infections such as hepatitis C. Type I cryoglobulins consist of a single monoclonal immunoglobulin that precipitates in the cold without binding other proteins. This type of molecule is typically IgM encountered in Waldenström's macroglobulinemia, where it can produce a hyperviscosity syndrome due to very thick consistency of the circulating blood that can be exacerbated by cold ambient temperatures encountered by the patient.

Type II cryoglobulins are distinctly different from type I. The abnormality in type II is a monoclonal IgM autoantibody that is directed at the Fc region of normal polyclonal IgG (Cacoub et al, 2002). This autoantibody is the same as rheumatoid factor. It is also referred to as mixed cryoglobulin containing both IgM and IgG. It is commonly encountered in rheumatoid arthritis and in chronic hepatitis C virus infection for unknown reasons. The presence of IgM anti-IgG leads to formation of circulating immune complexes (CICs), with IgG normally occurring in the blood. These CICs then deposit in small blood vessels, causing vasculitis, glomerulonephritis, arthritis, and so forth.

Type III cryoglobulins have been described as a variant of type II in which the IgM autoantibody against IgG is polyclonal. Type III can be found in chronic infections and inflammatory states. Many such cases in the past could have been confused with type II because of methods that would not permit sensitive typing of the light chains in a minor band of IgM in the presence of large amounts of IgG, because both light chain types would appear in the cryoprecipitate.

DISEASE DIAGNOSIS

Laboratory evaluation of immunoglobulin levels and functions may be helpful in the diagnosis and management of disease. Complement fixation tests, hemagglutination assays, and other immunoassays can detect an increased or changing titer of antibodies against specific antigens, such as those present on microorganisms.

Requests to examine sera for the presence of a monoclonal protein usually are generated by a physician who recognizes that a patient has

clinical symptoms and signs of such a disorder or by laboratory examination of a serum protein electrophoresis that suggests a monoclonal protein (Fig. 46-6). Many times, the physician's suspicion of a plasma cell dyscrasia is triggered by findings of anemia (with one or more cytopenias), elevated total serum protein with elevated globulins, and proteinuria; other findings may include hyperuricemia, hypercalcemia, elevated alkaline phosphatase, bone pain, or lytic lesions of bone on x-ray. If indeed an M component is present in a serum protein electrophoresis, quantitative measurement of immunoglobulins by radial immunodiffusion, nephelometry, or another suitable technique can identify the specific immunoglobulin if only one of the major three classes is increased. Of course, this neither determines the light chain of a monoclonal immunoglobulin nor detects light chain myelomas. Biclonal gammopathies may be confusing.

Quantitative immunoglobulins are useful in monitoring the course of the disease and its treatment and may be helpful in separating a benign from a malignant condition. Monoclonal IgG levels of 2 g/100 mL or IgA levels of 1 g/100 mL (Isobe & Osserman, 1971) or greater suggest a malignant condition. In many malignant immunocytopathies, the concentration of nonmonoclonal immunoglobulins is reduced. Thus a deficiency of polyclonal immunoglobulins is suggestive of malignancy. Paradoxically, the patient with a malignant immunocytopathy is immunodeficient even though he possesses large quantities of a "nonsense" immunoglobulin produced by a poorly controlled clone of lymphoid cells.

Immunofixation

Confirmation of heavy chain and light chain types of a monoclonal band today is done almost exclusively by immunofixation electrophoresis (IFE). Immunoelectrophoresis (IEP) was an older procedure in which patient and normal serum specimens were electrophoresed in adjacent lanes, followed by diffusion of individual antisera against light and heavy chains from a trough cut into the agarose support medium. After overnight incubation, the pattern of precipitin arcs formed by the antisera with their target immunoglobulins was interpreted as monoclonal or polyclonal distribution. Readers are referred to earlier editions of this book for more information about IEP and pictures of the gels, which are no longer commonly used in modern clinical laboratories. IFE has virtually replaced IEP in the clinical laboratory because of its speed, sensitivity, and ease of interpretation. IFE has greater sensitivity for detecting small monoclonal bands in the presence of polyclonal immunoglobulins. IFE also has the advantage of a more rapid readout because diffusion through gel is not required. Replicate samples of patient serum are subjected to electrophoresis through high-resolution gel before monospecific antisera are applied directly to the separated serum proteins. The gel is washed, and the protein–antibody conjugates are stained and read directly (Fig. 46-7). One lane is treated with a precipitating reagent that fixes all proteins in the same pattern as the serum protein electrophoresis. Maintaining all serum proteins in register with the immunofixed immunoglobulins adds to the ease of confirming and identifying monoclonal paraproteins.

Occasionally, the concentration of the monoclonal protein in a patient's serum is so high that it exceeds the capacity of the reagent antibodies to form precipitating complexes by IFE. This phenomenon corresponds to the zone of antigen excess depicted in Figure 46-2. The result is a halo of precipitated complexes (where the concentrations are nearer to equivalence) with a clear central zone of antigen excess (see Fig. 46-7, *E*). Although this result appears atypical, it is straightforward to interpret and to confirm by repeating the IFE with a greater dilution of patient serum (Keren, 1999).

Either technique may be applied to other body fluids, most commonly urine. Monoclonal light chains in the urine (Bence Jones protein) may be detected in more than half of patients with multiple myeloma (Isobe & Osserman, 1971; Wells and Fudenberg, 1974). Polyclonal light chains may be detected in patients with other disorders, usually as part of complete immunoglobulin molecules. The original method to detect Bence Jones protein was based on precipitation in urine heated to 40° to 60° C and then redissolution when further heated to 100° C. IFE of urine is more specific and more sensitive than the older Bence Jones assay. IFE may be performed on urine samples with sufficient protein or subsequent to concentration by lyophilization or by selective membranes (Minicon, Millipore Corporation, Billerica, Mass.).

Immunoglobulins at very high concentrations can significantly increase the viscosity of blood, leading to problems with organ perfusion. Measurements of the viscosity of serum have been done to assess this effect, but they are rarely used today because other methods for quantifying immunoglobulin concentrations, such as nephelometry, are widely practiced. Furthermore, serum viscosity by itself is a poor indicator of whole blood viscosity with cellular elements present, which is really the crucial factor clinically in the patient.

Immunoglobulin Free Light Chain Analysis

The synthesis of immunoglobulin heavy chains and light chains is regulated differently by virtue of their genes being on different chromosomes (heavy chain genes on chromosome 14; κ light chain genes on chromosome 2; λ light chain genes on chromosome 22). Light chains are normally synthesized in slight excess and are cleared from the circulation in a few hours so they do not accumulate in the blood; however, in some monoclonal plasma cell disorders, light chain synthesis can greatly exceed heavy chain production, with the resultant release of variable quantities of free light chains. Because of the relatively rapid renal clearance of small light chains compared with that of an intact immunoglobulin, measurement of free light chains in serum or urine has been used to assess plasma cell mass and growth in monoclonal disorders. Although the concentration of the intact immunoglobulin of an M-spike has long been used in monitoring myelomas, this new and more rapidly responsive marker of light chain release has recently been introduced for clinical use.

Reagent anti–light chain antibodies used for IFE react with κ or λ light chains both as part of intact immunoglobulins and as free light chains. The principle of specifically measuring free light chains is to use reagent antibodies that react with epitopes on the light chains that are normally hidden by association with heavy chains. Consequently, the free light chain assay gives quantitative information that is complementary to results of quantitative immunoglobulin measurement, as well as protein electrophoresis (PEL) and IFE. One operational advantage of free light chain (FLC) analysis is its automation (Jaskowski et al, 2006).

Analysis of FLCs entails measurement of both κ and λ light chains in serum and/or urine. Results are abnormal if the κ or λ value is very high and the other is low. To accentuate differences, the ratio of κ to λ measurements is calculated (rFLC). If rFLC is abnormally high, the interpretation is that of plasma cell proliferation with a κ light chain type (i.e., a high κ value in the numerator). If rFLC is below the normal cutoff value, the interpretation is that of proliferation with a λ light chain type (i.e., high λ value in the denominator). Use of rFLC also allows application to patients who have renal disease and do not clear light chains from plasma normally, and so might have elevations of both κ and λ light chains.

Consensus guidelines for use of serum free light chain analysis have recently been developed by the International Myeloma Working Group (Dispenzieri et al, 2009). They include the following:

1. Serum screening for plasma cell disorders. The serum FLC assay combined with serum PEL and IFE is sufficient to screen for pathologic monoclonal plasmaproliferative disorders, except for AL amyloidosis (light chain amyloidosis), for which the additional test of 24-hour urine IFE is essential. This recommendation allows FLC to replace the 24-hour urine IFE for all plasma cell disorders but AL. Avoiding 24-hour collections of urine is considered positively by many physicians and patients.
2. Serum FLC for prognosis. This assay should be performed at the time of diagnosis for MGUS, smoldering or active multiple myeloma, solitary plasmacytoma, and AL amyloidosis. The baseline values of FLC predict progression of these disorders and so can help to frame therapy or at least to make recommendations for frequency of monitoring and helping patients to understand the risks of their disease.
3. FLC for quantitative monitoring of response. The only recommended indications for routine serial use of FLC are seen in oligosecretory multiple myeloma and in AL amyloidosis. Other potential uses for which data were not sufficient to recommend use include light chain myeloma and measurable intact immunoglobulin disease. Also recommended is use in patients who have achieved a complete response to determine whether it is a stringent complete response.

The availability of FLC assays is an issue because the reagents have been provided by only one manufacturer, and they are not adaptable to a wide range of immunoassay instruments commonly found in clinical laboratories. Accordingly, these assays typically are sent out to reference laboratories. The commercial promotion of FLC assays has resulted in their use in far more situations than are covered by the recent consensus guidelines. Much more clinical outcome information needs to be accrued before it can be recommended that FLC assays should be used routinely for both diagnosis and monitoring of virtually any plasma cell disorder. However, they have achieved wide use in the diagnosis and monitoring of various plasma cell disorders, including multiple myeloma and amyloid light chain amyloidosis. This includes a role in predicting progression of plasma cell dyscrasias to overt multiple myeloma, and the prognosis for AL amyloidosis at time of diagnosis (Tosi et al, 2013).

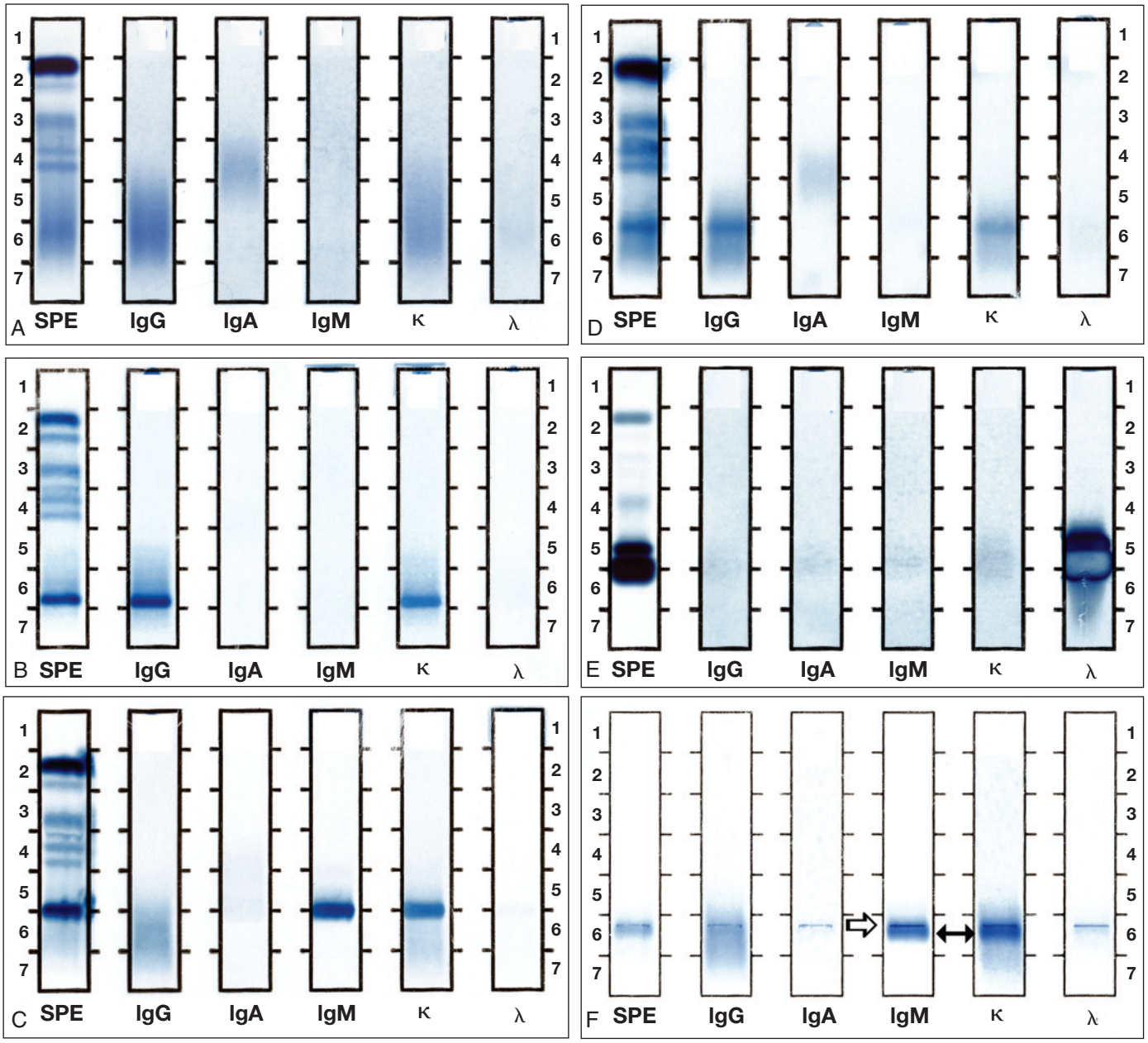


Figure 46-7 Monoclonal immunoglobulins (Ig) demonstrated by serum immunofixation. Replicate samples of patient serum were subjected to electrophoresis through agarose at pH 8.6. The separated proteins were allowed to react with monospecific antisera, and the gels were washed, fixed, and stained. **A,** Normal polyclonal pattern of immunoglobulins. **B,** Monoclonal IgG-κ immunoglobulin (M protein) in serum with loss of most normal polyclonal immunoglobulins. **C,** Monoclonal IgM-κ immunoglobulin in serum. **D,** Minor band of IgG-κ immunoglobulin in serum, along with normal-appearing immunoglobulins—possible monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS). **E,** Two bands of λ light chains in urine. The lower band demonstrates antigen excess with artifactual clearing in its central region surrounded by a ring of immunofixed protein. The upper smaller band sometimes results from dimerization of free light chains through disulfide bonds. **F,** Type II mixed cryoglobulin precipitated from serum containing monoclonal IgMκ *(solid arrow)* and polyclonal IgG. Some undissolved cryoglobulin *(open arrow)* remained at the application point of each lane. *IgA,* Sample reacted with anti-IgA (α-heavy chain specific); *G* or *IgG,* sample reacted with anti-IgG (γ-heavy chain specific); *κ,* sample reacted with anti-κ; *λ,* sample reacted with anti-λ; *IgM,* sample reacted with anti-IgM (μ-heavy chain specific); *SPE,* all proteins in sample precipitated with acid reagent (serum protein electrophoresis).

Heavy–Light Chain Immunoassay

Heavy–light chain (HLC) immunoassays are designed to quantitate monoclonal immunoglobulin bands by measuring the amount of unique epitopes created where constant regions of heavy chain molecules attach to constant regions of light chain molecules (Bradwell et al, 2009). There are six possible combinations routinely measured—IgGκ, IgGλ, IgMκ, IgMλ, IgAκ, and IgAλ—with ratios calculated for IgGκ/IgGλ, IgMκ/IgMλ, and IgAκ/IgAλ. If a ratio falls outside the reference range, the HLC immunoassay is interpreted as "possible monoclonal band," and quantitation is performed. This technique does not directly visualize a monoclonal band but rather infers it from the calculated ratio. A recent study performed head-to-head comparison of HLC and serum protein electrophoresis (SPEP) quantitations of monoclonal bands in the serum of 518 patients with multiple myeloma of IgG and IgA types (Katzmann et al, 2015). The intention was to provide better quantitation of monoclonal bands when they overlap with other normal serum proteins that normally migrate in the beta region of the SPEP (e.g., transferrin, beta-lipoprotein, and C3 component of complement). The results showed that the HLC immunoassay held no significant advantage over SPEP in

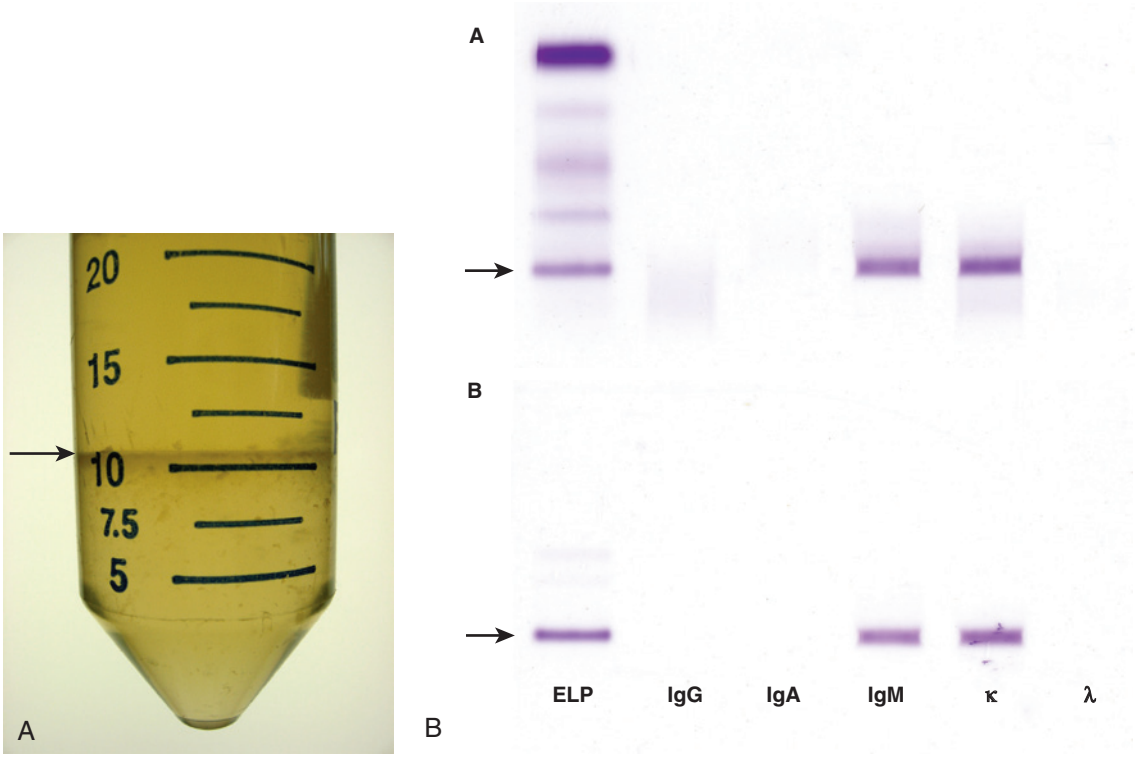


Figure 46-8 **A,** Type I cryoglobulin in the plasma of a patient undergoing plasmapheresis for hyperviscosity syndrome due to monoclonal immunoglobulin (Ig)M-κ. Plasma removed during plasma exchange was stored at 4°C in a 50-mL tube. The cryoglobulins that precipitated in the cold occupied approximately 20% of this patient's plasma volume. The *arrow* indicates the top of the cryoglobulin that settled in the tube. **B,** IFE demonstrating IgM-κ monoclonal band in whole serum (upper panel) that formed a type I cryoglobulin in the cryoprecipitate (lower panel). Results in **A** and **B** are from different patients.

measuring IgG monoclonal bands, all of which in this study migrated in the gamma region, and so had no interferences. Of the 30 IgA bands in the study, all migrated in the beta region, but 7 cases were missed by SPEP, although successfully detected by HLC. This slight advantage of HLC over SPEP suggests that HLC could best be used for patients who have IgA bands migrating in the beta region (Calderon, 2015). However, a large band of IgA should be readily measurable by SPEP regardless of its migration, and so should not require HLC assay. In addition, in monitoring low levels of the paraprotein after chemotherapy or bone marrow transplant, normal polyclonal immunoglobulins of the same HLC combination as the paraprotein will also reappear with reconstitution of normal plasma cells, and they, in principle, should react in the HLC as the paraprotein would, thereby leading to a falsely elevated estimate. It should be taken into consideration that quantitating an IgA paraprotein present at very low levels may have little utility in clinical decision-making following major therapy for plasma cell dyscrasia.

Cryoglobulin Testing

Accurate laboratory test results for cryoglobulins are especially sensitive to improper preanalytic handling, and clinicians must be aware of specimen temperature requirements when ordering these studies to avoid false-negative results (Shihabi, 2006; Chan et al, 2008). Testing for cryoglobulins in serum begins with a period of incubation in the cold (4°C) to detect turbidity or precipitate after 24 or 72 hours compared with an aliquot of the patient's serum kept at 37°C as a control for other precipitating substances not related to cold phenomena. Any cryoprecipitate is sedimented by centrifugation, washed briefly with cold saline to remove other serum proteins, and then redissolved (and dissociated) in warm saline for electrophoresis and immunofixation to identify immunoglobulin components (i.e., heavy and light chains).

Type I cryoglobulins typically form a relatively large volume of cryoprecipitate (e.g., up to 10% or even 20% of the serum volume—sometimes referred to as the "cryocrit") (Fig. 46-8, *A*). Upon immunofixation electrophoresis, type I cryoglobulins exhibit a single heavy chain and a single light chain type, often monoclonal IgM (Fig. 46-8, *B*). The whole serum not treated with cryoprecipitation usually demonstrates a large amount of the same monoclonal band. The concentration of the band should fall after successful plasma exchange.

Type II cryoglobulins typically show only a small amount of cryoprecipitate that is less than 1% of the serum volume, and so quantitating the percentage of cryocrit is not analytically valid for serial measurements to monitor a patient's progress. IFE shows a monoclonal band of IgM plus polyclonal IgG (see Fig. 46-7, *F*). This pattern is observed frequently because of its association with chronic hepatitis C.

IFE findings in type III cryoglobulin would be similar to those in type II with a relatively small amount of cryoprecipitate that demonstrates both polyclonal IgM and polyclonal IgG.

Oligoclonal Immunoglobulin Bands in Cerebrospinal Fluid

Evaluation of intrathecal synthesis of immunoglobulin is aided by high-resolution electrophoresis of cerebrospinal fluid protein that spreads out the γ region to display individual bands of different immunoglobulin clones. The interpretation of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) protein electrophoresis requires simultaneous electrophoresis of the patient's serum to ensure that findings in the CSF are unique and do not just reflect the passive transfer of clonal immunoglobulins from the blood. Oligoclonal bands as a marker of synthesis of immunoglobulins in the central nervous system suggest the possibility of an autoimmune process such as a demyelinating disease. Another possibility is an immunologic response to central nervous system infection, so the interpretation of oligoclonal bands in CSF must be made in the context of other diagnostic findings such as cell counts, viral serologies, bacterial cultures, syphilis testing, nucleic acid amplification tests for viruses, and so forth.

The protein electrophoretic pattern of CSF and serum from a patient with multiple sclerosis is shown in Figure 46-9, *A*. The CSF was concentrated, and the serum was diluted to achieve comparable amounts of stainable protein in each application. CSF has a relatively higher concentration of prealbumin than does serum. Albumin is the predominant band in both fluids. The other significant band in CSF is transferrin, because of its small molecular size that permits ultrafiltration from blood into CSF. The higher

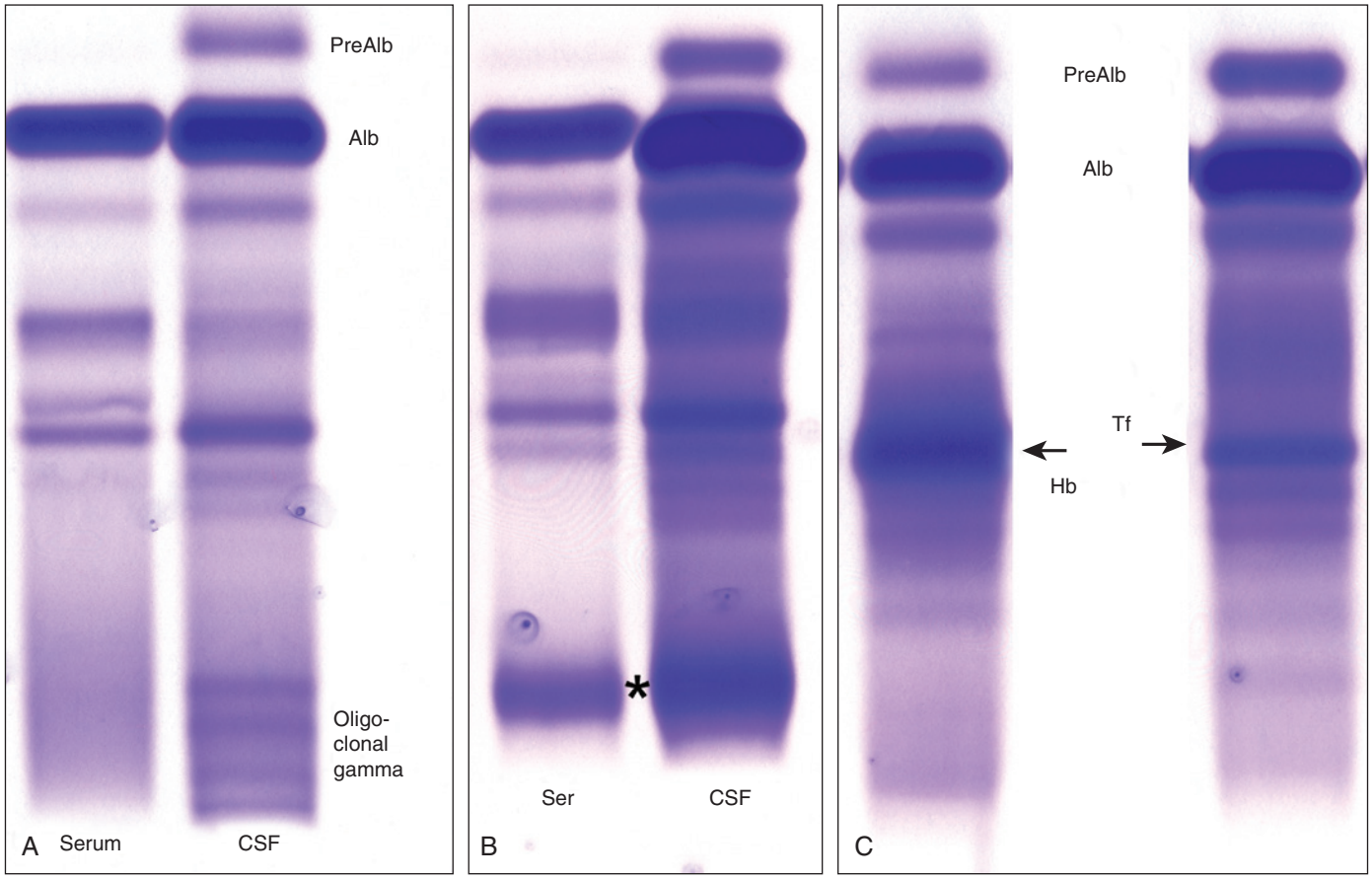


Figure 46-9 **Protein electrophoretic patterns in serum and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). A,** Serum and CSF from the same patient showing positive oligoclonal bands in the γ region of the CSF but not in the patient's serum. **B,** Monoclonal band of immunoglobulin in both serum and CSF interpreted as negative for oligoclonal bands in CSF. **C,** Artifact of hemoglobin (Hb) in CSF *(left lane)* adjacent to the position of transferrin (Tf) *(right lane).*

molecular weight proteins in serum (α2 plus β-lipoprotein) are absent from CSF. C3 is also identifiable in CSF, along with a band of asialotransferrin in the β2 region. After all these landmark proteins of CSF are recognized, oligoclonal bands should be evaluated in the γ region, which normally has only a small quantity of polyclonal immunoglobulins. The oligoclonal bands in Figure 46-9, *A*, are discrete and clearly separate from one another.

Examination of serum and CSF sometimes shows a clonal band of immunoglobulin present in both (Fig. 46-9, *B*); however, this finding is not indicative of intrathecal synthesis and so is not a positive result for oligoclonal bands. Presumably, it represents clonal proliferation of plasma cells in the body with passive movement of the monoclonal antibody from blood into CSF.

Another distortion of the electrophoretic pattern occurs with release of hemoglobin (Hb) into the CSF, resulting in a major band in the β region close to transferrin (Fig. 46-9, *C*). This band of Hb should not be confused with clonal immunoglobulin in CSF. Confirmation that this band is Hb depends on visual examination of the CSF for blood or hemolysis (red color). A band of red Hb can also be seen in the β region before staining of the electrophoretic gel.

A consensus statement on analysis of CSF was commissioned from experts in multiple sclerosis by the Consortium of Multiple Sclerosis Clinics (Freedman et al, 2005). That group recommended qualitative assessment of CSF for IgG using IEF on unconcentrated CSF compared directly with a serum specimen from the same patient. Interpretation of the pattern should consist of one of the following:

Type 1: No bands in CSF and serum
Type 2: Oligoclonal bands in CSF, not in serum; indicates intrathecal IgG synthesis
Type 3: Oligoclonal bands in CSF plus other oligoclonal bands in CSF and serum; indicates intrathecal IgG synthesis
Type 4: Identical oligoclonal bands in CSF and serum; indicates systemic immune reaction with passive transfer to CSF; no intrathecal IgG synthesis
Type 5: Monoclonal band in CSF and serum; paraprotein; no intrathecal IgG synthesis

Problems in Detecting Monoclonal Bands

Clearly demarcated monoclonal bands are straightforward to identify when they are at high concentration and migrate separately from other serum proteins, particularly when the γ fraction is clear of normal polyclonal immunoglobulins owing to replacement of normal plasma cells with the malignant clone. Several examples of clear-cut monoclonal bands are presented in Figure 46-5. The area under the tracing for such bands can be readily integrated to calculate concentration of a monoclonal protein for monitoring in serial specimens.

Sometimes the monoclonal bands are much less pronounced and may be difficult to distinguish within a background of normal proteins. Figure 46-7, *D*, shows such a minor band of IgM-κ that can still be readily identified by IFE. However, when small monoclonal proteins migrate in the β or even α2 region, they can escape detection because of overlap with normal proteins such as transferrin or C3 (Fig. 46-10, *B*). A monoclonal band migrating between normal serum proteins may also be mistakenly disregarded (Fig. 46-10, *D*), so it is very important to interpret such electrophoreses with a firm expectation of where normal bands migrate and what their intensities should be.

False-positive interpretations of monoclonal bands can occur owing to the presence of fibrinogen from an unclotted specimen (Fig. 46-10, *C*) or when hemolysis occurs as the result of improper specimen collection (Fig. 46-10, *E* and *F*). Confirmation that a small band is a monoclonal paraprotein is typically done with IFE.

Oligoclonal Immunoglobulin Bands in Serum

In contrast to monoclonal immunoglobulin bands that derive from clonal plasma cell disorders such as multiple myeloma, oligoclonal banding patterns occasionally appear in the serum of patients who do not have plasma cell disorders. Oligoclonal patterns may show multiple and distinct bands on SPEP that are revealed on IFE to consist of immunoglobulins with

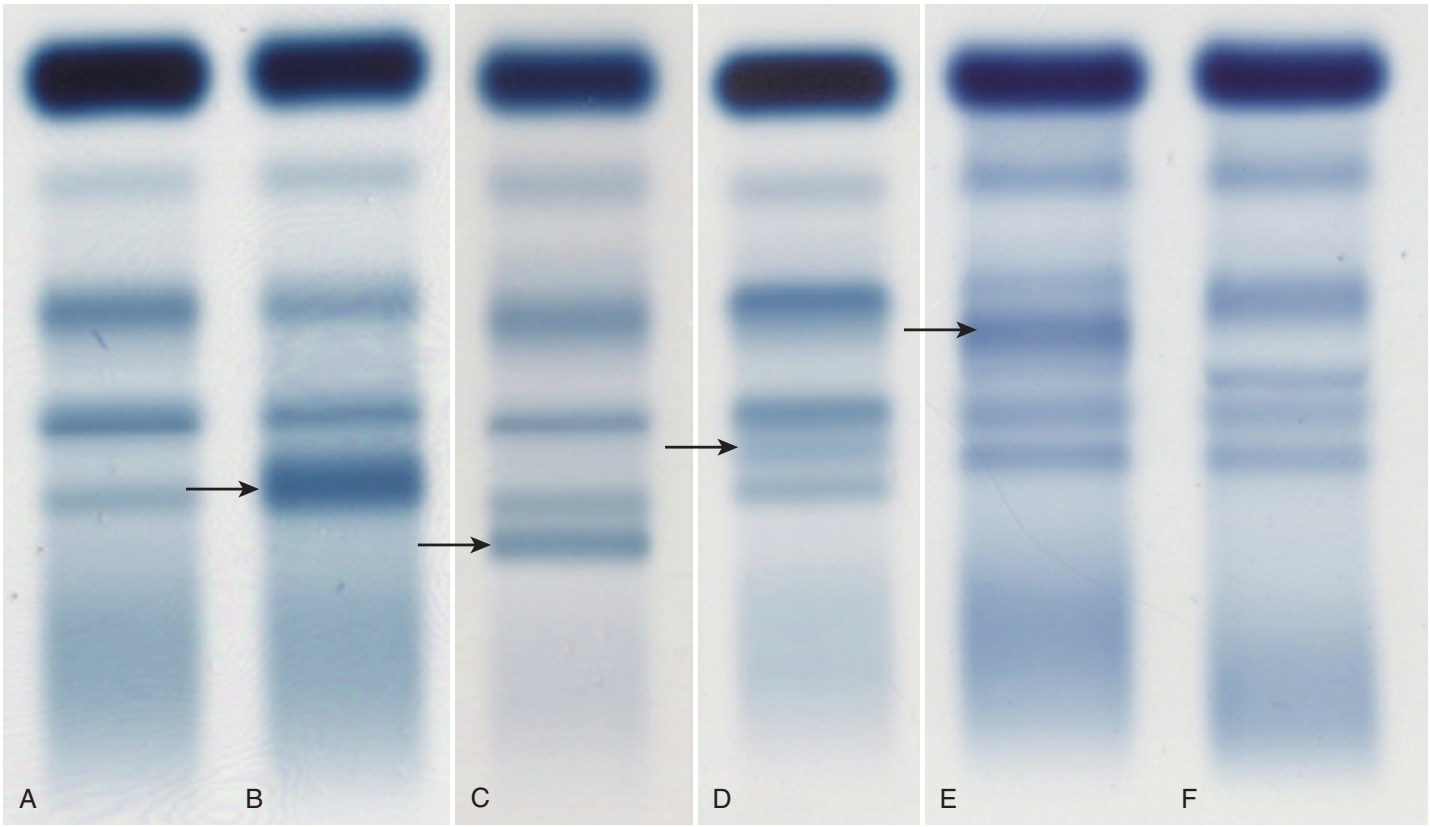


Figure 46-10 **Low-intensity bands of monoclonal and other proteins migrating about the β region. A,** Normal serum protein electrophoresis pattern. **B,** Minor band of immunoglobulin (Ig)A-κ *(arrow)* overlapping C3. **C,** Fibrinogen *(arrow),* not to be confused with a monoclonal band. **D,** Minor band of IgA-κ *(arrow)* migrating between transferrin and C3. **E,** Hemolysed specimen with a minor band of hemoglobin-haptoglobin *(arrow).* **F,** Redraw of serum without hemolysis from same patient as in **E. E** and **F** were electrophoresed on a different gel system from **A** through **D**; relative mobilities of normal serum proteins can vary in different systems.

both kappa light chains and lambda light chains in the same specimen, thereby ruling out the possibility of deriving from the same parent clone. They are usually IgG but can also be IgA or IgM, even in the same patient. These likely represent an immune response against an infection or other antigens. They have been observed in immunosuppressed solid organ transplant patients with cytomegalovirus infections (Myara et al, 1991; Pham et al, 1998; Cakalaroski et al, 2000) in some patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection (in which case these bands are directed against HIV proteins) (Amadori et al, 1990; Konstantinopoulos et al, 2007), and in patients after chemotherapy or bone marrow transplant for multiple myeloma (Fig. 46-11, *A*) (in which case the antibodies react with tumor antigens on plasma cells) (Mark et al, 2008; Rahiff et al, 2012). For interpretation of oligoclonal banding patterns in serum, it is appropriate to determine the clinical context; such bands might appear prior to a diagnosis of HIV and, if so, should lead to a consideration of that diagnosis; they can also have positive prognostic significance in multiple myeloma patients as an antitumor response.

Patients whose multiple myeloma has been successfully treated should show clearance of their monoclonal immunoglobulin bands and can appear to have severe hypogammaglobulinemia. These patients often receive immunoglobulin infusions to guard against infections prior to reconstitution of their own immune systems. The IFE of such a patient might show no monoclonal band but rather polyclonal IgG from infusions that contain no IgA or IgM (Fig. 46-11, *B*).

DISEASE PREVENTION AND THERAPY

Passive immunization is the administration of preformed antibodies obtained from another individual of the same species (homologous γ-globulins) or a different species (heterologous γ-globulins); it results in immediate protection against infection. The immunity is short-lived and decays as the antibodies are used and catabolized. Passive protection in neonatal life is based on transfer of maternal antibodies across the placenta or through colostrum (Pennington, 1991).

Pooled human γ-globulin is useful for temporary protection against several viral and bacterial infections (Berkman et al, 1990; Hammarström & Smith, 1990; Desai, 1991). Depending on the dose used and the time of administration, the disease may be modified to a mild form or entirely prevented. The effect is more complete and more predictable if one uses hyperimmune preparations made from the plasma of individuals who are convalescing from the disease in question or who have recently been immunized against it. Such preparations contain a higher concentration of specific antibodies. Antibodies may also be produced in animals, such as horses, and in the past these antibodies found widespread use. However, prior sensitization to foreign proteins may lead to clinical reactions such as anaphylaxis, serum sickness, pyrexia, and local Arthus reactions.

Monoclonal antibodies have revolutionized many areas of medicine, including research, diagnostics, and therapy. Murine, human, and humanized monoclonal antibodies have been developed (Lefrano & Lefrano, 1990; Morrison, 1992; Mountain & Adair, 1992; Ward, 1992; Shin et al, 1993). Many monoclonal antibodies, often replacing polyclonal antisera, are used for diagnostic purposes (see Chapter 43). Perhaps the most important therapeutic applications of monoclonal antibodies are seen in the fields of transplantation and oncology (Stevenson et al, 1990; Vitetta et al, 1993; Neame et al, 1994). OKT3, a murine monoclonal antibody against the CD3 receptor on lymphocytes, is often used as an antirejection therapy to block the activity of cytotoxic T lymphocytes in renal transplant recipients (Ortho Multicenter Transplant Study Group, 1985). Many potential clinical applications of monoclonal antibodies are being evaluated. A recent example is the use of a monoclonal antibody against tumor necrosis factor-α to prevent Jarisch-Herxheimer reactions resulting from antibiotic treatment of *Borrelia* infection in sheep (Fekade et al, 1996). Anticytokine and antineutrophil adhesion molecule monoclonal antibodies may be effective in conditions associated with acute inflammation and cytokine release, such as acid aspiration, ischemia, or reperfusion injury (myocardial infarction, hemorrhagic shock, aortic aneurysm repair); antibodies inhibiting neutrophil adhesion may be effective in asthma, pulmonary fibrosis,

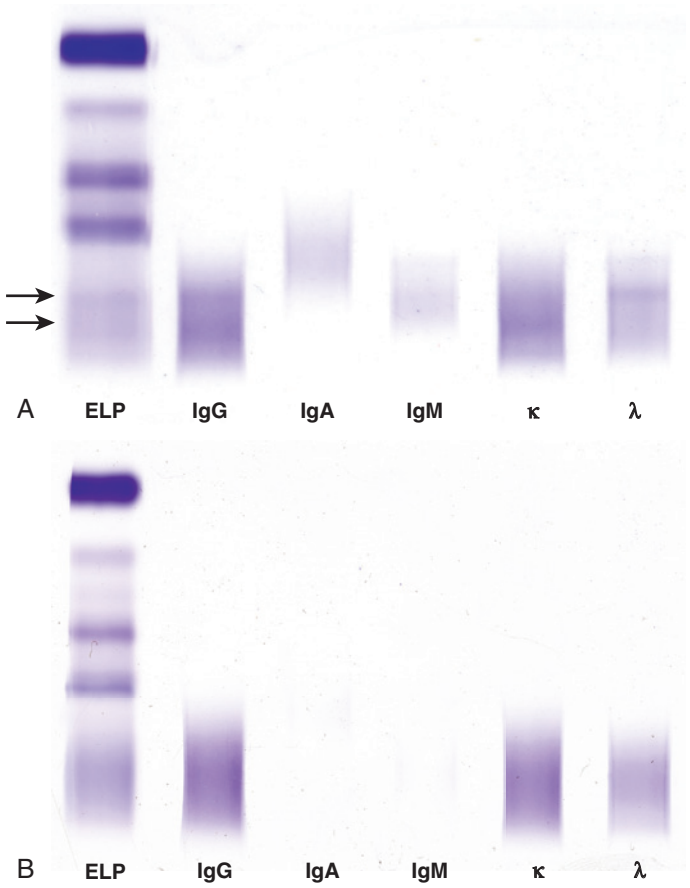


Figure 46-11 **A,** Oligoclonal bands of IgG-κ and IgG-λ in a patient who received autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplant 2 years earlier for IgG-λ multiple myeloma. Note minor bands of both IgG-κ and IgG-λ. **B,** IFE showing intense staining for polyclonal IgG (κ and λ) with faint amounts of IgA and IgM in a patient who received an autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplant 3 months earlier for IgG-κ multiple myeloma (this band now absent). The polyclonal IgG in this serum is due to intravenous infusions of gamma globulins. *A,* Sample reacted with anti-IgA (α-heavy chain specific); *G,* sample reacted with anti-IgG (γ-heavy chain specific); *κ,* sample reacted with anti-κ; *λ,* sample reacted with anti-λ; *M,* sample reacted with anti-IgM (μ-heavy chain specific); *ELP,* all proteins in sample precipitated with acid reagent (serum protein electrophoresis).

meningitis, and cerebral malaria; and recently, a monoclonal antibody directed against a component of the complement cascade suggests the possibility of eventual therapeutic regulation of specific arms of the inflammatory response (DiLillo et al, 2006). It seems reasonable to expect that a multitude of therapeutic applications will become available in the future, in which monoclonal antibodies will be designed to modulate the actions of one or more naturally occurring mediators of inflammation, infection, or malignant proliferation.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Cacoub P, Costedoat-Chalumeau N, Lidove O, et al: Cryoglobulinemia vasculitis, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 14:29, 2002.

This review presents an update on clinical findings in cryoglobulins, with emphasis on patients with hepatitis C.

Chan AO, Lau JS, Chan CH, et al: Cryoglobulinemia: Clinical and laboratory perspectives, *Hong Kong Med J* 14:55, 2008.

A good review of cryoglobulin testing with case studies.

Colls BM: Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS)—31 year follow-up of a community study, *Aust N Z J Med* 29:500, 1999.

This clinical series demonstrates the long-term significance of MGUS.

Dispenzieri A, Kyle R, Merlini G, et al: International Myeloma Working Group guidelines for serum-free light chain analysis in multiple myeloma and related disorders, *Leukemia* 23:215, 2009.

This article provides official recommendations from the International Myeloma Working Group for clinical use of serum-free light chain testing based on a comprehensive review of the literature.

Fekade D, Knox K, Hussein K, et al: Prevention of Jarisch-Herxheimer reactions by treatment with antibodies against tumor necrosis factor α, *N Engl J Med* 335:311, 1996.

This is an early clinical trial that showed how inflammatory reactions can be modulated by therapeutic antibodies.

Freedman MS, Thompson EJ, Deisenhammer F, et al: Recommended standard of cerebrospinal fluid analysis in the diagnosis of multiple sclerosis, *Arch Neurol* 62:865, 2005.

This article is a consensus statement commissioned by the Consortium of Multiple Sclerosis Clinics that establishes the "minimum standard" for evaluation of CSF in patients suspected of having multiple sclerosis.

Keren DF: Procedures for the evaluation of monoclonal immunoglobulins, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 123:126, 1999.

This review of laboratory procedures provides insight into modern measurements of monoclonal gammopathies.

Kyle RA, Rajkumar SV: Monoclonal gammopathies of undetermined significance: A review, *Immunol Rev* 194:112, 2003.

This is an updated and comprehensive assessment of patients with MGUS.

Ritchie RF, Palomaki GE, Neveux LM, et al: Reference distributions for immunoglobulins A, G, and M: A practical, simple, and clinically relevant approach in a large cohort, *J Clin Lab Anal* 12:363, 1998.

This manuscript presents reference ranges for immunoglobulins in a very large population by age and gender.

Smith GS, Holman RP: The prozone phenomenon with syphilis and HIV-1 coinfection, *South Med J* 97:379, 2004.

This recent case report reinforces the continuing need for vigilance in antigen–antibody–based testing, so as to avoid missing extremely high values of immune antibody caused by the prozone effect.

REFERENCES

Amadori A, Gallo P, Zamarchi R, et al: IgG oligoclonal bands in sera of HIV-1 infected patients are mainly directed against HIV-1 determinants, *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 6:581–586, 1990.

Atkinson JP, Waldmann TA, Stein SF, et al: Systemic capillary leak syndrome and monoclonal IgG gammopathy, *Medicine* 56:225, 1977.

Axelsson N, Hellen J: Frequency of M components in 6995 sera from an adult population, *Br J Haematol* 15:417, 1968.

Bachman R: The diagnostic significance of the serum concentration of pathological proteins, *Acta Med Scand* 178:801, 1965.

Benbassat J, Fluman N, Zlotnick A: Monoclonal immunoglobulin disorders: A report of 154 cases, *Am J Med Sci* 27:325, 1976.

Berkman SA, Lee ML, Gale RP: Clinical uses of intravenous immunoglobulins, *Ann Intern Med* 112:278, 1990.

Bhat TN, Bentley GA, Fischmann TO, et al: Small rearrangements in structures of Fv and Fab fragments of antibody D1.3 upon antigen binding, *Nature* 347:483, 1990.

Bradwell AR, Harding SJ, Fourrier NJ, et al: Assessment of monoclonal gammopathies by nephelometric measurement of individual immunoglobulin kappa/lambda ratios, *Clin Chem* 55:1646–1655, 2009.

Buckley RH: Serum immunoglobulin concentrations in health and in primary immunodeficiency diseases. In Altmann PL, Katz DD, editors: *Human health and disease*, Bethesda, Md, 1977, Federation of American Societies for Experimental Biology, pp 58–60.

Burton DR: Immunoglobulin G: Functional sites, *Mol Immunol* 22:161, 1985.

Cakalaroski K, Ivanovski N, Popov S, et al: Mono- and oligoclonal immunoglobulin anomalies in kidney transplant patients, *Ann Urol (Paris)* 34:340–344, 2000.

Calderon B: Heavy/light chain assay for monitoring IgA multiple myeloma: Digging out the IgA from the β-region, *Clin Chem* 61:317–318, 2015.

Carsetti R, Kohler G, Lamers MC: A role for immunoglobulin D: Interference with tolerance induction, *Eur J Immunol* 23:168, 1993.

Cassidy JT, Nordby GL, Dodge HJ: Biologic variation of human serum immunoglobulin concentrations: Sex-age specific effects, *J Chronic Dis* 27:507, 1974.

Cohen HJ: Multiple myeloma in the elderly, *Clin Geriatr Med* 1:827, 1985.

Corcoran AE: Immunoglobulin locus silencing and allelic exclusion, *Semin Immunol* 17:141, 2005.

Cushman P, Grieco MH: Hyperimmunoglobulinemia associated with narcotic addiction, *Am J Med* 54:320, 1973.

Davies DR, Metzer H: Structural basis of antibody function, *Annu Rev Immunol* 1:87, 1983.

De Paschale M, Ceriani C, Cerulli T, et al: Antenatal screening for toxoplasmosis gondii, cytomegalovirus, rubella and Treponema pallidum infections in northern Benin, *Trop Med Int Health* 19:743–746, 2014.

Desai RG: Recent advances in intravenous immunoglobulin therapy—Concluding remarks: Current trends and future directions, *Cancer* 68:1460, 1991.

DiLillo DJ, Pawluczkowycz AW, Peng W, et al: Selective and efficient inhibition of the alternative pathway of complement by a mAb that recognizes C3b/iC3b, *Mol Immunol* 43:1010, 2006.

Drouet E, Chapuis-Cellier C, Bosshard S, et al: Oligomonoclonal immunoglobulins frequently develop during concurrent cytomegalovirus (CMV) and Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) infections in patients after renal transplantation, *Clin Exp Immunol* 118:465, 1999.

Hammarström L, Smith CI: New and old aspects of immunoglobulin application: The use of intravenous IgG as prophylaxis and for treatment of infections, *Infection* 18:314, 1990.

Herron JN, He XM, Ballard DW: An antibody to single-stranded DNA: Comparison of the three-dimensional structures of the unliganded Fab and a deoxynucleotide–Fab complex, *Proteins* 11:159, 1991.

Isobe T, Osserman EF: Pathologic conditions associated with plasma cell dyscrasias: A study of 806 cases, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 190:507, 1971.

Jaskowski TD, Litwin CM, Hill HR: Detection of kappa and lambda light chain monoclonal proteins in human serum: Automated immunoassay versus immunofixation electrophoresis, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 13:277, 2006.

Kanno A, Kazuyama Y: Immunoglobulin G antibody avidity assay for serodiagnosis of hepatitis C virus infection, *J Med Virol* 68:229–233, 2002.

Karplus M, McCammon JA: Dynamics of proteins: Elements and function, *Annu Rev Biochem* 53:263, 1983.

Katzmann JA, Willrich MAV, Kohlhage MC: Monitoring IgA multiple myeloma: Immunoglobulin heavy/light chain assays, *Clin Chem* 61:360–367, 2015.

Keating SM, Hanson D, Lebedeva M, et al: Lower-sensitivity and avidity modifications of the Vitros anti-HIV 1+2 assay for detection of recent HIV infections and incidence estimation, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:3968–3976, 2012.

Kelly RH, Tardy TJ, Shah PM: Benign monoclonal gammopathy: A reassessment of the problem, *Immunol Invest* 14:193, 1985.

Keren DF, Warren JS, Lowe JB: Strategy to diagnose monoclonal gammopathies in serum: High-resolution electrophoresis, immunofixation, and kappa/lambda quantification, *Clin Chem* 34:2196, 1988.

Kolar G, Capra JD: Immunoglobulins: Structure and function. In Paul WE, editor: *Fundamental immunology*, Philadelphia, 2003, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, p 47.

Konstantinopoulos PA, Desube BJ, Pantanowitz L, et al: Protein electrophoresis and immunoglobulin analysis in HIV-infected patients, *Am J Clin Pathol* 128:596–603, 2007.

Kontio M, Jokinen S, Paunio M, et al: Waning antibody levels and avidity: Implications for MMR vaccine-induced protection, *J Infect Dis* 206:1542–1548, 2012.

Kyle RA: Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS): A review, *Clin Haematol* 11:123, 1982.

Lefrano G, Lefrano MP: Antibody engineering and perspectives in therapy, *Biochemie* 72:639, 1990.

Levett PN, Sonnenberg K, Sidaway F, et al: Use of immunoglobulin G avidity assays for differentiation of primary from previous infections with West Nile virus, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:5873–5875, 2005.

Lichtman MA, Vaughan JH, Hames CG: The distribution of serum immunoglobulins, anti-γ-G globulins and antinuclear antibodies in White and Negro subjects in Evans County, Georgia, *Arthritis Rheum* 10:204, 1967.

Mark T, Jayabalan D, Coleman M, et al: Atypical serum immunofixation patterns frequently emerge in immunomodulatory therapy and are associated with a high degree of response in multiple myeloma, *Br J Haematol* 143:654–660, 2008.

Max EE: Immunoglobulins: Molecular genetics. In Paul WE, editor: *Fundamental immunology*, Philadelphia, 2003, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, p 107.

Morrison SL: In vitro antibodies: Strategies for production and application, *Annu Rev Immunol* 10:239, 1992.

Mountain A, Adair JR: Engineering antibodies for therapy, *Biotechnol Genet Eng Rev* 10:1, 1992.

Myara I, Wuenum G, Storogenko M, et al: Monoclonal and oligoclonal gammopathies in heart-transplant recipients, *Clin Chem* 37:1334–1337, 1991.

Neame PB, Soamboonsrup P, Quigley JG, et al: The use of monoclonal antibodies and immune markers in the diagnosis, prognosis, and therapy of acute leukemia, *Transfus Med Rev* 8:59, 1994.

Nickerson PW, Rush DN, Jeffery JR, et al: High serum levels of interleukin-6 in renal transplant recipients with monoclonal gammopathies, *Transplantation* 58:382, 1994.

Ortho Multicenter Transplant Study Group: A randomized clinical trial of OKT3 monoclonal antibody for acute rejection of cadaveric renal transplants, *N Engl J Med* 313:337, 1985.

Padlan EA: Anatomy of the antibody molecule, *Mol Immunol* 31:169, 1991.

Pham H, Lemoine A, Salvucci M, et al: Occurrence of gammopathies and lymphoproliferative disorders in liver transplant recipients randomized to tacrolimus (FK506)- or cyclosporine-based immunosuppression, *Liver Transpl Surg* 4:146–151, 1998.

Pennington JE: Immunoglobulin therapy in infectious disease, *Cleve Clin J Med* 58:309, 1991.

Poljak RJ: Structure of antibodies and their complexes with antigens, *Mol Immunol* 28:1341, 1991.

Radl J, Valentijn RM, Haaijman JJ, et al: Monoclonal gammopathies in patients undergoing immunosuppressive treatment after renal transplantation, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 37:98, 1985.

Rahiff J, Trusch M, Haag F, et al: Antigen-specificity of oligoclonal abnormal protein bands in multiple myeloma after allogeneic stem cell transplantation, *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 61:1639–1651, 2012.

Rodrigues JP, Frei F, Naavarro IT, et al: Seroepidemiological analysis of toxoplasmosis in college students, *J Venom Anim Toxins Incl Trop Dis* 21(1):1, 2015. doi: 10.1186/1678-9199-21-1. eCollection 2015.

Roes J, Rajewski K: Immunoglobulin D (IgD)-deficient mice reveal an auxiliary receptor function for IgD in antigen-mediated recruitment of B-cells, *J Exp Med* 177:45, 1993.

Ropper AH, Gorson KC: Neuropathies associated with paraproteinemia, *N Engl J Med* 338:1601, 1998.

Schaefer AI, Miller JB, Lester EP, et al: Monoclonal gammopathy in hereditary spherocytosis: A possible pathogenetic relation, *Ann Intern Med* 88:45, 1978.

Shihabi ZK: Cryoglobulins: An important but neglected clinical test, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 36:395, 2006.

Shin SU, Wright A, Morrison SL: Hybrid antibodies, *Int Rev Immunol* 10:177, 1993.

Spiegelberg HL: Biological activities of immunoglobulins of different classes and subclasses, *Adv Immunol* 19:259, 1974.

Standfield RL, Fieser TM, Lerner RA, et al: Crystal structures of an antibody to a peptide and its complex with peptide antigen at 2.8Å, *Science* 248:712, 1990.

Stanko CK, Jeffery JR, Rush DN: Monoclonal and multiclonal gammopathies after renal transplantation, *Transplant Proc* 21:3330, 1989.

Stevenson FK, George AJ, Glennie MJ: Anti-idiotypic therapy of leukemias and lymphomas, *Chem Immunol* 48:126, 1990.

Tedford MC, Stimson WH: Molecular recognition in antibodies and its application, *Experientia* 47:1129, 1991.

Tollerud DJ, Brown LM, Blattner WA, et al: Racial differences in serum immunoglobulin levels: Relationship to cigarette smoking, T-cell subsets, and soluble interleukin-2 receptors, *J Clin Lab Anal* 9:37, 1995.

Tonegawa S: Somatic generation of antibody-diversity, *Nature* 302:575, 1983.

Tosi P, Tomassetti S, Merli A, et al: Serum free light-chain assay for the detection and monitoring of multiple myeloma and related conditions, *Ther Adv Hematol* 4:37–41, 2013.

Vitetta ES, Thorpe PE, Uhr JW: Immunotoxins: Magic bullets or misguided missiles? *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 14:148, 1993.

Ward ES: Antibody engineering: The use of *Escherichia coli* as an expression host, *FASEB J* 6:2122, 1992.

Wells JV, Fudenberg HH: Paraproteinemias, *Dis Mon* 1:45, 1974.

Wilson IA, Stanfield RL, Rini JM, et al: Structural aspects of antibodies and antibody—Antigen complexes, *Ciba Found Symp* 159:13, 1991.

CHAPTER 47

MEDIATORS OF INFLAMMATION: COMPLEMENT, CYTOKINES, AND ADHESION MOLECULES

H. Davis Massey, Richard A. McPherson, Sally A. Huber, Nancy S. Jenny

STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF THE COMPLEMENT SYSTEM, 929
Nomenclature, 929
C3: Central Molecule of Complement Activation Pathways, 930
The Classical Pathway, 931
The Alternative Pathway, 932
The Mannan-Binding Lectin Pathway, 932
Terminal Complement Components, 932
Anaphylatoxins, 932
Regulation of Complement Activation, 933
Complement Receptors, 934
Complement Biosynthesis, 935
Complement Genetics, 935
Complement and Acquired Immunity, 935

GENETIC COMPLEMENT DEFICIENCIES, 936

ASSESSMENT OF COMPLEMENT ACTIVITY IN DISEASE, 937

COMPLEMENT IN DISEASE STATES, 938
Rheumatologic Diseases, 938
Hereditary Angioedema, 938
Infectious Diseases, 938
Renal Diseases, 939
Ophthalmologic Diseases, 939
Dermatologic Diseases, 939
Hematologic Diseases, 939
Neurologic Diseases, 939
Cardiovascular Diseases, 940
Biocompatibility, 940
Organ Transplantation, 940

CLINICALLY USEFUL COMPLEMENT INHIBITORS, 940

ASSAYS OF COMPLEMENT, 941
General Principles, 941
Functional Evaluation of the Classical Pathway, 941
Functional Evaluation of the Alternative Pathway, 942
Functional Assay of C1-Inhibitor and Factor H, 942
Complement Levels by Antigenic Assays, 942

KININS AND THE KININ-GENERATING SYSTEM, 942

PERSPECTIVES, 942

SELECTED REFERENCES, 943

KEY POINTS

- The complement system is a group of circulating proteins that promote inflammation and host defense.
- Unregulated tissue damage is a possible complication of complement activation, and a large variety of circulating and membrane-bound proteins exist to regulate complement activity.
- Complement component C3 is the central convergence point for all complement activation pathways.
- It is frequently necessary to measure serum complement levels to track disease activity, but it is important to recognize that serum complement measurements are snapshots of a dynamic process involving variable rates of complement consumption and production.
- Methods are available that allow accurate determination of serum levels of complement components.
- Functional complement assays are sensitive and precise tools that provide information about the activity and integrity of a complement component or pathway.
- The simplest functional assay of the classical pathway (CH50) measures total hemolytic complement activity.

STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF THE COMPLEMENT SYSTEM

The term **complement** refers to a group of more than 30 circulating and membrane-bound regulatory and constitutive component glycoproteins that function to promote host defense against infectious agents, to promote the clearance of apoptotic cell debris and immune complexes, and to regulate the immune response. Unregulated tissue damage is a possible complication of complement activation, and a large variety of circulating glycoproteins, as well as tissue membrane–bound proteins, function to regulate complement activity and downregulate complement attack. The existence of this system of proteins was inferred late in the 19th century, when it became clear that fresh serum had the ability to lyse gram-negative bacteria and cholera vibrios in the presence of specific antibody. As techniques for protein purification and identification became more sophisticated over the years, it was recognized that complement is a very complex system with many interacting proteins.

In general, the system functions to identify foreign cells and microorganisms and destroy them. This may occur by direct lysis, by opsonization (the process of coating them with specific complement peptides recognized by specific receptors on phagocytes to aid ingestion), or by inflammation produced by the attraction of phagocytic cells. It also has become clear that complement plays a role in facilitating the immune response.

The complement system of proteins is phylogenetically older than the proteins associated with acquired immunity (immunoglobulin) and is present in primitive organisms that lack immunoglobulin. Complement is presumed to provide a level of innate or natural immunity and host defense, even in the absence of an antibody response. It accomplishes this via the mannan-binding lectin (MBL) pathway and the alternative complement pathway, both discussed later. Antibody provides a level of increased specificity and increased efficiency in mediating host defense. A detailed history of the discovery of complement and of the various complement pathways is provided elsewhere (Frank, 1998).

NOMENCLATURE

Three major complement activation pathways are present in human serum: the classical pathway, the alternative pathway, and the MBL pathway (or MBLectin pathway). Figure 47-1 illustrates the reaction sequence of each pathway. The nomenclature for proteins of the complement system generally follows two conventions (World Health Organization, 1968; IUIS-WHO, 1981). For historical reasons, the nine proteins of the classical pathway are designated by the uppercase letter *C*, which is then followed

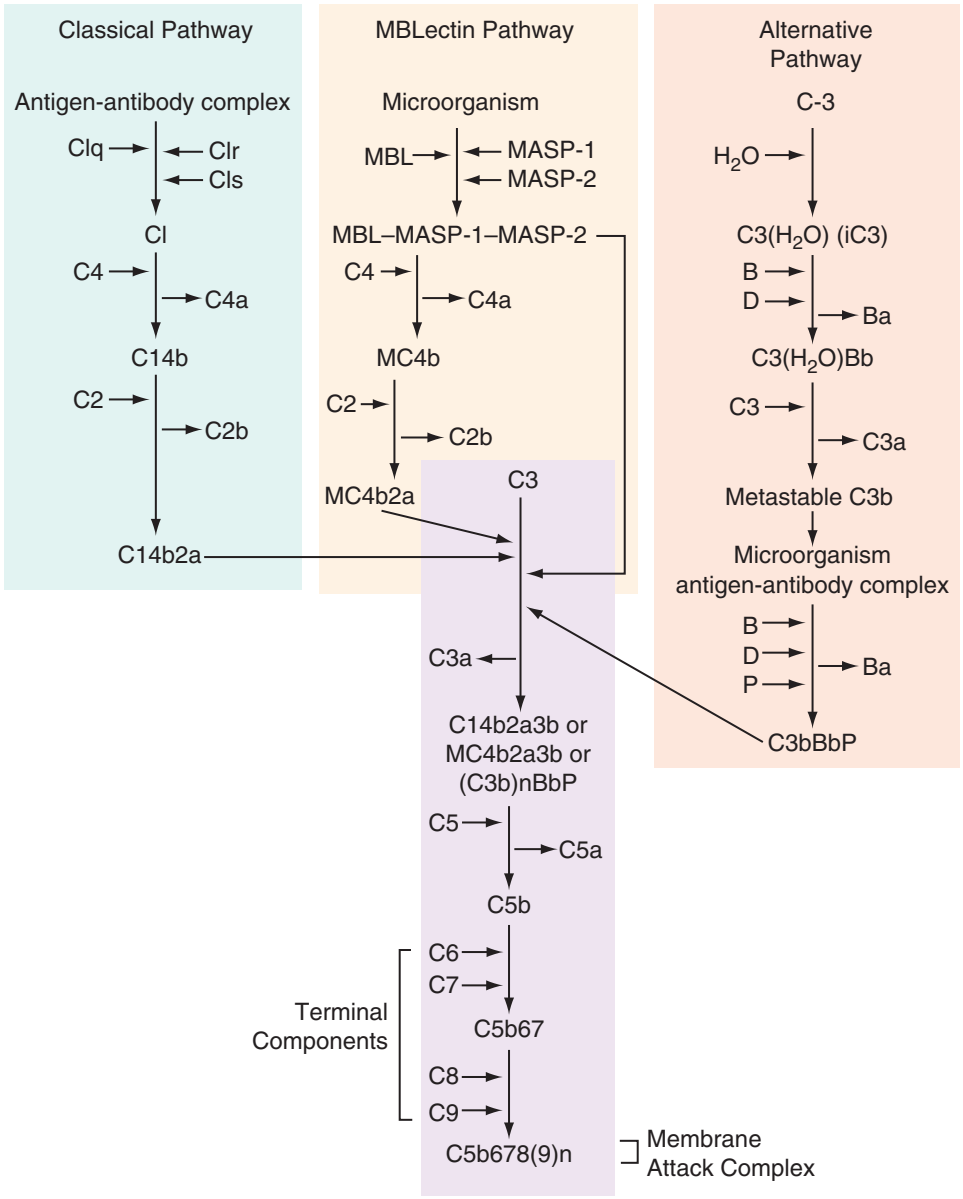


Figure 47-1 Components of the classical, MBLectin, and alternative pathways converge to form a convertase that cleaves C3. In the classical pathway, antigen-antibody complexes sequentially bind and activate C1, C4, and C2. In the MBLectin pathway, interaction of MBL with a carbohydrate on the surface of a microorganism leads to the formation of an enzymatic complex (MBL–MASP-1–MASP-2, termed M in the figure) that binds and activates C4 and C2. In the alternative pathway, C3 undergoes hydrolysis of its thioester bond, which induces a change in conformation. It then binds factor B (B), which is cleaved by factor D (D) to form a convertase that is stabilized by properdin (P). C3b, the cleavage product of C3, also has a cleaved thiolester bond and is capable of activating the alternative pathway. The C3b-containing convertase of all pathways continues sequentially by binding the late-acting component until the sequence of activation is complete.

by the number that relates to their order of appearance in the reaction sequence. A notable exception is C4, which acts before C2. Molecules that are part of the C1 complex are termed *C1q*, *C1r*, and *C1s*. Proteins reacting solely in the alternative pathway are called *factors* and are referred to by an uppercase letter (e.g., factor B, factor D). Fragments of complement proteins resulting from proteolytic cleavage are designated by an appended lowercase letter (e.g., C4a, C4b), where *a* represents the smaller fragment, and *b* represents the larger fragment. The exception to this rule is C2, where C2a is the larger fragment and C2b is the smaller fragment. Further degradation fragments of the large complement fragment of one component are designated by lowercase letters (e.g., C3c, C3d). Components that have lost activity (i.e., are inactive) are usually designated by a prefixed lowercase *i* (e.g., iC3b, iC4b). Polypeptide chains of a native complement protein are designated by Greek lowercase letters (α, β, γ); with the exception of C1q, these chains are termed A, B, and C. Single components or multicomponent complexes that have enzymatic activity are designated by a bar over the component(s). Proteins of the MBLectin pathway are designated by abbreviations of the names of the proteins (e.g., MBL for mannan-binding lectin, MASP for MBL-associated serine protease). Regulatory proteins are designated by a descriptive title or letter (e.g., C4-binding protein, factor H). Membrane-bound regulatory proteins have been assigned CD numbers and descriptive titles (e.g., CD46 for membrane cofactor protein), and complement receptors are designated by numbers following the prefix CR (for complement receptors 1 to 4). The other complement receptors are designated by the component's symbol followed by the uppercase letter *R*.

C3: CENTRAL MOLECULE OF COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION PATHWAYS

The protein known as C3 is the central convergence point for the three complement activation pathways (the MBLectin pathway, the alternative pathway, and the classical pathway), which all proceed to lysis, phagocytosis, or regulation of the inflammatory response farther down the cascade.

C3 is a two-chain molecule synthesized in many cells, particularly hepatocytes, formed from a single-chain molecule, pro-C3, and released

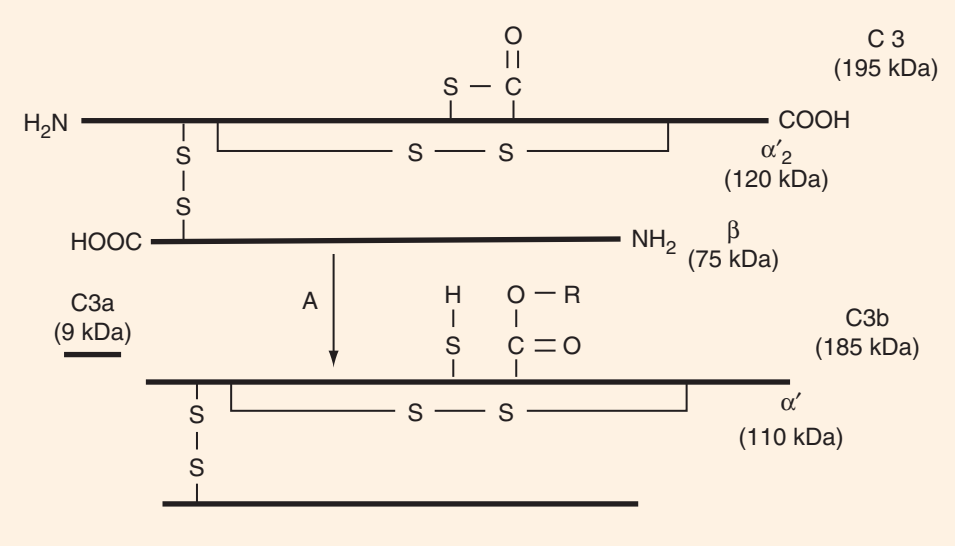


Figure 47-2 **C3 cleavage by C3 convertase:** The approximate molecular weight of each chain or fragment is given in kilodaltons (C3 convertase is represented by A).

into the circulation, where it binds to foreign target surfaces. The α and β chains are stabilized by intrachain disulfide bonds; an interchain disulfide bond stabilizes α and β chain interaction (Fig. 47-2). The α chain contains a thiolester that imparts an unstable structure to the molecule. Although it is in the hydrophobic center of C3, the thiolester can be cleaved by gradual hydrolysis as water penetrates the molecule, activating the alternative complement pathway. C3 may also be cleaved rapidly by the action of C3 convertase in releasing the 9-kDa C3a fragment from the α chain amino-terminus, from the larger C3b. C3b will go on to coat target proteins, thereby marking them for destruction, and C3a in the role of anaphylatoxin activates nearby cells to release mediators of inflammation (Wen et al, 2004). Either avenue results in marked conformational alteration of C3 (now termed *C3b*) that permits it to interact with cells expressing C3b receptors, in particular CR1 (C3b/C4b receptor, CD35). (Native C3 will not interact with C3b receptors.)

C3 activation and conversion to C3b (with thiolester cleavage) lead to covalent binding of C3b to the surface of a target such as a microorganism. The target becomes coated with C3b capable of interacting with cells expressing C3b receptors, including all phagocytes, all B lymphocytes, and a subset of T lymphocytes. It is C3b that continues the complement cascade leading to lysis.

THE CLASSICAL PATHWAY

The classical pathway of complement activation, described around 1900, was the first to be studied, and for this reason is called *classical*. It is evolutionarily the most recent of the three pathways described. The classical pathway is responsible for complement activation on most antibody-sensitized cells. Details of this pathway are published elsewhere (Fries & Frank, 1987; Volanakis, 1998). Nine numbered proteins make up the classical pathway. Activation of the classical pathway usually requires interaction between an antigen and a C1-binding **complementing** antibody. In humans, only immunoglobulin (Ig)M and IgG are effective at activating the classical pathway, except IgG4, which is unable to activate complement. A number of molecules other than immunoglobulins have the ability to activate the classical pathway via direct interaction with C1q. These include C-reactive protein, serum amyloid P component, β-amyloid, some gram-negative bacteria, certain viruses, mycoplasmas, protozoa, and intracellular components such as DNA, mitochondrial membranes, cytoskeletal filaments (Gewurz et al, 1993), and apoptotic cells (Korb & Ahearn, 1997). The latter might be of critical importance in the elimination of apoptotic cells and debris from the circulation. In some instances, infectious agents may exploit complement to their advantage, as with prion diseases such as transmissible spongiform encephalopathy, which may use complement components such as C3 and C1q to facilitate its localization within target cells (Mabbott, 2004).

Upon binding of immunoglobulin to a target, C1 binds to that immunoglobulin and becomes activated. C1 is a macromolecule of 740 kDa that comprises a single molecule of C1q complexed with two C1r and two C1s chains held together in the presence of calcium ions. Once bound to immunoglobulin, C1q adopts a conformational change that leads to autoactivation of the two C1r chains. Activated $C1s_2$ cleaves the next component in the cascade, C4. The larger fragment, C4b, becomes attached to the activator surface, whereas the smaller fragment, C4a, is released in the fluid phase. C4a is an anaphylatoxin and is described later in the chapter. Most of the generated C4b is hydrolyzed and remains in the fluid phase. Nevertheless, some of the generated C4b molecules bind to the activator surface as a cluster around the antigen-antibody-C1 site. A single antibody-antigen-C1 site thus can lead to the deposition of many C4b molecules.

In the presence of magnesium ions, C4b acts as a site for the binding and subsequent cleavage of C2. $C1s_2$, in association with C4b, cleaves C2 into two fragments. The larger fragment, C2a, remains bound to C4b, whereas the smaller one, C2b, is released in the fluid phase. This molecular complex, C4b2a, is unstable and has a relatively short half-life because of decay that results from the tendency of C2a to break away from the complex in an inactive form. The C4b2a complex is the classical pathway C3 convertase required for C3 binding and cleavage (see Fig. 47-2). It is C2a as part of the C4b2a complex that enzymatically cleaves C3 in the next step of the activation cascade, and cleaves C5 in a later step. C2a cleaves C3 into a large fragment, C3b, which binds to the activator surface, and a smaller fragment, C3a, which is released into the fluid phase, where it serves as an anaphylatoxin. The newly generated C4b2a3b complex is the C5 convertase of the classical pathway that triggers deposition of terminal complement components on the target surface.

IgM and IgG differ in their ability to activate the classical pathway of complement. It appears that a single molecule of most IgM antibodies bound by multiple antibody sites to an antigen can bind one molecule of C1 and trigger a complete complement activation sequence. IgM, with its five antigen-binding sites, adopts a functionally active conformation on an antigenic surface that allows multiple interactions with antigens.

In contrast, C1 binding to IgG requires two molecules of IgG side by side in most experimental studies (Borsos & Rapp, 1965). Because IgG antibodies bind to a target surface in a random fashion, and because antigens may not be evenly distributed on a target organism, the attachment of hundreds or thousands of IgG antibodies may be required to generate a C1-binding site. Classical pathway activation by IgG-antigen complexes is also shown to facilitate the alternative pathway (see the next section) on the activator surface (Moore et al, 1981).

The ability of aggregated immunoglobulin to bind C1q has provided the basis for a number of tests designed to detect the presence of soluble immune complexes in patient blood samples. Radiolabeled C1q is added to the serum or plasma sample, and one of a number of techniques (e.g., polyethylene glycol precipitation) is used to separate free C1q from that bound to protein components of serum. The binding of C1q suggests the presence of immunoglobulin complexes in the serum or plasma sample (Zubler & Lambert, 1976). Soluble immune complexes may also be measured by identification of C1q- or C3-bound immune complexes using enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) techniques (Stanilova &

Slavov, 2001). Detection of the presence of C1q in tissue specimens by direct visualization with immunofluorescently labeled anti-C1q antibodies may be used to identify immune complexes in biopsy specimens.

THE ALTERNATIVE PATHWAY

The presence of a second pathway of complement activation was first proposed by Pillemer and colleagues in 1954 and was accepted by the scientific community almost 2 decades later. This complement activation pathway appears to be important in early defense against pathogenic microorganisms (Pangburn & Müller-Eberhard, 1984). Although antibodies can also activate this system, neither antibody nor lectin is required for activation. Initiation of the alternative pathway on an acceptor surface begins with deposition of active C3 on a surface that has no regulators of complement present on it, leading to the generation of C3b fragments and allowing the process to continue as an unimpeded amplification loop (Wen et al, 2004). This event depends on the ability of the carbonyl group of the exposed thiolester group of C3b to interact with an amide or a hydroxyl group of a protein or a carbohydrate present on the surface of a target (Law et al, 1979). In serum, C3 is hydrolyzed at a rate of 0.2% to 0.4% of plasma pool per hour (Pangburn et al, 1981). C3 with a hydrolyzed thiolester undergoes a conformational change that allows it to interact with proteins that do not interact with native C3, and is termed *C3(H_2O)* (also termed *iC3*). C3(H_2O) then has the ability to interact with factor B in the presence of magnesium ions. Factor B, upon binding to C3(H_2O), can interact with factor D and is cleaved to generate the so-called *initiation C3 convertase C3(H_2O)Bb* and liberate a small fragment, Ba. This cleavage is mediated by factor D, a serine protease that adopts an active conformation upon recognition of its substrate and returns to an inactive conformation once proteolytic cleavage is accomplished (Volanakis & Narayana, 1996).

The initiation C3 convertase cleaves C3 to generate metastable C3b at a continuously slow rate in the circulation. Metastable C3b can bind covalently to the activator surface and then, like C3(H_2O), can bind factor B. As in the initiation C3 convertase, factor D then cleaves factor B to generate the cell-bound C3 convertase C3bBb. This complex decays rapidly but is stabilized upon binding of properdin, which prolongs the half-life of the C3 convertase from 1 to 18 minutes (Fearon & Austen, 1975). This stabilized C3 convertase rapidly cleaves yet more C3, which can bind to the activator surface and therefore is referred to as the amplification C3 convertase of the alternative pathway. Amplification of C3b deposition to the activator surface leads to the formation of a C5 convertase (C3b2BbP) (Kinoshita et al, 1988), which has the ability to trigger activation of the terminal components of the complement system.

THE MANNAN-BINDING LECTIN PATHWAY

A third pathway of complement activation has been described recently that utilizes the serum protein MBL (also called *mannose-binding lectin* or *mannose-binding protein*), which is present in serum at about 1.5 μg/mL. Formed in the liver, MBL is found in all mammals and birds and belongs to a family of molecules termed *collectins* (Epstein et al, 1996; Turner, 1996). The collectin family includes, in addition to MBL, lung surfactant proteins A and D (SP-A, SP-D), bovine conglutinin, bovine CL-43, and the ficolins (Epstein et al, 1996; Thiel, 2007). MBL and the ficolins are complement-activating soluble pattern recognition molecules, that is, they recognize pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) on the surfaces of microbes. Once they bind their specific PAMP, these proteins undergo a conformational change that permits them to associate with the three MBL-associated serine proteases, MASP-1, MASP-2, and MASP-3, to activate the complement cascade (Thiel, 2007). MBL is structurally related to C1q and recognizes certain **pathogenic** carbohydrates expressed on the surface of microorganisms, but does not recognize carbohydrates such as galactose and sialic acid, which are the terminal sugars expressed on mammalian glycoproteins (Epstein et al, 1996). This allows MBL to discriminate between self and nonself, and it is reported that MBL may react with a wide range of acapsular gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, viruses, yeasts, mycobacteria, parasites, and protozoa (Epstein et al, 1996).

The MASPs share structural homology with C1r and C1s, suggesting similarity with the C1 complex ($C1qr_2s_2$). After activation, MASP-2 cleaves C4 to generate the classical pathway C3 convertase C4b2a (Vorup-Jensen et al, 1998). MASP-1 has the ability to cleave C3 (Matsushita et al, 1998), suggesting that it might trigger alternative pathway activation directly (Schweinle et al, 1989). Following generation of the classical pathway C3 convertase C4b2a by the MBL–MASP-1–MASP-2–MASP-3 complex, complement activation proceeds as in the classical pathway, with possible recruitment of the alternative pathway as well (Suankratay et al, 1998). Specific antibody-antigen complexes can also trigger the MBLectin pathway. It was demonstrated that a fraction of IgG molecules that lack terminal galactose residues (termed *IgG-G0*), as found in the plasma of patients with pathologic conditions such as rheumatoid arthritis (RA), have the ability to interact with MBL and activate the classical pathway (Malhotra et al, 1995). MBL may also play a role in the elimination of target organisms by phagocytes through interaction with a specific receptor present on those phagocytes (Tenner et al, 1995; Hansen & Holmskov, 1998). It may modulate inflammatory and allergic responses, affect apoptotic cell clearance, and modulate the adaptive immune system (van de Wetering et al, 2004; Thiel, 2007). Regulation of the MBLectin pathway appears to be mediated by C1 inhibitor (Matsushita & Fujita, 1996) and α_2-macroglobulin (Terai et al, 1995).

TERMINAL COMPLEMENT COMPONENTS

The three complement activation pathways converge on the activation of C3 and the assembly of the membrane attack complex (MAC), formed by components C5 to C9. Upon formation of the classical, MBLectin (C4b2a3b), and alternative (C3b2Bb) pathway C5 convertases, C5 is cleaved. The larger fragment (C5b) can associate with the cell membrane and interact with C6. The next step involves the interaction of the C5b-6 complex with fluid-phase C7, forming a trimeric complex with amphiphilic properties (high affinity for the lipid constituents of the cell membrane) (Podack et al, 1979). C5b-7 inserts in the lipid bilayer of the cell membrane but is not sufficient for cell lysis to occur. C8 associates with this trimolecular complex via an interaction with exposed C5b. The C5b-8 complex penetrates the lipid bilayer further to form a small transmembrane pore that causes slow lysis of erythrocytes (Ramm et al, 1982). However, insertion of multiple copies of C9 through the lipid bilayer via an initial interaction with the α chain of C8 is needed to produce the full cytolytic activity of the MAC (Plumb & Sodetz, 1998). It is believed that the C5b-8 complex serves as an initiator of C9 polymerization within the cell membrane.

The MAC, by electron microscopy, has a hollow, cylinder-like structure formed by the assembly of its components in the presence of excess C9 (Podack & Tschopp, 1984). The mechanism by which the MAC disrupts the cell membrane results from formation of a transmembrane pore with a hydrophilic center through which ions can pass freely (Bhakdi & Tranum-Jensen, 1991; Tegla et al, 2011). The size of the pore depends upon the number of C9 molecules incorporated into the MAC. MACs composed of C5b-8,9_1 can result in nucleated cell death, but MACs consisting of C5b-8,9_4 complexes are twice as effective. Influx of Ca^{2+} through the MAC causes loss of mitochondrial function leading to cell death (Tegla et al, 2011). Formation of the MAC induces lysis of certain bacteria and viruses, and of heterologous erythrocytes. Most nucleated cells resist MAC-induced cytotoxicity. This protection, especially from attack by one's own complement proteins, is mediated by membrane-associated regulatory molecules that prevent MAC formation (see the "Regulation of Complement Activation" section later in the chapter), as well as by shedding of the activated complement proteins by blebbing of the cell surface. Lysis of nucleated cells mediated by the MAC may occur but requires multiple MAC lesions to take effect (Koski et al, 1983; Tegla et al, 2011).

Sublytic amounts of the MAC might protect the cell from subsequent complement attack (Reiter et al, 1992). Nucleated cells are protected from the effects of the MAC in part because of its active elimination from the cell surface by membrane repair linked to lipid turnover (Mold, 1998). The half-life of MAC in nucleated cells is 1 to 3 minutes, but MAC may persist in erythrocytes up to 72 hours (Tegla et al, 2011). MAC formation has a stimulating effect on several nucleated cell types. Among others, these effects include production of reactive oxygen radicals from neutrophils and macrophages, release of eicosanoids from phagocytic cells, induction of procoagulant activity in platelets and endothelial cells, proinflammatory activity in endothelial cells and smooth muscle cells, proliferation of smooth muscle cells and endothelial cells, production of growth factor (PDGF, bFGF-1, IGF-1), blocking of caspase-dependent apoptosis, and triggering of signal transduction pathways (Niculescu et al, 1993, 1999; Benzaquen et al, 1994; Sims & Wiedmer, 1995; Kilgore et al, 1996; Tedesco et al, 1997; Mold, 1998; Tegla et al, 2011).

ANAPHYLATOXINS

Activation of complement via the classical, alternative, or MBLectin pathway leads to the generation of complement protein fragments that have important roles in various biologic functions, including

TABLE 47-1
Complement Regulatory Proteins

Protein	Molecular Weight, kDa	Target	Mechanism of Action
Fluid Phases			
C1 inhibitor	105	C1	Dissociates the C1 complex by binding to C1r and C1s
Factor H	150	C3b	Cofactor for C3b inactivation by factor I
C4-binding protein	550	C4	Cofactor for C4b inactivation by factor I
S protein (vitronectin)	84	C5b-7	Inhibits insertion of the MAC into cell membranes
Clusterin	70	C5b-7	Inhibits insertion of the MAC into cell membranes
Factor J	20	C1, C3, B	Inhibits C1 complex formation, inhibits cleavage of C3 by Bb
Cell-Associated			
CR1	190*	C3b, C4b	Dissociation of C3/C5 convertases, cofactor for C3b and C4b inactivation by factor I
DAF (CD55)	70	C3bBb, C4b2a	Dissociation of C3/C5 convertases
MCP (CD46)	45-70	C3b (C4b)	Cofactor for C3b inactivation by factor I
CD59 (protectin)	18-20	C8, C9	Inhibition of formation of the MAC
HRF	65	C8, C9	Inhibition of formation of the MAC

CR1, Complement receptor type 1; *DAF,* decay-accelerating factor; *HRF,* homologous restriction factor; *MAC,* membrane attack complex; *MCP,* membrane cofactor protein.
*Most common isoform of CR1.

opsonization, phagocytosis, immunomodulation, and generation of inflammatory reactions.

Complement activation leads to proteolytic cleavage of many complement proteins with the subsequent release of small biologically active fragments into the fluid phase. Three of these released fragments—C4a, C3a, and C5a—are called *anaphylatoxins*. The structural and functional characteristics of these molecules are described in several excellent reviews (Ember et al, 1998; Bosmann & Ward, 2012; Zhou, 2012). The anaphylatoxins (C3a, C4a, C5a) are small peptide fragments of approximately 10 kDa that are enzymatically released during complement activation. The fragments contain a carboxyl-terminal arginine residue that can be rapidly cleaved to desarginine by serum carboxylpeptidases to reduce activity. Although all three anaphylatoxins show bioactivity, relative potency is C5a > C3a > C4a. It should be noted, however, that the relative effectiveness of these peptides is both tissue- and species-specific. For instance, C3a may be selectively effective in eosinophil localization to allergic sites, whereas C5a has an effect on many other cell types (DiScipio et al, 1999). The anaphylatoxins bind to specific receptors on cells. The receptors, C3aR and C5aR, have been cloned and characterized. The receptor for C4a has not been identified. C3aR and C5aR belong to the seven-transmembrane G-coupled receptor (GPCR) family, and activate the MAPK signal pathway responsible for most of the biological activities associated with the anaphylatoxins. An additional receptor, C5L2, binds both C5a and C5a desArg. C5L2 belongs to the GPCR family, but the biological role for this receptor is highly controversial at this time. In general, anaphylatoxins are defined by their biological effects on smooth muscle cells, mast cells, small blood vessels, and peripheral blood leukocytes. Specific effects mediated by these peptides include degranulation of mast cells and basophils, with subsequent release of various mediators such as histamine and serotonin. They also induce human neutrophil aggregation and smooth muscle contraction, enhance vascular permeability, induce thromboxane release from guinea pig macrophages, and stimulate release of mucus from goblet cells (Marom et al, 1985). An especially important effect of the anaphylatoxins on basophils is vasodilation caused by histamine release, leading to increased blood flow to sites of inflammation.

In addition to its role as an anaphylatoxin, C5a has many important biological properties. The binding of C5a to neutrophils produces an increase in adhesion and aggregation, induction of an oxidative response, and release of lysosomal enzymes. C5a is strongly chemotactic for monocytes and neutrophils, inducing the migration of these cells toward the source of complement activation in the tissues. Thus, a local complement-activating inflammatory reaction can induce increased blood flow to the affected tissue, adherence of neutrophils to a locally activated endothelium, and directed migration of phagocytes to inflamed sites along a chemotactic gradient. Neutrophils aggregated by C5a can embolize to the lung, causing changes in pulmonary gas exchange and even death. It is thought that C5a mediates much of the pulmonary inflammation caused by immune complex formation (Ward, 1997). In a rat experimental sepsis model, it has been demonstrated that C5a may block the bactericidal functions of neutrophils if produced in excessive amounts, suggesting a role for complement activation in the high mortality rates observed in sepsis (Czermak et al, 1999). The biological effects of anaphylatoxins are mediated via specific cell surface receptors described in the section on complement receptors.

Recently, C3a and C5a have been shown to play an important role in bridging the gap between innate and adaptive immunity through their ability to modulate Th1, Th2, Th17, and Treg cell responses (Zhou, 2012). Most of the investigations on anaphylatoxin regulation of T cell and dendritic cell/macrophage responses depend upon experimental animal models. The C3a/C5a effect is complex and varies depending upon the disease model, the genetic background of the mouse, and interactions with other pattern recognition receptors such as toll-like receptors. In experimental asthma, C3a promotes Th2 immunity and exacerbates lung injury, whereas C5a actually suppresses Th2 responses and is protective. It is thought that the major mechanism of anaphylatoxin modulation of T cell responses depends upon their effect on dendritic cell or macrophage cytokine- and antigen-presenting activity. There is variability in C3aR and C5aR expression levels between human myeloid cell subpopulations, which may explain the differential effects of anaphylatoxin on cytokine induction and T cell responses.

REGULATION OF COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION

Complement activation, although important to host defense, may produce profound tissue damage. Organisms have evolved with internal control mechanisms to (1) limit overly widespread inflammation, (2) avoid excessive activation, and (3) protect host cells from inadvertent injury. A potent regulatory system consisting of fluid-phase and membrane-associated proteins controls complement activation at almost every step of the activation cascade (Table 47-1).

Fluid-Phase Regulators

Control of the first component of the classical pathway (C1) is mediated by C1 inhibitor (C1-Inh). C1-Inh blocks C1 autoactivation, C1 activation in the fluid phase, and C1 activation on weak activators of the classical pathway; it does not block activation on most immune complexes (Doekes et al, 1983). It is thought that C1-Inh has the ability to dislodge the entire $C1qr_2s_2$ complex from immunoglobulin with low binding affinity for C1q (Chen et al, 1998) and from targets sensitized with low doses of human IgG (Chen et al, 1998). In vitro, C1-Inh inactivates MASP (mannan-binding lectin-associated serine proteases) (Matsushita & Fujita, 1996). C4b activity is regulated by factor I (formerly referred to as the C3b/C4b inactivator) (Fries & Frank, 1987), which cleaves the C4b α chain to generate two fragments, C4c and C4d; the latter fragment remains cell-bound. For proteolysis, a cofactor, C4-binding protein (C4BP), is required. C4BP is a 570-kDa protein that can also bind particle-bound and fluid-phase C4b and can displace C2a from the classical pathway C3 convertase C4b2a (Gigli et al, 1979). Because of its pivotal role in the three complement-activation pathways, C3 is under rigid control. Fluid-phase C3b and C3 (H_2O) are rapidly inactivated by factor I, which cleaves three peptide bonds on the α chain of C3b (Davis & Harrison, 1982), thus generating an inactive form of the molecule, iC3b, which is incapable of engaging C5 or factor B. This factor I–mediated cleavage requires factor H as a cofactor.

TABLE 47-2
Cell Receptors for Complement Protein Fragments

Receptor	Molecular Weight, kDa	Ligand	Physiologic Role
CR1	190 (most common isoform)	C3b, C4b, iC3b	Phagocytosis, immune complex clearance
CR2	140	C3d, C3dg, iC3b	B cell activation
CR3	165 (α chain) 95 (β chain)	iC3b, C3d, C3b	Phagocytosis, cellular adhesion
CR4	150 (α chain) 95 (β chain)	iC3b, C3b	Cellular adhesion
C1qRp*	126	C1q, MBL, SP-A	Phagocytosis
C3aR	48	C3a	Chemotaxis, degranulation of serosal-type mast cells, increase in vascular permeability
C5aR	43	C5a, C5a desArg	Chemotaxis, degranulation of serosal-type mast cells, cellular adhesion, increase in vascular permeability

CR1, Complement receptor type 1; *C1qRp,* receptor for the collagenous region of C1q; *CR2,* complement receptor type 2; *CR3,* complement receptor type 3; *C3aR,* C3a receptor; *CR4,* complement receptor type 4; *C5a desArg,* C5a lacking the terminal arginine residue following inactivation by carboxypeptidase-N; *C5aR,* C5a receptor; *MBL,* mannan-binding lectin; *SP-A,* surfactant protein A.
*Other C1q receptors have also been described.

Factor H is a 150-kDa protein that binds C3b and has decay-accelerating activity toward the alternative pathway C3 convertase, in addition to its cofactor activity for factor I–mediated cleavage of C3b. In addition to regulating C3b in the fluid phase, factor H binds to cell-bound C3b and triggers cleavage by factor I, thus limiting classical pathway activation (Ollert et al, 1995). Once C3b is cleaved into iC3b, which then remains bound to the target surface, it is free to interact with complement receptor type 3 (CR3) present on phagocytic cells, thereby promoting phagocytosis.

A number of fluid-phase inhibitors of the terminal complement components can prevent insertion of the MAC into cell membranes. S protein (not identical to protein S), also called *vitronectin*, binds the C5b-7 complex, thereby preventing its insertion in the cell membrane (Podack et al, 1977) and inhibiting C9 polymerization (Johnson et al, 1994). S protein binds C5b and C8 within the sC5b-9 complex (Su, 1996) and binds to the receptor C1q (Lim et al, 1996). Although the full role of S protein in regulating complement activation in vivo is uncertain, Peake and colleagues (1996) showed that S protein forms a complex with sC5b-9 when complement is activated in rabbits, and that this complex still has the ability to block C9-mediated lysis of sensitized sheep erythrocytes bearing complement components 1 to 7. Clusterin (also called *Sp-40* or *apolipoprotein J*) is another fluid-phase inhibitor of the terminal complement components. Similar to vitronectin, clusterin prevents insertion of the C5b-7 complex into the cell membrane (Choi et al, 1989) and regulates the MAC at both C5b-7 and C9 levels (Berge et al, 1997).

Cell-Associated Regulatory Proteins

Regulation of complement activation must occur on host cell surfaces to limit inadvertent injury to those cells. Many of these regulatory proteins also act as complement receptors. One such protein is complement receptor type 1 (CR1), which binds activated C4b and C3b and serves as a cofactor for their factor I–mediated cleavages (see the next section). Control of cell membrane–deposited C4b and C3b is also achieved by membrane cofactor protein (MCP, CD46). This protein is expressed by almost every cell, with the notable exception of erythrocytes, and it serves as a cofactor for factor I–mediated cleavage of C4b and C3b into C4c and C4d, and iC3b, respectively (Seya et al, 1986; Seya & Atkinson, 1989).

Another cell membrane–associated protein that controls complement activation at the level of the C3 and C5 convertases is decay-accelerating factor (DAF, CD55). DAF is expressed by all circulating cells, all endothelial cells, and a number of epithelial cells (Morgan & Meri, 1994), and it accelerates the decay of C3 and C5 convertases of both the classical and alternative pathways.

Regulatory control of terminal complement components of the MAC is achieved by homologous restriction factor (HRF), or C8-binding protein, and CD59 (also referred to as *protectin*, *HRF-20*, *membrane inhibitor of reactive lysis*, and *P-18*). HRF is expressed on erythrocytes, platelets, T lymphocytes, B lymphocytes, neutrophils, and monocytes (Morgan & Meri, 1994), where it binds C8 and inhibits C9 polymerization (Morgan & Meri, 1994). The second regulatory protein, CD59, is found on all circulating cells, endothelial cells, epithelial cells, spermatozoa, glomerular podocytes (Morgan & Meri, 1994), and on some cells of the central nervous system (Morgan & Gasque, 1996). CD59 binds both the β chain of C8 and the b domain of C9 (Chang et al, 1994), inhibiting MAC formation on host cells. Because of their glycosyl phosphatidylinositol linkage to cell membranes, DAF, HRF, and CD59 are absent from the cells of patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH) (Volanakis, 1988).

COMPLEMENT RECEPTORS

Receptors that bind activated complement components have been described in various cell types. These receptors control the biological effects of complement activation peptides and are linked to several other cellular functions as well (Table 47-2). The complement receptors that have been best studied are those that bind the degradation fragments of C3.

Complement receptor type 1 (CR1, CD35, C3b/C4b receptor) is a single-chain glycoprotein expressed on erythrocytes, mononuclear phagocytes, eosinophils, B lymphocytes, a subset of T lymphocytes, glomerular podocytes, follicular dendritic cells (Ahearn & Rosengard, 1998), and astrocytes (Morgan & Gasque, 1996). It binds both C3b and C4b, to a lesser extent iC3b, and C1q as well (Klickstein et al, 1997). CR1 serves as a cofactor for factor I–mediated cleavage of C3b, iC3b, and C4b and has decay-accelerating activity for the classical and alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertases. A major physiologic role of CR1 is related to phagocytosis of complement-coated particles (opsonized particles). It is believed that erythrocyte CR1 has a major role in sequestering C3b- and iC3b-bearing immune complexes, removing them from the plasma and facilitating their transfer to degradation sites in the liver and the spleen (Birmingham, 1995). Decreased expression of erythrocyte CR1 may be associated with increased susceptibility to chronic forms of infection (Teixeira et al, 2001).

A receptor for the C3d fragment of C3 is found on human B cells, B cell lines, follicular dendritic cells, some peripheral T cells, some T cell lines, thymocytes (Ahearn & Rosengard, 1998), and astrocytes (Morgan & Gasque, 1996), and it is termed *CR2 (CD21)*. CR2 has the ability to serve as a cofactor for factor I–mediated cleavage of iC3b bound to targets (Mitomo et al, 1987), and it is the receptor for Epstein-Barr virus on B cells causing infectious mononucleosis (Fingeroth et al, 1984). The major function of CR2 is thought to be the regulation of B cell immune responses to antigen (Carroll, 1998).

A third complement receptor, CR3 (also referred to as *Mac-1*, *CD11b/CD18*), is a member of the β2 leukocyte integrin family of adhesion molecules. CR3 is expressed on mononuclear phagocytes, granulocytes, natural killer (NK) cells (Ahearn & Rosengard, 1998), and microglial cells (Morgan & Gasque, 1996), and it binds iC3b, C3b, and C3d (Brown, 1991). On phagocytes, CR3 triggers the phagocytic process in a fashion that parallels that of CR1. Another important role for CR3 is seen in the adhesion of monocytes and neutrophils to endothelial cells via interaction with its ligand, intercellular adhesion molecule type 1 (ICAM-1). This allows accumulation of phagocytes at sites of tissue injury where endothelial cells become activated. CR3 may serve as a receptor for both human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-1 and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infection of follicular dendritic cells and cervical epithelial cells, respectively (Edwards et al, 2001; Batjay et al, 2004).

Complement receptor type 4 (CR4, CD11c/CD18) is a glycoprotein that shares characteristics with CR3. It is also a member of the integrin family of adhesion molecules and is expressed on myeloid cells, dendritic

cells, NK cells, activated B cells, some activated T cells, platelets (Ahearn & Rosengard, 1998), and microglial cells (Morgan & Gasque, 1996). CR4 binds iC3b, and C3b to a lesser extent (Brown, 1991). The exact role of CR4 in terms of complement activation is unknown, but because this glycoprotein is an adhesion molecule, it may serve to "assist" neutrophil adhesion to the endothelium during inflammatory processes (Sengeløv, 1995).

A receptor for the anaphylatoxin C5a (C5aR) is expressed on neutrophils, monocytes, basophils, eosinophils, platelets, mast cells, liver parenchymal cells, lung vascular smooth muscle cells, lung and umbilical vascular endothelial cells, bronchial and alveolar epithelial cells, astrocytes, microglial cells (Ember et al, 1998), and human T cells (Nataf et al, 1999). C5a binding to C5aR induces a wide variety of events, including chemotaxis of inflammatory cells; degranulation of mast cells; production of oxygen radicals; promotion of cell adhesion; production of leukotrienes and prostaglandins in neutrophils and eosinophils; and induction of acute phase proteins, cytokines, and antibodies (Ember et al, 1998).

COMPLEMENT BIOSYNTHESIS

It is estimated that about 90% of plasma complement components are synthesized in the liver and are acute phase proteins (i.e., their synthesis by the liver increases during inflammatory reactions to increase plasma levels). The hepatocyte produces the vast majority of complement components, with the exception of C1q, factor D, properdin, and C7 (Morgan & Gasque, 1997). C1q appears to be synthesized by epithelial cells, monocytes/macrophages, and fibroblasts. The main source of factor D is the adipocyte. Properdin is synthesized mainly by monocytes and macrophages, with some synthesis occurring in lymphocytes and granulocytes. Most plasma C7 also appears to originate from monocytes and macrophages, although neutrophils were shown to store C7. Monocytes, macrophages, cells of the synovial tissues, and astrocytes have the ability to synthesize all components of the classical and alternative pathways. This may have important implications in tissue-specific inflammation, where a localized mechanism of host defense must be present to eliminate foreign particles efficiently. Production of complement components usually synthesized by hepatocytes or by extrahepatic cells often requires stimuli generated in inflammatory reactions such as interleukin-1α, interleukin-6, or interferon-γ. A good description of the regulation of complement protein synthesis by various cells is provided elsewhere (Colten & Garnier, 1998).

COMPLEMENT GENETICS

Most of the complement components are inherited in an autosomal codominant fashion. Genes that encode complement proteins, receptors, and regulatory molecules have been cloned and assigned a chromosome location (Table 47-3). Linkage exists for many of the genes that code for complement-related molecules. These linkage groups include major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class III genes (C2, factor B, and C4), genes for the regulators of complement activation (C4-binding protein, CR1, CR2, DAF, MCP, and factor H), and genes for proteins of the MACx (C6, C7, and C9) (Schneider & Würzner, 1999). Molecules within each of these three groups share structural homology, suggesting that complement proteins may have arisen from gene duplication of a limited number of ancestral genes. Almost all complement-related proteins show polymorphism. The most polymorphic complement component is C4, with more than 35 identified alleles. Point mutations, insertions, or deletions of nucleic acids are usually linked to deficiencies in complement proteins (Schneider & Rittner, 1997). Complement protein polymorphism is assessed by both phenotypic and genotypic analysis. Details of these methods are not discussed in this chapter, and the reader is referred to Chapter 50, as well as to other authors (Mauff & Würzner, 1996; Schneider & Rittner, 1997) for further reading.

COMPLEMENT AND ACQUIRED IMMUNITY

The complement system plays an important role in the establishment of acquired immune responses (Carroll, 2004). Evidence of this role came to light when depressed antibody responses to antigen stimulation were noted in animals transiently depleted in C3 (Pepys, 1974); in animals with genetic deficiencies in C2, C4, or C3 (Ochs et al, 1983; Böttger et al, 1985; O'Neil et al, 1988); and in patients who were genetically deficient in C2, C4, C3, or CR3 (Ochs et al, 1986). Studies of knockout mice lacking C4, C3, or CR1, and CR2, have furthered our understanding of the role that complement plays in the acquired immune response.

TABLE 47-3
Complement Proteins in Human Plasma

Protein	Molecular Weight, kDa	Chromosomal Location	Concentration, mg/mL
Common to All Pathways			
C3	185	19p13.3-p13.2	1200-1300
Classical Pathway			
C1q	460	1p34.1-36.3	150
C1r	85	12p13	50
C1s	85	12p13	50
C4	205	6p21.3	300-600
C2	102	6p21.3	20
Alternative Pathway			
Factor B	93	6p21.3	200
Factor D	24	Unknown	2
Properdin	55 (monomer)	Xp11.4-p11.2	25
MBLectin Pathway			
MBL	200-400	10q11.2-q21	0.002-10
MASP-1	93	3q27-28	1.5-13
MASP-2	76	1p36.3-36.2	Unknown
Membrane Attack Complex			
C5	190	9q33	80
C6	110	5p13	45
C7	100	5p13	90
C8	150	1p32 (α, β chains), 9q22.3-q32 (γ chain)	55
C9	70	5p13	60
Control Proteins			
C1-Inh	105	11q11-q13.1	240
C4bp	550	1q32	250
Factor I	88	4q25	35
Factor H	150	1q32	300-450
S protein	84	17q11	500
Clusterin	70	Unknown	50
Factor J	20	Unknown	~5.4

MASP, MBL-associated serine proteases; *MBL,* mannan-binding lectin.

Complement may influence the antibody response to antigen in several ways. CR2 is present on the surface of B cells in association with CD19 and TAPA-1. When the B cell antigen receptor and CR2 are coligated (as would occur when antigen is complexed with C3d), the threshold for B cell activation and ultimately antibody production is dramatically lowered. Complement may also assist in the trapping of immune complexes by follicular dendritic cells, thereby facilitating the formation of lymphoid germinal centers, where B cells acquire the memory phenotype. Lack of one of the early components of the classical pathway of complement activation, or lack of CR1 and/or CR2, leads to an impaired immune response to antigen and, in some cases, to an inability to mount a secondary antibody response. Complement appears to play a role in the generation of CD5-positive B cells, which give rise to so-called **natural** antibodies (Carroll, 1998). Along with complement activation, these natural antibodies are important in proper B cell activation in response to antigenic challenge (Boes et al, 1998; Lutz, 1999).

Complement components C4, CR1, and CR2 play an important role in the maintenance of B cell tolerance to self-antigens (Prodeus et al, 1998). Complement, especially C3, is important in the generation of the acquired immune response to antigen via antigen-presenting cells (APCs). The presence of C3 cleavage products on antigen enhances uptake of that antigen by APCs (B cells and other professional APCs expressing CR1 and/or CR2), thereby increasing the efficiency of antigen presentation to T cells with enhancement of subsequent T cell–mediated responses (Boackle et al, 1998; Kerekes et al, 1998). Evidence suggests direct complement modulation of T cell immune response through interaction with complement receptors variably expressed on some T cell populations (Kemper & Atkinson, 2007). The role of complement in negatively regulating host immunity is also becoming apparent. For instance, cross-linking

TABLE 47-4
Inherited Deficiencies in Complement and Complement-Related Proteins

Protein	Pattern of Inheritance	Major Clinical Correlate(s)*
Common to All Pathways		
C3	Autosomal recessive	Recurrent pyogenic infections, glomerulonephritis
Classical Pathway		
C1q	Autosomal recessive	Glomerulonephritis, SLE
C1r	Autosomal recessive	Glomerulonephritis, SLE
C1s	Autosomal recessive	Glomerulonephritis, SLE
C4†	Autosomal recessive	SLE, scleroderma, IgA nephropathy, membranous glomerulonephritis
C2†	Autosomal recessive	SLE, DLE, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, glomerulonephritis
Alternative Pathway		
Factor B	Autosomal recessive	*Neisseria meningitidis* infection
Factor D	Autosomal recessive	Recurrent pyogenic infections
Properdin	X-linked	Recurrent pyogenic infections, fulminant meningococcemia
MBLectin Pathway		
MBL	Autosomal dominant	Recurrent infections
Membrane Attack Complex		
C5	Autosomal recessive	Recurrent disseminated neisserial infections, SLE
C6	Autosomal recessive	Recurrent disseminated neisserial infections
C7	Autosomal recessive	Recurrent disseminated neisserial infections, Raynaud's disease
C8 (β or α-γ chains)	Autosomal recessive	Recurrent disseminated neisserial infections
C9	Autosomal recessive	None
Fluid-Phase Control Proteins		
C1-Inh	Autosomal dominant or acquired	Hereditary angioedema, autoimmune diseases‡
C4bp	Autosomal recessive	Angioedema, Behçet-like syndrome
Factor I	Autosomal recessive	Recurrent pyogenic infections
Factor H	Autosomal recessive	Recurrent pyogenic infections, glomerulonephritis, age-related macular degeneration
Cell-Bound Proteins		
CR1	Autosomal recessive§	Association between low erythrocyte expression and SLE
CR3	Autosomal recessive	Leukocyte adhesion deficiency-1 (LAD-1), recurrent pyogenic infections, leukocytosis
DAF/CD59/HRF	Acquired	Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria

dAF, Decay-accelerating factor; *DLE,* disseminated lupus erythematosus; *MBL,* mannan-binding lectin; *SLE,* systemic lupus erythematosus.
*Note that some people with complement deficiencies, especially C2 and components of the membrane attack complex, are clinically well. A substantial number of patients with defects in C5 to C9 have had autoimmune disease. Deficiencies of C1 to C9 are associated with a CH50 of 0. Deficiencies of C1, C4, and C2 are associated with SLE, and patients often have negative LE preps. Deficiencies of C3 to C9 are associated with absent or low bactericidal activity in serum. Deficiency of C3 or C5 is associated with absent or diminished chemotactic activity of serum and may be associated with absent leukocyte response to infection.
†Deficiency in C4 genes (*C4A* and *C4B*) is referred to as "q0," for quantity zero. Such deficiency is designated C4Aq0 or C4Bq0. Patients with such deficiencies have a higher than normal incidence of autoimmune disease. Heterozygous C2-deficient individuals also have an increased incidence of autoimmune disease.
‡Approximately 85% of cases involve silent alleles, and 15% involve alleles encoding for acquired dysfunctional variant C1 inhibitor protein. In hereditary angioedema, the C1 level is normal or depressed, the C3 level is always normal, and the C4 level is depressed. In the acquired disease, C1 and C4 levels are depressed, the antigenic C1 inhibitor level usually is normal or high, and the functional C1 inhibitor level is very low.
§Homozygosity for low (not absent) numeric expression of CR1 on erythrocytes is detectable in vitro and may be associated with SLE. An acquired defect in the number of CR1 may also be operative. Low, but not absent, levels of leukocyte CR3 are detectable in both parents of most CR3-deficient children.

of C5a, C3b, and C1q receptors on macrophages and dendritic cells induces suppression of toll-like receptor–mediated proinflammatory signaling, thereby contributing to induction of tolerance (Cummings et al, 2007). It thus appears that complement plays both inductive and inhibitory roles in acquired immunity.

GENETIC COMPLEMENT DEFICIENCIES

Identification of individuals with complement deficiencies has contributed much to our understanding of the role that complement plays in host defense, especially against infectious agents, and in the development of autoimmune disease. Genetically controlled complement deficiencies are very rare but are estimated to account for as many as 6% of primary immunodeficiencies (Notarangelo et al, 2004). These deficiencies are of interest because they allow us to determine the role of complement components in various biologic phenomena and in various disease states. Knowledge of a specific genetic mutation associated with a deficiency would permit confirmation of the heritable nature of the complement deficiency and enable screening for carriers of the mutation within the family. Even so, because genetic analyses are difficult to undertake routinely and are generally more expensive to use for screening purposes, they are rarely used during the primary workup of complement component deficiencies (Mollnes et al, 2007). The absence of a complement component usually follows simple Mendelian genetic principles and is most often inherited as an autosomal recessive trait, with some exceptions noted here. Heterozygous patients tend to have half the expected normal complement level or less, and homozygous (deficient) patients have little or no detectable complement component activity. Deficiencies are known for every protein linked to complement activation (Table 47-4). The incidence of complete complement deficiency is estimated to be 0.03% of the general population (Wen et al, 2004), but with the discovery of the MBL pathway came the surprising finding that deficiency in serum MBL is fairly common. In fact it is estimated that as much as 5% of the population has one of the three recognized gene mutations that lead to MBL deficiency (Sumiya & Summerfield, 1997).

A correlation between MBL deficiency (autosomal codominant) and upper respiratory tract infection, especially between 6 and 18 months of age, has been reported, demonstrating the importance of the MBL pathway in early childhood (Turner, 1996). One study suggested that variant MBL genes might be associated with as many as one third of all meningococcal infections in children (Hibberd et al, 1999). Purified MBL infusions are reported to correct the defect and susceptibility to infection in children with MBL deficiencies (Valdimarsson et al, 1998). Not surprisingly, the same tendency to acquire clinically significant infections is associated with

TABLE 47-5

Major Complement Deficiency Assays Performed on Peripheral Blood

Functional	Immunochemical Single-Protein Quantification	Activation Product	Autoantibody Analysis	Surface Proteins	Genetic Mapping
Total Complement Activity	***Immunoprecipitation***	***ELISA Based on Antibody to Neo-epitopes Found on Activation Products***	***ELISA-Based Assays***	***Flow Cytometric Quantification***	***Detection of Disease-Associated Genetic Variants (Mutations, Polymorphisms)***
a. CH50 and AH50 hemolytic assays	a. RID	a. Split products: C3a, C4a, C5a	Anti-C1q in SLE, anti-C1-Inh in AE, anti-factor H in aHUS, others	CD55/DAF and CD59 in PNH	aHUS (factor H, factor I, factor B, C3)
b. ELISA for CP, AP, MBL (WIELISA)	b. Electroimmunoassay	b. Activated component complexes: C1rs-C1-Inh, others	Functional assays (C3)		MPGN
	c. Nephelometry and turbidimetry	c. Macromolecular complexes	a. C3 nephritic factor in MPGN, type 2		
Single-Component Activity	***Other Methods***				
a. Hemolytic assays using component-deficient sera (e.g., C3, factor H)	a. ELISA				
b. ELISA (e.g., MBL and MASP functional activity with C4 as target)	b. TRIFMA				
c. Chromogenic substrate (C1-Inh)	c. WB				

Adapted from Botto M, et al: Complement in human diseases: lessons from complement deficiencies, *Mol Immunol* 46:2774–2783, 2009, Table 1.
AE, Angioedema; *aHUS,* atypical hemolytic-uremic syndrome; *AP,* alternate pathway; *CP,* classical pathway; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *MASP,* MBL-associated serine proteases; *MBL,* mannan-binding lectin pathway; *MPGN,* membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis; *PNH,* paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria; *RID,* radioimmunodiffusion; *TRIFMA,* time-resolved immunofluorometric assay; *WB,* Western blot; *WIESLA,* three-pathway ELISA (Wieslab, Lund, Sweden).

MBL deficiency in those immunocompromised by chemotherapy. Furthermore, it has been suggested that MBL deficiency leads to autoimmune diseases such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) (Turner, 1996) and is a risk factor for recurrent miscarriage (Christiansen et al, 1999). In contrast, deficiencies of early components of the classical pathway are rare, but are strongly associated with lupus-like disease with rash and glomerulonephritis (Botto et al, 2009).

Because complement is important in the clearance of immune complexes from the circulation, it may be true that early complement component deficiency leads to improper handling of immune complexes, along with their accumulation in tissues such as the kidney. Deficiencies of terminal complement components and alternate pathway components such as factor B, factor D, and properdin (X-linked) are well described and are associated with elevated risk for recurrent infection with gram-negative cocci such as *Neisseria meningitidis* and septic shock. Deficiency in C1 inhibitor (autosomal dominant) leads to hereditary angioedema, a disease characterized by recurrent episodes of subcutaneous and submucosal edema. This deficiency can be inherited or acquired following the development of autoantibodies to C1 inhibitor. Deficiency of factor H due to a novel homozygous factor H gene mutation has been described in an 8-month-old child and was associated with thrombotic microangiopathy and ultimately renal failure (atypical hemolytic-uremic syndrome [aHUS]) (Licht et al, 2005). Table 47-5 lists complement deficiency assays in common use.

TABLE 47-6

Complement Deficiency–Related Disease State and Recommended Analysis on Peripheral Blood

Disease	Complement Analysis
Recurrent bacterial infections	CH50, AH50, WIELISA, C3, C3a/C3d, C5-C9 *(Neisseria)*, properdin *(Neisseria)*, MBL *(Neisseria)*
Systemic lupus erythematosus	CH50, C4 (C4A/B), C3a/C3d, anti-C1q autoantibodies
Angioedema	C1 inhibitor antigenic assay, C4, C1q, acquired anti-C1q autoantibody
aHUS	CH50, AH50, C3, C3a/C3d, C3 nephritic factor, factor H, factor B, factor I, anti–factor H antibodies
MPGN	CH50, AH50, C3, C3a/C3d, C3 nephritic factor, factor H, factor I, anti–factor H antibodies
PNH	CD55, CD59 (flow cytometry)

Adapted from Botto M, et al: Complement in human diseases: lessons from complement deficiencies, *Mol Immunol* 46:2774–2783, 2009, Table 2.
aHUS, Atypical hemolytic-uremic syndrome; *C3a/C3d,* to exclude excessive complement consumption; *MBL,* mannan-binding lectin pathway; *MPGN,* membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis; *PNH,* paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria; *WIESLA,* three-pathway ELISA (Wieslab, Lund, Sweden).

ASSESSMENT OF COMPLEMENT ACTIVITY IN DISEASE

Complement promotes inflammation or tissue damage during the immune response, and it plays an important role in the pathogenesis of some diseases. In the latter situation, complement is often activated by an abnormal antibody (autoantibody), by an immune complex, or by foreign material. To track disease activity in these cases, it is frequently necessary to measure serum complement levels (Table 47-6), as with SLE, in which depressed serum C3 or C4 correlates with disease activity. In such instances, nephelometric techniques are frequently employed (see the "Assays of Complement" section later in the chapter).

It is important to recognize that serum complement measurements are only snapshots of a dynamic process involving variable rates of complement consumption and production. Many of the complement proteins behave as acute phase reactants, with their serum levels rising dramatically in some inflammatory states, while they may fall dramatically through catabolism in other inflammatory conditions such as autoimmune states. Depending on the rate of complement production and consumption, a normal serum complement level may be associated with tissue damage, just as a decreased serum complement level may be. For example, patients with biliary cirrhosis have an increased catabolic rate of C3, and it has been suggested that C3 may play a role in the development of this disease. Nevertheless, the level of C3 in the serum of patients with biliary cirrhosis is almost always elevated. In this case, increased synthesis obscures the increased catabolism. Along these lines, it is useful to bear in mind that

TABLE 47-7
Complement Activation ELISA Results Using Peripheral Blood in Screening Suspected Complement Deficiencies

IMPAIRED FUNCTION OR DEFICIENCY	ELISA ACTIVITY		
Complement Component	**Classical Pathway**	**Alternative Pathway**	**Lectin Pathway**
C1q, C1r, C1s	Low	Normal	Normal
C4, C2	Low	Normal	Low
MBL, MASP	Normal	Normal	Low
B, D, P	Normal	Low	Normal
C3, C5, C6, C7, C8, C9	Low	Low	Low

Adapted from Mollnes TE, et al: Complement analysis in the 21st century, *Mol Immunol* 44:3838–3849, 2007, Table 1.
ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *MASP,* MBL-associated serine proteases; *MBL,* mannan-binding lectin pathway.

complement levels in different anatomic compartments may differ. For instance, serum complement levels in patients with seropositive RA may be normal or elevated, whereas joint fluid complement levels may be severely depressed (where tissue damage is greatest).

Several investigators have attempted to identify which complement-activation pathway predominates in mediating tissue damage in one illness or another by establishing a **complement profile.** The simplest approach to this problem examines the levels of various complement components and assumes that decreased levels of a given component of one of the pathways of complement activation are more likely to occur when that pathway is activated. So, if a patient has depressed levels of C3 and C4 and normal levels of factor B, the classical pathway is likely to be involved. If a patient has decreased levels of C3, factor B, and properdin, and normal levels of C4, alternative pathway activation is most likely. In this way, determining the levels of a limited number of components can provide a great deal of clinically useful information.

An important advance in this area is the use of ELISA to detect stable complexes formed in serum during complement activation. These assays are highly sensitive and can readily demonstrate which pathway of complement is activated in various disease states (Morgan, 1994) (Table 47-7).

On activation, many complement proteins express new antigens (neo-antigens) that are not revealed on the native plasma protein. The neo-antigen present on the MAC, but not present on native terminal components, is perhaps the most interesting. Antibody to this neo-antigen exists and has been used to study serum neo-antigen levels by immunofluorescence and by ELISA (Falk et al, 1983; Sanders et al, 1985). The neo-antigen level is elevated in blood and spinal fluid in many patients with ongoing complement activation (Sanders et al, 1986), and the neo-antigen is present in tissues at sites of terminal complex deposition. For example, it is present in the glomeruli of patients with some forms of glomerulonephritis (Falk et al, 1983) and in lesional skin at sites of active SLE (Biesecker et al, 1982). Unlike C3 deposited in normal skin of patients with SLE and a positive lupus band test, the MAC neo-antigen is found only in lesions.

COMPLEMENT IN DISEASE STATES

RHEUMATOLOGIC DISEASES

Complement analysis in patients with autoimmune disease is useful for establishing the differential diagnosis and for following disease activity. A variety of autoimmune conditions are now linked to disorders of the complement systems, including the antiphospholipid syndrome, leukocytoclastic vasculitis, cryoglobulinemia (types I to III), and systemic forms of RA. Deficiency of an early complement component (C1, C4, or C2) is frequently associated with autoimmune disease (Wen et al, 2004), and the rheumatologic disease that has been evaluated most extensively in terms of the contribution of complement to disease activity is SLE (Agnello, 1986; Atkinson, 1986; Liu et al, 2004). The incidence of deficiency of complement components C1q, C4, and C2 is 90%, 75%, and 15%, respectively, in those with SLE (Pickering et al, 2000), and the incidence of SLE is increased in those with MBL deficiency (Kilpatrick, 2002). Large quantities of immune complexes, both circulating and tissue-bound, are formed in SLE. These immune complexes activate complement, and complement activation products contribute to the ongoing inflammation typical of SLE. It is postulated that removal of immune complexes from the circulation with the assistance of complement may reduce the formation of antibodies (autoantibodies) to these complexes. Extended exposure to circulating immune complexes, as well as to necrotic and apoptotic cell debris, due to impaired complement-related clearance mechanisms, especially in those with complement deficiencies, may be a factor in the loss of self-tolerance and the development of autoimmunity (reviewed in Markiewski & Lambris, 2007). C3 and C4 levels are often reduced in SLE, and, in general, low levels are found in patients with active disease.

Some suggest that a low C4 level is the best indicator of ongoing active disease. However, some patients with active disease show normal C4 levels. Some believe that the level of circulating sC5b-9 or neo-antigen of the MAC might serve as a better indicator of active disease (Gawryl et al, 1988). As mentioned earlier, complement appears to play an essential role in the clearance of immune complexes from the circulation, particularly those that contain IgM or IgG complement-activating isotypes. C3b deposition on the immune complex resulting from complement activation allows interaction with cells that possess a C3b receptor (CR1). Upon binding to erythrocytes via CR1, immune complexes are prevented from diffusing from the plasma to tissues, where they could cause damage. Erythrocytes bearing immune complexes circulate to the liver, where immune complexes are removed by a process that does not shorten the life span of the red blood cell (Cornacoff et al, 1983; Birmingham, 1995). In diseases in which complement is activated and immunologically active products are formed in the circulation, the number of CR1s per red blood cell is decreased, possibly as the result of removal of CR1 from erythrocytes in the liver (Ross et al, 1985). In addition to those seen in SLE, erythrocytes from patients with chronic cold agglutinin disease, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), autoimmune hemolytic anemia, Sjögren's syndrome, and *Mycoplasma* pneumonia are reported to have reduced erythrocyte CR1, suggesting that immune deposits have been removed from erythrocytes in these diseases as well (Ross et al, 1985; Atkinson, 1986).

Complement proteins also act as acute phase reactants, so that complement levels may not be depressed even in situations in which complement activation occurs. For instance, normal or elevated serum complement levels may be found in juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (JRA), palindromic arthritis, pseudogout, gout, Reiter's syndrome, and gonococcal arthritis. On the other hand, depressed complement levels may be found in the joint fluid in other rheumatologic conditions such as RA. Depressed total hemolytic complement activity (CH50; see the "Assays of Complement" section later in the chapter) and the presence of cleavage products of C3 and factor B are thought to represent intraarticular complement activation (in the synovial fluid) in patients with seronegative RA, SLE, pseudogout, gout, Reiter's syndrome, and gonococcal arthritis. This is not true of fluids obtained from patients with degenerative arthritis.

HEREDITARY ANGIOEDEMA

Hereditary angioedema (HAE) is a potentially life-threatening condition marked by submucosal, subcutaneous, nonpruritic, and nonerythematous swelling. It usually resolves within 48 to 72 hours but may instead be fatal when it involves the laryngeal mucosa. The cause of HAE is a heterozygous deficiency of C1-Inh. Because C1-Inh is the regulator of various components of the clotting, complement, and kinin-generating pathways, the actual pathway involved in the genesis of episodes of HAE is difficult to pinpoint. Several forms of HAE have been identified, including type I, in which patients have a reduced (30% or less) level of functional or antigenic C1-Inh, and type II, in which C1-Inh has reduced or absent activity, although it is present at normal levels (Wen et al, 2004).

INFECTIOUS DISEASES

As mentioned earlier and as evidenced by clinical findings in patients with genetically controlled complement deficiencies, the complement system plays a crucial role in defense against microorganisms. Patients with gram-negative septicemia and pyogenic infection often have deficiency of C3, or components of the alternative pathway. It is known that patients with hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)-positive infectious hepatitis have an early fall in serum C3, which later returns to normal. This may be associated with signs of immune complex disease such as arthralgia. In a similar fashion, complement appears to play an important role in many parasitic infections, including leishmaniasis, trypanosomiasis, giardiasis, and malaria. In those with recurrent infections by *N. gonorrhoeae* or *N. meningitidis,* a deficiency of MAC or properdin may be suspected. A

thorough discussion of the interactions between the complement system and parasites, bacteria, and viruses may be found in several excellent reviews (Frank & Fries, 1988; Fishelson, 1994; Moffitt & Frank, 1994; Kozel, 1996; Cooper, 1998). However, it is important to recognize that serum complement levels in general are not a reliable index of disease activity in these infectious conditions.

The role of complement in acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), a common occurrence in patients with severe trauma or overwhelming sepsis, has been studied. Evidence of massive activation of complement has been found in these patients, suggesting that bacteria and bacterial products activate complement (Hammerschmidt et al, 1980), with activation of the classical and alternative pathways (Langlois & Gawryl, 1988) and the formation of proinflammatory factors such as neutrophil-activating factor and C5a. Much of the pulmonary damage that occurs in ARDS may be due to neutrophil infiltration of the lung. Recent evidence suggests a role for complement receptors in the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection of follicular dendritic cells (Doepper et al, 2002; Stoiber et al, 2005); a similar role for MAC has been suggested in prion disease (see the "Neurologic Diseases" section later in the chapter).

RENAL DISEASES

Complement appears to play a key role in the glomerular damage found in many of the glomerulonephritides (West, 1998). This is usually demonstrated by the deposition of C3 or other complement components within or near damaged glomerular basement membranes. Also, the MAC has been identified in damaged glomeruli in patients with SLE-related glomerulonephritis. Patients with serum sickness and glomerular damage due to circulating immune complexes show evidence of activation of the classical or alternative pathway, or both. Traditionally, it has been believed that immune complexes are deposited in glomeruli during their passage through the kidney. Once deposited, these complexes activate complement, typically leading to depressed serum complement levels. Evidence of complement activation and deposition is routinely identified by immunofluorescence microscopy in the glomeruli of those with IgA nephropathy, membranous glomerulonephritis, and poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis, among other glomerulonephritides. An alternative view is that antibodies to glomerular structures form immune complexes in situ on the glomerular basement membrane (GBM), which then activate complement, causing local damage (Daha & van Es, 1979).

Although antibodies to GBM structures are clearly of importance in Goodpasture's syndrome, their overall role in glomerulonephritis is questionable. In some patients with a rare form of glomerulonephritis, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, type II, with very low C3 levels, the protein known as *C3 nephritic factor* (C3NeF or NFa) stabilizes the alternative pathway C3 convertase. C3NeF is an autoantibody directed against Bb that extends the half-life of the alternative pathway C3 convertase by more than 10 times (Daha et al, 1976; Daha & van Es, 1979), and it may protect it from decay dissociation by factor H (Fearon, 1980). Although C3NeF is thought to be responsible for the very low C3 levels present in these patients, it is not thought to play a central role in the development of nephritis. This is supported by experimental evidence using factor H–deficient and factor I–deficient mouse models (Thurman & Holers, 2006; Holers, 2008).

Dysregulation of the alternative complement pathway plays a role in aHUS, an atypical form of hemolytic-uremic syndrome that occurs without the usual bloody diarrhea prodrome. Most patients with aHUS have mutations of the genes encoding alternative pathway proteins such as factor H, factor I, and C3. The ability to identify mutations of complement-associated genes has useful clinical management applications. For instance, those with factor H gene mutations are recognized to have especially early and frequent recurrence of aHUS after renal transplant, leading to the practice of simultaneously transplanting both the liver, where factor H is manufactured, and the kidney, to improve allograft longevity (Thurman & Holers, 2006; Holers, 2008).

OPHTHALMOLOGIC DISEASES

Age-related macular degeneration (AMD) is the major cause of irreversible vision loss in developed countries. The risk for developing AMD is now known to be closely associated with a polymorphism of factor H, and possibly associated with genes encoding factor B and C3. This condition usually affects older patients and is characterized by progressive loss of retinal cells, retinal atrophy, subretinal bleeding and neovascularization, and retinal lesions known as drusen. The linkage of AMD to complement dysregulation was first suggested by the finding of components of complement, specifically C3 and C5a, in drusen typical of the condition (Markiewski & Lambris, 2007; Holers, 2008).

DERMATOLOGIC DISEASES

Complement is thought to play a part in ongoing tissue damage in a variety of dermatologic illnesses. These include bullous pemphigoid, pemphigoid gestationis, cicatricial pemphigoid, epidermolysis bullosa acquisita, dermatitis herpetiformis, and pemphigus vulgaris (Yancey & Lawley, 1998). Serum complement levels are usually normal or elevated in these inflammatory states, and the importance of complement in these conditions is suggested by immunofluorescence analysis of tissue biopsies and by studies of blister fluid. Gammon and colleagues (1984) developed an in vitro model useful for the study of anti–basement membrane zone antibody-mediated skin disorders. These authors have shown conclusively that C5a is a key element in the pathogenesis of bullous pemphigoid and epidermolysis bullosa acquisita. C5a acts as the chemoattractant necessary for the influx of neutrophils into sites of subsequent tissue damage in these diseases.

HEMATOLOGIC DISEASES

In many types of autoimmune hemolytic anemia, complement plays an important role in the opsonization of erythrocytes, leading to their clearance by cells of the reticuloendothelial system. However, even in those cases in which complement is clearly involved, serum complement levels are usually normal. Complement is particularly important in the clearance of cells coated with IgM cold-reactive autoantibodies with anti-I specificity. These autoantibodies (cold agglutinins) are associated with lymphoproliferative disorders following infection, or they may occur as isolated findings, especially in older adults. Cold agglutinins generally bind erythrocytes optimally at the subphysiologic temperatures found in some areas of the body such as the tip of the nose, fingers, and ears. They usually mediate cell lysis when circulating erythrocytes return to core body temperatures. Not all cold agglutinins are IgM antibodies. The syndrome of paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria (PCH), for example, results from cold-reactive Donath-Landsteiner IgG antibodies, which bind to cells at temperatures below 37°C but mediate lysis upon warming. Although the antibody is different, the pathophysiologic effects are similar.

Other autoantibodies that activate complement bind more efficiently at warm temperatures. In general, these warm-reactive antibodies are of the IgG isotype. In some cases, these antibodies may be associated with lymphoproliferative malignancy and viral infection. Most IgG warm-reactive antibodies found in autoimmune hemolytic anemia have Rh specificity and are poor complement activators, as opposed to cold agglutinins and anti-A and anti-B blood group antibodies. However, some antibodies, such as Tja, activate complement well and cause lysis.

In PNH, patients experience recurrent episodes of intravascular hemolysis. Lysis of erythrocytes in these patients is believed to proceed via the alternative pathway (Rosse, 1998; Jarva & Meri, 1999), although serum complement levels are always normal, and the direct antiglobulin test is always negative. The defect in PNH is lack of glycosyl phosphatidylinositol-linked proteins on the surface of a patient's cells, resulting from mutations in the X-linked phosphatidylinositol glycan A *(PIGA)* gene. Among other proteins linked via this cell membrane anchor are DAF/CD55 and CD59, two molecules that control complement activation at the level of the C3 convertase, and C8 and C9, respectively (see the "Regulation of Complement Activation" section earlier in the chapter). Alteration of these proteins caused by mutations of *PIGA* indicates that all cell lineages produced in the marrow, including erythrocytes, lack the ability to protect themselves from complement activation on their surfaces (Holers, 2008). Currently, the therapeutic monoclonal antibodies eculizumab (binds to C5 blocking C5 convertase) is the only approved complement inhibitor for the treatment of this disease.

NEUROLOGIC DISEASES

The role of the complement system in diseases of the nervous system has become evident in recent years. This is somewhat surprising, in that the blood-brain barrier effectively blocks complement penetration into spinal fluid. Complement activation was demonstrated in diseases such as myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, cerebral lupus, Guillain-Barré syndrome, and Alzheimer's disease (Morgan, 1994; Morgan et al, 1997; Shin et al, 1998). Deposition of complement proteins was demonstrated in diseased tissue, and complement activation was shown in the cerebrospinal fluid of patients with most of these diseases. Presumably, inflammation causes a

breakdown in the blood-brain barrier with local penetration of complement proteins. Moreover, some cells synthesize complement proteins. Evidence suggests that complement activation might be involved in myelin damage, thus leading to both central and peripheral nervous system illnesses. Complement was also shown to be involved in Alzheimer's disease and Pick's disease. In Alzheimer's disease, a peptide derived from amyloid termed *β-A4* binds C1q and activates complement in senile plaques of the diseased brain. The most abundant glial cell type, the astrocyte, was shown in vitro to synthesize all of the complement proteins under inflammatory conditions (Morgan & Gasque, 1996). Furthermore, astrocytes and microglial cells express complement receptors in vitro (Morgan & Gasque, 1997). Therefore, despite the blood-brain barrier, the brain has the ability to mount a potent complement-dependent inflammatory reaction as a defense mechanism. Complement components may play a facilitating role in the neuropathology of prion diseases. The neuronal loss associated with transmissible spongiform encephalitis may be related to MAC formation on neuronal surfaces and the presence of extracellular C3b and C1q in disease-associated prion protein deposits (Kovacs et al, 2004).

CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASES

Involvement of the complement system in myocardial ischemia/reperfusion (I/R) injury is well accepted (Lucchesi & Kilgore, 1997). The mechanism by which complement contributes to acute myocardial infarction in patients is still unclear. Nevertheless, deposition of components of the classical and alternative pathways has been demonstrated in the affected myocardium, along with C5b-9. Production of anaphylatoxins that accompany complement activation appears to be responsible for the local inflammatory reaction. The most dramatic demonstration of an effect of complement, especially the terminal complement components (C5b-9), comes from an animal model of coronary artery occlusion (Kilgore et al, 1998). Rabbits with genetically controlled C6 deficiency showed significantly reduced infarct size as compared with normal rabbits. In addition, neutrophil infiltration was significantly reduced in C6-deficient rabbits, suggesting the crucial role of terminal complement components in the generation of local inflammation.

The role of complement in I/R-related injury following restoration of blood flow after cardiac (or other organ) infarction is becoming better appreciated. Reestablishment of blood flow to ischemically damaged tissue leads to increased vascular permeability with attraction and activation of inflammatory cells to the injured site. Newly arrived inflammatory cells release mediators of inflammation (cytokines) that further damage ischemically injured tissue and contribute to activation of the complement system. The actual means of complement activation in I/R is not yet elucidated, but binding of surface proteins found on damaged endothelial cells to preformed circulating antibodies may play an important role (Markiewski & Lambris, 2007). Complement also appears to play a role in the development of atherosclerotic lesions (Torzewski et al, 1997) through mechanisms that are not yet clear. However, deposition of the terminal complement components (C5b-9) has been demonstrated in intimal plaque lesions of atherosclerosis, and activation of the complement system is associated with prelesional stages and progression of atherosclerotic lesions (Niculescu et al, 1987; Seifert et al, 1989). In keeping with this observation, C6-deficient rabbits were shown to be less susceptible than control rabbits to cholesterol-induced atherosclerotic lesions (Schmiedt et al, 1998).

A mouse model of autoimmune myocarditis suggests a role for complement in the human form of that condition, because protection from cardiac tissue injury is noted in animals lacking the C3 ligand CR2 (Kallwellis-Opara et al, 2007).

BIOCOMPATIBILITY

Many of the biomaterials implanted in the body activate complement, particularly the alternative complement pathway (Mollnes, 1997). On contact with blood or tissue fluids, these materials may activate complement and produce local inflammation or tissue damage. Materials must be tested for their complement-activating activity before they are widely used.

ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION

The success of organ transplantation has created a major problem—a shortage of human organs to meet the demands of an ever-growing number of patients awaiting such a surgical procedure. Therefore, use of animal donors such as the pig is proposed by many in the field as a logical alternative to human organs. However, vascularized porcine organs are susceptible to an intense rejection reaction, termed *hyperacute rejection*, when implanted in nonhuman primates or humans (Dalmasso, 1992; Platt, 1998). This reaction is mediated by antibody binding to vascular endothelial cells and complement activation. Complement activation was shown to be crucial in tissue damage in hyperacute rejection of xenografts. Complement activation on xenogeneic endothelial cells leads to their activation (i.e., endothelial cells adopt a procoagulant phenotype), which results in intravascular and interstitial thrombosis and hemorrhage. Such an intense reaction is due to the inability of porcine cell–associated complement-regulatory molecules such as DAF, MCP, and CD59 to control human complement activation. Therefore, the success of this promising therapeutic intervention relies on proper control of complement activation. The role of complement in the rejection of human organs (allografts) is becoming better appreciated, and it is likely that complement activation contributes to some extent to acute and chronic rejection episodes (Baldwin et al, 1995). Identification of C4d in the peritubular capillaries of renal transplant biopsies by immunofluorescence microscopy is a useful adjunctive study in the recognition of humoral rejection (Fig. 47-3) (Onitsuka et al, 1999).

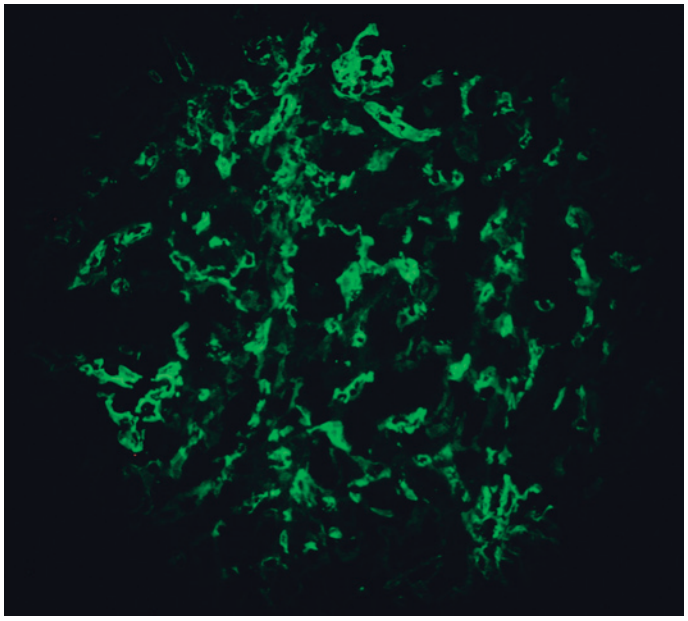


Figure 47-3 Fluorescence-labeled antibody to complement fragment C4d stains peritubular capillaries in a transplant kidney biopsy. In the early post-transplant setting, this staining pattern is a marker of humoral rejection (40×, fluorescein isothiocyanate).

CLINICALLY USEFUL COMPLEMENT INHIBITORS

Many complement inhibitors have been produced, and still more are in development (Woodruff et al, 2011). To be clinically useful, a complement inhibitor should avoid production of the proinflammatory byproducts of complement activation, such as the anaphylatoxins C3a and C5a. Inappropriate activation or inadequate regulation of complement activation is involved in a variety of human diseases. Therefore, the development of agents that selectively block complement activation would be useful in limiting tissue damage. Although currently, eculizumab, a humanized long-acting monoclonal antibody directed against C5 and marketed for the treatment of patients with PNH, is the only clinically approved therapy, a number of other compounds have now completed early-phase clinical trials (Woodruff, 2011; Ricklin & Lambris, 2007), and a table listing these pharmacologic agents and their relatively current stage in development has been published (Woodruff, 2011). Current strategies used to therapeutically regulate complement may be classed into five major categories: (1) purified plasma protease inhibitors, primarily C1-Inh (currently approved for treatment of hereditary angioedema); (2) soluble complement regulators, such as sCR1, which act to prevent complement attack on host cells; (3) therapeutic antibodies such as eculizumab, intended to selectively block various stages of complement activation; (4) small peptides, nucleotides, and synthetic molecules such as compstatin, which are used to sterically hinder or induce conformational changes in the elements of the

complement cascade; and (5) anaphylatoxin receptor inhibitors, intended to reduce the proinflammatory signaling initiated by complement components such as C5a. Because of the critical role of complement in host defense, especially in infection, potential complement inhibitors will have to avoid interfering with intact and properly regulated elements of the system. As mentioned earlier, C1-Inh is absent or reduced in the serum of those with hereditary angioedema and has been administered as a therapeutic concentrate during acute attacks. Because C1 inhibitor is often reduced in severe inflammatory states as well, concentrates of C1-Inh have been shown to have promising clinical utility in conditions such as septic shock, reperfusion injury, hyperacute transplant rejection, and PNH (Kirschfink & Mollnes, 2001; Davis, 2004).

ASSAYS OF COMPLEMENT

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

Methods that allow accurate determination of levels of each of the components of the classical, alternative, and MBL pathways, as well as several enzymes and regulators of the complement system, are available. However, many of these assays are not available in routine clinical laboratories and are restricted to research laboratories. We focus our attention here on techniques that do not require a laboratory skilled in complement research for their performance. The reader is referred to other publications for details relative to methods that require more specialized techniques (Whaley, 1985; Harrison & Lachman, 1986; Dodds & Sim, 1997; Giclas, 1997; Würzner et al, 1997; Mollnes et al, 2007). Complement assays can be divided into two types: those that measure complement proteins as antigens in biologic fluids, and those that measure the functional activity of a given component. Both types of techniques have advantages and disadvantages. Methods used for antigenic (immunochemical) analysis are generally simpler to perform. These antigenic assays are highly specific, require fewer specialized reagents, are cheaper, and are considerably less time-consuming. In these assays, serum or plasma can be used, and commonly available methods of freezer storage (–20° C) are sufficient. For these reasons, antigenic assays are easily adaptable to a clinical laboratory.

On the other hand, antigenic assays do not provide information about the activity of a component, because they may detect degradation products, as well as functionally active components. The presence in serum of small fragments of a protein with antigenic activity may confuse the results. Some antigenic assays use radial immunodiffusion. In these assays, a protein fragment may diffuse more rapidly than the parent molecule, which may result in falsely high levels. As an example, the most commonly employed antigenic assays for C3 measure its major degradation product, C3c, by radial immunodiffusion. For accurate measurements of C3c, the specimen should be thawed at 37° C for a number of days to allow complete conversion of C3 to C3c. In fact, this is not usually done, which can represent a source of error, although the error is small and is not usually of clinical consequence. In general, antigenic assays are not as sensitive as functional assays and may not detect low levels of a component present in certain body fluids. The sensitivity of antigenic assays depends to some degree on the strength of the antibody employed; with the usual assays, as little as 10 µg/mL of protein antigen can be measured.

Kits are available that use inhibition of binding of radiolabeled substrate to detect various complement peptides. Such kits are available for measurement of C3a, C4a, and C5a. The usefulness of these measurements is still debated. Assays designed to measure the functional activity of the control proteins, factors H and I, in human serum have also been reported but require specialized reagents that may not be commercially available (Gaither et al, 1979). ELISA assays have been developed for the measurement of split products of complement proteins or complexes formed following complement activation. These kits measure breakdown products of complement proteins as they are generated after complement activation using specific monoclonal antibodies. Complement activation via the classical pathway can be measured by following the levels of C4d in serum versus those of C4. Also, ELISA of C1r-C1s-C1Inh complexes provides a measure of complement activation via the classical pathway. Activation of the alternative pathway can be measured by ELISA by assessing levels of Bb, or C3bBbP, or C3bP complexes in the circulation (Mayes et al, 1984). Measurement of as little as 10 to 20 ng/mL of C3bP in serum has been reported. This assay may also be used to measure surface-bound activation complexes. Activation via either pathway can be monitored by measuring levels of iC3b, or sC5b-9, the soluble form of the membrane attack complex.

An ELISA test for the measurement of serum or plasma MBL complex activity was developed that eliminates interference by components of the classical pathway (Petersen et al, 2001; Kuipers et al, 2002). In addition, ELISA kits are available that measure the generation of anaphylatoxins in serum/plasma. Because C3a and C5a are rapidly converted to their inactive desArg fragments by carboxypeptidase-N in serum, these assays utilize monoclonal antibodies specific for C3a-desArg and C5a-desArg. Because of their high sensitivity, ELISA assays serve as an excellent tool by which to assess complement activation in biological fluids via the classical pathway or the alternative pathway. Seelen and colleagues (2005) describe a simple approach using three ELISAs that is suitable for screening deficiencies of all three pathways and is commercially available (WIELISA, Wieslab, Lund, Sweden). Advantages of this approach include the coverage of all three pathways simultaneously, the ability to detect properdin deficiency in the alternative pathway, and freedom from consideration of the availability of erythrocytes (Mollnes et al, 2007).

FUNCTIONAL EVALUATION OF THE CLASSICAL PATHWAY

Functional complement assays are sensitive and precise tools for providing information about the activity of a complement component. Some of these methods may be used to quantify activity at the molecular level, and others to express complement function in arbitrary units. Commercial reagents are available for titrating each component of classical or alternative pathways. Assays that measure the total hemolytic activity in a specimen (CH50) or the functional activity of isolated complement components in general use sheep erythrocytes as targets of complement-mediated lysis. Sheep erythrocytes are more sensitive to antibody- and complement-mediated lysis than erythrocytes from other species. The alternative pathway of complement activation (AH50) is easily measured using rabbit erythrocytes. These cells are particularly sensitive to antibody-independent lysis mediated by human serum. In addition, a functional hemolytic assay using chicken erythrocytes to assess functional MBL levels in serum has been developed, which the authors claim is useful for large-scale testing of patient samples (Petersen et al, 2001; Kuipers et al, 2002). A useful summary of the clinical significance of CH50 and AH50 testing is provided in Table 47-8.

The simplest functional assay of the classical pathway measures total hemolytic complement. Absence of any of the nine components, as occurs in homozygous genetically deficient patients, generally results in a total hemolytic complement titer (CH50) of zero. However, a normal value does not exclude the possibility of reduced levels of individual components in test subjects. When a patient's history and symptoms suggest a possible deficiency, hemolytic or antigenic titrations of individual components may be required. Often, a CH50 titer will be an adequate functional measure of complement activity. In the CH50 assay, commercially available antibodies added to sheep red blood cells react with antigen on red cell surfaces, forming immune complexes. Patient test serum is then added to the mixture as the source of classical pathway complement. Complement in the test serum will bind the immune complex previously formed on the sheep red cells, leading to activation of the classical complement pathway and to red cell lysis. By titrating the addition of patient test serum, it is possible to calculate the complement activity present in the patient sample, and to express that activity as the reciprocal of the dilution that causes lysis of 50% of red blood cells in the assay (the CH50). The complement titer is expressed in CH50 units (the reciprocal of the dilution of the complement source that lyses 50% of sensitized sheep erythrocytes).

Serial dilutions of the specimen are prepared and added to antibody-sensitized sheep erythrocytes. In this case, the 50% endpoint is determined by Von Krogh transformation of the data. This empirically derived formula converts the S-shaped dose-response curve to a linear function. Values of

TABLE 47-8
CH50 and AH50 Interpretation

Test Result	Interpretation
CH50 very low or 0 (AH50 normal)	Missing C1q, C1r, C1s, C2, or C4
AH50 very low or 0 (CH50 normal)	Missing properdin, or (very rarely) factor B or factor D
CH50 and AH50 very low or 0	Missing C3, C5, C6, C7, C8, or C9
Late components low (especially C3) CH50 and AH50 low	Missing factor H or factor I

Adapted from Wen BS, Atkinson J, Giclas PC: Clinical and laboratory evaluation of complement deficiency, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 113:585–593, 2004.

$Y/1 - Y$ are calculated, in which Y is the fraction of red blood cells lysed in a test dilution. A graph is constructed in which the log of the relative volume of complement is plotted against the log of $Y/1 - Y$ values. Usually, a straight line is obtained, and the titer is calculated by determining the relative volume of complement at which $Y/1 - Y = 1.0$ (or 50% lysis). This value is divided into the reciprocal of original serum dilution (1:60 for human serum) to calculate the concentration of serum complement that lyses 50% of the cells. The complement titer represents the number of 50% hemolytic units present in 1.0 mL of undiluted serum (Mayer, 1961; Rapp & Borsos, 1970). Clinical laboratories may use one of two commercially available variations of this classic test to perform the CH50 assay. One is based on the lysis of liposomes, releasing a marker enzyme, and the other is an ELISA that detects the final C9 neo-antigen formed with complete activation of the classical pathway.

FUNCTIONAL EVALUATION OF THE ALTERNATIVE PATHWAY

In this assay, human serum (usually first diluted 1:5) is serially diluted and is added to rabbit erythrocytes that are not sensitized with specific antibody, in a buffer that contains magnesium ions and ethylene glycol tetraacetic acid, to chelate calcium ions (calcium ions are required for classical pathway activation, not for alternative pathway activation) (Pangburn, 1988). The alternative pathway titer is designated AH50 and represents the final dilution of human serum in the assay that lyses 50% of the rabbit erythrocytes. A graph similar to that described for total hemolytic complement titration is produced to determine the AH50. Human serum may at times possess "natural" antibody to a carbohydrate widely expressed on cells of species other than humans and nonhuman primates. A high concentration of serum mixed with rabbit erythrocytes may induce agglutination, which can be misleading in interpreting an AH50 titer (Tomlinson & Nussenzweig, 1997). Therefore, it may be useful to absorb the serum with washed, packed rabbit erythrocytes on ice for 15 to 30 minutes to remove a certain proportion of natural antibodies, hence reducing cell agglutination in the assay.

FUNCTIONAL ASSAY OF C1-INHIBITOR AND FACTOR H

Assays for the assessment of C1-Inh function have been developed that are useful in the diagnosis of HAE. One that is in common use is an ELISA-based assay that measures formation of a complex between biotinylated C1s and C1-Inh on an avidin-coated solid phase. A second test makes use of steric hindrance created by the binding of inhibitor to C1r, preventing the subsequent binding of antibody to C1r. During radial immunodiffusion of C1r, unbound and therefore active C1r quantities will increase as the amount of C1-Inh present decreases. Factor H functional assays are important for the diagnosis of aHUS, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis type II (dense deposit disease), and AMD. A method described by Sánchez-Corral and colleagues (2004) uses unsensitized sheep red blood cells incubated in serum. With this method, normal serum will provide factor H–conferred protection from hemolysis, whereas factor H–deficient serum will not prevent complement-mediated red cell lysis.

COMPLEMENT LEVELS BY ANTIGENIC ASSAYS

For use in antigenic assays, the specimen (serum or plasma) is stored frozen (–20° C or lower). Bacterial contamination may cause protein denaturation or fragmentation, whereas freezing and thawing do not usually have a major adverse effect on antigenic levels. For certain complement assays, the specimen is diluted in saline to achieve the correct concentration range for accurate measurement.

Antigenic analyses of complement proteins make use of one of several immune precipitin techniques. Single radial immunodiffusion using the method of Fahey or Mancini is commonly used to calculate specific protein quantities. With both methods, antigen is added to wells in a gel that contains antibody, and rings of precipitation are formed. The Fahey method employs antibody that is not in excess. The diffusion time at which results are read is thus critical. Diffusion endpoints are not reached, and this can lead to inaccurate measurement of antigenic complement levels. The Mancini method uses excess antibody in the gel and is more sensitive and accurate. Most commercial firms preparing immunodiffusion plates use the Mancini method. Radial immunodiffusion kits are available for all components of the classical and alternative pathways. These kits consist of plates coated with a thin layer of 2% agarose-containing monospecific antibody. Protein standard serum (a stabilized pool of normal human serum) is supplied, usually in prediluted solutions. Each standard solution contains a specific amount of the particular protein being measured for use in construction of the reference curve.

Nephelometric methods are also used to measure complement component levels, which in some instances may be comparable with those obtained with radial immunodiffusion (Bossuyt et al, 2002); they are commonly used in hospital laboratories to measure serum C3 and C4.

Ingvarrson and colleagues (2007) recently described a proteomic approach that uses an antibody-based microarray platform employing recombinant human scFv antibodies, thus permitting protein expression profiling of serum complement-related proteomes. The microarray data correlated well with conventional clinical laboratory methods when plasma samples from both healthy and complement-deficient individuals were tested. Similarly, Janzi and colleagues (2005) described a reverse array format in which serum samples are themselves spotted to a microarray slide in large sample numbers and are screened for the presence of a single serum protein, as proof of the principle that large numbers of serum samples may be simultaneously screened for clinically relevant proteins.

KININS AND THE KININ-GENERATING SYSTEM

The kinin-generating system is another inflammatory response pathway present in plasma that controls the generation of peptides important in the inflammatory response. Briefly, the most important biologically active peptide generated by the system appears to be bradykinin, a nonapeptide with potent activity in many biologic systems. It is active in increasing vascular permeability, vasodilation, hypotension, induction of pain, contraction of many types of smooth muscle cells, and activation of the phospholipase A2 system, with activation of cellular arachidonic acid metabolism. Although in many respects it is similar to the complement system, the plasma kinin-generating system is simpler, because it is composed of only four plasma proteins. The major proteins of the kinin-generating system as currently understood are Hageman factor, clotting factor XI, prekallikrein, and high molecular weight kininogen.

On interacting with negatively charged surfaces, such as those supplied experimentally by glass or naturally by many biologically active materials such as lipid A of gram-negative bacterial endotoxin, Hageman factor is cleaved and activated. Proteolytic enzymes including kallikrein can cleave and activate Hageman factor as well. The cleaved Hageman factor (αHFa) has proteolytic activity and further activates and cleaves additional Hageman factor molecules to generate additional αHFa.

αHFa activates factor XI to factor XIa, resulting in activation of the intrinsic coagulation cascade. αHFa also cleaves the single-chain prekallikrein into a two-chain molecule, kallikrein, with the chains linked by disulfide bonds. Cleaved prekallikrein has proteolytic enzymatic activity located on the lower molecular weight chain. Activated kallikrein cleaves high molecular weight kininogen at several sites, thereby releasing bradykinin.

Bradykinin has a short half-life mainly caused by the activities of four membrane-bound and/or soluble zinc metallopeptidases: angiotensin 1–converting enzyme, aminopeptidase P, neutral endopeptidase 24.11 (neprilysin), and carboxypeptidases M and N (Moreau et al, 2005). These four act to convert bradykinin to inactive low molecular weight peptides lacking known biologic activity.

Bradykinin has been postulated to play a role in a variety of diseases. Free bradykinin and lysyl-bradykinin have been found in the nasal fluid of patients with rhinitis. A pathogenic role for bradykinin has also been suggested in diseases ranging from asthma to hereditary or acquired angioedema. Bradykinin is an important mediator of the inflammatory response, and when administered locally, it produces the four cardinal signs of inflammation. Development of pharmacologic agents to block or ameliorate the effects of the kinin system has met with limited success but is ongoing (Dietrich, 2009).

PERSPECTIVES

Members of the complement system of proteins play roles in many disease states. In recognition of this, therapies have been designed to directly trigger or block various complement components as part of the treatment of disease. Clinical laboratory detection and measurement of native proteins and the clinically administered therapeutic agent continues to become more commonplace.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Carroll MC: The complement system in regulation of adaptive immunity, *Nat Immunol* 5:981–986, 2004.

This article describes the intricate interaction that exists between complement activation products and T and B cell responses, and the nature of the link that exists between innate and adaptive immune responses.

Gonzalez-Amaro R, Diaz-Gonzalez F, Sanchez-Madrid F: Adhesion molecules in inflammatory diseases, *Drugs* 56:977–988, 1998.

This article provides an excellent and in-depth review of the process of leukocyte diapedesis. Pharmacologic therapeutic blocking of this process is discussed.

Wen L, Atkinson JP, Giclas PC: Clinical and laboratory evaluation of complement deficiency, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 113:585–593, 2004.

This article provides a practical clinical approach to complement deficiency testing, as well as an overview of the complement system.

REFERENCES

Agnello V: Lupus diseases associated with hereditary and acquired deficiencies of complement, *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 9:161–178, 1986.

Ahearn JM, Rosengard AM: Complement receptors. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 167.

Atkinson JP: Complement activation and complement receptors in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 9:179–194, 1986.

Baldwin WM, Pruitt SK, Brauer RB, et al: Complement in organ transplantation, *Transplantation* 59:797–808, 1995.

Batjay Z, Speth C, Erdei A, et al: Cutting edge: productive HIV-1 infection of dendritic cells via complement receptor type 3 (CR3, CD11b/CD18), *J Immunol* 173:4775–4778, 2004.

Benzaquen LR, Nicholson-Weller A, Halperin JA: Terminal complement proteins C5b-9 release basic fibroblast growth factor and platelet-derived growth factor from endothelial cells, *J Exp Med* 179:985–992, 1994.

Berge V, Johnson E, Hogasen K: Clusterin and the terminal complement pathway synthesised by human umbilical vein endothelial cells are closely linked when on co-cultured agarose beads, *APMIS* 105:17–24, 1997.

Bhakdi S, Tranum-Jensen J: Complement lysis: a hole is a hole, *Immunol Today* 12:318–320, 1991.

Biesecker G, Lavin L, Ziskind M, et al: Cutaneous localization of the membrane attack complex in discoid and systemic lupus erythematosus, *N Engl J Med* 306:264–269, 1982.

Birmingham DJ: Erythrocyte complement receptors, *Crit Rev Immunol* 15:133–154, 1995.

Boackle SA, Morris MA, Holers VM, et al: Complement opsonization is required for presentation of immune complexes by resting peripheral blood B cells, *J Immunol* 161:6537–6543, 1998.

Boes M, Prodeus AP, Schmidt T, et al: A critical role of natural immunoglobulin M in immediate defense against systemic bacterial infection, *J Exp Med* 188:2381–2386, 1998.

Borsos T, Rapp HJ: Complement fixation on cell surfaces by 19S and 7S antibodies, *Science* 150:505–506, 1965.

Bosmann M, Ward PA: Role of C3, C5 and anaphylatoxin receptors in acute lung injury and in sepsis, *Adv Exp Med Biol* 946:147–159, 2012.

Bossuyt X, Sneyers L, Marien G, et al: Novel nephelometric assay for measurement of complement 3d, *Ann Clin Biochem* 39:34–38, 2002.

Böttger EC, Hoffman T, Hadding U, et al: Influence of genetically inherited complement deficiencies on humoral immune response in guinea pigs, *J Immunol* 135:4100–4107, 1985.

Botto M, Kirschfink M, Macor P, et al: Complement in human disease: lessons from complement deficiencies, *Mol Immunol* 46:2774–2783, 2009.

Brown EJ: Complement receptors and phagocytosis, *Curr Opin Immunol* 3:76–82, 1991.

Carroll MC: The role of complement and complement receptors in induction and regulation of immunity, *Annu Rev Immunol* 16:545–568, 1998.

Chang CP, Hüsler T, Zhao J, et al: Identity of a peptide domain of human C9 that is bound by the cell-surface complement inhibitor, CD59, *J Biol Chem* 269:26424–26430, 1994.

Chen C-H, Lam CK, Boackle RJ: C1 inhibitor removes the entire C1qr2s2 complex from anti-C1Q monoclonal antibodies with low binding affinities, *Immunology* 95:648–652, 1998.

Choi N-H, Mazda T, Tomita M: A serum protein, SP-40, modulates the formation of the membrane attack complex of complement on erythrocytes, *Mol Immunol* 26:835–839, 1989.

Christiansen OB, Kilpatrick DC, Souter V, et al: Mannan-binding lectin deficiency is associated with unexplained recurrent miscarriage, *Scand J Immunol* 49:193–196, 1999.

Colten HR, Garnier G: Regulation of complement protein gene expression. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 217.

Cooper NR: Complement and viruses. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 393.

Cornacoff JB, Hebert LA, Smead WL, et al: Primate erythrocyte-immune complex-clearing mechanism, *J Clin Invest* 71:236–247, 1983.

Cummings KL, Waggoner SN, Tackle R: Role of complement in immune regulation and its exploitation by virus, *Vir Immunol* 20:505–524, 2007.

Czermak BJ, Sarma V, Pierson CL, et al: Protective effects of C5a blockade in sepsis, *Nat Med* 5:788–792, 1999.

Daha MR, Fearon DT, Austen KF: C3 nephritic factor (C3NeF): stabilization of fluid phase and cell-bound alternative pathway convertase, *J Immunol* 116:1–7, 1976.

Daha MR, van Es LA: Further evidence for the antibody nature of C3 nephritic factor (C3NeF), *J Immunol* 123:755–758, 1979.

Dalmasso AP: The complement system in xenotransplantation, *Immunopharmacology* 24:149–160, 1992.

Davis AE III: Biological effects of C1 inhibitor, *Drug News Perspect* 17:439–446, 2004.

Davis AE III, Harrison RA: Structural characterization of factor I mediated cleavage of the third component of complement, *Biochemistry* 21:5745–5749, 1982.

Dietrich W: Aprotinin: 1 year on, *Curr Opin Anaesth* 22:121–127, 2009.

DiScipio RG, Daffern PN, Jagels MA, et al: A comparison of C3a and C5a-mediated stable adhesion and rolling eosinophils in postcapillary venules and transendothelial migration in vitro and in vivo, *J Immunol* 162:1127–1136, 1999.

Dodds AW, Sim RB, editors: *Complement: a practical approach*, Oxford, 1997, IRL Press.

Doekes G, Es LA, Daha MR: C1 inactivator: its efficiency as a regulator of classical complement pathway activation on soluble IgG aggregates, *Immunology* 49:215–222, 1983.

Doepper S, Kacani L, Falkensammer B, et al: Complement receptors in HIV infection, *Curr Mol Med* 2:703–711, 2002.

Edwards JL, Brown EJ, Ault KA, et al: The role of complement receptor 3 (CR3) in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infection of human cervical epithelia, *Cell Microbiol* 3:611–622, 2001.

Ember JA, Engels MA, Hugli TE: Characterization of complement anaphylatoxins and their biological responses. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 241.

Epstein J, Eichbaum Q, Sheriff S, et al: The collectins in innate immunity, *Curr Opin Immunol* 8:29–35, 1996.

Falk RJ, Dalmasso AP, Kim Y, et al: Neoantigen of the polymerized ninth component of complement: characterization of a monoclonal antibody and immunohistochemical localization in renal disease, *J Clin Invest* 72:560–573, 1983.

Fearon DT: The alternative pathway of complement: a system for host resistance to microbial infection, *N Engl J Med* 303:259–264, 1980.

Fearon DT, Austen KF: Properdin: binding to C3b and stabilization of the C3b-dependent C3 convertase, *J Exp Med* 142:856–863, 1975.

Fingeroth JD, Weiss JJ, Tedder TF, et al: Epstein Barr virus receptor of human B lymphocytes is the C3d receptor CR2, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 81:4510–4516, 1984.

Fishelson Z: Complement-related proteins in pathogenic organisms, *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 15:345, 1994.

Frank MM: Introduction and historical notes. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 1.

Frank MM, Fries LF: The role of complement in defence against bacterial disease. Baillière's Clin Immunol, *Allergy* 2:335, 1988.

Fries LF, Frank MM: Molecular mechanisms of complement action. In Stamatoyannopoulos G, Nienhuis AW, Leder P, et al, editors: *The molecular basis of blood diseases*, Philadelphia, 1987, Saunders, p 450.

Gaither TA, Hammer CH, Frank MM: Studies of the molecular mechanisms of C3b inactivation and a simplified assay of 1H and the C3b inactivator (C3bINA), *J Immunol* 123:1195, 1979.

Gammon WR, Inman AO, Wheeler CE Jr: Differences in complement-dependent chemotactic activity generated by bullous pemphigoid and epidermolysis bullosa acquisita immune complexes: demonstration by leukocytic attachment and organ culture methods, *J Invest Dermatol* 83:57, 1984.

Gawryl MS, Chudwin DS, Langlois PF, et al: The terminal complement complex, C5b-9, a marker of disease activity in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Rheum* 31:188, 1988.

Gewurz H, Jiang H, Ying S-C, et al: Nonimmune activation of the classical complement pathway, *Behring Inst Mitt* 93:138, 1993.

Giclas PC: Complement, immune complexes, and cryoglobulin. In Rose NR, Conway de Macario E, Folds JD, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical laboratory immunology*, ed 5, Washington, DC, 1997, ASM Press, p 179.

Gigli I, Fujita T, Nussenzweig V: Modulation of the classical pathway C3 convertase by plasma proteins C4b-binding protein and C3b inactivator, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 76:6596, 1979.

Hammerschmidt D, Weaver L, Hudson L, et al: Association of complement activation and elevated plasma-C5a with adult respiratory distress syndrome, *Lancet* 1:947, 1980.

Hansen S, Holmskov U: Structural aspects of collectins and receptors for collectins, *Immunobiology* 199:165, 1998.

Harrison RA, Lachman PJ: Complement technology. In Weir DM, Herzenberg LA, Blackwell C, editors: *Handbook of experimental immunology*, ed 4, Oxford, 1986, Blackwell Scientific.

Hibberd ML, Sumiya M, Summerfield JA, et al: Association of variants of the gene for mannose-binding lectin with susceptibility to meningococcal disease, *Lancet* 353:1049, 1999.

Holers VM: The spectrum of complement alternative pathway-mediated diseases, *Immunol Rev* 223:300–316, 2008.

Ingvarsson J, Larsson A, Sjöholm AG, et al: Design of recombinant antibody microarrays for serum protein profiling: targeting of complement proteins, *J Proteome Res* 6:3527–3536, 2007.

IUIS-WHO Nomenclature Committee: Nomenclature of the alternative activating pathway of complement, *J Immunol* 127:1261, 1981.

Jacobsohn DA, Vogelsang GB: Anti-cytokine therapy for the treatment of graft-versus-host disease, *Curr Pharm Des* 10:1195–1205, 2004.

Janzi M, Odling J, Pan-Hammarström Q, et al: Serum microarrays for large scale screening of protein levels, *Mol Cell Proteomics* 4:1942–1947, 2005.

Jarva H, Meri S: Paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria: the disease and a hypothesis for a new treatment, *Scand J Immunol* 49:119, 1999.

Johnson E, Berge V, Hogasen K: Formation of the terminal complex on agarose beads: further evidence that vitronectin (complement S-protein) inhibits C9 polymerization, *Scand J Immunol* 39:281, 1994.

Kallwellis-Opara A, Dörner A, Poller WC, et al: Autoimmunological features in inflammatory cardiomyopathy, *Clin Res Cardiol* 96:469–480, 2007.

Kemper C, Atkinson JP: T-cell regulation: with complements from innate immunity, *Nat Rev Immunol* 7:9–18, 2007.

Kerekes K, Prechl J, Bajtay Z, et al: A further link between innate and adaptive immunity: C3 deposition on antigen-presenting cells enhances the proliferation of antigen-specific T cells, *Int Immunol* 10:1923, 1998.

Kilgore KS, Flory CM, Miller BF, et al: The membrane attack complex of complement induces interleukin-8 and monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 secretion from human umbilical vein endothelial cells, *Am J Pathol* 149:953, 1996.

Kilgore KS, Park JL, Tanhehco EJ, et al: Attenuation of interleukin-8 expression in C6-deficient rabbits after myocardial ischemia/reperfusion, *J Mol Cell Cardiol* 30:75, 1998.

Kilpatrick DC: Mannan-binding lectin: clinical significance and applications, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1572:401–413, 2002.

Kinoshita T, Takata Y, Kozono H, et al: C5 convertase of the alternative complement pathway: covalent linkage between two C3b molecules within the trimolecular complex enzyme, *J Immunol* 141:3895, 1988.

Kirschfink M, Mollnes TE: C1-inhibitor: an anti-inflammatory reagent with therapeutic potential, *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2:1073–1083, 2001.

Klickstein LB, Barbashov SF, Liu T, et al: Complement receptor type 1 (CR1, CD35) is a receptor for C1q, *Immunity* 7:345, 1997.

Korb LC, Ahearn JM: C1q binds directly and specifically to surface blebs of apoptotic human keratinocytes, *J Immunol* 158:4525, 1997.

Koski CL, Ramm LE, Hammer CH, et al: Cytolysis of nucleated cells by complement: cell death displays multi-hit characteristics, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 80: 3816, 1983.

Kovacs GG, Gasque P, Strobel T, et al: Complement activation in human prion disease, *Neurobiol Dis* 15:21–28, 2004.

Kozel TR: Activation of the complement system by pathogenic fungi, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 9:34, 1996.

Kuipers S, Aerts PC, Sjoholm AG, et al: A hemolytic assay for the estimation of functional mannose-binding lectin levels in human serum, *J Immunol Methods* 268:149–157, 2002.

Langlois PF, Gawryl MS: Complement activation occurs through both classical and alternative pathways prior to onset and resolution of adult respiratory distress syndrome, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 47:152, 1988.

Law SK, Lichtenberg NA, Levine RP: Evidence for an ester linkage between the labile binding site of C3b and receptive surfaces, *J Immunol* 123:1388, 1979.

Licht C, Weyersberg A, Heinen S, et al: Successful plasma therapy for atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome caused by factor H deficiency owing to a novel mutation in the complement cofactor protein domain 15, *Am J Kidney Dis* 45:415–421, 2005.

Lim BL, Reid KBM, Ghebrehiwet B, et al: The binding protein for globular heads of complement C1q, gC1qR: functional expression and characterization as a novel vitronectin binding factor, *J Biol Chem* 271:26739, 1996.

Liu CC, Manzi S, Danchenko N, et al: New advances in measurement of complement activation: lessons of systemic lupus erythematosus, *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 6:375–381, 2004.

Lucchesi BR, Kilgore KS: Complement inhibitors in myocardial ischemia/reperfusion injury, *Immunopharmacology* 38:27, 1997.

Lutz HU: How pre-existing, germline-derived antibodies and complement may help induce a primary immune response to nonself, *Scand J Immunol* 49:224, 1999.

Mabbott NA: The complement system in prion diseases, *Curr Opin Immunol* 16:587–593, 2004.

Malhotra R, Wormald MR, Rudd PM, et al: Glycosylation changes of IgG associated with rheumatoid arthritis can activate complement via the mannose-binding protein, *Nat Med* 1:237, 1995.

Markiewski MM, Lambris JD: The role of complement in inflammatory diseases from behind the scenes into the spotlight, *Am J Pathol* 171:715–727, 2007.

Marom Z, Shelhammer J, Berger M, et al: Anaphylatoxin C3a enhances mucous glycoprotein release from human airways in vitro, *J Exp Med* 161:657, 1985.

Matsushita M, Endo Y, Fujita T: MASP1 (MBL-associated serine protease 1), *Immunobiology* 199:340, 1998.

Matsushita M, Fujita T: Inhibition of mannose-binding protein-associated serine protease (MASP) by C1 inhibitor (C1 INH), *Mol Immunol* 33:44, 1996.

Mauff G, Würzner R: Complement genetics. In Herzenberg LA, Weir DM, Blackwell C, editors: *Weir's handbook of experimental immunology* (vol 2), ed 5, Malden, Mass, 1996, Blackwell Science.

Mayer MM: Complement and complement fixation. In Kabat EA, Mayer MM, editors: *Experimental immunochemistry*, ed 2, Springfield, Ill, 1961, Charles C Thomas, p 133.

Mayes JT, Schreiber RD, Cooper NR: Development and application of an enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay for the quantification of alternative complement pathway activation in human serum, *J Clin Invest* 73:160, 1984.

Mitomo K, Fujita T, Iida K: Functional and antigenic properties of complement receptor type 2, CR2, *J Exp Med* 165:1424, 1987.

Moffitt MC, Frank MM: Complement resistance in microbes, *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 15:327, 1994.

Mold C: Cellular responses to the membrane attack complex. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 309.

Mollnes TE: Biocompatibility: complement as mediator of tissue damage and as indicator of incompatibility, *Exp Clin Immunogenet* 14:24, 1997.

Mollnes TE, Jokiranta TS, Truedsson L, et al: Complement in the 21st century, *Mol Immunol* 44:3838–3849, 2007.

Moore FD, Fearon DT, Austen KF: IgG on mouse erythrocytes augments activation of the human alternative complement pathway by enhancing deposition of C3b, *J Immunol* 126:1805, 1981.

Moreau ME, Garbacki N, Molinaro G, et al: The kallikrein-kinin system: current and future pharmacological targets, *J Pharmacol Sci* 99:6–38, 2005.

Morgan BP: Clinical complementology: recent progress and future trends, *Eur J Clin Invest* 24:219, 1994.

Morgan BP, Gasque P: Expression of complement in the brain: role in health and disease, *Immunol Today* 17:461, 1996.

Morgan BP, Gasque P: Extrahepatic complement biosynthesis: where, when and why?, *Clin Exp Immunol* 107:1, 1997.

Morgan BP, Gasque P, Singhrao S, et al: The role of complement in disorders of the nervous system, *Immunopharmacology* 38:43, 1997.

Morgan BP, Meri S: Membrane proteins that protect against complement lysis, *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 15:369, 1994.

Nataf S, Davoust N, Ames RS, et al: Human T cells express the C5a receptor and are chemoattracted to C5a, *J Immunol* 162:4018, 1999.

Niculescu F, Badea T, Rus H: Sublytic C5b-9 induces proliferation of human aortic smooth muscle cells: role of mitogen activated protein kinase and phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase, *Atherosclerosis* 142:47, 1999.

Niculescu F, Rus H, Shin S, et al: Generation of diacylglycerol and ceramide during homologous complement activation, *J Immunol* 150:214, 1993.

Niculescu F, Rus HG, Vlaicu R: Immunohistochemical localization of C5b-9, S-protein, C3d and apolipoprotein B in human arterial tissues with atherosclerosis, *Atherosclerosis* 65:1, 1987.

Notarangelo L, Casanova JL, Fischer A, et al: Primary immunodeficiency diseases: an update, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 114:677–687, 2004.

Ochs HD, Wedgwood RJ, Frank MM, et al: The role of complement in the induction of antibody responses, *Clin Exp Immunol* 53:208, 1983.

Ochs HD, Wedgwood RJ, Heller SR, et al: Complement, membrane glycoproteins, and complement receptors: their role in regulation of the immune response, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 40:94, 1986.

Ollert MW, Davis K, Bredehorst R, et al: Classical complement pathway activation on nucleated cells: role of factor H in the control of deposited C3b, *J Immunol* 155:4955, 1995.

O'Neil KM, Ochs HD, Heller SR, et al: Role of C3 in humoral immunity: defective antibody production in C3-deficient dogs, *J Immunol* 140:1939, 1988.

Onitsuka S, Yamaguchi Y, Tanabe K, et al: Peritubular capillary deposition of C4d complement fragment in ABO-incompatible renal transplantation with humoral rejection, *Clin Transplant* 13(Suppl 1):33–37, 1999.

Pangburn MK: Alternative pathway of complement, *Methods Enzymol* 162:639, 1988.

Pangburn MK, Müller-Eberhard HJ: The alternative pathway of complement, *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 7:163, 1984.

Pangburn MK, Schreiber RD, Müller-Eberhard HJ: Formation of the initial C3-convertase of the alternative pathway: acquisition of C3b-like activities by spontaneous hydrolysis of the putative thioester in native C3, *J Exp Med* 154:856, 1981.

Peake PW, Sreenstein JD, Pussell BA, et al: The behaviour of human vitronectin in vivo: effects of complement activation, conformation and phosphorylation, *Clin Exp Immunol* 106:416, 1996.

Pepys MB: Role of complement in the induction of antibody production in vivo, *J Exp Med* 140:126, 1974.

Petersen SV, Thiel S, Jensen L, et al: An assay for the mannan-binding lectin pathway of complement activation, *J Immunol Methods* 257:107–116, 2001.

Pickering MC, Botto M, Taylor PR, et al: Systemic lupus erythematosus, complement deficiency, and apoptosis, *Adv Immunol* 76:227–324, 2000.

Pillemer L, Blum L, Lepow IH, et al: The properdin system and immunity. I. Demonstration and isolation of a new serum protein, properdin, and its role in immune phenomena, *Science* 120:279, 1954.

Platt JL: New directions for organ transplantation, *Nature* 392:11, 1998.

Plumb ME, Sodetz JM: Proteins of the membrane attack complex. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 119.

Podack ER, Biesecker G, Müller-Eberhard HJ: Membrane attack complex of complement: generation of high affinity phospholipid binding sites by fusion of five hydrophilic plasma proteins, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 76:897, 1979.

Podack ER, Kolb WP, Müller-Eberhard HJ: The sC5b-7 complex: formation, isolation, properties and subunit composition, *J Immunol* 119:2024, 1977.

Podack ER, Tschopp J: Membrane attack by complement, *Mol Immunol* 21:589, 1984.

Prodeus AP, Goerg S, Shen L-M, et al: A critical role for complement in maintenance of self-tolerance, *Immunity* 9:721, 1998.

Ramm LE, Whitlow MB, Mayer MM: Size of the transmembrane channels produced by complement proteins C5b-8, *J Immunol* 129:1143, 1982.

Rapp HJ, Borsos T, editors: *Molecular basis of complement action*, New York, 1970, Appleton-Century-Crofts.

Reiter Y, Ciobotariu A, Fischelson Z: Sub-lytic complement attack protects tumor cells from lytic doses of antibody and complement, *Eur J Immunol* 22:1207, 1992.

Ricklin D, Lambris JD: Complement-targeted therapeutics, *Nat Biotechnol* 25:1265–1275, 2007.

Ross GD, Yount WJ, Walport MJ, et al: Disease-associated loss of erythrocyte complement receptors (CR1, C3b receptors) in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus and other diseases involving autoantibodies and/or complement activation, *J Immunol* 135:2005, 1985.

Rosse WF: Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria and complement. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 481.

Sánchez-Corral P, González-Rubio C, Rodríguez de Córdoba S, et al: Functional analysis in serum from atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome patients reveals impaired protection of host cells associated with mutations in factor H, *J Mol Immunol* 41:81–84, 2004.

Sanders ME, Koski CL, Robbins D, et al: Activated terminal complement in cerebrospinal fluid in Guillain-Barré syndrome and multiple sclerosis, *J Immunol* 136:4456, 1986.

Sanders ME, Schmetz MA, Hammer CH, et al: Quantitation of activation of the human terminal complement pathway by ELISA, *J Immunol Methods* 85:245, 1985.

Schmiedt W, Kinscherf R, Deigner H-P, et al: Complement C6 deficiency protects against diet-induced atherosclerosis in rabbits, *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 18:1790, 1998.

Schneider PM, Rittner C: Complement genetics. In Dodds AW, Sim RB, editors: *Complement: a practical approach*, New York, 1997, Oxford University Press, p 165.

Schneider PM, Würzner R: Complement genetics: biological implications of polymorphism and deficiencies, *Immunol Today* 20:2, 1999.

Schweinle JE, Ezekowitz RAB, Tenner AJ, et al: Human mannose-binding protein activates the alternative complement pathway and enhances serum bactericidal activity on a mannose-rich isolate of *Salmonella*, *J Clin Invest* 84:1821, 1989.

Seelen MA, Roos A, Daha MR: Role of complement in innate and autoimmunity, *J Nephrol* 18:642–653, 2005.

Seifert PS, Hugo F, Hansson GK, et al: Prelesional complement activation in experimental atherosclerosis: terminal C5b-9 complement deposition coincides with cholesterol accumulation in the aortic intima of hypercholesterolemic rabbits, *Lab Invest* 60:747, 1989.

Sengeløv H: Complement receptors in neutrophils, *Crit Rev Immunol* 15:107, 1995.

Seya T, Atkinson JP: Functional properties of membrane cofactor protein of complement, *Biochem J* 264:581, 1989.

Seya T, Turner JR, Atkinson JP: Purification and characterization of a membrane protein (gp45–70) that is a cofactor for cleavage of C3b and C4b, *J Exp Med* 163:837, 1986.

Shin ML, Rus H, Niculescu F: Complement system in central nervous system disorders. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 499.

Sims PJ, Wiedmer T: Induction of cellular procoagulant activity by the membrane attack complex of complement, *Semin Cell Biol* 6:275, 1995.

Stanilova SA, Slavov ES: Comparative study of circulating immune complexes quantity detection by three assays—CIF-ELISA, C1q-ELISA and anti-C3 ELISA, *J Immunol Methods* 253:13–21, 2001.
Stoiber H, Pruenster M, Ammann CG, et al: Complement-opsonized HIV: the free rider on its way to infection, *Mol Immunol* 42:153–160, 2005.
Su HR: S-protein/vitronectin interaction with the C5b and the C8 of the complement membrane attack complex, *Int Arch Allergy Immunol* 110:314, 1996.
Suankratay C, Zhang X-H, Zhang Y, et al: Requirement for the alternative pathway as well as C4 and C2 in complement-dependent hemolysis via the lectin pathway, *J Immunol* 160:3006, 1998.
Sumiya M, Summerfield JA: The role of collectins in host defense, *Semin Liver Dis* 17:311, 1997.
Tedesco F, Pausa M, Nardon E: The cytolytically inactive terminal complement complex activates endothelial cells to express adhesion molecules and tissue factor procoagulant activity, *J Exp Med* 185:1619–1627, 1997.
Tegla CA, Cudrici C, Patel S, et al: Membrane attack by complement: The assembly and biology of terminal complement complexes, *Immunol Res* 51:45–60, 2011.
Tenner AJ, Robinson SL, Ezekowitz RAB: Mannose binding protein (MBP) enhances mononuclear phagocyte function via a receptor that contains the 126,000 M® component of the C1q receptor, *Immunity* 3:485, 1995.
Terai I, Kobayashi K, Matsushita M, et al: α 2-Macroglobulin binds to and inhibits mannose-binding protein–associated serine protease, *Int Immunol* 7:1579–1584, 1995.
Teixeira JE, Martinez R, Camara LM, et al: Expression of complement receptor type 1 (CR1) on erythrocytes of paracoccidiodomycosis patients, *Mycopathology* 152:125–133, 2001.
Thiel S: Complement activating soluble pattern recognition molecules with collagen-like regions, mannan-binding lectin, ficolins and associated proteins, *Mol Immunol* 44:3875–3888, 2007.
Thurman JM, Holers VM: The central role of the alternative complement pathway in human disease, *J Immunol* 176:1305–1310, 2006.
Tomlinson S, Nussenzweig V: Human alternative complement pathway-mediated lysis of rabbit erythrocytes is enhanced by natural anti-gal α 1–3gal antibodies, *J Immunol* 159:5606, 1997.
Torzewski J, Bowyer DE, Waltenberger J, et al: Processes in atherogenesis: complement activation, *Atherosclerosis* 132:131, 1997.
Turner MW: Mannose-binding lectin: the pluripotent molecule of the innate immune system, *Immunol Today* 17:532, 1996.
Valdimarsson H, Stefansson M, Vikingsdottir T, et al: Reconstitution of opsonizing activity by infusion of mannan-binding lectin (MBL) to MBL-deficient humans, *Scand J Immunol* 48:116, 1998.
Van de Wetering JK, van Golde LM, Batenburg JJ: Collectins: players of the innate immune system, *Eur J Biochem* 271:1229–1249, 2004.
Volanakis JE: Structure, molecular genetics, and function of complement control proteins: an update, *Year Immunol* 3:275, 1988.
Volanakis JE: Overview of the complement system. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 9.
Volanakis JE, Narayana SV: Complement factor D, a novel serine protease, *Protein Sci* 5:553, 1996.
Vorup-Jensen T, Jensenius JC, Thiel S: MASP-2, the C3 convertase generating protease of the MBLectin complement activating pathway, *Immunobiology* 199:348, 1998.
Ward PA: Recruitment of inflammatory cells into lung: roles of cytokines, adhesion molecules and complement, *J Lab Clin Med* 129:400, 1997.
West C: Complement and glomerular disease. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 571.
Whaley K, editor: *Methods in complement for clinical immunologists*, Edinburgh, 1985, Churchill Livingstone.
World Health Organization: Nomenclature of complement, *Bull WHO* 39:934, 1968.
Woodruff TM, Nandakumar KS, Tedesco F: Inhibiting the C5-C5a receptor axis, *Mol Immunol* 48:1631–1642, 2011.
Würzner R, Mollnes TE, Morgan BP: Immunochemical assays for complement components. In Johnstone AP, Turner MW, editors: *Immunochemistry 2: a practical approach*, Oxford, 1997, Oxford University Press, p 197.
Yancey KB, Lawley TJ: Role of complement in diseased and normal skin. In Volanakis JE, Frank MM, editors: *The human complement system in health and disease*, New York, 1998, Marcel Dekker, p 597.
Zhou W: The new face of anaphylatoxins in immune regulation, *Immunology* 217:225–234, 2012.
Zubler RH, Lambert PH: The 125I-C1q binding test for the detection of soluble immune complexes. In Bloom BR, David JR, editors: *In vitro methods in cell-mediated and tumor immunity*, New York, 1976, Academic Press, p 565.

CHAPTER 48

MEDIATORS OF INFLAMMATION: CYTOKINES AND ADHESION MOLECULES

Nancy S. Jenny, Sally A. Huber, Michael R. Lewis

CYTOKINES, 944
Cytokine Family, 944
Cytokine Receptors, 944
Cytokines in Disease States, 946
Cytokine Assays, 946
Clinically Useful Cytokine-Based Therapeutics, 946

CHEMOKINE AND CHEMOKINE RECEPTOR FAMILY, 948
Clinically Useful Chemokine-Based Therapeutics, 948
Atypical Chemokine Receptors, 949
Chemokine Receptor Homologues, 950

CELL ADHESION MOLECULES, 950
Integrins, 950
Selectins, 952

LEUKOCYTE EXTRAVASATION, 952

PERSPECTIVES, 954

SELECTED REFERENCES, 954

KEY POINTS

- Cytokines are soluble proteins released by cells over short distances to facilitate communication between cells, to assist in upregulation or downregulation of the immune response, to direct cell differentiation, and to orchestrate associated inflammatory and reparative activities.
- Adhesion molecules are complex glycoproteins that bind living tissues together and mediate cell migration during embryogenesis, wound healing, and the inflammation response.

CYTOKINES

Cytokines coordinate multiple biological processes including embryonic development, nonspecific (innate) and specific (adaptive) immune responses, inflammatory responses, hematopoiesis, cellular migration, activation, development and maturation, bone remodeling, regulation of metabolism, disease pathogenesis, and aging. Cytokines are soluble proteins that act at the picomolar to femtomolar range, are released by many cell types, and facilitate intercellular communication that is predominantly of short-distance autocrine and paracrine types. The term *cytokine* encompasses lymphokines, interleukins, colony-stimulating factors (CSFs), interferons (IFNs), the tumor necrosis factor (TNF) family, the chemokine family, and adipokines (adipocytokines).

Cytokines are both pleiotropic and redundant; individual cytokines are able to elicit several distinct types of responses, and multiple cytokines have similar physiologic roles (Moraga et al, 2014). Cytokines are produced by T helper cells, leukocytes, lymphocytes, monocytes, macrophages, endothelial cells, fibroblasts, epithelial cells, keratinocytes, chondrocytes, neutrophils, smooth muscle cells, eosinophils, dendritic cells, mast cells, neuronal cells, fibroblasts, osteoblasts, chondrocytes, bone marrow stromal cells, osteocytes, adipocytes, and other cell types. Secretion and binding of cytokines to specific cell surface receptors creates a web of communication between cells. Cytokine signals are received at the cell surface not only as single messages, but also in complex, subtle synergistic and antagonistic combinations. Target cells display surface cytokine receptors, arrayed as "antennae." Using these receptors, cells sample, process, and respond to combinations of soluble and substrate-bound cytokines in a manner dependent on surface receptor density and state of activation.

CYTOKINE FAMILY

The cytokine family of proteins is remarkably extensive: more than 100 known members have been identified. Consequently, there are a number of overlapping nomenclature and classification systems for cytokines based on biological function, receptor binding properties, originating cell type, and common structural motifs (Brocker et al, 2010). Cytokine families based on cell family and function include the tumor necrosis factor (TNF), interleukin (IL), and interferon (IFN) families; colony-stimulating factors (CSFs), growth factors, and adipokines (Table 48-1). Each member of the TNF family is the product of a separate gene; however, there are considerable overlaps in biologic properties of TNF proteins (Dinarello, 2007). The TNF/TNF receptor superfamily mediates cellular differentiation, survival, and death and coordinates organ development (Baud'huin et al, 2013). Within the IL family, subfamilies are: the IL-1 family, with members including IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-18, and IL-33; the IL-6 family, including IL-6, leukemia inhibitory factor, IL-11, oncostatin, ciliary neurotropic factor, and cardiotropin I; and the IL-10 family, including IL-10 and IL-22. The IL family functions regulate inflammation and immune responses. The CSFs are IL-3, granulocyte-CSF (G-CSF), granulocyte-macrophage-CSF (GM-CSF), and macrophage-CSF. Similar to the TNF family, CSFs have overlapping functions, in the case of CSFs, initiation of cell division in responding cells, but are distinct gene products with specific receptors (Metcalf, 2010). Other cytokines, including IL-1β, IL-2, IL-4, IL-6, IL-7, IL-15, fibroblast growth factors (FGFs), transforming growth factors-β (TGFs-β), TGF-α, epidermal growth factor (EGF), platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), erythropoietin, insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), IGF-2, TNF-α, IFN-γ, nerve growth factor (NGF), and brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BNDF), also function as growth factors (Akdis et al, 2011). IFN cytokines like IFN-α and IFN-β promote innate and adaptive immune responses (Ivashkiv & Donlin, 2014). Angiogenic cytokines include vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), IL-1, IL-6, and IL-8. Adipokines mediate communication between adipose tissue and other key metabolic organs (liver, muscle, pancreas, and central nervous system) (Cao, 2014). The adipokine family includes all products of cells localized in white adipose tissue; the best characterized of these are leptin (regulates body weight, pro-inflammatory), adiponectin (anti-inflammatory), resistin (insulin resistance), and secreted frizzled-related protein 5 (Sfrp5; anti-inflammatory, plays role in adipogenesis), as well as vaspin, visfatin, apelin, serum amyloid A, angiotensinogen, omentin, chemerin, zinc-alpha2-glycoprotein (ZAG), IL-6, and TNF-α (Ouchi et al, 2011; Leal Vde & Mafra, 2013). The osteoclast-activating cytokine receptor activator of nuclear factor-κB ligand (RANKL) is a member of the TNF superfamily. RANKL binds to its receptor RANK expressed on the membranes of osteoclast progenitors and induces osteoclast differentiation and activation. Binding of RANKL to the decoy receptor osteoprotegerin (OPG) interrupts osteoclastogenesis and prevents excessive bone resorption (Gruber, 2010). The impressive chemokine family is described separately later in this chapter.

CYTOKINE RECEPTORS

Clinically, it may be useful to also group cytokines according to the structural homology of their receptors, as some drugs target cytokine-receptor

TABLE 48-1

Cytokines by Type and Function

Cytokine Type	Cytokines	Actions
Adipokine (cytokine released from adipocytes)	IL-1α, TNF-α, IL-6, leptin, adiponectin, resistin, others	Pro-inflammatory, pro-atherogenic, anti-inflammatory
Angiogenic	VEGF, IL-1, IL-6, IL-8	Neovascularization, prometastatic
Anti-inflammatory	IL-10, IL-13, TGF-β, IL-22, IL-1Ra, IFN-α/β	Upregulate inflammatory genes, depress cytokine-mediated lethality, downregulate autoimmune disease
Chemokine	IL-8, MCP-1, MIP-1α	Increase cell migration and activation
Colony-stimulating	IL-3, IL-7, G-CSF, GM-CSF, M-CSF, erythropoietin	Hematopoiesis, pro-inflammatory, anti-inflammatory
gp130 signaling pathway	IL-6, IL-11, others	Growth factors, B cell activation, acute phase response
Lymphocyte growth	IL-2, IL-4, IL-7, IL-15	Clonal expansion, Th1/Th2/Th17 regulation
Mesenchymal tissue growth	FGF, TGF-β, others	Fibrosis, prometastatic
Nerve growth	NGF, BNDF	Nerve and Schwann cell growth, B cell activation
Osteoclast-activating	RANKL	Bone resorption, immune stimulation
Proinflammatory	IL-1α, IL-1β, TNF-α, IL-6, IL-12, IL-18, IL-23, MIF, IL-32, IL-33, CD40L	Upregulate inflammatory mediators and innate immune responses
Th1	IFN-γ, IL-12, IL-18	Upregulate Th1 response, clonal expansion of CTL
Th2	IL-4, IL-5, IL-18, IL-25, IL-33	Upregulate Th2 response, increase antibody production
Th17	IL-17, IL-23, IFN-γ	Upregulate Th17 response, autoimmune response
Type I IFN	IFN-α, IFN-β	Antiviral, upregulate MHC class I, antiangiogenic, anti-inflammatory
Type II IFN	IFN-γ	Macrophage activation, upregulate MHC class II

BNDF, Brain-derived neurotrophic factor; *CSF,* colony-stimulating factor; *CTL,* cytotoxic T lymphocyte; *IFN,* interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *MCP-1,* monocyte chemotactic protein-1; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex; *MIF,* macrophage migration inhibitory factor; *MIP-1α,* macrophage inhibiting protein-1α; *NGF,* nerve growth factor; *RANKL,* receptor activator of NFκB.

TABLE 48-2

Selected Cytokines Grouped by Receptor Class

Receptor Class	Structure and Signaling Pathway	Example Receptors
IL-1; immunoglobulin superfamily	These receptors contain paired antiparallel β sheets forming the sandwich-like structure known as the *Ig-fold* seen in antibodies.	IL-1, IL-18, SCF (*c-kit*), M-CSF
Tumor necrosis factor	These receptors share a cysteine-rich common extracellular domain and activate the NFκB pathway.	TNF-α, TNF-β, NGF, CD40, CD27, CD30, CD120
Type I (hemopoietin receptors)	These transmembrane protein receptors have paired high-affinity α and β chains and share a common extracellular motif (WSXWS); they signal the nucleus through the JAK/STAT, RAS-RAF-MAP kinase, and PI3 pathways.	IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-9, IL-11, IL-12, IL-15, IL-21, GM-CSF, EPO, PRL, GH, G-CSF, LIF
Type II	These transmembrane protein receptors are similar to type I, but lack the WSXWS motif, while having conserved cysteine pairs in their extracellular domain; they signal the nucleus through the JAK/STAT, RAS-RAF-MAP kinase, and PI3 pathways.	IFN-α, IFN-γ, IFN-β, IL-10

CSF, Colony-stimulating factor; *IFN,* interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *JAK,* Janus kinase; *STAT,* signal transducers and activation of transcription; *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor.

interactions. Receptor homology partially accounts for the cytokine functional pleiotropy and redundancy described earlier. Cytokine signaling is initiated when cytokines bind the extracellular domains of their transmembrane protein receptors. Upon cytokine binding, the intracellular portion of the receptor activates proteins in the cytosol that are responsible for regulating gene transcription in the nucleus and thereby controlling cell proliferation, differentiation, maturation, and survival (Wang et al, 2009). There are five major cytokine receptor types (Table 48-2): (1) IL-1 receptors characterized by three immunoglobulin (Ig)-like domains; (2) TNF receptors (TNFR), whose members share a conserved cysteine-rich common extracellular binding domain; (3) class I cytokine receptors (or hematopoietin receptors), which lack intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity; (4) class II cytokine receptors, which also lack intrinsic tyrosine kinase activity; and (5) chemokine receptors (discussed separately later in this chapter). Lacking tyrosine kinase activity, the class I and II receptors instead communicate with the nucleus through the Janus kinase (JAK) family of tyrosine kinases as well as one member of the TYK kinase family. Cytokine-receptor interaction results in the phosphorylation and activation of the appropriate JAK/TYK kinases and phosphorylation of the intracellular domains of the receptors. Phosphorylated tyrosine residues in the receptors bind members of the STAT (signal transducers and activation of transcription) family of cytoplasmic transcription proteins. The STAT proteins are phosphorylated as a result of this interaction and dissociate from their receptor complexes. Once dissociated, the STAT proteins dimerize and translocate into the cell nucleus, where they bind DNA recognition sequences and function as transcription factors. Class I receptors also make use of the RAS-RAF-MAP kinase and PI3 pathways to initiate gene transcription. Subfamilies of the class I receptors include the G-protein gp130, common gamma chain (γ_c, or CD132), and common beta chain (β_c, or CD131) receptors (Wang et al, 2009). Cytokines like IL-6 and IL-11 that share the G-protein–coupled seven-transmembrane receptors signal via the gp130 signal-transducing molecule. Cytokines that utilize the γ_c receptors signal via JAK3 kinase. The βc receptors recognize IL-3, IL-5 and GM-CSF and initiate signaling via JAK2 kinase (Wang et al, 2009). Class II cytokine receptors recognize the IFN cytokines, IL-10, and others. Pro-inflammatory IFNs signal predominantly through STAT1, whereas the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 signals primarily through STAT3. STAT1 and STAT3 therefore play opposing roles in cell survival and proliferation (Regis et al, 2008). The IL-1 receptor family consists of four receptor complexes, two decoy receptors, and two negative regulators. Signaling occurs via the MyD88 adaptor (Garlanda et al, 2013). The TNFR family consists of 29 members including TNFR1, TNFR2,

OPG, and RANK (Kumar et al, 2013) and are key regulators of the immune response. Some members of the TNFR family, such as TNFR1, contain a death domain, and ligand binding initiates processes leading to cell death (Kumar et al, 2013).

As described earlier, cytokines are produced, released, and recognized by many different cell types. The extent of influence of these soluble proteins can be long range (systemic) when released into the circulation (endocrine effect), as with the pyrogen IL-1, or their action may be highly localized, producing effects only on the cell releasing them (autocrine effect) or on its neighboring cells (paracrine). For instance, IL-2 released by T cells has an autocrine proliferative effect through the IL-2 receptor (CD25/CD122/CD132). In the thymus, cytokines such as IL-7 released from thymic epithelial cells affect thymocyte maturation in a paracrine fashion.

CYTOKINES IN DISEASE STATES

Under homeostatic conditions, pro-inflammatory cytokine responses necessary for host immune defense are balanced by anti-inflammatory responses that protect the host from the tissue damage that results from unregulated inflammation. When the system is continually challenged, as in chronic viral and bacterial infections, a persistent low-level pro-inflammatory response occurs. Autoimmune diseases also result from dysregulation of the inflammatory/immune response. For example, dysregulation of IL-1 cytokine signaling is associated with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), rheumatoid arthritis (RA), and psoriasis (Gu et al, 2013). Aberrations in the IL-6/IL-12 cytokines likewise result in IBD and RA, as well as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), asthma, and Castleman disease (Brocker et al, 2010; Akdis et al, 2011). Dysregulation of the IFN response is associated with SLE, Sjögren's syndrome, systemic sclerosis, myositis, and RA (Ivashkiv & Donlin, 2014). IL-17A has been linked to many autoimmune disorders, including IBD, RA, and MS, as well as certain cancers (Brocker et al, 2010). IL-18 is linked to RA and Crohn's disease (CD) (Akdis et al, 2011). IL-5 plays a role in allergic asthma. IL-7, IL-9, and other inflammatory cytokines are likewise believed to play causative roles in autoimmune diseases, whereas the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10 appears to play a protective role (Akdis et al, 2011). Patients with chronic infections and/or autoimmune diseases also have an increased risk for concomitant osteoporosis, as RANKL expression, and therefore bone resorption, is upregulated by pro-inflammatory cytokines including IL-1, -6, -11, and -17, and TNF-α (Nakashima & Takayanagi, 2011). Cytokine receptors also play key roles. Mutations that later affect binding/function of the γ_c receptors or their associated JAK3 kinase can significantly limit the activity of the cytokines that signal through this pathway and can lead to severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) diseases (Wang et al, 2009). Mutations that impact the function of JAK2 kinase are correlated with hematologic malignancies, particularly myeloproliferative neoplasms (Vainchenker et al, 2008). Overexpression or mutations that impact function of RTKs are linked to cancers, atherosclerosis, bone disorders, and diabetes (Kazi et al, 2014).

CYTOKINE ASSAYS

Because of their biological importance, clinical laboratory detection and measurement of cytokines is becoming more common. Bioassays are usually considered to be the "gold standard" for detecting cytokine activity, but they are often time-consuming and unmanageable in the hospital laboratory. ELISA kits are widely available for many of the cytokines described earlier; for example, IL-1α, -1β, -4, -5, -6, and -10, IFN-γ, and TNF-α can be measured individually clinically. In addition, panels or multiplex assays can be used to measure sets of cytokines in a single assay.

CLINICALLY USEFUL CYTOKINE-BASED THERAPEUTICS

Because of the profound biological effects of these powerful proteins, attempts at mass-producing and therapeutically administering cytokines are ongoing. Cytokines used therapeutically include G-CSF and GM-CSF, which are used to treat bone marrow suppression associated with radiation, chemotherapy, and transplantation; GM-CSF, used to treat CD; erythropoietin (EPO), used therapeutically to treat anemia and bone marrow failure; IFN-α, to treat hepatitis B and C; and IFN-β, used to treat MS (Dinarello, 2007). Other promising therapeutic approaches include manipulating cytokine activity through cloning and producing recombinant forms of cytokines or their receptor antagonists; delivering cytokines by gene and antisense nucleotide insertion through viral and nonviral vectors (commonly adenovirus or retrovirus vectors, or nonviral DNA plasmid vectors); vaccinating patients against their own (autologous) cytokines (Cutler & Brombache, 2005); raising cytokine-blocking monoclonal antibodies; and genetically fusing molecules of interest, such as an enzyme, ligand, peptide, or extracellular domain of a surface receptor, to the Fc portion of human IgG1 or albumin (Table 48-3). This "fusion" approach has the advantage of conferring increased half-life and stability on the fusion product. In some instances, multiple ligands may be sequentially fused to a single gene to create a "trap" for the target by "trapping" or binding two target molecules on a single fusion protein, possibly as a result of the trap's high binding affinities (Huang, 2009).

Unfortunately, many disease states are complex conditions driven by an intricate interplay of numerous cytokines. A single "magic bullet" aimed at an individual cytokine or receptor for treating these conditions is unlikely to arise in the very near future. In addition, some cytokines have both pro- and anti-inflammatory effects, and targeting these cytokines can result in significant adverse effects. IFN-γ drives several autoimmune diseases, but is essential for defense against multiple intracellular

TABLE 48-3
Selected Engineered Therapeutic Agents

Class	Generic Name	Agent/Action	Therapeutic Indication(s)
Cytokine			
	Aldesleukin (Proleukin)	Recombinant IL-2, binds and activates IL-2R	HIV, RCC, melanoma
	IFN-β-1a (Avonex)	Recombinant IFN-β-1a, anti-inflammatory cytokine	Relapsing MS
	IL-7 (CYT107)	Recombinant IL-7, modulates expansion of $CD4^+$ T cells	HIV, viral hepatitis, cancer
	IFNγ-1b (Actimmune)	Recombinant IFNγ-1b, stimulates immune response	Chronic granulomatous disease, severe malignant osteopetrosis
	IFNα-2a (Roferon-A)	Recombinant IFNα-2a, stimulates immune response	Leukemias, melanoma, lymphoma, sarcomas, viral hepatitis
	IFNα-2b (Intron A)	Recombinant IFNα-2b, stimulates immune response	Leukemias, melanoma, lymphoma, sarcomas, viral hepatitis
	Erythropoietin (Procrit, Epogen, Aranesp)	Recombinant erythropoietin, stimulates production of red blood cells	Anemia due to kidney failure or chemotherapy
	Filagrastim (Neupogen)	Recombinant G-CSF, stimulates production of granulocytes	Chemotherapy-related neutropenia
	Lenograstim (Neulasta)	Recombinant G-CSF, stimulates production of granulocytes	Chemotherapy-related neutropenia
	Leukine (Sargramostin)	Recombinant GM-CSF, stimulates bone marrow function and modulates hematopoiesis	Bone marrow stem cell transplantation, HIV, myelodysplastic syndrome, aplastic anemia, leukemia

TABLE 48-3
Selected Engineered Therapeutic Agents—cont'd

Class	Generic Name	Agent/Action	Therapeutic Indication(s)
Anti-Cytokine Antibody			
	Adalimumab (Humira)	Recombinant humanized anti–TNF-α IgG1 mAb, binds and inhibits TNF-α	RA, CD, PA, AS
	Infliximab (Remicade)	Chimeric (75% human/25% mouse) IgG1 mAb binds TNF-α	RA, CD, AS
	Bevacizumab (Avastin)	Recombinant humanized anti–VEGF-A mAb, inhibits angiogenesis	Colorectal and non–small cell carcinoma
	Certolizumab (Cimzia)	Recombinant, humanized antibody to a Fab' fragment, with specificity for TNF-α conjugated to an approximately 40-kDa polyethylene glycol, binds both soluble and membrane-bound TNF-α inhibiting TNF-α activity	RA, CD, PA, AS
	Golimumab (Simponi)	Fully human IgG1κ anti-TNFα mAb	RA, arthritis, ALS
	Siltuximab (Sylvant)	Chimeric anti-IL-6 mAb	Multicentric Castleman disease (HIV-negative, HHV-8 negative)
Small-Molecule Antagonist			
	Thalidomide	VEGF and TNF mRNA inhibitor	ENL, MM, RCC
	AP12009	TGF-β_2–blocking antisense oligonucleotide	High-grade glioma
	Tofacitinib	JAK3 pathway inhibitor	RA
Cytokine Receptor Antagonist			
	Anakinra (Kineret)	Recombinant IL-1Rα antagonist, competitively inhibits binding of IL-1α to its receptor	RA
	Tocilizumab (Actemra)	Recombinant humanized IL-6R mAb, acts as an immunosuppressant	RA
	Daclizumab (Zenapax)	Recombinant humanized IL-2Rα chain mAb, binds IL-2Rα (CD25) on T cells to prevent allograft rejection	Renal transplant
	Oprelvekin (Neumega)	Recombinant IL-11, stimulates stem cell and megakaryocyte progenitor growth	Chemotherapy-related thrombocytopenia
	Trastuzumab (Herceptin)	Recombinant humanized mAb, binds Her2/neu receptor overexpressed on some carcinomas; inhibits angiogenesis	Breast carcinoma
	Basiliximab (Simulect)	Recombinant chimeric mouse-human mAb, IL-2 receptor antagonist, immunosuppressant	Transplantation rejection
	Toclizumab (Actemra, RoActemra)	Humanized anti-IL-6 receptor mAb that binds soluble and membrane-bound IL-6 receptor, blocks IL-6 pro-inflammatory responses	RA
	Ustekinumab (Stelara)	Human Anti-IL-12 and IL-23 mAb, blocks IL-12 and IL-23 pro-inflammatory responses	Plaque psoriasis, PA
Fusion Protein			
	Etanercept (Enbrel)	Soluble TNF-αRII fused to human IgG1 Fc fragment; neutralizes membrane-bound and soluble forms of TNF-α	RA, AS, JRA, PA
	NBI-3001	Recombinant IL-4–*Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin fusion protein	Malignant high-grade gliomas
	Alefacept (Amevive)	LFA-3 fused to Fc domain IgG1, binds CD2 to inhibit T cell activation	PA
	L19-IL	Recombinant IL-2 fused to human single-chain F_v antibody fragment, L19 binds fibronectin, while IL-2 locally activates natural killer cells and macrophages	Blocks tumor cell proliferation
	Rilonacept (IL-1 Trap)	Dimeric fusion protein of the ligand-binding domains of IL-1 type I receptor and IL-1 receptor accessory protein fused to human IgG_1	Cryopyrin-associated periodic syndrome
Anti–Cell Adhesion Molecule			
	Natalizumab	Recombinant humanized leukocyte α_4/β_1 integrin mAb, blocks attachment of leukocytes to CNS endothelial cells	MS
	Abciximab	Anti-α_{IIb}/β_3, α_v/β_3 chimeric mAb Fab fragment, antithrombotic	Angioplasty procedures
	Efalizumab (Raptiva)	Recombinant humanized anti-α_L/β_2 mAb, binds CD11a to act as an immunosuppressant	Psoriasis
	Vedolizumab (Entyvio)	Humanized anti-$\alpha_4\beta_7$ mAb, inhibits adhesion and migration of leukocytes into the gastrointestinal tract	UC, CD

ALS, Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis; *AS,* ankylosing spondylitis; *CD,* Crohn's disease; *COPD,* chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; *CSF,* colony-stimulating factor; *ENL,* erythema nodosum leprosum; *GM,* granulocyte macrophage; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *IgG,* immunoglobulin; *IFN,* interferon; *IL,* interleukin; *JRA,* juvenile rheumatoid arthritis; *LFA,* lymphocyte functional antigen; *mAb,* monoclonal antibody; *MM,* multiple myeloma; *MS,* multiple sclerosis; *PA,* psoriatic arthritis; *RA,* rheumatoid arthritis; *RCC,* renal cell carcinoma, *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor; *UC,* ulcerative colitis.

microorganisms. IL-2 is required for generation of cytotoxic T cells and forms the basis for several types of vaccines, but also drives graft-versus-host disease and limits the success of bone marrow transplantation (Dinarello, 2007). For conditions in which dysregulation of a single cytokine is largely at fault, the challenge is less daunting. Defects in cytokine-signaling pathways resulting from genetic mutations that inactivate JAK/STAT molecules have provided the impetus for the generation of therapeutics aimed at JAK inhibition. Ruxolitinib, a JAK1 and JAK2 inhibitor, is approved for treatment of polycythemia vera and myelofibrosis. Tofacitinib is approved for treatment of RA. Other individual cytokine-related therapeutic agents have also entered routine medical practice in recent years (see Table 48-3). For example, Denosumab, a RANKL-neutralizing

antibody, is approved for treatment of osteoporosis, RA, and tumor-related osteolysis. Other examples of cytokine-related therapeutic agents include Anakinra, an IL-1 receptor antagonist; Aldesleukin, a recombinant IL-2; Oprelvekin, a recombinant IL-11; recombinant IFNα-2a (Roferon-A); Filgrastim (Neupogen), a recombinant G-CSF; and Sargramostim (Leukine), a recombinant GM-CSF. Treatment for many chronic inflammatory diseases involves targeted inhibition of TNF-α. TNF-α inhibitors like Etanercept (Enbrel), a soluble TNF-α receptor, are approved for treatment of psoriasis, psoriatic arthritis, CD, ulcerative colitis, ankylosing spondylitis, and juvenile arthritis. However, further demonstrating the complexity of the cytokine system, MS worsens with TNF-α inhibition (Schett et al, 2013). Many other cytokine- and cytokine receptor-based therapeutic agents are currently being evaluated in clinical trials. For example, adiponectin enhances insulin action and may have antiatherogenic and anti-inflammatory properties. Therapeutic strategies to increase adiponectin levels and receptor activities are being investigated as treatments for obesity-induced inflammation and insulin resistance (Cao, 2014).

CHEMOKINE AND CHEMOKINE RECEPTOR FAMILY

Chemokines are members of the cytokine family. Chemokines are low molecular weight molecules ranging from 8 to 14 kD that function in inflammation and angiogenesis by directing the migration, activation, and differentiation of leukocytes and endothelial cells, among other cell types (Zlotnik et al, 2006; Viola & Luster, 2008; Zlotnik & Yoshie, 2012; Miyake et al, 2013a; Bachelerie et al, 2014). Enhanced chemokine or chemokine receptor expression has been demonstrated in, and may be associated with, more aggressive forms of cancer (Miyake et al, 2013b). So far, at least 45 chemokines have been identified (Zlotnik & Yoshie, 2012). Chemokines can have angiogenic, inflammatory, or homeostatic functional activity. Beginning with the Keystone Symposium on Chemokines and Chemotactic Receptors held in 1999, a new nomenclature was established for chemokines based on the placement of the N-terminal cysteine residues, giving rise to four chemokine subclasses: CC, CXC, (X)C, and CX3C. In CC chemokines, the two cysteines are immediately adjacent, whereas in the CXC subclass, the cysteines are separated by a single amino acid. The single known member of the CX3C subfamily, also known as fractalkine, has three amino acids separating the cysteines. The (X)C chemokines lack the initial cysteine (Zlotnik & Yoshie, 2012). The nomenclature can be somewhat confusing, since most chemokines have other common names from the time prior to the Keystone Symposium. Also, there exists ambiguity between mouse and human chemokines, as some chemokines are found in one species but not the other, and the mouse homologue may even have a different designation than the human chemokine. Table 48-4 gives the known human and mouse chemokines according to their current categorization along with other names by which they are known.

Chemokine receptors are seven-transmembrane proteins belonging to the G-protein–coupled receptor family and, in the new nomenclature, are categorized by the chemokine subclass that they bind (Zlotnik & Yoshie, 2012). Chemokine receptors are expressed in varying combinations on leukocytes but are also expressed on nonhematopoietic cells including cancers and endothelial cells (Bachelerie et al, 2014). Although there may be specificity in interaction between a single chemokine and a single chemokine receptor, often chemokine ligands have the ability to bind to multiple different receptors, and a chemokine receptor may bind any of several different chemokines (see Table 48-4). The multiplicity of interactions between chemokine ligands and receptors may provide some redundancy within the system, but it also means that different chemokines binding to the same receptor could have distinct functional outcomes either due to variation in binding avidity or availability of downstream signaling molecules within the cells. Thus, a specific chemokine such as CCL11 (also known as *eotaxin*) has an agonistic effect when binding to CCR3 or CCR5 but an antagonistic effect when binding to CXCR3 or CCR2. CXCR3 is considered to promote Th1 polarization among T helper cells, while CCR3 is preferentially expressed by Th2 cells and eosinophils. Thus, CCL11 should reinforce bias toward a Th2 immune response through its simultaneous agonistic effects on CCR3 and antagonistic effects on CXCR3 (Sallusto & Lanzavecchia, 2000). Chemokine binding to receptors involves a two-step process in which the chemokine initially interacts with the extracellular surface or chemokine recognition site 1 (CRS1). This causes a conformational change in the receptor and interaction of the chemokine with the chemokine recognition site 2 (CRS2), which leads to receptor activation (Scholten et al, 2012). Typical G-protein–coupled chemokine receptors activate downstream enzyme pathways including PI3K; phospholipases Cβ2, Cβ3, A2, and D; MAPK; and tyrosine kinases, ultimately resulting in actin polymerization, adhesion, and membrane protrusion required in cell mobility (Bachelerie et al, 2014). Besides defining receptors based on the category of chemokine they bind, chemokine receptors can also be classified by their predominant function as homeostatic (involved in immune system development and leukocyte trafficking to lymphoid tissues), inflammatory (involved in trafficking of leukocytes into tissues at sites of infection or injury), or both (Bachelerie et al, 2014). While chemokine signaling is essential to normal immunologic responses and immune system development, prolonged or excessive chemokine signaling can lead to pathogenic inflammation and autoimmunity, and may promote cancer metastases (Oppenheim et al, 2002; Balkwill, 2004).

CLINICALLY USEFUL CHEMOKINE-BASED THERAPEUTICS

Various chemokines and chemokine receptors are implicated in disease and have become targets of potential therapeutic intervention (Bachelerie et al, 2014). CXCR1 and CXCR2 are expressed on neutrophils, specific subpopulations of monocytes, mast cells, basophils, dendritic cells, NK cells, and some T cells, as well as endothelial cells, epithelial cells, neuronal cells, and mesenchymal stem cells. These receptors have been associated with multiple diseases including psoriasis, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), asthma, RA, IBD, and various cancers (Table 48-5) (Mahler et al, 2004; Bachelerie et al, 2014). A pilot study using an anti-CXCL8 antibody in COPD patients showed moderate efficacy (Mahler et al, 2004). Anti-CXCL8 used topically has also been shown to improve symptoms in psoriasis patients (Bizzarri et al, 2006). Another CXCR2 antagonist, reparixin, was shown to improve outcomes in islet cell transplant patients, and a phase III trial is underway for islet transplantation in Europe and the United States (Bachelerie et al, 2014). CXCR1 blockade may also prove beneficial in selected breast cancer patients (Ginestier et al, 2010). Small-molecule antagonists of CXCR3 have been developed but have primarily been tested in animal models of arthritis, MS, inflammatory pulmonary disease, and cardiac allografts. An anti-CXCR3 antibody has been used in phase II clinical trials and showed efficacy against RA but was ineffective against ulcerative colitis (Bachelerie et al, 2014). CXCR4 is a coreceptor for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and has been implicated in oncogenesis. The FDA has approved the use of AMD3100, also known as *plerixafor*, to be used in combination with granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor in multiple myeloma and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma patients undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (Bachelerie et al, 2014). Among the CCR receptors, CCR1 has been targeted by eight different antagonists because of its association with diverse inflammatory diseases and cancers. However, clinical trials have not yet been very successful. CCR2 is another broadly expressed receptor implicated in a number of diseases. Animal studies show that CCR2 is required for monocyte egress from bone marrow and in conjunction with CX3CR1 promotes monocyte infiltration of atherosclerotic plaques (Tacke et al, 2007), and mice deficient in CCR2 developed reduced atherosclerotic lesions (Boring et al, 1998). To date, seven CCR2 antagonists have been developed. MLN1202 has been used in phase II clinical trials and shown to significantly reduce C-reactive protein (CRP) levels in plasma of individuals at atherosclerotic risk (Gilbert et al, 2011). As CRP is a known biomarker for atherosclerosis, this implies that CCR2 may be pro-atherogenic in humans as in mice. MLN1202 was also effective in a phase II trial of MS but was ineffective in a phase II trial involving rheumatoid arthritis (Bachelerie et al, 2014). Phase II clinical trials were performed with other CCR2 antagonists in MS, SLE, neuropathic pain, and type 2 diabetes, but are either ongoing or the results have not been reported. CCR4 is expressed at high levels in adult T cell leukemia/lymphoma cells, and an anti-CCR4 (KW-0761) has been developed by Kyowa Hakko Kirin and approved by the Japanese Pharmaceutical and Medical Devices Agency for use in this disease. Evaluation of this antibody in allergic diseases is ongoing by Amgen (Bachelerie et al, 2014). CCR5 is the predominant HIV coreceptor, and maraviroc (UK-427,857) by Pfizer has been FDA approved for use in AIDS patients to control virus infection. Multiple other CCR5 antagonists have been developed. A number of these prospective CCR antagonists remain in clinical trials, but several drug development programs were stopped because of unanticipated drug toxicities such as ventricular arrhythmias/sudden death or liver toxicity. Anti-CCR5 antibodies have been developed and are being tested in HIV-infected patients (Bachelerie et al, 2014). An antagonist for CCR9 was developed by

TABLE 48-4

Human Chemokines, Alternative Names, Receptor Usage, and Predominant Function

Ligand	Other Names	Receptor Antagonist	Function	Receptor(s) Agonist
CCL1	I-309		Th2 responses	CCR8
CCL2	MCP-1		Innate immunity	CCR1, CCR2
CCL3	MIP-1α		T cell/Mφ trafficking	CCR1, CCR5
CCL3L1	LD78β		Innate immunity	CCR1, CCR3, CCR5
CCL3L3	LD78β		Th1/Th2 response	
CCL4	MIP-1β		T/DC interaction	CCR1, CCR5
CCL4L1	AT744.2		HIV inhibition	
CCL4L2	—		—	
CCL5	RANTES		Innate/adaptive	CCR1, CCR3, CCR5
CCL7	MCP-3	CCR5	Th2	CCR1, CCR2, CCR3
CCL8	MCP-2		Th2	CCR1, CCR2, CCR5
CCL11	Eotaxin	CXCR3, CCR2	Th2	CCR3, CCR5
CCL13	MCP-4		—	CCR2, CCR3
CCL14	HCC-1		—	CCR1, CCR3, CCR5
CCL15	HCC-2 Leurotactin-1		—	CCR1, CCR3
CCL16	HCC-4		DC maturation	CCR1, CCR2, CCR5, CCR8
CCL17	TARC		Th2	CCR4
CCL18	PARC, DC-CK1	CCR3	T/β cell chemotaxis	
CCL19	MIP-3β		T/DC homeostasis	CCR7
CCL20	MIP-3α		GALT immunity	CCR6
CCL21	6Ckine		T/DC homeostasis	CCR7
CCL22	MDC		Th2	CCR4
CCL23	MPIF-1		—	CCR1
CCL24	Eotaxin-2		Eosinophil trafficking	CCR3
CCL25	TECK		Thymocyte trafficking	CCR9
CCL26	Eotaxin-3	CCR1, CCR2, CCR5	Th2	CCR3, CX3CR1
CCL27	CTACK, ILC		T cell trafficking to skin	CCR10
CCL28	MEC		T cell trafficking to mucosa	CCR10, CCR3
XCL1	Lymphotactin SCM-1α		Ag cross-presentation	XCR1
XCL2	SCM-1β		Ag cross-presentation	XCR1
CXCL1	GROα		Neutrophil	CXCR1, CXCR2
CXCL2	GROβ		Neutrophil	CXCR2
CXCL3	GROY		Neutrophil	CXCR2
CXCL4	PF4		Procoagulant	CXCR3-B
CXCL4L1	PF4V1		Procoagulant	CXCR3-B
CXCL5	ENA78		Neutrophil	CXCR2
CXCL6	GCP2		Neutrophil	CXCR1, CXCR2
CXCL7	NAP-2		Neutrophil	CXCR2
CXCL8	IL-8		Neutrophil Th1	CXCR1, CXCR2
CXCL9	MIG	CCR3	Th1	CXCR3
CXCL10	IP-10	CCR3	Th1	CXCR3
CXCL11	I-TAC	CCR3, CCR5	Myelopoiesis B lymphopoiesis	CXCR3, CXCR7
CXCL12	SDF-1		Myelopoiesis B lymphopoiesis	CXCR4, CXCR7
CXCL13	BLC, BCA-1		B/T trafficking LN	CXCR5, CXCR3
CXCL14	BRAK		Mφ trafficking	?
CXCL16	SR-PSOX		NKT cell trafficking	CXCR6
CXCL17	DMC		Mφ/DC trafficking	?
CX3CL1	Fractalkine		NK, T, Mφ trafficking	CX3CR1

Data from Koelink PJ, Overbeek SA, Braber S, et al: Targeting chemokine receptors in chronic inflammatory diseases: an extensive review, *Pharmacol Ther* 133:1–18, 2012; Zlotnik A,Yoshie O: The chemokine superfamily revisited, *Immunity* 36:705–716, 2012.

ChemoCentryx and appeared to be initially successful in phase II and phase II/III trials of patients with Crohn's disease, but when further tested in phase III trials by GlaxoSmithKline, the drug apparently proved ineffective and development was halted (Bachelerie et al, 2014). In most cases (Table 48-6), clinical trials using antagonists for specific chemokine receptors have failed to show efficacy, although several trials remain ongoing. As indicated earlier, the involvement of multiple chemokines in inflammatory diseases and redundancy of a chemokine between multiple different receptors may make monotherapy against a specific chemokine receptor ineffective.

ATYPICAL CHEMOKINE RECEPTORS

Aside from the classical chemokine receptors, there exist other receptors that bind chemokines and modulate their activity. Atypical chemokine receptors in vertebrates bind chemokines but fail to activate G-coupled proteins and generally function to suppress inflammation (Bachelerie et al, 2014). ACKR1, referred to more commonly in transfusion medicine as the *Duffy antigen*, is a promiscuous receptor, binding up to 20 different members of the CC and CXC chemokine groups, and is expressed on erythrocytes as well as on endothelial cells (in venules and small veins),

TABLE 48-5
Chemokine Receptor Expression Associated with Various Diseases

Disease	Associated Chemokine Receptors
Atherosclerosis	CCR1, CCR2, CCR5, CXCR2, CXCR3, CXCR4, CX3CR1
Multiple sclerosis	CCR1, CCR2, CCR5, CCR7, CXCR3, CXCR6
Rheumatoid arthritis	XCR1, CCR1, CCR2, CCR5, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR3, CXCR4
Psoriasis	CCR1, CCR4, CCR5, CCR6, CCR10, CXCR2, CXCR3, CX3CR1
Type I diabetes	CCR4, CXCR3
IBD	CCR4, CCR5, CCR6, CCR10, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR3, CX3R1
Chronic hepatitis	CCR5, CXCR3
Lupus	CCR2, CXCR3, CXCR5
Allograft rejection	CCR1, CCR5, CXCR3
COPD	CCR1, CCR2, CCR3, CCR5, CCR10, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR3
Asthma	CCR1, CCR2, CCR3, CCR4, CCR5, CCR8, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR3, CXCR4
Atopic dermatitis	CCR4, CCR8, CCR10
HIV	CCR1, CCR2, CCR3, CCR5, CXCR4
Cancers	**Associated Chemokine Receptors**
Melanoma	CCR2, CCR3, CCR7, CCR9, CCR10, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR3, CXCR4
Breast	CCR1, CCR2, CCR3, CCR5, CCR6, CCR7, CCR9, CXXR3, CXCR4, CXCR5, CXCR6, CXCR7
Renal	CCR3, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR3, CXCR4, CXCR6
Prostate	CCR2, CCR5, CCR9, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR4, CXCR6, CXCR7, CX3R1
Head/Neck	CCR7, CXCR4, CXCR5, CXCR6
Lung	CCR1, CCR2, CCR5, CCR7, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR3, CXCR4, CXCR5
Gastrointestinal	CCR1, CCR6, CCR7, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR3, CXCR4, CXCR5, CXCR6
Pancreas	CCR5, CXCR1, CXCR2, CXCR4, CXCR5, CXCR6
Liver	CCR6, CXCR4, CXCR7
Ovarian	CCR4, CCR9, CXCR2, CXCR4
Lymphoma	CCR3, CCR4, CCR10, CXCR4, CXCR5
Leukemia	CCR3, CCR4, CCR7, CCR10, CXCR2, CXCR3, CXCR4
Myeloma	CCR1, CCR2, CCR5, CXCR4
Brain	CXCR4, CXCR7
Sarcoma	CXCR4

Data from Garin A, Proudfoot AE: Chemokines as targets for therapy, *Exp Cell Res* 317:602–612, 2011; Koelink PJ, Overbeek SA, Braber S, et al: Targeting chemokine receptors in chronic inflammatory diseases: an extensive review, *Pharmacol Ther* 133:1–18, 2012; Scholten DJ, Canals M, Maussang D, et al: Pharmacological modulation of chemokine receptor function, *Br J Pharmacol* 165:1617–1643, 2012; Scholten DJ, Canals M, Maussang D, et al: Pharmacological modulation of chemokine receptor function, *Br J Pharmacol* 165:1617–1643, 2012.

some neurons, and possibly some epithelial cells, but not on leukocytes (Bachelerie et al, 2014). Although originally believed to remove chemokines from circulation, it is now thought that ACKR1 is important in maintaining blood levels of chemokines, although these may be maintained in an equilibrium state between free and erythrocyte-bound forms. However, heparin or serum serine proteases can displace chemokines bound to ACKR1 (Schnabel et al, 2010), and this may make the chemokines available for inflammatory signaling. ACKR2 is a homologue of CCRs that promiscuously binds many CC chemokines. ACKR2 is expressed in skin, gut, lung, placenta, and on some lymphatic endothelial cells and leukocytes. Chemokine binding to ACKR2 results in receptor-ligand internalization and lysosomal degradation of the ligand. ACKR2 may have a protective role in psoriasis and COPD and act as a tumor suppressor gene (Bachelerie et al, 2014). ACKR3 expression is increased in immunopathologic responses and cancers, especially of hematopoietic and mesenchymal origin. ACKR3 primarily binds CXCL12, and CXCL12 has been shown to be important in tumorigenesis, suggesting that this receptor may also promote this process (Balkwill, 2004). ACKR4 primarily binds CCL19, CCL21, and CCL25. Its biological function is less well understood, but its expression correlates with pulmonary sarcoidosis severity (Kriegova et al, 2006).

CHEMOKINE RECEPTOR HOMOLOGUES

Various pathogens also encode chemokine-binding proteins or chemokine receptor homologues usually stolen from host cells (Bachelerie et al, 2014). In many cases, these proteins act as scavengers to suppress host immune responses and allow the microbes to evade the immune system. However, US28 encoded by human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) has biological activity in HCMV-infected cells, as it aids in HIV infection as well as angiogenesis or tumor formation (Maussang et al, 2009). Other herpesvirus family and poxvirus family chemokine receptor homologues induce calcium flux or chemotaxis, and most are promiscuous for multiple CC and CXC chemokines. These chemokine receptor homologues appear to be important in virus replication, although their exact role in this process is not well understood. Besides the chemokine receptor homologues, various parasites and pathogens encode chemokine binding proteins (CKBP or evasins), which are small molecular weight (90 to 110 amino acid) peptides that bind chemokines with high avidity and inhibit their chemotactic activity (Bachelerie et al, 2014). Viruses (including leporipoxviruses, orthopoxviruses, parapoxviruses, and herpesviruses), ticks (in tick saliva), and nematodes (*S. mansoni*, the causative agent in schistosomiasis) express these molecules (Bachelerie et al, 2014).

CELL ADHESION MOLECULES

The adhesion mechanisms that bind living tissues into complex multicellular organisms involve several classes of proteins, among which are the cell adhesion molecules (CAMs). These complex transmembrane glycoproteins facilitate cell migration during embryogenesis and wound healing, and they govern the leukocyte trafficking and homing critical to immune response (Ley et al, 2007). Roles for particular CAMs have been identified or postulated in myriad diseases, ranging from IBD to cancer to primary immunodeficiency states. Numerous investigators are seeking to identify and target CAM interaction sites for therapeutic modulation with specific monoclonal antibodies, as well as sense/antisense oligonucleotides or other small molecules designed to block gene transcription (Mousa, 2008).

CAMs are conventionally divided into five groups based on structural homology: cadherins, mucins, integrins, selectins, and immunoglobulin superfamily CAMs. Cadherins mediate calcium-dependent cell-cell interactions, and they serve as important components of varied types of cell-cell junctions (e.g., desmosomes). Mucins are heavily glycosylated proteins that may be cell membrane–associated or secreted, and their ligands include selectins. Adenocarcinomas frequently express abnormal quantities or forms of mucins, and serum tumor markers CA19-9 and CA125 represent epitopes on mucins. Immunoglobulin superfamily (IgSF) CAMs have immunoglobulin-like domains and interact with integrins, selectins, and each other. Integrins and selectins are CAMs integral to effective recruitment of leukocytes to sites of inflammation or infection, and these warrant more extensive descriptions.

INTEGRINS

The integrin family of adhesion molecules mediates interaction between those things external to the cell (other cells and the extracellular matrix [ECM]) and those things within the cell (cytoskeleton, intracytosolic molecules, and nucleus) (Abram & Lowell, 2009). Each integrin is a heterodimer of noncovalently linked α and β subunits (Table 48-7). The major integrins can be divided into subfamilies based on incorporation of particular subunits, patterns of expression, and ligand specificity. The β_1 integrins, also known as the *very late activation antigens (VLAs)*, arise from the association of a β1 chain subunit (CD29) with any of the α chain subunits (CD49a to CD49h). They are expressed on cells requiring firm anchoring to the ECM, as well as on circulating leukocytes, platelets, and some tumor cells. The β_2 integrins, expressed mainly by leukocytes and myeloid cells, result from association of the β_2 chain subunit (CD18) with any of several α subunits. The $\alpha L\beta_2$ integrin, also known as LFA-1 (lymphocyte function-associated antigen [CD11a/CD18]), plays a crucial role in leukocyte adhesion to vascular endothelium during transendothelial migration. The ligand for LFA-1 in this process is intercellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1), which is an IgSF CAM.

TABLE 48-6

Summary of Clinical Development of Drug Candidates Targeting Chemokine Receptors

Receptor	Company	Compound	Affinity (nM)	Indication(s)	Clinical Phase	Status
CCR1	Schering AG (Berlex)	BX 471	1.0	MS, Psoriasis endometriosis	II	No efficacy
CCR1	Millennium	MLN 3701		MS, Multiple myeloma	II	No longer reported
CCR1	Millennium	MLN 3897	2.3	RA, Multiple myeloma	II	No efficacy in RA
CCR1	Pfizer	CP-481, 715	64	RA	II	No efficacy
CCR1	AstraZeneca	AZD4818	5.0	COPD	II	No efficacy
CCR1	ChemoCentryx/GSK	CCX354	1.5	RA	II	Ongoing
CCR1	Merck	C-4462		RA	II	No efficacy
CCR1	Merck	C-6448		MS	II	No efficacy
CCR2	Millennium	MLN 1202*		RA Atherosclerosis, MS	II II	No efficacy Ongoing
CCR2	Incyte	INCB8696		MS, Lupus	I	No longer reported
CCR2	Incyte	INCB3284	3.7	RA, Type II diabetes	II	No longer reported
CCR2	ChemoCentryx	CCX915		MS	I	Terminated
CCR2	ChemoCentryx	CCX140	2.3	Diabetic nephropathy	II	Ongoing
CCR2	Merck	MK-0812	5.0	RA, MS	II	No efficacy
CCR2	Pfizer	PF-4136309		Pain	II	No longer reported
CCR2	BMS	BMS-741672		Diabetic neuropathy	II	Ongoing
CCR2	Johnson & Johnson	JNJ-17166864	20.0	Allergic rhinitis	II	No efficacy
CCR3	Pharmaxis	ASM8†		Asthma	II	Ongoing
CCR3	GlaxoSmithKline	GSK766994	10.0	Asthma and allergic rhinitis	II	No efficacy
CCR3	Dupont	DPC168	2.0	Asthma	I	Development halted
CCR3	BMS	BMS-639623	0.3	Asthma	I	Ongoing
CCR3	Novartis	QAP-642		Allergic rhinitis	I	Development halted
CCR3	AstraZeneca	AZD3778	8.1	Allergic rhinitis	II	No longer reported
CCR4	Amgen	KW-0761*		Oncology	II	Ongoing
CCR4	GSK	GSK2239633	10.0	Asthma	I	Ongoing
CCR5	Pfizer	UK-427,857 (Maraviroc)	3.0	RA AIDS	II Approved	No efficacy Registered drug
CCR5	Schering-Plough	SCH-C	2.0	RA AIDS	II I	No efficacy Development halted
CCR5	Schering-Plough	SCH-D	0.45	AIDS	II	Development halted
CCR5	GlaxoSmithKline	GW2239633	3.0	AIDS	III	Development halted
CCR5	Incyte	INCB9471	3.1	AIDS	II	Development halted
CCR5	Progenics	PRO 140*		AIDS	II	Ongoing
CCR5	Tobira	TAK652 (cenicroviroc)	3.1‖	AIDS	II	Ongoing
CCR5	AstraZeneca	AZD5672	0.26	RA	II	No efficacy
CCR5	Novartis	NIBR-6465	0.8	AIDS	I	Ongoing
CCR5	Sangamo	SB-728‡		AIDS	II	Ongoing
CCR5	HGS	HGS004*		AIDS	I	Ongoing
CCR9	ChemoCentryx/GSK	CCX282/vercirnon	6.0	IBD, Crohn's disease	III	Terminated
CXCR1/CXCR2	Schering-Plough	SCH 527123	3.9 0.049	COPD	II	Ongoing
CXCR1/CXCR2	Dompé	Reparixin	1.0 (CXCR1) 100 (CXCR2)	Pancreatic islet transplantation	III	Ongoing
CXCR2	GlaxoSmithKline	SB-656933	5.1	COPD, cystic fibrosis	I	Ongoing
CXCR2	GlaxoSmithKline	GSK-1325756B		COPD?	I	Ongoing
CXCR2	AstraZeneca	AZD-5069		Bronchiectasis	II	Ongoing
CXCR3	Amgen	AMG487	8.0	Psoriasis	II	No efficacy
CXCR4	Genzyme/ Sanofi-Aventis	Plerixafor (AMD3100)	74	Stem cell mobilization for transplantation in cancer (MM, non-Hodgkins lymphoma)	Approved	Registered drug
CXCR4	TaiGen	Burixafor		Stem cell transplantation	II	Ongoing
CXCR4	Polyphor	POL6326		Stem cell transplantation	II	Ongoing
CXCR4	Medarex	MDX-1338*		Multiple myeloma	I	Ongoing
CXCR4	Biokine	BKT140§		Stem cell transplantation	I	Ongoing

IBD, inflammatory bowel disease; *MM,* multiple myeloma; *RA,* rheumatoid arthritis.
*Neutralizing monoclonal antibodies.
†Antisense oligonucleotide.
‡Zinc finger nuclease.
§Peptide.
‖Also has potent antagonist activity at CCR2.
From Bachelerie F, International Union of Basic and Clinical Pharmacology, et al: LXXXIX. Update on the extended family of chemokine receptors and introducing a new nomenclature for atypical chemokine receptors, *Pharmacol Rev* 66:1–79, 2014. Table 3.

TABLE 48-7
Selected Integrins Expressed by Leukocytes and/or Platelets

Integrin	Name	Ligands
$\alpha_1\beta_1$	VLA-1, CD49a/CD29	Collagen, LMN
$\alpha_2\beta_1$	VLA-2, GP Ia/IIa, CD49b/CD29	Collagen, LMN
$\alpha_4\beta_1$	VLA-4, CD49d/CD29	VCAM-1, FBN
$\alpha_5\beta_1$	VLA-5, CD49e/CD29	FBN
$\alpha_6\beta_1$	VLA-6, CD49f/CD29	LMN
$\alpha L\beta_2$	LFA-1, CD11a/CD18	ICAM-1, -2, -3
$\alpha M\beta_2$	Mac-1, CR3, CD11b/CD18	ICAM-1, iC3b
$\alpha X\beta_2$	p150,95, CR4, CD11c/CD18	FBGN, iC3b
$\alpha D\beta_2$	—	ICAM-3, VCAM-1
$\alpha IIb\beta_3$	GPIIb/IIIa, CD41/CD61	FBGN, vWF, FBN, VN
$\alpha V\beta_3$	CD51/CD61	VN, FBGN
$\alpha 4\beta_7$	LPAM-1	MAdCAM-1, FBN
$\alpha E\beta_7$	HML-1	E-cadherin

CR, Complement receptor; *FBGN,* fibrinogen; *FBN,* fibronectin; *GP,* glycoprotein; *ICAM,* intercellular adhesion molecule; *LFA,* lymphocyte functional antigen; *LMN,* laminin; *VCAM,* vascular cell adhesion molecule; *VN,* vitronectin; *vWF,* von Willebrand factor.

Adapted from Luo BH, Carman CV, Springer TA: Structural basis of integrin regulation and signaling, *Annu Rev Immunol* 25:619–647, 2007.

The α integrin subunits are 120- to 180-kDa transmembrane proteins with short intracytoplasmic domains, a long extracellular fragment with seven homologous domains, and, in some cases, an "inserted" (I) domain that features a metal ion–dependent adhesion site (MIDAS) and serves as a primary site for ligand binding (Luo et al, 2007). Conformational changes mediate bidirectional signaling via integrins. Inside-out signaling triggered by chemokines or other agonists increases integrin affinity for ligands by shifting the heterodimer from a low-affinity bent configuration to a higher-affinity extended or open configuration. Avidity of integrins for their ligands is a function not only of conformation but also of the distribution of integrins on the cell surface, however, and binding of proteins such as talin and kindlins to the β integrin cytoplasmic tail contributes to clustering of integrins. Integrin activation may additionally be enhanced by shear forces such as those resulting from leukocyte adhesion to endothelium (Kim et al, 2011).

The intracytoplasmic tails of α and β integrin subunits associate with cytoskeletal components to transduce outside-in signals such as that of $\alpha L\beta_2$(LFA-1)-ICAM-1 binding. In the process of signal transduction, integrins associate and interact with other cell membrane–associated proteins, cytoskeletal components, and noncytoskeletal cytoplasmic components. The integrin-associated protein (IAP or IAP 50) designated CD47, an IgSF member, is one such membrane-associated protein that, mainly through association with β3 integrins, may function as a signal transducer. Other membrane-associated proteins involved in integrin signaling include caveolin-1 and CD9, which are involved in cell membrane caveola formation and platelet aggregation, respectively (Porter & Hogg, 1998). Cytosolic molecules, including integrin cytoplasmic domain–associated protein (ICAP-1), help orchestrate the complex activity of β_1-integrin–mediated cell migration.

Perhaps the best studied intracytoplasmic associations of integrin molecules are those with the cytoskeleton-associated proteins α-actinin, talin, filamin, vinculin, tensin, and paxillin. These cytoskeleton proteins, through their association with β_1, β_2, and β_3 integrin subunits, bridge integrin and cytoskeleton and direct cell migration, phagocytosis, stress fiber formation at focal contact sites, and intracellular signal transduction, and link separate cytoskeletal proteins.

The pattern of integrin distribution is wide, especially among those integrins (mostly β_1) involved in anchoring cells to components of the general ECM such as collagen and laminin. For those integrins mediating attachment to less widely distributed components, tissue distribution likewise is more restricted. Restricted patterns of integrin expression are exploited clinically for classification of hematolymphoid neoplasms; for example, expression of the α subunit of integrin $\alpha X\beta_2$ (CD11c/CD18) is typical of hairy cell leukemia and of acute myeloid leukemias with monocytic features.

Monoclonal antibodies and other integrin antagonists are in clinical use, and additional anti-integrins are in clinical trials (Goodman & Picard, 2012). Integrin $\alpha IIb\beta_3$antagonists, which vary considerably in design, have been used for many years to prevent thrombosis during percutaneous coronary artery procedures. Abciximab is a mouse/human chimeric monoclonal antibody Fab fragment, while eptifibatide (a synthetic cyclic heptapeptide) and tirofiban (a nonpeptide small-molecule inhibitor) are non-mAb drugs; all three block $\alpha IIb\beta_3$(GPIIb/IIIa)-dependent platelet aggregation (Bledzka et al, 2013). Anti-integrins are also used to prevent leukocyte extravasation into sites involved by inflammatory diseases. α_4 integrins are the target of the humanized monoclonal antibody natalizumab, which has been used in the treatment of CD and MS. This novel therapy is not without significant risk, however, as several cases of therapy-related opportunistic infection and progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML) have been reported specifically with natalizumab (Stuve & Bennett, 2007). Vedolizumab, a humanized monoclonal antibody directed against $\alpha_4\beta_7$ integrin, has been approved more recently for use in the treatment of CD and ulcerative colitis, and it has not been associated with PML in clinical trials to date. Therapeutic interventions based on disruption of integrin ligands are also being investigated; among the approaches being taken is infusion of an antisense oligonucleotide targeting ICAM-1 mRNA.

SELECTINS

The selectin family is composed of three homologous proteins that bind to oligosaccharide moieties on glycoprotein ligands (Ley, 2003). Similarities are greatest among the selectins in their extracellular domains, which include a lectin domain, an epidermal growth factor (EGF) domain, and varied numbers of consensus repeat (CR) domains. Selectins are distinguished by the cells that express them and by their subcellular localization. L-selectin (CD62L) is expressed by most leukocytes at the tips of microvilli or microfolds, E-selectin (CD62E) is expressed by activated endothelial cells on their plasma membranes, and P-selectin (CD62P) is expressed by platelets and endothelial cells in secretory granules. L-selectin mediates lymphocyte homing or trafficking of T lymphocytes through binding to ligands expressed in high endothelial venules (HEVs), and it also contributes to neutrophil rolling on activated endothelium in regions of inflammation. Its ligands include GlyCAM (glycan-bearing cell-adhesion molecule)-1, MAdCAM (mucosal addressin cell-adhesion molecule)-1, and CD34. P-selectin is stored in the α granules and Weibel-Palade bodies of platelets and endothelial cells, respectively, and is expressed on the cell surface after cell activation. Once on the cell surface, P-selectin binds neutrophils, lymphocytes, and monocytes via its ligands, sialyl-Lewis-X- and sialyl-Lewis-A-family–type complex carbohydrate groups. E-selectin on the surface of activated endothelial cells recognizes ligands similar to those recognized by P-selectin. It plays a recognition role for homing effector and memory T cells as they localize to sites of inflammation.

The role of selectins is twofold: to mediate cell-cell interaction, and to contribute to cell activation by intracytoplasmic signaling. As with integrins, selectins are critical to the initial tethering and rolling of leukocytes along activated endothelium prior to extravasation. Fluid shear stress exerted by flowing blood supports the process, as the "catch bonds" between selectins and their ligands are strengthened, not weakened, by shear forces (Lawrence et al, 1997). After binding a soluble form of the mucin-like glycoprotein GlyCAM-1 (a high endothelial venule product), L-selectin is able to mediate the activation of β_1 integrins and their adhesion to fibronectin. P- and E-selectin may also serve as signal-transducing receptor molecules, because a rise in intracellular free Ca^{2+} within leukocytes adhering to endothelial cells is linked to these selectin molecules (Huang et al, 1993). The most frequently used quantitative assays for soluble plasma or serum selectins are sandwich immunoassays (Mousa, 2008), and numerous investigators have been exploring the potential utility of soluble P-selectin levels as a biomarker for diagnosis of deep vein thrombosis. Concentrations of soluble forms of selectins and other CAMs (e.g., ICAM-1) in the plasma may reflect ongoing inflammation and consequently have been explored as potential biomarkers of risk for inflammation-associated disease states such as atherosclerosis (Jenny et al, 2006). Studies assessing potential therapeutic interventions based on disruption of selectin function are ongoing.

LEUKOCYTE EXTRAVASATION

Tissue damage or infections initiate host defense mechanisms dependent on the cytokine and cell-adhesion molecule families. Leukocyte mobilization to sites of damage or infection is a crucial step in this process. Selectins initiate the capture and rolling of leukocytes on the endothelial surface. Chemokines on the endothelial surface interact with leukocyte chemokine receptors and trigger the activation of integrins. Leukocyte integrin interaction with cytokine-induced adhesion molecules on the endothelial

cell surface is critical to the evolution of inflammatory and immune responses and is required for stable adhesion of leukocytes to the endothelial surface. Subsequent to adhesion and migration, leukocytes transmigrate through the endothelial cell layer either through junctions between cells (paracellular) or through the body of an endothelial cell (transcellular) (Vestweber, 2012). In addition, homing of lymphoid cells to their sites of residence and intravascular spread of metastases involve similar endothelial interactions.

Extravasation of leukocytes occurs during cell homing, as with trafficking of γ/δ T cells to Peyer's patches, and as part of the inflammatory/immune response. Both processes involve similar steps and the use of adhesion molecules. In inflammation, the process begins with local release of proinflammatory cytokines such as TNF, IL-1, and IFN-γ, which activate the local endothelium to increase surface expression of adhesion molecules, including members of the immunoglobulin superfamily, vascular cell adhesion molecule (VCAM)-1 and ICAM-1. In addition, endothelial cells release chemotactic agents, including IL-8, forming a surface-bound and soluble chemotactic gradient recognizable by transmigrating inflammatory cells, which localize them to the inflammatory focus.

This process for leukocytes (Fig. 48-1) involves (1) tethering of the passing leukocyte to the endothelial surface mainly by endothelial selectins (E- and P-selectin) and their leukocyte ligand sialyl-Lewis X-modified glycoprotein; and (2) leukocyte rolling in which, through rapid sequential surface expression of mainly leukocyte VLA-4 and $\alpha_4\beta7$ integrin, the shear force provided by the bloodstream rolls leukocytes along the endothelial surface, thereby bringing these integrins into contact with their endothelial ligands, VCAM-1 and MAdCAM-1, respectively. In the case of neutrophils, rolling is mediated by selectins alone. As they roll, leukocyte cell adhesion molecules trigger biochemical events, leading to (3) leukocyte activation and conversion of its integrins to an activated state of increased avidity. This leads to increased leukocyte–endothelial cell adhesion, and eventually to (4) arrest of leukocyte rolling, and (5) leukocyte transmigration of the endothelium with the assistance of the homotypic adhesion molecule CD31 expressed on both leukocytes and the endothelium, while following a chemotactic gradient. Once through the endothelium, integrin-mediated cell migration through the extracellular matrix along a chemotactic gradient completes the leukocyte journey to a focus of inflammation.

Deficiency states for β_2 integrins (leukocyte adhesion deficiency type I) and congenital defects in the expression of selectins and their ligands demonstrate the indispensable role that these receptors play in producing the inflammatory response and in lymphocyte trafficking. In these patients, neutrophils are unable to exit the bloodstream and migrate to sites of inflammation or infection, creating in effect a state of immune suppression with increased susceptibility to bacterial infection and a paradoxical peripheral neutrophilia (Hanna & Etzioni, 2012). The events surrounding septic shock, thrombosis, reperfusion injury, and metastases also require integrin and selectin activity. This knowledge has led to the therapeutic use of monoclonal antibodies, soluble adhesion molecule ligands, and other interventions, including antisense oligonucleotides, to overcome adhesion molecule–mediated disease (Buckley et al, 1996; Gonzalez-Amaro & Sanchez-Madrid, 1999).

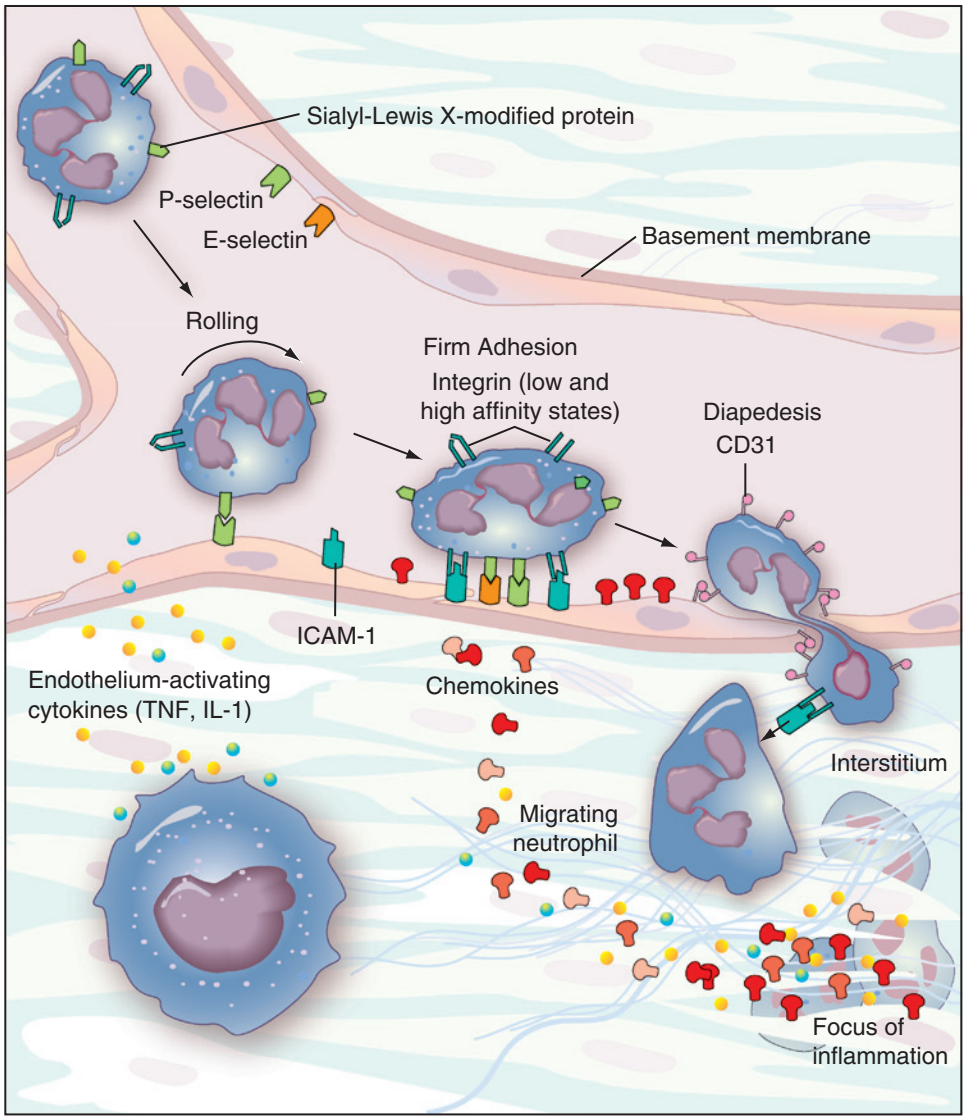


Figure 48-1 Adhesion molecules on the surfaces of leukocytes and activated endothelial cells guide the movement of white blood cells from the bloodstream to foci of tissue inflammation. Direction is provided by a chemotactic gradient. *ICAM,* intercellular adhesion molecule; *IL,* interleukin; *TNF,* tumor necrosis factor.

PERSPECTIVES

Dysregulation of cytokine and cell adhesion molecule functions are important in disease states, most notably autoimmune diseases. They are also recognized as major contributors to many cancers. Because of this, a number of therapies have been designed to enhance or reduce the actions of various cytokines, chemokines, cell-adhesion molecules, and their receptor activities.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Akdis M, Burgler S, Crameri R, et al: Interleukins, from 1 to 37, and interferon-gamma: receptors, functions, and roles in diseases, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 127:701–721, e701–e770, 2011.

This article describes a major family of cytokines, the interleukins, their functions, and roles in disease states, and highlights the importance of cytokine networks.

Gonzalez-Amaro R, Diaz-Gonzalez F, Sanchez-Madrid F: Adhesion molecules in inflammatory diseases, *Drugs* 56:977–988, 1998.

This article provides an excellent and in-depth review of the process of leukocyte diapedesis. Pharmacologic therapeutic blocking of this process is discussed.

Zlotnik A, Yoshie O: The chemokine superfamily revisited, *Immunity* 36:705–716, 2012.

This article is an overview of the chemokine superfamily of proteins.

REFERENCES

Abram CL, Lowell CA: The ins and outs of leukocyte integrin signaling, *Annu Rev Immunol* 27:339–362, 2009.

Akdis M, Burgler S, Crameri R, et al: Interleukins, from 1 to 37, and interferon-gamma: receptors, functions, and roles in diseases, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 127:701–721, e701–e770, 2011.

Bachelerie F, Ben-Baruch A, Burkhardt AM, et al: International Union of Basic and Clinical Pharmacology. [corrected]. LXXXIX. Update on the extended family of chemokine receptors and introducing a new nomenclature for atypical chemokine receptors, *Pharmacol Rev* 66:1–79, 2014.

Balkwill F: Cancer and the chemokine network, *Nat Rev Cancer* 4:540–550, 2004.

Baud'huin M, Duplomb L, Teletchea S, et al: Osteoprotegerin: multiple partners for multiple functions, *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev* 24:401–409, 2013.

Bizzarri C, Beccari AR, Bertini R, et al: ELR+ CXC chemokines and their receptors (CXC chemokine receptor 1 and CXC chemokine receptor 2) as new therapeutic targets, *Pharmacol Ther* 112:139–149, 2006.

Bledzka K, Smyth SS, Plow EF: Integrin αIIbβ3: from discovery to efficacious therapeutic target, *Circ Res* 112:1189–1200, 2013.

Boring L, Gosling J, Cleary M, et al: Decreased lesion formation in CCR2$^{-/-}$ mice reveals a role for chemokines in the initiation of atherosclerosis, *Nature* 394:894–897, 1998.

Brocker C, Thompson D, Matsumoto A, et al: Evolutionary divergence and functions of the human interleukin (IL) gene family, *Hum Genomics* 5:30–55, 2010.

Buckley TL, Bloemen PG, Henricks PA, et al: LFA-1 and ICAM-1 are crucial for the induction of hyperreactivity in the mouse airways, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 796:149–161, 1996.

Cao H: Adipocytokines in obesity and metabolic disease, *J Endocrinol* 220:T47–T59, 2014.

Cutler A, Brombacher F: Cytokine therapy, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1056:16–29, 2005.

Dinarello CA: Historical insights into cytokines, *Eur J Immunol* 37(Suppl 1):S34–S45, 2007.

Garin A, Proudfoot AE: Chemokines as targets for therapy, *Exp Cell Res* 317:602–612, 2011.

Garlanda C, Dinarello CA, Mantovani A: The interleukin-1 family: back to the future, *Immunity* 39:1003–1018, 2013.

Gilbert J, Lekstrom-Himes J, Donaldson D, et al: Effect of CC chemokine receptor 2 CCR2 blockade on serum C-reactive protein in individuals at atherosclerotic risk and with a single nucleotide polymorphism of the monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 promoter region, *Am J Cardiol* 107:906–911, 2011.

Ginestier C, Liu S, Diebel ME, et al: CXCR1 blockade selectively targets human breast cancer stem cells in vitro and in xenografts, *J Clin Invest* 120:485–497, 2010.

Gonzalez-Amaro R, Sanchez-Madrid F: Cell adhesion molecules: selectins and integrins, *Crit Rev Immunol* 19:389–429, 1999.

Goodman SL, Picard M: Integrins as therapeutic targets, *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 33:405–412, 2012.

Gruber R: Cell biology of osteoimmunology, *Wien Med Wochenschr* 160:438–445, 2010.

Gu C, Wu L, Li X: IL-17 family: cytokines, receptors and signaling, *Cytokine* 64:477–485, 2013.

Hanna S, Etzioni A: Leukocyte adhesion deficiencies, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1250:50–55, 2012.

Huang AJ, Manning JE, Bandak TM, et al: Endothelial cell cytosolic free calcium regulates neutrophil migration across monolayers of endothelial cells, *J Cell Biol* 120:1371–1380, 1993.

Huang C: Receptor-Fc fusion therapeutics, traps, and MIMETIBODY technology, *Curr Opin Biotechnol* 20:692–699, 2009.

Ivashkiv LB, Donlin LT: Regulation of type I interferon responses, *Nat Rev Immunol* 14:36–49, 2014.

Jenny NS, Arnold AM, Kuller LH, et al: Soluble intracellular adhesion molecule-1 is associated with cardiovascular disease risk and mortality in older adults, *J Thromb Haemost* 4:107–113, 2006.

Kazi JU, Kabir NN, Flores-Morales A, et al: SOCS proteins in regulation of receptor tyrosine kinase signaling, *Cell Mol Life Sci* 71:3297–3310, 2014.

Kim C, Ye F, Ginsberg MH: Regulation of integrin activation, *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* 27:321–345, 2011.

Koelink PJ, Overbeek SA, Braber S, et al: Targeting chemokine receptors in chronic inflammatory diseases: an extensive review, *Pharmacol Ther* 133:1–18, 2012.

Kriegova E, Tsyrulnyk A, Arakelyan A, et al: Expression of CCX CKR in pulmonary sarcoidosis, *Inflamm Res* 55:441–445, 2006.

Kumar A, Abbas W, Herbein G: TNF and TNF receptor superfamily members in HIV infection: new cellular targets for therapy?, *Mediators Inflamm* 2013: 484378, 2013.

Lawrence MB, Kansas GS, Kunkel EJ, et al: Threshold levels of fluid shear promote leukocyte adhesion through selectins (CD62L,P,E), *J Cell Biol* 136:717–727, 1997.

Leal Vde O, Mafra D: Adipokines in obesity, *Clin Chim Acta* 419:87–94, 2013.

Ley K: The role of selectins in inflammation and disease, *Trends Mol Med* 9:263–268, 2003.

Ley K, Laudanna C, Cybulsky MI, et al: Getting to the site of inflammation: the leukocyte adhesion cascade updated, *Nat Rev Immunol* 7:678–689, 2007.

Luo BH, Carman CV, Springer TA: Structural basis of integrin regulation and signaling, *Annu Rev Immunol* 25:619–647, 2007.

Mahler DA, Huang S, Tabrizi M, et al: Efficacy and safety of a monoclonal antibody recognizing interleukin-8 in COPD: a pilot study, *Chest* 126:926–934, 2004.

Maussang D, Langemeijer E, Fitzsimons CP, et al: The human cytomegalovirus-encoded chemokine receptor US28 promotes angiogenesis and tumor formation via cyclooxygenase-2, *Cancer Res* 69:2861–2869, 2009.

Metcalf D: The colony-stimulating factors and cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 10:425–434, 2010.

Miyake M, Goodison S, Urquidi V, et al: Expression of CXCL1 in human endothelial cells induces angiogenesis through the CXCR2 receptor and the ERK1/2 and EGF pathways, *Lab Invest* 93:768–778, 2013a.

Miyake M, Lawton A, Goodison S, et al: Chemokine (C-X-C) ligand 1 (CXCL1) protein expression is increased in aggressive bladder cancers, *BMC Cancer* 13:322, 2013b.

Moraga I, Spangler J, Mendoza JL, et al: Multifarious determinants of cytokine receptor signaling specificity, *Adv Immunol* 121:1–39, 2014.

Mousa SA: Cell adhesion molecules: potential therapeutic & diagnostic implications, *Mol Biotechnol* 38:33–40, 2008.

Nakashima T, Takayanagi H: New regulation mechanisms of osteoclast differentiation, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1240:E13–E18, 2011.

Oppenheim JJ, Yang D, Biragyn A, et al: Chemokine receptors on dendritic cells promote autoimmune reactions, *Arthritis Res* 4(Suppl 3):S183–S188, 2002.

Ouchi N, Parker JL, Lugus JJ, et al: Adipokines in inflammation and metabolic disease, *Nat Rev Immunol* 11:85–97, 2011.

Porter JC, Hogg N: Integrins take partners: cross-talk between integrins and other membrane receptors, *Trends Cell Biol* 8:390–396, 1998.

Regis G, Pensa S, Boselli D, et al: Ups and downs: the STAT1:STAT3 seesaw of Interferon and gp130 receptor signalling, *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 19:351–359, 2008.

Sallusto F, Lanzavecchia A: Understanding dendritic cell and T-lymphocyte traffic through the analysis of chemokine receptor expression, *Immunol Rev* 177:134–140, 2000.

Schett G, Elewaut D, McInnes IB, et al: How cytokine networks fuel inflammation: Toward a cytokine-based disease taxonomy, *Nat Med* 19:822–824, 2013.

Schnabel RB, Baumert J, Barbalic M, et al: Duffy antigen receptor for chemokines (Darc) polymorphism regulates circulating concentrations of monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 and other inflammatory mediators, *Blood* 115:5289–5299, 2010.

Scholten DJ, Canals M, Maussang D, et al: Pharmacological modulation of chemokine receptor function, *Br J Pharmacol* 165:1617–1643, 2012.

Stuve O, Bennett JL: Pharmacological properties, toxicology and scientific rationale for the use of natalizumab (Tysabri) in inflammatory diseases, *CNS Drug Rev* 13:79–95, 2007.

Tacke F, Alvarez D, Kaplan TJ, et al: Monocyte subsets differentially employ CCR2, CCR5, and CX3CR1 to accumulate within atherosclerotic plaques, *J Clin Invest* 117:185–194, 2007.

Vainchenker W, Dusa A, Constantinescu SN: JAKs in pathology: role of Janus kinases in hematopoietic malignancies and immunodeficiencies, *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 19:385–393, 2008.

Vestweber D: Novel insights into leukocyte extravasation, *Curr Opin Hematol* 19:212–217, 2012.

Viola A, Luster AD: Chemokines and their receptors: drug targets in immunity and inflammation, *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 48:171–197, 2008.

Wang X, Lupardus P, Laporte SL, et al: Structural biology of shared cytokine receptors, *Annu Rev Immunol* 27:29–60, 2009.

Zlotnik A, Yoshie O: The chemokine superfamily revisited, *Immunity* 36:705–716, 2012.

Zlotnik A, Yoshie O, Nomiyama H: The chemokine and chemokine receptor superfamilies and their molecular evolution, *Genome Biol* 7:243, 2006.

CHAPTER 49

HUMAN LEUKOCYTE ANTIGEN: THE MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX OF MAN

Omar Roberto Fagoaga

GENETICS OF THE MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX, 956
Basic Genetics, 956
Composition of the MHC, 957
Localization of MHC Genes, 958
Inheritance, 958
Linkage Disequilibrium, 958
Ethnic Variation, 958

CLASS I MOLECULES—HLA-A, HLA-B, AND HLA-C SUBREGIONS, 958
Structure of Class I Molecules, 959
Organization of Class I Genes, 960
Regulation of Class I Gene Expression, 960
Function of Class I Molecules, 961
Other Class I Genes, 961

CLASS II MOLECULES—HLA-DR, HLA-DQ, AND HLA-DP SUBREGIONS, 962
Structure of Class II Molecules, 962
Organization of Class II Genes, 962
Linkage Disequilibrium of Genes in the Class II Region, 963
Regulation of Class II Gene Expression, 963
Function of Class II Molecules, 963
Other Class II Genes, 963

CHARACTERISTICS OF ANTIGENIC FRAGMENTS BOUND BY MHC CLASS I AND CLASS II MOLECULES, 964

RECOGNITION OF FOREIGN MHC MOLECULES, 964

TANDEM REPEATS AND SINGLE-NUCLEOTIDE POLYMORPHISMS IN THE MHC, 964

MINOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY MOLECULES, 964

HLA NOMENCLATURE, 964
Serologic and Cellular Specificities, 964
DNA-Based Allele Designations, 965

TECHNIQUES FOR IDENTIFYING HLA POLYMORPHISM, 965
DNA-Based Typing of Class I and Class II Alleles, 965
Serologic Detection of Class I and Class II Molecules, 967
Cellular Detection of Class II Molecules, 967

TISSUE/ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION, 968
Genetic Basis of Transplantation, 968
Histocompatibility Matching, 969
Renal Transplantation, 971
Nonrenal Organ Transplantation, 971
Allogeneic Hematopoietic Progenitor Cell Transplantation, 971

SUMMARY, 972

SELECTED REFERENCES, 972

KEY POINTS

- Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules include HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C; MHC class II molecules include HLA-DRB1, HLA-DQB1-DQA1, and HLA-DPB1-DPA1; these are the classic "transplantation" antigens.
- MHC genes are closely linked and segregate en bloc to offspring.
- Characterization of human leukocyte antigen (HLA) and alleles has been combined with clinical protocols to maximize donor and recipient compatibility, and to minimize the impact of the immune response on the transplanted organ. Advances in this area have contributed to the development of transplantation as a successful treatment modality for the replacement of diseased tissue.
- HLA matching usually includes evaluation of at least three loci: HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C and HLA-DR, HLA-DQB1, HLA-DQA1, HLA-DPB1, HLA-DPA1. Individuals matched, at whatever resolution, for all three loci are termed 6/6 matches or 0 mismatches.
- Patients can be sensitized to specific foreign HLA molecules through transfusion, pregnancy, or prior transplantation. Assessment of compatibility between the recipient and the possible donor includes testing for this sensitization.
- Several methods are available for HLA typing, including serologic and cellular typing approaches and DNA-based molecular typing. DNA-based typing has significant advantages over the other methods.

Survival depends on the ability of the immune system to recognize and respond to a multitude of foreign substances (antigens). Although this defense mechanism is basic to survival in a hostile world of microorganisms, this same defense system has a negative impact when tissue is transplanted from one individual to another, or when malfunctioning triggers autoaggressive reactions. The MHC genes encode proteins that are essential to immune recognition: the class I and class II molecules (Fig. 49-1). In the human, class I molecules plus β^2 macroglobulin (heterodimers) include HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C, and class II molecules (alpha-beta heterodimers) include HLA-DR, HLA-DQ, and HLA-DP. These molecules are the classic transplantation antigens. Other molecules encoded within the MHC are the class III molecules (Chapter 49). These include the MHC-linked complement components (C2, C4, and Bf), 21-hydroxylase (CYP21), heat-shock protein (HSP)70, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF).

During an infection, the invading microorganism may infect or be engulfed by cells, and then may be degraded into peptide fragments. Inside the cell (in the endoplasmic reticulum, class I, and HLA class II compartment), nascent HLA class I or class II molecules bind antigenic fragments derived from the microorganism. Once antigenic fragments have bound to the HLA molecules and have translocated to the cell surface, receptors on T lymphocytes interact with the complex of antigen fragment–HLA molecule (immune synapse), triggering humoral and cellular immune responses (Fig. 49-2). T cell–specific cell surface molecules, CD4 and CD8, act to strengthen this cellular interaction and to transmit intracellular activation signals. Other cell surface molecules act to increase the affinity of cellular interactions (e.g., CD2 and its ligand, CD58 [LFA-3], or CD11a/CD18 [LFA-1] and its ligand, CD54 [ICAM-1]), and to transmit costimulatory signals (e.g., CD28 and its ligands, CD80/CD86 [B7], or CD40 and its ligand, CD154). Polymorphism in MHC genes that specify HLA class I and class II alleles affects the antigen-binding specificity of the molecules, resulting in differences in immune responses among members of the species. The same pattern of interactions between a cell bearing an MHC class I or class II antigen fragment complex and a T lymphocyte occurs not only in recognition of invading pathogens but also in recognition of foreign HLA class I and class II molecules (alloantigens) and in recognition of self-antigens (autoantigens) (see Chapter 50).

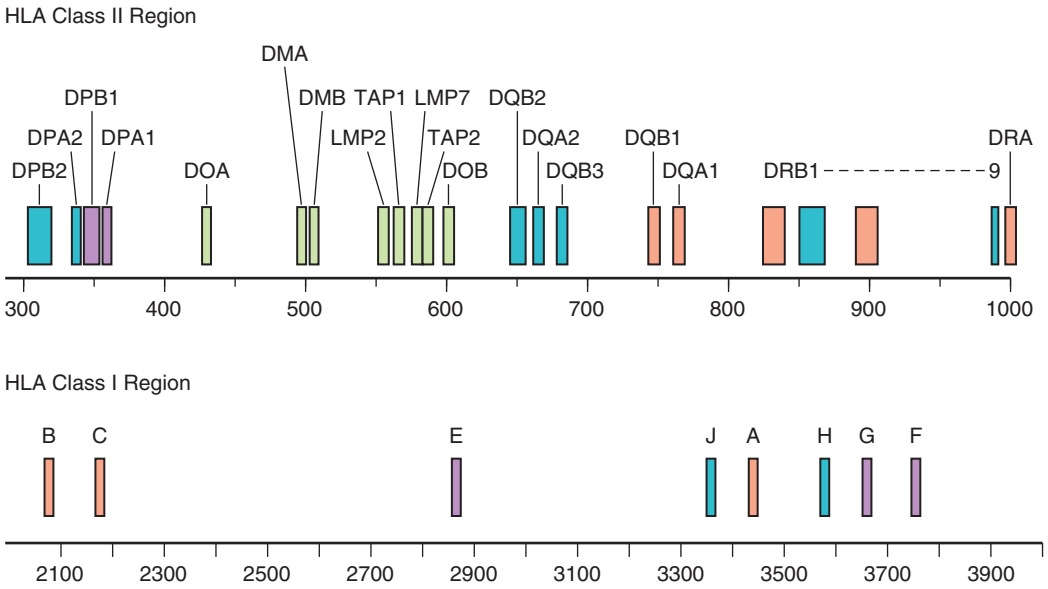


Figure 49-1 **Map of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) gene on chromosome 6.** HLA-DPB2 in the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) class II region is located closest to the centromere. HLA-F is the most telomeric. The region between HLA-DRA and HLA-B is not shown. (With permission from the Anthony Nolan Bone Marrow Trust, Available at: www.anthonynolan.org.uk/hig.)

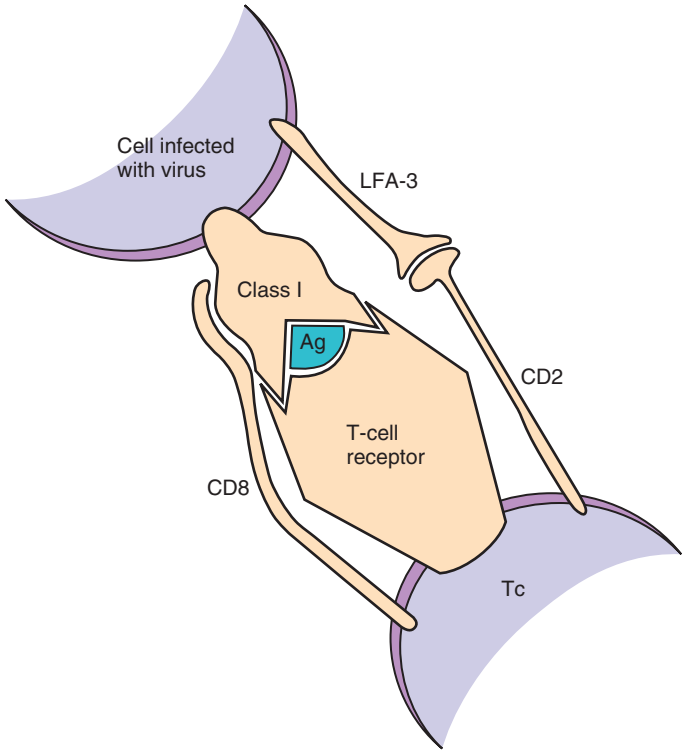


Figure 49-2 **Model of the molecular interactions involved in antigen recognition.**

Because donor HLA class I and class II molecules are recognized by the recipient's immune system as foreign antigens, it is beneficial to ensure that donor and recipient are histo- (i.e., tissue) compatible (i.e., HLA-matched). HLA class I and class II molecules have great allelic diversity within a population, so ensuring compatibility between donor and recipient is often a difficult task that requires collaboration among medical staff, clinical HLA-typing personnel, and donor tissue coordinators (e.g., large organ-sharing networks, registries, or banks of hematopoietic progenitor cell donors).

The genetics, structure, function, nomenclature, and techniques of detection of human MHC gene products—HLA-A, -B, and -C (class I) and HLA-DR, -DQ, and -DP (class II)—are discussed in this chapter. Also discussed is the importance of HLA matching for transplantation. In addition to references listed at the end of the chapter, Table 49-1 presents helpful websites that provide both reference material and updates of clinical outcomes.

GENETICS OF THE MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX

BASIC GENETICS

Mendel's first law, the law of segregation, is based on the principle that hereditary traits are determined by factors that are distributed to progeny. In any one individual, these factors, or *genes* as they are now called, are present on chromosomes (Chapter 68). Each gene may have multiple forms (i.e., alleles). Because humans are diploid, two genes are included per pair of homologous chromosomes. In meiosis, the chromosomes segregate randomly during formation of the gametes (ova or sperm) so that only one of each pair of chromosomes (i.e., a haploid number) is transmitted by any given gamete. The double, or diploid, number of chromosomes is restored when the male and female gamete fuse to form the zygote. Thus, for a trait determined by one gene, there will always be four possible genetic combinations in the offspring, each with equal probability of occurrence. These laws of segregation and random assortment apply to genes of the MHC system. Following are definitions for genetic terms that will be used in this chapter (Crow, 1976; www.nhgri.nih.gov):

Gene: Unit factor of inheritance
Chromosome: Carrier of the unit factors of inheritance
Locus: Position of a gene on a chromosome
Allele: An alternative form of a gene at a single locus
Homozygous: Having identical alleles at a locus, one on each chromosome
Heterozygous: Having different alleles at a locus, one on each chromosome
Codominance: The state in which the allele at each locus expresses its characteristic effect equally in the heterozygote
Genotype: Genetic composition of an organism or individual
Phenotype: Observable characteristics produced by the genes
Polymorphic: Having two or more common distinct genotypes maintained in a population
Homologous chromosomes: The two members of a chromosome pair that have corresponding gene loci, one derived from each parent
Crossing over: Exchange of segments between homologous chromosomes; also termed *recombination*.
Allo-(antigen, graft): Refers to antigenic differences between individuals of a single species
Auto-(antigen, graft): Refers to tissue or antigens of the same individual (i.e., self)

TABLE 49-1
Websites on HLA Transplantation

Address	Information
www.ashi-hla.org	American Society for Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics, HLA typing standards
www.ebi.ac.uk/imgt/hla	HLA sequence database, tools for allele submission and sequence manipulation
www.anthonynolan.org.uk/hig	World Health Organization nomenclature information
www.ihwc.org or www.ihwg.org	International Histocompatibility Workshop
www.marrow.org	National Marrow Donor Program
www.bmdw.org	Bone Marrow Donors Worldwide
www.worldmarrow.org	World Marrow Donor Association
www.cibmtr.org	Center for International Blood & Marrow Research
www.ctstransplant.org	Collaborative Transplant Study
www.unos.org	United Network for Organ Sharing
www.nhgri.nih.gov	National Human Genome Research Institute

COMPOSITION OF THE MHC

The major histocompatibility gene complex in humans is located on the short arm of chromosome 6 (i.e., 6p21). It spans 3600 kb (kilobases) and includes 224 identified gene loci, of which 128 are predicted to be expressed. Approximately 40% of the expressed genes are estimated to have an immune system function (Aguado et al, 1999). MHC genes are located in six subregions: HLA-A, HLA-C, HLA-B, HLA-DR, HLA-DQ, and HLA-DP (see Fig. 49-1). Each subregion encodes a minimum of one cell surface glycoprotein. With only one exception, the MHC genes are highly polymorphic, that is, each MHC gene has multiple alleles in the human population. Indeed, the MHC genes are the most polymorphic loci known in man (Parham et al, 1995; Table 49-2; www.anthonynolan.org/uk/hig). Because MHC genes specify molecules that play an important role in the immune response, polymorphism is believed to be essential to survival of the species and to be maintained in the population by selection; the introduction of molecular typing techniques in the 1980s allowed determination of the variability of the MHC region. As of October 2014 (http://hla.alleles.org/nomenclature/stats.html), more than 9232 class I and more than 3010 class II alleles had been identified (Fig. 49-3; http://hla.alleles.org/nomenclature/nomenclature_2009.html). In this newly found genetic variation, the HLA-B locus presents the greatest variability with 3693 alleles, followed by the HLA-A locus with 2946 and the HLA-C locus with at least 2466 alleles. In contrast, for class II alleles, the most variable locus is the DRB1 locus with 1582 alleles, followed by the DQB1 locus with 712, the DPB1 locus with 472, and the DQA1 locus with 52 alleles.

TABLE 49-2
Examples of WHO-Recognized HLA Antigens (Specificities) Defined by Serologic Typing and HLA Alleles Defined by DNA Sequencing[†]

HLA-A Antigens	HLA-DQ Antigens	HLA-A Alleles[‡]	HLA-DQA1 Alleles[§]	HLA-DBQ1 Alleles[§]
A1	DQ1	A*0101-0104N	DQA1*0101-*0105	DQB1*0501-*0504
A2	DQ2	A*02011-*0230	DQA1*0201	DQB1*06011-*0615
A203	DQ3	A*03011-*0304	DQA1*03011-0303	DQB1*0201-*0203
A210	DQ4	A*1101-*1105	DQA1*0401	DQB1*03011-*0309
A3	DQ5(1)	A*2301	DQA1*05011-*0505	DQB1*0401-*0402
A9	DQ6(1)	A*2402101-*2420	DQA1*06011-*06012	
A10	DQ7(3)	A*2501-*2502		
A11	DQ8(3)	A*2601-*2612		
A19	DQ9(3)	A*2901-*2904		
A23(9)		A*3001-*3007		
A24(9)		A*31012-*3104		
A2403		A*3201-*3203		
A25(10)		A*3301-*3304		
A26(10)		A*3401-*3402		
A28		A*3601		
A29(19)		A*4301		
A30(19)		A*6601-*6603		
A31(19)		A*68011-*6809		
A32(19)		A*6901		
A33(19)		A*7401-*7403		
A34(10)		A*8001		
A36				
A43				
A66(10)				
A68(28)				
A69(28)				
A74(19)				
A80				

Adapted from www.anthonynolan.org.uk/hig, with permission of SGE Marsh.
HLA, Human leukocyte antigen; *WHO,* World Health Organization.
[†]Each column of the table is independent. Numbers in parentheses indicate the broad serologic specificity. The serologic type may be listed without the broad specificity. For example, both A23(9) and A23 are correct designations.
[‡]HLA-A alleles specify HLA-A antigens. The antigen A1 is specified by either A*0101 or A*0102 or A*0103 alleles. A*0104N is a null or nonexpressed allele.
[§]HLA-DQA1 and HLA-DQB1 alleles specify HLA-DQ antigens. The antigen DQ5 (1) is specified by several different DQA1 and DQB1 combinations, including (1) DQA1*0101 and DQB1*0501 and (2) DQA1*0101 and DQB1*0502 alleles. In the past, serologic split designations were given to specificities that appeared to identify the antigen specified by a single HLA allele (e.g., A2 splits A203, A210; B7 splits B703; B39 splits B3901 and B3902). It is now recognized that other alleles may also encode antigens that carry these serologic specificities, and the WHO Nomenclature Committee has recommended that these splits be discontinued.

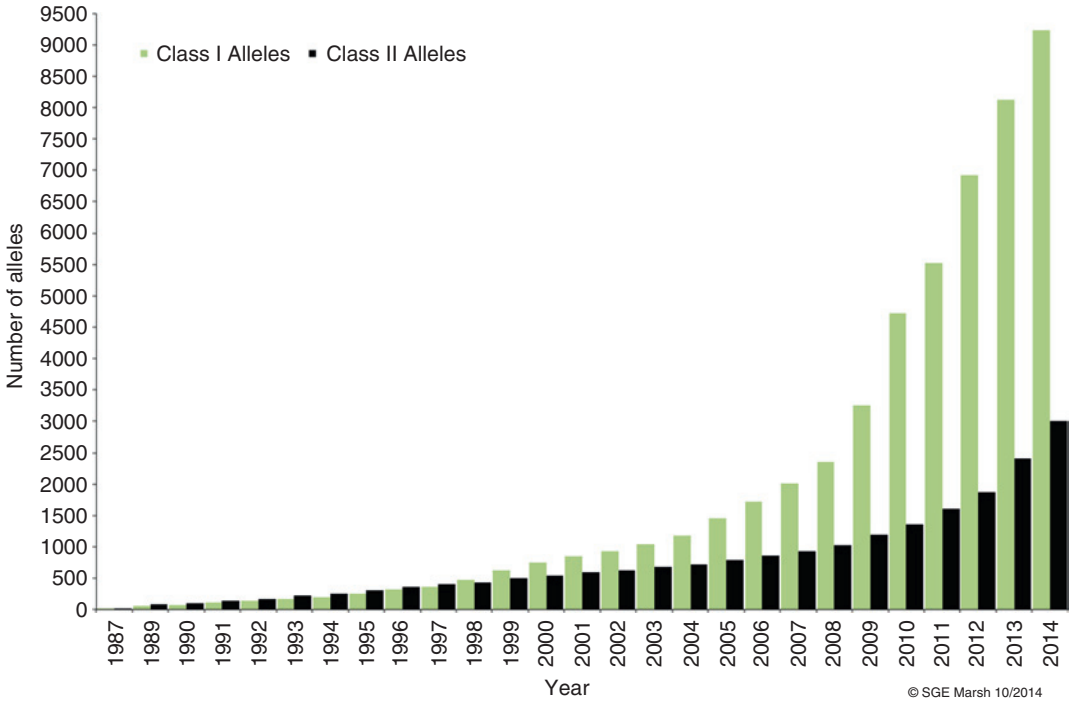


Figure 49-3 Numbers of class I and II alleles discovered from 1987 to 2009. The increase in the number of discovered alleles during this period was made possible by the introduction of DNA typing methods; class I alleles include HLA-A, -B, and -Cw, and class II alleles include HLA-DRB1, -DQB1, -DQA1, and -DPB1. (Data from Anthony Nolan Research Institute. Available at: http://hla.alleles.org/nomenclature/nomenclature_2009.html.)

LOCALIZATION OF MHC GENES

The genes of the MHC were assigned to the short arm of chromosome 6 (6p) on the basis of cytogenetic studies of aberrant chromosomes (i.e., chromosomes that have undergone a translocation). The map order and positioning of the MHC genes were determined by meiotic linkage analyses (i.e., studies of crossing over in families) and molecular biology techniques, including gene cloning, DNA sequencing, and pulsed field gel electrophoresis. The latter technique detects the presence of genes on single long fragments of DNA. The map order of genes within the MHC is HLA-A, -C, -B, -DR, -DQ, and -DP, with HLA-A being distal to the centromere (see Fig. 49-1).

INHERITANCE

The MHC genes are closely linked, that is, they segregate en bloc to the offspring. The complex of linked genes that resides on one of the pair of homologous chromosomes and that segregates en bloc to the offspring is termed a *haplotype*. Each individual inherits two MHC haplotypes—one from each parent—and thus has two alleles for each of the genes. These alleles are codominantly expressed. The inheritance of the MHC genes follows the rules of segregation set down by Mendel. Within a family, each child inherits one MHC haplotype from the mother and one from the father. By convention, the paternal haplotypes are designated a and b, and the maternal haplotypes c and d. Thus, there are four possible MHC genotypes in the offspring: ac, ad, bc, and bd. Because the chance of inheriting a given haplotype is random, the probability of occurrence of any one of the four genotypes is one in four for each mating. In a family with five children, at least two of the children will be HLA-identical (assuming no crossing over). Although the MHC genes are closely linked, families have been reported in which a crossover has occurred. The frequency of crossing over between two linked genes was thought to be a measure of the distance separating the genes; however, molecular data have suggested the existence of recombination "hot" spots in the intervening DNA that can increase or decrease the likelihood of recombination during meiosis (Uematsu et al, 1988).

LINKAGE DISEQUILIBRIUM

The observation that alleles at different genetic loci occur in the population on the same haplotype significantly more frequently than would be expected on the basis of chance alone is called *linkage disequilibrium*. The expected frequency of two alleles (f_1, f_2) is the product of the gene frequency of each allele in that population ($f_{expected} = f_1 \times f_2$). The observed frequency is determined from family studies within the same population. Linkage disequilibrium is a hallmark of the human MHC and extends from HLA-A through HLA-DQ. The best known example of linkage disequilibrium is the A1,Cw7,B8,DR17(3),DR52,DQ2 haplotype in Caucasians, which is observed approximately four times more frequently than expected. The significance of linkage disequilibrium as it applies to immune competence and disease is discussed in Chapter 49 in the "Extended Haplotypes" section.

ETHNIC VARIATION

Accumulated data from the study of the world population groups (Dausset & Colombani, 1973; Imanishi et al, 1992; Cadavid & Watkins, 1997; Bugawan et al, 1999) demonstrate that the frequencies of HLA alleles differ significantly among ethnic population groups. MHC haplotypes and linkage disequilibrium of alleles also differ. These observations were taken into account when unrelated allograft hematopoietic progenitor cell donor registries and banks such as the U.S. National Marrow Donor Program (NMDP) were established (Perkins & Hansen, 1994). Both allele and haplotype frequencies dictate the number of volunteers required to find an HLA-matched unrelated donor for any patient. Some patients (e.g., those with rare or unusual types) cannot find closely matched unrelated donors from among the more than 11 million volunteers listed in the NMDP registry as of 2013 (Fig. 49-4). Currently, patients are more likely to find a match because the number of donors has increased, as has the use of umbilical cord blood units for transplantation (Fig. 49-5). It appears that cord blood transplantation may be more tolerant of HLA mismatches; this may be a result of reexposure to noninherited maternal antigens (NIMAs) found in the graft (van Rood et al, 2009). Improvement in methods used for engraftment of progenitor cells from partially HLA-mismatched donors may allow transplantation in patients for whom close matches cannot be found (Chapter 38).

CLASS I MOLECULES—HLA-A, HLA-B, AND HLA-C SUBREGIONS

The HLA-A and -B molecules were the first MHC molecules to be described in humans (Dausset, 1981; van Rood, 1993). Because these molecules were defined by antibody responses to white blood cells (WBCs), they were called human leukocyte **antigens.** Leukocyte antibodies were

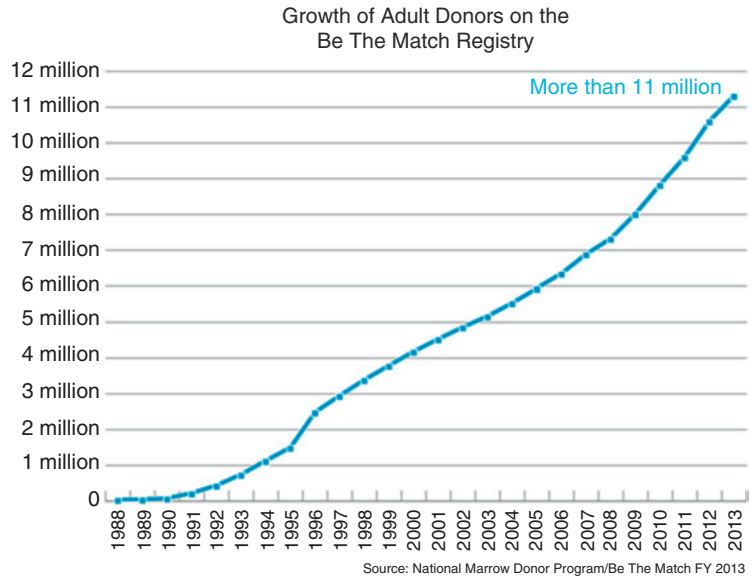


Figure 49-4 More than 11 million donors for hematopoietic stem cell and bone marrow transplantation were registered by the National Marrow Donor Program in 2013. (©National Marrow Donor Program, 2014. Used with permission. Accessed at BeTheMatchClinical.org.)

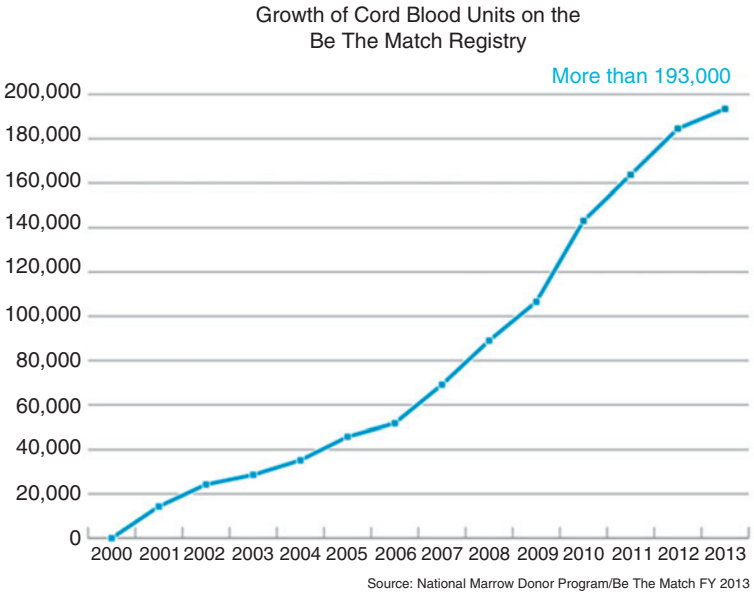


Figure 49-5 The number of umbilical cord units has increased in the last decade, primarily for the treatment of blood malignancies in pediatric patients. More than one HLA mismatch and more than one cord unit can be used in umbilical cord transplantation. (©National Marrow Donor Program, 2014. Used with permission. Accessed at BeTheMatch-Clinical.org.)

observed in humans as early as the 1920s, but it was not until the 1950s that a systematic study began. In 1952, Dausset convincingly demonstrated the existence of leukocyte antibodies (leukoagglutinins). Because these leukoagglutinins did not react with leukocytes from the antibody producer but did react with a percentage of leukocytes from red cell group O unrelated individuals, he suggested that leukoagglutinins were alloantibodies. Shortly thereafter, Payne and colleagues (1964) reported that sera from patients who had febrile nonhemolytic blood transfusion reactions frequently contained leukoagglutinins that demonstrated allospecificity. In 1958, Dausset described the first HLA alloantigen MAC (now HLA-A2 + HLA-28) and showed it to be genetically determined.

Originally, leukocyte specificities were thought to be the products of a single locus. A two-locus model, each locus with multiple alleles, was established through HLA studies in families by the identification of recombinational events that separated the two allelic series. These two allelic series were called the first, or LA (now HLA-A), and the second, or four, series (now HLA-B). These names were derived from descriptions of the LA 1, 2, 3 allelic series by Payne in 1967, and of the 4a, 4b allelic series by van Rood in 1969. A third locus was first proposed in 1970; however, it was not confirmed until 1975, when a family with a recombination between HLA-B and the new locus was identified. This third locus was designated HLA-C following the 1975 International Histocompatibility Workshop. Dausset (1981) was awarded the Nobel Prize for Medicine in 1980 for his original work on the human HLA system.

STRUCTURE OF CLASS I MOLECULES

The classical class I molecules, termed *HLA-A*, *HLA-B*, and *HLA-C* in the human, are heterodimers consisting of a transmembrane glycosylated polypeptide (heavy chain, 44-kDa) noncovalently associated with β_2-microglobulin (12-kDa) (Fig. 49-6) (Bjorkman & Parham, 1990). The heavy chain of the class I molecule spans the cell membrane and is oriented with its amino-terminus on the outside of the cell. β_2-microglobulin is associated with the extracellular region of the heavy chain and is necessary for cell surface expression. The extracellular region of the class I heavy chain is divided into three domains designated $\alpha 1$, $\alpha 2$, and $\alpha 3$, each

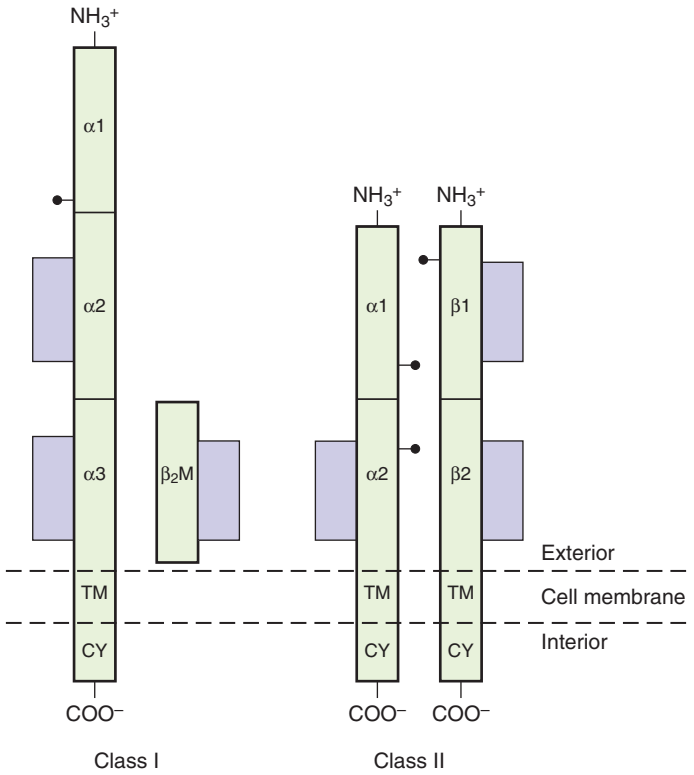


Figure 49-6 **A schematic model of the structure of class I and class II molecules.**

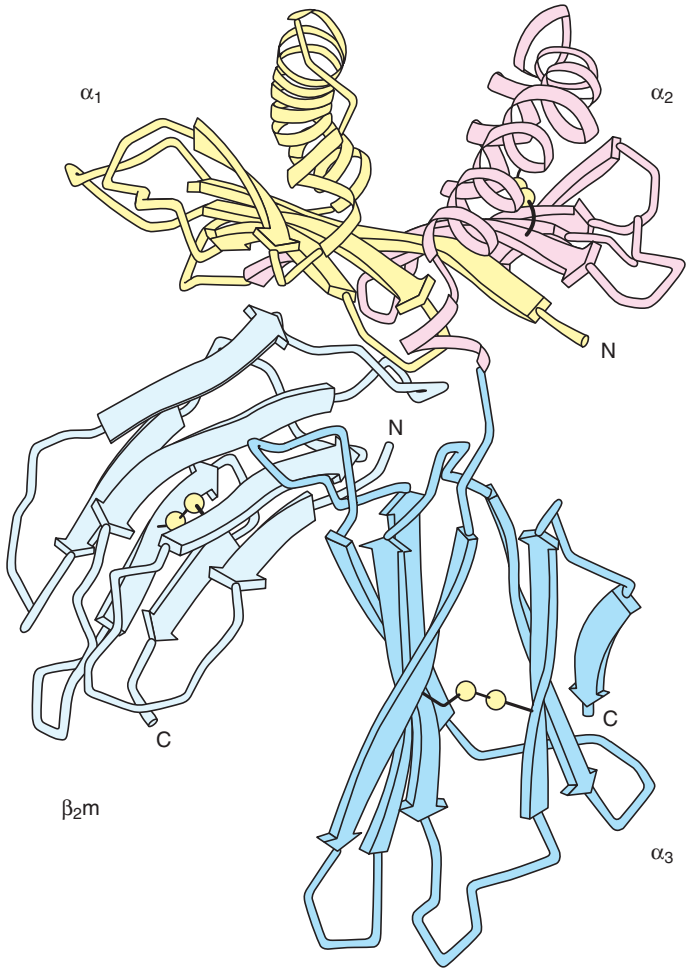


Figure 49-7 **Three-dimensional model of the extracellular portion of a class I molecule.** (With permission from Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, et al: Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2, *Nature* 329:506, 1987.)

consisting of about 90 amino acid residues. The amino-terminal α_1 domain contains a glycosylation site at the asparagine residue in position 86. The transmembrane segment of approximately 24 amino acids is mostly hydrophobic, whereas the intracellular carboxy-terminal segment of the molecule consists mainly of hydrophilic residues with a cluster of basic residues adjacent to the cytoplasmic surface of the cell membrane.

Polymorphism of class I molecules (see Table 49-2 and Fig. 49-3) (Bodmer et al, 1997, 1999) is defined by the use of (1) class I–specific antibodies (alloantisera and monoclonal antibodies) that bind to the HLA molecules; (2) cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) that recognize and kill in response to stimulation by foreign or allogeneic class I molecules in vitro; (3) isoelectric focusing of isolated class I molecules; (4) polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-based DNA typing of class I alleles; and (5) nucleotide sequencing of class I alleles. Most of the class I polymorphism arises from amino acid sequence differences clustered in the α_1 and α_2 domains of the heavy chain. The α3 domain is highly conserved among HLA class I molecules.

Fresh insights into the structure of the HLA molecule came when the three-dimensional structure of the class I molecule was defined using x-ray crystallography (Bjorkman et al, 1987). The structure of the extracellular portion is shown in Figure 49-7. The molecule consists of two pairs of structurally similar domains: α1 has the same tertiary conformation as α_2-, and α_3- and β_2-microglobulin have similar tertiary conformations. The α_3- and β_2-microglobulin domains are each composed of two antiparallel β-pleated sheets—one with four strands and one with three strands, connected by a disulfide bond. The α_3 and α_2 domains interact with one another through these β-pleated sheets, and their structure closely resembles that described for an immunoglobulin constant region domain. The α_1 and α_2 domains are paired to form an eight-strand β-pleated sheet. This sheet is topped by two α-helices forming a groove at the top of the molecule. This groove is the site for binding of antigenic peptide fragments by the class I molecule (see Fig. 49-7). The sides and bottom of the groove are formed by side chains of the amino acids that constitute the helices and β-pleated sheets. Many of the amino acids that line this groove are polymorphic, creating allele-specific differences in antigen-binding specificity among the different class I allelic products (Stern & Wiley, 1994). Other residues in the helical regions of the groove interact with the T cell receptor during recognition of the class I antigenic fragment complex by a T lymphocyte (see Fig. 49-2).

ORGANIZATION OF CLASS I GENES

The HLA heavy chains are encoded within the MHC on chromosome 6 (see Fig. 49-1) (Shiina et al, 1999) and are highly polymorphic, whereas β_2-microglobulin is encoded on chromosome 15 and is not known to be polymorphic in humans. The typical class I gene is encoded by eight exons. The first exon encodes the 5′ untranslated region and a hydrophobic leader peptide. Exons 2 to 4 encode the three extracellular domains; exon 5 encodes the transmembrane region. The sixth and seventh exons encode the cytoplasmic region, and the eighth exon encodes the 3′ untranslated region, including the poly(A) addition site. Intervening sequences (termed *introns*) between the exons are transcribed into RNA but are removed during messenger RNA (mRNA) splicing.

REGULATION OF CLASS I GENE EXPRESSION

HLA class I molecules are expressed as transmembrane glycoproteins on the surface of many cell types. However, the level of surface expression can vary extensively (Singer & Maguire, 1990). The resting level of class I molecules is highest on β_2-microglobulin lymphoid cells, and HLA-C expression is 10 times less than that of HLA-A or HLA-B (Le Bouteiller, 1994); this is a result of inefficient association and a mutated cis-regulatory element of transcriptional control found in region I of the HLA-C promoter (enhancer A) that reduces its expression (Neefjes & Ploegh, 1988). Differential expression of HLA molecules appears to reflect the level and antigenic specificity of the allogeneic sensitization seen in patients awaiting kidney transplantation, because these patients are subjected to multiple random blood transfusions while on dialysis; additionally, posttransplant, more kidneys are rejected because of the presence of HLA-A or -B or both A and B donor specific antibody, and far fewer are rejected by only HLA-Cw donor specific antibodies; class I molecules are undetectable on

the membranes of certain other cell types such as brain cells, muscle cells, and sperm cells. Sequence elements located upstream of class I genes bind regulatory factors that control the cell surface expression of class I molecules. During an immune response, the cell surface expression of class I genes can be upregulated by binding of cytokine (e.g., interferon-γ and TNF) to upstream regulatory elements. Tumors and certain viruses (e.g., human immunodeficiency virus) can suppress class I expression (Brodsky et al, 1999).

FUNCTION OF CLASS I MOLECULES

The HLA-A, -B, and -C molecules play key roles in an immune response. First, in the adaptive immune response, class I molecules bind peptides derived from proteins degraded or synthesized in the cytosol and display them on the cell surface for perusal by the antigen receptors on T lymphocytes (see Chapter 45). Presentation of antigen by class I molecules allows T cells to detect and mount a cytotoxic response to foreign material (e.g., a virus, abnormal proteins from a malignant cell). In the cytosol, intracellular antigens (including self-proteins and viral or abnormal proteins) are broken down into peptide fragments (Rock & Goldberg, 1999). These peptide fragments are transported to the endoplasmic reticulum, where they bind to the groove at the top of newly synthesized class I molecules and then are carried to the cell surface (Hansen & Lee, 1997; Pamer & Cresswell, 1998) (see Fig. 49-2). Four genes, located in the class II region of the MHC (see Figs. 49-1 and 49-8), are involved in this process. Two of these genes (*LMP2* and *LMP7*) encode components of the proteosome complex, a macromolecular structure that degrades proteins within the cytosol (Tanaka et al, 1997). The other two genes (*TAP1* and *TAP2*) encode components of peptide transporters that move peptides from the cytosol into the endoplasmic reticulum (Momburg & Hammerling, 1998). $CD8^+$ CTLs recognize the processed peptide in conjunction with the class I molecule (Jorgensen et al, 1992). In the experimental system used to dissect this mechanism, CTLs were generated by in vitro stimulation with virally infected autologous cells. Recognition and lysis of the target cell were specific for the priming virus strain. Recognition also was affected by allelic polymorphism of class I molecules because only virally infected target cells sharing the appropriate class I allelic product(s) with the responder were lysed (Zinkernagel, 1997a, 1997b). The latter requirement is termed **MHC restriction.** Zinkernagel and his collaborator Doherty were awarded the Nobel Prize for Medicine in 1996 in recognition of the importance of the concept of MHC restriction to immunology.

Second, surface expression of class I molecules has a protective function in the innate immune response by preventing target cell lysis effected by natural killer (NK) cells and their killer cell activating and inhibitory receptors (KIR). Unlike CTLs, NK cells do not require activation through the recognition of peptide bound to the class I molecule but can lyse and destroy target cells lacking classical HLA class I molecule expression on the cell surface. Through this innate mechanism, NK cells play an important role in surveillance against viruses and tumor cells that downregulate expression of the class I molecule to avoid recognition by CTLs (Lanier, 1998; Long, 1999).

There are two groups of NK receptors: (1) the C-type lectin receptor CD94/NKG2, whose genes reside on chromosome 12, and (2) the killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptors (KIRs) encoded by genes on chromosome 19. NK cell function appears to be regulated by a balance between positive signaling receptors that initiate and inhibitory receptors that suppress cell activation. Both groups of receptors recognize HLA class I ligands. For example, the KIR2D receptors differentiate between HLA-C ligands based on the presence of specific amino acid residues at codons 77 and 80 (i.e., asn77lys80 vs. ser77asn80). Another NK receptor, KIR3D, recognizes the HLA-Bw4/Bw6 polymorphism. A third NK receptor, CD94/NKG2, recognizes the HLA-E molecule complexed with the HLA leader peptide from some of the allelic products of HLA-A, -B, -C, and -G molecules (Brooks et al, 1999).

NK cells can specifically recognize and lyse allogeneic cells that do not express the specific class I molecules expressed by the effector cell (i.e., "missing self") (Valiante et al, 1997). This could occur even in apparently HLA-matched transplant pairs where one member of the pair is homozygous and the other is heterozygous (e.g., donor: Bw4,Bw6; recipient: Bw6). Thus Bw4-specific NK cells from the donor might lyse cells without Bw4 from the recipient in a hematopoietic progenitor cell graft. This response may be unidirectional in some settings. In the example, the donor does not lack any HLA molecule present in the recipient; thus, the recipient NK cells will not detect any missing self. Because NK cells are relatively radioresistant and make up a subpopulation of about 10% to 15% of peripheral blood lymphocytes, the NK response could be substantial; however, the extent of the role of NK activity in affecting transplant outcome is not known at present (Ruggeri et al, 1999). Since then, based on new knowledge of NK cell function, several donor selection strategies have been used in an attempt to improve the outcome of unrelated donor transplantation (Benjamin et al, 2010). These strategies include (a) the receptor-ligand model, (b) the missing ligand model or donor-recipient KIR ligand mismatch, (c) natural cytotoxicity model, and (d) the KIR gene-gene model or donor selection based on B haplotype content. These strategies have yielded a variety of outcomes that may depend on the type of malignancy; for example, donor selection based on the KIR gene-gene content of donor natural killer cell receptor has been shown to improve survival in acute myelogenous leukemia (AML) but not acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) (Cooley et al, 2010). Also, haploidentical NK expanded cell transplantation using the KIR-HLA ligand mismatched model was used to successfully treat children with AML using a low intensity protocol (Rubnitz et al, 2010),

OTHER CLASS I GENES

As many as 20 additional nonclassical or class Ib genes have been identified within the class I region of chromosome 6p by gene cloning (Aguado et al, 1999). Many of these are pseudogenes; however, several encode and express class I–like mRNA and/or molecules HLA-E, HLA-F, and HLA-G. These molecules may be key mediators of both adaptive and innate immune responses (O'Callaghan & Bell, 1998). Their genes are homologous to classical class I genes in structure, and the polypeptides encoded by these loci also associate with β_2-microglobulin. However, just as a high level of allelic polymorphism is a hallmark of the HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C loci, a low level of polymorphism of the HLA-E, HLA-F, and HLA-G loci is a defining feature of these genes. In addition, by comparison with classical class I molecules, the cell surface expression of nonclassical class I molecules is low, and the distribution of these class Ib molecules on specific cell types varies.

HLA-G

HLA-G is expressed principally on extravillous cytotrophoblast cells at the fetal/maternal interface, where it is thought to play a role in maternofetal tolerance (Le Bouteiller & Blaschitz, 1999). HLA-G, as a ligand for at least three NK and other cell inhibitory receptors, protects the invading placental tissue from the cytolytic action of NK cells. Although HLA-G has the capability to bind and present processed antigen (i.e., peptides) to T cells, the diversity of peptides bound by HLA-G appears to be less than the diversity of peptides bound by classical class I molecules. Regulation of expression of HLA-G also differs from that of classical class I genes, as the gene contains no interferon response signal; thus, it is not interferon-inducible. It has been hypothesized that the soluble forms may act as specific immunosuppressors during pregnancy (Le Bouteiller & Blaschitz, 1999). Recent evidence supports this hypothesis. HLA-G transcripts are present in great numbers in placental extravillous membranes in the first trimester, but at term, transcript numbers decline sharply, in keeping with the theory that HLA-G provides protection for the allogeneic embryo from maternal NK cell surveillance (Agrawal & Pandey, 2003). This putative role raises the possibility that HLA-G may play a role in tolerance for transplanted tissues. Along these lines, it is interesting to note that liver-kidney transplant recipients with high concentrations of HLA-G in their sera had low numbers of acute rejection episodes and therefore may require less immunosuppressive therapy (Creput et al, 2003).

HLA-E

HLA-E may play a role in protecting a target cell from NK cell–mediated lysis. HLA-E molecules bind a set of almost identical hydrophobic peptides derived from the leader sequences of the classical class I and HLA-G heavy chains. HLA-E displays these bound peptides at the cell surface for recognition by NK cells, providing a check for the integrity of the antigen-presenting pathway (Lee et al, 1998a, 1998b; O'Callaghan & Bell, 1998). Skin grafting in a transgenic mouse model suggests that HLA-E may be recognized as a transplantation antigen (Pacasova et al, 1999). Recent studies suggest that host NK cells may be able to recognize HLA-E on allogeneic cells and possibly tolerate it, even when it is bound to donor peptides. With this finding comes the potential for exploiting this tolerance in pursuit of preventing NK cell–mediated graft rejection and graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) (Matsunami et al, 2002).

HLA-F

The role of HLA-F is unknown. Computer modeling predicts that certain amino acid residues of HLA-F could contribute to a putative

peptide-binding groove, consistent with a role in antigen presentation by HLA-F (O'Callaghan & Bell, 1998). To date, HLA-F appears to be normally expressed only on the surfaces of extravillous trophoblasts that have invaded the maternal decidua, and has also been found on the surfaces of lymphoblastoid cell lines infected with Epstein-Barr virus (Ishitani et al, 2003).

CLASS II MOLECULES—HLA-DR, HLA-DQ, AND HLA-DP SUBREGIONS

The class II molecules in humans were first recognized by their ability to stimulate allogeneic T cells in the mixed leukocyte culture (MLC). During the 1975 International Histocompatibility Workshop, the MLC was used to define the HLA-D allelic series (Thorsby & Piazza, 1975). Because MLCs required 7 days before results could be obtained, rapid serologic detection of HLA-D was sought. In 1975, it was determined that alloantisera contained antibodies reactive with molecules closely associated with the specificities previously identified as HLA-D by cellular techniques (Dausset, 1981). Following the 1977 International Histocompatibility Workshop, these serologic specificities were termed *DR*, for D-related specificities, because HLA-D and HLA-DR were observed to be associated but not identical to each other. Serologic testing coupled with genetic and immunochemical studies identified additional class II molecules: DR52, DR53, DR51, and DQ. Cellular techniques identified still another class II molecule in the late 1970s (Shaw et al, 1981). This molecule (now termed *HLA-DP*) was initially described as a secondary B cell antigen (SB) because it was usually weak or undetectable in a primary MLC and required secondary phase stimulation in culture for detection. Subsequently, the DNA coding sequences and locations of these genes within the MHC were further characterized using molecular biology techniques (Beck & Trowsdale, 1999).

STRUCTURE OF CLASS II MOLECULES

The class II HLA-DR, -DQ, and -DP molecules are heterodimers consisting of two noncovalently associated transmembrane glycoproteins: an α chain (33 to 35 kDa) and a β chain (26 to 28 kDa) (Gorga, 1992). Both polypeptide chains span the cell membrane and are oriented with their amino-termini on the outside of the cell. The extracellular regions of the α and β polypeptides are each divided into two domains, designated α_1 and α_2 and β_1 and β_2, and each domain consists of approximately 90 amino acid residues. The α chain has two carbohydrate moieties, one high-mannose and one complex-type glycan, at amino acids 78 and 118, respectively. β chains have one complex-type oligosaccharide at amino acid 19. The amino-terminal α_1 and β_1 domains of α and β chains contain the polymorphic residues, while the membrane proximal α_2 and β_2 domains are highly conserved and are homologous to immunoglobulin constant region domains. A region of approximately 12 amino acids in length connects the second extracellular domain to the hydrophobic transmembrane region (23 amino acids) and a small intracytoplasmic domain (8 to 15 amino acids).

Based on crystallography, the class II molecule is similar in structure to the class I molecule (Brown et al, 1993) (see Fig. 49-7). In the class II molecule, the α_1 and β_1 domains of the α and β chains form an eight-stranded β-pleated sheet topped by two α helices to form the antigen-binding groove at the top of the molecule. The α_2 and β_2 domains each form two antiparallel β-pleated sheets that support the groove at the top. As with class I, many of the amino acids that line the antigenic peptide-binding groove are polymorphic, creating differences in peptide-binding specificities for the different class II allelic products.

Similar to the class I molecules, the class II molecules are highly polymorphic (see Table 49-2 and Figure 49-3) (Bodmer et al, 1997, 1999; Marsh et al, 2002). Class II polymorphism is defined by (1) class II–specific antibodies (alloantisera and monoclonal antibodies), which bind to class II molecules; (2) alloproliferative T cells that recognize and proliferate in response to foreign class II molecules in vitro; (3) two-dimensional gel electrophoresis of isolated class II molecules; (4) hybridization of restriction endonuclease digests of DNA-encoding class II genes using locus-specific probes (a technique that detects restriction fragment length polymorphism); (5) PCR-based DNA typing of class II alleles; and (6) nucleotide sequencing of class II genes. Most of the class II polymorphism arises from amino acid sequence differences localized in the α_1 and β_1 domains of the two polypeptide chains.

ORGANIZATION OF CLASS II GENES

In contrast to the class I molecules, both the α and β chains of class II molecules are encoded within a 1100-kb section of the MHC region (see Figs. 49-1 and 49-8) (Beck & Trowsdale, 1999). The class II region includes three subregions—DR, DQ, and DP—each of which encodes at least one expressed A (encoding an α chain) and B (encoding a β chain) gene. Sequence comparisons suggest that both class I and class II genes arose through a successive series of gene duplications during the evolution of this gene complex. The original duplication in the class II region most likely gave rise to primordial A and B genes. More recent gene duplications generated the DR, DQ, and DP subregions containing multiple genes.

A typical A gene contains five exons encoding (1) the 5′ untranslated region and leader sequence; (2) the α_1 domain; (3) the α_2 domain; (4) the connecting peptide, transmembrane region, cytoplasmic tail, and a portion of the 3′ untranslated region; and (5) the remainder of the 3′ untranslated region, including the poly(A) addition signal. A typical β-chain gene is similar to the α-chain gene but has an extra exon for the cytoplasmic tail.

DR Subregion

The DR subregion encodes one or two DR molecules, depending on the haplotype (Bodmer et al, 1997, 1999). The subregion contains a single expressed DRA gene that is similar in different haplotypes, differing only in a single conservative amino acid substitution found in the cytoplasmic domain.

The most centromeric DRB gene, *DRB1* (Fig. 49-8), encodes a highly polymorphic β chain that, when associated with the α chain, exhibits serologic specificities DR1 to DR18. This molecule is the predominant class II molecule on the cell surface, accounting for well over half of total cell surface class II molecules. There are multiple nucleic acids, hence amino acid sequence differences among DRB1 alleles.

The second expressed DRB gene, present only in some class II haplotypes, is located between the DRB1 locus and the DRA locus (see Fig. 49-8). In cells expressing DR alleles, DRB1*03, *11, *12, *13, and *14, the second DRB gene is termed *DRB3*. (HLA nomenclature is described subsequently.) The *DRB3* gene is polymorphic, although at present the number of identified alleles is approximately 10 times less than the number of DRB1 alleles. The DRB3 product combined with the DRA product forms the DR molecule, which carries DR52 serologic specificity. In cells expressing DRB1*04, *07, and *09 alleles, the second DRB gene is termed *DRB4*. The DRB4 product combined with the DRA product forms the molecule that carries the serologic specificity DR53. Last, in cells expressing DRB1*15 and *16 alleles, the second DRB gene is termed *DRB5*. This DRB5 product combined with the DRA product carries DR51 serologic specificity. Haplotypes expressing DRB1*01, *08, or *10 alleles do not usually carry a second expressed DRB locus. There are exceptions to these associations. For example, a haplotype carrying DRB1*15 without a DRB5 locus has been described (Wade et al, 1993).

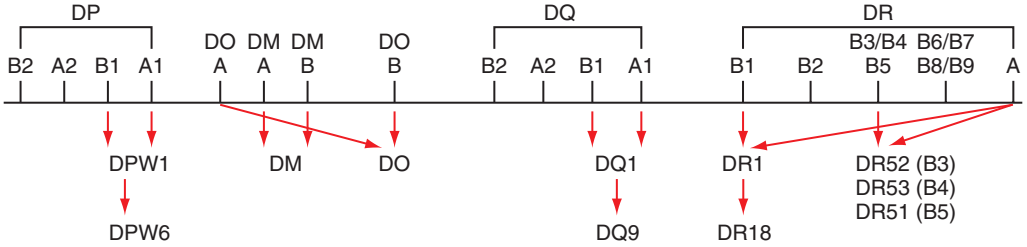


Figure 49-8 Map of the class II region of the human major histocompatibility complex (MHC). Gene products encoded by each subregion are listed. Not all genes are included.

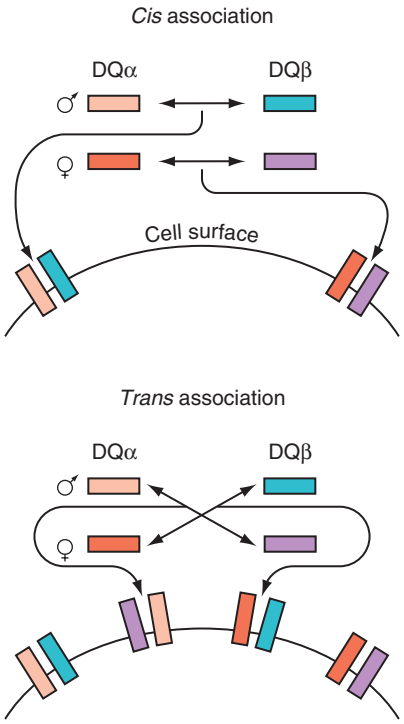


Figure 49-9 Model of the cis and trans associations of DQα and DQβ chains.

DQ Subregion

One set of A and B genes, *DQA1* and *DQB1*, encode the DQ heterodimer that carries DQ1 to 9 serologic specificities (see Table 49-2 and Fig. 49-8) (Bodmer et al, 1997, 1999). DQ molecules represent approximately 15% to 20% of the total class II molecules expressed on the cell surface. Because both *DQA1* and *DQB1* loci are polymorphic, and because the protein products can associate in trans as well as in cis, heterozygotes may potentially express four different DQ molecules on their cell surfaces (Fig. 49-9). Other DQ-like A and B genes in the DQ subregion such as *DQA2* and *DQB2* are very similar to the *DQA1* and *DQB1* genes; however, no functional protein products are expressed.

DP Subregion

The DP subregion contains two sets of A and B genes (see Fig. 49-8). One set, *DPA1* and *DPB1*, encodes the DP protein product; the other set is made up of pseudogenes. Both *DPA1* and *DPB1* genes are highly polymorphic (Bodmer et al, 1997, 1999). The level of DP expression on the cell surface is very low.

LINKAGE DISEQUILIBRIUM OF GENES IN THE CLASS II REGION

Specific combinations of DRB1/DRB3, DRB1/DRB4, DRB1/DRB5, and DQA1/DQB1 alleles are common. The DQA1/DQB1 combinations found may be controlled in part by the ability of α and β chains to pair (Kwok et al, 1993). In addition, certain DR and DQ alleles are inherited together more frequently than expected, resulting in linkage disequilibrium in a population. The frequency of these combinations differs strikingly among different ethnic population groups. For example, both the DRB1*1101, DQB1*0501 (DR11[5]), DQ5[1] and the DRB1*0901, DQB1*0303(DR9, DQ9[3]) haplotypes frequently are found in populations of direct African heritage, whereas these DR-DQ combinations are rarely found in populations of Caucasian heritage. Crossing over between the DP loci and the DR/DQ loci is common. Thus, minimal linkage disequilibrium is noted between the DR/DQ and DP alleles. Lists of common DRB1/DQA1/DQB1 haplotypes have been published (Begovich et al, 1992; Imanishi et al, 1992).

REGULATION OF CLASS II GENE EXPRESSION

Class II molecules, HLA-DR, -DQ, and -DP, are constitutively expressed on antigen-presenting cells (APCs) of the immune system, including monocytes, macrophages, dendritic cells, B lymphocytes, and neoplastic cells. HLA class II expression is highest for HLA-DR, intermediate for HLA-DQ, and lowest for HLA-DP (Glimcher & Kara, 1992; Guardiola & Maffei, 1993); as with class I, differential expression of HLA class II molecules is reflected in the antigenic specificity of allosensitization seen in patients awaiting kidney transplantation; more kidneys are rejected because of the presence of an HLA-DR– or HLA-DQ–specific antibody, and fewer are rejected because of an HLA-DP–specific antibody. DNA sequences found upstream of the coding sequences in class II genes are critical to expression. Binding of proteins to these regions regulates the expression of class II genes. Alterations in the ability of DNA-binding proteins to interact with the 5′ regulatory DNA sequences eliminating the expression of class II genes lead to an immunodeficiency called the **bare lymphocyte syndrome** (Kovats et al, 1994; Mach et al, 1996). Class II genes are inducible by interferon (IFN)-γ in many cell types (Glimcher & Kara, 1992; Mach et al, 1996), and expression may be affected by other cytokines (Guardiola & Maffei, 1993). Expression of class II molecules in APCs may be modulated, particularly in dendritic cells, following antigen deposition and inflammation. The level of antigenic peptide class II complex expression and the presence of a costimulatory signal on the mature APC may play an important role in transplantation and in autoimmune disease (Nepom & Erlich, 1991; Banchereau & Steinman, 1998) (Chapter 49).

FUNCTION OF CLASS II MOLECULES

Class II molecules act as antigen receptors in the immune response (see Fig. 49-2), binding antigenic peptide fragments processed from exogenous antigens such as bacteria. The exogenous antigens enter the cell through the endocytic pathway and are degraded into peptide fragments in late endosomes, where they encounter and bind to the newly assembled class II molecules (Watts, 1997). Binding of processed protein peptide fragments to the class II molecule is facilitated by two proteins encoded within the class II region of the MHC: DM and DO (see Fig. 49-8). Peptide binding is affected by polymorphic residues located in the groove of the class II molecule. The complex of antigenic fragment bound to the class II molecule is transported to the cell surface for display to and recognition by circulating T cells.

Antigen receptors on $CD4^+$ T lymphocytes interact with the class II-antigenic fragment complex, triggering activation of the cell (Jorgensen et al, 1992). In the experimental system used to dissect this mechanism, effector T lymphocytes were stimulated in vitro with autologous APCs previously incubated with antigen. As observed for class I, recognition of the antigenic fragment by the effector T cell is influenced by MHC allelic polymorphism. The effector T cell is specific for the priming antigenic peptide in conjunction with the particular class II allelic product that originally presented the antigen (MHC restriction) (Rosenthal & Shevach, 1973).

Each T cell activated by recognition of the complex of antigen fragment bound to class II molecule can perform one or several functions (Paul & Seder, 1994). The $CD4^+$ T cell can help B lymphocytes differentiate to antibody-producing plasma cells, or it can help other T lymphocytes differentiate to either cytotoxic cells or cells with suppressor function. In addition, the T cell itself can function either as a cytotoxic cell, directly killing cells with the appropriate target (i.e., cells expressing class II MHC molecules complexed with the specific antigen), or as a cell with suppressor function, causing a dampening of the immune response. T cells also produce a number of biologically important molecules (such as IFN-γ) that augment the immune response and increase the expression of MHC molecules on target cells. In addition, T cells produce growth factors such as interleukin (IL)-2. These growth factors affect a wide range of cells from hematopoietic progenitor cells to mature lymphocytes.

OTHER CLASS II GENES

At least four other class II genes—*DOA*, *DOB*, *DMA*, and *DMB*—have been described that express protein products (see Fig. 49-8). The proteins encoded by the *DMA* and *DMB* genes form the DM heterodimer. The proteins encoded by the *DOA* and *DOB* genes form the DO heterodimer. These gene products are not detected on the cell surface, but rather are expressed inside the cell, localized to specialized intracellular compartments where newly synthesized class II (DR, DQ, DP) molecules bind their antigenic peptides. The DM molecule regulates peptide binding to HLA-DR, -DQ, and -DP, serving both chaperone-like and editor-like functions (Morris et al, 1994) that favor the presentation of stably bound peptides. The DO molecule negatively regulates the function of DM (van Ham et al, 1997).

CHARACTERISTICS OF ANTIGENIC FRAGMENTS BOUND BY MHC CLASS I AND CLASS II MOLECULES

The function of class I and class II molecules as antigen-binding receptors is similar; however, the peptides they bind have different characteristics (Cresswell, 1994; Engelhard, 1994). Peptides derived from proteins synthesized de novo in the cell (endogenous antigens such as viral antigens) associate with class I molecules in the endoplasmic reticulum. In contrast, peptides from soluble and particulate antigens taken up by the cell into the endocytic pathway (exogenous antigens) bind with class II molecules in an endosomal compartment. Both class I and class II molecules can alternatively bind self-peptides found in these compartments. Self-peptides result from the normal degradation of cellular proteins. Some of these self-peptides are fragments of histocompatibility molecules themselves. Usually, the self-peptides bound to MHC molecules do not trigger T lymphocytes, as they are molecules to which the immune system of the individual is tolerant. However, these self-peptides may trigger immune responses, initiating a self-destructive process leading to autoimmunity (Nepom & Erlich, 1991) (Chapters 51, 52, and 53).

Peptide binding to MHC molecules occurs only when the peptide fragment is of a suitable length and contains a particular amino acid sequence or motif that allows it to bind to one or more of the MHC molecules expressed in that individual. Examples of motifs for a peptide that binds to the HLA molecule encoded by A*02:01 is leucine (or methionine or isoleucine) at residue 2 of the peptide, a hydrophilic amino acid at residue 3, and a valine (or leucine or isoleucine or alanine) at residue 9. The amino acids that make up the motif are referred to as **anchor** residues of the peptide. Different HLA molecules, either molecules encoded by different alleles at the same locus (HLA-A*02:03, *02:11, or *03:01) or molecules encoded by different loci (B*40:01 or DRB1*04:06), bind peptides with different motifs. The amino acids forming the peptide motif bind to the MHC molecule in pockets found within the antigen-binding groove (Stern & Wiley, 1994). The polymorphic amino acids of the MHC molecules line this groove and thus create differences in peptide-binding specificities for the different MHC molecules.

The peptides bound to class I molecules are 9 to 10 amino acids in length. Both the carboxy- and amino-terminal ends of the peptide are buried in the class I–binding groove, forming a **closed** peptide–MHC complex. The peptides bound to class II molecules vary in length from 12 to 30 amino acids. While maintaining the requirement for specific motif residues nested in the central portion of the peptide, both the carboxy- and amino-terminal ends of the peptide extend outside the class II–binding groove, forming an **open** peptide–MHC complex (Stern & Wiley, 1994).

RECOGNITION OF FOREIGN MHC MOLECULES

Allorecognition involves the recognition by a T lymphocyte of a foreign MHC molecule on a cell from a second (allogeneic) individual. Upon recognition, the interaction triggers a series of events, resulting in activation of the T cell and initiation of an immune response not unlike the recognition of pathogens. Based on data from models of vascularized organ transplantation, two pathways of allorecognition have been hypothesized (Sayegh & Carpenter, 1996). The direct pathway for allorecognition involves the stimulation of recipient T cells by the donor MHC–peptide complex (i.e., direct recognition of intact foreign MHC molecules). The second route of allorecognition, the indirect pathway, involves stimulation of recipient T cells by self-MHC molecules presenting peptide fragments from donor cells. Indirect presentation occurs when antigen-processing cells of the recipient ingest cellular material from the grafted tissue, degrade the material intracellularly, and display the allogeneic peptide(s) complexed with self-MHC molecules. Peptides derived from polymorphic regions of donor MHC molecules are the major candidates for stimulation of the indirect immune response (Suciu-Foca et al, 1998; Gould & Auchincloss, 1999; Harris & Cortesini, 1999).

TANDEM REPEATS AND SINGLE-NUCLEOTIDE POLYMORPHISMS IN THE MHC

More than 300 short tandem repeats (STRs) have been identified within the human MHC region (Foissac et al, 1997). Multiple single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) are also present. A study by Abbal and colleagues (1997) examined six STR loci within the MHC in a population of unrelated individuals and found strong linkage disequilibrium between specific HLA haplotypes and the STR markers. Because these markers cover a larger region of the MHC than the classical HLA markers now used, they may provide a more comprehensive approach to identifying MHC-identical individuals. These markers might, for example, be used to identify a recombinant MHC haplotype within a family (Carrington & Wade, 1996) or to enhance the probability that any unidentified histocompatibility genes in the MHC are matched. Molecular methods have been developed to identify both STRs and SNPs that are accurate and reproducible (Carrington et al, 1998).

MINOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY MOLECULES

Minor histocompatibility antigens (mHags) are immunogenetic peptides that bind to MHC molecules and can be recognized by T cells to cause undesirable GVHD, but in the setting of leukemic recipients can produce the beneficial condition graft-versus-leukemia. Achieving the proper balance of acceptable GVHD and sufficient graft-versus-leukemia is problematic. In MHC-identical progenitor cell grafts, GVHD may be induced by mHag differences between the recipient and donor (Mutis et al, 1999). The mHags can be any polymorphic gene product encoded outside the MHC that differs between donor and recipient and that stimulates a T cell response (Goulmy, 1997; Simpson et al, 1998). Similar to other protein antigens, the polymorphic protein must be processed into antigenic fragments, and the polymorphic peptide fragment(s) must bind within the groove of MHC molecules. Because of the requirement for antigen presentation by MHC molecules, any polymorphic peptide must carry a motif suitable for MHC-specific binding. Thus, not all individuals can present and respond to all mHags even if there is a difference between donor and recipient. Most mHags are presented to $CD8^+$ T cells by MHC class I molecules. T cell responses are initiated when the T cell receptor recognizes complexes formed by the polymorphic peptides of the mHags bound to the MHC molecules expressed on APCs.

The mHags were originally defined by skin graft rejection and by cytotoxic assays with T cell clones. These polymorphic peptides have restricted binding to class I MHC molecules, so biochemical definition of the minor histocompatibility antigenic peptide components was accomplished by elution, purification, and sequencing of the mHag peptide bound to a specific MHC molecule (den Haan et al, 1995). Recent studies have demonstrated the potential significance of mHags in clinical transplantation (Goulmy, 1997; Goulmy et al, 1996; Martin, 1997; Dupont, 1998). mHag-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes have been demonstrated in patients with GVHD (Mutis et al, 1999). Recipient disparity for one mHag (HA-1) was associated with increased risk for acute GVHD after marrow transplantation using genotypically HLA-identical sibling donors, although this may not always be the case. Recently, HA-1 disparity has been shown to be associated with ongoing graft-versus-leukemia and suppression of progenitor leukemia cells in some patients (Kircher et al, 2004; Kloosterboer et al, 2004). The importance of matching for other mHags (HA-2, HA-3, HA-4, HA-5, H-Y) is less clear. DNA-based techniques to detect differences in mHags have been developed (Tseng et al, 1998; Wilke et al, 1998) and are being used in studies to measure the impact of these disparities on the outcome of transplantation.

HLA NOMENCLATURE

SEROLOGIC AND CELLULAR SPECIFICITIES

HLA terminology is designated by the World Health Organization (WHO) Committee for HLA Nomenclature (see Table 49-2) (Bodmer et al, 1997, 1999). Historically, serologic and cellular defined specificities localized on the HLA protein molecules were assigned according to the results of international workshops during which typing reagents were exchanged among participating laboratories (13th International Histocompatibility Workshop website; see Table 49-1). (The 14th HLA and Immunogenetics Workshop convened during November 2005 in Melbourne, Australia.) Assignments included the name of the HLA molecule and a numeric designation based on the order in which the serologically defined specificity was defined. For example, HLA-A1 (or just A1) was the first HLA-A specificity to be assigned, and HLA-A80 was the most recent. Over time, older serologically defined specificities were "split," as the definition became more discriminating. The narrowest definition of the specificity is called the subtypic or private specificity. The broader, shared specificities are called *supertypic specificities*. For example, B44 and B45 are

subtypic specificities of the supertypic specificity B12. Thus, a cell that is either $B44^+$ or $B45^+$ must also be positive for B12.

In serologic testing, some alloantisera bind to more than one HLA allelic product—a phenomenon termed *cross-reactivity*. This serologic cross-reactivity among allelic products of HLA-A and HLA-B loci has been extensively studied and has been used to cluster molecules within cross-reactive antigen groups (CREGs) (Rodey & Fuller, 1987). Class I molecules within a CREG share one or more determinants that are not shared by molecules in another CREG. An antigenic determinant (epitope) shared among members of a CREG is called a *public specificity*. Some of the CREG reactivity can be explained by the sharing of amino acid sequences among the HLA molecules in a CREG (Terasaki et al, 1992). Inclusion of HLA specificities within a CREG is not standard, as different sets of antibodies produce unique reaction patterns, and two different investigators with different sets of reagents may identify slightly different CREG groups. However, the various CREG groupings overlap considerably (Ellison et al, 1994). To be able to appropriately name newly discovered HLA alleles, a more logical format for HLA nomenclature assignment was implemented in 2010. This change was defined by the Update to HLA Nomenclature, 2009. The WHO Nomenclature Committee for Factors of the HLA System met during the 15th International Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics Workshop in Buzios, Brazil, in September 2008, and introduced colons into the naming scheme. These colons will allow for the discovery of more than 100 alleles in a given group; the following examples of these changes were listed in the WHO 2008 Workshop Report, available at: http://hla.alleles.org/pdf/nomenclature_2009.pdf:

A*01010101 becomes A*01:01:01:01.
A*02010102L becomes A*02:01:01:02L.
A*260101 becomes A*26:01:01.
A*3301 becomes A*33:01.
B*0808N becomes B*08:08N.
DRB1*01010101 becomes DRB1*01:01:01:01.

For *antigen groups* that have more than 100 alleles such as the A*02 and B*15 groups, it will be possible to encode these in a single series. Thus the A*92 and B*95 alleles will now be renamed into the A*02 and B*15 allele series. For example,

A*9201 becomes A*02:101.
A*9202 becomes A*02:102.
A*9203 becomes A*02:103.

The HLA-Bw4 and -Bw6 specificities are broad, public epitopes that reside on the same molecule as the HLA-B locus subtypic specificities, but at a different site. Thus Bw4 and Bw6 are a diallelic system, and all B locus (and some A locus) molecules carry either Bw4 or Bw6 specificities. The region of the HLA molecule carrying the Bw4/Bw6 specificities has been identified in the α1 helix between amino acid residues 77 and 83 (Parham & Lawlor, 1991).

The WHO-designated serologic specificities localized to the class II molecules, HLA-DR and -DQ, have been assigned as described for the class I molecules (Bodmer et al, 1997, 1999) (see Table 49-2). Six HLA-DP types were originally defined by cellular techniques. Class II HLA-DP molecules are not adequately defined serologically.

Twenty-six HLA-D specificities were identified by MLC. All HLA-D specificities retain the "w" designation because these specificities are defined functionally by the measurement of stimulation of a responder cell. This stimulation is generated by differences in the DR molecules expressed on a stimulator cell and, to a lesser extent, by additional stimulation by the DQ and DP molecules.

DNA-BASED ALLELE DESIGNATIONS

Nucleotide sequencing has been used to identify the many different alleles encoding the HLA molecules. Currently, a single, serologically defined specificity may reside on two to more than 25 different allelic products (see Table 49-2). Each HLA allele is designated by the name of the gene locus followed by an asterisk and a four- to seven-digit number indicating the allele. For example, A*0201 is an allele of the *HLA-A* gene; B*1510 is an allele of the *HLA-B* gene; DPB1*0101 is an allele of the *HLA-DPB1* gene; and DQA1*0601 is an allele of the *HLA-DQA1* gene.

The first two numbers in the numeric designation of each allele are frequently based on the serologic type of the resultant molecule and/or the nucleotide sequence similarity to other alleles in the group. For example, the HLA-A molecule expressed by the A*0201 allele bears the A2 serologic specificity defining the HLA-A2 antigen. However, the HLA-B molecule expressed by the B*1510 allele does not bear the B15-associated serologic specificity, but rather the B71 serologic specificity defining the B71 antigen. It was designated B*1510 because of its predicted amino acid sequence similarity to B15 antigens. Cells expressing DRB1*0103 were serologically typed as DR-blank, DR1, or even DR13. Nucleotide sequencing identified an allele with a similar DNA structure to alleles bearing the DR1 serologic specificity (e.g., DRB1*0101 and *0102), and the name of this allele was based on that structural similarity. When a unique serologic specificity was later identified, the DR antigen determined by DRB1*0103 was given the DR103 serologic designation. The third and fourth numbers in the allele designation refer to the order in which the allele was described. For example, A*0201 was the first A2 allele to be sequenced, and A*0203 was the third.

Some alleles may differ in the DNA sequence of their coding regions, but their predicted amino acid sequence does not differ (often termed a *silent* or *synonymous* substitution). These combinations of alleles are identified by a five-digit designation. The first four numbers are shared, and the fifth digit is used to distinguish the unique nucleic acid sequences of the alleles (e.g., B*27051 and B*27052). In addition, two or more alleles may have a seven-digit name in which the first four digits are shared (e.g., DRB4*0103101 and DRB4*0103102). Digits five through seven indicate that the two alleles differ only outside the protein coding region. In the example listed here, the difference affects the RNA splice site of DRB4*0103102, resulting in loss of expression of the allele (Sutton et al, 1989). Finally, alleles that are not expressed as proteins at the cell surface may have an N added to their names (e.g., A*0215N, DRB4*0103102N) to indicate "null." Because each allele has a unique numeric designation, the N designation is not always written (i.e., A*0215 and A*0215N are the same allele).

New alleles are described in regular reports of the WHO HLA Nomenclature Committee (see Table 49-1; www.anthonynolan.com/hig/nomenc.html; Bodmer et al, 1999), and the nucleotide sequences of all alleles are deposited in a computerized databank (GenBank, EMBL, IMGT/HLA databases). Currently, for example, more than 349 HLA-A alleles have been assigned. New alleles are continually being identified and can be accessed through the website.

TECHNIQUES FOR IDENTIFYING HLA POLYMORPHISM

Histocompatibility testing or HLA typing or tissue typing is performed in a limited number of laboratories because it uses specialized procedures and reagents. Commercially available kits can be obtained for both DNA-based and serologic testing; however, interpretation of the test results requires considerable experience and knowledge. Histocompatibility laboratories usually are found in medical centers that have organ and/or hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation programs. HLA testing techniques are discussed in general in this section. For detailed procedures, the reader should refer to the American Society for Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics (ASHI) Laboratory Manual, 4th edition (2001) (see Table 49-1 for the ASHI website). HLA testing laboratories are accredited through ASHI, the European Foundation for Immunogenetics, and other organizations.

DNA-BASED TYPING OF CLASS I AND CLASS II ALLELES

Although serologic and cellular typing of HLA antigens has been extremely useful, there are a number of technical drawbacks to these techniques. With the advent of rapid and reliable methods for the isolation and characterization of class I and II genes and the determination of nucleotide sequences of class I and II alleles, it has become possible to use DNA-based methods for HLA typing (Sequence Based Typing [SBT], Sequence Specific Primers [SSP], Sequence Spepecific Oligonucleotyde Probe [SSOP], and Next Generation Sequence [NGS]). DNA-based typing of HLA alleles is now a commonly used technique in HLA typing laboratories (Hurley, 1997; Middleton, 1999).

In contrast to other forms of testing, DNA-based typing has five significant advantages as follows:

1. It is specific. The specificity of each DNA typing reagent (i.e., synthetic oligonucleotide primers and probes) is clearly defined and is based on a specific, known nucleotide sequence. Because the oligonucleotides used as DNA typing reagents are synthetic, reagents are not limited and there should be no lot-to-lot variation in specificity.
2. It is flexible. New reagents can be designed as new alleles are discovered and unique nucleotide sequences identified. Testing can be carried out at several levels of resolution, depending on the typing requirements and the time available for testing.

3. It is more robust than other techniques. DNA typing does not require viable lymphocytes and is not influenced by the health of the patient. Furthermore, DNA-based testing is highly reproducible when standard methods such as sequence-specific oligonucleotide probe (SSOP) testing are used in conjunction with a standard test protocol (Ng et al, 1996; Hurley et al, 2000a).
4. It can be used for large-scale typing (SSOP, SBT, and NGS). The batching of samples facilitated by automated and computerized methods reduces cost and errors. DNA-based methods are particularly applicable for the HLA typing of large numbers of volunteers for donor registries.
5. It can discriminate by detecting the full extent of HLA diversity. HLA alleles can specify HLA proteins that are indistinguishable using serologic typing. For example, an individual carrying the DRB1*0401 allele would have the same serologic type (DR4) as an individual carrying the DRB1*0412 allele (DR4). Thus, DRB1*0401 and DRB1*0412 are splits of the broad specificity DR4. These splits are identified by DNA typing. Serologic reagents specific enough to define this split are not available. Currently, more than 30 subdivisions of DR4 have been defined. There are many other examples of splits defined using DNA typing that cannot be identified using serologic typing; some are listed in Table 49-2.

The problems with serologic typing are particularly acute when typing some population groups. For example, populations of direct African origin can express class I and class II antigens that are difficult to identify with currently available serologic reagents (Bozon et al, 1997; Yu et al, 1997; Mytilineos et al, 1998). DNA-based HLA typing has greatly improved the ability to define HLA types in these populations.

Preparation and Amplification of DNA

Any cell with a nucleus can be used as a source of DNA. Although red blood cells do not contain nuclei, other cells in the blood, such as lymphocytes, are a good source of DNA. Cell lines such as Epstein-Barr virus–transformed B lymphocytes are also a good source of DNA. Because transformed cells can be grown in culture in the laboratory, they provide a replenishable supply of DNA and are used to provide reference DNA for quality control of typing procedures.

DNA is usually prepared from a small quantity (0.2 to 1 mL) of whole blood. Many different protocols can be used to isolate DNA from cells, and commercial kits are available for the preparation of DNA. The sensitivity of detection of HLA types is enhanced greatly by the amplification of DNA-encoding HLA genes using the PCR technique (Saiki et al, 1988). A pair of synthetic oligonucleotides (primers) should be complementary to sequences flanking a specific HLA gene and are utilized to generate millions of copies of that gene for use in the HLA typing reaction. Some typing reactions utilize primer sequences that are shared by all alleles at an HLA locus; other typing procedures utilize primer sets that are shared by only a subset of alleles at a locus. Annealing of the primers to sample DNA during the PCR reaction uses reaction conditions that guarantee that the primers will bind to perfectly matched sequences (target sequences) and not to sequences of other loci or other alleles that are not matched. By adjusting the temperature of the annealing component of the PCR reaction, the typing laboratory can control the specificity of the amplification.

Sequence-Specific Priming

One method of identification of HLA alleles uses sequence-specific primers (SSPs) in the PCR reaction (Olerup & Zetterquist, 1992; Bunce et al, 1995). These primers anneal to denatured DNA containing the HLA alleles from which the primer sequences were derived. In the subsequent PCR reaction, only these selected alleles are amplified. DNA amplified by the primers is identified by gel electrophoresis or, if the DNA is labeled with a dye during amplification, by fluorescence. This procedure is useful in typing a small number of samples within a short time period. Commercial kits utilizing this method are available.

Sequence-Specific Oligonucleotide Hybridization

It has been possible to use hybridization of SSOPs to amplified DNA to identify alleles (Gao et al, 1991; Williams et al, 1997; Cao et al, 1999). The use of several different oligonucleotide probes to define a specific HLA allele or the use of sequence-specific priming coupled with hybridization with panels of probes is usually required. A set of oligonucleotides capable of identifying each allele is hybridized to denatured PCR-amplified DNA attached to a solid support. Hybridization conditions are adjusted so that the probes will anneal to denatured DNA containing the HLA alleles from which the oligonucleotide sequence was derived. The oligonucleotides are

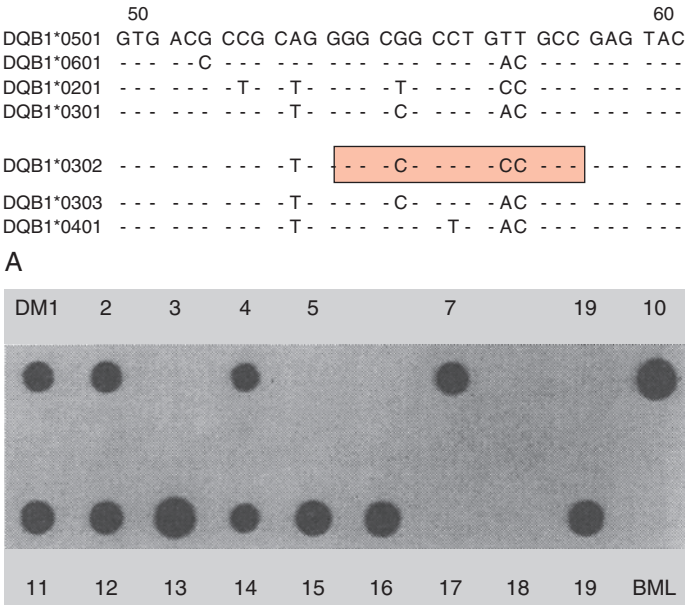


Figure 49-10 **A,** Nucleotide sequences of several DQB1 alleles. The sequences presented cover the codons for amino acids 50 to 60. A dash indicates that the nucleotide is identical to the top sequence. An oligonucleotide that is specific for the DQB1*0302 sequence is boxed. **B,** Oligonucleotide dot blot analysis of 17 insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus patients (DM1 to 19) and one control, BML. Amplified DNA containing class II DQB1 sequences for the patients was attached to a membrane and hybridized to the labeled oligonucleotide specific for the DQB1*0302 sequence (described previously). Positive hybridization signals indicate the patients who carry this DBQ1 gene sequence (patients DM1, 2, 4, 7, 10 to 16, 19). (With permission from Todd JA, Bell J, McDevitt HO: HLA-DQ β gene contributes to susceptibility and resistance to insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *Nature* 329:599, 1987.)

labeled with a tag for detection of hybridization. For example, the oligonucleotide might be coupled to an enzyme such as alkaline phosphatase. Following addition of a substrate, alkaline phosphatase cleaves the substrate to yield a colored compound or to produce light (chemiluminescence). After visualization, the pattern of hybridization can be read to determine the alleles present. Figure 49-10 illustrates the approach using an oligonucleotide probe for the DQB1 allele, DQB1*0302, to identify patients with insulin-dependent diabetes who carry this allele (Todd et al, 1987). The SSOP method is highly accurate, specific, and reliable (Ng et al, 1996; Hurley et al, 2000a). It is often used in situations in which many samples are typed in large batches. Commercial kits using this method are available.

In a related procedure, called the *reverse format*, the oligonucleotide probes are bound to a solid support (Bugawan et al, 1994). DNA from the samples to be tested is amplified using primers labeled with, for example, biotin. The amplified DNA is then hybridized to the immobilized probes, which contain sequences found in the alleles present in the DNA. After visualization (using an avidin-linked detection system), the pattern of hybridization can be read to determine the alleles present. This procedure is useful for typing both small and large numbers of samples. Commercial kits utilizing this method are available.

Sequence-Specific Conformational Polymorphism or Heteroduplex Analysis

Another, although little used, method of identification of HLA alleles analyzes the mobility of amplified DNA, either denatured (sequence-specific conformational polymorphism [SSCP]) or as a renatured DNA duplex (heteroduplex analysis), following electrophoresis (Arguello et al, 1996). The mobility of the DNA is compared with the mobility of amplified DNA from known HLA alleles to define an HLA allele. This procedure is useful in typing a small number of samples, particularly in comparisons between individuals, for example, within a family.

Nucleic Acid Sequencing

A final method of identification of HLA alleles involves direct determination of the DNA sequences of the HLA alleles carried by an individual

(sequence-based typing [SBT]). Alleles may be identified following PCR amplification to separate the alleles based on SSPs, or as a mixture of two alleles. Sequencing is labor-intensive and highly complex but is used frequently to determine the HLA match at an allele level between hematopoietic progenitor cell transplant patients and their prospective donors (Petersdorf & Hansen, 1995; Rozemuller & Tilanus, 1996; Scheltinga et al, 1997). Efforts to develop automated SBT methods have yielded several potentially promising high-throughput approaches. These include the use of denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), which is reported to provide greater typing resolution than can be achieved by PCR-based sequencing approaches (Etokebe et al, 2003), and the so-called *pyrosequencing technique*. Pyrosequencing is a real-time, nonelectrophoretic DNA sequencing method that uses luciferase-luciferin light emission as a detection signal as nucleotides are incorporated into target DNA. A unique signal is created for each allelic variant, which is distinguished by recognition software (Nordstrom et al, 2000). Pyrosequencing by means of high-throughput systems permits processing of hundreds of individual specimens daily. In addition, reference-strand–mediated conformational analysis (RSCA) has been employed in high-throughput systems to achieve discrimination between HLA alleles differing by as little as one nucleotide. The technology detects differences between alleles by measuring their conformation-dependent mobility in polyacrylamide gels after they have been labeled with locus-specific fluorescent tags (Arguello et al, 1998).

Resolution of DNA-Based Typing

The level of resolution (i.e., the ability to discriminate among alleles) obtained by DNA typing methods is controlled by the choice and number of primers and/or probes used in the assay and the typing method. This choice may depend on the time available for performing the typing, the cost of the typing, the expertise of the laboratory personnel, and the purpose of the typing. Large-scale donor registry typing is usually carried out at low to intermediate resolution, while typing of a potential hematopoietic progenitor cell donor for a specific patient is carried out at allele-level resolution.

A multistep approach is often used to identify HLA alleles by DNA-based typing. For this reason, HLA types defined by DNA-based typing may be reported at different levels of resolution. Low-resolution (or generic or serologic)-level DNA-based typing produces a result that is similar in appearance and detail to a serologic type. For example, a DNA-defined type, DRB1*11 or DRB1*11XX, is the approximate equivalent of the serologic type DR11. The "XX" indicates that the allele was not further defined. At this level of resolution, it is not possible to determine which of the more than 30 DRB1*11 alleles is carried by the individual being tested. Although serologic typing can be as informative as low-resolution typing, results are more reliable with DNA-based testing. Intermediate-resolution–level DNA-based typing may narrow the choices by listing several different possibilities for the type of an individual (e.g., DRB1*1101 or DRB1*1104). Finally, high-resolution–level (or allele-level) DNA-based typing identifies the specific allele carried by an individual (e.g., DRB1*1104); for class II, a common strategy to resolve this type of ambiguity is to use reverse primers near polymorphisms at codon 86 (Williams et al, 2004). Furthermore, because identification of HLA alleles may be based on partial sequence information, it is possible that interpretation of the results will miss alleles that were unknown at the time of the typing (Hurley et al, 1997). For this reason, laboratories are cautioned to maintain their raw typing data (i.e., which primers and probes were positive and negative and the nucleotide sequences of the reagents) so that the results can be reinterpreted as new alleles are described.

SEROLOGIC DETECTION OF CLASS I AND CLASS II MOLECULES

Lymphocyte microcytotoxicity testing, which originally was used in the mouse system by Gorer and Amos and later was modified by Terasaki and McClelland for use in the human system, has been used for HLA typing since the 1960s. Serologic testing for HLA-A, -B can be reproducible under controlled, standardized conditions; however, in large-scale testing (e.g., for registries), error rates may increase (Bozon et al, 1997; Yu et al, 1997). The reproducibility for serologically determined HLA-C and class II specificities is much lower. HLA-DP is not usually defined by serology. The microcytotoxicity serologic assay still is used fairly widely for class I specificities (HLA-A, -B) but has been supplanted by DNA-based testing for HLA-C and for class II specificities (HLA-DR, -DQ, -DP) in most typing laboratories. DNA-based testing with its greater resolution is used to determine the HLA type of unrelated individuals and of family members, especially if the segregation of HLA cannot be accurately discriminated by serology (e.g., families where parents are not available, families where parents share an HLA antigen). For example, an offspring inherits DR4 from each parent and so is DR4 antigen homozygous (DR4,DR4). However, high-resolution DNA typing might identify two distinct alleles of the DR4 antigen, DRB1*0401 and DRB1*0403 (DRB1*04 allele heterozygote), providing informative data for haplotype segregation analysis.

Lymphocyte Preparation

Lymphocytes used routinely in HLA serologic typing assays are readily obtained from peripheral whole blood by layering onto a Ficoll-Hypaque gradient to separate the blood cells by density centrifugation. The separated peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBLs) can be used for HLA-A, -B, -C typing. To test for HLA-DR, -DQ serologic specificities, it is necessary to enrich for B lymphocytes, or to use a special two-color fluorescent technique to simultaneously differentiate between unseparated B cells and T cells.

Lymphocyte Microcytotoxicity Assay

The HLA phenotype is determined by testing the unseparated lymphocyte preparation (PBL) or T lymphocytes (for HLA-A, -B, -C) or the enriched B lymphocytes (for HLA-DR, -DQ) against a panel of well-characterized HLA alloantisera. The assay is a two-stage test. During the sensitization stage, the lymphocytes are incubated with the antisera. Prescreened and standardized rabbit serum as a source of complement is added in excess, and the mixture is incubated for an additional period. If the lymphocytes carry a cell surface molecule recognized by complement-fixing antibodies in the alloantiserum, the antibodies bind to the cells and the cells are subsequently lysed following the addition of complement. The assay is terminated with the addition of fluorescein diacetate and ethidium bromide for fluorescent detection procedures, or of eosin and formalin or trypan blue and ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid for dye visualization methods. Reactions are read for percentage lysis and are numerically graded.

HLA Typing Sera Trays

HLA typing reagents are derived from the sera of alloimmunized individuals (multiparous women, transplant recipients, multitransfused patients, and planned immunization of humans). Multiwell plates of human alloantisera (i.e., HLA typing trays) are commercially available. Because of the antigenic complexity of HLA antigens, several antisera should be used to define each specificity. Most laboratories use trays from at least two different vendors or may use locally derived alloantisera. Because many alloantisera are not truly monospecific and many exhibit some cross-reactivity, the reactivity of each antiserum must be thoroughly tested and known to the individual interpreting the results. This requires stringent quality control of each new lot of typing trays with well-characterized reference cells. The titer and the specificity of antibody formed by a sensitized individual may not remain constant over time; therefore, supplies of antisera are limited. In an attempt to create a consistent and unlimited supply of reagents, some companies have produced monoclonal antibodies. These monoclonal reagents are not available for all HLA specificities.

Cross-Reactivity

HLA alloantisera may react with more than one HLA allelic product. This phenomenon can result from polyspecificity of the antisera and/or from cross-reactivity and is responsible for the complex reactivity patterns of some alloantisera. Polyspecific sera contain two or more HLA-specific antibodies that can be adsorbed to remove one antibody with little effect on the reactivity of the other(s). Cross-reactive antisera contain, most frequently, a single antibody that reacts with an antigenic determinant shared among several different HLA allelic products (i.e., CREG or broad determinants, as previously discussed) (Rodey et al, 1994). Cross-reactions occur most frequently among allelic products encoded by the same locus but can occur between allelic products encoded by different loci (e.g., A2 + B17).

CELLULAR DETECTION OF CLASS II MOLECULES

The response of one cell in tissue culture to the alloantigens on the surface of a second cell is called the *mixed leukocyte culture* or *mixed lymphocyte reaction* (Hartzman et al, 1971). The MLC is considered an in vitro measure of class II disparity between individuals that recognizes determinants found on class II molecules, which are known collectively as *HLA-D*. The T cell response is made unidirectional by preventing cells from one of the two individuals from replicating by treating those cells with

radiation or mitomycin C prior to addition to the culture. The MLC represents a summation response of a responder cell to differences in the multiple determinants on HLA class II molecules (DR, DQ, and DP) encoded by the irradiated stimulator cell haplotypes. The response to DR molecules appears to predominate.

Use of the MLC in clinical laboratories to determine histocompatibility has declined because of limitations inherent in the technique. The MLC can be influenced by the health of the patient, the type of disease, and the history of prior transfusion (Mickelson et al, 1996). For these reasons, the MLC assay has been replaced by more precise DNA-based typing methods. Currently, in some transplantation centers, the MLC is used to identify renal allograft recipients with specific hyporeactivity to donor HLA molecules following transplantation as a guideline for tapering of immunosuppression (Reinsmoen & Matas, 1993).

Limiting dilution analysis to define the frequency of donor cytotoxic or helper T lymphocytes has been used to predict the extent of allorecognition in hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation (Madrigal et al, 1997). The correlations of these frequencies with subsequent events such as the extent of GVHD is still controversial.

TISSUE/ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION

Long-term survival of solid organ and hematopoietic progenitor cell grafts represents one of the most challenging goals in medical science. Renal transplantation is the therapy of choice for most patients with end-stage renal disease. Hematopoietic progenitor cell, heart, lung, liver, and pancreas transplantation is gaining wide acceptance as a therapeutic procedure with successful outcomes. The primary obstacle to solid organ and to hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation is immunologically mediated rejection of the foreign tissue. Therefore, the success of allografting is dependent on the ability to deter the immune reaction, which may be accomplished by (1) histocompatibility matching between the donor and recipient; (2) immunosuppressive therapy of the recipient (see Table 49-3 for a list of common immunosuppressive drugs and laboratory approaches used to monitor them) (Suthanthiran et al, 1996); and (3) ultimately achieving specific unresponsiveness to donor alloantigen(s) (i.e., tolerance) (Remuzzi et al, 1995).

TABLE 49-3
Therapeutic Drugs, Mechanisms of Action, and Monitoring Methods

Drug	Mechanisms of Action	Monitoring Methods*
Azathioprine	Purine antagonist; blocks cell proliferation	Routine labs, pharmacokinetic studies, pharmacodynamic studies
Glucocorticoids	Blocks cytokine gene transcription; inhibits T cell proliferation and T cell–dependent immunity	Routine labs, pharmacokinetic studies
Cyclosporine	Inhibits expression of nuclear regulatory proteins and T cell–activation genes	Routine labs, pharmacokinetic studies, pharmacodynamic studies
FK506	Inhibits expression of nuclear regulatory proteins and T cell–activation genes	Routine labs, pharmacokinetic studies
Mycophenolate mofetil	Inhibits purine biosynthesis, thereby suppressing T and B cell proliferation	Routine labs, pharmacokinetic studies, pharmacodynamic studies
Rapamycin	Inhibits DNA and protein synthesis, blocking T cell proliferation; inhibits antigen-driven B cell proliferation	Routine labs, pharmacokinetic studies, pharmacodynamic studies

Adapted from Massey D, King A, Riley R: Renal allograft dysfunction in kidney transplant. American Society for Clinical Pathology, *Clinical Chemistry Check Sample* 43:19–38, 2003.

*Routine laboratory tests include serum creatinine, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), complete blood count (CBC), liver enzymes, and so on. Pharmacokinetic studies include measurement of trough levels and calculation of area under the curve (AUC). Pharmacodynamic study refers to measuring the biologic effects of the drug at its target site.

GENETIC BASIS OF TRANSPLANTATION

The genetic basis of transplantation was first determined in 1916 as a result of tumor transplantation experiments in mice and was subsequently extended to transplants of normal tissue (Snell, 1981). It was demonstrated that skin grafts within inbred strains that were homozygous at histocompatibility loci (i.e., syngeneic grafts) were successful, but grafts between two different inbred strains (allografts) were rejected. Furthermore, allografts from either parent inbred strain (two copies of the same MHC genes; homozygous) to first-generation (F1) hybrids (one copy of each of the two different sets of MHC genes from two homozygous parents) survived in all animals, whereas grafts from F1 hybrid offspring to either parent (one haplotype mismatch) did not survive. These observations established the laws of transplantation. In 1948, the factors or genes determining the fate of allografts were named *histocompatibility* or *H genes*. Also in 1948, the major histocompatibility locus in the mouse, H-2, was defined by Gorer (Snell, 1981). There are other histocompatibility or H antigens, which are termed *mHags*. Although called minor, mismatching for these antigens can have major effects (Goulmy, 1997; Dupont, 1998).

Because convincing evidence already existed in experimental animal models that molecules encoded by the MHC represent the major genetic barrier to successful allografting, HLA typing was used in humans to determine and to optimize compatibility between graft donor and recipient. Initially, the influence of HLA antigens on graft survival was investigated by grafting of nonvascularized skin between family members. As in studies with inbred mice, skin grafts between HLA-identical siblings survived significantly longer than grafts between one-haplotype–matched siblings, parents, or unrelated donors. These observations were extended to renal transplantation during the late 1960s and early 1970s. The most recent data from the international Collaborative Transplant Study (CTS) in Heidelberg and from the United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS) Registry in the United States (analyzed at the University of California, Los Angeles) confirm the MHC as the major genetic barrier to transplantation for renal grafts (Cecka, 1999; Opelz et al, 1999) (Fig. 49-11); for current updates, see the websites listed in Table 49-1. The data for hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation also reaffirm the role of the MHC in transplant outcome as measured by both patient survival and GVHD (Hansen et al, 1999) (Fig. 49-12).

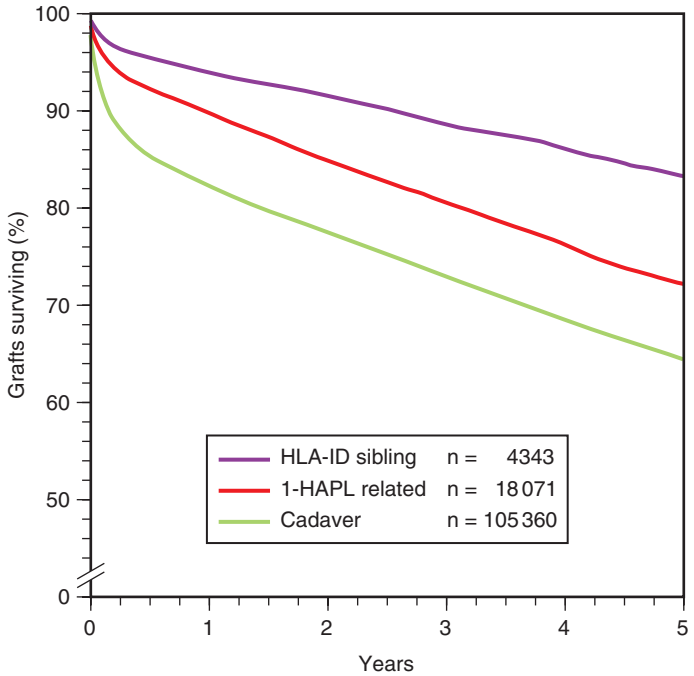


Figure 49-11 **Five-year renal allograft (first transplant) survival of three categories of histocompatibility: human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-identical siblings; one-haplotype living-related; and cadaver donor.** Grafts from HLA-identical sibling donors (both HLA chromosomes matched) have the best outcomes. Numbers of transplants studied are indicated (regression, p <0.0001). (With permission from Opelz G, Wujcak T, Dohler B, et al: HLA compatibility and organ transplant survival, *Rev Immunogenet* 1:334, 1999.)

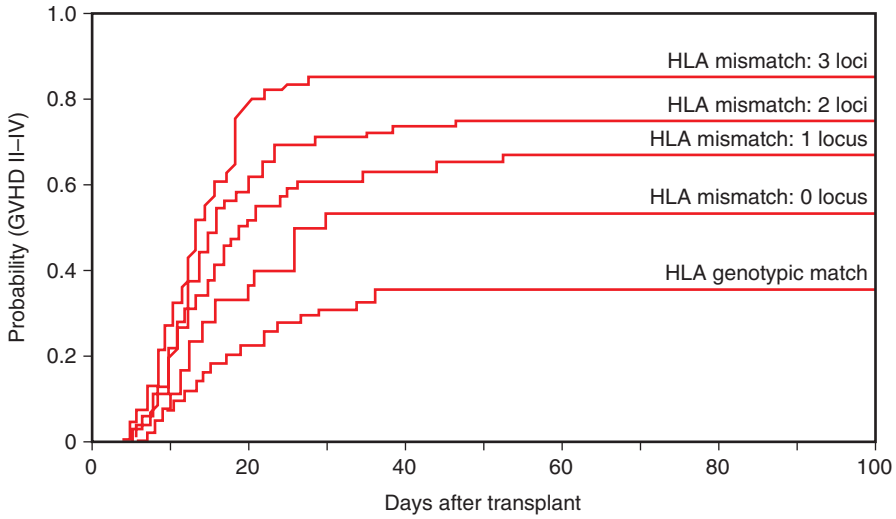


Figure 49-12 Probability of grades II to IV acute graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) in human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-identical sibling (HLA genotypic match) and haploidentical related marrow donor transplants variably matched for HLA-A, -B, or DR/Dw (HLA mismatch: 3 loci, 2 loci, 1 locus, or 0 loci). Matching for HLA-A, -B, and -DR was defined by serology, and matching for HLA-Dw was defined by mixed leukocyte culture (MLC) or by typing for HLA-DRB1 alleles with sequence-specific oligonucleotide probe (SSOP). All patients received unmodified marrow (without T cell depletion) following a conditioning regimen that included total body irradiation. Cyclosporine and methotrexate were given for GVHD prophylaxis. (With permission from Hansen JA, Yamamoto K, Petersdorf E, et al: The role of HLA matching in hematopoietic cell transplantation, *Rev Immunogenet* 1:359, 1999.)

HISTOCOMPATIBILITY MATCHING

HLA Matching

Although the level of HLA match is an important element in transplant outcome, histocompatibility matching means different things in different settings, and strategies for matching vary. Criteria differ with variables that include the type of graft (e.g., solid vascularized organ vs. hematopoietic progenitor cell), the disease (e.g., chronic myelogenous leukemia vs. aplastic anemia), the age of the patient, and the clinical protocol (e.g., marrow vs. umbilical cord blood; T cell depletion of marrow vs. non–T cell depletion) (Chapter 38).

Matching usually includes evaluation of at least three loci: HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-DR. Individuals matched, at whatever resolution, for all three loci are termed *6/6 matches* or *0 mismatches*. *Zero mismatches* (a term used in solid organ transplantation) may also refer to donor/recipient pairs in which the donor has no detectable HLA differences from the recipient, that is, where the donor is homozygous for the alleles at one or more of the loci (e.g., homozygous donor: A*01:01; B*08:01; DRB1*03:01; heterozygous recipient: A*01:01, A*03:01; B*08:01, B*07:02; DRB1*03:01, DRB1*15:01). Individuals matched for four of six alleles or antigens are termed *4/6 matches*. Apparent differences in the level of match can arise because of the typing method used to assign HLA types (e.g., serologic vs. DNA-based typing). The serologic and DNA nomenclatures, although they are related, can differ. The definition of a match can also vary depending on the typing resolution. A patient and a donor may appear to be matched at the serologic level (e.g., recipient: A2, A26; donor: A2, A26); however, the pair may be mismatched at the level of HLA alleles (e.g., recipient: A*02:01, A*26:01; donor: A*02:05, A*66:01).

Matching for classical HLA molecules at the allele level could optimize outcome for all grafts (both vascular organs and hematopoietic progenitor cells) (Petersdorf et al, 1998; Opelz et al, 1999). However, because of the extremely large number of HLA alleles, allelic-level matching is difficult. Therefore, the level of matching that ensures a good outcome for the largest number of patients of all ethnic populations must be considered.

Following hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation, subtypic determinants or allelic differences initiate important cytotoxic T cell responses leading to graft rejection and GVHD. Indeed, studies have shown that high-resolution matching for class I and class II alleles of the donor and recipient can improve outcome after unrelated marrow transplantation. Recent data suggest that multiple mismatches are detrimental to outcome; however, the impact of neither single mismatches nor specific loci has not yet been well defined (Petersdorf et al, 1998; Sasazuki et al, 1998; Hansen et al, 1999). With respect to single-allele mismatches and their impact on transplantation, a report by Flomenberg and colleagues (2004) describes a differential impact of HLA mismatches at specific loci between donor and recipients. This multivariate analysis of more than 1800 donor-recipient pairs showed that single-allele mismatches at HLA-C adversely affected engraftment; mismatches at HLA-A, -B, -C, and -DR were significant in terms of grade III to IV acute GVHD incidence, and that the highest effect on this disease was given by mismatches at HLA-A, whether this was acute or chronic GVHD; mismatches at HLA-A, -B, -C, and -DR showed significant effects on mortality, and again HLA-A mismatches demonstrated the largest impact on survival, perhaps because single-allele mismatches at this locus appeared to induce resistant GVHD. Only a minority of patients awaiting transplantation will receive grafts from fully allele-matched donors (Hurley et al, 2000b). To enable all patients to benefit from lifesaving transplantation, identifying allele mismatches that are well tolerated would allow the selection of mismatched donors to be prioritized according to the biologic risk of specific HLA mismatches.

Optimal matching for solid organ grafts may differ from matching requirements for hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation. Recent data suggest that both the HLA loci matched and the level of resolution of HLA testing contribute to renal graft outcome (Opelz et al, 1999). Currently, UNOS facilitates sharing of cadaveric kidneys based on subtypic specificities. Because subtypic matches are infrequently identified, it has been proposed that the HLA class I molecules should be matched for the broader CREG determinants. CREG may define immunodominant determinants recognized in the humoral immune response. Rodey and colleagues (1994) showed that 80% to 90% of the HLA alloantibodies formed by kidney recipients following transplantation are directed to CREG determinants. CREG determinants are shared among different class I HLA molecules and, in contrast to subtypic specificities, have a similar distribution among ethnic population groups. Rare subtypic specificities are included within the CREG. Because the number of CREGs is less than the number of subtypic specificities, the probability of a CREG-level match is greater than for a subtypic or allele-level HLA class I match. Therefore, allocation of organs based on CREG matching should result in a higher probability of matched grafts being distributed equitably to recipients of all ethnic populations. CREG matching for the allocation of kidneys has been characterized as immunologically flawed, and its observed positive effect in prolonging graft survival and reducing immunosuppressant requirements has been attributed entirely to the effect of HLA matching (Egfjord et al, 2003). Others cite a positive role for CREG matching in reducing HLA sensitization among minority recipients of renal transplants (Crowe, 2003).

Other strategies focus on matching for biologically relevant fragments of MHC molecules (e.g., epitope matching) (Suciu-Foca et al, 1998; Harris & Cortesini, 1999). Until recently, direct recognition of alloantigens was thought to be the main pathway for graft rejection responses. However, studies suggest that the indirect response plays a significant role in graft rejection, at least of solid organ grafts (Sayegh & Carpenter, 1996). If the

indirect pathway is activated, then the peptide epitopes generated by proteolytic breakdown of the HLA molecule and not the HLA molecule itself would be the immunogenic stimulus. Therefore, new innovative strategies can be designed for defining allowable mismatches based on recognition of the peptide fragments. For example, a strategy could consider whether the mismatched donor HLA molecules would be perceived as immunogenic in the recipient (i.e., whether the recipient HLA molecules would bind and present these epitopes). Theoretically, one could identify foreign HLA peptide sequences not presented by specific recipient HLA molecules and thus define allowable mismatches for given HLA molecules. The introduction of solid-based methods (Luminex, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay [ELISA], and flow cytometry methods) for detecting antibodies to HLA molecules, in which eluted HLA molecules from cells are bound to polystyrene beads (or polystyrene microtiter plates), has allowed the more accurate identification of antibodies generated by patients awaiting transplantation. It is now possible to group HLA molecules based on the immunogenic epitope that is shared among them, thus allowing for better selection of donors for transplantation. The level of sensitization is more accurately interrogated by beads carrying HLA molecules of a single specificity (single-antigen beads), and absorption of alloantisera with these beads elucidates the epitope that the antibody is directed to and can be inferred by testing the unabsorbed and the absorbed serum with a panel of single-antigen beads; reduced panel reactivity in the absorbed serum defines the epitope specificity. Based on these absorption experiments, Marrari & Duquesnoy (2009a, 2009b) and El-Awar and colleagues (2007) have reported several epitopes or Eplets shared by multiple HLA class I and II molecules. More recently, confirmed epitopes on HLA molecules can be found in the HLA Epitope Registry (http://epregistry.ufpi.br/); see also the Workshop report: a website for the antibody-defined HLA epitope registry (Duquesnoy et al, 2012). Some laboratories are currently using this epitope registry to determine unacceptable antigens in donors based on the patient's immune reactivity assessed using single-antigen Luminex bead methods and the HLAMatchmaker algorithm (Valentini et al, 2007), which predicts some of these epitopes.

The inherent complexity in interpretation of HLA typing results and in selection of a donor makes it critical to include an expert in histocompatibility testing. Experts in HLA typing will know the strengths and weaknesses of each method of typing, as well as the frequency of alleles and haplotypes in the population; this information is important in both the search for and the selection of a suitable donor.

HLA-Specific Antibody Detection in Recipient Serum

Patients can be sensitized to specific foreign HLA molecules through transfusion, pregnancy, or prior transplantation. Assessment of compatibility between the recipient and the possible donor includes testing for this sensitization. Recipient serum is tested prior to transplantation on a panel (lymphocytes or immobilized soluble HLA molecules) of known HLA profile to measure panel reactive antibody (PRA). At the time of transplantation, the recipient serum is tested with the prospective donor lymphocytes to identify specific reactivity to the potential donor in the donor-specific cross-match. Although the techniques used to detect antibody binding may differ among laboratories, the purpose remains to obtain a profile of the immunologic risk factors of a recipient on the waiting list, which will aid the medical team in both pretransplantation and posttransplantation decisions. Binding of antibody in the current serum of the recipient to the T lymphocytes of the donor is a contraindication to renal transplantation.

Serum Screening (PRA)

Thorough characterization of the antibody profile in patients awaiting transplantation aids in interpretation of the pretransplantation donor-specific cross-match. The goals of a PRA screen are as follows:

1. To identify the level of presensitization of the patient to HLA antigens. A patient with PRA in excess of 60% (i.e., serum from the patient reacts to specificities found in at least 60% of the panel) has a decreased likelihood of a negative donor-specific cross-match and thus of receiving a transplant from an unrelated transplant.
2. To identify the HLA specificity of the antibodies to predict the HLA antigen(s) to be avoided when donors are selected.
3. To identify patients with irrelevant antibodies (e.g., immunoglobulin [Ig]M autoantibodies) so that appropriate techniques may be selected to avoid false-positive readings at the time of the donor-specific cross-match.

Characterization of HLA-specific antibody present in the recipient serum requires testing on a selected panel of well-defined HLA specificities. Lymphocytes or soluble antigen from a sufficient number of individuals must be included in the screening panel to ensure that all but the rarest HLA-directed antibody will be detected. As far as possible, the screening panel should remain the same so that results are comparable over time. Renal transplantation recipients frequently form antibodies to CREGs rather than to subtypic specificities (Rodey et al, 1994; 1997), so the analyses of panel reactivity should consider identification of CREG, as well as of subtypic specificities. Identification of antibody specificities in patients awaiting transplantation aids in preselecting a potential donor for whom the recipient will have a negative final cross-match. Computer programs assist in this selection (Claas et al, 1999; Duquesnoy et al, 1999).

The frequency of screening and the selection of assays used for the screening procedure are decisions based on the immunologic profile of the individual recipient. Decreased use of blood transfusions has negated the requirement for screening monthly serum samples on all patients (ASHI website; see Table 49-1). The presence of both HLA class I– and class II–specific antibodies is detected by serum testing on a panel of lymphocytes (e.g., by direct complement-dependent cytotoxicity or antiglobulin-augmented cytotoxicity assays) or on a panel of soluble HLA molecules immobilized on plates (i.e., ELISA) or on beads (i.e., flow cytometry). (The assays are described in detail in the ASHI Manual [2001].) An advantage of the solid-phase soluble antigen assay is that it can be designed to detect only IgG, HLA class I–specific antibodies.

Serum samples from potential recipients should be stored at −70° C and protected from carbon dioxide and from evaporation. The stored characterized serum samples will be used in the donor-specific cross-match to assess compatibility with a prospective donor.

Donor-Specific Cross-Match

The lymphocyte cross-match tests for the presence of antibodies, if any, in the serum of the potential recipient that react with lymphocytes of the specific donor. In the cross-match test, the lymphocyte is the target cell of choice because it expresses high levels of HLA molecules and is easy to isolate. This test is probably the most important contribution of the HLA tissue typing laboratory to clinical renal transplantation. The purpose of the cross-match is to prevent hyperacute rejection and to detect antibodies that identify immunologic risk factors in patients awaiting transplantation. The occurrence of hyperacute rejection is significantly correlated with a positive direct complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) cross-match between donor T lymphocytes and recipient serum at the time of transplantation. Reactivity of current valid serum of the recipient to the T lymphocytes of the donor is a contraindication to renal graft transplantation. Detection of donor-reactive antibodies in noncurrent recipient serum samples is not a contraindication but may represent risk for graft loss other than immediate hyperacute rejection (Cardella et al, 1982; Geddes et al, 1999). A donor-specific cross-match also is used in some centers to predict hematopoietic progenitor cell graft failure (Hansen et al, 1997).

Requirements and methods for the donor-specific cross-match are stated in the standards of the American Society for Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics (see Table 49-1) and in the ASHI Procedure Manual (2001). Acceptable techniques at present include the Amos-modified CDC, the extended incubation-time CDC, the antiglobulin-augmented CDC, and flow cytometry.

Antibody-Detection Techniques

Different laboratories may use different combinations of assays to detect antibody. The level of sensitization detected will vary with the assay. The antibody specificity detected will vary with the target cell.

Direct Complement-Dependent Cytotoxicity

Direct CDC includes all assays that use the addition of complement to detect the direct binding of antibody to lymphocytes. Fixation of complement by the antibody-antigen complexes on the cell surface results in cell death or cytotoxicity. CDC methods include the basic technique (no wash step before addition of complement), the Amos-modified technique (wash step added before addition of complement), and extended-time incubation techniques. The wash step removes serum, which may contain substances that hinder complement activation. The advantages of direct CDC techniques are that they are reproducible, and that correlation with the incidence of hyperacute rejection is excellent.

Indirect Cross-Match Techniques

Indirect techniques include the antiglobulin augmented lymphocytotoxicity assay technique (also known as *anti-human globulin cytotoxicity assay*), and flow cytometry. Both use a reagent specific for human immunoglobulin to augment detection of HLA-directed antibody. Indirect techniques detect the presence of antibodies specific for CREGs that frequently go

undetected in direct CDC assays. Advantages of the flow cytometry assay include discrimination of the subclass of the cell-bound immunoglobulin (IgG vs. IgM) and characterization of the target cell binding the alloantibody (T lymphocyte vs. B lymphocyte vs. monocyte).

Autoantibodies

The presence of circulating autoantibodies in the recipient is not known to be deleterious. Thus, an auto–cross-match should be performed, preferably when the patient is put on the transplantation waiting list. If autoantibodies are present, the sera used for donor cross-matching should have the autoreactivity removed. Autoantibodies are primarily IgM, and HLA-specific antibodies are primarily IgG (Barger et al, 1989). Either heat inactivation at 63 ± 1° C or reduction with the chemical agent dithioerythritol or dithiothreitol (DTT) of any potential IgM antibodies is used to differentiate between IgM and IgG antibodies in the serum samples. If the heat-inactivated or DTT-treated serum sample is negative even though the untreated sample is positive, most centers will proceed with transplantation. However, DTT or heat inactivation should be used with caution because not all HLA-specific antibodies are IgG, and because if they are not properly controlled, both procedures can remove IgG activity, as well as IgM.

B Cell Antibodies

A cross-match using donor B lymphocytes (B cell cross-match) may be performed in sensitized patients in some centers. A positive donor-specific B cell cross-match is not a contraindication to transplantation. The clinical significance has not been resolved, but a positive test may be a risk factor, particularly in patients who have previously been transplanted. Antibodies detected in a B cell cross-match can be (1) class II, HLA-DR, -DQ–specific, (2) weak HLA-A, -B, -C–specific antibodies (B cells have a higher density of class I molecules and are more sensitive to complement-dependent assays than are T cells), and/or (3) non–HLA-specific antibodies (e.g., autoantibodies). To interpret a positive B cell cross-match, it may be necessary to adsorb recipient sera with platelets before performing the donor cross-match. (Platelets express class I but not class II molecules.) The two most commonly used B cell cross-match techniques are the CDC and flow cytometry assays.

Selection of Recipient Serum Samples for Donor Cross-Match

For patients with no detectable sensitization (i.e., 0% PRA), the most recent serum sample available can be used for the donor-specific cross-match. If the patient has preexisting antibodies or has had a recent sensitizing event, a current serum sample (i.e., within 48 hours of transplantation) should be collected. For sensitized recipients, representative samples, including the most reactive or "peak" serum sample, are tested in most centers; a donor-positive noncurrent sample may be considered to be a risk factor, particularly in a patient who rejected a primary graft early in the posttransplantation period (Mahoney et al, 1996).

RENAL TRANSPLANTATION

Current practice is to select donors for recipients who are ABO compatible, T cell, donor-specific, cross-match negative with appropriate recipient sera and the best available HLA match. The original finding that kidney grafts transplanted between HLA-identical siblings survive significantly longer than grafts transplanted between HLA-mismatched siblings or parent-sibling combinations has been consistently confirmed. Figure 49-11 shows a recent analysis of 5-year survival of renal allografts from the international CTS registry among three categories of donors: (1) HLA-identical sibling, 84% survival; (2) one-haplotype living-related, 73% survival; (3) all cadaver, 66% survival. The impact of matching for MHC in living-related transplantation is clearly observed by comparing categories 1 and 2. Similar results are observed in the UNOS database (Cecka, 1999).

Although outcome analyses of living-related grafts confirm the role of the MHC as the major genetic barrier to successful graft outcome, demonstration and acceptance of a positive influence of HLA matching in graft outcome for unrelated cadaveric transplantation have been more controversial. However, long-term survival data from collaborative multicenter studies are consistent in showing a highly significant effect of HLA matching on graft survival in cadaveric renal transplantation (Cecka, 1999; Opelz et al, 1999). Moreover, two recent single-center studies—one from Europe (Oslo) and one from North America (Toronto)—have reported significant improvement in graft survival as a function of HLA match (Geddes et al, 1999; Leivestad et al, 1999). A single center may require prioritization based on HLA match to transplant sufficient recipients with well-matched grafts to achieve statistical significance in outcome analysis. Although the numbers are smaller, a highly significant influence of HLA matching has been observed on the outcome of kidney grafts from living-unrelated donors (Opelz et al, 1999).

Closely matched grafts from cadaver donors survive significantly better than and approximately as well as grafts from HLA-identical siblings (see Fig. 49-11); thus, UNOS, based on high PRA (99% and 100%), recommends the sharing of highly matched kidneys regionally and nationally, respectively. Graft survival in patients following first kidney transplantations decreases stepwise as the number of mismatches increases from 0 MM to 6 MM (Cecka, 1999; Opelz et al, 1999). However, to ensure equitable sharing of organs for all recipients, including those with rare HLA haplotypes, new algorithms for prioritizing recipients on the waiting list have been adopted by organ-sharing programs (Opelz et al, 1999). The most recent outcome data for both graft and patient survival can be accessed through the CTS website (www.ctstransplant.org).

Matching of the initial graft not only increases survival time for that graft, but it decreases the probability of recipient sensitization and facilitates retransplantation. Accumulation of highly sensitized patients on the waiting list is a significant problem in many centers, as patients wait for long periods of time and may present difficult clinical management problems (Sanfilippo et al, 1992).

NONRENAL ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION

Survival of heart, liver, lung, and pancreas grafts is good, with between 58% and 67% of first grafts surviving at 5 years. Donors usually are not matched for HLA type, and a pretransplant donor cross-match is not routinely performed. Serum antibody screens are recommended to identify the state of sensitization as an immunologic risk factor for the recipient. If feasible, the graft recipients and cadaveric donors of nonrenal vascularized grafts should be typed for HLA to allow for retrospective analyses. Recent international CTS data show no effect of HLA matching on outcomes of liver transplantation; however, the CTS data do show a significant impact of matching for HLA-A, -B, and -DR on outcomes of first heart transplants (Opelz et al, 1999). The acceptable period for cold ischemia preservation may limit the extent of HLA matching possible for heart transplantation.

ALLOGENEIC HEMATOPOIETIC PROGENITOR CELL TRANSPLANTATION

Allogeneic hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation is performed for hematologic malignancies and disorders, bone marrow failure, certain inherited metabolic disorders such as lipid storage diseases, and congenital immunodeficiency syndrome. From a histocompatibility standpoint, the best donor is either self (autogeneic transplant), if the malignancy is not one that involves the bone marrow or the disease is not genetic, or an identical twin (syngeneic transplant). Progenitor cells from an HLA-identical sibling donor are a frequent source. These donor cells usually will be genetically identical to cells of the patient across the entire MHC region. Use of a sibling donor also increases the probability that non-HLA genes that might affect transplantation success and that are not well defined (i.e., minor histocompatibility genes) will be matched (Goulmy, 1997). Haploidentical family members may also be chosen as donors (Aversa et al, 1998), although a greater risk for severe GVHD is associated with mismatched HLA donors. Based on data from the International Bone Marrow Transplant Registry (IBMTR) (see Table 49-1), more than 16,000 allogeneic bone marrow transplants were performed from 1996 to 1997; 75% used related donors.

Most patients (≈70%) do not have an HLA-matched sibling and may be considered for transplantation with cells from an HLA-matched, unrelated donor. To facilitate the search for a matched donor, national registries of unrelated donors have been developed around the world (Hansen, 1996). The NMDP in the United States is such a registry and contains more than 3.9 million HLA-typed donors, making it the largest unrelated donor registry in the world (Perkins & Hansen, 1994; see Table 49-1; www.marrow.org).

Hematopoietic progenitor cell grafts are among the most difficult of all clinical procedures for several reasons (Hansen et al, 1997; Madrigal et al, 1997). First, at the time of transplantation, the recipients are nearly totally immunodeficient, either because of inherited deficiency (severe combined immunodeficiency) or because of pretransplantation conditioning (cytotoxic chemotherapy and irradiation). Conditioning is required to eliminate malignant cells and to prevent the immune system of the recipient from rejecting the donor progenitor cells, which are infused several days after conditioning. The amount of cytotoxic pretreatment is great

enough to eliminate circulating leukocytes, nearly eliminate platelets, and abrogate production of new erythrocytes. Thus, the recipient is profoundly susceptible to all types of infection and would certainly die if not rescued by extraordinary medical care and transfused progenitor cells.

The second risk is the potential for immunologic attack of the recipient by the transplanted allogeneic progenitor cells, resulting in GVHD. GVHD has several forms and can be fatal. In spite of associated difficulties, a number of transplant centers have achieved exceptional success. Recent reports from single institutions and the IBMTR suggest leukemia-free survival of 40% to 60% at 5 years after unrelated hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation of patients with chronic myelogenous leukemia in chronic phase (see Table 49-1) (Hansen et al, 1998). Survival for patients with severe aplastic anemia transplanted with cells from unrelated donors varies from 30% to 50% at 5 years, depending on patient age (see Table 49-1, NMDP, at www.marrow.org and www.ibmtr.org); survival rates of nearly 90% have been reported at some centers (Deeg et al, 1998).

In addition to marrow as a source of hematopoietic progenitor cells, collection of hematopoietic progenitor cells from growth factor–mobilized peripheral blood (Anderlini et al, 1997) or umbilical cord blood progenitor cells (Cairo & Wagner, 1997) increases the availability of unrelated donors. New approaches to immunosuppression, including less aggressive conditioning protocols (e.g., "minitransplants") (Storb et al, 1999), may extend the availability of progenitor cell transplantation as a therapeutic procedure to patients presently excluded by age or by organ dysfunction. Hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation can also be used to generate immune responses directed at malignant cells. Relapse of disease following transplantation is greater for patients receiving an HLA-matched graft, suggesting that some degree of mismatching may be beneficial in stimulating an immune response against tumor cells (Beatty et al, 1993). As problems surrounding this most difficult procedure are overcome, hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation may become one of the most widely used methods for the treatment of a variety of diseases (Chapter 38).

HLA Typing for Progenitor Cell Transplantation

Many factors, including histocompatibility, influence the outcome of hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation (Madrigal et al, 1997). The pretransplantation workup includes HLA-A, -B, and -DR typing of all available members of the immediate family to identify a matched related donor and to establish inheritance of haplotypes. DNA-based typing for class II genes has become standard, and DNA-based typing for class I genes has been implemented in many centers. Typing of the extended family, allele-level (i.e., high-resolution) typing of specific HLA class I and class II loci, typing of other loci within the MHC (i.e., short tandem repeats or complement loci), or use of other tests (e.g., cross-matching, cytotoxic T cell precursor measurements) to measure compatibility may also be appropriate (Hurley et al, 1999).

The level of HLA typing resolution required differs for hematopoietic progenitor cells and renal transplantation. It is likely that higher-resolution HLA typing is required to match the donor and recipient for progenitor cell transplantation than is required for renal transplantation because progenitor cell transplantation involves the transfer of an entire immune system to the patient. Current research is focused on defining the loci that must be considered in donor selection, the level of resolution that must be used for matching, and the additive effect of multiple mismatches. The level of matching required may vary for each disease or protocol. Evidence suggests that matching unrelated donor and recipient for HLA-A, -B, -DRB1 alleles is related to improved outcomes. The impact of matching at other HLA loci (e.g., HLA-C, HLA-DQ) is under evaluation. Single mismatches may be tolerated; however, multiple mismatches appear to have a negative impact on outcome (Petersdorf et al, 1995, 1998; Hansen et al, 1997; Madrigal et al, 1997; Sasazuki et al, 1998). Furthermore, the positive effect of histocompatibility matching on outcome must be balanced by the positive impact of transplantation early in the course of the disease. Data from the IBMTR and the NMDP show that survival following transplantation is reduced as the disease phase advances (data on websites listed in Table 49-1).

SUMMARY

The HLA class I and class II molecules encoded within the major histocompatibility complex have a significant role in the specificity and character of immune responses. Extensive polymorphism of these molecules provides the diversity needed to ensure survival in an environment of hostile and adaptive pathogens. Unfortunately, this ability of the immune system to distinguish self from nonself extends to the recognition of foreign HLA molecules following tissue transplantation. Definition and characterization of HLA alleles and molecules have been combined with clinical protocols to maximize compatibility and to minimize the impact of the immune response on foreign tissue. These advances have contributed to the development of transplantation as a successful treatment modality for the replacement of diseased tissue.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Aguado B, Bahram S, Beck S, et al: Complete sequence and gene map of a human major histocompatibility complex, *Nature* 401:921, 1999.

Contains the first complete sequence and gene map of an MHC region and represents the collaborative effort of an international group of researchers.

Arguello JR, Little AM, Bohan E, et al: High resolution HLA class I typing by reference strand mediated conformation analysis (RSCA), *Tissue Antigens* 52:57–66, 1998.

Describes the use of RSCA in separating polymorphic HLA alleles using an automated technology that may provide rapid high-throughput HLA analysis with the additional advantages of time and cost savings.

Etokebe GE, Opsahl M, Tveter AK, et al: Physical separation of HLA-A alleles by denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography, *Tissue Antigens* 61:443–450, 2003.

Describes the application of HPLC to the task of identifying polymorphic HLA-A alleles in an automated high-throughput setting.

Nordstrom T, Ronaghi M, Forsberg L, et al: Direct analysis of single-nucleotide polymorphism on double-stranded DNA by pyrosequencing, *Biotechnol Appl Biochem* 31:107–112, 2000.

Describes the technology behind pyrosequencing and its specific application to the tasks of sequencing and verifying the presence of single nucleotide polymorphisms in double-stranded DNA.

REFERENCES

Abbal M, Cambon-Thomsen A, Foissac A, et al: Microsatellites in the HLA region: potential applications in bone marrow transplantation, *Transplant Proc* 29:2374, 1997.

Agrawal S, Pandey MK: The potential role of HLA-G polymorphism in maternal tolerance to the developing fetus, *J Hematother Stem Cell Res* 12:749–756, 2003.

Aguado B, Bahram S, Beck S, et al: Complete sequence and gene map of a human major histocompatibility complex, *Nature* 401:921, 1999.

American Society for Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics: *Laboratory manual*, ed 4, Lenexa, Kans, 2001, ASHI.

Anderlini P, Korbling M, Dale D, et al: Allogeneic blood stem cell transplantation: considerations for donors, *Blood* 90:903, 1997.

Arguello R, Avakian H, Goldman JM, et al: A novel method for simultaneous high resolution identification of HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-Cw alleles, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 93:10961, 1996.

Arguello JR, Little AM, Bohan E, et al: High resolution HLA class I typing by reference strand mediated conformation analysis (RSCA), *Tissue Antigens* 52:57–66, 1998.

Aversa F, Tabilio A, Velardi A, et al: Treatment of high-risk acute leukemia with T-cell-depleted stem cells from related donors with one fully mismatched HLA haplotype, *N Engl J Med* 339:1186, 1998.

Banchereau J, Steinman RM: Dendritic cells and the control of immunity, *Nature* 392:245, 1998.

Barger BO, Shroyer TW, Hudson SL, et al: Successful renal allografts in recipients with a positive standard, DTE negative crossmatch, *Transplant Proc* 21:746, 1989.

Beatty PG, Anasetti C, Hansen JA, et al: Marrow transplantation from unrelated donors for treatment of hematologic malignancies: effect of mismatching for one HLA locus, *Blood* 81:249, 1993.

Beck S, Trowsdale J: Sequence organization of the Class II region of the human MHC, *Immunol Rev* 167:201, 1999.

Begovich AB, McClure GR, Suraj VC, et al: Polymorphism, recombination and linkage disequilibrium within the HLA Class II region, *J Immunol* 148:249, 1992.

Benjamin JE, Gill S, Negrin RS: Biology and clinical effects of natural killer cells in allogeneic transplantation, *Curr Opin Oncol* 22:130–137, 2010.

Bjorkman PJ, Parham P: Structure, function and diversity of Class I major histocompatibility complex molecules, *Annu Rev Biochem* 59:253, 1990.

Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, et al: Structure of the human Class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2, *Nature* 329:506, 1987.

Bodmer JG, Marsh SGE, Albert ED, et al: Nomenclature for factors of the HLA system, 1996, *Tissue Antigens* 49:297, 1997.

Bodmer JG, Marsh SGE, Albert ED, et al: Nomenclature for factors of the HLA system, 1998, *Tissue Antigens* 53:407, 1999.

Bozon MV, Delgado JC, Selvakumar A, et al: Error rate for HLA-B antigen assignment by serology: implications for proficiency testing and utilization of DNA-based typing methods, *Tissue Antigens* 50:387, 1997.

Brodsky FM, Lem L, Solache A, et al: Human pathogen subversion of antigen presentation, *Immunol Rev* 168:199, 1999.

Brooks AG, Borrego F, Posch PE, et al: Specific recognition of HLA-E, but not classical, HLA Class I molecules by soluble CD94/NKG2A and NK cells, *J Immunol* 162:305, 1999.

Brown JH, Jardetzky TS, Gorga JC, et al: Three-dimensional structure of the human Class II histocompatibility antigen HLA-DR1, *Nature* 364:33, 1993.

Bugawan TL, Apple R, Erlich HA: A method for typing polymorphism at the HLA-A locus using PCR amplification and immobilized oligonucleotide probes, *Tissue Antigens* 44:137, 1994.

Bugawan TL, Mack SJ, Stoneking M, et al: HLA Class I allele distributions in six Pacific/Asian populations: evidence of selection of the HLA-A locus, *Tissue Antigens* 53:311, 1999.

Bunce M, O'Neill CM, Barnardo MC, et al: Phototyping: comprehensive DNA typing for HLA-A, B, C, DRB1, DRB3, DRB4, DRB5 & DQB1 by PCR with 144 primer mixes utilizing sequence-specific primers (PCR-SSP), *Tissue Antigens* 46:355, 1995.

Cadavid LF, Watkins DI: Heirs of the jaguar and the anaconda: HLA, conquest and disease in the indigenous populations of the Americas, *Tissue Antigens* 50:209, 1997.

Cairo MS, Wagner JE: Placental and/or umbilical cord blood: an alternative source of hematopoietic stem cells for transplantation, *Blood* 90:4665, 1997.

Cao K, Chopek M, Fernandez-Vina MA: High and intermediate resolution DNA typing systems for Class I HLA-A, -B, -C genes by hybridization with sequence specific oligonucleotide probes (SSOP), *Immunogenetics* 1:53, 1999.

Cardella CJ, Falk JA, Nicholson MJ, et al: Successful renal transplantation in patients with T-cell reactivity to donor, *Lancet* 2:1240, 1982.

Carrington M, Chadwick R, Cullen M, et al: Characterization of 12 microsatellite loci of the human MHC in a panel of reference cell lines, *Immunogenetics* 47:131, 1998.

Carrington M, Wade J: Selection of transplant donors based on MHC microsatellite data, *Hum Immunol* 50:151, 1996.

Cecka M: The UNOS scientific renal transplant registry. In Cecka M, Terasaki P, editors: *Clinical transplants 1998*, Los Angeles, 1999, UCLA Tissue Typing Laboratory, p 1.

Claas FHJ, De Meester J, Witvliet MD, et al: Acceptable HLA mismatches for highly immunized patients, *Rev Immunogenet* 1:73, 1999.

Cooley S, Weisdorf DJ, Guethlein LA, et al: Donor selection for natural killer cell receptor genes leads to superior survival after unrelated transplantation for acute myelogenous leukemia, *Blood* 116:2411–2419, 2010.

Creput C, Le Friec G, Bahri R, et al: Detection of HLA-G in serum and graft biopsy associated with fewer acute rejections following combined liver-kidney transplantation: possible implications for monitoring patients, *Hum Immunol* 64:1033–1038, 2003.

Cresswell P: Assembly, transport, and function of MHC Class II molecules, *Annu Rev Immunol* 12:259, 1994.

Crow JF: *Genetics notes*, ed 7, Minneapolis, 1976, Burgess Publishing.

Crowe DO: The effect of cross-reactive epitope group matching on allocation and sensitization, *Clin Transplant* 17(Suppl 9):13–16, 2003.

Dausset J: The Nobel Lectures in Immunology. Lecture for the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine, 1980: the major histocompatibility complex in man, *Science* 213:1469, 1981.

Dausset J, Colombani J, editors: *Histocompatibility testing 1972*, Copenhagen, 1973, Munksgaard.

Deeg HJ, Leisenring W, Storb R, et al: Long-term outcome after marrow transplantation for severe aplastic anemia, *Blood* 91:3637, 1998.

den Haan JMM, Sherman NE, Blokland E, et al: Identification of a graft versus host disease-associated human minor histocompatibility antigen, *Science* 268:1476, 1995.

Dupont B: Induction of a MINOR into the MAJOR league? Genomic identification of a human minor histocompatibility antigen, *Tissue Antigens* 52:303, 1998.

Duquesnoy RJ, Marrari M: HLAMATCHMAKER: a molecularly based donor selection strategy for highly allosensitized patients, *Hum Immunol* 60:S10, 1999.

Duquesnoy RJ, Marrari M, da M Sousa LCD, et al: Workshop report: a website for the antibody-defined HLA epitope registry, *Int J Immunogenet* 0:1–66, 2012.

Egfjord M, Jakobsen BK, Ladefoged J: No impact of cross-reactive group human leucocyte antigen class I matching on long-term kidney graft survival, *Scand J Immunol* 57:362–365, 2003.

El-Awar NR, Akaza T, Terasaki PI, et al: Human leukocyte antigen I epitopes: update to 103 total epitopes, including C locus, *Transplantation* 84:2007.

Ellison MD, Bennett LE, Edwards EB, et al: Multivariate analysis of verified national data to assess the impact of HLA mismatch level on kidney graft survival, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 5:1003, 1994.

Engelhard VH: Structure of peptides associated with Class I and Class II molecules, *Annu Rev Immunol* 12:181, 1994.

Etokebe GE, Opsahl M, Tveter AK, et al: Physical separation of HLA-A alleles by denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography, *Tissue Antigens* 61:443–450, 2003.

Flomenberg N, Baxter-Lowe LA, Confer D, et al: Impact of HLA class I and class II high-resolution matching on outcomes of unrelated donor bone marrow transplantation: HLA-C mismatching is associated with a strong adverse effect on transplantation outcome, *Blood* 104:1923–1930, 2004.

Foissac A, Crouau-Roy B, Faure S, et al: Microsatellites in the HLA region: an overview, *Tissue Antigens* 49:197, 1997.

Gao X, Moraes JR, Miller S, et al: DNA typing for Class II HLA antigens with allele-specific or group-specific amplification. V. Typing for subsets of HLA-DR1 and DR′Br′, *Hum Immunol* 30:147, 1991.

Geddes C, Cole E, Wade J, et al: Factors influencing long-term primary cadaveric kidney transplantation—importance of functional renal mass versus avoidance of acute rejections: the Toronto Hospital experience 1985–1997. In Cecka M, Terasaki P, editors: *Clinical transplants 1998*, Los Angeles, 1999, UCLA Tissue Typing Laboratory, p 195.

Glimcher LH, Kara CJ: Sequences and factors: a guide to MHC Class-II transcription, *Annu Rev Immunol* 10:13, 1992.

Gorga JC: Structural analysis of Class II major histocompatibility complex proteins, *Crit Rev Immunol* 11:305, 1992.

Gould DS, Auchincloss H: Direct and indirect recognition: the role of MHC antigens in graft rejection, *Immunol Today* 20:77, 1999.

Goulmy E: Human minor histocompatibility antigens: new concepts for marrow transplantation and adoptive immunotherapy, *Immunol Rev* 157:125, 1997.

Goulmy E, Schipper R, Pool J, et al: Mismatches of minor histocompatibility antigens between HLA-identical donors and recipients and the development of graft-versus-host disease after bone marrow transplantation, *N Engl J Med* 334:281, 1996.

Guardiola J, Maffei A: Control of MHC Class II gene expression in autoimmune, infectious, and neoplastic diseases, *Crit Rev Immunol* 13:247–268, 1993.

Hansen JA: Development of registries of HLA-typed volunteer marrow donors, *Tissue Antigens* 47:460, 1996.

Hansen JA, Gooley TA, Martin PJ, et al: Bone marrow transplants from unrelated donors for patients with chronic myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 338:962, 1998.

Hansen JA, Petersdorf E, Martin PJ, et al: Hematopoietic stem cell transplants from unrelated donors, *Immunol Rev* 157:141, 1997.

Hansen JA, Yamamoto K, Petersdorf E, et al: The role of HLA matching in hematopoietic cell transplantation, *Rev Immunogenet* 1:81, 1999.

Hansen TH, Lee DR: Mechanism of Class I assembly with β-2 microglobulin and loading with peptide, *Adv Immunol* 64:105, 1997.

Harris PE, Cortesini R, Suciu-Foca N: Indirect allorecognition in solid organ transplantation, *Rev Immunogenet* 1:19, 1999.

Hartzman RJ, Segall M, Bach ML, et al: Histocompatibility matching. VI. Miniaturization of the mixed leukocyte culture test: a preliminary report, *Transplantation* 11:268, 1971.

Hurley CK: Acquisition and use of DNA-based HLA typing data in bone marrow registries, *Tissue Antigens* 49:323, 1997.

Hurley CK, Baxter-Lowe LA, Begovich AB, et al: The extent of HLA Class II allele level disparity in unrelated bone marrow transplantation: analysis of 1,259 National Marrow Donor Program donor-recipient pairs, *Bone Marrow Transplant* 25:385, 2000a.

Hurley CK, Maiers M, Ng J, et al: Large-scale DNA-based typing of HLA-A and HLA-B at low resolution is highly accurate, specific, and reliable, *Tissue Antigens* 55:352, 2000b.

Hurley CK, Tang T, Ng J, et al: HLA typing by molecular methods. In Rose NR, Conway de Macario E, Folds JD, editors: *Manual of clinical laboratory immunology*, ed 5, Washington, DC, 1997, ASM Press, p 1098.

Hurley CK, Wade JA, Oudshoorn M, et al: A special report: histocompatibility testing guidelines for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation using volunteer donors, *Hum Immunol* 60:347, 1999.

Imanishi T, Akaza T, Kimura A, et al: Allele and haplotype frequencies for HLA and complement loci in various ethnic groups. In Tsuji K, Aizawa M, Sasazuki T, editors: *HLA 1991*, vol 1, New York, 1992, Oxford University Press, p 1065.

Ishitani A, Sageshima N, Lee N, et al: Protein expression and peptide binding suggest unique and interacting functional roles for HLA-E, F, and G in maternal-placental immune recognition, *J Immunol* 171:1376–1384, 2003.

Jorgensen JL, Reay PA, Ehrich EW, et al: Molecular components of T-cell recognition, *Annu Rev Immunol* 10:835, 1992.

Kircher B, Wolf M, Stevanovic S, et al: Hematopoietic lineage-restricted minor histocompatibility antigen HA-1 in graft-versus-leukemia activity after donor lymphocyte infusion, *J Immunother* 27:156–160, 2004.

Kloosterboer FM, Luxemburg-Heijs SA, van Soest RA, et al: Direct cloning of leukemia-reactive T cells from patients treated with donor lymphocyte infusion shows a relative dominance of hematopoiesis-restricted minor histocompatibility antigen HA-1 and HA-2 specific T cells, *Leukemia* 18:798–808, 2004.

Kovats S, Drover S, Marshall WH, et al: Coordinate defects in human histocompatibility leukocyte antigen Class II expression and antigen presentation in bare lymphocyte syndrome, *J Exp Med* 179:2017, 1994.

Kwok WW, Kovats S, Thurtle P, et al: HLA-DQ allelic polymorphisms constrain patterns of Class II heterodimer formation, *J Immunol* 150:2263, 1993.

Lanier LL: NK cell receptors, *Annu Rev Immunol* 16:359, 1998.

Le Bouteiller P: HLA class I chromosomal region, genes, and products: facts and questions, *Crit Rev Immunol* 14:89–129, 1994.

Le Bouteiller P, Blaschitz A: The functionality of HLA-G is emerging, *Immunol Rev* 167:233, 1999.

Lee N, Goodlett DR, Ishitani A, et al: HLA-E surface expression depends on binding of TAP-dependent peptides derived from certain HLA Class I signal sequences, *J Immunol* 160:4951, 1998a.

Lee N, Llano M, Carretero M, et al: HLA-E is a major ligand for the natural killer inhibitory receptor CD94/NKG2A, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 95:5199, 1998b.

Leivestad T, Reisaeter AV, Brekke IB, et al: The role of HLA matching in renal transplantation: experience from one center, *Rev Immunogenet* 1:343, 1999.

Long EO: Regulation of immune responses through inhibitory receptors, *Annu Rev Immunol* 17:875, 1999.

Mach B, Steimle B, Martinez-Soria E, et al: Regulation of MHC Class II genes: lessons from a disease, *Annu Rev Immunol* 14:301, 1996.

Madrigal JA, Scott I, Argello R, et al: Factors influencing the outcome of bone marrow transplants using unrelated donors, *Immunol Rev* 157:153, 1997.

Mahoney RJ, Norman DJ, Colombe BW, et al: Identification of high- and low-risk second kidney grafts, *Transplantation* 61:1349, 1996.

Marrari M, Duquesnoy RJ: Correlations between Terasaki's HLA class II epitopes and HLAMatchmaker-defined eplets on HLA-DR and -DQ antigens, *Tissue Antigens* 74:134–146, 2009a.

Marrari M, Duquesnoy RJ: Correlations between Terasaki's HLA class I epitopes and HLAMatchmaker-defined eplets on HLA-A, -B and -C antigens, *Tissue Antigens* 74:117–133, 2009b.

Marsh SG, Albert ED, Bodmer WF, et al: Nomenclature for factors of the HLA system, 2002, *Tissue Antigens* 60:407–464, 2002.

Marsh SG, Albert ED, Bodmer WF, et al Update to HLA nomenclature, 2009. Available at: http://hla.alleles.org/pdf/nomenclature_2009.pdf.

Martin PJ: How much benefit can be expected from matching for minor antigens in allogenic marrow transplantation? *Bone Marrow Transplant* 20:97, 1997.

Matsunami K, Miyagawa S, Nakai R, et al: Modulation of the leader peptide sequence of the HLA-E gene up-regulates its expression and down-regulates natural killer cell-mediated swine endothelial cell lysis, *Transplantation* 73:1582–1589, 2002.

Mickelson EM, Longton G, Anasetti C, et al: Evaluation of the mixed lymphocyte culture (MLC) assay as a method for selecting unrelated donors for marrow transplantation, *Tissue Antigens* 47:27, 1996.

Middleton D: History of DNA typing for human MHC, *Rev Immunogenet* 1:11, 1999.

Momburg F, Hammerling GJ: Generation and TAP-mediated transport of peptides for major histocompatibility complex Class I molecules, *Adv Immunol* 68:191, 1998.

Morris P, Shaman J, Attaya M, et al: An essential role for HLA-DM in antigen presentation by Class II major histocompatibility molecules, *Nature* 368:551, 1994.

Mutis T, Gillespie G, Schrama E, et al: Tetrameric HLA Class I-minor histocompatibility antigen peptide complexes demonstrate minor histocompatibility antigen-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in patients with graft-versus-host disease, *Nat Med* 5:839, 1999.

Mytilineos J, Lempert M, Scherer S, et al: Comparison of serological and DNA PCR-SSP typing results for HLA-A and HLA-B in 421 black individuals—a collaborative transplant study report, *Hum Immunol* 59:512, 1998.

Neefjes JJ, Ploegh HL: Allele and locus-specific differences in cell surface expression and the association of HLA class I heavy chain with beta 2-microglobulin: differential effects of inhibition of glycosylation on class I subunit association, *Eur J Immunol* 18:801–810, 1988.

Nepom GT, Erlich H: MHC Class-II molecules and autoimmunity, *Annu Rev Immunol* 9:493, 1991.

Ng J, Hurley CK, Carter C, et al: Large-scale DRB and DQB1 oligonucleotide typing for the NMDP registry: progress report from year 2, *Tissue Antigens* 47:21, 1996.

Nordstrom T, Ronaghi M, Forsberg L, et al: Direct analysis of single-nucleotide polymorphism on double-stranded DNA by pyrosequencing, *Biotechnol Appl Biochem* 31(Pt 2):107–112, 2000.

O'Callaghan CA, Bell JI: Structure and function of the human MHC Class Ib molecules HLA-E, HLA-F and HLA-G, *Immunol Rev* 163:129, 1998.

Olerup O, Zetterquist H: HLA-DR typing by PCR amplification with sequence specific primers (PCR-SSP) in 2 hours: an alternative to serological DR typing in clinical practice including donor-recipient matching in cadaveric transplantations, *Tissue Antigens* 39:225, 1992.

Opelz G, Wujciak T, Dohler B, et al: HLA compatibility and organ transplant survival, *Rev Immunogenet* 1:56, 1999.

Pacasova R, Martinozzi S, Bouloues HJ, et al: Cell surface expression and allogenic function of a human non-classical Class I molecule (HLA-E) in transgenic mice, *J Immunol* 162:5190, 1999.

Pamer E, Cresswell P: Mechanisms of MHC Class I-restricted antigen processing, *Annu Rev Immunol* 16:323, 1998.

Parham P, Adams EJ, Arnett KL: The origins of HLA-A, B, C polymorphism, *Immunol Rev* 143:141, 1995.

Parham P, Lawlor DA: Evolution of Class I major histocompatibility complex genes and molecules in humans and apes, *Hum Immunol* 30:119, 1991.

Paul WE, Seder RA: Lymphocyte responses and cytokines, *Cell* 76:241, 1994.

Payne R, Tripp M, Weigle J, et al: A new leukocyte isoantigen system in man, *Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol* 29:285, 1964.

Perkins HA, Hansen JA: The US National Marrow Donor Program, *Am J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 16:30, 1994.

Petersdorf EW, Gooley TA, Anasetti C, et al: Optimizing outcome after unrelated marrow transplantation by comprehensive matching of HLA Class I and II alleles in the donor and recipient, *Blood* 92:3515, 1998.

Petersdorf EW, Hansen JA: A comprehensive approach for typing the alleles of the HLA-B locus by automated sequencing, *Tissue Antigens* 46:73, 1995.

Petersdorf EW, Longton GM, Anasetti C, et al: The significance of HLA-DRB1 matching on clinical outcome after HLA-A, B, DR identical unrelated donor marrow transplantation, *Blood* 86:1606, 1995.

Reinsmoen NL, Matas AJ: Evidence that improved late transplant outcome correlates with the development of in vitro donor antigen-specific hyporeactivity, *Transplantation* 55:1017, 1993.

Remuzzi G, Perico N, Carpenter CB, et al: The thymic way to transplantation tolerance, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 5:1639, 1995.

Rock KL, Goldberg AL: Degradation of cell proteins and the generation of MHC Class I-presented peptides, *Annu Rev Immunol* 17:739, 1999.

Rodey GE, Fuller TC: Public epitopes and the antigenic structure of the HLA molecules, *CRC Crit Rev Immunol* 7:229, 1987.

Rodey GE, Neylan JF, Whelchel JD, et al: Epitope specificity of HLA Class I alloantibodies. I. Frequency analysis of antibodies to private versus public specificities in potential transplant recipients, *Hum Immunol* 39:272, 1994.

Rodey GE, Revels K, Fuller TC: Epitope specificity of HLA Class I alloantibodies. II. Stability of cross-reactive group antibody patterns over extended time periods, *Transplantation* 63:885, 1997.

Rosenthal AS, Shevach EM: Function of macrophages in antigen recognition by guinea pig T lymphocytes. I. Requirement for histocompatible macrophages and lymphocytes, *J Exp Med* 138:1194, 1973.

Rozemuller EH, Tilanus MGJ: A computerized method to predict the discriminatory properties for Class II sequencing based typing, *Hum Immunol* 46:27, 1996.

Rubnitz JE, Inaba H, Ribeiro RC, et al: NKAML: a pilot study to determine the safety and feasibility of haploidentical natural killer cell transplantation in childhood acute myeloid leukemia, *J Clin Oncol* 28:955–959, 2010.

Ruggeri L, Capanni M, Casucci M, et al: Role of natural killer cell alloreactivity in HLA-mismatched hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, *Blood* 94:333, 1999.

Saiki RK, Gelfand DH, Stoffel S, et al: Primer-directed enzymatic amplification of DNA with a thermostable DNA polymerase, *Science* 239:487, 1988.

Sanfilippo FP, Vaughn WK, Pilers TH, et al: Factors affecting the waiting time of cadaveric kidney transplant candidates in the United States, *JAMA* 267:247, 1992.

Sasazuki T, Juji T, Morishima Y, et al: Effect of matching of Class I HLA alleles on clinical outcome after transplantation of hematopoietic stem cells from an unrelated donor, *N Engl J Med* 339:1177, 1998.

Sayegh MH, Carpenter CB: Role of indirect allorecognition in allograft rejection, *Int Rev Immunol* 13:221, 1996.

Scheltinga SA, Johnston-Dow LA, White CB, et al: A generic sequencing based typing approach for the identification of HLA-A diversity, *Hum Immunol* 57:120, 1997.

Shaw S, Kavathas P, Pollack MS, et al: Family studies define a new histocompatibility locus, SB, between HLA-DR and GLO, *Nature* 293:745, 1981.

Shiina T, Tamiya G, Oka A, et al: Genome sequencing analysis of the 1.8Mb entire human MHC Class I region, *Immunol Rev* 167:193, 1999.

Simpson E, Roopenian D, Goulmy E: Much ado about minor histocompatibility antigens, *Immunol Today* 19:108, 1998.

Singer DS, Maguire J: Regulation of the expression of Class I MHC genes, *CRC Crit Rev Immunol* 10:235, 1990.

Snell GD: Studies in histocompatibility, *Science* 213:172, 1981.

Stern LJ, Wiley DC: Antigenic peptide binding by Class I and Class II histocompatibility proteins, *Structure* 2:245, 1994.

Storb R, Yu C, McSweeney P: Mixed chimerism after transplantation of allogeneic hematopoietic cells. In Thomas D, Blume KG, Forman SJ, editors: *Hematopoietic cell transplantation*, ed 2, Oxford, 1999, Blackwell Science, p 287.

Suciu-Foca N, Harris PE, Cortesini R: Intramolecular and intermolecular spreading during the course of organ allograft rejection, *Immunol Rev* 164:241, 1998.

Suthanthiran M, Morris RE, Strom TB: Immunosuppressants: cellular and molecular mechanisms of action, *Am J Kidney Dis* 28:159, 1996.

Sutton VR, Kienzle BK, Knowles RW: An altered splice site is found in the DRB4 gene that is not expressed in HLA-DR7, Dw11 individuals, *Immunogenetics* 29:317, 1989.

Tanaka K, Tanahashi N, Tsurumni C, et al: Proteosomes and antigen processing, *Adv Immunol* 64:1, 1997.

Terasaki PI, Takemoto S, Park MS, et al: HLA epitope matching, *Transfusion* 32:775, 1992.

Thorsby E, Piazza A: Joint report II: typing for HLA-D determinants (LD-1 or MLC). In Kissmeyer-Nielsen F, editor: *Histocompatibility testing*, Copenhagen, 1975, Munksgaard, p 414.

Todd JA, Bell JI, McDevitt HO: HLA-DQβ gene contributes to susceptibility and resistance to insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *Nature* 329:599, 1987.

Tseng L-H, Lin M-T, Martin PJ, et al: Definition of the gene encoding the minor histocompatibility antigen HA-1 and typing for HA-1 from genomic DNA, *Tissue Antigens* 52:305, 1998.

Uematsu Y, Fischer-Lindahl K, Steinmetz M, et al: The same recombinational hot spots are active in crossing-over between wild/wild and wild/inbred mouse chromosomes, *Immunogenetics* 27:96, 1988.

Valentini RP, Nehlsen-Cannarella SL, Gruber SA, et al: Intravenous immunoglubulin, HLA allele typing and HLAMatchmaker facilitate successful transplantation in highly sensitized pediatric renal allograft recipients, *Pediatr Transplant* 11:77–81, 2007.

Valiante NM, Uhrber M, Shilling HG, et al: Functionally and structurally distinct NK cell receptor repertoires in the peripheral blood of two human donors, *Immunity* 7:739, 1997.
van Ham SM, Tjin EPM, Lillemier BF, et al: HLA-DO is a negative modulator of HLA-DM mediated MHC Class II peptide loading, *Curr Biol* 7:950, 1997.
van Rood JJ: HLA and I, *Annu Rev Immunol* 11:1, 1993.
van Rood JJ, Stevens CE, Smits J, et al: Reexposure of cord blood to noninherited maternal HLA antigens improves transplant outcome in hematological malignancies, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 106:19952–19957, 2009.
Wade JA, Hurley CK, Hastings A, et al: Combinational diversity in DR2 haplotypes, *Tissue Antigens* 41:113, 1993.
Watts C: Capture and processing of exogenous antigens for presentation of MHC molecules, *Annu Rev Immunol* 15:821, 1997.
Wilke M, Pool J, den Haan JMM, et al: Genomic identification of the minor histocompatibility antigen HA-1 locus by allele-specific PCR, *Tissue Antigens* 52:312, 1998.
Williams F, Mallon E, Middleton D: Development of PCR-SSOP for HLA-A typing of bone marrow registry donors, *Tissue Antigens* 49:61, 1997.
Williams F, Meenagh A, Rich S, et al: High Resolution HLA-DRB1 identification of a Caucasian population, *Hum Immunol* 65:66–77, 2004.
Yu N, Ohashi M, Alosco S, et al: Accurate typing of HLA-A antigens and analysis of serological deficiencies, *Tissue Antigens* 50:380, 1997.
Zinkernagel RM: Cellular immune recognition and the biological role of major transplantation antigens, *Biosci Rep* 17:91, 1997a.
Zinkernagel RM: The Nobel Lectures in Immunology. The Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine, 1996: cellular immune recognition and the biological role of major transplantation antigens, *Scand J Immunol* 46:421, 1997b.

CHAPTER 50

THE MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX AND DISEASE

Attila Kumánovics, Julio C. Delgado

OVERVIEW OF THE HUMAN MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX DNA SEQUENCE, 973

GENES IN THE CENTRAL OR CLASS III REGION, 974

Tumor Necrosis Factor and Lymphotoxin α and β Genes, 974

Heat-Shock Protein 70 Genes, 975

C2, C4, and *CFB* Genes and Typing, 975

Disease Associations with *C2, C4,* and *CFB* Genes, 976

Complotypes, 976

EXTENDED HAPLOTYPES, 976

MHC DISEASE ASSOCIATIONS, 977

MHC Monogenic Disease Associations, 978

Polygenic Diseases with MHC Associations, 979

METHODS OF DETECTING ASSOCIATION OR LINKAGE OF DISEASE WITH GENETIC MARKERS, 980

Genetic Polymorphism, 980

Gene and Phenotype Frequencies, 980

Strength of Association, 980

Analysis of Mode of Inheritance Based on Sibling Pairs, 981

Analysis of Mode of Inheritance Based on Population Studies, 981

LOD Score Method, 981

SUMMARY, 981

SELECTED REFERENCES, 982

KEY POINTS

- The major histocompatibility complex (MHC) genomic region contains many genes with immune-related functions, including the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) genes.
- Identification of several genes within the MHC has increased the possibility of defining the genetic basis of immunity.
- The clustering of immune-related genes in the MHC region may not be coincidental and may be the result of evolutionary forces joining genes with similar functions.
- The MHC is associated with more diseases than any other region on the human genome.
- Nonrandom associations of fixed stretches of MHC DNA (haplotypes) complicate the study of susceptibility genes but also provide the means for their identification.
- Methods are available for detecting associations or linkage between polymorphisms found with the MHC and disease.
- Although MHC class I– and class II–encoded proteins are distinguished by structural and functional similarities shared by the members of each class, class III molecules can be defined only as non-I and non-II, because their genes and their products have no common features and are not recognized by T cells.
- Despite convincing genetic association studies showing the importance of the class III region in health and disease, neither the genes responsible for disease nor the underlying mechanism of pathology is known for many of the associated conditions.
- Almost half of the genes within the MHC class III region play roles in the innate immune system, including members of the complement cascade (*C4, C2, BF*), tumor necrosis factor (*TNF, LTA, LTB*), and Lymphocyte Antigen-6 (*LY6*) families.
- Deficiency of the second component of the complement system has been reported only in Caucasians, and it is the most common complement protein deficiency state in that population.
- Complete C4 deficiency is extremely rare. The level of C4 in the serum of patients with *C4 null* alleles is extremely variable and cannot be used reliably to detect heterozygotes for complete deficiency because there is no correlation between the level of C4 and the number of expressed *C4* genes.
- Extended haplotypes are highly characteristic of an ethnic subgroup and have lower frequencies or do not occur at all in other ethnic groups.
- It is critical to know the ethnic distribution of a disease-associated MHC allele to evaluate whether the allele in patients is increased compared with ethnically matched control populations and is in fact truly a marker for the ethnic distribution of the disease.
- A major problem with MHC gene associations is their incomplete penetrance, making ordinary formal segregation and linkage studies difficult to carry out.

Understanding the role of the MHC in immune responses and in the pathogenesis of disease requires defining polymorphisms in the class I and class II regions, as well as genes in the central region of the MHC, sometimes called the *MHC class III region*. The strong interest in the MHC genomic sequence originates from its established role in regulating inflammation and the innate and adaptive immune responses. Several genes in the MHC play important roles in cellular discrimination of self and nonself that require an essential knowledge of the effects of the MHC system in transplantation medicine and in susceptibility to autoimmunity. Variants of class I and class II genes were described in detail in Chapter 49. In this chapter, we discuss the non–human leukocyte antigen (HLA) region genes, disease associations, and methods for detecting the association of diseases with genetic markers.

OVERVIEW OF THE HUMAN MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX DNA SEQUENCE

Completion of the MHC deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequence preceded completion of the total human genome sequence by almost 4 years (The MHC Sequencing Consortium, 1999). The rush to complete the entire MHC sequence followed the need to understand the biology and genetics of the mouse MHC (H-2) and HLA regions, which were initially provided by murine inbred experiments and serologic typing (Klein, 1986). Although the MHC was discovered more than 50 years ago, its nature has been resolved only in the last 2 decades, with the advent of DNA cloning and discovery of the structure of class I and class II molecules (Bjorkman et al, 1987; Brown et al, 1993).

The MHC located in the short arm of chromosome 6 spans approximately 4 Mb and contains more than 250 identified loci, by far the most gene-dense region of the human genome sequenced to date (Shiina et al, 2009). It encodes the most polymorphic human proteins—the HLA class I and class II molecules, some of which have more than 12,000 allelic

variants identified so far (Marsh, 2014). More than 40% of the total expressed loci in the MHC are associated with immune-related functions. This clustering of immune-related genes in the MHC region may not be coincidental and may be the result of evolutionary forces joining genes with similar functions.

Traditionally, the MHC region has been classified into three regions from telomere to centromere: HLA class I, non-HLA class (MHC class III), and HLA class II. HLA class I and class II gene functions were reviewed in detail in Chapter 49. We will concentrate on the MHC class III region and will later return to HLA class I and class II genes to discuss disease associations.

GENES IN THE CENTRAL OR CLASS III REGION

The human MHC class III, or central MHC region, located between the HLA class I and class II regions, is the most gene-dense region of the human genome. Specifically, the MHC class III region contains 61 protein-coding genes in ≈900-kb sequence, with an average gene size of ≈8.5 kb (Xie et al, 2003), compared with the entire human genome, which contains, on average, fewer than 11 genes per megabase and has an average gene size of 27 kb (Lander et al, 2001). Although HLA class I– and class II–encoded proteins are distinguished by structural and functional similarities shared by the members of each class, MHC class III molecules can be defined only as non-I and non-II, because their genes and their products have no common features and are not recognized by T cells. Figure 50-1 shows a gene map of the MHC class III region.

Despite convincing genetic association studies showing the importance of the MHC class III region in health and disease, neither the genes responsible for disease nor the underlying mechanism of pathology is known for many of the associated conditions. One reason for this is the fact that the functions of nearly half the genes in the MHC class III region are not completely known. A high-throughput yeast two-hybrid system was used to look into the function of several intracellular proteins encoded within the MHC class III region (Lehner et al, 2004). This study revealed that approximately one third of the analyzed proteins encoded within the MHC class III region may have a role in mRNA processing, which again suggests clustering of functionally related genes within this region of the human genome. Specifically, three proteins (STK19, PBX2, and NELFE) of the proteins in the MHC class III region interact with proteins implicated in transcriptional regulation. Four proteins (LSM2, DDX39B, DXO, and SKIV2L) are orthologs of yeast proteins involved in mRNA processing, and another five proteins (PRRC2A, STK19, CLIC1, PBX2, and ABHD16A) interact with proteins previously implicated in RNA processing. Proteins involved in RNA processing are usually categorized as "housekeeping," but they are often critical for innate immunity against viral RNA. Metabolism of intracellular nucleic acids is also critical for limiting autoimmunity against DNA and RNA. SKIV2L (superkiller viralicidic activity 2-like)-deficient patients have an elevated interferon response (Eckard et al, 2014) and present with trichohepatoenteric syndrome, an inflammatory bowel disease–like intractable diarrhea (Fabre et al, 2012).

The region closer to HLA class II genes contains several genes of known function, including *TNXB* (Morel et al, 1989), which encodes tenascin X, a large extracellular matrix protein expressed in connective tissues, and NEU1, which encodes neuraminidase 1, a lysosomal sialidase. Mutations of *TNXB* are a cause of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome (Burch et al, 1997), primary myopathy (Penisson-Besnier et al, 2013), and vesicoureteral reflux (Gbadegesin et al, 2013; Bonten et al, 1996). Mutations of the *NEU1* gene are responsible for congenital sialidosis (Bonten et al, 1996; Canafoglia et al, 2014).

Almost one half of genes within the MHC class III region play roles in the innate immune system, including members of the complement fixation cascade (C4, C2, CFB) and the tumor necrosis factor family (TNF, LTα, LTβ), which will be discussed in greater detail later in this chapter. Other members of the immunoglobulin superfamily are also located within the MHC class III regions: *NCR3* (natural cytotoxicity triggering receptor 3) and the less characterized *LY6G* genes (Mallya et al, 2006). The *NCR3* gene encodes the NKp30 protein responsible for triggering natural killer (NK) cells (Pende et al, 1999), and it is involved in the killing of cells infected with *Plasmodium falciparum* (Mavoungou et al, 2007) and cytomegalovirus (Arnon et al, 2005), fungi (Li et al, 2013), and tumor cells (Brandt et al, 2009), and contributes to the pathogesis of primary Sjögren's syndrome (Rusakiewicz et al, 2013). Increased expression of NCR3 and the adjacent LST1 (leukocyte-specific transcript 1) gene has been found in the blood of rheumatoid arthritis patients (Mulcahy et al, 2006). *LST1* encodes a palmitoylated transmembrane signaling adaptor and membrane scaffolding protein in myeloid cells (Draber et al, 2012; Schiller et al, 2013). Both genes are also significantly upregulated in response to lipopolysaccharide, interferon-γ, and bacterial infection, suggesting a role for these gene products in autoimmune-related inflammation and dendritic cell/NK cell–associated functions.

The *NFKBIL1* (NF-κB-inhibitor–like 1) and *BTNL2* (Butyrophilin-like protein 2) genes are also located in the MHC class III region (Albertella & Campbell, 1994; Stammers et al, 2000). Much interest has recently been focused on the NFKBIL1 (An et al, 2013) and BTNL2 (Swanson et al, 2013) proteins after single mutations in their promoter regions were linked to rheumatoid arthritis (Okamoto et al, 2003) and sarcoidosis (Valentonyte et al, 2005), respectively. Other immune-related genes (e.g., *LY6* family members and *AIF1*) are likely to function as part of immune/inflammatory control (Mallya et al, 2006; Kadoya et al, 2014). Finally, the genes for the microsomal enzyme steroid P450 21-hydroxylase and three members of the major heat-shock protein 70 family are also contained in the MHC class III region and will be discussed later.

TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR AND LYMPHOTOXIN α AND β GENES

Tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and lymphotoxin α (LTα) are potent immunomodulatory cytokines produced in response to inflammatory stimuli. The biological functions of these cytokines and the laboratory methods used to measure them in body fluids were reviewed in great detail in Chapter 47. TNF and LTα proteins are each encoded by separate genes (*TNF* and *LTA*) and share approximately 34% amino acid identity (Carroll et al, 1987). TNF and LTα are either maintained as cell surface molecules or released from cells. LTα is retained on the cell surface via a transmembrane region. Surface TNF results not from the presence of a transmembrane region, but rather from an association with lymphotoxin β (LTβ) (Browning et al, 1993). LTβ encoded by *LTB* has 21% and 24% amino acid identity with *TNF* and *LTα*, respectively.

To date, several *TNF* promoter polymorphisms have been identified and correlated with susceptibility to various autoimmune and infectious diseases. This work remains controversial both at the genetic level and, more importantly, with regard to functional relevance. As demonstrated

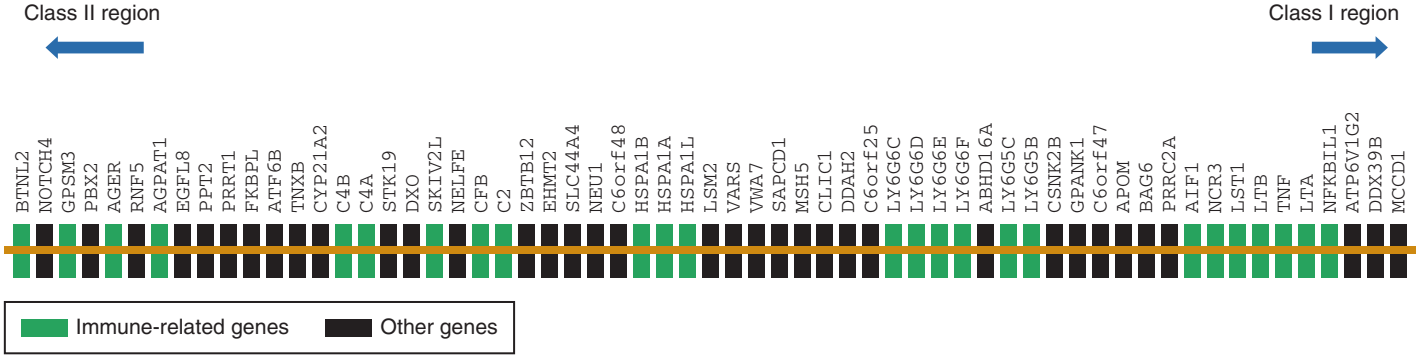


Figure 50-1 Gene map of the class III region of the major histocompatibility complex. Shown in order but not to scale are 55 genes from centromere to telomere. Genes presenting "immune loci" are marked by green boxes.

for some of the *TNF* promoter polymorphisms, these gene variations may be ethnic-specific markers for other linked and unidentified factors that may have an impact on host immune response in the development of autoimmune diseases and susceptibility or resistance to infectious diseases in a given population (Delgado et al, 2002). Polymorphisms in the *TNF* promoter region have been correlated in large-scale population studies with cerebral malaria (McGuire et al, 1994), rheumatoid arthritis (Criswell et al, 2004), coronary heart disease (Nicaud et al, 2002), type 2 diabetes (Kubaszek et al, 2003), Alzheimer's disease (McCusker et al, 2001), ankylosing spondylitis (McGarry et al, 1999), mortality to septic shock (Mira et al, 1999), mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (Cabrera et al, 1995), periodontitis (Ding et al, 2014), immune thrombocytopenia (Hajeer & Hutchinson, 2001; Sarpatwari et al, 2011), inflammatory bowel disease (Zipperlen et al, 2005), and various hematologic and nonhematologic malignancies (He et al, 2014; Ding et al, 2014; Min et al, 2014). Similarly, large-scale analysis has linked both promoter and coding polymorphisms within the *LTA* gene to myocardial infarction (Ozaki et al, 2002), stroke (Wang et al, 2009), sepsis (Tiancha et al, 2011), and hematologic and nonhematologic malignancies (Skibola et al, 2010; Yu et al, 2014).

HEAT-SHOCK PROTEIN 70 GENES

Stress proteins, or heat-shock proteins, are expressed by cells in response to a variety of stress stimuli. This response has been observed in all species examined to date. The family of stress proteins, 70 kDa in size, has a highly conserved amino acid sequence identity as found from primitive eukaryotes to humans. Several studies have identified loci for heat-shock protein 70 (HSP70) on chromosomes 6, 14, and 21 (Hunt & Morimoto, 1985; Sargent et al, 1989). Three genes encoding members of the HSP70 family are located telomeric to the *C2* locus (*HSPA1L*, *HSPA1A*, and *HSPA1B*, formerly known as *HSP70-Hom*, *HSP70-1*, and *HSP70-2*, respectively).

Sequence analysis of *HSPA1A* and *HSPA1B* genes has shown that they are intronless genes that encode an identical protein product of 641 amino acids. *HSPA1L* is also an intronless gene that encodes a protein of 641 amino acids and has 90% sequence identity with *HSPA1A* (Milner & Campbell, 1990). Because of the high degree of sequence similarity between coding regions of the various *HSP70* genes, DNA probes corresponding to coding regions tend to cross-hybridize. However, sufficient sequence differences have been observed between the 5′ and 3′ untranslated regions to design oligonucleotide primers and probes to allow specific amplification and hybridization of the three genes (Milner & Campbell, 1992).

Polymorphisms in the *HSP70* gene cluster have been associated with the magnitude of the heat shock response (Singh et al, 2006), schizophrenia (Kowalczyk et al, 2014; Pae et al, 2005), leukemia (Ucisik-Akkaya et al, 2010), age-related cataract (Zhang et al, 2013), and longevity (Singh et al, 2010). Other polymorphisms in the *HSP70* gene have been correlated to cytokine response in trauma (Schroder et al, 2003), Parkinson's disease (Wu et al, 2004), uveitis in patients with sarcoidosis (Spagnolo et al, 2007), and risk for clozapine-induced agranulocytosis in Ashkenazi Jews (Corzo et al, 1995).

C2, C4, AND *CFB* GENES AND TYPING

The complement C2, C4, and factor B proteins encoded within the MHC class III demonstrate inherited structural variants that can be studied by using techniques that detect differences in net surface charge due to amino acid differences. Two methods are used to separate these proteins: (1) high-voltage agarose gel electrophoresis, which detects variations in mobility due to charge differences between proteins at a given pH, and (2) isoelectric focusing in thin-layer polyacrylamide gels, which shows differences in isoelectric points. Proteins can be visualized by immunofixation electrophoresis using insolubility of antigen-antibody complexes, or by detection of functional hemolytic activity with overlay gels, in which antibody-sensitized sheep erythrocytes are combined with complement-deficient serum (Alper et al, 1983).

At the protein level, C2 shows minor polymorphism by isoelectric focusing. The alleles for C2 are *C* (common), a less common *B* (basic) allele with three rare basic variants, and four rare *A* (acidic) variants (Jahn et al, 1990). The polymorphic site for the *C2*B* allele is carried by the C2a complement fragment. The C2 protein is genetically polymorphic in a wide variety of ethnic groups, although *C2*C* accounts for more than 90% of *C2* genes in most populations (Alper, 1976; Meo et al, 1977). In Caucasian and Asian populations, *C2*B* accounts for 5% to 10% of *C2* genes. A nonexpressed allele (*C2*QO*) is found in 2% of the Caucasian European population (Truedsson et al, 1993a). For C2 typing, proteins are separated by isoelectric focusing in polyacrylamide gels and are visualized by C2-induced hemolysis in overlay gels. Diluted normal human serum can replace C2-deficient serum as a reagent, because C2 is the limiting factor in the classical complement pathway.

Two distinct but closely related loci for the C4 protein (*C4A* and *C4B*), presumably the result of tandem gene duplication, encode for two forms of C4. The genetics of *C4* is extraordinarily complex, not only at the genetic level, but also at the protein level. It has been shown that the number of *C4* genes in humans varies from two to four, and in exceptional cases, six (Chung et al, 2002; Wu et al, 2007). The *C4* gene duplication unit includes its neighboring genes *STK19* at the 5′ region and *CYP21* and *TNXB* at the 3′ region (Blanchong et al, 2000). Misalignments (unequal crossing-overs) of heterozygous mono-, bi-, or tri-modular chromosomes during meioises can cause further rearrangements and lead to congenital adrenal hyperplasia and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome by deleting *CYP21* and *TNXB* genes, respectively, in addition to changing the number of *C4* genes. Three quarters of *C4* genes carry endogenous retrovirus sequences that might confer intrinsic protection against exogenous retroviral infection (Schneider et al, 2001). Recent data suggest a negative correlation between the presence of endogenous retrovirus sequences and the level of C4 proteins, as well as a direct relationship between the number of genes and C4 protein levels (Yang et al, 2003).

At the protein level, C4A and C4B differ only by four amino acid residues in the α chain between positions 1101 and 1106. C4B is several times more hemolytically active than C4A, but C4A is more active at inhibiting the formation and dissolution of immune complexes than C4B. C4A variants usually carry Rodgers antigenic determinants (a Val-Asp-Leu-Leu epitope of the C4A chain), and C4B variants carry Chido determinants (an Ala-Asp-Leu-Arg epitope of the α chain of C4B). Extensive genetic polymorphism is detectable in C4A and C4B proteins among populations; more than 35 variants have been observed by agarose gel electrophoresis and DNA-based typing methods (Awdeh & Alper 1980; Sim & Cross, 1986; Schneider et al, 1996; Hui et al, 2004). Among the C4A and C4B allotypes, the most common alleles are *C4A*3* and *C4B*1*. *C4A*4*, *C4A*2*, *C4B*2*, and *C4B*5* show a worldwide general distribution. *C4A*6* is also observed in many populations, with the exception of some Mongoloid groups. *C4B*3* is identified mainly in African and Caucasian groups.

C4 typing requires a combination of several techniques (Awdeh & Alper 1980): (1) Immunofixation electrophoresis after treatment with neuraminidase. The patterns produced show three bands for each variant with some overlap occurring between certain variants. Additional treatment of the sample with carboxypeptidase reduces each variant to a single band. (2) Detection of C4A versus C4B by functional hemolytic assay. This method distinguishes C4A and C4B overlapping patterns because C4B variants have 5 to 10 times the hemolytic activity of C4A variants. (3) Rodgers (C4A) or Chido (C4B) serologic reactivity. The serum is incubated with human anti-Rodgers or human anti-Chido to test for inhibition of agglutination with appropriate positive erythrocytes. Alternatively, C4 variants can be typed for Chido or Rodgers reactivity by immunoblotting. Null alleles of *C4* heterozygotes can be detected in two ways. Electrophoresis of C4 null (*C4A QO* and *C4B QO*) samples demonstrates an absence of bands in homozygotes, but in heterozygotes requires quantification by visual inspection, crossed immunoelectrophoresis, or densitometric scanning of immunofixation patterns. An alternative method is to determine the presence and ratios of the C4A and C4B α chains after sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis of immunoprecipitates. More recently, DNA-based typing methods, including sequence-specific primer (SSP) amplification, restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis, real-time PCR, and direct DNA sequencing, have been used to complement inconclusive C4A and C4B protein allotyping (Schneider & Mauff, 2003; Wu et al, 2007).

Factor B is synthesized by the *CFB* gene. Human factor B is highly polymorphic, with more than 20 variants identified to date, including several dysfunctional proteins, those present in low concentration, and null alleles. Factor B typing is normally performed by combining agarose electrophoresis and/or isoelectric focusing at the protein level with polymerase chain reaction (PCR) analysis at the DNA level (Geserick et al, 1998). By using these methods, it is possible to identify two very common alleles, *CFB*F* and *CFB*S*, two less common alleles, *CFB*F1* and *CFB*S1*, and a host of rare alleles. Variants are named for their decimal fraction migration in gel electrophoresis: CFB F to CFB F1 for fast variants, and CFB S to CFB S1 for slow variants. In European Caucasian populations, *CFB*F* has a frequency of 0.2, *CFB*S* of 0.77, *CFB*F1* of 0.01, and *CFB*S1* of 0.01; rare alleles account for only 0.002. *CFB*S* is most common in Caucasian, Mongoloid, and Australoid populations, and *CFB*F* is most common in Negroid populations. *CFB*F1* is observed in African groups, as well as in some Caucasian populations.

DISEASE ASSOCIATIONS WITH *C2, C4,* AND *CFB* GENES

Deficiency of the second component of the complement system has been reported in about 1 in 10,000 Caucasians, and is the most common complement protein deficiency state in that population (Silverstein, 1960; Klemperer et al, 1966). People with complete C2 deficiency are homozygous for null C2 alleles (*C2*Q0* for quantity zero). *C2*Q0* results from a 28-bp gene deletion that generates a frameshift and a stop codon 14 bp distal to the end of exon 6 (Johnson et al, 1992). Remarkably, *C2*QO* has a gene frequency of approximately 0.01 among Caucasians. Rarely, C2 deficiency is the result of missense mutations resulting in impaired C2 secretions that have been termed *C2 deficiency type II* (Wetsel et al, 1996). Although C2 deficiency can lead to disease, most patients remain asymptomatic. Up to 25% of homozygotes for C2 deficiency have increased susceptibility to bacterial infection due to immunoglobulin deficiency (Densen, 1991; Alper et al, 2003). Between 20% and 40% of reported patients with C2 deficiency have a systemic lupus–like disease (Truedsson et al, 1993b; Sullivan et al, 1994). A polymorphism in the *C2* gene has been correlated with reduced risk for age-related macular degeneration (Gold et al, 2006; Maller et al, 2006).

A high incidence of *C4 null* alleles is seen in the general population. *C4A*Q0* and *C4B*Q0* result from gene deletions, premature stop codons, and other mutations that cause transcription failure (Braun et al, 1990; Barba et al, 1993; Lokki et al, 1999). Thirty-five percent of individuals of all races do not express one *C4A* or *C4B* gene (i.e., carry *C4A*Q0* or *C4B*Q0*), 8% to 10% carry two null alleles, and less than 1% do not express three alleles. Complete C4 deficiency (trans *C4A*Q0, C4B*Q0*) haplotypes are extremely rare (Hauptmann et al, 1986). The *C4A*Q0* allele, particularly in homozygous individuals or those with complete C4 deficiency, has been associated with systemic lupus erythematosus (Wilson & Perez, 1988; Huang et al, 1995). This susceptibility is probably related to defective handling of immune complexes (Fielder et al, 1983). Children homozygous for *C4B*Q0* have a 3.5-fold greater incidence of bacterial meningitis (Colten & Rosen, 1992). Homozygous C4B deficiency is described in families with non-SLE glomerulonephritis (Ault et al, 1990; Tsuda et al, 2007; Soto et al, 2010), and the C4B*Q0 allele is thought to increase the risk for Henoch–Schönlein purpura (Stefansson Thors et al, 2005). Increased frequency of the *C4B*Q0* allele has been found in patients with severe coronary artery disease who underwent bypass compared with healthy controls (Szalai et al, 2002).

Absence of homozygous factor B deficiency in humans has led to the notion that the condition might be lethal during embryonic development. Based on inheritance patterns and serum levels, some heterozygotes from *CFB*Q0* have been identified as having reduced protein products (Siemens et al, 1992), and recently compound heterozygous loss-of-function mutations in CFB were identified in a patient with recurrent pneumococcal and meningococcal infections (Slade et al, 2013). The *CFB F* variant has been associated with higher protein concentration but lower hemolytic activity than *CFB S* (Lokki & Koskimies, 1991). Mutations in the *CFB* gene have been associated with age-related macular degeneration (Gold et al, 2006; Maller et al, 2006), and hemolytic-uremic syndrome (Goicoechea de Jorge et al, 2007).

COMPLOTYPES

The four genes of the complement region occupy approximately 120 kb of genomic DNA (Carroll et al, 1984). The *C2* and *CFB* genes are located in very close proximity, separated by less than 2 kb, but *CFB* and *C4A* are separated by about 30 kb. *C4A* and *C4B* are about 10 kb apart. Alleles of the complement genes occur as a unit at the population level and show striking linkage disequilibrium in haplotypes determined by family studies. That is to say, they occur together as sets on the same chromosome more frequently than expected from the frequencies of their individual alleles and with no well-documented recombinations. For these reasons, haplotypes of the four complement loci have been called *complotypes*, as an abbreviation for "complement haplotypes" (Alper et al, 1983). Although their order from telomere to centromere is *C2, CFB, C4A, C4B* (see Fig. 50-1), the positions of *CFB* and *C2* are transposed for clarity in using variant alleles to designate complotypes. Thus, *CFB*S, C2*C, C4A*QO, C4B*1* is a complotype that in abbreviated form is *SC01*. More than a dozen complotypes in Caucasians have frequencies of about 0.01 or higher (Table 50-1). In most populations, the *SC31* complotype is most common. In people of African descent, *FC31* is common, as is *SC42* in East and Southeast Asians.

TABLE 50-1
Common Complotypes in Normal Chromosomes of Caucasoid Populations*

Complotype	Frequency, %
SC31	0.430
SC01	0.127
FC31	0.096
SC30	0.053
SC42	0.040
SC61	0.034
FC30	0.031
FC01	0.029
SC02	0.029
SC21	0.022
SB42	0.019
SC33	0.014
SC2(1,2)†	0.01
3SC32	0.011

*Complotypes are given as abbreviated letters and numbers, with four alleles in arbitrary order: *CFB, C2, C4A,* and *C4B*.
†*C4B* locus is heteroduplicated.

EXTENDED HAPLOTYPES

Based on the study of the distribution of complotypes in relation to *HLA-B* and *HLA-DR* specificities on normal Caucasian haplotypes determined in family studies, striking linkage disequilibrium involving the whole region became evident. One could easily recognize *HLA-B*, complotype, *DR* allele sets that showed statistically significant three-point linkage disequilibrium (Fig. 50-2) and that define what are regarded as extended haplotypes (Awdeh et al, 1983). A shorthand nomenclature for extended haplotypes has been designed by enclosing *HLA-B*, complotype, and *HLA-DR* variants in brackets. Thus, the most common extended haplotype in Caucasians is *[HLA-B8, SC01, DR3]*. Extended haplotypes are highly characteristic of an ethnic subgroup and have lower frequencies or do not occur at all in other ethnic groups (Alper et al, 1982; Fraser et al, 1990).

Initial studies defined extended haplotypes as the genomic interval between *HLA-B* and *DR*. It then became evident that other uncharacterized MHC alleles in the interval were likely to be included. Despite the fact that *HLA-A* alleles have shown limited variation for extended haplotypes, only half such haplotypes show unique and significant *HLA-A* allele associations (Alper et al, 1982). The *HLA-Cw* locus was by far the last to be characterized. Based on genetic distance and previously incomplete typing data of *HLA-B/Cw* pairs, it was evident that conserved haplotypes would also include the HLA-Cw genetic region. Thus, different *HLA-Cw* alleles have been recently associated with different extended haplotypes (Table 50-2) (Clavijo et al, 1998). Furthermore, several *TNF* and *HSP* allele systems and microsatellites have been studied in relation to extended haplotypes (Table 50-3). More recently, models have been created to describe the variable sizes of stretches of conserved DNA in the MHC, using the known frequencies of four different types of small blocks (<0.2 Mb) of relatively conserved DNA sequence: *HLA-Cw/B; TNF;* complotype; and *HLA-DR/DQ* (Yunis et al, 2003). Using HLA allele identification and TNF microsatellites, Yunis and colleagues have shown that some extended haplotypes extend to the *HLA-A* and *HLA-DPB1* loci, which form fixed genetic units of at least 3.2 Mb of DNA. Intermediate fragments of extended haplotypes also exist, which are, nevertheless, larger than any of the four small blocks. This complexity of genetic fixity at various levels should be taken into account in studies of genetic disease association, immune response control, and human diversity.

Extended haplotypes, which account for at least 30% of normal Caucasian haplotypes, have relatively fixed gross structure and DNA sequence and carry very similar, if not identical alleles, even when they are found in apparently unrelated individuals. The frequency of extended haplotypes is more likely to be underestimated than overestimated because haplotypes must be determined from family studies involving thousands of unrelated index cases. The original MHC reference sequence (The MHC Sequencing Consortium 1999) has been used as the starting point for numerous studies undertaken to ascertain multiple common and rarer extended haplotypes (Walsh et al, 2003; Stewart et al, 2004; Smith et al, 2006; Traherne et al, 2006), and now eight haplotypes have been completely sequenced,

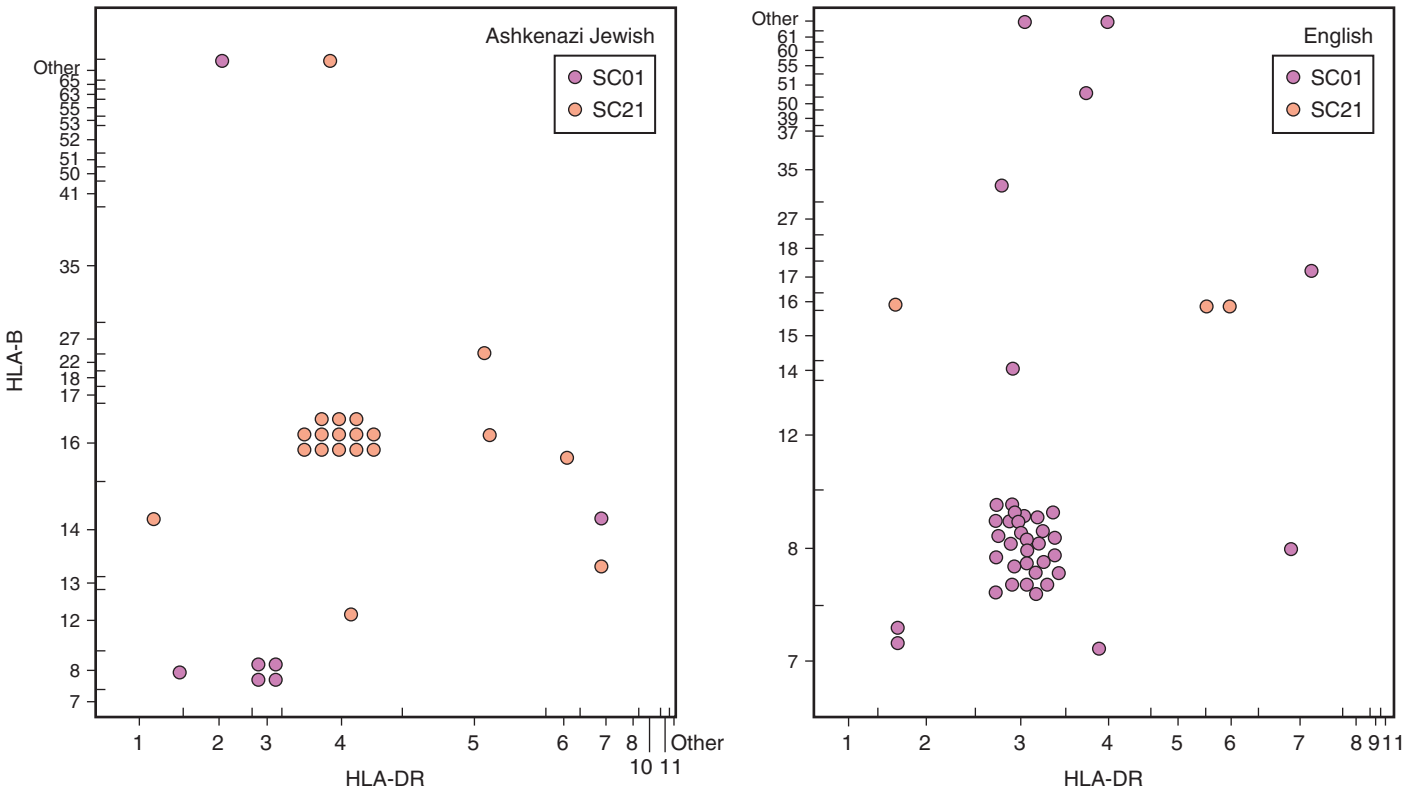


Figure 50-2 The haplotype distribution of the complotypes (haplotypes of complement alleles) *SC01 (CFB*S, C2*C, C4A*QO, C4B*1)* and *SC21 (CFB*S, C2*C, C4A*A, C4B*1)* in relation to *HLA-B* alleles on the ordinate and *HLA-DR* alleles on the abscissa. Heights and widths representing HLA specificity are proportional to allele frequencies for the respective populations. Clustering represents linkage dysequilibrium and flags the extended haplotypes *[HLA-B16(38), SC21, DR4]* in Ashkenazi Jews *[HLA-B8, SC01, DR3]* and in the English and, to a much lesser extent, among Jews. *HLA,* Human leukocyte antigen. (From Alper CA, Awdeh ZL, Yunis EJ: Conserved, extended MHC haplotypes, *Exp Clin Immunogenet* 9:58, 1992, Figure 4. Copyright © S. Karger AG, Basel.)

TABLE 50-2
Common Extended MHC Haplotypes*

Extended Haplotype	HLA-Cw Allele	Ethnicity
[HLA-B8, SC01, DR3, DQ2]	0701	Northern Europe
[HLA-B7, SC31, DR2, DQ6]	0702	Northern Europe
[HLA-B44, FC31, DR7, DQ2]	1601	Europe
[HLA-B44, SC30, DR4, DQ7/8]	0501	Europe
[HLA-B57, SC61, DR7, DQ2/3]	0602	Northern Europe
[HLA-B14, SC22, DR1, DQ1]	0802	Northern Europe
[HLA-B35, SC31, DR5, DQ3]	0401	Southern Europe
[HLA-B38, SC21, DR4, DQ8]	1203	Ashkenazi Jews
[HLA-B15, SC33, DR4, DQ8]	0304	Northern Europe
[HLA-B18, F1C30, DR3, DQ2]	0501	Basques, Sardinia, Spain
[HLA-B18, S042, DR2]†	1203	Northern Europe
[HLA-B42, FC(1,90)0, DR3]‡	1701	African

HLA, Human leukocyte antigen; *MHC,* major histocompatibility complex.
*Data from normal Caucasoid population chromosomes from Boston.
†Data from patients with C2 deficiency (Clavijo O, Delgado J, Awdeh ZL, et al: HLA-Cw alleles associated with HLA extended haplotypes and C2 deficiency, *Tissue Antigens* 52:282–285, 1998).
‡Data from chromosomes of normal black population living in Boston (Clavijo OP, Delgado JC, Yu N, et al: HLA-Cw*1701 is associated with two sub-Saharan African-derived HLA haplotypes: HLA-B*4201, DRB1*03 and HLA-B*4202 without DRB1*03, *Tissue Antigens* 54:303–306, 1999).

and the haplotype [*HLA-A3, B7, DR15*] was designated as the new MHC reference sequence incorporated into the reference human genome assembly (Horton et al, 2008). These studies will facilitate the identification of precise disease loci and may help us to better understand events such as recombination and polymorphism.

MHC DISEASE ASSOCIATIONS

The MHC is associated with more diseases than any other region on the human genome. Identification of the key genetic association within the MHC has been proven difficult for at least four reasons: (1) MHC has the highest gene density in the genome, (2) and these large numbers of genes are often in strong linkage disequilibrium forming complex haplotype structures, (3) extended haplotypes contain multiple equally plausible candidate loci, and (4) the associated disease often show non-Mendelian inheritance.

We have reviewed concepts about complotypes and extended haplotypes to enhance our understanding of the relevance of a rather extensive literature on MHC disease associations. Most of the MHC disease associations reported to date are contained within extended haplotypes. It is probably because of this simple fact that so many MHC-allele–associated diseases have been reported, because it is not a single base pair but more than 3 million base pairs of conserved DNA that constitute the marker. For example, complement alleles such as *CFB*F1* and *C4B*3* have been linked to type 1 diabetes, because the extended haplotypes that carry them, *[HLA-B18, F1C30, DR3]* and *[HLA-B62, SC01, DR3]*, are more common in these patients than in the general population. This association means that haplotypes comprising 3 million bases or more in length of conserved genomic DNA carry susceptibility alleles for type 1 diabetes. These 3 million base-long extended haplotypes often contain multiple candidate loci, best illustrated by psoriasis, a chronic inflammatory skin disorder. Psoriasis was associated with *HLA-Cw6* over 30 years ago (Russell et al, 1972), and many studies attempted since to identify the causal gene or genes. Although *HLA-C* itself is the strongest candidate gene, multiple additional HLA class I and class II, and MICA/MICB variants appear to be independently associated with psoriasis (Okada et al, 2014; Gonzalez et al, 1999). Moreover, there are at least four genes (PSORS1C1-3, and CDSN) located next to *HLA-C* that encode skin-expressed genes providing additional candidate genes for this complex skin disease (Kumanovics & Fischer Lindahl, 2004). It is also critical to know the ethnic distribution of an associated MHC allele to evaluate whether the allele in patients is increased compared with that in ethnically matched control populations,

TABLE 50-3
TNF and *HSP* Gene Polymorphisms in Relation to Common Extended Haplotypes*

	COMPLOTYPE				*HSP*		*TNF* MARKERS								
HLA-DR	***C4B***	***C4A***	***CFB***	***C2***	***1B***	***1A***	***e***	***d***	***–308***	***–857***	***–863***	***a***	***b***	***HLA-B***	***HLA-Cw***
3	1	0	S	C	8.5	C	3	1	2	1	1	2	3	8	0701
2	1	3	S	C	9	A	3	3	1	1	1	11	4	7	0702
7	1	3	F	C	9	A	3	3	1	1	1	7, 8	4	44	1601
4	0	3	S	C	9	A	3	3	1	1	1	6, 7	5	44	0501
7	1	6	S	C	9	A	3	4	1	1	1	2	5	57	0602
5	1	3	S	C	9	A	3	3	1	1	1	5	5	35	0401
1	1, 2	2	S	C	9	A	1	4	1	1	2	2	1	14	0802
4	1	2	S	C	9	A	3	3	1	2	1	10	4	38	1203
4	3	3	S	C	9	A	1	4	1	1	2	2	1	62	0304
2	2	4	S	0	9	A	3	3	1	2	1	10	4	18	1203
3	0	3	F1	C	8.5	C	3	4	1	1	1	1	5	18	0501

Adapted from Clavijo O, Delgado J, Awdeh ZL, et al: HLA-Cw alleles associated with HLA extended haplotypes and C2 deficiency, *Tissue Antigens* 52:282–285, 1998.
*The numbers or letters under each column refer to a particular allele variant of the complement, heat-shock protein *(HSP)*, tumor necrosis factor *(TNF)* microsatellite, or *TNF* promoter polymorphisms that are associated with the human leukocyte antigen *(HLA)* specificities as noted. See text for explanation. In the case of *TNF-308*, 1 and 2 represent the *–308/G* and *–308/A* variants, respectively. The *TNF-857/C* allele is noted as 1, and the *TNF-857/T* allele as 2. The *TNF-863/C* TNF allele is noted as 1, and the *–863/A* as 2.

or is in fact truly a marker for the ethnic distribution of the disease. Furthermore, it is more difficult to map the genes responsible for disease in Caucasian Americans than in African Americans or Asian Americans because the level of genetic diversity is lower in Caucasians.

Most diseases associated with MHC are autoimmune and do not show clear-cut Mendelian inheritance. Many problems confound attempts to understand the inheritance mechanisms by which these diseases occur, and analysis of MHC markers in patients and their families has clarified the picture only marginally. A major problem with MHC gene associations is their incomplete penetrance, making ordinary formal segregation and linkage studies very difficult, if not impossible, to carry out. This is seen most clearly in monozygotic twins, who presumably have identical genes. If one such twin has one of these diseases (e.g., type 1 diabetes), the other twin does not necessarily have the same disease. For type 1 diabetes, the concordance rate appears to be no higher than 50% (Rubinstein et al, 1977; Barnett et al, 1981). This suggests that penetrance of a disease in a completely susceptible host is incomplete. Although there is excellent reason to consider genes in the MHC as determinants of type 1 diabetes susceptibility, only 15% of MHC-identical siblings of diabetic patients have insulin-dependent diabetes. This difference between 50% and 15% provides evidence for the influence of genes at a second, non–MHC-linked locus (or loci), and suggests the influence of other factors, such as environmental factors, in determining susceptibility.

Incomplete penetrance makes assignment of a specific mode of inheritance difficult and makes the likelihood of finding families with more than one affected member within one or more generations low. Families are frequently used to determine modes of inheritance. Another complicating factor is the inability to determine whether we are studying a group of patients that are homogeneous in terms of genetic determination. About 5% to 6% of random families with a type 1 diabetic proband will have a second affected child. Of these sibling pairs, approximately 60% will be MHC-identical, 35% will be haploidentical, and a few percent will share no MHC haplotypes. This pattern suggests recessive inheritance of an MHC-linked susceptibility gene for the disease. At the very least, however, family studies provide highly useful haplotype data and usually allow the assignment of homozygosity for an HLA marker in probands. They have also established that MHC association in most diseases of interest is based on linkage between a susceptibility gene and the MHC.

Yet another unknown is the number of different susceptibility alleles for a disease in any specific population. In this regard, extended haplotypes can be helpful because, if increased in patients, they probably represent a single susceptibility allele that could be anywhere in the region of fixity. However, some patients have only portions of these haplotypes, and this provides little information about the location of specific allele involvement. Furthermore, it appears likely that many MHC-associated diseases are polygenic. Because of this, we will first discuss diseases associated with mutations of a single MHC gene; this will be followed by a discussion of polygenic diseases.

TABLE 50-4
MHC Monogenic Disease Associations

Disease	MHC Gene	OMIM No.*
Bare lymphocyte syndrome type 1	*TAP1, TAP2, TAPBP*	604571
C2 deficiency	*C2*	217000
C4 deficiency	*C4A, C4B*	120810
Congenital adrenal hyperplasia	*CYP21A2*	201910
Ehler-Danlos syndrome	*TNXB*	606408
Hypotrichosis simplex of the scalp	*CDSN*	146520
Sialidosis	*NEU1*	256550

MHC, Major histocompatibility complex.
*OMIM number provides disease and gene association information at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim.

MHC MONOGENIC DISEASE ASSOCIATIONS

Table 50-4 lists MHC monogenic disease associations and their genes. We will discuss the most common diseases. We have already reviewed two of these disorders earlier in the chapter: C2 and C4 protein deficiencies.

Hereditary Hemochromatosis and the *HFE* Gene

Hemochromatosis is an autosomal recessive disease and is the most common hereditary metabolic disease in Caucasians. Hemochromatosis consists of an inherited metabolic defect in iron metabolism, resulting in failure to control iron absorption in the setting of increasing iron stores, leading to tissue iron overload and eventually to organ damage (Adams et al, 2000). The most common manifestations of hemochromatosis are cirrhosis of the liver, hepatocellular carcinoma, diabetes mellitus, and cardiomyopathy. Discovery of the hereditary hemochromatosis *(HH)* gene in the MHC was based on the early finding of increased frequency of the *HLA-A3* allele in HH patients (Simon et al, 1976). After years of effort in the vicinity of the *HLA-A* locus, the *HFE* gene was found several megabase pairs away (Feder et al, 1996). *HFE* encodes a 343–amino acid protein that belongs to a group named MHC class I–related molecules because of their similarities to HLA class I molecules. The HFE protein interacts with the transferrin receptor and modulates enteric absorption of dietary iron (Waheed et al, 1999).

The *HFE* gene has two common missense mutations: the C282Y mutation, resulting in the substitution of a tyrosine for a cysteine, and the H63D mutation, resulting in the substitution of an aspartate for a histidine. Methods for diagnosis of hemochromatosis are discussed in detail in Chapter 71. The C282Y mutation, unlike the H63D mutation, interferes with protein interaction with β_2-microglobulin, abolishing the cell surface expression of HFE (Waheed et al, 1997; Feder et al, 1997). A homozygous

C282Y mutation is present in the majority of HH Caucasian patients. The C282Y mutation has a remarkably high allelic frequency in northern European populations (0.05% to 0.1%) and is rare in non-Caucasian populations. Penetrance of the C282Y homozygous state is as low as 10% or even 1% (Beutler et al, 2002). For this reason, population screening for this mutation is not recommended. The H63D mutation is present at high frequency in control Caucasians (>0.1%) and was also found in non-Caucasian populations; however, its role in HH remains unclear. The C282Y mutation has been associated with susceptibility to diabetic retinopathy (Peterlin et al, 2003) and increased risk for Alzheimer's disease (Robson et al, 2004).

Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasia Due to 21-Hydroxylase Deficiency

Immediately 3′ to each *C4* locus are two loci for the adrenal steroid enzyme 21 hydroxylase (*CYP21A* and *CYP21A2;* the latter previously known as *CYP21B*) (Carroll et al, 1985; Higashi et al, 1986; White et al, 1986). The two genes are highly homologous, but three mutations cause premature termination of transcription of the *CYP21A* gene, rendering it a pseudogene (White et al, 1988). Congenital adrenal hyperplasia is clinically heterogeneous, with a severe salt-wasting form, a milder late-onset form manifested largely by masculinization in girls, and a mild cryptic form. The MHC linkage of this disorder was discovered before any MHC associations were detected, and before it was known that the *CYP21* loci were located within the MHC. Subsequently, studies found that 20% or more of European Caucasian patients with the salt-wasting form carried the rare extended haplotype *[HLA-A1*, *Cw6*, *B47*, *FC(91)0*, *DRB1*07*, *DRB4*01:01*, *DQA1*02:01*, *DQB1*02:01]* (Fleischnick et al, 1983). It has been shown that this haplotype has a deletion of both *C4B* and *CYP21A2*, thus explaining the severity of symptoms and the complete deficiency of the enzyme in homozygotes for this haplotype. Among patients with milder and cryptic disease, a different extended haplotype is common: *[HLA-B65*, *SC2(1,2)*, *DR1]* (Sinnott et al, 1991). This haplotype is particularly common in southern Europe, and has a frequency of over 0.01% among Caucasians living in Boston. In all forms of 21-hydroxylase deficiency, the bulk of MHC haplotypes are not extended, and there is a great variety of complotypes, suggesting that many independent mutations have led to deletion or derangement of the *CYP21A2* gene.

POLYGENIC DISEASES WITH MHC ASSOCIATIONS

Table 50-5 lists some polygenic diseases and their MHC gene associations. This list is not exhaustive, and we will discuss only a few of the diseases in greater detail.

Ankylosing Spondylitis

Ankylosing spondylitis (AS) is a common inflammatory rheumatic disease affecting the axial skeleton, causing inflammatory back pain, which can lead to structural and functional impairments and a decreased quality of life (Braun & Sieper, 2007). A strong association has been noted between *HLA-B27* and AS in several populations (Khan & Kellner 1992). About 90% of Caucasian patients with AS have *HLA-B27*, as compared with 5% to 10% of healthy controls (Rubin et al, 1994). *HLA-B27* shares sequence with proteins from enteric bacteria and peptides that both mimic and bind B27 and may constitute the molecular components of a mechanism for AS (Scofield et al, 1995). Another hypothesis suggests that "auto-display" occurring within or between misfolded B27 molecules provokes an autoimmune attack in AS (Luthra-Guptasarma & Singh, 2004; Sharma et al, 2007). *HLA-B*27* genotyping is frequently performed by flow cytometry. However, *HLA-B27* screening is of limited usefulness given its poor positive predictive value, because among *HLA-B27*–positive individuals in the population at large, only 2% will develop AS (Gran & Husby, 1995).

TABLE 50-5
Polygenic Diseases with MHC Associations

Disease	MHC Gene	OMIM No.*
Abacavir hypersensitivity	*HLA-B57:01*	142830
Ankylosing spondylitis	*HLA-B27*	106300
Autoimmune thyroid disease	*HLA-DR3*	608173
Behçet disease	*HLA-B51*	109650
Celiac disease	*HLA-DQ2, DQ8*	212750
Multiple sclerosis	*HLA-DR, DQ*	126200
Narcolepsy	*HLA-DQB1*06:02*	161400
Rheumatoid arthritis	*HLA-DR4*	180300
Type 1 diabetes	*HLA-DR, DQ*	222100

MHC, Major histocompatibility complex.
*OMIM number provides disease and gene association information at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim.

Celiac Disease

Celiac disease (CD), also known as *celiac sprue* and *gluten-sensitive enteropathy*, is a disorder characterized by malabsorption resulting from inflammatory injury to the mucosa of the small intestine after ingestion of wheat gluten (Green & Cellier, 2007). Among Caucasians, two HLA-DQ alleles (*HLA-DQ2* and *DQ8*) are found in more than 99% of individuals with CD (Goggins & Kelleher, 1994; Marsh, 1992). Gliadin peptides, which were previously shown to exacerbate CD lesions in vitro and in vivo, have been found to bind to DQ2, lending further credence to the role of this *HLA-DQ* allele in the pathogenesis of CD (Kim et al, 2004; Fallang et al, 2009). This finding suggests that HLA-DQ2 could present the gliadin peptide to T cells for autoimmune recognition. Another possible explanation for susceptibility to CD in HLA comes from recent studies showing the binding of atypical invariant chain fragments to HLA-DQ2 (Fallang et al, 2008; Wiesner et al, 2008). These studies suggest that HLA-DM–mediated exchange of invariant chain variants and other HLA-DQ2 peptides might be reduced compared with other HLA-DQ molecules, which may provide a basis for the association of CD and *HLA-DQ2*.

HLA-DQ testing should be used to effectively rule out celiac disease in selected clinical situations. Examples of such clinical situations include: borderline celiac-associated antibody test results, ambiguous small bowel biopsy results, and patients with symptoms despite a gluten-free diet (Rubio-Tapia et al, 2013). Testing negative for both HLA-DQ types in these situations makes celiac disease diagnosis very unlikely (negative predictive value >99%). HLA DQ testing should not be used routinely in the initial diagnosis of celiac disease.

Narcolepsy

Narcolepsy, also known as *cataplexy*, is a sleep disorder characterized by attacks of disabling daytime drowsiness and low alertness. Most patients with narcolepsy carry the specific *HLA-DQB1*06:02* allele (Matsuki et al, 1992; Mignot et al, 1997). However, 15% to 25% of individuals in the general population also carry this risk allele, suggesting that it is necessary but not sufficient for development of the disorder (Hor et al, 2010). Patients with narcolepsy have a marked reduction of hypocretin-producing neurons in the hypothalamus compared with normal controls (Matsuki et al, 1992; Blouin et al, 2005). Findings of recent studies are consistent with immunologically mediated destruction of hypocretin-containing cells in patients with narcolepsy (Mignot et al, 2001). HLA testing in patients with narcolepsy has an excellent negative predictive value (>99%) and is useful in ruling out the disease in patients with unexplained sleepiness (Hong et al, 2006).

Pharmacogenetics of Drug Hypersensitivity

Idiosyncratic adverse reactions to drugs are unpredictable, dose-independent, and potentially life-threatening conditions. Clinical data have shown that such reactions involve immune mechanisms. Genetic association studies have identified strong associations with HLA alleles. Abacavir is a reverse transcriptase inhibitor used in combination with other antivirals in the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. A severe hypersensitivity reaction occurs in 5% of abacavir patients; is characterized by symptoms such as fever, rash, and acute respiratory symptoms; and can lead to potentially life-threatening hypotension if drug therapy is not discontinued (Clay, 2002). Patients with the *HLA-B*57:01* allele are at risk for an abacavir hypersensitivity reaction (Hetherington et al, 2002; Mallal et al, 2002). Abacavir binds to the *HLA-B*57:01* allele, changing the repertoire of peptides binding this allele (Illing et al, 2012). This results in selection of new endogeneous peptides with alteration in "immunological self," producing polyclonal T cell activation responsible for the manifestations seen in patients with abacavir hypersensitivity.

Carbamazepine is an aromatic anticonvulsant and mood-stabilizing drug used primarily in the treatment of epilepsy, bipolar disorder, and trigeminal neuralgia. Dermatologic reactions, ranging from benign rashes to severe manifestations including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis, have been reported in 5% to 10% patients in association with carbamazepine use. Patients with *HLA-B*15:02* or *HLA-A*31:01*

alleles are at risk for carbamazepine hypersensitivity reactions (Chung et al, 2004; McCormack et al, 2011). The exact mechanism of how carrying *HLA-B*15:02* or *HLA-A*31:01* results in an increased risk for carbamazepine hypersensitivity is not clear, but a similar mechanism proposed for abacavir hypersensitivity is thought to play a role (Illing et al, 2012).

Recent studies have demonstrated the cost-effectiveness of *HLA genotyping* screening to reduce the risk for hypersensitivity reaction to abacavir and carbamazepine (Hughes et al, 2004; Mallal et al, 2008; Amstutz et al, 2014).

Rheumatoid Arthritis

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is an inflammatory disease, primarily of the joints, with autoimmune features and a complex genetic component. The association between MHC markers and RA is well documented (Nepom & Nepom, 1992; Ollier & Thomson, 1992; Auger et al, 1998). For most of the populations studied, the primary associated marker is *HLA-DR4* (MacGregor et al, 1995). In Caucasians, for example, the most common RA-associated *DR4* alleles are *DRB1*04:01* and *DRB1*0404*, and in Japanese, Israeli, and Chinese patients, it is *DRB1*04:05*. Other *HLA-DR* specificities are also associated with RA: *DR1* has been reported in association with RA in Caucasian, Japanese, Spanish, Greek, and Israeli patients; *DR3* in Kuwaitis; *DR6* in Yakima American Indians; *DR9* in Chileans; and *DR10* in Spanish, Greek, and Israeli patients (Zanelli et al, 2000).

To explain this broad spectrum of different *HLA-DR* associations with RA, it has been proposed that a shared DRB1 peptide epitope is involved in conferring RA susceptibility (Penzotti et al, 1996). The alleles associated with RA share a highly conserved sequence of amino acids in their third hypervariable region (amino acids 67 to 74). Individuals with RA frequently have autoantibodies to citrullinated peptides. Citrullination of self-antigens increases the affinity between these peptides and HLA-DR molecules carrying the shared peptide epitope (Hill et al, 2003; Lundberg et al, 2005). Thus, if a citrullinated arthritogenic peptide exists, it may bind preferentially to molecules with the RA DRB1 sequence. An alternative explanation may involve molecular mimicry between the shared RA DRB1 and antigenic sequences of a pathogen that can induce RA (Albani et al, 1992). Sequence homology has been found between the shared RA sequence and an HSP from *Escherichia coli* (Auger et al, 1998).

Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (JRA), also known as *juvenile idiopathic arthritis*, is the most common type of arthritis in children. RA differs clinically from JRA, and HLA associations with JRA are different as well. Furthermore, other *HLA-DR* associations vary among JRA clinical subsets (Stastny et al, 1993). For example, it has been reported that the frequency of haplotype *HLA-DRB1*08:01*, *DQA1*04:01*, *DQB1*04:02* is increased in the whole pauciarticular group and in patients with the persistent pauciarticular form. The haplotype *HLA-DRB1*13:01*, *DRB3*01:01*, *DQA1*01:03*, *DQB1*06:03* was also associated with patients with persistent pauciarticular JRA (Fernandez-Vina, Fink & Stastny, 1994). In keeping with the view that the polyarticular form of JRA is RA occurrence in the young, *DRB1*04:01* shows a strong association.

Type 1 Diabetes

The most studied of all MHC-linked diseases is type 1 diabetes mellitus (Nepom & Erlich, 1991; Thorsby & Ronningen, 1992; Winter et al, 1993; Lernmark, 1999). Type 1 diabetes is a disorder of glucose homeostasis that is characterized by susceptibility to ketoacidosis in the absence of insulin therapy. It is a genetically heterogeneous autoimmune disease affecting about 0.3% of Caucasian populations (Todd, 1990). Alleles of the HLA class II genes *DQ* and *DR* in the MHC region are major determinants of genetic predisposition to type 1 diabetes. Several alleles of these loci are associated with susceptibility to or protection from disease. Striking increases have been noted in the frequency of *HLA-DR3* and *HLA-DR4* among Caucasian patients (Thomson, 1984; Jenkins et al, 1991). Using molecular-based HLA typing analysis, the increase in *DR4* is found primarily in the subset of *DR4* in linkage disequilibrium with *DQB1*03:02* (Kockum et al, 1993). Although the latter gene is now considered a major marker and perhaps a primary determinant of type 1 diabetes susceptibility, it is present in only 70% of Caucasian patients. Even among those who carry it, variability in the relative risk for diabetes is observed: *DRB1*04:01*, *DQB1*03:02* and *DRB1*04:02*, and *DQB1*03:02* are highly associated with the disease, but *DRB1*04:04*, *DQB1*03:02* is less so.

In many Caucasian patient populations with type 1 diabetes, there is an excess of *DR3/DR4* heterozygotes over the number of *DR3* or *DR4* homozygotes predicted by the Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium (Kockum et al, 1999). In addition, the relative risks for some *DR-DQ* genotypes are not simply the sum or product of relative risks for the single haplotype. For example, risk for the *DRB1*03–DQB1*02/DRB1*04:01–DQB1*03:02* genotype is often found to be higher than for the individual *DRB1*03–DQB1*02* and *DRB1*04:01–DQB1*03:02* homozygous genotypes. It has been hypothesized that this synergy occurs through the formation of highly susceptible *trans*-encoded HLA-DQB1 and HLA-DQA1 heterodimers (Nepom et al, 1987; Khalil et al, 1992). The DR-α molecules are not polymorphic, and mixed DR α-β dimers would not result in novel HLA molecules. On the other hand, both the α and β chains of *DQ* are polymorphic, and a DQ α-β dimer composed of transcomplementing chains would be unique to a heterozygous individual and would not be expressed in either parent. In the mouse, such transcomplementation has been demonstrated structurally, and epitopes newly formed in the resulting hybrid molecules allow for an altered functional immune response different from that of either parent (Charron et al, 1984; Long et al, 1984).

The *DRB1*15:01*, *DQB1*06:02* haplotype is negatively associated with type 1 diabetes. Individuals heterozygous for *DRB1*15:01*, *DQB1*06:02* who also carry a susceptibility gene for type 1 diabetes on the other haplotype are not at risk for the disease (Noble et al, 1996). A recently proposed model for type 1 diabetes, which assumes that *DQB1* is a direct determinant of susceptibility, suggests a hierarchy of affinities among different class II molecules that compete for binding to the same type 1 diabetes peptide (Nepom, 1990). Susceptibility occurs if a gene product (e.g., DQB1*03:02) binds and presents the type 1 diabetes peptide. In the presence of a high-affinity competitor (DRB1*15:01), this event does not occur. Another model proposes that codon 57 of the *DQB*-encoded chain plays a critical role in the pathogenesis of type 1 diabetes. The presence of a nonaspartic acid at position 57 of *DQB1* has been suggested as an important determinant of susceptibility to type 1 diabetes mediated by the *DQB1* genes (Lee et al, 2001; Siebold et al, 2004). The excess presence of valine or serine at this position in diabetic patients carrying the *HLA-DR3* or *DR4* haplotype supports this concept.

METHODS OF DETECTING ASSOCIATION OR LINKAGE OF DISEASE WITH GENETIC MARKERS

GENETIC POLYMORPHISM

Genetic polymorphism is defined as the occurrence of two or more alleles at one gene, each with appreciable frequency in the same population. The frequency has been arbitrarily defined to be higher than 1%. Two groups of genetic polymorphisms are known: balanced or stable, and transient. A balanced or stable polymorphism occurs when two or more alleles are maintained in a population by selection. The heterozygous advantage is the classic example of a balanced polymorphism. A transient polymorphism represents a phase of allelic changes driven by genetic drift or by selection. Polymorphism of a gene can be stable in one population and transient in another, depending on the effect of selection.

GENE AND PHENOTYPE FREQUENCIES

To determine genetic polymorphism, it is necessary to find a representative sample of the population, assess the individuals, count the genes, and estimate the number of genes contained in the entire population. For example, assuming that a population of 100 individuals has been studied for a particular genetic trait or allele at a given gene, we can define the phenotype frequency as the number of individuals carrying the trait or the genetic variant. To calculate the frequency *(f)* of a given allele, divide the number of times that allele occurs (x) by the total occurrences of all alleles of that gene in the population ($x + y + z + \ldots$):

$$f(x) = x/(x + y + z + \ldots) \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 50-1)}$$

It is possible to calculate the gene frequency (g) without knowing the mode of inheritance by using the following formula:

$$g = 1 - \sqrt{f} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 50-2)}$$

STRENGTH OF ASSOCIATION

Several methods have been devised for detecting the degree of association of genetic markers with hypothesized genes for disease susceptibility. One method is to compute the risk for disease among individuals carrying a specific allele of a polymorphic system. In this computation, the relative risk (RR), or odds ratio, calculates the risk for carrying a marker in a population of diseased individuals compared with a control population. This strength of association is the delta of Bergston and Thomson (Svejgaard

et al, 1983), which is the same as the etiologic fraction (EF) (Miettinen, 1976). If, in a patient population, "a" individuals carry the specific character but "b" individuals do not, and in the control (normal) population, "c" individuals carry the character, we may write the information conveniently in the 2 × 2 table as follows:

	Character-Positive	Character-Negative
Patient	a	b
Control	c	d

The frequency of the character in this patient population (h_p) is:

$$h_p = \frac{a}{a+b} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 50-3)}$$

The RR, or odds ratio, is defined as follows:

$$RR = \frac{a \times d}{b \times c} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 50-4)}$$

Etiologic fraction is defined as follows:

$$EF = \frac{RR-1}{RR} \times \frac{a}{a+b} = \frac{RR-1}{RR} \times h_p \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 50-5)}$$

Similarly, in decreased risk, for which the RR is less than 1, the preventive factor (PF) can be used:

$$PF = \frac{(1-RR)h_p}{RR(1-h_p)+h_p} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 50-6)}$$

EF and PF fraction can vary between 0 (no association) and 1.0 (maximal association). Apart from providing estimates of having a marker if one already has a disease, these calculations ignore the mode of genetic determination of the disease in question. This is particularly problematic for recessive or more complicated modes, in which both haplotypes are important for determining disease, but heterozygotes and homozygotes for a given marker are given the same weight, that is, both are positive for the marker.

ANALYSIS OF MODE OF INHERITANCE BASED ON SIBLING PAIRS

Analysis of mode of inheritance based on sibling pairs was introduced to help overcome the problems of incomplete penetrance of disease genes and variations in the age of onset (Penrose, 1935). This analysis is based on the assumption that if HLA and/or genes closely linked to HLA have no influence on the development of a disease, then the affected sibling pairs will share HLA haplotypes with a normal frequency: 25% will share both haplotypes, 50% will share one haplotype, and 25% will share no haplotypes. Thus, observed and expected distributions of haplotype sharing are compared. If susceptibility genes or their closely linked markers are rare and fully penetrant in a purely recessively determined disease, the distributions of two-, one-, and no-haplotype–sharing sibs would be 100, 0, and 0. For dominant determination, the ratios would be 33, 66, and 0. What is observed in diabetes, for example (Rubinstein et al, 1977), is 60, 35, and 5—closer to recessive than dominant predictions. Once the mode of inheritance has been established, disease gene frequency and penetrance can be determined (Thomson & Bodmer, 1977).

ANALYSIS OF MODE OF INHERITANCE BASED ON POPULATION STUDIES

Investigators (Thomson & Bodmer, 1977) have devised a method for analyzing population data for markers closely linked to susceptibility loci for diseases with incomplete penetrance. In essence, this method predicts the proportions of homozygotes, heterozygotes, and noncarriers for the linked marker that are expected in cases of dominant or recessive inheritance. The greatest difference between the two modes of inheritance is observed in the proportions of individuals who are homozygous for the marker. Application of this method to *HLA-B27* and AS led, on statistical grounds, to rejection of a recessive mechanism. Thus, it was concluded that susceptibility to AS is inherited as a dominant trait.

The same method of analysis was applied to the distribution of *CFB*F1* among 1107 patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus (Raum et al, 1981). For dominant inheritance, 1.89 homozygotes were predicted, and for recessive inheritance, 6.2 homozygotes were predicted. Seven *CFB*F1* homozygotes were found—a result that is consistent only with recessive inheritance. Other modes of inheritance that could be rejected by these observations include simple dominant, epistatic (disease resulting from the presence of nonallelic genes), and overdominant (disease with greater penetrance when two specific alleles are present than when other combinations, including homozygosity for each specific allele, occur). Although a mixed model with different penetrance for homozygotes and heterozygotes could not be completely ruled out, other considerations make such a model unsatisfactory.

LOD SCORE METHOD

The logarithm of the odds (LOD) score is a statistical measure of linkage between a marker locus, such as in the MHC, and a disease susceptibility gene (Sutton, 1980). In the equation for calculating the LOD score, (1) the Z value is the ratio of the maximum likelihood of finding linkage ($P(F_1/\theta)$) to that of no linkage at a particular recombination value of θ, and (2) the θ(q) value, or recombination frequency, is a measure of the distance from a given locus corresponding to maximum Z value. The LOD score expresses the probability that alleles at two loci will segregate together, in terms of the ratio between the observed and the predicted recombination frequency if they assort independently. Various values of (q) from 0 to 0.5 are substituted into the following equation:

$$P(F_1/\theta) = 1/2\left[\theta^r(1-\theta)^{n-r} + \theta^{n-r}(1-\theta)^r\right] \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 50-7)}$$

where n = the number of children in a given family and r = the number of recombinants. The probability of obtaining a pedigree for a given value of θ (recombination frequency from 0 to 0.5), which is expressed as the ratio of $P(F_1/\theta)$ in a family at a given recombination fraction θ (from 0 to 0.5) to $P(F_1/0.5)$ in the same family assuming no recombination, can be expressed as the LOD score (Z). The LOD score is the sum of all z values where Z is

$$z = \log_{10}\frac{P(F_1/\theta)}{P(F_1/0.5)} \qquad \textbf{(Eq. 50-8)}$$

Values of Z greater than zero favor linkage, and those less than or equal to zero are against linkage. In general, a Z value greater than 3 (for some values of θ <0.5) means that the odds in favor of linkage are 1000 to 1 (p value = 0.05), as opposed to no linkage or independence. It is easier to calculate linkage for codominant traits (e.g., HLA) than for recessive traits. In studies that examine the linkage of HLA and disease, the parents may have recessive or dominant impenetrant susceptibility genes. Basic problems have been noted in using the LOD score method to detect linkage of partially penetrant genes, apart from impenetrant susceptible siblings. If susceptibility genes are common, as appears to be the case in type 1 diabetes, for example, apparent cross-overs or nonidentical siblings could suggest additional susceptibility genes in a parent.

SUMMARY

The MHC comprises many alleles at many loci. The high-resolution typing of class I and class II MHC genes and the identification of genes between and near them have increased the possibility of defining the genetic basis for immune responses and diseases of unknown origin, such as autoimmune diseases in man. The nonrandom association of markers with immune responses or associations with autoimmune diseases due to the presence of fixed stretches of MHC DNA and extended haplotypes and their fragments in the population complicate the study of susceptibility genes but also provide the means for their identification. Even though the human MHC is the most intensively investigated region of the genome, the function of many of the genes within the MHC has not been identified. It is probable that some unknown MHC genes, rather than the one already characterized, are susceptibility genes for some human MHC-associated diseases.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Brown JH, Jardetzky TS, Gorga JC, et al: Three-dimensional structure of the human class II histocompatibility antigen HLA-DR1, *Nature* 364:33–39, 1993.

This landmark paper shows the first crystal structure of an HLA class II molecule associated with peptide.

Horton R, Gibson R, Coggill P, et al: Variation analysis and gene annotation of eight MHC haplotypes: the MHC Haplotype Project, *Immunogenetics* 60:1–18, 2008.

This paper reports the sequence and haplotype-specific differences of eight MHC haplotypes to map the genetic variants that confer disease susceptibility.

Illing PT, Vivian JP, Dudek NL, et al: Immune self-reactivity triggered by drug-modified HLA-peptide repertoire, *Nature* 486:554–558, 2012.

This is the first study to identify the mechanism of an HLA allele-associated adverse drug reaction.

Yunis EJ, Larsen CE, Fernandez-Vina M, et al: Inheritable variable sizes of DNA stretches in the human MHC: conserved extended haplotypes and their fragments or blocks, *Tissue Antigens* 62:1–20, 2003.

A review of MHC haplotypes and smaller haplotype blocks, and of their allele compositions in the world's populations.

Adams P, Brissot P, Powell LW: EASL International Consensus Conference on Haemochromatosis, *J Hepatol* 33:485–504, 2000.

Albani S, Tuckwell JE, Esparza L, et al: The susceptibility sequence to rheumatoid arthritis is a cross-reactive B cell epitope shared by the Escherichia coli heat shock protein dnaJ and the histocompatibility leukocyte antigen DRB10401 molecule, *J Clin Invest* 89:327–331, 1992.

Albertella MR, Campbell RD: Characterization of a novel gene in the human major histocompatibility complex that encodes a potential new member of the I kappa B family of proteins, *Hum Mol Genet* 3:793–799, 1994.

Alper CA: Inherited structural polymorphism in human C2: evidence for genetic linkage between C2 and Bf, *J Exp Med* 144:1111–1115, 1976.

Alper CA, Awdeh ZL, Raum DD, et al: Extended major histocompatibility complex haplotypes in man: role of alleles analogous to murine t mutants, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 24:276–285, 1982.

Alper CA, Raum D, Karp S, et al: Serum complement "supergenes" of the major histocompatibility complex in man (complotypes), *Vox Sang* 45:62–67, 1983.

Alper CA, Xu J, Cosmopoulos K, et al: Immunoglobulin deficiencies and susceptibility to infection among homozygotes and heterozygotes for C2 deficiency, *J Clin Immunol* 23:297–305, 2003.

Amstutz U, Shear NH, Rieder MJ, et al: Recommendations for HLA-B*15:02 and HLA-A*31:01 genetic testing to reduce the risk of carbamazepine-induced hypersensitivity reactions, *Epilepsia* 55:496–506, 2014.

An J, Nakajima T, Shibata H, et al: A novel link of HLA locus to the regulation of immunity and infection: NFKBIL1 regulates alternative splicing of human immune-related genes and influenza virus M gene, *J Autoimmun* 47:25–33, 2013.

Arnon TI, Achdout H, Levi O, et al: Inhibition of the NKp30 activating receptor by pp65 of human cytomegalovirus, *Nat Immunol* 6:515–523, 2005.

Auger I, Toussirot E, Roudier J: HLA-DRB1 motifs and heat shock proteins in rheumatoid arthritis, *Int Rev Immunol* 17:263–271, 1998.

Ault BH, Stapleton FB, Rivas ML, et al: Association of Henoch-Schonlein purpura glomerulonephritis with C4B deficiency, *J Pediatr* 117:753–755, 1990.

Awdeh Z, Alper CA: Inherited structural polymorphism of the fourth component of human complement, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 77:3576–3580, 1980.

Awdeh ZL, Raum D, Yunis EJ, et al: Extended HLA/complement allele haplotypes: evidence for T/t-like complex in man, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 80:259–263, 1983.

Barba G, Rittner C, Schneider PM: Genetic basis of human complement C4A deficiency. Detection of a point mutation leading to nonexpression, *J Clin Invest* 91:1681–1686, 1993.

Barnett AH, Eff C, Leslie RD, et al: Diabetes in identical twins. A study of 200 pairs, *Diabetologia* 20:87–93, 1981.

Beutler E, Felitti VJ, Koziol JA, et al: Penetrance of 845G–> A (C282Y) HFE hereditary haemochromatosis mutation in the USA, *Lancet* 359:211–218, 2002.

Bjorkman PJ, Saper MA, Samraoui B, et al: Structure of the human class I histocompatibility antigen, HLA-A2, *Nature* 329:506–512, 1987.

Blanchong CA, Zhou B, Rupert KL, et al: Deficiencies of human complement component C4A and C4B and heterozygosity in length variants of RP-C4-CYP21-TNX (RCCX) modules in caucasians. The load of RCCX genetic diversity on major histocompatibility complex-associated disease, *J Exp Med* 191:2183–2196, 2000.

Blouin AM, Thannickal TC, Worley PF, et al: Narp immunostaining of human hypocretin (orexin) neurons: loss in narcolepsy, *Neurology* 65:1189–1192, 2005.

Bonten E, van der Spoel A, Fornerod M, et al: Characterization of human lysosomal neuraminidase defines the molecular basis of the metabolic storage disorder sialidosis, *Genes Dev* 10:3156–3169, 1996.

Brandt CS, Baratin M, Yi EC: The B7 family member B7-H6 is a tumor cell ligand for the activating natural killer cell receptor NKp30 in humans, *J Exp Med* 206:1495–1503, 2009.

Braun J, Sieper J: Ankylosing spondylitis, *Lancet* 369:1379–1390, 2007.

Braun L, Schneider PM, Giles CM, et al: Null alleles of human complement C4. Evidence for pseudogenes at the C4A locus and for gene conversion at the C4B locus, *J Exp Med* 171:129–140, 1990.

Browning JL, Ngam-ek A, Lawton P, et al: Lymphotoxin beta, a novel member of the TNF family that forms a heteromeric complex with lymphotoxin on the cell surface, *Cell* 72:847–856, 1993.

Burch GH, Gong Y, Liu W, et al: Tenascin-X deficiency is associated with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, *Nat Genet* 17:104–108, 1997.

Cabrera M, Shaw MA, Sharples C, et al: Polymorphism in tumor necrosis factor genes associated with mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, *J Exp Med* 182:1259–1264, 1995.

Canafoglia L, Robbiano A, Pareyson D, et al: Expanding sialidosis spectrum by genome-wide screening: NEU1 mutations in adult-onset myoclonus, *Neurology* 82:2003–2006, 2014.

Carroll MC, Campbell RD, Bentley DR, et al: A molecular map of the human major histocompatibility complex class III region linking complement genes C4, C2 and factor B, *Nature* 307:237–241, 1984.

Carroll MC, Campbell RD, Porter RR: Mapping of steroid 21-hydroxylase genes adjacent to complement component C4 genes in HLA, the major histocompatibility complex in man, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 82:521–525, 1985.

Carroll MC, Katzman P, Alicot EM, et al: Linkage map of the human major histocompatibility complex including the tumor necrosis factor genes, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 84:8535–8539, 1987.

Charron DJ, Lotteau V, Turmel P: Hybrid HLA-DC antigens provide molecular evidence for gene transcomplementation, *Nature* 312:157–159, 1984.

Chung EK, Yang Y, Rennebohm RM, et al: Genetic sophistication of human complement components C4A and C4B and RP-C4-CYP21-TNX (RCCX) modules in the major histocompatibility complex, *Am J Hum Genet* 71:823–837, 2002.

Chung WH, Hung SI, Hong HS, et al: Medical genetics: a marker for Stevens-Johnson syndrome, *Nature* 428:486, 2004.

Clavijo O, Delgado J, Awdeh ZL, et al: HLA-Cw alleles associated with HLA extended haplotypes and C2 deficiency, *Tissue Antigens* 52:282–285, 1998.

Clavijo OP, Delgado JC, Yu N, et al: HLA-Cw*1701 is associated with two sub-Saharan African-derived HLA haplotypes: HLA-B*4201, DRB1*03 and HLA-B*4202 without DRB1*03, *Tissue Antigens* 54:303–306, 1999.

Clay PG: The abacavir hypersensitivity reaction: a review, *Clin Ther* 24:1502–1514, 2002.

Colten HR, Rosen FS: Complement deficiencies, *Annu Rev Immunol* 10:809–834, 1992.

Corzo D, Yunis JJ, Salazar M, et al: The major histocompatibility complex region marked by HSP70-1 and HSP70-2 variants is associated with clozapine-induced agranulocytosis in two different ethnic groups, *Blood* 86:3835–3840, 1995.

Criswell LA, Lum RF, Turner KN, et al: The influence of genetic variation in the HLA-DRB1 and LTA-TNF regions on the response to treatment of early rheumatoid arthritis with methotrexate or etanercept, *Arthritis Rheum* 50:2750–2756, 2004.

Delgado JC, Baena A, Thim S, et al: Ethnic-specific genetic associations with pulmonary tuberculosis, *J Infect Dis* 186:1463–1468, 2002.

Densen P: Complement deficiencies and meningococcal disease, *Clin Exp Immunol* 86(Suppl 1):57–62, 1991.

Ding C, Ji X, Chen X, et al: TNF-alpha gene promoter polymorphisms contribute to periodontitis susceptibility: evidence from 46 studies, *J Clin Periodontol* 41:748–759, 2014.

Draber P, Stepanek O, Hrdinka M, et al: LST1/A is a myeloid leukocyte-specific transmembrane adaptor protein recruiting protein tyrosine phosphatases SHP-1 and SHP-2 to the plasma membrane, *J Biol Chem* 287:22812–22821, 2012.

Eckard SC, Rice GI, Fabre A, et al: The SKIV2L RNA exosome limits activation of the RIG-I-like receptors, *Nat Immunol* 15:839–845, 2014.

Fabre A, Charroux B, Martinez-Vinson C, et al: SKIV2L mutations cause syndromic diarrhea, or trichohepatoenteric syndrome, *Am J Hum Genet* 90:689–692, 2012.

Fallang LE, Bergseng E, Hotta K, et al: Differences in the risk of celiac disease associated with HLA-DQ2.5 or HLA-DQ2.2 are related to sustained gluten antigen presentation, *Nat Immunol* 10:1096–1101, 2009.

Fallang LE, Roh S, Holm A, et al: Complexes of two cohorts of CLIP peptides and HLA-DQ2 of the autoimmune DR3-DQ2 haplotype are poor substrates for HLA-DM, *J Immunol* 181:5451–5461, 2008.

Feder JN, Gnirke A, Thomas W, et al: A novel MHC class I-like gene is mutated in patients with hereditary haemochromatosis, *Nat Genet* 13:399–408, 1996.

Feder JN, Tsuchihashi Z, Irrinki A, et al: The hemochromatosis founder mutation in HLA-H disrupts beta2-microglobulin interaction and cell surface expression, *J Biol Chem* 272:14025–14028, 1997.

Fernandez-Vina M, Fink CW, Stastny P: HLA associations in juvenile arthritis, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 12:205–214, 1994.

Fielder AH, Walport MJ, Batchelor JR, et al: Family study of the major histocompatibility complex in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus: importance of null alleles of C4A and C4B in determining disease susceptibility, *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)* 286:425–428, 1983.

Fleischnick E, Awdeh ZL, Raum D, et al: Extended MHC haplotypes in 21-hydroxylase-deficiency congenital adrenal hyperplasia: shared genotypes in unrelated patients, *Lancet* 1:152–156, 1983.

Fraser PA, Moore B, Stein R, et al: Complotypes in individuals of African origin: frequencies and possible extended MHC haplotypes, *Immunogenetics* 31:89–93, 1990.

Gbadegesin RA, Brophy PD, Adeyemo A, et al: TNXB mutations can cause vesicoureteral reflux, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 24:1313–1322, 2013.

Geserick G, Otremba P, Schroder H, et al: Reference typing report for complement factor B, *Exp Clin Immunogenet* 15:261–263, 1998.

Goggins M, Kelleher D: Celiac disease and other nutrient related injuries to the gastrointestinal tract, *Am J Gastroenterol* 89:S2–S17, 1994.

Goicoechea de Jorge E, Harris CL, Esparza-Gordillo J, et al: Gain-of-function mutations in complement factor B are associated with atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 104:240–245, 2007.

Gold B, Merriam JE, Zernant J, et al: Variation in factor B (BF) and complement component 2 (C2) genes is associated with age-related macular degeneration, *Nat Genet* 38:458–462, 2006.

Gonzalez S, Martinez-Borra J, Torre-Alonso JC, et al: The MICA-A9 triplet repeat polymorphism in the transmembrane region confers additional susceptibility to the development of psoriatic arthritis and is independent of the association of Cw*0602 in psoriasis, *Arthritis Rheum* 42:1010–1016, 1999.

Gran JT, Husby G: HLA-B27 and spondyloarthropathy: value for early diagnosis?, *J Med Genet* 32:497–501, 1995.

Green PH, Cellier C: Celiac disease, *N Engl J Med* 357:1731–1743, 2007.

Hajeer AH, Hutchinson IV: Influence of TNFalpha gene polymorphisms on TNFalpha production and disease, *Hum Immunol* 62:1191–1199, 2001.

Hauptmann G, Goetz J, Uring-Lambert B, et al: Component deficiencies. 2. The fourth component, *Prog Allergy* 39:232–249, 1986.

He YQ, Zhu JH, Huang SY, et al: The association between the polymorphisms of TNF-α and non-Hodgkin lymphoma: a meta-analysis, *Tumour Biol* 35:12509–12517, 2014.

Hetherington S, Hughes AR, Mosteller M, et al: Genetic variations in HLA-B region and hypersensitivity reactions to abacavir, *Lancet* 359:1121–1122, 2002.

Higashi Y, Yoshioka H, Yamane M, et al: Complete nucleotide sequence of two steroid 21-hydroxylase genes tandemly arranged in human chromosome: a pseudogene and a genuine gene, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 83:2841–2845, 1986.

Hill JA, Southwood S, Sette A, et al: Cutting edge: the conversion of arginine to citrulline allows for a high-affinity peptide interaction with the rheumatoid arthritis-associated HLA-DRB1*0401 MHC class II molecule, *J Immunol* 171:538–541, 2003.

Hong SC, Lin L, Jeong JH, et al: A study of the diagnostic utility of HLA typing, CSF hypocretin-1 measurements, and MSLT testing for the diagnosis of narcolepsy in 163 Korean patients with unexplained excessive daytime sleepiness, *Sleep* 29:1429–1438, 2006.

Hor H, Kutalik Z, Dauvilliers Y, et al: Genome-wide association study identifies new HLA class II haplotypes strongly protective against narcolepsy, *Nat Genet* 42:786–789, 2010.

Huang DF, Siminovitch KA, Liu XY, et al: Population and family studies of three disease-related polymorphic genes in systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Clin Invest* 95:1766–1772, 1995.

Hughes DA, Vilar FJ, Ward CC, et al: Cost-effectiveness analysis of HLA B*5701 genotyping in preventing abacavir hypersensitivity, *Pharmacogenetics* 14:335–342, 2004.

Hui J, Oka A, Tomizawa M, et al: Identification of two new C4 alleles by DNA sequencing and evidence for a historical recombination of serologically defined C4A and C4B alleles, *Tissue Antigens* 63:263–269, 2004.

Hunt C, Morimoto RI: Conserved features of eukaryotic hsp70 genes revealed by comparison with the nucleotide sequence of human hsp70, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 82:6455–6459, 1985.

Jahn I, Uring-Lambert B, Arnold D, et al: C2 reference typing report, *Complement Inflamm* 7:175–182, 1990.

Jenkins D, Fletcher J, Penny MA, et al: DRB genotyping supports recessive inheritance of DR3-associated susceptibility to insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *Am J Hum Genet* 49:49–53, 1991.

Johnson CA, Densen P, Hurford RK Jr, et al: Type I human complement C2 deficiency. A 28-base pair gene deletion causes skipping of exon 6 during RNA splicing, *J Biol Chem* 267:9347–9353, 1992.

Kadoya M, Yamamoto A, Hamaguchi M, et al: Allograft inflammatory factor-1 stimulates chemokine production and induces chemotaxis in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 448:287–291, 2014.

Khalil I, Deschamps I, Lepage V, et al: Dose effect of cis- and trans-encoded HLA-DQ alpha beta heterodimers in IDDM susceptibility, *Diabetes* 41:378–384, 1992.

Khan MA, Kellner H: Immunogenetics of spondyloarthropathies, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 18:837–864, 1992.

Kim CY, Quarsten H, Bergseng E, et al: Structural basis for HLA-DQ2-mediated presentation of gluten epitopes in celiac disease, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 101:4175–4179, 2004.

Klein J: *Natural history of major histocompatibility complex*, New York, 1986, John Wiley & Sons.

Klemperer MR, Woodworth HC, Rosen FS, et al: Hereditary deficiency of the second component of complement (C'2) in man, *J Clin Invest* 45:880–890, 1966.

Kockum I, Sanjeevi CB, Eastman S, et al: Complex interaction between HLA DR and DQ in conferring risk for childhood type 1 diabetes, *Eur J Immunogenet* 26:361–372, 1999.

Kockum I, Wassmuth R, Holmberg E, et al: HLA-DQ primarily confers protection and HLA-DR susceptibility in type I (insulin-dependent) diabetes studied in population-based affected families and controls, *Am J Hum Genet* 53:150–167, 1993.

Kowalczyk M, Owczarek A, Suchanek R, et al: Heat shock protein 70 gene polymorphisms are associated with paranoid schizophrenia in the Polish population, *Cell Stress Chaperones* 19:205–215, 2014.

Kubaszek A, Pihlajamaki J, Komarovski V, et al: Promoter polymorphisms of the TNF-alpha (G-308A) and IL-6 (C-174G) genes predict the conversion from impaired glucose tolerance to type 2 diabetes: the Finnish Diabetes Prevention Study, *Diabetes* 52:1872–1876, 2003.

Kumanovics A, Fischer Lindahl K: Good copy, bad copy: choosing animal models for HLA-linked diseases, *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 14:258–263, 2004.

Lander ES, Linton LM, Birren B, et al: Initial sequencing and analysis of the human genome, *Nature* 409:860–921, 2001.

Lee KH, Wucherpfennig KW, Wiley DC: Structure of a human insulin peptide-HLA-DQ8 complex and susceptibility to type 1 diabetes, *Nat Immunol* 2:501–507, 2001.

Lehner B, Semple JI, Brown SE, et al: Analysis of a high-throughput yeast two-hybrid system and its use to predict the function of intracellular proteins encoded within the human MHC class III region, *Genomics* 83:153–167, 2004.

Lernmark A: Type 1 diabetes, *Clin Chem* 45:1331–1338, 1999.

Li SS, Kyei SK, Timm-McCann M, et al: The NK receptor NKp30 mediates direct fungal recognition and killing and is diminished in NK cells from HIV-infected patients, *Cell Host Microbe* 14:387–397, 2013.

Lokki ML, Circolo A, Ahokas P, et al: Deficiency of human complement protein C4 due to identical frameshift mutations in the C4A and C4B genes, *J Immunol* 162:3687–3693, 1999.

Lokki ML, Koskimies SA: Allelic differences in hemolytic activity and protein concentration of BF molecules are found in association with particular HLA haplotypes, *Immunogenetics* 34:242–246, 1991.

Long EO, Gorski J, Mach B: Structural relationship of the SB beta-chain gene to HLA-D-region genes and murine I-region genes, *Nature* 310:233–235, 1984.

Lundberg K, Nijenhuis S, Vossenaar ER, et al: Citrullinated proteins have increased immunogenicity and arthritogenicity and their presence in arthritic joints correlates with disease severity, *Arthritis Res Ther* 7:R458–R467, 2005.

Luthra-Guptasarma M, Singh B: HLA-B27 lacking associated beta2-microglobulin rearranges to autodisplay or cross-display residues 169-181: a novel molecular mechanism for spondyloarthropathies, *FEBS Lett* 575:1–8, 2004.

MacGregor A, Ollier W, Thomson W, et al: HLA-DRB1*0401/0404 genotype and rheumatoid arthritis: increased association in men, young age at onset, and disease severity, *J Rheumatol* 22:1032–1036, 1995.

Mallal S, Nolan D, Witt C, et al: Association between presence of HLA-B*5701, HLA-DR7, and HLA-DQ3 and hypersensitivity to HIV-1 reverse-transcriptase inhibitor abacavir, *Lancet* 359:727–732, 2002.

Mallal S, Phillips E, Carosi G, et al: HLA-B*5701 screening for hypersensitivity to abacavir, *N Engl J Med* 358:568–579, 2008.

Maller J, George S, Purcell S, et al: Common variation in three genes, including a noncoding variant in CFH, strongly influences risk of age-related macular degeneration, *Nat Genet* 38:1055–1059, 2006.

Mallya M, Campbell RD, Aguado B: Characterization of the five novel Ly-6 superfamily members encoded in the MHC, and detection of cells expressing their potential ligands, *Protein Sci* 15:2244–2256, 2006.

Marsh MN: Gluten, major histocompatibility complex, and the small intestine. A molecular and immunobiologic approach to the spectrum of gluten sensitivity ("celiac sprue"), *Gastroenterology* 102:330–354, 1992.

Marsh SG: Nomenclature for factors of the HLA system, update August 2014, *Int J Immunogenet* 41:535–540, 2014.

Matsuki K, Grumet FC, Lin X, et al: DQ (rather than DR) gene marks susceptibility to narcolepsy, *Lancet* 339:1052, 1992.

Mavoungou E, Held J, Mewono L, et al: A Duffy binding–like domain is involved in the NKp30-mediated recognition of plasmodium falciparum–parasitized erythrocytes by natural killer cells, *J Infect Dis* 195:1521–1531, 2007.

McCormack M, Alfirevic A, Bourgeois S, et al: HLA-A*3101 and carbamazepine-induced hypersensitivity reactions in Europeans, *N Engl J Med* 364:1134–1143, 2011.

McCusker SM, Curran MD, Dynan KB, et al: Association between polymorphism in regulatory region of gene encoding tumour necrosis factor alpha and risk of Alzheimer's disease and vascular dementia: a case-control study, *Lancet* 357:436–439, 2001.

McGarry F, Walker R, Sturrock R, et al: The -308.1 polymorphism in the promoter region of the tumor necrosis factor gene is associated with ankylosing spondylitis independent of HLA-B27, *J Rheumatol* 26:1110–1116, 1999.

McGuire W, Hill AV, Allsopp CE, et al: Variation in the TNF-alpha promoter region associated with susceptibility to cerebral malaria, *Nature* 371:508–510, 1994.

Meo T, Atkinson JP, Bernoco M, et al: Structural heterogeneity of C2 Complement protein and its genetic variants in man: a new polymorphism of the HLA region, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 74:1672–1675, 1977.

Miettinen O: Estimability and estimation in case-referent studies, *Am J Epidemiol* 103:226–235, 1976.

Mignot E, Hayduk R, Black J, et al: HLA DQB1*0602 is associated with cataplexy in 509 narcoleptic patients, *Sleep* 20:1012–1020, 1997.

Mignot E, Lin L, Rogers W, et al: Complex HLA-DR and -DQ interactions confer risk of narcolepsy-cataplexy in three ethnic groups, *Am J Hum Genet* 68:686–699, 2001.

Milner CM, Campbell RD: Structure and expression of the three MHC-linked HSP70 genes, *Immunogenetics* 32:242–251, 1990.

Milner CM, Campbell RD: Polymorphic analysis of the three MHC-linked HSP70 genes, *Immunogenetics* 36:357–362, 1992.

Min L, Chen D, Qu L, et al: Tumor necrosis factor-a polymorphisms and colorectal cancer risk: a meta-analysis, *PLoS ONE* 9:e85187, 2014.

Mira JP, Cariou A, Grall F, et al: Association of TNF2, a TNF-alpha promoter polymorphism, with septic shock susceptibility and mortality: a multicenter study [see comments], *JAMA* 282:561–568, 1999.

Morel Y, Bristow J, Gitelman SE, et al: Transcript encoded on the opposite strand of the human steroid 21-hydroxylase/complement component C4 gene locus, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 86:6582–6586, 1989.

Mulcahy H, O'Rourke KP, Adams C, et al: LST1 and NCR3 expression in autoimmune inflammation and in response to IFN-gamma, LPS and microbial infection, *Immunogenetics* 57:893–903, 2006.

Nepom BS, Schwarz D, Palmer JP, et al: Transcomplementation of HLA genes in IDDM. HLA-DQ alpha- and beta-chains produce hybrid molecules in DR3/4 heterozygotes, *Diabetes* 36:114–117, 1987.

Nepom GT: A unified hypothesis for the complex genetics of HLA associations with IDDM, *Diabetes* 39:1153–1157, 1990.

Nepom GT, Erlich H: MHC class-II molecules and autoimmunity, *Annu Rev Immunol* 9:493–525, 1991.

Nepom GT, Nepom BS: Prediction of susceptibility to rheumatoid arthritis by human leukocyte antigen genotyping, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 18:785–792, 1992.

Nicaud V, Raoux S, Poirier O, et al: The TNF alpha/G-308A polymorphism influences insulin sensitivity in offspring of patients with coronary heart disease: the European Atherosclerosis Research Study II, *Atherosclerosis* 161:317–325, 2002.

Noble JA, Valdes AM, Cook M, et al: The role of HLA class II genes in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus: molecular analysis of 180 Caucasian, multiplex families, *Am J Hum Genet* 59:1134–1148, 1996.

Okada Y, Han B, Tsoi LC, et al: Fine mapping major histocompatibility complex associations in psoriasis and its clinical subtypes, *Am J Hum Genet* 95:162–172, 2014.

Okamoto K, Makino S, Yoshikawa Y, et al: Identification of I kappa BL as the second major histocompatibility complex-linked susceptibility locus for rheumatoid arthritis, *Am J Hum Genet* 72:303–312, 2003.

Ollier W, Thomson W: Population genetics of rheumatoid arthritis, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 18:741–759, 1992.

Ozaki K, Ohnishi Y, Iida A, et al: Functional SNPs in the lymphotoxin-alpha gene that are associated with susceptibility to myocardial infarction, *Nat Genet* 32:650–654, 2002.

Pae CU, Kim TS, Kwon OJ, et al: Polymorphisms of heat shock protein 70 gene (HSPA1A, HSPA1B and HSPA1L) and schizophrenia, *Neurosci Res* 53:8–13, 2005.

Pende D, Parolini S, Pessino A, et al: Identification and molecular characterization of NKp30, a novel triggering receptor involved in natural cytotoxicity mediated by human natural killer cells, *J Exp Med* 190:1505–1516, 1999.

Penisson-Besnier I, Allamand V, Beurrier P, et al: Compound heterozygous mutations of the TNXB gene cause primary myopathy, *Neuromuscul Disord* 23:664–669, 2013.

Penrose LS: The detection of autosomal linkage in pairs of brothers and sisters of unspecified parentage, *Ann Eugen* 6:133, 1935.

Penzotti JE, Doherty D, Lybrand TP, et al: A structural model for TCR recognition of the HLA class II shared epitope sequence implicated in susceptibility to rheumatoid arthritis, *J Autoimmun* 9:287–293, 1996.

Peterlin B, Globocnik Petrovic M, Makuc J, et al: A hemochromatosis-causing mutation C282Y is a risk factor for proliferative diabetic retinopathy in Caucasians with type 2 diabetes, *J Hum Genet* 48:646–649, 2003.

Raum D, Awdeh Z, Alper CA: BF types and the mode of inheritance of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM), *Immunogenetics* 12:59–74, 1981.

Robson KJ, Lehmann DJ, Wimhurst VL, et al: Synergy between the C2 allele of transferrin and the C282Y allele of the haemochromatosis gene (HFE) as risk factors for developing Alzheimer's disease, *J Med Genet* 41:261–265, 2004.

Rubin LA, Amos CI, Wade JA, et al: Investigating the genetic basis for ankylosing spondylitis. Linkage studies with the major histocompatibility complex region, *Arthritis Rheum* 37:1212–1220, 1994.

Rubinstein P, Suciu-Foca N, Nicholson JF: Genetics of juvenile diabetes mellitus. A recessive gene closely linked to HLA D and with 50 per cent penetrance, *N Engl J Med* 297:1036–1040, 1977.
Rubio-Tapia A, Hill ID, Kelly CP, et al: ACG clinical guidelines: diagnosis and management of celiac disease, *Am J Gastroenterol* 108:656–676, quiz 677, 2013.
Rusakiewicz S, Nocturne G, Lazure T, et al: NCR3/NKp30 contributes to pathogenesis in primary Sjogren's syndrome, *Sci Transl Med* 5:195ra96, 2013.
Russell TJ, Schultes LM, Kuban DJ: Histocompatibility (HL-A) antigens associated with psoriasis, *N Engl J Med* 287:738–740, 1972.
Sargent CA, Dunham I, Trowsdale J, et al: Human major histocompatibility complex contains genes for the major heat shock protein HSP70, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 86:1968–1972, 1989.
Sarpatwari A, Bussel JB, Ahmed M, et al: Single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) analysis demonstrates a significant association of tumour necrosis factor-alpha (TNFA) with primary immune thrombocytopenia among Caucasian adults, *Hematology* 16:243–248, 2011.
Schiller C, Diakopoulos KN, Rohwedder I, et al: LST1 promotes the assembly of a molecular machinery responsible for tunneling nanotube formation, *J Cell Sci* 126:767–777, 2013.
Schneider PM, Mauff G: Complement C4 protein and DNA typing methods, *Methods Mol Biol* 210:269–295, 2003.
Schneider PM, Stradmann-Bellinghausen B, Rittner C: Genetic polymorphism of the fourth component of human complement: population study and proposal for a revised nomenclature based on genomic PCR typing of Rodgers and Chido determinants, *Eur J Immunogenet* 23:335–344, 1996.
Schneider PM, Witzel-Schlomp K, Rittner C, et al: The endogenous retroviral insertion in the human complement C4 gene modulates the expression of homologous genes by antisense inhibition, *Immunogenetics* 53:1–9, 2001.
Schroder O, Schulte KM, Ostermann P, et al: Heat shock protein 70 genotypes HSPA1B and HSPA1L influence cytokine concentrations and interfere with outcome after major injury, *Crit Care Med* 31:73–79, 2003.
Scofield RH, Kurien B, Gross T, et al: HLA-B27 binding of peptide from its own sequence and similar peptides from bacteria: implications for spondyloarthropathies, *Lancet* 345:1542–1544, 1995.
Sharma R, Vasishta RK, Sen RK, et al: Refolding of HLA-B27 heavy chains in the absence of beta2m yields stable high molecular weight (HMW) protein forms displaying native-like as well as non-native-like conformational features: implications for autoimmune disease, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1772:1258–1269, 2007.
Shiina T, Hosomichi K, Inoko H, et al: The HLA genomic loci map: expression, interaction, diversity and disease, *J Hum Genet* 54:15–39, 2009.
Siebold C, Hansen BE, Wyer JR, et al: Crystal structure of HLA-DQ0602 that protects against type 1 diabetes and confers strong susceptibility to narcolepsy, *PNAS* 101:1999–2004, 2004.
Siemens I, Brenden M, Mauff G, et al: Apparently non-expressed alleles of factor B (BF) code for hypomorphic proteins, *Immunogenetics* 37:24–28, 1992.
Silverstein AM: Essential hypocomplementemia: report of a case, *Blood* 16:1338–1341, 1960.
Sim E, Cross SJ: Phenotyping of human complement component C4, a class-III HLA antigen, *Biochem J* 239:763–767, 1986.
Simon M, Bourel M, Fauchet R, et al: Association of HLA-A3 and HLA-B14 antigens with idiopathic haemochromatosis, *Gut* 17:332–334, 1976.
Singh R, Kolvraa S, Bross P, et al: Anti-inflammatory heat shock protein 70 genes are positively associated with human survival, *Curr Pharm Des* 16:796–801, 2010.
Singh R, Kolvraa S, Bross P, et al: Reduced heat shock response in human mononuclear cells during aging and its association with polymorphisms in HSP70 genes, *Cell Stress Chaperones* 11:208–215, 2006.
Sinnott PJ, Costigan C, Dyer PA, et al: Extended MHC haplotypes and CYP21/C4 gene organisation in Irish 21-hydroxylase deficiency families, *Hum Genet* 87:361–366, 1991.
Skibola CF, Bracci PM, Nieters A, et al: Tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and lymphotoxin-alpha (LTA) polymorphisms and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma in the InterLymph Consortium, *Am J Epidemiol* 171:267–276, 2010.
Slade C, Bosco J, Unglik G, et al: Deficiency in complement factor B, *N Engl J Med* 369:1667–1669, 2013.
Smith WP, Vu Q, Li SS, et al: Toward understanding MHC disease associations: partial resequencing of 46 distinct HLA haplotypes, *Genomics* 87:561–571, 2006.
Soto K, Wu YL, Ortiz A, et al: Familial C4B deficiency and immune complex glomerulonephritis, *Clin Immunol* 137:166–175, 2010.
Spagnolo P, Sato H, Marshall SE, et al: Association between heat shock protein 70/Hom genetic polymorphisms and uveitis in patients with sarcoidosis, *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 48:3019–3025, 2007.
Stammers M, Rowen L, Rhodes D, et al: BTL-II: a polymorphic locus with homology to the butyrophilin gene family, located at the border of the major histocompatibility complex class II and class III regions in human and mouse, *Immunogenetics* 51:373–382, 2000.
Stastny P, Fernandez-Vina M, Cerna M, et al: Sequences of HLA alleles associated with arthritis in adults and children, *J Rheumatol Suppl* 37:5–8, 1993.
Stefansson Thors V, Kolka R, Sigurdardottir SL, et al: Increased frequency of C4B*Q0 alleles in patients with Henoch-Schonlein purpura, *Scand J Immunol* 61:274–278, 2005.
Stewart CA, Horton R, Allcock RJN, et al: Complete MHC haplotype sequencing for common disease gene mapping, *Genome Res* 14:1176–1187, 2004.
Sullivan KE, Petri MA, Schmeckpeper BJ, et al: Prevalence of a mutation causing C2 deficiency in systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Rheumatol* 21:1128–1133, 1994.
Sutton HE: *An introduction to human genetics*, Philadelphia, 1980, Saunders.
Svejgaard A, Platz P, Ryder LP: HLA and disease 1982—a survey, *Immunol Rev* 70:193–218, 1983.
Swanson RM, Gavin MA, Escobar SS, et al: Butyrophilin-like 2 modulates B7 costimulation to induce Foxp3 expression and regulatory T cell development in mature T cells, *J Immunol* 190:2027–2035, 2013.
Szalai C, Fust G, Duba J, et al: Association of polymorphisms and allelic combinations in the tumour necrosis factor-alpha-complement MHC region with coronary artery disease, *J Med Genet* 39:46–51, 2002.
The MHC sequencing consortium: Complete sequence and gene map of a human major histocompatibility complex. The MHC sequencing consortium, *Nature* 401:921–923, 1999.
Thomson G: HLA DR antigens and susceptibility to insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *Am J Hum Genet* 36:1309–1317, 1984.
Thomson G, Bodmer W: The genetic analysis of HLA and disease association. In Dausset J, Svejgaard A, editors: *HLA and Disease*, Copenhagen, 1977, Munksgaard.
Thorsby E, Ronningen KS: Role of HLA genes in predisposition to develop insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *Ann Med* 24:523–531, 1992.
Tiancha H, Huiqin W, Jiyong J, et al: Association between lymphotoxin-alpha intron +252 polymorphism and sepsis: a meta-analysis, *Scand J Infect Dis* 43:436–447, 2011.
Todd JA: Genetic control of autoimmunity in type 1 diabetes, *Immunol Today* 11:122–129, 1990.
Traherne JA, Horton R, Roberts AN, et al: Genetic analysis of completely sequenced disease-associated MHC haplotypes identifies shuffling of segments in recent human history, *PLoS Genet* 2:e9, 2006.
Truedsson L, Alper CA, Awdeh ZL, et al: Characterization of type I complement C2 deficiency MHC haplotypes. Strong conservation of the complotype/HLA-B-region and absence of disease association due to linked class II genes, *J Immunol* 151:5856–5863, 1993a.
Truedsson L, Sturfelt G, Nived O: Prevalence of the type I complement C2 deficiency gene in Swedish systemic lupus erythematosus patients, *Lupus* 2:325–327, 1993b.
Tsuda T, Moriguchi M, Asanuma Y, et al: C4B deficiency associated with membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, *Intern Med* 46:765–770, 2007.
Ucisik-Akkaya E, Davis CF, Gorodezky C, et al: HLA complex-linked heat shock protein genes and childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia susceptibility, *Cell Stress Chaperones* 15:475–485, 2010.
Valentonyte R, Hampe J, Huse K, et al: Sarcoidosis is associated with a truncating splice site mutation in BTNL2, *Nat Genet* 37:357–364, 2005.
Waheed A, Parkkila S, Saarnio J, et al: Association of HFE protein with transferrin receptor in crypt enterocytes of human duodenum, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 96:1579–1584, 1999.
Waheed A, Parkkila S, Zhou XY, et al: Hereditary hemochromatosis: effects of C282Y and H63D mutations on association with beta2-microglobulin, intracellular processing, and cell surface expression of the HFE protein in COS-7 cells, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 94:12384–12389, 1997.
Walsh EC, Mather KA, Schaffner SF, et al: An integrated haplotype map of the human major histocompatibility complex, *Am J Hum Genet* 73:580–590, 2003.
Wang X, Cheng S, Brophy VH, et al: A meta-analysis of candidate gene polymorphisms and ischemic stroke in 6 study populations: association of lymphotoxin-alpha in nonhypertensive patients, *Stroke* 40:683–695, 2009.
Wetsel RA, Kulics J, Lokki ML, et al: Type II human complement C2 deficiency. Allele-specific amino acid substitutions (Ser189 –> Phe; Gly444 –> Arg) cause impaired C2 secretion, *J Biol Chem* 271:5824–5831, 1996.
White PC, New MI, Dupont B: Structure of human steroid 21-hydroxylase genes, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 83:5111–5115, 1986.
White PC, Vitek A, Dupont B, et al: Characterization of frequent deletions causing steroid 21-hydroxylase deficiency, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 85:4436–4440, 1988.
Wiesner M, Stepniak D, de Ru A, et al: Dominance of an alternative CLIP sequence in the celiac disease associated HLA-DQ2 molecule, *Immunogenetics* 60:551–555, 2008.
Wilson WA, Perez MC: Complete C4B deficiency in black Americans with systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Rheumatol* 15:1855–1858, 1988.
Winter WE, Chihara T, Schatz D: The genetics of autoimmune diabetes. Approaching a solution to the problem, *Am J Dis Child* 147:1282–1290, 1993.
Wu YL, Savelli SL, Yang Y, et al: Sensitive and specific real-time polymerase chain reaction assays to accurately determine copy number variations (CNVs) of human complement C4A, C4B, C4-long, C4-short, and RCCX modules: elucidation of C4 CNVs in 50 consanguineous subjects with defined HLA genotypes, *J Immunol* 179:3012–3025, 2007.
Wu YR, Wang CK, Chen CM, et al: Analysis of heat-shock protein 70 gene polymorphisms and the risk of Parkinson's disease, *Hum Genet* 114:236–241, 2004.
Xie T, Rowen L, Aguado B, et al: Analysis of the gene-dense major histocompatibility complex class III region and its comparison to mouse, *Genome Res* 13:2621–2636, 2003.
Yang Y, Chung EK, Zhou B, et al: Diversity in intrinsic strengths of the human complement system: serum C4 protein concentrations correlate with C4 gene size and polygenic variations, hemolytic activities, and body mass index, *J Immunol* 171:2734–2745, 2003.
Yu X, Huang Y, Li C, et al: Positive association between lymphotoxin-alpha variation rs909253 and cancer risk: a meta-analysis based on 36 case-control studies, *Tumour Biol* 35:1973–1983, 2014.
Zanelli E, Breedveld FC, de Vries RR: HLA class II association with rheumatoid arthritis: facts and interpretations, *Hum Immunol* 61:1254–1261, 2000.
Zhang Y, Gong J, Zhang L, et al: Genetic polymorphisms of HSP70 in age-related cataract, *Cell Stress Chaperones* 18:703–709, 2013.
Zipperlen K, Peddle L, Melay B, et al: Association of TNF-alpha polymorphisms in Crohn disease, *Hum Immunol* 66:56–59, 2005.

CHAPTER 51

IMMUNODEFICIENCY DISORDERS

Patrick Michael Long, Kimberly W. Sanford, Martin H. Bluth

CLINICAL SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF IMMUNODEFICIENCY, 983

EVALUATION OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM, 984

First-Level Investigations, 984

Second-Level Investigations, 987

Third-Level Investigations, 989

NOVEL APPROACHES TO TREATING IMMUNODEFICIENCY DISORDERS, 992

SUMMARY, 992

SELECTED REFERENCES, 992

KEY POINTS

- Primary immunodeficiencies are a group of single-gene disorders.
- Because of the complexity of diagnosing a primary immunodeficiency, the cooperation of the clinician, the research scientist, and the clinical pathologist is required.
- A logical approach to the diagnosis of primary immunodeficiency disorders based on staged diagnostic testing is necessary because of the complex nature of the immune system.
- Preparation for specimen collection, handling, and delivery to a specialty laboratory is required for performing complex immunologic assays.
- As a result of technological advances, molecular genetic testing is increasingly employed in diagnosing primary immunodeficiency disorders and will be paramount in guiding future treatment.

Primary immunodeficiencies are a group of single-gene disorders that result in defects in the immune system. The manifestations can vary in terms of degree of severity, types of symptoms exhibited, or both. These conditions, when unrecognized and left untreated, can result in death from infection. A genetic defect may result in loss of a critical enzyme, may cause developmental arrest in one aspect of the immune system, may cause loss of a structural component, or may create a nonfunctional protein. Most of these disorders are X-linked, resulting in a disproportionate number of affected males—approximately 70% of patients with primary immunodeficiency disorders (Puck, 1997a). A majority of primary immunodeficiencies are detected before 20 years of age, but diagnosis can be delayed because recognition requires a high degree of clinical suspicion. More than 100 primary immunodeficiency disorders have been described; however, more than 90% of such patients are affected by fewer than 20 primary immunodeficiency disorders (Puck, 1997a). Whereas primary immunodeficiency disorders are due to single gene mutations, secondary immunodeficiencies may be due to malnutrition, viral infection, hematologic and other types of malignancy, chemotherapeutic treatment for malignancy, and immunosuppressive medication for treatment of a variety of disorders.

The natural physical barriers of the body are the first line of defense against invading microbes and include skin, mucus at exposed mucosal surfaces, and ciliated cells of the respiratory, intestinal, and genital tracts. In addition to physical barriers, immunologic functions of the body exert continual surveillance through acquired and innate modes of action. The acquired immunologic response is specific, requiring previous antigen exposure for sensitization, and improves with each subsequent challenge from a given antigen. These responses are the result of a proliferation of antigen-specific B and T cells, which are stimulated after cellular receptors bind to antigens. B cells produce antigen-specific antibodies to eliminate extracellular antigens. T cells assist B cells to produce antigen-specific antibodies and also kill cells that are virally infected. Innate responses do not require prior antigen exposure and comprise phagocytic cells (macrophages, neutrophils, and monocytes), complement, cytokines, and acute phase reactants (Delves & Roitt, 2000).

The immune system is an interlocking group of immune cells and immune functions, in which any defect may result in an immunodeficiency. The incidence of primary immunodeficiency diseases in the United States is estimated at about 1 in 200,000 liveborn infants, excluding selective immunoglobulin (Ig)A deficiency (Winkelstein et al, 2000). The most common immunodeficiency, selective IgA deficiency, has an incidence of 1 in every 1200 healthy blood donors, with IgA levels less than 0.05 mg/dL (Sandler et al, 1994). As a whole, the estimated incidence of diagnosed primary immunodeficiency disease is 1 in 10,000 (Immune Deficiency Foundation, 1992; Shearer et al, 1994; Smith et al, 1999). Data from Australia and Norway estimate the incidence of primary immunodeficiency at 2.1 per 100,000 (Baumgart et al, 1997) and 6.8 per 100,000, respectively (Ryser et al, 1988; Stray-Pedersen & Abrahamsen, 1997; Matamoros et al, 2000).

For unknown reasons, approximately half of reported immune defects involve defective antibody production due to low numbers of B cells or B cells with decreased production of antigen-specific antibody. Decreased antigen-specific antibody production most frequently manifests as recurrent pulmonary or sinus infection, as well as bacterial septicemia (Noroski & Shearer, 1998). These infections are typically caused by encapsulated bacteria such as *Streptococcus pneumoniae* or *Haemophilus influenzae*. Defective T cell immunity is characteristically associated with opportunistic, viral, and fungal infections, such as *Candida albicans*, *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* (MAI), and *Pneumocystis (carinii) jiroveci* (Buckley, 2000). The type of infection a patient acquires may point toward the type of cellular immune defect that is present (Fig. 51-1). Primary immunodeficiency disorders are also associated with autoimmune diseases, as well as malignant neoplasms and especially lymphomas (Smith et al, 1999).

CLINICAL SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF IMMUNODEFICIENCY

Most frequently, increased susceptibility to recurrent infection is the first clinical indication of an immune defect. The type of recurrent infection provides insight into the immune defect and helps guide the clinician in evaluating the patient. Therefore, the most critical part of the medical evaluation is obtaining a complete medical history. Identifying children with immunodeficiency presents a significant challenge to pediatricians, because infections are a common occurrence in normal childhood but can be the principal manifestation of a primary immunodeficiency. Therefore, frequent and prolonged infections, coupled with failure to thrive, or opportunistic infections require a thorough immunologic workup (Puck, 1999). A confirmed report of an immunodeficiency disease occurring in a sibling or first-degree relative should also prompt careful clinical assessment and laboratory investigation, even without a history of severe or unusual infections. In one study of 70 patients with primary immunodeficiency disorders, approximately 18.6% had a family history of an immunodeficiency (Kobrynski, 2002).

Awareness of common clinical presentations can aid physicians in identifying individuals who are more likely to have a primary immune defect. Clinical signs and symptoms of primary immunodeficiency are presented in Figure 51-2. In addition to these warning signs, the physician should be alerted by elements in the history that are unusual, such as a history of autoimmune disease, significant lymphadenopathy, the need for an adult to have a myringotomy, severe herpes zoster or herpes zoster appearing in a young child, or intractable diarrhea or ulcerative colitis diagnosed in a child younger than 1 year of age. These additional signs and symptoms should prompt evaluation for a possible immune defect.

It is not practical to investigate all immunologic systems in all patients, so the clinical picture and age of the patient will point the investigator to the portion of the immune system that is most likely to be affected. Taking a careful history and performing a thorough physical examination can narrow the possibilities to defects involving T cells, B cells, granulocytes, or the complement system. The roles of these host defenses and their correlation with different immunodeficiency disorders are presented in Figure 51-3.

It is also important to pay attention to the clinical circumstances and not to dwell exclusively on the number or severity of infectious episodes (Atkinson et al, 2000). For example, when an infectious process involves the same anatomic site repeatedly, the cause is more likely to be structural, not failure of one of the host defenses. Examples include chronic osteomyelitis in one location, recurrent episodes of pneumonia that affect only one lobe of the lung, and recurrent infection of a surgical wound. Additionally, some primary immunodeficiency disorders, such as chronic granulomatous disease, may present later in life than expected; however, it is still important to keep these disorders in the differential diagnosis (Lukela et al, 2005).

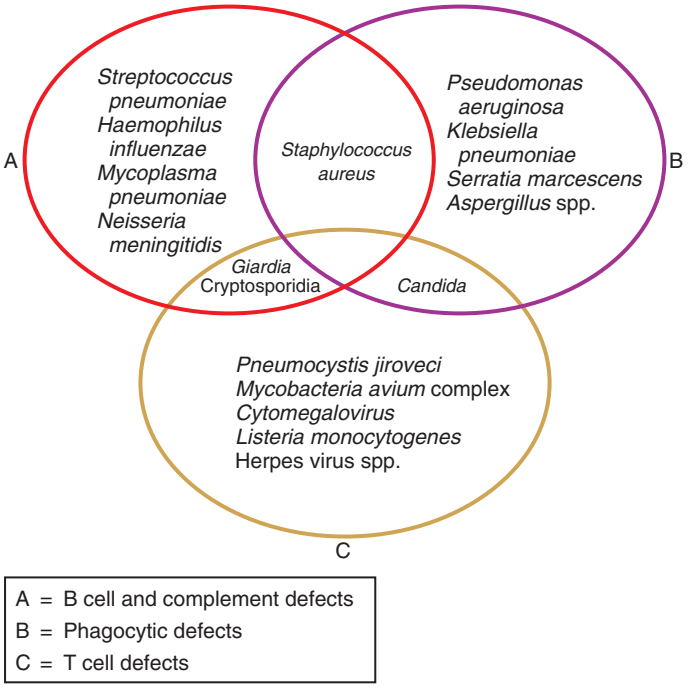


Figure 51-1 Infections associated with cellular immune defects.

EVALUATION OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

Based on the previous considerations, when an immune defect is suspected, evaluation of the immune system is best approached in stages, with basic screening tests performed first and more complex testing conducted as indicated. For example, if a patient presents with strong clinical symptoms suggestive of a B or T cell disorder but a normal lymphocyte count, further investigation by a lymphocyte enumeration panel is warranted. An overview of this staged approach is given in Figure 51-4, and a basic testing algorithm for immunodeficiencies is provided in Figure 51-5.

FIRST-LEVEL INVESTIGATIONS

Clinical History, Physical Examination, and Initial Blood Count

A thorough clinical history provides the primary clues in diagnosing a primary immunodeficiency disorder. The typical history includes recurrent, persistent infections or infections caused by unusual microbes. The clinician will be guided by the types of infection the patient has acquired. Patients with immunoglobulin deficiencies typically report an increased number of bacterial infections. Repeated viral, fungal, or other opportunistic infections are associated with T cell immunodeficiencies. Patients with phagocytic defects usually report a history of infections with catalase-positive bacteria, such as *Staphylococcus* spp. Complement deficiencies are most frequently associated with *Streptococcus pneumoniae* or *Neisseria* spp. infections (see Fig. 51-1) (Lindegren et al, 2004).

The physical examination may reveal findings that are characteristic for particular primary immunodeficiency disorders. Patients with primary immunodeficiency diseases are pale and lethargic, and appear chronically ill. Infants and young children affected with primary immunodeficiency disorders may present with failure to thrive, so monitoring height and weight is important. Small or absent peripheral lymph nodes, tonsils, or adenoids are indicative of X-linked agammaglobulinemia (Lindegren et al, 2004). In addition to respiratory infection, the infant may experience rhinitis, conjunctivitis, or hematologic, gastrointestinal, and autoimmune disorders (Fleisher, 2003). In contrast, patients with chronic granulomatous disease (CGD) and common variable immunodeficiency present with normal or enlarged peripheral lymph nodes (Buckley, 2000). The genetic

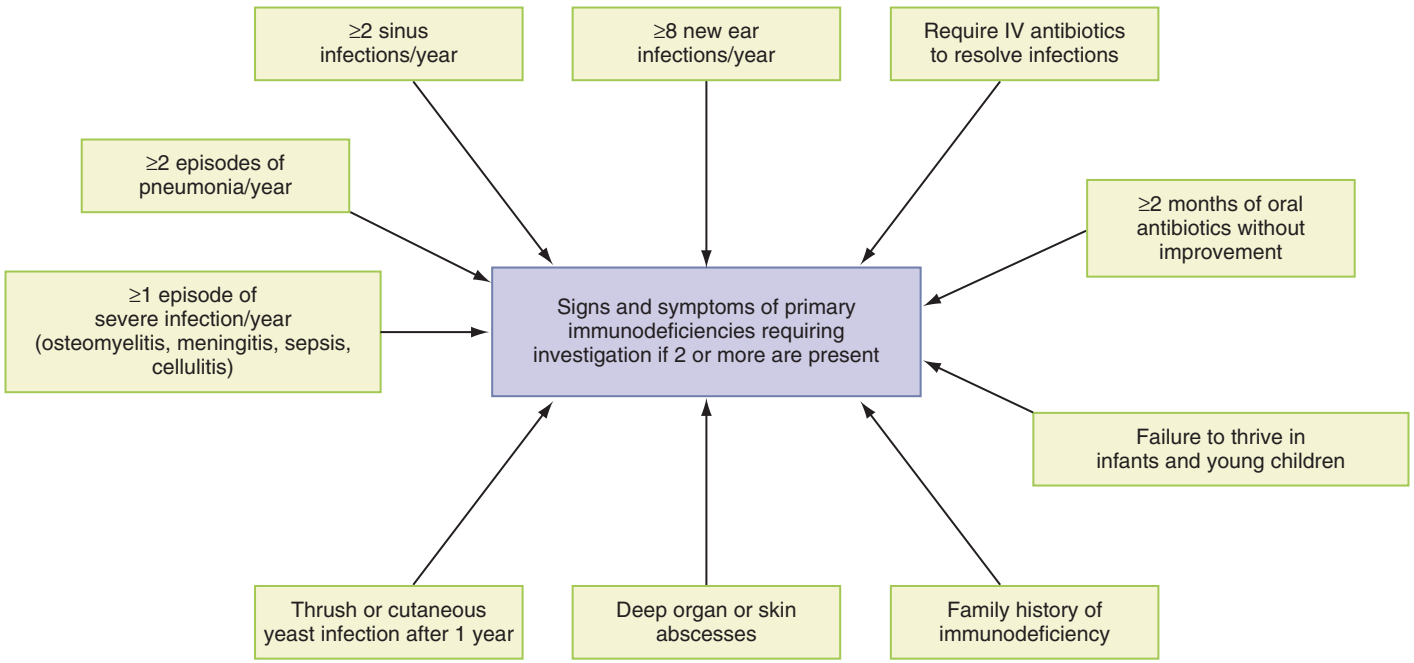


Figure 51-2 Clinical signs and symptoms of primary immunodeficiencies.

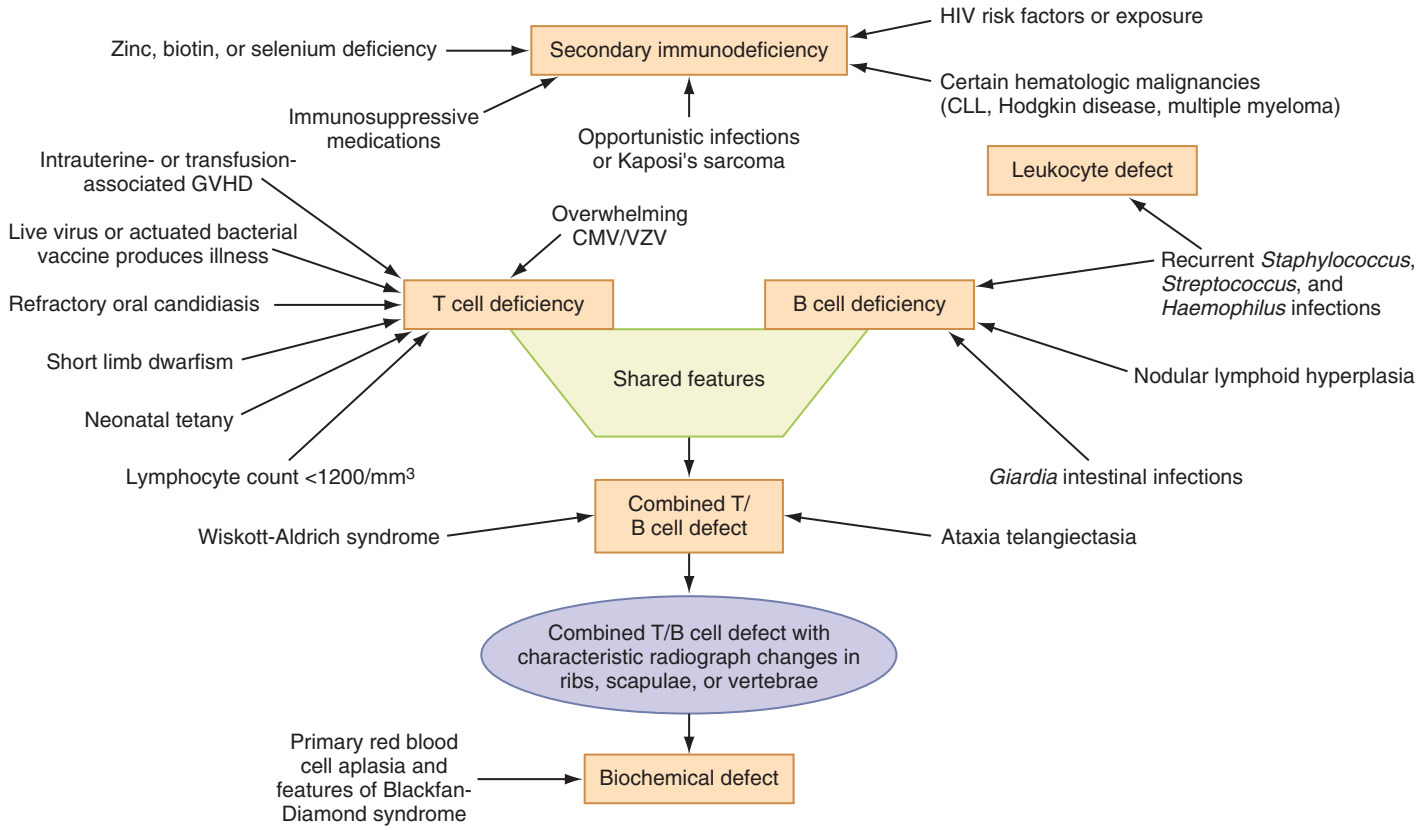


Figure 51-3 **Patterns of immunodeficiency disorders.** *CLL,* Chronic lymphoid leukemia; *CMV,* cytomegalovirus; *GVHD,* graft-versus-host disease; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *VZV,* varicella zoster virus.

Primary Investigation

- History and physical examination
- CBC/differential
- Radiographs
- Quantitative immunoglobulins (IgG, IgM, IgA)
- Review of previous culture results
- Pulmonary function testing

Secondary Investigation

- Titers for vaccines administered (tetanus, diphtheria, pneumococcus)
- IgG subclass analysis
- Lymphocyte enumeration panel (CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19, CD16, CD56)
- Complement levels (CH50, C3, C4)
- Skin testing
- Mononuclear cell proliferation studies
- NBT

Tertiary Investigation

- Enzyme studies (adenosine deaminase, purine nucleotide phosphorylase)
- NK cell cytotoxic studies
- Phagocyte studies
- Histology and immunohistochemistry analysis (or flow cytometry) of lymph nodes or lymphoid organs
- Cytokine production
- Advanced complement studies
- Molecular biology

Figure 51-4 **Staged approach for laboratory investigation of primary immunodeficiency.** *CBC,* Complete blood count; *NBT,* nitroblue tetrazolium slide test; *NK cell,* natural killer cell.

defect in Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome causes immunodeficiency and thrombocytopenia, resulting in the combination of increased bruisability, petechiae, and eczematous skin rashes (Zhu et al, 1997).

The first test performed to examine the immune system is the complete blood count. A white blood count and differential will provide information on the morphology and number of small lymphocytes (diameter <10 μm). Normal parameters vary, based on the age of the patient, and therefore must be interpreted using age-appropriate normal ranges. At a minimum, regardless of age, one expects more than 1200 small lymphocytes per cubic millimeter. Because few (≈10%) of the lymphocytes are B lymphocytes, an absolute lymphocyte deficiency primarily reflects T cell deficiency. Part of the first visit should include obtaining all previous medical records, including pathology reports or slides, and results of previous cultures and radiographs.

Immunoglobulins

Because antibody deficiency diseases are more common than other immune defects, first emphasis should be placed on investigation of immunoglobulins and their production (Stiehm & Conley, 1996). Approximately half of primary immunodeficiency disorders are related to inadequate antibody production or nonfunctional antibodies (Noroski & Shearer, 1998). Quantitative immunoglobulin assays are readily available in all commercial and larger hospital laboratories and require only small volumes of serum to perform (Chapters 19 and 46). Because immunoglobulin values increase with age, comparison with age-matched normal ranges is necessary for correct interpretation.

For the first few months of life, IgG is the major immunoglobulin found in infant serum and is maternal in origin. At approximately 3 months of age, dissipation of maternal IgG concentration, combined with a lag in production by the infant, creates a nadir in IgG levels. However, primarily IgM and secondarily IgA are synthesized by the infant; thus, the presence of these two immunoglobulins provides convincing evidence that X-linked agammaglobulinemia, characterized by pan-hypogammaglobulinemia, is not present. Therefore, IgA, IgM, and IgG should be quantified simultaneously.

Often, IgA is not present in significant amounts until 6 months of age; however, after 1 year of age, IgA levels that remain decreased indicate that

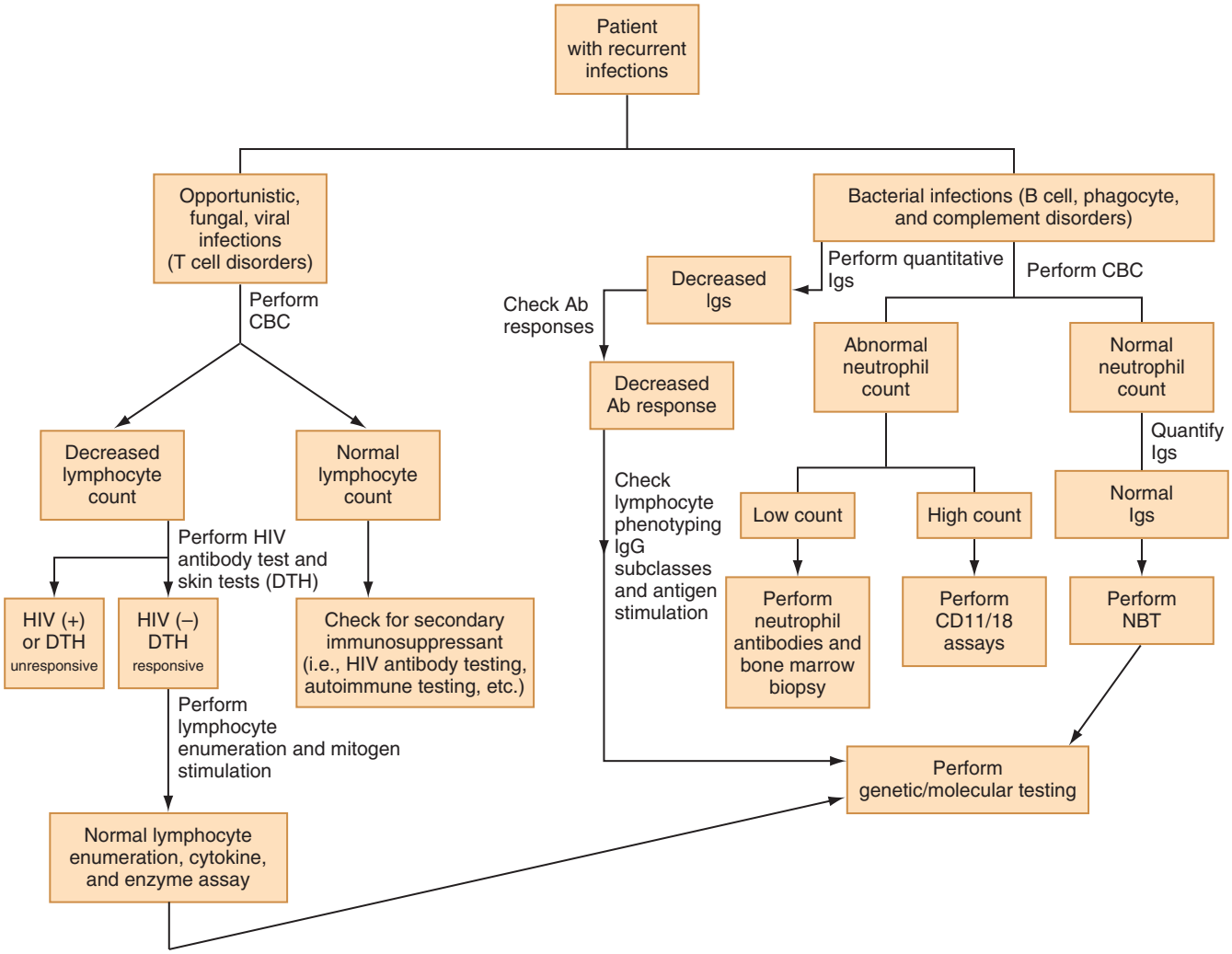


Figure 51-5 **Testing algorithm for immunodeficiency.** *Ab,* Antibody; *CBC,* complete blood count; *DTH,* delayed-type hypersensitivity skin test; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *Ig,* immunoglobulin; *NBT,* nitroblue tetrazolium slide test.

this is a permanent defect (Plebani et al, 1986). IgA-deficient patients may be asymptomatic or may have mild symptoms such as increased respiratory or gastrointestinal infection; however, patients may experience severe or fatal anaphylactic reactions to plasma in blood products that contain IgA (Lindegren et al, 2004). Such patients, once confirmed for IgA deficiency, would require plasma from other IgA-deficient individuals to avoid future anaphylactic reactions.

Hyper-IgM syndrome, an X-linked T cell inherited disorder, is characterized by normal to elevated levels of IgM with markedly low levels of IgA, IgG, and IgE (Levy et al, 1997; Ramesh et al, 1998; Buckley, 2000). In contrast, marked elevations of IgE are almost always part of the hyper-IgE syndrome (Buckley & Becker, 1978) and are common in immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, immunodysregulation polyendocrinopathy enteropathy X-linked syndrome (IPEX), atypical complete DiGeorge syndrome, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS), and Omenn syndrome (Ozcan et al, 2008). WAS characteristically shows marked elevation of serum IgA combined with low IgM concentrations (Ochs, 1998). Patients with decreased levels of IgM are often found in the context of generalized immune deficiency/dysregulation and autoimmune diseases. However, some patients with selective IgM deficiency possess a 22q11.2 chromosome deletion, reduced or lacking IgM+ B cells, or impaired IgG antibody responses against pneumococcus polysaccharides (Louis & Gupta, 2014).

A simple way to assess functional antibody levels in children is to check for isohemagglutinins, commonly of the IgM isotype, directed against ABO antigens that the patient lacks (i.e., assessing anti-A antibodies in a patient with the B blood type), because their presence will indicate active functional antibody production (Fleisher, 2003). Isohemagglutinins are naturally occurring antibodies that form at some point after 2 to 3 months of age; however, testing for these antibodies is not valid for children 4 to 6 months of age because of the persistence of maternal immunoglobulin. Additionally, because of relative immaturity, or perhaps inadequate exposure, children with normal immunity may have low concentrations of isohemagglutinins until 5 to 10 years of age (Cooling, 2008).

Selective IgE deficiency is rare as reduced IgE levels are commonly found in a hypogammaglobulinemic state with decreased production of other immunoglobulin isotypes. However, patients with selective reduction of IgE (<2.5 IU/mL) had increased complaints of arthralgias and chronic fatigue, a higher prevalence of hyperreactive (nonallergic) airway disease, chronic sinusitis, otitis media, as well as other autoimmune and oncological diseases (Magen et al, 2014; Smith et al, 1997).

Radiologic Imaging

Radiographs, computed tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) studies can be helpful in assessing immunodeficiencies. Chronic interstitial pneumonia is common in infants, children, and adults with T cell deficiencies, and should be confirmed on chest radiograph. With time, many patients with primary B cell deficiency (agammaglobulinemia, common variable immunodeficiency) may develop chronic pulmonary fibrosis or bronchiectasis (Sweinberg et al, 1991; Cunningham-Rundles, 1999). Chest CT in a patient who has recurrent respiratory tract infection is the best means of investigating for bronchiectasis; if these changes have developed, further investigation is clearly warranted.

In the past, lateral views of the neck were used to assess pharyngeal lymphoid tissue in children. However, radiographs are not recommended for evaluation of cervical lymphoid tissue because the information they provide is more easily obtained by alternative methods. Frontal views of the chest may reveal an absence of the thymic shadow in infants, but because the thymus can shrink easily because of stress, evaluation of thymic

size by this method is not reliable. Bony abnormalities, however, can alert the radiologist to an immunologic problem presenting in childhood. A subset of patients with immunodeficiencies involving abnormalities of T cells, or both T and B cells, have short-limbed dwarfism. These patients show characteristic lesions, usually in the metaphyseal regions of the long bones. Patients with infant-onset adenosine deaminase deficiency show readily identifiable skeletal abnormalities of ribs and hips (Lindegren et al, 2004). Bony abnormalities may be present in patients with hyper-IgE syndrome; these abnormalities include diffuse osteoporosis, fractures that occur with little trauma, craniosynostosis, and midline bony defects (Grimbacher et al, 1999).

Pulmonary Functions

Immunodeficiency, especially if it has persisted for some time, will often affect the pulmonary system and its function, as previously mentioned. Therefore complete lung volumes, with forced expiratory volumes, should be tested, even if the chest radiograph is normal. Patients with both T and B cell defects are subject to pulmonary infection, often resulting in bronchospasm, restrictive or obstructive disease, or combinations of these abnormalities. Those patients who are both IgA and IgG2 deficient have significantly abnormal pulmonary function tests, and a causal relationship may be seen between these deficiencies and deterioration of lung function (Bjorkander et al, 1985).

SECOND-LEVEL INVESTIGATIONS

Antibody Production

Investigation of specific antibody production may require only monitoring of immune response to vaccine antigens and is the most direct method by which to assess B cell function. This is a useful approach for patients with a history of recurrent bacterial infection and low-normal quantitative immunoglobulin concentrations. The definitive method used to assess decreased quantitative immunoglobulins consists of measurement of antigen-specific preimmunization levels and postimmunization antibody levels approximately 4 weeks later. If the child or adult has received the usual immunizations in the past, antibody titers for these vaccine antigens can be measured. The most useful vaccine responses to assess are those associated with tetanus, diphtheria, *Haemophilus*, and *Pneumococcus;* many commercial laboratories have developed sensitive tests such as enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) that can be used to assess antibody production. Evaluation of immune responses to vaccine must include preimmunization serum antibody concentrations and the patient's age, because these factors affect antibody response. The testing laboratory provides guidelines for appropriate antibody responses. In general, a fourfold increase in protein antigens and a twofold increase in polysaccharide antigens are expected.

Antibody responses to tetanus toxoid and diphtheria toxoid are useful in evaluating responses to T cell–dependent protein antigens. Assessment of B cell function requires evaluation of responses to carbohydrate antigens, which activate B cells directly. It is important to use carbohydrate antigens that are not conjugated to proteins, such as meningococcal and pneumococcal polysaccharide antigens (Balmer et al, 2003). Children younger than 2 years of age will not respond to unconjugated carbohydrate antigens (Barrett et al, 1984), and no live virus vaccines should be administered to the child or any family member until immunodeficiency is ruled out (Go & Ballas, 1996).

IgG Subclasses

IgG consists of four subclasses, IgG1 through IgG4, which are distinguished by both structural and biological differences (Normansell, 1987; Schur, 1987). Although individual roles for each of the IgG subclasses have not been established, antibodies to carbohydrate antigens are concentrated in the IgG2 subclass, and many bacterial cell wall antigens are composed of carbohydrates (Scott et al, 1988). Thus, absence of an IgG2 response could result in failure to develop protection against bacterial infection. This relationship is most convincing in the occasional patient with IgA deficiency who also has a deficiency of IgG2 subclass and lacks an antibody response to vaccines for *Pneumococcus*. IgG subclass deficiency has also been implicated as the cause of recurrent infection in patients with normal or near-normal IgG levels (Oxelius, 1979; Wedgwood et al, 1986; Shackelford et al, 1990; Gross et al, 1992; Popa, 1994).

The biological significance of IgG subclass deficiency is not always clear, and some individuals who completely lack genes for IgG2, IgA, and IgE are healthy (Lefranc & Lefranc, 1982; Migone et al, 1984). IgG1 is the first type of subclass response to carbohydrate antigens, and conversion to an IgG2 response occurs as the individual matures (Scott et al, 1988). No evidence indicates that those who are restricted to only IgG1 responses are at any disadvantage. Patients with selective IgG3 deficiency were reported to have recurrent upper respiratory tract infections, atopic diseases (allergic rhinitis or asthma), and some patients had impaired responses to various pneumococcal serotypes; such patients often respond to treatment with IVIG (Abrahamian et al, 2010). To determine the biological significance of IgG subclass deficiency, testing of specific antibody production, usually by administering vaccines such as tetanus, diphtheria, *Haemophilus*, or a pneumococcal vaccine, is mandatory. Only patients with a clear antibody deficiency for multiple antigens would be considered to have a significant immune defect.

T Cell Immunity

Migration of stem cells from the bone marrow to the thymus results in development of T cells (Kruisbeek, 1999). During development of T cells in the thymus, many surface molecules are turned on and off in a regulated manner. These surface molecules are identified by their cluster of differentiation (CD). CD markers help distinguish the stage of maturation and the function of lymphocytes (Buckley, 2000). Despite regression of the thymus over time, T cell development persists throughout life (Jamieson et al, 1999). Unlike antibodies produced by B cells, which recognize antigens in their natural state, T cells recognize peptides along with MHC molecules after processing by antigen-presenting cells through CD3, the T cell receptor (Buckley, 2000).

Monoclonal antibodies are useful for detection of CD markers on lymphocytes and enable rapid enumeration of T cells and T cell subsets. This can be done by using small volumes of whole blood. The CD designation subdivides T cells (as a group, $CD3^+$) into two major subsets: $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells. $CD4^+$ T cells are referred to as "helper" cells and are involved in initiation of immune reactions, cytokine secretion, and augmentation of B cell responses. $CD8^+$ T cells also release cytokines and are associated with cytolytic (killer) functions. $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ markers on T cells serve as signaling molecules and work in conjunction with major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I and II antigens to amplify and stabilize engagement of T cell receptors (TCRs) with antigens. $CD4^+$ cells recognize antigens that are presented in the context of MHC class II antigens, and $CD8^+$ cells recognize antigens presented in context with MHC class I antigens (Buckley, 2000). Immunodeficiency diseases resulting from defective generation of T cells may result in total loss or low numbers of $CD3^+$ T cells, thereby creating similar effects on T cell subsets, $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ cells. For example, DiGeorge syndrome results in low numbers of $CD3^+$ cells (Hong, 1998). MHC class II deficiency results in a low number of $CD4^+$ cells (Klein et al, 1993), and an abnormality of Zap-70, a signaling molecule integral to the activity of the T cell receptor, leads to reduced numbers of $CD8^+$ T cells (Elder, 1998). If an immune defect is suspected, a panel of T cell markers is examined by flow cytometry, and the percentage and absolute count of cells in each set are compared with age-appropriate normal ranges (Illoh, 2004).

T regulatory cells are defined as a specialized subset of T helper cells that are able to promote and maintain immune tolerance and subsequently prevent autoimmune diseases. CD4 and CD25 (also known as *IL-2 receptor*) cell surface markers are both used to identify Treg cells. However, a major progress in our understanding of Treg cells came after the recognition of the transcription factor FOXP3, which has been shown to be critical both for the development and function of Treg cells. The induction of genetic mutation in *foxp3* in mice leads to suppression of Treg function and the development of lethal autoimmune disease. In humans, a genetic mutation in *foxp3* will result in the defective development of CD4/CD25 regulatory T cells and manifest clinically by immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, and enteropathy; this is attributed to an X-linked disorder known as IPEX syndrome, first described in 1982, which usually manifests in the first few months of life and results in death within the first 2 years.

In general, Treg cells can be classified into two major types based on the site of their formation: naturally occurring T regulatory cells (nTreg), which are produced in the thymus and are thought to control reactivity toward self-antigens, and adaptive or induced T regulatory cells (iTreg), which are induced in the periphery after encountering an antigen from a commensal bacteria or a food antigen in a specific immune microenvironment. It is well established that both types are highly dependent on IL-2 for their proliferation and suppressive function. Tregs have been further characterized into other subsets (Tr1, Th3); are affected by various nutritional (vitamins A and D), cytokine (IL-10), and costimulatory factors (CD80, CD86); and suppress other immune cells by inducing immunologic tolerance. Dysregulation of T regulatory cells can result in autoimmunity, malignancy, and other disease states (Mahdi & Bluth, 2015).

T Cell Functional Assessment

A clinical history of opportunistic infections and a decreased absolute lymphocyte count in a complete blood count should prompt further investigation of a patient's T cell function (Fleisher, 2003). Mucocutaneous candidiasis, another indication of defective T cell function, is characterized by extension of infection from the mucous membranes onto contiguous skin and may involve the fingernails with granulomatous inflammation (Atkinson et al, 2000; Lilic & Gravenor, 2001). Delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) skin tests are commonly used as measures of T cell function because they measure the ability to recall, recognize, and present antigen, mobilize T cells, and generate a specific inflammatory response. Despite a normal absolute lymphocyte count, DTH skin tests should be performed when a T cell defect is suspected. However, these tests are difficult to interpret in infants because they may not have had sufficient exposure to respond to antigens to mount an immunogenic response, and a reduced or absent response may be normal. Hypersensitivity skin testing should incorporate more than one antigen (Kniker et al, 1985). To ensure proper administration and appropriate interpretation of test results, personnel must be well trained (Fleisher, 2003).

Insight into the capability of T cells can be gained by performing functional assessments of in vitro proliferative responses to different stimuli. Mitogens, antigens, and alloantigens are stimuli that cause proliferation of T cells. Mitogens are usually plant extracts that lack specificity and stimulate both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes. Alloantigens on unrelated donor cells also stimulate $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ cells in a relatively nonspecific way. Patients with significant T cell deficiency may still show proliferative responses to these stimulators, indicating the presence of T cells but not their ability to clear infectious agents from the host. Nonetheless, a proliferative response to specific antigens is a good indicator of the host's ability to resist infection (Lane et al, 1985). In the case of specific antigens, tetanus, diphtheria, and *Candida* are commonly used, although sufficient exposure to these antigens is required. Therefore, these are not reliable antigens for testing infants during the first year of life. A measure of specific T cell responses that is useful in infants consists of culturing peripheral blood mononuclear cells with mitogenic concentrations of anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody. This stimulator normally causes proliferation of all $CD3^+$ T cells, and absence of proliferation demonstrates a severe T cell defect (Hong, 1996).

Polymorphonuclear Killing Assays

Testing neutrophil function requires careful planning because specimens may be transported over long distances to large reference laboratories for testing. Blood collected from a patient should be submitted to the investigating laboratory as soon as possible because neutrophils undergo apoptosis rapidly after collection. If the blood must be stored or transported, it should be collected in a preservative such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) or citrate in a polypropylene tube and maintained at room temperature (20° to 25° C). This decreases metabolic activity and minimizes adhesion of cells to the wall of the tube. Even under optimal conditions, cells can be maintained only for approximately 24 to 36 hours (Kuijpers et al, 1999).

Neutropenia or neutrophil dysfunction results in recurrent bacterial or fungal infection in the skin, lymph nodes, liver, lungs, or bones. This most commonly occurs with myelosuppressive therapies used to treat malignant neoplasms. These disorders must be distinguished from CGD, in which phagocytosis is normal, but intracellular killing of infectious organisms is defective, resulting in abscess or granuloma formation in the liver, bones, and lungs (Lekstrom-Himes & Gallin, 2000). CGD inheritance is most commonly X-linked or autosomal recessive owing to mutations involving chromosome locations 16p24, 7q11.23, and 1q25. These changes result in defects in one of the four subunits of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase, the enzyme that catalyzes the formation of hydrogen peroxide. This error causes failure of the metabolic burst in granulocytes following phagocytic ingestion of bacteria (Meischl & Roos, 1998). As a result, molecular oxygen is not reduced to superoxide and other free radicals, such as hydroxyl radical and hydrogen peroxide, which are important components of the intracellular mechanism of bacterial death (Babior, 1978). Therefore, CGD is characterized by recurrent infection with catalase-producing organisms, such as *Staphylococcus aureus*, which are capable of destroying the hydrogen peroxide produced by granulocytes. Therefore, catalase-positive organisms survive intracellular ingestion, multiply, and cause a granulomatous tissue response that, when excessive, can obstruct the gastrointestinal and genitourinary tracts. Chronic infection with *Serratia* spp., *Klebsiella* spp., *Burkholderia cepacia*, and *Aspergillus* spp. is particularly problematic (Gallin, 1983; Gallin & Malech, 1990). However, patients with CGD do not experience this problem with catalase-negative organisms.

The fundamental biological characteristic of CGD leukocytes is that they will phagocytose bacteria normally but will not kill them. This provides the basis for a bacterial killing assay for CGD. Historically, the nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) slide test has been the laboratory assay used to screen for CGD and is performed by reference laboratories (Park et al, 1968). In this assay, the patient's neutrophils are incubated with NBT, a pale yellow dye that is then activated by phorbol-myristate acetate (PMA), a strong, receptor-independent activation stimulus. Functional neutrophils phagocytose, reduce, and precipitate the NBT dye, forming intracellular deposits of black formazan. These deposits are indicative of rapid activation of NADPH-oxidase enzyme, causing reduction of oxygen by NADPH to superoxide that is subsequently catalyzed to hydrogen peroxide by superoxide dismutase (SOD). A technician then microscopically scores neutrophils that contain intracellular black formazan deposits (Kuijpers et al, 1999). However, the NBT slide test has been replaced in many laboratories by a flow cytometry test that detects intracellular oxidation of dichlorofluorescein diacetate or dihydrorhodamine 123 (O'Gorman & Corrochano, 1995). These nonfluorescent dyes, once oxidized, will produce intracellular fluorescent products that are detected by flow cytometry. Flow cytometry is a more objective and reliable method of identifying intracellular products.

The hyper-IgE syndrome (HIES) is phenotypically similar to CGD, with a classic triad of pneumonia, recurrent cutaneous and pulmonary abscesses, and elevated IgE levels; however, defective polymorphonuclear leukocyte function is not a predominant finding (Buckley & Becker, 1978; Ozcan et al, 2008). In addition, this syndrome includes bone abnormalities, unusual facies, and cutaneous candidiasis. Demonstration of IgE levels greater than 2000 IU/mL (and even as high as 20,000 to 60,000 IU/mL) with the appropriate clinical manifestations points toward the diagnosis. HIES is actually two distinct entities—autosomal dominant and autosomal recessive—based on inheritance patterns and nonimmunologic features. Each entity is characterized by different genetic mutations. Autosomal dominant HIES (AD-HIES) has been related to dominant-negative mutations of the signal transducer and transcription activator 3 (STAT3), causing impaired signaling of cytokines interleukin (IL)-6 and IL-10. However, signaling for IL-12 and interferon (IFN)-α remains intact. Patients with STAT3 mutations fail to generate helper T cells that secrete IL-17, which is important in providing epithelial and mucosal immunity against fungal and bacterial organisms. It also plays an important role in producing neutrophil chemoattractants. Autosomal recessive HIES (AR-HIES) is a distinct disease entity separated from AD-HIES by four major criteria: (1) The inheritance pattern is distinctly different; (2) patients lack connective tissue abnormalities; (3) the incidence of central nervous system complications is higher, and these patients have a higher frequency of varicella-zoster; and (4) herpes simplex virus occurs at a younger age with more complications (Renner et al, 2004). Of note is a case report of a patient with AR-HIES and a homozygous tyrosine kinase 2 (TYK2) mutation that resulted in a premature termination codon and absence of TYK2 protein. TYK2 belongs to the Janus kinase family, which is important in multiple cytokine signaling pathways, including type 1 IFN, IL-6, IL-10, IL-12, and IL-23. The patient exhibited severe defects in response to these cytokines and had impaired Type 1 helper T cells (T_H1) and accelerated Type 2 helper T cell (T_H2) differentiation. To date, this mutation has not been identified in any other patient with AR-HIES, which suggests that other, as yet undiscovered genetic mutations can result in this syndrome (Fischer, 2007; Ozcan et al, 2008).

Complement Evaluation

A number of congenital defects of the complement system have been described, although this is not a frequent cause of primary immunodeficiency disorder. The defects are typically associated with absence of one of the complement molecules or a nonfunctional complement protein, thereby reducing the ability of complement to bind to the surface of invading microorganisms. Individual defects lead to distinct clinical syndromes such as hereditary angioedema or paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, a propensity for recurrent bacterial infection, or autoimmune disease (Schneider & Wurzner, 1999). Many of the genetically based deficiencies of the classical activating pathway (C1, C2, C3, C4) and of the terminal components (C5, C6, C7, C8, and C9) can be detected by using antibody-sensitized sheep erythrocytes in a total hemolytic complement assay (CH50). This assay tests for the functional integrity of C1 to C9. Many commercial laboratories perform this assay, but to get accurate results, freshly drawn serum or plasma that is then frozen must be used. Therefore, logistics must be carefully coordinated if specimens must be sent to a distant location. Deficiencies of alternative pathway component factors D, H, and I and properdin are uncommon but can be detected by a hemolytic

assay using unsensitized rabbit erythrocytes as potent activators of the alternative pathway. If one of these assays is abnormal, identification of individual deficient components rests on specialized functional and immunochemical tests that are specific for each component (Chapter 47).

THIRD-LEVEL INVESTIGATIONS

Enzyme Measurements for Metabolic Defects

Deficiencies of the enzymes adenosine deaminase and purine nucleoside phosphorylase are related to purine metabolism and result in immunodeficiency. Patients with adenosine deaminase deficiency have findings similar to those of severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) syndrome, a collection of genetic disorders characterized by a severe defect in the function or development of B and T cells. In contrast to SCID, patients deficient in adenosine deaminase have chondro-osseous dysplasia, resulting in skeletal abnormalities, and more severe lymphopenia. Deficient adenosine deaminase is caused by mutation of the gene located on chromosome 20q13.2–q13.11, resulting in toxic accumulation of metabolites that inhibit cell replication and cause apoptosis of lymphocytic cell lines (Buckley, 2000). Lack of adenosine deaminase initially causes loss of T cells ($CD4^+$ T cells in particular) and subsequently B cells, leading to the common form of severe combined T and B cell deficiency (SCID) (Hirschhorn, 1995). As with many primary immune defects first recognized in the severe homozygous form, adenosine deaminase deficiency has been diagnosed as a heterozygous partial deficiency in adults with CD4 lymphopenia and significant T cell defects (Shovlin et al, 1994).

Purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency is characterized by recurrent infection, lymphopenia, neurologic abnormalities, and autoimmune disorders (Myers et al, 2004). This enzyme deficiency causes a decrease in T cells with minimal or no effect on B cells. Purine nucleoside phosphorylase enzymes are usually measured in erythrocyte lysates (Kizaki & Sakurada, 1977), but if blood products have been administered within the previous 3 months, the assay may be unreliable. More recently, capillary electrophoresis has been proposed as an alternative inexpensive assay that offers high separation flexibility in diagnosis of errors of metabolism and is capable of determining purine nucleoside phosphorylase or adenosine deaminase enzyme activity and the presence of toxic metabolites (Carlucci et al, 2003).

Natural Killer Cell Assays

Natural killer (NK) cells are a subset of lymphocytes that often function with T cells to eradicate intracellular organisms. Complete deficiency of NK cells is rare and is characterized by recurrent herpes infection (Fleisher, 2003). NK cells have the morphology of a large granular lymphocyte and express a unique group of cellular surface markers: CD16, CD56, and CD57 (Trinchieri, 1989). NK cells can be quantified easily by detecting these surface markers using flow cytometry. However, to assess the functional activity of NK cells, chromium release assays, which use chromium-51–loaded K-562 cell lines, have traditionally been performed (Biron et al, 1989). This older assay has limitations, in that it is more labor-intensive, incorporates radioactive materials, and cannot identify the cellular mechanisms for cell death of the target cells. These disadvantages have driven the development of newer, non–radioactive-based methods, including fluorescent labeling techniques in combination with flow cytometry, to assess NK cell function. Another technique uses a colorimetric substrate to detect granzyme B, the serine protease found in the granules of cytotoxic T lymphocytes and NK cells, and plays a key role in granule-mediated apoptosis by cleaving cellular substrates (Hoppner et al, 2002; Ewen et al, 2003).

Additional Phagocyte Analyses

Genetic defects of the innate immune system are related to the formation or function of granules within neutrophils. Myeloperoxidase is the predominant enzyme detected in the primary granules of granulocytes and catalyzes the formation of hypochlorous acid (HOCl), which is capable of killing microorganisms (Kuijpers et al, 1999). However, its absence usually is not associated with clinical symptoms, with the notable exception of patients with diabetes mellitus, who experience increased susceptibility to disseminated candidiasis (Lanza, 1998). Myeloperoxidase deficiency, inherited as an autosomal recessive defect, is one of the most commonly inherited disorders of neutrophils, but its clinical significance is unknown (Lehrer & Cline, 1969; Klebanoff, 1999). Approximately half of affected patients have a deficiency of myeloperoxidase, and the remainder have normal concentrations, along with a structural defect in the enzyme (Nauseef, 1998).

Chédiak-Higashi syndrome and specific granule deficiency are congenital defects resulting in phagocyte granular disorders. Chédiak-Higashi syndrome is an autosomal recessive disorder in which all lysosome-containing cells have giant abnormal granules. In neutrophils, fusion of primary and secondary granules occurs, resulting in delay of fusion with phagosomes and recurrent bacterial infection. Patients with Chédiak-Higashi syndrome have a mild neutropenia, normal immunoglobulin levels, peripheral nerve defects, mild cutaneous and ocular albinism, mild platelet dysfunction, and periodontal disease (Introne et al, 1999).

Neutrophil-specific granule deficiency is a rare disorder characterized by recurrent bacterial infection of the skin and lungs. Patients lack secondary or specific granules of the neutrophils, which play an important role in acute inflammation and do not allow for proper migration of neutrophils. Morphologic examination of stained neutrophils shows characteristic abnormalities in specific granule deficiency (Ganz et al, 1988).

Patients with leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD) type 1 (a defect in the integrin CD18, the common β chain of LFA-1, Mac-1, and p150,95 molecules) (Anderson & Springer, 1987) are susceptible to all infections seen in CGD patients, along with otitis media and poor wound healing. Normally, because pathogens cause tissue damage and inflammation, adhesion molecules on vascular endothelium are upregulated and recognized by passing neutrophils bearing the appropriate counterligands, ultimately leading to accumulation of neutrophils at sites of inflammation (Chapter 47). Patients with LAD lack the adhesion molecules necessary for diapedesis, resulting in tissue neutropenia and therefore more infection (Arnaout & Michishita, 1993). This abnormality starts after birth and is marked by delayed cord separation, chronic skin ulcers, periodontitis, impaired wound healing, and leukocytosis. Deficient leukocytes demonstrate defects of adherence and adhesion-dependent functions such as spreading, phagocytosis, and chemotactic orientation (Anderson & Springer, 1987).

LAD type 2 predominantly affects neutrophils and macrophages, with faulty expression of the selectin ligand sialyl-LewisX and failure to convert GDP mannose to fucose, resulting in a clinical syndrome similar to type 1. It is also responsible for expression of the rare Bombay blood group (LAD-2) on red blood cells (Etzioni et al, 1993).

Leukocyte mobility is usually evaluated by directed migration through membrane filters or under agarose (Nelson et al, 1975; Cates, 1981). Counting the number of cells at a particular endpoint or "stop filter" microscopically, or radioactive labeling, has the disadvantage of measuring only the fastest cells. This may give an inaccurate assessment of most of the patient's neutrophils. It is actually better to count the number of cells at different points along the filter (Kuijpers et al, 1999). Injections of epinephrine and steroids, which cause polymorphonuclear leukocytes to demarginate and leave the marrow reserves, are used to further assess polymorphonuclear leukocyte mobility. A disorder of actin important in polymorphonuclear leukocyte migration has been described (Southwick et al, 1988).

Adhesion proteins on the surface of neutrophils can be functionally tested with different immobilized ligands bound to a monolayer of endothelial cells attached to a glass slide, and can be measured after pretreatment with chemoattractants. Rolling, attachment, and migration of neutrophils can be monitored over time by a video camera. Phagocytosis can now be assessed by flow cytometry, in which the neutrophils are incubated with fluorescence-labeled microorganisms, the sample is washed to remove labeled undigested microorganisms, and the cells with ingested labeled microorganism are counted (Kuijpers et al, 1999). Much in the same fashion, flow cytometry may be used to assess killing of microbes by employing vital dyes that distinguish live from dead organisms after incubation with neutrophils (Martin & Bhakdi, 1992). Degranulation may be assessed by measuring expression of granule membrane proteins on the neutrophil cell surface by means of flow cytometry (Kuijpers et al, 1999).

Cytokines and Cytokine Receptors

Immune responses are regulated by soluble mediators called *cytokines* that produce a multiplicity of immune events through interactions with appropriate cytokine receptors on tissue and inflammatory cells. Cytokines play an important role as messengers within the immune system and in conjunction with the rest of the body to regulate immune responses (Mire-Sluis & Thorpe, 1998). By studying immunodeficient patients and gene knockout mice, our understanding of the role cytokines play in our host defenses has expanded. Deficiencies in IL-12 and IFN-γ increase susceptibility to *Salmonella* and mycobacterial infections (de Jong et al, 1998). Impaired secretions or responses to IL-12 impair granuloma formation and therefore allow unregulated growth of mycobacterial organisms (Jouanguy et al, 1999). Recent studies show that the pathophysiology of many of these disorders may be the result of defective cytokine signaling, which causes dysfunction or arrested development of B, T, and NK cells (Kelly & Leonard, 2003). Most notably, human X-linked SCID is

associated with defects in the interleukin receptor gene *(IL2RG)*, which codes for a common γ chain (γc), a shared component of several cytokine receptors such as IL-4F, IL-7R, IL-9R, and IL-15R. Impaired production of γc leads to cytokine dysfunction and lack of development of affected lymphoid cells (Malek et al, 1999). Additionally, the *JAK3* gene encodes for a tyrosine kinase used in signal transduction through γc-containing cytokine receptors. Defects in this gene have been identified in patients with autosomal recessive SCID. IL-7 is a cytokine with a key role in T cell development, and a genetic defect in the α subunit of the IL-7 receptor has been identified in patients with a rare disorder of B^+ SCID (Notarangelo et al, 2000).

Additional Cell Surface Markers

MHC Class I and II Molecules

Congenital mutations affecting MHC class I and class II expression have been described. Class II molecules are found primarily on the antigen-presenting cells, which initiate the acquired immune response. As one might predict, genetic defects of MHC class II (from mutations involving MHC class II gene transcriptional activation) result in a profound immunodeficiency state (Klein et al, 1993) known as *MHC class II deficiency*, according to World Health Organization nomenclature. This is referred to as *bare lymphocyte syndrome type II* and is characterized by lack of expression of MHC II molecules on cellular surfaces. Thymic education and selection of immature T cells are compromised because of loss of antigen processing by MHC class II molecules. Quantities of B and T cells are normal in patients with bare lymphocyte syndrome; however, $CD4^+$ counts are decreased as a result of loss of proper antigen processing. Patients thus are unable to respond to foreign antigens and present with recurrent bacterial, fungal, viral, and protozoal infections. They do not respond to skin testing (type IV DTH), have a decreased ability to respond to mixed lymphocyte reactions, and have pan-hypogammaglobulinemia (Nekrep et al, 2003). An interesting facet of this syndrome is that there is no genetic defect of the MHC class II genes. Instead, a defect occurs in one of the four genes that encode the four regulatory factors essential for surface expression of MHC class II antigens (Reith & Mach, 2001).

Elimination of foreign antigen can be accomplished by $CD8^+$ T cell binding to MHC class I antigens expressed on nearly all nucleated cells. It is strange to note that immune defects resulting from MHC class I deficiency, a mutation involving either of the MHC class I cytoplasmic peptide transporters TAP-1 or TAP-2, produce an immune defect characterized by severe lung disease that becomes apparent in later childhood (Donato et al, 1995; de la Salle et al, 1999). This immunodeficiency was previously named *type I bare lymphocyte syndrome*, or *human leukocyte antigen (HLA) class I deficiency*, and is characterized by a decrease in $CD8^+$ cells and NK cell activity (Yabe et al, 2002). Diagnosis of both defects involves examining expression of these MHC antigens on peripheral blood lymphoid cells by flow cytometry (Illoh, 2004).

Treatment by Targeting Cell Surface Receptors

Recent case reports describe therapies that target cell surface receptors to treat complications associated with primary immunodeficiency disorders. An example is anti-CD20 (rituximab), a monoclonal antibody directed against the CD20 antigen found on B lymphocytes and used to deplete peripheral benign and malignant B lymphocytes. Successful treatment using these monoclonal antibodies has been reported for IgM autoantibody (reactive at 37° C)–mediated autoimmune hemolytic anemia in a child with common variable immunodeficiency, and for lymphoproliferative disorder in a child with WAS caused by depleting peripheral B cells in patients (Sebire et al, 2003; Wakim et al, 2004).

Using Novel Immunogens to Assess Antibody Production

Another valuable tool to evaluate specific antibody responses is vaccination with neo-antigens such as the bacteriophage ΦX174 and keyhole limpet hemocyanin. These neo-antigens may also be used to evaluate patients receiving immunoglobulin replacement therapy, because monitoring antibody responses to standard vaccines while receiving passive infusion of pooled immunoglobulins is not possible. Primary and secondary responses may be monitored because the neo-antigens provoke a primary IgM response, and then, upon reexposure, cause a secondary IgG response (Curtis et al, 1970; Ochs & Davis, 1971). Using ΦX174 clearance patterns and isotypes, a patient's response can be measured, thereby further defining various degrees and subsets of B cell deficiency (Ochs & Davis, 1971). Currently, this evaluation is available only in some academic institutions using research protocols (Fleisher & Oliveira, 2004).

Molecular Genetics and Prenatal Diagnosis

A number of the genes involved in the primary immunodeficiency syndromes have now been identified, cloned, and sequenced (Conley, 1992; Puck et al, 1993; Derry et al, 1994; Ramesh et al, 1998; Vihinen et al, 1999; Fischer, 2007; Zhang et al, 2009). In many cases, mouse knockout models have been produced to further study the effects of genes on immune function. In the past, more traditional methods of screening for genetic mutations responsible for immunodeficiencies were used, such as dideoxy fingerprinting and single-strand conformational polymorphism (Sarkar et al, 1992; Sheffield et al, 1993; Puck et al, 1997b). More recent advances using fluorescence-based sequencing, which uses fluorescently labeled dideoxynucleotide terminators, allow for simple and sensitive identification of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) sequence variations in individuals. Automated multichannel capillary sequences serve as an automated method of rapidly detecting fluorescence-based sequences for multiple patients within hours, and make direct sequencing for genetic mutations responsible for immune deficiencies practical (Niemela et al, 2000). Identification of mutated genes facilitates genetic counseling for prenatal diagnosis and aids in the detection of carrier status for defective genes. It also assists in the evaluation of previously undefined immune disorders. An excellent example of how these advanced techniques are enhancing our understanding of primary immunodeficiency disorders is exhibited by hyper-IgM syndrome. Previously, this was categorized as a single disorder, but genetic sequencing has revealed five distinct genetic defects affecting B or T cells with variable phenotypes (Durandy et al, 2004).

Analysis of immunodeficiencies with known genetic defects involves testing specific sites on DNA to detect specific mutations. Different methods such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR) may be used to detect the presence or absence of a particular gene, and immunoblotting or flow cytometry can be used to detect protein products and to confirm a diagnosis of primary immunodeficiency when the gene product is absent. High-resolution comparative genomic hybridization arrays detect microdeletions associated with complex immunodeficiency syndromes. For example, genomic hybridization arrays and targeted gene sequencing were performed on eight families with variant features of combined immunodeficiency characterized by recurrent sinopulmonary infection, cutaneous viral infection, and elevated serum IgE levels. The analysis revealed novel point mutations in the gene responsible for encoding the dedicator of cytokinesis 8 protein (DOCK8). Homozygous or compound heterozygous deletions in this gene lead to absence of DOCK8 protein in lymphocytes that regulate cytoskeletal rearrangements responsible for cell structure, adhesion, and migration, as well as other functions, resulting in this combined immunodeficiency (Zhang et al, 2009). An example of when it is important to determine the cause of an immunodeficiency is seen in SCID, a heterogeneous group of immunodeficiencies characterized by a number of different molecular defects. Distinguishing between various molecular defects in SCID has implications for treatment, antenatal diagnosis, and carrier testing. It is important to determine whether a patient has X-linked SCID because this may be treated using gene therapy. JAK3-deficient SCID is clinically indistinguishable from X-linked SCID, but gene therapy is not effective (Cavazzana-Calvo et al, 2000). Previously, testing to distinguish between these molecular defects took several weeks to complete because JAK3-deficient SCID is encoded by 23 exons. DNA analysis using single-stranded conformational polymorphism analysis and sequencing of all affected exons was required. More rapid screening methods can now be used to arrive at an expeditious diagnosis, with time-consuming genetic analysis being performed for subsequent confirmation. These protein-based assays employ flow cytometric analysis of γc, immunoblotting for JAK3 and γc, and detection of IL-2–induced tyrosine phosphorylation of JAK3 (Gilmour et al, 2001). However, with defects characterized by nonfunctional protein products, these assays are not useful. Table 51-1 lists the currently identified mutated genes and affected proteins associated with primary immunodeficiencies. Table 51-2 provides a summary of gene mutations with associated susceptibilities to pathogens.

With advances in technology, the ability to detect prenatally a wider range of immune defects is possible. If the specific mutation is known, or if the inheritance pattern is known to be X-linked, analysis of linked polymorphic markers or detection of specific mutations can be performed. Chorionic villous samples, amniocyte DNA prepared directly from fetal cells, or cultured and expanded cell lines can be analyzed (Durandy et al, 1985). In addition to prenatal testing, newborn blood screening (NBS), traditionally used to screen for genetically inherited metabolic disorders, is now used to screen for inherited immunodeficiencies.

In May 2010, SCID screening was added to the recommended uniform newborn screening panel by the Secretary of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (Routes et al, 2009). Population-based

TABLE 51-1

Gene Mutations, Affected Proteins, and Primary Immunodeficiencies

Disease	Natural Mutant	Protein	Function
Agammaglobulinemia		Btk	Cell activation
APECED		AIRE	Negative selection of T cells
AT		ATM	DNA lesion sensing
Atypical complete DiGeorge syndrome		Base pair deletion on 22a11.2	Oligoclonal T cells
CGD		gp91phox, p22phox, p47phox, p67phox	NADPH oxidase
DC		Dyskerin	Telomere maintenance
FHLH		Munc 13-4	Exocytosis of lytic granules
FHLH		Syntaxin11	Cytotoxicity
Griscelli	Ashen	Rab27a	Exocytosis of lytic granules
HIES AD/AR		STAT3/TYK2	Defective cytokine signaling
HIGM		CD40L	Activation of Ig CSR
HIGM		AID	Ig CSR and SHM
IPEX	Scurfy	FOXP3	Treg function
LAD		β_2 integrin	Adhesion
NBS		Nibrin (NBS1)	DNA repair
Omenn syndrome		RAG, ARTEMIS, IL-7R, RMPR, IL-2Rγ, ZAP70, ADA, DNA ligase IV mutations	Oligoclonal T cells and absence of B cells
	SCID	DNA-PKcs	VDJ (NHEJ)
SCID		Artemis	VDJ (NHEJ)
SCID		Cernunnos, XLF	VDJ (NHEJ)
SCID		γc, JAK3	T (NK) cell development
SCN		HAX-1	Prevention of apoptosis
T cell deficiency		Orai-1, CRACMI	Ca channel
T cell deficiency (HLA II expression)		RFXAP, ANK, RFX5, CIITA	HLA class II transcription
Variant combined immunodeficiency		DOCK8	Cytoskeletal arrangements in lymphocytes
WAS		WASP	Cell cytoskeleton, migration
XLP		SAP	Coactivation (SLAM family), NKT
XLP2		XIAP	Control of apoptosis (NKT)
	lpr, gld	fas, fasL	Apoptosis
	Moth-eaten	SHP-1	Phosphatase regulation

AD, Autosomal dominant; *ADA,* adenosine deaminase deficiency; *AID,* activation-induced deaminase; *APECED,* autoimmune polyendocrinopathy candidiasis ectodermal dysplasia; *AR,* autosomal recessive; *AT,* ataxia telangiectasia; *Btk,* Bruton tyrosine kinase; *CGD,* chronic granulomatous disease; *DC,* dyskeratosis congenita; *DNA,* deoxyribonucleic acid; *DNA PKcs,* DNA-dependent protein kinase, catalytic subunit; *DOCK8,* dedicator of cytokinesis 8 protein; *FHLH,* familial hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis; *gld,* generalized lymphadenopathy disease; *HIES,* hyper-IgE syndrome; *HIGM,* hyper-IgM syndrome (Ig class switch recombination deficiency [CSR]); *HLA,* human leukocyte antigen; *IPEX,* immunoproliferative enteropathy X-linked syndrome; *LAD,* leukocyte adhesion deficiency; *lpr,* lymphoproliferation; *NADPH,* nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate; *NBS,* Nijmegen breakage syndrome; *NHEJ,* nonhomologous end-joining; *NK,* natural killer; *SAP,* SLAM-associated protein; *SCID,* severe combined immunodeficiency; *SCN,* severe congenital neutropenia; *SHM,* somatic hypermutations; *Treg,* regulatory T cells; *VDJ,* V(D)J recombination; *WAS,* Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome; *WASP,* Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein; *XIAP,* X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis; *XLF,* XRCC4-like factor; *XLP,* X-linked proliferative syndrome; *XLP2,* X-linked proliferative syndrome type 2.

TABLE 51-2

Gene Mutations and Susceptibility to Pathogens

CD40L, CD40	*Pneumocystis jiroveci, Toxoplasma, Cryptosporidium*
IL12p40, IL12Rβ, IFNγR, STAT1	Mycobacteria
IRAK4	Encapsulated pathogens
SAP, XIAP	EBV
UNC93B, TLR-3	HSV encephalitis
Complement *C5-C9*	*Neisseria*
EVER 1,2, γc, JAK-3	HPV-epidermodysplasia verruciformis

EVER 1,2, Epidermodysplasia verruciformis 1, 2 genes; *γc,* common cytokine γ chain; *IFNγR,* receptor of the interferon γ receptor; *IL12p40,* p40 subunit of interleukin-12; *IL12Rβ,* β chain of the IL-12 receptor; *IRAK4,* interleukin-1 receptor–associated kinase 4; *JAK-3,* Janus-associated kinase; *SAP,* SLAM-associated protein; *STAT1,* signal transducer and activator of transcription 1; *TLR-3,* Toll-like receptor 3; *UNC93B,* polytopic endoplasmic reticulum CERI-resident membrane protein; *XIAP,* X-linked inhibitor of apoptosis.

Data from Fisher A: Human primary immunodeficiency diseases, *Immunity* 27:835–845, 2007.

newborn screening for severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID) and related disorders has been instituted in 25 states, with several more planning to add this testing to their newborn screening panels. Early results of T cell receptor excision circle (TREC) testing newborns in pilot states indicate that this addition to the newborn screening panel can be successfully integrated into state public health programs. The TREC test has clinical validity, and TRECs are an excellent biomarker of poor T lymphocyte production in the thymus or increased lymphocyte loss resulting in T cell lymphopenia (Chan & Puck, 2005). A variety of cases with typical SCID genotypes and other conditions have been detected in a timely manner and referred for appropriate early treatment.

Early detection of primary immunodeficiency is recognized as important for avoiding infectious complications that compromise outcomes. Routine screening of all newborns with the TREC test, implemented as part of an integrated public health program, can achieve presymptomatic diagnosis of SCID and other disorders with T cell lymphopenia, allowing prompt and effective treatment and leading to a better understanding of the spectrum of these disorders and how to manage them. T cell development occurs in the thymus, where T cell antigen receptor (TCR) gene rearrangements involve cutting and splicing of the DNA encoding the alternate variable, diversity, and joining (VDJ) segments to generate a wide repertoire of unique T cells with diverse specificities. Formation of TRECs from excised DNA occurs during the programmed gene rearrangements in the thymus. The excision involves delta-coding segments that are

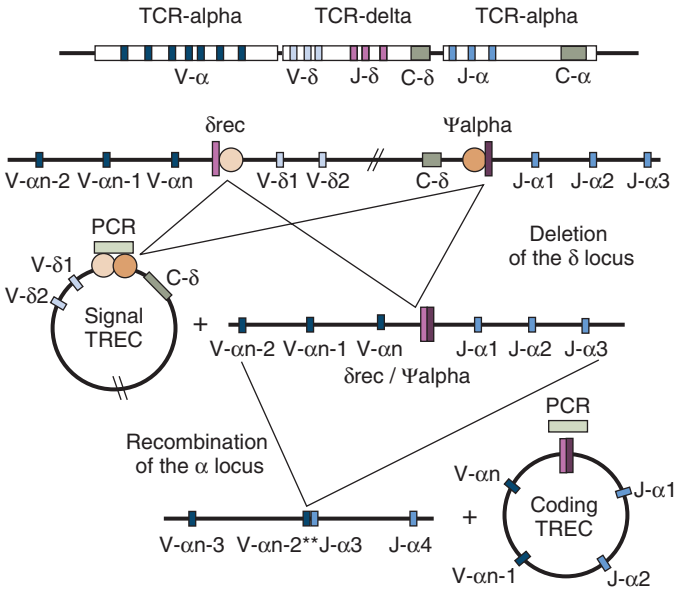


Figure 51-6 T cell receptor excision circle (TREC) screening.

nestled in the T cell receptor alpha (TRA) locus between the TRAV and TRAJ genes, which must be removed in order to allow the generation of the TRA chain. Subsequent ligation of blunt DNA signal ends yields an excised circularized segment of DNA that forms a signal joint (SJ) within the stable circular excision products (termed *TRECs*), which are formed during the process of TRA chain VJ recombination (Serana et al, 2013). The circles are stable, not replicated during mitosis, and therefore become diluted as T cells proliferate. Thus, the number of TREC copies per cell population correlates with the production of naïve T cells by the thymus, and a normal TREC number is a biomarker for adequate autologous T cell production.

TRECs are detected from the dried blood spot collected by the birthing hospital using quantitative RT-PCR (Fig. 51-6). Newborns with screening assays with strong or borderline positive results are referred to coordinating centers within each state for confirmatory follow-up evaluation. The follow-up evaluation consists of complete blood count with differential and flow cytometry to evaluate T cells (CD3, CD4, CD8, CD45RA, CD45RO), B cells (CD19), and NK cells (CD16, CD56).

Many of the primary immunodeficiencies are rare disorders that can be difficult to diagnose; in these cases, genetic mutation detection is the most reliable method. These specialized tests are not readily available, and physicians may have difficulty locating laboratories to perform the necessary genetic analyses. Mutation registries and databases are available to provide information about tests for clinical data, immune status, antibody response, cellular function, and enzyme assays. Additionally, some online registries contain information about laboratories that perform these assays, which increases awareness of testing availability and the ability to obtain an exact and prompt diagnosis (Samarghitean et al, 2004).

NOVEL APPROACHES TO TREATING IMMUNODEFICIENCY DISORDERS

Genetic analysis of primary immunodeficiencies is important not only for diagnosis of the disorder but as a guide for therapy. Understanding the pathophysiology of each immunodeficiency disorder will aid clinicians in providing the missing component and ameliorating symptoms. For example, enzyme replacement therapy has been used in the past to treat enzyme-deficient forms of SCID, such as adenosine deaminase and purine nucleoside phophorylase SCID; however, this requires prolonged treatment, and results are variable, including decreased thymic output, lymphopenia, and increased viral infection (Gaspar et al, 2006). Direct genetic intervention may become a more suitable treatment as increasing numbers of successful case reports describe using autologous $CD34^+$ hematopoietic stem cells transduced with a retroviral vector containing the normal gene. In children affected with adenosine deaminase deficiency–deficient SCID and SCID-X1, direct genetic intervention is a safe and effective treatment, resulting in reinitiation of thymopoiesis, restoration of cellular immunity, and correction of the metabolic disorder, without enzyme replacement therapy (Gaspar et al, 2006; Aiuti et al, 2009).

Other future strategies may include using chemicals to modify protein glycosylation to prevent protein unfolding and degradation resulting in primary immunodeficiency disorders (Vogt & Vogt, 2007). Although these strategies have been demonstrated only in in vitro models, if the medications can be introduced at nontoxic levels with appropriate bioavailability in humans, clinical application may be practical in the future. Other medications such as gentamicin and ataluren (formerly known as PTC124) prevent premature translation termination at a premature stop codon and may be employed to treat disorders such as muscular dystrophy and cystic fibrosis, characterized by nonsense mutations resulting in absence of a critical protein causing the disorder. Although these treatments are still experimental, the hope of treating primary immunodeficiencies effectively lies in defining the genetic mutation and utilizing mutation-related strategies for treatment (Fischer, 2007).

SUMMARY

Assessment of host defenses is an extraordinarily complex process entailing the cooperation of the clinician, the research scientist, and the clinical pathologist. A logical approach, based on appreciation of the multiple systems involved in host defense and various diagnostic options, can lead to identification of the underlying disorder. The impressive success of modern therapy, incorporating new antimicrobials, recombinant DNA technology, bone marrow transplantation, and gene therapy, allows more precise delineation and characterization of the immunologic deficiency state. This in turn improves recognition, and ultimately treatment, of these patients.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Delves PJ, Roitt IM: The immune system, first of two parts, *N Engl J Med* 343:37–49, 2000.

A general overview of the immune system and the function of innate and acquired responses, as well as the role of B and T cells. This article also provides a glossary of commonly used immunologic terms that clinicians may find useful.

Fleisher TA: Evaluation of suspected immunodeficiency, *MLO Med Lab Obs* 35:10–14, 19; quiz 20–21, 2003.

An overview of the application of laboratory methods to evaluate immune defects; includes a continuing education test.

Kuijpers TW, Weening RS, Roos D: Clinical and laboratory work-up of patients with neutrophil shortage or dysfunction, *J Immunol Methods* 232:211–229, 1999.

This article provides a succinct overview of clinical signs and symptoms exhibited by patients, the physiology of the antimicrobial system of neutrophils, the mechanisms of assay to diagnose these aberrations, and potential treatments for affected patients.

Lekstrom-Himes JA, Gallin JI: Primary immunodeficiency diseases due to defects in phagocytes, *N Engl J Med* 343:1703–1714, 2000.

This review article provides an overview of immunodeficiencies due to phagocytic defects. Also features tables summarizing the syndromes with their corresponding genetic defects, as well as clinical and microscopic photographs to demonstrate the manifestations of the immunodeficiencies.

Lindegren ML, Kobrynski L, Rasmussen SA: Applying public health strategies to primary immunodeficiency diseases: a potential approach to genetic disorders, *MMWR* 53:1–29, 2004.

Summary of a workshop convened by the CDC to discuss strategies to improve clinical outcomes of patients with primary immunodeficiencies. This summary discusses incidence and birth prevalence of primary immunodeficiency, newborn screening methods, morbidity and mortality data, and information for primary immunodeficiency registries.

REFERENCES

Abrahamian F, Agrawal S, Gupta S: Immunological and clinical profile of adult patients with selective immunoglobulin subclass deficiency: response to intravenous immunoglobulin therapy, *Clin Exp Immunol* 159:344–350, 2010.

Aiuti A, Cattaneo F, Galimberti S, et al: Gene therapy for immunodeficiency due to adenosine deaminase deficiency, *N Engl J Med* 360:447–457, 2009.

Anderson DC, Springer TA: Leukocyte adhesion deficiency: an inherited defect in the MAC-1, LFA-1, and p150,95 glycoproteins, *Annu Rev Med* 38(175):1987.

Arnaout MA, Michishita M: Genetic abnormalities in leukocyte adhesion molecule deficiency. In Gupta S, Griscelli C, editors: *New concepts in immunodeficiency diseases*, Chichester, West Sussex, 1993, John Wiley, pp 191–202.

Atkinson JC, O'Connell A, Aframian D: Oral manifestations of primary immunological diseases, *J Am Dent Assoc* 131:345–356, 2000.

Babior BM: Oxygen-dependent microbial killing by phagocytes: first of two parts, *N Engl J Med* 298:721–725, 1978.

Balmer P, North J, Baxter D, et al: Measurement and interpretation of pneumococcal IgG levels for clinical management, *Clin Exp Immunol* 133:364–369, 2003.

Barrett DJ, Lee CG, Ammann AJ, et al: IgG and IgM pneumococcal polysaccharide antibody responses in infants, *Pediatr Res* 18:1067–1071, 1984.

Baumgart KW, Britton WJ, Kemp A, et al: The spectrum of primary immunodeficiency disorders in Australia, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 100:415–423, 1997.

Biron CA, Byron KS, Sullivan JL: Severe herpes virus infections in an adolescent without natural killer cells, *N Engl J Med* 320:1731–1735, 1989.

Bjorkander J, Bake B, Oxelius VA, et al: Impaired lung function in patients with IgA deficiency and low levels of IgG2 or IgG3, *N Engl J Med* 313:720–724, 1985.

Buckley RH: Primary immunodeficiency diseases due to defects in lymphocytes, *N Engl J Med* 343:1313–1324, 2000.

Buckley RH, Becker WG: Abnormalities in the regulation of human IgE synthesis, *Immunol Rev* 41:288–314, 1978.

Carlucci F, Tabucchi A, Aiuti A, et al: Capillary electrophoresis in diagnosis and monitoring of adenosine deaminase deficiency, *Clin Chem* 49:1830–1838, 2003.

Cates KL: Defects in neutrophil chemotaxis, *Clin Immunol Allergy* 1:603, 1981.

Cavazzana-Calvo M, Haein-Bey S, de Saint BG, et al: Gene therapy of human severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)-X1 disease, *Science* 288:66–72, 2000.

Chan K, Puck JM: Development of population-based newborn screening for severe combined immunodeficiency, *JACI* 115:391–398, 2005.

Conley ME: Molecular approaches to analysis of X-linked immunodeficiencies, *Annu Rev Immunol* 10:215–238, 1992.

Cooling L, et al: ABO, H and Lewis blood groups and structurally related antigens. In Roback JD, Combs MR, Grossman BJ, editors: *Technical manual*, ed 16, Bethesda Md, 2008, American Association of Blood Banks, pp 361–385.

Cunningham-Rundles C: Common variable immunodeficiency: clinical and immunological features of 248 patients, *J Appl Biomaterials* 92:34–48, 1999.

Curtis JE, Hersh EM, Harris JE, et al: The human primary immune response to keyhole limpet haemocyanin: interrelationships of delayed hypersensitivity, antibody response and in vitro blast transformation, *Clin Exp Immunol* 6:473–491, 1970.

de Jong R, Altare F, Haagen IA, et al: Severe mycobacterial and salmonella infections in interleukin-12 receptor-deficient patients, *Science* 280:1435–1438, 1998.

de la Salle H, Zimmer J, Fricker D, et al: HLA class I deficiencies due to mutations in subunit 1 of the peptide transporter TAP-1, *J Clin Invest* 103:R9–R13, 1999.

Derry JM, Ochs HD, Francke U: Isolation of a novel gene mutated in Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, *Cell* 78:635–644, 1994.

Donato L, de la Salle H, Hanau D, et al: Association of HLA class I antigen deficiency related to a TAP2 gene mutation with familial bronchiectasis, *J Pediatr* 127:895–900, 1995.

Durandy A, Dumez Y, Griscelli C: Prenatal diagnosis of severe hereditary immunologic deficiencies, *Arch Fr Pediatr* 42:163–167, 1985.

Durandy A, Revy P, Fischer A: Human models of inherited immunoglobulin class switch recombination and somatic hypermutation defects (hyper-IgM syndromes), *Adv Immunol* 82:295–330, 2004.

Elder ME: ZAP-70 and defects of T cell receptor signaling, *Semin Hematol* 35:310–320, 1998.

Etzioni A, Harlan JM, Pollack S, et al: Leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD). II: A new adhesion defect due to absence of sialyl Lewis X, the ligand for selectins, *Immunodeficiency* 4:307–308, 1993.

Ewen C, Kane KP, Shostak I, et al: A novel cytotoxicity assay to evaluate antigen-specific CTL responses using a colorimetric substrate for granzyme B, *J Immunol Methods* 279:89–101, 2003.

Fischer A: Human primary immunodeficiency diseases, *Immun Rev* 27:835–845, 2007.

Fleisher RA, Oliveira JB: Functional and molecular evaluation of lymphocytes, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 114:227–234, 2004.

Gallin JI: Recent advances in chronic granulomatous disease, *Ann Intern Med* 99:657–674, 1983.

Gallin JI, Malech HL: Update on chronic granulomatous diseases of childhood, *JAMA* 263:1533–1537, 1990.

Ganz T, Metcalf JA, Gallin JI, et al: Microbicidal/cytotoxic proteins of neutrophils are deficient in two disorders: Chediak-Higashi syndrome and "specific" granule deficiency, *J Clin Invest* 82:552–556, 1988.

Gaspar HB, Bjorkegren E, Parsley K, et al: Successful reconstitution of immunity in ADA-SCID by stem cell gene therapy following cessation of PEG-ADA and use of mild preconditioning, *Mol Ther* 14:50513, 2006.

Gilmour KC, Cranston T, Loughlin S, et al: Rapid protein-based assays for the diagnosis of T-B+ severe combined immunodeficiency, *Br J Haematol* 112:671–676, 2001.

Go E, Ballas Z: Anti-pneumococcal antibody response in normal subjects, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 98:205–215, 1996.

Grimbacher B, Schaffer AA, Holland SM, et al: Genetic linkage of hyper-IgE syndrome to chromosome 4, *Am J Hum Genet* 65:735–744, 1999.

Gross S, Blaiss MS, Herrod HG: Role of immunoglobulin subclasses and specific antibody determinations in the evaluation of recurrent infection in children, *J Pediatr* 121:516–522, 1992.

Hirschhorn R: Adenosine deaminase deficiency: molecular basis and recent developments, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 76:S219–S226, 1995.

Hong R: Disorders of the T cell system. In Stiehm ER, editor: *Immunologic disorders of infants and children*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1996, Saunders, pp 339–408.

Hong R: The DiGeorge anomaly (CATCH 22, DiGeorge/velocardiofacial syndrome), *Semin Hematol* 35:282–290, 1998.

Hoppner M, Luhm J, Schlenke P, et al: A flow-cytometry based cytotoxicity assay using stained effector cells in combination with native target cells, *J Immunol Methods* 267:157–163, 2002.

Illoh O: Current applications of flow cytometry in the diagnosis of primary immunodeficiency diseases, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 128:23–31, 2004.

Immune Deficiency Foundation: *The clinical presentation of the primary immunodeficiency diseases (physician's primer)*, Towson, Md., 1992, Immune Deficiency Foundation. Available at: www.primaryimmune.org/pubs/book_phys/book_phys.htm.

Introne W, Boissy RR, Gahl WA: Clinical, molecular and cell biological aspects of Chediak-Higashi syndrome, *Mol Genet Metab* 68:283–303, 1999.

Jamieson BD, Douek DC, Killian S, et al: Generation of functional thymocytes in the human adult, *Immunity* 10:569–575, 1999.

Jouanguy E, Doffinger R, Dupuis S, et al: IL-12 and IFN-gamma in host defense against mycobacteria and salmonella in mice and men, *Curr Opin Immunol* 11:3416–3451, 1999.

Kelly J, Leonard WJ: Immune deficiencies due to defects in cytokine signaling, *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep* 5:396–401, 2003.

Kizaki H, Sakurada T: Simple micro-assay methods for enzymes of purine metabolism, *J Lab Clin Med* 89:1135, 1977.

Klebanoff SJ: Myeloperoxidase, *Proc Assoc Am Physicians* 111:383–389, 1999.

Klein C, Lisowska-Grospierre B, LeDeist F, et al: Major histocompatibility complex class II deficiency: clinical manifestations, immunologic features, and outcome, *J Pediatr* 123:921–928, 1993.

Kniker WT, Lesourd BM, McBryde JL, et al: Cell-mediated immunity assessed by multitest CMT skin testing in infants and preschool children, *Am J Dis Child* 139:840–845, 1985.

Kobrynski L: Evaluation of a clinical scoring system for the identification of patients with a possible primary immunodeficiency. Abstract 379. Presented at: Federation of Clinical Immunology Society Meeting, June 28-July 1, 2002, San Francisco.

Kruisbeek AM: Regulation of T cell development by the thymic microenvironment, *Semin Immunol* 11:1–70, 1999.

Lane HC, Depper JM, Greene WC, et al: Qualitative analysis of immune function in patients with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome: evidence for a selective defect in soluble antigen recognition, *N Engl J Med* 313:79–84, 1985.

Lanza F: Clinical manifestation of myeloperoxidase deficiency, *J Mol Med* 76:676–681, 1998.

Lefranc M-P, Lefranc G, Rabbitts TH: Inherited deletion of immunoglobulin heavy chain constant region genes in normal human individuals, *Nature* 300:760, 1982.

Lehrer RI, Cline MJ: Leukocyte myeloperoxidase deficiency and disseminated candidiasis: the role of myeloperoxidase in resistance to infection, *J Clin Invest* 48:1478, 1969.

Levy J, Espanol-Boren T, Thomas C: Clinical spectrum of X-linked hyper IgM syndrome, *J Pediatr* 131:47–54, 1997.

Lilic D, Gravenor I: Immunology of chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis, *J Clin Pathol* 54:81–83, 2001.

Louis AG, Gupta S: Primary selective IgM deficiency: an ignored immunodeficiency, *Clin Rev Allergy Immunol* 46:104–111, 2014.

Lukela M, DeGuzman D, Weinberger S, et al: Unfashionably late, *N Engl J Med* 352:64–69, 2005.

Magen E, Schlesinger M, David M, et al: Selective IgE deficiency, immune dysregulation, and autoimmunity, *Allergy Asthma Proc* 35:e27–e33, 2014.

Mahdi Z, Bluth MH: T regulatory cells and their role in gastrointestinal autoimmune disease, *Clin Lab Sci* 28(1):56, 2015.

Malek T, Porter B, He Y: Multiple γc-dependent cytokines regulate T cell development, *Immunol Today* 20:71–76, 1999.

Martin E, Bhakdi S: Flowcytometric assay for quantifying opsonophagocytosis and killing of Staphylococcus aureus by peripheral blood leukocytes, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:2246–2255, 1992.

Matamoros Flori N, Mila Llambi J, Espanol Boren T, et al: Primary immunodeficiency syndrome in Spain: first report of the National Registry in Children and Adults, *Clin Immunol* 20:477–485, 2000.

Meischl C, Roos D: The molecular basis of chronic granulomatous disease, *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 19:417–434, 1998.

Migone N, Oliviero S, De Lange G, et al: Multiple gene deletions within the human immunoglobulin heavy-chain cluster, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 81:5811, 1984.

Mire-Sluis AR, Thorpe R, editors: *Cytokines*, San Diego, 1998, Academic Press.

Myers LA, Hershfield MS, Neale WT, et al: Purine nucleoside phosphorylase deficiency (PNP-def) presenting with lymphopenia and developmental delay: successful correction with umbilical cord blood transplantation, *J Pediatr* 145:710–712, 2004.

Nauseef WM: Insights into myeloperoxidase biosynthesis from its inherited deficiency, *J Mol Med* 76:661–668, 1998.

Nekrep N, Fontes JD, Geyer M, et al: When the lymphocyte loses its clothes, *Immunity* 18:453–457, 2003.

Nelson RD, Quie PG, Simmons RL: Chemotaxis under agarose: a new and simple method for measuring chemotaxis and spontaneous migration of human polymorphonuclear leukocytes and monocytes, *J Imunol* 115:1650, 1975.

Niemela JE, Puck JM, Fisher RE, et al: Efficient detection of thirty-seven new IL-2RG mutations in human X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency, *Clin Immunol* 95:33–38, 2000.

Normansell DE: Human immunoglobulin subclasses, *Diagn Clin Immunol* 5:115–128, 1987.

Noroski LM, Shearer WT: Screening for primary immunodeficiencies in the clinical immunology laboratory, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 86:237–245, 1998.

Notarangelo LD, Giliani S, Mella P, et al: Combined immunodeficiencies due to defects in signal transduction: defects of the gamma-JAK3 signaling pathway as a model, *Immunobiology* 202:106–119, 2000.
Ochs HD: The Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, *Semin Hematol* 35:332–345, 1998.
Ochs HD, Davis SD, Wedgwood RJ: Immunologic responses to bacteriophage ΦX174 in immunodeficiency diseases, *J Clin Invest* 50:2559–2568, 1971.
O'Gorman MR, Corrochano V: Rapid whole-blood flow cytometry assay for diagnosis of chronic granulomatous disease, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 2:227–232, 1995.
Oxelius VA: Quantitative and qualitative investigations of serum IgG subclasses in immunodeficiency diseases, *Clin Exp Immunol* 36:112–116, 1979.
Ozcan E, Norarangelo LD, Geha RS: Primary immune deficiencies with aberrant IgE production, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 12:1054–1062, 2008.
Park BH, Fikrig SM, Smithwick EM: Infection and nitro-blue-tetrazolium reduction by neutrophils: a diagnostic aid, *Lancet* 2:532, 1968.
Plebani A, Ugazio AG, Monafo V, et al: Clinical heterogeneity and reversibility of selective immunoglobulin A deficiency in 80 children, *Lancet* 12:829–831, 1986.
Popa V: Airway obstruction in adults with recurrent respiratory infections and IgG deficiency, *Chest* 105:1066–1072, 1994.
Puck JM, Primary immunodeficiency diseases: *JAMA* 278:1835–1841, 1997a.
Puck JM: Genetic aspects of primary immunodeficiencies. In Ochs HD, Smith Die, Puck JM, editors: *Primary immunodeficiency diseases: a molecular and genetic approach*, New York, 1999, Oxford University Press.
Puck JM, Deschenes SM, Porter JC, et al: The interleukin-2 receptor γ chain maps to Xq13.1 and is mutated in X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency, *Hum Mol Genet* 2:1099, 1993.
Puck JM, Middleton L, Pepper AE: Carrier and prenatal diagnosis of X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency: mutation detection methods and utilization, *Hum Genet* 99:628–633, 1997b.
Ramesh N, Seki M, Notarangelo LD, et al: The hyper IgM (HIM) syndrome, *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 19:383–399, 1998.
Reith W, Mach B: The bare lymphocyte syndrome and the regulation of MHC expression, *Annu Rev Immunol* 19:331–373, 2001.
Renner ED, Puck JM, Holland SM, et al: Autosomal recessive hyperimmunoglobulin E syndrome: a distinct disease entity, *J Pediatr* 144:93–99, 2004.
Routes JM, Grossman WJ, Verpsky J, et al: Statewide newborn screening for severe T cell lymphopenia, *JAMA* 302:2465–2470, 2009.
Ryser O, Morrell A, Hizid WE: Primary immunodeficiencies in Switzerland: first report of the nation registry in adults and children, *J Clin Immunol* 8:479–485, 1988.
Samarghitean C, Valiaho J, Vihinen M: Online registry of genetic and clinical immunodeficiency diagnostic laboratories, IDdiagnostics, *J Clin Immunol* 24:53–61, 2004.
Sandler SG, Eckrich R, Malamut D, et al: Hemagglutination assays for the diagnosis and prevention of anaphylactic transfusion reactions, *Blood* 84:2031–2035, 1994.
Sarkar G, Yoon HS, Sommer SS: Dideoxy fingerprinting (ddE): a rapid and efficient screen for the presence of mutations, *Genomics* 13:441–443, 1992.
Schneider PM, Wurzner R: Complement genetics: biological implications of polymorphisms and deficiencies, *Immunol Today* 20:2–5, 1999.
Schur PH: IgG subclasses—a review, *Ann Allergy* 58:89–96, 1987.
Scott MG, Schackelford PG, Briles ED, et al: Human IgG subclasses and their relation to carbohydrate antigen immunocompetence, *Diagn Clin Immunol* 5:241–248, 1988.
Sebire NJ, Haselden S, Malone M, et al: Isolated EBV lymphoproliferative disease in a child with Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome manifesting as cutaneous lymphomatoid granulomatosis and responsive to anti-CD20 immunotherapy, *J Clin Pathol* 56:555–557, 2003.
Serana F, Chiarini M, Zanotti C, et al: Use of V(D)J recombination excision circles to identify T- and B-cell defects and to monitor the treatment in primary and acquired immunodeficiencies, *J Transl Med* 11:119, 2013.
Shackelford PG, Granoff DM, Madassery JV, et al: Clinical and immunologic characteristics of healthy children with subnormal serum concentrations of IgG2, *Pediatr Res* 27:16, 1990.
Shearer WT, Paul ME, Smith CW, et al: Laboratory assessment of immune deficiency disorders, *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 14:265–299, 1994.
Sheffield VC, Beck JS, Kwitek AE, et al: The sensitivity of single stand conformation polymorphism analysis for the detection of single base substitutions, *Genomics* 16:325–332, 1993.
Shovlin CL, Simmon HA, Fairbanks LD, et al: Adult onset immunodeficiency caused by inherited adenosine deaminase deficiency, *J Immunol* 153:2331–2339, 1994.
Smith JK, Krishnaswamy GH, Dykes R, et al: Clinical manifestations of IgE hypogammaglobulinemia, *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 78:313–318, 1997.
Smith CIE, Ochs HD, Puck JM: Genetically determined immunodeficiency diseases: a perspective. In Ochs HD, Smith CIE, Puck JM, editors: *Primary immunodeficiency diseases: a molecular and genetic approach*, New York, 1999, Oxford University Press.
Southwick FS, Dabiri GA, Stossel TP: Neutrophil actin dysfunction is a genetic disorder associated with partial impairment of neutrophil actin assembly in three family members, *J Clin Invest* 82:1525–1531, 1988.
Stiehm ER, Conley ME: Immunodeficiency disorders: general considerations. In Stiehm ER, editor: *Immunologic disorders of infants and children*, 4th ed, Philadelphia, 1996, Saunders, pp 201–252.
Stray-Pedersen A, Abrahamsen TG, Froland SS: Primary immunodeficiency diseases in Norway, *Clin Immunol* 17:333–339, 1997.
Sweinberg SK, Wodell RA, Grodofsky MP, et al: Retrospective analysis of the incidence of pulmonary disease in hypogammaglobulinemia, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 88:96–104, 1991.
Trinchieri G: Biology of natural killer cells, *Adv Immunol* 47:187–376, 1989.
Vihinen M, Kwan SP, Lester T, et al: Mutations of the human BTK gene coding for bruton tyrosine kinase in X-linked agammaglobulinemia, *Hum Mutat* 13:280–285, 1999.
Vogt G, Vogt B, Chuzhanova N, et al: Gain-of-glycosylation mutations, *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 17:245–251, 2007.
Wakim M, Shah A, Arndt PA, et al: Successful anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody treatment of severe autoimmune hemolytic anemia due to warm reactive IgM autoantibody in a child with common variable immunodeficiency, *Am J Hematol* 76:152–155, 2004.
Wedgwood RJ, Ochs HD, Oxelius VA: IgG subclass levels in the serum of patients with primary immunodeficiency, *Monogr Allergy* 20:80, 1986.
Winkelstein JA, Marino MC, Johnston RB Jr, et al: Chronic granulomatous disease: report on a national registry of 368 patients, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 79:155–169, 2000.
Yabe T, Kawamura S, Masako S, et al: A subject with a novel type I bare lymphocyte syndrome has tapasin deficiency due to deletion of 4 exons by Alu-mediated recombination, *Blood* 100:1496–1498, 2002.
Zhang Q, Davis JC, Lamborn BS, et al: Combined immunodeficiency associated with DOCK8 mutations, *N Engl J Med* 361:2046–2055, 2009.
Zhu Q, Watanabe C, Liu T, et al: Wiskott-Alrich syndrome/X-linked thrombocytopenia: WASP gene mutations, protein expression, and phenotype, *Blood* 90:2680–2689, 1997.

CHAPTER 52

CLINICAL AND LABORATORY EVALUATION OF SYSTEMIC RHEUMATIC DISEASES

Carlos Alberto von Mühlen, Marvin J. Fritzler, Edward K. L. Chan

INTRODUCTION AND CLASSIFICATION OF SYSTEMIC RHEUMATIC DISEASES, 993

SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS AND RELATED LUPUS-LIKE DISORDERS, 994
Etiologic Factors in Systemic Lupus Erythematosus, 994
Diagnostic Criteria for Systemic Lupus Erythematosus, 994
"Lupus-Like" Syndromes and Diseases, 994
Autoantibody Profile in Systemic Lupus Erythematosus, 994
Chronic Discoid Lupus and Other Cutaneous Variants, 997
Drug-Induced Lupus Erythematosus and Antihistone Antibodies, 997
Antinucleosome Antibodies, 997

SJÖGREN'S SYNDROME, 998
Anti–SS-A/Ro and Anti–SS-B/La Antibodies, 999
Antimuscarinic Type 3 Receptor (M3R) Autoantibodies, 999
Anti–α-Fodrin Antibody, 999
Antibodies to Nuclear Protein NA14, 999

SYSTEMIC SCLEROSIS, 1000
Centromere Protein Autoantigens, 1001
Antibodies to Topoisomerase I (Scl-70), 1001
Antibodies to RNA Polymerases, 1001
Th/To Autoantigens, 1001
Antibodies to Nucleolar Antigen Fibrillarin (U3-snoRNP), 1003
Antibodies to PM/Scl, 1003
Antibodies Targeting the Nucleolar Organizing Region (NOR), 1003

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS, 1003
Rheumatoid Factor, 1003
Antikeratin Antibody (AKA), 1004
Antiperinuclear Factor (APF), 1005
Anticitrullinated Peptides (Anti-CCP/ACPA), 1005
Anti-RA33, 1005
Anticarbamylated Protein Antibodies (Anti-CarP), 1005

IDIOPATHIC INFLAMMATORY MYOPATHIES: POLYMYOSITIS AND DERMATOMYOSITIS, 1005
Aminoacyl-tRNA Synthetases (ARS), 1005
Mi-2/NuRD Complex, 1006
Signal Recognition Particle, 1007
MDA5 (CADM-140), 1007
TIF1-γ/TIF1-α (p155/140), 1007
MJ/NXP2, 1007
Small Ubiquitin-Like Modifier Activating Enzyme (SAE), 1007
3-Hydroxy-3-Methylglutaryl-Coenzyme A Reductase, 1007
Myositis-Associated Autoantibodies, 1007

CONCEPT OF OVERLAP SYNDROMES, 1007
Mixed Connective Tissue Disease, 1008

PROFILES OF AUTOANTIBODIES IN VARIOUS SYSTEMIC RHEUMATIC DISEASES, 1008

TECHNIQUES USED TO DETECT AUTOANTIBODIES, 1008
Indirect Immunofluorescence in HEp2 Cells, 1008
Computer-Assisted ANA IIF Technology, 1009
Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assays, 1009
Immunoblotting, 1014
Line Immunoassays, 1014
Multiplex Bead-Based Assays, 1014
Other Immunoassays, 1015

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1015

KEY POINTS

- Many types of autoantibodies to intracellular and nuclear antigens are present in the various systemic rheumatic diseases. Currently it is considered important not only to detect the presence and quantity of intracellular and nuclear autoantibodies in the patient but also to identify its immunologic specificity.
- Past studies have shown that distinct diagnostic profiles of autoantibodies are observed in many of the rheumatic diseases. Some diseases are characterized by the presence or absence of a specific antibody or by differences in the quantitative level or titer of the autoantibody.
- Much progress has been made in improvement of sensitivity/specificity and quality control of the many laboratory tests used for the detection of autoantibodies to intracellular and nuclear antigens.
- Immunofluorescence microscopy using human cellular extracts such as HEp-2 cells allows the sensitive detection of serum antibodies that react very specifically with various cellular proteins and nucleic acids.
- Widely used tests for screening of intracellular autoantibodies are immunofluorescence microscopy and the immunoenzyme tests. The secondary definitive tests for specific identification of autoantibodies to nuclear antigen are immunodiffusion, immunoprecipitation, particle agglutination, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, immunoblotting, and radioimmunoassay methods.
- Molecular biologists have used many of the autoantibodies as biological probes and have elucidated the biological functions of several of the autoantigens.

INTRODUCTION AND CLASSIFICATION OF SYSTEMIC RHEUMATIC DISEASES

Many systemic rheumatic diseases are characterized by the presence of one or more autoantibodies that may be directed against components of the surface, cytoplasm, nuclear envelope, or nucleus of the cell. Such autoantibodies, collectively known as autoantibodies to nuclear antigens (ANAs), are a hallmark of the systemic rheumatic diseases (Tan, 1989a; Nakamura & Nakamura, 1992; von Mühlen & Tan, 1994; Satoh et al, 2009a). Many of the rheumatic diseases have a distinctive profile of autoantibodies with diagnostic and prognostic implications. Moreover, the biochemical and biological functions of many of the antigens involved in deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) replication, splicing of ribonucleic acid (RNA) precursor, RNA processing, and other fine biologic processes were elucidated by

BOX 52-1

Systemic Rheumatic Diseases and Related Disorders

1. Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
   a. Discoid lupus erythematosus
   b. Drug-induced lupus erythematosus
2. Sjögren's syndrome (primary and secondary)
3. Scleroderma/CREST syndrome (calcinosis cutis, Raynaud's phenomenon, esophageal dysmotility, sclerodactyly, telangiectasia)
4. Rheumatoid arthritis (RA)
   a. Juvenile RA
   b. Still's disease
5. Dermatomyositis and polymyositis
6. Overlap syndromes
   a. Mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)
   b. RA and SLE (rupus)
   c. SLE and scleroderma (lupoderma)
   d. Scleroderma and dermatomyositis (sclerodermatomyositis)
7. Systemic vasculitis
   a. Takayasu's arteritis
   b. Giant cell arteritis and polymyalgia rheumatica
   c. Wegener's granulomatosis (granulomatosis with polyangiitis)
   d. Churg-Strauss syndrome (eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis)
   e. Polyarteritis nodosa
8. Poorly defined connective tissue disease syndromes
   a. Behçet's disease
   b. Autoimmune syndrome induced by adjuvants (ASIA)

Data from Shoenfeld & Agmon-Levin, 2011; Perricone et al, 2013.

using monospecific sera from rheumatic patients (Tan, 1989a; Yao et al, 2013). Classification of the various rheumatic diseases has been difficult because of a lack of firm etiologic bases for most of the diseases, besides distinct methodological questions (Johnson et al, 2007). Our abridged classification of the systemic rheumatic diseases and related disorders is shown in Box 52-1.

SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS AND RELATED LUPUS-LIKE DISORDERS

Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) is the prototype systemic rheumatic disease and has the following significant features (Nakamura & Bylund, 1994; Kiriakidou et al, 2013; Kunz, 2013; Cervera et al, 2014):

1. SLE is a non-organ-specific autoimmune disease in which the tissue injury is mediated primarily by DNA–anti-DNA immune complexes.
2. It is a multisystem disease that affects most persons of all ages and both sexes, although it is most prevalent in women during childbearing years.
3. The disease demonstrates a hyperactive immune system with multiple abnormalities, displaying genetic associations with immunoregulatory signaling pathways and also involving the interferon pathway, toll-like receptors, and neutrophils (Kunz, 2013).
4. Patients with SLE demonstrate a heterogeneous and polyclonal antibody response, with autoantibody formation reaction involving similar mechanisms to those seen in a typical immune response to foreign immunogens (Fatenejad et al, 1998).
5. The typical case of SLE has an average of three different circulating antibodies present simultaneously. The prevalence of antibodies varies over a wide range, and more than 100 different types of autoantibodies have been identified in SLE (Sherer et al, 2004).

ETIOLOGIC FACTORS IN SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

The etiology is still poorly known. Some of the important etiologic factors in SLE are endocrine–metabolic, environmental, and genetic (Gulko & Winchester, 1999; Agmon-Levin et al, 2012). The strongest risk factor for the development of SLE is female gender. The presence of antinuclear antibodies was determined in female laboratory workers with varying degrees of exposure to blood from patients with SLE. The presence of antinative DNA antibodies was higher in laboratory workers than in an unexposed nonlaboratory group of women ($p < 0.001$) (Zarmbinski et al, 1992). These results help support a hypothesis that a transmissible agent causing autoantibody formation may exist in the blood of patients with SLE. However, no transmissible agent has been identified to date related to autoantibody production in lupus pathogenesis.

Certain chemicals have been implicated in SLE (Hess & Mongey, 1992; Rubin, 1992; Rubin et al, 1992; Fritzler & Rubin, 1993; Vaz et al, 2013). The syndrome of drug-induced lupus with hydralazine, procainamide, and isoniazid has been studied for clues to the pathogenesis of SLE, and lupus-like autoantibodies have been described in anti–TNF-treated rheumatic patients. There have been varying reports that show the acetylation mechanism as a risk factor in SLE. Studies have demonstrated a greater concordance rate of SLE among monozygotic and dizygotic twins (Arnett & Shulman, 1976; Kaplan, 1984; Grennan et al, 1997). The end result of the interaction of multiple etiologic factors is polyclonal activation of B cells in SLE patients with production of a wide spectrum of antibodies (Mamula et al, 1994; Fatenejad et al, 1998; Dorner et al, 2009; Choi et al, 2012; Sang et al, 2014).

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA FOR SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

In 1971, the American College of Rheumatology (ACR; previously the American Rheumatism Association [ARA]), published preliminary criteria for the classification of SLE (Cohen & Canoso, 1972; Canoso & Cohen, 1979). Patients were considered to have SLE if four of the criteria were met sequentially or simultaneously during any interval of observation. In 1982, the Subcommittee for SLE Criteria of the ARA published revised criteria that incorporated new immunologic knowledge and improved the disease classification of SLE (Tan et al, 1982). The 1982 revised criteria for classification of SLE included 11 categories, adding (1) abnormal titer of antinuclear antibody by immunofluorescence or an equivalent assay, and (2) antibody to native DNA and/or Sm antigen. In contrast to the 1971 criteria, the 1982 criteria removed Raynaud's phenomenon and alopecia because of their lack of sensitivity and specificity.

When the 1982 ARA Criteria for Classification of SLE were compared with the 1971 criteria, there was definite improvement in sensitivity and specificity. The 1982 criteria showed a 97% sensitivity and 96% specificity when evaluated with known SLE and control patients (Tan et al, 1982). In 1997, an update of the criteria was suggested, in which the LE cell test was dropped and anticardiolipin antibodies were added, changes emphasized in the "Guidelines for referral and management of SLE in adults" by the ACR Ad Hoc Committee on SLE Guidelines (1999).

Recently, the SLICC group (Systemic Lupus International Collaborating Clinics) validated an update of the ACR 1982 SLE criteria (Petri et al, 2012; Ighe et al, 2015; Ines et al, 2015), with improved sensitivity (97% × 83% over the ACR 1982 criteria), although with lower specificity (84% × 96%). The proposal includes at least one clinical and one immunologic criterion satisfied or biopsy-proven lupus nephritis together with positive ANA or anti-DNA autoantibodies (Box 52-2).

"LUPUS-LIKE" SYNDROMES AND DISEASES

Many diseases and syndromes share certain clinical features with SLE but are not SLE and have different etiologies and pathogeneses. Diseases in this category include vasculitis, cryoglobulinemia, relapsing polychondritis, lymphoproliferative diseases, rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis, syphilis, lupoid hepatitis, drug-induced lupus, and occult malignancy (Panush et al, 1993; Panush & Schur, 1997). One very broad category of patients demonstrates fewer than four of the 1982 ARA classification criteria for SLE (Lom-Orta et al, 1980; Lazaro et al, 1989; Schur, 1993; Rua-Figueroa et al, 2015) but are considered to have "lupus-like" illnesses. These patients have been classified as undifferentiated rheumatic disease, nonrheumatic disease, overlap syndrome, and incomplete, latent, or incipient lupus. If these patients are followed, some stay with mild symptoms, and as such remain labeled as "undifferentiated connective tissue disease" (UCTD) (Mosca et al, 2014). A few may develop a definite SLE, but many evolve into other diseases with better prognoses. Actually, up to 75% of patients with UCTD never fulfill diagnostic criteria for specific systemic rheumatic diseases (Mosca et al, 2004). In our hands, 99 patients with anti-U1nRNP antibodies followed for 10 years, many diagnosed as UCTD when entering the cohort, developed characteristic signs and symptoms of rheumatoid arthritis, Sjögren's syndrome, systemic lupus, or scleroderma (Fig. 52-1), according to their HLA profile and antibody titers (unpublished results).

AUTOANTIBODY PROFILE IN SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

Characteristic of SLE is the presence of a broad spectrum of autoantibodies, including antibody to native DNA (dsDNA), chromatin, Sm antigen,

BOX 52-2

Criteria for Classification of Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

Clinical Criteria

1. Acute cutaneous disease (includes malar rash, photosensitivity, subacute cutaneous lupus)
2. Chronic cutaneous disease (includes discoid rash, panniculitis)
3. Oral or nasal ulcers
4. Nonscarring alopecia (in the absence of other causes)
5. Synovitis involving two or more joints
6. Serositis (pleuritis or pericarditis with rub)
7. Renal disorder (persistent proteinuria, cellular casts)
8. Neurologic disorder (seizures, psychosis, peripheral/cranial neuropathy)
9. Hemolytic anemia
10. Leukopenia less than 4000/mm^3 OR lymphopenia less than 1000/mm^3 at least once
11. Thrombocytopenia less than 100,000/mm^3 in the absence of offending drug

Immunologic Criteria

1. ANA+
2. Anti-DNA: antibody to native DNA in abnormal titer
3. Anti-Sm: presence of antibody to Sm nuclear antigen
4. Antiphospholipid antibodies (anticardiolipin or anti-beta2 GP I antibodies IgA, IgG, or IgM; or a positive test result for lupus anticoagulant; or a false-positive test result for syphilis
5. Low complement levels (C3, C4, or CH50)
6. Direct Combs+ in the absence of hemolytic anemia

The proposed classification is based on 11 criteria. The proposed SLICC (Systemic Lupus International Collaborating Clinics) classification rule is as follows: Classify a patient as having SLE if he or she satisfies 4 of the clinical and immunologic criteria used in the SLICC classification criteria, including at least 1 clinical criterion and 1 immunologic criterion, OR if he or she has biopsy-proven nephritis compatible with SLE in the presence of ANAs or anti-dsDNA antibodies (Tan et al, 1982; Hochberg, 1997; Petri et al, 2012).

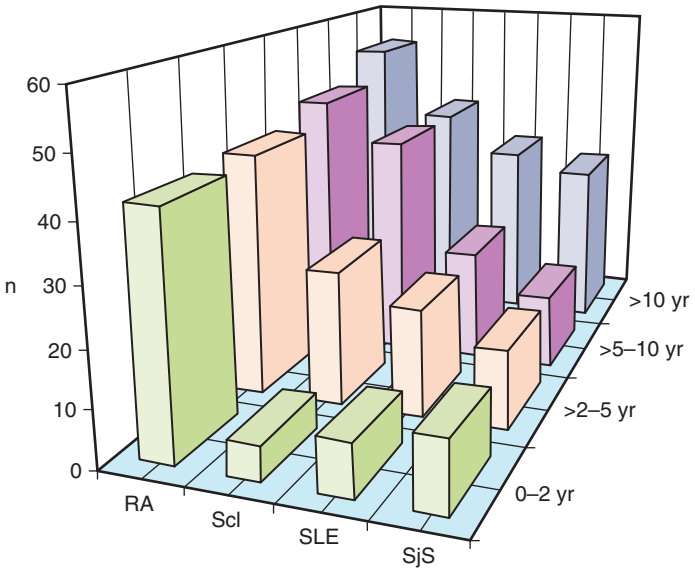


Figure 52-1 Classification criteria fulfilled by 99 patients with anti-U1nRNP antibodies, along more than 10 years of observation. Many patients in this cohort were classified as undifferentiated connective tissue disease (UCTD) in the first 2 years of clinical symptoms, while 43 individuals could be classified as having rheumatoid arthritis (RA). The number of RA-classified patients did not grow significantly toward the end of the study, but diagnoses of systemic lupus (SLE) and scleroderma (Scl) were fulfilled ever more often ($p = 0.02$ and 0.0008, respectively, chi-square for trend). Patients developing SLE had low titers of anti-U1nRNP antibodies and were HLA-DR2/3. The ones developing Scl had high anti-U1nRNP titers and were HLA-DR4. *SjS,* Sjögren's syndrome. (From von Mühlen et al, unpublished data.)

U1nRNP, SS-A/Ro, SS-B/La, C1q, ribosomal RNP, and several other nonhistone protein or nonhistone protein-RNA complexes (Nakamura & Bylund, 1994; Sherer et al, 2004). Antinative DNA, anti-Sm, anti-C1q, antiribosomal RNP, and anti-PCNA (proliferating cell nuclear antigen) are generally specific for SLE. The prevalence of autoantibodies varies over a wide range. Antibodies to native DNA and chromatin are detectable in up to 90% of individuals with active disease, and antibodies to PCNA are seen in 3% or less (Miyachi et al, 1978; Takasaki et al, 1984; Muro & Tan, 1994; Mahler et al, 2012) (Table 52-1).

Antibodies to Native DNA or Double-Stranded DNA

Anti–double-stranded DNA (ds-DNA) antibodies are rather specific for SLE and are observed at a frequency of 75% to 90% in SLE patients with active disease (Isenberg & Shoenfeld, 1987; Isenberg et al, 1994; Rekvig & Nossent, 2003). There have been many earlier reports of antibodies to ds-DNA in diseases other than SLE. However, current thinking is that the reactive antibodies to DNA in the other diseases were actually anti–single-stranded DNA antibodies. The ds-DNA antibody tests often used ds-DNA preparations contaminated with denatured or single-stranded DNA. One possible exception could appear in primary Sjögren's syndrome, a disease sometimes difficult to differentiate from SLE in older people. Antibody to DNA plays a definite role in the pathogenesis of SLE. In studies of SLE patients, antibody to DNA is followed by the appearance of circulating DNA antigen, a sequence of events that results in the formation of immune complexes. Such DNA–anti-DNA immune complexes, mostly containing complement-activating IgG3, have a special tropism for basement membranes and are readily deposited in the kidney glomeruli. This initiates kidney damage through inflammatory mechanisms that end up with complement activation and cell lysis (van Bavel et al, 2008; Mortensen & Rekvig, 2009; Radic et al, 2011).

Earlier methods for detection of DNA antibodies were the insensitive precipitation method, complement fixation, and passive hemagglutination. Current methods used are indirect immunofluorescence (IFA) on *Crithidia luciliae* and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) (Kavanaugh & Solomon, 2002). These can detect anti-DNA in 75% to 90% of active untreated SLE patients. Transient increases in anti-DNA antibodies were described in RA patients treated with anti-TNF therapy (Allanore et al, 2004; Bobbio-Pallavicini et al, 2004; Takase et al, 2014). Occasional clinical lupus-like cases may occur in this situation (Swale et al, 2003; Eriksson et al, 2005).

Antibodies to Sm and Nuclear Ribonucleoprotein

Precipitating antibodies to Sm antigen have been considered highly specific markers for SLE (Tan & Kunkel, 1966; von Mühlen & Tan, 1995; Wiik, 2005). Antibodies to both Sm and nuclear ribonucleoproteins (nRNP) are found in patients with SLE. The Sm and nRNP antigens were clearly associated because the nRNP could not be biochemically isolated from the Sm antigen. Lerner and Steitz (1979) used the tools of molecular biology to show that Sm and nRNP antigens were subcellular particles comprised of small nuclear RNAs complexed with proteins. The particle bound by anti-nRNP is composed of an RNA component designated U1 (U for uridine-rich), complexed to at least seven proteins varying in molecular mass from 12 to 68 kD (Tan, 1989a), found at a frequency of 5% to 40% in active SLE (ter Borg et al, 1990).

The antigens of Sm consist of several proteins, conventionally called B1 (29 kD), D (16 kD), and E (13 kD) (Tan, 1989b). Purified anti-B1/B antibodies cross-react with the D protein and vice versa. Thus there are at least two epitopes on the B1/B protein recognized by anti-Sm sera. No characteristic clinical features are apparent in SLE patients with anti-Sm antibodies (Barada et al, 1981), although some authors claim these autoantibodies to be associated with renal disease or disorders of the central nervous system (Yasuma et al, 1990; Ni et al, 2009; Hirohata et al, 2014; Ishizaki et al, 2014). Patients who have antibodies to only nRNP have a low frequency of antibodies to DNA and a low frequency of clinically apparent renal disease (ter Borg et al, 1990). Anti-Sm and anti-nRNP antibodies may be detected by immunodiffusion, passive hemagglutination, or counterimmunoelectrophoresis. However, the above-mentioned methods do not accurately distinguish between antibodies against different small nuclear RNA-associated polypeptides. The reactivities with individual RNAs and polypeptides can be best demonstrated by RNA immunoprecipitation and immunoblotting techniques, respectively. Immunoblotting has been found to be more sensitive than conventional methods for the detection of anti-Sm and anti-nRNP (Nakamura et al, 1994). Currently, the most widely used laboratory tests for the detection of anti-Sm and anti-nRNP antibodies are immunodiffusion and ELISA. These tests can differentiate between Sm and nRNP antibodies but

TABLE 52-1
Major Antigens and Autoantibodies in Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

Antigen	Molecular Structure	Prevalence
Native DNA	Double-strand DNA	75%-90%
Denatured DNA	Single-strand DNA	70%
Histones	H1, H2A, H2B, H3, H4	50%-70%
Nucleosome (chromatin)	DNA-histones complex	50%-90%
Sm	Proteins 29 (B′), 28 (B), 16 (D), and 13 (E) kD, complexed with U1, U2, and U4-U6 snRNAs; spliceosome component	15%-30%
Nuclear RNP (U1nRNP)	Proteins 70, 33 (A), and 22 (C) kD, complexed with U1 snRNA; spliceosome component	5%-40%
SS-A/Ro60	Protein 60, complexed with Y1-Y5 RNAs	24%-60%
SS-B/La	Phosphoproteins 48 kD, complexed with Y1 nascent RNA Pol transcripts	9%-35%
Ku	Proteins 86 and 66 kD, DNA-binding proteins	1%-39%
Ro52/TRIM21	Protein 52 kD, tripartite motif, E3 ubiquitin ligase	10%-25%
hnRNP protein A1	Nuclear protein 34 kD	31%-37%
PCNA	Protein 36 kD; auxiliary protein of DNA polymerase	3%
Ribosomal RNP	Phosphoproteins 38, 16, and 15 kD associated with ribosomes	10%-20%
Hsp-90	Heat-shock protein 90 kD	5%-50%
Golgi complex	Golgins, giantin	Unknown
HMG-17	DNA-associated proteins, 9 to 17 kD	34%-70%
Beta 2 glycoprotein I	Anionic phospholipids, cardiolipin	25%

Frequencies are mostly related to patients with active disease.
Data from Nakamura & Bylund, 1994; Krapf et al, 1996; Sherer et al, 2004.

cannot define the specific antibody epitopes present in patients' sera. The antibody specificity and epitopes are best determined by Western and Northern blotting methods.

Antibodies to SS-A/Ro and SS-B/La

Patients with SLE can have antibodies to SS-A/Ro alone, or they may have both anti–SS-A/Ro and anti–SS-B/La. Having anti–SS-A/Ro alone is strongly associated with human leukocyte antigen (HLA) DR2 and with being young (<22 years of age at onset). The presence of both anti–SS-A/Ro and anti–SS-B/La in SLE is associated with HLA-DR3 and is seen in older patients (>50 years of age at disease onset) (Hochberg et al, 1985). A study of 55 patients with SLE showed that patients with anti–SS-A/Ro alone had much more serious renal disease (Hochberg et al, 1985). SLE patients with only anti–SS-A/Ro also had a higher incidence of concomitant anti-DNA antibodies than those SLE patients with both the anti–SS-A/Ro and anti–SS-B/La antibodies (Chan & Tan, 1989). Anti–SS-A/Ro autoantibodies have been closely associated with the appearance of nephritis, vasculitis, lymphadenopathy, photosensitivity, and leukopenia in SLE patients. Anti–SS-B/La antibodies, like anti–SS-A/Ro antibodies, are antibodies noteworthy for their strong association with Sjögren's syndrome, occurring in more than two thirds of patients with this disorder. The SS-B/La antigen is a cellular protein bound to a small RNA species, forming a small RNP that may function in processing of RNA polymerase III transcripts (Chan & Tan, 1989).

More recently, attention has been called to the differentiation between antibodies to SSA/Ro60 in opposition to anti-Ro52/TRIM21 (Schulte-Pelkum et al, 2009). There are different clinical associations for each system, while both anti-SSA/Ro60 and anti-Ro52/TRIM21 are associated with primary Sjögren's syndrome and SLE, and anti-Ro52/TRIM21 alone is associated with scleroderma, myositis, and a number of other autoimmune diseases. Masked reactivities in up to 20% of tested sera were reported when both antigens were present in commercial ELISAs, pointing to the fact that each autoantibody should be tested separately.

Clinical Subsets of Systemic Lupus Erythematosus Associated with Antibodies to SS-A/Ro

Elevated levels of SS-A/Ro antibodies are related to several clinical autoimmune disorders, including subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus; neonatal lupus erythematosus syndrome with congenital heart block and cutaneous lesions; homozygous C2 and C4 deficiency with SLE-like disease; primary Sjögren's syndrome vasculitis, rheumatoid factor positivity, and severe systemic symptoms; ANA-negative SLE patients; and SLE with interstitial pneumonitis (Bylund & Nakamura, 1991). Precipitating antibodies to SS-A/Ro are seen in 65% to 95% of patients with anti–SS-A/Ro associated subsets, and more than 90% of the patients have anti–SS-A/Ro levels when detected by ELISA methods (Bylund & Nakamura, 1991).

Anti-Ku Antibodies

The Ku-antigen system consists of a pair of proteins called p70/p80 (Francoeur et al, 1986; Reeves & Sthoeger 1989; Reeves, 1992). These proteins have a high affinity for DNA and are known to be DNA-binding proteins, interacting covalently with the ends of native DNA. With the use of both immunoprecipitation and immunoblot assays, the Ku autoantibody was found in 10% of SLE sera and was not detected in 100 scleroderma sera examined. In studies with an enzyme immunoassay, Reeves showed that 39% of SLE, 55% of mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD), and 40% of scleroderma patients had low levels of antibody to Ku protein (Reeves, 1992).

Anti-Ki/SL Antibodies

Anti-Ki antibody was first reported in Japan (Tojo et al, 1981) and was observed in approximately 10% of SLE patients. A relationship was observed between anti-Ki and the clinical features of arthritis, pericarditis, and pulmonary hypertension in SLE patients. The Ki antigen was purified from rabbit thymus and had a molecular weight of 32 kD. Sakamoto and colleagues (1989) developed an ELISA and observed anti-Ki antibodies in 21% (30 out of 140) of SLE patients, while 11 of 140 were positive for anti-Ki by double-immunodiffusion tests.

Antibodies to Ribosomal P Proteins

Ten percent to 20% of SLE sera show autoantibodies targeting three ribosomal phosphoproteins of 15, 18 and 38 kD in WB assays. Association of anti-rRNPs with major central nervous system disorders in SLE, mainly psychotic symptoms, was reported in a retrospective study (Bonfa et al, 1987). No association was shown with cognitive impairment or depression in lupus patients. Significant differences in the prevalence of anti-rRNP are found among races. These antibodies occur in a higher frequency together with anti-Sm and anti-U1nRNP antibodies in SLE (Yalaoui et al, 2002). The etiopathogenic role of anti-rRNP in central nervous symptoms of lupus patients has no conclusive findings (Nakamura, 1997; Isshi & Hirohata, 1998). Observations in larger multicentric samples of SLE patients showed association of anti-rRNP antibodies with hemolytic anemia, leukopenia, alopecia, malar rash, proteinuria, and neurologic complications (Hoffman et al, 2004; Mahler et al, 2006). One study found correlation with disease activity (Haddouk et al, 2009). Anti–ribosomal P autoantibodies, due to their high specificity, are proposed to join other criteria for SLE diagnosis and classification.

Proliferating Cell Nuclear Antigen Multiprotein Complex

Antibodies to PCNA proteins are detected in 3% of patients with active SLE but show no other distinctive clinical associations (Miyachi et al, 1978; Kaneda et al, 2004; Mahler et al, 2012). A possible association with central nervous system features, like transverse myelitis, has been seen in our own patients (von Mühlen & Nakamura, unpublished results). The PCNA complex has been characterized as cell-cycle related, and PCNA antibodies have been useful probes in the study of agents regulating DNA replication, cell proliferation, and blast transformation.

Antiphospholipid Antibodies in SLE

The lupus anticoagulant/antiphospholipid antibody syndrome is characterized by the presence of circulating antibodies to phospholipids and clinical features of arterial and venous thrombosis, thrombocytopenia, hemolytic anemia, miscarriages, and several systemic symptoms (Gomez-Puerta & Cervera, 2014). Antiphospholipid antibodies have been found frequently in patients with SLE, and also in other disorders such as infectious diseases (Alarcón-Segovia et al, 1989; McNeil et al, 1992). Antiphospholipid antibodies are found in up to 60% of patients with SLE. This is a very heterogeneous family of antibodies, functionally and immunochemically (McNeil et al, 1992). Cardiolipin (anionic phospholipid) has been widely used for the detection of antiphospholipid antibodies. The majority of anticardiolipin antibodies cross-react with zwitterionic phospholipids. Antibodies to anionic phospholipids may be IgG or IgM, whereas antibodies to zwitterionic phospholipids are more frequently IgM.

Antibodies to phospholipids are identified in SLE patients in three ways (Alarcón-Segovia et al, 1992; Cohen et al, 2010): serologically false-positive test for syphilis by a positive Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL) test; the lupus anticoagulant assay, which is a prolongation of the kaolin partial thromboplastin time (KPTT) that is not corrected by normal plasma; and cardiolipin immunoassay with the use of cardiolipin or other negatively charged phospholipids as antigens and beta 2 glycoprotein I as a cofactor. Patients with SLE will usually react with a negatively charged phosphate group present in cardiolipin, phosphatidic acid, phosphatidylserine, or phosphatidylinositol.

Harris (Harris et al, 1983; Pierangeli et al, 2001; Pierangeli & Harris, 2005, 2008) convened international workshops to improve the precision and accuracy of antiphospholipid antibody immunoassays. Reference sera were prepared, and standard units (GPL and MPL) were defined. One GPL (MPL) unit is equivalent to 1 mg/mL of an affinity-purified standard IgG (IgM) sample. However, Lopez (Lopez et al, 1992) suggested that an IgA-specific assay for antiphospholipid antibody is important in assessing the antiphospholipid syndrome in patients with SLE (Andreoli et al, 2013; Murthy et al, 2013; Despierres et al, 2014; Cousins et al, 2015). A higher prevalence of the IgA isotype seems to be found in black persons.

Newly developed assays for beta 2 glycoprotein I autoantibodies seem to bring specificity to the findings, because it was reported that the beta 2 glycoprotein is the specific epitope for antiphospholipid autoantibodies (Obermoser et al, 2004). Furthermore, IgA antibodies targeting beta 2 glycoprotein I, or antibodies recognizing a complex of beta 2 GP I/oxLDL (oxydized low-density lipoprotein), seem to be pathogenic in atherosclerotic vascular disease (Ranzolin et al, 2004; Staub et al, 2006; Matsuura & Lopez, 2008). Domain 4 of the molecule seems to be the target for proatherosclerotic anti–beta 2 GP I autoantibodies, and domain 1 seems to be involved in the antiphospholipid syndrome, as demonstrated by our group in deletion mutants studies (Iverson et al, 2006).

CHRONIC DISCOID LUPUS AND OTHER CUTANEOUS VARIANTS

A benign form of lupus may present as "discoid" (coin- or disc-shaped) cutaneous lesions without symptoms of systemic disease. This disorder is called chronic discoid lupus erythematosus (CDLE) (Sontheimer & McCauliffe, 1990). The skin lesions of CDLE are persistent localized erythema, adherent scales, follicular plugging, telangiectasis, and atrophy (Wallace et al, 1992). Subacute cutaneous lupus erythematosus (SCLE), another similar skin condition, consists of papulosquamous or nonscarring lesions with a major association to SS-A/Ro autoantibodies. Also, additional variants of CDLE, such as lupus panniculitis (also called lupus profundus) and urticarial lupus, have been described (Sontheimer & McCauliffe, 1990; Al-Attia & Ahmed, 1998).

Wallace and colleagues (1992) defined CDLE as the fulfillment of the description of CDLE or SCLE, or one of the variants of SLE, in which the 1982 ACR/criteria for SLE are not met. Unfortunately, CDLE is a cutaneous autoimmune disorder that lacks any unifying diagnostic serological abnormality. It is a mild form of lupus erythematosus that uncommonly disseminates to SLE. Otherwise, there is considerable overlap between CDLE and SLE because up to 15% of patients with SLE have cutaneous discoid lesions. About 6% to 12% of patients with SLE had discoid lupus for a varying number of years before the onset of systemic disease (Wallace et al, 1992). Antinuclear antibodies are commonly found, with estimates of prevalence in discoid lupus from 6% to 50%. The sex ratio of discoid lupus (two females/one male) is much less biased toward females than the systemic form. Figure 52-2 depicts some clinical aspects of cutaneous disease in SLE.

DRUG-INDUCED LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS AND ANTIHISTONE ANTIBODIES

Characteristic of drug-induced lupus is the presence of histone autoantibodies. Histones are basic molecular proteins containing high molar ratios of positively charged amino acids, lysine, and arginine. Histones are found in eukaryotic cells closely associated with genomic DNA. The subunit of this histone-DNA complex is called a nucleosome, which has two molecules of each of the "core" histones (H2A, H2B, H3, and H4) and one molecule of H1, along with DNA of about 200 base pairs in length (Totoritis & Rubin, 1985; Rubin et al, 1986, 1995; Burlingame & Rubin, 1991; 1996; Rubin, 1999, 2015).

In the studies of drug-induced lupus, the liver enzyme acetyltransferase appears to play a major function (Woosley et al, 1978). Acetyltransferase is an enzyme that can acetylate drugs such as hydralazine and procainamide, playing an important role in detoxification and excretion of the drug. Patients with low levels of acetyltransferase were more prone to develop ANA and clinical symptoms than patients who were treated with hydralazine and had phenotypically high levels of acetyltransferase. Patients with high levels of enzyme and who were rapid acetylators were not immune to the development of ANA. These patients, however, took a longer and larger cumulative dose of hydralazine before developing disease. These findings concerning acetyltransferase phenotypes have been confirmed in patients treated with procainamide (Totoritis et al, 1988). Procainamide is the most common drug involved in drug-induced autoimmunity. Hydralazine, quinidine, and other drugs have also been implicated as causing drug-induced autoimmunity.

In drug-induced lupus, antibodies to single-stranded DNA and core histones are present. In SLE, on the other hand, antibodies to double-stranded native DNA, Sm, and U1nRNP antigens are often present, in addition to antibodies to histones. Procainamide is used to treat patients with cardiac arrhythmias, and most patients eventually develop antihistone antibodies. However, only 10% to 20% of procainamide-treated patients develop symptomatic autoimmune disease. Patients with symptomatic disease develop a unique type of IgG antihistone antibody, which, rather than reacting with individual histones, shows specific reactivity with the histone H2A–H2B dimer complex. Thus IgG anti–(H2A-H2B) is a useful diagnostic marker, with high sensitivity and specificity for symptomatic disease, in contrast to the benign form of procainamide-induced autoimmunity, with IgM antibodies to the individual histone. Fifty percent of all patients treated with procainamide developed ANAs after 1 year of treatment (Tan, 1989). The slow acetylators developed ANAs more rapidly than the rapid acetylators (Woosley et al, 1978). All patients on prolonged procainamide treatment developed a positive ANA response irrespective of acetylator phenotype.

ANTINUCLEOSOME ANTIBODIES

Because antihistone antibodies are found in many other conditions, more specific antibodies like antinucleosome (sometimes called antichromatin) are replacing assays for antihistones. Other names for antinucleosome antibodies are antideoxyribonucleoprotein (DNP) and anti–(H2A-H2B-DNA). They are found in 75% of all patients with SLE, in up to 100% of drug-induced lupus patients, and in 20% to 50% of patients with autoimmune hepatitis type I (lupoid hepatitis). In SLE patients, antinucleosome antibodies correlate better with kidney disease than anti-dsDNA (Massa et al, 1994; Burlingame & Rubin, 1996; Suer et al, 2004; Duzgun et al, 2007; Su et al, 2007; Tikly et al, 2007; Gomez-Puerta et al, 2008; Muller et al, 2008; Sardeto et al, 2012; Mehra & Fritzler, 2014), although recent emphasis for strong association with active lupus nephritis is being pushed toward the presence of antibodies to the first component of the classical complement cascade: anti-C1q autoantibodies (Tsirogianni et al, 2009). Nevertheless, there is specificity for lupus diagnosis and a clear association

Figure 52-2 **Typical cutaneous lesions in SLE. A,** Scarring discoid lesions. **B,** Finger vasculitis. **C,** Vasculitis with ulcers. **D,** Subacute cutaneous geographic lesions. **E,** Typical malar rash. **F,** Lupus panniculitis.

of antinucleosome antibodies with lupus disease activity in many publications (Su et al, 2007; Gomez-Puerta et al, 2008; Li et al, 2014).

SJÖGREN'S SYNDROME

Sjögren's syndrome (SS) is a chronic inflammatory exocrinopathy, an autoimmune disease marked by dryness of the eyes, mouth, and other mucous membranes (Mavragani & Moutsopoulos, 2014). The disease may evolve from localized exocrine gland involvement to a systemic disorder, as well as to B cell lymphoproliferative transformation. It is much more frequently found in women than in men, with an increasing prevalence throughout adult life. Often associated with SS is another rheumatic disease, such as RA, SLE, primary biliary cirrhosis, or systemic sclerosis (Box 52-3). The affected salivary or lacrimal glands are infiltrated with aggregates of lymphocytes. Extraglandular manifestations include lymphadenopathy, cutaneous vasculitis, interstitial pneumonitis, and peripheral neuropathy.

BOX 52-3

Frequent Clinical Associations with Sjögren's Syndrome

1. Rheumatoid arthritis
2. Systemic lupus erythematosus
3. Polydermatomyositis
4. Mixed connective tissue disease
5. Primary biliary cirrhosis
6. Necrotizing systemic vasculitis
7. Autoimmune thyroiditis
8. Chronic active hepatitis
9. Mixed cryoglobulinemia
10. Hypergammaglobulinemic purpura

The disease has been classified into (1) primary SS which is not associated with another connective tissue disease, with the sicca complex (keratoconjunctivitis sicca and xerostomia) as its hallmark feature, and (2) secondary SS in which RA or some other autoimmune disorder is present. Autoantibodies in SS are normally restricted to SS-A/Ro and SS-B/La antigens (Tan, 1989), but we have seen patients with other specificities alone, like anti-Golgi complex or anti-NuMA. The anti–SS-A/Ro and anti–SS-B/La are present in SLE but in lower prevalences than in SS. Clinical and laboratory characteristics of the disease are seen in Figure 52-3.

ANTI–SS-A/Ro AND ANTI–SS-B/La ANTIBODIES

Anti–SS-A/Ro and anti–SS-B/La are the most clinically important and best-characterized autoantibodies in SS (Chan & Andrade, 1992). The SS-A/Ro autoantigen was first identified as a specific precipitin in the Ouchterlony double-immunodiffusion assay and later shown to be the 60-kDa protein (Ro60) existing as ribonucleoprotein complexes with four small hY (human cytoplasmic) RNA molecules (Clark et al, 1969; Alspaugh & Tan, 1975; Wolin & Steitz, 1984). In antinuclear antibody assay performed in clinical laboratories, anti–SS-B/La and anti–SS-A/Ro are often reported as nuclear speckles and/or nucleolar staining. The cellular function for Y RNAs remains unknown, but Ro60 protein is currently postulated to play roles in small RNA quality control and the enhancement of cell survival following exposure to ultraviolet irradiation. Anti–SS-B/La antibodies were first defined by immunodiffusion in association with SS-A/Ro precipitins. SS-B/La is a distinct 48-kDa protein and associates with a variety of small RNAs derived from RNA polymerase III, including Ro hY RNAs, pre–5S RNA, pre-tRNAs, and many viral RNAs (Maraia & Bayfield, 2006). The SS-B/La protein has multiple functions, including as a transcription termination factor for RNA polymerase and a factor in mediating the correct ribosome translational start sites (Meerovitch et al, 1993). Anti–SS-B/La antibodies are almost invariably accompanied by anti–SS-A/Ro antibodies, reflecting the physical association of these molecules in SS-A/Ro and SS-B/La ribonucleoprotein particle complex, but anti–SS-A/Ro antibodies frequently occur in the absence of anti–SS-B/La antibodies.

It has been shown that most anti-Ro60 positive sera also react with a structurally unrelated 52-kDa protein (Ro52, also known as TRIM21) (Chan EKL, 1994; Schulte-Pelkum et al, 2009). There has been report of association of Ro60 and Ro52 via direct protein–protein interaction, but the interaction may be weak or transient and was not observed by other investigators. Ro52/TRIM21 is an E3 ubiquitin ligase (Espinosa et al, 2006; Wada & Kamitani, 2006). Thus it is possible that Ro60 and/or SS-B/La are substrates for Ro52-mediated ubiquitinylation and somehow they are stabilized during certain disease states and the complexes contribute to the formation of autoantibodies to these components.

The reported prevalence of anti–SS-A/Ro and SS-B/La antibodies depends on the method and sensitivity of detection. Overall, anti–SS-A/Ro antibodies occur in approximately 60% to 75% of patients with primary SS and are also observed in secondary SS (Table 52-2). Anti–SS-B/La antibodies have been reported to occur in up to 50% of primary SS patients. Locht and colleagues reported that among 321 SS patients, anti–SS-B/La antibodies were strongly correlated to organ involvement and cytopenias, and thus could serve as a prognostic marker in primary SS (Locht et al, 2008).

ANTIMUSCARINIC TYPE 3 RECEPTOR (M3R) AUTOANTIBODIES

The defective secretion in SS may be associated with the presence of autoantibodies to M3R, which were first described as anti–rat parotid gland M3R in sera of primary SS (Bacman et al, 1996; Yamamoto et al, 1996). Later studies also demonstrated the presence and functional/pathological roles of anti-M3R autoantibodies in human sera, as well as in animal models of SS (Robinson et al, 1998; Waterman et al, 2000; Cavill et al, 2004; Cha et al, 2006; Kovacs et al, 2008). The functional role of anti-M3R could explain why patients who are free of lymphocytic infiltration in the salivary glands still develop severe dryness.

Some of the controversies regarding anti-M3R autoantibodies lie in their prevalence and specificity. The prevalence of these receptors ranged from 9% to 90%, depending on the sensitivity of assay systems developed and targeted epitopes on M3R (Gao et al, 2004; Kovacs et al, 2005; Schegg et al, 2008). ELISA (or its variants) has been the most common screening method for this antibody, and linear peptides were not suitable for detection or inhibition studies, indicating that M3R epitopes are discontinuous or conformational (Cavill et al, 2002). In fact, the highest prevalence originated from a study utilizing GST-fusion recombinant peptides allowing dimerization of linear peptides, thus maintaining a native tertiary structure found in vivo (Kovacs et al, 2005). More important, it is still questionable whether anti-M3R binding is specific to M3R, as indicated by a study where antipeptide M3R (aa208-228) antibodies strongly bind to M1R (Schegg et al, 2008). Nonetheless, full mapping of M3R epitopes, improvement of sensitivity/specificity of assays, proper and well-defined selection of disease and healthy controls, and large patient-oriented studies will allow more consistent findings and thorough information on prevalence and specificity.

TABLE 52-2

Prevalence of Autoantibodies in Primary Sjögren's Syndrome

Autoantibodies	Prevalence in Primary Sjögren's Syndrome (%)
Anti–SS-A/Ro	60-75
Anti–SS-B/La	25-50
Anti-M3 muscarinic receptor	63
Anti–α-fodrin	40-70
Rheumatoid factor	70
NA14	14

Data from Dawson et al, 2005; Witte, 2005; Witte et al, 2007; von Mühlen & Tan, 1995; Dorner et al, 2004; Nozawa et al, 2009.

ANTI–α-FODRIN ANTIBODY

α-Fodrin is expressed ubiquitously in nonerythroid tissues and is not uniformly distributed along the cell membrane (Winkelmann & Forget, 1993). α-Fodrin is known to associate with membrane ion channels/pumps such as Na+/K+ ATPase in salivary glands. In humans it has also been reported that anti–α-fodrin antibody is predominantly detected in the sera from SS patients, suggesting that anti–α-fodrin autoantibody is valuable for the diagnosis of SS (Watanabe et al, 1999). The frequency of anti–α-fodrin antibodies in SS varies between 40% and 70% (Witte et al, 2007). Although anti–α-fodrin autoantibodies originally were described as SS-specific autoantibodies, subsequent data have shown that anti–α-fodrin autoantibodies are also present in 10% to 30% of patients with active inflammatory diseases, such as RA or SLE, and in 2% of healthy blood donors (Chen et al, 2007; Witte et al, 2007). Although it was concluded that anti–α-fodrin is clearly involved in the pathogenesis of murine models of SS, there were conflicting data regarding the prevalence and significance of anti–α-fodrin in human SS (Sordet et al, 2005; Witte, 2005). The frequency of anti–α-fodrin in SS is lower than previously reported, but there are some anti–α-fodrin positive SS patients who are negative for anti–SS-A/Ro (Ruiz-Tiscar et al, 2005). However, in a 2008 study using 321 primary SS patients, investigators reported that antibodies to α-fodrin were not diagnostically superior to conventional anti–SS-A/Ro and anti–SS-B/La testing (Locht et al, 2008). It is possible that antifodrin autoantibodies in SS may be more specific in Asians, or in specific Japanese populations, than others.

ANTIBODIES TO NUCLEAR PROTEIN NA14

NA14 was originally identified as a novel 14-kDa nuclear autoantigen recognized by an autoimmune serum from a patient with SS (Ramos-Morales et al, 1998). More recent reports showed that NA14 protein also localizes to centrosomes and plays an important role in cell division and

Figure 52-3 Clinical and laboratory characteristics of Sjögren's syndrome. A, Dry mouth and tongue. **B,** Parotid enlargement. **C,** Hypergammaglobulinemic purpura with photosensitivity (this patient with primary Sjögren's syndrome had a total IgG of 12 g/dL at the time this picture was taken). **D,** Fine speckled nuclear pattern in indirect immunofluorescence assay on HEp-2 cells, characteristic for the presence of anti-SSA/Ro autoantibodies.

proliferation (Pfannenschmid et al, 2003; Errico et al, 2004). Autoantibodies to NA14 were determined in patients with various rheumatic diseases from cohorts in both the United States and Japan (Nozawa et al, 2009). Anti-NA14 autoantibodies were observed most frequently in primary SS (13.6%). Interestingly, none of the secondary SS patients had autoantibodies to NA14. No differences were observed between patient cohorts in Japan and the United States. A few anti-NA14 positive sera were observed in other rheumatic diseases like SLE, Scl, and PM/DM. Our data showed that anti-NA14 antibodies appeared independently of anti–SS-A/Ro and anti–SS-B/La antibodies, and 36.4% (4 out of 11) of anti-NA14 positive sera were negative for anti–SS-A/Ro and anti–SS-B/La antibodies. The detection of anti-NA14 antibodies may provide unique information on primary SS. Future studies will be needed to examine their correlation with clinical activity.

SYSTEMIC SCLEROSIS

Systemic sclerosis Scl is a multisystem connective tissue disorder of unknown etiology in which vascular lesions and tissue fibrosis are prominent features (Steen, 2008). Scl patients spontaneously produce autoantibodies against nuclear, nucleolar, mitochondrial, and other cytoplasmic antigens, which are predictive (i.e., antedate full features of the disease) and are of diagnostic and prognostic significance (Harris & Rosen, 2003; Mehra et al, 2013). Typically, scleroderma sera have a relatively restricted heterogeneity and limited overlap of autoantibody specificities (Table 52-3).

As captured in the recently revised classification criteria of Scl (van den Hoogen et al, 2013), Scl can be phenotypically classified into two broad clinical categories: diffuse cutaneous Scl (dcScl) and limited cutaneous Scl (lcScl). Patients with dcScl can have rapidly progressive disease affecting the distal and proximal extremities and the trunk, and are at greater risk for early visceral involvement. Included in the lcScl category are patients with the CREST (**C**alcinosis cutis, **R**aynaud's phenomenon, **E**sophageal dysmotility, **S**clerodactyly, and **T**elangiectasia) syndrome, a subset that accounts for 20% to 30% of all scleroderma patients (Mehra et al, 2013). Patients with the lcScl and the CREST variant have cutaneous involvement confined to the distal extremities and face and tend to have a better prognosis and clinical course than those with dcScl (Fig. 52-4).

TABLE 52-3
Autoantigens and Autoantibodies in Scleroderma

Autoantigen	Molecular Structure	Autoantibody Frequency
Scl-70	100-kD native and 70-kD degradation product; DNA topoisomerase I	75% in diffuse scleroderma; 20%-59% in all patients; 13% in CREST
Centromere	Proteins 17, 80, and 140 kD; localized at inner and outer kinetochore plates	57%-82% in CREST; 8% in diffuse form
RNA Pol I	RNA Pol I complex of subunit proteins, 210-211 kD	4%-30% in scleroderma; 13% in diffuse form
RNA Pol II	Transcripts mRNA	4%
RNA Pol III	Transcripts 5S rRNA, tRNA	23% in scleroderma; 45% in diffuse form; 6% in CREST
Fibrillarin	Protein 34 kD, component of U3 RNP particle	6%-8%; 5% in diffuse form; 10% in CREST
U1nRNP	Spliceosome complex	2%-5% in all patients; 24% in PM/scleroderma overlap
PM-Scl	Complex of 11 proteins, 110-120 kD	4%-11%; 24% in PM/scleroderma overlap
Ku	DNA-binding protein	1%-14% in scleroderma; 26%-55% in PM/scleroderma overlap
Th/To	Protein 40 kD, complexes with 7S and 8S RNAs	1%-13% in scleroderma; 1%-11% in diffuse form; 8%-19% in CREST; up to 3% in PM/scleroderma overlap
NOR-90	Protein 90 kD, human upstream binding factor, localized in nucleolus organizer region	Rare

CENTROMERE PROTEIN AUTOANTIGENS

Autoantibodies to centromere protein (CENP) autoantigens were initially detected by indirect immunofluorescence microscopy using tissue culture cells as substrate where they were localized to the kinetochore region of the condensing metaphase chromosomes (Fritzler et al, 1980; Moroi et al, 1980). In immunoblotting studies, the CENP autoantigens consist of three main 19-kDa (CENP-A), 84-kDa (CENP-B), and 120-kDa (CENP-C) components. Autoantibodies to any of the individual CENPs can be found in Scl sera, but anti–CENP-B is most commonly observed. Autoantibodies to CENPs are the most prevalent in Scl sera seen in up to 40% of unselected Scl cohorts, although they are seen in up to 85% of the lcScl or CREST subsets (Steen, 2005; Mehra et al, 2013). Further, anti-CENP have been shown to predict the onset of Scl being found in up to 25% of patients with idiopathic Raynaud's phenomenon and other individual features of CREST (Rothfield, 1992). In Scl anti-CENP have been associated with lower overall disease severity; increased chronological and older age at disease onset; more commonly women; more likely to have lcScl and lower skin scores; less likely to have finger ulcers, digital tuft resorption, or finger contractures; more likely to have pulmonary hypertension; and less likely to have interstitial lung disease, scleroderma renal crisis, inflammatory arthritis, or inflammatory myositis (Hudson et al, 2012a).

ANTIBODIES TO TOPOISOMERASE I (Scl-70)

A second major class of autoantibodies in Scl are directed against the 100-kDa DNA topoisomerase I (topo-I) protein (Mehra et al, 2013). Topo-I was initially reported as a 70-kDa protein referred to as Scl-70, but this was eventually determined to be a degradation product of the native topo-I (Tan, 1989). By IIF, topo-I is typically localized in punctate foci in the nucleoplasm and nucleolus of HEp-2 cells. In double immunodiffusion studies, autoantibodies to topo-I were detected in 20% of unselected Scl patients (Bernstein et al, 1982) and in 75% of patients with dcScl (Jarzabek-Chorzelska et al, 1986). More recent studies using advanced and high throughput diagnostic assays have shown that the specificity of anti–topo-I antibodies for Scl is >90% and the frequency ranges from ~10% to 40% in adult Scl (Mehra et al, 2013).

In general, anti–topo-I autoantibodies have been associated with a poorer prognosis, increased mortality, pulmonary fibrosis (PF), and musculoskeletal and cardiac involvement (Mehra et al, 2013). Analysis of clinical progression in Scl patients with digital ulcers showed that anti–topo-I patients developed Raynaud's phenomenon earlier, were younger at the onset of the first digital ulcer, and had double the rate of lung fibrosis as compared with anti-CENP patients (Denton et al, 2012). The clinical utility of serial anti–topo-I measurements is controversial, although they may have value as a biomarker of disease activity and as an indicator of the presence of flexion contractures and of renal vascular damage, as measured by Doppler ultrasonography (reviewed in Mehra et al, 2013).

ANTIBODIES TO RNA POLYMERASES

Three RNA polymerases (RNAP-I, RNAP-II, RNAP-III) catalyze the transcription of various genes into RNA (Kuwana et al, 1993). The prevalence of anti-RNAP in Scl ranges from 5% to 30%, with wide geographic variation (Mehra et al, 2013). Autoantibodies to RNAP I and RNAP III (anti–RNAP I and III) often coexist in the same Scl patient, a pattern of autoantibody expression that is specific for Scl (Mehra et al, 2013). Although early studies suggested that RNAP autoantibodies might be correlated with a speckled nucleolar pattern of IIF staining, a recent study found that antibodies to RNAP-III were not consistently associated with such an IIF pattern on commercially available HEp-2 cell substrates (Yamasaki et al, 2006). This might be explained when it is appreciated that anti-RNAP can overlap with a variety of other autoantibodies (Mehra et al, 2013). Thus the IIF pattern is not a sensitive marker for anti–RNAP-III, and more sensitive immunoassays such as ELISA or CIA (chemiluminescent immunoassay) may be more desirable.

Autoantibodies to RNAP II in isolation are uncommon and are not entirely specific for Scl because they are also detected in SLE and overlap syndromes (Satoh et al, 1994; Parker et al, 2008). The presence of both anti–RNAP I and anti–RNAP III is associated with dcScl (Steen, 2005) and, in some Scl cohorts, a higher risk for renal crisis and the development of malignancy (Mehra et al, 2013). Despite their reputed association with renal involvement, the survival rate in patients with anti-RNAP is better than in patients with anti–topo-I or anti-U3RNP (fibrillarin) (Steen, 2005). Other than possible renal disease, absolute levels of anti-RNAP at inception or during the disease course do not predict other organ complications or disease outcome, although there was some correlation with the severity of skin involvement (Satoh et al, 2009b). It has also been observed that the expression of RNAP III is enhanced in tumors from patients with RNAP autoantibodies, suggesting that tumor antigen expression and scleroderma autoantibodies may be associated (Wenzel, 2002; Wooten, 2008; Shah et al, 2010, 2015; Honma et al, 2012).

Th/To AUTOANTIGEN

The Th/To autoantigen is a multiprotein-RNA complex (human RNase MRP complex) consisting of a catalytic RNA and at least 10 protein components (Mahler et al, 2015). RNase MRP is an endoribonuclease that cleaves various RNAs, including ribosomal, messenger, and mitochondrial RNAs (Van Eenennaam et al, 2002). Almost all protein components of the RNase MRP complex have been identified as autoantibody targets in SARD sera. Rpp25 (ribonuclease P protein subunit p25), a 25-kDa protein subunit of RNase P (Mahler et al, 2013) and hPop1 have been described as the primary Th/To autoantigens (Van Eenennaam et al, 2002; Mahler et al, 2015).

Historically, anti-Th/To antibodies have been detected by immunoprecipitation (IP) (Ceribelli et al, 2010), although a commercial line immunoassay (LIA) (Bonroy et al, 2012; Villalta et al, 2012) and an IP real-time PCR assay have become available and were evaluated (Ceribelli et al, 2012b). A shortcoming of the LIA, which is currently based on the hPop1 autoantigen, is that a number of anti-Th/To antibodies as identified by IP were missed by that immunoassay. While early studies focused on hPop1, it was eventually shown by ELISA, CIA, and other assays that Rpp25 was probably a more important autoantigenic component of the Th/To complex (Van Eenennaam et al, 2002; Mahler et al, 2013; Muro et al, 2013).

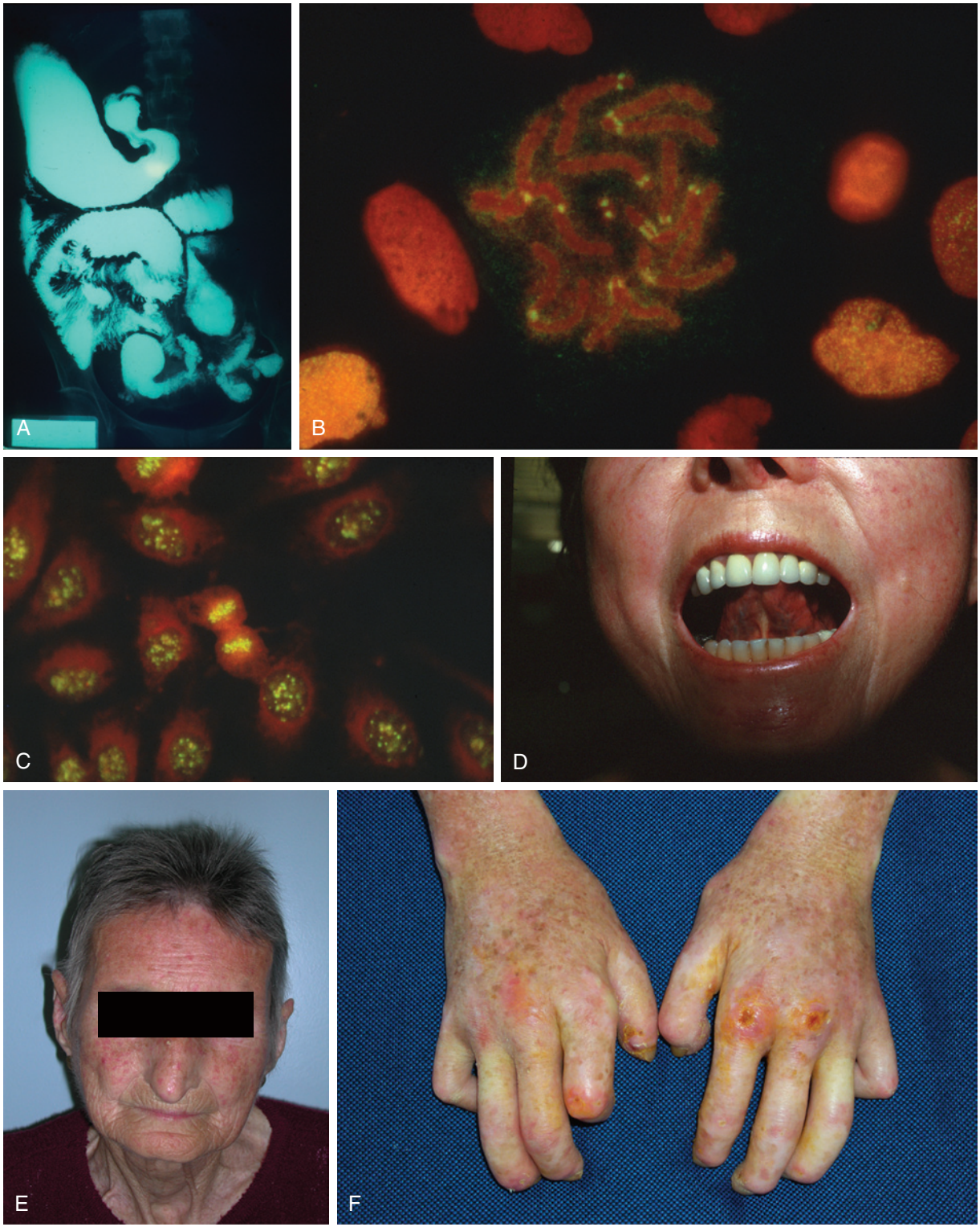


Figure 52-4 **Systemic sclerosis (scleroderma): Clinical and laboratory aspects. A,** Intestinal malabsorption radiologic study showing diffuse dilation and hypoperistaltic waves. **B,** Centromere decoration in rat Indian Muntjac preparation. **C,** Centromeric pattern in indirect immunfluorescence assay on HEp-2 cells. **D,** Collagen deposition brings thickness to the lingual frenulum. **E,** Typical facial appearance in scleroderma: telangiectasias, lack of expression, thin lips and nose. **F,** Advanced sclerodactyly.

Although described over 20 years ago, the clinical associations of anti-Th/To antibodies are not fully or clearly established. They have a prevalence ranging from 1% to 13% in Scl sera and have been associated with lcScl (Mahler et al, 2015). In a larger cohort of Scl patients preselected by autoantibody reactivity, anti-Th/To and anti-Rpp25 antibodies were associated with interstitial lung disease and abnormal nailfold capillaroscopy (Mahler et al, 2014d). In a study of an Italian Scl cohort that used a sensitive IP assay, the prevalence of anti-Th/To was 3.7% and associated with the development of pericarditis and interstitial lung disease, although impairment of pulmonary function was mild and they did not develop pulmonary arterial hypertension (Ceribelli et al, 2010). This same study also reported that anti-Th/To antibodies were present in 57% of antinucleolar antibody-positive Scl patients and were associated with a better prognosis (Ceribelli et al, 2010). It has also been noted that autoantibodies to Rpp25 are the most common autoantibodies in Scl sera that do not have autoantibodies to other targets as detected by commercially available immunoassays (Mahler et al, 2014d). In addition to Scl a few reports have described anti-Th/To antibodies in a sine Scl subset with

pulmonary fibrosis (Fischer et al, 2006), rheumatoid arthritis (RA) and interstitial lung disease (Mahler et al, 2015). Inconsistencies in the association of anti-Th/To with other clinical features include small numbers of anti-Th/To positive patients, differences in the immunoassays employed, differences in ethnicity and environment of the patients, and other recruitment biases (Mahler et al, 2015). Like other Scl-related autoantibodies, in patients with Raynaud's phenomenon anti-Th/To antibodies are risk factors that are predictive of emerging Scl (Koenig et al, 2008).

In conclusion, autoantibodies to the Th/To autoantigen are most commonly reactive with Rpp25 and then hPop. These autoantibodies are not uniformly associated with a specific ANA IIF pattern but are important in identifying Scl patients who have been considered to be negative for Scl-specific or Scl-associated antibodies by widely available commercial assays.

ANTIBODIES TO NUCLEOLAR ANTIGEN FIBRILLARIN (U3-snoRNP)

The fibrillarin terminology is related to the observation that by IIF on HEp-2 cells, the autoantigen is localized to the dense fibrillar component of nucleoli. Fibrillarin is the 34-kDa major autoantigen of the small nucleolar anti-U3RNP (snoRNP) macromolecular complex (Smith & Steitz, 1997). While antifibrillarin antibodies are usually considered a highly specific marker for Scl, they are found in less than 10% of these patients. Their detection using advanced diagnostic platforms has been challenging. Other immunoassays that utilize immunoprecipitation of radiolabeled native or recombinant proteins are available in only a few research laboratories. While many studies have indicated that antifibrillarin antibodies are independently from anti-CENP, anti–topo-I, and anti-RNAP (Walker & Fritzler, 2007), when a commercially available LIA was used, they were often seen together with other autoantibodies (Mehra et al, 2013). Thus the detection of antifibrillarin antibodies that are based on first identifying the "clumpy" nucleolar IIF pattern (Reimer et al, 1988) may miss a number of sera that contain these autoantibodies.

Antifibrillarin autoantibodies were more frequently found in African American patients than in Caucasian/Asian Scl patients (Walker & Fritzler, 2007; Mehra et al, 2013) and have been associated with muscle involvement, more severe disease, a poorer prognosis in African Scl subjects than in Caucasian patients (Aggarwal et al, 2009), and an increased risk of pulmonary hypertension (Tormey et al, 2001; Aggarwal et al, 2009). African American Scl patients with antifibrillarin antibodies had a younger age of disease onset and a higher frequency of digital ulcers, pericarditis, and severe lower gastrointestinal involvement (Sharif et al, 2011).

In animal models, the etiology of antifibrillarin antibodies has been linked to mercury, silver, and other heavy metal exposures (Pollard et al, 2010). A study of a small cohort of antifibrillarin-positive Scl patients found that they had higher levels of urinary mercury, and in one case the affected Scl patient was a dental hygienist, where exposure to mercury may have been an occupational risk factor (Arnett et al, 2000). In addition, fibrillarin was overexpressed in scleroderma fibroblasts, suggesting an autoantigen source to initiate and maintain a B cell response (Yang et al, 2003).

ANTIBODIES TO PM/Scl

The PM/Scl autoantigen includes up to 16 proteins, of which the 75- and 100-kDa proteins have been identified as the major autoantibody targets (Brouwer et al, 2002; Mahler & Raijmakers, 2007). IIF staining with anti-PM/Scl often, but not invariably, yields a homogeneous nucleolar pattern accompanied by fine speckling of the nucleoplasm (Mahler & Raijmakers, 2007). A primary target is an epitope in the PM1-alpha peptide (Mahler et al, 2005; Mahler & Fritzler, 2009; D'Aoust et al, 2014). Anti-PM/Scl antibodies are found in 4% to 11% of Scl patients, and the 75-kDa protein is the most common target (Raijmakers et al, 2004; Mahler et al, 2005). Anti-PM/Scl positivity has been associated with an increased risk of pulmonary fibrosis and digital ulceration, although these antibodies may confer relative protection against pulmonary arterial hypertension and lower gastrointestinal involvement (Mahler & Raijmakers, 2007; Hanke et al, 2009). Anti-PM/Scl-75 antibodies were also reported to identify patients with dcScl and overlap syndromes, whereas anti-PM/Scl-100 antibodies were detected mainly in patients with overlap syndromes (Hanke et al, 2009). Accordingly, anti-PM/Scl antibodies are not particularly specific for Scl: Up to 55% of anti-PM/Scl-positive patients reportedly have isolated polymyositis/dermatomyositis associated with features of SLE and/or Sjögren's syndrome (Hanke et al, 2009).

ANTIBODIES TARGETING THE NUCLEOLAR ORGANIZING REGION (NOR)

NOR-90 antibodies recognize the RNA polymerase I transcription factor hUBF (human upstream binding factor) in the fibrillar center of the nucleolus (Chan et al, 1991). NORs are regions where the nucleolus re-forms after mitosis along with clusters of ribosomal RNA genes and sites where Scl-70 U3-RNA/fibrillarin, NOR-90, and RNA polymerase I antigens can be detected (Fritzler et al, 1995; von Mühlen & Tan, 1995; Dagher et al, 2002). Anti-hUBF show no specific clinical associations in some series (Wielosz et al, 2014), although they have been associated with lcScl, mild internal organ involvement, and a favorable prognosis (Dagher et al, 2002). Anti-hUBF are not specific for Scl because they are found in other SARDs such as Raynaud's disease, rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, and Sjögren's syndrome, and also in malignancies (Fujii et al, 1992; Imai et al, 1994; Fritzler et al, 1995).

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is a systemic autoimmune disorder characterized by chronic, symmetric, and erosive arthritis of the peripheral joints (Scott et al, 2010). A large percentage of patients have elevated titers of serum rheumatoid factors. There may be associated nonarticular manifestations, such as subcutaneous nodules, vasculitis, interstitial fibrosis, and normochromic, normocytic anemia. Sjögren's and Felty's syndromes may occur in RA. The primary cause of the disease is unknown. RA is associated with several autoantibodies, which can serve as diagnostic and prognostic markers (Aho et al, 1994; Firestein, 2003; Pincus et al, 2014) (Fig. 52-5). These include the following:

1. Rheumatoid factor (RF): IgA, IgG, IgM
2. Antifillagrin antibodies (also known as anticitrullinated proteins antibodies, ACPA; Table 52-4):
   a. Antikeratin antibodies (AKA)
   b. Antiperinuclear factor (APF)
   c. Antibodies to citrullinated peptides (many times referred to as anti-CCP, anticyclic citrullinated peptide)
   d. Anti-Sa antibodies, targeting citrullinated vimentin (Rodriguez-Mahou et al, 2006)
3. Anti-RA33
4. Anticarbamylated protein (CarP) antibodies.

They all may possibly precede the onset of clinical RA (Klareskog et al, 2004; Bos et al, 2014; Gan et al, 2015).

RHEUMATOID FACTOR

This antibody is directed against the Fc portion of the IgG molecule. Studies of monoclonal and polyclonal RF have shown polyreactive RF with binding specificity for substances other than IgG, such as nuclear components. The polyreactive RF is usually of the IgM class with low affinity, ensuing from an antigen-driven process inside the joints of RA patients

TABLE 52-4
Major Autoantibodies in Rheumatoid Arthritis

	IgM RF	APF IIF	Anti-CCP 1st-gen. ELISA	Anti-CCP 2nd-gen. ELISA	Anti-Sa	Anti-carbamylated Proteins
Year (introduction)	1940	1964	1998	2002	2006	2011
Sensitivity	66%-85%	39%-87%	68%	73%	42%	45%
Specificity	72%	73%-99%	90%-98%	95%-98%	92%-98%	unknown

APF, Antiperinuclear factor; *RF,* rheumatoid factor; *CCP,* cyclic citrullinated peptide. See text for references.

Figure 52-5 **Rheumatoid arthritis with antiperinuclear factor. A,** Negative preparation for antiperinuclear factor (APF) using oral mucosa cells as substrate in indirect immunofluorescence. **B,** Positive preparation for APF (note dense homogeneous granules around nuclei counterstained with ethidium bromide [orange color]). **C,** Subcutaneous nodules in elbow region, common in seropositive RA. **D,** Episcleritis in RA. **E,** Proximal interphalangeal joint synovitis of the third finger in juvenile RA. **F,** Typical hand appearance in adult RA, with intrinsic muscles atrophy and cubital deviation of fingers.

(van Esch et al, 2002). RF is not specific for RA and is often seen in cases of chronic infections and other systemic inflammatory conditions. In addition to the common IgM RF, both IgA RF and IgG RF have been detected (Bharadwaj et al, 1999; Dorner et al, 2004). IgA RF has been related to more severe disease with erosions (Houssien et al, 1997). The group of RFs were not proved to be involved in disease pathogenesis (Smolen & Steiner, 1998; Dorner et al, 2004; Liao et al, 2011). The classic Waaler-Rose test (Rose et al, 1948; Waaler, 2007) is not used anymore because it does not add diagnostic value for RA. Around 15% of RA patients do not show serum autoantibodies, the so-called seronegative RA. This subset of disease may also encompass patients with severe joint and systemic symptoms (Ajeganova & Huizinga, 2015).

ANTIKERATIN ANTIBODY (AKA)

The antibody reacts against the stratum corneum of rat esophagus (Young et al, 1979). AKA is a fairly specific but not very sensitive marker for RA. The occurrence of positive reactions is 36% to 59% in RA sera and 0% to 3% in normal, healthy individuals (Aho et al, 1994). Most antikeratin positive sera are also reactive with antiperinuclear factor, suggesting that both antigens share some similarities. Actually, it was demonstrated that AKA react with water-soluble acidic-neutral isoforms of fillagrin in the epidermis, and molecular forms of (pro)fillagrin in the rat esophagus epithelium, instead of cytokeratin (Girbal et al, 1993; Simon et al, 1993; Sebbag et al, 2004).

ANTIPERINUCLEAR FACTOR (APF)

This antibody is reactive with perinuclear keratohyalin granules of buccal mucosa cells (Nienhuis & Mandema, 1964). The amino acid citrulline seems to be an essential component in epitopes recognized by these autoantibodies (Schellekens et al, 1998). This immunofluorescence test is sensitive but less specific than AKA in RA patients. APF-positive tests in RA patients have been reported to be from 49% to 87% (Aho et al, 1994; Janssens et al, 1988) and up to 5% in other connective tissue diseases or in normal controls. Both AKA and APF have been described in early seronegative RA, bringing a clear improvement in the diagnosis of the disease.

ANTICITRULLINATED PEPTIDES (ANTI-CCP/ACPA)

Antibodies to citrullinated peptides detected by ELISA constitute early, specific markers for RA (Sebbag et al, 2004; van Venrooij et al, 2006; Zendman et al, 2006; Silveira et al, 2007; van Venrooij et al, 2008; Wiik et al, 2010; van Venrooij et al, 2011). The antigen used in most assays is citrullinated fillagrin. The unusual amino acid citrulline is generated by action of the enzyme peptidyl arginine deiminase (PAD, mainly isoform 4), which generates a posttranslational modification on peptides containing arginine. It was recently shown that autoantibodies to citrullinated proteins acquire a proinflammatory Fc glycosylation phenotype before onset of RA (Rombouts et al, 2015).

A second-generation ELISA is claimed to reach 98% specificity for the diagnosis of RA, with 70% sensitivity, major improvements over the RF test (Lee & Schur, 2003; Sebbag et al, 2004). Furthermore, anti-CCP antibodies can be detected in 50% of patients with early RA, at a time when RF is negative, allowing for improved diagnosis and early specific treatment, with major associations to tobacco smoking and the so-called "shared epitope" genetic marker (Lee et al, 2007, 2009; Hensvold et al, 2015). Many series in the literature also point to associations with erosive, more severe, and more progressive disease (Forslind et al, 2004; Kastbom et al, 2004; Sebbag et al, 2004; Soderlin et al, 2004; Alexiou et al, 2008), with increased relapse rates (Haschka et al, 2015) and mortality (Humphreys et al, 2014).

Anti-CCP antibodies are sometimes found in other clinical conditions, such as viral infections (mainly hepatitis C), Lyme disease, Graves' disease, SLE, and Sjögren's syndrome (both with associated erosive articular disease) (Payet et al, 2014). Children with juvenile RA generally do not benefit from this laboratory test because its sensitivity is only 0.2% to 3%. Positive results are seen in the polyarticular, RF positive subset in children that commonly evolve to the erosive, adult form of RA (Low et al, 2004).

On the other hand, anti-CCP autoantibodies may better discriminate between patients with rheumatoid arthritis and patients with polyarticular manifestations associated with hepatitis C virus infection (Bombardieri et al, 2004). In 2010, the American College of Rheumatology and the European League Against Rheumatism established new classification criteria for RA (Aletaha et al, 2010), in which anticitrullinated protein antibodies (ACPA) are an essential serologic component.

ANTI-RA33

Hassfeld and colleagues reported an antinuclear antibody (anti-RA33) that may be specific for RA (Hassfeld et al, 1989; 1993; 1998). From extracts of HeLa cells, an antigen of approximately 33 kD was found to react with 36% of 95 sera from RA patients and with only 1 of 170 control patients. The antigen was termed *RA33*, and the autoantibody may recognize the A2 component of heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein (Steiner et al, 1992). Immunoblot analyses with soluble extracts from HeLa cells showed an autoantibody targeting a 33-kD antigen (anti-RA33) in 30% of Austrian RA patients and none in patients with ankylosing spondylitis or psoriatic arthritis (Aho et al, 1994). However, the prevalence of anti-RA33 in Finnish RA was found to be a low 6%. Anti-RA33 autoantibodies may also be found in mixed connective tissue disease and in SLE (Steiner et al, 1996).

ANTICARBAMYLATED PROTEIN ANTIBODIES (ANTI-CarP)

Carbamylation is a nonenzymatic process induced by urea or cyanides in tobacco. A homologous citrulline structure, named homocitrulline, is formed from lysine, which could drive autoimmunity in genetically predisposed individuals (Mydel et al, 2010; Feist & Steiner, 2014). Autoantibodies to posttranslationally modified, carbamylated proteins (CarP) were described in 2011 (Shi et al, 2011), with some important discoveries: There was no cross-reactivity with citrullinated peptides; patients who had anti-CarP antibodies but were ACPA negative had severe refractory disease; and a novel physiopathogenic process was described for RA (Shi et al, 2014). Prevalence was 16% anti-CarP IgG-positive and 30% anti-CarP IgA-positive in individuals in ACPA-negative patients (Shi et al, 2011). A recent large cohort did not detect any association of anti-CarP antibodies with smoking (Jiang et al, 2014). There is some evidence that anti-CarP may be a biomarker for RA activity and predicts joint damage (Yee et al, 2015). Anti-CarP derived from fetal calf serum and anti-CarP derived from fibrinogen antibodies may precede the onset of RA (Gan et al, 2015).

IDIOPATHIC INFLAMMATORY MYOPATHIES: POLYMYOSITIS AND DERMATOMYOSITIS

Autoantibodies have shown increasing clinical value as biomarkers in the diagnosis of polymyositis (PM) and dermatomyositis (DM), collectively referred to as idiopathic inflammatory myopathies (IIM) (Betteridge et al, 2011; Mammen, 2011; Rider & Miller, 2011) (Table 52-5). While progress has been made from the outdated Bohan and Peter classification criteria for IIM (Bohan & Peter, 1975a; 1975b), wide international consensus is yet to be achieved (Mahler et al, 2014b). Dermatomyositis (DM) is a major clinical subset of IIM, and both the typical DM rash and the presence of perifascicular muscle atrophy have been traditionally regarded as specific findings for this diagnosis (Troyanov et al, 2014). There is wide geographical variation in the frequency of DM: Central and South American populations have a much higher frequency of DM than North America or Europe, leading to international consensus that PM (juvenile and adult) and DM (juvenile and adult) are regarded as the consensus clinical subsets and that the presence of the DM rash classifies a patient as having DM (Oddis et al, 2005). More recently, this classification has been challenged and a new one proposed based on vascular pathology (or "myovasculopathy"): immune myopathy with perimysial pathology as one subset, the other associated with damage to intermediate-size vessels, capillary loss, membrane attack complex deposition on capillaries, and mitochondrial abnormalities (Troyanov et al, 2014). A third subset of DM is the paradoxical adermatopathic DM or possible DM sine dermatitis (Hoogendijk et al, 2004).

Most autoantibodies in IIM sera are directed to intracellular proteins and, based on their specificity, can be grouped into myositis-specific (MSA) and myositis-associated autoantibodies (MAA) (Ghirardello et al, 2013; Mahler et al, 2014b). MSA and MAA are increasingly used for classifying, diagnosing, and defining clinical subsets of IIM. Among the MSAs are autoantibodies against a group of proteins known as aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases (ARS) and others directed against signal recognition particle (SRP), 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme (HMGCR), chromodomain helicase DNA binding protein 4 (Mi-2), SAE/small ubiquitin-related modifier (SUMO-1), MJ/ nuclear matrix protein 2 (NXP2), melanoma differentiation-associated gene 5 (MDA5), clinically amyopathic dermatomyositis p140 (CADM-140), and transcription intermediary factor (TIF1-) gamma (p155/140) (Betteridge et al, 2011; Mammen, 2011; Ghirardello et al, 2013).

AMINOACYL-tRNA SYNTHETASES (ARS)

Autoantibodies to ARS components include those directed to Jo-1 (histidyl), PL-7 (threonyl), PL-12 (alanyl), OJ (isoleucyl), EJ (glycyl), KS (asparaginyl), Zo (phenylalanyl), and Ha (tyrosyl) (Ghirardello et al, 2013; Mahler et al, 2014b). This nomenclature is primarily based on the initials or the name of the index IIM patient (Mahler & Fritzler, 2010). ARS catalyze the ATP-dependent binding of a single amino acid to its specific tRNA during protein translation. Anti–Jo-1 (histidyl tRNA synthetase) is the most prevalent of the ARS autoantibodies, found in 15% to 30% of patients with polymyositis (PM), in 60% to 70% of patients with interstitial lung disease (ILD but rarely in DM, including juvenile DM), or other systemic autoimmune rheumatic diseases (SARDs) (Mahler & Fritzler, 2010; Ghirardello et al, 2013). An association of anti–Jo-1 autoantibodies with clinical synovitis was recently reported (Klein et al, 2014). The other ARS autoantibodies have a prevalence of less than 5% in IIM.

Because the vast majority of studies found anti-ARS autoantibodies only in patients with IIM and not in other SARDs, it was concluded that anti-ARS autoantibodies are myositis specific (Ghirardello et al, 2013; Mahler et al, 2014b). Early on, it was appreciated that anti-ARS were present in the preclinical phase of the disease and predicted clinical

TABLE 52-5
Autoantigens and Autoantibodies in Polymyositis and Dermatomyositis

Autoantigen	Molecular Structure	Antibody Frequency
Jo-1	Histidyl tRNA synthetase protein, 52 kD	23%-36% in PM; 60%-70% in ILD subset
PL-7	Threonyl tRNA synthetase protein, 80 kD	4% in PM
PL-12	Alanyl tRNA synthetase protein, 110 kD	3% in PM
Zo	Phenylalanyl-tRNA synthetase	<3% in PM
YRS	Tyrosyl-tRNA synthetase	<3% in PM
KS	Asparaginyl-tRNA synthetase	<3% in PM
EJ	Glycyl-tRNA synthetase	<3% in PM
OJ	Isoleucyl-tRNA synthetase	<3% in PM
MDA5/CADM-140	IFN-induced melanoma differentiation-associated gene 5	20%-30% in Asian amyopathic DM patients and ILD
Mi-2	Nuclear protein complex, proteins 53 and 61 kD	15%-35% in PM; 5%-9% in DM
Signal recognition particle (SRP)	54-kD protein complexed with 7 SL RNA	4%-8% in PM; does not occur in DM
PM-Scl	Complex of 11 proteins,110-120 KD	8%-12% in PM; 25% in PM/scleroderma overlap
U1nRNP	Spliceosome complex	4%-17% in PM/DM
SAE	Small ubiquitin-like modifier activating enzyme	4% in myositis patients, 8% in DM
p155/p140 (TIF1 alpha/gamma)	p155-TIF1-gama (involved in nuclear transcription and cellular differentiation)	21% of myositis patients, 75% in adult DM associated with cancer
HMGCR	200/100 kDa proteins: 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase	Statin-related myopathy
MJ/NXP2	Nuclear matrix protein, NXP2/MORC3	25% in juvenile DM

ILD, Interstitial lung disease.
Data from Tan, Chan et al. 1988; Nakamura and Tan 1992; von Mühlen and Tan 1995; Targoff 2006; Gunawardena, Betteridge et al. 2008; Gunawardena, Betteridge et al. 2009a; Mammen 2014.

outcomes of IIM (Miller et al, 1990). Later, it became evident that anti-ARS autoantibodies characterize a distinct IIM clinical phenotype, which is referred to as the anti-synthetase syndrome (aSS). Hence, anti-ARS autoantibodies are the serological hallmarks of the aSS, which is characterized by inflammatory myopathy and multiple organ involvement, particularly interstitial lung disease. aSS is often accompanied by nonerosive arthritis, Raynaud's phenomenon, "mechanic's hands," skin rashes, sicca syndrome, and constitutional symptoms, such as fever. Each of the anti-ARS fine-specificities are reported to be associated with heterogeneous disease expression and severity (Aggarwal et al, 2014), in which lung and joint involvement is prominent early in the course of the disease. Disease progression and prognosis are predominantly affected by the extent and progression of lung involvement; myositis may only be present as a subclinical feature in a significant number of the non-Jo-1 subsets (Ghirardello et al, 2013). In idiopathic interstitial lung diseases (ILD), anti-ARS autoantibodies have been reported in about 7% of patients, thus contributing to the definition of "idiopathic" ILD, but the notion that such autoantibodies have predictive value for immune mediated ILD has yet to be more clearly established (Takato et al, 2013). Close to all of anti-ARS-positive patients have ILD, whereas it is estimated that 33% to 66% of patients with PM and ILD are positive for any anti-ARS antibody.

There are reports that patients with non-anti–Jo-1 antibodies have different and uncertain clinical outcomes (Kalluri et al, 2009; Burford et al, 2013; Cruellas et al, 2013; Aggarwal et al, 2014). Patients with anti–PL-7 and anti–PL-12 autoantibodies frequently develop ILD (Marie et al, 2012b), gastrointestinal manifestations, and, less frequently, myositis, compared to anti–Jo-1 positive patients (Hervier et al, 2012). In distinction from inflammatory muscle disease (e.g., myositis), patients with anti–PL-12 autoantibodies have been reported to develop a noninflammatory necrotizing myopathy, and anti–PL-7 autoantibodies were associated with pericarditis (Labirua-Iturburu et al, 2012; Mehndiratta et al, 2012).

Serologically, juvenile IIM (JIIM) tends to be rather different from the adult counterpart (Rider et al, 2013). Like adult IIM, JIIM are also characterized by skeletal muscle weakness, characteristic rashes, and other systemic features. In a large multicenter study, 68% had only one myositis autoantibody and 32% had no identifiable MAA or MSA (Rider et al, 2013). Anti-p155/140 autoantibodies were the most frequent serological subgroup, present in 32% of patients with juvenile dermatomyositis (JDM) or overlap myositis with JDM, followed by anti-MJ autoantibodies, which were seen in 20% of JIIM patients, primarily in JDM. And unlike adult IIM, other MSAs, including antisynthetase, antisignal recognition particle (SRP), and anti–Mi-2, were present in only 10% of JIIM. Hence, JIIM is a rather heterogeneous group of illnesses that could be classified on the basis of distinct autoantibody phenotypes that differ from adult IIM.

It has been noted that a majority of IIM patients, especially those with the aSS, also have anti-Ro52/TRIM21 autoantibodies (Schulte-Pelkum et al, 2009). Ro52/TRIM21 is an E3 ligase that interacts with many proteins (Schulte-Pelkum et al, 2009). Patients with both ARS and Ro52/TRIM21 autoantibodies displayed a different clinical phenotype associated with severe myositis and joint impairment. Moreover, the coexistence of anti-Ro52/TRIM21 autoantibodies seems to be associated with an increased risk of cancer (Marie et al, 2012a) and interstitial lung disease (Hudson et al, 2012b).

Anti-ARS autoantibodies can be identified by several methods. Initially, these autoantibodies were defined by IP in which the anti-ARS was found to co-IP both the synthetase and the isoaccepting tRNA (Targoff et al, 1993). Although many patients have cytoplasmic staining on IIF of HEp-2 cells, with the availability of newer methods for the detection of anti-ARS, it is recognized that IIF alone lacks sensitivity, making IIF an unreliable screening test for anti-ARS (Hoffman et al, 2002). Although anti–Jo-1 autoantibodies can be detected by a variety of ELISA methods, an addressable laser bead (ALBIA) (Fritzler & Fritzler, 2006), and a chemiluminescent immunoassay (CIA) (Bentow et al, 2013), there is little information about the comparative sensitivity, specificity, and consistency of these assays. Also, autoantibodies to other synthetases are rarely detected by these assays (Ghirardello et al, 2013), so protein and RNA IP remains the only assay that identifies all the anti-ARS and other MSA and MAA. Line immunoassays (LIA) (Ghirardello et al, 2009; Ronnelid et al, 2009; Ghirardello et al, 2010) became a popular tool for detecting many MSA and MAA. Recently, a screening ELISA (research use only) containing Jo-1, PL-7, PL-12, EJ, and KS was developed for the detection of anti-ARS autoantibodies. Because autoantibodies to ARS are seen only in a minority of patients with IIM, which is a rare condition (Bernatsky et al, 2009), the development and application of immunoassays for the detection of these autoantibodies are challenges.

Mi-2/NuRD COMPLEX

Anti–Mi-2 autoantibodies are found in 10% to 30% of IIM patients and are more prevalent in DM than PM (Ghirardello et al, 2013). Variations in prevalence of anti–Mi-2 is attributed to ethnogeographic (i.e., it is the most common MSA in Mesoamerican IIM cohorts) (Shamim et al, 2002; Hamaguchi et al, 2011; Ikeda et al, 2011), environmental exposure to ultraviolet light (Love et al, 2009) and immunoassay variables (Ghirardello et al, 2013). In both adult and pediatric IIM, anti–Mi-2 was shown to be

associated with characteristic DM cutaneous features such as Gottron's sign, heliotrope rash, neck and upper back involvement (i.e., "V" and "shawl" rashes), and cuticular hypertrophy. Of note, these patients do not usually develop lung involvement or arthritis and, accordingly, have a good prognosis (Ghirardello et al, 2013). Anti–Mi-2 antibodies are negatively correlated with malignancy-related myositis (Chinoy et al, 2007; Muro et al, 2012) and have occasionally been reported in amyopathic DM (Ghirardello et al, 2013).

Mi-2 is represented as two closely related molecular species, one called Mi-2α and the other Mi-2β. Anti–Mi-2 autoantibodies bind to a 240-kDa component of a macromolecular enzymatic complex referred to as the Mi-2/nucleosome remodeling and deacetylase (NuRD) complex. This moiety is thought to participate in the regulation of gene expression at the chromatin level via chromatin remodeling ATPase and histone deacetylase (Ghirardello, 2013).

SIGNAL RECOGNITION PARTICLE

The prevalence of autoantibodies to a cytoplasmic ribonucleoprotein (RNP), called a signal recognition particle (SRP), ranges from 4% to 8% in IIM cohorts (Ghirardello et al, 2013). SRP is a highly conserved cytoplasmic macromolecular RNP complex, consisting of 6 polypeptides and 7SL RNA in a macromolecular complex. Anti-SRP antibodies selectively IP the 7SL RNA and bind to a 54-kDa protein moiety. It is widely acknowledged that anti-SRP antibodies are highly specific for IIM and thus are thought to be useful in differentiating IIM from genetic or sporadic degenerative myopathies, such as muscular dystrophy (Hengstman et al, 2005). Akin to the ARS described earlier, anti-SRPs have been the key autoantibody markers in what is referred to as "anti-SRP syndrome." Characteristics of this syndrome include a severe, rapidly progressing and necrotizing myopathy that is relatively unresponsive to conventional therapies (Hengstman et al, 2006; Ghirardello et al, 2013). Characteristic histopathological features include predominant muscle fiber necrosis and/or regeneration associated with nonspecific myopathic signs and scarce inflammatory cell infiltration (Hengstman et al, 2006; Ghirardello et al, 2013). The clinical course of anti-SRP myopathy appears clinically similar to PM, although patients who did not develop overt myositis after some years of follow-up have been reported (Ghirardello et al, 2013).

MDA5 (CADM-140)

Anti-MDA5 autoantibodies have been primarily reported in 20% to 30% of Asian (Japanese, Korean, Chinese) cohorts (Ghirardello et al, 2013). These autoantibodies were associated with a DM subset characterized by clinically amyopathic DM (CADM), accompanied by acute, rapidly progressive ILD (Sato et al, 2009; Kang et al, 2010; Nakashima et al, 2010; Cao et al, 2012). In this context, it has been suggested that Asian IIM patients who are anti-MDA5-positive are at higher risk of developing rapid progressive ILD than Caucasian patients (Ghirardello et al, 2013). Hence, anti-MDA5 antibodies seem to be primarily associated with ILD-associated DM and may serve as a prognostic biomarker (Gono et al, 2010; Cao et al, 2012).

The target autoantigen of MDA5 autoantibodies is a cytoplasmic 140-kDa protein initially referred to as clinically amyopathic DM-140 (CADM-140). More recently, the target has been more precisely identified as the IFN-induced melanoma differentiation-associated gene 5 (MDA5) (Sato et al, 2009; Nakashima et al, 2010). Curiously, in the context of a possible etiology of this serologic subset of IIM, MDA5 functions as a viral sensor by recognizing cytoplasmic viral RNA and triggers an innate immune response (Yoneyama & Fujita, 2010).

TIF1-γ/TIF1-α (p155/140)

A novel autoantibody that binds a 155/140-kDa doublet protein was reported in 20% to 30% of adult and juvenile DM (Targoff et al, 2006; Kaji et al, 2007). More recently, the p155/140 target autoantigen was identified as proteins related to the human transcription intermediary factor 1 (TIF-1) family of proteins that include TIF1-alfa, TIF1-gamma, and TIF1-beta (Fujimoto et al, 2012). The main target recognized by anti-p155/140 antibodies is the 155-kDa TIF1-gamma autoantigen, while the 140-kDa antigen is the TIF1-alfa protein (Ghirardello et al, 2013). In addition, some anti-p155/140-positive sera also recognize the TIF1-beta protein.

TIF1-gamma is the most commonly targeted protein of anti-p155/140 autoantibodies and the most common DM-specific autoantibody in IIM (Hoshino et al, 2010; Riemekasten et al, 2011; Ghirardello et al, 2013). Clinically, it has been associated with life-threatening complications, including malignancy in adult DM (Selva-O'Callaghan et al, 2010; Trallero-Araguas et al, 2012; Ghirardello et al, 2013). An algorithm for the diagnosis of occult malignancy in adult DM that includes testing for anti-p155 antibodies has been proposed (Selva-O'Callaghan et al, 2010). Prospective studies and reliable, standardized immunoassays are needed to confirm the predictive value of anti-p155 as a risk factor for cancer-associated DM (Ghirardello et al, 2013).

MJ/NXP2

Anti-MJ autoantibodies were initially found in approximately 25% of juvenile DM and was associated with calcinosis; severe, rapidly progressive clinical manifestations; and muscle contractures (Espada et al, 2009; Gunawardena et al, 2009b). Anti-MJ autoantibodies bind a nuclear matrix protein, NXP2/MORC3 (Takahashi et al, 2007). No connection between anti-MJ autoantibodies and cancer (Ichimura et al, 2012) has been confirmed in other studies (Ceribelli et al, 2012a).

SMALL UBIQUITIN-LIKE MODIFIER ACTIVATING ENZYME (SAE)

Autoantibodies to SAE were identified in less than 10% of adult DM patients who presented with severe skin disease and mild myopathic involvement, although over the course of the disease, more profound myositis and systemic features became manifest (Betteridge et al, 2007; Tarricone et al, 2012; Fujimoto et al, 2013). The target autoantigen has been identified as the SUMO-1 activating enzyme heterodimer composed of 40-kDa SAE1 and 90-kDa SAE2 subunits. SUMO is localized to the nucleus and is structurally similar to proteins responsible for a posttranslational modification of proteins referred to as sumoylation (Ghirardello et al, 2013).

3-HYDROXY-3-METHYLGLUTARYL-COENZYME A REDUCTASE

One of the more intriguing MSAs is directed to 200/100-kDa proteins identified as 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase (HMGCR), an enzyme inhibited by statins and involved in cholesterol biosynthesis (Mammen et al, 2011; Ghirardello et al, 2013; Albayda & Mammen, 2014). Although anti-HMGCR was initially described as a biomarker of statin-associated necrotizing myopathy (Mammen et al, 2011), subsequent studies have not confirmed a direct or causal association (Mammen et al, 2012b). Nevertheless, a link to patient's statin use is still a relatively common clinical correlation (Mammen, 2014). It has been suggested that immunogenetics plays a key role in the B cell response to HMGCR (Mammen et al, 2012a). Clinical parameters include markedly elevated creatine kinase levels, myopathic features on electromyography, and a better prognosis because of a favorable response to immunosuppressive therapy (Ghirardello et al, 2013). In this study, anti-HMGCR antibodies were highly specific (99.3%). Anti-HMGCR sera were negative for all other autoantibodies tested. A number of commercially available immunoassays, including ELISA and CIA, are available (Musset et al, 2014).

MYOSITIS-ASSOCIATED AUTOANTIBODIES

Myositis-associated autoantibodies (MAAs) are not specific for IIM and are commonly found in the setting of overlap syndromes (Koenig et al, 2007; Vancsa et al, 2010; Ghirardello et al, 2013; Iaccarino et al, 2013). The more common MAAs bind to Ro60/SSA, Ro52/TRIM21, 75- and 100-kDa PM/Scl autoantigens, Ku (p70/80) nuclear heterodimers, and components of U1RNP. These autoantibodies are discussed in detail in this chapter.

CONCEPT OF OVERLAP SYNDROMES

Overlap syndrome is the term used when patients exhibit symptoms of more than one disease (Maddison, 1991; Kallenberg, 1993; Zimmermann et al, 1998; Pope, 2002; Vancsa et al, 2010; Iaccarino et al, 2013). For example, patients who meet the diagnostic criteria for SLE and also have typical manifestations suggestive of a second diagnosis, such as RA, have been reported (Lazaro et al, 1989). It is uncertain whether overlap syndromes may represent the coexistence of two or more different diseases or whether the syndrome is a distinct entity.

BOX 52-4

Major Profiles of Autoantibodies in Systemic Rheumatic Diseases

SLE. Multiple ANAs frequently seen in SLE, often with high levels of anti-dsDNA and antinucleosome antibodies in active disease, together with low complement fractions and high novel biomarker levels, like SIGLEC-1 (Rose et al, 2013). Distinctiveness of anti-Sm, anti-rRNP, anti-C1q, antinucleosomes, and anti-PCNA.

Drug-induced lupus. Restriction of ANAs to antihistone and/or antinucleosome antibodies.

MCTD. Restriction of ANA to U1nRNP (by disease definition).

Sjögren's syndrome. Characterized primarily by the presence of antibodies to SS-A/Ro and SS-B/La.

Systemic sclerosis. Profile consisting of antibodies to Scl-70/topo I, the centromere/kinetochore antigens, anti-RNA polymerases, and other nucleolar antigens such as fibrillarin and Th/To.

RA. Frequent presence of RF and anticitrullinated proteins (AKA, APF, anti-CCP).

PM/DM. Presence of Jo-1, Mi-2, and PM-Scl autoantibodies.

Undifferentitated connective tissue diseases. Autoantibodies, such as anticentromeres, anti-CCP, and anti-dsDNA, may antedate overt clinical disease by many years.

MIXED CONNECTIVE TISSUE DISEASE

The concept of MCTD was initially proposed by Sharp and colleagues (1972). The 20 patients described in the initial report had a combination of features usually associated with SLE, systemic sclerosis, and polymyositis. Characteristically, a high titer of autoantibody to a nuclear ribonucleoprotein (U1nRNP) was found in all of the patients by hemagglutination (Sharp et al, 1972). The lack of renal and neurologic abnormalities and excellent response of these patients to small doses of oral corticosteroids initially justified the classification apart from SLE and systemic sclerosis. However, the concept of MCTD as a separate group has changed with time. Many feel that MCTD represents an overlap of systemic sclerosis, SLE, and polymyositis. A group of patients originally diagnosed as MCTD was restudied 8 years later and showed a general evolution out of the overlap pattern to one of single disease, and scleroderma was the most prevalent diagnosis (Nimelstein et al, 1980). A large overlap becomes apparent when the above-mentioned criteria are applied to a certain population of patients, but recent studies support the existence of MCTD as an individual clinical entity (Flam et al, 2015; Tani et al, 2014).

PROFILES OF AUTOANTIBODIES IN VARIOUS SYSTEMIC RHEUMATIC DISEASES

It has been observed that distinct profiles of ANA are seen in different systemic rheumatic diseases, characteristics of which include the presence or absence of certain antibodies and differences in the mean titers of these antibodies (Nakamura & Tan, 1986; Tan et al, 1988; Bizzaro & Wiik, 2004). Nonetheless, one should be aware of the low positive predictive value of the ANA test in settings with low prevalence of systemic rheumatic diseases and in an aging population (Slater et al, 1996; Satoh et al, 2009a; Abeles & Abeles, 2013; Binder & Ellis, 2013). Some noteworthy features are summarized in Box 52-4.

TECHNIQUES USED TO DETECT AUTOANTIBODIES

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

It is important to understand that the sensitivity, specificity, and clinical associations of autoantibody determination vary according to the diagnostic techniques or platforms being used. This variation is further compounded by demographic, geographic, environmental, and genetic factors (Fritzler, 2006; Fritzler & Fritzler, 2009). With the emergence of more sensitive immunoassays, such as ELISA, addressable laser bead immunoassays (ALBIA), and chemiluminescence assays (CIA), care must be taken to ensure that cutoffs are based on appropriate population-based normal and disease controls (Fritzler et al, 2003; Bossuyt et al, 2008). In addition, the source and physicochemical characteristics (i.e., recombinant vs. native, peptide vs. full length) of the autoantigen used in these newer assays must also be taken into consideration, because the use of recombinant antigens and short synthetic peptides may give different results than an assay that detects reactivity to native antigens, such as those represented in indirect immunofluorescence (IIF), cell-based assays (CBA), immunoblotting, or immunoprecipitation (IP) (Okazaki et al, 2006; Kessenbrock et al, 2007).

For the present time, the IIF technique using HEp-2 cells continues to be the preferred screening immunoassay to detect most clinically relevant autoantibodies in systemic rheumatic diseases. However, it is important to appreciate that a negative IIF test does not necessarily exclude the presence of a wide spectrum of autoantibodies, including those directed against Ku, Jo-1, SS-A/Ro60, Ro52/TRIM21, SS-B/La, RNA polymerases, and PM/Scl. It is also important to understand that the IIF can be negative (false negative) even in the face of high titer autoantibodies to native intracellular antigens, like anti-SSA/Ro60 or some rare samples with anti-DNA (Mahler et al, 2008; Fritzler, 2011a; 2011b). Therefore, in the case of high clinical suspicion of SARD and a negative IIF test, the identification of autoantibodies should include highly specific and sensitive immunoassays that include an array of relevant autoantigens. In one study it was found that a positive test employing a connective tissue screen in a solid phase assay containing 17 antigens had a higher likelihood ratio for systemic autoimmune rheumatic diseases (SARD) than the IIF test result (Op De Beeck et al, 2011).

There is a common perception that immunoprecipitation (IP) is the gold standard for clinical immunoassays, but IP is available in only a few research-based laboratories. In addition, IP has other challenges because many B cell target autoantigens in SARD bind to one or more components of heterogeneous macromolecular complexes through a mechanism referred to as intermolecular epitope spreading (Harley & James, 1995; Deshmukh et al, 2003). Thus a number of protein bands are typically seen in IP assays, but the identity of the actual autoantibody target may require ancillary confirmatory testing. Immunoblotting also has drawbacks because the protocols almost invariably use conditions that denature proteins, and although some protein refolding may occur when they are transferred from polyacrylamide gels to the membranes, conformational epitopes might be underrepresented, while cryptic epitopes, otherwise unavailable for binding in other assays (i.e., IIF), may now be exposed and bound to the cognate autoantibody.

In summation, no immunoassay is without limitations, and evaluators of the medical literature need to be aware of various limitations. Accordingly, it is likely not realistic to declare that any one assay is the gold standard by which all other assays must be evaluated. Given the technical complexities of immunoassays used to detect autoantibodies, it is understandable that, despite years of activity, standardization of autoantibody assays, their reporting, and clinical correlations continue to be major challenges (Kessenbrock et al, 2007; Mahler & Fritzler, 2010, 2011; Agmon-Levin et al, 2014). Commonly used methods for autoantibody detection are listed in Table 52-6.

INDIRECT IMMUNOFLUORESCENCE IN HEp-2 CELLS

Immunofluorescence microscopy using human HEp-2 cells allows for the sensitive detection of serum antibodies that react very specifically with various cellular proteins and nucleic acids (Figs. 52-6 to 52-8). Today, this technique is essential in immunology laboratories committed to the routine diagnosis of human autoimmune diseases. Standardization of the indirect immunofluorescence (IF)-ANA has nevertheless been quite difficult. Many factors are involved in the performance of IF-ANA tests, including substrate and fixative variations, microscopic optics, method and quantitation of results, establishment of reference range, interpretation of results, reference sera, and specificity and avidity of the ANA. The ANA Standardization Committee of the World Health Organization (WHO)/International Union of Immunological Societies (IUIS)/Arthritis Foundation (AF)/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that laboratories should report IF-ANA results at both 1:40 and 1:160 dilutions and should supply information on the percentage of normal individuals who are positive at these dilutions in their own experience (Tan et al, 1997).

From a positive immunofluorescence, one is able to associate the specific pattern to the presence of a distinct autoantibody in that particular patient's serum. Because distinct autoantibody patterns occur in distinct diseases, as discussed above, the laboratorian offers the clinician the real possibility of narrowing down the diagnostic chase. A decision chart developed with those issues in mind is shown in Box 52-5. During the 12th International Workshop on Autoantibodies and Autoimmunity (Sao Paulo, Brazil, 2014), a consensus was established on the nomenclature of staining patterns observed in the antinuclear antibody test on HEp-2 cells. Specific goals of the International Consensus initiative are to promote

TABLE 52-6
Methods for Detection of Autoantibodies to Nuclear and Intracellular Antigens

Method	Antigen Source	Sensitivity and Use
Immunofluorescence microscopy	Tissue sections; cell lines	Sensitive assay, often used for screening; may be computerized
Double immunodiffusion (Ouchterlony)	Tissue and cell extracts	Requires precipitin reaction, high specificity but not very sensitive, time consuming
Counterimmunoelectrophoresis	Tissue and cell extracts	Increased sensitivity and speed as compared with immunodiffusion procedure
Immunoblotting, Western blot	Cell extracts	Very sensitive, permits detection of antibodies against soluble and insoluble antigens; conformational epitopes may not be detected
Dot blot, linear blot (line immunoassays)	Purified native or recombinant antigens	Qualitative assay, average sensitivity
ELISA	Purified native or recombinant antigens	Very sensitive; quantitative, high throughput, can determine antibody class, low cost
Immunoprecipitation	Radiolabeled native or recombinant proteins	Very sensitive; identity of the actual autoantibody target may require ancillary confirmatory testing
Microsphere multiplexed assays (ALBIA, CIA)	Purified native or recombinant antigens	Very sensitive (comparable to ELISA); rapid, expensive proprietary technology

BOX 52-5
Decision Chart for the Identification of Some Autoantibodies Using HEp-2 Cells and Their Disease Association

1. Nuclear pattern
   Envelope (rim)
   - Punctate mitotic figure negative → PBC
   - Continuous mitotic figure negative → Chronic liver disease
   - Homogeneous mitotic figure positive → SLE, drug-induced SLE

   Speckled
   - Large → hnRNP in SLE
   - Coarse → Sm RNP in SLE MCTD
   - Fine → SS-A/Ro SS-B/La in SLE SS
   - Pleomorphic → PCNA in SLE

   Discrete
   - Mitotic figure positive → Centromere in SCL
   - Mitotic figure negative → p95 (Sp100) in PBC
2. Nucleolar pattern
   - Homogeneous → PM-Scl in SCL
   - Clumpy → Fibrillarin in SCL
   - Speckled
   - *Mitotic figure punctate → RNA pol I NOR-90 in SCL*
   - *Mitotic figure homogeneous → Scl-70 in SCL*
3. Cytoplasmic pattern
   - Dense fine speckles → Jo-1 PL-7 PL-12 in PM/DM
   - Homogeneous → rRNP in SLE and juvenile SLE
   - Fibrillar → Actin myosin in MCTD PBC CAH
   - Segmental → α-Actinin vinculin in MG CD UC
   - Reticular → Mitochondria in PBC
   - Polar → Golgi in SS SLE viral infections
   - Spindle apparatus → NuMA in SS SLE; midbody p330[d] in cancer
   - Discrete speckles → GWB bodies EEA1 CLIP 170

Modified from Krapf et al, 1996.
CAH, Chronic autoimmune hepatitis; *CD,* Crohn's disease; *DM,* dermatomyositis; *MCTD,* mixed connective tissue disease; *NuMA,* nuclear mitotic-associated antigen; *PBC,* primary biliary cirrhosis; *PCNA,* proliferating cell nuclear antigen; *PM,* polymyositis; *RNP,* ribonucleoprotein; *SCL,* scleroderma; *SLE,* systemic lupus erythematosus; *SS,* Sjögren's syndrome; *UC,* ulcerative colitis.

harmonization and understanding of autoantibody test nomenclature as well as interpretation guidelines for ANA testing. Tables 52-7 and Table 52-8 depict their major conclusions, with full text accessible at http://journal.frontiersin.org/article/10.3389/fimmu.2015.00412/full. Figures 52-6, 52-7, and 52-8 depict some examples of immunofluorescence patterns as seen in our laboratories.

COMPUTER-ASSISTED ANA IIF TECHNOLOGY

Computer-assisted ANA pattern recognition was described more than a decade ago (Perner et al, 2002), but integrated hardware and software platforms that provide identification and archiving of IIF patterns obtained on HEp-2 cell substrates have only become available in the last few years (Mahler et al, 2014a). Features of these automated systems include acquisition, analysis, and storage of digital images of stained HEp-2 cells, and local or remote access to the digital images on high-resolution monitors. Difficulties inherent in conventional IIF protocols, such as serial dilutions of the test sera, the need for a darkroom for fluorescence microscopy, reading and real-time interpreting of the IIF patterns, and manual recording of the results by a technologist, make traditional IIF protocols challenging in the setting of modern, high-throughput laboratories (Mahler et al, 2014a; Roggenbuck et al, 2014). The new automated systems effectively circumvent many of these challenges and create a more continuous workflow and the potential to improve the quality, utility, and standardization of the ANA IIF assay (Mahler et al, 2014c).

At present there are approximately half a dozen automated IIF systems with various user-friendly features (Mahler et al, 2014a). The systems differ from one another with respect to the use of nuclear counterstains, lack of flexibility in the ANA kit to be used in respective systems (e.g., most systems are restricted to using the manufacturer's slides), throughput, number of patterns that can be identified, and software features (Bonroy et al, 2013; Bossuyt et al, 2013; Maenhout et al, 2014; Mahler et al, 2014a; Schouwers et al, 2014). These automated systems include a microscope fitted with an automated stage, a digital camera, an LED light source, and software that controls the moving parts and directs image acquisition and storage. All systems perform fluorescent light intensity measurements with assignment of a preliminary categorization of the test sample as positive or negative and also staining pattern interpretation. The automated software-based reading is followed by human visual interpretation of the digital images displayed on a high-resolution monitor, allowing user confirmation or revision of the preliminary results. By providing high-quality digital images and preliminary classification and pattern interpretation, these automated systems support the operators' decision making and increase the consistency of intertest and interobserver results. The digital images can be stored for training, documentation, follow-up analysis, and sequential changes in reactivity and can be easily transported or uploaded into the patient's electronic medical record (EMR) in much the same way as digital images of radiographic and other visually based investigations. Currently available systems are highly reliable in their ability to discriminate positive from negative reactions and estimate fluorescence intensity, but the accuracy and robustness of pattern recognition have yet to reach the accuracy of human interpretation (Foggia et al, 2013; Roggenbuck et al, 2013; Schouwers et al, 2014).

Because the final interpretation is made by the operator, subjectivity is not abolished. Moreover, the characteristics of the HEp-2 substrates, conjugates, and complexity of test sera influence the appearance of certain ANA patterns, and the automated pattern identification of the various systems is based on somewhat different software program algorithms. Nevertheless, automated systems for ANA HEp-2 analysis are a significant step forward to reduce variability and offer opportunities to increase harmonization of ANA interpretation.

ENZYME-LINKED IMMUNOSORBENT ASSAYS

An increasing number of enzyme immunoassays have been developed with the use of standard purified and recombinant antigens (Saitta & Keene,

Text continued on p. 1014

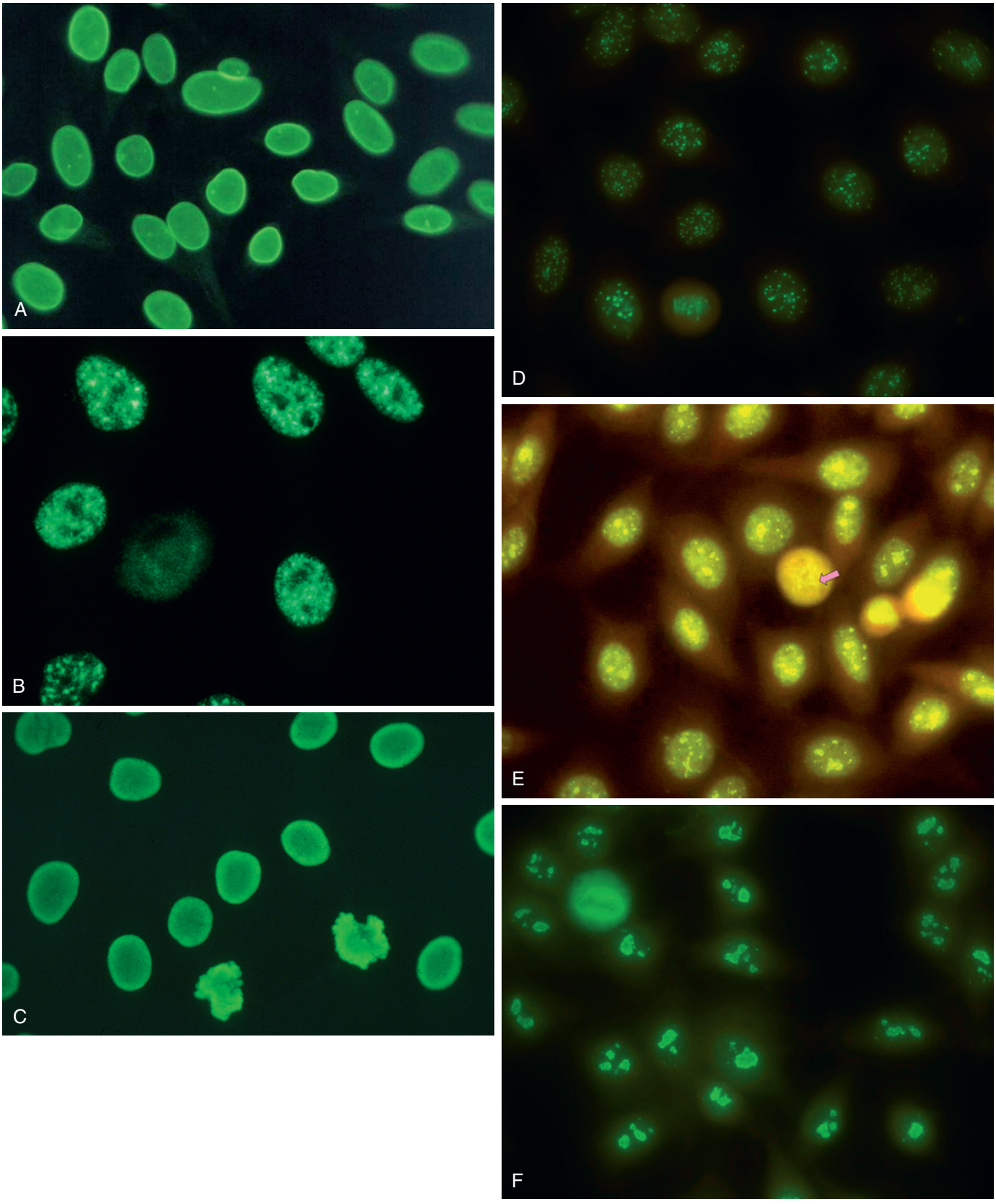


Figure 52-6 **Indirect immunofluorescence with autoantibodies to nuclear and nucleolar antigens in HEp-2 cells, 400×, FITC stain.** In part **A,** autoantibodies to lamin proteins A, B, and C of the nuclear envelope give a homogeneous nuclear pattern in HEp-2 cells, associated with a continuous nucleoplasmic rim. No rim is seen when the antibodies are specifically directed to histones or dsDNA. Previous reports of a peripheral pattern elicited by anti-dsDNA antibodies were probably due to fixation artifacts. The speckled nucleoplasmic pattern seen in part **B** is characteristic of autoantibodies directed to the so-called "extractable nuclear antigens" like the anti-U1nRNP shown here. The nucleoli and metaphase cells are negative. Part **C** shows anti-dsDNA autoantibodies, with homogeneous pattern in interphase, as well as in metaphase cells. Part **D** is from a preparation with anticentromere autoantibodies, typically found in patients with the limited form of scleroderma (CREST syndrome), but also in primary biliary cirrhosis. Distinct speckles are seen in the interphase nuclei, one for each chromosome pair, which aggregate in the metaphase plates during cell division. Autoantibodies to NOR-90 and RNA-polymerase I elicit the same pattern on HEp-2 cells (**E**), with nucleolar speckles and dots along some spindles of metaphase cells. They can be differentiated by other assays, such as immunoblot or immunoprecipitation. Autoantibodies targeting fibrillarin (U3-nRNP) give a clumpy staining of all nucleoli (**F**).

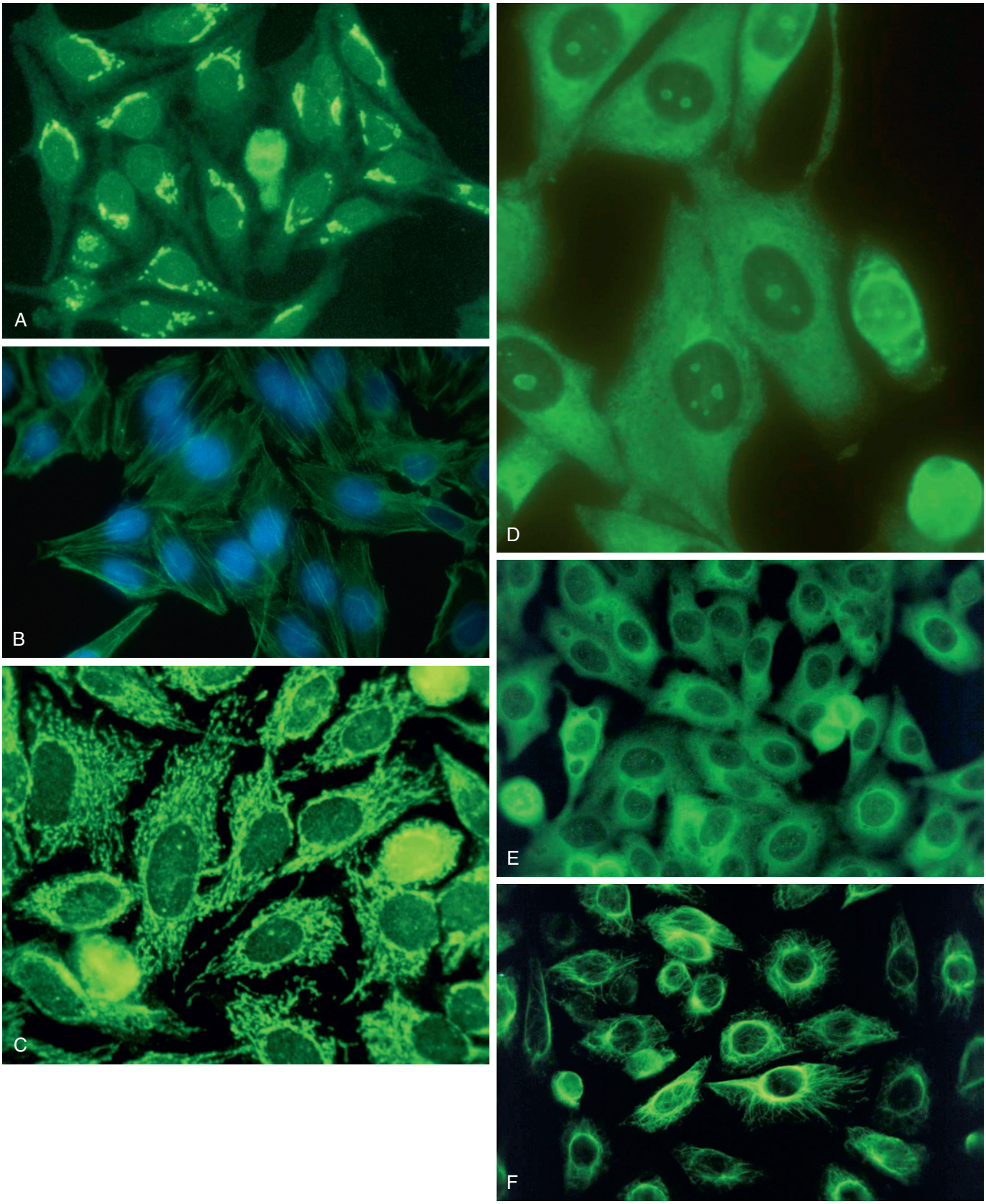


Figure 52-7 Indirect immunofluorescence of HEp-2 cells with autoantibodies to distinct cytoplasmic antigens, 400×, FITC stain. In part **A**, the characteristic pattern of autoantibodies to the Golgi organelle is seen, with granules arranged in clusters at one pole of the cell and sparing the nuclei. Autoantibodies to nonmuscle myosin (**B**) decorate the stress fibers of the cytoskeleton (nuclei staining in blue with DAPI). These antibodies are found in patients with myasthenia gravis and chronic liver diseases. Antimitochondrial autoantibodies display a coarse granular pattern involving the whole cytoplasm (**C**), mostly seen in primary biliary cirrhosis. Part **D** shows the dense granular, almost homogeneous, cytoplasmic pattern obtained with anti-rRNP antibodies. They target ribosomal phosphoproteins and are clinically associated with the central nervous system manifestations in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. As can be seen in the picture, not uncommonly, such antibodies also stain the nucleoli in a homogeneous pattern, although weakly. Part **E** shows a homogeneous decoration of the cytoplasm conferred by autoantibodies to PL-7 in polymyositis. Antikeratin antibodies (**F**) are seen as filamentar staining of cytoskeletal stress fibers and constitute the major specificity found in alcoholic liver disease (69%), also common in rheumatoid arthritis (36% to 59%), psoriasis, and healthy individuals.

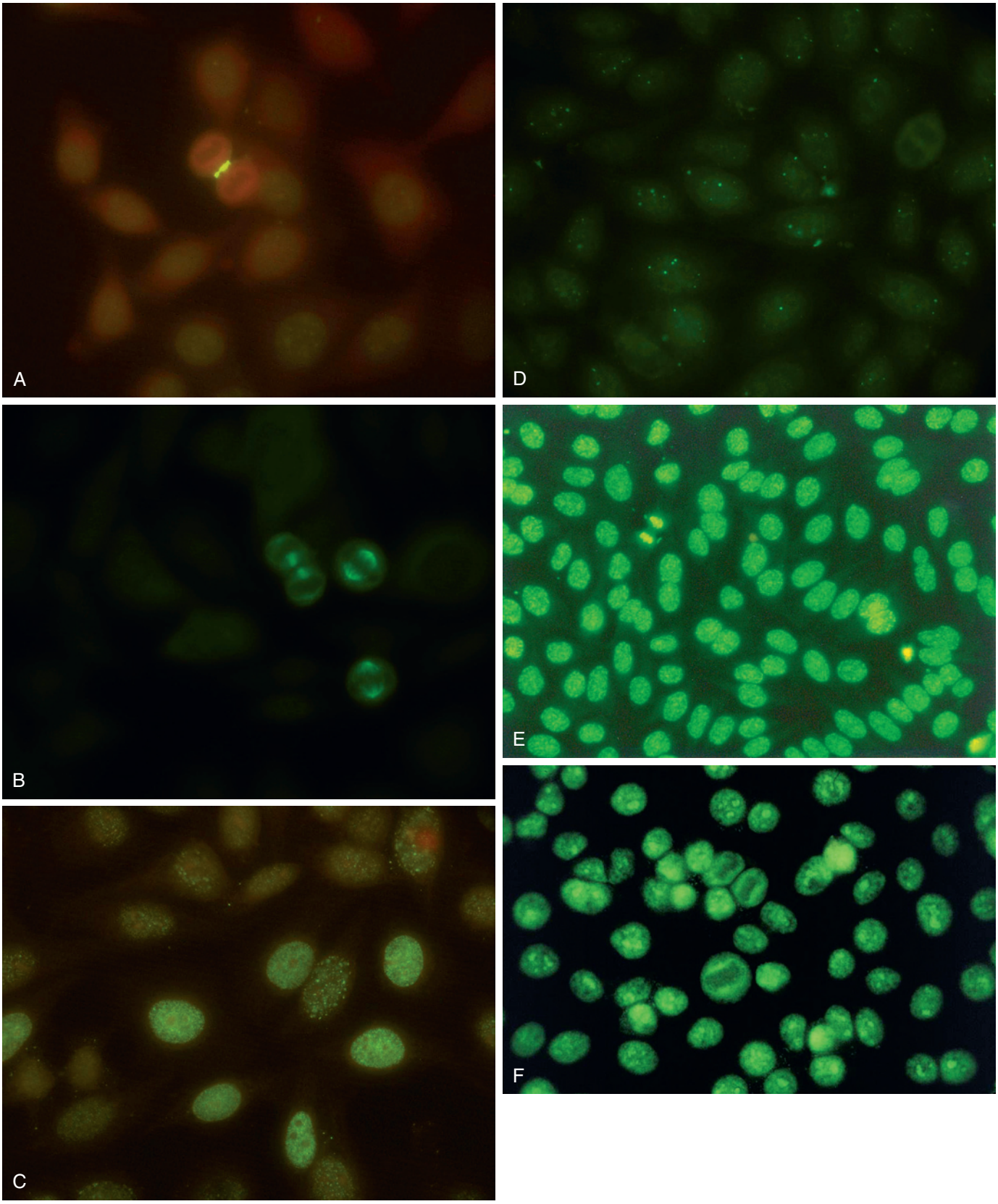


Figure 52-8 **Some other distinct patterns in indirect immunofluorescence of HEp-2 cells, 400×, FITC stain.** In part **A,** cells at the end of metaphase show antigens condensing in the midbody, also called the intercellular bridge region. The spindle poles of dividing cells can be decorated, as in part **B,** with antibodies targeting the mitotic apparatus, such as NuMA (nuclear mitotic-associated protein). PCNA autoantibodies give a mosaic of nucleoplasmic patterns (**C**), ranging from homogeneous to distinct speckled, according to the phases of cellular division (details in the text). Part **D** shows the pattern obtained with anti–p80-coilin autoantibodies, where one can see from 1 to 8 nucleoplasmic dots. Part **E** shows one of the most common patterns seen in the routine laboratory: dense fine speckled nuclear in interphase, as well as in mitotic cells. This is a nonspecific autoantibody commonly found in systemic connective tissue diseases but also in interstitial cystitis, breast cancer, allergic reactions and even apparently healthy individuals. Nuclear and nucleolar stainings are seen with anti-Ku autoantibodies (**F**). Chromosomes in mitotic cells are negative (see clinical associations in text).

TABLE 52-7

Synonyms for Nuclear Patterns and Association with Specific Antigens and Diseases

	Synonyms	Antigen Associations	Disease Association
Homogeneous (AC-1)	Diffuse	dsDNA, nucleosomes, histones	SLE, drug-induced lupus, juvenile idiopathic arthritis
Speckled (AC-2,4,5)	Granular	hnRNP, U1RNP, Sm, SS-A/Ro (Ro60), SS-B/La, RNA polymerase III, Mi-2, Ku	MCTD, SLE, SjS, DM, Scl/PM overlap
Dense fine speckled (AC-2)	None	DFS70/LEDGF	Rare in SLE, SjS, Scl
Fine speckled (AC-4)	Fine granular	SS-A/Ro (Ro60), SS-B/La, Mi-2, TIF1γ, TIF1β, Ku, RNA helicase A, replication protein A	SjS, SLE, DM, Scl/PM overlap
Large/coarse speckled (AC-5)	Spliceosome/nuclear matrix	hnRNP, U1RNP, Sm, RNA polymerase III	MCTD, SLE, Scl
Discrete nuclear dots			
Centromere (AC-3)	Kinetochore	CENP-A/B (C)	Limited cutaneous Scl, PBC
Multiple nuclear dots (AC-6)	6-20 nuclear dots, NSpI, PML bodies	Sp100, PML proteins, MJ/NXP-2	PBC, SARD, PM/DM
Few nuclear dots (AC-7)	1 to 6 nuclear dots, Cajal bodies (coiled body)	p80-coilin, SMN	SjS, SLE, Scl, PM, asymptomatic individuals
Nucleolar (AC-8,9,10)			
Homogeneous (AC-8)	None	PM/Scl-75, PM/Scl-100, Th/To, B23/nucleophosmin, nucleolin, No55/SC65	Scl, Scl/PM overlap
Clumpy (AC-9)	None	U3-snoRNP/fibrillarin	Scl
Punctate (AC-10)	Nucleolar speckled	RNA polymerase I, hUBF/NOR-90	Scl, SjS
Nuclear envelope (AC-11,12)			
Smooth nuclear envelope (AC-11)	Nuclear rim, nuclear membrane, membranous	Lamins A,B,C, or lamin-associated proteins	SLE, SjS, seronegative arthritis
Punctate nuclear envelope (AC-12)	Nuclear membrane pores	Nuclear pore complex proteins (i.e. gp210)	PBC
Pleomorphic (AC-13,14)			
PCNA-like (AC-13)	None	PCNA	SLE, other conditions
CENP-F-like (AC-14)	MSA-3, NSp-II	CENP-F	Cancer, other conditions

These disease associations are primarily based on the target antigens recognized by autoantibodies that reveal a particular ANA pattern.
From Chan EKL, Damoiseaux J, Carballo OG, et al: Report of the first international consensus on standardized nomenclature of antinuclear antibody HEp-2 cell patterns 2014–2015, *Front Immun*ol 6:412, 2015. © 2015 Chan, Damoiseaux, Carballo, Conrad, de Melo Cruvinel, Francescantonio, Fritzler, Garcia-De La Torre, Herold, Mimori, Satoh, von Mühlen, and Andrade.

TABLE 52-8

Synonyms for Cytoplasmic Patterns and Association with Specific Antigens and Diseases

	Synonyms	Antigen Associations	Disease Association
Fibrillar (AC-15,16,17)			
Linear/actin (AC-15)	Actin-like	Actin, non-muscle myosin	MCTD, chronic active hepatitis, liver cirrhosis, myasthenia gravis, Crohn's disease, PBC, long term hemodialysis, rare in SARD other than MCTD
Filamentous/microtubules (AC-16)	None	Vimentin, cytokeratins	Infectious or inflammatory conditions, long-term hemodialysis, alcoholic liver disease, SARD, psoriasis, healthy controls
Segmental (AC-17)	None	Alpha-actinin, vinculin, tropomyosin	Myasthenia gravis, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis
Speckled (AC-18 to AC-20)			
Discrete dots (AC-18)	GW body, processing body, lysosome*	GW182, Su/Ago2, *no molecular evidence to support this pattern is associated with lysosomal targets	PBC, SARD, neurologic and autoimmune conditions
Dense fine speckled (AC-19)	Homogeneous	PL-7, PL-12, ribosomal P proteins	Anti-synthetase syndrome, PM/DM, SLE, juvenile SLE, neuropsychiatric SLE
Fine speckled (AC-20)	Speckled	Jo-1/histidyl-tRNA synthetase	Anti-synthetase syndrome, PM/DM, limited Scl idiopathic pleural effusion
Reticular/AMA (AC-21)	Mitochondria-like	PDC-E2/M2, BCOADC-E2, OGDC-E2, E1α subunit of PDC, E3BP/protein X	Common in PBC, Scl rare in other SARD
Polar/Golgi-like (AC-22)	None	Giantin/macrogolgin, golgin-95/GM130, golgin-160, golgin-97, golgin-245	Rare in SjS, SLE, RA, MCTD, GPA, idiopathic cerebellar ataxia, paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration, viral infections
Rods and rings (AC-23)	None	IMPDH2, others	HCV patients post-IFN/ribavirin therapy, rare in SLE, Hashimoto's, and healthy controls

These disease associations are primarily based on the antigens recognized by antibodies that reveal this particular ANA pattern.
*No molecular evidence to support this pattern is associated with lysosomal targets.
From Chan EKL, Damoiseaux J, Carballo OG, et al: Report of the first international consensus on standardized nomenclature of antinuclear antibody HEp-2 cell patterns 2014–2015, *Front Immun*ol 6:412, 2015. © 2015 Chan, Damoiseaux, Carballo, Conrad, de Melo Cruvinel, Francescantonio, Fritzler, Garcia-De La Torre, Herold, Mimori, Satoh, von Mühlen, and Andrade.

1992). Many of these enzyme immunoassays have proved to be more sensitive than comparable immunodiffusion methods. Thus because of the high sensitivity of enzyme immunoassays, one needs to determine carefully the reference range of normal patients and the proper cutoff values. Compared with immunodiffusion tests, ELISA tests showed much greater sensitivity but had lower specificity (Nakamura & Tan, 1992). Further, ELISA tests were frequently positive in low titers in sera of patients with rheumatic diseases other than SLE. Increasing sensitivity and decreasing specificity might result in false-positive test results. Furthermore, clinical associations with distinct autoantibodies were mainly determined using double immunodiffusion techniques.

In earlier studies using ELISAs, many false-positive reactions were noted, which were caused by poor blocking reagents in the procedure. Also, impure antigen preparations were used. The percentage of clinical laboratories using ELISA increased from 25% to 47% over a 4-year period, from 1989 to 1992, as the technology improved, with pure antigen sources. Homburger and colleagues reported a comparison between a commercial ELISA and IF-ANA on HEp-2 cells, concluding that both methods were substantially equivalent for detecting clinically relevant ANA in patients with systemic rheumatic diseases (Homburger et al, 1998). Reaching an opposite conclusion, Emlen and O'Neill tested six commercial ELISA kits and found significant differences in the detection of ANA by immunofluorescence and ELISA (Emlen & O'Neill, 1997). A group of international scientists from the ANA Standardization Committee reported on the performance of many commercial ELISAs, showing that no single manufacturer was clearly superior to others in terms of their products' overall sensitivity, specificity, and precision, and that areas that needed improvement were in kits for the detection of antibodies to dsDNA and to Sm antigens (Tan et al, 1999). Great care should be exercised when selecting ELISA reagents and commercial kits. A good source of quality control data for the best commercial reagents is the periodic review of the College of American Pathologists in Immunology.

New commercial ELISA kits developed for screening purposes claim to detect a variety of autoantibodies in one single assay, but having "total" fractions of cellular antigens in one ELISA well is not technically feasible nowadays. Those assays are not 100% sensitive for the screening of antinuclear antibodies, because they cannot detect certain autoantibodies like antinucleolar specificities, PCNA, or distinct NuMA types. Reported results using those kits, for the moment, should correctly specify to physicians which types of autoantibodies were tested so as not to imply that a particular sample is "negative for all nuclear antibodies." Each ELISA test kit in such a situation should be validated for the particular antibody specificities it can detect (von Mühlen & Nakamura, 2002).

IMMUNOBLOTTING

Immunoblotting is very sensitive and is an important method for characterization of the specific nature of many autoantibodies. One important advantage is that a specific antibody can be identified with the use of crude cell extract antigen preparations (Fig. 52-9). The European Consensus Study observed the following with the immunoblotting test (Nakamura et al, 1994):

1. Antigen preparation is very important in the immunoblotting procedure.
2. Detection of antibodies to nRNP, Sm, and Scl-70 was acceptable. This sensitive method is helpful in the detection of multiple specificities of antibodies in the same specimen.
3. The method requires careful controls to monitor molecular weight bands. For example, histone bands can be confused with a centromeric antigen (CENP-A, 19 kD), and Scl-70 (topoisomerase I) can be confused with other 100-kD bands.
4. Protein degradation can occur in the antigen cell extract used for immunoblotting, especially Scl-70 and centromere antigens.
5. The anti-Sm is distinguished by the presence of anti-D (the D antigen is a 16-kD protein contained in all major nRNP particles).
6. Anti–SS-B/La is readily detected by immunoblotting. Anti–SS-A/Ro is poorly detected by immunoblotting and is insensitive because SS-A/Ro60 may not demonstrate the proper structure for recognition by the majority of autoantibodies.

LINE IMMUNOASSAYS

Line immunoassays (LIAs) are generally considered to be a second-generation dot-blot assay (Mahler et al, 2014a). A broad range of LIAs are commercially available and are most commonly used to confirm autoantibodies previously identified by IIF or other screening immunoassays

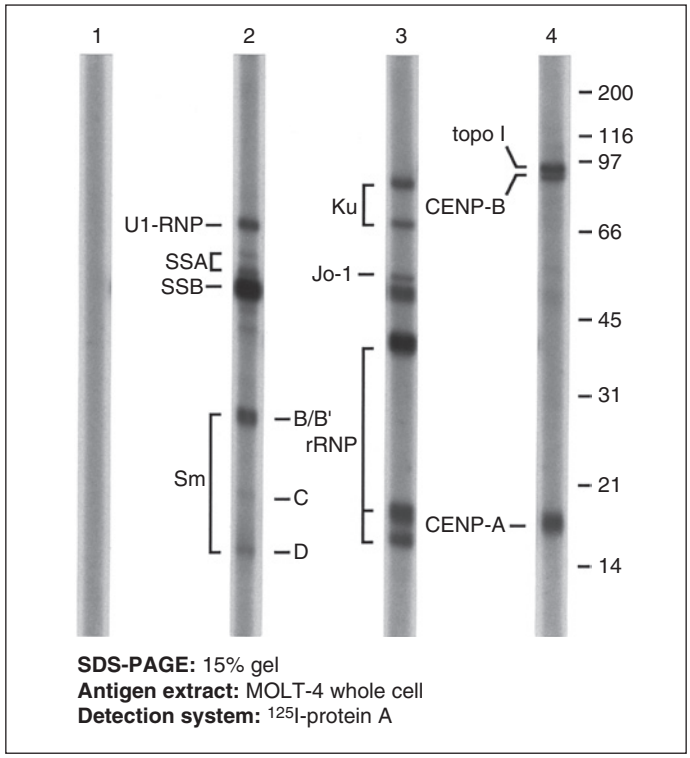


Figure 52-9 Immunoblotting analysis of common autoantibodies seen in rheumatic diseases. In lane 1 the nitrocellulose strip was probed with a normal human serum (negative control), and no reactivity was seen, as expected. The next 3 lanes show distinct bands obtained by mixing positive control sera containing known specificities. Lane 2 depicts reactivities to the ribonucleoproteins (RNP) SSA (52 and 60 kD), SSB (48 kD), Sm (B/B', 28 kD, and D, 14 kD), and U1nRNP (the 70-kD protein and a faint band around 19 kD, the C antigen). The A protein, with 32 kD and also characteristically recognized by U1nRNP antibodies, is not seen in this experiment. Lane 3 shows the bands obtained by using the human prototype antisera to Jo-1 (52 kD), Ku (2 bands around the 70 and 80 kD regions), and ribosomal RNP (15, 18, and 37 kD). The small band above the 52-kD antigen is not identified. Lane 4 displays the bands most commonly seen using sera from scleroderma patients—for example, anti-DNA topoisomerase I (Scl-70, 95 kD) and anticentromere antibodies (16 kD, CENP-A, and 80 kD, CENP-B). On the left, positions in kilodaltons of the broad-range molecular weight standards can be seen. (From von Mühlen CA, Tan EM: Autoantibody specificities in autoimmune rheumatic diseases, *Rev Br Reumatol* 34:173–194, 1994.)

(Pottel et al, 2004; Damoiseaux et al. 2005). Nevertheless, in some laboratories LIAs have also been used as a primary test for disease-specific autoantibodies that are seen in SLE, systemic sclerosis (Scl), idiopathic inflammatory myopathies (IIM), and rheumatoid arthritis (RA), as well as paraneoplastic conditions and autoimmune liver diseases (Lopez-Longo et al, 2003; Lee et al, 2012; Mahler et al, 2014a; Yang et al, 2014). Recent advances in automating the processing of LIAs make them a more appealing platform for high-volume and high-throughput laboratories (Lopez-Longo et al, 2003). As with any immunoassay, LIAs have some drawbacks, including comparative limitations of sensitivity and specificity for certain autoantibodies (Almeida Gonzalez et al, 2010; Lee et al, 2012). The antigen compositions and other features of line immunoassays are reviewed elsewhere (Mahler et al, 2014a).

MULTIPLEX BEAD-BASED ASSAYS

Multiplexed immunoassays based on the Luminex technology (Austin, Texas) use purified autoantigens individually covalently coupled to distinct laser-reactive addressable laser beads (referred to as ALBIA) (Fritzler, 2006). The so-called multiplexed fluorescent microsphere immunoassay uses spectral addresses, allowing for the simultaneous determination of several autoantibodies, all in just one incubation and no wash steps. We demonstrated that results for a proprietary multiplexed assay compared favorably with results from established ELISAs (Martins et al, 2004). Agreement, sensitivity, and specificity, respectively, for five nuclear antigens evaluated were as follows: SSA, 99.1%, 100%, and 98.8%; SSB, 98.6%, 88.9%, and 99.5%; Sm, 97.6%, 95.8%, and 97.9%; RNP, 97.2%, 92.7%, and 98.8%; Scl-70, 93.6%, 50%, and 99%. The multiplexed microsphere-based immunoassay seems to be a sensitive and specific

method for the detection and semiquantitation of common antibodies in human sera. Clusters of clinically important autoantibodies, such as those in lupus or in systemic vasculitis, may be rapidly tested in one single batch. This is not to imply that the flow cytometry-based assay may be an alternative to screening autoantibodies with HEp-2 immunofluorescence, because there are clear limitations in identifying important autoantibodies in clinical samples by using the current microsphere technology (Kroshinsky et al, 2009). One recent position paper of the American College of Rheumatology clarifies the state of the art in detecting autoantibodies, aspects well touched on in a paper by Meroni and Schur (2010).

Today, several commercial ALBIA kits are available for the detection of autoantibodies to a variety of autoantigens (reviewed in Mahler et al, 2014a). Similar to LIAs, the number of antigens and the antigen composition of these bead-based arrays significantly vary from manufacturer to manufacturer. Although first-generation ALBIAs showed polyreactivity that was caused by nonspecific binding to the beads, newer ALBIAs showed significantly reduced polyreactivity and thus higher specificity (Fritzler et al, 2006). In one study, when an ALBIA was used for the detection of ANA, 7.4% of healthy donors were positive, a majority of which showed a speckled or nucleolar staining pattern (Avaniss-Aghajani et al, 2007). Another report using ALBIA showed that the prevalence of ANAs was comparable to expected values of the ANA IIF test, while only moderate agreement was found between IIF and ALBIA (Nifli et al, 2006). The majority of ANA IIF positive, multiplex ANA negative sera were also positive by an ANA ELISA utilizing nuclear extracts (Nifli et al, 2006).

While the experience with ALBIA is not as extensive as ELISA, evidence shows that these assays have shortcomings (Shovman et al, 2005a; Fritzler & Fritzler, 2009; Hanly et al, 2010), especially when comparing the results for specific analytes such as anti-dsDNA. Nevertheless, ALBIA has generally good agreement with several immunoassay platforms (Shovman et al, 2005b; Avaniss-Aghajani et al, 2007; Caramaschi et al, 2007; Bardin et al, 2009; Albon et al, 2011). There is general consensus that, because there is considerable variation in the sensitivity of the various commercial diagnostic kits, the identity of the particular assay used to generate the test result should be made available to the clinician (Meroni & Schur, 2010; https://www.rheumatology.org/Practice/Clinical/Position/Position_Statements/). In addition, because of the growing trend of using automated immunoassay systems that provide quantitative results, these laboratories should follow standards of chemistry instrumentation, including a requirement to demonstrate analytic measured ranges and periodic calibrations. Clinical laboratories that adopt multiplexed assays (i.e., ALBIA) must establish reference ranges and cutoff values for each analyte, and the sensitivity and specificity must be established with care because the laboratory findings may present a difficult problem for the clinician who has to interpret the results. A summary of the autoantigen composition of the major ALBIA kits has been recently reviewed (Mahler et al, 2014a).

OTHER IMMUNOASSAYS

Double immunodiffusion analyses have been used to determine the specificity of several ANAs. Assay specificity in double immunodiffusion is generally dependent on the quality of other control sera used in the procedure, as well as the nature of the antigen preparation. Immunodiffusion tests are not very sensitive, but positive tests have a high degree of specificity. Immunodiffusion commercial kits are available for the detection of antibodies to RNP, Sm, SS-A/Ro, SS-B/La, and Scl-70, as well as other less prevalent markers.

A number of newer methods and technologies, including fully automated ANA screening assays (see earlier), have been developed for ANA detection. These ANA screening assays have been developed on fully automated closed systems (Gonzalez et al, 2005; Parker & Bunn, 2011) or the CIA BIO-FLASH System (Bentow et al, 2013). One such screening test has been evaluated in several studies (Parker & Bunn, 2011; Op De Beeck et al, 2012) and showed satisfactory results for anti-ribosomal P, anti-PM/Scl, anti–Mi-2, and anti-PCNA antibodies, while the sensitivity for antifibrillarin and anti-RNA Pol III antibodies was rather limited (Parker & Bunn, 2011). Other immunoassays developed for ANA screening are novel methods for quantitative ANA measurement using near-infrared imaging (Peterson et al, 2009), a microbead-based ELISA system using fluorescence-coded immobilized microbeads (Grossmann et al, 2011), nanobarcodes (Smith et al, 2005), and autoantigen and viral protein arrays on solid phase planar surfaces (Robinson et al, 2002; Utz, 2004). Another approach that has not yet achieved wide use because of its complexity is to immunoprecipitate the ribonucleoprotein macromolecular complexes from cell extracts, extract the RNA, and then the corresponding cDNA is reverse transcribed from the RNAs, and the RNA of interest (i.e., U3 RNA, Th/To RNA) detected by quantitative primer chain reaction (qPCR) using custom primers (Ceribelli et al, 2012b). In a study of 22 anti-Th/To, 12 anti-U3RNP, and 88 controls, this qPCR assay had a near perfect correlation with IP (Ceribelli et al, 2012b).

Last, cell-based assays (CBA) for the detection of anti–SS-A/Ro60 autoantibodies (Keech et al, 1994; Fritzler et al, 2002) have recently become increasingly used for the detection of other autoantibodies, particularly those where conformational epitopes expressed on cell surfaces or in association with other ligands are required for autoantibody binding (Behnert et al, 2013; Radzimski et al, 2013). The general principle of CBA is to employ a selected cell line and transfect them with the cDNA encoding the autoantigen of interest. When the desired autoantigen target is overexpressed, cells are fixed and then used in a conventional IIF assay. Control cells transfected with an unrelated target can assist in the determination of positive results, an especially important feature in autoimmune sera where reactivity to more than one cellular target may be present.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Burlingame RW: Recent advances in understanding the clinical utility and underlying cause of antinucleosome (antichromatin) autoantibodies, *Clin Appl Immunol Rev* 4:351, 2004.

Antichromatin antibodies are a hallmark of lupus disease; this review covers all important data that justify the assertion.

Sebbag M, Chapuy-Regaud S, Auger I, et al: Clinical and pathophysiological significance of the autoimmune response to citrullinated proteins in rheumatoid arthritis, *Joint Bone Spine* 71:493, 2004.

Very informative account with historic highlights of this important group of autoantibodies specifically seen in rheumatoid arthritis.

Sherer Y, Gorstein A, Fritzler MJ, et al: Autoantibody explosion in systemic lupus erythematosus: more than 100 different antibodies found in SLE patients, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 34:501, 2004.

Most complete account of the prevalence and specificities of autoantibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus, comprising antibodies that target nuclear cytoplasmic phospholipid and cell membranes and other antigens.

Tan EM: Antinuclear antibodies: diagnostic markers for autoimmune diseases and probes for cell biology, *Adv Immunol* 44:93, 1989.

This is a classic review paper in the field of autoantibodies that describes their clinical associations and the molecular nature of autoantigens; it was written by a scientist who discovered many of the most important autoantibody markers in rheumatology.

Tan EM, Smolen JS, McDougal JS, et al: A critical evaluation of enzyme immunoassays for detection of antinuclear antibodies of defined specificities. I. Precision sensitivity and specificity, *Arthritis Rheum* 42:455, 1999.

This paper is the first to try to shed light on the difficult task of standardization of laboratory practices. Many useful recommendations from researchers, technicians, and clinicians enhance understanding of ELISA results.

von Mühlen CA, Tan EM: Autoantibodies in the diagnosis of systemic rheumatic diseases, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 24:323, 1995.

Very thorough description of major autoantibodies in systemic rheumatic disease, with clinical associations and molecular data for autoantigens.

Vossenaar ER, van Venrooij WJ: Anti-CCP antibodies a highly specific marker for (early) rheumatoid arthritis, *Clin Appl Immunol Rev* 4:239, 2004.

Historic and clinical discussion of anti-CCP autoantibodies, presenting some evidence for a possible etiologic role of these autoantibodies in rheumatoid arthritis.

Abeles AM, Abeles M: The clinical utility of a positive antinuclear antibody test result, *Am J Med* 126(4):342–348, 2013.

Aggarwal R, Cassidy E, Fertig N, et al: Patients with non-Jo-1 anti-tRNA-synthetase autoantibodies have worse survival than Jo-1 positive patients, *Ann Rheum Dis* 73(1):227–232, 2014.

Aggarwal R, Lucas M, Fertig N, et al: Anti-U3 RNP autoantibodies in systemic sclerosis, *Arthritis Rheum* 60(4):1112–1118, 2009.

Agmon-Levin N, Damoiseaux J, Kallenberg C, et al: International recommendations for the assessment of autoantibodies to cellular antigens referred to as anti-nuclear antibodies, *Ann Rheum Dis* 73(1):17–23, 2014.

Agmon-Levin N, Mosca M, Petri M, et al: Systemic lupus erythematosus one disease or many?, *Autoimmun Rev* 11(8):593–595, 2012.

Aho K, Palusuo T, Kurki P: Marker antibodies of rheumatoid arthritis: Diagnostic and pathogenetic implications, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 23(6):379–387, 1994.

Ajeganova S, Huizinga TW: Rheumatoid arthritis: Seronegative and seropositive RA—Alike but different?, *Nat Rev Rheumatol* 11(1):8–9, 2015.

Alarcón-Segovia D, Delezé M, Oria CV, et al: Antiphospholipid antibodies and the antiphospholipid syndrome in systemic lupus erythematosus: A prospective analysis of 500 consecutive patients, *Medicine* 68:353–365, 1989.

Alarcón-Segovia D, Peréz-Vazquez ME, Villa AR, et al: Preliminary classification criteria for the antiphospholipid syndrome within systemic lupus erythematosus, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 21(5):275–286, 1992.

Al-Attia HM, Ahmed YHA: Mucocutaneous disease in Arabs with systemic lupus erythematosus: Clinical expression and relevance to autoantibodies, *Lupus* 7(8):535–539, 1998.

Albayda J, Mammen AL: Is statin-induced myositis part of the polymyositis disease spectrum?, *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 16(8):433, 2014.

Albon S, Bunn C, Swana G, et al: Performance of a multiplex assay compared to enzyme and precipitation methods for anti-ENA testing in systemic lupus and systemic sclerosis, *J Immunol Methods* 365(1–2):126–131, 2011.

Aletaha D, Neogi T, Silman AJ, et al: 2010 rheumatoid arthritis classification criteria: An American College of Rheumatology/European League Against Rheumatism collaborative initiative, *Arthritis Rheum* 62(9):2569–2581, 2010.

Alexiou I, Germenis A, Koutroumpas A, et al: Anticyclic citrullinated peptide-2 (CCP2) autoantibodies and extra-articular manifestations in Greek patients with rheumatoid arthritis, *Clin Rheumatol* 27(4):511–513, 2008.

Allanore Y, Sellam J, Batteux F, et al: Induction of autoantibodies in refractory rheumatoid arthritis treated by infliximab, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 22(6):756–758, 2004.

Almeida Gonzalez D, Cabrera de Leon A, Rodriguez Perez Mdel C, et al: Efficiency of different strategies to detect autoantibodies to extractable nuclear antigens, *J Immunol Methods* 360(1–2):89–95, 2010.

Alspaugh MA, Tan EM: Antibodies to cellular antigens in Sjögren's syndrome, *J Clin Invest* 55:1067–1073, 1975.

American College of Rheumatology Ad Hoc Committee on Systemic Lupus Erythematosus: Guidelines for referral and management of systemic lupus erythematosus in adults, *Arthritis Rheum* 42(9):1785–1796, 1999.

Andreoli L, Fredi M, Nalli C, et al: Clinical significance of IgA anti-cardiolipin and IgA anti-beta2glycoprotein I antibodies, *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 15(7):343, 2013.

Arnett FC, Fritzler MJ, Ahn C, et al: Urinary mercury levels in patients with autoantibodies to U3-RNP (fibrillarin), *J Rheumatol* 27(2):405–410, 2000.

Arnett FC, Shulman LE: Studies in familial systemic lupus erythematosus, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 55(4):313–322, 1976.

Avaniss-Aghajani E, Berzon S, Sarkissian A: Clinical value of multiplexed bead-based immunoassays for detection of autoantibodies to nuclear antigens, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 14(5):505–509, 2007.

Bacman S, Sterin-Borda L, Camusso JJ, et al: Circulating antibodies against rat parotid gland M3 muscarinic receptors in primary Sjogren's syndrome, *Clin Exp Immunol* 104(3):454–459, 1996.

Barada FA Jr, Andrews BS, Davis JST, et al: Antibodies to Sm in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus: Correlation of Sm antibody titers with disease activity and other laboratory parameters, *Arthritis Rheum* 24(10):1236–1244, 1981.

Bardin N, Desplat-Jego S, Daniel L, et al: BioPlex 2200 multiplexed system: simultaneous detection of anti-dsDNA and anti-chromatin antibodies in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Autoimmunity* 42(1):63–68, 2009.

Behnert A, Fritzler MJ, Teng B, et al: An anti-phospholipase A2 receptor quantitative immunoassay and epitope analysis in membranous nephropathy reveals different antigenic domains of the receptor, *PLoS ONE* 8(4):e61669, 2013.

Bentow C, Swart A, Wu J, et al: Clinical performance evaluation of a novel rapid response chemiluminescent immunoassay for the detection of autoantibodies to extractable nuclear antigens, *Clin Chim Acta* 424:141–147, 2013.

Bernatsky S, Joseph L, Pineau CA, et al: Estimating the prevalence of polymyositis and dermatomyositis from administrative data: Age, sex and regional differences, *Ann Rheum Dis* 68(7):1192–1196, 2009.

Bernstein RM, Steigerwald JC, Tan EM: Association of antinuclear and antinucleolar antibodies in progressive systemic sclerosis, *Clin Exp Immunol* 48(1):43–51, 1982.

Betteridge Z, Gunawardena H, North J, et al: Identification of a novel autoantibody directed against small ubiquitin-like modifier activating enzyme in dermatomyositis, *Arthritis Rheum* 56(9):3132–3137, 2007.

Betteridge ZE, Gunawardena H, McHugh NJ: Novel autoantibodies and clinical phenotypes in adult and juvenile myositis, *Arthritis Res Ther* 13(2):209, 2011.

Bharadwaj A, Aggarawal A, Misra R: Clinical relevance of IgA rheumatoid factor (RF) in children with juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, *Rheumatol Int* 19(1/2):47–49, 1999.

Binder A, Ellis S: When to order an antinuclear antibody test, *BMJ* 347:f5060, 2013.

Bizzaro N, Wiik A: Appropriateness in anti-nuclear antibody testing: From clinical request to strategic laboratory practice, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 22(3):349–355, 2004.

Bobbio-Pallavicini F, Alpini C, Caporali R, et al: Autoantibody profile in rheumatoid arthritis during long-term infliximab treatment, *Arthritis Res Ther* 6(3):R264–R272, 2004.

Bohan A, Peter JB: Polymyositis and dermatomyositis (first of two parts), *New Engl J Med* 292:344–347, 1975a.

Bohan A, Peter JB: Polymyositis and dermatomyositis (second of two parts), *New Engl J Med* 292:403–407, 1975b.

Bombardieri M, Alessandri C, Labbadia G, et al: Role of anti-cyclic citrullinated peptide antibodies in discriminating patients with rheumatoid arthritis from patients with chronic hepatitis C infection-associated polyarticular involvement, *Arthritis Res Ther* 6(2):R137–R141, 2004.

Bonfa E, Golombek SJ, Kaufman LD, et al: Association between lupus psychosis and anti-ribosomal P protein antibodies, *N Engl J Med* 317:265–271, 1987.

Bonroy C, Van Praet J, Smith V, et al: Optimization and diagnostic performance of a single multiparameter lineblot in the serological workup of systemic sclerosis, *J Immunol Methods* 379(1–2):53–60, 2012.

Bonroy C, Verfaillie C, Smith V, et al: Automated indirect immunofluorescence antinuclear antibody analysis is a standardized alternative for visual microscope interpretation, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 51(9):1771–1779, 2013.

Bos WH, van de Stadt LA, Sohrabian A, et al: Development of anti-citrullinated protein antibody and rheumatoid factor isotypes prior to the onset of rheumatoid arthritis, *Arthritis Res Ther* 16(2):405, 2014.

Bossuyt X, Cooreman S, De Baere H, et al: Detection of antinuclear antibodies by automated indirect immunofluorescence analysis, *Clin Chim Acta* 415:101–106, 2013.

Bossuyt X, Louche C, Wiik A: Standardisation in clinical laboratory medicine: An ethical reflection, *Ann Rheum Dis* 67(8):1061–1063, 2008.

Brouwer R, Vree Egberts WT, Hengstman GJ, et al: Autoantibodies directed to novel components of the PM/Scl complex, the human exosome, *Arthritis Res* 4(2):134–138, 2002.

Burford B, Gentry-Maharaj A, Graham R, et al: Autoantibodies to MUC1 glycopeptides cannot be used as a screening assay for early detection of breast, ovarian, lung or pancreatic cancer, *Br J Cancer* 108(10):2045–2055, 2013.

Burlingame RW, Rubin RL: Drug-induced anti-histone autoantibodies display two patterns of reactivity with substructures of chromatin, *J Clin Invest* 88(2):680–690, 1991.

Burlingame RW, Rubin RL: Autoantibody to the nucleosome subunit (H2A-H2B)-DNA is an early and ubiquitous feature of lupus-like conditions, *Mol Biol Rep* 23(3–4):159–166, 1996.

Bylund DJ, Nakamura RM: Importance of detection of SS-A/Ro autoantibody in screening immunofluorescence tests for autoantibodies to nuclear antigens, *J Clin Lab Anal* 5(3):212–218, 1991.

Canoso JJ, Cohen AS: A review of the use, evaluations, and criticisms of the preliminary criteria for the classification of systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Rheum* 22(8):917–921, 1979.

Cao H, Pan M, Kang Y, et al: Clinical manifestations of dermatomyositis and clinically amyopathic dermatomyositis patients with positive expression of anti-melanoma differentiation-associated gene 5 antibody, *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken)* 64(10):1602–1610, 2012.

Caramaschi P, Ruzzenente O, Pieropan S, et al: Determination of ANA specificity using multiplexed fluorescent microsphere immunoassay in patients with ANA positivity at high titres after infliximab treatment: preliminary results, *Rheumatol Int* 27(7):649–654, 2007.

Cavill D, Waterman SA, Gordon TP: Failure to detect antibodies to extracellular loop peptides of the muscarinic M3 receptor in primary Sjogren's syndrome, *J Rheumatol* 29(6):1342–1344, 2002.

Cavill D, Waterman SA, Gordon TP: Antibodies raised against the second extracellular loop of the human muscarinic M3 receptor mimic functional autoantibodies in Sjogren's syndrome, *Scand J Immunol* 59(3):261–266, 2004.

Ceribelli A, Cavazzana I, Franceschini F, et al: Anti-Th/To are common antinucleolar autoantibodies in Italian patients with scleroderma, *J Rheumatol* 37(10):2071–2075, 2010.

Ceribelli A, Fredi M, Taraborelli M, et al: Anti-MJ/NXP-2 autoantibody specificity in a cohort of adult Italian patients with polymyositis/dermatomyositis, *Arthritis Res Ther* 14(2):R97, 2012a.

Ceribelli A, Satoh M, Chan EK: A new immunoprecipitation-real time quantitative PCR assay for anti-Th/To and anti-U3RNP antibody detection in systemic sclerosis, *Arthritis Res Ther* 14(3):R128, 2012b.

Cervera R, Doria A, Amoura Z, et al: Patterns of systemic lupus erythematosus expression in Europe, *Autoimmun Rev* 13(6):621–629, 2014.

Cha S, Singson E, Cornelius J, et al: Muscarinic acetylcholine type-3 receptor desensitization due to chronic exposure to Sjogren's syndrome-associated autoantibodies, *J Rheumatol* 33(2):296–306, 2006.

Chan EK, Andrade LE: Antinuclear antibodies in Sjogren's syndrome, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 18(3):551–570, 1992.

Chan EK, Tan EM: Epitopic targets for autoantibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus and Sjogren's syndrome, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 1(3):376–381, 1989.

Chan EKL, Buyon JP: The SS-A/Ro antigen. In Maini R, van Venrooij WJ, editors: *Manual of biological markers of disease*, Dordrecht, Netherlands, 1994, Kluwer Academic Publishers, pp 1–18.

Chan EKL, Imai H, Hamel JC, et al: Human autoantibody to RNA polymerase I transcription factor hUBF: Molecular identity of nucleolus organizer region autoantigen NOR-90 and ribosomal RNA transcription upstream binding factor, *J Exp Med* 174:1239–1244, 1991.

Chen Q, Li X, He W, et al: The epitope study of alpha-fodrin autoantibody in primary Sjogren's syndrome, *Clin Exp Immunol* 149(3):497–503, 2007.

Chinoy H, Fertig N, Oddis CV, et al: The diagnostic utility of myositis autoantibody testing for predicting the risk of cancer-associated myositis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 66(10):1345–1349, 2007.

Choi J, Kim ST, Craft J: The pathogenesis of systemic lupus erythematosus—an update, *Curr Opin Immunol* 24(6):651–657, 2012.

Clark G, Reichlin M, Tomasi TB: Characterization of a soluble cytoplasmic antigen reactive with sera from

patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Immunol* 102:117–122, 1969.
Cohen AS, Canoso JJ: Criteria for the classification of systemic lupus erythematosus—Status 1972, *Arthritis Rheum* 15(5):540–543, 1972.
Cohen D, Berger SP, Steup-Beekman GM, et al: Diagnosis and management of the antiphospholipid syndrome, *BMJ* 340:c2541, 2010.
Cousins L, Pericleous C, Khamashta M, et al: Antibodies to domain I of beta-2-glycoprotein I and IgA antiphospholipid antibodies in patients with 'seronegative' antiphospholipid syndrome, *Ann Rheum Dis* 74(1):317–319, 2015.
Cruellas MG, Viana Vdos S, Levy-Neto M, et al: Myositis-specific and myositis-associated autoantibody profiles and their clinical associations in a large series of patients with polymyositis and dermatomyositis, *Clinics (Sao Paulo)* 68(7):909–914, 2013.
Dagher JH, Scheer U, Voit R, et al: Autoantibodies to NOR 90/hUBF: Long-term clinical and serological follow-up in a patient with limited systemic sclerosis suggests an antigen driven immune response, *J Rheumatol* 29(7):1543–1547, 2002.
Damoiseaux J, Boesten K, Giesen J, et al: Evaluation of a novel line-blot immunoassay for the detection of antibodies to extractable nuclear antigens, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1050:340–347, 2005.
D'Aoust J, Hudson M, Tatibouet S, et al: Clinical and serologic correlates of anti-PM/Scl antibodies in systemic sclerosis: A multicenter study of 763 patients, *Arthritis Rheumatol* 66(6):1608–1615, 2014.
Dawson L, Tobin A, Smith P, et al: Antimuscarinic antibodies in Sjogren's syndrome: Where are we, and where are we going?, *Arthritis Rheum* 52(10):2984–2995, 2005.
Denton CP, Krieg T, Guillevin L, et al: Demographic, clinical and antibody characteristics of patients with digital ulcers in systemic sclerosis: Data from the DUO Registry, *Ann Rheum Dis* 71(5):718–721, 2012.
Deshmukh US, Gaskin F, Lewis JE, et al: Mechanisms of autoantibody diversification to SLE-related autoantigens, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 987:91–98, 2003.
Despierres L, Beziane A, Kaplanski G, et al: Contribution of anti-beta2glycoprotein I IgA antibodies to the diagnosis of anti-phospholipid syndrome: Potential interest of target domains to discriminate thrombotic and non-thrombotic patients, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 53(7):1215–1218, 2014.
Dorner T, Egerer K, Feist E, et al: Rheumatoid factor revisited, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 16(3):246–253, 2004.
Dorner T, Radbruch A, Burmester GR: B-cell-directed therapies for autoimmune disease, *Nat Rev Rheumatol* 5(8):433–441, 2009.
Duzgun N, Sahin M, Genc Y, et al: Antinucleosome antibodies and systemic lupus erythematosus, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1109:421–428, 2007.
Emlen W, O'Neill L: Clinical significance of antinuclear antibodies: Comparison of detection with immunofluorescence and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays, *Arthritis Rheum* 40(9):1612–1618, 1997.
Eriksson C, Engstrand S, Sundqvist KG, et al: Autoantibody formation in patients with rheumatoid arthritis treated with anti-TNF alpha, *Ann Rheum Dis* 64(3): 403–407, 2005.
Errico A, Claudiani P, Addio MD, et al: Spastin interacts with the centrosomal protein NA14, and is enriched in the spindle pole, the midbody and the distal axon, *Hum Mol Genet* 13(18):2121–2132, 2004.
Espada G, Maldonado Cocco JA, Fertig N, et al: Clinical and serologic characterization of an Argentine pediatric myositis cohort: Identification of a novel autoantibody (anti-MJ) to a 142-kDa protein, *J Rheumatol* 36(11):2547–2551, 2009.
Espinosa A, Zhou W, Ek M, et al: The Sjogren's syndrome-associated autoantigen Ro52 is an E3 ligase that regulates proliferation and cell death, *J Immunol* 176(10):6277–6285, 2006.
Fatenejad S, Bennett M, Moslehi J, et al: Influence of antigen organization on the development of lupus autoantibodies, *Arthritis Rheum* 41(4):603–612, 1998.
Feist E, Steiner G: Rheumatoid arthritis: An antigenic chameleon, *Ann Rheum Dis* 73(10):1753–1754, 2014.
Firestein GS: Evolving concepts of rheumatoid arthritis, *Nature* 423(6937):356–361, 2003.
Fischer A, Pfalzgraf FJ, Feghali-Bostwick CA, et al: Anti-th/to-positivity in a cohort of patients with idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis, *J Rheumatol* 33(8):1600–1605, 2006.
Flam ST, Gunnarsson R, Garen T, et al: The HLA profiles of mixed connective tissue disease differ distinctly from the profiles of clinically related connective tissue diseases, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 54(3):528–535, 2015.
Foggia P, Percannella G, Soda P, et al: Benchmarking HEp-2 cells classification methods, *IEEE Trans Med Imaging* 32(10):1878–1889, 2013.
Forslind K, Ahlmen M, Eberhardt K, et al: Prediction of radiological outcome in early rheumatoid arthritis in clinical practice: Role of antibodies to citrullinated peptides (anti-CCP), *Ann Rheum Dis* 63(9):1090–1095, 2004.
Francoeur A-M, Peebles CL, Gompper PT, et al: Identification of Ki (Ku, p70/p80) autoantigens and analysis of anti-Ki autoantibody reactivity, *J Immunol* 136:1648–1653, 1986.
Fritzler M: Autoantibody testing: Current challenges and future opportunities. In Conrad K, Chan EKL, Fritzler MJ, et al, editors: *From prediction to prevention of autoimmune diseases*, Berlin, 2011a, Pabst Science Publishers, pp 584–596.
Fritzler MJ: The antinuclear antibody test: last or lasting gasp?, *Arthritis Rheum* 63(1):19–22, 2011b.
Fritzler MJ: Advances and applications of multiplexed diagnostic technologies in autoimmune diseases, *Lupus* 15(7):422–427, 2006.
Fritzler MJ, Behmanesh F, Fritzler ML: Analysis of human sera that are polyreactive in an addressable laser bead immunoassay, *Clin Immunol* 120(3):349–356, 2006.
Fritzler MJ, Fritzler ML: The emergence of multiplexed technologies as diagnostic platforms in systemic autoimmune diseases, *Curr Med Chem* 13(21):2503–2512, 2006.
Fritzler MJ, Fritzler ML: Microbead-based technologies in diagnostic autoantibody detection, *Expert Opin Med Diagn* 3(1):81–89, 2009.
Fritzler MJ, Hanson C, Miller J, et al: Specificity of autoantibodies to SS-A/Ro on a transfected and overexpressed human 60 kDa Ro autoantigen substrate, *J Clin Lab Anal* 16(2):103–108, 2002.
Fritzler MJ, Kinsella TD, Garbutt E: The CREST syndrome: A distinct serologic entity with anticentromere antibodies, *Am J Med* 69:520–526, 1980.
Fritzler MJ, Rubin RL: Drug-induced lupus. In Wallace DJ, Hahn BH, editors: *Duboi's lupus erythematosus*, Philadelphia, 1993, Lea & Febiger, pp 442–453.
Fritzler MJ, von Mühlen CA, Toffoli SM, et al: Autoantibodies to the nucleolar organizer antigen NOR-90 in children with systemic rheumatic diseases, *J Rheumatol* 22:521–524, 1995.
Fritzler MJ, Wiik A, Fritzler ML, et al: The use and abuse of commercial kits used to detect autoantibodies, *Arthritis Res Ther* 5(4):192–201, 2003.
Fujii T, Mimori T, Hama N, et al: Detection of anti-NOR-90 in patient sera with anti-nucleolar antibodies using a cDNA that encodes for the NOR-90 autoantigen: Correlation of anti-NOR-90 with Sjögren's syndrome (abstract), *Arthritis Rheum* 35:S72, 1992.
Fujimoto M, Hamaguchi Y, Kaji K, et al: Myositis-specific anti-155/140 autoantibodies target transcription intermediary factor 1 family proteins, *Arthritis Rheum* 64(2):513–522, 2012.
Fujimoto M, Matsushita T, Hamaguchi Y, et al: Autoantibodies to small ubiquitin-like modifier activating enzymes in Japanese patients with dermatomyositis: comparison with a UK Caucasian cohort, *Ann Rheum Dis* 72(1):151–153, 2013.
Gan RW, Trouw LA, Shi J, et al: Anti-carbamylated protein antibodies are present prior to rheumatoid arthritis and are associated with its future diagnosis, *J Rheumatol* 42(4):572–579, 2015.
Gao J, Cha S, Jonsson R, et al: Detection of anti-type 3 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor autoantibodies in the sera of Sjogren's syndrome patients by use of a transfected cell line assay, *Arthritis Rheum* 50(8):2615–2621, 2004.
Ghirardello A, Bassi N, Palma L, et al: Autoantibodies in polymyositis and dermatomyositis, *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 15(6):335, 2013.
Ghirardello A, Bendo R, Rampudda ME, et al: Commercial blot assays in the diagnosis of systemic rheumatic diseases, *Autoimmun Rev* 8(8):645–649, 2009.
Ghirardello A, Rampudda M, Ekholm L, et al: Diagnostic performance and validation of autoantibody testing in myositis by a commercial line blot assay, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 49(12):2370–2374, 2010.
Girbal E, Sebbag M, Gomes-Daudrix V, et al: Characterisation of the rat oesophagus epithelium antigens defined by the so-called "antikeratin antibodies," specific for rheumatoid arthritis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 52(10): 749–757, 1993.
Gomez-Puerta JA, Burlingame RW, Cervera R: Anti-chromatin (anti-nucleosome) antibodies: Diagnostic and clinical value, *Autoimmun Rev* 7(8):606–611, 2008.
Gomez-Puerta JA, Cervera R: Diagnosis and classification of the antiphospholipid syndrome, *J Autoimmun* 48-49:20–25, 2014.
Gono T, Kawaguchi Y, Satoh T, et al: Clinical manifestation and prognostic factor in anti-melanoma differentiation-associated gene 5 antibody-associated interstitial lung disease as a complication of dermatomyositis, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 49(9):1713–1719, 2010.
Gonzalez C, Garcia-Berrocal B, Perez M, et al: Laboratory screening of connective tissue diseases by a new automated ENA screening assay (EliA Symphony) in clinically defined patients, *Clin Chim Acta* 359(1–2):109–114, 2005.
Grennan DM, Parfitt A, Manolios N, et al: Family and twin studies in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Dis Markers* 13(2):93–98, 1997.
Grossmann K, Roggenbuck D, Schroder C, et al: Multiplex assessment of non-organ-specific autoantibodies with a novel microbead-based immunoassay, *Cytometry A* 79(2):118–125, 2011.
Gulko PS, Winchester RJ: Genetics of systemic lupus erythematosus. In Kammer GM, Tsokos GC, editors: *Lupus: Molecular and cellular pathogenesis*, Totowa, 1999, Humana Press Inc., pp 101–123.
Gunawardena H, Betteridge ZE, McHugh NJ: Newly identified autoantibodies: Relationship to idiopathic inflammatory myopathy subsets and pathogenesis, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 20(6):675–680, 2008.
Gunawardena H, Betteridge ZE, McHugh NJ: Myositis-specific autoantibodies: Their clinical and pathogenic significance in disease expression, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 48(6):607–612, 2009a.
Gunawardena H, Wedderburn LR, Chinoy H, et al: Autoantibodies to a 140-kd protein in juvenile dermatomyositis are associated with calcinosis, *Arthritis Rheum* 60(6):1807–1814, 2009b.
Haddouk S, Marzouk S, Jallouli M, et al: Clinical and diagnostic value of ribosomal P autoantibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 48(8):953–957, 2009.
Hamaguchi Y, Kuwana M, Hoshino K, et al: Clinical correlations with dermatomyositis-specific autoantibodies in adult Japanese patients with dermatomyositis: A multicenter cross-sectional study, *Arch Dermatol* 147(4):391–398, 2011.
Hanke K, Bruckner CS, Dahnrich C, et al: Antibodies against PM/Scl-75 and PM/Scl-100 are independent markers for different subsets of systemic sclerosis patients, *Arthritis Res Ther* 11(1):R22, 2009.
Hanly JG, Su L, Farewell V, et al: Comparison between multiplex assays for autoantibody detection in systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Immunol Methods* 358(1–2):75–80, 2010.
Harley JB, James JA: Autoepitopes in lupus, *J Lab Clin Med* 126(6):509–516, 1995.
Harris EN, Gharavi AE, Boey ML, et al: Anticardiolipin antibodies: Detection by radioimmunoassay and association with thrombosis in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Lancet* 2:1211–1214, 1983.
Harris ML, Rosen A: Autoimmunity in scleroderma: The origin, pathogenetic role, and clinical significance of autoantibodies, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 15(6):778–784, 2003.
Haschka J, Englbrecht M, Hueber AJ, et al: Relapse rates in patients with rheumatoid arthritis in stable remission tapering or stopping antirheumatic therapy: Interim results from the prospective randomised controlled RETRO study, *Ann Rheum Dis* 2015.
Hassfeld W, Chan EKL, Mathison DA, et al: Molecular definition of heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein R (hnRNP R) using autoimmune antibody: Immunological relationship with hnRNP P, *Nuclei Acids Research* 26(2):439–445, 1998.
Hassfeld W, Steiner G, Graninger W, et al: Autoantibody to the nuclear antigen RA33: A marker for early rheumatoid arthritis, *Br J Rheumatol* 32(3):199–203, 1993.
Hassfeld W, Steiner G, Hartmuth K, et al: Demonstration of a new antinuclear antibody (anti-RA33) that is highly specific for rheumatoid arthritis, *Arthritis Rheum* 32(12):1515–1520, 1989.
Hengstman GJ, ter Laak HJ, Vree Egberts WT, et al: Anti-signal recognition particle autoantibodies:

Marker of a necrotising myopathy, *Ann Rheum Dis* 65(12):1635–1638, 2006.
Hengstman GJ, van Brenk L, Vree Egberts WT, et al: High specificity of myositis specific autoantibodies for myositis compared with other neuromuscular disorders, *J Neurol* 252(5):534–537, 2005.
Hensvold AH, Magnusson PK, Joshua V, et al: Environmental and genetic factors in the development of anticitrullinated protein antibodies (ACPAs) and ACPA-positive rheumatoid arthritis: An epidemiological investigation in twins, *Ann Rheum Dis* 74(2): 375–380, 2015.
Hervier B, Devilliers H, Stanciu R, et al: Hierarchical cluster and survival analyses of antisynthetase syndrome: Phenotype and outcome are correlated with anti-tRNA synthetase antibody specificity, *Autoimmun Rev* 12(2):210–217, 2012.
Hess EV, Mongey A-B: Drug-related lupus: The same as or different from idiopathic disease? In Lahita RG, editor: *Systemic lupus erythematosus*, New York, 1992, Churchill Livingstone, pp 893–904.
Hirohata S, Sakuma Y, Yanagida T, et al: Association of cerebrospinal fluid anti-Sm antibodies with acute confusional state in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Res Ther* 16(5):450, 2014.
Hochberg MC: Updating the American College of Rheumatology revised criteria for the classification of systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Rheum* 40(9): 1725, 1997.
Hochberg MC, Boyd RE, Ahearn JM, et al: Systemic lupus erythematosus: A review of clinico-laboratory features and immunogenetic markers in 150 patients with emphasis on demographic subsets, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 64(5):285–295, 1985.
Hoffman IE, Peene I, Meheus L, et al: Specific antinuclear antibodies are associated with clinical features in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Ann Rheum Dis* 63(9): 1155–1158, 2004.
Hoffman IE, Peene I, Veys EM, et al: Detection of specific antinuclear reactivities in patients with negative anti-nuclear antibody immunofluorescence screening tests, *Clin Chem* 48(12):2171–2176, 2002.
Homburger HA, Cahen YD, Griffiths J, et al: Detection of antinuclear antibodies: Comparative evaluation of enzyme immunoassay and indirect immunofluorescence methods, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 122(11):993–999, 1998.
Honma M, Komatsu S, Igawa S, et al: Rapidly progressive systemic sclerosis associated with breast carcinoma: Report of a case with anti-RNA polymerase III antibody, *J Dermatol* 39(6):574–576, 2012.
Hoogendijk JE, Amato AA, Lecky BR, et al: 119th ENMC international workshop: Trial design in adult idiopathic inflammatory myopathies, with the exception of inclusion body myositis, 10-12 October 2003, Naarden, The Netherlands, *Neuromuscul Disord* 14(5):337–345, 2004.
Hoshino K, Muro Y, Sugiura K, et al: Anti-MDA5 and anti-TIF1-gamma antibodies have clinical significance for patients with dermatomyositis, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 49(9):1726–1733, 2010.
Houssien DA, Jonsson T, Davies E, et al: Clinical significance of IgA rheumatoid factor subclasses in rheumatoid arthritis, *J Rheumatol* 24(11):2119–2122, 1997.
Hudson M, Mahler M, Pope J, et al: Clinical correlates of CENP-A and CENP-B antibodies in a large cohort of patients with systemic sclerosis, *J Rheumatol* 39(4):787–794, 2012a.
Hudson M, Pope J, Mahler M, et al: Clinical significance of antibodies to Ro52/TRIM21 in systemic sclerosis, *Arthritis Res Ther* 14(2):R50, 2012b.
Humphreys JH, van Nies J, Chipping J, et al: Rheumatoid factor and anti-citrullinated protein antibody positivity, but not level, are associated with increased mortality in patients with rheumatoid arthritis: Results from two large independent cohorts, *Arthritis Res Ther* 16(6):483, 2014.
Iaccarino L, Gatto M, Bettio S, et al: Overlap connective tissue disease syndromes, *Autoimmun Rev* 12(3):363–373, 2013.
Ichimura Y, Matsushita T, Hamaguchi Y, et al: Anti-NXP2 autoantibodies in adult patients with idiopathic inflammatory myopathies: Possible association with malignancy, *Ann Rheum Dis* 71(5):710–713, 2012.
Ighe A, Dahlstrom O, Skogh T, et al: Application of the 2012 systemic lupus international collaborating clinics classification criteria on a Regional Swedish systemic lupus erythematosus register, *Arthritis Res Ther* 17(1): 3, 2015.
Ikeda N, Takahashi K, Yamaguchi Y, et al: Analysis of dermatomyositis-specific autoantibodies and clinical characteristics in Japanese patients, *J Dermatol* 38(10): 973–979, 2011.
Imai H, Fritzler MJ, Neri R, et al: Immunocytochemical characterization of human NOR-90 (upstream binding factor) and associated antigens reactive with autoimmune sera: Two MR forms of NOR-90/hUBF autoantigens, *Mol Biol Rep* 19:115–124, 1994.
Ines L, Silva C, Galindo M, et al: Classification of systemic lupus erythematosus: Systemic Lupus International Collaborating Clinics versus American College of Rheumatology criteria, *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken)* 67(8):1180–1185, 2015.
Isenberg D, Shoenfeld Y: The origin and significance of anti-DNA antibodies, *Immunol Today* 8(9):279–282, 1987.
Isenberg DA, Ehrenstein MR, Longhurst C, et al: The origin, sequence, structure, and consequences of developing anti-DNA antibodies: A human perspective, *Arthritis Rheum* 37:169–180, 1994.
Ishizaki J, Saito K, Nawata M, et al: Low complements and high titre of anti-Sm antibody as predictors of histopathologically proven silent lupus nephritis without abnormal urinalysis in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 54(3):405–412, 2015.
Isshi K, Hirohata S: Differential roles of the anti-ribosomal P antibody and antineuronal antibody in the pathogenesis of central nervous system involvement in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Rheum* 41(10):1819–1827, 1998.
Iverson GM, von Mühlen CA, Staub HL, et al: Patients with atherosclerotic syndrome, negative in anti-cardiolipin assays, make IgA autoantibodies that preferentially target domain 4 of beta2-GPI, *J Autoimmun* 27(4):266–271, 2006.
Janssens X, Veys EM, Verbruggen G, et al: The diagnostic significance of the antiperinuclear factor for rheumatoid arthritis, *J Rheumatol* 15(9):1346–1350, 1988.
Jarzabek-Chorzelska M, Blaszczyk M, Jablonska S, et al: Scl-70 antibody—A specific marker of systemic sclerosis, *Br J Dermatol* 115:393–401, 1986.
Jiang X, Trouw LA, van Wesemael TJ, et al: Anti-CarP antibodies in two large cohorts of patients with rheumatoid arthritis and their relationship to genetic risk factors, cigarette smoking and other autoantibodies, *Ann Rheum Dis* 73(10):1761–1768, 2014.
Johnson SR, Goek ON, Singh-Grewal D, et al: Classification criteria in rheumatic diseases: A review of methodologic properties, *Arthritis Rheum* 57(7):1119–1133, 2007.
Kaji K, Fujimoto M, Hasegawa M, et al: Identification of a novel autoantibody reactive with 155 and 140 kDa nuclear proteins in patients with dermatomyositis: An association with malignancy, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 46(1):25–28, 2007.
Kallenberg CGM: Overlapping syndromes, undifferentiated connective tissue disease, and other fibrosing conditions, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 5:809–815, 1993.
Kalluri M, Sahn SA, Oddis CV, et al: Clinical profile of anti-PL-12 autoantibody. Cohort study and review of the literature, *Chest* 135(6):1550–1556, 2009.
Kaneda K, Takasaki Y, Takeuchi K, et al: Autoimmune response to proteins of proliferating cell nuclear antigen multiprotein complexes in patients with connective tissue diseases, *J Rheumatol* 31(11):2142–2150, 2004.
Kang EH, Nakashima R, Mimori T, et al: Myositis autoantibodies in Korean patients with inflammatory myositis: Anti-140-kDa polypeptide antibody is primarily associated with rapidly progressive interstitial lung disease independent of clinically amyopathic dermatomyositis, *BMC Musculoskelet Disord* 11:223, 2010.
Kaplan D: The onset of disease in twins and siblings with systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Rheumatol* 11(5):648–652, 1984.
Kastbom A, Strandberg G, Lindroos A, et al: Anti-CCP antibody test predicts the disease course during 3 years in early rheumatoid arthritis (the Swedish TIRA project), *Ann Rheum Dis* 63(9):1085–1089, 2004.
Kavanaugh AF, Solomon DH: Guidelines for immunologic laboratory testing in the rheumatic diseases: Anti-DNA antibody tests, *Arthritis Rheum* 47(5):546–555, 2002.
Keech CL, McCluskey J, Gordon TP: Transfection and overexpression of the human 60-kDa Ro/SS-A autoantigen in HEp-2 cells, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 73(1):146–151, 1994.
Kessenbrock K, Raijmakers R, Fritzler MJ, et al: Synthetic peptides: The future of patient management in systemic rheumatic diseases?, *Curr Med Chem* 14(26): 2831–2838, 2007.
Kiriakidou M, Cotton D, Taichman D, et al: Systemic lupus erythematosus, *Ann Intern Med* 159(7):Itc4-1, 2013.
Klareskog L, Alfredsson L, Rantapaa-Dahlqvist S, et al: What precedes development of rheumatoid arthritis?, *Ann Rheum Dis* 63(Suppl 2):ii28–ii31, 2004.
Klein M, Mann H, Plestilova L, et al: Arthritis in idiopathic inflammatory myopathy: clinical features and autoantibody associations, *J Rheumatol* 41(6):1133–1139, 2014.
Koenig M, Fritzler MJ, Targoff IN, et al: Heterogeneity of autoantibodies in 100 patients with autoimmune myositis: Insights into clinical features and outcomes, *Arthritis Res Ther* 9(4):R78, 2007.
Koenig M, Joyal F, Fritzler MJ, et al: Autoantibodies and microvascular damage are independent predictive factors for the progression of Raynaud's phenomenon to systemic sclerosis: A twenty-year prospective study of 586 patients, with validation of proposed criteria for early systemic sclerosis, *Arthritis Rheum* 58(12): 3902–3912, 2008.
Kovacs L, Feher E, Bodnar I, et al: Demonstration of autoantibody binding to muscarinic acetylcholine receptors in the salivary gland in primary Sjogren's syndrome, *Clin Immunol* 128(2):269–276, 2008.
Kovacs L, Marczinovits I, Gyorgy A, et al: Clinical associations of autoantibodies to human muscarinic acetylcholine receptor 3(213-228) in primary Sjogren's syndrome, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 44(8):1021–1025, 2005.
Krapf A, von Mühlen CA, Krapf F, et al: *Atlas of immunofluorescent antibodies*, Munich, 1996, Urban & Schwarzenberg.
Kroshinsky D, Stone JH, Bloch DB, et al: Case records of the Massachusetts General Hospital. Case 5-2009. A 47-year-old woman with a rash and numbness and pain in the legs, *N Engl J Med* 360(7):711–720, 2009.
Kunz M: Lupus erythematosus. Part I: Epidemiology, genetics and immunology, *J Dtsch Dermatol Ges* 11(8):709–719, quiz 720, 709–720; quiz 721, 2013.
Kuwana M, Kaburaki J, Mimori T, et al: Autoantibody reactive with three classes of RNA polymerases in sera from patients with systemic sclerosis, *J Clin Invest* 91:1399–1404, 1993.
Labirua-Iturburu A, Selva-O'Callaghan A, Vincze M, et al: Anti-PL-7 (anti-threonyl-tRNA synthetase) antisynthetase syndrome: Clinical manifestations in a series of patients from a European multicenter study (EUMYONET) and review of the literature, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 91(4):206–211, 2012.
Lazaro MA, Cocco JAM, Catoggio LJ, et al: Clinical and serologic characteristics of patients with overlap syndrome: Is mixed connective tissue disease a distinct clinical entity?, *Medicine (Balt.)* 68:58–65, 1989.
Lee DM, Phillips R, Hagan EM, et al: Quantifying anti-cyclic citrullinated peptide titres: clinical utility and association with tobacco exposure in patients with rheumatoid arthritis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 68(2):201–208, 2009.
Lee DM, Schur PH: Clinical utility of the anti-CCP assay in patients with rheumatic diseases, *Ann Rheum Dis* 62(9):870–874, 2003.
Lee HS, Irigoyen P, Kern M, et al: Interaction between smoking, the shared epitope, and anti-cyclic citrullinated peptide: A mixed picture in three large North American rheumatoid arthritis cohorts, *Arthritis Rheum* 56(6):1745–1753, 2007.
Lee SA, Kahng J, Kim Y, et al: Comparative study of immunofluorescent antinuclear antibody test and line immunoassay detecting 15 specific autoantibodies in patients with systemic rheumatic disease, *J Clin Lab Anal* 26(4):307–314, 2012.
Lerner MR, Steitz JA: Antibodies to small nuclear RNAs complexed with proteins are produced by patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 76(11):5495–5499, 1979.
Li T, Prokopec SD, Morrison S, et al: Anti-nucleosome antibodies outperform traditional biomarkers as longitudinal indicators of disease activity in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 54(3):449–457, 2015.
Liao KP, Weinblatt ME, Solomon DH: The end of rheumatoid factor as we know it?, *Arthritis Rheum* 63(5):1170–1172, 2011.
Locht H, Pelck R, Manthorpe R: Diagnostic and prognostic significance of measuring antibodies to

alpha-fodrin compared to anti-Ro-52, anti-Ro-60, and anti-La in primary Sjogren's syndrome, *J Rheumatol* 35(5):845–849, 2008.
Lom-Orta H, Alarcon-Segovia D, Diaz-Jouanen E: Systemic lupus erythematosus. Differences between patients who do, and who do not, fulfill classification criteria at the time of diagnosis, *J Rheumatol* 7(6):831–837, 1980.
Lopez-Longo FJ, Rodriguez-Mahou M, Escalona-Monge M, et al: Simultaneous identification of various antinuclear antibodies using an automated multiparameter line immunoassay system, *Lupus* 12(8):623–629, 2003.
Lopez LR, Santos ME, Espinoza LR, et al: Clinical significance of immunoglobulin A versus immunoglobulins G and M anti-cardiolipin antibodies in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. Correlation with thrombosis, thrombocytopenia, and recurrent abortion, *Am J Clin Pathol* 98(4):449–454, 1992.
Love LA, Weinberg CR, McConnaughey DR, et al: Ultraviolet radiation intensity predicts the relative distribution of dermatomyositis and anti-Mi-2 autoantibodies in women, *Arthritis Rheum* 60(8):2499–2504, 2009.
Low JM, Chauhan AK, Kietz DA, et al: Determination of anti-cyclic citrullinated peptide antibodies in the sera of patients with juvenile idiopathic arthritis, *J Rheumatol* 31(9):1829–1833, 2004.
Maddison PJ: Mixed connective tissue disease, overlap syndromes, and eosinophilic fasciitis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 50:887–893, 1991.
Maenhout TM, Bonroy C, Verfaillie C, et al: Automated indirect immunofluorescence microscopy enables the implementation of a quantitative internal quality control system for anti-nuclear antibody (ANA) analysis, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 52(7):989–998, 2014.
Mahler M, Fritzler MJ: Recent advances in peptide resolved diagnostics of systemic autoimmune diseases. In Conrad K, Chan EKL, Fritzler MJ, et al, editors: *From prediction to prevention of autoimmune diseases*, Berlin, 2011, Pabst Science Publishers, pp 598–625
Mahler M, Fritzler MJ: PM1-Alpha ELISA: The assay of choice for the detection of anti-PM/Scl autoantibodies?, *Autoimmun Rev* 8(5):373–378, 2009.
Mahler M, Fritzler MJ: Epitope specificity and significance in systemic autoimmune diseases, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1183:267–287, 2010.
Mahler M, Fritzler MJ, Satoh M: Autoantibodies to the mitochondrial RNA processing (MRP) complex also known as Th/To autoantigen, *Autoimmun Rev* 14(3): 254–257, 2015.
Mahler M, Gascon C, Patel S, et al: Rpp25 is a major target of autoantibodies to the Th/To complex as measured by a novel chemiluminescent assay, *Arthritis Res Ther* 15(2):R50, 2013.
Mahler M, Kessenbrock K, Szmyrka M, et al: International multicenter evaluation of autoantibodies to ribosomal P proteins, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 13(1):77–83, 2006.
Mahler M, Meroni PL, Bossuyt X, et al: Current concepts and future directions for the assessment of autoantibodies to cellular antigens referred to as anti-nuclear antibodies, *J Immunol Res* 2014:315179, 2014a.
Mahler M, Miller FW, Fritzler MJ: Idiopathic inflammatory myopathies and the anti-synthetase syndrome: a comprehensive review, *Autoimmun Rev* 13(4–5):367–371, 2014b.
Mahler M, Miyachi K, Peebles C, et al: The clinical significance of autoantibodies to the proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA), *Autoimmun Rev* 11(10):771–775, 2012.
Mahler M, Ngo JT, Schulte-Pelkum J, et al: Limited reliability of the indirect immunofluorescence technique for the detection of anti-Rib-P antibodies, *Arthritis Res Ther* 10(6):R131, 2008.
Mahler M, Pierangeli S, Meroni PL, et al: Autoantibodies in systemic autoimmune disorders, *J Immunol Res* 2014:263091, 2014c.
Mahler M, Raijmakers R: Novel aspects of autoantibodies to the PM/Scl complex: clinical, genetic and diagnostic insights, *Autoimmun Rev* 6(7):432–437, 2007.
Mahler M, Raijmakers R, Dahnrich C, et al: Clinical evaluation of autoantibodies to a novel PM/Scl peptide antigen, *Arthritis Res Ther* 7(3):R704–R713, 2005.
Mahler M, Satoh M, Hudson M, et al: Autoantibodies to the Rpp25 component of the Th/To complex are the most common antibodies in patients with systemic sclerosis without antibodies detectable by widely available commercial tests, *J Rheumatol* 41(7):1334–1343, 2014d.
Mammen AL: Autoimmune myopathies: Autoantibodies, phenotypes and pathogenesis, *Nat Rev Neurol* 7(6):343–354, 2011.
Mammen AL: Necrotizing myopathies: Beyond statins, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 26(6):679–683, 2014.
Mammen AL, Chung T, Christopher-Stine L, et al: Autoantibodies against 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase in patients with statin-associated autoimmune myopathy, *Arthritis Rheum* 63(3):713–721, 2011.
Mammen AL, Gaudet D, Brisson D, et al: Increased frequency of DRB1*11:01 in anti-hydroxymethylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase-associated autoimmune myopathy, *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken)* 64(8):1233–1237, 2012a.
Mammen AL, Pak K, Williams EK, et al: Rarity of anti-3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase antibodies in statin users, including those with self-limited musculoskeletal side effects, *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken)* 64(2):269–272, 2012b.
Mamula MJ, Fatenejad S, Craft J: B cells process and present lupus autoantigens that initiate autoimmune T cell responses, *J Immunol* 152:1453–1461, 1994.
Maraia RJ, Bayfield MA: The La protein-RNA complex surfaces, *Mol Cell* 21(2):149–152, 2006.
Marie I, Hatron PY, Dominique S, et al: Short-term and long-term outcome of anti-Jo1-positive patients with anti-Ro52 antibody, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 41(6):890–899, 2012a.
Marie I, Josse S, Decaux O, et al: Comparison of long-term outcome between anti-Jo1- and anti-PL7/PL12 positive patients with antisynthetase syndrome, *Autoimmun Rev* 11(10):739–745, 2012b.
Martins TB, Burlingame R, von Mühlen CA, et al: Evaluation of multiplexed fluorescent microsphere immunoassay for detection of autoantibodies to nuclear antigens, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 11(6):1054–1059, 2004.
Massa M, de Benedetti F, Pignatti P, et al: Anti-double stranded DNA, anti-histone, and anti-nucleosome IgG reactivities in children with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 12:219–225, 1994.
Matsuura E, Lopez LR: Autoimmune-mediated atherothrombosis, *Lupus* 17(10):878–887, 2008.
Mavragani CP, Moutsopoulos HM: Sjogren's syndrome, *Annu Rev Pathol* 9:273–285, 2014.
McNeil HP, Hunt JE, Krilis SA: Antiphospholipid antibodies—New insights into their specificity and clinical importance, *Scand J Immunol* 36(5):647–652, 1992.
Meerovitch K, Svitkin YV, Lee HS, et al: La autoantigen enhances and corrects aberrant translation of poliovirus RNA in reticulocyte lysate, *J Virol* 67(7):3798–3807, 1993.
Mehndiratta P, Mehta S, Manjila SV, et al: Isolated necrotizing myopathy associated with ANTI-PL12 antibody, *Muscle Nerve* 46(2):282–286, 2012.
Mehra S, Fritzler MJ: The spectrum of anti-chromatin/nucleosome autoantibodies: Independent and interdependent biomarkers of disease, *J Immunol Res* 2014: 368274, 2014.
Mehra S, Walker J, Patterson K, et al: Autoantibodies in systemic sclerosis, *Autoimmun Rev* 12(3):340–354, 2013.
Meroni PL, Schur PH: ANA screening: An old test with new recommendations, *Ann Rheum Dis* 69(8):1420–1422, 2010.
Miller FW, Waite KA, Biswas T, et al: The role of an autoantigen, histidyl-tRNA synthetase, in the induction and maintenance of autoimmunity, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 87(24):9933–9937, 1990.
Miyachi K, Fritzler MJ, Tan EM: Autoantibody to a nuclear antigen in proliferating cells, *J Immunol* 121:2228–2234, 1978.
Moroi Y, Peebles C, Fritzler MJ, et al: Autoantibody to centromere (kinetochore) in scleroderma sera, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 77:1627–1631, 1980.
Mortensen ES, Rekvig OP: Nephritogenic potential of anti-DNA antibodies against necrotic nucleosomes, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 20(4):696–704, 2009.
Mosca M, Baldini C, Bombardieri S: Undifferentiated connective tissue diseases in 2004, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 22(3 Suppl 33):S14–S18, 2004.
Mosca M, Tani C, Vagnani S, et al: The diagnosis and classification of undifferentiated connective tissue diseases, *J Autoimmun* 48-49:50–52, 2014.
Muller S, Dieker J, Tincani A, et al: Pathogenic anti-nucleosome antibodies, *Lupus* 17(5):431–436, 2008.
Muro Y, Ishikawa A, Sugiura K, et al: Clinical features of anti-TIF1-alpha antibody-positive dermatomyositis patients are closely associated with coexistent dermatomyositis-specific autoantibodies and anti-TIF1-gamma or anti-Mi-2 autoantibodies, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 51(8):1508–1513, 2012.
Muro Y, Sugiura K, Akiyama M: What autoantibody tests should become widely available to help scleroderma diagnosis and management?, *Arthritis Res Ther* 15(4):116, 2013.
Muro Y, Tan EM: PCNA, *Manual of biological markers of disease* B2.7:1–12, 1994.
Murthy V, Willis R, Romay-Penabad Z, et al: Value of isolated IgA anti-beta2-glycoprotein I positivity in the diagnosis of the antiphospholipid syndrome, *Arthritis Rheum* 65(12):3186–3193, 2013.
Musset L, Miyara M, Benveniste O, et al: Analysis of autoantibodies to 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase using different technologies, *J Immunol Res* 2014:405956, 2014.
Mydel P, Wang Z, Brisslert M, et al: Carbamylation-dependent activation of T cells: A novel mechanism in the pathogenesis of autoimmune arthritis, *J Immunol* 184(12):6882–6890, 2010.
Nakamura MC, Nakamura RM: Contemporary concepts of autoimmunity and autoimmune diseases, *J Clin Lab Anal* 6:275–289, 1992.
Nakamura RM: Role of autoantibody tests in the diagnostic evaluation of neuropsychitric systemic lupus erythematosus, *Clin Lab Med* 17(3):379–393, 1997.
Nakamura RM, Bylund DJ: Contemporary concepts for the clinical and laboratory evaluation of systemic lupus erythematosus and "lupus-like" syndromes, *J Clin Lab Anal* 8:347–359, 1994.
Nakamura RM, Bylund DJ, Tan EM: Current status of available standards for quality improvement of assays for detection of autoantibodies to nuclear and intracellular antigens, *J Clin Lab Anal* 8:360–368, 1994.
Nakamura RM, Tan EM: Recent advances in laboratory tests and the significance of autoantibodies to nuclear antigens in systemic rheumatic diseases, *Clin Lab Med* 6:41–53, 1986.
Nakamura RM, Tan EM: Update on autoantibodies to intracellular antigens in systemic rheumatic diseases, *Clin Lab Med* 12:1–23, 1992.
Nakashima R, Imura Y, Kobayashi S, et al: The RIG-I-like receptor IFIH1/MDA5 is a dermatomyositis-specific autoantigen identified by the anti-CADM-140 antibody, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 49(3):433–440, 2010.
Ni JD, Yao X, Pan HF, et al: Clinical and serological correlates of anti-Sm autoantibodies in Chinese patients with systemic lupus erythematosus: 1,584 cases, *Rheumatol Int* 29(11):1323–1326, 2009.
Nienhuis RL, Mandema E: A new serum factor in patients with rheumatoid arthritis: The antiperinuclear factor, *Ann Rheum Dis* 23:302–305, 1964.
Nifli AP, Notas G, Mamoulaki M, et al: Comparison of a multiplex, bead-based fluorescent assay and immunofluorescence methods for the detection of ANA and ANCA autoantibodies in human serum, *J Immunol Methods* 311(1–2):189–197, 2006.
Nimelstein SH, Brody S, Mcshane D, et al: Mixed connective tissue disease: A subsequent evaluation of the original 25 patients, *Medicine* 59(4):239–248, 1980.
Nozawa K, Ikeda K, Satoh M, et al: Autoantibody to NA14 is an independent marker primarily for Sjogren's syndrome, *Front Biosci (Landmark Ed)* 14:3733–3739, 2009.
Obermoser G, Bitterlich W, Kunz F, et al: Clinical significance of anticardiolipin and anti-beta2-glycoprotein I antibodies, *Int Arch Allergy Immunol* 135(2):148–153, 2004.
Oddis CV, Rider LG, Reed AM, et al: International consensus guidelines for trials of therapies in the idiopathic inflammatory myopathies, *Arthritis Rheum* 52(9):2607–2615, 2005.
Okazaki K, Kawa S, Kamisawa T, et al: Clinical diagnostic criteria of autoimmune pancreatitis: Revised proposal, *J Gastroenterol* 41(7):626–631, 2006.
Op De Beeck K, Vermeersch P, Verschueren P, et al: Detection of antinuclear antibodies by indirect immunofluorescence and by solid phase assay, *Autoimmun Rev* 10(12):801–808, 2011.
Op De Beeck K, Vermeersch P, Verschueren P, et al: Antinuclear antibody detection by automated multiplex immunoassay in untreated patients at the time of diagnosis, *Autoimmun Rev* 12(2):137–143, 2012.
Panush RS, Greer JM, Morshedian KK: What is lupus? What is not lupus?, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 19(1):223–234, 1993.

Panush RS, Schur PH: Is it lupus?, *Bull Rheum Dis* 46(6):3–8, 1997.
Parker JC, Bunn CC: Sensitivity of the Phadia EliA connective tissue disease screen for less common disease-specific autoantibodies, *J Clin Pathol* 64(7): 631–633, 2011.
Parker JC, Burlingame RW, Webb TT, et al: Anti-RNA polymerase III antibodies in patients with systemic sclerosis detected by indirect immunofluorescence and ELISA, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 47(7):976–979, 2008.
Payet J, Goulvestre C, Biale L, et al: Anticyclic citrullinated peptide antibodies in rheumatoid and nonrheumatoid rheumatic disorders: Experience with 1162 patients, *J Rheumatol* 41(12):2395–2402, 2014.
Perner P, Perner H, Muller B: Mining knowledge for HEp-2 cell image classification, *Artif Intell Med* 26(1–2):161–173, 2002.
Perricone C, Colafrancesco S, Mazor RD, et al: Autoimmune/inflammatory syndrome induced by adjuvants (ASIA) 2013: Unveiling the pathogenic, clinical and diagnostic aspects, *J Autoimmun* 47:1–16, 2013.
Peterson LK, Wells D, Shaw L, et al: Novel method for quantitative ANA measurement using near-infrared imaging, *J Immunol Methods* 349(1–2):1–8, 2009.
Petri M, Orbai AM, Alarcon GS, et al: Derivation and validation of the Systemic Lupus International Collaborating Clinics classification criteria for systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Rheum* 64(8):2677–2686, 2012.
Pfannenschmid F, Wimmer VC, Rios RM, et al: Chlamydomonas DIP13 and human NA14: A new class of proteins associated with microtubule structures is involved in cell division, *J Cell Sci* 116(Pt 8):1449–1462, 2003.
Pierangeli SS, Gharavi AE, Harris EN: Testing for antiphospholipid antibodies: problems and solutions, *Clin Obstet Gynecol* 44(1):48–57; quiz 58–49, 2001.
Pierangeli SS, Harris EN: Clinical laboratory testing for the antiphospholipid syndrome, *Clin Chim Acta* 357(1):17–33, 2005.
Pierangeli SS, Harris EN: A protocol for determination of anticardiolipin antibodies by ELISA, *Nat Protoc* 3(5):840–848, 2008.
Pincus T, Gibson KA, Shmerling RH: An evidence-based approach to laboratory tests in usual care of patients with rheumatoid arthritis, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 32(5 Suppl 85):S–23-28, 2014.
Pollard KM, Hultman P, Kono DH: Toxicology of autoimmune diseases, *Chem Res Toxicol* 23(3):455–466, 2010.
Pope JE: Scleroderma overlap syndromes, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 14(6):704–710, 2002.
Pottel H, Wiik A, Locht H, et al: Clinical optimization and multicenter validation of antigen-specific cut-off values on the INNO-LIA ANA update for the detection of autoantibodies in connective tissue disorders, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 22(5):579–588, 2004.
Radic M, Herrmann M, van der Vlag J, et al: Regulatory and pathogenetic mechanisms of autoantibodies in SLE, *Autoimmunity* 44(5):349–356, 2011.
Radzimski C, Probst C, Teegen B, et al: Development of a recombinant cell-based indirect immunofluorescence assay for the determination of autoantibodies against soluble liver antigen in autoimmune hepatitis, *Clin Dev Immunol* 2013:572815, 2013.
Raijmakers R, Renz M, Wiemann C, et al: PM-Scl-75 is the main autoantigen in patients with the polymyositis/scleroderma overlap syndrome, *Arthritis Rheum* 50(2):565–569, 2004.
Ramos-Morales F, Infante C, Fedriani C, et al: NA14 is a novel nuclear autoantigen with a coiled-coil domain, *J Biol Chem* 273(3):1634–1639, 1998.
Ranzolin A, Bohn JM, Norman GL, et al: Anti-beta2-glycoprotein I antibodies as risk factors for acute myocardial infarction, *Arq Bras Cardiol* 83(2):141–144, 137–140, 2004.
Reeves WH: Antibodies to the p70/p80 (Ku) antigens in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 18(2):391–414, 1992.
Reeves WH, Sthoeger ZM: Molecular cloning of cDNA encoding the p70 (Ku) lupus autoantigen, *J Biol Chem* 264(9):5047–5052, 1989.
Reimer GV, Steen D, Penning CA, et al: Correlates between autoantibodies to nucleolar antigens and clinical features in patients with systemic sclerosis (sclerodema), *Arthritis Rheum* 31:525–532, 1988.
Rekvig OP, Nossent JC: Anti-double-stranded DNA antibodies, nucleosomes, and systemic lupus erythematosus: A time for new paradigms?, *Arthritis Rheum* 48(2):300–312, 2003.
Rider LG, Miller FW: Deciphering the clinical presentations, pathogenesis, and treatment of the idiopathic inflammatory myopathies, *JAMA* 305(2):183–190, 2011.
Rider LG, Shah M, Mamyrova G, et al: The myositis autoantibody phenotypes of the juvenile idiopathic inflammatory myopathies, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 92(4):223–243, 2013.
Riemekasten G, Philippe A, Nather M, et al: Involvement of functional autoantibodies against vascular receptors in systemic sclerosis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 70(3):530–536, 2011.
Robinson CP, Brayer J, Yamachika S, et al: Transfer of human serum IgG to nonobese diabetic Igmu null mice reveals a role for autoantibodies in the loss of secretory function of exocrine tissues in Sjogren's syndrome, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 95(13):7538–7543, 1998.
Robinson WH, DiGennaro C, Hueber W, et al: Autoantigen microarrays for multiplex characterization of autoantibody responses, *Nat Med* 8(3):295–301, 2002.
Rodriguez-Mahou M, Lopez-Longo FJ, Sanchez-Ramon S, et al: Association of anti-cyclic citrullinated peptide and anti-Sa/citrullinated vimentin autoantibodies in rheumatoid arthritis, *Arthritis Rheum* 55(4): 657–661, 2006.
Roggenbuck D, Hiemann R, Bogdanos D, et al: Standardization of automated interpretation of immunofluorescence tests, *Clin Chim Acta* 421:168–169, 2013.
Roggenbuck D, Hiemann R, Schierack P, et al: Digital immunofluorescence enables automated detection of antinuclear antibody endpoint titers avoiding serial dilution, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 52(2):e9–e11, 2014.
Rombouts Y, Ewing E, van de Stadt LA, et al: Anti-citrullinated protein antibodies acquire a pro-inflammatory Fc glycosylation phenotype prior to the onset of rheumatoid arthritis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 74(1):234–241, 2015.
Ronnelid J, Barbasso Helmers S, Storfors H, et al: Use of a commercial line blot assay as a screening test for autoantibodies in inflammatory myopathies, *Autoimmun Rev* 9(1):58–61, 2009.
Rose HM, Ragan C, et al: Differential agglutination of normal and sensitized sheep erythrocytes by sera of patients with rheumatoid arthritis, *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 68(1):1–6, 1948.
Rose T, Grutzkau A, Hirseland H, et al: IFNalpha and its response proteins, IP-10 and SIGLEC-1, are biomarkers of disease activity in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Ann Rheum Dis* 72(10):1639–1645, 2013.
Rothfield NF: Autoantibodies in scleroderma, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 18(2):483–498, 1992.
Rua-Figueroa I, Richi P, Lopez-Longo FJ, et al: Comprehensive description of clinical characteristics of a large systemic lupus erythematosus cohort from the Spanish Rheumatology Society Lupus Registry (RELESSER) with emphasis on complete versus incomplete lupus differences, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 94(1):e267, 2015.
Rubin RL: Antihistone antibodies. In Lahita RG, editor: *Systemic lupus erythematosus*, New York, 1992, Churchill Livingstone, pp 247–271.
Rubin RL: Etiology and mechanisms of drug-induced lupus, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 11(5):357–363, 1999.
Rubin RL: Drug-induced lupus, *Expert Opin Drug Saf* 14(3):361–378, 2015.
Rubin RL, Bell SA, Burlingame RW: Autoantibodies associated with lupus induced by diverse drugs target a similar epitope in the (H2A-H2B)-DNA complex, *J Clin Invest* 90:165–173, 1992.
Rubin RL, Burlingame RW, Arnott JE, et al: IgG but not other classes of anti-[(H2A-H2B)-DNA] is an early sign of procainamide-induced lupus, *J Immunol* 154(5):2483–2493, 1995.
Rubin RL, Nusinow SR, Johnson AD, et al: Serologic changes during induction of lupus-like disease by procainamide, *Am J Med* 80(5):999–1002, 1986.
Ruiz-Tiscar JL, Lopez-Longo FJ, Sanchez-Ramon S, et al: Prevalence of IgG anti-α-fodrin antibodies in Sjogren's syndrome, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1050:210–216, 2005.
Saitta MR, Keene JD: Molecular biology of nuclear autoantigens, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 18(2):283–310, 1992.
Sakamoto M, Takasaki Y, Yamanaka K, et al: Purification and characterization of Ki antigen and detection of anti-Ki antibody by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Rheum* 32:1554–1562, 1989.
Sang A, Zheng YY, Morel L: Contributions of B cells to lupus pathogenesis, *Mol Immunol* 62(2):329–338, 2014.
Sardeto GA, Simas LM, Skare TS, et al: Antinucleosome in systemic lupus erythematosus. A study in a Brazilian population, *Clin Rheumatol* 31(3):553–556, 2012.
Sato S, Hoshino K, Satoh T, et al: RNA helicase encoded by melanoma differentiation-associated gene 5 is a major autoantigen in patients with clinically amyopathic dermatomyositis: Association with rapidly progressive interstitial lung disease, *Arthritis Rheum* 60(7):2193–2200, 2009.
Satoh M, Ajmani AK, Ogasawara T, et al: Autoantibodies to RNA polymerase II are common in systemic lupus erythematosus and overlap syndrome. Specific recognition of the phosphorylated (IIO) form by a subset of human sera, *J Clin Invest* 94(5):1981–1989, 1994.
Satoh M, Vazquez-Del Mercado M, Chan EK: Clinical interpretation of antinuclear antibody tests in systemic rheumatic diseases, *Mod Rheumatol* 19(3):219–228, 2009a.
Satoh T, Ishikawa O, Ihn H, et al: Clinical usefulness of anti-RNA polymerase III antibody measurement by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 48(12):1570–1574, 2009b.
Schegg V, Vogel M, Didichenko S, et al: Evidence that anti-muscarinic antibodies in Sjogren's syndrome recognise both M3R and M1R, *Biologicals* 36(4):213–222, 2008.
Schellekens GA, de Jong BA, van den Hoogen FH, et al: Citrulline is an essential constituent of antigenic determinants recognized by rheumatoid arthritis-specific autoantibodies, *J Clin Invest* 101(1):273–281, 1998.
Schouwers S, Bonnet M, Verschueren P, et al: Value-added reporting of antinuclear antibody testing by automated indirect immunofluorescence analysis, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 52(4):547–551, 2014.
Schulte-Pelkum J, Fritzler M, Mahler M: Latest update on the Ro/SS-A autoantibody system, *Autoimmun Rev* 8(7):632–637, 2009.
Schur PH: Clinical features of SLE. In Kelley WN, Harris ED Jr, Ruddy S, et al, editors: *Textbook of rheumatology*, Philadelphia, 1993, Saunders, pp 1017–1042.
Scott DL, Wolfe F, Huizinga TW: Rheumatoid arthritis, *Lancet* 376(9746):1094–1108, 2010.
Sebbag M, Chapuy-Regaud S, Auger I, et al: Clinical and pathophysiological significance of the autoimmune response to citrullinated proteins in rheumatoid arthritis, *Joint Bone Spine* 71(6):493–502, 2004.
Selva-O'Callaghan A, Trallero-Araguas E, Grau-Junyent JM, et al: Malignancy and myositis: Novel autoantibodies and new insights, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 22(6):627–632, 2010.
Shah AA, Hummers LK, Casciola-Rosen L, et al: Examination of autoantibody status and clinical features that associate with cancer risk and cancer-associated scleroderma, *Arthritis Rheumatol* 67(4):1053–1061, 2015.
Shah AA, Rosen A, Hummers L, et al: Close temporal relationship between onset of cancer and scleroderma in patients with RNA polymerase I/III antibodies, *Arthritis Rheum* 62(9):2787–2795, 2010.
Shamim EA, Rider LG, Pandey JP, et al: Differences in idiopathic inflammatory myopathy phenotypes and genotypes between Mesoamerican Mestizos and North American Caucasians: Ethnogeographic influences in the genetics and clinical expression of myositis, *Arthritis Rheum* 46(7):1885–1893, 2002.
Sharif R, Fritzler MJ, Mayes MD, et al: Anti-fibrillarin antibody in African American patients with systemic sclerosis: Immunogenetics, clinical features, and survival analysis, *J Rheumatol* 38(8):1622–1630, 2011.
Sharp GC, Irvin WS, Tan EM, et al: Mixed connective tissue disease—An apparently distinct rheumatic disease syndrome associated with a specific antibody to an extractable nuclear antigen (ENA), *Am J Med* 52:148–159, 1972.
Sherer Y, Gorstein A, Fritzler MJ, et al: Autoantibody explosion in systemic lupus erythematosus: More than 100 different antibodies found in SLE patients, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 34(2):501–537, 2004.
Shi J, Knevel R, Suwannalai P, et al: Autoantibodies recognizing carbamylated proteins are present in sera of patients with rheumatoid arthritis and predict joint damage, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 108(42):17372–17377, 2011.

Shi J, van Veelen PA, Mahler M, et al: Carbamylation and antibodies against carbamylated proteins in autoimmunity and other pathologies, *Autoimmun Rev* 13(3):225–230, 2014.

Shoenfeld Y, Agmon-Levin N: "ASIA"—Autoimmune/inflammatory syndrome induced by adjuvants, *J Autoimmun* 36(1):4–8, 2011.

Shovman O, Gilburd B, Barzilai O, et al: Evaluation of the BioPlex 2200 ANA screen: Analysis of 510 healthy subjects: Incidence of natural/predictive autoantibodies, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1050:380–388, 2005a.

Shovman O, Gilburd B, Zandman-Goddard G, et al: Multiplexed AtheNA multi-lyte immunoassay for ANA screening in autoimmune diseases, *Autoimmunity* 38(1):105–109, 2005a.

Silveira IG, Burlingame RW, von Mühlen CA, et al: Anti-CCP antibodies have more diagnostic impact than rheumatoid factor (RF) in a population tested for RF, *Clin Rheumatol* 26(11):1883–1889, 2007.

Simon M, Girbal E, Sebbag M, et al: The cytokeratin filament-aggregating protein filaggrin is the target of the so-called "antikeratin antibodies," autoantibodies specific for rheumatoid arthritis, *J Clin Invest* 92(3): 1387–1393, 1993.

Slater CA, Davis RB, Shmerling RH: Antinuclear antibody testing. A study of clinical utility, *Arch Intern Med* 156(13):1421–1425, 1996.

Smith CM, Steitz JA: Snow storm in the nucleolus: New roles for myriad small RNPs, *Cell* 89(5):669–672, 1997.

Smith J, Onley D, Garey C, et al: Determination of ANA specificity using the UltraPlex platform, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1050:286–294, 2005.

Smolen JS, Steiner G: Are autoantibodies active players or epiphenomena?, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 10(3):201–206, 1998.

Soderlin MK, Kastbom A, Kautiainen H, et al: Antibodies against cyclic citrullinated peptide (CCP) and levels of cartilage oligomeric matrix protein (COMP) in very early arthritis: Relation to diagnosis and disease activity, *Scand J Rheumatol* 33(3):185–188, 2004.

Sontheimer RD, McCauliffe DP: Pathogenesis of anti-Ro/SS-A autoantibody-associated cutaneous lupus erythematosus, *Immunodermatology* 8(4):751–758, 1990.

Sordet C, Gottenberg JE, Goetz J, et al: Anti-α-fodrin autoantibodies are not useful diagnostic markers of primary Sjogren's syndrome, *Ann Rheum Dis* 64(8): 1244–1245, 2005.

Staub HL, Franck M, Ranzolin A, et al: IgA antibodies to beta2-glycoprotein I and atherosclerosis, *Autoimmun Rev* 6(2):104–106, 2006.

Steen VD: Autoantibodies in systemic sclerosis, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 35(1):35–42, 2005.

Steen VD: The many faces of scleroderma, *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 34(1):1–15, v, 2008.

Steiner G, Hartmuth K, Skriner K, et al: The nuclear autoantigen RA33 is identical with the A2 protein of the heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein (abstract), *Arthritis Rheum* 35:S170, 1992.

Steiner G, Skriner K, Smolen JS: Autoantibodies to the A/B proteins of the heterogeneous nuclear ribonucleoprotein complex: Novel tools for the diagnosis of rheumatic diseases, *Int Arch Allergy Immunol* 111(4): 314–319, 1996.

Su Y, Jia RL, Han L, et al: Role of anti-nucleosome antibody in the diagnosis of systemic lupus erythematosus, *Clin Immunol* 122(1):115–120, 2007.

Suer W, Dahnrich C, Schlumberger W, et al: Autoantibodies in SLE but not in scleroderma react with protein-stripped nucleosomes, *J Autoimmun* 22(4): 325–334, 2004.

Swale VJ, Perrett CM, Denton CP, et al: Etanercept-induced systemic lupus erythematosus, *Clin Exp Dermatol* 28(6):604–607, 2003.

Takahashi K, Yoshida N, Murakami N, et al: Dynamic regulation of p53 subnuclear localization and senescence by MORC3, *Mol Biol Cell* 18(5):1701–1709, 2007.

Takasaki Y, Fishwild D, Tan EM: Characterization of proliferating cell nuclear antigen recognized by autoantibodies in lupus sera, *J Exp Med* 159:981–992, 1984.

Takase K, Horton SC, Ganesha A, et al: What is the utility of routine ANA testing in predicting development of biological DMARD-induced lupus and vasculitis in patients with rheumatoid arthritis? Data from a single-centre cohort, *Ann Rheum Dis* 73(9): 1695–1699, 2014.

Takato H, Waseda Y, Watanabe S, et al: Pulmonary manifestations of anti-ARS antibody positive interstitial pneumonia—With or without PM/DM, *Respir Med* 107(1):128–133, 2013.

Tan EM: Antinuclear antibodies: Diagnostic markers for autoimmune diseases and probes for cell biology, *Adv Immunol* 44:93–151, 1989a.

Tan EM: Interactions between autoimmunity and molecular and cell biology: Bridges between clinical and basic sciences, *J Clin Invest* 84:1–6, 1989b.

Tan EM, Chan EKL, Sullivan KF, et al: Antinuclear antibodies (ANAs): Diagnostically specific immune markers and clues toward the understanding of systemic autoimmunity, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 47: 121–141, 1988.

Tan EM, Cohen AS, Fries JF, et al: The 1982 revised criteria for the classification of systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Rheum* 25(11):1271–1277, 1982.

Tan EM, Feltkamp TEW, Smolen JS, et al: Range of antinuclear antibodies in "healthy" individuals, *Arthritis Rheum* 40(9):1601–1611, 1997.

Tan EM, Kunkel HG: Characteristics of a soluble nuclear antigen precipitating with sera of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Immunol* 96:464–471, 1966.

Tan EM, Smolen JS, McDougal JS, et al: A critical evaluation of enzyme immunoassays for detection of antinuclear autoantibodies of defined specificities. I. Precision, sensitivity, and specificity, *Arthritis Rheum* 42(3):455–464, 1999.

Tani C, Carli L, Vagnani S, et al: The diagnosis and classification of mixed connective tissue disease, *J Autoimmun* 48-49:46–49, 2014.

Targoff IN: Myositis specific autoantibodies, *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 8(3):196–203, 2006.

Targoff IN, Mamyrova G, Trieu EP, et al: A novel autoantibody to a 155-kd protein is associated with dermatomyositis, *Arthritis Rheum* 54(11):3682–3689, 2006.

Targoff IN, Trieu EP, Miller FW: Reaction of anti-OJ autoantibodies with components of the multi-enzyme complex of aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases in addition to isoleucyl-tRNA synthetase, *J Clin Invest* 91:2556–2564, 1993.

Tarricone E, Ghirardello A, Rampudda M, et al: Anti-SAE antibodies in autoimmune myositis: Identification by unlabelled protein immunoprecipitation in an Italian patient cohort, *J Immunol Methods* 384(1–2):128–134, 2012.

ter Borg EJ, Groen H, Horst G, et al: Clinical associations of antiribonucleoprotein antibodies in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Sem Arthritis Rheum* 20:164–173, 1990.

Tikly M, Gould T, Wadee AA, et al: Clinical and serological correlates of antinucleosome antibodies in South Africans with systemic lupus erythematosus, *Clin Rheumatol* 26(12):2121–2125, 2007.

Tojo T, Kaburaki J, Hayakawa M, et al: Precipitating antibody to a soluble nuclear antigen "Ki" with specificity for systemic lupus erythematosus, *Ryumachi* 21(Suppl):129–140, 1981.

Tormey VJ, Bunn CC, Denton CP, et al: Anti-fibrillarin antibodies in systemic sclerosis, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 40(10):1157–1162, 2001.

Totoritis MC, Rubin RL: Drug-induced lupus: Genetic, clinical, and laboratory features, *Postgrad Med* 78(3):149–152, 155–161, 1985.

Totoritis MC, Tan EM, McNally EM, et al: Association of antibody to histone complex H2A-H2B with symptomatic procainamide-induced lupus, *N Engl J Med* 318(22):1431–1436, 1988.

Trallero-Araguas E, Rodrigo-Pendas JA, Selva-O'Callaghan A, et al: Usefulness of anti-p155 autoantibody for diagnosing cancer-associated dermatomyositis: A systematic review and meta-analysis, *Arthritis Rheum* 64(2):523–532, 2012.

Troyanov YI, Targoff N, Payette MP, et al: Redefining dermatomyositis: A description of new diagnostic criteria that differentiate pure dermatomyositis from overlap myositis with dermatomyositis features, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 93(24):318–332, 2014.

Tsirogianni A, Pipi E, Soufleros K: Relevance of anti-C1q autoantibodies to lupus nephritis, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1173:243–251, 2009.

Utz PJ: Multiplexed assays for identification of biomarkers and surrogate markers in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Lupus* 13(5):304–311, 2004.

van Bavel CC, Fenton KA, Rekvig OP, et al: Glomerular targets of nephritogenic autoantibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Arthritis Rheum* 58(7):1892–1899, 2008.

Vancsa A, Gergely L, Ponyi A, et al: Myositis-specific and myositis-associated antibodies in overlap myositis in comparison to primary dermatopolymyositis: Relevance for clinical classification: Retrospective study of 169 patients, *Joint Bone Spine* 77(2):125–130, 2010.

van den Hoogen F, Khanna D, Fransen J, et al: 2013 classification criteria for systemic sclerosis: An American College of Rheumatology/European League against Rheumatism collaborative initiative, *Arthritis Rheum* 65(11):2737–2747, 2013.

Van Eenennaam H, Vogelzangs JH, Lugtenberg D, et al: Identity of the RNase MRP- and RNase P-associated Th/To autoantigen, *Arthritis Rheum* 46(12):3266–3272, 2002.

van Esch WJ, Reparon-Schuijt CC, Hamstra HJ, et al: Polyreactivity of human IgG Fc-binding phage antibodies constructed from synovial fluid CD38+ B cells of patients with rheumatoid arthritis, *J Autoimmun* 19(4):241–250, 2002.

van Venrooij WJ, van Beers JJ, Pruijn GJ: Anti-CCP antibody, a marker for the early detection of rheumatoid arthritis, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1143:268–285, 2008.

van Venrooij WJ, van Beers JJ, Pruijn GJ: Anti-CCP antibodies: The past, the present and the future, *Nat Rev Rheumatol* 7(7):391–398, 2011.

van Venrooij WJ, Zendman AJ, Pruijn GJ: Autoantibodies to citrullinated antigens in (early) rheumatoid arthritis, *Autoimmun Rev* 6(1):37–41, 2006.

Vaz JL, Andrade CA, Pereira AC, et al: Systematic review of infliximab-induced autoantibodies and systemic lupus erythematosus, *Rev Bras Reumatol* 53(4): 358–364, 2013.

Villalta D, Imbastaro T, Di Giovanni S, et al: Diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of extended autoantibody profile in systemic sclerosis, *Autoimmun Rev* 12(2):114–120, 2012.

von Mühlen C, Nakamura R: Guidelines for selecting and using laboratory testsfor autoantibodies to nuclear, nucleolar and other related cytoplasmic antigens. In Nakamura RM, Keren DF, Bylund DJ, editors: *Clinical and laboratory evaluation of human autoimmune diseases*, vol 1, Chicago, 2002, ASCP Press, p 183.

von Mühlen CA, Tan EM: Autoantibody specificities in autoimmune rheumatic diseases, *Rev Br Reumatol* 34:173–194, 1994.

von Mühlen CA, Tan EM: Autoantibodies in the diagnosis of systemic rheumatic diseases, *Sem Arthritis Rheum* 24:323–358, 1995.

Waaler E: On the occurrence of a factor in human serum activating the specific agglutination of sheep blood corpuscles. 1939, *APMIS* 115(5):422–438, discussion 439, 2007.

Wada K, Kamitani T: Autoantigen Ro52 is an E3 ubiquitin ligase, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 339(1):415–421, 2006.

Walker JG, Fritzler MJ: Update on autoantibodies in systemic sclerosis, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 19(6):580–591, 2007.

Wallace DJ, Pistiner M, Nessim S, et al: Cutaneous lupus erythematosus without systemic lupus erythematosus: clinical and laboratory features, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 21(4):221–226, 1992.

Watanabe T, Tsuchida T, Kanda N, et al: Anti-alpha-fodrin antibodies in Sjogren syndrome and lupus erythematosus, *Arch Dermatol* 135(5):535–539, 1999.

Waterman SA, Gordon TP, Rischmueller M: Inhibitory effects of muscarinic receptor autoantibodies on parasympathetic neurotransmission in Sjogren's syndrome, *Arthritis Rheum* 43(7):1647–1654, 2000.

Wenzel J: Scleroderma and malignancy. Mechanisms of interrelationship, *Eur J Dermatol* 12(3):296–300, 2002.

Wielosz E, Dryglewska M, Majdan M: Serological profile of patients with systemic sclerosis, *Postepy Hig Med Dosw (Online)* 68:987–991, 2014.

Wiik AS: Anti-nuclear autoantibodies: Clinical utility for diagnosis, prognosis, monitoring, and planning of treatment strategy in systemic immunoinflammatory diseases, *Scand J Rheumatol* 34(4):260–268, 2005.

Wiik AS, van Venrooij WJ, Pruijn GJ: All you wanted to know about anti-CCP but were afraid to ask, *Autoimmun Rev* 10(2):90–93, 2010.

Winkelmann JC, Forget BG: Erythroid and nonerythroid spectrins, *Blood* 81(12):3173–3185, 1993.

Witte T: Antifodrin antibodies in Sjogren's syndrome: A review, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1051:235–239, 2005.

Witte T, Matthias T, Bierwirth J, et al: Antibodies against alpha-fodrin are associated with sicca

syndrome in the general population, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1108:414–417, 2007.
Wolin SL, Steitz JA: The Ro small cytoplasmic ribonucleoproteins: Identification of the antigenic protein and its binding site on the Ro RNAs, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 81(7):1996–2000, 1984.
Woosley RL, Drayer DE, Reidenberg MM, et al: Effect of acetylator phenotype on the rate at which procainamide induces antinuclear antibodies and the lupus syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 298(21):1157–1159, 1978.
Wooten M: Systemic sclerosis and malignancy: A review of the literature, *South Med J* 101(1):59–62, 2008.
Yalaoui S, Gorgi Y, Hajri R, et al: Autoantibodies to ribosomal P proteins in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Joint Bone Spine* 69(2):173–176, 2002.
Yamamoto H, Sims NE, Macauley SP, et al: Alterations in the secretory response of non-obese diabetic (NOD) mice to muscarinic receptor stimulation, *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* 78(3):245–255, 1996.
Yamasaki Y, Honkanen-Scott M, Hernandez L, et al: Nucleolar staining cannot be used as a screening test for the scleroderma marker anti-RNA polymerase I/III antibodies, *Arthritis Rheum* 54(9):3051–3056, 2006.
Yang JJ, Kim MH, Lee WI, et al: Relevance of indirect immunofluorescence patterns and autoantibodies identified via line immunoassay in patients with rheumatoid arthritis, *Lab Med* 45(1):25–31, 2014.
Yang JM, Hildebrandt B, Luderschmidt C, et al: Human scleroderma sera contain autoantibodies to protein components specific to the U3 small nucleolar RNP complex, *Arthritis Rheum* 48(1):210–217, 2003.
Yao B, Li S, Chan EK: Function of GW182 and GW bodies in siRNA and miRNA pathways, *Adv Exp Med Biol* 768:71–96, 2013.
Yasuma M, Takasaki Y, Matsumoto K, et al: Clinical significance of IgG anti-Sm-specific antibodies in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Rheumatol* 17:469–475, 1990.
Yee A, Webb T, Seaman A, et al: Anti-CarP antibodies as promising marker to measure joint damage and disease activity in patients with rheumatoid arthritis, *Immunol Res* 61(1–2):24–30, 2015.
Yoneyama M, Fujita T: Recognition of viral nucleic acids in innate immunity, *Rev Med Virol* 20(1):4–22, 2010.
Young BJ, Mallya RK, Leslie RD, et al: Anti-keratin antibodies in rheumatoid arthritis, *BMJ* 2(6182):97–99, 1979.
Zarmbinski MA, Messner RP, Mandel JS: Anti-dsDNA antibodies in laboratory workers handling blood from patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Rheumatol* 19:1380–1384, 1992.
Zendman AJ, van Venrooij WJ, Pruijn GJ: Use and significance of anti-CCP autoantibodies in rheumatoid arthritis, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 45(1):20–25, 2006.
Zimmermann C, Steiner G, Skriner K, et al: The concurrence of rheumatoid arthritis and limited systemic sclerosis—Clinical and serologic characteristics of an overlap syndrome, *Arthritis Rheum* 41(11):1938–1945, 1998.

CHAPTER 53

VASCULITIS

J. Charles Jennette, Eric T. Weimer, Jason Kidd

INTRODUCTION, 1016

DIAGNOSTIC CLASSIFICATION OF VASCULITIS, 1016

LARGE VESSEL VASCULITIS, 1017
Takayasu Arteritis, 1018
Giant Cell Arteritis, 1019

MEDIUM VESSEL VASCULITIS, 1020
Polyarteritis Nodosa, 1020
Kawasaki Disease, 1021

SMALL VESSEL VASCULITIS, 1022
ANCA-Associated Small Vessel Vasculitis, 1022
Anti-Glomerular Basement Membrane Disease, 1026
Cryoglobulinemic Vasculitis, 1027
IgA Vasculitis (Henoch-Schönlein Purpura), 1028
Hypocomplementemic Urticarial Vasculitis, 1029
Rheumatoid Vasculitis, 1030

SUMMARY, 1031

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1031

KEY POINTS

- Vasculitis affects blood vessels of any type in any organ or tissue and thus causes extremely diverse signs and symptoms of disease that overlap with many other diseases.
- Even if it is not the final diagnosis, vasculitis often is in the differential diagnosis in a patient with evidence for single organ or systemic inflammatory disease.
- Laboratory tests for vasculitis identify a specific etiologic factor or measure perturbations in physiological molecular and cellular events that result from specific pathogenic events.
- Clinical laboratory tests for the diagnosis of vasculitis include tests that document active inflammation (e.g., C reactive protein assay), demonstrate injury to a specific organ (e.g., urinalysis), or implicate a specific category of vasculitis (e.g., cryoglobulin assay).
- Vasculitis is categorized into infectious vasculitis that is caused by vessel wall invasion by pathogens and noninfectious vasculitis that is not known to be caused by infection in vessel walls.
- Noninfectious vasculitis is categorized as immune complex–mediated, antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)–mediated, or cell-mediated immune vasculitis.
- Clinical diagnosis of vasculitis is based on both the presence and absence of multiple clinical, pathologic, and laboratory features.
- Accurate and precise diagnosis of a specific category of vasculitis is essential for optimum patient outcome.

INTRODUCTION

Vasculitis is inflammation of blood vessel walls. Blood vessels of any type in any organ or tissue may be affected. Thus the signs and symptoms of disease are extremely diverse and overlap with many other diseases. As a consequence, vasculitis often is in the differential diagnosis for both single organ and systemic disease, especially in a patient with evidence for an inflammatory condition. Clinical laboratory tests (i.e., tests for biomarkers) that are used for the diagnosis of vasculitis fall into three categories: those that document the presence of an inflammatory process (e.g., C reactive protein assay), those that demonstrate injury to a specific organ (urinalysis), and those that are indicative of a specific category of vasculitis (e.g., cryoglobulin assay). This chapter reviews the clinical and pathologic features of the major categories of vasculitis and discusses the role of laboratory testing in the diagnosis and management of these diseases.

DIAGNOSTIC CLASSIFICATION OF VASCULITIS

Laboratory tests for a disease often are based on identification of a specific etiologic factor or measurement of perturbations in physiological molecular and cellular events that are caused by specific pathogenic events. This approach is difficult to apply to all forms of vasculitis because the etiology and pathogenesis of some forms are unknown. Vasculitis can be categorized into infectious vasculitis that is known to be caused by vessel wall invasion by pathogens that incite the inflammation (Pagnoux et al, 2006), and noninfectious vasculitis that is not known to be caused by infection in vessel walls (Jennette et al, 2013) (Box 53-1). For example, the infectious vasculitis of Rocky Mountain spotted fever (RMSF) is caused by proliferation of *Rickettsia rickettsii* in endothelial cells and smooth muscle cells in small vessels in many tissues (Silverman & Bond, 1984). The immune response to vessel wall rickettsiae causes vascular inflammation that results in hemorrhage that produces the skin spots that are typical for RMSF. Bacterial sepsis can cause small vessel vasculitis that can mimic noninfectious immune-mediated vasculitis (Jain et al, 2007) and clearly must be diagnosed correctly and treated with antimicrobial drugs and not immunosuppression.

Noninfectious vasculitis is caused by inflammation that is not known to be caused by pathogens in vessel walls. However, it is important to realize that the etiology and pathogenesis of some forms of vasculitides are currently not known, so an infectious etiology cannot be completely ruled out. For example, although the etiology is not known for Kawasaki disease, giant cell arteritis, and Takayasu arteritis, some theories propose that an unidentified pathogen may be the cause. For example, *Mycobacterium* tuberculosis has been incriminated but not proven to be involved in the pathogenesis of Takayasu arteritis and a *Burkholderia* bacterium in the pathogenesis of giant cell arteritis (van Timmeren et al, 2014).

Noninfectious vasculitis can be caused indirectly by an infection that initiates a sequence of pathogenic events that causes vasculitis. For example, cryoglobulinemic vasculitis can be caused by hepatitis C virus infection in the liver, which induces polyclonal, oligoclonal, and monoclonal B cell proliferations that produce rheumatoid factors (antiantibodies) that bind to other immunoglobulins to form pathogenic immune complexes (Tedeschi et al, 2007). Laboratory tests for cryoglobulinemic vasculitis comprise identification of the infectious agent (hepatitis C virus serology) that initiated the autoimmune response, the autoantibodies (rheumatoid factor assay), the pathogenic immune complexes (cryoglobulin assay), secondary disturbances in inflammatory mediators (e.g., hypocomplementemia), and the evidence for end organ damage (hematuria and proteinuria).

Laboratory testing for RMSF provides a good example of testing strategies for infectious vasculitis. The most direct laboratory test for RMSF is immunohistologic visualization of *R. rickettsii* in vessel walls in a skin biopsy specimen. This test has excellent specificity and 70% sensitivity during the acute phase before antibiotic treatment is started. Serologic testing for antibodies to *R. rickettsii* has poor sensitivity during the first 10 to 12 days but increases to more than 90% after 2 weeks (Nathavitharana & Mitty, 2015). The most definitive serologic finding for RMSF is a rise in titer over several weeks. Analogous testing is applicable to other infectious vasculitis—that is, testing to identify the etiologic infection and testing to demonstrate a specific immune response to the pathogen.

Based on known or putative pathogenic mechanisms, noninfectious vasculitis can be categorized as immune complex–mediated, antineutrophil

BOX 53-1

Putative Pathogenic Mechanisms for Vasculitis

Vasculitis Caused by Vessel Wall Infection

Bacterial (e.g., neisserial vasculitis, syphilitic aortitis)
Rickettsial (e.g., Rocky Mountain spotted fever)
Fungal (e.g., cryptococcal vasculitis)
Viral (e.g., cytomegalovirus vasculitis)
Parasitic (e.g., toxoplasmosis vasculitis

Immune Complex–Mediated Vasculitis

Cryoglobulinemic vasculitis
Polyarteritis nodosa
IgA vasculitis (Henoch-Schönlein)
Hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis
Lupus vasculitis
Rheumatoid vasculitis
Drug-induced immune complex vasculitis
Cancer-induced (paraneoplastic) immune complex vasculitis
Anti-glomerular basement membrane disease

Antineutrophil Cytoplasmic Antibody (ANCA)–Mediated Vasculitis

Microscopic polyangiitis
Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegener's)
Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Churg-Strauss)
Drug-induced ANCA vasculitis

Cell-Mediated Immune Vasculitis

Takayasu arteritis
Giant cell arteritis
Sarcoid vasculitis

BOX 53-2

Names for Vasculitides Adopted by the 2012 International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference on the Nomenclature of Vasculitides

Large Vessel Vasculitis (LVV)

Takayasu arteritis (TAK)
Giant cell arteritis (GCA)

Medium Vessel Vasculitis (MVV)

Polyarteritis nodosa (PAN)
Kawasaki disease (KD)

Small Vessel Vasculitis (SVV)

Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA)–associated vasculitis (AAV)
  Microscopic polyangiitis (MPA)
  Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegener's) (GPA)
  Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Churg-Strauss) (EGPA)
Immune complex SVV
  Anti-glomerular basement membrane (anti-GBM) disease
  Cryoglobulinemic vasculitis (CV)
  IgA vasculitis (Henoch-Schönlein) (IgAV)
  Hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis (HUV) (anti-C1q vasculitis)

Variable Vessel Vasculitis (VVV)

Behçet's disease (BD)
Cogan's syndrome (CS)

Single-Organ Vasculitis (SOV)

Cutaneous leukocytoclastic angiitis
Cutaneous arteritis
Primary central nervous system vasculitis
Isolated aortitis
Others

Vasculitis Associated with Systemic Disease

Lupus vasculitis
Rheumatoid vasculitis
Sarcoid vasculitis
Others

Vasculitis Associated with Probable Etiology

Hepatitis C virus–associated cryoglobulinemic vasculitis
Hepatitis B virus–associated vasculitis
Syphilis-associated aortitis
Drug-associated immune complex vasculitis
Drug-associated ANCA-associated vasculitis
Cancer-associated (paraneoplastic) vasculitis
Others

From Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013.

cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA)–mediated, or cell-mediated immune vasculitis (see Box 53-1). Immune complex vasculitis can be caused by antibodies directed against a non–self-antigen (e.g., hepatitis B immune complex vasculitis caused by antibodies to viral antigens) or autoantibodies directed against an autoantigen (e.g., lupus vasculitis caused by autoantibodies against nuclear antigens). Cell-mediated immunity also can cause vascular inflammation. The pattern of inflammatory injury in giant cell arteritis and in Takayasu arteritis suggests possible cell-mediated immune injury; however, definitive self or non-self targets have not been conclusively identified. In idiopathic vasculitides, another possibility is an autoinflammatory process that is mediated by a disturbance in the regulation of the innate immune response in the absence of a specific antigen target.

The absence of identifiable etiologies or distinctive pathogenic mechanisms in many forms of vasculitis does not allow diagnosis or classification of vasculitides based only on these characteristics. Alternatively, classification and diagnosis is most often based on the presence and absence of multiple clinical, pathologic, and laboratory features. The most widely used approach to categorizing vasculitis is based on the nomenclature of vasculitis proposed by the Chapel Hill Consensus Conferences (CHCC) held in 1994 (Jennette et al, 1994) and modified in 2012 (Jennette et al, 2013). The CHCC nomenclature provides consensus names (Box 53-2; Fig. 53-1) and definitions for many, but not all, forms of systemic and single organ vasculitis. Three major categories are large vessel vasculitis (LVV), medium vessel vasculitis (MVV), and small vessel vasculitis (SVV). This terminology can be misleading if it is taken too literally. In general, LVV more often affects the aorta and its major branches than any other form of vasculitis, MVV is confined to arteries, with a preference for major visceral arteries, and SVV involves not only arteries but also vessels smaller than arteries. Especially with respect to arterial involvement, there is substantial overlap among the categories. For example, although large vessel involvement is the most specific finding, giant cell arteritis can affect any size artery from the aorta to the smallest arterial vessels, such as those in the uveal tract of the eye (Waldman et al, 2013).

In addition to SVV, MVV, and LVV, the 2012 CHCC also recognized variable vessel vasculitis (VVV), single organ vasculitis (SOV), vasculitis associated with systemic disease, and vasculitis associated with probable etiology (Jennette et al, 2013). VV is vasculitis with no predominant type of vessel involved that can affect vessels of any size (small, medium, and large) and type (arteries, veins, and capillaries), such as Behçet's disease and Cogan's syndrome. SOV is vasculitis in arteries or veins of any size in a single organ that has no features that indicate that it is a limited expression of a systemic vasculitis. Some patients originally diagnosed with SOV will develop additional disease manifestations that warrant redefining the case as one of the systemic vasculitides (e.g., cutaneous arteritis later becoming systemic polyarteritis nodosa). Vasculitis associated with systemic disease should have a prefix term specifying the systemic disease (e.g., rheumatoid vasculitis, lupus vasculitis, etc.). Likewise, vasculitis associated with probable etiology should have a prefix term specifying the association (e.g., hydralazine-associated microscopic polyangiitis, hepatitis B virus–associated vasculitis, hepatitis C virus–associated cryoglobulinemic vasculitis, etc.).

LARGE VESSEL VASCULITIS

CHCC 2012 defines LVV as vasculitis affecting the aorta and its major branches more often than other vasculitides, although any size artery may be affected (Jennette et al, 2013). In fact, in some patients the number of medium and small arteries affected is greater than the number of large arteries affected. For example, in giant cell arteritis, very few branches of the carotid arteries may be affected, although there is involvement of numerous small arteries extending into the head and neck (Waldman et al, 2013).

The two major variants of LVV are Takayasu arteritis (TA) and giant cell arteritis (GCA) (Table 53-1). Both have similar pathologic features, so they cannot be distinguished based on pathologic features alone (Jennette et al, 2013). Demographic and clinical features are required to make the distinction, especially age. The differential diagnosis for LVV includes syphilitic aortitis, which is an infectious vasculitis caused by tertiary syphilis, and very rarely by secondary syphilis (Dietrich et al,

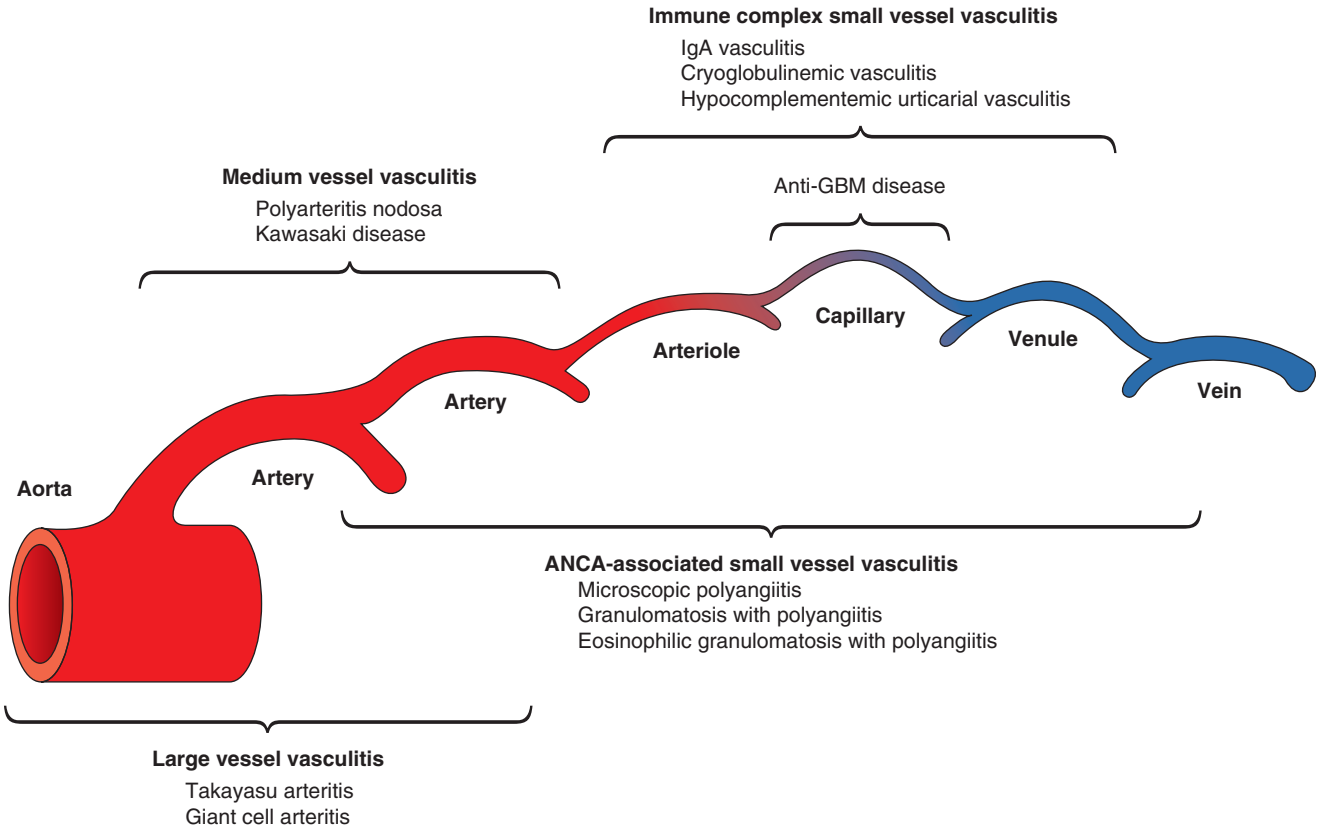


Figure 53-1 The predominant distribution of vessel involvement by large vessel vasculitis, medium vessel vasculitis, and small vessel vasculitis. Note that all categories of vasculitis can affect all types of arteries. The aorta and the largest arteries are most often affected by large vessel vasculitis. Medium vessel vasculitis most often affects medium arteries, although large and small arteries may be affected. Small vessel vasculitis preferentially affects venules and capillaries, although arteries and veins may be affected. ANCA (antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody)–associated vasculitis affects the broadest spectrum of vessels, whereas immune complex vasculitis usually is restricted to capillaries or venules or both. (Modified from Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013, with permission.)

TABLE 53-1
Names and Definitions for Large Vessel Vasculitis Adopted by the 2011-2012 International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of the Vasculitides

Large vessel vasculitis (LVV)	Vasculitis affecting large arteries more often than other vasculitides. Large arteries are the aorta and its major branches. Any size artery may be affected.
Takayasu arteritis	Arteritis, often granulomatous, predominantly affecting the aorta and/or its major branches. Onset usually in patients younger than 50.
Giant cell arteritis	Arteritis, often granulomatous, usually affecting the aorta and/or its major branches, with a predilection for the branches of the carotid and vertebral arteries. Often involves the temporal artery. Onset usually in patients older than 50 and often associated with polymyalgia rheumatica.

From Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013.

2014). The resulting aortic inflammation may lead to aneurysms of the aorta that can be life-threatening or fatal if not treated appropriately with antibiotics.

TAKAYASU ARTERITIS

Definition and Epidemiology

Takayasu arteritis (TAK), is often granulomatous, with a predilection for the aorta and its major branches (Jennette et al, 2013). Onset is usually in patients younger than 50. TAK most often affects women between 10 and 40 years of age. TAK occurs worldwide with an estimated incidence of 1.2 to 2.6/million per year in the Western countries. TAK occurs in all races, but the incidence is higher in Southeast Asia, Central and South America, and Africa (Vaideeswar & Deshpande, 2013).

Pathology

The pathology of TAK in the acute active phase is characterized by inflammation of the aorta or larger arteries with a predominance of mononuclear leukocytes, often, but not always, accompanied by multinucleated giant cells (Jennette, 2015; Vaideeswar & Deshpande, 2013). Even if disease appears more localized clinically, postmortem pathologic examination usually shows more extensive involvement. Involved vessels may have well-demarcated skip areas resulting in localized narrowing or dilation of lumens. This inflammation causes arterial stenosis, thrombosis, and aneurysms. There are at least two classification systems based on distribution of vessel involvement (Vaideeswar & Deshpande, 2013). One classifies TAK into five types: type I, aortic arch and its branches; type II, descending thoracic and abdominal aorta; type III, aortic arch and thoraco-abdominal aorta; type IV, pulmonary artery in addition to the aforementioned types; and type V, coronary artery in addition to the other types (Gulati & Bagga, 2010). Another classifies TAK into six types: type I, aortic arch and its branches; type IIa, ascending aorta, arch, and its branches; type IIb, ascending aorta, arch, and its branches, and descending thoracic aorta; type III, thoracic aorta and abdominal aorta; type IV, abdominal aorta; and type V, combination of type IIb and type IV (Hata et al, 1996).

The pathologic differential diagnosis includes syphilitic aortitis that also has inflammatory infiltrates with predominantly mononuclear leukocytes, including plasma cells. The only diagnostic pathologic finding that can identify syphilitic aortitis is immunohistochemical identification of *Treponema pallidum*.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

An autoimmune or infectious etiology that is influenced by genetic and environmental factors and results in cell-mediated immune injury to

vessels is incriminated in the pathogenesis of TAK; however, specific etiologic factors have not been identified (Vaideeswar & Deshpande, 2013).

Clinical Laboratory Testing

In part because the specific etiology and unique pathogenic mechanisms are not known for TAK, no laboratory tests have been identified that are specific for this disease. Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and C-reactive protein (CRP) are the laboratory tests that are used most often to support a diagnosis of TAK and to follow disease activity and response to therapy. The ESR is elevated in 75% to 100% of patients with active disease and tends to return to normal over time. ESR is thought to be a reliable index of inflammatory activity and has been used as a tool to monitor the effectiveness of therapy. Resolution of the disease, both symptomatically and angiographically, has been found to correlate with decline of the ESR, although one surgical series observed that 44% of patients thought to be quiet clinically were not upon arterial biopsy (Langford, 2003).

In a study of TAK treatment response, ESR decreased from 55.5 +/– 14.7 mm/h to 21.9 +/– 9.5 mm/h within 3 months ($p < 0.001$) and further to 20.8 +/– 15.2 at 1 year (p = NS). CRP concentrations fell from 4.8 +/– 5.2 mg/dL to 0.5 +/– 0.2 mg/dL at 3 months ($p = 0.004$) and remained at 0.5 +/– 0.3 mg/dL at 1 year (p = NS) (Valsakumar et al, 2003).

In addition to ESR and CRP, multiple biomarkers have been evaluated as diagnostic and prognostic tests in TAK: interleukin (IL)-6, serum amyloid A, fibrinogen, complement split fragments, B cell activating factor (BAFF), interleukin (IL)-12, matrix metalloproteinase 9 (MMP-9), and pentraxin 3 (PTX3) (Chatterjee et al, 2014). To date, none of these have been adopted for widespread use.

Laboratory testing to rule out syphilitic aortitis includes the VDRL (Venereal Disease Research Laboratory) test, TPPA (*Treponema pallidum* particle agglutination assay), and IgG and IgM FTA-Abs (fluorescent treponemal antibody-absorption) (Dietrich et al, 2014). A definitive test is positive immunohistochemical staining for *Treponema pallidum* organisms in tissue specimens (e.g., a resected aneurysm). A negative test is not as predictive.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

The diagnosis of TAK is based primarily on clinical signs and symptoms and on imaging studies to document involved vessels. Unlike in GCA, pathologic examination of biopsies or resected vessels is not a routine component of a diagnostic workup for TAK. TAK has three phases of progression (Vaideeswar & Deshpande, 2013). The first is characterized by low-grade fever, malaise, night sweats, arthralgia, anorexia, and weight loss, with no clinical evidence for large vessel narrowing. The second phase is the vasculitic stage in which the first-phase constitutional symptoms are accompanied by evidence for large vessel inflammation, such as tenderness or pain over vessels (angiodynia). These first two phases may last for several months before signs of more chronic injury appear. The final phase, which may evolve over months or years, has various manifestations of chronic sclerosing vasculopathy affecting the aorta and its major branches, including pulseless disease, related to arterial stenosis or occlusion.

In patients with active disease, corticosteroid therapy is the initial treatment of choice. If active disease persists despite corticosteroids, cyclophosphamide or methotrexate may be administered. Vasodilators, anticoagulants, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents are used for symptomatic relief. Surgical intervention may be necessary for symptomatic vascular stenosis or occlusion (Hoffman, 2003).

GIANT CELL ARTERITIS

Definition and Epidemiology

Giant cell arteritis (GCA) is arteritis, often granulomatous, with a predilection for the aorta and its major branches (Jennette et al, 2013). In contrast to TAK, GCA occurs in patients more than 50 years old. GCA is more common in Western countries with the highest incidence and prevalence in Caucasians of Scandinavian descent (González-Gay & Pina, 2015). There is a north-south gradient in the incidence of GCA in Europe, with high rates in Sweden and Norway, which has an incidence of over 20 new cases per 100,000 individuals aged 50 and older per year, and a lower incidence in southern Europe, which has an annual incidence of 10 cases per 100,000 people aged 50 years and older in northwestern Spain (González-Gay & Pina, 2015).

Pathology

The pathology of GCA in the acute active phase is characterized by inflammation of the aorta or larger arteries, with a predominance of mononuclear leukocytes often accompanied by multinucleated giant cells (Jennette, 2015) (Fig. 53-2). The chronic inactive phase has nonspecific chronic inflammation and scarring. Although minor focal necrosis may occur, extensive fibrinoid necrosis, especially in arteries, should raise the possibility of another variant of arteritis. The concurrence of another pathologic process that causes chronic inflammation and scarring (e.g., atherosclerosis) complicates the pathologic diagnosis of chronic LVV.

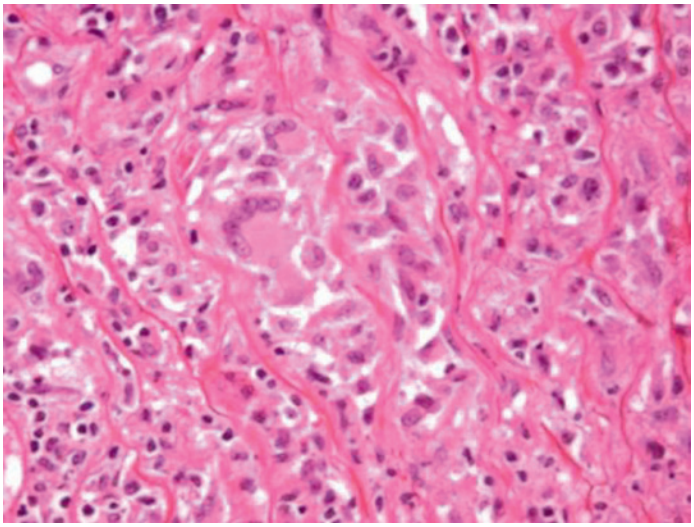


Figure 53-2 Histopathologic features in the media of the aorta of a patient with giant cell aortitis. Note that the elastic fibers are spread apart by numerous infiltrating mononuclear leukocytes with admixed multinucleated giant cells (H&E stain, ×500).

The most common pathologic pattern in active GCA is transmural inflammation, which is identified in more than 75% of patients, although a minority of specimens will have inflammation confined to the adventitial tissues, including the vasa vasorum (Cavazza et al, 2014). In a study of 274 temporal artery biopsies that had transmural inflammation, most as a result of GCA, 100% had inflammation with predominantly mononuclear leukocytes (lymphocytes, monocytes macrophages, and plasma cells), 75% giant cells, 8% admixed eosinophils, and 2% admixed neutrophils (Cavazza et al, 2014). Although small zones of laminar degeneration (necrosis) may occur in areas of medial inflammation, overt fibrinoid necrosis, especially if accompanied by neutrophils and/or neutrophils with leukocytoclasia, should raise the possibility of a vasculitis other than GCA, such as polyarteritis nodosa or ANCA vasculitis (Hamidou et al, 2003; Cavazza et al, 2014).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Cell-mediated immune mechanisms are incriminated in the pathogenesis of GCA, although the initiating etiologic factors are not known. For example, in GCA, investigations have demonstrated that dendritic cells in vessel walls initiate the recruitment of T cells and macrophages that are the basis for the granulomatous inflammation (Weyand & Goronzy, 2014). Two major immune-response networks have been identified in inflamed arteries: the interleukin-12, type 1 helper T cell (Th1), and interferon-γ axis; and the interleukin-6, type 17 helper T cell (Th17), and interleukin-17 or interleukin-21 axis. Cytokines released by these inflammatory pathways activate leukocytes as well as endothelial cells, vascular smooth muscle cells, and fibroblasts, leading to intimal and medial hyperplasia and fibrosis. Elastolytic and proteolytic enzymes (e.g., matrix metalloproteinases) and growth factors (e.g., vascular endothelial growth factor and platelet derived growth factor) promote both degenerative and proliferative and sclerosing changes that cause pathologic damage in vessel walls (Weyand & Goronzy, 2014). A large-scale genetic analysis comprising 1651 patients with GCA and 15,306 unrelated control subjects from six different European countries of European ancestry identified multiple HLA loci, PTPN22, and other loci that influence Th1, Th17, and Treg cell function as risk factors for GCA (Carmona et al, 2015). The involvement of these genes supports a role for a pathogenic autoimmune response in the pathogenesis of GCA.

Clinical Laboratory Testing

Temporal artery biopsy is the current gold standard for diagnosis of GCA; however, a biopsy that is not considered diagnostic does not exclude GCA. False-negative results are estimated to occur in up to 15% of patients and

are influenced by the length of the biopsy specimen and the duration of corticosteroid treatment prior to biopsy (Achkar et al, 1994; Poller et al, 2000; Kermani et al, 2013).

Especially in the absence of a tissue diagnosis, laboratory data are very important in reaching an actionable diagnosis of GCA. Laboratory findings that support a diagnosis of GCA are increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and C-reactive protein (CRP), and thrombocytosis (Kermani et al, 2012; Waldman et al, 2013). An elevated platelet count is an early laboratory marker that can be detected a year before GCA is diagnosed (Lincoff et al, 2000). In a study of patients with GCA confirmed by temporal artery biopsy, elevated CRP and elevated ESR had a sensitivity of 87% and 84%, respectively, and 4% had a normal ESR and CRP (Kermani et al, 2012). ACR-EULAR Classification Criteria for GCA (Dasgupta et al, 2012) require, in part, abnormal elevations in CRP, ESR, or both. An additional laboratory criterion is absence of rheumatoid factor or antibodies to cyclic citrullinated peptides.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

The diagnosis of GCA is most accurate when it is to be based on clinical manifestations, laboratory tests, and confirmation by biopsy of the temporal artery or other affected artery (Waldman et al, 2013; Weyand & Goronzy, 2014). Bilateral temporal artery biopsies increase diagnostic sensitivity (Durling et al, 2014). Corticosteroid therapy should not be discontinued after a negative biopsy result if there is enough evidence to make the diagnosis. GCA with normal ESR and/or normal CRP levels is rare but does occur; thus laboratory testing cannot completely rule out GCA (Kermani et al, 2012).

Imaging studies of large arteries and the aorta—for example, with positron emission tomography (PET)—are a helpful adjunct to pathology and laboratory testing for making a diagnosis and assessing the status of patients with GCA (Prieto-Gonzalez et al, 2014). One-quarter of patients with GCA have involvement of the aorta and its major branches that can be detected with imaging studies (Weyand & Goronzy, 2014). PET also is useful in the early diagnosis of syphilitic aortitis (Treglia et al, 2013).

Most cases of GCA are effectively managed with glucocorticoid monotherapy (Weyand & Goronzy, 2014). Disease flares are common when the glucocorticoids are tapered and often require a short-term increase to induce and maintain remission. Patients with visual impairment or evidence of unstable blood supply to the eyes benefit from high doses of intravenous glucocorticoids. If disease flares, patients may need to be treated with glucocorticoid-sparing agents, including methotrexate or infliximab.

Corticosteroids are the treatment of choice for TAK but may not be sufficiently effective 50% of the time. An immunosuppressive regimen of azathioprine and prednisolone is safe, well tolerated, and effective in ameliorating systemic symptoms and laboratory abnormalities in TA, and it halts the progression in lesions based on angiographic studies, although it does not seem to lead to complete resolution of arterial lesions (Valsakumar et al, 2003). Other agents may be considered, including cyclophosphamide and methotrexate.

The differential diagnosis for LVV also includes variable vessel vasculitis (VVV), including Behçet's disease and Cogan's syndrome, and by infectious vasculitis (e.g., aortitis caused by tertiary syphilis) and lymphoplasmocytic disease (e.g., aortitis as a component of IgG4-related disease) (Miller & Maleszewski, 2011). There is controversy about whether isolated aortitis or isolated giant cell arteritis of a visceral artery is a limited expression of Takayasu arteritis or GCA or a distinct form of single organ vasculitis. When single organ LVV is detected, follow-up should include vigilance for additional organ involvement.

MEDIUM VESSEL VASCULITIS

MVV is vasculitis that predominantly affects medium arteries defined as the main visceral arteries and their branches; however, any size artery may be affected (Jennette et al, 2013). The two major categories are polyarteritis nodosa (PAN) and Kawasaki disease (KD) (Table 53-2). Inflammatory aneurysms and stenoses are common. It is important to note that medium arteries also can be affected by large vessel vasculitis and small vessel vasculitis. Thus multiple clinical, laboratory, and pathologic findings must be taken into consideration to make an accurate diagnosis of the disease that is causing arteritis.

POLYARTERITIS NODOSA

Definition and Epidemiology

PAN is necrotizing arteritis of medium or small arteries without glomerulonephritis or vasculitis in arterioles, capillaries, or venules, and it is not associated with ANCA (Jennette et al, 2013). PAN is a diagnosis of exclusion that is made after omitting many other categories of large, medium, and small vessel vasculitis that can affect medium arteries (Jennette & Falk, 2007). PAN affects patients of all ages, genders, and racial backgrounds, although it is more common in older adults. The annual incidence ranges from 0 to 1.6 cases/million in European countries, and its prevalence is about 31 cases/million (Hernández-Rodríguez et al, 2014). Before vaccination against HBV was available, more than one-third of adults with PAN were infected by HBV; however, currently, less than 5% of patients with PAN are infected with HBV in developed countries (Mahr et al, 2004).

TABLE 53-2

Names and Definitions for Medium Vessel Vasculitis Adopted by the 2011-2012 International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of the Vasculitides

Medium vessel vasculitis (MVV)	Vasculitis predominantly affecting medium arteries defined as the main visceral arteries and their branches. Any size artery may be affected. Inflammatory aneurysms and stenoses are common.
Polyarteritis nodosa	Necrotizing arteritis of medium or small arteries without glomerulonephritis or vasculitis in arterioles, capillaries, or venules, and not associated with ANCA.
Kawasaki disease	Arteritis associated with the mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome and predominantly affecting medium and small arteries. Coronary arteries are often involved. Aorta and large arteries may be involved. Usually occurs in infants and young children.

From Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013.

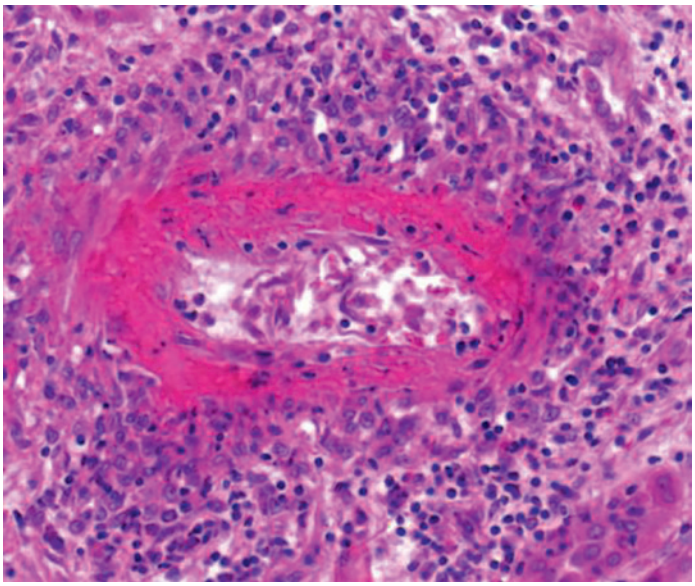


Figure 53-3 Necrotizing arteritis caused by polyarteritis nodosa. Note the replacement of most of the media by deeply acidophilic fibrinoid necrosis and the perivascular inflammation with a mixture of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and mononuclear leukocytes (H&E stain, ×300).

Pathology

Any type of artery in any organ can be affected; however, main visceral arteries and their initial branches in the parenchyma are the most frequent targets, such as the major mesenteric arteries, renal arteries, hepatic arteries, and coronary arteries. Epineural arteries of peripheral nerves and subcutaneous arteries of the skin also are common targets. When main arteries are involved, nodular inflammatory lesions and pseudoaneurysms can be observed grossly or with imaging studies (or palpated in the skin). The inflammation has a predilection for arterial branch points. The histopathologic features of PAN (Fig. 53-3) begin as fibrinoid necrosis with

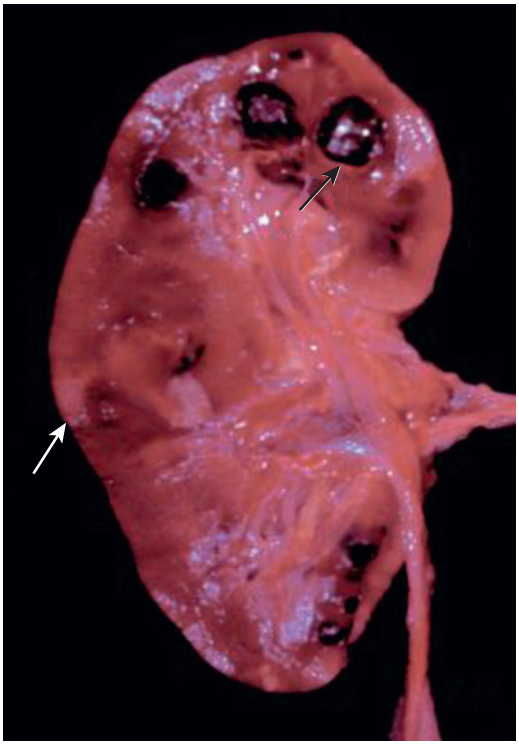


Figure 53-4 Cross section of a kidney from a patient with polyarteritis nodosa showing multiple pseudoaneurysms (black arrow) and infarcts (white arrow).

intense acute neutrophil-rich inflammation, evolve through chronic inflammation and fibroplasia, and eventually result in fibrosis that may completely or partially impede blood flow (Jennette & Falk, 2007; Jennette, 2015). Acute occlusion causing infarction may result from thrombosis of arteries at sites of segmental acute inflammation, necrosis, and pseudoaneurysm formation (Fig. 53-4).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

The etiology and pathogenesis of PAN are unknown. A role for infections has been incriminated. During the 1970s, about half of the patients with PAN were infected with HBV, and HBe antigen to anti-HBe antibody seroconversion usually paralleled recovery (Pagnoux et al, 2006). This suggested that PAN was caused by hepatitis B virus infection. However, the frequency of HBV-associated PAN has declined from 35% in the 1980s to less than 5% in the early 2000s (Mahr et al, 2004). Additional infections that have been incriminated as but not proven to be etiologies for PAN include hepatitis C virus (HCV), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), cytomegalovirus, and parvovirus B19 (Hernández-Rodríguez et al, 2014). Most cases are idiopathic.

Clinical Laboratory Testing

Laboratory testing in patients with PAN often demonstrates thrombocytosis, low serum albumin, and ESR and CRP. Liver enzymes may be abnormal in patients who have viral hepatitis. Testing for HBV, HCV, and HIV in patients with necrotizing arteritis is important because antiviral treatment must be added to immunosuppressive treatment for optimum outcome (Guillevin, 2013). ANCA testing is important to rule out ANCA vasculitis with a component of necrotizing arteritis that is mimicking PAN. Other laboratory abnormalities are dictated by the organ systems that are involved, such as kidneys, pancreas, skeletal muscle, heart, gastrointestinal tract, and so on.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

Clinical manifestations of PAN are protean and depend on the organs that are affected (Hernández-Rodríguez et al, 2014). Most patients have nonspecific constitutional symptoms, such as fever, malaise, arthralgias, myalgias, and weight loss. Peripheral neuropathy occurs in approximately 75% of patients, and gastrointestinal involvement in approximately half. The major cutaneous manifestations are inflammatory nodules, infarction, and livido reticularis. Renal involvement manifests as flank pain and hematuria and, rarely, as retroperitoneal hemorrhage from rupture of an aneurysm. Greater than 2 g/day proteinuria and hematuria with red blood cell casts are not features of PAN and raise the possibility of a small vessel vasculitis such as microscopic polyangiitis. Involvement of the gastrointestinal tract, kidneys, heart, and central nervous system is associated with higher mortality. Laboratory abnormalities reveal a prominent acute phase response but are nonspecific. Histologic confirmation of vasculitis in medium-sized arteries is valuable for diagnosis. Positive pathologic finds are more likely if biopsies are obtained from symptomatic organs if feasible. Skin or muscle and nerve are preferred because of higher diagnostic yield and safety. If biopsies are negative or cannot be obtained, visceral angiography may reveal multiple micro-aneurysms, supporting the diagnosis of PAN.

Current treatment includes high-dose corticosteroids, which are combined with immunosuppressive agents when critical organ involvement or life-threatening complications occur. IV pulse cyclophosphamide in the remission induction phase, later switched to a safer immunosuppressant for remission maintenance, is a frequently used therapeutic approach (Hernández-Rodríguez et al, 2014).

KAWASAKI DISEASE

Definition and Epidemiology

Kawasaki disease (KD) is arteritis associated with the mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome and predominantly affecting medium and small arteries (Jennette et al, 2013). Coronary arteries are often involved. Aorta and large arteries may be involved. KD usually occurs in infants and young children. Clinical manifestations include persistent fever for a week or more, erythematous rash, conjunctivitis, oropharyngeal erythema, and lymphadenopathy. Over 80% of KD cases occur between the ages of 6 months and 4 years. The annual incidence varies from approximately 3 per 100,000 children under 5 years of age in South America to 4 in Australia, 8 in the United Kingdom, 4 to 15 in the United States, 20 to 30 in China, 50 in Taiwan, 90 in Korea, and more than 130 in Japan (Burgner & Harnden, 2005). Kawasaki disease is more common in boys, with a male:female ratio of 1.6:1.

A number of epidemiological observations suggest but do not prove an infectious etiology for KD (Burgner & Harnden, 2005). Geographical clustering of KD cases and epidemics has been reported. The onset of KD has seasonal variations, but the predominant season varies in different countries. In the United Kingdom, Australia, and the United States, KD is most common in the winter and spring; in China, in the spring and summer; and in Korea, during the summer months.

Pathology

Active KD arteritis is characterized by segmental necrotizing arteritis (Fig. 53-5). In the acute phase, in general, KD has more infiltration by monocytes, whereas PAN has more infiltration by neutrophils (Jennette & Falk, 2007). Fibrinoid necrosis occurs with both PAN and KD, but it is less conspicuous in KD. The chronic sclerotic phase is characterized by segmental transmural chronic inflammation and scarring. Special stains for elastica demonstrate focal disruption of the internal elastica.

The acute lesion of KD is characterized by transmural necrotizing inflammation that is rich in neutrophils and monocytes (Orenstein et al, 2012; Jennette, 2015). Degeneration of artery walls results in aneurysm and pseudoaneurysm formation, with the latter having complete erosion of the necrotizing process into the perivascular tissues. Thrombosis may occur at sites of arteritis, especially sites of aneurysm/pseudoaneurysm formation. Acute arteritis wanes by 2 weeks after fever onset, and it is replaced by varying degrees of subacute and chronic inflammation, including intimal myofibroblast proliferation (Orenstein et al, 2012; Reindel et al, 2014).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Infection also has been suspected as a cause of KD because concurrent infection with pathogens has been detected by culture, molecular methods, or serological testing in patients with KD; however, although more than 20 different pathogens have been incriminated, none have been proven to be a direct cause of KD, and many are infectious diseases that are common in young children (Burgner & Harnden, 2005; Principi et al, 2013). Mediation by an immune response to a superantigen (possibly of microbial origin) has been studied extensively. KD shares many clinical features with superantigen-mediated diseases—for example, rash, conjunctivitis, and skin sloughing—and KD has been reported in children with toxic shock syndrome, which can be caused by superantigens (Burgner & Harnden, 2005). However, there is no proof that superantigens are involved in the pathogenesis of KD. Multiple inflammatory pathways are upregulated in the inflamed arteries of KD, including a pathway that involves the lymphocyte activation molecule CD84 (Reindel et al, 2014).

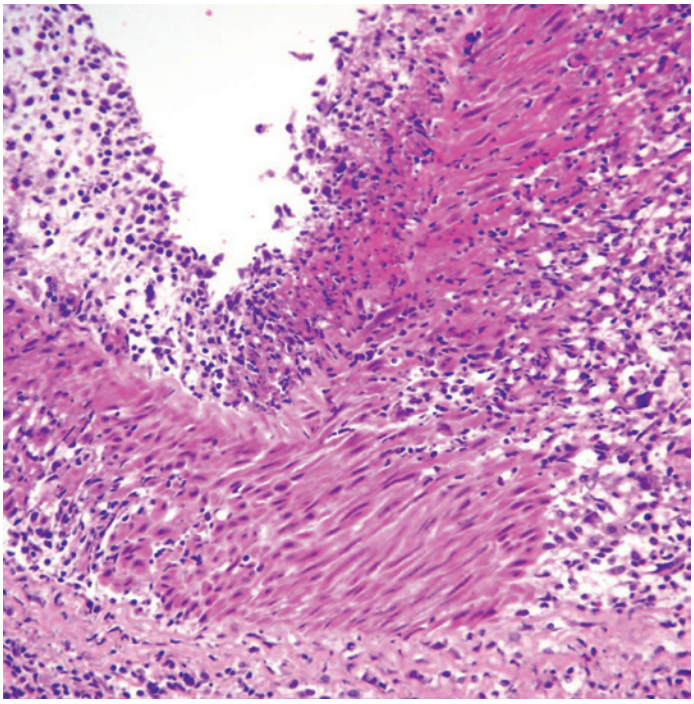


Figure 53-5 Kawasaki disease arteritis showing segmental transmural necrotizing inflammation with residual areas of intact muscularis adjacent to intense medial inflammation that is continuous with intimal inflammation and adventitial inflammation (H&E stain, ×400).

CD84 was upregulated 16-fold in acute coronary arteritis caused by KD and 32-fold in chronic coronary arteritis caused by KD (5 months to years after onset). CD84 was detected in leukocytes in KD tissues.

Clinical Laboratory Testing

Diagnosis of KD is based primarily on clinical signs and symptoms. Nonspecific laboratory indicators of acute inflammation (i.e., acute phase reactants, including CRP and ESR) are consistently elevated in the acute phase of KD. One study suggests that elevated serum levels of the cardiac natriuretic peptide called N-terminal of the prohormone brain natriuretic peptide (NT-pro-BNP) might be a useful diagnostic tool for KD, especially in patients with cardiac injury and atypical clinical presentations (Cho et al, 2011). The cutoff level of NT-pro-BNP that best distinguished KD from other childhood febrile illnesses was 235.2 pg/mL. The same study concluded that serum levels of high-sensitivity CRP are not useful in distinguishing KD from other childhood febrile illnesses.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

Features of the mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome, especially in a child 5 years of age or younger, are important for diagnosis of KD, but some patients present with other KD manifestations before full-blown mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome, including signs and symptoms of myocardial ischemia caused by coronary arteritis. Although timely treatment with intravenous gamma globulin (IVIG) plus aspirin has profoundly reduced the frequency and severity of coronary arteritis in KD, approximately 10% to 20% of patients develop clinically significant sequelae of coronary arteritis (Orenstein et al, 2012). Myocardial infarction occurs in approximately 2% of KD patients with coronary arteritis (Burgner & Harnden, 2005).

SMALL VESSEL VASCULITIS

Small vessel vasculitis (SVV) is vasculitis predominantly affecting small vessels, defined as small intraparenchymal arteries, arterioles, capillaries, and venules (Jennette et al, 2013). Medium arteries and veins may be affected.

As with other vasculitides, an important diagnostic dichotomy is between infectious SVV and immune-mediated SVV. Viral infection and bacterial infection can mimic immune-mediated SVV, and the diagnostic distinction between these forms of vasculitis is critically important for appropriate treatment with antimicrobial therapy versus immunosuppressive therapy. Detection of the pathogen by culture or by genomic or proteomic assays or serologic detection of an immune response to the pathogen reveals the etiologic infection (Jain et al, 2007; D'Alessandro et al, 2014).

Based on immunopathologic features, noninfectious SVV is divided into ANCA-associated vasculitis with few or no vessel-immune deposits, and immune complex SVV with moderate to marked vessel wall deposits of immunoglobulin and/or complement components.

TABLE 53-3
Names and Definitions for ANCA-Associated Small Vessel Vasculitis Adopted by the 2011-2012 International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of the Vasculitides

ANCA-associated vasculitis (AAV)	Necrotizing vasculitis, with few or no immune deposits, predominantly affecting small vessels (i.e., capillaries, venules, arterioles, and small arteries), associated with MPO-ANCA or PR3-ANCA. Not all patients have ANCA. Add a prefix indicating ANCA reactivity—for example, PR3-ANCA, MPO-ANCA, ANCA-negative.
Microscopic polyangiitis (MPA)	Necrotizing vasculitis, with few or no immune deposits, predominantly affecting small vessels (i.e., capillaries, venules, or arterioles). Necrotizing arteritis involving small and medium arteries may be present. Necrotizing glomerulonephritis is very common. Pulmonary capillaritis often occurs. Granulomatous inflammation is absent.
Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegener's) (GPA)	Necrotizing granulomatous inflammation usually involving the upper and lower respiratory tract, and necrotizing vasculitis affecting predominantly small to medium vessels (e.g., capillaries, venules, arterioles, arteries, and veins). Necrotizing glomerulonephritis is common.
Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Churg Strauss) (EGPA)	Eosinophil-rich and necrotizing granulomatous inflammation often involving the respiratory tract, and necrotizing vasculitis predominantly affecting small to medium vessels, and associated with asthma and eosinophilia. ANCA is more frequent when glomerulonephritis is present.

From Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013.

ANCA-ASSOCIATED SMALL VESSEL VASCULITIS

Definition and Epidemiology

ANCA-associated vasculitis is necrotizing vasculitis, with few or no immune deposits, that predominantly affects small vessels (i.e., capillaries, venules, arterioles, and small arteries) and is associated with myeloperoxidase (MPO)–ANCA, or proteinase 3 (PR3)–ANCA (Jennette et al, 2013) (Table 53-3). However, not all patients have MPO-ANCA or PR3-ANCA, at least using current analytic methods. The few or no immune deposits distinguishes ANCA vasculitis from immune complex vasculitis that has moderate to marked vessel wall deposits of immunoglobulin and/or complement components (Jennette et al, 2013). Because of this paucity of immune deposits, ANCA vasculitis is also called pauci-immune vasculitis.

ANCA SVV is classified based on clinicopathologic phenotypes and by the antigen-specificity of ANCA. The clinicopathologic variants are microscopic polyangiitis (MPA), granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA) (formerly called Wegener's granulomatosis), eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA) (formerly called Churg-Strauss syndrome), and renal limited vasculitis (RLV) (Jennette et al, 2013). An additional variant is drug-induced ANCA vasculitis, which may manifest as MPA, GPA, or RLV (Pendergraft & Niles, 2014). An optimum diagnosis should include both the ANCA serology status and the clinicopathologic phenotype—for example, MPO-ANCA MPA, PR3-ANCA GPA, ANCA-negative EGPA, and so on (Jennette et al, 2013).

MPA is multiorgan pauci-immune small vessel vasculitis with no granulomatous inflammation or asthma. MPA often has necrotizing glomerulonephritis and pulmonary capillaritis. GPA has necrotizing granulomatous inflammation usually involving the upper and lower respiratory tract, as well as vasculitic lesions indistinguishable from those of MPA. EGPA has eosinophil-rich and necrotizing granulomatous inflammation often involving the respiratory tract, as well as asthma and blood

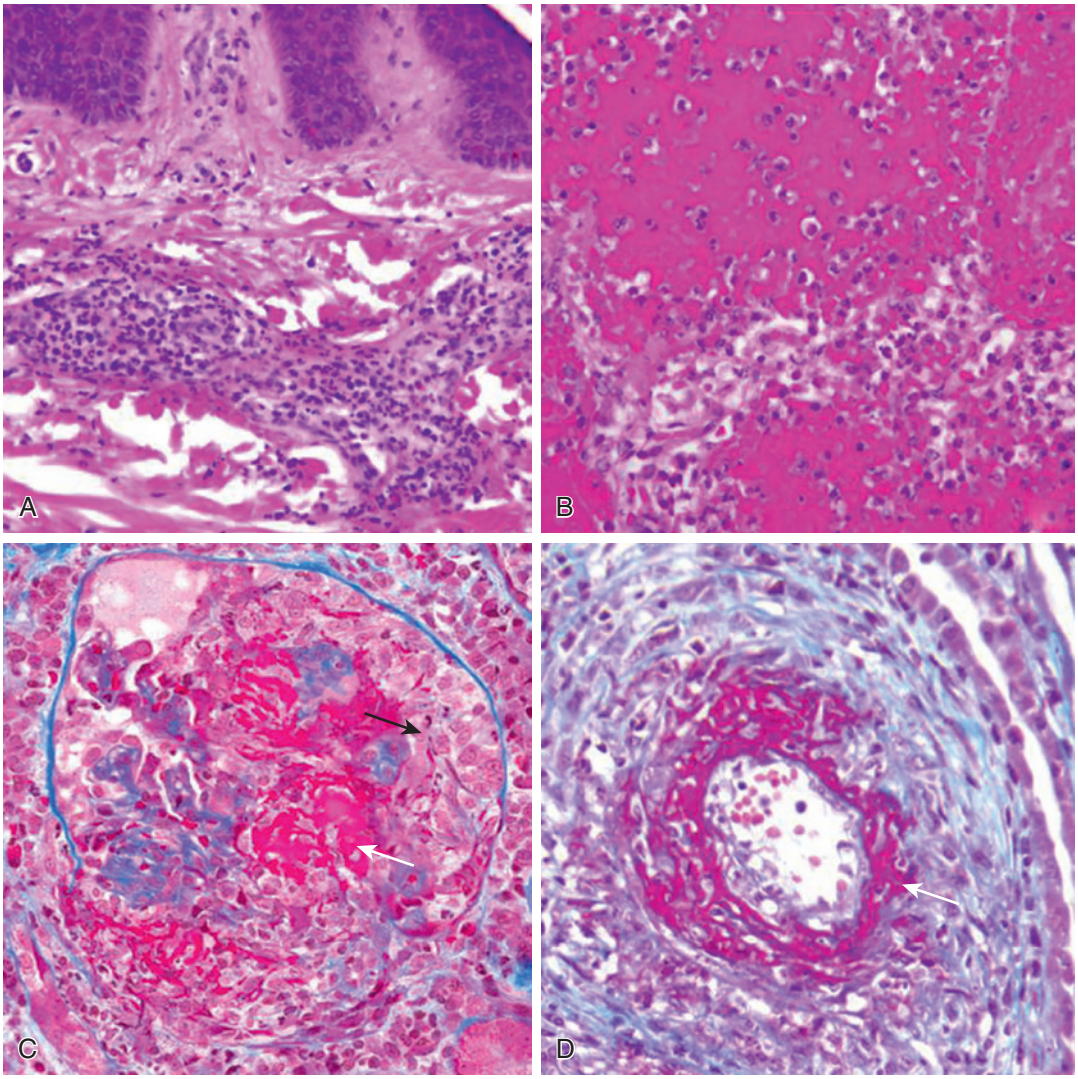


Figure 53-6 ANCA disease can cause many forms of vascular injury. These include: **A,** dermal leukocytoclastic angiitis with intense neutrophil-rich infiltrates centered in small dermal vessels (H&E stain, ×400); **B,** hemorrhagic pulmonary alveolar capillaritis with destruction of alveolar walls by neutrophil-rich inflammation (H&E stain, ×500); **C,** glomerulonephritis with fibrinoid necrosis of glomerular capillaries *(white arrow)* and adjacent cellular crescent formation *(black arrow)* (Masson trichrome stain, ×500); and **D,** arteritis with extensive irregular fibrinoid necrosis (Masson trichrome stain, ×400).

eosinophilia. Although there appears to be a prevasculitic phase that is ANCA-negative, ANCA-positive EGPA patients typically have pauci-immune small vessel vasculitis and pauci-immune necrotizing and crescentic glomerulonephritis that is indistinguishable from MPA and GPA. ANCA vasculitis confined to a single organ may occur. One example is ANCA renal-limited vasculitis (RLV) causing pauci-immune necrotizing and crescentic glomerulonephritis.

The incidence of ANCA vasculitis increases with age, with a peak around 60 years old, although children can develop ANCA vasculitis. Gender distribution is about equal, with a possible slight male predominance. The incidence and prevalence of ANCA vasculitis varies among the different clinicopathologic phenotypes and among different geographic locations (Watts et al, 2015). Roughly, the incidence of all forms of ANCA vasculitis is 15 to 20/million, and the prevalence is roughly 50 to 150/million. There is a higher ratio of GPA:MPA in northern Europe (e.g., Germany and Scandinavia) and northern U.S. states (e.g., Montana and Minnesota), and a lower ratio of GPA:MPA in southern Europe (e.g., Greece and Spain) and southern U.S. states (e.g., North Carolina). This is accompanied by the expected differences in ratio of PR3:MPO ANCA specificity in accord with more frequent PR3-ANCA with GPA and more frequent MPO-ANCA with MPA. The precise ratios are not known, but in general there is a reversal of preponderance of MPO-ANCA MPA versus PR3-ANCA GPA from north to south in both Europe and North America. There is a striking preponderance of MPO-ANCA and of MPA in Asia. For example, in one study of ANCA-associated vasculitis in Japan, the estimated annual incidence was 15 per million adults (over age 15) and 45 per million older adults (over age 65). Ninety-one percent of the patients were MPO-ANCA positive, but none were PR3-ANCA positive, and none had GPA or EGPA (Fujimoto et al, 2006).

Pathology

ANCA vasculitis can affect arteries (usually small arteries), arterioles, capillaries, venules, and veins (usually small veins). In all organs and in all clinicopathologic variants (e.g., MPA, GPA, EGPA), acute ANCA arteritis is characterized by segmental fibrinoid necrosis (Fig. 53-6), and mural and perivascular neutrophil-rich infiltration (Jennette & Falk, 2007; Jennette, 2015). Eosinophils may be numerous, especially in EGPA. Within several days, the neutrophil-rich inflammation is replaced by predominantly mononuclear leukocytes, with numerous monocytes and macrophages and fewer lymphocytes. Within a week, the active inflammatory process wanes and vasculitic lesions develop progressive sclerosis/fibrosis. In a given tissue, such as skin, gut, or kidney, vasculitic lesions of different ages often are observed because persistently active ANCA vasculitis has multiple acute vasculitic lesions developing while prior active lesions are undergoing scarring. Patients in complete remission should have only chronic quiescent lesions. ANCA arteritis is histopathologically indistinguishable from other forms of necrotizing arteritis (e.g., PAN).

When ANCA vasculitis affects venules—for example, in the dermis—acute lesions have less conspicuous fibrinoid necrosis and more prominent leukocytoclasia (Fig. 53-6, *A*). This pattern of injury may be called leukocytoclastic angiitis, and it can also be caused by other forms of SVV, especially immune complex SVV.

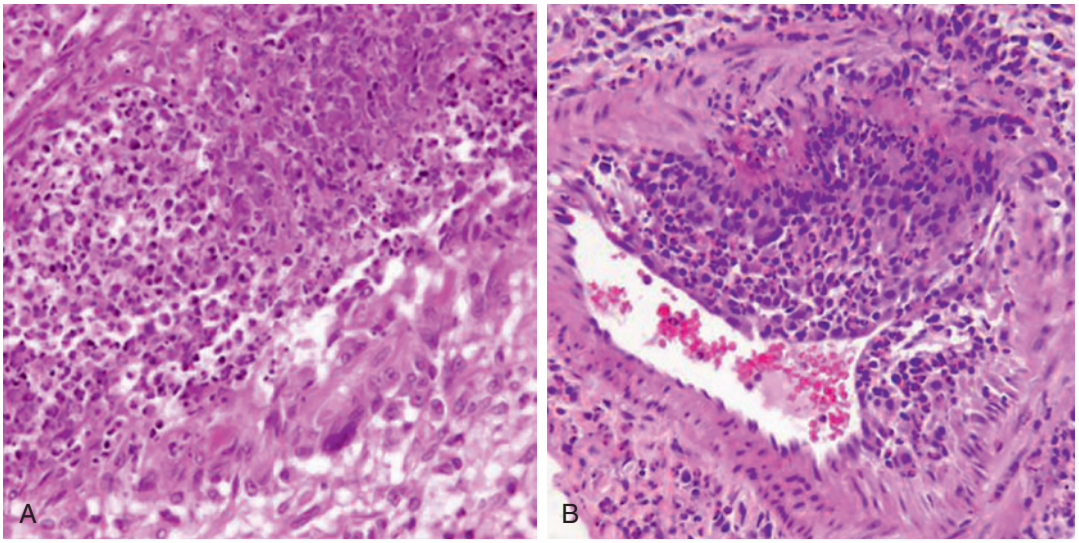


Figure 53-7 Pulmonary lesions in GPA and EGPA include necrotizing granulomatous inflammation and vasculitis. **A,** Necrotizing granulomatous inflammation in a GPA patient showing neutrophil-rich necrotic debris in the upper left with a marginal zone of macrophages, including a giant cell in the lower right (H&E stain, ×500). **B,** Necrotizing arteritis in the lung of a patient with EGPA showing intense eosinophil-rich inflammation (H&E stain, ×400).

Acute pulmonary alveolar capillaritis is characterized by accumulation of neutrophils in alveolar capillary lumens, destruction of capillary basement membranes (seen with silver stains), and hemorrhage into alveolar air spaces (Fig. 53-6, *B*).

The necrotizing glomerulonephritis that often is a component of ANCA vasculitis and that may occur as renal limited vasculitis is characterized by segmental fibrinoid necrosis with adjacent cellular crescent formation in the acute phase (Fig. 53-6, *C*) and segmental sclerosis with adjacent fibrous crescents in the chronic phase. The pathology of ANCA glomerulonephritis is the same in MPA, GPA, EGPA, and renal limited disease. In addition to necrotizing and crescentic glomerulonephritis, kidney lesions in ANCA disease also include necrotizing arteritis (most often affecting interlobular and arcuate arteries) (Fig. 53-6, *D*) and leukocytoclastic medullary angiitis affecting the vasa rectae.

Immunohistology demonstrates an absence or paucity of immunoglobulin deposition, which distinguishes ANCA vasculitis from immune complex vasculitis. However, most specimens, including glomeruli affected by ANCA disease, have at least a small amount of immune complex–type staining for immunoglobulins and complement, and a small amount of immune complex–type electron-dense deposits by electron microscopy. ANCA disease also can occur concurrently with anti-GBM disease or immune complex disease, and in this context, there is substantial immunostaining for immunoglobulins and complement.

The necrotizing granulomatous inflammation of GPA and EGPA begins as a focus of neutrophil-rich inflammation that may resemble a microabscess. EGPA lesions also contain numerous eosinophils (Jennette, 2011). These lesions may be small and spherical, or they may be large and irregular, creating so-called geographic necrosis. Within days, the focus of acute inflammation is surrounded by a rim of monocytes and macrophages, including multinucleated giant cells (Fig. 53-7, *A*). The central zone of inflammation becomes completely necrotic and evolves from basophilic or eosinophilic cellular fragments (derived primarily from degenerated neutrophils and eosinophils) to amorphous necrotic debris. The adjacent granulomatous inflammation becomes more organized with palisades of elongated macrophages adjacent to the necrosis. Eventually, the central zone forms a cavity or becomes fibrotic. Necrotizing granulomatous inflammation occurs most often in the upper and lower respiratory tract, but occasionally in other tissues, such as the nasal tissues, orbit, skin, and kidneys. The differential diagnosis for pulmonary granulomatous inflammation includes mycobacterial and fungal infectious disease. The presence of pulmonary vasculitis along with the granulomatous inflammation is more specific evidence for GPA or EPGA. Numerous eosinophils in the granulomatous inflammation and the vasculitis favor EGPA (Fig. 53-7, *B*).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Clinical and experimental observations support a direct role of ANCA in the pathogenesis of vasculitis (Jennette & Falk, 2014; Kallenberg, 2014). Clinical observations that support a pathogenic role include the high frequency of ANCA in the blood, the general correlation of ANCA titers with disease activity (especially if capture assays are used), increased risk for disease when there are higher levels of ANCA antigens on the surface of circulating neutrophils, induction of ANCA as well as vasculitis by certain drugs (e.g., hydralazine, propylthiouracil, penicillamine, minocycline), and the therapeutic efficacy of apheresis and targeted B cell therapy (e.g., rituximab).

The best experimental evidence is induction of ANCA-mediated pauci-immune crescentic glomerulonephritis and small-vessel vasculitis in experimental animals. The first animal model that was described used intravenous injection of mouse anti-MPO IgG (derived from immunizing MPO knockout mice with purified mouse MPO) into wild-type mice, resulting in the induction of a pauci-immune glomerulonephritis with segmental fibrinoid necrosis and crescent formation that closely resembled human ANCA glomerulonephritis (Xiao et al, 2002). Some of the mice that received anti-MPO IgG also developed systemic small-vessel vasculitis, including alveolar capillaritis and necrotizing arteritis that was histologically indistinguishable from human ANCA disease.

Numerous in vitro and in vivo experiments support the hypothesis that ANCA in the circulation can interact with ANCA antigens (MPO, PR3) on the surface of neutrophils that have been primed by cytokines or complement fragments (e.g., C5a) (Jennette & Falk, 2014). ANCA-activated neutrophils release factors that activate the alternative complement pathway, which in turn recruits more neutrophils and primes and activates neutrophils by engaging the C5a receptors (Xiao et al, 2014). Neutrophils that are activated in the circulation adhere to and penetrate vessel walls and release destructive enzymes and oxygen radicals that cause vascular injury. Hypothetically, primed neutrophils in the extravascular tissues that are activated by ANCA are the cause for the granulomatous inflammation of GPA and EGPA (Jennette & Falk, 2014).

Drugs can induce the development of ANCA, especially MPO-ANCA (Pendergraft & Niles, 2014). Hydralazine, minocycline, propylthiouracil, and levamisole-adulterated cocaine are major causes. A hypothesis has been proposed to explain the induction of ANCA by hydralazine. Patients with ANCA vasculitis have circulating neutrophils that aberrantly transcribe and express neutrophil granule proteins, including the MPO and PR3, because of altered epigenetic regulation of gene expression (McInnis et al, 2015). Hydralazine can function as a nonnucleoside DNA methylation inhibitor, so it can reverse epigenetic silencing of PR3 and MPO, which could result in increased expression of both autoantigens and loss of tolerance (Pendergraft & Niles, 2014).

Except for the small minority of cases caused by drugs, the etiology of ANCA disease is not known. Various theories postulate the result of infections (e.g., *Staphylococcus aureus*), environmental exposures (e.g., silica), or dysregulated gene expression (e.g., of PR3 antisense peptides) (Jennette & Falk, 2014; Kallenberg, 2014). One novel theory posits that a protein that is complementary to the autoantigen PR3 triggers the PR3-ANCA

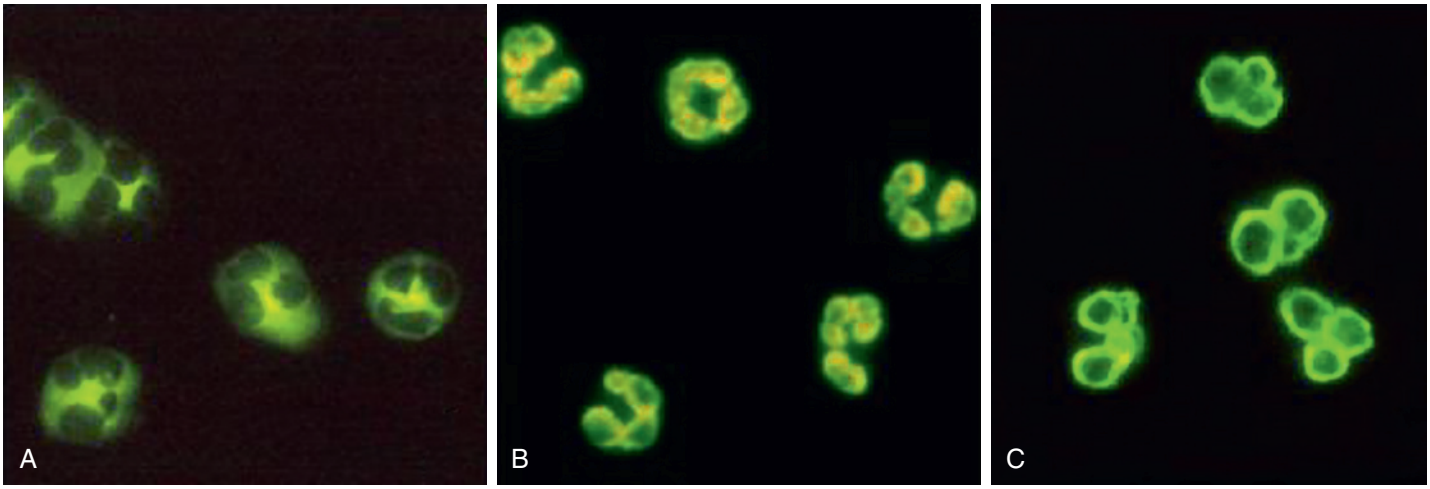


Figure 53-8 IIF assay using ethanol-fixed, normal human neutrophils as substrate showing: **A,** C-ANCA cytoplasmic staining; **B,** P-ANCA perinuclear staining; and **C,** atypical-ANCA showing heaped-up, very perinuclear staining (×1000).

autoimmune response through an anti-idiotypic network (Pendergraft et al, 2004). This complementary protein could be an endogenous protein resulting from age-related dysregulation of antisense gene expression or an exogenous protein derived from a pathogen that makes an antisense peptide mimic that is an inhibitor of the antimicrobial function of complementary PR3.

Clinical Laboratory Testing

In 1999, an International Consensus Statement on Testing and Reporting of Antineutrophil Cytoplasmic Antibodies recommended that testing in new patients should be by indirect immunofluorescence (IIF) assay and that samples that are positive by IIF should be tested by ELISAs for PR3-ANCA and MPO-ANCA (Savige et al, 1999). The recommendation for optimum testing of patients suspected of having ANCA disease was to test by ELISA for PR3-ANCA and MPO-ANCA on all serum samples irrespective of IIF results. Although immunoassays have become more effective since this recommendation was made, most laboratories continue to employ both IIF and antigen-specific immunoassays for MPO and PR3 for ANCA testing. An automated ANCA-pattern recognition system (Damoiseaux et al, 2012) and a digital indirect immunofluorescence assay (Sowa et al, 2014) have been evaluated as alternatives to IIF, but they are unlikely to replace conventional IIF microscopy assays anytime soon.

IIF assay using ethanol-fixed, normal human neutrophils as substrate produces two different staining patterns: cytoplasmic (C-ANCA) (Fig. 53-8, *A*) and perinuclear (P-ANCA) (Fig. 53-8, *B*) (Savige et al, 2000). The perinuclear staining is an artifact of substrate preparation that results from diffusion of the cationic MPO antigen from the cytoplasm to the nucleus during substrate preparation. This perinuclear relocation does not occur when formalin is used to fix plasma protein in place before preparing neutrophils for IIF. Thus a true P-ANCA will produce cytoplasmic staining on formalin-fixed neutrophils, whereas an antinuclear antibody will stain the nucleus in both ethanol- and formalin-fixed preparations (Falk & Jennette, 1988).

When the antigen specificity is determined by immunoassays, PR3-ANCA typically produces the C-ANCA staining pattern by IIF, and MPO-ANCA typically produces a P-ANCA staining pattern. ANCAs that cause a P-ANCA pattern in IIF assays are not restricted to MPO and include a variety of autoantibodies that occur in inflammatory diseases, including ulcerative colitis, sclerosing cholangitis, autoimmune hepatitis, rheumatoid arthritis, and Felty's syndrome (Savige et al, 2000). Positive ANCA IIF results in serum from patients with inflammatory bowel disease and other nonvasculitic inflammatory diseases may have an atypical pattern that shows more intense and heaped-up perinuclear staining (very perinuclear staining) (Fig. 53-8, *C*). Antibodies that produce an atypical ANCA IIF pattern usually are not specific for MPO or PR3 (Savige et al, 2000).

Antigen-specific, quantitative immunoassays are the standard of care for diagnosis and some management decisions in patients with ANCA disease. ANCA serotype may be more important than clinicopathologic classification for predicting outcome, including the likelihood of recurrence after induction of remission (Kallenberg, 2014). Detection of ANCA to monitor disease activity and adjust treatment remains controversial; however, epitope-specific assays that can distinguish between pathogenic and nonpathogenic ANCA may change this in the future (Roth et al, 2013).

First-generation ANCA assays were direct noncompetitive enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). The second-generation tests (capture ELISA) or third-generation tests (anchor ELISA) are more sensitive and specific for ANCA testing (Cohen Tervaert & Damoiseaux, 2012). Fourth-generation assays may be epitope specific and more effective in guiding therapy (Roth et al, 2013).

Chemiluminescence assays (CIAs) have been used to detect PR3-ANCA and MPO-ANCA with comparable results to ELISAs (Mahler et al, 2012). A combination of cell- and microbead-based digital indirect immunofluorescence analysis of ANCA in one reaction environment by the novel multiplexing bead technology for simultaneous screening and confirmatory ANCA testing has been developed (Sowa et al, 2014). ANCA results by classical testing (IIF and ELISA) compared with multiplex bead analysis were very good ($\kappa = 0.831$) with no significant difference ($p = 0.735$). Automated ANCA titer detection in one dilution demonstrated very good agreement with classical analysis requiring dilution of samples ($\kappa = 0.985$).

Even using current ANCA testing capabilities, patients with clinical features and pathologic findings consistent with ANCA vasculitis can test negative for ANCA. In a study of 539 patients with a clinical diagnosis of ANCA vasculitis, positive ANCA serology was demonstrated in 98% of MPA patients, 96% of GPA patients, 94% of renal-limited pauci-immune crescentic glomerulonephritis patients, and 64% of EGPA patients (Kallenberg, 2014). Of the 364 patients with GPA in this analysis, 12 tested negative for ANCA, but 10 had GPA limited to the ear, nose, and throat.

EGPA patients usually have P-ANCA with MPO-ANCA specificity (Sinico et al, 2005). EGPA patients with a positive ANCA have more glomerulonephritis, pulmonary capillaritis, peripheral neuropathy, and biopsy-proven vasculitis, whereas patients with a negative ANCA have more myocarditis (Sablé-Fourtassou et al, 2005; Sinico et al, 2005). All EGPA patients who have biopsy-proven pauci-immune necrotizing and crescentic glomerulonephritis are ANCA positive (Sinico et al, 2006). It appears that EGPA may have two serologically defined phenotypes: ANCA-positive EGPA with vasculitis and ANCA-negative EGPA without vasculitis.

ANCA specificity correlates with clinical symptoms. Ninety percent of patients with ANCA who have destructive upper respiratory tract disease (e.g., saddle-nose deformity) have PR3-ANCA, whereas most patients with exclusively or predominantly renal involvement have MPO-ANCA (Lionaki et al, 2012). Dual positivity for both MPO-ANCA and PR3-ANCA is rare except in the setting of drug-induced ANCA (Pendergraft & Niles, 2014).

ANCAs are in approximately one third of patients with anti-GBM disease (Jennette, 2003; Rutgers et al, 2005). The dual anti-GBM and ANCA specificity is the result of two different antibody populations rather than one cross-reacting population (Rutgers et al, 2005), and the antigen specificities of anti-GBM antibodies are the same in patients with anti-GBM antibodies only or combined ANCA and anti-GBM antibodies (Hellmark et al, 1997). Compared with patients with anti-GBM alone, patients with both autoantibodies are older, often have features of systemic

small-vessel vasculitis, and have a better prognosis for renal survival with treatment.

The possibility of drug-induced disease should be considered in patients with ANCA vasculitis. The most common are hydralazine, minocycline, propylthiouracil, and levamisole-adulterated cocaine. If cocaine abuse is a possibility, the urine should be tested for cocaine, and if positive, should be tested for levamisole (Pendergraft & Niles, 2014). Most drug-induced vasculitis is not caused by ANCA. A recent study of 239 patients with all forms of drug-associated cutaneous vasculitis demonstrated that the most common laboratory abnormalities were increased ESR (40%) and cryoglobulins (26%), while leukocytosis and positive ANA were found in less than 25% (Ortiz-Sanjuán et al, 2014). Only rare examples of drug-induced immune complex vasculitis have been described, and most of these have been caused by therapeutic agents that are proteins, such as monoclonal antibodies (Baldo, 2013).

The diagnostic value in patients with vasculitis of ANCA with other specificities has been investigated; however, to date, the only routine testing that has been adopted is for MPO-ANCA and PR3-ANCA. ANCA with specificity for lysosomal membrane protein 2 (LAMP2) has been reported to have high sensitivity and specificity for pauci-immune SVV (Kain et al, 2008); however, not all investigators have confirmed this finding (Roth et al, 2012).

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

The diagnosis of ANCA-associated vasculitides as MPA, GPA, or EGPA is based on algorithms that have been derived from the Chapel Hill Consensus Conference definitions (Watts et al, 2007; Abdulkader et al, 2013). The diagnostic evaluation of patients with ANCA disease should include both testing for ANCA specificity—that is, for proteinase 3 (PR3-ANCA) or myeloperoxidase (MPO-ANCA)—as well as classification as MPA, GPA, EGPA, or renal-limited vasculitis (RLV). Assessment of the disease stage and severity also is important for tailoring treatment.

Treatment of ANCA disease begins with induction of remission, followed by maintenance of remission (Kallenberg, 2014). In patients with active generalized disease, remission is most often induced with an immunosuppressive agent (e.g., cyclophosphamide or rituximabrituximab) and high-dose glucocorticoids. Rituximab has been shown to be noninferior to cyclophosphamide for induction of remission. Patients presenting with severe kidney failure (i.e., requiring dialysis or an estimated GFR less than 15) or diffuse alveolar hemorrhage should receive plasma exchange as well as the usual induction therapy. Mild localized disease, especially with no renal or pulmonary disease, may be controlled with methotrexate and glucocorticoids. When disease is in remission, patients should be transitioned to oral azathioprine, although the use of rituximab as remission maintenance therapy is increasing (Kallenberg, 2014). Once a patient is in remission, glucocorticoids should be tapered within 6 months to reduce the likelihood of infectious complications (McGregor et al, 2012). Other treatment options for refractory disease are IVIg, infliximab, alemtuzumab, and deoxyspergualin (Kallenberg, 2014).

Drug-induced ANCA vasculitis may require not only cessation of the drug and supportive care but also immunosuppression, plasma exchange in severe cases, and dialysis as needed (Pendergraft & Niles, 2014).

ANTI-GLOMERULAR BASEMENT MEMBRANE DISEASE

Definition and Epidemiology

Anti-glomerular basement membrane (anti-GBM) disease is an autoimmune disease caused by autoantibodies that target the noncollagen domain of the α3 chain of type IV collagen (Cui & Zhao, 2011; Greco et al, 2015). This form of vasculitis can be grouped with immune complex vasculitis because it results from immune complexes forming in situ along capillary basement membranes (Table 53-4). The glomerular capillaries of the kidneys and alveolar capillaries of the lungs contain this autoantigen, and either or both can be injured in anti-GBM disease. When both are involved, the resultant pulmonary-renal syndrome is called Goodpasture syndrome. Most patients with anti-GBM disease have rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis, approximately half have pulmonary disease, and only a few have lung disease.

The incidence of anti-GBM disease is estimated to be 1 per million per year (Cui & Zhao, 2011; Greco et al, 2015). It occurs more commonly in Caucasians than African Americans. Age distribution is bimodal, with the most common ages being between 20 and 30 and between 60 and 70. The younger patients are predominantly men, and there is a higher frequency of pulmonary disease. The older patients are predominantly women, and there is a lower frequency of pulmonary disease.

TABLE 53-4

Names and Definitions for Immune Complex Small Vessel Vasculitis Adopted by the 2011-2012 International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of the Vasculitides

Immune complex vasculitis	Vasculitis with moderate to marked vessel wall deposits of immunoglobulin and/or complement components predominantly affecting small vessels (i.e., capillaries, venules, arterioles, and small arteries). Glomerulonephritis is frequent.
Anti-GBM disease	Vasculitis affecting glomerular capillaries, pulmonary capillaries, or both, with basement membrane deposition of antibasement membrane autoantibodies. Lung involvement causes pulmonary hemorrhage, and renal involvement causes glomerulonephritis with necrosis and crescents.
Cryoglobulinemic vasculitis	Vasculitis with cryoglobulin immune deposits affecting small vessels (predominantly capillaries, venules, or arterioles) and associated with cryoglobulins in serum. Skin, glomeruli, and peripheral nerves are often involved.
IgA vasculitis (Henoch-Schönlein)	Vasculitis, with IgA1-dominant immune deposits affecting small vessels (predominantly capillaries, venules, or arterioles). Often involves skin and gut, and frequently causes arthritis. Glomerulonephritis indistinguishable from IgA nephropathy may occur.
Hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis (anti-C1q vasculitis)	Vasculitis accompanied by urticaria and hypocomplementemia affecting small vessels (i.e., capillaries, venules, or arterioles), and associated with anti-C1q antibodies. Glomerulonephritis, arthritis, obstructive pulmonary disease, and ocular inflammation are common.

From Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013.

Pathology

The light microscopic features of anti-GBM glomerulonephritis (GN) are indistinguishable from ANCA glomerulonephritis, although on average the extent of injury is more severe in anti-GBM GN compared to ANCA GN. For example, at the time of biopsy, anti-GBM GN has an average of 77% crescents compared to 49% for ANCA GN (Jennette, 2003). Concurrent anti-GBM plus ANCA GN has an average of 62% crescents. The activity and chronicity of anti-GBM GN lesions tend to be more synchronous than the lesions of ANCA GN. That is, anti-GBM lesions are either mostly acute or mostly chronic, whereas ANCA GN lesions more often have a mixture of acute and chronic lesions. This is in accord with the clinical and serologic observations that anti-GBM disease and anti-GBM seropositivity typically occur as one episode with uncommon relapses, whereas ANCA disease and ANCA seropositivity often are persistent with multiple recurrences even after initial induction of remission.

Anti-GBM pulmonary disease is characterized by extensive hemorrhage into the alveolar air spaces but with less overt influx of neutrophils into alveolar capillaries than is observed with ANCA pulmonary capillaritis. Identification of arteritis in the kidney or lung of a patient with anti-GBM disease is strong evidence for concurrent anti-GBM plus ANCA disease.

The most definitive pathology finding is demonstration by direct immunofluorescence microscopy of linear staining for IgG along glomerular capillary basement membranes or pulmonary alveolar capillary basement membranes (Fig. 53-9). This usually is accompanied by staining for C3 and other complement components and variable staining for IgM and IgA. This is distinct from the granular staining for immunoglobulin in vessel walls with immune complex vasculitis or the paucity of immunoglobulin staining in vessel walls in ANCA vasculitis (Jennette et al, 2013).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Both humoral and cellular autoimmune responses have been incriminated in the pathogenesis of anti-GBM disease (Pusey, 2003; Cui & Zhao, 2011). There is compelling evidence that anti-GBM antibodies are pathogenic,

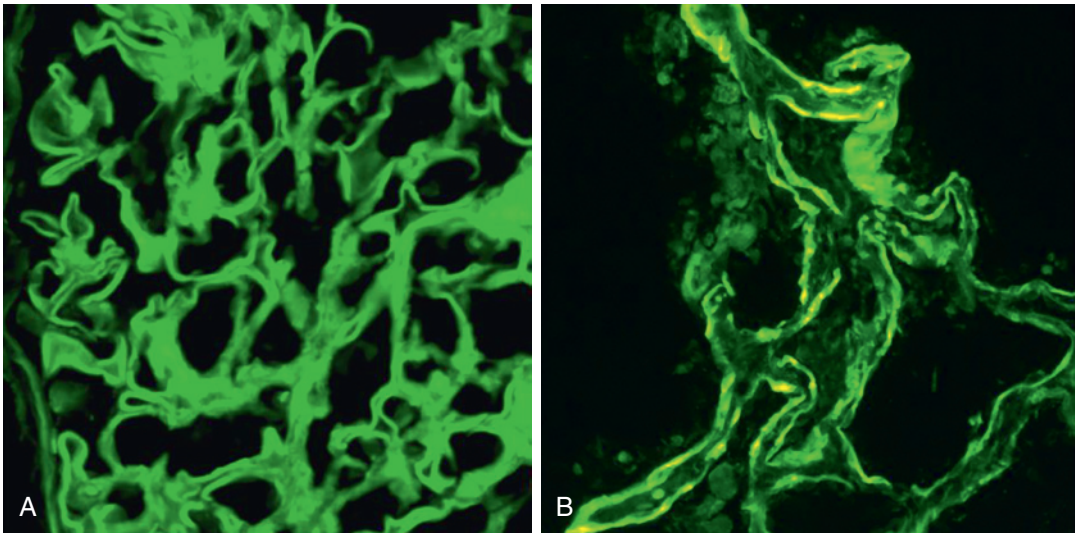


Figure 53-9 Linear immunofluorescence staining for IgG along glomerular basement membranes (**A**) and pulmonary alveolar capillary basement membranes (**B**); demonstration by direct immunofluorescence microscopy (FITC rabbit antihuman IgG, ×400).

which includes (1) the close association of circulating and basement membrane–bound anti-GBM antibodies with disease; (2) relatively good correlation of autoantibody levels with activity of disease; (3) clinical response to therapy that reduces circulating anti-GBM levels, such as apheresis and immunosuppressive therapy; (4) recurrence of disease in kidney transplants in the presence of residual circulating anti-GBM antibodies in the recipient; (5) development of anti-GBM glomerulonephritis in patients with hereditary type IV collagen abnormalities who make nephritogenic autoantibodies directed against donor GBM; and (6) experimental animal studies, including direct transfer of glomerulonephritis to primates by intravenous injection of human anti-GBM antibodies.

Although anti-GBM antibodies appear to be major pathogenic factors, T cells also play an important role. T cell help is required for class-switching to produce high-affinity IgG antibodies, and T cell involvement is indicated by MHC associations.

The etiology of anti-GBM disease is not known. One hypothesis proposes that anti-GBM disease is an autoimmune "conformeropathy" that involves pathogenic conformational changes in the alpha 3 and alpha 5 noncollagen domains of type IV collagen, revealing cryptic epitopes that in turn elicit an autoimmune response (Pedchenko et al, 2010).

Another hypothesis is that autoimmunity to the alpha 3 chain of type IV collagen is triggered by "autoantigen complementarity" that begins with an immune response against a peptide that is antisense or complementary to the autoantigen (Reynolds et al, 2015). Autoantigen complementarity also is incriminated as a cause for ANCA disease (Pendergraft et al, 2004).

Clinical Laboratory Testing

Anti-GBM assays using ELISAs, chemiluminescence assays, dot blots, and Western blots are highly specific (>90%) and sensitive (>95%) for anti-GBM disease (Pusey, 2003). Most commercial assays use bovine or sheep GBM enriched for the noncollagen domain of the α3 chain of type IV collagen (Pusey, 2003). Positive results can be confirmed by Western blotting using collagenase-solubilized human GBM. Indirect immunofluorescence microscopy assays using normal human or primate kidney as substrate were used historically, but they are not sensitive enough for current clinical use.

Rapid screening assays are available for concurrently detecting PR3-ANCA, MPO-ANCA, and anti-GBM antibodies in the same assay for rapid diagnosis of patients with clinical evidence for rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis, hemorrhagic pulmonary capillaritis, or both, using either ELISA (Westman et al, 1997) or dot-blot technology (Rutgers et al, 2005). A rapid, random access chemiluminescence assay (CIA) also has been developed to detect anti-GBM antibodies with 95.6% sensitivity and 99.6% specificity (Mahler et al, 2012).

All patients with anti-GBM disease should be tested for ANCA to rule out concurrent anti-GBM plus ANCA disease, which occurs in approximately one third of patients with anti-GBM disease (Jennette, 2003; Rutgers et al, 2005). The double anti-GBM and ANCA reactivity in assays is the result of two different antibody populations rather than one cross-reacting population (Rutgers et al, 2005).

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

Standard treatment is a combined therapy of plasmapheresis, prednisolone, and cyclophosphamide (Pusey, 2003; Cui & Zhao, 2011). Anecdotal reports of success with anti-CD20 targeted B cell therapy have emerged but are not conclusive. The important determinant for the response to therapy and long-term prognosis for anti-GBM disease is early diagnosis to prevent end-stage kidney disease and life-threatening pulmonary hemorrhage. If treatment is started before the serum creatinine is above 5 mg/dL, there is a good chance of renal survival. Even in patients with advanced renal disease, treatment may result in improvement and may also be beneficial in preventing or ameliorating concurrent pulmonary disease. Patients should not be transplanted until circulating anti-GBM autoantibodies can no longer be detected by standard assays.

CRYOGLOBULINEMIC VASCULITIS

Definition and Epidemiology

Cryoglobulinemic vasculitis (CV) is vasculitis with cryoglobulin-immune deposits affecting small vessels (predominantly capillaries, venules, or arterioles) and is associated with serum cryoglobulins (Tedeschi et al, 2007; Jennette et al, 2013). Skin, glomeruli, and peripheral nerves are often involved.

Cryoglobulins are immunoglobulins that reversibly precipitate in the cold (Damoiseaux, 2014). Type I cryoglobulins consist of a monoclonal immunoglobulin, generally either IgM or IgG. Type II cryoglobulins contain a monoclonal immunoglobulin with rheumatoid factor (RF) activity and polyclonal immunoglobulins. Most often this is a combination of a monoclonal IgM with polyclonal IgG. Type III cryoglobulins contain polyclonal immunoglobulins, typically IgM and IgG, with RF activity in the IgM fraction. Types II and III are called mixed cryoglobulins.

Type I cryoglobulins often are associated with B cell lymphoproliferative diseases, such as Waldenström's macroglobulinemia or multiple myeloma. Type II cryoglobulins are often associated with HCV infection, as well as other chronic viral infections and systemic autoimmune diseases. Type III cryoglobulins often are associated with chronic viral infections and systemic autoimmune diseases and may be a transient state between polyclonal hypergammaglobulinemia and type II cryoglobulinemia (Damoiseaux, 2014).

Pathology

CV usually is confined to capillaries (e.g., glomerular capillaries), venules (e.g., dermal venules), and arterioles or very small arteries (e.g., epineural arteries in peripheral nerves). Involvement of medium arteries is extremely rare. The acute inflammation is neutrophil-rich with leukocytoclasia. The inflammation may be accompanied by luminal or vessel wall deposits of PAS-positive hyaline material that is a coagulum of cryoglobulins.

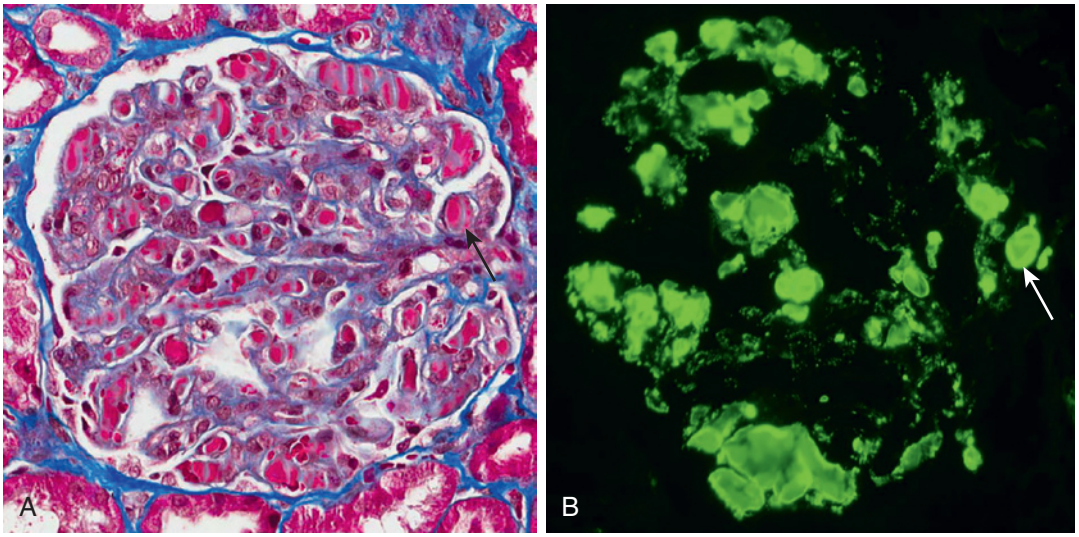


Figure 53-10 Cryoglobulinemic glomerulonephritis with "hyaline thrombi" seen by light microscopy (**A,** Masson trichrome stain, ×500) and by direct immunofluorescence microscopy using FITC-labeled rabbit antihuman C3 (**B,** ×500).

Cryoglobulinemic glomerulonephritis occurs as a renal-limited process or as a component of systemic CV. Cryoglobulinemic glomerulonephritis usually has a membranoproliferative pattern but may have other patterns of proliferative glomerulonephritis. A useful diagnostic finding is hyaline material in glomerular capillary lumens ("hyaline thrombi") that are composed of cryoglobulins (Fig. 53-10). By immunofluorescence microscopy, these deposits contain the immunoglobulins of the cryoglobulins as well as complement components that have been activated by the cryoglobulin immune complexes (see Fig. 53-10).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is the main etiologic agent of mixed cryoglobulinemic vasculitis (Cacoub et al, 2014). In some European settings, mixed cryoglobulinemia has been associated with HCV infection in more than 80% of the patients, although only a minority develop signs and symptoms of vasculitis (Pagnoux et al, 2006). Although the association of CV with HCV is approximately 85% in the Mediterranean region, it varies from 30% to 100% in other geographic locations (Damoiseaux, 2014).

Deposition of cryoglobulins in vessel walls incites vasculitis by complement activation. Monoclonal cryoglobulins (type I) are not as effective at activating inflammatory mediator systems as are mixed cryoglobulins (types II and III), which are immune complexes composed of antiantibodies (rheumatoid factors) bound to target antibodies. An important cause for cryoglobulinemia is hepatitis C infection. In HCV-CV, immune complex deposits contain viral proteins (Damoiseaux, 2014).

Clinical Laboratory Testing

Clinical laboratory testing for cryoglobulins is divided into three phases: the preanalytic phase, the analytic phase, and the typing phase (Damoiseaux, 2014). The preanalytic phase entails collecting the sample in prewarmed (37°C) tubes, transporting at 37°C, allowing coagulation of the blood sample at 37°C for at least 1 hour, and centrifugation at 37°C to separate the serum. The analytic phase entails incubating two fractions of the sample at 4°C for 3 to 7 days, visual assessment of precipitation, incubating one fraction at 37°C to assess resolution, and isolating the cryoglobulin from the other fraction for typing. The typing phase includes determining the immunoglobulin composition (e.g., by immunofixation or immunoelectrophoresis) and quantifying the cryoglobulin by assessing cryocrit, total protein content, and/or content of immunoglobulin isotypes (Damoiseaux, 2014).

In addition to a positive cryoglobulin assay, in a patient with clinical evidence for SVV, laboratory detection of low C4, rheumatoid factor, and evidence for HCV infection add additional support for a diagnosis of CV (Lamprecht et al, 2001).

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

Detection of mixed cryoglobulins, especially accompanied by low C4, along with purpura, peripheral neuropathy, and/or glomerulonephritis, is strong evidence for CV.

One set of classification criteria for CV requires the detection of cryoglobulins in at least two determinations more than 12 weeks apart (DeVita et al, 2011). In addition to the detection of cryoglobulins, at least two additional patient-reported symptoms, clinical observations, or laboratory findings must be documented to make a diagnosis of CV.

Antiviral therapy with pegylated interferon-α and ribavirin is recommended for induction therapy for HCV-CV with mild to moderate disease severity and activity (Cacoub et al, 2014). In patients with more severe disease, an immunosuppressive treatment regimen is required for the induction phase while awaiting the response to antiviral treatments—for example, pegylated interferon-α and ribavirin plus steroids and cyclophosphamide or rituximab. If there is life-threatening disease or rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis, apheresis may be beneficial.

The 1-year, 3-year, 5-year, and 10-year survival rates for HCV-CV are 95%, 85%, 75%, and 65%, respectively. Mortality is mainly related to infections and end-stage liver disease. Factors associated with a poor prognosis are severe liver fibrosis (HR 5.31), central nervous system involvement (HR 2.74), kidney involvement (HR 1.91), and heart involvement (HR 4.2) (Terrier et al, 2011).

IgA VASCULITIS (HENOCH-SCHÖNLEIN PURPURA)

Definition and Epidemiology

IgA vasculitis (IgAV) (formerly called Henoch-Schönlein purpura) is vasculitis with IgA1-dominant immune deposits affecting small vessels (predominantly capillaries, venules, or arterioles) (Jennette et al, 2013). IgAV often involves the skin and gastrointestinal tract, and it frequently causes arthritis. Glomerulonephritis indistinguishable from IgA nephropathy may occur.

IgA vasculitis is most common in children, especially children under 10 years old, which differs from ANCA vasculitis and CV, which are more common in older patients. In fact, IgAV is the most common systemic small-vessel vasculitis in children (Chen & Mao, 2015). Depending on ethnic background, 6 to 24 per 100,000 children younger than 17 years of age will develop IgAV. In Asia, the incidence is as high as approximately 70 cases per 100,000 children every year. IgAV is rare in adults, with an annual incidence of 0.1 to 1.8 per 100,000 individuals (Audemard-Verger et al, 2015). Disease is more frequent in males (male : female ratio of 5 : 1).

Pathology

The histopathologic features of inflammation in venules, arterioles, and small arteries, caused by IgAV, are indistinguishable from other forms of SVV. In the dermis, this takes the form of a leukocytoclastic angiitis affecting predominantly venules and arterioles. The presence of hyaline aggregates in areas of inflammation or the lumen increases the likelihood of CV. Arteritis affecting arteries in the deep dermis, and especially arteries in the subcutaneous tissue, increases the likelihood of ANCA vasculitis. Numerous eosinophils increase the likelihood of hypersensitivity drug-induced vasculitis or EGPA. However, it is best to correlate the histopathology with immunostaining for IgA, IgG, IgM, C3, and C1q, and with serologic testing for ANCA, cryoglobulins, HCV antigen and antibody,

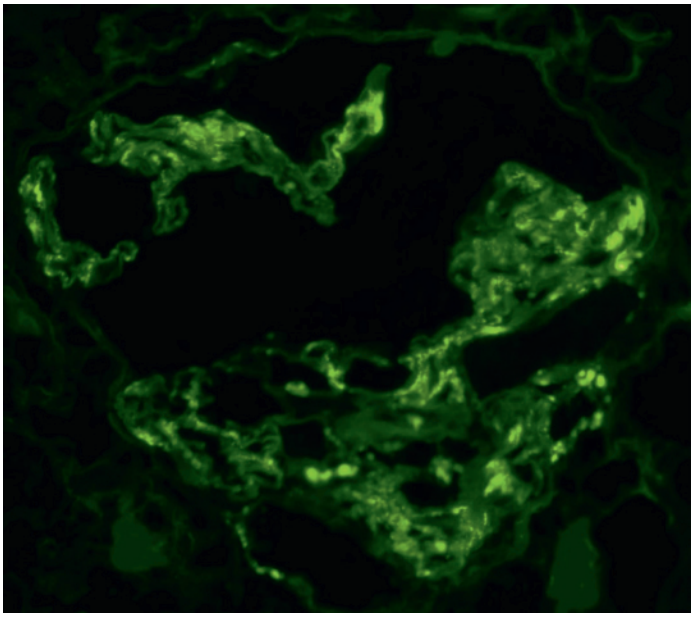


Figure 53-11 Direct immunofluorescence microscopy of small vessels in the upper dermis of a patient with IgA vasculitis demonstrating coarsely granular deposits of IgA in vessel walls (FITC-labeled rabbit antihuman C3, ×600).

anti-C1q, ANA, C3, and C4 before reaching a diagnosis. Patients with IgAV have immune complex deposits in small dermal vessels that stain brightly by direct immunofluorescence microscopy using antibodies specific for IgA (Fig. 53-11).

The glomerulonephritis of IgAV is indistinguishable from IgA nephropathy (IgAN), although glomerular necrosis and crescents are somewhat more frequent in IgA vasculitis. Because glomerulonephritis is a frequent component of many forms of immune complex SVV, immunopathologic features are very helpful in distinguishing among different forms of SVV—for example, IgAV with IgA1-dominant glomerular deposits, CV with membranoproliferative lesions and IgG/IgM deposits, anti-GBM disease with necrosis and linear IgG, and ANCA vasculitis with necrosis and a paucity of immunoglobulin deposits in glomeruli.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Patients with IgAV and IgAN have increased serum levels of IgA1 with abnormal glycosylation of the hinge region (Suzuki et al, 2009, 2011; Mestecky et al, 2013). This abnormality is caused by combined genetic and environmental/infectious influences. There is strong evidence that IgAV and IgAN are caused by vessel wall deposition of aggregates of abnormally glycosylated IgA1 molecules or by deposition of immune complexes composed of IgA1 complexed to anti-IgA1 IgG that recognizes the abnormal hinge region glycosylation (Suzuki et al, 2009, 2011; Mestecky et al, 2013).

Abnormally glycosylated IgA1 molecules also could induce disease through a variety of other mechanisms, such as reduced clearance from the circulation because of lack of Fc receptor engagement by the abnormal IgA, increased self-aggregation of IgA1 in the circulation resulting in deposition in vessel lumens and vessel walls, and increased affinity of the abnormal IgA1 for perivascular and glomerular mesangial matrix.

Vascular deposits containing IgA1 appear to mediate inflammation by activating complement via the lectin pathway and the alternative pathway.

Clinical Laboratory Testing

Abnormally glycosylated IgA1 has been detected in serum using lectin-binding assays and proteomic mass spectroscopy analysis. For example, a lectin that recognizes *N*-acetylgalactosamine was used in an ELISA to measure serum galactose-deficient IgA1 (Moldoveanu et al, 2007). This study concluded that the assay for abnormal IgA1 had diagnostic sensitivity of 76.5%, specificity of 94%, positive predictive value of 88.6%, and negative predictive value of 78.9% for IgAN.

Anti-IgA antibodies with specificity for the IgA1 hinge region have been detected in serum using monoclonal human IgA1 as substrate and by identifying IgA1 in circulating immune complexes. One study concluded that IgA1 glycan-specific IgG antibodies have 88% specificity and 95% sensitivity for IgA nephropathy (Suzuki, 2009). In addition to diagnosis, serologic tests for abnormally glycosylated IgA1 and IgA1 immune complexes may be of value in monitoring disease activity. Serum levels of galactose-deficient IgA1 and IgA1-IgG immune complexes are associated with disease activity of IgA nephropathy (Suzuki et al, 2014).

To date, these research observations on abnormal IgA1 glycosylation and anti-IgA1 antibodies in IgAV and IgAN have not been translated into analytically and clinically validated diagnostic tests, although multiple research laboratories are working on this.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

Until alternative clinical tests are validated, pathologic identification of IgA-dominant immune deposits in vessel walls or glomeruli by direct immunofluorescence microscopy is the gold standard method for confirming a diagnosis of IgAV or IgAN. Immunostaining is required in biopsy specimens because the light microscopic patterns of injury are not as conclusive for distinguishing among the many forms of SVV. For example, a skin biopsy that has leukocytoclastic angiitis by light microscopy could be found by immunofluorescence microscopy to be IgAV with IgA-dominant deposits, CV with IgM and C3 deposits, or ANCA vasculitis with a paucity of immunoglobulin and complement deposits.

The classic triad of symptoms and signs for IgAV are purpura, arthralgia, and abdominal pain. The frequency of renal disease varies from 45% to 85% in different cohorts (Audemard-Verger et al, 2015). The European League Against Rheumatism (EULAR), the Paediatric Rheumatology International Trials Organization, and the Paediatric Rheumatology European Society have proposed classification criteria for pediatric patients (Audemard-Verger et al, 2015). Based on these criteria, a patient is classified as IgAV if there are purpura with lower-extremity predominance plus one of the following four criteria: abdominal pain, histopathology demonstrating IgA-dominant deposits in vessels or glomeruli, arthritis or arthralgia, or renal involvement. These criteria have not been adopted for adults and would be problematic in adults because the prevalence of IgAV is much lower than the prevalence of other forms of SVV that cause similar signs and symptoms, especially ANCA disease. For example, a patient who has purpura, arthralgias, and nephritis fulfills the EULAR criteria for IgAV. Such a patient could also have ANCA vasculitis, cryoglobulinemic vasculitis, or other forms of SVV. Especially if applied to adults, the pediatric EULAR criteria should be combined with testing for ANCA, cryoglobulins, HCV infection, and hypocomplementemia.

Because the clinical course of IgAV is relatively benign in most patients, treatment is usually conservative and directed at symptom relief. Patients who develop severe gastrointestinal complications may require steroids or/and immunosuppressive drugs. When kidney disease develops with IgAV, the following Kidney Disease Improving Global Outcome (KDIGO) guidelines can be used (Chen & Mao, 2015). Persistent proteinuria should be treated with angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin receptor blockers. If the proteinuria persists and the glomerular filtration rate is greater than 50 mL/min per 1.73 m^2, a 6-month course of corticosteroid therapy should be given. If severe renal failure and crescentic glomerulonephritis are documented, immunosuppressive therapy similar to that used for other forms of crescentic glomerulonephritis should be provided.

HYPOCOMPLEMENTEMIC URTICARIAL VASCULITIS

Definition and Epidemiology

Hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis (HUV) (anti-C1q vasculitis) is vasculitis accompanied by urticaria and hypocomplementemia affecting small vessels (i.e., capillaries, venules, or arterioles), and it is often associated with anti-C1q antibodies (Jennette et al, 2013). Glomerulonephritis, arthritis, obstructive pulmonary disease, and ocular inflammation are commonly present in HUV, and HUV has overlapping clinical and laboratory features with SLE, though it also occurs independently of SLE (Venzor et al, 2002; Kallenberg, 2008; Grotz et al, 2009).

HUV is a rare disease. The incidence of all forms of leukocytoclastic vasculitis affecting the skin in a population-based study in Minnesota from 1996 to 2010 identified an incidence rate of 4.5 per 100,000 person-years (Arora et al, 2014). The cohort included 38 patients with leukocytoclastic vasculitis not otherwise specified (45%), 25 with IgA vasculitis (30%), 10 with urticarial vasculitis (12%), 8 with ANCA vasculitis (10%), and 3 with cryoglobulinemic vasculitis (4%) (Arora et al, 2014). Thus HUV has an incidence of less than 0.5 per 100,000 person-years in this population.

HUV affects women more frequently than men (ratio 2:1) and has a peak incidence in the fifth decade of life, although HUV has been observed in children (Grotz et al, 2009).

Pathology

The dermal vasculitis in HUV is a leukocytoclastic angiitis that cannot be readily distinguished from other forms of SVV by histology alone. Direct immunofluorescence microscopy demonstrates complement-rich immune complex deposits with prominent C1q in dermal vessels and along the dermal-epidermal junction.

By immunofluorescence microscopy, glomerulonephritis in HUV has extensive capillary wall and mesangial immune complex deposits containing immunoglobulin and complement, including prominent C1q. The most frequent histologic pattern is membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis with thickened capillary walls and endocapillary hypercellularity, although focal or diffuse proliferative glomerulonephritis may also occur. In this respect, HUV glomerulonephritis resembles lupus nephritis, and patients with HUV who also meet clinical criteria for SLE should be considered to have lupus nephritis.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Experimental studies strongly support a pathogenic role for anti-C1q antibodies in forming pathogenic immune complexes in SLE and HUV, and anti-C1q antibodies may interfere with the clearance of apoptotic cells and enhance induction of autoimmunity (Kallenberg, 2008). The hypocomplementemia appears to be secondary to classical complement pathway activation with reduced C1, C2, C4, and C3 (Kallenberg, 2008). The extensive deposition of immune complexes in the walls of inflamed vessels—for example, dermal venules and glomerular capillaries—supports an immune complex pathogenesis for the inflammation.

Clinical Laboratory Testing

The typical laboratory test profile is elevated anti-C1q antibodies (essentially 100% sensitive) and hypocomplementemia with low C1q, C3, and C4. In patients who have HUV without overt SLE, ANA often is present without anti–double-stranded DNA. Positive testing for cryoglobulins supports a diagnosis of CV rather than HUV.

C1q has a collagen-like portion attached to globular heads, resembling a bouquet of tulips (Venzor et al, 2002; Kallenberg, 2008). Immune complex Fc regions bind to these globular portions, whereas anti-C1q autoantibodies instead bind to the collagen-like portion. Anti-C1q usually is detected by ELISA using human C1q as the substrate. High ionic strength conditions (0.5 to 1.0 M NaCl) are used to inhibit binding of immune complexes (Kohro-Kawata et al, 2002). Anti-C1q is detected in a variety of inflammatory diseases, including HUV (100%), rheumatoid vasculitis (77%), Felty syndrome (76%), lupus nephritis (63%), membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis (54%), and SLE without nephritis (33%) (Seelen et al, 2003; Kallenberg, 2008). HUV patients who do not have overt SLE may have low-titer antinuclear antibodies, rheumatoid factor, lupus anticoagulant, and cryoglobulins.

While the presence of anti-C1q antibodies is highly sensitive for HUV (found in 100% of patients), they are neither sensitive nor specific for SLE. Anti-C1q antibodies are more prevalent in SLE patients with lupus nephritis than in patients without nephritis. In a study of 43 patients with SLE, anti-C1q antibodies were identified in 82% of patients with nephritis, compared to only 38% of patients who did not have nephritis (Coremans et al, 1995). In a study of 228 patients with lupus nephritis, the evaluation of anti-C1q, C3, and C4 provided the best prediction of renal flares (Sinico et al, 2009). However, some SLE patients with high titers of anti-C1q antibodies do not develop nephritis.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

HUV is characterized by recurrent episodes of urticaria with underlying leukocytoclastic vasculitis. Skin manifestations include painful, tender, burning, or pruritic urticarial skin lesions that persist for greater than 24 hours, often with central areas of hemorrhage. Once the urticaria resolves, there may be residual purpura. Additional manifestations include angioedema, laryngeal edema, pulmonary involvement, arthritis, arthralgia, glomerulonephritis, and uveitis. Compared to patients with urticaria and vasculitis who do not have hypocomplementemia, HUV patients are more likely to have abdominal pain and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (Mehregan et al, 1992). Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and acute laryngeal edema are important causes for morbidity and mortality. Around 30% of HUV patients suffer gastrointestinal symptoms: pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and sometimes ascites in connection with serositis, hepatomegaly, and splenomegaly (Grotz et al, 2009).

The two major diagnostic criteria are chronic urticaria and hypocomplementemia. Minor criteria include anti-C1q antibodies, leukocytoclastic vasculitis, arthralgia and arthritis, uveitis or episcleritis, glomerulonephritis, and abdominal pain (Grotz et al, 2009).

Glucocorticoids are standard therapy for HUV. Depending on clinical severity, additional immunosuppressive agents such as methotrexate, azathioprine, cyclophosphamide, cyclosporine, and mycophenolate mofetil may be added. Apheresis is reserved for very aggressive disease (Grotz et al, 2009).

RHEUMATOID VASCULITIS

Definition and Epidemiology

Rheumatoid vasculitis is an uncommon extra-articular complication of rheumatoid arthritis (RA) and primarily affects small to medium vessels (Ntatsaki et al, 2014; Makol et al, 2015). There has been a decrease in the incidence of rheumatoid vasculitis in the last decade in both Europe and the United States (Ntatsaki et al, 2014). The average annual incidence of rheumatoid vasculitis in the United Kingdom declined from 9.1 per million between 1988 and 2002 to 3.9 per million between 2001 and 2010 (Ntatsaki et al, 2014). This reduction may be the result of the use of current disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs), including methotrexate.

Pathology

Rheumatoid vasculitis involves small and medium vessels, including medium and small arteries and venules. It is a necrotizing arteritis that is histologically indistinguishable from other forms of necrotizing arteritis, such as PAN and MPA. Its venulitis, especially in the dermis, is histologically indistinguishable from the leukocytoclastic angiitis of ANCA or immune complex disease. In patients with rheumatoid vasculitis, dermal necrotizing venulitis has been identified as the cause of palpable purpura, maculopapular erythema, erythema elevatum diutinum, and hemorrhagic blisters; arteritis has been identified as the cause of subcutaneous nodules, livedo reticularis, and deep ulcers (Chen et al, 2002). Some patients have both patterns of vasculitis.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

There is a strong association between rheumatoid vasculitis and particular HLA genotypes that suggests a role for immune recognition of antigens in its pathogenesis. A role for immune complexes containing autoantibodies has been proposed based on the observed high prevalence and high titer of rheumatoid factor (RF), anticitrullinated peptide antibodies (ACPA), antinuclear antibodies, and circulating or tissue-deposited immune complexes in patients with rheumatoid vasculitis (Makol et al, 2015). However, many RA patients with high titers of RF and ACPA do not develop rheumatoid vasculitis. Immunoglobulin and complement have been detected by immunofluorescence in dermal vessels of patients with dermal rheumatoid vasculitis (Chen et al, 2002).

Clinical Laboratory Testing

Rheumatoid vasculitis should be suspected in a patient with clinical or pathologic evidence for vasculitis who has rheumatoid factor (RF), anticitrullinated peptide antibodies (ACPA), antinuclear antibodies, and circulating or tissue-deposited immune complexes (Makol et al, 2015). Less specific features that are often observed include anemia, leukocytosis, thrombocytosis, elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate, increased C-reactive protein, and polyclonal hypergammaglobulinemia. The absence of RF and ACPA has a high negative predictive value for rheumatoid vasculitis (Makol et al, 2015).

In a study of 19 patients with rheumatoid vasculitis, all of the patients were seropositive for RF, no patients were C-ANCA positive, 5 patients were P-ANCA positive by IIF but had negative ELISA for MPO-ANCA, 1 patient with P-ANCA was positive for PR3-ANCA by ELISA, all of the patients were negative for ANA, and 1 patient was positive for antimitochondrial antibodies (Ntatsaki et al, 2014). Anti-C1q antibody testing is positive in approximately 75% of patients with rheumatoid vasculitis (Seelen et al, 2003; Kallenberg, 2008). This raises the possibility of a relationship with HUV, but anti-C1q positive patients with rheumatoid vasculitis typically do not have other features of HUV, including no hypocomplementemia, or urticarial or immune complex glomerulonephritis.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prognosis

The Scott and Bacon diagnostic criteria for rheumatoid vasculitis require the presence of one or more of the following in a patient with RA: mononeuritis multiplex or peripheral neuropathy, peripheral gangrene, biopsy evidence of acute necrotizing arteritis plus systemic illness (e.g., fever and weight loss), deep cutaneous ulcers or extra-articular disease (e.g., pleurisy,

pericarditis, scleritis) if associated with typical digital infarcts, or biopsy evidence of vasculitis (Scott & Bacon, 1984).

Hydroxychloroquine and low-dose aspirin are associated with lower odds of developing rheumatoid vasculitis among RA patients, suggesting a possible protective effect (Makol et al, 2015). Among 86 patients treated for rheumatoid vasculitis at Mayo Clinic between 2000 and 2010, 99% received glucocorticoids, 29% received cyclophosphamide, 55% received another disease-modifying antirheumatic drug (methotrexate, azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil, hydroxychloroquine, minocycline), and 28% received a biologic agent (anti-TNF, rituximab, abatacept, anakinra) (Makol et al, 2014). However, despite aggressive use of cyclophosphamide and biologics, rheumatoid vasculitis remained difficult to treat, with high relapse rates and mortality rates of 12% at 1 year and 60% at 5 years.

SUMMARY

The diagnosis of vasculitis is difficult. Accurate and precise diagnosis requires knowledgeable integration of evidence from the medical history, patient demographics, clinical signs and symptoms, laboratory tests, and pathologic findings. Positive as well as negative laboratory test results are critically important in the diagnostic evaluation of patients with suspected vasculitis, and they are useful for prognostication, predicting and monitoring response to therapy, and predicting or detecting relapse. Over the past 20 years, there has been a valuable increase in the menu of laboratory tests that facilitate the care of patients with vasculitis (e.g., ANCA). More are currently on the verge of entering clinical practice (e.g., IgA1 glycosylation and anti-IgA1 antibody assays), and undoubtedly more will be discovered before the next edition of this text is published.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013.

This excellent comprehensive review of giant cell arteritis and Takayasu arteritis is by one of the major leaders in the field of large vessel vasculitis. Epidemiology, pathology, putative pathogenesis, and clinical management are reviewed in depth with expert commentary.

Kallenberg CG: Key advances in the clinical approach to ANCA-associated vasculitis, *Nat Rev Rheumatol* 10:484–493, 2014.

This insightful review of ANCA vasculitis covers pathogenesis, clinical presentations, development of diagnostic and classification criteria, and advances in therapy. This expert overview is informed by Professor Kallenberg's participation in many important studies on the pathogenesis and clinical management of ANCA vasculitis.

Makol A, Matteson EL, Warrington KJ: Rheumatoid vasculitis: An update, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 27:63–70, 2015.

Although rheumatoid vasculitis is a rare extra-articular manifestation of rheumatoid arthritis, it has high morbidity and mortality when it occurs. This timely update presents the clinical manifestations, management, and outcomes of rheumatoid vasculitis in the current era of disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDS).

Mestecky J, Raska M, Julian BA, et al: IgA nephropathy: Molecular mechanisms of the disease, *Annu Rev Pathol Mech Dis* 8:217–240, 2013.

This authoritative detailed review describes the discovery of abnormal glycosylation of IgA1 in IgAV and IgAN, which is one of the most impactful advances in the understanding of the pathogenesis of vasculitis that has emerged over the past 10 or more years. This discovery not only has elucidated the pathobiology of these diseases, but it also sets the stage for valuable new clinical laboratory tests.

Pagnoux C, Cohen P, Guillevin L: Vasculitides secondary to infections, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 24(2 Suppl 41)):S71–S81, 2006.

Recognition of infectious vasculitides is critically important because appropriate therapy can be very effective, and failure to make a correct diagnosis can be devastating. These distinguished authors provide an excellent review of the variety of infectious pathogens that can cause vasculitis by multiple pathogenic mechanisms and summarize approaches for diagnosis and treatment.

Pusey CD: Anti-glomerular basement membrane disease, *Kidney Int* 64:1535–1550, 2003.

This article is written by the preeminent physician scientist who has been at the forefront of clinical and basic research on anti-GBM disease. It covers pathobiology and clinical aspects of this aggressive category of immune-mediated vascular injury. This is a rare disease, but it illustrates important concepts of autoimmune vascular inflammation and strategies for their treatment.

REFERENCES

Abdulkader R, Lane SE, Scott DG, et al: Classification of vasculitis: EMA classification using CHCC 2012 definitions, *Ann Rheum Dis* 72:1888, 2013.

Achkar AA, Lie JT, Hunder GG, et al: How does previous corticosteroid treatment affect the biopsy findings in giant cell (temporal) arteritis?, *Ann Intern Med* 120:987–992, 1994.

Arora A, Wetter DA, Gonzalez-Santiago TM, et al: Incidence of leukocytoclastic vasculitis, 1996 to 2010: A population-based study in Olmsted County, Minnesota, *Mayo Clin Proc* 89(11):1515–1524, 2014.

Audemard-Verger A, Pillebout E, Guillevin L, et al: IgA vasculitis (Henoch-Schönlein purpura) in adults: Diagnostic and therapeutic aspects, *Autoimmun Rev* 14(7):579–585, 2015.

Baldo BA: Adverse events to monoclonal antibodies used for cancer therapy: Focus on hypersensitivity responses, *Oncoimmunology* 2(10):e26333, 2013.

Burgner D, Harnden A: Kawasaki disease: What is the epidemiology telling us about the etiology?, *Int J Infect Dis* 9:185–194, 2005.

Cacoub P, Terrier B, Saadoun D: Hepatitis C virus-induced vasculitis: Therapeutic options, *Ann Rheum Dis* 73(1):24–30, 2014.

Carmona FD, Mackie SL, Martín JE, et al: A large-scale genetic analysis reveals a strong contribution of the HLA class II region to giant cell arteritis susceptibility, *Am J Hum Genet* 96(4):565–580, 2015.

Cavazza A, Muratore F, Boiardi L, et al: Inflamed temporal artery: Histologic findings in 354 biopsies, with clinical correlations, *Am J Surg Pathol* 38:1360–1370, 2014.

Chatterjee S, Flamm SD, Tan CD, et al: Clinical diagnosis and management of large vessel vasculitis: Takayasu arteritis, *Curr Cardiol Rep* 16(7):499, 2014.

Chen JY, Mao JH: Henoch-Schönlein purpura nephritis in children: Incidence, pathogenesis and management, *World J Pediatr* 11(1):29–34, 2015.

Chen KR, Toyohara A, Suzuki A, et al: Clinical and histopathological spectrum of cutaneous vasculitis in rheumatoid arthritis, *Br J Dermatol* 147(5):905–913, 2002.

Cho SY, Kim Y, Cha SH, et al: Adjuvant laboratory marker of Kawasaki disease: NT-pro-BNP or hs-CRP?, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 41:360–363, 2011.

Cohen Tervaert JW, Damoiseaux J: Antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies: How are they detected and what is their use for diagnosis, classification and follow-up?, *Clin Rev Allergy Immunol* 43(3):211–219, 2012.

Coremans IE, Spronk PE, Bootsma H, et al: Changes in antibodies to C1q predict renal relapses in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Am J Kidney Dis* 26(4):595–601, 1995.

Cui Z, Zhao MH: Advances in human antiglomerular basement membrane disease, *Nat Rev Nephrol* 7(12): 697–705, 2011.

D'Alessandro M, Buoncompagni A, Minoia F, et al: Cytomegalovirus-related necrotising vasculitis mimicking Henoch-Schönlein syndrome, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 32(3 Suppl 82):S73–S75, 2014.

Damoiseaux J: The diagnosis and classification of the cryoglobulinemic syndrome, *Autoimmun Rev* 13(4–5):359–362, 2014.

Damoiseaux J, Mallet K, Vaessen M, et al: Automatic reading of ANCA-slides: Evaluation of the AKLIDES system, *Clin Dev Immunol* 2012:762874, 2012.

Dasgupta B, Cimmino MA, Kremers HM, et al: 2012 Provisional classification criteria for polymyalgia rheumatica: A European League Against Rheumatism/American College of Rheumatology collaborative initiative, *Arthritis Rheum* 64:943–954, 2012.

DeVita S, Soldano F, Isola M, et al: Preliminary classification criteria for the cryoglobulinaemic vasculitis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 70:1183–1190, 2011.

Dietrich A, Gauglitz GG, Pfluger TT, et al: Syphilitic aortitis in secondary syphilis, *JAMA Dermatol* 150: 790–791, 2014.

Durling B, Toren A, Patel V, et al: Incidence of discordant temporal artery biopsy in the diagnosis of giant cell arteritis, *Can J Ophthalmol* 49:157–161, 2014.

Falk RJ, Jennette JC: Anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies with specificity for myeloperoxidase in patients with systemic vasculitis and idiopathic necrotizing and crescentic glomerulonephritis, *N Engl J Med* 318:1651–1657, 1988.

Fujimoto S, Uezono S, Hisanaga S, et al: Incidence of ANCA-associated primary renal vasculitis in the Miyazaki Prefecture: The first population-based, retrospective, epidemiologic survey in Japan, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 1(5):1016–1022, 2006.

González-Gay MA, Pina T: Giant cell arteritis and polymyalgia rheumatica: An update, *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 17(2):6, 2015.

Greco A, Rizzo MI, De Virgilio A, et al: Goodpasture's syndrome: A clinical update, *Autoimmun Rev* 14(3):246–253, 2015.

Grotz W, Baba HA, Becker JU, et al: Hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis syndrome: An interdisciplinary challenge, *Dtsch Arztebl Int* 106(46):756–763, 2009.

Guillevin L: Infections in vasculitis, *Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol* 27:19–31, 2013.

Gulati A, Bagga A: Large vessel vasculitides, *Pediatr Nephrol* 25:1037–1048, 2010.

Hamidou MA, Moreau A, Toquet C, et al: Temporal arteritis associated with systemic necrotizing vasculitis, *J Rheumatol* 30:2165–2169, 2003.

Hata A, Noda M, Moriwaki R, et al: Angiographic findings in Takayasu arteritis: New classification, *Int J Cardiol* 54:S155–S163, 1996.

Hellmark T, Niles JL, Collins AB, et al: Comparison of anti-GBM antibodies in sera with or without ANCA, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 8:376, 1997.

Hernández-Rodríguez J, Alba MA, Prieto-González S, et al: Diagnosis and classification of polyarteritis nodosa, *J Autoimmun* 48-49:84–89, 2014.

Hoffman GS: Large-vessel vasculitis: Unresolved issues, *Arthritis Rheum* 48:2406–2414, 2003.

Jain S, Win HN, Chalam V, et al: Disseminated gonococcal infection presenting as vasculitis: A case report, *J Clin Pathol* 60:90–91, 2007.

Jennette JC: Rapidly progressive crescentic glomerulonephritis, *Kidney Int* 63:1164, 2003.

Jennette JC: Nomenclature and classification of vasculitis: Lessons learned from granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegner's granulomatosis), *Clin Exp Immunol* 164(Suppl 1):7–10, 2011.

Jennette JC, Falk RJ: Pathologic classification of vasculitis, *Pathology Case Reviews* 12:179–185, 2007.

Jennette JC, Falk RJ: Pathogenesis of antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody-mediated disease, *Nature Rev Rheumatol* 10:463–473, 2014.

Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Andrassy K, et al: Nomenclature of systemic vasculitides: The proposal of an international consensus conference, *Arthritis Rheum* 37:187–192, 1994.

Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference Nomenclature of Vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013.

Kain R, Exner M, Brandes R, et al: Molecular mimicry in pauci-immune focal necrotizing glomerulonephritis, *Nat Med* 14(10):1088–1096, 2008.

Kallenberg CG: Anti-C1q autoantibodies, *Autoimmun Rev* 7:612–615, 2008.

Kermani TA, Schmidt J, Crowson CS, et al: Utility of erythrocyte sedimentation rate and C-reactive protein for the diagnosis of giant cell arteritis, *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 41:866–871, 2012.

Kermani TA, Warrington KJ, Crowson CS, et al: Large-vessel involvement in giant cell arteritis: A population-based cohort study of the incidence—trends and prognosis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 72:1989–1994, 2013.

Kohro-Kawata J, Wener MH, Mannik M: The effect of high salt concentration on detection of serum immune complexes and autoantibodies to C1q in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus, *J Rheumatol* 29:84–89, 2002.

Lamprecht P, Moosig F, Gause A, et al: Immunological and clinical follow-up of hepatitis C virus associated cryoglobulinaemic vasculitis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 60:385–390, 2001.

Langford CA: Vasculitis, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 111: S602–S612, 2003.

Lincoff NS, Erlich PD, Brass LS: Thrombocytosis in temporal arteritis rising platelet counts: A red flag for giant cell arteritis, *J Neuro-Ophthalmol* 20:67–72, 2000.

Lionaki S, Blyth ER, Hogan SL, et al: Classification of antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody vasculitides: The role of antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody specificity for myeloperoxidase or proteinase 3 in disease recognition and prognosis, *Arthritis Rheum* 64:3452–3462, 2012.

Mahler M, Radice A, Sinico RA, et al: Performance evaluation of a novel chemiluminescence assay for detection of anti-GBM antibodies: An international multicenter study, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 27(1):243–252, 2012.

Mahr A, Guillevin L, Poissonnet M, et al: Prevalences of polyarteritis nodosa, microscopic polyangiitis, Wegener's granulomatosis, and Churg-Strauss syndrome in a French urban multiethnic population in 2000: A capture-recapture estimate, *Arthritis Rheum* 51:92–99, 2004.

Makol A, Crowson CS, Wetter DA, et al: Vasculitis associated with rheumatoid arthritis: A case-control study, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 53:890–899, 2014.

McGregor JG, Hogan SL, Hu Y, et al: Glucocorticoids and relapse and infection rates in anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody disease, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 7:240–247, 2012.

McInnis EA, Badhwar AK, Muthigi A, et al: Dysregulation of autoantigen genes in ANCA-associated vasculitis involves alternative transcripts and new protein synthesis, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 26:390–399, 2015.

Mehregan DR, Hall MJ, Gibson LE: Urticarial vasculitis: A histopathologic and clinical review of 72 cases, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 26:441–448, 1992.

Miller DV, Maleszewski JJ: The pathology of large-vessel vasculitides, *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 29(Suppl 64): S92–S98, 2011.

Moldoveanu Z, Wyatt RJ, Lee JY, et al: Patients with IgA nephropathy have increased serum galactose-deficient IgA1 levels, *Kidney Int* 71:1148–1154, 2007.

Nathavitharana RR, Mitty JA: Diseases from North America: Focus on tick-borne infections, *Clin Med* 15:74–77, 2015.

Ntatsaki E, Mooney J, Scott DG, et al: Systemic rheumatoid vasculitis in the era of modern immunosuppressive therapy, *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 53:145–152, 2014.

Orenstein JM, Shulman ST, Fox LM, et al: Three linked vasculopathic processes characterize Kawasaki disease: A light and transmission electron microscopic study, *PLoS ONE* 7(6):e38998, 2012.

Ortiz-Sanjuán F, Blanco R, Hernández JL, et al: Drug-associated cutaneous vasculitis: Study of 239 patients from a single referral center, *J Rheumatol* 41(11):2201–2207, 2014.

Pedchenko V, Bondar O, Fogo AB, et al: Molecular architecture of the Goodpasture autoantigen in anti-GBM nephritis, *N Engl J Med* 363(4):343–354, 2010.

Pendergraft WF III, Niles JL: Trojan horses: Drug culprits associated with antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (ANCA) vasculitis, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 26(1):42–49, 2014.

Pendergraft WF, Preston GA, Shah RR, et al: cPR3105-206, a protein complementary to the autoantigen proteinase 3, triggers autoimmunity, *Nature Med* 10: 72–79, 2004.

Poller DN, van Wyk Q, Jeffrey MJ: The importance of skip lesions in temporal arteritis, *J Clin Pathol* 53:137–139, 2000.

Prieto-Gonzalez S, Depetris M, Garcia-Martinez A, et al: Positron emission tomography assessment of large vessel inflammation in patients with newly diagnosed, biopsy-proven giant cell arteritis: A prospective, case-control study, *Ann Rheum Dis* 73:1388–1392, 2014.

Principi N, Rigante D, Esposito S: The role of infection in Kawasaki syndrome, *J Infect* 67:1–10, 2013.

Reindel R, Bischof J, Kim KY, et al: CD84 is markedly up-regulated in Kawasaki disease arteriopathy, *Clin Exp Immunol* 177:203–211, 2014.

Reynolds J, Preston GA, Pressler BM, et al: Autoimmunity to the alpha 3 chain of type IV collagen in glomerulonephritis is triggered by "autoantigen complementarity", *J Autoimmun* 59:8–18, 2015.

Roth AJ, Brown MC, Smith RN, et al: Anti-LAMP-2 antibodies are not prevalent in patients with antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody glomerulonephritis, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 23:545–555, 2012.

Roth AJ, Ooi J, Hess JJ, et al: ANCA epitope specificity determines pathogenicity, detectability and clinical predictive value, *J Clin Invest* 123:1773–1783, 2013.

Rutgers A, Slot M, van Paassen P, et al: Coexistence of anti-glomerular basement membrane antibodies and myeloperoxidase-ANCAs in crescentic glomerulonephritis, *Am J Kidney Dis* 46:253, 2005.

Sablé-Fourtassou R, Cohen P, Mahr A, et al: Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies and the Churg-Strauss syndrome, *Ann Intern Med* 143:632–638, 2005.

Savige J, Davies D, Falk RJ, et al: Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies and associated diseases: A review of the clinical and laboratory features, *Kidney Int* 57:846, 2000.

Savige J, Gillis D, Davies D, et al: International consensus statement on testing and reporting of antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCA), *Am J Clin Pathol* 111:507–513, 1999.

Scott DG, Bacon PA: Intravenous cyclophosphamide plus methylprednisolone in treatment of systemic rheumatoid vasculitis, *Am J Med* 76:377–384, 1984.

Seelen MA, Trouw LA, Daha MR: Diagnostic and prognostic significance of anti-C1q antibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus, *Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens* 12:619–624, 2003.

Silverman DJ, Bond SB: Infection of human vascular endothelial cells by Rickettsia rickettsii, *J Infect Dis* 149:201–206, 1984.

Sinico RA, Di Toma L, Maggiore U, et al: Prevalence and clinical significance of antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies in Churg-Strauss syndrome, *Arthritis Rheum* 52:2926–2935, 2005.

Sinico RA, Di Toma L, Maggiore U, et al: Renal involvement in Churg-Strauss syndrome, *Am J Kidney Dis* 47:770–779, 2006.

Sinico RA, Rimoldi L, Radice A, et al: Anti-C1q autoantibodies in lupus nephritis, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1173:47–51, 2009.

Sowa M, Grossmann K, Knütter I, et al: Simultaneous automated screening and confirmatory testing for vasculitis-specific ANCA, *PLoS ONE* 9(9):e107743, 2014.

Suzuki H, Fan R, Zhang Z, et al: Aberrantly glycosylated IgA1 in IgA nephropathy patients is recognized by IgG antibodies with restricted heterogeneity, *J Clin Invest* 119:1668–1677, 2009.

Suzuki H, Kiryluk K, Novak J, et al: The pathophysiology of IgA nephropathy, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 22:1795–1803, 2011.

Suzuki Y1, Matsuzaki K, Suzuki H, et al: Serum levels of galactose-deficient immunoglobulin (Ig) A1 and related immune complex are associated with disease activity of IgA nephropathy, *Clin Exp Nephrol* 18(5): 770–777, 2014.

Tedeschi A, Baratè C, Minola E, et al: Cryoglobulinemia, *Blood Rev* 21:183–200, 2007.

Terrier B, Semoun O, Saadoun D, et al: Prognostic factors in patients with hepatitis C virus infection and systemic vasculitis, *Arthritis Rheum* 63:1748–1757, 2011.

Treglia G, Taralli S, Maggi F, et al: Usefulness of (18) F-FDG PET/CT in disease extent and treatment response assessment in a patient with syphilitic aortitis, *Clin Nucl Med* 38:e185–e187, 2013.

Vaideeswar P, Deshpande JR: Pathology of Takayasu arteritis: A brief review, *Ann Pediatr Cardiol* 6(1):52–58, 2013.

Valsakumar AK, Valappil UC, Jorapur V, et al: Role of immunosuppressive therapy on clinical, immunological, and angiographic outcome in active Takayasu's arteritis, *J Rheumatol* 30:1793–1798, 2003.

van Timmeren MM, Heeringa P, Kallenberg CG: Infectious triggers for vasculitis, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 26: 416–423, 2014.

Venzor J, Lee WL, Huston DP: Urticarial vasculitis, *Clin Rev Allergy Immunol* 23(2):201–216, 2002.

Waldman CW, Waldman SD, Waldman RA: Giant cell arteritis, *Med Clin North Am* 97:329–335, 2013.

Watts R, Lane S, Hanslik T, et al: Development and validation of a consensus methodology for the classification of the ANCA-associated vasculitides and polyarteritis nodosa for epidemiological studies, *Ann Rheum Dis* 66:222–227, 2007.

Watts RA, Mahr A, Mohammad AJ, et al: Classification, epidemiology and clinical subgrouping of antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (ANCA)-associated vasculitis, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 30(Suppl 1):i14–i22, 2015.

Westman KW, Bygren PG, Eilert I, et al: Rapid screening assay for anti-GBM antibody and ANCAs: An important tool for the differential diagnosis of pulmonary renal syndromes, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 12(9): 1863–1868, 1997.

Weyand CM, Goronzy JJ: Giant cell arteritis and polymyalgia rheumatica, *N Engl J Med* 371:50–57, 2014.

Xiao H, Dairaghi DJ, Powers JP, et al: C5a receptor (CD88) blockade protects against MPO-ANCA glomerulonephritis, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 25:225–231, 2014.

Xiao H, Heeringa P, Hu P, et al: Antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies specific for myeloperoxidase cause glomerulonephritis and vasculitis in mice, *J Clin Invest* 110:955–963, 2002.

CHAPTER 54

ORGAN-SPECIFIC AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

William E. Winter, Neil S. Harris, Kimberly L. Merkel, Amy L. Collinsworth, William L. Clapp

INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW TO THE ORGAN-SPECIFIC AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES, 1032
Definition of Autoimmunity versus Autoimmune Disease, 1032
Classification of Autoimmune Diseases, 1034
Laboratory Tests for Evaluating Autoimmunity, 1034
Interpretation of Serum Autoantibody Levels in Autoimmune Diseases, 1035
Recent Advances in Diagnostic Technologies, 1036
Autoantibodies as Predictors of Disease, 1036

CUTANEOUS AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES, 1037
Pemphigus, 1037
Pemphigoid, 1039
Linear IgA Dermatosis, 1040
Epidermolysis Bullosa Acquisita, 1040
Dermatitis Herpetiformis, 1041
Vasculitis, 1041

GASTROINTESTINAL AND HEPATOBILIARY AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES, 1042
Pernicious Anemia, 1042
Celiac Disease, 1042
Inflammatory Bowel Disease, 1043
Hepatic and Hepatobiliary Autoimmunity, 1043
Autoimmune Pancreatitis, 1046

GLOMERULAR AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES, 1047
Overview of Autoimmune Glomerular Diseases, 1047
Glomerulopathies, 1047
Glomerulonephritides, 1048

IMMUNOENDOCRINOPATHIES, 1050
Autoimmune Disorders of Carbohydrate Metabolism, 1050
Autoimmune Thyroid Disease, 1052
Autoimmune Addison Disease, 1053
Autoimmune Disease of the Ovary, 1053

AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES OF THE NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTION, NERVOUS SYSTEM, AND MUSCLE, 1054
Myasthenia Gravis, 1054
Eaton-Lambert Myasthenic Syndrome, 1054
Multiple Sclerosis, 1054
Paraneoplastic Neurologic Syndromes, 1054
Stiff-Person Syndrome, 1054
Polymyositis, 1055

CONCLUSION, 1055

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1056

KEY POINTS

- The dominant clinical feature of organ-specific autoimmune disease is chronic inflammation, generally localized in a single organ specific for each individual disease.
- The etiology of virtually all organ-specific autoimmune diseases remains elusive.
- Direct immunofluorescence is essential for resolving the microscopic differential diagnosis of acantholytic and subepidermal bullous disorders.
- The presence of circulating autoantibodies at significant titers is often useful in establishing the etiology of autoimmune liver disorders.
- Autoimmune diseases occur in a proportion of people that manifest autoimmunity.
- In organ-specific autoimmune diseases, an organ-specific, tissue-specific, or cell-specific autoantigen is targeted. Some autoantigens circulate, some are cell-surface molecules, and some are intracellular. Clinical recognition of autoimmunity is dependent on the detection of autoantibodies against relevant autoantigens.
- Damage to self can be mediated by humoral and/or cell-mediated autoimmunity.
- An expanding universe of micro-volume technologies is speeding the development of autoantibody detection that could support screening programs when clinically indicated.
- The detection of relevant autoantibodies in the setting of clinical disease can confirm an autoimmune etiology for the disease. Likewise certain autoantibodies in asymptomatic individuals can predict the later development of disease.
- Autoimmune disorders frequently affect the skin, gastrointestinal and hepatobiliary systems; the kidney; the endocrine system; and the nervous system.
- Collectively, organ-specific autoimmune diseases are common and produce significant degrees of morbidity and mortality.

INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW TO THE ORGAN-SPECIFIC AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

DEFINITION OF AUTOIMMUNITY VERSUS AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE

Autoimmunity is aberrant immunity to self (Kamradt & Mitchison, 2001). In order to protect the body from infection and neoplasia (when new antigens are expressed), the immune system must be able to distinguish self from nonself. The innate immune system uses a large number of nonclonotypic cell surface receptors (such as toll-like receptors) that seek gross differences between self and nonself to recognize the microbiologic world (Medzhitov & Janeway, 2000) The adaptive immune system uses clonotypic T cell receptors for peptide-major histocompatibility complex (MHC) identification, while B cells use clonotypic cell-surface antibody (i.e., membrane immunoglobulin) to accomplish this task. The adaptive immune system can recognize very subtle differences between self and nonself that may not be "observed" by the innate immune system receptors.

Normally autoimmunity is prevented by central (thymic) tolerance and peripheral tolerance. During T cell ontogeny in the thymus, at the T cell receptor double-positive thymocyte stage (i.e., T cells are positive for CD4 and CD8), interaction with class I or class II MHC molecules expressed

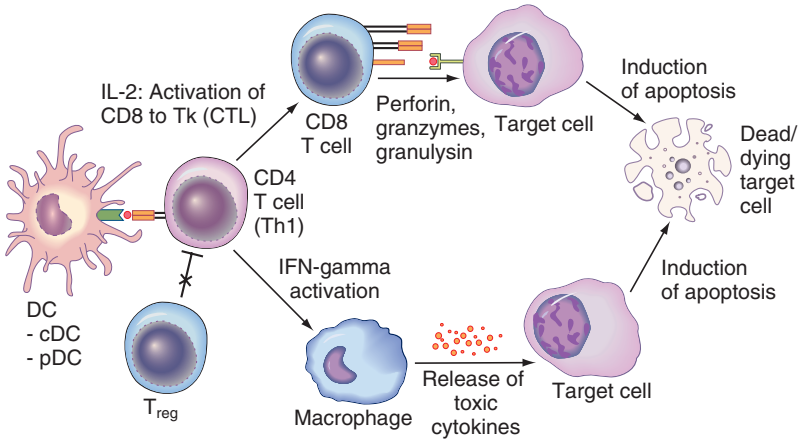


Figure 54-1 The process of target destruction is believed to begin with dendritic cells (DC) that present peptides from beta-cell autoantigens to CD4 Th1 cells. DCs can be classic (conventional) DCs (cDCs) or plasmacytoid DCs (pDCs). Failure to regulate Th1 cells via defective regulatory T cell (Treg) function could contribute to Th1 cell autoimmunity. Activated self-cell autoreactive Th1 cells, in turn, activate CD8 T cells via interleukin-2 and DC upregulation. Activated CD8 T cells are functionally T killer cells (Tk; a.k.a., cytotoxic T lymphocytes [CTLs]). Via cell–cell contact between Th1 cells and macrophages (via CD40L–CD40 interactions [not shown]) and interferon-gamma (IFN-gamma) secreted by Th1 cells, macrophages are activated. Via both CD8 Tk cells and macrophages, target cells are triggered to undergo apoptosis.

by epithelial nurse cells "positively" selects such T cells for initial survival. Failure of these double-positive T cells to interact with MHC leads to apoptotic cell death. Once a double-positive T cell is "selected" (a.k.a., "saved"), it then migrates to the cortico-medullary border within the thymus, where these cells encounter macrophages and dendritic cells. If the T cell receptor of the double-positive T cell interacts strongly with MHC molecules expressed by macrophages or dendritic cells, such an interaction will trigger the T cell to undergo apoptosis. This is termed *negative selection*: T cells that bind "too tightly" to self are eliminated from the T cell repertoire.

Those double-positive T cells that survive negative selection migrate into the thymic medulla and become single-positive (i.e., either CD4 or CD8 is persistently expressed). Double-positive T cells that were "saved" by interaction with class I MHC expressed by the thymic nurse epithelial cells, that then survive negative selection at the cortico-medullary border, appear to be programmed to lose CD4 expression, becoming CD8 T cells. Double-positive T cells that were "saved" by interaction with class II MHC expressed by the thymic nurse epithelial cells, that then survive negative selection, appear to be programmed to lose CD8 expression, becoming CD4 T cells. These CD4 and CD8 T cells constitute the naive T cell repertoire that leaves the thymus.

Peripheral tolerance develops when naive T cells encounter MHC plus antigen-peptide without secondary signals. Such "tolerized" T cells are not able to subsequently respond to antigen, even if the proper secondary signals are then made available. Peripheral tolerance ensures that antigen-presenting cells are activating the naive T cells in an appropriate immune response: Signal one is the T cell receptor's perception of antigen-peptide presented by MHC (stabilized by MHC-CD4 or MHC-CD8 interactions), whereas signal two (a survival signal) is B7 (from the antigen-presenting cell) engaging CD28 on the T cell. For CD4 T cells, a third set of signals involving cytokines secreted by dendritic cells and NK cells determines whether the newly stimulated CD4 T cell differentiates into a Th1 cell (secreting IL-2 and interferon-gamma, tumor necrosis factor-alpha, and granulocyte/monocyte colony-stimulating factor), a Th2 cell (secreting IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-10, IL-13, and eotaxin), a Tfh cell (T follicular helper cell secreting Th1 and/or Th2 cytokines), a Th17 cell (secreting IL-17 and IL-22), or a regulatory T cell (e.g., a CD4+ CD25+ FOXP3+ T cell secreting transforming growth factor-beta, IL-4, and IL-10).

Autoimmunity becomes pathologic when clinical disease is manifested (Davidson & Diamond, 2001). A normal immune response is directed against "nonself" antigens such as microorganisms that cause infection. Such immune responses are beneficial. In an autoimmune disease, the immune response is directed against "self" antigens that cause injury. When self-antigens are targeted, cellular, tissue, and organ damage can result (Wahren-Herlenius & Dörner, 2013). Most autoimmune diseases involve adaptive humoral (types II and III hypersensitivity reactions) and/or cell-mediated (type IV hypersensitivity reactions) mechanisms (Fig. 54-1) that causes disease.

Autoimmunity is a broader term than *autoimmune disease* (Fig. 54-2). For example, autoantibodies directed against thyroid self-antigens such as thyroperoxidase and thyroglobulin are relatively frequent in the general

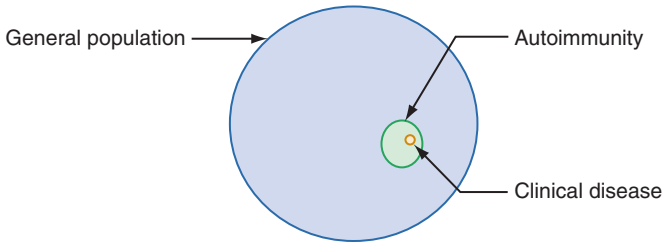


Figure 54-2 Autoimmunity is defined as laboratory evidence of an auto- ("self") reactive state, often identified as the detection of a serum autoantibody to self. Of individuals with autoimmunity, a subset will manifest a clinically evident autoimmune disease.

population (5% or greater prevalence in adults) (Stathatos & Daniels, 2012). However, only a subset of individuals with such humoral autoimmunity will manifest clinical autoimmune thyroid disease (AITD). The most common manifestation of AITD is Hashimoto thyroiditis. When agonist autoantibodies against the TSH receptor are produced, Graves disease results.

Defects in innate immunity can also be harmful, causing self-injury—for example, C1 esterase inhibitor deficiency, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), various types of atypical hemolytic-uremic syndrome (aHUS) (e.g., inborn errors in C3, CD46, CFB, CFH, CFHR5, CFI, and THBD), and autoinflammatory diseases (e.g., familial Mediterranean fever [FMF], hyperimmunoglobulinemia D with periodic fever syndrome [HIDS], tumor necrosis factor receptor–associated periodic syndrome [TRAPS], Muckle-Wells syndrome [MWS], familial cold autoinflammatory syndrome [FCAS], and chronic infantile neurologic cutaneous articular syndrome [CINCA]) (Rodríguez de Córdoba et al, 2014). While these disorders are fascinating, in this chapter we limit our discussion to defects involving adaptive immunity causing autoimmune diseases.

An autoimmune disease may be present when one or more of the following findings are associated with the disease: evidence of humoral or cell-mediated autoimmunity (including lymphocytic infiltration of the affected tissue or organ); ability to transfer the disease with antibodies or lymphocytes; beneficial response to immunomodulatory or immunosuppressive therapy; and in the absence of immunosuppression, disease recurrence with organ transplantation. In practical terms, only autoantibody testing is sufficiently robust for routine clinical applications. Therefore, most cases of autoimmune disease are substantiated by the finding of autoantibodies that are often directed against the target organ or tissue. However, the detection of autoantibodies, by themselves, indicates a state of "autoimmunity" and not "autoimmune disease." Through the history, physical examination, imaging studies, histologic reports (if a biopsy were performed), and laboratory findings, the physician can judge whether or not disease is present, promoting the diagnosis from "autoimmunity" to a state of "autoimmune disease" (Lleo et al, 2010).

CLASSIFICATION OF AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

Traditionally autoimmune diseases are classified as "organ-specific" or "non-organ-specific" (Hayter & Cook, 2012). In an organ-specific autoimmune disease, a single tissue or organ is targeted. In some cases, a single circulating protein or receptor is targeted (e.g., insulin in the autoimmune hypoglycemia syndrome) (Zhang & Zhao, 2014).

One of the best examples of tissue specificity is type 1 diabetes: Within the islets of Langerhans, beta cells are selectively destroyed (Winter et al, 2011). Beta cells are the most prevalent of islet cells (~65%); however, there are ample numbers of alpha cells (producing glucagon) and delta cells (producing somatostatin) and lesser numbers of PP cells (pancreatic-polypeptide producing cells). While there is some evidence of impaired alpha cell function early in the course of type 1 diabetes (Ganda et al, 1986), hyperglucagonemia is a pathogenic and well-recognized feature of type 1 diabetes that contributes substantially to hyperglycemia, ketogenesis, and ketosis in diabetic ketoacidosis. Examples of organ-specific autoimmune diseases are listed in Box 54-1. Multiple organ-specific autoimmune diseases may also occur concurrently in a single patient (Box 54-2).

Non–organ-specific autoimmune diseases are also termed *systemic* autoimmune diseases because more than one organ and/or tissue is damaged.

BOX 54-1

Examples of Organ-Specific Autoimmune Diseases

Endocrinopathies

Type 1 diabetes
Autoimmune hypoglycemia
Acanthosis nigricans with insulin resistance (type B insulin resistance)
Insulinomimetic insulin receptor autoantibodies
Chronic lymphocytic (Hashimoto) thyroiditis
Graves disease
Atrophic thyroiditis
Autoimmune Addison disease
Hypophysitis
Autoimmune diabetes insipidus
Autoimmune hypoparathyroidism
Autoimmune hypogonadism

Hepato-Gastrointestinal Autoimmunity

Celiac disease
Pernicious anemia
Autoimmune hepatitis

Neurologic Disease

Myasthenia gravis
Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome
Multiple sclerosis

Hematologic Disorders

Autoimmune hemolytic anemia
Immune thrombocytopenic purpura
Autoimmune neutropenia

Dermatologic Disorders

Pemphigus vulgaris
Discoid lupus (in the absence of other systemic disease)
Autoimmune alopecia
Autoimmune vitiligo

Other Organ-Specific Disorders

Membranous nephropathy due to antibodies against phospholipase A2 receptor
Polymyositis

BOX 54-2

Concurrent (Commonly Co-Existent) Organ-Specific Autoimmune Diseases

Autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type I (hypoparathyroidism, mucocutaneous candidiasis, and adrenal autoantibodies or Addison disease; two or more conditions are necessary for the diagnosis)
Autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type II (adrenal autoantibodies or Addison disease with AITD and/or type 1 diabetes)
Thyrogastric autoimmunity (AITD and pernicious anemia)
The association of type 1 diabetes with AITD and/or pernicious anemia
Evans syndrome (autoimmune hemolytic anemia and immune thrombocytopenic purpura)

An older term for non–organ-specific autoimmune diseases is *collagen-vascular disease* because many such autoimmune disorders involve joints, connect tissue, and blood vessels (e.g., vasculitis). However, the term is somewhat of a misnomer because collagen itself is not usually an autoantigen; therefore, *collagen-vascular disease* is not the preferred descriptor. Examples of non–organ-specific autoimmune diseases are listed in Box 54-3.

LABORATORY TESTS FOR EVALUATING AUTOIMMUNITY

Laboratory tests for evaluating autoimmunity focus on the detection of autoantibodies (Damoiseaux et al, 2015). Tests of T cell autoreactivity or lymphocyte-proliferation assays are generally not sufficiently reliable for clinical use. In the setting of clinical disease, the presence of a relevant autoantibody or autoantibodies is highly suggestive that the disease is indeed autoimmune in etiology. For example, goiter and hypothyroidism combined with positivity for thyroperoxidase autoantibodies (TPOA) establish the diagnosis of Hashimoto thyroiditis.

To detect an autoantibody, the autoantigen must be available in some form whether it is purified (e.g., thyroperoxidase) or not (e.g., thyroid microsomes) (Fenalti & Buckle, 2010). The autoantigen can be present in a tissue section for indirect immunofluorescence, a cellular fraction, a purified protein or other biomolecule, or a cloned protein or a portion of a protein. Assays for autoantibody detection can be competitive or noncompetitive determinations. As an example of a competitive assay, there is now an automated assay for the detection of thyrotropin-binding inhibitory immunoglobulins (TBII). In this assay a labeled monoclonal anti–TSH-receptor antibody competes with the patient's TSH-receptor autoantibodies (TRAbs) for binding to the TSH receptor.

A classic noncompetitive immunoassay method is indirect immunofluorescence for islet cell autoantibodies (ICA) (Bottazzo et al, 1974). Patient serum is applied to a cryo-cut section of human blood group O pancreas. After incubation and washing, FITC (fluorescein-isothiocyanate)-labeled goat-antihuman IgG is applied. After washing and the application of glycerol and a coverslip, the slide is examined using an epifluorescence microscope. If the islets fluoresce, the patient's serum contains islet cell autoantibodies (ICA) that bind to islet autoantigens in the tissue that were detected by the FITC-labeled goat-antihuman IgG. ICA testing is illustrated in Figure 54-3. Cytoplasmic islet autoantigens include glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD), the insulinoma-2-associated autoantigen, and asialoglycoconjugate (Nayak et al, 1985).

A wide variety of immunoassay formats are available that now often utilize nonradioactive detection of the signal. In addition to indirect immunofluorescence, classic first-generation monoplex technologies applied to autoantibody detection include Ouchternony double immunodiffusion, indirect immunofluorescence, agglutination, complement fixation, radioimmunoassay, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), immunoprecipitation, and western blotting (a.k.a., immunoblotting). A recent review by Tozzoli and colleagues (2013) provides a well-organized summary of the second- and third-generation monoplex technologies (e.g., radioimmunoassay-immunoradiometric, radio-receptor, immunoenzymatic, immunoenzymometric, immunoblot and dot, chemiluminescence, and fluorimetric), followed by truly multiplex technologies (e.g., "addressable microbead immunoassays").

Bioassays require living cells such as the detection of thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins (TSIs) (Gupta, 1992; Winter et al, 2013) (Fig. 54-4). Chemiluminescent, electrochemiluminescent, bead, and flow cytometric technologies are being applied to autoantibody detection. The latest adaptations to autoantibody detection involve matrix and solid-chip technologies theoretically testing for hundreds, if not thousands, of autoantibodies simultaneously.

BOX 54-3

Examples of Non–Organ-Specific Autoimmune Diseases

Systemic lupus erythematosus
Scleroderma
Sjögren syndrome
Rheumatic fever
Rheumatoid arthritis
Goodpasteur syndrome
Dermatomyositis
Reactive arthritis (urethritis or cervicitis, arthritis, and conjunctivitis)
Mixed connective tissue disease

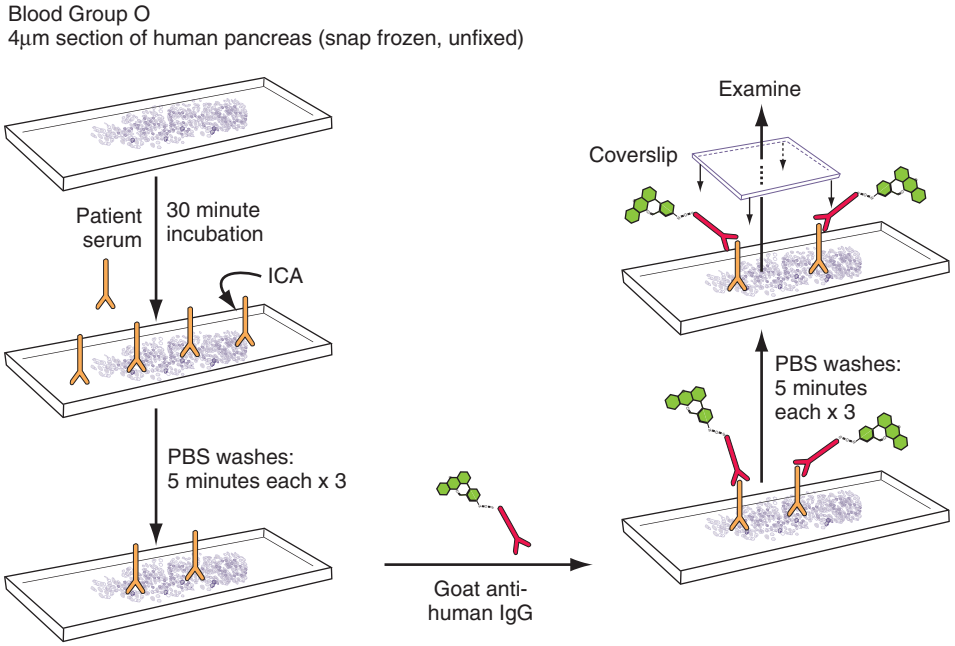


Figure 54-3 **Methodology for islet cell cytoplasmic autoantibody testing.** See text for details.

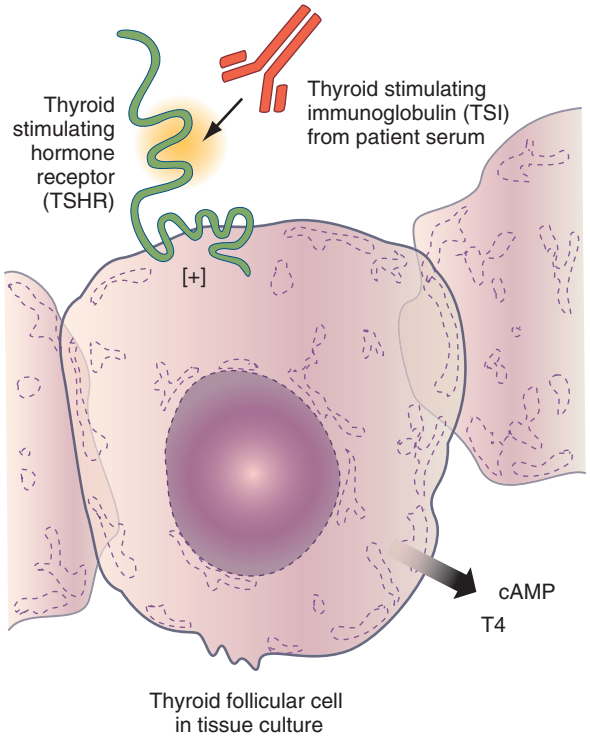


Figure 54-4 **Thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins (TSIs) are detected by in vitro studies where patient serum is added to a thyroid follicular cell.** The effect of the TSI is measured by the release of cAMP or T4 from the cell.

For many diseases, especially autoimmune blistering diseases of the skin, direct and indirect immunofluorescence are key technologies. Biopsy of normal skin adjacent to a skin lesion allows examination of the tissue for in situ autoantibody and/or complement deposition. Indirect immunofluorescence using patient serum applied to normal tissues can reveal autoantibody reactivity to autoantigens. The salt-split skin technique is especially useful in autoimmune diseases affecting the skin.

In the salt-split skin technique, the patient's skin biopsy is initially incubated in the cold in 1 M of sodium chloride for 1 day. Using forceps, the epidermis is next gently separated from the dermis. The specimens are then histologically processed using standard methods. For indirect immunofluorescence, the salt-split skin can be used as substrate.

INTERPRETATION OF SERUM AUTOANTIBODY LEVELS IN AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

The two questions that must be answered are "How are positive/negative cutoffs established for autoantibody assays?" and "Does the titer (i.e., concentration) of the autoantibody provide useful clinical information about the prediction, natural history, severity, prognosis, or therapy of disease?" Positive/negative cutoffs for autoantibody tests are established using criteria similar to other tests intended to diagnose disease (Tampoia et al, 2012). If the analyte's concentration versus prevalence (frequency) in a population is distributed in a bell-shaped (normal) pattern (e.g., a histogram is developed), a positive (abnormal) test might be defined as the mean concentration of the autoantibody in the healthy population, plus either 2 or 3 standard deviations. If the mean plus 2 standard deviations is chosen as the cutoff, approximately 2.5% of the healthy population will test "positive." A more stringent definition of positivity could employ the mean plus 3 standard deviations as the cutoff, where only approximately 0.15% of the healthy population should test "positive." Furthermore, to ensure fewer "false positives" (at the expense of less sensitivity), some researchers have set autoantibody cutoffs as high as the mean plus 4 or 5 standard deviations. Because sensitivity and specificity are always at odds with one another in choosing a positive/negative cutoff, the best approach to defining a cutoff is to construct a receiver-operator characteristic (ROC) curve (see Chapter 7).

For distributions of results in a healthy population that do not follow a bell-shaped (normal) distribution, large numbers of healthy controls need to be tested to define the desired cutoff—that is, the 97.5th percentile (e.g., the upper limit of the central 95% of the distribution) or the 99.85th percentile (e.g., the upper limit of the central 99.7% of the distribution). In such cases, defining the 97.5th percentile in a healthy population likely requires study of 200 or more health controls. Defining the 99.85th percentile in a healthy population whose results are not normally distributed is likely beyond the ability (or finances) of any laboratory except, possibly, major reference laboratories.

The answer to the second question—"Does the titer (i.e., concentration) of the autoantibody provide useful clinical information about the natural history, prognosis, severity, or therapy of disease?"—is solely dependent on the specific autoimmune disease and autoantibody under discussion. For example, in Graves disease patients, the titer of TSIs is inversely correlated with the likelihood of remission following pharmacologic antithyroid therapy (e.g., the likelihood of remission following propylthiouracil [PTU] or methamizole [MM] treatment) (Cappelli et al, 2007). Also, the titer of TSIs in maternal Graves disease correlates directly with the likelihood of neonatal Graves disease in the newborn (Barbesino & Tomer, 2013). In nondiabetic individuals with ICA, higher ICA titers do predict an increased risk for the subsequent development of type 1 diabetes (Orban et al, 2009). This is also true for GADA. In latent

autoimmune diabetes of adulthood (LADA—a late-onset form of type 1 diabetes), higher glutamic acid decarboxylase autoantibody (GADA) levels predict the need for earlier insulin treatment, which is beneficial (Rosário et al, 2007). Rarely, the autoantibody concentration provides information differentiating two diseases. In typical cases of type 1 diabetes, the GADA titer is only mildly to modestly elevated above the cutoff. However in type 1 diabetes that is part of stiff-person syndrome, the GADA titer is much higher (Dayalu & Teener, 2012).

As opposed to autoantibody concentrations near the cutoff value, higher concentrations of an autoantibody ensure that the autoantibody is truly present. Also, when studying an antibody that can be induced by an environmental exposure (such as insulin), the assay specificity should be considered. For example, the insulin autoantibody (IAA) assay does not discriminate autoantibodies from antibodies against exogenous insulin (Fineberg et al, 2007). Exogenous-insulin-induced antibodies are typically in much higher concentration than spontaneous IAAs that predict type 1 diabetes. Thus if the patient has been exposed to insulin for more than 14 days with the development of insulin antibodies, IAA should not be determined as an index of islet autoimmunity.

As opposed to these examples where the autoantibody concentration influences the prediction, clinical course, or therapy of the disease, in other circumstances the degree of autoantibody positivity appears to be irrelevant. For example, it is highly controversial whether the persistence of GADA after diagnosis relates to beta-cell function following the diagnosis of type 1 diabetes (Jaeger et al, 1997). Whereas generalizations are subject to many exceptions, in most autoimmune diseases, the detection of an autoantibody is more important than the concentration of the autoantibody when that concentration is above the threshold of positivity. Consistent results require strict attention to the principles of quality assurance and quality control.

RECENT ADVANCES IN DIAGNOSTIC TECHNOLOGIES

In order to investigate autoimmune diseases, both in the clinical setting as well as for research purposes, the ability to analyze biological samples for a myriad of potential autoantibodies, autoantigens, and other biomarkers represents a significant advance. The diagnostics revolution in developing new autoantibody immunoassays also involves the identification of new autoantigens in each of the autoimmune diseases discussed in this chapter. To address this "explosion" of technologies, several promising developments are briefly discussed here (Tozzoli et al, 2013; Burbelo & O'Hanlon, 2014). New assays for the detection of autoantibodies have taken advantage of microfluidics, chip, bead, mass spectroscopy, optical, and flow cytometry technologies (Blixt et al, 2008; Brennan et al, 2010). Candidate autoantigens can be identified by western blotting, two-dimensional electrophoresis, mass spectroscopy, automated immunoprecipitation of cell or tissue extracts with sera from affected individuals, and proteomic approaches (Ehrlich et al, 2006; Wenzlau & Hutton, 2013). Traditional noncompetitive or "sandwich" immunoassays detect a single analyte; assays that detect multiple analytes (antigens or antibodies) in a single reaction are termed *multiplex assays*.

The two formats for this type of analysis are planar assays and suspension microsphere assays (Ellington et al, 2010; Tighe et al, 2015). One useful "low automated" (Tozzoli et al, 2013) format for the planer assay is the line-blot assay (Hoffman et al, 2002; Gonzalez-Buitrago, 2006). Here, multiple antigens are immobilized in straight lines on a nylon test strip. The test strip is then incubated with the patient specimen, allowing the autoantibodies to recognize the immobilized antigens. An alkaline phosphatase labeled anti-IgG antibody is added in order to identify the autoantibody-antigen complex. Confocal laser scanning of strips is an effective means of detection. In "high automated" (Tozzoli et al, 2013) microarray planar assays, the capture autoantibody (or autoantigen) is fixed to a discrete spot on a glass slide (Yeste & Quintana, 2013). By testing for autoantibodies to tens, if not hundreds, of autoantigens, "serum autoantibody signatures" can be identified (Veronika Sharp & Utz, 2007; Quintana et al, 2008) or within a single well of a microwell plate (Ellington et al, 2010; Tighe et al, 2015). In the case of the latter, multiple distinct capture autoantibodies may be fixed to a single well. The plasma or serum specimen is added to the slide or well. After incubation, the slide or well is then washed, and a labeled detection antibody is added. Electrochemiluminescence, chemiluminescence, and fluorescence are common labels (Miao et al, 2013; Yu et al, 2013), and each unique reaction is identified by its very specific location. Hundreds, if not thousands, of potential purified autoantigens can be interrogated by the application of patient and control sera separately or in competition with one another.

In the microsphere assay, autoantibodies or autoantigens are linked to very small microspheres that measure a few microns in diameter and are therefore cellular in scale. An autoantibody-microsphere unit is distinguished either by its size or by the color of light emitted. After reaction with the autoantigen is complete, the spheres can be sorted according to size or color using flow cytometry.

The luciferase immunoprecipitation system (LIPS) is a versatile technique that has been adapted to autoantibody identification (Burbelo et al, 2011; Donelan et al, 2013). Autoantigens are expressed in COS1 cells as recombinant luciferase-autoantigen fusion proteins. These are reacted with the test sera; if the latter contains autoantibodies to the autoantigen, the immunoglobulins will complex with the fusion protein. Protein A/G beads are used to capture IgG molecules that have bound the luciferase-autoantigen. Addition of a luciferase substrate generates a light signal that permits autoantibody quantitation (Maat et al, 2013; Fhied et al, 2014; Porcelijn et al, 2014).

A completely different technique for analyzing biomarkers is a form of mass spectroscopy called multiple reaction monitoring (MRM). This technology (Fu et al, 2010; Parker et al, 2014) has been adapted to the analysis of proteins in plasma. MRM is especially useful in quantifying specific proteins within highly complex biological mixtures. In this procedure, three quadrupole mass spectrometers are linked in tandem. The first quadrupole mass spectrometer selects the precursor ion of interest. Fragmentation occurs in the second quadrupole mass spectrometer, usually by collision with a neutral gas. The third quadrupole mass spectrometer then analyzes the fragments. Stable isotope (^{13}C or ^{15}N)–labeled internal standard peptides are the key to quantification.

Phage immunoprecipitation sequencing (PhIP seq) uses the T7 bacteriophage, which is designed to express over 400,000 overlapping peptides of all known human protein sequences (Larman et al, 2011). The engineered phage is called a T7 peptidome phage display library ("T7-Pep"). The T7-Pep library is mixed with patient samples (e.g., cerebrospinal fluid). Autoantibodies present in the biological specimen will bind to the phage-expressed protein. These antibodies and bound phage are captured on a solid phase system. In this way, DNA from the immunoprecipitated phage can be isolated and sequenced, permitting identification of the autoantigen to which the autoantibody binds.

AUTOANTIBODIES AS PREDICTORS OF DISEASE

The answer to the question "Can autoantibodies predict disease?" is dependent on the specific disease under review. In the proper circumstances, the detection of an autoantibody can predict the subsequent development of disease (Coco et al, 2006). This is most evident in the current research effort to prevent type 1 diabetes (Sosenko et al, 2015). In persons with multiple islet autoantibodies (e.g., ≥3), there is conservatively more than a 50% of risk of developing type 1 diabetes over the span of 5 to 10 years of follow-up. If there is evidence of beta-cell dysfunction with even one islet autoantibody (e.g., ICA), the 10-year risk for type 1 diabetes approaches 100%.

There are many other autoimmune diseases where autoantibody positivity predicts disease (Vojdani, 2008). This has been extensively studied in the organ-specific endocrinopathies of AITD and Addison disease developing in persons with type 1 diabetes who are positive, respectively, for thyroid autoantibodies (e.g., TPOA) or adrenal cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ACA) (Ketchum et al, 1984; Maclaren & Riley, 1985). Likewise, gastric parietal cell autoantibodies in persons with type 1 diabetes predict the development of pernicious anemia (Riley et al, 1982).

If autoantibodies can predict certain diseases, is it prudent that we screen the general population for various organ-specific autoantibodies? The answer to this question is complex. The answer depends on the following factors:

1. Can the disease be prevented, or does early detection of disease only allow earlier treatment of disease?
2. How common is the autoimmune disease?
3. What is the cost of treatment versus the cost of screening?
4. Does screening actually change outcome?
5. What is the morbid burden to the individual and society of delayed diagnosis?

Considering these issues, there are few circumstances where screening for autoimmune diseases should be undertaken in the absence of a preexisting autoimmune disease or a family history of autoimmune disease.

In the case of type 1 diabetes, because of the high prevalence of associated AITD, pernicious anemia, and Addison disease (which if untreated can be rapidly fatal), it is recommended that persons with type 1 diabetes be screened for thyroid autoimmunity with TPOA testing, chronic

lymphocytic gastritis (the most common cause of pernicious anemia) with gastric parietal cell autoantibodies (PCA), and adrenal autoimmunity with adrenocortical cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ACA) or 21-hydroxylase autoantibodies (Maclaren & Riley, 1985). If a person is autoantibody positive, periodic testing would follow: In TPOA-positive individuals, TSH is measured yearly; in PCA-positive individuals, vitamin B_{12} and ferritin are measured yearly; and in ACA-positive individuals, yearly cosyntropin stimulation testing is performed together with supine renin measurements (Haller et al, 2014). The prediction of Addison disease is likely the most important screening to be undertaken because Addisonian crisis can be fatal.

Because some autoimmune diseases are strongly familial, it may be beneficial to perform autoantibody screening in first-degree relatives of affected individuals. The best example of this situation is thyrogastric autoimmunity. AITD is strongly familial and is common. Although no single gene causes AITD, it appears to be inherited in a dominant fashion. If the proband has Hashimoto thyroiditis or Graves disease, their first-degree relatives can be screened for TPOA to anticipate AITD. TPOA-positive relatives would then have yearly thyroid function testing including, at a minimum, the measurement of TSH. Gastric autoimmunity (e.g., PCA and pernicious anemia) is commonly associated with AITD, so PCA testing is worthwhile to pursue. If the person is PCA positive, vitamin B_{12} and ferritin are measured yearly.

CUTANEOUS AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

Immunofluorescence testing is an important supplement to light microscopy in the diagnosis of immunobullous disease, connective tissue disease, and vasculitis. These autoimmune skin diseases will show certain patterns of immune complex deposition at various locations within the skin on direct immunofluorescence (DIF) examination, which can aid in the diagnosis of specific conditions (Box 54-4). This is especially true for the autoimmune bullous disorders, where immunofluorescence is still considered the gold standard for diagnosis. The definitive differentiation of the autoimmune skin diseases is becoming more important for prognosis and treatment decisions.

Autoimmune bullous disorders represent a heterogeneous group of blistering diseases of the skin and mucous membranes that are characterized by autoantibodies to structural components in the skin (Table 54-1). Classification of the blister location as intraepidermal or subepidermal divides the immunobullous disorders into the pemphigus and pemphigoid group, respectively. The pemphigus group is associated with antibodies against epidermal desmosomal proteins and intercellular deposits between keratinocytes, while the detection of immune deposits at the basement membrane zone (BMZ) is characteristic of the pemphigoid group. Because there can be considerable overlap in the clinical and histologic features of these blistering disorders, accurate diagnosis of an autoimmune bullous disease requires the detection of tissue-bound and circulating autoantibodies. Knowledge of appropriate biopsy locations is also necessary for correct interpretation of immunofluorescence results. For blistering disorders, punch biopsy should be taken from nonblistered perilesional skin.

PEMPHIGUS

Pemphigus describes a rare group of potentially life-threatening, mucocutaneous blistering diseases characterized by the production of antibodies

BOX 54-4

Location of Immunofluorescence Findings in Autoimmune Skin Diseases: Pattern of Deposition

Intraepidermal (Intercellular)

Pemphigus vulgaris
Pemphigus foliaceus
Paraneoplastic pemphigus
IgA pemphigus

Dermal-Epidermal Junction (Basement Membrane Zone)

Bullous pemphigoid
Mucous membrane pemphigoid
Pemphigoid gestationis
Epidermolysis bullosa aquisita
Bullous lupus erythematosus
Linear IgA dermatosis
Lupus erythematosus

Dermal Papillae Disease

Dermatitis herpetiformis

Intravascular

Vasculitis

TABLE 54-1

Immunopathologic Features and Target Antigens of Autoimmune Bullous Diseases

Diagnosis	Blister Site/Ultrastructural Location	Autoantigen	DIF	IIF
Intraepidermal				
Pemphigus vulgaris	Suprabasal	Dsg 3, Dsg 1	Intercellular IgG and C3	Intercellular IgG (monkey esophagus)
Pemphigus foliaceus	Subcorneal or within granular layer	Dsg 1	Intercellular IgG and C3	Intercellular IgG (guinea pig esophagus or lip)
Paraneoplastic pemphigus	Suprabasal	Dsg 3, Dsg 1, plakin family (desmoplakin 1 and 2, envoplakin, periplakin, BP230, plectin, A2ML1)	Intercellular IgG +/– C3 and at DEJ	Intercellular IgG (rat bladder)
IgA pemphigus	Subcorneal	Desmocollin 1, Dsg 3	Intercellular IgA	Intercellular IgA
Subepidermal				
Bullous pemphigoid	Hemidesmosome	BP180, BP230	Linear IgG and C3 at BMZ	IgG at BMZ SS: epidermal
Pemphigoid gestationis	Hemidesmosome	BP180, BP230	Linear C3 at BMZ	
Mucous membrane pemphigoid	Lamina lucida	BP180, laminin 332, α6β4 integrin, laminin 311, BP230	Linear IgG, C3, and IgA at BMZ	IgG at BMZ SS: epidermal or mixed SS: dermal (laminin 332
Epidermolysis bullosa acquisita	Anchoring fibrils	Type VII collagen	Linear IgG and C3 at BMZ, +/– IgA and IgM	IgG at BMZ SS: dermal
Linear IgA dermatosis	Lamina lucida	LAD-1	Linear IgA at BMZ, +/– C3	IgA at BMZ SS: epidermal, dermal or mixed
Dermatitis herpetiformis	Papillary dermis	Epidermal transglutaminase	Granular IgA at tips of dermal papillae, +/– C3	IgA endomysial antibody (monkey esophagus)

DIF, Direct immunofluorescence; *IIF,* indirect immunofluorescence; *Dsg,* desmoglein; *BP,* bullous pemphigoid; *A2ML1,* α2-macroglobulin-like 1; *DEJ,* dermoepidermal junction; *LAD-1,* linear IgA disease antigen 1; *BMZ,* basement membrane zone.
+/–, with or without.
SS, Salt-split skin.

to epidermal adhesion molecules, resulting in loss of cellular cohesion between keratinocytes (acantholysis) and intraepidermal bullae formation (Kershenovich, 2014). This intraepidermal acantholysis is considered the histologic hallmark of the pemphigus group and is responsible for the clinical presentation of flaccid blisters and erosions (Schmidt, 2010). Through the direct interference in desmosomal function, pathogenic autoantibodies to desmoglein 3 and/or desmoglein 1 on epidermal keratinocytes play an active role in disease activity (Kershenovich, 2014). Three major variants have been described in this group and include pemphigus vulgaris, pemphigus foliaceus, and paraneoplastic pemphigus. Review of their clinical, histopathological, and immunopathological findings may provide differentiating features that are helpful in the diagnosis of the pemphigus subtype (Joly, 2011; Kershenovich, 2014).

Pemphigus Vulgaris

Pemphigus vulgaris (PV) is the most common variant of pemphigus. The mean age of disease onset is between 40 and 60 years of age, with no gender bias (Nancy, 2009; Joly, 2011). Desmogleins 1 and 3 (Dsg1, Dsg3) are the target autoantigens for circulating IgG autoantibodies in this disease. Because of differences in the expression of the desmogleins in cutaneous and mucosal epithelium, patients may present with one of two clinical variants. For example, an anti-Dsg3 immune profile will present with mucosal-dominant disease, but the presence of antibodies to both Dsg1 and 3 will result in the mucocutaneous phenotype (Amagai, 1999).

Patients with PV often present with painful oral mucosal lesions as their first manifestation of disease, and it is the most frequent site of involvement. Skin involvement classically consists of flaccid bullae that rupture easily and multiple painful erosions. Skin lesions may present on any part of the body, but the scalp, head, neck, and flexural surfaces are more favored sites. There is a positive Nikolsky sign in perilesional skin in both PV and pemphigus foliaceus. In the Nikolsky sign, when the skin is slightly rubbed, the top layers of skin slip apart from the lower layers. Five percent to 10% of PV cases are fatal, and morbidity/mortality is related to the extent of disease and the complications from immunosuppressive treatment (Joly, 2011).

Histologic and Immunologic Features

The intraepidermal acantholysis that characterizes the histology of the pemphigus group of blistering disorders is found in a classic suprabasalar location. Cleavage above the basal layer keratinocytes has been said to resemble a "row of tombstones" sitting on the basement membrane.

Direct immunofluorescence (DIF) evaluation reveals an intercellular pattern of IgG deposition and C3 characteristics of all types of pemphigus, with the exception of IgA pemphigus (Fig. 54-5). Examination of perilesional skin in PV reveals linear and granular staining. This pattern may be described as "chicken wire" because of the hexagonal mesh outline created by the continuous deposition around individual keratinocytes (Fig. 54-6). Increased intensity of the staining pattern may be seen at the level of blister formation within the affected skin—that is, lower epidermal for PV and superficial layers for pemphigus foliaceus (Chhabra, 2012). The basement membrane zone does not stain in PV patients. Essentially, all patients with PV display IgG staining, whereas complement staining varies between 50% and 100% of cases. IgM or IgA staining is observed in 30% to 50% of cases of pemphigus.

Circulating IgG autoantibodies are detected on the surfaces of the squamous epithelial cells by indirect immunofluorescence (IIF). For all investigations by IIF, the appropriate choice of tissue substrate is important because different substrates exhibit different autoantigens (Kershenovich, 2014). Monkey esophagus is the tissue of choice when testing for PV. On the other hand, guinea pig esophagus is the tissue of choice in cases of pemphigus foliaceus. Reference laboratories offer tests such as "Cutaneous Immunofluorescence Antibodies (IgG), Serum" (see http://www.mayomedicallaboratories.com/test-catalog/Overview/8052).

Reference laboratories provide ELISA-based testing for anti–desmoglein 1 and anti–desmoglein 3 autoantibodies. One reference laboratory provides a helpful interpretive summary of skin immunofluorescence testing (see http://www.mayomedicallaboratories.com/test-catalog/Overview/83680).

Pemphigus Foliaceus

Pemphigus foliaceus (PF) is characterized clinically by small and superficial flaccid blisters that immediately rupture, evolving into crusted erosions found in a seborrheic distribution (upper torso, scalp, and face). In contrast to PV, there is no mucosal involvement. Antibodies to Dsg1 are responsible for the findings in PF. Although PF is considered to have a less severe clinical course, the eruption still requires treatment with prolonged systemic immunosuppressive therapies (Joly, 2011). The serologic hallmark of PF is the demonstration of IgG autoantibodies against Dsg1, and serum levels have been found to correlate with disease severity (Ishii, 2015). Fogo selvagem (endemic pemphigus) and pemphigus erythematosus (Senear-Usher syndrome) are two distinct clinical variants within PF.

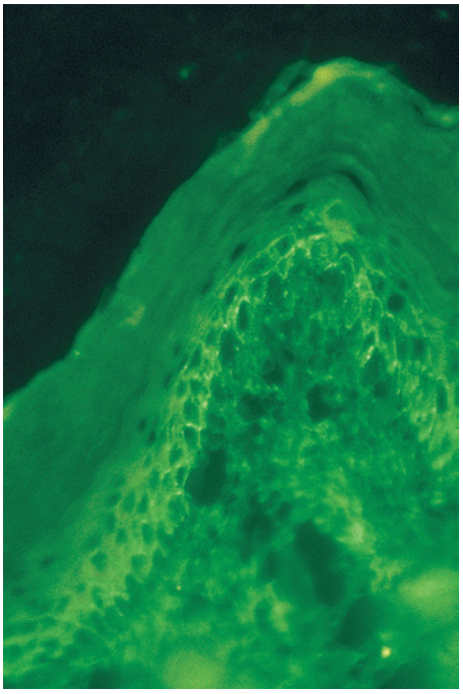


Figure 54-5 Direct immunofluorescence microscopy of skin lesions in pemphigus shows linear/granular C3 deposition on the cell surfaces (intercellular spaces) of mainly basal keratinocytes without basement membrane zone (BMZ) immunofluorescence (×400).

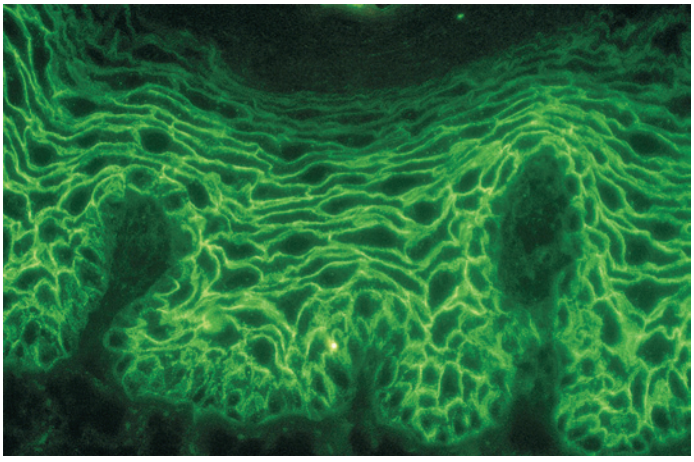


Figure 54-6 Indirect immunofluorescence microscopy in pemphigus shows linear immunoglobulin (IgG) immunofluorescence on the cell surfaces of epithelial cells (intercellular spaces) using mouse esophagus as tissue substrate (×250).

Histologic and Immunologic Features

Compared to PV, the epidermal split in foliaceus lesions is found in the most superficial layers of the epidermis. Acantholysis can be found within the granular layer or in a subcorneal location and may result in loss of the stratum corneum. The differences in intraepidermal blister location correlate with the differences in desmoglein expression within the skin between the pemphigus subtypes. Eosinophilic spongiosis has been reported in some cases of PF. *Spongiosis* is the descriptive term for increased intercellular fluid in the epidermis (e.g., intercellular edema) that separates keratinocytes from one another, highlighting their desmosomal connections.

Direct immunofluorescence (DIF) of biopsy tissue will show the same intercellular pattern of fluorescence as described in PV. Guinea pig esophagus is recommended as the most sensitive IIF substrate, and testing should detect circulating IgG autoantibodies to the epithelial cell surface in 90% of specimens (Arbache, 2014). In addition, serologic titers reported in PV and PF may correlate with disease activity and treatment response (Mutasim, 2001).

Paraneoplastic Pemphigus

Paraneoplastic pemphigus (PNP) is a unique form of pemphigus that is characterized by a refractory stomatitis and an association with an underlying malignancy. Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, Castleman disease, and thymoma are the most commonly reported neoplasms (Vassileva, 2014). In addition to painful mucosal erosions, a polymorphic skin eruption and internal organ involvement are possible (Hertl, 2014). The prognosis of the mucocutaneous disease is linked to the presence of the associated neoplasm. In addition to the clinical distinctions from classic pemphigus, the autoantibody profile is more diverse and includes antibodies to the desmogleins and plakin family proteins (i.e., envoplakin, periplakin, plectin, desmoplakin 1 and 2) (Schmidt, 2010).

Histologic and Immunologic Features

The histopathologic features in PNP combine the acantholysis characteristic of pemphigus with changes of interface dermatitis with necrotic keratinocytes. Antibodies in PNP are directed against both desmosomal and hemidesmosomal proteins and explain why DIF shows immunoreactivity within the epidermis and at the BMZ. BMZ deposition of IgG and complement can be found in a linear or granular pattern along the dermoepidermal junction. If the histologic features and DIF findings suggest the diagnosis of PNP, IIF studies should be pursued. IIF testing using rat bladder epithelium is considered the best screening test for PNP (Mutasim, 2001). Additional laboratory tests such as immunoprecipitation, immunoblotting, and enzyme-linked immunosorbant assay (ELISA) are helpful in confirming the diagnosis after initial workup.

IgA Pemphigus

The hallmark of IgA pemphigus is the intercellular deposition of IgA as the target antigen is present in desmosomes. Neutrophil infiltration follows the presence of tissue-bound IgA and results in epidermal acantholysis and vesiculation (Zone, 2004).

Histologic and Immunologic Features

Subcorneal acantholysis with intraepithelial neutrophilic collections characterize IgA pemphigus histopathology. DIF will show that intercellular IgA deposits are present within the epidermis in a typical pemphigus pattern. Positive IIF for circulating IgA is found in 50% of patients (Mutasim, 2001).

PEMPHIGOID

The pemphigoid group of autoimmune bullous disorders is characterized by subepidermal blister formation due to the loss of adhesion between the basal layer keratinocytes and the underlying basement membrane. Autoantibodies are directed at one or more structural proteins found in the hemidesmosome, lamina lucida, lamina densa, or anchoring fibrils that make up the BMZ. This group of disorders includes bullous pemphigoid, pemphigoid gestationis, mucous membrane pemphigoid, and linear IgA dermatosis.

In addition to the pemphigoid group, epidermolysis bullosa acquisita and dermatitis herpetiformis are other immunobullous disorders that share the histologic hallmark of subepidermal blister formation. Because of clinical and histologic overlap among these disorders, immunofluorescence studies can play a critical role in the distinction among disorders (see Table 54-1). The salt-split skin technique is an additional test that can be used in the evaluation of the subepidermal blistering disorders to increase the sensitivity of antibody detection and gain further information on the autoantibody binding site (Mutasim, 2001; Aoki, 2010).

Bullous Pemphigoid

Bullous pemphigoid (BP) is the most common type of autoimmune bullous disorder, and it occurs most frequently in the elderly. Clinically, BP patients present with urticarial lesions and tense blisters on the trunk and extremities, with associated pruritus. Mucosal involvement is uncommon and is reported in 10% to 30% of BP patients (Baum, 2014). The Nikolsky sign is negative in BP.

In BP, autoantibodies target the two hemidesmosomal proteins: bullous pemphigoid antigen 1 (BPAg1 [BP230]) and bullous pemphigoid antigen 2 (BPAg2 [BP180]). BPAg2, also known as type XVII collagen, is a transmembrane protein that is determined to be the target autoantigen for pathogenic autoantibodies in BP (Vassileva, 2014). In it is unclear if autoantibodies to BPAg1, a cytoplasmic plakin family protein, relate to the pathogenesis of BP (Schmidt, 2010). Complement activation is believed to follow autoantibody binding, causing the physical loss of adhesion between the basal cell layer and the basement membrane (Kershenovich, 2014).

Histologic and Immunologic Features

A subepidermal blister with a superficial dermal inflammatory infiltrate, including numerous eosinophils, describes the typical histopathological findings in bullous lesions of BP (Fig. 54-7, *A*). Eosinophilic spongiosis may serve as a clue in early lesions (Baum, 2014). Neutrophil predominant and cell-poor variants also exist and may pose a diagnostic challenge.

Direct immunofluorescence (DIF) of perilesional skin reveals linear IgG and/or C3 deposition at the BMZ in BP, pemphigoid gestationis, and mucous membrane pemphioid (Fig. 54-7, *B*). The finding of C3 deposition with a stronger intensity than IgG favors a pemphigoid group

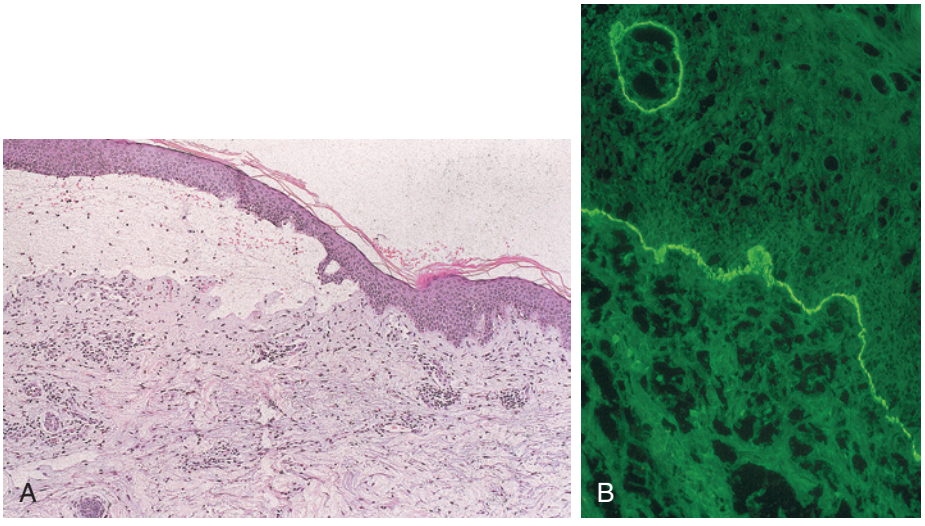


Figure 54-7 **A,** Skin biopsy of pemphigoid reveals a subepidermal split, nonnecrotic epidermis, and variable inflammation, often with prominent eosinophils (hematoxylin and eosin [H&E], ×100). **B,** Direct immunofluorescence microscopy reveals intense linear C3 deposition along the basement membrane zone (BMZ) (×400).

disease (Mutasim, 2001). Complement may sometimes be found as the sole immunoreactant in BP, but more often in pemphigoid gestationis. IgA and/or IgM staining can also be present but will stain with less intensity. IIF shows circulating IgG anti-BMZ autoantibodies in 75% of patients (Mutasim, 2001).

Serum IgG autoantibodies to BPAg1 and BPAg2 can be detected using ELISA testing. The sensitivity of ELISA BPAg1 autoantibodies in cases of bullous pemphigoid is approximately 60%, and the sensitivity of ELISA BPAg2 autoantibodies for bullous pemphigoid is approximately 80% (Roussel et al, 2011).

Pemphigoid Gestationis

Pemphigoid gestationis (PG), previously known as herpes gestationis, is considered to be a form of BP that develops during pregnancy. PG usually develops in the second or third trimester and typically resolves within weeks to months after delivery. Because this is a humoral autoimmune disease, the newborn can be transiently affected through passive maternal transfer of IgG autoantibodies (Mihai, 2007).

Histologic and Immunologic Features

Linear deposits of C3 are present in 100% of PG patients with IgG deposits found less frequently in 30% to 40% of cases. IIF detects anti-BMZ autoantibodies in only 10% to 20% of patients (Aoki, 2010).

Mucous Membrane Pemphigoid

Mucous membrane pemphigoid (MMP), also known as cicatricial pemphigoid, is a rare, chronic variant of pemphigoid characterized by predominant mucous membrane disease. Erosions, blisters, and scarring may involve oral, conjunctival, nasal, laryngeal, esophageal, and anogenital mucosa. Lesions often heal with scarring, which can interfere with the normal function of the affected area, producing significant morbidity. For example, ocular cicatricial pemphigoid presents with progressive subconjunctival scarring that leads to decreased vision and eventual blindness (Chan, 2012).

Several target autoantigens have been identified with the recognition of a few clinically important variants. MMP with autoantibodies against laminin 332 is clinically indistinguishable from other forms of MMP but is associated with an increased risk of internal malignancy (Vassileva, 2014).

Histologic and Immunologic Features

Perilesional skin and mucosal biopsies reveal continuous IgG and C3 deposits, with occasional IgA present along the basement membrane by DIF. IIF studies are usually negative. Because the numerous target autoantigens in MMP vary in their location within the BMZ, the site of autoantibody binding on salt-split skin microscopic exam may be epidermal, dermal, or both. IIF salt-split skin studies do increase the sensitivity of detection and can be positive in approximately 80% of cases of MMP.

LINEAR IgA DERMATOSIS

Linear IgA dermatosis (LAD) is a rare subepidermal blistering disease due to IgA autoantibodies directed at autoantigens in the BMZ. Activated complement and neutrophil infiltration result in the disruption of the dermoepidermal attachments and blister formation. The clinical lesions of LAD can be polymorphic, but annular patterns of tense vesicles or blisters are classically described. Most cases of LAD are considered idiopathic, but drug-induced cases are reported. Chronic bullous dermatosis of childhood is considered a childhood form of linear IgA dermatosis.

Histologic and Immunologic Features

The strong presence of IgA linear deposition along the BMZ is characteristic of LAD (Mutasim, 2001). These features help separate it from the DIF findings in dermatitis herpetiformis. In addition, only LAD shows lgA anti-BMZ autoantibodies by IIF examination (Chhabra, 2012).

EPIDERMOLYSIS BULLOSA ACQUISITA

Epidermolysis bullosa acquisita (EBA) is a rare subepidermal blistering disorder characterized by autoantibodies against type VII collagen, the anchoring fibrils of the BMZ. EBA is a clinically heterogeneous disease and presents with inflammatory and noninflammatory forms. The noninflammatory form manifests as a mechanobullous disorder that is characterized by skin fragility, trauma-induced lesions, and scarring (Vassileva, 2014). The inflammatory forms can mimic BP or LAD with a more widespread blistering eruption or present with blisters and scarring of mucous membranes similar to MMP (Mihai, 2007). EBA has been associated with several systemic diseases, with inflammatory bowel disease being most frequent (Vassileva, 2014).

Bullous lupus erythematosus is an autoimmune bullous disease that occurs in patients diagnosed with systemic lupus erythematosus (Fig. 54-8). It is also due to autoantibodies against type VII collagen. The immunofluorescence findings can be similar to EBA.

Histologic and Immunologic Features

The presence of multiple types of immunoglobulin at the BMZ is typical of EBA. IgG and C3 are typically present. IgA and IgM are found in 67% and 50% of cases, respectively (Aoki, 2010). IIF demonstrates anti-BMZ IgG autoantibodies in a pattern similar to BP. The salt-split skin technique is useful in this situation because it enhances the differentiation of these disorders through the localization of fluorescence. The serum of BP

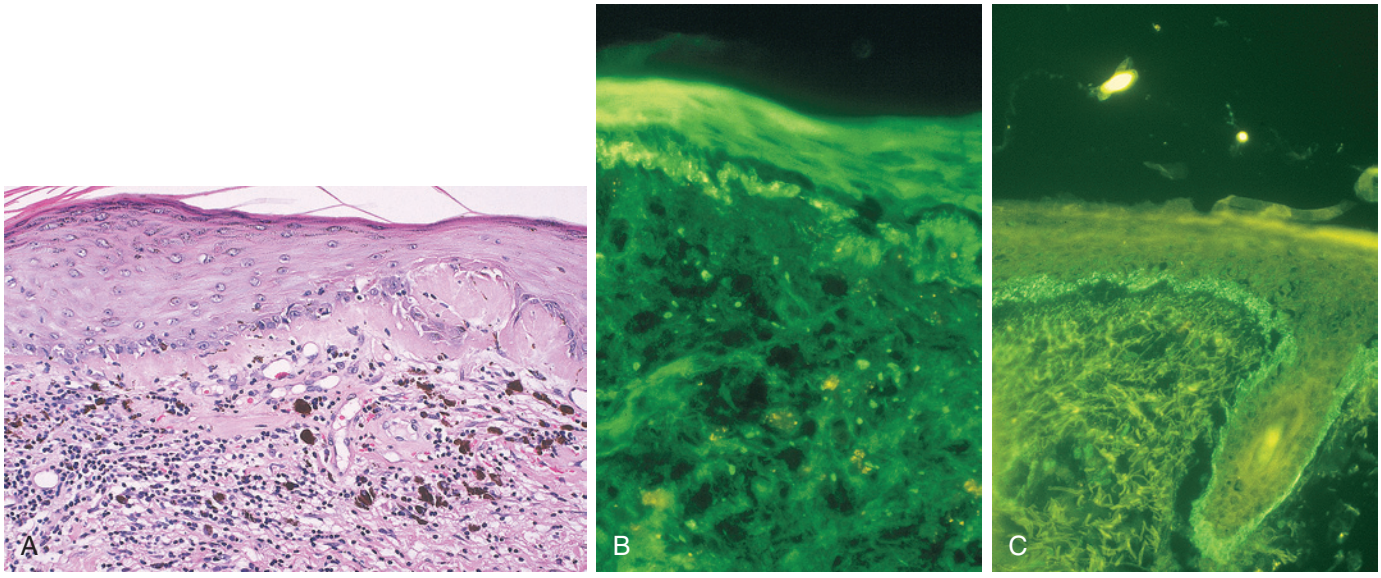


Figure 54-8 **A,** Skin biopsy of lupus erythematosus reveals epidermal atrophy, vacuolar alternation of basal keratinocytes, marked thickening of the basement membrane zone, perivascular and interstitial mainly lymphocytic inflammation, and melanin incontinence (hematoxylin and eosin [H&E], ×500). **B,** Direct immunofluorescence microscopy reveals continuous granular C3 immunofluorescence along the basement membrane zone (BMZ) (×500). **C,** Direct immunofluorescence microscopy reveals continuous granular C1q along the basement membrane zone (BMZ) (×500).

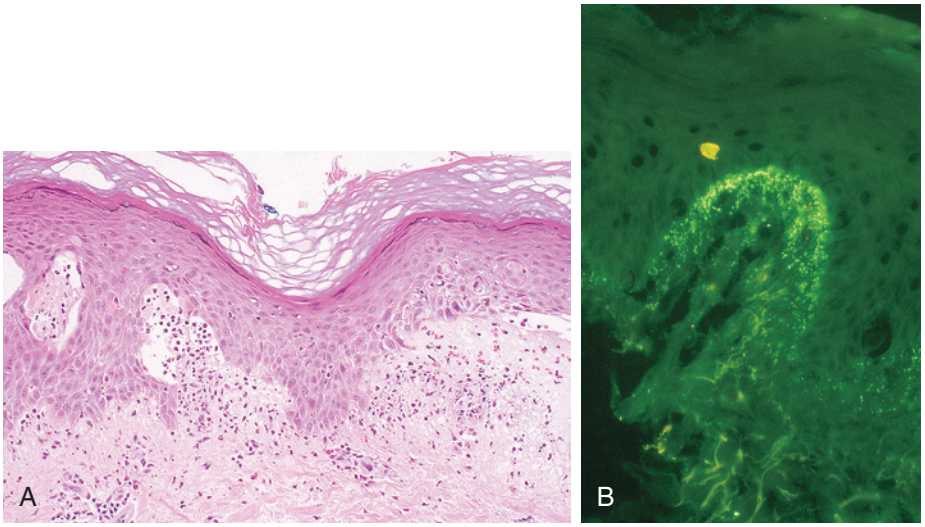


Figure 54-9 **A,** Skin biopsy of dermatitis herpetiformis reveals a subepidermal split, nonnecrotic epidermis, and neutrophilic microabscesses in the tips of the dermal papillae (hematoxylin and eosin [H&E], ×200). **B,** Direct immunofluorescence microscopy reveals granular immunoglobulin (Ig) A immunofluorescence in the tips of the dermal papillae and, to a lesser extent, along the basement membrane region (×400).

patients shows autoantibody binding to the roof of the blister (epidermal side), and EBA sera will show binding to the blister floor (dermal side). This is based on the localization of the autoantigens responsible for the related disease.

DERMATITIS HERPETIFORMIS

Dermatitis herpetiformis (DH) is an intensely pruritic and chronic blistering disorder associated with gluten-sensitive enteropathy (e.g., celiac disease). Patients present with papulovesicules and excoriations on the extensor surfaces, typically in a symmetric distribution. The lesions can be found in groups or clusters giving a "herpetiform" appearance—hence the name. Gastrointestinal involvement will manifest as symptoms of malabsorption, but gastrointestinal involvement is present in only approximately 20% of DH patients (Mendes, 2013). Symptoms of DH and celiac disease will improve with a gluten-free diet. IgA autoantibodies directed against tissue epidermal transglutaminase (eTG) are thought to play a more central role in the pathogenesis of skin disease in patients with DH (Rose, 2009; Ishii, 2015).

Histologic and Immunologic Features

Biopsies should be performed on perilesional normal-appearing skin. Typical histopathologic features include the formation of neutrophilic microabscesses at the tips of dermal papillae and a mixed perivascular inflammatory infiltrate including few eosinophils (Mihai, 2007) (Fig. 54-9, *A*). As lesions progress, a subepidermal blister may form. The histologic findings of DH may be indistinguishable from linear IgA disease.

The diagnosis of DH requires DIF examination of a skin biopsy, revealing granular IgA deposition in the dermal papilla (Mutasim, 2001) (Fig. 54-9, *B*). Other findings may include IgA deposits along the BMZ and the presence of C3 deposits (Arbache, 2014). Contrary to the other subepidermal immunobullous disorders, DH patients do not have circulating anti-BMZ autoantibodies. However, serum IgA autoantibodies directed against endomysium, gliadin, tTG (tissue transglutaminase), and eTG (epidermal transglutaminase) can be detected (Mutasim, 2001; Schmidt, 2010). IIF can be used to detect antiendomysial autoantibodies when monkey esophagus is used (Arbache, 2014) (Fig. 54-10). Presently, ELISA is the preferred method for serologic investigations in DH (Cunha, 2009).

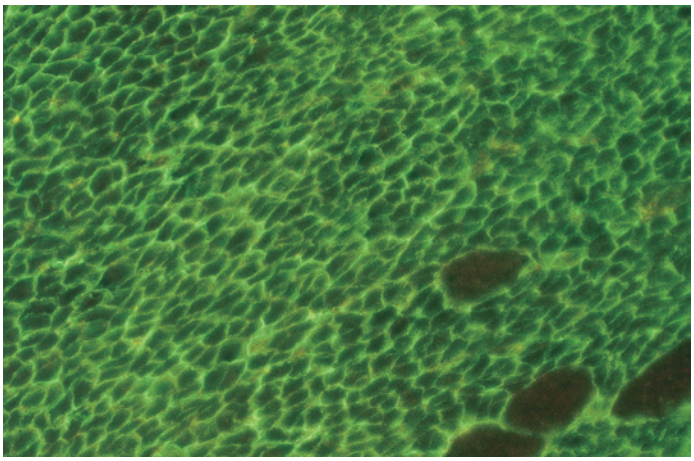


Figure 54-10 Indirect immunofluorescence microscopy of immunoglobulin (Ig) A endomysial autoantibodies using monkey esophagus as substrate (×400).

VASCULITIS

Cutaneous vasculitis describes a spectrum of diseases that involve the inflammation and destruction of small or medium-sized vessels in the skin. It can present as skin-limited disease, but it may also be associated with a larger systemic vasculitis and extracutaneous involvement. Clinically, cutaneous small vessel vasculitis (CSVV) classically presents as palpable purpura of the lower extremities. Clinical findings of nodular erythema, livedo patterns, and ulcers may implicate a medium-sized vessel vasculitic process like polyarteritis nodosa (PAN). A mottled purplish discoloration of the skin can be described as "livedo reticularis." While many cases of CSVV are idiopathic, a thorough evaluation for an underlying cause or internal organ involvement should be completed.

Histologic and Immunologic Features

CSVV typically displays a characteristic histologic pattern described as leukocytoclastic vasculitis (LCV). Biopsy shows neutrophils and neutrophilic debris (leukocytoclasia) surrounding the small vessels in the superficial dermis, along with evidence of vessel damage seen as fibrin in vessel walls and extravasated red blood cells. Biopsies should include the subcutis in order to evaluate the patient for vasculitis involving the larger vessels in the skin.

Just as in the evaluation of blistering disorders, the timing and location of biopsy impact the diagnostic yield of DIF testing. A biopsy should be performed on a lesion that is less than 24 hours old (Mutasim, 2001). Deposits of C3, IgM, IgG, and fibrinogen are found within the walls of the postcapillary venules (Aoki, 2010). A vasculitis with IgA as the primary immunoreactant suggests the diagnosis of Henoch-Schönlein purpura (HSP). HSP is a type of CSVV associated with renal and gastrointestinal involvement and is commonly described in children (Mutasim, 2001). A negative DIF does not exclude a diagnosis of CSVV and should be interpreted together with the clinical and histologic findings.

GASTROINTESTINAL AND HEPATOBILIARY AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

PERNICIOUS ANEMIA

The term *pernicious anemia* (PA) refers specifically to a state of vitamin B_{12} (cobalamin) deficiency that results from lack of gastric intrinsic factor, which in turn is a consequence of an autoimmune gastritis (Toh et al, 1997; Green, 2010). PA is typically a disease of middle age or older. While the mean age at diagnosis is 59 to 62 years, it may present in younger individuals. In one study, 10% of patients were between 30 and 40 years of age (Lahner & Annibale, 2009). PA was once thought to be restricted to Northern Europeans, but it has now been described in many ethnic groups. The disorder is initiated by a T lymphocyte–mediated inflammation of the gastric mucosa. The autoimmune gastritis affects the body of the stomach with antral sparing and is typically associated with autoantibodies to gastric parietal cells and to intrinsic factor itself (see below). The gastritis leads to mucosal atrophy, achlorhydria, and very high serum gastrin concentrations, the last being an attempted compensation.

To avoid confusion, use of the term *pernicious anemia* should be restricted to the autoimmune gastritis/vitamin B_{12} malabsorption syndrome outlined earlier, and it should not be used interchangeably with any other cause of vitamin B_{12} deficiency. Furthermore, not all cases of vitamin B_{12} deficiency result in hematologic manifestations; in some instances, neurologic features may predominate or may be the sole clinical manifestation.

Parietal cell autoantibodies (PCA) bind to the H^+/K^+-ATPase pump on gastric parietal cells (Bizzaro & Antico, 2014). PCA are more common than intrinsic factor autoantibodies but are less specific. PCA are found in 80% to 90% of those with early pernicious anemia. This may fall to 55% in more advanced disease. PCA have been found in about 30% of nonanemic first-degree relatives of those with PA. PCA may be detected in otherwise healthy adults: 2.5% of individuals in the fourth decade and 10% of those in the eighth decade of life.

Intrinsic factor (IF) is a 60-Kd glycoprotein (15% carbohydrate by weight) that binds to vitamin B_{12} and allows specific attachment to a terminal ileal vitamin B_{12} receptor that is termed the *cubam* receptor complex. Autoantibodies to intrinsic factor (IFA) are of two major types: "type I," or "blocking," autoantibodies that prevent the combination of IF and vitamin B_{12}, and "type II," or "binding," autoantibodies that interfere with the attachment of the IF-vitamin B_{12} complex to the ileal receptor. IFA are found in 40% to 60% of patients with PA. The predominant antibody is the type I; about half the positive IFA cases have type II antibodies, and these are rarely present in the absence of type I antibodies. PCA can be measured either by indirect immunofluorescent staining of rodent or human stomach (Fig. 54-11) or by an ELISA immunoassay. IFAs are typically measured by ELISA.

The anatomic pathology of pernicious anemia is referred to as autoimmune corpus-restricted atrophic gastritis (Neumann et al, 2013) or "type A gastritis." Early features include lymphocytic and plasma cell infiltration of the mucosa of the gastric body. This is followed by loss of gastric parietal cells, intestinal metaplasia with the appearance of "goblet cells," pancreatic acinar metaplasia, and enterochromaffin-like cell (ECL cell) hyperplasia, the last being positive for chromogranin. These changes are confined to the body of the stomach and are distinct from multifocal atrophic gastritis caused by long-standing *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Patients with PA are at increased risk for gastric carcinoma. The relative risk of gastric adenocarcinoma is 6.8 (95% CI 2.6-18.1).

Pernicious anemia may be associated with other autoimmune disorders, including autoimmune thyroid disorders, type 1 diabetes, Addison disease, and vitiligo. The HLA genotypes HLA-DRB1*03 and HLA-DRB1*04 are significantly associated with autoimmune gastritis and PA. These genotypes are also associated with type 1 diabetes and autoimmune thyroid disease.

The true prevalence of pernicious anemia is difficult to determine because disease definitions are not clearly standardized, and estimates vary widely. Studies have placed the prevalence at about 1% to 2% (Carmel, 1996; 2000) and have estimated that PA is responsible for about 30% of all causes of vitamin B_{12} deficiency (Dali-Youcef & Andrès, 2009).

CELIAC DISEASE

Celiac disease is an immune-mediated small intestinal enteropathy caused by an abnormal immune response to epitopes of wheat gluten in patients who express the HLA-DQ2 or HLA-DQ8 (Di Sabatino et al, 2012). Celiac disease affects 0.5% to 1.0% of the western Europe and northern U.S. populations. Prevalence is increased in patients who have an affected first-degree relative, in patients with Down syndrome, and in patients who have other autoimmune diseases such as type 1 diabetes (Fasano & Catassi, 2012). The classic symptoms of celiac disease include malabsorption dominated by chronic diarrhea, steatorrhea, and weight loss (Ludvigsson et al, 2014). Patients also present with a diverse range of nonclassic symptoms, including anemia, vague abdominal symptoms, neuropathy, ataxia, depression, short stature, osteoporosis, liver disease, and lymphoma (Ludvigsson et al, 2014). Asymptomatic patients are discovered through screening when there is an affected first-degree relative, or they are tested because they have an associated autoimmune disease.

Celiac disease is initiated by the ingestion of gliadin, which can be found in foods containing wheat, barley, or rye. Gliadins are rich in glutamine and proline residues that the human intestine cannot fully digest, and, as a result, some intact gliadin peptides cross the intestinal barrier (Guandalini & Assiri, 2014).

Transglutaminases (tTG) are enzymes that catalyze the posttranslational modification of proteins by the formation of isopeptide bonds (Di Sabatino et al, 2012). Through deamidation, tTG converts glutamine residues into negatively charged glutamate residues, which have a much higher affinity for HLA-DQ2 and HLA-DQ8 molecules (Ludvigsson et al, 2014; Tonutti & Bizzaro, 2014). HLA-DQ2 and HLA-DQ8 molecules are expressed on the surface of antigen-presenting cells in the lamina propria and preferentially present to lamina propria CD4 T cells, gliadin peptides that have undergone deamidation by tTG (Di Sabatino et al, 2012). Recognition of HLA-bound and tTG-deamidated gliadin peptides by CD4 T cells induces their activation and production of cytokines (Di Sabatino et al, 2012). Some of the cytokines from T helper type 2 (Th2) cells drive the activation and clonal expansion of B cells, with consequent production of IgA antigliadin and anti-tTG autoantibodies. Other cytokines from Th1 cells promote inflammatory processes, leading to the development of the characteristic celiac histology (Di Sabatino et al, 2012).

Biopsies of the duodenum are essential to confirm the diagnosis of celiac disease. The characteristic histologic findings include increased

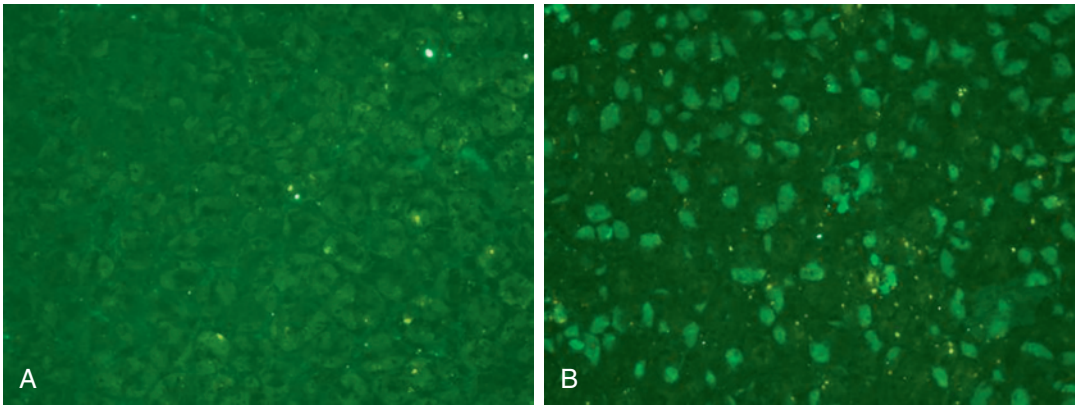


Figure 54-11 **Gastric parietal cell autoantibodies (PCA) can be detected by indirect immunofluorescence. A,** Negative control. **B,** Positive patient result.

intraepithelial CD8 T lymphocytes (>25 per 100 enterocytes), villous blunting, and crypt hyperplasia (Fasano & Catassi, 2012).

Serologic tests are fundamental to screening for celiac disease. Serologic screening is also recommended in all first-degree relatives of celiac disease patients. Initial testing involves measuring serum IgA antitissue transglutaminase autoantibodies (anti-tTG) because of their high sensitivity (94%), high specificity (97%), and excellent standardization (Fasano & Catassi, 2012). In patients with IgA deficiency, IgG anti-tTG autoantibodies can be measured. Measuring IgA endomysial autoantibodies (anti-EMA) is nearly 100% specific for active celiac disease, but it should only be used as a confirmatory test when anti-tTG autoantibody tests are borderline or when anti-tTG autoantibodies are falsely positive. This test that requires fluorescent microscopy is subject to interobserver variability (Fasano & Catassi, 2012; Tonutti & Bizzaro, 2014). Measuring IgG deamidated gliadin peptide antibodies (anti-DGP) is an alternative in patients with IgA deficiency because this test has reported better sensitivity and specificity than IgG anti-tTG autoantibodies. The sensitivity of serologic testing is significantly reduced in patients on a gluten-free diet; therefore, patients should maintain a normal, gluten-containing, diet prior to testing.

It is best to use a combination of IgA anti-tTG autoantibodies and IgG anti-DGP antibodies in diagnosing celiac disease (Tonutti & Bizzaro, 2014). A presumptive diagnosis of celiac disease can be made when the biopsy shows characteristic changes and the serologies are positive. Definitive diagnosis requires resolution of symptoms with a gluten-free diet (NIH Consensus, 2004). If the diagnosis is uncertain, testing for HLA-DQ2 and HLA-DQ8 may be useful to help classify patients as being at high or low risk for celiac disease. Ninety percent of patients with celiac disease have HLA-DQ2, which is expressed in only a third of the general population. Another 5% of celiac disease patients have HLA-DQ8. The remaining 5% of celiac patients have at least one of the two gene alleles encoding DQ2 (Fasano & Catassi, 2012). Testing has a high negative predictive value, meaning the disease is very unlikely to develop in patients who are negative for both HLA-DQ2 and HLA-DQ8. Less than 1% of patients with celiac disease are negative for DQ2 and DQ8 (Fasano & Catassi, 2012). A lifelong gluten-free diet is the cornerstone therapy for celiac disease (Fasano & Catassi, 2012).

INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is a heterogeneous disease with an incompletely understood etiopathogenesis. Several immunological, genetic, and environmental factors have been identified that may contribute to this immunoallergic disorder (Laass et al, 2014). Currently studies are focused on the imbalance between tolerance to the intestinal microbiota and the mucosal immune responses in genetically predisposed individuals (Conrad et al, 2014). First-degree relatives of patients with IBD have a ten- to fifteenfold increased risk for IBD (Laass et al, 2014).

Ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease (CD) are the most frequently diagnosed forms of IBD (Laass et al, 2014). UC is clinically characterized by bloody diarrhea and chronic abdominal pain. CD is characterized by abdominal pain, diarrhea, weight loss, and fever (Laass et al, 2014). Endoscopically, CD is characterized by discontinuous transmural ulcerations with frequent involvement of the ileocecal region (Laass et al, 2014). CD-related lesions can be found throughout the digestive tract, in contrast to UC, in which disease is typically limited to the colon. Histologically, UC is characterized by diffuse mononuclear inflammatory infiltrate of the lamina propria with a basal lymphoplasmacytosis, cryptitis, crypt abscesses, mucosal ulceration, architectural distortion, Paneth cell metaplasia, and pseudopolyp formation. CD is characterized by focal transmural inflammation with scattered lymphoid aggregates; noncaseating, poorly formed granulomas; cryptitis; crypt abscesses; and architectural distortion.

In some patients, a definitive diagnosis of UC or CD cannot be made, and therefore the patient is classified as having "indeterminate colitis." Serologic biomarkers can be especially useful in these patients. p-ANCA and anti–*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* mannan antibodies (ASCA) are the most extensively studied and used serologic markers associated with IBD (Beniwal & Harrell, 2010).

Atypical p-ANCA is directed against neutrophil granules that stain the rim of the neutrophil nuclei, as well as intranuclear foci (Beniwal & Harrell, 2010). p-ANCA is present in 40% to 80% of UC patients and 5% to 25% of CD patients (Beniwal & Harrell, 2010). ASCA is an autoantibody against the mannose residues on *S. cerevisiae* cell walls (Lewis, 2011). ASCA is present in 48% to 69% of CD patients and 15% of UC patients (Beniwal & Harrell, 2010). Using ASCA and p-ANCA in combination distinguishes CD from UC with 40% to 50% sensitivity and greater than 90% specificity (Lewis, 2011).

Several IBD-associated antiglycan antibodies have been identified. Glycans are found on the cell walls of bacteria, yeast, fungi, protozoa, and viruses and on the cell surfaces of immune cells and erythrocytes (Beniwal & Harrell, 2010). These are antilaminaribioside carbohydrate antibody (ALCA), antichitobioside carbohydrate antibody (ACCA), antimannobioside carbohydrate antibody (AMCA), and anti-L and anti-C (Beniwal & Harrell, 2010).

Additional antibodies have been discovered, including antiflagellin CBir1 (CBir1), anti–*Pseudomonas fluorescens*–associated sequence I2 (anti-I2), and antibodies to the outer-membrane porin C of *Escherichia coli* (anti-OmpC) (Ferrante et al, 2007).

One of the major goals in treating IBD patients is to prevent complications such as perforation, fistula formation, and strictures. Some data suggest that the presence of serologic biomarkers may be able to identify patients at increased risk for complications and may predict response to treatment; however, studies in these areas have produced conflicting results (Lewis, 2011).

HEPATIC AND HEPATOBILIARY AUTOIMMUNITY

Hepatic Autoantibodies

Screening for hepatic autoantibodies most commonly utilizes immunofluorescence (IFL). In 2004, the International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group (IAIHG) Committee for Autoimmune Serology released a consensus statement containing guidelines for autoantibody testing in autoimmune hepatitis (AIH). One of the recommendations is that initial screening should consist of indirect IFL on fresh, multiorgan rodent sections (liver, kidney, and stomach) to detect smooth muscle autoantibodies (SMA), antinuclear autoantibodies (ANA), anti–LKM-1 autoantibodies (LKM = liver kidney microsomal) , anti–LC-1 autoantibodies (LC = liver cytosol), and antimitochondrial autoantibodies (AMA) (Liberal et al, 2014).

Antinuclear Autoantibodies

The target antigens of antinuclear antibodies (ANA) are heterogeneous and not well defined. ANA have been shown to be reactive with single- and double-stranded DNA, centromeres, histones, chromatin, and cyclin A. ANA produce a clearly nuclear pattern on kidney, stomach, and liver sections. A homogeneous staining pattern is the most common pattern in autoimmune hepatitis (AIH), and coarse or speckled patterns are less frequently observed. In adults, a clinically significant titer is 1:40, and in children it is 1:20.

Human epithelial type 2 (HEp2) cells have prominent nuclei, so such cells are useful when the nuclear IFL pattern requires clarification. However, HEp2 cells should not be used for screening due to a high false positive rate (Liberal et al, 2014). ANA have also been found in up to 52% of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC), where they display a characteristic IFL pattern of multiple nuclear dot or rim-like membranous staining on HEp-2 or HeLa cells (Liberal et al, 2013). ANA are also present in other autoimmune and nonautoimmune conditions, such as viral hepatitis, drug-induced hepatitis, and alcoholic and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (Liberal et al, 2014).

Anti–Smooth Muscle Autoantibodies

Anti–smooth muscle autoantibodies (SMA) are directed against actin and other constituents of the cytoskeleton, such as tubulin, vimentin, desmin, and skeletin. SMA are found in 50% of patients with AIH and often found with other ANA. Characteristic IFL patterns of SMA can be identified in kidney, stomach, and liver, where they target the artery walls. In stomach, SMA bind to the muscularis mucosa and lamina propria. In the kidney, SMA typically stain the smooth muscle in vessels (V), glomeruli (G), and tubules (T) (VGT pattern). The VG and VGT patterns are more specific for AIH than a V pattern alone, which has been seen in other liver diseases. While the VGT pattern is very specific for type 1 AIH, approximately 20% of SMA-positive patients will not have this pattern. Note that type 1 AIH and type 2 AIH are differentiated by the autoantibodies that are present (discussed below). In adults with AIH, the titer is usually greater than or equal to 1:80. Pediatric patients may have titers as low as 1:20. SMA are not specific for AIH and have been reported in other types of liver disease (Liberal et al, 2013).

Anti–Liver-Kidney Microsomal Type 1 Autoantibodies

The hallmark autoantibodies of type 2 AIH are anti–liver-kidney microsomal type 1 (anti–LKM-1) autoantibodies. In IFL, anti–LKM-1 stains the

hepatocellular cytoplasm and the P3 portion of the proximal renal tubules (pars recta). The IFL patterns of AMA and anti–LKM-1 share some similarities because they will both stain liver and kidney. AMA will stain the liver more faintly and the renal tubules more diffusely, while accentuating the distal tubules. Also, AMA will stain gastric parietal cells, while anti-LKM will not.

Because the molecular targets of anti-LKM and AMA are known, immune-based assays have been developed. The molecular target of anti-LKM-1 is cytochrome P450-2D6 (CYP2D6), and the molecular targets of AMA are enzymes of the 2-oxo-acid dehydrogenase complexes. Commercially available enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) detect AMA and anti–LKM-1 accurately and can be useful when the IFL pattern is inconclusive.

In adults with AIH, the minimal titer considered relevant is 1:40, and in pediatric patients it is 1:10. The titer is associated with disease activity. Of note, anti-LKM autoantibodies are detected in up to 10% of patients with chronic hepatitis C infection (Liberal et al, 2014).

Anti–Liver Cytosol Type 1 Autoantibodies

Whereas isolated anti–liver cytosol type 1 (anti–LC-1) autoantibodies correlate with type 2 AIH, they are also seen in association with anti–LKM-1 autoantibodies, with other serologic markers of type 1 AIH, and in patients with chronic hepatitis C infection. Anti–LC-1 autoantibodies correlate with disease activity and can be used as a marker of hepatocellular inflammation.

The target of anti–LC-1 autoantibodies is the folate-metabolizing enzyme formimino transferase cyclodaminase (FTCD), which is present at high concentration in the liver. The IFL pattern is cytoplasmic, with relative sparing of the centrilobular areas. The IFL pattern of anti–LC-1 autoantibodies is obscured when present along with anti–LKM-1 (Liberal et al, 2013).

Antimitochondrial Antibodies

Epitopes recognized by antimitochondrial antibodies (AMA) are referred to as M2 antigens and include lipoylated domains of the E2 and E3 binding protein (E3BP) components of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex (PDC-E2) and the E2 components of the 2-oxo glutarate dehydrogenase (OADC-E2) and branched-chain 2-oxo acid dehydrogenase (BCOADC-E2) complexes (Bowlus & Gershwin, 2014).

AMA can be detected using several methods. Indirect immunofluorescence was routinely used in the past but lacks specificity and sensitivity. Enzyme-linked immunoassays (EIAs) using recombinant proteins to the three known autoantigens are available. Commercially available EIA tests detect gp210 (nucleoporin 210kDa, a component of the nuclear pore complex) and Sp100 (SP100 nuclear antigen, a subnuclear organelle and significant component of the promyelocytic leukemia-SP100 nuclear bodies). The titer of AMAs does not correlate with disease severity (Bowlus & Gershwin, 2014).

Other Autoantibodies

Anti–Soluble Liver Antigen/Liver-Pancreas Autoantibodies. Originally thought to be distinct antibodies, anti–soluble liver antigen/liver-pancreas autoantibodies (anti-SLA and anti-LP) are now known to share the same antigenic target. Anti-SLA/LP autoantibodies cannot be detected by IFL but are detected by radioimmunoassay or ELISA. The presence of anti-SLA/LP autoantibodies is highly specific for AIH and signifies a more severe disease and a worse clinical outcome (Liberal et al, 2013).

Anti-Neutrophil Cytoplasmic Autoantibodies. Anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ANCA) react to cytoplasmic components of neutrophils displayed as a perinuclear (pANCA) or cytoplasmic (cANCA) pattern. pANCA are frequently detected in type 1 AIH and can be diagnostically helpful when other autoantibodies are absent. The pattern of IFL is atypical in that staining is associated with peripheral nuclear membrane components, hence the name *peripheral antinuclear neutrophil antibody* (pANNA) (Liberal et al, 2014).

Anti–Asialoglycoprotein Receptor Autoantibodies. Anti–asialoglycoprotein receptor (anti-ASGPR) autoantibodies are type II transmembrane glycoproteins also known as hepatic lectins. ASGPR is constitutively expressed on the hepatocellular membrane and is the only liver-specific autoantigen. Anti-ASGPR autoantibodies are present in 88% of AIH patients and can be present in combination with ANA, SMA, and anti–LKM-1. This autoantibody is not specific to AIH, as it has also been detected in patients with viral hepatitis, primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC), and drug-induced hepatitis. Titers correlate with inflammatory activity. Detection of anti-ASGPR autoantibodies in clinical practice has limited use due to lack of disease specificity and the difficulty in developing a reliable assay (Liberal et al, 2014).

Autoimmune Hepatitis

Autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) is a progressive immune-mediated liver disease characterized by elevated transaminases (e.g., ALT and AST) and immunoglobulins, the presence of characteristic autoantibodies, and histologic evidence of interface hepatitis (Fig. 54-12). An interface hepatitis is characterized by disruption of the parenchymal limiting plate by a dense portal and periportal lymphocyte and plasma cell infiltrate. Women are affected with AIH more frequently than men (sex ratio, 3.6:1), and the disease is seen in all ethnic groups and at all ages (Manns et al, 2010). The clinical presentation is variable but frequently includes progressive fatigue, relapsing jaundice, amenorrhea, weight loss, and occasionally arthralgia. Approximately 25% of patients are asymptomatic and are incidentally diagnosed when liver function tests are found to be abnormal. Rarely, the initial presentation is acute hepatic failure. Ultimately AIH can progress to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma.

Approximately 40% of AIH patients have a family history of autoimmune disease. Twenty percent have concomitant autoimmune diseases or will develop them during follow-up (Liberal et al, 2014). AIH responds to immunosuppressive treatment. Liver transplantation has also evolved as an effective treatment for the decompensated patient, and the 5-year patient and graft survivals now exceed 80% (Manns et al, 2010).

Diagnosis of AIH requires the presence of characteristic clinical and laboratory features and the exclusion of other conditions that cause chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis. The IAIHG has established inclusion and exclusion criteria for the diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis (Table 54-2).

Laboratory assessment should include serum alanine (ALT) or aspartate (AST) aminotransferases, alkaline phosphatase (ALP), albumin, IgG, and bilirubin. Indirect IFL on fresh, multiorgan rodent sections (liver, kidney, and stomach) is pursued to detect SMA, ANA, anti–LKM-1, anti–LC-1, and AMA (Manns et al, 2010). While histology is essential for the diagnosis of AIH, it does not always show typical lesions. Characteristic histologic findings include interface hepatitis with a predominantly lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate, with or without lobular involvement, portal-portal or portal-central bridging necrosis, and frequent liver cell rosettes (Alvarez et al, 1999).

Two types of AIH are recognized according to the serological profile. Type 1 autoimmune hepatitis is positive for ANA or anti-SMA. Type 2 autoimmune hepatitis is positive for anti–LKM-1 or anti–LC-1. All AIH-2 patients are positive for anti-LKM1 and/or anti-LC1 autoantibodies. Less than one-third are solely positive for anti-LC1 autoantibodies.

In 1993, the International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group proposed diagnostic criteria that were revised in 1999. These criteria were devised primarily through expert consensus and were used to compare studies from different centers. The criteria are complex and include a variety of parameters that contribute questionable diagnostic value. The IAIHG devised a simpler scoring system that was more applicable to routine clinical practice and was based on the data of patients with a well-established diagnosis of AIH (Hennes et al, 2008).

The updated simplified scoring system was proposed for use in clinical practice and is based on just four criteria: autoantibody positivity, elevated IgG levels, histologic findings compatible with AIH, and exclusion of viral hepatitis (Table 54-3; Hennes et al, 2008). In three retrospective studies, the simplified scoring system performed with high sensitivity and specificity in the diagnosis of AIH, but it has not been validated in prospective studies (Manns et al, 2010).

Prognostic Relevance of Autoantibodies in Autoimmune Hepatitis

ANA and SMA titers tend to decline or disappear during effective immunosuppressive therapy. Neither the titer at diagnosis nor fluctuations over the course of the disease correlate with disease outcome. Anti-SLA autoantibodies denote patients with a more severe course of disease and propensity for relapse after steroid withdrawal. Anti–LKM1-autoantibody-positive pediatric patients tend to present at a younger age than ANA/SMA-autoantibody-positive patients. They also have higher bilirubin and transaminase levels at diagnosis and more often present in fulminant hepatic failure. AIH-2 patients with anti-LC1 autoantibodies have more severe disease histologically (Liberal et al, 2013).

Primary Biliary Cirrhosis

Primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) is an autoimmune liver disease characterized by immune-mediated destruction of small intrahepatic bile ducts, leading to chronic cholestasis and fibrosis that can eventually result in

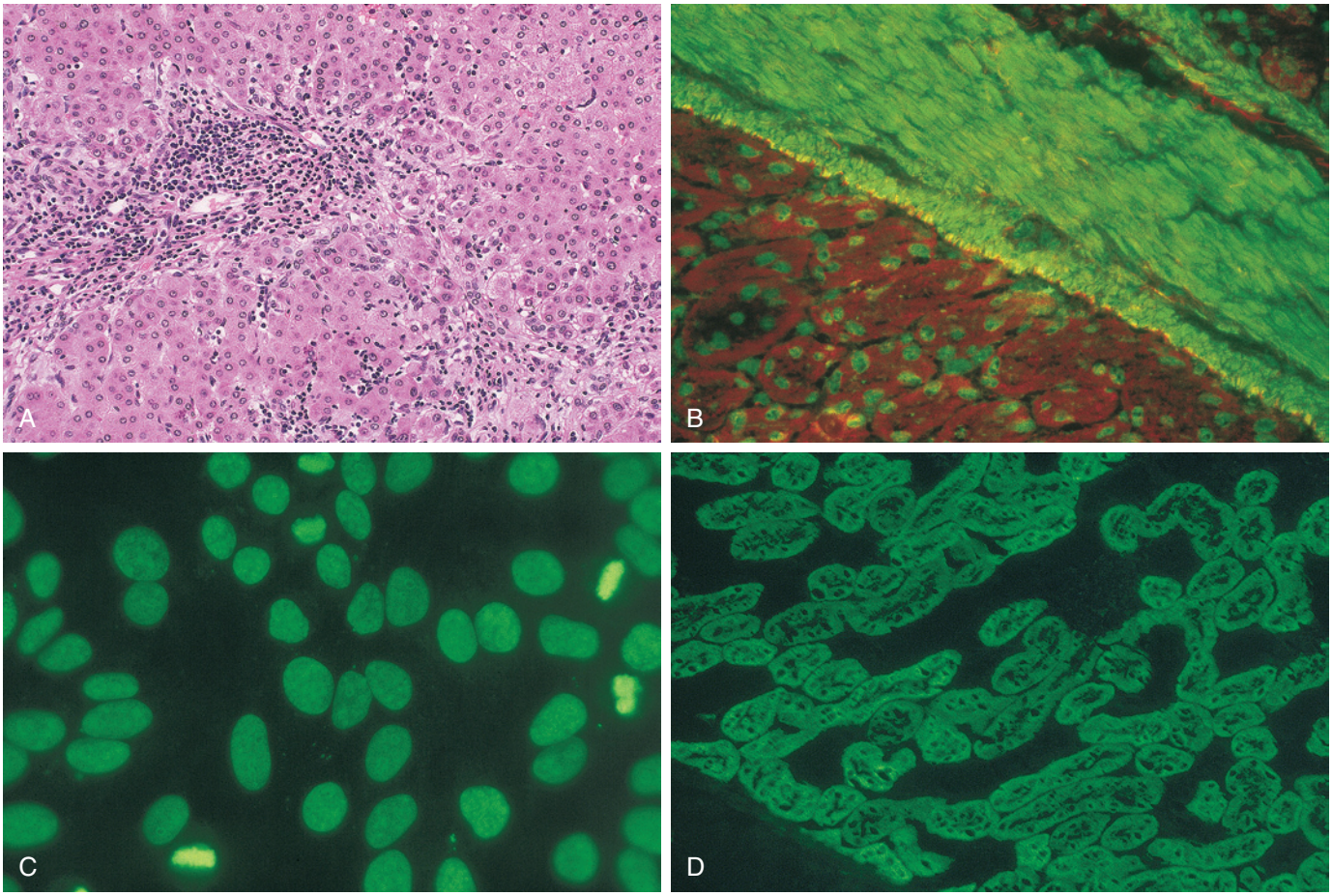


Figure 54-12 **A,** Liver biopsy in untreated autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) shows prominent portal and lobular inflammation with interface activity and often numerous plasma cells at the leading edge of the inflammation (hematoxylin and eosin [H&E], ×500). **B,** Indirect immunofluorescence microscopy in this instance reveals combined smooth muscle autoantibodies (SMA) and antinuclear autoantibodies (ANA) using mouse stomach/kidney as substrate (×200). **C,** The ANA pattern in autoimmune liver disease is often homogeneous (×400). **D,** Indirect immunofluorescence appearance of liver-kidney microsomal autoantibodies using mouse stomach/kidney as substrate. There is finely granular cytoplasmic immunofluorescence of proximal renal tubules but not distal tubules (×200).

cirrhosis and liver failure (Fig. 54-13). This disease typically affects females in their fifth and sixth decades (Bowlus & Gershwin, 2014).

The diagnosis can be established if two of three objective criteria are present: serum AMA at titers greater than or equal to 1:40, unexplained elevated ALP greater than or equal to 1.5 times the upper limit of the reference interval for over 24 weeks, and compatible liver histology. In addition, PBC patients often have elevated transaminases and elevated immunoglobulins, predominantly IgM (Bowlus & Gershwin, 2014). If AMA is negative, the diagnosis of PBC is based on characteristic histologic findings and abnormal serum ALP levels. Liver biopsy is not required for a diagnosis of AMA-positive PBC but can be useful for disease staging. In AMA-negative PBC, liver biopsy is required to rule out other conditions, including small-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis , sarcoidosis, and drug-induced cholestasis.

Histologic findings include nonsuppurative cholangitis and interlobular bile duct injury. The characteristic histologic finding is the "florid duct lesion." This lesion occurs when an interlobular bile duct is destroyed by poorly formed epithelioid granulomas, lymphocytes, and plasma cells. These lesions obstruct bile flow and cause upstream portal tracts to have bile ductular reaction, inflammation, and necrosis, which eventually lead to fibrosis.

AMA-positive and AMA-negative PBC have similar clinical courses, although some data suggest PBC-specific ANA positivity is associated with more severe disease (Bowlus & Gershwin, 2014). PBC-specific ANA is a multiple-nuclear-dots (MND) ANA pattern with staining of 3 to 20 dots of variable size located throughout the nucleus that spare the nucleoli. The only established treatment for PBC is ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA). The treatment is well tolerated and has been shown to prevent portal hypertension and esophageal varices, and it delays the time to transplant.

Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis

Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC) is a progressive cholestatic liver disease characterized by chronic bile duct destruction and progression to end-stage liver disease (Fig. 54-14). Chronic, progressive injury occurs in small, medium, and large bile ducts with inflammatory and obliterative concentric periductal fibrosis, so-called onion-skinning, leading to biliary strictures. PSC affects both sexes and all age groups although more than 60% of patients are men. The median age at onset is 30 to 40 years. It has been found that 60% to 80% of northern European cases are associated with inflammatory bowel disease, predominantly ulcerative colitis (UC). More than 50% of patients will require liver transplant within 10 to 15 years of diagnosis (Hirschfield et al, 2013). The clinical presentation is variable, with the most common symptoms being fatigue, jaundice, pruritus, and abdominal pain.

Elevated serum alkaline phosphatase (ALP) between 3 and 10 times the upper limit of the reference interval is seen in 95% of cases (Yimam & Bowlus, 2014). Serum ALT and AST levels are also typically elevated two to three times higher than the upper limit of the reference interval. Approximately 60% of patients will also have elevated serum IgG levels (Yimam & Bowlus, 2014).

Several autoantibodies are associated with PSC, although none are sufficiently specific or sensitive to be used as a screening test. Perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies (p-ANCA) are seen in 65% to 95% of patients with PSC. Cholangiography is the gold standard for diagnosis of PSC, with the findings of segmental strictures with proximal dilation of the bile ducts creating the "beaded" appearance (Yimam & Bowlus, 2014). Liver biopsy is not necessary when patients have radiographic evidence of PSC, although it can be helpful in excluding other

TABLE 54-2
International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group Revised Diagnostic Scoring System

Parameter	Feature	Score
Sex	Female	+2
ALP: AST (or ALT) ratio	>3	–2
	1.5-3	0
	<1.5	+2
Serum globulins or IgG (times above normal)	>2.0	+3
	1.5-2.0	+2
	1.0-1.5	+1
	<1.0	0
ANA, SMA, or anti–LKM-1 titers	>1:80	+3
	1:80	+2
	1:40	+1
	<1:40	0
AMA	Positive	–4
Viral markers of active infection	Positive	–3
	Negative	+3
Hepatotoxic drug history	Yes	–4
	No	+2
Average alcohol intake	<25 g/day	+2
	>60 g/day	–2
Histological features	Interface hepatitis	+3
	Plasma cells	+1
	Rosettes	+1
	None of the above	–5
	Biliary changes*	–3
	Atypical changes†	–3
Immune diseases	Thyroiditis, colitis, other	+2
HLA	DR3 or DR4	+1
Seropositivity for other autoantibodies	Anti-SLA/LP, actin, ASGPR, pANNA	+2
Response to therapy	Remission	+2
	Relapse	+3

Adapted from Alvarez F, Berg PA, Bianchi FB, et al: International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group report: Review of criteria for diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis, *J Hepatol* 31(5):929–938, 1999.
Pretreatment score greater than 15: definite AIH; 10 to 15: probable AIH. Posttreatment score greater than 17: definite AIH; 12 to 17: probable AIH.
ALP, Alkaline phosphatase; *AST,* aspartate aminotransferase; *ALT,* alanine aminotransferase; *IgG,* immunoglobulin G; *ANA,* antinuclear autoantibodies; *SMA,* anti–smooth muscle autoantibodies; *anti–LKM-1,* anti–liver-kidney microsomal type 1 autoantibodies; *AMA,* antimitochondrial autoantibodies; *SLA/LP,* soluble liver antigen/liver pancreas; *ASGPR,* asialoglycoprotein receptor; *p-ANNA,* peripheral antinuclear neutrophil antibody; *HLA,* human leukocyte antigen.
*Including granulomatous cholangitis, concentric periductal fibrosis, ductopenia, marginal bile duct proliferation, and cholangiolitis.
†Any other prominent feature suggesting a different etiology.

TABLE 54-3
Simplified Criteria for the Diagnosis of Autoimmune Hepatitis

Variable	Cutoff	Points
ANA or SMA	≥1:40	1
ANA or SMA Or anti–LKM-1 Or SLA	≥1:80 ≥1:40 Positive	2*
IgG	>Upper limit of normal	1
	>1.10 times upper limit of normal	2
Liver histology	Compatible with AIH	1
	Typical of AIH	2
Absence of viral hepatitis	Yes	2

Adapted from Hennes EM, Zeniya M, Czaja AJ, et al: Simplified criteria for the diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis, *Hepatology* 48(1):169–176, 2008
Score of 6 or higher: probable AIH; 7 or higher: definite AIH.
ANA, Antinuclear autoantibody; *SMA,* anti–smooth muscle autoantibody; *anti-LKM,* anti–liver-kidney microsomal autoantibody type 1; *SLA,* soluble liver antigen; *IgG,* immunoglobulin G; *AIH,* autoimmune hepatitis.
*Addition of points achieved for all autoantibodies cannot exceed a maximum of 2 points.

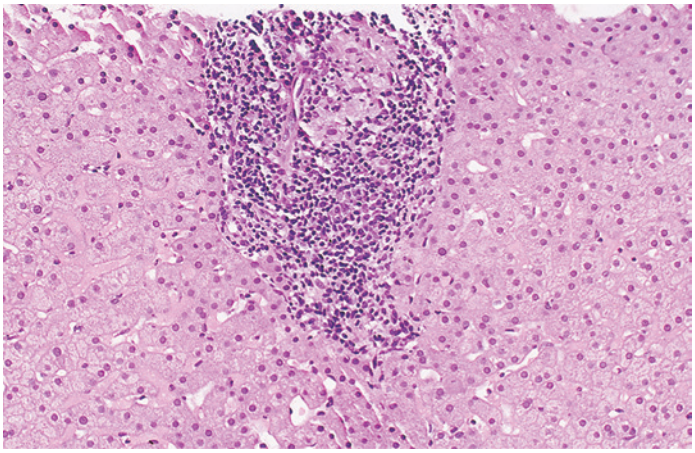


Figure 54-13 **Liver biopsy in primary biliary cirrhosis shows variable portal inflammation with nonsuppurative lymphocytic cholangitis and, in this example, a florid duct lesion with granulomatous inflammation centered on an interlobular bile duct (hematoxylin and eosin [H&E], ×200).**

diseases. The histologic findings of PSC are nonspecific and can be normal when only large ducts are involved. The characteristic histologic findings include bile duct proliferation, periductal fibrosis with "onion-skinning" lesions, periductal inflammation, and bile duct obliteration.

Given the heterogeneous nature of PSC, strict diagnostic criteria have not been established. The diagnosis is based on a cholestatic pattern of liver biochemistries (ALP increased proportionately greater than ALT and AST), typical cholangiographic findings, and the absence of a secondary cause of sclerosing cholangitis (Yimam & Bowlus, 2014).

Overlap Syndromes

Overlap syndrome refers to the simultaneous presence in a single patient of two distinct disease processes. There are two major variants of overlap syndrome in which the features of AIH are mixed with those of PBC (AIH with features of PBC) or PSC (AIH with features of PSC). In both syndromes, the predominant features are manifestations of autoimmune hepatitis and secondary features of PBC or PSC. Clinical features that should prompt consideration of an overlap syndrome are AMA positivity, ALP levels greater than two times the upper limit of the reference interval, concurrent inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), and histologic findings of bile duct injury or loss. Uniform diagnostic criteria have not been established for the overlap syndromes. The IAIHG has suggested classifying these patients by their predominant diagnosis and not by the overlapping features (Czaja, 2013a, 2013b).

Autoimmune hepatitis with features of PBC is the only overlap syndrome having proposed diagnostic criteria, known as the "Paris criteria." These criteria were created in 1998 and required the presence of at least two of three recognized hallmarks of each disease (Czaja, 2013a, 2013b). Three hallmarks of autoimmune hepatitis are serum ALT greater than five times the upper limit of the reference interval, IgG level greater than twice the upper limit of the reference interval or positive SMA, and histologic features of interface hepatitis. Three hallmarks of PBC are serum ALP levels greater than twice the upper limit of the reference interval or GGT levels greater than five times the upper limit of the reference interval , positive AMA, and histologic evidence of florid duct lesions. Ultimately, the diagnosis requires clinical judgment.

Autoimmune hepatitis with features of PSC requires a predominant diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis, absence of AMA, and cholestatic features, including jaundice, elevated ALP, or histologic findings of bile duct injury or loss. This variant of overlap syndrome typically occurs in the pediatric population and often coexists with IBD (Durazzo et al, 2013). The clinical findings are similar to PSC, with fatigue, jaundice, itching, abdominal pain, and recurrent biliary infections.

AUTOIMMUNE PANCREATITIS

Autoimmunity to the pancreas encompasses autoimmune pancreatitis (O'Reilly et al, 2014). A rare form of chronic pancreatitis—autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP)—is now classified as type 1 disease (lymphoplasmacytic sclerosing pancreatitis in older individuals; AIP as part of multiorgan

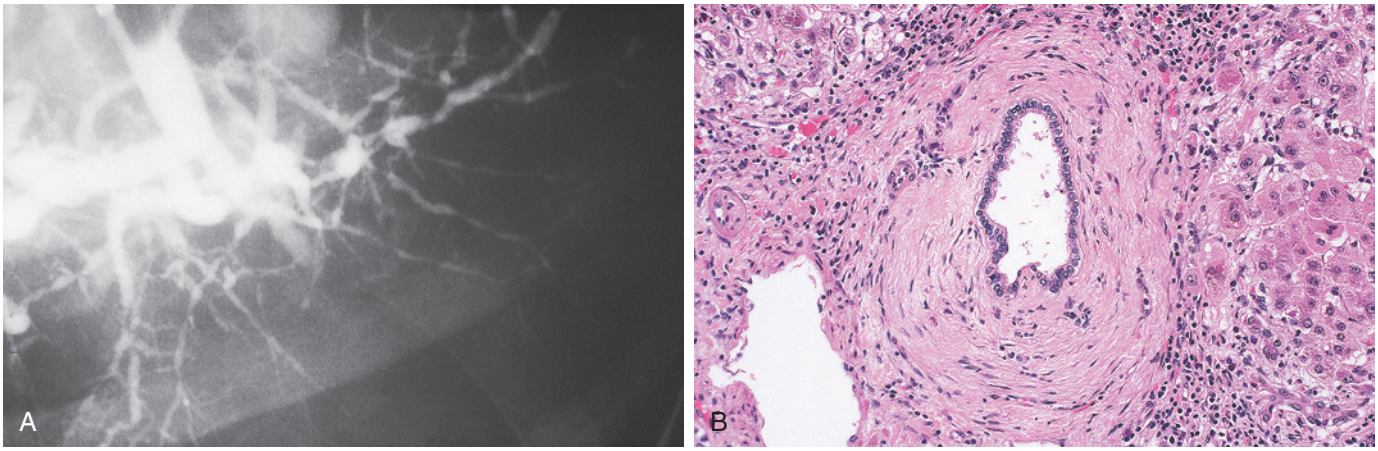


Figure 54-14 **A,** Cholangiogram in primary sclerosing cholangitis reveals the characteristic beading pattern of bile ducts due to multifocal strictures at those sites. **B,** Liver biopsy reveals prominent periductal fibrosis in the characteristic "onion-skin" pattern (hematoxylin and eosin [H&E], ×500).

IgG4-related disease) and type 2 disease (idiopathic duct-centric pancreatitis in younger individuals; AIP in the absence of IgG4-related disease) (Hart et al, 2015). AIP may anatomically mimic pancreatic cancer. API type 2 may be associated with inflammatory bowel disease.

In AIP type 1, IgG4 levels are elevated, but this finding is not specific for AIP. The coexistence of chronic pancreatitis, elevated IgG4, and the presence of other IgG4-related diseases would establish the diagnosis of AIP type 1. AIP patients may display antinuclear autoantibodies, rheumatoid factor, or hypergammaglobulinemia. However, none of these findings are specific for AIP.

Among a variety of autoantibodies described in AIP, autoantibodies to pancreatic secretory trypsin inhibitor have been found in 30% to 40% of AIP patients, respectively, by ELISA and western blotting (Asada et al, 2006). Autoantibodies to heat-shock protein 10 (HSP 10) and amylase alpha-2A have also been identified in AIP (Endo et al, 2009; Takizawa et al, 2009). However, at the present time, these tests must be considered as research-only tests. A beneficial response to glucocorticoids is interpreted as supporting the diagnosis of AIP.

GLOMERULAR AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

OVERVIEW OF AUTOIMMUNE GLOMERULAR DISEASES

Clinical syndromes associated with glomerular disorders include asymptomatic proteinuria, nephrotic syndrome, asymptomatic hematuria, nephritic syndrome, rapidly progressive nephritic syndrome, and chronic renal failure. Nephrosis (i.e., the nephrotic syndrome) is the clinical syndrome characterized by proteinuria (>3.5 g/day), hypoalbuminemia, hyperlipidemia, and edema that sometimes progresses to anasarca (total body edema). Nephritis (i.e., the nephritic syndrome) is characterized by mild proteinuria, hematuria, red cell casts in the urine, mild edema, and hypertension. Overall these findings are the consequence of glomerular injury with damage to the glomerular capillary wall and often the mesangium. Both immune and nonimmune forms of glomerular injury occur.

Potential immune mechanisms include circulating antigen-antibody immune complex deposition and complement activation with subsequent inflammation (as seen in cryoglobulinemia); deposition of exogeneous antigens (i.e., "planted" antigens) in the glomeruli, to which is bound an antibody or autoantibody, again eliciting inflammation (as seen in postinfectious glomerulonephritis); and autoantibodies to intrinsic in situ antigens in the glomeruli, again triggering inflammation (as seen in membranous nephropathy).

Different glomerular diseases can cause the same clinical syndrome. The light, immunofluorescent, and electron microscopic findings on a renal biopsy establish the specific glomerular disease diagnosis. An initial approach is to determine the glomerular cellularity by light microscopy (LM). Proteinuric syndromes are often associated with relatively normocellular glomeruli. These glomerulopathies include minimal change disease, focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS), and membranous nephropathy. Nephritic syndromes are usually associated with hypercellular glomeruli. These glomerulonephritides include IgA nephropathy, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis (MPGN), C3 glomerulopathy, postinfectious glomerulonephritis, anti-glomerular basement membrane (GBM) glomerulonephritis, pauci-immune glomerulonephritis, and lupus nephritis. Immunofluorescence (IF), electron microscopy (EM), and serology are essential to establishing the specific diagnosis. Renal pathology is the only area of anatomic pathology where LM, IF, and EM are routinely used to evaluate biopsy specimens. The type, amount, and location of immune deposits (immunoglobulin/complement components) within glomeruli are determined by IF. The ultrastructural character and exact glomerular location (e.g., subendothelial or subepithelial) of deposits and the specific type of cell injury are determined by EM. Observations from each form of microscopy, whether LM, IF, or EM, inform the interpretation of the others. Thus the findings from LM, IF, and EM are integrated with serologic and other laboratory data and clinical observations to render a glomerular disease diagnosis (see Table 54-4).

GLOMERULOPATHIES

Membranous Nephropathy

Membranous nephropathy (MN) is a common cause of the nephrotic syndrome in adults. It is characterized by glomerular capillary wall thickening on LM, prominent granular ("lumpy-bumpy") capillary wall staining for IgG and C3 on IF, and subepithelial deposits on EM. Cases of early MN may show no overt changes on LM and quite subtle staining on IF. EM readily establishes the diagnosis in such early cases by revealing small subepithelial deposits.

After many years of investigation, the target autoantigen was identified in podocytes as type-M phospholipase A_2 receptor (PLA_2R) (Beck et al, 2009). Approximately 70% to 80% of patients with idiopathic (primary) MN have circulating anti-PLA_2R autoantibodies measured by ELISA assays (Kanigicherla et al, 2013). Patients with secondary forms of MN (e.g., membranous lupus nephritis) generally lack these autoantibodies. The autoantibodies appear to be an excellent biomarker of the disease because the levels of anti-PLA_2R correlate with the degree of proteinuria and disease activity (Bech et al, 2014; Hoxha et al, 2014a; 2014b). Moreover, the antibodies disappear (immunologic remission) before the proteinuria (renal remission) in patients treated with rituximab, an anti-CD20/B cell monoclonal antibody (Beck et al, 2011). Detection of enhanced PLA_2R expression in glomeruli by IF in the renal biopsy correlates with circulating autoantibodies and may be more sensitive because some sero-negative patients still show glomerular PLA_2R by IF (Debiec & Ronco, 2011; Hoxha et al, 2012). Thus PLA_2R detected by IF can serve as a footprint of PLA_2R-associated MN. The majority of patients with PLA_2R-associated MN that develop recurrent MN within 4 months after renal transplantation are positive for anti-PLA_2R antibodies (Kattah et al, 2015). A genome-wide association study (GWAS) of more than 500 patients with MN revealed significant linkage to the PLA_2R gene on chromosome 2q24 (as well as HLA-DQA1 on 6p21) (Stanescu et al, 2011). The preceding studies provide evidence to indicate that anti-PLA_2R antibodies are pathogenic. Quantitative serologic phospholipase A_2 receptor (PLA_2R) IgG autoantibody testing is available from reference laboratories.

Immunofluorescence staining for the four subclasses of IgG (IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4) is often performed to help distinguish primary MN from secondary forms of MN, including membranous lupus nephritis. The

TABLE 54-4
Pathologic Features of Immune Glomerular Diseases

Disease	Pathogenesis	LM	IF	EM
Membranous	In situ immune complex deposition (PLA_2R is antigen)	Capillary wall thickening	Capillary wall granular IgG and C3	Subepithelial deposits
IgA nephropathy	Abnormal IgA glycosylation	Mesangial hypercellularity	Mesangial dominant IgA (and some C3)	Mesangial deposits
Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis (MPGN)	Immune complex deposition	Endocapillary hypercellularity, mesangial sclerosis, "double contouring"	Capillary wall IgG (less IgM) and C3	Subendothelial deposits
C3 glomerulonephritis (C3GN)	Dysregulation of alternative pathway of complement	Variable features, but often similar to MPGN	Capillary wall dominant C3 (less or no Igs)	Variable, but subendothelial deposits
Dense deposit disease (DDD)	Dysregulation of alternative pathway of complement	Variable, but often similar to MPGN or mesangial cell hypercellularity	Capillary wall dominant C3 (less or no Igs)	Dense deposits in GBM
Postinfectious glomerulonephritis	Immune complex deposition, planted or circulating antigen	Endocapillary hypercellularity	Capillary wall IgG and C3	Subepithelial"hump" deposits
Anti-GBM disease	Circulating anti-GBM antibodies (antigen is α3 chain of COL4)	Capillary wall necrosis and crescents	Capillary wall linear IgG and C3	No deposits, GBM ruptures
Pauci-immune glomerulonephritis	ANCAs (antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies)	Capillary wall necrosis and crescents	No or sparse Ig/C3 staining	No or sparse deposits
Lupus nephritis (Class I-VI)	Immune complex deposition	Variable, class-dependent	"Full-house" staining for all Igs, C3, and C1q	Numerous deposits typically (location is class-dependent)

COL4, Type IV collagen; *EM,* electron microscopy; *IF,* immunofluorescence; *Igs,* immunoglobulins; *LM,* light microscopy.

main IgG subclass found both within the subepithelial deposits of primary MN and the circulating anti-PLA2R antibodies is IgG4 (Beck & Salant, 2014). A caveat is that the IgG1 subclass is often dominant by IF in early stages of idiopathic MN (Huang et al, 2013). In membranous lupus nephritis, IgG1, IgG2, and IgG3 predominate on IF staining. In secondary MN associated with malignancy, IgG1 and IgG2 tend to predominate (Ohtani et al, 2004).

In the fibro-inflammatory disorder IgG4-related disease, the most common renal manifestation is a tubulointerstitial nephritis characterized by lymphoplasmacytic infiltrates, with IgG4 predominance among plasma cells, tissue eosinophils, and storiform fibrosis, features observed in other involved organs. However, MN has been reported in association with IgG4-related disease (Alexander et al, 2013). In about 50% of these patients, a tubulointerstitial nephritis coexisted with the MN. Although the glomerular immune deposits in this "IgG4-related MN" were primarily IgG4, unlike primary MN, IF staining for PLA_2R was negative. Moreover, circulating anti-PLA2R antibodies have not been detected in IgG4-related disease (Khosroshahi et al, 2012). Thus IgG4-related MN appears to be a secondary form of MN, distinct from primary PLA_2R-associated MN.

Circulating antibodies to a second autoantigen—thrombospondin type-1 domain-containing 7A (THSD7A)—have been described in 2% to 5% of adult patients with idiopathic MN (Tomas et al, 2014). Although rare, a form of early-childhood MN (5 months to 2.3 years) due to circulating antibovine serum albumin (BSA) has been described (Debiec et al, 2011; Debiec & Ronco, 2011). In this secondary form of MN, the target is an exogenous antigen, cationic BSA, that is present in cow's milk. An unusual entity, membranous-like glomerulopathy with masked IgG kappa deposits, has been reported predominantly in young women with clinical autoimmune features (Larsen et al, 2014). Although these patients had LM and EM findings characteristic of classic MN, immunoglobulin deposits were absent on IF of frozen tissue, and they (IgG and kappa light chain) were only revealed by repeat IF on formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissue after antigen retrieval (pronase digestion). The nature of this immunoglobulin masking is not evident. IF staining for glomerular PLA_2R was negative in all cases. EM is critical in selecting cases in which IF of pronase digested FFPE may expose immunoglobulin deposition and establish an accurate diagnosis. Thus, although MN is now considered a classic autoimmune glomerular disease, it appears to have multiple molecular etiologies.

GLOMERULONEPHRITIDES

IgA Nephropathy

IgA nephropathy (IgAN) is considered to be the most common form of primary glomerulonephritis in the world (Wyatt & Julian, 2013). Hematuria is the major clinical presentation, but some degree of proteinuria is often present. Typically, LM shows mesangial hypercellularity, IF reveals "dominant" (greater than any other immunoglobulin) mesangial granular IgA staining, and mesangial deposits are seen on EM.

IgAN is essentially an IF diagnosis. There are no autoantibody tests for IgAN. Human IgA has two subclasses, IgA1 and IgA2, the former representing about 85% of the total circulating IgA. Although serum IgA levels tend to be elevated in patients with IgAN, they have no prognostic significance. However, the elevated IgA1 in patients is aberrantly glycosylated (galactose-deficient) (Reily et al, 2014). A current pathogenic model considers that galactose-deficient IgA, either as a planted autoantigen or as part of an immune complex, deposits in the glomerular mesangium, activates mesangial cells, and induces mesangial sclerosis. In this scheme, IgAN may be considered an autoimmune disease.

Membranoproliferative Glomerulonephritis

Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis (MPGN) describes a pattern of glomerular injury that may result from several distinct etiologies of glomerular disease. The characteristic LM lesion is mesangial hypercellularity, often endocapillary hypercellularity, increased mesangial matrix, and thickening of the glomerular capillary wall, observed as double-contouring ("tram-tracking"). An older classification included three types (MPGN types I, II, and III), but IF findings have provided insights into the pathogenesis and led to a new classification of these disorders (Sethi & Fervenza, 2012; Cook & Pickering, 2015). IF shows granular capillary wall deposition of immunoglobulins (IgG and/or IgM), with usually some complement C3, in what is now termed simply MPGN. Immunoglobulins are sparse to absent, and C3 deposition is prominent in the glomeruli of MPGN II (dense deposit disease), MPGN III, and other cases.

These disorders are now called C3 glomerulopathies (see below). Immunoglobulin-associated or immune-complex-mediated MGPN currently are termed simply MPGN. The classical pathway of complement is activated. It is associated with autoimmune diseases, chronic infections (e.g., cryoglobulinemia associated with hepatitis C), and monoclonal gammopathies. The spectrum of renal diseases associated with monoclonal gammopathies (called monoclonal gammopathy of renal significance [MGRS]) is broad (Bridoux et al, 2015). Like IgAN, there are no characteristic autoantibodies.

C3 Glomerulopathy

C3 glomerulopathy (C3G), a relatively new term, includes glomerular disorders with often a membranoproliferative LM pattern and IF characterized by C3 deposition and little to no immunoglobulins. C3G is essentially defined by IF, showing "dominant" C3 glomerular deposition greater than or equal to 2 orders of magnitude of IF intensity greater than any other immune reactant (Pickering et al, 2013; Hou et al, 2014). C3G includes both C3 glomerulonephritis (C3GN) and the rare dense deposit

disease (DDD, previously known as MPGN type II). These two disorders are best distinguished on EM: mesangial and capillary wall (usually subendothelial) deposits in C3GN and dense osmiophilic intramembranous deposits in DDD. *Osmiophilic* refers to a substance that stains with osmium tetroxide and yields a black color. Both disorders tend to progress to end-stage renal failure (Ku et al, 2012; Medjeral-Thomas et al, 2014). It is important to note that some cases of proliferative immune complex glomerulonephritis—for example, MPGN—may be misdiagnosed as C3 glomerulopathy if the immunoglobulin deposits are masked (Messias et al, 2015). IF staining on formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissue after pronase digestion appears to be a valuable technique to expose the immune-complex deposits and prevent a misdiagnosis.

These disorders involve dysregulation of the alternative pathway of complement. Low circulating levels of C3 and factor B and higher levels of complement breakdown products C3d and Bb are present (Zhang et al, 2014). Genetic and acquired factors are involved. Genetic mutations have been documented in the factor-H–related genes (FHR), encoding a group of five proteins (FHR1-5) (Athanasiou et al, 2011). Other patients develop autoantibodies to C3 convertase (called C3 nephritic factors [C3Nefs]) or the proteins CFB and CFH, leading to abnormal activation of the alternative pathway of complement (Servais et al, 2012; Xiao et al, 2014). Most large hospital laboratories can measure C3 and C4. A range of other complement factors (e.g., factor B, factor H [β1H], and factor I) and C3 nephritic factors can be assayed in reference laboratories.

Postinfectious Glomerulonephritis

Postinfectious glomerulonephritis (PIGN) is an immune-mediated glomerulonephritis associated with extrarenal bacterial infections (Nasr et al, 2013). The classic prototype is poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis (PSGN), but the epidemiology in developed countries has changed over recent decades. In the United States, most cases of PIGN occur in adults and are associated with nonstreptococcal infection, especially staphylococcal infection. Risk factors include diabetes, alcoholism, malignancy, and intravenous drug use. Pathologic features include glomerular endocapillary hypercellularity by LM, granular IgG and C3 staining in capillary walls by IF, and subepithelial "hump"-like deposits by EM. In poststaphylococcal glomerulonephritis, prominent glomerular IgA deposits are often seen, and the distinction from IgA nephropathy may be difficult (Haas et al, 2008).

Most PIGN cases have hematuria, often with red cell casts and low serum C3 levels with or without decreased C4 levels. With PSGN, ASO (antistreptolysin O) and anti–DNAse-B (antideoxyribonuclease-B) antibody titers are typically elevated, especially the latter with skin infections. The exact pathogenesis is not fully known, but a favored mechanism, at least in PSGN, is in situ immune complex formation via antibody binding to planted nephritogenic antigens, such as streptococcal exotoxin B (SpeB) and glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) (Rodriquez-Iturbe & Musser, 2008).

Anti-Glomerular Basement Membrane Glomerulonephritis

The generic term *anti-GBM disease* covers the clinical spectrum of disease caused by anti-GBM antibodies: both kidney and lung disease (termed "Goodpasture syndrome"), kidney-only disease, and, rarely, lung-only disease (Hudson et al, 2003). Anti-GBM disease typically presents with a rapidly progressive nephritic syndrome with prominent hematuria and red cell casts and often hemoptysis. Renal biopsy typically reveals glomerular capillary necrosis with cellular crescent formation and the diagnostic hallmark of linear GBM staining for IgG on IF.

Circulating autoantibodies bind to the GBM (Fig. 54-15) and activate complement, leading to recruitment of neutrophils and monocytes, with resultant glomerular capillary destruction. The majority of circulating autoantibodies are specific for the C-terminal noncollagenous domain (NC1) of the α3 chain of type IV collagen (α3(IV) chain) within the GBM (Saus et al, 1988). Circulating autoantibodies to the α5(IV) chain may also be present, although they are less abundant. These major epitopes are sequestered within the α345(IV) protomeric hexamer and represent cryptic epitopes. Pathologic insults are believed to cause hexamer dissociation, expose the epitopes, allow binding of the autoantibodies, and initiate the nephritis (Pedchenko et al, 2010). Thus anti-GBM disease has been considered an autoimmune "conformeropathy." In general, high levels of circulating anti-GBM antibodies measured by ELISA correlate with a worse renal prognosis (Yang et al, 2009).

In Alport syndrome patients who receive a renal transplant, 3% to 5% develop anti-GBM disease because of alloantibodies against collagen IV chains in the allograft kidney that are absent in the patient's native kidney. In contrast to idiopathic anti-GBM disease, in Alport posttransplant anti-GBM disease, the antibodies target α3(IV) and α5(IV) epitopes present on the intact nondissociated α345(IV) hexamer (Olaru et al, 2013). Reference laboratories can provide GBM autoantibody testing by IF or by using a multiplex bead assay, which is more specific.

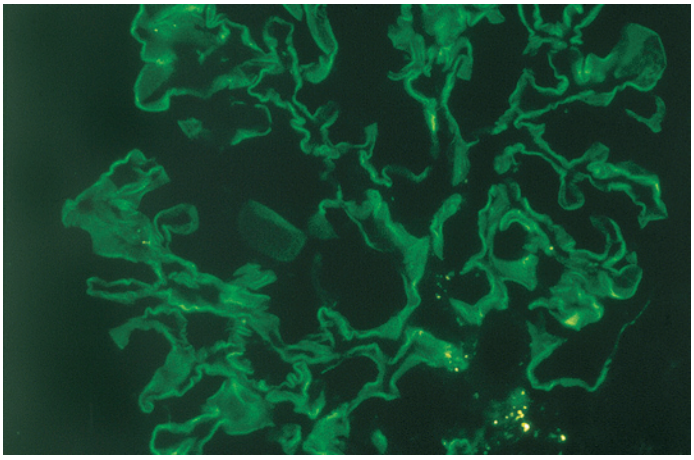


Figure 54-15 **Direct immunofluorescence microscopy reveals globular and linear glomerular basement membrane immunofluorescence in anti-glomerular basement membrane disease (×400).**

Pauci-Immune Glomerulonephritis

The characteristic lesion in pauci-immune glomerulonephritis is glomerular capillary necrosis (often segmental) with cellular crescent formation and few to no immune deposits by IF and EM. The paucity of immune deposits distinguishes this glomerular disease from other forms of crescentic glomerulonephritides, such as anti-GBM disease (with linear IgG staining by IF) and immune-complex mediated glomerulonephritis with crescents (with granular immunoglobulin and/or C3 staining by IF).

Pauci-immune glomerulonephritis is the most common cause of crescentic glomerulonephritis and occurs as a part of the systemic necrotizing small vessel vasculitides: microscopic polyangiitis (MPA), granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA; Wegener's granulomatosis), and eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA; Churg-Strauss syndrome) (Jennette et al, 2013). Most patients have positive serology for antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCAs). The ANCAs react with the cytoplasmic granules of both neutrophils and monocytes. Using indirect IF, two staining patterns are observed; perinuclear (p-ANCA) and cytoplasmic (c-ANCA). The major p-ANCA specificity is for myeloperoxidase (MPO-ANCA), and the major c-ANCA specificity is for proteinase 3 (PR3-ANCA). Both indirect IF and ELISA assays specific for MPO-ANCA and PR3-ANCA are routinely performed. It has been shown that some patients with small vessel vasculitis appear to have MPO-ANCAs that are not detected by conventional assays because of competitive binding of MPO by a fragment of ceruloplasmin (Roth et al, 2013). Another leukocyte protein—lysosomal membrane protein 2 (LAMP2)—has been reported to be a major autoantigen (Kain et al, 2013; Peschel et al, 2014). It is not clear why these studies have not been confirmed, but variation in the patient populations and the assay designs are possibilities (Roth et al, 2012). There is compelling evidence from both in vitro studies and in vivo experimental animal studies that ANCAs not only serve as a marker of disease but that they play a direct pathogenic role in the glomerular necrosis and inflammation (Jennette & Falk, 2014). It is not clear how ANCAs are initially generated. However, neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs)—a mesh of neutrophil extruded DNA, histones, and granule proteins—appear to provide a platform on which ANCAs accumulate and possibly initiate an autoimmune response (Nakazawa et al, 2014; Kessenbrock et al, 2009).

Lupus Glomerulonephritis

Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) is the classic chronic autoimmune disease. Renal disease in SLE, called lupus nephritis, may involve all parenchymal compartments (glomeruli, vessels, tubules, and interstitium) and produces the greatest risk of morbidity and mortality in lupus patients. The current classification (ISN/RPS classification 2004) of lupus nephritis (LN) has facilitated communication between pathologists and nephrologists and has provided a standard for clinical-pathologic studies (Weening et al, 2004).

The six classes of LN are Class I, minimal mesangial LN; Class II, mesangial proliferative LN; Class III, focal LN; Class IV, diffuse LN; Class V, membranous LN; and Class VI, advanced sclerosing LN. Class IV LN is the most common type of LN at renal biopsy. Some cases may be mixed, such as Class IV combined with Class V. The LN classes show various degrees of glomerular hypercellularity on LM and immune deposits detected on IF and EM in nearly all the classes. Moreover, often regardless of the LN class, a characteristic IF staining pattern (called "full-house") is the deposition of all three immunoglobulins (IgG, IgM, and IgA) and both complement proteins (C3 and C1q). In addition to this "full-house" IF staining, membranous LN (Class V) is characterized by a predominance of IgG1, IgG2, and IgG3 on IF, in contrast to primary membranous nephropathy, which is characterized by predominant IgG4 on IF and a lack of "full-house" staining.

The pathogenesis of LN remains to be fully understood. Most patients have circulating autoantibodies to nuclear antigens (ANAs). Autoantibodies to double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) are most specific, but autoantibodies to histones, ribonucleoproteins (RNP), including the Sm core protein, Rho (SAA) antigen, C1q, and endothelial antigens are common (Yaniv et al, 2015). Glomerular immune deposits and complement activation clearly are involved in LN, but the mechanisms of their deposition are not fully understood. Currently, binding of autoantibodies to intrinsic glomerular antigens and/or binding of autoantibodies to extrinsic "planted" glomerular antigens are favored over the mechanism of deposition of preformed circulating immune complexes (Borchers et al, 2012).

IMMUNOENDOCRINOPATHIES

AUTOIMMUNE DISORDERS OF CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM

Autoimmunity to the islet cells, insulin, or the insulin receptor concern type 1 diabetes mellitus, type B insulin resistance, the insulin autoimmune syndrome, and insulinomimetic autoantibodies. For brevity, autoantibodies to glucagon, the pancreatic islet alpha cells (Winter et al, 1984), and delta cells are not discussed.

Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

Type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM) results from a cell-mediated autoimmune attack on the beta cells that leads to beta-cell failure and absolute insulinopenia (Winter et al, 2011). Insulitis is the descriptive term for the lymphocytic infiltration of the islets that causes beta-cell death. However, histologic study of the islets is not used to diagnose T1DM. In addition to cytotoxic CD8 T cells, macrophages also appear to damage beta cells via cytokine release (e.g., tumor necrosis factor-alpha [TNF-alpha]).

T1DM is a very unusual autoimmune disease based on its early age at onset (an increasing number of children under age 5) and equal prevalence in males and females (with a slight excess of males under age 5). The clinical presentation is that of polyuria, polydipsia, and weight loss. Approximately 30% of children with T1DM present with ketoacidosis. A slower-onset form of T1DM in adults is termed *latent autoimmune diabetes of adulthood*, where the patient may first be diagnosed with type 2 diabetes mellitus because of the mild degree of hyperglycemia initially recognized (Leslie et al, 2008). Heterogeneity within the "T1DM" phenotype is leading investigators to entertain the possibly that T1DM may be more than 1 disease. A very rare form of type 1 diabetes is the IPEX syndrome. IPEX is characterized by immunodysregulation (I), polyendocrine autoimmune disorders (P), enteropathy (E), and X-linked recessive inheritance (X). Type 1 diabetes is also present in one-third of persons affected with Stiff-person syndrome (see below).

T1DM is more common in Europeans and people of European origin than in other ethnicities. The long-term risks of T1DM relate to the development of macrovascular, microvascular, and neuropathic complications. The present treatment of T1DM requires insulin replacement by subcutaneous injection or continuous infusion. Efforts are underway to develop a closed-loop, artificial pancreas consisting of an insulin pump and continuous subcutaneous glucose measurement system that are wirelessly linked together and controlled through intelligent and anticipatory programs.

Presently there are five islet autoantibodies that are most useful for the diagnosis of T1DM in a symptomatic patient with hyperglycemia (Table 54-5). None of these autoantibodies are believed to be pathogenic. Applying these five tests in the setting of new-onset T1DM, 95% to 98% or more of patients will be positive for at least one islet autoantibody (Winter & Schatz, 2011).

Islet Cell Cytoplasmic Autoantibodies

Islet cell cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ICA) were first described in 1974 in patients with multigland autoimmunity (Bottazzo et al, 1974). ICA are present in 70% to 80% of new-onset patients with T1DM. The frequency of ICA in the general pediatric population is very low at 1 in 250 (Schatz et al, 1994). Therefore, ICA are sensitive and specific for the diagnosis of T1DM in a symptomatic, hyperglycemic patient.

The detection of ICA was described previously. Although indirect immunofluorescence is a conceptually simple technology, to perform ICA testing consistently and reliably, persistent and substantial quality assurance and quality control efforts are absolutely necessary. Figure 54-16 illustrates an ICA-positive serum.

TABLE 54-5
Islet Autoantibodies Clinically Useful for the Diagnosis of T1DM

Islet autoantibody Name	Abbreviation	Common Method of Detection
Islet cell cytoplasmic autoantibodies	ICA	Indirect immunofluorescence
Insulin autoantibodies	IAA	Immunoprecipitation
Glutamic acid decarboxylase autoantibodies	GADA	Immunoprecipitation
Insulinoma-2-associated autoantibodies	IA-2A	Immunoprecipitation
Zinc transporter-8 autoantibodies	ZnT8A	ELISA

ICA, Islet cell cytoplasmic autoantibodies.

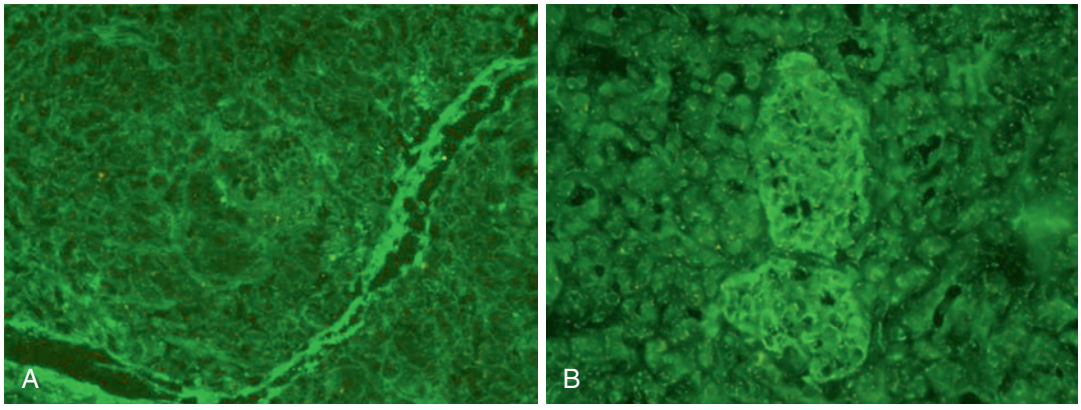


Figure 54-16 **Islet cell cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ICA) can be detected by indirect immunofluorescence. A,** Negative control. **B,** Positive patient result. Note how all of the cells of the islet are identified by ICA (e.g., ICA is not beta-cell specific). ICA are quantitated in Juvenile Diabetes Foundation (JDF) units that are determined by serial end-point dilution.

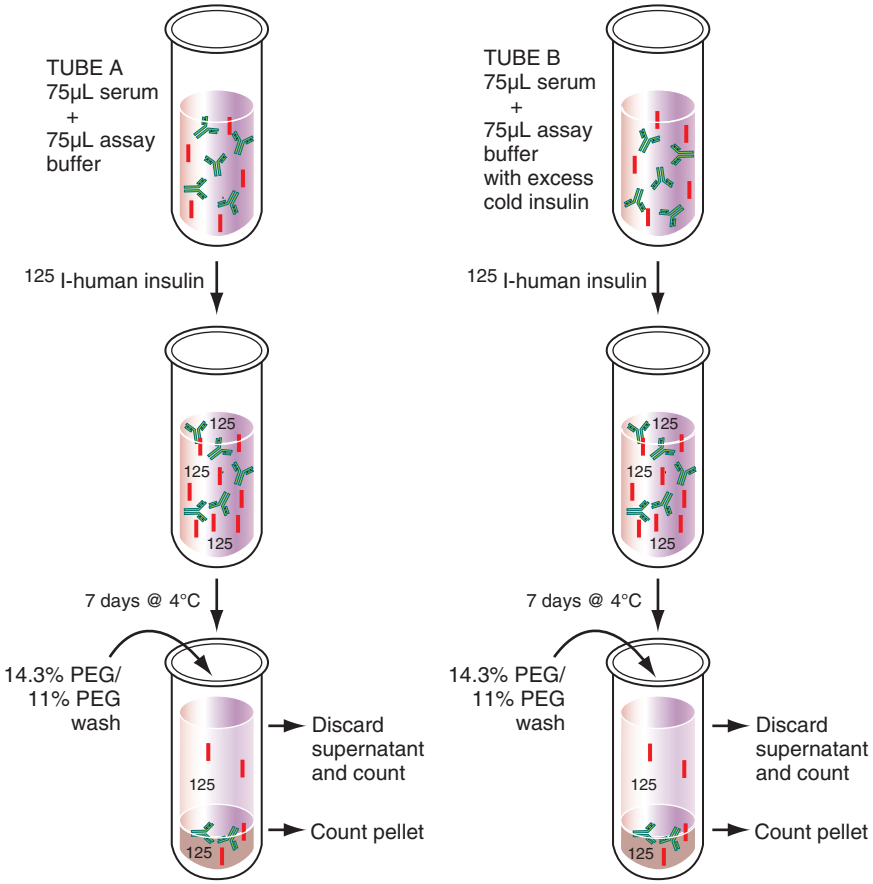


Figure 54-17 The methodology for the measurement of IAA.

Insulin Autoantibodies

Insulin autoantibodies (IAA) were first described in 1983 (Palmer et al, 1983). IAA are present at the time of diagnosis of T1DM in up to 60% of children (Atkinson et al, 1986) and are rare in adults. They are present in a few percent of the general population and can be found in other autoimmune diseases such as AITD.

As described above, the IAA assay does not distinguish insulin antibodies from insulin autoantibodies; therefore, the IAA assay should not be ordered on patients who have been treated with insulin for more than 14 days. IAA are detected by immunoprecipitation of ^{125}I-labeled A-14 monoiodinated insulin (Fig. 54-17). Newer electro-chemiluminescent assays using proinsulin as the autoantigen are in development (Yu et al, 2013).

Glutamic Acid Decarboxylase Autoantibodies

Glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD) was first identified as the "64K" autoantigen by Baekkeskov and colleagues in 1990. There are two forms of GAD: GAD65 (65 kDa) and GAD67 (67 kDa); they are encoded by separate genes. Autoimmunity to GAD65 is more common than autoimmunity to GAD67, and therefore most immunoprecipitation assays use GAD65 as the autoantigen. Electro-chemiluminescent assays for GADA are in development (Miao et al, 2013).

GADA are present at the onset of T1DM in frequencies similar to that of ICA; however, GADA are less specific for the diagnosis of T1DM than ICA because GADA are present in a few percent of the general population. Nevertheless, because GADA immunoassays can be automated, if screening for the prediction of T1DM were to be undertaken, GADA testing would be superior to ICA testing.

Insulinoma-2-Associated Autoantibodies

The insulinoma-2-associated autoantigen (IA-2A) is a protein tyrosine phosphatase that was discovered while screening at insulinoma expression library (Lan et al, 1996). IA-2A are less sensitive than ICA or GADA for the detection of islet autoimmunity. At the onset of T1DM, approximately 60% of patients with T1DM will be IA-2A positive. IA-2A is no more specific than GADA and is less specific than ICA. However, like GADA, IA-2A testing can be automated. When the intracellular portion of IA-2 is used for immunoprecipitation testing, the assay is termed the "ICA512" autoantibody.

Zinc Transporter-8 Autoantibodies

Autoantibodies to the transporter that pumps zinc into insulin secretory granules (the ZnT8 autoantibody) were discovered in 2007 (Wenzlau et al, 2007). The performance of ZnT8A at the time of onset of T1DM is similar to IA-2A. Some T1DM patients who are negative for all other islet autoantibodies are positive for ZnT8A. In the setting of pancreas transplantation for the treatment of T1DM, the appearance of ZnT8A predicts the development of beta-cell failure.

ELISA kits are now commercially available to conduct ZnT8A testing. In the authors' experience, the commercial ZnT8A ELISA is a robust assay, with a very high ratio of positive signals to cutoff signals. Whereas negative is less than 15 U/mL, positives are frequently greater than 5000 U/mL (100 times greater than the highest calibrator when the sample is diluted 1 to 100).

In cases where the patient presents with classic symptoms of diabetes, unequivocal hyperglycemia (e.g., random plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dL), and ketonuria or ketonemia, the diagnosis of T1DM is likely, and islet autoantibody testing is not necessary. However, when the diagnosis of T1DM is unclear, such as in obese patients with acute symptoms of diabetes or even ketoacidosis, or lean, young patients with only mild hyperglycemia, islet autoantibody testing may be of value because the presence of islet autoantibodies is pathognomonic of T1DM. Table 54-6 illustrates clinically ambivalent cases where islet autoantibody testing may be instructive in diagnosing T1DM (e.g., positivity for an islet autoantibody indicates the presence of type 1 diabetes).

Prediction of T1DM

Presently, various investigators are pursuing studies designed to prevent T1DM or delay its onset (Sherr et al, 2008). Central to these studies is the recognition of prediabetic individuals who are defined by the presence of one or more islet autoantibodies (Wasserfall & Atkinson, 2006). Because of their adaptability to high test volume throughput, IAA, GADA, and

IA-2A are often used as initial screening tests. If any of these three tests is positive, ICA and ZnT8A testing can then be carried out. Because prevention therapies are still under investigation, general population screening for islet autoantibodies is not recommended.

Type B Insulin Resistance

In this autoimmune disease, extreme insulin-resistant, nonketotic diabetes results from antagonistic anti-insulin receptor autoantibodies that block (but do not activate) the insulin receptor (Page et al, 2007). The phenotype of insulin resistance includes dyslipidemia, hypertension, and acanthosis nigricans. Some patients with type b insulin resistance have required insulin doses of more than 10,000 units per day! The diagnosis is established clinically because there are no commercial tests for anti-insulin receptor autoantibodies.

Autoimmune Hypoglycemia

Autoimmune hypoglycemia (also known as the insulin autoimmune syndrome) is not an uncommon cause of hypoglycemia in Japan (Zhang & Zhao, 2014). We have observed at least one case in our institution.

In this disorder, spontaneous autoantibodies arise, directed against circulating insulin. These IAA can bind insulin excessively, leading to hyperglycemia, or IAA can precipitously release insulin, leading to free insulin excess and hypoglycemia. Autoimmune hypoglycemia has been associated with exposure to sulfur-containing medications such as the thioureas that are used to treat Graves disease. IAA in this disorder are detected using the standard IAA assay that is applicable to T1DM.

Insulinomimetic Autoantibodies

Rare cases of hypoglycemia have been described that result from agonist autoantibodies directed against the insulin receptor (i.e., insulinomimetic autoantibodies) (Taylor et al, 1982). There are no commercial tests for such agonist insulin receptor autoantibodies, and the authors are not aware of any investigators that are currently active in this field.

TABLE 54-6
Islet Autoantibody Testing

Clinical Findings	Features Favoring T1DM	Features Favoring T2DM
Lean "T2DM" patient with poor glycemic control	Lean favors diagnosis of T1DM	Previous diagnosis of T2DM
Lean prediabetes	Lean favors diagnosis of T1DM	T1DM is usually of acute onset
Lean but not ketotic	Lean favors diagnosis of T1DM	Not ketotic favors diagnosis of T2DM
Ketotic but obese	Ketosis favors diagnosis of T1DM	Obesity favors diagnosis of T2DM

AUTOIMMUNE THYROID DISEASE

The spectrum of autoimmune thyroid disease (AITD) spans Hashimoto thyroiditis (HT), causing hypothyroidism to Graves disease (GD), which leads to hyperthyroidism (Orgiazzi, 1999). HT results from cell-mediated destruction of thyroid hormone, producing thyroid follicular cells. Consequent to a chronic inflammatory cell infiltrate into the thyroid gland, thyromegaly (goiter) can initially result. When sufficient numbers of follicular cells are destroyed, hypothyroidism results. With eventual destruction of the entire gland, goiter dissipates, and the gland may even become fibrotic. Riedel thyroiditis is the rare extension of fibrosis into tissues adjacent to the thyroid gland.

GD results from humoral autoimmunity, where agonist autoantibodies bind to and stimulate the TSH receptor, producing goiter and hyperthyroidism (Menconi et al, 2014). Exophthalmos with proptosis of the eyes is characteristic of GD compared with other causes of hyperthyroidism. Less common in GD is nonpitting myxedema of the lower extremities. If antagonistic autoantibodies are produced against the TSH receptor, the gland atrophies as a consequence of TSH receptor blockade, producing hypothyroidism and atrophic thyroiditis. The prevalence of HT in adults is 5%. The incidence of GD was estimated at 30 cases per 100,000 persons per year in a Minnesota study.

The diagnosis of HT is based on the findings of clinical disease (e.g., goiter and/or hypothyroidism), plus the presence of a thyroid autoantibody—either TPOA or thyroglobulin autoantibodies (TGA). The diagnosis of GD is based upon the finding of hyperthyroidism and a thyroid autoantibody (TPOA or TGA). Autoantibodies to the TSH receptor (TRAbs: TSH receptor autoantibodies; e.g., TSI or TBII) support the diagnosis of GD. However, testing for TRAbs is usually not necessary in the classic clinical case of GD when goiter, hyperthyroidism, exophthalmos, and positivity for TPOA or TGA are present. Histology is not used to diagnose either HT or GD.

Thyroperoxidase Autoantibodies

Thyroperoxidase autoantibodies (TPOA) are directed against thyroperoxidase (TPO). The function of TPO is to organify iodide to iodine to iodinate tyrosine residues that are part of thyroglobulin (Tg). TPO is also responsible for the coupling reaction where monoiodotyrosine (MIT) and diiodotyrosine (DIT) form triiodothyronine (T3) and two DITs form thyroxine (tetraiodothyronine; T4). Normally, TPO is not accessible to circulating autoantibodies because TPO is colloidal-facing and extracellularly bound to the apical surface of thyroid follicular cells. TPOA are detected by immunoassay (Sinclair, 2006). Older technologies used microsomes in agglutination assays or indirect immunofluorescence (Fig. 54-18).

Thyroglobulin Autoantibodies

Thyroglobulin autoantibodies (TGA) are directed against Tg. Whereas most Tg resides within the colloid of the thyroid follicles, small amounts of iodine-deficient Tg do circulate in the plasma. Neither TPOA nor TGA are believed to be pathogenic in AITD. TGA can interfere in the measurement of Tg, which is relevant when Tg is measured as a tumor marker in

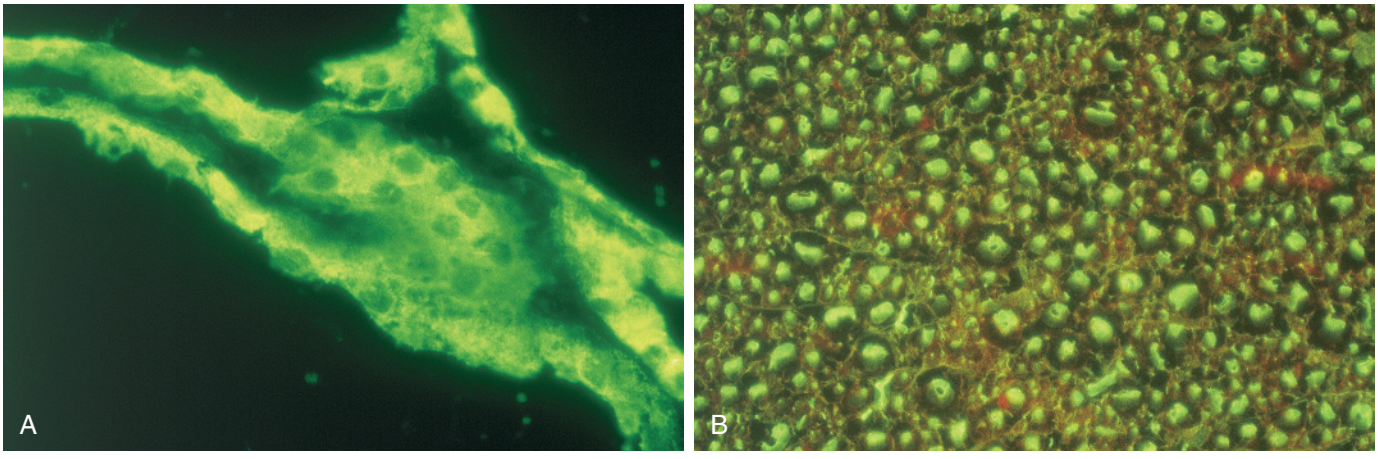


Figure 54-18 **A,** Indirect immunofluorescence microscopy of thyroid microsomal autoantibodies (TMA) using unfixed monkey thyroid tissue as substrate (×400). **B,** Indirect immunofluorescence microscopy for thyroglobulin autoantibodies (TGA) using methanol-fixed cryostat tissue sections of monkey thyroid gland (×200).The indirect immunofluorescence microscopy technology for the detection of TMA and TGA has been surpassed by various immunoassays with cloned autoantigens.

cases of differentiated thyroid carcinoma. TGA are detected by immunoassay. Older technologies involved agglutination assays. Most immunoassay analyzers offer robust, automated measurements of TPOA and TGA.

Thyroid-Stimulating Immunoglobulins

The measurement of thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins (TSI) requires a bioassay where patient serum is added to thyroid slices or cloned thyroid follicular cells (Lytton & Kahaly, 2010). T4 or cyclic AMP (cAMP; the second messenger of the TSH receptor signaling system) are measured in the media. Increased T4 or cAMP above the positive cutoff indicate the presence of TSI.

Thyrotropin-Binding Inhibitor Immunoglobulins

Thyrotropin-binding inhibitor immunoglobulins (TBII) were first detected using a radio-receptor assay where ^{125}I-labeled TSH competes with autoantibody in the patient's plasma (or serum) for binding to membrane-bound TSH receptors. Higher concentrations of TBII completed off the ^{125}I-labeled TSH, leading to lower counts in the membrane pellet after washing and centrifugation. An automated, nonradioactive TBII assay was already described above.

TBII positivity does not distinguish GD from atrophic thyroiditis. However, whereas GD patients should be TSI positive, patients with atrophic thyroiditis should be TSI negative.

Treatment of AITD

Treating AITD requires treating the thyroid dysfunction (Gessl et al, 2012). Immunotherapy is not indicated. HT is treated with thyroxine replacement. GD is initially treated with antithyroid medications (see above). Because of the potential development of aplastic anemia from propylthiouracil (PTU), methimazole (MM) is the preferred medication. If the patient does not enter into remission (e.g., hyperthyroidism is persistent off-therapy after 1 or more years of MM therapy), treatment options include surgical thyroidectomy or radioactive iodine ablation therapy.

Because of the familial nature of AITD, testing of first-degree relatives for AITD would appear prudent. Likewise, testing for AITD in patients with type 1 diabetes, pernicious anemia, or Addison disease would allow the early detection and treatment of AITD prior to the development of life-threatening crises such as congestive heart failure or coma in HT and thyroid storm in GD.

AUTOIMMUNE ADDISON DISEASE

Primary adrenal failure causing glucocorticoid (cortisol) and mineralocorticoid (aldosterone) deficiencies is called Addison disease, after the English physician Thomas Addison, who described adrenal insufficiency in 1849. Cortisol deficiency can produce lassitude, fatigue, nausea, gastrointestinal upset, hypovolemia, hypotension, hypoglycemia, and hyponatremia. Aldosterone deficiency can also produce hypovolemia and hypotension with evidence of hyponatremia, hyperkalemia, and acidosis. At times of stress (e.g., serious infection, trauma, or surgery), when the normal physiologic response is to markedly increase cortisol secretion, acute failure to increase cortisol secretion can produce Addisonian crisis. Such Addisonian crisis, if not treated on an emergency basis, can cause death from hypovolemia, hypotension, shock, acidosis, and electrolyte abnormalities (e.g., hyponatremia and hyperkalemia). Addison disease is not a common condition (approximate prevalence in the general population is 1 case in 25,000); however, if not diagnosed and treated appropriately, it can be fatal.

In the preantibiotic era, Addison disease most frequently resulted from infections such as tuberculosis. Presently, in developed countries, Addison disease results most commonly from cell-mediated autoimmune destruction of the adrenal cortex (Brandão Neto & de Carvalho, 2014). Whereas autoimmune Addison disease can exist as an isolated disorder, it may also coexist with other endocrinopathies and related nonendocrine autoimmune diseases (Schatz & Winter, 2002; Bertholf et al, 2012). Autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type I is diagnosed when two or more of the following conditions are identified in a patient: hypoparathyroidism, mucocutaneous candidiasis, and adrenal autoantibodies or Addison disease.

Autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type II (APS II) is defined as adrenal autoantibodies or Addison disease plus coexistent AITD and/or type 1 diabetes. APS II is also known as autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy (APECED). The diagnosis of autoimmune Addison disease is established in patients with endocrinologic confirmation of cortisol and aldosterone deficiency who have evidence of humoral adrenocortical autoimmunity. Histology is not used for diagnosis.

Adrenocortical Autoimmunity

Adrenocortical cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ACA) can be detected by indirect immunofluorescence using span-frozen, cryo-cut sections of human adrenal gland. Alternatively, commercial RIA kits are available for the detection of autoantibodies to the cloned enzyme 21-hydroxylase (Betterle et al, 2002). The enzyme 21-hydroxylase catalyzes the conversion of progesterone to desoxycorticosterone (DOC) and 17-hydroprogesterone to 11-desoxycortisol.

Treatment of Autoimmune Addison Disease

The treatment of autoimmune Addison disease involves glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid replacement. Immunotherapy is not indicated. The presence of ACA or 21-hydroxylase autoantibodies in an asymptomatic patient predicts the development of Addison disease. In such cases, yearly serial testing is indicated as described above (cosyntropin testing and renin measurements, along with electrolyte measurements). At the earliest confirmation of adrenal hypofunction, glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid replacement therapy is indicated. If APS I or APS II are present, associated disorders should be sought and treated.

AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE OF THE OVARY

Premature menopause can be caused by autoimmune-mediated ovarian destruction (gonaditis). Autoimmune gonaditis can occur as an isolated condition, or it can occur as part of an autoimmune polyglandular syndrome (e.g., APS type 1 or APS type 2) (Ahonen et al, 1987).

Elder and colleagues (1981) described steroidal-cell autoantibodies in patients with Addison disease (Fig. 54-19). Presently, steroidal cell autoantibodies are sought by indirect immunofluorescence using the following tissues as substrate: human testes (i.e., Leydig cell autoantibodies), human placenta (e.g., syncyntiotrophoblast autoantibodies), and pregnant-rabbit ovary (e.g., ovarian autoantibodies). These three tests are commercially available. Although men can express steroidal cell autoantibodies, men do

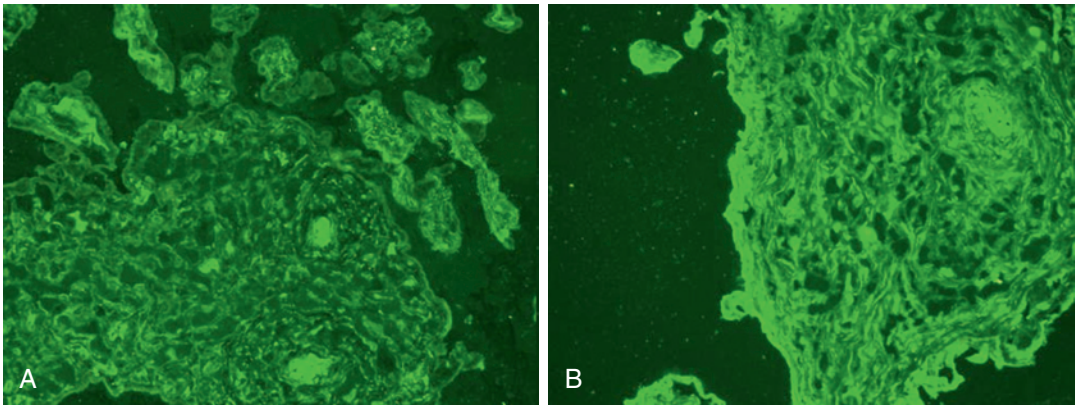


Figure 54-19 Steroidal cell autoantibodies (SCA) can be detected by indirect immunofluorescence. In this case, the substrate is human placenta. **A,** Negative control. **B,** Positive patient result (note the more intense staining).

not appear to suffer from testicular failure. This may be because once spermatogenesis begins during puberty, in otherwise healthy men, it continues throughout life. On the other hand, women are born with all the ova they will ever have.

AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES OF THE NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTION, NERVOUS SYSTEM, AND MUSCLE

MYASTHENIA GRAVIS

Myasthenia gravis (MG) is a neuromuscular disorder characterized by muscle weakness that worsens during the day and with activity (Ha & Richman, 2015). Extraocular muscles, facial muscles, and muscles involved in speech, mastication, and swallowing are commonly affected. While MG can occur at any age, MG most often affects older men (age 60 years or older) and younger women (less than 40 years old) and people of all ethnicities.

MG is most commonly caused by autoantibodies directed against the nicotinic acetyl choline (Ach) receptor (AChR) (Oger & Frykman, 2015). AChR autoantibodies (AChRA) are found in 85% to 90% of MG patients. Tests for binding, blocking, and modulating autoantibodies are available. AChRA bind complement. These autoantibodies are measured by RIA. Blocking AChRA interfere with the attachment of ACh to the AChR. Modulating AChRA cause internalization of the AChR, which impairs the muscle's response to acetylcholine. Blocking and modulating AChRA are measured by flow cytometry. If a mother is affected with MG, transplacental transfer of the AChR autoantibodies can cause neonatal MG.

In the 10% to 15% of MG patients lacking AChRA, 30% to 40% will express a muscle-specific kinase (MuSK) autoantibody that is measured by RIA. This kinase is necessary for the clustering of AChRs at the neuromuscular junction. Anti-MuSK autoantibodies are usually IgG4 antibodies.

Approximately 5% of patients with MG are negative for both AChRA and anti-MuSK autoantibodies. Autoantibodies to striated muscle autoantigens (striational [striated muscle] antibodies) have been reported in cases of MG and thymoma. These autoantibodies are detected by enzyme immunoassay or indirect immunofluorescence, which recognizes autoantibodies against titin, the ryanodine receptor, and the alpha subunit Kv1.4 of the voltage-gated potassium channel (VGKC).

The diagnosis of MG is made on the basis of a compatible clinical history, serologic positivity for a AChRA, an abnormal electrodiagnostic study, and a beneficial response to acetylcholine esterase inhibitors (e.g., the tensilon test) (Berrih-Aknin et al, 2014).

MG symptoms can be treated with drugs that block acetylcholine esterase (e.g., neostigmine) (Díaz-Manera et al, 2012). Further therapy involves immunosuppression with a variety of agents, including glucocorticoids, azathioprine, calcineurin inhibitors, intravenous immunoglobulin, plasmapheresis, and thymectomy in resistant cases.

EATON-LAMBERT MYASTHENIC SYNDROME

Another neuromuscular autoimmune disease is Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome (ELMS) (Titulaer et al, 2011). ELMS results from autoantibodies that are directed against presynaptic voltage-gated P/Q calcium channels. With impaired entry of calcium into the presynaptic terminal, acetylcholine-containing vesicles do not bind to the presynaptic membrane, causing deficient acetylcholine release (Pourmand, 2009).

Of insidious onset, the clinical features of ELMS can be subtle. The clinical presentation is usually that of proximal muscle weakness that is more severe in the lower extremities than in the upper extremities. Decreased reflexes and autonomic dysfunction are common. The respiratory and bulbar muscles are usually spared. Of tremendous clinical importance is that in approximately 40% of cases, there is an underlying malignancy. This places the ELMS channelopathy in the category of the paraneoplastic syndromes (Mareska & Gutmann, 2004). Diagnosis is confirmed by electrophysiological testing. Voltage-gated calcium channel (VGCC) autoantibody testing is available. When positive, such autoantibody testing supports the diagnosis of ELMS.

MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is a demyelinating autoimmune disease of the central nervous system and spinal cord that leads to neurologic deficits that vary over time in location, duration, and severity (Frohman et al, 2006). Visual impairment, bowel and bladder incontinence, unsteady gait, and weakness are typical clinical findings in this disorder, which has a waxing-waning course (Harrison, 2014). The onset of disease is usually in the young adult years. There is a female predominance. Demyelination is observed on magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), although the patient's clinical symptomatology may be discordance from the imaging study results.

The diagnosis of MS resides upon compatible history and physical examination findings, an abnormal MRI, and cerebrospinal fluid abnormalities consistent with MS (Karussis, 2014). The CSF in MS usually displays a glucose concentration within the reference interval (approximately two-thirds of plasma glucose), a white blood cell (WBC) count of less than 10 mononuclear cells/uL in 90% of cases (>50 WBC/uL is rare), a protein concentration of less than 60 mg/dL in 90% of cases (if the protein exceeds 100 mg/dL, the diagnosis of MS should be questioned), an increased IgG concentration in 80% of cases, and a myelin basic protein (MBP) concentration of greater than 4 ng/mL in 90% of acute cases. Testing for visual evoked potentials (VEPs), somatosensory evoked potentials (SSEPs), and brainstem auditory evoked potentials (BAEPs) is available to provide neurophysiologic assessment of the patient with MS. Despite its autoimmune etiology, there are no clinically useful diagnostic autoantibodies in MS (Schirmer et al, 2014). Biopsy and histology do not play a role in the diagnosis of MS.

PARANEOPLASTIC NEUROLOGIC SYNDROMES

A panoply of neurologic disorders associated with malignancies have been described (Graus et al, 2010). Overall such disorders are rare (Vernino, 2006). Theoretically a humoral immune response to a cancer can cross-react against neurologic self-antigens, causing autoimmunity and subsequent neurologic disease (Hinton, 1996). In the setting of a recognized malignancy and neuropathy, detection of autoantibodies against a variety of nerve autoantigens can establish an autoimmune basis for the neuropathy (Rosenfeld & Dalmau, 2013).

Immunoblotting, radioimmunoassay (RIA), cytometric bead array (CBA), and indirect immunofluorescence are technologies that are commonly employed to detect paraneoplastic autoantibodies in serum or CSF. Neuronal nuclear antibodies (ANNA), purkinje cell antibodies, contactin-associated protein-2 (CASPR2) IgG antibodies, and leucine-rich, glioma-inactivated protein 1 antibodies, among others, can be investigated by indirect immunofluorescence. RIA can be used to test for voltage-gated potassium channel (VGKC) antibodies. IgG neuronal nuclear antibodies can be detected by immunoblot. These autoantibodies are against antigens that include Hu (neuronal-specific RNA-binding proteins), Ri (ANNA2), and Yo (cerebellar degeneration-related protein 2, 62kDa).

Extensive panels of autoantibody tests are offered by reference laboratories. For example, Mayo Medical Laboratories offers tests for neuronal nuclear antibodies (antineuronal nuclear antibody-types 1 [ANNA1], 2 [ANNA2], and 3 [ANNA3], and anti-glial/neuronal nuclear antibody-type 1 [AGNA-1]); neuronal and muscle cytoplasmic antibodies purkinje cell cytoplasmic antibody, types 1 [PCA-1], 2 [PCA-2], and Tr [PCA-Tr]; amphiphysin antibody; CRMP-5-IgG; and striational [striated muscle] antibodies); cation channel antibodies (N-type and P/Q type calcium channel antibodies, AChR ganglionic neuronal antibody, and neuronal VGKC autoantibody); AChR receptor (muscle) binding antibody; AChR receptor (muscle) modulating antibody; neuromyelitis optica (NMO/aquaporin-4-IgG cell binding assay); CRMP-5-IgG western blot; amphiphysin western blot; N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDA-R) antibody; 2-amino-3-(5-methyl-3-oxo-1,2- oxazol-4-yl) propanoic acid receptor (AMPA-R) antibody; and gamma-amino butyric acid-type B receptor (GABA-B-R) antibody. Of course, a comprehensive discussion of all of these autoantibodies is beyond the scope of this chapter.

More problematic is the patient without a recognized malignancy who presents with a neuropathy of unknown etiology. In such cases when antineuronal autoantibodies are sought, they are almost always negative, and if positive, antineuronal autoantibodies have a very low positive predictive value for cancer. As counter to these findings, the literature reports that some malignancies are not diagnosed for years after the neurologic presentation. It is likely a low-yield (and expensive) endeavor if a paraneoplastic autoantibody panel is ordered for every patient with an unexplained neuropathy in the absence of a recognized malignancy.

STIFF-PERSON SYNDROME

Stiff-Person syndrome (SPS), an acquired autoimmune disease, is characterized by waxing and waning muscle rigidity with spasms that may first

affect the axial muscles and progress to involve the proximal limb muscles (Baizabal-Carvallo & Jankovic, 2014). The usual age of onset of this rare disease is age 30 to 60 years.

These patients with stiffness almost always have high titers of autoantibodies to GAD (e.g., GADA), and type 1 diabetes is observed in approximately one-third of these neurologically affected patients. Thyroiditis can occur in SPS patients. Like GADA, ICA are also very common in SPS. GADA are observed in other neurologic diseases, such as cerebellar ataxia, epilepsy, limbic encephalitis, and abnormal eye movement disorders (Alexopoulos & Dalakas, 2013). Amphiphysin autoantibodies detected by immunoblotting are reported in 5% of people with SPS. These later autoantibodies also serve as paraneoplastic autoantibody markers. Of interest, IA-2A are also associated with SPS (Morgenthaler et al, 1997). The GADA assay for SPS is the same GADA assay as that used for type 1 diabetes.

POLYMYOSITIS

Polymyositis is a noninfectious inflammatory myopathy. The disorder affects proximal muscles, is symmetric, and is often painful. Weakness can be of chronic onset. Polymyositis most commonly affects older adults. It is often associated with mixed connective tissue disease. The pathogenesis is that of cell-mediated injury of myocytes via the actions of CD8 cytotoxic T cells and macrophages. Jo 1 autoantibodies directed against histidyl tRNA synthetase are characteristic of polymyositis, and such testing is commercially available from reference laboratories (Ghirardello et al, 2013).

CONCLUSION

The diagnosis of an autoimmune disease is best supported by a compatible clinical history and positivity for an organ-specific autoantibody. Indeed, many autoimmune diseases do display organ-specific autoantibodies (e.g., type 1 diabetes, AITD, autoimmune Addison disease, myasthenia gravis, and Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome); however, many autoimmune diseases (e.g., multiple sclerosis) do not manifest such pathognomonic autoantibodies. Autoantibody testing remains the bedrock for the diagnosis of many organ-specific autoimmune diseases. Such markers can also predict the development of disease in asymptomatic but autoantibody-positive individuals. It should be noted that many autoantibodies of potential clinical value are not available outside of research laboratories, limiting their availability. Table 54-7 provides a summary of the clinically important antibodies discussed in this chapter.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

TABLE 54-7
Clinically Important Antibodies or Autoantibodies

Disease	Important Autoantibody or Antibody Marker(s)[a,b]
Cutaneous Autoimmune Diseases	
Pemphigus vulgaris	Desmoglein 1 autoantibody Desmoglein 3 autoantibody
Pemphigus vulgaris	IIF with anti-IgG; substrate: monkey esophagus
Pemphigus foliaceus	Desmoglein 1 autoantibody IIF with anti-IgG; substrate: guinea pig esophagus
Paraneoplastic pemphigus	IgG antibodies to desmogleins and plakin family proteins (i.e., envoplakin, periplakin, plectin, desmoplakin 1 and 2)[c] IIF with anti-IgG; substrate: rat bladder IIF with anti-C3; substrate: rat bladder
IgA pemphigus	IIF with anti-IgA; substrate: monkey esophagus
Bullous pemphigoid	Bullous pemphigoid antigen 1 (BPAg1 [BP230]) autoantibody Bullous pemphigoid antigen 2 (BPAg2 [BP180]) autoantibody IIF with anti-IgG; substrate: salt-split human skin
Pemphigoid gestationis	IIF with anti-C3 IIF with anti-IgG
Mucous membrane pemphigoid	IIF with anti-IgG
Linear IgA dermatosis	IIF with anti-IgA
Epidermolysis bullosa acquisita	IIF with anti-IgG
Dermatitis herpetiformis	IIF with anti-IgA IgA autoantibodies to endomysium, gliadin, tTG (tissue transglutaminase) and eTG (epidermal transglutaminase)[c]
Gastrointestinal and Hepatobiliary Autoimmune Diseases	
Pernicious anemia	Gastric parietal cell autoantibody (PCA) Intrinsic factor autoantibody
Celiac Disease	IgA tissue transglutaminase (tTG) autoantibody IgG tissue transglutaminase (tTG) autoantibody IgA deamidated gliadin antibody IgG deamidated gliadin antibody IgA endomysial autoantibody
Inflammatory bowel disease	Perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (p-ANCA) IgA IgG anti–*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* mannan antibodies (IgA ASCA) IgG anti–*Saccharomyces cerevisiae* mannan antibodies (IgG ASCA)
Autoimmune hepatitis	Smooth muscle autoantibody (SMA) Antinuclear autoantibody (ANA) Anti–LKM-1 autoantibody (LKM = liver-kidney microsomal) Anti–LC-1 autoantibody (LC = liver cytosol) Antimitochondrial autoantibody (AMA) Antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody ANCA) Antiasialoglycoprotein receptor autoantibodies (anti-ASGPR autoantibodies)[c]
Primary biliary cirrhosis	Antimitochondrial autoantibody (AMA)
Primary sclerosing cholangitis	Perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (p-ANCA)
Autoimmune pancreatitis	No antibodies specific for autoimmune pancreatitis
Glomerular Autoimmune Diseases	
Membranous nephropathy	IgG phospholipase A2 receptor autoantibody (PLA_2RA)
IgA nephropathy	There are no autoantibody tests for IgA nephropathy
Membranoproliferative Glomerulonephritis (MPGN)	There are no autoantibody tests for MPGN
C3 glomerulopathy	C3 nephritic factor (C3Nef)
Postinfectious glomerulonephritis	Antistreptolysin O antibody (ASO) Anti–deoxyribonuclease-B antibody (anti–DNAse-B)
Anti-glomerular basement membrane glomerulonephritis	Glomerular basement membrane antibodies
Pauci-immune glomerulonephritis	Perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (p-ANCA) Cytoplasmic antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody (c-ANCA)
Lupus glomerulonephritis	Anti–ds-DNA autoantibody Anti-Sm autoantibody

Continued

TABLE 54-7
Clinically Important Antibodies or Autoantibodies—cont'd

Disease	Important Autoantibody or Antibody Marker(s)[a,b]
Immunoendocrinopathies	
Type 1 diabetes	Islet cell cytoplasmic autoantibody (ICA) Insulin autoantibody (IAA) Glutamic acid decarboxylase autoantibody (GADA) Insulinoma-2-associated autoantibodies (IA-2A) Zinc transporter-8 autoantibodies (ZnT8A)
Autoimmune thyroid disease	Thyroperoxidase autoantibody (TPOA) Thyroglobulin autoantibody (TGA) Thyroid stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI) Thyrotropin-binding inhibitor immunoglobulin (TBII)
Autoimmune Addison disease	Adrenal cell cytoplasmic autoantibody (ACA) 21-hydroxylase autoantibody
Ovarian autoimmunity	Steroidal cell autoantibody (SCA)
Autoimmune Diseases of the Neuromuscular Junction, Nervous System, and Muscle	
Myasthenia gravis	Acetyl choline receptor (AChR) autoantibody Muscle-specific kinase (MuSK) autoantibody
Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome	Voltage-gated calcium channel (VGCC) autoantibody
Multiple sclerosis	There are no autoantibody tests for multiple sclerosis
Paraneoplastic neurologic syndromes	Too numerous to list; see text
Stiff-person syndrome	Glutamic acid decarboxylase autoantibody (GADA)
Polymyositis	Jo 1 (antihistidyl tRNA synthetase) autoantibody

Anti-C3, Anti-C3 antibody labeled with FITC; *anti-IgA,* anti-IgA antibody labeled with FITC; *anti-IgG,* anti-IgG antibody labeled with FITC; *BMZ,* basement membrane zone; *IIF,* indirect immunofluorescence.
[a]Excludes direct immunofluorescence, which requires biopsy material; not every organ-specific autoimmune disease has a disease-specific autoantibody. Some antibodies are only detected in a subset of affected individuals. Non-disease-specific autoantibodies are listed only when they may be particularly diagnostically helpful.
[b]Regarding IFF, the specific distributions of the antigens are discussed in the text.
[c]Testing may not be available from reference laboratories—for example, research-only laboratories.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Arbache ST: Immunofluorescence testing in the diagnosis of autoimmune blistering diseases: Overview of 10-year experience, *An Bras Dermatol* 89:885–889, 2014.
A recent review of pemphigus and related disorders.

Baekkeskov S, Aanstoot HJ, Christgau S, et al: Identification of the 64K autoantigen in insulin-dependent diabetes as the GABA-synthesizing enzyme glutamic acid decarboxylase, *Nature* 347:151–156, 1990.
A groundbreaking report that identified the 64 kDa islet autoantigen as glutamic acid decarboxylase.

Beck LH Jr, Salant DJ: Membranous nephropathy: From models to man, *J Clin Invest* 124:2307–2314, 2014.
An overview of important glomerular diseases.

Borchers AT, Leibushor N, Naguwa SM, et al: Lupus nephritis: A critical review, *Autoimmun Rev* 12:174–194, 2012.
A recent review of lupus glomerulonephritis.

Elder M, Maclaren N, Riley W: Gonadal autoantibodies in patients with hypogonadism and/or Addison's disease, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 52(6):1137–1142, 1981.
The seminal paper describing steroidal cell autoantibodies.

Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 Revised international Chapel Hill Consensus Conference nomenclature of vasculitides, *Arthritis Rheum* 65:1–11, 2013.
A consensus conference report concerning the vasculitidies.

Ludvigsson JF, Bai JC, Biagi F, et al: Diagnosis and management of adult coeliac disease: Guidelines from the British Society of Gastroenterology, *Gut* 63:1210–1228, 2014.
A guideline regarding the diagnosis and management of celiac disease.

Maclaren NK, Riley WJ: Thyroid, gastric, and adrenal autoimmunities associated with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *Diabetes Care* 8(Suppl 1):34–38, 1985.
The classic early paper describing the associations of thyrogastric aytoimmunity and type 1 diabetes.

Palmer JP, Asplin CM, Clemons P, et al: Insulin antibodies in insulin-dependent diabetics before insulin treatment, *Science* 222(4630):1337–1339, 1983.
The first description of insulin autoantibodies as markers of islet autoimmunity.

Rosenfeld MR, Dalmau J: Diagnosis and management of paraneoplastic neurologic disorders, *Curr Treat Options Oncol* 14(4):528–538, 2013.
A review of the paraneoplastic neurologic disorders.

Schirmer L, Srivastava R, Hemmer B: To look for a needle in a haystack: The search for autoantibodies in multiple sclerosis, *Mult Scler* 20(3):271–279, 2014.
Highlights autoantibodies in multiple sclerosis.

Stathatos N, Daniels GH: Autoimmune thyroid disease, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 24(1):70–75, 2012.
Focuses on thyroid autoimmunity.

Wahren-Herlenius M, Dörner T: Immunopathogenic mechanisms of systemic autoimmune disease, *Lancet* 382(9894):819–831, 2013.
A general overview of systemic autoimmunity.

Winter WE, Schatz DA: Autoimmune markers in diabetes, *Clin Chem* 57(2):168–175, 2011.
A contemporary overview of islet autoantibody testing.

Yeste A, Quintana FJ: Antigen microarrays for the study of autoimmune diseases, *Clin Chem* 59(7):1036–1044, 2013.
Emerging technologies in the detection of autoantibodies.

REFERENCES

Ahonen P, Miettinen A, Perheentupa J: Adrenal and steroidal cell antibodies in patients with autoimmune polyglandular disease type I and risk of adrenocortical and ovarian failure, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 64(3):494–500, 1987.

Alexander MP, Larsen CP, Gibson IW, et al: Membranous glomerulonephritis is a manifestation of IgG4-related disease, *Kidney Int* 83:455–462, 2013.

Alexopoulos H, Dalakas MC: Immunology of stiff person syndrome and other GAD-associated neurological disorders, *Expert Rev Clin Immunol* 9(11):1043–1053, 2013.

Alvarez F, Berg PA, Bianchi FB, et al: International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group Report: Review of criteria for diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis, *J Hepatol* 31(5):929–938, 1999.

Amagai M: The clinical phenotype of pemphigus is defined by the anti-desmoglein autoantibody profile, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 167–170:1999.

Aoki V: Direct and indirect immunofluorescence, *An Bras Dermatol* 490–500:2010.

Asada M, Nishio A, Uchida K, et al: Identification of a novel autoantibody against pancreatic secretory trypsin inhibitor in patients with autoimmune pancreatitis, *Pancreas* 33(1):20–26, 2006.

Athanasiou Y, Voskarides K, Gale DP, et al: Familial C3 glomerulopathy associated with CFHR5 mutations: Clinical characteristics of 91 patients in 16 pedigrees, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 6:1436–1446, 2011.

Atkinson MA, Maclaren NK, Riley WJ, et al: Are insulin autoantibodies markers for insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus?, *Diabetes* 35(8):894–898, 1986.

Baizabal-Carvallo JF, Jankovic J: Stiff-person syndrome: Insights into a complex autoimmune disorder, *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 2014.

Barbesino G, Tomer Y: Clinical review: Clinical utility of TSH receptor antibodies, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 98(6):2247–2255, 2013.

Baum S: Diagnosis and classification of autoimmune blistering diseases, *Autoimmun Rev* 482–489:2014.

Bech AP, Hofstra JM, Brenchley PE, et al: Association of anti-PLA2R antibodies with outcomes after immunosuppressive therapy in idiopathic membranous nephropathy, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 9:1386–1392, 2014.

Beck LH Jr, Bonegio RG, Lambeau G, et al: M-type phospholipase A2 receptor as target antigen in idiopathic membranous nephropathy, *N Eng J Med* 361: 11–21, 2009.

Beck LH Jr, Fervenza FC, Beck DM, et al: Rituximab-induced depletion of anti-PLA2R autoantibodies predicts response in membranous nephropathy, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 22:1543–1550, 2011.

Beniwal P, Harrell L: The status of diagnostic markers for inflammatory bowel disease, *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 12:479–484, 2010.

Berrih-Aknin S, Frenkian-Cuvelier M, Eymard B: Diagnostic and clinical classification of autoimmune myasthenia gravis, *J Autoimmun* 48–49:143–148, 2014.

Bertholf RL, Jialal I, Winter WE: The adrenal cortex. In Burtis C, Ashwood E, Bruns D, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry and molecular diagnostics*, ed 5, St. Louis, Mo, 2012, Elsevier Saunders, pp 1847–1904.

Betterle C, Dal Pra C, Mantero F, et al: Autoimmune adrenal insufficiency and autoimmune polyendocrine syndromes: Autoantibodies, autoantigens, and their applicability in diagnosis and disease prediction, *Endocr Rev* 23(3):327–364, 2002.

Bizzaro N, Antico A: Diagnosis and classification of pernicious anemia, *Autoimmun Rev* 13(4–5):565–568, 2014.

Blixt O, Hoffmann J, Svenson S, et al: Pathogen specific carbohydrate antigen microarrays: A chip for detection of Salmonella O-antigen specific antibodies, *Glycoconj J* 1:27–36, 2008.

Bottazzo GF, Florin-Christensen A, Doniach D: Islet-cell antibodies in diabetes mellitus with autoimmune polyendocrine deficiencies, *Lancet* 2(7892):1279–1283, 1974.

Bowlus CL, Gershwin ME: The diagnosis of primary biliary cirrhosis, *Autoimmun Rev* 13(4–5):441–444, 2014.

Brandão Neto RA, de Carvalho JF: Diagnosis and classification of Addison's disease (autoimmune adrenalitis), *Autoimmun Rev* 13(4–5):408–411, 2014.

Brennan DJ, O'Connor DP, Rexhepaj E, et al: Antibody-based proteomics: Fast-tracking molecular diagnostics in oncology, *Nat Rev Cancer* 10:605–617, 2010.

Bridoux F, Leung N, Hutchinson CA, et al: Diagnosis of monoclonal gammopathy of renal significance, *Kidney Int* 2015 (in press).

Burbelo PD, Ching KH, Bren KE, et al: Searching for biomarkers: Humoral response profiling with luciferase immunoprecipitation systems, *Expert Rev Proteomics* 8(3):309–316, 2011.

Burbelo PD, O'Hanlon TP: New autoantibody detection technologies yield novel insights into autoimmune disease, *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 26:717–723, 2014.

Cappelli C, Gandossi E, Castellano M, et al: Prognostic value of thyrotropin receptor antibodies (TRAb) in Graves' disease: A 120-month prospective study, *Endocr J* 54(5):713–720, 2007.

Carmel R: Prevalence of undiagnosed pernicious anemia in the elderly, *Arch Intern Med* 156:1097–1100, 1996.

Carmel R: Current concepts in cobalamin deficiency, *Annu Rev Med* 51:357–375, 2000.

Chan LS: Ocular and oral mucous membrane pemphigoid (cicatricial pemphigoid), *Clin Dermatol* 30(1):34–37, 2012.

Chhabra S: Immunofluorescence in dermatology, *Indian J Dermatol Venereol Leprol* 677–691, 2012.

Coco G, Dal Pra C, Presotto F, et al: Estimated risk for developing autoimmune Addison's disease in patients with adrenal cortex autoantibodies, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 91(5):1637–1645, 2006.

Conrad K, Roggenbuck D, Laass MW: Diagnosis and classification of ulcerative colitis, *Autoimmun Rev* 13:463–466, 2014.

Cook HT, Pickering MC: Histopathology of MPGN and C3 glomeruopathies, *Nat Rev Nephrol* 11:14–22, 2015.

Cunha PR: Autoimmune bullous dermatoses, *An Bras Dermatol* 111–124:2009.

Czaja AJ: Diagnosis and management of the overlap syndromes of autoimmune hepatitis, *Can J Gastroenterol* 27(7):417–423, 2013a.

Czaja AJ: The overlap syndromes of autoimmune hepatitis, *Dig Dis Sci* 58:326–343, 2013b.

Dali-Youcef N, Andrès E: An update on cobalamin deficiency in adults, *QJM* 102(1):17–28, 2009.

Damoiseaux J, Andrade LE, Fritzler MJ, et al: Autoantibodies 2015: From diagnostic biomarkers toward prediction, prognosis and prevention, *Autoimmun Rev* 2015.

Davidson A, Diamond B: Autoimmune diseases, *N Engl J Med* 345(5):340–350, 2001.

Dayalu P, Teener JW: Stiff Person syndrome and other anti-GAD-associated neurologic disorders, *Semin Neurol* 32(5):544–549, 2012.

Debiec H, Lefeu F, Kemper MJ, et al: Early-childhood membranous nephropathy due to cationic bovine serum albumin, *N Eng J Med* 364:2101–2110, 2011.

Debiec H, Ronco P: PLA2R autoantibodies and PLA2R glomerular deposits in membranous nephropathy, *N Eng J Med* 364:689–690, 2011.

Díaz-Manera J, Rojas García R, Illa I: Treatment strategies for myasthenia gravis: An update, *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 13(13):1873–1883, 2012.

Di Sabatino A, Vanoli A, Giuffrida P, et al: The function of tissue transglutaminase in celiac disease, *Autoimmun Rev* 11:746–753, 2012.

Donelan W, Wang H, Li SW, et al: Novel detection of pancreatic and duodenal homeobox 1 autoantibodies (PAA) in human sera using luciferase immunoprecipitation systems (LIPS) assay, *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 6(6):1202–1210, 2013.

Durazzo M, Premoli A, Paschetta E, et al: Overlap syndromes of autoimmune hepatitis: An open question, *Dig Dis Sci* 58(2):344–348, 2013.

Ehrlich JR, Qin S, Liu BS-C: The "reverse capture" autoantibody microarray: A native antigen-based platform for autoantibody profiling, *Nat Protoc* 1:452–460, 2006.

Ellington AA, Kullo IJ, Bailey KR, et al: Antibody-based protein multiplex platforms: Technical and operational challenges, *Clin Chem* 56(2):186–193, 2010.

Endo T, Takizawa S, Tanaka S, et al: Amylase alpha-2A autoantibodies: Novel marker of autoimmune pancreatitis and fulminant type 1 diabetes, *Diabetes* 58(3): 732–737, 2009.

Fasano A, Catassi C: Clinical practice. Celiac disease, *N Engl J Med* 367:2419–2426, 2012.

Fenalti G, Buckle AM: Structural biology of the GAD autoantigen, *Autoimmun Rev* 9(3):148–152, 2010.

Ferrante M, Henckaerts L, Joossens M, et al: New serological markers in inflammatory bowel disease are associated with complicated disease behaviour, *Gut* 56:1394–1403, 2007.

Fhied C, Kanangat S, Borgia JA: Development of a bead-based immunoassay to routinely measure vimentin autoantibodies in the clinical setting, *J Immunol Methods* 407:9–14, 2014.

Fineberg SE, Kawabata TT, Finco-Kent D, et al: Immunological responses to exogenous insulin, *Endocr Rev* 28(6):625–652, 2007.

Frohman EM, Racke MK, Raine CS: Multiple sclerosis—The plaque and its pathogenesis, *N Engl J Med* 354(9):942–955, 2006.

Fu Q, Schoenhoff FS, Savage WJ, et al: Multiplex assays for biomarker research and clinical application: Translational science coming of age, *Proteomics Clin Appl* 4: 271–284, 2010.

Ganda OP, Srikanta S, Gleason RE, et al: Diminished A-cell secretion in the early phase of type I diabetes mellitus, *Metabolism* 35(11):1074–1077, 1986.

Gessl A, Lemmens-Gruber R, Kautzky-Willer A: Thyroid disorders, *Handb Exp Pharmacol* 214:361–386, 2012.

Ghirardello A, Bassi N, Palma L, et al: Autoantibodies in polymyositis and dermatomyositis, *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 15(6):335, 2013.

Gonzalez-Buitrago JM: Multiplexed testing in the autoimmunity laboratory, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 44(10):1169–1174, 2006.

Graus F, Saiz A, Dalmau J: Antibodies and neuronal autoimmune disorders of the CNS, *J Neurol* 257(4):509–517, 2010.

Green R: Chapter 41. Folate, cobalamin, and megaloblastic anemias. In Lichtman MA, Kipps TJ, Seligsohn U, et al, editors: *Williams hematology, 8e*, New York, 2010, McGraw-Hill.

Guandalini S, Assiri A: Celiac disease: A review, *JAMA Pediatr* 168(3):272–278, 2014.

Gupta MK: Thyrotropin receptor antibodies: Advances and importance of detection techniques in thyroid diseases, *Clin Biochem* 25(3):193–199, 1992.

Ha JC, Richman DP: Myasthenia gravis and related disorders: Pathology and molecular pathogenesis, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1852(4):651–657, 2015.

Haas M, Racusen LC, Bagnasco SM: IgA-dominant postinfectious glomerulonephritis: A report of 13 cases with common ultrstructural features, *Hum Pathol* 39:1309–1316, 2008.

Haller MJ, Winter WE, Schatz DA: Autoimmune polyglandular syndromes. In Sperling M, editor: *Pediatric endocrinology*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2014, W.B. Saunders, pp 901–919.

Harrison DM: Multiple sclerosis, *Ann Intern Med* 160(7):ITC4-2–ITC4-18, 2014.

Hart PA, Zen Y, Chari ST: Recent advances in autoimmune pancreatitis, *Gastroenterology* 2015.

Hayter SM, Cook MC: Updated assessment of the prevalence, spectrum and case definition of autoimmune disease, *Autoimmun Rev* 11(10):754–765, 2012.

Hennes EM, Zeniya M, Czaja AJ, et al: Simplified criteria for the diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis, *Hepatology* 48(1):169–176, 2008.

Hertl M: Pemphigus. S2 Guideline for diagnosis and treatment—Guided by the European Dermatology Forum (EDF) in cooperation with the European Academy of Dermatology and Venereology (EADV), *J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol* 1–10:2014.

Hinton RC: Paraneoplastic neurologic syndromes, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 10(4):909–925, 1996.

Hirschfield GM, Karlsen TH, Lindor KD, et al: Primary sclerosing cholangitis, *Lancet* 382(9904):1587–1599, 2013.

Hoffman IE, Peene I, Veys EM, et al: Detection of specific antinuclear reactivities in patients with negative anti-nuclear antibody immunofluorescence screening tests, *Clin Chem* 48(12):2171–2176, 2002.

Hou J, Markowitz GS, Herlitz LC, et al: Toward a working definition of C3 glomerulopathy by immunofluorescence, *Kidney Int* 85:450–456, 2014.

Hoxha E, Harendza S, Pinnschmidt H, et al: M-type phospholipase A2 receptor autoantibodies and renal function in patients with primary membranous nephropathy, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 9:1883–1890, 2014a.

Hoxha E, Kneifler U, Stege G, et al: Enhanced expression of the M-type phospholipase A2 receptor in glomeruli correlates with serum receptor antibodies in primary membranous nephropathy, *Kidney Int* 82:797–804, 2012.

Hoxha E, Thiele I, Zahner G, et al: Phospholipase A2 receptor autoantibodies and clinical outcome in patients with primary membranous nephropathy, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 25:1357–1366, 2014b.

Huang CC, Lehman A, Albawardi A, et al: IgG subclass staining in renal biopsies with membranous glomerulonephritis indicates subclass switch during disease progression, *Mod Pathol* 26:799–805, 2013.

Hudson BG, Tryggvason K, Sundaramoorthy M, et al: Alport syndrome, Goodpasture syndrome and type IV collagen, *N Eng J Med* 348:2543–2556, 2003.

Ishii K: Importance of serological tests in diagnosis of autoimmune blistering diseases, *J Dermatol* 3–10: 2015.

Jaeger C, Allendörfer J, Hatziagelaki E, et al: Persistent GAD 65 antibodies in longstanding IDDM are not associated with residual beta-cell function, neuropathy or HLA-DR status, *Horm Metab Res* 29(10):510–515, 1997.

Jennette JC, Falk RJ: Pathogenesis of antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody-mediated disease, *Nat Rev Nephrol* 10:463–473, 2014.

Joly P: Pemphigus group (vulgaris, vegetans, foliaceus, herpetiformis, brasiliensis), *Clin Dermatol* 432–436, 2011.

Kain R, Tadema H, McKinney EF, et al: High prevalence of autoantibodies to hLAMP2 in anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody-associated vasculitis, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 23:556–566, 2013.

Kamradt T, Mitchison NA: Tolerance and autoimmunity, *N Engl J Med* 344(9):655–664, 2001.

Kanigicherla D, Gummadova J, McKenzie EA, et al: Anti-PLA2R antibodies measured by ELISA predict long-term outcome in a prevalent population of patients with idiopathic membranous nephropathy, *Kidney Int* 83:940–948, 2013.

Karussis D: The diagnosis of multiple sclerosis and the various related demyelinating syndromes: A critical review, *J Autoimmun* 48–49:134–142, 2014.

Kattah A, Ayalon R, BecK LH Jr, et al: Anti-phospholipase A2 receptor antibodies in recurrent membranous nephropathy, *Am J Transplant* 2015 (in press).

Kershenovich R: Diagnosis and classification of pemphigus and bullous pemphigoid, *Autoimmun Rev* 477–481, 2014.

Kessenbrock K, Krumbholz M, Schonermarck U, et al: Netting neutrophils in autoimmune small-vessel vasculitis, *Nat Med* 15:623–625, 2009.

Ketchum CH, Riley WJ, Maclaren NK: Adrenal dysfunction in asymptomatic patients with adrenocortical autoantibodies, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 58(6):1166–1170, 1984.

Khosroshahi A, Ayalon R, Beck LH Jr, et al: IgG4-related disease is not associated with antibody to the phospholipase A2 receptor, *Int J Rheumatol* 139409, 2012.

Ku DF, Moon M, Lanning LD, et al: Clinical features and outcomes of 98 children and adults with dense deposit disease, *Pediatr Nephrol* 27:773–781, 2012.

Laass MW, Roggenbuck D, Conrad K: Diagnosis and classification of Crohn's disease, *Autoimmun Rev* 13:467–471, 2014.

Lahner E, Annibale B: Pernicious anemia: New insights from a gastroenterological point of view, *World J Gastroenterol* 15:5121–5128, 2009.

Lan MS, Wasserfall C, Maclaren NK, et al: IA-2, a transmembrane protein of the protein tyrosine phosphatase family, is a major autoantigen in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 93(13):6367–6370, 1996.

Larman HB, Zhao Z, Laserson U, et al: Autoantigen discovery with a synthetic human peptidome, *Nat Biotechnol* 29:535–541, 2011.

Larsen CP, Ambruzs JM, Bonsib SM, et al: Membranous-like glomerulopathy with masked IgG kappa deposits, *Kidney Int* 86:154–161, 2014.

Leslie RD, Kolb H, Schloot NC, et al: Diabetes classification: Grey zones, sound and smoke: Action LADA 1, *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 24(7):511–519, 2008.

Lewis JD: The utility of biomarkers in the diagnosis and therapy of inflammatory bowel disease, *Gastroenterology* 140:1817–1826, e2, 2011.

Liberal R, Grant C, Longhi MS, et al: Diagnostic criteria of autoimmune hepatitis, *Autoimmun Rev* 13:6, 2014.

Liberal R, Mieli-Vergani G, Vergani D: Clinical significance of autoantibodies in autoimmune hepatitis, *J Autoimmun* 46:17–24, 2013.

Lleo A, Invernizzi P, Gao B, et al: Definition of human autoimmunity—Autoantibodies versus autoimmune disease, *Autoimmun Rev* 9(5):A259–A266, 2010.

Lytton SD, Kahaly GJ: Bioassays for TSH-receptor autoantibodies: An update, *Autoimmun Rev* 10(2):116–122, 2010.

Maat P, Brouwer E, Hulsenboom E, et al: Multiplex serology of paraneoplastic antineuronal antibodies, *J Immunol Methods* 391(1–2):125–132, 2013.

Manns MP, Czaja AJ, Gorham JD, et al: Diagnosis and management of autoimmune hepatitis, *Hepatology* 51:2193–2213, 2010.

Mareska M, Gutmann L: Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome, *Semin Neurol* 24(2):149–153, 2004.

Medjeral-Thomas NR, O'Shaughnessy MM, O'Reagan JA, et al: C3 glomerulopathy: Clinicopathologic features and predictors of outcome, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 9:46–53, 2014.

Medzhitov R, Janeway C Jr: Innate immunity, *N Engl J Med* 343(5):338–344, 2000.

Menconi F, Marcocci C, Marinò M: Diagnosis and classification of Graves' disease, *Autoimmun Rev* 13(4–5): 398–402, 2014.

Mendes FB: Review: Dermatitis herpetiformis, *An Bras Dermatol* 594–599, 2013.

Messias NC, Walker PD, Larsen CP: Paraffin immunofluorescence in the renal pathology laboratory: More than a salvage technique, *Mod Pathol* 2015. (in press).

Miao D, Guyer KM, Dong F, et al: GAD65 autoantibodies detected by electrochemiluminescence assay identify high risk for type 1 diabetes, *Diabetes* 62(12): 4174–4178, 2013.

Mihai S: Immunopathology and molecular diagnosis of autoimmune bullous diseases, *J Cell Mol Med* 11(3): 462–481, 2007.

Morgenthaler NG, Seissler J, Achenbach P, et al: Antibodies to the tyrosine phosphatase-like protein IA-2 are highly associated with IDDM, but not with autoimmune endocrine diseases or stiff man syndrome, *Autoimmunity* 25(4):203–211, 1997.

Mutasim DF: Immunofluorescence in dermatology, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 803–822, 2001.

Nakazawa D, Shida H, Tomaru U, et al: Enhanced formation and disordered regulation of NETs in myeloperoxidase-ANCA-associated microscopic polyangiitis, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 25:990–997, 2014.

Nancy A-L: Prediction and prevention of autoimmune skin disorders, *Arch Dermatol Res* 57–64, 2009.

Nasr SH, Radhakrishnan J, D'Agati VD: Bacterial infection-related glomerulonephritis in adults, *Kidney Int* 83:792–803, 2013.

Nayak RC, Omar MA, Rabizadeh A, et al: Cytoplasmic" islet cell antibodies. Evidence that the target antigen is a sialoglycoconjugate, *Diabetes* 34(6):617–619, 1985.

Neumann WL, Coss E, Rugge M, et al: Autoimmune atrophic gastritis—Pathogenesis, pathology and management, *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 10:529–541, 2013.

NIH Consensus Development Conference on Celiac Disease, *NIH Consens State Sci Statements* 21:1–23, 2004.

Oger J, Frykman H: An update on laboratory diagnosis in myasthenia gravis, *Clin Chim Acta* 444:126–131, 2015.

Ohtani H, Wakui H, Komatsuda A, et al: Distribution of glomerular IgG subclass deposits in malignancy-associated membranous nephropathy, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 19:574–579, 2004.

Olaru F, Luo W, Wang X-P, et al: Quaternary epitopes of α245(IV) collagen initiate Alport post-transplant anti-GBM disease, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 24:889–895, 2013.

Orban T, Sosenko JM, Cuthbertson D, et al: Diabetes Prevention Trial—Type 1 Study Group. Pancreatic islet autoantibodies as predictors of type 1 diabetes in the Diabetes Prevention Trial—Type 1, *Diabetes Care* 32(12):2269–2274, 2009.

O'Reilly DA, Malde DJ, Duncan T, et al: Review of the diagnosis, classification and management of autoimmune pancreatitis, *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 5(2):71–81, 2014.

Orgiazzi J: The spectrum of autoimmune thyroid diseases (AITD), *Ann Med Interne (Paris)* 150(4):294–300, 1999.

Page KA, Dejardin S, Kahn CR, et al: A patient with type B insulin resistance syndrome, responsive to immune therapy, *Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab* 3(12):835–840, 2007.

Parker CE, Domanski D, Percy AJ, et al: Mass spectrometry in high-throughput clinical biomarker assays: Multiple reaction monitoring, *Top Curr Chem* 336:117–137, 2014.

Pedchenko V, Bondar O, Fogo AB, et al: Molecular architecture of the Goodpasture autoantigen in anti-GBM nephritis, *N Eng J Med* 363:343–354, 2010.

Peschel A, Basu N, Benharkou A, et al: Autoantibodies to hLAMP2 in ANCA-negative pauci-immune focal necrotizing GN, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 25:455–463, 2014.

Pickering MC, D'Agati VD, Nester CM, et al: C3 glomerulopathy: Consensus report, *Kidney Int* 84:1079–1089, 2013.

Porcelijn L, Huiskes E, Comijs-van Osselen I, et al: A new bead-based human platelet antigen antibodies detection assay versus the monoclonal antibody immobilization of platelet antigens assay, *Transfusion* 54(6):1486–1492, 2014.

Pourmand R: Lambert-eaton myasthenic syndrome, *Front Neurol Neurosci* 26:120–125, 2009.

Quintana FJ, Farez MF, Viglietta V, et al: Antigen microarrays identify unique serum autoantibody signatures in clinical and pathologic subtypes of multiple sclerosis, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 105(48):18889–18894, 2008.

Reily C, Ueda H, Huang Z-Q, et al: Cellular signaling and production of galactose-deficient IgA1 in IgA nephropathy, an autoimmune disease, *J Immunol Res* 197548, 2014.

Riley WJ, Toskes PP, Maclaren NK, et al: Predictive value of gastric parietal cell autoantibodies as a marker for gastric and hematologic abnormalities associated with insulin-dependent diabetes, *Diabetes* 31(12):1051–1055, 1982.

Rodríguez de Córdoba S, Hidalgo MS, Pinto S, et al: Genetics of atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome (aHUS), *Semin Thromb Hemost* 40(4):422–430, 2014.

Rodriquez-Iturbe B, Musser JM: The current state of poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 19:1855–1864, 2008.

Rosário PW, Reis JS, Fagundes TA, et al: Latent autoimmune diabetes in adults (LADA): Usefulness of anti-GAD antibody titers and benefit of early insulinization, *Arq Bras Endocrinol Metabol* 51(1):52–58, 2007.

Rose C: Autoantibodies against epidermal transglutaminase are a sensitive diagnostic marker in patients with dermatitis herpetiformis on a normal or gluten-free diet, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 39–43:2009.

Roth AJ, Brown MC, Smith RN, et al: Anti-LAMP2 antibodies are not prevalent in patients with antineutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibody glomerulonephritis, *J Am Soc Nephrol* 23:545–555, 2012.

Roth AJ, Ooi JD, Hess JJ, et al: Epitope specificity determines pathogenicity and detectability in ANCA-associated vasculitis, *J Clin Invest* 123:1773–1783, 2013.

Roussel A, Benichou J, Randriamanantany ZA, et al: Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for the combination of bullous pemphigoid antigens 1 and 2 in the diagnosis of bullous pemphigoid, *Arch Dermatol* 147(3):293–298, 2011.

Saus J, Wieslander J, Langeveld JP, et al: Identification of the Goodpasture antigen as the alpha 3(IV) chain of collagen IV, *J Biol Chem* 263:13374–13380, 1988.

Schatz D, Krischer J, Horne G, et al: Islet cell antibodies predict insulin-dependent diabetes in United States school age children as powerfully as in unaffected relatives, *J Clin Invest* 93(6):2403–2407, 1994.

Schatz DA, Winter WE: Autoimmune polyglandular syndrome. II: Clinical syndrome and treatment, *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 31(2):339–352, 2002.

Schmidt E: Modern diagnosis of autoimmune blistering skin diseases, *Autoimmun Rev* 84–89:2010.

Servais A, Noel LH, Roumenina LT, et al: Acquired and genetic complement abnormalities play a critical role in dense deposit disease and other C3 glomerulopathies, *Kidney Int* 82:454–464, 2012.

Sethi S, Fervenza FC: Menbranoproliferative glomerulonephritis—A new look at an old entity, *N Eng J Med* 366:1119–1131, 2012.

Sherr J, Sosenko J, Skyler JS, et al: Prevention of type 1 diabetes: The time has come, *Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab* 4(6):334–343, 2008.

Sinclair D: Clinical and laboratory aspects of thyroid autoantibodies, *Ann Clin Biochem* 43(Pt 3):173–183, 2006.

Sosenko JM, Skyler JS, DiMeglio LA, et al; Type 1 Diabetes TrialNet and Diabetes Prevention Trial–Type 1 Study Groups: A new approach for diagnosing type 1 diabetes in autoantibody-positive individuals based on prediction and natural history, *Diabetes Care* 38(2): 271–276, 2015.

Stanescu HC, Arcos-Burgos M, Medlar A, et al: Risk HLA-DQA1 and PLA(2)R1 alleles in idiopathic memnbarbous nephropathy, *N Eng J Med* 364:616–626, 2011.
Takizawa S, Endo T, Wanjia X, et al: HSP 10 is a new autoantigen in both autoimmune pancreatitis and fulminant type 1 diabetes, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 386(1):192–196, 2009.
Tampoia M, Giavarina D, Di Giorgio C, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA) to detect anti-skin autoantibodies in autoimmune blistering skin diseases: A systematic review and meta-analysis, *Autoimmun Rev* 12(2):121–126, 2012.
Taylor SI, Grunberger G, Marcus-Samuels B, et al: Hypoglycemia associated with antibodies to the insulin receptor, *N Engl J Med* 307(23):1422–1426, 1982.
Tighe PJ, Ryder RR, Todd I, et al: ELISA in the multiplex era: Potential and pitfalls, *Proteomics Clin Appl* 2015.
Titulaer MJ, Lang B, Verschuuren JJ: Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome: From clinical characteristics to therapeutic strategies, *Lancet Neurol* 10(12):1098–1107, 2011.
Toh BH, Van Driel IR, Gleeson PA: Pernicious anemia, *N Engl J Med* 337:1441–1448, 1997.
Tomas NM, Beck LH Jr, Meyer-Schwesinger C, et al: Thrombospondin type-1 domain-containing 7A in idiopathic membranous nephropathy, *N Eng J Med* 371:2277–2287, 2014.
Tonutti E, Bizzaro N: Diagnosis and classification of celiac disease and gluten sensitivity, *Autoimmun Rev* 13:472–476, 2014.
Tozzoli R, Bonaguri C, Melegari A, et al: Current state of diagnostic technologies in the autoimmunology laboratory, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 51(1):129–138, 2013.
Vassileva S: Autoimmune blistering dermatoses as systemic diseases, *Clin Dermatol* 364–375:2014.
Vernino S: Paraneoplastic neurologic syndromes, *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep* 6(3):193–199, 2006.
Veronika Sharp V, Utz PJ: Technology Insight: Can autoantibody profiling improve clinical practice?, *Nat Clin Pract Rheumatol* 3:96–103, 2007.
Vojdani A: Antibodies as predictors of complex autoimmune diseases, *Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol* 21(2): 267–278, 2008.
Wasserfall CH, Atkinson MA: Autoantibody markers for the diagnosis and prediction of type 1 diabetes, *Autoimmun Rev* 5(6):424–428, 2006.
Weening JJ, D'Agati VD, Schwartz MM, et al: The classification of glomerulonephritis in systemic lupus erythematosus revisited, *Kidney Int* 65:521–530, 2004.
Wenzlau JM, Hutton JC: Novel diabetes autoantibodies and prediction of type 1 diabetes, *Curr Diab Rep* 13(5): 608–615, 2013.
Wenzlau JM, Juhl K, Yu L, et al: The cation efflux transporter ZnT8 (Slc30A8) is a major autoantigen in human type 1 diabetes, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 104(43):17040–17045, 2007.
Winter WE, Hardt NS, Harris NS: Carbohydrate disorders. In Clarke W, editor: *Contemporary practice in clinical chemistry*, ed 2, Washington, DC, 2011, AACC Press, pp 343–357.
Winter WE, Jialal I, Devaraj S: Thyrotropin receptor antibody assays: Clinical utility, *Am J Clin Pathol* 139(2):140–142, 2013.
Winter WE, Maclaren NK, Riley WJ, et al: Pancreatic alpha cell autoantibodies and glucagon response to arginine, *Diabetes* 33(5):435–437, 1984.
Wyatt RJ, Julian BA: IgA nephropathy, *N Eng J Med* 368:2402–2414, 2013.
Xiao X, Pickering MC, Smith RJH: C3 glomerulopathy: The genetic and clinical findings in dense deposit disease and C3 glomerulonephritis, *Semin Thromb Hemost* 40:465–471, 2014.
Yang R, Hellmark T, Zhao J, et al: Levels of epitope specific autoantibodies correlate with renal damage in anti-GBM disease, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 24:1838–1844, 2009.
Yaniv G, Twig G, Shor DB-A, et al: A volcanic explosion of autoantibodies in systemic lupus erythematosus: A diversity of 180 different antibodies found in SLE patients, *Autoimmun Rev* 14:75–79, 2015.
Yimam KK, Bowlus CL: Diagnosis and classification of primary sclerosing cholangitis, *Autoimmun Rev* 13(4–5):445–450, 2014.
Yu L, Dong F, Miao D, et al: Proinsulin/insulin autoantibodies measured with electrochemiluminescent assay are the earliest indicator of prediabetic islet autoimmunity, *Diabetes Care* 36(8):2266–2270, 2013.
Zhang Y, Nester CM, Martin B, et al: Defining the complement biomarker profile of C3 glomerulopathy, *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol* 9:1876–1882, 2014.
Zhang Y, Zhao T: Hypoglycemic coma due to insulin autoimmune syndrome induced by methimazole: A rare case report, *Exp Ther Med* 8(5):1581–1584, 2014.
Zone JJ: IgA Autoimmune disorders: Development of a passive transfer mouse model, *J Investig Dermatol Symp Proc* 47–51, 2004.

CHAPTER 55

ALLERGIC DISEASES

Henry A. Homburger, Robert G. Hamilton

OVERVIEW, 1057

PATHOGENESIS OF ALLERGIC DISEASE, 1058
Mechanisms of Immediate Hypersensitivity, 1058
Atopy and the Allergic Phenotype: Genetic Influences and Candidate Genes, 1058
Regulation of IgE Synthesis: Molecular and Cellular Interactions, 1059
Immunoglobulin E: Structural and Functional Characteristics, 1060
Cells and Mediators of Immediate Hypersensitivity Reactions, 1061

LABORATORY TESTING IN THE EVALUATION OF ALLERGIC DISEASES, 1062
The Rationale for Testing, 1062
Allergen Molecules: Protein Component Families, Molecular Structures, and Cross-Reactivity, 1062
In Vivo Test Techniques: Skin Tests and End-Organ Challenge Tests, 1063
Measurement of IgE: Analytic Methods and Reference Ranges, 1063
Measurement of Total Serum IgE: Clinical Applications, 1064
Measurement of Allergen-Specific IgE Antibodies: Analytic Methods, 1065
Measurement of IgE Antibodies: Clinical Applications, 1065
Future Directions: Component-Resolved Diagnostics and Testing by Microarray Methods, 1069
Tests for Mediators of Immediate Hypersensitivity Reactions, 1070

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1070

KEY POINTS

- The prevalence of allergic disease has increased in recent years throughout the world, especially in developed countries.
- IgE antibody is the most important trigger molecule for allergic inflammation.
- Laboratory tests for IgE antibody that establish a high likelihood of allergic disease are widely available, and clinical practice guidelines advocate their use. A positive IgE antibody test result is an indicator of allergic sensitization and a risk factor that provides support for a clinical history–based diagnosis of allergic disease.
- New treatments for allergic diseases such as therapeutic monoclonal anti-IgE antibodies require demonstration of a total serum IgE level between 30 and 700 kU/L in serum prior to use.
- Clinical investigations of the natural history of allergic diseases in children have shown a reproducible sequence of sensitization to allergens that makes it increasingly important to establish the diagnosis of allergy at an early age to identify allergen triggers, optimize treatment, and possibly ameliorate progression of serious diseases such as asthma.
- Tests for total IgE and allergen-specific IgE antibodies are useful principally for diagnosis.
- Measurement of serum total IgE in children and adults is of limited value in the diagnosis of allergic disease due to the overlap between atopic and non-atopic populations. An elevated IgE level carries a high predictive value for allergic disease, but a normal level does not exclude allergic disease. Measurement of total serum IgE is useful in patients suspected of having allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis.
- Measurement of allergen-specific IgE antibodies is diagnostically useful and can be recommended in the following clinical situations:
  - Evaluation of children with clinical signs and symptoms of allergy, including eczema, gastrointestinal signs, rhinitis, or wheezing
  - Evaluation of children and adults suspected of having allergic respiratory disease to establish the diagnosis and to define the specificity of allergen sensitization to pollens, animal proteins, dust mites, fungal antigens, and foods. Results are useful to identify allergens for immunotherapy treatment regimens.
  - Confirmation of sensitization to food allergens and aid in determining the presence of food allergy in children and adults with signs of immediate hypersensitivity to food ingestion
  - Evaluation of sensitization to insect venom allergens, particularly as an aid in defining venom specificity when skin tests are equivocal or there is sensitization to multiple venoms
  - Confirmation of the clinical history–based diagnosis of drug hypersensitivity in patients with anaphylactic sensitivity
  - Confirmation of sensitization to occupational allergens, for example, natural rubber latex.
- Testing for IgE antibodies is not routinely recommended for evaluating the effects of immunotherapy, or for excluding the diagnosis of anaphylactic sensitivity to insect venoms in treated patients. Tests for IgE antibodies are indicated only in patients who have had a thorough medical history and physical examination.

OVERVIEW

The prevalence of allergic disease has increased significantly in the United States and throughout the developed world (Devereux et al, 2014). Longitudinal epidemiologic studies have shown an increased prevalence of sensitization to common allergens, and increased prevalence of asthma, atopic dermatitis, food allergy, and allergic rhinitis in children. A recent study of the prevalence of allergic sensitization in the United States revealed that more than 40% of children 6 years of age and older and more than 35% of children 1 to 5 year of age had serologic evidence of sensitization to one or more common allergens (Salo et al, 2014). Allergic sensitization defined by the presence of IgE antibodies to one or more allergens is a significant risk factor for allergic disease. Allergic sensitization is also a distinguishing characteristic of atopy, the inherited tendency to develop allergic diseases.

Estimates of the prevalence of common allergic diseases in the United States vary with disease, patient age, and geographic location. The prevalence of asthma increased steadily from the 1950s to the present and currently is estimated at between 5% and 10% among adults and children in different states (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2010). According to recent data, more than 31 million persons in the United States suffer from asthma; more than 7 million are children (Weiss & Sullivan, 2001; Arroyave et al, 2013). The prevalence of allergic rhinitis has increased in the United States from about 5% in 1970 to approximately 9% in 2004, thus affecting more than 25 million Americans (National Center for Health Statistics, 2006). The prevalence of food allergies has also increased. The cumulative prevalence of sensitization to common food

allergens in children may be as high as 24% in the United States. In contrast, the cumulative prevalence of food allergies in children is 4% to 8% (see later); and, many sensitized children do not display signs and symptoms of systemic food allergy (Branum & Lukacs, 2009). Given the high overall prevalence of allergic disease in the United States, estimates of the total yearly cost of diagnosing and managing patients with allergic diseases run to the tens of billions of dollars. Simply stated, allergic diseases are a major public health concern.

Recent attempts to explain the increased prevalence of allergic diseases have focused on both genetic and environmental influences. A large number of genes and genetic polymorphisms contribute to the development of allergic diseases (see later), but fail to account for the risk for developing a particular allergic disease and do not explain the rapid changes in disease prevalence noted previously. Current theories postulate a causative role for environmental influences to account for the increased prevalence of allergic diseases. Several investigators have proposed that diminished exposure to microorganisms during early childhood in developed countries may lead to aberrant development of the adaptive immune system and may predispose to both allergic disease and certain autoimmune diseases (Liu, 2010). This theory, called the *hygiene hypothesis*, postulates that early exposure to bacteria and other microorganisms promotes development of mature antigen-presenting dendritic cells and regulatory T cells, whereas diminished exposure leads to high levels of Th1 and Th2 effector T cells that participate in the pathogenesis of immune-mediated diseases. The proposed mechanism for the beneficial effect of early exposure to microorganisms and environmental antigens includes a role for enhanced release of the anti-inflammatory cytokines interleukin (IL)-10, interleukin (IL)-12, and transforming growth factor-β by dendritic cells, which induces antigen-specific regulatory T cells (Smits et al, 2005). This effect may be mediated by interactions between bacterial products (e.g., bacterial endotoxin) and Toll-like receptors [TLR2 and TLR4]) on dendritic cells, monocytes, and macrophages of the innate immune system. Longitudinal studies in large cohorts of allergic patients and experimental studies in animal models are underway to investigate the epidemiology and biologic mechanisms of allergic disease development and to validate the hygiene hypothesis.

The signs and symptoms of allergic diseases can be difficult to distinguish from those of other disorders (Host et al, 2003). Clinical manifestations of allergy may be relatively mild and self-limited, as in seasonal allergic rhinitis, or severe with marked morbidity, as in asthma. Laboratory tests are useful in the evaluation of patients with allergic disease, but awareness of the basic mechanisms of immediate hypersensitivity and knowledge of the empirical relationships between test results and their diagnostic predictive values are required to translate testing results into a clinical diagnosis. This chapter addresses these subjects, beginning with a review of the biological mechanisms of immediate hypersensitivity and the "allergic phenotype." It then discusses laboratory tests as they may be applied to the diagnostic evaluation of children and adults with allergic disease.

The distinction between sensitization to an allergen or allergen component and clinical allergy is a key concept emphasized throughout this chapter. The authors identify the chemical components of common allergens including species-specific and cross-reactive components. The minimum numbers of tests needed to achieve high positive and negative predictive values for allergic disease are overviewed for different clinical situations. The discussion mentions clinical situations and testing schemes in which laboratory testing is not likely to be cost-effective or may lead to erroneous diagnoses. Recent developments in the laboratory evaluation of allergy include a much expanded repertoire of tests for IgE antibodies to putative allergens including tests for antibodies to highly purified native allergenic proteins and recombinant allergen components. New analytic methods that utilize microarrays to test for over 100 allergen-specific IgE antibodies simultaneously have proved useful in clinical studies and may soon be available in clinical practice. These methods lend themselves to interpretive reporting with patient-specific comments that aid in identifying clinically significant patterns of sensitization.

PATHOGENESIS OF ALLERGIC DISEASE

MECHANISMS OF IMMEDIATE HYPERSENSITIVITY

Immunoglobulin E is the principal trigger molecule for allergic inflammation. In the late 1960s, investigators working independently in two laboratories described a new isotype of human immunoglobulin that was responsible for the skin-sensitizing activity of serum from patients with allergic diseases (Ishizaka & Ishizaka, 1966; Bennich et al, 1969). This immunoglobulin, originally called *IgND*, was later named *IgE* (Ishizaka & Ishizaka, 1967). In the years that followed, investigators have focused on discovering the basic biological mechanisms of immediate hypersensitivity. These include mechanisms that control IgE production by immunocompetent B-lymphocytes, and that promote the recruitment of inflammatory cells and release of vasoactive mediators from IgE-sensitized effector cells at sites of allergic inflammation. Recent studies have focused on investigating genetic determinants of the allergic phenotype and on identifying genes responsible for regulating IgE production and for influencing tissue responses to allergic inflammation.

ATOPY AND THE ALLERGIC PHENOTYPE: GENETIC INFLUENCES AND CANDIDATE GENES

The term *atopic* (from the word *atopy*) describes those individuals who are genetically predisposed to produce specific IgE antibodies following exposure to allergens. These individuals are highly likely to develop allergic diseases. Nevertheless, while atopy is characteristic of allergic disease, signs and symptoms of allergic diseases, notably asthma and eczema, may also occur in the absence of atopy. This finding demonstrates that the genetic predisposition to allergic diseases is complex and fails to account entirely for development of clinical allergy. It is useful to consider two principal domains of genetic influence. Genes that encode molecules directly involved in immune responses strongly influence IgE synthesis and determine atopy. In addition, genes that affect other complimentary biologic functions, including tissue structure and repair, tissue permeability to allergens, cell migration, and fibrinolysis, determine the susceptibility of end organs to inflammation and modulate exposure of the immune system to environmental allergens (Holloway et al, 2010; Holloway, 2014).

Knowledge of genes that predispose to allergic diseases comes from several sources. Population-wide linkage analysis studies have identified the chromosomal locations of candidate genes; and, positional cloning studies support the relationship of putative allergy genes to known genes for molecules involved in regulating the immune response. Genome-wide association studies examine the relationships between candidate genes for atopy (IgE synthesis) and disease susceptibility in populations with asthma and other common allergic diseases (Holloway et al, 2010; Holloway, 2014).

Among the various candidate genes, some of the strongest evidence for a role in allergic disease exists for genes encoding molecules that promote IgE synthesis. Included in this group are the following: genes for interleukin 4 (IL-4), interleukin 13 (IL-13), IL-4 receptor alpha chain (IL4R), and signal transducer and activator of transcription 6 (STAT6) (Kabesch et al, 2006; Holloway & Koppelman, 2007). As described later, the products of these genes collectively influence the development of Th2 helper cells and promote the expression and deletional class switching of epsilon immunoglobulin heavy chain genes. Class II HLA loci and alleles on chromosome 6p strongly influence the immune response and sensitization to specific allergens and allergen component proteins. For example, responsiveness to the common aeroallergens Derp p and Derp f peptides from dust mites (*Dermatophagoides pterynissinus* and *Dermatophagoides farinae*) are found in linkage with other loci associated with bronchial hyperresponsiveness in asthmatic individuals (Moffatt et al, 2010). A similar linkage has been proposed for an atopy gene closely linked to the IgE Fc receptor α-chain locus on chromosome 1q23 (Weidinger et al, 2008). Studies suggest additional genes may predispose to allergic disease, including genes for the interleukin 6 receptor (IL6R) and GATA-binding protein 3 involved in the production of Th2 lymphocytes, and genes for the Toll-like receptor TL4R that influence the innate immune response to environmental antigens. Cytokine genes, including the genes for interleukins 3, 5, and 33 (IL-3, IL-5, and IL-33), influence the development, proliferation, and recruitment of allergic effector cells, including mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils.

Other genes influence allergic disease susceptibility by affecting biologic functions that facilitate exposure to allergens or determine the response of tissue to inflammation. Mutations in the gene for filaggrin on chromosome 1q21 predispose to atopy and the disease atopic dermatitis (Irvine et al, 2011). Fillagrin is an important protein component of the cutaneous epidermal barrier. Null mutations in the fillagrin gene may promote allergy development by weakening this barrier (Palmer et al, 2006). The products of several genes determine the response of tissues to chronic inflammation. *ADAM33* is an exemplary gene. This gene encodes a metalloproteinase that influences airway remodeling and smooth muscle hyperactivity associated with asthma susceptibility and progression (Van Eerdewegh et al, 2002). Examples of several genes that predispose to atopy

and allergic disease are listed in Table 55-1. While the above-mentioned genes influence susceptibility to allergic disease, and mutations and polymorphisms of several candidate genes have been identified, there is no clinical evidence at this time to support routine testing for genetic polymorphisms in the evaluation of patients with allergic disease.

TABLE 55-1
Genes and the Allergic Phenotype

Chromosome	Genetic Locus	Phenotype
6p21-23	HLA D region (HLA-DRB1 and DQB1)	Responder or nonresponder to common allergens
11q12	Fc ε receptor alpha chain	Enhanced responsiveness to aeroallergens; high total serum immunoglobulin (Ig)E
5q31	Cytokines interleukin (IL)-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-9, and IL-13 and IL-33	High total serum IgE
16	IL-4 receptor	High total serum IgE
20p13	*ADAM33* gene	Enhanced airway responsiveness, airway remodeling
1q21	Filaggrin	Diminished epithelial barrier to allergens

HLA, Human leukocyte antigen.
Note: More than 120 candidate genes have been described to be associated with allergic disease. This table lists a selected sample of genes found in multiple studies. See text for discussion of additional loci and genes.

REGULATION OF IgE SYNTHESIS: MOLECULAR AND CELLULAR INTERACTIONS

As noted earlier, class II genes of the HLA D region strongly influence individual responses to exogenous antigens (Pieters, 2000; Wang & Reinherz, 2002). Gene products of the highly polymorphic HLA D region; DR, DQ, and DP molecules expressed on the plasma membranes of antigen-presenting dendritic cells; and B cells bind processed antigen for presentation to immunocompetent T cells. This interaction initiates the immune response (Wang & Reinherz, 2002). B cells act as antigen-presenting cells by binding antigen (allergen) through membrane-associated immunoglobulin (i.e., IgE-Fc epsilon RI) (Oettgen, 2014). The cellular and humoral responses that follow antigen presentation are complex and include interactions mediated by cell-to-cell contacts and secretion of stimulatory cytokines. Production of mature IgE antibodies by B cells exemplifies these mechanisms (Fig. 55-1).

All B cells initially produce IgM antibodies. Rearrangement of V, D, and J exons that encode portions of the immunoglobulin (Ig) variable region create a variable region motif (VDJ) that encodes the antigen binding (Fab) portion of a mature Ig heavy chain. The rearranged VDJ motif determines specificity for antigen and is located upstream from exons that encode the constant regions of the various Ig heavy chains, including the alpha-, γ-, and ε-exons. Production of mature transcripts for complete Ig molecules that bear these heavy chains requires additional rearrangements at the heavy chain (IgH) locus. These rearrangements result in a change in expression of heavy chain constant region domains from μ to another isotype (e.g., γ). This process is referred to as *deletional switch recombination*, because endonucleases excise exons encoding domains of the μ-chain in an irreversible process (Coico et al, 2003; Oettgen, 2014). Two pathways involving rearrangement of Ig heavy chain genes lead to the

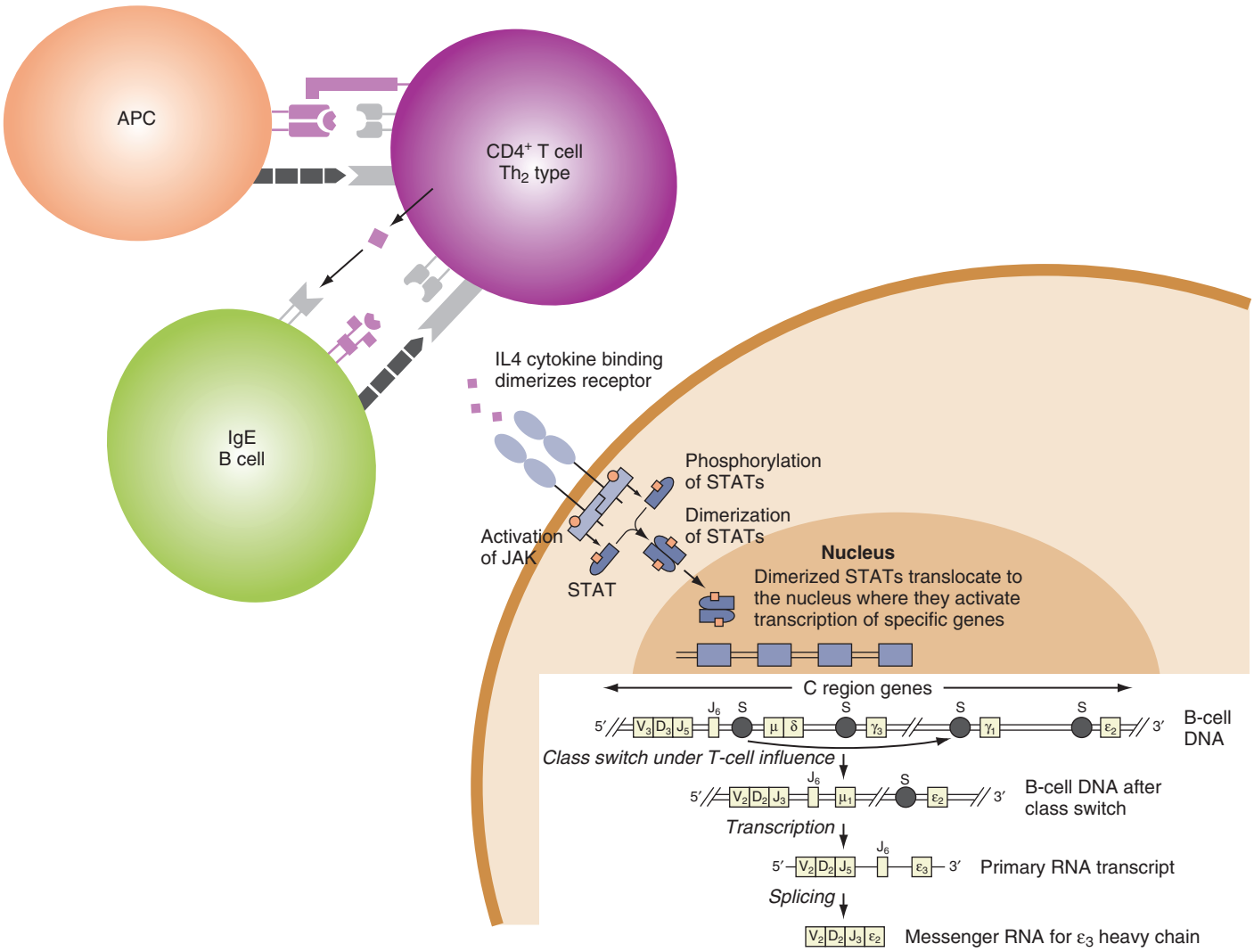


Figure 55-1 Cellular and molecular interactions regulating immunoglobulin (Ig)E synthesis.

production of IgE antibodies: a direct pathway from IgM to IgE, and a sequential pathway from IgM to an IgG intermediate to IgE (Wu & Zarrin, 2014).

Synthesis of mature IgE molecules occurs in a series of steps that begin with expression of germline (sterile) transcripts of the ε heavy chain. Germline transcription must occur before deletional switch recombination. At the molecular level, this process involves interaction with a promoter exon upstream from the four exons that encode domains of the ε heavy chain (see later) (see Fig. 55-1). The ε-promoter contains binding sites for the transcription factors STAT6 and nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB), which drives transcription by activating the promoter. Mutations at binding sites for these transcription factors block isotype switching to IgE. Because germline transcripts are "sterile" and do not encode a functional heavy chain, further metabolism of the germline transcript by endonucleases is required to create a functional heavy chain molecule. Endonucleases excise Cμ and ligate the now adjacent VDJ and Cε sequences. The process of deletional switch recombination involves rearrangement of double-stranded DNA at specific sites called *S regions* by enzymatically catalyzed breakage, cleavage, and recombination of DNA to create the functional heavy chain.

At the cellular level, IgE synthesis is initiated by cell-to-cell interactions and is driven by soluble cytokine mediators (Oettgen & Geha, 2001; Oettgen, 2014). Cytokines produced by T helper/inducer cells of the Th2 phenotype are required for the production of IgE heavy chain transcripts. The stimulatory cytokines IL-4 and IL-13 provide essential signals for synthesis of IgE. Th2 cells produce several cytokines that act as growth factors for B cells, including IL-4 and IL-13, which have been shown to induce production of germline ε-transcripts in human B cells (Vercelli et al, 1989; Defrance et al, 1994). These cytokines exert their effects by interacting with multimeric cell surface receptors composed of alpha and gamma chains. The functional receptors for IL-4 and IL-13 are of two types that share a common ligand-binding IL-4R α-chain. Type 1 receptors expressed on Th2 cells and mast cells bind only IL-4 and are heterodimers of IL-4R alpha and gamma chains. Type 2 receptors are widely expressed on T cells, bind both IL-4 and IL-13, and are heterodimers of IL-4Rα and IL-13Rα chains. Binding of IL-4 and IL-13 to these receptors induces a series of phosphorylation reactions, which result in DNA transcription driven by phosphorylated transcription factors. Tyrosine kinases of the Janus family (JAK1, 2, and 3) are associated with intracellular domains of the IL-4 and IL-13 receptors and catalyze phosphorylation of the receptors, thus enabling them to bind intracellular transcription factors. The transcription factors, including STAT6 and NF-κB, once phosphorylated translocate to the nucleus, where they bind to the ε-promoter and induce expression of germline ε-transcripts (Oettgen & Geha, 2001; Oettgen, 2014).

Coincident with the interaction of antigen-presenting cells and T cells described earlier, which takes place primarily through the T cell antigen receptor (TCR) and leads to production of IL-4 and IL-13, a second signal provided by cell-to-cell interaction promotes switch recombination from μ to ε heavy chain expression (Oettgen, 2014). This signal is provided by the interaction of CD40 (constitutively expressed on B cells) and CD40 ligand (CD154) expressed only on activated T cells. Engagement of the TCR results in upregulation of CD40 ligand on the T cell surface. CD40 ligand interacts with CD40 on the surface of B cells to catalyze activation of NF-κB, which, in turn, facilitates activation of the ε-promoter through STAT6 and other activation-induced proteins (Oettgen & Geha, 2001; Oettgen, 2014). CD40 is a member of the tumor necrosis factor receptor superfamily, and engagement of CD40 by CD40 ligand antagonizes apoptosis of B cells. Engagement of CD40 by CD40 ligand also upregulates CD80-CD86 expression on B cells, which interacts with CD28 on T cells to strongly amplify cytokine transcription and secretion of IL-4 and IL-13. The importance of CD40 ligand (CD154) to the process of class switching is illustrated in patients with X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome who are deficient in CD40 ligand and are unable to produce IgG, IgA, or IgE antibodies (Korthauer et al, 1993).

IgE-producing B cells at mucosal sites and in lymph node follicles typically differentiate into short-lived plasmablasts and plasma cells, while a small number of long-lived plasma cells persist in bone marrow (Wu & Zarrin, 2014). This finding helps to account for the rapid decline in IgE antibody levels that occurs when antigen stimulation is withdrawn. Initial IgE responses to allergen occur primarily at extrafollicular sites, where low affinity antibodies are produced by direct class switching from IgM to IgE. Persistent or recurrent antigenic stimulation promotes development of higher-affinity IgE antibodies by a process of somatic mutation called *affinity maturation*.

IMMUNOGLOBULIN E: STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL CHARACTERISTICS

The heavy chains of IgE molecules are structurally different from other immunoglobulin isotypes. They confer skin sensitizing activity by binding to high-affinity Fc epsilon receptors on tissue mast cells (see later) (Ishizaka & Ishizaka, 1966; Bennich et al, 1969). Immunoglobulin fragments (Fab and Fab′2 fragments) prepared by enzymatic digestion of purified IgE myeloma proteins do not bind to cell surface receptors for IgE and do not mediate skin-sensitizing activity. The unique antigenic determinants of IgE molecules are contained on the Fc ε-fragment (Bennich et al, 1969). While the heavy chains of human IgE molecules resemble other Igs, they differ by having an additional domain, C epsilon 4, which confers a higher molecular weight. IgE molecules are also more heavily glycosylated than IgG molecules and bind more avidly to lectin proteins. The physicochemical properties and immunologic functions of different regions of the IgE molecule, determined by experiments performed with purified human IgE myeloma proteins and immunoglobulin fragments prepared by enzymatic digestion, are summarized in Table 55-2 (reviewed in CLSI, 2015).

Human IgE protein makes up only approximately 0.0005% of total serum immunoglobulin. The low serum concentration of IgE is partly a function of binding to effector cells but also reflects a high catabolic rate, greater than 70% per day. The half-life of IgE in blood is 1 to 5 days; by comparison, IgG molecules have a serum half-life of approximately 20 days. The half-life of IgE bound to tissue mast cells is much longer, up to several months. Individual IgE molecules have a functional valency of 2, as shown schematically in Figure 55-2.

As noted earlier, human IgE antibodies sensitize mast cells in the skin to release histamine. The skin-sensitizing activity of IgE is heat-

TABLE 55-2
Physicochemical Properties of Immunoglobulin E (IgE)

H chain class	ε
Molecular formula	ε_2L_2
Sedimentation coefficient(s)	8
Molecular weight, Da	190,000; H chain molecular weight is 70,000
Carbohydrate, %	18
Complement fixation (classic)	None
Serum half-life, days	1-5
Placental transfer	None
Reaginic activity	4+; Fc-containing fragments inhibit skin-sensitizing activity of native IgE, but Fab-containing fragments do not

Fab, Antigen binding.

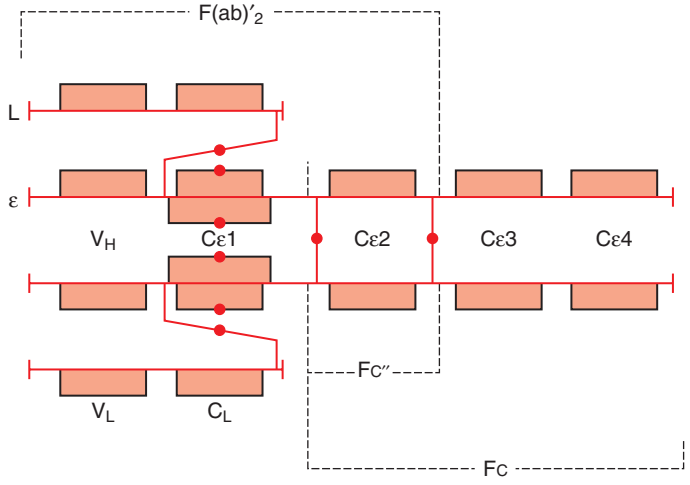


Figure 55-2 Immunoglobulin (Ig)E structure.

labile. Heating at 56° C for 2 hours irreversibly modifies the Cε3 and Cε4 domains of IgE molecules and abolishes skin-sensitizing activity (Ishizaka & Ishizaka, 1967). Reduction and alkylation of inter-ε-chain disulfide bonds also abolishes binding to effector cells. Aggregated human IgE does not fix complement by the classical pathway, and there is no significant placental transfer of human IgE.

CELLS AND MEDIATORS OF IMMEDIATE HYPERSENSITIVITY REACTIONS

Mast cells are the principal effector cells of immediate hypersensitivity reactions. They also promote inflammation, tissue repair, wound healing, and responses to bacterial infection. Other cell types, including eosinophils, basophils, neutrophils, and lymphocytes also sustain allergic inflammation (Bradding & Saito, 2014).

Once thought to be closely related cells, mast cells and basophils both stain metachromatically with basic dyes and contain histamine in pre-formed granules (Galli, 1990). More recent studies have focused on the development of these two cell types from different precursors (Bradding & Saito, 2014). Mast cells develop from pluripotent hematopoetic stem cells and bear receptors for stem cell factor. Mast cell precursors originate in the bone marrow as $CD34^+$, tyrosine kinase Kit receptor $(CD117)^+$ progenitors. Developing mast cells home to tissues by binding to fibroblasts that contain integrin and vascular cell adhesion molecule 1 (VCAM-1). In peripheral tissues, mast cell precursors under the influence of stem cell factor develop into mature cells. Two subtypes of human mast cells (described later) require different cytokines for development. Mast cells that predominate at mucosal surfaces require stem cell factor, and the T cell cytokines IL-3, -4, -5, -9, and -10, whereas mast cells that develop in submucosal connective tissues require only stem cell factor and develop without additional cytokines from T cells. Unlike mast cells, basophils develop in the bone marrow from granulocyte precursors and enter the circulation as mature cells. Mast cells and basophils both contain histamine in pre-formed granules, but mast cells typically contain up to 10 times more histamine per cell than basophils.

There are two phenotypically distinct mast cell subtypes termed MCt and *MCtc*. MCt cells contain only tryptase; MCtc cells contain both tryptase and chymase. MCt cells predominate at mucosal surfaces at sites of allergic inflammation, often in proximity to T lymphocytes. MCtc cells are more numerous in submucosal sites and in connective tissues and are not associated with allergic inflammation or T lymphocytic infiltration (Irani et al, 1986; Bradding & Saito, 2014). The two subtypes of mast cells also differ in their cytokine profiles (MCt cells contain little IL-4 but are high in IL-5 content), release of inflammatory mediators (MCt cells release more LCT4 and PGD2 than MCtc cells), and responsiveness to chemoattractants (MCt cells do not respond to C5a). Viewed collectively, mast cells are most numerous in the following tissues: lung (alveolar walls and bronchial epithelium and subepithelium), small intestine (epithelium and subepithelium), nasal mucosa, and skin.

Mast cells release two types of inflammatory mediators: mediators contained in pre-formed granules and mediators newly synthesized and released in response to signals associated with allergic inflammation. The principal pre-formed mediators are histamine, tryptase, chondroitin sulfates (proteoglycans), and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α; the newly synthesized inflammatory mediators include cyclooxygenase (prostaglandin) and lipoxygenase (leukotriene) products of arachidonic acid metabolism. In addition to the newly synthesized prostaglandin and leukotriene mediators released within minutes of an allergic trigger, mast cells also synthesize and release several cytokines. Mast cell cytokines released within hours of initiation of inflammation amplify the allergic response (IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13), recruit inflammatory cells (TNF-alpha), and promote proliferation of fibroblasts and endothelial cells.

The primary mechanism of release of pre-formed mediators from mast cells involves transmembrane signaling mediated by cell surface (homocytotropic) IgE antibodies bound to high-affinity receptors for IgE (Fc epsilon RI). Fc ε RI are located diffusely on the plasma membranes of mast cells. Binding of IgE antibodies to Fc ε RI is reversible but of high affinity ($Ka = 10^{10}\,M^{-1}$) (Wank et al, 1983). Although IgE antibodies in blood have a half-life of less than 5 days, the half-life of IgE antibodies bound to Fc ε RI on mast cells is much longer and may persist for months (Oettgen, 2014). Fc ε RI are saturated at physiologic concentrations of IgE. The number of Fc ε RI per cell ranges from 40,000 to as many as 500,000. Higher numbers of receptors are induced by culturing cells in the presence of IgE, and cells obtained from atopic individuals typically express higher numbers of Fc ε RI, reflecting upregulation of Fc ε RI by IgE. Pharmacologic treatment with anti-IgE (Omalizumab) leads to decreased circulating IgE and decreased numbers of Fc ε RI on mast cells and basophils (Beck et al, 2004).

Fc ε RI is a multimetric receptor, composed of α-, β-, and γ-subunits as follows: α1, β1, and γ2. IgE antibodies bind to the α-subunit; the β- and γ-subunits contain intracytoplasmic regions that function in transmembrane signaling (Ravetech & Kinet, 1991; Metcalfe et al, 2009). Fc ε RI molecules are mobile within the plasma membranes of sensitized cells, as indicated by capping studies performed with fluorescein-conjugated anti-IgE antibodies. This mobility over short distances is important for the release of mediators from mast cells. Cross-linking (or bridging) of occupied IgE receptors by multivalent antigens or by intact anti-IgE antibodies or their F(ab′)2 fragments triggers release of histamine and other pre-formed mediators and initiates the synthesis and release of prostaglandin and leukotriene mediators. Univalent allergens, including haptens and Fab fragments of anti-IgE antibodies, do not promote mediator release.

The mechanism of mediator release from sensitized mast cells is exquisitely sensitive and depends upon release of Ca^{++} from intracellular stores in the endoplasmic reticulum and influx of extracellular Ca^{++}. Aggregation of as few as 1000 molecules of IgE per cell can result in release of histamine and other mediators. Transmembrane signaling mediated by Fc ε RI aggregation is a complex process that is dependent upon phosphorylation of Fc ε receptor subunit proteins by enzymes of the Src tyrosine kinase family, including LYN and SYK, which produce a series of phosphorylated intermediates including phospholipase Cgamma. Phospholipase Cgamma hydrolyzes phophatidylinositol 4, 5-biphosphate (PIP2) to generate inositol 3, 4, 5-triphosphate (IP3) and diacylgycerol (DAG). IP3binds to receptors on membranes of the endoplasmic reticulum, resulting in release of stored intracellular Ca^{++}. DAG plus Ca^{++} activates protein kinase enzymes that mediate the influx of additional extracellular Ca^{++}, which triggers the release of pre-formed mediators by a process of exocytosis. Increased intracellular Ca^{++} also promotes activation of cytosolic phospholipase A2, which initiates synthesis of arachidonic acid derived from membrane lipids. Free arachidonic acid is metabolized in mast cells to prostaglandin D_2 by enzymes of the cyclooxygenase (COX) pathway (COX-2, PG synthase, and isomerase), and to the cysteinyl leukotrienes LTB4, LTC4, LTD4, and LTE4 by enzymes of the 5-lipoxygenase pathway (Metcalfe et al, 2009; Bradding & Saito, 2014) (Fig. 55-3).

Histamine is the best-known mediator of allergic inflammation. Injected intradermally, histamine produces a characteristic wheal-and-flare reaction that results from simultaneous vasoconstriction of postcapillary venules and neurogenic erythema (Petersen et al, 1997). Histamine in mast cells is contained in pre-formed granules with approximately 3 to 8 pg of histamine per cell. After release from mast cells, histamine interacts with specific G-protein–coupled receptors termed H_1 to H_4 (Wess, 1997; Gether, 2000). Engagement of the H1 histamine receptor leads to activation of phospholipase C with subsequent protein kinase C activation and Ca^{++} mobilization that causes the cellular responses associated with acute allergic inflammation. Histamine interacts with different receptors in different tissues. H_1 receptors in the airway promote contraction of bronchial smooth muscle, increased mucous production, tissue edema, and increased vascular permeability. H_2 receptors in the stomach promote acid secretion. H_3 and H_4 receptors are found on histaminergic nerves and bone marrow cells, respectively.

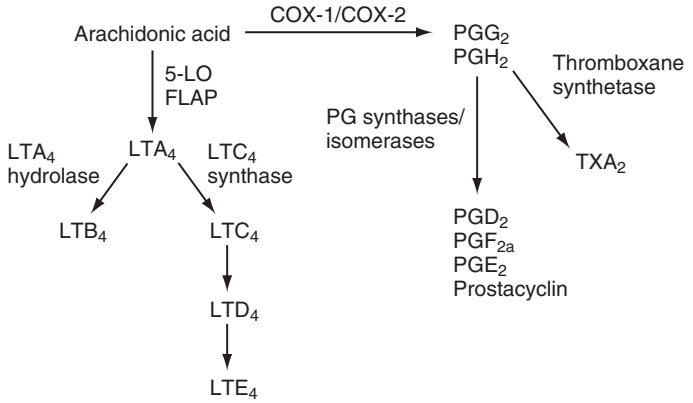


Figure 55-3 Metabolism of arachidonic acid. *COX,* Cyclooxygenase; *FLAP,* 5-lipoxygenase–activating protein; *5-LO,* 5-lipoxygenase; *LT,* leukotriene; *PG,* prostaglandin; *TX,* thromboxane.

Histamine is degraded by two enzymatic pathways, with the major metabolite, *N*-methyl imidazole acetic acid (MIAA) resulting from sequential methylation and deamination of histamine by the enzymes histamine *N*-methyl transferase and monoamine oxidase. Most secreted histamine is excreted in urine as MIAA, with a lesser amount appearing un-degraded.

The most abundant pre-formed proteins in mast cell granules are the neutral proteases, tryptase and chymase. Tryptase is a tetramer comprised of 29 to 40 kDa subunits with a molecular mass of approximately 134 kDa (Schwartz et al, 1981). Two cDNA subunits of tryptase termed α and β cloned from human mast cells bear approximately 90% sequence homology with one another (Miller et al, 1990). Most tryptase in human serum occurs in the form of α- and β-monomers. Alpha tryptase, currently referred to as *protryptase*, is released constitutively from mast cells; β-tryptase, currently referred to as *mature tryptase*, is stored in secretory granules as a noncovalent complex with the proteoglycan heparin and is optimally detected in serum within 30 minutes to 4 hours following the initiation of an allergic reaction (Schwartz, 2006). The concentration of protryptase in serum provides an estimate of mast cell mass, while mature tryptase serves as a marker of mast cell activation resulting from allergic inflammation. In addition to exhibiting enzymatic activity, tryptase promotes growth of fibroblasts and smooth muscle cells, activates mast cells, and promotes release of the chemoattractant IL-8 from epithelial cells (Cairns & Walls, 1996).

Newly synthesized prostaglandins and leukotrienes are important pro-inflammatory allergic mediators. The principal prostaglandin mediator of mast cells is PGD_2 (see Fig. 55-3), which is more potent than histamine on a molar basis but it is released in smaller quantities than histamine from activated mast cells (Bradding & Saito, 2014). PGD_2 and its metabolite, 9α, 11βPGF2, promote constriction of airway smooth muscle, peripheral vasodilatation, and inhibition of platelet aggregation.

IgE-mediated mast cell activation also results in synthesis and release of the cysteinyl leukotrienes LTC4, LTD4, and LTE4 (see Fig. 55-3). Eosinophils, basophils, and macrophages also synthesize and release leukotrienes. Production of leukotrienes is upregulated in mast cells exposed to IL-4 (Hsieh et al, 2001). The cyteinyl leukotrienes are extremely potent bronchoconstrictors, up to 1000 times more potent than histamine, and they promote increased vascular permeability, mucous production, and tissue fibrosis (Bradding & Saito, 2014). Leukotrienes play a significant role in allergic inflammation and in asthma. Their biologic effects are mediated by cellular receptors, CysLT1 and CysLT2, expressed on many different cell types including bronchial smooth muscle cells, monocytes and macrophages, mast cells, and eosinophils. The role of leukotrienes in asthma is demonstrated by clinical trials that show the early asthmatic response to allergen is diminished by administration of leukotriene antagonists (Findlay et al, 1992).

Allergic inflammation often proceeds in two stages: an immediate response to allergen contact that occurs within minutes, followed by a late reaction that occurs up to 24 hours following allergen exposure. This biphasic response occurs commonly in asthma. Both stages of the allergic response depend on the presence and engagement of cell-bound IgE antibodies. The initial response reflects the effects of histamine, prostaglandin, and leukotriene mediators. The late response requires recruitment of additional inflammatory cells, including eosinophils and neutrophils, at sites of allergic inflammation, followed by release of mediators from these activated cells. Release of cytokines and chemoattractants from activated mast cells promotes infiltration and degranulation of leukocytes in the late inflammatory response.

LABORATORY TESTING IN THE EVALUATION OF ALLERGIC DISEASES

THE RATIONALE FOR TESTING

Measurements of total IgE protein (IgE) and allergen-specific IgE antibodies (IgE antibodies) in serum are useful to identify a state of sensitization in allergic (atopic) children and adults. These tests are mainstays in the laboratory evaluation of allergic diseases. First-generation tests for total IgE and allergen-specific IgE antibodies were developed more than 40 years ago, shortly after the discovery of IgE. Most hospital clinical laboratories do not perform a full repertoire of IgE antibody tests on site. Rather, they prefer to send specimens to referral laboratories for analysis. In recent years, the use of laboratory tests in the evaluation of patients with allergic diseases has increased with changes in the logistics of health care delivery, in particular the nearly universal adoption of managed care health plans. Other important developments favoring the use of laboratory tests in the practice of clinical allergy include: significant improvements in the analytical methods for detecting and quantifying IgE antibodies including automation, molecular characterization of many species-specific and cross-reactive allergen components with FDA clearance of recombinant allergen proteins for use in diagnostic tests (so-called *component resolved diagnostics or molecular allergy diagnostics*), development of pharmacologic anti-IgE (Omalizumab) therapy for treatment of asthma, and, perhaps most important, expanded empirical knowledge of the natural history of allergic diseases, especially in children (Wahn, 2000; Du Toit et al, 2015).

Before the era of managed care, it was often possible for patients with symptoms and signs of allergy to see an allergy specialist without prior medical evaluation. This is no longer the case for most patients, who are evaluated initially by primary care physicians. In this paradigm, laboratory tests that establish a high likelihood of allergic disease or have prognostic significance assume increased importance, since the results may justify referrals to allergy specialists or enable primary care physicians to manage patients within their own practices.

In the field of clinical allergy, tests for total and allergen-specific IgE antibodies are ordered principally for diagnosis. In addition, test results may indicate an increased likelihood of persistent allergy and are useful to identify allergen specificities in the planning of immunotherapy regimens in patients with rhinitis or allergic asthma. The results of clinical studies are less clear about the efficacy of laboratory data for evaluating the response to immunotherapy and in monitoring the course of disease. While it is commonplace in clinical studies to monitor the concentrations of IgE antibodies over time in cohorts of patients with particular allergic diseases treated with different therapies or to elucidate the natural history of disease, this practice is not recommended in most clinical situations. It is not clear from clinical studies that repeat testing has value for deciding whether to continue or modify treatment regimens. It is also appropriate to caution against the practice of performing extensive and indiscriminate panels of IgE antibody tests in the evaluation of patients with suspected allergic disease. This practice is not likely to be helpful in diagnosis, may promote misdiagnosis of allergic disease in patients with clinically insignificant sensitization to allergen(s) or result in inappropriate therapy, and is actively discouraged by a consensus recommendation of allergy specialists (Bernstein et al, 2008).

ALLERGEN MOLECULES: PROTEIN COMPONENT FAMILIES, MOLECULAR STRUCTURES, AND CROSS-REACTIVITY

Recent studies have identified the common molecular structures and chemical properties of principal protein components that are present in extracts of allergenic substances (Table 55-3) (Kazemi-Shirazi et al, 2000; Shakib et al, 2008; Breiteneder, 2009; Stewart et al, 2014). Most allergen component proteins are enzymes, enzyme inhibitors, ligand-binding proteins, or storage proteins, or are associated with cytoskeletal proteins, especially actin. In addition, some allergenic molecules have unique structures that facilitate their recognition and binding by cells of the innate immune system. In some cases, they may directly promote the synthesis of IgE antibodies by the adaptive immune system (Shakib et al, 2008). An example is Der p 1 allergen that is released in fecal particles produced by the dust mite, *Dermatophagoides pteronyssinus. D. pteronyssinus* sensitivity is important in the pathogenesis of allergic asthma. Der p 1 is a cysteine protease that acts in the airway to degrade protective surfactant molecules and α_1-antitrypsin, which normally provide a barrier to inhaled allergens. In addition, Der p 1 directly promotes mast cell degranulation and increased secretion of IL-4, and may also inhibit the development of Treg cells that dampen the Th2-driven response to Der p 1 antigen exposure.

Recombinant protein technology has enabled development of a new generation of allergen component reagents for use in immunoassays of IgE antibodies. Studies of recombinant component proteins have enhanced our understanding of the molecular basis of cross-reactivity between common pollen and food allergens. Studies of the molecular structures of allergenic components have identified several families of allergen of proteins that commonly elicit allergic signs and symptoms (see Table 55-3). The following are of particular clinical importance: Pathogenesis-related family 10 proteins (PR10 proteins) from plants and foods; nonspecific lipid-transfer proteins (nsLTPs) from foods and pollens; profilin proteins from foods and pollens; heat-stable storage proteins from foods, including 2S albumin, 7S globulin, and 11S globulin proteins; parvalbumin proteins from freshwater and saltwater fish; tropomyosin from shellfish; lipocalins from cat and dog; serum albumin from cow's milk, beef, eggs, and chicken; and cross-reactive carbohydrate determinants (CCDs) from glycoproteins in pollens, plant

TABLE 55-3
Allergen Component Families

Protein Family	Sensitivity to Heat and Proteases	Examples of Plant Food Allergen Sources	Clinical Expression
PR-10 proteins (Birch pollen Bet v 1 homologues)	Sensitive*	Betulaceae: hazelnut* Rosaceae (e.g., apple, cherry, peach) Apiaceae (e.g., carrot, celery,* fennel, parsley) Fabaceae (e.g., peanut,* soybean,* mungbean)	Oral allergy syndrome (OAS); Symptoms usually mild but may be severe, (e.g. Gly m 4 [soybean])
nsLTPs (nonspecific lipid transfer proteins)	Stable	Betulaceae: hazelnut Rosaceae (e.g., apple, cherry, peach) Other: maize, peanut, barley, grape, cabbage	Systemic reactions common
Profilins (Birch pollen Bet v 2 homologues)	Sensitive to intermediate	Profilins are widely distributed in plants and plant foods: including citrus, banana, tomato, vegetables and nuts	Mainly OAS; Symptoms usually mild
Storage proteins (2S albumins, 7S/11S globulins)	Stable	Kennels/nuts/seeds (e.g., peanut/soybean, tree nuts, seeds, cereals)	Systemic reactions common
Parvalbumin	Stable	Fish, freshwater and saltwater	Systemic reactions common
CCDs (cross-reactive carbohydrate determinants)	Stable	CCDs are widely distributed in plant foods. CCD allergenicity has been proposed for celery, tomato, and zucchini.	†

PR-10 proteins, Pathogenesis-related family 10 proteins from plants.
*Bet v 1 homologues in hazelnut, celery, peanut, and soybean have been found to be partially heat stable, and systemic reactions may occur.
†Immunoglobulin (Ig)E antibodies to profilins and CCDs in general are considered to have less clinical relevance than those to other allergen components.

foods, and insect venoms. A complete discussion of these allergen component families is beyond the scope of this chapter, but it is important to comment on certain properties of these components that determine their allergenicity and cross-reactivity (Matricardi et al, 2015).

The PR10 and profilin component families are referred to as *panallergens*, as these proteins are widely conserved in different plant species. PR-10 proteins feature a high degree of structural sequence homology and are susceptible to degradation by heat and digestive enzymes. Bet v 1 from birch pollen was among the first of the PR10 components identified, and subsequent studies have sequenced and synthesized Bet v 1 homologues from many different plant foods (Ballmer-Weber et al, 2011). PR-10 proteins in plant foods commonly elicit local symptoms such as oral allergy syndrome (OAS). Profilin components bind actin; are widely distributed in pollens and plant foods including vegetables, fruits, and nuts; and share a high degree of sequence homology (Santos & Van Ree, 2011). Profilins are also susceptible to degradation by proteolytic enzymes and heat. Profilin sensitization does not usually cause clinical symptoms but may cause severe reactions in some patients with allergic sensitization to citrus fruits, melon, banana, or tomato. Sensitization to both PR-10 and profilin panallergen proteins often occurs through pollen exposure with subsequent cross-reactive sensitization to homologues in foods. Panallergen sensitization and sensitization to ubiquitous CCD glycoprotein moieties accounts for the presence in some sera of IgE antibodies that cross-react widely with allergens of common pollens and foods. This finding can confound the interpretation of skin tests and in vitro tests for IgE antibodies and can lead to the misdiagnosis of widespread allergy to multiple foods.

nsLTP, storage proteins, and parvalbumin proteins are resistant to heat and proteolytic degradation. This property promotes stable three-dimensional protein structures that greatly enhance the allergenicity of these proteins. nsLTP components are found in the outer layers of Rosaceae fruits such as peach, where they are responsible for severe reactions in allergic individuals. 2S albumin storage proteins are found in peanut, tree nuts (e.g. cashew, walnut, and pecan), soybeans, and a wide variety of seeds (Sharma et al, 2011; Beyer et al, 2015). 2S albumins from different species have a relatively low degree of sequence homology, and there is limited cross-reactivity between distantly related botanical families (e.g., IgE antibodies to 2S albumins from different tree nuts often cross-react but do not react with 2S albumin from the legume peanut). Parvalbumin is a major allergen in both freshwater and saltwater fish (Griesmeier et al, 2010). Parvalbumin components resist heat and proteolytic degradation and cause most severe allergic reactions to fish. In addition to the components mentioned earlier, additional clinically important ingested, injected, and inhaled allergenic molecules have been produced by recombinant technology and are FDA cleared as diagnostic test reagents.

IN VIVO TEST TECHNIQUES: SKIN TESTS AND END-ORGAN CHALLENGE TESTS

In discussing the use of laboratory tests in the diagnosis and management of allergic diseases, it is important also to mention commonly used in vivo tests, particularly the skin-prick test and end-organ challenge tests. In vivo tests are regarded by many allergy specialists in the United States as standards of diagnostic accuracy and reliability. The ability to reproduce a specific allergic reaction by in vivo challenge is considered the most highly predictive technique for demonstrating sensitization and for defining allergic reactivity. Despite this widely held opinion, the results of skin tests can be highly variable (McCann & Ownby, 2002). Sources of variability include lack of standardization and differences in the potency of allergen extracts available for testing, and differences in the techniques employed by different operators.

Skins tests are performed by prick/puncture and intradermal injection methods (Demoly et al, 1998). The response to intradermal injection of an allergen extract is graded by measuring the diameter of the wheal and erythema reaction within 15 minutes following allergen injection. A 1+ reaction corresponds to a 5- to 10-mm wheal. A response of this magnitude is usually considered evidence of sensitization to an allergen. Highly sensitized individuals may develop wheal diameters greater than 15 mm with pseudopods. Skin tests also are performed by the skin-prick method. Skin-prick testing makes use of more concentrated allergen extracts—up to 1000-fold greater concentrations than are used for intradermal testing. A mean wheal diameter of 3 mm is commonly considered the threshold for a positive reaction. The wheal size provides an estimate of the degree of sensitization. A more quantitative estimate of sensitization can be obtained by the technique of end-point titration. Serial, tenfold dilutions of allergen extract are used, beginning with the most dilute solution (Turkeltaub, 2000). The endpoint is defined as the greatest dilution that produces a 1+ reaction.

End-organ challenge tests are useful in both the diagnosis and clinical management of the allergic patient. Adaptations include the bronchial provocation test in the evaluation of asthma; the double-blind, placebo-controlled food elimination and challenge test in the diagnosis of food allergy; and the rarely used sting challenge in the diagnosis of anaphylactic sensitivity to insect venom. Use of challenge tests in routine clinical situations is limited by the lack of well-standardized allergen extracts of defined potency, and by the limited number of allergens that can be tested in an individual on a single occasion. As an example, double-blind food elimination and challenge procedures require periods of abstinence of several days between introductions of suspected foods. Although generally regarded as the most reliable test for food allergy, the double-blind, placebo-controlled food challenge test is performed by relatively few practicing allergists.

MEASUREMENT OF IgE: ANALYTIC METHODS AND REFERENCE RANGES

Historically, a variety of immunochemical methods have been used to measure IgE, including competitive displacement immunoassays, immunometric (sandwich) assays with radiolabeled and enzyme-labeled second-stage antibodies, and enhanced sensitivity nephelometry (Hamilton, 2014a). Currently, autoanalyzer-based nonisotopic immunometric assays

TABLE 55-4
Serum Immunoglobulin E (IgE) Reference Ranges in Children and Adults

Age	Mean (kU/L)	+1 SD (kU/L)
6 weeks	0.6	2.3
3 months	1.0	4.1
6 months	1.8	7.3
9 months	2.6	10
12 months	3.2	13
2 years	5.7	23
3 years	8.0	32
4 years	10	40
5 years	12	48
6 years	14	56
7 years	16	63
8 years	18	71
9 years	20	78
10 years	22	85
*Adults	13.2	41

SD, Standard deviation.
*The +2SD cutoffs for adults and children reported in different studies vary considerably (CLSI, 2015)

are the most widely used in clinical laboratories. In brief, anti-IgE antibody (either polyclonal or monoclonal) is immobilized to a solid phase to capture IgE from serum. Following a buffer wash, bound IgE is detected with a second enzyme-labeled antibody that produces a response (optical density or fluorescence) that is proportional to the total IgE content in the test serum. Clinically used immunoassays for total serum IgE are capable of detecting to1 kU/L of IgE, with a working range of 2 to 5000 kU/L. One kU equals approximately 2.4 micrograms of IgE. Assay calibrators used in commercial products are well standardized between manufacturers and are traceable to an international standard (Thorpe et al, 2014). Interlaboratory proficiency surveys indicate that measurement of total serum IgE is highly reproducible, with interlaboratory coefficients of variation <15% (Hamilton, 2010).

A number of studies have examined the total serum IgE concentrations in healthy, nonallergic children and adults. Synthesis of IgE occurs in the human fetus as early as the 11th week of gestation, but cord serum typically contains less than 1 kU/L of IgE. Serum concentrations of IgE in children increase slowly with age and reach adult levels at approximately 10 years of age (Table 55-4). In both children and adults, studies of healthy subjects have yielded frequency histograms of IgE measurements that are strongly positively skewed, with upper 95th percentile confidence intervals that are seemingly high compared with mean levels of IgE. The distribution of IgE concentrations in allergic subjects significantly overlaps the skewed distribution of results in healthy controls. To adjust for this finding, many laboratories report reference ranges that are based on logarithmic transformations of the skewed normal distributions, and the upper limits of "normal" are portrayed as +1 standard deviation (SD) of age-related distributions of healthy controls (see Table 55-4). This convention is confusing to many clinicians who are not aware of the skewed histograms of serum IgE concentrations in healthy nonallergic subjects.

MEASUREMENT OF TOTAL SERUM IgE: CLINICAL APPLICATIONS

The measurement of IgE protein in serum has been thoroughly evaluated for 1) its clinical usefulness as a screening test in the diagnosis of various allergic diseases, 2) its predictive value as an indicator of the likelihood for development of allergic disease in asymptomatic infants and children, and 3) as a prognostic indicator in adults with certain types of chronic allergic disease. Measurement of IgE may also be useful in the evaluation of patients suspected of having immunodeficiency diseases, parasitic diseases, allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis, or the rare hyper-IgE (Job) syndrome.

The hyper-IgE syndrome was described in 1972 by Buckley and colleagues, who reported two patients with greatly elevated serum IgE levels, diffuse dermatitis, recurrent furunculosis, and pneumonia with pneumatoceles secondary to *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. Subsequent reports of patients with this disorder have defined the clinical syndrome: elevations of serum IgE concentration are extreme (2000 to 50,000 kU/L), and patients have blood and tissue eosinophilia and strongly positive immediate wheal-and-flare reactions to inhalant allergens, pollens, foods, and bacterial and fungal antigens. Despite these findings, asthma is not common in patients with hyper-IgE syndrome (Buckley, 1978).

The synthesis of IgE, as reflected by serum levels, has been studied in patients with a variety of primary immunodeficiency diseases. Increased IgE levels have been described in some patients with partial deficiencies of cellular immunity, including Di George syndrome, Omen's syndrome, and Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. Immunodeficiency with increased IgE can be classified based on inheritance with autosomal dominant disease, Job syndrome, caused by STAT3 mutations and mutations of DOCK8 or Tyk2 associated with recessive inheritance (Xiong et al, 2012). Immunodeficiency diseases in which there is complete absence of synthesis of immunoglobulins G, A, and M, such as severe combined immunodeficiency disease, characteristically show diminished IgE synthesis and markedly decreased serum IgE levels. Serum IgE levels are variable in patients with IgA deficiency; ataxia telangiectasia patients typically have diminished levels, but patients with isolated IgA deficiency may have normal or modestly increased levels.

Parasitic infiltration of the gastrointestinal tract or parenchymatous organs strongly stimulates IgE synthesis. Studies in laboratory animals suggest that specific IgE antibodies are important in the host defense against parasites such as *Nippostrongylus brasiliensis* and *Schistosoma mansoni.* Serum IgE concentrations greater than 1000kU/L are regularly found in children in areas of endemic infestation with parasites. Other parasitic diseases known to be associated with increased serum IgE levels include visceral larva migrans *(Toxocara canis)*, intestinal capillariasis *(Capillaria phillippinensis)*, schistosomiasis, ancylostomiasis, and echinococcosis. In patients with intestinal parasitic disease, serum levels of IgE have been noted to decrease considerably following successful treatment with antiparasitic drugs.

In reviewing the usefulness of the total serum IgE measurements in the diagnosis of allergic diseases, it is appropriate to discuss its use in children and adults separately. Elevated IgE levels in serum at birth or during infancy often antedate the development of clinical allergy (Kjellman & Croner, 1984). Serum IgE levels above the 95th percentile are found in approximately 75% of children with a biparental family history of allergic disease. Among healthy children with IgE levels more than 1SD above the mean for a given age, development of allergic disease during the following 18 months is increased more than tenfold compared with a group with lower IgE levels. Although predictive of future development of allergic disease, these data are mainly of epidemiologic interest.

Measurements of IgE in infants and children are of limited value in the diagnosis of allergic disease. Serum IgE levels greater than the + 1 SDl cutoff support the diagnosis of an allergic disease; but, normal IgE levels do not exclude the diagnosis of allergic disease during infancy or later in life. The results of other diagnostic tests, including tests for IgE antibodies, are more sensitive, specific, and have higher predictive values for allergic disease (see later). If the presenting signs of allergic disease are unequivocal (e.g., eczema and rhinitis in a child with an atopic family history), the serum IgE level provides little additional information. In older children and adults, measurement of IgE in serum also has limited diagnostic sensitivity. In general, children with sensitization and allergy to several different allergens and multiple allergic diseases have elevated serum IgE levels, whereas children sensitized to fewer allergens with limited end-organ involvement often have normal levels. In atopic children, the presence of cutaneous disease and gastrointestinal manifestations increase the likelihood that the serum IgE level will be elevated. Children with allergic diseases that involve several target organs also tend to have elevations in serum IgE of greater magnitude than those with limited disease.

Measurement of serum IgE also has limited diagnostic usefulness in adults suspected of having an allergic disease. Results of clinical studies of adult respiratory allergy indicate that approximately 50% of adults with allergic asthma and fewer than 5% of adults with nonallergic asthma have elevated serum IgE levels. Asthmatic adults sensitized to a limited number of allergens usually have normal levels. The highest IgE levels in adults typically occur in patients with allergic sensitization to several allergens and combinations of asthma, atopic dermatitis, and rhinitis. Just as in children, the limited diagnostic sensitivity of the serum IgE level limits the clinical usefulness of this test in those situations in which the diagnosis of allergic disease is most uncertain (Klink et al, 1990). Despite limited sensitivity, the finding of an elevated concentration of IgE in serum carries a high positive predictive value for allergic disease.

Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA) is associated with marked elevation in the serum concentration of IgE. This disease typically occurs in patients with allergic asthma, generally of long duration. The concentration of IgE in serum is elevated during times of acute pulmonary infiltration, but may fluctuate considerably during the course of the disease. A normal IgE level in a patient with active lung disease virtually excludes the diagnosis of ABPA.

MEASUREMENT OF ALLERGEN-SPECIFIC IgE ANTIBODIES: ANALYTIC METHODS

Two methods are commonly used in clinical practice to test for IgE antibodies: allergen skin testing by the skin-prick method (see previous discussion) and in vitro testing by immunometric assays with solid-phase allergen immunosorbents. A third type of method measures release of histamine (leukocyte histamine release assay) or expression of activation antigen (CD63) on the surface of blood basophils exposed to allergen in vitro (basophil activation assay) (Nolte, 1993). These basophil-based assays have not been widely adopted by clinical laboratories in the United States because they require a fresh whole blood sample and are thus used principally in clinical research. Cellular assays require testing of blood samples within 24 hours, and cells from up to 15% of individuals do not release histamine in vitro. Assays that rely on detection of activation markers may be subject to false-positive results from IL-3 priming required before exposure to allergen. The results of early clinical studies of commercial cell-based assays showed relatively poor sensitivity compared with skin tests for several allergens, including foods and insect venoms (Maly et al, 1997). In more recent clinical studies, basophil activation results have shown improved efficacy for identifying allergy to foods and hapten drugs and may be useful to predict the severity of reactions in peanut-allergic children (Santos et al, 2015).

Immunometric assays for IgE antibodies were introduced in the late 1960s (Wide et al, 1967). Original (first-generation) methods utilized solid-phase immunosorbents prepared by coupling allergen extracts covalently to cyanogen bromide–activated Sephadex, paper disks, or microcrystalline cellulose particles as capture reagents for IgE antibodies. After incubating with serum, the solid phase was washed with buffer, and radiolabeled, affinity-purified, polyclonal anti-IgE antibody was added as a detection protein. These early methods were semiquantitative, with results determined by comparison to an arbitrary dose-response reference curve that measured binding of IgE antibodies in calibrator solutions to a birch pollen immunosorbent. Results were reported in arbitrarily defined classes from 0 (negative) to 5+ (strongly positive). The original commercial method, now obsolete, was referred to by the term *radioallergosorbent test* (RAST). First-generation tests for IgE antibodies had a number of limitations: The immunosorbents had limited capacity to bind IgE antibodies, which resulted in relatively poor analytic sensitivity; long incubations were required; and IgE binding to immunosorbents was susceptible to interference from competing IgG antibodies. In addition, the allergens used to prepare these early immunosorbents were poorly characterized and varied considerably from lot to lot and from one manufacturer to another.

The most widely used allergen-specific IgE antibody assays are currently computer-driven autoanalyzers that report quantitative results and address the performance and analytical sensitivity and specificity concerns of the earliest RAST. One important advancement is the use of higher-capacity allergen immunosorbents that have an increased antibody-binding capacity compared to earlier solid-phase reagents. Their calibration is now traceable to the WHO IgE Reference Preparation 75/502 (Ewan & Coote, 1990; Hamilton et al, 2015). A modified method of calibration is based on demonstrating parallelism between the dose-response curve for total serum IgE and the dose-response curves for IgE bound to each different allergen immunosorbent. This type of calibration scheme, called *heterologous interpolation*, permits reporting of results for IgE antibody tests in mass units, kUA/L (Hamilton et al, 2015). Analytical sensitivity has been enhanced with detection of IgE antibodies at concentrations as low as 0.1 kUA/L. The expression of results in actual concentrations enables identification of precise cutoffs for classifying clinical data. In addition, the current singleplex assays that analyze one IgE antibody specificity per analysis are more resistant to interference by IgG antibodies because of the higher binding capacity of the allergosorbent. Reproducibility has also been enhanced with the use of more well-characterized allergen extracts. Results are typically available within 6 hours with reduced turnaround times for clinical tests.

Significant improvements have been achieved in the reagent allergens used to measure IgE antibodies. As noted earlier, allergenic molecules of several protein families have been extensively characterized structurally. More than 100 recombinant protein components are now available for clinically important allergen specificities, including components of dust mites; cat, dog, and animal epithelia; mold allergens (e.g., *Alternaria tenuis*; pollen aeroallergens from trees, grasses, and weeds); food allergens including peanut, tree nuts, soybean, wheat, milk, egg, stone fruits, fish, and shellfish; natural rubber latex; and insect venom allergens. Approximately 50 recombinant and highly purified natural component allergens have been cleared for clinical testing in the United States by the FDA.

Although much improved over early versions, and despite FDA clearance as quantitative methods, IgE antibody assays from different manufacturers do not generate numerically equivalent test results. This is an important caveat, since published cutoffs for clinical decision making are method-dependent (Hamilton, 2010; College of American Pathologists, 2014). Assays from different commercial manufacturers differ in the allergen used in their immunosorbents.

Test methods for IgE antibodies have also been adapted to detect multiple different antibodies simultaneously (so-called *multiallergen tests*), and a commercial screening test of moderate Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act complexity has recently been introduced for point-of-care testing. By coupling several allergens to the same immunosorbent, it is possible to test an aliquot of serum for the presence of several different antibodies without losing analytic sensitivity (Ownby et al, 1984; Hamilton et al, 2015). The diagnostic sensitivity and negative predictive value of multiallergen tests exceeds that of other single-analyte screening tests for allergy, including measurement of serum total IgE (Ownby et al, 1984). Multiallergen reagents can be used effectively in algorithms to test sera for antibodies to several allergens of a common class (e.g. grass pollens or foods). Testing for individual specificities is indicated only if the screening test is positive.

The point-of-care test uses a disposable cassette and whole blood to qualitatively identify IgE antibodies to 10 individual allergens in a panel of common inhalant aeroallergens. Although less sensitive analytically than current immunometric methods, this test shows promise in primary care situations for rapid detection of IgE antibodies to common aeroallergens.

MEASUREMENT OF IgE ANTIBODIES: CLINICAL APPLICATIONS

At the outset it is useful to note that in vitro testing for IgE antibodies has certain advantages compared with in vivo skin testing. It poses no risk to the patient, and results are not influenced by concomitant treatment with antihistamines, adrenergic bronchodilators, or brief courses of treatment with systemic corticosteroids. In addition, IgE antibody testing is preferable to skin testing in infants and in patients with dermographism or widespread dermatitis. Disadvantages must also be noted. In vitro testing is costly if large numbers of individual tests are ordered, it is often necessary to send tests to referral laboratories, and the results may not be available for several days.

Current recommendations for clinical use are based on the results of empirical studies in which the sensitivities and predictive values of IgE antibody results were compared with the results of skin tests and challenge tests.

It is clear from many published studies that the diagnostic sensitivity and specificity of IgE antibody results vary considerably depending upon the populations studied and the allergens and diseases in question. When considering a particular disease or allergen, results vary significantly depending on characteristics of the study cohorts especially patients' age, geographic location, affected target organs, and severity of disease. Results are also affected by the elapsed time between exposure to allergen and testing, and the class of allergen tested. For the purposes of this chapter, it is useful to review the following clinical applications separately: allergic diseases of infants and children including food allergies, adult allergic diseases, insect venom sensitivities, and drug and occupational allergies.

Atopic children commonly develop symptoms and signs of allergic disease in a predictable sequence. This concept has been called the **allergic march.** In genetically predisposed infants, eczema (atopic dermatitis) is often the first manifestation of allergic disease. Atopic infants and children younger than 3 years of age may also have gastrointestinal symptoms (colic, diarrhea, vomiting, and abdominal pain) or may suffer from chronic otitis. Very young children may suffer from recurrent wheezing. As the atopic child matures, cutaneous and gastrointestinal symptoms commonly give way to worsening respiratory symptoms with development of allergic rhinitis and asthma (Wahn, 1998; Wahn, 2000; Hahn & Bachavier, 2005). The typical sequence of the allergic march is shown schematically in Figure 55-4.

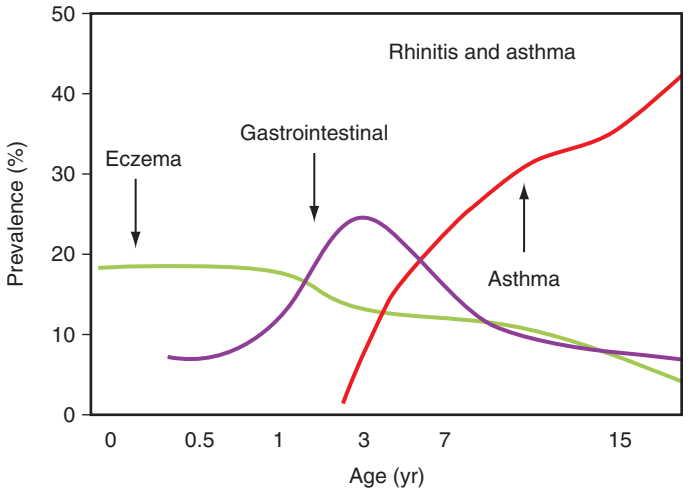


Figure 55-4 **Relationship of age and clinical manifestations of allergic disease in children.**

TABLE 55-5
Selected Immunoglobulin (Ig)E Antibody Tests for Evaluating Children with Clinical Signs of Allergy

Age, Years	Signs of Disease	Allergens
Younger than 3	Eczema with or without wheezing and otitis	Common foods: Egg white, milk, wheat, soy; house dust mites (*Dermatophagoides farinae* and *Dermatophagoides pteronyssinus*)
Older than 3 or 4	Rhinitis, wheezing, asthma	Common perennial inhalants: house dust mites, cat or dog, cockroach, *Alternaria tenuis*
Older than 3 or 4	Rhinitis, wheezing, asthma with seasonal exacerbations	Common perennial inhalants, as above, plus pollen inhalants (tree, grass, or weed pollens)

The presenting symptoms of allergic diseases in infants and children are not specific and are easily mistaken for other etiologies. Increasingly, physicians have recognized that empirical therapy for suspected allergic diseases in children is not acceptable because it often results in unnecessary or inappropriate treatment with antihistamines, inhaled or systemic corticosteroids, leukotriene antagonists, and antibiotics. Empirical therapy may also allow the allergic march to proceed unchecked by missing the opportunity to lessen exposure to offending allergens. Although the results of clinical investigations are inconclusive, evidence suggests that avoidance of offending allergens and optimum pharmacotherapy may lessen the risk for sensitization to additional allergens and may mitigate the advance of allergic respiratory diseases later in childhood (Wahn, 1998; Platts-Mills, 2003; van Bever et al, 2008).

In a consensus document, the European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology made the following recommendation (Host et al, 2003): Generally, all individuals with severe, persisting, or recurrent possible "allergic symptoms" and individuals with need for continuous prophylactic treatment should be tested for specific allergy, irrespective of the age of the child. Included in this description are children with cutaneous disease, gastrointestinal symptoms (colic, diarrhea, vomiting, or failure to thrive), recurrent wheezing, otitis, rhinitis, or asthma. Laboratory tests for IgE antibodies and skin tests were considered essentially interchangeable for the purpose of evaluating symptomatic children (Host et al, 2003).

The selection of appropriate allergens for testing is determined by clinical signs and symptoms and by the age of the child. The most frequent offending allergens in infants and children younger than 3 years of age are foods, notably component protein allergens in cow's milk, egg white, wheat, soy, peanut, fish, and shellfish (Nickel et al, 1997; Sampson, 2001; Salo et al, 2014). Immediate hypersensitivity to food allergens in infants is commonly associated with eczema, gastrointestinal symptoms, chronic otitis, and wheezing. Less commonly, atopic children younger than 3 years of age may be sensitized and have demonstrable IgE antibodies to house dust mites (*D. farinae* and *D. pteronyssinus*) and ubiquitous molds (e.g., *Alternaria tenuis*). These inhalant allergens are common asthmatic triggers in older children. Except for a child with systemic signs and symptoms (anaphylaxis or oral allergy syndrome) whose symptoms are strongly associated with ingestion of particular food(s) (e.g., peanut or tree nuts), it is seldom necessary to test for IgE antibodies to multiple foods if the results of tests for the above-mentioned common food allergens are negative. In addition, allergic respiratory disease caused by seasonal inhalant aeroallergens such as pollens is uncommon before 5 years of age, and routine testing for IgE antibodies to these allergens is not necessary. In the age group younger than 5 years of age, the presumptive diagnosis of an allergic disease can usually be established with tests for IgE antibodies to common foods, dust mites (*D. pteronyssinus* and *D. farinae*), and cat, dog, or cockroach allergens if indicated by exposure history.

Positive test results for IgE antibodies to common food allergens in children younger than 5 years of age have dual significance: They establish a substantial likelihood of allergic disease, and they indicate an increased risk for sensitization to additional allergens later in childhood (Nickel et al, 1997; Wahn, 2009). For these reasons, the identification of IgE antibodies to common food allergens in symptomatic infants and children younger than 5 years of age is important for making proper treatment choices and for deciding whether to seek referral to an allergy specialist. The concentrations of IgE antibodies that predict clinically significant, immediate hypersensitivity with high positive predictive values (95% or greater) differ considerably for different foods and study populations, and the clinical significance of low levels of IgE antibodies to common foods is limited (Sampson & Ho, 1997; Sampson, 2001). Nevertheless, it is clear from the relationships shown in Figure 55-5 that the higher the level of IgE antibodies, the greater the likelihood of an allergic reaction to each food allergen. The receiver operating characteristic curves depicted in Figure 55-5 indicate cutoff concentrations for several common food allergens that had high predictive values for positive responses on subsequent food challenge testing. As illustrated by the graphs, a distinct advantage is associated with reporting results in quantitative units compared with the obsolete convention of class scores.

Allergic diseases in children older than 3 years of age typically manifest with respiratory signs and symptoms: rhinitis, wheezing, and persistent cough (see Fig. 55-4). In atopic children and adults, it is useful to think of the entire respiratory tract as a single allergic target organ. Allergic rhinitis and asthma often accompany one another. Most asthmatic children suffer from rhinitis, and children with rhinitis often have asthma that may be clinically apparent or subclinical. With the development of disease affecting the respiratory tract, tests for IgE antibodies to inhalant aeroallergens become much more important for clinical decision making (Host et al, 2003; Stringari et al, 2014). Because a vast number of different inhalant aeroallergens are available for testing, it is important to be selective in the initial testing of children with respiratory signs and symptoms, to avoid unnecessary testing.

The allergens chosen for testing in children with respiratory diseases depend on the age of the child and the scope of clinical manifestations (Table 55-5). After 3 or 4 years of age, it is common for atopic children to develop IgE antibodies to indoor perennial aeroallergens, including house dust mites, animal epithelia (cat and dog), cockroach, and molds. The last antibody specificities to develop in children are common outdoor aeroallergens, including pollen inhalants of trees, grasses, and weeds. There is no agreement on the minimum number of inhalant allergens that should be tested when evaluating children with respiratory symptoms, but by consensus testing should include house dust mites, cat or dog epithelium, a ubiquitous mold species (e.g., *A. tenuis*), and appropriate pollen allergens (Host et al, 2003). Testing for IgE antibodies to pollen allergens is indicated in older children, especially when symptoms are seasonal and tests can be performed at the time symptoms are manifest. Concentrations of IgE antibodies to seasonal inhalants vary with seasons, and there is little utility in performing tests for IgE antibodies to pollen inhalants when the allergens are not present in the environment because results may be falsely negative. The multiallergen IgE antibody test is an efficient option to screen initially for the presence of IgE antibodies to families of pollen allergens. A positive result indicates the presence of IgE antibodies to at least one of the allergens, but is not specific for a particular allergen. As such, positive results are useful to identify patients for further testing with individual allergens.

Testing for IgE antibodies is indicated in children with symptoms of asthma. Longitudinal cohort studies and population-based studies of children point to the importance of IgE antibodies and exposure to allergens in predicting the severity of disease in children with wheezing. The likelihood of wheezing and exacerbations of disease increase directly with

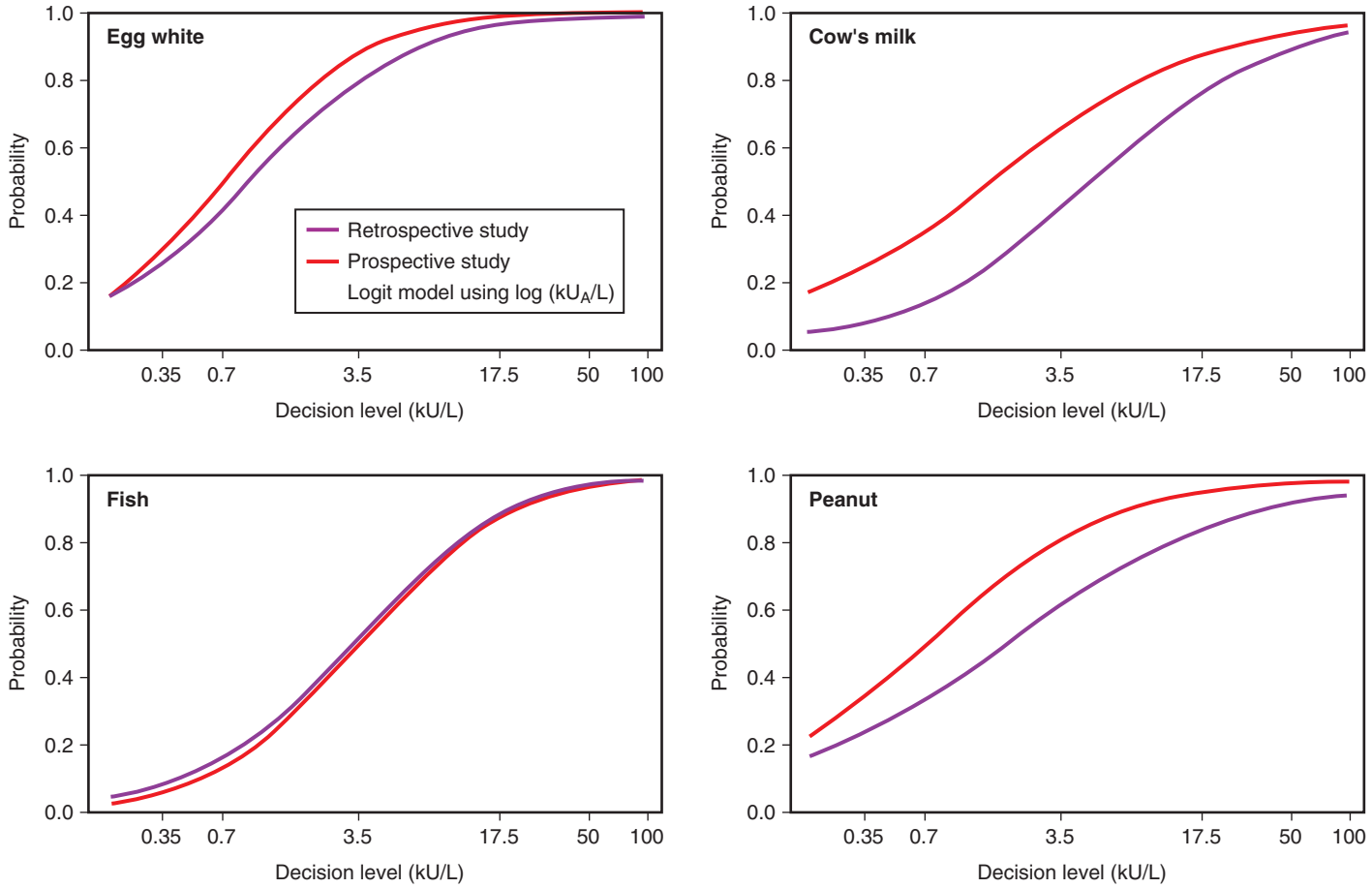


Figure 55-5 Probability of reacting to food allergens at increasing levels of immunoglobulin (Ig)E antibodies. (With permission from Sampson HA: Utility of food-specific IgE concentrations in predicting symptomatic food allergy, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 107:891–896, 2001.)

the summed concentrations of IgE antibodies to inhalant aeroallergens (Custovic et al, 2005). In addition, high concentrations of IgE antibodies to dust mite, animal epithelia, and other common aeroallergens in children with wheezing predispose to greater morbidity and increase the likelihood of inpatient hospital treatment (Custovic et al, 2005; Arroyave et al, 2013). The probability of exacerbations of disease increases directly with the concentrations of IgE antibodies for several common aeroallergens (Arroyave et al, 2013). Development of asthma in a child is almost invariably accompanied by rhinitis and is classified commonly as allergic phenotype disease (Corren, 2013).

In adults with allergic rhinitis, tests for IgE antibodies are reliable for identifying individuals sensitized to all allergen classes. The most prevalent sensitivities are to aeroallergens, including house dust mites, cockroach, animal epithelia, mold spores, pollens, and organic dust allergens (Hamilton et al, 2015). Testing is indicated if the results are likely to influence the mode of treatment (Gendo & Larson, 2004). In adults suspected of having allergic rhinitis, IgE antibody tests are most useful when the pretest probability of disease is relatively low (less than 30%). Such patients typically do not have clinical findings that strongly suggest an allergic etiology. In this situation, positive test results greatly increase the posttest probability of allergic disease. Among patients with a strongly suggestive clinical history (prominent nasal symptoms and allergen triggers), testing is less likely to be useful and empirical treatment is often indicated. Skin tests and IgE antibody tests have essentially equivalent diagnostic utility in adults with allergic rhinitis, and either test modality is helpful to identify allergens for inclusion in immunotherapy regimens (Gendo & Larson, 2004).

Testing for IgE antibodies also is clinically indicated in the evaluation of adults with asthmatic symptoms to characterize the phenotype of disease and to identify allergen triggers including occupational allergens. Unlike disease in children, adult-onset asthma is often non-atopic. Late (adult) onset, non-atopic asthma is considered a distinct phenotype characterized by prominent neutrophilic inflammation of the airways with blood and sputum eosinophilia (Corren, 2013).

New and novel drug treatments for allergic diseases have become available in recent years. In particular, the treatment of severe persistent allergic asthma has been improved by anti-IgE pharmacotherapy (Busse et al, 2001; Soler et al, 2001; Lanier et al, 2003; Humbert et al, 2014). Therapeutic anti-IgE (Omalizumab) is a recombinant humanized mouse monoclonal antibody to IgE that binds to the ε heavy chain of IgE, inhibits binding of IgE antibodies to Fc ε receptors on mast cells, and decreases antigen-induced mediator release from mast cells and basophils. Treatment with anti-IgE pharmacotherapy also decreases expression of Fc ε receptors on mast cells and decreases circulating IL-13. By interfering with binding of IgE antibodies to effector cells, anti-IgE antibody effectively blocks the release of inflammatory mediators that results from exposure to allergen. Results of clinical studies of anti-IgE pharmacotherapy for asthma have shown reduced rates of disease exacerbation and reduced requirements for corticosteroid drugs in treated patients. The dosage of anti-IgE is calculated based upon body weight and serum IgE concentration. In patients with elevated serum IgE concentrations (30 to 700 kU/L in the United States; 30 to 1500 kU/L in the European Union), omalizumab is administered subcutaneously every 2 to 4 weeks to achieve a reduction in IgE level to less than 50 ng/mL (approximately 25 kU/L). The duration of therapy required in patients with severe allergic asthma has not been determined. Caution should be exercised when interpreting IgE antibody data that have been obtained by analyzing serum collected from a patient who has received Omalizumab, as the presence of exogenous anti-IgE in the serum may compromise the accuracy of some clinically used IgE antibody assays (Hamilton, 2006).

As noted earlier, quantitative tests for IgE antibodies are widely used in the evaluation of suspected sensitization and allergy to foods (Sampson, 2001). The acknowledged gold standard for determining food allergy is the double-blind, placebo-controlled food challenge test (Sampson et al, 2014). Published empirical data indicate that the presence of IgE antibodies confirms food allergen sensitization, and serum concentrations of IgE antibodies may be useful to predict positive response to food challenges for several common foods including milk, egg, soy, and wheat (see Fig.

55-5). Concentrations of IgE antibodies were identified above which food challenges were likely to be positive and therefore not indicated. Subsequent studies indicated that caution is required in applying these published cutoffs in clinical practice. Attempts by different investigators to reproduce the empirical cutoffs of earlier studies showed considerable differences for milk and egg allergens, and it was not possible to define predictive cutoffs for soy or wheat. In addition, negative test results did not conclusively rule out reactivity to food challenge, and positive results did not reliably predict the severity of reactions in individual allergic patients. Despite these limitations, IgE antibody testing is recommended in the current food allergy practice parameter (Sampson et al, 2014).

The recent availability of recombinant food allergen component proteins greatly facilitates identifying and differentiating cross-reactive sensitization from sensitization to species-specific food proteins. This advancement is important because patients sensitized to heat-stable, species-specific storage proteins (e.g., Ara h 2 in peanut, Cor a 14 in hazelnut) are likely to be at greater risk for systemic reactions. The overall prevalence of food sensitization as indicated by positive IgE antibody tests (or skin-prick tests) greatly exceeds the prevalence of food allergy (Sicherer & Wood, 2013; Sicherer & Sampson, 2014). For example, while approximately 8% to 10% of non-atopic children have positive tests for IgE antibodies detected by testing with whole peanut allergen, fewer than 2% react to peanut ingestion. This finding is explained by noting that most peanut-sensitized children have antibodies to the highly cross-reactive PR10 protein Ara h 8 or a profilin homologue, are sensitized to homologous pollen panallergen(s), and do not have antibodies to species-specific, peanut storage proteins. Antibodies to the 2S albumin storage protein Ara h 2 are strongly associated with systemic reactivity to peanut in most peanut-allergic children and adults (Nicolaou & Custovic, 2011; Klemans et al, 2013; Sicherer & Sampson, 2014). Several studies have examined the sensitivity and specificity of IgE antibodies to Ara h 2 for identifying and predicting systemic reactivity to peanut, and, although Ara h 2 antibodies are more specific for peanut allergy and have a much higher positive predictive value for peanut allergy, the results must be interpreted in the clinical context when assessing the risk for peanut allergy (Sicherer & Wood, 2013). Higher concentrations of IgE antibodies to Ara h 2 are associated with greater risk for systemic reactivity (Sicherer & Wood, 2013).

Testing for IgE antibodies to components also is useful for determining allergy to many other foods. The situation is analogous to that described earlier for peanut, that is, the prevalence of sensitization is much greater than the prevalence of severe allergy, and many positive results in sensitized patients can be accounted for by the presence of antibodies to cross-reactive, heat-labile, panallergen components or to carbohydrate moieties (CCDs) on plant glycoproteins. Sensitization to panallergen PR10 or profilin components causes primarily mild allergic reactions to fruits and vegetables. While this is a useful generalization, there are some notable exceptions, such as soy for which the PR10 homologue Gly m 4 is associated with severe systemic reactivity. The risk for allergic reactivity to several food components is summarized in Table 55-3.

Testing for IgE antibodies is also useful in a number of special situations. Exercise-induced anaphylaxis has been described in patients with IgE antibodies to the wheat components, omega-5-gliadin, or nsLTP (Pastorello et al, 2014). Delayed anaphylaxis occurring 3 to 6 hours after ingestion of red meat is associated with IgE antibodies to the cross-reactive carbohydrate determinant galactose-alpha-1,3-galactose (so called *alpha gal*). Antibodies to alpha gal are also associated with allergic reactions to Cetuximab. The galactose-alpha-1,3-galactose epitope is present on the Fab portion of Cetuximab, a mouse-human monoclonal antibody against epidermal growth factor used to treat colon carcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (Chung et al, 2008). Up to one-third of patients treated with Cetuximab have allergic reactions. Sensitization to alpha-gal is believed to occur through tick bites and is more common in the Southeastern United States (Commins & Platts-Mills, 2009; Berg et al, 2014).

Testing for IgE antibodies is useful in the evaluation of suspected allergy to Hymenoptera venom(s). Individuals sensitized to the venoms of honey bees, yellow jackets, hornets, or wasps may manifest signs of anaphylaxis following a sting including urticaria, angioedema, bronchospasm, or cardiovascular collapse. The reported death rate from sting-induced systemic reactions is at least 40 cases annually, and the incidence of venom-induced anaphylaxis is exceeded only by anaphylaxis caused by food or drug allergies (Wood et al, 2014). The natural history of untreated venom sensitivity varies from patient to patient. In many patients with documented venom allergy, it is possible to elicit a clinical history of progressively more severe reactions to successive stings. Anaphylaxis also can occur in individuals with no prior history of allergic reactions. Conversely, venom allergy apparently ameliorates spontaneously in many other cases. The decision to treat a patient with venom immunotherapy is based on clinical assessment of the risk for anaphylaxis to possible future stings. The most reliable indicator of venom allergy is the response to a deliberate sting challenge, but this test is seldom performed and is rarely required in previously untreated patients to establish the diagnosis of venom allergy. Venom skin tests and IgE antibody tests are useful to confirm the clinical impression of venom allergy and to define its specificity. Comparative studies indicate that skin testing is a more sensitive diagnostic modality, with only approximately 80% of skin test–positive patients having demonstrable IgE antibodies to whole venom allergens (Golden et al, 2003). Venom IgE antibody tests are useful primarily to confirm the results of skin tests, to define the allergen specificity of venom hypersensitivity, and in selected patients to identify venom sensitivity when a positive clinical history is not confirmed by venom skin testing (Golden et al, 2003). Carbohydrate free, species-specific major component allergens from bee venom (Api m 1), Vespula (hornet) venom (Ves v 1, phospholipase, and Ves v 5, antigen 5), and Polistes (wasp) venom have been used recently in clinical studies but are not yet FDA approved in the United States. These reagents have been shown to aid in differentiating allergy from cross-reactivity in patients with positive skin tests and IgE antibody tests to multiple whole-venom allergens (Muller et al, 2012; Ebo et al, 2013). The ability to identify cross-reactivity also is important in choosing appropriate allergens for immunotherapy. Recombinant venom components may also increase the diagnostic sensitivity of testing in patients with negative IgE antibody tests to whole-venom allergens (Kohler et al, 2014).

With the exception of the sting challenge, no in vitro or in vivo test reliably predicts the clinical response to an insect sting in a treated patient following venom immunotherapy. Although the concentrations of IgG antibodies in serum increase markedly with venom immunotherapy, no cutoff level has been defined that can be used to identify those patients who are no longer at risk. Semiquantitative estimates of IgG antibodies are not useful clinically, and levels of IgE antibodies following treatment bear no consistent relationship to clinical status. The decision to discontinue venom immunotherapy is based on clinical studies that show high protection rates after approximately 3 years of treatment (Yunginger, 1998).

Measurements of IgE antibodies have also been applied to the diagnosis of drug allergies. Although many drugs and their metabolites are capable of eliciting synthesis of antibodies, clinical data and the results of IgE antibody measurements are available for relatively few drugs, including the penicillins (beta lactam antibiotics) and insulin. Penicillin and its isomer, penicillenic acid, combine with serum proteins through amide linkages to create allergenic moieties. Penicilloyl-protein and penicillenic acid-protein comprise the so-called major and minor antigenic determinants, respectively (Fig. 55-6). Measurable levels of IgM and IgG antibodies specific for the penicilloyl determinant occur commonly in penicillin-treated patients. Although high titers of these antibodies persist in plasma for relatively short periods, lower titers can often be detected years after treatment (Shepherd, 1991). The diagnosis of hypersensitivity to penicillin has relied on skin testing with penicillin, penicilloyl-polylysine, and a minor antigen mixture. Positive skin test results occur infrequently, especially when testing is done remotely following treatment with penicillin. Fewer than 30% of patients with probable histories of immediate hypersensitivity to penicillin have positive skin tests, and immediate hypersensitivity reactions to penicillin therapy are rare in patients with negative skin tests (Blanca et al, 2009).

Using the results of skin tests as a diagnostic reference, clinical studies have reported IgE antibodies to the penicilloyl determinant in 65% to 85% of patients with positive skin tests (Fontaine et al, 2007). Anti-penicilloyl antibodies were not detected in control subjects. On the basis of these data, it is reasonable to recommend in vitro testing for penicilloyl-IgE antibodies only in patients with a history of recent reactions. The absence of specific antibodies to penicilloyl-polylysinedoes does not exclude the possibility of clinically significant IgE antibodies to other penicillin metabolites (Weiss & Adkinson, 1988; Fontaine et al, 2007; Blanca et al, 2009). There is considerable cross-reactivity between different beta-lactam drugs. Nevertheless, some patients have unique antibodies that react with amoxicillin side chains, and testing with amoxicilloyl allergen is indicated to identify such cases (Blanca et al, 2001).

Allergic diseases, particularly asthma, may be caused by a wide variety of allergens encountered in the workplace. The list of causative agents associated with allergic occupational asthma is long and includes the following: animal proteins, enzymes, plant proteins, legumes, anhydrides, metallic salts, dyes, isocyanates, and wood dusts. Testing for IgE antibodies is available for many of these allergens. Considerable attention has been

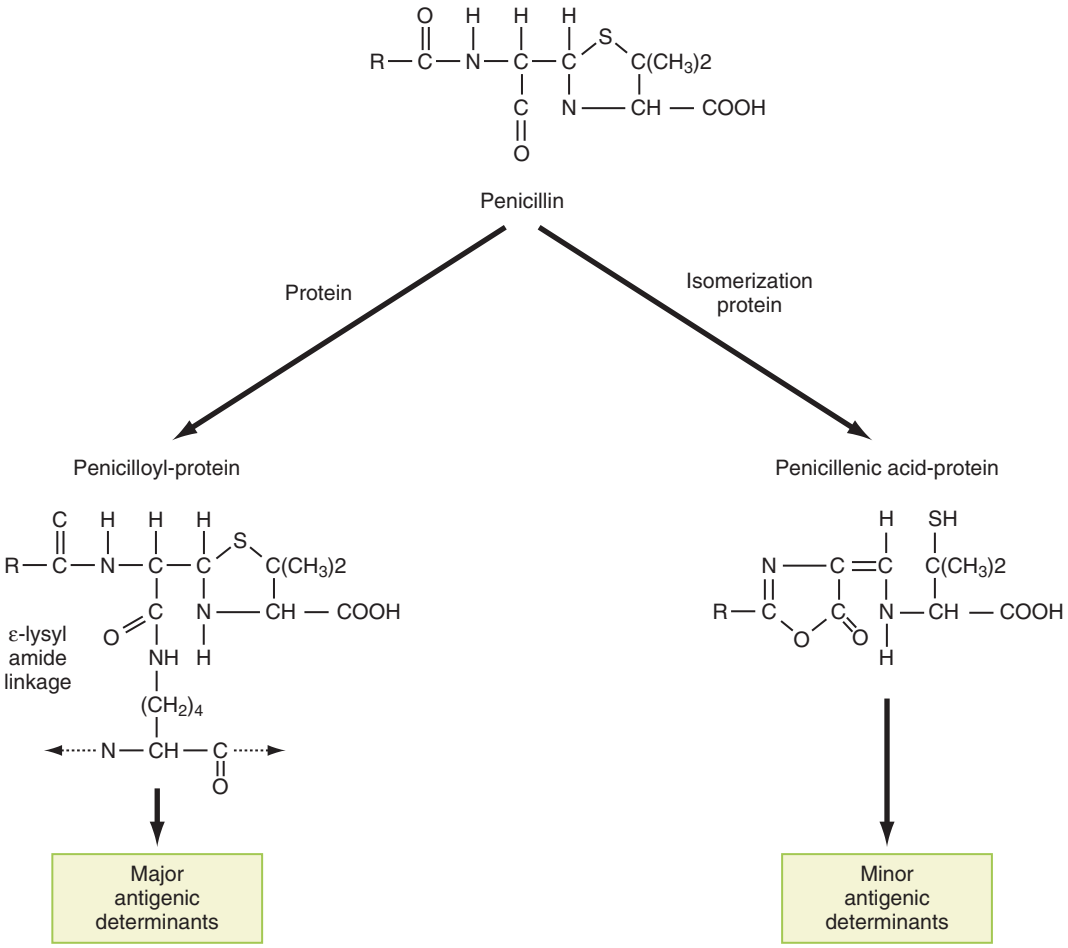


Figure 55-6 Allergens derived from penicillin.

devoted to studies of natural rubber latex (Hevea brasiliensis) as an allergen in the health care workplace and in patients with spina bifida who have undergone multiple surgical procedures. Natural rubber latex is a complex allergen that contains several unique protein component allergens. Testing for IgE antibodies to latex whole allergen is useful for identifying sensitized individuals (Bernstein et al, 2003). Approximately 90% of skin test–positive patients have measurable IgE antibodies to latex allergens (Hamilton et al, 2003). The majority of latex-sensitized patients who fail to react to exposure to latex are sensitized only to the profilin component Hev b 8 and do not have antibodies to other latex components (Ott et al, 2010).

In concluding this section on testing for IgE antibodies with currently available tests, it is appropriate to summarize some of the major points made earlier. Measurement of IgE antibodies is useful and can be recommended in the following clinical situations: 1) to evaluate children with early clinical signs of allergic disease, including children with eczema, gastrointestinal symptoms, wheezing, and rhinitis; 2) to evaluate children and adults suspected of having allergic respiratory disease to establish the diagnosis and to define the specificity of allergen sensitization to pollens, dust mites, mold allergens, and foods; 3) to confirm sensitization to food allergens in patients with signs of clinical food allergy; 4) to identify allergens for use in immunotherapy regimens in patients with severe allergic rhinitis; 5) to evaluate the specificity of sensitization to insect venom allergens; 6) to confirm the diagnosis of penicillin hypersensitivity in patients with recent clinical reactions; and 7) to confirm the presence of sensitization and possible allergy to occupational allergens. Testing for IgE antibodies is not routinely recommended for evaluating the effects of immunotherapy in treated patients, or for excluding the diagnosis of anaphylactic sensitivity to insect venoms in treated patients. Testing for IgE antibodies is indicated only in patients who have had a thorough medical history and physical examination. Importantly, the presence of allergen-specific IgE antibody as detected either in the blood or skin of a patient is strictly an indication of sensitization and not verification of allergic disease. The clinical history of the patient must be the final arbiter that is used to interpret IgE antibody results in making the definitive diagnosis of allergic disease (Hamilton, 2014b).

FUTURE DIRECTIONS: COMPONENT-RESOLVED DIAGNOSTICS AND TESTING BY MICROARRAY METHODS

As discussed earlier, it is important in clinical allergy practice to identify sensitization to an allergen and to differentiate cross-reactivity from probable allergy. As noted in Table 55-3, many allergens from seemingly unrelated sources (e.g., pollen aeroallergens and plant foods) share components from widely conserved protein and glycoprotein families (profilins, PR-10, panallergens, and CCDs) with high degrees of structural similarity. Other allergenic proteins are unique to particular sources (e.g., food storage proteins). In several instances, panels of recombinant protein components from a single source have proved more useful than extracted whole allergens for determining sensitization to an allergen (e.g., peanut and natural rubber latex) and will often reveal whether reactivity to the whole allergen is caused by sensitization to one or more unique allergen components, or is attributable to cross-reactivity arising from sensitization to a panallergen. This distinction is important, as the likelihood of severe reactivity or persistent allergy is usually greater with sensitization to unique allergen components (e.g., Ara h 2 in peanut or ovomucoid in egg white) (Valenta et al, 1999). Knowledge of cross-reactivity also may help to determine the optimum allergens for use in immunotherapy regimens. In a recent study, tests for IgE antibodies to recombinant component allergens failed to reveal antibodies to major allergens in up to 60% of children with allergic rhinitis who had positive tests to extracted pollen allergens (Stringari et al, 2014). It is not known at this time whether more selective immunotherapy based on component testing will improve the efficacy of immunotherapy treatment regimens. The use of allergen components in clinical testing has been called *component-resolved diagnosis* and *molecular allergy diagnosis*, and it is safe to conclude that this type of testing will increase in use as its likely advantages are better defined and more components are cleared for clinical testing (Canonica et al, 2013).

Recombinant protein components have been paired with microarray technologies to enable testing for multiple IgE antibodies simultaneously.

Up to 112 different recombinant allergen components from more than 50 different allergens have been used in a single microarray panel. Results of semiquantitative microarray tests are consistent with the results of established quantitative immunometric methods for IgE antibodies (Jahn-Schmid et al, 2003; Martinez-Aranguren et al, 2014). The results of a microarray analysis can be used to construct a serologic phenotype profile that displays sensitization to unique and cross-reactive allergen components. This type of analysis holds considerable promise for evaluating patients prior to immunotherapy, for investigating suspected food allergy, for resolving cases of apparent sensitization to multiple different allergens, and for investigating cases of anaphylaxis in which the offending allergen is not apparent from the clinical history. At this time, microarray test platforms and many of the recombinant component reagents are not cleared for clinical use by the U.S. FDA.

TESTS FOR MEDIATORS OF IMMEDIATE HYPERSENSITIVITY REACTIONS

As noted earlier, a number of mediators of immediate hypersensitivity reactions, including histamine, tryptase, the cysteinyl leukotrienes, and prostaglandin D_2, have been identified. Each of these mediators promotes inflammation in human allergic disease or in animal models of allergy and anaphylaxis. Despite their proven roles in promoting allergic inflammation, measurements of mediators in body fluids are of limited usefulness clinically in the differential diagnosis of allergic diseases. Measurements of histamine in plasma or urine occasionally can be of value in patients with anaphylaxis when tests are performed immediately following an anaphylactic episode, but care is needed to obtain a suitable specimen (Friedman et al, 1989). Hemolysis can lead to falsely elevated histamine levels in the blood, and histamine-rich foods and bacterial colonization can lead to falsely elevated levels in urine. A more useful test in this clinical setting is measurement of tryptase in blood (Schwartz, 2006). Tryptase in serum consists primarily of pro-tryptase and mature tryptase (previously referred to as α- and β-monomers, respectively) released constitutively from mast cells. Following anaphylaxis, mature β-tryptase (tetramer) is released from sensitized mast cells, and the level of tryptase increases rapidly (15 minutes to 2 hours) and remains elevated for up to 24 hours. An elevated concentration of tryptase measured in postmortem blood is consistent with the diagnosis of anaphylaxis (Schwartz, 2006). By comparison, histamine is cleared rapidly from blood with a half-life of minutes. The leukotrienes are active locally and are present in minute concentrations in body fluids. Measurement of leukotrienes may be informative in research applications, but testing is rarely used in the clinical evaluation of allergic patients.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Ballmer-Weber B, Hoffman-Sommergruber K: Molecular diagnosis of fruit and vegetable allergy, *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 11:229–235, 2011.

This article provides information on allergen sensitization to fruit and vegetable components and is an example of the rapidly evolving knowledge around allergy to prevalent food components.

Bernstein I, Li J, Bernstein D: Allergy diagnostic testing: an updated practice parameter, *Ann All Asthma Immunol* S1–S148, 2008.

This practice parameter provides an overview of current recommendations for diagnostic testing in patients suspected of having allergic diseases.

Bradding P, Saito H: Biology of mast cells and their mediators. In Adkinson F, Bochner B, Burks W, et al, editors: *Middleton's allergy principles and practice*, Philadelphia, 2014, Saunders, pp 228–237.

This chapter reviews mast cell biology, mast cell inflammatory mediators and their roles in allergic inflammation.

Canonica G, Ansotegui I, Pawankar R, et al: A WAO-ARIA-GALEN consensus document on molecular-based allergy diagnostics, *World Allergy Organ J* 6:17, 2013.

This document provides an overview of recommendations for performing component (molecular) testing for IgE antibodies in allergic disease diagnosis.

Gendo K, Larson EB: Evidence-based diagnostic strategies for evaluating suspected allergic rhinitis, *Ann Intern Med* 140:278–289, 2004.

This article is a meta-analysis of studies that compare in vitro and in vivo diagnostic methods in the evaluation of patients with respiratory allergies.

Hahn E, Bachavier LB: The atopic march: the pattern of allergic disease development in childhood, *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 25:231–246, 2005.

This article reviews the sequence of sensitization to different allergen classes in children and the concomitant development and expression of allergic diseases in atopic children.

Hamilton RG: Proficiency survey-based evaluation of clinical total and allergen-specific IgE assay performance, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 134:975–982, 2010.

This article is a comprehensive review of the evolution and performance of in vitro assays for IgE antibodies.

Hamilton RG, Matsson P, Chan S, et al: *Analytical Performance characteristics, quality assurance and clinical utility of immunological assays for human Immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibodies of defined allergen specificities; Approved guideline*, ed 3, CLSI document I/LA20-A3, Wayne, Penna, 2015, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

This guideline presents an overview of laboratory tests for IgE and IgE antibodies with emphasis on analytic concepts and quality control of clinical assays.

Holloway J: Genetics and epigenetics of allergic diseases and asthma. In Adkinson F, Bochner B, Burks W, et al, editors: *Middleton's allergy principles and practice*, Philadelphia, 2014, Saunders, pp 343–360.

This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of the genetics and molecular genetics of IgE and accessory molecules important in promoting susceptibility to allergic diseases.

Host A, Andrae S, Charkin S, et al: Allergy testing in children: why, who, when and how?, *Eur J Allergy Clin Immunol* 58:1–11, 2003.

An excellent review of allergic diseases in children. This article presents the consensus recommendations of European allergy societies for evaluating children with suspected allergic diseases.

Oettgen H: Immunobiology of IgE and IgE receptors. In Adkinson F, Bochner B, Burks W, et al, editors: *Middleton's allergy principles and practice*, Philadelphia, 2014, Saunders, pp 364–375.

This article presents a comprehensive review of the immunobiology of IgE synthesis and the biology of IgE receptors.

Salo P, Arbes S, Jaramillo R, et al: Prevalence of allergic sensitization in the United States: results from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) 2005-2006, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 134: 350–359, 2014.

This article presents data on the age-related and geographic prevalence of sensitization to common allergens in the United States. These demographic data are important for designing appropriate test offerings for allergic diseases in children of all ages.

Sampson HA: Utility of food-specific IgE concentrations in predicting symptomatic food allergy, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 107:891–896, 2001.

This is a clinical article that discusses the use of IgE antibody levels to predict responses to double-blind placebo-controlled food challenges. Decision levels for several common food allergens are presented.

Sampson H, Aceves S, Bock A, et al: Food allergy: a practice parameter update—2014, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 134:1016–1025, 2014.

This article is a comprehensive overview and update to the food allergy practice parameter. The practice parameter includes recommendations for evaluating suspected food allergies and sensitivities of all types.

Shakib F, Ghaemmaghami AM, Sewell HF: The molecular basis of allergenicity, *Trends Immunol* 29:633–642, 2008.

This review article presents a comprehensive discussion of the chemical properties of common allergens.

Wahn U: What drives the allergic march?, *Allergy* 55: 591–599, 2000.

Wahn U: Development and prevention of atopic disease in childhood. In: Adkinson N, Bochner B, Busse W, et al, editors: *Middleton's allergy principles and practice*, St Louis, 2009, Mosby, pp. 779–786.

This article and chapter discuss the allergic march. This concept is important for understanding the development of allergic diseases in children with age and sequential sensitization to allergens of different classes, including foods, perennial inhalants, and seasonal inhalants.

REFERENCES

Arroyave W, Rabito F, Carlson J, et al: The relationship between a specific IgE level and asthma outcomes: results of the 2005-2006 National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 1:501–508, 2013.

Beck L, Marcotte G, MacGlashan D, et al: Omalizumab-induced reductions in mast cell Fc epsilon RI expression and function, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 114:527–530, 2004.

Bennich H, Ishizaka K, Ishizaka T, et al: A comparative antigenic study of gamma E-globulin and myeloma-IgND, *J Immunol* 102:826–831, 1969.

Berg E, Platts-Mills T, Commins S: Drug allergens and food-the cetuximab and galactose-alpha-1,3-galactose story, *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 112:97–101, 2014.

Bernstein DI, Biagini RE, Karnani R, et al: In vivo sensitization to purified *Hevea brasiliensis* proteins in health care workers sensitized to natural rubber latex, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 111:610–616, 2003.

Beyer K, Grabenhenrich L, Härtl M, et al: Predictive values of component-specific IgE for the outcome of peanut and hazelnut food challenges in children, *Allergy* 70:90–98, 2015.

Blanca M, Romano A, Torres M: Update on the evaluation of hypersensitivity reactions to betalactams, *Allergy* 64:183–193, 2009.

Blanca M, Torres M, Reche M, et al: Clinical evaluation of Pharmacia CAP system RAST FEIA amoxicilloyl and benzylpenicilloyl in patients with penicillin allergy, *Allergy* 56:862–870, 2001.

Branum A, Lukacs S: Food allergies among children in the United States, *Pediatrics* 124:1549–1555, 2009.

Breiteneder H: Protein families: implications for allergen nomenclature, standardisation and specific immunotherapy, *Arb Paul Ehrlich Inst Bundesinstitut Impfstoffe Biomed Arzneim Langen Hess* 96:249–256, 2009.

Buckley R: Abnormalities in the regulation of human IgE synthesis, *Immunol Rev* 41:288, 1978.

Busse W, Corren J, Lanier BQ, et al: Omalizumab, anti-IgE recombinant humanized monoclonal antibody, for the treatment of severe allergic asthma, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 108:184–190, 2001.

Cairns JA, Walls AF: Mast cell tryptase is a mitogen for epithelial cells: stimulation of IL-8 production and intercellular adhesion molecule-1 expression, *J Immunol* 156:275–283, 1996.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): *Behavioral risk factor surveillance system survey: current asthma prevalence data*, Atlanta, 2010, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

Chung CH, Mirakhur B, Chan E, et al: Cetuximab-induced anaphylaxis and IgE specific for galactose-a-1, 3-galactose, *N Engl J Med* 358:1109–1117, 2008.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute: Analytical performance characteristics, quality assurance and clinical utility of immunological assays for human immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibodies of defined allergen specificities: in development.

Coico R, Sunshine G, Benjamini E: The genetic basis of antibody structure. In *Immunology: a short course*, Hoboken, NJ, 2003, John Wiley & Sons, pp 79–89.

College of American Pathologists (CAP): *Diagnostic allergy (SE-C) survey*, Northfield, Ill., 2014, CAP.

Commins S, Platts-Mills T: Anaphylaxis syndromes related to a new mammalian cross-reactive carbohydrate determinant, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 124:652–657, 2009.

Corren J: Asthma phenotypes and endotypes, *Discov Med* 83:243–249, 2013.

Custovic A, Murray C, Simpson A: Allergy and infection: understanding their relationship, *Allergy* 60(Suppl 79):10–13, 2005.

Defrance T, Carayon P, Billian G, et al: Interleukin 13 is a B cell stimulating factor, *J Exp Med* 179:135–143, 1994.

Demoly P, Francois-Bernard M, Bousquet J: In vivo methods for study of allergy skin tests, techniques, and interpretation. In Middleton E, Reed C, Ellis E, et al, editors: *Allergy principles & practice*, vol 1, St Louis, 1998, Mosby-Year Book, pp 430–439.

Devereux G, Matsui E, Burney P: Epidemiology of asthma and allergic airway diseases. In Adkinson N, Bochner B, Burks W, et al, editors: *Middleton's allergy principles and practice*, Philadelphia, 2014, Saunders, pp 754–778.

Du Toit G1, Roberts G, Sayre PH, et al: Randomized trial of peanut consumption in infants at risk for peanut allergy, *N Engl J Med* 372:803–813, 2015.

Ebo D, Faber M, Sabato V, et al: Component-resolved diagnosis of wasp (yellow jacket) venom allergy, *Clin Exp Allergy* 43:255–261, 2013.

Ewan PW, Coote D: Evaluation of a capsulated hydrophilic carrier polymer (the ImmunoCAP) for measurement of specific IgE antibodies, *Allergy* 45:22–29, 1990.

Findlay SR, Barden JM, Easley CB, et al: Effect of the oral leukotriene antagonist, ICI 204,219, on antigen-induced bronchoconstriction in subjects with asthma, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 89:1040–1045, 1992.

Fontaine C, Mayorga C, Bousquet PJ, et al: Relevance of the determination of serum-specific IgE antibodies in the diagnosis of immediate beta-lactam allergy, *Allergy* 62:47–52, 2007.

Friedman B, Steinberg S, Meggs W, et al: Analysis of plasma histamine levels in patients with mast cell disorders, *Am J Med* 87:649, 1989.

Galli SJ: New insights into "the riddle of the mast cells": microenvironmental regulation of mast cell development and phenotypic heterogeneity, *Lab Invest* 62:5–33, 1990.

Gether U: Uncovering molecular mechanisms involved in activation of G protein-coupled receptors, *Endocr Rev* 21:90–113, 2000.

Golden DB, Tracy JM, Freeman TM, et al: Negative venom skin test results in patients with histories of systemic reaction to a sting, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 112:495–498, 2003.

Griesmeier U, Vazquez-Cortes M, Bublin C, et al: Expression levels of parvalbumins determine allergenicity of fish species, *Allergy* 65:191–198, 2010.

Hamilton R: Laboratory tests for allergic and immunodeficiency diseases. In *Middletons' allergy principles and practice*, Philadelphia, 2014a, Saunders, pp 1187–1202.

Hamilton RG: Allergic sensitization is a key risk factor for but not synonymous with allergic disease, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 134:360–361, 2014b.

Hamilton RG: Accuracy of U.S. Food and Drug Administration-cleared IgE antibody assays in the presence of anti-IgE (omalizumab), *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 117:759–766, 2006.

Hamilton RG, Rossi C, Yeang H, et al: Latex specific IgE assay sensitivity enhanced using Hev b 5 enriched latex allergosorbent, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 111(Suppl):S174, 2003.

Holloway J, Koppelman G: Identifying novel genes contributing to asthma pathogenesis, *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 7:69–74, 2007.

Holloway J, Yang I, Holgate S: Genetics of allergic disease, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 125:581–594, 2010.

Hsieh F, Lam B, Penrose J, et al: T helper cell type 2 cytokines coordinately regulate immunoglobulin E-dependent cysteinyl leukotriene production by human cord blood-derived mast cells: profound induction of leukotriene C(4) synthase expression by interleukin 4, *J Exp Med* 193:123–133, 2001.

Humbert M, Busse W, Hanania N, et al: Omalizumab in asthma: an update on recent developments, *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2:525–536, 2014.

Irani A, Schecter N, Craig S: Two types of mast cells that have distinct neutral protease compositions, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 82:1214–1218, 1986.

Irvine A, McLean W, Leung D: Filaggrin mutations associated with skin and allergic diseases, *N Engl J Med* 365:1315–1327, 2011.

Ishizaka K, Ishizaka T: Physicochemical properties of reaginic antibody. 1. Association of reaginic activity with an immunoglobulin other than gammaA- or gammaG-globulin, *J Allergy* 37:169–185, 1966.

Ishizaka K, Ishizaka T, Menzel AE: Physicochemical properties of reaginic antibody. VI. Effect of heat on gamma-E-, gamma-G- and gamma-A-antibodies in the sera of ragweed sensitive patients, *J Immunol* 99:610–618, 1967.

Jahn-Schmid B, Harwanegg C, Hiller R, et al: Allergen microarray: comparison of microarray using recombinant allergens with conventional diagnostic methods to detect allergen-specific serum immunoglobulin E, *Clin Exp Allergy* 33:1443–1449, 2003.

Kabesch M, Schedel M, Carr D, et al: IL-4/IL-13 pathway genetics strongly influence serum IgE levels and childhood asthma, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 117:269–274, 2006.

Kazemi-Shirazi L, Pauli G, Purohit A, et al: Quantitative IgE inhibition experiments with purified recombinant allergens indicate pollen-derived allergens as the sensitizing agents responsible for many forms of plant food allergy, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 105:116–125, 2000.

Kjellman NI, Croner S: Cord blood IgE determination for allergy prediction—a follow-up to seven years of age in 1,651 children, *Ann Allergy* 53:167–171, 1984.

Klemans R, Otte D, Knol M, et al: The diagnostic value of specific IgE to Ara h 2 to predict peanut allergy in children is comparable to a validated and updated diagnostic prediction model, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 131:157–163, 2013.

Klink M, Cline MG, Halonen M, et al: Problems in defining normal limits for serum IgE, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 85:440–444, 1990.

Kohler J, Blank S, Muller S, et al: Component resolution reveals additional major allergens in patients with honeybee venom allergy, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 133:1383–1389, 2014.

Korthauer U, Graf D, Mages HW, et al: Defective expression of T-cell CD40 ligand causes X-linked immunodeficiency with hyper-IgM, *Nature* 361:539–541, 1993.

Lanier B, Corren W, Lumry J, et al: Omalizumab is effective in the long-term control of severe allergic asthma, *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 1:154–159, 2003.

Liu A: Hygiene hypothesis for allergy and asthma. In Martin RJ, Sutherland ER, L'enfant C, editors: *Infection and asthma*, Tampa, Fla, 2010, Informa Healthcare USA.

Matricardi P, Valenta R, Kleine-Tebbe J, et al, editors: *Handbook of molecular allergology*. European Academy of Asthma, Allergy and Immunology, 2015.

Maly F, Marti-Wyss S, Blumber S, et al: Mononuclear blood cell sulpholeukotriene generation in the presence of interleukin 3 and whole blood histamine release in honeybee and yellow jacket venom allergy, *J Invest Allergy Clin Immunol* 7:217–224, 1997.

McCann W, Ownby D: The reproducibility of the allergy skin test scoring and interpretation by board certified/board eligible allergists, *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 89:368–371, 2002.

Martinez-Aranguren R, Lizaso M, Goikoetxea M, et al: Is the determination of specific IgE against components using ISAC 112 a reproducible technique?, *PLoS One* 9:e88394, 2014.

Metcalfe DD, Peavy RD, Gilfillan AM: Mechanisms of mast cell signaling in anaphylaxis, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 124:639–648, 2009.

Miller JS, Moxley G, Schwartz LB: Cloning and characterization of a second complementary DNA for human tryptase, *J Clin Invest* 86:864–870, 1990.

Moffatt M, Gut I, Demenais F, et al: A large-scale, consortium-based genomewide association study of asthma, *N Engl J Med* 363:1211–1221, 2010.

Muller U, Schmid-Grendelmeier P, Hausmann O, et al: IgE to recombinant allergens Api m 1, Ves v 1, and Ves v 5 distinguish double sensitization from crossreaction in venom allergy, *Allergy* 67:1069–1073, 2012.

National Center for Health Statistics: *National Hospital Ambulatory Medical Care Survey (NHAMCS)*, 2006, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

Nickel R, Kulig M, Forster J, et al: Sensitization to hen's egg at the age of twelve months is predictive for allergic sensitization to common indoor and outdoor allergens at the age of three years, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 99:613–617, 1997.

Nicolaou N, Custovic A: Molecular diagnosis of peanut and legume allergy, *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 11:222–228, 2011.

Nolte H: The clinical utility of basophil histamine release, *Allergy Proc* 14:251–254, 1993.

Oettgen HC, Geha RS: IgE regulation and roles in asthma pathogenesis, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 107:429–440, 2001.

Ott H, Schröder C, Raulf-Heimsoth M, et al: Microarrays of recombinant Hevea brasiliensis proteins: a novel tool for the component-resolved diagnosis of natural rubber latex allergy, *J Investig Allergol Clin Immunol* 20:129–138, 2010.

Ownby DR, Anderson JA, Jacob GL, et al: Development and comparative evaluation of a multiple-antigen RAST as a screening test for inhalant allergy, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 73:466–472, 1984.

Palmer C, Irvine A, Terron-Kwiatkowski A, et al: Common loss-of-function variants of the epidermal barrier protein filaggrin are a major predisposing factor for atopic dermatitis, *Nat Genet* 38:441–446, 2006.

Pastorello E, Farioli L, Stafylaraki C, et al: Wheat-dependent exercise-induced anaphylaxis caused by a lipid transfer protein and not by omega-5 gliadin, *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 112:386–387, 2014.

Petersen LJ, Church MK, Skov PS: Histamine is released in the wheal but not the flare following challenge of human skin in vivo: a microdialysis study, *Clin Exp Allergy* 27:284–295, 1997.

Pieters J: MHC class II-restricted antigen processing and presentation, *Adv Immunol* 75:159–208, 2000.

Platts-Mills TA: Allergen avoidance in the treatment of asthma and rhinitis, *N Engl J Med* 349:207–208, 2003.

Ravetech J, Kinet J: Fc receptors, *Ann Rev Immunol* 9:457, 1991.

Salo P, Arbes S, Jaramillo R, et al: Prevalence of allergic sensitization in the United States: results from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) 2005-2006, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 134:350–359, 2014.

Sampson HA, Ho DG: Relationship between food-specific IgE concentrations and the risk of positive food challenges in children and adolescents, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 100:444–451, 1997.

Santos A, Van Ree R: Profilins mimickers of allergy or relevant allergens, *Int Arch Allergy Immunol* 155:191–204, 2011.

Santos A, Du Toit G, Douiri A, et al: Distinct parameters of the basophil activation test reflect the severity and threshold of allergic reactions to peanut, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 135:179–186, 2015.

Schwartz L: Diagnostic value of tryptase in anaphylaxis and mastocytosis, *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 26:451–463, 2006.

Schwartz LB, Lewis RA, Austen KF: Tryptase from human pulmonary mast cells: purification and characterization, *J Biol Chem* 256:11939–11943, 1981.

Sharma G, Irsigler A, Dhanarajan P: Cloning and characterization of 2S albumin, Car I 1, a major allergen of pecan, *J Agri Food Chem* 59:4130–4139, 2011.

Sicherer S, Sampson H: Food allergy: epidemiology, pathogenesis, diagnosis and treatment, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 133:291–307, 2014.

Sicherer S, Wood R: Advances in diagnosing peanut allergy, *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 1:1–13, 2013.

Shepherd G: Allergy to β-lactam antibiotics, *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 11:611, 1991.

Smits HH, Engering A, van der Kleij D, et al: Selective probiotic bacteria induce IL-10-producing regulatory T cells in vitro by modulating dendritic cell function through dendritic cell-specific intercellular adhesion molecule 3-grabbing nonintegrin, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 115:1260–1267, 2005.

Soler M, Matz J, Townley R, et al: The anti-IgE antibody omalizumab reduces exacerbations and steroid requirement in allergic asthmatics, *Eur Respir J* 18: 254–261, 2001.

Stewart G, Richardson J, Zhang J, et al: The structure and function of allergens. In Adkinson N, Bochner B, Burks W, et al, editors: *Middletons' allergy principle and practice*, Philadelphia, 2014, Saunders, pp 398–428.

Stringari G, Tripodi S, Caffarelli C, et al: The effect of component-resolved diagnosis on specific immunotherapy prescription in children with hay fever, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 134:75–81, 2014.

Thorpe SJ, Heath A, Fox B, et al: The 3rd International Standard for serum IgE: International collaborative study to evaluate a candidate preparation, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 52:1283–1289, 2014.

Turkeltaub PC: Percutaneous and intracutaneous diagnostic tests of IgE-mediated diseases (immediate hypersensitivity), *Clin Allergy Immunol* 15:53–87, 2000.

Valenta R, Lidholm J, Hayek B, et al: The recombinant allergen-based concept of component-resolved diagnostics and immunotherapy (CRD and DRIT), *Clin Exp Allergy* 29:896–904, 1999.

Van Bever HP, Samuel ST, Lee BW: Halting the allergic march, *W Allergy Org J* 1:57–62, 2008.

Van Eerdewegh P, Little RD, Dupuis J, et al: Association of the ADAM33 gene with asthma and bronchial hyperresponsiveness, *Nature* 418:426–430, 2002.

Vercelli D, Jabara HH, Arai K, et al: Induction of human IgE synthesis requires interleukin 4 and T/B cell interactions involving the T cell receptor/CD3 complex and MHC class II antigens, *J Exp Med* 169: 1295–1307, 1989.

Wahn U: Allergic factors associated with the development of asthma and the influence of cetirizine in a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial: First results of ETAC. Early treatment of the atopic child, *Pediatr Allergy Immunol* 9:116–124, 1998.

Wang JH, Reinherz EL: Structural basis of T cell recognition of peptides bound to MHC molecules, *Mol Immunol* 38:1039–1049, 2002.

Wank SA, DeLisi C, Metzger H: Analysis of the rate-limiting step in a ligand-cell receptor interaction: The immunoglobulin E system, *Biochemistry* 22:954–959, 1983.

Weidinger S, Geiger C, Rodriguez E, et al: Genome-wide scan on total serum IgE levels identifies FCERIA as novel susceptibility locus, *PLoS Genet* 4:e1000166, 2008.

Weiss KB, Sullivan SD: The health economics of asthma and rhinitis. I. Assessing the economic impact, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 107:3–8, 2001.

Weiss ME, Adkinson NF: Immediate hypersensitivity reactions to penicillin and related antibiotics, *Clin Allergy* 18:515–540, 1988.

Wess J: G-protein-coupled receptors: molecular mechanisms involved in receptor activation and selectivity of G-protein recognition, *FASEB J* 11:346–354, 1997.

Wide L, Bennich H, Johansson SG: Diagnosis of allergy by an in-vitro test for allergen antibodies, *Lancet* 2:1105–1107, 1967.

Wood R, Camargo C, Lieberman P, et al: Anaphylaxis in America: the prevalence and characteristics of anaphylaxis in the United States, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 133:461–467, 2014.

Wu L, Zarrin A: The production and regulation of IgE by the immune system, *Nature Rev Immunol* 14:247–259, 2014.

Xiong H, Curotto de Lafaille M, Lafaille J: What is unique about the IgE response, *Adv Immunol* 116:113–141, 2012.

Yunginger JW: Insect allergy. In Middleton E, Reed C, Ellis E, et al, editors: *Allergy principles & practice*, vol 2, St Louis, 1998, Mosby-Year Book, pp 1063–1072.

PART 7

Medical Microbiology

EDITED BY
Gail L. Woods
Richard A. McPherson

CHAPTER 56

VIRAL INFECTIONS

Lech J. Mazur, Michael Costello

INTRODUCTION, 1072
Cell Culture, 1074
Antigen Detection, 1074
Nucleic Acid Amplification Testing (NAAT), 1074
Viral Serology, 1076

CLINICAL VIRAL INFECTIOUS SYNDROMES, 1076
Herpetic Mucocutaneous Infections, 1077
Pediatric and Adult Viral Respiratory Syndromes, 1079
Infectious Mononucleosis and Related Infections, 1084
Congenital and Perinatal Viral Infections, 1085
Viral Meningitis and Encephalitis, 1088
Viral Exanthems and Common Cutaneous Infections, 1090
Viral Gastroenteritis, 1091
Viral Hepatitis, 1092
Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome, 1093
Virus-Associated Neoplasia, 1097
Emerging Infections, 1097

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1098

KEY POINTS

- Viruses cause more human infections than any other group of microorganisms and produce diseases that range from trivial upper respiratory infections to lethal rabies. Viral pathogens, including CoV-MERS, Influenza A subtypes, arboviruses, and hemorrhagic fever viruses, are continuously being discovered or identified in different geographic areas and have the potential to cause widespread disease.
- Accurate and timely viral diagnosis is essential for optimal patient management, for reasonable use of antiviral drugs, for reduction of unnecessary laboratory testing and inappropriate antimicrobial therapy, for timely application of infection-control procedures, and for proper, effective response to community outbreaks.
- Virus isolation in cell culture and viral antigen identification have been the traditional tests available in community hospital laboratories to diagnose genital and mucocutaneous, respiratory, gastrointestinal, central nervous system, and disseminated viral infections. These methods are being replaced by more sensitive, reliable, rapid, and specific amplified molecular methods for detection of viral DNA and RNA.
- Viral serology has two major applications: diagnosis of recent infection and determination of immunity. Demonstration of immunoglobulin IgM-specific antibody during acute illness or a significant rise in IgG antibody between acute and convalescent sera defines acute infection. Serology can be helpful if culture, antigen assays, or nucleic acid–based testing is not available or feasible. Persistent specific IgG is a marker of immune status for measles, mumps, VZV, and hepatitis A and B viruses. Enzyme immunoassay methods are sensitive and are widely used for defining immunity.
- Nucleic acid hybridization and nucleic acid amplification tests detect virus by recognizing specific and stable segments of the DNA or RNA viral genome. An important attribute to this technology is neither virus viability nor propagation is required. *In situ* hybridization is a direct probe technique for detection of human papillomavirus (HPV), CMV, HSV, and parvovirus B19 in tissue; specificity is high, but sensitivity can be variable.
- Nucleic acid–based testing such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR), strand displacement amplification, and nucleic acid sequence–based amplification have raised the sensitivity of molecular diagnosis beyond culture or antigen-detection methods and are considered the new gold standard. The use of less-invasive specimens due to increased sensitivity of amplified molecular methods has greatly simplified specimen-collection resulting in less variable results.
- Point-of-care amplified nucleic acid technology is becoming a common and routine feature of emergency room and admission decisions, providing diagnostic information about viral targets in a matter of hours. Rapid results guide diagnostic testing, influence treatment, and impact patient placement.
- Combining several viral nucleic acid tests in a single syndromic array has greatly expanded the clinical utility of molecular testing for viral infections, sometimes resulting in detection of multiple pathogens. These assays generate reliable answers in a clinically actionable time frame.
- Real-time PCR transcription allows for accurate quantization of viral load in a variety of specimen types. Quantitative analysis permits differentiation between disease association and carrier states (Bocaviruses, Rhinoviruses), prognosis (HIV, HCV), and monitoring of response to therapy for viral pathogens such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), HCV, hepatitis B virus (HBV), CMV, Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), and BK virus.
- Detection of antiviral resistance mutations is now available for HIV, HBV, HCV, HSV, CMV, VZV, and Influenza A.
- Next-generation sequencing is an evolving technique that can be used for viral detection and characterization of known and novel viruses, assessment of species and quasispecies for antiviral susceptibility, and in-depth exploration of viral outbreaks.

INTRODUCTION

Viruses are responsible for a remarkable spectrum of human illnesses ranging from the annoying common cold to fatal immunoimpairment caused by HIV and some cancers. Virology has evolved rapidly from early characterization of viral morphology by electron microscopy (EM) to the development of techniques for virus replication in cell culture, to production of sophisticated amplified nucleic acid–based diagnostic tests and to sequencing of entire viral genomes. Discovery and complete genotyping of new emerging pathogenic viruses can now be accomplished in a matter of days from occurrence of the initial outbreak (Fauci & Morens, 2012). The role of the clinical virology laboratory has expanded from merely viral identification to one of patient management encompassing viral identification/quantitation, and genotypic monitoring for predicting efficacy of antiviral therapy (Antonelli, 2012; Caliendo et al, 2013).

Accurate and timely viral diagnosis is fundamental to optimize patient management, to appropriately use antiviral drugs, to reduce unnecessary diagnostic tests, to limit use of superfluous antibiotics, and to implement hospital precautions to control nosocomial spread (Dellit et al, 2007; Van Panhuis et al, 2013). Early and precise identification and sequencing of viral pathogens clearly benefit the general population through focused public health initiatives, as recently demonstrated by identification of

We gratefully acknowledge the contributions of Margaret Yungbluth, MD, and Linda Sabatini, PhD, who authored this chapter in previous editions.

zoonotic coronaviruses associated with severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) and middle-east respiratory syndrome (CoV-MERS) and identification of ever-changing strains of influenza A viruses.

Several excellent references provide detailed information about taxonomy and pathogenicity of human viruses (Garcia, 2010; Versalovic, 2011). These chapters review common viral syndromes that generate the majority of testing conducted in a typical hospital laboratory. Most hospitals have a case mix of common viral infections in healthy and immunocompromised children and adults to support a virology service. Table 56-1 summarizes test volumes and recovery rates for a Chicago-based hospital system, with adult and pediatric primary care, and high-risk obstetrics, neonatology, hematology-oncology, transplantation, and infectious disease services. In 2004, culture and antigenic-detection methods were the core assays utilized for detection of viruses. The steady and persistent transition to molecular diagnostics was essentially completed by 2013. Results for 2013 reflect the wider variety of viruses detected using molecular methods. Multiplexed molecular panels are now available for detection of a wider range of viruses reflecting the trend toward syndromic nucleic acid–based panels. Hospitals with different medical specialty profiles detect the same viruses, but with variations in relative percentages.

The average detection time for most viruses is now between 1 and 2 days (the same time scale as routine bacterial cultures), reflecting the combined use of rapid antigen assays and nucleic acid amplification testing (NAAT). Overall detection rates for viruses in clinical samples are surprisingly high (up to 43%)—several times greater than for routine bacterial blood or stool culture, mycobacterial culture, or ova and parasite examination (Espy et al, 2006; Leland & Ginocchio, 2007). Many common viruses exhibit seasonal variations (Fig. 56-1). Norovirus, influenza, RSV, and parainfluenza viruses 1 and 2 circulate every winter. Adenovirus, parainfluenza virus 3, CMV, and HSV infections occur year-round. Enterovirus and insect-borne arboviruses cluster in late summer and early autumn. Seasonal variations are somewhat dependent on methods of detection employed with the more sensitive NAAT increasing yield of viruses detected and extending detection time.

TABLE 56-1
Viruses Detected by Conventional Virology (2004) vs. Molecular Methods (2013)

	% POSITIVE SPECIMENS*		
	2004	**2013†**	**Comments**
Viruses			
Herpes simplex	22	21.4	2013—HSV subtyped (HSV-1 = 11%; HSV-2 = 10.4%)
Cytomegalovirus	4	14	2004—diagnosis; 2013—diagnosis and monitoring
Epstein-Barr virus	N/A	11.3	
Enterovirus	10	2	2003—throat, rectal, CSF; 2013—CSF only, yearly panel
Varicella zoster	<1	14.3	2004—vesicles only; 2013—vesicles, CSF, plasma, and urine
Respiratory Viruses			
Adenovirus	8	1.1	2013—RVP available throughout the year
Influenza A	9	8.4	2013—RVP available throughout the year
Influenza 2009 H1N1	NA	3.4	2013—RVP available throughout the year
Influenza B	4	2.9	2013—RVP available throughout the year
Respiratory syncytial virus	31	7.4	2004—seasonal; 2013—RVP available throughout the year
Human metapneumovirus	NA	3.4	2013—RVP available throughout the year
Parainfluenza 1-3	10	2.9	2004—seasonal; 2013—RVP available throughout the year
Parainfluenza 4	NA	1.2	2013—RVP available throughout the year
Coronavirus (4 serotypes)	NA	2.0	2013—RVP available throughout the year
Enterovirus/Rhinovirus	NA	17.5	2013—Respiratory samples only. Available through the year

Personal data, M. Costello and L. Mazur, Multiple hospitals, Chicago area and southeast Wisconsin.
NA, Not available; *RVP,* respiratory viral panel.
*2004: Conventional virology testing methods (Culture, DFA, EIA); 2013: molecular testing methods.
†Average recovery of respiratory viruses from respiratory specimens was 47%.

Four principal viral diagnostic laboratory methods are still used: culture, antigen detection, nucleic acid detection, and serology. Each method has advantages and limitations (Table 56-2).

Cell culture and direct antigen procedures for virus isolation and detection are being supplanted, in most clinical diagnostic laboratories, by rapid, easy to perform, highly sensitive and specific NAAT techniques that can consistently detect as few as 0.01 to 100 virions per milliliter of specimen (Hodinka & Kaiserb, 2013). NAAT methods have the highest sensitivity and allow greater latitude in specimen collection, window for collection of specimens, and transport since presence of viable viruses is not essential. The throughput time for most nucleic acid–based testing is one day or less and definitely outpaces timelines for standard culture, and turnaround time is becoming comparable to antigen assays. Despite continuous improvement, direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) and enzyme immunoassay (EIA) are becoming niche assays that are offered when a NAAT option is not available or feasible. NAATs are invaluable for identifying viruses that propagate slowly or not at all in cell culture. However, viral nucleic acid fragments may persist into the recovery phase of illness, long after viable virions have been eliminated by the immune response, limiting their use as tests of cure. Also, mutations in DNA or RNA target sequences can reduce sensitivities of NAATs. Quantitative real-time PCR has become the standard of care in assessing viral loads and monitoring response to therapy for viruses (e.g., HIV, HCV, and HBV) as well as diagnosing and monitoring transplant and transfusion patients (e.g., CMV, HHV6 for bone marrow engraftment, EBV, BKV, and JCV in organ transplant). As the mechanisms of antiviral drug resistance are being defined, mutation detection is becoming the method of choice for appropriately targeting antiviral therapy. Both community hospitals and large medical centers now offer a broad range of amplified nucleic acid tests capable of detecting known viral, bacterial, and parasitic pathogens to common respiratory, skin, central nervous system, gastrointestinal, transplant, and disseminated infections (DiMalo, 2014). The number of viruses that can be detected or quantified by nucleic acid–based tests continues to grow, and many assays are FDA approved and commercially available. Laboratory-developed tests (LDTs) require considerable technical expertise and extensive validation protocols, and all molecular methods demand stringent quality control to guarantee accuracy and to minimize contamination of amplified products (amplicons). Despite these additional concerns, molecular approaches have considerably enhanced overall sensitivity and quantitative accuracy, relative to conventional procedures. Successful implementation of international (NIBSC/WHO, CDC/NIST) quantification standards (HIV, HCV, HBV, CMV, EBV, BKV) helped standardize validation and proficiency processes, and they now allow result comparison between performing laboratories regardless of assay chemistry or instrumentation being used. New molecular systems effectively isolate amplified DNA fragments, so amplicon contamination is not as common as when amplified molecular assays first entered the clinical virology laboratory. As available technologies continue to improve driven by the need to generate clinically significant results in a clinically actionable time frame, one should expect most clinical virology laboratories to transform to essentially all molecular assays in the near future. Next-generation sequencing is an emerging technique that will find utility for viral detection and characterization of subtypes of known and novel viruses.

Traditional serologic diagnosis (see Table 56-2) requires paired sera from the acute and convalescent stages of infection to demonstrate a significant rise in specific viral antibody titer. This is a retrospective process and is now rarely performed in most clinical virology Laboratories. Detection of virus-specific IgM antibody can diagnose acute illness from a single serum obtained during the acute or early convalescent period for some viral infections. Virus-specific IgG antibody tests are typically helpful to document immune status for selected viruses.

Success with any diagnostic test begins with proper specimen collection and transportation. The laboratory must have realistic and well-defined guidelines for optimal specimen collection and handling along with the ability and will to enforce a credible specimen-rejection policy, and then must communicate this information to the clinical staff and patient care sites (Table 56-3). Specimens for culture and antigen assays must be

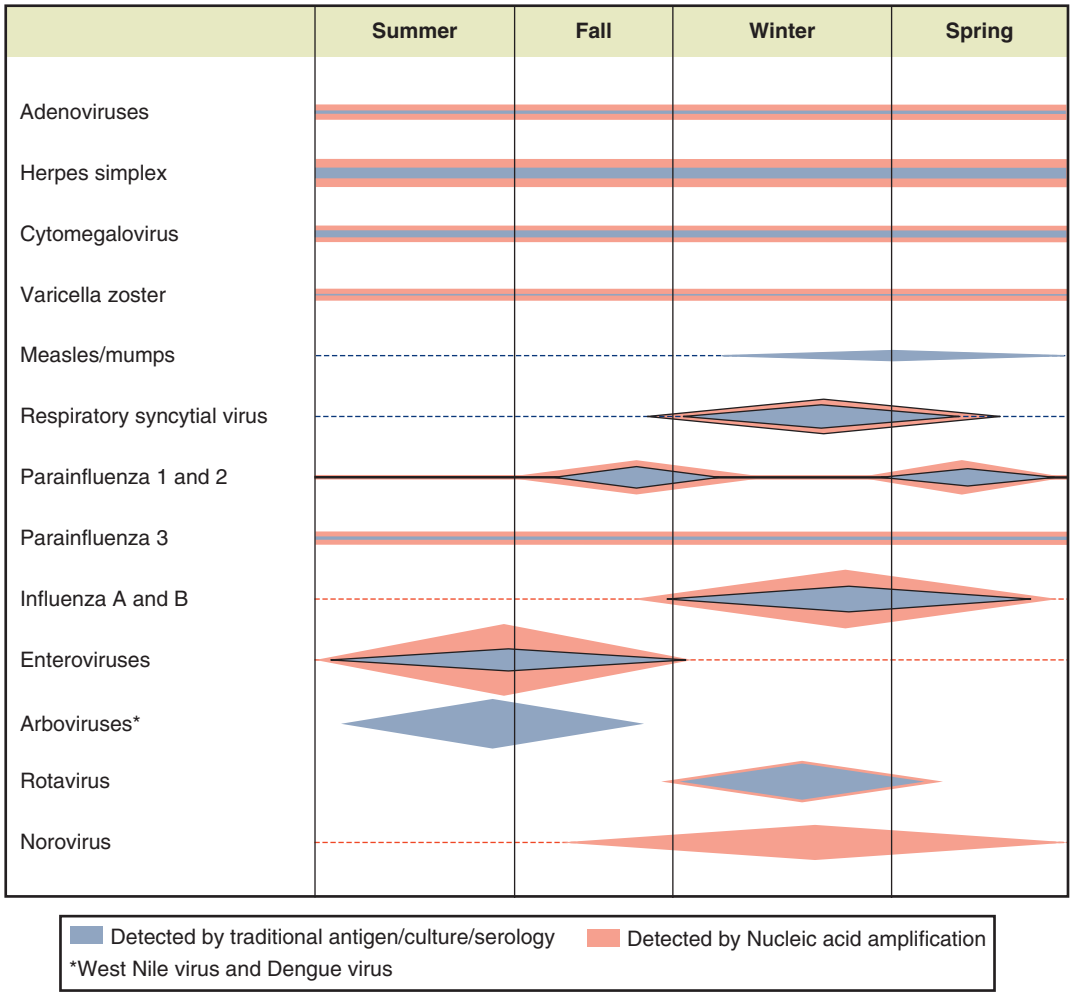


Figure 56-1 Seasonal variation of viral infections.

obtained early in acute illness, when virus shedding is highest; these testing methods are, at best, unreliable during convalescence.

Viral transport medium (VTM) contains a buffered salt solution, protein and saccharide nutrients, pH indicator, and antibiotics to inhibit bacterial and fungal contaminants, and is designed to stabilize virions and the patient's infected cells. Swab specimens, nasopharyngeal aspirates, and tissue biopsies should be placed in VTM for culture and antigen detection. VTM can also be used for the NAAT, if none of the additives are inhibitory.

NAAT is more sensitive and has optimal value early and late in the course of disease when culture and antigen assays will be negative. Body fluids, lavages, blood, and bone marrow samples require a sterile container instead of VTM or UTM (Caliendo et al, 2013). Most viral loads for HBV, HIV, HCV, CMV, EBV, and BKV are performed on plasma or serum spun down within 6 hours post-collection and sent to the laboratory frozen. Viral respiratory specimens are acceptable from nasopharyngeal swabs or aspirates sent in UTM media and refrigerated for no longer than 48 hours. Whole blood or bone marrow viral testing is acceptable from room temperature or refrigerated specimens. Formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissue is an acceptable specimen for various types of viruses as confirmation of IHC or a standalone diagnostic test. In order to prevent degradation, tissue must be frozen for molecular assays.

Urine should be collected in a sterile cup. Stool specimen collected in a sterile cup and transported in Cary-Blair are acceptable specimen types.

CELL CULTURE

A class II biosafety laminar flow cabinet should be used for specimen setup and whenever cultures are manipulated, to protect the technologist from infectious aerosol and to reduce specimen cross-contamination. Equipment for performing cell cultures including centrifuge with covered carriers to accommodate shell vials; incubators to maintain to incubate inoculated cultures; an inverted phase-contrast microscope to identify CPE in cell culture monolayers; an epifluorescence microscope for direct and indirect immunofluorescence assay (IFA) procedures; and freezer space at –20° C (–70° C, if available) for specimen and reagent storage is required.

ANTIGEN DETECTION

Rapid identification by direct methods are useful when specific antiviral therapy is available (for HSV, VZV, CMV, and influenza), when nosocomial control is a factor (influenza, RSV, metapneumovirus, rotavirus, and VZV), and when NAAT is not an option. Viral antigen is detected with comparable sensitivity and specificity by both DFA and EIA methods. DFA has the distinct advantage of microscopic visualization of the specimen's cell content, so sample adequacy can be easily verified (Clarke, 2010), but DFA procedures are labor-intensive and may be unfeasible during seasonal respiratory viral outbreaks with high specimen demand. EIA methods require less subjective interpretive judgment than DFA, but assessment of sample quality is lost. DFA is best performed with an epifluorescence microscope, and as with EIA methods, positive and negative controls must be run routinely. The positive predicative value (PPV) of EIA assays are highly dependent on the prevalence of the virus in the patient population tested. For example, the PPV of antigen-based assays are very low during non-epidemic periods for influenza and RSV, making these assays unreliable during times of low prevalence. Sensitivity of viral antigen assays is highly dependent on adequate specimen collection, as illustrated by the variable sensitivity seen with these assays in the outbreak of 2009 influenza A (H1N1) (Ginocchio & Zhang, 2009).

NUCLEIC ACID AMPLIFICATION TESTING (NAAT)

Nucleic acid amplification technologies have raised the sensitivity of viral diagnosis far beyond that of antigen assays or culture. Commonly employed target amplification technologies include PCR, real-time PCR, strand displacement amplification (SDA), nucleic acid sequence–based amplification

TABLE 56-2

Methods for Diagnosis of Viral Infection

Method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Growth Dependent		
Cell Culture	• Virus growth, restricted by the ability of cell lines to support viral growth. • Moderate reagent costs	• Viable virus required, necessitating optimizing collection and transport. • Multiple cell lines required to optimize sensitivity. • Not all viruses are detected, even when using multiple cell lines • Long TAT (days to weeks) • Expertise required to detect CPE or other means needed to detect virus (e.g., hemagglutination, antibody)
Shell Vial Culture	• Faster TAT and more sensitive than cell culture for certain viruses (Herpes viruses, respiratory viruses)	• Viable virus required, necessitating optimizing collection and transport. • Moderately long TAT (1-3 days) • Moderately time-consuming • Requires specific fluorescent antibodies
Antibody Dependent		
DFA	• Rapid TAT • Moderate sensitivity • Moderately easy to perform • Moderate reagent costs	• Sensitivity dependent on optimizing sample collection • Expertise required to interpret staining patterns • Only detects pathogens defined by antibodies used
EIA/FIA	• Rapid TAT • Moderate sensitivity • Easy to perform—Point of care • Moderate reagent costs	• Sensitivity dependent on optimizing sample collection • Only detects pathogens defined by antibodies used
Nucleic Acid Amplified Test (NAAT)		
NAAT (PCR, Isothermal Amplification RAP, LAMP)	• Most sensitive • Define genotype sensitivities and prognosis • Moderate to very easy to perform • Low contamination risk if closed configuration used	• May be more expensive than other options • Only detects pathogens defined by primers and probes • Limited multiplex options
NAAT Panels	• Comprehensive group of targets, not restricted to viruses • Highly sensitive • Same-day results	• Expensive • Only detects pathogens defined by primers and probes • Does not differentiate between carrier vs. pathogenic viruses
Next-Generation Sequencing	• Emerging technique that can be used for viral detection and "de novo" characterization of unknown viruses • Assessment of antiviral susceptibility • Very high sensitivity compared to Sanger Sequencing • Exploration of viral outbreaks • Detection of viral variants	• Very expensive • Not currently available to most clinical virology laboratories • Bioinformatics required
Serology		
IgM	• May be present during primary infections	• Not useful for infections with short prodromal incubation times • Cross-reactivity with closely related viruses • Can also be detected during secondary infections
IgG	• Presence indicates immunity to certain viruses	• Presence of viral-specific IgG does not always indicate immunity • Detection of rising IgG titers from acute and convalescent sera can take several weeks

DFA, Direct fluorescent antibody; *EIA,* enzyme immunoassay; *FIA,* florescent immunoassay; *NAAT,* nucleic acid amplified test; *TAT,* turnaround time.

(NASBA), transcription-mediated amplification (TMA), loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP), and isothermal nucleic acid amplification technology (INAAT), to name a few (Wu and Tang, 2009; Lee et al, 2011). Quantitative real-time PCR is now standard for monitoring HIV, HCV, HBV, CMV, EBV, HHV6, BKV, and JCV viral loads. Most quantitative assays currently are standardized and normalized against NIBSC/WHO international standards, greatly reducing result variability among laboratories, regardless of method being used. Still, it is recommended to base clinical management on viral load assessment from a single laboratory to reduce the variability that is still inherent among laboratories and technologies (Hayden & Hokanson, 2008). Automation of nucleic acid–based testing, including extraction methods and incorporation of internal controls, has increased the precision of quantitative methods, reduced the risk for amplicon contamination, reduced the rate of false-positive or false-negative errors, and accelerated throughput.

Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-cleared commercial kits have increased their market share covering mostly high-volume assays for HIV, HCV, HBV, HPV, CMV, HSV, Enteroviruses, and a variety of respiratory and gastrointestinal viruses. The FDA maintains a website that lists nucleic acid-based tests and companion diagnostic tests (http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/InVitroDiagnostics/default.htm).

The College of American Pathologists (CAP) has the most comprehensive menu for proficiency testing (www.cap.org). Strict adherence to specimen-collection, storage, and processing requirements; proper handling and storage of extracted nucleic acid, particularly RNA; and routine monitoring for amplicon contamination are all essential for maximizing detection and reducing error. Analytic and clinical validation and verification are the responsibilities of the individual laboratories.

Equipment and reagents required to perform nucleic acid–based testing is becoming more accessible for community hospital laboratories. Better system designs have greatly curtailed the requirements for specialized molecular institutions (separation of areas for reagents, specimen processing, and amplification with unidirectional air flow) and highly skilled technologists. Increasing availability of automation has significantly influenced the precision and ease of use of nucleic acid–based testing, particularly for quantitative analyses (e.g., HIV, HCV, HBV viral loads, HPV detection systems). Many nucleic acid–based virology assays remain highly complex laboratory-developed methods requiring an appropriate level of oversight and monitoring.

TABLE 56-3
Specimen Collection for Common Viral Syndromes

Syndrome	Common Viruses	Preferred Specimen and Transport Conditions	Specimen Quality Validation	Most Useful Tests (Listed in Order of Utility)
Bronchiolitis/bronchitis Influenza Pneumonia	RSV, PIV, hMPV adenovirus, Influenza A and B Influenza A and B, RSV, hMPV, PIV, influenza A, adenovirus	NP swab, NP aspirate/wash; BAL; transport on ice for culture	Ciliated columnar cells or alveolar macrophages for NP aspirates and BAL	Nucleic acid amplification; EIA or DFA (in season); culture
Conjunctivitis	HSV, adenoviruses, enteroviruses, VZV	Conjunctival scrapings/swab in VTM; transport on ice for culture	Conjunctival epithelial cells	Nucleic acid amplification; DFA; culture
Vesicular rash	HSV, VZV	Vesicular fluid/cells in VTM or slide smear for DFA; transport on ice for culture	Squamous epithelial cells	Nucleic acid amplification; DFA; culture
Meningitis	Enteroviruses, HSV, VZV, EBV, West Nile virus and other arboviruses	CSF; transport on ice for culture	Abnormal CSF protein and cell counts	Nucleic acid amplification; IgM serology (arboviruses) culture (enteroviruses)
Encephalitis	HSV, VZV, West Nile virus and other arboviruses, rabies	CSF, fresh brain tissue; transport on ice for culture	Abnormal CSF, protein and cell counts	Nucleic acid amplification; IgM serology (arboviruses)
Enteritis	Rotavirus, norovirus, enteric adenoviruses	Fresh stool; transport promptly	Swab must be covered with stool	Rotavirus and adenovirus: EIA Norovirus: RNA amplification
Disseminated viral infection	CMV, EBV, HSV, VZV, adenovirus	Blood, tissue biopsy, BAL, CSF; transport immediately		Nucleic acid amplification; viral load for CMV, EBV; culture for CMV, HSV, VZV, adenovirus
	HIV	Blood		Serology; viral load; ARV resistance testing
Prenatal/neonatal viral infection	HSV-1 and -2, CMV, enterovirus, parvovirus B19, rubella	CSF, vesicular fluid, tissue biopsy, amniotic fluid, urine; transport immediately		Nucleic acid amplification; culture; IgM serology

ARV, Antiretroviral therapy; *BAL,* bronchoalveolar lavage; *CMV,* cytomegalovirus; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *DFA,* direct fluorescent antibody; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *EIA,* enzyme immunoassay; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus; *hMPV,* human metapneumovirus; *IgM,* immunoglobulin M; *NP,* nasopharyngeal; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *PIV,* parainfluenza virus; *RSV,* respiratory syncytial virus; *VTM,* viral transport medium; *VZV,* varicella zoster virus.

Nucleic acid hybridization and amplification-based tests detect virus by targeting specific regions of the viral RNA or DNA genome. In situ hybridization (ISH) is a direct probe technique that can be used in anatomic pathology to detect a variety of viral pathogens. ISH is a useful method for the localization of specific viral nucleic acids inside individual cells with preservation of cellular morphology. ISH is particularly useful for diagnosis of EBV-related neoplasms (Gulley & Tang, 2008).

PCR is commonly used for the identification and diagnosis of viral infection in formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissue biopsies, and is particularly useful for confirming the diagnosis of herpes viruses when histologic features are "nondiagnostic" (Anderson et al, 2014).

VIRAL SEROLOGY

Serologic diagnosis of viral infection has its attractions because serum specimens are easy to obtain, transport, and store. Viral serology has two major clinical applications: diagnosis of recent infection and determination of immunity (Hodinka, 1999). Evidence of current/recent infection requires demonstration of virus-specific IgM during the acute stage of illness, or demonstration of a significant rise in virus-specific IgG titer between acute and convalescent sera. Specific IgM is usually found in blood within the first week of primary infection and typically becomes undetectable within 1 to 3 months; in general, EIA methods are more sensitive, so detectable IgM may persist for approximately twice as long as immunofluorescent assays. The specificity and sensitivity of IgM assays are improved by removal of rheumatoid factor, by removal of IgG to eliminate competition with IgM for viral antigen, and by selective IgM or IgG capture methods. Virus-specific IgG is normally produced 1 to 2 weeks following primary infection, peaks at 4 to 8 weeks, and then declines but usually remains detectable indefinitely at low titer. Specificity for closely related viruses, such as HSV, is improved by selecting antibodies to specific antigens (glycoprotein G) (Bernstein et al, 2013; Anderson et al, 2014). The secondary immune response following viral reinfection or reactivation produces a different serologic profile: IgM may reappear transiently and in low titer, and IgG rapidly increases in titer. These are only general response patterns; intensity, specificity, timing, and class of antibody are influenced by the infecting virus, site of infection, and immune status of the host. In congenital infection, maternal IgG antibodies passively transfer across the placenta into the fetal circulation, but any IgM, IgA, or IgE detected in fetal, cord, or newborn blood represents antibody produced by the fetus or neonate following primary perinatal infection.

Serology is particularly helpful when specimen quality or transportation conditions are suboptimal for culture or direct antigen testing. If viral disease was not suspected at initial evaluation, then serology may be the only diagnostic tool available once the opportunity for culture, antigen assay, or even nucleic acid amplification has passed. Serology is a logical diagnostic choice for viruses that require complex isolation procedures (EBV, human herpesvirus 6) or animal inoculation (arboviruses, some coxsackie A viruses), are a biohazardous risk (HIV, arboviruses, hemorrhagic fever viruses), or have no readily available nucleic acid amplification protocols. For some infections, serology is fast and relatively inexpensive; measles, mumps, and rubella infections can be diagnosed by culture, but IgM-specific antibody is detectable within 3 days of onset of illness and is more reliable. Virus may no longer be present when clinical symptoms develop; West Nile virus (WNV) and other arboviruses are often cleared from spinal fluid at the onset of clinical encephalitis, making serology a more useful diagnostic approach. Infections with a prolonged prodrome often have detectable antibody when the patient first develops symptoms (e.g., EBV and CMV mononucleosis). Specific situations for serologic diagnosis are listed in Figure 56-2. Serologic techniques used as a confirmatory diagnostic method are widely accepted for HCV and HIV diagnosis, including fourth-generation assays that detect both antibody and antigen, providing early detection within 8 to 14 days.

CLINICAL VIRAL INFECTIOUS SYNDROMES

Our approach to laboratory diagnosis separates viral infections into specific clinical syndromes, encouraging the physician to associate a reasonable but limited group of viruses with the patient's presenting illness. Orderable tests should be selected by the laboratory to limit testing to the most useful and cost-effective tests. Test selection has become more important with the aviability of more expensive molecular syndromic panels. The requisition form or order screen should be designed to require specific patient demographic data and a working clinical diagnosis, so that the laboratory can tailor testing and focus on rapid, high-yield, efficient testing. In this chapter, the following viral diseases and syndromes are discussed:

- Herpetic mucocutaneous infections
- Pediatric and adult respiratory syndromes

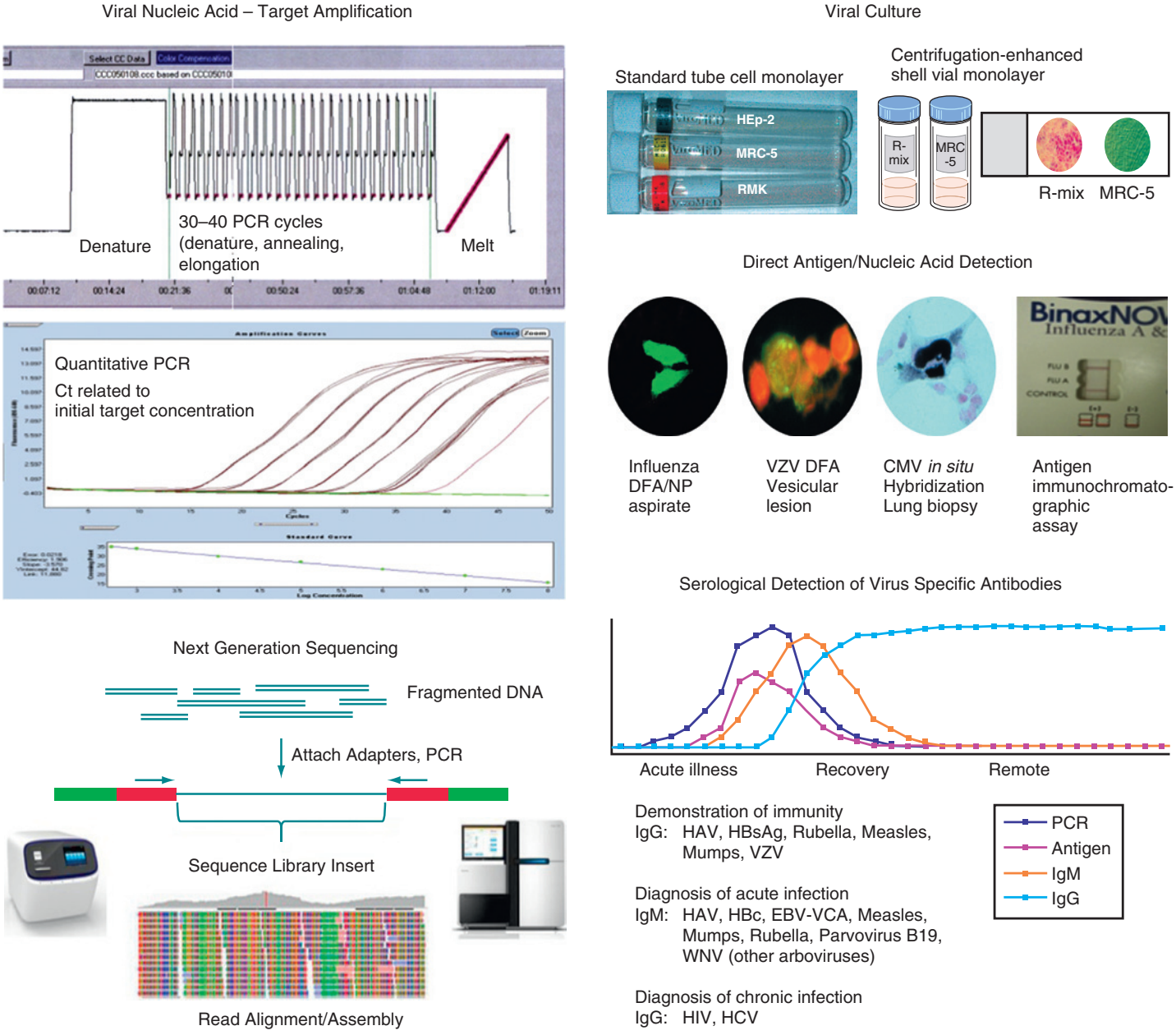


Figure 56-2 **Laboratory methods for diagnosis of viral infections.**

- Infectious mononucleosis
- Congenital and neonatal infections
- Viral central nervous system infections
- Viral exanthems and cutaneous infections
- Viral enteric infections
- Viral hepatitis
- Viral infections in the immunocompromised host
- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
- Virus-associated neoplasia

HERPETIC MUCOCUTANEOUS INFECTIONS

HSV and varicella zoster virus (VZV) are commonplace worldwide, and characteristically produce infections in the skin and squamous mucous membrane surfaces of the body. Neither is usually life-threatening; however, the effectiveness of acyclovir therapy has produced demand for prompt laboratory diagnosis, particularly for HSV (Anderson, 2014).

HSV is ubiquitous and infects all racial groups worldwide. The two strains of HSV (serotype 1 and serotype 2) share many genomic and biological features, and both preferentially infect squamous epithelium; however, each has a unique antigenic profile and a somewhat distinctive epidemiology. HSV-1 is transmitted via saliva to infect oropharyngeal and labiofacial surfaces. Lesions may develop on the exposed skin of athletes (herpes gladiatorum) or the hands of medical personnel (herpetic whitlow) after direct salivary contact. Initial HSV-1 infection usually occurs in early childhood; primary infection is typically mild or asymptomatic, although a substantial minority of patients develop fever with painful gingivostomatitis. HSV-1 is also responsible for an increasing number of genital herpetic ulcers (Ribes et al, 2001).

HSV-1 directly infects ectodermal cells; viral replication depletes the host cells, so squamous cells lose their cytoplasmic integrity, leak fluid, and separate from one another to create a vesicle. Surface bacteria convert the vesicle to a pustule, which then ulcerates. Cutaneous herpes lesions heal without scarring as the epidermal cells regenerate. The immediate immune response involves natural killer cells, cytotoxic T lymphocytes, and production of neutralizing antibody. Despite cellular and humoral factors, HSV-1 is able to migrate through sensory nerve fibers to the trigeminal ganglion and persists indefinitely in a dormant state in the neuronal nucleus (Anderson, 2014). HSV-1 episodically reactivates and travels back down neurosensory axons to the mouth and lips, where it again initiates replication in squamous cells. Most recurrent herpes infections are asymptomatic or produce transient vesicles with only cosmetic significance. With severe impairment of cell-mediated immunity (in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS] and transplant patients), reactivation infection

may be severe or even fatal. Encephalitis is another rare but devastating HSV-1 infection. These complications are discussed in later sections of this chapter.

HSV-2 infection is found principally in genital squamous surfaces and is transmitted through intimate sexual contact. At least 40 million Americans have been infected, with estimates of 1 million new cases annually. HSV-2 recovery in children is most unusual and raises concerns about sexual abuse; however, beginning with adolescence, seroprevalence rises steadily through middle age and is proportional to the number of sexual partners (Fleming et al, 1997). In the United States, HSV-2 seroprevalence in persons 13 years of age or older had progressively increased to a rate of 22%; however, a recent survey has shown a modest decrease to 17% (Xu, 2006). HSV-2 produces the same pattern of primary and recurrent mucocutaneous lesions seen with oral HSV-1. Latency is established in sacral neural ganglia, but reactivation rates are at least twice as high as with HSV-1, and transient meningitis (Mollaret's meningitis) may occur. Primary and recurrent HSV-2 lesions also heal completely in people with normal cellular immune function. The principal concern is exposure of infants during vaginal delivery; neonatal herpes is discussed later in this chapter.

Specimen Collection and Handling Guidelines

HSV is probably the easiest and fastest human virus to propagate in cell culture. Antigen assays are also relatively straightforward procedures. NAATs are now widely available and have superior sensitivity. Specimen collection is simple, and HSV is sufficiently durable and/or present in sufficient numbers that stat transport and laboratory handling are not essential. Swab specimens in VTM with antibiotics can tolerate a room temperature (22° C) transportation delay of 12 hours with only modest viral loss. Specimens should be inoculated to cell culture on the day of receipt, but overnight refrigeration is acceptable.

Cell Culture Isolation of Herpes Simplex Virus

HSV grows well in a variety of cell lines; human fibroblasts (WI-38, MRC-5, foreskin), rabbit kidney (RK), mink lung, HeLa, rhabdomyosarcoma (RD), Vero, and HEp-2 cell lines work well; however, primary monkey kidney (PMK) is not reliable. Two tissue culture tubes (e.g., one RK and one MRC-5) are usually inoculated; the procedure is summarized in Figure 56-3. HSV replicates rapidly with CPE usually apparent after 1 or 2 days of incubation. Genital cultures that fail to show HSV CPE after 5 days of incubation can be reported as negative. Incubation of cultures from central nervous system (CNS), corneal, oral, and other nongenital sites should be extended for 2 weeks, so other viruses (e.g., VZV, CMV, adenoviruses, enteroviruses) may be recovered. Individual HSV-infected cells become swollen and rounded, and this damage spreads rapidly across the monolayer. This CPE is characteristic of but not unique for HSV; changes caused by other viruses, toxins, or trichomonads may be confused with HSV, so confirmation with a DFA stain is needed. Reaction of infected cells with monoclonal HSV antibodies can distinguish HSV-1 from HSV-2 (Lipson et al, 1991). With the use of shell vial centrifugation-enhanced

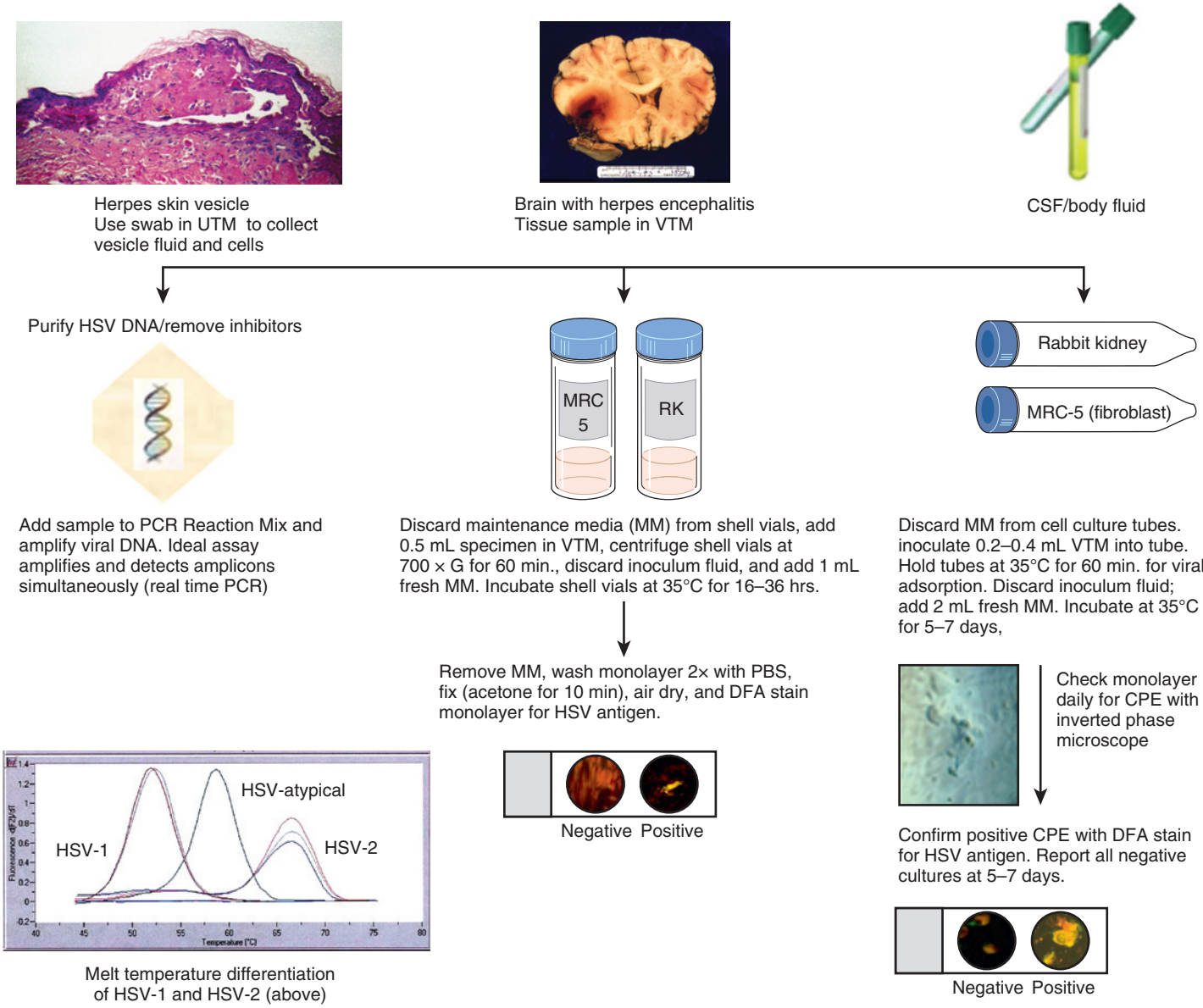


Figure 56-3 Traditional tube and shell vial cultures for HSV and HSV DNA amplification.

culture, HSV can be identified in the monolayer by DFA staining after only 1 day of incubation (Clarke, 2010).

Direct Detection of Herpes Simplex Virus

A direct smear from the base of a herpetic skin vesicle can be stained with Giemsa reagent (Tzanck smear) to demonstrate viral multinucleated syncytial epithelial giant cells and intranuclear inclusions; however, these findings are not specific for HSV infection; identical changes are seen in VZV (chickenpox and shingles). Only 67% of herpetic lesions at the vesicle stage have a positive Giemsa Tzanck smear; sensitivity drops to only 30% for ulcerated skin lesions. Immunostaining of direct smears with fluorescein- or immunoperoxidase-labeled HSV antibodies eliminates confusion with VZV, and viral antigen can be identified in cells that do not yet have nuclear inclusions. However, when compared with culture, DFA staining has at best a 20% to 30% false-negative error (Lafferty et al, 1987). All negative direct specimen test results must be considered as possible false-negatives that should be validated by parallel culture. On the other hand, PCR diagnosis of mucocutaneous genital herpes infection is 20% to 30% more sensitive than culture and has a more rapid turnaround time (Espy et al, 2006). PCR is superior for identification of asymptomatic mucocutaneous viral shedding—eight times more sensitive than culture (Wald et al, 2003).

Nucleic Acid–Based Detection of Herpes Simplex

Real-time PCR with hybridization probes or melt curve analysis is commonly used for the detection and typing of HSV. A wide variety of specimen types can be accommodated with molecular methods, including swab specimens in VTM or universal transport media, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL), frozen tissue specimens, urine, blood, serum, plasma, and formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissue. PCR-quality DNA can be extracted by a variety of commercially available methods (manual or automated). Specimen DNA is combined with PCR reagents and placed in a real-time thermal cycler for temperature cycling and fluorescence monitoring, resulting in multiple rounds of DNA replication of specific regions of the viral genome with increasing levels of fluorescence. Most currently available multiplex assays can detect and identify HSV-1 and HSV-2. Costs are comparable with culture-based detection and typing methods; because of increases in sensitivity and rapid turnaround, NAAT has replaced other methods as the standard of care.

Serologic Diagnosis

Broad antigenic homology has been noted between HSV-1 and HSV-2, so accurate serologic testing requires antigens that are serotype-specific. EIA and Western blot methods that use unique HSV-1 and HSV-2 glycoprotein G (gG) envelope antigens do not detect cross-reacting antibodies (Ashley et al, 1988; Morrow et al, 2003). HSV-2–specific antibody testing of pregnant women and their husbands helps predict neonatal transmission risk (Ashley & Wald, 1999; Cherpes et al, 2003). Positive HSV-2 antibody in a patient with genital vesicles or ulcers is highly likely to represent true genital herpes (Jerome & Morrow, 2007). IgM serology for HSV-1 or HSV-2, including gG IgM antibody, is not specific or sensitive and should not be used for diagnosis of primary infection.

PEDIATRIC AND ADULT VIRAL RESPIRATORY SYNDROMES

Every year, several million combined outpatient visits and hospitalizations in the United States are related to respiratory tract infections, and most are viral in origin. All age groups are affected, and infections range from minor colds to serious laryngotracheobronchitis (croup), bronchiolitis, and pneumonia. Colds and pharyngitis have usually been managed with clinical judgment and no laboratory testing. Hospital laboratories have traditionally used a combination of antigen assays and culture to identify influenza viruses, parainfluenza viruses, RSV, and adenovirus among pediatric and adult patients. Antigen-detection and culture methods are being replaced by NAAT; commercial multiplex nucleic acid panels significantly increase the number of viral pathogens detected by simultaneously testing for influenza A and B, several influenza A hemagglutinin (H) variants, parainfluenzas 1 to 4, RSV, adenoviruses, multiple coronaviruses, metapneumoviruses, rhinoviruses, and enteroviruses (Fig. 56-4). Molecular assays designed for batch testing with a throughput time of 4 to 8 hours (Li et al, 2007; Mahony et al, 2007) are being superseded by multiplex syndromic

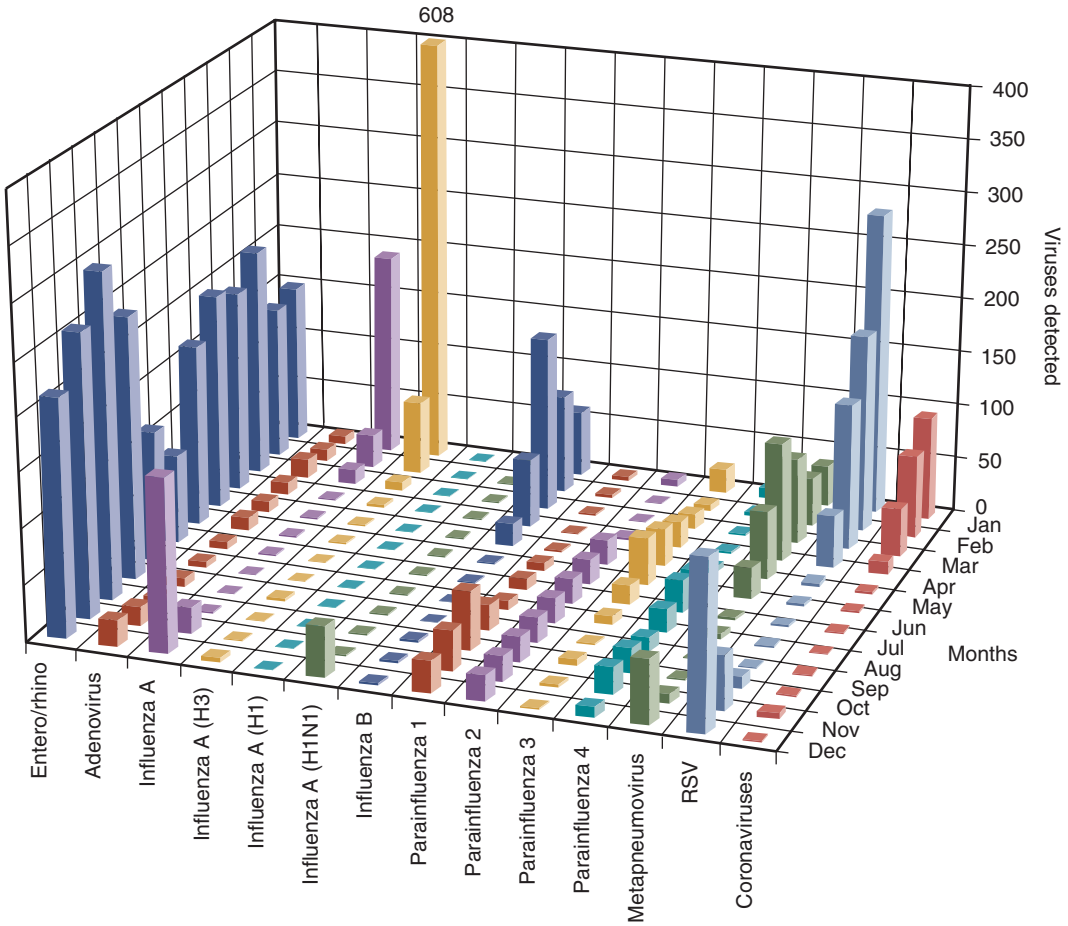


Figure 56-4 Seasonal variation of respiratory viral infections (Chicago/Milwaukee area, 2013).

panels that can be performed in a clinical laboratory in a few hours without the need for a specialized molecular laboratory or highly trained molecular technologists (Loeffelholz et al, 2011).

The additional cost of these expanded syndromic panels is offset by rapid turnaround time that dramatically increases their clinical utility, and as many as 40% more viral infections are identified, particularly when multiplex assays include metapneumovirus, coronaviruses, and rhinovirus/enterovirus (Mahony et al, 2007; Popowitch et al, 2013). During high-prevalence respiratory outbreaks, multiplex viral nucleic acid tests are the least costly diagnostic strategy for hospitalized children (Mahony et al, 2009; Hirsch et al, 2013; Fig. 56-5).

This "democratization of viral testing" illustrates the obvious immediate advantage(s) of these expanded test profiles for the individual patient, highlighting the far greater likelihood of prompt identification of the viral pathogen for evidence-based use of antiviral drugs, limitation of inappropriate antibiotic use, and rapid implementation of appropriate infection-control measures (Arnold et al, 2008; Buller, 2013). These assays should also help delineate the clinical effects of coinfection with multiple viral pathogens (Buller, 2013). With the detection of picornavirus/rhinovirus, coronavirus, and metapneumovirus pathogens, public health laboratories have used multiplex amplified molecular tests to successfully characterize additional viral respiratory infection outbreaks (Marshall et al, 2007; Wong et al, 2009).

Molecular techniques have been successfully applied in the rapid evaluation of recent novel viral respiratory disease outbreaks. An example is the initial emergence of worldwide SARS in 2003; the causative agent was sequenced and was promptly characterized as a novel coronavirus, and accurate diagnostic testing quickly became available (Ksiazek et al, 2003).

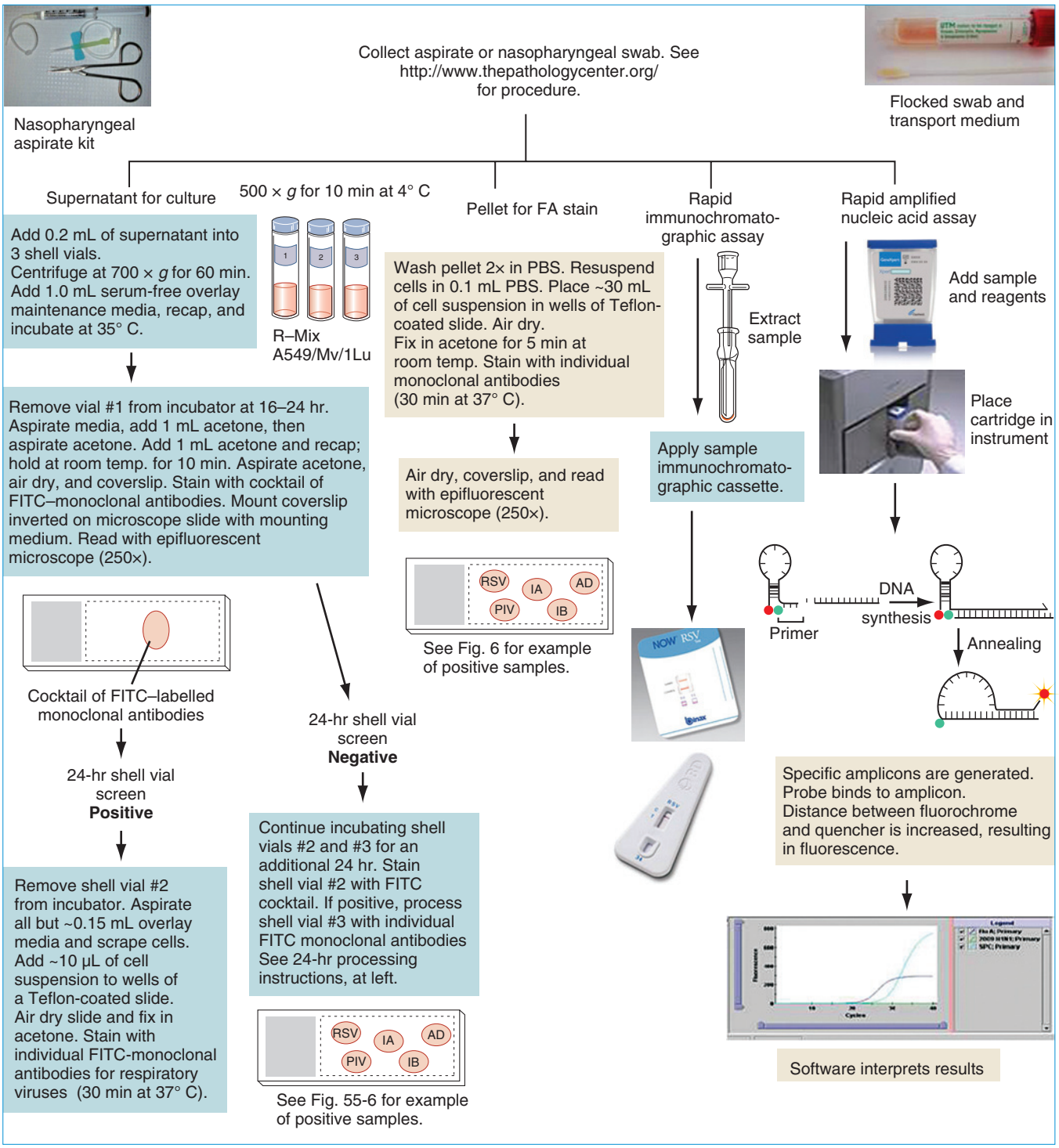


Figure 56-5 Methods for detection of respiratory viruses.

In the spring of 2009, a novel H1N1 influenza A virus, first detected in Mexico, rapidly evolved into a global pandemic. Within a matter of weeks, the strain had been sequenced and accurate diagnostic reagents had been developed; within 6 months, a vaccine was mass-produced and distributed (Perez-Padilla et al, 2009; Sullivan et al, 2010). The same strategy will be used when other influenza A strains cause pandemics. The wider implementation of molecular methods has also demonstrated that clinical respiratory tract symptoms can be caused by a more diverse range of viral agents than was previously presumed. Metapneumovirus has been defined as having epidemiologic and clinical properties similar to those of RSV (Kahn, 2006).

Influenza

Influenza A and B viruses cause predictable annual cold weather outbreaks of acute febrile upper and lower respiratory tract illness with characteristic accompanying systemic features (see Fig. 56-4). Influenza A is usually more common than influenza B and produces more serious disease. Co-circulation of influenza A and B is not unusual. Influenza antigens change through point mutations in the genome (antigenic drift, influenza A and B) and through recombination of human and animal viral RNA segments (antigenic shift, influenza A), so antibodies from prior infections may not be protective in subsequent outbreaks (Sullivan et al, 2010; Treanor, 2010). The ever-changing influenza genome resulting in selection of new and unique viral antigens is the reason why yearly vaccination is required to ensure optimal antigenic coverage.

Influenza is a true respiratory pathogen and is easily spread from person to person in aerosol droplets; the virus attaches to and replicates rapidly in the ciliated columnar epithelial cells of the pharynx and tracheobronchial tree. After incubation of 1 to 2 days, disease usually begins abruptly with the onset of fever and chills; viral respiratory epithelial necrosis causes sore throat and cough, but associated systemic myalgias, headache, and generalized weakness are typically more severe than respiratory symptoms. Uncomplicated influenza usually resolves after 4 to 5 days. However, during every influenza outbreak, a small number of patients develop severe acute primary pneumonia with viral necrosis extending into the alveolar lining cells. These patients are at risk for developing bacterial lower respiratory infection following acute influenza, because the bronchi are temporarily covered by metaplastic epithelium and have not yet reacquired normal ciliated mucosa; individuals with chronic lung and cardiac disease are most vulnerable and account for a majority of the deaths recorded each year for influenza epidemics (Yeldandi & Colby, 1994; Soto-Abraham et al, 2009).

Influenza outbreaks in a local community have a characteristic epidemiologic curve (Treanor, 2010); numbers of infected individuals rise rapidly, peak, and then decline rapidly over about a 6- to 8-week period. A second peak of influenza-related bacterial pneumonia then follows; Gram-positive cocci such as *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* are commonly implicated (Liderot et al, 2013). Every year, approximately 100,000 hospitalizations and 3000 to 49,000 deaths in the United States are linked to influenza, and most fatalities are caused by bacterial bronchopneumonia, usually affecting patients with preexisting chronic obstructive lung disease or congestive heart failure. Myocarditis, meningoencephalitis, Reye syndrome, and Guillain-Barré syndrome are relatively rare complications (Thompson et al, 2010).

Influenza is diagnosed best during the first 2 to 3 days of illness by antigen-based assays and culture, when viral shedding is maximal. Infected cells from the upper respiratory tract are the easiest to collect for testing (Ginocchio & Zhang, 2009; Lee et al, 2011). Nasopharyngeal aspirate (NPA) and pharyngeal swab specimens provide sufficient material for simultaneous testing for several viral agents, including influenza viruses. Nucleic acid testing by RT-PCR has been shown as the most sensitive method for diagnosis at all stages of the disease, with its extreme sensitivity allowing for detection of influenza RNA in what would be inferior specimens for culture and antigen-detection assays and has surpassed culture methods in both accuracy and turnaround time (Erdman et al, 2003; Templeton et al, 2004; IDSA, 2012). Culture is the next most sensitive diagnostic test but has a longer turnaround time; nasopharyngeal secretions/NPA samples are ideal; nasopharyngeal swabs and throat swabs may be satisfactory but often provide suboptimal samples. Shell vial culture with 1 to 2 days' incubation has excellent sensitivity (Dunn et al, 2004) and may still provide a diagnosis within a time frame to affect management of the index patient or prophylaxis of contacts. Hybrid mink lung and A549 shell vial monolayers are versatile and can recover influenza A and B, parainfluenzas, adenovirus, and RSV (Fig. 56-6). Traditional tube culture may not yield a positive result for 2 to 7 days, and currently is rarely used in hospital laboratories.

DFA stain can demonstrate virus-infected columnar epithelial cells in NPA samples (see Fig. 56-6), Compared with cell culture, DFA sensitivity ranges from 77% to 93% for detection of influenza A, and from 70% to 80% for influenza B (higher in pediatric patients). Specificity is excellent, greater than 95%; however, good results are heavily influenced by the experience of the microscopist and by specimen quality. Throat and nasopharyngeal swabs generally lack sufficient columnar cells for DFA staining. Commercial immunochromatographic EIA methods are rapid and easy to perform but are less sensitive than molecular methods for detection of influenza in NPA specimens during outbreaks. Specificity of any antigen testing during nonseasonal times of the year is poor, so laboratories should restrict ordering to high-prevalence months. Sensitivity with nasopharyngeal swabs is considerably lower, particularly for antigen assays and culture. Nasopharyngeal swab specimens collected during the 2009 H1N1 influenza outbreak were tested by DFA and two rapid EIA methods, along with a commercial RT-PCR multiplex test and an R-mix shell vial culture. DFA sensitivity was poor (46%), and EIA methods showed only 10% to 40% sensitivity; all antigen assays had 6% false-positive results (Ginocchio & Zhang, 2009). It is not surprising that RT-PCR was clearly superior to all other methods and is the method of choice for clinical virology laboratories.

Bronchiolitis

RSV is the most important cause of serious lower respiratory viral disease in infants and young children (Hall, 2010). Like influenza, RSV is transmitted by droplet aerosol, and outbreaks recur every winter. Currently, no vaccine for RSV is available; natural immunity to RSV is incomplete and of short duration, so multiple infections occur throughout life. RSV, similar to influenza, infects ciliated columnar epithelial cells from the nasopharynx to the distal bronchioles. Small babies experience the most serious infections because their narrow terminal airways become occluded by necrotic epithelial cells; bronchiolar obstruction leads to air trapping and hypoxia, which may be severe enough to require hospitalization. Acute symptoms usually resolve in a few days; administration of oxygen and other supportive measures are often the only medical interventions needed. Most critical RSV infections occur in premature infants, in children with underlying cardiopulmonary disease or immunodeficiencies, and in transplant recipients. Sequelae of severe RSV bronchiolitis may include an increased risk for the development of asthma (Blanken et al, 2013). Adults who are immunocompromised and older adults may also have severe lower airway RSV disease with mortality similar to seasonal influenza (Lee et al, 2013). Treatment with ribavirin or with the monoclonal antibody palivizumab is available but generally is prescribed only for severe cases (Empey et al, 2010; Blanken et al, 2013).

RSV is a particularly fragile and labile virus that may not remain viable if specimen transport is delayed. In addition, RSV replicates slowly in cell culture, and recovery times range from 3 to 10 days, limiting the use of cell culture (Tristram, 2003; Tang & Crowe, 2008). Shell vial culture improves RSV recovery somewhat and shortens isolation time to 1 to 2 days (Dunn et al, 2004). Use of shell vial monolayers with a hybrid mix of A549 and mink lung cells detects RSV, as well as influenza A and B, parainfluenzas, and adenoviruses (see Fig. 56-6). Detection of RSV antigen in respiratory secretions by DFA staining (see Fig. 56-6) or by EIA is as sensitive as or superior to culture, and availability of results is clinically relevant; therefore, rapid tests have remained popular and practical methods for RSV diagnosis in children when RT-PCR methods are not available. However, sensitivities are only approximately 85% compared with RT-PCR (Ohm-Smith et al, 2004; Tang & Crowe, 2008; Principi & Esposito, 2009; Papenburg et al, 2013). Similar to rapid antigen assays for influenza, RSV antigen tests should be performed only during wintertime outbreaks; off-season testing, when prevalence is low, has poor specificity, with false-positive results outnumbering true-positive results. RT-PCR has been shown to have superior sensitivity over all other methods, is not as dependent on optimization of specimen collection, and transport conditions are not as restricted because viability is not required (Falsey et al, 2002; Perkins et al, 2005). High sensitivity and specificity make RSV nucleic amplification the ideal method for off-season specimens. With the advent of multiplex amplified nucleic acid testing methods, other viruses, such as metapneumovirus, coronaviruses, bocaviruses, parainfluenzas, and even rhinoviruses, have been shown to produce respiratory disease that clinically mimics RSV and should be considered as a possible cause of viral bronchiolitis (Hirsch et al, 2013).

Croup

Approximately 80% of croup is caused by parainfluenza viruses (PIVs) (Henrickson, 2003). PIV1, PIV2, and PIV4 are more common during cold

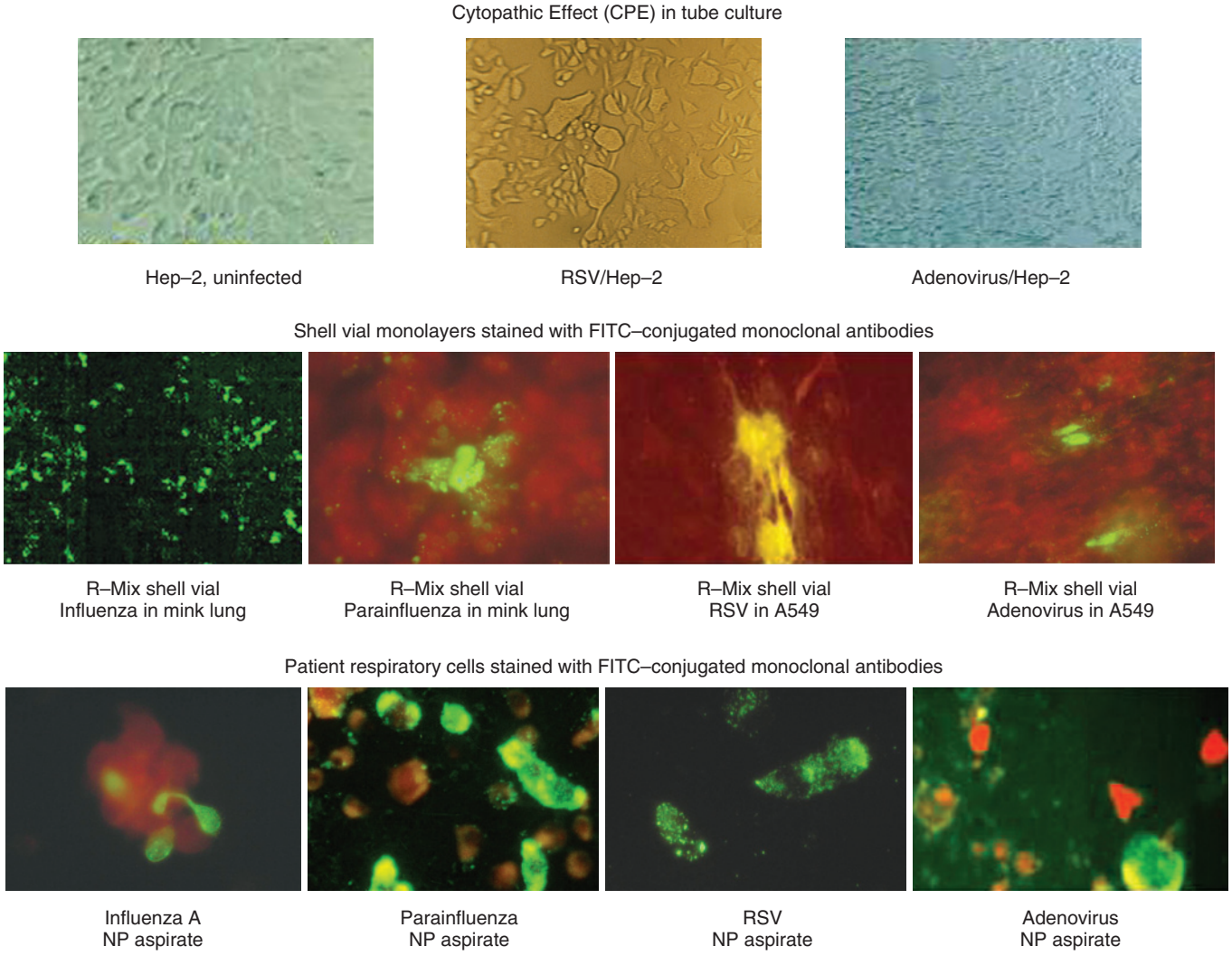


Figure 56-6 **Viral growth in cell culture line and viral detection in patient samples.**

weather; PIV3 causes disease year-round (see Fig. 56-4). PIVs (particularly PIV3) are the second most frequent cause of viral lower respiratory tract infection in young children. The remaining 20% is mainly associated with other virus infections including adenoviruses, RSV, enteroviruses, bocaviruses, coronaviruses, rhinoviruses, metapneumoviruses, and influenza viruses.

Viral epithelial necrosis and mucosal edema in the larynx, trachea, and large bronchi narrow the airway, producing hoarseness, barking cough, and the stridorous obstructed breathing pattern characteristic of croup. Immunity is transient, and repeat infections are common; however, in older children and adults, symptoms are less severe and are centered in the upper respiratory tract, possibly resembling rhinovirus colds. Antigen assay methods are limited to DFA staining of virus-infected nasopharyngeal cells (see Fig. 56-6), which shows 70% to 85% sensitivity when compared with culture; all DFA-negative specimens should be cultured to maximize recovery (Costello et al, 1993). Multiplex viral nucleic acid tests, which include the parainfluenzas, are superior to both antigen assays and culture for clinical diagnosis (Mahony, 2008; Mahony et al, 2009).

Metapneumovirus

Human metapneumovirus (hMPV) is a recently recognized RNA myxovirus of the genus *Metapneumovirus* (Falsey, 2010). Similar to RSV, hMPV causes a range of cold-weather respiratory infections, including upper airway disease, lower airway bronchitis and bronchiolitis, influenza-like syndrome, and pneumonia. hMPV bronchiolitis tends to be less harsh than RSV, but coinfection with RSV and hMPV can be more severe than infection with either one alone (Souza, 2013. Human MPV ranks as the second or third most common cause of serious lower airway pediatric disease; older adults and the immunocompromised also can experience severe respiratory tract infection (Bouscambert et al, 2005; Kahn, 2006; Dare et al, 2007; Lüsebrink et al, 2010).

Recovery in LLC-MK2 cells or Vero cells may take up to 7 days (Deffrasnes et al, 2005). Culture of NPA and bronchial lavage specimens using a shell vial culture format and anti-hMPV monoclonal antibody DFA staining can shorten recovery (Ebihara et al, 2005; Landry et al, 2005). However, nucleic acid testing is considered the gold standard, and inclusion of hMPV in commercial multiplex RT-PCR assays has demonstrated that hMPV is a consistently recovered pathogen in a community hospital practice (see Fig. 56-4). Wider availability of nucleic acid assays will better define the spectrum of hMPV disease and the true incidence of infection.

Adenovirus

Adenovirus has a consistent year-round epidemiology profile, and most clinical isolates are seen in patients with respiratory tract and conjunctival infections (see Fig. 56-4). Most adenovirus respiratory disease is mild and self-limiting; however, outbreaks of severe respiratory infection have been reported in military personnel and in other populations living in crowded conditions. Outbreaks of a virulent adenovirus serotype 14 and a recombinant adenovirus with properties of serotypes 11 and 14 have recently been reported in otherwise healthy adults and children (Lewis et al, 2009; Tate et al, 2009). Serious adenoviral pneumonia can also develop in immunocompromised persons; stem cell and solid organ transplant recipients are the most common patient groups involved, and disease is identified by standard culture and molecular methods (Rhee & Barouch, 2010). Adenovirus can be demonstrated by DFA staining of nasopharyngeal aspirate cells (see Fig. 56-6). Adenovirus also grows well in R-Mix hybrid mink lung/A549 shell vial monolayers (see Fig. 56-6). Molecular methods, particularly

as part of syndromic panels, are the most sensitive and efficient way for detection of most respiratory viruses including adenoviruses (Popowitch et al, 2013).

Coronavirus

Coronaviruses (CoVs) have recently been divided into four genera, *Aphacoronaviruses*, *Betaconronaviruses*, *Gamacoronaviruses*, and *Detalcoronaviruses* (Woo et al, 2012). Human coronaviruses include NL63 and 229E *(Alphacoronavirus)*, SARS- CoV, MERS-CoV, OC43, and HKU1 *(Betacoronavirus)*. Most coronaviruses are associated with minor upper respiratory tract infections the exception being SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV, which can cause severe zoonotic infections. Primary reservoirs are most likely bats (SARS-CoV and MERS-CoV). Palm civets (SARS-CoV) and dromedary camels (MERS-CoV) are also involved and may play a significant role in the transmission cycle (Coleman & Frieman, 2014).

Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (SARS-CoV)

In 2003, an outbreak of highly contagious acute hemorrhagic pneumonia originated in China and was spread by international travelers within Asia and beyond; the responsible organism was identified as a coronavirus variant, the clinical disease was named *severe acute respiratory syndrome (CoV-SARS)*, and the outbreak had a mortality rate of almost 10% (Yam et al, 2003). Detailed molecular characterization of CoV-SARS was performed and accurate diagnostic testing was developed within a matter of months. Strict infection-control measures were implemented for all recognized cases to limit transmission. NAAT for CoV-SARS is available through public health laboratories. However, even though these diagnostic methods are available, only very rare cases of SARS have been reported since the 2003 epidemic, and these were connected to research institutions. The explanation for the dramatic disappearance of CoV-SARS is not clear, but public health institutions continue surveillance for a possible recurrence.

Middle Eastern Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV)

In 2012, the first cases of severe community-acquired rapidly progressive pneumonia from patients in the Middle East were reported (Zaki et al, 2012). The virus implicated was identified as a betacoronavirus, like SARS-CoV, and causes a similar, but more aggressive pneumonia. Person-to-person transmission of MERS-CoV can occur in health care settings and is associated with considerable morbidity. Fortunately, MERS-CoV is not easily spread; the rate of secondary transmission among household contacts of patients is approximately 5% (Drosten et al, 2014). All human cases have been epidemiologically linked to the Middle East (Jordon, Saudi Arabia, United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Oman, Kuwait, Lebanon, Iran, and Qatar). The severity of the illness can range from mild to fulminant. The incubation period is similar to SARS: a median incubation period of 4.0 days, with 5% of cases developing within 1.8 days and 95% within 10.6 days (Assiri et al, 2013).

Most coronaviruses can be grown in cell culture, but SARS and MERS are best identified by RT-PCR, which is more sensitive and rapid than culture, and exposure to live viruses in the laboratory is limited.

Bocaviruses

Human bocaviruses (HBoV), members of the *Parvoviridae* virus family, are human pathogens first reported in 2005 that have been associated with upper and lower respiratory tract as well as gastrointestinal infections, predominantly in children (Kantola et al, 2010). There are four species of bocavirus (HboV 1-4). HboV-1 is more prevalent in young children with both upper and lower respiratory tract symptoms. HboV-1 can also be detected in stool. HboV-2 to -4 are found mainly in stool, are associated with gastroenteritis as well as asymptomatic carriage, and are rarely found in respiratory samples. HboV-1 to -4 are found worldwide, with a greater than 90% seropositive rate (Kantola et al, 2010). Coinfection with other viruses is very common, with another virus detected in 83% of patients with pneumonia, making the role of HboV in human disease difficult to discern (Fry et al, 2007). HboV is more pathogenic in the immunosuppressed, and carriage may be prolonged (Sedeghi et al, 2013).

Rhinoviruses (HRV)

HRVs are divided into three genetically distinct clades: designated groups A, B, and C. Groups A and B grow in culture, and group C does not, emphasizing the advantages of molecular techniques for detection of emerging and hitherto unknown viral pathogens (Jacobs et al, 2013) .

Acute upper respiratory tract colds are caused by rhinoviruses and coronaviruses; more than 100 of these agents circulate almost continuously in pediatric and adult communities. HRVs are the most common viruses detected in patients with upper and lower respiratory tract infections (see Fig. 56-4). Human HRVs are common causes of upper respiratory infections, especially if presenting with otitis media and sinusitis. Healthy hosts get many colds over a lifetime and account for up to 25% of total sick days for children and adults. HRV infections are found worldwide and are most common in the spring, summer, and fall months in temperate climates. Their role in lower respiratory disease is difficult to define due to high carriage rates, particularly in young children (Costa et al, 2014). Widespread implementation of multiplex PCR panels for respiratory virus detection has shown that these "benign" viruses can cause significant lower respiratory tract disease, particularly in young persons, patients with asthma, older adults, and the immunosuppressed, especially when found in association with another viral pathogen such as RSV (Jacobs et al, 2013). Expanded use of molecular viral detection methods have documented that HRVs cause clinically severe lower respiratory illness in normal and compromised hosts (Piotrowska et al, 2009; Talbot et al, 2009; Kuypers et al, 2010;). An example is the recent outbreak of severe enteroviral respiratory illness in children, especially those with a history of asthma or wheezing, which was detected in August 2014 by laboratories using syndromic molecular respiratory panels. Enterovirus D68 was recognized as the cause within weeks (MMWR, 2014).

Specimen Collection

The respiratory myxoviruses and adenoviruses can infect ciliated columnar epithelial cells from the nasopharynx to the alveoli, so when lower airway disease (croup, bronchiolitis, pneumonia, or influenza) is suspected, the upper respiratory mucosa is still the easier and more accessible site to sample for culture, antigen assay, or nucleic acid assays. The upper respiratory tract is the most common site of infection for rhinovirus and coronavirus. Specimens should be collected during the first few days of illness, when viral replication is greatest. A throat swab placed in VTM with antibiotics may be accepted for influenza culture, but the yield is 10% to 20% less; expectorated sputum is also adequate for culture, particularly in adults who are coughing productively. Seriously consider NAAT if your laboratory receives less than optimal specimens for viral detection. Nasopharyngeal swab specimens vary considerably in quality but are adequate for nucleic acid assays; culture and a limited panel of viruses for direct antigen detection can also be performed on NP swabs. Collect swab specimens using flocked swabs with plastic shafts. Nasopharyngeal specimens obtained with flocked swabs collect a larger volume of sample with more numerous epithelial cells, and consistently provide better samples than are provided by fiber swabs (Daley et al, 2006; Walsh et al, 2008).

Collection of nasopharyngeal aspirates (NPA) is straightforward and simple: a catheter attached to a syringe is inserted through the nares to the nasopharynx; 1 to 3 mL of saline is instilled, then saline and mucosal cells and secretions are immediately re-aspirated directly back into the syringe. All specimens should be transported on ice promptly to minimize RSV loss if the sample is to be cultured. Specimen quality can be verified before performing culture or antigen assay. NPA with at least two ciliated columnar epithelial cells per 250× field yields a fourfold greater recovery of respiratory viral pathogens (Costello et al, 1993). NP swabs may be substituted if your laboratory is using a NAAT assay without any loss of sensitivity. Nasal swabs are never acceptable for testing by any method. However, paired nasal and pharyngeal swabs are acceptable for NAAT.

Virus Antigen Assays

Reproducible and accurate viral antigen detection by DFA requires interpretive expertise; therefore, if possible, both viral culture and antigen assay should be done to maximize recovery. Hospitals with a large pediatric service routinely test respiratory specimens for a panel of viruses (RSV, hMPV, influenza A and B, PIVs, and adenovirus) during winter months if budgets permit. Panel testing is best performed using NAAT panels. Older adult patients are reasonable candidates for panel testing since they should be tested for influenza virus; RSV, hMPV, and HRV should also be considered.

Several EIAs are commercially available for RSV and influenza A and B. The specificity and sensitivity of these products are comparable with those of DFA staining but inferior to NAAT (Ohm-Smith et al, 2004; Weinberg & Walker, 2005). The limited sensitivity of EIA assays for influenza restrict their use to epidemic periods.

Virus Isolation

The same specimen requirements and restrictions used for antigen assays also apply to virus culture. Respiratory cultures in non-immunocompromised adults and children can be modified throughout the calendar year to accommodate predictable seasonal epidemics of influenza, RSV, metapneumovirus, and PIV. At a minimum, virology laboratories should attempt to isolate RSV and influenza during the winter; if staffing permits, PIV, metapneumovirus, and adenovirus can be included for pediatric patients (Hodinka, 2010). Nasopharyngeal swabs for influenza culture only should be placed in VTM with antibiotics at collection and transported promptly, preferably on ice. Sputum that contains lower respiratory tract cells and/or acute inflammation is also acceptable for influenza culture and should be placed in VTM with antibiotics. VTM vial specimens should be vortexed vigorously; culture inoculation should not be delayed past 24 hours; inoculation on the day of collection is obviously preferable. For prompt recovery, the supernatant is inoculated into duplicate shell vials (i.e., two trypsinized Madin-Darby canine kidney [MDCK], two Rhesus monkey kidney [RMK], or two hybrid R-Mix), which are refed after centrifugation with FBS-free MEM (bovine serum may contain antibodies to influenza virus). After 1 to 2 days' incubation at 35° C, shell vial monolayers are DFA-stained for influenza antigen.

Laboratories that culture for only RSV should consider using shell vials in place of traditional tubes to reduce recovery time. HEp-2 or A549 cells in Eagle MEM supplemented with 2% to 5% fetal bovine serum support RSV replication. Cell culture tube monolayers should be checked daily for CPE for 10 days. Figure 56-6 shows typical RSV multinucleated cellular syncytium CPE, a pattern that is influenced by cation content and freshness of the maintenance medium (Shahrabadi & Lee, 1988; Tristram, 2003). Adenovirus also replicates in HEp-2 and A549 cell lines and produces a grapelike rounding and swelling of monolayer cells, usually by 5 to 7 days; shell vial cultures shorten adenovirus detection to 3 days.

A number of serologic methods may be used to detect specific antiviral antibodies, but none is practical for rapid diagnosis and clinical management. Serologic diagnosis is most useful for public health epidemiology studies.

Molecular Detection Methods

Multiplexed nucleic acid– and array-based assays are consistently more sensitive than culture and are the tests of choice for point-of-care detection of common respiratory viral pathogens (Mahony, 2008; Popowitch et al, 2013). NAAT technology is rapidly evolving to point of care rapid testing. Large syndromic respiratory panels dramatically increase the clinical utility of these tests (Bell & Selvarabgan, 2014). The currently available assays have all been approved for use with nasopharyngeal swabs in viral transport media. Clinical laboratories should consider incorporating these versatile molecular assays when possible into their service menu (see Fig. 56-6).

INFECTIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS AND RELATED INFECTIONS

Infectious mononucleosis is a common systemic lymphoproliferative disease usually caused by primary EBV infection. EBV is part of the *Herpesviridae* family and, similar to HSV, eventually infects the vast majority of the population worldwide. EBV is spread by saliva; primary infection in early childhood is usually asymptomatic, but if delayed until the teen or young adult years, it often leads to classic infectious mononucleosis. Approximately 150,000 mononucleosis cases are reported annually in the United States (Cohen, 2000; Johannsen & Kaye, 2010).

EBV first infects the pharynx; sore throat, fever, and tonsillitis typically mark the onset of infectious mononucleosis. EBV is strikingly lymphotrophic; it attaches to the C3d receptor (CD21) on the surface of B lymphocytes in the oropharynx and initiates a polyclonal proliferation of immortalized B lymphoblasts, which generates a polyclonal array of nonspecific IgM antibodies (detected in heterophile antibody assays for infectious mononucleosis). The cell-mediated immune system responds with natural killer cells and $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T lymphocytes to eradicate infected B cells. EBV-infected B lymphocytes accumulate in lymph nodes throughout the body, and defensive cytotoxic T lymphocytes infiltrate nodal interfollicular areas, spleen, and liver and circulate as atypical lymphocytes in the peripheral blood (Strickler et al, 1993; Luzuriaga & Sullivan, 2010). As the patient's cell-mediated factors bring EBV replication under control, infectious mononucleosis symptoms diminish, and lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and hepatitis subside.

Similar to other herpesviruses, EBV infection persists in a dormant asymptomatic state. A small percentage of the immortalized B lymphocytes evade eradication and remain latently infected, serving as a lifelong reservoir for reactivation. The EBV genome circularizes and persists as an episome in the lymphocyte nucleus; Epstein-Barr–encoded RNA (EBER) and the Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen (EBNA) and latent membrane protein antigens maintain the EBV genome in a dormant state, working in concert with $CD8^+$ cells. Asymptomatic EBV reactivation is common, and up to 20% of healthy adults sporadically shed infectious virus in the saliva. With impaired cell-mediated immunity (AIDS, organ transplantation, X-linked lymphoproliferative disease), EBV cannot be held in check; overt diseases such as oral hairy leukoplakia and B cell lymphoproliferative disease and lymphoma may develop. EBV DNA and EBER are identified by nucleic acid tests in the spinal fluid of patients with primary CNS lymphoma, and by NAAT and in situ hybridization in transplant recipients who develop B cell post transplant lymphoproliferative disease (PTLD) during immunosuppressive therapy. EBV viral load quantitation is a reliable predictor of PTLD and can be used to monitor success of intervention (Gully & Tang, 2010). EBV is also linked to nasopharyngeal carcinoma in Asians and to African Burkitt's lymphoma; EBV apparently functions as an initiator; then proliferative factors such as confection or immune dysregulation lead to malignancy (Johannsen & Kaye, 2010).

Diagnosis of Infectious Mononucleosis

Cytotoxic T lymphocytes and apoptotic lymphocytes circulate in the bloodstream during infectious mononucleosis (Luzuriaga & Sullivan, 2010); lymphocytosis (>50%) along with atypical lymphocytosis (>10% total lymphocytes) is relatively insensitive for diagnosing EBV mononucleosis, but the combined findings have a specificity of at least 95%. EBV can be cultivated in lymphoblastoid cell lines, but positivity does not differentiate primary infection from reactivation. Serologic testing is the principal laboratory method for infectious mononucleosis diagnosis (Odumade et al, 2011). The polyclonal B lymphocyte proliferation of acute EBV infection generates a variety of transitory but generally harmless autoantibodies such as IgM anti-i (cold agglutinin), rheumatoid factor, and antinuclear antibody. Perhaps the most unusual immunoglobulins produced in infectious mononucleosis are the Paul-Bunnell heterophile antibodies. These IgM class antibodies have affinity for sheep, horse, and bovine erythrocytes, and are not directed against any EBV antigens. They are apparently random antibodies produced during EBV-induced B lymphocyte polyclonal proliferation; they emerge during the first week of infectious mononucleosis, decline during convalescence, and are usually undetectable by 3 to 6 months. Various heterophile antibodies can also develop during serum sickness and occasionally in other viral infections; however, heterophile antibody with strong affinity for beef erythrocyte antigens unchanged by adsorption with guinea pig kidney antigen (the differential absorption test) is specific for acute EBV infectious mononucleosis.

Several commercial rapid assays directly mix patient serum on a slide with a suspension of guinea pig kidney antigen; this is followed by addition of preserved equine or bovine erythrocyte antigen bound to latex particles; agglutination occurs almost immediately if the serum contains infectious mononucleosis heterophile antibody. Rapid agglutination tests and solid-phase modifications are approximately 80% to 90% sensitive, have a false-positive rate of less than 2% and a positive predictive value of 95% or greater, and are excellent POC assays (Rogers et al, 1999; Hess, 2004). Their chief limitation is sensitivity: Heterophile antibody is present in more than 90% of teens and adults but in only 40% or less of young children with EBV infectious mononucleosis.

As EBV evolves from primary infection into latency, various EBV antigens are sequentially expressed, and the specific antibodies generated can be used as markers of the stage of infection. The structural nucleocapsid protein viral capsid antigen (VCA) is produced during acute lytic infection; VCA IgM is a specific and sensitive indicator of acute primary EBV infection and subsides with recovery; VCA IgG can usually be detected with onset of symptoms and then persists for life. The early antigens (EAs) (DNA polymerase and thymidine kinase) are produced during acute infection and active EBV replication; antibody to EA-D is present in recent infection, but EA-R antibody is a persistent late marker. As acute mononucleosis subsides, a small percentage of Epstein-Barr–immortalized B lymphocytes escape immune destruction and latently retain episomal EBV DNA; EBNA is responsible for duplication and survival of this episome. Therefore, EBNA IgG typically develops after acute EBV infection has resolved.

The serologic patterns encountered in the various stages of EBV infection are summarized in Table 56-4. IFA serologic assays use lymphoblastoid cell lines, and EBV production is arrested at specific stages for expression of specific antigens; IFA methods are sensitive and specific

TABLE 56-4

Serologic Profiles in Epstein-Barr Virus Infections

Interpretation	Heterophile Antibodies	VCA (IgM)	VCA (IgG)	EA (IgG)	EBNA-1 (IgG)	Viral Load (Blood)
Never infected (susceptible)	–	–	–	–	–	–
Current primary infection	+/– 50%-85%	+ (70%-100%)	+ (>95%)	+ (60%-80%)	–	++
Infectious mononucleosis	++	++	++	++	–	++
Recent primary infection	–/+	–/+	++	+	–	+
Remote past infection	–	–	++	+	+	–/+
Immunodeficient patient with persistent activation	–/+	–/+	+++	++	–/+	++

Adapted from Hess RD. Minireview: routine Epstein-Barr virus diagnostics form the laboratory perspective: still challenging after 35 years. *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3381–3387, 2004.

EA, Early antigen; *EBNA,* Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen; *IgG,* immunoglobulin G; *IgM,* immunoglobulin M; *VCA,* viral capsid antigen.

Atypical serologic profiles may require further testing (VCA-IgG avidity testing, Western blot).

but have some interpretive subjectivity and require technical expertise. EIA methods using purified or recombinant VCA, EA, and EBNA antigens show better than 95% sensitivity and almost 100% specificity, and have the advantage of objective interpretation and automated processing (Hess, 2004; Corrales et al, 2014). Most primary care physicians rely upon demonstration of atypical lymphocytes in peripheral blood, rapid heterophile screens, and IgM and IgG VCA for diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis.

Heterophile-Negative Infectious Mononucleosis

Of the many patients who present with typical clinical features of infectious mononucleosis in the United States, 70% or more have a positive heterophile test, identifying EBV as the cause. Of the 30% who lack heterophile antibody, up to half are IgM-VCA positive, which also verifies acute EBV infection. In approximately 15% of patients with a febrile lymphoproliferative mononucleosis syndrome, primary infection with *Toxoplasma gondii*, CMV, human herpesvirus 6 (HHV6), or HIV is demonstrated; in the remaining 5% to 10%, no etiology is established.

Toxoplasmosis is discussed in Chapter 33; accurate diagnosis is most critical in pregnancy, in immunocompromised hosts, and in chorioretinitis (Remington et al, 2004). Primary CMV infection acquired in childhood is usually asymptomatic, whereas teens and adults may have a systemic febrile lymphoproliferative illness that clinically overlaps with EBV infectious mononucleosis (Wreghitt et al, 2003; Crough & Khanna, 2009). Isolation of CMV from saliva or urine is not helpful because asymptomatic reactivation and shedding is such a common event. Detection of CMV-DNA by PCR from leukocytes or plasma is valid and sensitive but is expensive compared with serodiagnosis. CMV IgM IFA serology is complicated by the fact that CMV-infected substrate cells express receptors for immunoglobulin Fc; the anticomplement IFA method (ACIF) is procedurally more complex but reduces this false-positive error. IgM-specific EIAs and enzyme-linked fluorescence assays have overall accuracy that is comparable with the older ACIF-IFA IgM assay and have less interpretive subjective variation; pretreatment of serum to remove IgG and rheumatoid factor improves sensitivity.

HHV6 is another ubiquitous lymphotrophic virus with affinity for T cells. HHV6 causes roseola infantum (exanthem subitum), a common febrile exanthem in young children (Prober, 2005; Zerr et al, 2005). Most primary infections occur in young children; when first exposure is delayed until adulthood, infection is often symptomatic and clinically similar to mononucleosis (Braun et al, 1997). Both IFA- and EIA-specific IgM assays can diagnose acute infection; virus can also be identified in saliva and plasma with PCR. However, confirmatory testing is not practical for routine primary care practice (Chiu et al, 1998; Zerr et al, 2005).

Infection with HIV1 can also produce an acute illness that clinically mimics EBV mononucleosis (Cohen et al, 2011). One third or more of patients develop fever, lymphadenopathy, atypical lymphocytosis, and occasionally mild hepatocellular damage or meningoencephalitis. As many as 2% of EBV-negative mononucleosis cases may be caused by HIV acute retroviral syndrome. Standard anti-HIV EIA may fail to detect specific antibody if blood is collected during this early phase of infection, but quantification of plasma HIV by RT-PCR is typically high (10^5 copies/mL). EIA, Western blot, and IFA serologic tests all become positive for HIV antibodies within 1 to 3 months, as features of acute infection resolve (Schupbach, 2003). Figure 56-7 shows an algorithmic approach to the serologic evaluation of a patient with symptoms of acute mononucleosis.

Despite extensive laboratory testing for these acknowledged causes of mononucleosis, no etiologic agent is identified in at least 10% of cases.

Chronic Fatigue Syndrome

Both the medical press and the lay press have discussed at length a clinical entity characterized by persistent disabling fatigue accompanied by fever, pharyngitis, tender lymphadenopathy, arthralgias, and myalgias (Holmes et al, 1988; Natleson, 2001). Although the clinical features of this syndrome suggest an infectious cause, none has yet been clearly identified. Initial reports implied that EBV, as chronically persistent primary or reactivated infection, was responsible because many patients had high titers to EBV VCA and EA. However, serologic tests were neither standardized nor reproducible, and EBV culture and ISH performed on saliva and circulating leukocytes showed no difference between chronic fatigue patients and normal controls. Some studies have suggested a role for CMV, enteroviruses, *T. gondii*, HHV6 and HHV7, and human T cell leukemia virus, but other reports have failed to verify a causative role (Reeves et al, 2000; Colby, 2006). One current theory implies that chronic fatigue syndrome may be due to a deficiency in the immune response to EBV (Loebel et al, 2014). Immunologic and serologic testing is not helpful for diagnosis or prognosis. Chronic fatigue syndrome remains defined by clinical signs and symptoms, rather than by laboratory test results (Lloyd, 1998; Gantz & Coldsmith, 2001).

CONGENITAL AND PERINATAL VIRAL INFECTIONS

The pregnant uterus is a sterile secluded environment that shelters the fetus from external microbial injury. Maternal vaginal bacteria that ascend through a flawed cervical barrier cause many infections in pregnancy, but maternal infection also can spread hematogenously to the fetus across the placenta, or can directly involve the baby at the time of vaginal delivery. These perinatal infections are collectively named TORCH infections, for toxoplasma, rubella, cytomegalovirus, HSV, and other organisms such as HIV, parvovirus B19, enteroviruses, EBV, VZV, Hepatitis B virus, Hepatitis C virus, West Nile Virus, measles, adenovirus, and *Treponema pallidum*. Infection with these agents may be silent or cause only minor symptoms in the mother; however, the immature fetal immune system may not generate an effective cellular or humoral response, so fetal tissue necrosis may be severe or even fatal. Alternatively, infection with hepatitis E virus can be severe with an elevated incidence of acute liver failure and a high mortality rate of 15% to 25% in pregnant women, especially during the third trimester (Kourtis et al, 2014; Krain et al, 2014).

Diagnosis of perinatal infection centers on two issues: identification of acute maternal infection (particularly primary infection) and verification of involvement of the fetus or newborn. Maternal infection is best established by recovery of the suspected organism, but for many infectious agents this is impractical, and serologic demonstration of specific IgM antibody, although imperfect, is the first-line diagnostic test. Maternal infection crosses the placenta in 30% to 60% of cases. Ultrasound may detect fetal organ damage (e.g., microcalcifications, microcephaly, hydrocephalus, organomegaly, hydrops), but recovery of the organism by culture, demonstration of its antigen or genome in fetal blood or tissues, or detection of specific antibody is required to prove specific fetal infection. Test selection for diagnosis of common congenital and perinatal infection is summarized in Table 56-5. Routine screening of all pregnant women for

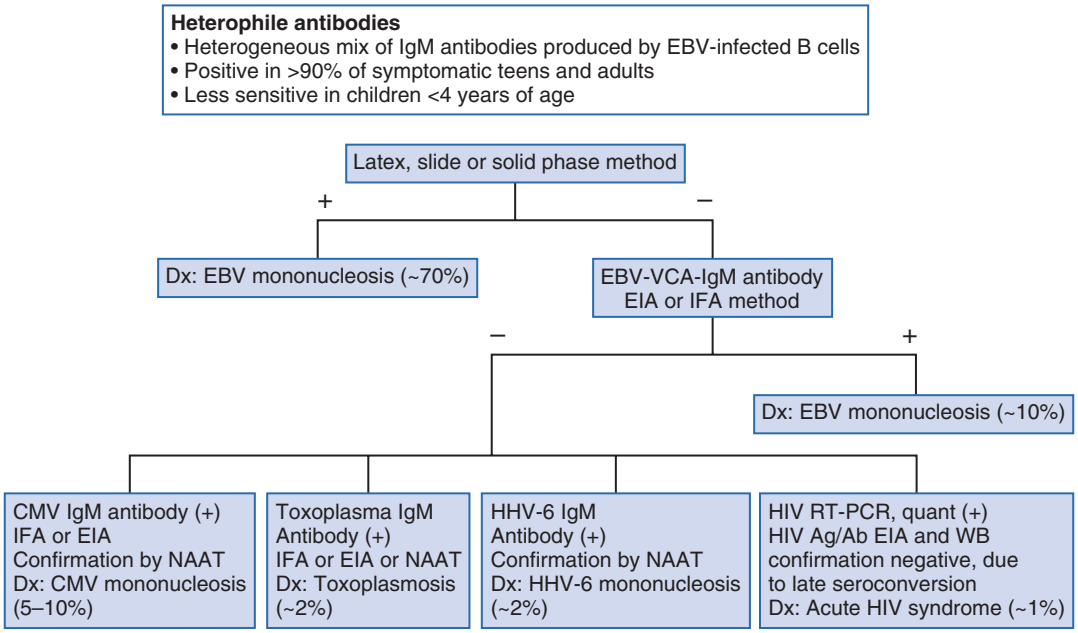


Figure 56-7 Serologic evaluation of patients with clinical symptoms of acute infectious mononucleosis and atypical lymphocytosis.

TABLE 56-5
Laboratory Testing for Congenital and Perinatal Infections

Pathogen	Maternal Serology	Culture, Antigen Assays, Nucleic Acid Amplification	Fetal or Newborn Serology
Cytomegalovirus	IgM EIA IgG avidity	CMV PCR, in utero: amniotic fluid, umbilical cord blood CMV PCR, newborn: urine, saliva, blood, tissues (first 2 weeks of life) CMV PCR, mother: blood Shell vial assay, newborn: urine CMV nuclear inclusions: tissues	IgM EIA
Herpes simplex virus	IgM EIA for HSV-1 and HSV-2	HSV PCR, in utero: amniotic fluid or culture: newborn conjunctiva, oral mucosa, skin, CSF HSV nuclear inclusions: newborn tissues, skin lesions	IgM EIA or IFA
Enterovirus		Enterovirus RT-PCR, newborn: CSF, blood, tissues, throat, stool Enterovirus culture, newborn: blood, CSF, tissues, stool, throat Request enterovirus typing from Public Health laboratory	None
Parvovirus B19	IgM EIA or IFA	PB19 PCR: maternal blood PB19 PCR, in utero: amniotic fluid Ground-glass viral nuclear inclusions: newborn erythroblasts PB19 ISH, newborn: erythroblasts PB19 PCR: placenta, fetal tissues, blood	IgM EIA
Hepatitis B virus	HBsAg, HBc-IgM, anti-HBsAg	HBV PCR quantitative viral load: newborn blood	
Human immunodeficiency virus	HIV-1/-2 EIA antibody/p24 antigen with confirmatory NAAT assay	HIV Proviral DNA PCR, newborn HIV RNA RT-PCR after 3 months of age HIV RNA RT-PCR maternal; plasma	Monitor HIV-1/2 EIA antibody/p24 antigen for possible seroconversion (6-18 months)
Rubella	IgM EIA or IFA	Rubella RT-PCR: amniotic fluid, placenta, fetal or newborn tissue	IgM EIA or IFA

HBc, Hepatitis B core antigen; *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen; *CMV,* cytomegalovirus; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *EIA,* enzyme immunoassay; *gG,* glycoprotein G; *HDF,* human diploid fibroblast; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus; *IFA,* indirect immunofluorescence assay; *IgG* and *IgM,* immunoglobulin G and M; *ISH,* in situ hybridization; *PB19,* parvovirus B19; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase PCR.

syphilis, for immunity to rubella, and also for HIV serostatus is the standard of care; however, routine prenatal testing for toxoplasma, HSV, and CMV antibodies is not advised. IgM serologic methods in particular may show interlaboratory and intralaboratory variation, with false-negative and false-positive errors; IgG assays do not differentiate primary from recurrent or latent maternal infection and cannot predict fetal involvement. Testing should be reserved for mothers with suspected infection.

Cytomegalovirus

CMV, the most common intrauterine infection, affects approximately 1% to 4% of live-born babies (Townsend et al, 2013). About 90% of these infants are asymptomatic at birth; isolation of CMV from urine or saliva or detection of IgM CMV may be the only marker of primary congenital infection. Both primary and nonprimary infections can cause congenital CMV infection, with primary infections carrying a greater risk for transmission and more severe sequelae (Grangeot-Keros et al, 1997). The symptomatic 10% may present with jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, pancytopenia, and compensatory cutaneous hematopoiesis (Abdel-Latif & Sugo, 2010); approximately 10% of these babies will die, and the remainder will suffer permanent neurologic sequelae. Primary CMV infection in the mother is often viremic, with risk for vertical hematogenous transplacental fetal infection and prenatal tissue injury (Stagno et al, 1982; Cheeran et al, 2009). Reactivation of CMV infection in the mother can cross the placenta, but maternal IgG CMV antibody traverses the placenta and is

somewhat protective; these infants are usually asymptomatic at birth, but 5% to 15% have sensorineural hearing loss or neurodevelopmental difficulties (Istas et al, 1995). Maternal reinfection with a new CMV strain has a greater risk for causing symptomatic congenital infection (Pass, 2013).

IgM-specific assays have shifted from complement fixation, IFA, and anticomplement IFA methods to EIA methods, which use refined recombinant CMV antigens and IgM capture to improve specificity and sensitivity. IgM may persist for longer than 3 months in at least one third of adult women, obscuring the interpretive value of a positive result during pregnancy. CMV IgG avidity testing can be useful in dating recent (low-avidity) versus remote (high-avidity) infection, similar to assessment of toxoplasma serology in pregnancy; identification of both IgM and low-avidity IgG in a pregnant woman correlates with primary CMV infection with a high risk for intrauterine transmission (Ville & Leruez-Ville, 2014). Identification of CMV DNA by PCR in maternal blood in a nonimmunocompromised pregnant woman provides conclusive evidence of active maternal infection. However, risk for fetal involvement is estimated at about 40% following a primary infection. No test performed on the mother can predict fetal infection accurately.

The most reliable prenatal test to verify fetal infection is PCR detection of CMV in amniotic fluid, which has a combined sensitivity of 75% to 92% (Revello and Gerna, 2002). Virus in amniotic fluid indicates overflow shedding from the *in utero* infected child, and a positive result has 100% specificity for infection. High CMV viral load in amniotic fluid has also been proposed as an indicator of severity of fetal tissue damage. However, false-negative error can occur if there is less than a 7-week interval between the onset of maternal infection and the collection of amniotic fluid for testing. Detection of CMV-IgM in fetal cord blood is less sensitive (55% to 60%) because of delayed fetal immune response following exposure; cordocentesis CMV DNA PCR has a sensitivity of 84%. IgM CMV in cord blood collected at delivery is also diagnostic, but can be false-negative in up to 30% of cases. Identification of CMV by culture or PCR from newborn urine, saliva, CSF, or blood is very sensitive. PCR detection of CMV DNA in newborn tissue or blood has very high sensitivity—almost 100%; however, use of dried blood samples collected from neonates has variable sensitivity, and its practical applications have not yet been verified. Specimens for any testing must be collected during the first 2 weeks after birth to avoid confusion with postnatally acquired infection (Nelson et al, 1995; Revello and Gerna, 2002) Typical CMV nuclear inclusions in urine cytology preparations are specific but very insensitive; even autopsy material may have few remaining diagnostic cells if tissue necrosis is advanced. Placenta specimens may show nuclear inclusions or may yield recoverable virus by culture; infection that occurred several weeks before delivery may show only nonspecific avascular sclerotic chorionic villi.

Rubella

Rubella (German measles) is highly communicable and produces mild fever and a transient rash in children and adults. All infections are viremic, and transplacental spread during the first trimester produces devastating teratogenic cardiac, ocular, and brain malformations (Schluter et al, 1998). Rubella is no longer endemic in the United States because of widespread vaccination; genome analysis demonstrates that most recent rubella cases are imported from Latin America. Routine prenatal screening for maternal rubella IgG as proof of immunity is standard practice. Only four cases of congenital infection have been identified since 2001, three of which occurred in immigrant mothers (CDC, 2005a). When acute rubella is suspected in a pregnant woman, the most straightforward diagnostic method is assay of maternal serum for rubella IgM by EIA or IFA. RT-PCR for rubella virus RNA performed on amniotic fluid is almost 100% sensitive and specific and can also be performed on placenta and autopsy tissues and is available through referral laboratories (Revello et al, 1997; Mace et al, 2004). The congenitally infected newborn is IgM positive and excretes rubella in urine for months to years.

Herpes Simplex Virus

Despite the high prevalence of HSV in adults, neonatal disease is uncommon, occurring at a rate of 5 to 60 cases per 100,000 live births in the United States. Pregnant women with primary HSV infections suffer from an increased risk for dissemination and HSV hepatitis (Kourtis et al, 2014). Also, acquisition of maternal genital HSV-1 or HSV-2 infection during pregnancy has devastating implications for the newborn. Primary disease rather than recurrence puts the baby at great risk for two reasons: The total number of mucocutaneous genital lesions is often higher with first involvement, and although maternal serum contains IgM, little or no IgG is present for transplacental passive protection of the baby (Corey & Wald, 2009). Most babies have a vertex presentation during labor, so the scalp and the face are the first to encounter HSV in the maternal tract; viral exposure on the chest wall and buttocks occurs in breech delivery. Vesicles develop where skin and mucous membranes are directly inoculated with virus. Because the newborn immune response is still immature, a baby's chief resource for modifying infection is maternal IgG-HSV; when this passive protection is lacking, viral replication and visceral dissemination can proceed unchecked. Conjunctival and oral mucosa and skin lesions are usually rich in virus; if dissemination occurs, any visceral organ can be infected.

Obstetric management is complicated by several issues. Routine HSV culture of all mothers without vesicles or infants at the time of delivery has a 0.2% yield and is not recommended (Corey & Wald, 2009). Prenatal HSV surveillance cultures of women with known recurrent genital herpes fail to predict which mothers will shed virus at the time of delivery (Arvin et al, 1986). Studies of women who experienced their first recognized episode of genital herpes during pregnancy demonstrated that half had true primary genital herpes, and these pregnancies had a high rate of complications, such as herpetic amnionitis, preterm labor, and severe neonatal infection. Almost half of mothers who acquired their primary infection shortly before labor had severely affected babies (Brown et al, 1997). Mothers with recurrent genital herpes had a much lower rate of neonatal infection, with involvement confined to mucocutaneous sites and showing no visceral dissemination (Brown et al, 1991).

It is accepted practice that women in labor who have genital lesions suspicious for herpes are managed with cesarean section to prevent possible exposure of the baby. Women with a history of recurrent genital herpes can deliver vaginally if active lesions are not present at labor, but careful clinical monitoring of their newborns (including HSV culture/PCR of conjunctiva, oral mucosa, and any suspicious cutaneous lesions) is warranted. Neonatal herpes infection may be silent for up to several days before disease becomes apparent. Despite antiviral therapy, disseminated infection can be fatal; infants with infection confined to the CNS who survive are always severely retarded.

Laboratory diagnosis of HSV infection was discussed earlier in this chapter. Type-specific HSV serology is now available and can identify seronegative women with seropositive partners, highlighting their risk for acquiring infection during pregnancy (Ashley & Wald, 1999; Cherpes et al, 2003). Tzanck smears and rapid antigen assays may be positive for vesicle lesions but cannot replace culture (which yields a positive result in 24 hours when shell vials are used). Identification of HSV DNA by PCR in neonatal spinal fluid or mucocutaneous lesions has greater sensitivity than culture and is particularly valuable for detecting virus in CSF in babies with known CNS involvement (Kimberlin et al, 1996; Kimberlin, 2004).

Human Immunodeficiency Virus, Parvovirus, Enterovirus, and Hepatitis B Virus

HIV can spread hematogenously to the fetus, with placental trophoblast and Hofbauer macrophages acting as a cellular reservoir. However, approximately 75% of perinatal infections are acquired at delivery when the baby is exposed to maternal blood. Perinatal risk for HIV acquisition varies from 13% to 45%, depending on maternal HIV-1 viral load, but transmission rates are reduced to less than 2% by administration of antiviral drugs to the mother during pregnancy and labor and to the newborn (Aberg et al, 2014). HIV is also transmissible postpartum in leukocytes in breast milk.

Diagnosis of maternal HIV infection is straightforward (positive HIV 1/2 antibody/p24 antigen assay followed by HIV-1 NAAT). Routine screening is strongly recommended in the first trimester, and seropositive mothers should be offered antiviral prophylaxis. Maternal IgG crosses the placenta and persists in infant blood for up to 15 months, so standard EIA HIV serologic tests cannot be used to diagnose neonatal infection. If infection occurred in utero, newborn blood is positive for HIV DNA that has been transcribed and integrated into his or her circulating lymphoid cells. HIV-DNA PCR has a diagnostic sensitivity of over 95% at 1 month of age (Aberg et al, 2014). HIV RNA RT-PCR assay is positive at birth if the baby was infected transplacentally, and becomes positive within several weeks when the baby was infected during delivery. HIV RNA RT-PCR is also used for quantitative monitoring to assess the baby's response to antiretroviral therapy.

Parvovirus B19 (PB19) causes the benign, self-limited childhood exanthem erythema infectiosum (fifth disease) (Young & Brown, 2004). Approximately 50% of young women are seronegative, and infection in pregnancy has a 25% risk for fetal infection; fetal death estimates vary from 2% to 38% (Brown, 2015). PB19 targets erythroid progenitor cells;

virolytic cytotoxicity causes fetal anemia, hydrops, and intrauterine demise (Anand et al, 1987; Tolfvenstam et al, 2001). Infected erythroblasts have characteristic ground-glass nuclear inclusions. Parvovirus can only be cultivated in human bone marrow containing erythrocytic precursor cells. Acute infection is diagnosed serologically by detecting specific IgM in maternal or fetal blood, or by ISH or PCR detection of viral DNA in amniotic fluid or cord blood (Bruu & Nordbo, 1995; Zerbini et al, 1996).

Enterovirus infection is very common, with 10 million or more cases each year in the United States. Many enteroviral infections are viremic; maternal infection just prior to delivery spreads virus across the placenta to the fetus, and the baby is born with disseminated virus but with no passively acquired maternal IgG antibody to modify infection. Nosocomial outbreaks with nursery personnel as the source of virus have also been reported. Echovirus 11 is particularly virulent, causing hepatocellular necrosis and meningoencephalitis that is often fatal. Coxsackie B viruses can produce neonatal myocardial injury (Bryant et al, 2004). Perinatal infection with other enteroviruses usually is benign. RT-PCR and NASBA NAAT that detect a common sequence present in all enteroviruses have excellent sensitivity, superior to standard culture (Landry et al, 2003). Echovirus grows well in shell vial and standard tube cultures (PMK, HDF, and RD cell lines); suitable specimens for viral culture include neonatal blood, CSF, throat, and rectal swab samples, or tissues from fatal cases.

Maternal infection with hepatitis B virus is often transmitted vertically; the baby may be infected transplacentally or during delivery with exposure to maternal blood. Screening for hepatitis B surface antigen (HbsAg) is standard prenatal care; if the maternal screen is positive, then immediately after birth the newborn is given hepatitis B virus (HBV) immune globulin along with the first dose of the HBV vaccination series (Poland & Jacobson, 2004).

VIRAL MENINGITIS AND ENCEPHALITIS

An estimated 263,300 encephalitis-associated hospitalizations occurred in the United States during 1998 to 2010 or an average of 20,250 encephalitis-associated hospitalizations per year. A fatal outcome occurred in 5.8% of all encephalitis-associated cases. The proportion of encephalitis-associated hospitalizations in which an etiology for encephalitis was specified was approximately 50%. Total charges for encephalitis-associated hospitalizations in 2010 were an estimated $2 billion (Vora et al, 2014). Accurate and prompt laboratory diagnosis aids patient management and is important for public health interventions to control arboviral arthropod vectors and investigate waterborne sources. PCR has been recognized as the reference method for diagnosis of viral CNS infections, which permits both specific and sensitive virus detection. Some neurotropic viruses are fastidious and require molecular methods for accurate diagnosis. Viral proliferation in the meningeal layers covering the brain induces acute inflammation with fever, headache, nuchal rigidity, and CSF pleocytosis. In encephalitis, virus replicates within the brain parenchyma; inflammation and tissue necrosis may be diffuse or may produce a space-occupying lesion with mass effect. Many viruses are associated with meningitis or encephalitis, but overlap injury with involvement of both anatomic sites (meningoencephalitis) is common, particularly with arbovirus infections (Fig. 56-8).

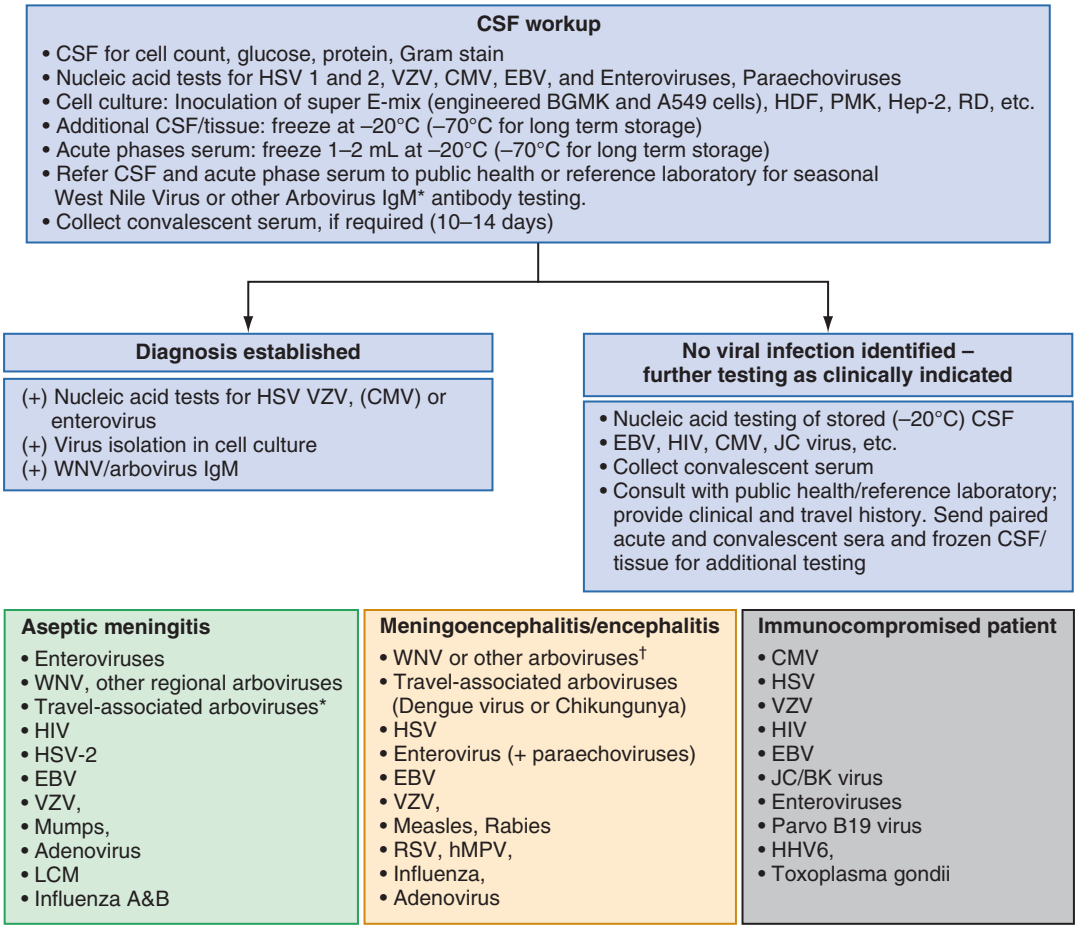
Arboviruses (arthropod borne) and HSV cause most cases of acute encephalitis in the United States. Mosquitoes are vectors for hundreds of neurotropic viruses worldwide, but only five arboviruses are encountered regularly in the United States: WNV, eastern equine encephalitis, western equine encephalitis, St Louis, and California-LaCrosse encephalitis viruses (Lindsey et al, 2014). HSV encephalitis usually occurs as a reactivation of latent HSV-1 that tracks (via the olfactory or trigeminal cranial nerves) into the cerebral cortex, producing a large necrotic mass. Overall, herpes simplex viruses account for approximately 0.5% to 3% of all cases of aseptic meningitis. In patients beyond the neonatal period, it is critical to differentiate between herpes simplex encephalitis (HSV-1), a potentially fatal form of encephalitis, and herpes simplex meningitis (HSV-2), a usually self-limited syndrome by determination of genotype. About 700 cases of herpes encephalitis are reported each year in the United States; the pattern is sporadic and nonseasonal. Progression is rapid and mortality is high, but early diagnosis with appropriate antiviral treatment reduces both mortality and the level of permanent disability (Steiner et al, 2007). Treatment of this disorder involves the use of the antiviral drug acyclovir. Other, antiviral agents may include Vidarabine and Xascarnet. The sooner antiviral treatment is instituted, the better the prognosis of the patient (Tunkel, 2008). Arboviruses are a heterogeneous group, and mosquito transmission is their common denominator; the most frequent in North America are members of the flavivirus, togavirus, and bunyavirus families. Before the WNV outbreak, total annual U.S. arboviral cases varied between 100 and 2000; disease peaked during warm weather when mosquito populations were greatest. Severity and mortality are highest with the Eastern equine virus, the least frequent of the group (Kuno & Chang, 2005). The WNV outbreak originated in 1999 in New York; the virus then traveled in infected birds from the East Coast across America and involved all states by 2004. WNV has since become endemic (Snapinn et al, 2007). The estimated total number of cumulative human WNV infections is currently about 1 million; approximately 200,000 patients have become clinically ill with disease ranging from simple fever to meningitis, encephalitis, and flaccid poliomyelitic paralysis; both long-term encephalitic and paralytic disabilities have been reported, along with many fatalities (Nash et al, 2001; Petersen & Hayes, 2004; Hayes et al, 2005). Mosquito bites are the typical route of acquisition, but blood transfusion and organ transplantation also accounted for several cases (Iwamoto et al, 2003; Pealer et al, 2003; Kleinman et al, 2005). Blood donations are now screened for WNV by NAAT during summer months, effectively interrupting this mechanism of spread (Busch et al, 2005).

By the time of onset of CNS disease, WNV and many other arboviruses often cannot be detected by culture or PCR in blood or spinal fluid; therefore, diagnosis primarily hinges on EIA for specific IgM antibody in CSF and serum, or demonstration of rising specific IgG. NAAT for WNV plays an important role in screening blood donors but is of limited clinical use and may be helpful only when WNV-infected patients seek medical attention very soon after onset of symptoms (Reznicek & Bloch, 2010b; Petersen et al, 2013). Interpretation of a positive IgM serologic test for WNV must be made with caution because elevated titers may persist for prolonged periods following acute infection, and because cross-reaction with other flaviviruses (yellow fever and dengue) may occur (Reznicek & Bloch, 2010b). State health departments and reference laboratories offer a range of tests for common regional arboviruses, but hundreds of arboviruses are endemic outside the United States in Asia, Africa, Latin America, and parts of Eastern Europe. Testing for arbovirus infection in travelers is available through public health laboratories; the referring laboratory must provide a detailed travel history and clinical information, along with blood, CSF, or tissue specimens submitted for culture, nucleic acid detection, or serologic diagnosis (see Fig. 56-8). For example, Japanese encephalitis (JE) virus is encountered in other world sites, depending on the range of its vector and should be considered if the patient has visited a JE-endemic country. Current information about global arbovirus activity and risk to tourists is available at www.cdc.gov/travel.

Estimates from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) indicate that 30,000 to 75,000 cases of enteroviral meningitis occur annually in the United States, accounting for more than 85% of all cases of viral meningitis. There are four species of enteroviruses: Human Enterovirus A, B, C and D, with over 100 serotypes (http://www.picornaviridae.com/enterovirus/enterovirus.htm). Enteroviral encephalitis is an uncommon manifestation of enteroviral infection; echovirus 9 is the most common etiologic agent followed by echovirus 6, coxsackie A9, coxsackie B2, and coxsackie B5 (Romero, 2008).

Paralytic polio caused by poliovirus necrosis of spinal cord or brainstem motor neurons has been eliminated in most of the world, with sporadic residual disease in Africa and Asia, which may soon be eradicated by vaccination efforts. Rabies virus travels via nerve fibers directly to the CNS and produces necrotizing brain damage; bat strains account for most disease in the United States; a recent outbreak was traced to transplanted organs from a donor who had died with undiagnosed rabies (Smith, 2003; CDC, 2005b). Measles, mumps, EBV mononucleosis, and chickenpox rarely are complicated by acute encephalitis (Cherry & Shields, 1998). HHV-6 can produce focal cerebral injury (Isaacson et al, 2005). High levels of HHV-6 DNA in plasma are associated with a higher risk for encephalitis after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation (Ogata et al, 2013). HIV replication in CNS glial cells can cause progressive dementia in advanced AIDS (Atwood & Berger, 1993). Opportunistic necrotizing brain infection with HSV, CMV, and VZV, as well as JC polyomavirus destruction of oligodendroglia, may also develop in the immunocompromised host.

In the United States, the 14 most commonly occurring enteroviral serotypes account for more than 80% of isolates (Romero, 2002) and cause usually a relatively benign and transient disease. Enteroviruses spread easily from person to person via fecal-oral means, and distinct seasonality is seen, with annual summer-fall outbreaks (see Fig. 56-1); most clinically recognized infections are seen in children and young adults. Human parechoviruses (HPeVs) cause a variety of symptoms ranging from mild diarrhea to sepsis and meningitis, particularly among young children (Fischer et al, 2014). HPeV1 and HPeV2, originally known as *echovirus 22* and *23* were reclassified in 1999 as a separate genus



* Consult with Public Health/Reference laboratory for volume of CSF needed for all nucleic acid tests and serology ordered.
Brain biopsy—0.5 cm^3 tissue biopsy usually sufficient for imprints, surgical pathology, comprehensive microbiology, and nucleic acid tests.

† Arboviruses include West Nile Virus,
BGMK, Buffalo green monkey cells; HDF, human diploid fibroblasts; PMK, primary monkey kidney; RD, Rhabdomyosarcoma cells

Figure 56-8 Workup of CSF and brain biopsy for viral pathogens.

(Parechovirus). There are now 16 genotypes (http://www.picornaviridae.com/parechovirus/parechovirus_a/parechovirus_a.htm). HPeV3 is commonly associated with meningitis/sepsis symptoms in young children (Fischer et al, 2014).

Chronic severe enteroviral or paraechoviral meningoencephalitis can develop in patients with hypogammaglobulinemia and may leave permanent sequelae. Acute HIV infection occasionally produces acute meningeal inflammation (Schupbach, 2003). About 1% of primary HSV-2 genital herpes infections are accompanied by transient meningitis; HSV-2 is the major cause of Mollaret's benign recurrent lymphocytic meningitis. Mumps, measles, metapneumovirus, and adenovirus infections rarely produce acute meningitis (Reznicek & Bloch, 2010b).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Initial evaluation of CSF should include cell count and glucose and total protein quantitation. Pleocytosis is usually mild (50 to 1000 cells/mm^3) compared with bacterial infection. Mononuclear cells usually predominate, but neutrophils can dominate early, particularly following infection with WNV. Protein may be somewhat elevated (rarely >200 mg/dL), and glucose levels are normal to slightly decreased (Reznicek & Bloch, 2010a; 2010b). Syndromic meningitides/encephalitis panels, which identify viral, bacterial, and fungal pathogens, are now available allowing for rapid and comprehensive laboratory evaluation of viral CNS disease. Alternatively, a streamlined plan for stepwise testing based on the clinical scenario can coordinate in-house testing with efficient use of reference laboratory and public health laboratory services if the molecular syndromic option is not available (see Fig. 56-7). For immunocompetent patients, initial testing of spinal fluid/brain biopsy tissue using NAAT for enteroviruses HSV, VZV, and possibly CMV plus virus culture can be paired with serum and CSF assays for IgM antibodies to the prevalent regional seasonal arboviruses (Reznicek, 2010a). Table 56-6 illustrates yields of molecular detection for enterovirus, parechovirus, HSV, VZV, EBV, and CMV using an in-house syndromic panel in a large metropolitan area laboratory. VZV may be overlooked as a cause of meningoencephalitis, particularly if skin lesions are not appreciated (Frazen-Röhl et al, 2007). If clinically indicated, CSF reserved at –20° C or lower and paired acute and convalescent sera can be referred for more extensive arbovirus testing in public health laboratories, and for culture and additional NAAT for less common causes of viral meningitis or encephalitis. The 1999 WNV outbreak was quickly identified because of cooperative and coordinated efforts between hospital and government laboratories. Despite extensive evaluation, an infectious cause for encephalitis often is not identified (Granerod et al, 2010).

Immunocompromised patients may develop CNS disease with the same viruses that afflict the healthy host; in addition, several opportunistic viral infections may produce CNS involvement. JC polyomavirus, CMV, VZV, and HSV can cause CNS disease; CNS B lymphocyte lymphoma is almost always related to EBV infection; PCR for EBV in CSF in patients with AIDS is diagnostic of CNS lymphoma.

The most practical and productive approach to diagnosis of viral encephalitis is multiplex NAAT performed on CSF. Reverse transcriptase–PCR testing is designed to detect viral RNA of most enteroviruses and parechoviruses. The results usually are available in 24 hours, making

detection more sensitive (95%), more specific (97%), and more time-efficient. PCR is designated for detection of DNA in HSV, VZV, EBV, CMV, and HHV6 and is more sensitive than virus recovery by cell culture from CSF or brain tissue. Several multiplexed and microarray-based assays have been developed and are commercially available (Wolffs et al, 2009; Lévêque et al, 2014).

Preliminary screening of CSF for elevated protein and pleocytosis is advisable because herpes viruses are rarely, if ever, identified when protein and cell counts are normal (Simko et al, 2002). Brain biopsy is still performed on occasion, usually when tumor or nonviral infection is a clinical consideration. A 0.5-cm^3 biopsy is sufficient for surgical pathology examination, imprint smears for direct examination, NAAT, and comprehensive culture for all infectious organisms. Imprints stained with DFA reagents can demonstrate HSV-infected cells. Some arboviruses and enteroviruses require animal inoculation for replication; if needed, tissue should be frozen at –20° C or lower and the specimen forwarded to a public health or reference laboratory.

Several tissue lines (PMK, HDF, HEp-2, RD, buffalo green monkey Super E-Mix [genetically engineered cell line BGMK-hDAF]) support the growth of many enteroviruses and of HSV, VZV, measles, mumps, and adenovirus; E-mix hybrid shell vial culture is also an excellent choice for culture of enteroviruses (Huang et al, 2002). From 0.1 to 0.2 mL of CSF should be inoculated directly into each tube or shell vial without delay.

TABLE 56-6
Yield from CSF Specimens Tested for Enteroviruses, VZV, HSV, and CMV by Nucleic Acid Assays

Virus	2009	2013*	2014*
Enteroviruses	11.3% (36/318)	4.2% (27/646)	5.1% (30/584
Parechoviruses	Not tested	Not tested	0.9% (5/584)
Herpes simplex virus (HSV-1 and HSV-2)	4.1% (56/1360)	7.0% (51/726)	4.6% (27/584)
Varicella zoster virus (VZV)	10.6% (13/123)	1.4% (15/726)	2.6% (15/584)
Cytomegalovirus (CMV)	2.1% (3/144)	1.5% (11/726)	1.0% (6/584)
Epstein-Barr virus (EBV)	Not tested	4.2 (4/96)	3.9 (2/51)

*All year-round testing data (Personal data, L. Mazur, Multiple hospitals, Chicago area and southeast Wisconsin.)

VIRAL EXANTHEMS AND COMMON CUTANEOUS INFECTIONS

Several viruses primarily target the skin. Some infect the squamous epidermis through direct inoculation (oral and genital herpes, warts caused by human papillomavirus or molluscum poxvirus). Exanthems are also caused by viruses that spread hematogenously to skin and mucous membranes (VZV, measles, rubella, enteroviruses, parvovirus, HHV6). Many of these benign childhood exanthems are diagnosed clinically with no laboratory testing needed, and several are now preventable through pediatric vaccinations. When laboratory confirmation of acute infection is required for unusual cases, to apply infection-control precautions for hospitalized patients, or to guide appropriate antiviral treatment, serology is often easier and more accurate than culture, or antigen or nucleic acid assays. With the exception of varicella, specific nucleic acid assays generally are not needed for diagnosis. Laboratory diagnostic procedures are summarized in Table 56-7.

VZV causes both varicella (chickenpox) and zoster (shingles). In chickenpox, VZV is spread through infected respiratory aerosol droplets, multiplies in the nasopharynx, and then enters the bloodstream and travels to the skin (Arvin, 1996). Replication in the squamous epithelium produces pruritic vesicles that rapidly progress to ulcers, which eventually crust over and heal without scarring—similar to HSV skin lesions. In healthy children, systemic symptoms are mild and sequelae are uncommon; however, serious bacterial superinfection, cerebellar ataxia, and encephalitis can occur. Along with the clinical resolution of chickenpox skin lesions, varicella virions travel via nerve fibers to regional sensory neural ganglions, where latent infection is established and maintained by memory $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes (Arvin, 2005). When cell-mediated immunity is impaired by aging, immunosuppressive drugs, or HIV infection, active VZV replication begins again in neurons and spreads from trigeminal or dorsal root ganglia back down nerve fibers to the skin, producing painful cutaneous vesicles with a classic dermatome distribution. Postherpetic persistent neuralgia is a frequent debilitating complication of zoster eruptions. CNS or disseminated visceral involvement from reactivated VZV develops only in the immunodeficient patient, but may be fatal. Varicella vaccine given in childhood produces high titers of specific IgG; because of waning humoral immunity and breakthrough mild atypical varicella cases (Vazquez & Shapiro, 2005), a second dose is needed to guarantee continued protection. Varicella vaccine formulation administered to patients at 60 years of age markedly reduces the burden of zoster and its complications in this age group (Oxman et al, 2005). Any vesicular rash in children or adults that raises the possibility of smallpox should be immediately reported to local public health officials.

Vesicle fluid is rich with virus and is the ideal specimen for culture or for DFA staining. VZV replicates in HDF cell lines. Traditional tube

TABLE 56-7
Laboratory Diagnosis of Common Viral Exanthems and Mucocutaneous Lesions*

Exanthem or Skin Lesion	Virus	Culture/Antigen and Nucleic Acid Assays	Serology
Chickenpox/shingles	Varicella zoster	NAAT (most sensitive) Tzanck or DFA smear Culture (shell vial most sensitive)	IgM-EIA (chickenpox) IgG-EIA for immunity following chickenpox Commercial VZV-IgG tests may not be reliable for documenting immunity post-vaccination
Enteroviral rash (hand, foot, and mouth disease)	Enteroviruses	NAAT (most sensitive) Culture	None
Measles	Measles	Culture and NAAT†	IgM-EIA or IFA†
Rubella	Rubella	Culture and NAAT†	IgM-EIA†
Erythema infectiosum	Parvovirus B19	NAAT	IgM-EIA or IFA†
Exanthem subitum	HHV6	NAAT*	IgM-EIA†
Anogenital condyloma	Papillomaviruses	NAAT targeting high-risk genotypes (most sensitive), Hybrid capture, Evaluation of ASCUS cervical cytology	
HSV	HSV-1 and HSV-2	NAAT (most sensitive may offer typing) Culture typing available DFA smear or Tzanck smear	HSVgG-1 and HSVgG-2 glycoprotein-specific antibody; IgM, not specific

ASCUS, Atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance; *DFA,* direct fluorescent antibody; *EIA,* enzyme immunoassay; *gG,* glycoprotein G; *HSV,* herpes simplex virus; *HHV,* human herpes virus; *IFA,* indirect fluorescent antibody; *IgM,* immunoglobulin M; *NAAT,* nucleic acid amplification test; *RT-PCR,* reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction; *VZV,* varicella-zoster virus.
*If smallpox is considered in a patient with vesicular lesions, contact local health authorities for specific instructions.
†Test available at reference and research laboratories.

culture is slow and insensitive and is not recommended; shell vial culture has better yield (up to 75%) and allows more rapid detection (Brinker & Doern, 1993). Collection of skin vesicle specimens is identical to that used for HSV vesicles (see Fig. 56-3). Culture setup is also similar to herpes culture; however, tubes are held for 2 weeks, and shell vial monolayers are stained at 3 and 5 days with VZV DFA reagent. VZV CPE develops in HDF as small patches of rounded, swollen, refractile cells. Because the behavior of VZV in tissue culture may be somewhat fastidious, DFA staining of vesicle cells for viral antigen is a rapid and practical diagnostic test and can differentiate VZV from HSV (Schrim et al, 1989). NAAT has also been developed; it is more sensitive than culture and serves as the only practical approach for diagnosis when skin lesions have progressed to ulcers (Leung et al, 2010). IgM antibody is usually detectable by the time chickenpox vesicles first erupt and is a useful confirmatory test; serology is not helpful for evaluation of zoster lesions.

Of the greater than 71 enterovirus serotypes, several produce vesicular or maculopapular eruptions (coxsackie B1 and A9, and echoviruses 2, 4, 9, 11, 19, and 33), usually during summer months. Hand-foot-mouth disease (coxsackie A16) in young children presents with vesicles on the tongue and palmar and plantar skin (Goksugur, 2010). Adult family members of infected children occasionally also develop symptomatic disease. Laboratory diagnosis is limited to enterovirus recovery from skin lesion specimens by cell culture and RT-PCR NAAT; vesicles from the soles and palms should be completely unroofed and the exposed squamous cells vigorously swabbed. Cell culture identification of enterovirus was described earlier. DFA stains and serology are impractical and have low sensitivity and specificity for diagnosis of enteroviral exanthems.

Measles is highly contagious and presents with both mucocutaneous and respiratory features (fever, conjunctivitis, coryza, oral ulcerating lesions, cough, and generalized maculopapular erythematous rash). Vaccination has dramatically curtailed measles, and at present, 90% of confirmed cases in the United States are imported and then are disseminated in under vaccinated groups (CDC, 2013). Recently, the United States is experiencing a record number of measles cases. From January 1 to October 31, 2014, there have been 603 confirmed measles cases reported (MMWR, 2014).

Despite international eradication efforts, measles still persists in impoverished countries; morbidity and mortality are high because of accompanying pneumonia and impaired nutrition. Measles virus in the nasopharynx can be identified by culture or NAAT, but acute infection is most easily diagnosed serologically by detecting measles-specific IgM antibody. Immunity following natural infection presumably is lifelong, verified by the presence of specific IgG; however, immunity following vaccination may fade during the late teen years, with a second dose needed for sustained coverage. Breakthrough infection occurring in the setting of waning antibody may be atypical and difficult to diagnose.

Parvovirus B19 (PB19) causes erythema infectiosum (fifth disease), a common childhood febrile illness with a distinctive maculopapular rash that gives the face a "slapped cheek" appearance (Young & Brown, 2004). PB19 infection in adults often produces arthralgias. Parvovirus infects erythroblastic precursor cells in the bone marrow and may provoke aplastic crisis in patients with hemoglobinopathy or HIV infection. Primary infection during pregnancy can cause fetal red cell aplasia with hydrops fetalis. Serology (IgM and IgG) is available to diagnose current infection or immunity to B19 infection. NAAT can be used to prove acute infection.

Rubella virus produces German measles, a mild febrile illness with a transient maculopapular rash, and is the third infectious exanthem of childhood (Gershon, 2010). Infection in children is inconsequential, although adult-onset rubella may be associated with arthralgias. The only serious complication of rubella is transplacental spread to the first-trimester developing baby, with a risk for virus-induced tissue necrosis and congenital malformation. Widespread use of rubella vaccine has largely eliminated disease in developed countries. Laboratory confirmation of acute infection is most easily accomplished by detection of virus-specific IgM, rather than by attempting virus isolation. Verification of immune status is established with specific IgG antibody testing. NAAT can give added proof of acute infection.

HHV6, a lymphotrophic herpesvirus that infects lymphocytes, is the cause of exanthem subitum (roseola infantum, the sixth clinically distinctive exanthem). Roseola is a common early childhood illness characterized by high fever and development of a fleeting maculopapular rash as fever abruptly subsides (Prober, 2005; Zerr et al, 2005). Primary HHV6 infection in older children and adults produces a systemic, febrile lymphoproliferative illness resembling acute mononucleosis; it may cause pneumonitis in immunosuppressed patients (Cone et al, 1993). The distinctive clinical presentation of roseola rarely makes laboratory confirmation necessary.

Human papillomaviruses are ubiquitous and are found in all societies; hundreds of HPV serotypes have been defined by unique DNA sequences, and various HPV types target different skin or mucosal sites in the body. Most HPV warty cutaneous infections of the hands and feet are transient and of no medical consequence. HPV is the most common of all sexually transmitted infections. Sexual encounters easily transmit HPV types that are associated with anogenital disease; quadrivalent vaccine is now in use for immunization of children against HPV types 11, 6, 16, and 18. Low-risk non-oncogenic HPV types (6, 11, and others) can cause low-grade squamous intraepithelial proliferative lesions that usually resolve with no medical intervention. Infection with high-risk oncogenic HPV types (16, 18, and others) carries a much greater likelihood of persistent viral infection in the squamous epithelium of the cervix, vagina, vulva, or perineum; these oncogenic HPV viral infections can produce high-grade dysplastic intraepithelial lesions that over time may progress to invasive squamous carcinoma. Widespread use of the quadravalent vaccine has significantly reduced the occurrence of genital warts among vaccinated individuals, and it is hoped that a similar effect will be seen for precancerous lesions (Blomberg et al, 2013). Three vaccine doses, given over a period of 6 months, are required to generate an optimal immune response before becoming sexually active, so HPV vaccination is recommended for preteen girls and boys at 11 or 12 years of age. The histopathologic and cytopathologic characteristics of HPV lesions are well described in standard pathology texts. However, HPV detection has been enhanced by the use of NAAT. The hybrid capture signal amplification method, which can identify several high-risk HPV and low-risk HPV types in endocervical swab and liquid-based cervical cytology specimens, was the first commercial assay (Burd, 2003). Nucleic acid amplification–based methods for HPV identification have also been developed (Soderlund-Strand et al, 2005; Carozzi et al, 2007). Novel linear array and line probe and HPV typing methods have been described (Castle et al, 2008). HPV can infect oropharyngeal and respiratory tract mucosa and is associated with carcinoma and papillomatosis (Glikman & Barody, 2005; D'Souza et al, 2007). Performance of HPV molecular assays for nongenital sites has not been widely established.

Although HPV genital infections with both low- and high-risk genotypes are common in sexually active populations, persistent high-risk HPV infections that progress to high-grade intraepithelial lesions and onto invasive carcinoma are not, and the timeline for progression to carcinoma spans many years. Since persistent infection of the cervix by high-risk HPV genotypes (principally HPV-16 and HPV-18) is a requirement for the development of cervical cancer, screening for these and other high-risk genotypes is now recommended for primary screening. Recommendations for prudent use of HPV testing in connection with routine cervical cytology with the goal of preventing cervical carcinoma have been issued by a multidisciplinary panel of cytopathologists and gynecologists; these utilization guidelines outline clinical scenarios in which HPV and HPV genotype testing should and should not be ordered (Huh et al, 2015).

VIRAL GASTROENTERITIS

Infectious gastroenteritis, caused by a variety of bacteria, viruses, and parasites, is responsible for an estimated 179 million cases per year in the United States, causing 500,000 hospitalizations and over 5000 deaths (Halligan et al, 2013). The viruses responsible constitute a diverse group and all are ubiquitous. Severe debilitating diarrhea with rotavirus, enteric adenovirus, saphovirus, norovirus, astrovirus, and coronavirus is largely confined to infants and young children. All treatment is supportive (Thielman & Guerrant, 2004).

Prior to the availability of an effective rotavirus vaccine, rotaviruses caused most cases of watery diarrhea in infants and young children in the United States (Musher & Musher, 2004). Transmission is fecal-oral; epidemics occur during cold weather in temperate climates and year-round in tropical regions. Rotavirus is highly infectious, with infection rates as high as 50% for children and up to 30% for adults following family exposure; some children and most adults will be asymptomatic (Musher & Musher, 2004). Dehydration with electrolyte imbalance is the most serious complication. Enteric isolation precautions must be followed to prevent nosocomial or day care spread. Safe and effective monovalent and multivalent vaccines are currently available and have greatly reduced yearly winter outbreaks due to rotavirus in pediatric populations with this important gastrointestinal pathogen (Cortes et al, 2011; Payne et al, 2014). In addition, vaccination of the pediatric population has indirectly shown a protective effect on the adult population; suggesting that pediatric rotavirus vaccination protects adults from rotavirus infection (Anderson et al, 2013).

Adenovirus, subgenus F (serotypes 40 and 41), is associated with gastroenteritis and accounts for 10% to 20% of pediatric cases. Adenovirus enteritis is clinically similar to rotavirus disease but has no seasonality, and diarrhea can be more protracted (Dey et al, 2011). Coronavirus and astrovirus have caused nosocomial and day care center outbreaks (Papaventsis et al, 2008; Principi et al, 2010), mild gastroenteritis in adults, and diarrhea in HIV and immunosuppressed patients (Grohmann et al, 1993).

Noroviruses (NoVs), a member of the *Caliciviridae* family, cause epidemic acute gastroenteritis, characterized by acute-onset nausea and vomiting that may be more intense than the accompanying diarrhea (Hall et al, 2011). NoVs are nonenveloped and can survive for days on inanimate surfaces, as well as in contaminated water, shellfish, and prepared foods; they have been identified in many community and national epidemics and cruise ship and day care outbreaks. They have been notoriously difficult to eradicate from the environment. NoVs have proved to be genetically diverse, with three out of six genogroups (GI, GII, and GIV) infecting humans. These genogroups are further divided into at least 32 genotypes (White, 2014). Currently, the most common norovirus genotype detected is GII.4 Sydney, first described in March of 2012.

NoV infection is common in all age groups and is seen in a wide variety of settings, including but not restricted to person-to-person transmission in closed settings such as nursing homes, hospital wards, day care centers, cruise ships, restaurants, and catered events. NoVs account for 12% of severe gastroenteritis cases among children younger than 5 years of age and at least 12% of mild and moderate diarrhea cases among persons of all ages, making NoV the most common cause of diarrhea in adults and the second most common cause in children (Glass et al, 2009; White, 2014). The morbidity and mortality rates are highest in young children, older adults, and immunocompromised patients (White, 2014). Chronic norovirus infections lasting from weeks to years have been reported in immunocompromised patients, making clinical management challenging (Green, 2014).

High infection rates with NoV are due to its low infectious dose and its stability in food and on environmental services. Norovirus antigenic diversity is thought to be driven by the immune system, resulting in selection of emerging pandemic NoVs and causing replacement of dominant circulating viruses every 3 to 5 years, with new variants reinfecting hosts previously exposed to earlier viruses (White, 2014).

The great and changing antigenic diversity of norovirus strains results in incomplete immunity, and multiple infections are common (Glass et al, 2009).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Gastroenteritis viruses grow poorly or not at all in standard cell lines. Historically, diagnosis had been based on the distinctive morphology of each virus when stool samples are negatively stained with phosphotungstic acid and examined by EM, but this service is time-intensive to perform and requires special expertise, so it is not available in most laboratories (Goldsmith & Miller, 2009). Rapid detection of rotavirus antigen in stool is easily and accurately accomplished with commercially available latex agglutination and immunoassays. All methods have excellent specificity and low sensitvity (Thomas et al, 1994; Dennehy et al, 1999). Rapid diagnosis is useful for patient cohorting and infection-control measures to contain nosocomial spread. An accurate and sensitive commercial EIA for enteric adenovirus antigen detection is available.

Syndromic gastrointestinal diarrheal nucleic acid amplification panels for comprehensive detection of viral, bacterial, and parasitic infections are now commercially available. These new panels allow for the sensitive, specific, and clinically significant rapid detection of multiple pathogens and quick identification of those patients who have diarrhea of noninfectious etiology, thus limiting isolation protocols to those patients who require them (Halligan et al, 2013).

VIRAL HEPATITIS

Many viruses are hepatotoxic. Yellow fever virus (Markoff, 2013) causes massive hepatocellular necrosis. All of the human herpesviruses can produce mild liver disease with systemic infection, but fulminant hepatic necrosis is unusual. Serious herpesvirus infections of the hepatic allograft can occur after liver transplant. Adenovirus, HSV, VZV, CMV, and echoviruses occasionally produce aggressive hepatitis in immunocompromised patients (Gitnick, 1994). However, hepatitis A, B, C, D, and E virus infections characteristically lead to lytic hepatocyte injury and account for most clinical cases of infectious hepatitis (Dienstag and Delemos, 2015).

Hepatitis A Virus (HAV)

HAV and hepatitis E virus (HEV) are nonenveloped agents with fecal-oral transmission; inadequate sewage treatment and crowded living conditions are linked to waterborne outbreaks, and HAV has been spread in contaminated foods. Acute hepatitis A incidence in the United States declined by 53% between 2008 and 2012 (to 0.5 case per 100,000) among persons in all age groups (Klevens et al, 2014). Due to universal infant vaccination since 2006, rates and evidence of vaccine-induced immunity in young patients have been increasing continuously in the past decade (Klevens et al, 2011; CDC 2013). Half of all hepatitis A infections now apparently are acquired outside the United States by adult travelers (Klevens et al, 2010). The remaining cases are almost exclusively associated with consumption of fresh produce contaminated with HAV during cultivation, harvesting, processing, or distribution. Acute disease in children is mild and often asymptomatic; adults occasionally develop severe infection, but fulminant hepatitis and death are unusual; IgM antibody is the most practical marker of acute infection (http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/Statistics/2012Surveillance). Presence of HAV-IgG antibody is evidence for immunity. Recovery is complete with no chronic infectious state. Helpful laboratory tests include assessment of liver disease, serologic markers of HAV replication, HAV antibody (IgM) diagnostic testing for acute hepatitis A, and HAV (IgG) screen for immunity. Viral culture is not routinely available because HAV grows very poorly in cell culture. There are no NAAT HAV-RNA tests commercially available.

Hepatitis E Virus (HEV)

HEV, the causative agent of hepatitis E, was first reported in 1980 and belongs to the family *Hepeviridae*. At least four major genotypes of HEV have been recognized: genotypes 1 and 2 are restricted to humans and associated with epidemics in developing countries, whereas genotypes 3 and 4 are zoonotic and infect humans and several other animals in both developing and industrialized countries. (Meng, 2010; Bihl & Negro, 2010). Human infections with HEV are not "new," and are of considerable global importance, including in developed countries. (Dalton et al, 2013). Hepatitis E is believed to be uncommon in the United States. However, some studies have found a high prevalence of antibodies to HEV in the general population (CDC, 2014). HEV infection in industrialized countries has been detected in patients with no history of travel to HEV-endemic areas. Viral isolates from these cases were almost identical to strains detected in swine, deer, and wild boars, suggesting zoonotic sources of infection (Wenzel et al, 2011; Dalton et al, 2013). Most people with hepatitis E recover completely. The overall case-fatality rate is about 1%. However, hepatitis E can cause serious illness in pregnant women with mortality reaching 10% to 30% in their third trimester of pregnancy (Hoofnagle et al., 2012; CDC 2013). HEV can cause chronic disease among immunosuppressed persons (Kamar et al, 2012; CDC, 2013). Diagnosis of HEV acute cases is based on detection of anti-HEV IgM and/or HEV RNA in sera. Sensitivity of currently available commercial assays for IgM is usually within 91% to 97% (Candido et al, 2012; Wenzel et al, 2013). No serologic tests to diagnose HEV infection have been approved by the FDA for use in the United States. Several tests are available for research purposes, and some commercial laboratories use commercially available assays in other countries. Additional tests including reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) to detect the hepatitis E virus RNA in blood and/or stool are available in Europe and Asia (WHO, 2014).

Hepatitis B Virus (HBV)

HBV is easily transmitted through blood and is classically acquired through transfusions, needle sharing, or occupational injury with contaminated sharp objects. Infection may be vertical, with HBV acquired transplacentally during pregnancy. Sexual contact and household exposure to HBV in body fluids are important routes of spread. Acute infection is frequently symptomatic, with much of the liver damage inflicted by $CD8^+$ cytotoxic T lymphocytes; 1% develop fulminant fatal massive hepatocellular necrosis. Serologic diagnosis of acute infection is based on the presence of IgM antibody to hepatitis B core antigen (anti-HBc) and the presence of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) (http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/HBV/PDFs/SerologicChartv8.pdf). Up to 90% of infants born with HBV vertically acquired in utero become chronic carriers, compared with 25% to 30% of infected older children and less than 5% of adults. Diagnosis of chronic HBV infection is based on the absence of anti-HBc IgM and the presence of HBsAg, hepatitis E antigen, (HBeAg), or HBV DNA (http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/HBV/PDFs/SerologicChartv8.pdf). HBV-induced cirrhosis is a risk factor for hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC).

HBV infection and sequelae are largely preventable; with the implementation of vaccination programs, the incidence of new infections in the United States has decreased significantly. Acute hepatitis B incidence in the United States decreased by 28% overall during 2008 to 2012, to 0.9 cases per 100,000. Vaccination may also decrease the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma. In addition, vaccination of Taiwanese newborns and mothers infected with hepatitis B virus resulted in a reduction in the average annual incidence of HCC from 0.70 per 100,000 children between 1981 and 1986 to 0.36 from 1990 to 1994 (Chang et al, 2005).

Laboratory tests include assessment of liver disease, serologic markers of HBV replication, and tests for coinfection with HCV, HDV, or HIV for those at risk. The presence of HBsAg and HBeAG in addition to HBV DNA viral load quantitation are crucial components in the evaluation of patients with chronic HBV infection and in assessment of efficacy of antiviral treatment (Tuaillon et al, 2012). Determination of the HBV genotype may be used to assess treatment efficacy and possible emergence of drug resistance (Zoulim & Locarnini, 2012; Rodriguez et al, 2013).

HBV coinfection/superinfection with hepatitis D virus (HDV) is associated with a more severe course of hepatitis that frequently leads to rapid progressive fibrosis, hepatic decompensation, and the development of hepatocellular carcinoma. HDV is a defective RNA viroid that requires HBV surface antigen for full expression, replication, and transmission. HDV is a blood-associated virus that may be transmitted from person to person in household situations in endemic areas (Middle East, South America, Central Africa, Mediterranean countries). HDV is rare in the United States; needle sharing among intravenous drug abusers is the principal risk factor. Anti-HDV IgG and IgM testing is available when HDV coinfection is suspected in HBsAg-positive individuals (Brichler et al, 2014).

Hepatitis C Virus (HCV)

HCV is transmitted primarily through direct contact with the blood of an infected person and is the leading cause of non-A non-B hepatitis infecting an estimated 2.7 to 3.9 million persons in the United States (Denniston et al, 2014). Thankfully, serologic testing of blood products has resulted in a dramatic drop of transfusion-associated HCV (Stramer et al, 2004). Transmission of HCV during pregnancy or through sexual and household contact is much less efficient than transmission of HBV and HIV. Fulminant and fatal acute HCV hepatitis are rare; however, HCV clearance by cytotoxic T lymphocytes is inadequate in most patients. About 80% of infections become chronic, leading to hepatic fibrosis and hepatocellular regeneration that may progress further to cirrhosis (20%) and hepatocellular carcinoma (1% to 4% per year in cirrhotic patients). Superinfections with HIV, as well as alcohol use, accelerate the natural course and can trigger fulminant hepatitis (CDC, 2014). HCV infection differs from other chronic viral infections, notably HIV or HBV infection, in that it can be cured by treatment. Several medications are available to treat persons infected with HCV, and cure rates have steadily improved with the introduction of newer medicines. The field of HCV therapeutics is evolving rapidly, and a number of compounds are in various stages of development. These new compounds can cure more than 90% of persons with HCV infection and are effective against genotypes that were previously difficult to treat. Currently licensed treatments for HCV infection include pegylated and standard interferon alpha (IFN); ribavirin (RBV); the protease inhibitors boceprevir, telaprevir, and simeprevir; and the NS5B nucleotide polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir (WHO, 2014).

Laboratory tests for HCV can determine infection with high sensitivity and specificity with currently available third-generation serology assays. Additionally, the use of point-of-care (POC) tests can increase HCV screening opportunities. However, active HCV infection must be confirmed by direct NAAT diagnostic methods. Presence of HCV-RNA reflects viral replication; sensitive molecular assays (with a lower limit of detection <12 IU/mL) are used to diagnose active HCV infection in patients with a positive antibody test. Second, molecular testing is the most sensitive method for early diagnosis of acute HCV infection, as the HCV-RNA can be detected before specific antibodies become detectable (within 1 to 3 weeks post exposure). Third, the diagnosis of a chronic HCV infection is confirmed by the presence of both HCV antibodies (with the exception of severely immunosuppressed patients) and HCV-RNA over a period of 6 months (Saludes et al, 2014). Fourth, quantitative HCV RNA tests are used to follow antiviral therapy in order to minimize side-effects, monitor emergence of resistance, and minimize costs. With the advent of new treatment regimens that include a protease inhibitor and the response-guided treatment algorithms, only assays with a lower limit of quantification of ≤25 IU/mL and a lower limit of detection of approximately 10 to 15 IU/mL should be used (Drexler et al, 2012; Lontok et al, 2013). Because of the high rate of chronic HCV disease and favorable outcomes with antiviral therapy, an algorithm for efficient testing that begins with an antibody screen has been recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC, 2014; http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/HCV/PDFs/hcv_flow.pdf).

HCV genotyping is helpful for selecting appropriate treatment. Persons with HCV genotype 1 infection should be considered for treatment with direct-acting antivirals (telaprevir, boceprevir, or simeprevir) given in combination with PEG-IFN and RBV rather than only PEG-IFN and RBV. In addition, persons with HCV genotype 1a infection treated with simeprevir/PEG-IFN/RBV require testing for the absence of the Q80K mutation, which significantly reduces efficacy of treatment with this drug combination. Persons with genotypes 1, 2, 3, or 4 HCV infection should be considered for treatment with sofosbuvir and RBV with or without PEG-IFN, depending on the genotype (WHO, 2014).

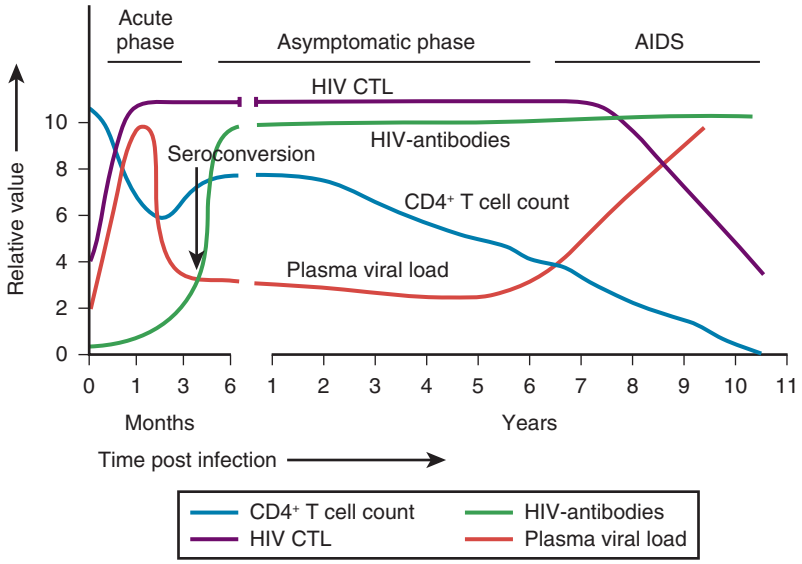
Hepatitis GB virus-C (GBV-C), a flavivirus related to HCV, has been identified in post transfusion hepatitis. However, GBV-C does not appear to be hepatotropic, does not replicate efficiently in hepatocytes, and does not cause acute or chronic hepatitis. It is interesting to note that coinfection with GBV-C and HIV appeared to induce host antiviral activity against HIV and prolong survival (Williams et al, 2004). In spite of a decade of follow-up studies, the question of whether GBV-C is associated with better prognosis in HIV coinfected patients remains unresolved.

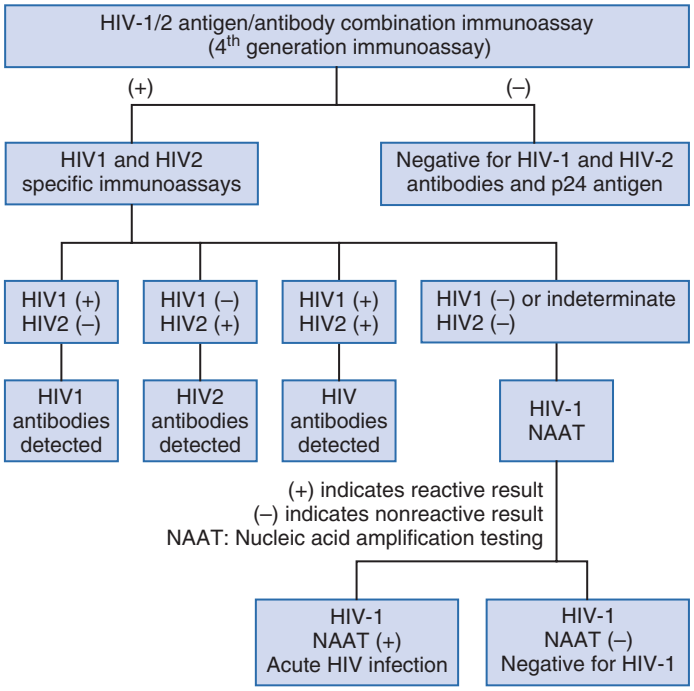
None of the hepatitis viruses replicate in standard culture cell lines. Detection of specific IgM and IgG antibodies and specific viral antigens designates the stage of infection with each virus; viral load assessment is used to monitor response to treatment of chronic infection. Table 56-8 summarizes virologic and serologic markers with viral hepatitis.

ACQUIRED IMMUNODEFICIENCY SYNDROME

HIV-1 is a retrovirus in the *Lentiviridae* family that now has worldwide distribution. HIV infects and destroys CD3/4$^+$ T lymphocytes and eventually leads to debilitating opportunistic infections and malignancies (Schupbach, 2003). HIV-1 is also neurotropic and can cause acute meningitis and slow destructive encephalopathy (Atwood & Berger, 1993). The HIV-2 strain present in West Africa is somewhat less pathogenic, with reduced risk for transmission and progression to AIDS. HIV-2 infection remains uncommon in the United States, and no definitive criteria have been recommended for HIV-2 diagnosis (del Rio and Curran, 2015). Half of individuals acutely infected with HIV experience mononucleosis-like symptoms before entering an asymptomatic latent stage. During acute infection, circulating HIV viral load is high, p24 antigen is present, but antibody may not yet be detectable. Screening with a fourth-generation HIV-1/HIV-2 antibody/p24 antigen assay is the most sensitive screening option (del Rio and Curran, 2015). Median time for CD3/4$^+$ cell destruction sufficient to develop full features of AIDS is 10 to 11 years; 5% to 10% of individuals develop AIDS in 3 years, and 5% to 10% of individuals maintain stable CD3/4$^+$ blood levels and remain asymptomatic indefinitely (del Rio and Curran, 2015). Children vertically infected at birth often show accelerated progression if untreated. Both the diagnosis and ongoing management of HIV infection rely heavily on laboratory testing (see Table 56-8). The CDC has recently published a new algorithm for the early diagnosis of HIV infection based on screening with fourth-generation EIA tests that combine screening for HIV-1 and HIV-2 antibody with detection of HIV p24 antigen; these tests have even greater sensitivity in recognizing early infection, shortening the eclipse period after infection to 2 to 3 weeks (Fig. 56-9). The CDC recommends routine screening for HIV antibody in all health care settings for all patients 13 to 64 years of age (CDC, 2014).

Blood banks in industrialized countries always test donor blood for HIV RNA to identify donors in the false-negative window (Candotti et al, 2003; Stramer et al, 2004). U.S. blood banks also test for HIV-2 antibody, which is standard screening in Africa and Europe. Western blot assays are no longer recommended for confirmation of HIV EIA testing since Western blot is less sensitive than the EIA assay (CDC, 2011. HIV-2 infection should be suspected in persons of West African origin who have clinical conditions suggestive of HIV infection but with atypical serologic test results (Aberg et al, 2014). HIV is propagated in tissue culture by co-cultivating infected patient lymphocytes or tissues with normal donor lymphocytes that have been stimulated with phytohemagglutinin, interleukin-2, and interferon. Culture is complex, expensive, and dangerous and should be attempted only in research laboratories. HIV culture has been supplanted by nucleic acid testing for routine management; real-time RT-PCR, NASBA, and TMA methods are commercially available.



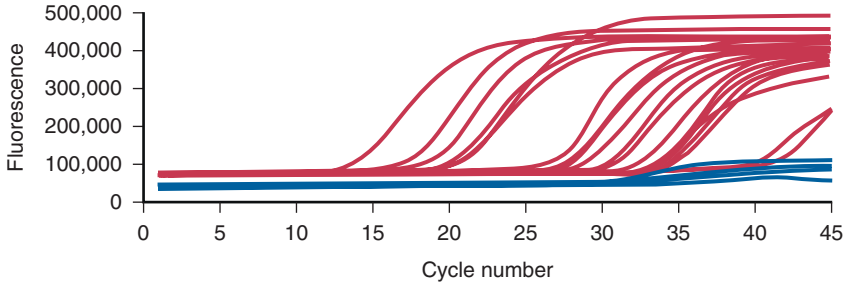


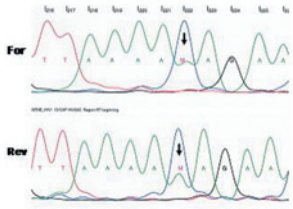
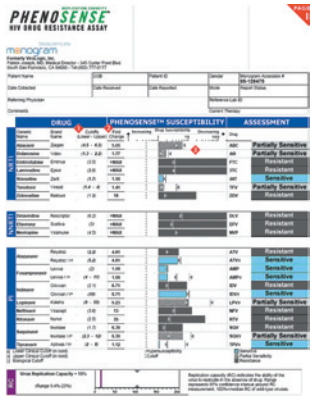
A

1. Screen with an HIV-1/2/p24 antibody/antigen assay. If negative, chances of an established HIV-1 or HIV-2 infection are low.
2. Test screen positive samples with immunoassay that differentiates between HIV-1 and HIV-2.
3. Specimens with a reactive screen and negative or indeterminate for HIV-1/HIV-2 differentiation need to be confirmed by HIV-1 NAAT.
    1. A reactive HIV-1 NAAT result and a nonreactive HIC-1/HIV-2 antibody differentiation immunoassay are consistent with laboratory evidence of acute HIV-1 infection.
    2. A reactive HIV-1 NAAT result and indeterminate HIV-1/HIV-2 antibody differentiation immunoassay indicate a false positive on the initial screen immunoassay.
    3. A negative HIV-1 NAAT results and nonreactive or indeterminate HIV-1?HIV-2 antibody differentiation immunoassay result are consistent with a false positive result on the initial screening immunoassay.
4. Laboratories should use this same testing algorithm, beginning with the antigen/antibody combination screen immunoassay, with serum or plasma specimens submitted for testing after a reactive result from any rapid HIV test.
5. No further testing is required for specimens that are nonreactive on the initial screening immunoassay.
6. Inconsistent or conflicting results should be investigated with follow-up testing on a newly collected specimen.

Figure 56-9 Laboratory diagnosis of HIV infection.

Assay	Comments
Prognosis/Monitoring Treatment	

HIV viral load
 
 	
	• The same method should be used for monitoring individual patients to minimize technical variation in HIV blood levels.
	• HIV viral load testing is used to
	  • Diagnose acute retroviral syndrome before seroconversion develops.
	  • Assess prognosis and progression of HIV disease.
	  • Guide antiretroviral therapy.
	  • Define a baseline level so that response to therapy can be measured.
	  • Monitor response to therapy.
	• Greater than 0.5 log (3-fold) change in blood HIV load is considered clinically significant.

Genotypic HIV assays  Resistance-associated reverse transcriptase (RT) mutation K103N Resistance to nevirapine and efavirenz	• Genotypic assays are helpful in antiretroviral-naive patients for initial assessment of treatment options. Genotyping is also useful for patients who develop virologic failure with rising HIV viral load during highly active antiretroviral therapy, and need guidance for treatment modification. • Genotyping detects changes in the nucleic acid sequence of the relevant HIV1 gene and identifies drug resistance by detecting mutations in the HIV1 genome that lead to specific amino acid substitutions in the HIV1 RT or protease enzymes.
Phenotypic assays  	• Phenotypic assays amplify RT and protease genes from the patient's HIV predominant quasi-species virus RNA or proviral DNA. These amplicons are then inserted into a laboratory virus that lacks the genes, creating a hybrid virus. The hybrid virus is then propagated in cell culture, and its ability to propagate in the presence of varying concentrations of the anti-HIV agent is measured. Results are expressed as concentrations of drug required to inhibit 50% of growth (IC50) compared with a wild-type control strain.
Virtual phenotypes	• The patient's HIV genotype is compared with a database containing many known HIV drug-resistant and susceptible genotypes to predict the patient's response to therapy.

B

Figure 56-9, cont'd

Continued

Assay	Comments

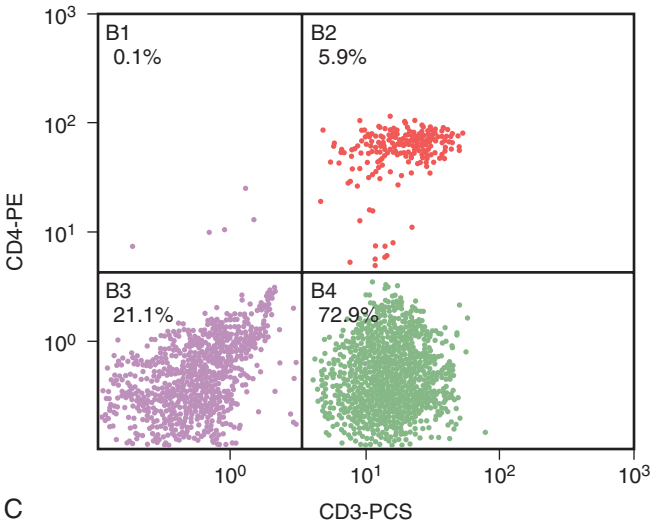
Immune Status
CD4 cell counts
(% CD4 and absolute number)
 
 	
C
	• CD4 cell count and CD4/CD8 ratio are used to
	  • Stage HIV disease.
	  • Help establish the risk of specific HIV-associated infectious or neoplastic complications.
	  • Determine the need for prophylaxis against opportunistic infections.
	  • Determine the need for and response to antiretroviral therapy.

Figure 56-9, cont'd

TABLE 56-8

Serologic and Virologic Tests for Hepatitis Viruses

	IgM Anti-HAV	IgG Anti-HAV	HBsAg	Anti-HBs	IgM Anti-HBVc	HBeAg	Anti-HBe	HBV DNA	Anti-HCV Screen	HCV RNA	Anti-HDV	Anti-HEV
HAV:												
Acute	+	+										
Remote	+	+										
HBV:												
Early			+	–	+	+	–	+				
Window			–	–	+	–	–	+				
Resolving			–/+	+	–	–/+	+	–/+				
Chronic			+	–/+	–	+	+/–	+				
TX monitoring								+				
Remote			–	+	–	–/+	+/–	–/+				
HCV:												
Screen									+	+		
Acute									+/–	+		
Chronic									+	+		
TX monitoring										+		
Remote									+	–/+		
HDV:												
Superinfection			+	–	+/–	+	–/+	+/–			+	
HEV												+

Data from CDC: Surveillance for acute hepatitis, United States, 2007, *MMWR* 58(SS-3), 2009.
HAV, Hepatitis A virus; *HBe,* hepatitis E; *HBeAg,* hepatitis E antigen; *HBs,* hepatitis B surface; *HBsAg,* hepatitis B surface antigen; *HBV,* hepatitis B virus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HDV,* hepatitis D virus; *HEV,* hepatitis E virus; *IgM,* immunoglobulin M; +, positive; –, negative.

TABLE 56-9
Tumorigenic Viruses

Virus	Genome	Viral Taxonomy	Human Cancers
EBV	dsDNA	Herpesviridae	BL, NPC, HD, GC
KSHV, HHV-8	dsDNA	Herpesviridae	KS, PEL, MCD
HPV	dsDNA	Papillomaviridae	Cervical, penile, oropharynx, anogenital, skin
HBV	dsDNA (partial)	Hepadnaviridae	HCC
HCV	ssRNA	Flaviviridae	HCC
HTLV-1	ssRNA>dsDNA	Retroviridae	ATL
HIV	ssRNA>dsDNA	Retroviridae	Unknown
CMV	dsDNA	Herpesviridae	CRC, glioma, prostate
SV40	dsDNA	Polyomaviridae	Osteosarcoma, mesothelioma, brain
JCV	dsDNA	Polyomaviridae	Brain, CRC, glioma, medulloblastoma
BKV	dsDNA	Polyomaviridae	Prostate, brain
MCV	dsDNA	Polyomaviridae	MCC
HHV-6	dsDNA	Herpesviridae	Hematologic malignancies

Data from Fernandez AF, Esteller M: Viral epigenomes in human tumorigenesis, *Oncogene* 29:1405–1420, 2010; White MK, Pagano JS, Khalili K: Viruses in human cancers: A long road of discovery of molecular paradigms, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 27:463–480, 2014.

ATL, Adult T cell leukemia; *BKV,* BK cell polyomavirus; *BL,* Burkitt's lymphoma; *CMV,* cytomegalovirus; *CRC,* colorectal cancer; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *GC,* gastric carcinoma; *HBV,* hepatitis B virus; *HCC,* hepatocellular carcinoma; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HD,* Hodgkin disease; *HHV,* human herpes virus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HPV,* human papilloma virus; *HTLV-1,* human T cell leukemia virus type 1; *JCV,* JC virus; *KS,* Kaposi's sarcoma; *KSHV,* Kaposi's sarcoma–associated herpesvirus; *MCC,* Merkel cell carcinoma; *MCD,* multicentric Castleman's disease; *MCV,* Merkel cell polyomavirus; *NPC,* nasopharyngeal primary carcinoma; *PEL,* primary effusion lymphoma; *SV40,* Simian virus 40.

Antiretroviral treatment has dramatically improved survival and quality of life for HIV patients (Aberg et al, 2014). Quantitative HIV RNA assays to measure viral load in plasma have revolutionized monitoring of antiretroviral therapy; treatment-related reductions in HIV RNA of more than 0.5 to 1.0 log copies/mL correlate with slower clinical progression. HIV-infected patients typically have a genotypic resistance test performed at baseline, regardless of whether antiretroviral therapy will be initiated immediately (Aberg et al, 2014). Genotypic methods typically involve sequence analysis of the HIV reverse transcriptase and protease genes to identify mutations that are linked to drug resistance and have the greatest clinical utility. As use of agents with other HIV targets increases, testing will no doubt broaden. Phenotypic testing is complex and involves amplification of protease and reverse-transcriptase genes from virus recovered from the patient's blood, followed by insertion of these genes into a test virus and then in vitro susceptibility testing of this hybrid laboratory-constructed virus against specific antiviral drugs. A virtual phenotype can be approximated from the genotypic mutation data to ascertain the likelihood of in vitro phenotypic actual susceptibility, with the two methods often showing excellent correlation (Clavel & Hance, 2004). Tropism testing is recommended prior to initiation of a CCR5-antagonist antiretroviral drug, and HLA-B*5701 typing should be performed prior to treatment with abacavir to reduce the risk for a hypersensitivity reaction (CDC, 2014). In utero or perinatal transmission from HIV-infected mothers can be dramatically reduced with treatment and strict avoidance of breast feeding. The transmission rate has been reported to be <1% in women who achieve undetectable viral loads with treatment (Aberg et al, 2014). Early identification of HIV1 infection in exposed infants is important to allow early intervention with antiretroviral therapy and adjunctive care. Maternal antibody can remain detectable in the infant up to 18 months of age. Diagnosis of active HIV infection in the infant is primarily made by means of PCR-based assays for HIV DNA or RNA. Virologic testing should be performed at 14 to 21 days, 1 to 2 months, and 4 to 6 months of age. Infected infants should also undergo HIV resistance testing (Aberg et al, 2014) (see the "Congenital and Perinatal Viral Infections" section earlier in the chapter).

VIRUS-ASSOCIATED NEOPLASIA

Human Papilloma Viruses (HPV)

Although the topic is beyond the scope of this chapter, it is worth noting that viral infections are associated with 15% to 20% of human cancers worldwide (Martin & Gutkind, 2009; Fernandez & Esteller, 2010). The association of viruses with tumorigenesis has been appreciated since the early 20th century (Rous, 1911). Tumorigenic viruses are found in diverse virus families and employ diverse mechanisms to contribute to neoplasia (Table 56-9). Oncogenic viruses tend to cause persistent infection, and viral proteins frequently disrupt normal cellular processes such as apoptosis and cell cycle checkpoint activation. However, viral infections generally are not considered to be sufficient for carcinogenesis; additional factors, including host immunity and cell mutations, are certainly involved in the neoplastic process.

EMERGING INFECTIONS

Ebola Viral Disease (EVD)

The virus family *Filoviridae* includes 3 genera: *Cuevavirus*, *Marburgvirus*, and *Ebolavirus*. Five *Ebolavirus* species have been identified: *Zaire*, *Bundibugyo*, *Sudan*, *Reston*, *and Taï Forest*. *Bundibugyo*, *Zaire*, and *Sudan* have been associated with large outbreaks in Africa. The virus causing the 2014 West African outbreak belongs to the *Zaire* species.

Ebola virus disease (EVD) first appeared in 1976 in two simultaneous outbreaks: one in Nzara, Sudan, and the other in Yambuku, Democratic Republic of Congo. The latter occurred in a village near the Ebola River, from which the disease takes its name.

The 2014 Ebola epidemic is the largest in history. The outbreak is centered in Guinea, Liberia, and Sierra Leone in West Africa, with cases imported to other parts of Africa and the world, including Europe and the United States (http://www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/outbreaks/2014-west-africa/index.html).

Ebola virus disease is a severe zoonotic disease with a fatality rate of around 50%. Fruit bats appear to be the natural host. The virus is transmitted to people from wild animals and spreads in the human population through human-to-human transmission. Health care workers are a high-risk group due to the exposure to highly infectious blood or body fluids from severely ill patients. Extreme care and the proper use of personal protective equipment is essential to protect health care personnel.

There are currently no licensed Ebola vaccines. Early supportive care with rehydration and symptomatic treatment improves survival.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Aberg JA, Gallant JE, Ghanem KG, et al: Primary care guidelines for the management of persons infected with HIV: 2013 update by the HIV medicine association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 58:e1–e34, 2014.
A current description of care and test usage guidelines for HIV.

Anderson NW, Buchan BW, Ledeboer NA: Light microscopy, culture, molecular and serologic methods for detection of Herpes simplex virus, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:2–8, 2014.
A review of laboratory methods for detection of Herpes simplex virus.

Buller RS: Molecular detection of respiratory viruses, *Clin Lab Med* 33:439–460, 2013.
A review of molecular methods for detection of respiratory viruses.

Caliendo AM, Gilbert DN, Ginocchio C, et al: Better tests, better care: Improved diagnostics for infectious diseases, *Clin Infect Dis* 57:S139–S170, 2013.
A description of the benefits of using the best test possible for diagnosis of infectious disease.

Capoboanchi MR, Giombini E, Rozera L: Next-generation sequencing technology in clinical virology, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 19:15–22, 2012.
A review of the uses of Next-generation sequencing (NGS).

Corrales I, Giménez E, Navarro D: Evaluation of the Architect Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) viral capsid antigen (VCA), VCA IgM, and EBV nuclear antigen 1 IgG chemiluminescent immunoassays for detection of EBV antibodies and categorization of EBV infection status using immunoflourescent assays as the reference method, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 21:684–688, 2014.
A description of automated systems for performing viral-specific antibody assays.

Garcia LS: *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2010, ASM Press.
A good review of viral laboratory testing.

Huh WK, Ault KA, Chelmow D, et al: Use of primary high-risk human papillomavirus testing for cervical cancer screening: interim clinical guidance, *Gynecol Oncol* 125:330–337, 2015.
A review of the utility of HPV testing for cervical cancer screening.

Kourtis AP, Read JS, Jamieson DJ: Pregnancy and infection, *J Engl J Med* 370:2211–2218, 2014.
A review of infectious disease in pregnancy.

Loeffelholz MJ, Pong DL, Pyles RB, et al: Comparison of the Filmarray respiratory panel and Prodesse real-time PCR assays for detection of respiratory pathogens, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:4083–4088, 2011.
A review of syndromic-specific panels for gastrointestinal disease.

Popowitch EB, O'Neill SS, Miller MB: Comparison of the Biofire flimarray RP, Genmark eSensor RVP, Luminex xTAG RVPv1 and Luminex xTAG RVP fast multiplex assays for detection of respiratory viruses, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:1528–1533, 2013.
A review of syndromic panels for respiratory viruses.

WEBSITES AND E-MAIL ADDRESSES

Author: Lech.Mazur@advocatehealth.com
Author: Mike.Costello@advocatehealth.com

CDC Ebola Updates: http://www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/
CDC Influenza Update: http://www.cdc.gov/flu/
CDC Site. Recommended Testing Sequence for Identifying Current Hepatitis C Virus (HCV) Infection: http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/HCV/PDFs/hcv_flow.pdf
CDC Website. Viral Hepatitis Statistics & Surveillance: http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/Statistics/2012Surveillance
Enterovirus Classification: http://www.picornaviridae.com/enterovirus/enterovirus.htm
FDA Website. Nucleic acid–based tests and companion diagnostic tests: http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/InVitroDiagnostics
Infectious Disease Society of America: http://www.idsociety.org/idsa_practice_guidelines/
International Society for Infectious Disease: http://www.isid.org/
WHO Website. Influenza Surveillance and Monitoring: http://www.who.int/influenza/surveillance_monitoring/en/

REFERENCES

Abdel-Latif ME, Sugo E: Congenital cytomegalovirus infection, *N Engl J Med* 362:9, 2010.

Anand A, Grayes B, Brown T, et al: Human parvovirus infection in pregnancy and hydrops fetalis, *N Engl J Med* 316:183, 1987.

Anderson NW, Buchan BW, Ledeboer NA: Light Microscopy, Culture, Molecular, and Serologic Methods for Detection of Herpes Simplex Virus, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:1–8, 2014.

Anderson EJ, Shippee DB, Weinrobe WH, et al: Indirect protection of adults from rotavirus by pediatric rotavirus vaccination, *Clin Infect Dis* 56:755–760, 2013.

Antonelli G: Emerging new technologies in clinical virology, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 19:8–9, 2012.

Arnold JC, Singh KK, Spector SA, et al: Undiagnosed respiratory viruses in children, *Pediatrics* 121:e631–e637, 2008.

Arvin AM: Varicella zoster virus, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 9:361–381, 1996.

Arvin A: Aging, immunity, and the varicella-zoster virus, *N Engl J Med* 352:2266, 2005.

Arvin AM, Hensleigh PA, Prober CG, et al: Failure of antepartum maternal cultures to predict the infant's risk of exposure to herpes simplex virus at delivery, *N Engl J Med* 315:796, 1986.

Ashley RL, Milton J, Lee F, et al: Comparison of Western blot (immunoblot) and glycoprotein G-specific immunodot assay for detecting antibodies to herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2 in human sera, *J Clin Microbiol* 26:662, 1988.

Ashley RL, Wald A: Genital herpes: review of the epidemic and potential use of type-specific serology, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 12:1–8, 1999.

Assiri A, McGeer A, Perl TM, et al: Hospital outbreak of middle east respiratory syndrome coronavirus, *N Engl J Med* 369:407–416, 2013.

Atwood WJ, Berger JR: Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection of the brain, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 6:339, 1993.

Bell JJ, Selvarabgan R: Evaluation of the Alere I Influenza A&B nucleic acid amplification test by use of respiratory specimens collected in viral transport media, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:3993–3995, 2014.

Bernstein DI, Bellamy AR, Hookill EW, et al: Epidemiology, clinical presentation, and antibody response to primary infection with Herpes simplex type 1 and type 2 in young women, *Clin Infect Dis* 56:344–351, 2013.

Bihl F, Negro F: Hepatitis E virus: a zoonosis adapting to humans, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 65:817–821, 2010.

Blanken MO, Rovers MM, Molenaar JM, et al: Respiratory syncytial virus and recurrent wheeze in health preterm infants, *N Engl J Med* 368:1791–1799, 2013.

Blomberg M, Dehlendorff C, Munk C, et al: Strongly decreased risk of genital warts after vaccination against human papillomavirus: Nationwide follow-up of vaccinated and unvaccinated girls in Denmark, *Clin Infect Dis* 57:929–934, 2013.

Bouscambert-Duchamp M, Lina B, Trompette A, et al: Detection of human metapneumovirus RNA sequences in nasopharyngeal aspirates of young French children with acute bronchiolitis by real-time RT-PCR and phylogenetic analysis, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:1411–1414, 2005.

Braun DK, Dominguez G, Pellet PE: Human herpesvirus 6, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 10:521, 1997.

Brichler S, La Gal F, Neri-Pinto F: Serological and molecular diagnosis of hepatitis delta virus infection: Results of a French national quality control study, *J Clin Microbiol* 53:1694–1697, 2014.

Brinker JP, Doern GV: Comparison of MRC-5 and A-549 cells in conventional cultures and shell vial assays for the detection of varicella-zoster virus, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 17:75, 1993.

Brown KE: Human parvoviruses, including parvovirus B19V and human bocaparvoviruses. In *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2015, Saunders, pp 1840–1847.

Brown ZA, Benedetti J, Ashley R, et al: Neonatal herpes simplex virus infection in relation to asymptomatic maternal infection at the time of labor, *N Engl J Med* 325:1247, 1991.

Brown ZA, Selke S, Xeh J, et al: The acquisition of herpes simplex virus during pregnancy, *N Engl J Med* 337:509–515, 1997.

Bruu AL, Nordbo SA: Evaluation of five commercial tests for detection of immunoglobulin M antibodies to human parvovirus B19, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:1363–1365, 1995.

Bryant PA, Tingay D, Dargaville PA, et al: Neonatal coxsackie B virus infection—a treatable disease? *Eur J Pediatr* 163:223–228, 2004.

Burd EM: Human papillomavirus and cervical cancer, *J Clin Microbiol* 16:1–17, 2003.

Busch MP, Tobler LH, Saldanha J, et al: Analytical and clinical sensitivity of West Nile Virus RNA screening and supplemental assays available in 2003, *Transfusion* 45:492–499, 2005.

Candido A, Taffon S, Chionne P, et al: Diagnosis of HEV infection by serological and real-time PCR assays: A study on acute non-A-C hepatitis collected from 2004 to 2010 in Italy, *BMC Research Notes* 5:297, 2012.

Candotti D, Richetin A, Cant B, et al: Evaluation of a transcription-mediated amplification-based HCV and HIV-RNA duplex assay for screening individual blood donations: A comparison with a minipool testing system, *Transfusion* 43:215–225, 2003.

Carozzi F, Bisanzi S, Sani C, et al: Agreement between AMPLICOR human papillomavirus test and the Hybrid Capture 2 assay in detection of high-risk human papillomavirus and diagnosis of biopsy-confirmed high-grade cervical disease, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:364–369, 2007.

Castle PE, Gravitt PE, Solomon D, et al: Comparison of linear array and line blot assay for detection of human papillomavirus and diagnosis of cervical precancer and cancer in the atypical squamous cell of undetermined significance and low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion triage study, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:109–117, 2008.

CDC: Achievements in public health: elimination of rubella and congenital rubella syndrome—United States, 1969-2004, *MMWR* 54:279–282, 2005a.

CDC: Progress toward poliomyelitis eradication—poliomyelitis outbreak in Sudan, 2004, *MMWR* 54: 97–99, 2005b.

CDC: HIV-2 Infection surveillance—United states 1987-2009, *MMWR* 60:985–988, 2011.

CDC: Measles—United States January 1—August 24, 2013, *MMWR* 62:741–743, 2013.

CDC: Guidelines for the use of antiretroviral agents in HIV-1-infected adults and adolescents. 2014. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/guidelines/index.html.

Chang MH, Chen TH, Hsu HM, et al: Prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma by universal vaccination against hepatitis B virus: the effect and problems, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:7953–7957, 2005.

Cheeran MCJ, Lokensgard JR, Schleiss MR: Neuropathogenesis of congenital cytomegalovirus infection: disease mechanisms and prospects for intervention, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 22:99–126, 2009.

Cherpes TL, Ashley RL, Meyn LA, et al: Longitudinal reliability of focus glycoprotein G–based type-specific enzyme immunoassays for detection of herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2 in women, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:671–674, 2003.

Cherry JD, Shields WD: Encephalitis and meningoencephalitis. In Cherry JD, Feigin RD, editors: *Textbook of pediatric infectious diseases*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1998, Saunders.

Chiu SS, Cheung CY, Tse CY, et al: Early diagnosis of primary human herpesvirus 6 infection in childhood: serology, polymerase chain reaction, and viral load, *J Infect Dis* 178:1250, 1998.

Clarke L: Selection, maintenance and observation of uninoculated monolayer cell cultures. Viral culture: isolation of viruses. In Garcia LS, editor: *Cell cultures: Direct detection of viruses and Chlamydia in clinical samples: Clinical microbiology procedures handbook*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2010, ASM Press.

Clavel F, Hance AJ: HIV drug resistance, *N Engl J Med* 350:1023–1035, 2004.

Cohen JI: Epstein-Barr virus infection, *N Engl J Med* 343:481–492, 2000.

Cohen MS, Shaw GM, McMichael AJ: Acute HIV-1 infection, *N Engl J Med* 364:1943–1954, 2011.

Colby J: Special problems of children with myalgic encephalomyelitis/chronic fatigue syndrome and the enteroviral link, *J Clin Pathol* 60:125–128, 2006.

Coleman CM, Frieman MB: Coronaviruses: important emerging human pathogens, *J Clin Microbiol* 88:5209–5212, 2014.

Cone RW, Hackman RC, Haung M, et al: Human herpesvirus 6 in lung tissue from bone marrow transplant patients with pneumonia, *N Engl J Med* 329:156, 1993.

Corey L, Wald A: Maternal and neonatal herpes simplex virus infections, *N Engl J Med* 361:1376–1385, 2009.

Cortes JE, Curns AT, Tate JE, et al: Rotavirus vaccine and health care utilization for diarrhea in U.S. children, *N Engl J Med* 365:1108–1117, 2011.

Costa LF, Queiroz DAO, da Silveria HL, et al: Human rhinovirus and disease severity in children, *Pediatrics* 133:e312–e321, 2014.

Costello M, Smernoff NT, Yungbluth M, et al: Laboratory diagnosis of viral respiratory infections, *Lab Med* 24:152, 1993.

Crough T, Khanna R: Immunobiology of human cytomegalovirus: from bench to bedside, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 22:76, 2009.

Daley P, Castriciano S, Chernesky M, et al: Comparison of flocked and rayon swabs for collection of respiratory epithelial cells from uninfected volunteers and symptomatic patients, *J Clin Microbiol* 44:2265, 2006.

Dalton HR, Hunter JG, Bendall R: Autochthonous hepatitis E in developed countries and HEV/HIV coinfection, *Semin Liver Dis* 33:50–61, 2013.

Dare R, Sanghavi S, Bullotta A, et al: Diagnosis of human metapneumovirus infection in immunosuppressed lung transplant recipients and children evaluated for pertussis, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:548–552, 2007.

De Vries JJC, van Zwet EW, Decker FW, et al: The apparent paradox of maternal seropositivity as a risk factor for congenital cytomegalovirus infection: A population-based prediction model, *Rev Med Virol* 23:241–249, 2013.

Deffrasnes C, Cote S, Boivin G: Analysis of replication kinetics of the human metapneumovirus in different cell lines by real-time PCR, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:488–490, 2005.

Del Rio C, Curran JW: Epidemiology and prevention of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and human immunodeficiency virus infection. In *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2015, Saunders, pp 1483–1502.

Dellit TH, Owens RC, McGowan JE Jr, et al: Infectious Diseases Society of America and the Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America guidelines for developing an institutional program to enhance antimicrobial stewardship, *Clin Infect Dis* 44:159–177, 2007.

Dennehy PH, Harhn M, Nelson SM, et al: Evaluation of the ImmunoCardSTAT! Rotavirus assay for detection of group A rotavirus in fecal specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:1977, 1999.

Denniston MM, Jiles RB, Drobeniuc J, et al: Chronic hepatitis C virus infection in the United States, National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey 2003 to 2010, *Ann Intern Med* 160:293–230, 2014.

Dey RS, Ghosh S, Chawla-Sarkar M, et al: Circulation of a novel pattern of infections by enteric adenovirus serotype 41 amoung children below 5 years of age in JKolkata, India, *J Clin Microbial* 49:500–505, 2011.

Dienstag JL, Delomos AS: Viral heaptitis. In *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2015, Saunders, pp 1439–1468.

DiMalo D: Is virology dead? *MBio* 5:1–3, 2014.

Drexler JF, Reber U, Wuttkopf A, et al: Performance of the novel Qiagen artus QS-RGQ viral load assays compared to that of the Abbott Real-time system with genetically diversified HIV and hepatitis C virus plasma specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:2114–2117, 2012.

Drosten C, Meyer B, Müller MA, et al: Transmission of MERS-coronavirus in household contacts, *N Engl J Med* 371:828–835, 2014.

D'Souza G, Kreimer AR, Viscidi R, et al: Case-control study of human papillomavirus and oropharyngeal cancer, *N Engl J Med* 356:1944–1956, 2007.

Dunn JJ, Woolstenhulme RD, Langer J, et al: Sensitivity of respiratory virus culture when screening with R-mix fresh cells, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:79–82, 2004.

Ebihara T, Endo R, Ma X, et al: Detection of human metapneumovirus antigens in nasopharyngeal secretions by an immunofluorescent antibody test, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:1138–1141, 2005.

Empey KM, Stokes P, Kolls JK: Pharmacologic advances in the treatment and prevention of respiratory syncytial virus, *Clin Infect Dis* 50:1258, 2010.

Espy MJ, Uhl JR, Sloan LM, et al: Real-time PCR in clinical microbiology: applications for routine laboratory testing, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 19:165–256, 2006.

Erdman DD, Weinberg GA, Edwards KM, et al: GeneScan reverse transcription-PCR for detection of six common respiratory viruses in young children hospitalized with acute respiratory illness, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:4298–4303, 2003.

Falsey AR: Human metapneumovirus. In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2010, Churchill Livingstone.

Falsey AR, Formica MA, Walsh EE: Diagnosis of respiratory syncytial virus infection: Comparison of reverse transcription-PCR to viral culture and serology in adults with respiratory illness, *Clin Microbiol* 40:817–820, 2002.

Fauci AS, Morens DM: The perpetual challenge of infectious diseases, *N Engl J Med* 366:454–460, 2012.

Fernandez AF, Esteller M: Viral epigenomes in human tumorigenesis, *Oncogene* 29:1405–1420, 2010.

Fischer TK, Midgley S, Dalgaad C: Human parechovirus infection, Denmark, *Emerg Infect Dis* 20:83–87, 2014.

Fleming DT, McQuillan GM, Johnson RE, et al: Herpes simplex virus type 2 in the United States, 1976 to 1994, *N Engl J Med* 337:1105, 1997.

Frazen-Röhl E, Tiveljung-Lindell A, Grillner L, et al: Increased detection rate in diagnosis of herpes simplex meningitis by real time PCR using cerebrospinal fluid samples, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:2511–2520, 2007.

Fry AM, Lu X, Chittagenpitch M: Human bocavirus: a novel parvovirus epidemiologically associated with pneumonia requiring hospitalization in Thailand, *J Infect Dis* 195:1038–1045, 2007.

Gantz NM, Coldsmith EE: Chronic fatigue syndrome and fibromyalgia resources on the World Wide Web: a descriptive journey, *Clin Infect Dis* 32:938–948, 2001.

Gastañaduy PA, Redd SB, Fiebelkorn AP, et al: Measles—United States, January 1–May 23, 2014, *MMWR* 63:496–499, 2014.

Gershon AA: Rubella virus (German measles). In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2010, Churchill Livingstone.

Ginocchio CC, Zhang F: Evaluation of multiple test methods for the detection of the novel 2009 influenza A (H1N1) during the New York City outbreak, *J Clin Virol* 45:191–195, 2009.

Gitnick G: Hepatitis infecitons in immunocompromised patients, *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 23:515–521, 1994.

Glass RI, Parashar UP, Estes MK: Norovirus gastroenteritis, *N Engl J Med* 361:1776–1785, 2009.

Glikman D, Barody FM: Recurrent respiratory papillomatosis with lung involvement, *N Engl J Med* 352:e22, 2005.

Goksugur N: Hand, foot and mouth disease, *N Engl J Med* 362:e49, 2010.

Goldsmith CS, Miller SE: Modern uses of electron microscopy for detection of viruses, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 22:552–563, 2009.

Granerod J, Ambrose HE, Davies NWS, et al: Causes of encephalitis and differences in their clinical presentations in England: A multicenter, population-based [prospective study, *Lancet Infect Dis* 10:835–844, 2010.

Grangeot-Keros L, Mayaux MJ, Lebon P, et al: Value of cytomegalovirus (CMV) IgG avidity index for the diagnosis of primary CMV infection in pregnant women, *J Infect Dis* 175:944–946, 1997.

Green KY: Norovirus infection in immunocompromised hosts, *Clin Microbiolol Infect* 20:717–723, 2014.

Grohmann GS, Glass RI, Pereira HG, et al: Enteric viruses and diarrhea in HIV infected patients. Enteric Opportunistic Infections Working Group, *N Engl J Med* 329:14, 1993.

Gulley ML, Tang W: Loaboratory assays for Epstein-Barr virus-related disease, *J Mol Diagn* 10:279–292, 2008.

Gulley MLN, Tang W: Using Epstein-Barr viral load assays to diagnose, monitor, and prevent post transplant lymphoproliferative disorder, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 23:350–366, 2010.

Hall CB: Respiratory syncytial virus. In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2010, Churchill Livingstone.

Hall AJ, Rosenthal M, Gregoricus N, et al: Incidence of acute gastroenteritis and role of norovirus, Georgia, USA, 2004-2005, *Emerg Infect Dis* 17:138–1388, 2011.

Halligan E, Edgeworth J, Bisnauthsing K, et al: Multiplex molecular testing for management of infectious gastroenteritis in a hospital setting: a comparative diagnostic and clinical utility study, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 20:460–467, 2013.

Hayden RT, Hokanson KM: Multicenter comparison of real-time PCR assays for quantitative detection of Epstein-Barr virus, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:157, 2008.

Hayes EB, Sejvar JJ, Zaki SR, et al: Virology, pathology, and clinical manifestations of West Nile virus disease, *Emerg Infect Dis* 11:1174–1179, 2005.

Heegaard ED, Brown KE: Human parvovirus B19, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 15:485–505, 2002.

Henrickson KJ: Parainfluenza viruses, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 16:242–264, 2003.

Hess RD: Minireview: routine Epstein-Barr virus diagnostics from the laboratory perspective: still challenging after 35 years, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3381–3387, 2004.

Hirsch HH, Martino R, Ward KW, et al: Fourth European Conference on Infections in Leukemia (ECIL-4): Guidelines for diagnosis and treatment of human respiratory syncytial virus, parainfluenza virus, metapneumovirus, rhinovirus, and coronavirus, *Clin Infect Dis* 56:258–266, 2013.

Hodinka RL: Serologic tests in clinical virology. In C2 Lennett EH, Smith TF, editors: *Laboratory diagnosis of viral infections*, ed 3, New York, 1999, Marcel Dekker.

Hodinka RL: Cell culture techniques: serial propagation and maintenance of monolayer cell culture. In Garcia LS, editor: *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2010, ASM Press.

Hodinka RL, Kaiserb L: Is the era of viral culture over in the clinical microbiology laboratory? *J Clin Microbiol* 51:1–7, 2013.

Holmes GP, Kaplan JE, Gantz NM, et al: Chronic fatigue syndrome: a working case definition, *Ann Intern Med* 108:387, 1988.

Hoofnagle JH, Nelson KE, Purcell RH: Hepatitis E, *N Engl J Med* 367:1237–1244, 2012.

Huang YT, Yam P, Huimin Y, et al: Engineered BGMK cells for sensitive and rapid detection of enteroviruses, *J Clin Microbiol* 40:366–371, 2002.

IDSA: *Pandemic and seasonal influenza. Principles of action, 2012*, 2012, Infectious Diseases Society of America.

Isaacson E, Glaser CA, Gorghani B, et al: Evidence of human herpesvirus 6 in 4 immunocompetent patients with encephalitis, *Clin Infect Dis* 40:890–893, 2005.

Istas AS, Dermmier GJ, Dubbins JC, et al: Surveillance for congenital CMV disease: report from the National Congenital CMV Disease Registry, *Clin Infect Dis* 20:665, 1995.

Iwamoto M, Jernigan DB, Gausch A, et al: Transmission of West Nile virus from an organ donor to four transplant recipients, *N Engl J Med* 348:2196–2203, 2003.

Jacobs SE, Lamson DM, St. George K: Human rhinoviruses, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 26:135–162, 2013.

Jerome KR, Morrow RA: Herpes simplex viruses and herpes B viruses. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 9, Washington, DC, 2007, ASM Press.

Johannsen EC, Kaye K: Epstein-Barr virus (infectious mononucleosis, Epstein-Barr virus-associated malignant diseases, and other diseases). In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2010, Churchill Livingstone.

Kahn JS: Epidemiology of human metapneumovirus, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 19:546–557, 2006.

Kamar N, Bendall R, Legrand-Abravanel F, et al: Hepatitis E, *Lancet* 379:2477–2488, 2012.

Kantola K, Sedeghi M, Antikainen J, et al: Real-time quantitative PCR detection of four human bocaviruses, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:4044–4050, 2010.

Kimberlin DW: Neonatal herpes simplex infection, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 17:1–13, 2004.

Kimberlin DW, Lakeman FD, Arvin AM, et al: Application of the polymerase chain reaction to the diagnosis and management of neonatal herpes simplex virus disease, *J Infect Dis* 174:1162, 1996.

Kleinman S, Glynn SA, Busch M, et al: The 2003 West Nile virus United States epidemic: the America's Blood Centers experience, *Transfusion* 45:469–479, 2005.

Klevens RM, Kruszon-Moran D, Wasley A, et al: Seroprevalence of hepatitis A antibodies in the United States: Results from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, *Public Health Rep* 126:522–532, 2011.

Klevens RM, Lui S, Roberts H: Estimating acute viral hepatitis infections from nationally reported cases, *Am J Public Health* 104:482–487, 2014.

Klevens RM, Miller J, Iqbal K, et al: The evolving epidemiology of hepatitis A in the United States: incidence and molecular epidemiology from population-based surveillance, *Arch Intern Med* 170:1811–1818, 2010.

Krain LJ, Nelson KE, Lebrique AB: Host immune status and response to hepatitis E virus infection, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 27:139–165, 2014.

Ksiazek TG, Erdman D, Goldsmith CS, et al: A novel coronavirus associated with severe acute respiratory syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 348:1953–1966, 2003.

Kuno G, Chang GJJ: Biological transmission of arboviruses: reexamination of and new insights into components, mechanisms, and unique traits as well as their evolutionary trends, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 18:608–637, 2005.

Kuypers J, Martin ET, Heugel J, et al: Clinical disease in children associated with newly described coronavirus subtypes, *Pediatrics* 119:e70–e76, 2010.

Lafferty WE, Krofft S, Remmington M, et al: Diagnosis of herpes simplex virus by direct immunofluorescence and viral isolation from samples of external genital lesions in a high prevalence population, *J Clin Microbiol* 25:323, 1987.

Landry ML, Ferguson D, Cohen S, et al: Detection of human metapneumovirus in clinical samples by immunofluorescence staining of shell vial centrifugation cultures prepared from three different cell lines, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:1950–1952, 2005.

Landry ML, Garner R, Ferguson D: Comparison of the NucliSens basic kit (nucleic acid sequence-based amplification) and the Argene Biosoft enterovirus consensus reverse transcription-PCR assays for rapid detection of enterovirus RNA in clinical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:5006–5010, 2003.

Lee AV: Comparative evaluation of the QIAGEN QIAsymphonyÂ® SP system and bioMÂ©rieux NucliSens easyMAG automated extraction platforms in a clinical virology laboratory, *J Clin Virol* 69:179–186, 2011.

Lee CS, Lee JH, Kim CH, et al: Time-dependent sensitivity of a rapid antigen test in patients with 2009 H1N1 influenza, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:1702, 2011.

Lee N, Lui GCY, Wong KT, et al: High morbidity and mortality on adults hospitalized for respiratory syncytial virus infections, *Clin Inferct Dis* 57:1069–1077, 2013.

Leland DS, Ginocchio CC: Role of cell culture for virus detection in the age of technology, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 20:49–78, 2007.

Leung J, Harpaz R, Baughman AL, et al: Evaluation of laboratory methods for diagnosis of varicella, *Clin Infect Dis* 51:23–32, 2010.

Lévêque N, Legoff J, Mengelle C, et al: Virological diagnosis of central nervous system infections by use of PCR coupled with mass spectrometry analysis of cerebrospinal fluid samples, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:212–217, 2014.

Lewis PF, Schmidt MA, Lu X, et al: A community-based outbreak of severe respiratory illness caused by human adenovirus serotype 14, *J Infect Dis* 199:1427–1434, 2009.

Li H, McCormac MA, Estes RW, et al: Simultaneous detection and high throughput identification of a panel of RNA viruses causing respiratory tract infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:2105–2109, 2007.

Liderot K, Ahl M, Ozenci V: Secondary bacterial infections in patients with seasonal influenza A and pandemic N1H1, *Bio Med Res Int* 2013:376219, 2013.

Lindsey NP, Lehman JA, Staples JE, et al: West Nile Virus and Other Arboviral Diseases—United States, 2013, *MMWR* 63:521–526, 2014.

Lipson SM, Salo RJ, Leonardi GP: Evaluation of five monoclonal antibody–based kits or reagents for the identification and culture confirmation of herpes simplex virus, *J Clin Microbiol* 29:466, 1991.

Lloyd AR: Chronic fatigue and chronic fatigue syndrome: shifting boundaries and attributions, *Am J Med* 105:7S, 1998.

Loebel M, Strohschein K, Giannini C, et al: Deficient EBV-specific B- and T-cell response in patients with chronic fatigue syndrome, *PLoS ONE* 9:1–10, 2014.

Lontok E, Mani N, Harrington PR, et al: Closing in on the target: sustained virologic response in hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection response-guided therapy, *Clin Infect Dis* 56:1466–1470, 2013.

Lüsebrink J, Wiese C, Thiel A, et al: High seroprevalence of neutralizing capacity against human metapneumovirus in all age groups studied in Bonn, Germany 2010, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 17:481–484, 2010.
Luzuriaga K, Sullivan JL: Infectious mononucleosis, *N Engl J Med* 362:1993, 2010.
Mace M, Cointe D, Six C, et al: Diagnostic value of RT-PCR of amniotic fluid for prenatal diagnosis of congenital rubella infection in pregnant women with confirmed primary rubella infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:4818–4820, 2004.
Mahony J, Chong S, Merante F, et al: Development of a respiratory virus panel test for detection of twenty human viruses by use of multiplex PCR and a fluid microbead-based assay, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:2965–2970, 2007.
Mahony JB: Detection of respiratory viruses by molecular methods, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 21:716–747, 2008.
Mahony JB, Glackhouse G, Babwah J, et al: Cost analysis of multiplex PCR testing for diagnosing respiratory virus infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:2812–2817, 2009.
Markoff L: Yellow fever outbreak in Sudan, *N Engl J Med* 368:689–691, 2013.
Marshall KJ, Reisdorf E, Harms G, et al: Evaluation of a multiplexed PCR assay for detection of respiratory viral pathogens in a public health laboratory setting, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:3875–3882, 2007.
Martin D, Gutkind JS: Human tumor-associated viruses and mew insights into the molecular mechanisms of cancer, *Oncogene* 27:S31–S42, 2009.
McKinney RE, Katz SL, Wilfert CM: Chronic enteroviral meningoencephalitis in agammaglobulinemic patients, *Rev Infect Dis* 9:334–356, 1987.
Midgley CM, Jackson MA, Selvarangan R, et al: Severe respiratory illness associated with Enterovirus D68—Missouri and Illinois, *MMWR* 63:798–799, 2014.
Meng XJ: Recent advances in Hepatitis E virus, *J Viral Hepat* 17:153–161, 2010.
Morrow RA, Friedrich D, Krantz E: Performance of the Focus and Kalon enzyme-linked-immunosorbent assays for antibodies to herpes simplex virus type 2 glycoprotein G in culture-documented cases of genital herpes, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:5212–5214, 2003.
Musher DM, Musher BL: Contagious acute gastrointestinal infections, *N Engl J Med* 351:2417–2427, 2004.
Nash D, Mostashari F, Fine A, et al: The outbreak of West Nile virus infection in the New York City area in 1999, *N Engl J Med* 344:1807–1814, 2001.
Natleson B: Chronic fatigue syndrome, *JAMA* 285:2557, 2001.
Nelson CT, Istas AS, Wilkerson MK, et al: PCR detection of cytomegalovirus DNA in serum as a diagnostic tool for congenital CMV infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:314, 1995.
Odumade OA, Hogquist KA, Balfour HH: Progress and problems in understanding and managing primary Epstein-Barr virus infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 24:193–209, 2011.
Ogata M, Satou T, Kadota J, et al: Human herpesvirus 6 (HHV-6) reactivation and HHV-6 encephalitis after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation: a multicenter, prospective study, *Clin Infect Dis* 57:671–681, 2013.
Ohm-Smith MJ, Nassos PS, Haller BL: Evaluation of the Binax NOW, BD Directigen and BD Directigen EZ assays for detection of respiratory syncytial virus, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:2996–2999, 2004.
Oxman MN, Levin MJ, Johnson GR, et al: A vaccine to prevent herpes zoster and post herpetic neuralgia in older adults, *N Engl J Med* 352:2271–2284, 2005.
Papaventsis DC, Dove W, Cunliffe NA, et al: Human astrovirus gastroenteritis in children, Madagascar, *Emerg Infect Dis* 14:844, 2008.
Papenburg J, Buckeridge DL, De Serrer G, et al: Host and viral factors affecting clinical performance of a rapid diagnostic test for respiratory syncytial virus in hospitalized children, *J Pediatrics* 163:911–913, 2013.
Pass RF: Maternal laboratory assessment and fetal risk of cytomegalovirus infection, *Clin Infect Dis* 56:1436–1437, 2013.
Payne DC, Baggs J, Zerr DM, et al: Protective association between rotavirus vaccination and childhood seizures in the year following vaccination in US children, *Clin Infect Dis* 58:173–177, 2014.
Pealer LN, Marfin AA, Petersen LR, et al: Transmission of West Nile virus through blood transfusion in the United States in 2002, *N Engl J Med* 349:1236–1245, 2003.
Perez-Padilla R, de la Rosa-Zamboni D, Ponce de Leon S, et al: Pneumonia and respiratory failure from swine-origin Influenza A (H1N1) in Mexico, *N Engl J Med* 361:680–689, 2009.
Perkins SM, Webb DL, Torrance SA, et al: Comparison of a real-time reverse transcription PCR assay and a culture technique for quantitative assessment of viral load in children naturally infected with respiratory syncytial virus, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:2356–2362, 2005.
Petersen LR, Brault AC, Nusci RS: West Nile Virus: Review of the literature, *JAMA* 310:308–315, 2013.
Petersen LR, Hayes EB: Westward Ho? The spread of West Nile virus, *N Engl J Med* 351:2257–2259, 2004.
Piotrowska Z, Vasquez M, Shapiro ED, et al: Rhinoviruses are a major cause of wheezing and hospitalization in children less than 2 years of age, *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 28:25–29, 2009.
Poland GA, Jacobson RM: Prevention of hepatitis B with the hepatitis B vaccine, *N Engl J Med* 351:2832–2838, 2004.
Principi N, Bosis S, Esposito S: Effects of coronavirus infections in children, *Emerg Infect Dis* 16:183–188, 2010.
Principi N, Esposito S: Antigen based assays for the identification of influenza virus and respiratory syncytial virus: why and how to use them in pediatric practice, *Clin Lab Med* 29:649–660, 2009.
Prober C: Sixth disease and the ubiquity of human herpesviruses, *N Engl J Med* 352:753–755, 2005.
Reeves WC, Stamey FR, Black JB, et al: Human herpesviruses 6 and 7 in chronic fatigue syndrome: a case-control study, *Clin Infect Dis* 31:48–52, 2000.
Remington JS, Thulliez P, Montoya JG: Recent developments for diagnosis of toxoplasmosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:941–945, 2004.
Revello MG, Baldanti F, Sarasini A, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of rubella virus infection by direct detection and semiquantitation of viral RNA in clinical samples by RT-PCR, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:708, 1997.
Revello MG, Gerna G: Diagnosis and management of human cytomegalovirus infection in the mother, fetus, and newborn infant, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 15:680–715, 2002.
Reznicek JE, Bloch KC: Diagnostic testing for encephalitis, part I, *Clin Microbiol Newsletter* 32:17–23, 2010a.
Reznicek JE, Bloch KC: Diagnostic testing for encephalitis, part II, *Clin Microbiol Newsletter* 32:25–31, 2010b.
Rhee EG, Barouch DH: Adenoviruses. In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2010, Churchill Livingstone.
Ribes JA, Steele AD, Seabolt JP, et al: Six year study of the incidence of herpes in genital and nongenital cultures in a central Kentucky Medical Center patient, *J Clin Microbiol* 39:3321–3325, 2001.
Rodriguez C, Chevaliez S, Bensadoun P, et al: Characterization of the dynamics of hepatitis B virus resistance to Adefovir by ultra-deep pyrosequencing, *Hepatology* 58:890–901, 2013.
Rogers R, Windust A, Gregory J: Evaluation of a novel dry latex preparation for demonstration of infectious mononucleosis heterophile antibody in comparison with three established tests, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:95, 1999.
Romero JR: Diagnosis and management of enteroviral infections of the central nervous system, *Curr Infect Dis Rep* 4:309–316, 2002.
Romero JR: Pediatric group B coxsackievirus infections, *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 323:223–239, 2008.
Rous P: Transmission of a malignant new growth by means of a cell-free filtrate, *JAMA* 56:198–200, 1911.
Sadeghi M, Kantola K, Finnegan DP: Possible involvement of human bocavirus 1 in the death of a middle-aged immunosuppressed patient, *J Clin Microbiol* 51: 3461–3463, 2013.
Saludes V, González V, Planas R, et al: Tools for the diagnosis of hepatitis C virus infection and hepatic fibrosis staging, *World J Gastroenterol* 20:3431–3442, 2014.
Schluter WW, Reef SE, Redd SC, et al: Changing epidemiology of congenital rubella syndrome in the United States, *J Infect Dis* 178:636, 1998.
Schrim J, Meulenberg G, Pastoorm P, et al: Rapid detection of varicella zoster virus in clinical specimens using monoclonal antibodies on shell vials and smears, *J Med Virol* 28:1, 1989.
Schupbach J: Human immunodeficiency viruses. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 8, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press.
Shahrabadi MS, Lee PW: Calcium requirement for syncytium formation in HEp-2 cells by respiratory syncytial virus, *J Clin Microbiol* 26:139, 1988.
Simko JP, Caliendo AM, Hogle K, et al: Differences in laboratory findings for cerebrospinal fluid specimens obtained from patients with meningitis or encephalitis due to herpes simplex virus (HSV) documented by detection of HSV DNA, *Clin Infect Dis* 35:414–418, 2002.
Smith J: Rabies virus. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 8, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press.
Snapinn KW, Holmes EC, Young DS, et al: Declining growth rate of West Nile virus in North America, *J Virol* 81:2531–2534, 2007.
Soderlund-Strand A, Rymark P, Andersson P, et al: Comparison between the Hybrid Capture II test and a PCR-based human papillomavirus detection method for diagnosis and post-treatment follow-up of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:3260, 2005.
Soto-Abraham MV, Soriano-Rosas J, Díaz-Quiñónez A, et al: Pathological changes associated with 2009 C2 H1N1 virus, *N Engl J Med* 361:2001–2003, 2009.
Souza JS: Severe metapneumovirus infections among immunocompetent and immunocompromised patients admitted to hospital with respiratory infection, *J Med Virol* 85:530–536, 2013.
Stagno S, Pass RF, Dworsky ME, et al: Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: the relative importance of primary and recurrent maternal infection, *N Engl J Med* 306:945–949, 1982.
Steiner I, Kennedy PG, Pachner AR: The neurotrophic viruses: herpes simplex and varicella-zoster, *Lancet Neurol* 6:1015–1028, 2007.
Stramer SL, Glynn SA, Kleinman SH, et al: Detection of HIV-1 and HCV infections among antibody negative blood donors by nucleic acid-amplification testing, *N Engl J Med* 351:760, 2004.
Strickler JG, Fedeli F, Horwitz CA, et al: Infectious mononucleosis in lymphoid tissue: histopathology, in situ hybridization and differential diagnosis, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 117:269, 1993.
Sullivan SJ, Jacobson RM, Dowdle WP, et al: 2009 H1N1 influenza, *Mayo Clin Proc* 85:64–76, 2010.
Talbot H, Shepherd B, Crowe JE Jr, et al: The pediatric burden of human coronaviruses evaluated for twenty years, *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 28:682–687, 2009.
Tang YW, Crowe JE: Respiratory syncytial virus and human metapneumovirus. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 9, Washington, DC, 2008, ASM Press.
Tate JE, Bunning ML, Lott L, et al: Outbreak of severe respiratory disease associated with emergent human adenovirus serotype 14 at a US Air Force training facility in 2007, *J Infect Dis* 199:1419–1426, 2009.
Templeton KE, Scheltinga SA, Beersma MF, et al: Rapid and sensitive method using multiplex real-time PCR for diagnosis of infections by influenza A and B viruses, respiratory syncytial virus and parainfluenza viruses, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:1564–1569, 2004.
Thielman NM, Guerrant RL: Acute infectious diarrhea, *N Engl J Med* 350:38–47, 2004.
Thomas EE, Roscoe DL, Brook L, et al: The utility of latex agglutination assays in the diagnosis of pediatric viral gastroenteritis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 101:742, 1994.
Thompson MG, Shea DK, Zhou H, et al: Updated estimates of mortality associated with seasonal influenza through the 2006-2007 influenza season, *MMWR* 59:1057–1062, 2010.
Tolfvenstam T, Papadogiannakis N, Norbeck O, et al: Frequency of human parvovirus B19 infection in intrauterine fetal death, *Lancet* 357:1494–1497, 2001.
Townsend CL, Forsgren M, Ahlfors K, et al: Long-term outcomes of congenital cytomegalovirus infection in Sweden and the United Kingdom, *Clin Infect Dis* 56:1232–1239, 2013.
Treanor JJ: Influenza viruses, including avian influenza and swine influenza. In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2010, Churchill Livingstone.
Tristram DA: Respiratory syncytial virus. In Murray PR, editor: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 8, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press.
Tuaillon E, Mondain AM, Nagot N, et al: Comparison of serum HBsAg quantitation by four immunoassays, and relationships of HBsAg level with HBV replication and HBV genotypes, *PLoS ONE* 7:e32143, 2012.

Van Panhuis WG, Grefenstette J, Jung SY, et al: Contagious diseases in the United States from 1888 to the present, *N Engl J Med* 369:2152–2158, 2013.

Vazquez M, Shapiro ED: Varicella vaccine and infection with varicella zoster virus, *N Engl J Med* 352:439, 2005.

Versalovic J: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology.

Ville Y, Leruez-Ville M: Managing infections in pregnancy, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 27:251–257, 2014.

Vora NM, Holman RC, Mehal JM: Burden of encephalitis-associated hospitalizations in the United States, 1998-2010, *Neurology* 82:443–451, 2014.

Wald A, Haung ML, Selke S, et al: Polymerase chain reaction for detection of herpes simplex virus (HSV) DNA on mucosal surfaces: comparison with HSV isolation in cell culture, *J Infect Dis* 188:1345–1351, 2003.

Walsh PFG, Vink C, Keijdener J, et al: Comparison of respiratory virus detection rates for infants and toddlers by use of flocked swabs, saline aspirates, and saline aspirates mixed in universal transport medium for room temperature storage and shipping, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:2374–2376, 2008.

Weinberg A, Walker ML: Evaluation of three immunoassay kits for rapid detection of influenza virus A and B, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 12:367–370, 2005.

Wenzel JJ, Preiss J, Schemmerer M, et al: Detection of hepatitis E virus (HEV) from porcine livers in Southeastern Germany and high sequence homology to human HEV isolates, *J Clin Virol* 52:50–54, 2011.

Wenzel JJ, Preiss J, Schemmerer M, et al: Test performance characteristics of Anti-HEV IgG assays strongly influence hepatitis E seroprevalence estimates, *J Infect Dis* 207:497–500, 2013.

White PA: Evolution of norovirus, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 20:741–745, 2014.

Williams CF, Klinzman D, Yamashita TE, et al: Persistant GB virus C infection and survival in HIV-infected men, *N Engl J Med* 350:981–990, 2004.

World Health Organization (WHO): Hepatitis E Fact sheet N 280. 2014.

Wolffs PFG, Vink C, Keijdener J, et al: Evaluation of MeningoFinder, a novel multiplex ligation-dependent probe amplification assay for simultaneous detection of six virus species causing central nervous system infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:2620–2622, 2009.

Wong S, Pabbaraju K, Lee BE, et al: Enhanced viral etiological diagnosis of respiratory system infection outbreaks by use of a multi-target nucleic acid amplification assay, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:3839–3845, 2009.

Woo CY, Lau SKP, Lam CSF, et al: Discovery of seven novel mammalian and avian coronaviruses on the genus detalconronavirus supports bat coronaviruses as the gene source of aphacoronaviruses and betacoronaviruses and avian coronaviruses as the gene source of gammacoronavirus and deltacororonavirus, *J Virol* 86:3995–4008, 2012.

Wreghitt RG, Teare EL, Sule O, et al: Cytomegalovirus infection in immunocompetent patients, *Clin Infect Dis* 37:1603–1606, 2003.

Wu W, Tang YW: Emerging molecular assays for detection and characterization of respiratory viruses, *Clin Lab Med* 29:673–693, 2009.

Xu F: Trends in herpes simplex virus type 1 and type 2 seroprevalence in the United States, *JAMA* 296:964–973, 2006.

Yam WC, Chan KH, Poon LLM, et al: Evaluation of reverse transcription-PCR assays for rapid diagnosis of severe acute respiratory syndrome associated with a novel coronavirus, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:4521–4524, 2003.

Yeldandi AV, Colby TV: Pathologic features of lung biopsy specimens from influenza pneumonia cases, *Hum Pathol* 25:47, 1994.

Young NS, Brown KE: Parvovirus B19, *N Engl J Med* 350:586–597, 2004.

Zaki AM, van Boheemen S, Bestobroer TM, et al: Isolation of a novel coronavirus from a man with pneumonia in Saudi Arabia, *N Engl J Med* 367:1814–1820, 2012.

Zerbini M, Messianic M, Gentilomi G, et al: Comparative evaluation of virological and serological methods in prenatal diagnosis of parvovirus B19 fetal hydrops, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:603–608, 1996.

Zerr DM, Amalia SM, Selke SS, et al: A population-based study of primary human herpesvirus 6 infection, *N Engl J Med* 352:768–776, 2005.

Zoulim F, Locarnini S: Management of treatment failure in chronic hepatitis B, *J Hepatology* 59:S112–S122, 2012.

CHAPTER 57

CHLAMYDIAL, RICKETTSIAL, AND MYCOPLASMAL INFECTIONS

Juan P. Olano, David H. Walker, Gail L. Woods

CHLAMYDIAL INFECTIONS, 1099
Structure, 1099
Replication, 1099
Chlamydia trachomatis, 1100
Chlamydophila (formerly *Chlamydia*) *psittaci*, 1101
Chlamydophila (formerly *Chlamydia*) *pneumoniae*, 1101
Laboratory Diagnosis, 1101
Treatment, 1103

RICKETTSIAL INFECTIONS, 1103
Infections Caused by Organisms of the Genus *Rickettsia*, 1103
Scrub Typhus Caused by *Orientia tsutsugamushi*, 1107
Infections Caused by Organisms of the Genera *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma*, 1107
Infections Caused by *Coxiella burnetii*, 1109
Infections Caused by Organisms of the Genus *Bartonella*, 1110

MYCOPLASMAL AND UREAPLASMAL INFECTIONS, 1111
Mycoplasma pneumoniae, 1111
Genital Mycoplasmas, 1112
Laboratory Diagnosis, 1112
Treatment, 1113

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1113

KEY POINTS

- *Chlamydia trachomatis* is the most common bacterial cause of sexually transmitted disease in the United States.
- The most sensitive method for detecting *C. trachomatis* is nucleic acid amplification.
- *Chlamydophila pneumoniae* (formerly *Chlamydia pneumoniae*) is responsible for at least 10% of community-acquired pneumonias.
- Treatable rickettsial infections, including life-threatening Rocky Mountain spotted fever, boutonneuse fever, epidemic typhus, murine typhus, scrub typhus, human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis, and human granulocytotropic anaplasmosis, are seldom diagnosed serologically during the acute stage of illness owing to absence of an early antibody response.
- Immunohistochemistry and molecular diagnostics are effective in diagnosing rickettsioses and ehrlichioses, respectively.
- Q fever endocarditis is a chronic infection that usually is diagnosed by detecting a high titer (≥1:800 by immunofluorescent antibody assay) of antibodies against *Coxiella burnetii* phase I antigen.
- The clinicoepidemiologic diagnosis of cat scratch disease can be confirmed serologically by antibodies to *Bartonella henselae* or by polymerase chain reaction testing of lymph node aspirates.
- Pneumonia due to *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* is often diagnosed on the basis of clinical manifestations alone. Definitive diagnosis requires detection of nucleic acid in a respiratory specimen by nucleic acid amplification or detection of specific immunoglobulin (Ig)M.

Human infections caused by chlamydias, rickettsiae, and mycoplasmas are discussed separately because the responsible pathogens differ from most other bacteria in several ways: The organisms are smaller, the structure of their cell walls is different, and chlamydias and many rickettsiae are obligately intracellular parasites.

CHLAMYDIAL INFECTIONS

The chlamydias have a tropism for columnar epithelial cells. They have a cell wall similar to that of gram-negative bacteria; they contain both deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and ribonucleic acid (RNA), have prokaryotic ribosomes, and synthesize their own proteins, nucleic acids, and lipids; they divide by binary fission; and they are susceptible to particular antibiotics. Unlike most bacteria, the chlamydias are "energy parasites"; they lack cytochromes and so cannot synthesize high-energy adenosine triphosphate (ATP) metabolites. For this reason, they are obligate intracellular bacteria and cannot replicate outside cells.

The chlamydias are classified in the order Chlamydiales, family Chlamydiaceae, the only family that contains human pathogens (Everett et al, 1999). Two genera and three species are pathogenic for humans: *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Chlamydophila* (formerly *Chlamydia*) *psittaci*, and *Chlamydophila* (formerly *Chlamydia*) *pneumoniae*. Features useful for differentiating the three species are shown in Table 57-1. These genera also contain six other species that have not been associated with infection in humans. There are two biovars of *C. trachomatis:* lymphogranuloma venereum (Biovar LGV) and trachoma (Biovar trachoma), which preferentially infect humans. Biovar LGV contains four serovars (L1, L2, L2a, and L3), and 15 serovars are included in Biovar trachoma: A, B, Ba, and C are associated with trachoma, whereas D to K, Da, Ia, and Ja are associated with genital infections. Mouse and hamster isolates that previously made up the third biovar of *C. trachomatis* have been reclassified as a new species, *Chlamydia muridarum* (Everett et al, 1999).

STRUCTURE

Two morphologically distinct forms of chlamydia are recognized. The elementary body is a dense, spherical form, 0.2 to 0.4 μm in diameter, that contains prokaryotic ribosomal RNA and has a rigid cell wall caused by extensive disulfide cross-linking of cell wall proteins. It is the infectious form of the organism, capable of limited extracellular survival. The reticulate body, 0.6 to 1.0 μm in diameter, is the intracellular, metabolically active form, incapable of surviving outside cells. The closed circular DNA of both forms is compactly organized in a central nucleoid and has a genome of 1.0 to 1.2 million nucleotide base pairs.

Two components of the outer membrane of the chlamydial outer membrane complex have diagnostic importance. The most prominent is the major outer membrane protein (MOMP), a transmembrane protein with serovar-, species-, genus-, and family-reactive epitopes defined by monoclonal antibodies. Infection with chlamydias induces MOMP-specific antibodies, but their role in protective immunity is unclear. The chlamydial outer membrane complex also contains a lipopolysaccharide (LPS) antigen, which is the major antigen detected in genus-specific serologic tests for chlamydial infection. Monoclonal antibodies and monospecific polyvalent antisera to the LPS or MOMP are used in direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) tests and enzyme immunoassays (EIAs) to detect chlamydial antigen in clinical specimens.

REPLICATION

Chlamydias replicate in the cytoplasm of infected host cells. The developmental cycle begins with attachment of the elementary body to a microvillus on a susceptible columnar cell via heparin bridges. The elementary

TABLE 57-1
Useful Features for Differentiating Species of *Chlamydia* and *Chlamydophila* Pathogenic for Humans

Parameter	SPECIES		
	Chlamydia trachomatis	***Chlamydophila psittaci***	***Chlamydophila pneumoniae***
Sulfa susceptibility	Susceptible	Resistant	Resistant
Glycogen staining of inclusion	Positive	Negative	Negative
Elementary body shape	Round	Round	Pear-shaped or round

body travels down the microvillus and localizes in indentations of the host cell plasma membrane. There, the chlamydia enters the host cell in an endosome, where *C. psittaci*, *C. pneumoniae*, and *C. trachomatis* remain during their intracellular development. Endosomes containing elementary bodies of *C. psittaci* do not become acidified or fuse with cellular lysosomes; those containing *C. trachomatis* elementary bodies fuse with one another and perhaps with lysosomes. Within 6 to 8 hours after the elementary body enters the host cell, changes in its cell wall result in a transition to the reticulate body and subsequent initiation of DNA, RNA, and protein synthesis and its division by binary fission. Host cell mitochondria migrate to and are positioned against the enlarging endosome, allowing the reticulate body to utilize host cell ATP. Reticulate bodies begin to reorganize 18 to 24 hours after infection, and, presumably when nutrients are depleted, they mature into elementary bodies, which are released from the host cell. Cells infected with *C. psittaci* usually are severely damaged, and the organisms are released by cell lysis within 48 hours. In contrast, the inclusion of *C. trachomatis* appears to be extruded by fusion of the inclusion membrane with the plasma membrane 72 to 96 hours after infection, leaving a lesion in the surviving host cell membrane.

CHLAMYDIA TRACHOMATIS

C. trachomatis is the most common cause of sexually transmitted disease in the United States, and it is the primary infectious cause of blindness in trachoma-endemic regions of the Middle East, sub-Saharan Africa, and Asia. The disorder is endemic in more than 50 countries, and estimates indicate that more than 3 million people are affected, with over one third having progressed to blindness (Burton & Mabey, 2009).

Epidemiology, Pathology, and Clinical Manifestations

Humans are the only known natural host for all strains of *C. trachomatis*. The clinical manifestations and organ specificity of human infections with *C. trachomatis* are determined by both the mechanism of transmission and the properties of the infecting strain. Epidemiologically, *C. trachomatis* infections are divided into three categories: classic trachoma, sexually transmitted infections of adults, and perinatal ocular and respiratory tract infections.

Classic trachoma is an important cause of blindness in areas where public sanitation is inadequate and personal hygiene is poor (Solomon et al, 2004). The disease is due to repeated infections of the conjunctiva, resulting in a pathologic sequence over time of follicular conjunctivitis, subepithelial scarring, contraction of the scar resulting in turning inward of the eyelid (entropion), rubbing of the eyelashes on the cornea (trichiasis) with subsequent corneal injury, and corneal scarring with opacification and reduced vision. Typically, acute infection is transmitted among children via fingers, fomites, and probably flies, and most children become chronically infected within a few years of birth. Conjunctival scarring usually becomes evident by the second or third decade of life, and blindness can occur anywhere from 10 to 40 years after the first infection (Dean et al, 2008). It is interesting to note that other species of the *Chlamydiaceae* (*C. psittaci* and *C. pneumonia*) may also be involved in the pathogenesis of trachoma (Dean et al, 2008).

C. trachomatis–induced sexually transmitted infections of adults include LGV and urethritis/cervicitis and associated complications. LGV is endemic in Asia, Africa, and South America. In the United States, approximately 500 cases are reported each year; the disease affects males more frequently than females and is most common in persons of low socioeconomic status living in the southeastern states, in men who have sex with men, and in persons who have visited LGV-endemic countries outside the United States. LGV is transmitted sexually, although transmission by fomites and by aerosols produced during laboratory accidents has caused pneumonitis, pleural effusions, and mediastinal or hilar lymphadenopathy (Jones & Batteiger, 2000). Reservoirs of infection probably are persons with asymptomatic or ignored symptomatic urethral, cervical, or anorectal infection.

LGV is the only infection caused by *C. trachomatis* that produces multisystem involvement and constitutional manifestations. During the primary phase, a small, painless vesicle or a nonindurated papule or ulcer develops, often on the external genitalia, 3 days to 3 weeks after exposure, and heals quickly without scarring. If transmission is rectal, an acute proctitis is often the first manifestation. An outbreak of LGV proctitis in men who have sex with men was first noticed in Europe at the beginning of this century and is due to infection with a unique LGV variant (labeled "L2b") (Spaargaren et al, 2005). Genomic similarity to isolates obtained from patients in the early 1980s in the United States suggests a silent ongoing epidemic in this population caused by this unique variant (Spaargaren et al, 2005). The secondary stage, characterized by suppurative regional lymphadenopathy, fever, chills, anorexia, headache, myalgias, and arthralgias, begins 2 to 6 weeks after exposure. The primary ulcer or papule often resolves before the secondary stage, but an acute proctitis may persist. Histologic examination of affected lymph nodes shows granulomas surrounding stellate abscesses. Involved lymph nodes become matted and eventually suppurate, producing draining fistulas that heal with scarring over several months. Fibrosis and resultant abnormal lymphatic drainage are responsible for the urethral or rectal strictures or induration and lymphedema of the genitalia that develop during the third stage.

Non-LGV *C. trachomatis* infection is the most frequent sexually transmitted disease reported to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in the United States. In 2013, 1,401,906 chlamydial infections were reported to the CDC, corresponding to a rate of 446.6 cases per 100,000 population (http://www.cdc.gov/std/stats13/chlamydia.htm). From 1993 to 2011, the rate increased from 178.0 to 453.4 cases per 100,000 population. The clinical spectrum of sexually transmitted infections due to non-LGV strains of *C. trachomatis* is similar to disease caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (see Chapter 58). In men, *C. trachomatis* is responsible for 30% to 50% of cases of nongonococcal urethritis, but as many as 85% to 90% of men who harbor *C. trachomatis* in the urethra are asymptomatic (Peipert, 2003). Rarely, urethritis caused by *C. trachomatis* progresses to epididymitis. Among men who have sex with men, non-LGV strains of *C. trachomatis* have been associated with proctitis.

Genital infection with *C. trachomatis* is diagnosed more often in women than in men, with a rate of 523.1/100,000 reported for women in the United States in 2013, about twice the rate among men (http://www.cdc.gov/std/stats13/chlamydia.htm)—a rate difference that is thought, at least in part, to reflect the greater number of women screened for this infection. Infection of the endocervix with *C. trachomatis* is often asymptomatic, but at least one third of women have signs of infection on physical examination. The most common sign is mucopurulent cervicitis, which can spread to the urethra and urinary bladder, resulting in the acute urethral syndrome of abacteriuric pyuria, or to the endometrium and fallopian tubes, producing endometritis or salpingitis. Untreated infections of the upper reproductive tract may progress to pelvic inflammatory disease or may cause scarring and dysfunction of the oviduct transport system, which could result in infertility, ectopic pregnancy, or chronic pelvic pain. Intraperitoneal spread of the infection may cause acute peritonitis, perihepatitis (Fitz-Hugh–Curtis syndrome), periappendicitis, or perisplenitis. A portion (1% to 5%) of patients with urogenital infection with *C. trachomatis* will develop a reactive arthritis that is usually self-limited but may develop a chronic relapsing course (Rihl et al, 2006; Carter et al, 2009). Chlamydial infection in pregnancy has been associated with preterm labor, premature rupture of membranes, low birth weight, neonatal death, and postpartum endometritis. A small percentage of adults with chlamydial genital infections develop inclusion conjunctivitis from autoinoculation.

In developed countries, where sexually transmitted infection with *C. trachomatis* is epidemic, the organism may be transmitted from infected mother to infant during passage through the birth canal. Data from studies in North America indicate that 60% to 70% of infants exposed to *C. trachomatis* during vaginal delivery become infected with the organism, whereas infection after cesarean section is uncommon (Jones & Batteiger, 2000). Rates of chlamydial infection in 2013 were highest among women 15 to 19 years of age (3043.3 cases/100,000 women) and 20 to 24 years of age (3621.1 cases/100,000 women) (http://www.cdc.gov/std/stats13/chlamydia.htm). *C. trachomatis* is recovered from the conjunctiva of

infected infants after 1 to 2 weeks and from the nasopharynx soon thereafter. The rate of isolation from the conjunctiva falls by 5 to 6 weeks, but *C. trachomatis* can be recovered from the nasopharynx, conjunctiva, rectum, and vagina (usually without producing symptoms) for several months.

Inclusion conjunctivitis, the most common manifestation of infection with *C. trachomatis* in infants, develops in nearly 80% of infants whose conjunctival culture or cytologic examination demonstrates the organism (Jones & Batteiger, 2000), and among those with conjunctivitis, approximately 50% will have a nasopharyngeal infection. A mucopurulent discharge appears 2 to 25 days after birth, and the conjunctiva becomes inflamed and edematous. Severity ranges from a mild infection with scant discharge to copious mucopurulent discharge with severe swelling and pseudomembrane formation.

Approximately 20% to 30% of infants who acquire infection with *C. trachomatis* at birth develop interstitial pneumonitis. The illness begins at between 2 weeks and 3 months of age (peak, 3 to 6 weeks) with nasal congestion, followed by a distinctive staccato cough with tachypnea and rales but no fever. Hyperinflation with interstitial or alveolar infiltrates on chest radiograph and peripheral eosinophilia are frequently seen. About one half of patients have or have had conjunctivitis. Symptoms last several weeks, but inspiratory rales and chest roentgenographic changes may persist for months.

CHLAMYDOPHILA (FORMERLY *CHLAMYDIA*) *PSITTACI*

Pneumonia associated with exposure to birds was described in Switzerland in 1879. The disease was rare in the United States and Europe until the late 1920s, when pet tropical birds became fashionable. The pathogen was isolated by Bedson from human and avian tissue in 1930 during an investigation of an outbreak at the London Zoo.

Epidemiology

Infection caused by *Chlamydophila* (formerly *Chlamydia*) *psittaci* (also called *psittacosis*, *parrot fever*, or *ornithosis*) occurs worldwide. *C. psittaci* has seven genotypes (A to F, E/B), all of which are infective for humans. Psittacine birds are considered the major reservoir, but most species of birds can be infected with the organism. Infected birds may be obviously ill and may die of the disease, but frequently they have mild signs such as anorexia, diarrhea, lethargy, and ruffled feathers. Human illness is sporadic and has been associated with exposure to parrots, canaries, pigeons, sparrows, ducks, cockatiels, fowl (especially turkeys), and occasionally mammals. Owners of pet birds account for about one half of the cases reported in the United States each year. From 2005 to 2009, 66 human cases were reported to the CDC, which likely is an underrepresentation because patients with mild illness may not seek medical attention or be reported (CDC, 2010). Pet shop employees, pigeon fanciers, zoo workers, veterinarians, and others who work with birds are at increased risk for infection. Outbreaks have occurred among poultry processing plant workers, principally among workers who killed the birds and plucked their feathers and those who eviscerated carcasses, with a mortality of about 1%, even with appropriate therapy (CDC, 1990; Petrovay & Balla, 2008). Before the discovery of antibiotics, the mortality rate for human infection was 15% to 20%. Over the past several decades, the prevalence of psittacosis in the United States has declined dramatically as a result of adding tetracycline to poultry feed, requiring medication of commercially imported psittacine birds before entering the country, and domestic breeding of parakeets.

C. psittaci is present in the blood, tissues, excreta, and feathers of infected birds and may be shed for months after acute infection. Transmission to humans occurs via inhalation of infectious aerosols derived from feces, fecal dust, and secretions of *C. psittaci*–infected birds, but may result from handling contaminated plumage or tissues, from bird bites, or from mouth-to-beak contact. Contact with birds does not have to be close or prolonged. Person-to-person spread of *C. psittaci* is rare.

Pathogenesis and Pathology

C. psittaci enters the body via the respiratory tract and is transported to the macrophages of the liver and spleen, where the organisms replicate. They then enter the blood and travel to the lungs, the primary target of infection, and other organs. Histologic examination of lung tissue shows lymphocytes in the alveolar and interstitial spaces and mucous plugging of the bronchioles. Small hemorrhages and macrophages with intracytoplasmic inclusions may be seen. The hilar lymph nodes, liver, and spleen may be enlarged and may contain foci of necrosis; in fatal cases, the myocardium, pericardium, meninges, brain, and adrenal glands may be involved.

Clinical Manifestations

After an incubation period of 1 to 2 weeks, psittacosis may begin abruptly with chills and fever, or it may begin more gradually with increasing fever and malaise. Persistent dry, hacking cough, occasionally productive of blood-streaked mucoid sputum, is prominent. The heart rate is often slow relative to body temperature, and a diffuse, severe headache is usual. Malaise, anorexia, painful myalgias, and arthralgias are common, and a macular rash (Horder spots) resembling the rose spots of typhoid fever may occur. Decreased mentation may develop at the end of the first week of illness, and some may have gastrointestinal complaints. *C. psittaci* is a rare cause of destructive endocarditis; most affected persons have a history of rheumatic heart disease or congenital valvular abnormalities (Jones et al, 1982).

CHLAMYDOPHILA (FORMERLY *CHLAMYDIA*) *PNEUMONIAE*

In 1986, a unique chlamydial organism, initially considered to be a strain of *C. psittaci*, was associated with acute respiratory tract disease in humans. The organism was named TWAR for the laboratory identifying letters of the first two isolates: TW-183, isolated in 1965 from the eye of a control child in a trachoma vaccine trial in Taiwan, and AR-39, recovered the same year from the throat of a student with pharyngitis at the University of Washington. Soon after its recognition, data from DNA homology and electron microscopic studies showed that this unique organism was a separate species, designated as *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, which has been reclassified as *Chlamydophila pneumoniae* (Campbell et al, 1987; Chi et al, 1987; Cox et al, 1988; Everett et al, 1999).

Epidemiology

The epidemiology of infection with *C. pneumoniae* is based on data from retrospective studies of sera collected during respiratory tract illnesses. About 50% of adults have antibodies to *C. pneumoniae*. Antibody prevalence rates are low in children, increase sharply in teenagers, continue to increase until middle age, and remain high into old age; rates are 10% to 25% higher for males. Data from retrospective and prospective serologic studies indicate that disease caused by *C. pneumoniae* is endemic in the United States and epidemic in Scandinavia and Finland, but does not occur with any consistent seasonal periodicity (Grayston et al, 1989, 1990). *C. pneumoniae* appears to be a primary human pathogen, transmitted from person to person without an avian or animal reservoir. The mechanism and place of transmission, incubation period, and infectiousness of the organism have not yet been determined.

Pathogenesis

The pathogenesis of infection with *C. pneumoniae* is unknown. Because the illness is generally mild and self-limited, autopsy studies are unavailable.

Clinical Manifestations

It is estimated that *C. pneumoniae* is responsible for at least 10% of community-acquired pneumonias (Grayston et al, 1990). The pneumonia usually is mild with a single subsegmental infiltrate, but it may be severe, especially in older adults and in those with chronic disease. It often begins with pharyngitis and hoarseness, followed by persistent cough. Although pneumonia is the most common syndrome associated with *C. pneumoniae* infection, serologic studies during epidemics among military trainees have shown that only about 10% of infections with *C. pneumoniae* result in pneumonia, suggesting that infection is frequently mild or asymptomatic and unrecognized. Other manifestations of *C. pneumoniae* infection are bronchitis, pharyngitis, fever of undetermined origin, otitis, influenza-like illness, myocarditis, endocarditis, and possibly atherosclerosis, although the latter is controversial (Campbell et al, 1998; Maraha et al, 2004).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Non-LGV *Chlamydia trachomatis*

Specimens for detection of *C. trachomatis* are determined by the type of disease suspected (Table 57-2). Screening women at risk for genital *C. trachomatis* infection (described earlier) has been shown to decrease the rate of pelvic inflammatory disease, thus preventing subsequent reproductive sequelae (Nelson & Helfand, 2001). The transport system selected must be approved for the test method used. Specific collection techniques are discussed in Chapter 64. Most infections involve mucous membranes; specimens should be collected directly from the involved surface and must contain an adequate sample of infected epithelial cells. For females, both

TABLE 57-2
Specimens for Detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis**

Disease	Specimen
Mucopurulent cervicitis	Endocervical swab, urine
Acute urethral syndrome (women)	Urethral swab, urine
Acute endometritis	Endometrial aspirate
Acute salpingitis	Fallopian tube biopsy
Nongonococcal urethritis (men)	Urethral swab, urine
Inclusion conjunctivitis	Conjunctival scrapings/swab
Trachoma	Conjunctival scrapings/swab
Lymphogranuloma venereum	Lymph node aspirate, biopsy of ulcerated lesion, serum
Pneumonitis (infants)	Serum, tracheobronchial aspirate, nasopharyngeal swab

*Urine is acceptable for some enzyme-linked immunoassays and for the commercial nucleic acid amplification tests.

vaginal and endocervical specimens are acceptable. Purulent discharge is not an appropriate specimen and should be removed before a sample is collected with a swab or brush. Of the types of swabs available, Dacron- or rayon-tipped swabs with a plastic or wire shaft are preferred. Swabs with wooden shafts should be avoided because wood is toxic to the organism. Calcium alginate swabs may be toxic to the chlamydias or to the cells that support their growth. Cotton-tipped swabs are acceptable but are occasionally toxic to the chlamydias. Collection of urine for nucleic acid amplification testing should follow manufacturer recommendations.

Nucleic Acid Amplification

Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) have been shown in many studies to be highly specific and more sensitive than culture for detection of non-LGV *C. trachomatis* in urogenital specimens (Goessens et al, 1997; Carroll et al, 1998; Ferrero et al, 1998; Mahony et al, 1998; Puolakkainen et al, 1998; Toye et al, 1998; Wylie et al, 1998; Vincelette et al, 1999; van der Pol et al, 2001; Koumans et al, 2003; Boyadzhyan et al, 2004; Gaydos et al, 2004). For this reason, NAATs that are cleared by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) currently are recommended by the CDC for detection of genital tract infections caused by non-LGV *C. trachomatis* in symptomatic and asymptomatic men and women (CDC, 2014). Because NAATs have increased sensitivity compared to other test methods (discussed later), the CDC also recommends that a NAAT be used for detection of rectal and oropharyngeal chlamydial infections. However, the commercially available NAATs are not FDA-cleared for testing extragenital sites. Therefore, before they can be used for this purpose, laboratories must establish performance specifications to meet CLIA regulatory requirements and local or state regulations. Because this may be difficult due to the low rate of extragenital chlamydial infections, a laboratory may choose to send such specimens to a reference laboratory for NAAT testing. In the past, the CDC had recommended that a positive NAAT result be verified with a supplemental test if a false-positive result would likely have adverse medical, social, or psychological consequences. However, because studies assessing the value of routine repeat testing of positive specimens have shown >90% concurrence with the initial result (Schachter et al, 2005; Schachter et al, 2006), routine additional testing when the initial NAAT result is positive is no longer recommended unless otherwise indicated in the package insert.

In the United States as of May 2013, five manufacturers (Abbott Molecular Inc., Des Plaines, Ill.; Hologic/Gen-Probe Inc., San Diego, Calif.; Becton Dickinson and Company, Sparks, Md.; Cepheid, Sunnyvale, Calif.; and Roche Molecular Diagnostics, Pleasanton, Calif.) had FDA-cleared NAAT assay platforms for detection of *C. trachomatis* (and *N. gonorrhoeae*) in urogenital specimens. Nucleic acid targets, FDA-cleared specimen types, and specimen transport and storage conditions are nicely summarized elsewhere (CDC, 2014). These commercial NAATs detect both LGV and non-LGV *C. trachomatis*, but cannot distinguish between them. Specimens that would be collected for diagnosis of LGV are exudate from a lesion collected on a swab or material aspirated from an involved lymph node.

Cell Culture

Cell culture currently is the recommended test method for diagnosis of chlamydial infections in cases of suspected sexual assault or abuse in boys and extragenital infections in girls. Culture also is the only method that can be used to properly assess test of cure. Cell lines most commonly used are McCoy or buffalo green monkey cells. Both have equivalent sensitivity, but the latter cells are easier to maintain and are more resistant to cytotoxic substances; they have been associated with more inclusions and larger inclusions (Krech et al, 1989). Adding cycloheximide (0.5 to 1.5 µL/mL) to the growth medium enhances sensitivity. Cell monolayers are grown on glass coverslips in shell vials or 24-well plates, or on the surface of polystyrene 96-well or 48-well culture dishes. To enhance recovery of *C. trachomatis*, specimens are sonicated or agitated on a vortex mixer before inoculation to release elementary bodies from host cells, and inoculated shell vials or culture dishes are centrifuged. After incubation for 48 to 72 hours, monolayers are fixed and stained with fluorescein-conjugated monoclonal antibodies. If a 96-well culture system is used, passaging specimens that are negative for *C. trachomatis* at 48 hours may enhance detection; however, passaging does not significantly increase detection in shell vials or 24-well plates. Although at one time considered the "gold standard" for detection of *C. trachomatis*, it is now recognized that because of the fastidious nature of the organism, sensitivity of cell culture is only in the 50% to 75% range, although with the use of monoclonal antibodies in the staining phase, specificity should be 100% (Solomon et al, 2004; Carder et al, 2006).

Other Test Methods

Direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) tests are the only FDA-cleared tests for detecting ocular chlamydial infections. They should not be used for routine testing of genital tract specimens. This method allows direct visualization of *C. trachomatis* elementary bodies in smears of clinical specimens, and it is the only test that permits direct assessment of specimen adequacy. Monoclonal antibodies are available from various manufacturers. Antibodies directed against the species-specific MOMP of *C. trachomatis* appear to be more specific and produce more intense fluorescence than those directed against the chlamydial LPS (Cles et al, 1988). Occasionally, even the species-specific antibodies stain bacteria other than *C. trachomatis*, perhaps because of nonspecific immunoglobulin binding or cross-reactivity.

Enzyme immunoassays detect chlamydial LPS with monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies labeled with an enzyme that converts a colorless substrate into a colored product. Both solid-phase systems, which use plastic or beads coated with the antibody, and membrane systems are commercially available (Mills et al, 1992; Ehret et al, 1993; Kluytmans et al, 1993; Warren et al, 1993; Demaio et al, 1991; Bandea et al, 2009). Total processing time ranges from 15 to 30 minutes for membrane systems to 3 to 4 hours for solid-phase systems. Because these assays are neither as sensitive nor as specific as NAATs, their use is discouraged and so are not discussed further.

An FDA-cleared nucleic acid hybridization test, consisting of an acridinium-ester–labeled DNA probe complementary to *C. trachomatis* ribosomal RNA, was used in many laboratories for direct detection of *C. trachomatis* in urogenital specimens before the availability of NAATs. However, because of the superior sensitivity and specificity of NAATs, the manufacturer has discontinued marketing the nucleic acid probe assay. It is no longer commercially available.

Serologic tests have little value for diagnosis of chlamydial genital infections for two reasons. First, antibodies to *C. trachomatis* persist after the infection resolves, so a positive serologic test does not necessarily correlate with active disease. Second, many serologic tests are not specific for *C. trachomatis* because they detect genus-specific antibodies. A possible exception is diagnosis of *C. trachomatis* pneumonitis in infants, in whom detection of IgM antibodies by microimmunofluorescence (MIF) may be useful. A single IgM titer of >1:32 when tested by MIF supports a diagnosis of chlamydial pneumonia. IgG is not useful in neonates because of circulating maternal antibody.

LGV *Chlamydia trachomatis*

Diagnosis of LGV generally is based on clinical manifestations, consistent epidemiologic information, and excluding other causes of proctocolitis, inguinal lymphadenopathy, or genital or rectal ulcers. If available, testing for *C. trachomatis* also should be considered. Specimens that could be collected for diagnosis of LGV are exudate from a lesion or material aspirated from an involved lymph node. Tests to consider are culture, DFA, or nucleic acid amplification. The commercial NAATs detect both LGV and non-LGV *C. trachomatis*, but cannot distinguish between them. However, as mentioned for non-LGV *C. trachomatis*, commercially available NAATs are not FDA-cleared for the types of specimens described earlier, so validations studies would be needed before they could be used diagnostically. Because LGV has a long latent period and clinical diagnosis often is delayed, chlamydial serology can support the diagnosis in a patient with a

consistent clinical presentation. A single or stable complement fixation titer of 1:64 or greater supports a presumptive diagnosis.

Chlamydophila psittaci

The CDC has established case definitions for *C. psittaci* infections, which are described as laboratory confirmed if 1) *C. psittaci* is cultured from respiratory material, or 2) antibody titers against *C. psittaci* increase fourfold or greater when tested by complement fixation or MIF at least 2 weeks apart, or 3) a single IgM titer of >1:16 when tested by MIF is present after the onset of symptoms (CDC, 1998). *C. psittaci* can be grown in cell culture, but this is recommended only for specially equipped laboratories with experienced personnel, because the organism is especially virulent and has been associated with laboratory-acquired infection. Infection with *C. psittaci* is usually diagnosed serologically. Antibodies usually are detected by the end of the second week of illness, but early antibiotic therapy can delay their appearance for several weeks.

Chlamydophila pneumoniae

Currently, a commercial FDA-cleared NAAT is the preferred test for diagnosis of *C. pneumoniae* infection. Previously, diagnosis had been based predominantly on serologic tests (Grayston et al, 1990; Kumar & Hammerschlag, 2007), which still may occasionally be requested. IgM antibodies appear about 2 to 3 weeks after the onset of primary illness, usually decline over the next 2 to 6 months to an undetectable level, and may not reappear with reinfection. IgG antibodies are detected 6 to 8 weeks after onset of the primary illness, persist for life, and may rise 1 to 2 weeks following reinfection. The MIF test with the TWAR antigen, looking for a fourfold or greater IgG titer between acute and convalescent phase serum samples, is the serologic test method recommended by the CDC and the Infectious Disease Society of America (Kumar & Hammerschlag, 2007). A single IgM titer of ≥1:16 may also be helpful. Unfortunately, serologic tests have been shown to be insensitive, especially in children, and cross-reactions with *Mycoplasma*, *Bartonella*, and *Yersinia* species may occur. *C. pneumoniae* can be isolated in cell culture, but it is more difficult to grow than *C. trachomatis* (Roblin et al, 1992).

TREATMENT

For genital infections due to *C. trachomatis*, recommended regimens include azithromycin (1g orally, 1 dose) or doxycycline (100 mg orally twice a day for 7 days); other effective agents include erythromycin, ofloxacin, or levofloxacin (CDC, 2014). LGV requires the same daily dosage of doxycycline or erythromycin as genital infections, but for a period of 3 weeks. Ocular infections with *C. trachomatis* require systemic treatment with doxycycline or azithromycin for adults, and erythromycin for newborns; topical therapy suppresses symptoms but does not eradicate the organism. Macrolides (azithromycin and erythromycin) are acceptable alternative agents for doxycycline in infections caused by *C. pneumoniae*. For *C. psittaci*, the treatment of choice is tetracycline hydrochloride or doxycycline for 3 weeks. Erythromycin is an alternative but may be less effective in more severe cases.

RICKETTSIAL INFECTIONS

More than 100 years ago, Dr. Arnold Theiler described the first rickettsial pathogen, namely *Anaplasma marginale*, a veterinary infectious agent that targets red blood cells. During the subsequent 4 decades, three major human rickettsial pathogens would be described: *Rickettsia prowazekii* (epidemic typhus), *R. rickettsii* (Rocky Mountain spotted fever), and *R. typhi* (endemic typhus). Rickettsia is a concept that developed historically as the molecular and physical nature of viruses was defined (Weiss, 1988). In contrast with human viral agents, which also require eukaryotic host cells for their intracellular replication, rickettsiae have a gram-negative bacterial cell wall, and their growth is inhibited by particular antibiotics. Rickettsiae are further differentiated from other obligately intracellular bacteria by their ecology and frequent transmission by arthropod vectors. The traditional taxonomic scheme of rickettsiae based on such phenotypic characteristics as intracellular growth and arthropod vector transmission has undergone substantial modification in light of contemporary gene sequence analyses. Based on extensive DNA sequence analysis of several rickettsial organisms in the order *Rickettsiales*, the transition to the intracellular lifestyle occurred approximately 750 to 500 million years ago, followed by the transition to arthropods between 525 and 450 million years ago (Weinert et al, 2009). The genus *Rickettsia* is approximately 150 million years old (Weinert et al, 2009). Three major transitions occurred within the genus: sex ratio distorters in arthropods, arthropod-transmitted vertebrate pathogens, and arthropod-transmitted plant pathogens (Weinert et al, 2009). Genera that contain rickettsiae pathogenic for humans are *Rickettsia*, *Orientia*, *Ehrlichia*, *Anaplasma*, *Neorickettsia*, *Neoehrlichia*, *Coxiella*, and *Bartonella* (Dumler et al, 2001; Yu & Walker, 2003). Despite their historical association with rickettsiology and arthropod transmission, *Bartonella* are cultivable in cell-free medium and do not belong in the order *Rickettsiales* (Brenner et al, 1993). Grouped by genus, the following diseases are presented in this chapter: *Rickettsia*—Rocky Mountain spotted fever, boutonneuse fever, African tick bite fever, rickettsialpox, and murine typhus; *Orientia*—scrub typhus; *Ehrlichia*—human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis caused by *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* and human infection with *Ehrlichia ewingii*; *Anaplasma*, human granulocytotropic anaplasmosis; *Coxiella*—Q fever; and *Bartonella*—cat scratch disease, bacillary angiomatosis and peliosis, trench fever, and South American bartonellosis. The diseases caused by each genus comprise cohesive clinical and pathologic groupings, and overall the rickettsial diseases pose a similar set of diagnostic challenges with similar technical approaches to their solution.

INFECTIONS CAUSED BY ORGANISMS OF THE GENUS *RICKETTSIA*

Structure and Function

Spotted fever, transitional, and typhus group rickettsiae are genetically closely related bacteria that have a thin (0.3 to 0.5×1 to 2μm) bacillary morphology and a gram-negative cell wall containing lipopolysaccharide with antigenic components that distinguish the spotted fever and typhus groups. All *Rickettsia* species reside free in the cytosol of the host cell and divide by binary fission. Rickettsiae attach to the host cell via surface cell antigens (Sca), a family of autotransporter proteins of which OmpA (Sca0) and OmpB (Sca5) have been very well characterized (Li & Walker, 1998; Uchiyama, 1999). OmpA and OmpB are both present in spotted fever group rickettsiae, whereas OmpA is absent in typhus group rickettsiae. OmpB is in fact the ligand of a ubiquitous cell surface receptor known as Ku70 (DNA-dependent protein kinase) (Martinez & Cossart 2004; Martinez et al, 2005). Adhesion is followed by internalization, which requires ubiquitination of cholesterol-rich microdomains containing Ku70. Caveolin and clathrin further contribute to the endocytic process). On the other hand, OmpA has been shown to interact with the cell surface protein α2-β1 integrin through a discontinuous RGD motif in OmpA (Hillman et al, 2013). The roles of Sca1, Sca2, Sca4, and Epac are far less well characterized. Disruption of Sca2 inhibits actin-based motility (Kleba et al, 2010).

Once internalized, rickettsiae escape the phagosome rapidly via phospholipase activity of rickettsial origin (Silverman et al, 1992; Whitworth et al, 2005). Spotted fever group rickettsiae are propelled within cells and during release from the cell by stimulating polymerization of host cell F-actin at one pole (Heinzen et al, 1993; Gouin et al, 2004). Rickettsiae that manifest this activity (e.g., *Rickettsia rickettsii*) escape earlier from host cells and spread more quickly to other cells than those lacking this activity (e.g., *Rickettsia prowazekii*), which divide intracellularly to massive numbers before the host cell bursts and the organisms are released. According to the molecular phylogeny, *Rickettsia* species that are pathogenic for humans have evolved into three genogroups (Table 57-3) (Roux & Raoult, 1995; Roux et al, 1997; Stothard & Fuerst, 1995). The typhus group includes *R. prowazekii* and *R. typhi*. The core spotted fever group contains *R. rickettsii*, *R. conorii*, *R. japonica*, *R. africae*, *R. parkeri*, *R. honei*, *R. sibirica*, *R. aeschlimannii*, and *Rickettsia slovaca*, among others. A relatively newly recognized transitional clade contains *R. akari*, *R. australis*, and *R. felis*. *R. akari* and *R. australis* were traditionally considered to be relatively distant members of the spotted fever group, with which they share lipopolysaccharide antigens. As of 2013, twenty-six *Rickettsia* species have been validated (Parola et al, 2013).

Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever

The most severe of all the rickettsioses, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, has a substantial case-fatality rate, 5%, even among previously healthy, immunocompetent children and young adults with appropriate antibiotic treatment (Dalton et al, 1995a; Paddock et al, 1999). *R. rickettsii* normally resides in nature in ticks: *Dermacentor variabilis*, the American dog tick, in the eastern two thirds of the United States and California; *D. andersoni*, the Rocky Mountain wood tick, in the western United States; *Rhipicephalus sanguineus*, the brown dog tick, in Mexico, Brazil, and Arizona; and *Amblyomma cajennense* and *A. aureolatum* in South America. These ticks maintain *R. rickettsii* as they molt from stage to stage (larva, nymph, and adult) and transovarially from generation to generation. Fewer than 1 per 1000 ticks carries virulent *R. rickettsii*, which is pathogenic for ticks (Niebylski et al, 1999). New lines of ticks become infected by feeding on rickettsemic

TABLE 57-3

Rickettsia, Orientia, Ehrlichia, Anaplasma, Neorickettsia, Neoehrlichia, Coxiella, and Bartonella Infections

Etiologic agent	Disease	Geographic Distribution	Transmission
Spotted Fevers			
R. rickettsii	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	North, Central, and South America	Tick bite
R. conorii	Boutonneuse fever	Southern Europe, Africa, Russia, Georgia, Middle East, Indian subcontinent	Tick bite
R. africae	African tick bite fever	Southern, western and eastern Africa, Caribbean	Tick bite
R. parkeri	Maculatum disease	North and South America	Tick bite
R. sibirica	North Asian tick typhus	Russia, China, Mongolia, Pakistan, Europe, Africa	Tick bite
R. japonica	Japanese spotted fever	Japan, Korea, Thailand	Tick bite
R. honei	Flinders Island spotted fever	Australia, Asia	Tick bite
R. slovaca	TIBOLA/DEBONEL/SENLAT	Europe	Tick bite
R. aeschlimannii	Spotted fever	Sub-Saharan Africa, Europe	Tick bite
R. heilongjiangensis	Far-Eastern spotted fever	Russia, China, South Korea, Japan	Tick bite
R. massiliae	Spotted fever	Europe, Argentina	Tick bite
R. monacensis	Spotted fever	Europe	Tick bite
R. raoultii	TIBOLA/DEBONEL/SENLAT	Europe	Tick bite
R. philipii	Eschar-associated illness (mild)	California, Central America	Tick bite
Typhus Fevers			
R. prowazekii	Epidemic typhus	Potentially worldwide; in recent decades in Africa, South America, Central America, Mexico, Asia	Feces of human body louse
R. prowazekii	Brill–Zinsser disease	Worldwide; wherever persons with past epidemic typhus now reside	Recrudescence of latent infection
R. prowazekii	Flying squirrel typhus	United States	Presumably feces of flea or louse of flying squirrel
R. typhi	Murine typhus	Worldwide in tropics and subtropics	Flea feces
Transitional Group Rickettsial Fevers			
R. akari	Rickettsialpox	United States, Ukraine, Croatia, Korea, Turkey, Mexico	Mite bite
R. australis	Queensland tick typhus	Eastern Australia	Tick bite
R. felis	Flea-borne spotted fever	Worldwide	Presumably flea bite or feces
Scrub Typhus			
Orientia tsutsugamushi	Scrub typhus	Southeast Asia, Japan, China, Sri Lanka, India, Far-Eastern Russia, Indonesia, Indian Ocean and Western Pacific islands, Northern Australia	Chigger bite
Ehrlichioses			
E. chaffeensis	Human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis	United States, Africa, Asia	Tick bite
E. ewingii	Ehrlichiosis ewingii	United States, Africa, South America	Tick bite
Anaplasma phagocytophilum	Human granulocytotropic anaplasmosis	United States, Eurasia	Tick bite
Neorickettsia sennetsu	Sennetsu rickettsiosis	Asia	Unknown
Ehrlichia muris-like agent	Monocytic ehrlichiosis	Upper Midwest, United States	Tick bite
Candidatus Neoehrlichia mykurensis	Granulocytic ehrlichiosis	Europe, Asia	Unknown
Coxiellosis			
C. burnetii	Q fever	Worldwide	Inhalation of aerosols from infected animals, possibly ingestion of animal products
Bartonelloses			
B. bacilliformis	Oroya fever, verruga peruana	Western South America	Sandfly bite
B. henselae	Cat scratch disease, bacillary angiomatosis and peliosis, endocarditis, osteomyelitis, neuroretinitis, lymphadenitis	Worldwide	Kitten scratch or bite, cat flea
B. clarridgeiae	Cat-scratch–like disease	Probably worldwide	Presumed cat scratch or bite
B. quintana	Trench fever, endocarditis, bacillary angiomatosis	Worldwide	Feces of Pediculus louse
B. koehlerae	Endocarditis, lymphadenitis	California, United States	Cat scratch
B. rochalimae	Bacteremia, fever, splenomegaly	United States	Unknown
B. tamiae	Febrile illness	Thailand	Unknown
B. vinsonii (subsp. arupensis, vinsonii, berkhoffii)	Bacteremia, endocarditis	United States	Dogs, rodents
B. washoensis	Myocarditis, meningitis	United States	Fleas
B. melophagi	Bacteremia	United States	Sheep
B. ancashi	Verruga peruana	Peru	Unknown
B. grahamii	Neuroretinitis	United Kingdom	Rodents, fleas

rodents, replenishing the population of organisms transovarially maintained in ticks (Gage et al, 1990).

Infections occur when and where humans encounter *R. rickettsii*-infected ticks (Helmick et al, 1984). Although Rocky Mountain spotted fever has been documented in recent years in nearly every state except Hawaii, Alaska, and Vermont, the highest incidence is in the south Atlantic states from Maryland to Georgia and the south central states of Oklahoma, Missouri, Arkansas, and Tennessee. Most cases occur in late spring and summer but, particularly in the southern latitudes, a few cases may occur even in winter. The highest incidence is in children, adults of retirement age, and others who are exposed to ticks during outdoor activities. Fatality/case ratios are higher for persons older than 30 years of age. Fulminant Rocky Mountain spotted fever (death by the fifth day of illness) occurs in association with moderate hemolysis, for example, in African American males with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency (Walker et al, 1983).

Rickettsiae are injected via the infected tick's salivary gland secretions into the patient's dermis after 6 to 10 hours of tick feeding and spread hematogenously throughout the body. The vascular endothelium is the target of intracellular infection, with some invasion into adjacent vascular smooth muscle cells. Infected endothelium is injured by reactive-oxygen-species-induced damage to cell membranes (Silverman et al, 1992; Silverman, 1997). Damage to the endothelium (directly mediated by rickettsiae or indirectly mediated by cytokines/chemokines) results in increased vascular permeability leading to edema, hypovolemia, and hypotension (Sahni et al, 2013; Woods & Olano, 2008). The life-threatening consequences of vascular injury in the central nervous system (CNS) and lung are rickettsial meningoencephalitis and noncardiogenic pulmonary edema. Early in the course, lesions show endothelial rickettsiae without thrombi or a cellular response. Late in the course, the characteristic lymphohistiocytic perivascular infiltrate appears as interstitial pneumonia, interstitial myocarditis, perivascular glial nodules of the brain, and similar vascular lesions in the dermis, gastrointestinal tract, liver, skeletal muscles, and kidneys. Severe injury may be accompanied by focal hemorrhages but seldom by microinfarcts, except in the white matter of the brain.

The clinical illness usually begins with fever, headache, and myalgia 2 to 14 days after a tick bite (Kaplowitz et al, 1981). Nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain and tenderness, and diarrhea occur more frequently in the first 3 days of illness. The rash, which usually appears between days 3 and 5, typically begins as macules around the wrists and ankles and, later, on the arms, legs, and trunk. The lesions become maculopapular, and in one half of cases a central petechia appears in many of the maculopapules. Characteristic involvement of the palms and soles occurs in half of cases as a late manifestation. Renal failure is a feature of severe illness. CNS involvement is ominous; seizures and coma occur in 8% to 10% of cases overall, often preceding a fatal outcome. Thrombocytopenia occurs in half of cases, but disseminated intravascular coagulation is rare (Elghetany & Walker, 1999).

African Tick Bite Fever, Boutonneuse Fever, and Other Spotted Fevers

R. conorii has been isolated in southern Europe; northern, eastern, and southern Africa; Israel; Turkey; India; Pakistan; Russia; Georgia; and the Ukraine. The ecology of *R. conorii* and the epidemiology of boutonneuse fever are closely tied to ticks, especially *R. sanguineus*, which maintain the rickettsiae transovarially and transmit the infection to humans while feeding (Walker & Fishbein, 1991). Imported cases are diagnosed in travelers returning to the United States and northern Europe from the Mediterranean basin. The fatality rate among hospitalized patients is 1.4% to 5.6%, particularly in patients with underlying conditions such as diabetes and alcoholism (de Sousa et al, 2008). A milder disease caused by *R. africae* occurs with a high frequency in travelers returning from southern Africa (McQuiston et al, 2004). The clinical illness resembles that of the recently associated rickettsioses in the Americas caused by *R. parkeri*, which is essentially conspecific with *R. africae* (Paddock et al, 2004, 2008). Tick bite eschars are often multiple, regional lymphadenopathy is observed frequently, and rash is typically sparse, sometimes vesicular, and often absent. *R. sibirica* has been isolated in Russia, China, Mongolia, and Pakistan, and the distinct strain *mongolitimoniae* isolated in Asia, Europe, and Africa has been associated in one half of the cases with lymphangitis extending proximally from the eschar. *R. japonica* has been documented in Japan, and infection with *R. japonica* occurs also in Korea and Thailand. Human infections with *R. australis* occur only in Australia, and infection with *R. honei* has been documented in Australia and Asia. After an average incubation period of 7 days, these illnesses begin with fever, headache, and myalgias. Frequently, an eschar can be discovered by careful examination of the skin at this time. The pathology of these spotted fevers is well described in the tache noire or eschar at the site of tick bite inoculation of rickettsiae (Walker et al, 1988). Endothelial infection and injury by *R. conorii* in the eschar result in dermal and epidermal necrosis and perivascular edema.

The host defenses that effect killing of intracellular rickettsiae include nitric oxide, reactive oxygen species, and tryptophan limitation induced by cytokines secreted by T lymphocytes and macrophages, which infiltrate around the infected dermal blood vessels and target cell apoptosis triggered by cytotoxic $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes (Herrero-Herrero et al, 1987; Valbuena et al, 2002; Walker et al, 2001). Activation of endothelial cells by cytokines, including γ-interferon and TNF-α, results in intracellular rickettsicidal activity, and ultimate clearance is mediated by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. Disseminated endothelial infection results in maculopapular rash, meningoencephalitis, and vascular lesions in the lungs, kidneys, gastrointestinal tract, and heart (Walker & Gear, 1985). Multifocal hepatocellular necrosis and granuloma-like lesions correlate with moderately increased concentrations of hepatic transaminases (Walker et al, 1986).

Other spotted fever rickettsiae that have been occasionally associated with human disease include *R. aeshlimannii*, *R. heilongjianensis*, *R. massiliae*, *R. monacensis*, *R. philipii*, *R. helvetica*, *R. raoultii*, *R. slovaca*, and *R. tamurae* (Parola et al, 2013).

Rickettsialpox

R. akari is maintained in nature by transovarial transmission in the gamasid mite, *Liponyssoides sanguineus*, an ectoparasite of the domestic mouse, *Mus musculus*. *R. akari* has been detected only in the United States, Croatia, the Ukraine, Turkey, Mexico, and Korea, perhaps more an indication of the paucity of rickettsial investigations than the actual distribution of this rickettsial species.

A papule develops during the approximate 10-day incubation period at the site of mite bite and progresses to become a 1- to 2.5-cm eschar. Illness begins with chills, fever, malaise, severe headache, and myalgia. Rash, which appears 2 to 6 days later, is initially maculopapular, later papular, and in classic cases pustular and/or vesicular. Some patients also suffer nausea, vomiting, pharyngitis, photophobia, splenomegaly, and nuchal rigidity.

Histopathologic examination of the eschar reveals coagulative necrosis of the epidermis, underlying vascular injury, and a perivascular lymphohistiocytic infiltrate in which mononuclear phagocytes appear to be the main target cell of infection (Brettman et al, 1981; Kass et al, 1994; Walker et al, 1999). Regional lymphadenopathy and cutaneous rash presumably reflect lymphogenous and hematogenous spread, respectively.

Flea-borne Spotted Fever

A widely dispersed organism, *R. felis* is maintained transovarially in cat fleas (*Ctenocephalides felis*) with apparent involvement of opossums in a zoonotic cycle. Human infections have been documented in North America, Europe, Africa, Australia, and Asia (Schriefer et al, 1994a; Zavala-Velazquez et al, 2000; Raoult et al, 2001; Parola et al, 2003).

Murine Typhus and Louse-borne Typhus

Endemic flea-borne *R. typhi* infection, murine typhus, is presently the most important typhus group infection in the United States and causes extensive morbidity throughout the warm regions of the world (Azad, 1990). Most of the cases in the United States are concentrated in Texas and California.

Historically, epidemic louse-borne *R. prowazekii* infections have had a major impact on the outcome of military campaigns as well as scourging general populations disrupted by war, famine, and natural disasters (Zinsser, 1935; Patterson, 1993). *R. prowazekii* continues to cause disease in some poverty-stricken areas of the world and reappears in situations such as the civil war in Burundi, the extreme poverty of indigenous populations of the Andes, and other unsettled social and economic conditions. An outbreak in Russia was also described in the 1990s (Tarasevich et al, 1998). Recrudescence of latent *R. prowazekii* infections can occur years after the primary infection in immigrants from typhus-afflicted areas (Brill-Zinsser disease). These cases are responsible for initiating outbreaks in populations with a high incidence of body louse infestation. Endemic transmission of *R. prowazekii* from a natural infectious cycle of flying squirrels *(Glaucoma volans volans)* and their ectoparasites occurs in the United States (McDade et al, 1980; Reynolds et al, 2003). The incubation period ranges from 10 to 14 days, and the disease is more severe than its counterpart endemic typhus. Rash occurs in a variable proportion of cases depending largely on light skin pigmentation for its recognition. Neurologic manifestations can occur in as many as 80% cases. Respiratory manifestations occur in 40% to 70% of cases. Case-fatality rates can be as high as 60% in the absence

of antibiotic therapy and 4% when treated with appropriate antibiotics (Brouqui & Brouqui, 2012).

Murine typhus occurs particularly in tropical and subtropical coastal areas where *Rattus rattus*, *R. norvegicus*, and the Oriental rat flea abound (Azad, 1990). The fleas imbibe rickettsiae in the blood of infected rats and maintain the infection for their normal life span. Transovarian transmission occurs only at low levels; thus, horizontal transmission to other rats is a key factor in maintenance of *R. typhi* in nature. Other mammal-arthropod cycles maintain the rickettsiae and result in transmission of infections to humans (e.g., the cat flea, *C. felis*, and the opossum in Texas and California (Los Angeles County and a few other southern counties) (Schriefer et al, 1994b). Hawaii also experienced an outbreak of endemic typhus in 2002 across five islands (Maui had the majority of cases), and the animal reservoir has not been identified. The disease remains endemic in Maui, Kauai, and Oahu, and serologic studies have revealed the presence of *R. typhi* in *R. rattus*, *R. norvegicus*, *R. exulans* (Polynesian rat), and *Mus musculus* (house mice) (CDC MMWR, 2003).

Humans are believed to become infected by intradermal inoculation of infected flea feces into skin excoriated by scratching. However, inhalation of a rickettsial aerosol from dried infected flea feces or inoculation by flea bite may account for transmission in some cases. Flea bites are recalled in 0% to 40% of cases. After an incubation period of 1 to 2 weeks, illness begins with fever accompanied in some cases by severe headache, chills, myalgias, and nausea. A macular or maculopapular rash, most prominent on the trunk, is visualized on day 5 or 6 in 80% of patients with fair skin and in 20% with darkly pigmented skin. A small proportion of patients have cough and pulmonary infiltrates. Severely ill patients may also suffer coma, seizures, and other neurologic signs. Approximately 10% of hospitalized patients require admission to the intensive care unit, and 1% to 2% of murine typhus patients die (Dumler et al, 1991). CNS complications occur in 2% to 10% of cases and appear late in the acute phase of the disease (10 days to 3 weeks).

The pathologic lesions of murine typhus include endothelial swelling and perivascular lymphohistiocytic infiltrates involving the blood vessels in the dermis, CNS, lungs, heart, gastrointestinal tract, and kidneys (Walker et al, 1989). The most serious consequences are meningoencephalomyelitis and diffuse alveolar injury.

Rickettsiae as Agents of Bioterrorism

R. prowazekii is a select agent, the possession of which is restricted by law to registered scientists in approved institutions where rigorous security and safety regulations are applied to the laboratories. This organism exists in nature, can be recovered and propagated, and is infectious via a stable aerosol with infectivity of as little as a single bacterium. *R. rickettsii* was formerly considered a select agent, but the CDC decided to remove it from the select agent list in 2012.

Case-fatality rates of 15% to 25% in previously healthy persons would occur without prompt diagnosis and treatment. The potential for genetically engineered resistance to the effective antibiotics, tetracycline, and chloramphenicol, would render these cases of epidemic typhus untreatable (Walker, 2003). Although the case-fatality rates would be lower, bioterrorist-dispersed *R. typhi* or *R. conorii* could also create terror and overwhelm the medical and public health systems.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Unlike most infectious diseases for which precise diagnosis is sought during the acute phase of illness, when critical therapeutic decisions are made, rickettsial diseases are usually diagnosed acutely purely on clinicoepidemiologic suspicion and are treated empirically on a presumptive basis (Kaplowitz et al, 1981; Botelho-Nevers et al, 2012). Serologic diagnosis, which is often mistakenly sought early in the course of illness, provides the majority of laboratory confirmed diagnoses by demonstration of a fourfold or greater rise in titer only during convalescence. Even with the most sensitive serologic methods, fewer than 20% of patients have detectable specific antibodies to rickettsiae when presenting to the physician for medical attention. Other approaches to diagnosis at the time of presentation include immunohistologic demonstration of rickettsiae in cutaneous lesions, immunocytologic identification of rickettsiae in circulating detached endothelial cells, detection of rickettsial DNA in blood and tissue specimens by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (Furuya et al, 1995; Schriefer et al, 1994a; Sexton et al, 1994; Tzianabos et al, 1989; Williams et al, 1994), and cultivation of rickettsiae from blood or tissue specimens; but these tests are not available in most clinical laboratories.

Rickettsiae were originally demonstrated in tissues of patients with Rocky Mountain spotted fever and epidemic louse-borne typhus by Wolbach using Giemsa stain during and shortly after World War I (Wolbach, 1918). This method, essentially a lost art, requires careful attention to details of fixation and staining of rickettsiae, and is not performed successfully in this manner in contemporary histology laboratories. A modified Brown-Hopps method stains a small fraction of organisms, which appear as thin bacilli within endothelial cells. A more sensitive and specific approach to visualization of rickettsiae in tissue sections is immunohistology, either immunofluorescence or immunoenzyme staining, using antibodies specific for the spotted fever or typhus group (Kaplowitz et al, 1983; Walker et al, 1989, 1997, 1999; Dumler et al, 1990). Staining of skin biopsies from patients with Rocky Mountain spotted fever by immunohistochemistry has a sensitivity of 60% to 80% and a specificity close to 100%. Patients with boutonneuse fever, African tick bite fever, murine typhus, and rickettsialpox have also been diagnosed by immunohistologic detection of rickettsiae in rash and eschar lesions. A monoclonal antibody to a spotted-fever-group–specific epitope on the cell wall lipopolysaccharide demonstrates *R. rickettsii*, *R. parkeri*, *R. conorii*, *R. akari*, *R. japonica*, *R. australis*, *R. africae*, *R. honei*, and *R. sibirica* in formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissues, and a typhus group lipopolysaccharide-specific monoclonal antibody is similarly useful for detecting *R. typhi* and *R. prowazekii* (Walker et al, 1997b). Currently, reagents for diagnostic immunohistology of rickettsioses are not commercially available, but it is feasible that kits could be developed for rickettsial-group–specific diagnosis using antibodies produced in research laboratories.

A unique diagnostic approach is the immunocytologic demonstration of *R. conorii* in detached, circulating endothelial cells captured from patient blood samples by immunomagnetic beads coated with a monoclonal antibody to a surface antigen of human endothelial cells (Drancourt et al, 1992; La Scola & Raoult, 1996a). In boutonneuse fever patients, this method has a sensitivity of 58% for examination of a single blood sample and may be used in patients prior to the onset of rash, which must be present for selection of the site of skin biopsy for immunohistologic diagnosis.

PCR has been applied successfully to the diagnostic detection of *R. rickettsii*, *R. conorii*, *R. japonica*, *R. africae*, *R. parkeri*, *R. felis*, *R. akari*, *R. sibirica*, *R. slovaca*, *R. aeschlimannii*, *R. typhi*, and *R. prowazekii* from clinical samples including biopsy of eschar or rash, peripheral blood, buffy coat, plasma, necropsy tissue, and arthropod vectors removed from patients. Target genes include a 17-kDa lipoprotein gene, *gltA*, *rrs*, *groEL*, *ompA*, and *ompB*. This approach may fail to detect rickettsial nucleic acids early in the course or after development of immunity or effective antimicrobial treatment (Tzianabos et al, 1989; Schriefer et al, 1994a; Sexton et al, 1994; Furuya et al, 1995; Roux & Raoult, 1999; Leitner et al, 2002; Walker, 2003; Fournier & Raoult, 2004; Ndip et al, 2004; Stenos et al, 2005; Kidd et al, 2008; Nascimento et al, 2009; Prakash et al, 2009).

Isolation of rickettsiae is achieved frequently in antibiotic-free, centrifugation-enhanced shell vial cell culture in reference and research laboratories with biosafety level-3 containment and specialized expertise.

The gold standard serologic test for rickettsioses is the indirect immunofluorescent antibody (IFA) assay (Kaplan & Schonberger, 1986). The indirect immunoperoxidase antibody test yields similar results. For spotted fever and typhus-group rickettsial infections in the United States, IFA titers of 1:64 or greater are considered to be diagnostic in a compatible clinicoepidemiologic situation. In countries where there is a high prevalence of persons with antibodies to these rickettsiae, due hypothetically to stimulation by nonpathogenic rickettsiae or subclinical or undiagnosed infection, higher titers are required to establish the diagnosis. In any event, a fourfold rise in IFA antibody titer to at least a titer of 1:64, but usually 1:256 or higher, is diagnostic. The sensitivity of the IFA for Rocky Mountain spotted fever is 94% to 100%, and the specificity is 100%. Both sensitivity and specificity increase as the number of illness days also increase. By day 30, virtually all cases can be diagnosed serologically. With a cutoff titer for IgG of 1:128 and for IgM of 1:32, the indirect immunoperoxidase test yields similar results and has the advantage of requiring only a light microscope instead of an ultraviolet microscope.

Commercially available serologic tests include indirect immunofluorescence, latex agglutination, and standard solid-phase enzyme immunoassay (Kelly et al, 1995). Latex agglutination and solid-phase enzyme immunoassay provide diagnostically useful information, require less expensive equipment to perform, but generally are not considered as reliable as the IFA. The greatly increased reliance of reference laboratories on enzyme immunoassays has occurred in parallel with anomalous changes in public health reports of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. It has been suggested that a substantial portion of the tick-exposed population has standing titers of antibodies stimulated by spotted fever group rickettsiae of low pathogenicity (Graf et al, 2008). The Weil-Felix tests, which measure agglutination of *Proteus vulgaris* strains OX-19 and OX-2 (Kaplan & Schonberger, 1986),

are insensitive and nonspecific and should not be used except in developing countries in which no other method can be performed. Serology is seldom useful in assisting therapeutic decisions because antibodies appear later in the course.

A promising technology to detect low levels of rickettsia-specific circulating antibodies is by using protein microarrays produced from recombinant protein expression using ORF libraries, followed by fluorescent detection (Vigil et al, 2011).

Treatment

Well-controlled, double-blind randomized clinical trials are lacking for rickettsioses in general. However several in vitro susceptibility studies have been published mostly for the main pathogenic rickettsioses, although standardization is lacking, and therefore minimum inhibitory concentrations (MICs) are difficult to interpret. Studies in humans are mostly retrospective.

In general, rickettsiae are sensitive to tetracyclines, fluoroquinolones, chloramphenicol, and rifamycins. Less effective antibiotics are the macrolides (Rolain et al, 1998; Raoult & Drancourt, 1991). All Rickettsiales are inherently resistant to aminoglycosides, β-lactams, cephalosporins, and sulfa-derived medications. Sulfas are in fact contraindicated in any infection caused by Rickettsiales due to greater severity of disease and fatal outcomes. The gold standard treatment for all rickettsioses is doxycycline, even in patients younger than 8 years of age since the occurence of discolored teeth and bone accumulation is minimal. When compared with other antimicrobial agents, doxycycline is associated with earlier defervescence and better protection against progression to severe forms of the disease. Alternatives include tetracycline, chloramphenicol, and selected macrolides and fluoroquinolones. Duration of treatment depends on the severity of the disease and rickettsial species. In general, RMSF and epidemic typhus cases should be treated for several days compared with less severe rickettsioses, which can be treated even with single doses of doxycycline (Botelho-Nevers et al, 2012). Relapses are very common when patients with RMSF or epidemic typhus are treated with a single dose. Reports of increased morbidity and mortality in patients with RMSF treated with cholaramphenicol have been published (Dalton et al, 1995a). Alternatives in children and pregnant women include macrolides (azithromycin and clarithromycin) and rifampin.

SCRUB TYPHUS CAUSED BY *ORIENTIA TSUTSUGAMUSHI*

The gram-negative cell wall of *Orientia* (formerly *Rickettsia*) *tsutsugamushi* differs from that of spotted fever and typhus group rickettsiae; it has an ultrastructurally thicker outer leaflet and thinner inner leaflet of the outer envelope, has different major proteins, and lacks lipopolysaccharide (Tamura et al, 1995). *O. tsutsugamushi* attach to host cell receptors (integrin α1-β1 and syndecan 4) via fibronectin and the major 56-kDa surface protein and Sca7 (autotransporter) and the 47-kDa surface protein followed by internalization through clathrin-dependent endosomal pathways. Orientia escape the endosomal vacuole and grow in the cytosol (Ge & Rikihisa, 2011). Orientia are then released via a process involving pinching off a host cell membrane-bound rickettsia. *O. tsutsugamushi* is transovarially and transtadially maintained in mites of the genus *Leptotrombidium* (Traub et al, 1978). Infected ova hatch into larvae, the only stage that feeds on an animal host. In fact, nymphs and adults only live in the soil and feed on insects' eggs. Rats become infected after rickettsia-containing larvae (chiggers) feed on the rats' tissue fluids, but feeding mite larvae that acquire rickettsiae do not pass the infection to their offspring. Thus, humans and rats are only accidental, nonessential, dead-end hosts of scrub typhus rickettsiae. Scrub typhus occurs in countries within the geographic area formed by Japan, Russia, and Korea to the north, Australia and Indonesia to the south, Pakistan to the west, and the Philippines and Micronesia to the east. Infection is acquired in areas of dense vegetation where abundant rat populations harbor large populations of chiggers. It is estimated that 1 million cases occur every year, and the case fatality rate is estimated at 10% without antibiotic treatment (Watt & Parola, 2003; Watt & Walker, 2006). A wider geographic distribution is highly suspected due to reports of *Orientia* infections from Chile, Dubai, and Africa (Osuga et al, 1991; Ghorbani et al, 1997; Izzard et al, 2010; Balcells et al, 2011). Expansion of endemic areas in China, north of the Yangtse River, have already been documented. Currently, there more than 70 recognized strains of *O. tsutsugamushi*, but studies correlating different strains with disease severity are lacking.

O. tsutsugamushi infects endothelial cells more extensively than macrophages (Moron et al, 2001). The basic pathologic lesion is vascular injury with perivascular lymphohistiocytic inflammation, which is present in the cutaneous chigger-inoculation site of rickettsiae, the brain, lung, heart, gastrointestinal tract, and kidney.

After incubation for 6 to 21 days, illness begins with fever, headache and, in some patients, myalgia, cough, and gastrointestinal symptoms (Watt & Parola, 2003). An eschar develops in half of westerners, usually prior to the onset of fever, but less often in indigenous patients. Likewise, a macular or maculopapular rash occurs in half of westerners with primary infection, 2 to 9 days after the onset of illness. Severely ill patients may develop hypotension, pneumonitis, meningoencephalitis, acute renal failure, and hemorrhagic phenomena. Unless treated with appropriate antimicrobial medications, 7% of cases are fatal. Greater severity is associated with greater bacterial loads (Sonthayanon et al, 2009). Scrub typhus may occur in trekkers and other travelers exposed to chiggers in endemic areas.

For the diagnosis of scrub typhus in an endemic region, the cutoff titer should be determined for the particular population, and for one region a titer of 1:400 or greater by IFA is 96% specific and 48% sensitive, and a fourfold rise in titer is the preferred serologic criterion for diagnosis (Blacksell et al, 2007). However, IFA cutoff titers are very difficult to determine due to the endemicity of the disease and the marked strain variability in the geographic areas affected by scrub typhus. Therefore, standardization is highly desirable as to which antibodies and which antigens should be used for testing. Ideally, immunogenic antigens that are present broadly in *Orientia* and yet are specific for the genus would be excellent targets for immunoassays. Indirect immunoperoxidase is a similar method that does not require a fluorescent microscope. *Proteus mirabilis* strain OX-K agglutination is more readily available, but insensitive. Serologic assays using a recombinant 56-kDa antigen representing the major immunodominant surface protein, including a dipstick test, a rapid lateral flow assay, and a IgM capture enzyme immunoassay, yield excellent results. (Ching et al, 2001; Coleman et al, 2002; Jang et al, 2003; Jiang et al, 2003). However, the 56-kDa antigen is highly variable among strains, and an assay that works in a certain area might not be as sensitive and specific in another area.

PCR has been applied to the diagnosis of scrub typhus for more than 1 decade (Murai et al, 1992; Furuya et al, 1993; Kawamori et al, 1993; Sugita et al, 1993) and has been demonstrated to be effective in practice including on eschar specimens (Manosroi et al, 2003; Saisongkorh et al, 2004; Kim et al, 2006; Paris et al, 2008, 2009). Real-time PCR offers the opportunity for a highly sensitive, specific diagnosis with prompt turnaround time (Jiang et al, 2004). Nucleic acid amplification using isothermal techniques has also been used successfully in the diagnosis of scrub typhus (Paris et al, 2011). Nucleic acid amplification also requires standardization, since different assays target different genes, some of which are variable among strains, including the 56-kDa antigen. Furthermore, blood-based DNA amplification assays depend on the presence of rickettsemia, which sometimes can be minimal or absent in mild cases or after an immune response. Undoubtedly, a combination of nucleic acid amplification and robust serologic assays is needed for the diagnosis of scrub typhus with high confidence. In 2011, criteria for diagnosis of scrub typhus were proposed: 1) cell culture isolate, 2) single admission IgM titer of ≥1:12,800 using IFA, 3) fourfold increase in IgM IFA titer, and/or 4) detection of *O. tsutsugamushi* in at least two of three different target PCR assays (Paris et al, 2011).

Doxycycline, tetracyclines, and azithromycin are considered first-line drugs for treatment of scrub typhus. Chloramphenicol, telithromycin, and rifampin are good alternatives. However, reports of chloramphenicol-nonresponsive cases in northern Thailand have been published, as well as sporadic reports of doxycycline resistance. (Miyamura et al, 1989; Strickman et al, 1995; Watt et al, 1996, 2000; Kim et al, 2004; Liu et al, 2006;). In general, *O. tsutsugamushi* is inherently resistant to the fluoroquinolones (Tantibhedhyangkul et al, 2010).

INFECTIONS CAUSED BY ORGANISMS OF THE GENERA *EHRLICHIA* AND *ANAPLASMA*

Structure and Function

The family *Anaplasmataceae* (order *Rickettsiales*) consists of five genera, *Ehrlichia*, *Anaplasma*, *Neorickettsia*, *Neoehrlichia*, and *Wolbachia*. Ehrlichiae and anaplasmae are small (0.5μm), tick-borne, obligately intracellular, gram-negative coccobacilli that reside in a cytoplasmic vacuole of leukocytes as dense-cored cells (infectious form) and reticulate cells (dividing form) (Yu & Walker, 2003). This intravacuolar microcolony of bacteria stained by the Wright-Giemsa method resembles a mulberry and thus is called a *morula* (Latin for *mulberry*). Neorickettsiae, similar small obligately intracellular bacteria, reside in trematode parasites in aquatic snails, insects,

bats, and fish and are transmitted by ingestion of a parasitized host, for example, *Neorickettsia helminthoeca* in trematode-parasitized salmon eaten by dogs in the Pacific northwest. *Wolbachia* reside in arthropods and filarial worms (e.g., *Onchocerca volvulus*), in which they play a role in the pathogenesis of the human illness.

Long known and studied as agents of veterinary diseases, *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* have recently emerged as human pathogens. The reasons are primarily their recent discovery in humans, their rapid characterization with contemporary molecular tools, and increasing populations and geographic distribution of particular ticks that depend on deer as a host. The well-documented human pathogens in the United States are *E. chaffeensis*, *E. ewingii*, *A. phagocytophilum*, and a newly described unnamed species in the upper Midwest called *E. muris*-like agent (EMLA) due to its high genetic relatedness to *E. muris*, a murine pathogen. *Neorickettsia sennetsu* is the agent of a disease in Asia resembling infectious mononucleosis. A common pathogenetic theme among these agents seems to be the secretion of tandem-repeat proteins that are translocated into the nucleus and cytoplasm of the host cell and interact with several regions of the host genome, leading to regulation of gene expression and cytoplasmic proteins to the advantage of the pathogen (Wakeel et al, 2010).

Human Monocytotropic Ehrlichiosis

E. chaffeensis is transmitted by ticks, primarily *Amblyomma americanum*, the Lone Star tick, but also *D. variabilis* and *Ixodes pacificus* (Anderson et al, 1992a; Ewing et al, 1995; Kramer et al, 1999). Cases are predominantly rural and seasonal (68% occur from May to July) (Fishbein et al, 1994; Olano et al, 2003a). Deer are a documented reservoir, and infected dogs and coyotes are also potential reservoir hosts. Ticks become infected when feeding as larvae or nymphs, carry the ehrlichiae as they molt from stage to stage, and transmit the infection during a subsequent blood meal. Ehrlichiae are not transmitted transovarially. Human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis has been reported in 47 states; most cases have occurred within the range of *A. americanum* in the third of the United States south of a line from New Jersey to Kansas. The number of reported cases is particularly high in Oklahoma, Missouri, Arkansas, Tennessee, North Carolina, and Maryland.

Since the first case of human ehrlichiosis was reported in the United States in 1987, prospective studies documented an incidence of laboratory-confirmed *E. chaffeensis* infection that exceeds that of Rocky Mountain spotted fever and is two orders of magnitude greater than passive reporting suggests (Olano et al, 2003b; Demma et al, 2005). Human ehrlichiosis may represent the most serious tick-transmitted infection in the United States. Fatalities have occurred in approximately 3% of cases, a rate that would be much higher without effective antibiotic treatment in many patients (Fichtenbaum et al, 1993; Fishbein et al, 1994). The severity is reflected in the admission of 41% to 62% of patients to a hospital (Fishbein et al, 1994; Olano et al, 2003a, 2003b). Although severe cases often affect older adults, children are also susceptible to the illness (Schultze & Jacobs, 1997). The median duration of illness in a large CDC series, including treated cases, was 23 days. Signs and symptoms depict a systemic disease that has no clinically diagnostic features (percentages represent the average of six large series described in the medical literature: fever (98%), headache (63%), arthralgia (47%), malaise (61%), myalgia (58%), anorexia (47%), nausea (48%), vomiting (35%), rash (6% at onset, 25% during the first week, and 36% overall; 67% in children), regional lymphadenopathy (27%), cough (23%), pharyngitis (24%), diarrhea (21%), abdominal pain or tenderness (18%), hepatomegaly (9%), photophobia (17%), confusion (22%), stupor (7%), and coma (2%) (Fishbein et al, 1994; Olano et al, 2003b, 2003b; Schutze & Jacobs, 1997; Eng et al, 1990). Severe complications include adult respiratory distress syndrome, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and renal insufficiency. Clinical laboratory findings include leukopenia (60%), thrombocytopenia (68%), and elevated hepatic transaminases (86%). CNS involvement manifested by seizures and coma has been documented by cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) pleocytosis, increased protein concentration and *E. chaffeensis* in CSF, and the presence of cerebral lesions at autopsy (Dunn et al, 1992; Ratnasamy et al, 1996; Walker & Dumler, 1997). Severity is age-dependent (Olano et al, 2003a; Fishbein et al, 1994). In immunocompromised patients, including those with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis can be an overwhelming infection with massive growth of ehrlichiae and a fatal outcome (Paddock et al, 1993; Walker & Dumler, 1997). Mild and persistent infections have also been documented (Dumler et al, 1993b).

After entry via tick bite, *E. chaffeensis* spreads by the lymphatic and/or hematogenous routes. Ehrlichial morulae have been identified in monocytes and macrophages in the bone marrow, peripheral blood (rarely), hepatic sinusoids, spleen, lymph nodes, meninges, kidney, gastrointestinal tract, and epicardium (Dumler et al, 1993a; Walker & Dumler, 1997; Sehdev & Dumler, 2003). Bone marrow examination frequently reveals granulomas, myeloid hyperplasia, and megakaryocytosis. Other reported lesions include perivascular lymphohistiocytic infiltrates in the kidney, meninges, brain, and heart; interstitial mononuclear pneumonitis; foci of apoptosis-like cell death in the liver, lymph node, and spleen; diffuse reticuloendothelial hyperplasia; erythrophagocytosis; and cholestasis.

Human Infection with *Ehrlichia ewingii*

Recognized first as a canine pathogen in 1971, *E. ewingii* also infects white-tailed deer and is transmitted by *A. americanum* ticks (Ewing et al, 1971; Anziani et al, 1990). It shares antigens with *E. chaffeensis* but infects mainly neutrophils. A high proportion of infected patients are immunocompromised (AIDS, organ transplantation), suggesting that immunocompetent patients may be relatively resistant to the illness (Buller et al, 1999, Paddock et al, 2001).

Human *Ehrlichia canis* Ehrlichiosis

To date, approximately 20 cases of human *E. canis* infection have been described in the literature (Perez et al, 1996, 2006). Signs and symptoms are very similar to the ones described for human monocytic ehrlichiosis (HME), although the disease is milder.

Ehrlichia muris-like Infections

All cases have been described in the upper Midwest, and few cases were receiving immunosupressive therapy (Pritt et al, 2011). A murine animal model for this bacterium has been recently described, and the histopathology is very similar to what has been described in cases of HME (Saito et al, 2015). The pathogen is transmitted by *I. scapularis* ticks.

Human Granulocytotropic Anaplasmosis

Thousands of cases of human granulocytic anaplasmosis have been documented, with most of the cases in the upper midwest (Wisconsin and Minnesota) and northeastern states (New York, Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Jersey) of the United States but with confirmed autochthonous infections southward along the eastern seaboard and in California, Europe, and Asia (Bakken et al, 1994; Aguero-Rosenfeld et al, 1996; Petrovec et al, 1997; Horowitz et al, 1998). Infection is transmitted by *I. scapularis*, *I. pacificus*, and *I. ricinus* ticks. The white-footed mouse (*Peromyscus leucopus*) and other small mammals are likely reservoir hosts in the United States, and red deer, sheep, goats, and cattle in Europe (Hodzic et al, 1998). The pathology is poorly defined, with the observation of morula-containing neutrophils in peripheral blood and various organs, infiltrates of reticuloendothelial organs with foamy macrophages, multiorgan perivascular lymphohistiocytic infiltrates, and focal hepatocellular apoptosis (Walker & Dumler, 1997). Fatality may be associated with secondary opportunistic fungal and viral infections (Hardalo et al, 1995).

Human granulocytotropic anaplasmosis varies from asymptomatic to severe, with many diagnosed patients requiring hospitalization (Bakken et al, 1994). Infection is fatal in fewer than 1% of cases. The illness begins with chills, fever, headache, and myalgia. Thrombocytopenia occurs in most cases and leukopenia in nearly one half. Hepatocellular injury is manifested as elevated hepatic enzymes, and severely ill patients may have septic shock–like illness with multiorgan involvement.

Human Infections Caused by "Candidatus *Neoehrlichia mikurensis*"

Six cases of Candidatus *Neoehrlichia mikurensis* have been reported in Europe, and four had evidence of immunosuppression. Five of the patients recovered with doxycycline therapy, and there was one fatality. Cases were diagnosed by PCR using primers for the 16S rRNA gene. No isolates were obtained from any of the cases. The organisms belong to the family *Anaplasmataceae*, and their target cell appears to be circulating granulocytes (Von Loewenich et al, 2010; Grankvist et al, 2014; Raoult, 2014; Welc-Falęciak et al, 2014; Andreasson et al, 2015).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Isolation of ehrlichiae and anaplasmae from human blood in antibiotic-free cell culture has been accomplished more often for *A. phagocytophilum* (in HL-60 cells) than *E. chaffeensis* (in DH-82 cells), only once for *E. canis* (in an asymptomatic person), and has yet to be reported for *E. ewingii* (Dawson et al, 1991; Edelman & Dumler, 1996; Goodman et al, 1996; Perez et al, 1996; Childs et al, 1999). Amplification of ehrlichial DNA by PCR using species-specific primers is an efficient diagnostic tool for all the human ehrlichioses (Anderson et al, 1992b; Chen et al, 1994; Everett

et al, 1994; Buller et al, 1999; Comer et al, 1999). For human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis, the sensitivity of PCR is reported as 79% to 100% and for granulocytotropic anaplasmosis caused by *A. phagocytophilum*, 48% to 86% (Anderson et al, 1992b; Everett et al, 1994). Later in the course there is a lower level of ehrlichemia, and tetracycline treatment reduces the sensitivity of detection of ehrlichiae by PCR. Target genes that have been validated clinically include *16S rRNA (rrs)*, *TRP120* (120-kDa glycoprotein), *groESL* heat shock operon, *dsb*, *nadA*, and *TRP 32 (VLPT* gene) for *E. chaffeensis; rrs* and *dsb* for *E. ewingii;* and *rrs*, *ank-1*, *msp2*, and *ftsZ* for *A. phagocytophilum* (Dumler & Brouqui, 2004; Doyle et al, 2005). Although in many cases a laborious task, detection of morulae in peripheral blood neutrophils provides a diagnosis of human anaplasmosis or ehrlichiosis and can be performed in any clinical laboratory. It is a more sensitive approach for *A. phagocytophilum* infection (30% to 80%) than for *E. chaffeensis* (7% to 17%) in immunocompetent patients and a very high proportion of immunocompromised patients (Hamilton et al, 2004). It is important to avoid false-positive interpretation caused by toxic granulations, Döhle bodies, superimposed platelets, apoptotic bodies, or contaminant particles. Immunohistochemical identification of both *E. chaffeensis* and *A. phagocytophilum* can be performed in tissue specimens (Dumler et al, 1993a; Yu et al, 1993).

Serologic diagnosis is the usual approach to the diagnosis of human ehrlichiosis, using cell-culture-propagated *E. chaffeensis* and *A. phagocytophilum* antigens in IFA assays (Nicholson et al, 1997; Walls et al, 1999; Childs et al, 1999; Olano et al, 2003b). This method is very sensitive for the demonstration of seroconversion to a titer of 1:64 or greater 2 to 4 weeks after disease onset. The expected serologic result on acute serum is absence of detected antibodies. Thus, treatment should be initiated empirically on the basis of clinical and epidemiologic factors and not withheld pending laboratory confirmation. Opinion as to a diagnostic single serum titer for *E. chaffeensis* ranges from 1:64 to 1:256. Cross-reactivity of *A. phagocytophilum* and *E. chaffeensis* is observed in approximately 20% of patients with HME and human granulocytic anaplasmosis (HGA). Thus, particularly in geographic regions where these infections overlap and, indeed, if there is a possibility of travel-associated exposure, it is essential to determine antibody titers against both organisms. A fourfold difference in titer determines the infecting agent. Cases with twofold or less difference are classified as ehrlichiosis of indeterminate etiology.

Distinguishing *E. chaffeensis* from *E. ewingii* serologically is more problematic because the latter has yet to be cultivated. Western immunoblotting is a useful research tool at present for distinguishing infection with *E. chaffeensis* with its distinctive TRP120protein and 28-kDa protein family from infection with *A. phagocytophilum* with its major 42- to 49-kDa protein patterns (Asanovich et al, 1997; Chen et al, 1997a, 1997b; Zhi et al, 1997). Serologic assays using these and other recombinant proteins show promise for future development (Yu et al, 1999; Knowles et al, 2003). The presence of antibodies reactive with *E. chaffeensis* in 10% or more of the healthy children in the geographic region of HME suggests the circulation of a less pathogenic cross-reactive organism in the population.

Treatment

Recommendations for treatment of ehrlichioses and anaplasmosis are based on limited retrospective human studies, in vitro susceptibility testing (if the agent is cultivable) and anecdotal reports. Prospective, randomized double-blind clinical studies have never been conducted. Doxycycline is the drug of choice for the treatment of HME followed by tetracyclines. *E. chaffeensis* is inherently resistant to β-lactams, macrolides, sulfonamides, aminoglycosides, and fluoroquinolones. Rifampin is a good alternative treatment (Bakken et al, 1994; Fishbein et al, 1994; Branger et al, 2004; Brouqui & Raoult, 1992; Klein et al, 1997). The use of chloramphenicol is not recommended as it has been associated with fatal outcomes, treatment failures (up to 13%), and delayed defervescence.

The in vitro susceptibility profile of *A. phagocytophilum* is very similar to that of *E. chaffeensis*. Perhaps the only differences are higher MICs for chloramphenicol and slightly lower MICs for levofloxacin, although its use in clinical practice is not recommended. Therefore the treatment recommendations are virtually the same. Rifampin has been used to treat a limited number of pregnant women and children successfully (Krause et al, 2003).

INFECTIONS CAUSED BY *COXIELLA BURNETII*

Structure and Function

C. burnetii is quite distant phylogenetically from other pathogenic rickettsiae and is the only one classified in the *γ-Proteobacteria* in the family *Coxiellaceae* and order *Legionellales* (closest relatives being *Legionella* and *Francisella*). These gram-negative bacteria vary morphologically from rods to cocci, and by electron microscopic examination there are two distinct forms: large cells (0.5 to 1.2μm) and small, dense cells (0.5μm), which have been proposed to represent a developmental cycle that includes a sporelike form and are resistant to harsh environmental conditions, which explains the persistence of *C. burnetii* in the environment and the ease of transmission between hosts and environment. The *C. burnetii* genome is approximately 2 million base pairs, larger than rickettsiae and ehrlichiae.

Much emphasis has been placed on a laboratory phenomenon associated with cultivation of *C. burnetii* by prolonged passage in cell culture or eggs, namely, loss of the organisms' ability to synthesize the entire lipopolysaccharide. This change from synthesis of the full to a truncated lipopolysaccharide, analogous to the conversion from smooth to rough phenotype by *Enterobacteriaceae*, has been designated phase variation from phase I to phase II. Phase I is found in nature and in infected persons and animals; phase II occurs in the laboratory owing to deletions of genes without selective advantage under conditions of passage outside of its hosts (Hoover et al, 2002; Omsland et al, 2013).

Coxiella burnetii enters its target cell, the macrophage, by phagocytosis after interaction with α5/β3 integrin via RAC1-dependent phagocytosis and is highly adapted (e.g., synthesis of superoxide dismutase and acid phosphatase) to the acidic conditions in the phagolysosome, where the switch from small, dense cells to large cells occurs and replication by binary fission takes place.

Q Fever

The name *Q fever* was derived from its unknown etiology when the clinicoepidemiologic syndrome was first described as query fever after an outbreak in Queensland, Australia, among abbatoir workers at Cannon Hill. The agent was isolated in guinea pigs a few weeks later by McFarlane Burnet in Melbourne. The ecology of *C. burnetii* includes silent infections in animals: many species of ticks, ungulates (particularly sheep, cattle, and goats, targeting placenta and mammary glands in females), other mammals (including cats and wild rabbits), fish, birds, and marsupials (Marrie et al, 1988, Marrie & Raoult, 1997; Van Schaik et al, 2013). Humans usually are infected by inhalation, especially of aerosols that originate in infected birth products of domestic livestock and pets and possibly also by ingestion of unpasteurized contaminated milk (Fishbein & Raoult, 1992; Raoult et al, 2005). Many human infections occur as an occupational disease among abattoir workers, farmers, and veterinarians (McQuiston et al, 2006). However, urban nonoccupational cases are by no means rare in some populations in which they have been evaluated, such as among immunocompromised patients in France (Brouqui et al, 1993). The disease occurs worldwide, and the only areas where it has not been reported are New Zealand and Antarctica (Hilbink et al, 1993). In the United States, the main reservoirs are sheep and goats (McQuiston & Childs, 2002). From 2000 to 2004, an average of 51 cases per year were reported in the United States. The state with the highest incidence is Wyoming.

The majority of human infections are asymptomatic (Marrie, 1990). Acute illness is often a self-limited, undifferentiated febrile illness, pneumonia, hepatitis, or meningoencephalitis (Drancourt et al, 1991; Tissot Dupont et al, 1992; Bernit et al, 2002). Individual patients with myalgias, anorexia, and headache are unlikely to be investigated diagnostically for Q fever, even though this syndrome is the most likely clinical presentation of this infection and accounts for a substantial proportion of patients with these symptoms in some populations. Manifestations of Q fever pneumonia vary: cough may be nonproductive or absent, and the pneumonia may be severe and progress rapidly or be detected as multiple rounded or segmental radiographic infiltrates without pulmonary symptoms. Q fever hepatitis may have a clinical presentation similar to acute viral hepatitis or the pathologic presentation of granulomatous hepatitis. A relatively recent study of acute Q fever from the Basque region in Spain revealed that 80% of cases presented with pneumonitis; 50% of these patients were hospitalized. The study covered 21 years and 1261 cases. Ten patients were admitted to the ICU, and only two patients went on to develop chronic Q fever (Montes et al, 2006). Geographic variability certainly exists. Like in the Basque region, pneumonitis is the major manifestation in Maritime Canada (Marrie, 2010). In Taiwan and France, hepatitis predominates (80% and 40%, respectively) (Marrie, 2010).

Chronic Q fever is considered synonymous with *C. burnetii* endocarditis but also occurs less frequently as infection of an aneurysm or vascular prosthesis or osteomyelitis (Marrie, 1990; Brouqui et al, 1993). Chronic Q fever endocarditis usually involves previously damaged aortic or mitral valves as an afebrile illness that may manifest with heart failure, hepatosplenomegaly, changing cardiac murmurs, and weight loss. Disease associated with circulating immune complexes includes vasculitis-based purpuric

rash (sometimes deep in the subcutis leading to erythema nodosum), glomerulonephritis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, mononeuropathies, optic neuritis, hemolytic anemia, hemophagocytic syndrome, and thrombocytopenia (Marrie, 2010).

The pathology of acute Q fever includes mixed interstitial-alveolar-bronchiolar pneumonia with mononuclear inflammatory cells and granulomatous inflammation of the liver and bone marrow (Walker, 1988). Q fever granulomas often contain a clear central vacuole and a surrounding ring of fibrin as well as epithelioid macrophages. These doughnut granulomas are neither pathognomonic lesions nor the only form of granuloma that occurs in the liver and bone marrow of Q fever patients. The involved cardiac valves in Q fever endocarditis have a small vegetation and show a mixed subacute and chronic inflammation with many foamy macrophages having the cytoplasm filled with *C. burnetii* (Lepidi et al, 2003).

Laboratory Diagnosis

The laboratory diagnosis of Q fever is most often accomplished by demonstration of antibodies to *C. burnetii* (Fournier et al, 1996, 1998). Serologic methods employ both phase I and phase II antigens and often evaluate class-specific antibody production. Enzyme immunoassay and indirect IFA tests are highly specific and are more sensitive than complement fixation. In acute Q fever, antibodies to phase II antigens appear earliest after infection, and antibodies to phase I may be detected as early as 2 weeks after the onset of illness. In general, acute Q fever is associated with high titers to phase II antigens and lower titers to phase I antigens. By IFA, an anti-phase II IgG titer of 1:200 or greater and anti-phase II IgM titer of 1:50 or greater have a sensitivity of 58% and specificity of 92% in acute Q fever. A fourfold rise in titers is diagnostic. In chronic Q fever, antibodies to phase I are present at a higher titer (e.g., IgG-IFA anti-phase I titer of 1:800 or greater), and antibodies to phase II are generally equal to or lower than the phase I titer. An IgA response to phase I antigens is often observed in patients with chronic Q fever. A titer of 1:128 or greater against phase I antigen by the complement fixation test is also considered diagnostic of chronic Q fever, although some patients have lower titers. Because of cross-reactivity of *Bartonella henselae* and *Bartonella quintana* with *C. burnetii*, a serologic diagnosis of *Bartonella* endocarditis should not be made until anti-*C. burnetii* titers have been determined (La Scola & Raoult, 1996b). In Q fever endocarditis, the anti-*C. burnetii* titer is substantially higher than the anti-*Bartonella* titer. An IFA containing both *C. burnetii* and *B. henselae* effectively distinguishes the infecting bacterium (Rolain et al, 2003b).

PCR assays have been developed against diverse target genes, and during the first 2 weeks of acute Q fever real-time PCR of serum is more sensitive (24%) than IFA serology (14%) (Fournier & Raoult, 2003). It is likely that PCR of blood or buffy coat would detect a greater proportion of cases with *Coxiella* than serum. PCR gene targets include 16S rRNA, 23S rRNA, superoxide dismutase, plasmid-based sequences, and the IS1111 multicopy insertion sequence.

Other methods for the diagnosis of chronic Q fever endocarditis include immunohistologic staining (sensitivity 32%), electron microscopy, culture (sensitivity 64%), and PCR (sensitivity 75%) detection of *C. burnetii* in a cardiac valve (Lepidi et al, 2003). *C. burnetii* can be recovered from the blood or infected cardiac valves by in vitro cultivation using a centrifugation-enhanced shell vial HEL cell culture system. This method can identify the presence of coxiellae within 7 days but should be attempted only within cell culture institutions approved for biohazard containment level 3. In 2009, Omsland reported the first isolation in a cell-free medium for growth of *C. burnetii* using an acidified citrate cysteine medium under low oxygen tension (Omsland et al, 2009).

Treatment

In general, *C. burnetii* is susceptible to tetracyclines, rifampin, cotrimoxazole, and quinolones. Susceptibility to macrolides is variable, and bacterermia is resistant to β-lactams and aminoglycosides. Doxycycline is effective in shortening the course of acute Q fever when administered during the first 3 days after the onset of illness (Levy et al, 1991). A prospective, randomized double-blind study was performed in the Basque region to compare doxycycline and erythromycin for 10 days in the treatment of acute Q fever pneumonitis (Sobradillo et al, 1992). Patients treated with doxycycline had a faster defervescence and fewer gastrointestinal side effects. An effective macrolide is azithromycin. Prolonged fever has been described with clarithromycin. Ciprofloxacin or a combination of ciprofloxacin and rifampin are alternative medications for patients who cannot be treated with tetracycline. Treatment of chronic *C. burnetii* endocarditis requires prolonged administration (at least 1 year) of doxycycline and hydroxychloroquine or doxycycline and a quinolone (ofloxacin) for 3 years (Maurin & Raoult, 1999), which often does not eradicate the infection (Marrie, 2002). Successful treatment is indicated by a slow fall in anti-phase I IgG titer below 1:200, when discontinuation of treatment can be considered. Cardiac valve replacement is often performed for hemodynamic reasons. Q fever during pregnancy should be treated for the duration of pregnancy with co-trimoxazole.

C. burnetii is considered a category B select agent due to its easy dispersal as an aerosol, a very high infectivity rate with extremely low numbers of organisms, and resistance to harsh environmental conditions. Consequences to livestock and the environment in general would also be significant (Oyston & Davies, 2011).

INFECTIONS CAUSED BY ORGANISMS OF THE GENUS *BARTONELLA*

Structure and Function

The genus *Bartonella* has been removed from the order *Rickettsiales* and now belongs in the *α2-Proteobacteria* subdivision (Brenner et al, 1993; Birtles & Raoult, 1996). The human pathogens, *B. quintana* (the etiologic agent of trench fever, a major louse-borne disease in World Wars I and II and among homeless persons), *B. henselae* (the etiologic agent of cat scratch disease), *B. elizabethae* and *B. vinsonii* (associated with infective endocarditis), and *B. bacilliformis* (a sandfly-transmitted bacterium that causes febrile acute hemolytic anemia and chronic verruga peruana cutaneous lesions in South America), have been cultivated in blood-enriched media in the presence of 5% CO_2 (Walker et al, 2006) and represent the main human pathogens. Several other *Bartonella* spp. have been associated with human disease (see Table 57-3). These facultative intracellular gram-negative bacilli do not produce acid from carbohydrates and usually reside within erythrocytes in their natural mammalian hosts. Among numerous described species of *Bartonella*, *B. clarridgeiae* is a suspected second agent of cat scratch disease (Kordick et al, 1997).

The main target cells for *Bartonella* spp are the endothelium and red blood cells. In red blood cells, *B. bacilliformis* deformin induces cytoplasmic membrane invaginations, and penetration is mediated by two invasion genes (*ialA/ialB*) and the flagella. Entry into endothelial cells is mediated by Rho-GTPase activity mediated by the *B. bacilliformis*. *B. quintana* and *B. henselae* enter endothelial cells via two type IV secretion systems (Trw and BirB/VirD4). These protein effectors induce cytoskeletal rearrangements in endothelial cells so that bacterial internalization occurs in the form of bacterial clusters being internalized in a single endosomal vacuole (Dehio, 2008; Pulliainen & Dehio, 2009; Angelakis & Raoult, 2014).

Cat Scratch Disease, Bacillary Angiomatosis, and Bacillary Peliosis

B. henselae is transmitted to humans by the scratch or bite of infected kittens, which are bacteremic for many months while appearing healthy (Tappero et al, 1993; Chomel et al, 1995; Bergmans et al, 1997; Heller et al, 1997). The bacteria are transmitted from cat to cat by the cat flea (Chomel et al, 1996; Higgins et al, 1996). The nature of the disease is largely host-determined. In immunocompetent hosts, 80% are younger than 21 years of age and present with a cutaneous papule or pustule at the inoculation site and self-limited regional lymphadenopathy. Fewer than 2% of patients suffer complications such as hematogenously disseminated involvement of the liver, spleen, lung, bone, CNS, retina, conjunctiva, or skin (Liston & Koehler, 1996; Wade et al, 2000; Verdon et al, 2002). The histopathology of cat scratch disease lesions is granulomata surrounding stellate microabscesses. In severely immunocompromised patients, *B. henselae* infection is manifested by fever and bacteremia or by cutaneous or visceral angioproliferative lesions. The latter are characterized by lobular vascular proliferations of plump endothelial cells with clusters of small capillaries surrounding ectatic capillaries separated by edematous, mucinous, or fibrotic stroma containing clusters of neutrophils, neutrophil debris, and granular microcolonies of bartonella. In the skin, these lesions are designated *bacillary angiomatosis;* in the liver and spleen, they are designated *hepatic* and *splenic peliosis*. Dissemination to other sites may occur also. The angioproliferative lesions of *B. henselae* and *B. quintana* in immunocompromised patients are indistinguishable, and they are quite similar to the verruga peruana of *B. bacilliformis* (Koehler et al, 1997). *B. henselae*, *B. quintana*, *B. vinsonii* subsp. *berkhoffii*, and subsp. *arupensis*, *B. alsatica*, *B. koehleri*, and *B. elizabethae* have been documented as agents of infective endocarditis (Drancourt et al, 1995; Roux et al, 2000; Avidor et al, 2004; Fenollar et al, 2005; Raoult et al, 2006; Jeanclaude et al, 2009).

Trench Fever and Bacillary Angiomatosis

B. quintana causes prolonged bacteremia in convalescent humans, the apparent reservoir. Infections were recognized to be transmitted from person to louse *(Pediculus humanus corporis)* to another person in front-line trenches during World War I (Bruce, 1921). Among French homeless persons, 14% are bacteremic, of whom 80% are afebrile (Brouqui et al, 1999).

Louse feces laden with *B. quintana* are scratched into the skin, and approximately 8 days later an illness of variable severity begins. Manifestations include fever, generally lasting less than 1 week, headache, myalgias, pretibial pain, and an evanescent macular rash. Relapses often occur at 4- or 5-day intervals. Bacteremia persists for weeks, months, or longer, serving as a source for infecting lice, even when the person feels relatively healthy. Cases occur at present in alcoholic and homeless populations in American and European cities (Spach et al, 1995; Foucault et al, 2002).

Oroya Fever and Verruga Peruana

South American bartonellosis, manifested as an acute illness called *Oroya fever* or as chronic cutaneous lesions called *verruga peruana*, is transmitted by the bite of the *Lutzomyia sandfly*. Asymptomatic long-term human carriers are the reservoirs of *B. bacilliformis*. After an incubation period of approximately 3 weeks, Oroya fever begins insidiously with anorexia, headache, malaise, and low-grade fever, or abruptly with chills, high fever, headache, and mental status changes. Bartonellae invade the red blood cells and cause erythrocytic changes that result in erythrophagocytosis and anemia. Verruga peruana, characterized by red to purple nontender nodules that appear in crops over 1 to 2 months and persist for months to years, follows Oroya fever or occurs without prior symptoms (Arias-Stella et al, 1986; Walker et al, 2006).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Lysis release of intraerythrocytic bacteria followed by centrifugation and incubation at 35° C in a humid CO_2 atmosphere on chocolate or Columbia blood agar for more than 1 month has been used to recover *B. henselae* and *B. quintana* from patients (Tierno et al, 1995). These *Bartonella* organisms are gram-negative bacilli, 0.2 to 0.5µm in diameter and 1 to 3µm long. *B. henselae* are oxidase-, catalase-, and urease-negative and do not utilize carbohydrates. Identification is accomplished by twitching motility in wet mounts, immunofluorescent staining, analysis of fatty acid composition, DNA sequencing, or hybridization (Scott et al, 1996). Polymerase chain reaction detects *B. henselae* DNA in 31% of lymph node biopsies and 55% of lymph node aspirates (Bergmans et al, 1996). *B. bacilliformis* may be cultivated from blood by inoculation of Columbia blood agar supplemented with 5% defibrinated blood or other blood- or hemin-supplemented media with detection of colonies after an average of 18 days.

Formerly the diagnosis of cat scratch disease required a combination of clinical, epidemiologic, and pathologic criteria. Histopathologic studies, including Warthin-Starry stain and immunohistochemistry, have been used to support the diagnosis of bacillary angiomatosis and cat scratch disease. Oroya fever may be diagnosed by visualization of intra-erythrocytic bartonellae, appearing as cocci or bacilli, occasionally with curved or ring forms, in peripheral blood carefully stained by the Giemsa method to avoid misinterpretation of artifacts. Diagnosis of *B. henselae* and *B. quintana* infections is usually accomplished by the serologic demonstration of antibodies by indirect immunofluorescence or enzyme immunoassay (Dalton et al, 1995b). Serologic diagnosis of *Bartonella* endocarditis should include measurement of antibody titers against *C. burnetii*, which may stimulate cross-reacting antibody titers against *Bartonella* (Maurin et al, 1997; Rolain et al, 2003a). The titers against *C. burnetii* phase I are much higher than the anti-*Bartonella* titers in chronic Q fever endocarditis, and Western immunoblotting after cross-absorption yields a definitive diagnosis if necessary (Houpikian & Raoult, 2003). Real-time PCR can also be used to establish the diagnosis of *Bartonella* endocarditis (Zeaiter et al, 2003).

Treatment

Infections associated with local manifestations such as lymphadenitis in typical cat scratch disease do not require antibiotic treatment since its administration is not associated with increased cure rate or decreased time to achieve cure. This is based on meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials and observational studies (Prutsky et al, 2013; Angelakis & Raoult, 2014). Some people advocate for the use of antibiotics such as azithromycin, rifampin, or ciprofloxacin for 2 to 3 weeks, claiming that the lymphadenopathy subsides more quickly (Bass et al, 1999).

Atypical cat scratch disease (severe systemic manifestations in 5% o 14% of cases of CSD with hepatosplenic disease and neuroretinitis) are treated with doxycycline and gentamicin for 4 to 6 weeks or rifampin with or without gentamicin for 4 to 6 weeks.

Erythrocytic infections due to *B. bacilliformis* are treated with chloramphenicol for 2 weeks. *B. quintana* infections (also erythrocytic), bacteremia due to *B. henselae* and other *Bartonella* spp., and endocarditis are treated with gentamicin for 2 weeks followed by doxycycline for 4 weeks (a total of 6 weeks) (Foucault et al, 2003, Raoult et al, 2003).

Angioproliferative lesions (verruga peruana, bacillary angiomatosis, and bacillary peliosis) are treated with erythromycin or doxycycline for 3 months or with doxycycline plus rifamycin for 3 months. Relapses are better treated with erythromycin or doxycycline for 4 to 6 months (Rolain et al, 2004).

MYCOPLASMAL AND UREAPLASMAL INFECTIONS

Mycoplasmas were proved to cause human disease in 1962, when one mycoplasma (subsequently named *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*) was recognized as the etiologic agent of primary atypical pneumonia (Chanock et al, 1962). Mycoplasmas are the smallest free-living organisms. They are pleomorphic, ranging from spherical cells 0.2 µm in diameter to filaments 0.1 µm wide by 1 to 2 µm long. Most are facultative anaerobes that replicate by binary fission. Mycoplasmas are unique among bacteria because they have no cell wall. They are unable to synthesize cell wall precursors, and they require cholesterol and related sterols for membrane synthesis. Mycoplasmas also lack the enzymatic pathways for purine and pyrimidine synthesis and, for this reason, require complex media (such as beef heart infusion broth supplemented with horse serum, yeast extract, and nucleic acids) for growth in vitro. The potential pathogens, *M. pneumoniae* and the genital mycoplasmas *(Mycoplasma hominis*, *Mycoplasma genitalium*, *Ureaplasma urealyticum*, and *Ureaplasma parvum)*, are discussed.

MYCOPLASMA PNEUMONIAE

Epidemiology

Mycoplasma pneumoniae is found worldwide. Epidemics occur among confined populations such as children in schools, families, and military recruits, typically at 3- to 5-year intervals, and predominantly in late summer and fall. In nonepidemic years, infections occur year-round and in general spread slowly, possibly owing to the slow generation time of the bacterium (6 hours) and its low transmission rate, which apparently requires close contact with an ill person (Waites & Talkington, 2004). During epidemics, however, infection may spread rapidly, and the occurrence of point-source outbreaks in which close and prolonged exposure is not recognized suggests that *M. pneumoniae* may be transmitted via aerosols. Rates of infection with *M. pneumoniae* are greatest in school-age children and young adults, and pneumonia is seen most frequently in persons 5 to 20 years of age, especially in those between 15 and 19 years of age. Infection with *M. pneumoniae* occurs before 5 years of age but typically is asymptomatic or produces a mild illness with coryza and wheezing but no fever or pneumonia (Fernald et al, 1975).

Pathogenesis and Pathology

M. pneumoniae, a surface parasite, colonizes the mucosa of the respiratory tract. Its ability to attach to respiratory mucosal cells, escape phagocytosis, and modulate the immune system is essential to initiation of disease. Its gliding motility may allow it to penetrate through respiratory secretions, and its filamentous, flexible form with terminal attachment organelle may facilitate localization in crypts and folds of the host cell membrane and between microvilli and cilia, where it is protected from phagocytosis. Attachment of *M. pneumoniae* to host cells is mediated by the P1 protein, which interacts with neuraminic acid–containing glycoproteins at the surface of the host cell membrane (Chandler et al, 1982; Geary & Gabridge, 1987; Waites et al, 2008). Hydrogen peroxide and superoxide produced by *M. pneumoniae* may injure mucosal cells, causing ciliostasis and sloughing of superficial cells (Almagor et al, 1984). Inhibition of catalase (which breaks down damaging peroxides) in host cells by bacterium-generated superoxides makes the cells more susceptible to damage (Waites et al, 2008). An adenosine diphosphate (ADP)-ribosylating protein (named *community-acquired respiratory distress syndrome toxin: CARDS TX*) produced by *M. pneumoniae* has been identified and postulated to have an exotoxin function, as the protein has been demonstrated to induce vacuolization and ciliostasis in cultured host cells (Waites et al, 2008). The target and exact cellular effects of the toxin remain to be elucidated.

Host-related factors also are involved in the pathogenesis of *M. pneumoniae* disease. The apparent high prevalence of *M. pneumoniae* infection

in infants and young children, the mild nature of the disease in this age group, and the occurrence of more severe illness during infection at a later age suggest that severe disease may result from the host immune response to reinfection. *M. pneumoniae* has been demonstrated to induce cytokine production in vitro, suggesting that adherence of the bacterium to respiratory epithelial cells results in cytokine production, which in turn might both recruit inflammatory cells, including lymphocytes, to the site of infection and modulate the activity of the recruited cells (Waites et al, 2008). This cytokine production and influx of lymphocytes might be involved in fighting the infection by destroying the infecting organism or, conversely, might result in immune hypersensitivity that damages host cells. A more marked T cell immune response may result in more severe disease (Waites et al, 2008). Moreover, extrapulmonary manifestations of disease (discussed later) are suspected to be immune mediated. The interaction of *M. pneumoniae* with the I antigenic determinant of human red blood cells, which contains the necessary 2,3-sialylated poly-*N*-acetylgalactosamine sequences, may alter the I antigen, converting it into a non-self-antigen that stimulates production of cold agglutinins. Other autoimmune antibodies produced during infection with *M. pneumoniae* (antibodies to lung, brain, smooth muscle, and lymphocytes) may have similar derivations.

Few descriptions of the pathologic findings of disease caused by *M. pneumoniae* are available, because most infections are self-limited and tissue is rarely obtained. In fatal cases, patchy areas of consolidation are found in the lungs. Histologic examination of involved foci shows bronchitis, bronchiolitis, and interstitial and alveolar pneumonitis with peribronchiolar collections of lymphocytes and plasma cells, accompanied by macrophages and neutrophils if cellular necrosis is present.

Clinical Manifestations

The most common manifestation of disease caused by *M. pneumoniae* is tracheobronchitis, which occurs in about one half of infected patients. After an incubation period of several weeks, sore throat, cough, coryza, fever, headache, myalgia, and sometimes conjunctivitis and myringitis are seen. The infection may resolve or may progress to pneumonia, the frequency of which is age-dependent, with children 5 to 15 years of age most likely to develop lower respiratory involvement (Baum, 2000; Waites & Talkington, 2004). Chest radiographs show unilateral lower lobe bronchopneumonia, or occasionally bilateral feathery infiltrates. The peripheral white blood cell count is normal early and rises as the disease progresses. Maculopapular or, less commonly, vesicular skin eruptions occur in about 15% of cases a few days after disease onset. Without antimicrobial therapy, fever resolves in 2 to 14 days, but malaise, cough, and radiographic abnormalities persist for 2 to 6 weeks. In a small percentage of children and adults, pneumonia is severe enough to warrant hospitalization; these patients may develop lung abscess, pleural effusions, secondary bacterial infections, bronchiectasis, or clinical relapse.

Extrarespiratory manifestations such as clinically apparent hemolytic anemia (typically with very high titers of cold agglutinins); erythema multiforme, erythema nodosum, and urticaria; myocarditis and pericarditis; and arthralgias, arthritis, acute glomerulonephritis, tubulointerstitial nephritis, and IgA nephropathy may occur, but are not frequent (Ponka, 1979; Cassell & Cole, 1981; Baum, 2000; Waites & Talkington, 2004). Additionally, a small fraction of patients hospitalized with *M. pneumoniae* infection have neurologic manifestations, from minor to severe, including encephalitis and acute disseminated encephalomyelitis (Waites & Talkington, 2004). Among 1988 patients referred to the California Encephalitis Project over a 9-year period, *M. pneumoniae* was implicated in 111 patients (5.6%) and was the single most common implicated infectious agent (Christie et al, 2007). Many cases of encephalitis associated with *M. pneumoniae* appear to be relatively mild; however, severe cases of acute disseminated encephalomyelitis that may even result in fatality can occur in association with the infection (Waites & Talkington, 2004; Christie et al, 2007; Stamm et al, 2008).

GENITAL MYCOPLASMAS

Epidemiology

Ureaplasma species (*U. urealyticum* has been separated into *U. parvum*, formerly *U. urealyticum* biovar 1, and *U. urealyticum*, formerly *U. urealyticum* biovar 2) can be found colonizing the vagina and cervix in 40% to 80% of adult women, and *M. hominis* can be found in 21% to 53% of women (Waites et al, 2005). The frequency in men appears to be lower. Prevalence studies for *M. genitalium* are infrequent in the literature, but it appears to be less common as a colonizer in asymptomatic individuals and is found with a frequency of around 1% (Takahashi et al, 2006; Manhart et al, 2007). Colonization of infants with genital mycoplasmas can occur during passage through the birth canal, but colonization appears to be temporary in many cases, and a lower rate of colonization has been noted in children (Klein et al, 1969; Hammerschlag et al, 1978). The increase in colonization by mycoplasmas after puberty indicates an association with sexual activity. In addition to passage through the birth canal, neonates can acquire infections due to *Ureaplasma* spp. and *M. hominis* hematogenously through the placenta or through an ascending infection, resulting in seeding of amniotic fluid (Waites et al, 2005).

Clinical Manifestations

Although simple vaginal colonization with the genital mycoplasmas in pregnant women is not associated with disease, the presence of mycoplasma (primarily *Ureaplasma* spp. and to a lesser extent *M. hominis*) in the placental membranes or amniotic fluid is consistently associated with chorioamnionitis, preterm birth, and adverse perinatal outcomes associated with several neonatal disorders, including perinatal pneumonia and sepsis in preterm infants (Waites et al, 2005; Goldenberg et al, 2008). Both *Ureaplasma* spp. and *M. hominis* are associated with postpartum fever. *Ureaplasma* spp. can cause urinary calculi and are a cause of nongonococcal urethritis (NGU) (Waites et al, 2005). *M. hominis* has been related to both pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and pyelonephritis and may have an association with bacterial vaginosis (Waites et al, 2005). *M. genitalium* has been linked to NGU in males only relatively recently, but it is now firmly established as a significant cause of the disorder and is the etiologic agent in approximately 25% of cases (Ross & Jensen, 2006; Gaydos et al, 2009). Among women, *M. genitalium* has shown an association with cervicitis, endometritis, PID, and tubal infertility (Haggerty et al, 2006; Short et al, 2009).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Mycoplasma pneumoniae

The optimal test for diagnosis of infection caused by *M. pneumoniae* is nucleic acid amplification. Both single assays and multiplex PCR assays, which detect several respiratory pathogens, are commercially available. The best specimen is a nasopharyngeal swab, but bronchoalveolar lavage fluid and lung tissue may be acceptable depending on the assay.

Diagnosis also may be made serologically. Detection of specific IgM in a single serum sample is diagnostic of acute infection. If IgG is measured, acute- and convalescent-phase samples must be tested, and the diagnosis is based on a fourfold or greater rise in titer. A variety of tests based on particle agglutination, EIA, or immunofluorescence are available; EIA, particularly with membrane-bound assays, is the most popular (Waites & Talkington, 2004). Serologic testing is not without problems as antibody titers vary with age, with children and younger individuals having consistently higher titers than adults (Daxboeck et al, 2002). Some experts consider the combined use of PCR on respiratory specimens and serology the optimum approach to obtain maximum sensitivity in diagnosing infection (Christie et al, 2007; Waites et al, 2008; Thurman et al, 2009).

A nonspecific serologic test that may provide useful information is detection of cold agglutinins, which are IgM antibodies against the I antigen of human erythrocytes. The cold agglutinin response usually corresponds with the severity of pulmonary disease, as a titer of ≥1 : 32 is found with severe pneumonia, whereas agglutinins are not detectable in mild disease (Waites et al, 2008). Cold agglutinins appear by the end of the first week or early in the second week of illness in at least half of infected persons, but their presence is not diagnostic of infection with *M. pneumonia*, as they may also be seen with other bacterial, rickettsial, or viral infections.

M. pneumoniae may be grown in culture, but it is cumbersome, time-consuming, and rarely offers clinically relevant information, so few laboratories offer this option. To isolate *M. pneumoniae*, special agar media, broth media, or a biphasic culture system is inoculated and incubated at 37°C in a sealed container for 3 weeks or more in 5% to 10% CO_2 or anaerobically. Cultures are examined microscopically (40×) each week for spherical colonies with a dense center and thin outer layer (resembling a "fried egg") embedded in the agar. Such colonies, consistent with *M. pneumoniae*, that demonstrate glycolysis (as demonstrated by color change in the media pH indicator), β-hemolysis, and hemadsorption of guinea pig erythrocytes are presumptively *M. pneumoniae*. Definitive speciation usually requires staining with monoclonal antibodies using immunofluorescence or immunoperoxidase, immunoblotting, or PCR.

Genital Mycoplasmas

Ureaplasma spp. *and M. hominis* may be recovered from urethral, vaginal, or endocervical swab specimens, blood, urine, abscess material, prostatic

secretions, semen, or tissues. As with *M. pneumoniae*, nucleic acid amplification is the preferred method for diagnosis, although no assays are commercially available. Genital mycoplasmas also can be grown in culture (Clyde et al, 1984; Yajko et al, 1984; Wood et al, 1985; Phillips et al, 1986). Traditionally, separate systems were used for each (U agar and U broth for *Ureaplasma* spp. *and* H agar and H broth for *M. hominis*) because the optimal pH for growth of the two organisms differs (pH 5.5 to 6.5 for *Ureaplasma* spp. and pH 6 to 8 for *M. hominis*), but single culture systems that effectively detect both ureaplasmas and *M. hominis* have been available for several years (Yajko et al, 1984; Wood et al, 1985; Phillips et al, 1986). Broth cultures are incubated aerobically in sealed test tubes. Agar cultures are incubated anaerobically or in an atmosphere of 5% to 7% CO_2 and observed daily under a microscope. *M. hominis* also grows on sheep blood agar, producing nonhemolytic pinpoint colonies, and in most broth blood culture media, although no evidence of growth is visible.

Colonies of *M. hominis*, 200 to 300 µm in diameter with a typical fried-egg appearance, usually appear within 5 days. In broth containing phenol red and 0.1% arginine, *M. hominis* metabolizes arginine to ammonia, causing a color change from yellow to red. U agar plates are observed daily for 4 days, and on day 4 are stained with one to two drops of $CaCl_2$-urea solution. Colonies of *Ureaplasma* spp. have an irregular rather than circular umbonate morphology, are 15 to 60 µm in diameter, and stain dark brown in 5 minutes. In U broth, *Ureaplasma* spp. produce a shift in pH, and the color changes from yellow to red. A loopful of broth then is transferred to agar plates and is streaked for isolation.

M. genitalium grows very slowly, similar to *M. pneumoniae*, with which it shares many morphologic and antigenic similarities, and is difficult to isolate in culture. For clinical purposes, nucleic acid amplification is the only practical test; although a commercial product does not exist at this time, many institutions have developed their own assays to detect the organism (Ross & Jensen, 2006). No commercial serologic assays are available for *M. genitalium* or any of the genital mycoplasmas, and the use of serology for these organisms is confined to research.

TREATMENT

A tetracycline, macrolide, or fluoroquinolone is effective treatment for *M. pneumoniae*, and azithromycin or clarithromycin is preferred because of dosing considerations. Macrolide resistance has been reported in *M. pneumoniae* isolates in Japan, and patients infected with these isolates suffered a prolonged course of infection relative to those infected with susceptible isolates (Waites et al, 2008). Generally, ureaplasmas are susceptible to tetracyclines, quinolones, and macrolides, with tetracycline resistance seen in approximately 10% of isolates (Waites et al, 2005). Resistance to the fluoroquinolones appears to be unusual, and *Ureaplasma* spp. are resistant to clindamycin. *M. hominis* is susceptible to clindamycin and the newer quinolones but is resistant to the macrolides. Some isolates also are susceptible to tetracyclines, although resistance to the tetracyclines is thought to be greater than in *Ureaplasma* spp., at approximately 40% (Waites et al, 2005). *M. genitalium* can be problematic, in that treatment with macrolides (azithromycin), tetracyclines (doxycycline), or quinolones (ofloxacin, levofloxacin) can result in a significant number of failures; however, cases in which these agents fail appear to be effectively treated with moxifloxacin. Such a cascade treatment strategy has been recommended (Ross & Jensen, 2006; Bradshaw et al, 2008; Jernberg et al, 2008).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Angelakis E, Raoult D: Pathogenicity and treatment of *Bartonella* infections, *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 44:16–25, 2014.

An excellent review of current treatment recommendations for Bartonella *infections and their pathogenesis.*

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Recommendations for the laboratory-based detection of Chlamydia trachomatis and Neisseria gonorrhoeae—2014, *MMWR* 63:RR-2, 2014.

A discussion of current recommendations for laboratory diagnosis of genital infection with C. trachomatis *and* N. gonorrhoeae.

Ge Y, Rikihisa Y: Subversion of host cell signaling by *Orientia tsutsugamushi*, *Microbes Infect* 13:638–648, 2011.

A comprehensive review of host cell signaling changes induced by Orientia tsutsugamushi.

Loens K, Ursi D, Goossens H, et al: Molecular diagnosis of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* respiratory tract infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:4915, 2003.

A discussion of various nucleic acid amplification methods that have been examined for direct detection of M. pneumoniae *in respiratory specimens. Includes a discussion of specimen processing and quality control.*

Marrie TJ: Q fever pneumonia, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 24:27–41, 2010.

A comprehensive review of Q fever, including epidemiology, pathogenesis, clinical manifestations, diagnosis, and treatment.

Parola P, Paddock CD, Socolovschi C, et al: Update on tick-borne rickettsioses around the world: a geographic approach, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 26:657–702, 2013.

An excellent review of rickettsioses so far described worldwide, including newly described and unnamed rickettsial pathogens.

Peipert JF: Genital chlamydial infections, *N Engl J Med* 349:2424, 2003.

An excellent overview of genital infections with C. trachomatis, *including epidemiology, screening strategies, and treatment.*

Solomon AW, Peeling RW, Foster A, et al: Diagnosis and assessment of trachoma, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 17:982, 2004.

An excellent review of trachoma, including a historical perspective and an overview of the developmental cycle, clinical presentation, and laboratory diagnosis.

Waites KB, Talkington DF: *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* and its role as a human pathogen, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 17:697, 2004.

An in-depth review of M. pneumoniae, *including taxonomy, pathogenesis, clinical syndromes, diagnosis, and treatment.*

Walker DH, Paddock CD, Dumler JS: Emerging and re-emerging tick-transmitted rickettsial and ehrlichial infections, *Med Clin North Am* 92:1345, 2008.

Zinsser H, editor: *Rats, lice, and history*, New York, 1935, Little, Brown.

A very readable historical account of the toll that disease takes, especially in times of conflict.

REFERENCES

Aguero-Rosenfeld ME, Horowitz HW, Wormser GP, et al: Human granulocytic ehrlichiosis: a case series from a Medical Center in New York State, *Ann Intern Med* 125:904, 1996.

Almagor M, Kahane I, Yatziv S: Role of superoxide anion in host cell injury induced by *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infection, *J Clin Invest* 73:842, 1984.

Anderson BE, Greene CE, Jones DC, et al: *Ehrlichia ewingii* sp. nov., the etiologic agent of canine granulocytic ehrlichiosis, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 42:299, 1992a.

Anderson BE, Sumner JW, Dawson JE, et al: Detection of the etiologic agent of human ehrlichiosis by polymerase chain reaction, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:775, 1992b.

Andreasson K, Jonsson G, Lindell P, et al: Recurrent fever caused by Candidatus *Neoehrlichia mikurensis* in a rheumatoid arthritis patient treated with rituximab, *Rheumatology* 54:369–371, 2015.

Anziani OS, Ewing SA, Barker RW: Experimental transmission of a granulocytic form of the tribe Ehrlichieae by *Dermacentor variabilis* and *Amblyomma americanum* to dogs, *Am J Vet Res* 51:929, 1990.

Arias-Stella J, Leiberman PH, Erlandson RA, et al: Histology, immunohistochemistry and ultrastructure of the verruga in Carrion's disease, *Am J Surg Pathol* 10:595, 1986.

Asanovich KM, Bakken JS, Madigan JE, et al: Antigenic diversity of granulocytic *Ehrlichia* isolates from humans in Wisconsin and New York and a horse in California, *J Infect Dis* 176:1029, 1997.

Avidor B, Graidy M, Efrat G, et al: *Bartonella koehlerae*, a new cat-associated agent of culture-negative human endocarditis, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3462, 2004.

Azad AF: Epidemiology of murine typhus, *Annu Rev Entomol* 35:553, 1990.

Bakken JS, Dumler JS, Chen S-M, et al: Human granulocytic ehrlichiosis in the upper midwest United States: a new species emerging?, *JAMA* 272:212, 1994.

Balcells ME, Rabagliati R, Garcia P, et al: Endemic scrub typhus-like illness, Chile, *Emerg Infect Dis* 17:1659–1663, 2011.

Bandea CI, Koumans EH, Sawyer MK, et al: Evaluation of the rapid BioStar optical immunoassay for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in adolescent women, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:215, 2009.

Bass J, Freitas B, Freitas A: Prospective randomized double blind placebo-controlled evaluation of azithromycin for treatment of cat scratch disease, *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 17:447, 1999.

Baum SG: *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* and atypical pneumonia. In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 5, New York, 2000, Churchill Livingstone, p 2018.

Bergmans AMC, de Jong CMA, van Amerongen G, et al: Prevalence of *Bartonella* species in domestic cats in the Netherlands, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:2256, 1997.

Bergmans AMC, Schellekens JFP, Van Embden JDA, et al: Predominance of two *Bartonella henselae* variants among cat-scratch disease patients in the Netherlands, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:254, 1996.

Bernit E, Pouget J, Janbon F, et al: Neurological involvement in acute Q fever: a report of 29 cases and review of the literature, *Arch Intern Med* 162:693, 2002.

Birtles RJ, Raoult D: Comparison of partial citrate synthase gene (*gltA*) sequences for phylogenetic analysis of *Bartonella* species, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 46:891, 1996.

Blacksell SD, Bryant NJ, Paris DH, et al: Scrub typhus serologic testing with the indirect immunofluorescence method as a diagnostic gold standard: a lack of consensus leads to a lot of confusion, *Clin Infect Dis* 44:391–401, 2007.

Botelho-Nevers E, Socolovschi C, Raoult D, et al: Treatment of *Rickettsia* spp. infections: a review, *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther* 10:1425–1437, 2012.

Boyadzhyan B, Yashina T, Yatabe JH, et al: Comparison of the APTIMA CT and GC assays with the APTIMA Combo 2 assay, the Abbott LCx assay, and direct fluorescent-antibody and culture assays for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3089, 2004.

Bradshaw CS, Chen MY, Fairley CK: Persistence of *Mycoplasma genitalium* following azithromycin therapy, *PLoS ONE* 3:e3618, 2008.

Branger S, Rolain JM, Raoult D: Evaluation of antibiotic susceptibilities of *Ehrlichia canis*, *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*, and *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* by real-time PCR, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 48:4822, 2004.

Brenner DJ, O'Connor SP, Winkler HH, et al: Proposals to unify the genera *Bartonella* and *Rochalimaea*, with descriptions of *Bartonella quintana* comb. nov., and *Bartonella vinsonii* comb. nov., *Bartonella henselae* comb. nov., and *Bartonella elizabethae* comb. nov., and to remove the family *Bartonellaceae* from the order *Rickettsiales*, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 43:777, 1993.

Brettman LR, Lewin S, Holzman RS, et al: Rickettsialpox: report of an outbreak and a contemporary review, *Medicine* 60:363, 1981.

Brouqui P, Dupont HT, Drancourt M, et al: Chronic Q fever: ninety-two cases from France, including 27 cases without endocarditis, *Arch Intern Med* 153:642, 1993.

Brouqui P, La Scola B, Roux V, et al: Chronic *Bartonella quintana* bacteremia in homeless patients, *N Engl J Med* 340:184, 1999.

Brouqui P, Raoult D: In vitro antibiotic susceptibility of the newly recognized agent of ehrlichiosis in humans, *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 36: 2799, 1992.

Badiaga S, Brouqui P: Human louse-transmitted infectious diseases, *Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 18:332–337, 2012.

Bruce D: Trench fever: final report of the war office trench fever investigation committee, *J Hyg* 20:258, 1921.

Buller RS, Arans M, Hmiel SP, et al: *Ehrlichia ewingii*, a newly recognized agent of human ehrlichiosis, *N Engl J Med* 341:148, 1999.

Burton MJ, Mabey DC: The global burden of trachoma: a review, *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 3:e460, 2009.

Campbell LA, Kuo CC, Grayston JT: Characterization of the new *Chlamydia* agent, TWAR, as a unique organism by restriction endonuclease analysis and DNA-DNA hybridization, *J Clin Microbiol* 25:1911, 1987.

Campbell LA, Kuo CC, Grayston JT: *Chlamydia pneumoniae* and cardiovascular disease, *Emerg Infect Dis* 4:571, 1998.

Carroll KC, Aldeen WE, Morrison M, et al: Evaluation of the Abbott LCx ligase chain reaction assay for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in urine and genital swab specimens from sexually transmitted disease clinic population, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:1630, 1998.

Carder C, Mercey D, Benn P: Chlamydia trachomatis, *Sex Transm Infect* 82(Suppl IV):iv10, 2006.

Carter JD, Gérard HC, Espinoza LR, et al: Chlamydiae as etiologic agents for chronic undifferentiated spondyloarthritis, *Arthritis Rheum* 60:1311, 2009.

Cassell GH, Cole BC: Mycoplasmas as agents of human disease, *N Engl J Med* 304:80, 1981.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Compendium of measures to control *Chlamydia psittaci* infection among humans (psittacosis) and pet birds (avian chlamydiosis), 1998, *MMWR* 47:RR–10, 1998.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Psittacosis at a turkey processing plant—North Carolina, 1989, *MMWR* 39:460, 1990.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Notifiable Diseases and Mortality Tables, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 59:168–181, 2010.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Murine typhus—Hawaii, 2002, *MMWR Morbid Mortal Wkly Rep* 52:1224–1226, 2003.

Chandler DKF, Grabowski MW, Barile MF: *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* attachment: competitive inhibition by mycoplasmal binding component and by sialic acid containing glycoconjugates, *Infect Immun* 38:598, 1982.

Chanock RM, Hayflick L, Barile MF: Growth on artificial medium of an agent associated with atypical pneumonia and its identification as a PPLO, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 48:41, 1962.

Chen SM, Cullman LC, Walker DH: Western immunoblotting analysis of the antibody responses of patients with human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis to different strains of *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* and *Ehrlichia canis*, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 4:731, 1997a.

Chen SM, Dumler JS, Bakken JS, et al: Identification of a granulocytotropic *Ehrlichia* species as the etiologic agent of human disease, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:589, 1994.

Chen SM, Yu X-J, Popov VL, et al: Genetic and antigenic diversity of *Ehrlichia chaffeensis:* comparative analysis of a novel human strain from Oklahoma and previously isolated strains, *J Infect Dis* 175:856, 1997b.

Chi EY, Kuo CC, Grayston JT: Unique ultrastructure in the elementary body of *Chlamydia* sp. strain TWAR, *J Bacteriol* 169:3757, 1987.

Childs JE, Sumner JW, Nicholson WL, et al: Outcome of diagnostic tests using samples from patients with culture-proven human monocytic ehrlichiosis: Implication for surveillance, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:2997, 1999.

Ching WM, Rowland D, Zhang Z, et al: Early diagnosis of scrub typhus with a rapid flow assay using recombinant major outer membrane protein antigen (r56) of *Orientia tsutsugamushi*, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 8:409, 2001.

Chomel BB, Abbott RC, Kasten RW, et al: *Bartonella henselae* prevalence in domestic cats in California: risk factors and association between bacteremia and antibody titers, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:2445, 1995.

Chomel BB, Kasten RW, Floyd-Hawkins KA, et al: Experimental transmission of *Bartonella henselae* by the cat flea, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:1952, 1996.

Christie LJ, Honarmand S, Talkington DF, et al: Pediatric encephalitis: what role of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae?*, *Pediatrics* 120:305, 2007.

Cles LD, Bruch K, Stamm WE: Staining characteristics of six commercially available monoclonal immunofluorescence reagents for direct diagnosis of *Chlamydia trachomatis* infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 26:1735, 1988.

Clyde WA Jr, Kenny GE, Schachter J: Laboratory diagnosis of chlamydial and mycoplasmal infections. In Drew WL, editor: *Cumitech 19*, Washington, DC, 1984, American Society for Microbiology.

Coleman RE, Sangkasuwan V, Suwanabun N, et al: Comparative evaluation of selected diagnostic assays for the detection of IgG and IgM antibody to *Orientia tsutsugamushi* in Thailand, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 67:497, 2002.

Comer JA, Nicholson WL, Sumner JW, et al: Diagnosis of human ehrlichiosis by PCR assay of acute-phase serum, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:31, 1999.

Cox RL, Kuo CC, Grayston JT, et al: Deoxyribonucleic acid relatedness of *Chlamydia* sp. strain TWAR to *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Chlamydia psittaci*, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 38:265, 1988.

Dalton MJ, Clarke MJ, Holman RC, et al: National surveillance for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1981–1992: epidemiologic summary and evaluation of risk factors for fatal outcome, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 52:405, 1995a.

Dalton MJ, Robinson LE, Cooper J, et al: Use of *Bartonella* antigens for serologic diagnosis of cat-scratch disease at a national referral center, *Arch Intern Med* 155:1670, 1995b.

Dawson JE, Anderson BE, Fishbein DB, et al: Isolation and characterization of an *Ehrlichia* sp. from a patient diagnosed with human ehrlichiosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 29:2741, 1991.

Daxboeck F, Kircher K, Krause R, et al: Effect of age on antibody titer to *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, *Scand J Infect Dis* 34:577, 2002.

de Sousa R, Franca A, Nobrega SD, et al: Host- and microbe-related risk factors for and pathophysiology of fatal *Rickettsia conorii* infection in Portuguese patients, *J Infect Dis* 198:576, 2008.

Dean D, Kandel RP, Adhikari HK, et al: Multiple *Chlamydiaceae* species in trachoma: implications for disease pathogenesis and control, *PLoS Med* 5:e14, 2008.

Demaio J, Boyd RS, Rensi R, et al: False-positive Chlamydiazyme results during urine sediment analysis due to bacterial urinary tract infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 29:1436, 1991.

Demma LJ, Colman RC, McQuiston JH, et al: Epidemiology of human ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis in the United States, 2001–2002, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 73:400, 2005.

Doyle CK, Labruna MB, Breitschwerdt EB, et al: Detection of medically important *Ehrlichia* by quantitative multicolor TaqMan real-time polymerase chain reaction of the *dsb* gene, *J Mol Diagn* 7:504, 2005.

Dehio C: Infection-associated type IV secretion systems of *Bartonella* and their diverse roles in host cell interaction, *Cell Microbiol* 10:1591–1598, 2008.

Drancourt M, George F, Brouqui P, et al: Diagnosis of Mediterranean spotted fever by indirect immunofluorescence of *Rickettsia conorii* in circulating endothelial cells isolated with monoclonal antibody-coated immunomagnetic beads, *J Infect Dis* 166:660, 1992.

Drancourt M, Mainardi JL, Brouqui P, et al: *Bartonella (Rochalimaea) quintana* endocarditis in three homeless men, *N Engl J Med* 332:419, 1995.

Drancourt M, Raoult D, Xeridat B, et al: Q fever meningoencephalitis in five patients, *Eur J Epidemiol* 7:134, 1991.

Dumler JS, Barbet AF, Bekker CP, et al: Reorganization of genera in the families *Rickettsiaceae* and *Anaplasmataceae* in the order *Rickettsiales:* unification of some species of *Ehrlichia* with *Anaplasma*, *Cowdria* with *Ehrlichia* and *Ehrlichia* with *Neorickettsia*, descriptions of six new species combinations and designations of *Ehrlichia equi* and "HG agents" as subjective synonyms of *Ehrlichia phagocytophilia*, *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 6:2145, 2001.

Dumler JS, Brouqui P: Molecular diagnosis of human granulocytic anaplasmosis, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 4: 559, 2004.

Dumler JS, Dawson JE, Walker DH: Human ehrlichiosis: hematopathology and immunohistologic detection of *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*, *Hum Pathol* 24:391, 1993a.

Dumler JS, Gage WR, Pettis GL, et al: Rapid immunoperoxidase demonstration of *Rickettsia rickettsii* in fixed cutaneous specimens from patients with Rocky Mountain spotted fever, *Am J Clin Pathol* 93:410, 1990.

Dumler JS, Sutker WL, Walker DH: Persistent infection with *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*, *Clin Infect Dis* 17:903, 1993b.

Dumler JS, Taylor JP, Walker DH: Clinical and laboratory features of murine typhus in south Texas, 1980–1987, *JAMA* 266:1365, 1991.

Dunn BE, Monson TP, Dumler JS, et al: Identification of *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* morulae in cerebrospinal fluid mononuclear cells, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:2207, 1992.

Edelman DC, Dumler JS: Evaluation of an improved PCR diagnostic assay for human granulocytic ehrlichiosis, *Mol Diagn* 1:41, 1996.

Ehret JM, Leszcynski JC, Douglas JM, et al: Evaluation of Chlamydiazyme enzyme immunoassay for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in urine specimens from men, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:2702, 1993.

Elghetany TM, Walker D: Hemostatic changes in Rocky Mountain spotted fever and Mediterranean spotted fever, *Am J Clin Pathol* 112:159, 1999.

Eng TR, Karkess JR, Fishbein DB, et al: Epidemiologic, clinical and laboratory findings of human ehrlichiosis in the United States, *J Am Med Assoc* 264:2251–2258, 1990.

Everett ED, Evans KA, Henry RB, et al: Human ehrlichiosis in adults after tick exposure: diagnosis using polymerase chain reaction, *Ann Intern Med* 120: 730, 1994.

Everett KDE, Bush RM, Andersen AA: Emended description of the order *Chlamydiales*, proposal of *Parachlamydiaceae* fam. nov. and *Simkaniaceae* fam. nov., each containing one monotypic genus, revised taxonomy of the family *Chlamydiaceae*, including a new genus and five new species, and standards for the identification of organisms, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 49:415, 1999.

Ewing SA, Dawson JE, Kocan AA, et al: Experimental transmission of *Ehrlichia chaffeensis (Rickettsiales: Ehrlichieae)* among white-tailed deer by *Amblyomma americanum (Acari: Ixodidae)*, *J Med Entomol* 32:368, 1995.

Ewing SA, Roberson WR, Buckner RG, et al: A new strain of *Ehrlichia canis*, *J Am Vet Med Assoc* 159:1771, 1971.

Fenollar F, Sire S, Raoult D: *Bartonella vinsonii* subsp. *arupensis* as an agent of blood culture-negative endocarditis in a human, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:945, 2005.

Fernald GW, Collier AM, Clyde WA Jr: Respiratory infections due to *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* in infants and children, *Pediatrics* 55:327, 1975.

Ferrero DV, Meyers HN, Schultz DE, et al: Performance of the Gen-Probe amplified *Chlamydia trachomatis* assay in detecting *Chlamydia trachomatis* in endocervical and urine specimens from women and urethral and urine specimens from men attending sexually transmitted disease and family planning clinics, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:3230, 1998.

Fichtenbaum CJ, Peterson LR, Weil GJ: Ehrlichiosis presenting as a life-threatening illness with features of the toxic shock syndrome, *Am J Med* 95:351, 1993.

Fishbein DB, Dawson JE, Robinson LE: Human ehrlichiosis in the United States, 1985 to 1990, *Ann Intern Med* 120:736, 1994.

Fishbein DB, Raoult D: A cluster of *Coxiella burnetii* infections associated with exposure to vaccinated goats and their unpasteurized dairy products, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 47:35, 1992.

Foucault C, Barrau K, Brouqui P, et al: *Bartonella quintana* bacteremia among homeless people, *Clin Infect Dis* 35:684, 2002.

Foucault C, Raoult D, Brouqui P: Randomized open trial of gentamicin and doxycycline for eradication of *Bartonella quintana* from blood in patients with chronic bacteremia, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 47: 2204, 2003.

Fournier PE, Casalta JP, Habib G, et al: Modification of the diagnostic criteria proposed by the Duke endocarditis service to permit improved diagnosis of Q fever endocarditis, *Am J Med* 100:629, 1996.

Fournier PE, Marrie T-J, Raoult D: Diagnosis of Q fever, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:1823, 1998.

Fournier PE, Raoult D: Comparison of PCR and serology assays for early diagnosis of acute Q fever, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:5094, 2003.

Fournier PE, Raoult D: Suicide PCR on skin biopsy specimens for diagnosis of rickettsioses, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3428, 2004.

Furuya Y, Katayama T, Yoshida Y, et al: Specific amplification of *Rickettsia japonica* DNA from clinical specimens by PCR, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:487, 1995.

Furuya Y, Yoshida Y, Katayama T, et al: Serotype-specific amplification of *Rickettsia tsutsugamushi* DNA by nested polymerase chain reaction, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:1637, 1993.

Gage KL, Burgdorfer W, Hopla CE: Hispid cotton rats *(Sigmodon hispidus)* as a source for infecting immature *Dermacentor variabilis (Acari: Ixodidae)* with *Rickettsia rickettsii*, *J Med Entomol* 27:615, 1990.

Gaydos C, Maldeis NE, Hardick P, et al: *Mycoplasma genitalium* compared to chlamydia, gonorrhoea and trichomonas as an etiologic agent of urethritis in men attending STD clinics, *Sex Transm Infect* 85:438, 2009.

Gaydos CA, Theodore M, Dalesio N, et al: Comparison of three nucleic acid amplification tests for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in urine specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3041, 2004.

Geary SJ, Gabridge MG: Characterization of a human lung fibroblast receptor site for *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, *Isr J Med Sci* 23:462, 1987.

Goessens WHF, Mouton JW, vanDer Meijden WI, et al: Comparison of three commercially available amplification assays, AMP CT, LCx, and COBAS AMPLICOR, for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in first-void urine, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:2628, 1997.

Goldenberg RL, Andrews WW, Goepfert AR, et al: The Alabama preterm birth study: umbilical cord blood *Ureaplasma urealyticum* and *Mycoplasma hominis* cultures in very preterm newborns, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 198:43e–1, 2008.

Goodman JL, Nelson C, Vitale B, et al: Direct cultivation of the causative agent of human granulocytic ehrlichiosis, *N Engl J Med* 334:209, 1996.

Gouin E, Egile C, Dehoux P, et al: The RickA protein of *Rickettsia conorii* activates the Arp2/3 complex, *Nature* 427:457–461, 2004.

Ghorbani RP, Ghorbani AJ, Jain MK, et al: A case of scrub typhus probably acquired in Africa, *Clini Infect Dis* 25:1473–1474, 1997.

Graf PC, Chretien JP, Ung L, et al: Prevalence of seropositivity to spotted fever group rickettsiae and *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* in a large, demographically diverse U.S. sample, *Clin Infect Dis* 46:70, 2008.

Grankvist A, Andersson PO, Mattsson M, et al: Infections with the tick-borne bacterium "Candidatus *Neoehrlichia mikurensis*" mimic noninfectious conditions in patients with B cell malignancies or autoimmune diseases, *Clin Infect Dis* 58:1716–1722, 2014.

Grayston JT, Campbell LA, Kuo CC, et al: A new respiratory pathogen: *Chlamydia pneumoniae* strain TWAR, *J Infect Dis* 161:618, 1990.

Grayston JT, Wang SP, Kuo CC, et al: Current knowledge on *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, strain TWAR, an important cause of pneumonia and other acute respiratory diseases, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 8:191, 1989.

Haggerty CL, Totten PA, Astete SG, et al: *Mycoplasma genitalium* among women with nongonococcal, nonchlamydial pelvic inflammatory disease, *Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol* 2006:30184, 2006.

Hamilton KS, Standaert SM, Kinney MC: Characteristic peripheral blood findings in human ehrlichiosis, *Mod Pathol* 17:512, 2004.

Hammerschlag MR, Alpert S, Rosner I, et al: Microbiology of the vagina in children: normal and potentially pathogenic organisms, *Pediatrics* 62:57, 1978.

Hardalo CJ, Quagliarello V, Dumler JS: Human granulocytic ehrlichiosis in Connecticut: report of a fatal case, *Clin Infect Dis* 21:910, 1995.

Heinzen RA, Hayes SF, Peacock MG, et al: Directional actin polymerization associated with spotted fever group rickettsia infection of Vero cells, *Infect Immun* 61:1926, 1993.

Heller R, Artosis M, Xemar V, et al: Prevalence of *Bartonella henselae* and *Bartonella clarridgeiae* in stray cats, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:1327, 1997.

Helmick CG, Bernard KW, D'Angelo LJ: Rocky Mountain spotted fever: clinical, laboratory, and epidemiological features of 262 cases, *J Infect Dis* 150:480, 1984.

Herrero-Herrero JI, Walker DH, Ruiz-Beltran R: Immunohistochemical evaluation of the cellular immune response to *Rickettsia conorii* in "taches noires.", *J Infect Dis* 155:802, 1987.

Higgins JA, Radulovic S, Jaworski DC, et al: Acquisition of the cat scratch disease agent *Bartonella henselae* by cat fleas *(Siphonaptera: Pulicidae)*, *J Med Entomol* 33:490, 1996.

Hilbink F, Penrose M, Kovacova E, et al: Q fever is absent from New Zealand, *Int J Epidemiol* 22:945–949, 1993.

Hodzic E, Fish D, Maretzki CM, et al: Acquisition and transmission of the agent of human granulocytic ehrlichiosis by *Ixodes scapularis* ticks, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:3574, 1998.

Hillman RD Jr, Baktash YM, Martinez JJ: OmpA-mediated rickettsial adherence to and invasion of human endothelial cells is dependent upon interaction with alpha2beta1 integrin, *Cell Microbiol* 15:727–741, 2013.

Hoover TA, Culp DW, Vodkin MH, et al: Chromosomal DNA deletions explain phenotypic characteristics of two antigenic variants, phase II and RSA 514 (crazy), of the *Coxiella burnetii* nine-mile strain, *Infect Immun* 70:6726, 2002.

Horowitz HW, Aguero-Rosenfeld ME, McKenna DF, et al: Clinical and laboratory spectrum of culture-proven human granulocytic ehrlichiosis: comparison with culture-negative cases, *Clin Infect Dis* 27:1314, 1998.

Houpikian P, Raoult D: Western immunoblotting for *Bartonella* endocarditis, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 10:95, 2003.

Izzard L, Fuller A, Blacksell SD, et al: Isolation of a novel *Orientia* species (*O. chuto* sp. nov.) from a patient infected in Dubai, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:4404–4409, 2010.

Jang W-J, Huh M-S, Park K-H, et al: Evaluation of an immunoglobulin M capture enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for diagnosis of *Orientia tsutsugamushi* infection, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 10:394, 2003.

Jeanclaude D, Godmer P, Leveiller D, et al: *Bartonella alsatica* endocarditis in a French patient in close contact with rabbits, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 15(Suppl 2):110, 2009.

Jernberg E, Moghaddam A, Moi H: Azithromycin and moxifloxacin for microbiological cure of *Mycoplasma genitalium* infection: an open study, *Int J STD AIDS* 19:676, 2008.

Jiang J, Chan T-C, Temenak JJ, et al: Development of a quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction assay specific for *Orienta tsutsugamushi*, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 70:351, 2004.

Jiang J, Marienau KJ, May LA, et al: Laboratory diagnosis of two scrub typhus outbreaks at Camp Fuji, Japan in 2000 and 2001 by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, rapid flow assay, and Western blot assay using outer membrane 56-kD recombinant proteins, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 69:60, 2003.

Jones RB, Batteiger BE: *Chlamydia trachomatis* (trachoma, perinatal infections, lymphogranuloma venereum, and other genital infections). In Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 5, New York, 2000, Churchill Livingstone, p 1989.

Jones RB, Priest JB, Kuo C: Subacute chlamydial endocarditis, *JAMA* 247:655, 1982.

Kaplan JE, Schonberger LB: The sensitivity of various serologic tests in the diagnosis of Rocky Mountain spotted fever, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 35:840, 1986.

Kaplowitz LG, Fischer JJ, Sparling PF: Rocky Mountain spotted fever: a clinical dilemma, *Curr Clin Top Infect Dis* 2:89, 1981.

Kaplowitz LG, Lange JV, Fischer JJ, et al: Correlation of rickettsial titers, circulating endotoxin, and clinical features in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, *Arch Intern Med* 143:1149, 1983.

Kass EM, Szaniawski WK, Levy H, et al: Rickettsialpox in a New York City hospital, 1980 to 1989, *N Engl J Med* 331:1612, 1994.

Kawamori F, Akiyama M, Sugieda M, et al: Two-step polymerase chain reaction for diagnosis of scrub typhus and identification of antigenic variants of *Rickettsia tsutsugamushi*, *J Vet Med Sci* 55:749, 1993.

Kelly DJ, Chan CT, Paxton H, et al: Comparative evaluation of a commercial enzyme immunoassay for the detection of human antibody to *Rickettsia* typhi, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 2:356, 1995.

Kidd L, Maggi R, Diniz PP, et al: Evaluation of conventional and real-time PCR assays for detection and differentiation of spotted fever group *Rickettsia* in dog blood, *Vet Microbiol* 129:294, 2008.

Kim D-M, Kim HL, Park CY, et al: Clinical usefulness of eschar polymerase chain reaction for the diagnosis of scrub typhus: a prospective study, *Clin Infect Dis* 43:1296, 2006.

Kim Y-S, Yun H-J, Shim SK, et al: A comparative trial of a single dose of azithromycin versus doxycycline for the treatment of mild scrub typhus, *Clin Infect Dis* 39:1329, 2004.

Kleba B, Clark TR, Lutter EI, et al: Disruption of the Rickettsia rickettsii Sca2 autotransporter inhibits actin-based motility, *Infect Immun* 78:2240, 2010.

Klein JO, Buckland D, Finland M: Colonization of newborn infants by mycoplasmas, *N Engl J Med* 280: 1025, 1969.

Klein MB, Nelson CM, Goodman JL: Antibiotic susceptibility of the newly cultivated agent of human granulocytic ehrlichiosis: promising activity of quinolones and rifamycins, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 41:76, 1997.

Kluytmans JA, Goessens WHF, Mouton JW, et al: Evaluation of Clearview and Magic Lite tests, polymerase chain reaction, and cell culture for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in urogenital specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:3204, 1993.

Knowles TT, Alleman AR, Sorenson HL, et al: Characterization of the major antigenic protein 2 of *Ehrlichia canis* and *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* and its application for serodiagnosis of ehrlichiosis, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 10:520, 2003.

Koehler JE, Sanchez MA, Garrido CS, et al: Molecular epidemiology of *Bartonella* infections in patients with bacillary angiomatosis-peliosis, *N Engl J Med* 337: 1876, 1997.

Kordick DL, Hilyard EJ, Hadfield TL, et al: *Bartonella clarridgeiae*, a newly recognized zoonotic pathogen causing inoculation papules, fever, and lymphadenopathy (cat scratch disease), *J Clin Microbiol* 35:1813, 1997.

Koumans EH, Black CM, Markowitz LE, et al: Comparison of methods for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* using commercially available nucleic acid amplification tests and a liquid pap smear medium, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:1507, 2003.

Kramer VL, Randolph MP, Hui LT, et al: Detection of the agents of human ehrlichioses in ixodid ticks from California, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 60:62, 1999.

Krause PJ, Corrow CL, Bakken JA: Successful treatment of human granulocytic ehrlichiosis in children using rifampin, *Pediatrics* 112:e652, 2003.

Krech T, Bleckmann M: Paatz R. Comparison of buffalo green monkey cells and McCoy cells for isolation of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in a microtiter system, *J Clin Microbiol* 27:2364, 1989.

Kumar S, Hammerschlag MR: Acute respiratory infection due to *Chlamydia pneumoniae*: current status of diagnostic methods, *Clin Infect Dis* 44:568, 2007.

La Scola B, Raoult D: Diagnosis of Mediterranean spotted fever by cultivation of *Rickettsia conorii* from blood and skin samples using the centrifugation-shell vial technique and by detection of *R. conorii* in circulating endothelial cells: a 6-year follow-up, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:2722, 1996a.

La Scola B, Raoult D: Serological cross-reactions between *Bartonella quintana*, *Bartonella henselae*, and *Coxiella burnetii*, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:2270, 1996b.

Leitner M, Yitzhaki S, Rzotkiewicz S, et al: Polymerase chain reaction-based diagnosis of Mediterranean spotted fever in serum and tissue samples, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 67:166, 2002.

Lepidi H, Houpikian P, Liang Z, et al: Cardiac valves in patients with Q fever endocarditis: microbiological, molecular, and histologic studies, *J Infect Dis* 187:1097, 2003.

Levy PY, Drancourt M, Etienne J, et al: Comparison of different antibiotic regimens for therapy of 32 cases of Q fever endocarditis, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 35:533, 1991.

Li H, Walker DH: rOmpA is a critical protein for the adhesion of *Rickettsia rickettsii* to host cells, *Microb Pathog* 24:289, 1998.

Liston TE, Koehler JE: Granulomatous hepatitis and necrotizing splenitis due to *Bartonella henselae* in a patient with cancer: case report and review of hepatosplenic manifestations of bartonella infection, *Clin Infect Dis* 22:951, 1996.

Liu Y-X, Cao W-C, Gao Y, et al: *Orientia tsutsugamushi* in eschars from scrub typhus patients, *Emerg Infect Dis* 12:1109, 2006.

Manhart LE, Holmes KK, Hughes JP, et al: *Mycoplasma genitalium* among young adults in the United States: an emerging sexually transmitted infection, *Am J Public Health* 97:1118, 2007.

McDade JE, Shepard CC, Redus MA, et al: Evidence of *Rickettsia prowazekii* infections in the United States, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 29:277, 1980.

McQuiston JH, Childs JE: Q fever in humans and animals in the United States, *Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis* 2:179–191, 2002.

McQuiston JH, Holman RC, Mccall CL, et al: National surveillance and the epidemiology of Q fever in the United States, 1978–2004, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 75:36, 2006.

McQuiston JH, Paddock CD, Singleton J Jr, et al: Imported spotted fever rickettsioses in United States travelers returning from Africa: a summary of cases confirmed by laboratory testing at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1999–2000, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 70:98, 2004.

Mahony J, Chong S, Jang D, et al: Urine specimens from pregnant and nonpregnant women inhibitory to amplification of *Chlamydia trachomatis* nucleic acid by PCR ligase chain reaction, and transcription-mediated amplification: identification of urinary substances associated with inhibition and removal of inhibitory activity, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:3122, 1998.

Manosroi J, Chutipongvivate S, Auwanit W, et al: Early diagnosis of scrub typhus in Thailand from clinical specimens by nested polymerase chain reaction, *Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health* 34:831, 2003.

Maraha B, Berg H, Kerver M, et al: Is the perceived association between *Chlamydia pneumoniae* and vascular diseases biased by methodology?, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3937, 2004.

Marrie TJ: *Coxiella burnetii* (Q fever). In Yu VL, Weber R, Raoult D, editors: *Antimicrobial therapy and vaccines*, ed 2, New York, 2002, Apple Trees Production, p 869.

Marrie TJ, editor: *Q fever* (vol I), The disease, Boca Raton, Fla., 1990, CRC Press.

Marrie TJ, Durrant H, Williams C, et al: Exposure to parturient cats: a risk factor for acquisition of Q fever in maritime Canada, *J Infect Dis* 158:101, 1988.

Marrie TJ, Raoult D: Q fever—a review and issues for the next century, *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 8:145, 1997.

Martinez JJ, Cossart P: Early signaling events involved in the entry of *Rickettsia conorii* into mammalian cells, *J Cell Sci* 117:5097, 2004.

Martinez JJ, Seveau S, Veiga E, et al: Ku70, a component of DNA-dependent protein kinase, is a mammalian receptor for *Rickettsia conorii*, *Cell* 123:1013, 2005.

Maurin M, Eb F, Etienne J, et al: Serological cross-reactions between *Bartonella* and *Chlamydia* species: implications for diagnosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:2283, 1997.

Maurin M, Raoult D: Q fever, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 12:518–553, 1999.

Mills RD, Young A, Cain K, et al: Chlamydiazyme plus blocking assay to detect *Chlamydia trachomatis* in endocervical specimens, *Am J Clin Pathol* 97:209, 1992.

Montes M, Cilla G, Vicente D, et al: Gipuzkoa, Basque Country, Spain (1984-2004): a hyperendemic area of Q fever, *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1078:129–132, 2006.

Moron CL, Feng H-M, Wear DJ, et al: Identification of the target cells of *Orientia tsutsugamushi* in human cases of scrub typhus, *Mod Pathol* 14:752, 2001.

Murai K, Tachibana N, Okayama A, et al: Sensitivity of polymerase chain reaction assay for *Rickettsia tsutsugamushi* in patients' blood samples, *Microbiol Immunol* 36:1145, 1992.

Miyamura S, Ohta T, Tamura A: [Comparison of in vitro susceptibilities of *Rickettsia prowazekii*, *R. rickettsii*, *R. sibirica and R. tsutsugamushi* to antimicrobial agents], *Nihon Saikingaku Zasshi* 44:717–721, 1989.

Nascimento EMM, Colombo S, Nagasse-Sugahara T-K, et al: Evaluation of PCR-based assay in human serum samples for diagnosis of fatal cases of spotted fever group rickettsiosis, *Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 15(Suppl 2):232, 2009.

Ndip LM, Fokam EB, Bouyer DH, et al: Detection of *Rickettsia africae* in patients and ticks along the coastal region of Cameroon, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 71:363, 2004.

Nelson HD, Helfand M: Screening for chlamydial infection, *Am J Prev Med* 20:95, 2001.

Nicholson WL, Comer JA, Sumner JW, et al: An indirect immunofluorescence assay using a cell culture-derived antigen for detection of antibodies to the agent of human granulocytic ehrlichiosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:1510, 1997.

Niebylski ML, Peacock MG, Schwan TG: Lethal effect of *Rickettsia rickettsii* on its tick vector *(Dermacentor andersoni)*, *Appl Environ Microbiol* 65:773, 1999.

Olano JP, Hogrefe W, Seaton P, et al: Clinical manifestations, epidemiology, and laboratory diagnosis of human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis in a commercial laboratory setting, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 10:891, 2003a.

Olano JP, Masters E, Hogrefe W, et al: Human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis, Missouri, *Emerg Infect Dis* 9:1579, 2003b.

Osuga K, Kimura M, Goto H, et al: A case of Tsutsugamushi disease probably contracted in Africa, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 10:95–96, 1991.

Omsland A, Hackstadt T, Heinzen RA: Bringing culture to the uncultured: *Coxiella burnetii* and lessons for obligate intracellular bacterial pathogens, *PLoS Pathog* 9:e1003540, 2013.

Omsland A, Cockrell DC, Howe D, et al: Host cell-free growth of the Q fever bacterium *Coxiella burnetii*, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 106:4430–4434, 2009.

Oyston PC, Davies C: Q fever: the neglected biothreat agent, *J Med Microbiol* 60(Pt 1):9–21, 2011.

Paddock CD, Finley RW, Wright CS, et al: *Rickettsia parkeri* rickettsiosis and its clinical distinction from Rocky Mountain spotted fever, *Clin Infect Dis* 47:1188, 2008.

Paddock CD, Folk SM, Shore GM, et al: Infections with *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* and *Ehrlichia ewingii* in persons coinfected with human immunodeficiency virus, *Clin Infect Dis* 33:1586, 2001.

Paddock CD, Greer PW, Ferebee TL, et al: Hidden mortality attributable to Rocky Mountain spotted fever: immunohistochemical detection of fatal, serologically unconfirmed disease, *J Infect Dis* 179:1469, 1999.

Paddock CD, Suchard DP, Grumbach KL, et al: Brief report: fatal seronegative ehrlichiosis in a patient with HIV infection, *N Engl J Med* 329:1164, 1993.

Paddock CD, Sumner JW, Comer JA, et al: *Rickettsia parkeri:* a newly recognized cause of spotted fever rickettsiosis in the United States, *Clin Infect Dis* 38:805, 2004.

Paris DH, Aukkanit N, Jenjaroen K, et al: A highly sensitive quantitative real-time PCR assay based on the *groEL* gene of contemporary Thai strains of *Orientia tsutsugamushi*, *Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 15:488, 2009.

Paris DH, Blacksell SD, Newton PN, et al: Simple, rapid and sensitive detection of *Orientia tsutsugamushi* by loop-isothermal DNA amplification, *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 102:1239, 2008.

Paris DH, Blacksell SD, Nawtaisong P, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of a loop-mediated isothermal PCR assay for detection of *Orientia tsutsugamushi* during acute Scrub Typhus infection, *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 5:e1307, 2011.

Parola P, Miller RS, McDaniel B, et al: Emerging rickettsioses of the Thai-Myanmar border, *Emerg Infect Dis* 9:592, 2003.

Patterson KD: Typhus and its control in Russia, 1870–1940, *Med Hist* 37:361, 1993.

Perez M, Rikihisa Y, Wen B: *Ehrlichia canis*-like agent isolated from a man in Venezuela: antigenic and genetic characterization, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:2133, 1996.

Perez M, Bodor M, Zhang C, et al: Human infection with *Ehrlichia canis* accompanied by clinical signs in Venezuela, *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1078:110–117, 2006.

Petrovay F, Balla E: Two fatal cases of psittacosis caused by *Chlamyophila psittaci*, *J Med Microbiol* 57:1296, 2008.

Petrovec M, Furlan SL, Zupanc TA, et al: Human disease in Europe caused by a granulocytic *Ehrlichia* species, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:1556, 1997.

Phillips LE, Goodrich KH, Turner RM, et al: Isolation of *Mycoplasma* species and *Ureaplasma urealyticum* from obstetrical and gynecological patients by using commercially available medium formulations, *J Clin Microbiol* 24:377, 1986.

Ponka A: The occurrence and clinical picture of serologically verified *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections with emphasis on central nervous system, cardiac, and joint manifestations, *Ann Clin Res* 11(Suppl 24):1, 1979.

Prakash JAJ, Reller ME, Barat N, et al: Assessment of a quantitative multiplex 5′ nuclease real-time PCR for spotted fever and typhus group rickettsioses and *Orientia tsutsugamushi*, *Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 15:292, 2009.

Pritt BS, Sloan LM, Johnson DK, et al: Emergence of a new pathogenic *Ehrlichia* species, Wisconsin and Minnesota, 2009, *N Engl J Med* 365:422–429, 2011.

Prutsky G, Domecq JP, Mori L, et al: Treatment outcomes of human bartonellosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *Int J Infect Dis* 17:e811–e819, 2013.

Pulliainen AT, Dehio C: *Bartonella henselae:* subversion of vascular endothelial cell functions by translocated bacterial effector proteins, *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 41:507–510, 2009.

Puolakkainen M, Hiltunen-Back E, Reunala T, et al: Comparison of performances of two commercially available tests, a PCR assay and a ligase chain reaction test, in detection of urogenital *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:1489, 1998.

Raoult D, Drancourt M: Antimicrobial therapy of rickettsial diseases, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 35:2457, 1991.

Raoult D, Fournier PE, Vandenesch F, et al: Outcome and treatment of *Bartonella* endocarditis, *Arch Intern Med* 163:226, 2003.

Raoult D, La Scola B, Enea M, et al: A flea-associated rickettsia pathogenic for humans, *Emerg Infect Dis* 7:73, 2001.

Raoult D, Marrie T, Mege J: Natural history and pathophysiology of Q fever, *Lancet Infect Dis* 5:219, 2005.

Raoult D, Roblot F, Rolain JM, et al: First isolation of *Bartonella alsatica* from a valve of a patient with endocarditis, *J Clin Microbiol* 44:278, 2006.

Raoult D: Uncultured candidatus *Neoehrlichia mikurensis*, *Clin Infect Dis* 59:1042, 2014.

Ratnasamy N, Everett ED, Roland WE, et al: Central nervous system manifestations of human ehrlichiosis, *Clin Infect Dis* 23:314, 1996.

Reynolds MG, Krebs JW, Comer JA, et al: Flying squirrel-associated typhus, United States, *Emerg Infect Dis* 9:1341, 2003.

Rihl M, Köhler L, Klos A, et al: Persistent infection of *Chlamydia* in reactive arthritis, *Ann Rheum Dis* 65:281, 2006.

Roblin PM, Dumornay W, Hammerschlag MR: Use of HEp-2 cells for improved isolation and passage of *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:1968, 1992.

Rolain JM, Maurin M, Vestris G, et al: In vitro susceptibilities of 27 rickettsiae to 13 antimicrobials, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 42:1537–1541, 1998.

Rolain JM, Brouqui P, Koehler JE, et al: Recommendations for treatment of human infections caused by *Bartonella* species, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 48:1921, 2004.

Rolain JM, Fournier PE, Raoult D, et al: First isolation and detection by immunofluorescence assay of *Bartonella koehlerae* in erythrocytes from a French cat, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:4460, 2003a.

Rolain JM, Lecam C, Raoult D: Simplified serological diagnosis of endocarditis due to *Coxiella burnetii* and *Bartonella*, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 10:1147, 2003b.

Ross JDC, Jensen JS: *Mycoplasma genitalium* as a sexually transmitted infection: implications for screening, testing, and treatment, *Sex Transm Infect* 82:269, 2006.

Roux V, Eykrn S, Wyllie S, et al: *Bartonella vinsonii* subsp. *berkhoffii* as an agent of afebrile blood culture–negative endocarditis in a human, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:1698, 2000.

Roux V, Raoult D: Phylogenetic analysis of the genus *Rickettsia* by 16S rDNA sequencing, *Res Microbiol* 146:385–396, 1995.

Roux V, Raoult D: Body lice as tools for diagnosis and surveillance of reemerging disease, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:596, 1999.

Roux V, Rydkina E, Eremeeva M, et al: Citrate synthase gene comparison, a new tool for phylogenetic analysis, and its application for the Rickettsiae, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 47:252–261, 1997.

Sahni SK, Narra HP, Sahni A, et al: Recent molecular insights into rickettsial pathogenesis and immunity, *Future Microbiol* 8:1265–1288, 2013.

Saisongkorh W, Chenchittikul M, Silpapojakul K: Evaluation of nested PCR for the diagnosis of scrub typhus among patients with acute pyrexia of unknown origin, *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 98:360, 2004.

Saito TB, Thirumalapura NR, Shelite TR, et al: An animal model of a newly emerging human ehrlichiosis, *J Infect Dis* 211:452–461, 2015.

Van Schaik EJ, Chen C, Mertens K, et al: Molecular pathogenesis of the obligate intracellular bacterium *Coxiella burnetii*, *Nat Rev Microbiol* 11:561–573, 2013.

Schachter J, Chow JM, Howard H: Detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* by nucleic acid amplification testing: our evaluation suggests the CDC-recommended approaches for confirmatory testing are ill-advised, *J Clin Microbiol* 44:2512, 2006.

Schachter J, Hook EW, Martin DH, et al: Confirming positive results of nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATS) for *Chlamydia trachomatis*: all NAATS are not created equal, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:1372, 2005.

Schriefer ME, Sacci JB, Higgins A, et al: Murine typhus: updated roles of multiple urban components and a second typhus like rickettsia, *J Med Entomol* 31:681, 1994a.

Schriefer ME, Sacci JB Jr, Dumler JS, et al: Identification of a novel rickettsial infection in a patient diagnosed with murine typhus, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:949, 1994b.

Schultze GE, Jacobs RF: Human monocytic ehrlichiosis in children, *Pediatrics* 100:E10, 1997.

Scott MA, McCurley TL, Vnencakjones CL, et al: Cat scratch disease—detection of *Bartonella henselae* DNA in archival biopsies from patients with clinically, serologically, and histologically defined disease, *Am J Pathol* 149:2161, 1996.

Sehdev AES, Dumler JS: Hepatic pathology in human monocytic ehrlichiosis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 119:859, 2003.

Sexton DJ, Kanj SS, Wilson K, et al: The use of a polymerase chain reaction as a diagnostic test for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 50:59, 1994.

Short VL, Totten PA, Ness RB, et al: Clinical presentation of *Mycoplasma genitalium* infection versus *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infection among women with pelvic inflammatory disease, *Clin Infect Dis* 48:41, 2009.

Silverman DJ: Oxidative cell injury and spotted fever group rickettsiae. In Anderson BE, editor: *Rickettsial infection and immunity*, New York, 1997, Plenum Press, p 79.

Silverman DJ, Santucci LA, Meyers N, et al: Penetration of host cells by *Rickettsia rickettsii* appears to be mediated by a phospholipase of rickettsial origin, *Infect Immun* 60:2733, 1992.

Sobradillo V, Zalacain R, Capelastegui A, et al: Antibiotic treatment in pneumonia due to Q fever, *Thorax* 47:276–278, 1992.

Sonthayanon P, Chierakul W, Wuthiekanun V, et al: Association of high *Orientia tsutsugamushi* DNA loads with disease of greater severity in adults with scrub typhus, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:430, 2009.

Spaargaren J, Schachter J, Moncada J, et al: Slow epidemic of lymphogranuloma venereum L2b strain, *Emerg Infect Dis* 11:1787, 2005.

Spach DH, Kanter AS, Dougherty MJ, et al: *Bartonella* (Rochalimaea) *quintana* bacteremia in inner-city patients with chronic alcoholism, *N Engl J Med* 332: 424, 1995.

Stamm B, Moschopulos M, Hungerbuehler H, et al: Neuroinvasion by *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* in acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, *Emerg Infect Dis* 14:641, 2008.

Stenos J, Graves SR, Unsworth NB: A highly sensitive and specific real-time PCR assay for the detection of spotted fever and typhus group rickettsiae, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 73:1083, 2005.

Stothard DR, Fuerst PA: Evolutionary analysis of the spotted fever and typhus groups of *Rickettsia* using 16S rRNA gene sequences, *Syst Appl Microbiol* 18:52–61, 1995.

Strickman D, Sheer T, Salata K, et al: In vitro effectiveness of azithromycin against doxycycline-resistant and -susceptible strains of *Rickettsia tsutsugamushi*, etiologic agent of scrub typhus, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 39:2406, 1995.

Sugita Y, Yamakawa Y, Takahasi K, et al: A polymerase chain reaction system for rapid diagnosis of scrub typhus within six hours, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 49:636, 1993.

Takahashi S, Takeyama K, Miyamoto S, et al: Detection of *Mycoplasma genitalium*, *Mycoplasma hominis*, *Ureaplasma urealyticum*, and *Ureaplasma parvum* DNAs in urine from asymptomatic healthy young Japanese men, *J Infect Chemother* 12:269, 2006.

Tamura A, Ohashi N, Urakami H, et al: Classification of *Rickettsia tsutsugamushi* in a new genus, *Orientia* gen. nov., as *Orientia tsutsugamushi* comb. nov, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 45:589, 1995.

Tantibhedhyangkul W, Angelakis E, Tongyoo N, et al: Intrinsic fluoroquinolone resistance in *Orientia tsutsugamushi*, *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 35:338–341, 2010.

Tappero JW, Mohle-Boetani J, Koehler JE, et al: The epidemiology of bacillary angiomatosis and bacillary peliosis, *JAMA* 269:770, 1993.

Thurman KA, Walter ND, Schwartz SB, et al: Comparison of laboratory diagnostic procedures for detection of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* in community outbreaks, *Clin Infect Dis* 48:1244, 2009.

Tarasevich I, Rydkina E, Raoult D: Outbreak of epidemic typhus in Russia, *Lancet* 352:1151, 1998.

Tierno PM Jr, Inglima K, Parisi MT: Detection of *Bartonella* (Rochalimaea) *henselae* bacteremia using BacT/Alert blood culture system, *Am J Clin Pathol* 104:530, 1995.

Tissot Dupont HL, Raoult D, Brouqui P, et al: Epidemiologic features and clinical presentation of acute Q fever in hospitalized patients: 323 French cases, *Am J Med* 93:427, 1992.

Toye B, Woods W, Bobrowska M, et al: Inhibition of PCR in genital and urine specimens submitted for *Chlamydia trachomatis* testing, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:2356, 1998.

Traub R, Wisseman CL Jr, Farhang-Azad A: The ecology of murine typhus—a critical review, *Trop Dis Bull* 75:237, 1978.

Tzianabos TB, Anderson BE, McDade JE: Detection of *Rickettsia rickettsii* DNA in clinical specimens by using polymerase chain reaction technology, *J Clin Microbiol* 27:2866, 1989.

Uchiyama T: Role of major surface antigens of *Rickettsia japonica* in the attachment to host cells. In Raoult R, Brouqui P, editors: *Rickettsiae and Rickettsial diseases at the turn of the third millennium*, Paris, France, 1999, Elsevier, pp 182–188.

Valbuena G, Feng H-M, Walker DH: Mechanisms of immunity against rickettsiae: new perspectives and opportunities offered by unusual intracellus parasites, *Microbes Infect* 4:625, 2002.

Van der Pol B, Ferrero DV, Buck-Barrington L, et al: Multicenter evaluation of the BDProbeTec ET system for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in urine specimens, female endocervical swabs, and male urethral swabs, *J Clin Microbiol* 39: 1008, 2001.

Vigil A, Chen C, Jain A, et al: Profiling the humoral immune response of acute and chronic Q fever by protein microarray, *Mol Cell Proteomics* 10(M110): 006304, 2011.

Verdon R, Geffray L, Collet T, et al: Vertebral osteomyelitis due to *Bartonella henselae* in adults: a report of 2 cases, *Clin Infect Dis* 35:e141, 2002.

Vincelette J, Schirm J, Bogard M, et al: Multicenter evaluation of the fully automated COBAS AMPLICOR PCR test for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in urogenital specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:74, 1999.

von Loewenich FD, Geissdorfer W, Disque C, et al: Detection of "Candidatus *Neoehrlichia mikurensis*" in two patients with severe febrile illnesses: evidence for a European sequence variant, *J Clin Microbiol* 48: 2630–2635, 2010.

Wade N, Levi L, Jones M, et al: Optic disk edema associated with peripapillary serous retinal detachment: an early sign of systemic *Bartonella henselae* infection, *Am J Ophthalmol* 130:327, 2000.

Waites KB, Balish M, Atkinson TP: New insights into the pathogenesis and detection of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections, *Future Microbiol* 3:635, 2008.

Waites KB, Katz B, Schelonka RL: Mycoplasmas and ureaplasmas as neonatal pathogens, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 18:757, 2005.

Wakeel A, Zhu B, Yu XJ, et al: New insights into molecular *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*-host interactions, *Microbes Infect* 12:337–345, 2010.

Walker DH: Pathology of Q fever. In Walker DH, editor: *Biology of rickettsial diseases* (vol 1), Boca Raton, Fla, 1988, CRC Press, p 17.

Walker DH: Principles of the malicious use of infectious agents to create terror: reasons for concern for organisms of the genus *Rickettsia*, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 990:739, 2003.

Walker DH, Dumler JS: Human monocytic and granulocytic ehrlichioses: discovery and diagnosis of emerging tick-borne infections and the critical role of the pathologist, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 121:78, 1997.

Walker DH, Feng HM, Ladner S, et al: Immunohistochemical diagnosis of typhus rickettsioses using an

anti-lipopolysaccharide monoclonal antibody, *Mod Pathol* 10:1038, 1997.
Walker DH, Fishbein DB: Epidemiology of rickettsial diseases, *Eur J Epidemiol* 7:237, 1991.
Walker DH, Gear JHS: Correlation of the distribution of *Rickettsia conorii*, microscopic lesions, and clinical features in South African tick bite fever, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 34:361, 1985.
Walker DH, Hawkins HK, Hudson P: Fulminant Rocky Mountain spotted fever: its pathologic characteristics associated with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 107:121, 1983.
Walker DH, Hudnall SD, Szaniawski WK, et al: Monoclonal antibody–based immunohistochemical diagnosis of rickettsialpox: the macrophage is the principal target, *Mod Pathol* 12:529, 1999.
Walker DH, Maguina C, Minnick M: Bartonelloses. In Guerrant RL, Walker DH, Weller PF, editors: *Tropical infectious diseases: principles, pathogens, and practice*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2006, Churchill Livingstone, p 454.
Walker DH, Occhino C, Tringali GR, et al: Pathogenesis of rickettsial eschars: the tache noire of boutonneuse fever, *Hum Pathol* 19:1449, 1988.
Walker DH, Olano JP, Feng H-M: Critical role of cytotoxic T lymphocytes in immune clearance of rickettsial infection, *Infect Immun* 69:1841, 2001.
Walker DH, Parks FM, Betz TG, et al: Histopathology and immunohistologic demonstration of the distribution of *Rickettsia typhi* in fatal murine typhus, *Am J Clin Pathol* 91:720, 1989.
Walker DH, Staiti A, Mansueto S, et al: Frequent occurrence of hepatic lesions in boutonneuse fever, *Acta Trop* 43:175, 1986.
Walls JJ, Aguero-Rosenfeld M, Bakken JS, et al: Inter- and intralaboratory comparison of *Ehrlichia equi* and human granulocytic ehrlichiosis (HGE) agent strains for serodiagnosis of HGE by the immunofluorescent-antibody test, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:2968, 1999.
Warren R, Dwyer B, Plackett M, et al: Comparative evaluation of detection assays for *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:1663, 1993.
Watt G, Chouriyagune C, Ruangweerayud R, et al: Scrub typhus infections poorly responsive to antibiotics in northern Thailand, *Lancet* 348:86, 1996.
Watt G, Kantipong P, Jongsakul K, et al: Doxycycline and rifampicin for mild scrub-typhus infections in northern Thailand: a randomized trial, *Lancet* 356: 1057, 2000.
Watt G, Parola P: Scrub typhus and tropical rickettsioses, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 16:429–436, 2003.
Watt G, Walker DH: Scrub typhus. In Guerrant RL, Walker DH, Weller PF, editors: *Tropical infectious diseases: principles, pathogens, and practice*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2006, Churchill Livingstone, p 557.
Weinert LA, Werren JH, Aebi A, et al: Evolution and diversity of *Rickettsia* bacteria, *BMC Biol* 7:6, 2009.
Weiss E: History of rickettsiology. In Walker DH, editor: *Biology of rickettsial diseases* (vol I), Boca Raton, Fla., 1988, CRC Press, p 15.
Welc-Falęciak R, Sinski E, Kowalec M, et al: Asymptomatic "Candidatus Neoehrlichia mikurensis" infections in immunocompetent humans, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:3072–3074, 2014.
Whitworth T, Popov VL, Yu XJ, et al: Expression of *Rickettsia prowazekii pld* or *tlyC* gene in *Salmonella enterica* serovar *Typhimurium* mediates phagosomal escape, *Infect Immun* 73:6668, 2005.
Williams WJ, Radulovic S, Dasch GA, et al: Identification of *Rickettsia conorii* infection by polymerase chain reaction in a soldier returning from Somalia, *Clin Infect Dis* 19:93, 1994.
Wolbach SB: The etiology and pathology of Rocky Mountain spotted fever (third preliminary report): the ocurrence of the parasite and the pathology of the disease in man. Additional notes on the parasite, *J Med Res* 37:499–508, 1918.
Wood JC, Lu RM, Peterson EM, et al: Evaluation of Mycotrim-GU for isolation of *Mycoplasma* species and *Ureaplasma urealyticum*, *J Clin Microbiol* 22:789, 1985.
Woods ME, Olano JP: Host defenses to *Rickettsia rickettsii* infection contribute to increased microvascular permeability in human cerebral endothelial cells, *J Clin Immunol* 28:174–185, 2008.
Wylie JL, Moses S, Babcock R, et al: Comparative evaluation of Chlamydiazyme, PACE 2, and AMP-CT assays for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* in endocervical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:3488, 1998.
Yajko DM, Balston E, Wood D, et al: Evaluation of PPLO, A7B, E, and NYC agar media for the isolation of *Ureaplasma urealyticum* and *Mycoplasma* species from the genital tract, *J Clin Microbiol* 19:73, 1984.
Yu X-J, Brouqui P, Dumler JS, et al: Detection of *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* in human tissue by using a species specific monoclonal antibody, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:3284, 1993.
Yu X-J, Crocquent-Valdes PA, Cullman LC, et al: Comparison of *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* recombinant proteins for serologic diagnosis of human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:2568, 1999.
Yu X-J, Walker DH: The order Rickettsiales. In Dworkin M, et al, editors: *The prokaryotes: an evolving electronic resource for the microbiological community*, ed 3, New York, 2003, Springer-Verlag.
Zavala-Velazquez JE, Ruiz-Sosa JA, Sanchez-Elias RA, et al: *Rickettsia felis* rickettsiosis in Yucatán, *Lancet* 356:1079, 2000.
Zeaiter Z, Fournier PE, Greub G, et al: Diagnosis of *Bartonella* endocarditis by a real-time nested PCR assay using serum, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:919, 2003.
Zhi N, Rikihisa Y, Kim HY, et al: Comparison of major antigenic proteins of six strains of the human granulocytic ehrlichiosis agent by Western immunoblot analysis, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:2606, 1997.

CHAPTER 58

MEDICAL BACTERIOLOGY

Geraldine S. Hall, Gail L. Woods

SPECIMEN PROCESSING, 1114
Gram Stain, 1114
Culture Techniques, 1115
MEDICALLY IMPORTANT BACTERIA, 1116
Gram-Positive Cocci, 1116
Gram-Positive Rods, 1123
Gram-Negative Bacteria—Cocci, 1129
Gram-Negative Bacteria—Bacilli, 1131
Gram-Negative Bacteria—Nonfermentative Bacilli, 1134
Gram-Negative Bacteria—The HACEK Bacteria, 1141
Miscellaneous Gram-Negative Bacilli, 1142
Anaerobic Bacteria, 1147
SELECTED REFERENCES, 1152

KEY POINTS

- Bacteria can be categorized based on the Gram stain reaction (gram-positive or gram-negative), shape (cocci, bacilli, coccobacilli, spirochete), preferred atmosphere (aerobic, microaerophilic, anaerobic), and presence or absence of spores; they can be identified on the basis of key biochemical tests, antigenic components (e.g., cell wall antigens, toxins), and/or molecular features.
- Among the gram-positive cocci, the most important human pathogens (and the infections they commonly cause) are *Staphylococcus aureus* (skin and soft tissue infections, bacteremia, toxic shock syndrome), *Streptococcus pyogenes* (pharyngitis and its nonsuppurative complications, skin and soft tissue infections), *Streptococcus agalactiae* (neonatal bacteremia and meningitis), *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (community-acquired pneumonia, meningitis), and *Enterococcus faecalis* and *Enterococcus faecium* (nosocomial urinary tract infections and bacteremia).
- Among gram-positive bacilli, the most important human pathogens (and the infections they commonly cause) are *Listeria monocytogenes* (meningitis, bacteremia), *Nocardia* species (pneumonia, soft tissue infections, brain abscess), *Bacillus anthracis* (skin and soft tissue infections, pneumonia; a bioterrorism agent), and *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (diphtheria), which is rarely encountered in the clinical laboratory in the United States.
- Among gram-negative cocci, the most important human pathogens (and the infections they commonly cause) are *Neisseria meningitidis* (meningitis), *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (gonorrhea), and *Moraxella catarrhalis*.
- Gram-negative bacilli include Enterobacteriaceae, many of which are normal flora in the gastrointestinal tract; nonfermentative gram-negative bacilli (e.g., *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Acinetobacter baumanii*), which are found in the environment and cause human infection when host defenses are compromised; halophilic organisms (*Vibrio* species); microaerophilic bacteria *(Campylobacter, Helicobacter)*; fastidious organisms (*Legionella* species, *Bordetella* species, *Francisella tularensis, Brucella* species, *Haemophilus* species); and miscellaneous infrequently encountered bacteria.
- Among the Enterobacteriaceae, the most important human pathogens (and the infections they commonly cause) are *Escherichia coli* (urinary tract infection, diarrhea, bacteremia), *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Klebsiella oxytoca* (urinary tract infection, pneumonia, bacteremia), *Proteus* species (urinary tract infection), *Salmonella* species (diarrhea, typhoid fever), *Shigella* species (diarrhea), *Enterobacter* species (nosocomial pneumonia, urinary tract infection, bacteremia), and *Serratia* species (nosocomial pneumonia).
- Among the anaerobes, the most important human pathogens (and the infections they commonly cause) are the *Bacteroides fragilis* group (intraabdominal infections, abscesses); *Clostridium* species, especially *Clostridium perfringens* (soft tissue infections, food poisoning), *Clostridium tetani* (tetanus), and *Clostridium difficile* (antibiotic-associated diarrhea); and non–spore-forming gram-positive anaerobes such as *Actinomyces israelii* and *Propionibacterium acnes*.

A wide variety of bacterial species may be recovered from clinical specimens. To appropriately assess the clinical significance of these organisms, an understanding of the normal bacterial flora present at different anatomic locations is essential. In some cases, the number of organisms present can be extremely high—for example, 10^6 organisms/cm^2 of skin, 10^9 organisms/mL of oral secretions, and 10^{11} organisms/g of colon contents. It is important to obtain samples with minimal contamination from the normal flora (Miller et al, 2007; Baron & Thomson, 2011). This may be difficult but can be optimally achieved if proper procedures are followed. These procedures, along with processing techniques that serve to enhance recovery of pathogenic microorganisms, are discussed in Chapter 64. This chapter begins with a short discussion of laboratory procedures used to process a specimen for bacterial culture, which is followed by a more in-depth discussion of the bacterial species commonly considered to be human pathogens.

SPECIMEN PROCESSING

GRAM STAIN

Few would disagree that direct examination of a specimen with Gram stain is one of the most valuable procedures performed by the microbiology laboratory. The Gram stain result rapidly provides information that is used by the clinician for selecting appropriate antimicrobial therapy; it also helps the laboratory technologist assess the quality of the specimen and the extent to which certain organisms recovered in culture will be worked up. Organisms present in abundant quantity in specimens containing many white blood cells are given more attention than those that are present in smaller numbers in the absence of white blood cells. Multiple specimens positive for similar organisms in smears and cultures contribute to increased clinical significance of the results.

To prepare a smear for staining, an aliquot of the most purulent or bloody portion of the specimen is placed on a clean microscopic slide in a manner that provides both thick and thin areas. For sterile body fluids, a cytocentrifuge may be used to concentrate the specimen by 10 to 100 times (Baron & Thomson, 2011). The material on the slide is allowed to air-dry, is fixed with methanol or gentle heat, and then is stained with Gram stain reagents (crystal violet, Gram iodine, alcohol, and safranin). Organisms that have a gram-positive cell wall will resist decolorization with methanol and will retain the purple color of the crystal violet; organisms that have a gram-negative cell wall will be decolorized and will stain red with safranin counterstain.

Stained smears are initially examined using a low-power objective to look for large structures, such as nematode larvae, Curschmann's spirals, large granules, grains, bacterial microcolonies, or fungal forms. An oil immersion lens is then used to assess the type of bacteria present. Because 10^5 organisms/mL must be present to see one organism per oil immersion field (1000×), smears must be examined carefully to detect small numbers of organisms.

The organisms observed should be evaluated for size, shape, and Gram reaction, which should be reported with as much description as possible; reporting the presence of gram-positive cocci in pairs that resemble *S. pneumoniae* (Fig. 58-1) is more helpful than simply reporting

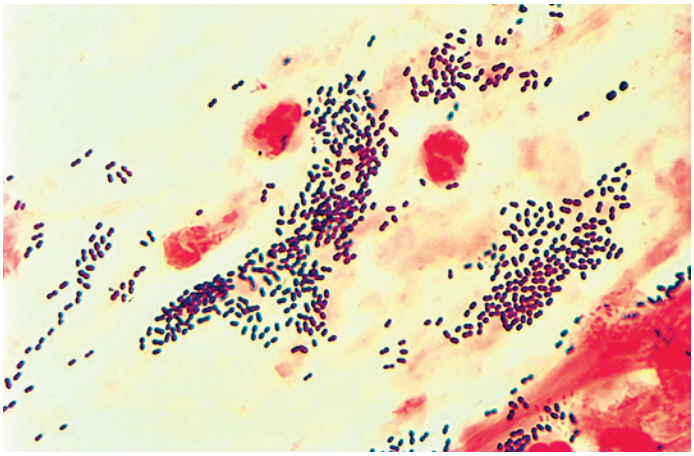


Figure 58-1 Gram stain of a sputum smear shows neutrophils, debris, and gram-positive diplococci, suggestive of pneumococcal infection (oil immersion).

gram-positive cocci in chains. White or red blood cells should be quantified and reported, along with any intracellular bacteria observed. Correlation of Gram stain observations with culture results is a good way to check on the quality of the stains and culture. Demonstration of many bacteria on Gram stain that do not grow out in culture may indicate unusual organisms that require more specialized media or the inability of laboratory personnel to recognize certain colonial types in culture, or it could suggest a false-positive Gram stain result caused by contamination of reagents or collection materials, such as swabs, or incorrect interpretation of Gram stain results. Gram stain results could indicate the need to inoculate additional media for a specific specimen. For example, finding many gram-negative coccobacilli in a respiratory specimen could indicate the need for a chocolate plate to recover *Haemophilus* spp., which would not be recovered on a blood agar plate. Other stains, such as the acridine orange stain, can be utilized for staining blood culture bottles, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), or buffy coat preparations. This fluorescent stain provides a rapid and, at times, more sensitive stain for bacteria and fungi (Mirrett et al, 1982; Adler et al, 2003). Bacteria and fungi will produce an orange fluorescence, and mammalian cells will stain green. Some experience is required for accurate interpretation of the acridine orange stain, and correct preparation of the smears is necessary to avoid excessive cellular material, which can result in too much cellular DNA that can mask the presence of any bacterial DNA.

Many laboratories use probes for identification of specific bacteria or fungi in blood culture bottles. These are commercially available using a fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) format (Advandx, Woburn, Mass.). For example, when gram-positive cocci are seen in clusters on Gram stain of a blood culture bottle, the QuickFISH BC probe can be used to differentiate *S. aureus* from coagulase-negative staphylococci, or nonstaphylococcal organisms. A multicenter study combined this probe with the company's *mecA Xpress*FISH® assay that detects presence of *mecA* in *S. aureus* (SA) to identify 209/211 methicillin-resistant SA (MRSA) within 2 hours of finding gram-positive cocci in the blood culture bottles (Salimnia et al, 2014). If gram-positive cocci are seen in pairs and chains, a probe is available that can specifically identify *E. faecalis*, the Enterococcus Quick FISH BC. Only 2 discordants were found when the probe was used to differentiate *E. faecalis* versus non–*E. faecalis* enterococci in 173 positive blood cultures in a multicenter study (Deck et al, 2014). The newest of these bacterial probes can be used to identify specific gram-negative bacilli when these are seen on Gram stain of the positive blood culture bottle. Yeast probes—PNA FISH-Yeast Traffic Light (YTL)—using the same format are available to quickly and rapidly differentiate among *Candida* spp. (Gorton et al, 2014)

More recently, two other techniques for rapid identification of bacteria (and fungi) in positive blood culture bottles have become available. One uses Matrix-Assisted Laser Desorption Ionization-Time-of-Flight (MALDI-TOF) (bioMerieux MS or Bruker), and the other uses a molecular technique, Verigene (Nanosphere, Inc, Northbrook, Ill.) and FilmArray (BioFire, Salt Lake City, Utah) to identify bacteria quickly from positive blood culture bottles. In a study comparing PNA FISH, Verigene, and MALDI-TOF for the identification of gram-positive cocci, PNA FISH and Verigene were 98% concordant with routine methods as compared to MALDI-TOF, which was less sensitive, with 80% concordance to species level and 88% to genus level (Martinez et al, 2014).

CULTURE TECHNIQUES

Media for culture are selected to provide the optimal conditions for growth of pathogens commonly encountered at a particular site or in a particular type of specimen. Consideration is given to special growth requirements of bacteria associated with a given type of infection or to the necessity of selecting certain pathogenic bacteria from a mixed population of indigenous flora. Therefore, the media chosen may include selective and differential media, in addition to standard enrichment agar.

Blood-supplemented agar is a good general growth medium and can be used to demonstrate the hemolytic action of colonies on the red blood cells. Antibiotics or chemicals can be added to create a selective medium such as colistin–nalidixic acid (CNA) agar or phenylethyl alcohol agar, both of which are used to inhibit the growth of gram-negative bacilli, while permitting gram-positive bacteria to grow. Heating the blood to make chocolate agar and adding vitamin supplements creates an enriched medium with available hemin (X factor) and nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (V factor) for the isolation of *Haemophilus* spp. and other fastidious bacteria. Gram-negative bacilli may be separated from gram-positive bacilli by using bile salts and dye in a medium such as MacConkey's agar, which additionally divides the colonies into lactose-positive and lactose-negative colonies, thus making it both selective and differential. Guidelines for the selection of media to be used with different types of specimens are provided in Table 58-1.

Bacterial cultures are generally incubated at 35°C and are examined initially after 18 to 24 hours of incubation. Addition of 5% to 10% carbon dioxide (CO_2) may be essential or stimulatory to the growth of *N. gonorrhoeae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *S. pneumoniae*, and should be used whenever feasible. Exceptions to this recommendation are those cultures on differential and selective media in which the pH alteration (which can be affected by added CO_2) is used to differentiate colony types (e.g., xylose-lysine-deoxycholate [XLD] agar, Hektoen enteric [HE] agar).

For recovery of anaerobes, inoculated media should be placed into an anaerobic environment as quickly as possible. Several types of anaerobic culture systems are available. One of these is the anaerobic jar, in which water is added to a CO_2 and hydrogen (H_2) generator package, and oxygen (O_2) is catalytically converted to water with palladium-coated alumina pellets contained in a lid chamber. A modification of this system is a transparent plastic bag containing its own gas generator and palladium catalyst and designed to hold an agar plate; these are often referred to as anaerobic Bio-Bags.

Another approach to anaerobic culture is the anaerobic glove box or chamber, which consists of a large, clear plastic, airtight chamber filled with an oxygen-free gas mixture of nitrogen, hydrogen, and carbon dioxide. Specimens, plates, and tubes are introduced into or removed from the chamber through a gas interchange lock. Anaerobiosis is maintained by palladium catalysts and the hydrogen gas in the chamber. All manipulations within the chamber are done with neoprene gloves sealed to the chamber wall or, for "gloveless" systems, through a hole with sleeves that seal tightly around the forearms. The chambers contain internal incubators that maintain the incubation temperature. Each of the anaerobe systems has its advantages and disadvantages, but all are equally effective in isolating clinically significant anaerobic bacteria from specimens. A system for processing anaerobic specimens under a constant anaerobic environnent to reduce the chance of excess exposure to oxygen is available in the Anoxamat system (Summanen et al, 1999; Shahin et al, 2003).

Bacterial cultures should be examined routinely after 18 to 24 hours of incubation. The exception to this is the anaerobe culture, which is generally examined at 48 hours to allow these slower-growing bacteria to produce visible colonies. In general, solid media are held for 48 hours, with liquid media held for an additional 24 to 48 hours. If this is different for specific organisms, it will be mentioned in the text.

A preliminary report is issued when the culture is first examined; this report is updated as additional information becomes available. Certain results (e.g., positive blood or CSF Gram stain, isolation of an organism requiring infection control measures) are reported to the health care provider as soon as the information becomes available. Final reports are issued when all work on a culture has been completed.

TABLE 58-1
Guidelines for Media Selection for Various Specimens*

Specimen	MEDIA FOR RECOVERY OF AEROBIC AND FACULTATIVELY ANAEROBIC BACTERIA					MEDIA FOR RECOVERY OF ANAEROBIC BACTERIA		
	BAP	MAC or EMB	CBA	Broth†	Other	BAP‡	BBE	PEA
Body cavities					Consider the use of BCB for large volumes of fluids			
Fluids								
Cerebrospinal	X		X	X (for shunt specimens)				
Peritoneal	X	X	X		BCB	X	X	X
Pleural; pericardial	X		X	X	BCB	X		
Synovial	X		X	X	BCB			
Wounds								
Aspirate	X	X	X			X	X	X
Swab§	X	X						
Tissue#	X	X	X	X		X	X	X
Respiratory Tract								
Sputum	X	X	X					
Throat	X							
Bronchoalveolar lavage	X	X	X		CYE¶			
Brush; washings	X	X	X			X¶	X¶	X¶
Nasal	X							
Genitourinary								
Vaginal/rectal for group B Streptococcus (GBS)			Lim broth	Selective or chromogenic	GBS media			
Other	X	X	X		GC media**	X	X	X
Cervix					GC media			
Urethra/penis					GC media			
Urine								
Midvoid	X	X			Screen; chromagar			
Suprapubic aspirate	X	X						
Feces			X	EB	HE or XLD; Campy			
Eye	X	X	X††			X††		
Ear; internal aspirate	X	X				X		
Vascular catheters	X							

BAP, Blood agar plate; *BCB,* blood culture bottles; *BBE, Bacteroides* bile esculin agar; *Campy, Campylobacter*-selective medium; *CBA,* chocolate blood agar; *CYE,* charcoal yeast extract, for *Legionella* or *Nocardia* requests; *EB,* enrichment broth, such as GN or Selenite broth, same for rectal swabs, minus the *Campylobacter*-selective culture; *EMB,* eosin methylene blue; *GBS,* group B streptococcus; *GC,* gonococcus; *HE,* Hektoen enteric agar; *Lim broth,* enrichment broth for group B streptococcus; *MAC,* MacConkey's agar; *PEA,* phenylethyl alcohol; *XLD,* xylose-lysine-deoxycholate agar.
*Specific guidelines for individual organisms will be included where they are described in text.
†Supplemented thioglycollate is the usual broth; when *P. acnes* is a suspected pathogen, broth should be incubated for at least 10 days; however, for aerobes, a brain-heart infusion may be adequate.
‡Consider a CDC BAP or a *Brucella* blood agar, or another "enriched" BAP for anaerobic recovery; a laked blood agar plate with antibiotics may also be appropriate.
§Not recommended for anaerobic cultures.
#If specific organisms, or situations, other media may be added.
¶If a protected bronchoscope is used for collection of the specimen.
**Thayer-Martin or Martin-Lewis or other media enriched for recovery of *N. gonorrhoeae.*
††If *Propionibacterium acnes* is suspected in cases of endophthalmitis, a thioglycollate broth and/or anaerobic BAP may be used.

MEDICALLY IMPORTANT BACTERIA

GRAM-POSITIVE COCCI

Staphylococcus

Characteristics

Staphylococci are catalase-positive spherical cocci that often appear in grape-like clusters in stained smears (Fig. 58-2). They grow well on any peptone-containing nutrient medium under aerobic and anaerobic conditions and may produce hemolysis of various species of animal blood cells and yellow or orange pigment on certain types of agar. Growth of staphylococci is readily detected on blood agar plates or in various types of nutrient broth. A selective medium for the isolation of *S. aureus* is one containing 7.5% to 10% sodium chloride (NaCl) with mannitol.

Tests useful for distinguishing staphylococci from *Micrococcus* and *Kocuria* spp. (generally considered nonpathogenic) are listed in Table 58-2 (Becker & von Eiff, 2011). *S. aureus* is differentiated from other species of staphylococci principally by its production of coagulases, which are capable of clotting plasma. Two antigenically distinct forms of coagulases have been recognized: One bound to the cell wall is called clumping factor and is detected with the slide coagulase test, and the other is free from the cell wall and is detected with the tube coagulase test (often considered the definitive test for the presence of coagulase enzyme). Commercial latex agglutination products are available that detect clumping factor and protein A in *S. aureus* with good sensitivity and specificity. These assays may be appropriate in situations in which reproducibility of the test is in question because of the inexperience of technologists performing the assay. A FISH product (*S. aureus* peptide nucleic acid FISH) is also available for the differentiation of *S. aureus* from coagulase-negative staphylococci in a

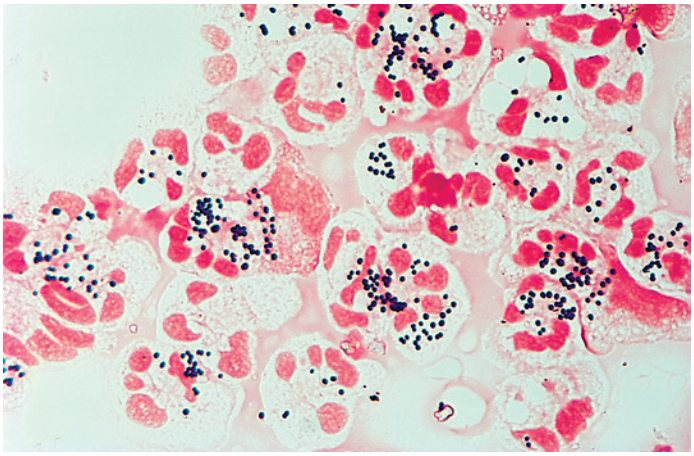


Figure 58-2 Cytocentrifuge preparation of cerebrospinal fluid stained with Gram stain shows many neutrophils, smooth amorphous material, and gram-positive cocci in pairs, short chains, and clusters, suggestive of staphylococcal infection (oil immersion).

TABLE 58-2
Tests Differentiating *Staphylococci* from *Micrococci* and *Kocuria* spp.

	***Staphylococcus* spp.**	***Micrococcus* spp.**	***Kocuria* spp.**
Lysostaphin susceptibility	S	R	R
Aerobic acid production from glycerol	+	–	+
Anaerobic acid production from glucose	+/–	–	Delayed +
Furazolidone (100-µg disk)	S	R	R
Bacitracin susceptibility (0.04 U)	R	S	S
Modified oxidase	–	+	+

Adapted from Becker K, von Eiff C: *Staphylococcus, Micrococcus*, and other catalase positive cocci. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, p309.
+, Positive result; –, negative result; *R*, resistant; *S*, susceptible.

blood culture bottle found positive for gram-positive cocci in clusters. In addition, many laboratories are now utilizing polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays for detection of *S. aureus* in nasal swabs and directly from positive blood culture bottles. Many of these assays enable detection of methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) versus methicillin-susceptible *S. aureus*.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

S. aureus may be present among the indigenous flora of the skin, eye, upper respiratory tract, gastrointestinal tract, urethra, and, infrequently, vagina. Therefore, infection may arise from an endogenous or an exogenous source. Factors of importance in the development of infection due to *S. aureus* include breaks in the continuity and integrity of mucosal and cutaneous surfaces, the presence of foreign bodies or implants, prior viral diseases, antecedent antimicrobial therapy, and underlying diseases with defects in cellular or humoral immunity.

Infections caused by *S. aureus* may affect multiple organ systems. Among the most common are those involving the skin and its appendages, such as impetigo, folliculitis, mastitis, and infection of surgical wounds. *S. aureus* is among the leading causes of bacteremia in hospitalized patients, and it may cause endocarditis, particularly in persons with left-sided valvular heart disease and in intravenous drug users. *S. aureus* is the most common cause of spinal epidural abscess and suppurative intracranial phlebitis, and it may be recovered from brain abscesses, typically following trauma. Meningitis caused by *S. aureus* is uncommon and generally follows head trauma or a neurosurgical procedure.

S. aureus is responsible for many cases of osteomyelitis, is the most common cause of septic arthritis in prepubertal children, and is occasionally responsible for septic arthritis in adults. *S. aureus* is an infrequent cause of community-acquired pneumonia but a common cause of nosocomial pneumonia, which usually follows aspiration of endogenous nasopharyngeal organisms. Predisposing factors include infection with measles or influenza A virus, cystic fibrosis, and immune deficiency. Urinary tract infections caused by *S. aureus* are rare, but cases of pyelonephritis and intrarenal and perirenal abscesses can be found.

Several factors play a role in the virulence of *S. aureus*. The capsule, if present, has antiphagocytic properties. Cell wall peptidoglycans have endotoxin-like activity, stimulating the release of cytokines by macrophages, activation of complement, and aggregation of platelets. Protein A, an immunologically active substance in the cell wall, has antiphagocytic properties that are based on its ability to bind the Fc fragment of immunoglobulin IgG. Other surface proteins, designated as microbial surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules, may play an important role in the ability of staphylococci to colonize host tissues (Speziale et al, 2009). Recently, the significant involvement of superantigens of *S. aureus* in sepsis, endocarditis, and acute kidney injury (abscess) has been elucidated (Salgado-Pabón et al, 2013).

S. aureus produces numerous toxins. The exotoxin TSST-1 is responsible for toxic shock syndrome, and enterotoxins A to E are responsible for staphylococcal food poisoning. The exfoliative toxins—epidermolytic toxins A and B—cause skin erythema and separation, as seen in scalded skin syndrome. Various enzymes are also produced, including protease, lipase, and hyaluronidase, all of which destroy tissue and probably function to facilitate the spread of the infection.

Toxin-mediated diseases caused by *S. aureus* include scalded skin syndrome, food poisoning, and toxic shock syndrome. Scalded skin syndrome occurs in infants infected with a strain of *S. aureus* producing exfoliative toxin. The illness begins abruptly with erythema, followed in 2 to 3 days by the formation of flaccid bullae, which slough, leaving denuded areas that eventually resolve completely. Staphylococcal food poisoning, characterized by nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps, and diarrhea, occurs 1 to 6 hours after ingestion of foods contaminated with preformed staphylococcal enterotoxin, which is usually introduced into the food product by food handlers who prepare and/or serve the food (Baumgartner et al, 2014).

Toxic shock syndrome is a multisystem disease affecting individuals who have no antibodies to TSST-1 and are colonized or infected with strains of *S. aureus* producing TSST-1 or rarely enterotoxin B or C. Toxic shock syndrome (TSS) is primarily the result of a superantigen-mediated cytokine storm and M protein-mediated neutrophil activation, resulting in the release of mediators leading to respiratory failure, vascular leakage, and shock (Low, 2013). The illness is most common in women 15 to 25 years of age who use tampons during menstruation, but it also may occur in nonmenstruating individuals, including women in the postpartum period, male or female patients with a surgical wound or other focal infection, and individuals who have had a surgical procedure in the nose or sinuses. Toxic shock syndrome begins abruptly with fever, myalgias, vomiting, and diarrhea, followed by hypotension, hypovolemic shock, and an erythematous rash that frequently involves the palms and soles and desquamates in 1 to 2 weeks. The diagnosis is clinical; isolation of *S. aureus* from any site is not required. Full recovery is the rule, although repeated episodes may occur (Becker & von Eiff, 2011).

Over the past 10 to 15 years, cases of community-acquired infection with *S. aureus* that are oxacillin resistant (CA-MRSA) have become more common. In these isolates, a toxin referred to as Panton-Valentine leukocidin toxin (PVL), which has rarely been associated with hospital-acquired strains of *S. aureus* (Becker & von Eiff, 2011), has been found. PVL has been shown to be responsible for necrotizing skin and soft tissue infections and has been infrequently demonstrated to cause a necrotizing and occasionally fatal pneumonia (Hageman et al, 2006; MMWR, 2007a; Moskowitz & Wiener-Kronish, 2009, Toro et al, 2014). Individuals who were initially felt to be at greatest risk are children involved in contact sports and individuals in institutions such as prisons (MMWR, 2003; Pan et al, 2003). These CA-MRSA strains, unlike hospital-acquired strains of MRSA (HA-MRSA), are often susceptible to most non–β-lactam classes of antibiotics. HA-MRSA strains are usually resistant to all antibiotics except the glycopeptides, such as vancomycin. The mechanism of oxacillin resistance is the same in CA-MRSA and HA-MRSA—the presence of a *mecA* gene that is responsible for production of a new penicillin-binding protein (PBP-2a or PBP-2′). However, the chromosomal cassette that houses the CA-MRSA *mecA* gene is different from and much smaller than that containing the *mecA* gene of HA-MRSA. Many experts believe that, in time, blending of CA-MRSA and HA-MRSA strains will occur, and without molecular typing of any isolate, it will be difficult to distinguish them. The

predominant strain of CA-MRSA in the United States is type USA 300 (Becker & von Eiff, 2011).

S. aureus bacteremia can be caused by community and nosocomial strains of *S. aureus*. A recent study compared the risk factors, morbidity, and mortality due to bacteremia related to health care–associated MRSA (HCA-MRSA) bacteremia versus CA-MRSA bacteremia. Patients with CA-MRSA bacteremia were likely to have diabetes mellitus, chronic liver disease, and HIV infection, perhaps reflecting the community nature of acquisition of the SA; in those patients with bacteremia due to HCA-MRSA occurring with 48 hours or more of hospitalization, the risk factors were found to include the presence of a central venous catheter, solid tumor, chronic renal failure, and prior hospitalizations and previous antibiotic therapy. Those with bacteremia caused by HCA-MRSA that occurred with less than 48 hours of hospitalization were more prone to have had previous hospitalizations, been in long-term care facilities, and have had received corticosteroid therapy (Bassetti et al, 2012).

Infections caused by coagulase-negative species (CoNS) of *Staphylococcus* usually occur in association with foreign bodies, especially implanted prosthetic valves, joints, and shunts. Isolates of CoNS are usually considered less pathogenic than *S. aureus*, although that varies among the species and strains (Becker et al, 2014). The presence of biofilms and antibiotic resistance of the species appears to be associated with bacteremia, whereas specific adhesion capabilities of the CNS were associated with prosthetic joint infections (Giormezis et al, 2014). CoNS are one of the most common organisms associated with CSF shunt infections; they are rarely involved in urinary tract infections, pneumonia, or skin and soft tissue infections. More than 20 species of CoNS are known, of which *S. epidermidis* is the species most frequently involved in such infections. *S. saprophyticus* is an important cause of bacteriuria, particularly among sexually active young women. *S. hemolyticus*, reported to rank second in frequency to *S. epidermidis* in clinical specimens, can be resistant to vancomycin, an agent to which most CoNS are susceptible (Giormezis et al, 2014). *S. lugdunensis* can appear morphologically similar to *S. aureus* (i.e., in production of a narrow zone of β-hemolysis on blood agar plates) and on occasion will test positive in some assays for coagulase. However, it is usually classified as a coagulase-negative staphylococcus. Clinically, it will act more aggressively than most other CoNS and in this way mimics *S. aureus* infection, including its role as an agent of endocarditis, osteomyelitis, and other more severe staphylococcal infections (Sabe et al, 2014). It is important to distinguish *S. lugdunensis* from other CoNS because the breakpoints one uses (according to the Clinical Laboratory and Standards Institute [CLSI]) for the interpretation of susceptibility results versus oxacillin (or cefoxitin) should be those that are used to interpret *S. aureus* and not those used to interpret breakpoints for oxacillin (or cefoxitin) versus CoNS (CLSI, 2014).

Laboratory Diagnosis

The observation microscopically of typical rounded, gram-positive cocci in clusters in smears of material taken from previously unopened or undrained lesions, or in smears of broth from a positive blood culture, is indicative of staphylococcal infection.

S. aureus produces coagulase, an enzyme that binds plasma fibrinogen, causing the organisms to agglutinate or plasma to clot; only rare strains of other staphylococci are coagulase positive. More than 95% of isolates of *S. aureus* are identified by the slide coagulase test, which detects cell-bound enzyme (clumping factor); nearly 100% of all isolates are identified by tube coagulase tests, which detect free coagulase (Becker & von Eiff, 2011).

The slide coagulase test is performed by mixing a dense emulsion of the organism with plasma on a glass slide. The test is positive if clumping occurs within 30 seconds. *Staphylococcus lugdunensis* and *Staphylococcus schleiferi* are two other staphylococci that may give a positive result with this slide coagulase test. A control that consists of emulsifying the suspect colony in saline should be run with each slide test to ensure that autoagglutination does not occur. If autoagglutination is present, slide test results should be considered insufficient for determination of the coagulase nature of the isolate.

For the tube coagulase test, several colonies are transferred into a tube containing plasma that is incubated at 35°C for 4 hours and then is examined for clot formation. If no clot has formed, the tube is reincubated at room temperature and reexamined after a total of 24 hours of incubation. The test should be examined after 4 hours because most isolates of *S. aureus* produce a clot within this interval, but some strains produce a fibrinolysin that can lyse the clot, thus producing a false-negative reaction if the test is observed only after 24 hours. *Staphylococcus intermedius* and *Staphylococcus hyicus* will also be positive with the tube coagulase test, but they are primarily pathogens of animals and are encountered only rarely in human specimens.

Several commercial latex agglutination assays are available for rapid identification of *S. aureus*. These assays detect protein A and clumping factor; some also detect capsular polysaccharide, which may improve the ability to detect methicillin (oxacillin)-resistant *S. aureus*. *S. saprophyticus* and *Staphylococcus sciuri* are two other staphylococcus species that may be latex agglutination positive, along with the rare *Micrococcus* spp.; however, these should all be slide coagulase negative (Becker & von Eiff, 2011).

Many species of CoNS have been recognized; however, with the exception of *S. epidermidis*, *S. lugdenensis*, and *S. saprophyticus*, which is resistant to novobiocin, identification of these isolates to the species level is not practical or clinically indicated in every culture. Identification to species may be needed if isolates are found repeatedly in sterile sites, if *S. lugdunensis* is being ruled out, and/or if correlation between isolates in a patient is being sought to increase the likelihood that the two isolates are the same and therefore are potentially clinically relevant. If necessary, attempts to identify these isolates to the species level may be made using commercially available identification kits or with use of Maldi-Tof (Peel et al, 2014). Alternatively, isolates may be sent to a reference laboratory capable of performing standard biochemical assays or molecular assays such as 16S ribosomal RNA (rRNA) analysis (Loonen et al, 2012). Staphylococci may be classified into strains for epidemiologic purposes in attempting to identify common sources of infection on the basis of their susceptibility to different bacteriophages, plasmid profiles, cellular fatty acids, electrophoresis of multilocus enzymes, or chromosomal molecular typing (pulsed field gel electrophoresis and repetitive PCR). These tests are generally available only through reference laboratories.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

More than 90% of staphylococci are resistant to penicillin due to inducible plasmid-encoded β-lactamase. A chromogenic β-lactamase test (i.e., nitrocefin disk test) or a penicillin disk diffusion zone edge test may be performed. The latter is considered more sensitive than the nitrocefin assay, but either can be used. When β-lactamase is positive by either, isolates should be reported as resistant to penicillin, but some resistant isolates could be missed by the nitrocefin β-lactamase test. If penicillin is being considered for treatment of serious *S. aureus* infections, a zone edge disk diffusion test or an MIC should be performed for confirmation; MICs to penicillin of 0.12 or less are interpreted as susceptible (CLSI, 2014). Resistance to the penicillinase-resistant penicillins (methicillin, oxacillin, nafcillin) occurs in up to 80% of coagulase-negative staphylococci and in more than 50% of isolates of hospital-acquired *S. aureus*. Resistance to this group of antimicrobial agents is mediated by the *mecA* gene, which encodes an altered penicillin-binding protein, PBP-2a. Resistance typically is heterogeneous, meaning that only rare cells may (1 in 10^4 to 10^8) express the resistance trait. Because of this, specific guidelines must be followed to ensure detection. An oxacillin disk should no longer be used to detect resistance, but rather CLSI has suggested that if disk diffusion is used as the method of detection of MRSA, a 30-μg cefoxitin disk test is the better indicator of resistance than oxacillin. To predict the presence of *mecA*-mediated resistance in *S. aureus* (and *S. lugdunensis*), the CLSI recommends that isolates with zone sizes 22 mm or larger can be reported as susceptible (S), and those with zone sizes 21 mm or smaller to cefoxitin can be reported as oxacillin resistant (R) (Velasco et al, 2005; CLSI, 2014). Likewise, for coagulase-negative staphylococci (except *S. lugdunensis*), 25 mm or larger can be reported as susceptible, and 24 mm or smaller can be reported as oxacillin resistant with cefoxitin disks (CLSI, 2014). Oxacillin in cation-supplemented Mueller-Hinton broth containing 2% NaCl should be used for microdilution testing; microtiter trays should be incubated a full 24 hours at 35°C. To screen isolates of *S. aureus* for oxacillin resistance, Mueller-Hinton agar supplemented with 4% NaCl and containing 6 μg/mL of oxacillin is spot inoculated with a cotton swab, and plates are incubated for 24 hours at 35°C. All reports should list the results for oxacillin and not for cefoxitin. Any growth on or in screening medium suggests an MRSA, and further testing should be done for confirmation. This could include either detection of *mecA* by molecular methods or detection of PBP2a. There is a newly described mec A, the mec C gene, which cannot be detected by the molecular *mecA* assays; mecC may be detected in tests for PBP2a (Paterson et al, 2014).

For coagulase negative staphylococci (CNS) other than *S. lugdenensis*, a broth microdilution using oxacillin (≤0.25 μg/ml = S) can be used, or if using disk diffusion, with cefoxitin (≥25 mm zone diameter = S). If any species of CoNS other than *S. epidermidis* has an MIC to oxacillin between 0.5 μg/ml and 2.0 μg/ml, a *mecA* or PBP2a assay should be used for

confirmation because the broth microdilution may overcome resistance in these strains (CLSI, 2014).

Several assays have been developed for rapid detection of oxacillin resistance. These include nucleic acid amplification, nucleic acid probe assays for *mecA*, and latex agglutination assays for PBP-2a (the MRSA Screen Test, Denka-Seiken Co., Tokyo, Japan) and PBP-2′ (Oxoid Ltd., Basingstoke, U.K.), Mastalex test (Mast Diagnostics, Bootle, U.K.), and the Slidex MRSA detection assay (bioMerieux, Raleigh-Durham, N.C.) and Clearview (Inverness Medical Innovations, Scarborough, Mass.) (Bowers et al, 2003; Chediac-Tannoury & Araj, 2003; Chapin & Musgnug, 2004; Nonhoff et al, 2012). Not all of these assays are FDA cleared in the United States; some have been used for direct detection of oxacillin resistance in blood cultures positive for *S. aureus*. For direct detection of MRSA in nasal swabs, two approaches can be used. Newer chromogenic media specific for the detection of MRSA require overnight incubation but allow easy detection of specific-colored colonies that are positive for the presence of *mecA*. Those commercially available are MRSASelect (bioRad Laboratories, Redmond, Wash.), CHROMagar MRSA (BD, Sparks, Md.), Brilliance MRSA (Oxoid, Thermofisher Scientific, Lenexa, Kan.), and MRSA-ID (bioMerieux, Raleigh-Durham, N.C.) (Perry et al, 2004; Manickam et al, 2013; Veenemans et al, 2013). Not all are FDA cleared in the United States; most studies indicate they work well in detecting MRSA but are less sensitive than the available molecular assays. They are, however, less expensive than the molecular assays.

Three molecular assays that can detect MRSA directly in clinical specimens (nasal swabs, blood cultures, and other) within 90 minutes are GeneOhm (Becton Dickinson Microbiology Systems, Sparks, Md.), the Xpert MRSA (Cepheid, Sunnyvale, Calif.), and Light Cycler MRSA Advanced Test (Roche, Basel, Switzerland) (Warren et al, 2004; Al-Haj-Hussein et al, 2005; Frey et al, 2011; Buchan et al, 2014). Both Gene-OHM and Cepheid have assays for the detection of *S. aureus* and MRSA in clinical specimens and from positive blood cultures. Although oxacillin-resistant staphylococci may appear to be susceptible to cephalosporins, they should be considered resistant to all β-lactam agents (penicillins, cephalosporins, and carbapenems). Hospital-acquired strains usually are resistant to many non–β-lactam antibiotics as well. Many of the CA-MRSA strains still remain susceptible to most non–β-lactam antibiotics (Daum et al, 2002; David et al, 2014).

Clindamycin may be used to treat staphylococcal infection. Inducible resistance, due to mechanisms involving a class of enzyme-inactivating genes referred to as *erm* genes, may not be detected in routine susceptibility testing. This *erm* gene also confers cross-resistance to the macrolides (e.g., erythromycin) and streptogramins (quinupristin-dalfopristin). An isolate of *S. aureus* that is resistant to erythromycin but susceptible to clindamycin in a minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) test (broth or agar dilution or E-test) should be evaluated for inducible resistance to clindamycin by the "D-zone" test as follows. A 15-μg erythromycin disk and a 2-μg clindamycin disk are placed 15 mm apart on the surface of a blood agar plate inoculated with the isolate in question. After overnight incubation, if there is inducible resistance to clindamycin, blunting of the clindamycin zone of inhibition will be seen on the side near the erythromycin disk, giving the appearance of a D zone (CLSI, 2014).

Vancomycin resistance, although rarely seen in *S. aureus*, is a serious issue that laboratories need to be aware of and should screen for. Isolates of vancomycin intermediately susceptible *S. aureus* (VISA) have MICs in the intermediate range (4-8 μg/mL) (Cosgrove et al, 2004). A number of cases of vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* with vancomycin MICs as high as 1024 μg/mL have been reported (MMWR, 2004). Because the latter have not been uniformly detected in automated systems for susceptibility testing, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that all *S. aureus* isolates tested on an automated instrument should also be tested by a vancomycin screen assay to ensure that the correct MIC is determined. This is usually done by inoculating 100 μL of a 0.5 McFarland suspension of *S. aureus* to a Brain Heart Infusion Agar (BHIA) plate containing 6 μg/mL of vancomycin, and incubating overnight at 35 °C. If more than one colony is seen on the plate, this is evidence of presumptive reduced susceptibility to vancomycin; confirmation with an MIC should be done (CLSI, 2014). Most automated susceptibility testing systems have been adjusted to detect vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA), if present; however, detection of VISA is still variable among systems—both automated and manual. Isolates with an MIC of 4 μg/ml to vancomycin should be considered representative of a possible VISA, and further testing with microbroth dilution should be performed for confirmation. Screen-positive isolates that have elevated vancomycin MIC values (≥8 organisms/μg/mL) should be sent to a reference laboratory for confirmation, and confirmed cases should be referred to your state health department and the CDC.

The entity of hVISA (strains of *S. aureus* that are variable within the population or colony for vancomycin nonsusceptibility) is difficult for a routine clinical microbiology laboratory to detect. If a strain with an MIC of 2 μg/mL to vancomycin is being clinically considered nonresponsive to vancomycin, a macro E-test can be performed, employing a McFarland of 2.0 instead of the usual 0.5, and inner colonies can be looked for. Exposure of suspected isolates to increasing concentrations of vancomycin in agar plates, however, is the recommended approach for detection of hVISA, although these methods are often beyond what a routine laboratory can do (Bae et al, 2009).

Newer antimicrobial agents have good activity against susceptible and resistant staphylococci. These include quinupristin/dalfopristin, a streptogramin; the lipopeptide daptomycin; linezolid; televancin; and ceftaroline. The last is the only cephalosporin to which MRSA isolates are susceptible. For isolates of VISA or VRSA, or when clinicians request agents other than vancomycin for MRSA strains, laboratories should consider testing these agents or sending the isolates to reference laboratories that can test for their susceptibility.

Streptococcus and Enterococcus

Characteristics

Streptococci are catalase-negative, gram-positive, spherical, ovoid, or lancet-shaped cocci, often seen in pairs or chains. They are facultatively anaerobic. Some strains require added CO_2 for their initial isolation but may lose this requirement in subcultures. Streptococci can be broadly classified according to the hemolytic reaction on blood agar (Table 58-3). Those strains that completely hemolyze the red cells around their colonies are called β-hemolytic and can be further categorized into the Lancefield groups based on serologically reactive carbohydrates. Important members of this group include *Streptococcus pyogenes* (group A) and *Streptococcus agalactiae* (group B). Figure 58-3 is a Gram stain of *S. pyogenes* (group A streptococcus) in a specimen from abscess material on the arm of a patient with cellulitis. Those gram-positive cocci in chains that produce partial hemolysis (cause "greening" of the agar) are α-hemolytic. An important

TABLE 58-3
Classification of *Streptococci* and *Enterococci*

Hemolysis	Lancefield Group	Species
β	A	*Streptococcus pyogenes*
	B	*Streptococcus agalactiae*
	C	*Streptococcus dysgalactiae*
	D	*Enterococcus* spp.
α or γ	D	*Enterococcus* spp.
	D	*Streptococcus bovis complex* (reclassified into many new species as described in text)
	None	Viridans group*
α	None	*Streptococcus pneumoniae*

*Small colony variants of Lancefield group A, C, F, or G, or nongroupable strains, can be any hemolysis.

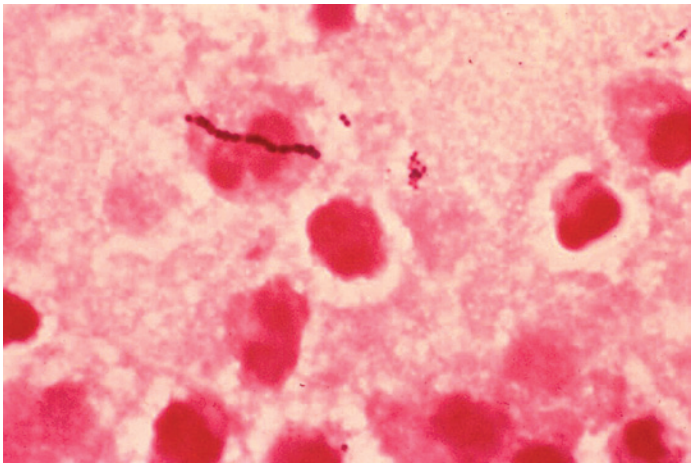


Figure 58-3 **Gram stain of *Streptococcus pyogenes* (group A streptococcus) from a case of cellulitis.**

member of this group is *S. pneumoniae*. Streptococci that do not hemolyze blood are γ-hemolytic. An important member of this group is *Streptococcus bovis* complex. Some *S. agalactiae* may also be γ-hemolytic. Most of the remainder of the α- and γ-hemolytic streptococci are collectively called viridans streptococci, including *Streptococcus mutans*, *Streptococcus sanguis*, *Streptococcus mitis*, *Streptococcus salivarius*, and *Streptococcus anginosus*. The group of organisms previously referred to as nutritionally variant (pyridoxal or thiol dependent, satelliting) streptococci have now been assigned to the genus *Abiotrophia* or *Granulicatella*.

Members of the genus *Enterococcus*, previously designated as group D streptococci because their cell wall antigens reacted with group D antisera, are different molecularly as well as metabolically from the other members of the genus *Streptococcus* to be considered a separate genus. These organisms are gram-positive cocci that occur singly, in pairs, and in short chains. They are facultatively anaerobic. Most enterococci are α- or γ-hemolytic on blood agar, but some may exhibit β-hemolysis. The most common species are *Enterococcus faecium* and *Enterococcus faecalis*; yellow motile strains of the enterococci, usually nonpathogenic, include *Enterococcus casseliflavus* and *Enterococcus gallinarum*. These latter two species are usually intrinsically vancomycin resistant, and it is important to differentiate them from the vancomycin-resistant *E. faecium* or *E. faecalis* strains.

Other genera of catalase-negative gram-positive cocci that may be isolated from clinical specimens include *Leuconostoc*, *Pediococcus*, *Stomatococcus* (*Rothia*), *Gemella*, *Aerococcus*, *Lactococcus*, and other less rarely isolated species. These organisms are considered to have low virulence potential and generally are pathogenic only in the compromised host, with the exception of some species of *Aerococcus* (*A. urinae* and *A. sanguinicola*), which are known urinary tract pathogens. However, some of these isolates may be confused with viridans streptococci, in particular, and their differentiation is important because of their lower virulence and their potential for vancomycin resistance. Further differentiation should be considered if a vancomycin-resistant viridans streptococcus is thought to be clinically relevant.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

One of the most common clinical manifestations of group A streptococci is pharyngitis. This may be accompanied by scarlet fever, a punctate exanthem overlying diffuse erythema that usually first appears on the neck or upper chest, becomes generalized, and then desquamates. Skin infections caused by group A streptococcus include cellulitis, erysipelas, and pyoderma. Acute rheumatic fever, characterized by carditis, polyarthritis, erythema marginatum, chorea, and subcutaneous nodules, may occur 1 to 5 weeks after group A streptococcal pharyngitis. Acute glomerulonephritis may develop 10 days to 3 weeks after group A streptococcal pharyngitis or pyoderma.

Beginning in the late 1980s, serious group A streptococcal clinical syndromes, including necrotizing fasciitis, myositis, malignant scarlet fever, bacteremia, and toxic shock–like syndrome, began to be seen with increasing frequency. These have been associated with high morbidity rates and mortality rates of up to 30% or more. The reason for this increase is not completely understood but appears to be related to changes in the prevalence of organisms having an enhanced virulence potential (Kaplan, 2005; Vucicevic et al, 2008; Lappin & Ferguson, 2009, Reglinski & Sriskandan, 2014).

S. pyogenes produces numerous virulence factors. One of the most important is the antiphagocytic cell wall M protein. Antibodies against the specific M protein confer lifelong type-specific immunity; however, because more than 60 M protein types exist, infection with a group A streptococcus possessing a different M protein may occur. Another important cell wall component is lipoteichoic acid, which permits bacterial adherence to the respiratory epithelium. *S. pyogenes* also elaborates about 20 extracellular products, including enzymes (streptolysins, hyaluronidase, streptokinase, deoxyribonucleases [DNases], and nicotinamide adenine dinucleotidase [NADase]) and erythrogenic toxins. Streptolysin O, an antigenic, oxygen-labile enzyme, produces subsurface hemolysis on blood agar plates; streptolysin S, a nonantigenic, oxygen-stable enzyme, produces surface hemolysis. Neither streptolysin has a proven role in the pathogenesis of human disease. Streptokinase promotes fibrinolytic activity by converting plasminogen to plasmin, and hyaluronidase may enhance the spread of the organism through connective tissue. The pathogenic significance of the DNases and of NADase is unknown. Pyrogenic (erythrogenic) toxins (serotypes A, B, C) are produced by isolates of *S. pyogenes* infected with a specific temperate bacteriophage. Their pyrogenicity is caused by a direct action on the hypothalamus. Streptococcus group A has also been found to possess superantigens with high mitogenic capabilities; these have been associated with cases of more severe streptococcal infection, such as necrotizing fasciitis or toxic shock syndrome (Kotb et al, 2002; Reglinski & Sriskandan, 2014).

The pathogenesis of acute rheumatic fever is not fully understood. Certain M protein types of *S. pyogenes* may be rheumatogenic. The presence of complexes of immunoglobulin and the C3 component of complement along the sarcolemmal sheaths of cardiac myofibers from individuals with rheumatic carditis suggests that myocarditis results from the production of antibodies directed against a streptococcal cell wall M protein that cross-reacts with myocardial tissue. Moreover, a heart or tissue cross-reactive antigen of *S. pyogenes* that shares immunologic epitopes with, but is distinct from, the M protein has been identified (Barnett & Cunningham, 1990). Renal damage in acute glomerulonephritis is caused by deposits of circulating streptococcal–antistreptococcal immune complexes in the glomeruli and subsequent activation of complement. Cell-mediated reactions to an altered glomerular basement membrane or activation of the alternate complement pathway also may be involved. Isolates of *S. pyogenes* have been linked to toxic shock syndrome, with a clinical picture very similar to *S. aureus*; streptococcal superantigens (Sags) are thought to be responsible for the toxic shock–like syndrome caused by strains of *S. pyogenes* (Reglinski & Sriskandan, 2014).

The most common infections caused by Group B streptococci (GBS) are neonatal sepsis, pneumonia, and meningitis. Colonization of the maternal genital tract is associated with colonization of infants and risk of neonatal disease, with early-onset infections occurring within the first few days after delivery and late-onset infections appearing after 1 week of age. To reduce the incidence of neonatal disease, the CDC published specific guidelines to facilitate early identification and treatment of women colonized with GBS and identification and treatment of neonates at risk for developing disease (MMWR, 2010; Verani et al, 2010). All pregnant women at 35 to 37 weeks of gestation should have vaginal/rectal specimens collected and processed for detection of GBS. Results of this test should be available during labor, so appropriate prophylaxis can be given to the mother before delivery to prevent infection to the newborn. Isolation of GBS from the urine of a pregnant female can also be used as a marker of group B streptococcal vaginal carriage, and this information should be used to direct prophylaxis to mothers found to be positive. If urine is positive, screening of vaginal/rectal cultures may not be necessary. Molecular tests that can rapidly identify the presence of GBS are available and are used in some laboratories at the time of labor and delivery (Gray et al, 2012). Group B streptococcal infections in adults include postpartum endometritis, urinary tract infection, bacteremia, skin and soft tissue infections, pneumonia, endocarditis, meningitis, arthritis, and osteomyelitis.

Group C and G streptococci are similar to *S. pyogenes* in that they cause a wide range of infections, including bacteremia, endocarditis, meningitis, arthritis, and respiratory and skin infections (Rantala, 2014). The pharyngeal infection caused by these streptococci is similar to that of group A streptococci, except that the nonsuppurative sequelae of rheumatic fever do not occur.

Infections caused by *S. pneumoniae* include pneumonia, meningitis (especially in infants and the elderly), spontaneous bacteremia (in persons who do not have a spleen), otitis, sinusitis, and spontaneous peritonitis. *S. pneumoniae* is seen in the normal flora of the upper respiratory tract of 25% to 50% of preschool children, 36% of primary school-age children, and nearly 20% of adults, termed *carriers* (Lopez et al, 1999). Its spread is enhanced by upper respiratory tract infections and crowding. Pneumonia may develop when the host immune defenses are impaired. Most cases are endogenous, following aspiration of oral secretions containing normal flora that includes *S. pneumoniae*. Person-to-person transmission during epidemics occurs by droplet aerosols. The major virulence factor of *S. pneumoniae* is its antiphagocytic polysaccharide capsule, and strains with a thick, mucoid capsule are especially virulent. Vaccines designed to protect against infection by pneumococci of many of the predominant capsular polysaccharide types are available. The CDC recommends that infants receive the 13-valent conjugated vaccine starting at age 2 months. It also is recommended that adults 65 years of age and older receive both the 13-valent conjugated vaccine and the 23-valent polysaccharide vaccine. Immunosuppressed patients of any age should receive both vaccines (Mirsaeidi & Schraufnagel, 2014). There are other conjugated vaccines being investigated to further enhance the protection in various populations (Feldman & Anderson, 2014).

Bacterial endocarditis is the most common infection caused by viridans streptococci; others include abscesses in the brain or liver, bacteremia, and dental caries. The milleri streptococci complex (*S. constellatus*, *S. intermedius*, and *S. anginosus*) consists of the most common viridans streptococci responsible for liver, spleen, and brain abscesses; they often are more susceptible to antibiotics than other strains of viridans streptococci,

although resistance to penicillin is increasingly being recognized. *S. bovis* bacteremia has been associated with malignancies of the gastrointestinal tract. *S. bovis* is now recognized as a complex of seven strains and/or subspecies. Biochemical differentiation remains difficult within the species. Presently, there are seven subspecies broken down into four branches: *S. gallolyticus* (includes the subspecies *gallolyticus*, *pasteurianus*, and *macedonicus*); *S. equinus*; *S. infantarius* (includes subspecies *infantarius* and *lutetiensis*); and *S. alactolyticus*. *S. gallolyticus* subspecies *gallolyticus* and subspecies *pasteurianus* are isolated from blood cultures of patients with colonic cancer more often than is *S. infantarius* or *S. lutetiensis*. *S. gallolyticus* subspecies *gallolyticus* is associated with prosthetic joint infections and infective endocarditis; *S. gallolyticus* subspecies *pasturianus* and *S. infantarius* subspecies *infantarius* are associated with hepatobiliary infections (including UTI) and cases of meningitis. *S. alactolyticus*, *S. equinus*, and *S. infantarius* subspecies *lutetiensis* are not often found in human disease (Jans et al, 2014; Vaska & Faoagali, 2009). In many laboratories, isolates are still reported as *S. bovis* because phenotypic identification may not be adequate for differentiation; as use of molecular methods or MALDI-TOF for bacterial identification increases, more of these differences may be appreciated (Vaska & Faoagali, 2009).

Enterococci are not highly pathogenic; however, they are a common cause of urinary tract infection in hospitalized persons. They may also cause endocarditis, bacteremia, and wound infection. Vancomycin-resistant enterococci offer a greater potential for infection, especially in immunocompromised patients and patients with implanted foreign devices (Han et al, 2009; McBride et al, 2009).

More and more clinically relevant cases of *Aerococcus urinae* (and other species of aerococci) are being reported. Urinary tract infections are most common, but rare cases of more serious infection, including bacteremia, are seen (Ruoff, 2011; Shelton-Dodge et al, 2011). *A. viridans* remains relatively uncommon as a pathogen when isolated from clinical samples; *A. sanguinicola* isolation is not always associated with clinical disease, but case numbers are increasing (Ibler et al, 2008; Shelton-Dodge et al, 2011). In addition, higher MICs have been demonstrated to levofloxacin by *A. sanguinicola* than by other species of aerococci (Ruoff, 2011; Shelton-Dodge et al, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Streptococci grow well on blood or chocolate agar. Blood agar is preferred because the hemolytic properties of the organism can be assessed. When culturing vaginal/rectal swabs from pregnant women for group B streptococci, specimens should first be inoculated to a selective broth, such as Lim or carrot broth, or on to selective agar, such as Granada agar, to enrich for this organism (Church et al, 2008; Carvalho et al, 2009; Spellerberg & Brandt, 2011). Tests that may be used in the clinical microbiology laboratory to presumptively name the β-hemolytic species of *Streptococcus* are shown in Figure 58-4. More than 99% of isolates of group A streptococcus are susceptible to bacitracin, but a very small percentage of isolates of group B streptococcus and 10% to 20% of isolates of groups C and G streptococcus are also susceptible. Therefore, results of the bacitracin susceptibility test provide a presumptive identification. An isolate may be called group A streptococcus presumptively, based on hydrolysis of the L-pyrrolidonyl-β-naphthylamide (PYRase) test (Spellerberg & Brandt, 2011). All isolates of group A streptococcus and more than 99% of isolates of *Enterococcus* are PYRase positive. Identification of group A streptococcus is confirmed by serotyping, using latex agglutination or a nucleic acid probe. A nucleic acid probe (Gen-Probe, San Diego) is also

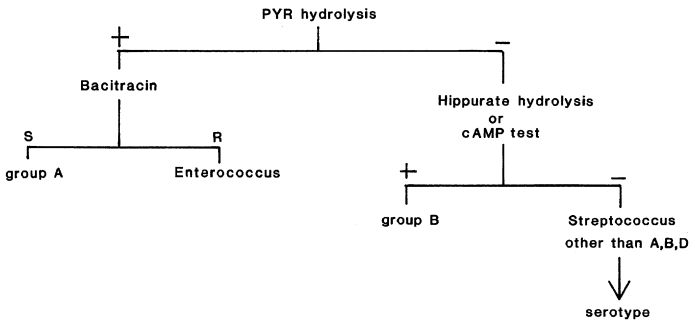


Figure 58-4 **Decision tree of tests to presumptively name the β-hemolytic species of *Streptococcus*.** +, Positive result; –, negative result; *R*, resistant; *S*, susceptible. (With permission from Woods GL, Gutierez Y: *Diagnostic pathology of infectious diseases,* Philadelphia, 1993, Lea & Febiger.)

available for direct detection of group A streptococcus on throat swabs (Chapin et al, 2002).

Group A streptococcal antigen may be detected directly in throat swab specimens by using commercial kits designed to generate a rapid result. These tests are highly specific but, given their low sensitivity, which varies among studies from 31% to 95% (Carroll & Reimer, 1996; Lean et al, 2014), a negative antigen test in children should be followed by culture or probe. More recently, clinical guidelines recommended that negative antigen assays in adults need not be followed up with culture, but this is controversial (Dingle et al, 2014; Lean et al, 2014). Serologic tests to detect streptolysin O and DNase B antibodies in acute and convalescent serum samples are used primarily to diagnose acute rheumatic fever and acute glomerulonephritis following infection with group A streptococcus.

Catalase-negative colonies that are β-hemolytic and hippurate hydrolysis positive and/or that have a positive CAMP test (named for researchers Christie, Atkins, and Munch-Petersen) reaction presumptively can be called group B streptococcus (GBS). Isolates of presumed GBS from sterile body sites should be identified by serotyping (using latex agglutination or coagglutination tests) or by using a chemiluminescent DNA probe. The DNA probe can also be used to identify GBS growing in Lim broth or other selective broth cultures (Daly et al, 1991; Williams-Bouyer et al, 2000). This probe, however, is not sensitive enough to use directly on clinical specimens for the detection of GBS. For culture of vaginal/rectal swab specimens from pregnant women during weeks 35 through 37 of gestation, it is recommended that a broth enrichment be used along with or as a replacement for agar-based media. Selective broth media, including Lim broth, selective Todd Hewitt broth, or a commercially available Trans Vag broth supplemented with 5% sheep blood (Remel, Lenexa, Kans.), can be used as enrichment media (Heelan et al, 2005). Chromogenic broth, including carrot broth media, can be used as enrichment broth; colonies of β-hemolytic GBS will convert the color of the tube from clear to yellow or orange. However, nonhemolytic GBS will not change the tube color, and when used, a negative broth would still need to be planted onto solid media for recovery of these strains.

In addition, a selective nonchromogenic enrichment broth can be subcultured to Granada agar, on which colonies of GBS will appear yellow to orange for ease in detection. Isolates of β-hemolytic groups C, D, F, and G *Streptococcus* are identified by serotyping with latex agglutination reagents. The molecular assays mentioned earlier can be used to detect GBS directly in vaginal-rectal specimens or can be used to detect GBS in Lim or carrot broth cultures (Picard & Bergeron, 2004; Block et al, 2008). The Cepheid GeneXpert GBS assay can be performed directly on clinical vaginal/rectal samples and has the potential to provide results intrapartum (Gray et al, 2012). More nucleic acid amplification assays for the detection of GBS in vaginal/rectal samples are rapidly becoming FDA cleared for use in clinical laboratories.

Latex agglutination assays are available for direct detection of group B streptococcus (as well as *S. pneumoniae*, some serotypes of *N. meningitidis*, *E. coli*, and *H. influenzae* type b) in CSF, serum, and urine. These assays have been shown to have sensitivities equivalent to or lower than a Gram stain and may give false-positive results; hence, they do not in general provide additional useful information above that provided by the CSF Gram stain. The rapid bacterial antigen tests are much more expensive and labor intensive than Gram stain; most laboratories no longer offer these tests or strictly limit their use (Thomas, 1994).

Tests used to presumptively identify α- and γ-hemolytic streptococci and enterococci are shown in Figure 58-5. α-Hemolytic colonies that are mucoid or flattened with a depressed center are suggestive of *S. pneumoniae;* they should be tested for susceptibility to ethylhydroxycupreine hydrochloride, more commonly called optochin (P disk), and for bile solubility. *S. pneumoniae* is susceptible to both; other α-hemolytic streptococci are resistant to optochin and are variable in response to bile. A urinary antigen assay for detection of *S. pneumoniae* has been shown in some studies to be the nonculture diagnostic method of choice for patients with severe pneumococcal infection, for diagnosis of pneumococcal exacerbation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients, and as a tool for diagnosis of otitis media. As with any antigen assay, caution needs to be taken in interpreting results in cases where prior infection with *S. pneumoniae* may have occurred and the antigen may merely be reflecting this (Gisselsson-Solen et al, 2007; Smith et al, 2009; Couturier et al, 2014; Harris et al, 2014).

α-Hemolytic colonies that are not *S. pneumoniae* and γ-hemolytic colonies are tested for PYRase hydrolysis; enterococci are PYRase positive, and viridans streptococci are negative. Moreover, all enterococci grow in the presence of 6.5% NaCl, but viridans streptococci do not. Enterococci hydrolyze esculin in the presence of bile (causing visible growth and

blackening of the agar), but up to 10% of viridans streptococci are also bile–esculin positive. Additional biochemical assays are required to identify enterococci to the species level. A majority of vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) are *E. faecium*.

α-Hemolytic streptococci that are optochin resistant and PYRase negative and γ-hemolytic streptococci that are PYRase negative and do not grow in 6.5% NaCl are grouped as nonhemolytic (viridans) streptococci. Identification of individual species of viridans streptococci requires conventional biochemical testing, molecular methods, or potentially MALDI-TOF (Fang et al, 2012; Moon et al, 2013). Kit systems to identify these organisms are commercially available. Full identification of species members of viridans streptococci, however, is usually not necessary. Members of viridans streptococci belonging to the milleri streptococci, because they are usually recognized by their characteristic "caramel" odor, can be reported, if present, to alert clinicians about this group of viridans because of their propensity for abscess formation and their uniform susceptibility to penicillin. Figure 58-6 is an example of a Gram stain of a member of the milleri group of viridans streptococci from a brain abscess.

There are no vancomycin-resistant streptococci, but occasionally a "viridans"-like isolate is reported as vancomycin resistant. Usually this is an enterococcus, but it could also be a member of some more uncommon genera such as *Leuconostoc* or *Pediococcus*. If vancomycin resistance has been demonstrated, it would be important to differentiate the intrinsically vancomycin-resistant *Leuconostoc* and *Pediococcus* from enterococci that have acquired vancomycin resistance. Characteristics that might be used to accomplish this are listed in Table 58-4 (Facklam et al, 1989). Included in this table is *Aerococcus* sp., because of their morphologic similarity to *Enterococcus* sp. The clue that an isolate (especially from a urine culture) might be an *Aerococcus* sp. is the finding on Gram stain that a catalase-negative colony consists of gram-positive cocci in tetrads and clusters, not in pairs and chains. Some species of *Aerococcus* are l-pyrrolidonyl-β-naphthylamide (PYR) positive, which leads to further confusion with *Enterococcus* sp.

Members of the genus *Abiotrophia* will not grow in the absence of pyridoxal. Often they are first recognized as satellite colonies growing around a colony of *S. aureus*. Differential characteristics of *Abiotrophia defectiva* and *Abiotrophia adiacens* are reviewed elsewhere (Ruoff, 2011; Giuliano et al, 2012). Methods of performing susceptibility tests for strains of *Abiotrophia* and *Granulicatella* can be found in CLSI document M45-M2 (CLSI, 2010).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

The antibiograms of groups A, B, C, and G streptococcus are predictable (all are susceptible to penicillin); therefore, routine antimicrobial susceptibility testing of these organisms is unnecessary unless penicillin cannot be used, as in the case of a penicillin allergy. In the latter situations, testing for resistance to macrolides, clindamycin, and the tetracyclines may be warranted. Inducible resistance to clindamycin may occur with *Streptococcus* (i.e., group B streptococcus), and a D zone test as described earlier for *S. aureus* may be warranted if the streptococcal isolate is found resistant to erythromycin. Specific guidelines for streptococcal D–zone testing recommend that the clindamycin and erythromycin disks be separated by 12 mm instead of the 15 to 16 mm recommended for testing *S. aureus* (CLSI, 2014). Because *S. pneumoniae* organisms with intermediate- or high-level resistance to penicillin are found worldwide, isolates should be tested for susceptibility to penicillin. A screening test using disk diffusion with a 1-μg oxacillin disk (≥20 mm = susceptible) may be performed; however, isolates that are not susceptible by this method must be further evaluated by macrodilution or microdilution testing, using Mueller-Hinton broth supplemented with lysed horse blood or the E test to determine the penicillin MIC. There are breakpoints for penicillin and the cephalosporins for isolates from cases of meningitis versus those isolated from nonmeningitis sites (CLSI, 2014). Resistance to third-generation cephalosporins also occurs; therefore, isolates should be tested for susceptibility to these antimicrobial agents as well.

Susceptibility testing should be performed on isolates of nonhemolytic (viridans) streptococci from sterile body sites, because resistance to

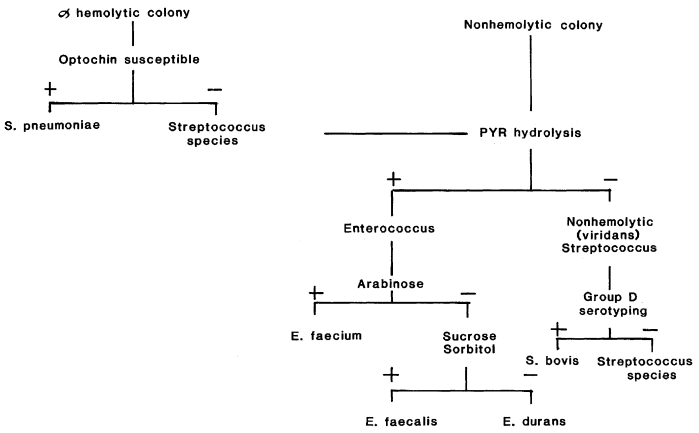


Figure 58-5 **Decision tree of tests to presumptively name the α-hemolytic species of *Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus*.** +, Positive result; –, negative result; *R,* resistant; *S,* susceptible. (With permission from Woods GL, Gutierez Y: *Diagnostic pathology of infectious diseases,* Philadelphia, 1993, Lea & Febiger.)

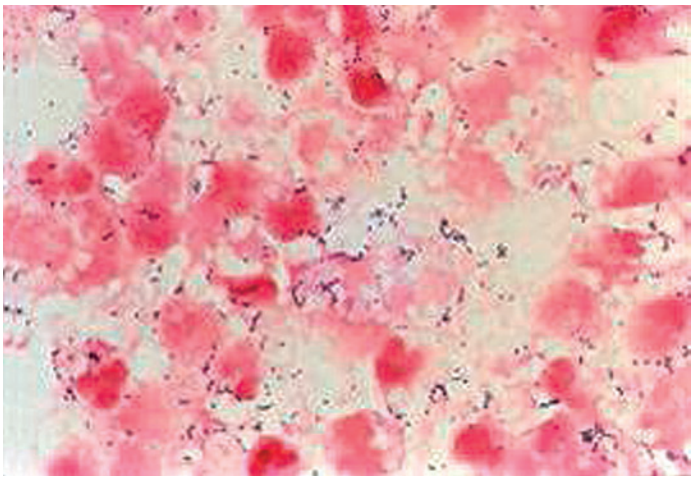


Figure 58-6 **Gram stain of a viridans *Streptococcus,* specifically a member of the milleri group, from a brain abscess.**

TABLE 58-4
Characteristics Differentiating *Enterococcus, Leuconostoc, Pediococcus,* and *Aerococcus*

	Enterococcus	Aerococcus	Leuconostoc	Pediococcus
Gram stain	Pairs and short chains	Tetrads	Cocci, coccobacilli, and rods; pairs and chains	Tetrads and pairs; spherical cells
Hemolysis	β or α or γ	α or γ	α or γ	α or γ
Bile esculin	+	V	V	+
Growth in 6.5% NaCl	+	+	V	V
PYR	+	*	–	–
LAP	+	*	–	+
Vancomycin susceptibility	S/R	S	R	R

+, Positive result; –, negative result; *LAP,* leucine aminopeptidase; *PYR,* l-pyrrolidonyl-β-naphthylamide; *R,* resistant; *S,* susceptible; *V,* variable reactions.
**Aerococcus urinae* is PYR and LAP positive; *Aerococcus viridans* is PYR positive and LAP negative.

penicillin does occur. *Enterococcus* spp. should also be tested, primarily to identify high-level resistance to penicillin or ampicillin, high-level resistance to streptomycin and gentamicin, and resistance to vancomycin. Enterococci are resistant to vancomycin (MIC >32 µg/mL) because of the presence of resistance genes, referred to as the *van* genes (CLSI, 2014). Although many of these genes have been described, the most common are *vanA*, *vanB*, and *vanC*. The *vanA* and *vanB* genes, conferring high-level resistance and predominantly found in *E. faecium* and much less frequently in *E. faecalis*, are acquired, plasmid-borne genes that can create infection control problems involving transmission of this resistance. This vancomycin resistance can be differentiated from intrinsic and lower-level resistance (*vanC* genes) in the yellow, motile species of *Enterococcus*, and this should be done in laboratories and reported as such to the infection control team (Teixeira et al, 2011).

Gemella and *Aerococcus*

Other nonstreptococcal gram-positive, catalase-negative cocci of increasing importance are those that belong to the genera *Gemella* and *Aerococcus*. *Gemella* spp. (*Gemella haemolysans* and *Gemella morbillorum*) resemble viridans streptococci, although they usually produce smaller colonies. *G. haemolysans* has been associated with endocarditis and meningitis. Gram stain usually demonstrates diplococci with adjacent sides flattened that can be confused with a *Neisseria* sp. because cells can easily become decolorized. *G. haemolysans* is aerobic, and *G. morbillorum* is anaerobic. The latter usually appears as cocci in pairs or short chains. Both are PYR positive, 6% NaCl, and esculin–hydrolysis negative (to differentiate them from enterococci). *G. morbillorum* is leucine-aminopeptidase (LAP) positive as well. Both are usually susceptible to penicillin. As with other gram-positive cocci, if there is doubt about the morphology of the organism (i.e., whether it is a short rod or a coccus), Gram stain performed from a broth culture will usually resolve the difficulty. Maldi-Tof has been shown to be a useful tool in the correct identification of *Gemella* spp. (Schultness et al, 2013).

Two major species of *Aerococcus* may be clinically relevant and/or isolated from clinical specimens: *Aerococcus urinae* and *Aerococcus viridans*. Both resemble viridans streptococci or enterococci on agar plates; however, in Gram stains, they usually appear in tetrads. *A. urinae* is a recognized pathogen in urinary tract infection; in addition, it has been isolated from the blood in cases of endocarditis. *A. urinae* is PYR negative and LAP positive, in contrast to *A. viridans*, which is PYR positive and LAP negative (see Table 58-4). Both will grow in the presence of 6.5% NaCl. Neither are anaerobes, and *A. viridans* usually will not grow under anaerobic conditions. *A. urinae* is usually susceptible to penicillin and nitrofurantoin but may be resistant to sulfonamides. Variability in its response to trimethoprim has been noted (Ruoff, 2011; Senneby et al, 2015). A newer member of the genus *Aerococcus*, *A. sanguinicola*, which is rarely recovered from clinical specimens, can be both LAP and PYR positive, although this is not a confirmatory identification. Use of Maldi-TOF can provide more reliable results. It can be responsible for UTI as well as bacteremia and infective endocarditis. Like *A. urinae*, isolates of *A. sanguinicola* are usually susceptible to penicillin and nitrofurantoin, but are variable in their response to sulfonamides and quinolones (Ibler et al, 2008; Rasmussen, 2013; Senneby et al, 2015).

GRAM-POSITIVE RODS

Corynebacterium and *Arcanobacterium*

Characteristics

The corynebacteria—or diphtheroids, as they are sometimes called—appear in the Gram-stained smear as slightly curved, gram-positive rods with nonparallel sides and sometimes wider ends, giving a clubbed appearance (Fig. 58-7). These organisms are catalase positive. More than 46 species of *Corynebacterium* are known. Most are rarely pathogenic in humans; notable exceptions are *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and its closely related species or varieties *Corynebacterium ulcerans* and *Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis*. *C. pseudodiphtheriticum* has been implicated in respiratory tract infections, including pneumonia (Camello et al, 2009). Medically relevant *Arcanobacterium* spp. include *Arcanobacterium haemolyticum*, *Arcanobacterium pyogenes*, and *Arcanobacterium bernardiae*. *Arcanobacterium* species also appear as irregular gram-positive rods on Gram stain but can be easily differentiated from the corynebacteria by their negative catalase reaction.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

At the initial site of infection on the epithelial cells of the tonsils and oropharynx, *C. diphtheriae* elaborates an exotoxin that causes local cell necrosis and subsequent inflammation. The exotoxin produced by strains

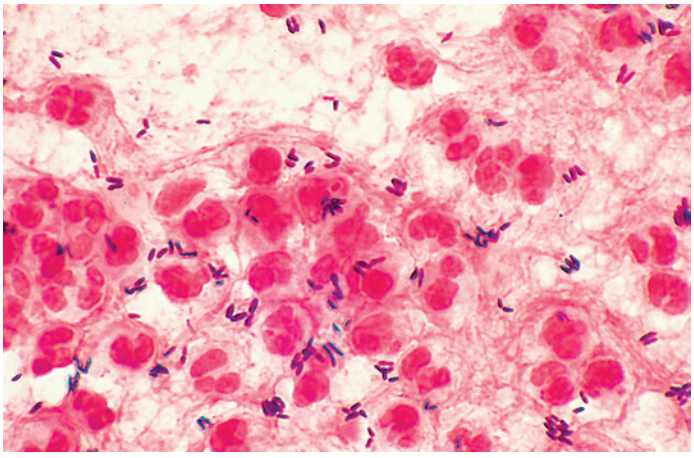


Figure 58-7 Sputum stained with Gram stain shows many neutrophils, amorphous debris, and coryneform gram-positive bacilli (oil immersion).

of *C. diphtheriae* infected with a specific bacteriophage is absorbed into the circulation. Distribution of exotoxin through the bloodstream can produce degenerative changes in the heart, nervous system, and kidneys. The toxin molecule consists of two fragments: A, containing the enzymatically active site, and B, comprising the receptor binding site. Once in the cell, protein synthesis is disrupted. The bacteria and exotoxin produce a serum exudate and cellular infiltrate of the mucous membrane in the pharynx. Exudative lesions coalesce, forming a grayish-black adherent pseudomembrane, which is characteristic of diphtheria. Although toxin production and pathogenicity are often considered to be synonymous, pseudomembranes may form in persons infected with nontoxigenic strains. Extension of the pseudomembrane superiorly into the nasopharynx or inferiorly into the larynx may be so marked as to produce respiratory obstruction. Although *C. diphtheriae* infections of other parts of the body do occur, those observed most frequently in the United States today are infections of the skin. Transmission of *C. diphtheriae* occurs by droplet nuclei from the respiratory tract or by contact from cutaneous foci of infection (Byard, 2013; Mattos-Guaraldi et al, 2003).

Because they are part of the normal flora of the skin and mucous membranes, it is difficult to establish the etiologic role of the other corynebacteria. Clinical significance is generally increased if the organism is observed in the Gram-stained smear in association with leukocytes, is isolated from a sterile site, and is isolated from multiple samples. *Corynebacterium jeikeium* has been clearly associated with infections of implanted prosthetic materials (e.g., heart valves, CSF, joints), has caused subacute bacterial endocarditis, and has been involved in a variety of opportunistic infections. *Corynebacterium urealyticum* has been associated with urinary tract infection, as well as with bacteremia, endocarditis, and wound infection (Nebreda-Mayoral et al, 1994). When identified, *Corynebacterium striatum* and *Corynebacterium amycolatum* are the most common normal flora skin coryneforms. They may become pathogenic, especially in cases of prosthetic joint infections and, of note, are often resistant to β-lactam antibiotics—a characteristic usually attributed only to *C. jeikeium* (Crabtree & Garcia, 2003; Cazanave et al, 2012).

A. haemolyticum has been associated with pharyngitis and wound and soft tissue infections (Fernandez-Suarez et al, 2009). *A. pyogenes* and *A. bernardiae* are associated with abscess formation. (Funke & Bernard, 2011)

Laboratory Diagnosis

Because of the relative rarity of diphtheria in the United States today, the diagnosis may be overlooked clinically, and the laboratory may easily fail to recognize it in cultures. When the diagnosis of diphtheria is suspected, the laboratory should be informed so that the specimen can be handled appropriately. Specimens should be obtained with a cotton- or polyester-tipped swab from inflamed regions of the nasopharynx and, if possible, beneath the pseudomembrane. If skin lesions are suspected of being positive for *C. diphtheriae*, the most appropriate specimen would be an aspirate of the lesion. Corynebacteria will grow on routine blood-containing agar; however, cystine-tellurite (CT) blood agar or Tinsdale medium is preferred. On CT medium, colonies of *C. diphtheriae* are gray or black after 48 hours of incubation. Colonies may be large or small, and flat or convex. Colonies of species other than *C. diphtheriae* may produce black colonies on CT or Tinsdale media, although these will usually be smaller. If a

TABLE 58-5
Differential Characteristics of Some Species within the Genus *Corynebacterium* and Related Organisms

Test	*C. diphtheriae*	*C. ulcerans*	*C. pseudotuberculosis*	*C. jeikeium*	*Arcanobacterium haemolyticum*	*Arcanobacterium pyogenes*
Catalase	+	+	+	+	–	–
Hemolysis	v	+	+	–	+	+
Gelatinase	–	+	–	–	–	+
Urease	–	+	+	–	–	–
Nitrate reduction	v	–	v	–	–	–
Sucrose fermentation	–	–	v	–	v	v

+, Positive; –, negative; *v*, variable.

laboratory does not have CT or Tinsdale medium and a request for *C. diphtheriae* is made, CNA can be used, although it will be more difficult to recognize possible *C. diphtheriae* strains (Funke & Bernard, 2011).

Classification of oral and skin corynebacteria or diphtheroids is difficult and confusing. The differential characteristics of some species are shown in Table 58-5. Commercial identification systems are available to identify many of the members of this group of organisms (Funke & Bernard, 2011). Isolates of suspected *C. diphtheriae* must be tested for production of exotoxin. The elaboration of toxin may be detected in vitro with the Elek immunodiffusion test; however, this generally is not done in a routine clinical laboratory. Isolates should be sent to a state health laboratory or a reference laboratory where this can be performed. Alternatively, PCR-based tests have been described that may be used for detection of the toxin gene (Mancini et al, 2012). *C. jeikeium* often produces a characteristic metallic sheen on the surface of blood agar plates. *C. striatum* and *C. amycolatum* are common skin florae that can be responsible for infection; whether they need to be specifically identified is controversial, and identification can be difficult. Species identification of *Corynebacterium* often requires a combination of commercial kit systems, cellular fatty acid analysis, and/or sequencing (Van den Velde et al, 2006). *C. striatum* and *C. amycolatum* organisms are often resistant to many antibiotic agents—a characteristic that often is more typically associated with hospital-acquired strains, in particular *C. jeikeium*. Maldi-Tof has been reported to be very useful in the identification of *Cornebacterium* spp. (Bernard, 2012) and may become helpful in correlating the significance of species of coryneforms in the future.

Arcanobacterium spp. are β-hemolytic on sheep blood agar. Colonies on sheep blood agar are small after 48 hours of incubation, and the hemolysis may go unnoticed. Adequate growth and noticeable hemolysis are best demonstrated in a CO_2-enhanced environment. *Arcanobacterium* spp. are catalase negative. Biochemical reactions that are used to determine the species of corynebacteria are also useful in identifying the *Arcanobacterium* spp. (Funke & Bernard, 2011). *A. haemolyticum* produces phospholipase D, which is responsible for the reverse CAMP reaction with *S. aureus*. This organism inhibits hemolysis around the *S. aureus* streak, producing an inverted triangle of no hemolysis.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Although antitoxin remains the only specific method of treatment of diphtheria, antibiotics are administered to patients with disease and to asymptomatic carriers of toxigenic strains. *C. diphtheriae* is usually inhibited by penicillins and the macrolides. The antimicrobial susceptibilities of other species of corynebacteria or diphtheroids are far less predictable. *C. jeikeium* is usually resistant to the penicillins and cephalosporins, is variably susceptible to most other antibiotics, and is almost uniformly susceptible to vancomycin. Other species of *Corynebacterium*, however, may be similarly resistant to β-lactam antibiotics. Treatment of infection caused by these organisms is often complicated by the presence of compromised host defenses and implanted prosthetic materials. Arcanobacteria are sensitive to penicillin and other β-lactams, rifampin, tetracycline, and the macrolides. Growth of the organisms may be inhibited by fluoroquinolones and aminoglycosides (Funke & Bernard, 2011). Methods used for performing susceptibility tests on *Corynebacterium* spp. and interpretive criteria can be found in CLSI document M45-M2 (CLSI, 2010). Bernard recently reviewed the antimicrobial susceptibilities of gram-positive rods (Bernard, 2012).

Prevention

Methods of prevention of diphtheria are almost exclusively active and passive immunization programs with supplemental antibiotics to eliminate the carrier state of toxigenic strains during epidemics.

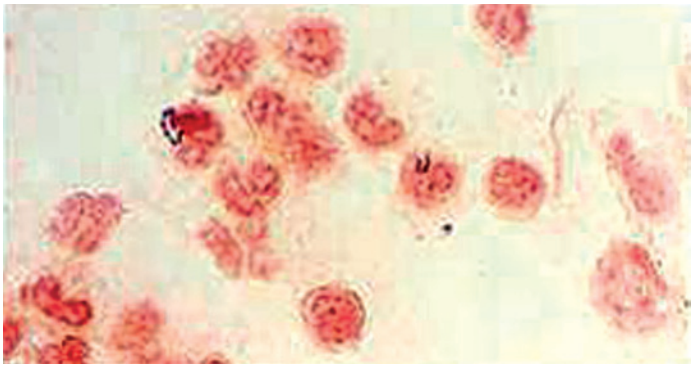


Figure 58-8 **Gram stain of a cerebrospinal fluid sample that grew *Listeria monocytogenes*.** The short bacilli are seen inside white blood cells.

Listeria

Characteristics

Listeria spp. are nonbranching, non–spore-forming gram-positive rods. *Listeria monocytogenes* (Fig. 58-8) is the only species of *Listeria* that is pathogenic for humans, and *L. ivanovii* is the only species of the other five *Listeria* spp. that is pathogenic for animals. Optimal growth of *L. monocytogenes* is observed between 30° C and 37° C; however, growth may occur as low as 4° C. Colonies are small after 24 hours and exhibit a narrow zone of β-hemolysis on blood agar. A characteristic tumbling motility of saline suspensions of the colonies occurs at room temperature but rarely at 35° C. This same temperature-dependent motility is also noted in semisolid media, in which growth appears as an umbrella shape at the top of the medium (aerobic conditions), preferentially at lower temperatures.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

L. monocytogenes is found in soil, dust, water, silage, sewage, and raw unpasteurized milk and in asymptomatic human and animal carriers. Transmission of the organism by foods such as coleslaw, pasteurized milk, soft cheeses, and, more recently, cantaloupe has resulted in several major epidemics in North America and Europe (MacDonald et al, 2005; Cartwright et al, 2013; McCollum et al, 2013). According to data from microbiological surveys of food, *L. monocytogenes* has been detected in 2% to 3% of dairy products, 20% of soft cheeses and processed meats, 30% of certain vegetables (cabbages, radishes), and up to 50% of raw meat and poultry (Wellinghausen, 2011; Simmons et al, 2014). About 1% to 10% of humans are fecal carriers.

Listeriosis is mainly a disease of industrialized countries, occurring sporadically or in epidemics. The primary mode of transmission is contaminated food products, although occasional non–food-related outbreaks have occurred in health care settings, primarily in nurseries, as the result of cross-infection; contaminated mineral oil for bathing was implicated in one such outbreak (Schuchat et al, 1991). A meta-analysis of over 11,700 literature references pertaining to cases of listeriosis globally resulted in 23,150 illnesses and 5463 deaths in 2010. The proportion of perinatal cases was 20.7% (de Noordhout et al, 2014). The incidence rate of listeriosis in the United States was 0.27 cases per 100,000 between 2004 and 2009 and 0.29 per 100,000 from 2009 to 2011; in adults aged over 65 years, the incidence increased 1.3 cases per 100,000 inhabitants (Hernandez-Milian & Payeras-Cifre, 2014).

Clinical manifestations of listeriosis differ among pregnant women, neonates, and immunocompromised individuals, which constitute the high-risk groups. Listeriosis during pregnancy, most common in the third trimester, presents as a flu-like illness. Bacteremia occurs concomitantly, during which time the uterine contents are infected. Progression to amnionitis may induce premature labor or septic abortion in 3 to 7 days. Infection in the mother is self-limited because the source of infection is removed with delivery of the infected fetus and uterine contents. Neonatal listeriosis may have an early or late onset. Early-onset disease, manifested at birth or a few days thereafter, results from in utero infection. Infants present with temperature instability, hemodynamic compromise, and respiratory distress; widely disseminated granulomas, particularly involving the placenta, posterior pharynx, and skin, are characteristic of the illness but are not always present. Late-onset disease, affecting full-term infants of mothers with uncomplicated pregnancies, is assumed to be acquired postpartum, but in most cases the source is unknown. Clinical manifestations of meningitis become apparent several days to weeks after birth.

Nonperinatal listeriosis usually occurs in immunosuppressed individuals, but in about one-third of cases, no risk factor is identified. Tropism for *L. monocytogenes* for the central nervous system (CNS) is manifested predominantly as meningitis; other forms of CNS listeriosis include cerebritis and brainstem and spinal cord abscesses. Severe disease with high mortality rates (20% to 50%) and neurologic sequelae among survivors are common. Primary bacteremia or focal infections outside the CNS are uncommon. Primary cutaneous listeriosis has occurred occupationally in veterinarians and abattoir workers after exposure to infected animal tissues. Endocarditis, osteomyelitis, arthritis, endophthalmitis, and other focal infections have been reported rarely. Febrile gastrointestinal disease due to *L. monocytogenes* has been reported in nonimmunocompromised patients; implicated foods include chocolate milk, rice salad, and delicatessen meats and cheeses (Wellinghausen, 2011; Hernandez-Milian & Payeras-Cifre, 2014). Immunocompromised patients, such as those with leukemias or bone marrow transplants and patients on immunosuppressive therapies, are cautioned against eating uncooked dairy meats for fear of infection with this organism.

The pathogenesis of listeriosis infection has been well elaborated in recent years. Host susceptibility, gastric acidity, inoculum size, and virulence properties of the organism, along with specific food products, are the most common factors that determine progression from infection to disease and the severity of that disease in the infected individual. *L. monocytogenes* can penetrate the epithelial cells of the gastrointestinal tract and grow within hepatic and splenic macrophages; from there, the organism can spread to the CNS or the pregnant uterus. Virulence factors such as internalin and E-cadherin, a placental receptor, interact to result in infection in the pregnant female/fetus. Immunity to listeriosis relies on T cell–mediated activation of macrophages by lymphokines (Wellinghausen, 2011; Hernandez-Milian & Payeras-Cifre, 2014).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Colonies are small and grayish-blue, growing in 24 to 48 hrs, and are surrounded by a narrow zone of β-hemolysis on blood agar. A positive catalase reaction differentiates *L. monocytogenes* from similarly appearing group B streptococci. Organisms are motile at room temperature and produce acid from glucose, trehalose, and salicin and hydrolyze esculin. Other biochemical characteristics of *L. monocytogenes* and differences between *Listeria* and *Erysipelothrix* are listed in Table 58-6. Successful use of Maldi-Tof for the identification of *L. monocytogenes* has been reported (Farfour et al, 2012).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

L. monocytogenes is usually susceptible to penicillin, ampicillin, erythromycin, chloramphenicol, tetracycline, and gentamicin. Isolates usually are only moderately susceptible to the quinolones. Cephalosporins are ineffective against *Listeria* spp.; isolates should not be tested against cephalosporins because they are ineffective in vivo regardless of the in vitro result. Methods of performing susceptibility tests for *Listeria* and interpretive criteria can be found in CLSI document M45-A (CLSI, 2010). Resistance to chloramphenicol, macrolides, and tetracyclines has been found in several clinical isolates (Wellinghausen, 2011; Hernandez-Milian & Payeras-Cifre, 2014). Ampicillin, alone or in combination with an aminoglycoside, has been used successfully in the treatment of infections caused by *L. monocytogenes*. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole may be used as alternative therapy in penicillin-allergic patients. Newer gram-positive antibiotics such as daptomycin, linezolid, and tigecycline appear susceptible in vitro, but limited clinical data document their in vivo effectiveness.

TABLE 58-6
Differential Characteristics of *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*

Test	*L. monocytogenes*	*E. rhusiopathiae*
β-Hemolysis	+	–
Growth at 4° C	+	–
Catalase	+	–
Motility	+	–
Esculin hydrolysis	+	–
Gluconate utilization	+	–
Voges-Proskauer	+	–
H_2S in triple sugar iron agar	–	+

+, Positive; –, negative.

Erysipelothrix

Characteristics

Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae is a catalase-negative, non–spore-forming, nonmotile, facultatively anaerobic gram-positive bacillus that has a worldwide distribution. Microscopically, they appear as short rods with rounded ends, occurring singly, in short chains, or in nonbranching filaments. Two species have been identified: *E. rhusiopathiae* and *E. tonsillarum*. A third species, *E. inipinata*, has been proposed recently. *E. rhusiopathiae* is a recognized pathogen in humans, occasionally causing erysipeloid, a localized cutaneous infection of hands and fingers, obtained after exposure to animals or animal products. *E. tonsillarum* has not been isolated from human specimens (Wellinghausen, 2011).

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

E. rhusiopathiae is usually transmitted to humans from animals by means of skin wounds produced by contaminated objects or in contact with blood, flesh, viscera, or feces of infected animals. *E. rhusiopathiae* is widespread in nature in wild and domestic animals, birds, fish, and decaying organic matter and causes infection in swine, sheep, rabbits, cattle, birds, and fowl. At risk of infection with this organism are butchers, abattoir workers, fishermen, fish handlers, poultry processors, and veterinarians. The most common form of erysipeloid is a local cutaneous infection manifested by pain, swelling, and a cutaneous eruption characterized by a slowly progressive, slightly elevated, violaceous zone around the site of inoculation. The swelling and erythema migrate peripherally, and the lesion involutes without desquamation. Systemic disease is rare, but numerous case reports describe septicemia and endocarditis. Also rarely reported have been cases of arthritis and brain abscess. Virulence factors include a hyaluronidase, a neuraminidase, and a heat-labile capsule (Wang et al, 2010).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Biopsy and tissue aspirates from erysipeloid lesions are the best specimens for culture. The organisms are located deep in the subcutaneous layer of the leading edge of the lesion; therefore, swabs of the surface of the skin are not useful. The organism will grow on blood or chocolate blood agar, but may require up to 7 days for growth. Conventional blood culture media are suitable for its isolation from blood. They are considered nonhemolytic, although greenish discoloration of the media beneath the colonies is often observed after 2 days of incubation.

E. rhusiopathiae is oxidase and catalase negative. Characteristically, it produces hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) in triple-sugar iron agar (TSIA) and ferments glucose and lactose. It is nonmotile, does not reduce nitrates to nitrites, and is negative for urease, gelatin, and esculin hydrolysis. A trait highly characteristic of *E. rhusiopathiae* is the "pipe cleaner" pattern of growth in gelatin stab cultures incubated at 22°C. This organism can be readily distinguished from *Listeria* spp. (see Table 58-6).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Erysipelothrix is susceptible to the penicillins, the cephalosporins, imipenem, erythromycin, clindamycin, chloramphenicol, the tetracyclines, and the fluoroquinolones but is resistant to sulfonamides, aminoglycosides, and vancomycin. Penicillin is the treatment of choice for localized and systemic infection (Wellinghausen, 2011). Methods used for performing susceptibility tests for *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* and interpretive criteria can be found in CLSI document M45-M2 (CLSI, 2010).

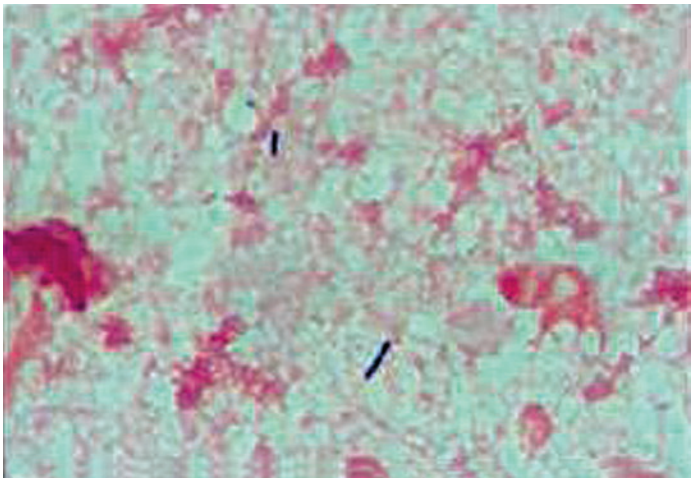


Figure 58-9 Gram stain of *Bacillus cereus* in pleural fluid.

Prevention

Prevention of human disease is recommended by control of animal disease through sound husbandry, herd management, good sanitation, and immunization procedures (Wang et al, 2010).

Bacillus

Characteristics

Members of this genus are strictly aerobic or facultatively anaerobic, rod-shaped, spore-forming, gram-positive, and catalase-positive organisms. Figure 58-9 shows a Gram stain of a *Bacillus* sp. seen in pleural fluid. With the notable exception of *Bacillus anthracis*, they are usually motile by means of lateral or peritrichous flagella. Some strains stain gram-negatively and, because of their variable oxidase reactions, can be confused with gram-negative bacilli. The most reliable diagnostic characteristic of the genus is spore formation, which occurs optimally and on a variety of media under aerobic conditions at 25° to 30°C. In Gram-stained smears, endospores are detectable by the presence of unstained defects or holes within the cell. The spores themselves can be stained by any of several methods.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Of the numerous species of *Bacillus*, *B. anthracis* is the only one that is uniformly and highly pathogenic. Great care must be exercised when handling material suspected of harboring this species. Work should be performed in biological safety cabinets by gloved, gowned, masked, and immunized personnel; work surfaces must be disinfected with 5% hypochlorite or 5% phenol; and all supplies, materials, and equipment must be decontaminated. Because *B. anthracis* spores have been used as a means of bioterrorism, cultures containing suspect *B. anthracis* should be handled only by reference or public health laboratories.

Three forms of anthrax are recognized: cutaneous, inhalation, and intestinal. In its cutaneous form, anthrax produces a small, red, macular lesion that progresses to a vesicle and finally to necrosis with formation of a characteristic black eschar. Regional lymphadenopathy and septicemia may occur. Mortality in untreated cases with this form of disease is approximately 20%. Inhalation of anthrax spores can lead to acute bronchopneumonia, mediastinitis, and septicemia ("woolsorter's disease"). The mortality in recognized cases of this form of disease is nearly 100%. Intestinal anthrax follows the ingestion of contaminated food and is manifested by nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. In some cases, gastrointestinal bleeding is followed by prostration, shock, and death. Septicemia can occur in all three forms of anthrax and may lead to a fatal, purulent meningitis. More recently, a fourth type of anthrax, injectional anthrax, has been recognized in heroin addicts, resulting in severe soft tissue infections with an increased risk of shock and higher level of mortality than is associated with cutaneous infections (Sweeney et al, 2011).

A major factor in the organism's pathogenic capabilities is its glutamyl polypeptide capsule, which inhibits phagocytosis; anticapsular antibodies do not protect against the disease. A complex toxin with three components (edema factor, protective antigen, and lethal factor) is responsible for the signs and symptoms of anthrax. The cell wall peptidoglycan is believed to produce a robust intravascular inflammatory response that can lead to hemodynamic and organ dysfunction, resulting in shock (Logan, 2011; Sweeney et al, 2011).

Humans become infected with anthrax by contact with and inhalation or ingestion of infected animals, their carcasses, or their by-products. Cattle, sheep, horses, and goats are the animals most frequently infected and provide a ready source of vegetative organisms that sporulate and perpetuate the environmental contamination.

Although usually saprophytic, other species of *Bacillus* can cause disease. *Bacillus cereus* has been associated with ear infection, pneumonia, post-traumatic ocular wound infection, septicemia, endocarditis, and meningitis. Patients with pneumonia and septicemia are often immunosuppressed. Bacteremia is frequently associated with intravenous drug use and with contaminated intravascular devices (Stevens et al, 2012).

Two forms of gastroenteritis are associated with *Bacillus* species. Food poisoning caused by *Bacillus* may occur within 1 to 6 hours following ingestion of food contaminated by *B. cereus* that has produced a preformed heat-stable toxin. Major manifestations of *Bacillus* food poisoning include nausea, vomiting, cramps, and occasionally diarrhea, but no fever. Typically, this form of *Bacillus* gastroenteritis results from the bulk preparation of foods that are not reheated before they are served. *B. cereus* type 1 grows particularly well in fried rice and is more heat resistant than other types, so this form of gastroenteritis is frequently seen in association with consumption of cooked rice in Chinese restaurants. The second form of gastroenteritis caused by *Bacillus* spp. results from contamination of poultry and vegetable dishes and is characterized by the onset of cramps and diarrhea 8 to 16 hours following ingestion of contaminated food. In this instance, the major manifestations of *B. cereus* infection are caused by the production of a heat-labile enterotoxin. From 1998 to 2008, 1229 food-borne outbreaks caused by *B. cereus*, (rice dishes were implicated in 50% of the cases), *Clostridium perfringens*, and *Staphylococcus aureus* were reported in the United States. In 2008, there were 17 to 18 suspected outbreaks of gastroenteritis associated with *B. cereus* as compared to over 40 outbreaks due to *S. aureus* and 10 or 11 outbreaks due to *C. perfringens* (Bennett et al, 2013).

The genus *Bacillus* contains more than 100 species; other than *B. anthracis* and *B. cereus*, common species include *B. subtilis*, *B. licheniformis*, *B. megaterium*, *B. pumilus*, and *B. thuringiensis*. Many species have been renamed, however, and more than 25 new genera of gram-positive spore-producing aerobic bacilli have been named. One of those genera, *Paenibacillus*, contains species that have been associated with clinical disease, including meningitis and endophthalmitis. Species of *Paenibacillus* include *P. alvei*, *P. polymyxa*, *P. popilliae*, *P. sanguinis*, *P. massiliensis*, *P. timonensis*, and *P. thiaminolyticus* (Anikpeh et al, 2010; Logan, 2011). *P. macerans* has been found in contaminated blood culture bottles in a neonatal intensive care unit, and *P. pasadenensis* has been isolated in spacecraft facilities and also as a cause of mediastinitis following heart surgery (Noskin et al, 2001; Anikpeh et al, 2010).

Laboratory Diagnosis

In cases of suspected cutaneous anthrax, vesicle fluid and material under the edge of the eschar should be collected with a swab for smear and culture. For suspected inhalation anthrax, sputum should be collected for smear and culture. Cultures of stool should be considered in the intestinal form. Smears and cultures consisting of CSF should be requested in suspected meningitis. In the septicemic stage, blood cultures should be performed.

Finding large, boxcar-shaped gram-positive cells in smears of any of these specimens should raise suspicion for the diagnosis. Fluorescent microscopy, available in some state health laboratories and at the CDC, can provide a rapid presumptive diagnosis. As mentioned earlier, because of the use of *B. anthracis* in terrorist attacks, sentinel laboratories (level A) should send any suspicious isolates of this organism to their state health laboratory or the CDC.

Species of *Bacillus* grow well on sheep blood agar. Colonies of *B. anthracis* are usually flat, with an irregular margin ("Medusa head"), appear off-white with a ground glass surface, and are usually nonhemolytic. Figure 58-10 demonstrates the colonial morphology of *B. anthracis* on blood agar. When touched with an inoculating loop, the colonies are tenacious and will stand up like beaten egg white. The Medusa head colony may be seen with *B. cereus* and certain other *Bacillus* species. Anthrax bacilli are nonmotile in a hanging drop test or in semisolid media, whereas most other species of *Bacillus* are motile. Motility by the hanging drop method is a useful differential test between *B. anthracis* and *B. cereus* but must be carried out with a fresh broth culture of the organism. Additional characteristics and biochemical reactions that may be used to identify isolates to the species level are summarized by Logan (2011). A commercial system has been evaluated recently for identification of aerobic endospore-formers; 93% of the strains were correctly identified to species level in the genera

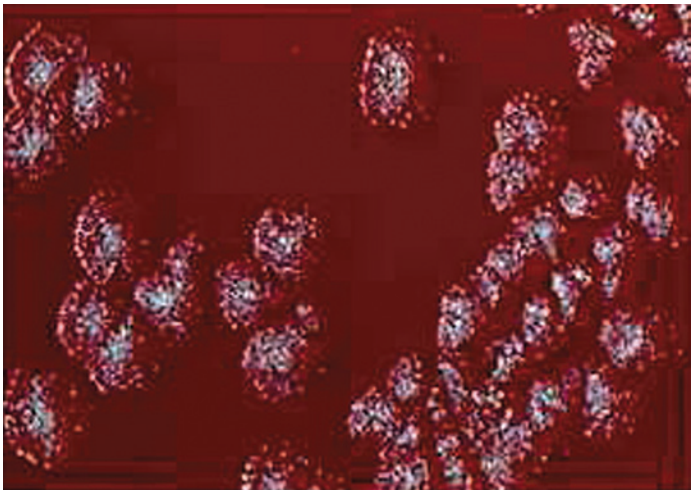


Figure 58-10 Colonies of *Bacillus anthracis* on blood agar. Note the irregular edges of the colonies.

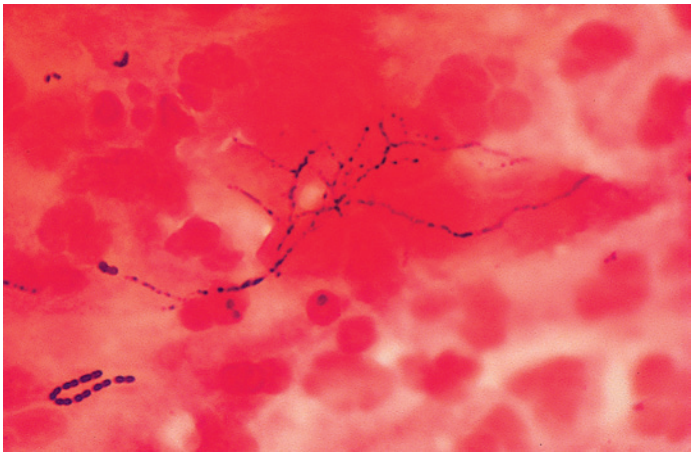


Figure 58-11 Sputum smear stained with Gram stain shows neutrophils, amorphous debris, and filamentous, beaded, branched gram-positive bacilli (oil immersion).

Bacillus, *Paenibacillus*, *Aneurinibacillus*, *Brevibacillus*, *Geobacillus*, and *Virgibacillus* (Halket et al, 2010). *Bacillus* spp. have been correctly identified using Maldi-Tof (Farfour et al, 2012).

The diagnosis of *B. cereus* gastroenteritis cannot be accurately made by culture of stool because the organisms may be a component of the indigenous gut flora. Diagnosis, therefore, depends on quantitative culture of the suspected contaminated food. The presence of greater than or equal to 10^5 colony-forming units (CFUs)/g in the suspected food constitutes presumptive evidence of *B. cereus* food poisoning (Logan, 2011). This testing is usually not performed in a routine clinical microbiology laboratory.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Although susceptible to a variety of agents, antibiotic therapy of anthrax has centered on the use of fluoroquinolones. These agents are highly active against *B. anthracis*, strains of which are typically susceptible to β-lactam antibiotics. However, many strains of *Bacillus* spp. elaborate β-lactamases in nature, so these agents usually are not considered as first-line drugs of choice until the specific susceptibility of the isolate is known. Most strains of *Bacillus* spp. are inhibited by fluoroquinolones, tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, and chloramphenicol at low concentrations (Logan, 2011), and most are susceptible to vancomycin, but reports have described vancomycin resistance in *B. circulans* and *P. thiaminolyticus*. *Bacillus* strains have been demonstrated to carry genes similar to the *vanA* gene of the enterococci (Patel et al, 2000). Methods of performing susceptibility tests and of interpreting their results can be found in the CLSI document M45-M2 (CLSI, 2010).

Prevention

Prevention of anthrax in humans ideally depends on its control in animals. Prompt diagnosis of sick animals, their isolation and therapy, and cremation of carcasses are indicated when sporadic outbreaks occur. In enzootic areas, vaccination with nonencapsulated spore preparations is used. Occupationally exposed persons should also be immunized. Acute diarrheal disease caused by *B. cereus* may be prevented by proper cooking and refrigeration of foods prepared in bulk to prevent proliferation of vegetative forms of the bacteria and formation of the enterotoxin.

Nocardia

Characteristics. In Gram-stained smears of clinical specimens, *Nocardia* spp. appear as long, thin, beaded, branching gram-positive bacilli (Fig. 58-11). The most distinguishing quality of the nocardiae is their partial acid fastness; cells stain positively with a modified acid-fast (Ziehl-Neelsen or Kinyoun) stain, differentiating them from *Actinomyces*, which may have a similar Gram-stain appearance. Partial acid fastness may be difficult to demonstrate and can be enhanced by growing the organism for about 4 days on Middlebrook 7H10 agar or in litmus milk broth. Most clinical infections have been caused by members of the *Nocardia asteroides* complex, most commonly *Nocardia cyriageorgica*, *Nocardia farcinica*, and *N. nova*, followed by *Nocardia brasiliensis* and rarely *Nocardia otitidis caviarum* (Cloud et al, 2004).

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Nocardiae are found in soil and organic material worldwide and cause disease in many animals and in fish. Human infection is slightly more common in males than in females. It is usually acquired via inhalation of the organism but may occur following trauma and contact with contaminated soil, or the organism may enter the body via the gastrointestinal tract when contaminated material contacts an area of mucosal ulceration.

In the lungs, *Nocardia* spp. are phagocytosed by alveolar macrophages and grow intracellularly, eliciting a mixed inflammatory response (neutrophils, lymphocytes, and macrophages), eventually resulting in abscess or, occasionally, granuloma formation. In vitro studies of the host defenses against *Nocardia* spp. suggest that neutrophils, activated macrophages, and cytotoxic T cells are involved. Although neutrophils do not kill virulent *Nocardia* spp., they inhibit their growth, possibly suppressing the infection until macrophages are fully activated. If the infection is not contained within the lung, organisms spread to other tissues by advancing growth, thus producing empyema, chest wall involvement, and draining sinuses, or by hematogenous dissemination, resulting in abscess formation, especially in the brain; subcutaneous tissues; and kidneys. The primary host factor associated with increased risk of nocardiosis is cellular immune dysfunction, although many persons infected with *Nocardia* spp. have no recognized cellular or humoral immune defect (Budzik et al, 2012; Wilson, 2012).

Pulmonary disease, the most frequent manifestation of nocardiosis, is characterized by fever, anorexia, weight loss, cough, dyspnea, and pleuritic chest pain. Skin and subcutaneous disease may present as pyoderma, cellulitis, single or multiple abscesses, lymphocutaneous disease resembling sporotrichosis, or nodules. In Central and South America, primary infections of the skin with *N. brasiliensis* may produce an actinomycetoma (a localized indurated granulomatous mass with sinus tracts draining pus and "sulfur" granules), typically on the lower extremities. Disseminated disease is usually caused by members of the *N. asteroides* complex. It originates in the lung in most cases and typically is manifested as single or multiple abscesses involving the CNS (Anagnostou et al, 2014). The skin is the second most common site of dissemination, followed by kidney, liver, and lymph nodes (Conville & Witebsky, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Nocardia spp. grow aerobically on most nonselective media such as sheep blood and chocolate agars, potato dextrose agar, Sabouraud's dextrose agar, and Löwenstein-Jensen or Middlebrook media and in 7H9 broth used for mycobacterial culture. These organisms will grow on buffered charcoal-yeast extract (BCYE) used for the isolation of *Legionella* spp. as well. It is important to note that *Nocardia* spp. may not always survive the decontamination procedures used for recovery of mycobacteria. Incubation in the presence of 10% CO_2 enhances growth. *Nocardia* spp. may grow in 48 hours, but colonies typically appear in 5 to 10 days as waxy, bumpy, or velvety rugose forms, often with yellow to orange pigment, depending on the species. Observing branching filaments that stain only with a modified acid-fast stain distinguishes *Nocardia* spp. from mycobacteria. *Nocardia* spp. are differentiated from most other aerobic actinomycetes by testing resistant to the action of lysozyme (*Nocardia* spp. are resistant; *Streptomyces* spp.,

TABLE 58-7
Differentiation of *Nocardia* spp. Based on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Pattern*

	Amik	Amox/Clav	Cefotax	Ceftriax	Ciproflox	Clari	Gent	Imi	Kana	Linez	Mino	Sulfa	Tobra	Amp	Eryth	Carb
Nocardia cyracigeorgica (*N. asteroides* drug pattern VI)/*N. asteroides* VII	S	R	S	S	R	R		S	S	S	S/I	S		R	R	
Nocardia farcinica (drug pattern V)	S	S	R	R	S	R	R	S	R	S	S/I	R/S	R	R	R	
Nocardia nova complex† (drug pattern III)	S	R	S	S	R	S		S		S	S/I	S		S	S	R
Nocardia abscessus (drug pattern 1)	S	S	S	S	R	R		R/S		S	S/I	S		S	R	R
Nocardia brasiliensis	S	S	S/R	S/R	R	R	S	R	R	S	S/I	S	S	R	R	S
Nocardia pseudobrasiliensis	S	S	S/R	S/R	S	S	S	R	R	S	R	S	S	R		S
Nocardia otitidiscaviarum (often R to all β-lactams)	S	R	R	R	S		S	R	S‡	S	S/I	S		R		R
Nocardia transvalensis complex (drug pattern IV)	R	S	S	S	S	R	R	S	R	S	S/I	S	R	R	R	
Nocardia brevicatana/paucivorans	S			S	S		R	S	S	S	S/I	S	S	S		S

Reproduced with permission of Dr. Richard Wallace and Ms. Barbara Brown-Elliott.
Amik, Amikacin; *Amox/clav,* amoxicillin/clavulanate; *Amp,* ampicillin; *Carb,* carbenicillin; *Cefotax,* cefotaxime; *Ceftriax,* ceftriaxone; *Ciproflox,* ciprofloxacin; *Clari,* clarithromycin; *Eryth,* erythromycin; *Gent,* gentamicin; *I,* intermediate; *Imi,* imipenem; *Kana,* kanamycin; *Linez,* linezolid; *Mino,* minocycline; *R,* resistant; *S,* susceptible; *Sulfa,* sulfamethoxazole; *Tobra,* tobramycin.
*Table based on majority of isolates tested.
†Includes *N. nova/veterana/africana.*
‡Kanamycin zone ≥ amikacin zone.

Rhodococcus spp., *Gordona* spp., and *Actinomadura* spp. are susceptible) and examining their morphology on tap water agar. For example, the latter can help in differentiating the branching *Nocardia* from nonbranching *Rhodococcus* spp. Because many new species of *Nocardia* have been recognized over the past several years, the use of biochemical tests (e.g., casein, hypoxanthine, tyrosine, xanthine) is not sufficient for identification. Molecular tests (e.g., 16S rDNA sequencing, PCR-restriction enzyme pattern analysis [PRA]) of MALDI-TOF (Farfour et al, 2012) are required for accurate species identification (Cloud et al, 2004; Patel et al, 2004). Identification to the species level is important because of the variability in antibiotic susceptibility patterns noted among species (Table 58-7) (Brown-Elliott et al, 2006; Schlaberg et al, 2014).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Sulfonamides (alone or in combination with trimethoprim—e.g., trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole) are usually the antimicrobial agents of choice; however, optimal antimicrobial therapy depends on the species of *Nocardia* present, the susceptibility pattern of the individual strain, and the type of infection. Other potential antimicrobial agents include amikacin, clarithromycin, imipenem, or a quinolone, depending on the species isolated. The CLSI has information about methods used for susceptibility testing and interpretation of results for *Nocardia* and other aerobic actinomycetes (CLSI, 2011).

Other Aerobic Actinomycetes

Other genera of actinomycetes that are medically relevant to humans include *Rhodococcus*, *Gordona*, *Tsukamurella*, *Actinomadura*, and *Streptomyces*. One other member, *Tropheryma whippelii*, is nonculturable and is the putative agent of Whipple's disease.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Members of this group of organisms are ubiquitous in the environment and have been isolated from soil, fresh water, marine water, and organic matter. *Rhodococcus equi* is the most common *Rhodococcus* sp. pathogenic to humans. It is an opportunistic pathogen in severely immunocompromised hosts, causing a slowly progressive granulomatous pneumonia. It may be isolated from the blood of infected patients. The organism is likely acquired via the respiratory route, possibly as a result of exposure to infected animals. The organism's ability to persist in and ultimately destroy macrophages probably accounts for its ability to cause disease (Weinstock & Brown, 2002). Infections caused by *Gordona* spp. and *Tsukamurella* spp. are increasingly being reported (Savini et al, 2012; Ramanan et al, 2013). *Tsukamurella* spp. appear to be pathogenic only when certain clinical conditions are present (e.g., immunosuppression, presence of foreign body, active chronic infection such as tuberculosis) (Woo et al, 2003). *Actinomadura* spp. are a frequent cause of actinomycotic mycetomas, most of which are seen in tropical and subtropical countries, where walking barefoot increases the chance of exposure through repeated puncture wounds. *Streptomyces* spp. have traditionally been considered of little medical significance; however, one species, *Streptomyces somaliensis*, has been identified as an etiologic agent of actinomycotic mycetoma. Other *Streptomyces* spp. have only occasionally been reported to be of medical importance (Mossad et al, 1995).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Aerobic actinomycetes are slow growing and may require 2 to 3 weeks of incubation. These microorganisms grow on most of the nonselective media used to isolate bacteria, mycobacteria, and fungi. Species of *Rhodococcus* grow as coccobacilli in a zigzag fashion. Rudimentary branched filaments have been observed from liquid media. Colonies may be rough, smooth, or mucoid and have pigments ranging from buff to coral to orange to deep rose after several days of incubation. *R. equi* is usually pale pink, pale yellow, or coral and may appear slimy. *Gordona* spp. range from smooth, mucoid colonies that are adherent to the media to dry, raised colonies. The pigment produced may be beige to salmon-colored. *Tsukamurella* spp. are slightly acid fast by the modified Kinyoun. They appear as long rods that fragment into three parts. No aerial hyphae are produced. The colonies are circular with entire or rhizoid edges. They may be dry or creamy, with a white to orange pigment. Rough colonies may be produced after 7 days of incubation. Species of *Actinomadura* form waxy, cerebriform, tough, membranous white, yellow, pink, or red colonies. Colonies of *Streptomyces* are dry to chalky, heaped or folded, gray-white to yellow, and have the odor of a musty basement. A wide variety of pigments are produced that color the substrate and hyphae. Some species do not

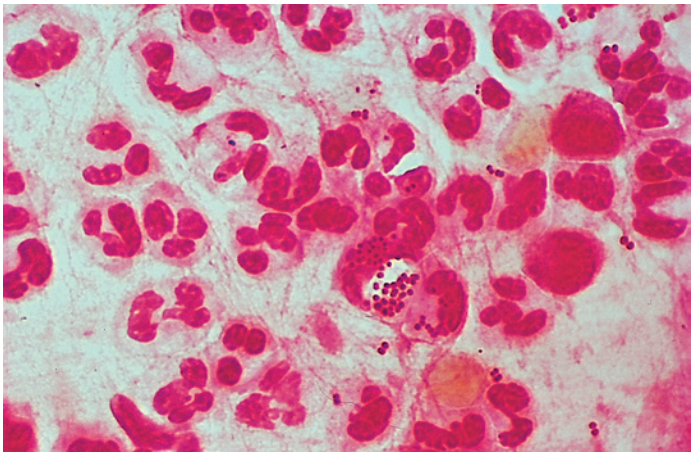


Figure 58-12 Sputum smear stained with Gram stain shows many neutrophils and intracellular gram-negative diplococci, suggestive of *Neisseria meningitidis* infection (oil immersion).

produce aerial hyphae. As with the *Nocardia* spp., complete identification of these members of the aerobic actinomycetes often requires molecular sequencing methods (Conville et al, 2011).

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA—COCCI

Neisseria

Characteristics

This genus is composed of species that are nonmotile and catalase and oxidase positive; these aerobic, gram-negative cocci are often arranged in pairs, with flattened adjacent surfaces, giving the appearance of kidney beans or coffee beans (Fig. 58-12). The organisms are somewhat fastidious, in some instances requiring the addition of blood, serum, cholesterol, or oleic acid to the medium to counteract growth inhibitors, such as fatty acids. *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* generally require prompt incubation in CO_2 for growth; however, this is strain dependent, varies with the phase of the organism's growth curve, and is often lost in subcultures. *N. meningitidis* and most *N. gonorrhoeae* are not inhibited by the presence of vancomycin or lincomycin, colistin, and nystatin—a characteristic that is particularly useful in their selective isolation from specimens contaminated by other bacteria. Rarely, isolates of *N. gonorrhoeae* (especially AUH strains, which require arginine, uracil, and hypoxanthine) are susceptible to vancomycin (Elias et al, 2011).

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Although opportunistic infections caused by species of *Neisseria* other than *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* have occasionally been reported in compromised hosts, these species are generally nonpathogenic. *N. meningitidis* may colonize the mucous membranes of the upper respiratory tract—an event that is usually followed in 7 to 10 days by the formation of bactericidal and hemagglutinating antibodies, which may not eliminate the carrier stage but convey group-specific immunity. In a few cases, disease results shortly after colonization, most frequently in the form of meningococcemia and meningitis. The organism also has a tendency to invade serous membranes and joint tissues, with the development of pleuritis, pericarditis, and arthritis. Carriage of *N. meningitidis* in the nasopharynx occurs in 5% to 15% of healthy individuals, and this rate may be higher in confined groups such as military recruits. A direct correlation between carrier rates and incidence of disease has not been established, with the possible exception of members of large households or households with an infant or childhood case during epidemics of disease. *N. meningitidis* has also been isolated from genital sources, where its clinical significance is uncertain. When cultured from these sources, bacteria may be misidentified as *N. gonorrhoeae* unless appropriate tests for distinguishing these species are performed.

The principal virulence factor of *N. meningitidis* is a lipopolysaccharide–endotoxin complex, which in experimental animals activates the clotting cascade, depositing fibrin in small vessels, producing hemorrhage in the adrenals and other organs, altering peripheral vascular resistance, and leading to shock and death.

The pathogenesis and clinical manifestations of *N. gonorrhoeae* infections differ somewhat from those of *N. meningitidis*. Pathogenic types of *N. gonorrhoeae* adhere by means of pili, which are not produced by nonpathogenic types, to various human cells. These antigenically heterogeneous pili, which represent one of the principal virulence factors of *N. gonorrhoeae*, may inhibit phagocytosis and stimulate strain-specific antibody formation. Other possible virulence factors of *N. gonorrhoeae* are less clearly defined. Both *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* produce an IgA protease, which may be important in their pathogenesis because IgA is the antibody class that predominates in secretions on mucous membranes (Elias et al, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

The single most important element in the laboratory diagnosis of infection caused by *N. meningitidis* or *N. gonorrhoeae* is the specimen, including proper selection, collection, and transport to the laboratory (see Chapter 64). The pathogenic species are sensitive to drying and extremes of temperature, and material must be cultured promptly to enhance recovery. They are mesophilic and grow poorly, if at all, at room temperature. Many require prompt incubation in CO_2 (2% to 8%) for primary isolation. Media containing chocolatized blood are commonly used for cultures and should contain antibiotics (i.e., vancomycin or lincomycin, as well as colistin, nystatin or anisomycin, and trimethoprim) if the specimen is prone to be contaminated by indigenous flora. Vancomycin-susceptible gonococci will grow on media containing lincomycin; however, because of the synergistic interaction of lincomycin and trimethoprim, the latter must be omitted from media containing lincomycin. Direct inoculation of specimens at the bedside followed by prompt incubation at 35°C in CO_2 is optimal. This can be accomplished in several ways: placing the medium into a candle jar; placing the medium in a sealed bag containing a citric acid bicarbonate tablet; or using a medium contained within a bottle having a CO_2 atmosphere. If any of these culture systems must be mailed to a reference laboratory for processing, they must first be incubated overnight to ensure growth of the organisms.

An isolate from a urogenital specimen showing the appropriate colony appearance on a selective medium presumptively may be called *N. gonorrhoeae* based on results of Gram stain and oxidase and catalase tests. Gram-stained smears prepared from colonies of *N. gonorrhoeae* should show typical gram-negative diplococci, but organisms may occur in tetrads, especially from young cultures. All species of *Neisseria* are oxidase positive, and all species except *N. elongata* are catalase positive. Because *Neisseria* other than *N. gonorrhoeae* may be recovered from urogenital sites, confirmatory testing is strongly recommended and is required for all isolates from extragenital sites, and when sexual abuse is suspected (preferably by more than one method).

Confirmation of *N. gonorrhoeae* and identification of the other *Neisseria* spp. are based on growth and biochemical characteristics (Table 58-8) (Elias et al, 2011). The standard method of identification consists of detection of acid production from carbohydrates in a cystine trypticase acid (CTA) base medium and other conventional biochemical tests. However, given the drawbacks of conventional methods, more rapid identification tests are used in most clinical laboratories. Tests for direct detection of *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* in clinical specimens are also available. Typing of isolates of *N. gonorrhoeae* and *N. meningitidis* is done primarily for epidemiologic studies.

With the standard method of identification, acid production from glucose, maltose, lactose, sucrose, and fructose in a CTA base medium and a carbohydrate-free control are tested. Tubes are inoculated, incubated at 35° to 37°C in ambient air, and examined at 24-hour intervals until reactions are interpretable, or for 72 hours. Expected results for the species of *Neisseria* are shown in Table 58-8. Occasionally, however, an isolate of *N. meningitidis* yields aberrant carbohydrate reactions: glucose-negative, maltose-negative, or asaccharolytic. If *N. meningitidis* is strongly suspected in these cases, identification can be confirmed by slide agglutination, using pooled polyvalent grouping antisera or sera specific for individual serogroups. In addition to conventional carbohydrate degradation tests, reduction of nitrates and nitrites and production of DNase should be evaluated. The latter is especially useful for identification of *Moraxella catarrhalis*, which is DNase positive (*Neisseria* spp. are DNase negative). Drawbacks to conventional tests are the requirement for a heavy inoculum, the need to work with pure cultures, long turnaround time, and failure of some fastidious strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* to grow.

Several commercial systems detect acid production from carbohydrates, usually in 1 to 4 hours (Elias et al, 2011). The inoculum must be prepared from a pure culture of the isolate, so identification is generally available 24 hours after isolation. Acid reactions of some *N. gonorrhoeae* and, to a lesser extent, *N. meningitidis* may be difficult to interpret or may be aberrant with some kits, and strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* that are weak

TABLE 58-8
Differentiation of Species of *Neisseria* and *Moraxella catarrhalis*

	N. gonorrhoeae	*N. meningitidis*	*N. cinerea*	*N. lactamica*	*N. sicca*	*N. subflava*	*N. flavescens*	*N. mucosa*	*M. catarrhalis*
Growth									
Thayer-Martin medium	+*	+	–	+	–	–	+	–	†
Nutrient agar, 25° C	–	–	–	–	+	+	–	+	+
Oxidase	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
β-Galactosidase	–	–	–	+	–	–	–	–	–
Reduction of nitrate	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	+	+
DNase	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	+
Production of Acid from									
Glucose	+	+	–‡	+	+	+	–	+	–
Maltose	–	+	–	+	+	+	–	+	–
Lactose	–	–	–	+	–	–	–	–	–
Sucrose	–	–	–	–	+	D§	–	+	–
Fructose	–	–	–	–	+	–	–	–	–

+, ≥90% of strains positive; –, ≥90% of strains negative; *D,* variable; *DNase,* deoxyribonuclease.
*Most vancomycin-susceptible strains will not grow on Thayer-Martin medium.
†Some strains positive and others negative.
‡Weak reaction may occur in rapid carbohydrate utilization tests.
§Biovar. perflava, +; biovar. flava, –.

producers of acid from glucose may appear to be glucose negative. Some strains of *Neisseria cinerea*, which does not typically produce acid from glucose, can appear glucose positive in certain systems.

Enzyme substrate tests provide rapid identification (1 to 4 hours) only of isolates of oxidase-positive, gram-negative diplococci recovered on a selective medium (Elias et al, 2011). They are valuable for differentiating maltose-negative strains of *N. meningitidis* from *N. gonorrhoeae*, but color changes may be subtle and if misinterpreted could cause isolates of *N. meningitidis* and other *Neisseria* spp. to be incorrectly called *N. gonorrhoeae*. Moreover, strains of *N. cinerea* and *Kingella denitrificans* that grow on gonococcus-selective media could be misidentified as *N. gonorrhoeae* if not confirmed by other procedures. Commercial products that combine enzyme substrate tests with modified conventional tests provide accurate identification of species of *Neisseria* and *Haemophilus*. Immunologic tests for *N. gonorrhoeae*—in particular coagglutination—can be used to confirm the biochemical identification of *N. gonorrhoeae*. Three tests are available for this: the Phadebact Monoclonal GC Test (Boule Diagnostics AB, Huddinge, Sweden), the GonoGen I (New Horizons Diagnostics, Columbia, Md.), and the GonoGen II (New Horizons Diagnostics, Columbia, Md.). Both false-positive and false-negative results have been reported with these reagents A chemiluminescent nucleic acid probe for detection of *N. gonorrhoeae* can be used for culture confirmation (Limberger et al, 1992; Hale et al, 1993). Nucleic acid amplification assays (NAAT) for use on endocervical or urethral swab specimens and urine (see below) are also available and may increase sensitivity when compared with nucleic acid probe and culture techniques, largely because the problem with organism viability is not an issue.

Cultural detection of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* from urogenital sites has been largely replaced by NAATs. Many NAATs are available that simultaneously detect *N. gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia trachomatis* in vaginal, cervical, urethral, and urine samples with greater sensitivity than culture, and for which loss of viability of *N. gonorrhoeae* in particular is an issue. These tests are recommended by the CDC as the preferred test in symptomatic and asymptomatic individuals, although there are also recommendations that culture be available for both *N. gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis* at least in some laboratories in situations of potential antimicrobial resistance and in some sexual assault situations (MMWR, 2014). These molecular techniques are described in other sections of this text.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Despite the occasional recovery of *N. meningitidis* strains with decreased susceptibility to penicillin, penicillin G remains the drug of choice for treatment of meningococcal meningitis (Elias et al, 2011). Decreased susceptibility of *N. meningitidis* to penicillin is thought to be due to decreased binding of penicillin by altered meningococcal cell wall penicillin-binding proteins, PBP-2 and PBP-3. Other species of *Neisseria* have also demonstrated this lowered affinity to penicillin. Other agents that have good activity against *N. meningitidis* include the extended-spectrum cephalosporins and chloramphenicol. Rifampin, minocycline, and the fluoroquinolones may be used for prophylaxis among household contacts. Standardized methods of susceptibility testing and breakpoints in the CLSI documents are now available (CLSI, 2014). The CLSI recommends broth microdilution or agar dilution with cation-supplemented Mueller-Hinton Broth (with 2% to 5% laked horse blood) or Mueller-Hinton Agar (with 5% [vol/vol] sheep blood) if testing is done. Enrichments such as IsoVitaleX (1%) may also be needed. In laboratories where susceptibility testing for *N. meningitidis* is not available, β-lactamase testing can be performed by using the chromogenic cephalosporin test, the cefinase nitrocefin disk test, if lowered susceptibility or clinical failure on penicillin is suspected. If positive, isolates can be shipped to a reference laboratory for further testing.

Because of widespread resistance of *N. gonorrhoeae* to penicillin and tetracycline, current recommendations for treatment include extended-spectrum cephalosporins but no longer include the newer fluoroquinolones. Although no resistance to the cephalosporins is apparent, resistance to the fluoroquinolones has been documented (Fox et al, 1997; MMWR, 2007b). Therefore, susceptibility testing should be performed if symptoms persist after treatment. β-Lactamase production can be detected using a chromogenic cephalosporin. Disk diffusion using GC agar with 1% growth supplement is recommended to determine the susceptibility of *N. gonorrhoeae* to the cephalosporins, quinolones, and spectinomycin. The CLSI document recommends the agar dilution method or a disk diffusion method for testing of *N. gonorrhoeae* (CLSI, 2014). In addition, an E-test can be performed. For some agents, only a susceptible breakpoint is available because no resistant strains have yet been documented. If an isolate with a nonsusceptible result to a third-generation cephalosporin is identified, for example, confirmation tests and referral to a reference laboratory should be strongly considered (CLSI, 2014).

Prevention

A polysaccharide vaccine against *N. meningitidis* serogroups A, C, Y, and W135 is licensed in the United States and is recommended for military personnel for persons living in epidemic areas of developing countries, for individuals with a nonfunctional or absent spleen, and for college students. Two meningococcal conjugate vaccines have been developed for infants as well (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2014), and there now is a separate vaccine against serotype B. Antibiotic prophylaxis should be limited to household contacts and those who have had contact with patients' oral secretions. Rifampin is currently the drug of choice. Laboratory safety is very important when handling specimens and cultures positive for *N. meningitidis*. Borrow and colleagues (2014) wrote an article on the

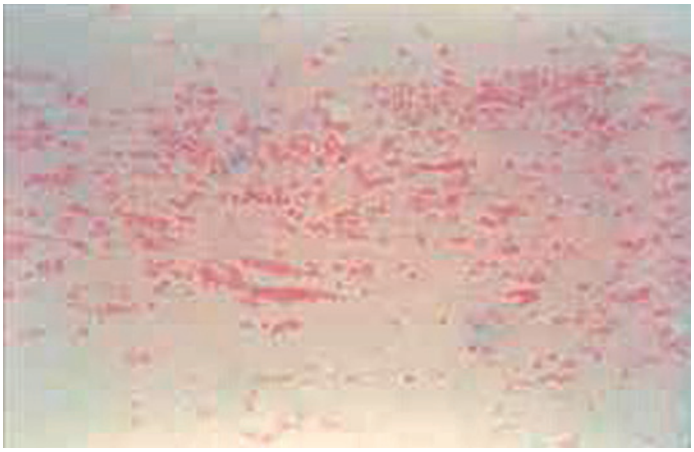


Figure 58-13 Gram stain of *Moraxella catarrhalis* in a sputum specimen. Note the intracellular gram-negative diplococci that resemble *Neisseria* spp.

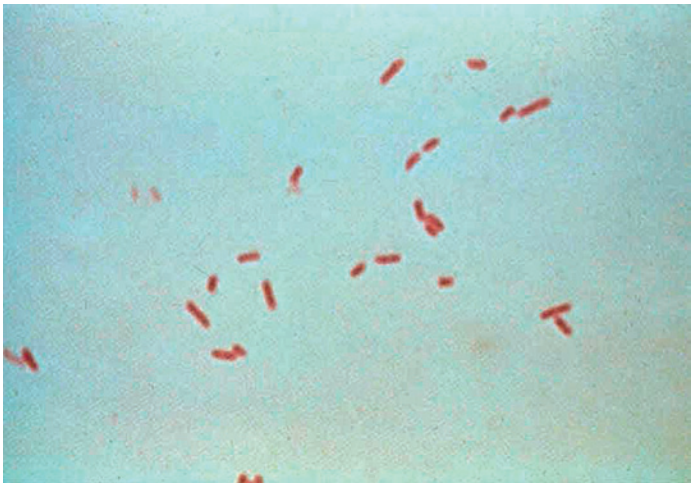


Figure 58-14 Gram stain of urine positive for *Escherichia coli.* The short, plump gram-negative rods are typical of any member of the Enterobacteriaceae.

appropriate precautions for handling specimens and steps to take if accidents do occur.

The use of preexposure antibiotics to prevent gonococcal disease is discouraged because of the potential risks of sensitization and the emergence of resistant strains. The sole exception to this rule is the application of erythromycin ointment to the eyes of newborns to prevent gonococcal (and chlamydial) ophthalmia (U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, 2012).

Moraxella catarrhalis

M. catarrhalis may be carried in the oropharynx of healthy children and adults. It is an encapsulated organism, and extending from its outer membrane are pili that serve as adhesins. The most common infections caused by this organism are bronchitis, otitis, sinusitis, and pneumonia (especially in persons with underlying chronic lung disease) (Murphy & Parameswaran, 2009; Vaneechouette et al, 2011). More recently, molecular mechanisms have been described that demonstrate the virulence factors possessed by strains of *M. catarrhalis* responsible for otitis media (Hassan, 2013). *M. catarrhalis* is an infrequent cause of bacteremia, endocarditis, meningitis, urogenital infection, and ophthalmia neonatorum. Figure 58-13 shows the Gram stain of sputum in which *M. catarrhalis* is seen in large quantities inside and outside the polymorphonuclear leukocytes. *Moraxella catarrhalis* initially was part of the *Neisseria* genera and later was transferred to the *Branhamella* genus for a short time. *M. catarrhalis* is a coccus that morphologically resembles *Neisseria* spp., unlike other members of the genus *Moraxella* (e.g., *Moraxella lacunata*, *Moraxella osloensis*, *Moraxella atlantae*), which appear as rods. *M. catarrhalis* bacteria are oxidase and catalase positive but can be differentiated from *Neisseria* spp. in their ability to grow readily on blood agar, their lack of oxidative metabolism (sugars will be negative), and their production of DNase. Nearly all isolates of *M. catarrhalis* produce β-lactamase, which can be detected using nitrocefin. Although they should be assumed to be resistant to penicillin because of this, these isolates generally remain susceptible to cephalosporins, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and β-lactamase inhibitor combinations (Vaneechouette et al, 2011).

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA—BACILLI

The gram-negative bacilli make up a complex group. They are broken down into Enterobacteriaceae, which are those found normally in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract or that colonize and cause infection there primarily; nonfermentative gram-negative bacilli, which usually are not found as part of the normal flora of humans but rather are environmental bacteria; non-Enterobacteriaceae, which can cause GI infection, such as *Vibrio* or *Campylobacter*; agents of infections with specific epidemiologic characteristics, such as *Legionella* and *Francisella*; other gram-negative bacilli, including *Haemophilus* spp.; and miscellaneous genera. A good overview of how to approach the identification of the aerobic gram-negative rods can be found in Wauters and Vaneechouette (2011).

Enterobacteriaceae

Characteristics

The Enterobacteriaceae are aerobic and facultatively anaerobic, non–spore-forming, nonmotile or peritrichously flagellated, oxidase-negative, gram-negative bacilli that produce acid fermentatively from glucose and reduce nitrates to nitrites. Figure 58-14 shows a Gram stain of *Escherichia coli*, but it could represent any member of the Enterobacteriaceae. Genera included in this group are *Budvicia*, *Buttiauxella*, *Cedecea*, *Citrobacter*, *Edwardsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Escherichia*, *Ewingella*, *Hafnia*, *Klebsiella*, *Kluyvera*, *Leclercia*, *Leminorella*, *Moellerella*, *Morganella*, *Obesumbacterium*, *Pragia*, *Pantoea*, *Photorhabdus*, *Proteus*, *Providencia*, *Rahnella*, *Salmonella*, *Serratia*, *Shigella*, *Tatumella*, *Trabulsiella*, *Xenorhabdus*, *Yersinia*, and *Yokenella*. Only a few of these are discussed here (Nataro et al, 2011).

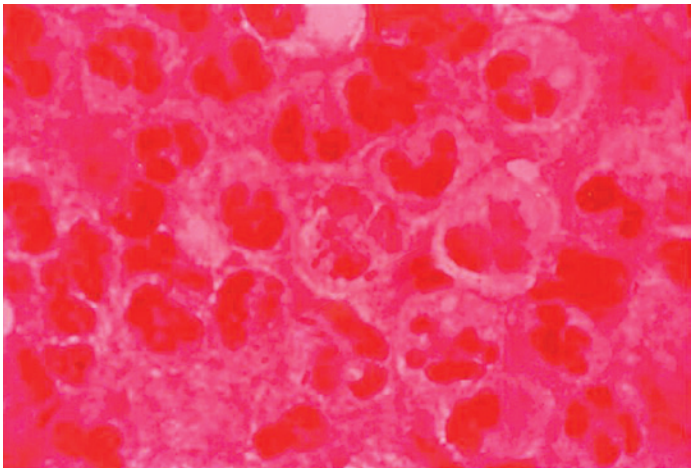


Figure 58-15 Gram stain of a cerebrospinal fluid specimen from a neonate containing gram-negative bacilli that grew *Escherichia coli.*

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Enterobacteriaceae are found on plants, in soil, in water, and in the intestines of humans and animals. They have been associated with many clinical infections, including abscesses, pneumonia, meningitis, septicemia, and urinary tract infections. Those commonly associated with human infection include *E. coli*, *Klebsiella* spp., *Proteus* spp., *Enterobacter* spp., *Salmonella* spp., *Shigella* spp., *Serratia* spp., *Citrobacter* spp., and *Providencia* spp. Figure 58-15 shows a Gram stain of CSF from a newborn child who was culture positive for *E. coli*. In the urinary tract, those frequently isolated are *E. coli*, *Proteus mirabilis*, *Klebsiella pneumonia*, and *K. oxytoca*. Gram-negative pneumonias associated with the Enterobacteriaceae are frequently caused by *K. pneumoniae*. Gram-negative bacteremias related to the Enterobacteriaceae are frequently caused by *E. coli*, *K. pneumoniae*, *Enterobacter* spp., and *P. mirabilis*. Infections acquired in the hospital are likely to be caused by members of antibiotic-resistant genera, such as *Citrobacter*, *Enterobacter*, and *Serratia*. Enterobacteriaceae associated with diarrhea include *Shigella* spp., *Salmonella* spp., *E. coli* (enterohemorrhagic [Shiga toxin producing], enterotoxigenic, enteroinvasive, enteropathogenic, enteroadherent), and

Yersinia spp. Shigellas are rarely isolated from sources other than the GI tract, whereas salmonellas are more likely to be isolated from other sources, such as urine or blood. *Plesiomonas* sp. have recently been added to the Enterobacteriaceae and remain as the only oxidase-positive member of this family. They also can be associated with infections of the GI tract. *Calymmatobacterium granulomatis*, an agent of the sexually transmitted disease donovanosis, has been renamed *Klebsiella granulomatis* and is now part of the Enterobacteriaceae, even though the organism cannot be cultured on bacteriologic media (Abbott, 2011; Lagergård et al, 2011). This topic is discussed later in this chapter.

Endotoxins that are present within the cell walls of the Enterobacteriaceae, as well as other gram-negative bacilli, are responsible for much of the morbidity and mortality resulting from infections associated with these bacteria. Endotoxins consist of lipid and polysaccharide moieties with small quantities of amino acids and are often referred to as lipopolysaccharides. Lipopolysaccharides may elicit fever, chills, hypotension, granulocytosis, thrombocytopenia, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and activation of both classic and alternate complement pathways. Endotoxic shock is the result of gram-negative septicemia, with endotoxin reacting with macrophages, leukocytes, platelets, complement, and other serum proteins to increase the blood levels of proteolytic enzymes and vasoactive substances, resulting in pooling of blood, increased peripheral vasoconstriction, and diminution in cardiac output. It has become clear that the lethal effects of endotoxin are dependent on macrophage activation and responsiveness and that the production of cachectin from the activated macrophage plays a major role in causing profound shock and multiple organ injury (Munford, 2006).

Other pathogenetic factors of the Enterobacteriaceae include the K1 antigen, which is associated with a high percentage of strains of *E. coli* causing neonatal meningitis; the capsule of *K. pneumoniae*, which, like that of the pneumococcus, inhibits phagocytosis; the Vi antigen of *Salmonella* serotype *typhi*, which may interfere with intracellular killing of this organism; and various surface antigens, such as fimbriae, that mediate adherence of the organism to mucosal surfaces.

Plasmid-mediated factors appear to play an important role in the invasive properties of *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, and enteroinvasive strains of *E. coli*. Moreover, the heat-labile enterotoxins (LT) and the heat-stable enterotoxins of *E. coli* are plasmid mediated. LT stimulates adenylate cyclase in mucosal cells of the small intestine, which, in turn, activates cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP); this causes secretion of fluid and electrolytes into the intestinal lumen and produces watery diarrhea. In contrast, heat-stable (ST) enterotoxins appear to activate guanylate cyclase.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The isolation of gram-negative bacilli from contaminated specimens is greatly facilitated by the use of differential and selective media (Table 58-9). Eosin methylene blue (EMB) and MacConkey's agar can be used interchangeably as minimally selective and differential media to initially select for and differentiate lactose-fermenting from non–lactose-fermenting gram-negative bacilli. XLD and HE agars are more selective differential media that are especially useful in selecting for *Salmonella* spp. and *Shigella* spp. in heavily contaminated specimens such as stool. Bismuth sulfite is a highly selective medium that is especially useful for the detection of salmonellae in endemics or epidemics. *Salmonella* spp. produce H_2S and are easily recognized by the production of colonies with black centers on XLD, HE, and bismuth sulfite agars. An enrichment medium, such as selenite-F or gram-negative (GN) broth, should be used to allow detection of low numbers of *Salmonella* spp. and *Shigella* spp. in stool. Cefsulodin-irgasan-novobiocin (CIN) agar incubated at room temperature is selective and differential for the recovery of *Yersinia enterocolitica*. Colonies will appear as bull's-eyes with red centers and transparent borders. MacConkey's agar with sorbitol as the fermentable sugar is a differential medium that is capable of differentiating the sorbitol-fermentation–negative *E. coli* 0157:H7, which is associated with hemolytic-uremic syndrome from most other *E. coli* (Nataro et al, 2011).

For some of the Enterobacteriaceae, a few simple colonial characteristics or biochemical reactions can be used to presumptively identify an isolate. For example, *Proteus* spp. swarm on blood agar, *Klebsiella* spp. form lactose-positive mucoid colonies, *Serratia marcescens* may produce a red pigment, *Salmonella* spp. produce H_2S, and *E. coli* is indole positive. Definitive identification of these and other species requires additional biochemical testing and/or molecular methods. Innumerable schemes based on the use of conventional biochemical media have been described for identification of the Enterobacteriaceae. Differential characteristics of the Enterobacteriaceae most commonly encountered in the clinical laboratory are shown in Table 58-10. Commercially prepared kits and automated devices are available and offer convenience and accuracy in identifying the vast majority of isolates belonging to the Enterobacteriaceae. In some instances, identification is accurately made in a few hours. Semiautomated systems may combine identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing in a single disposable unit. In general, accuracy of identification among these systems is very high and comparable. Maldi-Tof has been shown to be an excellent tool for the identification of members of the Enterobacteriaceae and can usually provide results more quickly than traditional or semiautomated biochemical methods (Richter et al, 2013).

Classification of the Enterobacteriaceae has undergone considerable revision in recent years as the result of DNA hybridization and relatedness studies. Because phenotypic groupings on the basis of biochemical reactions are not always consistent with their DNA relatedness, the use of tribes (e.g., Klebsielleae, Proteae) for grouping species within the Enterobacteriaceae has been discontinued.

Historically, the genus *Salmonella* has been divided into the following species: *S. typhi*, *Salmonella paratyphi* A and B, *Salmonella choleraesuis*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, and *Salmonella enteritidis*. Because all groups have been found to be genetically very closely related, current terminology now recognizes only two species: *S. enterica* and *S. bongori* (rarely isolated from humans), each of which contains multiple subspecies. Six subspecies of *S. enterica* are known, with subspecies I (*S. enterica* subsp. *enterica*) as the usual human isolate. More than 2000 serotypes of *Salmonella* have been identified, most belonging in the subspecies *enterica*. Serotyping is based on immunologic reactivity of the heat-stable somatic "O" antigens, which are predominantly lipopolysaccharide in content, and the heat-labile flagellar "H" antigens. In the United States, *Salmonella* serotypes *typhimurium* and *enteritidis* are the most common. *Salmonella* serotype *typhi* also produces a heat-labile capsular polysaccharide Vi antigen. In practice, most clinical laboratories identify isolates as *Salmonella* spp. based on biochemical reactions and use group-specific immunologic reagents to assign isolates to a specific serogroup. Commercial slide agglutination tests to differentiate large serogroups—A, B, C, and D—are useful in differentiating typhoidal salmonella from nontyphoidal strains. *S.* serotype *typhi* carries the D serogroup and Vi antigen. Further identification of the specific serotype is generally performed only by State Health Departments or other reference laboratories (Nataro et al, 2011).

Isolates biochemically resembling *Shigella* are also classified by the reactivity of the "O" antigen, as are isolates of *E. coli* that are identified as potential causes of diarrhea and hemolytic-uremic syndrome. Such *E. coli* are classified by the type of toxin produced as well. Commercial kits are available to identify *E. coli* O157 and to detect some types of toxins in culture or stool specimens; however, this type of testing is often sent out to referral laboratories or the State Health Department. The CDC has recommended that all laboratories consider testing stool samples for the presence of shiga toxins I and II produced by certain strains of hemorrhagic *E. coli* (O157:H7 and other serotypes). Shiga toxin is also produced by *Shigella*, but the species is *S. dysenteriae*, which is not often seen in the United States. Serologic antigen tests are available and are widely used in clinical laboratories for this toxin (Nataro et al, 2011).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

The susceptibility of Enterobacteriaceae to various antimicrobial agents is highly variable. Susceptibility to ampicillin was common among strains of *E. coli* and *P. mirabilis*, for example (although resistance in both has increased greatly over the past 10 to 20 years), but was not expected among most other clinically significant members of the Enterobacteriaceae. Resistance to first-generation cephalosporins (cefazolin, cephalothin) is expected for *Enterobacter* spp., *Serratia* spp., *Citrobacter* spp., *Proteus vulgaris*, *Providencia* spp., *Morganella* spp., and *Yersinia* spp.; susceptibility to third-generation cephalosporins (e.g., ceftriaxone, cefotaxime, ceftazidime) continues for many members of the Enterobacteriaceae. However, the presence of extended-spectrum β-lactamases and *Amp-C* genes, which are recognized by resistance of the bacteria to third-generation cephalosporins and all β-lactam antibiotics, except carbapenems, is increasing in selected strains of *E. coli*, *K. pneumoniae*, *P. mirabilis*, and others. Most Enterobacteriaceae are susceptible to aminoglycosides and fluoroquinolones. It had been very unusual for a member of the Enterobacteriaceae to be resistant to carbapenems (e.g., imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem, doripenem); however, in the late 1990s, in a few U.S. states, isolates of *K. pneumoniae* were first recognized that produced a bla_{KPC} gene, resulting in production of carbapenemases that inactivate all carbapenems. These strains are often referred to as "KPCs" or *K. pneumoniae*–producing carbapenemases. These isolates are resistant to most classes of antibiotics, except for an aminoglycoside, colistin, and tigecycline. The spread of these KPC genes has

TABLE 58-9

Differentiation of Aerobic Gram-Negative Bacilli

Test	*Escherichia coli*	*Klebsiella pneumoniae*	*Klebsiella oxytoca*	*Proteus mirabilis*	*Proteus vulgaris*	*Shigella* spp.	*Citrobacter freundii*	*Yersinia enterocolitica*	*Enterobacter cloacae*	*Serratia marcescens*	*Morganella morganii*	*Providencia alcalifaciens*	*Salmonella* Serotype *choleraesuis*	*Salmonella* Serotype *typhi*	*Salmonella* Serotype *paratyphi A*
Indole	+	–	+	–	+	D	–	D	–	–	+	+	–	–	–
Methyl red	+	– or +	D	+	+	+	+	+	–	+ or –	+	+	+	+	+
Voges-Proskauer	–	+	+	– or +	–	–	–	+ (25° C)/ – (37° C)	+	+	–	–	–	–	–
Citrate (Simmons)	–	+	+	D	D	–	+	– (25° C)	+	+	–	+	(+)	–	–
H_2S (in triple sugar iron agar)	–	–	–	+	+	–	+	–	–	–	–	–	D	+	– or +
Urease	–	+	+	+	+	–	D	+	D	– or +	+	–	–	–	–
Phenylalanine deaminase	–	–	–	+	+	–	–	–	–	–	+	–	–	–	–
Lysine decarboxylase	+ or –	+	+	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	+	+	–
Arginine dihydrolase	– or +	–	–	–	–	–	D	–	+	–	–	–	(+)	– or (+)	– or +
Ornithine decarboxylase	D	–	–	+	–	D	– or +	+	+	+		+	–	+	–
Motility	+ or –	–	–	+*	+*	–	+	+ + (25° C)/ – (37° C)	+	+	+ or –	+	+	+	+
Acid produced from lactose	+	+	+	–	–	–	+ or (+)	D	D	–	–	–	–	–	–

+, ≥90% positive reactions within 2 days; –, ≥90% negative reactions; *(+)*, positive reactions in 3 to 7 days; *+ or –*, reactions of most strains positive; *– or +*, reactions of most strains negative; *D*, different reactions [+, (+), or –].
*Swarm on blood and chocolate agar.

TABLE 58-10
Enteric Differential and Selective Media

Medium	Gram-positive Bacteriostatic Agent	Fermentable Carbohydrate	Indicator	Colony Color Fermenter	Nonfermenter	Category
Eosin methylene blue (EMB)	Eosin Y Methylene blue	Lactose*	Eosin Y Methylene blue	Red or black with sheen	Colorless	S, D
MacConkey's	Crystal violet Bile salts	Lactose	Neutral red	Red	Colorless	S, D
Xylose-lysine-deoxycholate (XLD)	Bile salts	Xylose Lactose Sucrose	Phenol red	Yellow	Red	S, D
Hektoen enteric (HE)	Bile salts	Salicin Lactose Sucrose	Bromthymol blue	Yellow-orange	Green, blue-green	S, D
Salmonella shigella (SS)	Bile salts	Lactose	Neutral red	Red	Colorless	S
Bismuth sulfite (BS)	Brilliant green	Glucose	Bismuth sulfite	†	†	S
Thiosulfate citrate bile salts sucrose (TCBS)‡	Bile salts pH 8.6	Sucrose	Thymol blue Bromthymol blue	Yellow	Colorless	S, D

D, Differential; *S,* selective.
*Levine's formulation.
†H_2S-producing salmonellae have black colonies.
‡Used for isolation of vibrios.

continued, and it is feared that these will be introduced into *E. coli*, for example, which accounts for significant nosocomial infections (Peirano et al, 2014).

Detection of carbapenem resistance may be difficult with some strains possessing this resistance, so the modified Hodge test may be used for confirmation. A potential KPC is inoculated near a carbapenem antibiotic disk onto an agar plate, onto which a lawn of carbapenem-susceptible *E. coli* has first been placed. Inactivation of the carbapenem will result in a reduction in the zone size of *E. coli* near the disk in close proximity to the inoculated KPC if the test is positive. Ertapenem is a better marker for carbapenem resistance than is meropenem or imipenem, but resistance to one of these leads to resistance to all carbapenems (Endimiani et al, 2009a; 2009b; Kitchel et al, 2009; Abbott, 2011; Nataro et al, 2011; CLSI, 2014). Use of Maldi-Tof and molecular methods for the detection of carbapenem resistance has been reported (Johansson et al, 2014). Infection control procedures are essential to prevent the spread of these highly resistant strains.

Because the susceptibility pattern of the Enterobacteriaceae is unpredictable, as a general rule, susceptibility testing should be performed if antimicrobial therapy is being considered. No susceptibility testing need be performed if antimicrobial therapy is not instituted, as is the case for uncomplicated enteric infection due to salmonella, for which therapy may actually prolong the carrier state, or when a mixed flora infection is present and individual susceptibilities may not be appropriate. Methods for performing susceptibility tests, including the modified Hodge test and confirmatory extended-spectrum ESBL tests, and interpretive criteria can be found in CLSI documents (CLSI, 2014).

Plesiomonas

Characteristics

Plesiomonas shigelloides, the only species in the genus *Plesiomonas*, is a facultatively anaerobic, oxidase- and catalase-positive, glucose-fermenting, gram-negative rod. Recent molecular genetic evidence demonstrates that the genus *Plesiomonas* is most closely related to the genus *Proteus*. Therefore, it has been placed into the Enterobacteriaceae family (Abbott, 2011) as the only oxidase-positive member of this group of gram-negative bacilli.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

P. shigelloides is found in aquatic environments that are limited geographically by its minimum growth temperature of 8° C. It may be found in fresh and estuarine water, usually in tropical countries. It has been implicated as a cause of gastroenteritis, especially following the ingestion of uncooked shellfish. The diarrheal stool specimen frequently contains polymorphonuclear leukocytes and red blood cells, although a cholera-like illness may occur. Gastroenteritis may occur in sporadic cases, as well as in outbreaks. Extraintestinal manifestations of infection with *P. shigelloides* include meningitis, septicemia, cellulitis, arthritis, and endophthalmitis (Ampofo et al, 2001; Ozdemir et al, 2010). Virulence factors of *P. shigelloides* include hemolysins, cytotoxins, production of exoenzymes associated with pathogenicity, adhesive ability, and vacuolation of cell lines in vitro (Salerno et al, 2010).

Laboratory Diagnosis

P. shigelloides can be isolated on a variety of nonselective and enteric-selective media, including HE agar. Acid production from lactose is variable, but on enteric media the organism usually appears to be a non–lactose fermenter. It is indole positive; reduces nitrates to nitrites; produces catalase; is methyl red positive; and ferments glucose, maltose, and trehalose (Abbott, 2011).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

P. shigelloides is susceptible to a variety of antimicrobial agents, including cephalosporins, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, imipenem, and the quinolones (Abbott, 2011). Susceptibility to the penicillins is variable because of the presence of a β-lactamase similar to that of *Aeromonas* spp.

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA—NONFERMENTATIVE BACILLI

A group of gram-negative bacilli that do not ferment glucose and other sugars are often lumped together under the heading of "nonfermenters." They account for about 15% of the gram-negative bacilli isolated from hospitalized patients. Although many genera of nonfermenters are known, 75% of the clinically relevant ones are *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and most of the remaining 25% are *Acinetobacter* spp., *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*, or *Burkholderia cepacia*. As a group, they are environmental bacteria and are not usually found as part of the normal flora of the human body, except as colonizers in hospitalized patients. They can be readily isolated from water, soil, vegetables, plants, and hospital surfaces. Although no uniform biochemical characteristics have been noted, they are often oxidase-positive (except for *Acinetobacter* spp.), lactose-negative colonies on selective media such as MacConkey's agar (although some of the species do not grow on this media), and they are frequently resistant to many of the antibiotics that are effective against members of the Enterobacteriaceae. The four main species mentioned previously, as well as a few others, are discussed in this chapter.

Pseudomonas

Characteristics

The genus *Pseudomonas* has undergone extensive revision, and now many of the species that were previously classified in this genus have been reclassified into the genera *Burkholderia*, *Stenotrophomonas*, *Comamonas*, *Shewanella*, *Ralstonia*, *Methylobacterium*, *Sphingomonas*, *Acidovorax*, and *Brevundimonas*. Of the species that remain, *P. aeruginosa* is the most significant human pathogen. Figure 58-16 shows the Gram stain of *P. aeruginosa* in a sputum specimen.

Pseudomonads are strictly aerobic, catalase-positive, oxidase-positive, gram-negative bacilli. Their metabolism is respiratory and never

fermentative, with oxygen as the terminal electron acceptor. Some pseudomonads are motile by means of polar flagella.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Pseudomonads are found in moist environments. Some of the more unusual habitats for these organisms include cosmetics, swimming pools, hot tubs, and the inner soles of sneakers. The latter can lead to puncture wounds that are infected with *P. aeruginosa*. The species causing the greatest morbidity and mortality today is *P. aeruginosa*. Other species of *Pseudomonas*, although often isolated from clinical specimens, are only occasionally involved in disease.

P. aeruginosa is ubiquitous in the hospital environment, existing almost anywhere there is moisture, including medical equipment and disinfectant solutions and soaps. It is only rarely found as part of the normal flora of healthy people, but in hospitalized patients, the rates of colonization increase with the length of hospitalization. *P. aeruginosa* may produce serious infection in patients with burns and traumatic and operative wounds; following urinary tract manipulation; in patients with diseases of the hematopoietic, reticuloendothelial, and lymphoid systems; and in those with impaired cellular or humoral defenses. Pulmonary infection occurs commonly in patients with cystic fibrosis. The mortality rate is highest in severely leukopenic patients.

P. aeruginosa produces a slime polysaccharide, an endotoxin, and proteases that inactivate components of complement, thereby inhibiting to some degree opsonization and the inflammatory response, and perhaps contributing to its invasiveness. Exotoxin A promotes cellular damage and tissue invasion and is toxic for macrophages.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The presence of *P. aeruginosa* in cultures can often be suspected because of its musty grape-like (or corn tortilla) odor, the rough or ground glass appearance of its colonies on sheep blood agar, and the presence of one or both of two pigments: a "blue-green" fluorescent pigment (Fig. 58-17) and/or a metallic sheen caused by pyoverdin pigment. It can be identified easily with a positive oxidase reaction, an alkaline slant/neutral butt reaction in TSIA, growth at 42° C, and the formation of sheen and/or pigment on the slants of TSIA and *Pseudomonas* P agar. Additional tests are shown in Table 58-11. Tests of carbohydrate utilization should be carried out in O-F basal medium, which contains a minimal quantity of peptone and a relatively large quantity of carbohydrate and so can allow detection of very small quantities of acid formed by this group of bacteria. Reactions are usually complete within 48 hours but may require as long as 7 days. MALDI-TOF can also be used for the identification of *P. aeruginosa* (Desai et al, 2012; Manji et al, 2014).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

As a general rule, susceptibility testing should be performed for all clinically significant isolates of *P. aeruginosa*. Hospital strains of *P. aeruginosa* may be resistant to many classes of antibiotic. Isolates are often susceptible to the aminoglycosides, the carboxypenicillins and ureidopenicillins, ceftazidime or cefepime, carbapenems, and the quinolones. *P. aeruginosa* is always resistant to sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim (SXT) and tetracyclines, including the newer broad-spectrum tigecycline, ertapenem, and nitrofurantoin. Multiple resistance to drugs to which *P. aeruginosa* was once susceptible is increasing, especially in intensive care units and among patients who have long-standing *Pseudomonas* infections, such as patients with cystic fibrosis and other chronic syndromes (Friedland et al, 2004; Hauser & Siriam, 2005; Tai et al, 2015). Laboratories are being asked to test additional antibiotics, especially colistin or polymyxin B, when these resistant isolates are encountered. The CLSI has recently provided breakpoints for testing of polymyxin B that can be interpreted for polymyxin B or colistin (CLSI, 2014).

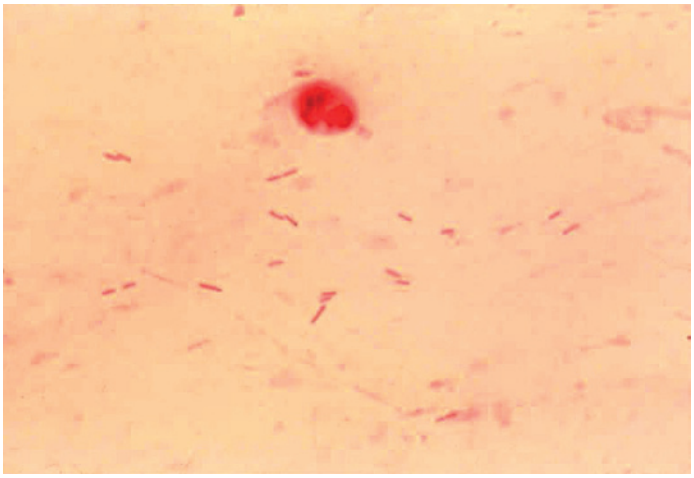


Figure 58-16 Gram stain of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in a sputum specimen. Note the longer, gram-negative bacilli compared with Figure 58-13.

Figure 58-17 Extracted pyocyanin pigment from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

TABLE 58-11
Differential Characteristics of Nonfermentative Gram-Negative Bacilli Isolated from Clinical Material

	Pseudomonas aeruginosa	*Pseudomonas fluorescens*	*Pseudomonas putida*	*Burkholderi cepacia*	*Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*	*Acinetobacter baumanii*
Oxidase	+	+	+	+	–	–
Pyocyanin	+	–	–	–	–	–
Fluorescein	+	–	+	–	–	–
Glucose oxidation	+	+	+	+	+/–	+
42° C	+	–	–	+/–	+/–	+
DNase	–	–	–	–	+	–/+
Growth on MacConkey's agar	+	+	+	+	+	+*
Motility	+	+	+	+	+	–

+, Positive; –, negative; +/–, variable results, most strains positive; –/+, variable results, most strains negative; *DNase,* deoxyribonuclease.
*Purplish color on MacConkey's agar.

PART 7

Acinetobacter

Characteristics

Organisms in this genus are short, rod shaped to spherical, nonmotile, oxidase negative, strictly aerobic, and gram negative. In a Gram-stained smear, they often appear in pairs and may be difficult to decolorize.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Acinetobacter spp. are found commonly in soil and water and uncommonly on the skin and mucous membranes of healthy people. Current research has begun to elucidate the virulence factors in this group of organisms, as they are being more recognized as serious pathogens in some patients. Although usually considered nonpathogenic in the past, they have been increasingly associated with nosocomial septicemia, pneumonia, bacteriuria, and wound infection, especially due to the increased antimicrobial resistance that has developed in many strains of *A. baumanii*. The mortality rate associated with *Acinetobacter baumanii* infections can reach 35% (Antunes et al, 2014; Spellberg & Bonomo, 2014).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Acinetobacter spp. can be distinguished readily from pseudomonads on the basis of their lack of motility, inability to reduce nitrates, and negative oxidase reaction. They may produce characteristic purplish colonies on MacConkey's agar. More than 25 species are known, but their differentiation biochemically is difficult, and they are often lumped together in the *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus–Acinetobacter baumanii* complex. The glucose-oxidizing (saccharolytic strains), nonhemolytic clinical strains are usually referred to as *A. baumanii*; nonsaccharolytic strains (non–glucose oxidizers) may be *Acinetobacter lwoffi* if nonhemolytic, or *Acinetobacter haemolyticus* if hemolytic (Vaneechouette et al, 2011). The most clinically relevant are members of the *A. baumanii* complex, and these are the most resistant to antimicrobials as well.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Members of the *Acinetobacter* baumanii complex are resistant to most available β-lactam and aminoglycoside antibiotics. Resistance to the aminoglycosides is caused by plasmid-mediated acetyl-, adenylyl-, and phosphotransferases. *Acinetobacter* spp. may be susceptible to doxycycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, quinolones, ureidopenicillins, imipenem, ampicillin-sulbactam, and ceftazidime. The carbapenems (excluding ertapenem) are considered the most active, but resistance rates up to 11% have been described in nosocomial strains throughout the United States; in some hospitals in the United States, *Acinetobacter* has become a predominant nosocomial pathogen (Gales et al, 2001; Chopra et al, 2013). These isolates of carbapenem-resistant *A. baumanii* are often referred to as carbapenem-resistant *A. baumanii* (CRAB); they are often resistant to all classes of antibiotics, except colistin and tigecycline (Perez et al, 2007; Chopra et al, 2013). Appropriate infection control procedures are necessary to prevent their transmission (Rodríguez-Baño et al, 2009). Susceptibility testing should be performed for clinically significant isolates or upon request of the clinician.

Burkholderia

Burkholderia spp. are aerobic, non–spore-forming, gram-negative rods; except for *Burkholderia mallei*, all are motile because they have polar flagella. These organisms are catalase positive, and most are oxidase positive. On MacConkey's agar, they produce lactose-negative colonies.

Clinical Significance and Pathogenesis

These organisms are found in the environment in water, in soil, and on plants. Because of their predilection for watery environments, some can be found in the hospital environment and have the potential to cause nosocomially acquired infection.

Two important human pathogens in the genus *Burkholderia* are *Burkholderia pseudomallei* and *Burkholderia cepacia* complex. *B. pseudomallei*, which is acquired via inhalation or contact through cut or abraded skin, causes melioidosis. The infection can be asymptomatic, can become chronic, or can cause a fulminant sepsis. Melioidosis is most prevalent in Southeast Asia and Australia but may occur in other tropical and subtropical environments.

B. cepacia, a nosocomial pathogen that is associated with contaminated equipment, medications, and disinfectants, can cause bacteremia, urinary tract infection, septic arthritis, and respiratory tract infection. It is an important pathogen in patients with cystic fibrosis (CF) and in those with chronic granulomatous disease. Patients with CF who become chronically infected with this organism have a decreased rate of survival. *B. cepacia* complex comprises at least nine species, and all species have been recovered from patients with CF. In the United States, however, approximately 85% of strains are *B. multivorans* or *B. cenocepacia*. *B. cenocepacia* has been shown in many studies to possess potent virulence factors that lead to increased mortality in CF patients who are infected with it versus other strains of *Burkholderia* (LiPuma et al, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Burkholderia species grow well on standard laboratory media, including blood and chocolate agar. Isolation of *B. cepacia* from contaminated specimens such as sputa may be made easier through the use of selective media—for example, PC, *Pseudomonas cepacia* selective agar; OFBL, oxidation-fermentative base-polymyxin B, bacitracin-lactose-agar; and BCSA, *B. cepacia* selective agar (LiPuma et al, 2011). No good biochemical methods are available to differentiate among the *B. cepacia* complex or between the complex and related species such as *B. gladioli* and *Ralstonia*, *Cupriavidus*, and *Pandoraea* spp. Molecular techniques are often required for confirmatory identification and should be pursued when a *B. cepacia* complex organism is suspected. The use of Maldi-Tof may also assist in further speciation in the future (Desai et al, 2012). The CF Foundation (http://www.cff.org) has established a *B. cepacia* reference laboratory to confirm the identity of possible isolates in CF patients (LiPuma et al, 2011).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

The susceptibility of these organisms to antimicrobial agents varies considerably. *B. cepacia* is highly resistant to many antimicrobials but is usually susceptible to piperacillin, ceftazidime, chloramphenicol, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Strains from CF patients who have been on repeated courses of antibiotics are, however, likely to become resistant to these agents. The CLSI recommends reporting only ceftazidime, meropenem, minocycline, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for *B. cepacia* (CLSI, 2014). All *B. cepacia* organisms are intrinsically resistant to polymyxins (colistin).

Stenotrophomonas maltophilia

Characteristics

Stenotrophomonas maltophilia are becoming significant nosocomial pathogens. Risk factors for colonization or infection with this organism are mechanical ventilation, use of broad-spectrum antibiotics, catheterization, and neutropenia (Brooke, 2012; Behnia et al, 2014).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Important distinguishing biochemical reactions of *S. maltophilia* are its negative oxidase reaction and positive DNase activity. Colonies grow on blood agar (lavender green colonies) and MacConkey's agar; the bacteria are nonmotile and nonfermentative.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

S. maltophilia is inherently resistant to many antibiotics, especially the carbapenems. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is the antibiotic of choice, although some strains have become resistant (Gales et al, 2001; Brooke, 2012). CLSI recommends reporting only levofloxacin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, and minocycline. Breakpoints have been put forth for interpretation of these agents for MIC and disk diffusion testing (CLSI, 2014).

Other nonfermentative gram-negative bacilli include members of the genera *Alcaligenes*, *Achromobacter*, *Flavobacterium*, *Flavimonas*, *Chryseomonas*, *Acidovorax*, *Brevundimonas*, *Comamonas*, and *Ralstonia*, among others. These are infrequently isolated from clinical specimens, often when they may represent contamination or colonization. They can be considered as significant, especially when isolated from sterile sites, on multiple occasions in immunosuppressed patients, or patients with foreign devices in place.

Vibrio

Characteristics

Vibrio spp. are facultatively anaerobic, oxidase-positive, short, curved, or straight gram-negative bacilli that are usually motile by means of polar flagella; they ferment carbohydrates and reduce nitrates to nitrites. Several species are medically important (Table 58-12).

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Among the vibrios, *Vibrio vulnificus* causes the most severe disease. Wound infections and septicemia with this organism are often fatal. Disease is usually associated with consumption of raw oysters or oyster-related injury.

TABLE 58-12
Differential Characteristics of *Vibrio* Species*

Test	*V. cholerae*	*V. mimicus*	*V. damsela*	*V. parahaemolyticus*	*V. alginolyticus*	*V. vulnificus*	*V. fluvialis*	*V. metschnikovii*	*V. hollisae*
Indole	+	+	–	+ or –	D	+	– or +	D	+
Voges-Proskauer	– or +	–	+	–	+	–	–	+	–
Lysine decarboxylase	+	+	+	+	+	+	–	D	–
Ornithine decarboxylase	+	+	–	+ or –	D	D	–	–	–
Arginine dihydrolase	–	–	+	–	–	–	+	D	–
Lactose	(+)	– or +	–	–	–	+	–	D	–
Sucrose	+	+	–	+	+	D	+	+	–
Mannitol	+	+	–	+	+	D	+	+	–
Maltose	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	–
Arabinose	–	–	– + or	–	–	–	+	–	+
Salicin	–	–	–	–	–	+	–	– or +	–
Cellobiose	–	–	–	–	–	+	D	– or +	–
$NO_3 \rightarrow NO_2$	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	–	+
Oxidase	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	–	+
Growth in Nutrient Broth Plus NaCl, %									
0	+	+	–	–	–	–	W+ or –	–	–
1	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
6	– or (+)	– or (+)	+	+	+	+	+	+	(+)
8	–	–	–	+	+	–	–	D	–
10	–	–	–	–	+	–	–	D	–
12	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–

W+, Weakly positive.
*For key to symbols, see Table 58-9.

Preexisting hepatic disease is almost always present in serious illness. Decreased liver function results in increased available iron and appears to facilitate the growth of the organism.

Cholera toxin–producing *Vibrio cholerae* O1 is a well-known cause of epidemic cholera, which manifests itself by massive intestinal fluid loss and dehydration. The cholera toxin mediates this effect by binding to and activating the adenylate cyclase of cells in the small intestine, resulting in hypersecretion of electrolytes and water (Abbott et al, 2011). Non-O1 strains of *V. cholerae* cause a self-limited gastroenteritis but are not responsible for epidemics of disease. Nearly all non-O1 strains of *V. cholerae* do not produce cholera toxin but do produce two types of hemolysins and a heat-stable enterotoxin.

Vibrio mimicus and *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* primarily cause gastroenteritis. The mechanism of pathogenicity of *V. parahaemolyticus* appears to be related to invasiveness rather than to enterotoxin production. More than 95% of isolates of *V. parahaemolyticus* isolated from patients with gastroenteritis produce a cell-free hemolysin that is lethal to mice when injected in high doses and is described as the Kanagawa phenomenon. This halophilic organism is widely distributed in marine environments and has been found to contaminate fish and shellfish. Outbreaks of acute diarrheal disease following ingestion of contaminated food have been especially common in Japan but have also occurred in the United States and other countries (Abbott et al, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Although formerly of concern only to U.S. travelers to endemic areas, cases of *V. cholerae* disease have been described in the United States in association with ingestion of contaminated shellfish. In 2012, CDC reported 22 cases, 4 patients with *V. cholera* serogroup 01 or 0141 (cdc.gov/cholera/index.html). In addition, gastroenteritis caused by *V. parahaemolyticus* and by other halophilic vibrios in contaminated shellfish has been described in many parts of the country, particularly in coastal areas. In 2012, there were 944 cases of *Vibrio* infection in the United States, approximately 50% by *V. parahaemolyticus*, followed by 32% either *V. alginolyticus* or *V. vulnificus*; 16% of the *Vibrio* infections were from noncoastal states (cdc.gov/vibrio/index.html). Thus it is important for clinical laboratories to have the capability to culture stool for *Vibrio* spp. when indicated on the basis of travel and dietary history.

With the exception of *V. cholerae* and *V. mimicus*, growth of this group of organisms requires media containing NaCl. Most solid and liquid media used for bacterial culture contain enough sodium that the use of special media in such instances is not necessary. Selective media containing sucrose, such as thiosulfate citrate bile salts medium, are very useful for culturing stool specimens for *Vibrio* spp. Certain species (*V. cholerae* and *V. alginolyticus*) ferment the sucrose and appear as yellow colonies on this medium. An enrichment medium, such as alkaline peptone water, may be used prior to subculture to solid medium to enhance recovery of *Vibrio* spp. from stool. *Vibrio* spp. can be differentiated among themselves and from other enteric gram-negative bacilli according to the reactions listed in Table 58-12. It may be necessary to carry out biochemical testing of the halophilic vibrios in media supplemented with 1% to 3% NaCl. If TSIA and lysine iron agar are inoculated for screening purposes, their reactions will be acid slant/acid butt with no gas (A/A) or H_2S and alkaline slant/alkaline butt (K/K), respectively (Abbott et al, 2011). Not all commercially available gram-negative identification systems are reliable for the identification of *Vibrio* spp.; they should be used only if they have proved accurate. Use of Maldi-Tof and molecular methods for identification have become more useful if full identification is needed (Erler et al, 2014).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Antimicrobial susceptibility testing can be performed using the disk diffusion method with Mueller-Hinton agar and broth microdilution using cation-adjusted Mueller-Hinton broth and incubation at 35°C for 16 to 18 hours. CLSI has established interpretive standards for *V. cholerae* tested with ampicillin, tetracycline, doxycycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, chloramphenicol, and sulfonamides (CLSI, 2010). Interpretive standards have been put forth for the other *Vibrio* spp. in CLSI document M45-2A (CLSI, 2010).

Aeromonas

Characteristics

Members of this genus are facultatively anaerobic, oxidase- and catalase-positive, rod-shaped, gram-negative bacilli. They are usually motile by means of polar flagella, although some species may be nonmotile. They form acids from carbohydrates by respiratory and fermentative metabolism and reduce nitrates to nitrite.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Aeromonas spp. are mainly found in aquatic environments. They have been isolated from tap water, rivers, soil, and various foods, and are only rarely found in marine environments. These organisms have been associated with both intestinal and extraintestinal disease. Although no definitive evidence has demonstrated the role of *Aeromonas* spp. in GI disease, the presence of *Aeromonas* spp. in stool is more often associated with diarrhea than with an asymptomatic carrier state. Its role in producing diarrheal disease is possibly related to the production of an enterotoxin by some strains. A hemolysin and a cytopathic factor have also been described. *Aeromonas* spp. may cause infection of traumatically acquired wounds or septicemia in patients who are immunocompromised (Janda & Abbott, 2010). An unusual association has also been reported between the use of leeches (which harbor *A. hydrophila* in their digestive tract) to decrease vascular congestion and human skin or bloodstream infections (Maetz et al, 2012).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Isolation of a fermenting, oxidase-positive, gram-negative bacillus from an appropriate specimen should suggest the possibility of *Aeromonas* spp. Organisms grow readily on conventional laboratory media and produce colonies that resemble those of *Pseudomonas* spp.; have a greenish, ground glass appearance; and have a fruity odor. Most species are β-hemolytic on blood agar. Isolation of *Aeromonas* spp. from stool specimens may be enhanced by inoculation of blood agar containing ampicillin or CIN medium. More than 18 species of *Aeromonas* are now recognized. *Aeromonas hydrophila* complex, *Aeromonas caviae* complex, and *Aeromonas veronii* complex are the most common isolates from human specimens. Esculin, Voges-Proskauer, gas from glucose fermentation, and l-arabinose are four biochemicals that can be used to separate *Aeromonas* spp. into one of these three complexes, but a more definitive identification would require conventional biochemicals in conjunction with molecular sequencing methods or Maldi-TOF identification (Horneman & Ali, 2011).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Aeromonas spp. are susceptible to the quinolones, aminoglycosides, carbapenems, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole but produce a β-lactamase that mediates resistance to the penicillins and first-generation cephalosporins (Horneman & Ali, 2011). Carbapenemases, although rare, may be difficult to detect by conventional susceptibility testing methods, including automated systems (Horneman & Ali, 2011). *Aeromonas* spp. have been found to maintain resistance plasmids of both the Enterobacteriaceae and *Pseudomonas* spp.

Campylobacter

Characteristics

Campylobacter spp. are small (0.5-8 μm long × 0.2-0.5 μm wide), motile, non–spore-forming, curved (comma-shaped) or S-shaped gram-negative bacilli that grow optimally in an atmosphere containing 5% to 10% oxygen and, therefore, are considered to be microaerophilic. Figure 58-18 shows the Gram stain of *Campylobacter jejuni* from culture. *C. jejuni* is among the most common cause of bacterial enteritis in the United States. Other *Campylobacter* spp. associated with enteritis are *Campylobacter coli*, *Campylobacter lari*, and *Campylobacter upsaliensis*. *Campylobacter fetus* subsp. *fetus* is a cause of septic thrombophlebitis, arthritis, peritonitis, abscess, and pericarditis (Fitzgerald & Nachamkin, 2011), especially in persons with an underlying chronic disease. *Arcobacter* are aerotolerant, *Campylobacter*-like, spiral-shaped bacteria that are frequently isolated from bovine and porcine products of abortion and feces of animals with enteritis (Fitzgerald & Nachamkin, 2011). *A. butzleri* has been isolated from patients with bacteremia, endocarditis, diarrhea, and peritonitis. *A. cryerophilus* has been isolated from patients with bacteremia and diarrhea. *A. skirrowii* has been isolated from stool of patient with chronic diarrhea, although clinical relevance was unclear (Fitzgerald & Nachamkin, 2011).

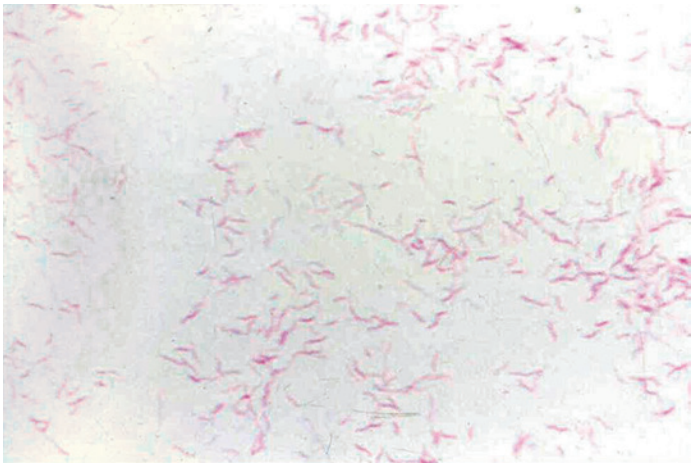


Figure 58-18 ***Campylobacter jejuni*** **Gram stain: Note the comma-shaped appearance of the bacilli.**

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

C. jejuni is found worldwide as a commensal of the GI tract of wild or domesticated cattle, sheep, swine, goats, dogs, cats, and fowl, especially turkeys and chickens. It is the most common cause of bacterial enteritis in some areas of the United States, with an estimated occurrence of 1000 cases per 100,000 individuals. The incidence of infection in the United Kingdom and in other developed nations is similar to that in the United States, and the incidence in underdeveloped countries is probably even higher. Infections generally occur in the summer and fall and are commonly the result of ingestion of improperly cooked foods, usually poultry. In addition, several outbreaks of *C. jejuni* enteritis have been linked to unpasteurized milk and to defects in municipal water systems. The spectrum of illness ranges from asymptomatic to severely ill. The stool from patients with diarrhea may contain blood or leukocytes. Symptoms can last up to 1 week and generally are self-limited. Extraintestinal infections, including bacteremia, reactive arthritis, urinary tract infection, and meningitis, may also occur. *C. jejuni* is the most recognized antecedent cause of Guillain-Barré syndrome. The pathogenesis of this organism is not completely understood; it appears to first colonize the intestinal mucous layer and then is able to translocate through the epithelial surface to the underlying tissue (Fitzgerald & Nachamkin, 2011).

The major habitat of *C. fetus* subsp. *fetus* is the intestine of sheep and cattle; it also may be found in the genital tract of these animals, their placentas, and the gastric contents of their aborted fetuses and, less frequently, in other animals and birds. The mechanisms of transmission of infection to humans are not understood completely. Direct contact with an infected animal is possible, but less than one-third of infected individuals have a history of environmental or occupational exposure. Contaminated food or water may be a vehicle for infection, or infection may originate from an endogenous source.

Laboratory Diagnosis

A single stool specimen is generally adequate to detect enteric pathogens, including *Campylobacter* spp. Examination for fecal leukocytes is not recommended because they may be present in as few as 25% of cases. An enzyme immunoassay (EIA) is available for direct detection of *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli* antigens in stool specimens (Granato et al, 2010; Fitzgerald & Nachamkin, 2011). Several media can be used for the selective isolation of *Campylobacter* spp., including charcoal-cefoperazone-deoxycholate agar, charcoal-based selective medium, semisolid blood-free motility medium, Skirrow's medium, and *Campylobacter* agar with 5% sheep blood and five antimicrobials (cephalothin, trimethoprim, vancomycin, polymyxin B, and amphotericin B). Most *Campylobacter* spp. require a microaerobic environment (5% O_2, 10% CO_2, and 85% N_2), which can be produced using commercially available gas generator packs. The amount of oxygen in a candle jar is too little to support the growth of *Campylobacter* spp. and should not be used. Incubation of the plates at 42°C increases selectivity for *C. jejuni*. Commercial multiplex PCR assays that detect multiple potential pathogens in stool also are available.

If *Campylobacter* spp. are suspected in a blood culture based on clinical history or appearance of an organism on Gram stain, the broth should be subcultured to a nonselective blood agar plate and incubated at 37°C in a microaerobic environment.

In general, *Campylobacter* spp. produce gray, flat, irregular, spready colonies, which may become round, convex, and glistening as the moisture content in the media is reduced. A typical Gram stain appearance and a positive oxidase reaction from a colony growing on selective media at 42°C can be reported as *Campylobacter* spp. *C. jejuni* is able to hydrolyze hippurate and is susceptible to nalidixic acid and resistant to cephalothin. *C. coli* is hippuricase negative.

Strains of *C. fetus* subsp. *fetus* are resistant to nalidixic acid, fail to hydrolyze hippurate, and do not ordinarily grow at 42°C.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

C. jejuni is variably susceptible to antimicrobial agents. Most are not susceptible to penicillins or cephalosporins. For intestinal infection, erythromycin is the drug of choice, with quinolones used as alternative therapy. Treatment often is not warranted, however, for simple gastroenteritis with *Campylobacter* sp. in an otherwise healthy individual. Resistance to both agents has been encountered. Currently, no standardized methods are used for susceptibility testing of this group of organisms; however, CLSI document M45-A2 provides guidelines for testing (CLSI, 2010).

Helicobacter

Characteristics

Helicobacter spp. are spiral-shaped or curved, gram-negative, non–spore-forming bacilli, measuring 0.3 to 1.0 µm wide and 1.5 to 10 µm long. They are motile by multiple bipolar or monopolar flagella, are microaerobic, and have a respiratory metabolism.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Helicobacter spp. are found in the GI tracts of mammals and birds. Transmission from one host to another occurs through both oral–oral and fecal–oral routes. *Helicobacter pylori* is considered to be one of the "gastric" helicobacters. In the stomach, it lives within or beneath the mucous layer adjacent to the epithelium. It is also found transiently in the duodenum, saliva, and feces.

Infection with *H. pylori* may result in acute gastritis symptoms. Most infected patients develop chronic active gastritis, which may lead to nonulcer dyspepsia or duodenal ulcers. *H. pylori* has been associated with 90% of duodenal ulcers and nearly all gastric ulcers. Infection with *H. pylori* has also been associated with gastric carcinoma and gastric lymphoma (Testerman & Morris, 2014). The prevalence of gastritis associated with *H. pylori* increases with age, suggesting that the organism is acquired as people become older.

The "enteric" helicobacters, such as *Helicobacter* (formerly *Campylobacter*) *cinaedi* and *Helicobacter fennelliae*, have been implicated in cases of gastroenteritis. Rarely, these organisms may invade the bloodstream and be isolated from cultures of blood.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Typically, nonculture methods have been utilized to diagnose *H. pylori* infection. One such test is the urea breath test. This is a noninvasive test that detects urease activity of *H. pylori* by measuring ^{14}C- and ^{13}C-labeled CO_2 in the patient's expelled air after ingestion of labeled urea. Serologic assays are also widely used in symptomatic patients to detect antibodies against *H. pylori;* however, because most adults will have been exposed to *H. pylori*, detection of IgG antibodies is not helpful diagnostically but can be used as an epidemiologic or surveillance tool. In some cases, biopsies of the affected tissues are obtained and are examined histologically using the hematoxylin and eosin or immunohistochemical stain for the presence of organisms with morphology typical of *H. pylori*. Because the organism hydrolyzes urea very rapidly, a portion of the gastric biopsy may be placed directly into urea broth or onto urea-containing agar to detect urea hydrolysis in 1 to 24 hours (CLO test). A commercially available EIA for detection of *H. pylori* antigen in stool is a noninvasive alternative for diagnosis of *H. pylori* infection (Premier Platinum HpSA, Meridian Bioscience, Cincinnati, Ohio). Sensitivity of this assay is as high as 89%, with specificities up to 95% (Masoero et al, 2000; Montiero et al, 2001). PCR has also been reported as a sensitive method for detection of *H. pylori* (Montiero et al, 2009).

If culture is requested, tissue specimens should be maintained at 4°C and processed within 2 hours of collection. Transport media include *Brucella* broth with 20% glycerol, cysteine Albemi broth with 20% glycerol, isotonic saline with 4% glucose, and Stuart's transport media. Processed specimens may be inoculated to one of several media, including brain-heart infusion, *Brucella*, Trypticase soy agar, Columbia agar base with 10% defibrinated horse blood, or Wilkens Chalgren agar. Inoculated media should be incubated in a microaerobic atmosphere (5% to 10% CO_2, 80% to 90% N_2, and 5% to 10% O_2) under high humidity at 35°C for 5 to 10 days. Addition of 5% to 8% H_2 in the atmosphere enhances growth of *H. pylori*, which generally produces small, gray, translucent colonies on these media; has the characteristic gram-negative spiral appearance on stained smears; and is oxidase, catalase, and urease positive. Feces generally are not cultured for the enteric helicobacters. *Helicobacter* spp. will grow and will be detected by the automated blood culture systems used in many laboratories, but may require incubation for longer than the standard 5 days (Lawson, 2011).

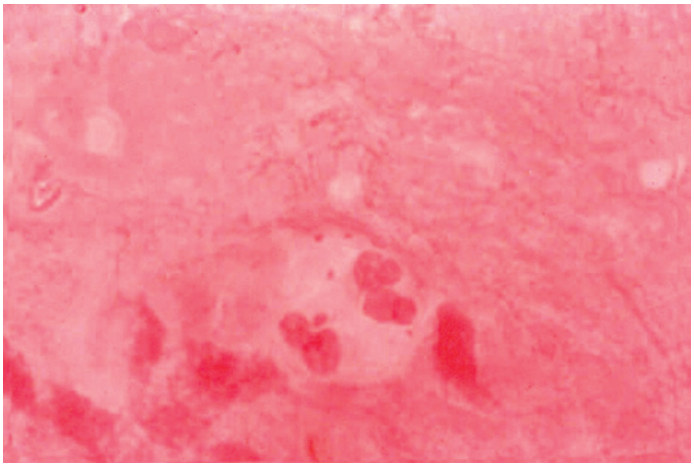


Figure 58-19 Gram stain of a *Haemophilus influenzae* coccobacillus in a brain abscess.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Multidrug regimens are used to treat *H. pylori* infection. These usually include two antibiotics (metronidazole, clarithromycin, tetracycline, or amoxicillin) and an "antiacid" drug. Strains resistant to metronidazole and clarithromycin have been reported. For susceptibility testing, the CLSI recommends agar dilution using Mueller-Hinton agar plus 5% sheep blood (CLSI, 2010). Interpretive breakpoints are given only for clarithromycin. Updated information about the treatment of *H. pylori* gastritis can be found in two review articles (Papastergiou et al, 2014; Testerman & Morris, 2014).

Haemophilus

Characteristics

Members of the genus are oxidase-positive, facultatively anaerobic, small, gram-negative, pleomorphic rods or coccobacilli with a potential requirement for X (hemin) and/or V (NAD) factor. Figure 58-19 shows an *H. influenzae* bacterium in a brain abscess specimen.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Most *Haemophilus* spp. are normal inhabitants of the upper respiratory tract. Some may reside in the gastrointestinal or urogenital tract. Person-to-person spread occurs by respiratory droplets. Infections caused by *Haemophilus* spp. range from conjunctivitis and otitis media to meningitis and endocarditis. Those that are generally considered human pathogens are *H. influenzae*, *Haemophilus parainfluenzae*, *Haemophilus ducreyi*, and *Aggregatibacter (Haemophilus) aphrophilus* (Ledeboer & Doern, 2011).

The major virulence factor of *H. influenzae* is the polysaccharide capsule, of which there are six serotypes (a to f). Strains that do not possess a capsule are referred to as *nontypeable*. Endotoxin is not produced by *H. influenzae*, and this species is rapidly killed once ingested by macrophages unless antibody, complement, or the phagocytes are deficient. The role of antibodies in immunity is also poorly understood. Antibodies develop with age, presumably following natural infection with *H. influenzae* or with cross-reacting antigenic organisms, so most persons older than 15 years have antibodies. Which antibodies are present and what level of those antibodies is protective remain unknown.

Since the introduction of a vaccine for *H. influenzae* type b in the mid-1980s, there has been a sharp drop in the incidence of invasive infection such as meningitis and epiglottitis due to this organism. Figure 58-20 demonstrates the pleomorphic nature of the *H. influenzae* seen in a CSF specimen. Nontypeable strains of *H. influenzae* are most frequently associated with acute otitis media and acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis. *H. parainfluenzae* is usually a commensal in the upper respiratory tract but may also cause serious illness, such as endocarditis. *Aggregatibacter (Haemophilus) aphrophilus*, another upper respiratory tract commensal, can cause endocarditis, brain abscess, pneumonia, meningitis, and bacteriuria. *H. ducreyi* is responsible for the sexually transmitted disease chancroid (Ledeboer & Doern, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Isolation of *Haemophilus* spp. usually requires the presence of X and/or V factor in the culture medium. The former is most frequently supplied by the incorporation of heat-lysed ("chocolatized") blood cells in agar,

although it may also be provided by whole human, horse, or rabbit blood cells. NAD is commonly supplied by the incorporation of yeast extract or other appropriate supplements in the medium or by a suspension of staphylococci, which is streaked across the agar surface and about which satellite colonies of dependent strains of *Haemophilus* spp. grow. The differential characteristics of members of this genus are listed in Table 58-13.

Requirements for X and V factors are determined by absence or presence of growth on media containing these factors. An alternative method to test for X factor dependence is the porphyrin test described by Kilian, which determines the ability of dependent species to use δ-aminolevulinic acid in the biosynthesis of porphobilinogen and porphyrins. The formation of porphobilinogen can be detected by adding Kovac's reagent to the reaction mixture and observing the development of a red color in the aqueous phase. Alternatively, the formation of porphyrins in the reaction mixture can be demonstrated by red fluorescence under a Wood's lamp. Hemolytic properties of *Haemophilus* spp. can be determined on rabbit or horse blood agar.

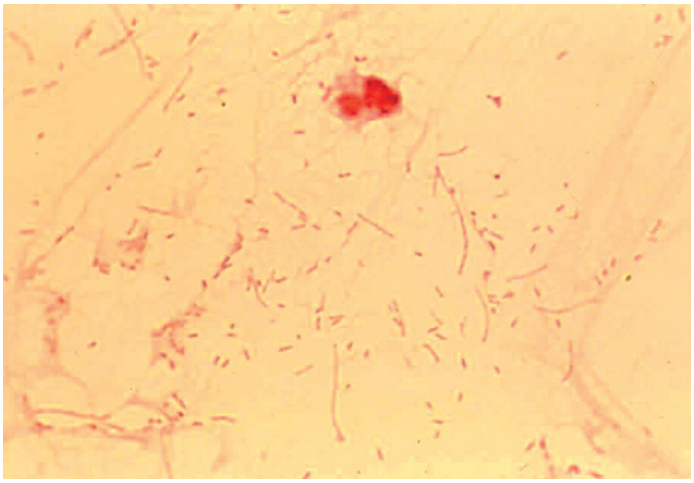


Figure 58-20 Note the pleomorphic nature of the *Haemophilus influenzae* seen in this Gram stain of cerebrospinal fluid.

Aggregatibacter (Haemophilus) aphrophilus must often be distinguished from species such as *Aggregatibacter (Actinobacillus) actinomycetemcomitans*, *Cardiobacterium hominis*, and *Eikenella corrodens* (Table 58-14), all of which have been associated with subacute bacterial endocarditis.

Cultivation of *H. ducreyi* from chancroid lesions is problematic. A Gram-stained smear of material from the lesion may be helpful if gram-negative bacilli in pairs or in rows ("schools of fish") are seen. Figure 58-21 shows a "typical" Gram stain of *H. ducreyi* from clinical material. Material may be inoculated onto GC medium base plus 1% hemoglobin, 5% to 10% fetal calf serum, 1% IsoVitaleX (BBL Microbiology Systems), and 3 μg/mL of vancomycin or Mueller-Hinton agar plus 5% horse blood, 1% cofactor-vitamin-amino acid enrichment, and 3 μg/mL vancomycin.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Currently, the CLSI recommends testing *H. influenzae* isolated from blood or CSF against ampicillin, chloramphenicol, a third-generation cephalosporin, and meropenem (CLSI, 2014). Resistance to ampicillin may be as high as 60% in the United States, varying geographically. Resistance to ampicillin is usually mediated by the production of β-lactamase; however, rare isolates are resistant on the basis of alterations in outer membrane permeability or affinity to penicillin-binding proteins. Resistance to second- or third-generation cephalosporins has not been documented in the United States. Susceptibility testing of *H. influenzae* requires the use of *Haemophilus* test medium (HTM). The recommended treatment for *H. ducreyi* infection is erythromycin; alternative agents include azithromycin,

TABLE 58-13
Differential Characteristics of Medically Important *Haemophilus* Species

	Porphyrin	X Factor Dependent	V Factor Dependent	Fermentation of Sucrose	Hemolysis*	Catalase
Haemophilus influenzae	–	+	+	–	–	+
Haemophilus haemolyticus	–	+	+	–	+	+
Haemophilus parahaemolyticus	+	–	+	+	+	V
Haemophilus ducreyi	–	+	–	–	–	–
Haemophilus parainfluenzae	+	–	+	+		V
Haemophilus pittmaniae	+	–	+	+	+	w
Haemophilus paraphrohaemolyticus	+	–	+	+	+	+

Adapted from Ledeboer NA, Doern GV: Haemophilus. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, p 589.
*On horse and rabbit blood.

TABLE 58-14
Differential Characteristics of *Aggregitabacter (Haemophilus) aphrophilus, Aggregitabacter (Actinobacillus) actinomycetemcomitans, Cardiobacterium hominis, Eikenella corrodens,* and *Kingella kingae**

Test	*A. aphrophilus*	*A. actinomycetemcomitans*	*C. hominis*	*E. corrodens*	*K. kingae*
Oxidase	+/–	–/W	+	+	+
Catalase	–	+	–	–	–
δ-ALA utilization	+	+	+	+	+
V requirement	–	–	–	–	–
Indole	–	–	+	–	–
Urease	–	–	–	–	–
Lysine decarboxylase	–	–	–	+	–
Acid from glucose	+	+	+	–	(+)
Sucrose	+	–	+	–	–
Lactose	+	–	–	–	–
Mannitol	–	+	D	–	–
Xylose	–	D	–	–	–

*For key to symbols, see Table 58-9.
δ-ALA, δ-Aminolevulinic acid; *W,* weak.

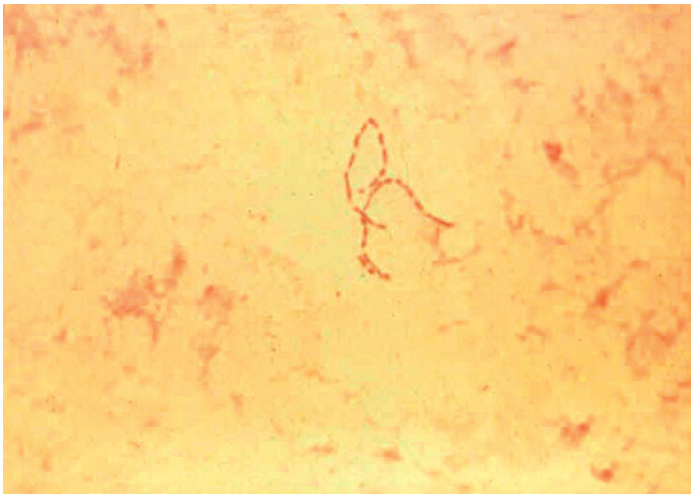


Figure 58-21 *Haemophilus ducreyi* bacilli from a genital lesion.

ciprofloxacin, ceftriaxone, amoxicillin-clavulanate, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Although few data are available on the susceptibility of other *Haemophilus* spp. to antibiotics, resistance is assumed higher than among *H. influenzae* strains (Ledeboer & Doern, 2011).

GRAM-NEGATIVE BACTERIA—THE HACEK BACTERIA

Five small gram-negative coccobacilli are part of the normal oral flora and are associated occasionally with bacterial endocarditis and rarely with other infections. They are opportunists that enter the bloodstream, settle on damaged heart valves, and cause a relatively slowly progressive, indolent form of endocarditis. They typically require an additional 1 to 2 days before they are isolated from blood cultures, and they are uniformly susceptible to many antimicrobial agents (Yew et al, 2014). The word *HACEK* is an acronym for the bacteria responsible for this disease: *Haemophilus* spp. *(influenzae*, *parainfluenzae)*, *Aggregatibacter (Haemophilus) aphrophilus* (most commonly, *Aggregatibacter [Actinobacillus] actinomycetemcomitans*), *Cardiobacterium hominis*, *Eikenella corrodens*, and *Kingella* spp. Some taxonomic changes have been noted more recently, and some of the HACEK members have been reassigned to the genus *Aggregatibacter* (Norskov-Lauritsen & Kilian, 2006). Differential characteristics of the members of this group are listed in Table 58-14.

Haemophilus

H. influenzae and *H. parainfluenzae* were discussed earlier in this chapter. *Aggregatibacter (Haemophilus) aphrophilus* is also part of the HACEK group. It does not require X or V factor, so it can easily grow on blood and chocolate agars, or CO_2 for growth. Along with causing endocarditis, *A. aphrophilus* has been reported in cases of endophthalmitis (following ophthalmic procedures), bacteremia, meningitis, brain abscess, cervical lymphadenitis, empyema, and a few other infectious syndromes. In one study, 39% of patients reported undergoing prior dental procedures before developing their *A. aphrophilus* infection (Huang et al, 2005). It is usually susceptible to β-lactam agents; successful treatment may require combination therapy with a β-lactam and an aminoglycoside.

Aggregatibacter (Actinobacillus)

Characteristics

A. actinomycetemcomitans is a gram-negative, non–spore-forming coccobacillus or short rod. It grows both aerobically and anaerobically. The addition of 5% to 10% CO_2 enhances growth. Colonies on blood agar appear slowly and remain small. A description of "star-shaped" colonies has been given to their appearance on agar media.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Aggregatibacter organisms are found in the mucous membranes of the respiratory and genitourinary tracts of humans and animals. They generally cause disease only in immunocompromised individuals, or when they are accidentally introduced into healthy surrounding tissue—for example, by trauma. *A. actinomycetemcomitans* has a low level of pathogenicity. It derives its species name from its frequent association with actinomycotic lesions. In recent years, however, it has most frequently been reported as a cause of subacute bacterial endocarditis, periodontitis, and brain abscess. Two virulence factors are known: a leukotoxin and a collagenase (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

A. actinomycetemcomitans grows on blood and chocolate agar. After 24–72 hours, colonies are 1–3 mm in diameter with a central wrinkling. The organism is catalase positive, oxidase negative or weakly positive, and urease negative (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011). Additional biochemical assays must be used to differentiate it from other slowly growing, somewhat fastidious gram-negative bacilli (see Table 58-14).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

This organism is resistant to penicillin but is usually susceptible to many other antibiotics, including the cephalosporins, β-lactam–β-lactamase inhibitor combinations, fluoroquinolones, and tetracycline. Methods for performing susceptibilities and interpretation of results can be found in the CLSI document M45-2A (CLSI, 2010).

Cardiobacterium hominis

Characteristics

Cardiobacterium hominis is a gram-negative, non–spore-forming bacillus that is part of the normal oral flora. It is a facultative anaerobe that does not require CO_2, although growth is enhanced in microaerophilic conditions. Growth occurs on blood and chocolate agar but not on MacConkey's agar and is better at longer than 48 hours.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

C. hominis can cause subacute bacterial endocarditis, similar to other HACEK members; it may also be responsible for cases of periodontitis and peritonitis (Bhan et al, 2006). The usual habitat of *C. hominis* is the upper respiratory tract, but it may also be found in the gastrointestinal and genitourinary tracts (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Colonies at 48 hours' incubation are small and may have a yellow pigment, although most are white. The organism is generally oxidase and indole positive but negative for catalase, urease, esculin, and nitrate reduction. Acid may be produced from glucose, maltose, and sucrose (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Isolates are usually susceptible to penicillins and cephalosporins, aminoglycosides, and tetracyclines. Resistance to clindamycin is common. β-Lactamases have been rarely reported (Lu et al, 2000). Methods for performing susceptibilities and interpretation of results can be found in the CLSI document M45-2A (CLSI, 2010).

Eikenella

Characteristics

Formerly classified as *Bacteroides corrodens*, the "corroding bacilli" that are facultatively anaerobic have been assigned to the species *Eikenella corrodens*. *E. corrodens* organisms are oxidase-positive, catalase-negative, nonfermentative, gram-negative bacilli, colonies of which may corrode or pit agar. Growth is enhanced by 5% to 10% CO_2 and/or the presence of hemin (X factor) in the medium.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Little is known about factors contributing to the organism's virulence in human disease; it has a low level of pathogenicity for animals. *E. corrodens* resides predominantly in the oral cavity and is isolated frequently from the upper respiratory tract. Similar to other HACEK bacteria, it is responsible for subacute bacterial endocarditis. It has been recovered from abscesses, cellulitis, and wound infections, often following human bites. Infections are usually mixed with other organisms (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Growth is observed on blood or chocolate agar but not on MacConkey's agar. The most striking features of *E. corrodens* in culture are the distinctive odor of bleach and the characteristic pitting of the agar; however, pitting does not occur with all strains. Colonies appear slowly (2 to 4 days) and are generally small (0.5-1.0 mm in diameter). *E. corrodens* must usually be distinguished from other fastidious, slowly growing gram-negative bacilli (see Table 58-14).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

E. corrodens is susceptible to the penicillins, quinolones, and tetracycline; variably susceptible to aminoglycosides; and resistant to clindamycin and metronidazole. β-Lactamases have been described in clinical strains, but resistance can be overcome with the use of β-lactamase inhibitors in combination with β-lactam antibiotics (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011).

Kingella

Characteristics

Kingella has three recognized species: *K. kingae* (the HACEK species), *Kingella oralis*, and *Kingella denitrificans*. They are gram-negative rods to coccobacilli, requiring increased CO_2 for optimum growth. Colonies will grow on blood (β-hemolytic) and chocolate, but not on MacConkey's agar, after 2 days.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

K. kingae is the most pathogenic of the three species. It is a member of the HACEK group, causing an indolent, slowly progressive endocarditis. In addition, it is associated with septic arthritis/osteomyelitis (usually in children younger than 4 years of age) (Sena et al, 2009; Yagupsky, 2015) and septicemia. *K. oralis* has been isolated from patients with periodontitis, but with unclear clinical relevance. *K. denitrificans* is a rare clinical isolate that can be associated with endocarditis (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

K. kingae is oxidase positive and nonmotile and produces acid from glucose, although in delayed fashion. Indole and catalase are negative.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

K. kingae is susceptible to penicillin and most antibiotics to which other members of the HACEK group are susceptible. β-Lactamases have been described in clinical strains, but resistance can be overcome with the use of β-lactamase inhibitors in combination with β-lactam antibiotics (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011). Methods for performing susceptibilities and interpretation of results can be found in the CLSI document M45-2A (CLSI, 2010).

MISCELLANEOUS GRAM-NEGATIVE BACILLI

Legionella

Characteristics

Legionella spp. are non–spore-forming, faintly staining, thin, gram-negative bacilli. *Legionella* spp. were first recognized to cause human disease during an epidemic of pneumonia that occurred among members of the Pennsylvania American Legion who had gathered in Philadelphia to celebrate the 1976 bicentennial. There are now more than 52 named species and a number of unnamed species. Most clinical cases have been due to *Legionella pneumophila*, serogroup 1. Figure 58-22 demonstrates excellent staining of *Legionella* spp. with a Dieterle silver stain.

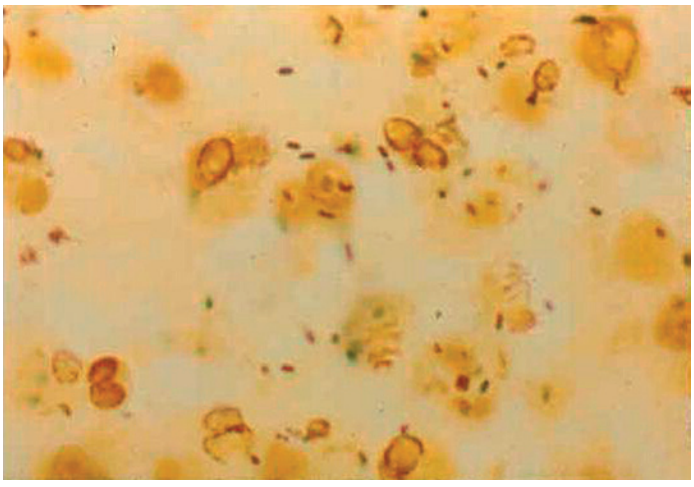


Figure 58-22 *Legionella pneumophila* **in a clinical specimen stained with a Dieterle silver stain.**

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Legionella spp. are found in the environment in association with water. Growth within environmental protozoa is thought to be an important factor for survival of the organism in the environment. Transmission to humans occurs through exposure to contaminated water (e.g., faucets, shower heads, public fountains). Human-to-human infection and laboratory-acquired infections are not known to occur.

Infections can be subclinical, pulmonary, or extrapulmonary. Infection is usually manifested as an acute, fibrinopurulent pneumonia with lobular distribution. Histologically, there is an alveolar infiltrate of neutrophils and macrophages, accompanied by fibrin and red blood cell extravasation. *Legionella* spp. may be found within alveolar macrophages. Figure 58-23 shows the Gram stain of sputum of a patient with *L. pneumophila* pneumonia. *L. pneumophila* has also been isolated from cultures of blood.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Legionella spp. may be isolated on BCYE agar supplemented with growth factors, including l-cystine, ferric salt, and α-ketoglutarate. This medium may be made selective for culture of nonsterile body sites by the addition of cefamandole, polymyxin B, and anisomycin or polymyxin B, anisomycin, and vancomycin (Edelstein, 2011). Chocolate agar may also support the growth of legionellae. Treatment of sputum with a weak acid (0.2M HCl/KCl pH 2.2) for 4 minutes or with heat (60° C) for 2 minutes may help to reduce contamination from other organisms but may reduce the number of legionellas as well.

Inoculated media should be incubated for at least 5 days in a humid atmosphere containing no more than 2% to 5% CO_2. Colonies often appear iridescent and have a sticky consistency. Isolates with typical Gram stain morphology should be subcultured to blood agar, where no growth will be observed. These organisms may be weakly oxidase and catalase

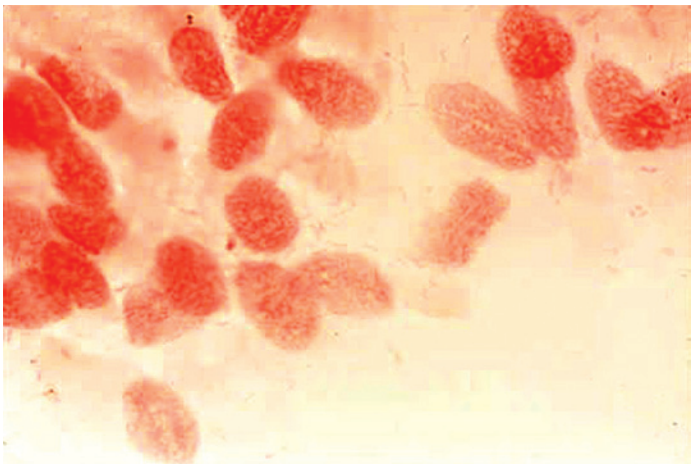


Figure 58-23 *Legionella pneumophila* **faintly staining negative with Gram stain of pulmonary infiltrate.**

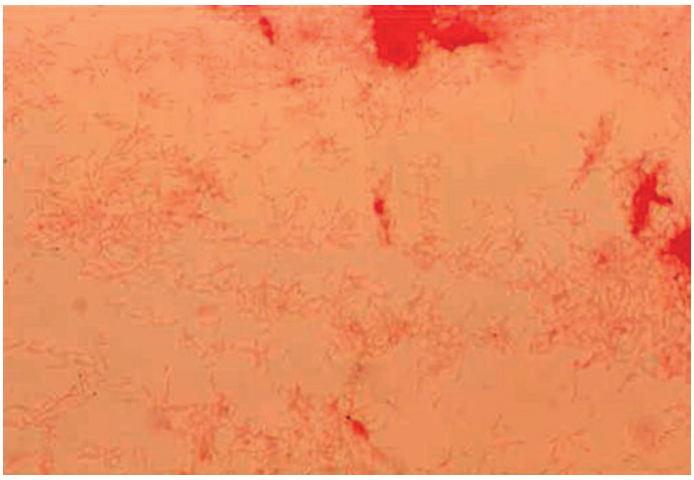


Figure 58-24 **Gram stain of culture of** *Legionella pneumophila.*

positive, are gelatinase positive, and often are motile. Identification of this organism is most accurately achieved using type-specific antibody assays or sequencing with appropriate primers. Figure 58-24 shows a Gram stain of *L. pneumophila* from culture.

Legionella spp. can be detected or identified by direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) staining of specimens or colonies in cultures, but the sensitivity of direct DFA examination of respiratory specimens is very low compared to newer methods of detection and is not commonly utilized today. The urine antigen test for *L. pneumophila* serogroup 1 has a reported sensitivity of 80% to 90%, although it should be noted that antigenuria may persist for many months following infection. Use of the urinary antigen test within and outside of the intensive care unit has been shown to have a positive impact on patient cases (Edelstein, 2011; Couturier et al, 2014).

The diagnosis of legionellosis can also be established serologically by detecting a fourfold or greater rise in antibody titer to at least 1:128. A single antibody titer of 1:256 is presumptive evidence of past infection. The sensitivity of serologic diagnosis for disease caused by species other than *L. pneumophila* serogroup 1 is not known, and the specificity of antibody tests for disease caused by other species is less than that of *L. pneumophila* serogroup 1. PCR assays for direct detection of *Legionella* spp. in clinical specimens and for sequencing identification of cultured isolates have been developed. Sensitivities of 64% to 100% and specificities of 88% to 100% have been reported (Edelstein, 2011). Use of these assays can provide more rapid results, especially when used in direct specimen testing; in addition, identification of species other than *L. pneumophila*, which is not possible with DFA and serology, could increase the demand for such assays. PCR for *Legionella* spp. directly in clinical samples will be performed most often in the future as assays become cleared for clinical laboratory testing to enhance recovery or in assays in which other respiratory pathogens can be simultaneously searched for.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Because of the intracellular nature of *Legionella* spp. in clinical infection, in vitro susceptibility test results do not predict the clinical response of antibiotics. Susceptibility testing should not be performed. Therapy generally consists of a macrolide (clarithromycin and azithromycin are as efficacious and result in fewer side effects than erythromycin) or a fluoroquinolone alone or in combination. Other agents that have been used include trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, rifampin, or a tetracycline (Valve et al, 2009; Edelstein, 2011). No β-lactam antibiotic has acceptable intracellular activity against *L. pneumophila*. Macrolides and fluoroquinolones should always be efficacious against infection with *Legionella micdadei*, *longbeacheae*, *bozemanae*, or *dumoffi* (Muder & Yu, 2002).

Bordetella

Characteristics

Bordetella spp. are strictly aerobic, nonfermentative, catalase-positive, minute coccobacilli that can oxidize amino acids but do not ferment sugars. Members of the genus *Bordetella* include *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis*, which are responsible for pertussis or a pertussis-like disease, respectively, in humans; *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. avium*, which have been responsible for respiratory disease in humans; and *B. hinzii*, *B. trematum*, *B. holmseii*, *B. petri*, and *B. ansorpii*, which have been found in a wide variety of human nonrespiratory infections, primarily in immunocompromised hosts (Wirsing et al, 2011).

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Bordetella spp. are found in the respiratory tracts of warm-blooded animals. *Bordetella bronchiseptica* primarily causes kennel cough in dogs, although it may rarely cause pertussis-like symptoms in immunocompromised human hosts. *Bordetella parapertussis*, which infects both humans and lambs, is an uncommon human pathogen. Infection may be asymptomatic or may cause a pertussis-like illness, most frequently bronchitis. *B. pertussis*, the etiologic agent of whooping cough, causes disease only in humans. In 2012, more than 48,000 cases of whooping cough were reported to the CDC, the highest number seen in the United States since 1955. In California alone in 2014, an outbreak with nearly 10,000 cases was reported (cdc.gov/pertussis). Most of the increased cases have been associated in nonvaccinated individuals. Whooping cough is less easily diagnosed in adults, but there are indications that the number of cases is increasing in adults as well as children (McGuiness et al, 2013).

B. pertussis and *B. parapertussis* can cause pertussis or whooping cough, although cases due to the latter are usually milder and of shorter duration. *B. pertussis* is transmitted via droplets from other infected individuals; in nonvaccinated individuals, the transmission rate can be as high as 90%, whereas lower rates are seen in vaccinated populations. Protection against *B. pertussis* wanes over the years post infection or vaccination, so currently it is recommended that adults be revaccinated with the acellular pertussis vaccine (Tdap) in order to reduce the burden of circulating *B. pertussis*, especially to newborns and infants (Cortese et al, 2007; Spector & Maziarz, 2013).

B. pertussis, *B. parapertussis*, and *B. bronchiseptica* produce a number of virulence factors, including adhesions; autotransporters (filamentous hemagglutinin, FHA, fimbriae or FIM, and pertactin, or PRN, which is highly immunogenic); and toxins (adenylate cyclase and lipopolysaccharide, or LPS). In addition, *B. pertussis* produces pertussis toxin (PT), an exotoxin that is involved in colonization of the respiratory tract and establishment of the infection with *B. pertussis*, and a virulence factor that has ADP-ribosyltransferase activity and ribosylates G proteins. PT also induces lymphocytosis and suppresses chemotaxis oxidative responses and the overall activity of neutrophils and macrophages (Wirsing et al, 2011). It is thought that in a pertussis infection, the organism first attaches to the ciliated epithelium of the respiratory tract and immune effector cells by means of fimbriae, FHA, PT, and pertactin. PT and adenylate cyclase toxin work together to inhibit the host's immune system, and tracheal cytotoxin damages the respiratory epithelium. Results may include inflammation and epithelial necrosis; leukocytosis and lymphocytosis; accumulation of secretions; cough; and ultimately bronchopneumonia, hypoxic episodes, and encephalopathy (Xu et al, 2009). *B. pertussis* contains a protective antigen that when combined with antibody abolishes its infectivity. It appears, however, that both cellular immunity and humoral immunity are needed to eradicate the organism.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The rate of isolation of *B. pertussis* from patients declines with the duration of illness. The most commonly recommended specimen is the nasopharyngeal aspirate, especially in infants and young children. In adults, older children, and adolescents, a nasopharyngeal swab may be adequate if taken by trained professions, although aspirates are still considered more sensitive for recovery overall (Wirsing et al, 2011). *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* in particular are sensitive to transport and should be cultured as quickly as possible after collection or placed into special transport devices. The other species of *Bordetella* are not sensitive to transport conditions. In general, swabs or aspirates should be inoculated onto suitable media, such as Regan-Lowe agar, as quickly as possible after collection. The medium used is usually supplemented with an antibiotic such as cephalexin to suppress contaminating bacteria. Incubate at least 7 days at ambient atmosphere, 35° to 37° C. For shipment to reference laboratories, the inoculated medium should be incubated for at least 24 hours in ambient air at 35° C prior to transport to allow some initial growth of the organism. Isolation of *B. pertussis* from culture is very specific, so sensitivity will depend on the patient's age, the duration of the illness, and the patient's vaccination status.

Direct examination of smears stained with fluorescein-conjugated *B. pertussis* monoclonal or polyclonal antiserum may provide a rapid diagnosis; however, DFA assays suffer from low sensitivity (30% to 71%) and low specificity. Results of DFA should be considered presumptive only and should be used as an adjunct to culture or PCR (Wirsing et al, 2011). Direct detection of *B. pertussis* in clinical specimens by means of PCR is the best method for detection of *B. pertussis*. Specimen collection for PCR is the same as that for culture, but transport is less of an issue when PCR is being used for detection. A study examining a few transport devices demonstrated equal performance among them, and transport times are not as critical as they are when culture is the method of detection (Arbefeville et al, 2014). As more commercial products become available, the reproducibility of results between laboratories have improved (Leber, 2014). A survey of many public health laboratories using different PCR methods revealed comparable results that were better than had been reported in a previous survey (Williams et al, 2015). PCR test results, however, may remain positive longer than results obtained with culture or DFA, even with appropriate antimicrobial therapy. PCR methods for the direct detection of *B. parapertussis* in clinical specimens are also available (Arbefeville et al, 2014), and consideration should be given to use of a PCR that can detect both organisms, because in some outbreaks, a significant cause of whooping cough is actually *B. parapertussis* (Wirsing et al, 2011).

Culture for *B. pertussis* provides the most specific diagnosis of whooping cough and enables a laboratory to perform susceptibility testing and/or genotypic analysis if required. Colonies of *B. pertussis* are small, smooth, round, and shiny and may have the appearance of a drop of mercury. Organisms with typical colony morphology and Gram stain appearance should be subcultured to blood agar to verify the absence of growth on this medium. Positive catalase and oxidase reactions and

negative urease can be used for presumptive identification of an organism as *B. pertussis*. *B. parapertussis* grows more rapidly and will grow on blood agar and occasionally on MacConkey's agar. Colonies are oxidase negative and catalase and urease positive. *B. bronchiseptica* grows well on both blood and MacConkey's agars and biochemically is the most active of the three. It is catalase, oxidase, urease, and nitrate reduction positive. *B. holmseii* has been described more recently in the genus, not as a cause of whooping cough, but rather in association with bacteremia, endocarditis, and respiratory illness in immunocompromised patients, especially in asplenic patients (Shepard et al, 2004). *B. holmseii* will grow well on blood agar, and its appearance on MacConkey's agar may be delayed. It is negative for oxidase, nitrate reduction, and urease. Other *Bordetella* spp., including *B. hinzii*, *B. trematum*, and *B. avium*, grow on both blood agar and MacConkey's agar and are motile, unlike all other members of the genus (Wirsing et al, 2011).

Serologic methods for *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* may be used to make the diagnosis of whooping in nonvaccinated older children, adolescents, and adults; EIA is the usual method of choice. Demonstration of seroconversion or a significant rise in concentration of IgG against PT is thought to be the most sensitive and specific test. Serology, however, should not be used for 1 year after a person is vaccinated with the acellular pertussis vaccine. In a study comparing culture, PCR, and serology for diagnosis of pertussis, if a minimum of two antigens to *B. pertussis* (IgG, IgA, or IgM) were obtained in both acute and convalescent sera, serology was found to be as sensitive as PCR, and both were more sensitive than culture (Cengiz et al, 2009).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Antimicrobial agents probably play no role in the therapy of pertussis, but nasopharyngeal cultures become negative after 1 to 2 days of treatment, which may prevent bacterial complications in patients with the disease and may be effective in preventing spread of the disease to nonimmune contacts. Susceptibility testing is not indicated for *B. pertussis*, and methods are not standardized. A macrolide (erythromycin, azithromycin, or clarithromycin) is the drug of choice for treatment and prophylaxis; trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (SXT) is an acceptable alternative in patients with macrolide intolerance and in those in whom the isolate is resistant to the macrolides, which occurs very rarely (Wirsing et al, 2011).

Prevention

Several formulations of vaccines can be used to prevent diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis. Some are combined with vaccines to prevent other diseases and reduce the total number of injections that someone receives at one office visit. In the United States, DTaP, Tdap, and Td vaccines are most commonly used. DTaP is given to children younger than 7 years of age, and Tdap and Td are given to older children and adults (cdc.gov/vaccines/vpd-vac/pertussis/default.htm).

Brucella

Characteristics

Brucella spp. are small, gram-negative coccobacillary organisms (0.5-0.7 μm × 0.6-1.5 μm). In smears, they occur predominantly as single coccobacilli, but they may occur in pairs or in short chains. They have been described as having the appearance of sand. They are nonmotile, strictly aerobic, catalase- and usually oxidase-positive organisms. They are nonfermenters. They can grow on a variety of laboratory media, but growth is often enhanced by the presence of 5% to 10% CO_2 and the addition of blood or serum. Of the recognized species, *Brucella melitensis*, *Brucella abortus*, *Brucella suis*, and *Brucella canis* are human pathogens, although *B. canis* has reduced virulence for humans as compared with other species. *B. ovis* is a pathogen of sheep, and *B. neotomae* has been isolated from the desert wood rat. Three species have been recovered from marine animals: *B. delphini*, *B. pinnipediae*, and *B. cetaceae*. All species hydrolyze urea, except *B. ovis*, and this remains a significant characteristic of the genus (Petersen et al, 2011).

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Brucella spp. are intracellular bacteria that infect a wide range of animal species (including humans) and have been found in some insects and ticks. They are important veterinary and human pathogens. Preferential hosts are sheep and goats for *B. melitensis*, cattle for *B. abortus*, swine for *B. suis*, and dogs for *B. canis;* however, each species may occasionally infect other animals. Humans become infected by inhalation of the organism; by direct contact with infected material, including animal carcasses, fetal membranes, vaginal discharge, fetuses, skin, or mucous membranes; or by ingestion of unpasteurized milk or milk products from infected animals. To prevent infection with *Brucella* spp., CDC recommends not consuming undercooked meats or unpasteurized milk, cheese, or ice cream and related dairy products. If animals are handled, use of rubber gloves, goggles, and protective gowns/aprons is essential to prevent infection. Approximately 100 cases of human brucellosis are reported per year in the United States; in 2010, there were 105 reported cases, with half of these in California or Texas. A common risk factor for brucellosis in the United States is consumption of imported cheese made from unpasteurized goat's milk. In addition, brucellosis is the most often reported disease associated with laboratory accidents, so care must always be taken when working with specimens and/or cultures from suspected cases (cdc.gov/brucella).

Local lymphadenopathy often occurs with dissemination and secondary localization in the reticuloendothelial system and formation of granulomas in the liver, spleen, bone, genitourinary tract, lungs, and soft tissues. Organisms may be seen within phagocytes. Signs and symptoms are often variable and nonspecific, with chills, fever, sweats, and anorexia occurring frequently. The fever is characteristically diurnal ("undulant"). The incubation period is generally considered to be 1 to 4 weeks. Although specific virulence factors have not been demonstrated, the intracellular nature of the organisms and their survival intracellularly contribute to the virulence and pathogenicity of the organism. In addition, the urease produced by most species enables passage through the stomach when infection occurs through ingestion. Brucella-containing vacuoles enable escape from the host immune system and provide an acidic environment to avoid antibiotic killing (Petersen et al, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Brucella spp. are recovered most often from blood and bone marrow and less often from material obtained from spleen and liver abscesses. The organism grows on standard laboratory media, including *Brucella*, blood, chocolate, and trypticase soy agar. Some strains will grow on MacConkey's agar. *Brucella* spp. will grow in media used for culturing blood specimens and should be held 10 to 14 days, although bottles may become positive in as little as 5 to 7 days (Petersen et al, 2011). *Brucella* spp. are recognized as Class A bioterrorism organisms, and as such should be handled only in public health laboratories and/or by the CDC. Identification and testing of this organism are described here for completeness but should not be performed in sentinel laboratories, which include most hospital laboratories.

Solid media should be incubated in an atmosphere containing 5% to 10% CO_2. These organisms grow slowly, and even after 48 hours of incubation, colonies may be difficult to see. Organisms can be presumptively identified as *Brucella* spp. based on a characteristic Gram stain appearance and may be positive for catalase, oxidase, and urease. Urease activity is manifested rapidly (about 15 minutes) by *B. suis* and more slowly (2 to 24 hours) by *B. melitensis* and *B. abortus*. Because brucellosis can be laboratory acquired, laboratory personnel should be notified if this organism is suspected, and all manipulations of possible *Brucella* spp. should be conducted in a biological safety cabinet (Petersen et al, 2011).

Identification of *Brucella* spp. to the species level requires tests for CO_2 requirement, H_2S production, urea hydrolysis, dye sensitivity, and phage sensitivity. Most hospital laboratories refer this testing to State Health Departments or other reference laboratories. Molecular tools such as PCR have become more effective means of identifying cases of brucellosis (Queipo-Ortuno et al, 2005).

There are many serologic tests employed in the laboratory diagnosis of brucellosis. The serum agglutination test (SAT) is among the most widely used; however, it has limitations, including false-negative results in chronic or complicated cases, cross-reactivity with *Francisella tularensis*, and a 24-hour turnaround time. The slide agglutination test is simpler and faster (10 minutes) and is relatively good in acute cases, although it is also prone to false-negative and false-positive reactions. The Indirect Coombs test is more useful in complicated cases, but it does take up to 48 hours for a result. ELISA is the method of choice in most cases of chronic, complicated cases and is very sensitive and specific. Brucella agglutination titers of greater than 1:160 are usually considered positive, although lower titers with SAT have been reported. It is recommended that two of the above tests be used in combination for diagnosis to limit misdiagnosis (Petersen et al, 2011).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Several agents are effective against species of *Brucella*, including doxycycline, aminoglycosides, rifampin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, some quinolones, and cephalosporins. Combination therapy is recommended because studies have shown more failure and relapses when monotherapy

is used (Skalsky et al, 2008). For uncomplicated cases, the WHO recommends treatment with doxycycline and rifampin for 6 to 8 weeks, and longer treatment periods are recommended for cases of neurobrucellosis and patients with endocarditis (Petersen et al, 2011. Although treatment failures do occur, they are not due to antimicrobial resistance, and susceptibility testing is not recommended, although the CLSI describes a method using a Mueller Hinton broth dilution to determine the MICs of tetracycline and doxycycline. Such testing, if needed, would be done at a public health laboratory or CDC because sentinel laboratories should not be working with these possible bioterrorism organisms (CLSI, 2010; Petersen et al, 2011).

Pasteurella

Characteristics

Pasteurellae are facultatively anaerobic, oxidase- and catalase-positive, nonmotile, gram-negative bacteria that range morphologically from coccobacilli to long filamentous rods. Of the eight species known to infect humans *(Pasteurella multocida*, *Pasteurella bettyae*, *Pasteurella canis*, *Pasteurella dagmatis*, *Pasteurella stomatis*, *Pasteurella pneumotropica*, *Pasteurella haemolytica*, *Pasteurella aerogenes)*, *P. multocida* is the most important human pathogen. *Pasteurella* spp. are phenotypically similar to the *Actinobacillus* spp., and DNA–DNA hybridization studies and comparisons of 16S rRNA have shown that *P. pneumotropica*, *P. haemolytica*, and *P. aerogenes* are more closely related to the genus *Actinobacillus* than to the genus *Pasteurella*.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

Pasteurella spp., especially *P. multocida*, may be found as commensals in the upper respiratory tracts of fowl and mammals and are frequently isolated from animal bite or scratch wounds. Cat bites more often become infected than dog bites. Local infections can become systemic, and a number of reports have described septicemia, osteomyelitis, and meningitis. Pasteurellae have also been associated with respiratory tract infections, including sinusitis, peritonsillar abscess, mastoiditis, pulmonary abscess, pneumonia, empyema, bronchitis, and bronchiectasis, usually in patients with underlying chronic pulmonary disease (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011; Wilkie et al, 2012). Little is known about the virulence factors, but a dermonecrotic toxin that targets G proteins, similar to that found in *Bordetella* spp., *E. coli*, and *Yersinia*, has been recently found in *P. multocida*; further studies may elucidate how this toxin plays a role in the pathogenicity of *Pasturella* spp. (Wilson & Ho, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Pasteurellae grow well on blood agar and are only rarely able to grow on gram-negative differential media, such as EMB or MacConkey's agar. The finding of a gram-negative bacillus that grows on blood agar only and is oxidase and indole positive and ortho-Nitrophenyl-β-galactoside (ONPG) negative provides strong presumptive evidence for the isolation of *P. multocida*. In addition, susceptibility to penicillin, as evidenced by a wide zone of inhibition around a penicillin disk on a blood agar plate, is good evidence that the isolate is *P. multocida*.

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Pasteurellae are usually susceptible to penicillin, broad-spectrum cephalosporins, tetracyclines, and quinolones, but they are resistant to macrolides, amikacin, and narrow-spectrum cephalosproins. Penicillin is the usual therapeutic drug of choice. Rare strains of *P. multocida* have produced β-lactamase, but the combination of a β-lactam with a β-lactamase inhibitor drug should be effective (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011). Although susceptibility testing is not usually required, a method is available from the CLSI (CLSI, 2010).

Francisella tularensis

Characteristics

F. tularensis is a very small, strictly aerobic, coccobacillary to pleomorphic rod-shaped, gram-negative bacillus that requires cystine or cysteine for growth. Faint bipolar staining occurs with aniline dyes.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

F. tularensis is found in both wild and domesticated animals, birds, arthropods, water, mud, and animal feces. The primary reservoir for this organism is the cottontail rabbit. Transmission to humans occurs through bite of tick or deerfly, direct cutaneous inoculation from the handling of an infected or dead animal, conjunctival inoculation, inhalation, or ingestion of undercooked infected animal meat or ingestion of contaminated water. Several forms of the disease occur, including ulceroglandular, glandular, oculoglandular, oropharyngeal, intestinal, pneumonic, and typhoidal. There were 203 cases of tularemia reported to the CDC in the United States between 2004 and 2013 (cdc.gov/francisella); disease has been reported from every state except Hawaii. *F. tularensis* is considered to be one of the class A agents of bioterrorism; because of this, workup of suspected cases is limited to approved laboratories. Most clinical laboratories are considered sentinel laboratories, and if *F. tularensis* is suspected, isolates should be sent to State Health Departments or other selected laboratories (Petersen et al, 2011).

Tularemia manifests in various forms after an incubation period of 1 to 10 days. Headache, fever, chills, vomiting, and myalgias characteristically occur at the onset. In ulceroglandular disease, lymphadenitis and lymphadenopathy occur in the region draining the primary lesion. The lesion is initially papular and is later ulcerative. Oculoglandular disease is characterized by inflammation of the conjunctiva and usually a papule of the lower lid with lymphadenitis of the preauricular, parotid, submaxillary, and anterior cervical nodes. The intestinal form of tularemia is characterized by ulcerative lesions of the mouth, throat, and upper gastrointestinal tract. The CDC recommends the following protective measures for prevention of tularemia: Use insect repellent when outdoors in tick- and deerfly-infested areas, use gloves when handling potentially infected animals, and do not mow over dead animals (cdc.gov/tularemia). There is no safe and efficacious vaccine available as yet to protect against tularemia.

Virulence appears to be related to the ability of this pathogen for intracellular replication, especially within macrophages, and its ability to evade host recognition. In addition, its ability to control reactive oxygen and nitrogen species provides mechanisms for its intracellular survival, adding to its pathogenicity (Steiner et al, 2014). Tularemia should be suspected in anyone who has been in an endemic area, has had contact with wild animals or livestock, has a history of tick bite, has been engaged in farming operations, has drunk impure water, or has been exposed to cultures or infected animals in the laboratory. Trappers, hunters, fur and meat industry workers, agricultural workers, and laboratory personnel are at greatest risk. Because of its protean manifestations, tularemia is readily confused with many other diseases, such as brucellosis, anthrax, sporotrichosis, typhoid fever, tuberculosis, histoplasmosis, and syphilis.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Material suitable for examination includes fluid or curettings from the primary lesion, aspirates of enlarged regional nodes, sputum, pharyngeal washes, and gastric aspirates. Due to the low dose of organisms required for infection, care must be taken by all laboratory personnel when handling suspicious specimens. Bacterial isolation is difficult because the organism has special growth requirements and grows slowly, allowing for overgrowth of other organisms present in the specimen. The organism grows on glucose-cysteine agar supplemented with 5% defibrinated rabbit blood, chocolate agar with IsoVitalX, or BCYE agar. Some isolates may even grow on blood agar or trypticase soy agar. If clinical material is contaminated by other organisms, penicillin, polymyxin B, and cycloheximide can be added to inhibit their growth. Special care must be exercised in handling infected material to prevent aerosolization or direct contact with the skin. Clinicians should always notify laboratory personnel if *F. tularensis* is suspected so proper precautions can be taken to prevent exposure to this organism (www.bt.cdc.gov) (Petersen et al, 2011).

Cultures are incubated at 35°C with or without added CO_2. Colonies usually appear within 2 to 4 days and are blue-gray to white, round, smooth, and slightly mucoid. On blood-containing agar, a small zone of α-hemolysis may be seen. Isolates are weakly catalase positive, nonmotile, and non–spore-forming, and they react with only a few carbohydrates. Because working with the organism in the laboratory is dangerous, suspected isolates should be sent to the local public health laboratory or the CDC for confirmation. MALDI-Tof has also been shown to identify some of the agents of bioterrorism, including *F. tularensis* (Murray, 2010).

The diagnosis of *F. tularensis* can be established serologically. Agglutination titers determined by tube agglutination (TA) or microagglutination (MA) are the standard methods utilized for detection of antibodies to *Francisella*. In the United States, a single TA titer of 1:160 or greater or an MA titer of 1:128 or greater is considered positive (Petersen et al, 2011). As with other serological assays, demonstration of a fourfold change in titers between an acute and convalescent serum would also be considered positive. *Brucella* agglutinins may also rise nonspecifically, but usually to a considerably lower level (Petersen et al, 2011)).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

All isolates are β-lactamase positive, so penicillins and cephalosporins are not effective. The antibiotics recommended for treatment and prophylaxis include chloramphenicol, ciprofloxacin, gentamicin, streptomycin, and

tetracycline; resistance to these agents has not been reported as yet (Petersen et al, 2011). CLSI has published interpretative criteria and a method utilizing Mueller Hinton media supplemented with 2% IsoVitalex for broth microdilution. However, most clinical laboratories should not perform susceptibility testing because all suspected isolates should be submitted to a public health laboratory or CDC for such testing (CLSI, 2010).

Gardnerella

Characteristics

Gardnerella vaginalis is a thin, gram-variable rod or coccobacillus. Over the years, this organism, in its association with bacterial vaginosis, has been called *Haemophilus vaginalis* and *Corynebacterium vaginale*, further demonstrating its gram-variable appearance. Catalase is not produced, and cells are nonmotile. Growth is best observed after 48 hours of incubation in a 5% CO_2-enriched atmosphere. Colonies are small and exhibit β-hemolysis on media containing rabbit or human blood.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

This organism is associated with bacterial vaginosis but is not the cause. It has been found in the blood of patients with postpartum fever and can cause infection in newborns. *G. vaginalis* is a part of the anorectal flora of healthy adults of both sexes, as well as of children. It is part of the endogenous vaginal flora of women of reproductive age.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Diagnosis of bacterial vaginosis (BV) does not require culture. The diagnosis is made by direct examination of vaginal secretions for the presence of clue cells (epithelial cells covered with bacteria on the cell margins) and small gram-negative rods and coccobacilli, the absence of lactobacilli (gram-positive thin rods), a pH greater than 4.5, and a fishy amine odor after addition of 10% potassium hydroxide (KOH) to the secretions. A scored Gram stain is the laboratory test that should be performed when vaginal discharge is submitted for the diagnosis of BV (Nugent et al, 1991). Alternatively, a nucleic acid probe (Affirm, Becton Dickinson Microbiology Systems, Sparks, Md.) is available that tests for a high concentration of *G. vaginalis* as a marker for bacterial vaginosis. In comparison to PAP smears, the AFFIRM was more sensitive and specific in the diagnosis of BV (Briselden & Hillier, 1994; Levi et al, 2011). When observed in culture, the organism is presumptively identified based on the presence of diffuse beta-hemolysis around small colonies (<0.5 mm) after 24 to 48 hours on medium containing human or rabbit blood and a consistent Gram stain morphology for *G. vaginalis* (Funke & Bernard, 2011).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Susceptibility testing of *G. vaginalis* is not recommended, and no guidelines exist for performing this testing. Metronidazole is the drug of choice for bacterial vaginosis. Systemic infection due to *G. vaginalis* may be treated with ampicillin because this organism has not been found to produce β-lactamase (Funke & Bernard, 2011).

Capnocytophaga

Capnocytophaga is a genus of facultatively anaerobic, gram-negative rods to filamentous bacteria. Species include *Capnocytophaga ochraceus*, *Capnocytophaga canimorsus* (formerly DF-2), *Capnocytophaga gingivalis*, and *Capnocytophaga sputigena*, among others. *C. canimorsus* is part of the oral flora of dogs and cats; the others can be found as part of normal human oral flora.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

C. ochraceus can cause transient bacteremia or endocarditis in both immunocompromised and immunocompetent patients (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011). It also has been associated with periodontitis. *C. canimorsus* is a cause of a fatal septicemia following wound infection subsequent to the bite of dogs or cats. Patients with this fatal septicemia have predisposing factors of a prior splenectomy or alcoholism (Oehler et al, 2009; Gaastra & Lipman, 2010). Meningitis, endocarditis, arthritis, and eye infection have also been documented with *C. canimorsus* (Gasch et al, 2009). Figure 58-25 shows a Wright's stain of *C. canimorsus* seen on the blood film of a patient with *C. canimorsus* septicemia. Note the intracellular nature of the bacilli.

Isolation of *Capnocytophaga* spp. requires inoculation of blood or chocolate agar and incubation in a 5% to 10% CO_2 environment, generally for longer than 24 hours. Colonies are usually slightly pigmented yellow or orange and may spread because of a "sliding" motility. Gram stains often show long, thin, spindle-shaped cells, almost fusiform in appearance. Figure 58-26 shows the Gram stain of *C. ochraceus*, demonstrating the fusiform bacilli. *C. ochraceus* is oxidase and catalase negative, and *C. canimorsus* is oxidase and catalase positive. *Capnocytophaga* spp. are usually susceptible to cephalosporins, macrolides, tetracycline, clindamycin, and quinolones, but are resistant to colistin and the aminoglycosides (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011).

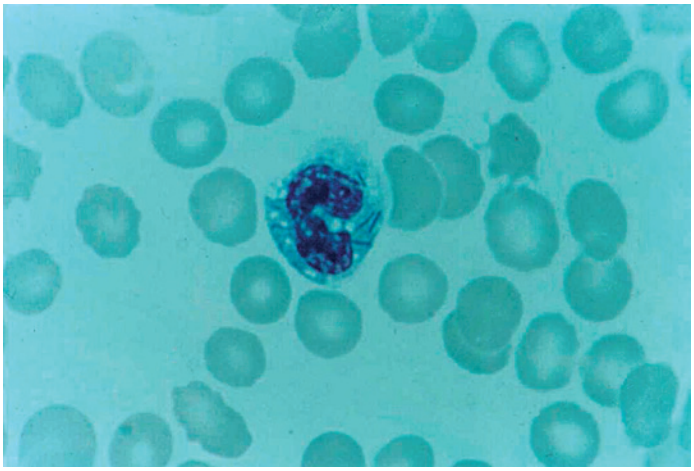


Figure 58-25 Blood smear positive for *Capnocytophaga canimorsus* in patient with septicemia (Wright's stain).

Figure 58-26 Gram stain of *Capnocytophaga ochraceus.* Note the fusiform bacilli.

Calymmatobacterium granulomatis (Klebsiella granulomatis)

Characteristics

Calymmatobacterium granulomatis is a gram-negative, nonmotile, encapsulated, pleomorphic rod that may be cultured in yolk sacs or on fresh egg yolk medium. The organism possesses antigenic and molecular determinants similar to those of *Klebsiella* spp., leading taxonomists to now classify it among the Enterobacteriaceae as *Klebsiella granulomatis* (Abbott, 2011).

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

The organism does not produce disease in animals. In humans, it causes granuloma inguinale (donovanosis), a rare sexually transmitted disease seen predominantly in tropical countries, characterized by ulcerogranulomatous lesions of the skin and mucosa of the genital and inguinal areas (O'Farrell & Moi, 2010; Abbott, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

A fragment of tissue removed from the margin of an ulcer is pressed and rubbed against a glass slide and stained with Wright's or Giemsa stain. The finding of small, straight or curved, pleomorphic rods with rounded ends and characteristic polar granules, giving a "safety pin" appearance within mononuclear cells, is the most effective way of establishing the diagnosis. *K. granulomatis* does not grow on routine culture media (Abbott, 2011). PCR methods for detection of this organism along with other agents of genital ulcers are available (Bialasiewicz et al, 2012).

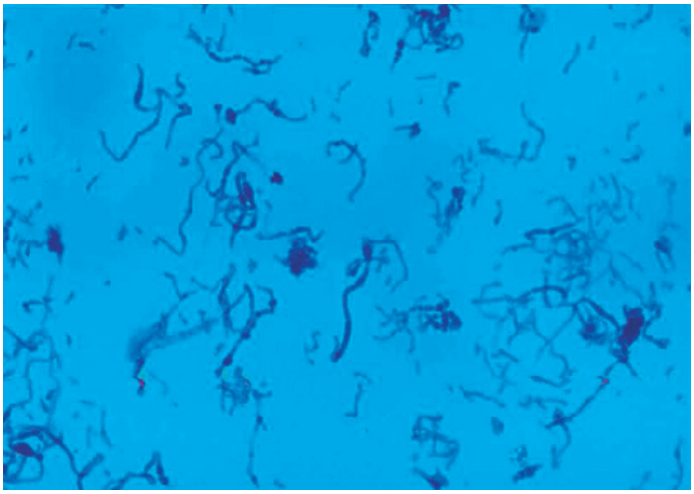


Figure 58-27 Gram stain of Streptobacillus moniliformis from culture. (Courtesy Dr. Nancy Cornish.)

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

The tetracyclines, macrolides, ampicillin, and chloramphenicol are active against *K. granulomatis*. Azithromycin is the standard treatment.

Streptobacillus

Characteristics

Streptobacillus is a facultatively anaerobic, fermentative, nonencapsulated, and nonmotile pleomorphic gram-negative rod, frequently occurring in chains or long filaments, and often with a series of oval to elongated bulbous swellings, giving a string-of-beads appearance. The microscopic morphology of the organism in culture varies with time, being more homogeneously filamentous in young cultures and becoming fragmented into irregular coccobacilli with age. L-phase organisms having a "fried egg" appearance may occur spontaneously on agar and may become stabilized if penicillin is incorporated in the medium. Figure 58-27 is a smear of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* from the culture of a patient with rat-bite fever.

Clinical Manifestations and Pathogenesis

S. moniliformis occurs as indigenous flora in the upper respiratory tract of wild and laboratory rodents. Infection (rat-bite fever or Haverhill disease) in humans follows rodent bites, ingestion of contaminated food, or traumatic injury. Local lymphangitis and lymphadenitis may develop up to 3 weeks later, followed by fever, chills, malaise, and, later, a general morbilliform maculopapular or petechial rash. Some patients develop a migratory polyarthritis. Endocarditis has been reported, as have cases of myocarditis, pericarditis, meningitis, pneumonia, and abscess development due to *S. moniliformis* (Madhubashini et al, 2013). The histopathology is nonspecific chronic inflammation (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Specimens for recovery of *S. moniliformis* include blood, joint fluid, and abscess material. The organism grows on media enriched with 15% sheep or rabbit blood, serum, or ascitic fluid. Inoculated media should be incubated at 35°C in a humid environment containing an atmosphere of 5% to 10% CO_2. Colonies on solid media are small and slightly translucent to opaque, with slightly irregular edges. Coccal forms and gram variability may occur, but usually colonies will demonstrate long filaments with granules and bulbs or banding forms on Gram stain. L-forms may be present in some cultures, along with the usual bacterial forms.

Colonies in broth form as fluff balls, usually at the bottom of the tube. In cultures, the organism dies quickly unless subcultured often. Because this organism is relatively inert, identification of *S. moniliformis* is difficult. Biochemical tests must be performed in heart infusion agar or broth supplemented with yeast extract and horse serum. 16S rRNA sequencing methods or fatty acid analysis is required for complete identification (Zbinden & von Graevenitz, 2011). In addition, direct specimen testing with molecular methods may prove more sensitive than culture. (Mackey et al, 2014)

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

S. moniliformis is susceptible to penicillins and tetracyclines, which are the recommended drugs for therapy. It is also susceptible to cephalosporins, clindamycin, macrolides, and aztreonam; intermediately susceptible to the aminoglycosides and fluoroquinolones; and resistant to colistin, nalidixic acid, and SXT.

Prevention and Control

Because 10% to 65% of rats are infected with the organism, their control and precautions against bites represent the only effective methods of control of the disease.

ANAEROBIC BACTERIA

It is important to reemphasize that anaerobes represent a major component of the indigenous flora of the skin and mucous membranes. Their isolation and identification are contingent on the proper selection and collection of specimens, as well as on their proper transport to the laboratory. Anaerobic infections are frequently mixed, consisting of several species of anaerobes, or of anaerobes mixed with facultatively anaerobic bacteria or aerobes; therefore, the first task in examining an anaerobic culture is to separate facultatively anaerobic from obligate anaerobic bacteria. With experience, the more commonly isolated anaerobes can often be recognized on the basis of their colonial and microscopic morphologies and presumptively identified on the basis of a few additional tests. Definitive identification is based on biochemical reactions, physiologic and molecular characteristics, and occasionally pathogenicity and toxin neutralization tests.

The extent to which anaerobes are identified varies according to the facilities and expertise available, the interest of laboratory personnel and clinical staff, and the clinical relevance of the information available from the laboratory. With the advent of Maldi-Tof, identification of anaerobes has become something that many laboratories will be able to do successfully, although it would still be prudent to continue to use clinical relevance as a guide to when full identification is necessary. Anaerobes have been fairly consistent in their response, at least in vitro, to antibiotics, but as with other groups of bacteria, resistance is becoming an issue with many anaerobes; this often prompts additional identification and susceptibility testing (Hecht, 2006).

Definitions and Characteristics

An anaerobe requires an atmosphere with reduced oxygen tension for its growth and fails to grow on the surface of solid media in an atmosphere of room air with 10% CO_2. A facultatively anaerobic bacterium will grow in the presence or absence of room air. The term *microaerophile* has not been strictly defined but is commonly applied to bacteria—usually campylobacters and streptococci—that grow only or preferentially in an atmosphere with reduced O_2 and with increased CO_2.

Pathogenesis and Virulence Factors

Little is known about the factors responsible for the pathogenic and virulence properties of most anaerobes, other than the clostridia and some *Bacteroides* spp. Endotoxic, proteolytic, and heparinase activities have been identified among the Bacteroidaceae. The polysaccharide capsule of *B. fragilis* promotes abscess formation. Clostridia, on the other hand, elaborate potent exotoxins, including lethal and necrotizing toxins, hemolysins, lecithinases, gelatinases, and hyaluronidases.

Although clostridial infection may be exogenous or endogenous in origin, disease caused by other anaerobes usually originates endogenously from the normal indigenous anaerobic flora of a contiguous mucous membrane, the integrity of which has been disrupted by surgery, instrumentation, trauma, or malignancy. Essential to the establishment of anaerobes in the infectious process is a decrease in the oxidation-reduction potential *(Eh)* of the area, which may result from failure of its blood supply or from the multiplication of other bacteria at the site.

Although clostridial infections and intoxications are unquestionably of major medical importance, the role of other anaerobes in causing cellulitis and myonecrosis has been recognized more recently. Most isolates of *Clostridium perfringens* are the result of simple contamination of a wound. In such instances, the clostridia may multiply in cellular debris, a hematoma, or necrotic tissue without observable clinical symptoms. Anaerobic cellulitis is a necrotizing process of the soft tissues. Its onset is gradual, but it can progress rapidly and extensively. Gas is produced; however, the process typically does not involve muscle. In addition to or instead of clostridia, the bacteriology of anaerobic cellulitis may involve anaerobic cocci and anaerobic gram-negative bacilli.

In contrast to anaerobic cellulitis, gas gangrene or clostridial myonecrosis is an acute and rapidly progressive invasive process that produces marked changes in muscle. Distinguishing between anaerobic cellulitis and gas gangrene is critical to avoid performing unnecessarily aggressive and mutilating surgery in the former condition.

Histotoxic clostridia associated with gas gangrene include *C. perfringens*, *Clostridium novyi*, *Clostridium septicum*, *Clostridium histolyticum*, *Clostridium sporogenes*, and *Clostridium bifermentans*. *C. perfringens* has been the species most frequently involved in gas gangrene; the prevalence of other species in this process has varied widely.

Tetanus and botulism, caused by *C. tetani* and *C. botulinum*, respectively, are described as intoxications rather than as infections, because their manifestations are related to the elaboration of potent neurotoxins. Antibiotic-associated diarrhea is a disease caused by the toxins of *C. difficile*. Botulism is most frequently due to the ingestion of home-processed foods that have been improperly preserved or canned; sporadic outbreaks of the disease have been associated with commercially processed food and with wounds infected by the organism. The incubation period for botulism is short. Signs and symptoms usually occur between 18 and 36 hours following ingestion of contaminated food. Of the seven antigenic types of botulinum toxin known, type A is the most common in cases of food poisoning in North America, followed by types B, E, and F. The toxin is absorbed from the intestinal tract and, rarely, from an infected wound and ultimately attaches to motor nerve terminals, thereby preventing acetylcholine release at the nerve endings.

Tetanus typically occurs in nonimmunized persons within the first 2 weeks following a traumatically acquired puncture, laceration, or abrasion. Cases have been reported to occur postoperatively; following dental work, childbirth, and abortion; or in association with stasis and decubitus ulcers. The toxin, tetanospasmin, is transported to gangliosides in the CNS via the lymphatics and bloodstream and by migration through the perineural spaces of peripheral nerves.

Clostridium difficile is the major cause of nosocomial diarrhea and the primary pathogen responsible for pseudomembranous colitis. It is a rare cause of abscesses, wound infections, osteomyelitis, pleuritis, peritonitis, septicemia, and urogenital tract infections. Carriage rates of *C. difficile* and its toxins are high (50% or more) in neonates, but disease is rare (Bartlett, 1997). Colonization, with or without toxin production, may be maintained for several months, but when the adult flora becomes established at 6 to 12 months of age, colonization rates fall, and only about 3% of normal, healthy adults are colonized with the organism. *C. difficile* almost always is acquired in the hospital by persons receiving antimicrobial agents via direct or indirect exposure to human or inanimate reservoirs. Although the penicillins and the cephalosporins are implicated most frequently, any antimicrobial agent may trigger *C. difficile*–associated disease. Disease rarely occurs without antibiotic exposure, but cases have been reported following therapy with antineoplastic agents that have antibacterial activity. Pseudomembranous colitis, the most severe form of *C. difficile* disease, is a toxin-mediated illness in which microbial invasion of the mucosa is not known to occur. *C. difficile* produces two toxins. Toxin A, a weakly cytopathic toxin, is predominantly responsible for the enterotoxic activity of the organism. Toxin B, a potent cytotoxin, appears to play a minor role in human disease, although toxin A–negative, B-positive strains have been isolated from symptomatic patients. Use of a PCR assay in the laboratory for detection of both toxin A and toxin B have increased sensitivity of detection of the disease (Eastwood et al, 2009; Kvach et al, 2009).

As previously mentioned, other anaerobic bacteria, particularly anaerobic cocci and gram-negative bacilli, have been associated with anaerobic cellulitis. These organisms are part of the indigenous flora of the mucous membranes of the oral cavity and of the gastrointestinal and genitourinary tracts. As such, they are encountered in aspiration pneumonias, lung abscesses, empyemas, intraabdominal infections and abscesses, pelvic abscesses, brain abscesses, and bacteremias. Anaerobic intraabdominal infections commonly follow abdominal and especially colon surgery, and are most frequently associated with the *B. fragilis* complex. Clinically significant anaerobic bacteremias are also most frequently caused by this species. *Propionibacterium acnes* have been increasing in isolation and in association with clinical disease.

Significant taxonomic changes have occurred among the anaerobes. Some of these are delineated in Tables 58-15 through 58-19.

TABLE 58-15

Most Frequently Isolated Gram-Positive Non-*Clostridium* spp. Anaerobic Bacteria

Species	Gram Stain	Colony	Indole	PYR
Gram-Positive Cocci				
Peptostreptococcus anaerobius	Large cocci, often in chains	Nonhemolytic; gray with raised center; sweet odor	Negative	Negative
P. micros	Clusters or short chains; <0.6 μm	Small; dull color; "halo" around colony	Negative	Positive
Finegoldia marna	Pairs, tetrads, and clusters; >0.6 μm	Small, white, convex	Negative	Positive
Peptoniphilus asaccharolyticus	"Clumps," pairs, or tetrads	Small; slight yellow pigment	Usually positive	Negative
Anaerococcus tetradius	Clumps and tetrads	Nonglistening; gray; convex	Negative	Weak
A. prevotii	Clumps and tetrads	Nonglistening; gray; convex	Negative	Positive
Staphylococcus saccharolyticus	Clusters and tetrads	Catalase and coagulase negative	ND	ND
Gram-positive non–spore-forming bacilli	Gram stain	Colony	Aerotolerance/ Biochemical clues	Other characteristic
Actinomyces israelii	Short rods; branching or beading	White; opaque; "molar tooth"	+	Most common cause of actinomycosis: genital; pulmonary; abdominal
A. naeslundii	Short rods; branching or beading	Gray-white; translucent	+++	Oral flora; rarely pathogenic
A. odontolyticus	Short rods; branching or beading	May produce pink to red colonies in ambient air	+++	Oral flora; rarely pathogenic
A. turicensis			++	Genital sites
Propionibacterium acnes	Short rods; may appear "spidery"	White round colonies	++++ Catalase positive; indole positive	Normal flora on skin; associated with endophthalmitis (post cataract surgery); ventricular shunt infections; infrequent cause of endocarditis, osteomyelitis
Propionimicrobium lymphophilum	Coccoid; singly, pairs, or short chains	White, glistening	Nonaerotolerant	Isolation: lymph nodes; uncertain relevance
Bifidobacterium spp.	Diphtheroidal; bifurcated or forked ends		Nonaerotolerant	Normal flora of GI and GU tract; rarely clinically significant
Eggerthella lenta (formerly Eubacterium lentum)	Straight rod with rounded ends		Nonaerotolerant Catalase positive; indole negative	Grow in 20% bile; saccharolytic; have been isolated in anaerobic bacteremia

+, ++, +++, ++++, Positive with increasing strength; *ND,* not done; *PYR,* l-pyrrolidonyl-β-naphthylamide.

TABLE 58-16

Most Frequently Isolated Gram-Negative Anaerobic Bacteria (All Should Grow in Presence of 20% Bile)

Species	Colony	Biochemicals	Other Characteristics
Bacteroides fragilis complex*	White, round; requires 24-48 hours		
B. fragilis		Negative for indole Positive for catalase and indole	Most common and most pathogenic of the complex
*B. distasonis***		Negative for indole Usually positive for catalase and esculin	
B. thetaiotaomicron		Positive for indole, catalase, and esculin	
B. vulgatus		Negative for indole; usually negative for catalase and esculin	
B. ovatus		Positive for indole, catalase, and esculin	
*B. goldsteinii***		Negative for indole; variable for catalase and positive esculin	
Bacteroides urealyticus	Colonies often "pit" the agar	No growth in 20% bile; indole, esculin, and catalase usually negative; urease positive	Part of normal anaerobic oral flora
Bilophila wadsworthia		Will grow in 20% bile; catalase positive; negative for indole and esculin	
Porphyromonas asaccharolyticus	Colonies fluoresce brick red (ultraviolet light exposure); black pigment with age	Bile sensitive; indole positive and catalase negative	Normal oral flora; pulmonary disease
Prevotella disiens and *P. bivia*		Bile sensitive; indole and esculin negative; saccharolytic and nonpigmented	Normal genitourinary flora; can be involved in pelvic abscesses
Fusobacterium nucleatum	Breadcrumb-like and speckled; Gram stain: long thin, pointed bacilli	Bile sensitive; indole positive and esculin negative	Oral flora; can be involved in bacteremia, pulmonary infection
F. necrophorum	Umbonate colonies; greening of agar; Gram stain: round, not tapered ends; often "bizarre" forms seen	Usually sensitive to bile; indole positive, lipase positive	Associated with Lemierre's syndrome
F. mortiferum	"Fried egg" appearance of colonies; nontapered rods and bizarre round "bodies" on Gram stain	Grows on 20% bile; indole negative and esculin positive	Infrequent isolate
Gram-Negative Cocci			
Veillonella spp.	Small white colonies; Gram stain: well staining, round cocci, singly or in pairs	Catalase variable; nitrate reduction positive	Common isolate, but rarely involved in clinical disease

*In addition to those listed, *B. fragilis* complex includes *B. caccae, B. cellulosilyticus, B. coprocola, B. coprophius, B. dorei, B. eggerthii,* B. *faecis, B. finegoldia, B. intestinalis, B. massiliensis, B. nordii, B. plebius, B. salyersiae, B. stercoris, B. uniformis, B. xylanisolvens,* and a few additional species for which testing is based on only one strain. The new *B. fragilis* complex species can be found in Table 6 of Kononen E, Wade WG, Citron DM: *Bacteroides, Porphyromonas, Prevotella, Fusobacterium,* and other anaerobic gram-negative rods. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, p 870.
**These organisms have been placed in the *Parabacteroides* genus along with *P. gordonii, P. johnsonii,* and *P. merdae.*

TABLE 58-17

Most Common Species of *Clostridium* (Spore-Former) in Clinical Samples

Species	Colony	Gram Stain	Characteristics
C. perfringens	Large, white, with double-zone hemolysis	"Boxcar" (short and fat)-shaped rods; short chains may be seen; rare spores seen	Lipase negative; lecithinase positive; indole negative; reverse CAMP positive Most common isolate; skin and soft tissue infections (including gangrene); bacteremia; also found in gastrointestinal tract as part of normal flora
C. ramosum	Large, spready white colony	Often stain gram negative or variable; cells are more slender and longer than *C. perfringens*; spores not commonly seen	Commonly isolated from clinical samples
C. sordelii	White	Large, gram-positive rods with subterminal spores seen; lecithinase positive; lipase negative; indole and urease positive	Less frequently isolated than *C. perfringens, C. ramosum,* and *C. septicum*
C. tetani		Thin bacilli with terminal spores: "snowshoe" or "tennis racquet" appearance; lecithinase negative; lipase weak positive; indole variable and urease negative	May be part of gastrointestinal flora; cause of tetanus
C. septicum	White, swarming colonies	Long, filamentous bacilli with rare subterminal spores seen; lecithinase, lipase, indole, and urease negative	When isolated from blood cultures, indicates a possible gastrointestinal malignancy
C. difficile	White colonies with distinctive "horse-barn" odor; selective CCFA media: yellow, ground glass appearing colonies	Thin, long bacilli with spores seen	Cause of pseudomembranous colitis and antibiotic-associated diarrhea; rarely found outside of the gastrointestinal tract

TABLE 58-18
New Taxonomic Designations of Anaerobic Gram-Positive Cocci

New Designation	Older Designation
Finegoldia magna	*Peptostreptococcus magnus*
Parvimonas micra	*Micromonas micros*
Anaerococcus prevotii	*Peptostreptococcus prevotii*
Anaerococcus tetradius	*Peptostreptococcus tetradius*
Anaerococcus vaginalis	*Peptostreptococcus vaginalis*
Anaerococcus lactolyticus Peptostreptococcus lactolyticus	
Anaerococcus hydrogenalis Peptostreptococcus hydrogenalis	
Anaerococcus octavius Peptostreptococcus octavius	
Peptoniphilus indolicus Peptostreptococcus indolicus	
Peptoniphilus asaccharolyticus Peptostreptococcus asacchaolyticus	
Peptoniphilus harei Peptostreptococcus harei	
Peptoniphilus lacrimalis Peptostreptococcus lacrimalis	
Peptostreptococcus anaerobius	No name change
Peptoniphilus ivorii Peptostreptococcus ivorii	
Peptoniphilus gorbachii New species *Anaerococcus murdochii* New species	
Gallicola harnesae Peptostreptococcus harnesae	
Atopobium parvulum	*Streptococcus parvulus*
Blautia wexlerae New species	
Blautia producta Peptostreptococcus productus	
Staphylococcus saccharolyticus *Peptostreptococcus saccharolyticus*	

Adapted from Song Y, Finegold SM: *Peptostreptococcus, Finegoldia, Anaerococcus, Peptoniphilus, Veillonella*, and other anaerobic cocci. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, p 804.

TABLE 58-19
Newer Taxonomy of Less Frequently Encountered Anaerobic Gram-Negative Bacilli

New Designation	Older Designation
Alistipes putredinis	*Bacteroides putredinis*
Alistipes finegoldii	New species *Allistipes indistinctus* (new species) *Allistipes onderdonkii* (new species) *Allistipes shahii* (new species)
Dialister micraerophilus	New
Dialister propionicifaciens	New *Barnesiella* is a new genus with species *B. intestinihominis*
Faecalibacterium prausnitzii	*Fusobacterium prausnitzii*
Porphyromonas uenonis	*Porphyromonas endodontalis* (nonoral)
Sneathia sanguinegens	*Leptotrichia sanguinegens*
Tannerella forsythensis	*Bacteroides forsythus*
Sutterella wadsworthensis	*Campylobacter (Bacteroides) gracilis* (some strains)
Odoribacter (new genus)	*O. laneus* *O. splanchnicus*
Paraprevotella (new genus)	*P. clara* *P. xylaniphila*
Phocaeicola (new genus) *Porphyromonas*	*P. abscessus* *P. benonis* (new species)

Adapted from Kononen E, Wade WG, Citron DM: *Bacteroides, Porphyromonas, Prevotella, Fusobacterium*, and other anaerobic gram-negative rods. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, p 859.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Identifying anaerobic bacteria to the species level can be a complex task; however, the extent to which isolates of anaerobic bacteria are identified varies. It may be limited to basic information that is of clinical relevance and/or that might be needed to predict antimicrobial susceptibilities. For example, the mixed anaerobic flora from a site such as a decubitus ulcer, perirectal fistula, or intraabdominal abscess may simply be reported as mixed fecal flora (mentioning specifically whether there are aerobes and anaerobes or only anaerobes present) without specific identification of its components. Determining the species of an isolate may be limited to those present in pure culture from a normally sterile body fluid or site, and can be readily accomplished with the use of any of several commercially available biochemical kits, in conjunction with microscopic and colonial morphology and the use of select antibiotic disk sensitivity results. Some laboratories, however, have begun to use sequencing as a means of identifying anaerobic isolates. Results are often available rapidly, and increasing numbers of databases are available for the identification of many more species than can be identified with phenotypic kit systems (Simmon et al, 2008). MALDI-TOF-MS (matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry) is a recently developed method for the identification of a wide variety of bacteria, including anaerobes (Stingu et al, 2008). One should understand that the clinical value of any report of the presence of anaerobic bacteria is directly related to the speed of reporting such results from the laboratory. Identification procedures that require 1 to 2 weeks to complete are generally of academic interest only; identification of every anaerobe isolated in a culture is often not appropriate; clinical relevance should still be used to guide any workup of anaerobic cultures, as it should be used for all cultures.

Because of their rapid progression and considerable morbidity and mortality, the initial diagnosis and management of diseases caused by the clostridia must be based on their clinical presentation and manifestations. In some patients with tetanus, no primary wound is evident. When a wound is present, organisms typical of *C. tetani* are seldom seen in stained smears, even though they may be recovered from cultures. Moreover, because of this organism's widespread distribution in nature, its isolation from a wound is not necessarily indicative of the diagnosis of tetanus. Laboratory confirmation of botulism requires detection of the toxin in serum, wounds, gastric contents, feces, or the food suspected of causing the disease. Procedures for extracting the toxin and for performing mouse neutralization tests are complex; therefore, it is suggested that the appropriate materials be referred to the CDC for examination. Telephone consultation should be made in such instances to ensure that the requisite specimens are properly collected and transported and that the appropriate authorities are alerted (Stevens et al, 2011).

In cases of suspected anaerobic cellulitis or gas gangrene, the laboratory can be helpful by examining exudate or tissue microscopically. The finding of numerous, large, "boxcar"-shaped, gram-positive bacilli (Fig. 58-28) provides presumptive confirmation of the diagnosis. Stained smears may also be diagnostic of anaerobic streptococcal myositis. Cultures of exudate, tissue, and blood should be performed. Once again, the level or extent of identification varies considerably among laboratories; however, *C. perfringens* may be easily identified by its Gram stain morphology, the production of double zones of hemolysis on blood agar, and a positive Nagler's reaction on egg yolk agar. For many years, laboratory diagnosis of *C. difficile* diarrhea was based on detecting one or both toxins directly in stool using an EIA or cell culture assay. Culture of stool for the organism and, when positive, determination of whether toxin is being produced are primarily reserved for epidemiologic and surveillance studies; many believe it is the "gold standard" for detection. Assays that detect a "common" antigen—glutamate dehydrogenase—which is found in virtually all *C. difficile* isolates, are now being used as part of a two- or three-step procedure for laboratory diagnosis of *C. difficile* to increase sensitivity. Unfortunately, the antigen can be found in other bacteria, so a positive antigen must be confirmed before it is reported as *C. difficile* positive. Confirmation is carried out in the two-step assay with PCR or cytotoxicity studies. In the three-step assay, a positive antigen is followed by an EIA, and any antigen-positive/EIA toxin–negative samples would have a PCR or a cytotoxicity test conducted for confirmation. The prevalence of *C. difficile* usually is not greater than 20% in any single facility, and the two- or three-step approach allows rapid results to be obtained from negative samples. PCR assays for initial detection of the toxins of *C. difficile* are now commercially available, and many laboratories use PCR as a replacement for EIA or cytotoxicity (Eastwood et al, 2009; Kvach et al, 2009; Stevens et al, 2011).

One of the most common groups of clinically relevant and frequently isolated anaerobic bacteria is the *B. fragilis* complex. Isolates from this

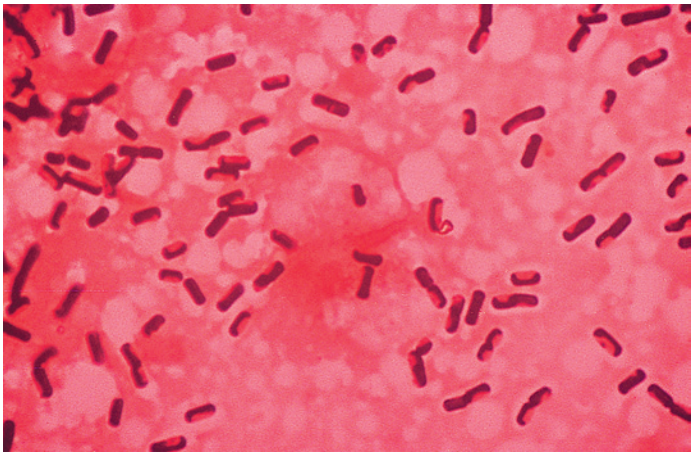


Figure 58-28 Gram stain of a smear of exudate from a wound that had gas bubbles shows large, boxcar-shaped, gram-positive bacilli, suggestive of clostridial disease (oil immersion).

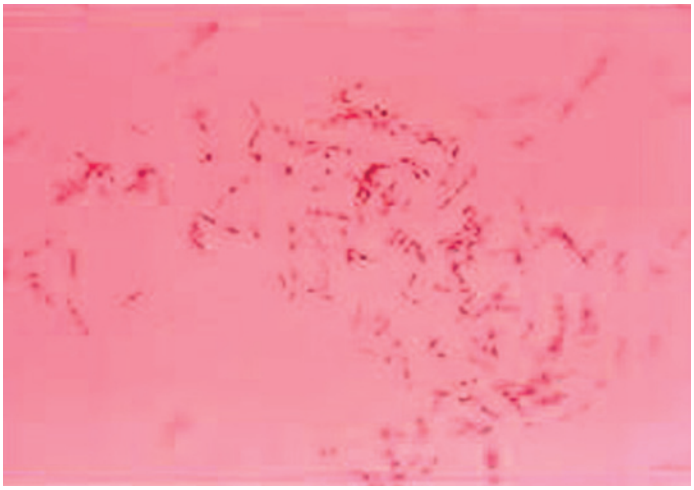


Figure 58-29 Gram stain of *Bacteroides fragilis* from broth culture.

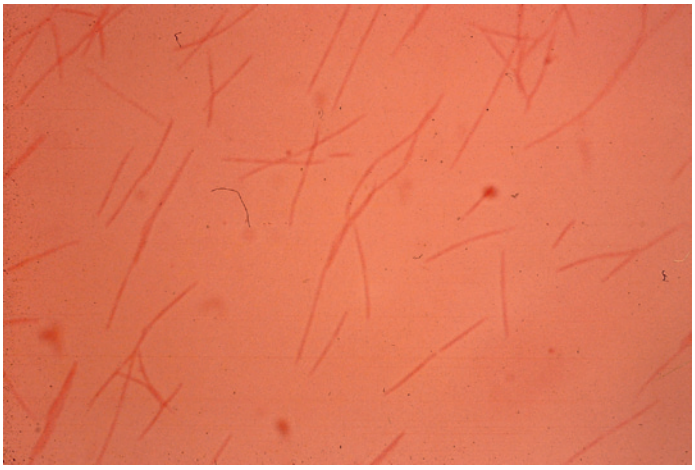


Figure 58-30 Gram stain of *Fusobacterium nucleatum*.

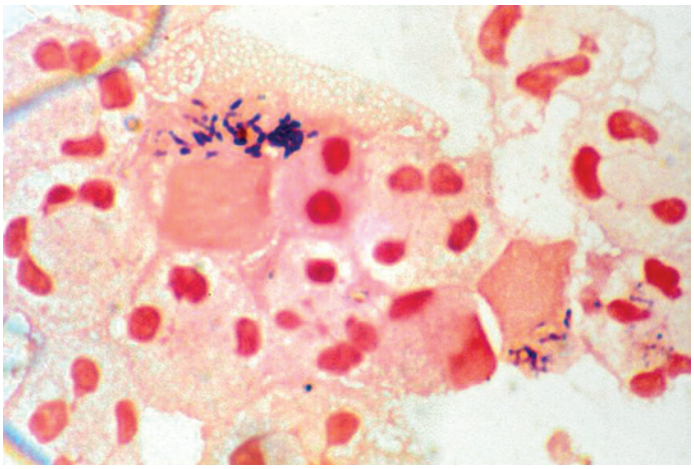


Figure 58-31 Gram stain of *Propionibacterium acnes* from vitreous fluid.

complex will grow selectively on *Bacteroides* bile esculin medium, and they have characteristic Gram stain morphology, as seen in Figure 58-29. These gram-negative bacilli are found as normal flora throughout much of the gastrointestinal and genitourinary tracts. Infections caused by the complex include abdominal abscess, pelvic abscess, bacteremia, and brain abscess. They may rarely be involved in pulmonary disease. Although most anaerobic infections are polymicrobial, *B. fragilis* alone may be responsible for infection. Members of the *B. fragilis* complex include those organisms listed in Table 58-16. Also noted in Table 58-16 is a newly named genus, *Parabacteroides*, into which some of the *Bacteroides* have been placed. With rare exception, members of the complex will grow in the presence of 20% bile and will hydrolyze esculin. Inclusion of a *Bacteroides* bile esculin agar (BBE) plate when anaerobic specimens are processed will allow more rapid detection and identification of these organisms (Kononen et al, 2011).

Another important group of anaerobic gram-negative bacilli are the *Fusobacterium* spp. They often appear as thin and spindly (or pointed) gram-negative bacilli on Gram stain or produce rather bizarre forms, as is seen in Figure 58-30. Table 58-16 lists some of the more common *Fusobacterium* spp. *Fusobacterium nucleatum* is isolated from many clinical samples and can be the cause of bacteremia and other syndromes, but it can also be isolated as part of the normal oral or genital flora. *F. necrophorum* is associated with Lemiere's syndrome. Table 58-16 provides a list of other gram-negative anaerobic bacilli, not members of the *Bacteroides* or *Fusobacterium*. Some have been linked to disease, and others have been isolated from clinical specimens, but their clinical relevance is yet to be determined.

Anaerobic gram-positive cocci were at one time referred to for the most part as *Peptostreptococcus* spp. Many taxonomic changes have occurred with this group, as well as with the ones described above, and these changes are shown in Table 58-15. *Finegoldia magnus* and *Parvimonas micra* are the most commonly isolated anaerobic gram-positive cocci isolated from clinical specimens and the ones most often associated with disease. Anaerobic gram-negative cocci are members of the genera *Veillonella* (the most commonly isolated), *Acidaminococcus*, *Negativicoccus*, *Megasphaera*, and *Anaeroglobus*, and although not infrequently isolated from clinical samples, they are rarely involved in disease (Song & Finegold, 2011).

An anaerobic gram-positive bacillus, *Propionibacterium acnes*, has been associated with cases of endophthalmitis that occur after cataract surgery. In addition, *P. acnes* may be associated with ventricular shunt infection in patients with hydrocephalus; rarely, *P. acnes* can cause endocarditis, septic arthritis, or other infections. Isolation of this organism may require extended incubation, often up to 10 days. Figure 58-31 shows a Gram stain of *P. acnes* in vitreous fluid obtained from a patient months after cataract surgery. *Actinomyces israelii* and other species of *Actinomyces* can be involved in lung abscesses, brain abscesses, skin and soft tissue infections, and mycetoma, and may be involved in genital infections involving use of an intrauterine device (IUD), although this is a controversial topic (Westhoff, 2007). Other genera of anaerobic gram-positive rods are listed in Table 58-15; many of these anaerobes are isolated from clinical samples, but their relevance in any disease process is not always clear. As with other anaerobes, it is always important to consider whether the anaerobe has been isolated as the only organism in a sterile site, such as body fluids and tissues; how often the organism has been isolated from these sites; and whether other pathogens are present that can account for the patient's disease (Wade & Kononen, 2011).

Antimicrobial Susceptibility

Susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria in the past was considered unnecessary, but as more resistance is detected, this is not the case today. In addition, there are certain clinical settings in which decisions regarding the selection of agents are critical: failure of usual therapeutic regimens and persistence of infection; the key role of antimicrobial agents in

determining the outcome of infection; or the difficulty involved in making empirical therapeutic decisions based on precedent. Infections from which antibiotic susceptibility testing of isolates should be considered include brain abscess, endocarditis, osteomyelitis, joint infections, infections of prosthetic devices or vascular grafts, and refractory or recurrent bacteremia. Isolates to test under these circumstances should include members of the *B. fragilis* complex, certain *Fusobacterium* spp., *C. perfringens*, and *Clostridium ramosum*. Agents such as metronidazole, the carbapenems, and ampicillin-sulbactam are usually active against anaerobic bacteria, with rare exceptions such as *P. acnes*, *Actinomyces* spp., and a few others. Agents with more unpredictable activity include penicillin, clindamycin, and cefoxitin. Although an agar dilution method has been recommended for reference purposes, testing in the clinical laboratory is generally performed by broth microdilution (CLSI, 2012) or the Etest method. Batch testing of saved isolates on a yearly basis is recommended to develop antibiograms for empirical use by clinicians and to monitor for possible development of resistance (Boyanova et al, 2007).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Becker K, von Eiff C: *Staphylococcus*, *Micrococcus*, and other catalase positive cocci. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 308–330.

Provides an excellent overview of the biochemical tests useful for identification of aerobic catalase-positive gram-positive cocci. Additionally, it includes a discussion of the important resistance mechanisms and tests that allow detection of resistant isolates.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute: *Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing*, twenty-fourth informational supplement. CLS document M100-S24, Wayne, Pa, 2014, CLSI.

Essential for appropriate interpretation and reporting of antibacterial susceptibility test results.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute/National Committee for Clinical and Laboratory Standards: *Methods for dilution antimicrobial susceptibility tests for bacteria that grow aerobically*. Approved Standard CLSI/NCCLS Document M7-A5, ed 7, Wayne, Pa., 2006, CLSI.

Essential for laboratories that perform antimicrobial susceptibility testing by broth dilution.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute/National Committee for Clinical and Laboratory Standards: *Performance standards for antimicrobial disk susceptibility tests*. Approved Standard CLSI/NCCLS Document M2-A9, ed 9, Wayne, Pa., 2006, CLSI.

Essential for laboratories that perform antimicrobial susceptibility testing by disk diffusion.

Cosgrove SE, Carroll KC, Perl TM: *S. aureus* with reduced susceptibility to vancomycin, *Clin Infect Dis* 39:539–545, 2004.

Provides an excellent discussion of the mechanism of reduced susceptibility to vancomycin in S. aureus and tests that allow its detection.

Janda JM, Malloy PJ, Schreckenberger PC: Clinical evaluation of the Vitek *Neisseria Haemophilus* identification card, *J Clin Microbiol* 25:37–41, 1987.

Provides an excellent review of methods useful for identification of the aerobic gram-negative diplococci.

Wauters G, Vaneechouette M: Approaches to the identification of aerobic gram-negative bacteria. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 539–558.

Provides an excellent discussion of the biochemical tests useful for identification of gram-negative bacteria. Includes algorithms for identification and tables of pertinent biochemicals for differentiating among the many organisms included in the gram-negative aerobic bacteria.

REFERENCES

Abbott SL: *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Citrobacter*, *Serratia*, *Plesiomonas*, and other enterobacteriaceae. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 639–657.

Abbott SL, Janda JM, Farmer JJ: *Vibrio* and related organisms. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 666–676.

Adler H, Baumlin N, Frei R: Evaluation of acridine orange staining as a replacement of subcultures for BacT/ALERT-positive, gram stain-negative blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:5238–5239, 2003.

Al-Haj-Hussein BT, Al-Shehri MA, Azhar EA, et al: Evaluation of 2 real-time PCR assays for the investigation of mecA gene in clinical isolates of MRSA in Western Saudi Arabia, *Saudi Med J* 26:759–762, 2005.

American Academy of Pediatrics: Committee on Infectious Diseases: Updated recommendations on the use of meningococcal vaccines, *Pediatrics* 134:400–403, 2014.

Ampofo K, Graham P, Ratner A, et al: *Plesiomonas shigelloides* sepsis and splenic abscess in an adolescent with sickle-cell disease, *Pediatr Inf Dis J* 20:1178–1179, 2001.

Anagnostou T, Arvanitis M, Kourkoumpetis TK, et al: Nocardiosis of the central nervous system: Experience from a general hospital and review of 84 cases from the literature, *Medicine* 93:19–32, 2014.

Anikpeh YF, Keller P, Bloemberg GV, et al: Spacecraft bacterium, *Paenibacillus pasadenensis*, causing wound infection in humans, *BMJ Case Rep* 2010:2010.

Antunes LC, Visca P, Towner KJ: *Acinetobacter baumannii*: Evolution of a global pathogen, *Pathog Dis* 71:292–301, 2014.

Arbefeville S, Levi MH, Ferrieri P: Development of a multiplex real-time PCR assay for the detection of *Bordetella pertussis* and *Bordetella parapertussis* in a single tube reaction, *J Microbiol Methods* 97:15–19, 2014.

Bae IG, Federspiel JJ, Miro JM, et al: Heterogeneous vancomycin-intermediate susceptibility phenotype in bloodstream methicillin resistant *S. aureus* isolates from an international chort of patients with infective endocarditis: Prevalence, genotype, and clinical significance, *J Infect Dis* 200:1355–1366, 2009.

Barnett LA, Cunningham MW: A new heart-cross-reactive antigen in *Streptococcus pyogenes* is not M protein, *JID* 162:875–882, 1990.

Baron EJ, Thomson RB: Specimen collection, transport, and processing: Bacteriology. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 228–271.

Bartlett JG: *Clostridium difficile* infection: Pathophysiology and diagnosis, *Semin Gastrointest Dis* 8:12–21, 1997.

Bassetti M, Trecarichi EM, Mesini A, et al: Risk factors and mortality of healthcare-associated and community-acquired *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 18:862–869, 2012.

Baumgartner A, Niederhauser I, Johler S: Virulence and resistance gene profiles of *Staphylococcus aureus* strains isolated from ready-to-eat foods, *J Food Prot* 77:1232–1236, 2014.

Becker K, Heilmann C, Peters G: Coagulase-negative Staphylococci, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 27:870–926, 2014.

Behnia M, Logan SC, Fallen L, et al: Nosocomial and ventilator-associated pneumonia in a community hospital intensive care unit: A retrospective review and analysis, *BMC Res Notes* 7:232, 2014.

Bennett SD, Walsh KA, Gould LH: Foodborne disease outbreaks caused by *Bacillus cereus*, *Clostridium perfringens*, and *Staphylococcus aureus*—United States, 1998-2008, *Clin Infect Dis* 57:425–433, 2013.

Bernard K: The genus *Corynebacterium* and other medically relevant coryneform-like bacteria, *J Clin Micobiol* 50:3152–3158, 2012.

Bhan I, Chen J, Bazari H: Isolation of *Cardiobacterium hominis* from the peritoneal fluid of a patient on continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis, *Scand J Infect Dis* 38:301–303, 2006.

Bialasiewicz S, Mackay IM, Whiley DM, et al: Protocol for the use of enzyme-linked hybridization assays for genital ulcer disease, *Methods Mol Biol* 903:225–233, 2012.

Block T, Munson E, Culver A, et al: Comparison of carrot broth-and selective Todd-Hewitt broth-enhanced PCR protocols for real-time detection of *S. agalactiae* in prenatal vaginal/anorectal specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:3615–3620, 2008.

Borrow R, Findlow J, Gray S, et al: Safe laboratory handling of *Neisseria meningitidis*, *Infect* 68:305–312, 2014.

Bowers KM, Wren MW, Shetty NP: Screening for methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus* and coagulase-negative staphylococci: An evaluation of three selective media and Mastalex-MRSA latex agglutination, *Br J Biomed Sci* 60:71–74, 2003.

Boyanova L, Kolarov R, Mitov I: Antimicrobial resistance and the management of anaerobic infections, *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther* 5:685–701, 2007.

Briselden AM, Hillier SL: Evaluation of Affirm VPmicrobial identification test for *Gardnerella vaginalis* and *Trichomonas vaginalis*, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:148–152, 1994.

Brooke JS: *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: An emerging global opportunistic pathogen, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 25:2–41, 2012.

Brown-Elliott BA, Brown JM, Conville PS, et al: Clinical and laboratory features of the *Nocardia* spp. based on current molecular taxonomy, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 19:259–282, 2006.

Buchan BW, Allen S, Burnham CA, et al: Comparison of the next generation Xpert MRSA/SA BC and GeneOhm StaphSR assays to routine culture for the identification of *Staphylococcus aureus* and MRSA in positive blood culture broths, *J Clin Microbiol* 2014. pii: JCM.03108-14.

Budzik JM, Hosseini M, Mackinnon AC Jr, et al: Disseminated *Nocardia farcinica*: Literature review and fatal outcome in an immunocompetent patient, *Surg Infect* 13:163–170, 2012.

Byard RW: Diphtheria: "The strangling angel" of children, *J Forensic Leg Med* 20:65–68, 2013.

Camello TC, Souza MC, Martins CA, et al: *C. pseudodiphtheriticum* isolated from relevant clinical sites of infection: A human pathogen overlooked in emerging countries, *Lett Appl Microbiol* 48:458–464, 2009.

Carroll K, Reimer L: Microbiology and laboratory diagnosis of upper respiratory tract infections, *Clin Infec Dis* 23:442–448, 1996.

Cartwright EJ, Jackson KA, Johnson SD, et al: Listeriosis outbreaks and associated food vehicles, United States, 1998-2008, *Emerg Infect Dis* 19:1–9, 2013.

Carvalho G, Facklam R, Jackson D, et al: Evaluation of three commercial broth media for pigment detection and identification of a group B Streptococcus (*S. agalactiae*), *J Clin Microbiol* 47:4161–4163, 2009.

Cazanave C, Greenwood-Quaintance KE, Hanssen AD, et al: Corynebacterium prosthetic joint infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:1518–1523, 2012.

Cengiz AB, Yildirim I, Ceyhan M, et al: Comparison of nasopharyngeal culture, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and serological test for diagnosis of pertussis, *Turk J Pediatr* 51:309–316, 2009.

Chapin KC, Blake P, Wilson CD: Performance characteristics and utilization of rapid antigen test, DNA probe, and culture for the detection of Group A Streptococcus in an acute care clinic, *J Clin Microbiol* 40: 4207–4210, 2002.

Chapin KC, Musgnug MC: Evaluation of the PBP2a Latex agglutination assay for identification of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* directly from blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:1283–1284, 2004.

Chediac-Tannoury R, Araj GF: Rapid MRSA detection by Latex Kit, *Clin Lab Sci* 16:198–202, 2003.

Chopra T, Marchaim D, Awali RA, et al: Epidemiology of bloodstream infections caused by *Acinetobacter baumannii* and the impact of drug resistance to both carbapenems and ampicillin-sulbactam on clinical outcomes, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 57:6270–6275, 2013.

Church DL, Baxter H, Lloyd T, et al: Evaluation of StrepB carrot broth versus Lim broth for detection of group B streptococcus colonization status of near-term pregnant women, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:2780–2782, 2008.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute: *Methods for antimicrobial dilution and disk susceptibility testing of infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria*, Approved guideline—2nd edition. CLSI document M45-A2, Wayne PA, 2010, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute: *Susceptibility testing of Mycobacteria*, *Nocardiae*, *and other aerobic actinomycetesm*, Approved standard—2nd edition. CLSI document M24-A2, Wayne, PA, 2011, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute: *Methods for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria*, Approved standard—7th ed. CLSI/NCCLS Publication M11-A8, Wayne, Pa., 2012, CLSI.

Cloud JL, Conville PS, Croft A, et al: Evaluation of partial 16S ribosomal DNA sequencing for identification of nocardia species by using the MicroSeq 500 system with an expanded database, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:578–584, 2004.

Conville PS, Witebsky FG: *Nocardia*, *Rhodococcus*, *Gordonia*, *Actinomadura*, *Streptomyces*, and other aerobic actinomycetes. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 443–471.

Cortese MM, Baughman AL, Brown K, et al: A "new age" in pertussis prevention new opportunities through adult vaccination, *Am J Prev Med* 32:177–185, 2007.

Couturier MR, Graf EH, Griffin AT: Urine antigen tests for the diagnosis of respiratory infections: Legionellosis, histoplasmosis, pneumococcal pneumonia, *Clin Lab Med* 34:219–236, 2014.

Crabtree JH, Garcia NA: *Corynebacterium striatum* peritoneal dialysis catheter exit site infections, *Clin Nephrol* 60:270–274, 2003.

Daly JA, Clifton NA, Seskin KC, et al: Use of rapid, nonradioactive DNA probes in culture confirmation tests to detect *Streptococcus agalactiae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Enterococcus* spp. from pediatric patients with significant infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 29:80–82, 1991.

Daum RS, Ito T, Hiramatsu K: A novel methicillin resistant cassette in community-acquired MRSA isolates of diverse genetic backgrounds, *J Infect Dis* 186:1344–1347, 2002.

David MZ, Cadilla A, Boyle-Vavra S, et al: Replacement of HA-MRSA by CA-MRSA infections at an academic medical center in the midwestern United States, 2004-5 to 2008, *PLoS ONE* 9:e92760, 2014.

Deck MK, Anderson ES, Buckner RJ, et al: Rapid detection of *Enterococcus* spp. direct from blood culture bottles using Enterococcus QuickFISH method: A multicenter investigation, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 78:338–342, 2014.

de Noordhout CM, Devleesschauwer B, Angulo FJ, et al: The global burden of listeriosis: A systematic review and meta-analysis, *Lancet Infect Dis* 14:1073–1082, 2014.

Desai AP, Stanley T, Atuan M, et al: Use of matrix assisted laser desorption ionisation-time of flight mass spectrometry in a paediatric clinical laboratory for identification of bacteria commonly isolated from cystic fibrosis patients, *J Clin Pathol* 65:835–838, 2012.

Dingle TC, Abbott AN, Fang FC: Reflexive culture in adolescents and adults with group a streptococcal pharyngitis, *Clin Infect Dis* 59:643–650, 2014.

Eastwood K, Else P, Charlett A, et al: Comparison of nine commercially available *Clostridium difficile* toxin detection assays, a real-time PCR assay for *C. difficile* tcdB, and a glutamate dehydrogenase detection assay to cytotoxin assay and cytotoxigenic culture methods, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:3211–3217, 2009.

Edelstein PH: Legionella. In Murray PR, Baron EJ, Jorgensen JH, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 770–785.

Elias J, Frosch M, Voge U: Neisseria. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 559–573.

Endimiani A, Depasquale JM, Forero S, et al: Emergence of blaKPC-containing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in a long-term acute care hospital: A new challenge to our healthcare system, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 64:1102–1110, 2009a.

Endimiani A, Hujer AM, Perez F, et al: Characterization of blaKPC-containing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* isolates detected in different institutions in the eastern USA, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 63:427–437, 2009b.

Erler R, Wichels A, Heinemeyer EA, et al: VibrioBase: A MALDI-TOF MS database for fast identification of *Vibrio* spp. that are potentially pathogenic in

humans, *Syst Appl Microbiol* 2014. pii: S0723-2020(14)00150-7.
Facklam RR, Hollis D, Collins MD: Identification of gram-positive coccal and coccobacillary vancomycin-resistant bacteria, *J Clin Microbiol* 27:724–730, 1989.
Fang H, Ohlsson AK, Ullberg M, et al: Evaluation of species-specific PCR, Bruker MS, VITEK MS and the VITEK 2 system for the identification of clinical Enterococcus isolates, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 31:3073–3077, 2012.
Farfour E, Leto J, Barritault M, et al: Evaluation of the Andromas matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry system for identification of aerobically growing Gram-positive bacilli, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:2702–2707, 2012.
Feldman C, Anderson R: Review: Current and new generation pneumococcal vaccines, *J Infect* 69:309–325, 2014.
Fernandez-Suarez A, Benitez JM, Vidal AM, et al: Lemierre's syndrome and septicemia caused soley by *Arcanobacterium haemolyticum* in a young immunocompetent patient, *J Med Microbiol* 58:1645–1648, 2009.
Fitzgerald C, Nachamkin I: *Campylobacter* and *Arcobacter*. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 885–899.
Fox KK, Knapp JS, Holmes KK, et al: Antimicrobial resistance in *Neisseria gonorrboeae* in the United States 1988–1994: The emergence of decreased susceptibility to the fluoroquinolones, *J Infect Dis* 175:1396–1403, 1997.
Frey AB, Wilson DA, LaSalvia MM, et al: The detection and differentiation of methicillin-resistant and methicillin-susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* endocarditis by using the BD GeneOhm StaphSR Assay, *Am J Clin Pathol* 136:686–689, 2011.
Friedland I, Gallagher G, King T, et al: Antimicrobial susceptibility patterns in *P. aeruginosa*: Data from a multicenter intensive care unit surveillance study (ISS) in the United States, *J Chemother* 16:437–441, 2004.
Funke G, Bernard KA: Coryneform Gram-positive rods. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 413–442.
Gaastra W, Lipman LJ: *Capnocytophaga canimorsus*, *Vet Microbiol* 140:339–346, 2010.
Gales AC, Jones RN, Forward KR, et al: Emerging importance of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter* species and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* as pathogens in seriously ill patients: Geographic patterns, epidemiological features, and trends in the SENTRY antimicrobial surveillance program (1997–1999), *Clin Infect Dis* 32:104–113, 2001.
Garcia LS, editor: *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2010, ASM Press.
Gasch O, Fernandex N, Armisen A, et al: Community-acquired *Capnocytophaga canimorsus* meningitis in adults: Report of one case with a subacute course and deafness, and literature review, *Enferm Infecc Microbiol Clin* 27:33–36, 2009.
Giormezis N, Kolonitsiou F, Foka A, et al: Coagulase-negative staphylococcal bloodstream and prosthetic device-associated infections: The role of biofilm formation, adhesin and toxin genes distribution, *J Med Microbiol* 2014. pii: jmm.0.075259-0. doi: 10.
Gisselsson-Solen M, Bylander A, Wilhelmsson C, et al: The Binax NOW test as a tool for diagnosis of severe acute otitis media and associated complications, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:L3003–L3007, 2007.
Giuliano S, Caccese R, Carfagna P, et al: Endocarditis caused by nutritionally variant streptococci: A case report and literature review, *Infez Med* 20:67–74, 2012.
Gorton RL, Ramnarain P, Barker K, et al: Comparative analysis of Gram's stain, PNA-FISH and Sepsityper with MALDI-TOF MS for the identification of yeast direct from positive blood cultures, *Mycoses* 57:592–601, 2014.
Granato PA, Chen L, Holiday I, et al: Comparison of premier CAMPY enzyme immunoassay (EIA), ProSpecT Campylobacter EIA, and ImmunoCard STAT! CAMPY tests with culture for laboratory diagnosis of *Campylobacter* enteric infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:4022–4027, 2010.
Gray JW, Milner PJ, Edwards EH, et al: Feasibility of using microbiology diagnostic tests of moderate or high complexity at the point-of-care in a delivery suite, *J Obstet Gyn* 32:458–460, 2012.
Hageman JC, Uyeki TM, Francis JS, et al: Severe community-acquired pneumonia due to Staphylococcus aureus, 2003–04 influenza season, *Emerg Infec Dis* 12(6):894–899, 2006.
Hale YM, Melton ME, Lewis JS, et al: Evaluation of the Pace 2 *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* assay by three public health laboratories, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:451–453, 1993.
Halket G, Dinsdale AE, Logan NA: Evaluation of the VITEK2 BCL card for identification of *Bacillus* sp. and other aerobic endosporeformers, *Lett Appl Microbiol* 50:120–126, 2010.
Han SH, Chin BS, Lee HS, et al: Vancomycin-resistant enterococci bacteremia: Risk factors for mortality and influence of antimicrobial therapy on clinical outcome, *J Infect* 58:182–190, 2009.
Harris AM, Beekmann SE, Polgreen PM, et al: Rapid urine antigen testing for *Streptococcus pneumoniae* in adults with community-acquired pneumonia: Clinical use and barriers, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 79:454–457, 2014.
Hassan F: Molecular mechanisms of *Moraxella catarrhalis*-induced otitis media, *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep* 13:512–517, 2013.
Hauser AR, Siriam P, Severe P: aeruginosa infections: Tracking the conundrum of drug resistance, *Postgrad Med* 117:41–48, 2005.
Hecht DW: Anaerobes: antibiotic resistance, clinical significance, and the role of susceptibility testing, *Anaerobe* 12:115–121, 2006.
Heelan JS, Struminsky J, Lauro P, et al: Evaluation of a new selective enrichment broth for detection of Group B Streptococcus in pregnant women, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:896–897, 2005.
Hernandez-Milian A, Payeras-Cifre A: What is new in listeriosis?, *Biomed Res Int* 2014:358051, 2014.
Horneman AJ, Ali A: Aeromonas. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 658–665.
Huang ST, Lee HC, Lee NY, et al: Clinical characteristics of invasive *Haemophilus aphrophilus* infections, *J Microbiol Immunol* 38:271–276, 2005.
Ibler K, Truberg Jensen K, et al: Six cases of *Aerococcus sanguinicola* infection: Clinical relevance and bacterial identification, *Scand J Infect Dis* 40:761–765, 2008.
Janda JM, Abbott SL: The genus *Aeromonas*; Taxonomy, pathogenecity, and infection, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 23:35–73, 2010.
Jans C, Meile L, Lacroix C, et al: Genomics, evolution, and molecular epidemiology of the *Streptococcus bovis/Streptococcus equines* complex (SBSEC), *Infect Genet Evol* 2014. pii: S1567-1348(14)00345-1.
Johansson A, Ekelöf J, Giske CG, et al: The detection and verification of carbapenemases using ertapenem and matrix assisted laser desorption ionization—Time of flight, *BMC Microbiol* 14:89, 2014.
Jousimies-Somer HR, Summanen P, Citron DM, et al: *Wadsworth-KTL anaerobic bacteriology manual*, Belmont, Calif., 2002, Star Publishing.
Kaplan EL: Pathogenesis of acute rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease: Evasive after half a century of clinical, epidemiological, and laboratory investigations, *Heart* 91:3–4, 2005.
Kitchel B, Sundin DR, Patel JB: Regional dissemination of KPC-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 53:4511–4513, 2009.
Kononen E, Wade WG, Citron DM: *Bacteroides*, *Porphyromonas*, *Prevotella*, *Fusobacterium*, and other anaerobic gram-negative rods. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 858–880.
Kotb M, Norrby-Tegland A, McGeer A, et al: An immunogenetic and molecular basis for differences in the outcome of invasive Group A streptococcal infections, *Nat Med* 8:1398–1404, 2002.
Kvach EJ, Ferguson D, Riska PF, et al: Comparison of BD GenOhm *Cdiff* Real-Time PCR assay with a two-step algorithm and a Toxin A/B ELISA for diagnosis of toxigenic Clostridium difficile infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 2009. epub Oct 28.
Lagergård T, Bölin I, Lindholm L: On the evolution of the sexually transmitted bacteria *Haemophilus ducreyi* and *Klebsiella granulomatis*, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1230:E1–E10, 2011.
Lappin E, Ferguson AJ: Gram positive toxic shock syndromes, *Lancet Infect Dis* 9:281–289, 2009.
Lawson AJ: Helicobacter. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 900–915.
Lean WL, Arnup S, Danchin M, et al: Rapid diagnostic tests for group A streptococcal pharyngitis: A meta-analysis, *Pediatrics* 134:771–781, 2014.
Leber AL: Pertussis: Relevant species and diagnostic update, *Clin Lab Med* 34:237–255, 2014.
Ledeboer NA, Doern GV: Haemophilus. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 588–602, 648.
Levi AW, Harigopal M, Hui P, et al: Comparison of Affirm VPIII and Papanicolaou tests in the detection of infectious vaginitis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 135:442–447, 2011.
Limberger RJ, Biega R, Evancoe A, et al: Evaluation of culture and the Gen-Probe Pace 2 assay for detection of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia trachomatis* in endocervical specimens transported to a state health laboratory, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:1162, 1992.
LiPuma JJ, Currie BJ, Peacock SJ, et al: *Burkholderia*, *Stenotrophomonas*, *Ralstonia*, *Cupriavidus*, *Pandoraea*, *Brevundimonas*, *Comomonas*, *Delftia*, and *Acidovorax*. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 692–713.
Loonen AJ, Jansz AR, Bergland JN, et al: Comparative study using phenotypic, genotypic, and proteomics methods for identification of coagulase-negative staphylococci, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:1437–1439, 2012.
Lopez R, Cima MD, Vazquez F, et al: Epidemiologic studies *of S. pneumoniae* carriage in healthy primary school aged children, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 18:771–776, 1999.
Low DE: Toxic shock syndrome: Major advances in pathogenesis, but not treatment, *Crit Care Clin* 29:651–675, 2013.
Lu PL, Hseuh PR, Hung CC, et al: Infective endocarditis complicated with progressive heart failure due to a β-lactamase producing *Cardiobacterium hominis*, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:2015–2017, 2000.
MacDonald PD, Whitwam RE, Boggs JD, et al: Outbreaks of listeriosis among Mexican immigrants as a result of consumption of illicitly produced Mexican-style cheese, *Clin Infect Dis* 40:677–682, 2005.
Mackey JR, Melendez EL, Farrell JJ, et al: Direct detection of indirect transmission of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* rat bite fever infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:2259–2261, 2014.
Madhubashini M, George S, Chandrasekaran S: *Streptobacillus moniliformis* endocarditis: Case report and review of literature, *Indian Heart J* 65:442–446, 2013.
Maetz B, Abbou R, Andreoletti JB, et al: Infections following the application of leeches: Two case reports and review of the literature, *J Med Case Rep* 6:364, 2012.
Mancini F, Monaco M, Pataracchia M, et al: Identification and molecular discrimination of toxigenic and nontoxigenic diphtheria *Corynebacterium* strains by combined real-time polymerase chain reaction assays, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 73:111–120, 2012.
Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, ed 5, New York, 2000, Churchill Livingstone.
Manickam K, Walkty A, Lagacé-Wiens PR, et al: Evaluation of MRSASelect™ chromogenic medium for the early detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* from blood cultures, *Can J Infect Dis Med Microbiol* 24:e113–e116, 2013.
Manji R, Bythrow M, Branda JA: Multi-center evaluation of the VITEK® MS system for mass spectrometric identification of non-Enterobacteriaceae gram-negative bacilli, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 33:337–346, 2014.
Martinez RM, Bauerle ER, Fang FC, et al: Evaluation of three rapid diagnostic methods for direct identification of microorganisms in positive blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:2521–2529, 2014.
Masoero G, Lombardo L, DellaMonica P, et al: Discrepancy between *H. Pylori* stool antigen assay and urea breath test in the detection of *H. pylori* infection, *Dig Liver Dis* 32:285–290, 2000.
Mattos-Guaraldi AL, Moreira LO, Damasco PV, et al: Diphtheria remains a threat to health in the developing world—An overview, *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 98:987–993, 2003.

McBride SJ, Upton A, Roberts SA: Clinical characteristics and outcomes of patients with vancomycin-susceptible *Enterococcus faecalis* and *Enterococcus faecium* bacteremia in a five-year retrospective review, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2009. epub Nov. 15.
McCollum JT, Cronquist AB, Silk BJ, et al: Multistate outbreak of listeriosis associated with cantaloupe, *N Engl J Med* 369:944–953, 2013.
McGuiness CB, Hill J, Fonseca E, et al: The disease burden of pertussis in adults 50 years old and older in the United States: A retrospective study, *MC Infect Dis* 13:32, 2013.
Miller JM, Krisher K, Holmes HT: General principles of specimen collection. In Murray PR, Baron EJ, Jorgensen JH, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 9, Washington, DC, 2007, American Society for Microbiology, p 44.
Mirrett S, Lauer BA, Miller GA, et al: Comparison of acridine orange, methylene blue, and gram stain for blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 14:562–566, 1982.
Mirsaeidi M, Schraufnagel DE: Pneumococcal vaccines: Understanding centers for disease control and prevention recommendations, *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 11:980–985, 2014.
MMWR: Methicillin resistant S. aureus infections among competitive sports participants, 2000–2003, *Morbid Mortal Wkly Rep* 52:793–798, 2003.
MMWR: Vancomycin resistant *S. aureus*—New York, 2004, *Morbid Mortal Wkly Rep* 53:322–323, 2004.
MMWR: Severe methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* community-acquired pneumonia associated with influenza—Louisiana and Georgia, December 2006–January 2007, *Morb Mort Wkly Rep* 56:325–329, 2007a.
MMWR: Update to CD's sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2006: Fluoroquinolones no longer recommended for treatment of gonococcal infections, *Morbid Mort Wkly Rep* 56:332–336, 2007b.
MMWR: Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease—Revised guidelines from CDC, 2010, *Morb Mort Wkly Rep* 59(RR–10):1–31, 2010.
MMWR: Recommendations for the laboratory-based detection of Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 2014. *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*—2014, *MMWR Recomm Rep* 63(RR–02): 1–19, 2014.
Montiero L, de Mascarel A, Sarrasqueta AM, et al: Diagnosis of *Helicobacter pylori* infection: Noninvasive methods compared to invasive methods and evaluation of two new tests, *Am J Gastroenterol* 96:353–358, 2001.
Montiero L, Oleastro M, Lehours P, et al: Diagnosis of *Helicobacter pylori* infection, *Helicobacter* 14(S1):8–14, 2009.
Moon HW, Lee SH, Chung HS, et al: Performance of the Vitek MS matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry system for identification of gram-positive cocci routinely isolated in clinical microbiology laboratories, *J Med Microbiol* 62:1301–1306, 2013.
Moskowitz SM, Wiener-Kronish JP: Mechanisms of bacterial virulence in pulmonary infections, *Curr Opin Crit Care* 2009. epub.
Mossad SB, Tomford JW, Stewart R, et al: Case report of *Streptomyces* endocarditis of a prosthetic aortic valve, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:3335–3337, 1995.
Muder RR, Yu VL: Infection due to *Legionella* species other than *L. pneumophila*, *Clin Infect Dis* 35:990–998, 2002.
Munford RS: Severe sepsis and septic shock: The role of gram-negative bacteremia, *Annu Rev Pathol* 1:467–496, 2006.
Murphy TF, Parameswaran GI: *Moraxella catarrhalis*—A human respiratory tract pathogen, *Clin Infect Dis* 49:124–131, 2009.
Murray PR: Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry: Usefulness for taxonomy and epidemiology, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 16: 1626–1630, 2010.
Nataro JP, Bopp CA, Fields PI, et al: *Escherichia*, *Shigella*, and *Salmonella*. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 603–626.
Nebreda-Mayoral T, Munoz-Bellido JL, Garcia-Rodriguez JA: Incidence and characteristics of urinary tract infections caused by *Corynebacterium urealyticum* (Corynebacterium group D2), *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 13:600–604, 1994.
Nonhoff C, Roisin S, Hallin M, et al: Evaluation of Clearview Exact PBP2a—A new immunochromatographic assay for detection of low-level methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (LL-MRSA), *J Clin Microbiol* 50:3359–3360, 2012.
Norskov-Lauritsen N, Kilian M: Reclassification of *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*, *Haemophilus aphrophilus*, *H. paraprophilus* and *H. segnis* as *Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans* gen. nov., comb. nov., *Aggregatibacter aphrophilus* comb. nov. and *Aggregatibacter segnis* comb. nov., and emended description of *Aggregatibacter aphrophilus* to include V factor-dependent and V factor-independent isolates, *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* 56:2135–2146, 2006.
Noskin GA, Suriano T, Collins S, et al: *Paenibacillus macerans* pseudobacteremia resulting from contaminated blood culture bottles in a neonatal intensive care unit, *Am J Infect Control* 29:126–129, 2001.
Nugent RP, Krohn MA, Hillier SL: Reliability of diagnosing bacterial vaginosis is improved by a standardized method of Gram stain interpretation, *J Clin Microbiol* 29:297–301, 1991.
Oehler RL, Velez AP, Mizrachi M, et al: Bite-related and septic syndromes caused by cats and dogs, *Lancet Infect Dis* 9:439–475, 2009.
O'Farrell N, Moi H: IUSTI/WHO European STD Guidelines Editorial Board. European guideline for the management of donovanosis, 2010, *Int J STD AIDS* 21:609–610, 2010.
Ozdemir O, Sari S, Terzioglu S, et al: *Plesiomonas shigelloides* sepsis and meningoencephalitis in a surviving neonate, *J Microbiol Immunol Infect* 43:344–346, 2010.
Pan ES, Diep BA, Carlton HA, et al: Increasing prevalence of MRSA infections in California jails, *Clin Infect Dis* 37:1384–1388, 2003.
Papastergiou V, Georgopoulos SD, Karatapanis S: Treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection: Past, present and future, *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 5:392–399, 2014.
Patel R, Piper K, Cockerill FR, et al: The biopesticide *Paenibacillus popilliae* has a vancomycin resistance gene cluster homologous to the enterococcal VanA vancomycin gene cluster, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 44:704–709, 2000.
Patel JB, Wallace RJ, Brown-Elliott BA, et al: Sequence-based identification of aerobic actinomycetes, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:2530–2540, 2004.
Paterson GK, Morgan FJ, Harrison EM, et al: Prevalence and characterization of human mecC methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates in England, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 69:907–910, 2014.
Peel TN, Cole NC, Dylla BL, et al: Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time of flight mass spectrometry and diagnostic testing for prosthetic joint infection in the clinical microbiology laboratory, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 2014. pii: S0732-8893(14)00486-6.
Peirano G, Bradford PA, Kazmierczak KM, et al: Global incidence of carbapenemase-producing Escherichia coli ST131, *Emerg Infect Dis* 20:1928–1931, 2014.
Perez F, Hujer AM, Hujer KM, et al: Global challenge of multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *Antimicrob Agent Chemother* 51:3471–3484, 2007.
Perry JD, Davies A, Butterworth LA, et al: Development and evaluation of a chromagar media for methicillin resistant *S. aureus*, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:4519–4523, 2004.
Petersen JM, Schriefer ME, Araj GF: *Francisella* and *Brucella*. In Murray PR, Baron EJ, Jorgensen JH, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 751–769.
Picard FJ, Bergeron MG: Laboratory detection of Group B streptococci for prevention of perinatal disease, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 23:665–671, 2004.
Queipo-Ortuno MI, Colmenero JD, Baeza G, et al: Comparison between LightCycler Real-Time Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) assay with serum and PCR-enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay with whole blood samples for the diagnosis of human brucellosis, *Clin Infect Dis* 40:260–264, 2005.
Ramanan P, Deziel PJ, Wengenack NL: *Gordonia* bacteremia, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:3443–3447, 2013.
Rantala S: *Streptococcus dysgalactiae* subsp. *equisimilis* bacteremia: An emerging infection, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 33:1303–1310, 2014.
Rasmussen M: Aerococci and aerococcal infections, *J Infect* 66:467–474, 2013.
Reglinski M, Sriskandan S: The contribution of group A streptococcal virulence determinants to the pathogenesis of sepsis, *Virulence* 5:127–136, 2014.
Richter SS, Sercia L, Branda JA, et al: Identification of Enterobacteriaceae by matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry using the VITEK MS system, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 32:1571–1578, 2013.
Rodríguez-Baño J, García L, Ramírez E, et al: Long-term control of hospital-wide, endemic multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii* through a comprehensive "bundle" approach, *Am J Infect Control* 37:715–722, 2009.
Ruoff KL: *Aerococcus*, *Abiotrophia*, and other aerobic catalase-negative, gram-positive cocci. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 365–376.
Sabe MA, Shrestha NK, Gordon S, et al: *Staphylococcus lugdunensis*: A rare but destructive cause of coagulase-negative staphylococcus infective endocarditis, *Eur Heart J Acute Cardiovasc Care* 3:275–280, 2014.
Salerno A, Cižnár I, Krovacek K, et al: Phenotypic characterization and putative virulence factors of human, animal and environmental isolates of *Plesiomonas shigelloides*, *Folia Microbiol (Praha)* 55:641–647, 2010.
Salgado-Pabón W, Breshears L, Spaulding AR, et al: Superantigens are critical for *Staphylococcus aureus* infective endocarditis, sepsis, and acute kidney injury. Superantigens are critical for *Staphylococcus aureus* infective endocarditis, sepsis, and acute kidney injury, *MBio* 4:2013. pii: e00494-13.
Salimnia H, Fairfax MR, Lephart P, et al: An international, prospective, multi-center evaluation of the combination of the AdvanDx Staphylococcus QuickFISH BC with the mecA XpressFISH for the detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* from positive blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 2014.
Savini V, Fazii P, Favaro M, et al: Tuberculosis-like pneumonias by the aerobic actinomycetes Rhodococcus, Tsukamurella and Gordonia, *Microbes Infect* 14:401–410, 2012.
Schlaberg R, Fisher MA, Hanson KE: Susceptibility profiles of *Nocardia* isolates based on current taxonomy, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 58:795–800, 2014.
Schuchat A, Lizano C, Broome CV, et al: Outbreak of neonatal listeriosis associated with mineral oil, *Pediatr Infect Dis* 10:183–189, 1991.
Schulthess B, Brodner K, Bloemberg GV, et al: Identification of gram-positive cocci by use of matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry: Comparison of different preparation methods and implementation of a practical algorithm for routine diagnostics, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:1834–1840, 2013.
Sena AC, Seed P, Nicholson B, et al: *Kingella kingae* endocarditis and a cluster investigation among daycare attendees, *Pediatr Infect Dis* 2009. epub Oct 30.
Senneby E, Petersson AC, Rasmussen M: Epidemiology and antibiotic susceptibility of aerococci in urinary cultures, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 81:149–151, 2015.
Shahin M, Jamal W, Verghese T, et al: Comparative evaluation of Anoxomat and conventional anaerobic GasPak jar systems for the isolation of anaerobic bacteria, *Med Princ Pract* 12:81–86, 2003.
Shelton-Dodge K, Vetter EA, Kohner PC, et al: Clinical significance and antimicrobial susceptibilities of *Aerococcus sanguinicola* and *Aerococcus urinae*, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 70:448–451, 2011.
Shepard CW, Daneshvar MI, Kaiser RM, et al: *Bordetella holmesii* bacteremia: A newly recognized clinical entity among asplenic patients, *Clin Infect Dis* 38:799–804, 2004.
Simmon KE, Mirrett S, Reller LB, et al: Genotypic diversity of anaerobic isolates from bloodstream infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:1596–1601, 2008.
Simmons C, Stasiewicz MJ, Wright E, et al: *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Listeria* spp. contamination patterns in retail delicatessen establishments in three U.S. states, *J Food Prot* 77:1929–1939, 2014.
Skalsky K, Yahav D, Bishara J, et al: Treatment of human brucellosis: Systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials, *BMJ* 336:701–704, 2008.
Smith MD, Sheppard CL, Hogan A, et al: Diagnosis of *S. pneumoniae* infections in adults with bacteremia and community acquired pneumonia: Clinical comparison of pneumococcal PCR and urinary antigen detection, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:1046–1049, 2009.

Song Y, Finegold SM: *Peptostreptococcus*, *Finegoldia*, *Anaerococcus*, *Peptoniphilus*, *Veillonella*, and other anaerobic cocci. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 803–816.

Spector TB, Maziarz EK: Pertussis, *Med Clin North Am* 97:537–552, 2013.

Spellberg B, Bonomo RA: The deadly impact of extreme drug resistance in *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *Crit Care Med* 42:1289–1291, 2014.

Spellerberg B, Brandt C: Streptococcus. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 331–349.

Speziale P, Pietrocola G, Rindi S, et al: Structural and functional role of *Staphylococcus aureus* surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules of the host, *Future Microbiol* 4:1337–1352, 2009.

Steiner DJ, Furuya Y, Metzger DW: Host-pathogen interactions and immune evasion strategies in *Francisella tularensis* pathogenicity, *Infect Drug Resist* 7:239–251, 2014.

Stevens DL, Bryant AE, Berger A, et al: *Clostridium*. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 833–857.

Stevens MP, Elam K, Bearman G: Meningitis due to *Bacillus cereus*: A case report and review of the literature, *Can J Infect Dis Med Microbiol* 23:e16–e19, 2012.

Stingu CS, Rodloff AC, Jentsch H, et al: Rapid identification of oral anaerobic bacteria cultivated from subgingival biofilm by MALDI-TOF-MS, *Oral Microbiol Immunol* 23:372–376, 2008.

Summanen PH, McTeague M, Vaisanen ML, et al: Comparison of recovery of anaerobic bacteria using the Anoxomat, anaerobic chamber, and GasPak jar systems, *Anaerobe* 5:5–9, 1999.

Sweeney DA, Hicks CW, Cui X, et al: Anthrax infection, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 184:1333–1341, 2011.

Tai AS, Kidd TJ, Whiley DM, et al: Molecular surveillance for carbapenemase genes in carbapenem-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in Australian patients with cystic fibrosis, *Pathology* 47:156–160, 2015.

Teixeira LM, Carvalho MGS, Shewmaker PL, et al: Enterococcus. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, p 442.

Testerman TL, Morris J: Beyond the stomach: An updated view of *Helicobacter pylori* pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment, *World J Gastroenterol* 20:12781–12808, 2014.

Thomas JG: Routine CSF antigen detection for agents associated with bacterial meningitis: Another point of view, *Clin Microbiol Newsl* 16:89–95, 1994.

Tille PM, editor: *Bailey and Scott's diagnostic microbiology*, ed 13, St Louis, 2014, Mosby.

Toro CM, Janvier J, Zhang K, et al: Community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus* aureus necrotizing pneumonia without evidence of antecedent viral upper respiratory infection, *Can J Infect Dis Med Microbiol* 25:e76–e82, 2014.

U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: Ocular prophylaxis for gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum: Reaffirmation recommendation statement, *Am Fam Physician* 85:195–196, 2012.

Valve K, Vaalasti A, Anttila VJ, et al: Disseminated *L. pneumophila* infection in an immunocompromised patient treated with tigecycline, *Scand J Infect Dis* 2009. epub Nov. 17.

Van den Velde S, Lagrou K, Desmet K, et al: Species identification of corynebacteria by cellular fatty acid analysis, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 54:99–104, 2006.

Vaneechouette M, Dijksoorn L, Nemec A, et al: *Acinetobacter*, *Chryseobacterium*, *Moraxella*, and other nonfermentative gram-negative bacteria. In Versaolvic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 714–738.

Vaska VL, Faoagali JL: *Streptococcus bovis* bacteraemia: Identification within organism complex and association with endocarditis and colonic malignancy, *Pathology* 41:183–186, 2009.

Veenemans J, Verhulst C, Punselie R, et al: Evaluation of brilliance MRSA 2 agar for detection of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in clinical samples, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:1026–1027, 2013.

Velasco D, del Mar Tomas M, Cartelle M, et al: Evaluation of different methods for detection of methicillin (oxacillin) resistance in Staphylococcus aureus, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 55:379–382, 2005.

Verani JR, McGee L, Schrag SJ: Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease—Revised guidelines from CDC, *MMWR Recomm Rep* 59:1–36, 2010.

Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology.

Vucicevic Z, Bencic IJ, Kruslin B, et al: Toxic shock syndrome due to group A streptococcal pharyngitis and bacteremia in an adult, *J Microbiol Immunol Infect* 41:351–354, 2008.

Wade WG, Kononen E: *Propionibacterium*, *Lactobacillus*, *Actinomyces*, and other non-spore-forming anaerobic gram positive rods. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 817–833.

Wang Q, Chang BJ, Riley TV: *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, *Vet Microbiol* 140:405–417, 2010.

Warren DK, Liao RS, Merz LR, et al: Detection of methicillin resistant *S. aureus* directly from nasal swab specimens by a real-time PCR assay, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:5578–5581, 2004.

Weinstock DM, Brown AE: Rhodococcus equi: An emerging pathogen, *Clin Infect Dis* 34:1379–1385, 2002.

Wellinghausen N: *Listeria* and *Erysipelothrix*. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 403–412.

Westhoff C: IUDs and colonization or infection with *Actinomyces*, *Contraception* 75:S48–S50, 2007.

Wilkie IW, Harper M, Boyce JD, et al: *Pasteurella multocida*: Diseases and pathogenesis, *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 361:1–22, 2012.

Williams MM, Taylor TH Jr, Warshauer DM, et al: Harmonization of *Bordetella pertussis* real-time PCR diagnostics in the United States in 2012, *J Clin Microbiol* 53:118–123, 2015.

Williams-Bouyer N, Reisner BS, Woods GL: Comparison of gen-probe AccuProbe group B streptococcus culture identification test with conventional culture for the detection of group B streptococci in broth cultures of vaginal-anorectal specimens from pregnant women, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 36:159–162, 2000.

Wilson BA, Ho M: Cellular and molecular action of the mitogenic protein-deamidating toxin from *Pasteurella multocida*, *FEBS J* 278:4616–4632, 2011.

Wilson JW: Nocardiosis: Updates and clinical overview, *Mayo Clin Proc* 87:403–407, 2012.

Winn W, Allen S, Janda W, et al: *Koneman's color atlas and textbook of diagnostic microbiology*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2006, JB Lippincott.

Wirsing von Konig CH, Riffelmann M, Coenye T: *Bordetella* and related genera. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 739–750.

Woo PC, Ngan AH, Lau SK, et al: *Tsukamurella conjunctivitis*: A novel clinical syndrome, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:3168–3171, 2003.

Woods GL, Gutierez Y: *Diagnostic pathology of infectious diseases*, Philadelphia, 1993, Lea & Febiger.

Xu Y, Wang Y, Tan Y, et al: Production and characterization of recombinant pertactin, fimbriae 2 and fimbriae 3 from *Bordetella pertussis*, *BMC Microbiol* 9:274, 2009.

Yagupsky P: *Kingella kingae*: Carriage, transmission, and disease, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 28:54–79, 2015.

Yew HS, Chambers ST, Roberts SA, et al: Association between HACEK bacteraemia and endocarditis, *J Med Microbiol* 63:892–895, 2014.

Zbinden R, von Graevenitz A: *Actinobacillus*, *Capnocytophaga*, *Eikenella*, *Kingella*, *Pasturella*, and other fastidious or rarely encountered gram negative rods. In Versalovic J, Carroll KC, Funke G, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 10, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology, pp 574–587.

CHAPTER 59

IN VITRO TESTING OF ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

Angella Charnot-Katsikas, Kathleen G. Beavis

INTRODUCTION AND DEFINITIONS, 1153

INHIBITORY METHODS FOR SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING, 1155
Dilution Testing, 1155
Epsilometer, 1155
Disk Diffusion, 1155
Direct Tests for β-Lactamase, 1156
Technical Considerations in Susceptibility Testing, 1156
Commercial Automated Instrument Systems, 1157

MOLECULAR-BASED AND NEWER METHODS OF ANTIMICROBIAL SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING, 1158

INDICATIONS FOR SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING, 1160

SELECTION OF ANTIBIOTICS FOR TESTING AND IMPORTANT RESISTANCE PHENOTYPES, 1161

SELECTING ANTIBIOTICS TO BE REPORTED, 1168

CUMULATIVE ANTIMICROBIAL SUSCEPTIBILITY REPORTS, 1169

BACTERICIDAL TESTING, 1169

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1170

KEY POINTS

- The *minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC)* is defined as the lowest concentration of antibiotic that inhibits the visible growth of an organism, in vitro. It is distinguished from the *breakpoint,* which is the concentration of antibiotic that determines whether an isolate is categorized as susceptible, intermediate, or resistant.
- MIC values are determined by inhibitory methods in the laboratory, which include broth dilution, agar dilution, and gradient diffusion (using the Epsilometer, also known as the *E-test*). Disk diffusion testing, which is a qualitative rather than a quantitative test, does not directly result in an MIC value, but is based on direct correlation of inhibitory zone sizes with MIC values. Molecular testing also does not result in an MIC but is increasingly being used to rapidly determine the presence of resistance genes in an organism. Whatever method of testing is chosen, it must be remembered that resistance mechanisms are complex and can evolve quickly; therefore, it is imperative that the laboratory director remain informed of the most current literature and guidelines.
- Whatever method of susceptibility testing is used, standardized conditions related to media, inoculum concentration, incubation time, atmosphere, and temperature are necessary to produce accurate and reproducible results. Standards for these variables are published by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) and represent standards of practice for microbiology laboratories.
- Commercial automated instrument systems are available for rapid, high-volume susceptibility testing; however, despite the advantages of speed and efficiency that these systems allow, it must be remembered that the systems may have weaknesses. In addition to the expense of the systems, some are associated with problems in accurately detecting specific resistance phenotypes. Expert rules can be programmed into the software to help streamline some of these issues for more accurate reporting. It is the responsibility of the laboratory director to be aware of the weaknesses in the systems used, and to find alternative or supplemental approaches of testing, as appropriate.
- Both the indications for susceptibility testing and the selection of which antimicrobials to test and report should be determined by individual laboratories on the basis of recommendations published by the CLSI and in close consultation with the medical and infectious disease staff of the institution served by the laboratory. In general, susceptibility testing is warranted when the susceptibility of an organism causing an infection cannot be predicted reliably from its identity.
- Cumulative antimicrobial susceptibility reports (antibiograms) should be published by laboratories, based on CLSI guidelines, on at least an annual basis. These compilations are important for use by physicians in initiating appropriate empirical treatment before testing results are available, are helpful for pharmacists in monitoring the use and need of specific antimicrobials and in attempting to control drug costs, and are helpful in trending susceptibility patterns in a particular hospital or region over time.

Selection of an antibiotic by a physician to treat an infection in a patient involves consideration of numerous factors, including but not limited to the known or most likely infecting organism(s), local patterns of drug resistance on the part of the organism(s), the site of infection, pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic properties of the drug, overall health of the patient, and the cost of the antibiotic. Although in many cases initial selection of an antimicrobial agent is empirical, in vitro laboratory testing of the susceptibility of isolated pathogen(s) to antibiotics is an important aid in subsequent management of the patient. Modification of therapy may be desirable if (1) the infecting organism(s) is resistant to current therapy, (2) the dose of antibiotic is not appropriate, (3) an equally effective but less expensive agent can be used, or (4) de-escalation of antibiotic therapy can occur (i.e. if the organism is found to be more susceptible than anticipated).

INTRODUCTION AND DEFINITIONS

In vitro antibiotic susceptibility testing (AST) in clinical laboratories is primarily performed with the use of phenotypic methods. Phenotypic methods have traditionally required isolation of the pathogen being tested, followed by exposure of the pathogen to the antimicrobial and subsequent evaluation of the expression, or lack of expression, of resistance to the antibiotic. This process can be labor-intensive and time-consuming, which may be disadvantageous under some circumstances to the patient, the laboratory, or both. Despite this fact, phenotypic methods, which include broth dilution, agar dilution, disk diffusion, and gradient diffusion (E-test), are at present the most prevalent and in many cases the most cost-effective way to accomplish susceptibility testing. Commercial systems, based on phenotypic methods, have reduced the labor and the time necessary to detect the expression of antibiotic resistance and are used in many

We gratefully acknowledge the contribution of Michael B. Smith, P. Rocco LaSala, and Gail L. Woods, who authored this chapter in previous editions.

laboratories. Finally, newer methods of testing (primarily molecular), some of which can be performed directly on patient specimens, have recently gained popularity, as they eliminate the delay associated with pathogen isolation.

Antimicrobial susceptibility tests may be categorized according to the endpoint used, that is, inhibition of growth or killing. In most cases, inhibition of growth is the parameter used in the laboratory, with only limited use of a killing endpoint for very specific circumstances.

The inhibitory parameter that forms the basis for the majority of phenotypic susceptibility tests is the **minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC)**, which is the lowest concentration of antibiotic that inhibits the visible growth of an organism in an in vitro system (Fig. 59-1). MIC results are dependent not only on the interaction between the antimicrobial agent and the organism, but also on test conditions. These conditions include pH and ion concentrations of testing media, the temperature at which the test system is incubated, the incubation atmosphere, the amount of organism used in testing, and the length of time the system incubates. To allow intralaboratory and interlaboratory reproducibility, these test conditions have been standardized. Various standards organizations in a variety of venues throughout the world have set and published these parameters, and in the United States, **the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI),** fulfills this role.

Although the MIC is a very useful and reproducible indicator of the interaction of an antibiotic with a specific organism, the information it provides to a physician in the context of the infected patient by itself is limited. The MIC is a "snapshot" assessment of the interaction of a constant concentration of drug with the organism at a specific point in time under specified conditions in vitro. The MIC must be correlated with the complex and changing environment of the physiology of the patient to allow the physician to predict whether therapy with a particular antibiotic will be successful. This is accomplished through the use of **breakpoints,** which allow assessment of the efficacy of killing or inhibition of growth of the organism by the antimicrobial. Several types of breakpoints, including microbiological, pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic, and clinical, have been identified. Clinical breakpoints, which are intended to separate strains of organisms into categories that predict whether therapy in a patient will be successful, are breakpoints relevant to this short review and are the only type of breakpoint discussed here. Determining clinical breakpoints is complex, difficult, and subjective. The process can involve numerous clinical trials, and clinical breakpoints may vary with the determining standards organization; breakpoints also change over time, as they are reassessed and revised according to the most recent guiding literature. Breakpoints also vary based on the clinical site of infection; for example, the breakpoint set for meningitis due to *S. pneumoniae* is different from that set for pneumonia caused by the same organism. In the United States, clinical breakpoints for specific antibiotic-organism combinations are set and published for use by clinical laboratories by the CLSI, and they are updated yearly (CLSI document M100-S24, 2014). Breakpoints established by the CLSI may differ for a variety of reasons from those set by the European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) or other standards organizations. One such reason involves different dosing and administration schedules used for the same drugs in different countries. In the United States, challenges also arise when breakpoints differ between the CLSI and the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), as the breakpoints and interpretations of the FDA are the ones to which the manufacturers of the automated testing systems must adhere, while the breakpoints and interpretations of the CLSI guide clinical microbiologists, and are based on the most recent and relevant literature and hence updated regularly. Finally, breakpoints are not perfectly clinically predictive for various reasons, such as differences in patient characteristics and immunity, as well as differences in organism virulence and type and site of infection. Excellent discussions of breakpoints and their determination, maintenance, and relevance can be obtained by referring to several review articles (Doern & Brecher, 2011; Jenkins & Jerris, 2011).

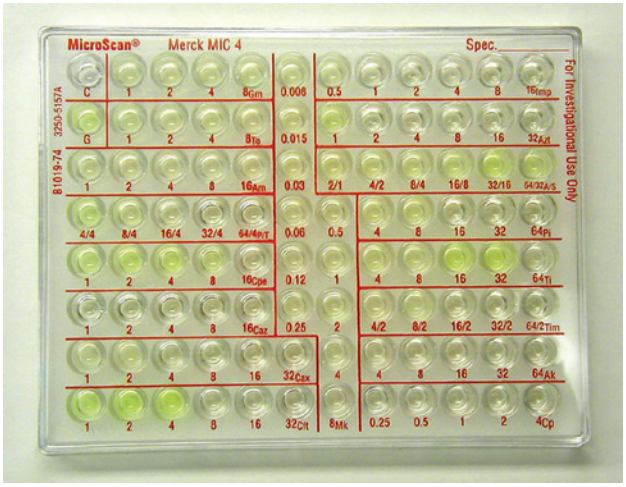


Figure 59-1 MIC by broth microdilution. Seen in this figure is a commercially prepared microtiter tray containing different concentrations of antibiotics in the various sets of wells; the concentrations in mcg/mL are marked by the numbers listed under each well, and the different antimicrobial agents are indicated by abbreviations seen nearest the well with the highest drug concentration. The organism is manually inoculated into the wells and read by direct visualization. Growth is indicated by turbidity (in the present figure, there is also pigmentation seen), and the organism will grow in the wells containing concentrations of antibiotics to which it is resistant. The MIC value is determined by the lowest concentration without visible growth. In cases in which all wells in the series of a given antibiotic are negative, the MIC is resulted as lower than the lowest concentration of that drug; conversely, when there is growth in all wells in the series of a given antibiotic, the MIC is resulted as higher than the highest concentration of that drug. In the present figure, the last antibiotic agent in the lowest row on the right is Ciprofloxacin (Cp), with an MIC ≤0.25 mcg/mL. Cefotetan (Cft) is on the lower left, with clear growth in the wells marked 1, 2, and 4, and no growth in the well-marked 8, making the MIC for this drug 8 mcg/mL. For comparison (as well as for use as an indicator of test validity), the negative (C) and positive control (G) wells can be seen on the upper left.

Interpretive categories have been established that allow simplified and easily understood reporting of susceptibility results by laboratories. Many laboratories report these categories, in addition to reporting an MIC or, in some cases, in lieu of reporting an MIC. Although highly knowledgeable infectious disease physicians may be able to make informed management decisions with the MIC, this is unlikely to be the case for physicians who do not specialize in this area. Treating physicians depend on guidance from the laboratory regarding interpretation of the actual breakpoints. The basic interpretative categories include **susceptible, intermediate,** and **resistant.** There is also a **nonsusceptible** category and most recently, a new **susceptible dose dependent (SDD)** category for antibacterial AST (CLSI, 2014). *Susceptible* implies that therapy with the recommended dosage of a particular antibiotic is likely to be effective in eradicating the infection, and *resistant* indicates that the antibiotic in the appropriate dose has not been shown to have a high likelihood of treatment success in clinical trials.

Reporting an interpretative category of intermediate has several implications. It suggests that the isolate tested may be less inhibited by the usual dose of the antibiotic than those isolates that are categorized as susceptible. It also implies that therapy with higher doses of antibiotic may be effective and that therapy may also be effective if used in anatomic sites in which the antibiotic is concentrated. An example of this latter situation is the use of β-lactam antibiotics in treating urinary tract infection. This category also includes a **buffer zone,** which is intended to prevent technical factors from resulting in a major interpretive error. SDD implies that susceptibility of an isolate is dependent on a higher dosing regimen (higher doses and/or more frequent dosing intervals) than typically used, and that the dose to which the patient is exposed is higher than that used when the susceptible breakpoint was established. This category has been in use for antifungal AST but is now used for antibacterial AST because it was noted that *intermediate* was often misinterpreted as *resistant* by clinicians, thereby limiting their choices for therapy.

The nonsusceptible category is intended for cases in which intermediate and resistant isolates have not been found or categories of intermediate and resistant have not been defined. It is utilized primarily for new antibiotics. If testing of an isolate yields an MIC value that is above the cutoff concentration established for the breakpoint for a susceptible category, the laboratory can report the isolate as nonsusceptible. This does not necessarily imply that resistance to the antibiotic exists, but it means that experience with isolates that demonstrate MICs at this level is limited, so no definitive assessment can be made.

Although reporting of antimicrobial susceptibility testing and categorization of an isolate into one the interpretative categories are helpful to physicians in managing patients with infection, it must be remembered that antimicrobial activity in vivo depends on many factors. In addition to drug dosage, route of administration, pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic

characteristics of the drug, and site of infection, patient-specific factors such as immune status, hepatic and renal function, diet, and concomitant therapy with other pharmaceuticals also determine a patient's response to therapy and must be considered in planning treatment. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing is thus an adjunct to patient management and does not in itself predict response to therapy.

INHIBITORY METHODS FOR SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

DILUTION TESTING

In dilution testing, a standardized amount of organism is inoculated into a series of tubes, wells, or dishes that contain a range of concentrations of antimicrobial in a vehicle, such as broth or agar, usually starting with an integral of 2 (e.g., 128 μg/mL) and decreasing on a $\log_2$ basis to the lowest concentration tested. For the purposes of convenience and economy, it has become common to limit the range of concentrations of each antimicrobial tested to those concentrations that encompass the breakpoints that distinguish between susceptible and resistant.

The broth macrodilution method is performed using standard test tubes, and the tubes are viewed by the unaided eye to determine whether growth is present. The broth macrodilution system is no longer used by most laboratories because of its labor-intensive nature, but this method is the foundation of most modern susceptibility testing systems. Similarly, the agar dilution method, where the antibiotic being tested is incorporated into solid agar in Petri dishes, is an older, labor-intensive method that is rarely used by modern laboratories for routine testing. However, because the isolate being tested is placed onto the agar as a single spot, the agar dilution method can allow the testing of multiple isolates on a single plate. Additionally, some species that do not grow well in broth, or for which the broth method has not been shown to be sufficiently reproducible, can be tested by this method. For example, with the exception of the *Bacteroides fragilis* group, agar dilution is the reference method recommended by the CLSI for susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria (CLSI, 2012a).

Broth microdilution is the most common dilution method used in the modern microbiology laboratory, and this method is the basis for most commercial systems. Commercially prepared and disposable microtiter trays containing antibiotics exist as standalone devices, which are manually inoculated and read by visualization (see Fig. 59-1). Because of the labor associated with preparing microtiter trays in-house, and the extensive quality assurance testing necessary when preparing the trays, commercially prepared trays and systems are very popular. They can be expensive, however, and the antibiotics available on a given tray may not conform to local needs. Customized trays may also be available but usually are associated with additional expense. The antibiotic-containing microtiter trays are also components of automated systems that are read by spectrophotometric and fluorometric methods. Several systems have been in existence for a number of years, have extensive databases built over the years, offer computerized software that allows collection of antibiogram data, and include "expert" systems that assist in interpretation of susceptibility results. **Expert systems** in the automated instruments allow for rules to be programmed into the software such that AST reporting can be as automated and as accurate as possible. These rules involve actions to be taken on the basis of defined susceptibility results. They are based on clinical breakpoints as well as a compilation of other important information such as known intrinsic resistance of organisms, unusual resistance profiles, and interpretive rules (the inference of resistance mechanisms from AST results) (Leclercq et al, 2013).

EPSILOMETER

The Epsilometer, or E-test (bioMérieux SA, Marcy-l'Etoile, France), is based on a combination of the concepts of both dilution and diffusion. The E-test strip is a plastic strip with a gradient of antibiotic on one side and a continuous MIC scale on the opposite side; therefore, as with broth dilution, the MIC can be determined. The strip is placed on the surface of an agar plate that has been inoculated with the test isolate. Like disk diffusion, antibiotic from the strip will diffuse into the surrounding agar, with the difference being that in this method, diffusion will occur in a gradient corresponding to the gradient on the strip. If the isolate is susceptible, an ellipse of inhibition will occur in growth of the bacterium on the surface of the plate, and the point on the MIC scale of the strip where the ellipse of inhibition intersects is the MIC (Fig. 59-2). The MIC

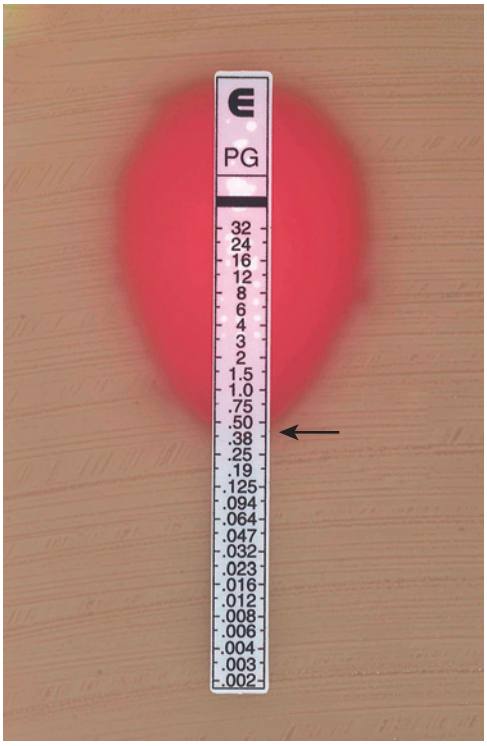


Figure 59-2 Epsilometer, or E-test. A gradient of antibiotic (penicillin in this example) is incorporated into the plastic strip, which is placed on the agar surface on which an organism has been streaked *(Streptococcus pneumoniae)*. The intersection of the zone of inhibition with the numeric scale on the strip is read as the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) *(arrow)*.

obtained using the E-test has been shown to correlate well with the MIC obtained with the agar or broth dilution for many antibiotic–bacterial species combinations (Baker et al, 1991). This method is useful because it allows the testing of single antibiotics against isolates, which has particular utility if testing of an isolate against a drug not on the laboratory's preconstructed antibiotic panel is necessary, or if testing of one or a few drugs against fastidious species that require special media is required (e.g., *Haemophilus influenzae*).

DISK DIFFUSION

In the disk diffusion test (Kirby-Bauer), largely limited to rapidly growing aerobic and facultatively anaerobic bacteria, a paper disk containing a specified amount (not concentration) of antimicrobial is applied to an agar surface that has been streaked with a standardized inoculum of the test isolate. Testing is done on a 150-mm–diameter agar plate that allows testing of up to 12 antibiotics at once. The antibiotic diffuses into the agar medium from the disk, resulting in a zone of growth inhibition at the point at which a critical concentration of the antimicrobial in the medium inhibits growth of the bacteria after a standardized time period (16 to 24 hours) (Fig. 59-3). The diameter of the zone of growth inhibition has been shown to be inversely correlated with the MIC. The relationship between the two can be expressed as a linear regression line, and zone diameter equivalents of susceptible, intermediate, and resistant interpretations can be extrapolated from their intercepts on the regression line with corresponding MIC values. Of note, the diameters that correspond to the interpretive breakpoints differ for the various drug-bug combinations, such that a 13-mm diameter for one drug-bug combination may be interpreted as susceptible, whereas for another it might be considered resistant.

Disk diffusion is a simple method that provides a qualitative susceptibility result. It allows easy modification of the choice of antibiotics being tested and is inexpensive relative to a number of other methods. It is primarily a manual method, although a video-assisted plate reader as part of a susceptibility data management system, the BIOMIC System (Giles Scientific, Santa Barbara, Calif.), has been available for a number of years. For laboratories with a high volume of testing, dependence on manual labor may prohibit the use of disk diffusion as the routine method of

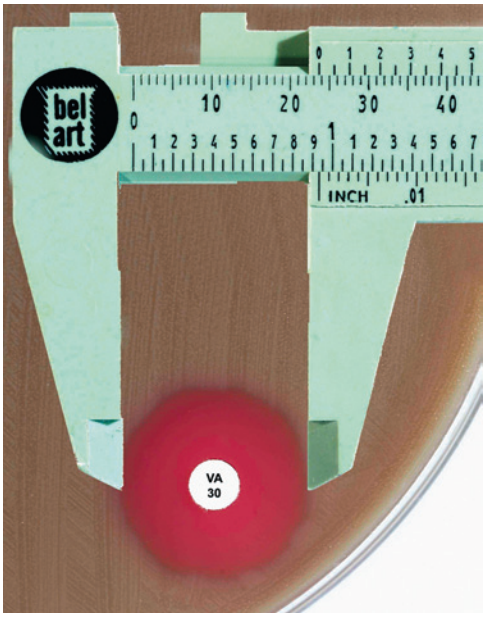


Figure 59-3 Disk diffusion. The zone of inhibition around the antibiotic disk (vancomycin in this case) on the agar surface on which the organism *(Streptococcus pneumoniae)* has been streaked is measured. The result may be susceptible, intermediate, or resistant, based on the zone size.

susceptibility testing. Additionally, certain fastidious species may require special media or conditions for performing disk diffusion that may prohibit routine testing in some laboratories, as it may not be cost-effective to keep the necessary media on hand for the infrequent times when testing is necessary. Referral of the isolate to a reference laboratory for susceptibility testing is sometimes a more cost-effective approach in these situations.

DIRECT TESTS FOR β-LACTAMASE

Direct β-lactamase tests are not inhibitory tests but are phenotypic tests that detect the presence of β-lactamase production by an organism. They are mentioned with the inhibitory tests because they, like the inhibitory tests, are commonly used in clinical laboratories. These tests are useful in detecting penicillinase enzymes in gram-positive and a few gram-negative species. Three types of β-lactamase direct tests may be used: acidometric, iodometric, and chromogenic. The chromogenic test is the most sensitive, the most specific, and the easiest to use; it has replaced the other types in usual laboratory use and is the only type discussed here. The chromogenic test consists of a paper disk impregnated with a chromogenic cephalosporin (nitrocefin). A loopful of bacteria to be tested is simply smeared onto the disk, and if the organism is producing β-lactamase, hydrolysis of the chromogenic cephalosporin will occur and the disk color will change from yellow to red, usually within 1 minute; however, a final observation of the disk at 15 minutes is necessary for slowly developing reactions. The test can be used to detect β-lactamase production in several species, including *Haemophilus* species, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, *Staphylococcus* species, *Enterococcus* species, and gram-negative anaerobes (excluding the *B. fragilis* group, which are assumed to be β-lactamase producers). A positive test indicates that the organism will not be inhibited by a penicillinase-susceptible penicillin. A positive nitrocefin test for an isolate of *H. influenzae* or *M. catarrhalis* indicates that infection due to the isolate will not respond to ampicillin or amoxicillin. For many gram-positive species, the enzymes require induction by exposure to a β-lactam antibiotic before the enzyme is expressed and can be detected. For example, a simple and appropriate method for testing a staphylococcal isolate for β-lactamase production is accomplished by selecting growth from around the edges of a β-lactam–containing disk on a disk-diffusion plate. Further, for *S. aureus*, the induced nitrocefin β-lactamase test is less sensitive than other tests for the detection of penicillinase production; therefore, a more sensitive test, like the penicillin disk zone edge test, should be performed when the nitrocefin test is negative (CLSI, 2014). In the penicillin disk zone edge test, a sharply demarcated zone of inhibition around a penicillin disk along with individual colonies within the zone of inhibition indicates a positive test for β-lactamase production, whereas a "fuzzy," or gradually tapered zone, implies sensitivity to penicillin (CLSI, 2014). It should be noted that direct β-lactamase tests cannot be used to predict susceptibility to β-lactam antibiotics used in the treatment of infection caused by certain gram-negative aerobes or facultative anaerobes such as *Pseudomonas* spp. or the *Enterobacteriaceae*. Also, a negative β-lactamase test does not exclude resistance to penicillin, because there are other mechanisms of β-lactam resistance, such as penicillin binding protein modifications, as found in *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*.

TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS IN SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

Whichever method of dilution or disk-diffusion testing a laboratory selects (and laboratories usually select a combination of methods to accommodate their needs), utilization of a standardized procedure is of the utmost importance in producing accurate and reproducible results. A variety of standards organizations throughout the world have published performance standards for these procedures, and in the United States, professional organizations (e.g., the American Society for Microbiology, Infectious Disease Society of America), private industry, and governmental organizations have worked together within the Subcommittee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing under the Area Committee on Microbiology of the CLSI to establish the necessary standards. The CLSI has published a series of documents that describe standardized procedures for susceptibility testing of aerobic and facultatively anaerobic bacteria (CLSI documents M100-S24, 2014 and M45-A2, 2010), anaerobic bacteria (CLSI M11-A8, 2012a), mycobacteria and aerobic actinomycetes (CLSI M24-A2, 2012b), filamentous fungi (CLSI M38-A2, 2008b), and yeasts (CLSI M27-A3, 2008 and M27-S4, 2012c). The Subcommittee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing revises the text of most documents on a 3-year cycle and reviews and revises on a yearly basis tables detailing MIC breakpoints or zone-diameter breakpoints. Standardized procedures published by the CLSI represent the standard of laboratory practice in the United States, and laboratories should ensure that the most current tables and texts are on hand, and that revisions in the tables and texts are incorporated into the methods and policies of the laboratory when they become available.

Testing Media

It has been demonstrated that testing components with which susceptibility testing is carried out may have an effect on the results. With respect to testing media, the CLSI currently recommends Mueller-Hinton agar or broth because they demonstrate good batch-to-batch reproducibility; are low in sulfonamide, trimethoprim, and tetracycline inhibitors; and support the growth of most nonfastidious bacteria (CLSI, 2012d, 2012e). Stringent quality control must be adhered to in preparation of the media when media are prepared commercially or "in-house," as many physical properties of the media directly influence testing. Variations in ion concentrations and pH will affect testing (CLSI, 2012d, 2012e). For example, excess calcium and magnesium will cause *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* isolates to appear more resistant when tested against aminoglycosides, but decreased levels may demonstrate false susceptibility. The level of calcium will also affect daptomycin susceptibility results for those species against which the drug is tested, and zinc ion levels influence carbapenem results. As another example, the pH of the media will also directly affect testing, and it must be between 7.2 and 7.4 for accurate results. A more acidic pH will cause some drugs such as aminoglycosides, quinolones, and macrolides to lose potency, and some drugs such as penicillin to have increased activity. A higher pH can have the opposite effect.

For some fastidious species, supplements must be added to the Mueller-Hinton media, or specialized media containing required growth factors are necessary. For example, streptococci do not grow well in or on unsupplemented Mueller-Hinton media; this problem can be overcome by adding defibrinated sheep blood to a final concentration of 5% for disk diffusion or lysed horse blood to the medium at a final concentration of 2.5% to 5% for broth dilution. *Haemophilus influenzae* requires *Haemophilus* test medium when performing broth dilution, and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* testing requires GC agar base medium with growth supplement (CLSI, 2010). For susceptibility testing of anaerobes, *Brucella* agar supplemented with laked sheep blood, hemin, and vitamin K_1 (Wadsworth method) is necessary to allow testing using the agar dilution method (CLSI, 2012a). An exception is seen with the *B. fragilis* group, which can be tested using the microbroth dilution method with *Brucella* broth with hemin, vitamin K_1, and 5% lysed horse blood.

Additional medium parameters may influence testing. For example, agar depth in plates used in disk-diffusion testing must measure 4 mm; otherwise, the diffusion gradient of the antibiotic will be affected. False resistance may occur if the agar is too deep, and false susceptibility may

occur if the agar is not deep enough. When Mueller-Hinton is supplemented with blood, the zones of inhibition may be smaller by 2 to 3 mm than those obtained with unsupplemented agar.

Inoculum

Intuitively, it is evident that the quantity of bacteria present will influence results of susceptibility testing when a finite amount of antibiotic is used in the testing process. To ensure consistency in the quantity of organisms inoculated into the test system, the CLSI has mandated that the prepared inoculum suspension must have a turbidity equivalent to a 0.5 McFarland turbidity standard, which contains approximately 1 to 4×10^8 colony-forming units/mL. These standards can be purchased commercially, or a $BaSO_4$ suspension can be prepared in the laboratory, the instructions for which are detailed in CLSI documents (CLSI, 2012d, 2012e).

Inoculum preparations can be made by several methods by directly suspending 18- to 24-hour-old colonies from nonselective media in broth or saline until turbidity of 0.5 McFarland is achieved, or by suspending several colonies of the organism to be tested into nutrient broth and incubating for several hours until growth results in turbidity equivalent to 0.5 McFarland. The direct colony suspension method is necessary for very fastidious species that require special supplements or media for growth, although the growth method is preferable for species that are difficult to suspend uniformly and when 18- to 24-hour plates are not immediately available. For most commonly isolated species, the two methods are equivalent.

Incubation Conditions

Test systems must be incubated under standardized temperature and atmospheric conditions to ensure uniform results. These conditions have been described and published by the CLSI for U.S. laboratories. General conditions for disk diffusion and broth dilution of bacteria include a temperature of 35° C ± 2° C with an atmosphere of ambient air for a period of 16 to 24 hours (CLSI, 2012d, 2012e). Many exceptions to this have been noted, however. For example, for disk diffusion, *Streptococcus* spp. and *Haemophilus* spp. require incubation in an atmosphere of 5% carbon dioxide, and although zones of inhibition of *Haemophilus* spp. are measured after 16 to 18 hours of incubation, those for *Streptococcus* spp. should not be determined until after 20 to 24 hours. Similarly, although susceptibility testing for most antibiotics against *Staphylococcus* spp. and *Enterococcus* spp. requires 16 to 18 hours, when oxacillin and vancomycin against *Staphylococcus* spp. and vancomycin against *Enterococcus* spp., respectively, are tested, a full 24 hours of incubation is necessary. Differences in testing and incubation parameters among aerobic, facultative anaerobic, anaerobic, mycobacterial, filamentous fungi, and yeast species require that the relevant CLSI documents be studied carefully prior to testing.

COMMERCIAL AUTOMATED INSTRUMENT SYSTEMS

Most microbiology laboratories in the United States use automated commercial microbroth dilution systems as their predominant testing systems (Jones, 2001). There is efficiency gained from replicate inoculation of combined systems for identification and susceptibility testing, and there are benefits of data management software that is an integral component of most of these instruments, such as the expert systems described in the previous sections. Another benefit is the ability of these instruments to directly communicate with the laboratory's information system (LIS), such that results can automatically cross over into the patient's medical record without much manual intervention. This increases workflow efficiency in larger laboratories and minimizes the chance of clerical errors associated with manually entering AST results. Additionally, these systems allow for expanded panels of antimicrobial agents as well as reporting of the MIC value, which may be preferred to simply reporting the interpretive categories generated by disk-diffusion testing. Though inhibitory zone measurements have been accurately correlated with MIC values statistically, most physicians, with the exception of infectious disease specialists, do not know how to utilize the MIC. Selection of the methods to be used for antibiotic susceptibility testing, whether automated or manual, can be done based on workflow, convenience, economic reasons, or preferences of the medical staff without significant differences in accuracy.

A variety of systems are available for selection. Before deciding to purchase a system, the laboratory director should consider whether the advantages of replicate inoculation and of data management systems outweigh the costs of the commercial system, which involve both an up-front outlay of cash and an ongoing expense related to consumable components of the system, compared with the economy and simplicity offered by the disk-diffusion test. The tendency is to consider the disk-diffusion test archaic and too unsophisticated for modern laboratory practice; however, this method can provide accurate results that are easily understood by health care providers and that suffice in many clinical situations; it is also economical and flexible. The labor-intensive nature of the test compared with automated systems may be limiting in high-volume laboratories, however.

Selection of a particular automated system is based on a list of considerations. Systems differ somewhat in terms of some of these parameters, and it is incumbent on the laboratory director to find the best fit for his or her laboratory. The list of parameters for evaluation includes the volume the system can handle; the technical expertise required to operate the system; the utility and usability of the data management system; the cost of the hardware; the cost of disposable supplies, reagents, and service contracts; and the space occupied by the system. Information on performance characteristics of the system is, of course, imperative. With the Vitek System (Vitek bioMérieux Inc., Durham, N.C.), antimicrobial agents are contained in wells within a plastic card and are inoculated with the isolate in a filler-sealer module, placed in an incubator-reader, and read after incubation, with data managed by the computer module and displayed on the data terminal or printed, or both. The original system (Legacy system, bioMérieux) was very popular in clinical laboratories but now has been superseded by the Vitek 2 system. The updated system has automated some of the procedures in the original system that required manual performance, and employs turbidimetric optics to repetitively monitor organism growth at 15-minute intervals, allowing results to be generated in hours.

Microscan (Siemens Medical Solutions USA, Inc., Malvern, Pa.) is a suite of systems that may be utilized in manual mode when frozen or lyophilized panels are inoculated, and then may be read manually after overnight incubation. The semiautomated version, the Microscan Walkaway, can perform traditional overnight MIC testing in which the results are read with a spectrophotometer, or a more rapid method can be used that is based on the generation of fluorescence from the utilization of substrates by inoculated organisms.

The Phoenix system (Becton, Dickinson, Sparks, Md.) uses a redox indicator to assess bacterial growth in inoculated wells. Similar to Vitek 2 and Microscan Walkaway, this system has the capability to provide results within hours.

The ability to report antimicrobial susceptibility results faster is heavily promoted by manufacturers as a benefit of automated susceptibility systems. The concept behind this is that switching a patient to an antibiotic that has been demonstrated to be susceptible by in vitro susceptibility testing sooner rather than later will improve the outcome of treatment. It has been demonstrated in some studies that physicians will alter antibiotic therapy based on more rapid reporting of susceptibility results. In a nonrandomized study, Matsen (1985) gave physicians the results of rapid (2- to 5-hour) susceptibility system and disk-diffusion testing, and then questioned physicians as to whether the rapid result influenced their choice of therapy. In 32% of cases, the physicians indicated that based on the rapid results, they chose a different antibiotic for initial therapy than they otherwise would have chosen. A more recent study involving 1498 inpatients with infection of sterile body fluids (70% bloodstream infections) demonstrated similar findings. Kerremans and colleagues (2008) showed that reporting rapid results using the Vitek 2 (a mean of 20 hours sooner than the conventional group) resulted in faster alterations in therapy when compared with conventional results reported with the Vitek Legacy, including a reduction in the number of doses of antibiotics (defined daily doses). Similar to the previous study, a reduction in mortality between the two groups was not seen.

Although Barenfanger and colleagues (1999) were not able to demonstrate a reduction in mortality when comparing outcomes of patients for whom rapid identification and susceptibility results were reported compared with those for whom conventional results were reported, this meaningful study demonstrated that there can be a significant contribution with respect to outcomes aside from mortality, in that it was demonstrated that rapid reporting of identification and antibiotic susceptibility testing can result in a significant decrease in length of hospital stay. A mean decrease in length of stay of 2 hospital days ($P < .0006$) was noted for those patients for whom rapid testing results were available, with a concomitant significant resultant decrease in total cost of the hospital stay ($P < .04$). In an earlier study involving demographically equivalent inpatients who were randomly assigned to a group in which rapid identification and antibiotic susceptibility testing were performed and a control group in which conventional testing was done, Doern and colleagues (1994) did not demonstrate a decrease in hospital stay, but did show a statistically significant

decrease in the following: elapsed time between adjustments of antibiotics, in medical procedures and imaging performed, and in overall costs related to hospitalization. Most importantly, this study demonstrated a statistically significant decrease in mortality in the rapid testing group.

In theory, the faster that antibiotic susceptibility results are available, the greater is the potential for effective therapy, and hence the greater is the likelihood of improving outcome. This potential will vary with the disorder in question, the specific pathogen, the patient population, and the environment. In a retrospective cohort study of 2731 patients with septic shock in medical and surgical intensive care units, Kumar and colleagues (2006) found that time from presentation to the institution of appropriate antimicrobial therapy was the major factor that influenced outcome. After initial presentation of hypotension, for every hour over the next 6 hours that appropriate antimicrobial therapy was delayed, survival decreased by 7.6%. The potential contribution of faster susceptibility testing in certain environments using other types of outcomes measures has been well demonstrated (e.g., reducing the cost of hospitalization), facilitating faster switching or focusing of antibiotic therapy as the most effective and/or least expensive alternative antimicrobial. This is of great importance in the current cost-conscious health care environment in this country, and can also play a role in reducing the prevalence of resistant isolates in an institution and preventing the emergence of specific nosocomial pathogens, such as vancomycin-resistant enterococcci (VRE) or *Clostridium difficile*. As newer molecular and proteomic technologies are becoming widely used, the reporting of susceptibility results is getting even faster, but it goes without saying that stewardship efforts play an important role in whether an action is taken based on the rapidly available result. The impact on patient outcomes as a result of rapidly available AST results using these newer techniques (i.e., molecular and mass spectrometry) is discussed further in the "Molecular-Based and Newer Methods of Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing" section later in the chapter.

Although there may be benefits of automated susceptibility systems in certain environments, it should be remembered that these systems, like all systems, are not infallible and do have weaknesses. In addition to the expense associated with purchase of the systems and their supplies, the automated systems may have difficulty in producing accurate results for specific antimicrobial-pathogen combinations. Difficulties may be specific to a given system or, more frequently, common to many of the automated systems. Tenover and colleagues (2006) reported that the Phoenix system, the Microscan system, and Vitek 2 all had difficulty in detecting carbapenem resistance in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* isolates, although the Phoenix and Microscan performed better than the Vitek 2 in this study. Similarly, Wiegand and colleagues (2007) compared the ability of these systems to detect extended-spectrum β-lactamase (ESBL) production in species of *Enterobacteriaceae* and found that issues existed for all systems, but of a slightly different nature. The Phoenix system had a high sensitivity (99%) but a lower specificity (52%), while the systems with a higher specificity of 78% (Vitek 2) had a lower sensitivity (86%). All systems showed variability in performance depending on the species of *Enterobacteriaceae* and the specific antimicrobials tested, as differences can also result because not all systems have the same antimicrobials available on their panels. Variability in such studies has also resulted from differences in the reference or comparator methods chosen and the breakpoints used (i.e., CLSI vs. EUCAST) for interpretation. Because of these and other issues related to the complexities of the numerous mechanisms of antibiotic resistance, automated systems were not recommended to be used alone in detecting ESBLs and other resistance mechanisms, and confirmatory testing was required; however, since the CLSI lowered its breakpoints in 2010 for many of the antimicrobials tested against the *Enterobacteriaceae*, this issue is being reexamined with renewed interest, and is discussed in detail in the "Selection of Antibiotics for Testing and Important Resistance Phenotypes" section later in the chapter. Despite their shortcomings, these systems have an important role in antimicrobial susceptibility testing in many laboratories, especially those with high volume, as long as the laboratory director is familiar with the weaknesses of a given system and compensates for them through additional methods of testing or review.

MOLECULAR-BASED AND NEWER METHODS OF ANTIMICROBIAL SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

Molecular-based methods (e.g., nucleic-acid amplification tests [NAATs]) have good applicability in the detection and identification of a number of pathogens in the clinical laboratory. Low detection limits, quick speed of the test (hours in many cases, particularly when performed directly from patient specimens), and the ease with which the tests are adapted to high-volume testing, have made them particularly useful when the pathogen in question grows in culture slowly, like the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex (MTBC), or when speed of detection is of great help in managing the patient, as in sepsis, where every hour counts for patient outcome. The ability to rapidly identify a pathogen and to determine its susceptibility profile can therefore be critically important for patient management, infection-control measures, and antimicrobial stewardship efforts.

The use of NAAT and other molecular-based methods in attempting to detect the presence of antimicrobial resistance in an organism is rather more complicated than identification, for a number of reasons. First, although identification can be accomplished by amplifying and detecting a particular species-specific segment of genome, resistance to a particular antimicrobial may be due to a variety of mechanisms; therefore testing for a number of genes may be required to exclude the potential for resistance. This is particularly true for resistance in gram-negative organisms. Second, the presence of a target resistance gene does not necessarily imply that the gene is being expressed and manifesting the phenotype of drug resistance. Third, many NAATs require the use of specific primers and probes, and will therefore detect only known resistance mechanisms, not allowing for the ability to detect novel resistance mechanisms.

Fewer mechanisms for antimicrobial resistance exist in gram-positive organisms and, in some cases, resistance to a particular drug is almost wholly due to the expression of a single gene. This has made this group more amenable for the initial development and deployment of molecular tests to detect antimicrobial resistance. Commercially available molecular tests to detect oxacillin or methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus* are the best example. For example, oxacillin resistance in *Staphylococcus* spp. is most often due to production of an altered penicillin binding protein (PBP) known as PBP 2a or PBP2′, a product of the *mecA* gene. Molecular assays targeting the *mecA* resistance gene or the staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*), a mobile genetic element that carries *mecA*, in conjunction with a gene or genes specific for *S. aureus* are increasingly used in the clinical laboratory, thereby differentiating methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) from methicillin-resistant coagulase-negative staphylococci (CoNS) as well as MRSA from methicillin-sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus* (MSSA). There are a number of commercially available molecular assays for the detection of MRSA in clinical samples, most using a real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) method. Two such assays are the StaphSR (BD GeneOhm, Becton, Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, N.J.) and the Xpert MRSA (Cepheid, Sunnyvale, Calif.), that have been approved for use in diagnosing infections with MRSA or in screening patients for nasal colonization with MRSA, respectively. Both assays can be performed directly from patient specimens. The StaphSR and the Xpert MRSA/SA (a version of the assay used with soft-tissue and blood specimens) have been evaluated in the literature for the detection of MRSA in blood cultures, the rapid identification of which directly from blood culture bottles would allow more appropriate utilization of antibiotics up to 48 hours sooner than without the molecular test; both performed well. The StaphSR showed sensitivity and specificity of 100% and 98.4%, respectively, in a study using positive blood cultures from patients (Stamper et al, 2007a). The Xpert MRSA/SA showed sensitivity and specificity of 98.3% and 99.4%, respectively, from blood cultures (Wolk et al, 2009). Moreover, it is run on the GeneXpert Dx (Cepheid Inc., Sunnyvale, Calif.), a fully-automated closed system that uses single-use disposable cartridges with minimal hands-on time, making it similar to a point-of-care device.

The performance studies using the various available molecular assays for detection of *S. aureus* have illustrated some of the issues associated with molecular testing for antibiotic resistance (e.g., whether identification of a specific but very focused genomic segment correlates with a particular species or resistance phenotype). In particular, false-positive results were noted from revertant MRSA isolates that had residual SCC*mec* extremity fragments but without functional *mecA* genes (Blanc et al, 2011), as well as from a specimen with a mixture of a methicillin-resistant CoNS and an SCC*mec* empty cassette variant (Wolk et al, 2009; Blanc et al, 2011). The risk for false positives decreases when additional targets are used, like those used in the Xpert MRSA/SA SSTI assay (Cepheid, Sunnyvale, Calif.) that targets not only *SCCmec* but also the presence of *mecA*, specifically. False-negative results can result from different *SCCmec* variants, the large diversity of the *orfX-SCCmec* junctions (*orfX* being a conserved open reading frame in *S. aureus* at which *SCCmec* inserts), as well as from those rare isolates that express *mecC*, a *mecA* homologue that also results in oxacillin resistance but is not detected by tests directed at *mecA* or PBP 2a. For these reasons, molecular assays must be reevaluated with some regularity, to ensure continued optimal performance.

A newer assay, the Verigene Gram-Positive Blood Culture Nucleic Acid Test (BC-GP) (Nanosphere, Northbrook, Ill.), is a microarray-based qualitative assay that simultaneously detects multiple pathogens and three resistance determinants, including MRSA, directly from a positive blood culture bottle. It has a reported sensitivity of greater than 95% for *S. aureus* (Liesenfeld et al, 2014).

The issue of specificity for a particular gene has been particularly well illustrated with the BD GeneOhm VanR assay (BD Diagnostics, Spark, Md.), an amplification test that detects the presence of the *vanA* and *vanB* genes associated with glycopeptide resistance in *Enterococcus* species. This assay is intended to allow screening of patients for vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE) colonization. It is very effective for its intended purpose when screening in institutions with a high prevalence of VRE due to isolates with the *vanA* gene, but it suffers from specificity issues in situations in which *vanB* is highly prevalent because of the apparent ability of other species, such as *Clostridium* spp., to acquire the gene (Stamper et al, 2007b). The Xpert vanA/vanB assay (Cepheid, Sunnyvale, Calif.) has also shown false positives for *vanB* but when performed on enriched inoculated broths with an adjusted cutoff cycle threshold value, the performance of the assay is greatly improved and false-positive results are limited (Zhou et al, 2014). Both assays can detect the genes within hours, and Birgand and colleagues (2013) found that this led to a significant impact on infection-control measures and cost savings in a French hospital.

Development of the multiplex-PCR method, an innovation allowing concurrent amplification of multiple nucleic acid segments using multiple primers, is central to the performance of assays like the Xpert MRSA/SA SSTI, which targets several nucleic acid segments, and is particularly necessary for any attempt to assess resistance in gram-negative organisms. Relative to gram-positive bacteria, antimicrobial resistance in gram-negative bacteria is complex, as resistance to a given drug may be due to multiple genes, as well as to alterations in cell porins, efflux pumps, drug-inactivating enzymes, or modifications of the target of the drug. This variety in drug-resistance mechanisms had complicated the development of rapid tests based on molecular methods detecting antimicrobial resistance in gram-negative organisms, and it limited widespread availability of these tests to laboratories. However, by using multiplex PCR to target multiple sites, by focusing on specific resistance mechanisms that can be difficult to assess by classical phenotypic methods, and by analyzing using a convenient DNA microarray detection system, some investigators have shown that molecular diagnostic methods have the potential to improve resistance detection for gram-negative organisms. Zhu and colleagues (2007) used these techniques to determine whether any of 10 different extended-spectrum β-lactamase– (ESBL) and AmpC β-lactamase–resistance genes (discussed in detail in the "Selection of Antibiotics for Testing and Important Resistance Phenotypes" section later in the chapter) were present in clinical isolates of *Enterobacteriaceae*. Their assay showed "complete agreement with complementary sequencing results" and >95% correlation with phenotypic susceptibility testing for isolates of *K. pneumoniae* and *Escherichia coli*, although the authors noted that correlation of the phenotypic assays and the molecular assay was not as good for *Enterobacter cloacae* isolates that possessed the chromosomal *AmpC* gene. Additionally, four *K. pneumoniae* isolates that demonstrated *ESBL* genes through the assay were "susceptible to all the antibiotics tested," again illustrating occasional disagreement between detection of a gene for a resistance mechanism and results obtained by phenotypic testing. Further, the ESBL screen described by Zhu and colleagues (2007) may have performed more poorly in another locale if the circulating ESBL enzymes in that region are different.

Molecular methods of AST for the *Enterobacteriaceae* have become more widely used in clinical laboratories in recent years. Lupo and colleagues (2013) have published a review describing the molecular detection of resistance mechanisms in this group of organisms. Specifically, the authors suggest that when choosing the best rapid molecular AST assay for these organisms, certain resistance genes deserve more attention than others, based on the frequency with which they have been noted in epidemiologic reports. These include the *blaCTX-M*, *blaSHV*, and *blaTEM* genes for the detection of ESBLs; *blaCMY* for the detection of AmpCs; *blaKPC*, *blaNDM*, and *blaOXA-48* for the detection of **carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* (CRE);** as well as the *gyrA* and *parC* genes for the detection of quinolone resistance.

For such an assay to be optimized, the authors also highlight the need for rapid and accurate results, low cost and ease of use, multiplexing the reactions into a single assay, and maintaining a level of versatility to accommodate changes in resistance genes and patterns over time. Such assays should also have the ability to detect resistance genes expressed at low levels.

Rapid molecular AST assays for *Enterobacteriaceae* have recently become commercially available. The NucliSENS EasyQ KPC assay (bioMérieux SA, Marcy l'Etoile, France) is a real-time nucleic acid sequence–based amplification (NASBA) assay for the detection of *blaKPC* in CRE from stool samples and rectal swabs; results are available within hours. One study comparing it to phenotypic identification methods reported a sensitivity and specificity of 93.3% and 99.0%, respectively (McEwan et al, 2013). Other assays have used multiplexing technology to interrogate numerous genes simultaneously. One such group of assays is the Hyplex series (Amplex Diagnostics, Gars, Germany), which uses multiplex PCR followed by reverse probe hybridization and immobilization on ELISA-microwell plates to rapidly detect the common genes encoding ESBLs (hyplex ESBL ID), KPCs (hyplex SuperBug ID), metallo–β-lactamases (hyplex MBL ID), and the OXAgenes (hyplex CarbOXA ID) directly from patient samples. Studies evaluating their performance have shown good overall sensitivities and specificities, in the high 90% range (Avlami et al, 2010; Gazin et al, 2012). The Check-Points assays (Check-Points Health, Wageningen, the Netherlands) are based on DNA amplification followed by detection by tube microarray, and can detect the main genes encoding ESBLs and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* carbapenemases (KPC) within hours; there are numerous iterations of these assays such as the CheckKPC/ESBL and the Check-MDR CT103 (there are also the 101 and 102 earlier versions of this assay, with each newer version including additional resistance genes), the latter having a reported sensitivity and specificity of 100% for each gene tested (Cuzon et al, 2012; Lascols et al, 2012).

Finally, the newer assays for detection of resistance determinants in the *Enterobacteriaceae* include the Biofire FilmArray (BioFire, Salt Lake City, Utah), and the Verigene Gram Negative Blood Culture Test (Nanosphere, Northbrook, Ill.), both FDA-cleared systems that can identify organisms directly from blood culture specimens. The Biofire FilmArray is a closed system that performs multiplex PCR for the detection of multiple pathogens as well as the KPC and *mecA* resistance genes. The Verigene Gram Negative Blood Culture Test is a microarray system that detects, in addition to numerous pathogens, the *KPC*, *NDM*, *OXA*, *VIM*, *IMP*, and *CTX-M* genes. For the pathogens and resistance genes they share, the systems performed comparably well in a head-to-head comparison (Bhatti et al, 2014). The Xpert MDRO is also a multiplex PCR that detects the *KPC*, *NDM*, and *VIM* genes in a closed system and has a reported sensitivity and specificity for the KPC gene of 100% and 99.0%, respectively (Tenover et al, 2013). Each of these methods has a hands-on time of minutes, and results are available in 1 hour or less.

For a detailed discussion of mechanisms of resistance in the *Enterobacteriaceae*, the reader is referred to the "Selection of Antibiotics for Testing and Important Resistance Phenotypes" section later in the chapter.

Along with variability in mechanisms of resistance, geographic variation in prevalence may affect the performance of a molecular-based test for susceptibility testing. This has been the case for the commercially available molecular tests for resistance in the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex (MTBC). A few such commercial, standardized tests exist, including the INNO-LiPA Rif.TB (Innogenetics, Ghent, Belgium) and the Genotype MTBDRplus assay (Hain LifeScience, Nehren, Germany), both line probe assays (LPA) involving DNA amplification and detection by reverse hybridization using standard immobilized probes on nitrocellulose strips. Both assays predict resistance to rifampin (RIF) by detecting mutations in the *rpoB* gene, but the Genotype MTBDRplus assay also detects resistance to isoniazid (INH) by detecting mutations in regions of *katG* and *inhA* genes. Sensitivity of the Genotype MTBDRplus for detecting resistance to rifampin has been uniformly high in published studies (range, 95% to 100%), and sensitivity for detecting resistance to isoniazid has had a wider range (range, 72% to 92%) (Hillemann et al, 2007; Huang et al, 2009; Nikolayevskyy et al, 2009; Kalokhe et al, 2013). Although most (approximately 95%) rifampin resistance is due to mutations in a few codons of the *rpoB* gene, greater variability in possible sites for mutation have led to isoniazid resistance. Although the most common mutation imparting isoniazid resistance is found at codon 315 of the *katG* gene, mutations in the *inhA*, *aphC-oxyR* intergenic region and others may also be responsible (Hillemann et al, 2007). Several authors have pointed out that the wide variation in sensitivity for detection of isoniazid resistance by this assay is attributable to geographic variation in the incidence of specific genetic mutations (Huang et al, 2009; Nikolayevskyy et al, 2009).

At present, molecular AST methods for MTBC play an important complementary role to phenotypic culture-based testing and have been endorsed for use by the World Health Organization (WHO, 2014b). The WHO specifically endorses the use of the Xpert MTB/RIF (Cepheid, Sunnyvale, Calif.), an assay that simultaneously detects MTBC and rifampin resistance directly from patient specimens, within hours. Though

it can be used regardless of smear findings, its sensitivity in smear-positive cases is reported at 98%; in smear-negative but culture-positive samples, its sensitivity is lower (55% to 76.9%) (Rufai et al, 2014). However, in one study in the high-MTBC-burden country of India, the sensitivity of the Xpert MTB/RIF in detecting rifampin resistance was much lower, at 64%, possibly due, at least in part, to the inability of the assay to properly interrogate the circulating MTBC strain in the region (Rufai et al, 2014). Additionally, though this assay does not detect resistance to INH, RIF resistance can be used as a surrogate marker for resistance to INH, because it is known that if the isolate is RIF resistant, it is likely also INH resistant (Rufai et al, 2014). Regarding MTBC infections, rapid results have been shown to positively impact time to appropriate therapy, clinical outcome, and infection-control practices (Kipiani et al, 2014). Limitations of the use of some of these rapid methods include cost, the inability to detect mutations outside of a specific target region, the inability to differentiate silent mutations, the dependence on bacillary load, and the particular circulating MTBC strain in a given geographic region (Kalokhe et al, 2013). Finally, some of these assays appear to detect nonviable MTBC DNA in culture-negative samples, thereby limiting their use to initial diagnosis and not to treatment monitoring, though the WHO does endorse their use for treatment monitoring in certain circumstances (WHO, 2014a).

In summary, the use of molecular techniques, particularly amplification and hybridization-based techniques, to rapidly detect the presence of antimicrobial resistance genes is an important innovation that has led to standardized, commercially available tests for use by clinical laboratories. Whole genome sequencing is also a molecular technology that is being studied for its potential use in AST, though at present, it has primarily been used for epidemiologic strain typing in outbreak investigations, as it allows for rapid determination and tracing of a bacterial genome (Mellmann et al, 2011). Though it has shown high concordance with phenotypic testing in studies demonstrating genetic determinants of antibiotic resistance (Zankari et al, 2013), its routine use in clinical laboratories for identification and susceptibility testing is currently limited by the need for robust bioinformatics, and the higher cost and lengthier turnaround time than that of some of the other available techniques.

Additional technologies being evaluated and gaining popularity in the world of AST include hybridization techniques such as fluorescence-in situ-hybridization (FISH) as well as spectrophotometric and proteomic techniques. These have shown promise in being highly sensitive and specific, as well as rapid, compared to the phenotypic susceptibility tests.

Susceptibility testing by Matrix Assisted Laser Desorption Ionization Time-of-Flight Mass Spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS) is being investigated widely for its use in rapid AST. The MALDI-TOF identifies molecules based on their mass-to-charge ratio and time of flight as compared to a reference database. This methodology can identify molecules with a wide range of molecular masses and can detect a variety of molecules including resistance enzymes, antibiotics and their products of hydrolysis, bacterial cell wall components, and antibiotic target sites. One of the advantages of the MALDI-TOF is the detection of actual expression of resistance, as opposed to detection of the potential for resistance (i.e., detection of a resistance gene). Using MALDI-TOF, Hrabak and colleagues (2011) detected carbapenemase activity in *Enterobacteriaceae* by meropenem degradation, reporting a sensitivity and specificity of 96.67% and 97.87%, respectively. Also, Kempf and colleagues (2012) determined that the use of imipenem to identify carbapenem resistance in *A. baumannii* isolates showed a sensitivity and specificity of 100%. However, this method cannot detect other carbapenem resistance mechanisms, such as porin alterations and efflux mechanisms. Nonetheless, it provides rapid results, which can allow for earlier directed therapy and avoidance of inappropriate empiric therapy, and may also provide useful information for purposes of epidemiologic infection control.

With further optimization of newer technologies for AST, as well as decreasing costs and turnaround times, it is likely that their use for AST will become more mainstream in the clinical laboratory. Some of these techniques are even culture-independent, and can be tested directly from the patient specimen, allowing for even more rapidity in generating results. However, until the full implications of detecting or not detecting a specific gene using a particular molecular technique are fully understood, these tests will serve in a supporting role to phenotypic antimicrobial susceptibility testing in many clinical laboratories. Moreover, as this section is by no means a comprehensive review of all available commercial assays, the reader is also referred to Pulido (2013) and Liesenfeld and colleagues (2014) for additional discussion on new and emerging technologies for AST.

Few studies have demonstrated that the rapidity of results as a result of these newer antimicrobial susceptibility tests has improved patient outcomes (Huang et al, 2013, Beuving et al, 2015); nonetheless, it is known that a delay in the initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy is associated with higher patient mortality in certain infections (Zarkotou et al, 2011). Huang and colleagues (2013) found that the rapid organism identification using MALDI-TOF along with AST intervention decreased time to effective and optimal antibiotic therapy. More studies are needed to assess the threshold at which rapid results are truly clinically impactful, as analytic turnaround time requires intervention by providers to truly impact patient outcomes, as shown in the reports in which rapid results were combined with stewardship interventions.

INDICATIONS FOR SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

Whether antimicrobial susceptibility testing on a particular isolate is necessary varies with the infecting species. If the susceptibility of a bacterial species to a particular antimicrobial is unpredictable, then testing is necessary. If the susceptibility profile is predictable, it is not necessary, in most cases, to do testing on an isolate. For example, resistance to penicillin in *Streptococcus pyogenes* pharyngitis has not been reported in the United States, so it is appropriate to treat a patient with *S. pyogenes* pharyngitis without susceptibility testing. However, if a patient is allergic to, or cannot take, the primary choice of antibiotic to treat an infection caused by a particular pathogen or if, for another reason, the susceptibility profile of the alternative choice antibiotic is unpredictable, testing must be done. If the patient in the previous example were allergic to penicillin, and the physician wished to treat the patient with a macrolide, such as azithromycin, susceptibility testing of the isolate against macrolides should be done because a high proportion of *S. pyogenes* isolates have tested resistant to macrolides for a number of years (Jacobs et al, 2003). It must also be remembered that testing should be limited to those isolates that are definite pathogens, because testing of isolates that are "contaminants" or "normal flora" is expensive and time-consuming and may lead to unnecessary administration of antibiotics (Bates et al, 1991). With increasing numbers of severely immunocompromised patients, however, species generally considered to be normal flora or contaminants may be pathogenic, and in these patients susceptibility testing against these species may be warranted. Close consultation with infectious disease physicians is necessary in these cases.

Several years ago, antibiotic therapy for infections caused by anaerobes was often empirical, because the susceptibility profiles of these pathogens were thought to be relatively predictable, susceptibility testing was not standardized, and only limited proof suggested that susceptibility testing correlated with outcome. In recent years, however, it has been demonstrated that the susceptibility patterns of many anaerobic pathogens are changing, and that at least for some species, in vitro antibiotic susceptibility testing correlates with clinical outcome. This is particularly true of *Bacteroides fragilis* and closely related species (Nguyen et al, 2000; Boyanova et al, 2015). *B. fragilis*, the most frequently isolated species from anaerobic infections, has the greatest number of antimicrobial resistance mechanisms, as well as the highest rates of antimicrobial resistance, among anaerobic bacterial pathogens (Boyanova et al, 2015). For example, resistance to the cephalosporins, the β-lactam/β-lactamase inhibitor combinations, moxifloxacin, clindamycin, and even the carbapenems is increasing globally for *Bacteroides* and *Parabacteroides* species, as well as some of the other gram-negative anaerobes (Snydman et al, 2011; Boyanova et al, 2015). Resistance to moxifloxacin is also increasing in some *Clostridium* species, and many non–spore-forming gram-positive anaerobic rods are resistant to metronidazole. Further, multidrug-resistant *B. fragilis* strains have been identified (Boyanova et al, 2015).

Though members of the *Bacteroides* group are presumed to be resistant to the penicillins and do not warrant β-lactamase testing, other anaerobes can be tested for the presence of β-lactamase with a chromogenic cephalosporin, though other mechanisms of resistance may also exist. The CLSI recommends testing of anaerobic isolates from specific types of infections, including brain abscess, endocarditis, osteomyelitis, joint infection, infection of prosthetic or vascular devices, and bacteremia (CLSI, 2012a). Additionally, certain species that have a high incidence of resistance or are highly virulent warrant testing, including species of *Bacteroides*, *Prevotella*, *Fusobacterium*, *Bilophila*, and *Sutterella*, and members of the *Clostridium* species. Despite this, in the United States, only 21% of laboratories performing anaerobic culture perform anaerobic susceptibility testing in-house; another 20% utilize reference laboratories for this purpose (Boyanova et al, 2015). Currently, the CLSI-recommended susceptibility testing method for anaerobes is the agar dilution method; the exception is the *B. fragilis* group, for which broth microdilution can also be performed

(CLSI, 2012a). As the agar dilution method is labor-intensive and time-consuming, laboratories may validate alternate methods, like the Etest, for the testing of anaerobes (Jenkins & Schuetz, 2012). Importantly, disk diffusion should not be used, as results do not correlate well with the CLSI reference method (CLSI, 2012a).

For other isolates not already discussed, batch susceptibility testing of archived isolates of anaerobes can be performed, either locally or by a reference laboratory, on a periodic basis (recommended annually by the CLSI) in a surveillance protocol to detect local changes in resistance patterns. An effort should be made to include some of the more common anaerobic bacterial isolates in hospital antibiograms, to assist in the choice of therapy for patients.

Unlike anaerobes, all initial isolates from newly diagnosed cases of tuberculosis should be tested for susceptibility to primary antituberculous drugs; if clinical evidence reveals therapeutic failure or failure of cultures to convert to negative after 3 months, testing should be repeated (CLSI, 2012b). Testing of initial isolates is crucial, because treatment of patients with antitubercular medications without initial susceptibility can lead to poor clinical outcomes including treatment failure, relapse, and the development of further drug resistance if the initial isolate is drug resistant (Lew et al, 2008). In 2013, an estimated 45% of patients with multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (MDR-TB) were tested for resistance; this is up from only 17% in 2009 and is, in large part, due to the availability of rapid diagnostics (WHO 2014b). Additionally, though culture-based susceptibility testing is considered the gold standard, results can take up to 2 months, with the delay contributing to poor outcomes and increased disease transmission. In fact, there are still nearly half a million new cases of MDR-TB in the world every year, and extensively drug-resistant TB (XDR-TB) has been confirmed in 100 countries (WHO 2014a). MDR-TB is defined as resistance to the best first-line agents, isoniazid and rifampin, and XDR-TB is defined as MDR-TB plus resistance to at least one fluoroquinolone and a second-line agent, like amikacin, kanamycin, or capreomycin (WHO 2014b). This is why molecular diagnostics for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* are now endorsed by the World Health Organization (WHO 2014b), and the reader is referred to the "Molecular-Based and Newer Methods of Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing" section earlier in the chapter for a detailed discussion.

Guidelines also exist for testing some of the slow-growing (*Mycobacterium avium* complex, *Mycobacterium kansasii*, *Mycobacterium marinum*) and rapidly growing nontuberculous mycobacteria, and for some of the aerobic actinomycetes (*Nocardia* spp., *Actinomadura* spp., *Rhodococcus* spp., *Gordona* spp., *Tsukamurella* spp., *Streptomyces* spp.). In general, testing of nontuberculous mycobacteria and aerobic actinomycetes involves variations in the broth dilution method, and commercial systems can be used for a few species. It should be emphasized that some of these species can exist as transient colonizers of the respiratory tract, or they may be recovered as contaminants; for these reasons, and because the drugs tested and the methods of testing vary with the species, adherence to criteria outlined in CLSI document M24-A2 (CLSI, 2012b) is strongly recommended.

Similarly, both yeasts and molds may exist as transient colonizers or contaminants; however, with the increase in the number of immunocompromised patients over the past several decades, the prevalence of fungal infection has increased. Additionally, many new antifungal agents have become available, and resistance to these as well as to the older agents has been described. For predictable or intrinsic resistance patterns, such as *Aspergillus terreus* against amphotericin B, susceptibility testing is not warranted. However, laboratory determination of resistance may be useful for other species such as *A. fumigatus,* considered a public health threat in Europe, as it is becoming increasingly azole-resistant and has been associated with treatment failures and even death (Pham et al, 2014). Mutations in the *cyp51A* gene are largely responsible for the triazole resistance. For *Candida* spp., good correlation between in vitro antifungal resistance and treatment failure has been demonstrated in certain patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (Kanafani & Perfect, 2008). Further, receipt of appropriate antifungal therapy early has been associated with a significant survival benefit (Grim et al, 2012) in *Candida* bloodstream infections. For example, *C. glabrata*, the second most common cause of invasive candidiasis in many countries, has been reported to display cross-resistance to fluconazole as well as the echinocandins (Pfaller et al, 2012a), thereby necessitating susceptibility testing. Susceptibility testing is helpful in the selection of primary therapy but is also of benefit for the de-escalation of therapy, from the echinocandins to fluconazole, when the organism is found to be susceptible.

Susceptibility testing by both broth dilution and disk diffusion methods has been standardized for yeasts, excluding the yeast phases of dimorphic fungi such as *Blastomyces dermatitidis*. Breakpoints are available to interpret results of amphotericin B, the azoles, and echinocandins for *Candida* species; in recent updates, MIC values have been lowered and breakpoints revised for the echinocandins and azoles for some of the more common *Candida* species, increasing the reported rates of resistance (CLSI, 2008a, 2012c).

With molds, the situation involving susceptibility testing is more complex. Though procedures for both broth dilution and disk diffusion have been standardized and published by the CLSI (CLSI, 2008b), there is limited evidence for correlation of AST with clinical outcome, and that is primarily limited to *Aspergillus* spp. (Pham et al, 2014). Many factors, including whether the patient is immunosuppressed, the burden of fungal organisms when treatment is started, the site of infection, and the patient's underlying disease, are involved in determining whether antifungal therapy will be successful in a patient with a systemic mold infection (Kanafani & Perfect, 2008). Further, CLSI breakpoints have not been established for antifungals and molds, though EUCAST has developed a limited number of breakpoints for the *Aspergillus spp*. (Arendrup et al, 2013). However, by using epidemiologic cutoff values (ECVs), which have been established for some antifungals, laboratories can detect isolates that show reduced susceptibility to an antifungal relative to "wild-type" isolates, or isolates with no acquired phenotypically detectable resistance. It is important to consider, however, that ECVs are not clinical breakpoints, and an isolate may respond to therapy despite having an MIC above the ECV. Nonetheless, an infectious disease specialist may consider this information helpful in his or her management of a patient with systemic mold infection, particularly if he or she is able to compare susceptibility results versus a cohort of the same species tested at the same institution as the patient (i.e., if there is a local antibiogram of the particular species). The CLSI has recommended determining MIC values on mold species to use as an aid in managing invasive infection when the utility of antifungal therapy is uncertain, or to establish antibiograms at a particular institution (CLSI, 2008b).

SELECTION OF ANTIBIOTICS FOR TESTING AND IMPORTANT RESISTANCE PHENOTYPES

Selection of antimicrobial agents for testing is complicated by the expanding spectrum and number of antibiotics available and by the growing list of resistance phenotypes that are being identified in pathogenic bacteria. Testing of all agents available in an institution's formulary is neither practical nor warranted. The antimicrobial testing menu should be established in consultation with the medical staff, infectious disease specialists at the institution, and the Pharmacy and Therapeutics Committee, so that the therapeutic needs of the patient population can be best coordinated with the practical limitations of the institution, the pharmacy, and the clinical laboratory. This coordination is important for a variety of reasons. First, many laboratories utilize commercial automated testing systems for susceptibility testing. Manufacturers offer a variety of preconfigured antibiotic testing panels in systems designed to correspond to hospital formularies; however, disparities between the preconfigured panel and the hospital formulary often exist. The laboratory may be faced with an added expense of modifying a preconfigured panel, or of adding testing methods to the laboratory to accommodate testing of additional agents. Second, testing multiple representatives of the same antibiotic class is not usually necessary except for when it is required to deduce mechanisms of antimicrobial resistance or allow for flexibility in different routes of administration (e.g., intravenous, oral); in many cases, results derived by testing a representative drug of the class can be inferred for the other members of the class. Discussion and coordination with the medical staff and infectious disease specialists relative to which antibiotics are necessary to allow the providers to manage their patients may save the laboratory these added expenses. Also, for some drug-bug combinations, there are no established interpretive criteria; however, these drugs may still be considered for treatment as the last resort in cases of multidrug or pan-resistant infections. The handling of such cases also requires detailed discussion with the clinical providers.

The yearly CLSI informational supplement (CLSI document M100-S24, 2014) lists in a table the antimicrobial agents that are recommended for testing for highly prevalent and important nonfastidious pathogens, including *Enterobacteriaceae*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Staphylococcus* spp., *Enterococcus* spp., *Acinetobacter* spp., *Burkholderia cepacia*, and *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*. A separate table lists recommended antibiotics for more fastidious pathogens such as *Haemophilus* spp., *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus* β-hemolytic spp., and *Streptococcus* viridans group spp. The antibiotics are listed in four groups, with group A

containing drugs recommended for testing and reporting on all isolates, and group B containing agents suggested for testing against all isolates but reported only under certain circumstances (e.g., when the isolate is resistant to drugs in Group A). Group C lists antibiotics that are considered supplemental and could be used in institutions that have a high prevalence of highly resistant isolates, when unusual pathogens are isolated, or by infection-control practitioners as epidemiologic tools. Finally, group U lists antimicrobials that should be tested and reported only on isolates from urine.

Within each group—A, B, C, or U—more antibiotics are listed than need be tested or reported. Within boxes in the tables, drugs that usually have similar interpretive results and clinical efficacy are grouped together, and if an agent is listed with another agent separated by "or," this implies almost identical cross-resistance or susceptibility between drugs; the results of testing one drug will predict the susceptibility result for the other. In the absence of the "or," even though the antibiotics listed in the same box have similar clinical efficiency and similar interpretive results, stringent statistical criteria for comparable testing results were not met when a large number of isolates were tested with the antibiotics in question, or the data were not available, so equivalence for testing results cannot be confidently inferred. For example, for *Enterobacteriaceae*, Table 2A (CLSI, 2014) notes that testing of cephalothin will predict the susceptibility profile of certain other first-generation cephalosporins but that cefazolin is the preferred agent to test for predicting results for oral cephalosporins, for uncomplicated urinary tract infections. In contrast, in group B, the third-generation cephalosporins cefotaxime and ceftriaxone are separated by an "or," indicating that their susceptibility profiles are virtually interchangeable, and that only one of the two needs to be tested if the isolate is a member of *Enterobacteriaceae*.

In some institutions, 25% to 50% of *S. aureus* and up to 75% of CoNS isolates are resistant to methicillin or oxacillin (Miller et al, 2005). These isolates are resistant to all currently available β-lactam antimicrobials (and β-lactam/β-lactamase inhibitor combinations) with the exception of some of the newer cephalosporins with anti-MRSA activity. Because of this, vancomycin is often used as empiric therapy for staphylococcal infections. Therefore, the proper detection of resistance in such isolates is crucial for therapeutic management. Most commonly, oxacillin resistance in *Staphylococcus* spp. is due to production of an altered PBP protein (PBP 2a, also called PBP2′) a product of the *mecA* gene that is involved in peptidoglycan synthesis; therefore, testing for β-lactamase production will not predict methicillin susceptibility in these organisms.

Methicillin resistance may be expressed homogeneously or heterogeneously. Although isolates that express the gene homogeneously can be relatively easily detected, those that express it heterogeneously may be more problematic, and they may appear phenotypically sensitive by dilution testing using oxacillin (Sakoulas & Gold, 2001; Swenson et al, 2001; Felten et al, 2002). When a dilution technique is used, sensitivity for detecting these heteroresistant strains can be improved by adding NaCl (2% weight/volume to the medium) (CLSI, 2012e). Cefoxitin can be used to screen staphylococci for *mecA*-mediated resistance, and is often tested as a surrogate for oxacillin for *S. aureus* and for the CoNS; of note, oxacillin disk testing is not reliable (CLSI, 2014). Further, oxacillin MICs may be elevated in the CoNS despite a lack of *mecA*, and cefoxitin is superior to oxacillin dilution testing for CoNS. This high performance level extends to the automated susceptibility systems, which have incorporated cefoxitin MIC testing for *Staphylococcus aureus* into their testing and expert systems, with studies showing close to 100% agreement on detection of MRSA compared with reference methods such as *mecA* gene detection (Junkins et al, 2009; Kaase et al, 2009). Cefoxitin dilution testing can be used for *S. aureus* and *S. lugdunensis*, but only disk testing can be used for the other CoNS, to predict *mecA*-mediated β-lactam resistance.

There are also tests using chromogenic media to detect the presence of MRSA. However, tests that directly detect the *mecA* gene or PBP 2a protein are considered the most accurate of the available tests, and they provide a more rapid result than culture-based techniques (CLSI, 2014). Tests used to detect the *mecA* gene were discussed in detail in the "Molecular-Based and Newer Methods of Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing" section earlier in the chapter and will not be discussed further here. With respect to detection of PBP 2a, several tests based on a latex agglutination (LA) format (MRSA-Screen, Denka Seiken Co., Tokyo, Japan; Oxoid PBP2′ latex agglutination test, Oxoid, Basingstoke, United Kingdom) have been approved for use with *S. aureus* colonies and can be used to separate MRSA from methicillin-susceptible isolates. Studies have shown sensitivities of 98.5% to 100% with a specificity of 100% for detecting MRSA (Louie et al, 2000; Arbique et al, 2001; Sakoulas & Gold, 2001). LA can also be used to detect methicillin resistance in CoNS, though better results are obtained when testing is performed after induction of the *mecA* gene, because of the heterogenous expression of the gene in these species (Hussain et al, 2000).

MRSA and methicillin-resistant CoNS have become significant problems in hospital environments, with MRSA accounting for 59.5% of *S. aureus* and methicillin-resistant CoNS accounting for 89.1% of CoNS isolates in intensive care environments (National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance [NNIS], 2004); the increased prevalence of community-acquired MRSA has further increased the importance of detection of methicillin resistance in these species. The situation with *Streptococcus pneumoniae* is similar, with alterations in PBPs leading to resistance to penicillin and cephalosporins. The longitudinal PROTEKT surveillance study showed that although the incidence of high-level (MIC ≥2 μg/mL) penicillin resistance decreased from 26.5% to 16.5%, the level of intermediate resistance (MIC 0.12 to 1 μg/mL) increased from 12.5% to 20% over the period of the report (2001 to 2004) (Jenkins et al, 2008). The incidence of multidrug resistance (resistance to penicillin and two other antibiotics) remained at about 30% over this period. The CDC has estimated that there are greater than 1.2 million cases and 7000 deaths due to multi-drug resistant *S. pneumoniae* in the United States annually (CDC, 2013).

Susceptibility testing of *S. pneumoniae* is mandatory when isolated from sterile sites. The oxacillin screen disk diffusion method can be used, with isolates having a zone of inhibition ≥20 mm, indicating that the isolate is susceptible to penicillin and to other β-lactams listed in the CLSI M100-S24 (2014). This applies only to nonmeningitis isolates, as MIC testing is recommended for isolates from this source. Further, zone sizes <19 mm on the oxacillin screen require additional testing using an MIC method because a zone of inhibition of this size may be seen with isolates that are resistant, susceptible, or intermediate to penicillin; therefore, it may be most effective to proceed directly to MIC testing when an isolate is obtained from a source (meningitis, blood) for which a delay in susceptibility testing may be potentially dangerous. It should be noted that interpretive standards for penicillin and the third-generation cephalosporins differ, depending on whether the isolate is a CSF isolate or not; the CLSI recommends that both interpretations be reported unless the isolate is obtained from the CSF, in which case only the meningitis interpretive category is reported. Testing methods are determined by the antibiotics tested for *S. pneumoniae*, as disk diffusion cannot be performed for drugs such as ampicillin, cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, imipenem, and meropenem, to name several (CLSI, 2014). The commercial automated systems—Phoenix (Becton, Dickinson Diagnostic Systems, Sparks, Md.) Vitek 2 (bioMérieux Inc.), and MicroScan (Siemens Medical Solutions USA, Inc., Malvern, PA)—offer antibiotic testing panels for *S. pneumoniae;* their performance has been favorable in published studies (Ligozzi et al, 2002; Richter et al, 2007).

Penicillin or ampicillin resistance is of importance in enterococci, and though the penicillin susceptibility profile will predict the profile of ampicillin, the reverse is not true (CLSI, 2014). Most penicillin resistance in the enterococci, usually seen in *Enterococcus faecium*, is due to the production of low-affinity PBPs, so testing for β-lactamase production in this genus will not predict ampicillin susceptibility (CLSI, 2014). In some cases, however, β-lactamase production is the cause of the resistance. It is important to note that dilution procedures will not detect β-lactamase production, which is the reason why the CLSI also recommends testing isolates from select cases, as in those from blood or CSF, with the nitrocefin β-lactamase test (CLSI, 2014). Additionally, a synergistic action of penicillin or ampicillin with aminoglycosides is often effective therapy for serious infections. This synergistic effect can occur even when the penicillin or ampicillin MIC is at a high level, above the resistant interpretive category (CLSI, 2014).

Aminoglycosides are clinically ineffective against enterococci by themselves, and susceptibility testing with this class of drugs is performed only for the possible synergistic effect when combined with penicillin, ampicillin, or a glycopeptide. Testing is performed only with high concentrations of the aminoglycoside, 500 μg/mL gentamicin, or 1000 μg/mL of streptomycin, using broth dilution (different concentrations are used for disk diffusion). Enterococci causing serious infection therefore require testing against penicillin or ampicillin, high-level aminoglycoside screening, and testing for susceptibility to a glycopeptide, which is usually vancomycin in the United States.

Enterococci can express two types of glycopeptide resistance. The first is intrinsic resistance, which is a low-level resistance to vancomycin seen in *Enterococcus gallinarum* and *E. casseliflavus/E. flavescens* isolates. This is a nontransferable type of resistance and therefore does not have implications for infection control. The second is acquired resistance because of plasmid-derived acquisition of genes. This type of resistance is seen most often in

E. faecium and *E. faecalis* and is less commonly seen in other species of enterococci.

Glycopeptide resistance in enterococci is mediated by the production of altered pentapeptide peptidoglycan precursors, which results in a greatly reduced affinity for binding of vancomycin by 1000-fold. Binding of vancomycin to the pentapeptide prevents cross-linking with other precursors, resulting in prevention of the production of a stable cell wall. Altered precursors are the result of specific genes, of which the two most relevant are *vanA* and *vanB*. When these genes are detected (typically in *E. faecium* and *E. faecalis)*, the isolates are termed *vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE)*. Isolates with *vanA* carry high-level resistance (high MICs) to vancomycin and teicoplanin, and those with *vanB* demonstrate lower-level vancomycin resistance and susceptibility to teicoplanin. Additional genes, *vanD* and *vanE*, have also been described to cause moderate resistance to these drugs. The *vanC* gene is usually found in *E. casseliflavus* or *E. gallinarum*, causing a low level of vancomycin resistance and, in contrast to *vanA* and *vanB*, is not transferable, is less frequently associated with serious infections, and has not been associated with large outbreaks.

Screening for VRE can be done using agar or broth dilution or a screening agar consisting of brain heart infusion with 6 µg/mL of vancomycin. During testing, it is important that the previously mentioned testing systems be incubated for a full 24 hours, because reading at 16 to 20 hours may produce an erroneous result (CLSI, 2014). Modern commercial test systems have performed well in detecting VRE, with all isolates with the VRE phenotype detected by the Phoenix (BD Diagnostic Systems) and the Vitek 2 (bioMerieux) in published studies (Ligozzi et al, 2002; Abele-Horn et al, 2006; Carroll et al, 2006).

Vancomycin susceptibility testing of *S. aureus* has become an important concern for clinical microbiology laboratories since the detection of isolates with reduced susceptibility to the drug (i.e., vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* [VISA] with MIC values of 4 to 8 µg/mL, and vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* [VRSA] with MIC ≥16 µg/mL). Although the mechanism of resistance in VRSA isolates appears to be linked to acquired *vanA* from enterococcal isolates harboring the gene (CDC, 2014), the mechanism associated with elevated MIC values appears to be linked to increased cell wall thickness and vancomycin-binding peptides (Cui et al, 2000). Detection of these isolates is important because most are also MRSA, and vancomycin is often used to treat these organisms. Additionally, increased vancomycin MICs have been associated with increased MICs to daptomycin, further limiting treatment options (Dhand and Sakoulas, 2012). To date in the United States, there have been 13 confirmed cases of vancomycin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (VRSA) infection since 2002 (CDC, 2014). Though rare, these remain important resistance threats. In fact, there have been reports of poorer clinical outcomes with infections caused by vancomycin-susceptible MRSA isolates with higher vancomycin MICs that fall within the susceptible range; this has been termed the *MIC creep* (Dhand & Sakoulas, 2012). More information is needed regarding the true impact of the MIC creep on patient outcomes.

VRSA isolates can be identified by microbroth dilution or vancomycin screening agar. Brain-heart infusion agar with 6 µg/mL vancomycin can be used, as long as the test systems are incubated a full 24 hours at 35°C ± 2°C (CLSI, 2014). For VISA, the issue is problematic because disk diffusion is not an effective screening method, and the vancomycin screening agar is not reliable for isolates that have MIC values on the lower end of the spectrum (CLSI, 2014; Swenson et al, 2009). Commercial automated and nonautomated systems similarly have difficulty detecting certain VISA isolates, and these systems all have their own peculiarities with respect to testing of these isolates; laboratories should be aware of these peculiarities if consideration is given to using a particular system (Swenson et al, 2009; Riedel et al, 2014). In the study by Swenson and colleagues (2009), manual microbroth dilution, which was the most reliable testing method for detecting VISA, had difficulty with VISA isolates with MIC values on the low end of the intermediate resistance spectrum. The issue of VISA is further complicated by the existence of so-called vancomycin heteroresistant *S. aureus* (hVISA) isolates, which are vancomycin-susceptible isolates that contain subpopulations of organisms with MIC values in the VISA and VRSA ranges. Like VRSA and VISA, there are reports that hVISA appears to be associated with treatment failure when vancomycin is used (Tenover & Moellering, 2007). Additionally, although VRSA and VISA isolates are infrequent, studies have suggested that hVISA isolates are not rare and may account for up to 18% of isolates in some geographic locations (Tenover & Moellering, 2007). Unfortunately, no current susceptibility testing method is exceptionally reliable for detecting hVISA, making epidemiologic reports of hVISA difficult to establish.

For streptococci other than *S. pneumoniae* or the enterococci, antimicrobials to be tested and reported depend on the species. As mentioned earlier in the chapter, for *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Lancefield group A), susceptibility testing for penicillin and other β-lactams and vancomycin is not necessary because resistant strains have not been reported (CLSI, 2014). Testing is only necessary if the patient is penicillin allergic and consideration is given to treatment with a macrolide. Moreover, results obtained with erythromycin may be generalized to azithromycin, clarithromycin, and dirithromycin (CLSI, 2014). Similarly, current recommendations are that β-lactam susceptibility testing for *S. agalactaie* (Lancefield group B) is not necessary; however, recent literature has reported the occurrence of isolates with MIC values above the breakpoints for susceptibility for penicillin and cephalosporins from the Far East and from the United States (Dahesh et al, 2008; Kimura et al, 2008). Altered PBPs, similar to those found in *S. pneumoniae*, were identified by molecular studies. Additional studies are necessary to determine the implications, both clinically and with respect to laboratory testing, before the clinical relevance of these reports is known.

It is also recommended that for pregnant women who are colonized with group B streptococci and who are allergic to penicillin, testing for clindamycin and erythromycin should be carried out (CLSI, 2014). Isolates that are resistant to erythromycin but susceptible to clindamycin should be tested for "inducible" resistance to clindamycin that is mediated by the *erm* gene (MLS_B resistance: macrolide, lincosamide, streptogramin B), using broth microdilution or the **D-zone approximation test,** with closely approximated diffusion disks of both clindamycin and erythromycin (CLSI, 2014) (Fig. 59-4). Only clindamycin results should be reported. "Inducible" clindamycin resistance can also occur in staphylococci, β-hemolytic streptococci, and *S. pneumoniae*, and the prevalence may vary among geographic areas (Desjardins et al, 2004; Richter et al, 2005) or with the origin of the isolate in a given geographic area, such as whether the *S. aureus* isolate is hospital or community acquired (Patel et al, 2006).

For the viridans streptococci, any isolate derived from a sterile body site and implicated in a serious infection, such as endocarditis or sepsis, should be tested for penicillin or ampicillin susceptibility (CLSI, 2014). Interpretive standards for diffusion testing of penicillin and ampicillin do not exist for viridans streptococci, as the method is unreliable for this pathogen-antimicrobial combination, so testing is accomplished using an MIC method (CLSI, 2014). Viridans streptococci are important pathogens causing sepsis in patients with neutropenia and native valve endocarditis, and studies have demonstrated increasing rates of resistance to penicillin and the cephalosporins (Gordon et al, 2002; Prabhu et al, 2004). Fluoroquinolones are often used prophylactically in neutropenic patients, and since the development of fluoroquinolone resistance in viridans streptococci (Prabhu et al, 2005), testing of fluoroquinolones in this patient population is indicated despite an overall low prevalence of fluoroquinolone resistance in viridans streptococcal isolates in general (Gordon et al, 2002). This illustrates a situation wherein a specific patient population served by an institution dictates testing and reporting of specific antimicrobials.

Figure 59-4 Disk induction or "D" test. The *Staphylococcus aureus* isolate on the left demonstrates erythromycin (E) resistance but susceptibility to clindamycin (CC). The *S. aureus* isolate on the right demonstrates inducible clindamycin resistance with blunting of the zone of inhibition around the clindamycin disk adjacent to the erythromycin disk.

TABLE 59-1

Classification scheme for β-lactamases in the *Enterobacteriaceae*

β-lactamase Category	Molecular (Ambler) Class	Examples	Key Features of the Class	Found in
ESBL	A (serine)	CTX-M SHV TEM	Activity against penicillins, first- through third-generation cephalosporins and aztreonam; susceptible to clavulanic acid and cephamycins	*Enterobacteriaceae*; other gram-negative organisms such as *N. gonorrhoeae* and *H. influenza*
AmpC	C (serine)	ACC, FOX LAT, MOX	Activity against cephamycins (cefoxitin); resistant to clavulanic acid; susceptible to cefepime and carbapenems; inhibited by boronic acid and cloxacillin; can be induced by β-lactam agents	SPACE bugs (discussion in text) *E. cloacae*
Carbapenemase (have activity against the carbapenems and cephamycins and are resistant to inhibition by clavulanic acid); all are serious infection-control threats	A (serine)	KPC, IMI, SME	Weaker carbapenem hydrolyzers; may be inhibited by boronic acid and partially inhibited by clavulanic acid	*Enterobacteriaceae* esp *K. pneumoniae* and *E. coli*; SME in *Serratia*; *A. baumannii*; *P. aeruginosa*
	B (metallo β-lactamases, "MβLs"; zinc at active site)	NDM, VIM, IMP, GIM, SPM-1	Strong carbapenem hydrolyzers; do not inactivate aztreonam; inhibited by EDTA but not clavulanic acid or boronic acid	*A. baumannii*; *P. aeruginosa*; *Enterobacteriaceae*
	D (serine)	OXA	Weak carbapenem hydrolysis; high activity against oxacillin and temocillin; susceptible to aztreonam; not inhibited by EDTA, boronic acid, or clavulanic acid; may show in vitro susceptibility to the cephalosporins (if no co-production of ESBLs)	*A. baumannii*; *P. aeruginosa*; *Enterobacteriaceae*

Adapted from Bush K, Jacoby GA: Updated functional classification of beta-lactamases, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 54(3):969–976, 2010.

Notes: This is not an all-inclusive table, and is meant to cover the highlights and more common trends seen among members of the various Ambler classes. Exceptions exist within the various groups, as discussed in the text. Interpretations can also be challenging because of the presence of multiple resistance mechanisms in a given isolate (i.e., AMPCs that are also resistant to imipenem not because of carbapenemase enzymes but rather because of porin mutations, the presence of efflux pumps, and so on).

Although resistance to the β-lactam antibiotics in gram-positive organisms in many cases involves altered PBPs, in gram-negative organisms, resistance is often mediated by the production of β-lactamase enzymes. For some gram-negative species, it may be possible to test for β-lactamase production using the chromogenic cephalosporin test. The prevalence of β-lactamase–positive *Haemophilus influenzae* in the United States approaches 30%, while the prevalence of β-lactamase–negative, ampicillin-resistant (BLNAR) strains, which are not detected by the β-lactamase test, is low, though geographic variation has been noted (Tomic & Dowzicky, 2014). For non–life-threatening infections with *H. influenzae*, the nitrocefin test will predict susceptibility to ampicillin and amoxicillin. It may be possible for a laboratory to utilize the nitrocefin test alone in this situation, saving time and money, because susceptibility testing of *Haemophilus* spp. requires specialized media (*Haemophilus* test medium), which have a short shelf life. In areas with a high prevalence of BLNAR, however, this strategy would not be effective. In the case of life-threatening infection, such as meningitis, the CLSI recommends that susceptibility testing be performed, and that only ampicillin, a third-generation cephalosporin, chloramphenicol, and meropenem should be reported (CLSI, 2014).

In contrast to *H. influenzae*, penicillin resistance in *Neisseria meningitidis* is due primarily to altered PBPs, although occasional isolates with β-lactamase production do occur (Jorgensen et al, 2005). Both MIC interpretive standards and disk diffusion breakpoints for susceptibility testing of *N. meningitidis* have been published in CLSI documents (CLSI, 2014). Although resistance to penicillin has been reported in the United States, resistance to cefotaxime and ceftriaxone, used in the treatment of infections due to this species, has not been reported; resistance to rifampin, used for prophylaxis, is rare (Jorgensen et al, 2005). Therefore, testing protocols for this particular species may be determined with input from local medical staff or infectious disease specialists. It is important to remember that if testing is undertaken, appropriate safety precautions, including the use of a biological safety cabinet, must be utilized by testing personnel to avoid the occurrence of laboratory-acquired meningococcal infection, which has a high fatality rate (CLSI, 2014).

β-Lactam antibiotics are used in high frequency for treatment of infection due to the gram-negative *Enterobacteriaceae;* this group of bacteria, however, has developed the capacity to produce a wide array of β-lactamase enzymes that can inactivate the antibiotics. There have been hundreds of identified β-lactamase enzymes identified to date; β-lactamases can be classified by their structure (i.e., the amino acid motif in the enzyme's active site), known as the *Ambler method of classification*, or by their resistance phenotype, known as the *functional classification* (Bush & Jacoby 2010). The Ambler method categorizes the enzymes into four molecular groups, A through D. Groups A, C, and D have a serine at their active site, while those in group B are metalloenzymes that use zinc at their active site (Table 59-1). Some of the more important β-lactamases found in the *Enterobacteriaceae* include the **extended-spectrum β-lactamases (ESBLs)**, the AmpC β-lactamases, and the carbapenemases. ESBLs are plasmid-derived and hence highly transferable enzymes that produce resistance to penicillins, the first- through third-generation cephalosporins, and aztreonam, but generally remain susceptible to inhibition by β-lactamase inhibitors (clavulanate, sulbactam, tazobactam, avibactam) and do not hydrolyze the cephamycins (Paterson & Bonomo, 2005). In the United States, they are found primarily in *K. pneumoniae*, *K. oxytoca*, *E. coli*, and *P. mirabilis*—species previously recommended by the CLSI to be screened for the presence of ESBLs—but they may be found in other species as well, including *Enterobacter* spp., *Citrobacter* spp., *Serratia* spp., and *Salmonella* spp. (Paterson & Bonomo, 2005; Moland et al, 2006).

There are many families of ESBLs, the most common of which are CTX-M, SHV, and TEM, though prevalence of each type is geographically variable (Thomson, 2010). The importance of these enzymes is twofold: first, by in vitro testing, isolates that have them may appear susceptible to antimicrobials that they are capable of hydrolyzing; second, there is a chance of clinical failure when therapy using one of these antimicrobials is provided, even when MIC values are in the susceptible range (Paterson & Bonomo, 2005; Livermore et al, 2012). Moreover, the different families of ESBLs are variable in their preferred substrates; for example, many of the CTX-M enzymes are better at inactivating ceftriaxone and cefotaxime, while the TEM enzymes are better at inactivating ceftazidime (Bush & Jacoby, 2010). Some members of this group are also not as well-inhibited by the β-lactamase inhibitors, complicating matters even more (Bush & Jacoby, 2010).

Isolates with ESBLs accounted for approximately 5% of *Enterobacteriaceae* isolates in one survey study in the United States; now there are an estimated 26,000 cases and 1700 deaths annually (CDC, 2013) with a high predilection for intensive care unit environments. They are associated with prolonged hospital stays, indwelling medical devices, and prior therapy with a variety of antimicrobials (Paterson & Bonomo, 2005; Moland et al, 2006). The incidence of ESBLs and other even more concerning β-lactamases in gram-negative bacteria is increasing worldwide, and there has been an emergence of community-acquired infections due to organisms harboring ESBLs (Kassakian & Mermel, 2014).

CLSI documents have provided procedures for screening using disk diffusion or broth microdilution, as well as confirmation utilizing the characteristic that these enzymes are typically inhibited by β-lactamase inhibitors (CLSI, 2014). Until just a few years ago, the following

standardized procedure for screening and confirmation of ESBLs in *Enterobacteriaceae* (specifically for *K. pneumoniae*, *E. coli*, and *P. mirabilis*) was endorsed by the CLSI: standard susceptibility tests suggesting decreased susceptibility to the extended-spectrum cephalosporins (cefotaxime, ceftazidime, ceftriaxone) or the monobactams would constitute a positive ESBL screen, resulting in the need to perform a confirmatory test. Of note, the organism might still fall in the susceptible or intermediate category, but the MIC would be higher than that of wild-type isolates. The ESBL confirmatory test involved the use of both cefotaxime and ceftazidime, each tested with and without clavulanic acid (Paterson & Bonomo, 2005; (CLSI, 2009a). The confirmatory test is based on the characteristic that ESBL producers are inhibited by β-lactamase inhibitors; therefore, a positive confirmatory test results when the susceptibility of the test organism increases (therefore the MIC decreases) in the presence of a β-lactamase inhibitor, compared to the result obtained using a third-generation cephalosporin alone. In these procedures, a combination of drugs is often used because for screening and confirmation, using the results obtained with more than one antimicrobial improves sensitivity and specificity for each test, respectively.

As discussed in the "Commercial Automated Instrument Systems" section earlier in the chapter, automated susceptibility systems include tests that can be used to detect ESBLs; however, sensitivity issues for some systems and issues with expert software have suggested that manual methods should remain an important part of confirmatory testing for ESBLs in the clinical microbiology laboratory (Thomson et al, 2007; Snyder et al, 2008). An example of a method that can be used is the E-test, shown in Figure 59-5. The premise of this test is the same as described earlier: ESBL production is determined by a ≥3 twofold-concentration decrease (or a ratio of ≥8) in the MIC of cefotaxime or ceftazidime in the presence of clavulanic acid. Of note, the phenotypic confirmatory tests could instead be included in the automated AST instrument used in the laboratory, such that ESBL screening and confirmation could be performed at the same time by the instrument, by comparing the MICs obtained from testing a third-generation cephalosporin with and without a β-lactamase inhibitor. This would result in a shorter turnaround time to results than would be possible by manual confirmatory tests.

Previously, in cases of a negative screening test, β-lactam susceptibilities would be interpreted and reported according to their tested MIC. In cases of a positive ESBL confirmatory test, all penicillins, cephalosporins, and monobactams would be reported as resistant, regardless of the MIC value; such changes might be made manually or automatically, using expert rules in the instrument software to change the interpretations of those drugs to "resistant." However, since the CLSI lowered many of the MIC breakpoints for the cephalosporins and carbapenems for the *Enterobacteriaceae* in 2010, phenotypic testing for ESBLs is now no longer required for clinical purposes, and organisms can be reported according to their tested MIC, without interpretations being altered by expert rules (CLSI, 2014). A continued discussion of the effects of these breakpoint changes will follow the discussion of carbapenemases later in the chapter.

Figure 59-5 E-test showing one possible phenotypic test for the detection of ESBLs. The left agar plate shows an ESBL-producing *K. pneumoniae* isolate. The right plate shows a non-ESBL–producing *E.coli*. On each plate, the E-test strip on the left contains cefotaxime (CT) on one end and cefotaxime with clavulanic acid (CTL) on the other. The E-test strip on the right contains ceftazidime (TZ) on one end and ceftazidime with clavulanic acid (TZL) on the other. ESBL production is determined by a ≥3 twofold-concentration decrease in the MIC of CT or TZ in the presence of clavulanic acid. A positive test also occurs when a "phantom zone" or deformed CT or TZ ellipse is present. In the *K. pneumoniae* example on the left, the CT is 0.75 and the CTL is 0.25 for a ratio of 3, not indicative of an ESBL; however, the TZ is >32 and the TZL is 0.75 for a ratio of 43; this is therefore a positive ESBL test because the TZ/TZL ratio is ≥8, indicating an effect of the β-lactamase inhibitor on the susceptibility of the test organism. The *E.coli* on the right does not show such an effect by clavulanic acid.

A false-negative on the ESBL phenotypic confirmation test as described by the CLSI may be produced by an organism that is producing another type of β-lactamase that is of high interest—AmpC β-lactamase—in addition to an ESBL. **AmpC** enzymes are essentially extended-spectrum cephalosporinases and exist in two forms, the first type having the gene located on a chromosome. Among the *Enterobacteriaceae*, chromosomally-mediated and inducible AmpC enzymes are sometimes referred to by the acronym "SPACE," which stands for ***S****erratia marcescens*, *indole-positive* ***P****roteae (Providencia* spp., *Morganella morganii*, and *Proteus vulgaris*), ***A****eromonas* spp., ***C****itrobacter freundii*, ***E****nterobacter cloacae*, and ***E****nterobacter aerogenes*; this is not an exhaustive list, as there are additional organisms that express the chromosomal AmpC β-lactamase (Jacoby, 2009). Nonetheless, the SPACE organisms are inherently AmpC-positive and are therefore automatically assumed to be resistant to broad-spectrum penicillins, the extended-spectrum cephalosporins except cefepime (at the conventionally tested inoculum), the monobactams, and, in contrast to ESBLs, the cephamycins like cefoxitin. Therefore, testing for AmpC in these organisms is not necessary, and susceptibility reports can automatically reflect resistance to the antimicrobials listed. Also, in contrast to ESBLs, AmpC producers are not inhibited by commercially available β-lactamase inhibitors; this is one reason for a negative ESBL confirmation test in light of a positive ESBL screen (Thomson, 2010). Further, the chromosomal AmpC enzyme can be induced by β-lactam antibiotics as well as β-lactamase inhibitors, The laboratory director may therefore choose to include a statement of caution on the AST report—a warning to the effect that therapy with β-lactam and β-lactamase inhibitors may induce the AmpC enzyme present in the given pathogen.

AmpC may also be plasmid derived, and is often found in *Klebsiella* spp., *E. coli*, and *Salmonella* spp., though it has also been detected in *Citrobacter* spp., *Enterobacter aerogenes*, and *P. mirabilis*. It is important to recognize these, because isolates that produce this enzyme will be resistant to the same antimicrobials as those expressing the chromosomal enzyme but, because this is plasmid-based resistance, it is transferable to other organisms and is therefore an infection-control risk. Similar to ESBL-producing isolates, an AmpC-producing isolate may appear susceptible to one of the aforementioned antimicrobials when tested, but treatment with the antimicrobial may result in treatment failure and, in some cases, increased mortality (Pai et al, 2004). For a comprehensive review of AmpC β-lactamases, the reader is referred to Jacoby (2009).

The prevalence of AmpCs is unknown, as surveillance is limited to laboratories equipped to detect them. Possible screens for the presence of an AmpC β-lactamase–producing isolate include the presence of cefoxitin resistance and a positive ESBL screen but a negative ESBL confirmatory test in the presence of carbapenem susceptibility (Black et al, 2005). Of note, cefoxitin is a better screen than cefotetan, the other cephamycin, and cefoxitin screens may be best done with a disk test as opposed to an MIC method (Polsfuss et al, 2012). Unfortunately, the screens are nonspecific, cefoxitin resistance may also be due to porin loss, confirmatory tests for the presence of AmpC are problematic, and some AmpC producers that also have a porin mutation can test resistant to the carbapenems (Thomson, 2010). In fact, some have reported that positive ESBL screens may be due to AmpCs more often than to ESBLs (Munier et al, 2010). It is evident that the complex nature of β-lactamase resistance and the many mechanisms that can all result in similar phenotypes makes testing in the laboratory all the more challenging. Cefoxitin-resistant non–AmpC β-lactamase–producing isolates can be separated from those producing AmpC β-lactamase by a few different methods, some taking advantage of the fact that AmpC producers are inhibited by boronic acid and cloxacillin, like in the AmpC Etest (bioMérieux SA, Marcy-l'Etoile, France) and the AmpC cefoxitin-cloxacillin disk test. Alternatively, one can use the AmpC cefoxitin-EDTA double disk test, which utilizes the ability of Tris-EDTA to permeabilize the test bacterium and release the resistance enzymes into the agar causing inactivation of cefoxitin (Fig. 59-6) (Peter-Getzlaff et al, 2011). However, these tests are prone to subjectivity and false positive results can be due to carbapenemases. Currently, there is no CLSI-recommended test to detect or confirm AmpC β-lactamase production in an isolate, and phenotypic tests cannot reliably differentiate between chromosomal and plasmid-mediated AmpC producers (in such cases, molecular approaches can be used, as described by Pérez-Pérez & Hanson, 2002) .

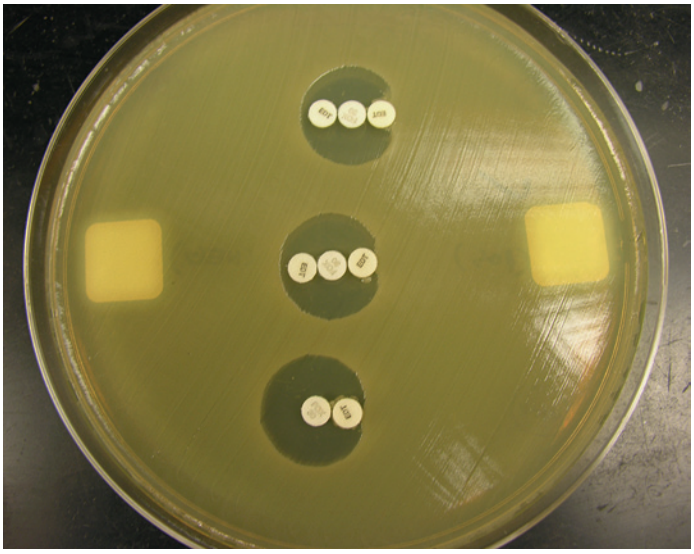


Figure 59-6 AmpC cefoxitin-EDTA test. This AmpC test is performed as described by Black and colleagues (2005). Briefly, a lawn of cefoxitin-susceptible *E. coli* is inoculated onto the surface of a Mueller-Hinton agar plate. EDTA disks are moistened, and the test isolates are smeared on the surface of the disks, which are placed organism-side-down onto the agar down next to a 30 g cefoxitin disk. EDTA increases the permeability of the cell wall of the test isolate, allowing for release of β-lactamases into the agar. After an overnight incubation, if AmpC β-lactamase is present in the test isolate, the *E. coli* will grow in toward the cefoxitin disk, showing either an indentation or a flattening of the zone of inhibition, reflecting the enzymatic inactivation of cefoxitin (positive result). The absence of a distortion indicates that cefoxitin was not inactivated (negative result). In the figure, the top set of disks shows an AmpC-negative *E. coli* on the EDTA disk to the left of the cefoxitin disk and an AmpC-positive *E. cloacae* to the right. The middle set of disks shows an AmpC-negative *K. pneumoniae* on the EDTA disk to the left of the cefoxitin disk and an AmpC-positive *E. coli* to the right. The bottom set of disks shows a weak positive Amp-C producing *K. pneumoniae* on the EDTA disk to the right of the cefoxitin disk.

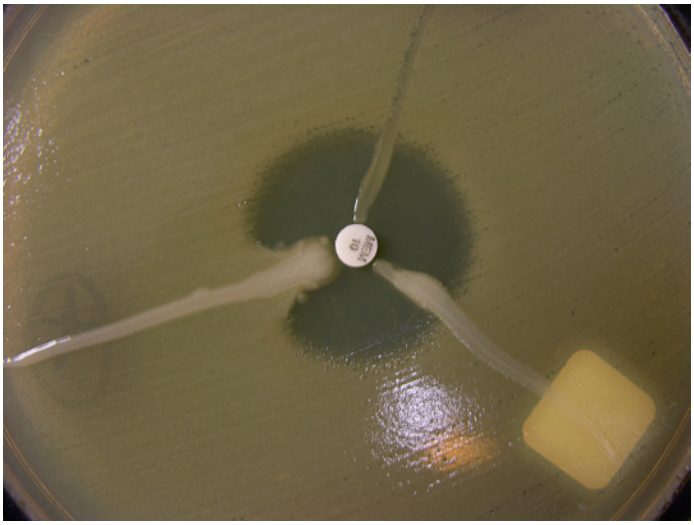


Figure 59-7 The Modified Hodge Test (MHT). The MHT is performed by first streaking a susceptible strain of *E. coli* onto the surface of a Mueller-Hinton agar plate. A Meropenem disk is placed in the middle of the plate. Test isolates are streaked in a line from the Meropenem disk to the edge of the plate. If the test organism is positive for KPC production, the meropenem is hydrolyzed allowing the susceptible *E. coli* to grow in toward the Meropenem disk in a characteristic cloverleaf-like indentation. In the figure, a KPC-producing *K. pneumoniae* is seen at the left of the meropenem disk (MHT-positive test). The other two isolates seen are species of the *E. cloacae* complex and are MHT-negative, as there is no indentation of growth toward the meropenem disk.

Revision of interpretive breakpoints for the antimicrobials affected by both ESBLs and AmpC β-lactamases was implemented by the CLSI as a way to deal with these problematic issues, but these changes have introduced new concerns, discussed in more detail, following the discussion of carbapenemases later in the chapter.

Enterobacteriaceae that produce an ESBL or AmpC β-lactamase (or both) may often be treated with a carbapenem, as resistance to this class is not a consequence of the production of either β-lactamase. Unfortunately, several groups of carbapenemase β-lactamases may be acquired by gram-negative bacteria. A carbapenemase of current interest and importance globally with respect to *Enterobacteriaceae* is a group of serine carbapenemases, the ***Klebsiella pneumoniae* carbapenemase (KPC) enzymes**. These β-lactamases produce resistance to all β-lactams, including extended-spectrum cephalosporins and carbapenems, as well as to β-lactamase inhibitors, dramatically decreasing treatment options. Despite this, in vitro susceptibility testing has shown that the carbapenem MIC may be only mildly elevated and in the susceptible category; nonetheless, treatment of an infection with a carbapenem might result in treatment failure (Weisenberg et al, 2009; Livermore et al, 2012). KPC enzymes may be found in a variety of species of *Enterobacteriaceae*, and are most often found in *K. pneumoniae* and *E.coli* in the United States, though they are also found in many other species including *K. oxytoca*, and *Enterobacter spp.* The genes for production of the enzymes are plasmid-borne, and clonal expansion can occur easily. KPC enzymes first appeared in the United States in New York City, and a survey of four hospitals in Brooklyn, N.Y., over 2 months in 2004 demonstrated that 24% of *K. pneumonaie* isolates had one of two *KPC* genes (Walther-Rasmussen & Høiby, 2007). The spread of KPC enzymes has since become a global epidemic (Tzouvelekis et al, 2012). In the United States alone, more than 9000 infections and 600 deaths are caused by carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* (CRE) bacteria each year (CDC, 2013). The prevalence of CRE, especially KPC organisms, is 20% to 40% in areas of endemicity (Tzouvelekis et al, 2012). CRE are resistant to all or nearly all available antibiotics and are associated with increased length of stay in the hospital and increased mortality rates, ranging from 24% to 70% (Tzouvelekis et al, 2012). Moreover, patients with CRE require that certain infection-control practices, including contact precautions and patient cohorting, must be implemented upon identification of the organism as CRE. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has published specific guidelines on practices for the control of CRE transmission in health care settings (CRE Toolkit, CDC, 2012).

Prior to 2010, the following standardized procedure for screening and confirmation of carbapenemases in *Enterobacteriaceae* was endorsed by the CLSI (CLSI, 2009a): for isolates testing resistant to one or more third-generation cephalosporin and having an increased MIC to one or more carbapenem, the laboratory would screen for the presence of carbapenemases with an ertapenem or meropenem disk, or with ertapenem, meropenem, or imipenem broth microdilution. Using the imipenem MIC does not work for screening in *Proteus*, *Providencia*, *and Morganella* species, because this group has elevated imipenem MICs due to mechanisms of resistance other than the production of carbapenemases. Following a positive screen, a confirmatory test, such as the Modified Hodge Test (MHT), would be performed. The test involves streaking an isolate of interest perpendicularly to a centrally placed carbapenem disk (meropenem) on a Mueller-Hinton agar plate that has been streaked with a susceptible strain of *E. coli*, to produce confluent growth. Enhanced growth of the *E. coli* in the zone of inhibition along the streaked test isolate of *Enterobacteriaceae* indicates that the latter is producing a carbapenemase that has inhibited the carbapenem and has allowed the *E. coli* to grow where it normally would not, as depicted in Figure 59-7.

The modified Hodge test is a sensitive test for the detection of carbapenemases, but cannot differentiate among the various types of carbapenemases. The MHT is also a subjective test and can be difficult to interpret. Further, false-positive results can occur with AmpC or ESBLs in combination with other mechanisms of resistance, such as porin alterations; of note, such organisms have higher MICs to ertapenem, which is therefore a less specific indicator for the presence of carbapenemases (though it remains one of the better screening agents for carbapenemases, as KPC-producing organisms may be resistant to ertapenem while testing susceptible to the other carbapenems). False negatives can occur with NDM-1 and other metallo β-lactamase (MBL)-producing organisms that have weaker carbapenemase activity. Therefore, testing of the isolate with a carbapenem disk with and without an inhibitor can help differentiate the types of carbapenemases; for differentiation, boronic acid can be used to inhibit and therefore help detect class A while EDTA can be similarly used for class B carbapenemases (Tsakris et al, 2009; Stuart & Leverstein-van Hall, 2010). Boronic acid inhibits KPC-carbapenemases, resulting in an increase in the zone of inhibition diameter around the carbapenem–boronic acid disk relative to the carbapenem-only disk.

Additional phenotypic tests for detecting carbapenemases include chromogenic tests such as the Carba NP, a rapid chromogenic test based on hydrolysis of imipenem (Nordmann et al, 2012), and the Rosco disks

(KPC-MBL confirm kit, Rosco, Taastrup, Denmark), which use a carbapenem in combination with an inhibitor, allowing for the differentiation of carbapenemase types. The chromogenic screening agar, used in conjunction with a confirmatory assay, have performed well, with a reported combined sensitivity of 89.8% and a specificity of 100% in one study that evaluated multiple chromogenic screening agar media and confirmatory methods for the detection of carbapenemase production in gram-negative bacilli (Simner et al, 2015). Other such assays have also performed well in published studies, with slightly variable results (Huang et al, 2014). Molecular tests for CRE are discussed separately in the "Molecular-Based and Newer Methods of Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing" section earlier in the chapter.

Prior to 2010, if an isolate tested resistant to a carbapenem on routine susceptibility testing, the interpretation would be reported, irrespective of whether or not a carbapenemase was subsequently identified by confirmatory testing, because there are other mechanisms of carbapenem resistance; the CLSI recommended that in cases in which a carbapenemase was identified, and some carbapenems tested susceptible by listed breakpoints, the MIC values should be reported without an interpretation (CLSI, 2009a). Many laboratories chose to report all carbapenems as resistant in such cases.

In 2010, the CLSI lowered the cephalosporin and carbapenem breakpoints for *Enterobacteriaceae* and revised their recommendations, such that screening and confirmation for mechanisms of antibiotic resistance in these organisms was no longer deemed necessary for clinical purposes, and such testing was considered useful only for epidemiologic and infection-control purposes (CLSI, 2014) . With the lowered MICs, it was thought that automated instruments would now be more sensitive in detecting ESBLs and CREs, and therefore isolates could be directly categorized as susceptible or resistant based on how the MIC tested, as opposed to after adjustment using confirmatory testing and expert rules. Therefore, carbapenemase producers that test susceptible to some of the cephalosporins and carbapenems and resistant to others would be reported as such, using the new guidelines. The clinical significance of this is not fully understood, but one might imagine that treatment failures could result in cases in which a physician treats an infection with a drug for which the MIC tested in the susceptible range, but that was ineffective because the organism produced an ESBL or carbapenemase.

Moreover, not all MICs were changed, complicating matters further. For example, the MIC breakpoint for cefepime was not changed at the time (of note, it has since been lowered) (CLSI, 2014); therefore, KPC-producing isolates could show MICs in the susceptible range and be reported as such, whereas, in the past, the interpretation would have been changed to resistant, based on detection of a carbapenemase. Additional complications arose because manufacturers of the automated systems and panels had to adhere to the FDA breakpoints which, having been implemented upon approval of the testing devices, were different from the newly revised CLSI breakpoints. Finally, EUCAST and CLSI did not set the same breakpoints for the various drugs, thereby potentially confounding epidemiologic resistance reports from various regions around the world.

The rationale for the 2010 changes included data from MIC distributions, pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic modeling, and examples from clinical cases in which infections caused by ESBL- and CRE-producing organisms were successfully treated with certain cephalosporins and carbapenems, respectively, if the MICs were lower than those near the breakpoint; this implied that the MIC was more important than the resistance mechanism and should therefore guide treatment (Paterson et al, 2001; Daikos et al, 2009). Adding to this is the fact that the presence of a weakly active β-lactamase does not always imply that the drug will not be clinically effective. Moreover, there are a variety of resistance mechanisms within the ESBL and CRE categories, and they do not all have the same strength of activity against the same drugs, even those within the same class.

This rationale has been called into question, however. First, the clinical evidence is limited, and it is not entirely clear that a patient can be successfully treated with a drug to which the infecting organism has a resistance mechanism. In fact, cases in which treatment failures have occurred despite using drugs with apparently susceptible MICs have been documented (Paterson et al, 2001; Livermore et al, 2012). Additional arguments from those opposed to the rules associated with the revised breakpoints include the consideration of other factors that can influence the MIC such as testing inoculum, and issues involving precision and reproducibility of testing. For example, there is an allowed variability of one doubling dilution in the assessment of MICs, such that an MIC determined to be 2 μg/mL really means that the MIC lies somewhere between 1 and 4 μg/mL (Doern & Brecher, 2011; Livermore et al, 2012). Moreover, at low MICs there is greater imprecision than that which exists at higher MICs. This implies that a low MIC may not be as reliable as one might think, and this is particularly concerning if the tested MIC is near a breakpoint. Further adding to the controversy is the sometimes problematic detection of carbapenemase production by automated systems, the discordant results that can be obtained by different systems, and the fact that some of the MICs on the AST panels do not have the testing range needed to interpret the revised breakpoints (Bulik et al, 2010; Thomson et al, 2011; Livermore et al, 2012). Add to this other variables, such as achievable drug concentrations, differences in patient populations, and types of virulence and infection, and what tested as a susceptible organism in vitro may act as a resistant organism in vivo.

Finally, published reports have evaluated the effects of applying the new breakpoints and associated rules for ESBL and CRE-producing organisms. Regarding ESBLs, McWilliams and colleagues (2014) reported that more than 89% of ESBL-producing *E.coli* would have been reported as susceptible or intermediate for aztreonam and/or ≥1 cephalosporin, using the new breakpoints. Further, nearly 68% of ESBL-producing *K. pneumoniae* isolates would have been reported as susceptible or intermediate to aztreonam and/or ≥1cephalosporin, though the subsequent lowered cefepime breakpoints of 2014 did help to increase the reporting of the resistant category for both species. Another report found that approximately 21% of *E. coli*, 25% of *K. oxytoca*, and 79% of *P. mirabilis* isolates tested susceptible to ceftazidime but were ESBL-positive, suggesting that the CLSI breakpoints for this drug may still be too high to detect ESBLs (Morrissey et al, 2014).

The post-breakpoint reports regarding CRE detection raise different issues than those for ESBLs. Using the updated breakpoints will likely increase the sensitivity of identifying KPC-positive isolates, as it was well documented that KPC-producers often had imipenem and meropenem MICs in the susceptible range when the old breakpoints were in use. Landman and colleagues (2011) caution against the use of ertapenem for screening with the revised breakpoints, however, as ertapenem resistance can also be found in AmpC organisms with porin mutations; these AmpC organisms nonetheless remain susceptible to the other carbapenem agents. One would not want to misclassify these as KPC producers and eliminate carbapenems as treatment options, in such cases. This group also found that though nearly all KPC producers tested were resistant to ertapenem, the vast majority remained susceptible to imipenem and meropenem, using the new breakpoints (Landman et al, 2011). Bulik and colleagues (2010) noted that among the carbapenems, automated systems showed the greatest intermethod variability in meropenem MICs, and false-susceptible results could be obtained in KPC producers. On the contrary, Thomson and colleagues (2011) found that when using the Vitek2, meropenem was more sensitive at detecting KPC producers. Ho and colleagues (2011) found that overall susceptibility would be reduced by 6.6% using the new breakpoints, but this figure is highly species-dependent, ranging from a small decrease in imipenem susceptibility rates for *E.coli* and a modest decrease for *Klebsiella spp*., to a dramatic decrease of up to 61% for other groups, such as *Providencia spp*. and *Morganella spp* (of note, these recategorized organisms were not necessarily shown to have produced significant resistance mechanisms).

In sum, implementation of the new breakpoints and elimination of confirmatory testing for mechanisms of resistance in the *Enterobacteriaceae* may result in fewer treatment failures in some cases and in greater treatment failures in other cases, depending on the organism, the resistance mechanism, and the testing system used. There is also concern that if these changes result in increasing numbers of gram-negative bacilli reported as multidrug resistant, this may unnecessarily limit therapeutic options, and even facilitate the progression of the multidrug-resistant organism (MDRO) epidemic that the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) calls "one of the most serious and growing threats to public health" (CDC, 2014). Therefore, more studies are needed to assess the clinical and epidemiologic outcomes related to this change and, to-date, the literature remains controversial.

Carbapenems are an important group of drugs used in the treatment of anaerobic infections, and susceptibility data related to this drug class, the most common anaerobic cause of sepsis, the *Bacteroides fragilis* group, illustrates one of the important points related to anaerobic bacteria; that is, that their susceptibility profile can vary greatly with geographic area, and even within different institutions within the same geographic region. This is due, in part, to the prevalence of circulating strains but also to local patterns of antibiotic consumption. Multicenter studies in the United States demonstrated very low rates of resistance in *B. fragilis* to the carbapenems (1.1% to 2.5%), though these rates have increased over time; low but increasing rates of carbapenem resistance have also been documented in Europe and Asia (Liu et al, 2008; Snydman et al, 2011;

Boyanova et al, 2015). Antibiotic resistance is predictable in some species, such as *Bilophila wadsworthia*, and is common in many species, such as *Prevotella* spp., with nearly 50% of isolates resistant to penicillin; on the whole, the antibiotic susceptibility profiles of many anaerobes are unpredictable and variable, but resistance is increasing in many species (Wybo et al, 2007; CLSI, 2012a; Boyanova et al, 2015). This fact, in addition to findings from studies demonstrating that in vitro susceptibility testing results for anaerobes can have a direct correlation with favorable outcome (Nguyen et al, 2000), has pointed to the importance of antimicrobial susceptibility testing for anaerobes in cases in which a clear pathogen is isolated, and not in the polymicrobial cultures commonly received in the laboratory. CLSI recommendations are that susceptibility testing should be performed for specific infections caused by anaerobes, with suggested groupings of antibiotics (CLSI, 2012a). Given that this may be difficult for some laboratories because of the method required, referral to a reference laboratory in specific cases is an option; surveillance testing of collected isolates in a given geographic area or institution to generate an antibiogram on which physicians can base empiric therapy is also recommended (Wybo et al, 2007; Liu et al, 2008).

For *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (MTBC), all new isolates should be tested for susceptibility to the four primary antituberculosis drugs: isoniazid (INH), rifampin (RIF), ethambutol (ETH), and pyrazinamide (PZA) (CLSI, 2012b). Additionally, if the patient fails to respond to therapy, or cultures fail to become negative by 3 months after initiation of therapy, testing should be repeated. Results must be available as soon as possible, and it is recommended that laboratories provide results within 15 to 30 days of receiving the initial specimen.

Drug susceptibility to MTBC was determined primarily by the agar proportion method using solid agar (Middlebrook 7H10 or 7H11). This method is performed by inoculating dilutions of a standard inoculum onto the agar-based medium with and without the drug to be tested. The number of colony-forming units (CFU) is then compared between the drug-containing and the drug-free media and is expressed as a percentage. Resistance is defined as "growth of greater than 1% of an inoculum of bacterial cells in the presence of a critical concentration of antituberculous drugs;" the critical drug concentrations reflect the lowest drug concentrations that will inhibit 95% of wild-type strains that are naïve to the drugs, while not inhibiting resistant strains (CLSI, 2012b). Results of in vitro susceptibility testing of the primary drugs correlates well with clinical effectiveness in patients with TB, when using the critical drug concentrations. The agar proportion method is, however, slow and not satisfactory for testing PZA, for which a radiometric method is the recognized reference method. This, however, is likely going to change because the manufacturer of the radiometric method is no longer supporting it. There are now alternative methods such as the modified agar dilution method and liquid broth methods available for testing, even for PZA. For example, the BACTEC 460TB (Becton, Dickinson, Sparks, Md.) allowed a faster turnaround time, but the system was only semiautomated and required handling and disposal of radioactive waste. Automated liquid-based systems that do not require the use of radioactivity are now in widespread use, examples of which include the VersaTREK (Trek Diagnostic Systems, Westlake, Ohio) and the BACTEC Mycobacteria Growth Indicator Tube (MGIT) 960 (Becton, Dickinon), the latter of which uses fluorescent light emission as the indicator of mycobacterial growth. Comparison studies between the proportion method and BACTEC 460 and the other automated systems have demonstrated generally good correlation, and the automated systems have become popular in laboratories in the United States where the cost of the systems is not prohibitive (Garrigó et al, 2007; Kalokhe et al, 2013). Though considered to be the gold standard for MTBC susceptibility testing, phenotypic methods are labor-intensive and do not provide rapid results. For a discussion of rapid AST for MTBC, the reader is referred to the "Molecular-Based and Newer Methods of Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing" section earlier in the chapter.

The recommended method for testing nontuberculous mycobacteria (NTM) is broth microdilution. Susceptibility testing for NTM is only recommended for isolates isolated from sterile sites or those considered to be otherwise clinically relevant. For the *Mycobacterium avium* complex (MAC), in vitro testing with only the macrolides (azithromycin and clarithromycin) has demonstrated correlation with clinical response; clarithromycin is the recommended agent for testing. For the rapidly growing mycobacteria (RGM), inducible resistance to the macrolides can be caused by the *erm* gene; therefore, detection for this resistance is performed by testing susceptibility to clarithromycin. A positive result at 14 days indicates inducible macrolide resistance, and this has been associated with delayed treatment response and possible treatment failure in patients with *M. abscessus* (Koh et al, 2011).

Susceptibility testing with antifungal agents is predominantly performed on yeasts in certain institutions that perform testing, with CLSI breakpoints available for the common species of *Candida* spp. with fluconazole, voriconazole, and the echinocandins (CLSI, 2008a, 2012c); for amphotericin B, one can add a "likely resistant" interpretation if the MIC is >1 μg/mL (CLSI, 2012c). Though there are guidelines for testing invasive filamentous fungi and molds, as well as the dermatophytes, interpretive breakpoints are not available from the CLSI for any species of filamentous fungi for any antifungal drug, because the relationship between in vitro and in vivo data has not been evaluated in humans. Nonetheless, there are patterns and MICs that may reflect clinically relevant resistance and can be reported as such, such as those outlined for amphotericin B or for some of the azoles with *Aspergillus spp.*; further, the CLSI suggests that routine testing is not recommended and fungal AST must be considered by each institution separately (CLSI, 2008b).

For antifungal AST, testing options are limited with disk diffusion, and the reference microbroth dilution method is labor-intensive, so many have turned to commercial testing systems such as the Sensititre YeastOne (Trek Diagnostic Systems, Cleveland, Ohio), a manual colorimetric microdilution panel; the Etest (bioMérieux SA, Marcy-l'Etoile, France), or the automated VITEK 2 (Vitek bioMérieux Inc., Durham, N.C.), which offers a yeast susceptibility testing card. The Sensititre YeastOne is a comprehensive manual system that offers all drugs for which CLSI breakpoints exist, including the echinocandins. Performance in published evaluation studies has been good, and the Sensititre was found to be essentially equivalent to the CLSI reference microbroth dilution method (Pfaller et al, 2012b). The VITEK 2 yeast susceptibility test has also shown good performance for *Candida* spp., and has the additional advantages of being fully automated and providing results in 12 to 15 hours, although the menu of drugs that can be tested is limited (Pfaller et al, 2007a, 2007b). Molecular and other methods such as the MALDI-TOF MS are also increasingly being used in susceptibility testing of resistance determinants for yeasts and molds. Though not in mainstream clinical use in most clinical laboratories, their use is likely to increase in the near future.

SELECTING ANTIBIOTICS TO BE REPORTED

Policies for reporting of antibiotics for isolates should take into account not only the results of testing, but a variety of factors. For example, the laboratory should not report susceptibility results for antimicrobials that are not effective in treating a given infection. As many drugs (including first- or second-generation cephalosporins, macrolides, clindamycin, fluoroquinolones, tetracyclines, and orally administered drugs) are not appropriate in the treatment of CSF infections, they should not be reported for isolates from the central nervous system (CLSI, 2014). Similarly, drugs that may test susceptible in vitro but have been shown to be ineffective in vivo for particular species, such as cephalosporins or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for *Enterococcus* spp., also should not be reported (CLSI, 2014). Drugs that are effective only for urinary tract infection (e.g., nitrofurantoin) should not be reported on isolates from any site other the urinary tract. Many institutions utilize **cascade** reporting to encourage the use of antimicrobials that are effective based on in vivo susceptibility testing but may be less expensive than the "newest" or most heavily commercially promoted drug, to try to lower pharmacy costs. For example, third-generation cephalosporins might be reported, barring other considerations such as isolate source, only if first- or second-generation cephalosporins are resistant upon testing.

A close working relationship between the clinical microbiology laboratory and the infectious disease service is important in effective **antibiotic stewardship** programs that guide an institution's caregivers in the most appropriate use of antibiotics. These programs are instituted to save money or, more important, to combat the increasing problem of antibiotic resistance; they may involve the use of mandatory prescribing and treatment guidelines, reporting or nonreporting of specific antibiotics on susceptibility profiles, and **gatekeeper** providers such as infectious disease physicians, whose approval is required before specific antibiotics can be used. As an example, it has been demonstrated in prospective studies (Project ICARE: Intensive Care Antimicrobial Resistance Epidemiology) that the frequent use of vancomycin and third-generation cephalosporins is associated with increased prevalence of VRE in ICUs, and that by limiting the use of vancomycin, the prevalence can be decreased (Fridkin et al, 2001, 2002). Similarly, in a multicenter retrospective analysis, Pakyz and colleagues (2009) showed that restricting the use of carbapenems resulted in lower incidences of carbapenem-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* than were seen in hospitals that did not restrict carbapenem use.

Finally, reports from several centers in different parts of the world have detailed outbreaks of a highly virulent strain of *Clostridium difficile* that resulted in high morbidity and mortality. These outbreaks have been determined to be associated with the use of specific antibiotics, particularly the fluoroquinolones, to which this particular strain is highly resistant; containment of the outbreaks has required a number of measures, including strict antibiotic stewardship programs that in some cases completely prohibited fluoroquinolone use (Valiquette et al, 2007; Labbé et al, 2008; Debast et al, 2009). These examples demonstrate the importance of knowing how and what antibiotics are reported by the laboratory, as well as the importance of the clinical laboratory working closely with the infectious disease service in addressing issues created by patterns of antibiotic use. A multicenter survey of U.S. hospitals showed that the most frequently prescribed antibiotic class from 2002 to 2006 was the fluoroquinolones, and that carbapenem use was increasing significantly (Pakyz et al, 2008); these issues are directly relevant to the examples given here and show that the management of antibiotic use in hospitals, including what antibiotics the clinical laboratory reports, will be a continuing and increasingly complex issue in the coming years.

CUMULATIVE ANTIMICROBIAL SUSCEPTIBILITY REPORTS

Susceptibility patterns for specific species against antimicrobials can vary with geographic locale, type of medical institution, and antibiotic usage patterns, and it is the responsibility of the clinical microbiology laboratory to monitor susceptibility patterns and keep the medical staff informed of current patterns. This is usually accomplished by monitoring susceptibility data on isolates over time, compiling these data for a specific time period, calculating the percentage of a specific species that is susceptible to a given drug, putting all the data into an easily accessible format, and making it available to the medical staff. These reports, usually referred to as *antibiograms*, can be used by the medical staff to treat infections empirically while awaiting specific culture and susceptibility results. They can also be used by hospital epidemiology and infection control to monitor resistance trends, identify outbreaks, and formulate infection-control policy; they may also be referred to by the pharmacy and therapeutics committee of the institution when making policy or formulary decisions (Zapantis et al, 2005). By including antibiotic cost data in the antibiogram, institutions may encourage providers to utilize less-expensive but still effective drugs.

The CLSI provides guidance to institutions on the preparation of antibiograms in CLSI document M39-A3 (2009b) and includes suggestions on use of terminology; obtaining, analysis, and presentation of data; statistical considerations; and specific limitations of the antibiogram. Examples and templates are included in the document. Hindler and Stelling (2007) summarized many of the essential considerations discussed in the CLSI document, and they discussed issues that must be considered and decided upon when compiling an institution's antibiogram. For example, how multiple isolates from a single patient are counted in compiling the data can have a marked effect on the percentage of a specific species that appears susceptible to a given antibiotic. If all isolates are counted, this will bias the result toward isolates that are submitted from patients who have multiple cultures submitted over time (e.g., those patients with infection due to resistant organisms, who remain hospitalized for long periods, or who do not respond to therapy) (Hindler & Stelling, 2007). Whether duplicate isolates from the same patient are all counted (isolate-based algorithm), whether they are excluded and only the first one counted (patient-based algorithm), are counted only if they represent a new clinical episode (episode-based algorithm), or are counted only if they show a new resistance phenotype (phenotype-based algorithm) directly affects the percentages of susceptibility for an antimicrobial; which algorithm is best for a given institution should be decided upon consultation with the medical staff and/or the pharmacy and therapeutics committee, and then adhered to during subsequent compilations, so comparisons between individual time periods are valid.

The data management associated with antibiograms and the information that can be obtained from these data may be complex and difficult to manage and manipulate. The World Health Organization (WHO) Collaborating Centre for Surveillance of Antimicrobial Resistance has made available a software program that can be downloaded and utilized at no charge to accomplish useful data management (WHO, 2006). The software program (WHONET) has a module that allows a laboratory to input which antimicrobials are reported and what patient care areas are served by the laboratory, and allows alerts for important organisms or phenotypes. A second module permits the entry, retrieval, correction, and printing of clinical reports. Finally, a third module allows a variety of analyses to be generated from the institution data, including but not limited to organism frequencies over time, antimicrobial susceptibility statistics, disk diffusion zone diameter or MIC histograms, antimicrobial scatterplots, and regression curves. Additionally, a software component, BacLink, can be obtained that can upload data from an institution's current system directly into WHONET, avoiding manual data entry. Both WHONET and BacLink software can be downloaded directly from the Internet at no cost (WHO, 2006). The WHONET software is being used by laboratories in more than 90 countries worldwide.

BACTERICIDAL TESTING

Bactericidal testing of antimicrobial agents is infrequently performed in the current clinical laboratory environment. Many tests are labor-intensive and complicated, and until relatively recently, the procedures were not standardized. The three major categories of bactericidal antimicrobial testing are 1) determination of the minimum concentration of an antimicrobial necessary to kill 99.9% of an inoculum of the isolate, that is, the minimum bactericidal or lethal concentration (MBC or MLC); 2) determination of the killing rate (time-kill curve or killing curve) at which an antibiotic kills an inoculum of the isolate; and 3) determination of the highest dilution of the serum of a patient receiving antibiotic(s) necessary to kill 99.9% of an inoculum of isolate, otherwise known as the *serum bactericidal titer (SBT)* or *serum lethal titer*.

Publication of an approved guideline by the CLSI for performance of the MBC has addressed one of the criticisms leveled at the performance of this test—that it is not standardized (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards [NCCLS], 1999a, 1998b). To determine the MBC, serially diluted (on a $\log_2$ basis) antimicrobial in broth is inoculated with a standardized suspension of the isolate of interest, in the same way as when determining the MIC. After incubation at 35°C for 24 hours, those dilutions demonstrating no visible growth are subcultured onto antimicrobial-free agar medium. After incubation, the number of colonies on the agar medium is counted, and the number of viable organisms per milliliter of antimicrobial dilution is calculated. The MBC or MLC is the lowest concentration of the antimicrobial agent that is lethal or bactericidal to the original inoculum, with the endpoint defined as a 99.9% decrease in viable organisms relative to the original inoculum.

Although in theory, one could see how the MBC could be very useful for certain types of infection, determination of the MBC often is not straightforward and can be confounded by several factors. One such factor is the persistence of a small number of organisms of the inoculum ("persisters") that survive the antimicrobial exposure but remain susceptible if retested against the antimicrobial. In the case of cell wall–active agents, such as the β-lactams and vancomycin, at least some may represent cells that are in a dormant or nongrowing phase of the cell cycle. These cells have been termed *indifferent* to the effects of the antibiotic by some authors, rather than *resistant* (Jayaraman, 2008). Second is the paradoxical effect (Eagle phenomenon), which is an unexplained increase in the number of surviving organisms as the concentration of the antimicrobial increases above the MBC. Third is tolerance, a phenomenon in which bactericidal agents have reduced bactericidal activity against a particular strain of a bacterial species. The mechanism behind tolerance currently is not understood, but as pointed out by Jayaraman (2008), *tolerance* on the part of an isolate is clearly different from *indifference*, or dormancy. Some authors have given a more practical (at least for the laboratory) definition of *tolerance* on the part of an isolate, that is, if the MBC/MIC ratio is ≥32, the isolate is defined as tolerant to the test antimicrobial (Sherris, 1986).

In determining the time-kill curve, a single dilution of the test antimicrobial, usually at a concentration at or near what can maximally be achieved in a patient, is inoculated with a standardized inoculum of the isolate in question; then quantitative cultures are performed at regular intervals over a 24-hour period. The amount of bacterial growth evident on quantitative culture at each time period over 24 hours is graphed to generate the time-kill curve. The test essentially determines the rate and duration of killing by the antimicrobial at a specified concentration. This test is very useful in animal models of specific infections and in pharmacologic research, but its labor-intensive nature is one of the factors that make it difficult for laboratories to offer it as a clinical test.

The basic premise of the MBC and the time-kill study can be applied to the serum bactericidal titer, with the addition of serum from the patient receiving antibiotics to the test system. As with the MBC, serum bactericidal tests have been standardized by the CLSI (NCCLS, 1999b). The modification involves obtaining two serum specimens from the patient—a specimen when the antibiotic is at its lowest concentration in the body

("trough" specimen), usually just before the patient receives a dose of the antimicrobial, and a specimen when the antibiotic is at its highest ("peak specimen"), a specified time after a dose of the antimicrobial is given, with the time depending on the route of administration. Serial $\log_2$ dilutions are made of each specimen and are inoculated with a standardized inoculum of the isolate of interest; the dilutions are incubated at 35°C for 24 hours. Similar to the MBC, those dilutions in which no visible growth is seen are subcultured to agar medium for quantitative culture and are reincubated. The **serum bactericidal titer** is the lowest concentration of antimicrobial that results in a 99.9% decrease in viable organisms relative to the original inoculum. The theory behind the SBT is that it takes into account factors such as the effects of absorption and metabolism of the antimicrobial, effects of metabolites or breakdown products of the antimicrobial on the isolate, protein binding of the antimicrobial, and the effects of interaction with any other medications the patient is taking (NCCLS, 1999b). The SBT can provide an assessment of bactericidal activity by determining the antibiotic concentration relative to the MBC, and can allow an assessment of how many half-lives of the antimicrobial bactericidal activity will persist in the patient's serum (NCCLS, 1999b). Finally, if a time-kill study is performed using the patient's serum, the serum bactericidal rate or the rate of killing over time can be determined, or, if the area under the curve is examined, the magnitude and duration of bactericidal activity can be ascertained (NCCLS, 1999b).

In addition to the labor-intensive nature of the bactericidal tests, which a laboratory must address if it is decided that these tests will be performed, another consideration is the clinical relevance of the tests. At various times in the past, bactericidal tests have been recommended as contributory in the prediction of therapeutic success or failure in bacterial endocarditis, osteomyelitis, sepsis in immunocompromised patients, infected prosthetic implants, and infections for which therapeutic guidelines are poorly described (Petersen & Shanholtzer, 1992). Many of the studies supporting these recommendations were performed before standardization of the procedure, and subsequent studies have failed to support the claim that the tests are directly predictive of therapeutic success or failure (Petersen & Shanholtzer, 1992). Despite this, studies that suggest that bactericidal tests have a role in predicting prognosis in specific infections or in infections in special patient populations continue to appear. Liao and colleagues (2007) suggest that for nosocomial infections with multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*, the SBT is useful in determining prognosis and the need for therapeutic alterations. Cahen and colleagues (1993) state that they demonstrated that the SBT is directly predictive of cure or failure in acute pulmonary exacerbation in cystic fibrosis patients. The clinical utility of the tests remains controversial; however, what is not controversial is the resources that the clinical microbiology laboratory must invest to accurately perform these tests. Based on this, the recommendation put forth by both Petersen and Shanholtzer (1992) and the CLSI (NCCLS, 1999a, 1999b) indicates that if consideration is given to requesting this test on the part of the clinical staff, the clinical microbiology laboratory director should be consulted to determine whether the test can be contributory to patient care, what method should be used, and how the results should be interpreted.

In conclusion, the CDC estimates that "more than two million people are infected with antibiotic-resistant organisms, resulting in approximately 23,000 deaths annually" (CDC, 2014). Many more die from other conditions complicated by an antibiotic-resistant infection. MDROs add significant financial burden to patients and families, as well as to the health care system. The yearly cost in the United States' health care system alone due to MDROs has been estimated at nearly $34 billion, along with more than 8 million additional days in the hospital (WHO, 2014a). As the use of antibiotics is the most important factor leading to antibiotic resistance, and as an estimated half of all the antibiotics prescribed are unnecessary or inappropriate (CDC, 2014), this is a critical time in the fight against drug resistance. Therefore, the need is now greater than ever for the most accurate susceptibility testing and reporting, as well as for the implementation of robust infection-control measures and antibiotic stewardship programs, in which the microbiology laboratory plays a key role.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Beuving J, Wolffs PF, Hansen WL, et al: Impact of same-day antibiotic susceptibility testing on time to appropriate antibiotic treatment of patients with bacteraemia: a randomised controlled trial, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 34:831–838, 2015.

This is an interesting study illustrating that rapid AST can significantly reduce the time to receipt of targeted therapy in patients with bacteremia. A clear clinical benefit regarding outcomes was not seen, however, which helps to highlight the fact that more than just a rapid result is needed to significantly impact patient outcomes. Rapid clinical intervention must accompany the rapid result in order for the latter to be significant.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): *Antibiotic resistance threats in the United States*, 2013, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/drugresistance/threat-report-2013/pdf/ar-threats-2013-508.pdf. Accessed on December 12, 2014.

This publication outlines the current epidemiology and statistics of MDRO in the United States. It individually highlights the various MDRO organisms that the CDC considers to be some of the most serious threats to public health.

Doern GV, Brecher SM: The clinical predictive value (or lack thereof) of the results of in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility tests, *J Clin Microbiol* 49(9 Suppl):S11–S14, 2011.

This article discusses the issues surrounding the predictive ability of AST results. The authors ask if resistance always predicts clinical failure and if susceptibility always predicts a favorable response to therapy. The discussion focuses on the complex reasons why AST results are not always clinically predictive.

Kanafani ZA, Perfect JR: Resistance to antifungal agents: mechanisms and clinical impact, *Clin Infect Dis* 120:46, 2008.

A discussion of the molecular mechanisms of in vitro resistance to antifungal agents in yeasts and molds. Clinical resistance, therapeutic failure despite in vitro sensitivity of a fungal pathogen to antifungal agent, is discussed, with a description of the possible mechanisms involved in its occurrence.

Livermore DM, Andrews JM, Hawkey PM, et al: Are susceptibility tests enough, or should laboratories still seek ESBLs and carbapenemases directly?, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 67:1569–1577, 2012.

The authors provide a detailed evaluation of the 2010 CLSI and EUCAST breakpoint changes for the Enterobacteriaceae. The rationale for the change, as well as concerns and consequences for the detection of resistance by current methods are discussed in detail.

Pulido MR, García-Quintanilla M, Martín-Peña R, et al: Progress on the development of rapid methods for antimicrobial susceptibility testing, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 68:2710–2717, 2013.

This review discusses new and emerging technologies being investigated or used for AST testing in clinical microbiology. The authors explain the technology behind the different methods and provide a glimpse of the future for AST testing.

Tzouvelekis LS, Markogiannakis A, Psichogiou M, et al: Carbapenemases in *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and other *Enterobacteriaceae:* an evolving crisis of global dimensions, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 25:682–707, 2012.

This article provides an in-depth assessment of the current state of CRE: its epidemiology, methods of detection, treatment options, infection-control strategies, and future directions. It is a comprehensive review of the global epidemic of CRE today.

REFERENCES

Abele-Horn M, Hommers L, Trabold R, et al: Validation of VITEK 2 version 4.01 software for detection, identification, and classification of glycopeptides-resistant enterococci, *J Clin Microbiol* 71:44, 2006.

Arbique J, Forward K, Haldane D, et al: Comparison of the Velogene Rapid MRSA Screen Assay, Denka MRSA-Screen Assay, and BBL Crystal MRSA ID system for rapid identification of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 5:40, 2001.

Arendrup MC, Cuenca-Estrella M, Lass-Florl C, et al: Breakpoints for antifungal agents: An update from EUCAST focussing on echinocandins against Candida spp. and triazoles against Aspergillus spp. Drug Resist, *Update* 16:81–95, 2013.

Avlami A, Bekris S, Ganteris G, et al: Detection of metallo-beta-lactamase genes in clinical specimens by a commercial multiplex PCR system, *J Microbiol Methods* 83:185–187, 2010.

Baker CN, Stocker SA, Culver DM, et al: Comparison of the E-test to agar dilution, broth microdilution, and agar diffusion susceptibility testing techniques by using a special challenge set of bacteria, *J Clin Microbiol* 533:29, 1991.

Barenfanger J, Drake C, Kacich G: Clinical and financial benefits of rapid bacterial identification and antimicrobial susceptibility, *J Clin Microbiol* 1415:37, 1999.

Bates DW, Goldman L, Lee TH: Contaminant blood cultures and resource utilization. The true consequences of false-positive results, *JAMA* 365:265, 1991.

Bhatti MM, Boonlayangoor S, Beavis KG, et al: Evaluation of FilmArray and Verigene systems for rapid identification of positive blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:3433–3436, 2014.

Birgand G, Ruimy R, Schwarzinger M, et al: Rapid detection of glycopeptide resistant enterococci: impact on decision-making and costs, *Antimicrob Resist Infect Control* 2:30, 2013.

Black JA, Moland ES, Thomson KS: AmpC disk test for detection of plasmid-mediated AmpC β-lactamases in *Enterobacteriaceae* lacking chromosomal AmpC β-lactamses, *J Clin Microbiol* 3110:43, 2005.

Blanc DS, Basset P, Nahimana-Tessemo I, et al: High proportion of wrongly identified Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus carriers by use of a rapid commercial PCR assay due to presence of staphylococcal cassette chromosome element lacking the mecA gene, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:722–724, 2011.

Boyanova L, Kolarov R, Mitov I: Recent evolution of antibiotic resistance in the anaerobes as compared to previous decades, *Anaerobe* 31:4–10, 2015.

Bulik CC, Fauntleroy KA, Jenkins SG, et al: Comparison of meropenem MICs and susceptibilities for carbapenemase-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae isolates by various testing methods, *J Clin Microbiol* 48: 2402–2406, 2010.

Bush K, Jacoby GA: Updated functional classification of beta-lactamases, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 54:969–976, 2010.

Cahen P, Le Bourgeois M, Delacourt C, et al: Serum bactericidal test as a prognostic indicator in acute pulmonary exacerbations of cystic fibrosis, *Pediatrics* 451: 91, 1993.

Carroll KC, Borek AP, Burger C, et al: Evaluation of the BD Phoenix Automated Microbiology System for identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing of staphylococci and enterococci, *J Clin Microbiol* 2072:44, 2006.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Guidance for control of carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* (CRE). 2012 CRE Toolkit. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/hai/organisms/cre/cre-toolkit/. Accessed Nov 6, 2015.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts*, Approved Standard. ed 3, CLSI document M27-A3, Wayne, Pa., 2008a, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of filamentous fungi*, Approved Standard. ed 2, CLSI document M38-A2, Wayne, Pa., 2008b, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing*, 19th Informational Supplement. CLSI document M100-S19, Wayne, Pa., 2009a, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Analysis and presentation of cumulative antimicrobial susceptibility test data*, approved guideline. ed 3, CLSI document M39-A3, Wayne, Pa., 2009b, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Methods for antimicrobial dilution and disk susceptibility testing of infrequently isolated or fastidious bacteria*, Approved guideline. ed 2, CLSI document M45-A2, Wayne, Pa., 2010, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Methods for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of anaerobic bacteria*, Approved standard. ed 8, CLSI document M11-A8, Wayne, Pa., 2012a, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Susceptibility testing of mycobacteria nocardiae, and other aerobic actinomycetes*, Approved standard. ed 2, CLSI document M24-A2, Wayne, Pa., 2012b, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts*, 4th informational supplement. CLSI document M27-S4, Wayne, Pa., 2012c, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Performance standards for antimicrobial disk susceptibility tests*, Approved standard. ed 11, CLSI document M02-A11, Wayne, Pa., 2012d, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Methods for dilution antimicrobial susceptibility tests for bacteria that grow aerobically*; Approved standard. ed 9, CLSI document M07-A9, Wayne, Pa., 2012e, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing*. 24th informational supplement. CLSI document M100-S24, Wayne, Pa., 2014, CLSI.

Cui L, Murakami H, Kuwahara-Arai K, et al: Contribution of a thickened cell wall and its glutamine nonamidated component to the vancomycin resistance expressed by *Staphylococcus aureus* Mu50, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2276:44, 2000.

Cuzon G, Naas T, Bogaerts P, et al: Evaluation of a DNAmicroarray for the rapid detection of extended-spectrum β-lactamases (TEM, SHV and CTX-M), plasmid-mediated cephalosporinases (CMY-2-like, DHA, FOX, ACC-1, ACT/MIR and CMY-1-like/MOX) and carbapenemases (KPC, OXA-48, VIM, IMP and NDM), *J Antimicrob Chemother* 67:1865–1869, 2012.

Dahesh S, Hensler ME, Sorge NMV, et al: Point mutation in the Group B streptococcal *pbp2x* gene conferring decreased susceptibility to β-lactam antibiotics, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2915:52, 2008.

Daikos GL, Petrikkos P, Psichogiou M, et al: Prospective observational study of the impact of VIM-1 metallo-b-lactamase on the outcome of patients with Klebsiella pneumoniae bloodstream infections, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 53:1868–1873, 2009.

Debast SB, Vaessen N, Choudry A, et al: Successful combat of an outbreak due to Clostridium difficile PCR ribotype 027 and recognition of specific risk factors, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 427:15, 2009.

Desjardins M, Delgaty KL, Ramotar K, et al: Prevalence and mechanisms of erthromycin resistance in Group A and Group B *Streptococcus*: implications for reporting susceptibility results, *J Clin Microbiol* 5620:42, 2004.

Dhand A, Sakoulas G: Reduced vancomycin susceptibility among clinical Staphylococcus aureus isolates ("the MIC Creep"): Implications for therapy, *F1000 Medicine Reports* 4:4, 2012.

Doern GV, Vautour R, Gaudet M, et al: Clinical impact of rapid in vitro testing and bacterial identification, *J Clin Microbiol* 1757:32, 1994.

Felten A, Grandry B, Lagrange PH, et al: Evaluation of three techniques for detection of low level methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): a disk diffusion method with cefoxitin and moxalactam, the Vitek 2 system, and the MRSA-Screen latex agglutination test, *J Clin Microbiol* 2766:40, 2002.

Fridkin SK, Edwards JR, Courval JM, et al: The effect of vancomycin and third-generation cephalosporins on the prevalence of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in 126 US adult intensive care units, *Ann Intern Med* 175:135, 2001.

Fridkin SK, Lawton R, Edwards JR, et al: Monitoring antimicrobial use and resistance: comparison with a national benchmark on reducing vancomycin use and vancomycin-resistant enterococci, *Emerg Infect Dis* 702:8, 2002.

Garrigó M, Aragón LM, Alcaide F, et al: Laboratory evaluation of the MB/BacT *Mycobacterium* detection system and the BACTEC MGIT 960 system in comparison with the BACTEC 460TB system for susceptibility testing of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *J Clin Microbiol* 1766:45, 2007.

Gazin M, Paasch F, Goossens H, et al on behalf of the MOSAR WP2 and SATURN WP1 Study Teams: Current trends in culture-based and molecular detection of extended-spectrum-lactamase-harboring and carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:1140–1146, 2012.

Gordon KA, Beach ML, Biedenbach DJ, et al: Antimicrobial susceptibility patterns of beta-hemolytic and viridans group streptococci: report from the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance Program (1997-2000), *Diag Microbiol Infect Dis* 157:43, 2002.

Grim SA, Berger K, Teng C, et al: Timing of susceptibility-based antifungal drug administration in patients with Candida bloodstream infection: correlation with outcomes, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 67:707–714, 2012.

Hillemann D, Rüsche-Gerdes S, Richter E: Evaluation of the Genotype MTBDRplus assay for rifampin and isoniazid susceptibility testing of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* strains and clinical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 2635:45, 2007.

Hindler JF, Stelling J: Analysis and presentation of cumulative antibiograms: a new consensus guideline from the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, *Clin Infect Dis* 867:44, 2007.

Ho PL, Lai EL, Chow KH, et al: Effect of applying the new CLSI imipenem susceptibility breakpoints for Enterobacteriaceae in Hong Kong, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 66:2671–2673, 2011.

Hrabak J, Walkova R, Studentova V, et al: Carbapenemase activity detection by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:3222–3227, 2011.

Huang AM, Newton D, Kunapuli A, et al: Impact of rapid organism identification via matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight combined with antimicrobial stewardship team intervention in adult patients with bacteremia and candidemia, *Clin Infect Dis* 57:1237–1245, 2013.

Huang WL, Chen HY, Kuo YM, et al: Performance assessment of the GenoType MDBDRplus test and DNA sequencing in detection of multi-drug resistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 2520:47, 2009.

Huang TD, Berhin C, Bogaerts P, et al: Comparative evaluation of two chromogenic tests for the rapid detection of carbapenemase in *Enterobacteriaceae* and in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* isolates, *J Clin Microbiol* 58:3060–3063, 2014.

Hussain Z, Stoakes L, Garrow S, et al: Rapid detection of *mecA*-positive and *mecA*-negative coagulase-negative staphylococci by an anti-penicillin binding protein 2a slide latex agglutination test, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:2051–2054, 2000.

Jacobs MR, Felmingham D, Appelbaum PC, et al: The Alexander project, 1998-2000: susceptibility of pathogens from community-acquired respiratory tract infection to commonly used antimicrobial agents, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 229:52, 2003.

Jacoby JA: AmpC β-lactamases, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 22:161–182, 2009.

Jayaraman R: Bacterial persistence: some new insights into an old phenomenon, *J Biosci* 795:33, 2008.

Jenkins SG, Brown SD, Farrell DJ: Trends in antibacterial resistance among *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolated in the USA: update from PROTEKT US Years 1-4, *Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob* 1:7, 2008.

Jenkins SG, Jerris RC: Critical assessment of issues applicable to development of antimicrobial susceptibility testing breakpoints, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:S5–S10, 2011.

Jenkins SG, Schuetz AN: Current concepts in laboratory testing to guide antimicrobial therapy, *Mayo Clin Proc* 87:290–308, 2012.

Jones RN: Method preferences and test accuracy of antimicrobial susceptibility testing: updates from the College of American Pathologists microbiology surveys, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 1285:125, 2001.

Jorgensen JH, Crawford SA, Feibelkorn KR: Susceptibility of *Neisseria meningitidis* to 16 antimicrobial agents and characterization of resistance mechanisms affecting some agents, *J Clin Microbiol* 3162: 43, 2005.

Junkins AD, Lockhart SR, Heilmann KP, et al: BD Phoenix and VITEK 2 detection of mecA-mediated

resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus* with cefoxitin, *J Clin Microbiol* 2897:47, 2009.
Kalokhe AS, Shafiq M, Lee JC, et al: Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis drug susceptibility and molecular diagnostic testing, *Am J Med Sci* 345:143–148, 2013.
Kaase M, Baars B, Freidrich S, et al: Performance of Microscan Walkaway and Vitek 2 for detection of oxacillin resistance in a set of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus isolates with diverse genetic backgrounds, *J Clin Microbiol* 2623:47, 2009.
Kassakian SZ, Mermel LA: Changing epidemiology of infections due to extended spectrum beta-lactamase producing bacteria, *Antimicrob Resist Infect Control* 3:9, 2014.
Kempf M, Bakour S, Flaudrops C, et al: Rapid detection of carbapenem resistance in Acinetobacter baumannii using matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry, *PLoS ONE* 7:e31676, 2012.
Kerremans JJ, Verboom P, Stijnen T, et al: Rapid identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing reduce antibiotic use and accelerate pathogen-directed antibiotic use, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 428:61, 2008.
Kimura K, Suzuki S, Wachino J, et al: First molecular characterization of Group B streptococci with reduced penicillin susceptibility, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2890:52, 2008.
Kipiani M, Mirtskhulava V, Tukvadze N, et al: Significant clinical impact of a rapid molecular diagnostic test (Genotype MTBDRplus assay) to detect multidrug-resistant tuberculosis, *Clin Infect Dis* 59: 1559–1566, 2014.
Koh WJ, Jeon K, Lee NY, et al: Clinical significance of differentiation of Mycobacterium massiliense from Mycobacterium abscessus, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 183:405–410, 2011.
Kumar A, Roberts D, Wood KE, et al: Duration of hypotension before initiation of effective antimicrobial therapy is the critical determinant of survival in human septic shock, *Crit Care Med* 1589:34, 2006.
Labbé AC, Poirier L, Maccannell D, et al: Clostridium difficile infections in a Canadian tertiary care hospital before and during a regional epidemic associated with the BI/NAP1/027 strain, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 3180:52, 2008.
Landman D, Salamera J, Singh M, et al: Accuracy of carbapenem nonsusceptibility for identification of KPC-possessing Enterobacteriaceae by use of the revised CLSI breakpoints, *Clin Microbiol* 49:3931–3933, 2011.
Lascols C, Hackel M, Hujer AM, et al: Using nucleic acid microarrays to perform molecular epidemiology and detect novel β-lactamases: a snapshot of extended-spectrum β-lactamases throughout the world, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:1632–1639, 2012.
Leclercq R, Canton R, Brown D, et al: EUCAST expert rules in antimicrobial susceptibility testing, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 19:141–160, 2013.
Lew W, Pai M, Oxlade O, et al: Initial drug resistance and tuberculosis treatment outcomes: systematic review and meta-analysis, *Ann Intern Med* 123:149, 2008.
Liao CH, Sheng WH, Chen YC, et al: Predictive value of the serum bactericidal test for mortality in patients infected with multidrug-resistant *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *J Infect* 149:55, 2007.
Liesenfeld O, Lehman L, Hunfeld KP, et al: Molecular diagnosis of sepsis: New aspects and recent developments, *Eur J Microbiol Immunol (Bp)* 4:1–25, 2014.
Ligozzi M, Bernini C, Bonora MG, et al: Evaluation of the VITEK 2 system for identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing of medically relevant Gram-positive cocci, *J Clin Microbiol* 1681:40, 2002.
Liu CY, Huang YT, Liao CH, et al: Increasing trends in antimicrobial resistance among clinically important anaerobes and *Bacteroides fragilis* isolates causing nosocomial infections: emerging resistance to carbapenems, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 3161:52, 2008.
Louie L, Matsumura SO, Choi E, et al: Evaluation of three rapid methods for detection of methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*, *J Clin Microbiol* 2170:38, 2000.
Lupo A, Papp-Wallace KM, Sendi P, et al: Non-phenotypic tests to detect and characterize antibiotic resistance mechanisms in Enterobacteriaceae, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 77:179–194, 2013.
Matsen JM: Means to facilitate physician acceptance and use of rapid test results, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 3(6 Suppl):S73, 1985.
McEwan AS, Derome A, Meunier D, et al: Evaluation of the NucliSENS EasyQ KPC assay for detection of Klebsiella pneumoniae carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:1948–1950, 2013.
McWilliams CS, Condon S, Schwartz RM, et al: Incidence of extended-spectrum-β-lactamase-producing Escherichia coli and Klebsiella pneumoniae isolates that test susceptible to cephalosporins and aztreonam by the revised CLSI breakpoints, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:2653–2655, 2014.
Mellmann A, Harmsen D, Cummings CA, et al: Prospective genomic characterization of the German enterohemorrhagic Escherichia coli O104:H4 outbreak by rapid next generation sequencing technology, *PLoS ONE* 6:e22751, 2011.
Miller MB, Meyer H, Rogers E, et al: Comparison of conventional susceptibility testing, penicillin-binding protein 2a latex agglutination testing, and mecA real-time PCR for detection of oxacillin resistance in Staphylococcus aureus and coagulase-negative Staphylococcus, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:3450–3452, 2005.
Moland ES, Hanson ND, Black JA: Prevalence of newer β-lactamases in gram-negative clinical isolates collected in the United States from 2001 to 2002, *J Clin Microbiol* 3318:44, 2006.
Morrissey I, Bouchillon SK, Hackel M, et al: Evaluation of the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute phenotypic confirmatory test to detect the presence of extended-spectrum β-lactamases from 4005 Escherichia coli, Klebsiella oxytoca, Klebsiella pneumoniae and Proteus mirabilis isolates, *J Med Microbiol* 63(Pt 4):556–561, 2014.
Munier GK, Johnson CL, Snyder JW, et al: Positive extended-spectrum-b-lactamase (ESBL) screening results may be due to AmpC b-lactamases more often than to ESBLs, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:673–674, 2010.
National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards: *Methods for determining bactericidal activity of antimicrobial agents; approved guideline. CLSI document M26-A*, Wayne, Pa., 1999a, CLSI.
National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards: *Methodology for the serum bactericidal test; Approved guideline. CLSI document M21-A*, Wayne, Pa., 1999b, CLSI.
National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance (NNIS): System Report, data summary from January 1992 through June 2004, issued October 2004, *Am J Infect Control* 470:32, 2004.
Nguyen MH, Yu VL, Morris AJ, et al: Antimicrobial resistance and clinical outcome of *Bacteroides* bacteremia: findings of a multicenter prospective observational trial, *Clin Infect Dis* 870:30, 2000.
Nikolayevskyy V, Balabanova Y, Simak T, et al: Performance of the Genotype MTBDRplus assay in the diagnosis of tuberculosis and drug resistance in Samara, Russian Federation, *BMC Clin Pathol* 9:2, 2009.
Nordmann P, Poirel L, Dortet L: Rapid detection of carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae, *Emerg Infect Dis* 18:1503–1507, 2012.
Pai H, Kang CI, Byeon JH, et al: Epidemiology and clinical features of bloodstream infections caused by AmpC-type-β-lactamase-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 3720:48, 2004.
Pakyz AL, MacDougall C, Oinonen M, et al: Trends in antibacterial use in US academic health centers: 2002 to 2006, *Arch Intern Med* 2254:168, 2008.
Pakyz AL, Oinonen M, Polk RE: Relationship of carbapenem restriction in 22 university teaching hospitals to carbapenem use and carbapenem-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1983:53, 2009.
Patel M, Waites KB, Moser SA, et al: Prevalence of inducible clindamycin resistance among community- and hospital-associated *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates, *J Clin Microbiol* 2481:44, 2006.
Paterson DL, Ko WC, Von Gottberg A, et al: Outcome of cephalosporin treatment for serious infections due to apparently susceptible organisms producing extended-spectrum β-lactamases: implications for the clinical microbiology laboratory, *J Clin Microbiol* 39: 2206–2212, 2001.
Paterson DL, Bonomo RA: Extended-spectrum β-lactamases: a clinical update, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 657:18, 2005.
Pérez-Pérez FJ, Hanson ND: Detection of plasmid-mediated AmpC beta-lactamase genes in clinical isolates by using multiplex PCR, *J Clin Microbiol* 40:2153–2162, 2002.
Peter-Getzlaff S, Polsfuss S, Poledica M, et al: Detection of AmpC beta-lactamase in Escherichia coli: comparison of three phenotypic confirmation assays and genetic analysis, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:2924–2932, 2011.
Petersen LR, Shanholtzer CJ: Tests for bactericidal effects of antimicrobial agents: technical performance and clinical relevance, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 420:5, 1992.
Pham CD, Reiss E, Hagen F, et al: Passive surveillance for azole-resistant aspergillus fumigatus, United States, 2011-2013, *EID* 20:1498–1503, 2014.
Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Procop GW, et al: Multicenter comparison of the VITEK 2 antifungal susceptibility test with the CLSI broth microdilution reference method for testing amphotericin B, flucytosine, and voriconazole, *J Clin Microbiol* 3522:45, 2007a.
Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Procop GW, et al: Multicenter comparison of the VITEK 2 yeast susceptibility test with the CLSI broth microdilution reference method for testing fluconazole against *Candida* spp, *J Clin Microbiol* 796:45, 2007b.
Pfaller MA, Castanheira M, Lockhart SR, et al: Frequency of decreased susceptibility and resistance to echinocandins among fluconazole-resistant bloodstream isolates of Candida glabrata, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:1199–1203, 2012a.
Pfaller MA, Chaturvedi V, Diekema DJ, et al: Comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne colorimetric antifungal panel with CLSI microdilution for antifungal susceptibility testing of the echinocandins against Candida spp., using new clinical breakpoints and epidemiological cutoff values, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 73:365–368, 2012b.
Polsfuss S, Bloemberg GV, Giger J, et al: Comparison of European Committee on Antimicrobial. Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) and CLSI screening parameters for the detection of extended-spectrum β-lactamase production in clinical Enterobacteriaceae isolates, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 67:159–166, 2012.
Prabhu RM, Piper KE, Baddour LM, et al: Antimicrobial susceptibility patterns among viridans group streptococcal isolates from infective endocarditis patients 1971 to 1986 and 1994 to 2002, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 4463:48, 2004.
Prabhu RM, Piper KE, Litzow MR, et al: Emergence of quinolone resistance among viridans group streptococci isolated from the oropharynx of neutropenic peripheral blood stem cell transplant patients receiving quinolone antimicrobial prophylaxis, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 832:24, 2005.
Riedel S, Neoh KM, Eisinger SW, et al: Comparison of commercial antimicrobial susceptibility test methods for testing of Staphylococcus aureus and Enterococci against vancomycin, daptomycin, and linezolid, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:2216–2222, 2014.
Richter SS, Heilman KP, Beekmann SE, et al: Macrolide-resistant *Streptococcus pyogenes* in the United States, 2002-2003, *Clin Infect Dis* 599:41, 2005.
Richter SS, Howard WJ, Weinstein MP, et al: Multicenter evaluation of the BD Phoenix automated microbiology system for antimicrobial susceptibility testing of *Streptococcus* species, *J Clin Microbiol* 2863:45, 2007.
Rufai SB, Kumar P, Singh A, et al: Comparison of Xpert MTB/RIF with line probe assay for detection of rifampin-monoresistant Mycobacterium tuberculosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:1846–1852, 2014.
Sakoulas G, Gold HS, Venkataraman L, et al: Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: comparison of susceptibility methods and analysis of *mecA*-positive susceptible strains, *J Clin Microbiol* 3946:39, 2001.
Sherris JC: Problems in the in vitro determination of antibiotic tolerance, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 633:30, 1986.
Snyder JW, Munier GK, Johnson CL: Direct comparison of the BD Phoenix with the MicroScan Walkaway System for identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing of *Enterobacteriaceae* and nonfermentative gram-negative organisms, *J Clin Microbiol* 2327:46, 2008.
Simner PJ, Gilmour MW, DeGagne P, et al: Evaluation of five chromogenic agar media and the Rosco Rapid Carb Screen Kit for detection and confirmation of carbapenemase production in Gram-negative bacilli, *J Clin Microbiol* 53:105–112, 2015.
Snydman DR, Jacobus NV, McDermott LA, et al: Update on resistance of Bacteroides fragilis group and related species with special attention to carbapenems 2006-2009, *Anaerobe* 17:147–151, 2011.
Stamper PD, Cai M, Howard T, et al: Clinical validation of the molecular BD GeneOhm StaphSR assay for

direct detection of *Staphylococcus aureus* and methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in positive blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 2191:45, 2007a.
Stamper PD, Cai M, Lema C, et al: Comparison of the BD GeneOhm VanR assay to culture for identification of vancomycin-resistant enterococci in rectal and stool specimens, *J Clin Micro* 3360:45, 2007b.
Stuart JC, Leverstein-van Hall MA, Dutch Working Party on the Detection of Highly Resistant Microorganisms: Guideline for phenotypic screening and confirmation of carbapenemases in Enterobacteriaceae, *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 36:205–210, 2010.
Swenson JM, Williams PP, Kilgore G, et al: Performance of eight methods, including two rapid methods for detection of oxacillin resistance in a challenge set of *Staphylococcus aureus* organisms, *J Clin Microbiol* 3785:39, 2001.
Swenson JM, Anderson KF, Lonsway DR, et al: Accuracy of commercial and reference susceptibility testing methods for detecting vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus*, *J Clin Microbiol* 2013:47, 2009.
Tenover FC, Kalsi RK, Williams PP, et al: Carbapenem resistance in Klebsiella pneumoniae not detected by automated susceptibility testing, *Emerg Infect Dis* 1209:12, 2006.
Tenover FC, Moellering RC: The rationale for revising the clinical and laboratory standards institute vancomycin minimal inhibitory concentration interpretive criteria for *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Clin Infect Dis* 1208:44, 2007.
Tenover FC, Canton R, Kop J, et al: Detection of colonization by carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative Bacilli in patients by use of the Xpert MDRO assay, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:3780–3787, 2013.
Thomson KS, Cornish NE, Hong SG, et al: Comparison of Phoenix and VITEK 2 extended-spectrum-β-lactamase detection tests for analysis of *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella* isolates with well-characterized β-lactamases, *J Clin Microbiol* 2380:45, 2007.
Thomson KS: Extended-spectrum beta-lactamase, AmpC, and carbapenemase issues, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:1019–1025, 2010.
Thomson KS, Robledo IE, Vazquez GJ, et al: *KPC* screening by updated BD Phoenix and Vitek 2 automated systems, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:3386–3387, 2011.
Tomic V, Dowzicky MJ: Regional and global antimicrobial susceptibility among isolates of Streptococcus pneumoniae and Haemophilus influenzae collected as part of the Tigecycline Evaluation and Surveillance Trial (T.E.S.T.) from 2009 to 2012 and comparison with previous years of T.E.S.T. (2004-2008), *Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob* 13:52, 2014.
Tsakris A, Kristo I, Poulou A, et al: Evaluation of boronic acid disk tests for differentiating KPC-possessing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* isolates in the clinical laboratory, *J Clin Microbiol* 362:47, 2009.
Valiquette L, Cossette B, Garant MP, et al: Impact of reduction in the use of high-risk antibiotics on the course of an epidemic of *Clostridium difficile*-associated disease caused by the hypervirulent NAP1/027 strain, *Clin Infect Dis* 45(Suppl 2):S112, 2007.
Walther-Rasmussen J, Høiby N: Class A carbapenemases, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 470:60, 2007.
Wiegand I, Geiss HK, Mack D, et al: Detection of extended-spectrum beta-lactamase among *Enterobacteriaceae* by use of semi-automated microbiology systems and manual detection procedures, *J Clin Microbiol* 1167:45, 2007.
Weisenberg SA, Morgan DJ, Espinal-Witter R, et al: Clinical outcomes of patients with Klebsiella pneumoniae carbapenemase-producing K. pneumonaie after treatment with imipenem or meropenem, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 233:64, 2009.
Wolk DM, Struelens MJ, Pancholi P, et al: Rapid detection of *Staphylococcus aureus* and methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) in wound specimens and blood cultures: multicenter preclinical evaluation of the Cepheid Xpert/SA skin and soft tissue and blood culture assays, *J Clin Microbiol* 823:47, 2009.
World Health Organization (WHO): WHONET Software, 2006. Available at: http://www.who.int/drugresistance/whonetsoftware/en/. Accessed September 21, 2009.
World Health Organization (WHO): *Antimicrobial resistance global report on surveillance*, 2014a. Available at: http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/112642/1/9789241564748_eng.pdf?ua=1. Accessed November 21, 2014.
World Health Organization (WHO): *Global tuberculosis Report 2014*, Geneva, Switzerland, 2014b, WHO Press. Available at: http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/137094/1/9789241564809_eng.pdf?ua=1. Accessed Dec 18, 2014.
Wybo I, Pierard D, Verschraegen I, et al: Third Belgian multicentre survey of antibiotic susceptibility of anaerobic bacteria, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 132:59, 2007.
Zankari E, Hasman H, Kaas RS, et al: Genotyping using whole-genome sequencing is a realistic alternative to surveillance based on phenotypic antimicrobial susceptibility testing, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 68:771–777, 2013.
Zapantis A, Lacy MK, Horvat RT, et al: Nationwide antibiogram analysis using NCCLS M39-A guidelines, *J Clin Microbiol* 2629:43, 2005.
Zarkotou O, Pournaras S, Tselioti P, et al: Predictors of mortality in patients with bloodstream infections caused by KPC-producing *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and impact of appropriate antimicrobial treatment, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 17:1798–1803, 2011.
Zhou X, Arends JP, Kampinga GA, et al: Evaluation of the Xpert vanA/vanB assay using enriched inoculated broths for direct detection of vanB vancomycin-resistant Enterococci, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:4293–4297, 2014.
Zhu LX, Zhang ZW, Liang D, et al: Multiplex asymmetric PCR-based oligonucleotide microarray for detection of drug resistance genes containing single mutations in *Enterobacteriaceae*, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 3707:51, 2007.

CHAPTER 60

SPIROCHETE INFECTIONS

P. Rocco LaSala, Michael Loeffelholz

***TREPONEMA*, 1171**
Classic Treponemal Disease, 1172
Laboratory Diagnosis of Treponematoses, 1175
Treatment of Treponematoses, 1177
Other Treponemal Diseases, 1177

***LEPTOSPIRA*, 1178**
Description, 1178
Epidemiology, 1178
Pathology and Pathogenesis, 1178
Clinical Manifestations, 1178
Laboratory Diagnosis, 1178
Treatment, 1178

***BORRELIA*, 1179**
Lyme and Lyme-Like Diseases, 1179
Relapsing Fever, 1183

AGENTS OF INTESTINAL SPIROCHETOSIS, 1184
Description, 1184
Epidemiology and Clinical Manifestations, 1185
Pathology and Pathogenesis, 1185
Laboratory Diagnosis, 1185
Treatment, 1185

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1185

KEY POINTS

- Human disease caused by spirochetes typically follows a clinical course that reflects three sequential phenomena: (1) early, local proliferation of the organisms at the site of introduction, (2) spirochetemia with systemic dissemination, and (3) persistence of small numbers of microbes at various, often immune, "privileged" sites.
- Direct detection of pathogenic spirochetes is sometimes possible by microbiologic culture, microscopy, or genomic amplification, but diagnosis more often relies upon the demonstration of a patient's serologic response to the offending agent.
- Venereal syphilis is a historic sexually transmitted disease caused by *Treponema pallidum* subspecies *pallidum.*
- In the early stages of disease, venereal syphilis may be diagnosed using direct microscopic visualization.
- Serologic detection of syphilis, by far the most common mode of diagnosis, comprises methods that semiquantitatively measure antibody to various lipoproteins, as well as methods that detect antibody to treponeme-specific antigens. Serologic testing algorithms may begin with a non-treponemal assay, or with a treponeme-specific assay (referred to as the *reverse algorithm*).
- Yaws, endemic syphilis (bejel), and pinta are not sexually transmitted, are endemic to various tropical and Middle Eastern regions, and are caused by *T. pallidum* subsp. *pertenue, T. pallidum* subsp. *endemicum,* and *T. carateum*, respectively.
- Presumptive diagnosis of the endemic treponematoses can sometimes be made on the basis of clinical and epidemiologic data; however, as with venereal syphilis, serologic and direct microscopic techniques may prove useful.
- The most common tick-borne disease in North America and Europe, Lyme disease is caused chiefly by *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu stricto, *Borrelia garinii,* and *Borrelia afzelii.*
- Typical clinical manifestations of Lyme disease include erythema migrans (early localized disease), neuroborreliosis (early disseminated or late-stage disease), and/or Lyme arthritis (late-stage disease).
- Because no single laboratory test performs sufficiently in all clinical scenarios, a diagnosis of Lyme disease must be based on a combination of (1) clinicoepidemiologic characteristics, (2) host serologic response (as measured by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay/immunofluorescence assay and immunoblot), (3) molecular evidence, and/or (4) culture results.
- Epidemic, louse-borne relapsing fever has a worldwide distribution and is caused by *Borrelia recurrentis.*
- Endemic, tick-borne relapsing fever has a limited geographic distribution and is caused by several *Borrelia* species, including *Borrelia hermsi* and *Borrelia turicata.*
- Acute onset of high fever and constitutional symptoms followed by cycles of evanescence and recrudescence is frequently recognized in both forms of relapsing fever.
- Diagnosis of relapsing fever is most often established through the demonstration of spirochetes in peripheral blood smears stained by a Giemsa technique.
- One of the most common zoonotic diseases throughout the world, leptospirosis is caused by various serovars of different species within the genus *Leptospira.*
- Although leptospirosis is usually subclinical or mild and flulike, a small proportion of patients develop severe symptoms related to gastrointestinal/hepatic disease, meningitis, renal failure, and/or myocarditis (also referred to as *Weil's disease*).
- Although *Leptospira* spp. can be cultivated in vitro, diagnosis is usually made by demonstrating seroconversion.
- *Brachyspira aalborgi* and *Brachyspira pilosicoli* have been demonstrated in and isolated from the colon of humans with diarrheal disease, but their pathogenicity has not been firmly established.
- Demonstration of spirochetes along the colonic epithelial cell borders using routine, immunohistochemical, or in situ hybridization microscopy from biopsy material is more commonly performed than cultivation or genomic amplification assays.

Spirochetes ("spiro" means "coiled," and "chaete" means "hair") are slender, spiral-shaped bacteria containing one or more complete rotations that form a helix. They are gram-negative but can be visualized only by darkfield or phase microscopy, silver impregnation, and immunohistochemical stains in tissue sections. Flagella-like organelles called *periplasmic fibrils* or axial filaments are attached near the poles of the bacteria and permit a corkscrew-like motility. Many commensal and nonpathogenic species of spirochetes exist, and human disease is limited primarily to infection by members of three genera: *Treponema*, *Borrelia*, and *Leptospira*. Widely diverse from an epidemiologic standpoint, spirochetes within these genera demonstrate a number of pathogenic, and hence clinical, similarities upon acquisition by humans (Schmid, 1989). Although *Brachyspira* species have been associated with gastrointestinal syndromes, definitive causation of disease by these bacteria has not been universally accepted.

TREPONEMA

The genus *Treponema* contains two species responsible for disease in humans. *Treponema pallidum* is divided into three subspecies, each of which

We gratefully acknowledge the contribution of Mike Smith, Gail Woods, and others who authored this chapter in previous editions.

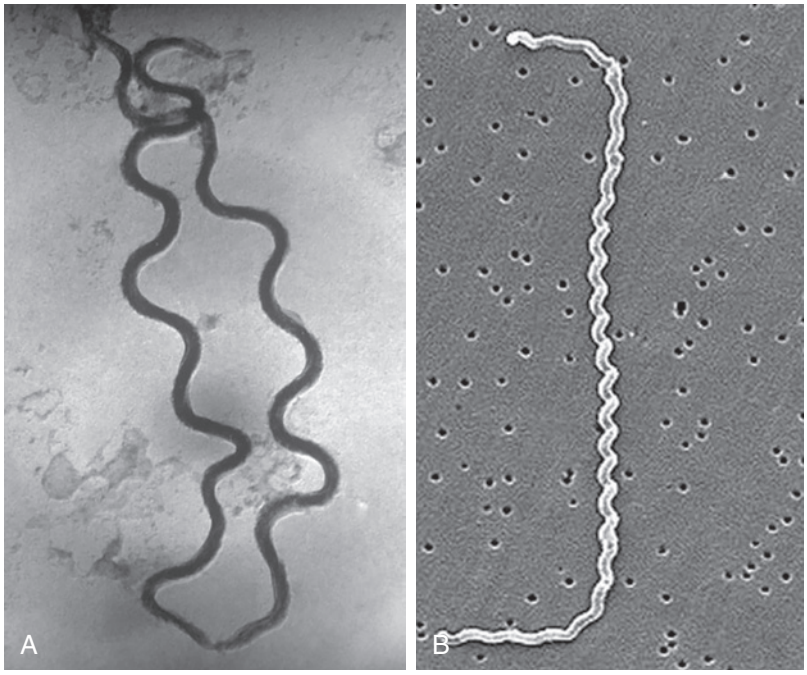


Figure 60-1 Electron photomicrographs of pathogenic spirochetes. A, Two spiral-shaped *Treponema pallidum* bacteria (36,000×); **B,** *Leptospira interrogans* strain RGA bound to a 0.2-µm filter. (CDC/PHIL file photo.)

is the etiologic agent of a distinct clinical entity: subspecies *pallidum*, *pertenue*, and *endemicum* are the etiologic agents of venereal syphilis, yaws, and endemic syphilis (bejel), respectively. Pinta is caused by the second closely related species, *Treponema carateum*. Controversy exists even to this day concerning the origins of the sexually transmitted form of infection. Previously, the debate focused largely on deducing geographic regions of disease occurrence (e.g., Old World vs. New World) based on morphologic skeletal abnormalities of excavated remains that were presumably a result of *T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum* infection. More recent work utilizing phylogenetic molecular methods seems to support the "Columbian" theory, that is, that a form of venereal infection was acquired during exploration of the New World and was subsequently introduced into Europe (Harper et al, 2008b).

CLASSIC TREPONEMAL DISEASE

Syphilis

Description

T. pallidum subsp. *pallidum*, the etiologic agent of venereal syphilis, is a thin (0.2 µm) spirochete, 6 to 20 µm in length with 10 to 13 coils (Fig. 60-1, *A*). The disease appears to have spread rapidly throughout Europe during the 16th century, and its absence in the medical literature prior to this period suggests that the organism was brought from the New World.

Epidemiology

Man is the only natural reservoir for *T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum*. Transmission occurs by direct contact with active lesions, largely through sexual contact. Vertical transmission across the placenta, the second most common mode of infection, may result when a latently infected female becomes pregnant, or when a pregnant woman becomes infected (Wicher & Wicher, 2001). Infection may also rarely be transmitted by nonsexual contact with an active lesion, by transfusion of fresh blood products from an infected person (although organisms do not survive >48 hours under typical blood bank storage conditions), by accidental needlestick, or when infectious specimens are handled in the laboratory.

The incidence of venereal syphilis in the United States declined dramatically with the advent of penicillin following World War II and remained stable until the mid 1980s, when the incidence began to increase once again, presumably as the result of increased intravenous drug use and sexual promiscuity. A continuous decline in infection rates was observed among women of childbearing age throughout the 1990s, and was paralleled by a comparable decrease in the incidence of congenital syphilis (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2004). Following a nadir in disease incidence in 2000 that marked the lowest rate of syphilis in the United States during recorded history, numbers of cases have been steadily increasing, predominantly among men who have sex with men (Fig. 60-2) (CDC, 2012). In 2006, the National Plan to Eliminate Syphilis from the United States was updated to reflect a new target of reducing the incidence of primary and secondary syphilis to <2.2/100,000 population, and of congenital syphilis to <3.9/100,000 live births by 2010 (CDC, 2006). As of 2013, however, the goals remained elusive (5.3 reported cases of primary and secondary syphilis/100,000 population) (CDC, 2014).

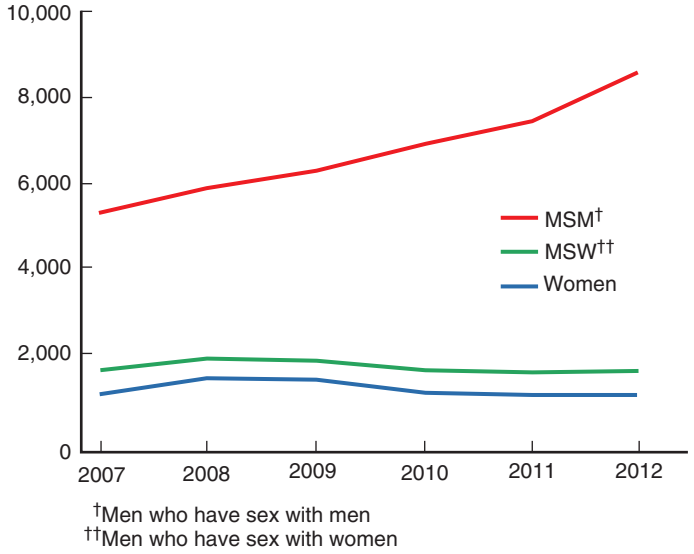


Figure 60-2 Number of syphilis infections in gay and bisexual men: United States, 2007-2012. (From Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: 2014 Sexually transmitted diseases surveillance. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/std/stats12/figures/30.htm. Accessed October 22, 2015.)

Pathogenesis and Pathology

T. pallidum subsp. *pallidum* penetrates an intact mucous membrane or gains access to tissue through abraded skin, multiplies at the inoculation site, and then enters the lymphatic and circulatory system and spreads throughout the body. In laboratory animals, infections have been produced with as few as four spirochetes (Cumberland & Turner, 1949). Clinical lesions appear when a critical mass of organisms is reached locally (≈10^7 spirochetes); therefore, the incubation period is directly related to the size of the initial inoculum and varies from 3 days to 3 months (Magnuson et al, 1956).

The host immunologic response to *T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum* is influenced by the structure of the bacterium. The outer membrane is a phospholipid bilayer that lacks lipopolysaccharide and has few demonstrable protein antigens. The lack of exposed outer membrane proteins as well as the presence of antigenetically unique organisms within *T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum* populations are key factors in the organism's ability to evade opsonization and clearance by macrophages (Cruz et al, 2012).

This delayed and attenuated immune response allows *T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum* to disseminate and to produce a chronic infection. The course of syphilis can be divided into predictable stages. Its primary stage, the development of a chancre, occurs at a median of 3 weeks post-inoculation, although a primary lesion may not develop in all patients. Additionally, because of its painless nature, the lesion may go unnoticed in a proportion of cases. Upon healing within 2 to 8 weeks, the chancre gives rise to the secondary stage. Typically manifesting about 6 weeks after inoculation (range, 2 to 12 weeks), this stage is characterized by widespread dissemination of spirochetes via the bloodstream and the development of mucocutaneous and organ involvement with the presence of constitutional symptoms. Upon resolution of the secondary stage, the infection enters a period of latency, during which time the patient exhibits minimal manifestations of infection. The first year of this stage, termed the *early latent period*, may be characterized by occasional relapses, whereas relapse is not common during the late latent period. Following a period of 10 to 25 years, approximately one third of untreated patients develop tertiary syphilis, the most serious manifestations of which involve the cardiovascular system or the central nervous system (CNS).

Whatever organ is involved or whatever stage of the disease is reached, the histologic hallmark of syphilis is obliterative endarteritis, demonstrating concentric endothelial and fibroblastic proliferations with an associated mononuclear cell infiltrate rich in plasma cells (Fig. 60-3, *A*). Endarteritis results from the binding of spirochetes to endothelial cells via fibronectin molecules that have attached to the surface of the bacteria (Thomas et al, 1986). Treponemes may be demonstrable in tissues with silver impregnation (see Fig. 60-3, *B*) and immunohistochemical stains, particularly during the first and second stages of disease (Martin-Ezquerea et al, 2009). With progression, both the plasma cell infiltrate and the concentration of treponemes lessen in intensity. Although commonplace in the pretreatment era, syphilitic gummas, or large visceral necrotizing granulomas, develop as tertiary-stage manifestations but are now rarely seen (Fargen et al, 2009).

Elucidation of the complete genomic sequence of *T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum* has provided insight into the pathogenesis and molecular epidemiology of this organism (Fraser et al, 1998). Molecular typing tools have identified geographically specific strains (Smajs et al, 2012). Multiple sequences of *T. pallidum* repeat *(tprK)* have been found in patient samples, suggesting the coexistence of multiple strains of *T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum* during infection (Heymans et al, 2009).

Clinical Manifestations

Syphilis is a chronic infection with a multiplicity of expressions, primarily related to the stage at which it manifests. The primary chancre is characteristically ulcerated with raised, firm edges and a smooth base and is notable for absence of an exudate or pain (Fig. 60-4, *A*). Although these are typically solitary, multiple chancres can occur in up to one third of patients. Patients with previous infection can present with atypical lesions, such as a small papule, or may not develop a lesion at all. Regional lymphadenopathy, with moderately enlarged, rubbery, nonsuppurative lymph nodes, is seen in some patients.

Dissemination marks the secondary stage, and patients present with signs and symptoms of a systemic illness. More than 90% develop a rash that begins on the trunk and extremities (although any body surface can be involved) as small macules that progress to papules, and in some patients to pustules, over a period of weeks. The appearance of the rash on the palms and soles is characteristic (see Fig. 60-4, *B*), and enlargement and coalescence of papules produce the pale plaques of condyloma lata (see Fig. 60-4, *C*). Approximately 90% of patients also exhibit generalized lymphadenopathy, and as many as three fourths may suffer fever, malaise, anorexia, arthralgia, pharyngitis, and weight loss. Mucous patches are seen in up to one third of cases. About 40% of persons develop CNS symptoms during this stage, particularly among those coinfected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), although only 1% to 2% present with acute meningitis (Lukehart et al, 1988; CDC, 2007). The remainder may experience headache and meningismus, uveitis, sensorineural hearing loss, and cranial nerve involvement.

The tissue destruction of tertiary syphilis usually becomes evident decades after the primary infection. Cardiovascular syphilis occurs as a result of weakening of the tunica media and results in an aneurysm of the ascending aorta with aortic valve insufficiency and narrowing of the coronary artery ostia. Syphilitic gummas may involve the skin, brain, skeletal system, or mucocutaneous tissues, although any organ can be affected. Both cardiovascular syphilis and syphilitic gummas became much less frequent after the advent of antibiotic treatment. Meningovascular syphilis occurs 5 to 10 years after initial infection and clinically presents as seizures, stroke, and aphasia. Multiple small infarcts due to endarteritis in the CNS are the cause of this form. Parenchymatous neurosyphilis, which presents 15 to 30 years after initial infection, is a degenerative process with loss of neurons and myelinated tracts resulting in a complex of neurologic and psychiatric manifestations, including general paresis, tabes dorsalis, and pupillary abnormalities. Some patients lack clinical signs or symptoms altogether but demonstrate cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) abnormalities such as pleocytosis, increased protein, a reactive Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL) test, or antibody against *T. pallidum* indicating CNS infection.

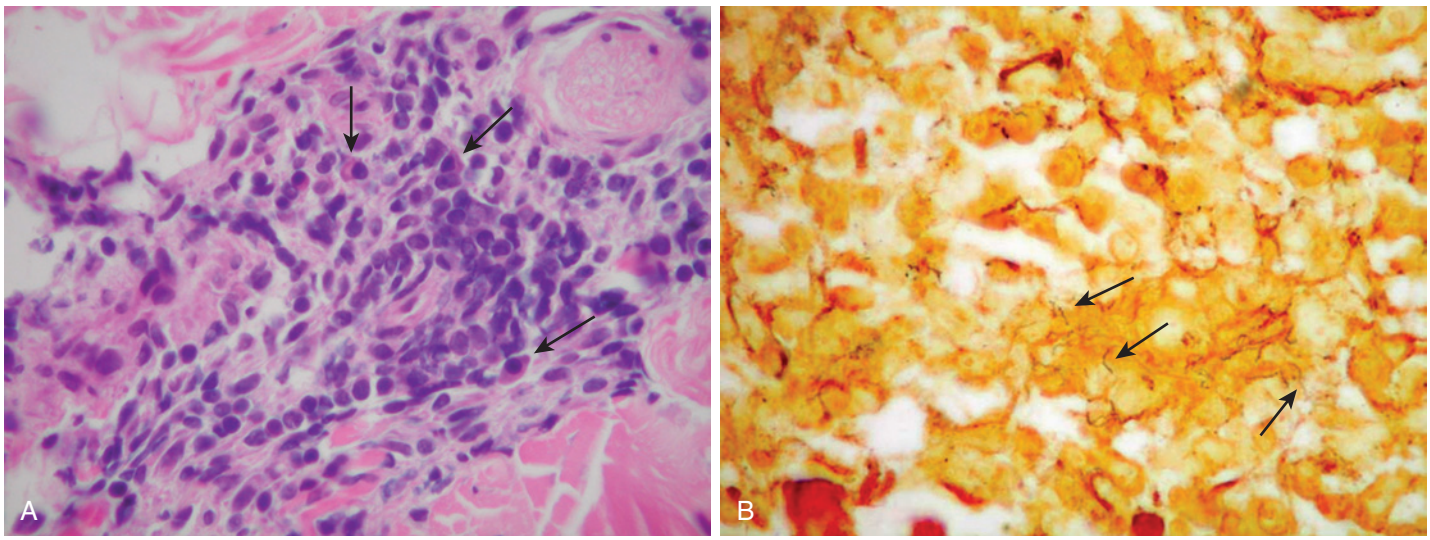


Figure 60-3 **Histologic photomicrographs of a secondary syphilis case. A,** Superficial dermis showing a dense, perivascular lymphomononuclear infiltrate containing many plasma cells *(arrows)* (hematoxylin & eosin [H&E], ≈400×), which was confirmed in **B** to contain numerous argyrophilic spirochetes *(arrows)* (Steiner silver impregnation technique, 400×). Patient was subsequently shown to have a high rapid plasma reagin (RPR) titer.

Figure 60-4 **Clinical manifestations of venereal syphilis. A,** Penile chancre. **B,** Secondary syphilitic lesions involving the palms. **C,** Condylomata lata lesions involving the vulvar and anal region. (CDC/PHIL file photos.)

Congenital syphilis occurs clinically as two forms: an early or infantile form (<2 years of age) and a late form following a period of latency (few years to several decades). Although transplacental passage of spirochetes can occur during any trimester, congenital acquisition during early gestational age results in stillbirth more often than does acquisition during late gestation or parturition (Harter & Bernischke, 1976). As may be expected, congenital transmission is more frequent during the primary, secondary, and early latent periods of maternal infection (Woods, 2009). Necrotizing funisitis, or inflammation of the umbilical cord, is characteristic of congenital syphilis, although it is typically present in only the most severe cases. In the infantile form, a diffuse rash with sloughing of the skin, osteochondritis, and periostitis are characteristic; however, affected newborns may be asymptomatic (Dorfman & Glaser, 1990). Diffuse fibrosis of the liver (hepar lobatum) and lung (pneumonia alba) is also seen. After a latent period, the late form presents in childhood or adulthood with a wide variety of signs and symptoms; however, the triad of interstitial keratitis, Hutchinson's teeth, and eighth nerve deafness is classic. Periostitis, saber shins, and saddle deformity of the nose are also seen frequently.

Syphilis and HIV infection are increasingly seen as coinfections because these diseases share common risk factors and may even potentiate one another. Through several mechanisms, syphilis increases the risk for acquisition and transmission of HIV. The disrupted mucosal barrier at the chancre can facilitate HIV infection and transmission. The inflow of host immune cells to the site of syphilis infection increases the number of targets available for HIV infection. In addition, recruited monocytes express increased amounts of the HIV coreceptor CCR5 (Sheffield et al, 2007). While the clinical presentation of syphilis in HIV-infected persons is usually similar to that in individuals without HIV, cases of more severe primary and secondary lesions, as well as unusual presentations, have been reported (Stevenson & Heath, 2006). Patients with AIDS have a high incidence of eye involvement, with anterior uveitis being the most common manifestation of *T. pallidum* infection in this setting (Stevenson & Heath, 2006). HIV infection status may affect laboratory tests for syphilis, and vice versa. Early syphilis infection is associated with an increase in plasma HIV viral load and a decrease in the CD4 cell count (Buchacz et al, 2004). A multicenter prospective study showed that CSF nontreponemal tests were more likely to remain positive ("serofast") following syphilis therapy in HIV-infected individuals than in HIV-uninfected patients (Marra, 2004a). It remains to be seen, however, if such laboratory evidence of treatment failure is a true reflection of potential clinical relapse. What does seem clear, as evidenced by multiple studies, is that anti-HIV therapy itself improves the likelihood of serologic response following syphilis treatment in HIV-positive patients (Marra et al, 2008; González-López et al, 2009).

Yaws

Yaws (also called *frambesia tropica*, *pian*, *parangi*, *paru*, *buba*, or *bouba*) is a chronic disease caused by *T. pallidum* subsp. *pertenue* and is the most prevalent of the nonvenereal treponematoses. This disease, which has afflicted residents of the tropics since antiquity, is common in rural areas of tropical countries with heavy rainfall. After a decline in the 1950s due to large campaigns to control the treponematoses, the incidence of yaws has increased in some areas (Engelkens et al, 1991a; Antal et al, 2002).

Yaws is contracted chiefly during childhood by direct contact, with breaks in the skin allowing entry of treponemes. Early lesions generally appear about 3 weeks later but may not develop for months. One or several papules appear, most frequently on the lower extremities, and then ulcerate or progress to papillomatous lesions. Numerous treponemes are found in these lesions. Spontaneous resolution is usual; however, relapses preceded by malaise, fever, and generalized lymphadenopathy followed by

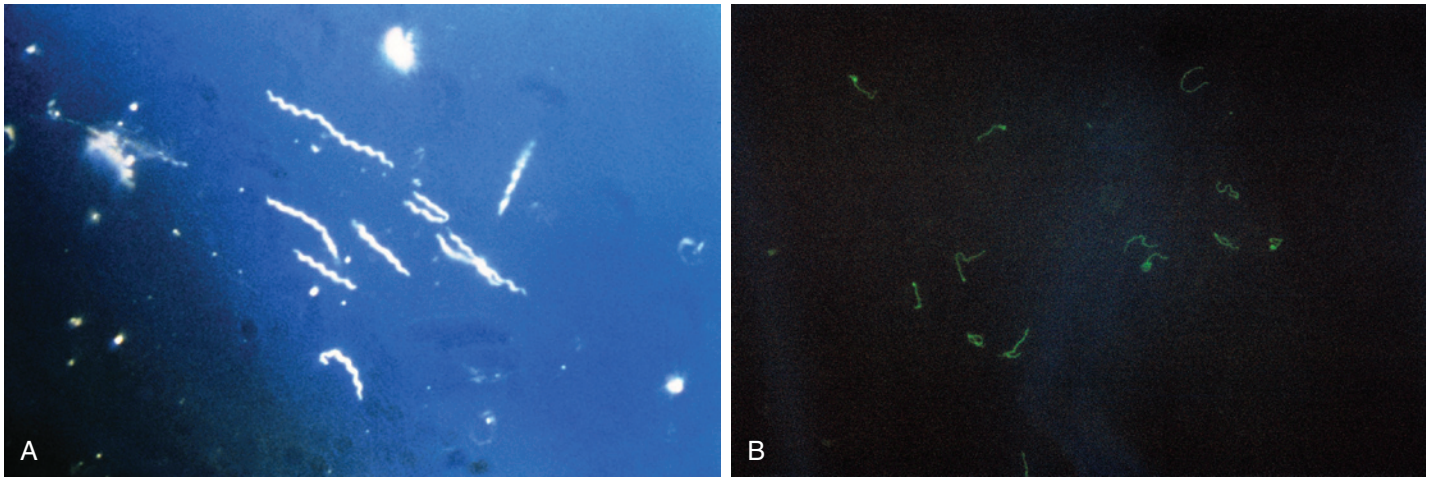


Figure 60-5 **In vitro diagnostic modalities for venereal syphilis detection. A,** Darkfield microscopy technique (400×) reveals the presence of motile spirochetes. **B,** Positive fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS) test for antibody response in patient with syphilis. (CDC/PHIL file photo.)

disseminated skin lesions are common. Most patients enter a period of latency during which no clinical signs or symptoms are evident. For most, the disease shows no additional manifestations; however, approximately 10% develop late yaws, which shows irreversible, destructive lesions of bone, cartilage, soft tissue, and the skin (Engelkens et al, 1991a; Antal et al, 2002). Cardiovascular and CNS lesions similar to those seen in syphilis have been reported to occur (Roman & Roman, 1986).

Endemic Syphilis

Endemic syphilis (bejel) is a nonvenereal chronic infection caused by infection with *T. pallidum* subsp. *endemicum*. The disease is ancient and, although it is no longer as widespread as it once was, still occurs in the Middle East and Africa in hot, dry climates. In Sahelian Africa, the disease has been increasing in prevalence (Engelkens et al, 1991b). Endemic syphilis is transmitted by direct contact with active lesions, contaminated fingers, and eating or drinking utensils. Crowded living conditions and poor hygiene are common associated factors. Children 2 to 15 years of age are primarily infected, although the disease can be found in adults in the same family, and those adults who did not suffer from the disease in childhood can be infected by their children. The inoculum is small and the primary lesions of early endemic syphilis, most frequent on the oropharyngeal mucosa, often are not apparent. Initial clinical manifestations of the disease are usually seen in a secondary stage, with mucous patches, condyloma lata, angular stomatitis, generalized lymphadenopathy, and painful osteoperiostitis. This is followed by a latent period of variable length. The late stage is characterized by tissue destruction of the skin, bones, and cartilage, with a predilection for the nose and palate (so-called *gangosa*), and sometimes laryngeal involvement.

Pinta

Pinta (carate, mal de pinto, azul) is caused by infection with *T. carateum*. The disease is endemic in rural tropical Central and South America and has reappeared in Mexico and Colombia following eradication efforts in the 1950s (Engelkens et al, 1991b). Children younger than 5 years of age are primarily infected. Inoculation is thought to occur via nonvenereal skin or mucous membrane contact. Characterization of the pathogenesis of the disease is difficult because, unlike other treponematoses that are pathogenic in humans, an animal model is unavailable and the treponeme cannot be cultured continuously. A primary papule or plaque develops at the site of inoculation after weeks to months, with or without localized lymphadenopathy. The primary lesion resolves, and several months to years later, disseminated secondary lesions, or pintids, which resemble scaly psoriasiform plaques, appear and remain for long periods or resolve and recur. In late pinta, lesions demonstrate hypopigmentation and skin atrophy or hyperkeratosis, which can persist for life. The skin appears to be the only organ affected in this disease (Antal et al, 2002).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS OF TREPONEMATOSES

Because the etiologic agents of the human treponematoses cannot be isolated easily by routine culture methods, testing for disease generally is completed directly by visualization of the organisms in material from lesions or indirectly by immunologic methods. Consequently, different stages of the treponematoses often require a particular testing modality. In the early stages when lesions are present, highly specific microscopic techniques are used. Upon resolution of lesions, a variety of serologic tests are employed for diagnosis. It is important to remember that none of these laboratory tests is capable of distinguishing between the closely related species and subspecies of pathogenic treponemes, so differentiating between them requires clinical, epidemiologic, and, when possible, genomic information (Harper et al, 2008a).

Darkfield Microscopy

When direct sampling of lesions is possible, such as in primary, secondary, or early congenital syphilis (chancres, mucous patches, or condyloma lata), the lesion should be cleansed with sterile water (no soap or antiseptic) and gently abraded. Pressure is applied, causing serous exudate to collect in the lesion. A drop of the fluid is placed on a slide, and a coverslip is placed over the fluid. The specimen must be examined within ~20 min, as visualization of motility is necessary for definitive identification. Because of their narrow width, treponemes cannot be visualized by conventional light microscopy. Instead, darkfield microscopy is necessary. This technique makes use of a patch stop, which creates the microscopist's "dark field," and a condenser lens that targets the spirochetes with light waves at an oblique angle, some of which are scattered into the objective, giving the appearance of bright organisms in a dark background (Fig. 60-5, *A*). The darkfield examination can be positive several weeks before a positive serologic test and has a sensitivity of 80% in diagnosing syphilis (Larsen et al, 1995). Highly skilled microscopists are required to avoid false positives. Because of possible confusion with commensal treponemes in the mouth, however, it is not recommended that this technique be utilized for oral lesions. Additionally, three *Treponema* spp. that are normal inhabitants of the genital region *(T. phagedensis, T. refringens,* and *T. minutum)* could potentially be confused with *T. pallidum* on darkfield examination. Careful cleaning of the area is important in reducing the likelihood of this occurrence. The characteristic motility of *T. pallidum* is an important feature that distinguishes it from saprophytic spirochetes.

Fluorescence Microscopy

Fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)-labeled antibodies specific for *T. pallidum* can be used for direct detection of treponemes in lesions, obviating the need to observe motility of the bacteria. The test can be applied to tissue fluid that has been dried and fixed to the slide (direct fluorescent antibody [DFA-TP]) or paraffin-embedded tissue sections (direct fluorescent antibody tissue test [DFAT-TP]). Monoclonal antibodies are commercially available and can be used in these tests in place of the older and less specific Reiter treponeme adsorbed polyclonal antibodies obtained from syphilitic rabbits and humans. When used on fluid from fresh lesions, both DFA-TP and DFAT-TP have a sensitivity of approximately 100% (Larsen et al, 1995). Because these tests are specific for the pathogenic treponemes and reduce the risk for laboratory-acquired syphilis, they are preferred for examination of oral lesions.

Immunohistochemical Microscopy

In a manner similar in principle to fluorescence microscopy, monoclonal and polyclonal antibodies with specificities for spirochetes, treponemes, or *T. pallidum* have been used by pathologists for detection in paraffin-embedded tissues (Martin-Ezquerra et al, 2009). In contrast to immunofluorescence, immunohistochemistry does not require the use of expensive fluorescent microscopes. With this technique, antitreponemal antibodies bound to spirochetes in tissue sections are detected after a series of immunologic reactions typically consisting of a primary, biotinylated antibody conjugate with organism specificity followed by an enzyme-conjugated streptavidin complex. After development of the enzyme with an appropriate chromogenic substrate, organisms are highlighted against a pale counterstained background. This allows for easy detection of rare bacteria and affords the capability for histologic localization. The procedure reportedly offers improvement in sensitivity and specificity over silver impregnation stains for the detection of treponemes, but this is largely dependent upon the source of primary antibody.

Nontreponemal Serologic Tests

The nontreponemal assays detect antibodies to lipoprotein material and cardiolipin released from cells damaged by treponemes. As a consequence, they are not specific for *Treponema*. These tests have been used traditionally to screen for disease and to monitor the course of the disease after treatment. Standard tests include the VDRL, rapid plasma reagin (RPR), unheated serum reagin (USR), toluidine red unheated serum (TRUST), and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). All these tests use a phospholipid antigen, some fortified with lecithin and cholesterol. Flocculation is the endpoint for the manual standard tests, whereas absorbance values are calculated spectrophotometrically in the ELISA. Serum is the preferred specimen for each. Heating of the serum to eliminate nonspecific reactions is required in the VDRL, whereas the addition of choline chloride to the RPR and USR eliminates the need for heating, making these popular choices among diagnostic laboratories. Antibody-antigen reactions in the VDRL and USR are assessed using a microscope at 100×, and the addition of charcoal to the RPR and dye to the TRUST makes the reactions macroscopically visible (Fig. 60-6).

Antibodies detected by these tests generally develop 1 to 4 weeks after the appearance of the primary chancre. The time at which the specimen is taken during the primary stage, therefore, will affect assay sensitivity. The titer rises, remains high during the first year of infection, and then gradually declines. The tests will ultimately revert to negative in most patients in the absence of therapy, particularly during the late latent stage. Thus, these tests are general markers of disease activity. False-negative nontreponemal tests may also be associated with very high titers of antibody (prozone phenomenon), which are seen most commonly in secondary syphilis. This condition is easily resolved by diluting the specimen prior to testing. False-positive results may occur with acute illnesses such as hepatitis, other viral infections, and pregnancy; or chronically with the connective tissue diseases (Larsen et al, 1995).

Standard nontreponemal tests afford the capability of semiquantitative reporting by testing serial twofold specimen dilutions (i.e., titers). Follow-up titers are used to determine the efficacy of treatment, with a fourfold decrease in titer considered an adequate response (CDC, 2010). Follow-up testing by the same method is necessary, because titers between different nontreponemal tests cannot be directly compared. Patients treated in early syphilis are more likely to revert to negative than those treated in late syphilis (Brown et al, 1985). In a small minority of patients, nontreponemal tests will remain positive despite adequate therapy—a situation known as the *serofast response*.

Reports have documented various aberrant nontreponemal test results with patients coinfected with HIV and syphilis, including delayed seroconversion; however, seronegative syphilis does not appear to be prevalent in AIDS patients (Flores, 1995). The false-positive rate is reportedly increased in AIDS patients (4% vs. 1% in non-AIDS); however, the increased rate of positivity may be associated with intravenous drug abuse rather than HIV infection itself (Flores, 1995; Larsen et al, 1995; Hernandez-Aguado et al, 1998). False-negative results also occur in AIDS patients with syphilis because of an exaggerated nontreponemal antibody response that occurs in some patients, with the resultant prozone effect (Gourevitch et al, 1993). Furthermore, as mentioned previously, a small number of AIDS patients may experience minimal to no decline in nontreponemal antibody titers despite presumably adequate therapy, although this may be related to the stage at which treatment was initiated rather than HIV coinfection (Larsen et al, 1995). The sensitivity of nontreponemal tests varies based on the disease stage. During primary, secondary, latent, and late syphilis, sensitivity is approximately 75% to 88%, 100%, 88% to 100%, and 71% to 73%, respectively. Specificity varies based on population, but is usually >96% (Table 60-1).

Treponemal Serologic Tests

Treponemal tests detect the presence of antibodies to treponemal antigens and have traditionally been used to confirm a positive nontreponemal

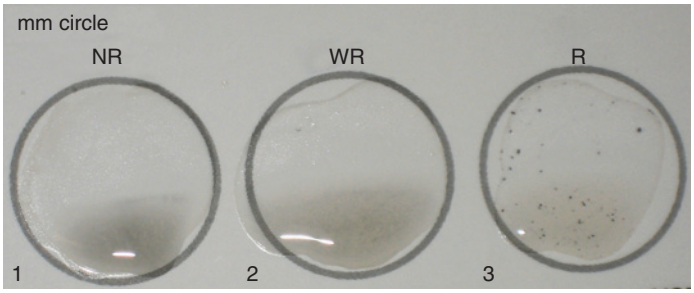


Figure 60-6 Rapid plasmin reagin test card showing nonreactive, weakly reactive, and strongly reactive serum samples (wells 1 to 3) with their respective agglutination patterns.

TABLE 60-1
Sensitivities of Serologic Tests for Syphilis in Different Stages of Disease

Test	STATE OF SYPHILIS, % SENSITIVITY (RANGE)				% Specificity (Range)
	Primary	Secondary	Latent	Late	
Nontreponemal					
VDRL	78 (74-87)	100	95 (88-100)	71 (37-94)	98 (96-99)
RPR	86 (77-100)	100	98 (95-100)	73	98 (93-99)
Treponemal					
FTA-ABS	84 (70-100)	100	100	96	97 (94-100)
MHA-TP	76 (69-90)	100	97 (97-100)	94	99 (98-100)
TPPA	88 (86-100)	100	100	NA	96 (95-100)
IgG ELISA	100	100	100	NA	100
CLIA	98	100	100	100	99

Data from Larsen SA, Steiner BM, Rudolph AH: Laboratory diagnosis and interpretation of tests for syphilis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 8:1, 1995; Sena AC, White BL, Sparling PF: Novel Treponema pallidum serologic tests: a paradigm shift in syphilis screening for the 21st century, *Clin Infect Dis* 51:700, 2010.

CLIA, Chemiluminescent immunoassay; *ELISA,* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *FTA-ABS,* fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption; *MHA-TP,* microhemagglutination assay for antibodies to *Treponema pallidum*; *NA,* not available; *RPR,* rapid plasma reagin; *TPPA, T. pallidum* particle agglutination; *VDRL,* Venereal Disease Research Laboratory.

screening test, or to confirm infection in the face of a negative nontreponemal test in late or latent disease stages, which can occur in up to 30% of patients with tertiary syphilis (Larsen et al, 1995). Recently, treponemal tests have been used more frequently as a primary screening test (CDC, 2008; Loeffelholz & Binnicker, 2012; Marangoni et al, 2009; Sena et al, 2010; Sokolovskiy et al, 2009). The fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS) test is an indirect fluorescent antibody test. It involves the addition of heated patient serum, which has been absorbed with antigen of the nonpathogenic Reiter treponeme for removal of cross-reactive antibodies to a slide on which *T. pallidum* subsp. *pallidum* (Nichols strain) has been fixed, followed by the addition of FITC-labeled antihuman globulin. Visible treponemes on fluorescent microscopy indicate the presence of antibody to the pathogenic treponemal species in the patient's serum (see Fig. 60-5, *B*). Another test, preferred by some laboratories because of its relative simplicity, is the microhemagglutination assay for antibodies to *T. pallidum* (MHA-TP). Absorbed serum is added to sheep red blood cells sensitized with *T. pallidum* (Nichols strain) sonicate in a microtiter tray. Agglutination of red blood cells is produced by syphilis-specific antibody. The *T. pallidum* particle agglutination (TPPA) test is based on the agglutination of gel particles sensitized with sonicated Nichols strain *T. pallidum* antigens. Anti-*T. pallidum* antibodies react with the gel particles to form a smooth mat in microtiter plate wells. In the absence of specific antibodies, the gel particles form a button at the bottom of the well. ELISA and chemilumenescent immunoassay (CLIA) test formats utilizing treponeme-specific antigens (e.g., sonicated lysates, recombinant proteins) have become available for use in clinical laboratories. These offer the advantages of automation for high-volume testing and an objective, numeric output to aide in interpretation. Generally, the MHA-TP, FTA-ABS, and TPPA tests are equivalent, except in the primary stage of syphilis, where the TPPA test shows highest sensitivity, and the FTA-ABS test is slightly more sensitive than MHA-TP (Augenbraun et al, 1998; Sena et al, 2010). IgG ELISA and CLIA formats are at least as sensitive and specific as the traditional treponemal tests. Importantly, they show improved sensitivity during the primary stage of syphilis (Sena et al, 2010). Sensitivities and specificities of the various nontreponemal and treponemal serologic tests are summarized in Table 60-1 (Larsen et al, 1995).

Treponemal-specific antibody develops in primary syphilis and persists indefinitely in most patients, although as many as 20% may eventually serorevert (Romanowski et al, 1991). AIDS patients have shown a greater tendency to revert to seronegativity following treatment (Haas et al, 1990). The FTA-ABS usually is the first test to become positive, followed by the MHA-TP, and then the nontreponemal tests shortly thereafter. False-positive FTA-ABS results occur in ≈1% to 3% of patients, most often in older adults, in persons with connective tissue disease, and in those infected with related organisms, such as *Borrelia* spp. (Larsen et al, 1995). The frequency of false-positive results with the MHA-TP is reportedly lower than with the FTA-ABS test and TPPA (Larsen et al, 1995; Sena et al, 2010).

Because of the advantages offered by their automated formats, IgG ELISAs and CLIAs have been implemented as primary screening assays in some laboratories in the United States (the "reverse algorithm") (CDC, 2008; Loeffelholz & Binnicker, 2012) and Europe (Marangoni et al, 2009; Sokolovskiy et al, 2009). Because these tests do not distinguish past from active infection, follow-up testing for positive results includes semiquantitative nontreponemal tests. As with all immunoassays, treponemal ELISAs and CLIAs will produce occasional false-positive results. The proportion of false positives relative to all positive results varies depending on the patient population tested (CDC, 2011b). When follow-up RPR is nonreactive, further testing using a traditional treponemal assay is usually necessary. ELISA and CLIA formats generate a numeric value, the strength of which can be used with high accuracy to predict when the second treponemal assay will be positive, thereby reducing unnecessary follow-up testing (Loeffelholz et al, 2011; Yen-Lieberman et al, 2011).

Immunoassays with IgM-specific detection capability are also available and may have some utility in the diagnosis of congenital syphilis and primary infection (Stoll et al, 1993; Larsen & Johnson, 1998; Sena et al, 2010). Finally, several rapid, point-of-care assays that incorporate treponemal or nontreponemal antigens have been described (Greer & Wendel, 2008). Their utility lies chiefly in areas with high prevalence rates and low likelihood of patient follow-up, where patients with positive results can be treated presumptively at the time of testing.

More highly complex tests, such as the immunoblot and the PCR, are available in some reference laboratories. The immunoblot has been integrated into the diagnosis of congenital syphilis or as confirmation for treponemal-specific antibody screening by some laboratories (Larsen et al, 1995; Wang & Li, 2009). PCR may be useful in the diagnosis of primary infection, when serologic tests are often still negative (Gayet-Agaron, 2013). PCR has been advocated for the diagnosis of neurosyphilis, particularly in AIDS patients, although some studies have not demonstrated advantages over currently used methods (Marra et al, 1996). Neither immunoblot nor PCR is used extensively in the diagnostic setting, as standardization remains poor (Wicher et al, 1999).

Serologic screening for syphilis requires the use of particular specimens and/or tests, depending on the population and/or disease manifestation. For example, in congenital syphilis screening, antepartum maternal serum is the ideal specimen, and all women should be tested at least once during pregnancy (U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, 2009). In high prevalence areas or among women with potential risk factors, repeat testing may be indicated in later trimesters. Confirmation of congenital syphilis, however, may require a combination of clinical and radiologic examinations, placental analysis, and testing of neonatal serum. The latter is typically performed semiquantitatively using nontreponemal tests, and is compared with maternal serologic titer to determine the source of the antibody (i.e., to exclude transplacentally derived maternal antibody). Another example is the diagnosis of neurosyphilis, which requires a positive serum treponemal test in addition to a positive VDRL on CSF or some other CSF abnormality (e.g., pleocytosis, elevated protein level) (CDC, 2002). The VDRL applied to CSF is highly specific for the diagnosis of neurosyphilis but is also insensitive. It is negative in 22% to 69% of patients with active neurosyphilis, and its sensitivity in inactive neurosyphilis may be as low as 10% (MacLean & Luger, 1996). By contrast, the CSF FTA-ABS is reported to have high sensitivity and negative predictive value for neurosyphilis, so some experts advocate using this as a means of excluding the diagnosis (Marra et al, 2004b). Its low specificity limits its positive predictive value, however.

TREATMENT OF TREPONEMATOSES

T. pallidum subspecies and *T. carateum* are uniformly susceptible to penicillin and other β-lactam antibiotics. Treatment for primary, secondary, and early latent syphilis is a single intramuscular injection of benzathine penicillin G. The dosage and length of treatment depend on the stage of infection (CDC, 2010). Yaws, pinta, and endemic syphilis are treated with the same antibiotic, although often at a lower dose (Engelkens et al, 1991a, 1991b). Household contacts of patients with the latter three diseases usually are also treated. For patients who are allergic to penicillin, doxycycline or tetracycline may be used. A pronounced worsening in clinical course, termed the *Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction*, may be seen upon treatment of venereal syphilis patients, although symptoms frequently are not as severe as in treatment of relapsing fever spirochetes (Griffin, 1998). For late latent syphilis or syphilis of unknown duration, benzathine penicillin G is given in multiple doses in a course of several weeks. Stage of disease does not affect treatment for yaws, pinta, or endemic syphilis (Engelkens et al, 1991a, 1991b). A 10- to 14-day course of high-dose intravenous aqueous penicillin G is indicated for neurosyphilis and congenital syphilis (CDC, 2010). For patients coinfected with HIV and *T. pallidum*, current CDC guidelines do not recommend any significant deviation in therapy (CDC, 2010). Indeed, prospective studies have failed to show any benefit of "enhanced" or alternative therapies for early syphilis and neurosyphilis, respectively, among HIV-infected persons (Rolfs et al, 1997; Marra et al, 2000). On the other hand, some authorities suggest that, given a propensity to develop neurosyphilis even in the face of treatment for primary syphilis, AIDS patients should be treated with higher doses of penicillin (Musher, 1991).

OTHER TREPONEMAL DISEASES

Description

A number of spirochetes belonging to the treponeme molecular group-1, previously referred to as *pathogen-related oral spirochetes*, and various species of *Treponema* (e.g., *Treponema denticola*, *Treponema socranski*) have been recovered with increased frequency and in higher numbers from the gingiva of patients with ulcerative gingivitis and chronic periodontitis compared with patients with healthy gingiva (Riviere et al, 1995, 1996; Loesche & Grossman, 2001). Using very sensitive nucleic acid amplification coupled with electrospray ionization mass spectrometry analysis, *Treponema denticola* genes have also been reported in high proportions of patients undergoing prosthetic joint revisions, the significance of which remains to be determined (Jacovides et al, 2012). Although originally thought to resemble *T. pallidum* on the basis of immuno–cross-reactivity and in vitro invasive properties, these putative pathogens are rather

genetically heterogeneous and only distantly related to *T. pallidum* (Choi et al, 1996; Riviere et al, 1999).

Pathogenesis

A definitive causal relationship between the spirochetes and these diseases has not been firmly established; however, their presence in significant numbers, more commonly in diseased than in healthy tissue, suggests at least an association with gingivitis/periodontitis. Because a number of other nontreponemal bacterial genera (e.g., *Prevotella*, *Actinobacillus*, *Porphyromonas*) have also been associated with these clinical manifestations, research continues as to whether culpability belongs to specific virulent organisms among them or rather to the overall diversity of organisms contained within the plaque biofilm (Loesche & Grossman, 2001).

Diagnosis

As with the commensal species of *Treponema* found in the genital area, some oral *Treponema* species can be cultured under strict anaerobic conditions using a variety of specialized, enriched broth media (Choi et al, 1996; Riviere et al, 1999). Other species, including most of those associated with periodontal disease, have not been cultured in vitro (Loesche & Grossman, 2001). These organisms have been detected with monoclonal antibodies against *T. pallidum*, with which they cross-react. Other investigators have employed a variety of genetic amplification tools in an effort to identify and characterize them (Paster et al, 2001; Hutter et al, 2003). These "molecular expeditions" are conducted by using primers that target conserved bacterial sequences and either PCR to amplify ribosomal (rRNA) genes or reverse-transcriptase PCR to amplify the rRNA itself. Resultant products can then be cloned in *Escherichia coli* and sequenced to determine phylogenetic relationships.

Treatment

For years, treatment has been aimed primarily at reducing the overall bacterial burden by removing the plaque biofilm, both above and below the gumline, through physical manipulation (e.g., surgical debridement). Recently, the addition of various antimicrobial regimens, including systemic antibiotics and locally applied agents, has been shown to be a potentially beneficial adjunct (Loesche & Grossman, 2001).

LEPTOSPIRA

DESCRIPTION

The genus *Leptospira* is composed of at least 20 genomic species, many containing both pathogenic and nonpathogenic strains, and more than 260 serovars (Ko et al, 2009; Brenner, 1999). Previously, *Leptospira* was divided into only three species, *L. interrogans* (pathogenic), *L. biflexa* (nonpathogenic), and *L. parva* (nonpathogenic), based on biochemical properties. However, it has become evident that antigenic properties and pathogenic potential are not consistently predictive of genetic relatedness (Levett, 2001; Ko et al, 2009). Leptospires are members of the phylum *Spirochaetes* and exhibit tightly coiled forms that measure 0.1 µm in width by 6 to 20 µm in length and demonstrate spinning motility. Unique among the pathogenic spirochetes described in this chapter, leptospires have a characteristic "hook-like" or "question-mark" appearance by electron microscopy (see Fig. 60-1, *B*) and have the ability to exist as free-living organisms in alkaline fresh water and moist soil.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Leptospirosis is perhaps the most widespread global zoonosis; and although it was identified nearly 100 years ago, it is still considered an important emerging disease. Individual serovars show geographic preferences, as well as particular ecologic niches. The organism is carried by many rodents and feral and domestic animals; however, murids are among the most frequent reservoirs and serve as an important source of infection in man. Reservoir hosts harbor high concentrations of leptospires in renal tubules without significant untoward effect, and shed high numbers in their urine. Contact with urine-contaminated water or soil followed by entry of bacteria through cuts or mucosal surfaces is a frequent mode of acquisition. Some occupations (e.g., miners, farmers and field workers, veterinarians, fish farmers, sewage workers) and recreational pursuits (e.g., camping near or swimming in infected waterways) increase exposure risk. The incidence in the United States is 40 to 120 cases per year with <1 hospitalization per 1 million population (Traxler et al, 2014); however, the disease is probably significantly underreported (Farr, 1995).

PATHOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

Upon entry, leptospires quickly gain access to the bloodstream and disseminate widely to sites such as the CNS, eye, liver, kidneys, lungs, and/or other viscera. Damage to endothelium in infected tissues may result in local ischemia, hemorrhage, and proinflammatory cytokine upsurge, potentially leading to end-organ (e.g., hepatocellular, renal tubular, alveolar) damage (Ko et al, 2009). The liver exhibits a characteristic yellow-green color, but histologic changes are nonspecific and include ballooning degeneration, acidophilic bodies, regeneration, and cholestasis; leptospires can be found in around 25% of cases (Dooley & Ishak, 1976). Interstitial nephritis, necrosis of proximal tubules, and granular or hyaline casts have been described in renal pathology, with intratubular leptospires present in ~65% of cases (Arean, 1962). Pulmonary findings include congestion and edema, alveolar hemorrhage, pleural effusion, and occasional hyaline membrane formation (Arean, 1962; Ramachandran & Perera, 1977). Myocarditis, meningitis/encephalitis, and myositis may also be seen (Arean, 1962). The specific mechanisms for endothelial, hepatic, and renal damage are unknown but are likely immune mediated.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Typically, infection with leptospires is subclinical or manifests as a mild, influenza-like illness (anicteric form) 2 to 20 days following organism acquisition. Symptomatic cases are often biphasic, characterized initially by the abrupt onset of nonspecific symptoms such as chills, fever, headache, myalgia, back pain, abdominal pain, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting. This phase lasts 4 to 7 days and is marked by bacteremia with systemic dissemination. Following a short remission of several days, the immune phase begins, which is characterized by the appearance of antibodies to the organism, uveitis, rash, and hepatic and renal damage. As many as one half of patients have clinical signs of meningitis and a CSF pleocytosis during this second phase of illness. A more severe monophasic form of disease (called the icteric form or Weil's disease) also affects a minority of patients. This is characterized by fever, jaundice, and bleeding, followed by oliguric renal failure, shock, and myocarditis. Mortality has been reported to be 5% to 10% in Weil's disease (Edwards & Olmm, 1960; Arean, 1962; Levett, 2001).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Although not commonly performed in diagnostic laboratories, leptospires can be isolated from CSF, blood, and tissues early in the bacteremic phase (first 10 days) and from urine during the immune phase (second week to up to 30 days). Culture requires a specialized medium (e.g. Fletcher's or Ellinghausen-McCullough-Johnson-Harris) and prolonged incubation at 25° to 30° C. Leptospires growing below the surface of the medium may be detected by darkfield microscopic examination in which characteristic spinning leptospires with hooked ends are visualized.

The majority of leptospirosis cases are diagnosed serologically. Agglutinating antibodies appear during the first week of illness, peak at around 3 to 4 weeks, and may persist for years. Antibodies can be detected using bacterial antigens by a macroscopic or microscopic agglutination test, a hemagglutination test, or ELISA testing. The microscopic agglutination test, which employs antigen from live bacteria, is the established serologic reference method. A modified dipstick immunoassay that detects *Leptospira*-specific antibodies has been used with success in settings with minimal laboratory facilities (Gussenhoven et al, 1997; Yersin et al, 1999). Molecular methods, including hybridization techniques and PCR, have also been used to detect leptospiral DNA in infected patients but are not readily available in most clinical laboratories (Vinetz et al, 1996; Levett, 2001).

TREATMENT

Severe disease requires aqueous penicillin G or ampicillin given intravenously, and less severe disease can be treated with oral ampicillin, amoxicillin, or doxycycline. Prophylaxis with doxycycline provides protection for individuals in high-exposure environments (Farr, 1995). Immunization of domestic livestock and pets has reduced the danger of infection from these animals to high-risk populations such as veterinarians and farmers. Risk is not completely eliminated, as infection has been shown to occur in immunized animals with successful transmission of the agent to humans (Feigin et al, 1973).

BORRELIA

The genus *Borrelia* contains several species that form two phylogenetic clades: the Lyme borreliosis group (or *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu lato [s.l.]) and the relapsing fever group. The former has been divided into multiple genospecies by molecular analyses, three of which are clearly associated with human disease: *B. burgdorferi* sensu stricto (s.s.), *Borrelia garinii*, and *Borrelia afzelii*. The relapsing fever group contains many species that can be isolated from argasid (soft) ticks (e.g., *Borrelia hermsii*, *Borrelia turicatae*), ixodid (hard) ticks (e.g., *Borrelia lonestari*, *Borrelia miyamotoi*), and the human body louse *(Borrelia recurrentis)*. Members of the *Borrelia* genus are helical bacteria ranging in size from 5 to 30 µm long by 0.2 to 0.5 µm wide; are actively motile, containing 7 to 22 periplasmic flagella; and multiply by binary fission. Unlike *Treponema* spp., *Borrelia* exhibit a multitude of immunogenic proteins on their outer membrane surfaces, and many species can be cultivated in/on artificial media. Moreover, the intricacies of the *Borrelia* genome, with its 910-kB linear chromosome and 21 linear and circular plasmids, render it a more genetically complex genus than *Treponema* (Brisson et al, 2012).

What follows is a description of the two major clinical disease forms of human borreliosis, both of which are vector-borne. As a result, they must often be considered, both from an epidemiologic and from a clinical standpoint, in conjunction with other infectious agents transmitted by similar or identical vectors. Examples include the flaviviral agents of tick-borne encephalitis and various bacteria of the *Rickettsiaceae*, *Ehrlichiaceae*, and *Francisellaceae* families, as well as the protist *Babesia microti*. Clinical and diagnostic information related to these and other vector-borne diseases may be found elsewhere in this volume.

LYME AND LYME-LIKE DISEASES

The most common tick-borne illness in North America and Europe today (Bacon et al, 2008), Lyme disease (Lyme borreliosis) was so named during the 1970s following an epidemic of oligoarticular arthritis encompassing several communities in eastern Connecticut, chief among them the town of Old Lyme (Steere et al, 1977a, 1977b). Epidemiologic inquiry quickly established an association between Lyme disease (then referred to as *Lyme arthritis*) and the hard tick *Ixodes scapularis* (formerly *Ixodes dammini*) (Steere et al, 1978). Within 4 years, Burgdorfer and colleagues had successfully (1) isolated a novel spirochete species from an *Ixodes* tick sp. collected in New York, (2) reproduced the characteristic primary dermal lesions of Lyme disease in tick-fed rabbit models, and (3) demonstrated seroreactivity to antigens of this novel spirochete both in the rabbit model and in convalescent sera from human cases (Burgdorfer et al, 1982), thus fulfilling a contemporary "immunologic" variation of Koch's postulates (Fredricks & Relman, 1996). The implicated organism was subsequently recognized as a member of the genus *Borrelia* and named *B. burgdorferi* in recognition of its discoverer. In retrospect, different aspects of the multisystem inflammatory ailment now commonly known as Lyme disease had been recognized and described both in Europe (Afzelius, 1910; Bannwarth, 1941) and in the United States (Scrimenti, 1970) prior to the epidemic in Connecticut. Yet the present body of knowledge pertaining to Lyme borreliosis can be attributed largely to the establishment and identification of its infectious origin spawned by the New England outbreak.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis

A total of 18 different genospecies of *Borrelia* that form the Lyme borreliosis group have been characterized (Stanek & Reiter, 2011). The well-established human pathogens include *B. burgdorferi* s.s., which causes Lyme disease in North America, Europe, and Asia, and *B. garinii*, *B. afzelii*, *B. spielmanii*, and *B. bavariensis*, which cause similar but subtly different illnesses in Europe and/or Asia (Stanek et al, 2012; Stanek & Reiter, 2011). Other *Borrelia burgdorferi* s.l. species have been isolated from a variety of geographic locations and both vertebrate and invertebrate hosts, yet their role as etiologic agents of human disease remains in various stages of elucidation (Oliver et al, 2008; Rudenko et al, 2011).

In the United States, the incidence of Lyme disease varies with the geographic distribution and prevalence of causative *Borrelia* spp., which in turn are regionally dependent on natural transmission cycles and the number, type, and density of tick vectors, animal reservoirs, and incidental hosts. Disease onset exhibits a seasonal peak, which parallels the questing periods of the predominant tick vector in a given region (Falco et al, 1999). Nearly 30,000 cases are passively reported each year in the United States, although a recent CDC report that examined test results performed during 2008 from seven large commercial laboratories suggests that actual annual incidence may exceed 240,000 cases (Hinckley et al, 2014). The vast majority of cases occur in the Northeast, Upper Midwest, and Northwest regions where *B. burgdorferi* s.s. is endemic. Here, incidence rates vary from 10 to 100 cases/100,000 population (Fig. 60-7). The relative lower incidence observed in the Northwest can be explained by different feeding habits of the two primary tick vectors there: *I. spinipalpis*, which maintains enzootic transmission but seldom feeds on or transmits to humans, and the Western black-legged tick, *I. pacificus* (Fig. 60-8, *A*), which more commonly feeds on humans but plays little role in the enzootic cycle (and hence is rarely infected) (Girard et al, 2009). In the Midwest and Northeast, the black-legged tick (or "deer tick"), *I. scapularis* (see Fig. 60-8, *B*),

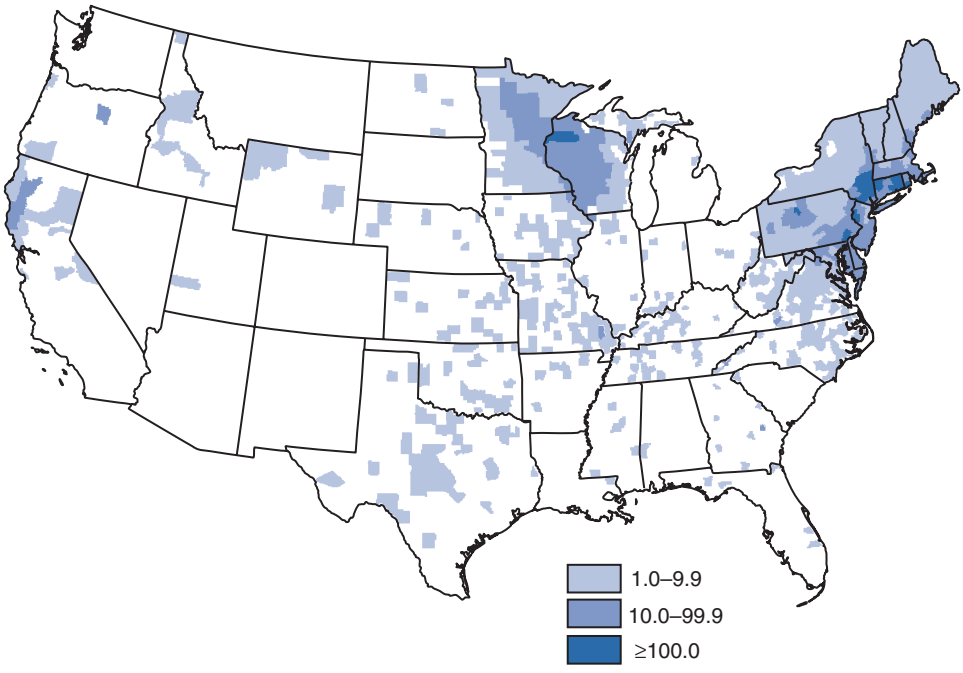


Figure 60-7 Average rate (per 100,000 population) of Lyme disease by county of residence—United States, 1998-2006. (From Bacon RM, Kugeler KJ, Mead PS: Surveillance for Lyme disease—United States, 1992-2006, *MMWR Surveill Summ* 57:1–9, 2008.)

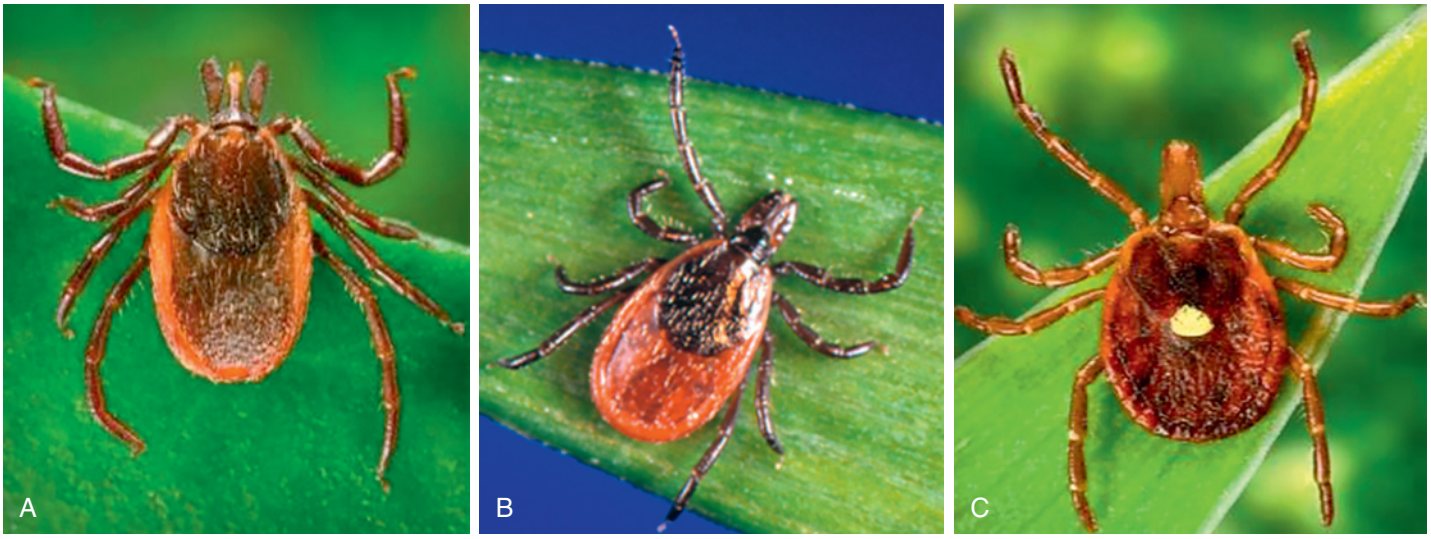


Figure 60-8 **Hard-tick vectors of *Borrelia* in the United States. A,** Adult female, Western black-legged tick, *Ixodes pacificus*. **B,** Adult female, black-legged tick (or "deer tick"), *Ixodes scapularis*. **C,** Adult female, lone star tick, *Amblyomma americanum*. (Courtesy James Gathany, CDC/PHIL file photos.)

serves both these roles. Its promiscuous feeding habits permit it to transmit *B. burgdorferi* s.s. between primary reservoir hosts (the white-footed mouse) as well as to humans. A number of recent studies report an expansion of *I. scapularis* geographic distribution, some with concomitant increases in *B. burgdorferi* s.s isolation and/or Lyme disease rates (Pepin et al, 2012; Wang et al, 2014; Brinkerhoff et al, 2014). In Europe and Asia, the most important tick vectors include *I. ricinus* (sheep tick) and *I. persulcatus*, respectively, and primary animal reservoirs for *B. afzelii* and *B. garinii* comprise small rodents, voles, and/or various avian species (Parola & Raoult, 2001).

Other important epidemiologic factors contributing to transmission dynamics of *B. burgdorferi* s.l. and incidence of Lyme disease include the density and infection rate of local vectors, the abundance and infectivity of reservoir hosts, and the likelihood and duration of human exposure to tick vectors (Parola & Raoult, 2001). Amplification hosts, such as the white-tailed deer in the Northeastern United States, may also increase vector population density, thereby indirectly affecting disease rates regionally (Steere, 2005). Another key transmission variable relates to the developmental stage of the tick and its duration of attachment during feeding. Hard-tick life cycles consist of three stages (called *instars*)—larvae, nymphs, and adults. Each instar requires a single blood meal before molting to the next stage (or ovipositing, in the case of adult females). Because *B. burgdorferi* s.l. is not efficiently transmitted vertically in *Ixodes* spp., larvae acquire the spirochete from an infected host upon feeding and, hence, play no role in human transmission (Rollend et al, 2013). Rather, only nymphal and adult forms infected during a prior blood meal may transmit the spirochete to humans. Because nymphs are small and likely to go unrecognized while attached, they are believed to account for the greatest number of human infections (Falco et al, 1999; Nadelman et al, 2001). The process for tick transmission is most efficient with feeding durations exceeding 24 to 48 hours (Piesman et al, 1987; Hojgaard et al, 2008), yet more rapid transmission has been documented (Cook, 2014).

As with *T. pallidum*, several complete genome sequences of *B. burgdorferi* s.l. have been characterized and compared (Fraser et al, 1997; Glöckner et al, 2006), revealing some fairly conserved genes important in survival, transmission, and virulence as well as some biosynthetic gaps. The former include a group of plasmid-encoded outer surface proteins (Osp A–F), which are differentially expressed in vector and mammal environments and are highly immune-stimulatory (de Silva & Fikrig, 1997; Porcella & Schwan, 2001). The lipoprotein VlsE (for "variable major protein-like sequence expressed") has the capability to undergo extensive antigenic variation (Zhang, 1998; Porcella & Schwan, 2001), although a conserved portion of this peptide forms the basis of some newer serological tests (see later). Animal models of Lyme borreliosis have been useful for investigating the dynamics of *Borrelia* dissemination (e.g., tissue localization within heart, skin, and joints), specific cellular interactions, and details of immunologic responses and virulence mechanisms (Steere, 2005; Munson et al, 2012; Whooten & Weis, 2001). In a recent investigation using Rhesus macaques to study spirochete persistence following antimicrobial therapy, Embers and colleagues (2012) described recovery of viable *Borrelia* (in addition to evidence of persistent DNA, RNA, and protein antigen) from some ticks that fed on monkeys 7 to 11 months following treatment (so-called *xenodiagnoses;* see later). While these observations raise important questions regarding the potential use of xenodiagnosis for human disease and about the actual rate of *Borrelia* eradication following standard treatment regimens, the authors' study design, methodology, and interpretations have drawn sharp criticism (Wormser et al, 2012), so definitive conclusions should await further investigation.

Clinical Manifestations

Similar to syphilis, the clinical progression of Lyme borreliosis can be divided into three general stages: (1) an early localized phase in which a primary lesion develops at the inoculation site, (2) an early disseminated phase marked by spirochete spread systemically, producing a variety of cardiac, neurologic, and/or dermatologic manifestations, and (3) a late phase heralded by rheumatologic disease as well as further neurologic and/or dermatologic phenomena. Asymptomatic seroconversion or subclinical disease has also been reported to occur in as many as 7% of persons within endemic areas (Steere et al, 2003).

The earliest clinical stage begins ≈1 week following the bite of an infected tick, at which time a characteristic rash, descriptively termed *erythema migrans*, develops near the inoculation site in approximately 75% of patients. The lesion appears as a painless red macule or papule and subsequently expands to become an erythematous patch measuring up to 70 cm in extreme cases (Nadelman et al, 1996). An area of central pallor may develop, imparting a "target-like" or "bull's-eye" appearance (Fig. 60-9). Lesions are often accompanied by nonspecific symptoms such as fever, fatigue, headache, and myalgia, as well as regional lymphadenopathy (Nadelman et al, 1996; Smith et al, 2002). If biopsied, histologic analysis reveals superficial, perivascular dermatitis comprising lymphocytes, macrophages, and abundant plasma cells, with organisms occasionally visualized by silver impregnation stains or by immunohistochemical techniques (Duray & Chandler, 1997). Unlike the lesions of syphilis, vasculitis is not a typical histologic feature of erythema migrans.

Dissemination of *Borrelia* portends the second stage of clinical illness, in which many organ systems may be affected. Smaller, secondary erythema migrans lesions arising in multiple sites are one of the more common signs of early dissemination (Murray & Shapiro, 2010). Neurologic manifestations (neuroborreliosis) affect up to 15% of U.S. patients, with symptoms including cranial nerve palsy (commonly cranial nerve VII), lymphocytic meningitis, and a variety of peripheral neuropathies (Steere, 2001; Halperin, 2008). These manifestations are collectively referred to as **Bannwarth syndrome** in some European countries (Kaiser, 1998). Somewhat rarer, cardiac involvement in the form of transient atrioventricular block or myocarditis is also reported in about 5% of U.S. patients (Steere, 2001). Other sites potentially affected include the liver (e.g., mild, transient hepatitis) and eyes (e.g., conjunctivitis, neuroretinitis) (Lesser, 1995; Steere, 2005).

Figure 60-9 **Characteristic "bull's-eye" lesion, erythema migrans, observed at the site of spirochete inoculation in ≈80% of patients with Lyme disease.** (Courtesy James Gathany, CDC/PHIL file photo.)

In the United States, the most common manifestation of untreated, late-stage Lyme disease is arthritis, which develops in over half of untreated patients (Steere, 2005). Typically monoarticular or oligoarticular in extent, large joints such as the knee are frequently involved (Steere et al, 1977a; Steere, 2001). Symptoms of pain and swelling begin acutely several weeks to months following spirochete inoculation and may last for days to months (median, 1 week) (Steere et al, 1977b). Some patients continue to experience intermittent recurrences of migratory arthritis followed by prolonged disease-free periods (Puius & Kalish, 2008; Nadelman & Wormser, 1998). Conversely, late-stage manifestations of persistent Lyme borreliosis in European patients more commonly involve neurologic or cutaneous organs. The former may overlap clinically with early disseminated neuroborreliosis and include lymphocytic meningitis and peripheral neuropathies (e.g., sensory polyneuritis, pareses). In addition, CNS manifestations such as myelitis and spastic-ataxic gait disturbances as well as short-term cognitive dysfunction, have been noted (Kaiser, 1998; Halperin, 2008). A dermatologic phenomenon known as acrodermatitis chronica atrophica has also been associated with late Lyme borreliosis in Europe. These lesions are present on hands, wrists, elbows, and feet, are often symmetric and characterized histologically by a lymphomononuclear and, to a lesser extent, granulocytic infiltrate with progressive epidermal thinning, hyperkeratosis, and dermal atrophy (Aberer et al, 1991; Duray & Chandler, 1997). Other well-established or controversial long-term dermatologic manifestations include *Borrelia* lymphocytoma, cutaneous B cell lymphoma, morphea, and lichen sclerosus et atrophicus (Duray & Chandler, 1997; McGinley-Smith & Tsao, 2003).

Some of the variations in late-stage clinical manifestations may be attributable to inherent traits of different *Borrelia* species themselves. For instance, *B. afzelii* has been disproportionately isolated from lesions of erythema migrans and acrodermatitis chronica atrophica in Europe as compared with other genospecies (van Dam et al, 1993; Balmelli & Piffaretti, 1995; Wang et al, 1999; Stanek & Reiter, 2011). By contrast, *B. garinii* is more frequently implicated in European cases of neuroborreliosis (Stanek & Reiter, 2011; Balmelli & Piffaretti, 1995; Wang et al, 1999). Other studies demonstrate that particular molecular subtypes of *B. burgdorferi* s.s. are more frequently associated with invasive properties and spirochetemia (Dykhuizen, 2008; Wormser et al, 1999). Additional observations corroborating the notion that disease course is influenced by virulence properties of the specific *Borrelia* strain include (1) serologic responses among patients with particular clinical symptoms may be preferential toward antigens from specific *Borrelia* spp.; and (2) certain genospecies appear to have different properties in vitro (Dressler et al, 1994; Norman et al, 1996; Wang et al, 1999).

In the vast majority of patients, clinical manifestations of Lyme disease respond to appropriate antibiotic therapy (Seltzer et al, 2000; Wormser et al, 2006; Aucott et al, 2013). Yet, a small subset may continue to experience persistent symptoms such as musculoskeletal pain, fatigue, and neurocognitive deficits despite treatment—a condition that has variably been termed *post–Lyme disease syndrome*, *chronic Lyme disease*, or *treatment-resistant borreliosis* (Klempner, 2002; Halperin et al, 2011). Without exception, prospective studies have shown little benefit of prolonged antibiotic therapy over placebo in reducing the symptoms of this syndrome. Further, isolation of *Borrelia* or amplification of *Borrelia* genes is often unsuccessful among patients with this disorder (Klempner, 2002); and retrospective case-controlled studies illustrate that the frequency of objective signs among such patients is no different to that of age-matched controls without a history of Lyme disease (Seltzer et al, 2000). An international panel of subject experts has summarized the evidence, or lack thereof, in support of a link between *B. burgdorferi* and this chronic syndrome (Feder et al, 2007). It should be noted that despite the existence of only one body of medical literature, strong opposition to this viewpoint exists. Adamant dissent is evidenced not only by the many correspondence letters referencing the report by Feder and colleagues (2007), but also by the advocacy group International Lyme and Associated Diseases Society, which issued its own management recommendations distinct from those of the Infectious Disease Society of America (IDSA) (Cameron et al, 2014) and contributed testimony in an antitrust investigation brought against IDSA by the state of Connecticut. The investigation culminated in an agreement by IDSA to allow review of the guidelines by an independent arbiter, which ultimately upheld essentially all of the initial recommendations (Lantos et al, 2010).

A number of reports have documented erythema migrans–like lesions in patients residing in the Southern United States, the Midwest, and other areas beyond the Lyme endemic regions (reviewed in Masters et al, 2008). Referred to as *Southern tick-associated rash illness* (STARI) or *Master's disease*, the skin lesions are preceded by the bite of the lone star tick, *Amblyomma americanum* (see Fig. 60-8, *C*) yet are clearly not caused by *B. burgdorferi* s.l. infection (James et al, 2001; Wormser et al, 2005a; Masters et al, 2008). Although a putative relapsing-fever group agent, *B. lonestari*, had been tentatively implicated (Varela et al, 2004), failure to reproduce this association in multiple subsequent studies suggests that the true etiology remains elusive. Given the clinical overlap of STARI and Lyme disease (Wormser et al, 2005b) as well as the distribution of *A. americanum* in many Lyme-endemic regions, misclassification of these entities may be especially problematic in the absence of confirmatory diagnostic testing (Feder et al, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

In the United States, Lyme disease is a reportable disease, with both laboratories and clinical providers passively reporting to public health agencies (Bacon et al, 2008). According to the 2011 CDC surveillance definition, a confirmed case requires documentation of compatible clinical findings (e.g., erythema migrans, arthritis, myelitis) in combination with either (1) laboratory evidence of infection (i.e., positive culture or antibody test), or (2) potential tick exposure within a Lyme-endemic region (CDC, 2011). In the absence of objective clinical signs/symptoms, laboratory data, and/or endemic exposure, cases may only be considered as "suspected." Accordingly, laboratory testing is not an acceptable standalone diagnostic modality, but should serve rather as a tool to assist in confirming or refuting clinical suspicions (Tugwell et al, 1997; Brown et al, 1999). Reports highlighting the concepts of pretest probability based on epidemiologic and clinical factors, as well as likelihood ratios and test predictive values, thoroughly demonstrate the futility and high cost of a standalone laboratory-based approach (Seltzer & Shapiro, 1996; Tugwell et al, 1997; Nichol, 1998). In fact, Lyme disease testing for patients with only nonspecific symptoms like fatigue, headache, or myalgia, even in endemic areas using accurate laboratory assays, can lead to more false-positive than true-positive results (Tugwell et al, 1997). Exacerbated by widespread anxiety on the part of the public and a general misunderstanding by many health care providers, the current diagnostic confusion surrounding Lyme borreliosis can perhaps be best dealt with by taking a thorough look at the indications for and limitations of laboratory testing.

Culture

Culture usually serves as the gold standard in diagnostic testing for infectious diseases in which the causative agent does not also asymptomatically colonize humans. Yet, despite the fact that cultivation of *Borrelia* spp. is readily achievable and often is not as time-consuming as for other

pathogenic microorganisms (Reed, 2002), most clinical and commercial diagnostic laboratories do not offer this testing alternative. Several modifications of the broth-based Barber-Stoenner-Kelly medium have been shown to be useful in the recovery of *Borrelia* spp. from biopsy tissue of erythema migrans lesions and large-volume plasma collections during the early, acute phase of disease (Nadelman et al, 1996; Wormser et al, 2001). Given the specificity of organism isolation and the absence of measurable antibody in most Lyme disease patients during the early phase of illness, culture would seem to be a very practical diagnostic modality. However, reliance on subjective endpoints (e.g., darkfield microscopy or fluorescent antibodies) for the detection and identification of positive cultures, high media and reagent costs, wide reported sensitivity ranges, and a requirement that invasive procedures be performed on the patient (e.g., tissue biopsy) have probably all contributed to the test's general unpopularity outside research settings. It is important to note that recovery of *Borrelia* from CSF, synovial fluid, or other samples collected beyond the early phases of disease is so frequently unsuccessful as to be of little diagnostic utility. An exception was recently reported from a single laboratory in Connecticut in which *Borrelia* isolates were recovered from human serum in 94% of infected patients (Sapi et al, 2013). However, a subsequent investigation by CDC of sequence data reported by this laboratory called into the question the validity of their test methodology (Johnson et al, 2014). For these reasons, other laboratory testing modalities for Lyme borreliosis remain important adjuncts.

Xenodiagnosis

In addition to culture of specimens collected from an infected person, recovery of *B. burgdorferi* s.s. can be accomplished by xenodiagnosis. In this technique, uninfected ticks are allowed to feed on patients with suspected infection. Upon repletion, ticks are then analyzed for viable *Borrelia*. While the method performs well in murine studies (Hua et al, 2003) and appears safe in human clinical trials (Marques et al, 2014), the ultimate value for diagnosing human infection remains to be determined given the marked differences in dissemination within murine (i.e., reservoir-like) and human (i.e., dead-end) hosts (Bockenstedt & Radolf, 2014).

Serologic Tests

Detection of *Borrelia*-specific antibody production during Lyme disease may be accomplished using a variety of methods that express results in terms of total or class-specific IgG or IgM. Immunofluorescent antibody (IFA) assays, which typically contain antigen from whole cell *B. burgdorferi* s.s. fixed to glass slides, were popular in the 1980s but have been largely superseded by the more automated and less subjective ELISA, which may incorporate whole-cell–derived or select antigens produced recombinantly or from partially purified extracts of *Borrelia*.

As with any serologic response to infectious agents, many variables affect the performance of assays developed to detect them. Early in the course of Lyme disease, levels of antibody below the limit of detection produce false-negative results. This is circumvented in part with assays that detect IgM specifically, because IgM production precedes the development of an IgG response (Reed, 2002). As disease progresses, antibody test sensitivity increases (Engstrom et al, 1995; Brown et al, 1999; Steere et al, 2008). In fact, the duration of illness itself is of greater importance for serologic detection than is test method or format (Wormser et al, 2008). Specificity of the IFA and ELISA may also be adversely affected by cross-reacting antibodies to other microorganisms and host-derived proteins, including pathogenic spirochetes (e.g., relapsing fever group of *Borrelia* and treponemes), other bacteria (e.g., *Helicobacter pylori*), viruses (e.g., Epstein-Barr), as well as antinuclear antigens present in autoimmune disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus (Brown et al, 1999; Reed, 2002). Previous immunization with the OspA subunit Lyme disease vaccine may lead to false-positive ELISA and IFA results as well (Steere et al, 1998). Other factors that may contribute to test variability include the particular antigen composition of the assay, stringency of quality control, optical density or index value thresholds utilized, bacterial strain responsible for infection, and the patient's individual immune response.

In an effort to increase the accuracy of serologic testing as a whole, the CDC proposed the use of a two-tiered algorithm in which all positive and indeterminate results obtained by ELISA or IFA are subsequently tested by immunoblot (CDC, 1995), which provides the capability to discern antibodies against particular *Borrelia* proteins. Interpretation is somewhat subjective; and, although strict criteria for defining positive results have been outlined by the CDC (CDC, 1995; Fig. 60-10), some laboratories use modified criteria, which alters overall performance (Fallon et al, 2014). Within 4 weeks of symptom onset, most patients with Lyme disease will have developed an IgG response, so diagnostic reliance upon IgM assays alone is not recommended beyond this time point (CDC, 1995).

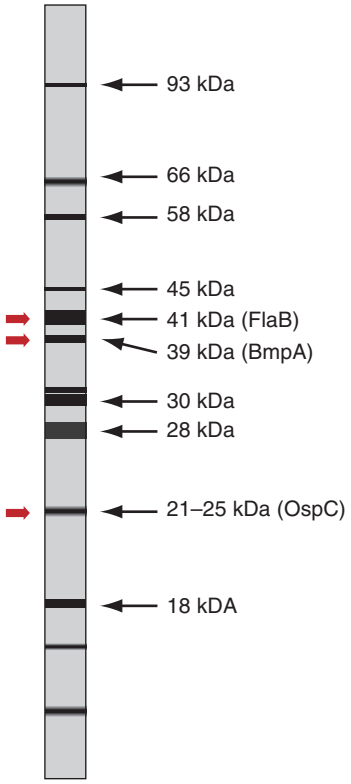


Figure 60-10 Ten major bands and respective molecular weights of antigens identified in *Borrelia burgdorferi* immunoblot assays. For positivity according to Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommendations, immunoglobulin (Ig)G-specific blots require the presence of 7 of 10 bands, whereas IgM-specific assays require 2 of 3 *(red arrow)* bands. *BmpA,* Basic membrane protein A; *FlaB,* flagellin; *kDa,* kilodaltons; *OspC,* outer surface protein C.

While the "two-tiered" approach incorporates a highly sensitive first-round test followed by a highly specific assay that excludes false-positive results (Dressler & Whalen, 1993; Ledue et al, 1996), the high degree of interlaboratory and intralaboratory variability coupled with a wide range of reported performance suggest that this approach is also imperfect (Engstrom et al, 1995; Aguero-Rosenfeld, 2005; Ledue et al, 1996; Fallon et al, 2014). The single major caveat is that immunoblot results are significantly influenced by the stage of disease during which testing is performed, as detailed earlier (Engstrom et al, 1995; Johnson et al, 1996; Steere et al, 2008). Further, because *Borrelia*-specific IgG and IgM detection may persist for many years after successful eradication of the spirochete, there is little role in monitoring antibody levels during convalescence for determination of disease activity and response to therapy or in assessing IgM positivity as a means of establishing the timing of infection (Hilton, 1997; Kalish, 2001). Incorporation into, or perhaps replacement of, the two-tiered algorithm by newer ELISAs that utilize recombinant, highly conserved, and immunodominant VlsE antigen or portions thereof (i.e., 26-mer peptide from the sixth invariable region [C6 peptide]) may ultimately serve to increase test accuracy, particularly during the early stages of disease (Branda et al, 2010, 2011; Wormser et al, 2013; Branda et al, 2011; Embers et al, 2007).

Several other laboratory-based immunologic techniques have been evaluated for potential use in the diagnosis of Lyme disease. Reports have indicated that *Borrelia*-specific antibodies detected by IFA, ELISA, and/or immunoblot in CSF and synovial fluid samples may be useful in confirming neuroborreliosis and Lyme arthritis, respectively, particularly when compared with serum levels (Cruz et al, 1991; Hansen & Lebech, 1991). To our knowledge, no commercially available kits have been cleared for such use by the FDA, however. A new luciferase immunoprecipitation technique for detecting *Borrelia*-specific antibody offers comparable sensitivity and specificity to C6-peptide based ELISA but with the added advantage of a much broader dynamic range, potentially affording reproducible quantitative results in the future (Burbelo et al, 2010). Finally, an antigen

capture assay used on CSF or urine has been reported (Coyle et al, 1995; Klempner et al, 2001) but is not presently recommended for diagnostic purposes without additional validation studies (Tugwell et al, 1997).

Molecular Tests

Given the overall low sensitivity of culture and poor performance of serologic confirmation in early disease, alternative testing methods for Lyme borreliosis have been highly sought after. Genomic amplification techniques for Lyme diagnostics surfaced in the early 1990s as a potential solution. Since that time, several modifications of the PCR using various genetic targets and amplicon detection methods have been applied to a variety of specimen types in search of *Borrelia* nucleic acids, though to date none have been cleared by the FDA for clinical use.

Samples from which *B. burgdorferi* s.l. could not be readily isolated were the focus of early investigations on PCR utility. Analyses on joint aspirate specimens from patients with Lyme arthritis demonstrated high sensitivity and specificity rates when several primer sets were used (Nocton et al, 1994; Dumler, 2001). After the results were compared with clinical information, it became apparent that (1) detection of *Borrelia* nucleic acids was more frequently associated with a history of absent or inadequate antimicrobial therapy, and (2) PCR positivity disappeared following appropriate treatment (Nocton et al, 1994). Further inquiry into a performance discrepancy of primer sets targeting genomic (e.g., *rRNA* genes) versus plasmid-derived (e.g., *OspA*, *OspB* genes) DNA revealed that the latter is present in higher quantities within joint spaces in Lyme arthritis (Persing et al, 1994). This phenomenon, termed **target imbalance,** seems to be unique to the inflammatory spirochete milieu of synovial fluid in Lyme arthritis and probably accounts for the higher sensitivity observed with primers targeting the *OspA* gene (Lebech, 2002). By contrast, studies of amplification assays on CSF from patients with acute neuroborreliosis or late-stage neurologic disease have demonstrated only minimal to moderate improvement in sensitivity over culture (Nocton et al, 1996; Dumler, 2001). Apart from variable study inclusion criteria, wide reported sensitivity ranges are also likely due to the low numbers of *Borrelia* genomic copies in CSF of affected patients (Schmidt, 1997). As a general rule, successful amplification occurs more frequently during the early stages of neurologic disease (Lebech, 2002).

PCR likewise has been applied to specimens collected during the primary and early disseminated stages of Lyme borreliosis. Nucleic acid detection in tissue from erythema migrans lesions has been successful; and such an approach may offer improvement in both sensitivity and turnaround time over culture (Dumler, 2001). Testing of blood and plasma has also been attempted but is limited by the timing of sample collection (Schmidt, 1997). Initial reports of urine testing by PCR were encouraging because of the ease of specimen collection and the high sensitivity, but these findings have not been consistently reproduced (Brettschneider et al, 1998; Lebech, 2002). Additionally, detection of *Borrelia* genetic material extracted directly from ixodid tick vectors may be useful from an epidemiologic standpoint but cannot be relied upon for diagnosis or management of patients from whom the ticks were removed (Dumler, 2001; Wormser et al, 2006).

As with most amplification techniques, use of PCR for diagnosis of Lyme disease is limited by many factors, including polymerase inhibitors, low target concentrations, potential for contamination, and choice of primer, among others. Whatever the application, the sensitivity and specificity of molecular tests are imperfect. Accordingly, negative results alone cannot be used to exclude a diagnosis, and positive results out of context do not confirm a diagnosis. Misinterpretations such as these may lead to dismal consequences if not resolved early (Patel et al, 2000; Molloy et al, 2001). It is important to note that because most patients with late manifestations of Lyme disease will have evidence of seroreactivity by the time of presentation (thereby fulfilling the CDC case definition), PCR studies probably are best used during early Lyme disease prior to seroconversion. Of utmost importance is the correlation of laboratory data with clinical impression, irrespective of whether such data are derived through serologic or molecular means.

Treatment and Prevention

The IDSA has published guidelines for the management of patients with suspected or proven Lyme borreliosis (Wormser et al, 2006). To summarize, a large body of evidence confirms that a 2- to 3-week course of oral doxycycline or ampicillin is highly effective in the treatment of early, uncomplicated Lyme disease. In patients unable to tolerate any of these regimens, or for whom such regimens would be contraindicated, macrolide therapy may be an acceptable alternative. Extended treatment courses of this standard oral regimen are also considered to be effective in most patients with Lyme arthritis in the absence of neurologic manifestations. However, parenteral therapy with ceftriaxone (or penicillin as an alternative) may be used in cases of arthritis relapse. This same intravenous regimen is recommended for patients with third-degree heart block and/or neuroborreliosis. Of note, most of the prospective therapeutic trials upon which IDSA recommendations are based have endpoints defined in terms of clinical responses (i.e., disappearance of symptoms) rather than the eradication of *Borrelia*.

A somewhat more contested issue surrounds the use of prophylactic antibiotic therapy following recognition and removal of a feeding tick. Early prospective studies employing 10-day oral regimens of antimicrobial prophylaxis failed to establish any benefit over placebo (Warshafsky et al, 1996). Factors confounding the matter include (1) the extremely low success rate of *Borrelia* transmission to humans (1% to 3%), even in hyperendemic areas where tick infection rates may exceed 50% (Shapiro et al, 1992; Nadelman et al, 2001); (2) the frequency with which tick bites are not recognized among patients with Lyme disease (up to 75% of patients) (Nadelman et al, 1996); (3) the inaccuracy of tick species identification and estimates of feeding duration by non-entomologists (Falco et al, 1998); and (4) the potential costs of widespread antibiotic use (e.g., financial, unanticipated side effects, bacterial resistance). One investigation demonstrated that a single 200-mg dose of doxycycline administered after removal of an *I. scapularis* tick significantly reduced the incidence of subsequent development of erythema migrans (Nadelman et al, 2001). Although interpretations of the study were varied (Bellovin, 2001; Leenders, 2001; Shapiro, 2001), the most recent IDSA guideline states that prophylaxis "may be offered" if the epidemiologic findings (e.g., tick species, stage and duration of feeding, confirmed area of acquisition) are compelling.

Primary Lyme disease prevention strategies that are generally agreed upon include interventions that decrease both the likelihood and the duration of vector attachment and feeding. Use of insect repellents, acaricides, and barrier clothing such as long pants and long-sleeved shirts and the performance of daily "tick checks" have a theoretical if not proven value in reducing human cases of ixodid tick–borne disease (Poland, 2001; Hayes et al, 2003). The single most widely accepted and thoroughly tested prevention strategy, human vaccination, is no longer commercially available, however (Hitt, 2002). This subunit vaccine containing a lipidized, recombinant OspA antigen was shown to significantly reduce the incidence of Lyme borreliosis following a three-step immunization schedule (Steere et al, 1998). Because of low sales and perhaps an unfounded fear of complications, the product was withdrawn from the market in 2002.

RELAPSING FEVER

Relapsing fever can be divided into two categories based on microbiologic and epidemiologic features. Epidemic louse-borne relapsing fever (LBRF) occurs worldwide, reflecting the ubiquitous distribution of its transmission vector, *Pediculus humanus*, the human body louse (Rhee & Johnson, 2005). Although the disease has been largely eradicated from most developed nations, documented occurrences persist in parts of east Africa and South America (Cutler et al, 2009; Raoult & Johnson, 1999). Humans are the only known reservoir for the causative agent, *B. recurrentis*. By contrast, endemic tick-borne relapsing fever (TBRF) has a narrower geographic distribution, paralleling that of its primary transmission vectors, argasid ticks of the genus *Ornithodoros* (Fig. 60-11). North American areas of disease endemicity include the Pacific Northwest, the Northern and Central Rocky Mountains, and parts of the Sierra range of California (*Ornithodoros hermsi* habitats), as well as the arid flatlands of Mexico, Texas, and New Mexico (*Ornithodoros turicata* habitats) (Dworkin, 2008) (Fig. 60-12). The disease is also well documented in parts of Africa and Europe where *B. duttonii* and *B. crocidurae* are common pathogens (Parola & Raoult, 2001; Cutler, 2010). *Borrelia* spp. causing TBRF were traditionally named after the argasid tick species from which they were isolated (e.g., *B. hermsi* and *B. turicatae* associated with *O. hermsi* and *O. turicata*, respectively) (Davis, 1942); yet, with the detection of several novel relapsing-fever group *Borrelia* species, some from ixodid ticks (e.g., *B. miyamotoi* and *B. lonestari*), such practice is no longer common (Barbour, 2014).

Epidemiologic factors and transmission dynamics associated with TBRF are considerably different from those of Lyme disease. Argasid ticks feed nocturnally and for much shorter durations than ixodid ticks (Parola & Raoult, 2001). As a result, TBRF *Borrelia* present in tick salivary secretions are successfully inoculated into a host within minutes of feeding (Dworkin, 2008). While *Ornithodoros* ticks do not efficiently transmit *Borrelia* vertically (transovarial), they are able to maintain spirochetes in nature for extended periods due to their longevity (life spans of many years), their ability to persist for long durations in the absence of a blood meal, and by

Figure 60-11 **Example of a member of the Argasidae family of "soft ticks," which are responsible for transmission of endemic relapsing fever *Borrelia*.** (Courtesy James Gathany, CDC/PHIL file photo.)

Figure 60-12 **Location by county of 504 tickborne relapsing fever cases reported in the United States 1990-2011.** Disease was reportable in all 12 shaded states. (From Forrester JD, Kjemtrup AM, Fritz CL, et al: Tickborne relapsing fever—United States, 1990-2011, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 64:58–60, 2015.)

their multi-host feeding habits (Dworkin, 2008). Human disease often occurs in small clusters following exposure to the vector while sleeping in rustic cabins or in seldom occupied rural dwellings *(O. hermsi)* or in caves *(O. turicata)* (Forrester et al, 2015). By contrast, relapsing fever group *Borrelia* spp. transmitted by ixodid ticks would presumably share many epidemiologic features with the Lyme borreliosis group (Crowder et al, 2014), yet the overall impact on human health remains largely unknown. Although human infection caused by *B. miyamotoi* has been reported (Krause et al, 2013; Hovius et al, 2013), it remains unclear whether the paucity of cases relates to inadequate diagnostic methods or to rarity of infection.

Clinical features of TBRF and LBRF are similar in many ways. Following a five- to seven-day incubation period, infected patients experience an acute onset of high fever (38.9° to 40.0° C) accompanied by nonspecific symptoms such as headache, malaise, arthralgia, and fatigue (Southern, 1969; Dworkin, 2008). Minor hemorrhagic manifestations, likely related to transient thrombocytopenia, may be noted. Hepatosplenomegaly is identified more frequently in patients with LBRF (Southern, 1969). Neurologic involvement in the form of meningitis, seventh nerve palsy, myelitis, and encephalitis has also been reported (Cadavid & Barbour, 1998). Almost as suddenly as they begin, symptoms subside after 3 to 6 days in most patients, only to relapse roughly 1 week later (Rhee & Johnson, 2005). Similar episodes of symptomatic recurrence may continue up to as many as 13 times but more typically resolve after two or three relapses (Southern, 1969). These waves of recrudescence result from the organism's extraordinary ability to vary its surface protein antigenic makeup temporally under immune selective pressure, thus producing cycles of epitope variation and immune escape followed by new antibody production and organism suppression (Rich et al, 2001; Dworkin, 2008). Left untreated, LBRF appears to have a higher mortality rate than its tick-borne counterpart, but the contributive effects of other factors (e.g., malnutrition, war) often accompanying LBRF may bias this observation; and self-limited cases of probable TBRF have been reported (Dworkin, 2008).

Microscopic examination of peripheral blood samples obtained during febrile episodes remains the best laboratory approach for diagnosis of relapsing fever. *Borrelia* organisms may be visualized in wet mounts using a darkfield technique or in fixed smears stained with Wright-Giemsa, acridine orange, or specific fluorescent antibodies. Drawbacks to microscopy include (1) the requirement of a high spirochetemic burden for visualization, although this may be mitigated by collection of samples during febrile periods; (2) observer inexperience or unfamiliarity with morphology or clinical differential; and (3) the inability to identify causative *Borrelia* to the species level. Cultivation of the spirochetes is also possible, although difficult, and is rarely performed in clinical settings. Demonstration of serologic response using techniques such as IFA, ELISA, and Western blot has met with variable success. The degree of *Borrelia* antigenic variability limits serologic assay sensitivity, whereas cross-reactivity with other spirochetes, in particular those of the Lyme borreliosis group, affect specificity. Assays utilizing a 34-kDa recombinant protein, GlpQ, appear to be more specific for the relapsing fever spirochetes (Schwan et al, 2003; Porcella et al, 2000). At present, molecular methods such as PCR play little, if any, role in the routine diagnosis of relapsing fever. However, given their extreme power of strain and/or species discrimination (Bunikis et al, 2004), these techniques may one day play a vital part in the elucidation of borreliosis etiology in regions where both relapsing fever and Lyme disease spirochetes are found.

Successful treatment of LBRF may be accomplished using a single oral dose of tetracycline or erythromycin, whereas 5 to 10 days of therapy with either of these agents is recommended for TBRF (Rhee & Johnson, 2005). Parenteral administration of a β-lactam may be considered in the case of meningitis or encephalitis (Cadavid & Barbour, 1998). Whatever the antibiotic, symptoms of the Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction may be observed and can be particularly severe in the louse-borne form of disease. This reaction usually occurs within a few hours of antibiotic initiation and is typified by an increase in temperature (0.5° to 1° C) with rigors, systemic hypotension, and leukopenia. As with other shock-like syndromes, the proposed mechanism of Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction involves a cytokine "storm," with tumor necrosis factor-α, interleukin-6, and interleukin-8 as major orchestrating components (Griffin, 1998).

Prevention strategies for TBRF include rodent-proofing rural cottages or cabins to avoid immigration and colonization by soft ticks, use of insecticides around such dwellings, use of topical repellents while sleeping, and altogether avoiding overnight excursions into known *Ornithodoros* habitats. Prevention of LBRF may be effected through good personal hygiene and delousing procedures (Rhee & Johnson, 2005). No vaccine is currently available.

AGENTS OF INTESTINAL SPIROCHETOSIS

DESCRIPTION

Two species of spirochete, *Brachyspira aalborgi* and *Brachyspira pilosicoli* (formerly designated as a member of the genus *Serpulina*), have been identified in the human gastrointestinal tract. These organisms are gram-negative, 0.2 to 0.4 μm in diameter, and 4 to 8 μm in length. Four to six flagella are present subterminally at each end near the pointed ends of the bacteria.

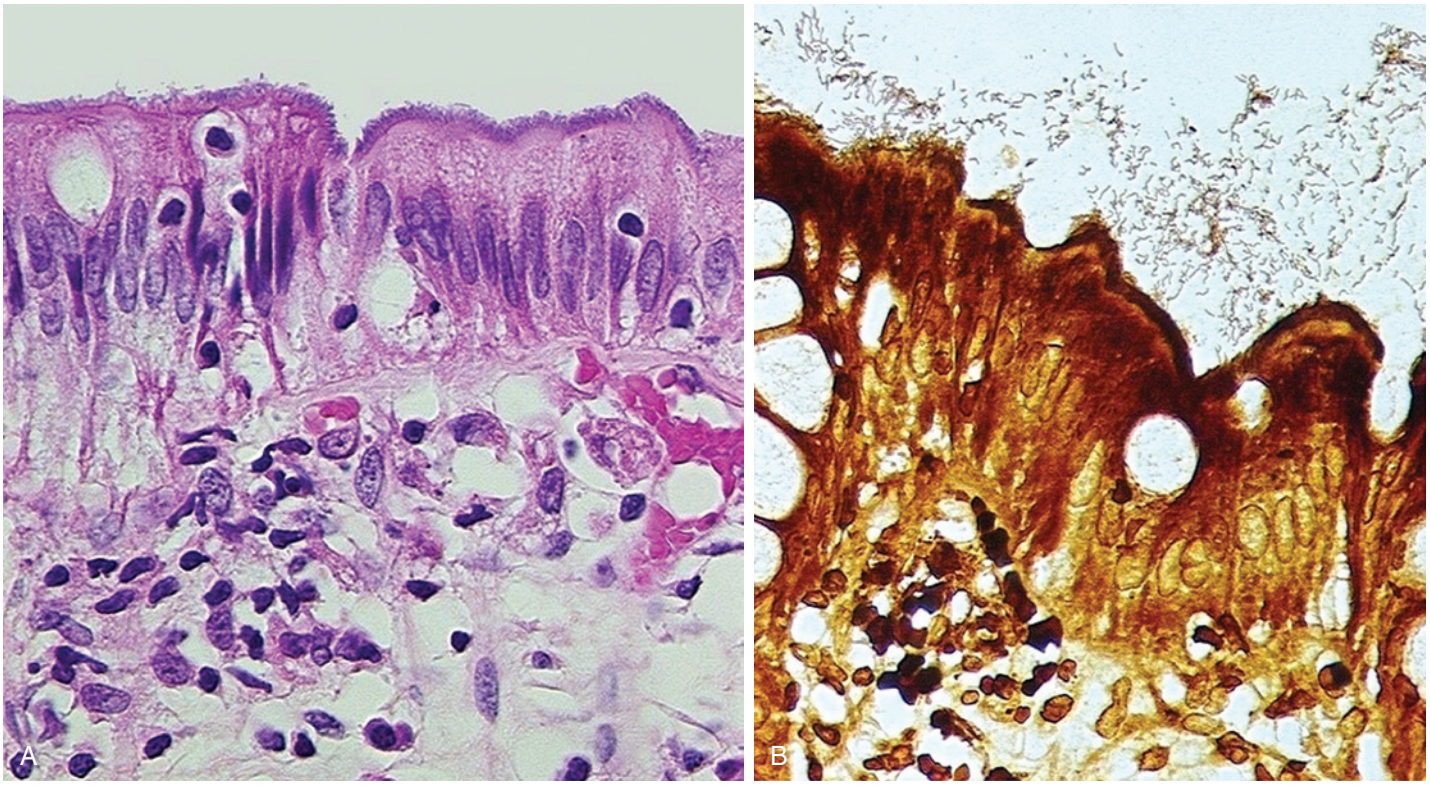


Figure 60-13 Colonic epithelium demonstrating **(A)** basophilic discoloration along the bowel luminal surface (hematoxylin & eosin [H&E], ≈400×), which is confirmed in **B** to be numerous argyrophilic spirochetes, consistent with intestinal spirochetosis (Steiner silver impregnation technique, 400×). (Images courtesy Hagen Blaszyk, MD.)

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

B. pilosicoli and *B. hyodysenteria* cause porcine intestinal spirochetosis, a diarrheal disease in young pigs; and similar organisms have been recovered from dogs, birds, and other animals (Korner & Gebbers, 2003). It is unknown whether animals act as reservoirs for human infection. In contrast, *B. aalborgi* was named after its isolation from the colon of a human patient (Hovind-Hougen et al, 1982), but remains less well characterized overall. The association of intestinal spirochetes with disease is not firmly established, as the bacteria have been identified in both symptomatic and asymptomatic individuals. Prevalence rates appear higher among homosexual men and within different geographic populations (Tsinganou & Gebbers, 2010). Symptoms often attributed to intestinal spirochetosis include diarrhea, abdominal pain, and rectal bleeding and discharge (Teglbjaerg, 1990; Tsinganou & Gebbers, 2010). Additionally, *B. pilosicoli* has been isolated from the blood of critically ill and immunocompromised patients, the clinical significance of which is uncertain (Trott et al, 1997; Kanavaki et al, 2002).

PATHOLOGY AND PATHOGENESIS

The spirochetes are easily seen on biopsy specimens as a dark blue "fringe" on the surface of colonic epithelial cells with sparing of the goblet cells (Fig. 60-13, *A*). Silver impregnation stains demonstrate the organisms well (Fig. 60-13, *B*). The epithelial cells appear normal without significant inflammatory infiltrate in the underlying lamina propria. Electron microscopy demonstrates that the bacteria attach to the surface of colonic epithelial cells end-on and are oriented perpendicular to the lumen (Teglbjaerg, 1990). Invasion into epithelial and mucosal macrophages has been demonstrated in both symptomatic and asymptomatic patients (Korner & Gebbers, 2003). Pathogenic mechanisms have not been established.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Spirochetes can be detected in stool by darkfield microscopy and cultured from stool or biopsy specimens on trypticase soy agar with 5% to 10% horse or calf blood. The addition of spectinomycin and polymyxin B makes the media selective (Teglbjaerg, 1990). On media incubated anaerobically, pinpoint, weakly β-hemolytic colonies develop in 3 days to 4 weeks, depending on the strain. Fluorescent in situ hybridization assays and amplification techniques followed by RFLP analysis have been used for the detection and/or identification of spirochetes from tissue biopsy samples (Calderaro et al, 2003; Jensen et al, 2004). Moreover, amplification of *Brachyspira* genes from DNA extracted directly from feces, fixed tissues, or isolates recovered from infected animals or persons has also been reported (Atyeo et al, 1998; Tsinganou & Gebbers, 2010).

TREATMENT

Although antimicrobial susceptibilities of *Brachyspira* spp. have been published, standardized testing of a large number of isolates has not been described (Karlsson et al, 2003). Patients suffering from symptoms of intestinal spirochetosis have reportedly responded to metronidazole (Teglbjaerg, 1990).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Antal GM, Lukehart SA, Meheus AZ: The endemic treponematoses, *Microbes Infect* 4:83, 2002.

This extensive review provides descriptions of the causative agents and their principal pathogenic mechanisms, as well as diagnostic and treatment options. Its depiction of each of the clinical diseases and their individual impact on various human populations, however, is extraordinary.

Brown SL, Hansen SLH, Langone JJ: Role of serology in the diagnosis of Lyme disease, *JAMA* 281:62, 1999.

Explores the performance characteristics of serologic techniques in the diagnosis of Lyme disease and demonstrates the role that corroborating clinical and epidemiologic factors should play.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010, *MMWR Recomm Rep* 59:1, 2010.

Developed as a tool to guide therapy of many sexually transmitted diseases, these recommendations also include many valuable diagnostic considerations for a variety of presentations.

Dumler JS: Molecular diagnosis of Lyme disease: review and meta-analysis, *Mol Diagn* 6:1, 2001.

Successfully accomplishes the feat of assembling a multitude of diverse molecular data to illustrate the overall performance characteristics and utility of amplification assays on different clinical specimens.

Dworkin MS, Schwan TG, Anderson DE Jr, et al: Tick-borne relapsing fever, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 22:449, 2008.

Instructive review of endemic relapsing fever that provides a description of the causative spirochetes and epidemiologic, tick-vector ecologic, and pathogenic factors that lead to human disease and clinical manifestations of relapsing fever. Laboratory diagnostic techniques, treatment, and prevention issues are also highlighted.

Korner M, Gebbers JO: Clinical significance of human intestinal spirochetosis—a morphologic approach, *Infection* 5:341, 2003.

Focuses on a compilation of evidence that ascribes pathogenic traits to the organisms heretofore only associated with intestinal spirochetosis.

Levett PN: Leptospirosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 14:296, 2001.

A comprehensive yet concise review of historic, epidemiologic, clinical, and diagnostic features of leptospirosis.

Schmid GP: Epidemiology and clinical similarities of human spirochetal diseases, *Rev Infect Dis* 11(Suppl 6):S1460, 1989.

A short review offering interesting pathogenetic and clinical correlations between the major spirochete diseases.

Tugwell P, Dennis DT, Weinstein A, et al: Laboratory evaluation in the diagnosis of Lyme disease, *Ann Intern Med* 127:1109, 1997.

Explores the performance characteristics of serologic techniques in the diagnosis of Lyme disease and demonstrates the role that corroborating clinical and epidemiologic factors should play.

REFERENCES

Aberer E, Klade H, Hobisch G: A clinical, histological, and immunohistochemical comparison of acrodermatitis chronica atrophicans and morphea, *Am J Dermatopathol* 13:334, 1991.

Afzelius A: Verhanlungen der dermatologischen Gesellschaft zu Stockholm, *Arch Dermatol Syphilis* 101:405, 1910.

Aguero-Rosenfeld ME, Wang G, Schwartz I, et al: Diagnosis of lyme borreliosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 18:484, 2005.

Arean VM: The pathologic anatomy and pathogenesis of fatal human leptospirosis (Weil's disease), *Am J Pathol* 40:393, 1962.

Atyeo RF, Oxberry SL, Combs BG, et al: Development and evaluation of polymerase chain reaction tests as an aid to diagnosis of swine dysentery and intestinal spirochetosis, *Lett Appl Microbiol* 26:126, 1998.

Aucott JN, Crowder LA, Kortte KB: Development of a foundation for a case definition of post-treatment Lyme disease syndrome, *Int J Infect Dis* 17:e443, 2013.

Augenbraun M, Roits R, Johnson R, et al: Treponemal specific tests for the serodiagnosis of syphilis, *Sex Transm Dis* 25:549, 1998.

Bacon RM, Kugeler KJ, Mead PS: Surveillance for Lyme disease—United States, 1992-2006, *MMWR Surveill Summ* 57:1–9, 2008.

Balmelli T, Piffaretti JC: Association between different clinical manifestations of Lyme disease and different species of *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu lato, *Res Microbiol* 146:329, 1995.

Bannwarth A: Chronische lymphocytäre Meningitis, entzundliche polyneuritis und "rheumatismus" *Arch Psychiatr Nervenkr* 113:284, 1941.

Barbour AG: Phylogeny of a relapsing fever Borrelia species transmitted by the hard tick Ixodes scapularis, *Infect Genet Evol* 27:551, 2014.

Bellovin SM: Correspondence, *N Engl J Med* 345:1349, 2001.

Bockenstedt LK, Radolf JD: Xenodiagnosis for posttreatment Lyme disease syndrome: resolving the conundrum or adding to it?, *Clin Infect Dis* 58:946, 2014.

Branda JA, Aguero-Rosenfeld ME, Ferraro MJ, et al: 2-tiered antibody testing for early and late Lyme disease using only an immunoglobulin G blot with the addition of a VlsE band as the second-tier test, *Clin Infect Dis* 50:20, 2010.

Branda JA, Linskey K, Kim YA, et al: Two-tiered antibody testing for Lyme disease with use of 2 enzyme immunoassays, a whole-cell sonicate enzyme immunoassay followed by a VlsE C6 peptide enzyme immunoassay, *Clin Infect Dis* 53:541, 2011.

Brenner DJ, Kaufmann AF, Sulzer KR, et al: Further determination of DNA relatedness between serogroups and serovars in the family Leptospiraceae with a proposal for *Leptospira alexanderi* sp. *nov.* and four new *Leptospira* genomospecies, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 49:839, 1999.

Brettschneider S, Bruckbauer H, Klugbauer N, et al: Diagnostic value of PCR for detection of *Borrelia burgdorferi* in skin biopsy and urine samples from patients with skin borreliosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:2658, 1998.

Brinkerhoff RJ, Gilliam WF, Gaines D: Lyme disease, Virginia, USA, 2000-2011, *Emerg Infect Dis* 20:1661, 2014.

Brisson D, Drecktrah D, Eggers CH, et al: Genetics of *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *Annu Rev Genet* 46:515, 2012.

Brown ST, Zaidi A, Larsen SA, et al: Serological response to syphilis treatment, *JAMA* 253:1296, 1985.

Buchacz K, Patel P, Taylor M, et al: Syphilis increases HIV viral load and decreases CD4 cell counts in HIV-infected patients with new syphilis infections, *AIDS* 18:2075, 2004.

Bunikis J, Tsao J, Farmpo U, et al: Typing of *Borrelia* relapsing fever group strains, *Emerg Infect Dis* 10:1661, 2004.

Burbelo PD, Issa AT, Ching KH, et al: Rapid, simple, quantitative, and highly sensitive antibody detection for Lyme disease, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 17:904, 2010.

Burgdorfer W, Barbour AG, Hayes SF, et al: Lyme disease—a tick-borne spirochetosis?, *Science* 216:1317, 1982.

Cadavid D, Barbour AG: Neuroborreliosis during relapsing fever: review of the clinical manifestations, pathology, and treatment of infections in human and experimental animals, *Clin Infect Dis* 26:151, 1998.

Calderaro A, Villanacci V, Conter M, et al: Rapid detection and identification of *Brachyspira aalborgi* from rectal biopsies and faeces of a patient, *Res Microbiol* 154:145, 2003.

Cameron DJ, Johnson LB, Maloney EL: Evidence assessments and guideline recommendations in Lyme disease: the clinical management of known tick bites, erythema migrans rashes and persistent disease, *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther* 12:1103, 2014.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Congenital syphilis—United States, 2002, *MMWR* 53:716, 2004.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: The national plan to eliminate syphilis from the United States, 2006. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/stopsyphilis/SEEPlan2006.pdf. Accessed July 29, 2014.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Tickborne relapsing fever—United States, 1990-2011, *MMWR* 64:58, 2015.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Recommendations for test performance and interpretation from the Second National Conference on Serologic Diagnosis of Lyme Disease, *JAMA* 274:937, 1995.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Key graphics from STD trends in the United States, 2012. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/nchhstp/newsroom/2014/STD-Trends-Graphics.html. Accessed July 17, 2014.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: National Notifiable Diseases Surveillance System, 2011. Available at: <http://wwwn.cdc.gov/NNDSS/script/casedef.aspx?CondYrID=752&DatePub=1/1/2011%2012:00:00%20AM>. Accessed December 23, 2014.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: 2014 Sexually transmitted diseases surveillance. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/std/stats12/figures/30.htm. Accessed October 22, 2015.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, *MMWR Recomm Rep* 51:1, 2002.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Symptomatic early neurosyphilis among HIV-positive men who have sex with men—four cities, United States, January 2002-June 2004, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 56:625, 2007.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Syphilis testing algorithms using treponemal tests for initial screening—four laboratories, New York, 2005-2006, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 57:872, 2008.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Primary and secondary syphilis—United States, 2005-2013, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 63:402, 2014.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Discordant results from reverse sequence syphilis screening—five laboratories, United States, 2006-2010, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 60:133, 2011.

Choi BK, Wyss C, Gobel UB: Phylogenetic analysis of pathogen-related oral spirochetes, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:1922, 1996.

Cook MJ: Lyme borreliosis: a review of data on transmission time after tick attachment, *Int J Gen Med* 8:1, 2014.

Coyle PK, Schutzer SE, Deng Z, et al: Detection of *Borrelia burgdorferi*-specific antigen in antibody-negative cerebrospinal fluid in neurologic Lyme disease, *Neurology* 45:2010, 1995.

Crowder CD, Carolan HE, Rounds MA, et al: Prevalence of Borrelia miyamotoi in Ixodes ticks in Europe and the United States, *Emerg Infect Dis* 20:1678, 2014.

Cruz AR, Ramirez LG, Zuluaga AV, et al: Immune evasion and recognition of the syphilis spirochete in blood and skin of secondary syphilis patients: two immunologically distinct compartments, *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 6:e1717, 2012.

Cruz M, Hansen K, Ernerudh J, et al: Lyme arthritis: oligoclonal anti-*Borrelia burgdorferi* IgG antibodies occur in joint fluid and serum, *Scand J Immunol* 33:61, 1991.

Cumberland MC, Turner TB: Rate of multiplication of Treponema pallidum in normal and immune rabbits, *Am J Syphilis* 33:201, 1949.

Cutler SJ: Relapsing fever—a forgotten disease revealed, *J Appl Microbiol* 108:1115, 2010.

Cutler SJ, Abdissa A, Trape JF: New concepts for the old challenge of African relapsing fever borreliosis, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 15:400, 2009.

Davis GE: Species unity or plurality of the relapsing fever spirochetes. In Moulton FR, editor: *A symposium on relapsing fever in the Americas*, Washington, DC, 1942, American Association for the Advancement of Science.

de Silva AM, Fikrig E: Arthropod- and host-specific gene expression by *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *J Clin Invest* 99:377, 1997.

Dooley JR, Ishak KG: Leptospirosis. In Binford CC, Conner DH, editors: *Pathology of tropical and extraordinary diseases*, vol 1, Washington, DC, 1976, Armed Forces Institute of Pathology, p 101.

Dorfman DH, Glaser JH: Congenital syphilis presenting in infants after the newborn period, *N Engl J Med* 323:1299, 1990.

Dressler F, Ackerman R, Steere AC: Antibody responses to the three genomic groups of *Borrelia burgdorferi* in European Lyme borreliosis, *J Infect Dis* 169:313, 1994.

Dressler F, Whalen JA, Reinhart BN, et al: Western blotting in the serodiagnosis of Lyme disease, *J Infect Dis* 167:392, 1993.

Duray PH, Chandler FW: Lyme disease. In Conner DH, Chandler FW, Schwartz DA, et al, editors: *Pathology of infectious diseases*, Stamford, Conn., 1997, Appleton & Lange, p 635.

Dykhuizen DE, Brisson D, Sandigursky S, et al: The propensity of different *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu stricto genotypes to cause disseminated infections in humans, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 78:806, 2008.

Edwards GA, Olmm BM: Human leptospirosis, *Medicine* 39:117, 1960.

Embers ME, Barthold SW, Borda JT, et al: Persistence of Borrelia burgdorferi in rhesus macaques following antibiotic treatment of disseminated infection, *PLoS ONE* 7:e29914, 2012.

Embers ME, Jacobs MB, Johnson BJ, et al: Dominant epitopes of the C6 diagnostic peptide of Borrelia burgdorferi are largely inaccessible to antibody on the parent VlsE molecule, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 14:931, 2007.

Engelkens HJ, Judanarson J, Orange AP, et al: Endemic treponematoses. Part I. Yaws, *Int J Dermatol* 30:77, 1991a.

Engelkens HJ, Niemel PL, van der Sluis JJ, et al: Endemic treponematoses. Part II. Pinta and endemic syphilis, *Int J Dermatol* 30:231, 1991b.

Engstrom SM, Shoop E, Johnson RC: Immunoblot interpretation criteria for serodiagnosis of early Lyme disease, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:419, 1995.

Falco RC, Fish D, D'Amico V: Accuracy of tick identification in a Lyme disease endemic area, *JAMA* 280:602, 1998.

Falco RC, McKenna DF, Daniels TJ, et al: Temporal relation between *Ixodes scapularis* abundance and risk for Lyme disease associated with erythema migrans, *Am J Epidemiol* 149:771, 1999.

Fallon BA, Pavlicova M, Coffino SW, et al: A comparison of lyme disease serologic test results from 4 laboratories in patients with persistent symptoms after antibiotic treatment, *Clin Infect Dis* 59:1705, 2014.

Fargen KM, Alvernia JE, Lin S, et al: Cerebral syphilitic gummata: a case presentation and analysis of 156 reported cases, *Neurosurgery* 64:568, 2009.

Farr RW: Leptospirosis, *Clin Infect Dis* 21:1, 1995.

Feder HM, Hoss DM, Zemel L, et al: Southern Tick-Associated Rash Illness (STARI) in the North: STARI following a tick bite in Long Island, New York, *Clin Infect Dis* 53:e142, 2011.

Feder HM Jr, Johnson BJ, O'Connell S, et al: A critical appraisal of "chronic Lyme disease, *N Engl J Med* 357:1422, 2007.

Feigin RD, Lobes LA Jr, Anderson D, et al: Human leptospirosis from immunized dogs, *Ann Intern Med* 79:777, 1973.

Flores JL: Syphilis: a tale of twisted treponemes, *West J Med* 163:552, 1995.

Forrester JD, Kjemtrup AM, Fritz CL, et al: Tickborne relapsing Fever—United States, 1990-2011, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 64:58–60, 2015.

Fraser CM, Casjens S, Huang WM, et al: Genomic sequence of a Lyme disease spirochete, *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *Nature* 390:580, 1997.

Fraser CM, Norris SJ, Weinstock GM, et al: Complete genome sequence of *Treponema pallidum*, the syphilis spirochete, *Science* 281:375, 1998.

Fredricks DN, Relman DA: Sequence-based identification of microbial pathogens: a reconsideration of Koch's postulates, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 9:18, 1996.

Gayet-Agaron A, Lautenschlager S, Ninet B, et al: Sensitivity, specificity and likelihood ratios of PCR in the diagnosis of syphilis: a systemic review and meta-analysis, *Sex Transm Infect* 89:251, 2013.

Girard YA, Travinsky B, Schotthoefer A, et al: Population structure of Lyme borreliosis spirochete *Borrelia burgdorferi* in the Western black-legged tick *(Ixodes pacificus)* in Northern California, *Appl Environ Microbiol* 75:7243, 2009.

Glöckner G, Schulte-Spechtel U, Schilhabel M, et al: Comparative genome analysis: selection pressure on the *Borrelia* vls cassettes is essential for infectivity, *BMC Genomics* 7:211, 2006.

González-López JJ, Guerrero ML, Luján R, et al: Factors determining serologic response to treatment in patients with syphilis, *Clin Infect Dis* 49:1505, 2009.

Gourevitch MN, Selwyn PA, Devanay K, et al: Effects of HIV infection on the serologic manifestations and response to treatment of syphilis in intravenous drug users, *Ann Intern Med* 118:350, 1993.

Greer L, Wendel GD: Rapid diagnostic methods in sexually transmitted infections, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 22:601, 2008.

Griffin GE: Cytokines involved in human septic shock—the model of the Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 41(Suppl A):25, 1998.

Gussenhoven GC, van der Hoorn MA, Goris MG, et al: Leptodipstick, a dipstick assay for detection of *Leptospira*-specific immunoglobulin M antibodies in human sera, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:92, 1997.

Haas JS, Bolan G, Larsen SA, et al: Sensitivity of treponemal tests for detecting prior treated syphilis during human immunodeficiency virus infection, *J Infect Dis* 162:862, 1990.

Halperin JJ: Nervous system Lyme disease, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 22:261, 2008.

Halperin JJ, Baker P, Wormser GP. Lyme disease: the great controversy. In Halperin JJ, editor: *Lyme disease: an evidence-based approach*, 2011, CAB International.

Hansen K, Lebech AM: Lyme neuroborreliosis: a new sensitive diagnostic assay for intrathecal synthesis of *Borrelia burgdorferi*-specific immunoglobulin, *Ann Neurol* 30:197, 1991.

Harper KN, Liu H, Ocampo PS, et al: The sequence of the acidic repeat protein (arp) gene differentiates venereal from nonvenereal *Treponema pallidum* subspecies, and the gene has evolved under strong positive selection in the subspecies that causes syphilis, *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 53:322, 2008a.

Harper KN, Ocampo PS, Steiner BM, et al: On the origin of the treponematoses: a phylogenetic approach, *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2:e148, 2008b.

Harter C, Bernischke K: Fetal syphilis in the first trimester, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 124:705, 1976.

Hayes EB, Piesman J: How can we prevent Lyme disease?, *N Engl J Med* 348:2424, 2003.

Hernandez-Aguado I, Bolumar F, Moreno R, et al: False positive tests for syphilis associated with human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis B virus infection among intravenous drug abusers, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 17:784, 1998.

Heymans R, Kolader ME, van der Helm JJ, et al: *TprK* gene regions are not suitable for epidemiological syphilis typing, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 28:875, 2009.

Hilton E, Tramontanno A, DeVoti J, et al: Temporal study of immunoglobulin M seroreactivity to *Borrelia burgdorferi* in patients treated for Lyme borreliosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:774, 1997.

Hinckley AF, Connally NP, Meek JI, et al: Lyme disease testing by large commercial laboratories in the United States, *Clin Infect Dis* 59:676, 2014.

Hitt E: Poor sales trigger vaccine withdrawal, *Nat Med* 8:311, 2002.

Hojgaard A, Eisen RJ, Piesman J: Transmission dynamics of *Borrelia burgdorferi* s.s. during the key third day of feeding by nymphal *Ixodes scapularis* (Acari: Ixodidae), *J Med Entomol* 45:732, 2008.

Hovind-Hougen K, Birch-Andersen A, Henrik-Neilsen R, et al: Intestinal spirochetosis: morphological characterization and cultivation of the spirochete *Brachyspira aalborgi* gen. *nov*., sp. *nov*, *J Clin Microbiol* 16:1127, 1982.

Hovius JW, de Wever B, Sohne M, et al: A case of meningoencephalitis by the relapsing fever spirochaete Borrelia miyamotoi in Europe, *Lancet* 382:658, 2013.

Hua CM, Cheminade Y, Perret JL, et al: Early detection of *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu lato infection in Balb/c mice by co-feeding Ixodes ricinus ticks, *Int J Med Microbiol* 293:421, 2003.

Hutter G, Schlagenhauf U, Valenza G, et al: Molecular analysis of bacteria in periodontitis: evaluation of clone libraries, novel phylotypes and putative pathogens, *Microbiology* 149:67, 2003.

Jacovides CL, Kreft R, Adeli B, et al: Successful identification of pathogens by polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-based electron spray ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry (ESI-TOF-MS) in culture-negative periprosthetic joint infection, *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 94:2247, 2012.

James AM, Liveris D, Wormser GP, et al: *Borrelia lonestari* infection after a bite by an *Amblyomma americanum* tick, *J Infect Dis* 183:1810, 2001.

Jensen TK, Teglbjaerg PS, Lindboe CF, et al: Demonstration of *Brachyspira aalborgi* lineages 2 and 3 in human colonic biopsies with intestinal spirochaetosis by specific fluorescent in situ hybridization, *J Med Microbiol* 53:341, 2004.

Johnson BJ, Pilgard MA, Russel TM: Assessment of new culture method for detection of Borrelia species from serum of Lyme disease patients, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:721, 2014.

Johnson BJ, Robbins KE, Bailey RE, et al: Serodiagnosis of Lyme disease: accuracy of a two-step approach using flagella-based ELISA and immunoblotting, *J Infect Dis* 174:346, 1996.

Kaiser R: Neuroborreliosis, *J Neurol* 245:247, 1998.

Kalish RA, McHugh G, Granquist J, et al: Persistence of immunoglobulin M or immunoglobulin G antibody responses to *Borrelia burgdorferi* 10-20 years after active Lyme disease, *Clin Infect Dis* 33:780, 2001.

Kanavaki S, Mantadakis E, Thomakos N, et al: *Brachyspira (Serpulina) pilosicoli* spirochetemia in an immunocompromised patient, *Infection* 30:175, 2002.

Karlsson M, Fellstrom C, Gunnarsson A, et al: Antimicrobial susceptibility testing of porcine *Brachyspira (Serpulina)* species isolates, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:2596, 2003.

Klempner MS: Controlled trials of antibiotic treatment in patients with post-treatment chronic Lyme disease, *Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis* 2:255, 2002.

Klempner MS, Schmid CH, Hu L, et al: Intralaboratory reliability of serologic and urine testing for Lyme disease, *Am J Med* 110:217, 2001.

Ko AI, Goarant C, Picardeau M: Leptospira: the dawn of the molecular genetics era for an emerging zoonotic pathogen, *Nat Rev Microbiol* 7:736, 2009.

Krause PJ, Narasimhan S, Wormser GP, et al: Human Borrelia miyamotoi infection in the United States, *N Engl J Med* 368:291, 2013.

Lantos PM, Charini WA, Medoff G, et al: Final report of the Lyme disease review panel of the Infectious Disease Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 51:1, 2010.

Larsen SA, Johnson RE: Diagnostic tests. In Larson SA, Pope V, Johnson RE, et al, editors: *A manual of tests for syphilis*, ed 9, Washington, DC, 1998, American Public Health Association, p 1.

Larsen SA, Steiner BM, Rudolph AH: Laboratory diagnosis and interpretation of tests for syphilis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 8:1, 1995.

Lebech AM: Polymerase chain reaction in diagnosis of Borrelia burgdorferi infections and studies on taxonomic classification, *Acta Pathol Microl Immunol Scand Suppl* 105:1, 2002.

Ledue TB, Collins MF, Craig WY: New laboratory guidelines for serologic diagnosis of Lyme disease: evaluation of the two-test protocol, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:2343, 1996.

Leenders AC: Correspondence, *N Engl J Med* 345:1349, 2001.

Lesser RL: Ocular manifestations of Lyme disease, *Am J Med* 24:60S, 1995.

Loeffelholz MJ, Wen T, Patel JA: Analysis of Bioplex Syphilis IgG quantitative results in different patient populations, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 18:2005, 2011.

Loeffelholz MJ, Binnicker MJ: It is time to use treponema-specific antibody screening tests for diagnosis of syphilis, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:1, 2012.

Loesche WJ, Grossman NS: Periodontal disease as a specific, albeit chronic, infection: diagnosis and treatment, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 14:727, 2001.

Lukehart S, Hook EW, Baker-Zander SH, et al: Invasion of the central nervous system by *Treponema pallidum:* implications for diagnosis and therapy, *Ann Intern Med* 109:855, 1988.

MacLean S, Luger A: Finding neurosyphilis without the Venereal Disease Research Laboratory test, *Sex Transm Dis* 23:392, 1996.

Magnuson HJ, Thomas SW, Olansky S, et al: Inoculation syphilis in human volunteers, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 35:33, 1956.

Marangoni A, Moroni A, Accardo S, et al: Laboratory diagnosis of syphilis with automated immunoassays, *J Clin Lab Anal* 23:1, 2009.

Marques A, Telford SR 3rd, Turk SP, et al: Xenodiagnosis to detect Borrelia burgdorferi infection: a first-in-human study, *Clin Infect Dis* 58:937, 2014.

Marra CM, Boutin P, McArthur JC, et al: A pilot study evaluating ceftriaxone and penicillin G as treatment agents for neurosyphilis in human immunodeficiency virus-infected individuals, *Clin Infect Dis* 30:540, 2000.

Marra CM, Gary DW, Kuypers J, et al: Diagnosis of neurosyphilis in patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus type I, *J Infect Dis* 174:219, 1996.

Marra CM, Maxwell CL, Tantalo L, et al: Normalization of cerebrospinal fluid abnormalities after neurosyphilis therapy: does HIV status matter?, *Clin Infect Dis* 38:1001, 2004a.

Marra CM, Maxwell CL, Tantalo LC, et al: Normalization of serum rapid plasma reagin titer predicts normalization of cerebrospinal fluid and clinical abnormalities after treatment of neurosyphilis, *Clin Infect Dis* 47:900, 2008.

Marra CM, Tantalo LC, Maxwell CL, et al: Alternative cerebrospinal fluid tests to diagnose neurosyphilis in HIV-infected individuals, *Neurology* 63:85, 2004b.

Martin-Ezquerra G, Fernandez-Casado A, Barco D, et al: *Treponema pallidum* distribution patterns in mucocutaneous lesions of primary and secondary syphilis: an immunohistochemical and ultrastructural study, *Hum Pathol* 40:624, 2009.

Masters EJ, Grigery CN, Masters RW: STARI, or Masters disease: Lone Star tick-vectored Lyme-like illness, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 22:361, 2008.

McGinley-Smith DE, Tsao SS: Dermatoses from ticks, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 49:363, 2003.

Molloy PJ, Persing DH, Berardi VP: False positive results of PCR testing for Lyme disease, *Clin Infect Dis* 33:412, 2001.

Munson E, Nardelli DT, du Chateau BK, et al: Hamster and murine models of severe destructive Lyme arthritis, *Clin Dev Immunol* 2012:504215, 2012.

Murray TM, Shapiro ED: Lyme disease, *Clin Lab Med* 30:311, 2010.

Musher DM: Syphilis, neurosyphilis, penicillin, and AIDS, *J Infect Dis* 163:1201, 1991.

Nadelman RB, Nowakowski J, Fish D, et al: Prophylaxis with single-dose doxycycline for the prevention of Lyme disease after *Ixodes scapularis* tick bite, *N Engl J Med* 345:79, 2001.

Nadelman RB, Nowakowski J, Forseter G, et al: The clinical spectrum of early Lyme borreliosis in patients with culture-confirmed erythema migrans, *Am J Med* 100:502, 1996.

Nadelman RB, Wormser GP: Lyme borreliosis, *Lancet* 352:557, 1998.

Nichol G, Dennis DT, Steere AC, et al: Test-treatment strategies for patients suspected of having Lyme disease: a cost effective analysis, *Ann Intern Med* 128: 37, 1998.

Nocton JJ, Bloom BJ, Rutledge BJ, et al: Detection of *Borrelia burgdorferi* DNA by polymerase chain reaction in cerebrospinal fluid in Lyme neuroborreliosis, *J Infect Dis* 174:623, 1996.

Nocton JJ, Dressler F, Rutledge BJ, et al: Detection of *Borrelia burgdorferi* DNA by polymerase chain reaction in synovial fluid from patients with Lyme arthritis, *N Engl J Med* 330:229, 1994.

Norman GL, Antig JM, Bigaignon G, et al: Serodiagnosis of Lyme borreliosis by *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu stricto, *B. garinii*, and *B. afzelii* Western blots (immunoblots), *J Clin Microbiol* 34:1732, 1996.

Oliver JH, Gao L, Lin T: Comparison of the spirochete Borrelia burgdorferi S. L. isolated from the tick Ixodes scapularis in southeastern and northeastern United States, *J Parasitol* 94:1351, 2008.

Parola P, Raoult D: Ticks and tick-borne bacterial diseases in humans: an emerging infectious threat, *Clin Infect Dis* 32:897, 2001.

Paster BJ, Boshces SK, Galvin JL, et al: Bacterial diversity in human subgingival plaque, *J Bacteriol* 183:3770, 2001.

Patel R, Grogg KL, Edwards WD, et al: Death from inappropriate therapy for Lyme disease, *Clin Infect Dis* 31:1107, 2000.

Pepin KM, Eisen RJ, Mead PS, et al: Geographic variation in the relationship between human Lyme disease incidence and density of infected host-seeking *Ixodes scapularis* nymphs in the Eastern United States, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 86:1062, 2012.

Persing DH, Rutledge BJ, Rys PN, et al: Target imbalance: disparity of *Borrelia burgdorferi* genetic material in synovial fluid from Lyme arthritis patients, *J Infect Dis* 169:668, 1994.

Piesman J, Mather TN, Sinsky RJ, et al: Duration of tick attachment and *Borrelia burgdorferi* transmission, *J Clin Microbiol* 25:557, 1987.

Poland GA: Prevention of Lyme disease: a concise review of the evidence, *Mayo Clin Proc* 76:713, 2001.

Porcella SP, Raffel SJ, Schrumpf ME, et al: Serodiagnosis of louse-borne relapsing fever with glycerophosphodiester phosphodiesterase (GlpQ) from *Borrelia recurrentis*, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:3561, 2000.

Porcella SF, Schwan TG: *Borrelia burgdorferi* and *Treponema pallidum:* a comparison of functional genomics, environmental adaptations, and pathogenic mechanisms, *J Clin Invest* 107:651, 2001.

Puius YA, Kalish RA: Lyme arthritis: pathogenesis, clinical presentation, and management, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 22:289, 2008.

Ramachandran S, Perera MVF: Cardiac and pulmonary involvement in leptospirosis, *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 71:56, 1977.

Raoult D, Birtles RJ, Montoya M, et al: Survey of three bacterial louse-associated diseases among rural Andean communities in Peru: prevalence of epidemic typhus, trench fever, and relapsing fever, *Clin Infect Dis* 29:434, 1999.

Reed KD: Laboratory testing for Lyme disease: possibilities and practicalities, *J Clin Microbiol* 40:319, 2002.

Rhee KY, Johnson WD: *Borrelia* species (relapsing fever). In Mandell J, Bennett J, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, 6th ed, New York, 2005, Churchill Livingstone, p 2502.

Rich SM, Sawyer SA, Barbour AG: Antigen polymorphism in *Borrelia hermsii*, a clonal pathogenic bacterium, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 98:15038, 2001.

Riviere GR, Smith KS, Carranza N, et al: Subgingival distribution of *Treponema denticola*, *Treponema socranskii*, and pathogen-related oral spirochetes: prevalence and relationship to periodontal status of sampled sites, *J Periodontol* 66:829, 1995.

Riviere GR, Smith KS, Tzagaroulaki E, et al: Periodontal status and detection frequency of bacteria at sites of periodontal health and gingivitis, *J Periodontol* 67:109, 1996.

Riviere GR, Smith KS, Willis SG, et al: Phenotypic and genotypic heterogeneity among cultivable pathogen-related oral spirochetes and *Treponema vincentii*, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:3676, 1999.

Rolfs RT, Joesoef MR, Hendershot EF, et al: A randomized trial of enhanced therapy for early syphilis in patients with and without human immunodeficiency virus infection. The Syphilis and HIV Study Group, *N Engl J Med* 337:307, 1997.

Rollend L, Fish D, Childs JE: Transovarial transmission of *Borrelia* spirochetes by *Ixodes scapularis*: A summary of the literature and recent observations, *Ticks Tick Borne Dis* 4:46, 2013.

Roman GC, Roman LN: Occurrence of congenital, cardiovascular, visceral, neurologic, and neuro-ophthalmologic complications in late yaws: a theme for future research, *Rev Infect Dis* 8:760, 1986.

Romanowski B, Sutherland R, Fich GH, et al: Serologic response to treatment of infectious syphilis, *Ann Intern Med* 114:1005, 1991.

Rudenko N, Golovchenko M, Grubhoffer L, et al: Updates on Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato complex with respect to public health, *Ticks Tick Borne Dis* 2:123, 2011.

Sapi E, Pabbati N, Datar A, et al: Improved culture conditions for the growth and detection of Borrelia from human serum, *Int J Med Sci* 10:1, 2013.

Schmidt BL: PCR in laboratory diagnosis of human *Borrelia burgdorferi* infections, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 10:185, 1997.

Schwan TG, Battisti JM, Porcella S, et al: Glycerol-3-phosphate acquisition in spirochetes: distribution and biological activity of glycerophosphodiester phosphodiesterase (GlpQ) among Borrelia species, *J Bacteriol* 185:1346, 2003.

Scrimenti RJ: Erythema chronicum migrans, *Arch Dermatol* 102:104, 1970.

Seltzer EG, Gerber MA, Cartter ML, et al: Long-term outcomes of persons with Lyme disease, *JAMA* 283:609, 2000.

Seltzer EG, Shapiro ED: Misdiagnosis of Lyme disease: when not to order serologic tests, *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 15:762, 1996.

Sena AC, White BL, Sparling PF: Novel Treponema pallidum serologic tests: a paradigm shift in syphilis screening for the 21st century, *Clin Infect Dis* 51:700, 2010.

Shapiro ED: Doxycycline for tick bites—not for everyone, *N Engl J Med* 345:133, 2001.

Shapiro ED, Gerber MA, Holabird NB, et al: A controlled trial of antimicrobial prophylaxis for Lyme disease after deer-tick bites, *N Engl J Med* 327:1769, 1992.

Sheffield JS, Wendel GD Jr, McIntire DD, et al: Effect of genital ulcer disease on HIV-1 coreceptor expression in the female genital tract, *J Infect Dis* 196:1509, 2007.

Smajs D, Norris SJ, Weinstock GM: Genetic diversity in Treponema palidum: implications for pathogenesis, evolution and molecular diagnostics of syphilis and yaws, *Infect Genet Evol* 12:191, 2012.

Smith RP, Schoen RT, Rahn DW, et al: Clinical characteristics and treatment outcome of early Lyme disease patients with microbiologically confirmed erythema migrans, *Ann Intern Med* 136:421, 2002.

Sokolovskiy E, Frigo N, Rotanov S, et al: Guidelines for the laboratory diagnosis of syphilis in East European countries, *JEADV* 23:623, 2009.

Southern PMJ, Sanford JP: Relapsing fever: a clinical and microbiological review, *Medicine* 48:129, 1969.

Stanek G, Reiter M: The expanding Lyme Borrelia complex—clinical significance of genomic species?, *Clin Microbiol Infec* 17:487, 2011.

Stanek G, Wormser GP, Gray J, et al: Lyme borreliosis, *Lancet* 379:461, 2012.

Steere AC: *Borrelia burgdorferi* (Lyme disease, Lyme borreliosis). In Mandell J, Bennett J, Dolin R, editors: *Principles and practice of infectious diseases*, 6th ed, New York, 2005, Churchill Livingstone, p 2798.

Steere AC: Lyme disease, *N Engl J Med* 345:115, 2001.

Steere AC, Broderick TF, Malawista SE: Erythema chronicum migrans Lyme arthritis: epidemiologic evidence for a tick vector, *Am J Epidemiol* 108:312, 1978.

Steere AC, Malawista SE, Hardin JA, et al: Erythema chronicum migrans and Lyme arthritis: the enlarging clinical spectrum, *Ann Intern Med* 86:685, 1977a.

Steere AC, Malawista SE, Syndman DR, et al: Lyme arthritis: an epidemic of oligoarticular arthritis in children and adults in three Connecticut communities, *Arthritis Rheum* 20:7, 1977b.

Steere AC, McHugh G, Damle N, et al: Prospective study of serologic tests for Lyme disease, *Clin Infect Dis* 47:188, 2008.

Steere AC, Sikand VK, Meurice F, et al: Vaccination against Lyme disease with recombinant *Borrelia burgdorferi* outer-surface lipoprotein A with adjuvant. Lyme Disease Vaccine Study Group, *N Engl J Med* 339:209, 1998.

Steere AC, Sikand VK, Schoen RT, et al: Asymptomatic infection with *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *Clin Infect Dis* 37:528, 2003.

Stevenson J, Heath M: Syphilis and HIV infection: an update, *Dermatol Clin* 24:497, 2006.

Stoll BJ, Lee FK, Larsen S, et al: Clinical and serologic evaluation of neonates for congenital syphilis: a continuing diagnostic dilemma, *J Infect Dis* 167:1093, 1993.

Teglbjaerg PS: Intestinal spirochetosis, *Curr Top Pathol* 81:247, 1990.

Thomas DD, Baseman JB, Alderete JF, et al: Enhanced levels of attachment of fibronectin-primed *Treponema pallidum* to extracellular matrix, *Infect Immun* 52:736, 1986.

Traxler RM, Callinan LS, Holman RC, et al: Leptospirosis-associated hospitalizations, United States, 1998-2009, *Emerg Infect Dis* 20:1273, 2014.

Trott DJ, Jensen NS, Saint Girons I, et al: Identification and characterization of *Serpulina pilosicoli* isolates recovered from the blood of critically ill patients, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:482, 1997.

Tsinganou E, Gebbers JO: Human intestinal spirochetosis—a review, *Ger Med Sci* 8:1, 2010.

U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: Screening for syphilis infection in pregnancy: U.S. Preventive Task Force reaffirmation recommendation statement, *Ann Intern Med* 150:705, 2009.

van Dam AP, Kuiper H, Vos K, et al: Different genospecies of *Borrelia burgdorferi* are associated with distinct clinical manifestations of Lyme borreliosis, *Clin Infect Dis* 17:708, 1993.

Varela AS, Luttrell MP, Howerth EW, et al: First culture isolation of *Borrelia lonestari*, putative agent of southern-tick associated rash illness, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:1163, 2004.

Vinetz JM, Glass GE, Flexner CE, et al: Sporadic urban leptospirosis, *Ann Intern Med* 125:794, 1996.

Wang G, van Dam AP, Dankert J: Molecular typing of *Borrelia burgdorferi* sensu lato: taxonomic, epidemiological and clinical implications, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 12:633, 1999.

Wang LN, Li JM: Evaluation of immunoglobulin M and G Western blot and ELISA for screening antibodies to *Treponema pallidum* in blood donors, *Sex Transm Dis* 36:413, 2009.

Wang P, Glowacki MN, Hoet AE, et al: Emergence of *Ixodes scapularis* and *Borrelia burgdorferi*, the Lyme disease vector and agent, in Ohio, *Cell Infect Microbiol* 4:1, 2014.

Warshafsky S, Nowakowski J, Nadelman RB, et al: Efficacy of antibiotic prophylaxis for prevention of Lyme disease, *J Gen Intern Med* 11:329, 1996.

Whooten RM, Weis JJ: Host-pathogen interactions promoting inflammatory Lyme arthritis: use of mouse models for dissection of disease purposes, *Curr Opin Microbiol* 4:274, 2001.

Wicher K, Horowitz HW, Wicher V: Laboratory methods of diagnosis of syphilis for the beginning of the third millennium, *Microbes Infect* 1:1035, 1999.

Wicher V, Wicher K: Pathogenesis of maternal-fetal syphilis revisited, *Clin Infect Dis* 33:354, 2001.

Woods R: Congenital syphilis—persisting pestilence, *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 28:536, 2009.

Wormser GP, Baker PJ, O'Connell S, et al: Critical analysis of treatment trials of rhesus macaques infected with Borrelia burgdorferi reveals important flaws in experimental design, *Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis* 12:535, 2012.

Wormser GP, Bittker S, Cooper D, et al: Yield of large-volume blood cultures in patients with early Lyme disease, *J Infect Dis* 184:1070, 2001.

Wormser GP, Brisson D, Liveris D, et al: *Borrelia burgdorferi* genotype predicts the capacity for hematogenous dissemination during early Lyme disease, *J Infect Dis* 198:1358, 2008.

Wormser GP, Dattwyler RJ, Shapiro ED, et al: The clinical assessment, treatment and prevention of Lyme disease, human granulocytic anaplasmosis and babesiosis: clinical practice guidelines by the Infectious Disease Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 43:1089, 2006.

Wormser GP, Liveris D, Nowakowski J, et al: Association of species subtypes of *Borrelia burgdorferi* with hematogenous dissemination in early Lyme disease, *J Infect Dis* 180:720, 1999.

Wormser GP, Masters E, Liveris D, et al: Microbiologic evaluation of patients from Missouri with erythema migrans, *Clin Infect Dis* 40:423, 2005a.

Wormser GP, Masters E, Nowakowski J, et al: Prospective clinical evaluation of patients from Missouri and New York with erythema migrans-like skin lesions, *Clin Infect Dis* 41:958, 2005b.

Wormser GP, Nowakowski J, Nadelman RB, et al: Impact of clinical variables on *Borrelia burgdorferi*-specific antibody seropositivity in acute-phase sera from patients in North America with culture-confirmed early Lyme disease, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 15:1519, 2008.

Wormser GP, Schriefer M, Aguero-Rosenfeld ME, et al: Single-tier testing with the C6 peptide ELISA kit compared with two-tier testing for Lyme disease, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 75:9, 2013.

Yen-Lieberman B, Daniel J, Means C, et al: Identification of false-positive syphilis antibody results using a semiquantitative algorithm, *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 18:1038, 2011.

Yersin C, Bovet P, Smits H, et al: Field evaluation of a one-step dipstick assay for the diagnosis of human leptospirosis in the Seychelles, *Trop Med Int Health* 4:38, 1999.

Zhang JR, Norris SJ: Genetic variation of the *Borrelia burgdorferi* gene vlsE involves cassette-specific, segmental gene conversion, *Infect Immunol* 66:3698, 1998.

CHAPTER 61

MYCOBACTERIA

Gail L. Woods

MYCOBACTERIUM TUBERCULOSIS COMPLEX, 1187

NONTUBERCULOUS MYCOBACTERIA, 1188
Mycobacterium avium Complex, 1189
Mycobacterium kansasii, 1189
Mycobacterium xenopi, 1189
Mycobacterium genavense, 1189
Mycobacterium marinum, 1189
Mycobacterium haemophilum, 1190
Mycobacterium ulcerans, 1190
Rapidly Growing Mycobacteria, 1190
Mycobacterium leprae, 1190

TESTING FOR LATENT *M. TUBERCULOSIS* INFECTION, 1191

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS, 1191
Specimens, 1191
Microbial Stains, 1191
Culture Methods, 1193
Tests for Identification of Mycobacteria, 1194
Susceptibility Testing, 1195

TREATMENT, 1196

PREVENTION, 1196
Mycobacterium tuberculosis Complex, 1196
Mycobacterium avium Complex, 1196

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1197

KEY POINTS

- *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex is the only mycobacterium that is transmitted from person to person and, therefore, is of public health importance.
- The Mantoux skin test and interferon-γ release assays are useful for identifying persons with latent *M. tuberculosis* infection.
- For optimal detection of mycobacteria in clinical specimens, laboratories should use a fluorochrome stain and a liquid system with or without a concomitant solid medium for culture.
- Nucleic acid amplification testing for direct detection of *M. tuberculosis* complex should be performed on respiratory specimens from patients with suspected tuberculosis.
- Susceptibility testing to the primary antituberculous agents (isoniazid, rifampin, ethambutol, and pyrazinamide) should be performed on all initial isolates of *M. tuberculosis* complex.
- Infections caused by nontuberculous mycobacteria are acquired from the environment (e.g., water).
- The nontuberculous mycobacteria most commonly encountered in the clinical laboratory are *Mycobacterium avium* complex, which causes pulmonary disease and, in immunocompromised patients, disseminated disease; the rapidly growing mycobacteria *Mycobacterium chelonae/Mycobacterium abscessus* group and *Mycobacterium fortuitum* group, which most often cause skin and soft-tissue infections; *Mycobacterium kansasii*, which causes pulmonary infection; and *Mycobacterium marinum*, which causes skin and soft-tissue infections.
- Molecular tests are becoming the standard for identification of mycobacteria and an important adjunct to phenotypic methods for susceptibility testing of *M. tuberculosis*.

Mycobacteria are aerobic, nonmotile, acid alcohol–fast, slightly curved or straight bacilli. The organisms contain high molecular weight (60 to 90 carbons) mycolic acids in their cell walls that on pyrolysis release C22 to C26 straight-chain saturated long-chain acids. Their guanine plus cytosine DNA-based content ratios are in the range of 62 to 70 mol%. Mycobacteria can be divided into two groups: those in the *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex and nontuberculous mycobacteria.

MYCOBACTERIUM TUBERCULOSIS COMPLEX

The tubercle bacilli that make up the *M. tuberculosis* complex (MTBC) include *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Mycobacterium bovis*, *M. bovis Bacille Calmette-Guérin* strain (BCG), *Mycobacterium caprae*, *Mycobacterium pinnipedii*, *Mycobacterium africanum*, *Mycobacterium microti*, and *Mycobacterium canettii*. The species that most commonly infects humans is *M. tuberculosis*. *M. bovis*, which infects many warm-blooded animals (e.g., cattle, dogs, cats, pigs, badgers, deer, elk, and some birds) as well as primates and humans, is responsible for a small fraction of tuberculosis (TB) cases today. M. bovis BCG is used for vaccine purposes in many countries outside the United States. It also is administered intravesically to induce immunostimulation against bladder cancer, and in such situations rarely may cause disseminated disease. *M. africanum* causes TB in humans in tropical Africa but has been reported elsewhere, including the United States, primarily in persons who had lived in Africa. *M. caprae* predominantly infects goats, but also infects cattle and rarely humans (Kubica, 2003). *M. microti* was originally isolated from rodents, but has caused TB in other warm-blooded animals and rarely in humans (Emmanuel et al, 2007). *M. canettii* was first collected in 1969 by Georges Canetti, and it was recognized many years later as having the potential to cause disease in humans (Castets et al, 1968; van Soolingen et al, 1997; Pfyffer et al, 1998). The natural host of *M. pinnipedii* is sea lions, but it can infect other animals and apparently may be transmitted to humans (Kiers et al, 2008).

According to the World Health Organization, the global burden of TB has declined slowly over the past several years, but it remains high (http://www.who.int/tb/publications/global_report/en/). In 2012, there were an estimated 8.6 million (range, 8.3 million to 9.0 million) incident cases of TB worldwide. Of these, 0.5 million occurred in children, 2.9 million in women, and 1.1 million in persons infected with HIV. An estimated 450,000 of these cases were multidrug resistant (MDR-TB), defined as resistance to rifampin or any two of the other primary antituberculous drugs (discussed later in the chapter). Fifty-eight percent of the total TB cases occurred in Southeast Asia and Western Pacific regions, 28% in the African region, 8% in the Eastern Mediterranean region, 4% in the European region, and 3% in the region of the Americas. The five countries with the highest number of cases were India, China, South Africa, Indonesia, and Pakistan. The lowest rates were in the United States, Canada, Western Europe, Japan, Australia, and New Zealand. An estimated 1.3 million people died from TB in 2012, of which 320,000 were infected with HIV and 170,000 had MDR-TB.

In the United States, TB was the leading cause of death at the turn of the 20th century. Mortality then decreased, initially because of public health efforts and later because of antituberculous drugs. Between 1953, when TB became notifiable on a national basis, and 1984, the incidence of TB steadily decreased (Rieder et al, 1989). From 1985 to 1992, a resurgence of TB cases was seen, in large part because of the spread of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), deterioration of the health care infrastructure, and an increase in the number of cases reported among foreign-born persons. In addition to the resurgence, MDR-TB emerged and remains a concern, although to a much lesser degree than in developing countries. Since 1992, the incidence of TB in the United States has declined each

year, and MDR-TB has become uncommon. In 2013, 9588 new cases of TB were reported (incidence, 3.0 cases per 100,000 population); this represents a 4.2% decrease from 2012 (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2014b). The rate among foreign-born persons was about 13 times greater than the rate among U.S.-born persons, and rates among non-Hispanic Asians were nearly 26 times greater than among non-Hispanic whites. Over half (51.3%) of the cases occurred in California, Texas, New York, and Florida. Eighty-six cases of MDR-TB were reported in 2012 (the most recent year for which drug-susceptibility test results are complete), and 88.4% of these occurred in foreign-born persons. Appropriate treatment of MDR-TB is critical, because mismanagement can result in extensively drug-resistant TB (XDR-TB), defined as MDR-TB plus resistance to any fluoroquinolone and any second-line injectable antituberculosis agent (e.g., amikacin, kanamycin, capreomycin).

Tubercle bacilli are transmitted primarily via inhalation of dried residues of small infected droplets (1 to 10 μm in diameter). Infection also may be acquired by direct inoculation of abraded skin—an event most likely to occur when pathologists or other laboratory personnel handle infected tissues. In addition, *M. bovis* may be transmitted from cattle to humans by drinking contaminated raw milk or by respiratory exposure to live infected cattle or their carcasses, from humans to cattle via exposure to urine from persons with urinary tract infections due to *M. bovis*, and from cattle and wild reservoirs to cattle probably by respiratory secretions.

The most important source of infection is an undiagnosed person with cavitary (and sputum smear–positive) pulmonary disease. The risk for active pulmonary disease is low after one exposure to the organism but increases under conditions of stress or in a confined environment where repeated exposures to the organism occur. Most persons who become infected with *M. tuberculosis* do not develop active disease. The lifetime risk for active disease is 5% to 10% for immunocompetent persons. For persons infected with both MTBC and HIV, in contrast, the risk for developing TB is 7% to 10% per year.

Persons at increased risk for MTBC infection are close contacts of those with known or suspected active TB, foreign-born persons from an area with a high incidence of active TB (e.g., Asia, Africa), persons who visit a country with a high prevalence of active TB, residents and employees of congregate settings whose clients are at increased risk for active TB (e.g., correctional facilities, homeless shelters), health care workers who care for patients at increased risk for active TB, and persons who abuse drugs or alcohol. Factors that increase the risk for progression of infection to active TB include HIV infection, age younger than 5 years, immunosuppressive therapy, infection with MTBC within the past 2 years, history of inadequately treated active TB, silicosis, diabetes mellitus, chronic renal failure, various cancers, gastrectomy or jejunoileal bypass, weight <90% of ideal body weight, cigarette smoking, and abuse of drugs and/or alcohol.

Based on analysis of its genomic sequence, *M. tuberculosis* does not appear to encode typical bacterial virulence factors (e.g., toxins). However, certain genes and gene products have been identified as key factors enabling *M. tuberculosis* to cause disease. *PhoP* has been shown to have an important role in virulence, because *phoP* mutants grow very poorly in macrophages and in mice (Ryndak, 2008). Phthiocerol dimycocerosates, which are lipids found at the outermost layers of the cell envelope, are required for optimal multiplication and persistence of *M. tuberculosis* in mice lungs, and phenolic glycolipids are thought to be involved in the hypervirulence of certain *M. tuberculosis* strains (Gordon et al, 2009). In addition, the ESX secretion systems, which are specialized secretion systems present in many gram-positive bacteria, are important in pathogenesis, because mutants lacking the system or its substrates are attenuated in cultured macrophages and animal models of infection. Mutants with a deletion spanning much of the ESX-1 locus demonstrate defective cell-to-cell spread, altered cytokine profiles, and failure to inhibit phagolysosome fusion in cultured cells (Tobin, 2008).

The usual host response to infection with MTBC is activation of the cell-mediated immune system. During primary (initial) infection, inhaled bacilli travel to the alveolar spaces, where they are ingested by resident macrophages. These macrophages are unable to kill the tubercle bacilli, which multiply intracellularly during the first several days after infection. Macrophages infected with mycobacteria migrate to regional tracheobronchial lymph nodes and present sensitizing antigen(s) to immunocompetent T cells, or they enter the lymphatics and blood and travel back to the lungs (primarily the apices) and to distant organs such as lymph nodes, kidneys, epiphyseal areas of the long bones, vertebral bodies, and meninges, where bacilli continue to multiply until the cellular immune response is activated.

Immunocompetent T cells migrate from regional lymph nodes to the site of infection in the lung. There they release chemotactic, migration-inhibitory, and mitogenic cytokines, which stimulate recruitment of blood-derived monocytes and lymphocytes, macrophage and lymphocyte division, and macrophage activation. Activated macrophages have enhanced microbicidal activity, and they produce cytokines such as interleukin-1, interferon-γ, and tumor necrosis factor, which stimulate or regulate other components of the immune system, properties that help control infection. The cytokines and lytic enzymes released by the macrophages also contribute to concomitant local tissue destruction. Over time, the activated T cell population declines and is replaced by long-lived memory immune T cells, which protect against reinfection with MTBC and provide some cross-protection against infection with other mycobacteria. Despite the limitation of further mycobacterial multiplication in primary and metastatic foci by the activated macrophages and memory T cells, a residual nidus of infection remains indefinitely in the lung (most frequently in the apex, where the oxygen tension is high) and less often in distant sites. Therefore, the potential for reactivation of disease in these quiescent foci exists during periods of immunosuppression.

The primary focus of pulmonary infection, called the *Gohn lesion*, is usually subjacent to the pleura in the lower part of the upper lobes or in the upper part of the lower lobes of one lung, corresponding to areas of the lung that receive the greatest volume flow of inspired air. Lesions (tubercles) are well-circumscribed, 1- to 2-cm–diameter areas of grayish white consolidation with soft to necrotic centers. Similar-appearing tubercles typically are found in the regional tracheobronchial lymph nodes, and these plus the primary lung lesion are termed the *Gohn complex*. Microscopically, tubercles are composed of well-circumscribed caseating or noncaseating granulomas; organisms may be seen in sections stained with an acid-fast stain. Over time, these lesions are replaced by hyalinized fibrous tissue and eventually calcify. Lesions of miliary tuberculosis are small (one to several millimeters in diameter), distinct, yellow-white areas of consolidation without gross caseation that histologically resemble tubercles. The ability to form granulomas depends on the immunocompetence of the host. Individuals infected with HIV, for example, may have extensive necrosis, many neutrophils, microabscesses, and numerous acid-fast bacilli (AFB), without granulomas.

In the United States, pulmonary TB accounts for about 85% of cases of active disease. The clinical presentation may be insidious, with gradual onset of constitutional symptoms over months: catarrhal, with productive cough often attributed to a bad cold or lingering bronchitis; pneumonia- or flu-like, with high fever, aches and pains, and cough; hemoptoic, with acute onset of blood-streaked sputum; or pleuritic. Extrapulmonary TB may be localized but more commonly involves multiple organs with or without concurrent lung infection. Multiorgan TB occurs predominantly in infants and young children, older adults, and immunocompromised individuals, especially those infected with both HIV and MTBC. Additionally, most infections with *M. bovis* in the United States are extrapulmonary, involving lymph nodes, the gastrointestinal tract, bones, and kidneys, and most commonly occur in children of Hispanic ethnicity (Hlavsa et al, 2008; Rodwell et al, 2008). Infrequently, infection follows intravesical instillation of *M. bovis* BCG for treatment of superficial bladder carcinoma (Lamm et al, 1992; Kristjansson et al, 1993).

NONTUBERCULOUS MYCOBACTERIA

The nontuberculous mycobacteria (NTM; also called *mycobacteria other than tubercle bacilli*) may be categorized on the basis of colony pigmentation before and after exposure to light and growth rate on a solid medium as described by Runyon in 1957 (Table 61-1) (Runyon, 1959). This classification system, however, has limits. For example, *M. kansasii* is usually a

TABLE 61-1
Runyon's Classification of the Nontuberculous Mycobacteria

Classification	Description of Colonies
Photochromogen	Not pigmented unless exposed to light (optimally during their early growth and with good aeration of the surface)
Scotochromogen	Pigmented when grown in the dark and in light
Nonchromogen	Not pigmented when grown in the dark or in light
Rapid grower	Growth on solid media in ≤7 days

photochromogen but rarely is nonchromogenic or scotochromogenic. Members of the *M. avium* complex are nonchromogenic in Runyon's scheme, but some isolates produce slightly pigmented colonies after prolonged incubation, potentially causing incorrect classification as a scotochromogen. *Mycobacterium szulgai* is a scotochromogen at 37° C and a photochromogen at 25° C. Moreover, when a liquid medium is used for mycobacterial culture, as is currently recommended (discussed in the section regarding culture methods), growth rates used by Runyon for classification do not apply. *Mycobacterium leprae* is unique among mycobacteria by virtue of the fact that it has not yet been cultivated in vitro.

In general, little is known about the antigens associated with virulence of the NTM, and the immune response to infection with these mycobacteria is poorly understood. With current molecular techniques, more than 100 species of NTM have been identified. Select potential pathogens are reviewed in the following sections. An extensive description of the more recently described and infrequently isolated mycobacteria is found in the excellent review by Tortoli (2003). *Mycobacterium gordonae*, often referred to as the "tap water bacillus," is a common laboratory contaminant and rarely causes disease in humans.

MYCOBACTERIUM AVIUM COMPLEX

The *M. avium* complex (MAC) is a heterogeneous group of mycobacteria classically composed of two taxa: *M. avium*, which clinically appears to be the more important pathogen in disseminated disease, and *Mycobacterium intracellulare*, which appears to be more important in respiratory disease. However, with the availability of molecular tools, new species and subspecies have been discovered. Currently, the species *M. avium* consists of three subspecies: subsp. *avium*, subsp. *silvaticum*, and subsp. *paratuberculosis*. New species that have been proposed are *M. chimaera* sp. nov., *M. colombiense*, *M. vulneris*, *M. marseillense*, *M. timonense*, and *M. bouchedurhonense*. These species have such similar growth characteristics and biochemical reactions that they often are not distinguished in the clinical microbiology laboratory; isolates commonly are reported as MAC.

MAC bacilli are ubiquitous in the environment. They have been isolated from water, soil, food, house dust, and several animals, but the specific environmental sources responsible for human infection are not known (Inderlied et al, 1993; Falkinham, 1996). The most likely portal of entry is the gastrointestinal tract, but transmission via the respiratory tract is also possible. From sites of colonization, organisms enter the blood and infect many organs, especially those of the monocyte-macrophage system. In many clinical microbiology laboratories in the United States today, MAC is the most frequently isolated mycobacterium.

For many years, pulmonary disease caused by MAC occurred most often in white older adult men who had underlying chronic lung disease or who had undergone gastrectomy; however, since the mid to late 1980s, it has become more common in persons without predisposing factors, especially older women (Prince, 1989; Dhillon & Watanakunakorn, 2000; Griffith et al, 2007). Disseminated MAC occurs almost exclusively in immunosuppressed individuals, especially persons with advanced acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). In the United States, MAC was the most common cause of systemic bacterial infection in patients with AIDS in the late 1980s and early 1990s (Horsburgh, 1991). The numbers of such cases, however, decreased since highly active antiretroviral therapy became widely available (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009a). The major risk factor for disseminated MAC in AIDS patients is the degree of immune dysfunction, indicated by the $CD4^+$ lymphocyte count, as the disease is rare in individuals whose $CD4^+$ lymphocyte count is over 50/μL.

Manifestations of disease caused by MAC depend on the site and the extent of infection. Pulmonary disease may manifest as bronchiectasis or may mimic TB. Disseminated disease in persons without AIDS is manifested by fever, weight loss, bone pain, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, and skin lesions. In those with AIDS, persistent fever, weight loss, and diarrhea are most common; anorexia, weakness, lymphadenopathy, or hepatomegaly also may occur (Inderlied et al, 1993; Griffith et al, 2007; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009a). Significant laboratory abnormalities include anemia and elevated alkaline phosphatase. Cervical lymphadenitis caused by MAC most often affects children but also occurs in adults. Other manifestations of infection with MAC are synovitis, genitourinary tract disease, cutaneous lesions, deep infection of the hand, osteomyelitis, meningitis, ulcer of the colon, and pericarditis (Wolinsky, 1979; Woods & Washington, 1987; Inderlied et al, 1993).

The histologic findings of lesions caused by MAC vary. Caseating granulomas with AFB, indistinguishable from TB; pulmonary interstitial fibrosis with organizing pneumonia; necrotizing granulomatous vasculitis resembling Wegener's granulomatosis; and, especially in persons with AIDS, aggregates of foamy macrophages containing many intracellular AFB may be seen.

MYCOBACTERIUM KANSASII

M. kansasii, first described as the *yellow bacillus*, accounted for 3% of mycobacterial isolates in the United States in 1979 and 1980; the highest numbers of cases were reported from California, Texas, Louisiana, Illinois, and Florida (Buhler & Pollack, 1953; Good & Snider, 1982). The natural reservoir of *M. kansasii* is unknown; however, it has been recovered from water samples (Falkinham, 1996). Pulmonary disease is most common in males 50 to 60 years of age living in urban areas, among certain occupational groups (miners, welders, sandblasters, and painters), and among individuals with pneumoconioses and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Disseminated disease generally affects persons with impaired cellular immunity.

The most common manifestation of disease caused by *M. kansasii* is chronic cavitary pulmonary lesions, usually involving the upper lobes (Griffith et al, 2007). Extrapulmonary manifestations include cervical lymphadenitis in children, cutaneous disease, musculoskeletal involvement (carpal tunnel syndrome, synovitis, arthritis, tendinitis and fasciitis, or osteomyelitis), disseminated disease, isolated genitourinary tract disease, and pericarditis. Histologic findings of lesions caused by *M. kansasii* vary and include caseating or noncaseating granulomas and, especially in skin lesions, necrosis or foci of acute and chronic inflammation without well-formed granulomas. AFB are common in lung and lymph node tissue but are seen less frequently in tissue from other sites.

MYCOBACTERIUM XENOPI

M. xenopi was first isolated from a toad in 1957 and was recognized as a human pathogen in 1965 (Costrini, 1981). It has been cultured from hot and cold water taps, hospital hot water generators and storage tanks, and other environmental sources. Birds are a possible natural reservoir. Most pulmonary infections caused by *M. xenopi* have been reported from Canada, Europe, and Great Britain; it is an uncommon cause of mycobacterial disease in the United States. Disease has occurred only in adults, more frequently in males than in females. Most persons have preexisting lung damage or another predisposing condition, such as an extrapulmonary malignancy, alcoholism, diabetes mellitus, or immunosuppressive therapy. Pulmonary disease may be chronic, subacute, or acute; symptoms are indistinguishable from those associated with disease caused by *M. kansasii*. Focal extrapulmonary infections (osteomyelitis, arthritis, lymphadenitis) and disseminated disease are uncommon, but the latter has been reported in persons with AIDS (Tecson-Tumang & Bright, 1984).

MYCOBACTERIUM GENAVENSE

M. genavense was first isolated in 1991 in Switzerland from the blood of a patient with AIDS (Böttger et al, 1991). Conditions for detection in the laboratory were described shortly thereafter (Coyle et al, 1992). Disease occurs predominantly in immunocompromised patients. The most common presentation is disseminated disease in HIV-infected patients, which clinically is very similar to disseminated MAC (Maschek et al, 1994; Tortoli et al, 1998; Griffith et al, 2007). Other manifestations include enteritis, genital and soft-tissue infections, and lymphadenitis.

MYCOBACTERIUM MARINUM

M. marinum was recognized as a human pathogen in 1951 (Norden & Linell, 1951). It causes chronic granulomatous infections involving skin and soft tissue, often called *swimming pool granuloma* or *fish tank granuloma*, and occasionally bone (Lewis et al, 2003; Aubry et al, 2002; Griffith et al, 2007). Human infection is typically acquired via trauma to the skin during contact with contaminated nonchlorinated fresh water or salt water, but it may be acquired via trauma unassociated with water contact or contact with water in the absence of preceding trauma. A single papulonodular lesion usually appears 2 to 3 weeks after inoculation, most commonly on the elbow, knee, foot, toe, or finger, and often becomes verrucous or ulcerated (Ang et al, 2000). Occasionally, an abscess forms at the site of inoculation, and several secondary nodules develop and progress centrally along the lymphatics, resembling sporotrichosis. In immunocompromised persons, cutaneous lesions may become disseminated. Extracutaneous manifestations are uncommon: Synovitis, osteomyelitis, and ocular and laryngeal lesions have been reported (Woods & Washington, 1987).

The histology of skin lesions varies with the stage of infection. Early on, neutrophil aggregates are surrounded by histiocytes. Later, lymphocytes, epithelioid histiocytes, occasional Langhans giant cells, and foci of fibrinoid necrosis are seen. In lesions present for longer than 6 months, aggregates of lymphocytes are found in the dermis. Stains for AFB are usually negative, but organisms may be seen within histiocytes.

MYCOBACTERIUM HAEMOPHILUM

M. haemophilum was first described in 1978 but very probably was the nonculturable AFB recognized in skin ulcers in 1972 and 1974 (Lomwardias & Madge, 1972; Feldman & Hershfield, 1974; Sompolinsky et al, 1978). The organism is unique among mycobacteria in its growth requirement for hemoglobin or hemin. Human infections caused by *M. haemophilum* are uncommon, usually seen in persons who have an underlying immunodeficiency such as lymphoma, exogenous immunosuppression after organ transplantation, or AIDS, but lymphadenitis in otherwise healthy children has been reported (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1991; Lindeboom et al, 2005). Disease most commonly is manifested by multiple cutaneous nodules, ulcers, or painful swellings, typically involving the extremities, which occasionally become abscesses and open fistulas draining purulent material. Microscopically, lesions show foci of necrosis without caseation surrounded by a polymorphous inflammatory infiltrate with occasional Langhans giant cells in the lower dermis. AFB are seen singly or in small clusters, often within cells.

MYCOBACTERIUM ULCERANS

M. ulcerans is endemic in areas of Zaire, Uganda, Nigeria, Ghana, Cameroon, Malaysia, New Guinea, Guyana, Mexico, and Australia located between latitudes 25° N and 38° S. In all endemic areas, disease is more frequent among children younger than 15 years of age and is slightly more common in males (Debacker et al, 2004; Piersimoni & Scarparo, 2009). The natural reservoir of *M. ulcerans* and the usual route of its transmission to humans remain unknown.

Eponyms for disease caused by *M. ulcerans* include *Bairnsdale ulcer*, for the area in Australia where it was first recognized, and *Buruli ulcer* or *Buruli disease*, after the area of Uganda reporting the greatest number of cases (Amofah et al, 2002). The disease begins as one or, rarely, multiple painless boils or subcutaneous lumps on an exposed area, most often the leg, which possibly was a site of previous trauma. After several weeks, the lump ulcerates, and satellite nodules and ulcers may appear. Lymph nodes typically are not enlarged, and affected individuals are afebrile and without systemic symptoms unless lesions become secondarily infected with bacteria. Unless treatment is begun early and adherence is good, the infection spreads to the bone, causing deformities.

RAPIDLY GROWING MYCOBACTERIA

Rapidly growing mycobacteria are ubiquitous; they have been cultured from soil, freshwater lakes and rivers, seawater, wastewater from hospitals, reagents and wash solutions used in hospitals, drinking water, raw milk, and dust. The species of rapidly growing mycobacteria that most commonly cause human disease are *M. fortuitum* group (predominantly *M. fortuitum*) and *M. chelonae/M. abscessus* group (predominantly *M. chelonae* and *M. abscessus* subsp. *abscessus* [formerly *M. abscessus*]). Species within the *M. fortuitum* group are *M. fortuitum*, *M. peregrinum*, *M. senegalense*, *M. setense*, *M. septicum*, *M. porcinum*, *M. houstonense*, *M. boenickei*, *M. brisbanense*, and *M. neworleansense*. Identification to the species level requires molecular techniques, but in most cases has little clinical relevance; it may, however, be useful for certain epidemiologic applications. Species in the *M. chelonae/M. abscessus* group are *M. chelonae*, *M. immunogenum*, *M. abscessus* subsp. *abscessus*, *M. abscessus* subsp. *bolletii* (formerly *M. massiliense* and *M. bolletii*), and *M. salmoniphilum*. Differentiating *M. chelonae* from *M. abscessus* subsp. *abscessus* is recommended because the latter is more resistant to antimicrobial agents (Brown-Elliott & Wallace, 2001). Other rapidly growing mycobacteria associated with human disease are *Mycobacterium mucogenicum* group, *Mycobacterium goodii*, *Mycobacterium cosmeticum*, *Mycobacterium neoaurum*, *Mycobacterium peregrinum*, *Mycobacterium canariasense*, and, rarely, *Mycobacterium smegmatis* (Brown-Elliott & Wallace, 2002; Griffith et al, 2007).

The most common manifestation of disease due to rapidly growing mycobacteria is skin and soft-tissue infection, typically following a penetrating injury (trauma or surgical procedure) with possible soil or water contamination, although outbreaks have been associated with administration of diphtheria-pertussis-tetanus-polio vaccines, histamine injections, lidocaine administration using a jet injector, use of foot baths in nail salons, and liposuction (Wallace, 1983; Brown-Elliott, 2002; Piersimoni & Scarparo, 2009). Primary cutaneous/subcutaneous disease may present as localized cellulitis, draining abscesses, or minimally tender nodules, generally appearing 3 weeks to 12 months (most often 4 to 6 weeks) after the penetrating injury in persons with an intact immune system. Osteomyelitis is an occasional complication, especially following puncture wounds to the feet. Postoperative infections are characterized by a nonhealing wound or breakdown of a healed wound with serous drainage in a person with minimal systemic symptoms. They generally develop 3 weeks to 3 months after the procedure, especially median sternotomy, augmentation mammaplasty, or insertion of a percutaneous catheter. Disseminated skin and soft-tissue abscesses in which no primary source of infection is evident typically occur in immunocompromised adults, especially those receiving corticosteroid therapy.

A less common manifestation of infection with rapidly growing mycobacteria is chronic pulmonary disease. It is most often seen in patients with underlying cystic fibrosis or bronchiectasis, is usually caused by *M. abscessus*, and typically resembles disease due to *M. kansasii* or MAC, except that cavitation is uncommon. Endocarditis involving a prosthetic valve has been reported, usually becoming manifest 4 to 12 weeks after surgery. Rarely, rapidly growing mycobacteria cause keratitis and corneal ulceration after trauma, or cervical lymphadenitis. A very thorough description of disease caused by rapidly growing mycobacteria is found in the excellent review by Brown-Elliott and Wallace (2002).

Lesions caused by rapidly growing mycobacteria are characterized histologically by necrosis with minimal caseation and a mixed inflammatory infiltrate composed of neutrophils and granulomas with foreign body or Langhans giant cells; lipid-laden macrophages are seen occasionally. Clumps of extracellular AFB are found within aggregates of neutrophils in less than one third of cases. In lung tissue, foamy macrophages may be seen in a pattern resembling lipoid pneumonia.

MYCOBACTERIUM LEPRAE

M. leprae is the etiologic agent of leprosy, also called *Hansen's disease* (Scollard et al, 2006). It is unique among the mycobacteria by virtue of the fact that it has not been cultivated. Useful animal models of infection are the mouse footpad model and the nine-banded armadillo. *M. leprae* has been recognized in nearly every part of the world at some time. The reported number of new cases worldwide registered each year remains between 500,000 and 700,000 (Lockwood & Suneetha, 2005). During 1994 to 2011, there were 2.323 new cases of leprosy in the United States, with an average annual incidence rate of 0.45 cases per 1 million persons (0.13 cases per 1 million persons among U.S.-born persons versus 2.81 cases per 1 million persons among foreign-born persons (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2014a). Persons born in Oceania were the population with the highest rate of leprosy in the United States, with a rate of diagnosis more than 10 times that of any other region.

Leprosy predominantly affects humans but is also a natural infection of wild armadillos in Louisiana, Arkansas, and Texas, and spontaneous cases have been described in mangabey monkeys (Hastings et al, 1988). The mechanism of transmission of *M. leprae* is unknown, but person-to-person spread via aerosolization of organisms from the nose of a person with active lepromatous disease (see later), which then contacts the nasal mucosa of another individual, is the favored theory. Transmission also may occur through intact skin or via penetrating wounds, such as thorns or the bite of an arthropod. Breast milk from lactating women with lepromatous disease contains bacilli that may be transmitted to infants, and transplacental transmission of *M. leprae* is possible. Cases of human leprosy following contact with armadillos have been reported (Lumpkin et al, 1983). Moreover, the discovery of a naturally occurring leprosy-like disease among armadillos and the fact that sporadic cases of leprosy occur in persons who have no known contact with human leprosy suggest that nonhuman sources of *M. leprae* may exist (Blake et al, 1987).

Most persons effectively resist infection with *M. leprae*. Resistance depends on an effective cell-mediated immune response to *M. leprae* antigens, as occurs in tuberculoid leprosy. In persons who lack specific cell-mediated immunity to these antigens, bacilli multiply within macrophages, eventually resulting in widely disseminated lepromatous leprosy. The defect in cellular immunity, which may involve T lymphocyte function or interaction of T lymphocytes with macrophages, is apparently specific for antigens to *M. leprae* rather than a generalized defect. The lesions of leprosy develop after a 2- to 5-year incubation period, varying in appearance depending on the host's immune response. Leprosy always involves peripheral nerves, almost always involves the skin, and frequently involves

mucous membranes. The three cardinal signs of the disease are skin lesions, areas of cutaneous anesthesia, and enlarged peripheral nerves.

The system outlined by Ridey and Jopling (presented in the following section) is still used to classify the spectrum of clinical and histopathologic forms of leprosy (Ridley & Jopling, 1964). Indeterminate leprosy, the earliest sign of disease, is characterized by one or a few hypopigmented skin macules with minimal local sensory loss. In about 75% of cases, the disease heals spontaneously; in the rest, it progresses, often after a prolonged period.

The polar types of leprosy—lepromatous leprosy, the widespread anergic form of the disease, and tuberculoid leprosy, the localized form—are stable clinically. Lepromatous leprosy is characterized by cutaneous lesions ranging from diffuse generalized skin involvement to widespread, symmetrically distributed nodules (called *lepromas*) filled with organisms. Lesions generally involve the cooler parts of the body surface: the anterior third of the eye, the nasal mucosa, and the superficial peripheral nerve trunks. In advanced disease, lesions are accompanied by sensory loss from involvement of dermal nerve fibers. Microscopically, lesions show foamy histiocytes containing many AFB; few or no lymphocytes; minimal intraneural inflammation; and many AFB in nerves, the perineurium, blood vessel walls, and arrector muscles. In tuberculoid leprosy, one or a few well-circumscribed anesthetic macules or plaques develop, often accompanied by an enlarged peripheral nerve near the skin lesions. Histologically, lesions demonstrate noncaseating granulomas in the nerves and dermis, extending to involve the basal layer of the epidermis; few, if any, AFB are present. Borderline leprosy, a clinically unstable condition, encompasses the types of disease between the polar forms. It may develop features more closely resembling tuberculoid disease through a process termed *upgrading*, or features more like those of lepromatous disease, called *downgrading*.

TESTING FOR LATENT *M. TUBERCULOSIS* INFECTION

Two types of tests may be used to detect latent infection with MTBC: the tuberculin skin test (TST) and interferon-γ release assays; however, neither will differentiate active disease from latent infection. With the TST, persons infected with MTBC develop a hypersensitivity reaction to proteins of the bacilli, which make up the skin test reagent purified protein derivative (PPD). The preferred method of skin testing is the Mantoux test, performed by intracutaneous injection of 0.1 mL of intermediate-strength (5 tuberculin units) PPD-S. The reaction is interpreted after 48 to 72 hours by measuring the diameter of induration in millimeters (Huebner et al, 1993). Induration of 5 mm or greater is considered positive in persons infected with HIV, those who have had recent close contact with someone who has infectious TB, and those who have chest radiograph findings consistent with old healed TB. A reaction of 10 mm or greater is positive in persons who do not meet the previous criteria but who have other risk factors for TB. Included in this group are foreign-born persons from countries where the prevalence of TB is high (such as Asia, Africa, or Latin America); injection drug users; medically underserved, low-income populations, especially racial or ethnic minorities; residents of long-term care institutions; and persons who have a medical condition associated with increased risk for TB (e.g., silicosis, gastrectomy, jejunoileal bypass, 10% or more below ideal body weight, chronic renal failure, diabetes mellitus, treatment with high-dose corticosteroids or with other immunosuppressive drugs, malignancies). A reaction of 15 mm or greater is positive in all other persons. Interpretation is difficult in those immunized with BCG.

False-positive PPD reactions may occur in persons with NTM infection and in those immunized with BCG. False-negative reactions may be due to poor technique or improper storage of the reagent. If the test is administered appropriately, false-negative reactions are uncommon in relatively healthy people but occur in up to 20% of individuals with known TB when they are first tested. Most of these false-negative reactions are attributed to the general illness and revert to positive after 2 to 3 weeks of therapy when health is restored. Factors causing a state of general anergy, such as protein malnutrition, concurrent viral infection, sarcoidosis, malignancy (especially lymphoma), immunosuppressive or corticosteroid therapy, and infection with HIV, also may cause a false-negative tuberculin reaction.

The Mantoux test generally remains positive as long as viable bacilli persist in quiescent foci. However, the reaction may wane below positive with increasing age, a phenomenon that occurs most frequently in those older than 55 years of age. In these individuals, the reaction will be boosted (or become positive) if retesting is performed as early as 1 week after the first test, a reaction termed the *booster effect*.

Interferon-γ release assays (IGRAs) became commercially available in the early 21st century (Madkukar et al, 2008; Lalvani & Pareek, 2009). These are in vitro tests that are based on the detection of interferon-γ released by T cells in response to *M. tuberculosis* proteins (ESAT-6, CFP-10, TB7.7) not present in *M. bovis* BCG or most NTM (except *M. kansasii*, *M. szulgai*, and *M. marinum*). Performance of IGRAs requires collection of blood during a single visit, and results are available within 24 hours. Advantages of IGRAs over the TST include improved sensitivity in immunosuppressed persons (although false-negative results may occur) and children, and much better specificity in persons who have been vaccinated with BCG (Mori, 2009; Ruhwald & Ravn, 2009). According to experts at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), IGRAs can be used in all circumstances in which the TST is used, with the following preferences (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2010). An IGRA is preferred for testing persons who have received BCG vaccine and persons from groups that have been shown to have a low rate of returning to have the TST read (e.g., homeless persons and drug users). A TST is preferred for testing children younger than 5 years of age, although use of both a TST and an IGRA may increase diagnostic sensitivity in this age group. More recent data have shown that using an IGRA as a substitute for TST to screen for latent MTBC infection in health care workers is problematic. For example, the Quantiferon Gold In-Tube assay has been shown to have an unacceptably high number of false-positive results, poor reproducibility, especially with values near the cutoff for a positive, and a low predictive value of conversions (i.e., negative to positive result from one year to the next) (Joshi et al, 2012, 2014).

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

SPECIMENS

Specimens recommended for diagnosis of mycobacterial infection are listed in Table 61-2. Samples from contaminated sites such as sputum and other respiratory secretions, gastric secretions, urine, and feces must be decontaminated prior to inoculation of media to prevent normal flora from overgrowing and thus masking the presence of mycobacteria, which grow more slowly. Concentrating the specimen after decontamination increases the sensitivity of smear and culture. Specimens from normally sterile body sites such as blood, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), pleural and peritoneal fluid, and tissues may be inoculated directly without decontamination.

Processing and inoculation of specimens for mycobacterial culture should be performed in a biologic safety cabinet. The *N*-acetyl-L-cysteine (NALC)–sodium hydroxide procedure (Fig. 61-1) is the most common method used in the clinical laboratory to liquefy, decontaminate, and concentrate specimens for detection of mycobacteria. Potentially contaminated specimens should be refrigerated if they cannot be processed immediately. Before proceeding to the steps outlined in Figure 61-1, additional handling is necessary for some specimens. Gastric lavage specimens should be processed immediately, but if a delay cannot be avoided, traditionally it has been recommended that 10% sodium hydroxide should be added until the pH of the sample is neutral. However, data from one study suggest that neutralization may not be necessary (Parashar et al, 2013). If more than 10 mL of gastric secretions is collected, the sample is centrifuged at 3000 to 3600 *g* for 20 to 30 minutes, the supernatant is decanted, and the sediment is processed as shown in Figure 61-1. For feces, 1 to 2 g of a formed sample or 5 mL of a liquid specimen is placed in a 50-mL centrifuge tube, and sterile filtered distilled water is added to obtain a volume of 10 mL. The suspension is agitated on a vortex mixer, filtered through gauze, and then processed as outlined. Urine specimens are divided into two to four 50-mL centrifuge tubes and are centrifuged at 3000 to 3600 *g* for 30 minutes. The supernatant is decanted, leaving about 2 mL of sediment in each tube. Tubes are mixed on a vortex mixer, sediments are combined, and, if necessary, distilled water is added to obtain a volume of 10 mL, which then is decontaminated as shown in Figure 61-1.

MICROBIAL STAINS

In smears stained with the Gram stain, most mycobacteria appear as slender, poorly stained, beaded gram-positive bacilli, but sometimes the bacilli do not take up the crystal violet or safranin and appear "gram neutral" or as "Gram ghosts" (Fig. 61-2). Similar ghost images of bacilli may be found in macrophages in smears stained with the Wright or Papanicolaou stain. In general, specimens (except blood) collected from persons with suspected mycobacterial infection should be examined microscopically for organisms. However, to improve cost efficiency, many laboratories

TABLE 61-2
Mycobacterial Diseases and Specimens for Diagnosis

Disease	Common *Mycobacterium* Species	Specimens
Pneumonia	MTBC, *M. kansasii,* MAC, *M. abscessus* subsp. *abscessus*	Sputum (early morning, deep cough on 3 consecutive days), BAL fluid, lung tissue, pleural fluid, gastric contents
Disseminated	MTBC, MAC	Blood, bone marrow, involved tissue
Lymphadenitis	MTBC, MAC	Lymph node aspirate or biopsy
Skin, soft tissue	*M. fortuitum, M. abscessus/M. chelonae* group, *M. marinum, M. haemophilum, M. ulcerans*	Aspirate or biopsy of lesion
	M. leprae	Smears of nasal secretions and skin slits, biopsy of lesion
Musculoskeletal	MTBC, *M. fortuitum, M. abscessus/M. chelonae* group, *M. marinum, M. kansasii*	Joint fluid, synovium, bone
Meningitis	MTBC	Cerebrospinal fluid
Brain abscess	MTBC	Abscess material
Genitourinary	*M. tuberculosis, M. bovis* BCG	Urine (early morning), involved tissue—kidney, bladder (*M. bovis* BCG), endometrium, fallopian tube, prostate, seminal vesicles, epididymis
Gastrointestinal	*M. tuberculosis, M. bovis*, MAC	Tissue, feces
Peritonitis	MTBC	Peritoneal biopsy, peritoneal fluid
Hepatitis	MTBC, MAC	Liver tissue
Pericarditis	MTBC	Pericardium, pericardial tissue
Catheter-related infection	Rapidly growing mycobacteria	Blood

Modified with permission from Woods GL: Mycobacteria. In: Woods GL, Gutierrez Y, editors: *Diagnostic pathology of infectious diseases*, Philadelphia, 1993, Lea & Febiger, p 378.
BAL, Bronchoalveolar lavage; *BCG,* bacille Calmette-Guérin; *MAC, M. avium* complex; *MTBC, M. tuberculosis* complex.

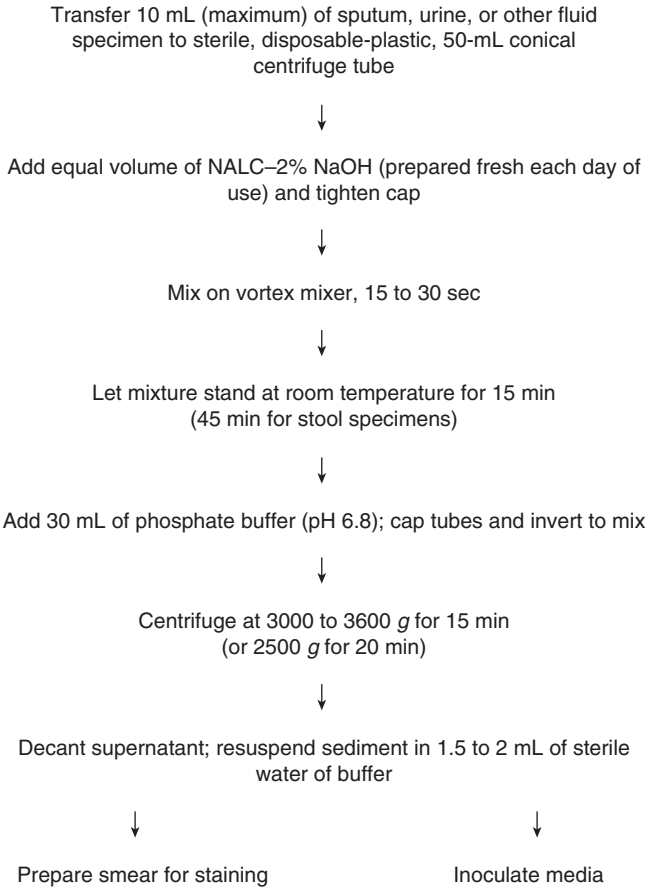


Figure 61-1 **Protocol for decontamination, using 2% sodium hydroxide–*N*-acetyl-L-cysteine, and concentration of specimens for detection of mycobacteria by smear and culture.**

do not prepare smears of specimens in which AFB rarely are seen, such as CSF, urine, and bone marrow. To prepare a smear, two to three drops of the concentrated sediment are spread uniformly on a microscope slide, which then is fixed for 15 minutes at 80° C or for 1 to 2 hours at 65° to 70° C on an electric hot plate.

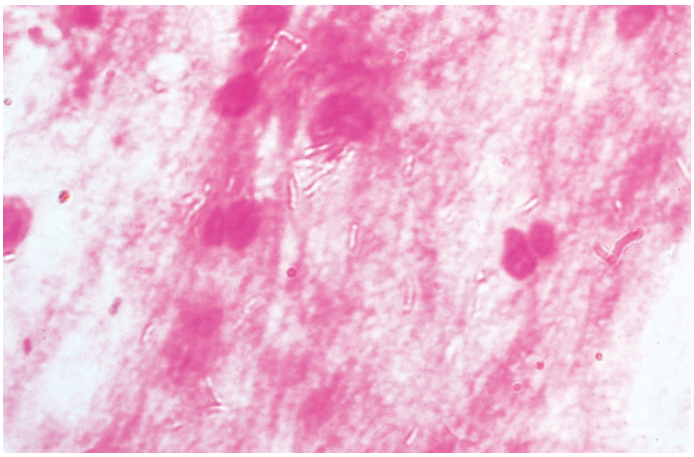


Figure 61-2 **Smear of a sputum specimen stained with Gram stain shows "ghost cells" (mycobacterial culture grew *Mycobacterium tuberculosis;* Gram stain, 400×).**

Two types of stain detect AFB: carbol fuchsin (the classic Ziehl-Neelsen stain, which requires heating, and the cold Kinyoun stain) and the preferred fluorochrome stains (auramine-rhodamine and auramine-O), which are more sensitive. Smears stained with a carbol fuchsin stain are examined at 800× to 1000× magnification (oil immersion). Smears stained with a fluorochrome stain are examined at lower magnifications (250× and 400×); this allows visualization of more fields in less time. Cells of some rapidly growing mycobacteria stain poorly with fluorochromic stains and may not be detected; therefore, when the latter organisms are suspected pathogens (e.g., in postsurgical wound infection), restaining negative fluorescent smears with a carbol fuchsin stain is reasonable. Results are reported after 100 fields are viewed and should include a statement indicating whether the smear was prepared directly from the specimen or after decontamination and concentration. Guidelines for reporting results of smears stained for AFB are shown in Table 61-3 (Kent & Kubica, 1985).

In smears stained with carbol fuchsin, AFB typically appear as purple to red, slightly curved rods (1 to 10 µm long and 0.2 to 0.6 µm wide), which often are beaded or banded (Fig. 61-3) but may also appear coccoid or filamentous. In general, the appearance of AFB does not provide species identification; however, cells of certain species have features that may be useful diagnostically. The formation of "cords" in smears of broth cultures is typical (but not diagnostic) of MTBC. Cells of *M. kansasii* often appear

TABLE 61-3
Guidelines for Reporting Smears for Acid-Fast Bacilli

No. of AFB with Carbol Fuchsin Stain (1000×)	No. of AFB with Fluorochrome Stain (450×)	Report
0	0	No AFB seen
1-2/300 F (3 sweeps)	1-2/70 F (11/2 sweeps)	Doubtful; repeat
1-9/100 F	2-18/50 F (1 sweep)	1+
1-9/10 F	4-36/10 F	2+
1-9/F	4-36/F	3+
>9/F	>36/F	4+

Modified with permission from Kent PT, Kubica GP: *Public health mycobacteriology: A guide for the level III laboratory*, Atlanta, 1985, Department of Health and Human Services.
AFB, Acid-fast bacilli; *F,* field; *sweep,* scanning full length of a smear.

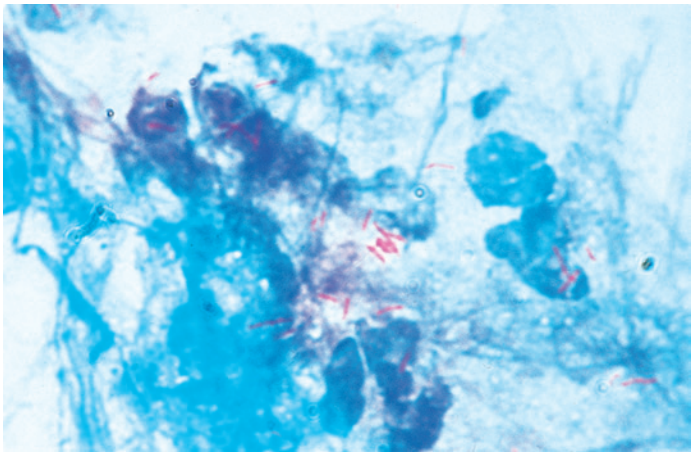


Figure 61-3 **Smear of a sputum specimen shows acid-fast bacilli (*Mycobacterium tuberculosis;* Kinyoun, 400×).**

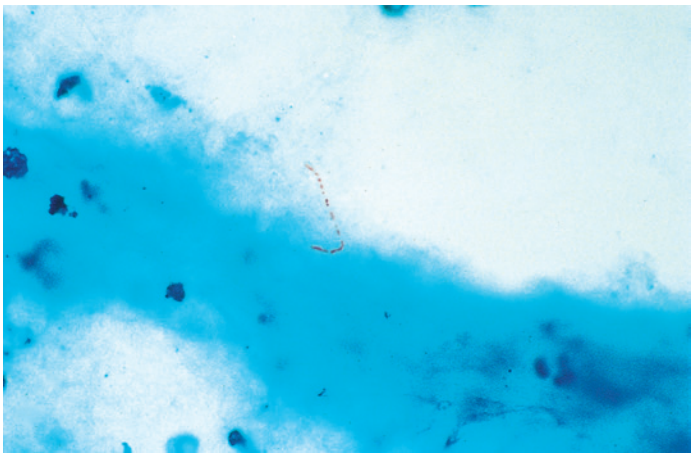


Figure 61-4 **Smear of an aspirate from an enlarged cervical lymph node shows a large, cross-barred, acid-fast bacillus (*Mycobacterium kansasii;* Kinyoun, 400×).** (Courtesy of Vicki J. Schnadig, MD, Department of Pathology, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, Tex.)

as cross-barred bacilli (Fig. 61-4), larger than *M. tuberculosis* and resembling a "shepherd's crook." Cells of MAC are typically pleomorphic and occasionally coccobacillary and stain positively with the periodic acid–Schiff stain. Cells of *M. marinum* are typically longer and broader than those of *M. tuberculosis* and often show cross-banding. Cells of *M. leprae* stain weaker than those of most other mycobacteria.

The specificity of stains for AFB typically is 99% or more, and the sensitivity ranges from about 25% to about 75% (Strumpf et al, 1979; Murray et al, 1980; Rickman & Moyer, 1980). False-positive results (positive stain, negative culture) may be caused by nonviable organisms, such as might occur in patients receiving antituberculosis therapy; prolonged decontamination, killing mycobacteria as well as contaminating bacteria; or cross-contamination during the staining procedure. Factors that influence the sensitivity of smear results include (1) patient population (persons with cavitary lesions are more likely than those without cavities to have a smear-positive sputum), (2) specimen type (respiratory specimens are more likely than other specimen types to be positive), (3) the number of specimens examined, (4) the number of AFB present in the sample (5000 to 10,000 organisms/mL of specimen are needed for a positive result), (5) the species present (specimens containing *M. tuberculosis* or *M. kansasii* are more likely to be positive than are those that contain other mycobacteria), (6) observer experience, and (7) the stain used. Fluorochromic stains are more sensitive and are easier to read than carbol fuchsin stains, and they are recommended by experts at the CDC (Tenover et al, 1993). The CDC also suggests that for respiratory specimens, results of stained smears should be reported within 24 hours of specimen receipt, which means processing 7 days a week.

CULTURE METHODS

For optimal recovery of mycobacteria from clinical specimens, inoculation of both a broth and a solid medium is recommended (Tenover et al, 1993), because broth is more sensitive than solid media and provides more rapid detection of mycobacterial growth (Anargyros et al, 1990; Stager et al, 1991; Abe et al, 1992). However, use of a broth system alone may be considered if data show that adding a solid medium does not enhance recovery of mycobacterial pathogens.

Two types of solid media are used for mycobacterial culture: egg-based (Löwenstein-Jensen) and agar-based (Middlebrook 7H10, 7H11, and selective 7H11). These media are available in screw-cap tubes and flasks; agar-based media also are available in Petri dishes. Flasks are preferred to screw-cap tubes for safety reasons and because they provide a larger surface area for mycobacterial growth. Specimens from cutaneous lesions should be inoculated to one egg- or agar-based medium, and to ensure recovery of *M. haemophilum* (see later), they also should be plated on chocolate agar, 5% sheep blood Columbia agar, Mueller-Hinton agar with Fildes supplement, or Löwenstein-Jensen containing 2% ferric ammonium citrate. To recover *M. genavense* (from specimens or subcultures of liquid to solid media), solid media must be supplemented with mycobactin J. All cultures should be incubated at 37° C in an atmosphere of 5% to 10% carbon dioxide (CO_2), and tubed media should be incubated in a slanted position with caps loose for at least 1 week to ensure even distribution of the inoculum over the surface. For specimens from cutaneous sites, a second set of cultures should be inoculated and incubated at 30° C, because some mycobacteria that cause skin lesions—*M. marinum*, *M. haemophilum*, the rapidly growing mycobacteria, and *M. ulcerans*—grow optimally at the lower temperature. All cultures should be examined weekly for at least 6 weeks.

The major advantage of culture on solid media is that it allows visualization of colony morphology and pigmentation, which is useful diagnostically, especially for distinguishing colonies of *M. tuberculosis* from those of some NTM. The colony appearance and growth characteristics of commonly encountered mycobacteria are outlined in Table 61-4. Disadvantages of conventional solid media include prolonged time to growth of mycobacteria (colonies often are not visible on tubed solid media for 3 to 4 weeks or longer) and low sensitivity. Inoculation of Middlebrook agar plates, which then are examined under the microscope, allows more rapid detection of colonies (Welch et al, 1993), but this procedure is labor-intensive, thus prohibiting its use in many clinical laboratories.

The semiautomated radiometric BACTEC TB460 was the first commercial broth-based method for growth and detection of mycobacteria. However, the instrument is no longer supported by the manufacturer and in most laboratories has been replaced by one of the fully automated, nonradiometric broth systems. Therefore, the BACTEC TB460 is not discussed further.

For laboratories with a low number of requests for mycobacterial culture, the manually read MGIT tubes, which can be used to culture all specimen types except blood and urine, may be the most cost-effective option. These tubes contain modified 7H9 broth and have a fluorescent indicator embedded in silicone in the bottom. Tubes are inoculated with the specimen, an antibiotic mixture to inhibit growth of contaminating bacteria and a mycobacterial growth enrichment are added, and the tubes are capped and incubated at 37°C for at least 6 weeks. To detect mycobacterial growth, tubes are manually placed on top of a 365-nm ultraviolet transilluminator or in front of a Wood's lamp. The appearance of strong fluorescence in the sensor (a bright orange color on the bottom of the tube and meniscus) indicates growth. For laboratories with a high volume of

TABLE 61-4
Colony Morphology and Growth Characteristics of Mycobacteria Commonly Isolated in the Clinical Laboratory

Mycobacterium Species	Colony Morphology	Pigment	Growth Rate, Weeks	Comments
Slowly Growing Mycobacteria				
M. tuberculosis	Rough	N (buff)	3-6	Generally niacin and nitrate positive
M. bovis	Rough; thin or transparent on LJ	N (colorless to buff)	4-6	Generally niacin and nitrate negative; resistant to pyrazinamide
MAC	Smooth; small, thin, transparent or large, opaque, domed; ± rough	N	3-6	Colonies of some isolates become lightly pigmented with prolonged incubation; grows at 42° C
M. kansasii	Rough, ± smooth, β-carotene crystals	P	3-6	Rare strains are N or S
M. gordonae	Smooth	S	3-6	Common laboratory contaminant; rare strains are N
M. marinum	Wrinkled, shiny; smooth, hemispherical; (rarely) rough, dry	P	2	Optimal growth, 30°-33° C
M. xenopi	Smooth, filamentous extensions ("bird's nest")	S	3-6	Growth at 42° C
M. haemophilum	Rough, ± smooth	N	3-6	Optimal growth, 20°-32° C; requires hemin for growth
M. szulgai	Smooth or rough	S, 37° C; P, 25° C	3-6	
Rapidly Growing Mycobacteria				
M. abscessus	Smooth; ± rough, wrinkled	N	<1	
M. fortuitum group	Wrinkled	N	<1	Branching filaments often are present on periphery of colonies
M. chelonae	Smooth	N	<1	

MAC, M. avium complex; *N,* nonchromogenic; *P,* photochromogenic; *S,* scotochromogenic.

requests, the totally automated BACTEC 960 (or 320) instrument, which continuously monitors tubes for fluorescence and signals those that are positive, is more appropriate. MGIT is as sensitive as the BACTEC TB460 for recovery of mycobacteria, but the mean time to detection of growth is a few days longer with MGIT (Cornfield et al, 1997; Pfyffer et al, 1997; Hanna et al, 1999).

In addition to the BACTEC MGIT 960/320, two other fully automated continuously monitoring systems for growth and detection of mycobacteria in specimens are commercially available: the MB/BacT system (bioMerieux, Durham, N.C.) (Rohner et al, 1997; Brunello et al, 1999) and the VersaTrek (previously called ESP Culture System II, currently distributed by Thermo Scientific, Lenexa, Kan.) (Tholcken et al, 1997; Woods et al, 1997). With each system, bottles are inoculated with specimen, an antibiotic mixture, and a growth supplement. The MB/BacT has one bottle type for blood and another bottle for all other specimen types. Bottles are then incubated in the respective instrument, where they are monitored for changes in production or production and consumption of various gases, indicating growth of mycobacteria or other organisms. In general, these systems perform comparably with the BACTEC TB460 and offer the advantages of being fully automated, and thus less labor-intensive, and nonradiometric.

TESTS FOR IDENTIFICATION OF MYCOBACTERIA

Identification of mycobacteria has traditionally been based on rate of growth on a solid medium, colony morphology (rough or smooth) and pigmentation with and without exposure to light, and results of biochemical tests (described in detail elsewhere [Kent & Kubica, 1985]). Biochemical test results, however, are not usually available for several weeks to months after colonies appear on solid media, and for identification of MTBC especially, more rapid methods are recommended (Tenover et al, 1993). Additionally, biochemical testing frequently does not provide unequivocal identification at the species level.

Currently, the most rapid method for diagnosis of pulmonary TB is the use of a nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) for direct detection of MTBC in clinical specimens (Piersimoni & Scarparo, 2003). These tests, however, do not differentiate the species in the MTBC. Three NAATs are available worldwide for testing respiratory specimens: amplified *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* Direct Test (Gen-Probe, Inc., San Diego), AMPLICOR *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* Test (Roche Diagnostic Systems, Inc., Branchburg, N.J.), and the Xpert MTB/RIF assay (Cepheid, Sunnyvale, Calif.), which became available for use in the United States in 2012. The BDProbeTec ET System (BD Biosciences) is available outside the United States only. The AMPLICOR and Xpert assays have been cleared by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for testing AFB smear-positive respiratory specimens only. The Gen-Probe test is approved for testing smear-positive and smear-negative respiratory specimens. Data suggest that NAATs may be useful in AFB smear-negative patients at high risk for TB (e.g., persons infected with HIV, incarcerated persons in correctional facilities), allowing more rapid diagnosis and earlier initiation of treatment (Gamboa et al, 1998; Bergmann et al, 1999). The sensitivity of NAATs is generally slightly lower for nonrespiratory specimens, but they may be useful for diagnosis of some cases of extrapulmonary TB, especially when the AFB smear is positive. In 2009, the CDC updated its guidelines for use of NAATs for diagnosis of pulmonary TB, recommending that it should be performed on at least one respiratory specimen from each patient with consistent signs and symptoms for whom a diagnosis of TB is being considered but has not yet been established, and for whom the test result would alter management or TB control activities (CDC, 2009b).

The Xpert MTB/RIF assay is technically much less demanding than the other NAATs, and it has the added advantage of also detecting rifampin resistance. The assay has two components: (1) a plastic cartridge containing liquid sample-processing and PCR buffers and lyophilized real-time PCR reagents, and (2) the GeneXpert instrument, which performs sample processing and real-time PCR in a single hands-free step. It simultaneously detects *M. tuberculosis* and rifampin resistance by PCR amplification of the 81-bp fragment of the *M. tuberculosis rpoβ* gene and subsequent probing for mutations associated with rifampin resistance. Approved specimen types are raw sputum and concentrated sputum sediments. Total hands-on time is less than 5 minutes per specimen, and results are available in less than 2 hours. The sensitivity versus culture for identifying *M. tuberculosis* when testing sputum specimens is 98% to 100% for AFB smear-positive samples and 69% to 72% for smear-negative samples; specificity in studies to date has been 100% (Boehme et al, 2010; Helb et al, 2010; Zeka et al, 2011).

Chemiluminescent DNA probes allow identification of a few species or a species complex of mycobacteria within 1 to 2 hours after sufficient growth is present (on a solid or in a liquid medium) (Evans et al, 1992; Goto et al, 1992; Lebrun et al, 1992; Reisner et al, 1994). Commercial probes specific for MTBC, MAC, *M. avium*, *M. intracellulare*, *M. gordonae*, and *M. kansasii* are currently available. Testing requires minimal equipment (i.e., luminometer, sonicator, and heating block). Disadvantages of the probes include failure to identify some isolates of MAC, especially

when testing growth from a liquid medium; false-positive results with the MAC probe when testing aliquots of broth cultures (Cloud et al, 2005); and rare false-positive results with the MTBC probe (Bull & Shanson, 1992; Lebrun et al, 1992; Butler et al, 1994).

Several non–FDA-approved methods have been shown to provide accurate identification of the most commonly encountered mycobacteria. A relatively recently introduced technique is matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry, which provides rapid identification of growth on a solid medium (Saleeb et al, 2011). This technique requires an expensive instrument, but the reagent-cost for identification is very low. Additionally, the instrument can be used to identify bacteria and fungi, in addition to mycobacteria, and it is technically simple to use. High-performance liquid chromatography allows identification of mycobacterial colonies on a solid medium or growth in a liquid medium in 2 to 4 hours. This technique was used in public health and some reference laboratories for many years but more recently has lost popularity due to the availability of other more accurate and less time-consuming techniques, such as reverse hybridization (line-probe) assays (Wu et al, 2007; Hoffman-Thiel et al, 2011; Mitarai et al, 2012). Line-probe assays perform best using colonies on a solid medium or broth from a positive liquid culture, although direct testing of AFB smear-positive specimens is possible. With line-probe assays, the target sequences are first amplified by PCR using biotinylated primers. The amplified product is then applied to a nitrocellulose strip to which multiple probes are immobilized. Lines form at the site of amplicon-probe hybridization, and the pattern is compared with a key, allowing interpretation of the results and identification of the isolate. The most accurate identification method is sequencing, most commonly of the hypervariable regions of the 16S ribosomal RNA gene (Patel, 2000; Cloud et al, 2002; Hall, 2003; Wu et al, 2007). Molecular typing methods, such as spoligotyping (spacer oligotyping), are useful for identifying members of the MTBC to the species level (Mostowy et al, 2004). These techniques, which are technically complex and require expensive equipment, are performed predominantly in research and large reference laboratories.

SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

Susceptibility testing of mycobacteria should be performed according to guidelines of the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI M24-A2, 2011). Primary and secondary drugs that should be tested are listed in Table 61-5.

For MTBC, the initial isolate from every patient should be tested to all primary drugs. Testing should be repeated if specimens remain culture-positive after 3 months of appropriate therapy, or earlier if there is clinical evidence of treatment failure. Testing may be performed on isolated colonies or a positive broth culture (indirect test) or on sputum specimens that are AFB smear-positive (direct test). Agar proportion is the standard method of testing susceptibility of MTBC to antituberculosis agents. With this method, isolates showing greater than 1% resistance to a single concentration of drug are considered resistant to that drug. However, because the target turnaround time for results is an average of 28 days after specimens are received in the laboratory, use of an FDA-approved liquid-based system that provides results equivalent to those of agar proportion is recommended (Tenover et al, 1993; CLSI M24-A2, 2011). With currently available liquid-based systems, results are generally available 5 to 7 days after bottles are inoculated with the MTBC isolate (Bergmann & Woods 1998; Bergmann et al, 2000; Scarparo et al, 2004). Susceptibility to all secondary drugs should be tested when an isolate is resistant to rifampin alone or any two of the primary agents. Isolates resistant only to the critical concentration of isoniazid also should be tested for susceptibility to secondary agents if the planned treatment regimen will include a fluoroquinolone.

Given the importance of rapid identification of drug-resistant TB, molecular methods that can be used to test positive cultures (broth or colonies) or AFB smear-positive specimens for detection of mutations associated with resistance (Santos, 2012) have been developed. Use of a molecular test to detect drug resistance directly in an AFB smear-positive specimen may be considered in a patient who has a history of prior treatment for TB, comes from a country or ethnic group known to have increased drug resistance, fails to respond to standard therapy, and/or has known exposure to MDR-TB. Probe-based molecular methods (e.g., Cepheid's GeneXpert MTB/RIF assay using molecular beacons and HAIN's MTBDR*plus* and MTBDR*sl* assays using line probes) detect the presence or absence of mutations. Sequence-based methods (e.g., Sanger sequencing and pyrosequencing) provide sequences of either wild-type isolates or mutants. Genetic loci commonly examined are drug-resistance determining regions of *rpoβ*, *embβ*, and *gyrA*, promoters of *inhA* and *eis*, regions of *katG* and *rrs* with established mutations, and complete open reading frames of *tlyA* and *pncA* (Campbell et al, 2011). Because drug resistance can be caused by mutations other than those detected by these methods, failure to detect a mutation does not necessarily equate to a phenotypic result of susceptible. Because mutations are not always associated with drug resistance, detection of a mutation by a probe-based method may not in all cases equate with phenotypic resistance. Additionally, because not all mechanisms of resistance are known, failure to detect a mutation does not unequivocally exclude resistance. Therefore, although molecular-based methods provide useful information quickly, they are adjuncts to, not replacements for, phenotypic drug susceptibility testing (Campbell et al, 2011).

The GeneXpert MTB/RIF assay was described earlier in this chapter. With regard to detecting rifampin resistance in *M. tuberculosis*, Zeka and colleagues (2011) reported total agreement with agar proportion for 89 of the 429 specimens that were culture-positive for *M. tuberculosis*: 88 were susceptible, 1 was resistant. In contrast, Marlowe and colleagues (2011) reported some false resistance. Of 217 specimens, 130 were culture-positive for *M. tuberculosis*. All 130 were susceptible to rifampin by broth microdilution; but three were initially rifampin-resistant by GeneXpert, and one remained resistant after retesting.

The HAIN probe assays, which use reverse hybridization to detect mutations, are not FDA-approved in the United States but have been used in several countries outside the United States. Both MTBDR*plus* and MTBDR*sl* assays include both wild-type probes and probes for several

TABLE 61-5
Drugs Recommended for Susceptibility Testing of Mycobacteria

Mycobacterium Species	Indication	Drugs
MTBC	Primary	Isoniazid,* rifampin, ethambutol,* pyrazinamide
	Secondary	Capreomycin, ethionamide, ethambutol (higher concentration), amikacin, kanamycin, levofloxacin, ofloxacin, moxifloxacin, isoniazid (higher concentration), *p*-aminosalicylic acid, rifabutin, streptomycin
MAC	Primary	Clarithromycin
	Secondary	Moxifloxacin, linezolid
M. kansasii	Primary	Rifampin
	Secondary	Amikacin, ciprofloxacin, clarithromycin,† ethambutol, isoniazid, moxifloxacin, rifabutin, streptomycin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
M. marinum	Primary	Amikacin, ciprofloxacin, clarithromycin, doxycycline or minocycline, moxifloxacin, rifabutin, rifampin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
Rapidly growing mycobacteria	Primary	Amikacin, cefoxitin, ciprofloxacin, clarithromycin, doxycycline or minocycline, imipenem, linezolid, meropenem, moxifloxacin, tobramycin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole

*At the critical concentration.
†Clarithromycin is considered a primary drug for the short-course and/or intermittent therapeutic regimens consisting of rifampin, ethambutol, and clarithromycin; in the classic regimen (rifampin, ethambutol, and isoniazid), clarithromycin is a secondary agent.
MAC, M. avium complex; *MTBC, M. tuberculosis* complex.

commonly encountered mutations. The absence of a wild-type band indicates that a mutation is present. The simultaneous presence of a mutant band indicates that a specific mutation is present in the specimen/isolate. The absence of both a wild-type band and a mutant band indicates the presence of a mutation but does not provide information regarding the identification of the mutation. The performance of these assays varies depending on the drug, and is best with rifampin and the quinolones. For both assays, specificity (drug is susceptible by both the line-probe assay and phenotypic drug susceptibility testing) is ≥95% and is greater than the sensitivity (drug is resistant by both the line-probe assay and phenotypic drug susceptibility testing), with the exception of rifampin (Mitarai et al, 2012; Kiet et al, 2010; Ignatyeva et al, 2012; Crudu et al, 2012).

Susceptibility testing of NTM should be performed on clinically significant isolates (Griffith et al, 2007); however, for some species, little correlation has been found between susceptibility test results for some drugs and clinical response to therapy. This is especially true for MAC and results for ethambutol and the rifamycins. The method recommended by the CLSI for susceptibility testing of rapidly and slowly growing NTM is broth microdilution (Woods et al, 1999; CLSI M24-A2, 2011). Media, incubation times and temperatures, and guidelines for interpretation of results are beyond the scope of this chapter but are described in detail for MAC, *M. kansasii*, *M. marinum*, and the rapidly growing mycobacteria in the most recent edition of CLSI M24 (A2, 2011). Recommended drugs to test are listed in Table 61-5. In addition to the drugs listed for MAC, recent data support initial testing of amikacin, as well as clarithromycin (Brown-Elliott et al, 2013). For slowly growing mycobacteria other than those mentioned earlier, the CLSI recommends testing the same primary and secondary drugs listed for *M. kansasii* and using the same interpretive criteria. In general, both the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) and the interpretation (susceptible, intermediate, resistant) should be reported.

TREATMENT

The chemotherapeutic regimen currently recommended for treatment of TB (Table 61-6) should be initiated before susceptibility test results are available, but treatment should be altered based on those results if an isolate is found to be resistant. Medications should be administered by directly observed therapy. Regimens commonly used to treat infections caused by the most frequently encountered NTM also are listed in Table 61-6 (Griffith et al, 2007). For many NTM, however, neither the optimal regimen nor the duration of therapy is known.

TABLE 61-6
Antimicrobial Agents Recommended for Primary Treatment of Common Mycobacterial Infections

Mycobacterium Species	Site of Infection	Antimicrobial Agents
MTBC	Any	Isoniazid, rifampin, ethambutol, pyrazinamide
MAC	Pulmonary	Clarithromycin,* rifampin, and ethambutol, inhaled amikacin
	Disseminated	Clarithromycin* and ethambutol ± rifabutin
	Lymphadenitis†	None
M. kansasii	Pulmonary	Rifampin, ethambutol, and isoniazid or clarithromycin
M. chelonae/ *M. abscessus* group, *M. fortuitum* group‡	Nonpulmonary	Clarithromycin (if susceptible) and one or more additional agents§
M. abscessus¶	Pulmonary	Multidrug regimen,§ including clarithromycin
M. marinum	Skin/soft tissue	Clarithromycin, doxycycline or minocycline, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, or rifampin and ethambutol

MAC, M. avium complex; *MTBC, M. tuberculosis* complex.
*Or azithromycin.
†Recommended management is surgery.
‡Surgical debridement often is necessary.
§Agent(s) selected should be based on results of susceptibility testing.
¶Currently, there are no drug regimens with proven efficacy, although antimicrobial therapy may provide symptomatic improvement and disease regression. If disease is limited, surgical resection plus multidrug therapy is optimal.

PREVENTION

MYCOBACTERIUM TUBERCULOSIS COMPLEX

Four general strategies for controlling TB are described. The most important is early identification and adequate treatment of persons with infectious TB. This renders the infected person noncontagious within a few weeks and eventually results in cure. The second strategy entails identification and treatment of individuals with noncontagious TB: extrapulmonary disease, primary pulmonary disease in children, bacteriologically unconfirmed pulmonary disease, and latent infection with MTBC (i.e., positive TST or interferon-γ release assay, normal chest radiograph, no symptoms).

The third strategy involves creation of a safe environment in situations in which the risk for transmitting infection is high: autopsy suites, sputum induction cubicles, chest clinic waiting areas, correctional institutions, some shelters for the homeless, and mycobacteriology laboratories. To accomplish this, several issues must be addressed (Segal-Maurer & Kalkut, 1994). Rooms housing infectious patients or in which potentially infectious specimens are handled should be under negative pressure, and air likely to be contaminated with infectious droplet nuclei should be exhausted to the outside. A single-pass ventilation system (best accomplished by locating air supply outlets at the ceiling level and exhaust inlets near the floor) and a minimum of six air changes per hour (12 exchanges per hour for autopsy suites) are recommended. Universal precautions must be followed when handling all specimens, and both specimens and cultures must be handled in a certified, class II biologic safety cabinet. Moreover, a particulate respirator that filters out particles 1 to 5 μm in diameter should be worn, and personnel should be trained in a respiratory program; the standard surgical mask is not adequate.

The fourth strategy is vaccination with the BCG vaccine, an attenuated vaccine derived from a strain of *M. bovis* by Calmette and Guérin in France. This vaccine is used in many foreign countries where the prevalence of TB is high, to prevent TB meningitis and miliary TB in children, but generally is not recommended in the United States, because the risk for infection with MTBC is low and the effectiveness of the vaccine in adults is variable. The BCG vaccine should not be given to immunocompromised persons, persons likely to become immunocompromised, or pregnant women. Disseminated *M. bovis* in patients with AIDS and *M. bovis* lymphadenitis in symptomatic HIV-infected infants have occurred following BCG vaccination (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1985; Blanche et al, 1986). However, disseminated *M. bovis* has not been reported in asymptomatic persons infected with HIV. In populations where the risk for TB is high, the World Health Organization recommends that the BCG vaccine be given to HIV-infected children at birth or soon thereafter. It should not be given to children with symptomatic HIV infection, to populations in which the risk for tuberculosis is low, or to persons known or suspected to be infected with HIV (World Health Organization, 1987).

MYCOBACTERIUM AVIUM COMPLEX

Disseminated MAC in patients with AIDS is associated with considerable morbidity and a shortened duration of survival (Horsburgh et al, 1991; Nightingale et al, 1992); therefore, prevention of the disease is desirable. Because MAC is ubiquitous in the environment, the most reasonable approach to prevention is chemoprophylaxis. Currently, the U.S. Public Health Service and the Infectious Diseases Society of America recommend clarithromycin or azithromycin prophylaxis in AIDS patients with $CD4^+$ cell counts lower than 50/μL (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009a). If neither of these drugs can be tolerated, rifabutin is an alternative prophylactic agent. Primary prophylaxis should be discontinued in patients who have responded to antiretroviral therapy with an increase in $CD4^+$ count of >100 cells/μL for at least 3 months.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Brown-Elliott AB, Wallace RJ Jr: Clinical and taxonomic status of pathogenic nonpigmented or late-pigmenting rapidly growing mycobacteria, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 15:716–746, 2002.

An excellent review of the taxonomy of rapidly growing mycobacteria. Also includes a discussion of laboratory tests for identification and the usual antimicrobial susceptibility patterns.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute: *Susceptibility testing of Mycobacteria, Nocardia, and other aerobic actinomycetes*, Wayne, Pa, 2003, National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards. Approved Standard M24-A2.

Guidelines for testing susceptibility of M. tuberculosis *complex, rapidly growing mycobacteria, and select slowly growing mycobacteria, including* M. avium *complex*, M. kansasii, *and* M. marinum.

Falkinham JO III: Epidemiology of infection by nontuberculous mycobacteria, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 9:177, 1996.

An in-depth review of the epidemiology of more commonly encountered nontuberculous mycobacteria, including M. avium *complex*, M. kansasii, *and* M. marinum, *as well as* M. simiae *and* M. xenopi.

Griffith DE, Aksamit T, Brown-Elliott BA, et al: An official ATS/IDSA statement: diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of nontuberculous mycobacterial diseases, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 175:367, 2007.

An excellent review of the laboratory diagnosis and treatment of commonly encountered nontuberculous mycobacteria, including M. avium *complex*, M. kansasii, M. marinum, *and rapidly growing mycobacteria.*

Madkukar P, Zwerling A, Menzies D: Systematic review: T-cell-based assays for the diagnosis of latent tuberculosis infection: an update, *Ann Intern Med* 149:1, 2008.

An excellent discussion of the value of T cell–based assays for diagnosis of latent tuberculosis infection.

Piersimoni C, Scarparo C: Relevance of commercial amplification methods for direct detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex in clinical samples, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:5355–5365, 2003.

An excellent review of the commercial nucleic acid amplification tests for direct detection of M. tuberculosis *complex in clinical specimens.*

Runyon EH: Anonymous mycobacteria in pulmonary disease, *Med Clin North Am* 43:273, 1959.

A classic description of the different groups of nontuberculous mycobacteria.

Santos LC: Review: The molecular basis of resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Open Journal Med Microbiol* 2:24–36, 2012.

An excellent summary of the molecular basis of resistance in M. tuberculosis.

Scollard DM, Adams LB, Gillis TP, et al: The continuing challenges of leprosy, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 19:338, 2006.

An excellent up-to-date review of leprosy.

Tortoli E: Impact of genotypic studies on mycobacterial taxonomy: the new mycobacteria of the 1990s, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 16:319–354, 2003.

An excellent discussion of the more recently described species of slowly growing and rapidly growing mycobacteria. Includes information regarding epidemiology, clinical manifestations, phenotypic characteristics, and antimicrobial susceptibility.

REFERENCES

Abe C, Hosojima S, Fukasawa Y, et al: Comparison of MB-Check, BACTEC, and egg-based media for recovery of mycobacteria, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:878–881, 1992.

Anargyros P, Astill DSJ, Lim ISL: Comparison of improved BACTEC and Lowenstein-Jensen media for culture of mycobacteria from clinical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 28:1288–1291, 1990.

Amofah G, Bonsu F, Tetteh C, et al: Buruli ulcer in Ghana: results of a national case search, *Emerg Infect Dis* 8:167, 2002.

Ang P, Rattana-Apiromyakij N, Goh CL: Retrospective study *of Mycobacterium marinum* skin infections, *Int J Dermatol* 39:343, 2000.

Aubry A, Chosidow O, Caumes E, et al: Sixty-three cases of *Mycobacterium marinum* infection, *Arch Intern Med* 162:1746, 2002.

Bergmann JS, Fish G, Woods GL: Evaluation of the BBL MGIT (Mycobacterial Growth Indicator Tube) AST SIRE system for antimycobacterial susceptibility testing of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* to 4 primary antituberculous drugs, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 124:82–86, 2000.

Bergmann JS, Woods GL: Evaluation of the ESP culture system II for testing susceptibilities of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* isolates to four primary antituberculous drugs, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:2940–2943, 1998.

Bergmann JS, Yuoh G, Fish G, et al: Clinical evaluation of the enhanced Gen-Probe amplified mycobacterium direct test for rapid diagnosis of tuberculosis in prison inmates, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:1419–1425, 1999.

Blake LA, West BC, Lary CH, et al: Environmental nonhuman sources of leprosy, *Rev Infect Dis* 9:562–567, 1987.

Blanche S, LeDeist F, Fischer A: Longitudinal study of 18 children with perinatal LAV/HTLV III infection: attempt at prognostic evaluation, *J Pediatr* 109:965–970, 1986.

Boehme CC, Nabeta P, Hillerman D, et al: Rapid molecular detection of tuberculosis and rifampin resistance, *N Engl J Med* 363:1005–1015, 2010.

Böttger EC, Teske A, Kirschner P, et al: Disseminated "Mycobacterium genavense" infection in patients with AIDS, *Lancet* 340:76, 1991.

Brown-Elliott BA, Wallace RJ Jr: Clarithromycin resistance to *Mycobacterium abscessus*, *J Clin Microiol.* 39:2745–2746, 2001.

Brown-Elliott AB, Wallace RJ Jr: Clinical and taxonomic status of pathogenic nonpigmented or late-pigmenting rapidly growing mycobacteria, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 15:716–746, 2002.

Brown-Elliott BA, Iakhiaeva E, Griffith DE, et al: In vitro activity of amikacin against isolates of *Mycobacterium avium* complex with proposed MIC breakpoints and finding of a 16S rRNA gene mutation in treated isolates, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:3389–3394, 2013.

Brunello F, Favari F, Fontana R: Comparison of the MB/BacT and BACTEC 460 TB systems for recovery of mycobacteria from various clinical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:1206–1209, 1999.

Buhler VB, Pollak A: Human infection with atypical acid-fast organisms, *Am J Clin Pathol* 23:363–374, 1953.

Bull TJ, Shanson DC: Rapid misdiagnosis by *Mycobacterium avium*-intracellulare masquerading as tuberculosis in PCR/DNA probe tests, *Lancet* 340:1360, 1992.

Butler WR, O'Connor SP, Yakrus MA, et al: Cross-reactivity of genetic probe for detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* with newly described species *Mycobacterium celatum*, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:536, 1994.

Campbell PJ, Morlock GP, Sikes RD, et al: Molecular detection of mutations associated with first- and second-line drug resistance compared with conventional drug susceptibility testing of Mycobacterium tuberculosis, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 55:2032–2041, 2011.

Castets M, Boisvert H, Grumback F, et al: Les bacilles tuberculeux de type africaine, *Rev Tuberc Pneumol* 32:179, 1968.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Disseminated *Mycobacterium bovis* infection from BCG vaccination of a patient with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, *Morbid Mortal Wkly Rev* 34:227, 1985.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: *Mycobacterium haemophilum* infection—New York City Metropolitan Area, 1990-1991, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 40:636, 1991.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Guidelines for prevention of opportunistic infections in HIV-infected adults and adolescents. Recommendations from CDC, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 58(RR–4):1, 2009a.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Updated guidelines for the use of nucleic acid amplification tests in the diagnosis of tuberculosis, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 58:7, 2009b.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Updated guidelines for using interferon gamma release assays to detect *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection—United States, 2010, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 59 (RR–5):1–25, 2010.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Incidence of Hansen's Disease—United States, 1994-2011, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 63:969–972, 2014a.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Trends in tuberculosis—United States, 2013, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 63:229–233, 2014b.

Cloud JL, Neal H, Rosenberry R, et al: Identification of *Mycobacterium* spp. by using a commercial 16S ribosomal DNA sequencing kit and additional sequencing libraries, *J Clin Microbiol* 40:400–406, 2002.

Cloud JL, Carroll KC, Cohen S, et al: Interpretive criteria for use of AccuProbe for identification of *Mycobacterium avium* complex directly from 7H9 broth cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:3474, 2005.

Cornfield DB, Beavis KG, Greene JA, et al: Mycobacterial growth and bacterial contamination in the Mycobacteria Growth Indicator Tube and BACTEC 460 culture system, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:2068, 1997.

Costrini AM, Mahler DA, Gross WM, et al: Clinical and roentgenographic features of nosocomial pulmonary disease due to *Mycobacterium xenopi*, *Am Rev Respir Dis* 123:104, 1981.

Coyle MB, Carlson LC, Wallis CK, et al: Laboratory aspects of "*Mycobacterium genavense*," proposed species isolated from AIDS patients, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:3206, 1992.

Crudu V, Stratan E, Romancenco E, et al: First evaluation of an improved assay for molecular genetic detection of tuberculosis as well as rifampin and isoniazid resistances, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:1264–1269, 2012.

Debacker M, Aguiar J, Steunou C, et al: *Mycobacterium ulcerans* disease: role of age and gender in incidence and morbidity, *Trop Med Int Health* 9:1297, 2004.

Dhillon SS, Watanakunakorn C: Lady Windermere syndrome: middle lobe bronchiectasis and *Mycobacterium avium complex* infection due to voluntary cough suppression, *Clin Infect Dis* 30:572, 2000.

Emmanuel F, Seager A-L, Doig C, et al: Human and animal infections with *Mycobacterium microti*, Scotland, *Emerg Infect Dis* 13:1924–1927, 2007.

Evans KD, Nakasone AS, Sutherland PA, et al: Identification of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and *Mycobacterium avium-Mycobacterium intracellulare* directly from primary BACTEC cultures by using acridinium-ester-labeled DNA probes, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:2427, 1992.

Falkinham JO III: Epidemiology of infection by nontuberculous mycobacteria, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 9:177, 1996.

Feldman RA, Hershfield E: Mycobacterial skin infection by an unidentified species. A report of 29 patients, *Ann Intern Med* 80:445, 1974.

Gamboa F, Fernandez G, Padilla E, et al: Comparative evaluation of initial and new versions of the Gen-Probe Amplified *Mycobacterium Tuberculosis* Direct Test for direct detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in respiratory and nonrespiratory specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:684, 1998.

Good RC, Snider DE Jr: Isolation of nontuberculous mycobacteria in the United States, *J Infect Dis* 146:829, 1982.

Gordon SV, Bottai D, Simeone R, et al: Pathogenicity in the tubercle bacillus: molecular and evolutionary determinants, *Bioessays* 31:378, 2009.

Goto M, Oka S, Okuzumi K, et al: Evaluation of acridinium-ester-labeled DNA probes for identification of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and *Mycobacterium avium-Mycobacterium-intracellulare complex* in culture, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:2473, 1992.

Griffith DE, Aksamit T, Brown-Elliott BA, et al: An official ATS/IDSA statement: Diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of nontuberculous mycobacterial diseases, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 175:367, 2007.

Hall L, Doerr KA, Wohlfiel SL, et al: Evaluation of the MicroSeq System for identification of mycobacteria by 16S ribosomal DNA sequencing and its integration into a routine clinical mycobacteriology laboratory, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:1447–1453, 2003.

Hanna BA, Ebrahimzadeh A, Elliott LB, et al: Multicenter evaluation of the BACTEC MGIT 960 System for recovery of mycobacteria, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:748, 1999.

Hastings RC, Gillis TP, Krahenbuhl JL, et al: Leprosy, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 1:330, 1988.

Helb D, Jones M, Story E, et al: Rapid detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and rifampin resistance by use of on-demand, near-patient technology, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:229–237, 2010.

Hlavsa M, Moonan PK, Cowan LS, et al: Human tuberculosis due to *Mycobacterium bovis* in the United States, 1995-2005, *Clin Infect Dis* 47:168, 2008.

Hoffman-Thiel S, Turaev L, Alnour T, et al: Multicentre evaluation of the speed-oligo mycobacteria assay for differentiation of *Mycobacterium* spp. in clinical isolates, *BMC Infect Dis* 11:353–359, 2011.

Horsburgh CR Jr: *Mycobacterium avium complex* infection in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, *N Engl J Med* 324:1332, 1991.

Horsburgh CR Jr, Havlik JA, Illis DA, et al: Survival of patients with acquired immune deficiency syndrome and disseminated *Mycobacterium avium complex* infection with and without antimycobacterial chemotherapy, *Am Rev Respir Dis* 144:557, 1991.

Huebner RE, Schein MF, Bass JB Jr: The tuberculin skin test, *Clin Infect Dis* 17:968, 1993.

Inderlied CB, Kemper CA, Bermudez LEM: The *Mycobacterium avium complex*, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 6:266, 1993.

Ignatyeva O, Kontsevaya I, Kovalyov A, et al: Detection of resistance to second-line antituberculosis drugs by use of the Genotype MTBDRsl assay: a multicenter evaluation and feasibility study, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:1593–1597, 2012.

Joshi M, Monson TP, Woods GL: Use of interferon-gamma release assays in a health care worker screening program: Experience from a tertiary care centre in the United States, *Can Respir J* 19:84–88, 2012.

Joshi M, Thomas TP, Joshi A, et al: IFN-γ release assay conversions and reversions: Challenges with serial testing in U.S. health care workers, *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 11:296–302, 2014.

Kent PT, Kubica GP: *Public health mycobacteriology: a guide for the level III laboratory*, Atlanta, 1985, Department of Health and Human Services.

Kiers A, Klareneck A, Mendelts B, et al: Transmission of *Mycobacterium pinnipedii* to humans in a zoo with marine animals, *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 12:1469–1473, 2008.

Kiet VS, Lan NTN, An DD, et al: Evaluation of the MTBDRsl test for detection of second-line drug resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:2934–2939, 2010.

Kristjansson M, Green P, Manning HL, et al: Molecular confirmation of bacillus Calmette–Guérin as the cause of pulmonary infection following urinary tract instillation, *Clin Infect Dis* 17:228, 1993.

Kubica T, Rüsch-Gerdes S, Niemann S: *Mycobacterium bovis* subsp. *caprae* caused one-third of human *M. bovis*-associated tuberculosis cases reported in Germany between 1999 and 2001, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:3070–3077, 2003.

Lalvani A, Pareek M: A 100 year update on diagnosis of tuberculosis infection, *Br Med Bull* 93:69–84, 2010.

Lamm DL, Van Der Meijden APM, Morales A, et al: Incidence and treatment of complications of bacillus Calmette-Guerin intravesical therapy in superficial bladder cancer, *J Urol* 147:596, 1992.

Lebrun L, Espinasse R, Poveda JD, et al: Evaluation of nonradioactive DNA probes for identification of mycobacteria, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:2476, 1992.

Lewis FM, Marsh BJ, von Reyn CF: Fish tank exposure and cutaneous infections due to *Mycobacterium marinum*: tuberculin skin testing, treatment, and prevention, *Clin Infect Dis* 37:390, 2003.

Lindeboom JA, Prins JM, Bruijnesteijn van Coppenraet ES, et al: Cervicofacial lymphadenitis in children caused by *Mycobacterium haemophilum*, *Clin Infect Dis* 41:1569, 2005.

Lockwood DN, Suneetha S: Leprosy: too complex a disease for a simple elimination paradigm, *Bull World Health Organ* 83:230, 2005.

Lomwardias S, Madge GE: Chaetoconidium and atypical acid-fast bacilli in skin ulcers, *Arch Dermatol* 106:875, 1972.

Lumpkin LR III, Cox GF, Wolf JE: Leprosy in five armadillo handlers, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 9:899, 1983.

Madkukar P, Zwerling A, Menzies D: Systematic review: T-cell-based assays for the diagnosis of latent tuberculosis infection: an update, *Ann Intern Med* 149:1, 2008.

Marlowe EM, Novak-Weekley SM, Cumpio J, et al: Evaluation of the Cepheid Xpert MTB/RIF assay for direct detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex in respiratory specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:1621–1623, 2011.

Maschek H, Georgii A, Schmidt RE, et al: *Mycobacterium genavense* autopsy findings in three patients, *Am J Clin Pathol* 101:95, 1994.

Mitarai S, Kato S, Ogata H, et al: Comprehensive multicenter evaluation of a new line probe assay kit for identification of *Mycobacterium* species and detection of drug-resistant *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:884–890, 2012.

Mori T: Usefulness of interferon-gamma release assays for diagnosing TB infection and problems with these assays, *J Infect Chemother* 15:143, 2009.

Mostowy S, Onipede A, Gagneux S, et al: Genomic analysis distinguishes *Mycobacterium africanum*, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3594–3599, 2004.

Murray PR, Elmore C, Krogstad D: The acid-fast stain: a specific and predictive test for mycobacterial disease, *Ann Intern Med* 92:512, 1980.

Nightingale SD, Byrd LT, Southern PM, et al: Incidence of *Mycobacterium avium–intracellulare complex* bacteremia in human immunodeficiency virus–positive patients, *J Infect Dis* 165:1082, 1992.

Norden A, Linell F: A new type of pathogenic Mycobacterium, *Nature* 168:826, 1951.

Parashar D, Kabra SK, Lodha R, et al: Does neutralization of gastric aspirates from children with suspected intrathoracic tuberculosis affect mycobacterial yields on MGIT culture?, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:1753–1756, 2013.

Patel JB, Leonard DGB, Pan X, et al: Sequence-based identification of Mycobacterium species using the MicroSeq 500 16S rDNA bacterial identification system, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:246–251, 2000.

Pfyffer GE, Auchenthaler ER, van Embden JD, et al: *Mycobacterium canettii*, the smooth variant of *M. tuberculosis*, isolated from a Swiss patient exposed in Africa, *Emerg Infect Dis* 4:631, 1998.

Pfyffer GE, Welscher HM, Kissling P, et al: Comparison of the Mycobacteria Growth Indicator Tube (MGIT) with radiometric and solid culture for recovery of acid-fast bacilli, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:364, 1997.

Piersimoni C, Scarparo C: Relevance of commercial amplification methods for direct detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex in clinical samples, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:5355–5365, 2003.

Piersimoni C, Scarparo C: Extrapulmonary infections associated with nontuberculous mycobacteria in immunocompetent persons, *Emerg Infect Dis* 15:1351, 2009.

Prince DS: Infection with *Mycobacterium avium complex* in patients without predisposing conditions, *N Engl J Med* 321:863, 1989.

Reisner BS, Gatson AM, Woods GL: Use of Gen-Probe AccuProbes to identify *Mycobacterium avium complex*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex*, *Mycobacterium kansasii*, and *Mycobacterium gordonae* directly from BACTEC TB broth cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:2995, 1994.

Rickman TW, Moyer NP: Increased sensitivity of acid-fast smears, *J Clin Microbiol* 11:618, 1980.

Ridley DS, Jopling WH: Classification of leprosy according to immunity: a five group system, *Int J Lepr* 34:255, 1964.

Rieder HL, Cauthen GM, Kelly GD, et al: Tuberculosis in the United States, *JAMA* 262:385, 1989.

Rodwell TC, Moore M, Moser KS, et al: Tuberculosis *from Mycobacterium bovis* in binational communities, United States, *Emerg Infect Dis* 14:909, 2008.

Rohner P, Ninet B, Metral C, et al: Evaluation of the MB/BacT system and comparison to the BACTEC 460 system and solid media for isolation of mycobacteria from clinical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:3127, 1997.

Ruhwald M, Ravn P: Biomarkers of latent TB infection, *Expert Rev Resp Med* 3:387, 2009.

Runyon EH: Anonymous mycobacteria in pulmonary disease, *Med Clin North Am* 43:273, 1959.

Ryndak M, Wang S, Smith I: PhoP, a key player in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* virulence, *Trends Microbiol* 16:528, 2008.

Saleeb PG, Drake SK, Murray PR, et al: Identification of mycobacteria in solid-culture media by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:1790–1794, 2011.

Santos LC: Review: The molecular basis of resistance in *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Open J Med Microbiol* 2:24–36, 2012.

Scarparo C, Ricordi P, Ruggiero G, et al: Evaluation of the fully automated BACTEC MGIT 960 for testing susceptibility of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* to pyrazinamide, streptomycin, isoniazid, rifampin, and ethambutol and comparison with the radiometric BACTEC 460TB method, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:1109–1114, 2004.

Scollard DM, Adams LB, Gillis TP, et al: The continuing challenges of leprosy, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 19:338, 2006.

Segal-Maurer S, Kalkut GE: Environmental control of tuberculosis: continuing controversy, *Clin Infect Dis* 19:299, 1994.

Sompolinsky D, Lagziel A, Naveh D, et al: *Mycobacterium haemophilum* sp. nov., a new pathogen of humans, *Int J Sys Bacteriol* 28:67, 1978.

Stager CE, Libonati JP, Siddiqi SH, et al: Role of solid media when used in conjunction with the BACTEC system for mycobacterial isolation and identification, *J Clin Microbiol* 29:154, 1991.

Strumpf IJ, Tsang AY, Sayre JW: Re-evaluation of sputum staining for the diagnosis of pulmonary tuberculosis, *Am Rev Respir Dis* 119:599, 1979.

Tecson-Tumang FT, Bright JL: *Mycobacterium xenopi* and the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, *Ann Intern Med* 100:461–462, 1984.

Tenover FC, Crawford JT, Huebner RE, et al: The resurgence of tuberculosis: Is your laboratory ready?, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:767, 1993.

Tholcken CA, Huang S, Woods GL: Evaluation of the ESP culture system II for recovery of mycobacteria from blood specimens collected in isolation tubes, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:2681, 1997.

Tobin DM, Ramakrishnan L: Comparative pathogenesis of *Mycobacterium marinum* and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, *Cell Microbiol* 10:1027, 2008.

Tortoli E, Brunello F, Cagni AE, et al: *Mycobacterium genavense* in AIDS patients, report of 24 cases in Italy and review of the literature, *Eur J Epidemiol* 14:219, 1998.

Tortoli E: Impact of genotypic studies on mycobacterial taxonomy: the new mycobacteria of the 1990s, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 16:319–354, 2003.

Van Soolingen D, Hoogenboezem T, de Haas PEW, et al: A novel pathogenic taxon of *M. tuberculosis complex*, *Canetti:* characterization of an exceptional isolate from Africa, *Int J Syst Bacteriol* 47:1236, 1997.

Wallace RJ Jr, Swenson JM, Silcox VA, et al: Spectrum of disease due to rapidly growing mycobacteria, *Rev Infect Dis* 5:657, 1983.

Welch DF, Guruswamy AP, Sides SJ, et al: Timely culture for mycobacteria which utilizes a microcolony method, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:2178, 1993.

Wolinsky E: Nontuberculous mycobacteria and associated diseases, *Am Rev Respir Dis* 119:107, 1979.

Woods GL: Mycobacteria. In Woods GL, Gutierrez Y, editors: *Diagnostic pathology of infectious diseases*, Philadelphia, 1993, Lea & Febiger, p 378.

Woods GL, Bergmann JS, Witebsky FG, et al: Multisite reproducibility of results obtained by the broth microdilution method for susceptibility testing of *Mycobacterium abscessus*, *Mycobacterium chelonae*, and *Mycobacterium fortuitum*, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:1676–1682, 1999.

Woods GL, Fish G, Plaunt M, et al: Clinical evaluation of Difco ESP culture system II for growth and detection of mycobacteria, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:121, 1997.

Woods GL, Washington JA II.: Mycobacteria other than *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*: review of microbiologic and clinical aspects, *Rev Infect Dis* 9:275, 1987.

World Health Organization: Special Programme on AIDS and Expanded Programme on Immunization—joint statement: consultation on human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and routine childhood immunization, *Wkly Epidemiol Rep* 62:297, 1987.

Wu X, Zhang J, Liang J, et al: Comparison of three methods for rapid identification of mycobacterial clinical isolates to the species level, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:1898–1903, 2007.

Zeka AN, Tasbakan S, Cavusoglu C: Evaluation of the GeneXpert MTB/RIF assay for rapid diagnosis to tuberculosis and detection of rifampin resistance in pulmonary and extrapulmonary specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:4138–4141, 2011.

CHAPTER 62

MYCOTIC DISEASES

Peter C. Iwen

NOMENCLATURE, TAXONOMY, AND FUNGAL MORPHOLOGY, 1199
Overview, 1199
The Fungal Colony, 1199
Structure of Yeasts and Hyphae, 1199
Fungal Pigment, 1200
Reproductive Structures, 1200
Dimorphism, 1204

DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES, 1204
Laboratory Safety, 1204
Specimen Collection and Transport, 1204
Direct Examination, 1206
Isolation in Culture, 1207
Growth Rate, 1207
Growth Temperature, 1207
Morphologic Identification, 1207
Biochemical Identification, 1208
Serologic Identification, 1209
Molecular Identification, 1209
MALDI-TOF Mass Spectrometry, 1210
Susceptibility Testing, 1210

CANDIDIASIS, CRYPTOCOCCOSIS, AND OTHER INFECTIONS CAUSED BY YEAST, 1211
The Genus *Candida*, 1211
The Genus *Cryptococcus*, 1212
The Genus *Malassezia*, 1213
Other Yeast and Yeastlike Pathogens, 1214

MYCOSES CAUSED BY DIMORPHIC FUNGI, 1215
The Genus *Histoplasma*, 1215
The Genus *Blastomyces*, 1217
The Genus *Coccidioides*, 1217
The Genus *Sporothrix*, 1219
Other Dimorphic Fungi, 1220

DERMATOPHYTOSES, 1220
Risk Factors, 1220
Clinical Diseases, 1220
Laboratory Diagnosis, 1220

MYCOSES CAUSED BY DEMATIACEOUS (MELANIZED) FUNGI, 1222
Clinical Diseases, 1222

MUCORMYCOSIS (ZYGOMYCOSIS), 1224
Risk Factors, 1224
Clinical Diseases, 1224
Pathology, 1224
Laboratory Diagnosis, 1224

ASPERGILLOSIS, FUSARIOSIS, AND OTHER MYCOSES CAUSED BY HYALINE FUNGI, 1225
The Genus *Aspergillus*, 1225
The Genus *Fusarium*, 1227
The Genus *Scedosporium*, 1228
Other Septate Hyaline Molds, 1228

***PNEUMOCYSTIS* PNEUMONIA, 1228**
Risk Factors, 1229
Clinical Diseases, 1229
Pathology, 1229
Laboratory Diagnosis, 1229

PROTOTHECOSIS, 1230

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1230

KEY POINTS

- Opportunistic fungal pathogens have emerged as common causes of invasive disease in the compromised host.
- Histopathologic examination of deep tissue is a major means used for the rapid detection and recognition of fungal pathogens causing invasive infection.
- Micromorphologic and phenotypic methods continue to be the general processes used in the clinical laboratory for the identification of fungal pathogens in culture.
- Molecular methods have advanced as techniques used for the confirmed identification of fungal pathogens from culture and are evolving as future methods for the rapid identification of fungal pathogens directly in clinical material.
- *Candida albicans* continues to be the most common fungal species associated with human disease; however, non-*albicans Candida* species are becoming more widespread in causing invasive disease with increased resistance to standard antifungal treatments.
- Dimorphic fungal pathogens are frequent causes of mild infection in people living in endemic areas; however, invasive disease, whether recurrent or primary, is becoming more common owing to the increase in immunocompromised hosts.
- Recent introduction of new antifungal agents and progression of resistance among molds and yeasts have added importance to the development and standardization of antifungal susceptibility testing.

Medical mycology is the science devoted to the study of fungi and their relationship to human disease. This scientific discipline encompasses single-celled yeasts and filamentous molds as agents of disease ranging from superficial skin infection (cutaneous mycosis) to disseminated deep-seated visceral disease (systemic mycosis). Fungal agents include the historically pathogenic fungi (true pathogens), as well as the saprophytic fungi elevated to the status of pathogen by modern therapies and diseases (opportunistic pathogens). Modern therapies such as high-dose chemotherapy to treat cancer and solid organ transplantation, as well as immunosuppressive infection such as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), have served as the impetus to allow fungi to emerge as major causes of human disease (Chen et al, 2011; Miceli & Lee, 2011; Petrikkos et al, 2012; Pfaller & Diekema, 2007; Shoham, 2013; Tuite & Lacey, 2013).

Although medical mycology education for the medical profession in general has been lacking, pathologists who have been nurtured in the surgical pathology suite have acquired a general understanding of the recognition of fungal pathogens. Overall, the general lack of education in this area is troublesome because most fungi are identified by skilled human observation rather than by machines.

The goal of this chapter is to present the fundamentals of medical mycology with an emphasis on practical issues and a description of those fungal pathogens encountered regularly in the laboratory. For a comprehensive atlas of the histopathology of fungal infections, refer to the book by Chandler and Watts (1987) and the article by Guarner and Brandt (Guarner & Brandt, 2011). Additionally, although not included in the fungal kingdom, infections caused by achlorophyllous algae are also

discussed in this chapter because the characteristics of the algae and the diseases they produce resemble fungi more than other infectious agents.

Since this chapter reports specifically on fungal mycoses, other types of fungal diseases are not discussed. Reviews of these other diseases are available and include the topics of noninvasive allergic responses to fungi (Duggal & Wise, 2013; Schubert, 2009; Taxy et al, 2009), poisoning by the ingestion of poisonous fungi (mushroom poisoning or mycetismus) (Lima et al, 2012), intoxication by ingestion of fungal toxins (mycotoxicosis) (Etzel, 2002) and psychoactive drugs of fungal origin (Stebeiska, 2013).

NOMENCLATURE, TAXONOMY, AND FUNGAL MORPHOLOGY

OVERVIEW

The first hurdle for the beginning mycologist consists of nomenclature and its handmaiden, taxonomy. Members of the fungal kingdom (Eumycota) are eukaryotic cells that have the capability to reproduce by both sexual and asexual methods. Fungi are classified into phyla by the nature of their sexual reproductive structures or lack thereof (Hibbett et al, 2007), with fungi that have recognized sexual reproductive structures (perfect fungi) classified into the phylum *Zygomycota* (now split into the phylum *Glomeromycota* with four additional subphylums of uncertain placement), *Ascomycota*, or *Basidiomycota* based on the type of sexual reproductive structure produced (Kwon-Chung, 2012). Fungi that lacked recognized sexual reproductive structures were classified in the phylum *Deuteromycota*, also called the **imperfect fungi**, on the basis of their asexual reproductive structures. This classification, however, has complicated the naming and taxonomic positioning of fungi due to dual nomenclature to have two scientific names, mainly a species name for those producing asexual (anamorphic) structures and another species name for those with sexual (teleomorphic) structures. A major change in fungal systematics recently occurred at the July 2011 International Botanical Congress, where it was voted to abolish the dual system of fungal nomenclature and to rename the code regulating the naming of fungi the *International Code of Nomenclature for Algae, Fungi, and Plants* (previously called the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature*) (Hawksworth, 2011; Hibbett & Taylor, 2013). These new rules meant that after January 1, 2013, one fungus can only have one name, with the system of permitting names to be used for anamorphs to end. Although many challenges remain with respect to acceptance of what constitutes a valid name for those fungal species that had this dual nomenclature, a regulatory mechanism is now in place to allow for addressing these challenges of naming fungi (Hawksworth, 2011).

Historically, fungi were identified to species using a combination of morphologic and physiologic characteristics. Important terms, which are still commonly used today in the clinical laboratory to describe these characteristics of fungi, are displayed in Table 62-1. More recently, the development of molecular methods to identify fungi has led to the discovery of fungal species that are morphologically indistinguishable and described as cryptic species. In light of these recent developments, a polyphasic approach has been suggested for the identification of fungal species. This approach includes a combination of molecular sequencing (using at least two genomic targets), morphologic features, and physiologic characteristics in the identification process. However, since many mycology laboratories still rely on morphologic features for identification of species, recommendations now suggest using the name **species complex** when the identification is based on morphology since this approach cannot distinguish between closely related species. In this chapter, a simplified conceptual approach is used to recognize the pathogens most commonly encountered in the clinical laboratory. For practical purposes, a few general characteristics shown in Table 62-2 serve as the basis for identification of fungi in the laboratory.

THE FUNGAL COLONY

Two morphologic forms of fungi are recognized and include yeasts and molds. Yeasts are unicellular organisms that usually reproduce asexually by blastoconidia (also called **budding**) to produce a daughter cell. The colonial mass of yeast is a collection of distinct individual organisms that macroscopically resemble bacterial colonies on the surface of the agar. Yeast colonies usually are smooth with a regular edge. When the colonies become heaped and dull, they may resemble those of staphylococci. Yeast produces catalase, so the noncautious microbiologist who does not perform a Gram stain or a wet preparation may mistake a yeast colony for a bacterium and provide a misleading report. The microscopic presence of "budding yeast" with or without pseudohyphae would be adequate to identify the colony as yeast. Furthermore, the pseudohyphae of yeast are often visible macroscopically as filamentous extensions from the edges of the colony, known colloquially as *feet* (Fig. 62-1).

In contrast to yeasts, molds are described as filamentous fungi that are multicellular in structure. Although the term **mold** is used to describe this morphologic type, the term **mould** is historically recognized and more commonly used by mycologists to describe this morphologic form. The filamentous nature of the mold gives colonies a woolly, fluffy, or velvety appearance, sometimes punctuated with a granular or powdery aspect that is produced by the formation of asexual reproductive structures (Fig. 62-2). At other times, the colony may have a glabrous (smooth) appearance.

The distinction between molds and yeasts is not firmly established. Some yeasts also develop a visually macroscopic filamentous component. For instance, *Trichosporon* spp. are yeasts that develop such filamentous extensions, whereas *Exophiala jeanselmei* is a dematiaceous yeast that develops a mycelium as it matures. The ultimate in fence-sitting is exemplified by the dimorphic fungi, which exhibit a mold form under some conditions and a yeast or yeastlike form in other circumstances. Clinically important dimorphic fungi are systemic pathogens that behave as molds in the environment and on agar media at 25° to 30° C. In contrast, the tissue form may be yeast (such as *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, and *Sporothrix schenckii*) or, in the cases of *Coccidioides immitis* and *Coccidioides posadasii*, a yeastlike structure called a **spherule**. When cultivated in vitro at 37° C on appropriate media, the tissue form is reproduced by these fungi. Other agents also exhibit dimorphism but are less common in the clinical laboratory. For instance, black molds such as *Fonsecaea pedrosi* and *Phialophora verrucosa* produce nonhyphal cells in tissue called **sclerotic bodies** but appear as molds when grown on solid media at room temperature. Reverse dimorphism is exemplified by *Malassezia furfur*, which produces both yeast cells and hyphae in the cutaneous lesions of patients with pityriasis versicolor.

STRUCTURE OF YEASTS AND HYPHAE

The morphology of the fungus is an important characteristic for the identification of both yeasts and molds. The filamentous structure of a mold is referred to as **hyphae** (singular, **hypha**), and a mass of hyphae is known as a *mycelium*. The mycelium growing on the surface of or within the agar is known as the **vegetative mycelium**, whereas filamentous extensions above the colony are called **aerial mycelium**. True hyphae may have cross-walls that contain pores for communication through the hyphae or cross-walls that are complete, dividing the hyphae into multiple cells. Hyphae that have cross-walls are called **septate**, whereas those without cross-walls are referred to as **aseptate**. Some fungi that have septate hyphae also have aseptate or septate specialized hyphae (conidiophores) that bear asexual reproductive structures. Conversely, some so-called **nonseptate fungi** have occasional cross-walls and perhaps would be better designated as sparsely septate.

The width of the hyphae and the angle of branching are important clues to fungal identity. Mucormycetes (also called **zygomycetes** and *Mucorales*), such as *Rhizopus* spp., have broad, ribbon-like hyphae that branch predominantly at right angles (Fig. 62-3), whereas hyaline molds such as *Aspergillus* spp. have narrow hyphae that branch at acute angles (dichotomous branching) (Fig. 62-4). The designation of a fungus as *Aspergillus* on the basis of hyphal morphology in a smear or tissue section is, in truth, only a statement of the *a priori* odds for this pathogen group. Describing the characteristics of the hyphae is a better approach to reporting this observation.

Yeasts reproduce asexually by the formation of blastoconidia, where the daughter cell usually appears at one end of a yeast cell and eventually enlarges to form a new yeast cell. This process is also referred to in a more generic sense as budding. If a series of daughter cells do not detach fully from the originating cells, a **pseudohypha** (plural, **pseudohyphae)** is produced. Pseudohyphae are distinguished from true hyphae by the presence of a constriction at the junction of adjacent cells and by the restriction in size of the daughter cell to that of the parent (Fig. 62-5). In contrast, the walls of true hyphae are parallel without constrictions. *C. albicans* and some strains of *Candida tropicalis* may produce pseudohyphae that have the appearance of true hyphae, depending on growth conditions, and differentiation of *Candida* from hyaline molds such as *Aspergillus* in tissue sections on occasion may be problematic. In contradistinction, *Cryptococcus* spp. produces only budding yeast and rarely rudimentary or primitive pseudohyphae, but true hyphae are not formed.

TABLE 62-1
Glossary of Terms Commonly Used in Medical Mycology

Term	Definition
Aerial mycelium	Hyphae produced above the surface of the agar media
Anamorph	Asexual form of fungal sporulation (imperfect state)
Arthroconidium	Conidium derived from the fragmentation of specialized hyphae
Ascocarp (ascoma)	Fruiting structure that contains asci (several types exist)
Ascospore	Sexual spore formed within an ascus following meiosis
Ascus (pl., asci)	Saclike structure that contains ascospores, characteristic of *Ascomycetes*
Basidiospore	Sexual spore formed as on an outgrowth of a basidium
Basidium	Structure that contains basidiospores (e.g., mushroom)
Blastoconidium (pl., blastoconidia)	Asexual spore formed by budding of the hyphal, pseudohyphal, or yeast cell
Chlamydospore	Thick-walled resting or survival structure (also called *chlamydoconidia*)
Cleistothecium (pl., cleistothecia)	Enclosed ascocarp, composed of layers of hyphae that contain randomly dispersed asci
Collarette	Funnel-shaped structure at the apex of a phialide
Columella	An extension of the sporangiophore into the base of the sporangium
Conidiogenous cell	Cell that produces conidia
Conidiophore	Specialized hyphal structure that carries the conidia
Conidium (pl., conidia)	Asexual reproductive structure that forms on the side or the end of a hypha or conidiophore
Dematiaceous (phaeoid)	Pigmented conidia, spores, or hyphae due to the presence of melanin
Dimorphic	Displaying two morphologic types, one environmental (mold) and one in vivo (yeast)
Glabrous	Smooth, referring to colonial morphology
Heterothallic	Sexual reproduction requiring the interaction of two different thalli (mating strains)
Holomorph	Whole fungus; the anamorphic plus the teleomorphic state of the fungus
Homothallic	Sexual reproduction can take place within one thallus
Hyaline	Clear, colorless, or transparent
Hypha (pl., hyphae)	Septate or aseptate vegetative unit of a mold
Intercalary	Borne within a hypha
Macroconidium	Larger of two types of conidia produced by a mold
Microconidium	Smaller of two types of conidia produced by a mold
Mold	Filamentous fungus that reproduces by sexual or asexual means
Mycelium	Mass of hyphae that make up the thallus of a mold
Perithecium	Enclosed ascocarp with a pore at the top through which the ascospores are discharged
Phialide	Cell with opening through which conidia are produced
Pseudohyphae	Connected yeast cells (blastoconidia) that resemble a hypha but contain areas of constriction between adjacent cells
Sclerotic body (pl., sclerotia)	Thick-walled, dematiaceous, muriform, rounded cells found in tissue diagnostic for chromoblastomycosis
Septum (pl., septa)	Cross-wall in a hypha
Spherule	A round structure containing endospores characteristic of *Coccidioides* species in tissue
Sporangiophore	Stalk bearing the sporangium
Sporangiospore	Asexual spore produced within a sporangium
Sporangium	Saclike structure in which the asexual sporangiospores develop
Sterigmata	Slender outgrowth of a cell bearing conidia
Teleomorph	Sexual form of a fungal sporulation (perfect state)
Terminal	Borne at the end of a hypha
Thallus (pl., thalli)	Vegetative growth of a fungus; includes an interwoven mass of hyphae
Thermophillic	Fungi that grow at a high temperature
Vegetative mycelium	Hyphae produced on the surface or extending into the agar media
Vesicle	Enlarged or swollen cell, often at the end of a conidiophore or sporangiophore, which may also be within hyphae
Yeast	Single-cell fungus that reproduces by budding or by fission
Zygospore	A mucoraceous spore formed sexually by the union of two similar cells

FUNGAL PIGMENT

Some mold hyphae and yeast can be characterized by the production of a dark pigment. These fungi contain melanin, which imparts a brown coloration to the fungal element in microscopic preparations and causes colonies of the fungi to appear dark green, brown, or black. The terms **dematiaceous**, **melanized**, **dark**, and **phaenoid** have been used interchangeably to denote those fungal elements that contain melanin (Revankar & Sutton, 2010). Superimposed dyes in stained smears, wet preps, or histologic sections may partially obscure the color, which can be more obvious in unstained preparations. Those fungi that lack dark hyphal pigmentation are referred to as **hyaline** (clear or colorless). This term may not fully reflect the fungal species appearance, because in some cases a light pigmentation may produce colored colonies, and asexual reproductive structures of some hyaline molds may have green, brown, or black pigments that impart a color to the surface of the colony once the reproductive structures have formed. The true appearance of these molds usually can be discerned by observing the back of the colony, which maintains a light coloration. In contrast, both the front (obverse) and the back (reverse) of dematiaceous or highly melanized colonies usually demonstrate the dark pigment.

REPRODUCTIVE STRUCTURES

The primary means for identification of mold fungi is by characterization of asexual reproductive structures. For yeast, phenotypic studies are the

Figure 62-1 **Filamentous extensions from the periphery of colonies of *Candida albicans* are known colloquially as "feet."**

Figure 62-2 **Powdery surface of the colonies of *Aspergillus fumigatus* overlies white masses of mycelium.** Adjacent bacterial colonies contrast with the filamentous fungus. (Sheep blood agar.)

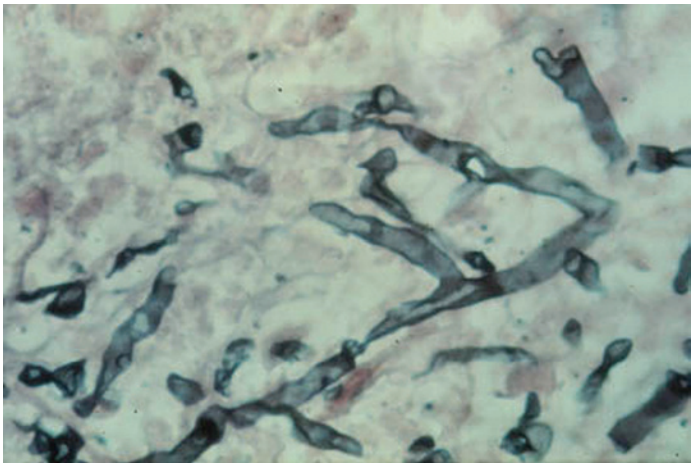


Figure 62-3 **Characteristic wide, nonseptate hypha of a mucormycete in lung tissue.** (Gomori's methenamine silver stain, 400×.)

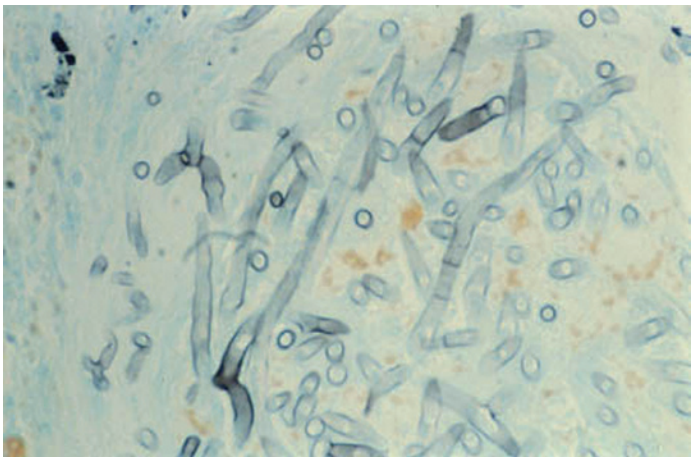


Figure 62-4 **Characteristic narrow branching, septate hyphae of a hyaline mold in tissue.** (Gomori's methenamine silver stain, 400×.)

TABLE 62-2

Characteristics Useful for the Identification of Fungi

Characteristic	Examples
Type of macroscopic growth	Colonies of unicellular organisms (yeast) Colonies of filamentous organisms (molds)
Morphology of yeast	Budding Budding with pseudohyphae Round yeast with capsules Budding yeast with collarettes
Morphology of filamentous structures	True septate hyphae True nonseptate hyphae (or sparsely septate)
Pigment of hyphae	Hyaline (lightly pigmented or nonpigmented) Dematiaceous (darkly pigmented)
Morphology of asexual reproductive structures	Conidia Spores
Morphology of sexual reproductive structures	Ascospores Cleistothecia Perithecia
Growth rate	Slow (>10 days) Medium (4-10 days) Fast (<4 days)
Inhibition by cycloheximide	Many saprophytic fungi
Optimal growth temperature	25°-30° C 35°-37° C 40°-42° C 50°-58° C
Biochemical tests	Assimilation Fermentation Enzymatic degradation (e.g., urease) Growth enhancement
Conversion from mold to yeast phase	Supplanted by DNA probe tests in most laboratories
Immunologic detection of antigens or antibodies	*Cryptococcus, Histoplasma, Coccidioides, Blastomyces, Aspergillus*
DNA probe	*Histoplasma, Coccidioides, Blastomyces*

DNA, Deoxyribonucleic acid.

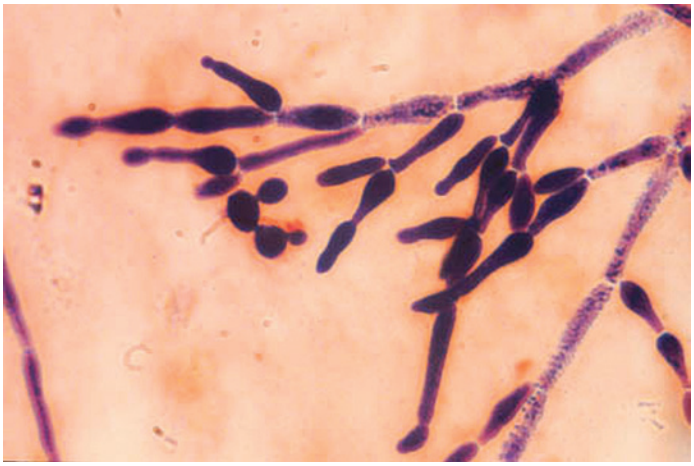


Figure 62-5 Chains of elongated budding yeasts of *Candida albicans* producing pseudohyphae observed in sputum. (Gram stain, 1000×.)

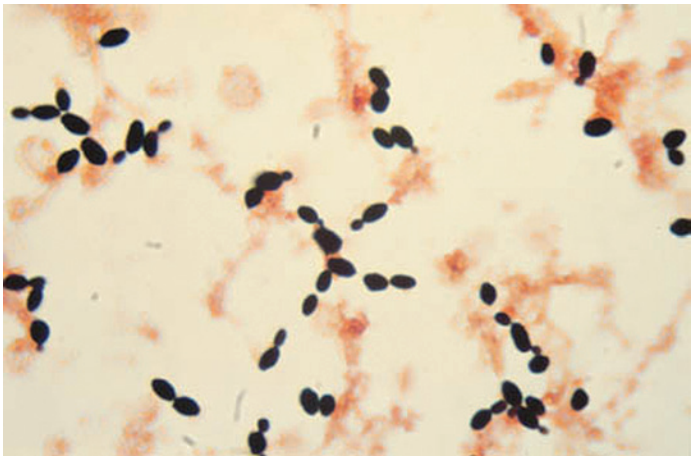


Figure 62-7 Budding and nonbudding yeast cells detected in a blood culture bottle sample. (Gram stain, 1000×.)

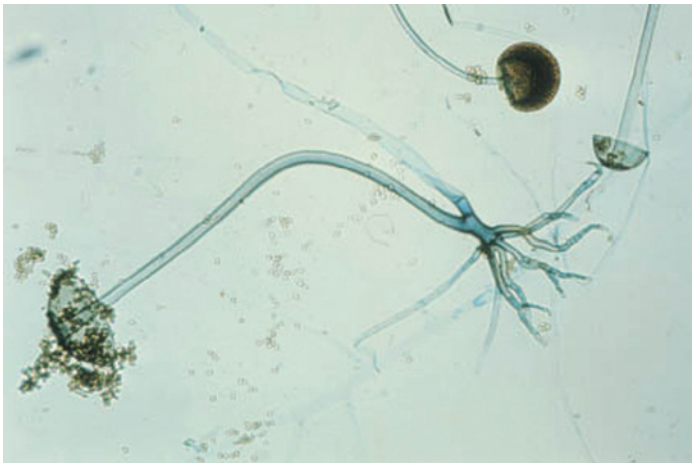


Figure 62-6 Sporangiophores of *Rhizopus* spp. supporting sporangia that contain sporangiospores. Rhizoids arise from the hyphae near the origin of the sporangiophores. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 100×.)

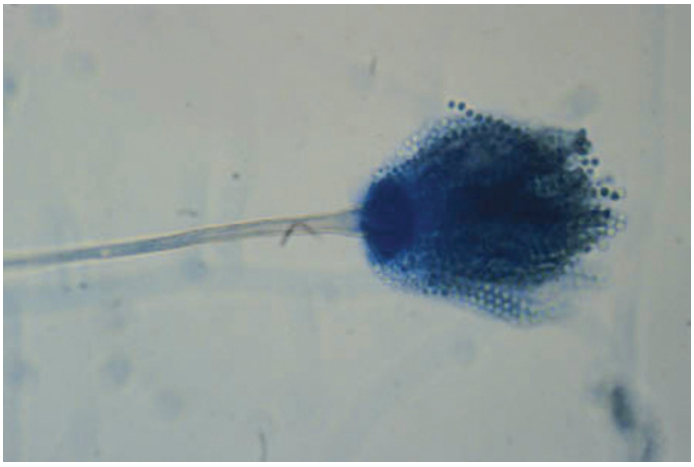


Figure 62-8 Fruiting head of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. The conidiophore is swollen at the tip to form a vesicle, and phialides arise from the upper half of the vesicle with chains of conidia present that align parallel to the long axis of the conidiophore. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

mainstay in identification, with asexual reproductive structures serving as ancillary clues in the identification process. The two principal asexual structures are spores (which may also be present as sexual structures) and conidia. Asexual spores (called **sporangiospores**) are produced by cleavage within an encompassing structure called a **sporangium** (Fig. 62-6). **Conidia** (singular, **conidium**) are much more diverse and form by differentiation from the tip or side of a fertile hypha, such as a conidiophore, or by hyphal differentiation. Unfortunately, interchangeable use of the terms *conidium* and *spore* in the literature has led to confusion. *Sporulation* and *spores* often are used as general terms for asexual reproduction, and the term *spore* is sometimes used when *conidium* would have been more accurate.

The principal means of asexual reproduction in yeast is by the formation of blastoconidia (i.e., budding). A bud starts as a softening of the cell wall of the mother cell, followed by expansion of the cell wall (blown out) and migration of nucleus and cytoplasm to the swollen area. A septum seals the boundary between daughter and parent cells (Fig. 62-7). If separation does not occur, a pseudohypha results.

The portions of the vegetative mycelium that differentiate into conidia are referred to as **conidiogenous cells**. Specialized hyphae that support the conidia are termed **conidiophores**, which may be the conidiogenous cell itself arising from the vegetative mycelium or may be a supporting hypha. In *Aspergillus* spp., the conidiophore, which is aseptate, enlarges at the tip to form a swollen vesicle (Fig. 62-8). Conidiogenous cells, now termed **phialides**, arise from the vesicle to support chains of conidia. Some species of *Aspergillus* produce a row of phialides, which occur on a row of sterile cells called **metulae**, with the conidia arising from the distal phialides. The mucormycetes produce structures called sporangiophores, which support the sporangium with enclosed sporangiospores (see Fig. 62-6). An extension of the apex of the sporangiophore into the sporangium is termed the **columella**.

Thallic conidiogenesis is a process in which the conidium does not develop until a septum is formed between the conidium and the parent cell. The conidium originates from the whole of the parent cell. The most important human pathogens that exhibit thallic conidiogenesis are the dermatophytes and the dimorphic fungi in the genus *Coccidioides*. As conidiogenesis progresses in these species, barrel-shaped conidia called **arthroconidia** are produced; these fragment easily and are disseminated with little difficulty, resulting in a high degree of infectivity demonstrated by these important human pathogens (Fig. 62-9). The thallic conidia of the dermatophytes are separated by size into two types: large septate macroconidia (Fig. 62-10) and small, one-celled microconidia that are simpler structures (Fig. 62-11).

The other type of conidiogenesis is called **blastic conidiogenesis,** whereby the protoplasm of the conidiogenous cell is blown out or blasted to form the conidium. The simplest form of blastic conidiogenesis is the budding process by which many types of yeast, including *Candida* spp., develop. As with thallic conidia, blastoconidia are divided into two types: one where the cell wall is involved in the process and the other where it is not. Further division of blastic conidiogenesis is made among those species in which the outer cell wall does not participate in the process (called **enteroblastic conidiogenesis**). In enteroblastic fungi, phialidic and annellidic conidiogenous cells have been recognized. Phialides are conidiogenous cells that often have a collarette at the apices, produced when the tip releases the first conidium. The collarette may be a conspicuous flask-shaped structure, as observed in *Phialophora* spp., or an inconspicuous structure, as seen in *Aspergillus* spp. In contrast, annellides are conidiogenous cells that rupture to leave a distinct ring of cellular material at the base of the conidium when it separates from the annellide. Formation of sequential conidia at the base pushes the oldest cell to the tip of the chain and leaves a series of rings or annellations at the apex of the

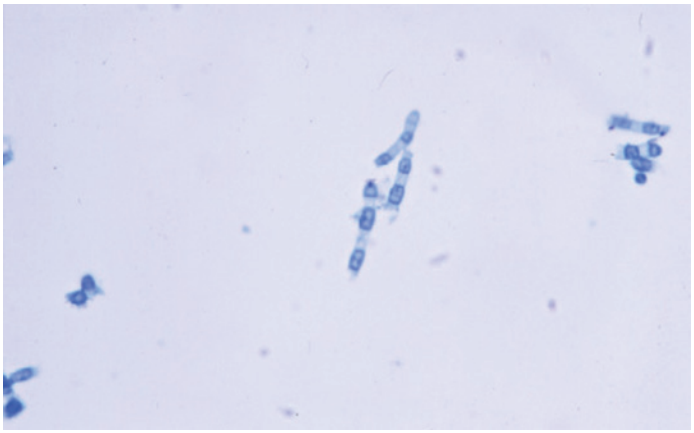


Figure 62-9 Arthroconidia of *Coccidioides* species. Alternating barrel-shaped arthroconidia are separated by thin-walled, empty disjunctor cells within portions of the hyphae. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

Figure 62-10 Macroconidia of *Epidermophyton floccosum*. Typical blunt-ended macroconidia occur in aggregates along the hyphae with the absence of microconidia. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

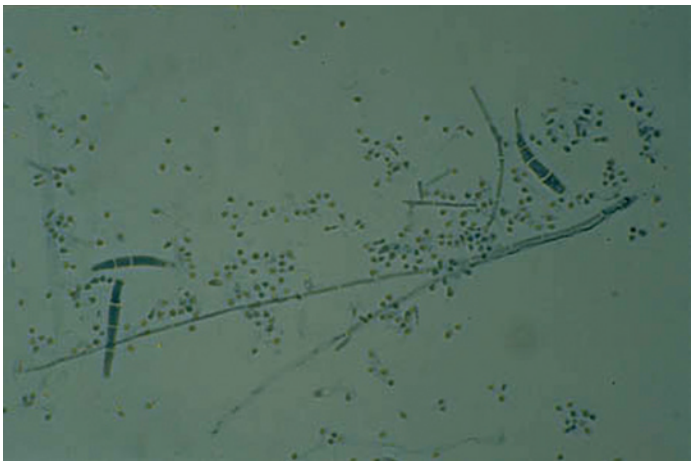


Figure 62-11 Elongated macroconidia of *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* along with microconidia are lined up along the surface of the hypha. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

annellide, providing a record of past events, like rings on a tree. Although important for the microscopic identification of some mold fungi, the fine details of these structures may be difficult to visualize using the light microscope.

Differentiation of the various conidial structures is the key to correct identification of many fungal isolates. In some cases, the pertinent morphologic features are easily discerned; however, as in surgical pathology,

TABLE 62-3
Media for the Identification and Isolation of Fungi

Medium	Main Function
Ascospore medium, V-8 agar	Ascospore development
Birdseed (niger) agar	Demonstration of melanin in *Cryptococcus neoformans*
Brain-heart infusion agar with blood	Enhanced recovery of dimorphic fungi
Christensen urea agar	Differentiation of *Trichophyton rubrum* and *T. mentagrophytes*
CHROMagar *Candida*	Chromogenic mixture to identify *Candida* species
Cornmeal agar with Tween 80	Visualization of yeast morphology
Czapek-Dox agar	Identification of *Aspergillus* species
Inhibitory mold agar	Selective medium that contains chloramphenicol and gentamicin
Potato dextrose agar	Pigment development of *Trichophyton rubrum* and mold morphology
Sabouraud dextrose (SAB) agar	General purpose fungal growth medium (traditional formulation or Emmon's modification)
SAB agar with cycloheximide	Selective medium to inhibit saprophytic fungi (antibacterials such as chloramphenicol or gentamicin also included)
Slide culture (various agars)	Study of microscopic structure
Trichophyton agars	Differentiation of *Trichophyton* species

pattern recognition is an essential tool for identification of the most common pathogens and saprobes. The pathologist should always appreciate the salient features of the entire morphologic preparation without primarily focusing on outliers or aberrant structures. Developing conidial structures of *Aspergillus* or *Paecilomyces*, for instance, may resemble the structures of *Penicillium*, and the observer must not be misled into thinking that two molds are present. At the same time, the possibility of a mixed culture must be remembered. Mycologists must use a low-powered objective for initial observation from fungal culture; however, the details of cellular subsets in that low-powered picture must be appreciated for study at a higher magnification.

The fine art of mycologic diagnosis rests in the appreciation and differentiation of cellular details, and in some instances, the task requires great subtlety and considerable experience. Sometimes, the isolate must be coaxed to produce the necessary diagnostic structures by selection of appropriate media (Table 62-3). In general, enriched media favor the propagation of vegetative mycelium, whereas asexual reproductive structures are encouraged by basal (starving) media. Subculture onto water agar or potato flake agar is a general technique for encouraging the development of conidial structures. The colors of *Aspergillus* colonies are best studied on Czapek-Dox agar, whereas *Trichophyton rubrum* is encouraged to produce red pigment on potato dextrose agar or cornmeal agar with 1% glucose.

Experience also is important in determining whether a subculture has been incubated sufficiently long for diagnostic structures to form. Rootlike structures (rhizoids) that develop from the hyphae of some mucormycetes are important differentiating features, but they may not be detected if observation is terminated prematurely. Some of the techniques necessary for complete differentiation are difficult or even beyond the reach of most clinical laboratories. For instance, the melanized pathogen *Exophiala dermatitidis* produces blastic conidia with phialides and annellides. The presence of annellides was not recognized when the mold was studied with the light microscope, however, and this organism was once classified as *Phialophora dermatitidis*. Recognition that annellides were formed by the isolate led to a reassignment to a new genus, *Exophiala*, which contained both phialides and annellides.

Sexual reproductive structures are of occasional value for fungal identification in the general mycology laboratory. Although they are infrequently encountered in vitro, recognition of sexual structures for heterothallic fungi requires that a compatible mating strain be available for testing. Homothallic fungi, on the other hand, can produce sexual structures in culture without this mating process. The two structures most likely to be demonstrated in the laboratory from homothallic species are

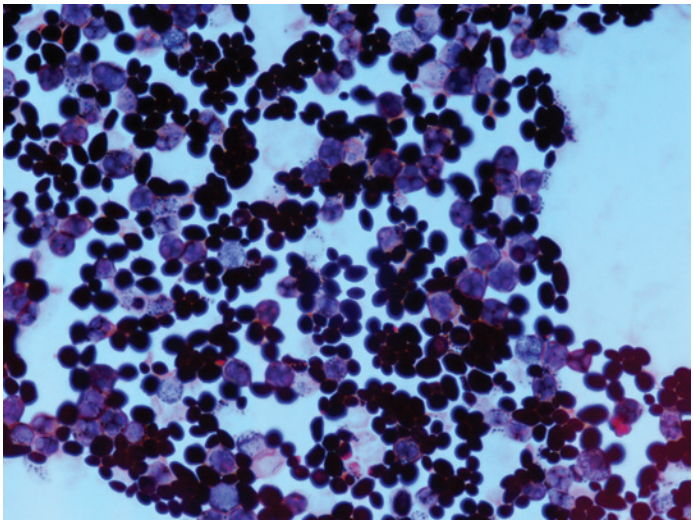


Figure 62-12 **Ascospores with asci (pale staining) along with budding yeast cells of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.** (Gram stain, 1000×.)

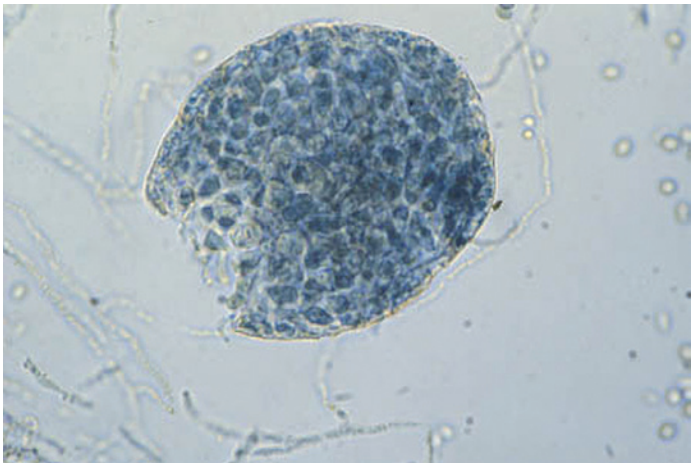


Figure 62-13 **Cleistothecium of *Pseudallescheria boydii*.** This sexual reproductive structure is specifically referred to as an ascus containing ascospores. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

the naked asci of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and the cleistothecium of *P. boydii* (the sexual phase of *Scedosporium apiospermum*), *Aspergillus nidulans*, or the *Aspergillus glaucus* group of fungi. The naked asci of *Saccharomyces* resemble oval yeast cells in which one to four individual haploid ascospores are enclosed (Fig. 62-12). The ascospores in this species may be visualized in wet preparations but are detected more reliably using a Gram stain or an acid-fast stain. A cleistothecium is a sexual fruiting body (ascocarp) in which the ascospores are entirely enclosed and can be released only by rupture of the cleistothecial wall (Fig. 62-13). The wall is composed of single or multiple layers of specialized hyphae. A perithecium is a sexual structure similar to a cleistothecium, but it contains an opening at the apex of the pear-shaped structure.

Although asexual and rarely sexual reproductive structures are necessary for the identification of fungi, especially molds, some isolates refuse to produce either of these structures for diagnosis. The colonies consist only of vegetative and aerial hyphae morphologically and subsequently are described as **sterile hyphae** or **mycelia sterilia**. Identification under this circumstance requires specialized molecular methods that are not available in most routine diagnostic laboratories (Gomez, 2014; Griffin & Hanson, 2014; Zhang, 2013).

DIMORPHISM

Demonstration of dimorphism is the traditional approach to definitive identification of endemic fungal pathogens. In most laboratories, the initial isolate is the mold phase because culture plates usually are incubated at 25° to 30° C. Conversion to the tissue phase (yeast or yeastlike structure) is accomplished by incubating a subculture at 37° C. The transition from mold to yeast morphology may occur grudgingly, and hyphal forms are often intermixed with yeast cells. Some isolates may never be successfully converted. A rich medium, such as brain-heart infusion agar with a blood supplement, should be included with the primary isolation medium, particularly when *H. capsulatum* is suspected. Cysteine hemoglobin agar is a common medium used for the conversion of *B. dermatitidis*. Media for conversion of coccidioidal species have been described but are not often used. Similarly, inoculation of animals is infrequently employed in clinical laboratories, although this method is effective when used for conversion to the in vivo phase. The recent introduction of molecular probes has considerably simplified the task of definitive identification for these endemic fungi and has eliminated the need to demonstrate both phases of the dimorphic fungi in the laboratory (Reiss et al, 2000). Rapid deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) probe tests, which utilize the technique of nucleic acid hybridization, are available for the identification of the three major dimorphic pathogens from culture (e.g., GenProbe AccuProbe, Hologic, Inc., Bedford, Mass.). Although demonstration of the characteristic yeast or yeastlike phase in tissue strongly supports the diagnosis of a dimorphic fungus, identification of the pathogen in culture is still necessary for disease confirmation (Sangoi et al, 2009).

DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES

With the increased number of patients undergoing transplantation procedures or receiving aggressive immunosuppression and chemotherapy, the growing population of immunosuppressed hosts has dramatically increased, leading to a subsequent rise in the prevalence of invasive fungal infection (Chandrasekar, 2009). Early recognition of a fungal infection to optimize patient management is becoming more realistic with advances in diagnostic applications for the identification of fungal etiologic agents.

LABORATORY SAFETY

Biosafety considerations from specimen collection through culture conformation in the mycology laboratory are critical (Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute [CLSI], 2012a). Inoculation of specimens and manipulation of mold colonies should always be performed in a biologic safety cabinet to prevent dissemination of the highly mobile fungal conidia. Scrupulous attention to cleaning the surfaces of both the biologic safety cabinet and the incubator should be maintained. Separate safety cabinets for the study of isolated molds may minimize contamination of other clinical samples.

The greatest hazard for laboratory personnel comes from handling mold cultures of the dimorphic pathogens, *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii* and *H. capsulatum*. These isolates are classified as risk group 3 (RG3) pathogens, requiring biosafety level 3 practices and institutions for propagating and manipulating cultures, as well as for processing soil or other environmental materials known or likely to contain infectious conidia from these agents (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [HHS], 2009; HHS, 2013). Screw-capped tubes of culture media should be used for culture if these pathogens are suspected. Unfortunately, the diagnosis may not be appreciated before the pathogen is isolated in some cases. All work with molds, however, should be performed in a certified biologic safety cabinet.

Of special note is that the tissue phase of dimorphic pathogens is not infectious by the airborne route, thus little or no biohazard is involved in handling tissue specimens from patients with blastomycosis, histoplasmosis, or coccidioidomycosis. A possible exception to this rule might occur if a *Coccidioides* spp. grew as a mold within a lung cavity that connected with the bronchial tree, which would allow for in vivo sporulation.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION AND TRANSPORT

The correct specimen for submission to the mycology laboratory depends on the clinical presentation and the organ system affected (CLSI, 2012). A summary of the major categories of diseases produced by fungi along with suggested specimens is presented in Table 62-4.

Yeast, particularly *Candida* spp., may be recovered on occasion from swab specimens, especially from purulent lesions. Swabs may be used for sampling oral or vaginal lesions suggestive of candidiasis and may be adequate for collecting specimens from patients with chronic external otitis, in which large numbers of *Aspergillus* conidia are usually present. However, swabs are decidedly inferior for collecting specimens in most areas of the infectious process. Particularly problematic is that swab fibers may be mistaken for hyphal elements upon direct examination of clinical

TABLE 62-4

Major Clinical Syndromes and Commonly Associated Fungal Pathogens

Clinical Presentation/ Organ System	Patient Group	Likely Pathogens	Specimen(s)
Skin, hair, or nail infection	All	Dermatophytes *Candida* *Malassezia*	Skin scraping Hair Nail clipping
Subcutaneous tissue infection	All	*Coccidioides* *Blastomyces dermatitidis* *Sporothrix schenckii*	Lesion biopsy
	Patient with mycetoma	*Scedosporium apiospermum* *Madurella* *Actinomadura*	
Primary pneumonia	All	*Histoplasma capsulatum* *Blastomyces dermatitidis* *Cryptococcus neoformans* *Coccidioides*	Sputum Bronchoalveolar lavage Transbronchial biopsy Surgical lung biopsy Pleural fluid Thoracentesis fluid
	Immunodeficient	*Aspergillus* *Fusarium* Zygomycetes *Scedosporium apiospermum* *Pneumocystis jiroveci*	
Gastrointestinal infection	Immunodeficient	*Candida* *Aspergillus* Zygomycetes	Scrapings Curettings Biopsy
Urinary tract infection	All	*Candida*	Urine
Endocarditis	All	*Candida* *Fusarium*	Blood
Meningitis	Immunodeficient	*Cryptococcus neoformans* *Candida* *Coccidioides*	Cerebrospinal fluid
Encephalitis and brain abscess	Immunodeficient	Zygomycetes *Aspergillus* *Cladophialophora bantiana*	Brain biopsy
Osteomyelitis	All	*Coccidioides* *Blastomyces dermatitidis* *Cryptococcus neoformans*	Biopsy
Keratitis	All	*Aspergillus* *Fusarium*	Scraping
External otitis	All	*Aspergillus*	Scraping Swab
Sinusitis	All	*Aspergillus* *Fusarium* Dematiaceous molds	Biopsy Curettings
Burn wounds	All	*Aspergillus* Zygomycetes *Fusarium* *Scedosporium apiospermum*	Biopsy
Vaginitis	All	*Candida*	Vaginal secretions
Intravenous catheter infection	Indwelling catheter	*Candida* *Malassezia* (newborns)	Catheter tip Blood
Disseminated infection	All	*Histoplasma capsulatum* *Blastomyces dermatitidis* *Coccidioides*	Blood, bone marrow Tissue biopsy
	Immunodeficient	*Candida* Zygomycetes *Aspergillus* *Fusarium* *Scedosporium apiospermum* *Cryptococcus neoformans* Potentially any fungus	Blood Tissue biopsy

specimens. A policy of rejecting swabs for fungal culture should be accompanied in most cases by assiduous and persistent educational efforts.

The best specimens for mycologic diagnosis are scrapings, curettings, aspirates, and lesion biopsies. Hairs infected with a dermatophytic fungus (e.g., *Microsporum canis*) fluoresce under a long-wavelength ultraviolet light (Wood's lamp) and can be specifically selected for examination. Cutaneous lesions of dermatophytosis (ringworm) are characterized by an active advancing edge with central healing, so that scrapings can be collected from the edge of the process. Hair, nails, scalp, and skin scrapings should be sent to the laboratory in a clean dry container. Tissue samples should be sent in a sterile container with a small amount of sterile, preservative-free saline or a transport medium to prevent drying of the sample. Most samples can be handled as one would any other samples submitted for bacterial observation and culture.

BOX 62-1

KOH Preparation

1. Place 1 drop of 10% potassium hydroxide (KOH) on a clean glass slide.
2. Immerse an aliquot of the specimen in the drop of KOH on the slide.
3. Gently heat the mixture by passing the slide through a Bunsen burner flame several times. Do not allow the mixture to boil.
4. Coverslip the slide and examine at 100× and 400× magnification using reduced light. Excessively tenacious specimens may require additional heating.
5. KOH may also be used as a simple mounting medium without heating (the addition of lactophenol [aniline] blue or Calcofluor white stain with the KOH will enhance the visibility of fungal elements).

DIRECT EXAMINATION

Most clinical specimens can be examined directly for the presence of a fungal pathogen, although negative results are not sensitive enough to rule out the presence of a fungus. Multiple techniques are employed for the direct examination of clinical material. As a reminder, multiple manipulations of specimen material in the laboratory may render the material not acceptable for culture, so in cases in which culture is warranted, specimens must be separated before this type of examination is performed.

Wet Preparation

The simplest method for direct examination of a specimen is to observe a suspension placed on a slide and coverslip under reduced light. For those specimens that are dry or viscous, the addition of a wetting agent such as saline is necessary prior to observation. For specimens that contain distracting tissue debris and cells, such as vaginal secretions, nails, and skin scrapings, a solution of potassium hydroxide (KOH) may be used as a means to dissolve the tissue material, so that fungal elements are more visible (Box 62-1).

Gram Stain

This commonly used microbiologic stain is particularly useful for the detection of yeast. Most yeasts stain partially or completely gram-positive and are generally differentiated from bacteria by their larger size and by the presence of budding cells (see Fig. 62-5). The hyphae of molds may appear gram-positive or gram-negative by this stain but may stain less reliably than yeast cells and are easily missed in clinical specimens using this method.

Giemsa or Wright Stain

In cases in which histoplasmosis is suspected, these hematologic stains are useful for demonstrating yeast cells within macrophages.

India Ink Preparation

The polysaccharide capsule of *C. gattii/neoformans* can be demonstrated by negative staining using India ink particles; it is especially evident when infected cerebrospinal fluid is examined. When examined with the light microscope, the capsule stands out as a clear space around the fungal cell, with ink particles bouncing off the edge as brownian motion occurs (Fig. 62-14). When budding yeast cells are demonstrated along with the capsule in the cerebrospinal fluid of an infected patient, the specificity of the diagnosis of cryptococcal meningitis is ensured. Other potentially encapsulated fungi such as *Rhodotorula* spp. or other cryptococcal species are infrequent pathogens and can be eliminated from practical consideration under this circumstance. Although the capsules usually are large in direct examination of specimens, isolation of the pathogen on agar media is usually characterized by the production of a much diminished capsule, which is not as obvious. Unfortunately, some *C. neoformans* strains are poorly encapsulated; thus, the sensitivity of the India ink test is generally less than 50%, and the organism is especially evident in patients who are not infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). However, direct detection of antigen in cerebrospinal fluid or serum using a latex agglutination or enzyme immunoassay technique has increased the sensitivity to close to 100%. These techniques basically have replaced the use of India ink as a direct diagnostic technique, although the India ink technique is still useful when the antigen test is not immediately available and for examination of capsules in cells from isolated colonies that suggest *C. gattii/neoformans*.

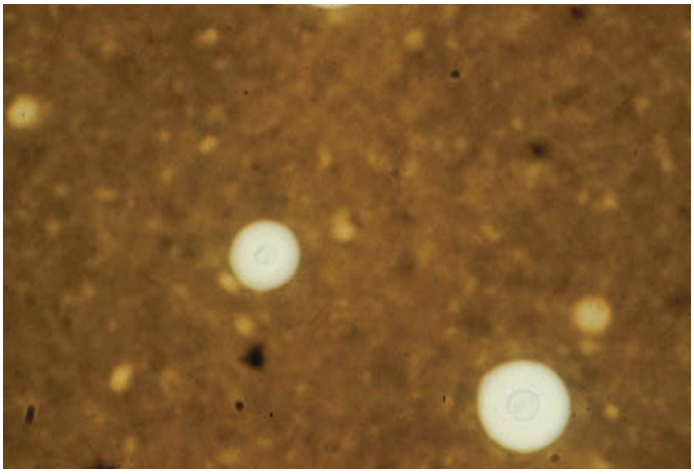


Figure 62-14 India ink preparation of cerebrospinal fluid containing *Cryptococcus neoformans*. This yeast produces a characteristic polysaccharide capsule around the budding yeast cells. (400×.)

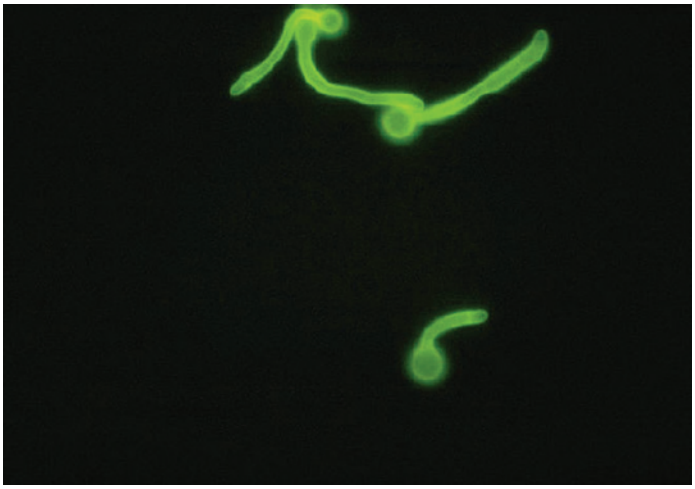


Figure 62-15 Calcofluor white stain of *Candida albicans* in culture. When viewed with a fluorescence microscope, the chitinous walls of the fungus will fluoresce. Germ tubes shown are produced following incubation of the yeast in serum. (Courtesy of Dr. Brian Harrington, CDC Public Health Image Library.)

Histopathologic Stains

Surgical pathologic examination of biopsy material is a common practice for the identification of suspected fungal infection (Guarner & Brandt, 2011). A number of stains have proved useful in recognizing fungal elements in tissue and in showing the immunologic response to infection. The periodic acid–Schiff (PAS) method is useful for demonstrating internal details. Gomori's methenamine silver (GMS) technique is considered one of the better stains for demonstrating fungi because it provides high contrast with minimal background staining, thus allowing for the demonstration of sparsely present fungal elements in the sample. The hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) stain is best used for studying the host reaction and for determining whether a fungus is hyaline (colorless) or dematiaceous (naturally pigmented). Other more specialized stains include Mayer's mucicarmine stain for demonstration of the mucoid capsule of *C. neoformans* and the Fontana-Masson stain for demonstration of melanin or melanin-like substances in the lightly pigmented agents of phaeohyphomycosis as well as the staining of minute amounts of melanin pigment in the cell wall of *C. gattii/neoformans*. A book by Chandler and Watts provides greater detail on the utilization of stains to detect fungi in tissue (Chandler & Watts, 1987).

Calcofluor White Stain

This fluorochrome compound, a whitener used in the textile and paper industries, binds to the chitin in the walls of fungal cells and fluoresces white (Fig. 62-15) or apple green (depending on the filter combination used) when exposed to short-wavelength ultraviolet light from

BOX 62-2

Calcofluor White Stain

1. Place specimen on a clean glass slide.
2. Mix with Calcofluor white reagent.
3. Using a fluorescence microscope, examine the preparation for fungal elements at 100× to 400× magnification (will typically appear bluish white against a dark background). (Calcofluor white may be substituted for lactophenol [aniline] blue stain when microscopic morphology of culture isolates is studied.)

a fluorescence microscope (Box 62-2) (Hageage & Harrington, 1984). Calcofluor white can also be mixed with potassium hydroxide to clear the specimen for easier observation of fungi. As is true with all fluorescent staining, care must be used in interpreting the results because nonspecific staining of substances that resemble fungal elements may also occur.

Immunohistochemical Stains

Immunohistochemistry has been used to identify a wide variety of infectious agents, including the fungi, in fresh, frozen, or paraffin-embedded tissues (Eyzaguirre & Haque, 2008). Although many fungi can be readily identified by standard histologic staining, some fungal elements appear atypical in tissue sections and in some cases cannot be distinguished morphologically. Both monoclonal and polyclonal antibodies are commercially available for *Aspergillus* species and *Candida albicans* (AbD Serotec); however, these are not FDA-approved, which requires in-house validation testing prior to patient use. Cross-reactivity with *Fusarium* species has been found using immunohistochemicals to detect *Aspergillus* species (Lackner & Lass-Florl, 2013).

ISOLATION IN CULTURE

Selection of Media

All specimens should be inoculated onto a general purpose fungal growth medium (see Table 62-3). The medium used traditionally is Sabouraud dextrose agar, which has a pH of 5.5 to 5.6 and was designed for the isolation of dermatophytic fungi. Emmons' modification of Sabouraud dextrose agar, which contains less glucose with a pH of 6.8 to 7.0, is more widely used in the clinical mycology laboratory as a general growth medium because of its wide application for the culture of fungi. Inhibitory mold agar and potato dextrose agar are also utilized as general isolation media in the laboratory.

For specimens from nonsterile sites or from sites that are likely to be contaminated with other microbial flora, inoculation of a nonselective agar and a selective agar in tandem is recommended. The most commonly used selective agar employs cycloheximide (500 mg/L) to inhibit saprophytic fungi and an antibacterial agent (usually chloramphenicol [50 mg/L] or gentamicin [50 mg/L]) to inhibit bacteria. For tissue specimens, especially when dimorphic fungi might be the etiologic agent, an enriched agar, such as brain-heart infusion agar with 5% to 10% sheep blood and supplemented with chloramphenicol and gentamicin or SABHI agar with antibiotics, may be added.

A recent addition for the cultivation of yeast from clinical specimens is the selective and differential medium called CHROMagar *Candida* (CHROMagar Company, Paris, France) for the isolation and differentiation of major clinically significant *Candida* species. This medium uses a chromogenic mixture to differentiate major *Candida* spp. by colony color: *C. albicans*, green; *Candida krusei*, pink; *Candida tropicalis*, metallic blue, and other species, white to mauve. Numerous reports have shown this medium to be useful for the isolation and presumptive identification of yeasts and to optimize detection of mixed cultures in clinical specimens (Ozcan et al, 2010; Perry & Freydiere, 2007; Raut & Varaiya, 2009).

Inoculation and Incubation

Processing of clinical specimens for fungal detection requires careful handling because some processes commonly used to prepare specimens for bacterial culture may be too disruptive for the fungal organism (e.g., grinding in a homogenizer). Inoculation of scrapings or curettings onto and into the agar at multiple points on the agar surface is a reliable technique for culture. Tissue should be teased or minced, after which the fragments are similarly inoculated.

Plates or tubes should be incubated in ambient air at 25° to 30° C. A controlled temperature incubator is essential. Although it is not necessary to incubate parallel plates or tubes at 37° C for recovery of the yeast phase of dimorphic fungi, in cases where strong suspicion of endemic fungi occurs, incubation at this temperature should be considered. Most fungi grow within a 2-week incubation period, and among commonly isolated fungi, only the dimorphic fungi such as *H. capsulatum* and *B. dermatitidis* are frequently detected after 14 days of incubation. General recommendations for incubation times are as follows: 7 days to detect the presence of yeast in mouth, throat, or vaginal specimens; 21 days to detect fungal pathogens in tissues and sterile body fluids other than blood; and up to 28 days for respiratory, bone marrow, and blood pathogens, and for specimens in which a dimorphic fungus is suspected. In general, all other specimens should be incubated for up to 14 days. Plates should be examined at least twice during the first week, when rapidly growing isolates may appear, and at least weekly thereafter.

Blood Cultures

Recovery of fungi from blood requires special attention and can be accomplished by inoculating broth media by using a biphasic broth-agar system or by using the lysis centrifugation technique (Isolator system; Wampole, Cranbury, N.J.). The lysis centrifugation method consists of a tube containing a solution that lyses erythrocytes and leukocytes (Cockerill et al, 1996; Reimer et al, 1997). After the blood is drawn into the vacutainer tube, the lysed contents, including any microbes, are centrifuged into a pellet, which is removed and plated onto the surface of agar plates. Although the Isolator system is considered a sensitive method for detection of fungemia, this system is also more susceptible to contamination through handling of the tube or by airborne spores that settle onto the agar plates during processing. Because a high percentage of fungemias are caused by yeast, continuous-read automated-culture methods have become the mainstay for fungal detection. Two systems commonly used are the BACTEC system (Becton Dickinson Diagnostic Systems, Sparks, Md.) and the BacT-Alert system (bioMerieux, Inc, Durham, N.C.). Because yeasts are aerobic organisms, aerobic culture bottles are used for detection. Two systems in combination (i.e., BACTEC MYCO/F Lytic blood culture bottles and the Isolator system) have been shown to optimize the recovery of fungi from blood (Vetter et al, 2001).

GROWTH RATE

The rate of growth of fungal isolates provides a useful clue to diagnostic possibilities. In general, the pathogenic dimorphic and dematiaceous fungi grow slower, requiring 1 week or longer for colonies to appear. Rapidly growing mold colonies that appear after prolonged incubation on mycologic media should be questioned as possible contaminants. However, many exceptions to this generalization have been noted, and laboratorians need to be aware that fungi such as the *Coccidioides* spp. may grow quickly on nonfungal medium. Protocols on how to handle fungal growth on bacterial cultures are needed to prevent unnecessary exposure of laboratory personnel to highly infectious fungal pathogens that may be encountered.

GROWTH TEMPERATURE

Most molds grow best at 25° to 30° C. Most yeasts, however, grow well at 35° to 37° C and are often recovered first on enriched blood agar plates in the bacteriology laboratory. In some cases, growth of a fungus at elevated temperatures is useful for differentiation of species.

MORPHOLOGIC IDENTIFICATION

Some of the morphologic studies necessary for the identification of fungal isolates can be accomplished with colonies from the original isolation plates. However, it is often necessary to transfer portions of colonies to new or different media (subculture) to demonstrate diagnostic structures. Table 62-3 describes some of the media commonly used for the identification of fungal species. One of the media more commonly used is cornmeal agar supplemented with Tween 80 (CM-T80) for the visualization of yeast morphology. Recognition of pseudohyphae with chlamydoconidia on this medium is considered confirmatory for *C. albicans/dubliniensis*. Other morphologic features can help to categorize yeasts into groups to facilitate separation into species. Although biochemical tests are important for identifying yeast isolates, complementation of these with a morphologic examination provides an important check on the biochemical information, especially if a commercial identification system has been used.

Yeast Morphology

The germ tube test is an important initial step in the identification of yeast isolates. Germ tubes, which are elongated, fingerlike extensions from a

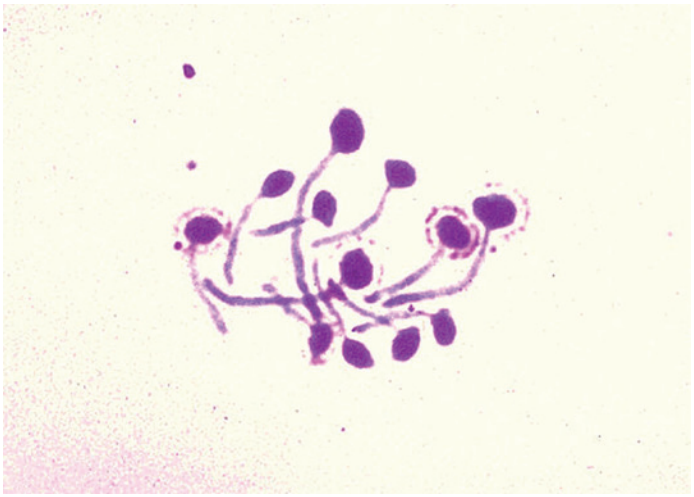


Figure 62-16 **Germ tubes have extended from the yeast cells of *Candida albicans*.** No constriction is seen at the junction of yeast cell and germ tube. The walls of the germ tube are parallel. The yeast was incubated for 2 hours at 37° C in serum. (Gram stain, 400×.)

BOX 62-3

Serum Germ Tube Test

1. Aseptically transfer several colonies of yeast to a 12- × 75-mm test tube containing approximately 0.5 mL of serum (human, fetal calf, bovine, or rabbit).
2. Incubate the tube at 35° C for up to 3 hours.
3. Place 1 drop of the mixture on a clean glass slide and coverslip.
4. Examine under high dry (400×) magnification and reduced light for the presence of germ tubes.

BOX 62-4

Yeast Morphology Test

1. Streak a light inoculum of yeast onto a section of a cornmeal agar containing Tween 80.
2. Coverslip the area inoculated.
3. Incubate at 25° to 30° C for 24 to 72 hours.
4. Observe under 100× and 400× magnification using reduced light for morphologic structures.

yeast cell, represent the beginnings of a true hypha (Fig. 62-16). This structure can be differentiated from pseudohyphae by the lack of a constriction at the junction of germ tube and yeast cell and by the parallel cell walls in the germ tube. True germ tubes are formed by both *C. albicans* and *Candida dubliniensis* after growth in serum at 37° C for up to 4 hours. In many laboratories with well-trained staff, the germ tube in combination with results of morphology on CM-T80 agar is considered confirmatory for the identification of *C. albicans/dubliniensis*.

The traditional germ tube test involves inoculation of a tube of serum (Box 62-3). After observation of the isolate for germ tubes at 37° C, incubation is continued for subsequent study of hyphal morphology and chlamydoconidia formation at 25° to 30° C. Thus, all the information necessary for rapid identification can be collected in one procedure. The CM-T80 agar may be substituted, but regardless of the medium used, incubation conditions must be carefully controlled and the test monitored with controls to achieve good results. The traditional Dalmau technique for demonstration of chlamydoconidia on cornmeal agar is detailed in Box 62-4.

Mold Morphology

A simple method for examination of molds is the cellophane tape mount, using clear tape and staining with lactophenol cotton (aniline) blue (LPCB) stain. If diagnostic structures are not observed, incubation can be continued and the process repeated. The established method used in observing mold morphology is to tease the mycelium apart with inoculating needles and examine the teased hyphae with LPCB stain.

TABLE 62-5

Rapid Testing for Presumptive Identification of Yeast Following Colonial Formation

Urease production	*Cryptococcus gattii/neoformans*
Germ tube production	*Candida albicans/dubliniensis*
Pseudohyphae present	*Candida* species
Chlamydoconidia present	*Candida albicans/dubliniensis*
Lipid growth requirement	*Malassezia furfur* species complex
Red colonial pigmentation	*Rhodotorula* species
Ascospore formation	*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*
Trehalose assimilation	*Candida glabrata*

Occasionally, a slide culture may be necessary to preserve easily disrupted conidial structures in their original relationships. The classic approach involves cutting a square of an appropriate agar medium (usually Sabouraud dextrose or potato dextrose agar), which is suspended on a glass slide and overlaid with a coverslip. The slide is supported by glass rods in a Petri dish, to which sterile water is added for maintenance of humidity. The coverslip subsequently can be removed after a few days' incubation, placed in a drop of LPCB, and observed for undisturbed reproductive structures.

When a mold isolate is suspected of being a dimorphic fungus (e.g., growth on cycloheximide-containing medium), a slide culture should not be performed, and a cellophane tape test or teased preparation should be examined only after the preparation has been sealed in a biosafety cabinet certified for use. Lactophenol cotton blue is fungicidal, but sealing the coverslip with nail polish before observation provides additional protection. Alternatively, the culture may be flooded with 10% formalin (4% formaldehyde solution) and incubated at room temperature overnight before the mold is manipulated.

BIOCHEMICAL IDENTIFICATION

Biochemical tests are at the core of identification schemes for yeast and occasionally are useful for identification of molds. A number of rapid tests for the presumptive identification of yeasts are described in Table 62-5.

Biochemical characterization of yeasts may be accomplished by study of fermentation or assimilation patterns. Assimilation testing, which is used more extensively in the laboratory, assesses the ability of an isolate to use a carbohydrate as the sole source of carbon needed for growth, or of nitrate as the sole source of nitrogen. Numerous commercial identification systems with varying incubation times from 4 to 72 hours are available and have become the mainstay for yeast identification. These systems include the API 20C AUX system and the VITEK 2 system (both from bioMérieux, Hazelwood, Mo.), the MicroScan system (Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics, West Sacramento, Calif.), the UniYeastTek system (Remel Laboratories, Lenexa, Kans.), the RapID Yeast Plus system (Innovative Diagnostics Systems, Norcross, Ga.), and the Phoenix Yeast ID Panel (Becton, Dickinson and Co., Franklin Lakes, N.J.). All of these systems perform well, as judged by reports in the literature and by proficiency testing surveys of the College of American Pathologists (Bernal et al, 1998; Crist et al, 1996; Espinel-Ingroff et al, 1998; Fenn et al, 1994; Hata et al, 2007; Ramani et al, 1998; Riddle et al, 1994; Gayibova et al, 2014). However, because no one system is known to be 100% accurate for identification of yeast species, a combination of methods should be considered, especially when rare species are recognized (Pincus et al, 2007).

In addition to fermentation and assimilation studies, stimulation of growth by biochemical compounds is a secondary test used in the differentiation of certain *Trichophyton* spp. (Weitzman et al, 1983). Inclusion of inositol and thiamine in various combinations into agar media (*Trichophyton* agars) allows assessment of growth-stimulating properties. The endpoint of the test, relative growth in comparison with a basal medium, is subjective, and both positive and negative controls should be included.

The test for urease production in cryptococci is of general utility in the clinical laboratory to differentiate these species from *Candida* spp., particularly in respiratory specimens (Canteros et al, 1996). *C. neoformans* is a pulmonary and systemic pathogen, whereas *Candida* spp. are frequent inhabitants of the upper airways but uncommon causes of primary pneumonia. Urease, however, may be produced by other nonpathogenic species of *Cryptococcus*, by *Rhodotorula* spp., and by some isolates of *Trichosporon* spp. and *C. krusei*. Urease production can be tested by inoculation of the yeast isolate onto a slant of Christensen urea agar or into urea broth.

Alkalinization of the medium after production of NH_3 by urea-splitting organisms is detected by inclusion of a pH indicator in the system. Colonies that have macroscopically visible pseudohyphae (feet) or that grow on cycloheximide-containing agar need not be tested, because *Cryptococcus* does not produce pseudohyphae in vitro and does not grow in the presence of cycloheximide.

Production of urease also is useful to differentiate the mold *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* (urease positive) from *T. rubrum* (urease negative). The isolate should be subcultured to a slant of Christensen urea agar and incubated at 25° to 30° C for at least 3 days.

Although commercial biochemical tests are fairly reliable for the identification of yeast, confirmation of the identification by examination of yeast morphology on agar media should also be considered. Using morphologic observation as a check can save embarrassing mistakes that would be made if automated or packaged systems were trusted implicitly.

SEROLOGIC IDENTIFICATION

Immunologic tests are available for detection of both antigens and antibodies to selected fungal pathogens; these assays have been shown to be of value for diagnosing infection and for monitoring therapeutic response (Lau et al, 2009; Wheat, 2006, 2009b; Wheat & Walsh, 2008). Although antibody testing for fungal pathogens has historically been used in some instances for diagnostics, these tests are no longer widely accepted owing to low sensitivity and specificity. In addition, the benefit of antibody detection remains unclear if patients are under immune suppression or are heavily colonized but not infected (Einsele & Loeffler, 2008).

Tests to detect fungal antigens or metabolic byproducts in serum or other body fluids, on the other hand, have been shown to be more useful for the diagnosis and management of fungal disease. Multiple antigen-detection methods are used for the specific diagnosis of a variety of diseases, including aspergillosis, cryptococcosis, histoplasmosis, blastomycosis, paracoccidioidomycosis, and penicillosis caused by *Penicillium marneffei.* One of the more widely used antigen-detection tests is the cryptococcal antigen test for the diagnosis of cryptococcal infection (Perfect et al, 2010). The polysaccharide capsule of *C. neoformans* becomes dissolved in the serum and cerebrospinal fluid and can be detected by the latex-based agglutination test or the enzyme immunoassay. Although these tests have limitations, they have been shown to be helpful in monitoring therapy over time through quantitative measurement of the titer of *Cryptococcus* polysaccharide in cerebrospinal fluid (Babady et al, 2009).

Antigen detection for the diagnosis of histoplasmosis has also proved useful when serum, urine, or bronchoalveolar lavage fluid is tested (Wheat, 2009b; Wheat et al, 2007). As a screening test, detection of *Histoplasma* antigen plays a special role in the diagnosis of disseminated and diffuse acute pulmonary histoplasmosis. Studies have shown that *H. capsulatum*–specific antigen can be detected in the urine of 90% of patients with disseminated infection and 80% of patients with acute histoplasmosis. Detection of antigen in bronchoalveolar lavage has also proved useful for the diagnosis of histoplasmosis, especially when the results of testing are combined with those obtained from cytopathology (Hage et al, 2007).

The Platelia *Aspergillus* Ag (Bio-Rad, Marnes-la-Coquette, France) is an immunoenzymatic sandwich microplate assay for the detection of the galactomannan antigen, a reliable marker for invasive aspergillosis (IA). This assay is available to screen serum and bronchoalveolar fluid samples of high-risk patients for IA. Although this test has been shown to only have moderate sensitivity for the diagnosis of IA, the test is highly specific and considered a reliable screening for the detection of IA when used with other clinical parameters (Heng et al, 2014; Morrissey et al, 2013). False-positive results have been reported in patients receiving piperacillin/tazobactam due to the presence of the galactomannan antigen in the preparation of this antibiotic, although some reports now suggest that the newer preparations no longer have this residual galactomannan present (Mikulska et al, 2012). The FDA, however, still recommends that when reporting a positive Platelia *Aspergillus* galactomannan test result, laboratories inform physicians of the limitations of the test with regard to potential interaction with piperacillin/tazobactam.

A commercial test to detect (1-3)-beta-D-glucan (BG) is available for the presumptive diagnosis of invasive fungal infection (Fungitell Assay; Associates of Cape Cod, Inc., East Falmouth, Mass.) (Pickering et al, 2005). This antigen is present in the cell walls of most pathogenic fungi (including *P. jiroveci*), with some notable exceptions such as *Cryptococcus* spp. and the Mucorales. Published studies have shown that BG may be useful as a screening tool for surveillance of invasive aspergillosis, as well as other invasive fungal diseases in populations at risk (Marty & Koo, 2009). Although false-positive results appear to limit the use of this test, additional studies are needed to further define its diagnostic utility (Onishi et al, 2012).

Skin tests have been used for the epidemiologic study of some infections, but they have limited utility for diagnostic purposes.

MOLECULAR IDENTIFICATION

Recent advances in molecular testing for the identification of fungal pathogens have had a significant impact on the diagnosis of fungal infections (Arvanitis et al, 2014; Borman et al, 2008; Griffin & Hanson, 2014; Preuner & Loin, 2009). Numerous reviews have addressed these changes, and the general consensus is that approaches to species identification of many fungi today should include both morphologic and molecular testing methods (Hibbett & Taylor, 2013).

One of the greatest needs for clinical medicine is the development of a rapid and reliable detection method that can identify fungal pathogens directly from clinical specimens. This need reflects not only the inability of current laboratory tests to provide a timely result, but also the fact that fungal infections in immunocompromised patients usually appear suddenly, progress rapidly, and are often fatal unless treatment is started earlier in the course of infection.

Numerous molecular assays using both probe-based and amplification-based technologies have been developed for the identification of fungal pathogens. With any of these approaches, an initial goal has been to define the genetic loci within the genome for use as the molecular target. Although multiple areas within the fungal genome have been evaluated, the targeted areas most commonly used are those found within the ribosomal DNA (rDNA) gene complex (Table 62-6) (Iwen et al, 2002). This section of the genome includes variable nucleotide sequence areas within the 18S gene and the 28S gene, as well as DNA sequence areas of the intervening internal transcribed spacer (ITS) regions called *ITS1* and *ITS2*. Sequence homology within the rDNA genes and differences within the spacer regions are used as the genetic basis for the organization of fungi into taxonomic groups. The ITS regions of the nuclear rRNA gene had been proposed as the fungal barcode locus; however, more recent studies have now shown that other genetic markers are needed for the separation of species within many of the genera of fungi (Balajee, 2009a; Guarro, 2013; Schoch et al, 2012).

Probe-based assays are commercially available and are commonly used in the mycology laboratory for the identification of *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, and *Coccidioides* spp. from culture (GenProbe AccuProbe, Hologic, Inc., Bedford, Mass.). Another probe-based method called the peptide nucleic acid fluorescence in situ hybridization (PNA-FISH) assay was recently developed and has become commercially available for the qualitative identification of *C. albicans* in blood cultures (Forrest, 2007; Wilson et al, 2005). This assay uses a fluorescent-labeled peptide nucleic acid probe that targets the species-specific ribosomal RNA of *C. albicans*. The sensitivity and specificity of this test have been shown to be >99%,

TABLE 62-6

Genetic Targets Utilized for the Detection and Identification of Fungal Pathogens

Gene Target	Fungal Species
Actin	*Candida albicans*
β-Tubulin	*Aspergillus* species
Calmodulin	*Aspergillus* species, *Fusarium* species
Chitin synthetase	Dermatophyte species
Cytochrome b	*Candida albicans*
Dihydrofolate reductase	*Pneumocystis jiroveci (carinii)*
Elongation factor (EF-1α gene)	*Fusarium* species
Mitochondrial rRNA	*Pneumocystis jiroveci*
rDNA complex (5S gene)	*Candida albicans, Pneumocystis jiroveci*
rDNA complex (18S gene)	Multiple
rDNA complex (28S gene)	*Aspergillus* species, *Candida* species
rDNA complex (IGS regions)	*Aspergillus* species
rDNA complex (ITS regions)	Multiple
RNA polymerase (RPB1 and RPB2)	*Fusarium* species

IGS, Intergenic spacer region; *ITS,* internal transcribed spacer region; *rDNA,* ribosomal deoxyribonucleic acid.

and the impact of rapid identification of *C. albicans* in the blood can be seen in the significant reduction in the empirical use of antifungals (Forrest, 2007). Incorporating the *C. albicans* PNA-FISH test as part of the initial identification algorithm for yeast recovered from blood can result in substantial savings for hospitals. Major drawbacks to this assay include the high costs of reagents and the changes in work flow required to incorporate testing in the laboratory.

Numerous amplification methods using both non–sequence-based and sequence-based approaches for analysis have been applied in identification of fungi. Most of the sequence-based analysis methods have used conventional polymerase chain reaction (PCR) with universal primers to target sequences within the *28S rDNA* gene, the *18S rDNA* gene, or the *ITS1-5.8S-ITS2* target areas (Arvanitis et al, 2014).

The availability of a nucleotide-based sequence database that has the breadth of phylogenetics and the taxonomic accuracy needed to identify fungal species is desirable for sequence analysis alignment. The largest database currently used for sequence-based identification is the publicly available GenBank database (National Center for Biotechnology Information, Washington, D.C.). Unfortunately, because this is an open-source database, reports suggest that up to 20% of the sequenced entries listed for fungi are associated with erroneously identified species (Balajee et al, 2007). Additionally, there is a need for sequences from a variety of genomic targets in the database that is phylogenetically represented with accurate species identification. Although multiple locus sequencing and alignment comparisons have been done using a variety of fungal species, additional studies using sequence comparison analysis are needed to determine the optimal target or targets for fungal identification. Multiple target evaluations for the identification of aspergilli and fusaria have been done and show this approach to be valid for identification purposes (O'Donnell et al, 2009; Peterson, 2008).

Recently a high-order multiplex PCR assay was developed for the direct detection of microbial pathogens in positive blood cultures. The FilmArray Blood Culture ID Panel (BioFire Diagnostics, Salt Lake City, Utah) tests for a complex panel of 24 pathogens to include five *Candida* species (*C. albicans*, *C. glabrata*, *C. krusei*, *C. parapsilosis*, and *C. tropicalis*). This assay includes the ability to automatically carry out all steps of the identification process in a closed system from DNA extraction to the interpretation of the PCR data. Limited prospective studies have shown that the FilmArray panel was a reliable alternative to identify the most common yeast from positive blood cultures (Altun et al, 2013; Desoubeaux et al, 2014). Additional studies are needed to determine how they will improve the management of patients by a reduction in the time of diagnosis and consequent length of hospitalization and mortality rates.

MALDI-TOF MASS SPECTROMETRY

Proteomics using matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF-MS) has emerged as a reliable method for the rapid identification of microbial pathogens (Chalupova et al, 2014). This technology involves mixing of the pathogen with a suitable chemical matrix on a solid surface, pulsing the sample with a laser for ablation and desorption, followed by ionization using time-of-flight technology to create a mass spectrum of the samples. This mass spectrum is then compared with a database of known spectra to allow for organism identification. The complexity of the composition of the fungal cell wall and the different protein compositions seen (e.g., between vegetative cells and spores and between young and mature colonies) makes the creation of reliable databases for analysis a challenge. Also, the selection of the proper matrix compound and choice of the optimal separation technique are still undergoing review. Multiple studies have been done on both yeasts and molds with various levels of success. MALDI-TOF-MS has also been evaluated for the direct identification of yeast from a positive blood culture bottle with accuracy in identification >90% (Rosevinge et al, 2013). Additional studies have also been done to show the potential of this technology for antifungal susceptibility testing (Vella et al, 2013).

SUSCEPTIBILITY TESTING

For many years, few antifungal chemotherapeutic agents were available, with amphotericin B virtually the only agent effective against most systemic fungal pathogens. Although this potent antifungal agent was frequently toxic, resistance to therapy was rare. With the recent introduction of new antifungal agents and with the widespread use of antifungal prophylaxis, the epidemiology of invasive fungal infections has changed, with non-*albicans Candida*, non-*fumigatus Aspergillus*, and molds other than *Aspergillus* becoming more common as causes of invasive disease (Baddley et al, 2009; Lai et al, 2008; Naggie & Perfect, 2009; Rodriguez-Tudela et al, 2008). These emerging fungi are resistant to or less susceptible than other fungi to standard antifungal agents and thus become more difficult to treat. Furthermore, although the predictability of innate resistance frequently means that species identification is often sufficient to alert the clinician to the likelihood of in vitro and often associated in vivo resistance, the emergence of resistance in a previously susceptible strain during the course of treatment has become more problematic (Arikan, 2007; Johnson, 2008).

The Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) has developed reference broth dilution methods for antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts (CLSI, 2008c) and molds (CLSI, 2008b). Methods for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility testing of yeasts (CLSI, 2009b) and a method for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility testing of nondermatophyte filamentous fungi (CLSI, 2009a) have also been developed.

The CLSI M27-A3 document has been approved for the testing of *Candida* spp. and *C. neoformans* (CLSI, 2008c). Since the publication of this document, an informational supplement has been published that includes the validation of 24-hour reading times for broth microdilution testing of the azoles (fluconazole and voriconazole) and the establishment of species-specific breakpoints for the five most common species of *Candida* (*C. albicans*, *C. glabrata*, *C. krusei*, *C. parapsilosis*, and *C. tropicalis*) and the echinocandins (anidulafungin, caspofungin, and micafungin), fluconazole, and voriconazole (CLSI, 2012b).

The CLSI M38-A2 method has been developed for in vitro susceptibility testing of the more common rapidly growing filamentous fungi that can cause invasive disease (CLSI, 2008b). Organisms included in this document for evaluation are *Aspergillus* spp., *Fusarium* spp., *Rhizopus oryzae (R. arrhizus)*, *Pseudallescheria boydii*, *Scedosporium prolificans*, and the mycelial form of *Sporothrix schenckii*, as well as the dermatophytes (*Epidermophyton*, *Microsporum*, and *Trichophyton*). This document is a reference standard developed through a consensus process to facilitate agreement among laboratorians in measuring the susceptibility of molds to antifungal agents. The clinical relevance of testing filamentous fungi remains uncertain, and breakpoints with proven relevance have yet to be identified or approved by the CLSI or any regulatory agency.

Since both reference broth methods are time consuming to perform, simplified alternatives to these methods have been assessed to include the disk-diffusion method, the Etest agar-gradient MIC method (bioMérieux, Inc., Durham, N.C.) (Alexander et al, 2007), the Sensititre YeastOne method (TREK Diagnostic Systems, Inc., Cleveland, Ohio) (Garcia-Agudao et al, 2012; Pfaller et al, 2012b), and the VITEK 2 method (bioMérieux, Durham, N.C.) (Cuenca-Estrella et al, 2010). The disk-diffusion method has also been approved for the testing of yeast, and studies have shown that results obtained from testing using this method are comparable with results obtained with the CLSI microdilution broth method (Diekema et al, 2007; Messer et al, 2007; Pfaller et al, 2003b).

The Etest uses a plastic strip that contains a predefined stable gradient of 15 antifungal concentrations to determine the on-scale MIC of the antifungal agent tested. These strips are commercially available for amphotericin B, anidulafungin, caspofungin, fluconazole, 5-flucytosine, itraconazole, ketoconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole. Studies have shown the Etest strips to be as reliable as the CLSI guidelines for in vitro susceptibility testing of both molds and yeasts (Alexander et al, 2007; Diekema et al, 2007; Pfaller et al, 2003b).

The Sensititre YeastOne method uses a dried colorimetric microdilution panel in a microtiter format for antifungal testing. This method is the only FDA-approved kit method for in vitro diagnostic use in testing yeast susceptibility to fluconazole, itraconazole, 5-flucytosine, and voriconazole. Panels are also available for research use only in testing antifungal susceptibility to amphotericin B, anidulafungin, caspofungin, micafungin, and posaconazole. This testing platform has been shown to be dependable for the testing of both molds and yeasts (Castro et al, 2004; Pfaller et al, 2012b).

Although the key elements involved in selecting an appropriate antifungal agent include the type of patient (e.g., solid organ or stem cell transplant), the severity of immunosuppression, a history of prolonged exposure to antifungal drugs, and knowledge of the genera and species of the infecting pathogen, susceptibility testing may be warranted in some circumstances, including the following: (1) as part of periodic surveys that establish antibiograms for isolates in an institution; (2) to help in the management of refractory oropharyngeal candidiasis in patients with apparent therapeutic failure; and (3) to aid in the management of invasive candidiasis when the use of azole antifungal agents is uncertain (Cornely et al, 2014). Also, scant data are available regarding the clinical implications of in vitro susceptibility testing in many cases, and the refractile

nature of many fungal pathogens to antifungal therapy makes susceptibility testing an option that needs to be considered. For instance, reports now show that resistance has emerged during treatment of *Aspergillus* infections, thus highlighting the potential need for in vitro susceptibility testing under this circumstance (Lass-Florl, 2010).

CANDIDIASIS, CRYPTOCOCCOSIS, AND OTHER INFECTIONS CAUSED BY YEAST

THE GENUS *CANDIDA*

Candida species are the most common recognized yeast pathogens and with increased use of immunosuppressive therapies, use of broad-spectrum antibiotics, and aging of the population, they have assumed a prominent place among nosocomial pathogens (Guery et al, 2009; Horn et al, 2009; Pfaller et al, 2012c). These species are currently the fourth most common cause of hospital-acquired bloodstream infection in the United States and rank third among causes of bloodstream infection in the intensive care unit (Lewis, 2009; Mean et al, 2008). Although *C. albicans* accounts for about 50% of invasive infections caused by *Candida* spp., the non-*albicans Candida* spp. have emerged as more common causes of disease (Lewis, 2009; Mean et al, 2008; Pfaller et al, 2014). In a recent multicenter evaluation of patients with candidemia (Prospective Antifungal Therapy Alliance registry), *C. albicans* accounted for 42.1% of cases, followed by *Candida glabrata* (26.7%), *Candida parapsilosis* (15.9%), *Candida tropicalis* (8.7%), and *Candida krusei* (3.4%) (Pfaller et al, 2012c).

Risk Factors

Candida infections are limited in extent and severity, depending on the immune status of the host. Since *Candida* spp. are a part of the normal flora in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract, mucous membranes, and skin, infections generally occur as the result of an opportunity. For instance, the use of broad-spectrum antibacterial therapy upsets the balance of colonizing flora on the mucous membranes of the oral cavity and the GI tract by eliminating the predominant competing bacterial flora, thus allowing overgrowth of yeast (Lewis, 2009; Pfaller & Diekema 2007; Singh et al, 2014).

Invasive disease by *Candida* spp. develops when host defenses are compromised. Diabetes, immunosuppressive disease or therapy, and neutropenia as a result of disease (e.g., AIDS) or treatment with high-dose chemotherapy are common risk factors. Bloodstream infections, including fungal endocarditis, are fostered by the use of indwelling vascular lines, which is common practice in the management of hospitalized patients (Kojic & Darouiche, 2004; Pfaller et al, 2014).

Clinical Diseases

Although *C. albicans* is the most common pathogen within the genus *Candida*, the frequency of the non-*albicans* species associated with infections has been increasing (Pfaller et al, 2014). Numerous reports describe invasive infections caused by *C. tropicalis* (Chai et al, 2010; Kothavade et al, 2010), *C. parapsilosis* (Pammi et al, 2013), *C. glabrata* (Pfaller et al, 2012a; Silva et al, 2012), *C. krusei* (Pelletier et al, 2005), and *C. lusitaniae* (Hawkins & Baddour, 2003).

Resistance to antifungal agents has emerged as a problem with the introduction of newer agents, which is especially problematic within the non-*albicans Candida* species (Pfaller et al, 2014, 2009). Resistance has been most notable within *C. glabrata* (resistance to the imidazoles [fluconazole, itraconazole, posaconazole, and voriconazole] and to the echinocandins) and within *C. krusei* (resistance to itraconazole). Antifungal intrinsic resistance is also present in *C. krusei* and in *C. lusitaniae* to fluconazole and amphotericin B, respectively. The Infectious Diseases Society of America has updated its clinical practice guidelines for the management of patients with invasive candidiasis and mucosal candidiasis to reflect changes noted with the addition of the new antifungals (Pappas et al, 2009).

Cutaneous Disease

Cutaneous disease is the most frequent infection caused by the *Candida* spp. This disease presents topically as an erythematous lesion of the skin, sometimes accompanied by a creamy white exudate or scaling. Moist conditions, such as diaper rash in infants and infection of skin folds (intertrigo) in adults, are precursors to infection. Common sites are those in the groin, between fingers and toes, under the female breast, and in the axilla. Workers who immerse their hands in water for long periods of time are also at risk for infection of the skin of the hands, the nails (onychomycosis), or the nail bed (paronychium) (Jayatilake et al, 2009). Moreover, chronic cutaneous disease (referred to as chronic cutaneous candidiasis) is an uncommon manifestation of *Candida* infection in patients with defective cellular immunity (Lilic, 2012).

Oral Candidiasis

Oral candidiasis usually manifests as the appearance of creamy white patches overlying erythematous buccal mucosa (thrush) (Singh et al, 2014). Although symptoms are usually minimal, dysphagia may result from heavy infection. Fissuring at the corners of the mouth is common and may be the primary complaint. Oral candidiasis is a common initial infection in patients with HIV and frequently is a marker of immune failure in these patients (Egusa et al, 2008). Especially notable is the prevalence of *C. dubliniensis* and the association with oral carriage and oropharyngeal infections in these patients with HIV (Loreto et al, 2010).

Gastrointestinal Candidiasis

Gastrointestinal candidiasis occurs most frequently as esophagitis and less commonly as gastritis (Bonacini, 2001). Erosive lesions of the distal esophagus and stomach result in substernal pain, which is aggravated by swallowing. White plaques overlie the lesions when viewed by endoscopy. The differential diagnosis includes infection with herpes simplex virus, although these two processes may coexist. Esophageal candidiasis was previously described as a frequent opportunistic infection in persons infected with HIV; however, the use of highly active antiretroviral therapy has led to a striking decline in the prevalence of this disease (Raufman, 2005). Even though *Candida* species are seen frequently as flora of the lower GI tract, the significance of finding yeast in stool is uncertain. True invasive infection of the lower GI tract is less common than disease of the upper tract, although overgrowth of *Candida* spp. in the stool may accompany antimicrobial therapy.

Vaginal Candidiasis

Vaginal candidiasis afflicts postpubertal women; diabetes mellitus, utilization of antimicrobial therapy, pregnancy, and sexual activity are predisposing conditions (Soong & Einarson, 2009). Vaginal burning and itching, dyspareunia, and a discharge that is classically curdlike are associated with an infection that may be acute or chronic and difficult to eradicate.

Urinary Tract Infection

Urinary tract infection caused by *Candida* spp. is difficult to diagnose because these yeasts are frequently recovered from the urine as a result of vaginal contamination or colonization of the bladder in patients with indwelling catheters, especially when systemic antibiotics have been administered (Bukhary, 2008; Kauffman et al, 2011). Severe infection of the upper urinary tract, including necrosis of the renal papillae, is a serious complication that occurs particularly in patients who have obstructive uropathy. Quantitative cultures do not appear useful for assessing the significance of *Candida* spp. in the urinary tract.

Invasive Candidiasis

Invasive candidiasis often involves sources other than the skin or mucous membranes. Most invasive infections caused by *Candida* spp. result in bloodstream invasion with hematogenous spread of the organism (Pfaller et al, 2014, 2012c). *Candidemia* is defined as the isolation of *Candida* spp. from at least one blood culture specimen with hematogenous spread of the yeast to one or more organs. Nonhematogenous *Candida* infection of a single deep organ (also called *disseminated* or *deep-seated* candidiasis) is not common and often is suspected as hematogenous spread to a single organ in which the manifestations of disease are seen. Primary localized invasive infections occur normally after abdominal surgery and following perforation of the gut leading to contamination of the peritoneal cavity with *Candida*. Other forms of deep-seated infection include endophthalmitis, meningitis, pneumonia, osteomyelitis, and hepatitis. Fungal endocarditis resulting from a bloodstream infection is uncommon, but when present is commonly caused by a *Candida* spp. Risk factors for this infection include prosthetic valve surgery, preexisting valvular heart disease, use of intravenous catheters or broad-spectrum antibiotics, intravenous drug abuse, and immunosuppression.

Pathology

The tissue response to *Candida* is regularly purulent, resembling lesions of bacterial infection with abscess formation present. On occasion, the response to *Candida* infection is granulomatous. In tissue, most *Candida* organisms appear as mats of budding yeasts measuring 3 to 5 µm in diameter mixed with pseudohyphae (Guarner & Brandt, 2011). *Candida*

glabrata, which is noted for producing the smaller-sized yeast cells (3 µm in diameter), does not produce pseudohyphae and must be differentiated from *Histoplasma* in tissue. Vascular invasion, as occurs with *Aspergillus* or the mucormycetes, is also uncommon in yeast infection. Yeast can often be demonstrated with an H&E stain but may be more easily recognized in sections stained with GMS or PAS. Studies have also shown that a finding of *Candida* organisms on a Papanicolaou (PAP) smear is a reliable indicator of vaginitis (Heller et al, 2008).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Specimens for culture should be taken from affected organs and from lesions in which they can be visualized. Modern continuous-monitoring blood culture systems detect most clinically significant yeast isolates with the ability to directly identify the five most common *Candida* species in positive blood cultures using recently approved molecular tests (Altun et al, 2013; Desoubeaux et al, 2014). Tissue specimens, scrapings, and swabs from the mouth or vagina should be inoculated onto primary fungal isolation media with and without cycloheximide. The presence of filamentous extensions from the edges of the colony (feet) is a macroscopic indication that pseudohyphae are being produced (see Fig. 62-1). *C. glabrata* (formerly *Torulopsis glabrata*) and *Cryptococcus* spp. do not form pseudohyphae in vitro, with some other *Candida* spp., such as *C. lusitaniae* and *Candida guilliermondii*, also void of pseudohyphae formation.

The extent of the mycologic evaluation depends on the clinical setting and the specimen type. *Candida* spp. are frequently isolated from the respiratory and urinary tracts; however, interpretation of a finding of *Candida* spp. in these areas is difficult. Complete identification of isolates from these sites should be accomplished only selectively after consultation with the responsible clinician.

A preliminary report of *C. albicans/dubliniensis* may be issued if the germ tube test is positive (see Fig. 62-16). Additional study of yeast morphology using cornmeal agar to confirm the presence of chlamydoconidia can facilitate identification of *C. albicans/dubliniensis* within 24 to 48 hours (Fig. 62-17). Since both *C. albicans* and *C. dubliniensis* are germ tube–positive, and because they have a high degree of phenotypic similarity, distinguishing between these two species has been difficult. However, strict adherence to detail when it comes to growth at 42° C, the production of abundant chlamydoconidia, and the sugar assimilation pattern can be used to differentiate between them (Ellepoia & Khan, 2012; Ells et al, 2011; Loreto et al, 2010).

When germ tubes and chlamydoconidia are not demonstrated, a preliminary or presumptive identification of *Candida* spp. can be made only if pseudohyphae are present and arthroconidia are absent. Conventional methods for identification of *Candida* species based on morphologic and physiologic attributes are commonly used (see Table 62-6) (Neppelenbroek et al, 2014). For instance, a rapid assimilation trehalose test procedure has been suggested by the CLSI (document M35-A2) for the identification of *C. glabrata*, a species that has emerged as a common cause of invasive disease with known resistance to standard antifungal therapy (CLSI, 2008a). An accurate identification, however, is often complex and time-consuming, frequently requiring new techniques such as molecular typing to confirm the identification (Castanheira et al, 2013; Neppelenbroek et al, 2014).

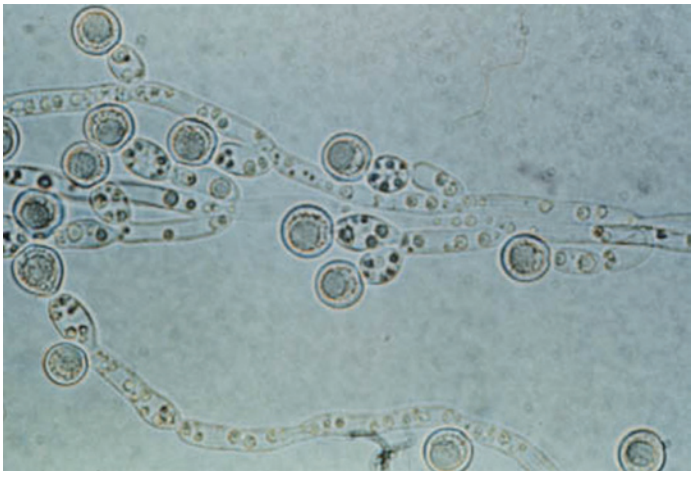


Figure 62-17 **Chlamydoconidia produced by *Candida albicans*.** These thick-walled asexual reproductive structures that occur most commonly at the ends of pseudohyphae are characteristic for this species and for *Candida dubliniensis*. (Cornmeal agar plate, 400×.)

THE GENUS *CRYPTOCOCCUS*

The *Cryptococcus* species complex consists of two species: *C. neoformans* and *Cryptococcus gattii* (formerly called *C. neoformans* var. *gattii*). These species are known to cause systemic infection in both immunocompetant and immunocompromised individuals (Perfect et al, 2010). The environmental reservoir for *C. neoformans* (teleomorph, *Filobasidiella neoformans*) is primarily pigeon guano, and infections caused by this organism occur worldwide. *C. gattii*, on the other hand, was originally found predominantly in tropical and subtropical areas, especially those areas associated with eucalyptus trees, with infection apparently limited in distribution, primarily to northern Australia and Papua New Guinea (Chen et al, 2014). More recently, infections have been noted in individuals after exposure in the Vancouver and U.S. Pacific Northwest regions, with recent emergence of this pathogen now identified in multiple states outside of these areas (Chen et al, 2014; Harris et al, 2013). Since both species are classified within the phylum *Basidiomycota*, they are capable of producing basidiospores under the right circumstances. This sexual stage of cryptococci occurs only when appropriate mating types are crossed; thus this stage is not generally recognized in the clinical laboratory. Sexual reproduction in the genus *Cryptococcus*, however, leads to increasing genetic diversity with the potential to produce strains that are hypervirulent and show increased antifungal resistance (Huston & Mody, 2009).

Risk Factors

Immunosuppressive therapy or disease is a risk factor for cryptococcosis (Perfect et al, 2010). Prior to the appearance of HIV infection, 30% to 50% of patients with cryptococcal infection were immunologically normal, as measured by available parameters. Risk factors for these patients include neoplasia, diabetes mellitus, immunosuppressive therapy, and immunologic disease. The introduction of the HIV-infected patient dramatically increased the number of cases of cryptococcosis, and although advances have been made in antiretroviral therapy, in antifungal treatment, and in intracranial pressure management in these patients, cryptococcosis continues to have a high rate of mortality. An estimate of the global burden of cryptococcal meningitis finds the numbers of cases and deaths to be excessive within areas of sub-Saharan Africa, where there is a high incidence of HIV-infected people (Veltman et al, 2014).

Clinical Disease

Primary cryptococcal disease generally occurs in the lungs following inhalation of the fungus from the environment. This disease can remain localized or can disseminate by hematogenous spread to other tissues, most frequently the central nervous system. The severity of the disease is dependent on the host's immune response, with severe disease most frequent in immunologically compromised patients. Practical guidelines for the management of cryptococcal diseases are available from the Infectious Diseases Society of America (Perfect et al, 2010).

Respiratory Tract

Cryptococcal infection of the respiratory tract exhibits a wide variety of presentations (Shirley & Baddley, 2009). Immunologically competent patients may exhibit no symptoms despite the presence of cryptococci in the lower respiratory tract, and the infection may be diffuse or localized, to include the formation of coin lesions that usually do not calcify. Immunocompromised patients on the other hand may have extensive infection that often is accompanied by other infectious agents, particularly *Pneumocystis (carinii) jiroveci* or cytomegalovirus. Extrapulmonary disease may appear weeks after a pulmonary infection has been documented.

Skin Lesions

Skin lesions usually result from hematogenous dissemination from the respiratory tract in immunocompromised patients (Negroni, 2012). These lesions present as single or multiple papules, which enlarge and ulcerate, producing a thin exudate that contains the yeast. Primary cutaneous manifestations of the disease are rare but may also be reported in immunocompetent individuals (Revenga et al, 2002).

Bone and Joint Infection

Bone and joint infection may occur usually as a result of dissemination from the respiratory tract (Bariteau et al, 2014). Osteolytic lesions are produced, with abscesses formed in adjacent soft tissue that contain a thin

exudate with large numbers of cryptococci. Less commonly, joint spaces are involved.

Central Nervous System Infection

Cryptococcal meningitis is the most frequent and most serious focus of disseminated cryptococcal infection (Sloan, 2014). Onset of this disease may be acute, or presentation may be insidious and progression torpid. Headache and changes in mental status and personality often dominate the clinical picture. Basilar meningitis, involvement of the cranial nerves, and invasion of the underlying cortex result in hydrocephalus and decreased visual acuity. Fever, if present, usually is of low grade, and typical signs of acute meningeal irritation, such as stiff neck and Kernig's and Brudzinski's signs, are often absent.

Pathology

The histologic response depends on the degree of encapsulation of the infecting cryptococcal strain. Most commonly, little or no inflammatory response is seen, and the cells of normal tissue are separated by large numbers of encapsulated cryptococci. Poorly encapsulated strains of *C. neoformans* elicit a granulomatous inflammatory response, and yeasts are found predominantly in the cytoplasm of macrophages. When cerebrospinal fluid is examined, the only cells present may be the yeasts, which may be misinterpreted as mononuclear host cells if infection is not suspected clinically. Large capsules usually are demonstrated in positive India ink preparations; however, they are not always evident, and the cells may be confused with those of *B. dermatitidis* or even immature spherules of *Coccidioides* spp.

Differentiation in tissue sections can be accomplished by staining of cryptococcal mucopolysaccharide with mucin stains or demonstration of melanin pigment with the Fontana-Masson stain. Mayer's mucicarmine stain and the GMS stain have been shown to be important for the diagnosis of cryptococcosis when atypical forms were present in an uncommon location (Gazzoni et al, 2009). The presence of a thick polysaccharide capsule gives these organisms the characteristic appearance of having a clear space around the yeast cells that can be seen in tissue sections using H&E stain. The encapsulated yeast in variable size (3 to 10 µm in diameter) with a decidedly round nature and narrow-based budding are clues to the identification of this organism in tissue (Guarner & Brandt, 2011).

Laboratory Diagnosis

Possible cryptococci should always be identified as to the species complex level. Clues to the presence of this fungus include good growth on blood agar plates incubated in the bacteriology laboratory at 35° to 37° C, a mucoid appearance of the colonies (Fig. 62-18), a round appearance of the yeast cells without pseudohyphae in microscopic wet preps or stained preparations, and lack of growth on media that contain cycloheximide. Presumptive identification can be performed rapidly by examining an India ink preparation for capsules (see Fig. 62-14) and/or conducting a rapid urease test. Capsules may be diminished even in heavily encapsulated strains once they have been isolated on agar media; however, subcultures of isolates may restore the mucoid capsule. Definitive identification of the species complex can be accomplished by biochemical testing.

Figure 62-18 Colonies of *Cryptococcus neoformans* usually appear mucoid when first isolated. Some strains are poorly encapsulated and lack the mucoid appearance. (Sabouraud dextrose agar.)

The differentiation between *C. gattii* and *C. neoformans* using standard phenotypic methods is difficult and generally not performed in the clinical laboratory (reported as *C. neoformans* species complex or *C. gattii/neoformans*). The incorporation of glycine into specialized medium (L-canavanine-glycine-bromthymol blue medium) has been shown to be a reliable method for the differentiation of these species, in that *C. gattii* readily assimilates glycine and *C. neoformans* does not (Klein et al, 2009). Molecular sequencing of the D1/D2 region of the 28S rDNA gene or the ITS regions of the rRNA genes has also been shown to be reliable in separating these two species (Georgi et al, 2009). More recently, matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS) has been shown to be a reliable method to rapidly discriminate between these two species (McTaggart et al, 2011; Posteraro et al, 2012).

The polysaccharide antigen of the *C. neoformans* species complex can be detected in cerebrospinal fluid and serum, using the latex agglutination test (Perfect et al, 2010). Although the sensitivity of this test exceeds 90%, considerable variability in performance has been noted among different commercial kits. The frequency of erroneous results can be diminished by treatment of serum specimens with pronase. False-positive reactions appear to be less common in patients infected with HIV, perhaps because of the large numbers of organisms present. Titration of positive results has been done traditionally to assess prognosis and to obtain a baseline for use in following the effects of treatment. Large amounts of antigen and persistence of antigen following therapy are poor prognostic signs in patients. Measurement of serum antigen appears to be a more sensitive test than testing of cerebrospinal fluid in HIV-infected patients. However, both serum and cerebrospinal fluid should be tested for optimal sensitivity. A negative India ink test on cerebrospinal fluid is a good prognostic sign in non–HIV-infected patients but does not have the same implication for patients with AIDS.

THE GENUS *MALASSEZIA*

The history of the nomenclature used for the genus *Malassezia* is complicated. Currently, this genus is composed of one non–lipid-dependent species (*Malassezia pachydermatis*) and 13 lipid-dependent species (Gaitanis et al, 2012). *Malassezia furfur* is considered the most common pathogen in this group among humans. Since differentiation of the *Malassezia* spp. requires molecular sequencing, most clinical laboratories prefer to report results as "*Malassezia furfur* species complex" or "*Malassezia* species."

Risk Factors

Malassezia yeasts are commensals of the normal skin, and cutaneous disease may occur in normal hosts. Systemic infection occurs primarily in neonates and is associated with intravenous hyperalimentation with lipid solutions (Gaitanis et al, 2012). Although *Malassezia* spp. are not ordinarily present on the skin of healthy infants, the yeasts have been recovered from the skin of >35% of infants who were in intensive care units.

Clinical Diseases

Infection caused by *Malassezia* spp. can range from an asymptomatic lesion on the epidermis of normal individuals to systemic disease in the immunocompromised host.

Cutaneous Infection

Malassezia species are known causes of pityriasis (tinea) versicolor and seborrheic dermatitis, and evidence is accumulating that they play a significant role in atopic eczema/dermatitis syndrome (formerly called **atopic dermatitis**) (Pedrosa et al, 2014; Zisova, 2009).

Pityriasis versicolor is a common infection of the epidermis in immunologically normal patients, resulting in hyperpigmentation or hypopigmentation of the skin, commonly on the trunk and upper arms. Fawn-colored macules are the most common presentation, but depigmenting lesions are more obvious in dark-skinned persons and may be accentuated by a suntan in light-skinned individuals. The ill effects are purely cosmetic but may be considerably troublesome. Hypopigmented lesions must be differentiated from vitiligo. Therapy consists of topical application of fungicidal creams or rinses.

Seborrheic dermatitis is a multifactor disease that requires both endogenous and exogenous predisposing factors for development. An inflammatory reaction against the yeast is considered the basis for the development of this disease.

Systemic Infection

Systemic infection occurs almost invariably in infants who have received intravascular infusions of lipid (the disease is also called *Malassezia*

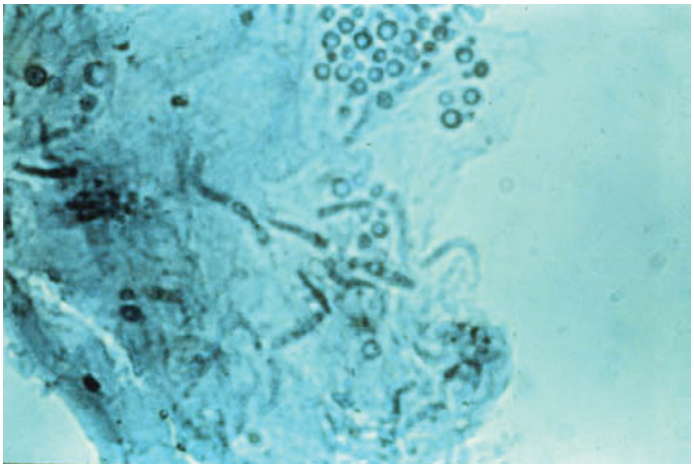


Figure 62-19 Skin scrapings from a lesion of pityriasis versicolor. The yeast and short hyphal forms (spaghetti and meatballs appearance) are characteristic of *Malassezia furfur* species complex. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

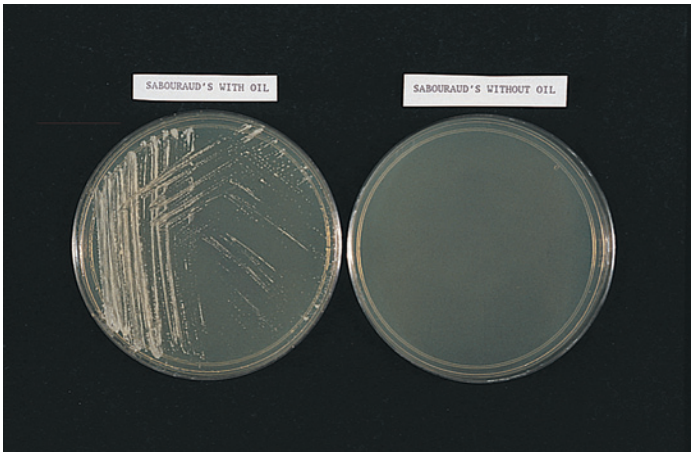


Figure 62-20 Abundant growth of *Malassezia furfur* is evident on a plate that was overlaid with oil before the inoculum was applied. No growth is seen on a companion plate without oil. (Sabouraud dextrose agar.)

catheter–associated sepsis) (Tragiannidis et al, 2010). Diluted lipid solution supports the growth of lipid-dependent *Malassezia* spp. by supplying long-chain fatty acids that are also found on the skin and must be supplied in the laboratory for isolation of the yeast. Infected infants are often asymptomatic, but fever, leukocytosis, and thrombocytopenia may be present. Pneumonia is a common systemic manifestation of disease, probably resulting from emboli received from infected intravenous catheters. Removing the infected catheter is therapeutic.

Pathology of *Malassezia* Infection

The diagnosis of pityriasis versicolor usually is made clinically or by demonstrating yeast and short hyphal forms (similar in appearance to spaghetti and meatballs) in KOH preparations of skin scrapings (Fig. 62-19). The addition of Calcofluor white or another fungal stain enhances detection because the fungal cells are small and difficult to visualize when unstained. When biopsied, hyperkeratosis, acanthosis, and dermal mononuclear infiltrates may be seen. Little is known of the pathology of systemic infection with *Malassezia* spp. because biopsies are performed infrequently and lethal infection is uncommon. In rare fatal cases, vasculitis, septic infarcts, and granulomatous inflammation have been described in many organs, including the lung, liver, and kidney.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Culture for *Malassezia* spp. is rarely requested in cutaneous disease, and direct observation of yeast in KOH preparations usually is done in the physician's office. This yeast should be sought in cultures of blood and intravenous catheter tips from neonates. Before inoculation, a drop of sterile olive oil is added to the surface of a suitable agar medium, such as Sabouraud dextrose agar or sheep blood agar. Within 2 to 3 days, colonies appear light brown and often have a very dry appearance in the oil overlay. An initial clue to this pathogen is lack of growth in the absence of oil or stimulation of growth by the presence of oil overlay (Fig. 62-20). In contrast, *M. pachydermatis* is not dependent on long-chain fatty acids for growth.

Identification of the genus can be suspected by microscopic examination of the yeast cells, which measure 3 to 7 µm in diameter. The budding process in *Malassezia* is unusual because it occurs as an enteroblastic process with the formation of phialides. The bud is broad-based, and the collarettes of the phialides may be observed with the light microscope as a distinct dark ring separating the mother and daughter cells (Fig. 62-21). Species identification can be confirmed using molecular techniques that target regions within the rDNA complex (Cafarchia et al, 2011).

Figure 62-21 Gram stain from culture demonstrating gram-positive yeast cells of *Malassezia* spp. showing the characteristic collarette (bud scar). (Gram stain, 1000×.)

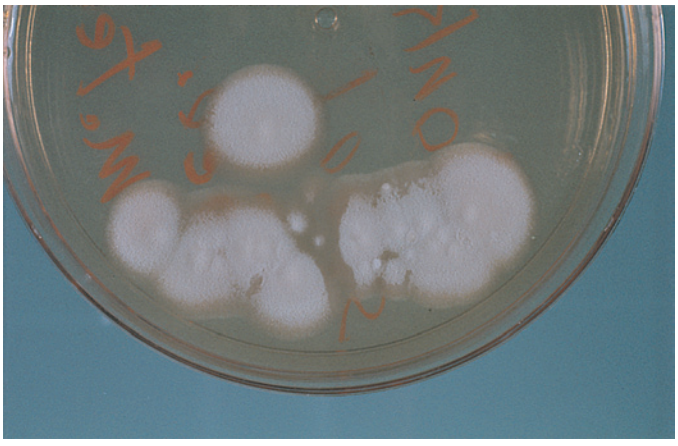


Figure 62-22 An aerial mycelium arises from the yeastlike colony of *Geotrichum candidum*. (Sabouraud dextrose agar.)

OTHER YEAST AND YEASTLIKE PATHOGENS

Invasive infection caused by rare yeast pathogens continues to increase due in part to the severe immunosuppressive conditions that predispose patients to infection. Recently, a panel of experts of the European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases (ESCMID) and the European Confederation of Medical Mycology (ECMM) undertook a data review and compiled guidelines for the diagnostic tests and procedures for detection and management of rare invasive yeast infections (Arendrup et al, 2014). Their assessment showed that there are a number of non-*Candida* species that continue to emerge and cause disease. Notable examples of species associated with invasive disease included the *Trichosporon* species, *Geotrichum candidum*, and *Rhodotorula mucilaginosa* (Fig. 62-22). Currently, 50 species of *Trichosporon* have been described with 16 linked to human disease (Colombo et al, 2011). Of these *T. asahii*, *T. mucoides*, and *T. asteroids* are most commonly associated with invasive infection. The

ability of these species to adhere to and form biofilms on implanted devices has been shown to account for the emergence of invasive trichosporonosis cases (Colombo et al, 2011). Both *G. candidum* and *R. mucilaginosa* have emerged as causes of life-threatening fungemia in severely immunocompromised patients (Henrich et al, 2009; Spiliopoulou et al, 2012). Resistance to regularly used antifungal agents is not uncommon with these pathogens and other rare yeast-causing disease, making the correct identification mandatory for appropriate management of the infected patient.

Demonstration of these rare yeasts in tissues, by histopathology with culture or isolation in culture from multiple specimens of a sterile site, is required to document the role of an unusual yeast in the infectious process. Species confirmation in these circumstances requires molecular sequencing of the isolated pathogen.

MYCOSES CAUSED BY DIMORPHIC FUNGI

Thermally dimorphic fungi are the most pathogenic organisms encountered in a clinical mycology laboratory. In the United States, the most important dimorphic pathogens are *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *capsulatum*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, *Coccidioides immitis*, *Coccidioides posadasii*, and *Sporothrix schenckii*. *Sporothrix* is widely distributed throughout the world, and the other organisms are found predominantly in North America, where they have distinct geographic distributions (Fig. 62-23). Epidemic disease is most common with *Histoplasma* and *Coccidioides* and less common with *Sporothrix* and *Blastomyces*. These endemic mycoses share several characteristics, including (1) the ability to cause disease in a healthy host, (2) association with a specific ecologic niche in the environment, and (3) demonstration of temperature dimorphism (mold in the environment at a temperature of 25° to 30° C and yeast or spherules [in the case of *Coccidioides*] at body temperature).

THE GENUS *HISTOPLASMA*

H. capsulatum is subdivided into two varieties: *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum* (hereafter referred to as *H. capsulatum*) and *H. capsulatum* var. *duboisii*. Both of these fungal pathogens are geographically restricted, and acquisition of infection does not overlap in most cases. *H. capsulatum* is found primarily along the Ohio, Mississippi, and St. Lawrence Rivers but may have worldwide distribution. *H. capsulatum* var. *duboisii*, on the other hand, is limited to equatorial Africa and causes a disease referred to as *African histoplasmosis*. Distinguishing characteristics of the tissue phase can be observed to differentiate between these two pathogens; however, lack of travel to the endemic area in Africa generally can be used to rule out infection with the var. *duboisii*.

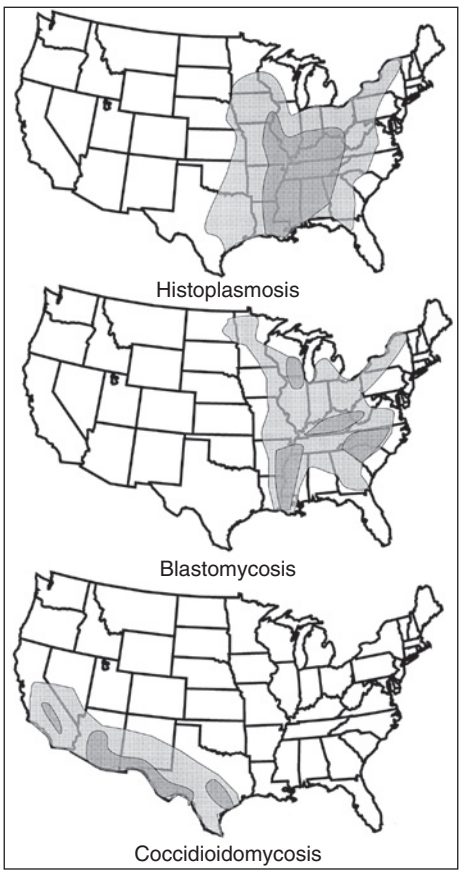


Figure 62-23 Geographic distribution of dimorphic fungal infections in the United States. Areas of greatest endemicity *(dark shading)* and lesser endemicity *(light shading)* are illustrated. Sporadic cases may also occur in other areas outside of the endemic zones.

Risk Factors

The primary risk factor for acquiring histoplasmosis is living in endemic regions of the United States. In some areas, more than 90% of the population reacts positively to histoplasmin skin testing. Growth of *H. capsulatum* in the soil is stimulated by bird guano, although the fungus does not infect the bird. Once growing in the soil, the fungus sporulates and produces conidia, which, during activities that generate aerosols, can be inhaled into the lungs. Occupationally acquired acute histoplasmosis has been reported, leading the U.S. HHS to issue a document outlining measures for protecting workers at risk (HHS, 2004).

Epidemic acute disease has occurred in individuals exposed to areas endemic for this fungus. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) described 221 cases of histoplasmosis among students representing 37 colleges in 18 states who had vacationed in Acapulco, Mexico, in March of 2001 and then returned to the United States (CDC, 2001a). Most infected individuals were identified as visiting a common source point leading to spore exposure. The CDC also described an outbreak of histoplasmosis among day camp attendees with 22 confirmed cases (a serum or urine test positive for *H. capsulatum* with characteristic pulmonary symptoms) and 14 suspected cases (characteristic pulmonary symptoms after camp arrival) of disease in counselors and children attending the camp (CDC, 2012). Occupationally, a CDC report described an outbreak of histoplasmosis wherein at least 25 workers at an agricultural processing plant in Nebraska developed disease following exposure to soil known to be contaminated with *H. capsulatum* (CDC, 2004).

Clinical Diseases

The magnitude of the exposure and the immune status of the host influence the clinical manifestations of disease, which can range from an asymptomatic infectious process to disseminated life-threatening disease (Kauffman, 2007; Wheat et al, 2007). Exposure to low concentrations of spores from the environment in a normal host is typically asymptomatic. Therefore most adults living in an endemic area are seropositive and show immunologic evidence of infection; however, they remain asymptomatic to disease. Disseminated disease is usually reserved for individuals who are immunosuppressed.

Acute Pulmonary Infection

Individuals who are exposed to large numbers of conidia may develop a flulike syndrome with high fever, chills, fatigue, cough, and pleuritic or retrosternal chest pain. More severely affected individuals may be sick for several weeks, but resolution usually is complete without antifungal therapy in the normal host. If focal granulomatous inflammation has occurred, calcification of the focus typically leaves a well-circumscribed coin lesion, which may be seen on the chest radiograph.

Granulomatous and Fibrosing Mediastinitis

These types of manifestations involve the lymph nodes in the mediastinum (Hammoud et al, 2009). Granulomatous disease is characterized by enlarged lymph nodes, which may obstruct the airways, pulmonary vessels, or esophagus. Fistulas can form within the lymph nodes and adjacent mediastinal structures. Fibrosing disease is a reaction that occurs in the mediastinum among individuals predisposed to an excessive response to *Histoplasma* antigens. Obstructions may form that involve the superior vena cava, the airways, the pulmonary arteries or veins, or the esophagus. Both granulomatous and fibrosing diseases are thought to progress independently.

Chronic Pulmonary Histoplasmosis

This debilitating disease occurs primarily in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), most of whom are middle-aged men (Kennedy & Limper, 2007). However, studies have shown that this disease is becoming more commonly recognized among females, and that females exhibited fewer cavities and presented with decreased numbers of smokers and reduced extent of smoking exposure, along with absence of COPD. In this disease, calcification and cavitations may occur, which may mimic chronic pulmonary tuberculosis and pulmonary neoplasia.

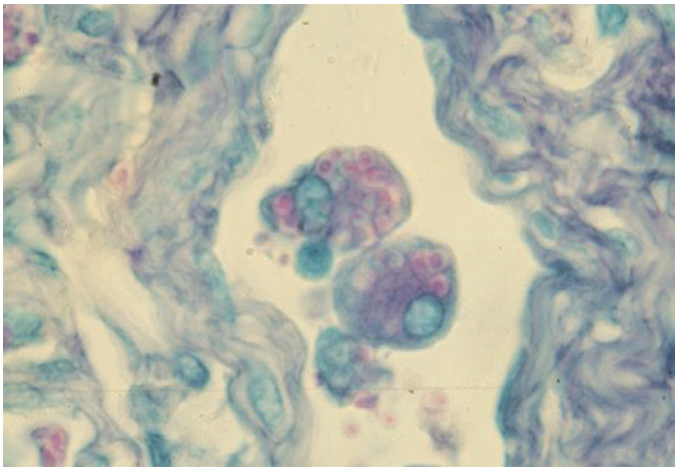


Figure 62-24 Yeast cells of *Histoplasma capsulatum* in macrophages. The presence of intracellular small, round to oval yeastlike cells in tissue is a characteristic pathologic finding in histoplasmosis. (Hematoxylin and eosin stain, 1000×.)

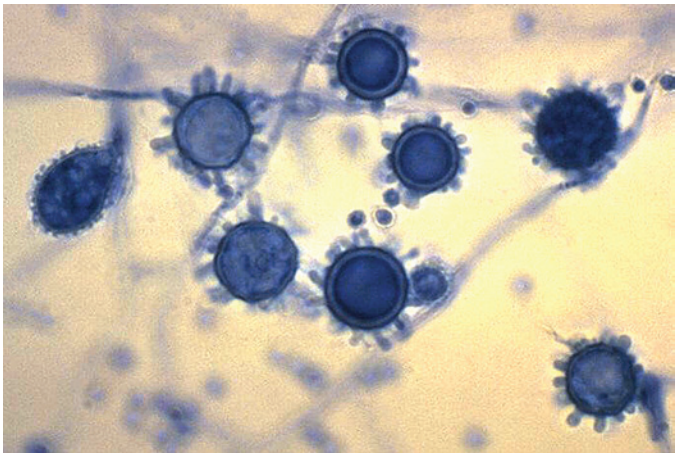


Figure 62-25 Tuberculate macroconidia with microconidia of *Histoplasma capsulatum* in culture. These structures are characteristic of the environmental mold form of this dimorphic fungus. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.) (Courtesy of CDC Public Health Image Library.)

Disseminated Histoplasmosis

Dissemination of yeast through the reticuloendothelial system may occur as part of acute pulmonary histoplasmosis, resulting in healed granulomas that often calcify, especially in the spleen. Clinically disseminated infection occurs in two classes of patients. The first group consists of individuals at the extremes of age who do not have a recognized immunosuppressive condition but may have an immune system that is incompletely developed or is diminished by age in ways that are incompletely understood. The second group comprises patients with recognized immunosuppressive diseases or therapies. Before the 1980s, these diseases were predominantly hematologic neoplasms; however, in recent years, HIV infection has dominated the risk factors (Adenis et al, 2014). Progression of disease may be rapid or insidious.

Compromised patients may develop an infection of the reticuloendothelial system, resulting in lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, or thrombocytopenia (Wheat et al, 2007). Destruction of the adrenal cortex by the granulomatous process may be sufficiently extensive to cause hormonal insufficiency. Central nervous system infection may be manifested as chronic meningitis, intracerebral granulomas, or both. Endovascular infection includes endocarditis with large, bulky vegetations. Any part of the GI tract may be affected, and ulcerating lesions may suggest a neoplasm macroscopically. The hallmark of disease is an oropharyngeal ulcer, which may cause hoarseness, dysphagia, or a painful lesion on the tongue or gingiva (Psevdos & Tanowitz, 2008).

Pathology

As a facultative intracellular pathogen, *H. capsulatum* is found predominantly in macrophages. Pathologic lesions consist of collections of infected macrophages, noncaseating granulomas, or caseating granulomas. Histopathologic lesions are similar to those produced by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, and these two pathogens should be considered at the same time in the patient workup differential. Intracellular yeasts are often well demonstrated by H&E staining (Fig. 62-24). However, PAS and GMS stains are more sensitive, with the silver stain essential for demonstration of old yeast cells in healed granulomas. This yeast, presumably no longer viable, may be enlarged and distorted in morphology, making diagnosis difficult. Differential diagnosis of yeast forms includes small forms of *B. dermatitidis*, *P. marneffei*, *Leishmania* spp., or *Candida* spp., especially *C. glabrata*. The yeasts of *H. capsulatum* in caseating granulomas are sufficiently distinctive to provide a presumptive diagnosis, but unusual granulomatous presentations of *P. (carinii) jiroveci* must be differentiated. Culture is generally required for disease confirmation; however, molecular tests for direct testing on tissue have shown promise for the confirmation of histoplasmosis without culture (Babady et al, 2011; Koepsell et al, 2012).

Laboratory Diagnosis

The yeast form in tissue may be demonstrated histologically or in preparations of respiratory secretions, fluids, peripheral blood, bone marrow, or tissue imprints. Wet preparations and Calcofluor white may be used, but the morphology of tissue and yeast cells is best seen with Giemsa staining because the details of nuclear morphology can be assessed. The yeast cells measure 3 to 5 μm in diameter, have a single nucleus, and bud with a narrow neck.

If disseminated infection is suspected, blood cultures for *Histoplasma* should be performed. The Isolator technique is a sensitive technique for recovering the yeast phase from blood, although other blood culture detection systems can also be used to detect this fungus. Other clinical specimens should be inoculated to an enriched agar, such as brain-heart infusion agar supplemented with sheep blood, which is incubated at 25° to 30° C.

Colonies of *H. capsulatum* usually appear after incubation for 10 to 14 days but occasionally require incubation for up to 4 weeks. They are fluffy and vary from white to buff-brown. Diagnostic asexual forms include microconidia and macroconidia. Microconidia, which are produced first, are similar to the structures produced by *B. dermatitidis.* The more characteristic macroconidia have roughened projections from the periphery of the conidia, a configuration referred to as *tuberculate* (Fig. 62-25). The macroconidia of the saprophyte, *Sepedonium*, may be confused with *Histoplasma*, so differentiation of these two fungi is important. The macroscopic appearance of the colonies, the rate of growth, the growth of *H. capsulatum* on media containing cycloheximide, the presence of yeast forms in tissue, and the clinical history usually are sufficient to diagnose histoplasmosis. Final confirmation most often is provided by nucleic acid hybridization probe testing from the culture isolate. Conversion of the mold to the yeast phase also confirms identification, but this is often difficult and has been supplanted in most clinical laboratories by the molecular probe technique (AccuProbe).

Serologic tests for the detection of anti-*Histoplasma* antibodies (i.e., immunodiffusion and complement fixation) have several limitations that need to be considered, making these tests marginal for the diagnosis of histoplasmosis. A 2- to 6-week delay after exposure is required for the production of antibodies, reducing the value of this testing for the diagnosis of acute disease. Once patients are infected with *H. capsulatum*, antibody levels remain detectable for many years. Antibodies to *H. capsulatum* and *B. dermatitidis* also may cross-react. Additionally, patients with immune dysfunction may not produce detectable levels of antibodies, and patients with previous exposure might have elevated levels of antibodies (Wheat, 2006).

Antigen detection, on the other hand, has been shown to be useful for the diagnosis and management of histoplasmosis (Wheat et al, 2007, 2009b). The sensitivity of urine antigen detection for diagnosis is greatest in patients with disseminated disease (up to 92%) or acute pulmonary histoplasmosis (75% to 80%). Antigen detection is also useful for following the effects of therapy on fungal burden; when antigen concentrations in urine or serum fall during therapy, treatment failure is suggested. Moreover, increased antigen levels in a previously infected individual suggest a relapse of infection. Use of the antigen assay to detect *Histoplasma* antigen in bronchoalveolar fluid has been shown to complement antigen detection in serum and urine as an objective diagnostic test (Hage & Wheat, 2010).

The histoplasmin skin test antigen has been useful for epidemiologic studies but should not be used for diagnosis. Not only does the high

frequency of positive tests in endemic areas cloud interpretation, but the skin test can cause an individual to seroconvert to positive, further confusing the issue.

THE GENUS *BLASTOMYCES*

Blastomyces dermatitidis is the only species within the genus *Blastomyces*. Endemic areas for this pathogen in the soil include the eastern part of the United States, mainly areas adjacent to the Mississippi and Ohio River basins; areas northwest of the Great Lakes in Canada; and areas within Africa (Benedict et al, 2012). Other reports suggest that the endemic area for blastomycosis may be larger than originally described, with disease described in patients residing in Colorado and Nebraska (CDC, 1999; Veligandla et al, 2002).

Risk Factors

Most cases of blastomycosis (also referred to as North American blastomycosis) are sporadic, and an environmental source is not often found. Small outbreaks do occur, and the fungus has been isolated from soil at outbreak sites (McKinnell et al, 2009). No specific risk factors for blastomycosis are known, although severe, disseminated infection has been described in immunocompromised patients. HIV-infected patients who reside in endemic areas are particularly at risk for serious infection (Pappas & Dismukes, 2002).

Clinical Diseases

As is true with most other endemic dimorphic fungi, the portal of entry is the respiratory tract, where the infection may be asymptomatic, transient, or insidiously progressive (Bariola et al, 2011; Saccente et al, 2010). Chronic pulmonary blastomycosis with low-grade fever, weight loss, and localized pulmonary infiltrates may suggest neoplastic disease, for which diagnostic studies, including bronchoalveolar lavage, fine-needle aspiration of the lung, or surgical lung biopsy, may be undertaken. Dissemination of yeast from the lung most commonly results in cutaneous or skeletal infection (Jain et al, 2014; Mason et al, 2008). The central nervous and genitourinary systems are involved less frequently. Cutaneous lesions often are hypertrophic or ulcerative and may be locally destructive. The lesions may be mistaken for squamous cell carcinoma of the skin. Secondary involvement of the skin over bony lesions also occurs. A delay in diagnosis is not uncommon, especially when patients have no history of exposure to an endemic area (Bradsher RW Jr, 2014; Veligandla et al, 2002).

Pathology of Blastomycosis

The characteristic histologic response to *B. dermatitidis* is a mixture of acute inflammation with microabscess formation and granulomatous inflammation. In cutaneous lesions, pseudoepitheliomatous hyperplasia of the epidermis overlying the inflammation is characteristic. Yeast cells are most often found in the microabscesses or within multinucleated giant cells. The characteristic yeast can frequently be demonstrated in tissue sections stained with H&E, but the organism may be more readily visible when stained with PAS or GMS. The thick-walled yeast cells measure 8 to 15 µm in diameter and maintain a broad base during the budding process (Fig. 62-26). An artifactual separation of the cytoplasm from the cell wall in formalin-fixed preparations may give the appearance of a double wall. Although nonbudding yeast cells must be differentiated from yeast cells of *Cryptococcus* spp. and from developing spherules of *Coccidioides* spp., the diagnosis of blastomycosis can generally be proposed by observation of characteristic yeast forms in tissues by an experienced pathologist (Patel, 2010).

Surgical pathology and cytopathology have been reported as the primary means of diagnosis because positive culture may not always be recovered. However, microbiology culture and conventional morphologic assessment of routine samples have redundant utility in diagnosis and generally are required to make a confirmed disease diagnosis (Taxy, 2007). Recent advances in molecular diagnostics have shown promise for the identification of *B. dermatitidis* directly from clinical specimens (Babady et al, 2011).

Laboratory Identification

Direct demonstration of the yeast cells may be accomplished in tissue sections or in wet preparations of aspirated fluids and imprints of tissues. Calcofluor white staining may enhance detection of the yeast. Growth is somewhat more rapid than that of *Histoplasma*, and fluffy white to buff colonies, which often cannot be distinguished from *H. capsulatum*, usually appear within 1 to 2 weeks. The microconidia resemble those of *H. capsulatum* (Fig. 62-27), but macroconidia are not formed. A saprophytic mold, *Chrysosporium* resembles *Blastomyces* but does not develop a yeast phase and does not grow on media that contain cycloheximide. Conversion to the yeast phase may occur on routine media incubated at 37° C with hemoglobin and cysteine containing agar used specifically for this purpose (Fig. 62-28). Once again, demonstration of the yeast form in tissue serves as a reasonable substitute for demonstration of dimorphism in the laboratory. The nucleic acid probe hybridization test (AccuProbe) from culture material is the preferred method for confirmation of isolates in most laboratories, although false-positive results have been reported (Iwen et al, 2000).

Although the complement fixation test has been used as a serologic test for the diagnosis of blastomycosis, this test has considerable limitations and should be used only as an adjunct to culture of the fungus. A *Blastomyces* antigen test similar to the *Histoplasma* antigen test also is available in a reference laboratory; however, data regarding utility and reliability are lacking.

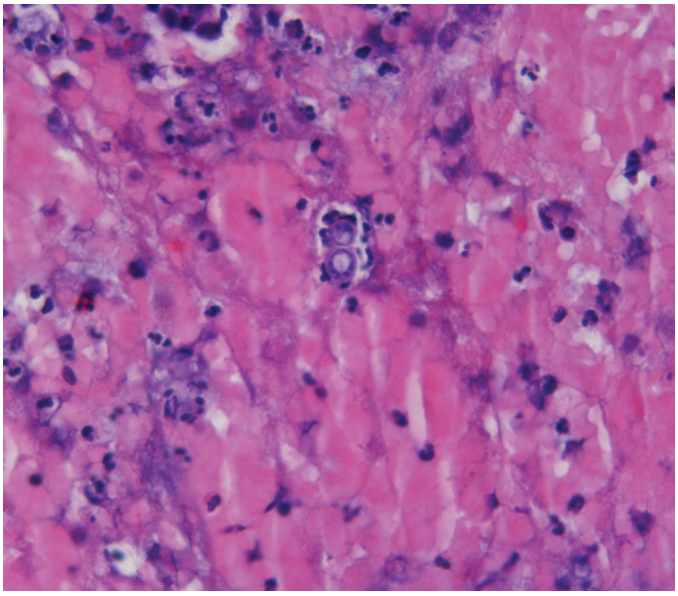


Figure 62-26 ***Blastomyces dermatitidis*** **in tissue showing characteristic large, broad-based, budding yeast cells with a thick refractile (double-contoured) wall.** (Hematoxylin and eosin stain, 400×.)

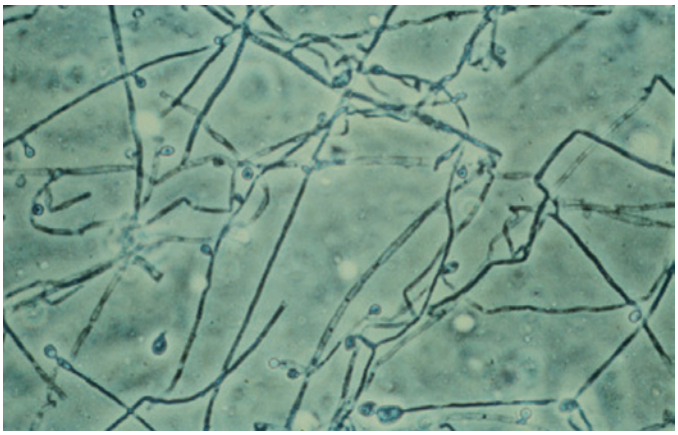


Figure 62-27 **Mold form of** ***Blastomyces dermatitidis*** **in culture.** The lollipop appearance of the conidium on a conidiophore is characteristic of the environmental mold form for this dimorphic fungus. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

THE GENUS *COCCIDIOIDES*

Until recently, *Coccidioides immitis* was considered the sole etiologic agent of coccidioidomycosis (Valley fever, San Joaquin Valley fever, and desert fever). Phylogenetic studies now show the existence of two genetically distinct *Coccidioides* clades: one called the **California clade** *(C. immitis)* and the other called the **non-California clade** *(C. posadasii)* (Fisher et al, 2002). Although a strong difference in genotype has been noted between these two species, the phenotypic differences are minimal, thus making it

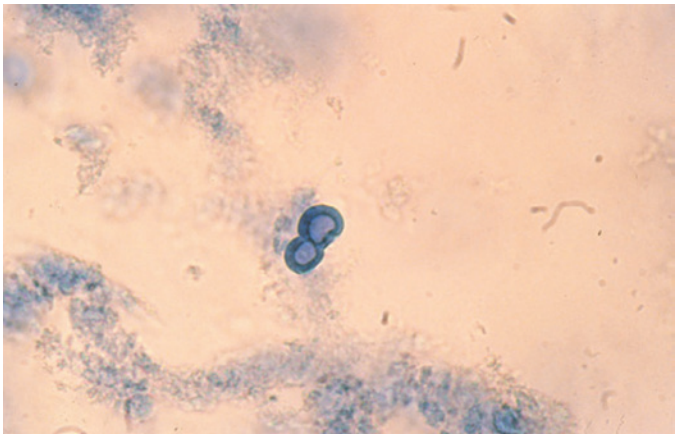


Figure 62-28 Budding yeast cells of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* in culture. When cultures are incubated at 37° C, large, broad-based budding yeasts with a double-contoured wall are detected that are characteristic of the yeast phase of this dimorphic fungus. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

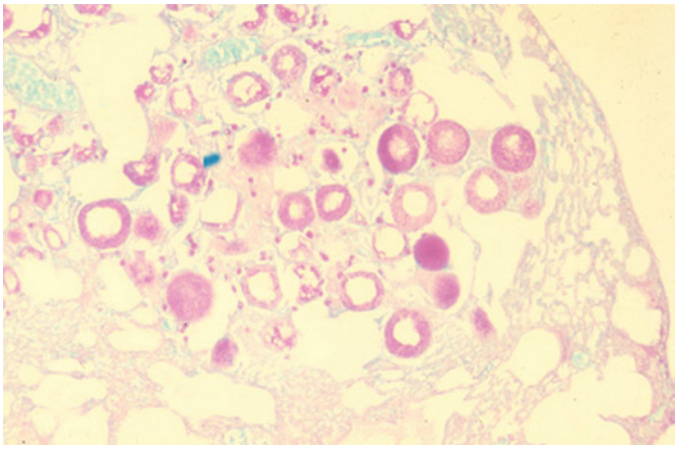


Figure 62-29 Spherules of *Coccidioides* spp. in tissue. Observation of these large structures in tissue is a presumptive diagnosis for coccidiodomycosis. (Hematoxylin and eosin stain, 100×.)

difficult for most laboratories to distinguish between them (Ampel, 2009; Saubolle, 2007).

The coccidioidal organisms are soil-dwelling fungi found in the southern portions of California and in other areas of the southwestern United States (especially southern regions of Arizona, Utah, Nevada, and New Mexico, as well as western Texas), northern Mexico, and Central and South America (especially Venezuela) (Nguyen et al, 2013). Arizona has seen a dramatic increase in cases over the years, with a disproportionate rate of infection occurring in people older than 65 years of age and in those with HIV infection (CDC, 2013; Kim et al, 2009). Although coccidioidomycosis is endemic to the hot, arid regions of the southwestern United States and Central America, recognition of exposure to contaminated soil outside of these endemic areas should be considered by health care providers and veterinarians. A recent example of this is the detection of *C. immitis* in soil in Benton County, Washington (CDC, 2014b).

Risk Factors

Residence in an endemic area is the primary risk factor for the development of infection because the arthroconidia of the mold phase are in the soil and are easily disseminated through the air (Johnson et al, 2014; Parish & Blair, 2008). A classic example of epidemic coccidioidomycosis occurred among cast and crew members at an outdoor filming event in California in 2012 (CDC, 2014a). Five individuals within this group were laboratory-confirmed to have pulmonary coccidioidomycosis, with an additional five probable cases following an extensive outbreak investigation of this filming event. The dry, dusty conditions during the filming associated with substantial soil-disruptive work including grading and digging illustrated the risk to employees working outdoors in *Coccidioides*-endemic areas. The locations of military bases in the southwestern United States have also shown coccidioidomycosis to have a profound effect on military personnel training in these areas (Crum-Cianflone, 2007). The development of an effective vaccine for Valley fever to protect both military members and civilians residing or training in endemic areas has been a suggested prevention strategy to avoid acquiring the disease (Hector & Rutherford, 2007; Nguyen et al, 2013).

Genetic factors have been suggested to influence the frequency of severe and disseminated infection, but the nature of this association is not completely known (Cox & Magee, 2004). Disseminated infection is reportedly more common in blacks and Filipinos than in whites. Asians, Native Americans, and Mexicans also appear to be at increased risk for the disease.

Immunosuppressive infection or disease is a known risk factor for disseminated infection, with HIV-infected patients at particular risk for disseminated disease (Johnson et al, 2014). Transplant recipients who travel to or reside part-time or full-time in endemic areas are also at risk for both primary and reactivation coccidioidomycosis (Vikram & Blair, 2009). Clinicians in nonendemic areas should be aware of the potential for this disease, and should know that early diagnosis followed by prompt antifungal therapy could be lifesaving in these patients.

Clinical Diseases

Primary coccidioidomycosis is most frequently asymptomatic, as indicated by the high prevalence of positive skin tests for coccidioidal antigens in endemic areas. Symptomatic disease usually is manifested as fever with

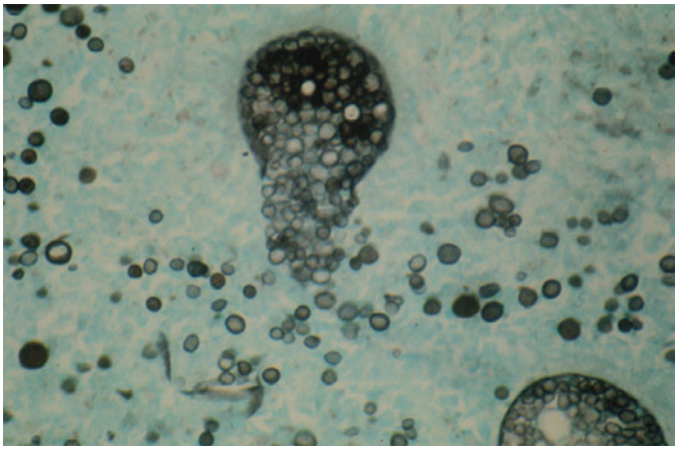


Figure 62-30 Spherules of *Coccidioides* spp. in tissue showing release of endospores. At maturity, the spherule ruptures and releases endospores, which, in turn, mature to become spherules. When seen in tissue, these immature endospores may be confused with other smaller yeasts. (Gomori's methenamine silver stain, 1000×.)

cough or chest pain, or both, and may mimic bacterial pneumonia clinically (Parish & Blair, 2008). Erythema nodosum and erythema multiforme, which may accompany the primary infection, are good prognostic signs of disease. Solitary pulmonary nodules may persist as consequences of the primary pulmonary infection, also similar in appearance to a neoplasm or to tuberculosis.

Disseminated infection most commonly affects the skin, the skeletal system, and the meninges. Skin lesions include papules, ulcers, draining sinuses, and subcutaneous abscesses. Arthritis most often results from involvement of adjacent bones. Meningitis may be acute but is more commonly indolent and chronic.

Pathology

The tissue response to *Coccidioides* spp. is granulomatous, with and without caseation. Developing spherules are typically found in macrophages and multinucleated giant cells (Fig. 62-29). Endospores within the spherules measure 2 to 5 μm in diameter (Fig. 62-30). The spherules measure up to 250 μm in diameter, and developing spherules have a large range of sizes. The differential diagnosis of developing spherules primarily includes nonbudding forms of *B. dermatitidis* or *C. neoformans*. The spherules must be differentiated from the fungal forms in adiaspiromycosis and rhinosporidiosis, both of which are uncommon infections in the United States. In early disease stages, spherules may not be readily observed, and the presence of only endospores may make the diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis difficult.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis can involve a variety of direct microscopic methods (i.e., Calcofluor white stain of respiratory specimen and

histopathology of tissue), as well as culture with specific molecular probes for identification (Saubolle, 2007). Spherules may be demonstrated in sputum or, more commonly, in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid, but the sensitivity of direct examination for these structures is generally low. Calcofluor white staining following digestion of the specimen with KOH may increase the sensitivity of testing. If cavitary disease is present, hyphae may be present in clinical specimens, although this is a rare finding. In contrast to the other dimorphic pathogens, the possibility of communicability of arthroconidia directly from the specimen to medical personnel exists under this circumstance.

Coccidioides species grows rapidly (within 1 week) and can appear on standard bacteriology media such as blood agar in the laboratory. Unfortunately, the arthroconidia of the *Coccidioides* are highly infectious and are easily transmitted by aerosolization. Infection of laboratory workers is a major concern, so inoculated cultures should be handled with great care in a biosafety cabinet (CLSI, 2012a; Sutton, 2007). The National Institutes of Health has classified both *C. immitis* and *C. posadasii*, along with *H. capsulatum*, as biosafety risk group 3 biologic agents, that is, agents that are associated with serious or lethal human disease for which preventive or therapeutic interventions may not be available (HHS, 2009). Biosafety level 3 containment is suggested when specimens known or likely to contain this organism are handled. In a survey of laboratory-acquired infections, coccidioidomycosis was included in a list of the 10 most frequently reported infections (Singh, 2009).

Colonies of *Coccidioides* species are variable in appearance, ranging from velvety or cottony to granular or powdery. The colonial morphology may change as the colony and arthroconidia develop. Most isolates are white, but a variety of colors may be observed, and a diffusible pigment may be produced by some strains. Cultures often become gray with age. If a *Coccidioides* spp. is suspected, some mycologists prefer to sterilize the culture before examination of the colonies by flooding the container with 10% formalin, followed by overnight incubation. In cases in which specimens are suspected to contain *Coccidioides*, screw-capped slants should be used instead of plates. The mold form is not routinely converted to the tissue form because specialized synthetic broth is generally required for this to occur. Separation of species into *C. immitis* and *C. posadasii* is best achieved by specialized molecular techniques, which normally are not available in routine clinical laboratories (Saubolle, 2007). Generally, laboratories will report the results as "*Coccidioides immitis/posadasii*" or as a "*Coccidioides* species."

Alternating barrel-shaped arthroconidia with empty disjuncture cells upon microscopic examination of culture material are distinctive (see Fig. 62-9) but must be differentiated from other organisms that produce arthroconidia, such as *Trichosporon*, *Geotrichum*, and some members of the family *Gymnoascaceae*. A presumptive identification is generally adequate to make a diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis in an individual who has been in an endemic area and in whom spherules with endospores have been detected in clinical material. A molecular-based genetic probe (AccuProbe) is the method of choice for identification of the fungus into *Coccidioides immitis/posadasii* (McGinnis et al, 2006).

In contrast to histoplasmosis and blastomycosis, serologic analysis with the complement fixation test is useful for assessing the extent and prognosis of coccidioidomycosis (Nguyen et al, 2013). Of the serologic techniques available, complement fixation has been studied most extensively. Antibodies are detected approximately 2 to 6 weeks after infection. The height of the titer is an indication of the likelihood of disseminated disease, and a rising titer bodes a poor outcome. Skin testing does not confound the diagnosis by producing a seroconversion, as in histoplasmosis, but the high prevalence of skin test positivity decreases the usefulness of the test. Patients with disseminated infection may demonstrate anergy to the skin test antigen. In an update on diagnosis, Malo and colleagues provide examples of classic clinical and radiographic presentations, discuss the utility of serologic testing, and provide suggested algorithms that may aid in the diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis (Malo et al, 2014).

THE GENUS *SPOROTHRIX*

Historically, the only known species responsible for sporotrichosis was *Sporothrix schenckii*. However, molecular studies now demonstrate that *S. schenckii* is a complex of at least five distinct species (*S. schenckii*, *S. albicans*, *S. brasiliensis*, *S. globosa*, *S. luriei*, and *S. mexicana*) (Oliveira et al, 2014). Although methods for distinction among these species have been developed, most laboratories do not have the expertise to identify specific species and still refer to *S. schenckii* as the sole cause of sporotrichosis. More appropriately, laboratory reports should now consider identification as a complex of multiple species and should report results as "*Sporothrix schenckii* species complex."

Sporothrix species are dimorphic fungi present worldwide in soil, plants, and decaying vegetation. Although considered endemic dimorphic fungi, this complex of species exhibit epidemiologic differences that separate them from the other classic endemic dimorphic fungi. The mode of entry for these fungi is usually traumatic implantation (vs. inhalation), the disease produced is usually a localized systemic infection (vs. pulmonary), and the incidence of systemic infection is rare (Barros et al, 2011).

Risk Factors

Although *Sporothrix* spp. are common in vegetation throughout the world, they do not appear to be plant pathogens; however, epidemics have been caused by exposure to plant products (Hay & Morris-Jones, 2008). One major outbreak occurred among florists and nursery and forestry workers who handled contaminated sphagnum moss grown in Wisconsin (CDC, 1988). Another recent major outbreak involved infected cats in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, where 759 human cases of cat-transmitted sporotrichosis were reported (Reis et al, 2009). An unusual epidemic occurred among members of a college fraternity in Florida who were building a wall with bricks packed in contaminated straw while consuming copious amounts of beer (Sanders, 1971). The only predisposing factor that was identified with any frequency was consumption of alcohol. It is interesting that the stereotype of the patient at risk for sporotrichosis is the "alcoholic rose gardener."

Clinical Diseases

The overwhelming predominant clinical form of sporotrichosis is involvement of cutaneous and subcutaneous tissues (Kauffman et al, 2007). A papule at the portal of entry may ulcerate and spread the pathogen through regional lymphatics, resulting in a series of lesions progressing up the affected limb (referred to as **lymphocutaneous sporotrichosis**). Dissemination to osteoarticular structures and viscera is uncommon and appears to occur more often in patients who have a history of alcohol abuse or immunosuppression, especially in patients with AIDS.

Pathology of Sporotrichosis

Histologic responses to *Sporothrix* and *Blastomyces* are similar with a mixed suppurative (including eosinophils) and granulomatous inflammation (Guarner & Brandt, 2011). In the skin, pseudoepitheliomatous hyperplasia of the epidermis is common. The yeast cells of *Sporothrix* are rarely seen in tissue, but when present are pleomorphic and round or elongated, resembling cigars 2 to 6 μm in diameter with narrow-based budding. A tissue reaction to the fungus may result in radiating eosinophilic material up to 10 μm in thickness around the yeast cell, known as the **Splendore-Hoeppli phenomenon** (asteroid bodies) (Hussein, 2008). This distinctive tissue reaction is uncommon, although the reaction is not specific for the diagnosis of sporotrichosis. The differential diagnosis of the skin lesions is primarily mycobacterial infection, especially *Mycobacterium marinum* (swimming pool granuloma) in the United States and cutaneous leishmaniasis in the tropics.

Laboratory Diagnosis

The preferred specimen is an aspirate, curetting, or biopsy of the skin lesion. *S. schenckii* grows well on primary isolation media with cycloheximide incubated at 25° to 30° C. The colonies, which may be moist or smooth (glabrous), are often light colored initially and may turn darker with increasing age. This organism produces two types of conidia: thin-walled hyaline conidia arranged as a rosette around the apex of a conidiophore, and thick-walled, dark, sessile conidia attached directly to the hyphae. These dark conidia account for a dematiaceous appearance of the fungus in culture (melanized fungus). The thin-walled microconidia are borne on conidiophores that arise at right angles from the hyphae. They may be arranged sympodially around an expanded vesicle at the tip of the conidiophore, producing an arrangement that has been described as a *floret* (Fig. 62-31). Similar structures are produced by *Acremonium* spp., which have rarely been reported as a cause of human disease. This mold is differentiated from *Sporothrix* by the absence of growth on cycloheximide agar and by the absence of a yeast phase. Conversion of the mold phase to yeast is accomplished by incubation of the isolate at 37° C in an atmosphere of 5% carbon dioxide on an enriched medium, such as brain-heart infusion agar supplemented with sheep blood or on chocolate agar. Phenotypic characteristics such as the morphology of sessile pigmented conidia; growth at 30° C, 35° C, and 37° C; and the assimilation of sucrose, raffinose, and ribitol have been used successfully to distinguish among species (Marimon et al, 2006). Molecular studies using the calmodulin

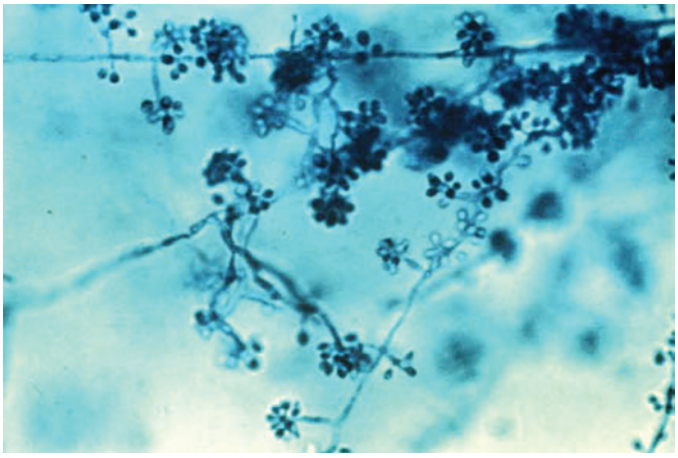


Figure 62-31 Sympodial conidia of *Sporothrix schenckii* are borne in clusters at the tips of lateral conidiophores. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

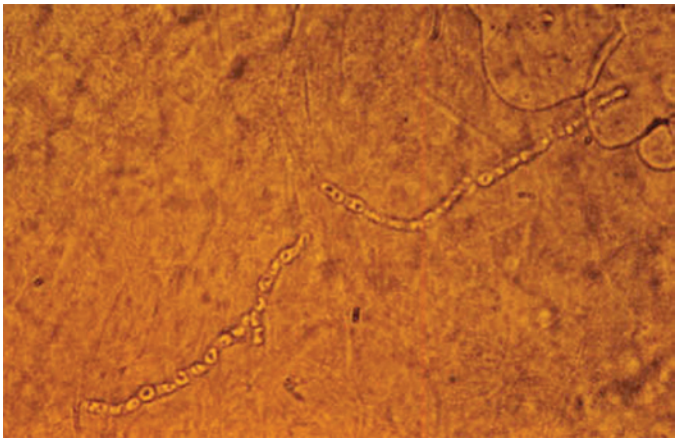


Figure 62-32 Hyphae of a dermatophyte are demonstrated in a scraping from the edge of a tinea lesion. The presence of thin-segmented hyphae in this clinical setting establishes the diagnosis of dermatomycosis but does not define the specific cause. (Potassium hydroxide preparation, 400×.)

gene sequence, the rRNA internal transcribed spacer sequence data, and the β-tubulin sequence have been shown to be reliable for differentiating among *Sporothrix* spp. (Barros et al, 2011).

OTHER DIMORPHIC FUNGI

H. capsulatum var. *duboisii* causes cutaneous and systemic diseases in Africa (African histoplasmosis). The yeast is larger than that of *H. capsulatum* var. *capsulatum*, and the walls are thicker, resembling the cells of *B. dermatitidis*, but without the broad-based buds. Fatty acid profiling has been shown to be useful for the differentiation between these two strains of *Histoplasma* (Zarnowski et al, 2007). This strain of *Histoplasma* is considered an emerging infectious agent in HIV-infected patients in Africa (Loulergue et al, 2007).

Paracoccidioidomycosis (also known as South American blastomycosis) is a relatively common disease in southern Mexico, parts of Central America, and South America (mainly Brazil, Venezuela, Colombia, Ecuador, and Argentina) caused by the dimorphic fungus *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* (Marques, 2012). This organism, which is generally acquired through the lungs, can cause a variety of clinical syndromes from acute infection (with a progressive lymphadenopathy) to a chronic infection that involves the lungs, skin and mucous membranes, lymph nodes, and adrenal glands (Bocca et al, 2013). The clinical manifestations can mimic such conditions as tuberculosis, Hodgkin disease, several systemic and subcutaneous mycoses, and squamous cell carcinoma. The diagnosis is made by finding the organism in a biopsy specimen and isolating the organism in fungal culture (Marques, 2012). The characteristic tissue phase yeast cells of *Paracoccidioides* have multiple peripheral buds (ranging in size from 4 to 60 μm), producing an appearance that has been compared with a mariner's wheel (Guarner & Brandt, 2011).

Penicillium marneffei is a common cause of disease in HIV-positive patients in Southeast Asia (Ustianowski et al, 2008). This agent has also been found to be associated with the bamboo rat *(Rhizomys sinensis)*, which is thought to be the natural environmental reservoir for this fungus (Cao et al, 2011). The species is unique among the penicillia in being dimorphic by growing as a mold form at 30° C and thus producing reproductive structures typical of *Penicillium* spp., and producing in tissue small oval-shaped yeasts (2 to 5 μm in diameter) with transverse septums (due to division by fission) (Guarner & Brandt, 2011).

DERMATOPHYTOSES

Dermatophytic fungi are common and important causes of human morbidity (Andrews & Burns, 2008; Seebacher et al, 2008; Vermout et al, 2008). Generally the infections are mild, and rarely do the fungi associated with these infections cause invasive disease. Three genera are recognized as causes of dermatophytosis: *Microsporum*, *Trichophyton*, and *Epidermophyton*. As a group, the dermatophytic fungi are distributed worldwide, but individual species may have a more restricted geographic distribution. Dermatophytes may also be found in strict association with humans (anthropophilic), with animals (zoophilic), and with soil (geophilic).

RISK FACTORS

Dermatophytic infections result from contact with the relevant source of the fungus, which may also provide a clue to the diagnosis. For instance, infection of the face in farmers who have contact with cows as they milk the animals is characteristically caused by *Trichophyton verrucosum*, a zoophilic dermatophyte found in cattle. Geographic variation in dermatophytic pathogens are also noted, with tinea pedis (athlete's foot) more prevalent in developed countries and likely caused by the anthropophilic fungus *T. rubrum*, while in poorer countries, scalp infections (tinea capitis) are caused by *T. soudanense* or *M. audouinii* (Havilickova et al, 2008). Skin disorders caused by dermatophytic fungi are also now recognized more often in sports in which there is direct contact between athletes, such as wrestling (Field & Adams, 2008).

CLINICAL DISEASES

Dermatophytes produce infection of the epidermis, hair, and nails (Seebacher et al, 2008). Infection is often referred to as **ringworm** (or **tinea**), a name derived from the advancing, serpiginous nature of the lesions (especially evident on the skin). Clinical terminology uses the Latin name *tinea* followed by the body part involved, such as tinea capitis (scalp), tinea barbae (beard), tinea corporis (trunk and limbs), tinea pedis (foot), tinea cruris (groin), and tinea unguium (nail, also called onychomycosis). With occasional exceptions, *Epidermophyton floccosum* infects primarily the skin, *Microsporum* spp. infect the scalp and skin, and *Trichophyton* spp. infect the skin, scalp, and nails. *Trichophyton tonsurans* is the most common cause of tinea capitis in the United States, with *M. canis* a common cause of scalp infection, particularly in children. When deep infection of hair follicles occurs, a boggy inflammatory process called a *kerion* results. *T. mentagrophytes* and *T. verrucosum* are particularly associated with kerion formation. *T. mentagrophytes*, *T. rubrum*, and *M. canis* are commonly found to cause tinea corporis and tinea pedis, and *E. floccosum* is a common cause of tinea cruris.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis of a dermatophyte infection generally involves both microscopic examination and culture, although treatment of dermatophyte infection is not directed by the specific identification of the isolate (Robert & Pihet, 2008). Demonstration of hyphae in skin scrapings (using a KOH preparation) is frequently the only diagnostic technique performed before therapy is initiated (Fig. 62-32). The size and morphology of hyphae suggest the involvement of dermatophytes in the infection. Verification of the species is useful for confirming that the hyphae did in fact belong to a dermatophytic fungus, for assessing the probable source of the infection, and for assessing the increased likelihood of chronic, relapsing infections (especially when *T. rubrum* is identified). Skin scrapings, nails, and hair can be examined in KOH preparations, which may incorporate Calcofluor white to facilitate the detection of hyphae. Care must be taken when reading this type of preparation in that tissue fragments, fibers, and cholesterol crystals may be mistaken for hyphae by the inexperienced observer.

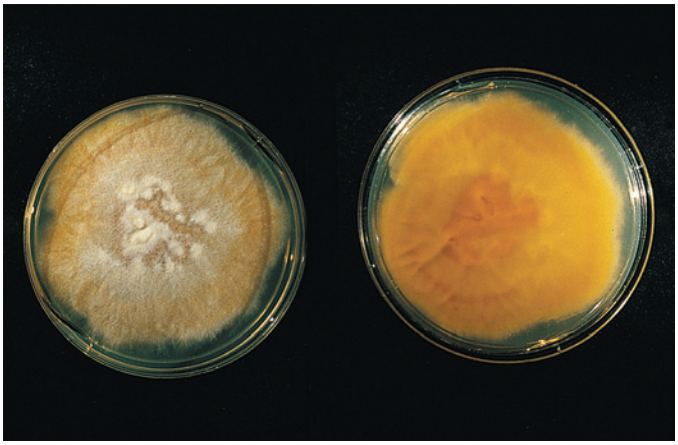


Figure 62-33 The obverse of a *Microsporum canis* colony *(left)* showing the characteristic lemon-yellow pigment, which also may be seen on the reverse of the colony *(right).* (Sabouraud dextrose agar with cycloheximide.)

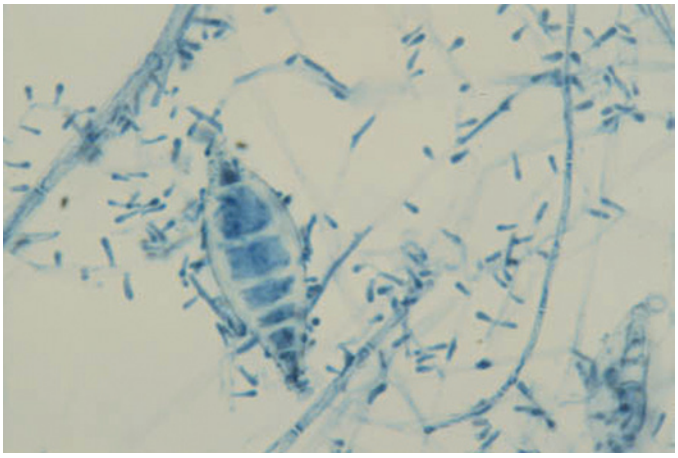


Figure 62-34 Thick-walled, roughened, tapered, spindle-shaped macroconidia of *Microsporum canis* with thin, septate hyphae. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

Fungi such as *M. audouinii*, *M. canis*, and *Microsporum ferrugineum* are associated with hair infection and cause the hairs to fluoresce with a long-wavelength ultraviolet light (Wood's lamp). In the United States, tinea capitis due to a fluorescing fungus is most likely caused by *M. canis* because the other two species are not common in this geographic area. Microscopic examination of infected hair by an experienced observer may suggest the etiologic agent, based on the appearance and location of the arthroconidia. In ectothrix colonization, as occurs with *M. canis* and *M. audouinii* infection, arthroconidia are external to the hair shaft. Endothrix invasion, as seen in infection with *T. tonsurans*, is characterized by arthroconidia within the hair shaft. In favic infection, hyphae, air bubbles, or tunnels and fat droplets are present in the intrapilar area.

Infected hairs, nail scrapings, or scrapings of the edges of skin lesions should be submitted to the laboratory in a clean, dry container or placed on the surface of primary isolation medium supplied by the laboratory. Sabouraud dextrose agar was designed for recovery of dermatophytic fungi and is also effective for isolating *Candida* spp., especially *C. albicans*, which may produce similar infections of the skin and nails. Dermatophytes are not inhibited by cycloheximide, which will inhibit many saprophytic fungi. All dermatophytic fungi have septate, hyaline hyphae and produce macroconidia and/or microconidia in various combinations. Arthroconidia and chlamydoconidia may also be produced, but the morphology of the macroconidia and especially of the microconidia is more important for identification. Sexual stages of the dermatophytes have been identified, but they are not encountered in the clinical laboratory. The combination of micromorphologic features with some phenotypic testing is most often used to differentiate the dermatophytes.

Microsporum species produce characteristic macroconidia, which are the key diagnostic structures. In some cases, microconidia, which are not as useful diagnostically, are produced. *M. canis*, the most frequently isolated zoonotic species of this genus, produces a characteristic lemon-yellow pigment in culture (Fig. 62-33), which is intensified by growth on potato flake agar. The macroconidia of this species are illustrated in Figure 62-34.

The genus *Trichophyton* includes the important dermatophytic fungi *T. rubrum* (Fig. 62-35), *T. verrucosum*, *T. mentagrophytes* species complex (see Fig. 62-11), and *T. tonsurans* (Fig. 62-36). The colonies may have a fluffy, granular, or, less commonly, glabrous appearance. Macroconidia, which are useful for identification, may be produced by this genus, especially in strains that produce powdery colonies, but unfortunately they usually are absent. Microconidia are formed more commonly. When present, the macroconidia are thin-walled and smooth and contain variable numbers of septa. Interpretation of the microscopic morphology in some isolates can be difficult because overlap occurs frequently. Phenotypic testing using the *Trichophyton* agars is helpful in the characterization of nutritional requirements among members of the genus. Seven media have been described; however, four of these seem to be the most useful for identification purposes. These media include T1, basal medium agar (for a control to compare with other supplemented media); T2, basal medium with inositol (growth stimulated by inositol); T3, basal medium with inositol plus thiamine (growth stimulated by the addition of both inositol and thiamine); and T4, basal medium with thiamine (growth stimulated by thiamine only). In combination, these media allow assessment of dependency on inositol, thiamine, or both compounds together for growth.

Figure 62-35 Fluffy white colonies of *Trichophyton rubrum* with diffusible red pigment, which may also be seen on the reverse of the colony. (Potato dextrose agar.)

Figure 62-36 A flat colony showing pale yellow coloration with a reddish-brown pigmentation at the periphery characteristic of *Trichophyton tonsurans.* Radial furrowing of the thallus as seen is also common. (Sabouraud dextrose agar with cycloheximide.)

Differentiation of *T. mentagrophytes* and *T. rubrum* is facilitated by several nonmorphologic tests as well (Ates et al, 2008). A diffusible pigment may be produced by both species, but the intensely red pigment of *T. rubrum* is encouraged by culture on potato dextrose agar or cornmeal agar with 1% dextrose. Production of urease within 3 to 5 days by *T. mentagrophytes* but not by *T. rubrum* also helps differentiate these two species.

Figure 62-37 **The suedelike texture and yellowish green color of the mold colonies are characteristic of *Epidermophyton floccosum*.** (Sabouraud dextrose agar with cycloheximide.)

Figure 62-38 **Image showing granules of various sizes *(black grains)* of the fungus *Madurella grisea* composed of black masses of hyphae.** (Courtesy of CDC Public Health Image Library.)

Finally, the hair penetration test can be used as a differential test wherein *T. mentagrophytes* produces wedge-shaped defects in hairs in vitro, whereas *T. rubrum* grows on the outside of the hair without penetration. Use of both morphologic and nonmorphologic approaches provides the most accurate identification of isolates.

The only pathogen within the genus *Epidermophyton* is *E. floccosum*, an anthropophilic fungus that is an important cause of tinea cruris and, less commonly, tinea pedis. Colonies, which are initially brownish yellow, gray, or khaki brown, become velvety and folded as they mature (Fig. 62-37). *E. floccosum* produces no microconidia, but distinctive macroconidia provide clues to identification (see Fig. 62-10). These structures have smooth external walls, with up to four cross-walls and a club shape, and they tend to "flocculate," hence the epithet name.

To differentiate among closely related dermatophytes, molecular assays have been developed. Species identification for dermatophytes is time-consuming and requires knowledge and technical expertise because of morphologic similarity, variability, and polymorphism within dermatophytes (Graser et al, 2012; Rich et al, 2013; Westerberg & Voyack, 2013). Molecular phylogenetic analysis of multiple dermatophytic species involved in infection has suggested that although profound differences in morphology and pattern of infection among species are noted, there does not appear to be a distinct species difference on modern molecular analysis. This observation suggests that a polyphasic approach to identification may need to be considered. A number of PCR assays have also been developed to identify dermatophytes directly from clinical specimens to enhance the diagnosis (Graser et al, 2012).

MYCOSES CAUSED BY DEMATIACEOUS (MELANIZED) FUNGI

The dematiaceous (also referred to as **melanized**, **dark**, and **phaeoid**) fungi are a fascinating and complex group of fungi characterized by the formation of a dark pigment due to production of melanin in the cell walls of the fungal cell (Revankar & Sutton, 2010). Although these fungi are soil and plant saprophytes and historically are considered rare causes of disease in humans, they appear to be emerging as more common fungal pathogens.

CLINICAL DISEASES

The clinical syndromes are typically distinguished on the basis of histologic findings into eumycotic mycetoma (also called **eumycetoma**), chromoblastomycosis (also called **chromomycosis**), and phaeohyphomycosis (Garnica et al, 2009; Seyedmousavi et al, 2013, 2014). These diseases are frequently diagnosed by a unique histologic picture in tissue followed by isolation of the fungus in culture and morphologic evaluation of the reproductive structures. The classification of black fungi has undergone numerous changes over the years, which adds difficulty to recognition of the etiologic agent.

Mycetoma

Mycetoma is a tropical disease causing a localized, chronic granulomatous infection characterized by the formation of a painless subcutaneous mass of chronic onset, with multiple sinuses draining pus and grains (also called granules) with extension to the bone (Garnica et al, 2009). The disease is most often confined to the hands or feet (also called Madura foot) in immunocompetent individuals such as farmers, field hands, and others in contact with contaminated soil-laden materials. This disease can be caused by bacteria (actinomycotic mycetoma) or by fungi (eumycotic mycetoma) that are dark pigmented (dematiaceous) or, rarely, nonpigmented (hyaline). Recently, mycetoma was listed by the World Health Organization as a neglected tropical disease, leading to development of key research priorities needed to combat infection (van de Sande et al, 2014).

A mycetoma occurs after a traumatic injury with a contaminated object such as a splinter, a thorn, or any other penetrating item. Although more than 25 fungal species have been known to cause eumycotic mycetoma, the most common causes are molds that include *Madurella mycetomatis*, followed by a variety of other dematiaceous and hyaline fungi. *Scedosporium apiospermum* (teleomorph, *Pseudallescheria boydii*), a hyaline fungus, is considered the most common cause of this disease in the United States.

A noninvasive disease involving the paranasal sinus has been described as a fungal mycetoma (also called a **fungus ball**) (Grosjean & Weber, 2007; Pagella et al, 2007; Robey et al, 2009). This condition involves the accumulation of dense fungal concrements in the sinus cavities, most often the maxillary sinus, and is associated with a variety of molds, including dematiaceous fungi. Although some categorize this infection as a mycetoma, others prefer to describe it as a fungal rhinosinusitis because this infection does not specifically fit the description of a mycetoma presented here (an absence of granule formation). Controversies on the categorization and definition of fungal rhinosinusitis occur because of the wide spectrum of immune and pathologic responses associated with this disease. Attempts are being made to develop a consensus on the terminology and disease classification for this condition (Chakrabarti et al, 2009).

A definitive diagnosis of a mycetoma can be achieved by the demonstration of grains (or granules) in a tissue biopsy, in draining exudates from a sinus tract, or in material aspirated from an unopened lesion (Fig. 62-38). These grains are microscopically composed of broad, interwoven, septate hyphae 2 to 5 μm in diameter that are lined with intense eosinophilic material (Splendore-Hoeppli phenomenon) (Fig. 62-39). For dematiaceous fungi, these grains are associated with a dark pigment and generally are called **black grains**; with fungi that are nondematiaceous and produce nonpigmented hyphae, these are called white grains. Identification of the etiologic agent requires culture on standard fungal media such as Sabouraud dextrose agar, which may take 4 weeks or longer to grow (Fig. 62-40). Once isolated, the fungal species is identified using gross colony morphology and pigmentation, along with close observation of the micromorphologic characteristics of reproductive structures following sporulation (Fig. 62-41). In cases in which sporulation does not occur, physiologic tests such as carbohydrate and nitrate utilization may aid in identification. Molecular assays using targets within the rDNA complex have been shown to be reliable for identification of dematiaceous fungi (Borman et al, 2008; Revankar & Sutton, 2010; Seyedmousavi et al, 2014).

Chromoblastomycosis

Chromoblastomycosis (chromomycosis) is a slowly progressing, chronic subcutaneous mycosis that is seen predominantly in tropical areas. The

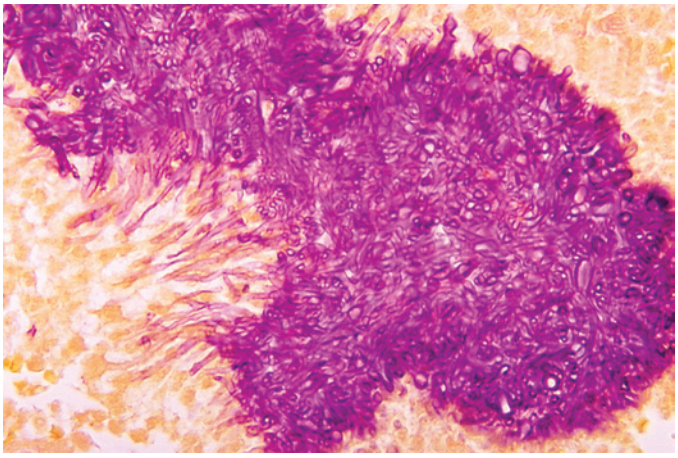


Figure 62-39 Histologic appearance of "black grain mycetoma" due to *Madurella mycetomatis*. (Gridley stain, 1000×.) (Courtesy of Dr. Libero Ajello, CDC Public Health Image Library.)

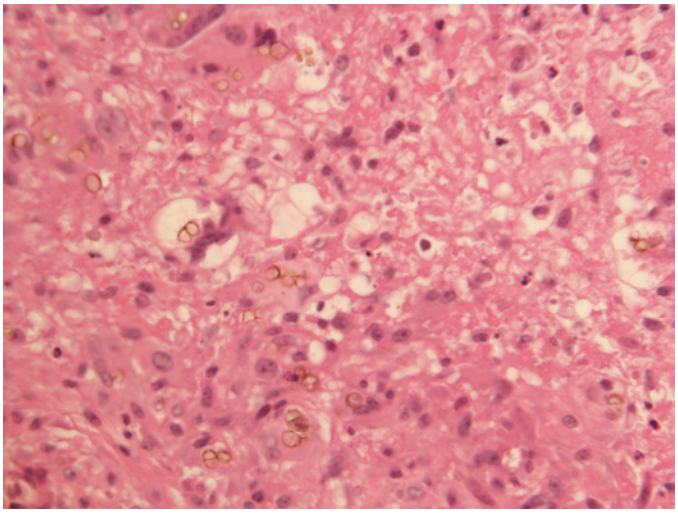


Figure 62-42 Sclerotic cells observed in tissue that is characteristic of the etiologic agents of chromoblastomycosis. (Hematoxylin and eosin stain, 400×.)

Figure 62-40 Close-up of the surface of a dematiaceous (melanized) fungus growing on Sabouraud dextrose agar.

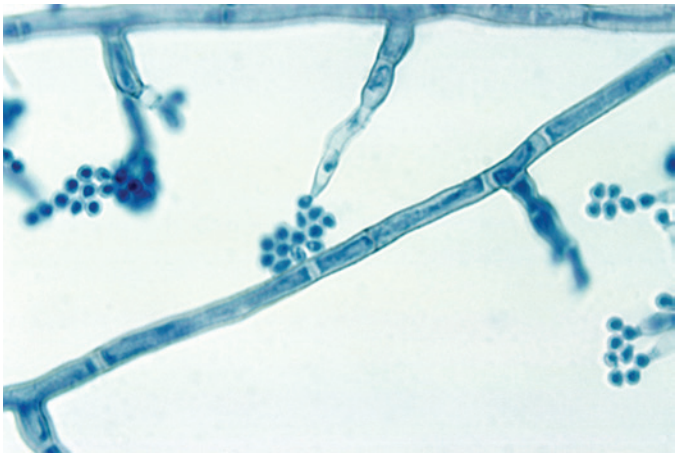


Figure 62-41 Image showing phialides with terminal conidia of the *Madurella mycetomatis* fungus. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.) (Courtesy of Lucille George, CDC Public Health Image Library.)

disease is characterized by the presence of large, muriform, thick-walled dematiaceous cells called **sclerotic bodies** (medular bodies or "copper pennies") within the infected tissues (Krzysciak et al, 2014; Revankar & Sutton, 2010). The disease affects immunocompetent individuals who most often live in tropical and subtropical areas and is distinguished by the formation of a painless verrucous plaque or nodule at the site of inoculation following a penetrating trauma, with healing areas of the lesion evident along with the formation of scar materials (Queiroz-Telles et al, 2009). The most common species causing this disease is *Fonsecaea pedrosi*, followed by *Phialophora verrucosa* and, less commonly, *Cladophialophora carrioni* and *Rhinocladiella aquaspersa*, although numerous other melanin-producing species may also be involved (Revankar & Sutton, 2010). The distinguishing feature is the presence of round, nonhyphal, brown cells (sclerotic bodies) in tissues (Fig. 62-42). These structures, which divide by producing a septal plane, are diagnostic of the entity but do not provide a clue as to species identification of the mold. Culture and recognition of morphologic features of the isolate are needed to identify the infecting species. An additional characteristic is that both mycetoma and phaeohyphomycosis result in tissue necrosis, whereas chromoblastomycosis infections lead to excessive proliferation of host tissue (Seyedmousavi et al, 2014).

Phaeohyphomycosis

Phaeohyphomycosis (from the Greek word **phaeo**, meaning "dark") was a term originally proposed by Ajello as a histopathologic entity to cover all infections "caused by fungi that develop in tissue in the form of dark-walled dematiaceous septate mycelial elements" (Ajello et al, 1974). Over the years, phaeohyphomycosis has become more recognized as a cause of subcutaneous and systemic diseases characterized by the formation of brownish to olivaceous hyphal elements in tissue (Seyedmousavi et al, 2013). Although both chromoblastomycosis and eumycotic mycetoma are caused by dematiaceous fungi, they are distinguished from phaeohyphomycosis by the appearance in tissue of sclerotic bodies and mycotic granules, respectively.

Phaeohyphomycosis can arbitrarily be divided into allergic disease (including allergic fungal sinusitis and allergic bronchopulmonary mycosis); superficial infection (including onychomycosis and tinea nigra); deep local infection such as subcutaneous lesions, keratitis, bone and joint infections, and peritonitis; pulmonary infection; central nervous system infection; and disseminated infection (Revankar & Sutton, 2010). Allergic disease manifest as asthma is linked to exposure to *Alternaria* spp. and *Cladosporium* spp., while the bronchopulmonary form is most frequently due to *Bipolaris* or *Curvularia*. Superficial infections involve the keratinized tissues such as the fingernails and toenails and the stratum corneum (e.g., tinea nigra, a pigmented macule usually on the palms or soles). These asymptomatic infections are most commonly caused by *Hortaea werneckii* (previously *Phaeoannellomyces werneckii*), *Scopulariopsis brevicaulis*, *Phoma euphyrena*, and *Chaetomium globosum*. The subcutaneous forms of the disease are characterized by the formation of a solitary asymptomatic subcutaneous nodule or cyst usually in an immunocompetent individual (Naggie & Perfect, 2009). The most common dematiaceous fungi associated with the subcutaneous cutaneous condition are *Exophiala jeanselmei*, *Wangilla dermatitidis*,

and *Bipolaris* spp. (Garnica et al, 2009). Disseminated infection is a rare complication of immunosuppression. One of the more common species associated with this condition is *Scedosporium prolificans*, an aggressive fungus that is generally resistant to all available antifungal agents.

The variety of disease manifestations and the range of species associated with phaeohyphomycosis were brought to light in a recent multistate outbreak of phaeohyphomycosis that was associated with injection of methylprednisolone acetate solution contaminated with the dematiaceous fungus, *Exserohilum rostratum* from a single compounding pharmacy (Kainer et al, 2012; Ritter et al, 2013). Epidural and intra-articular injections of this contaminated solution resulted in over 700 confirmed drug-related infections (ranging from localized epidural, paraspinal, and peripheral joint infections to fatal fungal meningitis) resulting in over 50 deaths. *E. rostratum* had only rarely been reported as a cause of human disease prior to this outbreak.

In most cases of phaeohyphomycosis, diagnosis may be difficult because many of the etiologic agents are often considered contaminants when isolated from culture. In tissue, the presence of irregular, swollen, septate hyphal forms with yeastlike structures that stain with a melanin-specific Masson-Fontana stain is presumptive for the diagnosis of phaeohyphomycosis.

Sick Building Syndrome

Dematiaceous molds have also been associated with the condition known as **sick building syndrome**. The mold most commonly associated with this condition is *Stachybotyrs chartarum*, and although the causative association of mold contamination within a building with disease has been questioned, health concerns to indoor mold exposure leading to persistent allergy symptoms or asthma-like symptoms have been documented (Al-Ahmad et al, 2010). Others have also suggested that toxins associated with molds such as *S. chartarum* are associated with health problems following exposure (Straus, 2009; Terr, 2009). The National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health has provided a document that presents a comprehensive review on preventing occupational respiratory disease from exposures caused by dampness in office buildings, schools, and other nonindustrial buildings (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, 2012).

MUCORMYCOSIS (ZYGOMYCOSIS)

Current advances in molecular techniques have contributed to taxonomic reorganization with the group of fungi formally classified within the phylum *Zygomycota* and described as causative agents of the disease zygomycosis (also called **mucormycosis** and **phycomycosis**). Phylogenetic analysis confirmed that the phylum *Zygomycota* was polyphyletic, which led to a new phylum classification of *Glomeromycota* with four additional subphyla of uncertain placement (*incertae sedis*) (Kwon-Chung, 2012). One of these subphyla, identified as *Mucoromycotina* (with no class designation), contains the order *Mucorales*, where the 20 species formally collectively called *zygomycetes* reside (Gomes et al, 2011; Iwen et al, 2011). These recent changes in taxonomy now suggest that the species within the order *Mucorales* be called **mucormycetes** and that the disease caused by these species be identified as mucormycosis (Kwon-Chung, 2012).

Rhizopus spp. are the organisms most commonly isolated from patients with mucormycosis with *R. (oryzae) arrhizus* and *R. microsporus* recognized as causing a majority of cases (Alvarez et al, 2009). Other less common species include *Lichtheimia (Absidia) corymbifera*, *Apophysomyces elegans*, *Cunninghamella bertholletiae*, *Mucor circinelloides*, and *Rhizomucor (Mucor) pusillus*.

RISK FACTORS

Uncontrolled diabetes, steroid use, neutropenia, infant prematurity, stem cell or solid organ transplantation, and the use of deferoxamine are all well-described risk factors for the development of mucormycosis (Freifeld et al, 2004; Roden et al, 2005). In general, most of these conditions are associated with impairment of normal leukocyte immune function. Diabetic ketoacidosis is the most common recognized underlying condition for the development of mucormycosis in humans. However, recognition of no underlying condition following penetrating trauma, surgery, and burns has also been seen at the time of infection (Roden et al, 2005).

CLINICAL DISEASES

The two major clinical presentations for mucormycosis are sinus infection with or without cerebral or orbital involvement and localized pulmonary infection that may lead to disseminated disease. Another, more rare condition is a localized cutaneous infection that occurs following trauma. Risk factors for the two major presentations are somewhat different (Mantadakis & Samonis, 2009).

An invasive infection that begins in the paranasal sinuses is known as *rhinosinus*, *rhinocerebral*, *sinus-orbital*, or *craniofacial mucormycosis*, depending on how far the infection has spread. The infection begins as an undifferentiated sinusitis, but the hyphae may rapidly break through the thin walls of the sinus and extend up into the orbit, forward into the skin of the face, and back up into the cranial cavity. Rhinocerebral disease may progress rapidly, and death often results. Thrombosis of the carotid artery or cavernous sinus may occur following invasion of deep tissue.

The second major presentation of mucormycosis is pulmonary disease, which may be followed by hematogenous dissemination. Infection begins as an undifferentiated pneumonia, which may be complicated by hemoptysis and cavitation. Risk factors for pulmonary infection include neutropenia and immunosuppression, particularly by hematologic malignancy; disseminated infection is common, and the outcome is almost uniformly fatal (Pagano et al, 2004).

A less common presentation of mucormycosis is infection of skin and soft tissues (Alsuwaida, 2002). Hyphae may reach the skin by the hematogenous route, by direct extension from a deep focus, or by introduction from the outside. Contaminated adhesive tape has been reported as a source of primary cutaneous disease in the compromised patient (Alsuwaida, 2002). Other rare cases of zygomycosis include primary involvement of the GI tract, the heart, the brain, or the kidneys (Roden et al, 2005). Since the mucormycetes are common in the environment, invasive fungal infections after natural disasters are also not uncommon. Soft-tissue infections have been identified following a volcanic eruption (8 cases, Colombia, *R. arrhizus*), tsunami (2 cases, Sri Lanka and Thailand, *Apophysomyces elegans*), and tornado (13 cases, United States, *Apophysomyces trapezoformis*) (Benedict & Park, 2014; Fanfair et al, 2012).

PATHOLOGY

The diagnosis of mucormycosis is made most frequently on the basis of characteristic histopathologic findings in tissue (Guarner & Brandt, 2011). The tissue response is dominated by necrosis, regardless of the site of infection. The propensity for these molds to invade through the walls of arteries and veins, producing acute thrombosis, leads to extensive coagulative necrosis. The hyphae appear as ribbons of broad hyphae that are often twisted and collapsed with a variable width from 5 to 20 µm (see Fig. 62-3). Septa are sparse and usually are not observed in tissue, but an overlay of the exterior walls of collapsed hyphae may be mistaken for septa. Swollen segments of hyphae and hyphae cut in cross-section may be incorrectly interpreted as yeast cells. Branching tends to occur at right angles in a haphazard pattern. These hyphal characteristics along with the angioinvasive property of these fungi are highly suggestive of a mucormycete-caused infection. Comparison of the histologic features of mucormycetes versus those of other nonpigmented hyphae in tissue is described in Table 62-7. The hyphae of these molds often stain better with the H&E stain than with the GMS method.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

The *Mucorales* often are considered common contaminants within the mycology laboratory, and the potential clinical implications of isolates should be carefully investigated before they are dismissed as saprophytes. Collaboration between the pathologist and the laboratory is important because demonstration of hyphae in tissue provides important evidence that an isolated mold was present in vivo and was not an environmental contaminant. Broad, sparsely septate hyphae may be demonstrated in tissue sections or in imprint smears of tissue, using the Calcofluor white stain.

Most mucormycetes grow well on standard fungal medium. Unfortunately, recovery of these organisms from tissue is difficult when negative culture results are common, although histologic evidence of a mucormycete is present (Roden et al, 2005). Aggressive processing of a specimen is thought to damage the organism so it is no longer viable; therefore, tissue should be minced or teased, rather than homogenized, after which it is inoculated onto the surface of a primary isolation agar (Ribes et al, 2000). Mucormycetes are inhibited by cycloheximide, so nonselective fungal medium should be included when fungal cultures are performed. Isolates grow rapidly (within 48 to 72 hours) and produce abundant aerial hyphae that rapidly reach the lid of the Petri dish, colloquially referred to as **lid lifters** (Fig. 62-43). The hyphae are characterized as woolly and initially white, turning gray to black as spores develop.

TABLE 62-7

Histopathologic Features of the Zygomycetes in Comparison with Other Fungi That Occur as Nonpigmented Hyphae in Tissue*

Characteristic	Zygomycetes†	*Aspergillus*‡	*Fusarium*
Hyphal characteristics			
Width (μm)	Variable (5-10)	Consistent (3-6)	Consistent (3-8)
Branching pattern	Haphazard	Dichotomous	Right angle
Septation frequency	Rare	High	High
Reproductive structures in tissue	Absent	May be present where infected area communicates with air	Chlamydoconidia sometimes present
Angioinvasiveness	Yes	Yes	Yes

Modified with permission from Freifeld AG, Iwen PC: Zygomycosis. *Semin Respir Crit Care Med* 25:221–231, 2004.

*In all cases, a definitive diagnosis of the species requires isolation and identification of the fungus on synthetic media.

†Entomophthorales are included in this group with the hyphal fragments in tissue generally coated by anophous eosinophilic Splencore-Hoepple material and lack of angioinvasiveness noted.

‡Because of hyphal degeneration or host immune response or both, the hyphae of the *Aspergillus* species may exhibit atypical morphologic forms that may cause problems in the differential diagnosis.

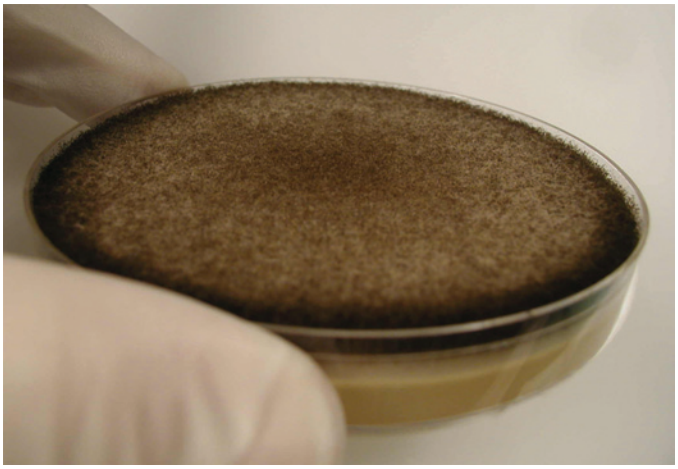


Figure 62-43 A fluffy gray colony of *Rhizopus* spp. fills the space within the Petri dish (lid lifter). (Sabouraud dextrose agar.)

Rhizopus species produce unbranched sporangiophores that support sporangia (60 to 350 μm) with an ellipsoidal columella containing sporangiospores. The sporangiospores are oval and frequently have a brown pigment (see Fig. 62-6). An important diagnostic feature for *Rhizopus* is the presence of hyaline-to-brown rootlike structures called **rhizoids**, which develop at the point where the sporangiophores arise. In contrast to *Rhizopus*, the rhizoids of *Lichtheimia (Absidia)* spp. arise from the stolons between conidiophores. The sporangiophores are pear-shaped rather than round, and a collarette is visible around the columella when the sporangium disintegrates.

Mucor species on the other hand do not produce rhizoids; the conidiophores usually are more branched than other mucormycetes, and growth does not occur above 37° C. *Rhizomucor*, which is morphologically intermediate between *Rhizopus* and *Mucor*, has rudimentary rhizoids and branched conidiophores and grows at temperatures as high as 58° C. *Mucor* species were commonly thought to be the second most recognized causes of mucormycosis; however, they now have been described as a rare cause of human disease (Iwen et al, 2007). This is due to the fact that *Mucor corymbifera* has been reassigned to the genus *Lichtheimia (Absidia)* as *L. corymbifera*, and *M. pusillus* has been reclassified in the genus *Rhizomucor* as *R. pusillus* (Iwen et al, 2011).

Although genera of the mucormycetes can be readily recognized in the mycology laboratory, few laboratories have the expertise needed to identify specific species. One method used to accurately identify these organisms has been the observation of zygospores following mating studies because of the heterothallic nature of this group of organisms (Weitzman et al, 1995). Although this method is used successfully, mating studies do not always yield a positive result. Additionally, the need to maintain a library of testing strains needed to perform mating does not make this method realistic for most clinical laboratories.

Numerous molecular methods have been described for species identification of the mucormycetes using a variety of molecular targets (Iwen et al, 2011). Nucleotide sequence comparisons using the ITS regions of the rDNA complex and the variable D1/D2 region of the *28S* gene have been shown to have the highest discriminatory capability for the identification of most *Mucorales* (Balajee, 2009a). PCR-based diagnosis of mucormycosis in tissue samples has been shown to increase the sensitivity of detection and to allow for rapid identification of the mucormycete, leading to an optimization of treatment options (Bialek & Zelck, 2013).

ASPERGILLOSIS, FUSARIOSIS, AND OTHER MYCOSES CAUSED BY HYALINE FUNGI

This large group of saprophytic fungi is frequently encountered in the clinical laboratory and contains some of the most important pathogenic molds. These molds are collectively classified as hyaline because they produce nonpigmented hyphae, and the disease is frequently called **hyalohyphomycosis**. The number of species within this group that are capable of causing human disease is large and continues to expand as immunosuppressive therapies become more common methods for the management of patients. By far the most recognized hyaline molds causing human disease are classified in the *Eurotiales* (*Aspergillus*, *Paecilomyces*, and *Penicillium*), the *Microascales* (*Scedosporium* and *Scopulariopsis*), and the *Hypocreales* (*Cylindrocarpon*, *Fusarium*, and *Trichoderma*). In this section, detailed consideration will be given to *Aspergillus* spp. and *Fusarium* spp., the hyaline molds most commonly identified as causing invasive human disease.

THE GENUS *ASPERGILLUS*

Invasive aspergillosis is the most common life-threatening opportunistic invasive mycosis in immunosuppressed patients (Leeflang et al, 2008). The term **aspergillosis** is used to describe these infections, which are caused by species within the genus *Aspergillus*. This group of organisms has the ability to produce a wide spectrum of infections, which include mycotoxicosis, allergic manifestations, and superficial infection in the normal host; localized noninvasive infection in hosts with tissue damage or foreign body obstruction; and invasive infection in the compromised host. Although they are not discussed further here, numerous reviews are recommended for additional information on intoxication by ingestion of *Aspergillus* toxin (Etzel, 2002; Hedayati et al, 2007) and allergic manifestations associated with *Aspergillus* spore exposure (Agarwal et al, 2013; Schubert, 2009; Thia et al, 2009).

The number of new *Aspergillus* spp. associated with human disease continues to expand with the utilization of genomic methods for identification (Balajee, 2009a; Balajee et al, 2009b; Geiser, 2009; Geiser et al, 2007). Historically, the aspergilli were identified to species based on observable morphologic (e.g., reproductive structures and cultural characteristics) and physiologic (e.g., effect of temperature on growth) characteristics. However, the utilization of molecular sequencing has now shown that many of the fungal species are morphologically indistinguishable, leading to the concept described as **cryptic species** (Samson & Varga, 2009). A polyphasic approach has now been suggested for species identification to include morphologic, physiologic, and molecular characteristics (using a combination of multilocus sequence data). Since most clinical laboratories still utilize identification methods based on morphology, the recommendation for reporting to account for these cryptic species is to describe the identification as a "species complex" based on the major taxonomic section of the fungus (e.g., *Aspergillus fumigatus* species complex, *A. flavus* species complex, *A. terreus* species complex, *A. ustus* species complex, or *A. niger* species complex [Balajee et al, 2009; Balajee, 2009a; Balajee et al, 2009b; Samson et al, 2007]). Antifungal resistance associated with these cryptic species may, however, in the future make more precise species identification useful to appropriately manage an infected patient (Howard, 2014; Nedel & Pasqualotto, 2014).

Aspergillus fumigatus species complex is considered the most common group associated with invasive aspergillosis, followed by the *Aspergillus flavus* and *Aspergillus terreus* species complexes (Dagenais & Keller, 2009;

Krishnan et al, 2009). However, in some studies, the *A. flavus* species complex has emerged as a predominant pathogen group, especially when those patients with fungal sinusitis and fungal keratitis were evaluated in several institutions worldwide (Krishnan et al, 2009). Suggestions are that the bigger size of the *A. flavus* spores, in comparison with the spores of *A. fumigatus*, may favor their deposit in the upper respiratory tract and eye (Pasqualotto, 2009).

Aspergillus terreus species complex, as the third most common species complex recognized, is often refractory to therapy with the antifungal amphotericin B and has the propensity to disseminate (Balajee et al, 2009; Lass-Florl et al, 2009). Multiple other species of *Aspergillus* have rarely been recognized as causing invasive disease (Balajee et al, 2009b; Florescu et al, 2009).

Risk Factors

The aspergilli are ubiquitous fungi to which all people are exposed on a regular basis. These fungi reside in vegetation of all types and are ubiquitous in the environment. Nosocomial infections, although uncommon, have been linked to numerous cases associated with hospital construction in the literature (Haiduven, 2009; Karthaus & Buchheidt, 2013). Engineering infection control through institution design to prevent high-risk patients from spore exposure has been done to provide a safer environment for patients.

The most important risk factors for invasive aspergillosis are immunosuppressive disease, high-dose chemotherapy with or without transplantation, and solid organ transplantation (Ben-Ami et al, 2009; Zilberberg & Shorr, 2009). Neutropenia is a prominent predisposing factor for disease; however, serious invasive disease may rarely occur in individuals who are not immunosuppressed by chemotherapy or malignancy. For instance, wound infection has been a problem in patients with extensive burn wounds and in individuals exposed to materials contaminated with conidia—a situation reminiscent of the mucormycetes. A fungus ball may also occur in the lung of patients with chronic obstructive lung disease, bronchiectasis, and an old cavity caused by tuberculosis (Riscili & Wood, 2009).

Clinical Diseases

The spectrum of invasive disease caused by *Aspergillus* species is broad. Although these fungi have a low pathogenicity in humans and rarely cause disease in the immunologically competent individual, immunocompromised patients are at risk for invasive disease. Those patients especially at risk are those with prolonged granulocytopenia or graft-versus-host disease and those undergoing immunosuppressive therapy or receiving corticosteroid treatment. Since *Aspergillus* spores are normally present in the environment, the most common primary sites of infection are the lower respiratory tract and, to a lesser extent, the paranasal sinuses (Zmeili & Soubani, 2007).

Ocular Infections

Keratomycosis usually follows trauma to the eye, especially in patients who have been treated with topical steroids. Pain and blurring of vision follow the traumatic episode, and if not treated, the infection may extend into the anterior chamber. Enucleation of the eye may be necessary if the process is not halted. The most common underlying disease recognized in a study of 15 patients with orbital invasive aspergillosis was diabetes mellitus, with all patients having a primary paranasal sinus infection (Choi et al, 2008). Ocular symptoms of this disease in the immunosuppressed patient include visual disturbances, periorbital swelling, and periorbital pain.

Otic Infections

Otomycosis is an infection of the external ear that is usually caused by *Aspergillus niger* or *A. fumigatus* species complex. Pain, decreased hearing, and a discharge are accompanied by a fluffy green or black growth in the ear canal. Extension beyond the external ear is rare but may occur in immunosuppressed patients (Parize et al, 2009; Vennewald et al, 2003).

Sinus Infection

Invasive fungal sinusitis can be classified as an acute fulminant invasive disease or as a chronic indolent invasive disease (Duggal & Wise, 2013). Spread of the fungus from the sinus into adjacent tissues is frequently dependent on the host immunologic response and on whether metabolic ketoacidosis is present, although invasive infection has also been reported in apparently healthy individuals (El Naderi et al, 2013).

Cutaneous Infection

Aspergillus spp. may infect the skin after dissemination from another site, usually pulmonary, or the infection may be a primary infection after direct cutaneous exposure to a contaminated environmental source (Thomas et al, 2008). Recognized risk factors include immunosuppression, but local factors that abrogate defense mechanisms of the skin are also important, such as may occur with burn wounds and surgical wounds, especially if occlusive dressings are present. Dissemination to the skin from another primary source in the suppressed patient is difficult to treat and generally results in death. This condition is usually recognized by multiple lesions appearing over different areas of the body.

Primary Pulmonary Infection

Primary pulmonary aspergillosis is the most common invasive mold infection in immunocompromised patients, especially in those patients with hematologic malignancies who are undergoing intensive chemotherapy (Zmeili & Soubani, 2007). Even though the disease is usually associated with severely immunocompromised persons, less invasive and noninvasive diseases that affect the lungs such as aspergilloma (fungus ball), chronic necrotizing pulmonary aspergillosis, semi-invasive aspergillosis, chronic invasive pulmonary aspergillosis, symptomatic pulmonary aspergillosis, and *Aspergillus* pseudotuberculosis may also occur (Denning et al, 2003). The predilection of aspergilli to invade blood vessels can lead to infarction and hemorrhage in the lungs and may involve hematogenous spread to other organs (Thompson et al, 2008; Zmeili & Soubani, 2007).

Disseminated Infection

Dissemination from the lung or any other primary site of infection may affect any other organ system within the body. The propensity of hyphae to invade vascular structures and cause thrombosis leads to infarcts and abscesses in multiple organs. Single or multiple organs, including the brain, skin, kidneys, pleura, heart, esophagus, liver, or any other site, may be involved (Del Bono et al, 2008; Denning, 1998).

Pathology of Aspergillosis

The histologic appearance of the aspergilli in tissue is similar to that observed with the other hyaline molds, and differentiation among genera and species usually is not possible, except in unusual cases in which sporulation within the tissue cavity has occurred (Guarner & Brandt, 2011). The tissue reaction may be granulomatous but is more commonly dominated by polymorphonuclear neutrophils unless the patient is severely neutropenic. Vascular invasion, thrombosis, and infarction often are prominent features. The hyphae are thin (2 to 5 μm) and septate and branch at acute angles (dichotomous) (see Fig. 62-4). The H&E stain often colors the hyphae, but the morphology may be demonstrated to advantage with the PAS or GMS technique. The histologic appearance of aspergilli in tissue and mucormycete can be differentiated on the basis of size, hyphal characteristics, and the presence of septations (see Table 62-7).

When the pathologic process is a fungus ball, the hyphae may stain poorly using histopathologic stains. A cavity that is in contact with air, as in the lung or sinuses, may develop fruiting heads, an event that permits identification of the genera and possibly the species (Fig. 62-44). The conidiophores, which are not septate and may be wider than the vegetative

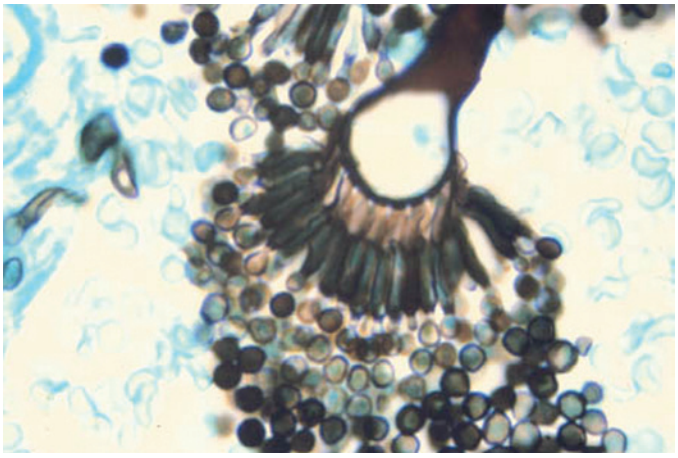


Figure 62-44 A fruiting head of *Aspergillus* is demonstrated within a pulmonary mycetoma (fungus ball). The phialides and conidia are well demonstrated. Although the hyphae of *Aspergillus* are not etiologically diagnostic, demonstration of the fruiting head documents the presence of this genus. (Gomori's methenamine silver stain, 400×.)

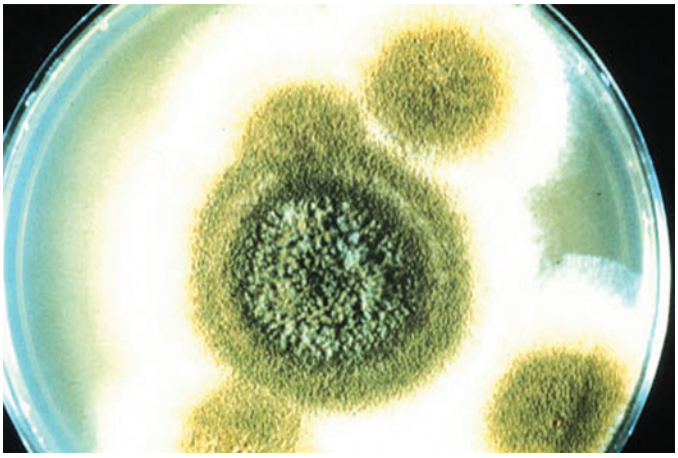


Figure 62-45 Fluffy colonies with granular areas produced by fruiting heads of *Aspergillus flavus*. The development of yellow or green coloration within the white colonies is characteristic. (Sabouraud dextrose agar.)

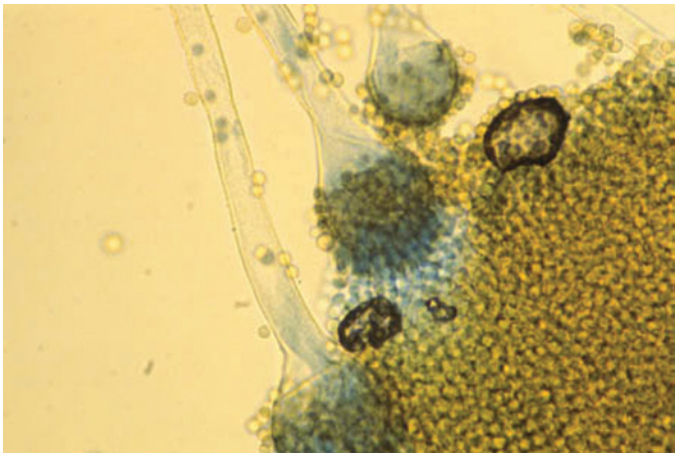


Figure 62-46 The fruiting head of *Aspergillus flavus* species complex is uniseriate and biseriate. The phialides extend around much of the vesicle with a roughened (spiny) appearance of the conidiophore. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

hyphae, should not be confused with the mucormycetes. Thick-walled Hülle cells and cleistothecia have also been described in vivo. When the patient is immunocompetent and the histologic response is granulomatous, the hyphae may be fragmented and confined to the cytoplasm of macrophages and multinucleated giant cells. The granulomatous response to *Aspergillus* in the lung may be mistaken for bronchocentric granulomatosis in patients who have allergic disease.

Laboratory Diagnosis

Aspergilli are saprophytic fungi that should never be dismissed as contaminants without consultation with the attending physician. Isolation from a sterile site or repeated isolation from respiratory specimens suggests clinical significance. Hyphae may be demonstrated directly in clinical specimens in imprint preparations or wet preparations. Calcofluor white staining is useful for demonstrating the mold in specimens. Obtaining tissue, fluid, scrapings, or curettings for examination is important. Tissue should be teased or minced and inoculated directly onto the surface of the isolation medium. *Aspergillus* species grow rapidly, but most are inhibited or are partially inhibited by cycloheximide. The colonies of many of these molds teem with conidia. To prevent contamination of the worker and other cultures, the colonies should be manipulated carefully in a biologic safety cabinet, after which the surfaces of the safety cabinet should be thoroughly wiped with a fungicidal solution. Maintenance of isolated molds in plastic bags with continuing incubation also reduces the probability of contaminating other cultures.

Keeping in mind that cryptic species with similar morphologic features are common within the major groups of fungi, specific identification within the aspergilli complexes are made by study of the reproductive structures and the macroscopic appearance of the culture. Careful attention to details of the conidial head is needed for species complex identification. *A. fumigatus* species complex grows rapidly, producing colonies with a fluffy appearance and a blue-green appearance to the colony (see Fig. 62-2). Examination of the colony with a dissecting microscope reveals the conidiophores with their expanded vesicles as small globes projecting above the vegetative mycelium. The conidiophore is smooth, relatively short (300 to 500 µm), and expanded into a flask-shaped vesicle. The phialides develop in a single row (uniseriate), most commonly on only the upper two thirds of the vesicle, parallel to the axis of the conidiophore (see Fig. 62-8). The conidia are roughened (echinulate) and are round to oval.

Colonies of *A. flavus* species complex have a velvety yellow to green appearance once fruiting heads develop (Fig. 62-45). The conidiophore is long (400 to 700 µm), ending in a vesicle that may be elliptical or round. The conidiophore is rough and stubbly. A single or double (biseriate) row of phialides occurs over the whole vesicle or the upper three quarters (Fig. 62-46). Round to oval conidia appear yellow-green en masse and measure 3 to 4.5 µm. *Aspergillus terreus* species complex can be differentiated from other species by the production of a cinnamon-brown colony with microscopic characteristics that include short conidiophores (<250 µm) and biseriate phialides.

Although the gold standard for making a diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis is to obtain a positive culture from sterile tissue with histologic evidence of mycelial invasion, the need for invasive techniques to obtain the specimen, the delayed time required for culture, and the rapidity by which the aspergilli can spread make diagnosis problematic. Serologic tests are available for the detection of galactomannan to rapidly diagnose invasive aspergillosis (Aquino et al, 2007; Del Bono et al, 2008; Foy et al, 2007; Husain et al, 2007; Leeflang et al, 2008; Wheat, 2009a) and for the detection of (1-3)-beta-D-glucan for nonspecific diagnosis of an invasive fungal infection (Marty & Koo, 2009; Onishi et al, 2012). All of these tests have shown utility in the management of patients with invasive aspergillosis; however, limitations of the various assays need to be understood.

Although molecular methods have led to dramatic changes in the taxonomy of the *Aspergillus* species, they will continue to be evaluated as methods for the rapid diagnosis of fungal infection from clinical material. Multiple molecular targets for the identification of the aspergilli have been evaluated, and targets showing greatest promise for identification appear to be the partial β-tubulin and calmodulin genomic areas (Geiser, 2009). The general consensus at the present time is that a combination of phenotypic and molecular testing needs to be considered for the accurate identification of *Aspergillus* species (Samson & Varga, 2009).

Multiple platforms for direct detection of *Aspergillus* DNA in clinical specimens have been evaluated with varying degrees of success (Hummel et al, 2009; Klingspor & Loeffler, 2009; Logotheti et al, 2009; Wengenack & Binnicker, 2009). A recent systematic review and meta-analysis done on the use of PCR tests for the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis directly from blood, plasma, and serum samples concluded that a single PCR-negative result was sufficient to exclude a diagnosis of proven or probable aspergillosis (Mengoli et al, 2009). However, two or more positive tests were required to confirm the diagnosis because of increased specificity after testing of multiple samples. With advances in molecular testing, a formal evaluation of PCR needs to be considered to assess its use in patients most likely to benefit from testing.

THE GENUS *FUSARIUM*

Fusarium species have been implicated in a number of infectious diseases, including keratomycosis, burn wounds, and invasive disease in immunocompromised patients (Jossi et al, 2010). Fusariosis is, after aspergillosis, the second most common mold infection in humans (Guarro, 2013). Although still considered a rare cause of human disease, a major outbreak of *Fusarium* keratitis was recently reported wherein 130 cases of eye infection were confirmed (CDC 2006; O'Donnell et al, 2007). An epidemiologic investigation showed that most infected patients wore contact lenses that had been cleaned with a lens solution obtained from one manufacturer. This investigation led to the voluntary recall and permanent removal of the associated contact lens solution from the worldwide market.

The histopathologic picture for fusariosis is essentially identical to that observed with invasive aspergillosis (angioinvasive and acute branching septate hyphae). *Fusarium* species also have been shown to sporulate in tissues, and thus there may be a combination of yeastlike structures and hyphae in histopathologic preparations (Nucci et al, 2007). A differentiating feature from invasive aspergillosis is that fungemia is more commonly described in fusariosis. *Fusarium*-positive blood cultures are frequently detected during disseminated disease; however, even in documented

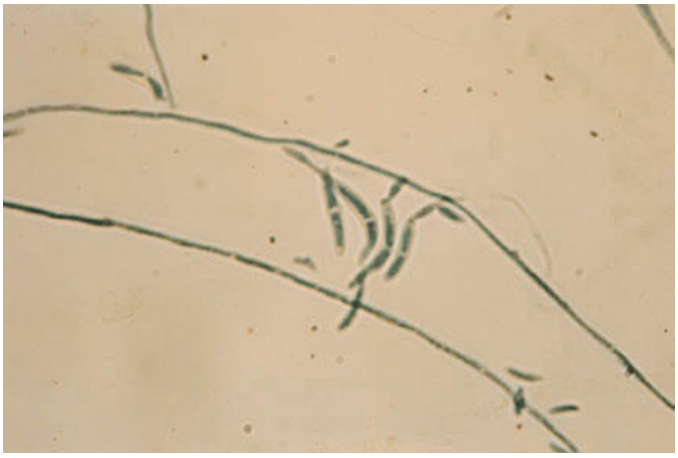


Figure 62-47 Canoe-shaped conidia of *Fusarium* species. The conidia are often septate. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

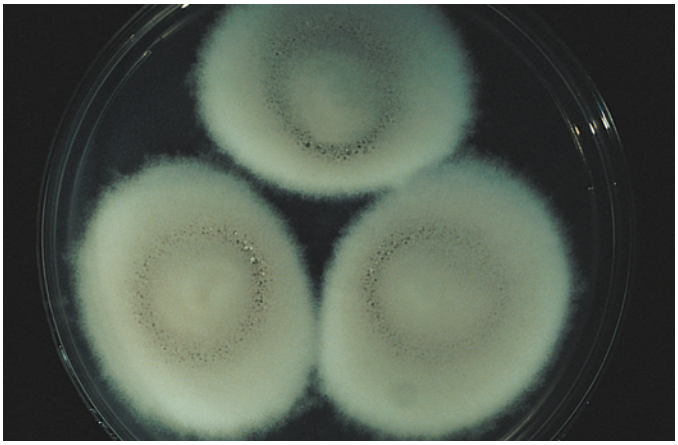


Figure 62-48 A developing colony of *Scedosporium apiospermum* with the characteristic mousy gray coloration. (Sabouraud dextrose agar.)

disseminated disease, detection of aspergilli in the blood is rare (Lionakis et al, 2004).

In culture, *Fusarium* colonies develop rapidly, producing a fluffy aerial mycelium, which often has a pink, lavender, or salmon color. Diffusible pigments may be seen in the surrounding agar. Simple or branched phialides develop directly from the hypha without a separate conidiophore. Short oval microconidia may be produced, but the distinctive structure is a canoe-shaped or crescent-shaped macroconidium, which may have one or more septa (Fig. 62-47). Identification of species in the mycology laboratory is difficult, usually requiring a reference laboratory with experience in recognition of subtle microscopic details related to the reproductive structures.

The taxonomy of *Fusarium* species has undergone extensive evaluation using molecular sequence analysis of multiple genomic targets (Guarro, 2013; O'Donnell et al, 2009). Most fusaria pathogenic to humans are members of the *Fusarium solani* or the *Fusarium oxysporum* species complex; however, the traditional taxonomic practice is to refer to members of these complexes as single species (i.e., *F. solani* and *F. oxysporum*). Recent molecular phylogenetic studies have begun to clarify species boundaries within evolutionary lineages of *Fusarium* that contain human pathogens. Currently, however, recognition of the species, although important for epidemiologic purposes, does not have an impact on therapeutic decisions; thus many laboratories continue to report these as "*Fusarium* species." For molecular identification of the fusaria, three different loci have been recommended and include the translation elongation factor 1 α (EF-1α), the largest subunit of RNA polymerase (RPB1), and the second largest subunit of RNA polymerase (RPB2). (Balajee, 2009a; Guarro, 2013; O'Donnell et al, 2009).

THE GENUS *SCEDOSPORIUM*

Medically important species within the genus are *Scedosporium apiospermum* (teleomorph *Pseudallescheria boydii*, previously known as *Allescheria boydii* and *Petriellidium boydii*) and *Scedosporium (inflatum) prolificans* (Cortez et al, 2008). These fungi are ubiquitous saprophytic fungi found in the soil and in decaying vegetation. *S. prolificans* has been reported as a rare cause of disseminated infection, whereas *S. apiospermum*, although most often associated with a subcutaneous infection (eumycotic mycetoma), is the most common species associated with invasive disease in the immunocompromised patient. A distinctive clinical syndrome of sinopulmonary and central nervous system infections in immunocompetent individuals has been associated with near drowning in polluted waters, with *P. boydii* as the etiologic agent (Gilgado et al, 2009).

S. apiospermum (P. boydii) grows rapidly on isolation medium at 25° C, producing a fluffy colony that develops a brownish gray to dark gray ("mousy") color after incubation for several days. The culture darkens still further with continued incubation (Fig. 62-48). The asexual phase is characterized by single or small clusters of annelloconidia on a straight or branched conidiophore that may develop terminally or laterally from the vegetative hyphae. The conidia are light brown and have an oval, spermlike morphology (Fig. 62-49). In the sexual phase *(P. boydii)*, brown cleistothecia are produced that contain ascospores (see Fig. 62-13). The cleistothecia (100 to 300 μm in diameter), which are found most readily at the edges of

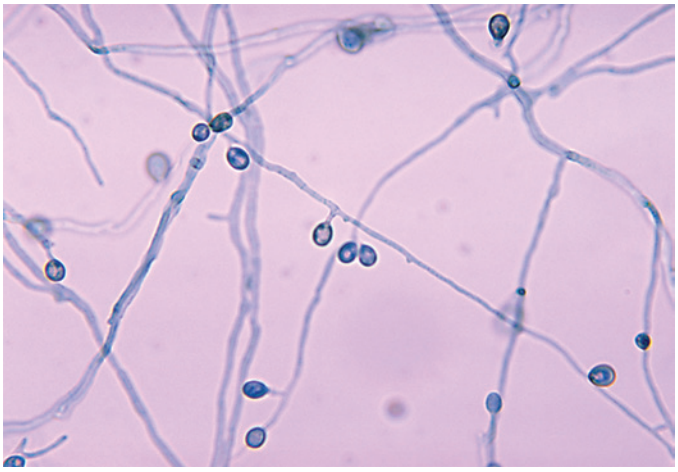


Figure 62-49 Tadpole- or sperm-shaped microconidia of *Scedosporium apiospermum* are representative of this organism. (Lactophenol cotton blue stain, 400×.)

the colony, develop best on nutritionally deficient media, such as cornmeal agar, V-8 juice agar, or potato dextrose (potato flake) agar. Because this fungus is homothallic, recognition of brown cleistothecia in the clinical laboratory is common. Strictly speaking, when the cleistothecia are demonstrated, the isolate should be reported as *P. boydii*, and it should be reported as *S. apiospermum* if the asexual conidia are the only diagnostic structures observed.

Although both macroscopic and microscopic characteristics can be used to separate species within the genus *Scedosporium*, molecular studies now suggest that *P. boydii* is a complex of multiple species (Gilgado et al, 2009).

OTHER SEPTATE HYALINE MOLDS

Hyaline molds comprise a long list of environmental saprophytes with low virulence that usually are not associated with clinical disease when isolated in the mycology laboratory (Walsh et al, 2004b). However, any of these molds may be pathogenic under the right conditions. In most cases, the host defenses of the patient are compromised in some way, or the fungus is introduced into the body by trauma or medical manipulation. Increasing numbers of case reports document rare saprophytic fungi producing infection of deep tissue and systemic organs. Demonstration of hyphae in tissue is extremely important for documenting the pathogenicity of these isolates, with culture necessary for species recognition. Molecular methods with sequence comparison analysis are becoming the standard for identification of these unusual pathogens (Balajee et al, 2007).

PNEUMOCYSTIS PNEUMONIA

The taxonomic position of *P. (carinii) jiroveci* has undergone numerous changes over the years. This organism was originally described as a

protozoan, with the morphologic forms identified as trophozoites, cysts, and sporozoites. This protozoan hypothesis remained predominant until DNA analysis showed this organism to be more closely related to the fungi (Edman et al, 1988). More recently, molecular information showed that the organism had differing DNA sequences when identified from diverse mammal hosts. To address this issue, the *Pneumocystis* Working Group in 1994 proposed the name *P. carinii* f. sp. *hominis* as a special form *(formae specialis)* of the organism causing *P. carinii* pneumonia (PCP) in humans (Pneumocystis Working Group, 1994). Subsequently, those attending the International Workshop on Opportunistic Protists in 2001 began the process to rename the species to *P. jiroveci* (pronounced "yee row vet zee") (Stringer et al, 2002). Although initially controversial, the name has now become widely accepted as the "microbe that causes PCP in humans," with the acronym PCP now standing for "*Pneumocystis* pneumonia" (Hughes, 2003).

RISK FACTORS

P. jiroveci (human-derived *Pneumocystis*) is a pathogen capable of causing a broad spectrum of clinical presentations. This organism was first recognized in outbreaks of pulmonary disease among malnourished infants in Eastern Europe during and after World War II (called *interstitial plasma cell pneumonia*) (Cushion, 2003). More recently, *Pneumocystis* became a major cause of life-threatening pneumonia in 60% to 80% of HIV-infected adults in the United States and Western Europe, and it subsequently became known as one of the AIDS-defining illnesses (Travis et al, 2009). Although still a serious problem within this patient population, the incidence of disease in people with AIDS has decreased to less than 10% of patients owing to the availability of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), the increasing use of anti-PCP prophylaxis, and improved awareness of the infection (D'Avignon et al, 2008). This disease should also be considered in any immunosuppressed patient who presents with fever, respiratory symptoms, or infiltrate on chest radiograph (Morris & Norris, 2012). Initially, clinical disease was thought to be due to reactivation of childhood latent infection in immunosuppressed cases, but studies now show that the organism can be transmitted between humans by the airborne route. In individuals with compromised immune systems (e.g., HIV infection, chemotherapeutic regimens, organ transplantation), a potentially severe and fatal pneumonia can occur (Catherinot et al, 2010). Disseminated disease may also occur via spread through lymphatic and blood routes, but this is uncommon. Although rare, infection has been documented in patients without a predisposing illness (Morris & Norris, 2012).

CLINICAL DISEASES

Pneumonia is the most common manifestation of *P. jiroveci* infection (Catherinot et al, 2010). Although the onset may be acute or insidious, symptomatic adults frequently present with dyspnea, a nonproductive cough, an inability to breathe deeply, chest tightness, and night sweats. The classic radiologic feature of PCP is fine, bilateral, perihilar interstitial shadowing; however, other radiographic features may be present (Barry & Johnson, 2001). Often, radiographic infiltrates are much more extensive than would be suggested by the degree of symptoms. Concurrent infection with other agents, particularly cytomegalovirus and *C. neoformans*, is common. The most common extrapulmonary sites of infection are the thyroid gland, liver, bone marrow, lymph nodes, and spleen (Wazir & Ansari, 2004).

PATHOLOGY

The definitive diagnosis of PCP requires the demonstration of cysts or trophozoites within clinical specimens (Fig. 62-50). Historically, this required an open thorax lung biopsy because of the low number of organisms present in other respiratory specimens and the lack of sensitive diagnostic tests. Although open lung biopsy is still considered one of the most sensitive tests for the detection of this disease, other specimens such as induced sputum and bronchoalveolar lavage have proved to be reliable sources for diagnosis. Classic histopathologic findings of PCP in sections of lung stained with H&E include widening of the alveolar septa with an infiltrate of mononuclear cells and foamy exudate within the alveolar spaces (sometime referred to as **honeycombed exudates**) (Woods & Schnadig, 2003). This exudate consists of aggregated cysts and trophozoites. The cyst form of *P. jiroveci* can be illustrated in tissue using the GMS stain. These cysts, which are 2 to 6 μm in diameter, stain brown to black and have the characteristic cup-shaped or crescent-shaped morphology.

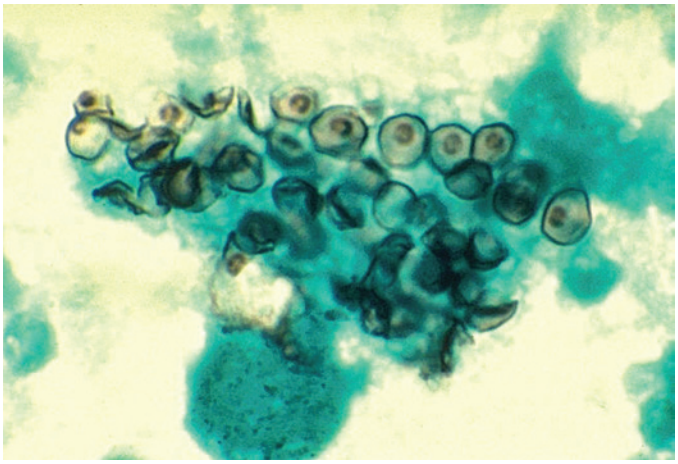


Figure 62-50 Cysts of *Pneumocystis jiroveci* in a smear from bronchoalveolar lavage. (Gomori's methenamine silver stain, 400×.) (Courtesy of Dr. Russell K. Brynes, CDC Public Health Image Library.)

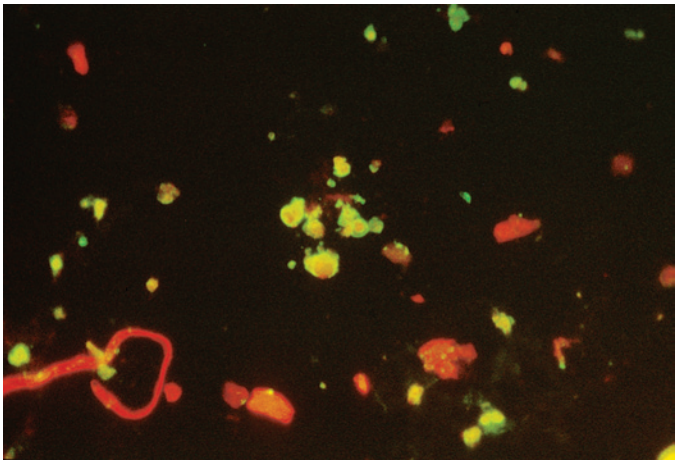


Figure 62-51 Immunofluorescence microscopy showing the presence of *Pneumocystis jiroveci.* (561×.) (Courtesy of CDC Public Health Image Library, Lois Norman, provider.)

Pneumocystis cysts do not bud; this feature can be used to distinguish this organism from other fungi found in tissue.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

P. jiroveci has been cultivated in cell cultures, but serial maintenance of subcultures has not been accomplished. The standard for diagnosis is staining bronchoalveolar lavage fluid with an immunofluorescent monoclonal antibody directed against surface epitopes for *Pneumocystis* cysts and trophozoites (Cushion, 2003). The life cycle of *P. jiroveci* involves development of sporozoites within a cyst, after which the sporozoites are released. In patients with HIV infection, sufficient numbers of organisms are produced that sputum induced with saline by a skilled respiratory therapist may provide the diagnosis. Experience with sputum has varied among centers, however, and the yield is very low in patients who have underlying disease other than HIV. Use of fluorescein-conjugated monoclonal antibodies to detect *P. jiroveci* in clinical specimens has proved to be a specific and sensitive method for identification (Fig. 62-51) (Kovacs et al, 2001). The immunofluorescence technique has been more sensitive in histochemical stains in some reports, but the skill and care of the observers undoubtedly play a role in the comparative sensitivity of the techniques. Recent studies have shown that the diagnostic accuracy of the serum (1-3)-beta-D-glucan assay is high for *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia and that this assay can be used as a screening tool for this disease (Onishi et al, 2012). Cysts of *P. jiroveci* occasionally may also be encountered in Gram-stained preparations, although this technique is not a sensitive method for detection.

Various PCR amplification strategies have been described for detecting *P. jiroveci* in clinical specimens (Gupta et al, 2009; Rober-Gangneux et al,

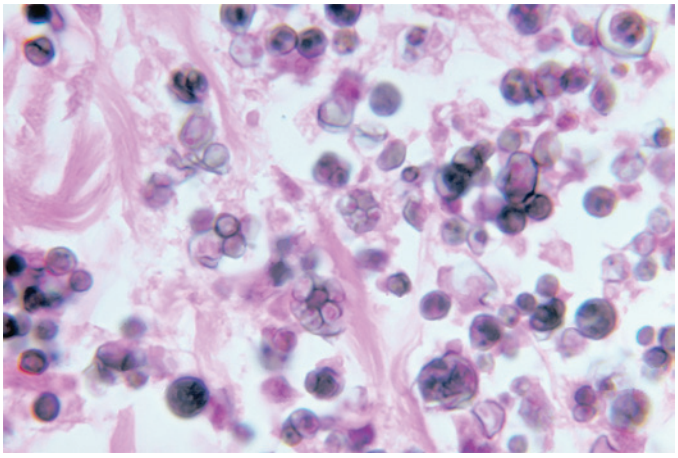


Figure 62-52 Histopathologic changes in protothecosis of the skin and mucous membrane of the nose due to *Prototheca wickerhamii*. Septation of the algal cells leads to multiple intracellular bodies and structures known as *morula*. (Courtesy of Dr. William Kaplan, CDC Public Health Image Library.)

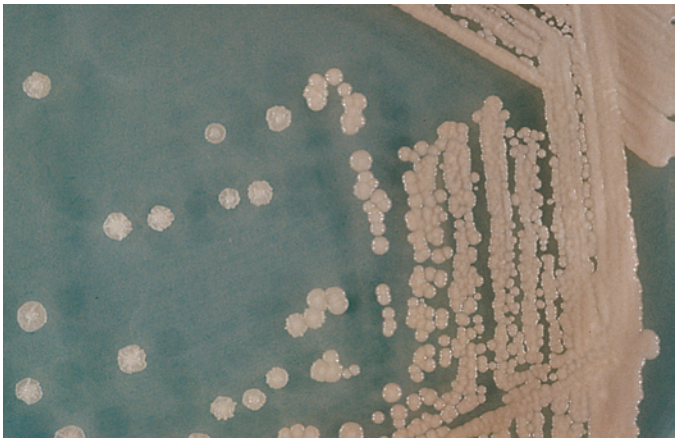


Figure 62-53 Colonies of *Prototheca wickerhamii* are yeastlike in appearance. (Sabouraud dextrose agar.)

2014). In an evaluation of nine different molecular assays, the mitochondrial large subunit rRNA target using a nested PCR platform was shown to be the most sensitive assay, with the highest degree of concordance seen with findings of histologic examination (Robberts et al, 2007). Additional studies have shown this assay to be useful in identifying patients who are in the early stages of infection (Gupta et al, 2009).

PROTOTHECOSIS

Protothecosis is an infection caused by achlorophyllic algae of the genus *Prototheca* (Hillesheim & Bahrami, 2011; Seok et al, 2013; Todd et al, 2012). Most human infections are caused by *Prototheca wickerhamii;* however, rare cases have also been caused by *Prototheca zopfii*. Although these species are classified as algae, they are included in this chapter because of the resemblance of the infections to fungal disease. *Prototheca* are found in fresh and marine waters and probably gain entrance to the body through superficial wounds. Some patients are immunocompetent, but serious underlying diseases, such as diabetes mellitus, or immunosuppressive therapies often predispose patients to infection with these pathogens. Other patients have received corticosteroid injections at the site of infection or have had musculoskeletal infection, particularly involving the tendons. Infections commonly involve the skin and subcutaneous tissue, with subsequent involvement of underlying tendons.

Prototheca form large, nonbudding cells that can readily be seen in tissue. The appearance is a spheroid or ovoid cell with a prominent wall and a "morula-like" structure containing thick-walled autospores (Lass-Florl & Mayr, 2007). Although *Prototheca* species are not readily apparent in H&E-stained smears, they can be observed with GMS or PAS stain. However, these structures must be differentiated from the dimorphic fungi (Fig. 62-52). Algae grow readily on fungal isolation media that do not contain cycloheximide, and the colonies resemble those of *Candida* spp. (Fig. 62-53). *Prototheca* species can be identified to the species level by using commercial yeast identification systems, such as the API 20C system and the VITEK 2 system (bioMérieux).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Arvanitis M, Anagnostou T, Fuchs BB, et al: Molecular and nonmolecular diagnostic methods for invasive fungal infections, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 27:490–526, 2014.

This review highlights the different diagnostic approaches that are currently utilized or under development for invasive fungal infections and to identify their performance characteristics and the challenges associated with their use.

Balajee SA, Borman AM, Brandt ME, et al: Sequence-based identification of *Aspergillus, Fusarium*, and *Mucorales* species in the clinical mycology laboratory: where are we and where should we go from here?, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:877–884, 2009.

A minireview focusing on the molecular strategies available for evaluation of medically important fungi of the genera Aspergillus *and* Fusarium *and the order* Mucorales.

Chandler FW, Watts JC: *Pathologic diagnosis of fungal infections*, Chicago, 1987, ASCP Press.

This atlas provides a practical foundation for the pathologic diagnosis of diseases caused by fungi, actinomycetes, and algae.

Cornely OA, Cuenca-Estrella M, Meis JF, et al: European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases (ESCMID) Fungal Infection Study Group (EFISG) and European Confederation of Medical Mycology (ECMM) 2013 joint guidelines on diagnosis and management of rare and emerging fungal diseases, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 20(Suppl 3):1–4, 2014.

This guideline serves as a recommendation for the diagnosis and management of rare and emerging fungi, to include mucormycosis, hyalohyphomycosis, phaeohyphomycosis, and emerging yeasts.

Griffin AT, Hanson KE: Update on fungal diagnostics, *Curr Infect Dis Rep* 16:415–425, 2014.

This review highlights recent laboratory developments in the diagnosis of invasive candidiasis, cryptococcosis, opportunistic molds, and endemic fungal infections.

Guarner J, Brandt ME: Histopathologic diagnosis of fungal infections in the 21st century, *Clin Microbio Rev* 24:247–280, 2011.

This report presents methods that can be used for diagnosis of specific yeasts and molds in formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissue submitted for histopathologic diagnosis, as well as a series of scenarios that should help to guide the diagnosis and treatment of patients with mycoses.

Hibbett DS, Binder M, Bischoff JF, et al: A higher-level phylogenetic classification of the fungi, *Mycol Res* 111:509–547, 2007.

This article provides a comprehensive phylogenetic classification of the fungal kingdom with reference to the recent molecular phylogenetic analyses used to derive this proposed classification.

Perfect JR: Fungal diagnosis: how do we do it and can we do better?, *Cur Med Res Opin* 29(Suppl 4):3–11, 2013.

This article provides better understanding of the strengths and weaknesses of currently available diagnostic tools and further devises linked strategies to best implement them either alone or in combination to improve early and accurate diagnosis of invasive fungal infections and improve their successful management.

Naggie S, Perfect JR: Molds: hyalohyphomycosis, phaeohyphomycosis, and zygomycosis, *Clin Chest Med* 30:337–353, 2009.

This review focuses on emerging fungal pathogens with an emphasis on microbiology, pathogenesis, clinical presentations, diagnosis, treatment, and outcomes.

Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ: Epidemiology of invasive candidiasis: a persistent public health problem, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 20:133–163, 2007.

This review provides an overview of the incidence, risk factors involved, and treatment strategies used for management of invasive candidiasis.

Queiroz-Telles F, Esterre P, Perez-Blanco M, et al: Chromoblastomycosis: an overview of clinical manifestations, diagnosis and treatment, *Med Mycol* 47:3–15, 2009.

This article provides an overview of the diagnosis and management of the disease chromoblastomycosis.

Revankar SG, Sutton DA: Melanized fungi in human disease, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 24:884–928, 2010.

This review seeks to provide a broad, yet in-depth overview of melanized fungi in human disease as it currently stands, recognizing that the field will continue to evolve and expand with our increasing knowledge of and experience with these clinically important fungi.

REFERENCES

Adenis AA, Aznar C, Couppie P: Histoplasmosis in HIV-infected patients: a review of new developments and remaining gaps, *Curr Trop Med Rep* 28:119–128, 2014.

Agarwal R, Chakrabarti A, Shah A, et al: Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis: review of literature and proposal of new diagnostic and classification criteria, *Clin Exp Allergy* 43:850–873, 2013.

Ajello L, Georgt LK, Steigvigel RT, et al: A case of phaeohyphomycosis caused by a new species of *Phialophora*, *Mycologia* 66:490–498, 1974.

Al-Ahmad M, Manno M, Ng V, et al: Symptoms after mould exposure including *Stachybotyrs chartarum*, and comparison with darkroom disease, *Allergy* 65:245–255, 2010.

Alexander BD, Byrne TC, Smith KL, et al: Comparative evaluation of Etest and Sensititre YeastOne panels against the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute M27-A2 reference broth microdilution method for testing *Candida* susceptibility to seven antifungal agents, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:698–706, 2007.

Alsuwaida K: Primary cutaneous mucormycosis complicating the use of adhesive tape to secure the endotracheal tube, *Can J Anaesth* 49:880–882, 2002.

Altun S, Almuhayawi M, Ullberg M, et al: Clinical evaluation of the FilmArray blood culture identification panel in identification of bacteria and yeasts from positive blood culture bottles, *J Clin Microbiol* 51: 4130–4136, 2013.

Alvarez E, Sutton DA, Cano J, et al: Spectrum of zygomycete species identified in clinically significant specimens in the United States, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:1650–1656, 2009.

Ampel NM: Coccidioidomycosis: a review of recent advances, *Clin Chest Med* 30:241–251, 2009.

Andrews MD, Burns M: Common tinea infections in children, *Am Fam Physician* 77:1415–1420, 2008.

Aquino VR, Goldani LZ, Pasqualotto AC: Update on the contribution of galactomannan for the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis, *Mycopathologia* 163:191–202, 2007.

Arendrup MC, Boekhout T, Akova M, et al: ESCMID and ECMM joint clinical guidelines for the diagnosis and management of rare invasive yeast infections, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 20(Suppl 3):76–98, 2014.

Arikan S: Current status of antifungal susceptibility testing methods, *Med Mycol* 45(7):569–587, 2007.

Ates A, Ozcan K, Ilkit M: Diagnostic value of morphological, physiological and biochemical tests in distinguishing *Trichophyton rubrum* from *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* complex, *Med Mycol* 46:811–822, 2008.

Babady NE, Bestrom JE, Jespersen DJ, et al: Evaluation of three commercial latex agglutination kits and a commercial enzyme immunoassay for the detection of cryptococcal antigen, *Med Mycol* 47:336–338, 2009.

Babady NE, Buckwalter SP, Hall L, et al: Detection of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* and *Histoplasma capsulatum* from culture isolates and clinical specimens by use of real-time PCR, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:3204–3208, 2011.

Baddley JW, Marr KA, Andes DR, et al: Patterns of susceptibility of *Aspergillus* isolates recovered from patients enrolled in the Transplant-Associated Infection Surveillance Network, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:3271–3275, 2009.

Balajee SA: *Aspergillus terreus* complex, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1):S42–S46, 2009a.

Balajee SA, Kano R, Baddley JW, et al: Molecular identification of *Aspergillus* species collected for the Transplant-Associated Infection Surveillance Network, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:3138–3141, 2009b.

Balajee SA, Sigler L, Brandt ME: DNA and the classical way: identification of medically important molds in the 21st century, *Med Mycol* 45:475–490, 2007.

Bariola JR, Vyas KS: Pulmonary blastomycosis, *Semin Respir Crit Care Med* 32:746–753, 2011.

Bariteau JT, Waryasz GR, McDonnell M, et al: Fungal osteomyelitis and septic arthritis, *J Amer Acad Orthop Surg* 22:390–401, 2014.

Barros MB, de Almeida Paes R, Schubach AO: *Sporothrix schenckii* and sporotrichosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 24:633–654, 2011.

Barry SM, Johnson MA: *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia: a review of current issues in diagnosis and management, *HIV Med* 2:123–132, 2001.

Ben-Ami R, Lewis RE, Kontoyiannis DP: Invasive mould infections in the setting of hematopoietic cell transplantation: current trends and new challenges, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 22:376–384, 2009.

Benedict K, Park BJ: Invasive fungal infections after natural disasters, *Emerg Infect Dis* 20:349–355, 2014.

Benedict K, Roy M, Chiller T, et al: Epidemiologic and ecologic features of blastomycosis: a review, *Curr Fungal Infect Rep* 6:327–335, 2012.

Bernal S, Martin Mazuelos E, Chavez M, et al: Evaluation of the new API *Candida* system for identification of the most clinically important yeast species, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 32:217–221, 1998.

Bialek R, Zelck UE: PCR-based diagnosis of mucormycosis in tissue samples, *Pathologe* 34:511–518, 2013.

Bocca AL, Amaral AC, Teixeira MM, et al: Paracoccidioidomycosis: eco-epidemiology, taxonomy and clinical and therapeutic issues, *Future Microbiol* 8: 1177–1191, 2013.

Bonacini M: Medical management of benign esophageal disease in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection, *Diag Liver Dis* 33:294–300, 2001.

Borman AM, Linton CJ, Miles SJ, et al: Molecular identification of pathogenic fungi, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 61(Suppl 1):i7–i12, 2008.

Bradsher RW Jr: The endemic mimic: blastomycosis an illness often misdiagnosed, *Trans Amer Clin Climatol Assoc* 125:188–202, 2014.

Bukhary ZA: Candiduria: a review of clinical significance and management, *Saudi J Kidney Dis Transpl* 19:350–360, 2008.

Cafarchia C, Gasser RB, Figueredo LA, et al: Advances in the identification of *Malassezia*, *Mol Cell Probes* 25:1–7, 2011.

Canteros CE, Rodero L, Rivas MC, et al: A rapid urease test for presumptive identification of *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Mycopathologia* 136:21–23, 1996.

Cao C, Liang L, Wang W, et al: Common reservoirs for *Penicillium marneffei* infection in humans and rodents, China, *Emerg Infect Dis* 17:209–214, 2011.

Castanheira M, Woosley LN, Diekema DJ, et al: *Candida guilliermondii* and other species of *Candida* misidentified as *Candida famata*: assessment by Vitek 2, DNA sequencing analysis, and matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry in two global antifungal surveillance programs, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:117–124, 2013.

Castro C, Serrano MC, Flores B, et al: Comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne colorimetric antifungal panel with a modified NCCLS M38—A method to determine the activity of voriconazole against clinical isolates of *Aspergillus* spp, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:4358–4360, 2004.

Catherinot E, Lanternier F, Bougnoux ME, et al: *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia, *Infect Dis Clin North Amer* 24:107–138, 2010.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Blastomycosis acquired occupationally during prairie dog relocation—Colorado, 1998, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rpt* 48:98–100, 1999.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Coccidioidomycosis among cast and crew members at an outdoor television filming event—California, 2012, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rpt* 63:321–324, 2014a.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Epidemiologic notes and reports multistate outbreak of sporotrichosis in seedling handlers, 1988, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rpt* 37:652–653, 1988.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Fungal keratitis—multiple states, 2006, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 55:400–401, 2006.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Increase in reported coccidioidomycosis—United States, 1998-2011, *Morb Mortal Weekly Rpt* 62:217–221, 2013.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Notes from the field: *Coccidioides immitis* identified in soil outside of its known range—Washington, 2013, *Morb Mortal Weekly Rpt* 63:450, 2014.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Notes from the field: histoplasmosis outbreak among day camp attendees—Nebraska, June 2012, *Morb Mortal Weekly Rpt* 61:747–748, 2012.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Outbreak of acute respiratory febrile illness among college students—Acapulco, Mexico, March 2001, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rpt* 50:261, 2001.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Outbreak of histoplasmosis among industrial plant workers—Nebraska 2004, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 53:1020–1022, 2004.

Chai LY, Denning DW, Warn P: *Candida tropicalis* in human disease, *Crit Rev Microbiol* 36:282–298, 2010.

Chakrabarti A, Denning DW, Ferguson BJ, et al: Fungal rhinosinusitis: a categorization and definitional schema addressing current controversies, *Laryngoscope* 119:1809–1818, 2009.

Chalupova J, Raus M, Sedlarova M, et al: Identification of fungal microorganisms by MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry, *Biotech Adv* 32:230–241, 2014.

Chandrasekar P: Invasive mold infections: recent advances in management approaches, *Leuk Lymphoma* 50:703–715, 2009.

Chen SC, Blyth CC, Sorrell TC, et al: Pneumonia and lung infections due to emerging and unusual fungal pathogens, *Semin Respir Crit Care Med* 32:703–716, 2011.

Chen SCS, Meyer W, Sorrell TC: *Cryptococcus gattii* infections, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 27:980–1024, 2014.

Choi HS, Choi JY, Yoon JS, et al: Clinical characteristics and prognosis of orbital invasive aspergillosis, *Ophthal Plast Reconstr Surg* 24:454–459, 2008.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). Abbreviated identification of bacteria and yeast; Approved Guideline, 2nd edition (M35-A2). Wayne, Pa.; 2008a.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). Method for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility testing of filamentous fungi; Proposed Guideline (M51-P). Wayne, Pa.; 2009a.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). Method for antifungal disk diffusion susceptibility testing of yeasts: Approved Guideline, 2nd edition (M44-A2). Wayne, Pa.; 2009b.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). Principles and procedures for detection of fungi in clinical specimens—direct examination and culture; Approved Guideline (M54-A). Wayne, Pa.; 2012a.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of filamentous fungi; Approved Standard, 2nd edition (M38-A2). Wayne, Pa.; 2008b.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts: Fourth Informational Supplement (M27-S4)*, Wayne, Pa., 2012b, CLSI.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): *Reference method for broth dilution antifungal susceptibility testing of yeasts; Approved Standard, 3rd edition (M27-A3)*. Wayne, Pa.; 2008c.

Cockerill FRI, Torgerson CA, Reed GS, et al: Clinical comparison of Difco ESP, Wampole Isolator, and Becton Dickinson Septi-Chek aerobic blood culturing systems, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:20–24, 1996.

Colombo AL, Padovan ACB, Chaves GM: Current knowledge of *Trichosporon* spp. and trichsporonosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 24:682–699, 2011.

Cortez KJ, Roilides E, Quiroz-Telles F, et al: Infections caused by *Scedosporium* spp, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 21:157–197, 2008.

Cox RA, Magee DM: Coccidioidomycosis: host response and vaccine development, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 17:804–839, 2004.

Crist AE Jr, Johnson LM, Burke PJ: Evaluation of the microbial identification system for identification of clinically isolated yeasts, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:2408–2410, 1996.

Crum-Cianflone NF: Coccidioidomycosis in the U.S. Military: a review, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1111:112–121, 2007.

Cuenca-Estrella M, Gomez-Lopez A, Alastruey-Izquierdo A, et al: Comparison of the Vitek 2 antifungal susceptibility system with the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) and European Committee on Antifungal Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) broth microdilution reference methods and with the Sensititre YeastOne and Etest techniques for in vitro detection of antifungal resistance in yeast isolates, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:1782–1786, 2010.

Cushion MT: Pneumocystis. In Murray PR, Baron EJ, Jorgansen JH, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, vol 2, ed 8, Washington, D.C., 2003, ASM Press, pp 1712–1725.

Dagenais TR, Keller NP: Pathogenesis of *Aspergillus fumigatus* in invasive aspergillosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 22:447–465, 2009.

D'Avignon LC, Schofield CM, Hospenthal DR: *Pneumocystis* pneumonia, *Semin Respir Crit Care Med* 29(2): 132–140, 2008.

Del Bono V, Mikulska M, Viscoli C: Invasive aspergillosis: diagnosis, prophylaxis and treatment, *Curr Opin Hematol* 15:586–593, 2008.

Denning DW: Invasive aspergillosis, *Clin Infect Dis* 26:781–803, 1998.

Denning DW, Riniotis K, Dobrashian R, et al: Chronic cavitary and fibrosing pulmonary and pleural aspergillosis: case series, proposed nomenclature change, and review, *Clin Infect Dis* 37(Suppl):S265–S280, 2003.

Department of Health and Human Services (HHS): Richmond JY, McKinney RW, editors: *Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories*, ed 5, Washington, D.C., 2009, U.S. Government Printing Office, p 403.

Department of Health and Human Services (HHS): *Histoplasmosis: protecting workers at risk*, ed 2. Washington, D.C., 2004.

Department of Health and Human Services (HHS): *NIH guidelines for research involving recombinant or synthetic nucleic acid molecules*, Washington, D.C., 2013.

Desoubeaux G, Fanck-Martel C, Bailly E, et al: Prospective assessment of FilmArray technology for the rapid identification of yeast isolated from blood cultures, *J Microbiol Methods* 106:119–122, 2014.

Diekema DJ, Messer SA, Hollis RJ, et al: Evaluation of Etest and disk diffusion methods compared with broth microdilution antifungal susceptibility testing of clinical isolates of *Candida* spp. against posaconazole, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:1974–1977, 2007.

Duggal P, Wise SK: Chapter 8: Invasive fungal rhinosinusitis, *Am J Rhinol Allergy* 27(May–June):S28–S30, 2013.

Edman JC, Kovacs JA, Masur H, et al: Ribosomal RNA sequence shows *Pneumocystis carinii* to be a member of the fungi, *Nature* 334:519–522, 1988.

Egusa H, Soysa NS, Ellepola AN, et al: Oral candidosis in HIV-infected patients, *Curr HIV Res* 6:485–499, 2008.

Einsele H, Loeffler J: Contribution of new diagnostic approaches to antifungal treatment plans in high-risk haematology patients, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 14(Suppl 4):37–45, 2008.

El Naderi S, Rodriguez C, Devars Du Mayne M, et al: Invasive fungal rhinosinusitis in an apparently immunocompetent patient, *Ann Pathol* 33:410–413, 2013.

Ellepoia AN, Khan ZU: Rapid differentiation of *Candida dubliniensis* from *Candida albicans* by early D-xylose assimilation, *Med Pric Pract* 21:375–378, 2012.

Ells R, Kock JL, Pohl CH: *Candida albicans* or *Candida dubliniensis?*, *Mycoses* 54:1–16, 2011.

Espinel-Ingroff A, Stockman L, Roberts G, et al: Comparison of RapID yeast plus system with API 20C system for identification of common, new, and emerging yeast pathogens, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:883–886, 1998.

Etzel RA: Mycotoxins, *JAMA* 287:425–427, 2002.

Eyzaguirre E, Haque AK: Application of immunohistochemistry to infections, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 132:424–431, 2008.

Fanfair RN, Benedict K, Bos J, et al: Necrotizing cutaneous mucormycosis after a tornado in Joplin, Missouri, in 2011, *N Engl J Med* 367:2214–2225, 2012.

Fenn JP, Segal H, Barland B, et al: Comparison of updated Vitek yeast biochemical card and API 20C yeast identification systems, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:1184–1187, 1994.

Field LA, Adams BB: Tinea pedis in athletes, *Int J Dermatol* 47:485–492, 2008.

Fisher MC, Koenig G, White TJ, et al: Molecular and phenotypic description of *Coccidioides posadasii* sp. nov., previously recognized as the non-California population of *Coccidioides immitis*, *Mycologia* 94:73–84, 2002.

Florescu DF, Iwen PC, Hill LA, et al: Cerebral aspergillosis caused by *Aspergillus ustus* following orthotropic heart transplantation: case report and review of the literature, *Clin Transplant* 23:116–120, 2009.

Forrest GN: PNA FISH: present and future impact on patient management, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 7:231–236, 2007.

Foy PC, van Burik JA, Weisdorf DJ: Galactomannan antigen enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant* 13:440–443, 2007.

Freifeld AG, Iwen PC: Zygomycosis, *Sem Resp Care Med* 25:221–231, 2004.

Gaitanis G, Magiatis P, Hantschki M, et al: The *Malassezia* genus in skin and systemic diseases, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 25:106–141, 2012.

Garcia-Agudao L, Garcia-Martos P, Martos-Canadas J, et al: Evaluation of the Sensititre Yeast One microdilution method for susceptibility testing of *Candida* species to anidulafungin, caspofungin, and micafungin, *Rev Esp Quimioter* 25:256–260, 2012.

Garnica M, Nucci M, Queiroz-Telles F: Difficult mycoses of the skin: advances in the epidemiology and management of eumycetoma, phaeohyphomycosis and chromoblastomycosis, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 22:559–563, 2009.

Gayibova U, Dalyan CV, Agca H, et al: Comparison of Phoenix Yeast ID panel and API ID 32C commercial systems for the identification of *Candida* species isolated from clinical samples, *Mikrobiyol Bul* 48:438–448, 2014.

Gazzoni AF, Severo CB, Barra MB, et al: Atypical micromorphology and uncommon location of cryptococcosis: a histopathologic study using special histochemical techniques (one case report), *Mycopathologia* 167:197–202, 2009.

Geiser DM: Sexual structures in *Aspergillus*: morphology, importance and genomics, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1):S21–S26, 2009.

Geiser DM, Klich MA, Frisvad JC, et al: The current status of species recognition and identification in *Aspergillus*, *Stud Mycol* 59:1–10, 2007.

Georgi A, Schneemann M, Tintelnot K, et al: *Cryptococcus gattii* meningoencephalitis in an immunocompetent person 13 months after exposure, *Infection* 37:370–373, 2009.

Gilgado F, Cano J, Gene J, et al: Different virulence of the species of the *Pseudallescheria boydii* complex, *Med Mycol* 47:371–374, 2009.

Gomes MZ, Lewis RE, Kontoyiannis DP: Mucormycosis caused by unusual mucormycetes, non-*Rhizopus*, -*Mucor*, and -*Lichtheimia* species, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 24:411–445, 2011.

Gomez BL: Molecular diagnosis of endemic and invasive mycoses: advances and challenges, *Rev Iberroam Micol* 31:35–41, 2014.

Graser Y, Czaika V, Ohst T: Diagnostic PCR of dermatophytes: an overview, *J Dtsch Dermatol Ges* 10:721–726, 2012.

Grosjean P, Weber R: Fungus balls of the paranasal sinuses: a review, *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol* 264:461–470, 2007.

Guarro J: Fusariosis, a complex infection caused by a high diversity of fungal species refractory to treatment, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 32:1491–1500, 2013.

Guery BP, Arendrup MC, Auzinger G, et al: Management of invasive candidiasis and candidemia in adult non-neutropenic intensive care unit patients: Part I. Epidemiology and diagnosis, *Intensive Care Med* 35:55–62, 2009.

Gupta R, Mirdha BR, Guleria R, et al: Diagnostic significance of nested polymerase chain reaction for sensitive detection of *Pneumocystis jiroveci* in respiratory clinical specimens, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 64:381–388, 2009.

Hage CA, Davis TE, Egan L, et al: Diagnosis of pulmonary histoplasmosis and blastomycosis by detection of antigen in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid using an improved second-generation enzyme-linked immunoassay, *Respir Med* 101:43–47, 2007.

Hage CA, Wheat LJ: Diagnosis of pulmonary histoplasmosis using antigen detection in the bronchoalveolar lavage, *Expert Rev Respir Med* 4(4):427–429, 2010.

Hageage GJ, Harrington B: Use of calcofluor white in clinical mycology, *Lab Med* 15:109, 1984.

Haiduven D: Nosocomial aspergillosis and building construction, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1):S210–S216, 2009.

Hammoud ZT, Rose AS, Hage CA, et al: Surgical management of pulmonary and mediastinal sequelae of histoplasmosis: a challenging spectrum, *Ann Thorac Surg* 88:399–403, 2009.

Harris JR, Lockhart SR, Sondermeyer G, et al: *Cryptococcus gattii* infections in multiple states outside the US Pacific Northwest, *Emerg Infect Dis* 19:1620–1626, 2013.

Hata DJ, Hall L, Fothergill AW, et al: Multicenter evaluation of the new VITEK 2 advanced colorimetric yeast identification card, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:1087–1092, 2007.

Havilickova B, Czaika VA, Friedrich M: Epidemiological trends in skin mycoses worldwide, *Mycoses* 51 (Suppl 4):2–15, 2008.

Hawkins JL, Baddour LM: *Candida lusitaniae* infections in the era of fluconazole availability, *Clin Infect Dis* 36:14–18, 2003.

Hawksworth DL: A new dawn for the naming of fungi: impacts of decisions made in Melbourne in July 2011 on the future publication and regulation of fungal names, *IMA Fungus* 2:155–162, 2011.

Hay RJ, Morris-Jones R: Outbreaks of sporotrichosis, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 21:119–121, 2008.

Hector R, Rutherford GW: The public health need and present status of a vaccine for the prevention of coccidioidomycosis, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1111:259–268, 2007.

Hedayati MT, Pasqualotto AC, Warn PA, et al: *Aspergillus flavus*: human pathogen, allergen and mycotoxin producer, *Microbiology* 153(Pt 6):1677–1692, 2007.

Heller DS, Pitsos M, Skurnick J: Does the presence of vaginitis on a Pap smear correlate with clinical symptoms in the patient?, *J Reprod Med* 53:429–434, 2008.

Heng SC, Chen SC, Morrissey CO, et al: Clinical utility of Aspergillus galactomannan and PCR in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid for the diagnosis of invasive pulmonary aspergillosis in patients with haematological malignancies, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 79:322–327, 2014.

Henrich TJ, Marty FM, Milner DA Jr, et al: Disseminated *Geotrichum candidum* infection in a patient with relapsed acute myelogenous leukemia following allogeneic stem cell transplantation and review of the literature, *Transpl Infect Dis* 11:458–462, 2009.

Hibbett DS, Taylor JW: Fungal systematics: Is a new age of enlightenment at hand?, *Nature Rev* 11:129–133, 2013.

Hillesheim PB, Bahrami S: Cutaneous protothecosis, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 135:941–944, 2011.

Horn DL, Neofytos D, Anaissie EJ, et al: Epidemiology and outcomes of candidemia in 2019 patients: data from the prospective antifungal therapy alliance registry, *Clin Infect Dis* 48:1695–1703, 2009.

Howard SJ: Multi-resistant aspergillosis due to cryptic species, *Mycopathologia* 178:435–439, 2014.

Hughes WT: *Pneumocystis carinii* vs. *Pneumocystis jiroveci*: another misnomer (response to Stringer et al.), *Emerg Infect Dis* 9:276–277, 2003.

Hummel M, Spiess B, Roder J, et al: Detection of Aspergillus DNA by a nested PCR assay is able to improve the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis in paediatric patients, *J Med Microbiol* 58(Pt 10):1291–1297, 2009.

Husain S, Paterson DL, Studer SM, et al: *Aspergillus* galactomannan antigen in the bronchoalveolar lavage fluid for the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis in lung transplant recipients, *Transplantation* 83:1330–1336, 2007.

Hussein MR: Mucocutaneous Splendore-Hoeppli phenomenon, *J Cutan Pathol* 35:979–988, 2008.

Huston SM, Mody CH: Cryptococcosis: an emerging respiratory mycosis, *Clin Chest Med* 30:253–264, 2009.

Iwen PC, Hinrichs SH, Rupp ME: Utilization of the internal transcribed spacer regions as molecular targets to detect and identify human fungal pathogens, *Med Mycol* 40:87–109, 2002.

Iwen PC, Sigler L, Noel RK, et al: *Mucor circinelloides* was identified by molecular methods as a cause of primary cutaneous zygomycosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:636–640, 2007.

Iwen PC, Sigler L, Tarantolo S, et al: Pulmonary infection caused by *Gymnascella hyalinospora* in a patient with acute myelogenous leukemia, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:375–381, 2000.

Iwen PC, Thapa I, Bastola D: Review methods for the identification of zygomycetes with an emphasis on advances in molecular diagnostics, *Lab Med* 42:260–266, 2011.

Jain R, Singh K, Lamzabi I, et al: Blastomycosis of bone: a clinicopathologic study, *Amer J Clin Path* 142:609–616, 2014.

Jayatilake JA, Tilakaratne WM, Panagoda GJ: Candidal onychomycosis: a mini-review, *Mycopathologia* 168: 165–173, 2009.

Johnson EM: Issues in antifungal susceptibility testing, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 61(Suppl 1):i13–i18, 2008.

Johnson L, Gaab EM, Sanchez J, et al: Valley fever: danger lurking in a dust cloud, *Microbes Infect* 16:591–600, 2014.

Jossi M, Ambrosioni J, Macedo-Vinas M, et al: Invasive fusariosis with prolonged fungemia in a patient with acute lymphoblastic leukemia: case report and review of the literature, *Inter J Infect Dis* 14:e354–e356, 2010.

Kainer MA, Reagan DR, Ngyuen DB, et al: Fungal infections associated with contaminated methylprednisolone in Tennessee, *N Engl J Med* 367:2194–2203, 2012.

Karthaus M, Buchheidt D: Invasive aspergillosis: new insights into disease, diagnostic and treatment, *Curr Pharm Des* 19:3569–3594, 2013.

Kauffman CA: Histoplasmosis: a clinical and laboratory update, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 20:115–132, 2007.

Kauffman CA, Bustamante B, Chapman SW, et al: Clinical practice guidelines for the management of sporotrichosis: 2007 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 45:1255–1265, 2007.
Kauffman CA, Fisher JF, Sobel JD, et al: *Candida* urinary tract infections—diagnosis, *Clin Infect Dis* 52(Suppl 6): s452–s456, 2011.
Kennedy CC, Limper AH: Redefining the clinical spectrum of chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis: a retrospective case series of 46 patients, *Medicine (Baltimore)* 86:252–258, 2007.
Kim MM, Blair JE, Carey EJ, et al: Coccidioidal pneumonia, Phoenix, Arizona, USA, 2000-2004, *Emerg Infect Dis* 15:397–401, 2009.
Klein KR, Hall L, Deml SM, et al: Identification of *Cryptococcus gattii* by use of L-canavanine glycine bromothymol blue medium and DNA sequencing, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:3669–3672, 2009.
Klingspor L, Loeffler J: *Aspergillus* PCR formidable challenges and progress, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1):S241–S247, 2009.
Koepsell SA, Hinrichs SH, Iwen PC: Applying a real-time PCR assay for *Histoplasma capsulatum* to clinically relevant formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded human tissue, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:3395–3397, 2012.
Kojic EM, Darouiche RO: *Candida* infections of medical devices, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 17:255–267, 2004.
Kothavade RJ, Kura MM, Valand AG, et al: *Candida tropicalis*: its prevalence, pathogenicity and increasing resistance to fluconazole, *J Med Microbiol* 59:873–880, 2010.
Kovacs JA, Gill VG, Meshnick S, et al: New insights into transmission, diagnosis and drug treatment of *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia, *JAMA* 286:2450–2460, 2001.
Krishnan S, Manavathu EK, Chandrasekar PH: *Aspergillus flavus*: an emerging non-*fumigatus Aspergillus* species of significance, *Mycoses* 52:206–222, 2009.
Krzysciak PM, Pindycka-Piaszczynska M, Piaszczynski M: Chromoblastomycosis, *Postepy Dermatol Alergo* 31:310–321, 2014.
Kwon-Chung KJ: Taxonomy of fungi causing mucormycosis and entomophthoramycosis (zygomycosis) and nomenclature of the disease: molecular mycologic perspectives, *Clin Infect Dis* 54(S1):S8–S15, 2012.
Lackner M, Lass-Florl C: Up-date on diagnostic strategies of invasive aspergillosis, *Cur Pharm Design* 19:3595–3614, 2013.
Lai CC, Tan CK, Huang YT, et al: Current challenges in the management of invasive fungal infections, *J Infect Chemother* 14:77–85, 2008.
Lass-Florl C: In vitro susceptibility testing in *Aspergillus* species: an update, *Future Microbiol* 5:789–799, 2010.
Lass-Florl C, Alastruey-Izquierdo A, Cuenca-Estrella M, et al: In vitro activities of various antifungal drugs against *Aspergillus terreus*: Global assessment using the methodology of the European committee on antimicrobial susceptibility testing, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 53:794–795, 2009.
Lass-Florl C, Mayr A: Human protothecosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 20:230–242, 2007.
Lau A, Chen S, Sleiman S, et al: Current status and future perspectives on molecular and serological methods in diagnostic mycology, *Future Microbiol* 4:1185–1222, 2009.
Leeflang MM, Debets-Ossenkopp YJ, Visser CE, et al: Galactomannan detection for invasive aspergillosis in immunocompromised patients, *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* (4):CD007394, 2008.
Lewis RE: Overview of the changing epidemiology of candidemia, *Curr Med Res Opin* 25:1732–1740, 2009.
Lilic D: Unravelling fungal immunity through primary immune deficiencies, *Curr Opin Microbiol* 15:420–426, 2012.
Lima AD, Costa Fortes R, Carvalho Garbi Novaes MR, et al: Poisonous mushrooms: a review of the most common intoxications, *Nutr Hosp* 27:402–408, 2012.
Lionakis MS, Kontoyiannis DP: *Fusarium* infections in critically ill patients, *Pulmon Fungal Infect* 25:159–170, 2004.
Logotheti M, Kotsovili-Tseleni A, Arsenis G, et al: Multiplex PCR for the discrimination of *A. fumigatus*, *A. flavus*, *A. niger* and *A. terreus*, *J Microbiol Methods* 76:209–211, 2009.
Loreto ES, Scheid LA, Nogueira CW, et al: *Candida dubliniensis*: epidemiology and phenotypic methods for identification, *Mycopathologia* 169:431–443, 2010.
Loulergue P, Bastides F, Baudouin V, et al: Literature review and case histories of *Histoplasma capsulatum* var. *duboisii* infections in HIV-infected patients, *Emerg Infect Dis* 13:1647–1652, 2007.
Malo J, Luraschi-Monjagatta C, Wolk DM, et al: Update on the diagnosis of pulmonary coccidioidomycosis, *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 11:243–253, 2014.
Mantadakis E, Samonis G: Clinical presentation of zygomycosis, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 15(Suppl 5):15–20, 2009.
Marimon R, Gene J, Cano J, et al: Molecular phylogeny of *Sporothrix schenckii*, *J Clin Microbiol* 44:3251–3256, 2006.
Marques SA: Paracoccidioidomycosis, *Clin Dermatol* 30:610–615, 2012.
Marty FM, Koo S: Role of (1–>3)-beta-D-glucan in the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1):S233–S240, 2009.
Mason AR, Cortes GY, Cook J, et al: Cutaneous blastomycosis: a diagnostic challenge, *Int J Dermatol* 47:824–830, 2008.
McGinnis MR, Smith MB, Hinson E: Use of the *Coccidioides posadasii* chs5 strain for quality control in the ACCUPROBE culture identification test for *Coccidioides immitis*, *J Clin Microbiol* 44:4250–4251, 2006.
McKinnell JA, Pappas PG: Blastomycosis: new insights into diagnosis, prevention, and treatment, *Clin Chest Med* 30:227–239, 2009.
McTaggart LR, Lei E, Richardson SE, et al: Rapid identification of *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *Cryptococcus gattii* by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:3050–3053, 2011.
Mean M, Marchetti O, Calandra T: Bench-to-bedside review: *Candida* infections in the intensive care unit, *Crit Care* 12:204, 2008.
Mengoli C, Cruciani M, Barnes RA, et al: Use of PCR for diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis: systematic review and meta-analysis, *Lancet Infect Dis* 9:89–96, 2009.
Messer SA, Diekema DJ, Hollis RJ, et al: Evaluation of disk diffusion and Etest compared to broth microdilution for antifungal susceptibility testing of posaconazole against clinical isolates of filamentous fungi, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:1322–1324, 2007.
Miceli MH, Lee SA: Emerging moulds: epidemiological trends and antifungal resistance, *Mycoses* 54:e666–e678, 2011.
Mikulska M, Furfaro E, Del Bono V, et al: Piperacillin/tazobactam (Tazocin) seems to be no longer responsible for false-positive results of the galactomannan assay, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 67:1746–1748, 2012.
Morris A, Norris KA: Colonization by *Pneumocystis jirovecii* and its role in disease, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 25:297–317, 2012.
Morrissey CO, Chen SC, Sorrell TC, et al: Galactomannan and PCR versus culture and histology for directing use of antifungal treatment for invasive aspergillosis in high-risk hematology patients: a randomized controlled trial, *Lancet Infect Dis* 13:519–528, 2013.
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. Preventing occupational respiratory disease from exposures caused by dampness in office buildings, schools, and other nonindustrial buildings. EPA 402-K-01-001 ed: Department of Health and Human Services, Publication No. 2013-102; 2012.
Nedel WL, Pasqualotto AC: Treatment of infections by cryptic *Aspergillus* species, *Mycopathologia* 178:441–445, 2014.
Negroni R: Cryptococcosis, *Clin Dermatol* 30:599–609, 2012.
Neppelenbroek KH, Seo RS, Urban VM, et al: Identification of *Candida* species in the clinical laboratory: a review of conventional, commercial, and molecular techniques, *Oral Dis* 20:329–344, 2014.
Nguyen C, Barker BM, Hoover S, et al: Recent advances in our understanding of the environmental, epidemiological, immunological, and clinical dimensions of coccidioidomycosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 26:505–525, 2013.
Nucci M, Anaissie E: *Fusarium* infections in immunocompromised patients, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 20:695–704, 2007.
O'Donnell K, Sarver BA, Brandt M, et al: Phylogenetic diversity and microsphere array-based genotyping of human pathogenic Fusaria, including isolates from the multistate contact lens-associated U.S. keratitis outbreaks of 2005 and 2006, *J Clin Microbiol* 45:2235–2248, 2007.
O'Donnell K, Sutton DA, Rinaldi MG, et al: Novel multilocus sequence typing scheme reveals high genetic diversity of human pathogenic members of the *Fusarium incarnatum-F. equiseti* and *F. chlamydosporum* species complexes within the United States, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:3851–3861, 2009.
Oliveira MM, Almeida-Paes R, Gutierrez-Galhardo MC, et al: Molecular identification of *Sporothrix schenckii* complex, *Rev Iberoam Micol* 31:2–6, 2014.
Onishi A, Sugiyama D, Kogata Y, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of serum 1,3-beta-D-glucan for *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia, invasive candidiasis, and invasive aspergillosis: systematic review and meta-analysis, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:7–15, 2012.
Ozcan K, Ilkit M, Ates A, et al: Performance of chromogenic *Candida* Agar and CHROMagar *Candida* in recovery and presumptive identification of monofungal and polyfungal vaginal isolates, *Med Mycol* 48:29–33, 2010.
Pagano L, Offidani M, Fianchi L, et al: Mucormycosis in hematologic patients, *Haematologica* 89:207–214, 2004.
Pagella F, Matti E, De Bernardi F, et al: Paranasal sinus fungus ball: diagnosis and management, *Mycoses* 50:451–456, 2007.
Pammi M, Holland L, Butler G, et al: *Candida parapsilosis* is a significant neonatal pathogen: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 32:e206–e216, 2013.
Pappas PG, Dismukes WE: Blastomycosis: Gilchrist's disease revisited, *Curr Clin Top Infect Dis* 22:61–77, 2002.
Pappas PG, Kauffman CA, Andes D, et al: Clinical practice guidelines for the management of candidiasis: 2009 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 48:503–535, 2009.
Parish JM, Blair JE: Coccidioidomycosis, *Mayo Clin Proc* 83:343–348, quiz 8-9, 2008.
Parize P, Chandesris MO, Lanternier F, et al: Antifungal therapy of *Aspergillus* invasive otitis externa: efficacy of voriconazole and review, *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 53:1048–1053, 2009.
Pasqualotto AC: Differences in pathogenicity and clinical syndromes due to *Aspergillus fumigatus* and *Aspergillus flavus*, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1):S261–S270, 2009.
Patel AJ: Diagnosis of blastomycosis in surgical pathology and cytopathology: correlation with microbiologic culture, *Amer J Surg Pathol* 34:256–261, 2010.
Pedrosa AF, Lisboa C, Goncalves-Rodreques A: *Malassezia* infections: a medical conundrum, *J Amer Acad Dermatol* 71:170–176, 2014.
Pelletier R, Alarie I, Lagace R, et al: Emergence of disseminated candidiasis caused by *Candida krusei* during treatment with caspofungin: case report and review of literature, *Med Mycol* 43:559–564, 2005.
Perfect JR, Dismukes WE, Dromer F, et al: Clinical practice guidelines for the management of cryptococcal disease: 2010 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 50:291–322, 2010.
Perry JD, Freydiere AM: The application of chromogenic media in clinical microbiology, *J Appl Microbiol* 103:2046–2055, 2007.
Peterson SW: Phylogenetic analysis of *Aspergillus* species using DNA sequences from four loci, *Mycologia* 100:205–226, 2008.
Petrikkos G, Skiada A, Lortholary O, et al: Epidemiology and clinical manifestations of mucormycosis, *Clin Infect Dis* 54(Suppl 1):S23–S34, 2012.
Pfaller MA, Andes DR, Diekema D, et al: Epidemiology and outcomes of invasive candidiasis due to non-*albicans* species of *Candida* in 2,496 patients: data from the Prospective Antifungal Therapy (PATH) Registry 2004-2008, *PLoS ONE* 9:e101510, 2014.
Pfaller MA, Castanheira M, Lockhart SR, et al: Candida glabrata: multidrug resistance and increased virulence in a major opportunistic fungal pathogen, *Curr Fungal Infect Rep* 6:154–164, 2012a.
Pfaller MA, Chaturvedi V, Diekema KJ, et al: Comparison of the Sensititre YeastOne colorimetric antifungal panel with CLSI microdilution for antifungal susceptibility testing of the echinocandins against *Candida* spp, using new clinical breakpoints and epidemiological cutoff values, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 73:365–368, 2012b.
Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Boyken L, et al: Evaluation of the Etest and disk diffusion methods for determining susceptibilities of 235 bloodstream isolates of *Candida glabrata* to fluconazole and voriconazole, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:1875–1880, 2003b.
Pfaller MA, Diekema DJ, Gibbs DL, et al: Results from the ARTEMIS DISK Global Antifungal

Surveillance Study, 1997 to 2007: 10.5-year analysis of susceptibilities of noncandidal yeast species to fluconazole and voriconazole determined by CLSI standardized disk diffusion testing, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:117–123, 2009.
Pfaller MA, Neofytos D, Diekema D, et al: Epidemiology and outcomes of candidemia in 3648 patients: data from the Prospective Antifungal Therapy (PATH Alliance) registry, 2004-2008, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 74:323–331, 2012c.
Pickering JW, Sant HW, Bowles CA, et al: Evaluation of a (1->3)-beta-D-glucan assay for diagnosis of invasive fungal infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:5957–5962, 2005.
Pincus DH, Orenga S, Chatellier S: Yeast identification—past, present, and future methods, *Med Mycol* 45:97–121, 2007.
Pneumocystis Working Group: Nomenclature of Pneumocystis, *Eukaryot Microbiol* 41:1215–1225, 1994.
Posteraro B, Vella A, Cogliati M, et al: Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry–based method for discrimination between molecular types of *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *Cryptococcus gattii*, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:2472–2476, 2012.
Preuner S, Lion T: Towards molecular diagnostics of invasive fungal infections, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 9:397–401, 2009.
Psevdos G Jr, Tanowitz HB: Oral histoplasmosis, *AIDS Read* 18:217–218, 2008.
Ramani R, Gromadzki S, Pincus DH, et al: Efficacy of API 20C and ID 32C systems for identification of common and rare clinical yeast isolates, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:3396–3398, 1998.
Raufman JP: Declining gastrointestinal opportunistic infections in HIV-infected persons: a triumph of science and a challenge for our HAARTs and minds, *Am J Gastroenterol* 100:1455–1458, 2005.
Raut SH, Varaiya A: Differentiation of *Candida dubliniensis* on CHROM agar and Pal's agar, *Indian J Med Microbiol* 27:55–58, 2009.
Reimer LG, Wilson ML, Weinstein MP: Update on detection of bacteremia and fungemia, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 10:444–465, 1997.
Reis RS, Almeida-Paes R, Muniz M, et al: Molecular characterisation of *Sporothrix schenckii* isolates from humans and cats involved in the sporotrichosis epidemic in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 104:769–774, 2009.
Reiss E, Obayashi T, Orle K, et al: Non-culture based diagnostic tests for mycotic infections, *Med Mycol* 38(Suppl 1):147–159, 2000.
Revenga F, Paricio JF, Merino FJ, et al: Primary cutaneous cryptococcosis in an immunocompetent host: case report and review of the literature, *Dermatology* 204:145–149, 2002.
Ribes JA, Vanover-Sams CL, Baker DJ: Zygomycetes in human disease, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 13:236–301, 2000.
Rich P, Elewski B, Scher RK, et al: Diagnosis, clinical implications, and complications of onychomycosis, *Semin Cutan Med Surg* 32(2 Suppl 1):S5–S8, 2013.
Riddle DL, Giger O, Miller L, et al: Clinical comparison of the Baxter MicroScan Yeast Identification Panel and the Vitek Yeast Biochemical Card, *Am J Clin Pathol* 101:438–442, 1994.
Riscili BP, Wood KL: Noninvasive pulmonary *Aspergillus* infections, *Clin Chest Med* 30:315–335, vii, 2009.
Ritter JM, Muehlenbachs A, Blau DM, et al: *Exserohilum* infections associated with contaminated steroid injections: a clinicopathologic review of 40 cases, *Am J Pathol* 183:881–892, 2013.
Robberts FJ, Liebowitz LD, Chalkley LJ: Polymerase chain reaction detection of *Pneumocystis jiroveci*: evaluation of 9 assays, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 58:385–392, 2007.
Rober-Gangneux F, Belaz S, Revest M, et al: Diagnosis of *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia in immunocompromised patients by real-time PCR: a 4-year prospective study, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:3370–3376, 2014.
Robert R, Pihet M: Conventional methods for the diagnosis of dermatophytosis, *Mycopathologia* 166:295–306, 2008.
Robey AB, O'Brien EK, Richardson BE, et al: The changing face of paranasal sinus fungus balls, *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol* 118:500–505, 2009.
Roden MM, Zaoutis TE, Buchanan WL, et al: Epidemiology and outcome of zygomycosis: a review of 929 reported cases, *Clin Infect Dis* 41:634–653, 2005.
Rodriguez-Tudela JL, Alcazar-Fuoli L, Cuesta I, et al: Clinical relevance of resistance to antifungals, *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 32(Suppl 2):S111–S113, 2008.
Rosevinge FS, Dzajic E, Knudsen E, et al: Performance of matrix-assisted laser desorption-time of flight mass spectrometry for identification of clinical yeast isolates, *Mycoses* 56:229–235, 2013.
Saccente M, Woods GL: Clinical and laboratory update on blastomycosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 23:367–381, 2010.
Samson RA, Varga J: What is a species in Aspergillus?, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1):S13–S20, 2009.
Samson RA, Varga J, Witiak SM, et al: The species concept in *Aspergillus*: recommendations of an international panel, *Stud Mycol* 59:71–73, 2007.
Sanders E: Cutaneous sporotrichosis. Beer, bricks, and bumps, *Arch Intern Med* 127:482–483, 1971.
Sangoi AR, Rogers WM, Longacre TA, et al: Challenges and pitfalls of morphologic identification of fungal infections in histologic and cytologic specimens: a ten-year retrospective review at a single institution, *Anatomic Pathol* 131:364–375, 2009.
Saubolle MA: Laboratory aspects in the diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1111:301–314, 2007.
Schoch CL, Seifert KA, Huhndorf S, et al: Nuclear ribosomal internal transcribed spacer (ITS) region as a universal DNA barcode marker for fungi, *Proc Nati Acad Sci U S A* 109:6241–6246, 2012.
Schubert MS: Allergic fungal sinusitis: pathophysiology, diagnosis and management, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1): S324–S330, 2009.
Seebacher C, Bouchara JP, Mignon B: Updates on the epidemiology of dermatophyte infections, *Mycopathologia* 166:335–352, 2008.
Seok JY, Lee Y, Lee H, et al: Human cutaneous protothecosis: report of a case and literature review, *Korean J Pathol* 47:575–578, 2013.
Seyedmousavi S, Guillot J, De Hoog GS: Phaeohyphomycosis: emerging opportunistic diseases in animals, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 26:19–35, 2013.
Seyedmousavi S, Netea MG, Mouton JW, et al: Black yeasts and their filamentous relatives: principles of pathogenesis and host defense, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 27:527–542, 2014.
Shirley RM, Baddley JW: Cryptococcal lung disease, *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 15:254–260, 2009.
Shoham S: Emerging fungal infections in solid organ transplant recipients, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 27:305–316, 2013.
Silva S, Negri M, Henriques M, et al: *Candida glabrata*, *Candida parapsilosis*, and *Candida tropicalis:* biology, epidemiology, pathogenicity and antifungal resistance, *FEMS Microbiol Rev* 36:288–305, 2012.
Singh A, Verma R, Murari A, et al: Oral candidiasis: an overview, *J Oral Maxillofac Pathol* 18(Suppl 1):s81–s85, 2014.
Singh K: Laboratory-acquired infections, *Clin Infect Dis* 49:142–147, 2009.
Sloan DJ: Cryptococcal meningitis: epidemiology and therapeutic options, *Clin Epidemiol* 6:169–182, 2014.
Soong D, Einarson A: Vaginal yeast infections during pregnancy, *Can Fam Physician* 55:255–256, 2009.
Spiliopoulou A, Anastassiou ED, Christofidou M: *Rhodotorula* fungemia of an intensive care unit patient and review of published cases, *Mycopathologia* 174:301–309, 2012.
Stebeiska K: Fungal hallucinogens psilocin, ibotenic acid, and muscimol: analytical methods and biologic activities, *Ther Drug Monit* 35:420–442, 2013.
Straus DC: Molds, mycotoxins, and sick building syndrome, *Toxicol Ind Health* 25:617–635, 2009.
Stringer JR, Beard CB, Miller RF, et al: A new name *(Pneumocystis jiroveci)* for *Pneumocystis* from humans, *Emerg Infect Dis* 8:891–896, 2002.
Sutton DA: Diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis by culture: safety considerations, traditional methods, and susceptibility testing, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1111:315–325, 2007.
Taxy JB: Blastomycosis: contributions of morphology to diagnosis: a surgical pathology, cytopathology, and autopsy pathology study, *Am J Surg Pathol* 31:615–623, 2007.
Taxy JB, El-Zayaty S, Langerman A: Acute fungal sinusitis: natural history and the role of frozen section, *Amer J Clin Path* 132:86–93, 2009.
Terr AI: Sick Building Syndrome: Is mould the cause?, *Med Mycol* 47(Suppl 1):S217–S222, 2009.
Thia LP, Balfour Lynn IM: Diagnosing allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis in children with cystic fibrosis, *Paediatr Respir Rev* 10:37–42, 2009.
Thomas LM, Rand HK, Miller JL, et al: Primary cutaneous aspergillosis in a patient with a solid organ transplant: case report and review of the literature, *Cutis* 81:127–130, 2008.
Thompson GR 3rd, Patterson TF: Pulmonary aspergillosis, *Semin Respir Crit Care Med* 29:103–110, 2008.
Todd JR, King JW, Oberle A, et al: Protothecosis: report of a case with 20-year follow-up and review of previously published cases, *Med Mycol* 50:673–689, 2012.
Tragiannidis A, Bisping G, Koehler G, et al: Minireview: *Malassezia* infections in immunocompromised patients, *Mycoses* 53:187–195, 2010.
Travis J, Hart E, Helm J, et al: Retrospective review of *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia over two decades, *Int J STD AIDS* 20:200–201, 2009.
Tuite NL, Lacey K: Overview of invasive fungal infections, *Methods Mol Biol* 968:1–23, 2013.
Ustianowski AP, Sieu TP, Day JN: *Penicillium marneffei* infection in HIV, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 21:31–36, 2008.
van de Sande WW, Maghoub el S, Fahal AH, et al: The mycetoma knowledge gap: identification of research priorities, *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 27:e2667, 2014.
Veligandla SR, Hinrichs SH, Rupp ME, et al: Delayed diagnosis of osseous blastomycosis in two patients following environmental exposure in nonendemic areas, *Am J Clin Pathol* 118:536–541, 2002.
Vella A, De Carlois E, Vaccaro L, et al: Rapid antifungal susceptibility testing by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization–time of flight mass spectrometry analysis, *J Clin Microbiol* 51:2964–2969, 2013.
Veltman JA, Bristow CC, Klausner JD: Meningitis in HIV-positive patients in sub-Saharan Africa: a review, *J Inter AIDS Soc* 17:19184, 2014.
Vennewald I, Schonlebe J, Klemm E: Mycological and histological investigations in humans with middle ear infections, *Mycoses* 46:12–18, 2003.
Vermout S, Tabart J, Baldo A, et al: Pathogenesis of dermatophytosis, *Mycopathologia* 166:267–275, 2008.
Vetter E, Torgerson C, Feuker A, et al: Comparison of the BACTEC MYCO/F Lytic bottle to the isolator tube, BACTEC Plus Aerobic F/bottle, and BACTEC Anaerobic Lytic/10 bottle and comparison of the BACTEC Plus Aerobic F/bottle to the Isolator tube for recovery of bacteria, mycobacteria, and fungi from blood, *J Clin Microbiol* 39:4380–4386, 2001.
Vikram HR, Blair JE: Coccidioidomycosis in transplant recipients: a primer for clinicians in nonendemic areas, *Curr Opin Organ Transplant* 14:606–612, 2009.
Walsh TJ, Groll A, Hiemenz J, et al: Infections due to emerging and uncommon medically important fungal pathogens, *Clin Microbiol Infect* 10(Suppl 1):48–66, 2004b.
Wazir JF, Ansari NA: *Pneumocystis carinii* infection. Update and review, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 128:1023–1027, 2004.
Weitzman I, Salkin IF, Rosenthal SA: Evaluation of *Trichophyton* agars for identification of *Trichophyton soudanense*, *J Clin Microbiol* 18:203–205, 1983.
Weitzman I, Whittier S, McKitrich JC, et al: Zygospores: the last word in identification of rare or atypical zygomycetes isolated from clinical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:781–783, 1995.
Wengenack NL, Binnicker MJ: Fungal molecular diagnostics, *Clin Chest Med* 30:391–408, viii, 2009.
Westerberg DP, Voyack MJ: Onychomycosis: current trends in diagnosis and treatment, *Am Fam Physician* 88:762–770, 2013.
Wheat LJ: Antigen detection, serology, and molecular diagnosis of invasive mycoses in the immunocompromised host, *Transpl Infect Dis* 8:128–139, 2006.
Wheat LJ: Approach to the diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis and candidiasis, *Clin Chest Med* 30:367–377, viii, 2009a.
Wheat LJ: Approach to the diagnosis of the endemic mycoses, *Clin Chest Med* 30:379–389, viii, 2009b.
Wheat LJ, Freifeld AG, Kleiman MB, et al: Clinical practice guidelines for the management of patients with histoplasmosis: 2007 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 45:807–825, 2007.
Wheat LJ, Walsh TJ: Diagnosis of invasive aspergillosis by galactomannan antigenemia detection using an enzyme immunoassay, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 27:245–251, 2008.
Wilson DA, Joyce MJ, Hall LS, et al: Multicenter evaluation of a *Candida albicans* peptide nucleic acid

fluorescent in situ hybridization probe for characterization of yeast isolates from blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:2909–2912, 2005.
Woods GL, Schnadig VJ: Histopathology of fungal infections. In Anaissie E, McGinnis MR, Pfaller MA, editors: *Clinical mycology*, Philadelphia, 2003, Churchill Livingstone, pp 80–95.
Zarnowski R, Miyazaki M, Dobrzyn A, et al: Typing of *Histoplasma capsulatum* strains by fatty acid profile analysis, *J Med Microbiol* 56:788–797, 2007.
Zhang SX: Enhancing molecular approaches for diagnosis of fungal infections, *Future Microbiol* 8:1599–1611, 2013.
Zilberberg MD, Shorr AF: Fungal infections in the ICU, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 23:625–642, 2009.
Zisova LG: *Malassezia* species and seborrheic dermatitis, *Folia Med (Plovdiv)* 51:23–33, 2009.
Zmeili OS, Soubani AO: Pulmonary aspergillosis: a clinical update, *QJM* 100:317–334, 2007.

CHAPTER 63

MEDICAL PARASITOLOGY

Thomas Richard Fritsche, Bobbi S. Pritt

PARASITE CLASSIFICATION AND TAXONOMY, 1232

LABORATORY METHODS, 1233
Examination of Blood, 1233
Examination of Fecal Specimens, 1234
Examination of Urogenital and Other Specimens (Sputa, Aspirates, Biopsies), 1237
Parasite Culture Techniques, 1237
Immunodiagnostic Methods, 1237
Molecular Diagnostic Methods, 1239
Quality Assurance, Quality Improvement, and Safety, 1240

BLOOD AND TISSUE PROTOZOA, 1240
Plasmodium Species (Malaria), 1240
Babesia Species (Babesiosis), 1248
Hemoflagellates, 1248
Toxoplasma gondii, 1251
Opportunistic Free-Living Amebae, 1251

INTESTINAL AND UROGENITAL PROTOZOA AND MICROSPORIDIA, 1252
Amebae and *Blastocystis hominis*, 1253
Flagellates, 1257
Ciliates, 1260
Coccidia, 1260
Microsporidia, 1262

INTESTINAL HELMINTHS, 1262
Nematodes, 1262
Cestodes, 1266
Trematodes, 1268

TISSUE HELMINTHS, 1271
Nematodes, 1271
Cestodes, 1274
Trematodes, 1275

MEDICALLY IMPORTANT ARTHROPODS, 1276
Biological Characteristics, 1276
Mechanisms of Injury, 1276
Laboratory Approaches to Arthropod Identification, 1277
Insects, 1277
Arachnids, 1279
Classes of Lesser Medical Importance, 1281

PARASITIC INFECTIONS AND THE IMMUNOCOMPROMISED HOST, 1281

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1282

KEY POINTS

- Accurate diagnosis of parasitic infection usually depends on macroscopic or microscopic examination of specimens that have been appropriately collected and preserved. Thick and thin blood smears along with concentration methods are useful for detecting and characterizing organisms found in the blood. Fecal specimens may be fresh (if they can be examined rapidly) or may be placed into fixatives such as formalin and polyvinyl alcohol or single-vial commercial fixatives.
- Immunodiagnostic methods for parasites include detection of both antibodies and antigens. Established enzyme immunoassays include antigen tests for *Plasmodium* spp. in blood or serum; *Giardia lamblia, Cryptosporidium* spp., and *Entamoeba histolytica* in feces; and *Trichomonas vaginalis* in vaginal swabs. Direct fluorescent assays are also useful for identifying organisms in primary specimens. Serologic testing is an important adjunct in recognizing parasitic infections that involve deep tissues, organs, and body spaces not readily amenable to routine morphologic testing methods.
- Molecular amplification methods offer high levels of sensitivity and specificity for both diagnosis and monitoring of parasitic disease. Most are laboratory-developed assays, although commercial options are available for some parasites, including multiplex panels that detect multiple gastrointestinal pathogens.
- The diagnosis of malaria should be considered in the differential diagnosis of unexplained fever with the history of travel in endemic geographic regions. Because of its high associated mortality, testing should be done on a STAT basis. Thick and thin blood smears are complementary for detecting and identifying infecting *Plasmodium* spp. based on varieties of developmental stages, presence of malarial pigment, and stippling seen in infected erythrocytes.
- Other protozoal infections include babesiosis and trypanosomiasis found in blood, leishmaniasis (causing cutaneous, mucocutaneous, and visceral forms of disease), and toxoplasmosis, often affecting the central nervous system following congenital infection and in patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).
- Intestinal amebae are ingested as cysts, resulting in infection of the colon and passage of both cysts and trophozoites in the feces. Most amebae are non-pathogens. *Entamoeba histolytica* is a proven pathogen that may cause amebic dysentery, amebic colitis, and liver abscess. Diagnosis is made by microscopic examination of stool, antigen or nucleic acid testing of stool, and by serologic testing for antibodies in serum.
- Flagellates include *Giardia lamblia,* which causes diarrhea from ingestion of contaminated food or water and is diagnosed by the finding of trophozoites, cysts, and/or antigens in feces. *Trichomonas vaginalis* is acquired by sexual transmission and is detected in vaginal wet mounts by its characteristic motion or by more sensitive nucleic acid amplification techniques.
- Coccidia (*Cystoisospora*, *Cryptosporidium*, and *Cyclospora*) and microsporidia (specialized parasitic fungi) can cause diarrhea in both immunocompetent and immunocompromised individuals. Symptoms are usually more protracted in immunocompromised individuals such as those with AIDS. Special stains are recommended for sensitive diagnosis; antigen and molecular assays for *Cryptosporidium* are also available.
- Helminths include nematodes (roundworms), cestodes (tapeworms), and trematodes (flukes). These organisms reside as adults in the gastrointestinal tract or in other locations (liver, lung, blood). Knowledge of their life cycles and zoogeography with intermediate hosts is important for understanding the clinical presentation and preventing transmission. Eggs, larvae, or adult forms (from 1 mm to >10 m in length, depending upon the species) can be recovered from stool, urine, or sputum.
- Tissue helminths include filaria (larvae found in blood and also on skin biopsy), *Trichinella* spp. (in muscle), *Strongyloides stercoralis* (disseminated infection), and *Echinococcus* spp. (hydatidosis; large cystic lesions in the liver or lungs), among others.
- Arthropods cause disease through direct tissue invasion, envenomation, vesication, blood loss, transmission of infectious agents, hypersensitivity reactions, and psychological manifestations. Characteristics necessary for identification can be maintained by preserving the organisms in alcohol (ticks, mites, fleas, lice, maggots); by drying them (winged forms) after killing them with fumes of organic solvents; or by killing them with hot water (maggots) and subsequently storing them in alcohol. Maggots can also be placed directly in alcohol.

The study of parasitology has gained renewed importance in a world made smaller by the rapid movement of people, especially travelers to and migrants from areas endemic for parasitic disease, and by the appearance of emerging and reemerging pathogens in individuals immunocompromised for a variety of reasons. Parasitic diseases of humans and domestic animals place a tremendous burden on limited health care resources and adversely affect economic and societal development in many countries around the world. Although the types of organisms classified as parasites constitute a large group, those that infect humans are limited in number and are composed mostly of protozoa, helminths, and arthropods (Table 63-1).

Clinicians in the United States and elsewhere are increasingly being confronted with unusual diagnostic problems associated with parasitic infection. Likewise, laboratorians have been challenged with the development of new technologies to accurately and rapidly diagnose such parasites as *Cryptosporidium* species, *Cyclospora cayetanensis*, *Toxoplasma gondii*, as well as microsporidia (highly specialized parasitic fungi) in both immunocompetent and immunocompromised hosts. The worldwide resurgence of malaria and other parasitic diseases has required laboratorians to strengthen their expertise in identification of the usual blood, intestinal, and tissue protozoa and helminths.

Once these diseases have been diagnosed, additional problems may be encountered in their management owing to lack of effective therapies and the emergence of resistance to traditional therapy. Many parasites require arthropod vectors for their transmission, and the irregular application of vector control efforts has, in some instances, resulted in the emergence of insecticide resistance. Malaria had made a tremendous resurgence in many areas because of relaxed control efforts and the emergence of drug-resistant parasites and insecticide-resistant mosquitoes. Schistosomiasis has spread into many new areas because of increased irrigation associated with population growth and the need to expand agricultural production. Although worldwide control efforts have led to significant declines in prevalence and associated mortality for some diseases, these efforts must be expanded in order to protect the world's population from many deadly parasitic infections.

Because of the chronic nature and the generally long prepatent periods (i.e., time between infection and appearance of diagnostic stages) of many parasitic diseases, physicians may not consider them in a differential diagnosis unless the patient voluntarily offers information, or specific inquiry is made about travel history or other possible exposure. Malaria is one parasitic disease that often presents as an acute, febrile illness and may have lethal consequences unless it is considered in the differential diagnosis and a history of travel to an endemic area is elicited.

Various estimates have been put forth for the prevalence and related mortality figures of parasitic infections on a worldwide basis (Table 63-2). The actual incidence of parasitic infections in the United States is unknown, however, because most infections are not reported to public health officials. *Giardia lamblia*, other intestinal protozoa, and intestinal roundworms are reported most frequently (7.2%, 10%, and 3.5%, respectively) by state laboratories, but other parasites, including *Cryptosporidium*, *Cyclospora*, and microsporidia, probably occur more frequently and are underdiagnosed (Kappus et al, 1994; Garcia, 2007).

This chapter provides an overview of the general approach used by laboratorians to recover and identify parasitic protozoa and helminths from human specimens. Discussion of individual species of parasites focuses on essential clinical and biological information necessary to assist in diagnosis and management. For more extensive coverage of specific parasites, a number of excellent texts are available (Beaver et al, 1984; Warren & Mahmoud, 1990; Lane et al, 1993; Guerrant et al, 1999; Garcia, 2007, 2009; John & Petri, 2006; Strickland, 2000; Cook, 2002; Mullen & Durden, 2002; among others). Some of these references are older and may be less accessible; however, they discuss classic disease presentations and historic perspectives in a way that is sometimes lacking in newer literature. Parasitology atlases are also important resources for any laboratorian performing parasitology examinations and should be readily available (Spencer & Monroe, 1982; Brooke & Melvin, 1984; Ash & Orihel, 1987, 2007; Sun, 1988; Peters & Gilles, 1989; Garcia, 2010; Murray et al, 2007). Several texts specifically address the pathologic aspects of parasitic infections (Marcial-Rojas, 1971; Binford & Connor, 1976; Sun, 1982; Von Lichtenberg, 1991; Woods et al, 1993; Orihel & Ash, 1995; Connor et al, 1997; Gutierrez, 2000). Parasitic infections that are problematic in immunocompromised patients also have been reviewed (Walzer & Genta, 1989).

PARASITE CLASSIFICATION AND TAXONOMY

Parasites are traditionally placed into one of two fundamental "kingdoms," the *Animalia* (worms) and *Protozoa*. Parasites within each kingdom are then

TABLE 63-1
Summary of the More Commonly Found Human Parasites and Their Primary Sites of Infection

Kingdom Protozoa

Phylum Amoebozoa (amebae)
*Entamoeba histolytica (I)**
E. dispar (I)
E. hartmanni (I)
E. coli (I)
E. polecki (I)
Iodamoeba bütschlii (I)
Endolimax nana (I)
Naegleria fowleri (T, C)‡*
Acanthamoeba spp. *(T, C, E)**
*Balamuthia mandrillaris (T, C)**
Sappinia diploidea (T, C)

Phylum Metamonada (flagellates)
*Giardia lamblia (I)**
*Dientamoeba fragilis (I)**
Chilomastix mesnili (I)
Retortamonas intestinalis (I)
Enteromonas hominis (I)
Pentatrichomonas hominis (I)
*Trichomonas vaginalis (G, V)**
T. tenax (M)

Phylum Euglenozoa (hemoflagellates)
Leishmania tropica (T)
L. major (T)
L. aethiopica (T)
*L. mexicana (T)**
L. braziliensis (T)
L. donovani (T)
Trypanosoma brucei gambiense (B, C)
T.b. rhodesiense (B, C)
*T. cruzi (B, T)**
T. rangeli (B)

Phylum Ciliophora (ciliates)
*Balantidium coli (I)**

Phylum Apicomplexa (apicomplexans)
Class Coccidea (sporozoans)
Babesia spp. *(B)**
Plasmodium falciparum (B)
P. malariae (B)
P. ovale (B)
P. vivax (B)
P. knowlesi (B)
*Cryptosporidium parvum (I)**
C. hominis (I)
*Cyclospora cayetanensis (I)**
*Cystoisospora belli (I)**
Sarcocystis spp. *(I, T)*
*Toxoplasma gondii (T)**

Phylum Chromista
Blastocystis hominis (I)

Kingdom Animalia

Phylum Platyhelminthes (flatworms)
Class Cestoidea (Cestodes: tapeworms)
Diphyllobothrium spp. *(I)**
*Dipylidium caninum (I)**
*Echinococcus granulosus (H)**
*E. multilocularis (H)**
*Hymenolepis nana (I)**
*H. diminuta (I)**
*Taenia saginata (I)**
*T. solium (I, T)**

Class Trematoda (Trematodes: flukes)
Clonorchis sinensis (H)
*Fasciola hepatica (H)**
Fasciolopsis buski (I)
Heterophyes (I)
Metagonimus yokagawai (I)
*Nanophyetus salmincola (I)**
Opisthorchis viverrini (H)
Paragonimus spp. *(L)**
Schistosoma haematobium (B)
S. japonicum (B)
S. mekongi (B)
S. mansoni (B)

Phylum Nemathelminthes (Nematodes: roundworms)
Class Adenophorea (Aphasmidia)
*Trichinella spiralis (I, T)**
*Trichuris trichiura (I)**
Capillaria philippinensis (I)

Class Secernentia (Phasmidia)
*Enterobius vermicularis (I)**
*Ascaris lumbricoides (I)**
Ancylostoma duodenale (I)
*Necator americanus (I)**
Strongyloides stercoralis (I)
Trichostrongylus spp. *(I)**
Anisakis spp. *(I)**
Wuchereria bancrofti (B, T)
Brugia malayi (B, T)
Loa (B, T)
Onchocerca volvulus (T)
Mansonella perstans (B, T)
M. ozzardi (B, T)
M. streptocerca (T)
Dracunculus medinensis (T)
Angiostrongylus cantonensis (T)
A. costaricensis (T)
Gnathostoma spinigerum (T)

Phylum Acanthocephala (thorny- or spiny-headed worms)
Moniliformis (I)
Macracanthorhynchus hirudinaceus (I)

Kingdom Fungi†

Phylum Microspora (microsporidia, at least 8 genera)
Encephalitozoon spp. *(E, H, T)**
*E. intestinalis (I, T)**
*Enterocytozoon bieneusi (I)**

Adapted from Cox FEG. Taxonomy and classification of human parasitic protozoa and helminths. In Jorgenson JH, Pfaller MA, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*. ed 11. Washington, DC, 2015, ASM Press.

B, Blood; *C,* spinal fluid; *E,* eye; *G,* genitourinary; *H,* liver; *I,* intestine; *L,* lung; *M,* mouth; *N,* nasopharynx; *T,* tissue; *V,* vagina.

*Pathogenic parasite that occurs naturally in the United States.

‡*Naegleria fowleri* has been more recently grouped with the flagellates (Phylum Percolozoa) due to the presence of a flagellated form in nature. Only the ameba form is found in humans.

†Microsporidia were previously classified as parasites but are now known to be highly specialized fungi.

TABLE 63-2
Estimated Prevalence of Parasitic Infections Worldwide

Disease	Estimated Population Involved	Estimated Annual Number of Deaths
Protozoan		
Amebiasis	Up to 1% of world population; 34-50 million symptomatic cases/year	40,000-110,000
African trypanosomiasis	20,000 currently infected	9000
American trypanosomiasis	7-8 million currently infected	12,500
Giardiasis	2.5 million cases/year	
Leishmaniasis	1.3 million cases/year	20,000-30,000
Malaria	124-283 million cases/year	367,000-755,000
Helminthic		
Ascariasis	1 billion	20,000
Cestodiases	65 million	
Clonorchiasis/ opisthorchiasis	13.5 million	
Dracunculiasis	115 cases/year	
Fasciolopsiasis	2.4 million	
Lymphatic filariasis	120 million	
Hookworm	740 million	
Onchocerciasis	26 million	
Paragonimiasis	20 million	
Schistosomiasis	>207 million	500,000-1 million
Strongyloidiasis	30-100 million	
Trichostrongyliasis	5.5 million	
Trichuriasis	800 million	

Adapted from John DT, Petri WA: *Markell and Voge's medical parasitology*. ed 9. Philadelphia, 2006, Saunders; updated with data from the World Health Organization and USAID where available.

classified within hierarchical levels (i.e., Phylum, Class, Order, Family, and so on) based primarily on morphologic features and phenology (life cycle events and their relation to environmental factors). Unfortunately, the conventional classification scheme is somewhat subjective and does not necessarily reflect phylogenetic relatedness between organisms within each grouping. Recent advances in biochemical and molecular methods, including whole-genome sequencing, have led to a revision of the classification using a system based on hierarchical ranks (e.g., Super-group, First Rank, Second Rank) that reflect phylogenetic relatedness (Adl et al, 2012). Many of the familiar grouping names like *Apicomplexa*, *Entamoebidae*, and *Trypanosomatidae* have been retained for ease of communication, but they are no longer linked to level descriptors such as *Order*, *Class*, and so on. Unfortunately, this new classification is complex and used primarily in the research setting and by protozoologists studying free-living microorganisms. Therefore, an updated version of the traditional schemata is presented in this chapter (Cox, 2015).

LABORATORY METHODS

Numerous methods have been described for the recovery and identification of parasites in clinical specimens, some of which are useful for detection of a variety of organisms, whereas others detect only a particular species. It is preferable for the laboratory to offer a limited number of procedures that can be competently performed rather than a larger variety of infrequently performed tests for which competency cannot be reliably maintained. Analyses of blood and fecal specimens account for the largest share of clinician requests for parasitologic evaluation. A variety of additional specimens are submitted to the laboratory less frequently, including urogenital specimens, sputum, aspirates, and biopsy material. As newer information becomes available on certain so-called *emerging parasites*, the laboratory may need to develop and use additional, highly specific test methods or to find competent referral laboratories where such tests are performed.

The types of specimens collected for laboratory evaluation depend on the species and stage of the parasite suspected. Knowledge of the life cycle of the parasite aids in determining the type, number, and frequency of specimens required for diagnosis. Immunologic and molecular methods for the diagnosis of parasitic diseases also are useful in many instances, and may be the only methods available in certain circumstances. Complete descriptions of general and esoteric laboratory procedures for the recovery and identification of parasites referred to here may be found in a variety of sources to which the reader is referred (Beaver et al, 1984; Ash & Orihel, 1987; Balows et al, 1988; Price, 1994; Garcia, 2003, 2007, 2009, 2010; Murray et al, 2007).

Familiarity with calibration and use of the ocular micrometer is necessary for any laboratory performing parasitologic examination (Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute [CLSI], 2005). Measurement of the size of protozoal trophozoites and cysts and of helminth eggs and larvae is often required to make an accurate identification. Pathogenic and nonpathogenic amebae (specifically *Entamoeba histolytica* and *Entamoeba hartmanni*) can be differentiated with assurance only by taking careful size measurements. Similarly, eggs of *Diphyllobothrium* spp., *Paragonimus westermani*, and *Fasciola/Fasciolopsis* may be readily differentiated on the basis of accurate measurements (Smith, 1979; CLSI, 2005).

EXAMINATION OF BLOOD

Parasites that may be detected in blood specimens include the agents of malaria (*Plasmodium* spp.), babesiosis (*Babesia* spp.), trypanosomiasis (*Trypanosoma* spp.), leishmaniasis (*Leishmania* spp.), and filariasis (*Wuchereria bancrofti*, *Brugia malayi*, *Loa loa*, and *Mansonella* spp.). The most important techniques to be performed in the clinical laboratory to assist in the diagnosis of blood parasites include preparation, staining, and examination of thick and thin blood films. Other techniques used less frequently include the buffy coat smear and various concentration techniques reserved for recovery of microfilariae (National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards [NCCLS], 2000).

Thick and Thin Blood Films

Examination of permanently stained blood films is required to identify most blood parasites. Thin films are prepared in the same manner as for hematologic differential evaluation; blood is spread over the slide in a thin layer, yielding intact, nonoverlapping cellular elements. Integrity of the blood cell membranes is important for determining the intracellular or extracellular nature of the infection and the size of the infected erythrocyte. In the thick film, blood is concentrated in a small area that is many cell layers deep. During staining, erythrocytes are dehemoglobinized and only leukocyte nuclei, platelets, and parasites (if present) are visible. The thick film is preferred for diagnosis because it contains 16 to 30 times more blood per microscopic field than does the thin film, thus increasing the chances of detecting light parasitemia and decreasing the time needed for reliable examination. The amount of blood examined in a thick film in 5 minutes using the 100× oil immersion objective would require at least 30 minutes when examined in a thin film. Although thick films increase the likelihood of detecting an infection, species identifications are usually performed by examination of thin films because morphology is often more definitive, especially for malarial parasites. For routine examination, both thick and thin films should be prepared.

Preparation of Slides

Blood for examination may be obtained by fingerstick, earlobe puncture, or venipuncture. Fingerstick blood should flow freely to prevent dilution with tissue fluid, and it should not be contaminated with the alcohol disinfectant, which should be allowed to dry first. If obtained by venipuncture, the first drop of blood (anticoagulant-free) from the needle is used to prepare the films at the bedside. Use of anticoagulants is discouraged when malaria is suspected because they may cause distortion of the parasites and interfere with staining. In practice, however, blood usually is submitted to the laboratory in an anticoagulant, which may be the only practical method to ensure that high-quality smears can be prepared. Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA)-anticoagulated blood is preferred in such cases and should be transported to the laboratory within the hour to prevent deterioration of organism morphology. Anticoagulants do not interfere with the staining of microfilariae.

Both thin and thick films should be prepared on clean, grease-free slides. Thick films are prepared by placing 1 to 2 small drops of blood onto a slide and spreading them into an area the size of a dime (1.5 cm) with the edge of a second slide. The blood film is then allowed to dry flat at room temperature. Drying time may be decreased by placing the slides in a laminar flow hood. A proper thick film should be thin enough that newspaper print may be faintly readable through it. If it is too thick, the

film may peel from the slide. Adherence can be improved by gently pushing (grinding) down with the corner of the second slide while spreading the droplet, creating minute scratches on the carrier slide that provide additional surface area for the blood film (Norgan et al, 2013). This method does not affect the microscopic morphology and allows the film to be stained as soon as it is dry (within 30 to 60 minutes). Heating the slides to decrease drying time is discouraged since excess heat may fix erythrocytes and prevent dehemoglobinization.

Staining

Blood begins to lose its affinity for stain in about 3 days, and older thick films do not dehemoglobinize well. Best staining results are achieved when using Giemsa stain because host cell and parasite chromatin stains vividly but the hemoglobin in erythrocytes is only a pale red, and this is the only stain that allows visualization of erythrocyte inclusions (e.g. Schüffner's stippling) that occurs with infection by certain malarial parasites. Wright's stain may be used for thin films, but it stains parasites less well than Giemsa and does not allow for visualization of erythrocyte inclusions. Because Wright's stain incorporates alcohol as its fixative, thick films must be lysed in water before staining.

The Giemsa staining procedure requires somewhat more attention to preparation of reagents and staining protocol than does the Wright staining procedure, which is often automated. Generally, fresh Giemsa stain must be made each day of use by diluting stock solution into phosphate-buffered water. To achieve appropriate staining reactions, including the appearance of Schüffner's stippling and Maurer's clefts, buffered water must be maintained at pH 7.0 to 7.2. Each new lot of stock Giemsa stain must be checked to determine optimal staining time and dilution because some variation is seen from lot to lot (NCCLS, 2000).

Examination of Smears

Both thick and thin smears are examined in their entirety under the low-power (10×) objective to detect microfilariae, which rarely occur in large numbers. In particular, the feathered edge of thin smears should be examined, as microfilariae are often carried there during preparation of the smear. Examination using a 50× oil immersion objective may subsequently be used to screen blood films for protozoa, although thorough examination using the 100× oil immersion objective still is necessary to detect the smallest parasites such as *Plasmodium* and *Babesia* species. The optimal location for examining the thin film is the region of the feathered edge where there is minimal overlap of cells and the erythrocytes maintain their central pallor. A common mistake is to examine regions of the thin film where the blood is too thick or too thin and the parasite morphology is distorted. An experienced microscopist should examine at least 100 oil immersion fields (requiring about 5 minutes) on the thick blood film and 200 fields (requiring at least 15 minutes) on the thin film using the 100× objective before issuing a negative report (Ash & Orihel, 1987).

Concentration Techniques

A variety of special techniques have been described for the concentration of blood parasites, specifically leishmanias, trypanosomes, and microfilariae, details of which may be found elsewhere (Beaver et al, 1984; Ash & Orihel, 1987; Garcia, 1999, 2001, 2010; NCCLS, 2000).

Preparation of buffy coat smears, which most clinical laboratories can perform with existing resources, is helpful in the detection of *L. donovani*, trypanosomes, and microfilariae. Following centrifugation of an anticoagulated blood sample, the layer of cells between plasma and packed erythrocytes is drawn off and is used to prepare blood films for staining or for preparation of a wet mount to detect motile organisms (Ash & Orihel, 1987; Strickland, 2000).

For detection of microfilariae, Knott's concentration or membrane filtration is helpful, particularly when the density of microfilariae in peripheral blood is very low. With the Knott's concentration technique, anticoagulated blood is lysed with 2% formalin and centrifuged to concentrate the microfilariae in the sediment, which then may be examined as a wet preparation or stained with Giemsa or hematoxylin stain. In the membrane filtration procedure, blood is lysed and passed through a 5-µm membrane filter, which is subsequently stained with hematoxylin to reveal any microfilariae (Ash & Orihel, 1987; NCCLS, 2000).

Use of the fluorochrome acridine orange in a microhematocrit centrifuge format (QBC blood parasite detection method; QBC Diagnostics, Philipsburg, Pa.) allows detection of blood parasites and appears to be more sensitive than traditional thick and thin smears. Laboratories that encounter malaria infrequently may experience difficulty in interpreting results by this method, however, and are encouraged to retain expertise in performance of traditional blood film techniques (NCCLS, 2000).

EXAMINATION OF FECAL SPECIMENS

The presence of intestinal parasites is primarily identified through the direct examination of stool using wet mounts, concentration techniques, permanently stained smears, and, less frequently, culture. Newer immunoassay methods using species-specific antibody reagents to detect antigens of *G. lamblia*, *Cryptosporidium* spp., and *E. histolytica* have become popular. Stages of helminths commonly recovered include eggs and larvae, although intact worms or portions thereof may occasionally be seen. Intestinal protozoan infections are diagnosed by detection of trophozoites, cysts, or oocysts. Routine methods for the identification of ova and parasites (O&P examination) should include procedures that permit recovery of both protozoa and helminths, with use of special procedures limited to specific requests. At a minimum, laboratories performing parasitologic examination should be capable of performing a concentration procedure and a permanent stain method. Many protozoan infections will be missed unless permanent stains are examined (Garcia et al, 1979; Garcia & Shimizu, 1997, 2003, 2010; Price, 1994; CLSI, 2005).

Specimen Collection, Handling, and Preservation

Recovery and subsequent identification of parasites in fecal specimens requires proper collection and handling. Old, poorly preserved, or contaminated specimens are of little value. Specimens should not be collected for 1 week after the patient has ingested any materials that leave a crystalline residue, such as nonabsorbable antidiarrheal compounds, antacids, bismuth, barium, or antimalarial agents. Oily laxatives such as mineral oil may also interfere with examination. Use of antibiotics or contrast media may decrease the numbers of organisms, especially protozoa, in the intestinal tract for several weeks (Ash & Orihel, 1987; Garcia, 2007).

Specimens may be submitted to the laboratory fresh or in appropriate preservatives. All fresh specimens should be examined within 1 hour of passage, and liquid specimens should be examined within 30 minutes or placed immediately in preservatives to maintain the best yield. This method ensures that fragile protozoal trophozoites are not inadvertently destroyed. Specimens that cannot be processed immediately should be left at room temperature or refrigerated and should not be placed in an incubator because this only speeds disintegration of parasites.

Specimens may be passed directly into clean, dry containers, or onto a specially designed wax or plastic collection sheet that is placed over the toilet bowl. Diarrheic specimens may also be collected in clean bedpans. Containers should have tight-fitting lids and should be placed in plastic bags before transport to the laboratory. Inadvertent introduction of urine or toilet water with the specimen may readily destroy protozoal trophozoites and should be avoided. Also, contamination with water or soil may accidentally introduce free-living organisms that may prove difficult to differentiate from parasitic ones.

Kits consisting of vials of preservatives appropriate for performing direct examinations, concentration procedures, and preparation of stained smears are available from a number of commercial sources at low cost. Aliquots of freshly passed stool should be immediately placed into these vials and mixed thoroughly. These kits are especially helpful for those patients who are unable to bring in a fresh sample in timely fashion, or for those who will be collecting several specimens over the course of several days. With the two-vial technique, one portion of specimen is fixed in three parts of 5% to 10% buffered formalin and another portion in three parts of polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) fixative. Other available preservation systems include merthiolate-iodine-formalin (MIF) and sodium acetate–formalin (SAF) (Table 63-3). SAF has an advantage in that it can be used for permanent stains as well as for direct mounts and concentration procedures, and it does not contain mercury, which is present in Schaudinn's and PVA fixatives. In addition to being poisonous, mercury presents disposal problems in an increasing number of states. However, the quality of permanent stains when SAF is used is not as good as when Schaudinn's or PVA fixative is used. Zinc sulfate–based PVA and other newer commercial products such as single-vial multipurpose fixatives are gaining popularity, and their use may be indicated when mercury chloride–based compounds cannot be used (Garcia et al, 1993; Garcia & Shimizu, 1997, 2007, 2010; CLSI, 2005).

Examination of three specimens collected every other day is considered the minimum necessary to perform an adequate O&P evaluation (Garcia, 2003; CLSI, 2005). This procedure ensures an optimum interval for recovery of those parasites known to shed diagnostic forms intermittently. However, for certain parasites such as *G. lamblia* and *Strongyloides stercoralis*, up to 7 O&P examinations must be performed for optimal detections. Additional sensitivity may be achieved in detecting these parasites, as well as *E. histolytica*, using antigen detection methods, concentration techniques

TABLE 63-3
Commonly Used Stool Fixatives and Examination Techniques*

Fixative	EXAMINATION TECHNIQUE		
	Direct Wet Mount	Concentration Procedure	Permanent Stained Smear
None (fresh stool)	Yes	Yes	Yes
10% formalin	Yes	Yes	No
Schaudinn's fluid	No	No	Yes
Polyvinyl alcohol (PVA)	No	No**	Yes
Modified PVA†	No	No**	Yes
Merthiolate-iodine-formalin (MIF)	Yes	Yes	No‡
Sodium acetate–formalin (SAF)	Yes	Yes	Yes

*Many commercially-available single-vial fixatives are now available (e.g. TOTAL FIX, PROTOFIX, ECOFIX) and can be used for both the concentration procedure and permanent stained smear.
**Although concentration techniques using PVA have been described, they are not widely used because of problems with recovery of some organisms.
†Copper sulfate or zinc sulfate replaces the mercuric chloride.
‡Smears prepared from MIF-preserved specimens may be stained with polychrome IV stain.

(discussed later), or purgation. The laboratory must be notified prior to initiation of purgation, to have staff available for processing. Specimens should be collected in separate containers and submitted to the laboratory within minutes of collection. Saline purgatives such as sodium sulfate or buffered phosphosoda are recommended.

Macroscopic Examination

Fecal specimens should be examined grossly for consistency (formed, soft, loose, or watery) and for the presence of mucus, blood, larval or adult worms, and proglottids. Protozoan trophozoites are more likely to be found in watery or loose specimens, whereas cysts predominate in formed or soft specimens. Helminths or their eggs may be found in any type of fecal specimen. Most parasites are uniformly distributed in the stool as a result of the mixing action of the cecum, although some eggs (especially schistosomes) may enter the fecal stream in the lower colon and rectum and be unevenly distributed, as may pinworm and *Taenia* spp. eggs. Protozoal trophozoites may be more numerous in the last portion of stool evacuated and should be specifically sought in mucus (Garcia, 2003).

Microscopic Examination

Specimens may be examined microscopically by direct wet mounts of fresh or preserved material, wet mounts of concentrates, or permanent stains. Each procedure has specific advantages and limitations. Direct saline wet mounts of fresh feces allow detection and observation of motile protozoan trophozoites and helminth larvae. Direct mounts of preserved feces may allow detection of parasites that do not concentrate well. Concentration procedures increase the examiner's ability to detect protozoan cysts and helminth eggs and larvae but are unsatisfactory for detecting protozoan trophozoites. Permanent stains are useful for detection and morphologic examination of protozoan trophozoites and cysts.

The circumstances under which each procedure is performed vary depending on the type of specimen (formed, soft, loose, or watery) submitted. Generally, a fresh soft, loose, or watery specimen should have all three procedures performed (Garcia, 2003, 2007). Watery specimens may be concentrated by simple centrifugation rather than by flotation or formalin–ethyl acetate concentration. The direct wet mount may be omitted if the specimen is submitted in preservatives (CLSI, 2005). At a minimum, formed specimens should be examined by a concentration procedure, although improved yield has been demonstrated when a permanent stain is added to the workup (Garcia et al, 1979; Garcia, 2007).

Direct Wet Mount

The direct wet mount is one of the most easily performed parasitologic tests, although proper interpretation requires careful examination and experience in using the microscope to full advantage. The test is most useful when fresh specimens, especially liquid stools or duodenal aspirates, are examined for motile trophozoites or helminth larvae. A small amount of stool is mixed with a drop of 0.85% saline and covered with a coverslip. The preparation should be dense enough that newspaper print can just be read through it.

Examination of the entire coverslip is performed systematically under the low-power (10×) objective, with the microscope diaphragm closed down to increase contrast. Suspicious objects and those that are refractile, such as protozoal cysts, should then be examined with the high-power (40×) objective. Detection of motility of slow-moving amebae requires that an object be examined for at least 15 seconds. In the absence of suspicious objects, up to a third of the preparation should be examined using the 40× objective. The oil immersion objective usually is not used unless the coverslip has been sealed with nail polish or vaspar (a 50:50 mixture of petroleum jelly and paraffin).

A second preparation may be made in identical fashion, except that a drop of a 1:5 dilution of Lugol's iodine or an equivalent preparation is added in place of the saline. Use of straight Lugol's or Gram's iodine causes clumping of material and is not recommended. Iodine is helpful in enhancing the visibility of nuclear structures in protozoal cysts and in detecting glycogen inclusions. Limitations, however, include loss of trophozoite motility and cyst refractility, as well as difficulty in recognizing chromatoid bodies.

Concentration Techniques

Concentration procedures, which may be performed on fresh or preserved specimens (see Table 63-3), are more sensitive than direct wet mount examination for detection of protozoan cysts and helminth eggs and larvae because they decrease the amount of background material in the preparations and, in most circumstances, actually concentrate the organisms. Although a variety of methods and modifications have been described, some are useful only for specific parasites (Melvin, 1982; Ash & Orihel, 1987; CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007). For routine use, a method should be selected that allows reliable detection of both protozoan cysts and helminth eggs. Concentration methods are based on sedimentation or flotation principles. In sedimentation, the heavier parasites settle to the bottom as a result of gravity or centrifugation. In flotation, the lighter parasite cysts and eggs rise to the surface of a solution of high specific gravity. The two most widely used concentration procedures in the United States are the zinc sulfate centrifugal flotation technique of Faust and the formalin ether sedimentation method of Ritchie (or their modifications). In practice, ethyl acetate has replaced ether in the latter method because of the dangers associated with handling ether, and comparable results are achieved (Truant et al, 1981).

Formalin–ethyl acetate concentration is a biphasic sedimentation technique that is efficient in recovering most protozoan cysts and helminth eggs and larvae, including operculate eggs, and is moderately effective for schistosome eggs. Less distortion of protozoal cysts occurs with this technique than with zinc sulfate flotation. Eggs of *Hymenolepis nana* may be missed, however, and concentrations of *G. lamblia* and *Iodamoeba bütschlii* cysts may not be very good. For proper concentration of coccidian oocysts and spores of microsporidia, attention must be paid to the recommended speed and time of centrifugation (CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2010). Despite these problems, the technique is used widely for both its simplicity and its suitability in most laboratory situations.

With the zinc sulfate flotation method, fresh stool is processed using zinc sulfate with a specific gravity of 1.18, and formalinized stool is processed with a solution of specific gravity of 1.20. Parasitic elements are recovered from the surface film of the solution following centrifugation. This method yields a cleaner preparation than is provided by formalin–ethyl acetate concentration, but it is unreliable for the recovery of nematode larvae, infertile eggs of *Ascaris*, and the eggs of most trematodes and large tapeworms. Problems with recovery also occur with stool specimens containing excessive amounts of fats. Use of formalinized stool specimens rather than fresh stool helps clear the specimen and prevents popping of opercula and distortion of the parasites (Bartlett et al, 1978).

Permanent Stains

Use of stained slide preparations provides a permanent record of a patient's specimen and allows review by consultants should difficulties arise in identification. Of the methods described for studying fecal specimens, only the permanent stain is designed for analysis using the oil immersion objective (100×). The permanent stain is most useful for detection of protozoal trophozoites and cysts, which may be recognized when direct and concentrated preparations are negative. Although they generally are not useful for detecting helminth eggs or larvae, permanent stains are inherently more sensitive for detecting protozoal infections, and their use has been recommended for every stool sample submitted for O&P examination (CLSI, 2005).

A variety of staining techniques and modifications and their advantages and disadvantages have been described. The Wheatley trichrome stain and iron hematoxylin stain are all-purpose methods that allow detection of amebae and flagellates. Unfortunately, detection of most human-infecting coccidia and microsporidia requires the use of special stains. Technical problems may arise in the performance of any staining procedure; most are related to the age of the specimen, proper smear preparation and fixation, and the quality of the reagents. Positive control slides of known staining quality should be run with each batch of slides stained. This is especially true in the performance of more specific stains for coccidia and microsporidia. Less commonly used stains, such as polychrome IV stain for use with MIF-preserved specimens and chlorazol black E stain for use with fresh specimens, are not reviewed here, but details may be found elsewhere (CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007).

Wheatley's Trichrome Stain

In the United States, the Wheatley modification of the trichrome method continues to find widespread acceptance because of its simplicity, reliability, and cost-effectiveness. Details of the procedure are available from a number of sources (Melvin, 1982; Price, 1994; CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2010). Appropriate specimens include those that have been fixed in Schaudinn's fixative or PVA fixative; SAF- or MIF-preserved specimens may be stained with trichrome, but results are less satisfactory. Specimens preserved using single-vial commercial fixatives may also be stained with this or a slightly modified protocol.

Iron Hematoxylin Stain

Iron hematoxylin stains are technically more difficult to perform than the trichrome stain, but results generally are superior owing to enhanced definition of key nuclear and cytoplasmic characteristics (Price, 1994). A modified iron hematoxylin stain that may prove useful incorporates carbol fuchsin, allowing concurrent staining of acid-fast organisms such as *Cryptosporidium*, *Cyclospora*, and *Cystoisospora* (Palmer, 1991; CLSI, 2005). Specimens fixed in Schaudinn's, PVA, or SAF fixative may be stained with iron hematoxylin stains (the preferred stain for SAF).

Modified Acid-Fast Stains

Oocysts of *Cryptosporidium*, *Cyclospora*, and *Cystoisospora* are difficult to recognize on trichrome- or iron hematoxylin–stained smears, but their presence may be detected by using an acid-fast staining technique such as the modified Kinyoun method, modified acid-fast dimethyl sulfoxide, or auramine-O (Ma & Soave, 1983; Bronsdon, 1984; Current & Garcia, 1991; CLSI, 2005). Acid-fast stains are sensitive and cost-effective for detection of these protozoa, but they lack specificity. Close attention must be paid to defined morphologic criteria when these stains are used, and the use of positive control material is mandatory. For laboratories in which *Cryptosporidium* is rarely encountered, use of the highly specific and sensitive commercially available immunoassay reagents is recommended. Stool, sputa, biliary tract, and other appropriate specimens that are fresh, formalin-fixed, or SAF-fixed may be used with acid-fast stains.

Stains for Microsporidia

Microsporidia (specifically *Enterocytozoon bieneusi* and *Encephalitozoon intestinalis*, along with a number of other species) have been implicated as common agents of diarrheal disease, especially in immunocompromised patients, although their detection has been problematic. Although biopsy and electron microscopy have been mainstays in their diagnosis, staining procedures that may be performed in the clinical laboratory have been described. A modified trichrome stain using an increased (10-fold) concentration of chromotrope 2R combined with an increase in staining time has gained acceptance as a specific test for the identification of microsporidial spores (Weber et al, 1992, 1994; Murray et al, 2007). Fluorescent staining methods using optical whitening agents such as Uvitek-2B and Calcofluor white are also useful for rapid and sensitive screening of stool and other clinical specimens for such spores, although fungi will also be highlighted (van Gool et al, 1993; DeGirolami et al, 1995; Didier et al, 1995; Luna et al, 1995). The small size (1.5 to 3 μm) of these organisms makes their detection difficult, and such studies should not be undertaken without appropriate control materials for comparison.

Additional Techniques for Examination of Enteric Parasites

Cellulose Tape Technique for Pinworms

The female pinworm, *Enterobius vermicularis*, migrates from the cecum to the perianal skin, where she deposits typical eggs that are fully embryonated. The eggs or, occasionally, adult worms may be detected on examination of clear, adhesive cellophane tape or commercial collection kits that have been pressed on to the perianal skin. Eggs or adults are rarely found in stool, which is considered to be an inappropriate specimen for detection of this parasite. Specimens should be collected first thing in the morning before bathing or defecation. Several specimens taken on different days should be examined before infection is ruled out. Commercial devices such as the SWUBE (Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, N.J.) use an adhesive paddle for collection and greatly simplify specimen collection and examination.

Egg Studies

Estimation of worm burden occasionally is requested to assist in the evaluation of therapeutic efficacy or in following rates of reinfection with intestinal nematodes (*Ascaris*, *Trichuris*, and hookworms) or, occasionally, schistosomes. Procedures include the direct smear method of Beaver, the Stoll dilution egg count, Kato's thick smear, and various modifications (Beaver et al, 1984; Ash & Orihel, 1987; CLSI, 2005). Large variations in results are inherent when these tests are performed, and levels of egg counts indicating clinical significance vary, depending on the infecting species and the person's age and nutritional status (Beaver et al, 1984).

Egg-hatching methods have been used in the analysis of schistosomiasis to detect the presence of eggs in light infections and to determine their viability. Schistosome eggs, which are fully embryonated when passed, contain a miracidium that hatches within several hours when eggs are placed in dechlorinated water. In practice, urine or stool is mixed in about 10 volumes of water, which is then placed in a sidearm or Erlenmeyer flask. All but the sidearm or the top of the flask is covered with foil wrap, and the unit is placed under a desk lamp. Hatched miracidia are positively phototropic and congregate near the light. Eggs, if available, may be examined directly for viability by examining for movement of cilia within flame (excretory) cells (CLSI, 2005).

Nematode Culture and Recovery Techniques

Several culture techniques (coproculture) assist in the detection and identification of certain nematode infections, including the Harada-Mori filter paper strip culture, filter paper/slant culture, and charcoal culture (Beaver et al, 1984; Ash & Orihel, 1987; CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007). Differentiation of hookworms and trichostrongyles on the basis of egg morphology is difficult, whereas infective-stage larvae are more readily identified. Such culture techniques may also prove useful in recovery of *Strongyloides* larvae, which may be few in number, and in differentiating them from those of hookworms. With all culture methods, feces are incubated in a humid environment to encourage egg hatching. With the Harada-Mori and filter paper/slant techniques, larvae migrate from the feces into a water phase, where they may be readily detected. In the charcoal culture, larvae first migrate into a dampened gauze pad, which is then placed in water, allowing the larvae to settle out. These methods are most commonly used in clinical laboratories in endemic settings.

The Baermann funnel technique and agar culture methods are sensitive and reliable methods for recovery of *Strongyloides* and other nematode larvae from a stool specimen. In the Baermann assay, feces are placed on several layers of gauze on top of a wire screen that is suspended in a funnel. The bottom of the funnel is clamped off, and water is added to the level of the gauze. Larvae actively migrate through the gauze and settle to the bottom of the funnel, where they may be drawn off for examination. Although this method provides increased sensitivity over the traditional O&P exam, it is labor-intensive and used infrequently in the clinical laboratory. The agar culture technique provides a simpler and more sensitive means for detecting *S. stercoralis* in feces. With this method, feces are plated on a nutrient agar and incubated at room temperature for several days. Over time, the larvae will migrate out of the feces into the agar and carry fecal bacteria with them. Growth of the bacteria in the larval tracks facilitates identification of larvae in the specimen. In latent *Strongyloides* infection, in which few larvae are being shed, several examinations over 1 week's time using a concentration technique may be required to detect the infection (Ash & Orihel, 1987; Garcia, 2007). It is important to note that filariform larvae of *S. stercoralis* and hookworms are highly infectious and that testing must therefore be performed wearing gloves.

Objects Resembling Enteric Parasites

A large variety of objects that closely resemble various parasite life cycle stages may be seen in feces and other specimens sent for O&P examination. Careful differentiation of these objects from real parasites is necessary to prevent inappropriate or unnecessary treatment. White blood cells, macrophages, and squamous and columnar epithelial cells may resemble

TABLE 63-4
Objects Recoverable from Stool That Resemble Enteric Parasites

Type of Artifact	Resemblance
Neutrophils	*Entamoeba histolytica* cysts
Macrophages	*Entamoeba histolytica* trophozoites
Columnar epithelial cells	Amebic trophozoites
Squamous epithelial cells	Amebic trophozoites
Yeasts	Protozoal cysts (especially *Endolimax nana*)
Fungal conidia	Helminth eggs
Mushroom spores	Helminth eggs
Plant cells	Protozoal cysts, helminth eggs
Plant hairs	Nematode larvae
Pollen grains	Helminth eggs (*Ascaris* or *Taenia*)
Diatoms	Helminth eggs
Starch granules, fat globules, air bubbles, mucus	Protozoal cysts
Ingested mite eggs	Helminth eggs
Ingested plant nematode eggs	Helminth eggs
Ingested plant nematode larvae	Nematode larvae

Adapted from Garcia LS, editor: *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook* (vols 1–3), ed 3. Washington, DC, 2010, American Society for Microbiology.

amebae; yeasts and starch granules may resemble protozoal cysts; pollen and fungal conidia may resemble helminth eggs; plant fibers may resemble nematode larvae; and pieces of vegetables or vegetable skins may resemble adult worms or proglottids (Table 63-4). Examples of artifacts and pseudoparasites have been reviewed elsewhere (Ash & Orihel, 2007; CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007, 2010).

EXAMINATION OF UROGENITAL AND OTHER SPECIMENS (SPUTA, ASPIRATES, BIOPSIES)

Vaginal and urethral discharges, prostatic secretions, or urine may be submitted to the laboratory for detection of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. The most rapid and cost-effective method is the preparation of several wet mounts using a drop of specimen (urine should be centrifuged) diluted with a drop of saline, which is then covered with a coverslip. The slide is examined under the low-power (10×) objective using reduced lighting conditions for motile trophozoites, which display a jerky movement. High-power examination may reveal the beating flagella and the undulating membrane characteristic of the species. Unfortunately, microscopic examination is a relatively insensitive method for detection of *T. vaginalis*, and use of nucleic acid amplification methods are now recommended for optimal detection (Workowski & Bolan, 2014). Use of culture, fluorescent antibody reagents, or a commercial DNA probe technique also improves sensitivity (Briselden & Hillier, 1994, Workowski & Berman, 2010). Demonstration of imidazole drug resistance requires culture of the organism (Meri et al, 2000).

A number of protozoal and helminthic parasites may be detected in sputa, and the appropriate examination technique depends on the suspected organism. Generally, the technique required to detect a parasite from its usual site of infection is applied to sputum and most commonly involves a wet mount. When amebae are suspected, permanent stains should be performed. Acid-fast or specific antibody-based stains are appropriate for detection of *Cryptosporidium* oocysts, whereas modified trichrome or fluorochrome stains should be used for detection of spores of microsporidia. Identification techniques for *Pneumocystis jiroveci* (formerly *Pneumocystis carinii*) are described elsewhere.

Examination of aspirates requires the use of stains as appropriate for the implicated organism. In addition to the methods used for sputum, Giemsa staining is often appropriate when examining for protozoa, especially the hemoflagellates. Biopsy material should be submitted for routine histology after imprint smears are prepared for staining with Giemsa or another appropriate permanent stain. Culture for leishmanias and trypanosomes also can be performed on tissues and may be important for demonstrating those infections. This testing is usually restricted to specialty reference and public health laboratories such as the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Skin biopsies sent for *Onchocerca* or *Mansonella* examination should be teased apart in saline and the saline examined after 30 to 60 minutes for microfilariae. Muscle biopsy specimens for *Trichinella* species larvae may be examined by compressing the fresh specimen between two glass slides or by submitting it for routine histology. Likewise, rectal or bladder biopsies may be examined for schistosome eggs.

PARASITE CULTURE TECHNIQUES

Culture methods have been described for a wide variety of protozoan parasites, but few clinical laboratories undertake the task because of infrequent requests and lack of familiarity with methods. When culture requests are made, they are usually for *T. vaginalis*, *Leishmania* spp., *Trypanosoma cruzi*, *E. histolytica*, *Acanthamoeba* spp., or *Naegleria fowleri*. Methods are reviewed elsewhere (Ash & Orihel, 1987; Fritsche, 1989; CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007, 2010; Murray et al, 2007). The CDC may agree to provide this testing following consultation.

IMMUNODIAGNOSTIC METHODS

Several immunodiagnostic methods are available to identify the parasitic antigen or the antibody that is produced in response to the parasitic infection. Some signals are amplified, and others are direct detection methods. In general, laboratory methods employed are enzyme immunoassay (EIA), indirect immunofluorescence assay (IFA), direct fluorescence antibody assay (DFA), Western blot, radioimmunoassay, and immunodiffusion, among others.

Antigen Detection

Antigen detection methods are commercially available for several parasitic diseases, including amebiasis, cryptosporidiosis, giardiasis, malaria, and trichomoniasis (Table 63-5); these methods may be useful for initial testing or in instances in which traditional tests are negative, yet a high index of clinical suspicion remains. These tests offer the advantage of detecting current infection and can often be performed by someone other than an experienced morphologist (Wilson et al, 1995; Garcia, 2010).

Antigen detection in stool samples is usually performed using fecal immunoassays. A number of published studies have suggested that these assays have good or superior sensitivity and specificity when compared with routine ova and parasite examination (Aldeen et al, 1995; Kehl et al, 1995; Zimmerman & Needham, 1995; Maraha & Buiting, 2000; Hanson & Cartwright, 2001; Garcia, 2007). These immunoassays are easy to use and rapid, permit batch processing, and do not require experienced microscopists. Given the current shortage of medical technologists and individuals with specialized training in parasitology, use of immunoassays appears to be an attractive alternative. However, laboratories that use rapid cartridge-based immunoassays should be aware of potential problems with false-positive results and should closely monitor test performance. Currently, fecal immunoassays are marketed for *G. lamblia*, *C. parvum/C. hominis*, the *E. histolytica/E. dispar* group, and *E. histolytica*. Antigen detection tests using blood or serum are also available for *Plasmodium* spp. and *W. bancrofti*. A latex agglutination test for *T. vaginalis* antigen detection in vaginal swabs has also been introduced. Additional commercially manufactured kits are available for detection of *Dientamoeba fragilis* and the microsporidia. Immunoassays are usually available in three formats: EIA, DFA, and lateral flow (immunochromatography) cartridges. Fresh or preserved stool samples are appropriate for most antigen detection kits (Fedorko et al, 2000). Although each kit has unique operating characteristics, most are generally comparable in performance (Garcia & Shimizu, 2000, 2007; Katanik et al, 2001).

Rapid antigen detection methods developed for malaria may detect histidine-rich protein II (HRP-II), parasite lactate dehydrogenase (pLDH), parasite aldolase, or a combination of these antigens in peripheral blood. HRP-II tests are specific for *Plasmodium falciparum*, and pLDH and aldolase tests detect all four *Plasmodium* spp. These assays have highly variable performance characteristics, but in general are adequate for detecting moderate to heavy infections with *Plasmodium falciparum*. They are often significantly less sensitive for detecting lower levels of *P. falciparum* infection and infections with other *Plasmodium* species. At the time of this writing, only the BinaxNow (Alere, Waltham, Mass.) is cleared by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for clinical diagnosis of malaria in the United States (Murray & Bennett, 2009).

T. vaginalis antigens from vaginal samples may also be detected using rapid antigen tests. These tests can be used for rapid detection of *T. vaginalis* infection in the clinic setting and may replace wet mount examinations, which generally have lower sensitivities, depending on the proficiency of the personnel performing the microscopic examination. Miller

TABLE 63-5
Select Antigen-Based Detection Assays for Parasites

Analyte	Test System	Manufacturer/Distributor	Format
Cryptosporidium spp.	Xpect Cryptosporidium	Remel (Thermo Scientific)	Cartridge
	Crypto Cel	CeLLabs	DFA
	ProSpecT Cryptosporidium	Remel (Thermo Scientific)	EIA plate
	Cryptosporidium II	Tech-lab	EIA plate
Giardia lamblia	Xpect GIARDIA	Remel (Thermo Scientific)	Cartridge
	ProSpecT Giardia EZ	Remel (Thermo Scientific)	EIA plate
	Giardia Cel	CeLLabs	DFA
	ProSpecT Giardia	Remel (Thermo Scientific)	EIA plate
	GIARDIA II	Tech-lab	EIA plate
	Giardia CELISA	CeLLabs	EIA plate
	Giardia lamblia II	Tech-lab	EIA plate
Entamoeba histolytica	E. histolytica QUIKCHEK	Tech-lab	Cartridge
	Entamoeba CELISA PATH	CeLLabs	EIA plate
	ProSpecT Entamoeba histolytica	Remel (Thermo Scientific)	EIA plate
	E. histolytica II	Tech-lab	EIA plate
Cryptosporidium/Giardia	Xpect Giardia/Cryptosporidium	Remel (Thermo Scientific)	Cartridge
	ImmunoCard STAT! Cryptosporidium/Giardia	Meridian Bioscience	Cartridge
	MERIFLUOR Cryptosporidium/Giardia	Meridian Bioscience	DFA
	Crypto Giardia DFA	IVD Research Inc.	DFA
	Crypto/Giardia Cel	CeLLabs	DFA
	PARA-TECT Cryptosporidium/Giardia	Medical Chemical Corp.	DFA
	ColorPAC Giardia/Cryptosporidium	Becton Dickinson (BD)	Cartridge
	Giardia/Cryptosporidium CHEK	Tech-lab	EIA plate
	Giardia/Cryptosporidium QUIKCHEK	Tech-lab	Cartridge
	ProSpecT Giardia/Cryptosporidium	Remel (Thermo Scientific)	EIA plate
G. lamblia, C. parvum, and *E. histolytica/dispar* combination	Alere Triage Parasite Panel	Alere	Cartridge
Giardia spp., *Cryptosporidium* spp., and *E. histolytica* combination	TRI-COMBO Parasite Screen	Tech-lab	EIA plate
Plasmodium spp.*	BinaxNOW Malaria	Alere	Cartridge
	OptiMAL	BIO-RAD	Cartridge
	First Response Malaria Ag	Premier Medical Corp.	Cartridge
	CareStart Malaria COMBO	Apacor	Cartridge
	SD BIOLINE Malaria Ag	Alere	Cartridge
Wuchereria bancrofti	BinaxNOW Filariasis	Alere	Cartridge
	Filariasis Ab CELISA	CeLLabs	EIA plate
Trichomonas vaginalis	Light Diagnostic T. vaginalis	Chemicon	DFA
	OSOM Trichomonas Rapid Test	Genzyme	Dipstick
	XenoStrip-Tv	Xenotope Diagnostics	Cartridge

Cartridge, Lateral flow cartridge; *DFA,* direct fluorescence antibody assay; *EIA,* enzyme immunassay; *Dipstick,* dipstick enzyme immunoassay.
*Tests listed scored highly for detection of *P. falciparum* by the WHO and the Foundation for Innovative New Diagnostics (FIND) product testing (FIND, 2012). Tests listed detect both *P. falciparum* and Pan-*Plasmodium* antigens.

and colleagues demonstrated that the *T. vaginalis* rapid antigen test had sensitivities comparable with those of culture (Miller et al, 2003), although still less than for nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs).

Most EIAs are available in microwell format. Antigens from frozen, fresh, or 10% formalin–preserved stool samples are suitable for testing by this method. Concentrated or PVA samples are not suitable for testing with EIA kits. Parasite antigen is captured by immobilized antibodies coated on microwells and is detected by an enzyme-conjugated secondary antibody that is capable of producing a colored reaction following the addition of substrate. Although the colored wells can be read visually or with the use of a spectrometer, the latter seems to be the preferred option because of occasional ambiguous results obtained with some kits (Kehl et al, 1995). In general, EIA tests have good sensitivities and specificities. Garcia and colleagues evaluated nine immunoassay kits for detection of *G. lamblia* and *Cryptosporidium* spp. in comparison with a reference DFA test that visualizes the parasite directly in the sample; investigators found that all kits had high sensitivities, ranging from 94% to 99%, and 100% specificities (Garcia & Shimizu, 1997; 2007). However, published reports have suggested that occasional problems are found with some EIA kits that may produce false-positive results; these problems have led to their recall (Doing et al, 1999). Hence, a strong quality control (QC) program and participation in proficiency test programs are required to ensure high-quality test results. Local epidemiology of the parasitic infection can help to determine whether additional confirmatory testing is required; consultation with local public health authorities may prove useful in characterizing which infections are being seen locally. Additionally for some diseases such as giardiasis, examination of two specimens by EIA or microscopy may be necessary to achieve diagnostic sensitivity greater than 90% (Hanson & Cartwright, 2001).

Lateral flow cartridges are a popular format of immunoassay because of their ease of use and the minimal performance time required. These kits can be stored conveniently at room temperature and may be used in single or batch processing. The parasite antigen in the sample migrates through the membrane and binds to specific capture antibodies; use of a secondary reagent results in development of a colored reaction. These kits also have an internal control to ensure that the colloidal dye conjugates used in the assay are intact and that proper capillary flow has occurred. To ensure complete migration of the specimen, only the supernatant of a well-mixed stool sample is used, and some samples may be diluted to a liquid state before testing. Any color visible at the reagent test zone (usually a band) is interpreted as positive. Some studies have demonstrated that cartridge assays are somewhat less sensitive than a microwell EIA plate assay (Pillai & Kain, 1999; Johnston et al, 2003). When lack of sensitivity is a concern, it may be necessary to perform alternative O&P studies if the patient's symptoms persist.

DFA testing allows direct visualization of the parasites in stool specimen using antibodies conjugated to fluorescent dyes. These assays are easy to perform and to interpret, permitting rapid screening of slides when compared with some of the traditional stains used in parasitology (Zimmerman & Needham, 1995; Garcia, 2007). A fluorescence microscope is necessary for this procedure, and this is a limiting factor in some laboratories. Currently, kits are available for detection of cysts of *G. lamblia* and oocysts of *Cryptosporidium* spp. Fixed stool specimens may be used for this procedure (10% formalin, SAF, or one of the mercury- or formalin-free

TABLE 63-6
Examples of Serologic Assays for Parasites Available from Reference Laboratories

Disease	Organism	Specimen Type	Assay
Amebiasis	*Entamoeba histolytica*	Serum	EIA, ID, IHA
Babesiosis	*Babesia microti, Babesia* sp. WA1	Serum	IFA
Chagas	*Trypanosoma cruzi*	Serum	IFA, EIA, CF
Cysticercosis	*Taenia solium*	Serum, CSF	EIA, IB
Echinococcosis	*Echinococcus granulosus*	Serum	EIA, IB, IHA, IFA
Fascioliasis	*Fasciola hepatica*	Serum	EIA, IB
Filariasis	*Wuchereria bancrofti*	Serum	EIA
Leishmaniasis	*Leishmania braziliensis, Leishmania donovani, Leishmania tropica*	Serum	IFA, EIA, CF
Malaria	*Plasmodium* spp.	Serum	IFA
Paragonimiasis	*Paragonimus westermani*	Serum	EIA, IB
Schistosomiasis	*Schistosoma* spp.	Serum	EIA, IB
Strongyloidiasis	*Strongyloides stercoralis*	Serum	EIA
Toxoplasmosis	*Toxoplasma gondii*	CSF, serum	IFA, EIA
Trichinellosis	*Trichinella spiralis*	Serum	EIA, BF

BF, Bentonite flocculation; *CF,* complement fixation; *CSF,* cerebrospinal fluid; *EIA,* enzyme immunoassay; *IB,* immunoblot; *ID,* immunodiffusion; *IFA,* indirect immunofluorescence assay; *IHA,* indirect hemagglutination.

products) (Fedorko et al, 2000). Although fresh stool samples can be tested directly, the sensitivity of the assay can be improved by performing the test on centrifuged stool (500 *g* for 10 minutes). Occasionally, fluorescing bacteria and yeasts may be seen, but these are readily distinguished from *Giardia* and *Cryptosporidium* on the basis of their size and shape. The edges of the wells should be carefully examined to avoid missing the rare parasite in light infections. Given the recent recognition of additional *Cryptosporidium* spp. that may infect humans, studies related to specificity of the various immunoassays are needed to determine actual sensitivity in detecting any *Cryptosporidium* infection (Graczyk et al, 1996; Coupe et al, 2005).

Serologic Diagnosis

Tests that are available from public health, hospital, or commercial laboratories to detect immunologic reactivity to parasitic diseases are summarized in Table 63-6. Historically, serologic procedures for parasitic diseases have been plagued by low sensitivity and specificity, primarily owing to the complex antigenic nature of parasites and the possibilities for cross-reactions from related species. The introduction of newer test methods combined with the use of more highly defined antigenic components is providing more accurate results with greater predictive values. Many of the newer tests use the EIA or immunoblot (Western blot) format, although IFA, indirect hemagglutination (IHA), complement fixation (CF), and bentonite flocculation (BF) methods remain popular.

Serologic diagnosis of parasitic infection is used as an adjunct to the usual diagnostic modalities or in special situations in which identification of the parasite itself or its antigen or nucleic acid from host tissue or excreta is not possible. Parasitic infections such as toxoplasmosis and toxocariasis reside in deep tissues and cannot be readily diagnosed by morphologic means; others such as cysticercosis and echinococcosis develop in organs, where invasive studies that may be required are not recommended in the initial patient evaluation. Other conditions such as filariasis, schistosomiasis, and strongyloidiasis may remain subclinical because of light infections, or because the clinical evaluation occurred during the prepatent period. Other circumstances in which serologic evaluation may prove useful include diagnoses of extraintestinal amebiasis (e.g., amebic liver abscess) and trichinellosis. Chronic stages of trypanosomiasis are preferably diagnosed by serology. Serologic studies also help in the diagnosis of occult infections such as visceral larva migrans, cysticercosis, and filariasis. Last, serologic studies serve as a powerful tool in enhancing our understanding of the epidemiology of diseases such as schistosomiasis, toxoplasmosis, amebiasis, Chagas disease, malaria, and babesiosis. High antibody levels are useful for diagnostic purposes if they occur in a patient with no previous exposure to the parasite and no recent history of travel to an endemic area. Unfortunately, positive antibody levels in persons living in endemic areas do not often help in the clinical diagnosis. Detection of antibodies, especially immunoglobulin (Ig)G, provides evidence of infection but may not be able to differentiate active from past exposure. In some parasitic diseases, levels of antibodies may decline slowly following successful therapy or self-cure. Serologic tests for parasitic diseases generally evaluate IgG levels, with the exception of toxoplasmosis and babesiosis, in which IgM- and IgA-specific antibodies may be helpful for determining the age of infection (NCCLS, 2004). Unfortunately IgM and IgA may persist for as long as 2 years after the primary infection, which can complicate interpretation of positive test results for these immunoglobulins. When *Toxoplasma gondii* IgG antibodies are detected, avidity testing may also be useful to distinguish recent from past infection, particularly during pregnancy. This testing is based on the principle that the initial host response results in the production of low-avidity antibodies; over time the antibodies gain higher avidity as the host immune response is enhanced.

Because serologic tests for parasitic diseases are infrequently requested, specimens generally are submitted to public (CDC) or private reference laboratories. Some of the more commonly requested tests, especially those that are obtained as commercial kits, are often available locally, including those for toxoplasmosis, amebiasis, and trichinosis.

Many of these assays are developed in-house and hence lack correlation with universal standards. Interpretive criteria are established by reagent manufacturers or by the center performing the test, and these criteria often vary from institution to institution. Individuals requesting such tests should inquire about the performance characteristics, including sensitivity and specificity, and should be aware that cross-reactions may occur. For example, antibody tests for Chagas disease are known to cross-react with antibodies produced in response to *Leishmania* infections. However, reactivity to homologous antigen is greater, and this test is useful in diagnosing chronic stages of the disease when parasitemia is generally low. Usually serology for chronic Chagas disease correlates well with molecular diagnostic methods (Weinberg, 2001). Helminthic parasites are well known to cross-react in serologic assays that use crude antigen preparations because of phylogenetic, hence antigenic, similarities.

Several factors that may influence the test performance of serologic assays include disease manifestation, test format, reagents used, and parasite viability, to name a few. The sensitivity of the test is increased in patients with invasive amebiasis but may be weak in intestinal amebiasis with minimal tissue invasion, and absent for asymptomatic carriers. The type of serologic assay format may also determine the sensitivity, as in the diagnosis of toxoplasmosis (NCCLS, 2004). The double-sandwich IgM enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) is known to be more sensitive and specific than IgM immunofluorescence for detecting recently acquired and congenital toxoplasmosis. IHA has been the primary test for serodiagnosis of amebiasis. The sensitivity of the assay is also dependent on the type or stage of parasite antigen used; for example, the sensitivity of cutaneous leishmaniasis can be improved by using amastigote antigens in place of promastigote antigens in the IFA test. Serologic assays are also affected by parasite viability; hydatid cysts occurring in the lung and dead or calcified cysts are less frequently detected than active cysts in the liver.

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTIC METHODS

Diagnostic methods using DNA and RNA amplification and nucleic acid probe techniques have been described for most of the common parasitic diseases and offer high levels of sensitivity and specificity (Weiss, 1995; Wilson et al, 1995). For more complete details on this topic, the reader is referred to more recent publications (Persing et al, 2011; Espy et al, 2006; Vasoo & Pritt, 2013). Molecular methods offer some unique advantages such as rapid (automated) results, high sensitivity and specificity, and ability to detect and differentiate species variants—all independent of the patient's underlying immune status, which is a potentially limiting feature of serologic assays. Molecular techniques are prone to cross-contamination, however, if proper processing precautions are not strictly enforced.

The availability of molecular tests has been greatly enhanced by the introduction of multiple commercial assays, some of which are FDA cleared for in vitro diagnostic use. Among the FDA-cleared tests are assays for *T. vaginalis*, *G. lamblia*, *Cryptosporidium* spp., *E. histolytica*, and *Cyclospora cayetanensis*. Laboratory developed NAATs have also been developed for parasites such as *Plasmodium* spp., *Babesia* spp., *Leishmania* spp., *T. gondii*, and *Trypanosoma* spp. and are available through specialized reference and public health laboratories (Table 63-7). Some of these assays are available in real-time format, wherein the kinetics of the nucleic acid amplification reaction is recorded and analyzed by computer algorithms to allow detection of amplicons. The introduction of this technology has allowed for rapid detection and has lessened the risk for amplicon cross-contamination

TABLE 63-7
Examples of Nucleic Acid Amplification Assays for Parasites

Parasite	Common Target(s)	Specimen Type	FDA-Approved Assay Available (Assay, Manufacturer)
Leishmania spp.	rDNA, kinetoplasid DNA, *ITS1* and *ITS2* genes	Whole blood, skin scrapings, tissue	Yes* (SMART Leish PCR, U.S. Army)
Plasmodium spp.	rDNA	Whole blood	No
Toxoplasma gondii	*RE* and *B1* genes	Amniotic fluid, blood, cerebrospinal fluid, tissue, whole blood, ocular fluid	No
Entamoeba histolytica	rDNA	Stool	Yes† (FilmArray GI panel, BioFire Diagnostics; xTAG Gastrointestinal Pathogen Panel, Luminex Corporation)
Giardia lamblia	rDNA, *β-Giardin* gene	Stool	Yes† (FilmArray GI panel, BioFire Diagnostics; xTAG Gastrointestinal Pathogen Panel, Luminex Corporation)
Cryptosporidium spp.	rDNA	Stool	Yes† (FilmArray GI panel, BioFire Diagnostics; xTAG Gastrointestinal Pathogen Panel, Luminex Corporation)
Cyclospora cayetanensis	rDNA	Stool	Yes† (FilmArray GI panel, BioFire Diagnostics)
Trichomonas vaginalis	rDNA, *β-Tubulin* gene	Vaginal, cervical and urethral (male) samples, urine, semen	Yes‡ (Aptima Trichomonas vaginalis assay, Gen-Probe, Hologic)

PCR, Polymerase chain reaction; *rDNA,* ribosomal DNA.
*Restricted to U.S. Department of Defense use.
†Component of multiplex assays for gastrointestinal pathogens.
‡Assay only FDA approved for testing females.

due to the closed nature of the steps involved in postamplification analysis. Isothermal methods such as strand displacement amplification, transcription-mediated amplification, and loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP) have also been described for some parasites. Because the innate nature of molecular methods is genotypic, PCR assays have the ability to accurately detect to the species level, depending on the gene being targeted (Vallejo et al, 1999; Mahboudi et al, 2002). Molecular methods may also be used to monitor the success of antiparasitic therapy (Lee et al, 2002; Bossolasco et al, 2003) or to detect reactivation following therapy (Costa et al, 2000). Finally, molecular methods may prove to have great importance in the identification of parasite-harboring vectors and may contribute to disease prevention through control programs targeted to such vectors (Weiss, 1995).

QUALITY ASSURANCE, QUALITY IMPROVEMENT, AND SAFETY

A quality assurance program for the parasitology section of the laboratory is similar to that for the other laboratory sections and covers all essential aspects of the operation, including, among others, a well-written and complete procedure manual that is reviewed annually, guidelines for maintaining all specimen and test result records, a complete QC program with appropriate technical supervision and review, and participation in an approved proficiency testing program. Laboratories also need to focus on customer satisfaction, using a variety of available measures, and to participate in the team approach to identifying problems and generating solutions as part of a continuous quality improvement process (Garcia, 2007, 2010).

The performance of individuals responsible for the parasitology section should be monitored periodically with both internal and external unknown specimens, and competency assessments should be up to date, especially for those laboratories that encounter positive specimens infrequently. A variety of reference materials should be readily available for use at the laboratory bench, including positive slides and fecal specimens, printed atlases, and slide atlases.

Unpreserved specimens for parasitologic examination should be considered potentially infectious, and all blood and body fluids should be handled according to Standard Precautions as defined by the Final Rule on Blood-borne Pathogens by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, as published in the *Federal Register*. In addition to blood-borne viral pathogens, malarial parasites and hemoflagellates may remain infective. A variety of parasites may remain infective in fresh stool specimens, including cysts of enteric protozoa; eggs of *Taenia solium*, *E. vermicularis*, and *H. nana;* and larvae of *S. stercoralis*. *Trichuris trichiura*, *Ascaris lumbricoides*, and hookworm eggs may remain infective in older specimens, and *Ascaris* eggs can survive and embryonate while in 5% formalin. Fecal specimens also may contain pathogens such as *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, or viruses. Strict observance of proper specimen handling techniques and disposal is essential. Personal attention to hand washing is also necessary. Use of ethyl acetate in place of ether in the performance of concentration techniques is strongly recommended to guard against the possibility of explosion (Truant et al, 1981; CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007, 2010).

BLOOD AND TISSUE PROTOZOA

PLASMODIUM SPECIES (MALARIA)

Malaria (from the Italian *mal' aria*, meaning "bad air") is an acute and sometimes chronic infection of the bloodstream characterized clinically by fever, anemia, and splenomegaly, and is caused by apicomplexan parasites of the genus *Plasmodium*. The defining clinical features of a malarial attack or paroxysm consist of, in order, shaking chills, fever (up to 40° C or higher), and generalized diaphoresis, followed by resolution of fever. The paroxysm occurs over 6 to 10 hours and is initiated by the synchronous rupture of erythrocytes with the release of new infectious blood stage forms known as *merozoites*. The disease generally occurs between 45° N and 40° S (World Health Organization [WHO], 1987) and is spread exclusively by female anopheline mosquitoes. The four main species of plasmodia causing human malaria are *Plasmodium vivax*, *P. falciparum*, *Plasmodium malariae*, and *Plasmodium ovale*. *P. falciparum* infection occurs principally in tropical areas worldwide, whereas *P. vivax* infections occur in both tropical and temperate zones. *P. malariae* also occurs worldwide but to a much lesser extent than *P. falciparum* or *P. vivax*. *P. ovale* is the least frequent of the malarias, with most cases being acquired in western Africa, India, or South America. Recently, human infection with *P. knowlesi*, a malarial parasite of Old World monkeys, has been described in several regions of Southeast Asia. These infections are potentially life-threatening but are difficult to distinguish from *P. malariae* microscopically, leading to misidentification. Use of PCR has been required to make the correct differentiation (Cox-Singh et al, 2008).

Because infection with falciparum malaria is potentially life-threatening, its presence must be considered in the differential diagnosis of unexplained fever, and history of travel in endemic geographic areas should always

be sought. In an era of increasing world travel, the risk for acquiring malaria is not insignificant, and the rapid spread of drug-resistant strains poses particular problems when appropriate prophylaxis or therapy is considered.

Laboratory evaluation of patients suspected of having malaria continues to rely on timely examination of thick and thin blood films to demonstrate the intraerythrocytic parasites. Although they are straightforward in their approach, performance of these techniques may be problematic. Reliable identification of organisms requires continuous training to maintain expertise; therefore, those laboratories that rarely see positive specimens may choose to refer specimens to reference laboratories, provided that processing and reporting are timely.

More advanced laboratory methods, including acridine orange staining (see the "Laboratory Methods" section earlier in the chapter) and detection of parasite-specific DNA (Lanar et al, 1989; Weiss, 1995; CLSI, 2005), provide enhanced sensitivity and specificity but generally are not appropriate or available for smaller laboratories. Immunocapture assays developed for the detection of *Plasmodium*-specific antigens such as lactate dehydrogenase or HRP-II appear to provide a high degree of sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis of falciparum malaria. Several versions of these tests, configured as "dipstick" methods, are especially promising in situations in which ease of performance is critical and usual laboratory institutions are lacking (Palmer et al, 1998; Piper et al, 1999; Marx et al, 2005; Murray & Bennett, 2009). Unfortunately these methods suffer from inadequate sensitivity for detection of lower parasite loads and non-*P. falciparum* infections, and it is therefore recommended that antigen-based assay testing be followed by confirmatory conventional thick and thin film examination.

Life Cycle

Malarial parasites undergo a sexual phase (sporogony) in *Anopheles* mosquitoes that results in the production of infectious sporozoites, as well as an asexual stage (schizogony) in humans that results in the production of schizonts and merozoites (Fig. 63-1). In the bloodstream, some merozoites eventually differentiate into gametocytes (gametogony), which, when ingested by female anopheline mosquitoes, mature into male microgametes and female macrogametes. Fusion of a microgamete and a macrogamete results in the formation of the motile ookinete, which migrates to the outside of the stomach wall and forms an oocyst. Within the oocyst, numerous spindle-shaped sporozoites are formed. The mature oocyst ruptures into the body cavity, releasing sporozoites, which then migrate through the tissues to the salivary glands, from which they are injected into the vertebrate host as the mosquito feeds. The time required for development in the mosquito ranges from 8 to 21 days.

Sporozoites injected into the vertebrate host reach the hepatic parenchymal cells within minutes and initiate the proliferative phase known as *exoerythrocytic schizogony*. Release of merozoites from ruptured hepatic schizonts initiates the bloodstream infection or erythrocytic schizogony and, eventually, the clinical symptoms of malaria. *P. vivax* and *P. ovale* differ from *P. falciparum* and *P. malariae* in that true disease relapses of the former species may occur weeks to months following subsidence of previous attacks. This occurs as a result of renewed exoerythrocytic and, eventually, erythrocytic schizogony from latent hepatic parasite forms known as *hypnozoites* (Krotoski et al, 1982). Recurrences of disease due to *P. falciparum* or *P. malariae*, called *recrudescences*, arise from increased numbers of persisting blood stage forms to clinically detectable levels, and not from persisting liver stage forms. Liver cells are infected only by sporozoites from the mosquito; thus, transfusion-acquired *P. vivax* or *P. ovale* infection does not relapse.

Merozoites released from infected hepatocytes subsequently infect erythrocytes. Following amplification of parasites in the bloodstream for a period of time and the development of synchrony in their appearance, clinical attacks of malaria occur. *P. vivax* and *P. ovale* parasites primarily infect young erythrocytes, whereas *P. malariae* infects older erythrocytes and *P. falciparum* infects erythrocytes of all ages.

Morphologic stages seen in erythrocytes include trophozoites (growing forms), schizonts (dividing forms), and gametocytes (sexual forms) (Figs. 63-2 to 63-5). The youngest trophozoites have a globose shape with a central vacuole, a red chromatin mass, and light blue-gray cytoplasm. On stained blood films, early trophozoites resemble signet rings and generally are referred to as *rings* or *ring forms*. Growing trophozoites beyond the ring stage retain a single chromatin mass but have more abundant cytoplasm, which may appear compact or may be ameboid (irregular with pseudopod-like projections). Mature trophozoites still have only one chromatin mass but an increased amount of cytoplasm that partially fills the erythrocyte. Hemozoin (hematin) pigment, a breakdown product of hemoglobin, is characteristic of all erythrocytes containing mature stages of malarial parasites but is not usually evident in ring forms. Immature schizonts have two or more chromatin masses and undivided cytoplasm, whereas mature schizonts have both cytoplasm and chromatin completely divided, so that individual merozoites are evident. The mature schizont ruptures the erythrocyte, releasing merozoites and initiating a new cycle of infection. The erythrocytic cycle takes approximately 48 hours (tertian periodicity) for *P. falciparum*, *P. ovale*, and *P. vivax* infections, and 72 hours (quartan periodicity) for *P. malariae* infection. At some point during the infection, a subpopulation of merozoites develops into gametocytes. Those of *P. vivax*, *P. malariae*, and *P. ovale* are rounded, whereas those of *P. falciparum* are elongate (sausage- or banana-shaped). Macrogametocytes (female) characteristically have a compact chromatin mass, whereas microgametocytes (male) have chromatin that is more dispersed. Developing gametocytes are more compact than growing trophozoites.

Epidemiology

Endemic transmission of malaria requires a reservoir of infection, an appropriate mosquito vector, and a susceptible host. Control of malaria is directed at elimination of mosquito hosts, treatment of active cases, and prophylaxis of susceptible persons. However, emergence of mosquitoes resistant to insecticides, development of resistance to prophylaxis and therapy by *P. falciparum* and, more recently, *P. vivax* (Murphy et al, 1993; Garcia, 2007), and lack of adequate funding have made control difficult in many areas.

Individuals with sickle cell trait are less susceptible to *P. falciparum* malaria, and persons who lack certain Duffy blood group determinants are protected to some extent against *P. vivax* infection (Miller et al, 1976). Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency has been associated with protection from malaria, but evidence is less striking than with these other genetic abnormalities.

Transfusion-induced malaria may occur when blood donors have subclinical malaria and may prove fatal for the recipient. Similarly, congenital malaria may occur in infants born to mothers from endemic areas. The infant acquires the infection at birth as a result of rupture of placental blood vessels with maternal-fetal transfusion. Neither transfusion nor congenital malaria is expected to relapse because exoerythrocytic schizogony does not occur. The number of civilian cases of malaria reported in the United States increased from 151 in 1970 to 1838 in 1980 but dropped to 1411 in 1993 (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 1988, 1993). The most recent surveillance summary from the CDC reported 1687 total cases in 2012 (Cullen & Arguin, 2014). Species causing infection were *P. falciparum* (58%), *P. vivax* (17%), *P. malariae* (3%), *P. ovale* (3%), and undetermined (17%), with 1% having infection with two species. Of reported cases, 14% were associated with severe disease, including the 6 persons who died. Only 6% of patients with malaria reported adhering to a CDC-recommended chemoprophylaxis malaria regimen. The interval between arrival in the United States and onset of illness was less than 1 month for 42% of *P. vivax* and 81% of *P. falciparum* cases. Only 0.9% of patients became ill more than 1 year after arrival. Patients acquired the infection in Africa (77%), Asia (12.2%), the Western Hemisphere (6.8%), or Oceania (0.5%). In patients for whom the reason for travel was known, the majority (66%) were visiting friends and relatives (VFRs). These individuals have long been known to be at higher risk for acquiring malaria than other travelers since they often do not seek pretravel counseling, do not take malaria chemoprophylaxis, travel to more rural areas, and often stay for longer periods of time.

Clinical Disease

Most patients who develop *P. falciparum* infection become symptomatic within 1 month of exposure, whereas a delay of up to 6 months or more may be seen with the other *Plasmodium* species. Common presenting symptoms of malaria include chills and fever, which often are associated with splenomegaly. In the early stages of the disease, febrile episodes occur irregularly but eventually become more synchronous, assuming the usual tertian (*P. vivax*, *P. falciparum*, and *P. ovale*) or quartan *(P. malariae)* periodicity. Patients with malaria may develop anemia and may have other manifestations, including diarrhea, abdominal pain, headache, and muscle aches and pains. *P. falciparum* malaria can result in high rates (50%) of parasitemia, which can lead to severe hemolysis with hemoglobinuria and profound anemia. Erythrocytes infected with growing trophozoites and schizonts of *P. falciparum* become sequestered in small vessels of the body, and this may lead to occlusion of these vessels, causing symptoms related to capillary obstruction and tissue anoxia. Involvement of the brain is known as cerebral malaria, in which the patient becomes disoriented,

Text continued on p. 1246

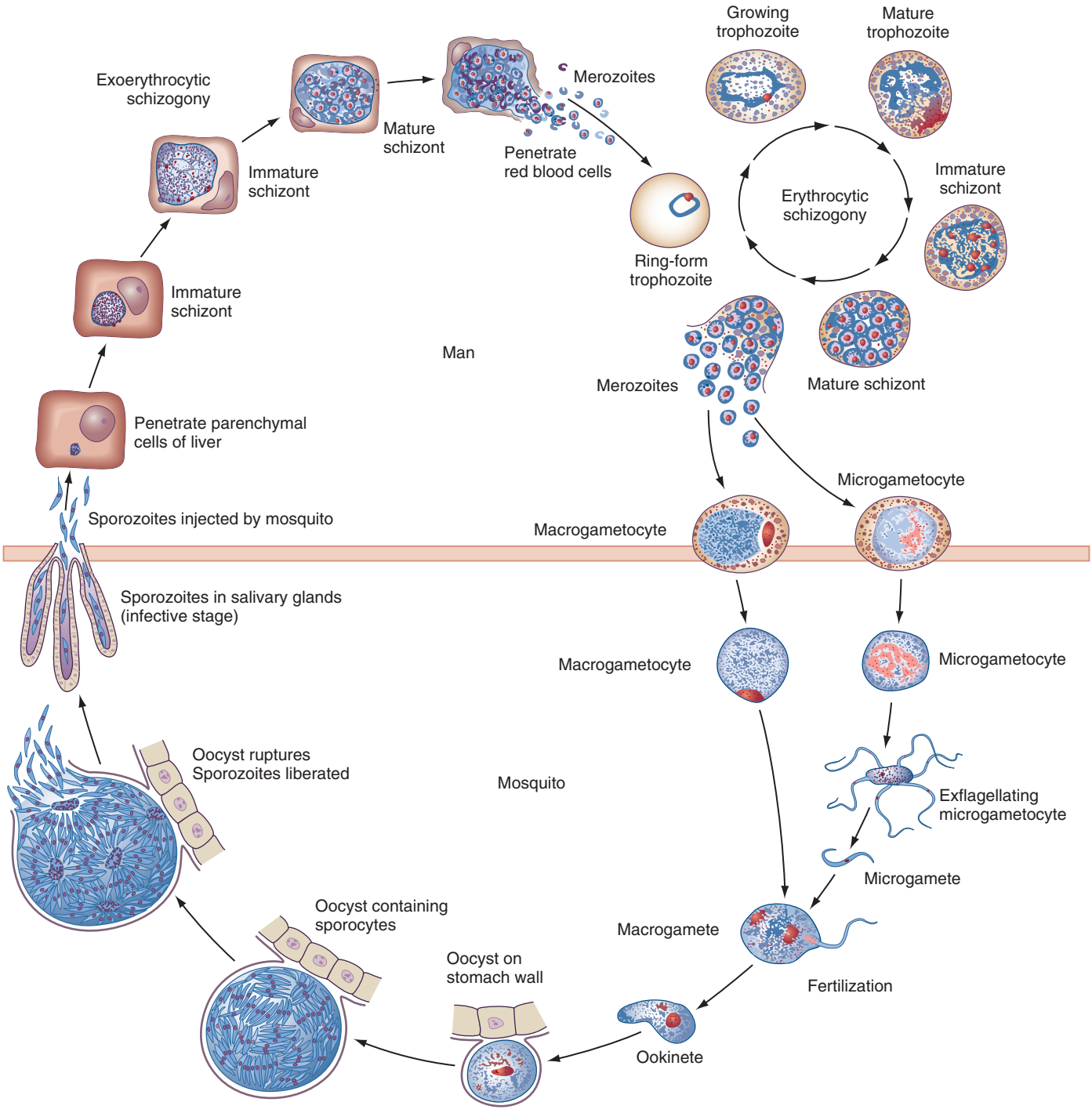


Figure 63-1 **Life cycle of malarial parasites.** (Courtesy of Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Parasitology Training Branch, Atlanta.)

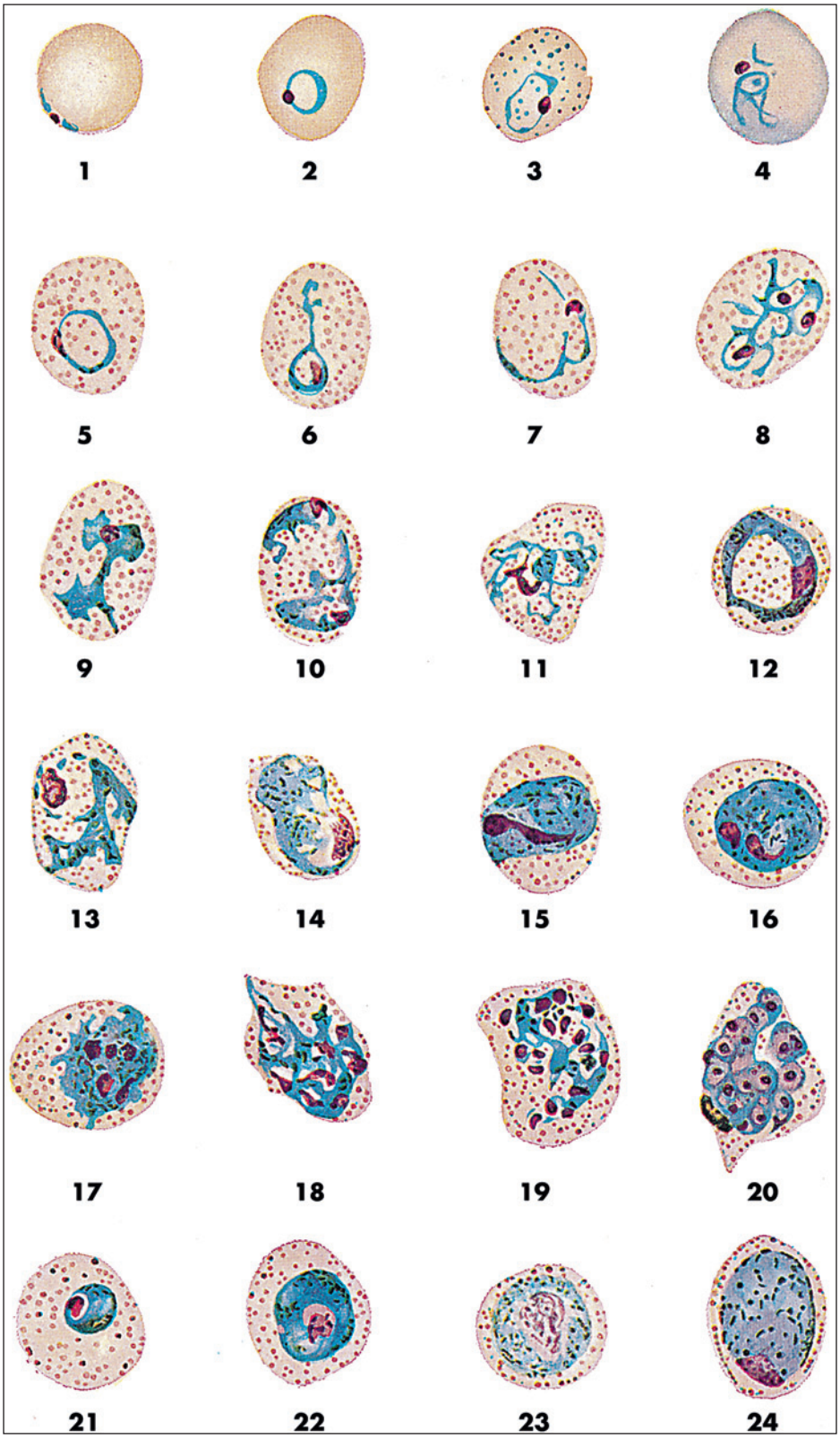


Figure 63-2 ***Plasmodium vivax.*** *1,* Normal-size erythrocyte with marginal ring form trophozoite. *2,* Young signet ring form of trophozoite in macrocyte. *3,* Slightly older ring form trophozoite in erythrocyte showing basophilic stippling. *4,* Polychromatophilic erythrocyte containing young tertian parasite with pseudopodia. *5,* Ring form of trophozoite showing pigment in cytoplasm of an enlarged cell containing Schüffner's stippling. This stippling does not appear in all cells containing the growing and older forms of *Plasmodium vivax,* but it can be found with any stage from the fairly young ring form onward. *6* and *7,* Very tenuous medium trophozoite forms. *8,* Three ameboid trophozoites with fused cytoplasm. *9* to *13,* Older ameboid trophozoites in the process of development. *10,* Two ameboid trophozoites in one cell. *14,* Mature trophozoite. *15,* Mature trophozoite with chromatin apparently in process of division. *16* to *19,* Schizonts showing progressive steps in division (presegmenting schizonts). *20,* Mature schizont. *21* and *22,* Developing gametocytes. *23,* Mature microgametocyte. *24,* Mature macrogametocyte. (From Wilcox A: Manual for the microscopical diagnosis of malaria in man. Bulletin No. 180. Bethesda, Md., 1942, National Institutes of Health.)

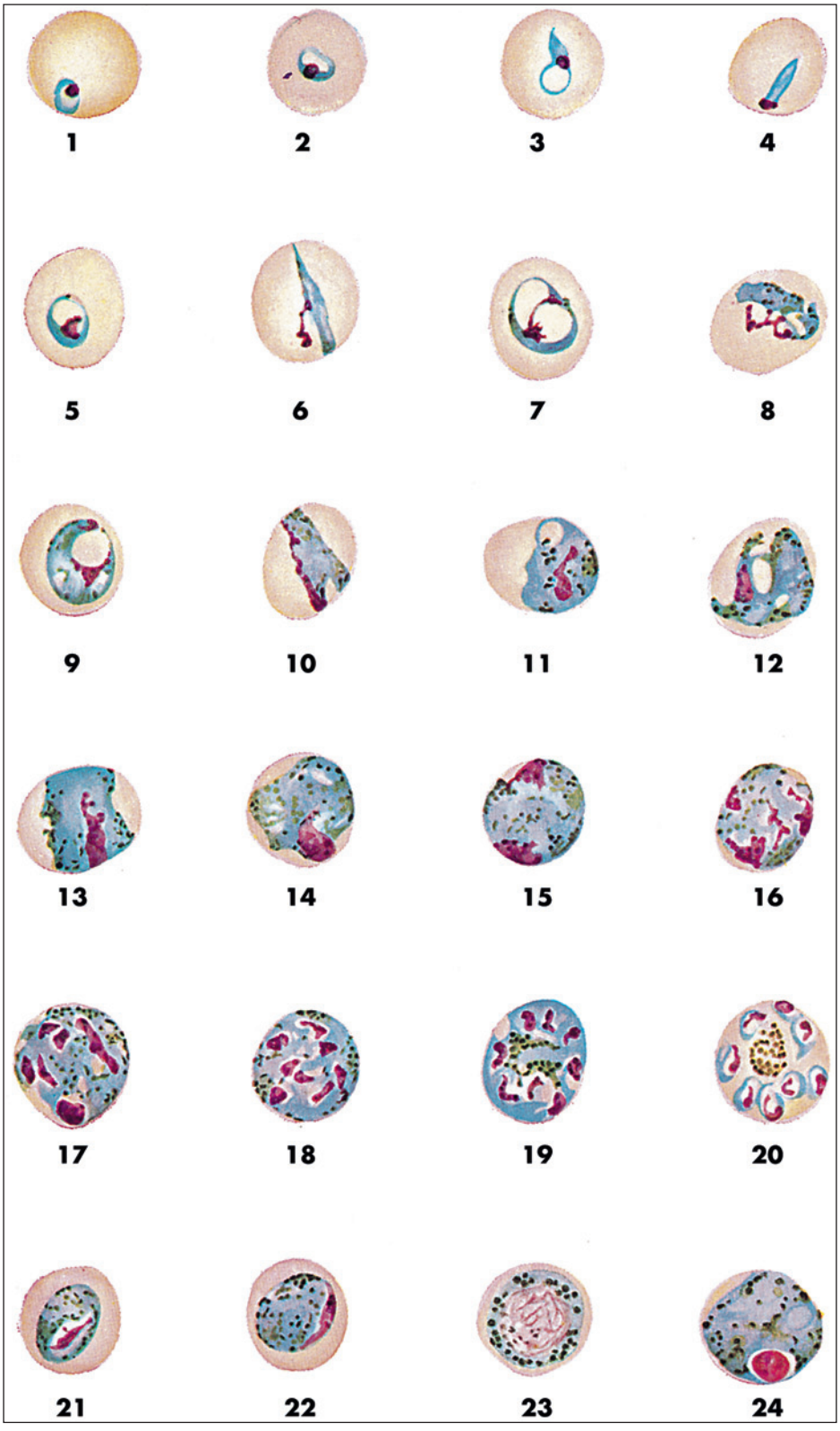


Figure 63-3 ***Plasmodium malariae.*** *1,* Young ring form trophozoite of quartan malaria. *2* to *4,* Young trophozoite forms of the parasite showing gradual increase in chromatin and cytoplasm. *5,* Developing ring form of trophozoite showing pigment granule. *6,* Early band form of trophozoite—elongate chromatin, some pigment apparent. *7* to *12,* Some forms that the developing trophozoite of quartan malaria may take. *13* and *14,* Mature trophozoites—one a band form. *15* to *19,* Phases in the development of the schizont (presegmenting schizonts). *20,* Mature schizont. *21,* Immature microgametocyte. *22,* Immature macrogametocyte. *23,* Mature microgametocyte. *24,* Mature macrogametocyte. (From Wilcox A. Manual for the microscopical diagnosis of malaria in man. Bulletin No. 180. Bethesda, Md., 1942, National Institutes of Health.)

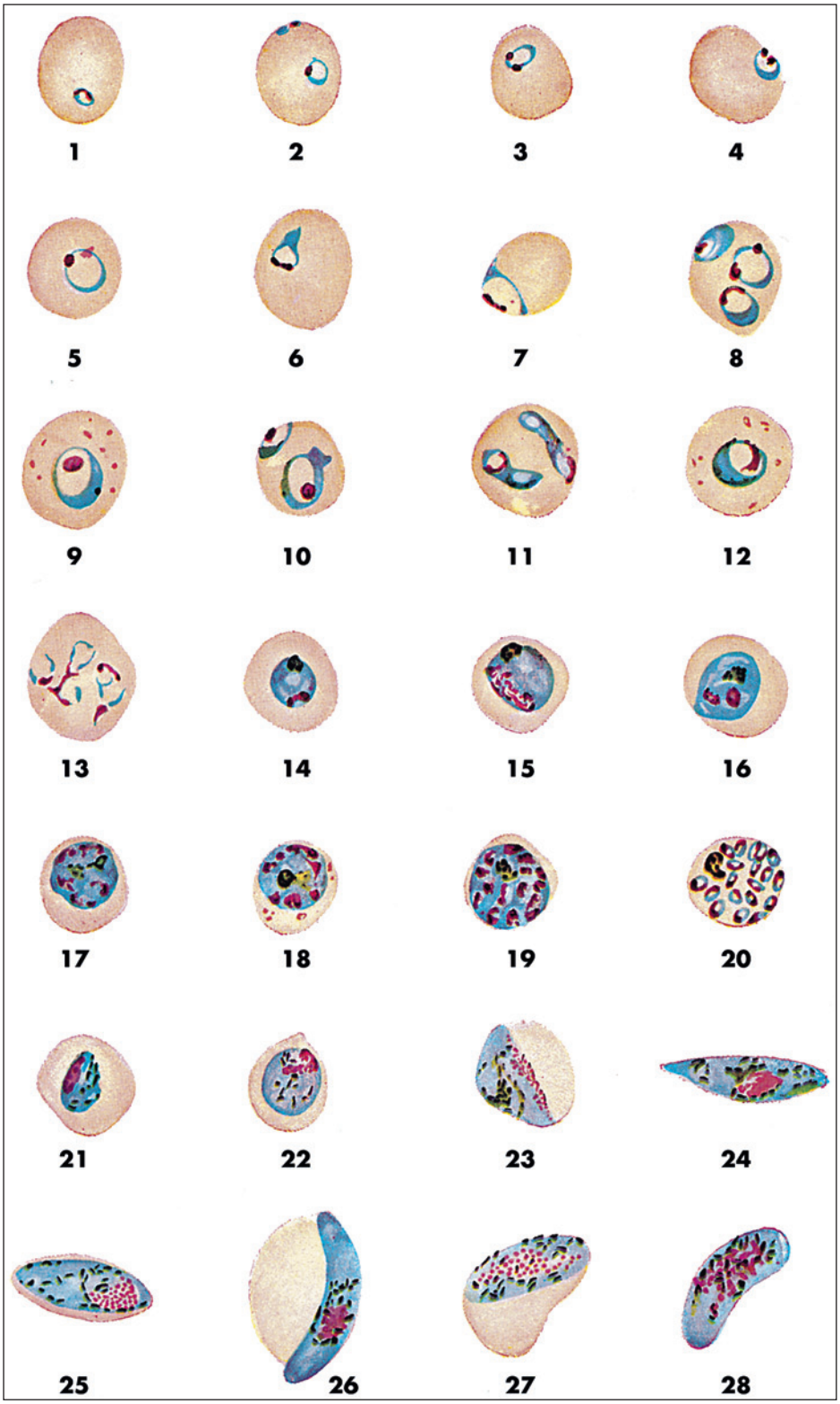


Figure 63-4 ***Plasmodium falciparum.*** *1,* Very young ring form of trophozoite. *2,* Double infection of single cell with young trophozoites—one a "marginal form," the other a "signet ring" form. *3* and *4,* Young trophozoites showing double chromatin dots. *5* to *7,* Developing trophozoite forms. *8,* Three medium trophozoites in one cell. *9,* Trophozoite showing pigment in a cell containing Maurer's dots. *10* and *11,* Two trophozoites in each of two cells, showing variation in forms that parasites may assume. *12,* Almost mature trophozoite showing haze of pigment throughout cytoplasm. Maurer's dots in the cell. *13,* Estivo-autumnal "slender forms." *14,* Mature trophozoite, showing clumped pigment. *15,* Parasite in the process of initial chromatin division. *16* to *19,* Various phases of development of the schizont (presegmenting schizonts). *20,* Mature schizont. *21* to *24,* Successive forms in development of the gametocyte—usually not found in the peripheral circulation. *25,* Immature macrogametocyte. *26,* Mature macrogametocyte. *27,* Immature microgametocyte. *28,* Mature microgametocyte. (Courtesy of National Institutes of Health, USPHS.)

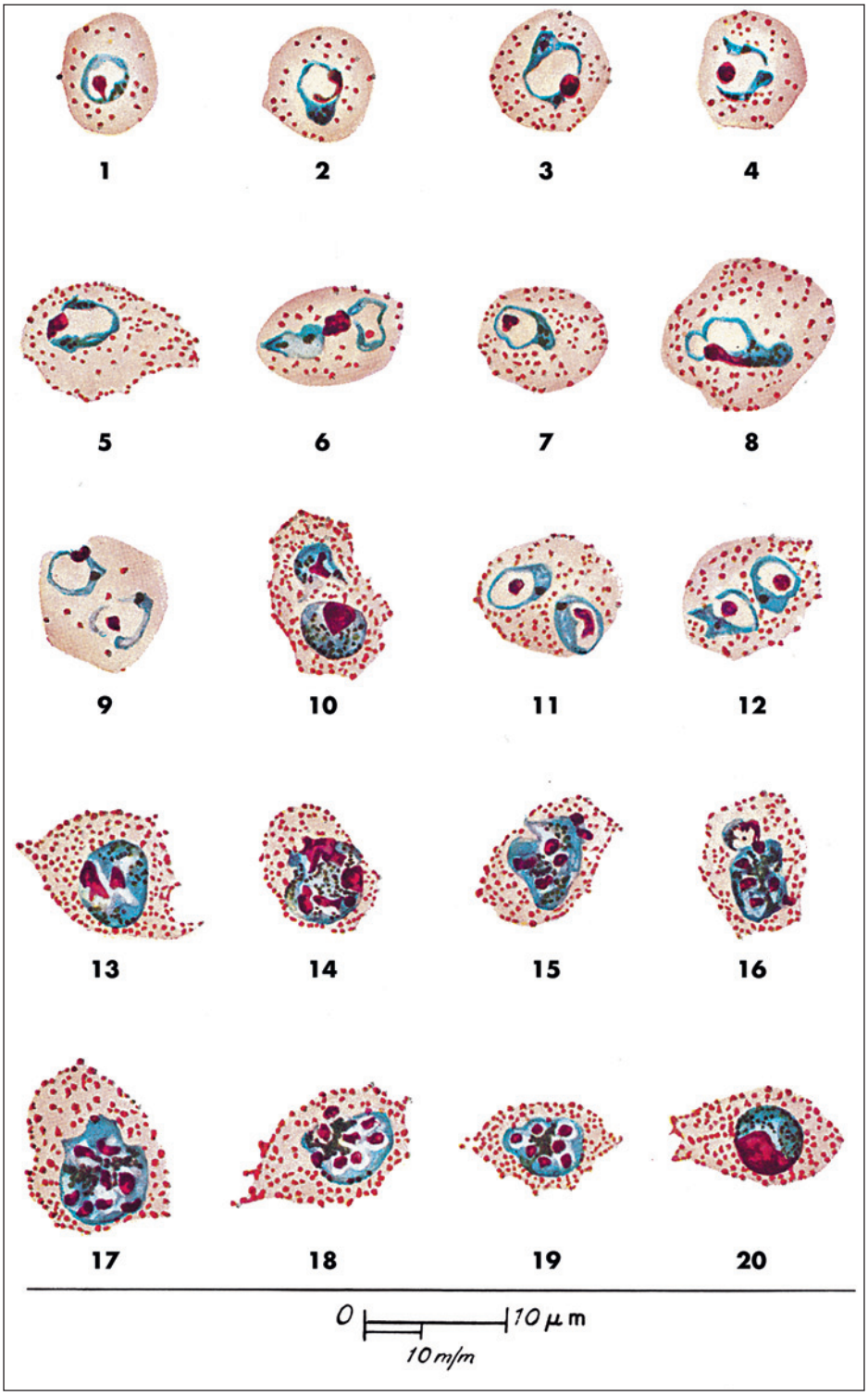


Figure 63-5 ***Plasmodium ovale.*** *1,* Young ring-shaped trophozoite. *2* to *5,* Older ring-shaped trophozoites. *6* to *8,* Older ameboid trophozoites. *9, 11,* and *12,* Doubly infected cells, trophozoites. *10,* Doubly infected cell, young gametocytes. *13,* First stage of the schizont. *14* to *19,* Schizonts, progressive stages. *20,* Mature gametocyte. Free translation of legend accompanying original plate in *Guide pratique d'examen microscopique du sang appliqué au diagnostic du paludisme* by Georges Villain. (Reproduced with permission from Biologie Medicale Supplement, 1935. Courtesy of Aimee Wilcox, National Institutes of Health Bulletin No. 180, USPHS.)

progressing to delirium, coma, and often death. Exchange transfusion may be lifesaving in severe cases of *P. falciparum* infection in which the parasitemia is ≥10% (Nielson et al, 1979; Powell & Grima, 2002).

The course of untreated malaria depends on the species. Most fatal cases of malaria are due to *P. falciparum*, although *P. knowlesi* can also cause fatalities. In nonfatal cases, the febrile paroxysms become less severe with time and the disease gradually subsides. Patients with *P. vivax* or *P. ovale* infection may have relapses after many months or, occasionally, years. Persons with *P. falciparum* and *P. malariae* infection may have symptom-free periods but suffer from sporadic recrudescences owing to persisting low-grade parasitemia. Relapses and recrudescences may be associated with changes in the host's defense mechanisms or possibly with antigenic changes in the infecting organisms.

Peripheral smears may show leukocytes that contain malaria pigment (hemozoin). Increased reticulocyte counts occur commonly and are associated with rapid erythrocyte turnover. The presence of greatly enlarged platelets may be noted on peripheral blood films and may occur as a result of their rapid turnover secondary to splenic sequestration. Malarial

infection may interfere with certain serologic tests, producing false-positive results, especially those for syphilis.

Therapy and prophylaxis of malaria have become highly complex topics because of the widespread appearance of resistance by *P. falciparum* to chloroquine and other antimalarials and, to a lesser extent, resistance by *P. vivax* to chloroquine. Also, persons who have acquired *P. vivax* or *P. ovale* malaria, or who have spent extended time in areas highly endemic for these parasites, require treatment with primaquine to eradicate hepatic hypnozoites and to prevent relapse. Use of primaquine may be dangerous in patients who have G6PD deficiency, and screening of at-risk patients before therapy is initiated may be necessary.

Diagnosis

Malaria should always be included in the differential diagnosis of fever in patients who have a history of travel to or residence in endemic areas. Given the potentially life-threatening nature of infection, testing must be performed on a STAT basis. Diagnosis usually is established by demonstrating parasites in thick and thin blood films. Blood specimens ideally are collected just before the next anticipated fever spike or at the onset of fever. Specimens drawn several hours apart sometimes may be required to demonstrate infection or to diagnose the species, because the number and morphologic stage of parasites vary during the cycle. Careful examination of thick films should reveal the presence of the parasites in almost all patients with clinically apparent malaria.

Identification of malarial parasites on thin blood films requires a systematic approach. Three major factors should be considered: appearance of infected erythrocytes, appearance of parasites, and stages found. Table 63-8 summarizes diagnostic characteristics of the species, which are illustrated in Figures 63-2 to 63-5. The size of the infected erythrocyte is a particularly useful feature for determining the infecting species; erythrocytes infected by *P. vivax* or *P. ovale* parasites often appear enlarged compared with adjacent, uninfected cells, whereas *P. malariae* and *P. falciparum* parasites are usually found in erythrocytes of normal size. In all, 20% or more of erythrocytes infected with *P. ovale* are often oval or fimbriated (having irregular projections of the cell margins), whereas less than 6% of erythrocytes infected with *P. vivax* are oval. Schüffner's stippling, noted as numerous small uniform pink granules in the erythrocyte, is usually seen in cells infected with *P. vivax* and *P. ovale*, although it may not be evident in cells infected with early ring forms or on slides that have not been stained at the appropriate pH such as the Wright-Giemsa stain, used widely in hematology laboratories (see the "Laboratory Methods" section earlier in the chapter). The presence of Schüffner's stippling is helpful because it is not seen in *P. malariae* or *P. falciparum* infection.

As trophozoites grow in the infected cells, the amount of hemoglobin in the erythrocyte decreases and hemozoin pigment accumulates. The amount and appearance of the pigment vary among species. Ring forms of all parasites may have a similar appearance, and if only occasional ring forms are found, the species may not be identifiable. Young rings of *P. falciparum* are smaller than those of the other species (one-sixth the diameter of the red blood cell, compared with one-third the diameter of the red blood cell for the other species). Rings of *P. falciparum* that have grown are similar in size to those of the other species. Trophozoites that appear to be lying on the surface of the erythrocyte or protruding from it are called *appliqué* or *accolé* forms, and are most often seen in *P. falciparum* infection. Doubly infected cells and double chromatin dots in ring trophozoites occur most commonly in *P. falciparum* infection but can occur with the other species as well.

Growing trophozoites of *P. vivax* have irregular shapes and are termed *ameboid*. Those of *P. malariae* and *P. ovale* remain compact. Mature trophozoites and schizonts of *P. falciparum* are usually sequestered in capillary beds secondary to cytoadherence to endothelial cells and are not seen in the peripheral blood except in very severe cases of infection. When schizonts are identified in the peripheral blood, determining the number of merozoites is helpful in identifying the various species. Gametocytes of *P. falciparum* are readily identified by their characteristic sausage shape. Gametocytes of *P. vivax*, *P. malariae*, and *P. ovale* have a similar shape and so are difficult to differentiate, although characteristics of infected red blood cells can aid identification.

TABLE 63-8

Comparison of *Plasmodium* Species Affecting Humans

Species	Appearance of Erythrocyte Size	Cytoplasmic Inclusions*	Parasite Cytoplasm	Appearance of Parasite Pigment	Number of Merozoites	Stages Found in Circulating Blood
Plasmodium vivax	Enlarged; maximum size (attained with mature trophozoites and schizonts) may be 1-2 times normal erythrocyte diameter	Schüffner's dots; all stages except early ring forms	Irregular, ameboid in trophozoites; has "spread out" appearance	Golden brown, inconspicuous	12-24; average is 16	All stages; wide range of stages may be seen on any given film
Plasmodium malariae	Normal to small	Ziemann's dots rarely seen	Rounded, compact trophozoites with dense cytoplasm; band-form trophozoites occasionally seen	Dark brown, coarse, conspicuous	6-12; average is 8; "rosette" schizonts occasionally seen	All stages; wide range of stages usually not seen; relatively few rings or gametocytes generally present
Plasmodium ovale	Enlarged; maximum size may be 1¼-1½ times normal red blood cell diameter; approximately 20% or more of infected red blood cells are oval and/or fimbriated (border has irregular projections)	Schüffner's dots; all stages except early ring forms	Rounded, compact trophozoites; occasionally slightly ameboid; growing trophozoites have large chromatin mass	Dark brown, conspicuous	6-14; average is 8	All stages
Plasmodium falciparum	Normal; multiply infected red blood cells are common	Maurer's clefts occasionally seen	Young rings are small, delicate, often with double chromatin dots; gametocytes are crescent or elongate	Black; coarse and conspicuous in gametocytes	6-32; average is 20-24	Rings and/or gametocytes; other stages develop in blood vessels of internal organs but are not seen in peripheral blood except in severe infection

Adapted from Smith JW, Melvin DM, Orihel TC, et al: *Diagnostic parasitology—blood and tissue parasites.* Chicago, 1976, American Society of Clinical Pathologists.
*A pH of 7.0-7.2 is optimal for visualization of cytoplasmic inclusions.

The varieties of developmental stages in the peripheral blood aid in diagnosis. In *P. falciparum* infection, ring forms predominate, and finding numerous ring forms without more mature stages serves as evidence for *P. falciparum* infection. In *P. vivax*, *P. malariae*, and *P. ovale* infections, various stages of parasites are found with some predominance of one stage depending on the phase of the cycle.

Thick films are preferred for detecting malaria infections because a greater quantity of blood is examined (see the "Laboratory Methods" section earlier in the chapter). Ring forms often have the appearance of punctuation marks rather than complete rings, and the presence of red chromatin and blue cytoplasm should be required to identify them as parasites. Schüffner's stippling still may be a helpful identifying characteristic, and it may be recognized around growing trophozoites as a pink halo rather than as distinct granules seen in thin films. The ameboid character of *P. vivax* trophozoites is not as evident in thick films, but the number of merozoites in mature schizonts is helpful. Macrogametocytes and microgametocytes cannot usually be differentiated. The distinctive sausage shape of *P. falciparum* gametocytes is still evident, although they may appear stubbier than in thin films. Gametocytes of the other species can be detected and are easily differentiated from host cell nuclei by the presence of refractile hemozoin pigment.

Mixed infections occur occasionally (about 5% of the time), but caution should be used in making such a diagnosis unless definite evidence reveals two separate populations of parasites. The most common mixed infections are *P. falciparum* and *P. vivax*. Finding gametocytes of *P. falciparum* in a person obviously infected with *P. vivax* is diagnostic.

Multiple artifacts may be confused with malarial parasites on thick and thin films. The most common artifacts on thin films are blood platelets superimposed on red blood cells. These platelets should be readily identified because they do not have a true ring form, do not show differentiation of the chromatin and cytoplasm, and do not contain pigment. Clumps of bacteria or platelets may be confused with schizonts. At times, masses of fused platelets may resemble gametocytes of *P. falciparum* but do not show the differential staining or the pigment. Precipitated stain and contaminating bacteria, fungi, or spores may also be confused with these parasites.

Species-specific serologic tests for malaria are not useful for diagnosis of acute infection but may be useful for epidemiologic surveys and for detection of infected blood donors. Such tests do not reliably differentiate current from past infection, however. Sensitive and specific IFA tests using antigens from the four human species are available from the CDC (Wilson et al, 1995). Assays for the direct detection of malarial antigens in blood are especially useful (see the "Laboratory Methods" section earlier in the chapter; Murray & Bennett, 2009).

BABESIA SPECIES (BABESIOSIS)

Similar to malarial parasites, etiologic agents of babesiosis are apicomplexan protozoa found worldwide that infect erythrocytes, often producing febrile illness of variable severity. Babesiosis is sometimes called *piroplasmosis*, reflecting its classification in the order *Piroplasmida*. Unlike malaria, babesiosis is transmitted by ticks, is found in a variety of animal species that serve as reservoirs, and is primarily a disease of temperate regions (Krause, 2002). Less commonly, babesiosis is transmitted by blood transfusion and transplacentally.

Human infection in the United States occurs predominantly in the northeastern and midwestern states, where the rodent parasite *Babesia microti* is responsible for infection (Homer et al, 2000). *Ixodes scapularis*, the "black-legged" or "deer tick," is the usual vector. *Babesia duncani* causes a smaller number of infections in northern California, Oregon, and Washington and is thought to be transmitted by the Western black-legged tick, *Ixodes pacificus* (Quick et al, 1993; Persing et al, 1995; Vannier & Krause, 2012). In Europe, babesiosis is caused primarily by *Babesia divergens*, with a smaller number of cases attributed to *Babesia venatorum* and *B. microti*. Infection with these agents is transmitted by *Ixodes ricinus*. Recently, reports of *B. divergens* and *B. divergens*–like infections in the states of Kentucky, Missouri, and Washington expand the range of known human cases in the United States (Herwaldt et al, 2004).

The spectrum of babesiosis varies from latent, subclinical infection to fulminant, hemolytic disease. Fatalities have been reported, especially in splenectomized or immunocompromised individuals. Immunocompetent persons may experience symptoms similar to those of malaria, including fever, chills, malaise, and anemia, although without recognizable periodicity. Investigation of an outbreak caused by *B. microti* on Nantucket Island in New England showed that some symptomatic patients harbored the parasite for months and others showed serologic evidence of infection without a history of clinical disease (Ruebush, 1980). Other evidence indicates that chronic subclinical infections may not be uncommon (Persing et al, 1995).

Babesia parasites multiply in erythrocytes by binary fission producing morphologically indistinguishable trophozoites and gametocytes. Although trophozoites of many species appear pear-shaped at some point in their development, those of *B. microti* usually appear as delicate ring forms that may be easily confused with those of malarial parasites, especially *P. falciparum* (Fig. 63-6, *A*) (Healy & Rubush, 1980; Homer et al, 2000). *Babesia* trophozoites can be differentiated from those of malarial parasites by the presence of multiple rings in one cell that may form a tetrad (Maltese cross) and the absence of large, growing trophozoites and morphologically distinguishable gametocytes; extracellular trophozoites may be seen in heavy infections. Also, *Babesia* forms usually have a heterogeneous appearance with round, oval, spindled, and "racket" forms coexisting on the same peripheral blood smear. Finally, *Babesia*-infected cells lack hemozoin pigment, which is present in *Plasmodium*-infected cells. History of residence in or travel to endemic areas, or of a recent tick bite, might suggest *Babesia* infection. Nucleic acid amplification tests for *Babesia* species are available from the CDC on referral from state health departments and from some commercial laboratories. Serologic tests (e.g., IFA) may also be available, but are generally not useful for detection of acute disease. Serology tests for malaria are negative in babesiosis, although patients with malaria may cross-react in the *Babesia* serologies (Wilson et al, 1995).

HEMOFLAGELLATES

The hemoflagellates of humans and animals are members of the class *Kinetoplastidea* and are characterized by the presence of a kinetoplast, a complex of abundant circular DNA within a large microchondrion, which can be seen by light microscopy when treated with Giemsa stain. Two genera important in human disease are *Trypanosoma* and *Leishmania*. Members of both genera are transmitted by arthropod vectors and have animal hosts that serve as reservoirs.

Kinetoplastids assume different morphologic forms depending on their presence in vertebrate hosts, including humans, or in their insect vectors (Fig. 63-7). The amastigote stage is spherical, is 2 to 5 μm in diameter, and displays a nucleus and kinetoplast. By definition, an external flagellum is lacking, although an axoneme (the intracellular portion of the flagellum) is apparent at the ultrastructural level. Amastigotes may be found in human or animal hosts infected with *T. cruzi* or *Leishmania* spp., where they multiply exclusively within cells. The promastigote is an elongated and slender organism with a central nucleus, an anteriorly located kinetoplast and axoneme, and a free flagellum extending from the anterior end. This stage occurs in the insect vectors of *Leishmania* and is the stage detected in culture. The epimastigote is similar to the promastigote, but the kinetoplast is found closer to the nucleus and has a small undulating membrane that becomes a free flagellum. All species of *Trypanosoma* that infect humans assume an epimastigote stage in the insect vector or in culture. Neither the promastigote nor epimastigote are seen in humans. In the trypomastigote, the kinetoplast is found at the posterior end and the flagellum forms an undulating membrane that extends the length of the cell, emerging as a free flagellum at the anterior end. Trypomastigote forms occur predominantly in the bloodstream of mammalian hosts infected with various *Trypanosoma* spp. Infectious stages found in appropriate insect vectors following transformation from the epimastigote form are known as *metacyclic trypomastigotes*.

Trypanosoma

Infections with trypanosomes include those caused by *Trypanosoma brucei* (African or Old World trypanosomiasis) and *T. cruzi* (American or New World trypanosomiasis, or Chagas disease). Both are of great importance in endemic areas. A third species, *Trypanosoma rangeli*, has been described in humans in the Americas but does not cause clinical illness. Bloodstream trypomastigotes of the *T. brucei* group (see Fig. 63-6, *B*) are up to 30 μm long with graceful curves and a small kinetoplast. Those of *T. cruzi* are somewhat shorter (20 μm) and display a larger kinetoplast. The trypomastigotes of *T. cruzi* also commonly assume a C shape, although this is a less-reliable means to differentiate them from *T. brucei* trypomastigotes.

In equatorial Africa, parasites of the *T. brucei* group infect both animals and humans and are transmitted by the bite of tsetse flies in the genus *Glossina*. Multiplication of organisms at the bite site often produces a transient chancre. East African trypanosomiasis is caused by *T. brucei rhodesiense*, which has a number of animal reservoir hosts. The disease is characterized by a rapidly progressive acute febrile illness with lymphadenopathy. Patients die before central nervous system (CNS) involvement is prominent.

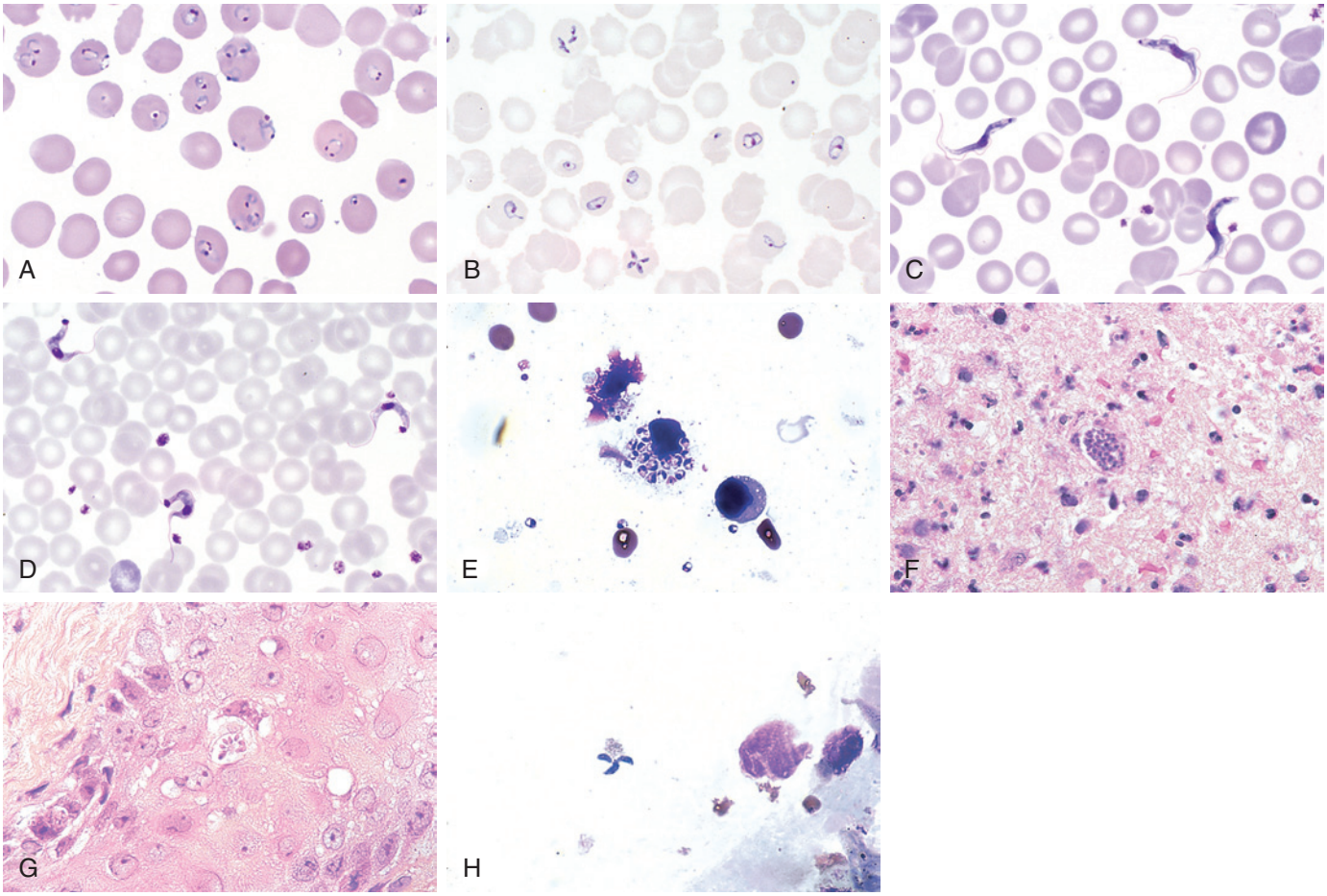


Figure 63-6 **A,** *Plasmodium falciparum* in Giemsa-stained thin blood film; note high parasitemia, multiply-infected red blood cells, and delicate ring forms with appliqué and "headphone" forms (1000×). **B,** *Babesia microti* in Giemsa-stained thin blood film; note high parasitemia, multiply-infected red blood cells with irregular forms, and Maltese cross configuration (1000×). **C,** *Trypanosoma brucei* in thin blood film; note nucleus, small kinetoplast, anterior flagellum, and undulating membrane (Giemsa stain; 1000×). **D,** *Trypanosoma cruzi* in thin blood film; note nucleus, large kinetoplast, anterior flagellum, and undulating membrane. The trypomastigotes have a characteristic *C* shape. (Giemsa stain; 1000×). **E,** *Leishmania mexicana* amastigotes in impression smear of thigh lesion (Giemsa stain; 1000×). **D,** Pseudocyst of *Toxoplasma gondii* in brain tissue (hematoxylin and eosin [H&E]; 1000×). **E,** Cutaneous rosette of *T. gondii* tachyzoites in an immunocompromised patient (H&E; 1000×). **F,** Tachyzoites of *T. gondii* recovered from a bronchoalveolar lavage specimen from an individual infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (Giemsa stain; 1000×).

The infection in western Africa is caused by *T. brucei gambiense*, which is responsible for classic African sleeping sickness. The disease has a more chronic course that begins with intermittent fevers, night sweats, and malaise. Lymphadenopathy, especially of the posterior cervical lymph nodes (Winterbottom's sign), may be pronounced. Involvement of the CNS becomes prominent with time. Somnolence, confusion, and fatigue progress, leading to stupor, coma, and eventual death. Humans are the primary reservoir for this disease (WHO, 1986; Garcia, 2007).

The diagnosis is suspected on the basis of geographic history and clinical findings. Patients show high total IgM levels in blood and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). Pleocytosis occurs with 50 to 500 mononuclear cells per microliter in CSF. The diagnosis is established by demonstrating the parasites on thick and thin films of peripheral blood, buffy coat preparations, or aspirates of lymph nodes or bone marrow, or in spun CSF that is stained with Giemsa (Van Meirvenne & le Ray, 1985; Cattand et al, 1988; NCCLS, 2000). Culture or animal inoculation may be helpful if it is available; a number of molecular methods have also been described.

American trypanosomiasis, or Chagas disease, is caused by *T. cruzi*. In its sylvatic form, the parasite occurs in the United States, Mexico, Central America, and most of South America. Human infections are common in parts of Mexico and Central and South America, where they are transmitted by kissing bugs of the family *Reduviidae*. In contrast, only rare cases of locally acquired Chagas have been documented in the United States. However, Chagas is now recognized as an important parasite in the United States due to the large number of immigrants that the country receives from endemic areas. The CDC estimates that greater than 300,000 infected individuals currently live in the United States.

Genera and species involved in transmission vary from one country to another and among different ecologic niches. Some reduviids are responsible for maintaining the sylvatic cycle in animal reservoirs, whereas others are adapted to a domiciliary life in which they infest poorly constructed houses, usually in rural areas. At the time of feeding, the reduviid bug defecates. The bug feces contain infective trypomastigotes that, as a result of scratching or rubbing, enter the body at the bite site or through intact mucosa of the mouth or conjunctiva. Infective forms actively enter nearby tissue cells, where they transform into dividing amastigotes. When the infected cell is filled with amastigotes, transformation to trypomastigotes occurs, followed by cell rupture. Trypomastigotes are released into the peripheral blood and reach distant tissues, where they can start the reproductive cycle de novo.

Chagas disease may cause acute or chronic infection. Acute disease is most common in children younger than 5 years of age and is characterized by malaise, chills, fever, hepatosplenomegaly, and myocarditis. Swelling of the tissues around the eye (Romaña's sign) may be present if inoculation of the organisms occurs on the face. Swelling of tissues at other locations following the bite of an infected reduviid is called a *chagoma*. In older individuals, the acute course is milder and often asymptomatic, and the patient remains infected for life. Chronic manifestations of the infection, including megaesophagus, megacolon, and alterations in the conduction system of the heart, are related to destruction of the effector cells of the parasympathetic system by autoantibodies. Infection can be transmitted by blood transfusion, and quiescent infections may be exacerbated by immunosuppression.

Diagnosis in the acute stage is established by demonstrating the parasite on thick and thin blood films, in buffy coat smears, or in aspirates of

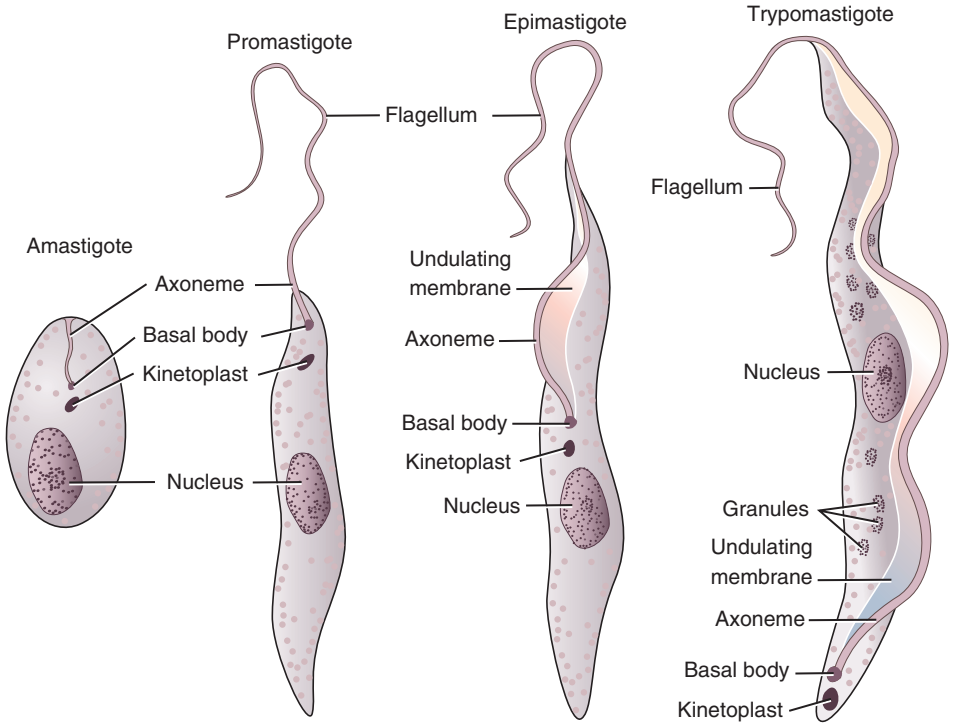


Figure 63-7 Morphology of hemoflagellates.

chagomas or enlarged lymph nodes. Aspirates, blood, and biopsy specimens can also be cultured using Novy-MacNeal-Nicolle medium (Ash & Orihel, 1987; NCCLS, 2000; Garcia, 2007; Visvesvara, 2010b). In endemic areas, xenodiagnosis (examination of the gut contents of laboratory-raised reduviids that have been allowed to feed on a patient) may be used. In the chronic stage, serodiagnosis is the method of choice. EIA, IFA, and CF tests are available, although they cannot differentiate between acute and chronic disease, and cross-reactions may occur in patients with leishmaniasis.

Leishmania

Leishmaniasis is a disease of the reticuloendothelial system caused by kinetoplastid protozoa of the genus *Leishmania*. All species that infect humans have animal reservoirs and are transmitted by sandflies belonging to the genera *Phlebotomus* in the Old World and *Lutzomyia* in the New World. The parasites assume the amastigote form in mammalian hosts and the promastigote form in insect vectors. Species of *Leishmania* cannot be differentiated by examination of amastigotes or promastigotes. Leishmaniasis may assume many different clinical forms; cutaneous, mucocutaneous, and visceral diseases are best known. The form and severity of disease vary with the infecting species, the particular host's immune status, and prior exposure (Peters & Killick-Kendrick, 1987; Cook, 2002).

Cutaneous Leishmaniasis

Old World cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sore) occurs in southern Europe, northern and eastern Africa, the Middle East, Iran, Afghanistan, India, and southern Russia. Infections are caused by *Leishmania tropica*, *Leishmania major*, and *Leishmania aethiopica*, although *L. donovani* and *Leishmania infantum* may also produce cutaneous lesions. *L. tropica* produces the urban or dry ulcer, which is more long-lived than the rural or wet ulcer of *L. major*. Ulcers caused by these species usually develop on an exposed area of the body and heal spontaneously. Infection produces long-lasting immunity. *L. tropica* may become viscerotropic, as was demonstrated in military personnel who participated in Operation Desert Storm (Magill et al, 1993). *L. aethiopica* causes a more aggressive cutaneous infection, which in some individuals metastasizes to produce mucosal lesions or diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis, the latter of which is characterized by multiple skin nodules resembling lepromatous leprosy.

Cutaneous leishmaniasis of the New World is caused by many species, including *Leishmania mexicana*, *Leishmania braziliensis*, *Leishmania amazonensis*, *Leishmania venezuelensis*, *Leishmania garnhami*, *Leishmania pifanoi*, *Leishmania peruviana*, *Leishmania panamensis*, *and Leishmania guyanensis*, among others (Garcia, 2007). Lesions produced by *L. mexicana* often involve the earlobe (chiclero ulcer), are self-limiting, and are not known to metastasize to the mucosa. However, *L. mexicana* and *L. amazonensis* may produce diffuse cutaneous lesions similar to those produced by *L. aethiopica*. A focus of cutaneous leishmaniasis exists in the southern part of Texas, where infections are caused by one or more species (Gustafson et al, 1985). *L. peruviana*, which has been found on the western slopes of the Peruvian Andes, causes an infection called *uta*, a benign cutaneous lesion that occurs predominantly in children. *L. peruviana* is acquired in the home, where the main reservoirs are domestic dogs. This epidemiologic situation contrasts with other cutaneous leishmaniases, which usually are acquired in forests and have wild animals as reservoir hosts.

Mucocutaneous Leishmaniasis

Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (espundia) is caused primarily by *L. braziliensis* and species in the *Viannia* subgenus, which produce typical cutaneous lesions that generally are more aggressive, last longer, and often disseminate to mucous membranes, especially in the nasal, oral, or pharyngeal areas. In these locations, they may produce disfiguring lesions secondary to erosion of soft tissues and cartilage. *L. braziliensis* is distributed in Mexico and Central and South America.

Visceral Leishmaniasis

Visceral leishmaniasis of the Old World occurs sporadically over a wide geographic area and is caused by *L. donovani* or by *L. infantum*. *L. donovani* predominates in Africa, India, and Asia, and *L. infantum* predominates in the Mediterranean region and the Middle East, although overlapping ranges occur. New World visceral leishmaniasis is caused by *L. chagasi* and occurs sporadically throughout Central and South America. On occasion, some species that cause cutaneous disease have been responsible for visceral disease, as demonstrated in some troops who participated in Operation Desert Storm (Magill et al, 1993). In some areas, humans may serve as the disease reservoir, although a variety of animals, including dogs and cats, usually assume this role.

The infection is usually benign and often subclinical, although some individuals, especially young children and malnourished individuals, have marked involvement of the viscera, especially liver, spleen, bone marrow, and lymph nodes. In some cases, death occurs after months to years unless it is treated appropriately. The infection is called *kala-azar* in India, in reference to the darkening of the skin. Visceral leishmaniasis also is an opportunistic infection in individuals with concurrent human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and the condition responds poorly to therapy in such circumstances (Medrano et al, 1992; Strickland, 2000; Garcia, 2007).

Diagnosis of Leishmaniasis

The diagnosis usually is established by visualization of amastigotes in smears, imprints, or biopsies, or by growth of promastigotes in culture. In integumentary leishmaniasis, the border of the most active lesion should be biopsied, and the fresh biopsy should be used to make imprints. A smear should be prepared by making a 2- to 3-mm incision at the border of the ulcer and recovering small amounts of tissue from the cut surfaces with the scalpel blade. Both the imprint and the smear should be treated with Giemsa stain. Specimens that may be submitted when visceral leishmaniasis is suspected include buffy coat preparations, lymph node and bone marrow aspirates, and spleen and liver biopsies (Garcia, 2007).

A culture is desirable because it is more sensitive and allows determination of the species or subspecies, a practice that may help in clinical management of the patient. Biopsy or aspirate specimens collected aseptically are cultured in Novy-MacNeal-Nicolle medium or in Schneider's *Drosophila* medium supplemented with fetal calf serum (Visvesvara, 2010b). Cultures usually begin to show promastigotes in 2 to 5 days but should be held for 4 weeks. The CDC provides culture collection kits after consultation and will perform culture and species identification using PCR and sequencing.

Amastigotes found in imprints, smears, and tissue sections are recognized by their size (2 to 4 µm) and the presence of delicate cytoplasm, a nucleus, and a kinetoplast (see Fig. 63-6, *C*). In tissue sections, they may appear smaller because of shrinkage during fixation. Amastigotes must be differentiated from other intracellular organisms, including yeast cells of *Histoplasma capsulatum* and trophozoites of *T. gondii*. *Leishmania* spp. have a kinetoplast and do not stain with Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) or periodic acid–Schiff (PAS). In contrast, *Histoplasma* lack the kinetoplast, and the cell wall stains with PAS and GMS. According to one study (Weigle et al, 1987), the sensitivity of histologic sections stained with hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) is 14%; imprints, 19%; cultures, 58%; and all methods combined, 67%.

TOXOPLASMA GONDII

T. gondii is a protozoan parasite of the phylum *Apicomplexa* that has a worldwide distribution in humans and in domestic and wild animals, especially carnivores. Infection in immunocompetent persons is generally asymptomatic or mild, but immunocompromised patients may experience serious complications. Infection in utero may result in serious congenital infection with sequelae or stillbirth (Remington et al, 2005).

The sexual stage in the life cycle of this coccidian parasite is completed in the intestinal epithelium of cats and other felines, which serve exclusively as definitive hosts. During this enteroepithelial cycle, asexual schizogony and sexual gametogony occur, leading to the development of immature oocysts that are passed in the feces. Oocysts mature to the infective stage (which contain two sporocysts with four sporozoites each) in the environment in 2 to 21 days. Ingestion of infective oocysts may lead to infection of a wide variety of susceptible vertebrate hosts in which actively growing trophozoites (tachyzoites) may infect any nucleated cells. Proliferation of tachyzoites results in cell death and injury to the host during acute infection. Once immunity has developed, the organisms form tissue cysts that may eventually contain hundreds or thousands of slowly growing bradyzoites. The presence of tissue cysts is characteristic of chronic infection. All stages of the life cycle occur in felines, but only trophozoite and cyst stages occur in humans and other intermediate hosts.

Humans acquire infection with *T. gondii* by ingestion of inadequately cooked meat, especially lamb or pork, that contains tissue cysts or by ingestion of infective oocysts from material contaminated by cat feces. Outbreaks have occurred from inhaling contaminated dust in an indoor riding stable (Teutch et al, 1979) and from drinking contaminated water or unpasteurized goat's milk (Benenson et al, 1982; Sacks et al, 1982; Bowie et al, 1997). Transmission via blood transfusion, organ transplantation, and transplacentally to the developing fetus also can occur.

Most acute infections are asymptomatic or mimic other infectious diseases in which fever and lymphadenopathy are prominent such as infectious mononucleosis. Congenital infection may occur when the mother develops acute infection during gestation. The risk for infection to the neonate is unrelated to the presence or absence of symptoms in the mother, but severity of infection depends on the stage of gestation at which it is acquired. Intrauterine death, microcephaly, or hydrocephaly with intracranial calcifications may develop if infection is acquired in the first half of pregnancy. Infections in the second half of pregnancy are usually asymptomatic at birth, although fever, hepatosplenomegaly, and jaundice may appear. Chorioretinitis, psychomotor retardation, and convulsive disorders may appear months or years later (Remington et al, 2005; Wilson et al, 2007).

In immunosuppressed individuals, especially those with AIDS, infection with *T. gondii* usually manifests with CNS involvement (Luft & Remington, 1988). Other possible clinical and pathologic manifestations include pneumonitis, myocarditis, retinitis, pancreatitis, or orchitis (Luft, 1989; Schnapp et al, 1992). Toxoplasmosis may be difficult to diagnose clinically and is often discovered at autopsy (Gutierrez, 2000). These infections usually result from reactivation of a latent infection acquired months or years before, but occasionally result from a primary infection.

Diagnosis of toxoplasmosis may be established by examination of tissues, blood, or body fluids (Wilson et al, 2007). Demonstration of tachyzoites or tissue cysts is definitive but may prove difficult to demonstrate in H&E-stained sections; fluorescence or immunohistochemical stains, if available, are useful. Giemsa is good for staining smears of body fluids and tissue imprints. Organisms may be demonstrated by inoculating appropriate material into tissue culture or uninfected mice, although this method is not widely available. Recovery in routine viral cultures also has been described but requires extended incubation (Shepp et al, 1985). Isolation of organisms from blood or body fluid serves as evidence of acute infection, whereas recovery from tissues may reflect chronic infection. In smears, tachyzoites are crescent-shaped or oval, measuring approximately 3 × 7 µm; cysts measure up to 30 µm in diameter and are usually spherical, except in muscle fibers, where they appear elongate (see Fig. 63-6, *D* to *F*).

Use of PCR technology is highly sensitive and specific in detecting toxoplasmic encephalitis, disseminated disease, and intrauterine infection; testing is available from most reference laboratories, the CDC, and select research laboratories. PCR is now an important component of testing for pregnant women, neonates, and immunocompromised hosts (Grover et al, 1990; Cazenave et al, 1991; Parmley et al, 1992; Weiss, 1995; Wilson et al, 2007; Vasoo & Pritt, 2013).

Serology remains the primary approach in establishing a diagnosis of toxoplasmosis in immunocompetent hosts (NCCLS, 2004; Wilson et al, 2007). The Sabin-Feldman dye test and the IFA test are standards against which other methods are compared, although the former is performed in only a few centers. EIA tests are commercially available and generally provide results similar to those of IFA. Antibodies appear in 1 to 2 weeks, and titers peak at 6 to 8 weeks. Tests for IgM-specific antibodies are especially useful for diagnosis of congenital and acute infection, but knowledge of test limitations, specifically the occurrence of false-positive reactions, is extremely important. The persistence of IgM-specific antibodies, sometimes for 1 year or longer, also is problematic and must be interpreted in conjunction with IgG antibody results. Because many persons have had asymptomatic infection, low IgG titers have little significance. Titers in patients with chronic ocular infection may also be low. Immunocompromised patients such as those with AIDS who have active *Toxoplasma* infection almost always have preexisting specific IgG antibodies, although titers may be low, and IgM antibodies are infrequently detected. As discussed in the "Serologic Diagnosis" section earlier in the chapter, IgG avidity testing may be useful for differentiating between acute and remote infection. Interpretation of IgG and IgM antibody titers varies by test method and by manufacturer. The laboratory performing the test should provide the necessary interpretive criteria (NCCLS, 2004).

OPPORTUNISTIC FREE-LIVING AMEBAE

Amebae of the genera *Naegleria*, *Acanthamoeba*, *Balamuthia*, and *Sappinia* are inhabitants of soil, water, and other environmental substrates, where they feed on other microscopic organisms, especially bacteria and yeasts. All four genera have been associated with opportunistic infection of the CNS, and *Acanthamoeba* causes keratitis (Martinez, 1985; Marciano-Cabral, 1988; Ubelaker, 1991; Kilvington & White, 1994; Visvesvara, 2007; Qvarnstrom et al, 2009).

Primary amebic meningoencephalitis, caused by the ameboflagellate *Naegleria fowleri*, typically affects children and young adults who have been swimming, jumping, or diving in warm freshwater lakes or pools. The ameboflagellate enters the brain via the cribriform plate and olfactory bulbs and reaches the frontal lobes, where it produces an acute hemorrhagic meningoencephalitis that is usually fatal within 1 week of onset of symptoms. The disease has an extremely poor prognosis, despite vigorous therapeutic intervention. Diagnosis is usually established at autopsy examination by the finding of trophozoites (cysts are rarely seen) in tissue sections (Fig. 63-8, *A*). Antemortem diagnosis is made occasionally by identifying typical trophozoites in CSF on direct wet mounts, in stained preparations, or in culture. Trophozoites measure 10 to 35 µm; have large,

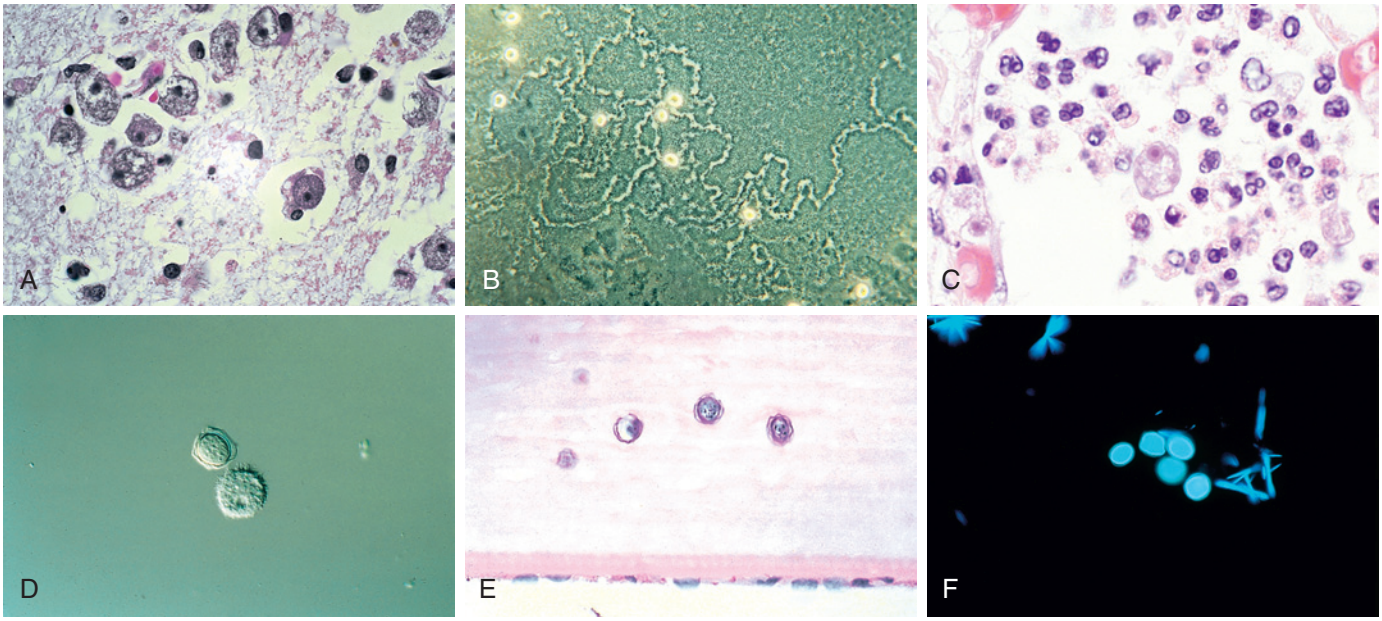


Figure 63-8 **A,** *Naegleria fowleri* trophozoites in primary amebic meningoencephalitis (H&E; 100×). **B,** *Acanthamoeba* sp. culture showing trails left by motile trophozoites on a lawn of *Escherichia coli* (phase contrast microscopy; 100×). **C,** *Acanthamoeba* sp. trophozoites within a cutaneous lesion in an individual infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (Giemsa stain; 1000×). **D,** *Acanthamoeba* sp. trophozoite and cyst (differential interference contrast microscopy; 400×). **E,** Double-walled cysts of *Acanthamoeba* sp. within corneal stroma (H&E; 1000×). **F,** Cysts of *Acanthamoeba* sp. stained with Calcofluor white (epifluorescence microscopy; 400×).

round, central karyosomes; and if exposed to warm distilled water, convert to flagellated forms in 1 to 2 hours. Cysts are spherical, measuring 7 to 15 µm in diameter. Culture usually is performed on nonnutrient agar plates (1.5% agar, 0.5% sodium chloride, pH 6.6 to 7.0) seeded with a lawn of heat-killed or living *Escherichia coli* (Visvesvara, 2010c). Amebae ingest the bacteria, leaving tracks in the bacterial lawn, which may be seen under low-power magnification using reduced light (Fig. 63-8, *B*).

Granulomatous amebic meningoencephalitis (GAE) may be caused by several species of *Acanthamoeba*, including *Acanthamoeba castellani*, *Acanthamoeba culbertsoni*, *Acanthamoeba polyphaga*, and *Acanthamoeba astronyxis*, among others (Marciano-Cabral & Cabral, 2003). It is usually a subacute or chronic opportunistic infection of chronically ill, debilitated, and immunosuppressed individuals, leading to death weeks to months following onset of symptoms. Infection is thought to spread hematogenously from primary foci in skin, pharynx, or the respiratory tract. Systemic infections occur in individuals with AIDS and may present as ulcerative skin lesions, subcutaneous abscesses, or erythematous nodules (Fig. 63-8, *C*) (Tan et al, 1993). Exposure to fresh water is not necessary because cysts of *Acanthamoeba* readily become airborne and may be recovered from the throat and nasal passages (Wang & Feldman, 1967; Lawande et al, 1979). The pathologic reaction in tissues is granulomatous, with trophozoites predominating in viable tissue, and cysts predominating in areas of necrosis. Diagnosis usually is established at autopsy, but organisms may be recognized in brain biopsies or recovered using the culture technique described for *Naegleria*. *Acanthamoeba* trophozoites are somewhat larger than *Naegleria*, measuring 15 to 45 µm, and display needlelike filamentous projections from the cell known as *acanthopodia*. Cysts measure 10 to 25 µm and are double-walled, displaying a wrinkled outer wall (ectocyst) and a polygonal, stellate, or round inner wall (endocyst) (Fig. 63-8, *D*). Identification to the species level is problematic and reflects uncertainty as to the validity of the 18 or more described species, although it is usually not required for clinical management. Currently, genotyping is the preferred approach used in differentiating types of *Acanthamoeba* (Marciano-Cabral & Cabral, 2003). Immunofluorescence and immunoperoxidase techniques may prove useful in identifying and differentiating species and are available from the CDC (Visvesvara, 2007).

GAE may also be caused by leptomyxid amebae, specifically *Balamuthia mandrillaris* (Visvesvara et al, 1993). Morphologically, *Balamuthia* cannot be differentiated from *Acanthamoeba* by routine histology, although differences may be detected at the ultrastructural level. These organisms are antigenically distinct and may be identified using specific monoclonal or polyclonal antisera in DFA or immunoperoxidase assays (Visvesvara, 2007). *Balamuthia* do not grow on agar plates used for *Naegleria* and *Acanthamoeba*, but they have been recovered in tissue culture using mammalian cell lines. A single case of encephalitis caused by *Sappinia (S. pedata)*, another free-living ameba, was recently described and identified by a real-time PCR assay (Qvarnstrom et al, 2009).

Acanthamoeba keratitis is an increasingly recognized painful infection of the cornea that is most likely to occur in persons who use daily-wear or extended-wear soft contact lenses or who have experienced trauma to the cornea (Anuran et al, 1987; Kilvington & White, 1994; Marciano-Cabral & Cabral, 2003). Incomplete or infrequent disinfection and use of homemade saline and multipurpose solutions are known risk factors for acquiring the infection (Stehr-Green & Bailey, 1990; Verani et al, 2009). The disease is characterized by development of a paracentral ring infiltrate of the corneal stroma, which progresses to ulceration and possible perforation, with loss of the eye. The infection may be confused with fungal, bacterial, or herpetic keratitis but is characteristically refractory to commonly used antimicrobials. Keratoplasty has been used routinely in management of this disease, although recent advances in medical therapy have been reported (Varga et al, 1993; Dart et al, 2009). Diagnosis usually is established by demonstrating amebic trophozoites or cysts in corneal scrapings or biopsies (Fig. 63-8, *E*). A variety of permanent stains can be used, including Giemsa, PAS, and trichrome. Use of the fluorochrome Calcofluor white is especially helpful in recognizing amebic cysts (Fig. 63-8, *F*) (Marines et al, 1987; Garcia, 2010). While cultures (described earlier) provide increased sensitivity over staining methods and are often available from clinical laboratories, the sensitivity achieved by PCR may equal or exceed that of culture (Boggild et al, 2009).

INTESTINAL AND UROGENITAL PROTOZOA AND MICROSPORIDIA

Protozoal groups inhabiting the intestinal tract of humans include amebae, flagellates, ciliates, and coccidia, not all of which are pathogens. Microsporidia also inhabit the human intestinal tract. They were historically grouped with the intestinal protozoa but are now known to be highly specialized fungi. Since testing for the microsporidia still typically occurs in the parasitology laboratory, they will be covered in this chapter.

In a review of fecal specimens submitted to state health department laboratories, *G. lamblia* was present in 7.2%, *E. histolytica* in 0.9%, *D. fragilis* in 0.5%, and *Cryptosporidium* spp. in 0.2% of specimens. Nonpathogenic protozoa were found in approximately 10.7% of specimens (Kappus et al, 1994). Most intestinal infections with protozoa and microsporidia are thought to be acquired by fecal-oral contamination directly from food handlers, or indirectly via contaminated water.

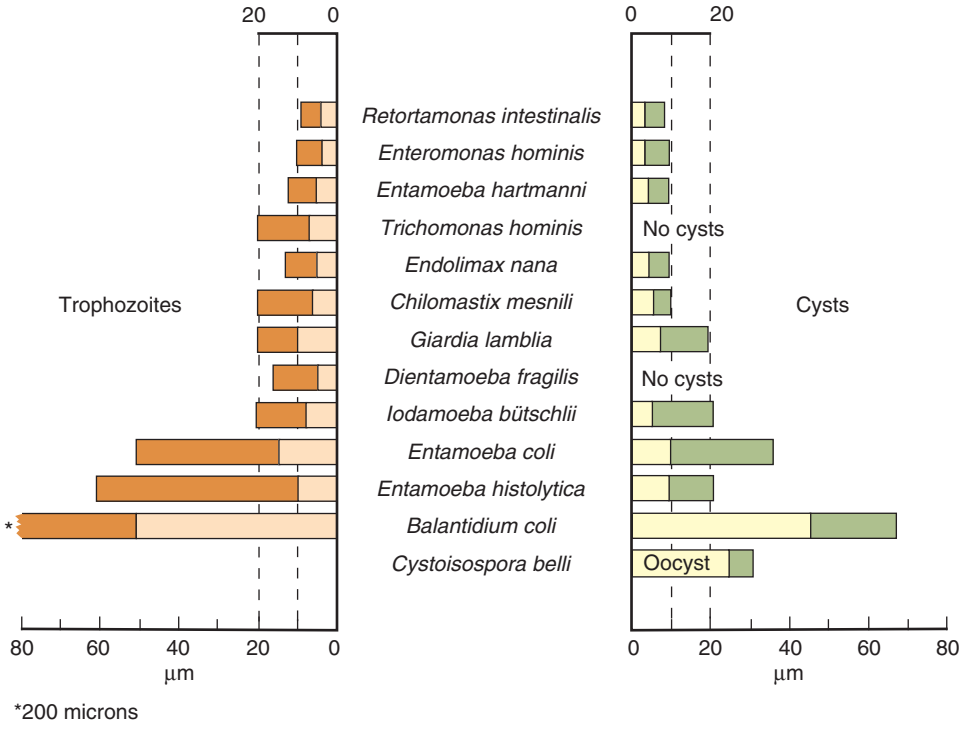


Figure 63-9 **Size ranges of intestinal protozoa.** (*Balantidium coli* trophozoites may measure up to 200 µm.)

For most laboratorians, identification of intestinal protozoa and microsporidia is one of the more difficult aspects of parasitology. These organisms are small, and pathogenic species must be differentiated from nonpathogenic species and from inflammatory cells, epithelial cells, yeasts, pollen, and other confusing objects. Numerous characteristics assist in identifying intestinal protozoa. Size is helpful (Fig. 63-9), and a properly calibrated ocular micrometer must be available. Differentiation of amebae from flagellates in wet mounts of fresh material is relatively easy because of the typical pseudopod extension seen with amebae, whereas flagellates move more rapidly and in a so-called *falling leaf*, *darting*, or *tumbling* fashion.

Number and size of nuclei and pattern of chromatin distribution, best seen in permanent stained preparations, are also useful. Cytoplasmic characteristics include fibrils and other special structures typical of flagellates, ingested materials in amebic trophozoites, and glycogen masses and chromatoid bodies in amebic cysts. Flagellates generally are elongated and tapered, with a nucleus or nuclei at one end.

During examination by any method, both nuclear and cytoplasmic characteristics should be assessed from a number of individual organisms to complete the identification. When reporting the presence of two or more species in a sample, the observer should be able to define distinct populations of organisms to prevent confusion with an occasional organism with an atypical appearance.

Trophozoites predominate in liquid stool but degenerate within 1 hour after passage unless they are placed into preservatives. Cysts predominate in formed stool and are more resistant to degeneration. Both forms may be seen in direct wet mounts prepared from fresh feces. Formalin does not preserve trophozoites well, and they may be missed unless permanent stained smears are prepared. Definitive identification should be made on examination of permanent stained slides.

AMEBAE AND *BLASTOCYSTIS HOMINIS*

Three genera of amebae may inhabit the intestinal tract of humans: *Entamoeba*, *Endolimax*, and *Iodamoeba*. Cysts are ingested and excyst in the small intestine. Resulting trophozoites proliferate by binary fission in the lumen of the colon. Both cysts and trophozoites may be passed in feces, but only mature cysts are infective. *E. histolytica* is the only amebic species capable of invading tissues and causing disease.

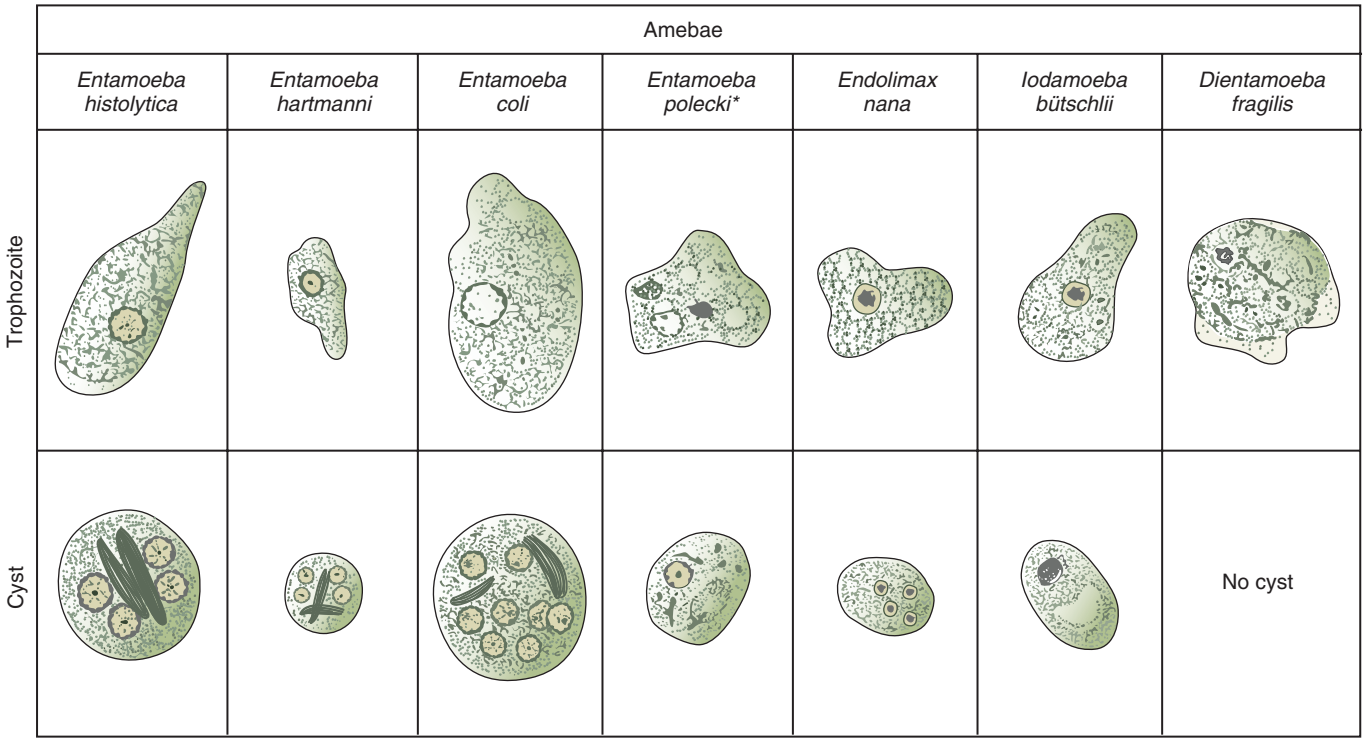
The genus *Entamoeba*, characterized by the presence of chromatin on the nuclear membrane, includes *E. histolytica*, the etiologic agent of amebiasis; *E. dispar*, a nonpathogenic species morphologically identical to *E. histolytica*, *E. hartmanni*, and *Entamoeba coli*, which are commonly found commensal species; and *Entamoeba polecki*, which is occasionally found in people who have contact with pigs (Fig. 63-10) (Levin & Armstrong, 1970; Gay et al, 1985). More recently, *E. moshkovskii* and *E. bangladeshi* have also been identified in human stool specimens and are indistinguishable from *E. histolytica*. Their potential pathogenicity is unknown at this time. *Entamoeba gingivalis*, which does not have a known cyst stage, may inhabit the oral cavity of people with poor oral hygiene (Dao et al, 1983). *E. polecki*, *E. moshkovskii*, *E. bangladeshi*, and *E. gingivalis* are seen infrequently and are not described further. *Endolimax nana* and *I. bütschlii* are nonpathogenic species. *Dientamoeba fragilis* now is recognized as a flagellate, although it lacks external flagella, and is discussed with the flagellates in the text but may be found with amebae in tables and figures because it is morphologically similar to them (Garcia, 2007).

Entamoeba histolytica

E. histolytica may cause various clinical diseases, most commonly amebic dysentery, amebic colitis, and amebic liver abscesses (Beaver et al, 1984; Ravdin, 1988; Strickland, 2000). General host defense mechanisms, previous contact with the parasite, diet, and the strain of *E. histolytica* may influence the severity of infection.

Amebic dysentery, which occurs infrequently in the United States, is an acute disease characterized by bloody diarrhea with abdominal cramping. Invasion of the intestinal mucosa occurs, producing ulceration that may lead to perforation and peritonitis. The more common form of disease seen in this country is amebic colitis, which may mimic ulcerative colitis and other forms of inflammatory bowel disease. Symptoms generally are less severe than in amebic dysentery but may include nonbloody diarrhea, constipation, abdominal cramping, and weight loss. Small, pinpoint mucosal ulcerations may develop and expand within the submucosa to form flask-shaped ulcers. All of the colon may be involved or only a portion, most commonly the cecum, rectosigmoid, or ascending colon.

Amebic liver abscess is the most common form of extraintestinal amebiasis, occurring in approximately 5% of patients with a history of intestinal amebiasis. Symptoms include fever and right upper quadrant pain. These liver abscesses are usually diagnosed by radiographic scans, ultrasound, and serologic tests. Amebae are present in the stool in less than half of patients at the time liver abscess is manifest. Amebic hepatitis, characterized by an enlarged, tender liver in someone with intestinal amebiasis, may occur in some cases. Its pathogenesis is poorly understood. Rarely, amebic abscesses appear in other organs, such as the lung, brain, or skin, by hematogenous spread from the intestine or by contiguous spread from a liver abscess. Masses of granulomatous tissue, known as *amebomas*, may form in



*Rare, probably of animal origin

Figure 63-10 **Amebae found in human stool specimens.** (*Dientamoeba fragilis* is a flagellate.)

response to the presence of amebae, which in the intestine may cause a so-called *napkin ring lesion* that could be mistaken for a carcinoma.

Epidemiology

Most infections with *E. histolytica* are acquired by ingestion of contaminated food or water, although one outbreak was caused by a contaminated colonic irrigation machine (Istre et al, 1982). Pseudo-outbreaks of amebiasis result from laboratory misidentification of inflammatory cells, other amebae, and fecal debris as *E. histolytica* (Krogstad et al, 1978; CDC, 1985). Amebiasis is relatively uncommon in the United States, and is seen primarily in travelers and immigrants. In contrast, infection with the morphologically indistinguishable ameba, *E. dispar*, is thought to outnumber *E. histolytica* infection in the order of 9:1 (Pritt & Clark, 2008).

Diagnosis

Examination of a series of stool specimens should be sufficient for diagnosis of intestinal amebiasis in most cases, although differentiation of *E. histolytica* from *E. dispar*, *E. moshkovskii*, and *E. bangladeshi* requires additional testing. The only exception to this is when ingested erythrocytes are seen within trophozoites, since this is considered to be pathognomonic for invasive *E. histolytica* infection. If the patient has been given antibiotics or contrast media, the amebic infection may be masked for a period of time. Aspirated material from liver abscesses can be examined microscopically to detect trophozoites. The last material aspirated is most likely to contain trophozoites and may be examined by direct microscopic examination or permanently stained slides. If tissue is available, sections may show organisms that stain prominently with PAS (Fig. 63-11, *C*).

Culture procedures (Diamond, 1988; CLSI, 2005; Visvesvara, 2010a) are not widely used for diagnosis but are useful for research and are essential for determining pathogenicity based on zymodemes. EIA antigen detection tests that are specific, sensitive, and able to differentiate *E. histolytica* from *E. dispar* are commercially available (see Table 63-5) (CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007). Use of amplification techniques and DNA probes are also useful for differentiating *E. histolytica* from *E. dispar* (Samuelson et al, 1989; Bendall & Chiodini, 1993; Weiss, 1995), but are not widely available at this time.

Serologic tests (see Table 63-6) are most useful for diagnosis of extraintestinal infection because approximately 95% of patients with amebic liver abscess are seropositive. This decreases to 70% for patients with active intestinal infection and to 10% in asymptomatic carriers. Detectable titers may persist for months or years after successful treatment (Rosenblatt et al, 1995; Wilson et al, 1995).

Trophozoites of *E. histolytica* vary from 10 to 60 µm in diameter, with the commensal forms usually 15 to 20 µm and the invasive forms greater than 20 µm in greatest dimension (Table 63-9; Figs. 63-9 to 63-12). In direct wet mounts, trophozoites show progressive motility via rapidly formed hyaline pseudopodia that demonstrate a sharp demarcation between endoplasm and ectoplasm; unstained nuclei are not visible. In invasive disease, some trophozoites contain ingested erythrocytes (see Fig. 63-11, *C*), a feature diagnostic of *E. histolytica* infection. In stained preparations, the peripheral nuclear chromatin is evenly distributed along the nuclear membrane as fine granules. The karyosome is small and is often centrally located, with fine fibrils, which generally are not visible, attaching it to the nuclear membrane. Variations in nuclear structure occur, with some karyosomes located eccentrically and peripheral chromatin irregularly distributed. As mentioned previously, the only characteristic that is pathognomonic for *E. histolytica* is phagocytosis of erythrocytes, which very rarely occurs with other species. The cytoplasm is finely granular, and in invasive organisms, no inclusions or only erythrocyte inclusions are seen. Noninvasive organisms may contain ingested bacteria. In degenerating organisms, the cytoplasm may become vacuolated and nuclei may show abnormal chromatin clumping.

Cysts of *E. histolytica* are spherical and measure 10 to 20 µm (usually 12 to 15 µm) in diameter (Table 63-10; see Figs. 63-9, 63-10, and 63-12). The rounded precyst stage has a single nucleus but does not have a refractile cyst wall. As it matures, the cyst develops four nuclei, each approximately one-sixth the diameter of the cyst. Cyst nuclei appear similar to those of trophozoites, but their smaller size makes them less useful as differentiating features. The cyst cytoplasm may contain glycogen vacuoles and chromatoid bodies with blunted or rounded ends. The number and size of nuclei and the appearance of chromatoid bodies are important diagnostic criteria for identifying cysts.

Those laboratories that do not use one of the immunologic or molecular methods to differentiate *E. histolytica* from *E. dispar*, and that rely exclusively on morphologic analysis, must use a reporting format that takes the differing technologies into consideration. Thus, a report of "*E. histolytica/E. dispar*" would be most appropriate in the latter circumstance.

Nonpathogenic Amebae

Laboratory personnel must be able to differentiate nonpathogenic or commensal intestinal amebae from *E. histolytica/E. dispar* and *D. fragilis* (a flagellate), which are potential pathogens. Identification characteristics, best visualized in permanent stained sections, are summarized in Tables

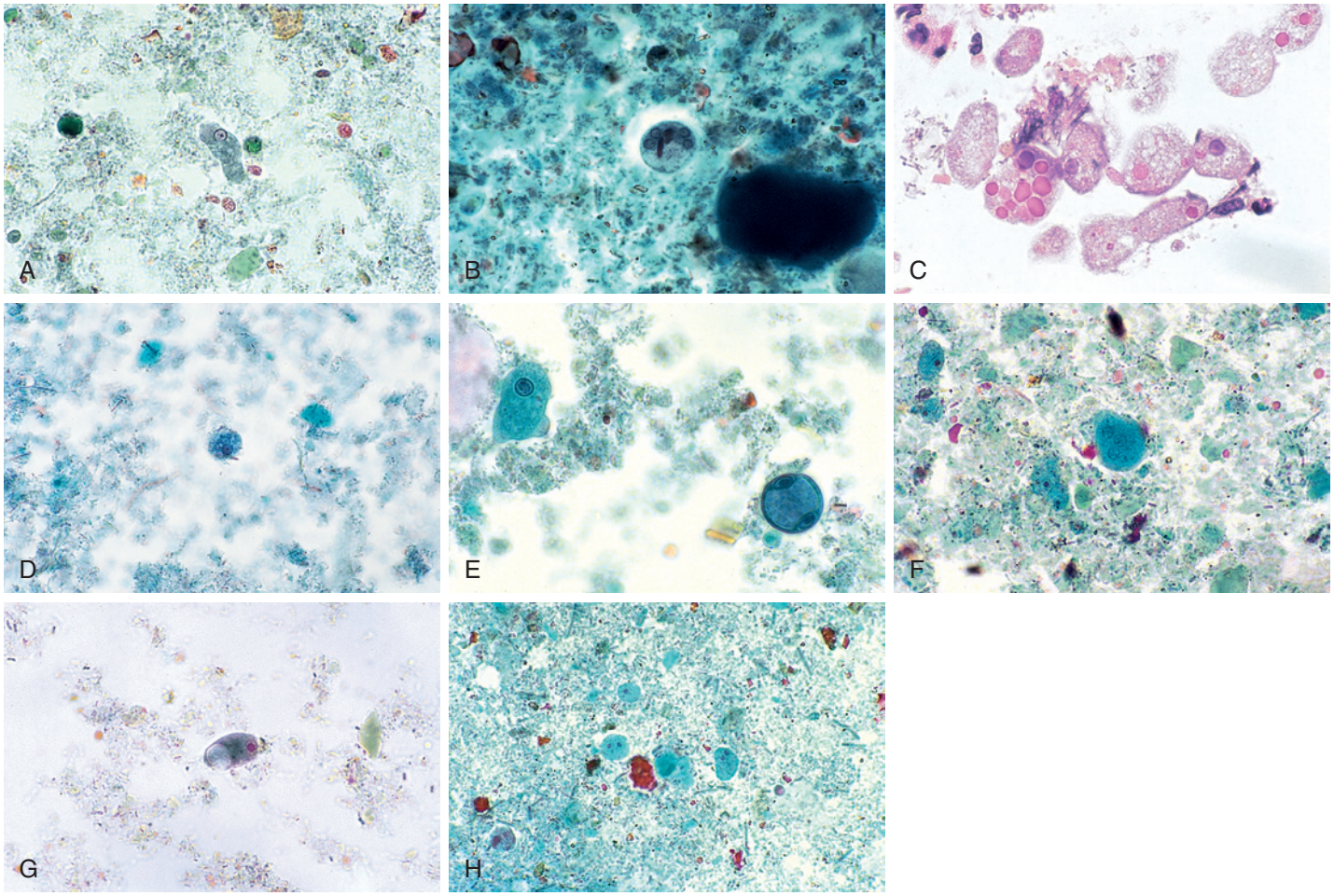


Figure 63-11 **Intestinal protozoa, trichrome stain, oil immersion at 1000×, except as noted. A,** Trophozoite of *Entamoeba histolytica*. **B,** Quadrinucleate cyst of *E. histolytica* with rounded chromatoid bars. **C,** *E. histolytica* trophozoites with ingested red blood cells from a colonic lesion (H&E). **D,** Trophozoite of *E. hartmanni*. **E,** Trophozoite and binucleate cyst of *E. coli*. **F,** Multinucleate cyst of *E. coli*. **G,** Cyst of *Iodamoeba bütschlii* with characteristic glycogen vacuole. **H,** Binucleate trophozoites typical for *Dientamoeba fragilis*. (***B,*** Photograph courtesy of David Bergeron.)

63-9 and 63-10 and in Figures 63-9, 63-10, and 63-12. Identification of trophozoites is based on size and nuclear and cytoplasmic characteristics; identification of cysts is based on size, number and characteristics of nuclei, and presence and character of chromatoid bodies and glycogen masses.

E. hartmanni has morphologic characteristics similar to those of *E. histolytica*, except trophozoites have a maximum diameter of 12 µm and cysts have a maximum diameter of 10 µm, and cysts often have a single nucleus. Historically, *E. hartmanni* has been called the *small race* of *E. histolytica*. Differentiation requires careful measurement of a representative sample of organisms with a properly calibrated ocular micrometer.

Entamoeba coli, a common lumen-dwelling ameba, may be difficult to differentiate from *E. histolytica*. The cytoplasm stains somewhat more darkly than the cytoplasm of *E. histolytica* and is more vacuolated, containing numerous ingested bacteria, yeasts, and other materials. Although nuclear characteristics differ from those of *E. histolytica* (see Fig. 63-12), significant overlap may occur, especially in specimens that have not been promptly preserved. Mature cysts of *E. coli* contain eight nuclei, although occasional cysts contain 16 or more. Immature cysts, which are not common, have four nuclei that are larger (one-fourth the diameter of the cyst) than nuclei of *E. histolytica* (one-sixth the diameter of the cyst) and may contain glycogen. Distribution of peripheral chromatin and karyosomes should not be given great emphasis in identification of *Entamoeba* cysts. Chromatoid bodies, when present, are irregular in shape with splintered or pointed ends, rather than the rounded ends seen in *E. histolytica*.

Endolimax nana is the smallest ameba to infect humans. Trophozoites often have atypical nuclei that contain a triangular chromatin mass, a band of chromatin across the nucleus, or two discrete masses of chromatin on opposite sides of the nuclear membrane (see Fig. 63-12). A clear halo or karyolymph space surrounds the karyosome and extends to the nuclear membrane. Atypical nuclear forms may be helpful in differentiating *E. nana* from *I. bütschlii*, which is similar in appearance but larger. Cysts of *Endolimax* usually contain four nuclei, although smaller numbers may be seen. Glycogen, when present, occurs diffusely in the cytoplasm rather than as a discrete mass. Cysts are easily differentiated from those of other amebae but may be confused with *Blastocystis hominis* organisms. The nuclei of *B. hominis*, however, lack the halos that are typically seen with *E. nana* cysts.

The nuclei of *I. bütschlii* trophozoites and cysts have a large, centrally located karyosome frequently surrounded by achromatic granules that may not be distinct but appear only as a muddy karyolymph space or halo. In some nuclei, the halo is clear without evident achromatic granules, making the organism indistinguishable from *E. nana*. Cysts of *I. bütschlii* contain a single nucleus, in which the karyosome is often eccentric with a nearby crescent of achromatic granules (see Figs. 63-9, 63-10, and 63-12). The cyst is characterized by a prominent vacuole of glycogen that stains reddish brown in iodine-stained wet mounts, thus the name of the organism. Glycogen is dissolved by aqueous fixatives and may not be demonstrable in material that has been stored.

Blastocystis hominis

Blastocystis hominis inhabits the large bowel and is frequently found in stool specimens of asymptomatic individuals. Although appearing in stains as an ameba-like protozoan, it is now known to be a *Stramenopile* (a group that includes diatoms and algae) and is placed in a separate Kingdom. Some studies have linked heavy infection to symptomatic intestinal disease, although this remains controversial (Markell & Udkow, 1986; Sheehan et al, 1986; Miller & Minshew, 1988; Zierdt, 1991; Stenzel & Boreham, 1996; Garcia, 2007). *Blastocystis* may assume one of three forms: vacuolated (seen most commonly), ameboid, or granular. The vacuolated form, also known as the *central vacuolar form*, usually is spherical and variable in size (5 to 20 µm) and has a central clear area and two to four peripheral nuclei

TABLE 63-9

Morphology of Trophozoites of Intestinal Amebae

Species	Size (in Diameter or Length)	Motility	Nucleus Number*	Peripheral Chromatin	Karyosomal Chromatin	Cytoplasm Appearance	Inclusions
Entamoeba histolytica/E. dispar	10-60 µm; usual range, 15-20 µm commensal form†; over 20 µm for invasive form‡	Progressive, with hyaline, fingerlike pseudopods	1 Not visible in unstained preparations	Fine granules; usually evenly distributed and uniform in size	Small, discrete; usually central but occasionally eccentric	Finely granular	Erythrocytes occasionally in invasive forms; noninvasive, contain bacteria
Entamoeba hartmanni	5-12 µm; usual range, 8-10 µm	Usually nonprogressive but may be progressive occasionally	1 Not visible in unstained preparations	Similar to E. histolytica	Small, discrete, often eccentric	Finely granular	Bacteria
Entamoeba coli	15-50 µm; usual range, 20-25 µm	Sluggish, nonprogressive with blunt pseudopods	1 Often visible in unstained preparation	Coarse granules, irregular in size and distribution	Large, discrete, usually eccentric	Coarse, often vacuolated	Bacteria, yeasts, or other materials
Endolimax nana	6-12 µm; usual range, 8-10 µm	Sluggish, usually nonprogressive with blunt pseudopods	1 Visible occasionally in unstained preparations	None	Large, irregularly shaped	Granular, vacuolated	Bacteria
Iodamoeba bütschlii	8-20 µm; usual range, 12-15 µm	Sluggish, usually nonprogressive	1 Not usually visible in unstained preparations	None	Large, usually central; surrounded by refractile, achromatic granules; these granules often are not distinct even in stained slides	Coarsely granular, vacuolated	Bacteria, yeasts, or other materials
Dientamoeba fragilis§	5-15 µm; usual range, 9-12 µm	Pseudopods are angular, serrated, or broad-lobed, and hyaline is almost transparent	2 (In approximately 20% of organisms, only 1 nucleus is present) Nuclei invisible in unstained preparations	None	Large cluster of 4-8 granules	Finely granular, vacuolated	Bacteria

Adapted from Brooke MM, Melvin DM: *Morphology of diagnostic stages of intestinal parasites of man.* PHS Publication No. 1966. Bethesda, Md., 1969, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare.
*Visibility is for unfixed material. Nuclei sometimes may be visible in fixed material.
†Usually found in asymptomatic or chronic cases; may contain bacteria.
‡Usually found in acute cases; often contain red blood cells.
§A flagellate (see text). A cyst form was recently described but requires confirmation by other authors (Stark D, Garcia LS, Barratt JL, et al: Description of Dientamoeba fragilis cyst and precystic forms from human samples. *J Clin Microbiol* 52:2680-2683, 2014).

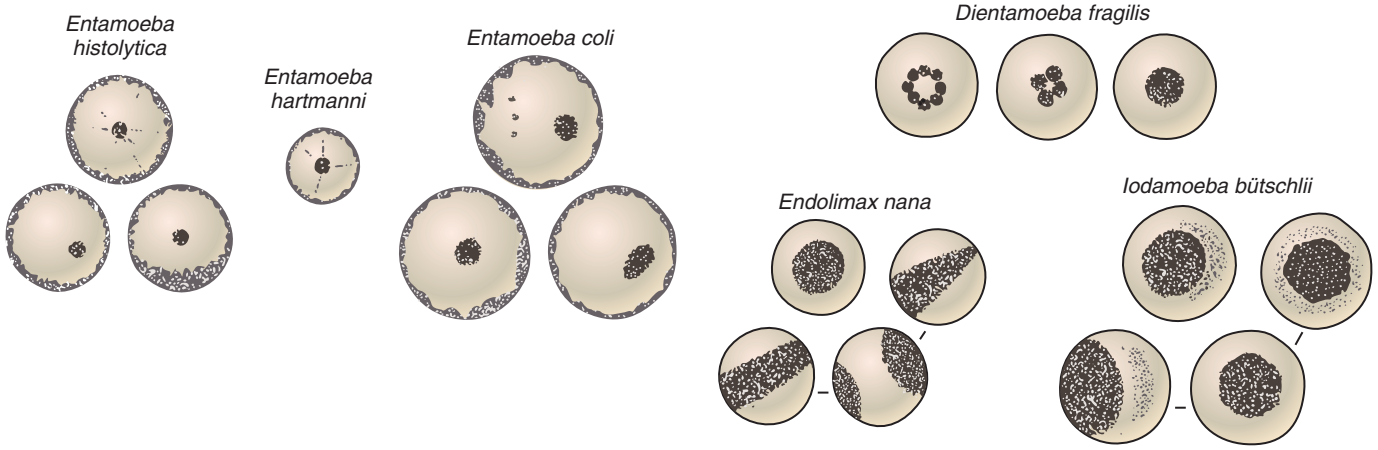


Figure 63-12 **Nuclei of amebae.** This drawing shows some of the various appearances of amebic nuclei in stained preparations. (*Dientamoeba fragilis* is a flagellate; see text.)

TABLE 63-10

Morphology of Cysts of Intestinal Amebae

Species	Size	Shape	Nucleus Number	Peripheral Chromatin	Karyosomal Chromatin	Cytoplasm Chromatoid Bodies	Glycogen
Entamoeba histolytica/E. dispar	10-20 µm; usual range, 12-15 µm	Usually spherical	4 in mature cyst; immature cysts with 1 or 2 occasionally seen	Peripheral chromatin present; fine, uniform granules, evenly distributed	Small, discrete, usually central	Present; elongate bars with bluntly rounded ends	Usually diffuse; concentrated mass often present in young cysts; stains reddish brown with iodine
Entamoeba hartmanni	5-10 µm; usual range, 6-8 µm	Usually spherical	4 in mature cyst; Immature cysts with 1 or 2 often seen	Similar to *E. histolytica*	Similar to *E. histolytica*	Present; elongate bars with bluntly rounded ends	Similar to *E. histolytica*
Entamoeba coli	10-35 µm; usual range, 15-25 µm	Usually spherical; occasionally oval, triangular, or of another shape	8 in mature cyst; occasionally supernucleate cysts with 16 or more are seen; immature cysts with 2 or more occasionally seen	Peripheral chromatin present; coarse granules irregular in size and distribution, but often appear more uniform than in trophozoites	Large, discrete, usually eccentric, but occasionally central	Present; usually splinterlike with pointed ends	Usually diffuse, but occasionally well-defined mass in immature cysts; stains reddish brown with iodine
Endolimax nana	5-10 µm; usual range, 6-8 µm	Spherical, ovoid, or ellipsoidal	4 in mature cysts; immature cysts with fewer than 4 rarely seen	None	Large, usually centrally located	Occasionally, granules or small oval masses seen, but bodies as seen in *Entamoeba* species are not present	Usually diffuse; concentrated mass seen occasionally in young cysts; stains reddish brown with iodine
Iodamoeba bütschlii	5-20 µm; usual range, 10-12 µm	Ovoid, ellipsoidal, triangular, or of another shape	1 in mature cyst	None	Large, usually eccentric; refractile, achromatic granules on one side of karyosome	Granules occasionally present, but bodies as seen in *Entamoeba* species are not present	Compact, well-defined mass; stains dark brown with iodine

Adapted from Brooke MM, Melvin DM: *Morphology of diagnostic stages of intestinal parasites of man.* PHS Publication No. 1966. Bethesda, Md., 1969, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare.

(Figs. 63-13, *A*, and 63-14, *G*). Ameboid forms with bizarre shapes may predominate in heavy infections. The presence of *Blastocystis* should be reported, especially when they are numerous (five or more per 400× field) (Sheehan et al, 1986; Stenzel & Boreham, 1996).

FLAGELLATES

Dientamoeba fragilis

Dientamoeba fragilis is an ameboid pathogen that infects the colon and has been associated with diarrheal disease, especially in young children (Yang & Scholten, 1977; Spencer et al, 1979; Turner, 1985; Preiss et al, 1991; Johnson et al, 2004). Although similar in appearance to amebae, *Dientamoeba* has been reclassified as a flagellate on the basis of ultrastructural details and antigenic similarities. Because of the similarity of *Dientamoeba* to amebae at the light microscope level, this species has traditionally been included in tables and figures for amebae (see Table 63-9 and Figs. 63-9, 63-10, 63-11, *H*, and 63-12).

Symptoms of *D. fragilis* infection include diarrhea and abdominal distention. Recent evidence suggests that dientamebiasis is a more frequent cause of diarrhea than previously thought: 4.3% of patients in one study harbored this organism (Spencer et al, 1979; Murray et al, 2007). Approximately 25% of persons infected with this parasite have symptomatic disease. In contrast to amebiasis, this infection usually is not associated with other fecal protozoa but does show a 10 to 20 times greater than expected association with enterobiasis (pinworm infection, discussed later). This association and some experimental evidence suggest that *D. fragilis* infection may be spread by ingestion of pinworm eggs infected with *D. fragilis* (Burrows & Swerdlow, 1956; Johnson et al, 2004). *D. fragilis* infection will be overlooked unless permanently stained slides are examined. Multiple specimens may need to be submitted because shedding varies from day to day. When smears are prepared, the last portion of the stool evacuated should be examined because the number of parasites found there tends to be greater. Two thirds to four fifths of the organisms contain two nuclei that consist of a cluster of four to eight karyosomal granules, which may appear as one large irregular karyosome (see Fig. 63-12). Uninucleate *D. fragilis* may be confused with trophozoites of *E. nana* or *I. bütschlii*. The cytoplasm is finely granular and often contains ingested bacteria. Trophozoites are delicate and may be easily overlooked, so stained slides must be carefully examined. Classically *D. fragilis* was not thought to have a cyst stage. However, cyst forms have recently been described and may be the important missing link for explaining how this organism is transmitted from one host to the other (Stark et al, 2014). An immunofluorescence method has been described that may help in the detection of this parasite, but it is not commercially available (Chan et al, 1993).

Giardia lamblia

Giardia lamblia, also known as *G. intestinalis* and *G. duodenalis*, is a pathogenic intestinal protozoan that causes both endemic and epidemic disease worldwide; in the United States, it is especially problematic for travelers, campers, children attending day care, and homosexual men (Wolfe, 1992).

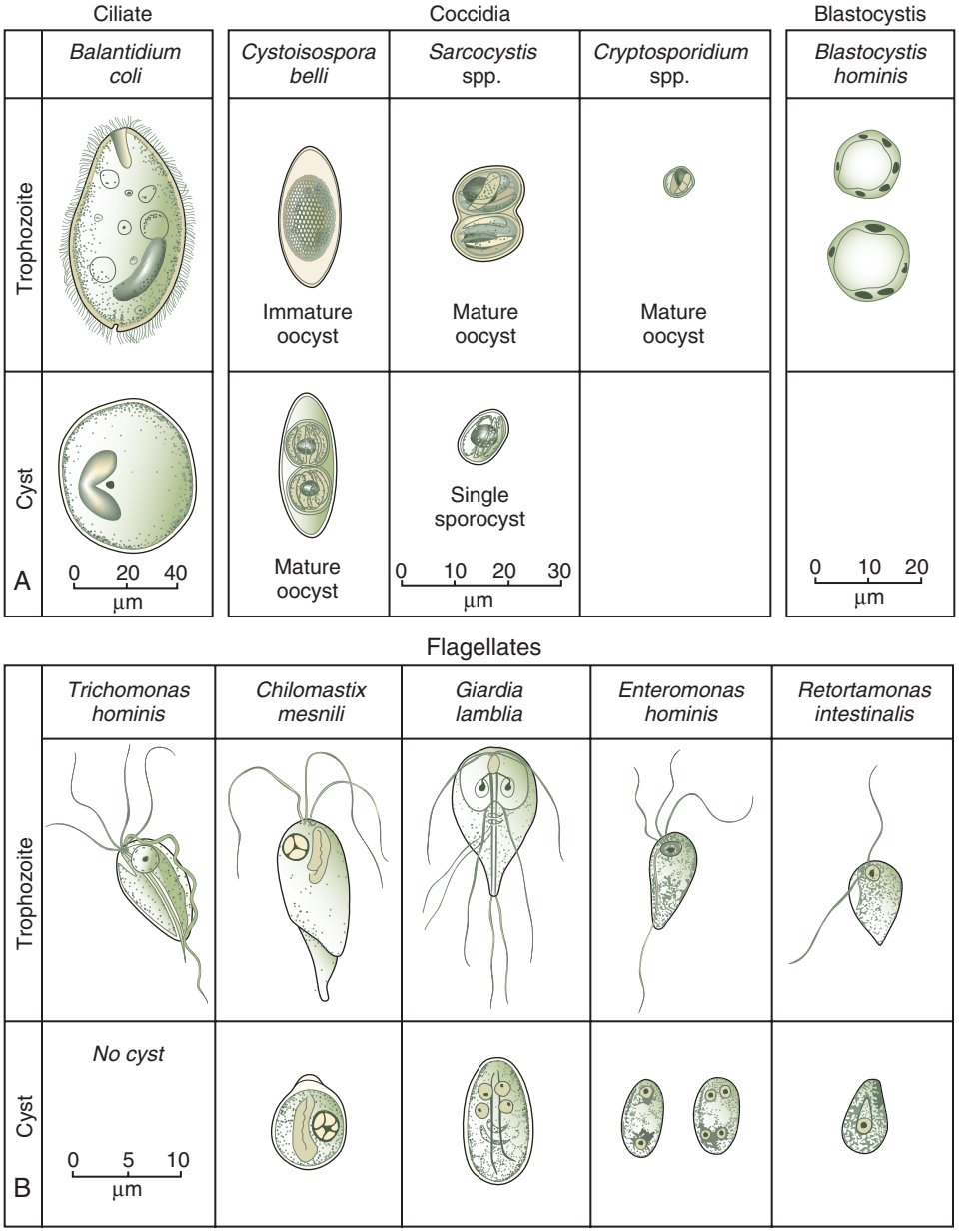


Figure 63-13 **A,** *Ciliate, Coccidia,* and *Blastocystis hominis* spp. found in stool specimens of humans. **B,** Flagellates found in stool specimens of humans. (Adapted from Brooke MM, Melvin DM: *Morphology of diagnostic stages of intestinal parasites of man.* Publication No. [CDC] 848116. Washington, D.C., 1984, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.)

It frequently causes disease in individuals drinking contaminated water, and a number of large water-borne outbreaks have been described from places such as Aspen, Colorado; Leningrad, Russia; and Rome, New York (Craun, 1986). Pathogenic protozoa are not killed by the usual concentrations of chlorine in municipal water supplies; therefore, unless the water supply is filtered, it may serve as a source of infection, as it did in the Rome, New York, outbreak.

G. lamblia trophozoites multiply in the small bowel and attach to the mucosa by a ventral concave sucking disk. Infection may be asymptomatic or may cause disease ranging from mild diarrhea with vague abdominal complaints to a malabsorption syndrome with diarrhea and steatorrhea, similar to that of sprue. The pathogenesis is not fully understood, although disruption of the integrity of the brush border with resulting disaccharidase deficiency may occur from direct or indirect effects of the organism's presence (Wolfe, 1992). Giardiasis should be considered in any patient presenting with diarrhea of longer than 10 days' duration.

Diagnosis is commonly established by demonstration of *Giardia* trophozoites or cysts, or both, in fecal specimens. Trophozoites predominate in diarrheic stool, whereas infectious cysts are more likely to be found in formed stool. The passage of organisms varies from day to day; therefore, examination of multiple specimens, collected on different days, may be necessary. Direct wet mounts may demonstrate the characteristic "falling leaf" motility of trophozoites in a diarrheic or aspirate specimen. Cysts can be seen in direct wet mount and concentration techniques, and both trophozoites and cysts may be demonstrated on permanently stained slides. In some cases, the organisms cannot be demonstrated in fecal specimens, and small bowel aspirates or so-called *string test specimens* may be required. In such instances, the laboratory should be advised in advance, so personnel will be available to perform a direct wet mount examination immediately on receipt of the specimen (Garcia, 2007).

Many antigen detection methods based on DFA or EIA are commercially available (CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007, 2010). They appear to have good sensitivity and specificity and may detect some infections not found by morphologic examination of stools. They also can be particularly helpful in epidemiologic investigations but cannot replace the need for traditional morphologic examination of the specimen if other pathogenic parasites are suspected. Antigen detection methods may be particularly useful for patients with diarrhea who have not traveled outside of the United States since they may be used in place of the labor-intensive and subjective O&P examination, often in combination with an antigen test for *Cryptosporidium* spp. Importantly, they require significantly fewer specimens for sensitive detection of *Giardia* (at least two) compared to O&P testing, which may require up to 7 specimens (Hanson & Cartwright, 2001).

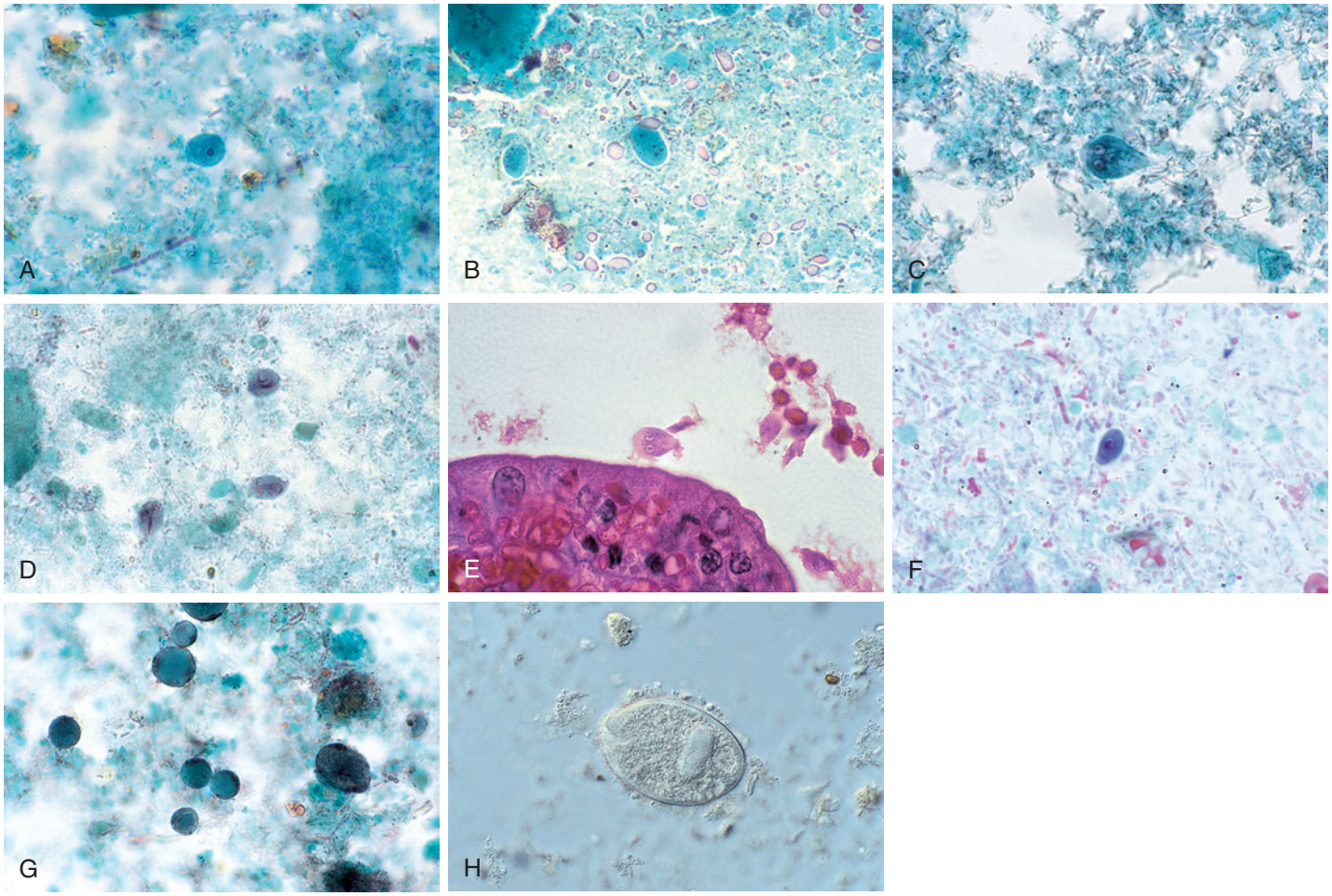


Figure 63-14 **Intestinal protozoa, trichrome stain, oil immersion at 1000×, except as noted. A,** Trophozoite of *Endolimax nana*. **B,** Quadrinucleate cysts of *E. nana*. **C,** Trophozoite of *Giardia lamblia* displaying prominent nuclei, median bodies, flagella, and a tapered posterior end. **D,** Cysts of *G. lamblia* with nuclei and fibrils. **E,** Duodenal biopsy demonstrating a *G. lamblia* trophozoite (H&E). **F,** A lemon-shaped cyst of *Chilomastix mesnili* with visible nucleus and hyaline cap. **G,** Multiple central vacuolar forms of *Blastocystis hominis*. **H,** Trophozoite of *Balantidium coli* in wet mount; note cilia covering the cell, cytostome, and macronucleus.

When viewed in their broadest dimension, *Giardia* trophozoites are pear-shaped with a tapered posterior end, and have two nuclei and curved median bodies that give the appearance of a smiling face with prominent eyes (Table 63-11; see Figs. 63-13, *B*, and 63-14, *C* to *E*). When viewed from the side, the anterior end of the organism is thicker and tapers posteriorly; the anterior half to three quarters consists of the sucking disk on the ventral surface. The four lateral, two ventral, and two caudal flagella usually are not evident in wet mounts or in stained preparations. Cysts are oval and usually quadrinucleate. Below the nuclei are dark-staining median bodies that cross longitudinal fibrils, providing distinctive internal characteristics. The cytoplasm often is retracted from the cyst wall.

Chilomastix mesnili

Chilomastix mesnili (see Table 63-11, Figs. 63-13, *B*, and 63-14, *F*) is a nonpathogenic lumen-dwelling flagellate of humans that must be differentiated from trophozoites of amebae and *Giardia* in stained smears. The consistent location of the single nucleus at one end of the organism and the tapering of the end opposite the nucleus are helpful. If multiple organisms are examined, the cytostome and the spiral groove are visible in some. The three external flagella usually are not visible in stained or formalin-fixed preparations. The lemon-shaped cysts contain various curved cytostomal fibers with a safety pin–like appearance.

Pentatrichomonas hominis

Pentatrichomonas hominis, known previously as *Trichomonas hominis* (see Table 63-11 and Fig. 63-13, *B*), is an infrequently seen nonpathogenic intestinal flagellate that may be confused with *E. hartmanni* or small *E. histolytica* trophozoites. Organisms do not stain particularly well and often are distorted in permanent smears. Several organisms may have to be examined in stained preparations to demonstrate the single *Entamoeba*-like nucleus, undulating membrane and associated costa, and flagella. A prominent rodlike object, the axostyle, runs through the organism and protrudes from the posterior end. No cyst stage has been described.

Trichomonas vaginalis

Trichomonas vaginalis is a common cause of vaginitis, characterized by inflammation, itching, vaginal discharge, and, occasionally, dysuria. The infection usually is spread by sexual intercourse, often by males who have an asymptomatic infection. Occasionally, males may have symptomatic prostatitis or urethritis. *T. vaginalis* infections are commonly diagnosed in the physician's office by direct wet mount examination of vaginal fluid, prostatic fluid, or sediments of freshly passed urine. Morphologically, *T. vaginalis* resembles *P. hominis* but is larger (up to 23 μm), and the undulating membrane extends only half the length of the body. Because of the difference in habitat, it generally is not necessary to differentiate these trichomonads morphologically.

Direct wet mount examination may be insensitive (60% to 70% sensitivity for vaginal secretions), and NAATs are now the recommended method for detection (Garcia, 2007; Murray et al, 2007). The Aptima *T. vaginalis* test (Gen-Probe Hologic, Bedford, Mass.) is cleared for testing asymptomatic and symptomatic women and has a reported clinical sensitivity and specificity of ≥99% for vaginal and cervical swabs and >95% for female urine specimens (Schwebke et al, 2011). Other methods of testing include culture, antigen detection, and microscopic examination of stained smears (e.g. Papanicolaou, Giemsa). Cultures, including use of a convenient "pouch" system, were previously considered the gold standard prior to introduction of NAATs and have a sensitivity of about 75% to 96% (Krieger et al, 1988; Schmid et al, 1989; Beal et al, 1992; Levi et al, 1997). Antigen tests such as DFA and EIA techniques that use monoclonal antibodies also have relatively good sensitivity (82% to 95%) and can provide

TABLE 63-11
Morphology of Intestinal Flagellates

Species	Size (Length)	Shape	Motility	Number of Nuclei	Number of Flagella*	Other Features
Trophozoites						
Pentatrichomonas hominis†	8-20 µm; usual range, 11-12 µm	Pear-shaped	Rapid, jerking	1 Not visible in unstained mounts	3–5 anterior; 1 posterior	Undulating membrane extending length of body
Chilomastix mesnili	6-24 µm; usual range, 10-15 µm	Pear-shaped	Stiff, rotary	1 Not visible in unstained mounts	3 anterior; 1 in cytostome	Prominent cytostome extending ⅓-½; spiral groove across ventral surface
Giardia lamblia	10-20 µm; usual range, 12-15 µm	Pear-shaped	Falling leaf	2 Not visible in unstained mounts	4 lateral; 2 ventral; 3 caudal	Sucking disk occupying ½-¾ of ventral surface
Enteromonas hominis	4-10 µm; usual range, 8-9 µm	Oval	Jerking	1 Not visible in unstained mounts	3 anterior; 1 posterior	One side of body flattened; posterior flagellum extending free, posteriorly or laterally
Retortamonas intestinalis	4-9 µm; usual range, 6-7 µm	Pear-shaped or oval	Jerking	1 Not visible in unstained mounts	1 anterior; 1 posterior	Prominent cytostome extending approximately ½ length of body

Species	Size	Shape	Number of Nuclei	Other Features
Cysts				
Chilomastix mesnili	6-10 µm; usual range, 8-9 µm	Lemon-shaped, with anterior hyaline knob or "nipple"	1 Not visible in unstained preparations	Cytostome with supporting fibrils. Usually visible in stained preparations.
Giardia lamblia	8-13 µm; usual range, 11-12 µm	Oval or ellipsoidal	Usually 4; not distinct in unstained preparations; usually located at one end	Fibrils or flagella longitudinally in cyst. Cytoplasm often retracts from a portion of cell wall.
Enteromonas hominis	4-10 µm; usual range, 6-8 µm	Elongate or oval	1-4, usually 2 lying at opposite ends of cyst; not visible in unstained mounts	Resembles *E. nana* cyst. Fibrils or flagella usually are not seen.
Retortamonas intestinalis	4-9 µm; usual range, 4-7 µm	Pear-shaped or slightly lemon-shaped	1 Not visible in unstained mounts	Resembles *Chilomastix* cyst. Shadow outline of cytostome with supporting fibrils extends above nucleus.

Adapted from Brooke MM, Melvin DM: *Morphology of diagnostic stages of intestinal parasites of man.* PHS Publication No. 1966. Bethesda, Md., 1969, U.S. Department of Health Education and Welfare.
*Not a practical feature for identification of species in routine fecal examinations.
†*Pentatrichomonas hominis* does not have a cyst form.

a result in approximately 10 minutes (Krieger et al, 1988; Lisi et al, 1988; Wilson et al, 1995). Papanicolaou-stained gynecologic smears may reveal *T. vaginalis* on occasion but have poor sensitivity and specificity.

Other Flagellates

Enteromonas hominis and *Retortamonas intestinalis* are small, nonpathogenic, intestinal flagellates that are seen infrequently but, when present, may occur in large numbers. Morphologic characteristics are reviewed in Table 63-11 (see also Fig. 63-13, *B*). *Trichomonas tenax* is a trichomonad that occasionally is recovered from the oral cavity but does not cause disease.

CILIATES

Balantidium coli

The ciliate *Balantidium coli* (see Figs. 63-13, *A*, and 63-14, *H*) may cause a dysentery-like syndrome with colonic ulcerations similar to that of amebiasis, but only rarely disseminates outside of the intestine. Human infection, rare in the United States, is usually acquired from hogs, which are commonly infected. *B. coli* is the largest protozoan and only ciliate to infect humans. Trophozoites are between 40 µm and more than 200 µm in greatest dimension (most measure 50 to 100 µm) and are uniformly covered with cilia that are slightly longer at the anterior end adjacent to the cytostome. A large macronucleus is readily seen in stained preparations, and a smaller micronucleus is infrequently visible. Numerous food vacuoles and contractile vacuoles are present in the cytoplasm. Cysts are rounded, measuring 50 to 70 µm in length. Cilia may be seen within younger cysts, and nuclear characteristics are similar to those of trophozoites. Stool specimens that have been contaminated with stagnant water may contain free-living ciliates, which usually can be distinguished from *B. coli* by differences in their ciliary pattern.

COCCIDIA

The coccidia comprise a large group of apicomplexan parasites that have a sexual stage in the intestinal tract of invertebrate and vertebrate animals. Some species also develop asexually in extraintestinal sites in host tissues.

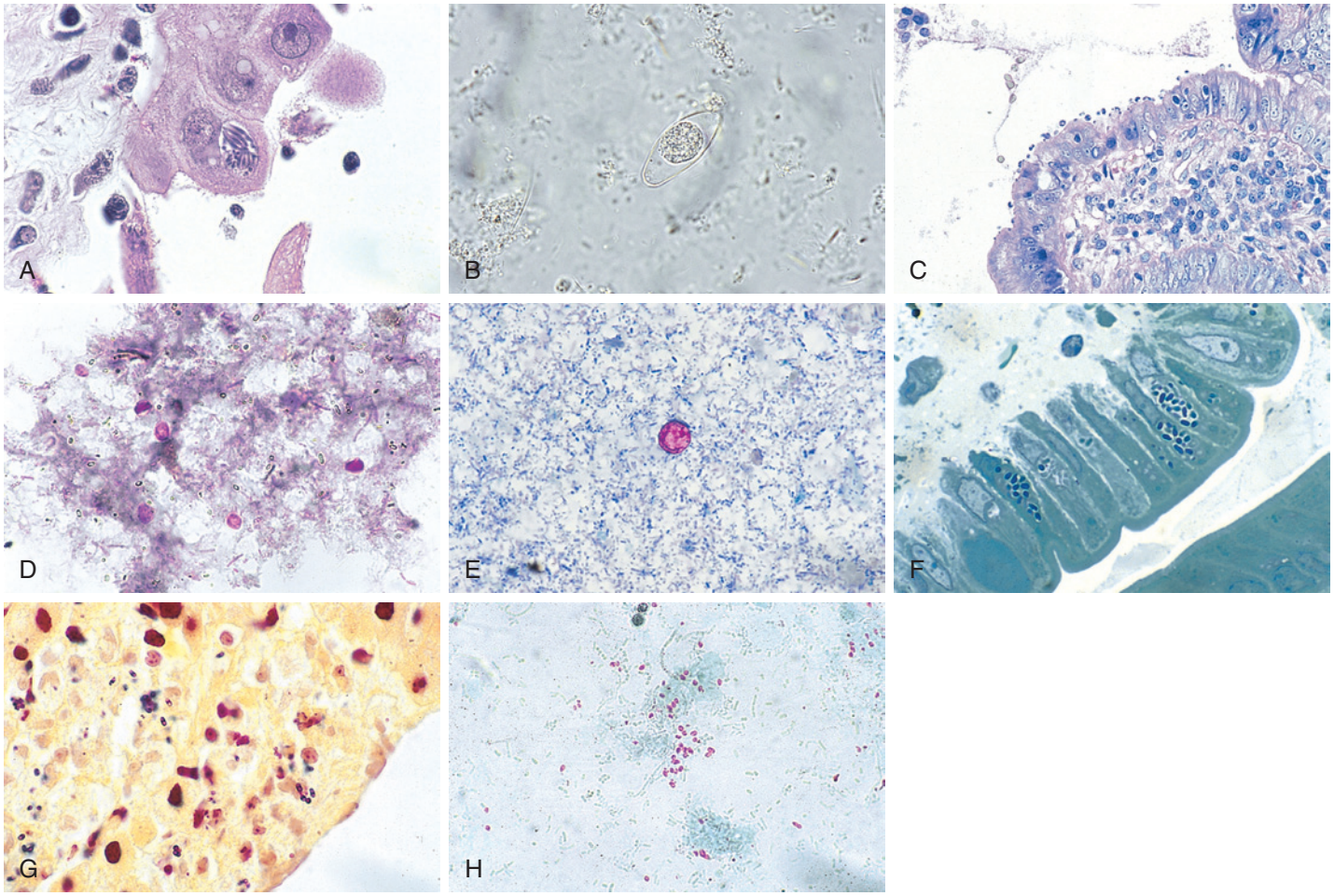


Figure 63-15 **A,** Schizont of *Cystisospora belli* containing numerous merozoites developing within gallbladder epithelium (H&E; 1000×). **B,** Oocyst of *C. belli* in feces (wet mount; 1000×). **C,** Small-bowel biopsy demonstrating development of *Cryptosporidium parvum* oocysts within the brush border of enterocytes (H&E; 400×). **D,** Modified acid-fast stain of a fecal smear demonstrating oocysts of *C. parvum* (1000×). **E,** Modified acid-fast stain of a fecal smear demonstrating an oocyst of *Cyclospora cayetanensis* (1000×). **F,** Small-bowel biopsy demonstrating development of microsporidial spores within enterocytes (epoxy-embedded section stained with toluidine blue; 1000×). **G,** Microsporidial spores seen in liver parenchyma in an individual infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (Brown and Brenn stain; 1000×). **H,** Numerous microsporidial spores in feces stained with the modified/strong trichrome stain (1000×).

Genera infecting the intestine of humans, such as *Cystoisospora*, *Sarcocystis*, *Cryptosporidium*, and *Cyclospora*, generally produce self-limited diarrheal disease in immunocompetent persons. Severe protracted diarrhea may develop in immunocompromised hosts following infection with *Cystoisospora*, *Cryptosporidium*, and *Cyclospora*.

Cystoisospora belli

Cystoisospora belli (formerly known as *Isospora belli*) undergoes both asexual and sexual development in the cytoplasm of small intestine epithelial cells (Fig. 63-15, *A*). Sexual development results in the production of oocysts, which are passed in the stool and mature to the infective stage in the environment. Human infections cause diarrhea and malabsorption but generally are self-limited. In patients with AIDS or other immunosuppressive disorders, disease may persist for months or years, and may contribute to death (DeHovitz et al, 1986; Mannheimer & Soave, 1994; Murray et al, 2007). Diagnosis is established by finding the unsporulated oocysts measuring 12 × 30 µm in fecal specimens, usually in direct wet mounts or concentration preparations (Fig. 63-15, *B*). If the unfixed specimen is left at room temperature for 24 to 48 hours, sporulation occurs. The infectious oocyst contains two sporocysts, each with four sporozoites (see Fig. 63-13, *A*). These oocysts are similar to those of *Cryptosporidium* in that they stain acid-fast.

Sarcocystis spp.

Sarcocystis spp. are typical two-host coccidia in which the sexual phase develops in the intestinal mucosa of carnivorous animals, and the asexual, extraintestinal phase occurs in the muscles and tissues of various intermediate hosts. Humans may serve as definitive or intermediate hosts, depending on the species of *Sarcocystis*. Intestinal infection with *Sarcocystis hominis* and *Sarcocystis suihominis* is acquired by ingestion of raw or incompletely cooked beef or pork, respectively, which contains tissue cysts (sarcocysts). Infection usually is asymptomatic, but occasional patients have transient diarrhea, abdominal pain, or anorexia. Intestinal infection is self-limited because asexual multiplication occurs in the intermediate host and is not repeated in the definitive host. Oocyst production is limited by the number of organisms ingested in the form of sarcocysts. The diagnosis is established by detection of sporulated 25 × 33 µm sporocysts in the stools (see Fig. 63-13, *A*). Each mature sporocyst contains four sporozoites. The oocyst wall is thin and often is not detectable, or has already ruptured, releasing the two sporocysts. These forms, best seen in wet mounts or in acid-fast–stained smears, appear larger than oocysts of *Cryptosporidium*. Trichrome stains are of little value in detecting these parasites. Humans also may serve as intermediate hosts for several unnamed animal species of *Sarcocystis* (known collectively as *Sarcocystis lindemanni*), in which case cysts are found in skeletal and cardiac muscles (Beaver et al, 1979; Strickland, 2000).

Cryptosporidium spp.

Cryptosporidium spp. use a single host in their life cycle but may infect humans (predominantly *C. hominis* and *C. parvum*) and a wide variety of animals, including cattle and sheep (Coupe et al, 2005). Parasites develop in the brush border of epithelial cells of the small and large intestine and occasionally spread to other sites such as the gallbladder, the pancreas, and the respiratory tract (see Figs. 63-13, *A*, and 63-15, *C* and *D*). *Cryptosporidium* is a common cause of acute, self-limited diarrhea in normal

persons, especially in children who attend day care. The epidemiology of cryptosporidiosis is similar to that of giardiasis. One of the largest known outbreaks of water-transmitted infection occurred in Milwaukee, Wisconsin, in 1993. In that outbreak, an estimated 400,000 individuals became ill from tap water contaminated with farm runoff following heavy rains (MacKenzie et al, 1994). Similar to cysts of *Giardia*, *Cryptosporidium* oocysts are refractory to usual chlorination levels of drinking water, and unless a community's water supply from a surface source is filtered, epidemics may occur. In patients with AIDS, *Cryptosporidium* may cause chronic secretory diarrhea that can last for months to years and may contribute to death. The incubation period is about 8 days, and in previously healthy persons, the illness lasts 9 to 23 days. Patients may have malaise, fever, anorexia, abdominal cramps, and diarrhea (Current & Garcia, 1991; Mannheimer & Soave, 1994).

Diagnosis usually is established by stool examination or antigen detection. Various concentration methods, including formalin–ethyl acetate sedimentation and Sheather's sugar flotation, work well (CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007). The availability of the formalin–ethyl acetate method makes this technique attractive, although centrifugation speed and times must be increased to maximize recovery (CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2010). A smear is prepared from the sediment and stained with an acid-fast stain or immunofluorescent reagents. Several acid-fast staining methods, including auramine-O, have been evaluated, but a modified cold Kinyoun method is used most widely. Spherical oocysts measure 4 to 6 µm in diameter and, when stained by the modified Kinyoun procedure, appear a deep fuchsia, although some unevenness of staining intensity is noted, along with variability in the percentage of cysts that stain positive. Positive control slides must be used with every run.

Commercial DFA and EIA reagents, which provide good sensitivity and specificity (CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007; Murray et al, 2007), are especially good for laboratories where *Cryptosporidium* is infrequently encountered, and where there is difficulty in maintaining expertise in the interpretation of acid-fast stains. As with *Giardia*, antigen testing is particularly useful for patients with diarrhea who have not traveled outside of the United States. In these patients, antigen testing (usually performed in conjunction with *Giardia* antigen testing) can supplement or replace the traditional subjective O&P examination with acid-fast staining.

The need to examine stool specimens for *Cryptosporidium* depends on the populations served and the goals, interests, and abilities of the individual laboratory. Some laboratories perform examination for *Cryptosporidium* only on specific request; others evaluate all specimens from immunocompromised patients.

Cyclospora cayetanensis

Like the other coccidia, *C. cayetanensis* causes diarrheal disease in both immunocompetent and immunocompromised individuals (Ortega et al, 1994; Murray et al, 2007). The parasite has been recovered from patients in several countries, including the United States, and was initially described as a blue-green alga, a cyanobacterium-like body, or a coccidian-like body, among others (Ortega et al, 1993; Shields & Olson, 2003). Infection causes a flulike illness with nausea, vomiting, weight loss, and explosive watery diarrhea lasting 1 to 3 weeks. Oocysts, passed unsporulated, appear as nonrefractile spheres 8 to 10 µm in diameter that contain a cluster of refractile globules enclosed within a membrane when viewed by light microscopy. A total of 1 to 2 weeks is required for sporulation, after which the mature oocyst contains two sporocysts, each with two sporozoites. In trichrome-stained smears, the oocysts appear as clear, round, and somewhat wrinkled objects. Oocysts autofluoresce bright green to intense blue under ultraviolet epifluorescence; they stain acid-fast when modified acid-fast or auramine-O staining techniques are used. They must be differentiated from oocysts of *Cryptosporidium*, which stain in an identical fashion but are smaller (4 to 6 µm) (Fig. 63-15, *E*).

MICROSPORIDIA

Microsporidia are obligate intracellular, spore-forming fungi in the phylum *Microspora* that infect a variety of animals, including humans (Shadduck & Greely, 1989; Franzen & Müller, 1999). They are serious pathogens in immunocompromised hosts, especially those with AIDS, in whom they are responsible for a large percentage (up to 30% in some studies) of otherwise unexplained diarrheal disease (Curry & Caning, 1993). *Enterocytozoon bieneusi* and *Encephalitozoon intestinalis*, the two species implicated most commonly in human intestinal infection, may cause protracted diarrhea and weight loss in AIDS patients similar to that caused by *Cryptosporidium*. Many species may also cause disseminated disease and are an important cause of morbidity and mortality in immunocompromised patients, including organ transplant recipients (Cali et al, 1993; Willson et al, 1995; Murray et al, 2007; Ramanan & Pritt, 2014).

The organisms multiply intracellularly (merogony) and form resistant spores (sporogony) that eventually rupture the host cell and infect adjacent cells or are passed out of the body. The spore contains a coiled polar tubule, which is forcefully extruded under appropriate environmental stimuli and penetrates the membrane of the recipient cell. The parasite's sporoplasm is injected through the tubule into the host cell cytoplasm, where multiplication ensues. Reservoir hosts have not been identified. Occasionally, patients have been infected by other genera of microsporidia, including *Encephalitozoon* (hepatitis, ocular infection, CNS disease), *Nosema* (disseminated infection), and *Pleistophora* (myositis) (Shadduck & Greeley, 1989; Curry & Caning, 1993), among others (Franzen & Müller, 1999; Garcia, 2007).

Until recently, diagnosis required examination of tissues submitted for routine light (Fig. 63-15, *F* and *G*) and electron microscopy. Development of a modified trichrome staining method for examination of stool specimens for spores has been a significant advance in detecting infection (Weber et al, 1992; Garcia, 2007). With this method, the small (1.5 to 3 µm) elliptical spores stain red against a faint green background, and some display a characteristic midbody cross-band (Fig. 63-15, *H*). Modifications of this method have also been described. Fluorochrome stains such as Uvitex 2B and Calcofluor white appear to be more sensitive in detecting spores and may be useful in the initial screening of specimens, although these methods will also stain yeasts (van Gool et al, 1993; DeGirolami et al, 1995; Luna et al, 1995). The small size of the spores makes detection by any method a challenge (CLSI, 2005).

Several PCR tests have been described for different microsporidia species and may offer superior sensitivity and specificity over conventional microscopy-based methods (Vasoo & Pritt, 2013). Unfortunately, there are no FDA-approved tests at this time, and molecular testing is limited to select reference laboratories and the CDC.

INTESTINAL HELMINTHS

Intestinal helminths discussed here include those nematodes (roundworms), cestodes (tapeworms), and trematodes (flukes) that reside as adults in the gastrointestinal tract or live in other locations (liver, lung, or blood) and produce eggs that exit the human body via the intestinal tract. Sizes for adult helminths vary from 1 mm to more than 10 m in length; sizes for eggs range from 25 to 150 µm (Fig. 63-16).

An understanding of helminth life cycles and zoogeography is critical in knowing which parasite stages may be present in a presumed infection, what organs or tissues may be involved, and when diagnostic stages may be expected to appear following exposure. Although diagnosis usually depends on finding and identifying an appropriate developmental stage (egg, larva, or adult), some parasitic infections may be diagnosed chiefly on clinical grounds or on the basis of serologic evidence, or both.

Certain species have developmental cycles whereby infectious stages may be transmitted directly from person to person (*Enterobius* and *H. nana*). In others (*Trichuris*, *Ascaris*, and *Trichostrongylus*), an additional maturation period outside of the host is required before the parasite egg or larva (in the latter case) is infectious. Ingestion of infective stages may also occur incidentally along with parasite vectors *(Dipylidium*, *Hymenolepis)*, plants *(Fasciolopsis*, *Fasciola)*, or animal tissues (*Trichinella*, *Taenia*, *Diphyllobothrium*, *Clonorchis*, *Opisthorchis*, *Paragonimus*, *Heterophyes*, *Metagonimus*, and *Nanophyetus*). In some cases, larval parasite stages may directly penetrate the skin (hookworms, *Strongyloides*, and schistosomes).

Recovery and identification of helminth eggs and larvae in stool, urine, or sputum requires a systematic approach and appropriate training of the individuals performing the evaluations. The size of the eggs and larvae is an especially important characteristic, and measurement often requires a properly calibrated ocular micrometer. External characteristics of eggs that should be noted include their shape, their wall thickness, and the presence or absence of a mamillated covering, operculum, opercular shoulders, abopercular knob, polar plugs, or spines. Egg development (embryonated, unembryonated) and the presence or absence of hooklets, which are characteristic of cestodes, should be noted. The examiner also needs to have an appreciation for the large variety of artifacts detected in human feces that may mimic parasite eggs and larvae (see Table 63-4).

NEMATODES

Nematodes or roundworms are common worms that inhabit the human intestinal tract, blood, and tissues. Up to one third of the world's population is thought to be host to intestinal nematodes. Some attach to intestinal

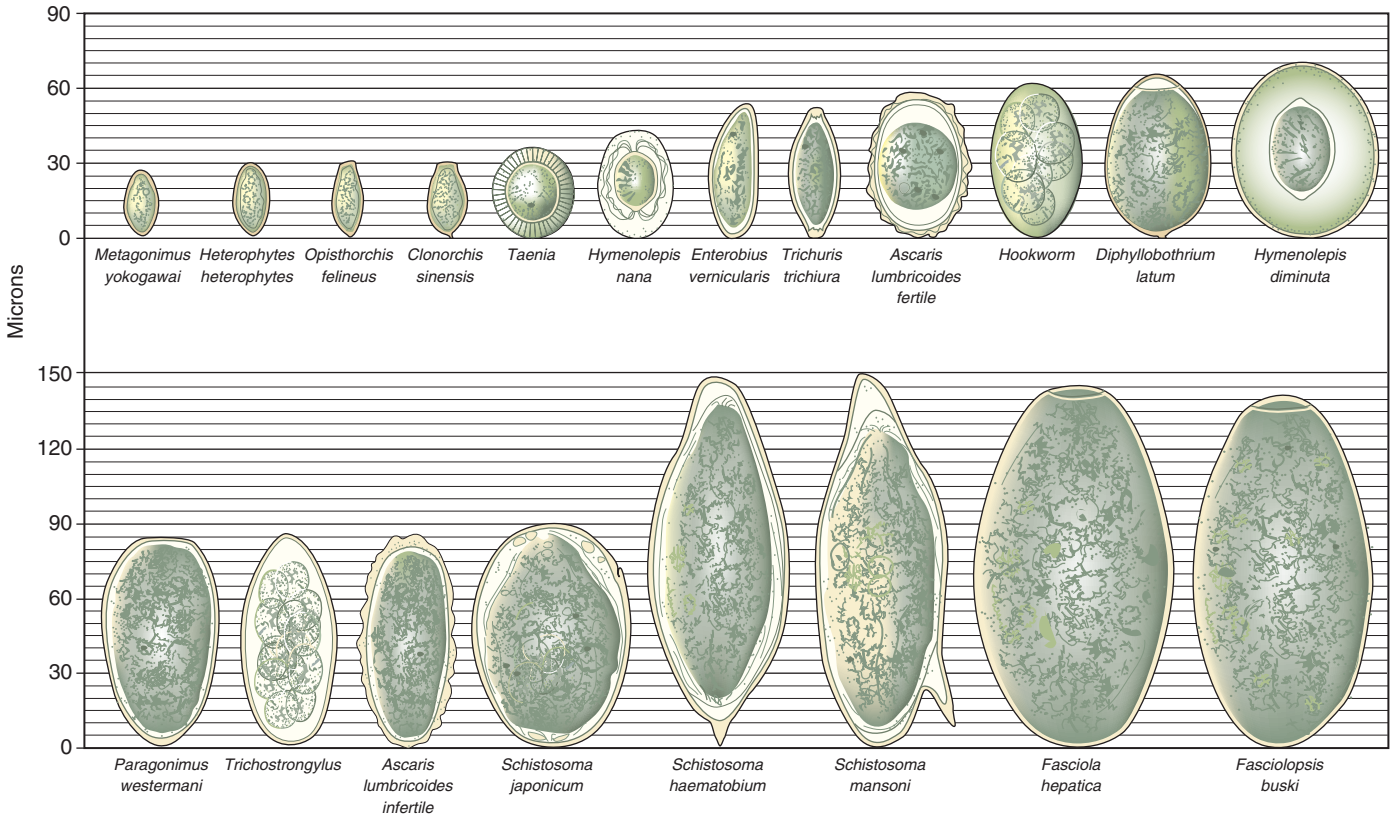


Figure 63-16 **Relative sizes of helminth eggs.** (Courtesy of Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Parasitology Training Branch, Atlanta.)

mucosa by means of specialized mouthparts at the anterior end (e.g., hookworms, whipworm) while others move freely in the lumen of the bowel (e.g., pinworm, *Ascaris lumbricoides*). Nematodes have round, unsegmented bodies covered with an acellular cuticle and possess a full digestive tract. There are both male and female worms, unlike the cestodes and some of the trematodes, which are hermaphrodites. Identification of characteristic eggs in stool is used for diagnosis of all intestinal helminth infections with the exception of *Strongyloides stercoralis*, in which only larvae are seen in stool. This section covers intestinal nematodes, while nematodes that invade tissue are covered in the "Tissue Helminths" section later in the chapter.

Enterobius vermicularis (Pinworm Infection)

Enterobiasis or oxyuriasis (named for its order, *Oxyuroida*) is the most common helminthic infection in children of all social strata in the United States. Although it is primarily a parasite of young children, rapid maturation of the egg allows it to be readily transmitted from child to child and from child to adult, in both family and institutional settings. Male and female worms reside primarily in the cecum and adjacent areas. Females measure up to 13 mm in length and have a pointed posterior end that gives rise to their common name, the pinworm. Both sexes have prominent lateral alae that are seen in cross-section and a prominent esophageal bulb (Fig. 63-17, *A* to *C*).

Although males are rarely seen, females may be found on the surface of a stool specimen or on the perianal skin, especially at night, where eggs are deposited. Eggs are colorless and ovoid with one side flattened, and measure 20 to 40 µm wide by 50 to 60 µm long (see Fig. 63-17, *B*). They are infective within hours and when ingested complete development to the gravid adult stage within 1 month (the prepatent period).

Although infection may be asymptomatic, children often suffer from pruritus ani, irritability, and loss of sleep. Enterobiasis should be ruled out early in the evaluation of enuresis. Adult worms may also migrate to unusual sites such as the vagina, fallopian tubes, or peritoneal cavity. Their ultimate death in these locations may provoke inflammatory, granulomatous reactions (Symmers, 1950; Garcia, 2007).

Recovery of eggs or, less commonly, adults from the perianal skin is usually done using the cellulose tape technique first thing in the morning before the patient bathes or defecates (Ash & Orihel, 1987; Garcia, 2007). Only 5% to 10% of cases are detected using routine stool examination. Diagnosis may require examination of several samples taken on different days before eggs can be detected (Sadun & Melvin, 1956).

Trichuris trichiura (Whipworm Infection)

Trichuriasis is common worldwide in tropical and subtropical regions. Adult worms are found in the large intestine, especially the cecum, but in heavy infection they can be found throughout the colon and rectum. Males and females measure up to 50 mm in length and remain attached to the intestinal mucosa by the long, slender anterior end, while the thicker posterior end hangs free in the lumen. Female worms are elongate, whereas the tails on males are coiled (Fig. 63-17, *D*). *Trichuris* has a direct life cycle in which eggs are passed in stool unembryonated and require several weeks under appropriate soil conditions to mature to the infective stage. When embryonated eggs are ingested, larvae are released and mature into adults in the colon, where they attach and survive up to 10 years.

Light infection usually is asymptomatic, but when larger numbers (>300 worms) are present, diarrhea or symptoms of dysentery may develop in association with dehydration and anemia (Beaver et al, 1984; Strickland, 2000). Rectal prolapse may occur in heavily infected children (Cooper & Bundy, 1988).

Diagnosis is made by finding typical eggs in direct fecal smears or with concentration techniques. The eggs are barrel-shaped with refractile plugs at both ends and usually measure 50 to 55 µm long by 22 to 24 µm wide (Fig. 63-17, *E*). Occasionally, humans may become infected with the dog whipworm, *Trichuris vulpis*, which has eggs that are larger, wider, and more barrel-shaped than those of *Trichuris trichiura*. Egg quantitation techniques occasionally may be requested to assess infection intensity, therapeutic efficacy, and reacquisition rates of parasites.

Capillaria philippinensis

This parasite, normally found in fish-eating birds, infects humans who ingest raw or incompletely cooked fish that contain infective larvae in their flesh. Although first described in persons from the Philippines, and later Thailand, occasional cases have been reported in Asia, the Middle East, and South America (Cross, 1992; Murray et al, 2007). The parasites may cause chronic diarrhea, and infected individuals may pass eggs, larvae, and even adult worms in their feces. Eggs resemble those of *Trichuris*, although they measure 36 to 45 µm in length by 21 µm in width and have thick, radially striated shells and mucoid plugs, which are inconspicuous.

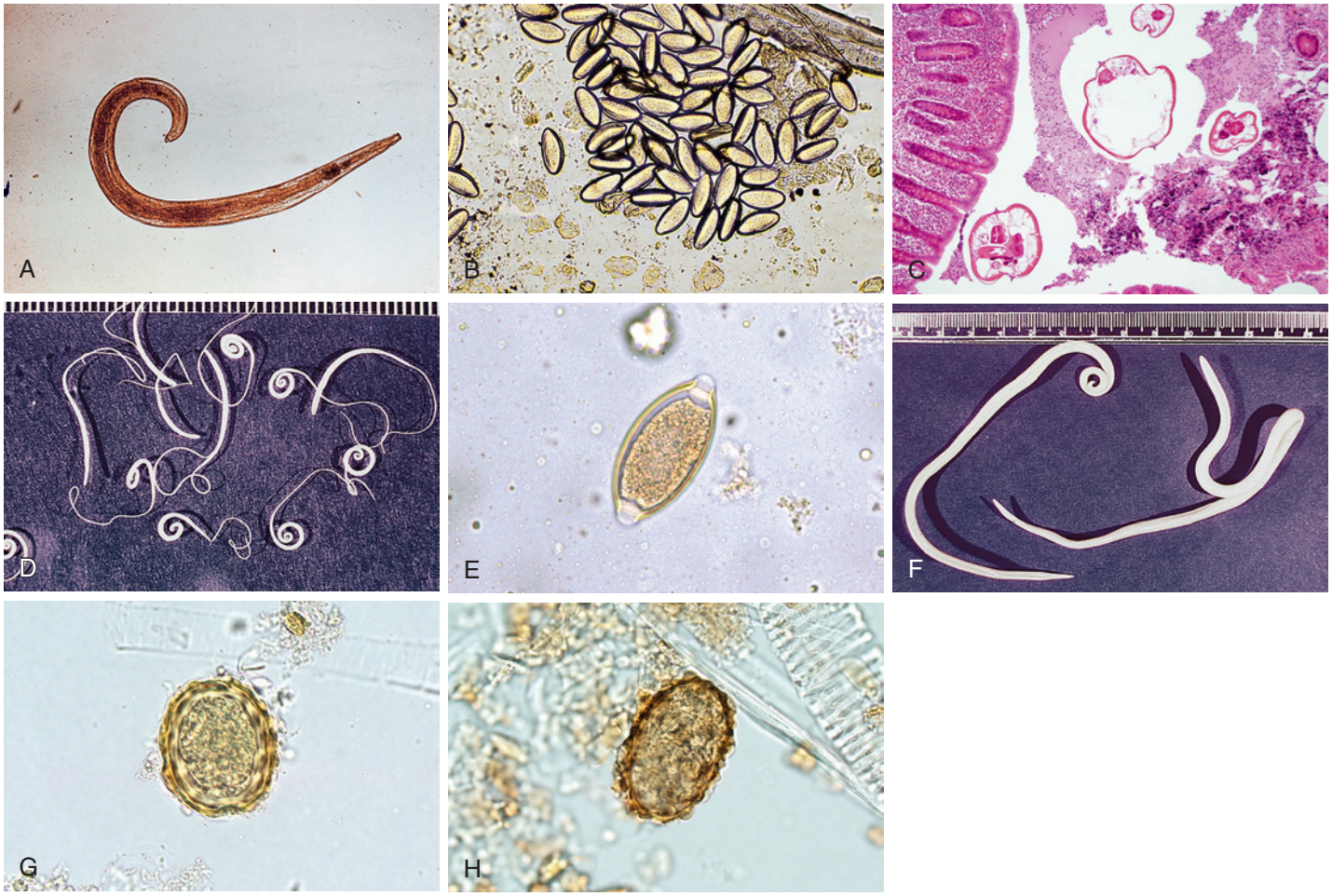


Figure 63-17 **All direct examination with brightfield illumination except as noted. A,** Adult male pinworm, *Enterobius vermicularis,* with curved posterior end; note prominent esophageal bulb (4×). **B,** Numerous eggs of *E. vermicularis* as seen on a cellophane tape preparation (400×). **C,** Cross-sections of adult *E. vermicularis* in the appendix; note characteristic lateral alae (H&E; 100×). **D,** Adult whipworms, *Trichuris trichiura*; note females with straight tails and males with coiled tails. **E,** Egg of *T. trichiura* (400×). **F,** Adult female and male *Ascaris lumbricoides,* the large human roundworm. **G,** Fertile, unembryonated egg of *A. lumbricoides* (400×). **H,** Infertile egg of *A. lumbricoides* (400×). (***D*** and ***F*** from Zaiman H, editor. A pictorial presentation of parasites: a cooperative collection; http://www.astmh.org/Zaiman_Slides/1271.htm.)

Ascaris lumbricoides (Ascariasis)

This is the largest nematode that infects the intestinal tract of humans and is probably the most common of the intestinal roundworms, infecting an estimated 1.3 billion individuals worldwide (John & Petri, 2006). Infection occurs primarily in areas with little or no sanitation and, as with *Trichuris*, is especially common in children, who are also more likely to harbor heavy infection.

Adult *Ascaris* live primarily in the duodenum and proximal jejunum. Females measure up to 35 cm in length by 6 mm in diameter. The male is somewhat smaller and has a ventrally curved tail, unlike the female (Fig. 63-17, *F*). Both adult and immature worms can be identified by the presence of three prominent lips at the anterior end.

Females produce approximately 200,000 eggs per day, which are unembryonated when passed and require 4 to 6 weeks in a satisfactory environment to become infective. Following ingestion, eggs hatch in the intestine, and larvae penetrate the mucosa to gain access to the bloodstream. They are carried to the lungs and mature briefly in the alveolar capillary bed before entering the alveoli. Respiratory clearance mechanisms move the larvae to the epiglottis, where they are swallowed and grow to adulthood in the small bowel. Development from embryonated egg to adult takes approximately 2 months.

Symptoms of ascariasis vary from asymptomatic infection to severe disease. Migration of large numbers of larvae through the lungs can cause *Ascaris* pneumonitis or Loeffler's syndrome, characterized by bilateral diffuse, mottled pulmonary infiltrates and mild bronchitis associated with peripheral eosinophilia. The syndrome is rare and usually occurs in individuals who have been previously exposed to *Ascaris* antigens.

The presence of a few worms in the intestine is rarely noticed, whereas heavy infection may produce varying degrees of abdominal pain and diarrhea. Intestinal obstruction may also occur with a mass of worms, especially in children. Even a small number of worms is cause for concern because of their ability to invade ectopic sites such as the common bile duct and liver, appendix, and stomach. Fever or drug therapy may stimulate migration. In endemic areas, anthelmintics often are prescribed before anesthetics are used in elective surgery.

Infection is diagnosed by demonstrating eggs in feces or on recovery of an adult that has been passed or vomited. The large number of eggs produced each day make detection of even a single worm probable. A count of fewer than 20 eggs per slide (2 mg of feces) indicates light infection, and a count of more than 100 eggs per slide indicates heavy infection.

Fertile *Ascaris* eggs are round to slightly oval with a yellow-brown, irregular external mamillated layer and a thick shell. Eggs that have lost their mamillated layer are called *decorticate* and may superficially resemble hookworm eggs. They are passed unembryonated and measure approximately 55 to 75 µm long by 35 to 50 µm wide (Fig. 63-17, *G* and *H*). Single females may produce unfertilized eggs, which are larger and more elongate (up to 90 µm in length) and have a thinner shell with irregular mamillations. These eggs are filled with irregularly sized fat globules.

Trichostrongylus spp.

Human disease caused by *Trichostrongylus* spp. represents a zoonotic infection because these parasites principally infect large herbivores such as sheep, cattle, and goats. Several species may infect humans, including *Trichostrongylus colubriformis*, *Trichostrongylus orientalis*, *Trichostrongylus axei*, and *Trichostrongylus brevis*, all of which are found in many parts of the world. Adult worms inhabit the small bowel and produce eggs that mature outside of the body. Larvae emerge and crawl about on soil and vegetation, where they are available to be ingested by definitive hosts. Unlike

hookworms, they do not invade skin directly, nor does the life cycle involve a migratory phase through the lungs. Infection usually is light and asymptomatic, but heavy infection may produce abdominal pain and diarrhea, usually with eosinophilia. Eggs resemble those of hookworms but are longer and narrower, measuring 78 to 98 µm by 40 to 50 µm, and are slightly tapered at one end.

Necator americanus and *Ancylostoma duodenale* (Hookworm Infection)

Hookworms, which are among the more common helminths known to infect humans, occur in tropical and subtropical regions and some temperate areas. *Necator americanus* is found in the United States and in other areas of the world and frequently overlaps in distribution with *Ancylostoma duodenale*, which does not occur in the United States.

Adult females measure up to 12 mm in length, and the males slightly less. Males are readily distinguished by the fan-shaped copulatory bursa at the posterior end. The anterior end of hookworms is modified into a buccal capsule that contains teeth or cutting plates. Both sexes attach to the mucosa of the small intestine, where they may reside for up to 18 years (Beaver, 1988; Garcia, 2007).

Eggs are passed in feces and develop rapidly, depending on prevailing conditions. Rhabditiform larvae are released and develop into the infective filariform stage in about 7 days. On contact with an appropriate host, the larvae penetrate the skin, gain access to the host's circulation, travel to the lungs, and move up the tracheobronchial tree to be swallowed. On maturation in the small intestine, oviposition begins. Although the life cycles of both species are similar, *Ancylostoma* can mature directly to the adult stage in the intestine if infective larvae are ingested.

Hookworms can produce disease in the skin, at the site of larval penetration. This condition, known as *ground itch*, is characterized by inflammation, redness, and blister formation, along with intense itching. Migration of large numbers of larvae through the lungs may produce Loeffler's syndrome, as described earlier for *Ascaris*. Depending on the worm burden, intestinal infection can result in gastroenteritis with abdominal pain, diarrhea, and nausea. Hookworms are best known, however, for their ability to produce chronic blood loss with secondary iron-deficiency anemia. The presence of each adult *A. duodenale* can result in the loss of 0.15 to 0.25 mL of blood per day, compared with 0.03 mL for each *N. americanus*. Development of children can be severely affected by chronic infection. Blood loss and the number of hookworms present correlate with the number of eggs per gram of stool, which may help the clinician determine when to initiate therapy in individuals living in endemic areas (Layrisse et al, 1964; Layrisse & Roche, 1964; Cook, 2002).

Diagnosis is made by finding the characteristic thin-shelled eggs in feces. These eggs are partially embryonated when passed and measure 58 to 76 µm in length by 36 to 40 µm wide (Fig. 63-18, *A*). Embryonated eggs or free rhabditiform larvae may be found in unpreserved specimens that are not examined promptly. Hookworm rhabditiforms can be differentiated from those of *S. stercoralis* because the former have a longer buccal chamber and inconspicuous genital primordium (Fig. 63-19). Continued maturation of larvae results in the appearance of infective filariforms, which have a pointed posterior end and an esophagus approximately one-fourth the length of the larva. Hookworm eggs may need to be differentiated from those of *Trichostrongylus* spp. (which are longer and more pointed) and those of plant parasitic nematodes, especially *Heterodera* spp. (which are longer, have blunt ends, and are often asymmetric) (Fig. 63-18, *B*).

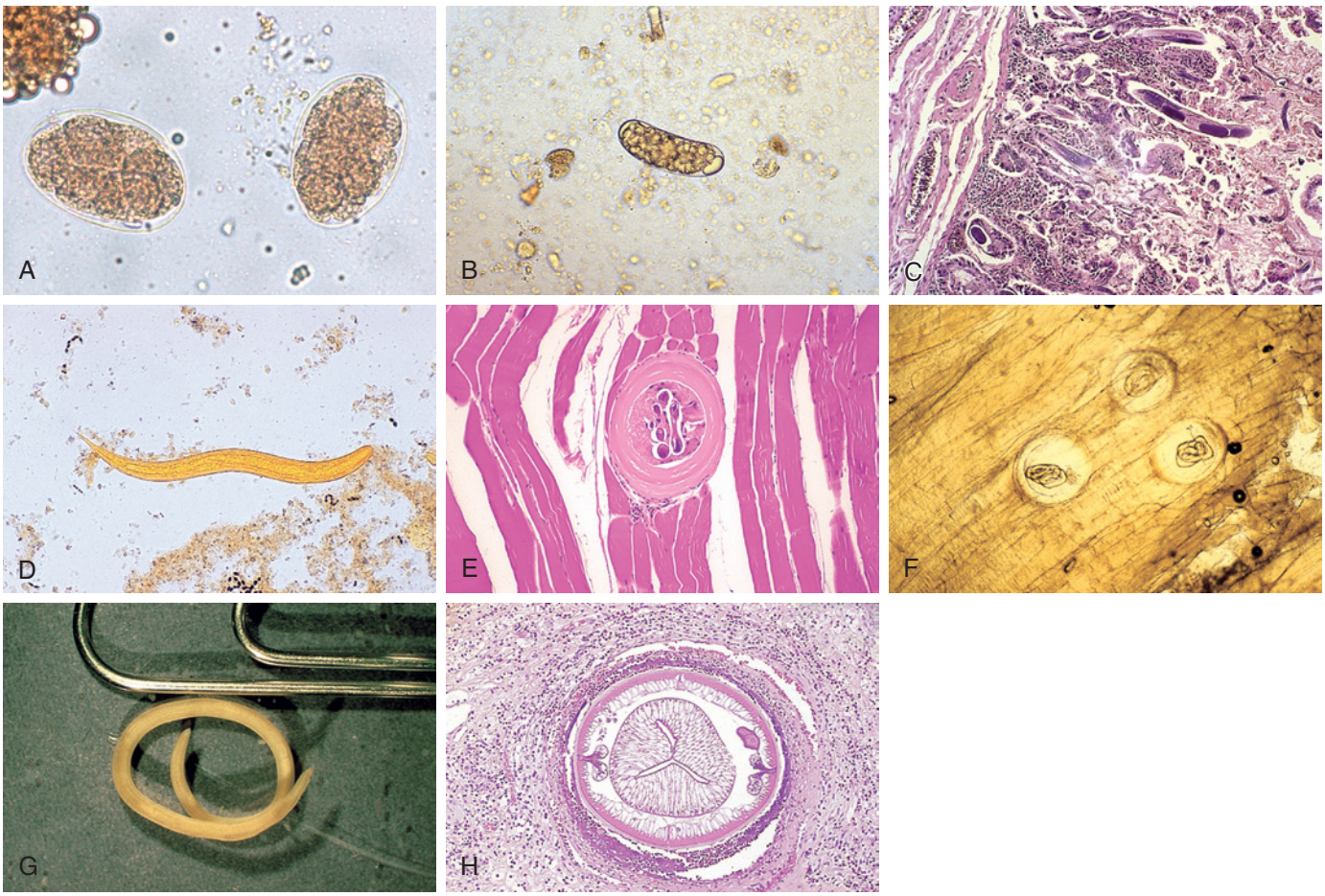


Figure 63-18 **A,** Hookworm (*Ancylostoma duodenale* or *Necator americanus*) eggs (400×). **B,** Egg of *Heterodera* sp., a group of plant nematodes occasionally found as artifacts in human stool following ingestion of infected vegetables (400×). **C,** Massive *Strongyloides stercoralis* infection in the duodenal mucosa; note presence of adult female, eggs, and larvae (H&E; 100×). **D,** *S. stercoralis* noninfectious rhabditiform larva (iodine stain; 100×). **E,** *Trichinella spiralis,* cross-section of a larva in gastrocnemius muscle (H&E; 100×). **F,** Multiple *T. spiralis* larvae in bear meat (compressed wet muscle preparation; 100×). **G,** Regurgitated *Pseudoterranova* sp. following fish dinner (4×). **H,** Anisakis sp., cross-section of larva found in small bowel following surgery for acute obstruction (H&E; 400×).

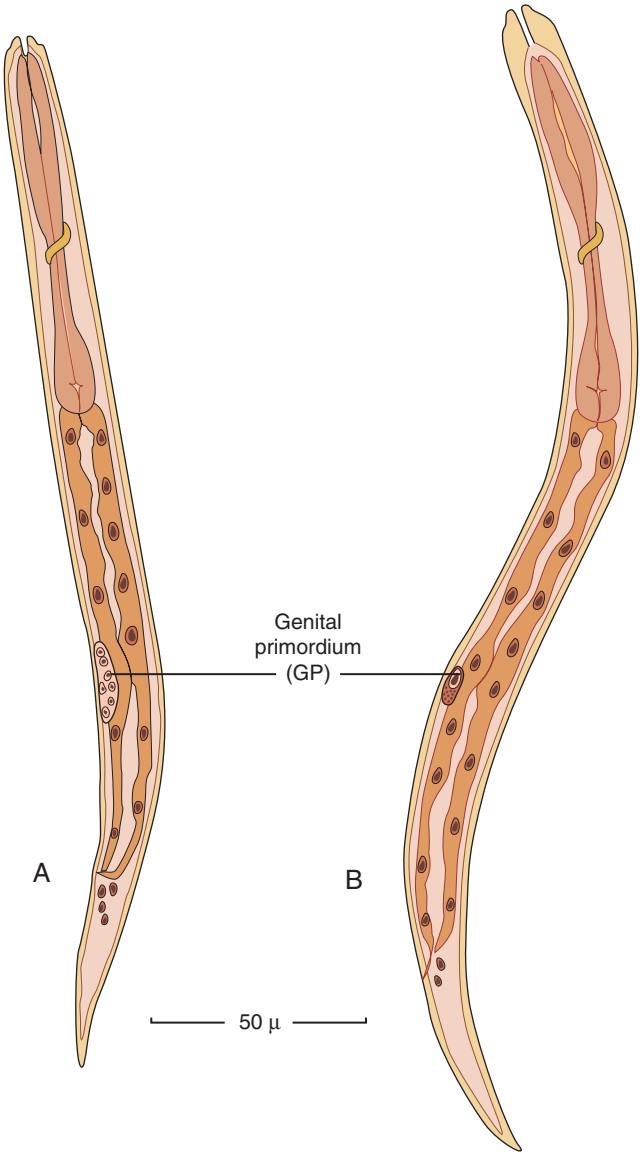


Figure 63-19 **Hookworm and *Strongyloides stercoralis* larvae. A,** *S. stercoralis* rhabditoid larva in human stools. Note the short size of the buccal cavity and the large genital primordium (GP). **B,** Hookworm rhabditoid larva as seen in a few instances in stool left for at least 24 hours at room temperature. The buccal cavity is longer, and the genital primordium is smaller.

Although adult hookworms can be differentiated on the basis of their mouth parts and the copulatory bursa in males, eggs of human hookworms are indistinguishable. In direct wet mounts, egg counts of fewer than five eggs per coverslip denote light infection that is unlikely to result in anemia, whereas more than 25 eggs per coverslip denotes heavy infection that is likely to be associated with symptoms.

Strongyloides stercoralis (Strongyloidiasis)

Strongyloidiasis occurs in many areas in the tropics and subtropics, but this infection also is reported in temperate zones and has historically been endemic in areas of southeastern United States. Adult females are 2 to 3 mm long and live buried in the mucosa of the duodenum, where they reproduce parthenogenetically (Fig. 63-18, *C*). Parasitic males do not occur in the vertebrate phase of the cycle. The eggs hatch primarily in the small bowel, releasing first-stage or rhabditoid larvae, which then are passed in the feces (eggs are almost never found). In this direct cycle, the rhabditoid larvae metamorphose into infective third-stage filariform larvae in the soil. These infective larvae readily penetrate the skin of exposed individuals; they migrate via the circulatory system to the lungs and then move up the bronchial tree and are swallowed. Development to the adult stage is completed in the small intestine. Under appropriate soil conditions of high humidity, an indirect cycle may appear transiently, in which the newly deposited larvae develop into a free-living generation consisting of reproductive males and females. Eggs produced by this generation develop into filariform larvae that again are infective for humans. A third variation in the life cycle of *Strongyloides* involves autoinfection, in which maturation to the filariform stage is completed within the intestinal tract, with subsequent reinvasion of bowel mucosa or perianal skin.

Disease presentation is variable and may depend on the strain acquired (Genta & Walzer, 1989). Early migration of filariform larvae may produce irritation, redness, and pruritus at the site of entry, whereas later migration through the lungs may produce Loeffler's syndrome (Purtilo et al, 1974). The presence of intestinal symptoms is related to the intensity of the infection. The affected individual may have symptoms of peptic ulcer, abdominal pain, and diarrhea. A malabsorption syndrome has been reported with chronic infection.

The ability of the parasite to autoinfect may result in persistence of the infection for decades, as was recognized in allied troops who were held as prisoners of war in Southeast Asia during World War II (Gill & Bell, 1979). In otherwise healthy patients, autoinfection may produce larva currens (linear urticarial lesions). In immunocompromised, alcoholic, or malnourished patients, autoinfection may result in a life-threatening hyperinfection syndrome caused by rapid multiplication of the parasite (Maayen et al, 1987; Genta, 1992). Severe pneumonia is often a presenting manifestation of hyperinfection, followed by marked diarrhea, enteritis, and septicemia. Patients who have lived in endemic areas should be screened for *Strongyloides* prior to receiving immunosuppressive therapy (Strickland, 2000).

Diagnosis is made on recovery and identification of typical rhabditiform larvae in stool specimens, although the routine O&P examination does not always reveal their presence and up to seven stool specimens may need to be examined for optimal sensitivity with this method (Fig. 63-18, *D*) (Pelletier et al, 1988; Genta & Walzer, 1989; Garcia, 2007). *Strongyloides* rhabditiform larvae must be differentiated from those of hookworms and are characterized as having a short buccal cavity and a prominent genital primordium (see Fig. 63-19). *Strongyloides* filariform larvae have a notched tail and an esophagus approximately half the length of the body. Either stage of larvae is readily seen in fresh saline wet mounts under low power. If infective filariform larvae are detected in a recently passed specimen, the diagnosis of superinfection is warranted (Eveland et al, 1975; Murray et al, 2007).

Examination of duodenal aspirates or string test specimens may be helpful in suspicious cases in which routine stool examinations are nonproductive. The agar culture method or one of the coproculture techniques (see the "Laboratory Methods" section earlier in the chapter) may also demonstrate the infection and provide the highest sensitivity for detection of *Strongyloides* from fecal specimens (Ash & Orihel, 1987; Genta & Walzer, 1989; CLSI, 2005; Garcia, 2007). Larvae may be found in sputum or other pulmonary specimens, especially in the hyperinfection syndrome. Serologic tests are useful when infection is suspected but cannot be demonstrated by other methods. EIA and other tests display good sensitivity and specificity, although cross-reactions may appear with filariasis and some other nematode infections. These tests generally do not differentiate between past and current infection but may be useful in monitoring therapy (Wilson et al, 1995).

Anisakiasis

See the "Tissue Helminths" section later in the chapter.

CESTODES

Cestodes or tapeworms are ribbon-like platyhelminths that live in the intestinal tract of vertebrates as adults and in the tissues or body cavities of various intermediate hosts as larvae. They attach to intestinal mucosa by means of a scolex (head) that may display suckers, grooves (bothria), or a rostellum with hooks, depending on the species. The body of the worm, or strobila, comprises an actively growing neck region and a series of proglottids that undergo sequential development through immature, mature, and, finally, gravid stages at the posterior end. Each proglottid has a complete set of male and female gonads and is capable of producing fertile eggs. Eggs of most cestodes infecting humans (*Diphyllobothrium* being an exception) may be readily differentiated from those of other helminths by the presence in each of a six-hooked embryo. Depending on the species, eggs are released directly into the fecal stream or are passed in intact proglottids. It is not uncommon in some species for long lengths of strobila to be passed intact, or for proglottids to actively migrate out of the anus. Large species of *Taenia* and *Diphyllobothrium* may grow to 25 feet or longer and may live for 20 years.

Cestode larval stages develop to the infective stage in invertebrate or vertebrate hosts, depending on the species, and complete their life cycle

when ingested by a definitive host. Larval stages of several species may infect humans, causing cysticercosis, hydatidosis, sparganosis, and coenurosis. These conditions are covered more fully in the "Tissue Helminths" section later in the chapter.

Taenia saginata (Taeniasis)

Humans are the sole definitive host for *Taenia saginata*, the beef tapeworm. Although it is distributed worldwide, the worm is especially common in the Middle East, Africa, Europe, Asia, and Latin America. It occurs rarely and sporadically in the United States. Larval cysticerci *(Cysticercus bovis)* develop in the tissues of cattle that graze on land contaminated by human waste. When humans ingest infected raw or incompletely cooked beef, the cysticercus develops into a reproductive adult in the small intestine in 2 to 3 months. Symptoms are rare but may include abdominal discomfort and diarrhea. Unlike *T. solium*, the eggs of *T. saginata* are not infectious to humans, and their ingestion does not result in cysticercosis.

Diagnosis is made by finding eggs in the stool using direct or concentration techniques. Eggs are spherical and measure 31 to 43 µm in diameter (Fig. 63-20, *A*). The shell is thick, is radially striated, and contains a six-hooked embryo. Eggs of all *Taenia* species are indistinguishable and should be reported only as *Taenia* eggs.

Species identification may be made on recovery of proglottids or, more rarely, the scolex (following administration of an antihelminthic agent). Proglottids of taeniids have a characteristic lateral protrusion known as the *genital pore*. Careful injection of India ink through the genital pore, using a tuberculin needle and syringe, may succeed in outlining the uterus. The gravid uterus of *T. saginata* has 15 to 20 primary lateral branches (counted on one side only), whereas that of *T. solium* has 7 to 13 primary lateral branches (Figs. 63-20, *B*, and 63-21). Proglottids may also be cleared overnight in glycerol or stained with carmine or hematoxylin using published procedures (Ash & Orihel, 1987). If recovered, the scolex of *T. saginata* can be identified by the presence of four suckers and the absence of hooks on the crown or rostellum.

Taenia solium (Taeniasis)

T. solium, the pork tapeworm, is most common in Europe, especially in Eastern Europe, Latin America, China, Pakistan, and India. It is encountered in the United States on occasion, most often in recent immigrants. Infection with the adult tapeworm (taeniasis) is acquired by eating raw or incompletely cooked pork containing cysticerci *(Cysticercus cellulosae)*. Symptoms, if present, are identical to those of *T. saginata* infection. More important, accidental ingestion of *T. solium* eggs from one's own adult tapeworm or from contaminated food may result in cysticercosis (Schantz et al, 1992). Additional details on cysticercosis may be found in the "Tissue Helminths" section later in the chapter.

Procedures used for diagnosis of intestinal *T. solium* infection are identical to those used for *T. saginata* infection, although certain morphologic differences are apparent. The scolex of *T. solium* has four suckers and, unlike *T. saginata*, a rostellum armed with two rows of hooks. Gravid proglottids have 7 to 13 primary lateral uterine branches on each side of the uterine stem (see Fig. 63-21).

Hymenolepis nana (Hymenolepiasis)

Hymenolepis nana, known as the dwarf tapeworm, has a worldwide distribution and is the most frequently recovered cestode species seen in the United States. It is a common parasite in mice and is the smallest cestode to infect humans, measuring up to 4.0 cm in length. The scolex has an armed rostellum, and the proglottids have all of their genital pores located on the same side of the strobila (Figs. 63-20, *C*, and 63-21). The life cycle may be direct, through the ingestion of infectious eggs, or indirect, through the ingestion of intermediate hosts (usually grain beetles) containing cysticercoid larvae. In the former instance, eggs may be passed directly

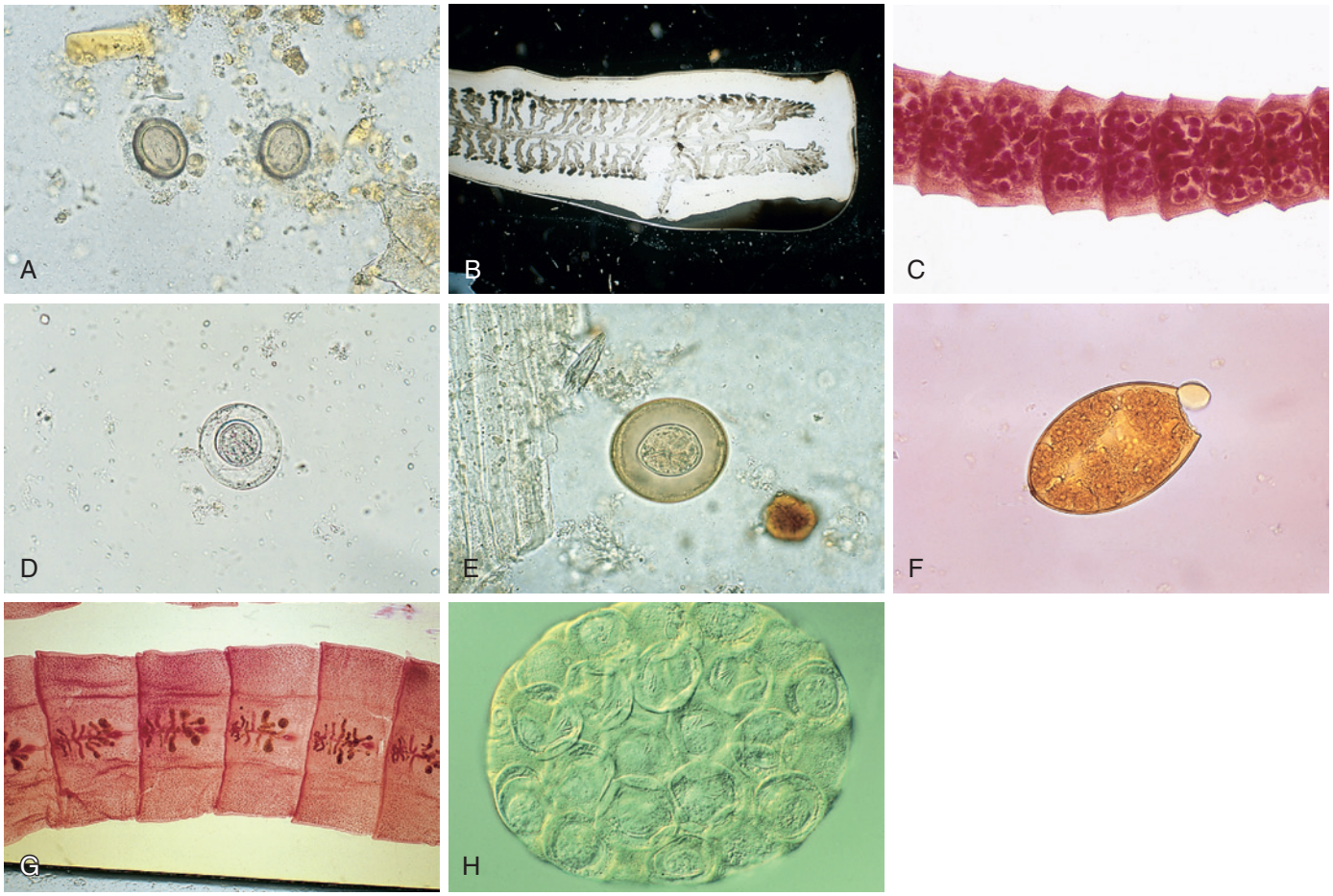


Figure 63-20 **A,** Eggs of *Taenia saginata* (indistinguishable from those of *Taenia solium*; 400×). **B,** Gravid proglottid of *T. saginata* injected through the genital pore with India ink. **C,** Gravid proglottids of *Hymenolepis nana* stained with acetocarmine (100×). **D,** Egg of *H. nana*; note presence of hooklets and polar filaments (400×). **E,** Egg of *Hymenolepis diminuta*; note lack of polar filaments (400×). **F,** Egg of *Diphyllobothrium* sp.; note open operculum and small terminal knob (400×). **G,** Gravid proglottids of *Diphyllobothrium* sp. stained with acetocarmine (2×). **H,** Egg packet of *Dipylidium caninum* (differential interference contrast microscopy; 400×).

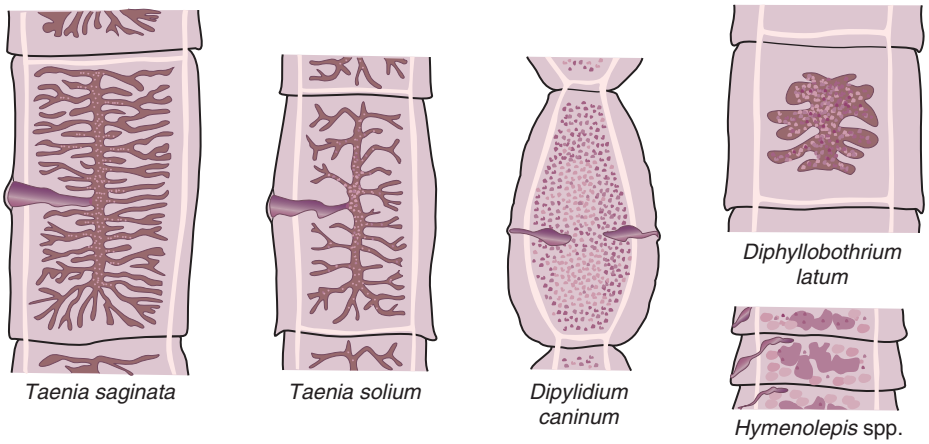


Figure 63-21 Gravid proglottids of different human tapeworms.

from person to person, usually among children (highest likelihood), or may be ingested in food, especially grain products that are contaminated by grain beetles or possibly rodent droppings.

Eggs hatch in the intestine, and embryos penetrate the mucosa, where they mature as cysticercoid larvae. They subsequently emerge and reattach to the intestinal wall to complete their development into adult tapeworms in 2 to 3 weeks. Therefore, humans serve as both the intermediate and definitive host for this parasite. Internal autoinfection may occur in some individuals in whom eggs hatch shortly after being discharged from the worm and rapidly invade the intestinal wall without leaving the body. Such a mechanism is thought to be responsible for the occasional case of massive infection.

Symptomatic infection, characterized by abdominal pain, diarrhea, anorexia, and irritability, may develop in patients with large numbers of worms. Diagnosis is made by recovery from stool of the oval, thin-shelled, colorless eggs, which measure 30 to 47 µm in diameter (Fig. 63-20, *D*). They contain a centrally located, six-hooked embryo (oncosphere), which is separated from the outer shell by a clear space. This embryo displays two polar thickenings from which thin filaments arise and extend into the clear space between the embryo and outer shell. Occasionally, intact strobila may be recovered if the stool is closely examined.

Hymenolepis diminuta (Hymenolepiasis)

The rat tapeworm, *Hymenolepis diminuta*, is cosmopolitan in distribution and rarely infects humans. Infection is infrequent because of the obligate need for an arthropod intermediate host, in which the cysticercoid larvae develop. Human infection usually occurs following the accidental ingestion of infected beetles that contaminate grain or cereal products. Adult tapeworms develop in the small intestine, where they may grow to 60 cm in length. Similar to those of *H. nana*, the proglottids all have genital pores on one side, but unlike that species, the scolex lacks an armed rostellum. Infection usually is asymptomatic because of the small number of worms likely to infect a single individual, although intestinal symptoms have been reported. Diagnosis is made by the finding in the feces of moderately thick-shelled, slightly ovoid, yellow-brown eggs measuring 70 to 85 µm by 60 to 80 µm (Fig. 63-20, *E*). The eggs are most easily confused with those of *H. nana* but, unlike in that species, lack polar filaments.

Diphyllobothrium spp. (Diphyllobothriasis)

Humans may be infected by one of several species of the fish tapeworm *Diphyllobothrium*, which normally infect piscivorous mammals and possibly birds (Curtis & Bylund, 1991; Connor et al, 1997). These parasites are widely distributed in the temperate zones, especially northern Europe, Scandinavia, the former USSR, and Japan. Infection also occurs in Canada and in the north central states, the Pacific Coast states, and Alaska in the United States. Although *Diphyllobothrium latum* is the most common species known to infect humans, differentiation of the infecting species cannot be made on the basis of egg morphology.

This parasite inhabits the small intestine, where it can reach a length of 10 m or longer and can persist for years. Eggs are passed unembryonated in the feces and must reach a freshwater stream or lake to continue development. Following several weeks of embryonation, a ciliated larval form, the six-hooked coracidium, hatches and is ingested by a copepod, a type of zooplankton. The coracidium develops into a procercoid larva, which is infective for the second intermediate host, a fish. In fish, the procercoid migrates into the tissues and develops into the plerocercoid larva. Plerocercoids may be passed up the food chain unchanged and accumulate in larger fish. Humans acquire these larvae through ingestion of raw or incompletely cooked fish that have spent at least part of their life in fresh water.

Adult worms mature and initiate egg production in approximately 1 month. Infection may be asymptomatic, with passage of a length of strobila being the initial complaint. In others, a variable degree of abdominal discomfort and diarrhea may be present. Rarely, intestinal obstruction occurs. In endemic areas in northern Europe, a small percentage of patients develop vitamin B_{12} deficiency and associated megaloblastic anemia due to the propensity of *Diphyllobothrium* to absorb B_{12} in the jejunem.

Diagnosis is made by the finding of typical yellow-brown, oval, operculate eggs in feces using standard recovery techniques. Eggs measure 58 to 76 µm by 40 to 51 µm and, in addition to the operculum, have a small, round, knoblike projection on the abopercular end (Fig. 63-20, *F*). The presence of the operculum is unique among those cestodes infecting humans, and care must be taken not to confuse these eggs with those of trematodes, especially *Paragonimus* or *Nanophyetus*. Identification to the genus level is possible when a length of strobila or an intact worm is passed. The scolex is elongate and displays a pair of longitudinal grooves known as *bothria*, which replace the usual suckers of other human cestodes. Gravid proglottids are wider than they are long and have their genital pores located midventrally, adjacent to a centrally located rosette-shaped uterus (Figs. 63-20, *G*, and 63-21).

Dipylidium caninum

Dipylidium caninum is a common tapeworm of dogs and cats in most parts of the world and not infrequently infects humans, especially children. In the usual life cycle, tapeworm eggs are ingested by flea larvae, which infest areas frequented by dogs or cats. The cysticercoid larvae persist as the flea undergoes metamorphosis to the adult stage. Accidental ingestion of the adult flea containing the infectious cysticercoid results in infection. Children are at highest risk for infection because of their close contact with pets. Worms mature in the small intestine and grow up to 70 cm in length. Infection produces few symptoms and generally causes concern only on detection of the actively moving proglottids.

Detection is based on the finding of characteristic eggs, egg packets, or proglottids in the feces. Spherical eggs, each containing a six-hooked embryo, measure from 24 to 40 µm in diameter and occur singly or in packets (Fig. 63-20, *H*). The scolex is somewhat elongate with four suckers and a small, retractable rostellum. Proglottids are barrel-shaped and possess two genital pores, one on each lateral margin, which give rise to the common name *double-pored tapeworm* (see Fig. 63-21). They are commonly likened to a "grain of rice" or "cucumber seed."

TREMATODES

Trematodes, or flukes, are dorsoventrally flattened helminths (platyhelminths) that include both hermaphroditic forms (intestinal, liver, and lung flukes) and those with separate sexes (blood flukes or schistosomes). All species that infect humans are characterized by the presence of an oral sucker, through which the digestive tract opens, and a ventral sucker used for attachment. Adults vary in length from 1 mm *(Metagonimus)* to 70 mm *(Fasciola gigantica)*.

Eggs reach the environment by being passed in the feces, sputum, or urine, depending on the species. Hermaphroditic flukes produce operculate eggs, which are not embryonated (*Clonorchis* and *Opisthorchis* being exceptions). Schistosome eggs are not operculated, and each contains a mature larva when passed. Trematode larvae, or miracidia, are ciliated and are capable of penetrating the tissues of a molluscan host. Each species of trematode uses a particular species of freshwater snail as the first intermediate host. A complex asexual multiplication process within the snail results in the production of numerous free-swimming larvae called *cercariae*. Schistosome cercariae are capable of penetrating human skin directly, resulting in the disease schistosomiasis. Those of hermaphroditic flukes encyst on aquatic vegetation or invade the tissues of second intermediate hosts such as fish or crabs, depending on the species. Ingestion of these encysted larval stages, known as *metacercariae*, results in human infection.

Human trematode infection may occur in many tropical and subtropical regions and involves considerably more species (mostly rare and sporadic intestinal infections) than can be presented here. Its presence depends on lack of sewage treatment, availability of appropriate intermediate hosts, and, in the case of hermaphroditic species, dietary customs associated with ingestion of infective metacercariae in raw or undercooked plants or animals. Some of these diseases, especially schistosomiasis, expanded with the increased use of irrigation in endemic areas, which allowed for proliferation of the molluscan intermediate hosts. Symptoms vary depending on the number of worms parasitizing the host at a given time, the tissues and organs involved, and host responses. Many infections are asymptomatic.

The diagnosis of trematode infection is made by recovery and identification of the characteristic eggs in stool, sputum, urine, and, occasionally, tissues. Direct mounts and formalin–ethyl acetate concentration methods are most useful for recovery of these eggs, whereas zinc sulfate flotation methods are less satisfactory.

Fasciolopsis buski (Fasciolopiasis)

This intestinal trematode is the largest species to infect humans, varying from 20 to 75 mm in length and from 8 to 20 mm in breadth. It occurs in many parts of China, Southeast Asia, and India and is frequently found in pigs, which serve as a natural reservoir. Infection is acquired by ingesting infectious metacercariae on aquatic food plants such as water chestnuts and water caltrop. Worms attach to the wall of the duodenum and jejunum, where they mature to egg-laying adults in about 3 months. Symptoms such as diarrhea, epigastric pain, and nausea may develop if enough worms are present to produce ulceration of the superficial mucosa. Eosinophilia may be present, even in those who are asymptomatic.

Diagnosis is made by the finding of large (130 to 140 µm by 80 to 85 µm), yellow-brown, oval, thin-shelled eggs (Fig. 63-22, *A*). The operculum may be inconspicuous, and the eggs are passed unembryonated. Differentiation from *Fasciola* eggs generally is not possible, although these infections may be differentiated on the basis of geographic history and symptoms. Eggs of echinostome trematodes, which occasionally infect humans, are similar but smaller (Beaver et al, 1984).

Heterophyes and *Metagonimus*

These two genera include a number of species of minute (1 to 3 mm in length) intestinal worms that infect humans. *Heterophyes* and *Metagonimus yokogawai* are common parasites in Asia but, along with other species, are found in other parts of the world as well. Infection is acquired by ingestion of metacercariae in raw or incompletely cooked freshwater fish. Although it is of minor medical importance, infection with these worms may produce diarrhea and abdominal pain. Infection is self-limited because the worms have a life span of only a few months.

Diagnosis is established by the finding of embryonated, operculate eggs that measure 20 to 30 µm in length by 15 to 17 µm in width (Fig. 63-22, *B*). Differentiation of these eggs from those of *Clonorchis* and *Opisthorchis* is difficult, although the operculum is more deeply seated with *Opisthorchis*. Such differentiation may be important, however, for medical reasons.

Nanophyetus salmincola

Nanophyetus (Troglotrema) salmincola is a small (0.8 to 1.1 mm) intestinal fluke that has been reported in humans in areas of far eastern Siberia and the Pacific Northwest coast of the United States (Eastburn et al, 1987; Fritsche et al, 1989). These worms are acquired by ingesting raw, incompletely cooked, or home-smoked salmon or trout that contain infectious metacercariae. Symptoms are related to the number of worms present and may include abdominal pain and diarrhea, with or without eosinophilia. Eggs measuring 60 to 80 µm by 34 to 50 µm are broadly ovoid, operculate, and yellowish brown (Eastburn et al, 1987). Thickening of the shell at the abopercular end should be differentiated from the knob seen on eggs of *Diphyllobothrium*. This fluke is the vector for a rickettsial species that produces a highly lethal infection in canines known as *salmon-poisoning disease*.

Fasciola hepatica (Fascioliasis)

Cattle, sheep, and goats in many parts of the world are infected with the liver fluke *Fasciola hepatica* and, less commonly, with the related species *Fasciola gigantica*. Adult parasites live in the biliary tree and lay eggs that are passed in the feces. Cercariae shed from the snail intermediate host encyst on aquatic vegetation, where infectious metacercariae then are available to herbivorous hosts. Humans usually acquire the infection by eating raw watercress. Once ingested, the larvae penetrate the intestinal wall and migrate through the peritoneal cavity to the liver. They burrow

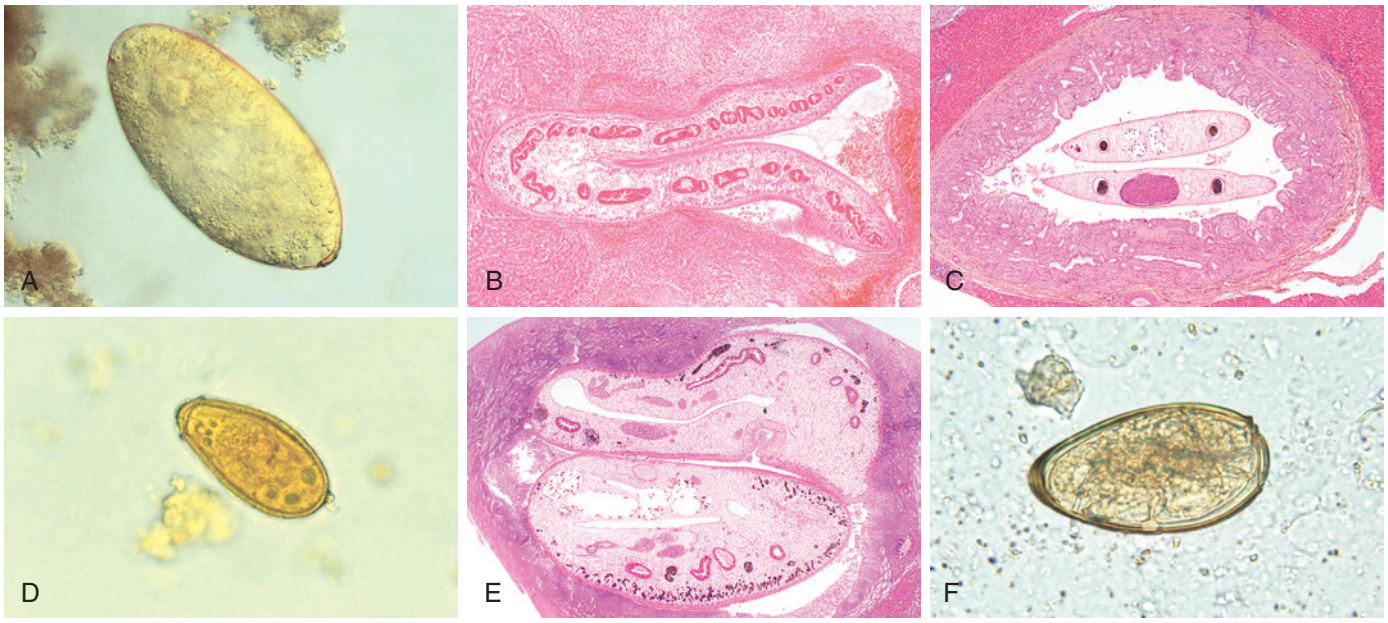


Figure 63-22 **A,** Egg of *Fasciolopsis buski*, indistinguishable from that of *Fasciola hepatica,* in stool (400×). **B,** Adult *Fasciola hepatica* in liver (H&E; 40×). **C,** Two adult *Clonorchis sinensis* in bile duct (H&E; 100×). **D,** Egg of *C. sinensis* in stool; note prominent shouldered operculum, abopercular knob, and "urn" shape (1000×). **E,** Pair of adult *Paragonimus* sp. in lung tissue with surrounding inflammatory reaction (H&E; 20×). **F,** Egg of *Paragonimus* sp. in stool; note prominent shouldered operculum and abopercular thickening (100×).

through the capsule and parenchyma, coming to reside within the bile ducts, where egg laying is initiated in about 2 months. Migration of the larvae through the liver elicits a painful inflammatory reaction both in the tissue and, later, in the bile ducts, which eventually become fibrosed. Clinical manifestations include colic, obstructive jaundice, abdominal pain and tenderness, cholelithiasis, and eosinophilia.

Diagnosis is made by the finding of eggs in the stool. The unembryonated, yellow-brown, operculate eggs, 130 to 150 µm by 63 to 90 µm, cannot be distinguished easily from those of *Fasciolopsis* (see Fig. 63-22, *A*). Spurious infection, which occurs by ingesting infected cattle or sheep liver, is diagnosed by obtaining a good history and performing a follow-up stool examination to look for elimination of the eggs.

Clonorchis sinensis and *Opisthorchis viverrini*

Clonorchis sinensis, the Oriental liver fluke, and a closely related species, *Opisthorchis viverrini*, inhabit the biliary system of humans and other piscivorous animals, including cats and dogs. *C. sinensis* occurs mainly in China, Taiwan, Korea, Japan, and Vietnam, whereas *O. viverrini* is found primarily in southeast Asia, especially northern Thailand. Human infection is also known to occur with *Opisthorchis felineus* in Europe and *Amphimerus pseudofelineus* (same as *Opisthorchis guayaquilensis*) in Ecuador.

All these parasites are acquired by the ingestion of infectious metacercariae in raw or uncooked freshwater fish. Larvae migrate up the common duct into the liver bile ducts, where they live up to 20 years and grow up to 25 mm in length (Fig. 63-22, *C*). They produce small eggs that are shed into the bile and subsequently are passed in stools.

Infection is often asymptomatic, although large numbers of flukes and repeated infection may cause inflammation of the bile ducts and subsequent hyperplasia, fibrosis, and hepatic cirrhosis. Importantly, development of cholangiocarcinoma has been linked epidemiologically with long-standing infection.

Diagnosis is made by recovering the small yellow-brown, embryonated, operculate eggs from stool (Fig. 63-22, *D*). Eggs of *Clonorchis* cannot be readily differentiated from those of *Opisthorchis*. Both measure 25 to 35 µm by 12 to 20 µm and have a prominent, seated, or "shouldered" opercula and a small knob at the abopercular end. These eggs are difficult to differentiate from those of the *Heterophyes/Metagonimus* group, although the latter species do not have prominent, seated opercula or a small knob at the abopercular end. When specific identification is not possible, the laboratory report should reflect this (i.e., should state, "*Clonorchis/Opisthorchis/Heterophyes/Metagonimus* eggs").

Paragonimus spp. (Paragonimiasis)

Several species of *Paragonimus* may parasitize the lungs of cats, dogs, and other carnivores, including humans. *Paragonimus westermani* is problematic in many areas of Asia, whereas in Central and South America several species have been implicated, including *Paragonimus mexicanus*, *Paragonimus caliensis*, and *Paragonimus ecuadoriensis*. *Paragonimus kellicotti* has occasionally been implicated in cases from North America, and other species have been described from Africa (Pachucki et al, 1984; Mariano et al, 1986; Strickland, 2000; Cook, 2002; Murray et al, 2007).

Adult worms measure up to 12 mm by 6 mm and often are found in pairs in lung parenchyma, where they reside in a fibrotic capsule produced by the host (Fig. 63-22, *E*). The capsule communicates with the bronchi, through which eggs pass to be eventually expelled in sputa or feces. Although a specific snail serves as the first intermediate host, freshwater crabs and crayfish serve as second intermediates for infectious metacercariae. Ingestion of uncooked, or marinated, crustacea may result in infection. Larvae are released in the stomach and migrate through the intestinal wall into the peritoneal cavity, eventually reaching the lungs after penetrating the diaphragm. Maturation takes approximately 5 to 6 weeks, and worms may live for many years.

Symptoms, when present, may be caused by larvae migrating through tissues or by adults established in the lungs. Not infrequently, worms develop in ectopic sites, including the peritoneum, subcutaneous tissues, and brain. The onset of lung infection is usually associated with fever, chills, and the appearance of eosinophilia. Once established, symptoms include chronic coughing with abundant mucus production, along with episodes of hemoptysis. Radiographs may show nodular shadows, calcifications, or patchy infiltrates. Eggs remaining in the lung tissues or in ectopic sites may cause an extensive granulomatous reaction.

Diagnosis is made by the finding of typical eggs in stool, sputum, or, occasionally, tissues. Eggs of the different *Paragonimus* species cannot be readily differentiated, and specific identification may be inferred from the area of origin. Operculate, unembryonated eggs measure 80 to 120 µm by 45 to 70 µm and have a moderately thick, yellow-brown shell (Fig. 63-22, *F*). The operculum is flattened and usually is set off from the rest of the shell by prominent shoulders (i.e., shouldered operculum). The abopercular end is somewhat thickened but does not have a knob. *Paragonimus* eggs may be differentiated from those of *Diphyllobothrium* and *Fasciola/Fasciolopsis*, which they superficially resemble, by size.

Schistosoma spp. (Schistosomiasis)

Schistosomiasis, or bilharzia, is among the most important parasitic diseases worldwide, afflicting greater than 200 million individuals. Adult male and female blood flukes inhabit veins of the mesentery or bladder. The most important species infecting humans are *Schistosoma mansoni*, *Schistosoma japonicum*, *Schistosoma mekongi*, *Schistosoma haematobium*, and *Schistosoma intercalatum*; other species infect humans less frequently.

Adult female schistosomes are slender, measuring up to 26 mm by 0.5 mm. Males, which are slightly shorter, enfold a female using the lateral margins of the body (the gynecophoral canal) to assist in sperm transfer. When examined in situ, schistosomes are often found in copula. In their preferred locations, blood flukes elicit little or no inflammatory response. Eggs are deposited in the smallest venule that can accommodate the female worm, where they elicit a strong granulomatous response that results in extrusion of the egg through the intestinal or bladder wall and into the lumen for excretion in stool or urine, respectively. Eggs laid in the mesenteric vessels also commonly end up in the liver. Pathology is primarily related to the sites of egg deposition, the numbers deposited, and the host reaction to egg antigens.

Eggs are fully embryonated when passed and readily hatch when deposited in fresh water. The miracidia penetrate an appropriate species of snail host, where they undergo transformation and extensive asexual multiplication. After about 4 weeks, large numbers of fork-tailed cercariae emerge from the mollusk. Cercariae swim actively about for hours and readily penetrate the skin of susceptible hosts, including humans. After penetration, the cercariae, now called *schistosomules*, enter the circulation and pass through the lungs before reaching the mesenteric-portal vessels.

Symptoms of schistosomiasis result primarily from penetration of cercariae (cercarial dermatitis), from initiation of egg laying (acute schistosomiasis or Katayama fever), and as a late-stage complication of tissue proliferation and repair (chronic schistosomiasis). In a matter of hours after cercarial penetration, a papular rash associated with pruritus may develop. This is a sensitization phenomenon resulting from prior exposure to cercarial antigens. The most severe form of dermatitis occurs in individuals who are repeatedly exposed to cercariae of nonhuman (primarily avian) schistosomes. Cercarial dermatitis or swimmer's itch occurs worldwide and is a well-recognized entity in the United States (Hoeffler, 1974).

Initiation of egg laying by mature worms 5 to 7 weeks after infection may result in acute schistosomiasis, or Katayama fever, a serum sickness–like syndrome that occurs with heavy primary infection, especially that of *S. japonicum*. The antigenic challenge to the host is thought to result in immune complex formation (Boros, 1989).

Chronic infection results in continued deposition of eggs, many of which remain in the body. Granulomas produced around these eggs in the intestine and in the bladder are gradually replaced by collagen, resulting in fibrosis and scarring. Eggs trapped in the liver may induce pipe-stem fibrosis with obstruction to portal blood flow. Occasionally, eggs are deposited in ectopic sites, such as the spinal cord, lungs, or brain (Cook, 2002; Garcia, 2007).

Diagnosis is established by demonstrating eggs in feces or urine by direct wet mount or formalin–ethyl acetate concentration methods. Zinc sulfate concentration is not satisfactory for recovery of heavy schistosome eggs. Eggs also may be detected in biopsies of rectal, bladder, and, occasionally, liver tissues by crush preparation or in histologic section (Fig. 63-23). Use of egg-hatching methods may occasionally be requested to determine viability or, less commonly, to detect light infection. Feces mixed with distilled water are placed in a flask that is covered with foil to keep out light, with only the neck or a sidearm exposed to bright light. Miracidia, if present, actively swim to the light and can be detected using a hand lens.

Serologic tests may be helpful in screening persons who have traveled to endemic areas and those with negative urine or stool examination who are at risk for infection, or for monitoring response to therapy. Although not widely available, a limited number of reference laboratories and the CDC provide testing. Generally, serologic testing varies with the antigens used and the test methods employed. The CDC uses the Falcon assay screening test in a kinetic enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (FAST-ELISA). Sera that are positive by the screening test are further evaluated by immunoblot to improve specificity (Wilson et al, 1995).

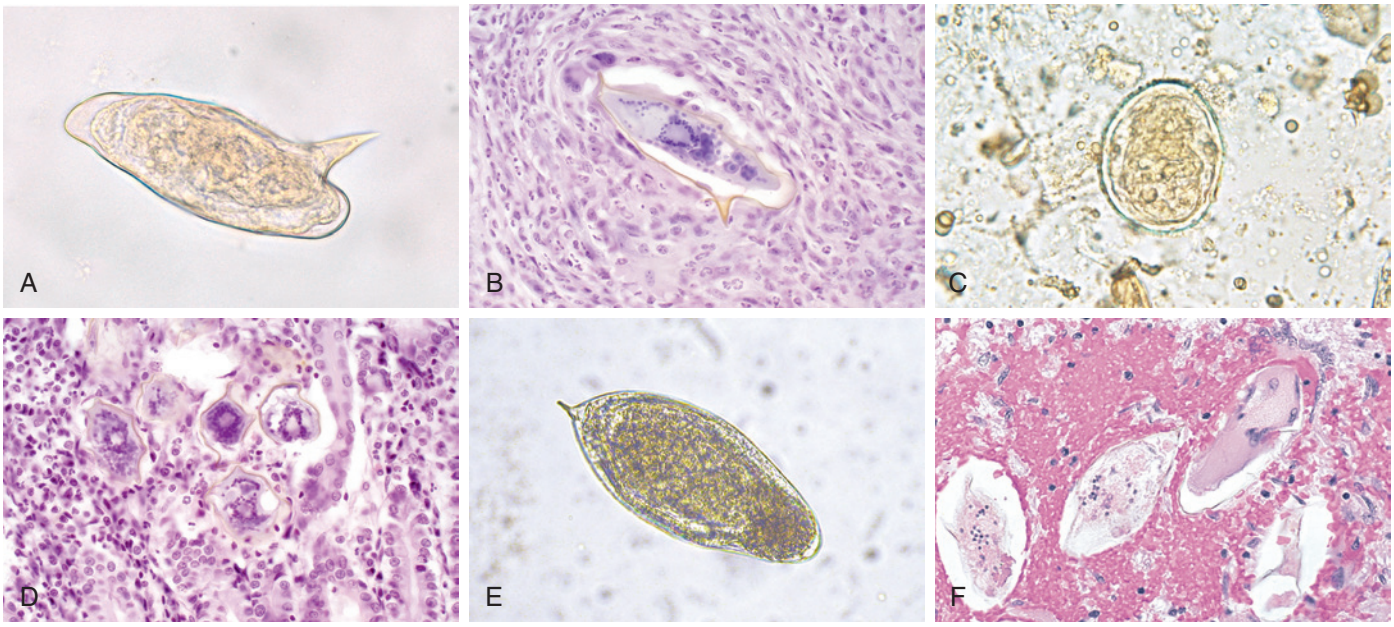


Figure 63-23 **A,** Egg of *Schistosoma mansoni*; note prominent lateral spine (400×). **B,** Egg of *S. mansoni* in an intestinal biopsy; note presence of lateral spine (H&E; 400×). **C,** Egg of *Schistosoma japonicum*; note presence of rudimentary lateral spine (400×). **D,** Eggs of *S. japonicum* in a small-bowel biopsy (H&E; 200×). **E,** Egg of *Schistosoma haematobium* found in urine sediment; note presence of a terminal spine (400×). **F,** Eggs of *S. haematobium* seen in a vulvar granuloma; note presence of a terminal spine (H&E; 400×).

Schistosoma mansoni

Schistosoma mansoni occurs in Africa, especially in the tropical areas and the Nile delta, southern Africa, and Madagascar, Brazil, Venezuela, Surinam, and certain Caribbean islands, including Puerto Rico. Adult *S. mansoni* live primarily in the portal vein and in the distribution of the inferior mesenteric vein. Initial deposition of eggs in the large intestine may produce abdominal pain and dysentery, with abundant blood and mucus in the stool. Eggs may be detected in feces at this time. Chronic infection may result in liver fibrosis and portal hypertension, depending on the number of worms present; eggs may be more difficult to find in feces during this stage.

Eggs, which measure 116 to 180 µm by 45 to 58 µm, are oval, with a large distinctive lateral spine that protrudes from the side of the egg near one end (see Fig. 63-23, *A* and *B*). If the spine is not visible, the egg may be rotated by gently tapping the coverslip. Movement of the miracidium within the egg may be evident in unfixed material if the larva is viable. Concentration techniques may be required to detect eggs because individuals with limited exposure or with chronic infection may pass few of them.

Schistosoma japonicum

Schistosoma japonicum, which occurs in China, southeast Asia, and the Philippines, causes disease that is clinically similar to that of *S. mansoni* but often more serious because many more (up to 10 times as many) eggs are produced by *S. japonicum*. The disease has been essentially eliminated from Japan, although animal reservoirs still exist. Adult worms live primarily in the distribution of the superior mesenteric vein, and eggs readily reach the liver, inducing fibrosis and portal hypertension as a common complication of chronic infection. The smaller size of the eggs predisposes them to dissemination, especially to the brain and spinal cord. The eggs are broadly oval, measuring 75 to 90 µm by 60 to 68 µm, and have an inconspicuous lateral spine, which may be difficult to demonstrate (see Fig. 63-23, *C* and *D*).

Schistosoma mekongi

This species occurs in humans and animal reservoirs in countries along the Mekong River, especially Cambodia and Laos (Bruce & Sornmani, 1980). It is similar to *S. japonicum* but is differentiated from that species by several biological characteristics and by smaller eggs (60 to 70 µm by 52 to 61 µm), which otherwise are indistinguishable from those of *S. japonicum*.

Schistosoma haematobium

Urinary schistosomiasis occurs in many parts of Africa, the Middle East, and Madagascar. Parasites migrate via the hemorrhoidal veins to the venous plexuses of the urinary bladder, prostate, uterus, and vagina. One of the earliest and most common symptoms of infection is hematuria, especially at the end of micturition. Chronic infection may cause pelvic pain and bladder colic, with an increased desire to urinate. Accumulation of eggs in the tissues may result in hypertrophy of the urothelium, squamous metaplasia, and marked fibrosis, which may progress to obstruction and, ultimately, renal failure. Urinary schistosomiasis also has been associated with squamous cell carcinoma of the bladder (Badawi et al, 1992).

Eggs can be recovered from the urine by examination of spun sediment or through filtration. They are elongate, measuring 112 to 180 µm by 40 to 70 µm, and have a characteristic terminal spine (see Fig. 63-23, *E* and *F*). Occasionally, they may be detected in feces or in a rectal biopsy.

Schistosoma intercalatum

This species occurs in many parts of central and western Africa and produces intestinal schistosomiasis. Eggs have a terminal spine and so resemble those of *S. haematobium*, but they occur primarily in the feces and are larger (140 to 240 µm by 50 to 85 µm).

TISSUE HELMINTHS

NEMATODES

Filaria (Filariasis)

Filarial nematodes, also known as *threadworms*, are common arthropod-transmitted parasites of vertebrate animals. Adult male and female worms are long and slender, measuring up to 100 mm in length, and are known to inhabit a variety of tissues, including subcutaneous tissues, lymphatics, blood vessels, peritoneal and pleural cavities, heart, and brain. All species produce larvae known as *microfilariae*, which may be recovered from blood or skin, depending on the species. The microfilariae of some species circulate in the blood with a well-defined periodicity (diurnal or nocturnal), whereas others do not. Microfilariae continue their development only in the appropriate arthropod vector, usually a mosquito or fly, where they mature to the infective stage. Such larvae then are deposited in the tissues of a definitive host when the vector takes another blood meal.

The diagnosis of filariasis usually is made by the finding of microfilariae in the blood or skin, because adult stages are often sequestered in the tissues. Use of Giemsa or hematoxylin-stained thick smears of peripheral blood is routine, although more sensitive procedures such as membrane filter, Knott's concentration, or saponin lysis may also be required (NCCLS, 2000). Microfilariae may be seen moving in direct mounts of blood or tissue fluid.

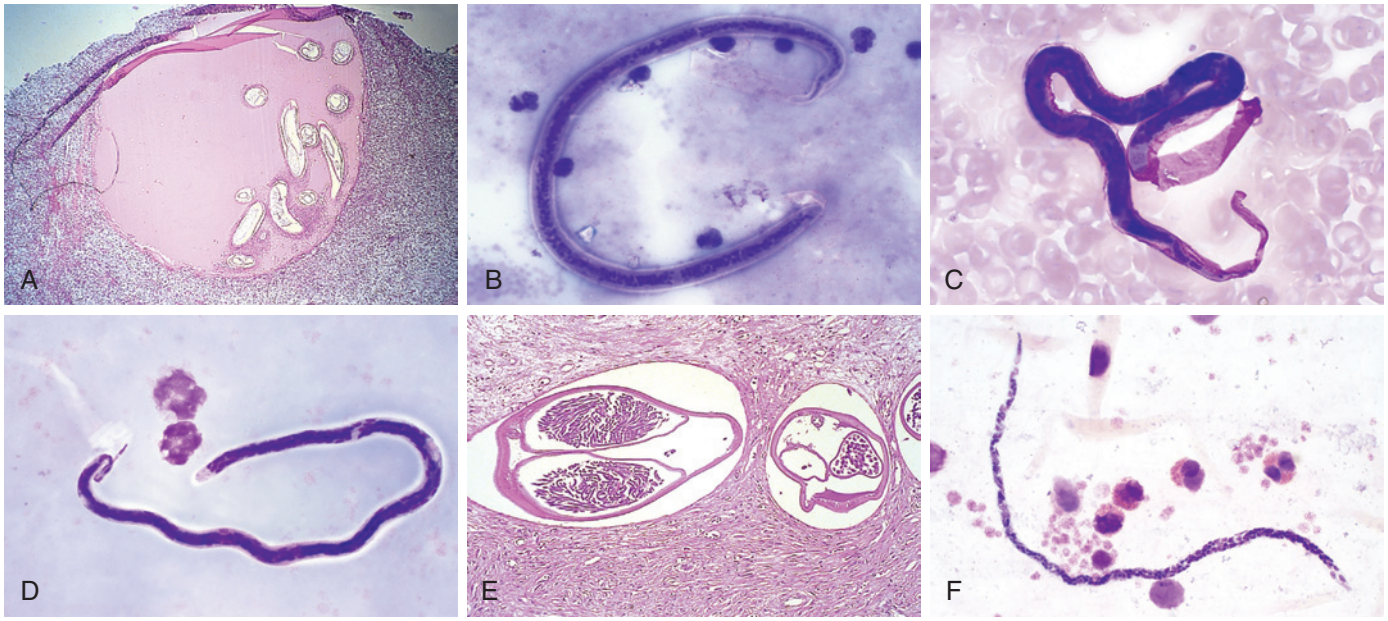


Figure 63-24 **A,** *Wuchereria bancrofti*, cross-section of adult in human lymph node; note extensive inflammatory reaction (H&E; 100×). **B,** Sheathed microfilaria of *W. bancrofti;* cell nuclei do not extend to the tip of the tail (Giemsa; 1000×). **C,** Sheathed microfilaria of *Brugia malayi;* two solitary cell nuclei are seen in the tail tip. Note the deep pink-staining sheath (Giemsa stain; 1000×). **D,** Sheathed microfilaria of *Loa;* cell nuclei extend to the tail tip. Note that the sheath is seen by its negative staining (Giemsa stain; 1000×). **E,** *Onchocerca volvulus*, cross-section of adult in skin nodule (H&E; 100×). **F,** Unsheathed microfilaria of *Mansonella perstans;* cell nuclei extend to the tail tip (Giemsa stain; 1000×).

Species identification is important because pathogenicity varies. Principal characteristics used for identification of microfilariae include the presence or absence of a sheath and its staining characteristics, the shape of the tail and the distribution of cell nuclei within, and the size of the cephalic space and the appearance of its nuclear column. Because microfilariae of *Wuchereria* and *Brugia* usually display a nocturnal periodicity, blood from patients suspected to be infected with these filariae should be drawn between the hours of 10 PM and 2 AM. *Loa loa* displays diurnal periodicity, so blood preferably should be drawn around noon. *Mansonella ozzardi* and *Mansonella perstans* are characteristically nonperiodic. Microfilariae of *Mansonella streptocerca* and *Onchocerca volvulus* are present in the skin and are detected by examination of skin snips or punch biopsies.

Serologic tests for the diagnosis of lymphatic filariasis may prove helpful in select patients, especially those who are not native to endemic areas. Such methods are limited in their ability to distinguish between past exposure and current infection, however, and infection with other nematode species may result in the appearance of cross-reacting antibodies. Antigen detection tests also may be of value in the diagnosis of lymphatic filariasis but generally are not available in non-endemic settings (Wilson et al, 1995).

Wuchereria bancrofti (Lymphatic Filariasis)

This species, responsible for bancroftian filariasis, is the most common filarial species to infect humans. Endemic areas include central and northern Africa, India, Southeast Asia, certain South Pacific islands, and portions of Central and South America and the West Indies. Adult worms reside in the lymphatic system, where chronic infection and reinfection result in lymphadenopathy and lymphangitis, which may progress to lymphedema and obstructive fibrosis (Fig. 63-24, *A*). Severe involvement of the lower extremities and genitalia may result in elephantiasis.

In most areas, microfilariae circulate in peripheral blood with a nocturnal periodicity that corresponds with feeding activities of the usual vectors—*Culex*, *Aedes*, and *Anopheles* mosquitoes. Infections originating in the South Pacific are essentially without periodicity. The microfilariae are sheathed, although this may not always be obvious with Giemsa staining, in which the sheath may appear only as a negative outline. The tail is pointed, and no nuclei are present in the tip. The cephalic space is not as long as it is wide, and the nuclei in the nuclear column are distinct (Figs. 63-24, *B*, and 63-25). Concentration procedures may be necessary for recovery because microfilariae may be present in small numbers.

Brugia malayi (Lymphatic Filariasis)

This species produces disease similar to that of *W. bancrofti*, although it is often milder and more frequently involves the lymphatics of the upper

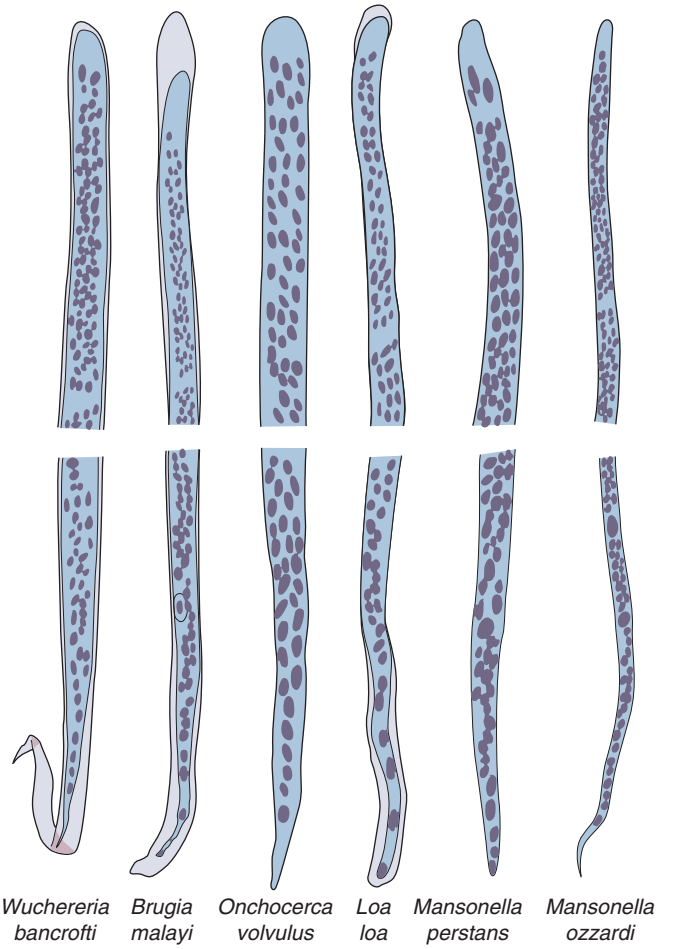


Figure 63-25 **Anterior and posterior ends of microfilariae most commonly found in humans.** All camera lucida drawings.

extremities. The parasite occurs mainly in India, Southeast Asia, Korea, the Philippines, and Japan. Human infection with related zoonotic species is encountered periodically in the United States.

The microfilariae circulate in the blood and are primarily nocturnally periodic. Microfilarial sheaths of *Brugia malayi* stain well with Giemsa stain. The tail has a swelling at the tip and has two solitary nuclei located beyond the ends of the nuclear column (termed *subterminal* and *terminal* nuclei). The cephalic space may be much longer than it is wide (Figs. 63-24, *C*, and 63-25). *Brugia timori* is a distinct species occurring in the eastern end of the Indonesian archipelago, especially on the islands of Timor and Flores. Microfilariae are very similar to those of *B. malayi*, although somewhat larger.

Loa loa (Loiasis)

Known as the eye worm, the adult *Loa loa* lives in subcutaneous tissues. The nematodes migrate continuously, producing transient (2 to 3 days) local inflammatory reactions known as *Calabar* or *fugitive swellings*. Their occasional appearance in the conjunctiva allows them to be surgically excised. Loiasis occurs primarily in west and central Africa, where deer flies of the genus *Chrysops* serve as the vector.

This parasite elicits strong eosinophilia and occasionally has been seen in the United States in people with a history of travel to Africa. The microfilariae, which circulate in the blood with diurnal periodicity, are sheathed, although the sheath does not stain with Giemsa stain. Nuclei in the tail extend to the rounded tip. The nuclear column is distinct, and the cephalic space is short (Figs. 63-24, *D*, and 63-25) (NCCLS, 2000; Garcia, 2007).

Onchocerca volvulus (Onchocerciasis)

Onchocerciasis is a leading cause of blindness in endemic areas, which include central Africa, Central America (Mexico and Guatemala), and northern South America. Vectors are black flies of the genus *Simulium*. Adult worms live in hard, fibrous nodules (onchocercomas) in subcutaneous and deeper tissues that can grow to be 40 mm in diameter (Fig. 63-24, *E*). Nodules tend to occur on the upper half of the body in patients from Central America and on the lower half in those from Africa. Adult worms produce microfilariae that migrate continuously throughout the skin. Complications arise from the migratory activities of microfilariae, resulting in several forms of dermatitis. Movement of microfilariae through the surface of the eye may result in keratitis, corneal opacity, and damage to the anterior and posterior chambers and iris, thus leading to blindness with repeated infection over time.

Diagnosis is made by the finding of typical microfilariae in teased skin snips or skin biopsies, preferably taken from over the scapular region or from the iliac crest, when placed in saline. Alternatively, fluids expressed from scarified skin or aspirates of nodules may be examined (Beaver et al, 1984; Garcia, 2007). Microfilariae in stained preparations lack both a sheath and nuclei in the tail tip (see Fig. 63-25).

Mansonella spp.

Several species of *Mansonella* infect humans, but all are generally regarded as causing little pathology. Microfilariae, however, must be differentiated from the truly pathogenic filarial species. *M. ozzardi* is found in Central and South America and in some areas of the Caribbean. Adult parasites reside in subcutaneous tissues. *M. perstans* occurs in many areas of tropical Africa and sporadically in South America. Adults are thought to reside primarily in body cavities and the mesenteries. Microfilariae of both species are unsheathed and circulate in peripheral blood without evidence of periodicity. *M. ozzardi* microfilariae have a thin, pointed tail without nuclei, whereas the tail of *M. perstans* is broad and blunt with nuclei extending to the tip (Figs. 63-24, *F*, and 63-25). *M. streptocerca*, which is found in tropical Africa, may be confused with *Onchocerca volvulus*, because both adult and microfilarial stages occur in skin and subcutaneous tissues. Also, dermatitis may be produced by this species. Microfilariae of this species, which may be recovered in skin snips, are unsheathed and have a crook in the tail with nuclei extending to the tip. All species of *Mansonella* are transmitted by midges (gnats) of the genus *Culicoides*.

Zoonotic Filariae

Certain filarial nematodes of the genera *Dirofilaria* and *Brugia* that naturally parasitize wild and domestic mammals sporadically infect humans. *Dirofilaria immitis*, commonly known as the canine heartworm, is widely distributed, and human infection is well documented. The mosquito-transmitted larval stage migrates to the right side of the heart. When the worm dies, it is swept into a small pulmonary artery, producing a granulomatous nodule that appears as a coin lesion on a chest radiograph. Diagnosis usually is made by histologic examination of the nodule.

Other species of *Dirofilaria*, including *Dirofilaria tenuis*, *Dirofilaria repens*, and *Dirofilaria ursi*, commonly cause subcutaneous nodules in humans but fail to produce microfilariae. Such nodules have been reported from many body sites, including the face, conjunctiva, and breast, and usually are removed surgically. Histologic examination often reveals a prominent mixed inflammatory reaction surrounding a dead worm. Criteria for identification of zoonotic filariae in tissue sections may be found elsewhere (MacDougall et al, 1992; Orihel & Ash, 1995; Connor et al, 1997; Gutierrez, 2000).

Other

Dracunculus medinensis (Dracunculiasis)

Adults of *Dracunculus medinensis*, otherwise known as Guinea worms, live in subcutaneous tissues and become clinically evident when the female worm migrates to the skin surface and produces a blister, usually on the lower extremities. When the extremity is immersed in water, the blister ruptures, releasing swarms of motile larvae from the female worm into the water. Specific zooplankton (i.e., copepods) ingest the larvae, which then mature to the infective stage and are transmitted back to humans when copepods are accidentally swallowed in drinking water.

The disease is endemic to areas of Africa, the Middle East, and Asia and may be responsible for disfiguring cutaneous scars and more serious secondary bacterial infection. Extensive control efforts have been made in recent years to eradicate this destructive parasite, and success is thought to be close at hand, although the recent discovery of infected dogs in Chad has led to concerns that dogs may serve as an important disease reservoir (CDC, 1992; Cairncross et al, 2002; Garcia, 2007).

Diagnosis is made by the finding of the female worm emerging at the skin surface with larvae in the discharge fluid. The worm may be gently extracted over a period of days, but care must be taken not to damage it during removal. Should the worm die in situ, pronounced inflammatory reaction and secondary bacterial infection may disable the affected individual.

Angiostrongylus cantonensis and *Angiostrongylus costaricensis* (Angiostrongyliasis)

Human eosinophilic meningoencephalitis, caused by *Angiostrongylus cantonensis*, occurs both in epidemics and sporadically in many areas of the South Pacific, Southeast Asia, and Taiwan. The mature parasite normally is found in the pulmonary arteries of rats. Larvae migrate up the trachea and are passed in the feces. They develop to the infective stage in slugs or land snails and, when eaten by the usual rodent host, migrate through the brain before maturing in the pulmonary arteries. Humans acquire the infection by eating large edible snails; raw or incompletely cooked shrimp or crabs, which may serve as transport hosts; or vegetables contaminated with infected mollusks. In humans, *A. cantonensis* larvae migrate to the CNS, producing generally nonfatal meningitis with high spinal fluid eosinophilia (Alicata, 1991). Diagnosis is established both clinically and historically, although larvae occasionally have been recovered from spinal fluid (Kubersky et al, 1979; Strickland, 2000; Cook, 2002; Garcia, 2007).

Angiostrongylus costaricensis occurs widely in Central and South America (Loria-Cortez, 1980). This parasite, which is responsible for the intestinal form of angiostrongyliasis, normally resides in the mesenteric arteries of the ileum and cecum of rodents. Human infection occurs in the same anatomic location but often results in granulomatous inflammation and symptoms of acute abdomen. Diagnosis is made by histologic examination of surgical specimens and the finding of adults or eggs in the tissues (Strickland, 2000).

Trichinella spiralis (Trichinosis or Trichinellosis)

Human trichinosis occurs worldwide, although its incidence in the United States has been in steady decline, with fewer than 25 cases reported each year. Humans acquire the infection through ingestion of raw or incompletely cooked pork, pork products, or, less commonly, bear and walrus meat that contains infective larvae. Ingested worms mature in the small intestine, where gravid females produce new larvae for 2 to 3 weeks. During this stage, gastrointestinal symptoms occur, lasting several days. Larvae subsequently enter lymphatics and venules, thus reaching the general circulation. They primarily invade the skeletal musculature, where they undergo further development and encapsulation. During the migratory and encapsulation phases, fever, muscle pain, respiratory difficulties, periorbital edema, and eosinophilia may develop, depending on the inoculating dose. After the parasites have encysted, few symptoms are noted.

Encysted larvae may remain viable for several years, although they eventually become calcified.

Diagnosis is usually made on the basis of history and clinical symptoms and is confirmed by the demonstration of *Trichinella* cysts in skeletal muscle biopsy, particularly the gastrocnemius or deltoid muscles (see Fig. 63-18, *E* and *F*). Indirect tests include creatine phosphokinase, which is often elevated, and detection of antibodies by bentonite flocculation or EIA. Of these latter tests, creatine phosphokinase is sensitive but lacks specificity, whereas EIA is more specific (Wilson et al, 1995).

Larva Migrans

Larva migrans is caused by prolonged wandering through body tissues of larvae of certain hookworms, ascarids, and *Strongyloides* species that normally infect wild or domestic animals. The syndrome varies with the species involved, the number of worms, and the tissues parasitized.

Cutaneous larva migrans, or ground itch, is produced by the cutaneous wanderings of cat or dog hookworms of the genus *Ancylostoma*, which penetrate the skin but cannot mature in the usual pattern. Serpiginous, erythematous, and pruritic tracks are apparent on the skin in areas where there has been contact with the ground. This is particularly problematic in warmer, humid climates, where eggs and larvae of these hookworms survive longer. Some species of *Strongyloides* that parasitize wild animals may cause a similar dermatitis (Beaver et al, 1984).

Visceral larva migrans (VLM) is produced primarily by the random wanderings of the dog ascarid *Toxocara canis* and, to a lesser degree, by *Toxocara cati* from the domestic cat and *Baylisascaris procyonis* from the raccoon. Children are usually infected following the accidental or intentional ingestion of eggs in soil contaminated with dog, cat, or raccoon feces. After hatching, the larvae are unable to complete their usual cycle and instead begin a prolonged migration through various tissues and organs. Children may present with failure to thrive and may display fever, hepatomegaly, pneumonitis, hypereosinophilia, and hypergammaglobulinemia. An inflammatory reaction in the retina from ocular larva migrans may mimic retinoblastoma, a malignant tumor from which it must be differentiated. Diagnosis of VLM is usually made on clinical grounds because the parasite is rarely recovered. Serologic tests may be helpful in confirming a presumptive diagnosis, and the currently recommended procedure is an EIA that uses larval stage excretory-secretory antigens (Wilson et al, 1995; Garcia, 2007).

A VLM-like syndrome may also be caused by species of *Gnathostoma* that infect the stomach of various mammals. Human infection is most common in Southeast Asia but has been reported in Mexico and Ecuador. These parasites use a copepod for the first intermediate host, and fish and amphibians as secondary hosts. A variety of reptiles, birds, and mammals may serve as paratenic hosts. The larvae may migrate through subcutaneous tissues, causing transient swellings, and to deeper tissues, eventually invading the CNS. The occurrence of migratory lesions and a history of eating raw fish may be helpful in establishing a clinical diagnosis.

Capillaria hepatica (Capillariasis)

Although normally a parasite common to rodents, this species occasionally causes human disease, especially in children, in whom it may mimic VLM, hepatitis, amebic liver abscess, and other diseases. In the usual rodent host, eggs are ingested and resulting larvae migrate to the liver, where they mature and deposit eggs directly in the parenchyma. When the liver is eaten by a predator, the eggs are passed out in the feces and contaminate soil. Children are at particular risk for acquiring the eggs if they eat dirt. In endemic areas, diagnosis is made by examination of liver biopsies or tissue obtained at autopsy. Eggs are readily recognized in tissue biopsies as having thick, striated walls and plugs at both ends.

Anisakis, Pseudoterranova, and *Eustrongylides* spp. (Anisakiasis, Anisakidosis)

Ingestion of raw fish, although considered by many to be a delicacy, has resulted in an increase in the number of reported cases of fish nematode infections. *Anisakis* spp. and *Pseudoterranova decipiens* are common gastrointestinal parasites of marine mammals, and the infective stages are found in various saltwater fish, salmon, and squid intermediate hosts. Small shrimplike crustaceans (krill) serve as the first intermediate host. When ingested, these larvae may penetrate the wall of the stomach or small bowel, causing acute abdominal pain. Anisakiasis may be presumptively diagnosed based on an appropriate history and clinical findings, and the condition may be confirmed by the recovery of an intact worm at endoscopy or by the presence of an eosinophilic granuloma containing an identifiable nematode in a surgical specimen. Species of *Anisakis* appear to be more prone to produce invasive disease, whereas *Pseudoterranova* spp. tend to be coughed up or vomited intact (see Fig. 63-18, *G* and *H*) (Sakanari & McKerrow, 1989). The species level of larval anisakids is difficult to identify (Binford & Connor, 1976).

A small number of infections with *Eustrongyloides* spp. have been reported in individuals who ate live minnows or home-prepared sushi. These parasites usually infect fish-eating birds, but in humans, the bright red larvae invade the abdominal cavity, requiring surgical removal (Wittner et al, 1989).

CESTODES

Several species of cestode infect humans in their larval stages and may produce serious disease. The more commonly encountered ones are readily distinguishable from each other and have unique patterns of transmission. When seen in tissue sections, larval and adult stages of cestodes contain basophilic-staining laminated bodies known as *calcareous corpuscles*, which are an important aid in their recognition.

Taenia solium (Cysticercosis)

Human infection with the larval stage of the pork tapeworm, *T. solium*, is found worldwide and occurs following unintentional ingestion of the eggs of an adult tapeworm. The disease is especially prevalent in Mexico and the rest of Latin America, Europe, Africa, India, and Asia. Most cases in the United States originate from highly endemic areas, although in recent years, the number of locally acquired cases has increased (Richards et al, 1985; Carabin et al, 2005; Murray et al, 2007).

Eggs may be ingested accidentally with contaminated food or water and subsequently hatch in the gastrointestinal tract. Embryos penetrate the intestinal mucosa and disseminate via the bloodstream to distant sites, especially the skeletal muscle, and also to the heart, brain, or eye, where symptoms of infection and inflammation may become especially apparent. Seizures are a common complication in endemic areas and are often the presenting symptom (Fig. 63-26, *A*).

The diagnosis is usually made on clinical grounds in endemic areas but may be much more difficult to establish in nonendemic settings. Use of computed tomography (CT) scans is very helpful but generally is not available in most endemic areas. Radiographs are helpful in recognizing the presence of calcified cysts but not in recognizing recent infection. Recovery of an intact cysticercus at the time of surgery confirms the diagnosis. The cysticercus, or bladder worm, is a translucent, fluid-filled, oval sac containing a single inverted scolex that measures 5 mm or more in diameter (Fig. 63-26, *B*).

Among serologic assays, the glycoprotein immunoblot assay available from the CDC has high sensitivity and specificity, outperforming several EIAs with which it was compared (Diaz et al, 1992). Unfortunately, these assays do not distinguish between active and inactive infections, and thus are not useful in monitoring response to therapy.

The occurrence of cysticercosis in someone from a nonendemic area and without an appropriate travel history should be investigated for accidental exposure to individuals involved in food preparation, or for the possibility of infection with a different *Taenia* species (Schantz et al, 1992).

Echinococcus Species (Hydatidosis)

Human infection with larval stages of tapeworms of the genus *Echinococcus* may take one of three forms: unilocular hydatid disease caused by *Echinococcus granulosus*, multilocular or alveolar hydatid disease caused by *Echinococcus multilocularis*, or polycystic hydatid disease caused by *Echinococcus vogeli* (Thompson & Lymbery, 1995). Members of the dog family are definitive hosts for these minute tapeworms. What they lack in size they make up for in numbers, with many hundreds or thousands of worms producing large numbers of eggs in one host. Eggs are passed in the stools and are ingested by the intermediate hosts, which include sheep, cattle, pigs, rodents, and other herbivorous animals. Humans, especially children, are infected following accidental ingestion of eggs from the environment.

Eggs hatch in the intestine, and embryos penetrate the intestinal wall and then enter the bloodstream. Although most hydatids develop in the liver, some disseminate to other sites. Development of the cysts is slow, and it may take many years for a cyst measuring 10 to 15 cm in diameter to form. In the usual secondary hosts, the cysts contain numerous protoscoleces, which proliferate from a germinal membrane.

E. granulosus, the most important species producing human disease, is common in many sheep- and cattle-raising areas of the world, including small regions the United States, where dogs are the usual definitive host. Unilocular hydatids develop as single cysts in the liver and secondarily in the lungs or other locations. The cysts are filled with clear fluid and may contain smaller "daughter" cysts. Within the parent and daughter cysts are

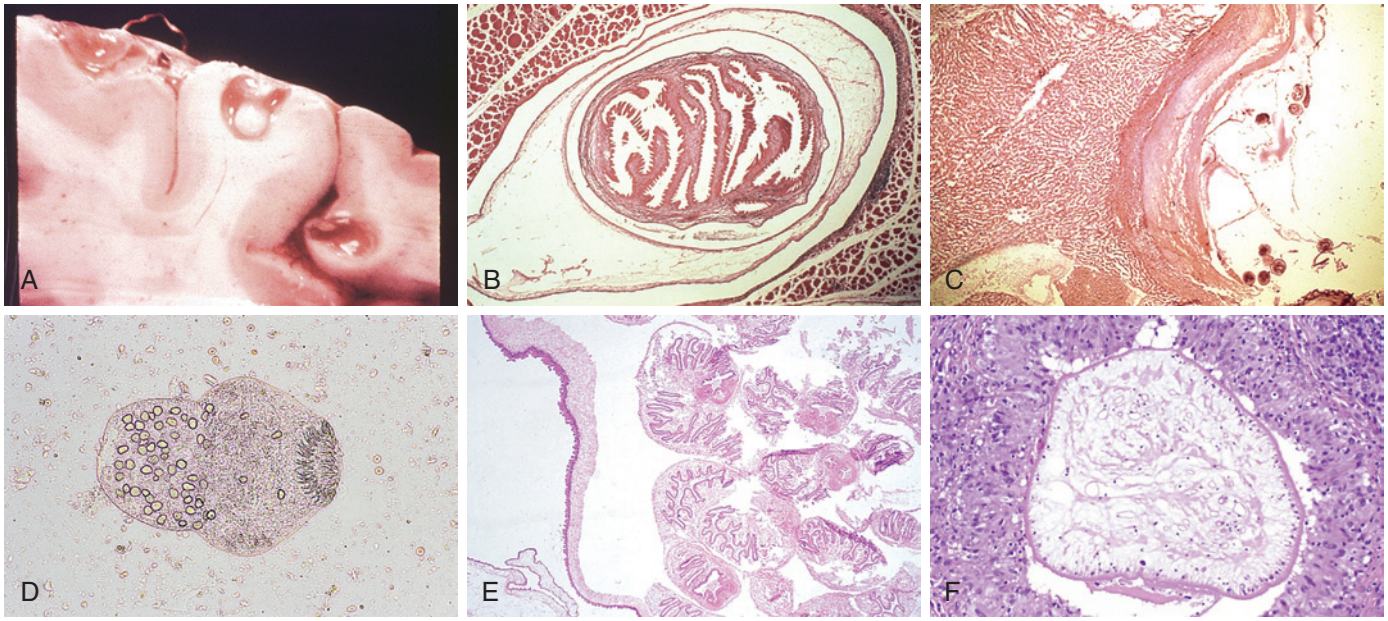


Figure 63-26 **A,** Neurocysticercosis. **B,** Bladder worm (*Taenia solium* cysticercus) in muscle (H&E; 10×). **C,** Hydatid cyst in the liver; note presence of protoscoleces, a thin germinal membrane, a thick laminated membrane, and fibrotic host reaction (10×). **D,** Protoscolex found in aspirate fluid from a hepatic hydatid cyst; note rostellar hooks and calcareous corpuscles (400×). **E,** Human infection with a coenurus larva; note thin bladder membrane and numerous developing protoscolices (10×). **F,** Sparganum (larva of *Spirometra* spp.) found in a lymph node. Note the surrounding granulomatous response (Giemsa stain; 100×). (***A,*** Photograph from Zaiman H. A pictorial presentation of parasites: a cooperative collection; http://www.astmh.org/Zaiman_Slides/1271.htm; ***E,*** Courtesy of Dr. Heike Duebner.)

brood capsules and protoscoleces, which can number in the thousands (Fig. 63-26, *C* and *D*). Symptoms in humans include a slowly growing mass lesion, although infection in space-limited locations such as bone and the CNS may become apparent earlier than in other sites. The diagnosis is suggested on the basis of clinical presentation and history plus the use of radiography, CT scans, and ultrasonography. Serologic tests are very useful in confirming a diagnosis and usually involve a screening test such as EIA or IHA, followed, if positive, by a confirmatory assay such as immunoblot or gel diffusion (Wilson et al, 1995). Sensitivity varies from 60% to 90%, depending on the characteristics of the case. False-positive reactions may occur with cysticercosis, although disease presentation should prevent confusion. Aspiration of cyst contents is potentially dangerous because spillage of cyst contents may result in dissemination of disease or possibly anaphylactic shock; however, if aspiration is performed, cyst contents usually reveal hydatid sand, a mixture of protoscoleces, disintegrating brood capsules, hooklets, and calcareous corpuscles. Aspiration performed under ultrasound or CT guidance seems to carry a lower risk and is now a commonly performed therapeutic method for patients with uncomplicated hydatid disease involving the liver.

E. multilocularis produces multilocular or alveolar hydatid disease in the northern regions of Europe and Russia, and in Alaska, Canada, and the northern tier of states in the United States. Intermediate hosts include several genera of small rodents; foxes, wolves, and dogs are definitive hosts. Human infection occurs in the liver, where the hydatid develops as an invasive cyst that insinuates itself within the tissue in an alveolar pattern without a surrounding outer capsule. Although the germinal membrane proliferates in the human liver, protoscoleces usually fail to develop. The pathologic picture is reminiscent of hepatic carcinoma. Serologic assays that use *E. granulosus* antigens are useful in the diagnosis of this disease. The differential use of antigens from both parasites shows promise of discrimination between the two diseases (Wilson et al, 1995).

E. vogeli produces a polycystic hydatid cyst in humans that is invasive but, unlike *E. multilocularis*, produces both brood capsules and protoscoleces. The disease is limited to Latin America, where rodents, specifically the paca, and bush dogs complete the life cycle (D'Alessandro et al, 1979). Polycystic hydatid disease in South America may also be caused by *Echinococcus oligarthus*, a parasite of felids and rodents. This species is similar morphologically to *E. vogeli*, and cases have been misidentified (D'Alessandro et al, 1995).

Spirometra Species (Sparganosis)

Sparganosis is caused by larval cestodes of the genus *Spirometra*, which are closely related to *Diphyllobothrium* spp. Adult stages commonly parasitize cats and dogs and their relatives in Asia *(Spirometra mansoni)* and North America *(Spirometra mansonoides)*. Life cycles are similar to those of *Diphyllobothrium*: Copepods serve as first intermediate hosts for procercoid larvae, and fish serve as second intermediate hosts for plerocercoid larvae. Humans become infected with these larval stages (the sparganum) through ingestion of copepods in drinking water or ingestion of raw or incompletely cooked fish. Use of frogs and snakes as poultices may also result in the transfer of larvae to the human host. Sparganosis usually presents as localized or migratory subcutaneous swellings associated with erythema and pain, although brain infection may occur. Surgical exploration may reveal a delicate, slender, ivory-colored worm varying from a few to many centimeters in length. Cross-sections demonstrate a thick tegument with deep folds and parenchyma with prominent muscle bundles. No body cavity is seen, as in the nematodes, and calcareous corpuscles are numerous (Fig. 63-26, *F*) (Orihel & Ash, 1995; Gutierrez, 2000; Garcia, 2007).

Taenia multiceps and *Taenia serialis* (Coenurosis)

Intestinal *Taenia* spp. of cats and dogs (primarily *Taenia multiceps* and *Taenia serialis*) produce a larval stage in intermediate hosts known as a *coenurus*. This stage consists of a large (up to 10 cm) transparent sac containing numerous scoleces that bud off from a germinal membrane and invaginate into the fluid-filled cyst (Fig. 63-26, *E*). Sheep are the usual intermediate hosts for *T. multiceps*, and rodents, hares, and rabbits for *T. serialis*, although humans serve in this role through accidental ingestion of eggs originating from domestic cats and dogs. Similar to cysticerci, coenuri may develop in any organ, producing a similar disease. Diagnosis is usually made by examination of the excised cyst or its demonstration in tissue sections. The presence of multiple invaginated scoleces within a single bladder differentiates the coenurus from other larval cestodes.

TREMATODES

All liver-, lung-, and blood-inhabiting trematodes that mature in humans produce eggs that usually exit the body via stool, urine, or sputum. Because of their extraintestinal location, these flukes and their eggs may be found in tissues incidentally or in association with symptoms.

Adult *F. hepatica*, *C. sinensis*, and *O. viverrini* may be found in hepatic and biliary tissues, and occasionally in ectopic locations. The presence of typical eggs free in the tissues or within the uterus of the helminth often provides definitive identification. Adult *Paragonimus* spp. primarily reside in the lung but may be found in ectopic sites such as brain and subcutaneous tissue, where they produce abscesses, often associated with large numbers of eggs. Adult schistosomes reside in blood vessels, primarily in

the distribution of the inferior mesenteric vein *(S. mansoni)*, the superior mesenteric vein (*S. japonicum* and *S. mekongi*), and the vesical plexus *(S. haematobium)*. Although the adult stages are rarely encountered in tissue sections, eggs may be found in large numbers in tissues of the intestine, liver, and bladder (see Fig. 63-23, *B, D,* and *F*). Eggs may disseminate via the bloodstream to other sites, including the brain, spinal cord, lungs, heart, kidneys, and spleen. The eggs of *S. japonicum* are especially prone to disseminate because of their smaller size and the large numbers typically produced. Identification of eggs is dependent on recognition of their typical sizes and morphologic characteristics in appropriate tissues.

MEDICALLY IMPORTANT ARTHROPODS

Arthropods comprise a large and diverse group of organisms, few of which have clinical or economic significance. Those that do, however, are important causes of morbidity and mortality in humans and their domestic animals, and are responsible for serious economic losses to agriculture. Although perhaps best known among clinicians for their ability to transmit various infectious agents, including viruses, bacteria (rickettsia, spirochetes, others), protozoa, and certain helminths, arthropods also cause serious disease by direct tissue invasion, envenomation, vesication, blood loss, and allergic reaction. Exaggerated fears of arthropods (entomophobia) and delusions of infestation (delusory parasitosis) are not uncommon neuroses, which may be disabling to some individuals. Species directly or indirectly responsible for human disease include representatives of all the major arthropod classes (Table 63-12).

In this section, an approach that the clinical laboratory may use when evaluating clinical specimens containing arthropods is presented, followed by a brief discussion of each of the arthropod groups of medical importance. A variety of general and specialized texts and guides are available for more complete coverage of the field of medical entomology (National Communicable Disease Center, 1969; Beaver et al, 1984; Lane et al, 1993; Strickland, 2000; Mullen & Durden, 2002; Garcia, 2007; Goddard, 2007; Murray et al, 2007), while a recent review specifically discusses the identification of arthropods in the clinical microbiology laboratory (Mathison & Pritt, 2014).

BIOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Arthropods are characterized by a bilaterally symmetrical, segmented body; several pairs of jointed appendages; and a rigid chitinous exoskeleton that is molted repeatedly during growth. Development proceeds from egg to adult through gradual (egg, nymph, and adult stages) or complete (egg, larva, pupa, and adult stages) metamorphosis. Bedbugs, kissing bugs, lice, and cockroaches are examples of insects that undergo gradual metamorphosis. Flies and mosquitoes; fleas; ants, bees, and wasps; and beetles undergo complete metamorphosis; wormlike larval forms pupate to emerge as adults. Arachnids undergo developmental changes most similar to the process of gradual metamorphosis. The larval stages of those arthropods that undergo complete metamorphosis often prove to be the most difficult for clinical laboratorians to identify and should be referred to a medical entomologist if full identification is required for clinical management.

TABLE 63-12
Classification of Arthropods of Medical Importance

Class Insecta (insects)	**Class Arachnida (arachnids)**
Order Anoplura (sucking lice)	Subclass Scorpiones (scorpions)
Order Siphonaptera (fleas)	Subclass Araneae (spiders)
Order Dictyoptera (cockroaches)	Subclass Acari (ticks, mites, chiggers)
Order Hemiptera (bedbugs, kissing bugs)	**Class Diplopoda (millipedes)**
Order Hymenoptera (ants, wasps, bees)	**Class Chilopoda (centipedes)**
Order Coleoptera (beetles)	**Class Crustacea (crustaceans)**
Order Lepidoptera (moths, butterflies, caterpillars)	Order Copepoda (copepods)
Order Diptera (flies, mosquitoes, midges)	Order Decapoda (crabs, crayfish)
	Class Pentastomida (tongue worms)

MECHANISMS OF INJURY

Direct Tissue Invasion

Invasion of superficial tissues (referred to as *infestation*) may occur with a variety of arthropods, of which scabies mites, chigoe fleas, and some dipteran larvae (maggots) are most common. Invasion of deeper body tissues and cavities (referred to as *infection*) occurs primarily with maggots and rarely with pentastomid larvae. Tissue invasion by dipteran larvae is referred to as *myiasis* and may occur in living or devitalized tissues, depending on the involved species.

Envenomation

Many arthropods are capable of injecting saliva or venom with their bites or stings. For most individuals, these compounds cause only local tissue reactions, but serious, life-threatening reactions such as anaphylaxis may occur, often as a result of previous sensitization to the particular toxin. Hymenopteran (ants, bees, and wasps) and scorpion stings are among the greatest offenders (Reisman, 1994). The bites of certain arthropods, especially centipedes; mosquitoes, flies, and biting midges; bedbugs, kissing bugs, and assassin bugs; sucking lice; fleas; and ticks and mites may also be toxic, causing local or systemic reactions. Almost all spiders are venomous, but only a few groups (widow spiders, violin spiders, and certain tarantulas) pose significant health risks to humans. Less common but recognized causes of envenomation result from exposure to the urticating hairs of certain caterpillars and beetle larvae.

Vesication

Certain of the larger tropical millipedes are capable of spraying a vesicating (blister-causing) chemical substance from glands located on each body segment. These compounds are especially irritating should they reach the conjunctiva. Blister beetles are so named because of their ability to discharge vesicating fluids (cantharidin, the active ingredient in the aphrodisiac Spanish fly) from their bodies when handled.

Blood Loss

Arthropods responsible for producing significant irritation or blood loss to humans and domestic animals include bedbugs, kissing bugs, lice, fleas, flies, mosquitoes, biting midges, ticks, and mites. Although these activities are rarely life-threatening, the concurrent transmission of infectious agents may be.

Transmission of Infectious Agents

Many arthropods play an integral role in the mechanical or biological transmission of infectious disease agents. The common housefly, *Musca domestica*, may be responsible for the mechanical transmission of agents of bacillary dysentery, cholera, typhoid, viral diarrhea, amebic dysentery, and giardiasis, as well as pinworms and tapeworms. Mechanisms involved in the biological transmission of infectious agents vary from simple organism amplification in the arthropod vector to more complex life cycle changes in the involved parasite. Ticks and mites are involved in the transmission of certain bacteria (*Rickettsia*, *Ehrlichia*, *Anaplasma*, spirochetes, others), protozoa *(Babesia)*, and viruses. Among insects, lice are involved in the transmission of bacteria (*Rickettsia*, *Bartonella*, and *Borrelia*); kissing bugs transmit trypanosomes; fleas transmit the agents of plague, typhus, and canine tapeworm; and dipterans transmit arboviruses, malarial parasites, trypanosomes, leishmanias, filarial worms, and bacteria.

Hypersensitivity Reactions

Most serious reactions to arthropod bites and stings result from allergic hypersensitivities. Hymenopteran stings alone are responsible for most arthropod-related deaths and usually result from the development of hypersensitivity following repeated exposure to venom (Reisman, 1994). Allergies may be exacerbated following exposure to the saliva, excrement, or body parts of mites, ticks, lice, bedbugs, caterpillars, moths, and butterflies. Asthma and hay fever may also develop in response to the presence of the large variety of house, dust, and animal mites in the environment (Frazier & Brown, 1980).

Psychological Manifestations

Entomophobia refers to an unreasonable or excessive fear of seeing or touching arthropods. Although this fear may occasionally result in disruption of a person's normal activities, it rarely becomes incapacitating. Delusory parasitosis is a more serious emotional disorder in which an individual is convinced that he or she is infected with parasites or arthropods despite objective evidence to the contrary. As the delusion progresses, the individual may report loss of employment, divorce, repeated use of pesticide

services, and movement from house to house. Visits to health care providers are usually numerous, although unsatisfactory. The problem may originate in the home or workplace and may be transferable from one to the other. The delusion may be so convincing that other family members or friends may believe it or acquire it themselves. The patient may submit to the laboratory numerous specimens such as skin, fabric, lint, hair, and mucus. It is incumbent on laboratory personnel to examine these materials to rule out true infestation. The mysterious onset of irritation and itching may be due to bites from unrecognized scabies mites, lice, fleas, or bedbugs, or from insects and mites questing from an abandoned rodent or bird nest in an area of human habitation. Before such causes are dismissed, they must be looked for and their presence excluded (Lynch, 1993; Goddard, 2007; Murray et al, 2007). Patients with delusional parasitosis are difficult to treat, although the use of antipsychotics may provide some relief. The lack of clarity as to symptomatology, etiology, and diagnosis creates difficulty in management for both the patient and health care provider.

LABORATORY APPROACHES TO ARTHROPOD IDENTIFICATION

Arthropod specimens are often directed to the clinical laboratory by both clinicians and patients with the expectation that they can be accurately identified, but few laboratory personnel receive more than a cursory exposure to entomology during training. Nonetheless, laboratorians should have access to texts and dichotomous keys, which should allow limited identification of the more commonly encountered medically important groups, especially ectoparasites (fleas, lice, mites, and ticks). Of greater importance is the ability of laboratory personnel to recognize those rare situations in which outside expertise should be sought. This specifically relates to those occasions when significant clinical decisions regarding therapy and prognosis are being made. State or local public health laboratories often have the expertise available or know of individuals trained in medical entomology who can be reached at regional educational institutions, museums, or other public or private agencies, including the CDC.

Specimens submitted to the laboratory are most often intact organisms, skin scrapings, tissues, sputum, urine, or stool. Inanimate objects, including foodstuffs, water, clothing, bedding, and carpeting, among others, may also be submitted. It is not uncommon for patients to submit arthropods recovered from the toilet bowl following urination or a bowel movement. In most cases, the presence of such organisms is coincidental and is not related to infection.

Proper killing and preservation of arthropods is important to preserve those characteristics necessary for identification. Small, nonwinged arthropods, especially ectoparasites (lice, fleas, ticks, and mites), larval forms (maggots, grubs, and caterpillars), spiders, and scorpions, should be placed directly into 70% to 80% ethyl alcohol. Large larval forms are best killed in hot (not boiling) water to extend their bodies and prevent contraction before immersion in alcohol. Attached tissue or other debris should be gently removed or washed away prior to preservation. Smaller forms (mites, small ticks, fleas, and sandflies) may be prepared as permanent slide mounts.

Winged insects, especially adult mosquitoes, midges, and flies, should be killed by exposure to the fumes of ethyl acetate or chloroform and preserved dry to retain the taxonomic information contained in the body and wing scales. Such arthropods usually are pinned and dried, followed by storage in tight-fitting boxes protected with naphthalene or dichlorobenzene. Additional details regarding the collection, preservation, and preparation of arthropod specimens for examination are found elsewhere (Beaver et al, 1984; Steyskal et al, 1987; Lane et al, 1993; Garcia, 2007).

INSECTS

Insects account for more than 90% of all described arthropod species, although few are responsible for human disease. Members of this class are distinguished from other arthropods by having a body divided into three parts (head, thorax, abdomen); one pair of antennae; three pairs of legs; and one, two, or no pairs of wings. This is the only arthropod class in which flight has developed.

Sucking Lice

Sucking lice are dorsoventrally flattened, wingless insects that have characteristic claws on the ends of each leg that allow attachment to body hairs or clothing (Fig. 63-27, *A* and *B*). All species suck blood intermittently, which may cause unexplained dermatitis. Eggs, known as *nits*, are deposited on hair shafts or clothing, depending on the species. Although named for their primary site of attachment, they do not always remain confined to that location. The head louse, *Pediculus humanus capitis*, and the body louse, *Pediculus humanus humanus*, are indistinguishable to the nonspecialist and are thought to actually represent two ecotypes of the same species based on newly acquired molecular data. They are longer than they are wide and grow to about 3 mm in length. Biological differences are apparent; only *P. h. humanus* transmits the agents of epidemic typhus, trench fever, and relapsing fever (Kim et al, 1986). Infestations with *P. h. humanus* occurs primarily in settings of war, poverty and homelessness, where bathing and laundering do not regularly occur. In comparison, *P. h. capitis* is much more common, particularly among children of school age. Children are at

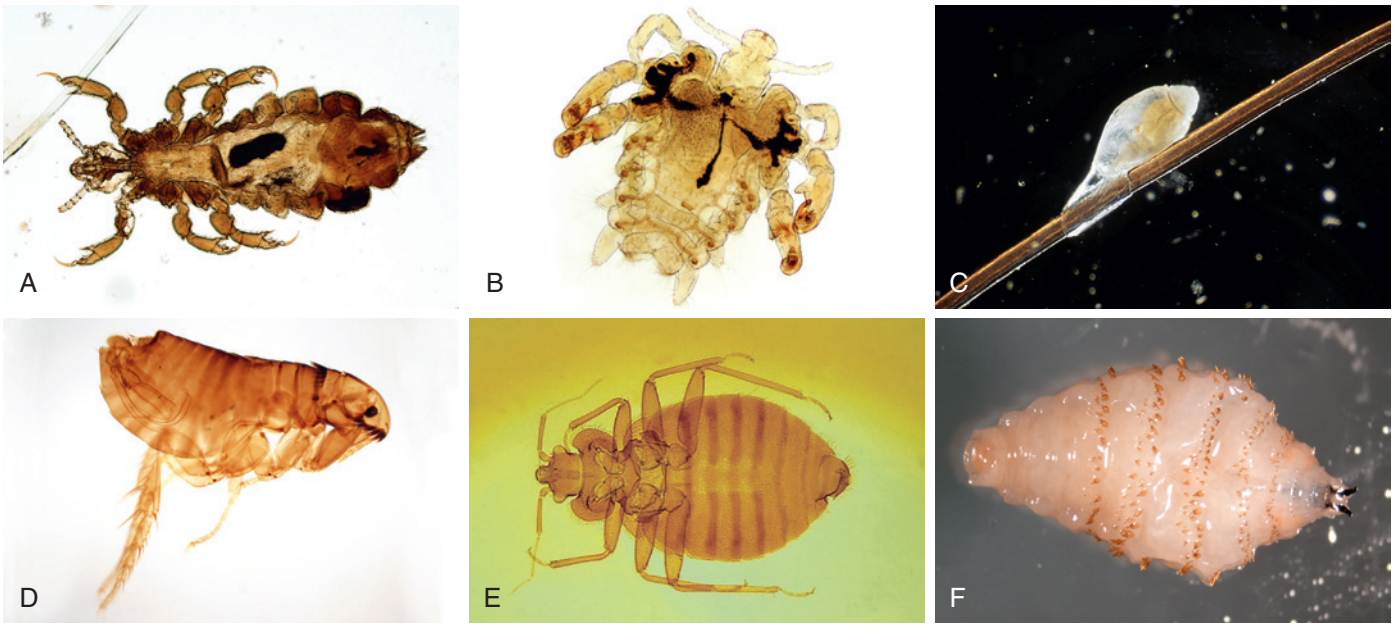


Figure 63-27 **Medically important insects. A,** *Pediculus humanus capitis,* the head louse, holding a strand of hair with one leg. **B,** *Pthirus pubis,* the crab louse. **C,** Intact egg (nit) of *P. humanus capitis*. **D,** *Ctenocephalides canis,* the common dog flea; note powerful hind legs. **E,** *Cimex lectularius*, the common bedbug. **F,** Larva of *Dermatobia hominis,* the human botfly; note the two sclerotized hooks at the anterior end and numerous body spines (10×). (***E,*** with permission from Murray PR, Barron EJ, Pfaller MA, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 6, Washington, DC, 1995, ASM Press.)

particular risk for acquiring head lice through the sharing of caps, clothing, and combs (Orkin & Maibach, 1985). Nits of head lice are deposited primarily on hair shafts, and those of body lice are deposited on clothing. Because objects such as hair casts, dander, hair spray, and fungal hair infection may mimic nits, differentiation is important. Nits are typically 1 mm long and when unhatched have intact opercula (Fig. 63-27, *C*). Transmission occurs primarily through the sharing of infested clothing and bedding because body lice tend to lay their eggs in clusters, especially along seams or waistbands. The pubic louse, *Pthirus pubis*, is distinctly different from the others; it is rounder (measuring up to 2 mm in diameter), the abdomen is more crablike, and the first pair of legs is significantly smaller and more slender than the other pairs (see Fig. 63-27, *B*). Pubic lice and their nits are found primarily on pubic hairs but may extend to the chest, armpit, and facial hair. Transmission occurs primarily during sexual intercourse.

Fleas

Fleas are small (1 to 2 mm), laterally compressed, wingless ectoparasites capable of sucking blood (Fig. 63-27, *D*). Long, muscular legs are adapted for jumping great distances. Fleas that attack humans are parasites of other mammals or poultry and include both blood-sucking pests (many species) and tissue-penetrating jiggers. Infestations commonly occur with exposure to domestic animals and pets; the most pestiferous species are the dog flea *(Ctenocephalides canis)*, the cat flea *(Ctenocephalides felis)*, and the human flea *(Pulex irritans)*. Some individuals become highly sensitized to flea bites, whereas others are unaffected. Cat and dog fleas are the usual intermediate hosts for the tapeworm *D. caninum* and less frequently for *H. diminuta* and *H. nana*. Because larvae of these species often develop in an animal's bedding, or in carpets and furniture, eradication may require fumigation and cleaning of those articles. The Oriental rat flea, *Xenopsylla cheopis*, is an extremely important species because it transmits the plague bacillus and the agent of murine typhus. Although normally parasitizing several species of rats, this flea readily attacks humans should the rodent host die. The jigger or chigoe flea *Tunga penetrans* is found in both Central and South America and in regions of tropical Africa. The female flea attaches to and embeds itself in the skin, especially between the toes and under the toenails, where it grows to the size of a small pea. After eggs are discharged, the flea dies, prompting an inflammatory response and possible secondary bacterial infection. Tungiasis is diagnosed by identifying the dark portion of the flea's abdomen (displaying the spiracles) protruding from the skin surface of an enlarging lesion (Beaver et al, 1984; Lane et al, 1993; Garcia, 2007; Goddard, 2007).

Cockroaches

Cockroaches have closely adapted themselves to human habitation, sharing our food, shelter, and warmth. Although they are primarily nuisance pests, cockroaches are potential carriers of fecal pathogens owing to their ability to move quickly from sewers and drains to food preparation areas. In addition to transmitting pathogenic bacteria, they may spread hepatitis and poliovirus; intestinal protozoa, including *E. histolytica*; and several species of enteric nematode. Allergies and asthma may develop in some individuals following exposure to the excreta, cast skins, or body parts of cockroaches (Goddard, 2007).

Bedbugs and Kissing Bugs

Bedbugs (family *Cimicidae*) and kissing bugs (family *Reduviidae*) are blood-sucking insects that have a long, narrow proboscis that is folded underneath the body when not in use. Bedbugs (*Cimex lectularius* and *Cimex hemipterus*) are reddish brown, dorsoventrally flattened, wingless insects approximately 5 mm in length (Fig. 63-27, *E*). They are cosmopolitan in distribution and attack most any mammal, feeding primarily at night. During daylight hours, they hide under mattresses, loose wallpaper, and floorboards. Although they are not known to transmit disease, bedbug bites may cause painful weals or bullae, depending on an individual's sensitivity to their saliva.

Kissing bugs *(Triatoma*, *Rhodnius*, *Panstrongylus)* have a cone-shaped head on a narrow neck and an abdomen that is widened in the middle. These insects are black or brown, and some have orange and black markings on the abdomen. They average 1 to 3 cm in length and, unlike bedbugs, have well-developed wings for flight. Similar to bedbugs, kissing bugs are relatively painless feeders on vertebrates and produce similar skin reactions. In Mexico and Central and South America, they transmit the agent of Chagas disease, *T. cruzi*, in the feces, which is secondarily inoculated into the skin by the human host while scratching (Lane et al, 1993; Goddard, 2007). Although they are also found throughout the southern United States, autochthonous transmission of Chagas disease is thought to only rarely occur.

Bees, Wasps, and Ants

Hymenopterans are social insects that readily defend their nests when disturbed. In nonreproductive females, the ovipositor is modified as a stinger capable of injecting venom for use in the capture of prey or for defense. The venom of bees, wasps, hornets, and yellow jackets causes only transient swelling and discomfort in most individuals but may be responsible for systemic reactions, including anaphylaxis, in others who were previously sensitized (Reisman, 1994). Up to 100 people in the United States die each year from hymenopteran stings. The Africanized honey bee is now present in North America following its introduction into Brazil in 1956. These bees, which are more easily provoked than other honey bees, exhibit massive stinging behavior. Many species of ant are problematic for humans because of their ability to bite, and some groups, such as harvester and fire ants, are capable of giving painful stings.

Beetles

Although beetles are perhaps best known as pests of agricultural crops, some species may give a painful bite, and others, especially blister beetles, may exude vesicating fluids (cantharidin) that cause dermatitis or blister formation. The larvae of certain larder beetles have urticating hairs that may be responsible for dermatitis or, if ingested, irritation of the gastrointestinal tract. Larval and adult larder and grain beetles also may serve as intermediate hosts for the rodent and human tapeworms *H. diminuta* and *H. nana*.

Moths and Butterflies

Certain larvae (caterpillars) of *Lepidoptera* possess urticating hairs or spines capable of injecting venom when handled. Although most effects of these toxins remain localized to the skin, systemic effects such as shock and paralysis have been reported (Goddard, 2007). Adult tussock and gypsy moths are known to have urticating scales and hairs that may cause dermatitis, eye irritation, or respiratory tract irritation, especially among forestry workers (Shama et al, 1982).

Flies, Mosquitoes, and Midges

Diptera are characterized by the presence of a single pair of membranous wings. Among all arthropods, they are responsible for the greatest share of human disease through blood-sucking activities, biological or mechanical transmission of infectious agents, and direct tissue invasion by larval forms (myiasis). Bites from a variety of flies, mosquitoes, and biting midges often cause local irritation from sensitivity to the saliva and, in some individuals, systemic reactions. In addition to blood-sucking activities, the repeated attacks themselves may be physically and psychologically damaging. Certain blood-sucking species are also responsible for the transmission of important human pathogens, including malaria, filariasis, and arboviral disease by mosquitoes; onchocerciasis by blackflies; loiasis by deer flies; leishmaniasis and bartonellosis by sandflies; and African trypanosomiasis by tsetse flies. Other viral, bacterial, and parasitic agents are readily transmitted mechanically by nonbiting flies such as house flies, flesh flies, and blowflies, which can easily contaminate human food.

Myiasis may occur in an accidental, facultative, or obligatory fashion. The housefly, *Musca domestica*, has no requirement for developing in mammalian tissue, yet may be found occasionally in dead tissue or under plaster casts. This type of accidental myiasis is not uncommon but rarely is clinically significant. Facultative myiasis is most often caused by blowflies and flesh flies, which ordinarily feed on dead tissues but may move into adjacent viable tissues. Obligatory myiasis is caused by certain species that develop only in living tissues. Those species that infect humans are all of zoonotic origin. The human botfly, *Dermatobia hominis*, develops in boil-like subcutaneous lesions, with the posterior end of the maggot appearing at the skin surface (Fig. 63-27, *F*). This species is most commonly found in individuals who have spent time in Central or South America, and is unusual in that its eggs are mechanically transported to the host by other flying insects, usually mosquitoes. The tumbu fly *(Cordylobia anthropophaga)*, found in sub-Saharan Africa, causes a furuncular type of myiasis. Eggs of this species usually are laid on the ground or on hanging laundry, and larvae rapidly penetrate the skin on contact. The most serious obligatory myiasis is caused by the Old World screwworm, *Chrysomya bezziana*, and the New World screwworm, *Cochliomyia hominivorax*. These species lay their eggs directly on their cattle hosts, usually on wounds or near the nostrils. The larvae actively feed on and move through living tissues. Human infection may be particularly destructive if larvae invade the eye, nose, or mouth. Other species may also be responsible for traumatic, obligatory myiasis in humans (Lane et al, 1993).

ARACHNIDS

Medically important arachnids include scorpions, spiders, ticks, and mites. Scorpions and spiders have two body segments, the cephalothorax and the abdomen, whereas ticks and mites have only one. Members of the group have four pairs of legs as nymphs and adults; larval ticks and mites have three pairs of legs. All lack antennae, mandibles, and wings. Scorpions and spiders are best known for their ability to inject poisonous venom, whereas ticks and mites are best known as vectors for viral, bacterial, and protozoal pathogens.

Scorpions

Unlike other arachnids, scorpions have a pair of forward-directed pincer claws that impart a crablike appearance and a segmented tail with a bulbous stinging apparatus in the tip (Fig. 63-28, *A*). They are predatory in nature and paralyze their intended victim with venom from the sting, which may also be used for defensive purposes. Toxicity to humans varies depending on the species; many elicit no more reaction than that of a bee sting, but some are deadly, causing more than 1000 deaths annually. Poisonous species are found in the Western Hemisphere, Europe, Africa, and the Middle East (Beaver et al, 1984; Goddard, 2007).

Spiders

Spiders lack a tail with an attached stinger but instead have fanglike chelicerae among their mouthparts, through which venom can be expressed. Although most spiders are venomous, few have chelicerae capable of penetrating human skin. Most spider bites cause only transitory irritation and pain. Widow spiders (genus *Lactrodectus*) are one group responsible for systemic arachnidism through the action of a potent neurotoxin capable of producing weakness, myalgia, paralysis, convulsions, and, occasionally, death. Published mortality rates vary from less than 1% to 6%. Five closely related species are found in the United States; the black widow *(Lactrodectus mactans)* is the most widespread. Female black widow spiders are glossy black with a characteristic red or orange hourglass-shaped marking on the underside of the abdomen and have a leg span of 3 to 4 cm. They live in protected locations such as woodsheds, basements, and outdoor privies (Strickland, 2000).

Violin spiders (genus *Loxosceles*) are responsible for necrotic arachnidism or loxoscelism. In the United States, the brown recluse or fiddleback spider *(Loxosceles reclusa)* is most often involved, although other species are present. This species is 1 to 2 cm long and tan to dark brown; it has a darkened, violin-shaped marking oriented base forward on the dorsum of the cephalothorax. When present in homes, violin spiders are reclusive in their habits, preferring undisturbed areas such as closets, basements, and under porches. Their bite is painless and often goes unrecognized until several hours later, when the area becomes red, swollen, and painful. The venom is dermonecrotic and hemolytic, producing cutaneous necrosis and sloughing of involved skin over several days. The resulting lesion may be difficult to heal and subject to secondary infection. Systemic reactions such as hemolysis and acute renal failure are rare. Other spider

Figure 63-28 **Medically important arachnids. A,** Scorpion; note forward-directed pincer claws and stinger on the tail tip. **B,** *Dermacentor variabilis* (dog tick), nonengorged adult female. **C,** *Ixodes scapularis* (black-legged tick or deer tick), nonengorged adult female. **D,** *Ornithodoros* sp. (soft tick), nonengorged adult, ventral view. **E,** *Sarcoptes scabei* (itch mite) adult; note presence of adjacent eggs in skin scrapings. **F,** *Demodex folliculorum* (follicle mite) adult. (**A,** With permission from Murray PR, Barron EJ, Pfaller MA, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology.* ed 6. Washington, DC, 1995, ASM Press. **B** and **C,** With permission from Northwest Infectious Disease Consultants. **E,** With permission from Spach DH, Fritsche TR: Norwegian scabies in a patient with AIDS. *N Engl J Med* 331:777, 1994.)

genera have also been implicated in producing necrotic arachnidism (Fisher, 1994).

Ticks

Ticks are one of the more common arthropods to be submitted to the clinical parasitology laboratory for identification. Unlike spiders and scorpions, ticks have a fused cephalothorax and abdomen, as well as a characteristic toothed hypostome for feeding. Tick development progresses through four stages: egg, larva, nymph, and adult. Following hatching, a blood meal is required for progression to the subsequent stage. Humans usually acquire ticks in grassy or brushy areas in close proximity to the usual animal hosts. All species are obligate blood-sucking ectoparasites and are important vectors of viral, bacterial, and protozoal pathogens to humans and domestic animals. Their feeding activities may produce local tissue damage and blood loss, especially to livestock and wildlife, or tick paralysis, a syndrome caused by a neurotoxin secreted by a tick's salivary glands that produces ascending flaccid paralysis and toxemia. Symptoms may closely mimic those of Guillain-Barré syndrome, poliomyelitis, or botulism. Removal of the attached tick usually results in resolution of symptoms within hours to days.

Species affecting humans include members of the family *Ixodidae* (hard ticks) and *Argasidae* (soft ticks). Hard ticks have anteriorly directed mouthparts and a sclerotized plate, or scutum, on the dorsum. The scutum covers the entire dorsum in the male but only the anterior portion in the female, allowing the body to swell when engorged (Fig. 63-28, *B* and *C*). Argasid ticks have a soft leathery body lacking a scutum and ventrally directed mouthparts that are not visible when viewed from above (Fig. 63-28, *D*). Unengorged ticks are generally 2 to 5 mm long but may enlarge to several times that size following engorgement. Engorged hard ticks may mimic soft ticks, so care must be exercised in their identification (Sonenshine, 1991, 1993).

Most ticks found crawling on or embedded in human skin are hard ticks. Soft ticks tend to feed only briefly and then often at night. Important species of hard ticks in North America include *Dermacentor variabilis* (American dog tick), *Dermacentor andersoni* (Rocky Mountain wood tick), *Amblyomma americanum* (Lone Star tick), *Rhipicephalus sanguineus* (brown dog tick), *Ixodes scapularis* (black-legged or deer tick), and *Ixodes pacificus* (Western black-legged or deer tick). *Dermacentor* and *Amblyomma* ticks are called *ornate* ticks because of the presence of white markings on their scuta; the other species are inornate ticks.

Dermacentor ticks transmit Rocky Mountain spotted fever and possibly tularemia, Q fever, and Colorado tick fever. *Ixodes* ticks are vectors of Lyme disease, babesiosis, anaplasmosis, and ehrlichiosis, and in other parts of the world, these ticks are responsible for the transmission of certain arboviruses. *Amblyomma* ticks are capable of transmitting Rocky Mountain spotted fever, as well as tularemia and possibly Lyme disease. All these genera are capable of causing tick paralysis. *Rhipicephalus* ticks have been implicated in the transmission of Rocky Mountain spotted fever and ehrlichiosis in North America, and of boutonneuse fever in the Mediterranean area. Soft ticks of the genus *Ornithodoros* occur in many parts of the world, including the United States, and are important vectors of the relapsing fever spirochetes (*Borrelia recurrentis* and related forms) (Spach et al, 1993; Murray et al, 2007; Ismail et al, 2010).

Mites

Mites are arachnids of microscopic size (usually <1 mm) that are widely distributed in the environment. Medically important species may attack humans directly, serve as vectors for infectious disease, or cause dust allergies. Humans are commonly infested with both *Demodex folliculorum* and *Demodex brevis*, the follicle mites, and *Sarcoptes scabei*, the itch or mange mite. Follicle mites are minute (0.1 to 0.4 mm), elongate parasites with stubby legs that can be recovered from hair follicles and sebaceous glands (Fig. 63-28, *F*). They are common incidental findings on histologic skin preparations. Although their presence has been associated with various skin conditions, they are commonly found in healthy individuals as well, which makes their significance difficult to assess (Burns, 1992).

Sarcoptes scabei mites are of greater medical importance because of their ability to create serpiginous tunnels through the upper layers of the epidermis. Transmitted through personal contact, these mites are found primarily in the interdigital spaces and the flexor surfaces of the wrists and forearms and less commonly in other areas, including the breasts, buttocks, and external genitalia. Inflammation and intense itching result from the tunneling activity and from the deposition of eggs and excreta. Clinical manifestations vary depending on the degree of sensitization to the parasites and their products. Lesions often become secondarily infected.

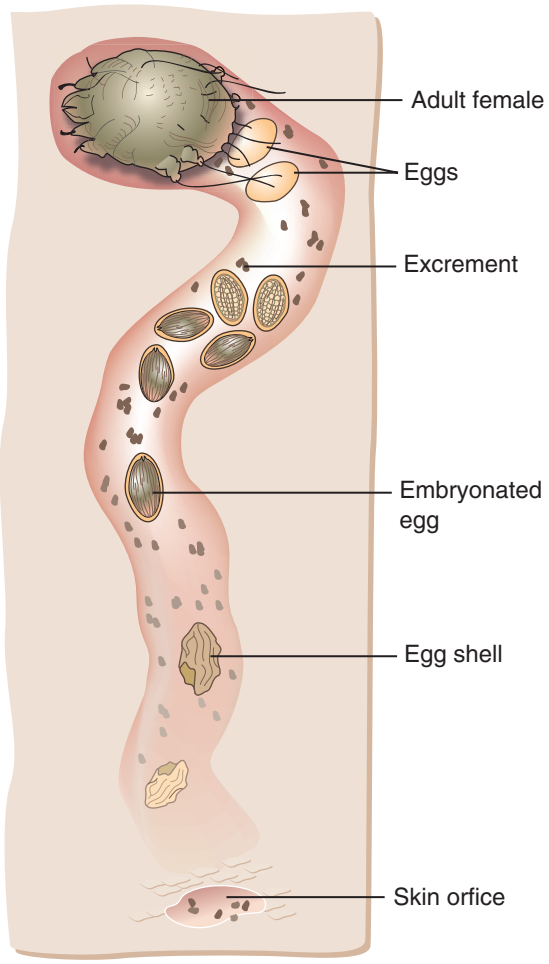


Figure 63-29 ***Sarcoptes scabiei.*** Diagram of a subcutaneous burrow.

Generalized dermatitis occurring in the presence of thousands of mites, typically in older adults or immunocompromised individuals, is known as *crusted* or *Norwegian* scabies.

The diagnosis is made by placing skin scrapings collected from tunneled areas in 20% potassium hydroxide or mineral oil for clearing and examining under the microscope. Detection of eggs, six-legged larvae, and eight-legged nymphs or adults is diagnostic but may be difficult to demonstrate (Figs. 63-28, *E*, and 63-29). The diagnosis of scabies in an institutional or school setting may result in pseudoepidemics, in which numerous individuals develop itching without evidence of disease. Care must be exercised to properly diagnose the disease to identify real cases and differentiate them from cases of delusory parasitosis (Orkin & Maibach, 1985; Lynch, 1993).

A number of animal mite species may attack humans for a blood meal, either as larval forms or as adults, when normal mammalian or bird hosts are not available. Larval chigger mites (family *Trombiculidae*) are problematic in many parts of the world because their saliva can produce large wheal-and-flare reactions with intense itching. These tiny six-legged larvae are often red and commonly attach to the skin in areas where clothing is restrictive, such as at the ankles, waistline, armpits, and wrists. In parts of Asia and Australia, trombiculid mites are vectors for the transmission of the agent of scrub typhus (Lane et al, 1993).

Certain nonbiting mites play a role in allergic rhinitis, asthma, and some skin conditions. The secretions, excreta, and body parts of *Dermatophagoides farinae* and *Dermatophagoides pteronyssinus* are potent allergens that may occur in great numbers in the household environment (Frazier & Brown, 1980). Routine testing by an allergist may identify the offending agent.

Mites can have a very similar appearance to ticks, particularly in their larval form, but can be differentiated by their lack of a toothed hypostome (attachment organ used by ticks) and lack of Haller's organ on their forelegs.

CLASSES OF LESSER MEDICAL IMPORTANCE

Millipedes

Millipedes are wormlike arthropods with numerous apparent body segments, each with two pairs of legs; they are commonly found in and under decaying vegetation. Although they lack mouthparts capable of producing serious bites, many species produce vesicating secretions from glands located on each body segment. When handled roughly, the larger tropical species are capable of squirting these fluids over a distance of several centimeters. Exposure of the skin or mucous membranes to these fluids may produce a burning sensation and blister formation.

Centipedes

Centipedes are flatter than millipedes, have only one pair of legs per body segment, and display long antennae. They are fast moving and can inflict a painful sting from a pair of forward-directed pincers that are modified from the first pair of legs. Although they are rarely responsible for serious injury to humans, the larger species (26 to 45 cm) found in the southern United States and in tropical regions are able to penetrate human skin when handled, giving a painful, burning sting with local tissue reaction. Although systemic reactions may occur in individuals who have been previously sensitized, fatalities are rare (Goddard, 2007).

Crustaceans

Crustaceans of medical importance are primarily those species that serve as hosts for larval stages of several different helminths. Several genera of crabs and crayfish are intermediate hosts for the metacercariae of various species of lung fluke (*Paragonimus* spp.) found around the world. Copepods are common microscopic zooplankton, certain species of which serve as first intermediate hosts for the nematodes *D. medinensis* and *Gnathostoma spinigerum* and for cestodes of the genera *Diphyllobothrium* and *Spirometra*.

Pentastomids

Pentastomes, or tongue worms, are arthropods of uncertain affinities owing to lack of morphologic characteristics. Adult stages are wormlike organisms that live in the nasal passages of certain predatory reptiles, birds, and mammals. Larval stages resemble mites and reside in rodents, herbivores, and freshwater fish. Human liver and lung infections with larval stages of *Armillifer* spp. have been reported from Asia and Africa. Adult stages of *Linguatula serrata* have been recovered from the nasopharynx of individuals from the Middle East and Africa, where they are responsible for an obstructive condition known as *halzoun* (Beaver et al, 1984; Strickland, 2000; Garcia, 2007).

PARASITIC INFECTIONS AND THE IMMUNOCOMPROMISED HOST

Immunocompromised hosts are hosts that have abnormalities in their humoral or cellular immune systems resulting from disease, therapy, or congenital abnormality. Severe malnutrition may also compromise host defenses. In most instances, the predisposing host abnormalities are primarily of the cellular (T cell) immune system and result from AIDS, malignancy, chemotherapy of malignancy, immunosuppression for transplantation, corticosteroid therapy, or a combination of these. The predisposing immune defect for giardiasis is with humoral immunity, and for babesiosis it is with splenectomy.

With the worldwide epidemic of HIV infection and AIDS being particularly severe in underdeveloped countries with a high incidence of parasitic infection such as malaria, schistosomiasis, ascariasis, amebiasis, and filariasis, it is fortunate that these infections do not cause particularly severe disease in AIDS patients; however, as comorbidities their contribution to health care costs is enormous.

Some parasitic infections such as cryptosporidiosis, toxoplasmosis, and strongyloidiasis are more severe in immunocompromised hosts, but there are differences depending upon the type of immunosuppression. For example, although cryptosporidiosis and toxoplasmosis are particularly problematic in AIDS patients, strongyloidiasis is not a major problem in this population, but it is a problem in transplant recipients and patients receiving antineoplastic chemotherapy.

Table 63-13 lists parasitic infections that are more severe and/or frequent in immunocompromised patients. Clinical manifestations may be different from those seen in the general population, as is noted in the comment section.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

TABLE 63-13
Parasitic Infections in Compromised Hosts

Infection	Predisposing Host Abnormalities	Comments	References
Intestinal Protozoa			
Cryptosporidiosis	AIDS (especially CD4$^+$ <200/μL), transplantation, antineoplastic chemotherapy	Severe protracted diarrhea (up to 17 L/day). May have extraintestinal involvement, including pancreas, biliary tract, and lungs. Limited therapy available; is not curative.	Wittner et al, 1993 Thielman & Guerrant, 1998
Cystisosporiasis	AIDS, transplantation, antineoplastic chemotherapy	Severe protracted diarrhea. Extraintestinal involvement of regional lymph nodes may be seen. Effective therapy is available.	Wittner, 1993 Thielman, 1998
Cyclosporiasis	AIDS, probably other immunosuppression	Severe protracted diarrhea clinically similar to cryptosporidiosis and isosporiasis. Responds to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole.	Wittner, 1993 Thielman, 1998
Microsporidiosis	AIDS, other severe immunosuppression	Various syndromes: 1. Multisystem disease 2. Enteritis with severe diarrhea (most frequent) 3. Ocular infection 4. Hepatobiliary with granulomas, hepatic necrosis, or cholangitis 5. Skeletal muscle disease Examination of urinary sediment with appropriate stain may allow diagnosis of nonenteric syndromes and some cases of enteric disease.	Wittner, 1993 Thielman, 1998 Ramanan & Pritt, 2014
Giardiasis	Common variable immunodeficiency, X-linked agammaglobulinemia	Prolonged diarrhea with malabsorption. AIDS is not a predisposing factor.	Thielman, 1998

Continued

TABLE 63-13
Parasitic Infections in Compromised Hosts—cont'd

Infection	Predisposing Host Abnormalities	Comments	References
Blood and Tissue Protozoa			
Granulomatous amebic encephalitis	AIDS and other immunocompromised states	Usually caused by amebae of the genera *Acanthamoeba* or *Balamuthia.* Produces subacute or chronic central nervous system infection but may be acute in severely immunosuppressed hosts with dissemination	Martinez, 1997
Toxoplasmosis	AIDS with $CD4^+$ usually <100/μL and other immunocompromised states; heart transplant, donor seropositive and recipient seronegative	Usually result of reactivation of cysts from previous infection. Often disseminated disease with multiorgan involvement or multifocal central nervous system lesions. Can cause pneumonitis resembling that caused by *Pneumocystis jiroveci.* May cause chorioretinitis. Can occur after transplantation of bone marrow but usually mild. Heart transplant with donor serologically positive and recipient serologically negative may lead to severe, often fatal toxoplasmosis.	McCabe & Chirurgi, 1993
Leishmaniasis	AIDS, other immunosuppression	Limited influence on cutaneous leishmaniasis. Susceptibility to visceral leishmaniasis increased, but not disease severity. More likely to relapse after treatment.	Herwaldt, 1999
American trypanosomiasis (Chagas disease)	AIDS, lymphoblastic lymphoma, cardiac transplantation, other immunosuppression	In AIDS, central nervous system often involved, myocarditis, skin lesions.	Mileno & Bia, 1998 John & Petri, 2006
Babesiosis	Splenectomy	Usually subclinical infection in those with intact host defenses. Splenectomized patients usually develop clinically evident disease, which can be fatal.	Mileno, 1998 John, 2006
Helminth			
Strongyloidiasis	Immunosuppression for transplantation or by cancer chemotherapy or adrenal corticosteroids or lymphoma. AIDS is not a major predisposing factor	Because of endogenous autoinfection, hyperinfection or disseminated infection can develop and present as pneumonia or severe intestinal disease. Gram-negative sepsis or gram-negative meningitis can result from translocation of intestinal bacteria via invading larvae. Should check for strongyloidiasis before immunosuppressing patient from highly endemic areas.	Mileno, 1998 John, 2006
Arthropod			
Scabies	Malignancy, transplant immunosuppression, antineoplastic therapy	AIDS leads to "Norwegian" or crusted scabies with widespread involvement by thick, crusted lesions. Sometimes has severe itching. Patient has numerous mites and is therefore highly contagious. Often less responsive to therapy.	Mileno, 1998 John, 2006

AIDS, Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Adl SM, Simpson AG, Lane CE, et al: The revised classification of eukaryotes, *J Eukaryot Microbiol* 59:429–514, 2012.

This manuscript by the International Society of Protistologists presents the most up-to-date version of the classification system for eukaryotes. It represents a revision of the system published in 2005 that introduced the concept of rankings based on phylogenetic relatedness rather than subjective morphologic features and phenology.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): Procedures for the recovery and identification of parasites from the intestinal tract; approved guideline. CLSI Document M28-A2. Wayne, Pa.; 2005.

This consensus document contains a detailed, up-to-date presentation on the processing of gastrointestinal specimens for parasitic infections, including use of immunoassays and test characteristics.

Foundation for Innovative New Diagnostics (FIND), Special Programme for Research and Training in Tropical Diseases (TDR) and World Health Organization (WHO): Malaria rapid diagnostic test performance. Results of WHO product testing of malaria RDTs: Round 4 (2012). TDR/World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland: 2012.

This publicly available study compares the performance of commercially available rapid diagnostic assays for malaria. It highlights the wide variation in performance characteristics among the different assays.

Franzen C, Müller A: Molecular techniques for detection, species differentiation, and phylogenetic analysis of microsporidia, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 12:243, 1999.

The species of microsporidia known to infect humans is increasing rapidly; this review focuses on known species that have been studied using traditional and molecular phylogenetic techniques.

Garcia LS, Smith JW, Fritsche TR: *Selection and use of laboratory procedures for diagnosis of parasitic infections of the gastrointestinal tract. Cumitech 30A*, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press.

This Cumitech reviews clinical aspects of the selection of laboratory tests for diagnosis of gastrointestinal parasites and limitations inherent to particular tests.

Homer MJ, Aguilar-Delfin I, Telford SR III, et al: Babesiosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 13:451, 2000.

This paper reviews the common species producing babesiosis, clinical aspects of the disease, and diagnostic modalities, including molecular-based studies that are an aid to diagnosis and epidemiology.

Lynch PJ: Delusions of parasitosis, *Semin Dermatol* 12:39, 1993.

Delusions of parasitosis are a common and complicated psychiatric process, which is taxing for all involved in the patient's care; this paper presents an overview of the syndrome along with management strategies.

MacKenzie WR, Hoxie NJ, Proctor ME, et al: A massive outbreak in Milwaukee of *Cryptosporidium* infection transmitted through public water supply, *N Engl J Med* 331:161, 1994.

A detailed epidemiologic study is presented of the largest outbreak of cryptosporidiosis ever recorded.

Marx A, Pewsner D, Egger M, et al: Meta-analysis: accuracy of rapid tests for malaria in travelers returning from endemic areas, *Ann Intern Med* 142:836, 2005.

Use of "dipstick" immunochromatography methods for the rapid detection of malaria infection is becoming more popular; this paper reviews 21 published studies on the various methods, their clinical role in diagnosis, and limitations.

Mathison BA, Pritt BS: Laboratory identification of arthropod ectoparasites, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 27:48–67, 2014.

A detailed review describing the collection, proper handling, identification, and reporting of arthropods commonly submitted to the clinical microbiology laboratory.

National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS): Clinical use and interpretation of serologic tests for *Toxoplasma gondii*; approved guideline, CLSI Document M36-A. Wayne, Pa.; 2004.

This consensus guideline presents in an organized fashion the selection, interpretation, and limitations of currently utilized serologic methods for the diagnosis of toxoplasmosis.

Persing DH, Tenover FC, Tang Y, et al, editors: *Molecular microbiology: diagnostic principles and practice*, ed 2, Washington, DC, 2011, American Society for Microbiology.

This book contains several chapters that provide a convenient overview of current status regarding the use of molecular methods in the diagnosis of parasitic infections.

Shields JM, Olson BH: *Cyclospora cayetanensis:* a review of an emerging parasitic coccidian, *Int J Parasitol* 33:371, 2003.

The recent emergence of Cyclospora *from an obscure coccidian parasite of animals to a serious human pathogen is described.*

Vasoo S, Pritt BS: Molecular diagnostics and parasitic disease, *Clin Lab Med* 33:461–503, 2013.

This recent review describes commercial and laboratory-developed molecular assays for diagnosis of parasitic disease and provides information on assay design, performance characteristics, and usefulness compared to conventional diagnostics.

REFERENCES

Aldeen WE, Hale D, Robison AJ, et al: Evaluation of a commercially available ELISA assay for detection of Giardia lamblia in fecal specimens, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 21:77, 1995.

Alicata JE: The discovery of Angiostrongylus cantonensis as a cause of human eosinophilic meningitis, *Parasitol Today* 7:151, 1991.

Anuran JD, Starr MB, Jakobiec FA: Acanthamoeba keratitis: a review of the literature, *Cornea* 6:2, 1987.

Ash LR, Orihel TC: *Parasites: a guide to laboratory procedures and identification*, Chicago, 1987, ASCP Press.

Ash LR, Orihel TC: *Atlas of human parasitology*, ed 5, Chicago, 2007, ASCP Press.

Badawi AF, Mostafa MH, O'Connor PJ: Involvement of alkylating agents in schistosome-associated bladder cancer: the possible basic mechanisms of induction, *Cancer Lett* 63:171, 1992.

Balows A, Hausler WJ Jr, Ohashi M, et al: *Laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases: principles and practice*, vol 1, Bacterial, mycotic and parasitic diseases, New York, 1988, Springer-Verlag.

Bartlett MS, Harper K, Smith N, et al: Comparative evaluation of a modified zinc sulfate flotation technique, *J Clin Microbiol* 7:524, 1978.

Beal C, Goldsmith M, Kotby M, et al: The plastic envelope method, a simplified technique for culture diagnosis of trichomoniasis, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:2265, 1992.

Beaver PC: Light long-lasting Necator infection in a volunteer, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 39:369, 1988.

Beaver PC, Gadgil RK, Morera P: Sarcocystis in man: a review and report of five cases, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 28:819, 1979.

Beaver PC, Jung RC, Cupp EW: *Clinical parasitology*, ed 9, Philadelphia, 1984, Lea & Febiger.

Bendall RP, Chiodini PL: New diagnostic methods for parasitic infections, *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 6:318, 1993.

Benenson MW, Takafuji ET, Lemon SM, et al: Oocyst-transmitted toxoplasmosis associated with ingestion of contaminated water, *N Engl J Med* 307:666, 1982.

Binford CH, Connor DH: *Pathology of tropical and extraordinary diseases*, Washington, DC, 1976, Armed Forces Institute of Pathology.

Boggild AK, Martin DS, Lee TY, et al: Laboratory diagnosis of amoebic keratitis: comparison of four diagnostic methods for different types of clinical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:1314, 2009.

Boros DL: Immunopathology of Schistosoma mansoni infection, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2:250, 1989.

Bossolasco S, Gaiera G, Olchini D, et al: Real-time PCR assay for clinical management of human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients with visceral leishmaniasis, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:5080, 2003.

Bowie WR, King AS, Werker DH, et al: Outbreak of toxoplasmosis associated with municipal drinking water. The BC Toxoplasma Investigation Team, *Lancet* 350:173, 1997.

Briselden AM, Hillier SL: Evaluation of Affirm VP microbial identification test for Gardnerella vaginalis and Trichomonas vaginalis, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:148, 1994.

Bronsdon MA: Rapid dimethyl sulfoxide-modified acid-fast stain of Cryptosporidium oocyst in stool specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 19:952, 1984.

Brooke MM, Melvin DM: *Morphology of diagnostic stages of intestinal parasites of man*, Washington, DC, 1984, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Publication No. CDC 848116.

Bruce JI, Sornmani S: *The Mekong schistosome*, Whitmore Lake, Mich., 1980, Malacol Rev. (Suppl 2).

Bruckner DA: Amebiasis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 5:356, 1992.

Burns DA: Follicle mites and their role in disease, *Clin Exp Dermatol* 17:152, 1992.

Burrows RB, Swerdlow MA: Enterobius vermicularis as a probable vector of Dientamoeba fragilis, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 5:258, 1956.

Cairncross S, Muller R, Zagaria N: Dracunculiasis (Guinea worm disease) and the eradication initiative, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 15:223, 2002.

Cali A, Kotler DP, Orenstein JM: Septata intestinalis N.G. N.Sp., an intestinal microsporidian associated with chronic diarrhea and dissemination in AIDS patients, *J Eukaryot Microbiol* 40:101, 1993.

Carabin H, Budke CM, Cowan LD, et al: Methods for assessing the burden of parasitic zoonoses: echinococcosis and cysticercosis, *Trends Parasitol* 21:327, 2005.

Cattand P, Miezan BT, de Raadt P: Human African trypanosomiasis: use of double centrifugation of cerebrospinal fluid to detect trypanosomes, *Bull WHO* 66:83, 1988.

Cazenave J, Cheyrou A, Blouin P, et al: Use of polymerase chain reaction to detect Toxoplasma, *J Clin Pathol* 44:1037, 1991.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Pseudooutbreak of intestinal amebiasis, California, *Morbid Mortal Wkly Rep* 34:125, 1985.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): *Malaria surveillance*, Atlanta, CDC. 1988 Annual Summary, 1987.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Surveillance for dracunculiasis, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 41:1, 1992.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Summary of notifiable diseases, United States, 1993, *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 42:1, 1993.

Chan FT, Guan MX, MacKenzie AMR: Application of indirect immunofluorescence to detection of Dientamoeba fragilis trophozoites in fecal specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:1710, 1993.

Connor DH, Chandler FW, Schwartz DA, et al: *Pathology of infectious diseases*, Stamford, Conn., 1997, Appleton & Lange.

Cook GC, editor: *Manson's tropical diseases*, ed 21, Philadelphia, 2002, Saunders.

Cooper ES, Bundy DAP: Trichuris is not trivial, *Parasitol Today* 4:301, 1988.

Costa JM, Ernault P, Gautier E, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of congenital toxoplasmosis by duplex real-time PCR using fluorescence resonance energy transfer hybridization probes, *Prenat Diagn* 21:85, 2001.

Costa JM, Pautas C, Ernault P, et al: Real-time PCR for diagnosis and follow-up of Toxoplasma reactivation after allogeneic stem cell transplantation using fluorescence resonance energy transfer hybridization probes, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:2929, 2000.

Coupe S, Sarfati C, Hamane S, et al: Detection of Cryptosporidium and identification to the species level by nested PCR and restriction fragment length polymorphism, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:1017, 2005.

Cox FEG: Taxonomy and classification of human parasitic protozoa and helminths. In Jorgenson JH, Pfaller MA, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 11, Washington, DC, 2015, ASM Press.

Cox-Singh J, Davis TM, Lee KS, et al: Plasmodium knowlesi malaria in humans is widely distributed and potentially life threatening, *Clin Infect Dis* 46:165, 2008.

Craun G: Waterborne giardiasis in the United States 1965-1984, *Lancet* 2:513, 1986.

Cross JH: Intestinal capillariasis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 5:120, 1992.

Cullen KA, Arguin PM: Malaria Surveillance—United States, 2012, *MMWR* 63(SS12):1–22, 2014.

Current WL, Garcia LS: Cryptosporidiosis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 4:325, 1991.

Curry A, Caning E: Human microsporidiosis, *J Infect* 27:229, 1993.

Curtis MA, Bylund G: Diphyllobothriasis: fish tapeworm disease in the circumpolar north, *Arctic Med Res* 50:18, 1991.

D'Alessandro A, Ramirez LE, Chapadeiro E, et al: Second recorded case of human infection by Echinococcus oligarthrus, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 52:29, 1995.

D'Alessandro A, Rausch RL, Cuello C, et al: Echinococcus vogeli in man, with a review of polycystic hydatid disease in Colombia and neighboring countries, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 28:303, 1979.

Dao AH, Robinson DP, Wong SW: Frequency of Entamoeba gingivalis in human gingival scrapings, *Am J Clin Pathol* 80:380, 1983.

Dart JKG, Saw VPJ, Kilvington S: Acanthmaoeba keratitis: diagnosis and treatment update 2009, *Am J Ophthalmol* 148:487, 2009.

DeGirolami PC, Ezratty CR, Desai G, et al: Diagnosis of intestinal microsporidiosis by examination of stool and duodenal aspirate with Weber's modified trichrome and Uvitex 2B stains, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:805, 1995.

DeHovitz JA, Pape JW, Boncy J, et al: Isosporiasis in AIDS, *N Engl J Med* 315:87, 1986.

Diamond LS: Cultivation of Entamoeba histolytica in vitro. In Ravdin JI, editor: *Amebiasis: human infection by Entamoeba histolytica*, New York, 1988, John Wiley & Sons, p 27.

Diamond LS, Clark CG: A redescription of Entamoeba histolytica Schaudinn, 1903 (Emended Walker, 1911), separating it from Entamoeba dispar Brumpt, 1925, *J Eukaryot Microbiol* 40:340, 1993.

Diaz JF, Verastegui M, Gilman RH, et al: Immunodiagnosis of human cysticercosis (Taenia solium): a field comparison of an antibody-enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), an antigen-ELISA, and an enzyme-linked immunoelectrotransfer blot (EITB) assay in Peru, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 46:610, 1992.

Didier ES, Orenstein JM, Aldras A, et al: Comparison of three staining methods for detecting microsporidia in fluids, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:3138, 1995.

Doing KM, Hamm JL, Jellison JA, et al: False-positive results obtained with the Alexon ProSpecT Cryptosporidium enzyme immunoassay, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:1582, 1999.

Eastburn RL, Fritsche TR, Terhune CA Jr: Human intestinal infection with Nanophyetus salmincola from salmonid fishes, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 36:586, 1987.

Espy MJ, Uhl JR, Sloan LM, et al: Real-time PCR in clinical microbiology: applications for routine laboratory testing, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 19:165, 2006.

Eveland LK, Kenney M, Yermakov V: Laboratory diagnosis of autoinfection in strongyloidiasis, *Am J Clin Pathol* 63:421, 1975.

Fedorko DP, Williams EC, Nelson NA, et al: Performance of three enzyme immunoassays and two direct fluorescence assays for detection of Giardia lamblia in stool specimens preserved in ECOFIX, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:2781, 2000.

Fisher RG: Necrotic arachnidism, *West J Med* 160:570, 1994.

Frazier CA, Brown PA: *Insects and allergy and what to do about them*, Norman, Okla., 1980, University of Oklahoma Press.

Fritsche TR: Pathogenic protozoa: an overview of in vitro cultivation and susceptibility to chemotherapeutic agents, *Clin Lab Med* 9:287, 1989.

Fritsche TR, Eastburn RL, Wiggins LH, et al: Praziquantel for treatment of human Nanophyetus salmincola (Troglotrema salmincola) infection, *J Infect Dis* 160:896, 1989.

Garcia LS: *Diagnostic medical parasitology*, ed 5, Washington, DC, 2007, American Society for Microbiology.

Garcia LS: *Practical guide to diagnostic parasitology*, ed 2, Washington, DC, 2009, American Society for Microbiology.

Garcia LS: *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook*, vol 1–3, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2010, American Society for Microbiology.

Garcia LS, Brewer TC, Bruckner DA: A comparison of the formalin-ether concentration and trichrome-stained smear methods for the recovery and identification of intestinal protozoa, *Am J Med Technol* 45:932, 1979.

Garcia LS, Shimizu RY: Evaluation of nine immunoassay kits (enzyme immunoassay and direct fluorescence) for detection of Giardia lamblia and Cryptosporidium parvum in human fecal specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:1526, 1997.

Garcia LS, Shimizu RY: Detection of Giardia lamblia and Cryptosporidium parvum antigens in human fecal specimens using the ColorPAC combination rapid solid-phase qualitative immunochromatographic assay, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:1267, 2000.

Garcia LS, Shimizu RY, Shum A, et al: Evaluation of intestinal protozoan morphology in polyvinyl alcohol preservative: comparison of zinc sulfate- and mercuric chloride–based compounds for use in Schaudinn's fixative, *J Clin Microbiol* 31:307, 1993.

Gay JD, Abell TL, Thompson JH Jr, et al: Entamoeba polecki infection in southeast Asian refugees: multiple cases of a rarely reported parasite, *Mayo Clin Proc* 60:523, 1985.

Genta RM: Dysregulation of strongyloidiasis: a new hypothesis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 5:345, 1992.

Genta RM, Walzer PD: Strongyloidiasis. In Walzer PD, Genta RM, editors: *Parasitic infections in the compromised host*, New York, 1989, Marcel Dekker, p 463.

Gill GV, Bell DR: Strongyloides stercoralis infection in former Far East prisoners of war, *Br Med J* 2:572, 1979.

Goddard J: *Physician's guide to arthropods of medical importance*, ed 5, Boca Raton, Fla., 2007, CRC Press.

Graczyk TK, Cranfield MR, Fayer R: Evaluation of commercial enzyme immunoassay (EIA) and immunofluorescent antibody (FA) test kits for detection of Cryptosporidium oocysts of species other than

Cryptosporidium parvum, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 54:274, 1996.
Grover CM, Thulliez P, Remington JS, et al: Rapid prenatal diagnosis of congenital Toxoplasma infection by using polymerase chain reaction and amniotic fluid, *J Clin Microbiol* 28:2297, 1990.
Guerrant RL, Walker DH, Weller PF, editors: *Tropical infectious diseases: principles, pathogens and practice*, Philadelphia, 1999, Churchill Livingstone.
Gustafson RL, Reed CM, McGreevy PB, et al: Human cutaneous leishmaniasis acquired in Texas, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 34:58, 1985.
Gutierrez Y: *Diagnostic pathology of parasitic infections with clinical correlations*, ed 2, New York, 2000, Oxford University Press.
Hanson KL, Cartwright CP: Use of an enzyme immunoassay does not eliminate the need to analyze multiple stool specimens for sensitive detection of Giardia lamblia, *J Clin Microbiol* 39:474, 2001.
Healy GR, Rubush TK: Morphology of Babesia microti in human blood smears, *Am J Clin Pathol* 73:107, 1980.
Herwaldt BL: Leishmaniasis, *Lancet* 335:1191, 1999.
Herwaldt BL, de Bruyn G, Pieniazek NJ, et al: Babesia divergens-like infection, Washington State, *Emerg Infect Dis* 10:622, 2004.
Hoeffler DF: Cercarial dermatitis, its etiology, epidemiology, and clinical aspects, *JAMA* 29:225, 1974.
Ismail N, Bloch KC, McBride JW: Human ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, *Clin Lab Med* 30:261, 2010.
Istre GR, Kreiss K, Hopkins RS, et al: An outbreak of amebiasis spread by colonic irrigation at a chiropractic clinic, *N Engl J Med* 307:339, 1982.
John DT, Petri WA: *Markell and Voge's medical parasitology*, ed 9, Philadelphia, 2006, Saunders Elsevier.
Johnson EH, Windsor JJ, Clark CG: Emerging from obscurity: biological, clinical and diagnostic aspects of Dientamoeba fragilis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 17:553, 2004.
Johnston SP, Ballard MM, Beach MJ, et al: Evaluation of three commercial assays for detection of Giardia and Cryptosporidium organisms in fecal specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:623, 2003.
Kappus KD, Lundgren RG, Juranek DD, et al: Intestinal parasitism in the United States: update on a continuing problem, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 50:705, 1994.
Katanik MT, Schneider SK, Rosenblatt JE, et al: Evaluation of ColorPAC Giardia/Cryptosporidium rapid assay and ProSpecT Giardia/Cryptosporidium microplate assay for detection of Giardia and Cryptosporidium in fecal specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 39:4523, 2001.
Kehl KS, Cicirello H, Havens PL: Comparison of four different methods for detection of Cryptosporidium species, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:416, 1995.
Kilvington S, White DG: Acanthamoeba: biology, ecology and human disease, *Rev Med Microbiol* 5:12, 1994.
Kim KC, Pratt HD, Stojanovich CJ: *The sucking lice of North America*, University Park, Pa., 1986, Pennsylvania State University Press.
Krause PJ: Babesiosis, *Med Clin North Am* 86:361, 2002.
Krieger JN, Tam MR, Stevens CE, et al: Diagnosis of trichomoniasis: comparison of conventional wet-mount examination with cytologic studies, cultures, and monoclonal antibody staining of direct specimens, *JAMA* 259:1223, 1988.
Krogstad DJ, Spencer HC, Healy GR, et al: Amebiasis: epidemiologic studies in the United States, *Ann Intern Med* 88:89, 1978.
Krotoski WA, Garnham PCC, Krotoski DM, et al: Observations on early and late post-sporozoite tissue stages in primate malaria. I. Discovery of a new latent form of Plasmodium cynomolgi (the hypnozoite), and failure to detect hepatic forms within the first 24 hours after infection, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 31:24, 1982.
Kubersky T, Bert RD, Briley JM, et al: Recovery of Angiostrongylus cantonensis from cerebrospinal fluid of a child with eosinophilic meningitis, *J Clin Microbiol* 9:629, 1979.
Lanar DE, McLaughlin GL, Wirth DF, et al: Comparison of thick films, in vitro culture and DNA hybridization probes for detecting Plasmodium falciparum malaria, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 40:3, 1989.
Lane RP, Crosskey RW: *Medical insects and arthropods*, London, 1993, Chapman & Hall.
Lawande RV, Abraham SN, John I, et al: Recovery of soil amebas from the nasal passages of children during the dusty Harmattan period in Zaria, *Am Soc Clin Pathol* 71:201, 1979.
Layrisse M, Blumenfeld N, Carbonell L, et al: Intestinal absorption tests and biopsy of the jejunum in subjects with heavy hookworm infection, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 13:297, 1964.
Layrisse M, Roche M: The relationship between anemia and hookworm infection: results of surveys of rural Venezuelan population, *Am J Hyg* 79:279, 1964.
Lee MA, Tan CH, Aw LT, et al: Real-time fluorescence-based PCR for detection of malaria parasites, *J Clin Microbiol* 40:4343, 2002.
Levi MH, Torres J, Pina C, et al: Comparison of the InPouch TV culture system and Diamond's modified medium for detection of Trichomonas vaginalis, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:3308, 1997.
Levin RL, Armstrong DE: Human infection with Entamoeba polecki, *Am J Clin Pathol* 54:611, 1970.
Lisi PJ, Dondero RS, Kwiatkoski D, et al: Monoclonal-antibody based enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for Trichomonas vaginalis, *J Clin Microbiol* 26:1684, 1988.
Loria-Cortez R, LoboSanahuja JF: Clinical abdominal angiostrongylosis: a study of 116 children with intestinal eosinophilic granuloma caused by Angiostrongylus costaricensis, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 29:538, 1980.
Luft BJ: Toxoplasma gondii. In Walzer PD, Genta RM, editors: *Parasitic infections in the compromised host*, New York, 1989, Marcel Dekker, p 179.
Luft BJ, Remington JS: Toxoplasmic encephalitis, *J Infect Dis* 157:1, 1988.
Luna VA, Stewart BK, Bergeron DL, et al: Use of the fluorochrome Calcofluor white in the screening of stool specimens for spores of microsporidia, *Am J Clin Pathol* 103:656, 1995.
Ma P, Soave R: Three-step stool examination for cryptosporidiosis in 10 homosexual men with protracted watery diarrhea, *J Infect Dis* 147:824, 1983.
Maayen S, Wormser GP, Widernorn J, et al: Strongyloides stercoralis hyperinfection in a patient with acquired immune deficiency syndrome, *Am J Med* 83:945, 1987.
MacDougall LT, Magoon CC, Fritsche TR: Dirofilaria repens manifesting as a breast nodule: diagnostic problems and epidemiologic considerations, *Am J Clin Pathol* 97:625, 1992.
McCabe R, Chirurgi V: Issues in toxoplasmosis, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 7:587, 1993.
Magill AJ, Grogl M, Gasser RA, et al: Visceral infection caused by Leishmania tropica in veterans of Operation Desert Storm, *N Engl J Med* 328:1384, 1993.
Mahboudi F, Abolhassani M, Tehrani SR, et al: Differentiation of Old and New World Leishmania species at complex and species levels by PCR, *Scand J Infect Dis* 34:756, 2002.
Mannheimer SB, Soave R: Protozoal infections in patients with AIDS: cryptosporidiosis, isosporiasis, cyclosporiasis, and microsporidiosis, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 8:483, 1994.
Maraha B, Buiting AG: Evaluation of four enzyme immunoassays for the detection of Giardia lamblia antigen in stool specimens, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 19:485, 2000.
Marcial-Rojas RA: *Pathology of protozoal and helminthic diseases with clinical correlation*, Baltimore, 1971, Williams & Wilkins.
Marciano-Cabral F: Biology of Naegleria spp, *Microbiol Rev* 52:114, 1988.
Marciano-Cabral F, Cabral G: Acanthamoeba spp. as agents of disease in humans, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 16:273, 2003.
Mariano EG, Borja SR, Vruno MJ: A human infection with Paragonimus kellicotti (lung fluke) in the United States, *Am J Clin Pathol* 86:685, 1986.
Marines HM, Osato MS, Font RL: The value of Calcofluor white in the diagnosis of mycotic and Acanthamoeba infections of the eye and ocular adnexa, *Ophthalmology* 94:23, 1987.
Markell EK, Udkow MP: Blastocystis hominis: pathogen or fellow traveler?, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 35:1023, 1986.
Martinez AJ: *Free-living amebas: natural history, prevention, diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of disease*, Boca Raton, Fla, 1985, CRC Press.
Martinez AJ, Visvesvara GS: Free living amphizoic and opportunistic amebas, *Brain Pathol* 7:583, 1997.
Medrano FJ, HernandezQuero J, Jimenez E, et al: Visceral leishmaniasis in HIV-infected individuals: a common opportunistic infection in Spain?, *AIDS* 6:1499, 1992.
Melvin DM, Brooke MM: *Laboratory procedures for the diagnosis of intestinal parasites*, ed 3, DHEW Publication CDC 828282, Atlanta, Ga, 1982, Laboratory Training and Consultation Division, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
Meri T, Sakari Jokiranta T, Suhonen L, et al: Resistance of Trichomonas vaginalis to metronidazole: report of the first three cases from Finland and optimization of in vitro susceptibility testing under various oxygen concentrations, *J Clin Microbiol* 38:763, 2000.
Mileno MD, Bia FJ: The compromised traveler, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 12:369, 1998.
Miller GA, Klausner JD, Coates TJ, et al: Assessment of a rapid antigen detection system for Trichomonas vaginalis infection, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 10:1157, 2003.
Miller LH, Manson SJ, Clyde DF, et al: The resistance factor to Plasmodium vivax in blacks, the Duffy-blood-group genotype, FyFy, *N Engl J Med* 295:302, 1976.
Miller RA, Minshew BH: Blastocystis hominis: an organism in search of a disease, *Rev Infect Dis* 10:930, 1988.
Mullen G, Durden L: *Medical and veterinary entomology*, London, 2002, Academic Press.
Murphy GS, Basri H, Purnomo B, et al: Vivax malaria resistant to treatment and prophylaxis with chloroquine, *Lancet* 341:96, 1993.
Murray WJ, Ash LR: Delusional parasitosis, *Clin Microbiol Newslett* 26:73, 2004.
Murray PR, Baron EJ, Jorgensen JH, et al: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 9, Washington, DC, 2007, ASM Press.
Murray CK, Bennett JW: Rapid diagnosis of malaria, *Interdiscip Perspect Infect Dis* 415:953, 2009.
National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS): *Laboratory diagnosis of blood borne parasitic diseases; approved guideline. NCCLS Document M15-A*, Wayne, Pa., 2000, NCCLS.
National Communicable Disease Center: *Pictorial keys: arthropods, reptiles, birds, and mammals of public health significance*, Atlanta, 1969, Communicable Disease Center.
Nielson RL, Kohler RB, Chin W, et al: The use of exchange transfusions: a potentially useful adjunct in the treatment of fulminant Falciparum malaria, *Am J Med Sci* 277:325, 1979.
Norgan AP, Arguello HE, Sloan LM, et al: A method for reducing the sloughing of thick blood films for malaria diagnosis, *Malaria J* 12:231, 2013.
Orihel TC, Ash LR: *Parasites in human tissues*, Chicago, 1995, ASCP Press.
Orkin M, Maibach HI: *Cutaneous infestations and insect bites*, New York, 1985, Marcel Dekker.
Ortega YR, Gilman RH, Sterling CR: A new coccidian parasite (Apicomplexa: Eimeriidae) from humans, *J Parasitol* 80:625, 1994.
Ortega YR, Sterling CR, Gilman RH, et al: Cyclospora species: a new protozoan pathogen of humans, *N Engl J Med* 328:1308, 1993.
Pachucki CT, Levandowski RA, Brown VA, et al: American paragonimiasis treated with praziquantel, *N Engl J Med* 311:582, 1984.
Palmer J: Modified iron hematoxylin/Kinyoun stain (letter), *Clin Microbiol Newslett* 13:39, 1991.
Palmer CJ, Lindo JF, Klaskala WI, et al: Evaluation of the OptiMAL test for rapid diagnosis of Plasmodium vivax and Plasmodium falciparum malaria, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:203, 1998.
Parmley SF, Goebel FD, Remington JS: Detection of Toxoplasma gondii in cerebrospinal fluid from AIDS patients by polymerase chain reaction, *J Clin Microbiol* 30:3000, 1992.
Pelletier LL Jr, Baker CB, Gam AA, et al: Diagnosis and evaluation of treatment of chronic strongyloidiasis in ex-prisoners of war, *J Infect Dis* 157:573, 1988.
Persing DH, Herwaldt BL, Glaser C, et al: Infection with a Babesia-like organism in northern California, *N Engl J Med* 332:298, 1995.
Peters W, Gilles HM: *A colour atlas of tropical medicine and parasitology*, ed 3, London, 1989, Wolfe Medical.
Peters W, Killick-Kendrick R: *The Leishmaniases in biology and medicine*, London, 1987, Academic Press.
Pillai DR, Kain KC: Immunochromatographic strip-based detection of Entamoeba histolytica–E. dispar and Giardia lamblia coproantigen, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:3017, 1999.
Piper RC, LeBras J, Wentworth L, et al: Immunocapture diagnostic assays for malaria utilizing Plasmodium lactate dehydrogenase (pLDH), *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 60:109, 1999.

Powell VI, Grima K: Exchange transfusion for malaria and Babesia infection, *Transfus Med Rev* 16:239, 2002.

Preiss U, Ockert G, Boremme S, et al: On the clinical importance of Dientamoeba fragilis infections in childhood, *J Hyg Epidemiol Microbiol Immunol* 35:27, 1991.

Price DL: *Procedure manual for the diagnosis of intestinal parasites*, Boca Raton, Fla., 1994, CRC Press.

Pritt BS, Clark CG: Amebiasis, *Mayo Clinic Proc.* 83:1154–1160, 2008.

Purtilo DT, Meyers WM, Connor DH: Fatal strongyloidiasis in immunosuppressed patients, *Am J Med* 56:358, 1974.

Quick RE, Herwaldt BL, Thomford JW, et al: Babesiosis in Washington State: a new species of Babesia?, *Ann Intern Med* 119:284, 1993.

Qvarnstrom Y, da Silva AJ, Schuster FL, et al: Molecular confirmation of Sappinia pedata as a causative agent of amoebic encephalitis, *J Infect Dis* 199:1139, 2009.

Ramanan P, Pritt BS: Extraintestinal microsporidiosis, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:3839–3844, 2014.

Ravdin JI, editor: *Amebiasis: human infection by Entamoeba histolytica*, New York, 1988, John Wiley & Sons.

Reisman RE: Insect stings, *N Engl J Med* 331:523, 1994.

Remington JS, Klein JO, Baker C, et al, editors: *Infectious diseases of the fetus and newborn infant*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2005, Saunders.

Richards FO, Schantz PM, RuizTiben E, et al: Cysticercosis in Los Angeles County, *JAMA* 254:444, 1985.

Rosenblatt JE, Sloan LM, Bestrom JE: Evaluation of an enzyme-linked immunoassay for the detection in serum of antibodies to Entamoeba histolytica, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 22:275, 1995.

Ruebush TK: Human babesiosis in North America, *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 74:149, 1980.

Sacks JJ, Roberto RR, Brooks NF: Toxoplasmosis infection associated with raw goat's milk, *JAMA* 248:1728, 1982.

Sadun EH, Melvin DM: The probability of detecting infections with Enterobius vermicularis by successive examination, *J Pediatr* 48:438, 1956.

Sakanari JA, McKerrow JH: Anisakiasis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2:278, 1989.

Samuelson J, Acuma-Soto R, Reed S, et al: DNA hybridization probe for clinical diagnosis of Entamoeba histolytica, *J Clin Microbiol* 27:672, 1989.

Schantz PM, Moore AC, Munoz JL, et al: Neurocysticercosis in an orthodox Jewish community in New York City, *N Engl J Med* 327:692, 1992.

Schmid GP, Matherny LC, Zaidi AA, et al: Evaluation of six media for the growth of Trichomonas vaginalis from vaginal secretions, *J Clin Microbiol* 27:1230, 1989.

Schnapp LM, Geaghan SM, Campagna A, et al: Toxoplasma gondii pneumonitis in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus, *Arch Intern Med* 152:1073, 1992.

Schwebke JR, Hobbs MM, Taylor SN, et al: Molecular testing for Trichomonas vaginalis in women: results from a prospective U.S. clinical trial, *J Clin Microbiol* 49:4106–4111, 2011.

Shadduck JA, Greeley E: Microsporidia and human infections, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2:158, 1989.

Shama SK, Etkind PH, Odell TM, et al: Gypsy-moth-caterpillar dermatitis, *N Engl J Med* 306:1300, 1982.

Sheehan DJ, Raucher BG, McKitriak JC: Association of Blastocystis hominis with signs and symptoms of human disease, *J Clin Microbiol* 24:548, 1986.

Shepp DH, Hackman RC, Conley FK, et al: Toxoplasma gondii reactivation identified by detection of parasitemia in tissue culture, *Ann Intern Med* 103:218, 1985.

Smith JW: Identification of fecal parasites in the special parasitology survey of the College of American Pathologists, *Am J Clin Pathol* 72(2 Suppl):371, 1979.

Sonenshine DE: *Biology of ticks*, vol 1, New York, 1991, Oxford University Press.

Sonenshine DE: *Biology of ticks*, vol 2, New York, 1993, Oxford University Press.

Spach DH, Liles WC, Campbell GL, et al: Tickborne diseases in the United States, *N Engl J Med* 329:936, 1993.

Spencer MJ, Garcia LS, Chapin MR: Dientamoeba fragilis, an intestinal pathogen in children, *Am J Dis Child* 133:390, 1979.

Spencer FM, Monroe LS: *The color atlas of intestinal parasites*, ed 2, Springfield, Ill., 1982, Charles C Thomas.

Stark D, Garcia LS, Barratt JL, et al: Description of Dientamoeba fragilis cyst and precystic forms from human samples, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:2680–2683, 2014.

Stehr-Green JK, Bailey TM, Visvesvara GS: The epidemiology of Acanthamoeba keratitis in the United States, *Am J Ophthalmol* 107:331, 1990.

Stenzel DJ, Boreham PFL: Blastocystis hominis revisited, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 9:563, 1996.

Steyskal GC, Murphy WL, Hoover EM: *Insects and mites: techniques for collection and preservation*, Washington, DC, 1987, U.S. Department of Agriculture. USDA Misc Publication No. 1443.

Strickland GT, editor: *Hunter's tropical medicine and emerging infectious diseases*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2000, Saunders.

Sun TE: *Pathology and clinical features of parasitic diseases*, New York, 1982, Masson.

Sun TE: *Color atlas and textbook of diagnostic parasitology*, New York, 1988, Igaku-Shoin.

Symmers WC Sr: Pathology of oxyuriasis, with special reference to granulomas due to the presence of Oxyuris vermicularis (Enterobius vermicularis) and its ova in tissues, *Arch Pathol* 50:475, 1950.

Tan B, WeldonLime CM, Rhone DP, et al: Acanthamoeba infection presenting as skin lesions in patients with the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 117:1043, 1993.

Teutch SM, Juranek DD, Sulzer A, et al: Epidemic toxoplasmosis associated with infected cats, *N Engl J Med* 300:695, 1979.

Thielman NM, Guerrant RL: Persistent diarrhea in the returned traveler, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 12:489, 1998.

Thompson RCA, Lymbery AJ, editors: *Echinococcus and hydatid disease*. Wallingford, Oxfordshire, England, 1995, CAB International.

Truant AL, Elliott SH, Kelly MT, et al: Comparison of formalin-ethyl ether sedimentation, formalin-ethyl acetate sedimentation, and zinc sulfate flotation techniques for detection of intestinal parasites, *J Clin Microbiol* 13:882, 1981.

Turner JA: Giardiasis and infections with Dientamoeba fragilis, *Pediatr Clin North Am* 32:865, 1985.

Ubelaker HE: Acanthamoeba spp: "opportunistic pathogens", *Trans Am Microsc Soc* 110:289, 1991.

Vallejo GA, Guhl F, Chiari E, et al: Species specific detection of Trypanosoma cruzi and Trypanosoma rangeli in vector and mammalian hosts by polymerase chain reaction amplification of kinetoplast minicircle DNA, *Acta Trop* 72:203, 1999.

van Gool T, Snijders F, Reis P, et al: Diagnosis of intestinal and disseminated microsporidial infections in patients with HIV by a new rapid fluorescent technique, *J Clin Pathol* 46:694, 1993.

Van Meirvenne N, le Ray D: Diagnoses of African and American trypanosomiases, *Br Med Bull* 41:156, 1985.

Vannier E, Krause PJ: Human babesiosis, *N Engl J Med* 366:2397–2407, 2012.

Varga JH, Wolf TC, Jensen HG, et al: Combined treatment of Acanthamoeba keratitis with propamidine, neomycin, and polyhexamethylene biguanide, *Am J Ophthalmol* 115:466, 1993.

Verani JR, Lorick SA, Yoder JS, et al: National outbreak of Acanthamoeba keratitis associated with use of a contact lens solution, United States, *Emer Inf Dis* 15:1236, 2009.

Visvesvara GS: Pathogenic and opportunistic free-living amebae. In Murray PR, Barron EJ, Joregenson JH, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 9, Washington, DC, 2007, ASM Press, p 2082.

Visvesvara GS: Parasite culture: Entamoeba histolytica. In Garcia LS, editor: *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2010a, American Society for Microbiology, p 9.9.1.1.

Visvesvara GS: Parasite culture: Leishmania spp. and Trypanosoma cruzi. In Garcia LS, editor: *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2010b, American Society for Microbiology, p 9.9.5.1.

Visvesvara GS: Parasite culture: Acanthamoeba and Naegleria spp. In Garcia LS, editor: *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook*, ed 3, Washington, DC, 2010c, American Society for Microbiology, p 9.9.2.1.

Visvesvara GS, Schuster FL, Marinez AJ: Balamuthia mandrillaris N.G., N. Sp., agent of amebic meningoencephalitis in humans and animals, *J Eukaryot Microbiol* 40:504, 1993.

Von Lichtenberg F: *Pathology of infectious diseases*, New York, 1991, Raven Press.

Walzer PD, Genta RM: *Parasitic infections in the compromised host*, New York, 1989, Marcel Dekker.

Wang SS, Feldman HA: Isolation of Hartmanella species from human throats, *N Engl J Med* 277:1174, 1967.

Warren KS, Mahmoud AAF, editors: *Tropical and geographical medicine*, ed 2, New York, 1990, McGraw-Hill.

Weber R, Bryan RT, Owen RL, et al: Improved light-microscopical detection of microsporidia spores in stool and duodenal aspirates, *N Engl J Med* 326:161, 1992.

Weber R, Bryan RT, Schwartz DA, et al: Human microsporidial infections, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 7:426, 1994.

Weigle KA, Davalos M, Heredia P, et al: Diagnosis of cutaneous and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis in Colombia: a comparison of seven methods, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 36:489, 1987.

Weinberg GA: Laboratory diagnosis of ehrlichiosis and babesiosis, *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 20:435, 2001.

Weiss JB: DNA probes and PCR for diagnosis of parasitic infections, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 8:113, 1995.

Willson R, Harrington R, Stewart B, et al: Human immunodeficiency virus 1 associated necrotizing cholangitis caused by infection with Septata intestinalis, *Gastroenterology* 108:247, 1995.

Wilson M, Jones JL, McAuley JB: Toxoplasma. In Murray PR, Barron EJ, Joregenson JH, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 9, Washington, DC, 2007, ASM Press, p 2070.

Wilson M, Schantz P, Pieniazek N: Diagnosis of parasitic infections: immunologic and molecular methods. In Murray PR, Barron EJ, Pfaller MA, et al, editors: *Manual of clinical microbiology*, ed 6, Washington, DC, 1995, ASM Press, p 1159.

Wittner M, Tanowitz HB, Weiss LM: Parasitic infections in AIDS patients, *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 7:569, 1993.

Wittner M, Turner JW, Jacquette G, et al: Eustrongylidiasis—a parasitic infection acquired by eating sushi, *N Engl J Med* 320:1124, 1989.

Wolfe MS: Giardiasis, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 5:93, 1992.

Woods GLY, Gutierrez DH, Walker DT, et al: *Diagnostic pathology of infectious diseases*, Philadelphia, 1993, Lea & Febiger.

Workowski KA, Berman S: Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010, *Morb Mortal Weekly Rep* 59(RR-12):1–110, 2010.

Workowski KA, Bolan G: Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines, 2014 (Draft for Public Comment): Retrieved on January 17, 2015 from http://www.cdc.gov/std/treatment/2014/2014-std-guidelines-peer-reviewers-08-20-2014.pdf.

World Health Organization: The epidemiology and control of African trypanosomiasis. WHO Tech Rep Ser No 739. Geneva; 1986.

World Health Organization: The biology of malaria parasites. WHO Tech Rep Ser No 743. Geneva; 1987.

Yang J, Scholten T: Dientamoeba fragilis: a review with notes on its epidemiology, pathogenicity, mode of transmission, and diagnosis, *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 26:16, 1977.

Zierdt CH: Blastocystis hominis past and future, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 4:61, 1991.

Zimmerman SK, Needham CA: Comparison of conventional stool concentration and preserved-smear methods with Merifluor Cryptosporidium/Giardia direct immunofluorescence assay and ProSpecT Giardia EZ microplate assay for detection of Giardia lamblia, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:1942, 1995.

CHAPTER 64

SPECIMEN COLLECTION AND HANDLING FOR DIAGNOSIS OF INFECTIOUS DISEASES

Kathleen G. Beavis, Angella Charnot-Katsikas

GENERAL PRINCIPLES, 1284
Timing of Specimen Collection, 1284
Specimen Volume, 1284
Specimen Collection, 1284
Specimen Transport, 1285
Unacceptable Specimens, 1285
Standard Precautions, 1285
Referral Testing, 1285

BLOOD, 1285
Specimen Collection, 1285
Appropriate Timing for Detection of Bacteremia and Fungemia, 1286
Specimen Volume, 1286
Specimen Draws, 1286
Recovery of Microorganisms, 1286
Blood Culture Systems, 1286
Detection of Rarely Encountered or Fastidious Bacteria, 1287
Detection and Notification of Positive Cultures, 1287
Detection of Viruses, 1287
Detection of Parasites, 1287

BODY FLUIDS, 1288
Cerebrospinal Fluid, 1288
Other Body Fluids, 1289

TISSUES, 1289
Specimen Collection and Processing, 1289

EYE, 1290
Conjunctival Specimens, 1290
Corneal Specimens, 1290

RESPIRATORY TRACT, 1290
Nasopharyngeal Specimens, 1290
Throat Specimens, 1291
Sputum and Tracheal Aspirates, 1291
Bronchoscopy Specimens, 1292

URINARY TRACT, 1293

GENITAL TRACT, 1294
Vaginal Secretions, 1294
Endocervical and Urethral Specimens, 1294
Vesicles, 1295
Ulcers, 1295

FECES, 1295
Viruses, 1296
Bacterial Pathogens, 1296
Parasites, 1297

SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS LESIONS, 1297
Vesicles, Bullae, and Pustules, 1297
Cutaneous Ulcers, 1297
Wound Infections and Abscesses, 1298

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1298

KEY POINTS

- Collect specimens from site of infection before initiating therapy.
- Collect adequate volume of sample for testing required.
- Tissue, fluid, or aspirates are always superior to a swab specimen. The only exception is collecting culture material from a hard to reach spot such as a throat or cervix.
- Use required collection and transport materials to preserve specimen integrity.
- Communicate clear orders and source information.
- Expedite the transport of specimens to the laboratory, and do not allow them to sit in collection areas.

Appropriate specimen collection, transport, and processing are crucial preanalytical steps in the accurate diagnosis of infectious diseases. Guidelines for specimen handling are discussed in this chapter. General principles are reviewed first, followed by discussion of the most common types of specimens submitted to the clinical microbiology laboratory for testing.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

TIMING OF SPECIMEN COLLECTION

For optimal detection of the pathogens responsible for an infectious disease, specimens should be collected at a time when the likelihood of recovering the suspected agent is greatest. For example, the likelihood of recovering most viruses is greatest in the acute phase of the illness. Specimens for recovery of bacteria should ideally be collected before antimicrobial therapy is started.

SPECIMEN VOLUME

The volume of specimen collected must be adequate for performance of the microbiological studies requested. If insufficient volume is received, the health care worker caring for the patient should be notified; either an additional sample can be obtained, or the physician must prioritize the requests.

Very little specimen is obtained with a swab and much of the specimen is retained within the swab tip. Swabs should not be used as collection devices unless the specimen source is the throat, cervix, or other difficult to reach area. If a swab is used to collect the specimen, a polyester-tipped swab on a plastic shaft is acceptable for most organisms. Calcium alginate should be avoided for collection of samples for viral culture, because it could inactivate herpes simplex virus (HSV); cotton may be toxic to *Neisseria gonorrhoeae;* and wooden shafts should be avoided, because the wood may be toxic to *Chlamydia trachomatis*. Swabs are not optimal for detection of anaerobes, mycobacteria, or fungi, and they should not be used when these organisms are suspected. An actual tissue sample or fluid aspirate is always superior to a swab specimen for the recovery of pathogenic organisms.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION

Specimens should be obtained from the site of infection with minimal contamination from adjacent tissues and organ secretions and, with the exception of stool, should be collected in a sterile container. All specimens should be labeled with the name and identification number of the person

We gratefully acknowledge the contributions of Ann C. Croft and Gail L. Woods, who authored this chapter in previous editions.

from whom the specimen was collected, the source of the specimen, and the date and time it was collected.

SPECIMEN TRANSPORT

After collection, specimens should be placed in a biohazard bag and transported to the laboratory as soon as possible. If a delay is unavoidable, urine, sputum and other respiratory specimens, stool, and specimens for detection of *C. trachomatis* or viruses should be refrigerated to prevent overgrowth of normal flora. Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and other body fluids, blood, and specimens collected for recovery of *N. gonorrhoeae* should be held at room temperature, because refrigeration adversely affects recovery of potential pathogens from these sources.

UNACCEPTABLE SPECIMENS

Each laboratory director must establish criteria for rejecting specimens unsuitable for culture. Most clinical microbiologists agree that the following specimens should be rejected:

- Any specimen received in formalin
- 24-hour sputum collections
- Specimens in containers from which the sample has leaked
- Specimens that have been inoculated onto agar plates that have dried out or are outdated
- Specimens contaminated with barium, chemical dyes, or oily chemicals
- Foley catheter tips
- Duplicate specimens (except blood cultures) received in a 24-hour period
- Blood catheter tips submitted for patients without concomitant positive blood culture

The following specimens should be rejected for anaerobic culture:

- Gastric washings
- Urine other than suprapubic aspirate
- Stool (except for recovery of *Clostridium difficile* for epidemiologic studies or for diagnosis of bacteria associated with food poisoning)
- Oropharyngeal specimens, except deep tissue samples obtained during a surgical procedure
- Sputum
- Swabs of ileostomy or colostomy sites
- Superficial skin specimens

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS

Safety is the responsibility of the laboratory director and, per the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA), cannot be delegated to others. The laboratory director should collaborate with infection control, institutional safety committees, environmental services, engineering, and others within the hospital and department to ensure that there are current and necessary policies and procedures, engineering controls, personal protective equipment, and a trained work force. The laboratory director is also responsible for making sure the policies and procedures are followed. Specimen processing can have additional challenges because this workforce often has the least amount of formal technical education.

Universal Precautions were designed to protect workers from infectious substances in blood and body fluids. Body Substance Isolation Precautions were designed to protect workers from transmission of organisms from moist body surfaces. In 1996, the U.S. Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee unified these into "Standard Precautions." As described in *Biosafety in Microbiological and Biomedical Laboratories* (BMBL), Standard Precautions apply to (1) blood; (2) all body fluids, secretions, and excretions except sweat, regardless of whether or not they contain visible blood; (3) non-intact skin, and (4) mucous membranes (Wilson & Chosewood, 2009). Standard Precautions must be followed when handling all specimens. A risk assessment should be performed in each laboratory area; it will detail the particular risks with each procedure. The safety recommendations for engineering controls, personal protective equipment, and work practices can be tailored to the risk (Callihan et al, 2014). Appropriate barriers are used to prevent exposure of skin and mucous membranes to the specimen. Gloves and a lab coat must be worn at all times when handling patient specimens, and masks, goggles (or working behind a plastic shield), and impermeable gowns or aprons must be worn when there is a risk for splashes or droplet formation. Optimally, all specimen containers but, at a minimum, those containing respiratory secretions and those submitted specifically for detection of mycobacteria or fungi, should be opened in a biological safety cabinet. Specimens collected for virus isolation should be handled in a biological safety cabinet to prevent contamination of the cell cultures.

REFERRAL TESTING

When specimens or cultures must be shipped to a reference laboratory, they must be packaged according to dangerous goods shipping guidelines (see International Air Transport Association website, available at: http://www.iata.org/whatwedo/cargo/dgr/Pages/index.aspx). Specimens must be limited to no more than 40 mL. Cultures of bacteria and fungi should be grown on solid media in tubes. The cap of the primary container (tube or vial) should be sealed with waterproof tape and inserted into a second container, surrounded by sufficient packing material to absorb the entire volume of the culture or specimen if the primary container were to leak or break. If several primary tubes are placed in a second container, they must be either individually wrapped or separated so as to prevent contact between them, and there must be secondary packaging, which must be leakproof. The second container should be capped and placed in a shipping container made of corrugated fiberboard or hard plastic. An itemized list of contents must be enclosed between the secondary and outer packaging. The secondary and outer containers should be of sufficient strength to maintain their integrity at temperature and air pressures to which they will be subjected. If a specimen must be shipped on dry ice (which is considered to be a hazardous material), it must be marked "Dry ice, frozen medical specimen." The dry ice should be placed outside the second container with the packing material in such a way that the container does not become loose inside the outer container as the dry ice evaporates. All infectious shipping packages must be labeled with an official label containing the address and contents as well as the name and telephone number of the person responsible for the shipment. All laboratorians who package and ship materials that are known or reasonably expected to contain a pathogen must have documentation of training. There are several commercial and government-based resources for training.

BLOOD

Detection of blood-borne pathogens is one of the most important functions of the microbiology laboratory. Culture of blood is essential in identifying bacteria responsible for bacteremia, sepsis, infections of native and prosthetic valves, suppurative thrombophlebitis, mycotic aneurysms, and infections of vascular grafts. Blood cultures also are useful in diagnosing invasive or disseminated infections caused by certain bacteria or fungi, especially *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Candida* spp., *Fusarium* spp., and *Histoplasma capsulatum*. Parasites are detected in blood by microscopic examination of peripheral smears. In general, blood should be collected for culture before beginning antimicrobial therapy when any one or a combination of the following are present: fever (38° C or greater), hypothermia (36° C or lower), leukocytosis (especially with a left shift), granulocytopenia, or hypotension.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION

Timely detection and accurate identification of organisms in the blood depend on appropriate collection, transport, and processing of the specimen. Germane to the detection of all microorganisms in the blood is the phlebotomy technique. To minimize contamination of blood specimens by skin flora, the venipuncture site should be prepared with a bactericidal agent. The skin first is cleaned with alcohol (70% isopropyl or ethyl alcohol) and then with a 1% to 2% iodine solution, an iodophor, or chlorhexidine. For maximum antisepsis, the area should dry for 1 to 2 minutes before venipuncture of the selected peripheral vein. The phlebotomist needs to understand that the skin flora are not killed instantaneously and the 1- to 2-minute wait period will reduce his or her contamination rate. Each set of peripheral blood cultures must be drawn from a separate venipuncture so that if an organism usually regarded as a contaminant is present, the risk for bacteremia from an organism can be evaluated.

Compared to venipuncture, the risk for contamination is doubled when blood cultures are drawn from an indwelling vascular device. Although it might seem advantageous to save the patient the discomfort of a venipuncture, a contaminated blood culture can cause even more diagnostic cultures, unnecessary antibiotics, and a prolonged stay in the hospital. If it is necessary to draw a culture through an intravenous line, another blood culture should be collected simultaneously from a venipuncture to aid in the interpretation of a contaminated line culture (Baron et al, 2005).

APPROPRIATE TIMING FOR DETECTION OF BACTEREMIA AND FUNGEMIA

The optimal time to draw blood for cultures when bacteremia or fungemia is suspected is just before a chill but, because this is not predictable, most blood cultures are collected after the onset of fever and chills. Blood is drawn with a needle and syringe and, without changing needles, is injected directly into bottles of culture media or other blood culture system (Krumholz et al, 1990). The inoculated bottles are immediately inverted several times to ensure mixing, and then they are transported to the laboratory at room temperature as soon as possible after collection. Blood cultures should never be refrigerated.

SPECIMEN VOLUME

In adults with bacteremia, the number of colony-forming units (CFU) per milliliter of blood is frequently low. Therefore, for adults, collecting 20 to 30 mL of blood per culture set is strongly recommended (Ilstrup & Washington, 1983; Washington & Ilstrup, 1986; Cockerill et al, 2004). In infants and children, the concentration of microorganisms in blood is higher, and collection of 1 to 5 mL of blood per culture is adequate.

SPECIMEN DRAWS

Recommendations concerning the number of blood specimens to collect are based on the nature of the bacteremia: *transient*, *intermittent*, or *continuous*. Transient bacteremia follows manipulation of a focus of infection (e.g., an abscess, a furuncle, or cellulitis), instrumentation of a contaminated mucosal surface (as occurs during dental procedures, cystoscopy, urethral catheterization, suction abortion, or sigmoidoscopy), or a surgical procedure in a contaminated site (e.g., transurethral resection of the prostate, vaginal hysterectomy, colon resection, and debridement of infected burns). Transient bacteremia also occurs early in the course of many systemic and localized infections such as meningitis, pneumonia, pyogenic arthritis, and osteomyelitis. Most intermittent bacteremias are associated with an undrained abscess, whereas continuous bacteremia is the hallmark of intravascular infection, such as bacterial endocarditis, mycotic aneurysm, or an infected intravascular catheter. Continuous bacteremia also occurs during the first few weeks of typhoid fever and brucellosis.

The optimal number of blood cultures for detection of bacteremia in patients without endocarditis is controversial. Most authorities agree that two or three 20-mL blood samples drawn over a 24-hour period and equally distributed into aerobic and anaerobic blood culture bottles will detect most bloodstream infections. One investigator demonstrated that 80% of bacteremias were detected with two blood cultures and 96% with three blood cultures. All bacteremias were detected with four blood cultures, but the routine collection of four blood cultures (up to 80 mL of blood) should be weighed against the risk for anemia. (Cockerill et al, 2004). The optimal time interval between cultures is unknown, but 30 to 60 minutes for the first two sets has been suggested, with another one to two sets drawn over the remaining 24 hours if symptoms of septicemia persist (Cockerill et al, 2004). However, if initiation of antimicrobial therapy is deemed urgent, cultures should be collected before therapy is begun, from separate sites within a few minutes.

Organisms such as the coagulase-negative staphylococci, viridans streptococci, *Corynebacterium* species, *Bacillus* species, and *Propionibacterium* species are frequent blood culture contaminants but may also be true pathogens. Collecting two sets of blood cultures per febrile episode helps distinguish probable pathogens from contaminants. If two sets are drawn from different venipuncture sites, the odds of both sets being contaminated by skin flora are very low. If two sets are drawn at the same time and only one set contains a skin contaminant, it is safe to assume that the culture was contaminated during collection. If only one set is drawn and a contaminant is present, it can be difficult to *not* treat the organism, especially if the patient has had recent surgery.

RECOVERY OF MICROORGANISMS

Host factors such as antibodies, complement, phagocytic white blood cells, and antimicrobial agents may impede recovery of microorganisms from blood; therefore, various approaches have been used to counteract these factors. Diluting the blood specimen in broth medium in a 1:10 ratio provides optimal neutralization of the serum bactericidal activity (Washington & Ilstrup, 1986). Incorporating 0.02% to 0.05% sodium polyanethol sulfonate in the blood culture medium inhibits coagulation, phagocytosis, and complement activation, and inactivates aminoglycosides. Methods that counteract the presence of antimicrobial agents include using antibiotic-adsorbent resins or the lysis-centrifugation system.

BLOOD CULTURE SYSTEMS

Several blood culture systems, each with advantages and disadvantages, are available (Baron et al, 2005). Continuously monitored automated detection systems have essentially replaced manual systems. All systems use nutritionally enriched liquid media, which are capable of supporting growth of most bacteria. Traditionally, two bottles, an aerobic and an anaerobic, are inoculated.

Manual Blood Cultures

Two commercial manual blood culture systems are available in the United States. The Septi-Chek system (BBL:BD Diagnostic Systems, Sparks, Md.), consists of an adult or pediatric bottle with broth medium. After inoculation, the cap is replaced with a slide coated on both sides with three different agars. The agar is inoculated by tipping the bottle, allowing the blood-broth mixture to coat the agar media. Colonies on the agar medium are used for identification and susceptibility testing. This system can recover yeasts and aerobic and facultative bacteria, but not anaerobic bacteria (Baron et al, 2005). The Isolator system (Wampole Laboratories, Cranbury, N.J.) is a lysis-centrifugation blood culture system. It consists of a tube containing reagents that inhibit coagulation and the complement cascade, lyse blood cells, and provide a cushion for the microorganisms during centrifugation. Blood is added to the tube, which is inverted several times to prevent clotting and transported to the laboratory as soon as possible. Ideally, the specimen is processed immediately, but processing can be delayed for up to 8 hours without adversely affecting recovery of microorganisms. To process the culture, the tube is centrifuged for 30 minutes at 3000 *g*, the supernatant is discarded, and the sediment is mixed on a vortex mixer and plated onto agar media. Smaller tubes for low-volume samples, from infants and young children, are also available. Advantages of lysis-centrifugation include excellent recovery of *Staphylococcus aureus*, some Enterobacteriaceae, and fungi (especially *H. capsulatum*); the direct availability of colonies for identification and susceptibility testing; and the ability to carry out quantitative cultures. Moreover, this system is flexible because special media can be inoculated to recover organisms with specific growth requirements, such as *Legionella* spp. and mycobacteria. However, the system is labor-intensive, is less likely to recover *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, or anaerobes, and the risk for contamination is increased.

Automated Blood Culture Systems

Three major automated continuously monitoring blood culture systems are available commercially in the United States (Baron et al, 2005). All such systems are much less labor-intensive than the "manual" systems described earlier. Additionally, with these systems the usual incubation period can be shortened from 7 to 5 days (Woods, 1994; Reisner & Woods, 1999). The BacT/ALERT 3D system (bioMerieux, Inc., Lille, France and St. Louis, Mo.) is based on the colorimetric detection of carbon dioxide (CO_2) produced during microbial growth. A CO_2 sensor is bonded to the bottom of each blood culture bottle and is separated from the broth medium by a membrane that is impermeable to most ions and to components of media and blood, but freely permeable to CO_2. Inoculated bottles are placed in cells in the instrument, which provides continuous rocking of both aerobic and anaerobic bottles. If bacteria are present, they generate CO_2, which is released into the broth medium; the pH then decreases, causing the sensor to change color from green to yellow. Color changes are monitored once every 10 minutes by a colorimetric detector. This system supports the growth of aerobic and anaerobic bacteria; bottles are available to support the growth of mycobacteria. This system has received FDA clearance for monitoring bacterial contamination of platelets.

The BACTEC continuous-monitoring system (BD Diagnostics, Sparks, Md.) is based on fluorescent technology. Bonded to the base of each vial is a CO_2 sensor that is impermeable to ions, medium components, and blood but freely permeable to CO_2. If organisms are present, they release CO_2 into the medium; it then diffuses into the sensor matrix and generates hydrogen ions. The subsequent decrease in pH increases the fluorescence output of the sensor, changing the signal transmitted to the optical and electronic components of the instrument. The computer generates growth curves, and data are analyzed according to growth algorithms. Inoculated bottles are placed in individual cells of the

instrument and rocked continuously. Adult and pediatric aerobic and anaerobic bottles are available, as well as a bottle for the recovery of yeasts and mycobacteria. The VersaTREK system (Trek Diagnostic Systems, Cleveland, Ohio) detects growth of organisms in broth by measuring gas consumption and/or gas production. Each inoculated vial is fitted with a disposable connector that contains a recessed needle. The needle penetrates the bottle stopper and connects the bottle headspace to the sensor probe. The sensor monitors changes within the headspace in the consumption and/or production of all gases (CO_2, N_2, and H_2) by growing organisms and creates data points internally in the computer. Media are available to identify aerobic and anaerobic bacteria, including mycobacteria.

DETECTION OF RARELY ENCOUNTERED OR FASTIDIOUS BACTERIA

Detection of some bacteria requires prolonged incubation or special media. For example, when brucellosis is suspected, blood should be collected early in the disease and cultures should be incubated for 2 to 3 weeks, although with the automated systems, *Brucella* spp. often grow in less than 1 week (Bannatyne et al, 1997). Infections with *Borrelia* spp., except *Borrelia burgdorferi* (the etiologic agent of Lyme disease, most commonly diagnosed serologically), are diagnosed by detecting spirochetes in the peripheral blood during febrile periods. Organisms are visualized in wet preparations made by mixing 1 drop of blood with 1 drop of sodium citrate, and examining it with light or dark-field microscopy, and in thin and thick blood films stained with Wright's or Giemsa stains, examined by light microscopy. To isolate *Leptospira interrogans* from blood, a few drops of fresh or anticoagulated blood collected during the first week of illness are added to each of three to four tubes of leptospiral semisolid culture medium (Fletcher's medium or Ellinghausen-McCollough-Johnson-Harris medium). Some clinicians continue to request extended incubation protocols for *Brucella* spp. and other bacteria known as the HACEK group *(Haemophilus*, *Aggregatibacter [formerly Actinobacillus]*, *Cardiobacterium*, *Eikenella*, *Kingella)*. These organisms needed prolonged incubation times when manual methods predominated, but they can be detected during the routine incubation times of the automated instruments.

Two methods may be used to recover mycobacteria from blood specimens. With the lysis-centrifugation technique, (1) a concentrate is prepared, (2) the sediment is inoculated to solid and/or liquid media, and (3) the cultures are incubated for up to 8 weeks. An alternative and perhaps more rapid approach is direct inoculation of the liquid medium developed by the manufacturer of automated and semi-automated broth culture systems specifically for recovery of mycobacteria.

DETECTION AND NOTIFICATION OF POSITIVE CULTURES

Positive blood cultures containing commonly isolated aerobic organisms are usually detected within 12 to 36 hours of incubation. Until recently, the initial report was limited to a Gram stain; identification and susceptibility results could be expected no sooner than 24 to 48 hours after the Gram stain report. Both the FilmArray blood culture identification panel (BioFire Diagnostics, Salt Lake City, Utah) and the Verigene system (Nanosphere, Northbrook, Ill.) use molecular methods to identify over 90% of the organisms in the time when a Gram stain would be reported. They can also identify the presence or absence of mecA, allowing empiric therapy to be tailored. (Bhatti et al, 2014a). The use of Matrix-Assisted Laser Desorption Ionization–Time of Flight Mass Spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS) has shortened the time to identification. Although most laboratories allow for overnight incubation before testing mature colonies, an aliquot of the positive culture can be centrifuged and the pellet inoculated onto prewarmed plates. About 95% of isolates can be identified with the MALDI-TOF after 4 hours of incubation (Bhatti et al, 2014b). Although more labor-intensive, the reagents of this method are much less expensive than the molecular methods. Cultures containing anaerobes are usually not detected for 48 to 72 hours, and identification is not available for 3 to 4 days. Fastidious organisms, such as those found in the HACEK group, may not be detected until 3 to 5 days.

In a small percentage of cases, no organisms will be seen on a Gram stain from a positive blood culture. It is vey important to inoculate and monitor media in these cases. *Brucella* spp. can be difficult for an inexperienced eye to note on Gram stain; the colonies will be visible on solid media a few days later. Conversely, some organisms such as the nutritionally deficient streptococci will be visible on Gram stain but not on routine media. These organisms will grow on chocolate agar or sheep blood agar with a *Staphylococcus aureus* streak (Baron et al, 2005).

DETECTION OF VIRUSES

With regard to viruses, blood specimens are most commonly collected to monitor response of infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis C virus (HCV), hepatitis B virus (HBV), or cytomegalovirus (CMV) to antiviral therapy by using quantitative polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to measure viral load. Such assays are commercially available for each of these viruses, and in all cases manufacturer's guidelines for specimen collection and transport should be followed. For HIV and HCV, blood specimens also may be collected for genotyping (commercial assays are available), and PCR (qualitative or quantitative PCR) generally is used to confirm an initial positive HCV antibody result. As with viral load, manufacturer's guidelines regarding specimen collection and transport should be followed.

In addition to assessing response to antiviral therapy, measuring viral load in a blood specimen is useful for monitoring disease and for diagnosis of disease in specific situations. In immunocompromised patients, especially transplant recipients but also patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), determining the level of CMV deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) in blood is used to predict those at high risk for development of CMV disease and direct the initiation of preemptive therapy (Herrmann et al, 2004; Kalpoe et al, 2004; Meyer-Koenig et al, 2004; Lugert et al, 2009). Monitoring the level of Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) DNA in serum or plasma by quantitative PCR is indicated in transplant recipients at high risk for EBV-associated lymphoproliferative disease (Rowe et al, 2001). Quantitative PCR from whole blood or peripheral blood mononuclear cells is useful for diagnosis of disease due to HHV-6 or HHV-7 in transplant recipients and is the test of choice for diagnosing disease caused by parvovirus B19 in immunosuppressed patients or in the fetus. If a commercial quantitative PCR assay is used, guidelines for specimen collection and transport should be followed. If, on the other hand, an assay developed and validated in-house is used, guidelines published by that laboratory should be followed.

DETECTION OF PARASITES

Blood specimens are useful for diagnosis of malaria, babesiosis, trypanosomiasis, and some filariasis (Rosenblatt, 2009). Specimens should be collected in tubes with anticoagulant and transported promptly to the laboratory. If smears must be sent to a reference laboratory, they should follow the reference laboratory's instructions for fixation soon after they are made. The techniques used in the laboratory for detecting the aforementioned parasites are the same and are discussed here in order of the simplest to the most complicated.

Standard Precautions need to be used when preparing smears and reading fresh (unfixed) smears. Additional fixation time in methanol could be recommended depending on the patient's travel history. The simplest technique for detecting parasites in a sample of blood is the direct mount, prepared by placing 1 drop of blood on a glass slide, covering it with a cover glass, and examining it immediately. Direct mounts are excellent for diagnosis of trypanosomiasis or filariasis because the trypomastigotes and the microfilariae easily can be seen moving, often with low or medium power. Stained smears make the definitive diagnosis.

The thin smear, made as for hematologic work and stained in a similar manner, is the standard preparation for speciating *Plasmodium* spp., *Babesia*, *Trypanosoma*, and microfilaria. Thin smears for parasitologic work are fixed and then preferably stained manually with Giemsa stain, but automated hematologic staining is adequate. Smears are first scanned at low power to detect microfilariae, which are large objects (between 100 and 200 µm) and easily seen, usually at the lateral edges of the smear. After they are located, microfilariae should be studied under oil immersion for identification. Following scanning with low power, the smear is examined with a high dry objective, searching for trypanosomes; and finally under oil immersion, to find and identify *Plasmodium*, *Babesia*, and *Trypanosoma*.

Thick smears are useful for detecting all the parasites mentioned earlier, and are part of the minimum laboratory workup for their diagnosis. A drop of blood is placed on a clean glass slide and, with the corner of another slide, is gently spread to cover 1 cm square. The preparation is allowed to dry and without fixation is stained with Giemsa stain, allowing for its dehemoglobinization.

TABLE 64-1
Infectious Meningitis Syndromes

Syndrome	Onset/Duration	Probable Pathogens
Acute	<24 hours	Pyogenic bacteria
Subacute	1-7 days	Enteroviruses, pyogenic bacteria
Chronic	Persisting at least 4 weeks	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* *Treponema pallidum* *Brucella* spp. *Leptospira interrogans* *Borrelia burgdorferi* *Cryptococcus neoformans* *Coccidioides immitis* *Histoplasma capsulatum*

TABLE 64-2
Common Bacterial Causes of Acute Meningitis by Age

Age	Organisms
Neonates-3 months	Group B streptococcus *Escherichia coli* *Listeria monocytogenes** *Streptococcus pneumoniae*
4 months-6 years†	*Streptococcus pneumoniae*
6-45 years	*Neisseria meningitidis*
>45 years	*Streptococcus pneumoniae* *Listeria monocytogenes* Group B streptococcus

*May cause meningitis in immunocompromised individuals in all age groups.
†Incidence of meningitis due to *Haemophilus influenzae* type b in the United States has declined dramatically as a result of vaccination.

TABLE 64-3
Normal Cerebrospinal Fluid Parameters and Changes in Infectious Meningitis

Condition	WBCs (cells/μL)*	Protein (mg/dL)	Glucose (mg/dL)
Normal	5 (lymphocytes)	14-45	45-100 (⅔ serum)
Meningitis Acute/subacute bacterial	>500 (PMNs)	↑	↓
Chronic bacterial	200-2000	↑	↓
Tuberculous, fungal	(lymphocytes)	↑	↓
Enteroviral	200-2000 (PMNs early; lymphocytes later)	↑	Normal

↑, Increased; ↓, decreased; *PMNs,* polymorphonuclear leukocytes; *WBCs,* white blood cells.
*Cell type listed usually predominates.

BODY FLUIDS

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

CSF is collected to diagnose meningitis and, less frequently, viral encephalitis. Infectious meningitis, a medical emergency requiring early therapy to prevent death or serious neurologic sequelae, is divided into acute, subacute, and chronic clinical syndromes, based on duration of symptoms. Potential pathogens are listed in Table 64-1. Enteroviruses are the agents most commonly responsible for meningitis, and they should be considered first in the differential diagnosis of meningitis in a child or adolescent during the late summer and early fall. The pyogenic bacteria responsible for meningitis vary with the age of the affected individual (Table 64-2).

Sample Collection and Transport

CSF is usually obtained by lumbar spinal puncture, but sometimes it is aspirated from the ventricles or collected from a shunt. As when collecting blood for culture, careful skin antisepsis is essential for collection of CSF, which typically is submitted to the laboratory in three or occasionally four tubes. Suggestions for tests performed on fluid in each tube are as follows: tube 1, protein and glucose; tube 2, preparation of smears to stain with the Gram stain or other stains and for culture; tube 3, cell counts; and, if indicated, tube 4, special tests such as the cryptococcal antigen, serologic test for syphilis, molecular tests or other serologic studies, and cytology. The parameters of normal CSF and the usual changes that occur during meningitis caused by different organisms are listed in Table 64-3.

CSF should be transported promptly to the laboratory and processed as rapidly as possible. If a brief delay in processing is unavoidable, the specimen should be held at room temperature unless viral culture is requested, in which case a portion (preferably 1 mL but no less than 0.5 mL) may be refrigerated for a short time. Specimen processing differs for bacteria, fungi, viruses, and parasites and is discussed separately for each group of organisms.

Sample Processing for Bacterial and Fungal Culture

Processing CSF for routine bacterial culture includes concentration (if 1 mL or more of specimen is received), preparation of a smear by cytocentrifugation for staining with Gram stain, and culture. Concentrate the fluid by centrifugation at a minimum of 1500 *g* for 15 minutes. The supernatant is decanted into a sterile tube, leaving about 0.5 mL of sediment and fluid, which is thoroughly mixed on a vortex mixer or by forcefully aspirating up and down into a sterile pipette.

Diagnosis of chronic bacterial meningitis requires specific requests because the CSF is handled differently for each entity. To diagnose brucellosis, the CSF is processed as described earlier for routine bacterial culture, but the media are incubated for 2 to 3 weeks. For leptospirosis, *Leptospira interrogans* may be cultured from the CSF during the first few weeks of illness. Special media (listed in the "Blood" section earlier in the chapter) are inoculated with a few drops of CSF and incubated as outlined in Chapter 57. The diagnosis of neurosyphilis is based on the following findings in the CSF: pleocytosis, elevated protein concentration, and a positive Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL) test (CSF VDRL), which currently is the only useful method for detecting antibodies to *Treponema pallidum* in the CSF (see Chapter 59). The CSF VDRL test is indicated only if the person has a positive serum test for syphilis (Albright et al, 1991b). The specimen should be refrigerated until it is tested. Involvement of the central nervous system by *B. burgdorferi* (Lyme disease) also is diagnosed serologically, by detection of specific IgM and IgG antibodies in CSF and serum.

Processing CSF for detection of mycobacteria is indicated only for samples with pleocytosis, or decreased glucose, or elevated protein values (Albright et al, 1991a). For optimal recovery, culture of at least 5 mL is recommended. The fluid is centrifuged at 3000 to 3600 *g* for 30 minutes, the supernatant is decanted, and the sediment is thoroughly mixed on a vortex mixer and used to prepare smears for staining and to inoculate appropriate media (see Chapter 60). Nucleic acid amplification, using a modification of a commercial assay or an assay developed in-house and validated, may be useful for direct detection of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex in CSF (Cloud et al, 2004).

Processing CSF for detection of fungi is similar to that described for detecting bacteria. Organisms are concentrated by filtration or by centrifugation. A cytocentrifuge preparation or a smear of the sediment stained with Gram stain is examined, and appropriate media (e.g., brain-heart infusion or SABHI agar without antibiotics) are inoculated for culture.

Additional Diagnostic Tests

In addition to smears stained with Gram stain and bacterial culture, the supernatant of a centrifuged specimen or the original fluid may be used to perform latex agglutination tests for detection of antigens of *Streptococcus agalactiae*, *S. pneumoniae*, some serotypes of *Neisseria meningitidis*, *Escherichia coli* (the K1 capsular antigen cross-reacts with that of *N. meningitidis* type B), and *H. influenzae* type b. These latex tests are most useful in diagnosing partially treated meningitis (Bhisitkul et al, 1994; Maxson et al, 1994) and in confirming a positive Gram-stained smear. The routine use of latex tests should be discouraged because, compared with smears stained with Gram stain, their sensitivity is not significantly greater and they are much more expensive (Kiska et al, 1995; Perkins et al, 1995). Although the value of latex tests for diagnosis of bacterial meningitis is questionable, an immunochromatographic test that detects the C polysaccharide cell wall antigen, which is common to all serotypes of *S. pneumoniae*, has been shown to be very useful for rapid diagnosis of pneumococcal meningitis when testing CSF (Werno & Murdoch, 2008).

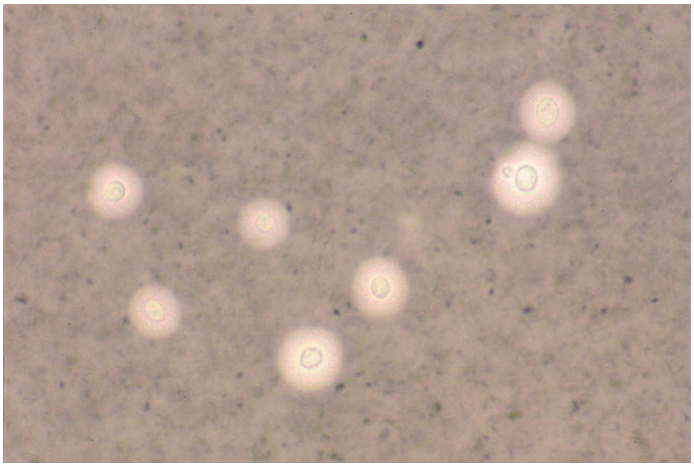


Figure 64-1 India ink preparation of cerebrospinal fluid showing encapsulated yeast forms of *Cryptococcus neoformans*. (400×.)

Two types of rapid tests are available for diagnosis of meningitis caused by *C. neoformans:* those specific for the capsular antigen (latex agglutination and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay [ELISA]) and the nonspecific India ink preparation, which allow visualization of encapsulated yeast cells (Fig. 64-1). The sensitivity of the India ink stain, performed by mixing 1 drop of CSF sediment with 1 drop of India ink (available at art supply stores), is low, except in HIV-infected persons. Therefore, the cryptococcal latex agglutination test or the ELISA, both of which are highly specific and have sensitivities of more than 90%, is recommended for diagnosis. Supernatant of a centrifuged specimen or unspun CSF can be used for these latter two tests. False-positive latex agglutination results occur, due to the presence of *Trichosporon asahii* or to the introduction of trace amounts of condensation from agar into the test fluid. To avoid the latter problem, the latex test should be performed before culture or, better, on a separate sample (Heelan et al, 1991).

Sample Processing for Diagnosis of Viral and Parasite Infections

Currently, nucleic acid amplification tests are used most often for diagnosis of viral infections of the central nervous system. Other diagnostic methods are conventional cell culture (primarily for detection of enteroviruses, although PCR is preferred) and serologic tests for viruses that cause encephalitis (western equine, eastern equine, Venezuelan equine, St Louis, Japanese, and La Crosse and West Nile).

CSF is occasionally sent to the laboratory for diagnosis of African trypanosomiasis (*Trypanosoma gambiense* and *Trypanosoma rhodesiense*) or infection with free-living amebae (*Naegleria fowleri* and *Acanthamoeba* spp.). Once the specimen is received in the laboratory, it should be processed immediately. Wet preparations are prepared directly from the specimen and from the sediment, by first shaking the tube gently (a step necessary because the parasites often stick to the wall of the tube) and then centrifuging the specimen at 250 *g* for 10 minutes. Preparations are examined under the microscope with the condenser in a low position to allow visualization of trophozoites or, preferably, by phase contrast microscopy.

Cultures of free-living amebae from CSF are done on nonnutrient agar plates covered with a suspension of *E. coli* or *Enterobacter aerogenes*. The fluid is centrifuged at 250 *g* for 10 minutes, the supernatant is removed with a sterile pipette, and the sediment is mixed with 0.5 mL of saline solution and poured at the center of the plate. The culture is incubated at 37° C and examined for amebae daily for 10 days using a microscope, under a 10× objective (Martinez & Visvesvara, 1991).

OTHER BODY FLUIDS

Fluid is collected from the pericardial, thoracic, or peritoneal cavity, or from joint spaces, by aspirating with a needle and syringe. A volume of 1 to 5 mL is adequate for isolating most bacteria, but 10 to 15 mL is optimal for recovery of mycobacteria and fungi, which are generally present in low numbers. Moreover, to diagnose peritonitis associated with chronic ambulatory peritoneal dialysis, collection of at least 50 mL of fluid may improve recovery of the responsible pathogen (Dawson et al, 1985). To transport the fluid, it is aspirated into a sterile container and delivered promptly to the laboratory. Alternatively, peritoneal fluid may be directly inoculated into blood culture bottles at the patient's bedside; however, submission of fluid in blood culture bottles eliminates the possibility of direct Gram staining and delays the identification and susceptibility testing of any pathogens isolated. Clinicians should be advised to send fluid in a sterile container as well as in blood culture bottles to allow for the performance of a Gram stain and faster identification if the culture is positive.

Enteroviruses, primarily Coxsackie viruses A and B, are among the most common causes of infectious pericarditis. These viruses may be detected in pericardial fluid by conventional cell culture but, because they are not recovered in all cases, collection of throat washings and stool (which are more likely to yield the virus), in addition to pericardial fluid, is strongly recommended for virus isolation from persons with suspected enteroviral pericarditis. Other viruses (HSV, varicella zoster virus [VZV], CMV, EBV, HBV, mumps virus, and influenza virus) are infrequent agents of pericarditis and usually are not detected in pericardial fluid.

Sample Processing for Bacterial Culture

Processing fluid from body cavities for detection of bacteria involves preparing a smear for Gram stain and inoculating appropriate media for culture. As mentioned earlier, the sample may be inoculated into blood culture bottles at the bedside, although this is not optimal, or it may be processed in the laboratory. In the laboratory, the fluid is centrifuged at 1500 to 2500 *g* for 20 to 30 minutes. The supernatant is removed, leaving about 0.5 mL of fluid in addition to the sediment, which is mixed thoroughly and then used to prepare smears and inoculate media. Alternatively, a small volume of noncloudy, nonviscous fluid (about 0.1 mL) may be removed before centrifugation and used to prepare a cytocentrifuged smear.

Fluid specimens submitted for detection of mycobacteria are processed as described earlier for CSF. Fluids for fungal culture should be concentrated by centrifugation as described for bacteria. The supernatant is removed, leaving 1.5 to 2.0 mL, in which the sediment is thoroughly mixed. A smear of the sediment is prepared for staining with Gram or Calcofluor white. Ideally, 0.5 to 1.0 mL of sediment is inoculated to primary fungal planting media (as for CSF), but lesser volumes are acceptable.

Parasitologic Examination

Body fluids are rarely collected for detection of parasites; however, *Entamoeba histolytica* may be found in the pericardial, pleural, or peritoneal cavity as a result of rupture of an abscess of the liver (into the peritoneal, pleural, or pericardial cavity) or of the lungs (into the pleural or pericardial cavity) or to perforation of amebic ulcers (into the peritoneal cavity). Hydatid cysts are infrequently diagnosed by examination of body cavity fluid, also due to rupture of a cyst into a viscus contiguous to the cavity in question. The fluid collected is usually clear and contains hydatid sand (see Chapter 62) but rarely is turbid because of superimposed bacterial infection. Uncommonly, in individuals with a filarial infection, examination of wet preparations of a body cavity fluid may demonstrate the microfilariae; in patients with *Strongyloides* hyperinfection, larvae may be detected in body cavity fluids.

TISSUES

Tissue specimens obtained surgically are procured at great expense and at considerable risk to the patient; therefore it behooves the surgeon to obtain an amount of material that is adequate for both histopathologic and microbiological examination. Swabs are rarely adequate for this purpose. The histopathology of the lesion serves not only to differentiate between infection and malignancy but also to distinguish between a suppurative and a granulomatous process. In some cases, special stains are helpful in establishing the etiology of the process. In chronic lesions, the differential diagnosis includes disease due to actinomycetes, brucellas, mycobacteria, and fungi, any one of which may be present only in small numbers, again emphasizing the need for obtaining adequate samples for examination and culture.

SPECIMEN COLLECTION AND PROCESSING

Tissue obtained surgically for culture should be placed into a sterile, wide-mouthed, screw-capped container. As a general rule, tissue should be bisected aseptically by the surgeon in the operating room, and material representative of the pathologic process should be submitted for both histopathologic and microbiological examination. Good communication between anatomic pathologist and microbiologist is important, especially

in cases of fever of unknown origin for which an exploratory laparotomy is being performed and multiple biopsy specimens are taken.

Tissue received in the laboratory is finely minced with sterile scissors or scalpels, added to a small volume of broth, and then rendered homogeneous either in a tissue grinder, mortar and pestle, or Stomacher to provide a 20% suspension. This suspension is used to inoculate all of the necessary culture media and is then stored under refrigeration for at least 2 weeks before being discarded.

EYE

CONJUNCTIVAL SPECIMENS

Conjunctival scrapings or swab specimens are collected to determine the etiologic agent of conjunctivitis. Bacteria are the most common etiologic agents of infectious conjunctivitis, and those most frequently implicated are *S. pneumoniae* and *Staphylococcus aureus* in adults; and *H. influenzae*, *S. pneumoniae*, and *S. aureus* in children. Trachoma, caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*, is a leading cause of blindness worldwide. *C. trachomatis* also may cause inclusion conjunctivitis in newborns and, less commonly, in adults. Viruses are responsible for about 15% to 20% of cases of acute infectious conjunctivitis, and in the United States, most epidemics of viral conjunctivitis (pinkeye) are caused by adenoviruses or herpes simplex virus. Rarely, parasites are causes of conjunctivitis.

Specimen Collection and Processing

Conjunctival cells are obtained from the superior and inferior tarsal conjunctiva by using a swab moistened with broth or a sterile platinum spatula. Ideally, smears are prepared and, if a bacterial or fungal infection is suspected, culture media are inoculated directly by the individual collecting the sample. If direct preparation of smears and inoculation of media is not possible, swab specimens may be collected. Smears should be air-dried and promptly transported, with the inoculated media, to the laboratory. If viral culture is requested, a second sample (swab or scrapings) is collected, placed in viral transport medium, and delivered promptly to the laboratory, or refrigerated for a short time and then transported on wet ice. A rapid diagnosis may be provided by direct or indirect immunofluorescent staining of smears of conjunctival cells with virus-specific antibodies, but cell culture is the most sensitive method for detecting potential viral pathogens and always should be done.

To detect *C. trachomatis*, a smear prepared directly from conjunctival scrapings may be stained with Giemsa stain and examined for epithelial cells with basophilic intracytoplasmic inclusions diagnostic of *C. trachomatis*, or preferably with monoclonal antibodies, which are more sensitive and specific than Giemsa. For optimal results with the direct fluorescent antibody test, the collection kit provided by the manufacturer should be used (see Chapter 56). The swab is rolled across the surface of the glass slide provided, the material is fixed, and the slide is transported promptly to the laboratory and held at room temperature or refrigerated for a short time. Slides are stained according to the manufacturer's directions and examined with a fluorescent microscope for elementary bodies (see Chapter 56). Specimens containing fewer than 10 columnar or metaplastic squamous cells are considered inadequate, and results should be reported as inconclusive, with an explanation, and another specimen should be requested. Culture is the reference method for detection of *C. trachomatis* and should be performed when a diagnosis of chlamydial conjunctivitis is strongly suspected and the direct fluorescent antibody test is negative.

CORNEAL SPECIMENS

Corneal scrapings and biopsy specimens are useful in determining the etiologic agent of keratitis, an infection that can potentially produce loss of vision and requires immediate attention. Bacteria account for 65% to 90% of cases of keratitis, and in the United States, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Moraxella* spp. are most frequently implicated. Contamination of contact lens storage cases is a predisposing factor for keratitis; outbreaks have infrequently been caused by *Fusarium* spp. and *Acanthamoeba*. Viral keratitis is most often associated with sun exposure, stress, and illness and is most commonly caused by recurrent herpes simplex virus type 1; varicella-zoster virus, Epstein-Barr virus, and the adenoviruses are less frequent causes. Postsurgical infections can be due to *S. aureus*, coagulase-negative staphylococci, and the *Mycobacterium chelonae/Mycobacterium abscessus* group. If keratitis follows a traumatic event, the laboratory should culture for environmental contaminants such as *Nocardia* spp., molds, and *P. aeruginosa*, in addition to the organisms often present as normal flora, such as *S. aureus*, coagulase-negative staphylococci, *S. pneumoniae*, and *Propionibacterium* spp. (Gray et al, 2011).

Specimen Collection and Transport

Corneal scrapings are collected with a sterile platinum spatula and are used for preparation of smears by directly transferring them to glass slides for staining, and for inoculation to appropriate media for culture. If a viral culture is requested, scrapings should be placed directly into viral transport media and delivered promptly to the laboratory or refrigerated for a short time and transported on wet ice. Frequently, the conjunctiva and the eyelids of the involved and the uninvolved eye are cultured concomitantly to determine the normal flora, useful in assessing the results of the corneal cultures. When the culture of scrapings of a suspicious corneal ulcer is negative, a superficial keratectomy or corneal biopsy specimen may be obtained by the ophthalmologist, an approach especially useful for detection of fungi and *Acanthamoeba*.

RESPIRATORY TRACT

NASOPHARYNGEAL SPECIMENS

The explosion of rapid molecular methods for the diagnosis of respiratory infections has resulted in the closure of many traditional viral culture laboratories. The FilmArray Respiratory Panel (Salt Lake City, Utah) simultaneously detects 20 viral and bacterial targets in just over 1 hour. Its ease of use has moved diagnosis from a specialized bacteriology or virology laboratory to the specimen-processing area. Nasopharyngeal aspirates, washings, and swab specimens are collected predominantly for diagnosis of viral respiratory infections but also pneumonia due to *C. trachomatis* or *Chlamydophila pneumoniae*, pertussis, and rarely diphtheria. Specimens from the nose also are used to identify carriers of methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA).

Specimen Collection, Transport, and Processing

Nasopharyngeal aspirates and washings are superior to swabs for recovery of viruses, but swabs frequently are submitted because they are more convenient. Washings or swab specimens are collected for detection of *Bordetella pertussis;* a swab is the preferred specimen for *C. trachomatis*, *C. pneumoniae*, and *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*. An aspirate is collected with a plastic tube (e.g., one used to feed premature infants) attached to a 1-mL syringe or a suction catheter with a mucus trap. A wash is obtained with a rubber suction bulb by instilling and withdrawing 3 to 7 mL of sterile phosphate-buffered saline. To collect nasopharyngeal cells with a swab, all mucus from the nasal cavity is removed, and then a small flexible nasopharyngeal swab is inserted along the nasal septum to the posterior pharynx and rotated against the mucosa several times.

To detect viruses, nasopharyngeal specimens are placed into an appropriate transport medium, with or without antibiotics, and transported promptly to the laboratory or stored briefly in the refrigerator and packed in ice for transport as soon as possible. Viral detection methods are discussed in more detail in Chapter 55.

For detection of *C. trachomatis*, a nasopharyngeal swab specimen is collected with a polyester-tipped swab, which may be used for culture or for preparation of a smear for direct fluorescent antibody staining. Detection methods are discussed in Chapter 56. For culture of *C. trachomatis* or *C. pneumoniae*, the swab should be placed in an appropriate transport medium and transported to the laboratory as soon as possible or refrigerated for a short time.

To detect *B. pertussis* by culture, inoculation of washings or swab specimens (preferably collected with a calcium alginate swab) at the bedside is optimal. If this is not possible, the sample is placed into sterile casamino broth, transported promptly to the laboratory, and processed within 1 to 2 hours for culture. If the sample must be sent to a reference laboratory for culture, the swab should be inoculated into and left in a solid transport media such as Regan-Lowe or Jones-Kendrick, incubated at 37° C for 48 hours, and then shipped at ambient temperature. The direct fluorescent antibody staining method, which provides a rapid diagnosis but is associated with false-positive and false-negative results (Friedman, 1988), can be performed on a smear prepared from a nasopharyngeal swab or washing. Currently, the recommended medium for culture is Regan-Lowe agar (composed of Oxoid charcoal agar and 10% horse blood and containing cephalexin), rather than the traditional Bordet-Gengou agar (potato infusion agar with 20% sheep blood). However, the most sensitive method for detecting *B. pertussis* is PCR, for which the optimal sample is a nasopharyngeal swab specimen collected with a Dacron swab (alginate fibers and aluminum in the shaft are inhibitory). If the sample must be transported

to a reference laboratory for PCR, the swab should be shipped dry or in saline.

Carriers of MRSA may be detected within a few hours by commercial nucleic acid amplification assays or after 24 to 48 hours using MRSA-specific chromogenic agar media (Tacconelli et al, 2009; Bischof et al, 2009; Bocher et al, 2008). Nasal secretions are collected from the anterior nares with a polyester-tipped swab, which is placed in a tube transport system and promptly delivered to the laboratory. If a nucleic acid amplification assay is used, the specimen must be collected with the swab recommended by the manufacturer.

THROAT SPECIMENS

Throat swabs can be used to diagnose pharyngitis, as well as epiglottitis, gonorrhea, Vincent's angina, and diphtheria. Group A streptococcus (GAS) is the cause of pharyngitis in less than one third of cases, but GAS needs to be identified and treated to prevent acute rheumatic fever, suppurative sequelae, transmission to others, and worsening of signs and symptoms. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* are the other bacterial causes of pharyngitis for which antimicrobial therapy has been demonstrated to be effective. Other streptococci (Group C and Group G) also cause pharyngitis, but the utility of identifying them from culture is controversial. Antibiotics have been given to lessen the duration of symptoms, but controlled studies demonstrating evidence of a clinical response are lacking (Shulman et al, 2012).

Throat swab specimens may also be helpful in determining the etiologic agent of epiglottitis, a rapidly progressing cellulitis with the potential to cause obstruction of the airway (almost always due to *H. influenzae* type b, but occasionally *S. aureus* or *S. pneumoniae*) and in diagnosing gonorrhea, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* pneumonia, diphtheria, and Vincent's angina. Throat washings or swab specimens are useful for detection of viruses shed in oral secretions without causing pharyngitis (HSV, CMV, or enteroviruses).

Specimen Collection and Transport

Throat swab specimens are collected by depressing the tongue with a tongue blade, introducing the swab between the tonsillar pillars and behind the uvula without touching the lateral walls of the buccal cavity, and swabbing back and forth across the posterior pharynx. Swab specimens collected for detection of viruses should be placed in a viral transport medium, and those for detection of bacteria should be placed in a tube transport system containing modified Stuart's medium. Throat washings for diagnosis of viral infections are obtained by gargling with 5 mL of viral transport medium containing antibiotics. Throat washings and swab specimens should be delivered promptly to the laboratory, or refrigerated for a short time if a delay in transport is unavoidable.

Specimen Processing

For diagnosis of group A streptococcal pharyngitis, culture is most sensitive; however, this requires overnight incubation. GAS grows well on sheep blood agar. The hemolysins in GAS produce the characteristic complete hemolysis (beta-hemolysis) of the agar; some of these hemolysins are stable in the presence of oxygen, but others are not. Because some strains have only oxygen-labile hemolysins, the technician plating the specimen should stab the agar a few times to provide anaerobic conditions, allowing hemolysis to develop. Use of a selective medium increases the recovery of *S. pyogenes* by inhibiting overgrowth of normal flora; but because the amount of growth of *S. pyogenes* on selective media at 24 hours often is insufficient for testing, plates may need to be reincubated an additional day before confirmatory testing can be performed. For rapid diagnosis, there are many commercially available point-of-care tests. These tests have a high specificity, so a throat culture does not need to follow a positive result. Their sensitivity is lower; hence the recommendation detailed later that a negative rapid test for strep throat be confirmed with a culture. A commercial direct probe is the most sensitive of the rapid tests, but this test is not usually used as a point-of-care test (Shulman et al, 2012; Waites et al, 2006).

Other rapid, direct tests for group A streptococcus (several are commercially available) are less sensitive (as low as 70%); therefore, if one of these is used, two throat swab specimens should be collected. If the direct test is positive, the second swab may be discarded; but if the direct test is negative in children, a confirmatory culture must be performed using the second swab. In adults, because the incidence of streptococcal infection and the risk for rheumatic fever are low, diagnosis of group A streptococcal pharyngitis on the basis of a rapid, direct test, without confirming a negative result with culture, is an acceptable alternative (Shulman et al, 2012).

To determine the etiologic agent of epiglottitis, a swab specimen should be collected by a physician in a setting where intubation of the patient may be performed immediately if necessary. To detect *N. gonorrhoeae* in the throat, the swab specimen should be inoculated at the bedside or transported to the laboratory within 2 hours and inoculated as soon as possible onto a selective medium, such as modified Thayer-Martin agar. If a delay in processing is unavoidable, the swab should be held at room temperature. For diagnosis of diphtheria, both nasopharyngeal and throat swab specimens are collected and transported to the laboratory immediately. If laboratory personnel are not experienced in the recovery and identification of *C. diphtheriae*, the specimens should be sent in a semisolid transport media (e.g., Amies) to a reference laboratory. A differential inhibitory medium containing potassium tellurite, such as Tinsdale medium, is optimal for cultivating *C. diphtheriae*. This medium, however, is expensive, has a short shelf-life, and is difficult to obtain from commercial vendors; therefore it is seldom used in clinical laboratories. Colistin–naladixic acid blood agar (CNA) is an acceptable alternative for the cultivation of *C. diphtheriae*, but because CNA is not a differential medium, all diphtheroid colony types must be evaluated to exclude *C. diphtheriae* when this agent is suspected. In addition, a sheep blood agar plate should be inoculated and examined for group A streptococci.

Vincent's angina is an acute necrotizing ulcerative tonsillitis that may be caused by *Fusobacterium necrophorum* and other anaerobes. An illness with this clinical presentation may presumptively be called *Vincent's angina* if gram-negative fusiform bacilli and spirochetes are seen in smears prepared from a swab specimen of the ulcerated lesion and stained with Gram stain. Cultures of the involved area are not usually helpful because many species of anaerobes are present in the oral cavity. However, blood cultures should be collected because the illness is commonly accompanied by sepsis.

SPUTUM AND TRACHEAL ASPIRATES

Microbiological studies of sputum (expectorated and induced) and tracheal aspirate specimens are done primarily to determine the etiologic agents of pneumonia. The Infectious Diseases Society of America and the American Thoracic Society have published guidelines for the diagnosis of community-acquired pneumonia. Although routine sputum cultures are of questionable utility in many cases of community-acquired pneumonia, they should be performed if an unusual pathogen is suspected that, if present, would alter the antimicrobial management. Clinical indications such as ICU admission, failure of outpatient therapy, cavitary infiltrates, among others, support the utility of sputum culture (Mandell et al, 2007). Tracheal aspirates represent lower respiratory secretions collected in a Lukens trap from patients with tracheostomies. Patients with tracheostomies rapidly become colonized with Gram-negative bacteria and other potential nosocomial pathogens, and because bacteria colonizing the respiratory tract cannot be differentiated from bacteria causing invasive disease by culture of tracheal aspirates, interpretation of routine culture results is difficult. Culture for *Legionella*, mycobacteria, and fungi must be requested separately from routine culture, as each of these requires special media for cultivation.

Specimen Collection and Transport

Optimally, expectorated sputum is collected early in the morning before eating. The individual rinses his or her mouth with water and then expectorates a specimen, preferably 5 to 10 mL, resulting from a deep cough. If the specimen is being collected for mycobacterial culture, the patient should not rinse his or her mouth before producing a specimen. The environmental mycobacteria that can be found in tap water such as *Mycobacterium gordonae* or *M. avium-intracellulare* could be introduced into the specimen following drinking of tap water. For persons with a nonproductive cough, a specimen may be induced by allowing the individual to breathe aerosolized droplets of a solution of 15% sodium chloride and 10% glycerin for about 10 minutes or until a cough reflex is initiated. Sputum and tracheal aspirate specimens should be delivered promptly to the laboratory or refrigerated for a short time if a delay is unavoidable.

Specimen Processing

Sputum and tracheal aspirates should be screened before they are plated for routine bacterial culture to determine whether they are representative of lower respiratory secretions or of saliva. A smear prepared from a portion of the specimen consisting of purulent material is stained with the Gram stain. In general, specimens with more than 10 epithelial cells per low-power field by screen (Fig. 64-2) are considered to have significant contamination with saliva and should be rejected. Specimens with fewer than 25 epithelial cells and more than 25 neutrophils per low-power field are probably acceptable (Murray & Washington, 1975). The number of

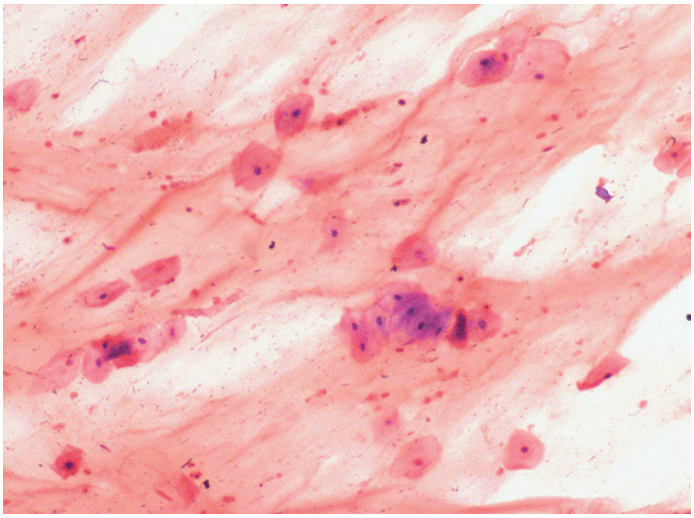


Figure 64-2 **Gram stain of a sputum specimen demonstrating greater than 10 squamous epithelial cells per low-power field, which is unacceptable for culture.** (10×.)

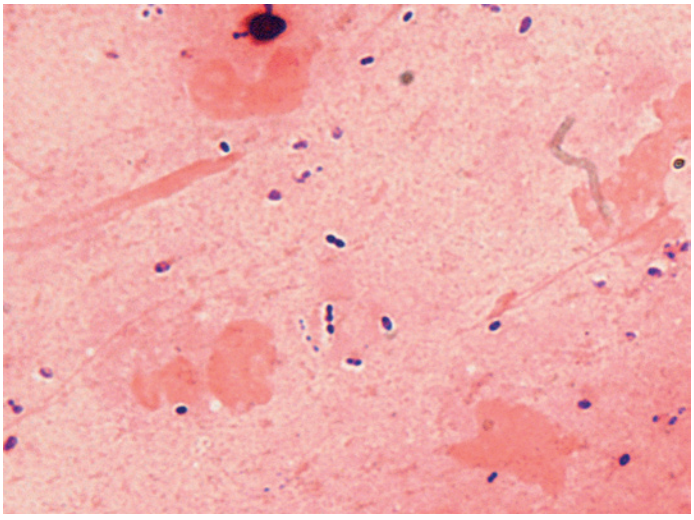


Figure 64-3 **Gram stain of a sputum specimen showing encapsulated, lancet-shaped, gram-positive diplococci, consistent with *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.** (100×.)

neutrophils is not usually considered when determining specimen quality, because the individual from whom the sputum was collected may be neutropenic. Induced and expectorated sputum samples submitted for detection of *M. pneumoniae*, *Legionella* spp., and mycobacteria to assess their quality is not generally required (Ingram & Plouffe, 1994; Havlik & Woods, 1995; McCarter & Robinson, 1996). The Gram-stained smears prepared from specimens that are acceptable for culture are examined under oil immersion to determine the relative amounts of organisms. The quantity of organisms (rare, few, moderate, or many) is estimated for each kind of bacterium (e.g., gram-positive cocci in pairs [Fig. 64-3], chains, or clusters; gram-positive bacilli; gram-negative diplococci; and gram-negative rods), noting whether or not they are intracellular. Tracheal aspirates for which no organisms are observed in the Gram-stained smear should probably be rejected (Gilligan, 1999). Portions of acceptable specimens containing purulent material are inoculated as outlined in Chapter 57. For specimens from persons with cystic fibrosis, also inoculating a medium selective for *Burkholderia cepacia* is recommended.

When Legionnaires' disease is suspected, *Legionella* culture and a rapid, direct test (fluorescent antibody on a respiratory specimen or *Legionella* antigen on a urine specimen) are recommended. Direct fluorescent antibody staining, which can provide results in several hours rather than the 3 to 7 days required for culture, should be used to supplement but not replace culture. PCR also can be performed but is considerably more expensive than culture, direct fluorescent antibody (DFA), or urine antigen testing. Culture is the most sensitive of these methods and should always be performed. Several drops of the specimen should be inoculated onto each selective and nonselective buffered charcoal yeast extract agar plate. Use of the selective agar inhibits the growth of most other respiratory flora; however, some strains of *Legionella* are susceptible to the medium's inhibitory agents. Thus a nonselective plate should always be included.

For optimal detection of mycobacteria in sputum, collection of three samples, at least one of which is an early morning specimen, is recommended. Sputum and other respiratory secretions must be decontaminated to prevent the normal respiratory flora from overgrowing the slower-growing mycobacteria. This process and detection methods are discussed in Chapter 60. All specimens submitted for mycobacterial stain, culture, and molecular testing should be processed in a biological safety cabinet, preferably in an isolated room with negative air pressure (level 3 laboratory).

All specimens submitted for fungal culture should also be handled as described for mycobacteria. The quality of the specimens should be determined by screening with smears stained with Gram stain (as described earlier for bacteria). Acceptable expectorated sputum, induced sputum, and tracheal aspirate specimens should be inoculated onto culture media for recovery of fungi. In general, to culture fungi, media with and without blood enrichment and media containing antimicrobial agents should be used. However, when making media selection, the laboratory director also should consider cost and the types of fungus usually encountered in the patient population served by the laboratory.

BRONCHOSCOPY SPECIMENS

Bronchoalveolar lavage fluid and protected brush specimens are useful for diagnosis of bacterial pneumonia in ventilated patients who have not received antimicrobial therapy, and for detection of opportunistic pathogens in immunocompromised patients with pneumonia (Baselski & Wunderink, 1994; Carroll, 2002). Data indicate that culture of bronchoalveolar lavage specimens is also useful for diagnosis of acute bacterial pneumonia (Baselski & Wunderink, 1994). Although many have advocated quantitative cultures to improve the specificity of cultures from the lower respiratory tract, recent reviews have not shown an improvement in outcome for intubated patients as compared to qualitative cultures (Caliendo et al, 2013). Only protected brush specimens are suitable for anaerobic culture (Baselski & Wunderink, 1994). For culture of *Legionella* spp., sputum specimens are preferable because bronchoalveolar lavage samples are diluted with saline and may contain small amounts of the anesthetic used locally, which inhibits the organism.

Specimen Collection and Transport

The protected brush sample is collected with a small brush that holds 0.001 to 0.01 mL of secretions, placed in a catheter, within a double cannula. The outer cannula has a displaceable polyethylene glycol plug at the tip. To obtain a specimen, the cannula is inserted to the desired area via bronchoscopy, the inner cannula is pushed out, dislodging the protective plug (water-soluble), and the brush is extended even farther, beyond the inner cannula. Once the sample is taken, the brush is pulled back into the inner cannula, and both brush and inner cannula are pulled into the outer cannula to prevent contamination of the brush when the catheter is removed. The brush then is placed in 1 mL of sterile saline or broth. The specimen should be transported immediately to the laboratory and processed as soon as possible. If a delay is unavoidable, the specimen should be stored in the refrigerator.

To collect bronchoalveolar fluid, the tip of the bronchoscope is carefully wedged into an airway lumen. A volume of saline (usually >140 mL) in three to four aliquots is injected through the lumen, sampling an estimated 1 million alveoli. The total volume returned varies based on the volume instilled, but is typically 10 to 100 mL. The transport time to the laboratory should be minimal (<30 minutes) and, once it is in the laboratory, the specimen should be processed as soon as possible. If a delay cannot be avoided, the fluid should be stored in the refrigerator.

Specimen Processing

To process the protected brush specimen, the fluid in which the brush is suspended is agitated on a vortex mixer and the resulting suspension is used for a cytospin preparation and for culture inoculum. The use of quantitative cultures is controversial, and pathologists should review their use with the clinical staff. The intent of this type of culture is to improve the specificity of the culture. Using a calibrated 0.01-mL inoculating loop, the suspension is plated onto appropriate media and carefully streaked for isolation. Colony counts of more than 1000 CFU/mL of potential pathogens (corresponding to 10^6 organisms/mL of the original specimen) appear

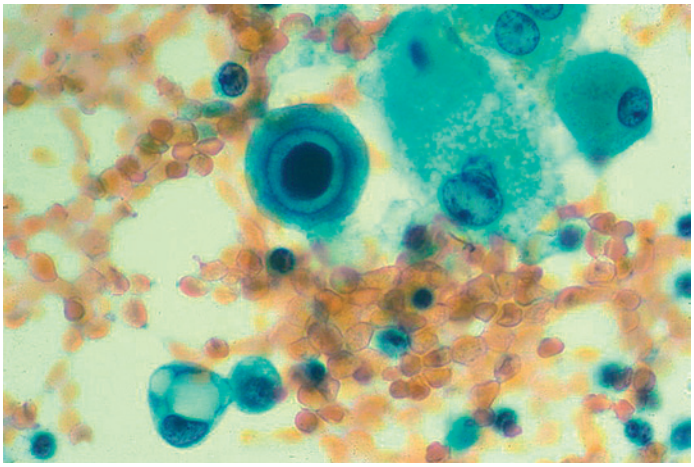


Figure 64-4 **Cytologic preparation of bronchoalveolar lavage fluid shows an enlarged cell with intranuclear and intracytoplasmic inclusions, consistent with cytomegalovirus.** (Papanicolaou stain, 250×.) (Courtesy of Vicki J. Schnadig, MD, Department of Pathology, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, Tex.)

to correlate with infection (Baselski & Wunderink, 1994). The bronchoalveolar sample should be examined for small pieces of tissue; if present, they should be placed in a sterile container, kept moist with sterile saline, and processed in addition to the fluid (Sharp et al, 2004). The bronchoalveolar sample is inoculated onto agar media by using a 0.001-mL calibrated inoculating loop (as used for urine cultures, described in the following section). The presence of more than 10,000 CFU/mL of fluid correlates with disease. Staining cytocentrifuge preparations of the fluid with Gram stain is recommended; visualizing one or more bacteria without squamous epithelial cells per oil immersion field strongly suggests acute bacterial pneumonia (Kahn & Jones, 1987; Baselski & Wunderink, 1994).

Processing bronchoalveolar lavage specimens for detection of viruses includes direct microscopic examination and conventional cell culture. Examination of cytocentrifuge preparations stained with Papanicolaou stain allows detection of cytopathic changes, especially useful for diagnosis of CMV pneumonia (Fig. 64-4) (Woods et al, 1990). Cytospin preparations also may be stained with an acid-fast stain; with specific antibodies, such as those for detection of *Legionella* species or *P. jiroveci*; or with nonspecific stains (e.g., silver stain, Calcofluor white, or Giemsa) for detection of *P. jiroveci* or other fungi. For detection of mycobacteria, the specimen should be decontaminated and handled as described in Chapter 60. To recover fungi, the sediment of a centrifuged specimen should be inoculated onto primary fungal media.

URINARY TRACT

The urinary tract above the urethra is sterile in healthy humans, but the urethra is normally colonized with many different bacteria, so urine specimens collected by a noninvasive method (e.g., clean-catch, midstream specimen) become contaminated during their passage. Commensal bacteria are differentiated from potential pathogens by quantitative cultures of urine, a procedure initially promoted by Kass (1956). Originally, growth of $\geq 10^5$ CFU of bacteria per milliliter of urine was considered highly indicative of infection, but this criterion has been modified for different situations. For example, in young, sexually active women with the acute urethral syndrome (dysuria, frequency, and urgency), as few as 10^2 CFU/mL is considered significant in the presence of concomitant pyuria (Stamm et al, 1982). True urinary infections associated with fewer than 10^5 CFU/mL may occur in infants and children; in males; and in persons who are catheterized, were recently treated with antimicrobial agents, drink large amounts of fluids (which dilutes urine), have symptoms and concomitant pyuria, have urinary obstruction, or have pyelonephritis acquired from hematogenous spread (especially infections due to yeast and *S. aureus*). Consequently, proper interpretation of urine culture results requires communication between clinicians and laboratory personnel.

Specimen Collection and Transport

Acceptable methods of urine collection include midstream clean catch (preferably a first-voided morning specimen), catheterization, and suprapubic aspiration. In general, 24-hour urine specimens should be rejected, except when detection of *Schistosoma haematobium* is requested specifically. Most commonly, the midstream flow of a clean-catch urine is collected. For women, the periurethral area and perineum is first cleansed with soapy sterile gauze pads in a front-to-back motion, rinsed with a moistened sterile gauze pad, and dried with a dry sterile gauze pad. For men, cleansing the genital area may not improve the detection of bacteriuria significantly and may not be necessary (Lipsky et al, 1984). During voiding, women should hold the labia apart and men who are not circumcised should hold back the foreskin. The first few milliliters of urine are passed into the toilet bowel or a bedpan, to flush out bacteria normally colonizing the urethra, and the midstream portion is collected in a sterile container with a wide mouth and tightly fitting lid.

Catheterization is associated with the risk for inducing a nosocomial infection and should therefore be restricted to persons who are unable to produce a midstream sample; for example, individuals with an altered sensorium or those unable to void for neurologic or urologic reasons. Using strict aseptic technique, the catheter is inserted into the urethra, the first few milliliters of urine passed are discarded to clear organisms that may have entered the tip of the catheter during placement, and the midportion of the sample is obtained for culture. Urine may be collected from an indwelling catheter by aspirating with a 28-gauge needle and syringe through the rubber connector between the catheter and the collecting tubing, taking care to first disinfect the puncture site. Urine should not be collected from catheter bags, and Foley catheter tips should not be accepted for culture because they almost always are contaminated with urethral organisms.

Suprapubic aspiration is used primarily for neonates. The procedure requires a full bladder; the overlying skin is disinfected, the bladder is punctured above the symphysis pubis with a 22-gauge needle on a syringe, and about 10 mL of urine is aspirated.

All urine specimens should be transported promptly to the laboratory and should be processed within 2 hours after collection. If a delay in transport or processing cannot be avoided, specimens may be refrigerated up to 24 hours. Collection kits containing preservatives to maintain the bacterial population stable for 24 hours at room temperature are commercially available but offer no advantage over refrigeration.

Specimen Processing

Quantitative bacterial culture of a urine specimen is done by inoculating appropriate media (see Chapter 57) with a measured amount of urine, most commonly with a plastic or wire-calibrated loop designed to deliver a known volume. A 0.001-mL loop is used to inoculate all urine specimens except those collected from women with suspected acute urethral syndrome and suprapubic aspirates. Both the latter are inoculated with a 0.01-mL loop. The appropriate loop is inserted vertically into the well-mixed urine sample, and the loopful of urine removed is spread over the surface of the agar plate as illustrated in Figure 64-5. Without reflaming, the loop is again inserted vertically into the urine, and the removed sample is inoculated onto a second plate.

Some bacteria are not detected by routine culture of urine and, when these pathogens are suspected, specific tests must be requested. For example, urine is an acceptable specimen for detection of *N. gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis* by nucleic acid amplification. The manufacturer's directions for urine collection and processing must be followed. *Leptospira interrogans* may be detected in urine after the first week of illness and for several months thereafter. To detect *L. interrogans* in urine, the specimen should be processed as soon as possible after collection, because acidity may harm the organisms. One or two drops of undiluted urine, and urine diluted 1 : 10 in broth, are inoculated to 5 mL of Fletcher's medium or Ellinghausen-McCullough-Johnson-Harris medium containing 5-fluorouracil. Culture of urine for mycobacteria is discussed in Chapter 60. Yeasts may be recovered from urine on the media plated for routine bacterial culture but, if fungal culture is specifically requested, the sediment of a centrifuged urine specimen should be plated onto media such as inhibitory mold or SABHI agar containing antibacterial agents.

Urine specimens collected for culture of viruses should be submitted in liquid media containing antibiotics (e.g., penicillin, gentamicin, and amphotericin B), or antibiotics should be added to the sample when it is received in the laboratory, to minimize bacterial contamination of cell cultures. Cell lines are selected for inoculation based on the viruses most commonly isolated—CMV, adenovirus, and HSV. Detection of BK virus in urine may be requested; however, PCR, rather than culture, is recommended. Because BK virus PCR is offered primarily by reference laboratories, it is best to contact that laboratory for collection and shipping requirements.

More than half of urine specimens submitted to the clinical laboratory for culture yield no growth or have bacterial counts below levels

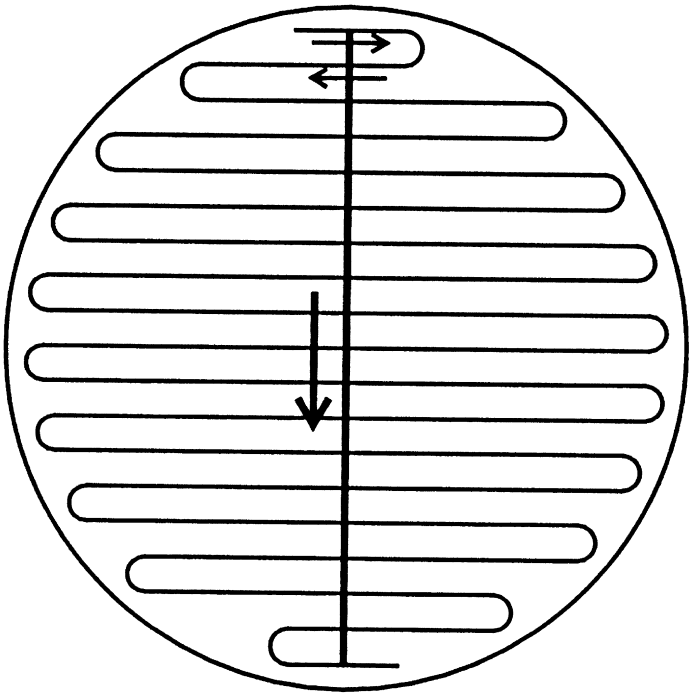


Figure 64-5 Technique for inoculating urine onto agar plates. (Redrawn from Woods GL, Gutierrez Y, editors: *Diagnostic pathology of infectious diseases.* Philadelphia, 1993, Lea & Febiger, p. 602.)

considered clinically significant. Therefore, screening tests that can quickly identify urine samples yielding "negative" culture results have been evaluated as a means to provide rapid results, eliminate negative specimens, and allow more time for positive specimens, thus improving efficiency and cost. In general, urine screen and culture results correlate well when 10^5 CFU/mL or greater is the reference, but they compare less favorably in the presence of lower colony counts. Commercial automated screening methods have been developed but are either no longer available or not actively marketed. Screening urine specimens by staining with Gram stain is economical, but because examination of smears is tedious and time-consuming, this approach rarely is adopted in the clinical laboratory. The commercial dipstick test that combines nitrate reductase (an enzyme present in most of the gram-negative bacilli that cause urinary tract infections) and leukocyte esterase (an enzyme produced by neutrophils) is rapid, inexpensive, and simple to perform, and is most useful as a tool to exclude urinary tract infection if both markers are negative, especially in symptomatic patients (Deville et al, 2004; St. John et al, 2006).

GENITAL TRACT

Specimens from genital sites are submitted for detection of microorganisms responsible for several clinical syndromes, each of which are associated with certain pathogens. The syndromes each have a distinctive clinical presentation and require specific collection, transport, and testing procedures. For many tests, the manufacturer's collection and transport devices must be used for optimal detection of the responsible pathogen.

VAGINAL SECRETIONS

Vaginal secretions are useful in determining the etiologic agent of vulvovaginitis and bacterial vaginosis (so named because the condition is noninvasive). In postpubescent females, the most common pathogens are *Gardnerella vaginalis* (in association with anaerobes such as *Mobiluncus* spp.), *Candida* spp., and *Trichomonas vaginalis*. A wet-mount preparation is the most valuable diagnostic test and may be performed by the attending physician; cultures are not necessary for diagnosis. A swab of the discharge is placed in a tube containing about 1 mL of normal saline and transported to the laboratory. In the laboratory, the swab is removed from the saline, and the tip is firmly pressed against a glass slide to express liquid and cellular material. The slide is coverslipped and examined under low- and high-power magnifications, looking for "clue cells" (epithelial cells covered with small coccobacillary bacteria) (Fig. 64-6), consistent with the diagnosis of nonspecific vaginosis; pseudohyphae, suggestive of vaginal candidiasis; and motile trichomonads. Detection of all three pathogens also can be accomplished with a commercial vaginal pathogen PCR test (Briselden & Hillier, 1994). Swabs and transport tubes supplied by the test manufacturer must be used.

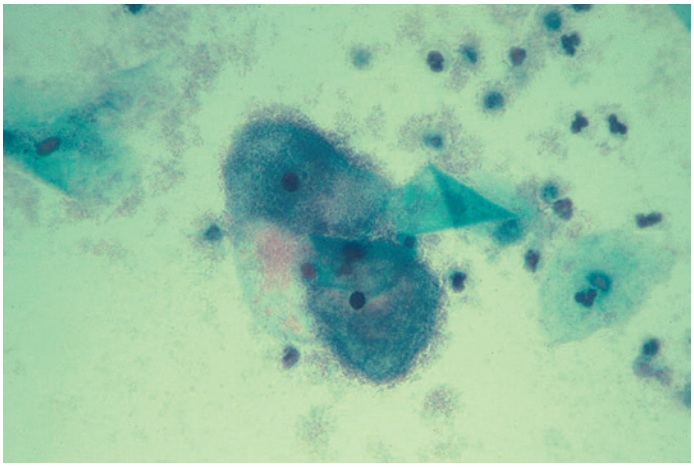


Figure 64-6 "Clue cells" in a smear of vaginal discharge. (Papanicolaou stain, 400×.) (Courtesy of Vicki J. Schnadig, MD, Department of Pathology, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, Tex.)

Other useful diagnostic tests are vaginal pH and the *whiff test*, both of which can be done by the clinician examining the patient. The vaginal pH is usually about 4.5 in women with vulvovaginal candidiasis but is above 4.5 in those with bacterial vaginosis or trichomoniasis. A positive whiff test is determined by the generation of a pungent, fishy odor after addition of 10% potassium hydroxide to a drop of vaginal discharge placed on a slide or on the speculum. This is associated predominantly with bacterial vaginosis but occasionally occurs with trichomoniasis.

ENDOCERVICAL AND URETHRAL SPECIMENS

Endocervical specimens are collected to determine the etiologic agents of cervicitis and to identify asymptomatic persons infected with an organism that causes sexually transmitted disease. Endocervical specimens are obtained after the cervix is visualized with the aid of a speculum moistened only with warm water, because lubricants may contain antibacterial agents. If a Papanicolaou smear is indicated, that sample should be collected first.

Specimens for microbiological studies are generally collected with a swab. As discussed earlier, using a polyester-tipped swab with a plastic shaft is recommended. If a nonculture test kit is used for organism detection, the specimen must be collected with the swab supplied or specified by the manufacturer. Before collecting specimens for detection of *N. gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis*, all secretions and discharge must be removed from the cervical os. The swab or brush then is inserted 1 to 2 cm into the endocervical canal (past the squamocolumnar junction), rotated firmly against the wall for 10 to 30 seconds, withdrawn without touching the surface of the vagina, and placed in the appropriate transport medium or tube system used to prepare a slide for direct fluorescent antibody staining (for *C. trachomatis*) or used to immediately inoculate an agar medium for recovery of *N. gonorrhoeae*.

Specimen handling varies based on the organism sought. To isolate *N. gonorrhoeae*, direct inoculation of a selective agar medium, such as modified Thayer-Martin, within a container to which a CO_2-generating tablet is added, is optimal. Alternatively, the swab specimen can be placed in a tube transport system and delivered to the laboratory within 2 hours. If a delay in transport cannot be avoided, the swab should be left at room temperature, never refrigerated. If a DNA probe or nucleic acid amplification test is used for detection of *N. gonorrhoeae*, the collection kit provided by the manufacturer must be used and the storage and transport instructions followed.

For detection of *C. trachomatis*, culture or nonculture methods may be used (see Chapter 56). For chlamydial culture, the specimen should be transported in an appropriate transport medium containing antibiotics to inhibit overgrowth of bacteria and fungi (e.g., M4 medium). To maintain the viability of *Chlamydia* organisms, the specimen should be transported to the laboratory immediately or stored in the refrigerator if immediate transport is not feasible. In the laboratory, the specimen should be processed as soon as possible. If a delay in processing is unavoidable,

specimens should be stored in the refrigerator if they can be processed within 48 hours. To detect chlamydial elementary bodies by DFA staining, the collection kit provided by the manufacturer must be used and the directions followed. The swab specimen is rolled over the microscope slide, allowed to dry, and the fixative provided is applied. For enzyme immunoassay, DNA probes, and nucleic acid amplification, the collection kit/transport system provided by the manufacturer must be used, unless the manufacturer specifically states that an alternative transport system is acceptable. Manufacturers' guidelines concerning transport conditions, storage requirements, and time to processing must also be followed.

For optimal detection of HSV, nucleic acid amplification or cell culture is recommended. For nucleic acid amplification, specimen collection and transport guidelines provided by the manufacturer or reference laboratory to which the sample is being sent should be followed. For culture, the swab specimen is placed in viral transport medium such as M4 and transported as soon as possible to the laboratory. If immediate delivery is not feasible, the specimen should be stored in the refrigerator. For patients who have visible lesions on the cervix, viral cytopathic changes may be seen in smears prepared from scrapings of the lesion base. Smears are fixed immediately and stained with Wright's or Giemsa stain (Tzanck preparation), which will not distinguish HSV and VZV, or with a monoclonal antibody.

Genital tract infection with human papillomavirus (HPV) is thought to be the most common sexually transmitted disease in the United States, and infection with a high-risk type is the major risk factor for development of cervical carcinoma. Because it is not possible to culture the virus in vitro, other diagnostic methods must be used. Squamous cell changes can be visualized on exfoliated cell samples (Papanicolaou smear), but molecular techniques (e.g., nucleic acid hybridization with signal amplification and PCR) are more sensitive. Kit manufacturers' collection and transport instructions must be followed.

To detect *C. trachomatis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* in males, a urethral swab specimen or first-voided urine sample, depending on the detection method used, should be obtained. Optimally, urethral swab specimens are collected at least 2 hours after the patient has voided. Samples for *N. gonorrhoeae* are obtained first. The conditions concerning types of swab and specimen transport are the same as those described for endocervical swab specimens, although the smaller urogenital swabs are used. The swab is inserted into the urethra for 2 to 4 cm, rotated in one direction for 5 seconds, withdrawn, and placed in the appropriate transport medium or used to prepare smears for direct fluorescent antibody staining to detect *C. trachomatis* or for Gram staining to diagnose gonorrhea. (Detection of intracellular gram-negative diplococci in a smear of urethral discharge from symptomatic men provides a presumptive diagnosis.)

VESICLES

Vesicular genital lesions are sampled to confirm HSV infection. The vesicle fluid is aspirated with a small-gauge needle on a tuberculin syringe. If only a small vesicle is present, it is unroofed and the base is firmly scraped with a Dacron swab or tongue depressor to ensure collection of cells. Vesicle fluid or swab specimens should be placed in a viral transport medium and processed for conventional cell culture or tested by nucleic acid amplification (Strick & Wald, 2006). HSV may also be detected directly in clinical specimens by direct staining of smears, but this is less sensitive than nucleic acid amplification or culture, so a negative result does not exclude the diagnosis. To make a smear, cells collected with a tongue depressor or a Dacron swab are spread on a glass slide, and the material is fixed in acetone. The smear may be stained with Papanicolaou, Wright's, or Giemsa stain for detection of cytopathic changes typical of HSV (VZV has an identical appearance) (Fig. 64-7), or with specific monoclonal antibodies.

ULCERS

Material from genital ulcers is collected to identify the responsible pathogen; HSV, *Haemophilus ducreyi*, *T. pallidum*, *C. trachomatis* (serogroups L1, L2, L3), and *Klebsiella* (formerly *Calymmatobacterium*) *granulomatis* should be considered in the differential diagnosis. Collection, transport, and processing of material from ulcerative lesions for detection of HSV are identical to the protocol discussed for vesicles. In general, the sensitivity of the direct tests previously described and recovery of the virus are lower in ulcerative lesions.

If infection with *H. ducreyi* is suspected, material from the base of the ulcer is collected on two cotton or Dacron swabs. One swab is used to inoculate a chocolate agar plate at the bedside. If bedside inoculation is not possible, the swab should be transported in modified Stuart's medium

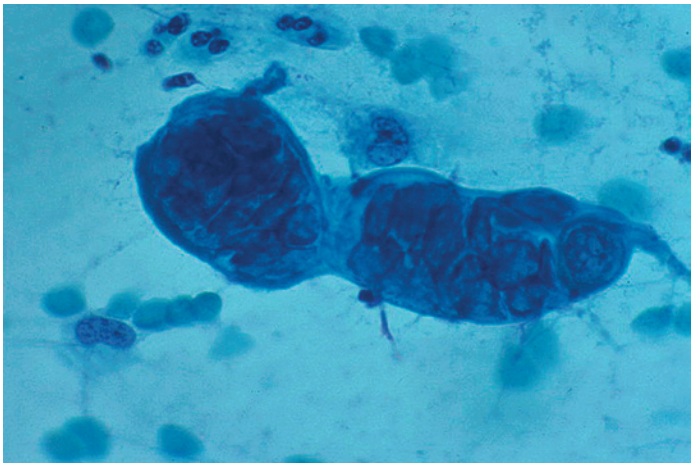


Figure 64-7 Multinucleate giant cell with intranuclear inclusions consistent with herpes simplex virus in a smear of endocervical cells. (Papanicolaou stain, 400×.) (Courtesy of Vicki J. Schnadig, MD, Department of Pathology, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, Tex.)

to the laboratory and held at room temperature until processed. The second swab is used to prepare a smear for staining with Gram stain. Observing many small pleomorphic gram-negative coccobacilli arranged in groups of chains resembling a "school of fish" suggests *H. ducreyi*. Culture, however, is more sensitive and is necessary for confirmation.

T. pallidum spirochetes may be detected in genital or other lesions, but syphilis is usually diagnosed serologically. Gloves should be worn when examining lesions of suspected syphilis and when handling specimens obtained from those lesions. To collect the specimens, the surface of the lesion (if multiple lesions are present, the youngest should be selected) is cleaned with saline and blotted dry, and crusts are removed if present. The lesion is superficially abraded until slight bleeding occurs, and gentle pressure is applied to its base. The clear serum exudate from the subsurface is collected by touching the fluid with a glass slide or by using a capillary pipette and transferring the fluid to a glass slide. A coverslip is placed on the fluid, and the specimen is examined immediately by darkfield microscopy. Alternatively, lesion material is aspirated with a 26-gauge needle inserted at the base, after which a drop of saline is drawn into the needle. The material then is expressed onto a glass slide, covered with a cover glass, and examined immediately by darkfield microscopy. The spirochetes of *T. pallidum* are 10 to 13 μm long by about 0.15 μm wide, have a regular tight coil, and are pointed at the ends.

Serogroups L1, L2, and L3 of *C. trachomatis* may be detected by cell culture in a biopsy of the ulcerated lesion or in cellular material collected by first removing any exudate from the lesion and then firmly rotating a swab (on a plastic stick) against its base. Specimen transport and processing are the same as discussed for endocervical swab specimens. For optimal detection of *K. granulomatis*, subsurface tissue from an area of active granulation is biopsied and immediately transported to the laboratory in a sterile, dry container or in one containing a small amount of sterile saline without preservatives. Smears are prepared from a crushed piece of the tissue and stained with Giemsa or Dieterle's stain. The diagnosis is based on finding characteristic, encapsulated *K. granulomatis* organisms within macrophages.

FECES

Feces and, in some cases, rectal swab specimens are useful for determining the etiologic agent of infectious diarrhea or food poisoning, confirming the diagnosis of diarrhea due to *Clostridium difficile* or botulism, and diagnosing infections caused by adenoviruses, enteroviruses, some sexually transmitted pathogens, intestinal protozoa and helminths, and, in some instances, helminths of the respiratory and biliary tracts. Collection, transport, and processing of these specimens are different for viruses, bacteria, and parasites and are discussed separately for each group. Nevertheless, just as molecular and mass-spectrometry methods have changed the processing and diagnosis of blood and respiratory specimens, they are having the same effect on stool specimens. There are several commercial molecular methods for the identification of *C. difficile;* there is also a FilmArray Gastrointestinal Panel (Biofire Diagnostics, Salt Lake City, Utah) that has 23 targets for the rapid identification of bacterial, protozoal, and viral

causes of diarrhea. Theoretically, this can eliminate routine stool cultures and ova and parasite examinations. However, as laboratories convert to rapid molecular methods and discard culture methods, they must be aware of local regulations regarding the sending of specimens or isolates of public health significance to public health laboratories and the need to perform susceptibility testing of certain pathogens (e.g., *Shigella* spp. and *Salmonella* spp. recovered from select age groups). Many jurisdictions are asking that laboratories continue to send the patient's specimen for epidemiologic analysis as necessary.

The routine availability of these types of panels will lead laboratories to question some of the traditional recommendations for specimen collection. This includes the recommendation not to perform cultures for bacteria 3 days into a hospitalization.

VIRUSES

Specimen Collection and Transport

Stool is preferred for detection of enteroviruses and the viruses responsible for gastroenteritis. Specimens should be collected in a clean container with a tight lid. If feces cannot be obtained, a swab is inserted beyond the anal sphincter, rotated, withdrawn, and placed in viral transport medium. Deliver specimens promptly to the laboratory; if not, refrigerate for a short time and transport on wet ice. If the specimen must be mailed to a reference laboratory, store at –70° C, and ship on dry ice.

Specimen Processing

Cell culture is recommended for detection of enteroviruses. To detect rotaviruses and enteric adenoviruses, an ELISA or molecular method is used most commonly. Latex agglutination kits also are available but appear to be less sensitive. Specimens are processed according to the manufacturer's directions. Direct examination of stool specimens by electron microscopy is the reference method for detection of rotavirus and is useful for detection of caliciviruses, astroviruses, and noroviruses. Noroviruses and sapoviruses can be detected by PCR.

BACTERIAL PATHOGENS

Collection and Transport

Stool also is preferred for detection of bacteria responsible for infectious diarrhea, but a rectal swab specimen is an acceptable alternative. Stool cultures for patients who have been hospitalized for more than 3 days are inappropriate unless the patient has been consuming food brought into the hospital. Stool specimens should be collected in a clean container with a tight lid, and the specimen should not be contaminated with urine, barium, or toilet paper. Rectal swab specimens, obtained as described earlier for viruses, are placed in a tube transport system containing modified Stuart's medium. Both specimen types should be transported promptly (within 2 hours) to the laboratory and processed as soon as possible, because the drop in pH that occurs as the stool cools may inhibit the growth of some pathogens, especially *Shigella*. If a delay in processing is unavoidable, or if the specimen must be mailed to a reference laboratory, transport of an aliquot of the specimen in transport media such as Cary Blair is recommended. For diagnosis of *C. difficile* disease, 20 to 50 mL of liquid stool should be submitted in a sterile container. The stool specimen is stable for 2 days, refrigerated, or frozen for 1 week.

Specimen Processing

Processing stool or rectal swab specimens for detection of bacteria is based on the organism or group of organisms expected to be present. Specimens received for "routine" bacterial culture should be processed to allow recovery of *Shigella*, *Salmonella*, and *Campylobacter jejuni/coli* by plating to appropriate differential, inhibitory, and noninhibitory media (see Chapter 57). The microbiology laboratory director also might consider routinely examining stool for shiga-like toxin–producing *E. coli* (STEC) and *Aeromonas* species, depending on the prevalence of disease caused by these bacteria. The prevalence of gastroenteritis caused by *Yersinia enterocolitica*, *Vibrio cholerae*, or other *Vibrio* species, or *Plesiomonas shigelloides* is low in most parts of the United States; therefore, specific requests for their detection are most cost-effective. The patient population, season, and locale cause different laboratories to look for different pathogens. For this reason, every report from a stool culture should list the organisms that were identified or ruled out by the laboratory's protocol.

To detect STEC, the stool specimen is inoculated onto sorbitol-MacConkey agar (containing 1% D-sorbitol instead of lactose), a medium that differentiates isolates of STEC, which do not ferment sorbitol, from almost all other *E. coli*, which are sorbitol-positive. A more sensitive method than culture for detection of STEC is detection of toxin in the stool or stool filtrate by enzyme immunoassay or PCR (Gavin et al, 2004; Pulz et al, 2003). When isolation of *Y. enterocolitica* is requested, CIN agar is inoculated and incubated at room temperature. The organism also can be recovered by inoculating media typically used for routine bacterial culture (see Chapter 57). A MacConkey plate may be incubated at room temperature for 48 hours. Colonies of *Y. enterocolitica* are purple and pinhead in size. *Vibrio* spp. frequently grow on the media used for routine stool culture, but, for their optimal recovery, thiosulfate citrate bile salts sucrose agar is inoculated. *Plesiomonas shigelloides* also grows on media used for routine culture, but because up to 30% of *P. shigelloides* isolates ferment lactose, their colonies do not appear sufficiently distinct to be recognized on these media, and screening all colonies for *Plesiomonas* is not cost-effective. For this reason, culture of stool or rectal swab specimens for *P. shigelloides* should be requested specifically. Use of the selective-differential medium inositol brilliant-green bile salts agar has been suggested but is not essential.

Rectal swab specimens submitted for detection of *C. trachomatis* are placed in transport medium and delivered promptly to the laboratory or are refrigerated for a short time. Rectal swab specimens collected to diagnose gonorrhea are treated as discussed earlier for endocervical specimens.

Stool specimens or gastric contents collected from persons with short-incubation food poisoning should be evaluated for toxins from *S. aureus* and *Bacillus cereus*, and specimens from patients with long-incubation food poisoning should be evaluated for *C. perfringens*. This testing is normally conducted by experts at public health laboratories, who should be contacted regarding appropriate specimen collection and transport. The clinical diagnoses of food-borne botulism and infant botulism may be confirmed by detecting botulinal toxin, *Clostridium botulinum*, or both in feces. Most clinical laboratories are not properly equipped to process specimens from persons with suspected botulism. In the United States, when a case of botulism is identified, investigators at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention should be notified to ensure appropriate specimen collection and transport, diagnosis, treatment, and investigation of the potential outbreak.

Diseases associated with *C. difficile*, such as pseudomembranous colitis and antibiotic-associated diarrhea, are caused by the toxins produced by the organism and are diagnosed by detecting toxin A and/or B or the *toxin B* gene in feces. The most sensitive method for detecting the presence of toxin is culture followed by testing colonies of *C. difficile* for toxin production. The reference method for detection of the cytotoxin is cell culture assay. To extract toxin, the stool specimen is clarified by centrifugation at 2000 *g* for 20 minutes or 10,000 *g* for 10 minutes and filtered through a 0.45-μm membrane filter. Serial dilutions are prepared and inoculated to cell monolayers, which are incubated for 24 to 48 hours. Alternatively, toxin A or both toxins A and B may be detected in stool samples by ELISA testing, which provides results within a few hours. The sensitivity and specificity of different commercial ELISAs, however, vary (Eastwood et al, 2009). Tests for detection of the common antigen glutamate dehydrogenase (GDH) are also commercially available. These tests, like bacterial culture, do not distinguish isolates that produce toxin from those that do not. Even so, the common antigen, which has a turnaround time of 15 to 45 minutes, has been shown to be a useful screening test in certain institutions. Specimens yielding negative results require no further testing, whereas GDH-positive specimens should be tested for toxins. Most recently, commercial PCR tests for detection of the toxin B gene have been shown to be considerably more sensitive than ELISAs (Eastwood et al, 2009; Kvach et al, 2010). Although many laboratories are using PCR because of its increased sensitivity, clinicians need to realize that the test is detecting the presence of the *toxin B* gene, not the production of toxin.

For epidemiologic studies, *C. difficile* may be isolated from stool or from rectal swab specimens placed in an anaerobic transport system. Because many bacteria are present in stool, procedures that select for *C. difficile* must be used. The most effective medium for this purpose is cycloserine cefoxitin fructose egg yolk agar (CCFA), with or without horse blood. The organism grows more quickly and luxuriantly on formulations containing horse blood. The medium is incubated anaerobically for 48 hours, and the plates are examined for colonies that have a peripheral fringe and a "horse stable" odor. Alternatively, *C. difficile* may be isolated by using an alcohol spore selection procedure, where 1 mL of the original specimen is mixed with 1 mL of absolute ethanol. The mixture is allowed to stand for 1 hour at room temperature, followed by subculture to CCFA and incubation anaerobically.

With regard to mycobacterial culture, stool specimens usually are submitted for isolation of *Mycobacterium avium* complex (primarily from patients with AIDS), but *M. tuberculosis* complex and other *Mycobacterium*

spp. also may be recovered. Processing the specimen (1 to 2 g of formed stool or 5 mL of liquid stool) involves decontamination and concentration, preparation of smears, and inoculation of media as discussed in Chapter 60.

PARASITES

The backbone of diagnostic parasitology in the clinical laboratory is examination of stool samples for parasitic protozoa and helminth eggs or larvae. Laboratories performing such tests should have adequate facilities for handling stool samples and a good microscope with a calibrated micrometer to measure the organisms found. Staining of fecal smears is also required for identification of intestinal protozoa.

Specimen Collection and Transport

The specimen (usually collected by the patient) can be collected in a clean, dry, wide-mouthed container. A portion of the sample is then aliquoted into two vials containing preservatives; one with modified polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) and the other with 10% formalin. Fecal specimens should not be collected from the toilet bowl and should not be contaminated with urine, water, mineral or castor oil, antidiarrheal compounds, or radiologic contrast medium. Once collected and preserved, the sample should be delivered to the laboratory at the patient's convenience. The use of fresh stool is optimal for examination for *E. histolytica* trophozoites; however, it is usually very difficult to transport a fresh specimen to the laboratory and into the hands of the microbiologist within the 30 to 60 minutes after collection required to visualize motile trophozoites. Although it is rarely possible to perform wet mounts on fresh stools for motile trophozoites, they can still be identified on stained preparations, and the use of preserved specimens for examination minimizes the exposure of laboratory personnel to live organisms.

Several kits, some single vial and some consisting of two vials (one with formalin for helminth eggs and protozoan cysts, and the other with PVA for preparation of smears for staining), are commercially available for collection and transport of fecal samples. The question of how many fecal specimens are required for identification of all individuals with intestinal protozoa or helminths is still without a definitive answer. It has been advised that a minimum of three specimens collected every other day be examined (Garcia et al, 2003; CLSI, 2005). For cost containment, the clinician should request examination of only one specimen, because about 90% of all infections are diagnosed in the first sample (Montessori & Bischoff, 1987). If a parasite is not detected in the first sample, a second or third should be requested. If two or more specimens collected on different days are received in the laboratory at the same time, it has been suggested they be pooled and evaluated as one (Peters et al, 1988). This practice, however, is controversial. Stool examinations for parasites in patients who have been hospitalized for more than 3 days are inappropriate (Siegel et al, 1990), unless they are immunocompromised.

Specimen Processing

The examination of stool samples for parasites includes preparation of saline solution and of iodine (Lugol's)-stained wet mounts of freshly collected samples (i.e., those that can be examined within a few hours of collection). This is followed by concentration of cysts and helminth eggs, and finally by preparation of smears for staining with the trichrome stain. The wet preparations, if performed, should be made and examined before doing the concentration and trichrome staining. Even if a parasite is seen in the wet mount, examination of a concentrated specimen is recommended because specimens submitted for ova and parasite examination not uncommonly contain multiple parasites. In particular, helminth eggs are often only visible in the concentrate.

The standard fecal smear, which has about 2 mg of feces, is made from a fresh fecal sample as follows: 1 drop of saline solution is placed on a clear glass slide; with an applicator stick, a small amount of feces is picked up and with circular movements is mixed thoroughly with the saline (until enough sample is dissolved), and the mixture is covered with a 22-mm square cover glass. A good wet smear prepared as described, if placed on a paper with small print, should allow the print to be read through the smear. The smear stained with iodine is prepared in the same manner. Both the saline solution and the iodine solution wet preparations can be made on the same glass slide, at the same time mixing the feces with the saline solution first and then with the iodine solution. The saline solution smear will show trophozoites and cysts of protozoa, plus all the helminth eggs and larvae. The smear stained with iodine does not show trophozoites, because they are destroyed by the iodine unless the sample was previously fixed. The main advantage of the iodine stain is that it allows better visualization of some morphologic characteristics of cysts. The saline solution shows movement of trophozoites, which is useful for their identification. To prepare wet mounts from formalin-fixed material, the contents are mixed well and 1 drop is placed directly onto the glass slide and onto 1 drop of iodine solution.

Examination of the saline solution smear is carried out with medium power (10× objective) at first. Beginning at the upper-left corner of the cover slide, the slide is moved horizontally from right to left. The operation is repeated until the entire 22-mm square cover glass is examined. All helminth eggs or larvae and all protozoal cysts should be noted. Examination with the high-power objective is done next for detection and identification of protozoa, looking randomly for about 5 to 10 minutes per preparation.

The concentration technique, which can be done both on fresh and fixed specimens, is particularly useful because it allows detection of organisms present in low numbers. The concentration methods used for routine evaluation are described in detail in Chapter 62. Also discussed in that chapter are special stains required for detection of *Cryptosporidium*, microsporidia, and *Cyclospora*.

SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS LESIONS

VESICLES, BULLAE, AND PUSTULES

Specimen Collection and Transport

Fluid is the optimal specimen and may be collected from a vesicle or bulla by aspirating with a needle and syringe, removing the needle, capping the syringe, and transporting the syringe to the laboratory. If a viral culture is desired, inoculate a portion of the fluid into an appropriate transport medium. Vesicles and bullae may also be sampled by unroofing the lesion and vigorously rubbing the base with a swab, and then submitting the swab for testing.

Pustules are similarly sampled with a swab after removing any crusted material. Gram stain and culture are recommended to identify streptococci and methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in the skin lesion of impetigo and ecthyma. Gram stain and culture of pus for abscesses and carbuncles is also recommended to guide therapy (Stevens et al, 2014). A minimum of two swab specimens should be collected, one for culture, the other for preparation of smears for staining. However, if detection of more than one group of organisms (e.g., viruses and bacteria, or bacteria and fungi) is requested, collecting at least three swab specimens is optimal. For suspected viral infection, the individual collecting the specimen should prepare a smear at the bedside by rolling the entire surface of the swab over a glass slide and allowing the material to air-dry.

All swabs for bacterial or fungal testing may be placed in tube transport systems containing modified Stuart's medium; if anaerobic culture is ordered, one swab should be placed in an anaerobic transport device. Transport smears, fluid, and swab specimens promptly to the laboratory.

Specimen Processing

Processing specimens from vesicles or pustules for detection of viruses involves cell culture; and for VZV, and possibly HSV, examination of stained smears is helpful. Specimens for culture are refrigerated for a short time until they are processed. Swab specimens received in viral transport medium are vigorously agitated on a vortex mixer, and then the swab is removed and discarded. Processing specimens for detection of bacteria and/or fungi involves preparation of a smear for staining with Gram stain (for bacteria) or Calcofluor white (for fungi) and inoculation of appropriate media for culture, as discussed in Chapters 57 and 61.

CUTANEOUS ULCERS

Aspirates and swab specimens are collected from cutaneous ulcers for microbiological studies. Lesions may be primary (e.g., those caused by viruses, *Bacillus anthracis*, *C. diphtheriae*, *Francisella tularensis*, *P. aeruginosa*, mycobacteria, or fungi), or decubitus ulcers may become secondarily colonized or infected with aerobic and anaerobic bacteria.

Collection, transport, and processing of swab specimens obtained from cutaneous ulcers for detection of viruses are identical to what were described earlier for vesicles and pustules. Handling of specimens obtained from cutaneous ulcers differs for bacteria and fungi and is discussed separately for each of the organisms that cause primary lesions and for the bacteria associated with chronic ulcers.

B. anthracis causes anthrax, a rare disease in the United States, limited to persons working with raw imported wool and other animal products

contaminated with spores of *B. anthracis* and persons exposed to spores through an act of bioterrorism. Cutaneous anthrax begins as a painless papule but becomes vesicular, then hemorrhagic, necrotic, and covered with an eschar. For optimal diagnosis, sending specimens to a public health laboratory where nucleic acid amplification can be performed is recommended. Instructions for specimen collection and transport provided by the public health laboratory should be followed. If specimens are processed in the clinical laboratory, they must be handled in a biological safety cabinet. The swab for culture is inoculated onto sheep blood agar, which is incubated in ambient air.

C. diphtheriae is the cause of cutaneous diphtheria, an ulcerative lesion covered with a layer of necrotic debris resembling a membrane. For optimal diagnosis, a smear for staining with methylene blue is prepared from material collected from the edge of the membrane, and two swab specimens from the membrane are collected. One swab is used for routine bacterial culture and the other for inoculation of media selective for *C. diphtheriae* (e.g., cysteine tellurite agar) if available.

Ecthyma gangrenosum is an ulcerative cutaneous lesion that almost always occurs during bacteremia with *P. aeruginosa* but rarely develops during bacteremia with other gram-negative bacilli. Ideally, two swab specimens are collected from the ulcer base; one is used to prepare a smear for staining with Gram stain and the other to inoculate media for culture.

The diagnosis of the ulceroglandular form of tularemia requires the collection of a swab specimen from material at the base of the ulcer. The swab is processed in a biological safety cabinet for routine bacterial culture, and the plates are held for a full 7 days, as *F. tularensis* is a slowly growing bacterium, producing pinpoint colonies in 3 to 5 days on chocolate agar, but does not grow on sheep blood agar. Suspicious isolates should be referred immediately to the nearest public health laboratory for identification.

Mycobacteria most commonly isolated from cutaneous ulcers include *Mycobacterium fortuitum*, *Mycobacterium abscessus*, *Mycobacterium chelonae*, *Mycobacterium marinum*, and *Mycobacterium haemophilum*. *Mycobacterium ulcerans* is a common cause of skin lesions in some parts of the world but is rather difficult to culture. Exudate aspirated with a needle and syringe or a tissue sample is optimal for recovery of mycobacteria. To transport the aspirate, the material is expelled into a sterile tube, which is tightly capped and delivered promptly to the laboratory. Tissue samples are placed on sterile, moist gauze in a sterile container, which is tightly capped. Swab samples are not acceptable for processing for mycobacteria, as mycobacteria become entrapped in the fibers of the swab and are difficult to dislodge. Specimens may be refrigerated for a short time until they are processed (see Chapter 60). Because some species of mycobacteria infecting the skin and extremities grow better at lower temperatures or with additional growth factors, it is important that those setting up the specimens are aware of the specimen source.

Many aerobic, facultative, and anaerobic bacteria colonize chronic skin ulcers. To identify the organisms responsible, cultures of deep tissues or a deep aspirate of purulent material collected with a needle and syringe provide the most useful bacteriologic information. To transport aspirated pus, remove and discard the needle, cap the syringe, and deliver it promptly to the laboratory. If transport will be delayed, inject a portion of the aspirate into an anaerobic gel transport tube. Tissue samples are transported in a sterile cup with moist sterile gauze to keep tissue from drying out. Processing the specimen involves preparing a smear for staining with Gram stain and inoculating appropriate media for aerobic and anaerobic culture.

An aspirate of the exudate from the active margin of an ulcer (transported as described earlier for bacteria) or a tissue sample is optimal for detection of fungi. A swab specimen of the exudate is suboptimal and should be discouraged. Processing the specimen for detection of fungi involves preparing a smear for direct microscopic examination (potassium hydroxide or Calcofluor white preparation) and inoculation of appropriate media for culture, such as brain-heart infusion, inhibitory mold, or SABHI agar containing antibiotics and cycloheximide.

WOUND INFECTIONS AND ABSCESSES

Ideally, purulent material is aspirated with a needle and syringe and transported as described earlier for ulcerative lesions. If an aspirate cannot be obtained, swab specimens of exudate collected from the deep portion of the lesion are acceptable. For routine bacterial culture, two swab specimens are optimal: one to prepare a smear for staining with Gram stain and one for culture. To recover anaerobes, an additional swab specimen must be collected and placed in an anaerobic transport system. All specimens should be delivered promptly to the laboratory and processed as soon as possible. If a delay in processing is unavoidable, specimens may be stored in the refrigerator, except those for recovery of anaerobes, which should be maintained at room temperature.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Carroll KC: Laboratory diagnosis of lower respiratory tract infections: controversy and conundrums, *J Clin Microbiol* 40:3115–3120, 2002.

Reviews microbiological tests for diagnosis of lower respiratory tract infections, including acute bronchitis, community-acquired pneumonia, and nosocomial pneumonia.

Cockerill FR III, Wilson JW, Vetter EA, et al: Optimal testing parameters for blood cultures, *Clin Infect Dis* 38:1724–1730, 2004.

Provides data regarding optimal testing parameters for blood cultures when using automated blood culture systems.

Mandell LA, Wunderink RG, Anzueto A, et al: Infectious Diseases Society of America/American Thoracic Society consensus guidelines on the management of community-acquired pneumonia in adults, *Clin Infect Dis* 44:S27–S72, 2007.

Guidelines developed jointly by the Infectious Diseases Society of America and the American Thoracic Society for managing community-acquired pneumonia in adults. Also provides recommendations regarding diagnostic tests.

Shulman ST, Bisno AL, Clegg HW, et al: Clinical practice guideline for the diagnosis and management of Group A streptococcal pharyngitis: 2012 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *Clin Infect Dis* 55:10, 2012.

Guideline developed by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Reviews the goals of diagnosing the etiology of pharyngitis and differentiates between the adult and pediatric populations.

REFERENCES

Albright RE Jr, Graham CB III, Christenson RH, et al: Issues in cerebrospinal fluid management. Acid-fast bacillus smear and culture, *Am J Clin Pathol* 95:418, 1991a.

Albright RE Jr, Christenson RH, Emlet JL, et al: Issues in cerebrospinal fluid management. CSF Venereal Disease Research Laboratory Testing, *Am J Clin Pathol* 95:397, 1991b.

Bannatyne RM, Jackson MC, Memish S: Rapid diagnosis of Brucella bacteremia by using the BACTEC 9240 system, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:2673, 1997.

Baron EJ, Weinstein MP, Dunne WM, et al: Baron EJ, editor: *Cumitech 1C, Blood Cultures IV. Coordinating*, Washington, DC, 2005, ASM Press.

Baselski VS, Wunderink RG: Bronchoscopic diagnosis of pneumonia, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 7:533, 1994.

Bhatti MM, Boonlayangoor S, Beavis KG, et al: Evaluation of FilmArray and Verigene systems for rapid identification of positive blood cultures, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:3433, 2014a.

Bhatti MM, Boonlayangoor S, Beavis KG: Rapid identification of positive blood cultures by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry using prewarmed agar plates, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:4334, 2014b.

Bhisitkul DM, Hogan AE, Tanz RR: The role of bacterial antigen detection tests in the diagnosis of bacterial meningitis, *Pediatr Emerg Care* 10:67, 1994.

Bischof LJ, Lapsley L, Fontecchio K, et al: Comparison of chromogenic media to BD GeneOhm methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) PCR for detection of MRSA in nasal swabs, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:2281–2283, 2009.

Bocher S, Smyth R, Kahlmeter G, et al: Evaluation of four selective agars and two enrichment broths in screening for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:3136–3138, 2008.

Briselden AM, Hillier SL: Evaluation of Affirm VP microbial identification test for Gardnerella vaginalis and Trichomonas vaginalis, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:148–152, 1994.

Callihan DR, Gile TJ, Beavis KG, et al: *Protection of laboratory workers from occupationally acquired infections; Approved Guideline*, 4th ed, Wayne, Pa., 2014, Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute. CLSI Document M29-A4.

Caliendo AM, Gilbert DN, Ginocchio CC, et al: Better tests, better care: Improved diagnostics for infectious diseases, *Clin Infect Dis* 57(Suppl 3):2013.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI). Procedures for the recovery and identification of parasites from the intestinal tract; approved guideline. CLSI Document M28-A2. Wayne, Pa.; 2005.

Cloud JL, Shutt C, Aldous W, et al: Evaluation of a modified Gen-Probe Amplified Direct Test for detection of mycobacterium tuberculosis complex organisms in cerebrospinal fluid, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:5341, 2004.

Dawson MS, Harford AM, Garner BK, et al: Total volume culture technique for the isolation of microorganisms from continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis patients with peritonitis, *J Clin Microbiol* 22:391, 1985.

Deville WLJM, Yzermans J, van Duijn NP, et al: The urine dipstick test useful to rule out infections. A meta-analysis of the accuracy, *BMC Urol* 4:4, 2004.

Eastwood K, Else P, Charlett A, et al: Comparison of nine commercially available *Clostridium difficile* toxin detection assays, a real-time PCR assay for *Clostridium difficile tcdB*, and a glutamate dehydrogenase detection assay to cytotoxin testing and cytotoxigenic culture methods, *J Clin Microbiol* 47:3211–3217, 2009.

Friedman RL: Pertussis. The disease and new diagnostic methods, *Clin Microbiol Rev* 1:365, 1988.

Garcia LS, Smith JW, Fritsche TF: *Selection and use of laboratory procedures for diagnosis of parasitic infections of the gastrointestinal tract. CUMITECH 30A*, Washington, DC, 2003, ASM Press.

Gavin PJ, Peterson LR, Pasquariello AC, et al: Evaluation of performance and potential clinical impact of ProSpecT Shiga toxin Escherichia coli microplate assay for detection of Shiga toxin-producing *E. coli* in stool samples, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:1652–1656, 2004.

Gilligan PH: Endotracheal aspirates: to screen or not to screen, is that even the question?, *Clin Microbiol Newslet* 21:44, 1999.

Gray LD, Gilligan PH, Fowler WC: Snyder JW, editors: *Cumitech 13B, Laboratory diagnosis of ocular infections*, Washington, DC, 2011, ASM Press.

Havlik D, Woods GL: Screening sputum specimens submitted for mycobacterial culture, *Lab Med* 26:411, 1995.

Heelan JS, Corpus L, Kessimian N: False-positive reactions in the latex agglutination test for Cryptococcus neoformans antigen, *J Clin Microbiol* 29:1260, 1991.

Herrmann B, Larsson VC, Rubin CJ, et al: Comparison of a duplex quantitative real-time PCR assay and the COBAS Amplicor CMV Monitor test for detection of cytomegalovirus, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:1909–1914, 2004.

Ilstrup DM, Washington JA II.: The importance of volume of blood cultured in the detection of bacteremia and fungemia, *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 1:107, 1983.

Ingram JG, Plouffe JF: Danger of sputum purulence screen in culture of Legionella species, *J Clin Microbiol* 32:209, 1994.

Kahn FW, Jones JM: Diagnosing bacterial respiratory infection by bronchoalveolar lavage, *J Infect Dis* 155:862, 1987.

Kalpoe JS, Kroes AC, de Jong MD, et al: Validation of clinical application of cytomegalovirus plasma DNA load measurement and definition of treatment criteria by analysis of correlation to antigen detection, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:1498–1504, 2004.

Kass EH: Asymptomatic infections of the urinary tract, *Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 69:56, 1956.

Kiska DL, Jones MC, Mangum ME, et al: Quality assurance study of bacterial antigen testing of cerebrospinal fluid, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:1141, 1995.

Krumholz HM, Cummings S, York M: Blood culture phlebotomy: switching needles does not prevent contamination, *Ann Intern Med* 113:290, 1990.

Kvach EJ, Ferguson D, Riska PF, et al: Comparison of BD GeneOhm Cdiff real-time PCR assay with a two-step algorithm and a toxin A/B enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for diagnosis of toxigenic *Clostridium difficile* infection, *J Clin Microbiol* 48:109–114, 2010.

Lipsky BA, Innuni TS, Plorde JJ, et al: Is the clean-catch midstream void procedure necessary for obtaining urine culture specimens from men? *Am J Med* 76:257, 1984.

Lugert R, Reichard U, Hufert FT, et al: Comparison between pp65 antigenemia assay and quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction for detection of active cytomegalovirus infection in routine diagnostics, *Diag Microbiol Infect Dis* 65:192–195, 2009.

McCarter YS, Robinson A: Quality evaluation of sputum specimens for mycobacterial culture, *Am J Clin Pathol* 105:769, 1996.

Martinez AJ, Visvesvara GS: Diagnosis of pathogenic free-living amebas, *Clin Lab Med* 11:861, 1991.

Maxson S, Lewno MJ, Schutze GE: Clinical usefulness of cerebrospinal fluid bacterial antigen studies, *J Pediatr* 125:235, 1994.

Meyer-Koenig U, Weidmann M, Kirste G, et al: Cytomegalovirus infection in organ-transplant recipients: diagnostic value of pp65 antigen test, qualitative polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and quantitative Taqman PCR, *Transplantation* 77:1692–1698, 2004.

Montessori GA, Bischoff L: Searching for parasites in stool: once is usually enough, *Can Med Assoc J* 137:702, 1987.

Murray PR, Washington JA II.: Microscopic and bacteriologic analysis of expectorated sputum, *Mayo Clin Proc* 50:339, 1975.

Perkins MD, Mirrett S, Reller LB: Rapid bacterial antigen detection is not clinically useful, *J Clin Microbiol* 33:1486, 1995.

Peters CS, Hernandez L, Sheffield N, et al: Cost containment of formalin-preserved stool specimens for ova and parasites from outpatients, *J Clin Microbiol* 26:1584, 1988.

Pulz M, Matussek A, Monazahian M, et al: Comparison of a Shiga toxin enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and two types of PCR for detection of Shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli* in human stool specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:4671–4675, 2003.

Reisner BS, Woods GL: Times to detection of bacteria and yeasts in BACTEC 9240 blood culture bottles, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:2024–2026, 1999.

Rosenblatt JE: Laboratory diagnosis of infections due to blood and tissue parasites, *CID* 49:1103–1108, 2009.

Rowe DT, Webber S, Schauer EM, et al: Epstein-Barr virus load monitoring; its role in the prevention and management of post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease, *Transpl Infect Dis* 3:79–87, 2001.

Sharp SE, Robinson A, Saubolle M, et al: *Cumitech 7B, Lower respiratory tract infections*, Washington, DC, 2004, ASM Press.

Shulman ST, Bisno AL, Clegg HW, et al: Clinical practice guideline for the diagnosis and management of Group A streptococcal pharyngitis: 2012 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *CID* 55:10, 2012.

Siegel DL, Edelstein PH, Nachamkin I: Inappropriate testing for diarrheal diseases in the hospital, *JAMA* 263:979, 1990.

St John A, Boyd JC, Lowes AJ, et al: The use of urinary dipstick tests to exclude urinary tract infection, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126:428–436, 2006.

Stamm WE, Counts GW, Running KR, et al: Diagnosis of coliform infection in acute dysuric women, *N Engl J Med* 307:463, 1982.

Stevens DL, Bison AL, Chambers HF, et al: Practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of skin and soft tissue infections: 2014 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America, *CID* 59:147, 2014.

Strick LB, Wald A: Diagnostics for herpes simplex virus: is PCR the new gold standard?, *Mol Diagn Ther* 10:17–28, 2006.

Tacconelli E, De Angelis G, deWaure C, et al: Rapid screening tests for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* at hospital admission: systematic review and meta-analysis, *Lancet* 9:546–554, 2009.

Waites KB, Saubolle MA, Talkington DF, et al: Sharp SE, editor: *Cumitech 10A, Laboratory diagnosis of upper respiratory tract infections*, Washington, DC, 2006, ASM Press.

Washington JA II, Ilstrup DM: Blood cultures: issues and controversies, *Rev Infect Dis* 8:792, 1986.

Werno AM, Murdoch DR: Laboratory diagnosis of invasive pneumococcal disease, *CID* 46:926–932, 2008.

Wilson DE, Chosewood LC: Biosafety in microbiological and biomedical laboratories. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; 2009. HHS Publication No. (CDC) 21-1112.

Woods GL: Optimal protocol for processing high-volume and Peds Plus blood cultures by the BACTEC NR860, *Am J Clin Pathol* 101:162, 1994.

Woods GL, Thompson AB, Rennard SL, et al: Detection of cytomegalovirus in bronchoalveolar lavage specimens: spin amplification and staining with a monoclonal antibody to the early nuclear antigen for diagnosis of cytomegalovirus pneumonia, *Chest* 98:568, 1990.

PART 8

Molecular Pathology

EDITED BY

Martin H. Bluth
Elizabeth R. Unger
Matthew R. Pincus

CHAPTER 65

INTRODUCTION TO MOLECULAR PATHOLOGY

Elizabeth R. Unger, Martin H. Bluth, Matthew R. Pincus

THE MOLECULAR BIOLOGY REVOLUTION AND ITS IMPACT ON THE PRACTICE OF PATHOLOGY, 1300

DISCUSSION OF DIAGNOSTIC MOLECULAR PATHOLOGY, 1300

Application of Molecular Pathology to Detection of Cancer, 1301

IMPLICATIONS OF MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS ON THE PRACTICE OF PATHOLOGY AND MEDICINE, 1301

Redefining Disease, 1301

Use of Molecular Biology in the Treatment of Disease, 1301

Data Analysis, 1301

QUALITY ASSURANCE, 1302

SOME CAVEATS, 1302

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1302

KEY POINTS

- The revolution in molecular biology continues to have a profound impact on the field of anatomic and clinical pathology (diagnostic medicine).
- Techniques, including polymerase chain reaction and other amplification and hybridization methods, are capable of detecting DNA in very small quantities in tissue and body fluids, enabling detection of various disease states, including cancer.
- The human genome project has created robust high-throughput and highly sensitive genetic methods for detecting abnormal genes in patient specimens and for establishing patterns of gene expression that are characteristic of specific diseases.
- Proteomic methods detecting protein expression in serum samples from patients allow for diagnosis of different types of cancers.
- Gene array high throughput sequencing, and proteomic methodologies require sophisticated mathematical methods of pattern recognition that allow for detection of disease.

THE MOLECULAR BIOLOGY REVOLUTION AND ITS IMPACT ON THE PRACTICE OF PATHOLOGY

Molecular pathology refers to the analysis of nucleic acids and proteins to diagnose disease, predict the occurrence of disease, predict the prognosis of diagnosed disease, and guide therapy. Recent advances in molecular biology have revolutionized the practice of medicine, especially diagnostic medicine. These revolutionary changes result from our abilities to clone disease-causing genes and the proteins that they encode and to detect the presence of these genes and proteins in the serum and other body fluids and tissues of patients, even though they may be present in minute quantities. This detection has been made possible by a veritable explosion of new, highly sensitive techniques involving amplification methods such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR), branched-DNA (BDNA), fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH), and mass spectroscopy, the latter highly effective for the identification of proteins that are implicated in causing disease (Pincus & Friedman, 2003). Many of these techniques have been developed to the stage where they are employed in so-called "high-throughput" processes that enable single patient samples to be analyzed for multiple genes or proteins. Some of these processes have already become completely automated.

A major consequence of the revolution in molecular biology has been the mapping of the human genome in the Human Genome Project (Venter et al, 2001) and the genomes of a number of other species. These projects identified numerous novel genes of unknown function whose functions can now be determined and whose expressions can be monitored in different disease states. In addition, the techniques employed in these projects have been proving exceptionally useful in studying patterns of gene expression in different disease states (see, for example, Golub et al, 1999).

DISCUSSION OF DIAGNOSTIC MOLECULAR PATHOLOGY

These methods will now be described in Parts 8 and 9 of this book. In Part 8, we first discuss the principles that underlie the main diagnostic approaches used in clinical molecular biology. Chapter 66 describes the basic principles in gene hybridization, including use of Southern and Northern blots, and gene cloning, and Chapter 67 discusses amplification methodology, including PCR and BDNA, that allows gene identification and quantification of gene expression. In the ensuing Chapter 68, we discuss how the expression of multiple genes—in fact, of whole genomes—can now be assayed on microarrays.

One of the motivations for detecting genetic abnormalities in specific diseases is the finding that, in many such disease states, there are well-defined, reproducible chromosomal abnormalities. In fact, increasing numbers of genes that have been strongly implicated in causing disease can be identified on chromosomes using the fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) technique, which enables detection of gene rearrangements and gene deletions in a number of diseases, especially in cancers. Thus in Chapter 69, we discuss the cytogenetics of human diseases and show how FISH technology has enabled major advances in diagnosis of disease. All of these diagnostic approaches constitute diagnostic or clinical molecular biology or molecular diagnostics. In Chapter 70, we therefore discuss how a molecular diagnostics laboratory is established. In the following Chapter 71, we demonstrate how molecular biology techniques are used to diagnose a wide spectrum of diseases.

One of the consequences of the genetic revolution has been the ability to identify single gene mutations in patients' DNA that may either result in disease or may simply be polymorphisms. The latter can be taken advantage of in establishing the parentage of children and the investigation of crime. Consequently, there has been a dramatic increase in the use of the molecular diagnostics laboratory for forensic purposes. We thus describe, in Chapter 72, how single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) are used to establish parentage and the identities of the victims and perpetrators of crime.

Mapping of the human genome reveals that these polymorphisms occur in the human genome approximately 1 per 1000 base pairs (bp). Some of these polymorphisms are in genes, principally those that encode cytochrome P450, some of which are discussed in Chapters 21 and 23, whose functions are important in response of individual patients to therapy (Evans & Relling, 1999; Rodriguez-Antona et al, 2010).

Genes that encode drug-metabolizing enzymes, both activating and inactivating, and genes that encode ligands and receptors, may show polymorphisms that either decrease or increase the therapeutic effectiveness or toxicity of drugs already in wide use, accounting for some idiosyncratic responses previously not understood or predictable. Thus, there has been a major advance in testing patients for genetic expression of these isoforms allowing prediction of which drugs would be most effective. This has revolutionized medical practice and has given rise to so-called "personalized" medicine wherein patients are now tested genetically for the most appropriate drug therapy and to the field of pharmacogenomics in which this testing is performed. This burgeoning field has been applied with notable success to the area of anticoagulant and antiplatelet therapies (Gurbel & Tantry, 2012; Roberts et al, 2012). We describe the techniques and screening practices for the design of effective drug therapy in Chapter 73, Pharmacogenomics and Personalized Medicine, which was introduced last edition.

As more polymorphisms are identified and correlated with individual patients' response to treatment, the pathologist will be called upon increasingly to profile common polymorphisms in patients who are beginning therapy for common diseases such as coronary artery disease, congestive heart failure, diabetes, thrombosis, hypertension, cancer, and infections. The laboratory's identification of the individual patient's genotype/phenotype will determine the specific drugs and doses suitable for that patient. This evolution has placed the pathologist in a more definitive position to determine appropriate therapy than traditional prediction of disease behavior based on morphology of lesions or culture characteristics of infectious organisms.

With respect to infectious organisms, the pathologist is being called upon to bring a wide variety of molecular pathology techniques into the diagnostic armamentarium to genotype infectious agents such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), among others (Farifax, 2013). Because different strains show markedly different drug susceptibilities, genotyping of infectious agents has major therapeutic implications in addition to facilitating diagnosis (Tozzi, 2010).

APPLICATION OF MOLECULAR PATHOLOGY TO DETECTION OF CANCER

Part 9 of the book is devoted to new developments in laboratory testing for cancer that capitalize on knowledge of molecular oncogenesis. It is now well established that genes, called oncogenes, and their encoded proteins, called oncoproteins, are active in carcinogeneis. Mutations in these genes, resulting from factors such as carcinogens and oncogenic viruses, may result in abnormal activation or overexpression of their encoded proteins.

Many of these oncogenic proteins are critical components of signal transduction pathways, in which ligands, such as growth factors, bind to cell membrane receptors, setting in motion a chain of protein activation cascades that are ultimately transmitted to the nucleus, resulting in increased transcription and ultimately high levels of expression of promitotic proteins such as the cyclins. When one or more of the proteins on mitogenic signal transduction pathways become mutated, the cells in which they are expressed become transformed into cancer cells. Once transformed, cancer cells express a number of proteins, in addition to the mutated or overexpressed oncoproteins, that are not expressed by normal cells even in growth phase.

These findings have been translated into new clinical diagnostic methods for the detection of these abnormal proteins in the early detection of cancer in patients. Therefore, Part 9 of this book is devoted to the way in which these proteins are used in early tumor detection and to following the efficacy of the treatment of cancer. One of the major findings in this area has been that screening for cancer is most effective when multiple oncoproteins are assayed. New mass-spectroscopic techniques that enable detection of patterns of protein expression in serum that are unique to specific cancers, in a field known as *proteomics* that is showing great promise in screening for a number of different major human cancers (Khadir & Tiss, 2013). Screening for differential expression of specific patterns of genes that characterize a particular tumor, in combination with proteomics, has the potential to improve diagnosis and screening for a number of different types of tumors.

Many oncoproteins and oncogenes can be used very effectively as tumor markers when detected in serum, urine, and other body fluids. In Chapter 74, we discuss how proteins that are expressed predominantly in specific tissues can be used in cancer diagnosis and monitoring response to anti-cancer therapy. These "tumor markers" include prostate-specific antigen (PSA) for prostate cancer, carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) for colon cancer and other gastrointestinal tumors, and alpha-feto protein (AFP) for hepatocellular carcinoma. This is followed by Chapter 75, which discusses how the proteins involved in mitogenic signal transduction pathways such as epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), HER2/neu, ras-p21, raf, myc, and p53 can be employed very effectively as tumor markers. Chapter 76 includes the major advances in the molecular biology and diagnosis of hematopoietic neoplasia. There has been a veritable explosion of information on the genetics and molecular biology of a wide variety of solid tissue (epithelial cell) tumors and sarcomas over the past several years that complements the information concerning the serodiagnostic markers for a number of these tumors. Chapter 77 discusses the molecular genetics of these tumors and includes a summary of the major genetic findings for these tumors, which we hope the reader will find a convenient reference.

The rapid pace of technological improvements in sequencing is rapidly moving next-generation sequencing methods into the realm of clinical laboratories. In Chapter 78, we discuss the methodologies used in mapping the genome since these approaches are involved in screening for different diseases. As the functions of more genes become known, it will become increasingly feasible to screen the genomes of patients for gene abnormalities, especially those causing or predisposing patients to develop cancer.

IMPLICATIONS OF MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS ON THE PRACTICE OF PATHOLOGY AND MEDICINE

REDEFINING DISEASE

Our understanding of health, disease susceptibility, disease, and disease precursors continues to change with increasingly detailed information about the human genome, protein coding genes, and gene regulation (Pandey & Mann, 2000). Increasingly, diagnoses that were made on the basis of morphology or other traditional laboratory data will require molecular analysis (Heller et al, 1997; Golub et al, 1999; Talaulikar & Dahlstrom, 2009). The clearest current example is the diagnosis of leukemias and lymphomas, for which identification of specific gene rearrangements and patterns of gene expression now enable distinction of different types.

Gene sequencing and testing for mutations also leads to recognition that some diseases have a broader spectrum of presentation, ranging from mild symptoms previously unrecognized as part of the disease to full manifestation of the disease. For example, it is now recognized that mutations of the cystic fibrosis gene *(CFTR)* cystic fibrosis are associated with congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens, chronic pancreatitis, and sinopulmonary complaints that are not always associated with the severe and milder pulmonary and pancreatic dysfunctions long accepted as cystic fibrosis (see Chapter 72). Recognition of diseases and definition of pathobiology on the basis of specific exon and intron mutations will result in recognition of novel symptom complexes associated with diseases and improved management of patients with milder or atypical forms of the disease.

USE OF MOLECULAR BIOLOGY IN THE TREATMENT OF DISEASE

As discussed earlier, genetic screening for the presence of isoforms of cytochrome P450 and other proteins involved in drug metabolism and the genotyping of infectious organisms has enabled the design of the effective treatment of patients on an individualized basis. Likewise, proteomic approaches to cancer detection have resulted in the development of new therapies. For example, many breast cancers express the neu/HER2 growth factor receptor that is detectable in serum with an immunoassay. Patients with neu/HER2-positive breast cancers are now treated with a cytotoxic antibody to this receptor, Herceptin (see Chapter 74).

DATA ANALYSIS

Molecular techniques are now producing data on many thousands of genes, including their expression and their sequences, which results in databases of unprecedented size and complexity and has ushered in the age of "big data." As discussed in Chapter 78, the analytic challenge of organizing data into profiles of diseases or patients and relating profiles to meaningful clinical decisions has resulted in a tremendous growth in bioinformatics and the use of mathematical algorithms for pattern recognition, such as neural network theory (Klee, 2008; Khan et al, 2001).

QUALITY ASSURANCE

Molecular pathology requires the same attention to quality assurance as all laboratory methods to ensure that results are accurate and reliable. As discussed in Chapter 70, two essential components of quality assurance, standardization of methods and interlaboratory comparison of test results, are being adapted for molecular pathology laboratories. Standardized methods for performance of the most common clinical molecular pathologic tests are published by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) as guidelines on the current standards of excellent practice. Interlaboratory comparison of test performance is provided by the College of American Pathologists (CAP) (www.cap.org), currently including surveys for molecular microbiology, genetics, hematology, parentage and identity, and general forensic applications.

Applying established standards of quality assurance and using molecular pathologic techniques in the setting of quality laboratory management requires a thorough understanding of each method's assays strengths and limitations. The information provided in the chapters devoted to molecular pathology is designed to give pathologists the ability to capitalize on the opportunities these techniques offer for improved patient care and the understanding of basic pathobiology.

SOME CAVEATS

While molecular methods will continue to provide new insights into disease, optimal use often requires integration with traditional laboratory tests, rather than complete replacement. For example, in the diagnostic workup of leukemias, the traditional morphologic and immunochemical testing must always be performed. Gene analysis becomes critical when there is a question as to the type of leukemia or the characterization of the types of gene rearrangement that have occurred. In cases of tissue pathology, the morphologic skills involved in histopathology and cytopathology must be employed to ensure that appropriate cells and tissues are analyzed molecularly. Otherwise, analysis of other than targeted cells/tissues, despite high-quality technical methods interpreted with skill and experience, can lead to erroneous, sometimes dangerously misleading, results.

In summary, molecular pathology is penetrating and permeating the entire clinical laboratory just as immunopathology did over 2 decades ago. Pathologists will be increasingly called upon to serve as "molecular shepherds" in this ever-changing landscape (Bluth, 2013). Section boundaries or barriers will continue to break down and dissolve in this transformation of laboratory medicine through the impact of this continuously evolving aspect of cellular and molecular biology.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Golub TR, Slonim DK, Tamayo P, et al: Molecular classification of cancer: class discovery and class prediction by gene expression monitoring, *Science* 286: 531–537, 1999.

A seminal paper that shows how analysis of multiple gene expression can be used to distinguish between different types of leukemia.

Khadir A, Tiss A: Proteomics approaches towards early detection and diagnosis of cancer, *J Carcinogen Mutagen* S14:2–16, 2013. open access: doi: 10.4172/2157-2518.S14-002.

An excellent review of the status of the discovery of biomarkers for cancer that provides an excellent evaluation of current problems in this area together with future directions.

Pincus MR, Friedman FK: Oncoproteins in the detection of human malignancies. In *Molecular diagnostics*, vol 1, New York, 2003, Reed Business Information Publishers, pp 23–38.

A review of how multiple oncoproteins can be used serodiagnostically not only to screen for different types of cancer but in some cases to predict the future occurrence of cancers.

REFERENCES

Anbazhagan R, Tihan T, Bornman DM, et al: Classification of small cell lung cancer and pulmonary carcinoid by gene expression profiles, *Cancer Res* 59:5119–5122, 1999.

Bacher U, Kohlmann A, Haferlach T: Current status of gene expression profiling in the diagnosis and management of acute leukaemia, *Br J Haematol* 145:555–568, 2009.

Bitner M, Meltzer P, Trent J: Data analysis and integration: of steps and arrows, *Nat Genet* 22:213–214, 1999.

Bluth MH: Molecular pathology in the modern era: revisiting Jacob's spotted sheep, *Clin Lab Med* 33:xi–xiii, 2013.

Evans WE, Relling MV: Pharmacogenomics: translating functional genomics into rational therapeutics, *Science* 286:487–491, 1999.

Ferrari M, Cremonesi L: Genotype-phenotype correlation in cystic fibrosis patients, *Ann Biol Clin (Paris)* 54:235–241, 1996.

Friedman KJ, Silverman LM: Cystic fibrosis syndrome: a new paradigm for inherited disorders and implications for molecular diagnostics, *Clin Chem* 45:929–931, 1999.

Gurbel PA, Tantry US: Do platelet function testing and genotyping improve outcome in patients treated with antithrombotic agents? Platelet function testing and genotyping improve outcome in patients treated with antithrombotic agents, *Circulation* 125:1276–1287, 2012.

Heller RA, Schena M, Chai A, et al: Discovery and analysis of inflammatory disease-related genes using cDNA microarrays, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 94:2150–2155, 1997.

Khan J, Wei JS, Ringner M, et al: Classification and diagnostic prediction of cancers using gene expression profiling and artificial neural networks, *Nat Med* 7:673–679, 2001.

Klee EW: Data mining for biomarker development: a review of tissue specificity analysis, *Clin Lab Med* 28:127–143, viii, 2008.

Pandey A, Mann M: Proteomics to study genes and genomes, *Nature* 405:837–846, 2000.

Roberts JD, Wells GA, Le May MR, et al: Point-of-care genetic testing for personalisation of antiplatelet treatment (RAPID GENE): a prospective, randomised, proof-of-concept trial, *Lancet* 379:1705–1711, 2012.

Rodriguez-Antona C, Gomez A, Karlgren M, et al: Molecular genetics and epigenetics of the cytochrome P450 gene family and its relevance for cancer risk and treatment, *Hum Genet* 127:1–17, 2010.

Talaulikar D, Dahlstrom JE: Staging bone marrow in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: the role of ancillary investigations, *Pathology* 41:214–222, 2009.

Tozzi V: Pharmacogenetics of antiretrovirals, *Antiviral Res* 85:190–200, 2010.

Venter JC, Adams MD, Myers EW, et al: The sequence of the human genome, *Science* 291:1304–1351, 2001.

CHAPTER 66

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS: BASIC PRINCIPLES AND TECHNIQUES

Martin Steinau, Margaret Piper, Elizabeth R. Unger

NUCLEIC ACID BIOCHEMISTRY AND BIOLOGY, 1303
Molecular Composition and Structure, 1303
Nucleic Acid–Associated Enzymes, 1305
Replication of DNA, 1305
Transcription of DNA to RNA, 1306
Posttranscriptional Modification, 1306
Translation of RNA to Protein, 1306
Transcriptional Control, 1306
Mechanisms of DNA Repair, 1307
DNA Mutations, 1308
NUCLEIC ACID ANALYSES, 1308
Electrophoretic Separation, 1309
Nucleic Acid Hybridization, 1309
Hybridization Assays: Basic Components, 1309
Hybridization Assay Formats, 1311
Amplification Methods, 1313
Polymorphism Detection Assays, 1313
DNA Sequencing, 1313
RELATIONSHIP TO LABORATORY EVALUATION OF DISEASE, 1313
Molecular Diagnosis, 1313
Beyond Diagnosis, 1314
SELECTED REFERENCES, 1315

KEY POINTS

- Familiarity with the basics of nucleic acid biochemistry and biology is required to understand molecular diagnostic testing.
- The chemical stability of double-stranded DNA stands in contrast to the lability of RNA.
- Base pairing of nucleic acids is dictated by energetically favorable rules and forms the basis for DNA replication, RNA transcription, and hybridization assays.
- The chemical similarity of nucleic acid molecules, regardless of their source, means that methods of extraction, storage, and handling are similar.
- Enzymes that synthesize and modify nucleic acids (e.g., polymerases, transcriptases, nucleases, ligases) may be harnessed as tools for molecular biology and molecular diagnostics.
- Nucleic acid analyses include electrophoresis, hybridization assays, amplification techniques, sequencing, and polymorphism detection. Complete assays or diagnostic tests often combine several of these techniques, such as amplification, electrophoresis, and hybridization.
- Molecular diagnostics is now part of the mainstream of laboratory diagnostics.

Nucleic acids are the critical molecules of life. Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) resides in the nucleus of eukaryotic cells and maintains all the information necessary for maintenance of the organism and for transfer of the information to successive generations. Ribonucleic acid (RNA) carries information from DNA to the cytoplasm of a cell and directs synthesis of the proteins necessary for the function of the organism. The normal state of health depends on the stability of DNA and on accurate DNA duplication and translation into protein. Modern cell biology seeks to determine the basic mechanisms of cell structure and function, and studies are increasingly focused at the level of the gene, the protein-coding units of DNA. As a consequence, diagnostic methods are also being directed toward nucleic acid evaluation. The goal of this chapter is to provide the conceptual framework for diagnostic applications of nucleic acid analyses.

NUCLEIC ACID BIOCHEMISTRY AND BIOLOGY

Nucleic acid biochemistry is central to modern cell biology and dictates many aspects of diagnostic applications. Many of the enzymes associated with in vivo nucleic acid synthesis, degradation, and repair have become basic laboratory tools for manipulation and analysis of DNA and RNA. Cellular mechanisms that operate to direct and control DNA replication, transcription, and translation address the basic biology of the cell in health and disease. Diagnosis, therapy, and research are all increasingly directed at a molecular level of cellular function. This first section provides an overview of those aspects of nucleic acid biochemistry and biology that are required to understand the current diagnostic applications of molecular biology. Further details are available from textbooks on cell biology (e.g., Alberts et al, 2014).

MOLECULAR COMPOSITION AND STRUCTURE

DNA is a long, double-stranded polymeric molecule (dsDNA) that exists predominantly in the form of a right-handed double helix. Each single-stranded DNA molecule (ssDNA) is composed of a small number of building blocks. The backbone of the ssDNA polymer is the sugar deoxyribose connected by phosphate groups (Fig. 66-1, *A*). Phosphodiester bonds between the 3′ carbon of one sugar ring and the 5′ carbon of the next give the backbone its invariant structure and its 5′ to 3′ directionality. Linked to the 1′ carbon of each sugar is one of four possible bases: thymine (T) and cytosine (C) (pyrimidines), and adenine (A) and guanine (G) (purines). The bases can occur in any sequence order and thus form the variable portion of ssDNA. The building blocks of the single-stranded polymer are the four deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates (dTTP, dCTP, dATP, dGTP), each consisting of a sugar molecule, a triphosphate group, and one base. During DNA synthesis, nucleotides are first stripped of two phosphate groups and then enzymatically linked together by phosphodiester bonds to form a chain.

DNA is an extraordinarily stable molecule, losing its normal conformational structure only at extremes of heat, pH, or in the presence of destabilizing agents. The double-stranded helix is the most energetically favorable state for DNA, and an examination of the components of DNA explains this fact. Both sugar and phosphate groups are hydrophilic, forming stable hydrogen bonds with surrounding water molecules in solution. Bases, however, are hydrophobic and are not soluble in water at neutral pH. A stable molecule of DNA must ensure that the bases do not contact water. This is possible when two antiparallel ssDNA polymers (one running in the 3′ to 5′ direction, and the other 5′ to 3′) twist around the same axis. This arrangement allows planar hydrogen bonds to form between adenine and thymine, and between guanine and cytosine (see Fig. 66-1, *B*). As long as the two chains have base sequences in complementary order, the strands of the helix have a ladder-like structure with rungs (base pairs [bp]) of consistent size. The flexibility of the carbon-oxygen linkages in the phosphodiester bond allows the ladder to twist, forming a regular helix such that the planar base pairs are stacked on top of each other, leaving no room for water molecules in between. The polymeric series of base pair hydrogen bonds holds the ssDNA chains tightly together, and

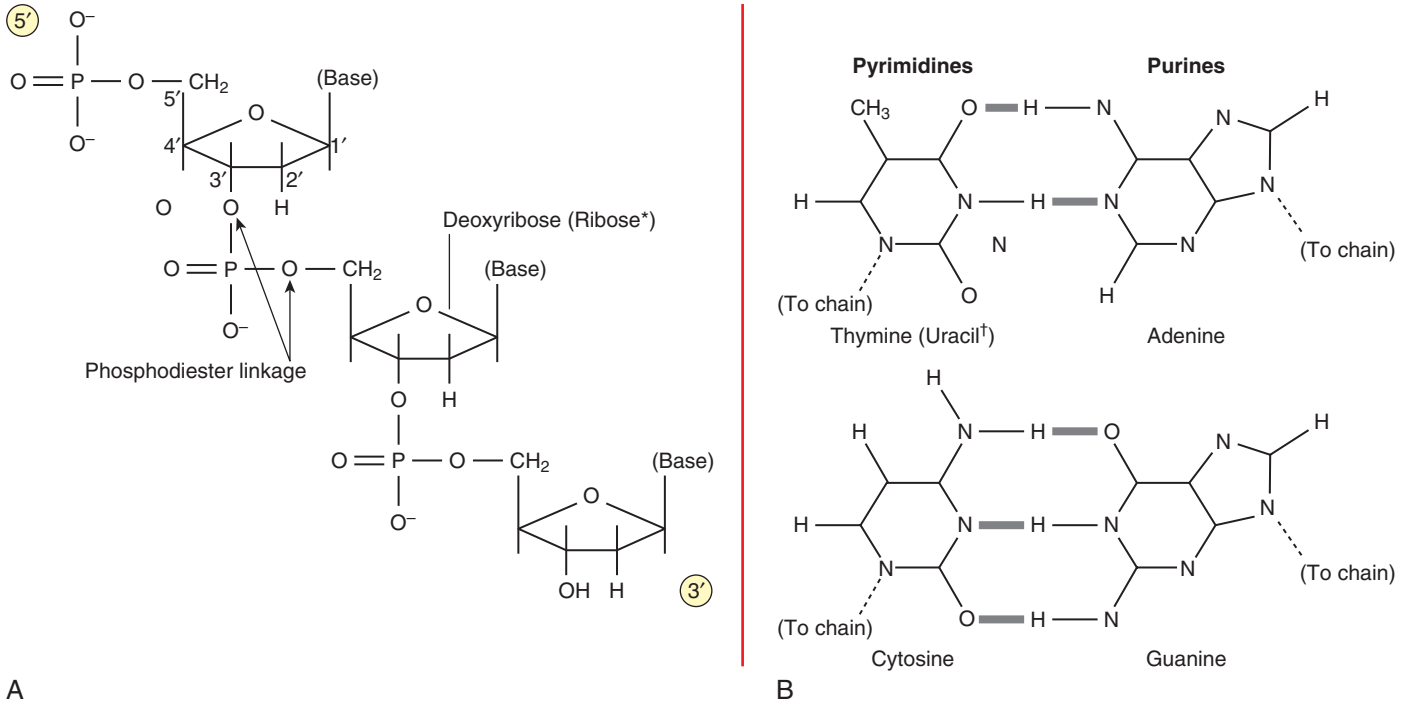


Figure 66-1 **Repeating backbone of DNA and complementary base pairs. A,** A single-stranded DNA chain. Repeating nucleotide units are linked by phosphodiester bonds that join the 5′ carbon of one sugar to the 3′ carbon of the next. **B,** Purine and pyrimidine bases and the formation of complementary base pairs. Shaded bars indicate the formation of hydrogen bonds. *In RNA, the sugar is ribose, which has a 2′ hydroxyl added to deoxyribose. †In RNA, thymine is replaced by uracil, which differs from thymine only in the lack of the methyl group. (Adapted from Piper MA, Unger ER: *Nucleic acid probes: A primer for pathologists*, Chicago, 1989, ASCP Press, with permission.)

the helical conformation protects the base pairs from water, exposing only the hydrophilic backbones.

Helical dsDNA is stable over a pH range of approximately 4 to 9. Solutions with pH outside these limits have the capacity to disrupt the base pair bonds and cause the DNA helix to denature or unwind into two separate, random coils. Extreme heat and hydrogen bond disrupters, such as formamide, also have the same effect. This helix-to-coil transition can be followed spectrophotometrically at A_{260} (Fig. 66-2). The bases absorb ultraviolet (UV) light maximally at this wavelength but at a lower molar absorptivity in dsDNA; absorptivity increases 20% to 30% when dsDNA is converted to ssDNA. Because temperature is often used to effect this transition, the process has been referred to as *melting*, and the temperature at which 50% of dsDNA is converted to ssDNA is called the *melting point* or T_m of the DNA. The T_m of DNA molecules depends on the relative G-C versus A-T base pair content, because the three hydrogen bonds of G-C base pairs require more energy to disrupt than the two hydrogen bonds of A-T base pairs. Lowering the temperature can reverse the melting process, and the two complementary strands reform the original helix if the base pairs reform in the correct linear conformation.

The length of a fully extended eukaryotic DNA molecule would be about 3 m per genome, much longer than the cell itself. Undegraded purified DNA forms a stringy viscous solution, reflecting the extreme length of genomic DNA (Fig. 66-3). In vivo, however, DNA is organized into highly compacted, regular units called chromosomes. A chromosome is composed of its DNA strand wound around DNA-associated proteins in a highly structured fashion (chromatin). The chromosome structure involves several hierarchical levels of chromatin packing, from a "beads-on-a-string" nucleosome (146 nucleotide pairs wound around a histone core) to highly condensed loops, each containing about 100,000 bp of DNA. Each human cell nucleus contains two sets of 23 chromosomes of characteristic length and unique base pair sequence. Together these chromosomes constitute the *human genome*. The complete sequence of the 3 billion chemical base pairs that make up the human genome was finished in 2001 (The Human Genome Project is discussed in Chapter 78).

RNA differs from DNA in chemical composition, structure, and function (Table 66-1). In RNA the sugar is ribose, containing a hydroxyl group at the 2′ position, and thymine is replaced by the methylated uracil (U). RNA exists predominately as a single-stranded molecule and in much shorter lengths than DNA. The structure of RNA is more irregular, owing to the single-stranded nature of the molecule, but it may contain some

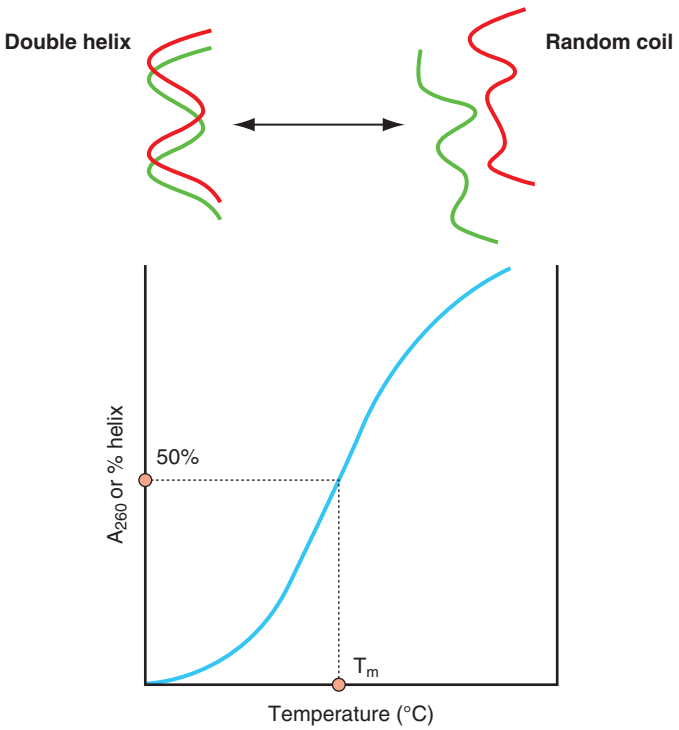


Figure 66-2 **Melting/annealing curve of double-stranded helical nucleic acid.** (Adapted from Piper MA, Unger ER: Nucleic acid probes: *A primer for pathologists.* Chicago, 1989, ASCP Press, with permission.)

helical sections and hairpin loops. RNA molecules of the same base sequence, however, will form the same three-dimensional structure as a result of adopting the most energetically favorable conformation. These consistent, three-dimensional structures are a requirement for RNA function. RNA is much less stable than DNA, due not only to the single-stranded structure but also to its susceptibility to alkaline hydrolysis via

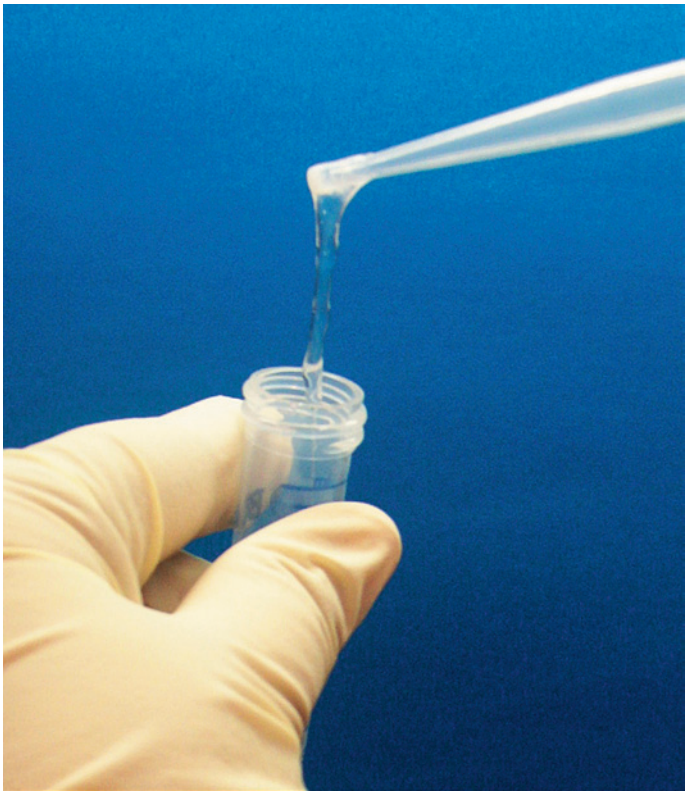


Figure 66-3 Photograph of purified DNA demonstrating stringy viscous nature of minimally sheared genomic DNA.

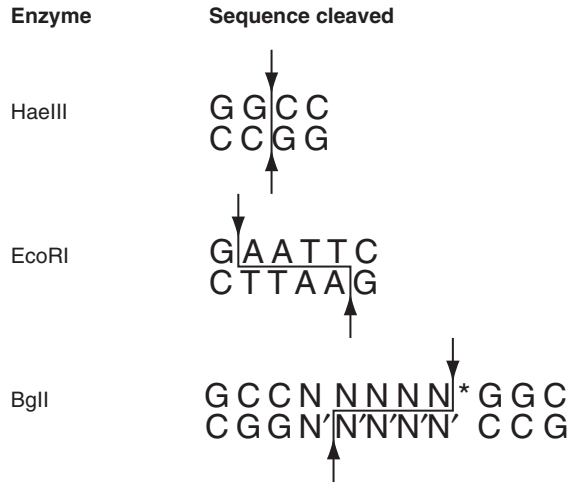


Figure 66-4 Examples of DNA restriction enzymes and their specificities. Enzymes are named for the bacteria from which they are isolated. (*N is any base, and N′ is its pairing counterpart.)

TABLE 66-1
Comparison of Key Features of DNA and RNA

Feature	DNA	RNA
Sugar	Deoxyribose	Ribose
Base pairs	Thymine–adenine Cytosine–guanine	Uracil–adenine Cytosine–guanine
3D structure	Double-stranded Alpha helix	Single-stranded Variable, determined by base sequence (see text)
Stability	Stable Degraded by DNase	Subject to base hydrolysis Degraded by RNase
Function	Maintains genetic information in nucleus	Carries genetic information to cytoplasm

TABLE 66-2
Nucleic Acid Enzymes and Associated Functions

Enzyme	In vivo function
Polymerases DNA polymerases RNA polymerases	Polymerases join DNA or RNA nucleotides together to form a single-stranded daughter molecule, using a stretch of single-stranded parent molecule as a template. These enzymes perform syntheses according to base pair rules and proceed in the 5′ to 3′ direction.
Reverse transcriptase	Mostly of viral origin, reverse transcriptase catalyzes the synthesis of DNA from either an RNA or DNA template.
DNA ligases	Joins DNA fragments formed by discontinuous synthesis in DNA replication or by DNA repair pathways.
Nucleases DNases, RNases	Nucleases "digest" nucleic acid molecules by breaking phosphodiester bonds.
Endonucleases Exonucleases	Endonucleases digest nucleic acids from the middle of the molecule, whereas exonucleases begin at a free end and may require a 3′ or 5′ end. Nucleases may have single-stranded, double-stranded, DNA, or RNA specificity. Some polymerases also have nuclease activity.
Restriction endonucleases	Bacterial endonucleases that recognize specific short DNA base pair sequences and cleave the DNA molecule only at the recognition site.

the 2′ hydroxyl group of the ribose moiety. Ubiquitous RNA-specific enzymes also rapidly degrade RNA.

NUCLEIC ACID–ASSOCIATED ENZYMES

DNA must be duplicated prior to cell division so that daughter cells retain an exact copy of the genetic information contained in parent chromosomes. RNA must be synthesized by all functioning cells to direct the synthesis of necessary proteins. DNA must be degraded during repair of damaged segments, and RNA is continually degraded and resynthesized. Enzymes that operate directly on nucleic acids affect these and other functions. Table 66-2 lists major categories of nucleic acid–specific enzymes and their in vivo functions. In vitro, purified enzymes have become laboratory *tools* for the molecular biologist, allowing genetic engineering and facilitating many nucleic acid assays for research and clinical use.

Nucleic acid–specific enzymes include polymerases, which catalyze the formation of phosphodiester bonds during synthesis, and nucleases, which hydrolyze these bonds. RNA-specific nucleases (RNases) are present virtually everywhere. Because of this, it requires much greater care in laboratory practice to work with RNA in vitro than with DNA. Restriction endonucleases are a special category of nucleases found only in bacteria, where they function to destroy foreign DNA. The recognition sites for restriction enzymes are located anywhere within the DNA molecules, are sequence-specific, and can vary approximately 4 to 12 bp in length. At the recognition sequence or nearby, restriction endonucleases make specific asymmetric or blunt end cuts in DNA molecules (Fig. 66-4). More than 3000 restriction endonucleases have been discovered and categorized according to the structure of their corresponding sequence recognition sites (Pingoud & Jeltsch, 2001). The in vivo function and in vitro utility of many of these enzymes are discussed in the following sections.

REPLICATION OF DNA

The DNA duplication process, known as *semiconservative replication*, uses each strand of the parent molecule to direct the synthesis of a daughter strand (Virshup, 1990). Because the base sequence of the parent strand dictates the sequence of the daughter strand, replication is faithful and the replication products consist of two dsDNA molecules, composed of one parent strand and one daughter strand each, with exactly the same base pair sequence. Although this is conceptually simple, the process is

complicated and involves a number of accessory proteins and enzymes. First, for synthesis to begin, a small single-stranded region must be produced at a point on the genome called an *origin*. This is not energetically favorable and must be accomplished using proteins—that is, helicases—that unwind and separate the strands of the helix. Next, at each origin a short RNA primer is synthesized complementary to the single-stranded sequence. DNA polymerase III proceeds with DNA synthesis, and later the RNA primer is excised and replaced with DNA by DNA polymerase I. Chromosomal DNA contains many origins of replication, and this process occurs simultaneously across the chromosome. Interestingly, DNA polymerase III is a directional enzyme and can synthesize DNA only in the 5′ to 3′ direction because it requires a free 3′OH end. This means that only one daughter strand, called the *leading strand*, can be synthesized continuously. The opposite strand, called the *lagging strand*, is primed by RNA primase that does not require a free 3′OH end. It is synthesized discontinuously in short fragments (Okazaki fragments), each requiring an RNA primer, as the replication fork is opened up. These fragments are then joined together by DNA ligase after each primer is excised. DNA polymerase III is also unique in that it has *proofreading* and exonuclease activity. If an incorrect nucleotide is added to the growing chain, it is detected and excised by the nuclease portion of the enzyme, and the correct nucleotide is then added. This helps explain the extraordinary fidelity of the DNA replication process. Postsynthesis repair mechanisms also contribute to the accuracy of replication (see later under Mechanisms of DNA Repair). Finally, telomerase adds DNA repeat sequences to the 3′ end of each chromosome (the telomere) to prevent shortening of the lagging strand with each replication cycle.

TRANSCRIPTION OF DNA TO RNA

Sections of DNA that specify amino acid sequences of proteins are called genes; one gene contains the amino acid sequence code for one protein, as well as the DNA sequences necessary for the regulation of the production of that protein. Within the 6 billion nucleotides of the human genome, there are about 20,000 to 25,000 protein-coding genes. Although these coding sequences are of paramount importance to the cell and to the function of the organism as a whole, they actually make up less than 2% of the nucleotides. The vast majority of the human genome is composed of noncoding DNA regions earlier referred to as *junk DNA*. While much of the function of noncoding DNA remains unknown, diverse roles of biologic importance have been identified, such as regulation of gene expression, origins of replication, and coding of RNA (see later section on Gene Regulation Mediated by Small RNA and Cech & Steitz, 2014).

Protein synthesis begins with the activation of the appropriate gene. A copy of the gene is made from DNA in the form of RNA. Because the RNA copy carries the code from the DNA in the cell nucleus to the cytoplasm where amino acid synthesis takes place, this type of RNA is called *messenger RNA* (mRNA). Messenger RNA is synthesized from only one strand (coding strand) of the DNA gene; the complementary DNA strand is not used. This is accomplished by a process called *transcription*. DNA promoter sequences present near the start of the gene to be transcribed promote the ability of RNA polymerases and associated proteins to recognize the nucleotide at which mRNA synthesis initiation begins. Synthesis of mRNA proceeds in much the same fashion as DNA replication, with the ssDNA sequence dictating the mRNA sequence using the same rules of base pair complementarity (uracil base pairs with adenine). When the end of the gene is reached, mRNA synthesis is terminated. Some genes are always expressed, while others are only active in certain physiologic situations. The rate of transcription also varies in different cells (see section on Transcriptional Control later).

POSTTRANSCRIPTIONAL MODIFICATION

Before export to the cytoplasm, the mRNA molecule is modified in several ways (Rosenthal, 1994). Messenger RNA contains both amino acid coding sequences (exons) and noncoding sequences (introns); introns are excised from the mRNA molecule before protein synthesis. A molecular complex called a *spliceosome* (Sharp, 1988), which is composed of both low molecular weight RNA (including, at its catalytic core, a ribozyme; see Fica et al, 2013) and protein, recognizes mRNA sequences that identify the boundaries of an intron, joins the flanking exons, and releases the intron. Splicing must be exact, because the addition or subtraction of a single nucleotide at the splice junction would change the 3-nucleotide reading frame in the nucleotide sequences that follow.

Further modifications to the mRNA molecule include the addition of 7-methyl guanosine residues to the 5′ end in a unique 5′-5′ phosphodiester bond. This is called a *cap* and aids in the binding of the ribosome to the mRNA molecule for initiation of protein synthesis. A poly-A *tail*, which may be necessary for stability and transport to the cytoplasm, is added to the 3′ end. The polyadenylation locus is specified in part by the sequence AAUAAA usually found in the 3′ untranslated region of the RNA transcript. At this point, the mRNA molecule is ready to direct the synthesis of its corresponding protein.

TRANSLATION OF RNA TO PROTEIN

Protein synthesis requires translation from the language of nucleotides to that of amino acids. Twenty-one different amino acids are used in protein synthesis; each amino acid is specified by one or more mRNA nucleotide triplets called *codons*. For example, AAG is the codon for lysine, and UCG is the triplet for serine. Thus an amino acid coding sequence is read in groups of three nucleotides running in the 5′ to 3′ direction; this is the *reading frame* of a protein coding sequence. Three specific codons—UAG, UGA, or UAA—do not code for amino acids but instead signal the end of a gene (*stop* codons). Because an amino acid can be encoded by more than one codon, the code is referred to as a *degenerate code*.

Translation from the mRNA nucleotide code to protein is mediated by ribosomes in the cytoplasm of the cell. A ribosome binds to the 5′ end of the mRNA and provides a stable chemical environment for all the molecules involved in protein synthesis. Amino acids are linked in the correct sequence by the action of small, adaptor RNA molecules called *transfer RNAs* (tRNAs). Each tRNA molecule contains a region that is complementary to a particular mRNA codon: the *anticodon*. Linked to one end of the tRNA is the amino acid that corresponds to the complementary mRNA codon of the tRNA. A tRNA with the correct complementary anticodon binds to the first codon in the mRNA sequence, which is always AUG. When another specific tRNA binds to the next codon, ribosomal enzymes catalyze the formation of a peptide bond between the two amino acids linked to the tRNAs, removing the linkage between the first amino acid and its tRNA molecule. The first tRNA is ejected from the ribosome, and a new tRNA binds to the next codon. Protein synthesis proceeds from the N-terminus to the C-terminus. As this process continues, the ribosome moves along the mRNA molecule, completing the synthesis of the amino acid chain. When a stop codon is reached, the ribosome detaches from the mRNA. In reality, several ribosomes can move along the same mRNA molecule, each translating the mRNA code into a new protein molecule.

TRANSCRIPTIONAL CONTROL

To allow for cellular differentiation and response to environmental stimuli, there must be mechanisms controlling the repertoire of gene transcription and protein translation. Some of these mechanisms operate at the level of DNA and control the transcription of mRNA (Rosenthal, 1994). As noted, promoters are important for the initiation of mRNA transcription and are found upstream (toward the 5′ end) at a relatively invariant distance from the beginning of the protein coding sequence. There are several different kinds of promoter consensus sequences (nucleotide sequences that are found in many examples). The most common promoters are rich in adenine and thymine and have been called *TATA boxes*. Because A-T base pair bonds are weaker than G-C base pair bonds, DNA unwinds more easily at repeat A-T sequences. After transcriptional activation, a local ssDNA region is produced and stabilized by the assembly of a complex of RNA polymerase and general transcription factors (Fig. 66-5). Messenger RNA is synthesized from the local region of ssDNA, and the mRNA is quickly ejected as the DNA returns to its more energetically favorable double-stranded helical state.

Enhancers are DNA sequences that can augment mRNA transcription and may be found in different locations relative to the gene that they affect. Gene-specific transcription factors are proteins that bind to enhancers and promoters and selectively stimulate or inhibit mRNA transcription (Papavassiliou, 1995). In eukaryotes, enhancers commonly contain multiple binding sites for several transcription factors, so it is the net effect of factors binding to these DNA elements that determines the activation and rate of expression. The availability of transcription factors, in turn, is controlled by cellular events such as phosphorylation or by other proteins such as hormones and growth factors. A network of intracellular and extracellular chemical communications can thus select and control the synthesis of necessary proteins.

Because mRNA is far less stable than DNA, the half-life of mRNA is very short. New mRNA molecules are continually transcribed from DNA. As the cell responds to changes in transcriptional signals, the genes that are transcribed into mRNA can be quickly changed, resulting in the

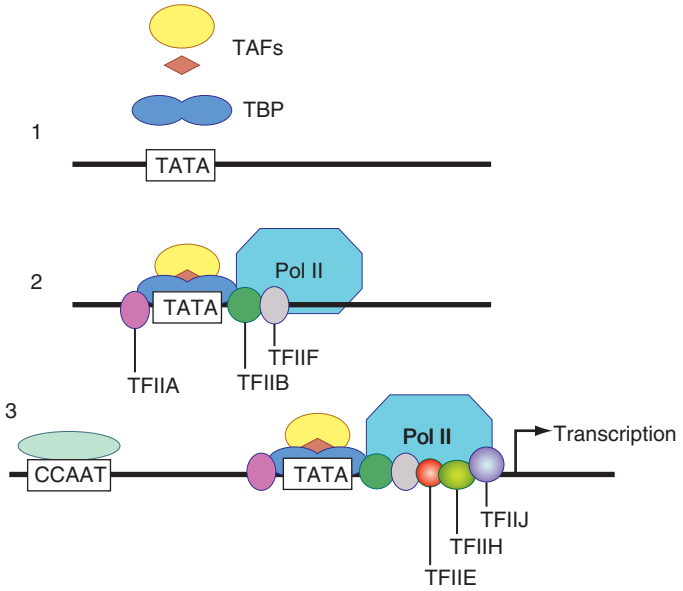


Figure 66-5 **Assembly of the polymerase II transcription initiation complex.** (**1**) The basal TFIID complex assembles as the TATA-box binding protein (TBP) and associated factors (TAFs) at the TATA box of the promoter region. (**2**) Additional transcription factors TFIIA and TFIIB are recruited to enable the polymerase II enzyme and TFIIF to bind. (**3**) The complex is stabilized with TFIIE, TFIIH, and TFIIJ. Typically, binding of additional factors to upstream enhancer sites like CCAAT or GGGCGG are required for effective RNA transcription.

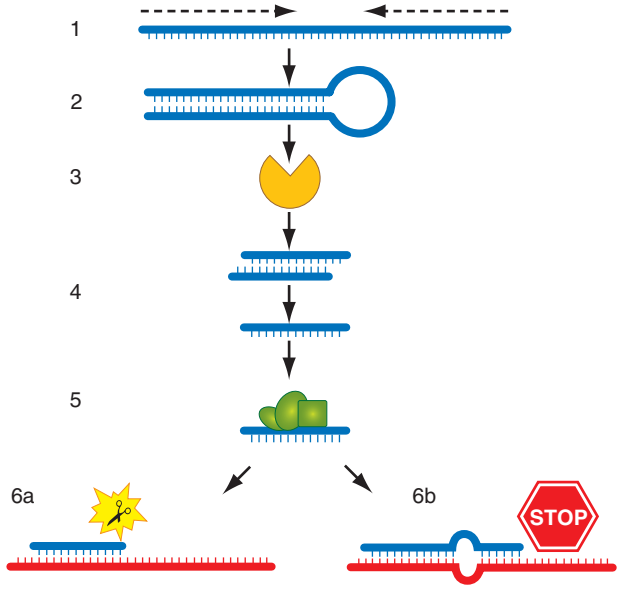


Figure 66-6 **Diagram of the RNAi pathway.** (**1**) Sense-antisense transcripts build a dsRNA with hairpin structure (**2**). This molecule is recognized by the Dicer complex (**3**) and processed into smaller fragments of 21 to 24 nucleotides (**4**). The RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC), a multi-protein complex, assembles with these molecules and unwinds them into single-strand oligos (**5**). Active RISC binds to target mRNAs with either perfect complementary sequence (**6a**), which initiates cleavage and degradation, or imperfect sequence match (**6b**), resulting in bulging, interference with translation, and subsequent silencing.

immediate synthesis of new proteins. Thus the cell has the ability to rapidly adjust its protein output in response to its environment.

Gene Regulation Mediated by Small RNA

An additional mechanism of gene regulation by another class of RNAs—small RNAs—is recognized as important. Small RNAs are short, noncoding ribonucleotides that function as posttranscriptional regulators of gene expression. First discovered in the 1990s, they were found in cells of many eukaryotic organisms, including mammals (Fire et al, 1998). The small RNAs are divided into several different subgroups, most notably small interfering RNA (siRNA) and micro RNA (miRNA). Recently next-generation sequencing has identified large numbers of noncoding RNAs of greater length (>200 nt). The function of these long noncoding RNAs (lncRNA) is an active area of research (Cech & Steitz, 2014).

The DNA sequences for siRNAs and miRNAs are often located in noncoding regions between genes. They generally have their own promoters, and transcription is mediated by polymerase II. The immediate product is an miRNA precursor that forms a double-stranded hairpin structure (Fig. 66-6). An enzyme called Dicer processes it to short RNA duplex molecules and further into single-stranded RNAs 22 to 26 nucleotides in length. The small RNA strand attaches to an RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC), which mediates binding to complementary sequences of mRNAs. siRNAs pair perfectly with the target mRNA and trigger a series of molecular mechanisms that lead to its degradation. This process is also called RNA interference (RNAi). miRNAs bind imperfectly to their target mRNA, causing conformational changes, bulging, and subsequent blockage of protein translation at the ribosome. Small RNAs are abundant in eukaryotic cells (several hundred), and it is thought that each one can target multiple mRNAs either as siRNA or miRNA. They are often tissue specific and have been implicated in the regulation of all major cellular processes such as proliferation, differentiation, metabolism, and cell death. siRNAs have also been recognized as a new RNA-based immune system against viruses that is based on silencing through the RNAi mechanism. Furthermore, changes in miRNA expression patterns can be found in many malignancies, and specific miRNAs were found abundantly in certain tumors (Iorio & Croce, 2009).

Epigenetics and Gene Regulation

Epigenetics refers to changes in gene expression that are not dependent on changes in DNA sequences. In most instances, this involves a change in the chromatin structure that facilitates or blocks gene transcription. This is a dynamic process involving enzymes that chemically modify DNA or histone proteins. A methyl group added to the fifth carbon of cytosine results in 5-methyl cytosine. This generally occurs on cytosines located next to guanines (CpG) that are often repeated in islands or patches located in the promoter region. DNA methylation tends to result in condensed chromatin and reduced transcription. DNA methyltransferases are the enzymes responsible for DNA methylation. Chromatin proteins may be acetylated, deacetylated, or methylated. There is evidence that small regulatory RNA may directly interact with a variety of epigenetic mechanisms (Moazed, 2009). Epigenetic changes are recognized to be important in tissue-specific gene transcription, and alterations may be factors in cancers, aging, and stress response.

MECHANISMS OF DNA REPAIR

Errors in DNA replication and damage to DNA during the normal cellular lifetime must be minimized to preserve the health of the entire organism. Several mechanisms operate to maintain the normal DNA sequence. First are the error-avoidance mechanisms that operate during DNA replication. The DNA polymerase that synthesizes new DNA polymers selects each successive nucleotide monomer based on its complementarity to the next nucleotide in the template strand. Fidelity at this level is high, and most errors in synthesis are avoided at this stage. Nevertheless, an occasional base may be incorrectly added to the growing strand. To adjust for this, the proofreading activity of the polymerase can recognize the error, remove the incorrect base, and proceed again with synthesis. Together, the error avoidance mechanisms reduce base pair mismatches to approximately 1 in 10 million (Radman & Wagner, 1988). This represents a 100,000-fold increase in efficiency compared with the error rate of 1 in 160 bases for in vitro solid phase oligonucleotide synthesis.

Despite the remarkable error avoidance in DNA replication, occasional mistakes do occur. In addition, DNA can be damaged by normal biochemical reactions and by nonphysiologic agents such as UV light and environmental carcinogens. Several repair mechanisms mend damaged DNA (Yu et al, 1999) (Table 66-3).

Direct repair mechanisms repair lesions in a single-step reaction. For example, O^6-methylguanine DNA methyltransferase repairs alkylation lesions by transferring the alkyl group from the lesion to the active site of the enzyme. Other direct repair mechanisms characterized in *Escherichia coli* may also exist in human cells (Yu et al, 1999).

Mismatch repair (MMR) functions immediately after DNA replication to replace mismatched bases with the correct ones (Modrich, 1994). Several MMR proteins recognize the error in the newly synthesized daughter strand and excise a region that includes the mismatch. DNA polymerase III and ligase restore the correct sequence and integrity of the

TABLE 66-3
DNA Repair Pathways

Direct repair	Repairs certain types of DNA damage in a single-step reaction.
Mismatch repair	Checks for errors made when DNA is replicated. Any mispaired bases in the daughter strand are removed and replaced with the correct match.
Base excision repair	Repairs small, nonhelix-deforming adducts such as those produced by methylation, oxidation, reduction, or base fragmentation by ionizing radiation.
Nucleotide excision repair	Removes bulky DNA adducts such as thymine dimers and certain photoproducts, as well as chemical adducts and cross-links.
Double-strand break repair	Repairs double-strand breaks that result from physiologic processes or from ionizing radiation and oxidative insults.

daughter strand. The importance of this mechanism in stabilizing the genome is evidenced by recent studies associating Lynch syndrome with defects in MMR proteins.

Base excision repair targets small, nonhelix-deforming adducts such as those produced by methylation, oxidation, reduction, or base fragmentation by ionizing radiation. Base excision leaves three or four nucleotide sequence gaps that are then filled with the correct nucleotides; nicks are sealed with ligase. Larger, bulky adducts or dimers that distort the DNA helix may be caused by UV radiation, carcinogens, and therapeutic drugs, among other agents. Such damage is removed by the nucleotide excision repair (NER) pathway, which uses an enzyme system composed of many proteins to excise a single-stranded oligonucleotide containing the lesion (Sancar, 1994). The gap is then filled in by DNA polymerase and ligated. There are two NER pathways: one in which lesions that block transcription are rapidly removed (transcription-coupled repair; Hanawalt, 1994) and a global pathway that repairs bulk DNA, including the nontranscribed strand of active genes. Some of the possible consequences of the loss of NER activity are exemplified by the disease xeroderma pigmentosum (XP), which is caused by mutations in *NER*. XP results in extreme sensitivity to sunlight, with skin cancers occurring at an early age (Weeda et al, 1998).

Double-strand breaks that occur rarely or are produced by ionizing radiation and oxidative damage present significant repair problems. If unresolved, replication and transcription of involved sequences will be blocked. To maintain local and overall genomic integrity, double-stranded breaks are repaired by nonhomologous or allelic recombinational repair mechanisms. One of the genes associated with hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome, BRCA1, encodes a protein involved in repairing double-strand breaks in DNA and illustrates the importance of this process.

It is now clear that DNA repair plays a central role in the life of the cell. Recent evidence also indicates that several primary repair proteins also function in transcription and in regulation of the cell cycle. Thus the processes involving DNA appear to be highly integrated and are increasingly studied as a whole and in relation to human disease.

DNA MUTATIONS

Despite extensive repair mechanisms, alterations in DNA base sequence (mutations) occur. Yet, for an individual organism, some mutations are clearly harmful and can be associated with cancer and with inherited genetic disease. Studies of these diseases have led to the characterization of the various types of mutations that occur in the human genome (Weatherall, 1987). These can be conceptually grouped into a few major categories (Table 66-4). A point mutation is found in the β-globin gene in sickle cell anemia (Kan, 1992). A thymine base replaces an adenine base, causing a critical change in the structure of hemoglobin. As described in Chapter 71, muscular dystrophy is caused by deletions in the gene for the muscle protein dystrophin. In the Becker form of the disease, the deletions do not disrupt the reading frame, but in most cases of the more severe Duchenne form, the reading frame is changed by the deletions, effectively abolishing the function of the protein (Liechti-Gallati et al, 1989).

Human DNA contains many short sequences of nucleotides (microsatellite DNA) that are sometimes grouped in tandem arrays and are repeated many times throughout the human genome. The number of tandem repeats at particular locations is a heritable trait. Some trinucleotide repeats have been found to increase in number in association with disease

TABLE 66-4
Types of DNA Mutations and Examples of Associated Diseases

Mutation	Description	Disease
Point	Single base pair substitution	Sickle cell anemia
Deletion/insertion	Subtraction/addition of amino acid codons in multiples of three. Reading frame is retained.	Becker muscular dystrophy
Deletion/insertion with frameshift	Subtraction/addition of amino acid codons in nonmultiples of three. Results in a shift of the reading frame and a completely different amino acid coding sequence from the mutation on.	Duchenne muscular dystrophy
Amplification/ trinucleotide repeat	Increase in the number of repeat sequences in microsatellite DNA. Results in disruption of gene expression.	Fragile X syndrome
Translocation	Interchromosomal exchange of large chromosome segments. Results in analtered protein with altered function.	Chronic myelogenous leukemia

(Sutherland & Richards, 1994). In fragile X syndrome (see Chapter 71), expression of the disease is associated with amplification of the intragenic trinucleotide repeat sequence beyond a critical number of copies. The expansion of the trinucleotide repeats beyond this critical number disrupts expression of the gene.

A translocation, which is an exchange of a larger amount of chromosomal material between different chromosomes, may create a fusion gene, the combination of two different genes abnormally joined at the translocation site. This can create not only an altered gene transcript but may also bring the product of one gene under the transcriptional control of the other. For example, as discussed at length in Chapter 75, the Philadelphia chromosome, found in most cases of chronic myelogenous leukemia, results from a reciprocal translocation between the *c-abl* gene on chromosome 9 and a region termed the *breakpoint cluster region* (bcr) on chromosome 22. The fusion gene produced by this chromosomal rearrangement, consisting of most of the *c-abl* gene and a truncated bcr, codes for a c-abl protein that is larger than the normal product, has increased enzymatic activity, and is thought to interfere with signal transduction pathways normally involved in the control of cell death and proliferation.

It is both the type of mutation and its location in relation to the gene that determine the ultimate effect on the protein product. Mutations may have no effect on protein expression or functional activity; many human proteins exist in detectable variants that have no disease association. Mutations occurring in intron regions presumably have no effect at all. Even small mutations, however, in regions that code for key functional domains (exons) may drastically alter or eliminate function. "Nonsense mutations," mutations that change an amino acid codon to a stop codon, or vice versa, result in abnormally short or long protein products, respectively. *Missense mutations*, those that change the code from one amino acid to another, may or may not alter protein function, depending on the change and the function of the amino acid. Similarly, mutations within sequences that denote intron-exon splice sites could eliminate exons or introduce introns into the transcribed mRNA. Mutations may also occur in regulatory sequences, such as promoters or enhancers, producing dramatic effects on the levels of transcription.

NUCLEIC ACID ANALYSES

The unique biochemical properties of nucleic acids have been exploited to yield information about the biology or biochemistry of a system. While some of the assays, such as electrophoresis, are applicable to other biochemical building blocks such as proteins and lipids, the majority are particular to nucleic acids. The following sections briefly describe the principles of the basic categories of analyses used to characterize DNA and RNA: electrophoretic separations, hybridization assays, amplification techniques, sequencing, and polymorphism-based analyses. In practice, the categories are often combined to produce novel variations of the same theme—for example, a complete assay may involve amplification, electrophoresis, and hybridization.

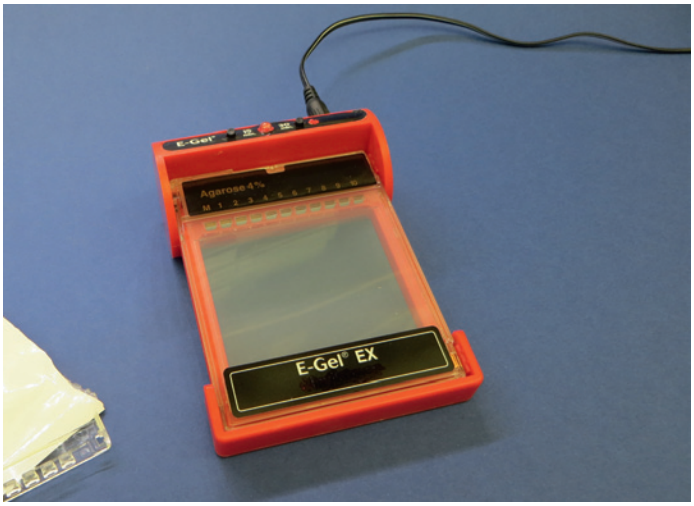


Figure 66-7 **Photograph of precast agarose gel requiring no additional buffer for electrophoresis of DNA.**

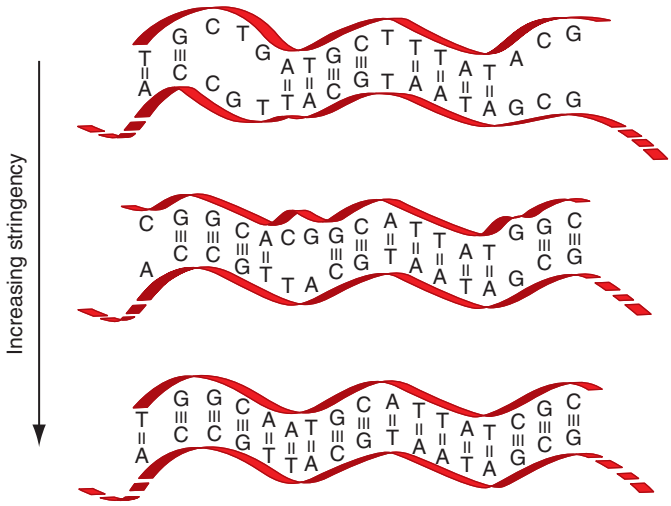


Figure 66-8 **Illustration of stringency.** As the stringency of the hybridization solution is increased, fewer mismatches are tolerated in a hybrid duplex. At very high stringency, even a single base pair mismatch disrupts the duplex.

ELECTROPHORETIC SEPARATION

The repeating sugar-phosphate backbone of nucleic acids results in a net negative charge evenly distributed over these linear molecules. Therefore, DNA or RNA migrates toward the positive charge in response to an electric field. This property is used to characterize the size of nucleic acid fragments by electrophoretic separation. Samples are applied in separate wells at one end of a solid but porous separation medium. When an electric current is applied, the samples move toward the positive electrode in a linear fashion, each sample well forming one lane of migration. Comparison of the distance of migration of an unknown sample with that of a known standard allows size determination.

Density and length of the gel, as well as the strength of the electric current, can be varied to achieve resolution for different DNA fragment sizes. Commercial electrophoresis systems offer standardized conditions to ensure reproducibility. Traditionally the gel was submerged in buffer, but current systems offer enclosed gel cassettes that do not require additional liquids (Fig. 66-7). The simplest approach to visualizing the bands separated by electrophoresis is by staining with intercalating dyes (e.g., ethidium bromide), which insert between stacked bases, and viewing with UV transillumination. Direct visualization requires that the band attain a significant concentration. Increased sensitivity may be achieved in some applications that label the nucleic acid fragments with a radioactive or fluorescent tag.

The limitations in required sample concentration and detection sensitivity of classical gel electrophoresis have been addressed by capillary systems. The gel matrix is enclosed in capillary tubing 25 to 100 μm in diameter, with the electric poles on the opposite sites. Samples of nucleic acids enter the capillary on the side of the cathode and are separated according to base size while traveling through the gel. A camera measures light absorbed by fragments passing the end of the tube. Automated systems generate a chromatogram visualizing size and relative concentration as peaks. Capillary electrophoresis is precise enough to detect single-base differences and has been used routinely for Sanger sequencing (see DNA Sequencing later in this chapter).

A further advancement of this principle is the integration of the capillaries on a small cassette or chip. DNA or RNA molecules can be loaded into designated wells on the surface and are driven through polymer-filled micro-channels inside the chip, once the electrical circuits are closed inside an instrument (for example, Bioanalyzer). Nucleic acids are measured and recorded as chromatograph or electrograph (electronic image showing fragment size and separation speed). The system also measures purity and degradation by absorption of 260 and 280 nm wavelengths, providing several parameters of the quantity and quality of nucleic acids samples.

Electrophoretic resolution of high molecular weight genomic DNA requires controlled reduction in size through digestion with restriction enzymes. Restriction enzymes with a relatively simple recognition sequence produce fragments less than 50 kilobase pairs (kb) in length. Extremely large DNA fragments, measured in megabase pairs, are produced from digestion with enzymes with a complex recognition sequence and must be separated in special electrophoretic systems utilizing a pulsed electrical field. Most applications of DNA electrophoresis utilize nondenaturing conditions (i.e., the fragments resolved into bands are double-stranded). By contrast, most RNA separations utilize denaturing conditions (either formamide or glyoxal) to eliminate secondary structure of the single-stranded molecules. RNA molecules, as transcripts of DNA, are "presized" and relatively small, so no digestion is required before electrophoresis.

NUCLEIC ACID HYBRIDIZATION

Hybridization is a fundamental concept in nucleic acid biochemistry; it is defined as the interaction between two single-stranded nucleic acid molecules to form a duplex (double-stranded) molecule based on the complementary base pairing of their respective sequences. Hybridization is a direct consequence of the stable double-stranded structure of DNA under physiologic conditions. As discussed earlier, the helix is formed of two antiparallel strands of DNA held together by the combined strength of many specific hydrogen bonds between complementary base pairs, as well as by hydrophobic shielding of bases from an aqueous environment. Central to the hybridization reaction is the fact that the binding between separate, complementary molecules (strands) is both reversible and base sequence–specific.

When neither DNA strand is labeled, the process of reforming the stable double-stranded structure is referred to as *annealing*. If one strand is labeled (i.e., has a marker that is capable of being detected in some fashion), the labeled strand is referred to as a *probe*, and the process is called *hybridization* because a hybrid molecule is formed between a labeled and unlabeled strand. RNA molecules can also participate in the hybridization process. Base pairing may occur between complementary strands of DNA, between DNA and RNA, and between complementary strands of RNA, resulting in DNA-DNA, DNA-RNA, and RNA-RNA duplex structures. Duplex molecules with exact complementarity in base sequence form the most stable structures, but structures with varying degrees of base pair mismatch may form, depending on the conditions. The relative instability of these mismatched duplexes is reflected in the lowered temperature of their disassociation (lower T_m; see Fig. 66-2).

Environmental conditions can be manipulated to control the degree of base pair mismatching that will be tolerated in a duplex structure (i.e., the *stringency* of the sequence match) (Fig. 66-8). Low stringency refers to conditions such as high salt, low temperature, and no formamide, which favor shielding of hydrophobic bases from the aqueous environment even without perfect alignment; the match need not be perfect. High stringency conditions—high temperature (close to T_m), low salt, and high formamide—will only allow the most perfectly matched duplex structures to remain in a stable helix conformation.

HYBRIDIZATION ASSAYS: BASIC COMPONENTS

When the hybridization reaction is used to analyze the nucleic acid content of an unknown sample, the process is known as a *hybridization assay*. Hybridization assays include a wide variety of formats (see Hybridization Assay Formats) such as Southern blots, northern blots, in situ

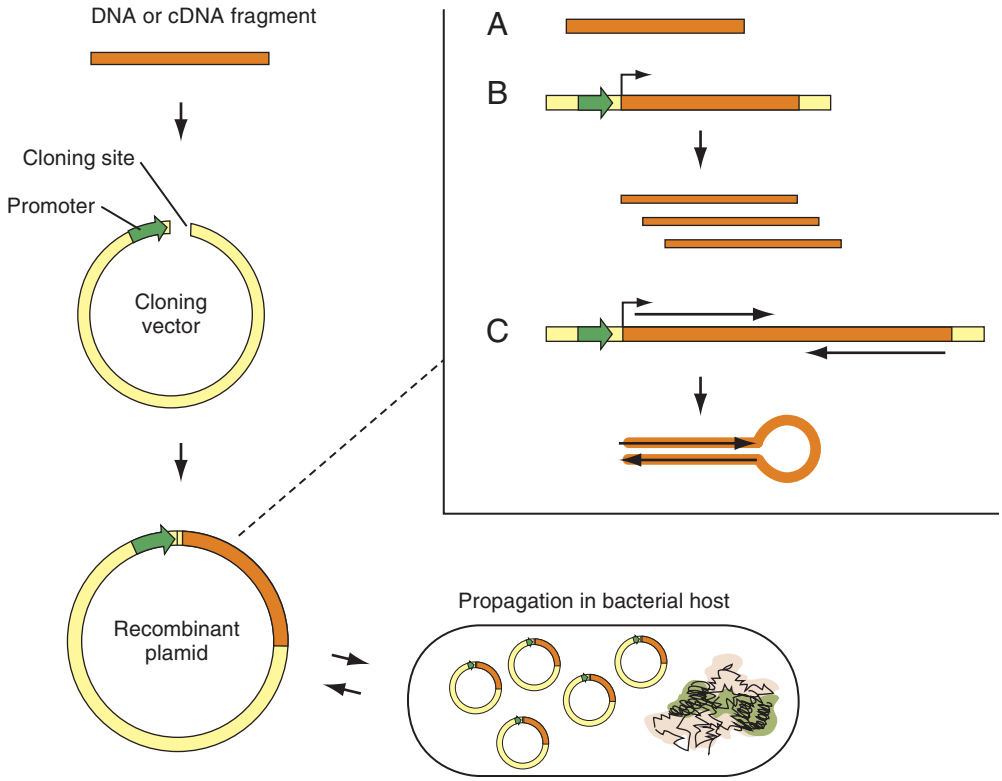


Figure 66-9 **Production of cloned DNA or RNA.** A DNA fragment or RNA that was converted into cDNA can be inserted into a cloning vector. The recombinant plasmid is transformed into a bacterial host, where it is rapidly propagated to millions of copies. The multiplied DNA fragment can either be isolated by excision through restriction enzymes that recognize sequences at the borders of the insert (**A**) or can be used to initiate RNA in vitro transcription with a promoter sequence in the plasmid (**B**). Such systems are also used to produce double-stranded RNA by cloning two complementary sequences in sense and antisense direction, typically with a spacer that forms a stabilizing loop in the dsRNA fragment (**C**).

hybridization (FISH if fluorescence is used for detection), linear arrays, and microarrays ("DNA chips"). The property of complementary base pairing allows fragments of known composition (the probe) to interrogate an unknown for the presence of matching (complementary) sequences. All hybridization assays, therefore, require several basic elements: a probe, a sample, controlled conditions permissive to the desired degree of complementary base pairing, and a method for detection of specific probe-sample hybrids. Each of these elements is discussed below, as well as the variations in formats that have been developed to allow hybridization assays to be performed and interpreted.

Probe

The probe, a well-characterized fragment of nucleic acid, is central to a hybridization assay because it determines the specificity of the hybridization reaction. In most assay formats, the probe carries the reporter group for detection of hybridized molecules into the reaction. Reporter groups may be radioactive or nonradioactive (i.e., affinity label).

Many probes are produced through recombinant nucleic acid technology, as illustrated in Figure 66-9. Plasmids—short, circular, double-stranded segments of DNA—are harnessed as vectors to propagate desired sequences in bacteria. The segment of interest is introduced into the plasmid using restriction enzyme digestion and ligation, resulting in a new "recombined" molecule that retains the ability to be propagated in bacteria and includes the DNA sequence of interest. Bacteria containing the recombinant plasmid can be grown in culture, and the small circular plasmids can be easily separated from the bacterial genome on the basis of size. Many identical copies are obtained; thus the DNA is often referred to as *cloned*. Purified plasmid may be used as a probe in assays where vector sequences do not interfere with the specificity of the reaction. In many applications, the inserted DNA sequence is separated from the vector sequence by digesting the isolated plasmid with the same restriction enzyme originally used in construction of the recombinant molecule. The probe resulting from either of these approaches is a double-stranded DNA molecule. Double-stranded probes must be denatured prior to use, and probe reannealing limits the extent of hybridization of the probe with the target. Plasmid vector that does not contain cloned DNA is a commonly used negative control for this type of probe.

Plasmid vectors have been constructed to include RNA promoter regions adjacent to the inserted DNA sequence. These recombinant plasmids are used to produce RNA transcripts of the DNA insert. The result is a single-stranded RNA probe that will not undergo self-hybridization. Controlling the orientation of the DNA insert with respect to the RNA promoter allows production of transcripts in the *sense* (same as mRNA) or *antisense* (complementary to mRNA) direction. In many applications, the sense transcripts form ideal negative control probes for hybridization reactions with antisense probes. Nonspecifically bound RNA probes (i.e., RNA not in a stable duplex structure) can be removed with the use of RNase specific for single-stranded RNA. The lability of RNA requires that the probes be handled with extreme care to prevent degradation (sterile technique, treated water, and glassware).

Recombinant probes, whether DNA or RNA, are genetically complex—that is, they may include many kilobases of genetic information. By contrast, probes produced by synthetic methods are relatively short segments of DNA. Oligonucleotide probes produced by automated chemical reactions are usually 15 to 45 bases in length, synthesized to produce a specified base sequence. Probes with very high specificity of hybridization can be designed on the basis of sequence information available in data banks. They can be generated in a sense or antisense direction at a relatively low cost. These short probes are single-stranded, diffuse into target, and hybridize rapidly because of their small size, and they are extremely sensitive to even single–base pair mismatches. The final sensitivity achieved with oligonucleotide probes is lower than that achieved with recombinant probes because of their limited genetic complexity. Multiple oligonucleotide probes directed to different areas of the same target have in some instances been used to increase the sensitivity by increasing the representation of the target sequence in the probe mixture. This approach is analogous to the use of a blend of monoclonal antibodies that react to different epitopes of the same complex antigen.

Probes longer than those obtained by direct chemical synthesis may be generated with the polymerase chain reaction or other amplification technology (see later and Chapter 67). These probes may be single-stranded or double-stranded, depending on the conditions employed, and may be as long as the product of the amplification reaction—in most cases, 100 bp to 1 kb in length.

Sample

Whereas probe selection and preparation are central to determining the sensitivity and specificity of the hybridization assay, the contribution of sample preparation to a successful assay cannot be overlooked. In clinical applications, samples of interest may be quite diverse. For example, a microbiology laboratory could anticipate testing specimens of blood, urine, stool, and sputum. Integrity of RNA targets may be difficult to maintain under such conditions, and even DNA may be degraded with improper handling. The goal of sample preparation is to maintain nucleic acid integrity and make the target genetic information available for interaction with the probe. For some applications, the requirement of target integrity will dictate immediate snap freezing or addition of lysis buffers containing potent RNase and DNase inhibitors. In other applications, more routine methods of sample collection will allow adequate target preservation.

The physical and chemical similarities of nucleic acids, regardless of source, allows for uniform methods of extraction and purification. For many assays it is preferable to extensively purify DNA or RNA to remove inhibitors of enzymes to be added to the assay (e.g., a restriction enzyme or polymerase) and to maximize accessibility of the target to the probe. Complete purification schemes, however, are time-consuming and require a relatively large amount of starting sample. In many applications, relatively abbreviated sample purifications can be used. Purifications commonly use cell lysis (mechanical, chemical, or both), protease treatment, and organic or inorganic extractions. Automated methods standardize and streamline sample extraction.

Controlled Conditions Permissive for Complementary Base Pairing

The sensitivity and specificity of the hybridization reaction are greatly influenced by the physical-chemical environment during the reaction and subsequent detection/collection of hybrid molecules. In practice, the hybridization cocktail is the medium used to control the environment of the hybridization reaction. Empirically designed, the *hybridization cocktail* is a mixture of reagents selected to favor interaction of nucleic acids through sequence-specific hydrogen bonds rather than via charge. The components vary widely but include buffers, salts, denaturants such as formamide, high molecular weight polymers, carrier DNA or RNA, and various components added to reduce background (such as detergents, bovine serum albumin, Ficoll). Such a complex mixture is conveniently referred to as a *cocktail*. The ionic strength of both the hybridization cocktail and the subsequent washes is most often modulated by the concentration of a *s*aline *s*odium *c*itrate buffer (SSC), composed of 0.15 mol/L sodium chloride, 0.015 mol/L trisodium citrate, pH 7.0. The shorthand notation for these conditions refers to the strength of SSC—that is, 2 × SSC, 0.1 × SSC. The final stringency of the hybridization reaction is controlled by the formamide and salt concentration of the hybridization cocktail, the temperature of the hybridization reaction, and the temperature and salt concentration of the washing steps.

Detection of Hybrids

A wide variety of techniques have been applied to collection and analysis of specific nucleic acid hybrids, discussed briefly later under Hybridization Assay Formats. Once specific hybrids have been collected, methods of detection are obviously linked to methods of labeling. The first methods used radioactive labels such as phosphorus-32 (^{32}P), iodine-125 (^{125}I), sulfur-35 (^{35}S), carbon-14 (^{14}C), and tritium (^{3}H) that were detected through autoradiography or scintillation counting. Because radioactive probes are unstable due to their relatively short half-life, are hazardous to laboratory personnel, and generate expensive waste disposal problems, they have been replaced by nonradioactive methods. Nonisotopically labeled probes are stable reagents, greatly facilitating the commercial production and standardization that are crucial for assay reproducibility.

Nonisotopic labeling and detection methods for nucleic acids have many similarities to immunochemical assays developed for nonisotopic protein detection. In some applications, nucleic acids are directly linked to a signal-generating compound, usually a fluorochrome but occasionally an enzyme. This situation is analogous to immunoassays in which the primary antibody is labeled. More commonly, nucleic acids are indirectly detected in a multistep assay similar in concept to an indirect antibody reaction. Biotin, a commonly used affinity label for immunoassays, was the first affinity label introduced into nucleic acids (Langer et al, 1981). Many other functional groups have been developed as nonisotopic labels such as bromodeoxyuridine, digoxigenin, and sulfone. Detection is achieved with high-affinity antibodies directed against the functional group or, in the case of biotin, with avidin or streptavidin. The antibody or avidin/streptavidin is linked to a signal-generating enzyme or fluorochrome, functioning like a labeled secondary antibody in an immunohistochemistry reaction. Because affinity labels are detected with large bulky proteins, availability of the label to the detection reagent is a crucial factor in determination of sensitivity. Increasing the number of affinity tags will not necessarily increase the number of detecting molecules that will be bound to the nucleic acid. In addition, because affinity labels are themselves bulky, overincorporation into the nucleic acid molecule can lead to steric hindrance of the hybridization reaction. For these reasons, the specific activity of the affinity label does not directly control the sensitivity of the detection.

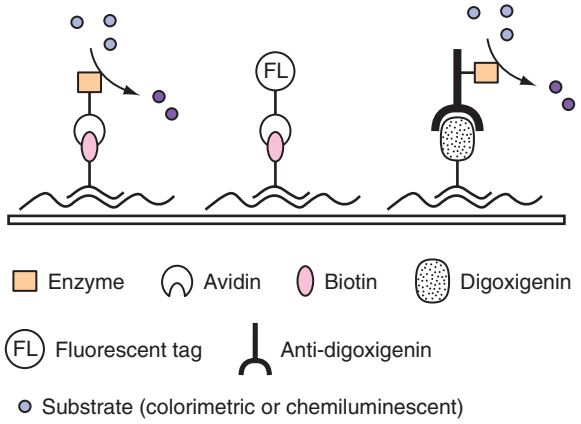


Figure 66-10 **Examples of affinity-labeled probe detection systems.** (From Unger ER, Piper MA: Nucleic acid biochemistry and diagnostic applications. In Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, editors: *Tietz textbook of clinical chemistry*, ed 2. Philadelphia, 1994, WB Saunders, with permission.)

One advantage of the indirect detection of affinity labels is that a variety of detection methods can be used for the same label (Fig. 66-10). For example, the affinity label biotin may be detected by binding to avidin linked to an enzyme with subsequent color or chemiluminescent detection, or avidin with a fluorescent tag or a labeled antibiotin antibody. For all nonradioactive methods, the detection portion of the assay is crucial in obtaining optimal sensitivity. Detection reagents with poor background and suboptimal signal generation can mar an effective hybridization reaction. The choice of the enzyme labels (peroxidase vs. alkaline phosphatase), enzyme substrate (colorimetric vs. chemiluminescent), and even source of reagents are critical for optimal results.

HYBRIDIZATION ASSAY FORMATS

A wide variety of hybridization assay formats have been developed, each designed to solve the methodologic problems of the hybridization assay: conditions permitting specific complementary base pairing, a method to detect hybrids, and interpretation of the result. Each method has particular strengths and weaknesses, and the clinical setting and particular diagnostic question dictate selection of format. There is no one perfect assay. Several of the basic formats are briefly described herein, along with their particular strengths and weaknesses.

Each hybridization assay requires both positive and negative controls for validation. A positive sample control is one known to contain sequences complementary to the probe. This is used to establish that sample preparation is adequate to release the target for the hybridization assay and to ensure that the probe will hybridize with the specific target under the assay conditions. The sample control may also be used to monitor the sensitivity of the assay if the positive control is chosen near the lower limits of detection. A negative sample control (i.e., one known not to contain sequences complementary to the probe) is used to monitor specificity of the probe target interactions. Controls for the probe include vector sequences or unrelated probes labeled, hybridized, and detected under identical assay conditions. These latter controls allow monitoring of the background signal generated by localization of the probe through nonhybridized interactions, such as charge or trapping. In clinical practice, additional controls may be employed to monitor each step of the hybridization assay.

Liquid or Solution Phase Hybridization

In liquid hybridization assays, both the sample and the probe interact in solution, which maximizes the kinetics of the reaction. The sample nucleic acids are generally purified from contaminating proteins and lipids, which

could interfere with the collection of hybrids at the end of the assay, and some sample degradation is tolerated by the assay. The sample is denatured and randomly sheared before addition of a single-stranded probe lacking the ability to self-hybridize.

Hybridization may be detected by the specific binding of hybrids to a solid matrix such as hydroxyapatite, which binds only duplex structures. Once hybrids are bound, unhybridized probe may be efficiently removed by washing. Detection of the label on the bound probe permits quantitation of the hybridization reaction. In a variation of this approach, one commercial assay (Digene Hybrid-Capture, Qiagen USA, Valencia, Calif.) uses an antibody specific for RNA-DNA hybrids to specifically bind duplex structures formed of the DNA target and RNA probe. An alternative analysis involves digestion of the hybridization reaction mixture with S1 nuclease, an enzyme that acts only on single-stranded nucleic acid. Duplex structures resistant to digestion may then be precipitated by treatment with trichloroacetic acid. In the hybridization protection assay, label on the probe is protected from chemical degradation only when the probe is involved in a duplex structure.

Optimal kinetics, toleration for abbreviated purification steps, and some sample degradation make the assay adaptable for clinical application. Quantitation of the reaction product may be achieved, depending on the detection system. The solution phase format does not permit identification of the size of the hybridizing product. Low positive reactions are difficult to interpret because low levels of specific target and high levels of weakly cross-reacting target will yield similar results. Solution phase hybridization is adaptable to the 96-well format with an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay–type readout, and increasing automation and miniaturization of the assay using microfluidic devices can be anticipated.

Solid-Support Hybridization

Variations of the solid-support hybridization assays include dot or linear array hybridization, Southern and northern hybridization, microarray hybridizations ("DNA chips" or "bead arrays"), and in situ hybridization. In these assays, the hybridization occurs in a biphasic environment—a solid phase (usually sample) and a liquid phase (usually probe). The kinetics of hybridization to a nucleic acid bound to a solid support is greatly slowed, and the extent of the hybridization reaction is limited. These disadvantages are often outweighed by the convenience of having a solid medium to carry through multiple steps of the assay.

Dot or Linear Array Hybridization

In this assay format, multiple samples are immobilized in a geometric array on a nitrocellulose or nylon membrane. The name of the assay comes from the shape of each sample on the membrane. The solid matrix allows multiple samples to be processed through all steps of the assay simultaneously. The fact that all samples and controls are exposed to exactly the same reagents and conditions increases the standardization of the assay.

The extent of sample preparation varies from complete purification of nucleic acids before application to the filter, to direct application of unpurified sample. Some degree of sample degradation is tolerated by the assay. Purified nucleic acids have the advantage of being most available for interaction with the probe and having the least problems with background. Individual sample purification, however, is time-consuming and labor intensive. Applications using direct application of unpurified sample take the entire array through an abbreviated purification procedure, which usually involves lysis and denaturation, protein digestion, and washing with detergent. The advantages of this approach are that it is applicable to small amounts of starting material and minimizes sample preparation time. However, the final sensitivity of the reaction is lower, and background from nonspecific probe interactions can make the assay unreliable.

Interpretation of the results of a dot/blot hybridization assay is relatively straightforward. If hybridization has occurred, a signal is generated in the specified spot. Depending on the label used for signal generation, results may be quantitated; however, usually a simple yes/no interpretation is given (i.e., the sample has more or less signal than adjacent samples and known positive and negative controls). Weak signals, which may result from a very small amount of specific target or from a large amount of weakly cross-reacting target, may cause problems in interpretation. No information is available about the size of the hybridizing fragments.

The reverse line blot assay is an important variation where the sample is tested with many different probes. In this format the sample carries the label into the assay and the unlabeled probes, or targets, are fixed to the solid support in a linear or matrix array. Areas of specific hybrid formation are identified and interpreted as in the standard dot assay. This assay format is a convenient means of identifying the product of an amplification assay (see later in this chapter and also Chapter 67), such as in human leucocyte antigen analysis (Bugawan et al, 1994) or human papillomavirus typing (Gravitt et al, 1998).

Southern and Northern Hybridizations

Both Southern and northern hybridizations combine electrophoretic separation of test nucleic acid with transfer to a solid support and subsequent hybridization. These assays, therefore, not only give information about the presence of hybridization but also permit determination of the molecular weight of the hybridizing species.

The original procedure was termed *Southern blot hybridization* or *Southern blotting*, after its inventor, E. M. Southern (Southern, 1975). In this assay, the sample is DNA. Northern blotting was named by analogy for the technique using RNA samples. Sample preparation is time-consuming and labor intensive for both of these techniques. Degradation of sample nucleic acids is not tolerated by the assays, and a relatively large amount of starting material is required. For Southern hybridizations, the DNA must be purified with minimal shearing. This is because sizing of the DNA fragments is achieved through digestion with one or more restriction enzymes. Shearing and degradation introduce random breaks in the sample, reducing the quantity available to be specifically cut at appropriate restriction enzyme recognition sequences. Impurities in the sample may interfere with the activity and sequence specificity of the restriction enzyme. Partially or improperly digested samples can produce spurious band sizes or result in such a reduced concentration of the specific band that it is no longer detected during hybridization. For northern hybridizations, the starting material is RNA, and extreme care must be taken to avoid degradation during sample collection and preparation because of the ubiquitous nature of RNases. RNA is composed of fragment sizes determined by transcription and processing of message and ribosomal RNA. It is not digested before electrophoresis but is separated under denaturing conditions to remove secondary structure.

The size-separated fragments in the agarose gel are then transferred to a nylon or nitrocellulose filter. As originally designed, the transfer occurred passively through capillary action, but vacuum or pressure can be used to speed the transfer. After transfer, baking or UV cross-linking immobilizes the nucleic acids, and the entire membrane is hybridized with a labeled probe, followed by detection to identify bands containing sequences complementary to the probe. Interpretation involves both detection and determination of the molecular weight of the hybridizing molecule. These technically demanding assays require several days to perform but were used in clinical laboratories before amplification methods were refined sufficiently to replace them.

Microarray Hybridization ("DNA Chip Technology" or "Bead Arrays")

Microarray hybridizations can be thought of as a variation of the dot blot format, in which the dotted material is arranged in a regular gridlike pattern, with each feature reduced to a very small size so that hundreds to thousands of features can be placed on one solid surface, currently most often a glass microscope slide. By convention in these applications, the sample is labeled and the arrayed features are referred to as *probes*. Microarrays allow genome-wide transcription profiling or sequence determination in a single experiment. Probes can also be bound to microbeads coded by embedded fluorescence and detected with flow techniques, similar to bead-based immunoassays. The technique and applications are described in greater detail in Chapter 67.

In Situ Hybridization

In situ hybridization is simply detection of specific genetic information within a morphologic context. This specialized type of solid-support assay involves taking morphologically intact tissue, cells, or chromosomes affixed to a glass microscope slide through the hybridization process. Autoradiographic, colorimetric, and fluorescent methods of detection have been applied. Evaluation of the final product is very analogous to evaluation of immunohistochemistry and requires experience in histopathology. The strength of the method lies in linking microscopic morphologic evaluation with detection of hybridization.

The method also has applications in cytogenetic analysis of metaphase chromosome spreads or of interphase nuclei (see Chapter 68). In this context, the detection is usually fluorescent, and the technique is referred to as FISH. Detecting numerical aberrations or translocations of chromosomal regions can be achieved rapidly using probes for specific targets. FISH avoids some of the difficulties of conventional cytogenetics and may have greater sensitivity for some targets. Although FISH cannot completely replace karyotyping, it can complement and reduce the need

for the frequency of cytogenetic analysis. Newer variations of FISH (Luke & Shepelsky, 1998) are exploiting the possibilities of automation (fast-FISH) and expanding the information that can be obtained in a single assay. FICTION (*f*luorescence *i*mmunophenotyping and interphase *c*ytogenetics as a *t*ool for *i*nvestigation *o*f *n*eoplasms) combines immunophenotyping with FISH; fiber FISH makes it possible to simultaneously detect and map chromosomal break points. In situ hybridization can be very labor intensive and tedious. Recent improvements resulting in automated processing of slides through the assay hold much promise for more widespread adoption of this technique.

AMPLIFICATION METHODS

It is virtually impossible to read any medical journal without encountering at least one application of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technology. The PCR has forever changed the scope of research questions that can be addressed by virtually eliminating the problem of limited sample size. The importance and elegance of the concept has been recognized through awarding of the Nobel Prize in Chemistry to its inventor, Kary Mullis, less than 10 years after publication of the first practical application of PCR (Saiki et al, 1985). There are now other methodologies that result in multiplication of target, probe, or signal. These may be grouped together as amplification technologies and are described in Chapter 67.

POLYMORPHISM DETECTION ASSAYS

Although greater than 99% of the human genome is identical in all individuals, there are still millions of regions in which there is some variability in DNA sequence among individuals. While most polymorphisms have no recognized functional consequence, changes in promoter or enhancer regions may result in altered transcription regulation, cause variation in the mRNA splice products if present in intron-exon junctions, or produce altered amino acid sequences if an exon is affected. The serotonin transporter gene, for instance, exists in two alternative allelic variants characterized by a 44-bp insertion/deletion polymorphism in the promoter region. This polymorphism has been associated with major depressive disorders, and the two allelic versions can be distinguished by PCR amplification of the relevant DNA region, resulting in two different-sized products (Fig. 66-11). Most of the variations occur in the form of an individual base change known as single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs). An example would be the alteration of a DNA fragment ACGT to ACTT by replacement of the third base from a guanine to a thymine. Two unrelated individuals will have approximately 3 million SNPs that differ between them.

Because of the tremendous potential of polymorphism assays to predict inheritance of altered alleles, and changes that predict drug interactions (see Chapter 73), considerable effort has been made in recent years to improve the speed, precision, and cost effectiveness of these methods. The completion of the Human Genome Project in 2001 provided a reference against which all other sequencing data can be compared. Researchers are also systematically screening the genome to discover new SNPs. High-throughput SNP analysis methods have been developed that simultaneously scan thousands of SNPs in thousands of samples. Comprehensive mapping of an individual's SNP pattern is also termed *genotyping*. Genotyping is somewhat easier, in that one form of the known gene sequence (allele) can be compared with an alternative form at a specific predetermined site. Currently there are a wide variety of approaches for allelic discrimination that typically use a combination of molecular techniques. For more information, see Chen and Sullivan (2003).

DNA SEQUENCING

The first methods for directly determining the base sequence of DNA became available in the 1970s. Until recently, almost all sequencing was based on the Sanger method, which utilizes enzymatic incorporation of chain terminating di-deoxynucleotides (Fig. 66-12). Originally prohibitively time-consuming and expensive for diagnostic applications, automation and miniaturization have resulted in instrumentation capable of more rapidly and less expensively sequencing segments of DNA. Sequencing the first human genome was completed by the Human Genome Project in 2001 using the Sanger method.

The rapidly evolving field of "next-generation" sequencing (NGS) has produced a variety of different platforms and sequencing chemistries that allow extremely high-throughput sequencing based on massively parallel sequencing in flow cells (Voelkerding et al, 2009; see Chapter 78). Consequently, NGS technology has revolutionized genomic research through increased throughput and decreased costs. It is now becoming possible to sequence an entire genome at a turnaround time acceptable for clinical applications. Currently the diagnostic clinical utility of a complete human genome sequence is still being evaluated, but the knowledge of genetic and genomic sequence alterations has great potential to impact clinical pathology. Direct sequencing is being used to determine viral types (e.g., human papillomavirus), bacteria, and other pathogens. The greatest advances are made in cancer oncology to identify key mutations in oncology (e.g., BRCA1 and BRCA2), to define the causes of inherited diseases, or to use genome-wide mutation profiles for individualized medicine, care, and treatment. Further explorations of how to use an individual's genome for clinical management are underway (Ashley et al, 2010). NGS methods can also be applied to evaluate the transcriptome and are beginning to rival microarray technology in many applications.

RELATIONSHIP TO LABORATORY EVALUATION OF DISEASE

Subsequent chapters describe the current applications of molecular diagnostics. It is clear that these new technologies have impacted all areas of laboratory diagnosis. Molecular methods also have the potential to redefine laboratory evaluation of disease to include issues beyond disease diagnosis.

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS

The advantages of a molecular approach to diagnosis are described in detail for each aspect of current application. Increased automation and commercially designed methods have reduced costs and the level of technical expertise required to perform the tests. Increasingly, molecular technology is being integrated into the mainstream of laboratory testing.

Detecting mutations and associating them with disease are at the heart of the current explosion of information in medical science and of many

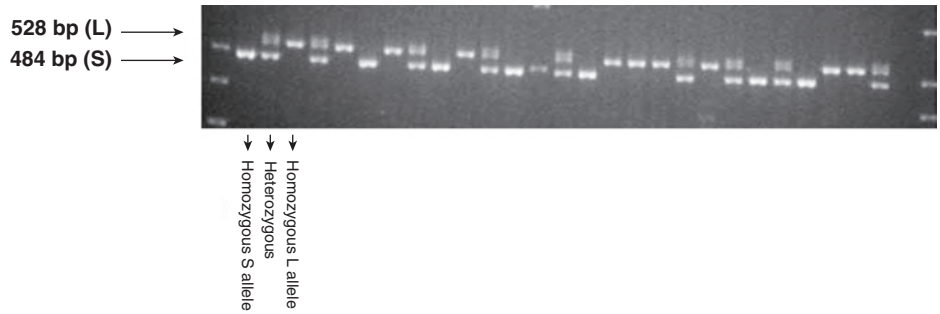


Figure 66-11 Example of polymorphism analysis by gel electrophoresis (allelic typing of the serotonin transporter gene [5-HTTLPR]). A polymorphism consisting of a 44-bp insertion/deletion polymorphism in the 5′ regulatory region is suggested to be associated with major depressive disorder. The presence of the two different alleles can be screened using PCR primers upstream and downstream of the site, producing fragments of distinct length. The amplicons are then separated by gel electrophoresis and stained with ethidium bromide. An individual is either homozygous for the long version (L allele = upper band), heterozygous with both alleles (two bands), or homozygous for the short version (S allele = lower band). *PCR,* Polymerase chain reaction. (Photo courtesy Drs. I. Dimulescu and M. Rajeevan.)

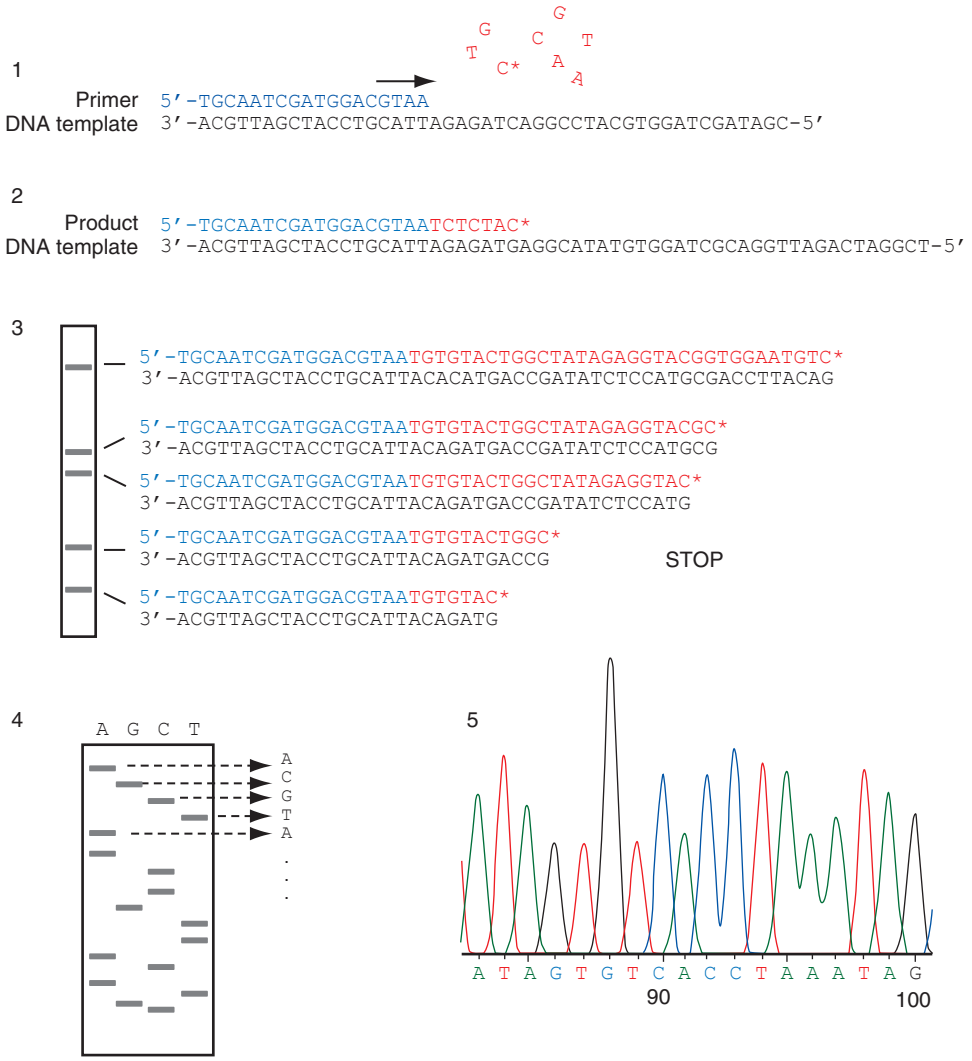


Figure 66-12 **Principle of the Sanger DNA sequencing method.**

1. A short primer (in blue) is annealed to a known sequence in the DNA template. In the presence of the four "usual" deoxynucleotides (dATP, dCTP, dGTP, dTTP) and an additional di-deoxynucleotide at a low concentration, here ddCTP (marked with an asterisk), DNA polymerase initiates synthesis.
2. When ddCTP is incorporated, further polymerization cannot occur because it lacks the 3′-OH group required to accommodate another nucleotide (see Fig. 66-1) and the chain is terminated.
3. Random incorporation of ddCTP generates a series of DNA strands of different sizes, all ending at "C." These products start with the same primer sequence and are sized by electrophoresis to determine the position of each "C."
4. Dividing the reaction into four tubes, each with a different dideoxynucleotide, and electrophoresing all four reactions in parallel allow the complete sequence to be read from the order of the bands in each of the ladders of each lane.
5. Most current applications use fluorescently tagged ddNTPs, each with a different-color dye. With this approach, the reaction is in a single tube and products are separated in a single lane. A laser is used to record the wavelength and order of the bands.

applications in molecular diagnostics. One of the most important consequences of the revolution in molecular genetics has been the ability to locate a gene responsible for a disease without knowing the protein product. Termed *positional cloning*, this process uses genomic mapping and linkage analysis of families that carry and express the disease to locate markers closer and closer to the disease gene until it is ultimately located. Closely linked genomic changes markers that tend to segregate with disease may be used in clinically useful diagnostic tests even before the gene is completely characterized and the protein product finally identified. In this scenario, molecular diagnostic tests are developed and used first, to be replaced by simpler, more cost-effective methods directed at the level of the gene product when the consequence of mutation is fully understood.

BEYOND DIAGNOSIS

Molecular analyses have the potential to greatly expand the role of the laboratory in areas beyond disease diagnosis. Molecular analysis of the somatic mutations in cancer has the potential to provide prognostic information, guide selection of optimal therapy, and monitor response to therapy. The implications of using molecular markers to detect neoplastic cells in the absence of clinical or morphologic evidence of disease, known as *minimal residual disease*, are now being explored in a variety of malignancy types (see Chapter 74). This approach of using molecular markers for disease detection can also be anticipated to impact secondary methods of cancer prevention (screening) and assessment of adequacy of surgical resection (evaluation of margins). Gene therapy for inherited genetic disease as well as cancer is being introduced based on a detailed understanding of the underlying disease. Monitoring these patients for the presence and activity of the introduced therapeutic gene will add another aspect to the laboratory evaluation of disease as the application to personalized medicine continues to develop (see also Chapter 73).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Alberts B, Johnson A, Lewis J, et al: *Molecular biology of the cell*, ed 6, New York, 2014, Garland Publishing.

An excellent, clearly written textbook of molecular biology. The fourth edition is available in searchable format through the NCBI bookshelf website: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?db=Books.

Cech TR, Steitz JA: The noncoding RNA revolution—Trashing old rules to forge new ones, *Cell* 157:77–94, 2014.

Review of noncoding RNA.

Fire A, Xu S, Montgomery MK, et al: Potent and specific genetic interference by double-stranded RNA in *Caenorhabditis elegans*, *Nature* 391:806–811, 1998.

First description of RNAi in animal cells.

Langer PR, Waldrop AA, Ward DC: Enzymatic synthesis of biotin-labeled polynucleotides: Novel nucleic acid affinity probes, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 78:6633–6637, 1981.

First description of affinity-labeled nucleotides that achieved sensitivity of detection required for eventual replacement of radioactive methods.

Papavassiliou AG: Transcription factors, *N Engl J Med* 332:45–47, 1995.

From the "Molecular Medicine" series in the New England Journal of Medicine, *a brief review of transcription factors and their importance in medicine.*

Rosenthal N: Regulation of gene expression, *N Engl J Med* 331:931–933, 1994.

From the "Molecular Medicine" series in the New England Journal of Medicine, *a brief review of the regulation of gene expression and relevance to disease.*

Saiki RK, Scharf S, Faloona F, et al: Enzymatic amplification of β-globin genomic sequences and restriction site analysis for the diagnosis of sickle-cell anemia, *Science* 230:1350–1354, 1985.

Original description of the polymerase chain reaction.

Southern EM: Detection of specific sequences among DNA fragments separated by gel electrophoresis, *J Mol Biol* 98:503–517, 1975.

Original description of electrophoretic separation of DNA fragments, transfer to filter, and hybridization for identification.

REFERENCES

Ashley EA, Butte AJ, Wheeler MT, et al: Clinical assessment incorporating a personal genome, *Lancet* 375:1525–1535, 2010.

Bugawan TL, Apple R, Erlich H: A method for typing polymorphism as the HLA-A locus using PCR amplification and immobilized oligonucleotide probes, *Tissue Antigens* 44:137–147, 1994.

Chen X, Sullivan PF: Single nucleotide polymorphism genotyping: Biochemistry, protocol, cost and throughput, *Pharmacogenomics J* 3:77–96, 2003.

Fica SM, Tuttle N, Novack T, et al: RNA catalyses nuclear pre-mRNA splicing, *Nature* 503:229–234, 2013.

Gravitt PE, Peyton CL, Apple RJ, et al: Genotyping of 27 human papillomavirus types by using L1 consensus PCR products by a single-hybridization, reverse line blot detection method, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:3020–3027, 1998.

Hanawalt PC: Transcription-coupled repair and human disease, *Science* 266:1957–1958, 1994.

Iorio MV, Croce CM: MicroRNAs in cancer: Small molecules with a huge impact, *J Clin Oncol* 27:5848–5856, 2009.

Kan YW: Development of DNA analyses for human diseases: Sickle cell anemia and thalassemia as paradigm, *JAMA* 267:1532–1536, 1992.

Liechti-Gallati S, Koenig M, Kunkel LM, et al: Molecular deletion patterns in Duchenne and Becker type muscular dystrophy, *Hum Genet* 81:343–348, 1989.

Luke S, Shepelsky M: FISH: Recent advances and diagnostic aspects, *Cell Vis* 5:49–53, 1998.

Moazed D: Small RNAs in transcriptional gene silencing and genome defence, *Nature* 457:413–420, 2009.

Modrich P: Mismatch repair, genetic stability, and cancer, *Science* 266:1959–1960, 1994.

Pingoud A, Jeltsch A: Structure and function of type II restriction endonucleases, *Nucleic Acids Res* 29:3705–3727, 2001.

Radman M, Wagner R: The high fidelity of DNA duplication, *Sci Am* 259:40–46, 1988.

Sancar A: Mechanisms of DNA excision repair, *Science* 266:1954–1956, 1994.

Sharp PA: RNA splicing and genes, *JAMA* 260:3035–3041, 1988.

Sutherland GR, Richards RI: Dynamic mutations, *Sci Am* 82:157–163, 1994.

Virshup DM: DNA replication, *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 2:453–460, 1990.

Voelkerding KV, Dames SA, Durtschi JD: Next-generation sequencing: From basic research to diagnostics, *Clin Chem* 55:641–658, 2009.

Weatherall DJ: Molecular pathology of single gene disorders, *J Clin Pathol* 40:959–970, 1987.

Weeda G, de Boer J, Donker I, et al: Molecular basis of DNA repair mechanisms and syndromes, *Rec Results Cancer Res* 154:147–155, 1998.

Yu Z, Chen J, Ford BN, et al: Human DNA repair systems: An overview, *Environ Mol Mutagen* 33:3–20, 1999.

CHAPTER 67

POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION AND OTHER NUCLEIC ACID AMPLIFICATION TECHNOLOGY

Frederick S. Nolte, Julie Woolworth Hirschhorn, Charles E. Hill

TARGET AMPLIFICATION METHODS, 1316
Polymerase Chain Reaction, 1316
Transcription-Based Amplification, 1321
Strand-Displacement Amplification, 1322
Loop-Mediated Amplification, 1323
Helicase-Dependent Amplification, 1324
Nicking Endonuclease Amplification, 1324
PROBE AMPLIFICATION METHODS, 1324
Cleavase/Invader Technology, 1324
SIGNAL AMPLIFICATION METHODS, 1324
Branched DNA, 1326
Hybrid Capture Assays, 1326
SUMMARY, 1326
SELECTED REFERENCES, 1326

KEY POINTS

- Nucleic amplification technology has created new opportunities for the clinical laboratory to affect patient care.
- Although the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is the most mature and widely used nucleic acid amplification method, other methods have diagnostic applications.
- Clinical applications of the technology cut across the traditional disciplines in laboratory medicine.
- An understanding of the basic principles and relative strengths and limitations of the nucleic amplification methods is important for all involved in the practice of clinical pathology.
- The development of the PCR by Mullis and colleagues (Saiki et al, 1988) was a milestone in biotechnology that heralded the beginning of molecular diagnostics. Although PCR is the most widely used nucleic acid amplification method, other approaches have been developed, and several have unique properties and advantages. These methods are based on target, probe, or signal amplification. Examples of each category are discussed in this chapter. These techniques have analytical sensitivity unparalleled in laboratory medicine, creating new opportunities for the clinical laboratory to impact patient care.

TARGET AMPLIFICATION METHODS

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), transcription-based amplification, and strand displacement amplification are all examples of target amplification methods. These methods share certain fundamental characteristics. They are enzyme-mediated processes in which a single enzyme or multiple enzymes synthesize copies of target nucleic acid. The amplification products in all the techniques are defined by two oligonucleotide primers that bind to complementary sequences on opposite strands of double-stranded targets. All result in the production of millions to billions of copies of the targeted sequence in a matter of hours, and, in each case, the amplification products can serve as templates for subsequent rounds of amplification. Consequently, all the techniques are sensitive to contamination with product molecules from previous amplifications, which can lead to false-positive reactions. However, special laboratory design, practices, and workflow have been developed to reduce the possibility of false-positive reactions to acceptable levels.

POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION

PCR is a simple in vitro chemical reaction that permits the synthesis of essentially limitless quantities of a targeted nucleic acid sequence. This is accomplished through the action of a deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) polymerase that, under the right conditions, can copy a strand of DNA. At its simplest, a PCR consists of target DNA, a molar excess of two oligonucleotide primers, a heat-stable DNA polymerase, an equimolar mixture of deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates (dATP, dCTP, dGTP, and dTTP), $MgCl_2$, KCl, and a Tris-HCl buffer. The two primers flank the sequence to be amplified, are typically 18 to 30 bases long, and are complementary to opposite strands of the target.

To initiate a PCR, the reaction mixture is heated to separate the two strands of target DNA (denaturation) and then cooled to permit the primers to anneal to the target DNA in a sequence-specific manner (annealing) (Fig. 67-1). The DNA polymerase then initiates extension of each primer at its 3′ end (extension). The primer extension products are dissociated from the target DNA by heating. Each extension product, as well as the original target, can serve as a template for subsequent rounds of primer annealing and extension.

A PCR cycle consists of three steps: denaturation, annealing, and extension. At the end of each cycle, the PCR products are theoretically doubled. Thus after n PCR cycles, the target sequence can be amplified 2^n-fold. The whole procedure is carried out in a programmable thermal cycler that precisely controls the temperature at which the steps occur, the length of time that the reaction is held at the different temperatures, and the number of cycles. Ideally, after 20 cycles of PCR, a million-fold amplification is achieved, and after 30 cycles, a billion-fold. In practice, the amplification may not be completely efficient because of failure to optimize the reaction conditions or the presence of inhibitors of the DNA polymerase. In such cases, the total amplification is best described by the expression $(1 + e)^n$, where e is the amplification efficiency ($0 < e < 1$) and n is the total number of cycles.

Reverse-Transcriptase Polymerase Chain Reaction

PCR, as it was originally described, was a technique for DNA amplification. Reverse-transcriptase PCR (RT-PCR) was developed to amplify ribonucleic acid (RNA) targets. In this process, complementary DNA (cDNA) is first produced from RNA targets by reverse transcription, and then the cDNA is amplified by PCR. As originally described, RT-PCR employed two enzymes: a heat-labile RT such as avian myeloblastosis virus reverse transcriptase (AMV-RT) and a thermostable DNA polymerase. Because of the temperature requirements of the heat-labile enzyme, cDNA synthesis had to occur at lower temperatures. This presented problems both in terms of the nonspecific primer annealing and inefficient primer extension due to formation of RNA secondary structures. These problems have been largely overcome by the development of thermostable DNA polymerases derived from *Thermus* species, which, under the proper conditions, can function efficiently as both an RT and a DNA polymerase (Myers & Gelfand, 1991; Schönbrunner et al, 2006). RT-PCRs using these enzymes are more specific and efficient than previous protocols using conventional, heat-labile RT enzymes. Commercially available kits employing this

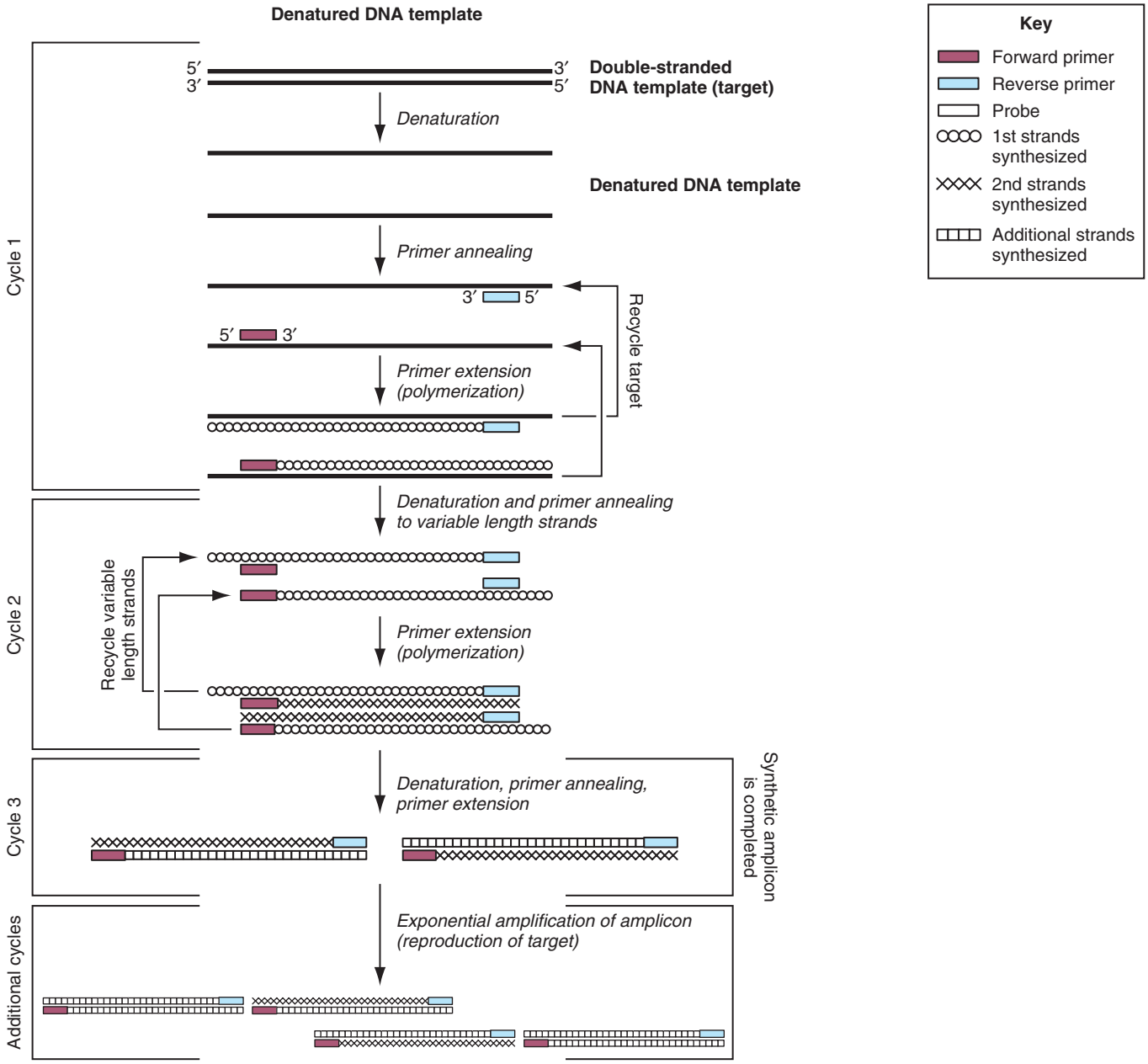


Figure 67-1 **Polymerase chain reaction.** (Redrawn from Wolk D, Mitchell S, Patel R: Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. *Infect Dis Clin N Am* 15:1157–1204, 2008.)

single-enzyme RT-PCR are available for detection of a variety of RNA targets in clinical specimens. RNA targets may present problems due to secondary or tertiary structure that may require special conditions or alternative target sites for efficient cDNA synthesis.

While the single enzyme RT-PCR has improved specificity and efficiency for problematic targets, there remain many applications that use a two-enzyme system. Modified heat-labile RT enzymes and optimized mixtures of reverse transcriptases with improved specificity and efficiency are now commercially available. Performing a separate RT reaction with random sequence primers allows PCR analysis of multiple targets from a single RT reaction. The RT reaction may be performed with oligo-dT primers providing cDNA of the messenger RNAs only. This scheme also allows PCR to be performed for multiple targets from a single RT reaction.

Nested Polymerase Chain Reaction

Nested PCR was developed to increase both the sensitivity and specificity of PCR (Haqqi et al, 1988). It employs two pairs of amplification primers and two rounds of PCR. Typically, one primer pair is used in the first round of PCR of 15 to 30 cycles. The products of the first round of amplification are then subjected to a second round of amplification using the second set of primers, which anneal to a sequence internal to the sequence amplified by the first primer set. The increased sensitivity arises from the high total cycle number, and the increased specificity arises from the annealing of the second primer set to sequences found only in the first-round products, thus verifying the identity of the first-round product. The major disadvantage of nested PCR is the high rate of contamination that can occur during the transfer of first-round products to the second tube for the second round of amplification. This can be avoided either by physically separating the first- and second-round amplification mixtures with a layer of wax or oil, or by designing single-tube amplification protocols. In practice, the enhanced sensitivity afforded by nested PCR protocols is rarely required in diagnostic applications, and the identity of an amplification product is usually confirmed by hybridization with a nucleic acid probe.

Multiplex Polymerase Chain Reaction

In multiplex PCR, two or more primer sets designed for amplification of different targets are included in the same reaction mixture (Chamberlain et al, 1988). With this technique, more than one target sequence in a clinical specimen can be coamplified in a single tube. The primers used in multiplexed reactions must be selected carefully to have similar annealing

temperatures and must be noncomplementary to each other to avoid primer-dimers and inefficient reactions. Multiplex PCRs are more complicated to develop and are often less sensitive than single-primer-set PCR reactions, but they allow multiple targets to be detected from a single specimen in one reaction. Multiplex PCR is analyzed by separating products by size by gel electrophoresis, by spatial separation on a surface or bead, or by probe color in real-time PCR. Real-time PCR is typically limited to 2 to 6 colors, but greater multiplexing is possible by combining color with the melting temperature of probes. Recent technological advances in decoding highly multiplex PCR reactions are described below.

A highly multiplexed platform for PCR analysis is the xMAP system (Luminex Corp., Austin, Tex.). The xMAP system incorporates a proprietary process to internally dye polystyrene microspheres with two spectrally distinct fluorochromes. By using precise ratios of these fluorochromes, an array is created consisting of 100 different microsphere sets with specific spectral addresses. Each microsphere set can possess a different reactant on its surface. For nucleic acid analysis, oligonucleotide probes would be covalently bound to the microsphere surface by carbodiimide coupling. Because each microsphere set can be distinguished by its spectral address, the sets can be combined, allowing up to 100 different analytes to be measured simultaneously in a single reaction vessel. A third fluorochrome coupled to a reporter molecule quantifies the biomolecular interaction that occurs at the microsphere surface.

Microspheres are interrogated individually in a rapidly flowing liquid stream as they pass by two separate lasers in the Luminex xMAP flow cytometer. High-speed digital signal processing classifies each microsphere based on its spectral address and quantifies the reaction on its surface. Thousands of microspheres are investigated per second, resulting in an analysis system capable of analyzing and reporting up to 500 different reactions in a single reaction vessel in a few seconds.

Multiplex assays run on the Luminex platform typically consist of three major steps: nucleic acid amplification by PCR, target specific extension, and liquid bead array decoding (Merante et al, 2007). After PCR amplification, the amplicons are mixed with a second set of tagged primers specific for each target. If the target is present, the tagged primer will be extended through a process called *target specific extension*. During this extension a label is incorporated into the extension product. The color-coded beads are added to identify the tagged and labeled extension products. Attached to each differently colored bead is oligonucleotide complementary to the tag sequence for each target. Samples are then placed in the Luminex xMAP flow cytometer where the beads are read by two color lasers. One laser identifies the color of the bead, and the other laser detects the presence or absence of a labeled extension product on that bead. FDA-cleared assays for cystic fibrosis mutations, HLA testing, respiratory virus and gastrointestinal pathogens, and pharmacogenetics are available from Luminex using this technology.

Another promising technology for high-order multiplex PCR is the FilmArray developed by BioFire Diagnostics, Salt Lake City, Utah. It is a completely automated, integrated, and self-contained lab-in-a-pouch system (Poritz et al, 2011). The film portion of the pouch has stations for cell lysis, nucleic acid purification, reverse transcription to detect RNA targets, first stage PCR multiplex PCR, and an array of up to 120 second-stage nested PCRs (Fig. 67-2). After extracting and purifying nucleic acids from the unprocessed sample, the FilmArray performs a nested multiplex PCR that is executed in two stages. During the first-stage PCR, the Film Array performs a single, large-volume, massively multiplexed reaction. The products from the first-stage PCR are then diluted and combined with a fresh, primer-free master mix. Aliquots of this second master mix solution are then distributed to each well of the array. Each well of the array is prespotted with a single set of primers. In the second stage, small-volume PCR is performed in singleplex fashion in each well of the array. Even though this assay uses nested PCR, the entire test is performed within a sealed pouch, thus eliminating concerns of carryover contamination. Using amplification and melting curve data, the FilmArray software automatically generates a result for each target. FilmArray panels for detection of respiratory, gastrointestinal and bloodstream pathogens have been cleared for clinical use by the FDA. In addition, a FilmArray for detection of Ebola Zaire virus, as part of a biothreat panel, was given Emergency Use Authorization by the FDA during the 2014 Ebola outbreak.

GenMark Diagnostics (Carlsbad, Calif.) couples multiplex PCR with solution hybridization to ferrocene-labeled, target-specific signal probes and a microarray of gold-plated electrodes, each coated with different capture probes specific for the targets (Pierce & Hodinka, 2012). Target DNA-signal probe complexes present in the sample hybridize to the capture probes, bringing the ferrocene label in close proximity to the gold electrode. An electrical current is applied to each electrode, and a captured

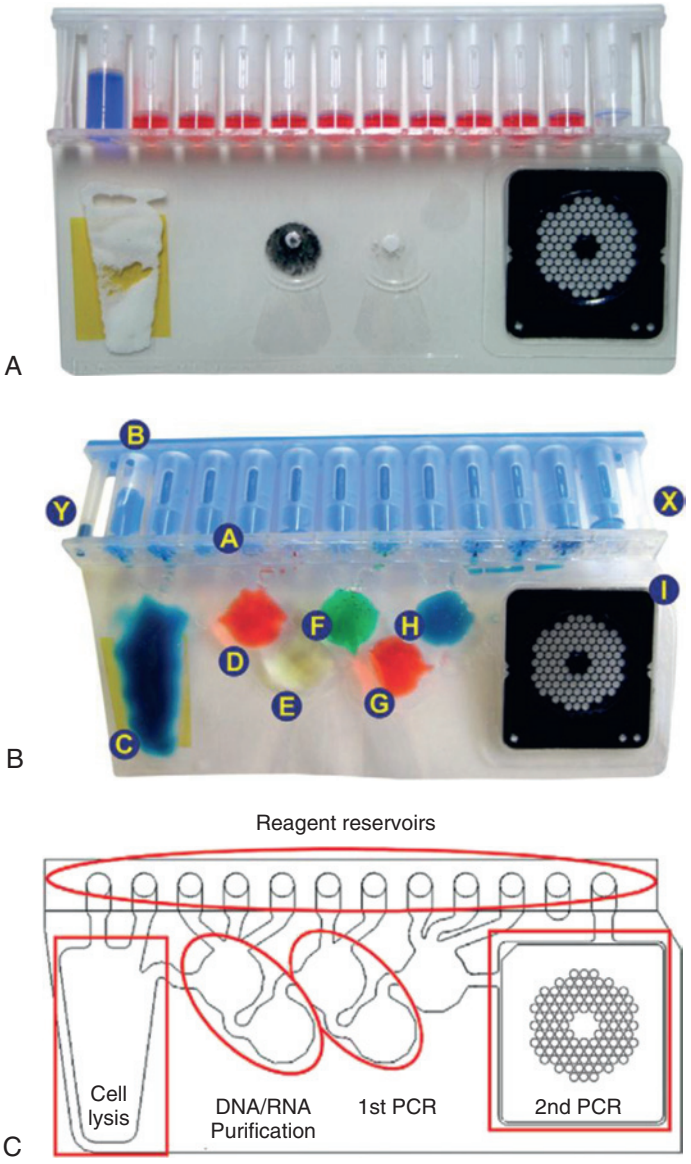


Figure 67-2 **FilmArray pouch. A,** Pouch was injected with mock sample (blue) in the right side injection port and hydration solution (red) left side injection port. **B,** The blisters of the pouch were filled with different coloring, and the channels between the blisters were heat-sealed shut. **C,** A schematic of the pouch showing a trace of blisters, channels, and array wells. The functional areas of the pouch are highlighted in red. (Reproduced with permission from Poritz, MA, Blaschke AJ, Byinhton CL, et al: FilmArray, an automated nested multiplex PCR system for multi-pathogen detection: Development and application to respiratory tract infection. *PLoS One* 6:e2606047, 2011. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0026047.)

DNA target is analyzed by electrochemical detection using voltammetry with a signal of 3 nA or greater for a given analyte considered positive.

End-Point Quantitative Polymerase Chain Reaction

A linear relationship should exist between the quantity of input template and the amount of amplification product. However, because the final amount of PCR product depends on exponential amplification of the initial quantity of template, minor differences in amplification efficiency may lead to very large and unpredictable differences in the final product yield (Clementi et al, 1993). The tube-to-tube differences may depend on sample preparation and nucleic acid purification procedures, presence of inhibitors, and thermal cycler performance. For these reasons, simple quantification of product accumulated at the end of the reaction and the use of external standard curves do not provide reliable quantification of the amount of template initially present in the sample.

A variety of PCR-based strategies have been developed to accurately quantify DNA and RNA targets in clinical specimens, but the competitive PCR (cPCR) approach has proved reliable and robust for clinical applications (Gilliland et al, 1990; Piatak et al, 1993). The basic concept behind

cPCR is the coamplification in the same reaction tube of two different templates of equal or similar lengths and with the same primer binding sequences. Because both templates are amplified with the same primer pair, identical thermodynamics and amplification efficiency are ensured. The amount of one of the templates must be known, and, after amplification, products from both templates must be distinguishable.

End-point PCR is rapidly being replaced in the clinical laboratory by homogeneous kinetic (real-time) methods for product detection (Barbeau et al, 2004) (see next section). These methods provide for more precise measurements of initial template concentrations because the analysis is performed early in the log phase of product accumulation and, as a result, is less prone to error resulting from differences in sample-to-sample amplification efficiency.

Real-Time (Homogeneous, Kinetic) Polymerase Chain Reaction

Real-time PCR describes methods by which the target amplification and detection steps occur simultaneously in the same tube (homogeneous). These methods require special thermal cyclers with precision optics that can monitor the fluorescence emission from the sample wells. The computer software supporting the thermocycler monitors the data throughout the PCR at every cycle (kinetic) and generates an amplification plot for each reaction. A typical amplification plot is shown in Figure 67-3. The amplification plot shows the normalized fluorescence signal from the reporter (Rn) at each cycle number. In the initial cycles there is little change in the amount of fluorescence, which defines the baseline of the plot. Detection of accumulated PCR product is indicated by an increase above the baseline. A fixed fluorescence threshold can be set above the baseline to call positive samples. The PCR cycle at which the fluorescence passes the threshold is defined as the *cycle threshold* (C_T). There is an inverse linear relationship between the log of the initial target concentration and the C_T. Alternatively, the cycle number corresponding to the maximal rate change in fluorescence, the second derivative maximum, has a similar relationship to initial target concentration.

In the simplest format, the PCR product is detected as it is produced using fluorescent dyes that preferentially bind to double-stranded DNA (dsDNA). SYBR Green I is one such dye that has been used in this application (Morrison et al, 1998). In the unbound state, the fluorescence is relatively low, but when bound to dsDNA, the fluorescence is greatly enhanced. The DNA-binding dye will affix to any dsDNA and therefore will bind both specific and nonspecific PCR products equally well. The specificity of the detection can be improved through melting curve analysis.

Melt curve analysis is a way to assess an amplicon sequence or complementarity by using a slow increase in temperature to dissociate dsDNA. The ability to break a double hydrogen bond between two nucleic acids during melt curve analysis depends on the length, the GC content, and the complementarity of the amplicon. A melt curve analysis can be measured with both intercalating dye reactions and with fluorescently labeled probes that are not degraded during the PCR reaction. Intercalating dyes, such as SYBR green, slot into the minor groove of dsDNA, so dissociation results in reduction of fluorescence. By slowly increasing the temperature in a melt curve reaction, characteristics of the sequence of the amplicon can be inferred from the temperature of the dissociation, which is reflected by a loss of fluorescence. The melting temperature of the amplicon is predictable based on the nucleic acid bases that make up the amplicon, so the shape and temperature at which the amplicon or probes dissociate are reliable and reproducible. A mutation in that amplicon sequence will result in a different melting temperature. The data are transformed and analyzed by plotting the first derivative of fluorescence on the *y*-axis and temperature on the *x*-axis. The specific amplified product will have a characteristic melting peak at its predicted melting temperature (T_m), whereas the primer-dimers and other nonspecific products should have a different T_m or give broader peaks (Ririe et al, 1997).

The specificity of real-time PCR can also be increased by including hybridization probes in the reactions mixture. These probes are labeled with fluorescent dyes or with a combination of fluorescent and quencher dyes. In the 5′ nuclease (TaqMan) PCR assay, the 5′ to 3′ exonuclease activity of Taq DNA polymerase is used to cleave a nonextendable hybridization probe during the primer extension phase of PCR (Holland et al, 1991). This approach uses dual-labeled fluorogenic hybridization probes. One fluorescent dye serves as reporter, and its emission spectrum is quenched by the second fluorescent (quencher) dye. The nuclease degradation of the hybridization probe releases the reporter dye, resulting in an increase in its peak fluorescent emission (Fig. 67-4). The increase in fluorescent emission indicates that a specific PCR product has been made, and the intensity of the fluorescence is related to the amount of product (Heid et al, 1996). Specificity is increased because the signal is generated only when the primer and probe are bound to the same template strand.

Fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) probes can also be used to detect PCR product as it is generated (Lay & Wittwer, 1997). This method requires two specially designed sequence-specific oligonucleotide probes. These hybridization probes hybridize next to each other on the product molecule. As shown in Figure 67-5, the 3′ end of one probe is labeled with a donor dye, and the 5′ end of the other probe is labeled with an acceptor dye. The donor dye is excited by an external light source and, instead of emitting light, transfers its energy to the acceptor dye by a process called FRET. The excited acceptor dye emits light at a longer wavelength than the unbound donor dye, and the intensity of the acceptor dye light emission is proportional to the amount of PCR product.

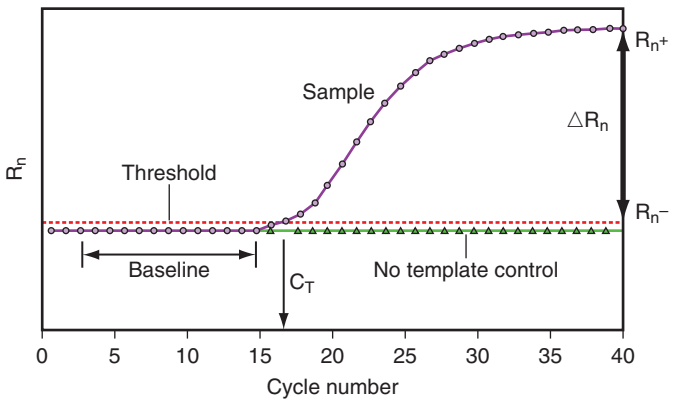


Figure 67-3 Real-time PCR amplification plot. *PCR,* Polymerase chain reaction. (Courtesy Applied Biosystems.)

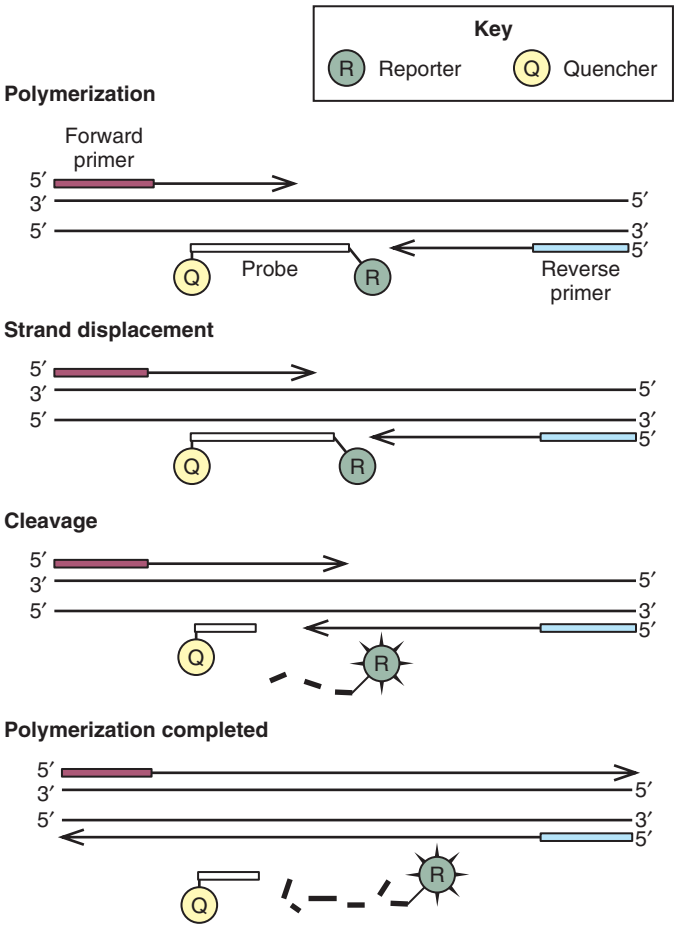


Figure 67-4 Mechanism of signal generation in 5′ nuclease PCR assays. *PCR,* Polymerase chain reaction. (Courtesy Applied Biosystems.)

Real-time detection and quantification of PCR product can also be accomplished using molecular beacons (Tyagi et al, 1998). Molecular beacons are hairpin-shaped oligonucleotide probes with an internally quenched fluorophore whose fluorescence is restored when they bind to a target nucleic acid (Fig. 67-6). They are designed in such a way that the loop portion of the probe molecule is complementary to the target sequence. The stem is formed by the annealing of complementary arm sequences on the ends of the probe. A fluorescent dye is attached to one end of one arm, and a quenching molecule is attached to the end of the other arm. The stem keeps the fluorophore and quencher in close proximity such that no light emission occurs. When the probe encounters a target molecule, it forms a hybrid that is longer and more stable than the stem and undergoes a conformational change that forces the stem apart and causes the fluorophore and quencher to move away from each other, restoring the fluorescence.

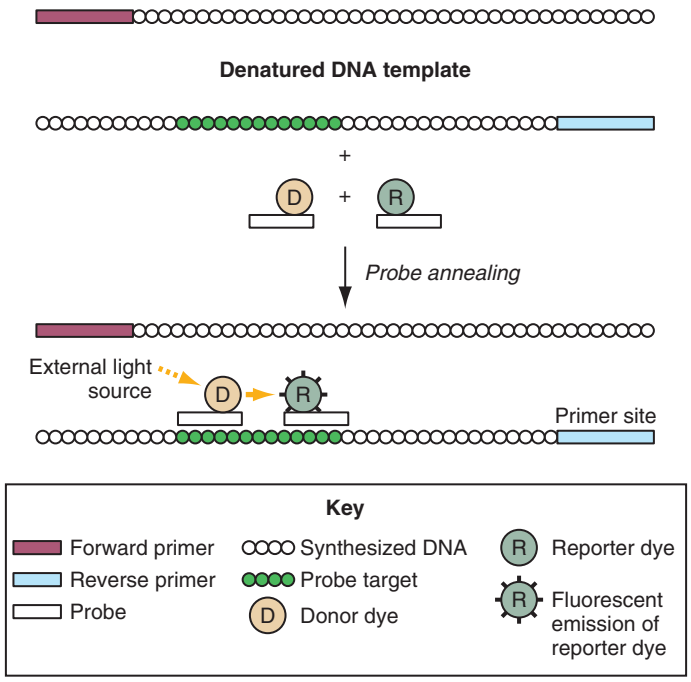


Figure 67-5 **Fluorescence resonance energy transfer probes.** (Redrawn from Wolk D, Mitchell S, Patel R: Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. *Infect Dis Clin N Am* 15:1157–1204, 2008.)

It is not absolutely necessary to have a stem loop structure to use nonhydrolyzable probes in real-time PCR applications. Dark quencher probes contain a fluorophore on the 5′ end and a nonfluorescent quencher molecule on the 3′ end (Afonina et al, 2002). The fluorescence is quenched when the probe is in a random coil configuration and emitted when the probe anneals to the target sequence. Because the dark quencher is not fluorescent, it does not contribute to the background signal. This has the advantage of improved signal-to-noise ratio for the detection system, which may improve sensitivity. These probes also incorporate a hybridization-stabilizing compound known as a *minor groove binder*. It is a small, crescent-shaped molecule that is covalently linked to the 3′ end of the probe that spans about 3 to 4 nt and snugly fits into the minor groove of DNA, where it forms hydrogen bonds with the template. The minor groove binder allows the use of shorter probes and enables improved Tm leveling, which improves the specificity of the detection reaction (Kutyavin et al, 2000).

Scorpion probes combine a PCR primer with a molecular beacon (Thelwell et al, 2000). Intramolecular hybridization of the loop structure to a downstream portion of the amplification product separates the reporter and quencher dyes. The hybridization kinetics of scorpion probes are generally faster than those of molecular beacons because the primer and the probe are located on the same molecule. Partially double-stranded (ds) linear probes consist of a hybridization probe labeled with a fluorescent probe and a shorter complementary quencher. The asymmetry in strand length of the ds-probes correlates with an increase capacity for mismatch tolerance, and the length of both the hybridization probe and the quencher strand affect the mismatch tolerance efficiency (Luk et al, 2007). This double-stranded probe design can be useful to evaluate genetically polymorphic targets compared to other probe types, such as molecular Beacons or TaqMan probes, for which nucleotide mismatches can result in reduced efficiency of probe hybridization. These probes can be created to tolerate or discriminate polymorphic targets, such as HIV-1 and HCV. In the absence of amplicon, the ds-probe remains in a duplex that places the fluorophore in close proximity to the quencher and prevents a fluorescent signal. Presence of a target results in hybridization of the probe to the amplicon, displacing the complementary quencher and leading to emission of the fluorescent signal. The hybridization probe is not destroyed during the amplification process, allowing for later melting curve analysis.

Another approach to detection, characterization, and quantification of real-time PCR amplicons involves the use of a nonstandard DNA base pair constructed from isoG and isoC (Sherrill et al, 2004). These synthetic bases pair with each other but not with the natural bases guanine and cytosine and can be covalently coupled to a wide variety of reporter groups. In the MultiCode-RTx assays (Luminex), the target is amplified using a forward primer with a single isoC nucleotide with a fluorescent label at the 5′ end and an unlabeled standard base reverse primer. Amplification is performed in the presence of isoG coupled to a fluorescence quencher molecule. Site-specific incorporation of the isoG molecule by the DNA

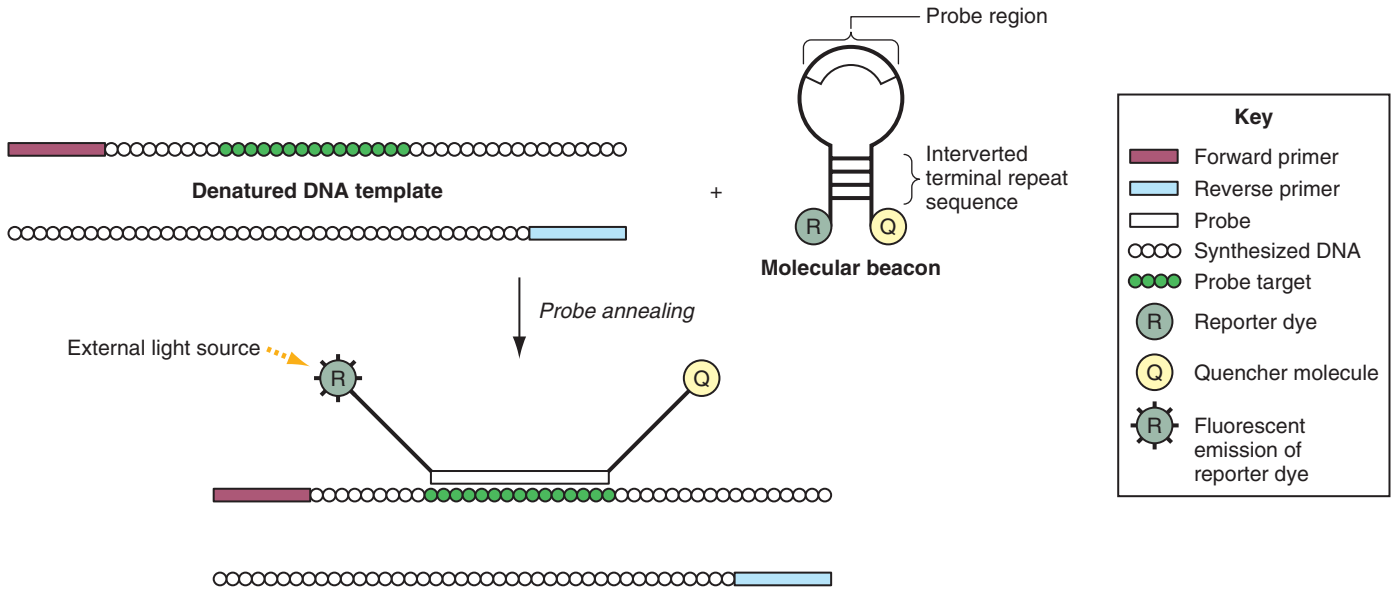


Figure 67-6 **Molecular beacon probes.** (Redrawn from Wolk D, Mitchell S, Patel R: Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. *Infect Dis Clin N Am* 15:1157–1204, 2008.)

polymerase places the quencher in close proximity to the fluorophore, resulting in a decrease of fluorescence with every PCR cycle. The number of cycles in which the fluorescence change can be detected depends on the initial number of target molecules in the reaction. The decrease in fluorescence is easily monitored by a number of standard real-time PCR instruments. Postreaction amplicon melting curve analysis can be performed to confirm the identity of the amplicon and to detect sequence variants.

Real-time PCR methods decrease the time required to perform nucleic acid assays because there are no post-PCR processing steps. Also, because amplification and detection occur in the same closed tube, these methods eliminate the postamplification manipulations that can lead to laboratory contamination with amplicon. In addition, real-time PCR methods lend themselves well to quantitative applications because analysis is performed early in the log phase of product accumulation and as a result is less prone to errors that may result from differences in amplification efficiency among samples.

Relative concentrations of DNA present during the exponential phase of the reaction are determined by plotting fluorescence against cycle number on a logarithmic scale (so an exponentially increasing quantity will give a straight line). A threshold for detection of fluorescence above the background is determined, and the C_T is determined. Because all sets of primers do not work equally well, one has to calculate the reaction efficiency first. Reaction efficiency is the rate at which the PCR product is generated. A perfectly doubling PCR reaction would have an efficiency of 2 because the quantity of DNA theoretically doubles every cycle during the exponential phase, and relative amounts of DNA can be calculated (e.g., a sample whose C_T is three cycles earlier than another's has $2^3 = 8$ times more template). The equation to determine a reaction's efficiency is $E = 10^{(-1/slope)}$. One way to calculate efficiency is by using the slope of a standard curve from a dilution series. This is done by plotting the C_T values versus the $\log_{10}$ of the serial dilution and performing a linear regression to get the slope. This dilution series should cover a minimum of 5 logs and contain replicates. A second method to calculate efficiency can be done for each individual reaction by plotting fluorescence on a log scale and performing a linear regression on the exponential phase to get the slope. Both methods of determining efficiency have been shown to be comparable in measuring accuracy, although the second method was found to be more robust and requires fewer PCR reactions than the first method (Karlen et al, 2007). If a reaction efficiency was found to be 1.96 and we used the previous example of a C_T of 3 times earlier, then the starting template would be calculated by $1.96^3 = 7.53$ times more template.

Amounts of RNA or DNA are determined by comparing the results to a standard curve produced by a real-time PCR of serial dilutions (e.g., undiluted, 1:4, 1:16, 1:64) of a known amount of RNA or DNA. As mentioned earlier, to accurately quantify gene expression, the measured amount of RNA from the gene of interest is divided by the amount of RNA from a housekeeping gene measured in the same sample to normalize for possible variation in the amount and quality of RNA among the samples. This normalization permits accurate comparison of expression of the gene of interest between different samples, as long as the expression of the reference (housekeeping) gene used in the normalization is very similar across all the samples. Choosing a reference gene that fulfills this criterion is therefore of high importance and often can be challenging because only a very few genes show equal levels of expression across a range of different conditions or tissues.

Real-time PCR can be used to quantify nucleic acids by two strategies: relative quantification and absolute quantification (VanGuilder et al, 2008). Relative quantification measures the fold-difference (2×, 3×, etc.) in the target amount. For gene expression analysis, relative concentrations may be determined by the $2^{-\Delta\Delta CT}$ method, where for each sample, the difference in CT values for the gene of interest and the endogenous gene control is calculated (ΔCT). Next, subtraction of the control-condition ΔCT from the treated-condition ΔCT yields the ΔΔCT. The negative value of this subtraction, –ΔΔCT, is used as the exponent of 2 in the equation and represents the difference in the corrected number of cycles to threshold. This value is often referred to as the *relative quantity value.*

Absolute quantification gives the exact number of target molecules present by comparing with known standards. The quality of standard is important for accurate quantification.

Rapid-Cycle Polymerase Chain Reaction

While real-time PCR methods have had a significant impact on assay time, a great deal of emphasis continues to be placed on reducing the assay time for the various PCR formats. Rapid-cycle PCR is not chemically different from any of the standard PCR formats (Wittwer & Garling, 1991). The polymerases used in PCR are capable of incorporating 35 to 100 nucleotides per second. Most of the time consumed in performing PCR is temperature equilibration for the solution so that efficient annealing and extension occur, as well as a significant amount of time changing the temperature. By reducing the thermal profile of the solution using thin-walled tubes or capillaries that force the reaction solution into thin columns or sheets of fluid, it is possible to improve thermal transfer rates as well as equilibration rates such that thermocycling time can be significantly reduced. In highly optimized systems, it is possible to approach the ideal processivity rate of the polymerase such that a 40-cycle PCR may be performed in 30 minutes or less using standard or real-time PCR chemistries. In fact, by increasing the primer and polymerase concentrations ten- to twentyfold over typical concentrations with temperature cycles of 0.4 to 2.0 s in thin-walled reaction capillaries, efficient, specific, and high-yield PCR is possible in 15 to 60 s (Farrar et al, 2015). This so-called "extreme PCR" highlights the considerable future potential of PCR for point-of-care applications if suitable instruments can be designed.

Digital Polymerase Chain Reaction

PCR exponentially amplifies nucleic acids and the number of amplification cycles, and the amount of amplicon allows the computation of the starting quantity of targeted nucleic acid. However, many factors can complicate this calculation, such as the quality and source materials of the standard curve, choice for signal threshold, and interlaboratory variation. These factors can often create uncertainties and inaccuracies, particularly when the starting concentration is low. Digital PCR attempts to overcome these difficulties by transforming the exponential data from conventional PCR to digital signals that indicate whether or not amplification occurred (Vogelstein & Kinzler, 1999).

Digital PCR is accomplished by partitioning nucleic acid template into reactions that, on average, contain less than or equal to 1 molecule of DNA in an aliquot of master mix reagent in order to accurately calculate the number of negative versus positive reactions. After PCR amplification, a count of the individual partitioned reactions containing PCR product is a direct measure of the absolute quantity of nucleic acid in the sample. The capture or isolation of individual nucleic acid molecules may be done in capillaries, microemulsions, arrays of miniaturized chambers, or on surfaces that bind nucleic acids. Digital PCR has many applications, including detection and absolute quantification of low levels of pathogens or viral load, rare genetic variants, gene expression in single cells or circulating nucleic acids, and clonal amplification of nucleic acids for sequencing mixed nucleic acid samples. Target amplification using digital PCR can be included as part of "next-generation" sequencing methods. Microfluidic or microdroplet technology can be used in combination with digital PCR to automate and improve the partitioning with high-throughput and/or low-volume reactions (Taly et al, 2012).

TRANSCRIPTION-BASED AMPLIFICATION

Transcription-based amplification includes transcription-mediated amplification (TMA) and nucleic acid sequence-based amplification (NASBA). Both TMA and NASBA are isothermal nucleic acid amplification techniques that, although slightly different in practice, are identical in concept and are described together (Kwoh et al, 1989; Compton, 1991). TMA and NASBA are the intellectual properties of Hologic/Gen-Probe, San Diego, and bioMérieux, Durham, N.C., respectively. These techniques essentially recapitulate retroviral replication in vitro, converting RNA into DNA and then using the DNA as a template for transcription of multiple copies of RNA.

The process begins with an RNA target, which in most cases exists as a single-stranded entity, removing the need for thermal denaturation of the template before amplification (Fig. 67-7). A sequence-specific DNA primer binds to the RNA target. Reverse transcriptase then extends the primer, creating a DNA–RNA heteroduplex. The 5′ end of the sequence-specific primer contains the promoter for a T7 bacteriophage polymerase. The presence of this T7 promoter in the 5′ end of the primer results in the synthesis of a DNA strand complementary to the initial RNA target containing the T7 promoter at its 5′ end. In the case of TMA, the reverse-transcriptase enzyme itself degrades the initial RNA template as it synthesizes its complementary DNA. In NASBA, a separate enzyme, RNAse H, degrades the initial RNA template. RNAse H selectively cleaves RNA, which is heteroduplexed to DNA but not RNA alone. In either case, the resultant single-stranded, complementary DNA with the T7 promoter sequence binds to a second primer at its 3′ end. The DNA polymerase extends from this second primer, resulting in the synthesis of a dsDNA molecule containing an intact T7 promoter. This DNA molecule can now

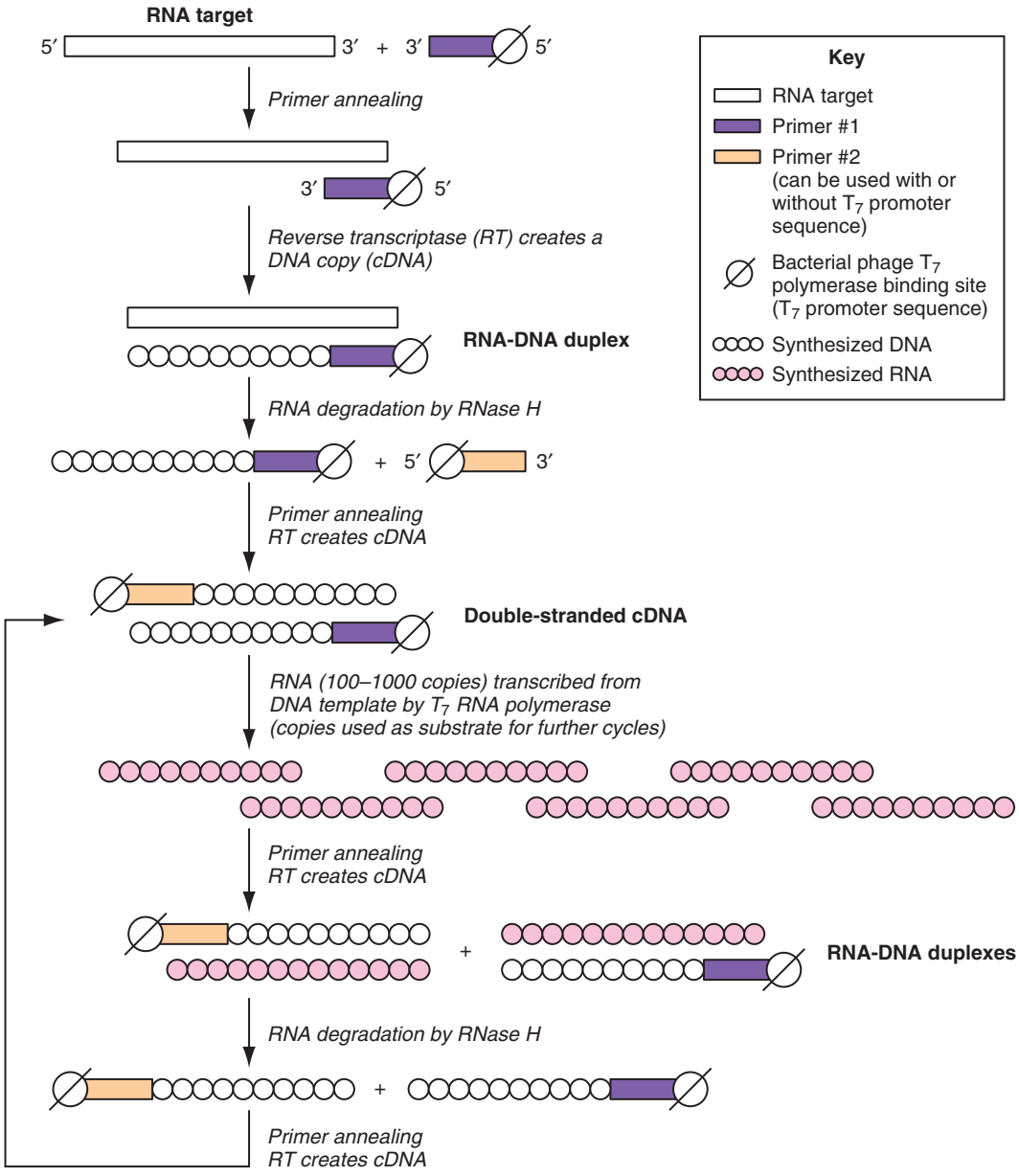


Figure 67-7 Transcription-based amplification. (Redrawn from Wolk D, Mitchell S, Patel R: Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. *Infect Dis Clin N Am* 15:1157–1204, 2008.)

serve as a template for T7 polymerase, a bacteriophage enzyme that specifically recognizes the T7 promoter and synthesizes multiple copies of RNA. Each of these newly synthesized RNA molecules is antisense to the initial target, allowing it to hybridize to the second primer. The reverse-transcriptase, second primer, RNAse H, and DNA polymerase then use this antisense RNA molecule as a template to synthesize new dsDNA templates, which in turn make more RNA template. A 10^9-fold amplification of target RNA can be achieved with these methods in 2 hours or less.

TMA and NASBA have several distinct advantages over other RNA amplification techniques. Perhaps the most significant of these advantages is that no initial denaturation is required for the amplification to occur. Hence, dsDNA sequences are not denatured and thus are incapable of binding to primers in the reaction. DNA contamination can be particularly problematic when techniques such as PCR are used to assay for the RNA transcripts of retroviral or intronless eukaryotic genes. NASBA and TMA eliminate the problem of DNA contamination giving a falsely elevated determination of RNA. A second advantage is that this technology uses isothermal processes that obviate the need for sophisticated thermocyclers because the whole process occurs at a single temperature. Combining this technology with molecular beacons or other sequence-specific probes that can be added directly to the amplification mixture creates a closed-tube system, which aids in preventing amplicon cross-contamination in the laboratory.

NASBA and TMA have been used successfully in a wide variety of clinical qualitative and quantitative applications, primarily in infectious diseases. FDA-cleared tests for detection of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Trichomonas vaginalis*, and human papillomavirus (HPV) based on TMA are available from Hologic/Gen-Probe. They also have viral load tests for HIV-1 and HCV in development. BioMerieux has an FDA-cleared HIV-1 quantitative assay based on NASBA.

TMA and NASBA are isothermal RNA amplification techniques with a widespread applicability and several unique advantages over other amplification methods. Combining these techniques with fluorescent probes allows one-step, closed-tube, real-time amplification without the need for thermal cycling.

STRAND-DISPLACEMENT AMPLIFICATION

Strand-displacement amplification (SDA) is an isothermal template amplification technique that can be used to detect trace amounts of DNA or RNA of a particular sequence. SDA as it was first described was a conceptually straightforward amplification process, with some technical limitations (Walker et al, 1992a; 1992b). Since its initial description, however, it has evolved into a highly versatile tool that is technically simple to perform but conceptually complex. In its current iteration, SDA occurs in two discrete phases: target generation and exponential target

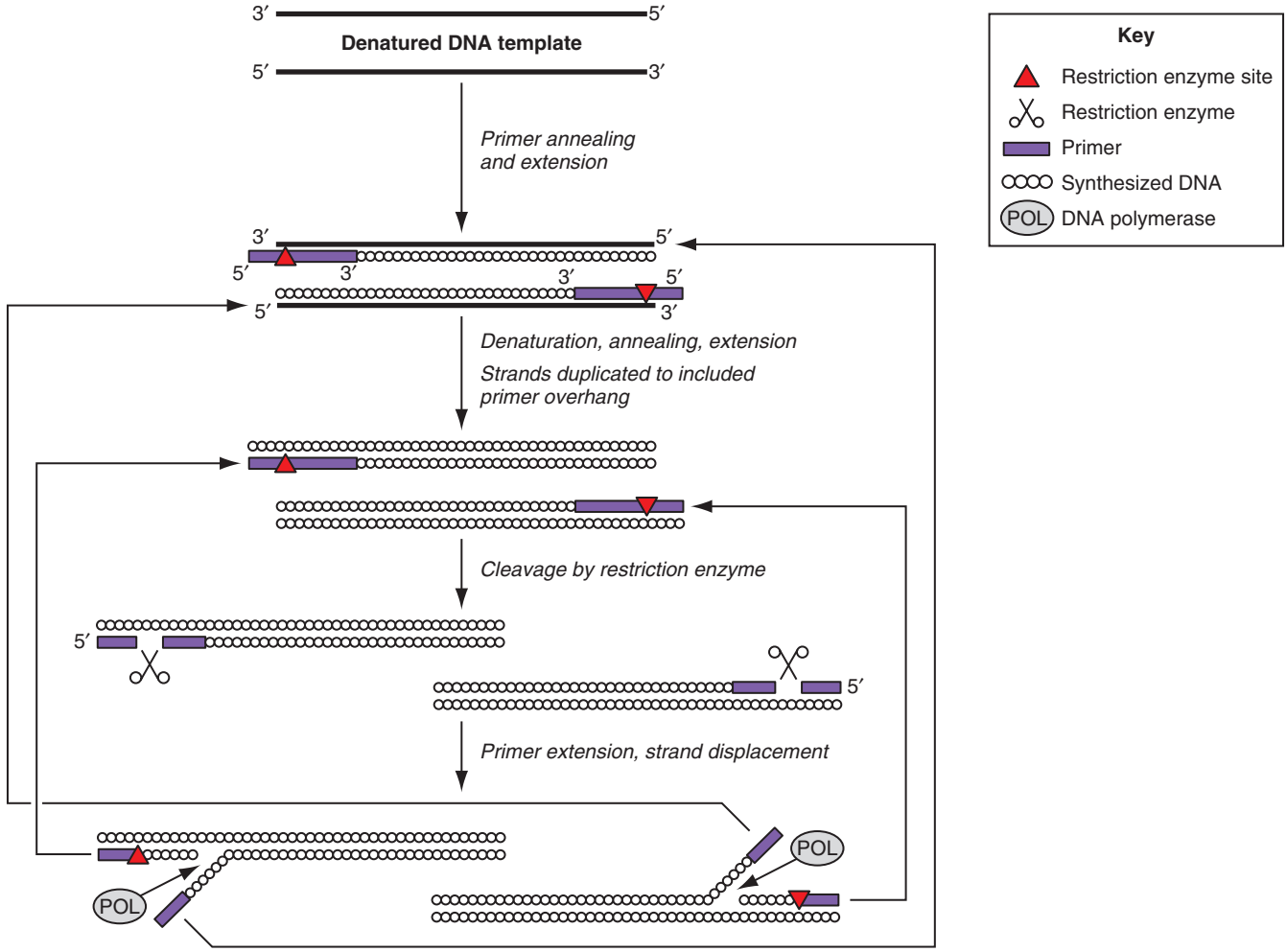


Figure 67-8 Strand displacement amplification. (Redrawn from Wolk D, Mitchell S, Patel R: Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. *Infect Dis Clin N Am* 15:1157–1204, 2008.)

amplification (Little et al, 1999). Only the target amplification phase is shown in Figure 67-8. In the target generation phase, a dsDNA target is denatured and hybridized to two different primer pairs, designated as *bumper* and *amplification* primers. The amplification primers include the single-stranded restriction endonuclease enzyme sequence for BsoB1 located at the 5′ end of the target binding sequence. The bumper primers are shorter and anneal to the target DNA just upstream of the region to be amplified. In the presence of BsoB1, an exonuclease-free DNA polymerase, and a dNTP mixture consisting of dUTP, dATP, dGTP, and thiolated dCTP (Cs), simultaneous extension products of both the bumper and amplification primers are generated. This process displaces the amplification primer products, which are available for hybridization with the opposite-strand products with the opposite-strand bumper and amplification primers.

The simultaneous extension of opposite-strand primers produces strands complementary to the products formed by extension of the first amplification primer with Cs incorporated into the BsoB1 cleavage site. This product enters the exponential target amplification phase of the reaction. The BsoB1 enzyme recognizes the double-stranded site, but because one strand contains Cs, it is nicked rather than cleaved by the enzyme. The DNA polymerase then binds to the nick and begins synthesis of a new strand, while simultaneously displacing the downstream strand. This step recreates the double-stranded species with the hemimodified restriction endonuclease recognition sequence, and the iterative nicking and displacement process repeats. The displaced strands are capable of binding to opposite-strand primers, which produces exponential amplification of the target sequences.

These single-stranded products also bind to detector probes for real-time detection. The detector probes are single-stranded DNA (ssDNA) molecules with fluorescein and rhodamine labels. The region between the labels includes a stem-loop structure. The loop contains the recognition site for the BsoB1 enzyme. The target-specific sequences are located 3′ to the rhodamine label. In the absence-specific target, the stem-loop structure is maintained with the fluorescein and rhodamine labels in close proximity. The net effect is that very little emission for the fluorescein is detected after excitation. After SDA, the probe is converted to a double-stranded species, which is cleaved by BsoB1. The cleavage causes physical separation of the fluorescein and rhodamine labels, which results in an increase in emission from the fluorescein label.

The main advantage of SDA is that it is an isothermal process that, unlike PCR, can be performed at a single temperature after initial target denaturation. This eliminates the need for expensive thermocyclers. Furthermore, samples can be subjected to SDA in a single tube, with amplification times varying from 30 minutes to 2 hours. The main disadvantage of SDA lies in the fact that, unlike PCR, the relatively low temperature at which SDA is carried out (52.5° C) can result in nonspecific primer hybridization to sequences found in complex mixtures such as genomic DNA. Hence, when the target is in low abundance compared to background DNA, nonspecific amplification products can swamp the system, decreasing the sensitivity of the technique. However, the use of organic solvents to increase stringency at low temperatures and the recent introduction of more thermostable polymerases capable of strand displacement have alleviated much of this problem. FDA-cleared assays for detection of *N. gonorrhoeae*, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, Herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2, and *T. vaginalis* using SDA are available from BD Diagnostics (Franklin Lakes, N.J.) on their Viper™ system.

LOOP-MEDIATED AMPLIFICATION

Loop-mediated amplification (LAMP) is an isothermal method that relies on autocycling strand displacement DNA synthesis by *Bst* DNA polymerase and a set of four to six primers (Notomi et al, 2000). Two inner and two outer primers define the target sequence, and an additional set of loop primers are added to increase the sensitivity of the reaction. The final

products of the LAMP reaction are DNA molecules with a cauliflower-like structure of multiple loops consisting of repeats of the target sequence. The products can be analyzed in real-time by monitoring of the turbidity in the reaction tube resulting from production of magnesium pyrophosphate precipitate during the DNA amplification. Amplification products can also be visualized in agarose gels after electrophoresis and staining with ethidium bromide or SYBR Green.

Because LAMP is an isothermal process and positive reactions can be detected by simple turbidity measurements or visualized directly with the naked eye, it requires no expensive equipment. These attributes make it an attractive technology for resource-poor settings and field use. However, primer design for LAMP is more complex than for PCR, with specialized training and software required for their design. Meridian Bioscience, Inc. (Cincinnati, Ohio) has licensed LAMP technology from Eiken Chemical Company, Ltd., Japan, for the development of infectious disease diagnostics in the United States including *Clostridium difficile*, group A and Group B beta hemolytic streptococci, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, and *Bordetella pertussis*.

HELICASE-DEPENDENT AMPLIFICATION

Helicase-dependent amplification (HDA) is an isothermal process developed by BioHelix (Beverly, Mass.) that uses helicase to separate dsDNA and generate single-stranded templates for primer hybridization and subsequent extension by a DNA polymerase (Vincent et al, 2004). As the helicase unwinds dsDNA enzymatically, the initial heat denaturation and subsequent thermocycling steps required by PCR can all be omitted. In HDA, strands of dsDNA are separated by the DNA helicase and the ssDNA-coated ssDNA-binding proteins. Two sequence-specific primers hybridize to each border of the target sequence, and a DNA polymerase extends the primers annealed to the target sequence to produce dsDNA. The two newly synthesized products are used as substrates by the helicase in the next round of amplification. Thus a simultaneous chain reaction proceeds, resulting in exponential amplification of the selected target sequence.

HDA is compatible with multiple detection technologies, including qualitative and quantitative fluorescent technologies and with instruments designed for real-time PCR (Tong et al, 2008). Futhermore, HDA has shown potential for the development of simple, portable DNA diagnostic devices to be used in the field or at the point-of-care. FDA-cleared tests for detection of HSV type 1 and type 2, *C. difficile*, and group A and B beta-hemolytic streptococci based on HDA are available from Quidel (San Diego, Calif.).

NICKING ENDONUCLEASE AMPLIFICATION

Nicking endonuclease amplification is an isothermal process that begins with nicking of a double-stranded DNA template by a nicking enzyme (Nie et al, 2014). A DNA polymerase then binds at the nick sites and unravels the template. The T2 primer that includes the nicking enzyme recognition site binds loosely to the template and is extended by polymerase. A second T2 primer binds to the same target and is extended, displacing the first T2. The template-specific region of the T1 primer binds to its complement on the released strand and is extended to the 5′ end, creating the double-stranded NEAR amplification duplex. The nick sites within primers allow for the process to repeat for rapid amplification of products.

NEAR is the basis of the FDA-cleared test for direct detection of influenza A and B viruses in respiratory specimens that is available from Alere (Waltham, Mass.) for use in point-of-care settings by nonlaboratory personnel. As such, it represents a milestone in molecular diagnostics as the first CLIA-waived nucleic acid amplification test.

PROBE AMPLIFICATION METHODS

Probe amplification methods differ from target amplification in that the amplification products contain a sequence only present in the initial probes. Cleavase/invader technology is an example of a probe amplification method that is used currently as an important diagnostic application: the detection of high-risk genotypes of human papilloma viruses (HPV) in cervical samples (Ginocchio et al, 2008).

CLEAVASE/INVADER TECHNOLOGY

Cleavase/invader technology is a probe amplification method that relies on the specific recognition and cleavage of particular DNA structures by members of the flap endonuclease-1 family of DNA polymerases (Lyamichev et al, 1999). These polymerases cleave the 5′ single-stranded flap of a branched base-paired duplex and are termed *cleavases*. This enzymatic activity probably plays an essential role in the elimination of complex nucleic acid structures that arise during DNA replication and repair in vivo. Because these structures may occur anywhere in the replicating genome, the enzyme recognizes the molecular structure of the substrate without regard to the sequence of the nucleic acids making up the DNA complex (Lieber, 1996). This enzymatic activity has proved to be a very useful tool for DNA analysis and is the basis of this technology.

In cleavase/invader assays, two primers are designed that hybridize to the target sequence in an overlapping fashion (Fig. 67-9). Under the proper annealing conditions, signal and invader probes bind to the target sequence such that the invader hybridizes upstream of the signal probe with a region of overlap between the 3′ end of invader and the 5′ end of the signal probe. Under the proper conditions, the overlap of binding sites for the primers results in a displacement equilibrium between the primers. Cleavase only cleaves 5′ flaps; thus the 5′ end of the signal probe is released. The target sequence acts as a scaffold upon which the proper DNA structure can form. Because the DNA structure that serves as the cleavase substrate only occurs in the presence of the target sequence, the generation of cleavage products indicates the presence of the target. The cleaved product is detected by binding to and serving as an invader probe for a FRET probe. The 5′ end of the FRET probe is cut by cleavase, releasing the reporter molecule in the same way that it releases the 5′ end of the signal probe.

Use of a thermostable cleavase enzyme allows the reactions to be run at high enough temperatures for a primer exchange equilibrium to exist. This allows multiple cleavase products to form from a single target molecule. Hence, the invader assay can be run under isothermal conditions, removing the need for thermal cycling. This technology has been used for detection, quantification, and characterization of a variety of microbial and human nucleic acid targets (Rosetti et al, 1997; Ryan et al, 1999; Wong et al, 2008).

The cleavase/invader technology has several inherent advantages over other amplification strategies. Because the overlap in the invader probe need only be one base pair, this technology can easily be adapted to detect point mutations of interest by designing the overlap region to encompass the mutation to be detected. In addition, unlike target amplification techniques in which the target sequence itself is amplified, the invader assay does not increase the amount of the target sequence. Thus the invader assay is less prone to problems of false-positive results due to amplicon cross-contamination.

In addition to the invader assay, cleavase can also be used to generate fragment-length polymorphisms (in a fashion analogous to restriction fragment-length polymorphism). By melting genomic DNA and cooling rapidly, highly reproducible hairpin loop secondary structures will form in the DNA that can serve as substrates for cleavase. Digestion of the DNA results in a distinct pattern that has been successfully employed to screen for interferon-α–resistant hepatitis C (Sreevatsan et al, 1998) and to detect specific mutations in human genes (Rosetti et al, 1997). Because hairpin loops occur with a greater diversity than most restriction enzyme recognition sites, this offers a versatile fragmentation pattern analysis.

Thus structure-specific endonucleases can be used to detect nucleic acid targets of a particular sequence, employed in assay for point mutations, and applied to generate diverse fragmentation patterns capable of distinguishing complex genotypes. These enzymes are powerful tools for nucleic acid analysis. FDA-cleared assays for HPV and various mutations associated with thrombophilia (Factor II, Factor V, MTHFR 677, and MTHFR 1298) based on cleavase/invader technology are available from Hologic/Gen-Probe.

SIGNAL AMPLIFICATION METHODS

In signal amplification methods, the concentration of the probe or the target does not increase. The increased analytical sensitivity comes from increasing the concentration of label molecules attached to the target nucleic acid. Multiple enzymes, multiple probes, multiple layers of probes, and reduction of background noise have been used to enhance target detection (Kricka, 1999). Target amplification systems generally have greater analytical sensitivity than signal amplification methods, but technological developments, particularly in branched DNA (bDNA) assays, have lowered the limits of detection to levels that may rival target amplification assays in some applications (Kern et al, 1996).

Signal amplification assays have several advantages over target amplification assays. In signal amplification systems, the number of target

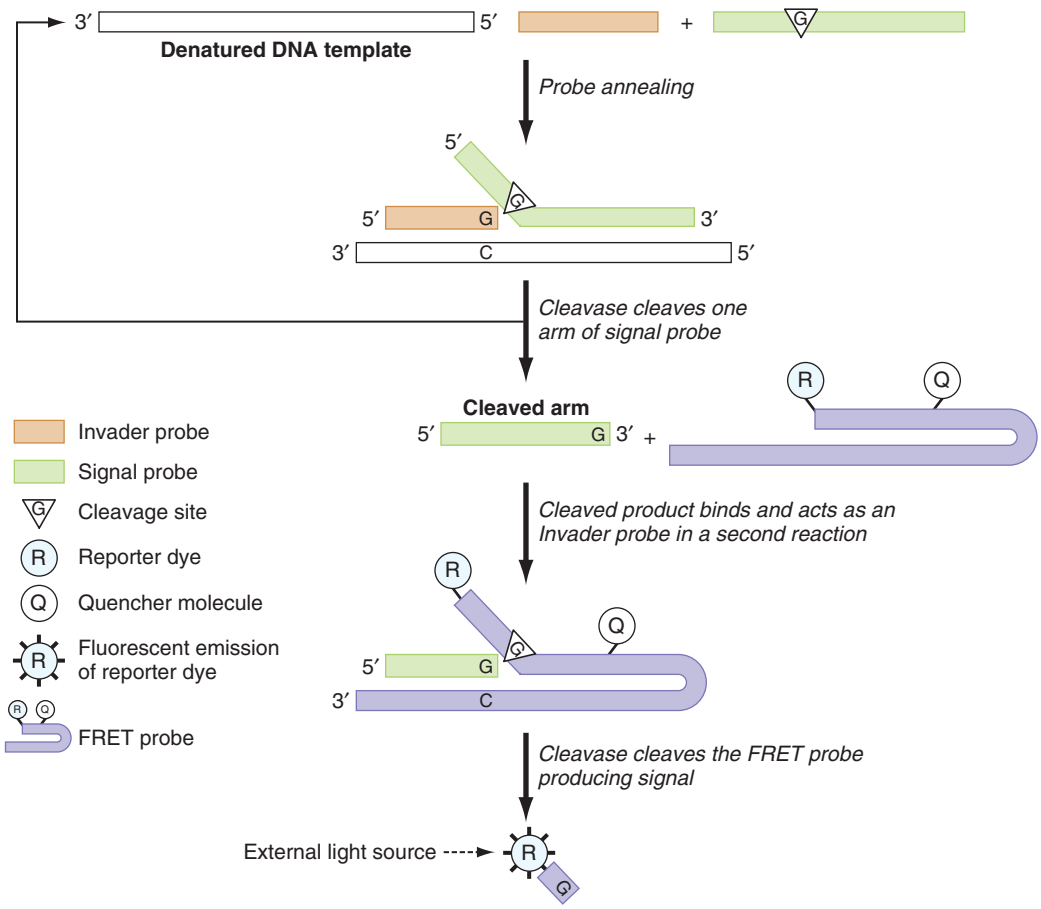


Figure 67-9 **Invasive cleavage and detection of an oligonucleotide probe using a FEN-1 DNA polymerase.** ***FEN-1,*** **Flap endonuclease-1;** ***FRET,*** **fluorescence resonance energy transfer.** (Redrawn from Wolk D, Mitchell S, Patel R: Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. *Infect Dis Clin N Am* 15:1157–1204, 2008.)

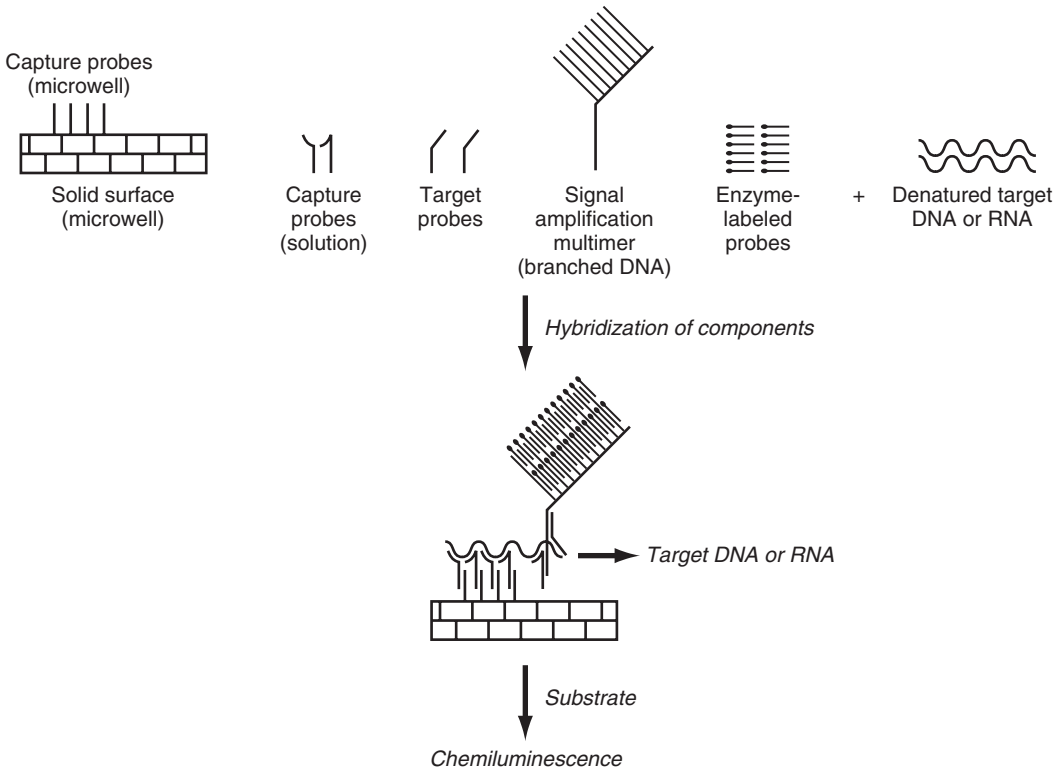


Figure 67-10 **Branched DNA amplification.** (Redrawn from Wolk D, Mitchell S, Patel R: Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. *Infect Dis Clin N Am* 15:1157–1204, 2008.)

molecules is not altered, and as a result, the signal is directly proportional to the amount of target sequence present in the clinical specimen. This reduces concerns about false-positives due to cross-contamination and simplifies the development of quantitative assays. Because signal amplification systems are not dependent on enzymatic processes to amplify target sequences, they are not affected by the presence of enzyme inhibitors in clinical specimens. Consequently, less cumbersome nucleic acid extraction methods may be used. Typically, signal amplification systems employ either larger probes or more probes than target amplification systems and, consequently, are less susceptible to errors resulting from target sequence heterogeneity. Finally, RNA can be measured directly, without the synthesis of a cDNA intermediate. Branched DNA and hybrid capture are examples of signal amplification systems that have developed into diagnostic tests.

BRANCHED DNA

The bDNA is a solid-phase, sandwich hybridization assay incorporating multiple sets of synthetic oligonucleotide probes (Nolte, 1998). The key to this technology is the amplifier molecule, a DNA molecule with 15 identical branches, each of which can bind three labeled probes.

Multiple target-specific probes are used to capture the target nucleic acid on to the surface of a microtiter well (Fig. 67-10). A second set of target-specific probes also binds to the target. Preamplifier molecules bind to the second set of target probes and up to eight bDNA amplifiers. Three alkaline-phosphatase–labeled probes hybridize to each branch of the amplifier. Detection of the bound labeled probes is achieved by incubating the complex with an enzyme-triggerable substrate, dioxetane, and then measuring the light emission in a luminometer. The resulting signal is directly proportional to the quantity of target in the sample, which is determined from an external standard curve.

Nonspecific hybridization of any of the amplification probes and nontarget nucleic acids leads to amplification of the background signal. To reduce the hybridization potential to all nontargets, the nonnatural bases isocytidine (isoC) and isoguanosine (isoG) were incorporated into the amplification probes of the third-generation bDNA assays (Collins et al, 1995). IsoC and isoG bases pair with each other but not with any of the four naturally occurring bases (Piccirilli et al, 1990). The use of isoC and isoG probes in bDNA assays increases target-specific amplification without a concomitant increase in background, thereby greatly enhancing the detection limits. The detection limit of the third-generation bDNA assay for HIV-1 RNA is 50 copies/mL (Kern et al, 1996). bDNA assays for the quantification of HBV DNA, HCV RNA, and HIV-1 RNA are commercially available (Bayer Diagnostics). An instrument platform for bDNA assays automates the incubation, washing, reading, and data processing.

HYBRID CAPTURE ASSAYS

The hybrid capture system is a solution hybridization antibody capture assay that uses chemiluminescent detection. The target DNA in the specimen is denatured and hybridized with a specific RNA probe (Fig. 67-11). The DNA–RNA hybrids are captured by antibodies specific for DNA–RNA hybrids that are coated onto the surface of a tube. Alkaline-phosphatase–conjugated antihybrid antibodies bind to the immobilized hybrids. The bound enzyme–antibody conjugate is detected with a chemiluminescent substrate, and the light emitted is measured in a luminometer. Signal amplification results from the large number of antibody binding sites and the efficiency of the enzyme–substrate reaction. The intensity of the emitted light is proportional to the amount of target DNA in the specimen. Hybrid capture assays for detection of HPV (Cope et al, 1997) and CMV (Mazzulli et al, 1999) in clinical specimens are commercially available (Digene, Gaithersburg, Md.).

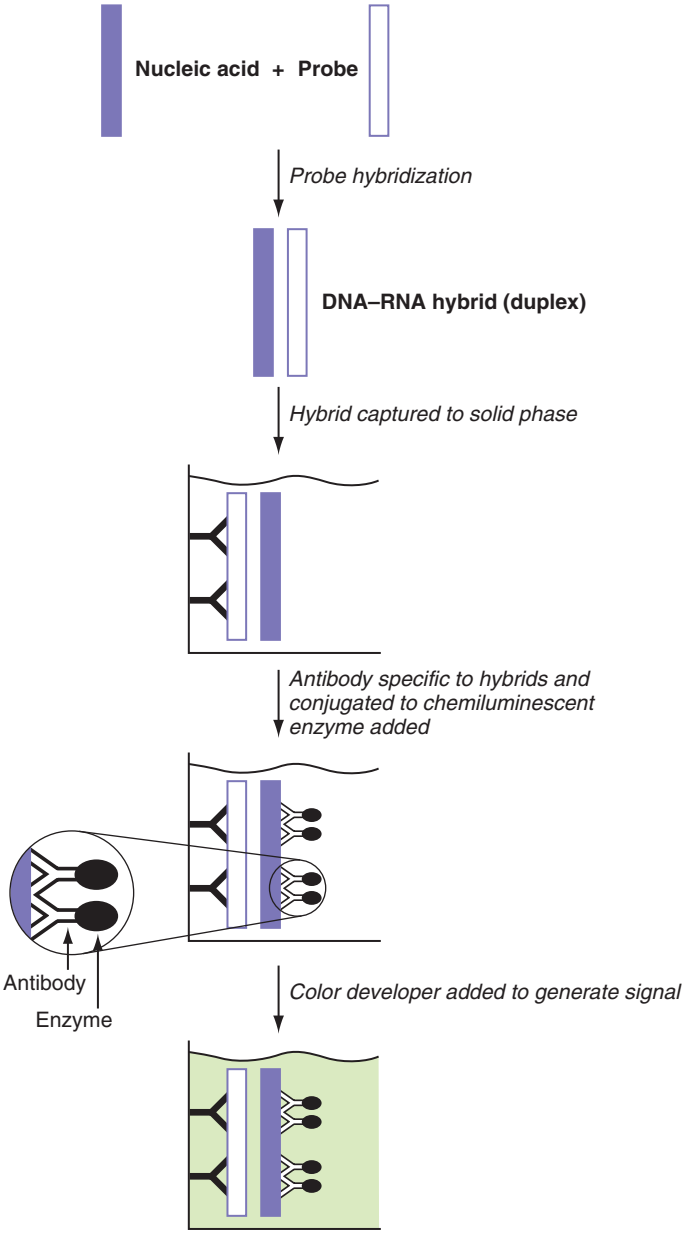


Figure 67-11 Hybrid capture amplification. (Redrawn from Wolk D, Mitchell S, Patel R: Principles of molecular microbiology testing methods. *Infect Dis Clin N Am* 15:1157–1204, 2008.)

SUMMARY

This chapter provides a basis for understanding the principles underlying the various nucleic acid amplification methods and their relative strengths and limitations. The technology has already had a tremendous impact on the diagnosis of infectious diseases and genetic disorders and promises to revolutionize the diagnosis and management of patients with cancer. The real power of the technology lies in its ability to cut across traditional disciplines in laboratory medicine. Consequently, a thorough understanding of the basic principles of nucleic acid amplification technology is important for all involved in the practice of laboratory medicine.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Afonina IA, Reed MW, Lusby E, et al: Minor groove binder-conjugated DNA probes for quantitative DNA detection by hybridization-triggered fluorescence, *Biotechniques* 32:940–944, 2002.

This paper describes the development of second-generation real-time PCR probes employing DNA minor groove binders and a dark quencher and their use in single nucleotide polymorphism detection, viral load determination, and gene expression analysis.

Holland PM, Abramson RD, Watson R, et al: Detection of specific polymerase chain reaction product by utilizing the 5′ to 3′ exonuclease activity of *Thermus aquaticus* DNA polymerase, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 88:7276–7280, 1991.

This paper describes how the 5′ exonuclease activity of a DNA polymerase can be used to detect PCR products, which was a key factor in the development of real-time PCR.

Myers TW, Gelfand DH: Reverse transcription and DNA amplification by a *Thermus thermophilus* DNA polymerase, *Biochemistry* 30:7661–7666, 1991.

This paper is another milestone in the enzymology of PCR. It describes the use of a single thermostable enzyme to accomplish both the reverse-transcriptase and cDNA amplification, facilitating the development of one-step, closed-tube RT-PCR for RNA targets.

Ririe K, Rasmussen RP, Wittwer CT: Product differentiation by analysis of DNA melting curves during the polymerase chain reaction, *Anal Biochem* 245:154–160, 1997.

This paper describes how melting curve analysis using a microvolume fluorometer integrated with a thermal cycler can be used to differentiate and identify PCR products by monitoring the double-stranded DNA binding dye SYBR green.

Saiki RK, Gelfand DH, Stoffel S, et al: Primer-directed enzymatic amplification of DNA with a thermostable DNA polymerase, *Science* 239:487–491, 1988.

This seminal paper describes the use of a thermostable DNA polymerase to catalyze the polymerase chain reaction. This development made PCR much more "user friendly" and paved the way for automation of the process.

REFERENCES

Barbeau JM, Goforth J, Caliendo AM, et al: Performance characteristics of a quantitative TaqMan hepatitis C virus RNA analyte-specific reagent, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:3739–3746, 2004.

Chamberlain JS, Gibbs RA, Rainer JE, et al: Detection screening of the Duchenne muscular dystrophy locus via multiplex DNA amplification, *Nucleic Acids Res* 16:1141–1156, 1988.

Clementi M, Menzo S, Bagnarelli P, et al: Quantitative PCR and RT-PCR in virology, *PCR Methods Appl* 2:191–196, 1993.

Collins ML, Zayati C, Detmer JJ, et al: Preparation and characterization of RNA standards for use in quantitative branched-DNA hybridization assays, *Anal Biochem* 226:120–129, 1995.

Compton J: Nucleic acid sequence-based amplification, *Nature* 350:91–92, 1991.

Cope JJ, Hildesheim A, Schiffman MH, et al: Comparison of the hybrid capture tube test and PCR for detection of human papillomavirus DNA in cervical specimens, *J Clin Microbiol* 35:2262–2265, 1997.

Farrar JS, Wittwer CT: Extreme PCR: Efficient and specific DNA amplification in 15-60 seconds, *Clin Chem* 61:145–153, 2015.

Gilliland G, Perrin S, Blanchard K, et al: Analysis of cytokine mRNA and DNA: Detection and quantitation by competitive polymerase chain reaction, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 887:2725–2729, 1990.

Ginocchio CC, Barth D, Zhang F: Comparison of the Third Wave Invader human papillomavirus assay and the Digene HPV hybrid capture assay for detection of high-risk HPV, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:1641–1646, 2008.

Haqqi TM, Sarkar G, David CS, et al: Specific amplification with PCR of a refractory segment of genomic DNA, *Nucleic Acids Res* 16:11844, 1988.

Heid CA, Stevens J, Livak KJ, et al: Real-time quantitative PCR, *Genome Res* 6:986–994, 1996.

Karlen Y, McNair A, Perseguers S, et al: Statistical significance of quantitative PCR, *BMC Bioinformatics* 8:131, 2007.

Kern D, Collins M, Fultz T, et al: An enhanced-sensitivity branched-DNA assay for quantification of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 RNA in plasma, *J Clin Microbiol* 34:3196–3202, 1996.

Kricka LJ: Nucleic acid detection technologies—labels, strategies, and formats, *Clin Chem* 45:453–458, 1999.

Kutyavin IV, Afonina IA, Mills A, et al: 3ε-minor groove binder-DNA probes increase sequence specificity at PCR extension temperatures, *Nucleic Acids Res* 28:655–661, 2000.

Kwoh DY, David GR, Whitfield KM, et al: Transcription-based amplification system and detection of amplified human immunodeficiency virus type 1 with a bead-based sandwich hybridization format, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 86:1173–1177, 1989.

Lay MJ, Wittwer CT: Real-time fluorescence genotyping of factor V Leiden during rapid cycle PCR, *Clin Chem* 43:2262–2267, 1997.

Lieber MR: The FEN-1 family of structure-specific nucleases in eukaryotic DNA replication, recombination and repair, *Bioessays* 19:233–240, 1996.

Little MC, Andrews J, Moore R, et al: Strand displacement amplification and homogeneous real-time detection incorporated in a second-generation DNA probe system, BDProbeTecET, *Clin Chem* 45:777–784, 1999.

Luk KC, Devare SG, Hackett JR Jr: Partially double-stranded linear DNA probes: Novel design for sensitive detection of genetically polymorphic targets, *J Virol Methods* 144:1–11, 2007.

Lyamichev V, Mast A, Hall JG, et al: Polymorphism identification and quantitative detection from genomic DNA by invasive cleavage of oligonucleotide probes, *Nature Biotech* 17:292–296, 1999.

Mazzulli T, Drew LW, Yen-Lieberman B, et al: Multicenter comparison of the Digene hybrid capture CMV DNA assay (version 2.0), the pp65 antigenemia assay, and cell culture for detection of cytomegalovirus viremia, *J Clin Microbiol* 37:958–963, 1999.

Merante F, Yaghoubian S, Janeczko R: Principles of the xTAG respiratory viral panel assay, *J Clin Virol* 40: S31–S35, 2007.

Morrison T, Weiss JJ, Wittwer CT: Quantification of low copy transcripts by continuous SYBR green I dye monitoring during amplification, *Biotechniques* 24: 954–958, 1998.

Nie S, Roth RB, Stiles J, et al: Evaluation of Alere i Influenza A&B for rapid detection of influenza virus A and B, *J Clin Microbiol* 52:3339–3344, 2014.

Nolte FS: Branched DNA signal amplification for direct quantitation of nucleic acid sequences in clinical specimens, *Adv Clin Chem* 33:201–235, 1998.

Notomi T, Okayama H, Masubuchi H, et al: Loop-mediated isothermal amplification of DNA, *Nucleic Acid Res* 28:e63, 2000.

Piatak M Jr, Luk K-C, Williams B, et al: Quantitative competitive polymerase chain reaction for accurate quantitation of HIV DNA and RNA species, *Biotechniques* 14:70h80, 1993.

Piccirilli JA, Krauch T, Moroney SE, et al: Enzymatic incorporation of a new base pair into DNA and RNA extends the genetic alphabet, *Nature* 343:33–37, 1990.

Pierce VM, Hodinka RL: Comparison of GenMark Diagnostics eSensor respiratory viral panel to real-time PCR for detection of respiratory viruses in children, *J Clin Microbiol* 50:3458–3465, 2012.

Poritz MA, Blaschke AJ, Byinhton CL, et al: FilmArray, an automated nested multiplex PCR system for multi-pathogen detection: Development and application to respiratory tract infection, *PLoS ONE* 6:e2606047, 2011. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0026047.

Rosetti S, Englisch S, Bresin E, et al: Detection of mutations in human genes by a new rapid method: Cleavage fragment length polymorphism analysis (CFLPA), *Mol Cell Probes* 11:155–160, 1997.

Ryan D, Nuccie B, Arvan D: Non-PCR dependent detection of the factor V Leiden mutation for genomic DNA using a homogeneous invader microtiter plate assay, *Mol Diagn* 4:13597;11, 1999.

Schönbrunner NJ, Fiss EH, Budker O, et al: Chimeric thermostable DNA polymerases with reverse transcriptase and attenuated 3′-5′exonuclease activity, *Biochemistry* 12786–12795, 2006.

Sherrill CB, Marshall DJ, Moser MJ, et al: Nucleic acid analysis using an expanded genetic alphabet to quench fluorescence, *J Am Chem Soc* 126:4550–4556, 2004.

Sreevatsan S, Bookout JB, Ringplis FM, et al: Algorithmic approach to high-throughput molecular screening for alpha interferon-resistant genotypes in hepatitis C patients, *J Clin Microbiol* 36:1895–1901, 1998.

Taly V, Pekin D, El Abed A, et al: Detecting biomarkers with microdroplet technology, *Trends Mol Med* 18:405–416, 2012.

Thelwell N, Millington S, Solinas A, et al: Mode of action and application of Scorpion primers to mutation detection, *Nucleic Acid Res* 28:3752–3761, 2000.

Tong Y, Tang W, Kim H, et al: Development of isothermal TaqMan assays for detection of biothreat organisms, *Biotechniques* 45:543–557, 2008.

Tyagi S, Bratu DP, Kramer FR: Multicolor molecular beacons for allele discrimination, *Nature Biotech* 16:49–53, 1998.

VanGuilder HD, Vrana KE, Freeman WM: Twenty-five years of quantitative PCR for gene expression analysis, *Biotechniques* 44:619–626, 2008.

Vincent M, Xu Y, Kong H: Helicase-dependent isothermal DNA amplification, *EMBO Rep* 5:795–800, 2004.

Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW: Digital PCR, *Proc Nat Acad Sci U S A* 96:9236–9241, 1999.

Walker GT, Little M, Nadeau J, et al: Strand displacement amplification—An isothermal, in vitro DNA amplification technique, *Nucleic Acid Res* 20:1691–1696, 1992a.

Walker GT, Little MC, Nadeau JG, et al: Isothermal in vitro amplification of DNA by a restriction enzyme/DNA polymerase system, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 89:392–396, 1992b.

Wittwer CT, Garling DJ: Rapid cycle DNA amplification: Time and temperature optimization, *Biotechniques* 10:76–83, 1991.

Wong AK, Chan RC, Nichols WS, et al: Human papillomavirus (HPV) in atypical squamous cervical cytology: The Invader HPV test as a new screening assay, *J Clin Microbiol* 46:869–875, 2008.

CHAPTER 68

HYBRIDIZATION ARRAY TECHNOLOGIES

Martin H. Bluth

ARRAY TECHNOLOGIES, 1328
Macroarrays, 1329
Microarrays, 1329
Microarray Substrates, 1329
Microarray Fabrication, 1329
Oligonucleotide Microarrays, 1330
CDNA Microarrays, 1331
Sequencing Arrays, 1331
Hybrid Capture, 1331
Reverse Line-Blot Hybridization, 1332
Hybridization, Detection, and Image Analysis, 1332
Bioinformatics, 1333
Intellectual Property Issues, 1334
CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF ARRAY TECHNOLOGY, 1335
Array Technology in the Clinical Laboratory, 1335
Array Technology in Clinical Disease, 1335
Limitations, 1335
SELECTED REFERENCES, 1336

KEY POINTS

- Array technology provides a unique and powerful approach to screen a sample for dozens to thousands of genes.
- Current array fabrications allow for diverse platforms with better detection and reduced cost for high-density applications.
- Positive signals are generated when a tagged nucleic acid moiety hybridizes with its complementary probe localized on a solid support (i.e., "chip").
- Care must be taken when performing and interpreting microarray experiments, because numerous factors must be considered in analysis.
- Numerous applications of array technology have been proposed in the past few years, ranging from molecular staging of tumors to the identification and characterization of microbial agents.
- Improvement of quality and yield of nucleic acid extraction from fixed and frozen tissues combined with continued miniaturization and cost reduction of platforms are making array technology more commonplace and user friendly.

In only a few short years, hybridization array technology, which enables the performance of thousands of simultaneous hybridization reactions on a solid substrate within a single analytical procedure, has gone from theoretical construct to practical reality. Such massively parallel determinations offer previously unimaginable opportunities for diagnostic application, ranging from gene sequencing and detection of genetic polymorphisms to measurement of gene expression profiles in cancer cells. Microarray-based systems offer a platform for quantifying the expression of thousands of genes at the same time. Therefore, an unprecedented advantage of this technology is that it affords analysis of whole cassettes of genes, or patterns of gene expression, rather than analysis of one, two, or three genes at a time. The general schema for microarray processing includes the generation of nucleic acid (i.e., deoxyribonucleic acid [DNA]) complementary to genes of interest that is laid out in microscopic quantities on solid surfaces at defined positions (the "probe") nucleic acid (genomic DNA or complementary DNA [cDNA]) from samples is added over the surface—cDNA binds and the presence of bound DNA is detected by fluorescence following laser excitation (for a general review, see Friend & Stoughton, 2002).

It is clear that hybridization array technology has revolutionized the way we approach the study of disease. The one gene–one protein–one function approach is no longer the mainstay of scientific design. Array technology introduced a complicated mirror image of this approach—in other words, multiple functions, multiple proteins, multiple genes. The power of this technology lies in the "screening" capability that it provides. Under defined experimental conditions, one now has the ability to determine changes in the patterns of genes, identifying multiple genes acting in concert. These patterns can then be "mined" through various computer algorithms, grouped into functional categories (e.g., respiratory genes, inflammatory genes), and used to derive signatures diagnostic of disease or to generate novel hypotheses about pathogenesis and cell function. The relationship of these genes to one another (increased versus decreased expression) are determined and generally expressed as fold-change. Microarray findings of differential gene expression require confirmation by other techniques such as quantitative reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) or additional independent microarray studies.

Once candidate genes or groups of genes are identified, classic approaches to gene function (i.e., gene knockout or gene knockdown) can then be employed to elucidate or validate gene function. More importantly, hybridization array technology, with subsequent data mining, allows genes not previously known to be associated with the disease to be considered, generating new paradigms for future study. Similar platforms can be used to sequence large genes and to scan the genome for single nucleotide polymorphisms and methylation sites. This chapter reviews the theoretical basis for the various matrix hybridization platforms and provides a perspective on their clinical application, both currently and in the future.

ARRAY TECHNOLOGIES

A hybridization array is the molecular equivalent of a spreadsheet, where each cell or address reveals a specific piece of data, usually inferred from the binding of a ligand to its specific target. The first array-based methods were exploited in immunoassays (Ekins & Jackson, 1987; Ekins & Chu, 1999), and arrays also have been proposed for parallel studies of diverse targets such as proteins, lipids, carbohydrates, and small molecules (Fodor et al, 1991; Pirrung et al, 1992; Southern, 1996a; Guschin et al, 1997; Schena et al, 1998). Similar to antigen–antibody interactions on immunoarrays, the fundamental principle of nucleic acid arrays is detection of specific hybridization between complementary strands. The principles of nucleic acid hybridization and an overview of various platforms are covered in Chapter 66. The effectiveness of solid-support hybridization formats was pioneered with the use of nitrocellulose membranes (Gillespie & Spiegelman, 1965) for dot blots (Kafatos et al, 1979), line probes, and Southern blots (Southern, 1975). Changing the labeled entity from the probe to the sample was first referred to as *reverse line-blot* (or *dot blot*) hybridization, and led to the beginning of interrogating one sample for multiple potential targets. Moving from dozens to thousands of targets has come about rapidly over the last few years, driven in part by the unique convergence of microfabrication, robotics, and bioinformatics technologies and the demand for high-throughput genetic analysis resulting from the Human Genome Project.

The field is bursting with potential, and many investigators foresee diagnostic and prognostic applications in tumor classification, chemotherapeutic responsiveness, pathogen detection, monitoring antibiotic resistance, and characterizing inflammatory responses. Array technology may make the dream of personalized molecular medicine, where the genes of an individual patient may be assessed for risk factors and disease susceptibility and to predict response to therapy, a reality. Studies using gene expression profiling to predict diseases include identifying which trauma and burn patients will develop sepsis and multisystem organ failure (www.gluegrant.org); genes involved in the pathogenesis of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (Wang et al, 2008); and which patients

would likely have recurrence of cancer (Potti et al, 2006), among others. However, challenges of reproducibility and laboratory quality control remain to be addressed before this enormous potential is realized.

MACROARRAYS

The term *macroarray* has been applied to formats in which areas of probe localization, often called *features*, are large enough to be visualized without magnification. These have been manufactured on nylon or nitrocellulose membranes or as plastic strips with linear arrays of bound target. Because of the size of the features, the density of macroarrays is much lower than microarrays, ranging from a few dozen to hundreds or even thousands of probes. They are usually deposited onto the membrane by printing or dot blotting, and then dried and stored for future use.

Nylon, plastic, and glass (silicon wafer) are standard supports to make macroarrays. Nylon suffers several drawbacks when compared to silicon, which is a preferred matrix for hybridization arrays. Besides its porous nature, nylon displays high autofluorescence, limiting the sensitivity of fluorescence-based detection because of high background values. The latter also precludes the possibility to develop ratiometric (or two-color) assays. This approach uses two targets, each labeled with a different fluor. Most commonly, one is a constant reference control used in direct comparison to the unknown sample, with results expressed as a ratio of the two emitted fluorescent signals (Duggan et al, 1999).

Macroarrays are currently used for targeted applications. For example, some commercial arrays target all the known cytokine genes or those within specific signal transduction pathways that are activated during infectious and inflammatory processes. Other arrays, targeting the genes altered during oncogenesis, have been used in cancer research (e.g., Atlas Human Arrays, Clontech, Palo Alto, Calif., or GeneFilters, Research Genetics, Huntsville, Ala.). Other commercial applications, usually in kit format, are used to detect and type specific PCR products, such as in the cystic fibrosis mutation screen, human leukocyte antigen typing, or human papillomavirus typing. Furthermore, nylon-based arrays have been used to detect bacterial colony–based gene expression (Barsalobres-Cavallari et al, 2006) and thyroid cancer detection (Durand et al, 2008). The advantages of macroarrays include the ability to use standard hybridization equipment, simplified reading or scanning, and affordability.

Some groups have been successful in producing high-density nylon arrays on a custom basis for gene discovery purposes (Gress et al, 1992; Takahashi et al, 1995; Granjeaud et al, 1996; Pietu et al, 1996; Clark et al, 1999; Durand et al, 2008). Even in high-density configurations, the size of the nylon arrays requires a relatively large volume of hybridization fluid, a practical limitation with respect to generating a probe from small amounts of diagnostic material. Because microarrays, rather than macroarrays, represent the high-density, high-throughput platform of choice, the bulk of this chapter focuses on applications of microarrays.

MICROARRAYS

Assay miniaturization saves time while cutting costs in biomedical diagnostic applications and research. Working with smaller volumes reduces reagent consumption, increases sample concentration, and improves reaction kinetics. These improvements allow the investigator to determine hundreds or thousands of results in the time formerly required for a single experiment. Microarrays are now available from several commercial suppliers, along with reading and fabrication equipment for custom manufacture of dedicated arrays for specific research or diagnostic applications.

MICROARRAY SUBSTRATES

A major distinction between microarrays and macroarrays consists of the choice of a nonporous solid support. By preventing diffusion of the target nucleic acids, nonporous surfaces (plastic, glass, or silicon substrates) allow faster hybridization kinetics and easier washing steps. In order to allow spatial discrimination of numerous reactions performed simultaneously, the molecular probes are bound to a solid surface in defined arrays. Deposition of probes on a solid substrate is also more amenable to automation and enables higher array densities with optimal image definition. These features apply to any type of microarray, from synthetic oligonucleotides to cloned cDNAs or PCR products (Southern et al, 1999). Most microarrays are now developed on glass. As opposed to plastic derivatives, glass transparency and lack of autofluorescence allows low-background, fluorescence-based detection. However, as materials science becomes more involved in array technologies, alternative substrates, including coated glass and plastic substrates, may become available.

MICROARRAY FABRICATION

3′-End functionalization (i.e., chemical modification) of nucleic acids—oligonucleotides, PCR products, cDNAs, or peptide nucleic acid oligomers—is required for covalent immobilization on either glass or polypropylene surfaces (Matson et al, 1995; Beier & Hoheisel, 1999). For example, treatment of glass slides with silane allows amino-covered glass to bind amino-linked probes, using bifunctional molecules such as a dialdehyde or a diisothiocyanate (Case-Green & Southern, 1994; Guo et al, 1994). Alternatively, glass coating with a polycation (e.g., polylysine) allows direct charge-coupled binding of polyanionic DNA probes (Maskos & Southern, 1993a); an ultraviolet photo-cross-linking step adds covalent bonds to the ionic interaction. Covalent binding is essential to permit stringent washes and therefore accurate discrimination of hybridized species. Several protocols have been published to address surface activation (Maskos & Southern, 1992; Beattie et al, 1995; Matson et al, 1995; Beier & Hoheisel, 1999). An interesting alternative consists of deposition of small patches of activated polyacrylamide to which presynthesized oligonucleotides are attached by microinjection (Khrapko et al, 1991; Yershov et al, 1996; Guschin et al, 1997).

Packing density of probes attached to solid surfaces will influence greatly the performance of hybridization matrices. Poor coupling efficiency, which is often encountered on glass matrices, can result in low probe density and low signal : noise ratios. On the other hand, overly dense packing of oligonucleotides onto a solid surface causes spatial hindrance. This problem may be even more formidable with longer biomolecules such as cDNAs. Hybridization yields can be increased by up to two orders of magnitude by introducing spacers between the surface and the oligonucleotides (Southern et al, 1999). The longer the spacer, the better the hybridization, but, interestingly, there is an optimal spacer length beyond which hybridization yield declines (Shchepinov et al, 1997; Duggan et al, 1999). For example, a 40-carbon atom spacer provides a reported 150-fold hybridization enhancement (Shchepinov et al, 1997). The density of oligonucleotides is approximately 0.1 pmol/mm^2 on a glass surface, two orders of magnitude less than on aminated polypropylene. Thus a potential advantage of glass over plastic matrices at present is an optimal oligonucleotide density associated with lower spatial hindrance (Southern et al, 1999). Improved surface chemistries may one day allow production of arrays on plastic sheets or films, which may dramatically reduce production costs. To this end, film-based chip arrays have recently been described (Erali et al, 2009).

The terminal composition (5′ end) of the oligonucleotides influences their duplex yield as measured by relative intensity. As expected, G : C rich 5′ extremities lead to a better yield than their homologues (same composition but different sequences) (Maskos & Southern, 1993b). Approaches to modify the 5′ end of oligonucleotides (e.g., covalent addition of a degenerated linker) can therefore be considered to minimize this contribution. Alternatively, knowledge that mismatches at the ends are less destabilizing and therefore more difficult to discriminate by hybridization (Southern et al, 1999) has led to clever improvements for detection of hybridization events. Because polymerases and ligases are most sensitive to terminal (as opposed to internal) mismatches, enzymatic methods have been developed with improved detection stringency (solid-phase minisequencing [Pastinen et al, 1997; 1998; Syvanen, 1999], genetic-bit analysis [Nikiforov et al, 1994], or ligation-assays [Landegren et al, 1988; Nickerson et al, 1990]).

Commercially available arrays have been previously reviewed by Marshall and Hodgson (1998). Fabrication of microarrays falls into two broad categories: those made by direct probe delivery onto the solid surface and those made by in situ synthesis. A third method, which was developed by Nanogen (San Diego), consists of prefabricated oligonucleotides captured onto electroactive spots on silicon wafers (Edman et al, 1997; Sosnowski et al, 1997; Cheng et al, 1998; Heller et al, 1998; Jang et al, 2009). Modification of the electric field through independent, spatially addressable electrodes can speed up hybridization and, when the polarity is reversed, provide stringent washing (Edman et al, 1997). Recently, large single-stranded, circular-sense molecules were used as probes for DNA microarrays and showed stronger binding signals than those of PCR-amplified cDNA probes (Doh et al, 2010).

Delivery Technologies

Deposition of presynthesized biomolecules was initiated by Pat Brown and colleagues (Schena et al, 1995; Shalon et al, 1996). Biochemical substances (e.g., proteins, peptides, oligonucleotides, cDNAs) are prepared, purified, and stored in microtiter plates. Small quantities of molecules are mechanically delivered on precisely defined locations on a solid surface, using different precision robotic systems. This method is very flexible in terms

of biochemical composition, microarray topology (e.g., size and density of the spots, replicate spots for each molecule), and ease of prototyping, allowing for design alteration for different applications. Mechanical methods allow the synthesis of moderate- to high-density microarrays (up to about 16,000 probes/cm^2 [Graves, 1999]). It is the method of choice when large numbers of microarrays are needed with the same composition, as well as for long sequences using PCR products. Several companies are now manufacturing and selling premanufactured arrays (e.g., MicroMax, NEN Life Science, Boston) or arrayers based on deposition (Cheung et al, 1999) as an alternative to building an arrayer (Brown et al, 2000).

Delivery procedures consist of different microprinting systems. Most arrayers use fountain pen–like microdispensing tips (e.g., Cartesian Technologies, Irvine, Calif.), but some original systems such as the pin-and-ring technique have been developed (Genetic MicroSystems, Woburn, Mass.). In general, because of surface tension, static, and other effects, the reproducibility of printed arrays is lower than in situ synthesis and must be corrected by separate experiments (repeats), replicate spots (on the same slide), multicolor fluorescence detection, and/or other specific detection algorithms (Chen et al, 1997; Jang et al, 2009). Because of its flexibility and availability, printed array technology will probably have the largest impact on research and clinical laboratories over the next few years.

In Situ Synthesis

In situ synthesis allows higher yields, lower chip-to-chip variation, and higher probe densities. These methods also permit the manufacture of true "random access" arrays, meaning that each oligonucleotide in any position can have any chosen sequence (Southern et al, 1999). *Combinatorial strategies* refer to methods developed to make microarrays containing all sequences of a given length (also referred to as *generic arrays*). Combinatorial arrays have been promoted mostly to study large-scale hybridization behavior (Southern et al, 1994) or for solid-state nucleic acid sequencing (Macevicz, 1991; Strezoska et al, 1991; Drmanac & Crkvenjakov, 1993; Drmanac et al, 1993; Lipshutz, 1993; Drmanac et al, 1998; Drmanac & Drmanac 1999).

Manufacturing techniques include photolithographic masks to control chemical activation by photodeprotection steps (Fodor et al, 1991), ink-jet deposition (Stimpson et al, 1998), and physical barriers to sequential flooding of precursors (Maskos & Southern, 1993c). Affymetrix has coupled photochemical deprotection to solid-phase DNA synthesis by adapting techniques from the semiconductor industry (Pease et al, 1994; Lockhart et al, 1996; Lipshutz et al, 1999). Synthetic linkers modified with photochemically removable protecting groups are attached to silicon wafers. By shining ultraviolet light through a photolithographic mask, localized photodeprotection occurs and permits specific chemical building blocks (hydroxyl-protected deoxynucleosides) to react with the deprotected groups (Fodor et al, 1991) (Fig. 68-1). Cycles alternating photodeprotection and incubation with different chemical building blocks allow light-directed synthesis of polydeoxynucleotides (Fig. 68-2). The synthesized oligonucleotides have a maximum practical length because of the limited efficiency of the photodeprotection (80% to 95% at each cycle) (Forman et al, 1999). Therefore, the proportion of 20-mers displaying the predefined sequence is between 1% and 36% (0.8E20 and 0.95E20) (Fodor et al, 1991).

Mechanical masks or barriers permit confinement of surface areas before flooding with defined precursors. Physical masks of different shapes (circular, diamond) allow in situ synthesis of a given precursor in known locations. Sequential displacement of masks followed by the flooding of another precursor allows synthesis of large combinatorial deoxynucleotide arrays (Southern et al, 1992; Southern, 1996b; Maskos & Southern, 1993c). To date, Affymetrix is able to synthesize up to 400,000 different polydeoxynucleotides in a 1.6 cm^2 area (Fodor et al, 1991). Critical to this step is the precise alignment of the mask with the wafer before each synthesis step. To ensure that this critical step is accurately completed, chrome marks on the wafer and on the mask are perfectly aligned. Although the process is highly efficient, some activated molecules fail to attach the new nucleotide. To prevent these outliers from becoming probes with missing nucleotides, a capping step is used to truncate them. In addition, the side chains of the nucleotides are protected to prevent the formation of branched oligonucleotides (www.affymetrix.com). Despite the high cost, this is the method of choice for large-scale differential gene expression studies because of sensitivity, reproducibility, and redundancy of information.

Ink-jet technologies owe their development to the printer industry and are in continuous development by several companies such as Incyte Pharmaceuticals (Palo Alto, Calif.), Protogene (Palo Alto, Calif.), and Rosetta Inpharmatics (Kirkland, Wash.) (Blanchard et al, 1996). This technology is also commercially available (Ink-Jet, Packard Instruments, Meriden, Conn.; Piezoelectric pump, GeSiM, Grosserkmannsdorf, Germany). This technology gave rise to the ability to place an oligonucleotide or other entity (i.e., small molecule or tag) in two-dimensional space. Such an approach offers versatility in the biomolecules being delivered and eliminates the need for physical contact with the surface of the array; this last property may be of relevance for the development of arrays coated with thin layers of metals and using different detection methods (Heyse et al, 1998; Schmid et al, 1998). Light scattering from microparticles tagging target sequences can be detected as an evanescent wave immediately above the surface of the glass. This method allows real-time affinity measurement with a very low background (Stimpson & Gordon, 1996).

OLIGONUCLEOTIDE MICROARRAYS

Thermodynamics, kinetics of hybridization, and quantitative aspects of oligonucleotide hybridization have been extensively studied (reviewed by Wetmur, 1991; Hoheisel, 1996; Pozhitkov et al, 2007). Oligonucleotide arrays have a lower sensitivity than cDNA arrays for detection of rare messages or hybridization targets and poor predictability of hybridization characteristics because hybridization potential, and therefore the expected signal intensity, does not correlate well with the G : C content or the melting temperature (Lockhart et al, 1996; Graves, 1999). On the other hand, oligonucleotide arrays are easier to construct using deposition of synthesized product or in situ synthesis described earlier. In addition, hybridization conditions can be more homogeneous than on a cDNA array, provided that the array is designed with oligonucleotides of equivalent sizes.

Oligonucleotide arrays have applications in gene expression profiling as well as in DNA sequencing. For sequencing applications, they can be divided into two fields: generic arrays (representing a random oligonucleotide matrix) or dedicated arrays (for molecular variants of a predetermined target). Generic arrays have been proposed as an inexpensive

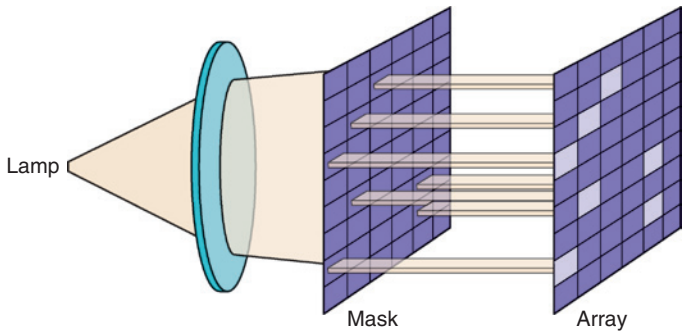


Figure 68-1 Photolithographic synthesis. Ultraviolet light is transmitted through a photolithographic mask, allowing localized photodeprotection of specific chemical building blocks. (Courtesy Affymetrix.)

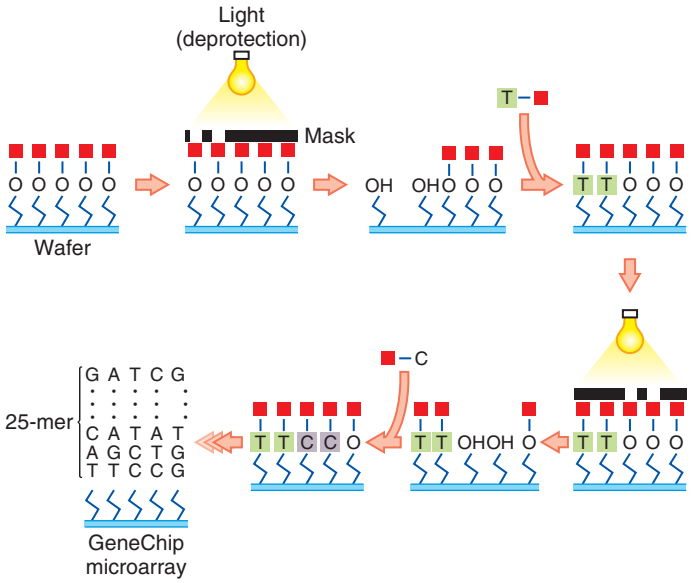


Figure 68-2 Diagram of GeneChip array manufacture using a unique combination of photolithography and combinatorial chemistry. (Courtesy Affymetrix.)

alternative to sequencing. Using all possible combinations of an n-mer allows "walking" at every position along a nucleotide sequence. This type of array is the only one capable of detecting sequences that are lacking in large electronic libraries. In contrast, dedicated arrays are used for repetitive sequencing (resequencing) of the same target for detection of nucleotide polymorphisms or functional mutations. This implies knowledge of the targets and their most frequent variants in order to incorporate predetermined sets of oligonucleotides on the diagnostic array. This approach has been used for detection of genetic polymorphisms associated with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) drug resistance and other polymorphisms. Oligonucleotide arrays can also be used to define single nucleotide polymorphisms (Guo et al, 1994), even by comparing two samples with multicolor fluorescence (Chee et al, 1996). Further examples and applications of polymorphism to disease treatment and management are described later in this chapter and in Chapter 73.

The search for oligomers of higher affinity has opened the way for chemical modifications of the oligonucleotide probe and template in order to improve the kinetics and thermodynamics of binding. Peptide nucleic acid probes (PNAs) allow hybridization to be performed at a higher stringency, because of the high-stability of PNA–DNA duplexes (Corey, 1997) and are able to recognize exclusively single strands of DNA and ribonucleic acid (RNA) in antiparallel fashion (Moggio et al, 2007). Methylated RNA probes (Corey, 1998) display relatively similar affinities. However, PNAs display more rapid hybridization conditions than their nucleic acid counterparts, primarily because of their neutral backbone structure (Freeman & Gioia, 1999). Overall, it can be said that, although the reduction of the hybridization time from hours to minutes would be a clear asset, the problem of unpredictability of the melting points of these high-affinity oligomers must be overcome before implementation on microarrays (Weiler et al, 1997). In addition to probes, targets can be chemically modified to locally enhance signals. Pyrimidine-rich target regions can generate higher hybridization signals by incorporating 5-methyluridine during in vitro transcription (Woski et al, 1998).

CDNA MICROARRAYS

Microarrays of cDNA sequences allow hybridization-based monitoring of the expression of the cognate genes. Therefore, this strategy implies access to clones or the possibility of generating PCR products. To date, the best strategies use two-color fluorescence detection to discriminate between a sample and its control and check for differential level of expression. This method has been pioneered and validated by Pat Brown and colleagues at Stanford University (Schena et al, 1995; 1996; Shalon et al, 1996). Advantages of this approach are calculating a ratio on every probe, to control for the quality of the probe, the specific hybridization properties of each target/probe pair, and the labeling efficacy. Synteni (a subsidiary of Incyte, Palo Alto, Calif.) has developed its Gene Expression Micro-arrays for this purpose (Schena et al, 1998). NEN Life Science is selling glass slides prespotted with 2400 known human genes (MicroMax), and continuous miniaturization is allowing for greater gene representation in a smaller area.

Although they appear to be inherently less reproducible, cDNA microarrays currently offer the greatest versatility in terms of probe deposition and accessibility of the technology. Several companies now offer equipment for array manufacture and reading of hybridized matrices. It is likely that cDNA arrays and high-density oligonucleotide arrays will play complementary roles in research laboratories over the next few years; high-density arrays will be used primarily for the discovery of diagnostically relevant loci, and dedicated arrays will be used increasingly for the medium- to low-density analysis of diagnostically relevant loci discovered by high-density array analysis.

SEQUENCING ARRAYS

Nucleic acid sequence data are fundamental to modern molecular biology. Conventional methods (Maxam & Gilbert, 1977; Sanger et al, 1977) are time-consuming, labor intensive, and costly. Alternative sequencing methods using solid-phase hybridization were proposed on a theoretical basis (Bains & Smith, 1988; Khrapko et al, 1989) within 15 years of the discovery of these methods (Southern, 1975). The theoretical articles were followed shortly by data confirming the principles of array-based sequencing for short artificial templates (Southern et al, 1992; Pease et al, 1994; Parinov et al, 1996). A well-written review of microarray sequencing methods was published in 1999 (Hacia, 1999). The reader might note, however, that much of the work published and cited in this area is provided by researchers with some financial interest in one or more of the proprietary devices evaluated in these publications. Rather than endorsing a particular device or method, this chapter acquaints the reader with basic principles involved in the assay.

Any nucleic acid sequence can in theory be broken down into subsets of length n. All the possible oligonucleotides of length n (n-mers) can then be placed at fixed locations on a solid surface. Nucleic acid to be sequenced (the template) is amplified if necessary, labeled with a direct (fluorescent, luminescent, radioactive) or indirect (affinity) label, and allowed to hybridize to the bound collection of n-mers. Detection of a label allows the sequencer to verify a match with an n-mer at a particular locus on the solid surface. The intensity of the signal at that locus should be directly proportional to the number of domains in the template corresponding to the n-mer at that locus. Methods for all these steps are outlined in preceding sections of this chapter.

For sequencing applications, the n-mers that match the template are then assembled into a definite order by analysis of n-mers with overlapping sequence, similar in principle to the arrangement of contigs by large-scale sequencing programs. Consider a nonanucleotide template that, under stringent conditions, is bound only to the loci containing the following four tetramers on an array with all 256 possible tetramers:

Tetramer	Intensity
5′ ACTG	2
5′ CTGA	2
5′ TGAC	15′
GACT	1

It is trivial to reason from the areas of overlap that the nonanucleotide template was 5′ ACTGACTGA. Computational analysis of this kind is straightforward. Because the computation, the scanning of the array to detect the label, the labeling itself, and to some extent even the extraction and amplification of the DNA can be automated, it is lovely to envision a "black box" that accomplishes all this in an afternoon. Consider, however, a nonanucleotide that binds to loci containing the following tetramers:

Tetramer	Intensity
5′ TCTA	1
5′ CTAC	1
5′ TACT	1
5′ ACTT	1
5′ CTTC	1
5′ TTCT	1

This could represent 5′ TCTACTTCT or 5′ TTCTACTTC; there is no computational way to resolve it. Where *n* is less than half the length of the template, repeats of the same length as n/2 can render the data ambiguous. Computation becomes increasingly difficult as template length becomes an increasingly higher multiple of n, so it is desirable to have as long an n as possible for sequencing unknown domains. The practical length of n remains limited by technology, however, because 4^n (the number of loci required for universal representation) exceeds 1 million for n = 10. This approaches the current limits of the number of distinct oligonucleotides that can be differentiated on a photolithographic chip (Lipshutz et al, 1999).

HYBRID CAPTURE

Hybrid capture is a nucleic acid hybridization technology that can precede signal amplification and often uses fluorophore or chemiluminescent detection. To date, human papillomavirus (HPV) cannot be cultured in vitro, and immunologic tests are inadequate to determine the presence of HPV cervical infection. Indirect evidence of anogenital HPV infection can be obtained through physical examination and by the presence of characteristic cellular changes associated with viral replication in Papanicolaou smears or biopsy specimens. Alternately, biopsies can be analyzed by nucleic acid hybridization to detect the presence of HPV DNA directly. In the case of modern molecular-based HPV tests, specimens containing the target DNA hybridize with a specific HPV RNA probe cocktail. The resultant RNA:DNA hybrids are captured onto the surface of a solid media (i.e., a microplate well coated with antibodies specific for RNA:DNA hybrids or covalently linked to beads). Immobilized hybrids are then reacted with alkaline phosphatase–conjugated antibodies specific for the RNA:DNA hybrids that bind to a different nonoverlapping determinant site recognized by the capture antibody and detected with a chemiluminescent substrate.

Several alkaline phosphatase molecules are conjugated to each antibody. Multiple conjugated antibodies bind to each captured hybrid, resulting in substantial signal amplification. As the substrate is cleaved by the

bound alkaline phosphatase, light is emitted that is measured as relative light units on a luminometer. The intensity of the light emitted denotes the presence or absence of target DNA in the specimen. In the case of HPV, although this technique can elucidate the presence and load of the virus, it cannot determine which specific types of HPV are present. For the identification of the HPV strains present in the sample, PCR with HPV strain–specific primers would be required (for a review, see Bluth & Bluth, 2013)

REVERSE LINE-BLOT HYBRIDIZATION

Reverse line-blot hybridization, also called "spacer oligonucleotide typing" (spoligotyping), is a method that can detect and identify pathogens based on the presence and comparison of pathogen-specific genes and is useful for confirming the presence of specific pathogens and a proper course of treatment based on possible multidrug resistance. For example, wild-type *M tuberculosis* is a slow-growing bacterium, requiring 2 to 6 weeks to culture, and is sensitive to treatment with rifampicin (RIF). Mutations in the *rpoB*gene can render it resistant to RIF. Using this information, the mutation hot-spot region of the *rpoB* gene is first amplified by mpPCR, using as many as 20 different biotinylated primers, which yield labeled amplified products. The PCR products are hybridized to a set of wild-type and mutant oligonucleotide probes, which are covalently bound to a membrane, by reverse line blotting. It is called "reverse" because in contrast to Southern or northern blotting where the sample is transferred onto a membrane and then probed, the probe is first systematically bound to the membrane, and the sample is then hybridized to it.

Positive hybridization is detected on film after streptavidin-peroxidase incubation and enhanced chemiluminescence. RIF-sensitive strains only hybridize with the wild-type probes, whereas resistant strains will fail to hybridize with one or more wild-type probes and show additional hybridization signals for the mutant probes. The resultant hybridization pattern elucidates the genotype of the *M tuberculosis* and thus a proper treatment protocol (for a review, see Bluth & Bluth, 2013).

HYBRIDIZATION, DETECTION, AND IMAGE ANALYSIS

A critical component of microarray assays is the quality and labeling of the probe. Because the sample carries the label, sample-to-sample variation in probe preparation and labeling can be anticipated. When microarrays are used for gene expression profiling, this step is even more critical because of the difficulties in obtaining high-quality messenger RNA (mRNA). Insufficient, degraded, or poor-quality RNA can deliver erroneous results that lead, after data mining, to improper conclusions (Russo et al, 2003). Although there are many protocols available for high yield of RNA, a final yield of at least a few micrograms of mRNA per experiment has been desirable in most applications, although protocols have used smaller amounts of RNA with subsequent amplification using cDNA intermediates that incorporate an RNA promoter and allow amplification with an RNA polymerase. Initial approaches (Auffray & Rougeon, 1980) converted mRNA to a fluorescent cDNA probe with direct incorporation of fluorescent nucleotides. Currently, most approaches use total RNA, and there are numerous variations of incorporation of a label into cDNA or RNA probes, including indirect affinity labels such as biotin with detection using antibody/avidin/streptavidin tagged with fluors or light-scattering gold particles (Figs. 68-3 and 68-4). Each step of probe preparation from extraction through labeling must be carefully controlled to ensure reproducible results.

The usual consideration of time, temperature, stringency, and probe concentration determine the conditions of the microarray hybridization. Arrays often include negative control probes to allow optimal stringency to be determined. Because of the extremely high complexity of the probe used in gene expression profiling, hybridization times are generally extended to allow low-abundance messages to hybridize. Washes are designed to remove nonspecifically bound probe and reduce background. All steps need to be optimized and standardized. After a successful hybridization, labeled nucleic acid is bound to complementary sequences that are tethered to the array (Fig. 68-5). Some form of image analysis is used to capture a signal. In most approaches, the entire slide is scanned (fluorescence, autoradiographic or light scattering), and an algorithm is used to link features with intensities and gene lists. Software associated with the scanner can generate a "mask" to align the image with a grid used to construct the array. Data acquisition generates large data sets (one image uses typically 10 to 50 megabytes) that have to be stored under standard

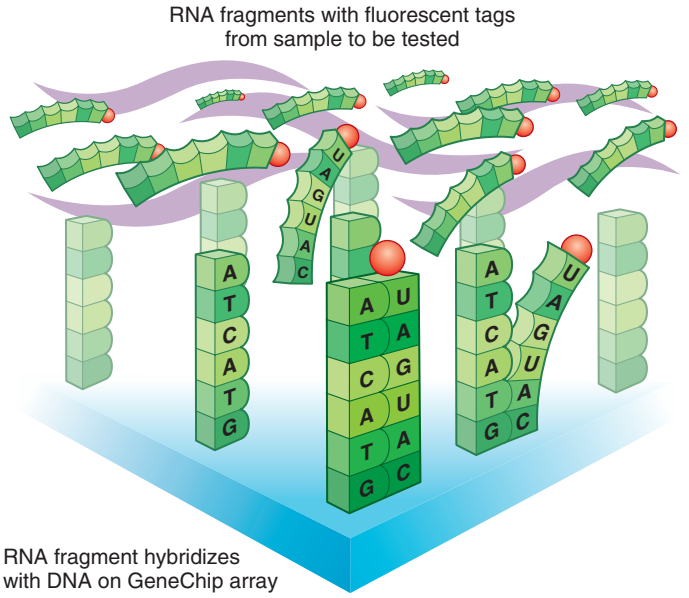


Figure 68-3 Cartoon depicting hybridization of tagged probes to Affymetrix GeneChip microarray. (Courtesy Affymetrix.)

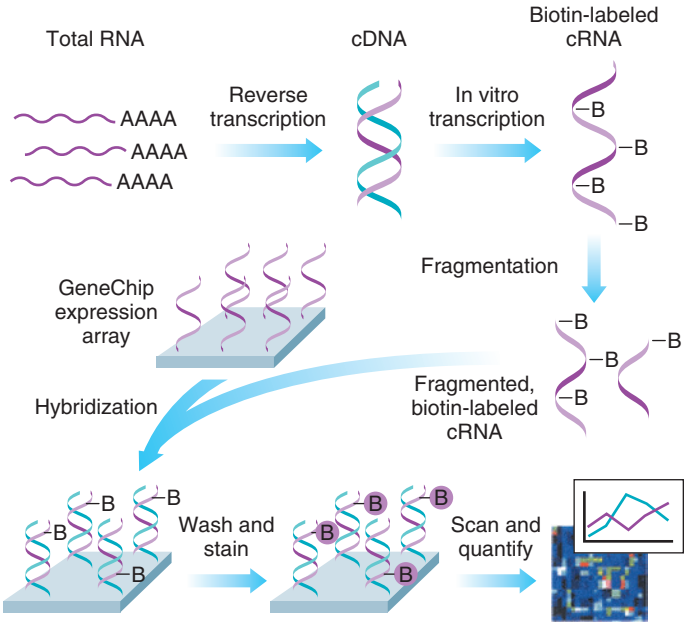


Figure 68-4 Standard eukaryotic gene expression assay. Labeled complementary DNA or RNA targets derived from the messenger RNA (mRNA) of an experimental sample are hybridized to nucleic acid probes attached to the solid support. By monitoring the amount of label associated with each DNA location, it is possible to infer the abundance of each mRNA species represented. (Courtesy Affymetrix.)

formats (e.g., BMP, GIF, JPG). Image processing software will become increasingly automated to ensure proper grid adjustment, detect artifacts, and identify features to extract meaningful information.

Microarray technology has grown over the past decade to incorporate miniaturization of fabrication platforms, enhancement of high-throughput automation (see also Chapter 78), and cost reduction. Many platforms exist to support individual user needs whether they be interrogation of an entire genome, exonic mRNA expression, or limited to a subset of genes involved in specific pathways of interest. Affymetrix (www.affymetrix.com) pioneered mass application of array technology to the scientific community and continues as a leader in the field. Illumina (www.illumina.com) has facilitated RNA analysis of specific genes or regions of interest, with the development of its cDNA-mediated Annealing, Selection, extension, and Ligation (DASL) assay (Fan et al, 2004). This assay reportedly allows for RNA profiling of up to 1536 targets using partially degraded RNA as found in formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded (FFPE) samples. Array technology

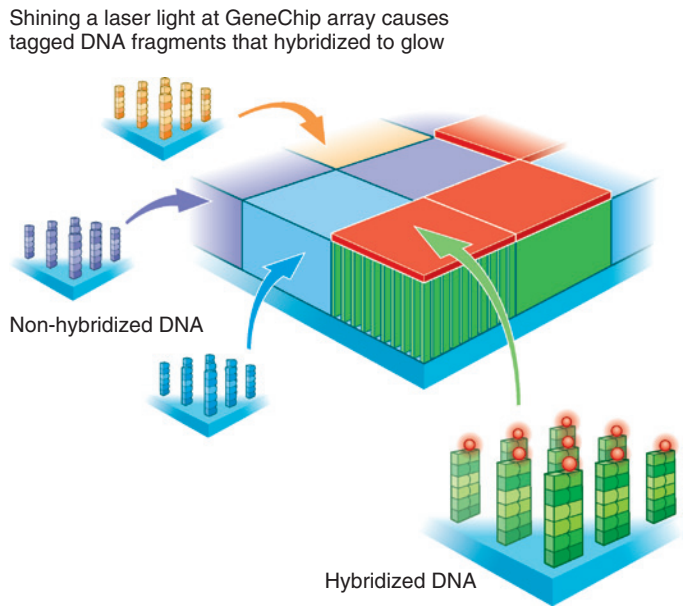


Figure 68-5 Cartoon depicting scanning of tagged and untagged probes on an Affymetrix GeneChip microarray. (Courtesy Affymetrix.)

has also been adapted to interrogate single nucleotide polymorphisms, copy number variations, and structural variants, which differ among individuals and populations (Coulombe-Huntington et al, 2009; Stankiewicz & Lupski, 2010). Such variations influence how individuals differ in their risk of disease and their response to therapeutic treatments (see Chapter 73). Other improvements across the industry include the ability to detect low-abundance transcripts, reduced requirements for the quantity of a sample to a few hundred nanograms or less of total RNA (versus micrograms), automation for low per-sample pricing, and improved consistency in methodology and quality control (Yauk et al, 2005). As a result of the variations in array technologies and differences in sample preparation and signal processing, the Minimal Information About a Microarray Experiment (MIAME) guidelines have been implemented to ensure that all relevant experimental information is presented in a consistent and complete manner that will ensure that published data and publicly available microarray data sets can be interpreted accurately (Yauk et al, 2004).

BIOINFORMATICS

The most challenging aspect of microarrays starts here, when large data sets have been assembled and purged of artifacts and background noise and are awaiting analysis (Draghici, 2003; Parmigiana et al, 2003; Gopalappa et al, 2009; Zhang et al, 2009). The approach depends on the nature of the question and design of the experiment. An initial exploration of the data set is used to evaluate the quality, usually including an assessment of background and mean intensity of the features on the array. To facilitate statistical comparisons between arrays, intensities are commonly log transformed and arrays are "normalized" to each other.

A popular approach to normalizing gene expression is predicated on the assumption that the conditions being compared (e.g., normal versus tumor or infected versus noninfected) would affect the gene expression of relatively few genes, leaving most unaffected. In the absence of systematic bias, the median intensity of all features on the array should be unchanged. Thus a common normalization method is to divide each intensity measurement on the array by the median intensity of the array (Kano et al, 2003). These assumptions are reasonable when the array contains a large number of genes that represent a wide range of biological function.

One caveat of the total intensity normalization methods arises from its implicit assumption that systematic variation is constant across the entire range of expression intensities of the array. However, as data from technical replicate arrays show, systematic variation is often intensity dependent, or nonlinear. In other words, systematic variation observed at low expression intensities differs from systematic variation observed at medium and high intensities (Simon, 2005). Thus linear adjustments, such as dividing each measurement on an array with the median intensity of the array, would not be appropriate for some genes. For perhaps 80% of the arrays, systematic variation is close enough to linear so that total intensity normalization methods are sufficient. However, for the remaining 20% of the arrays, nonlinear normalization methods are required (Genomics and Bioinformatics Group, 2005).

Quantile normalization is a nonlinear normalization method that is often performed on microarrays. In addition to assuming that most genes are unchanged in their expression across experimental conditions, quantile normalization also makes the strong assumption that the distribution of gene expression intensities must also be invariant across the arrays (Irizarry et al, 2003). Thus not only should the median intensity be the same for each array, but the intensity at every quantile of the array should also be the same. Given this assumption, quantile normalization sorts all intensity values on the array by increasing intensity values and adjusts the intensities so that the smallest intensity value on each array is identical, the second smallest values are identical, and so forth. The gene with the smallest intensity value on one array may be different from the gene with the smallest intensity value on another array.

Intensity-dependent systematic variation has also been shown for two-color technology arrays. Intensity-dependent dye bias was first identified by Terry Speed's laboratory, where it was observed that low-abundance genes appear to be upregulated in the Cy5 channel and that moderately expressed genes appear to be upregulated in the Cy3 channel (Yang et al, 2002). This systematic artifact can be effectively corrected by performing a locally weighted linear regression (lowess) (Fig. 68-6). The validity of using housekeeping genes for normalization has been called into question in the past few years. In this method, it is assumed that the expression levels of housekeeping genes are constant across experimental conditions. Thus intensity measurements of an array can be normalized to the mean intensities of these genes. However, the expression levels of some housekeeping genes have been shown to vary considerably across some experimental conditions (Thellin et al, 1999).

Once data have been normalized, quality control is performed at both the sample level and the gene level. Sample-level quality control assesses sample data globally to identify outliers or, in cases where replicate reproducibility is generally observed, one or a few samples that may represent outliers. Potential outliers may be identified as those that do not cluster with replicate samples or those that do not correlate highly with replicate samples. Hierarchical clustering, principal component analysis, class prediction algorithms, and similarity metrics are often used to perform sample-level quality control (Grewal et al, 2003).

Gene-level quality control filters out genes for which the large proportion of measurements fall within the noise range to create a restricted set of genes for further analysis. Genes that are removed correspond to those that are not expressed in the tissues of concern or whose expression levels are so low that the technology is not sufficiently sensitive to detect differences in expression. Removal of such genes generally reduces noise, the likelihood of false-positive reactions in subsequent differential expression filters, and the severity of multiple testing corrections required in downstream statistical analyses.

Once normalization and quality control of imported data have been completed, one can perform analyses to isolate the genes of interest. One basic objective in a microarray experiment is to identify genes that may be differentially expressed among the different experimental conditions. Researchers rely on many different variants of common statistical tests to identify differentially expressed genes. One caveat to using statistical tests to identify differentially expressed genes is that the number of false-positive reactions from the statistical analysis is proportional to the number of tests that are performed. Because hundreds or thousands of genes are often tested at once, the number of false-positive reactions from the analysis can potentially dominate the list of candidate genes that are thought to be differentially expressed. Thus it is important to limit the number of false-positive reactions in a statistical analysis by performing multiple testing correction. Two categories of multiple testing correction are those that determine the family-wise error rate (FWER) and those that determine the false discovery rate (FDR). FWER tests control the overall chance that at most one gene is incorrectly identified as being differentially expressed after the statistical analysis and after performing the multiple testing correction (Grewal et al, 2003). Examples of FWER tests are the Bonferroni, Holms–Bonferroni step-down, and Westfall and Young Permutation. FDR tests confine the probability of false-positive reactions to be proportional to the number of genes that pass the statistical test instead of the total number of genes tested by the statistical analysis. An example of an FDR test is the Benjamini and Hochberg false discovery rate (Benjamini & Hochberg, 1995). Several excellent statistical packages are available online (e.g., BRB Tools, SAM, Focus, D Chip, R Bioconductor Library, PAM).

Clustering analysis (Fig. 68-7) is suitable for grouping genes that behave similarly across multiple conditions of an experiment. Clustering

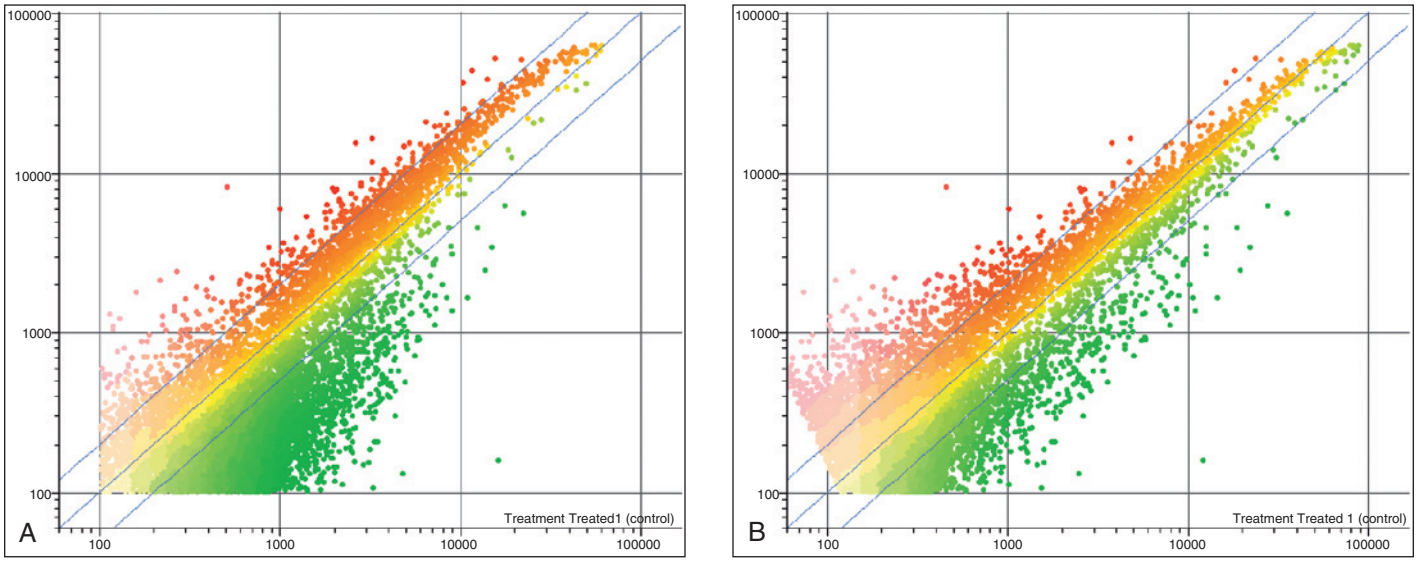


Figure 68-6 **Lowess intensity-dependent normalization is used for two-color data.** It is a type of within-slide normalization scheme that adjusts for intensity-dependent variation due to dye properties. Dye bias is caused by inconsistencies in the relative fluorescence intensity between Cy5 and Cy3. These inconsistencies often result in nonlinear relationship between the two dyes and a curve occurs in a scatter plot. **A,** Data before normalization. **B,** By applying lowess normalization, a locally weighted regression is fitted to the data to adjust the control value for each measurement. As a result, the plot of signal versus control value will be linear. (Courtesy Agilent Technologies.)

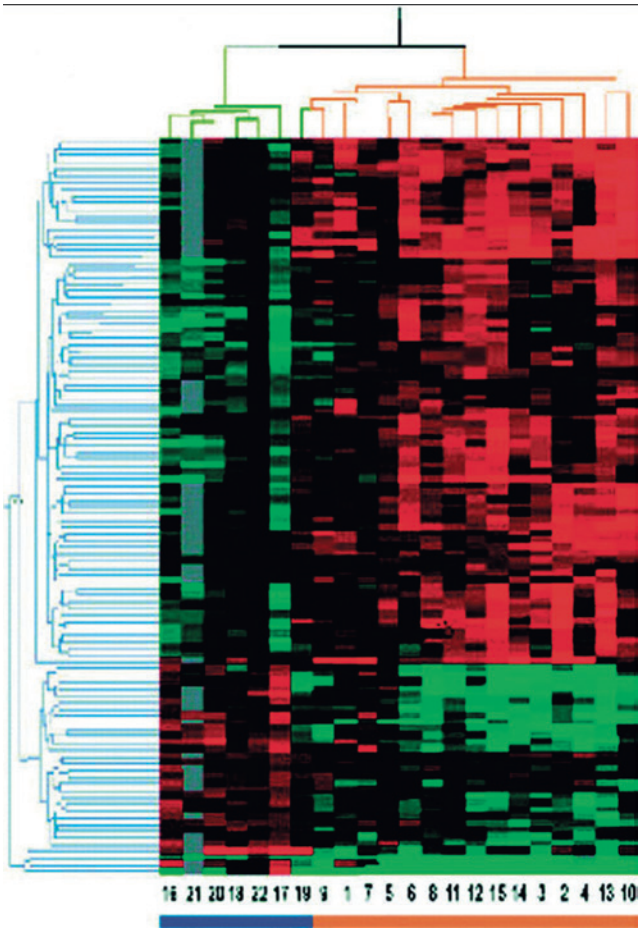


Figure 68-7 **Hierarchical clustering dendrogram of duodenal genes from different celiac disease (orange bar) and control (blue) biopsy samples.** Clustering of 109 genes across 22 samples clusters the seven control samples (blue bar) separately from the 15 celiac disease patients (orange bar). Each column represents a celiac disease or a control sample and each row represents an individual gene. For each gene, a green signal represents underexpression, black signals denote similarly expressed genes, a red signal represents overexpressed genes, and gray signals denote missing data. (Adapted with permission of the BMJ Publishing Group from Diosdado B, Wapenaar MC, Franke L, et al: A microarray screen for novel candidate genes in coeliac disease pathogenesis, *Gut* 53:944, 2004.)

has many applications in expression data analysis. It allows one to infer the previously unknown function of a gene from the functions of the genes that it clusters with. This is based on the assumption that genes that share similar functions share similar expression behavior across experimental conditions. Clustering may also be useful in finding genes that may be coregulated. This is based on the assumption that genes that are coregulated share similar expression profiles. Thus it may be useful to analyze the promoter regions of genes that cluster together to find common regulatory elements (Grewal et al, 2003; Gollub & Sherlock, 2006).

The generated genes of interest can then be integrated with known biology. The ability to cross-reference gene lists from differential expression analysis and/or clustering analysis against gene ontology or other gene function lists to ascertain significance of overlap is available in some programs (e.g., Agilent/GeneSpring). Other popular programs include Bioconductor—an open source and open development software project for the analysis and comprehension of genomic data, based on the R programming language (Zhang et al, 2009); the oligonucleotide centric DChip (www.Dchip.org); TIGRsuite (www.tigr.org), and BeadStudio (array platform– and manufacturer-specific; www.illumina.com). (For a review, see Gollub & Sherlock, 2006; Platts et al, 2006). In addition, genes can be referenced to known biological pathways and/or public databases (GenBank, LocusLink, UniGene, serial analysis of gene expression [SAGE]).

Thus, because of the intensive need for pattern recognition, multidimensional data interpretation, and cross-platform comparison, microarray technology will enjoy a close relationship with bioinformatics, and coevolution of both hardware and software appears to be inevitable (see Chapter 77).

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ISSUES

Microarray technology is a rapidly moving field with fierce competition. It is therefore important to emphasize that numerous patents have been filed, some of which are directly relevant to clinical diagnosis. Therefore, intellectual property remains an important concern in this ever-evolving field (Rouse & Hardiman, 2003). For instance, Affymetrix (www.affymetrix.com, Santa Clara, Calif.) possesses broad patent rights on high-density oligonucleotide arrays (Chee et al, 1998; Holmes, 1998), regardless of the means by which they are made. Assuming that a laboratory decides to develop in-house moderate-density arrays for tumor testing and to charge for such a service, this array might infringe Affymetrix's patents if it exceeds 400 features/cm^2, regardless of the synthesis method (Fodor et al, 1998). Array technologies using micromatrices of polyacrylamide gel pads (three-dimensional gel elements) represent a new approach that might not infringe on Affymetrix claims (Khrapko et al, 1991; Yershov et al, 1996; Guschin et al, 1997). Furthermore, the intellectual property related to the methodology and application of DNA array technology to

identify medicinal versus toxic components in natural remedies, species-specific fingerprinting, and identification of unknown DNA has generated additional patent applications (Shaw et al, 2009). It is hoped that, as occurred with nucleic acid amplification technologies, competition among manufacturers will bring down costs of high- and medium-density arrays and allow for the democratization of this powerful technology.

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF ARRAY TECHNOLOGY

Numerous applications of microarray technology have been proposed in the past few years, ranging from molecular staging of tumors to the identification and characterization of microbial agents. This has led many to speculate that array technology represents the next wave of technologic advances to have a practical impact on the diagnosis of human disease, second only to PCR as a core technology in the clinical molecular diagnostics laboratory. This section focuses on current and future applications of array technology.

ARRAY TECHNOLOGY IN THE CLINICAL LABORATORY

Although not currently widespread, clinical laboratory utilization of array technology appears to be on the horizon. Roth and colleagues (2004) have employed array analysis to detect common respiratory pathogens and compared this with conventional culture from middle ear fluid samples. The sensitivities of the array assay compared to culture for *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* were 96% (93% for culture), 73% (93% for culture), 93% (80% for culture), and 100% (78% for culture), respectively. Furthermore, tissue microarrays have been used as a tool for internal quality control to improve the interpretation of immunohistochemical staining (Packeisen et al, 2002; Gulmann et al, 2004). The U.S. Food and Drug Administration has granted 501(k) clearance to Roche Molecular Systems to market its AmpliChip CP450 Genoptyping test to determine cytochrome P450 2D6 and 2C19 genotypes using the Affymetrix instrumentation system (Malone, 2005). As cytochrome genes code for liver enzymes important in drug metabolism, clinician will use the results to optimize drug dosing and minimize side effects on the basis of individual genotype. This is the first time a microarray chip has been given marketing clearance as a diagnostic device for use in the clinical laboratory, heralding the potentially new era of personalized medicine. Furthermore, recent reports demonstrate the promise of applying hybridization array technology to pre-, peri-, and postnatal screening and pediatrics diagnosis (Kang & Koo, 2012; Wei et al, 2013).

Small-scale, automated, microfluidic array instruments that have the technical discrimination and dynamic range required to detect RNA species at a frequency of 1:100,000 with a short turnaround time and low coefficient of variation (0.09-0.11) have also been described (Baum et al, 2003). However, methodologic consistency, quality control, and disease-specific application will have to be addressed prior to implementation as a routine test to the clinical laboratory.

ARRAY TECHNOLOGY IN CLINICAL DISEASE

Microarray technology has provided the ability to screen genes that are differentially regulated in experimental and clinical disease and allow further correlation of select genes with their function. For example, Ji and colleagues (2003) used microarray technology to screen for genes that are upregulated in the early stage of acute pancreatitis using two different experimental models of the disease. Many genes were upregulated in both experimental systems, suggesting their importance in the human condition. However, one gene in particular, EGR1, further analyzed through classical approaches (gene knockout), was shown to be a key regulator that may be important in the development of early acute pancreatitis. Others (Iacobuzio-Donahue et al, 2003) have performed a comprehensive evaluation and comparison of gene expression profiles of 39 samples of pancreatic cancer and identified between 6 and 40 genes that were highly expressed when examined by multiple methods (oligonucleotide arrays, cDNA arrays, or SAGE). These may eventually be translated into clinically useful targets for therapy or diagnosis.

Microarray analysis of cells and tissues as a means to identify key therapeutic candidates continues to evolve. Malignancies or their tissue components that have been analyzed in the quest for identifying key targets, diagnostic or prognostic indicators (Ma et al, 2009), or novel pathways include melanoma (Nambiar et al, 2004), leukemias (Moos et al, 2002; Jaakson et al, 2003; Shivarov & Bullinger, 2014), lymphomas (Hedvat et al, 2002; Kobayashi et al, 2003; Azambuja et al, 2009), myelodysplastic syndromes (Pellagatti et al, 2004; Ahmad & Iqbal, 2012), and carcinomas of prostate (Pettus et al, 2004), bladder (Dyrskjot, 2003), kidney (Moch et al, 1999), colon/rectum (Frederiksen et al, 2003), breast (Jeffrey et al, 2002; Wilson & Dering, 2004), ovary (Rosen et al, 2004; Yang et al, 2009), and endometrium (Saidi et al, 2004; DeRycke et al, 2009).

Other clinical applications that utilize the gene screening capability of microarray technology include the study of the effect of ionizing radiation (Amundson et al, 1999); detection of microbial (Dunbar et al, 2013), viral (Sun et al, 2004; Striebel et al, 2003), and other pathogens (Hanson et al, 2004); karyotyping of cell-free DNA in amniotic fluid (Larrabee et al, 2004); providing molecular markers for allergic (Jahn-Schmid et al, 2003), urologic (Cheung et al, 2009), cardiac (Bostjancic et al, 2009), and inflammatory disorders (Bennett et al, 2003); Alzheimer's disease (Pasinetti, 2001); multiple sclerosis (Whitney et al, 1999); dystonia (Walter et al, 2010); diabetes (Sreekumar et al, 2002; Mootha et al, 2003); transplant rejection (Flechner et al, 2004); and pulmonary hypertension (Geraci et al, 2001). The ability to predict adverse drug reactions (Guzey & Spigset, 2002), response to therapy (Sotiriou et al, 2002), drug sensitivity (Stein et al, 2004), and toxicity profiles (Waring et al, 2001), among others (Cox, 2001; Day et al, 2009; Stankiewicz & Lupski, 2010), have also been reported.

LIMITATIONS

Despite the excitement and increase in the potential clinical application of microarray technology, care must be taken in its interpretation. Clinical application will require procedures for quality control and quality assurance. The challenge to ensuring reproducibility of the high-density data presented in microarrays is unprecedented in the clinical laboratory. Each of the large number of steps from sample extraction, labeling, hybridization, image analysis, and data analysis contributes to difficulties in data reproducibility and can differ among commercially available systems (Kothapalli et al, 2002; Yauk et al, 2004; Pozhitkov et al, 2007). Furthermore, factors such as varying the method used for nucleic acid isolation (Feezor et al, 2004) or detection, tissue type (solid, glandular, or blood derived), type of specimen (FFPE versus frozen tissue) (Penland et al, 2007), and time to processing can affect results of gene expression profiling.

Approaches to further validate and confirm array-based results include verification of each clone sequence before printing the microarray; performing experiments in duplicate or triplicate where possible; and verification of candidate genes by classic methods (e.g., PCR, northern blotting, RNase protection assay). Some investigators (Rajeevan et al, 2001) have shown that the majority of array results were qualitatively accurate in cross-validation experiments using real-time RT-PCR. However, for genes showing less than a fourfold difference on the arrays, consistent cross-validation with real-time RT-PCR was not achieved. It is also very important to determine whether the difference in mRNA expression translates to a difference in the expression levels of the corresponding protein products. Currently, how frequently a difference in mRNA level translates to a difference in protein expression level is not clear.

Caution must also be exercised in interpreting differentially regulated genes during tumor progression (staging microarray). Any nucleic acid source derived from biopsy tissue is made up of many different cell populations and may represent homogeneous tissue only after the tumor mass has reached a large enough size (i.e., late stage). While certain methods are available to isolate specific cells of interest in smaller tumors (e.g., laser capture microdissection), they are technically demanding, time-consuming, and not universally available.

Like all sequencing strategies, microarrays have limited sensitivity for minority alleles, although newer platforms and analysis approaches claim to improve detection in this regard (Coulombe-Huntington et al, 2009; Stankiewicz & Lupski, 2010).). An example of sequence-based identification of drug resistance in HIV will be particularly instructive. Microarray sequencing of clinical isolates can correctly predict some instances of drug resistance on the basis of specific mutations (Race et al, 1998) and is evolving toward standard practice (Perez-Olmeda et al, 1999). Even making the optimistic assumption that sequencing can detect a resistance allele when represented in 1% of the viral population or more, however, there is reason to doubt the predictive value of a test that is negative for resistance. Few virologists would argue that 0.5% prevalence of drug resistance is unimportant in a virus that generates more than a billion copies a day. Therefore, it should be understood that the power of this technology currently

lies in its ability to screen for the regulation of genes in defined parameters (Russo et al, 2003) with the incorporation of appropriate standardization (Enkemann, 2010).

Further advances in diagnosis, classification, and prognosis await discovery by microarray-based methods in the near future. As emphasized earlier, it is not merely improvements in apparatus that make this possible but more sophisticated analytic strategies, detection sensitivity, throughput, automation, miniaturization, ease of use, and cost that evolve to keep up with the more complex data generated by these devices (Bassett et al, 1999; Zhang et al, 2009).

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Bluth MJ, Bluth MH: Molecular pathology techniques, *Clin Lab Med* 33:753–772, 2013.

Provides a comprehensive review of commonly utilized molecular pathology techniques employed in the clinical laboratory for elucidating disease pathophysiology in addition to diagnosis, prognosis, and therapeutic monitoring for patient management.

Ji B, Chen XQ, Misek DE, et al: Pancreatic gene expression during the initiation of acute pancreatitis: Identification of EGR-1 as a key regulator, *Physiol Genomics* 14:59, 2003.

An example of how microarray is employed to screen for regulation of gene expression in two models of experimental pancreatitis, with subsequent validation of select genes (EGR-1) by conventional methods.

Kothapalli R, Yoder SJ, Mane S, et al: Microarray results: How accurate are they?, *BMC Bioinformatics* 3:22, 2002.

Discusses problems associated with microarray in great detail and evaluates data obtained from two different commercially available systems.

Russo G, Zegar C, Giordano A: Advantages and limitations of microarray in human cancer, *Oncogene* 22: 6497, 2003.

Highlights some of the recent developments and clinical applications of microarray technology and discusses potentially problematic areas associated with this technology.

Stein WD, Litman T, Fojo T, et al: A serial analysis of gene expression (SAGE) database analysis of chemosensitivity: Comparing solid tumors with cell lines and comparing solid tumors from different tissue origins, *Cancer Res* 64:2805, 2004.

Investigates the relationship of gene expression profiles for a given tumor type to its drug sensitivity or resistance to provide insights into the molecular basis of tumor intractability to chemotherapy.

REFERENCES

Ahmad A, Iqbal MA: Significance of genome-wide analysis of copy number alterations and UPD in myelodysplastic syndromes using combined CGH–SNP arrays, *Curr Med Chem* 19:3739–3747, 2012.

Amundson SA, Bittner M, Chen Y, et al: Fluorescent cDNA microarray hybridization reveals complexity and heterogeneity of cellular genotoxic stress responses, *Oncogene* 18:3666, 1999.

Auffray C, Rougeon F: Purification of mouse immunoglobulin heavy-chain messenger RNAs from total myeloma tumor RNA, *Eur J Biochem* 107:303, 1980.

Azambuja D, Lossos IS, Biasoli I, et al: Human germinal center-associated lymphoma protein expression is associated with improved failure-free survival in Brazilian patients with classical Hodgkin lymphoma, *Leuk Lymphoma* 50:1830–1836, 2009.

Bains W, Smith GC: A novel method for nucleic acid sequence determination, *J Theor Biol* 135:303, 1988.

Barsalobres-Cavallari C, De Rosa Júnior V, Nogueira F, et al: A novel system for large-scale gene expression analysis: Bacterial colonies array, *Appl Microbiol Biotechnol* 71:963–969, 2006.

Bassett DE Jr, Eisen MB, Boguski MS: Gene expression informatics—It's all in your mine, *Nat Genet* 21:51–55, 1999.

Baum M, Bielau S, Rittner N, et al: Validation of a novel, fully integrated and flexible microarray benchtop facility for gene expression profiling, *Nucleic Acids Res* 31:e151, 2003.

Beattie WG, Meng L, Turner SL, et al: Hybridization of DNA targets to glass-tethered oligonucleotide probes, *Mol Biotechnol* 4:213, 1995.

Beier M, Hoheisel JD: Versatile derivatisation of solid support media for covalent bonding on DNA-microchips, *Nucl Acids Res* 27:1970, 1999.

Benjamini Y, Hochberg Y: Controlling the false discovery rate: A practical and powerful approach to multiple testing, *J R Statist Soc B* 57:2889, 1995.

Bennett L, Palucka AK, Arce E, et al: Interferon and granulopoiesis signatures in systemic lupus erythematosus blood, *J Exp Med* 197:711, 2003.

Blanchard AP, Kaiser RJ, Hood LE: High-density oligonucleotide arrays, *Biosens Bioelectron* 11:687, 1996.

Bostjancic E, Zidar N, Glavac D: MicroRNA microarray expression profiling in human myocardial infarction, *Dis Markers* 27:255–268, 2009.

Brown MP, Grundy WN, Lin D, et al: Knowledge-based analysis of microarray gene expression data by using support vector machines, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 97:262–267, 2000.

Case-Green SC, Southern EM: Studies on the base pairing properties of deoxyinosine by solid phase hybridisation to oligonucleotides, *Nucl Acids Res* 22: 131, 1994.

Chee M, et al: Arrays of nucleic acid probes on biological chips. Nov 17, 1998; Patent US1995000441887.

Chee M, Yang R, Hubbell E, et al: Accessing genetic information with high-density DNA arrays, *Science* 274:610, 1996.

Chen Y, Dougherty ER, Bittner ML: Ratio-based decisions and the quantitative analysis of cDNA microarray images, *Biomed Optics* 2:364, 1997.

Cheng J, Sheldon EL, Wu L, et al: Preparation and hybridization analysis of DNA/RNA from *E. coli* on microfabricated bioelectronic chips, *Nat Biotechnol* 16:541, 1998.

Cheung W, Bluth MJ, Johns C, et al: Peripheral blood mononuclear cell gene array profiles in patients with overactive bladder, *Urology* 2009, Sep 22. [Epub ahead of print].

Cheung VG, Morley M, Aguilar F, et al: Making and reading microarrays, *Nat Genet* 21(Suppl 1):1, 1999.

Clark MD, Panopoulou GD, Cahill DJ, et al: Construction and analysis of arrayed cDNA libraries, *Methods Enzymol* 303:205, 1999.

Corey DR: Peptide nucleic acids: Expanding the scope of nucleic acid recognition, *Trends Biotechnol* 15:224, 1997.

Corey DR: *DNA/RNA Diagnostics*, Washington, DC, May 1998, Cambridge Healthtech Institute, pp 19–21.

Coulombe-Huntington J, Lam KC, Dias C, et al: Fine-scale variation and genetic determinants of alternative splicing across individuals, *PLoS Genet* 5:e1000766, 2009.

Cox JM: Applications of nylon membrane arrays to gene expression analysis, *J Immunol Meth* 250:3, 2001.

Day A, Dong J, Funari VA, et al: Disease gene characterization through large-scale co-expression analysis, *PLoS ONE* 4:e8491, 2009.

DeRycke MS, Andersen JD, Harrington KM, et al: S100A1 expression in ovarian and endometrial endometrioid carcinomas is a prognostic indicator of relapse-free survival, *Am J Clin Pathol* 132:846–856, 2009.

Diosdado B, Wapenaar M, Franke L, et al: A microarray screen for novel candidate genes in coeliac disease pathogenesis, *Gut* 53:944, 2004.

Doh KO, Lee YH, Han KH, et al: Fabrication of a microarray using a combination of the large circular sense and antisense DNA, *Int J Mol Med* 25:113–120, 2010.

Draghici S: *Data analysis tools for DNA microarrays*, Boca Raton, Fla., 2003, Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

Drmanac R, Crkvenjakov R: Method of sequencing of genomes by hybridization of oligonucleotide probes, Apr 13, 1993. Patent US5667972; Available on line at: http://www.freepatentsonline.com/5667972.html.

Drmanac R, Drmanac S: cDNA screening by array hybridization, *Methods Enzymol* 303:165–178, 1999.

Drmanac R, Drmanac S, Strezoska Z, et al: DNA sequence determination by hybridization: A strategy for efficient large-scale sequencing, *Science* 260:1649, 1993.

Drmanac S, Kita D, Labat I, et al: Accurate sequencing by hybridization for DNA diagnostics and individual genomics, *Nat Biotechnol* 16:54, 1998.

Duggan DJ, Bittner M, Chen Y, et al: Expression profiling using cDNA microarrays, *Nat Genet* 21:10, 1999.

Dunbar SA, Zhang H, Tang YW: Advanced techniques for detection and identification of microbial agents of gastroenteritis, *Clin Lab Med* 33:527–552, 2013.

Durand S, Ferraro-Peyret C, Selmi-Ruby S, et al: Evaluation of gene expression profiles in thyroid nodule biopsy material to diagnose thyroid cancer, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 93:1195–1202, 2008.

Dyrskjot L: Classification of bladder cancer by microarray expression profiling: Towards a general clinical use of microarrays in clinical diagnostics, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 3:635, 2003.

Edman CF, Raymond DE, Wu DJ, et al: Electric field directed nucleic acid hybridization on microchips, *Nucl Acids Res* 25:4907, 1997.

Ekins RP, Chu FW: Microarrays: Their origins and applications, *Trends Biotechnol* 17:217, 1999.

Ekins RP, Jackson TM: Free ligand assay. UK Patent no CA1227425 8 803 000. 1987.

Enkemann SA: Standards affecting the consistency of gene expression arrays in clinical applications, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 19:1000–1003, 2010.

Erali M, Pattison DC, Wittwer CT, et al: Human papillomavirus genotyping using an automated film-based chip array, *J Mol Diagn* 11:439–445, 2009.

Fan JB, Yeakley JM, Bibikova M, et al: A versatile assay for high-throughput gene expression profiling on universal array matrices, *Genome Res* 14:878–885, 2004.

Feezor RJ, Baker HV, Mindrinos M, et al: Whole blood and leukocyte RNA isolation for gene expression analysis, *Physiol Genomics* 19:247, 2004.

Flechner SM, Kurian SM, Head SR, et al: Kidney transplant rejection and tissue injury by gene profiling of biopsies and peripheral blood lymphocytes, *Am J Transplant* 4:1475, 2004.

Fodor SP, Read JL, Pirrung MC, et al: Light-directed, spatially addressable parallel chemical synthesis, *Science* 251:767, 1991.

Fodor SP, Stryer L, Read J, et al: Arrays of materials attached to a substrate. Apr 28, 1998, Patent US1995000466632; Available on line at: http://www.freepatentsonline.com/5744305.html.

Forman JE, Walton ID, Stern D, et al: *Molecular modeling of nucleic acids*, Washington, DC, 1999, American Chemical Society.

Frederiksen CM, Knudsen S, Laurberg S, et al: Classification of Dukes' B and C colorectal cancers using expression arrays, *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 129:263, 2003.

Freeman WM, Gioia L: The maturation of nucleic acid technologies, *Trends Biotechnol* 17:44, 1999.

Friend SH, Stoughton RB: The magic of microarrays, *Sci Am* 286:44, 2002.

Genomics and Bioinformatics Group: *Microarray data analysis. low-level analysis of Affymetrix chips*, Bethesda, MD, 2005, National Institute of Health. Available on line at: http://discover.nci.nih.gov/microarrayAnalysis/Affymetrix.Preprocessing.jsp.

Geraci MW, Moore M, Gessell T, et al: Gene expression patterns in the lungs of patients with primary pulmonary hypertension: A gene microarray analysis, *Circ Res* 88:555–562, 2001.

Gillespie D, Spiegelman SA: A quantitative assay for DNA-RNA hybrids with DNA immobilized on a membrane, *J Mol Biol* 12:829, 1965.

Gollub J, Sherlock G: Clustering microarray data, *Methods Enzymol* 411:194–213, 2006.

Gopalappa C, Das TK, Enkemann S, et al: Removal of hybridization and scanning noise from microarrays, *IEEE Trans Nanobioscience* 8:210–218, 2009.

Granjeaud S, Nguyen C, Rocha D, et al: From hybridization image to numerical values: A practical, high-throughput quantification system for high-density filter hybridizations, *Genet Anal* 12:151, 1996.

Graves DJ: Powerful tools for genetic analysis come of age, *Trends Biotechnol* 17:127, 1999.

Gress TM, Hoheisel JD, Lennon GG, et al: Hybridization fingerprinting of high-density cDNA-library arrays with cDNA pools derived from whole tissues, *Mamm Genome* 3:609, 1992.

Grewal A, Lambert P, Stockton J: *Current protocols in informatics*, New York, 2003, John Wiley, p 7.1.1.

Gulmann C, Loring P, O'Grady A, et al: Miniature tissue microarrays for HercepTest standardisation and analysis, *J Clin Pathol* 57:1229, 2004.

Guo Z, Guilfoyle RA, Thiel AJ, et al: Direct fluorescence analysis of genetic polymorphisms by hybridization with oligonucleotide arrays on glass supports, *Nucl Acids Res* 22:5456, 1994.

Guschin D, Yershov G, Zaslavsky A, et al: Manual manufacturing of oligonucleotide, DNA, and protein microchips, *Anal Biochem* 250:203, 1997.

Guzey C, Spigset O: Genotyping of drug targets: A method to predict adverse drug reactions?, *Drug Saf* 25:553, 2002.

Hacia JG: Resequencing and mutational analysis using oligonucleotide microarrays, *Nat Genet* 21:42, 1999.

Hanson EH, Neimeyer DM, Folio L, et al: Potential use of microarray technology for rapid identification of central nervous system pathogens, *Mil Med* 169:594, 2004.

Hedvat CV, Hegde A, Chaganti RS, et al: Application of tissue microarray technology to the study of non-Hodgkin's and Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Hum Pathol* 33:968, 2002.

Heller MJ, O'Connell JP, Juncosa RD, et al: Methods for hybridization analysis utilizing electronically controlled hybridization. Dec 15, 1998; Patent US5849486; Available on line at: http://www.freepatentsonline.com/5849486.html.

Heyse S, Ernst OP, Dienes Z, et al: Incorporation of rhodopsin in laterally structured supported membranes: Observation of transducin activation with spatially and time-resolved surface plasmon resonance, *Biochemistry* 37:507, 1998.

Hoheisel JD: Sequence-independent and linear variation of oligonucleotide DNA binding stabilities, *Nucl Acids Res* 24:430, 1996.

Holmes CP: Cyclic nucleic acid and polypeptide arrays. Jun 23, 1998; Patent US1996000647618.

Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Ashfaq R, Maitra A, et al: Highly expressed genes in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas: A comprehensive characterization and comparison of the transcription profiles obtained from three major technologies, *Cancer Res* 63:8614, 2003.

Irizarry RA, Bolstad BM, Collin F, et al: Summaries of Affymetrix GeneChip probe level data, *Nucleic Acids Res* 31:e15, 2003.

Jaakson K, Zernant J, Kulm M, et al: Genotyping microarray (gene chip) for the ABCR (ABCA4) gene, *Hum Mutat* 22:395, 2003.

Jahn-Schmid B, Harwanegg C, Hiller R, et al: Allergen microarray: Comparison of microarray using recombinant allergens with conventional diagnostic methods to detect allergen-specific serum. Immunoglobulin E, *Clin Exp Allergy* 33:1443, 2003.

Jang H, Cho M, Kim H, et al: Quality control probes for spot-uniformity and quantitative analysis of oligonucleotide array, *J Microbiol Biotechnol* 19:658–665, 2009.

Jeffrey SS, Fero MJ, Borresen-Dale AL, et al: Expression array technology in the diagnosis and treatment of breast cancer, *Mol Interv* 2:101, 2002.

Kafatos FC, Jones CW, Efstratiadis A: Determination of nucleic acid sequence homologies and relative concentrations by a dot hybridization procedure, *Nucl Acids Res* 7:1541, 1979.

Kang JU, Koo SH: Evolving applications of microarray technology in postnatal diagnosis, *Int J Mol Med* 30:223–228, 2012.

Kano M, Kashima H, Shibuya T, et al: A method for normalization of gene expression data, *Genome Informatics* 14:336, 2003.

Khrapko KR, Lysov YP, Khorlyn AA, et al: An oligonucleotide hybridization approach to DNA sequencing, *FEBS Lett* 256:118, 1989.

Khrapko KR, Lysov YP, Khorlin AA, et al: A method for DNA sequencing by hybridization with oligonucleotide matrix, *DNA Seq* 1:375, 1991.

Kobayashi T, Yamaguchi M, Kim S, et al: Microarray reveals differences in both tumors and vascular specific gene expression in de novo CD5+ and CD5–′ diffuse large B-cell lymphomas, *Cancer Res* 63:60, 2003.

Landegren U, Kaiser RJ, Sanders J, et al: A ligase-mediated gene detection technique, *Science* 241:1077, 1988.

Larrabee PB, Johnson KL, Pestova E, et al: Microarray analysis of cell-free fetal DNA in amniotic fluid: A prenatal molecular karyotype, *Am J Hum Genet* 75:485, 2004.

Lipshutz RJ: Likelihood DNA sequencing by hybridization, *J Biomol Struct Dyn* 11:637, 1993.

Lipshutz RJ, Fodor SP, Gingeras TR, et al: High density synthetic oligonucleotide arrays, *Nat Genet* 21:20, 1999.

Lockhart DJ, Dong H, Byrne MC, et al: Expression monitoring by hybridization to high-density oligonucleotide arrays, *Nat Biotechnol* 14:1675–1680, 1996.

Ma S, Huang J, Moran MS: Identification of genes associated with multiple cancers via integrative analysis, *BMC Genomics* 10:535, 2009.

Macevicz SC: Nucleic acid sequence determination by multiple mixed oligonucleotide probes. Mar 26, 1991; Patent US5002867. Available on line at: http://www.freepatentsonline.com/5002867.html.

Malone B: FDA clears first gene chip for pharmacogenomics, *Clin Lab News* 31:14, 2005.

Marshall A, Hodgson J: DNA chips: An array of possibilities, *Nat Biotechnol* 16:27, 1998.

Maskos U, Southern EM: Oligonucleotide hybridizations on glass supports: a novel linker for oligonucleotide synthesis and hybridization properties of oligonucleotides synthesised in situ, *Nucl Acids Res* 20:1679, 1992.

Maskos U, Southern EM: A novel method for the parallel analysis of multiple mutations in multiple samples, *Nucl Acids Res* 21:2269, 1993a.

Maskos U, Southern EM: A study of oligonucleotide reassociation using large arrays of oligonucleotides synthesised on a glass support, *Nucleic Acids Res* 21: 4663, 1993b.

Maskos U, Southern EM: A novel method for the analysis of multiple sequence variants by hybridisation to oligonucleotides, *Nucl Acids Res* 21:2267, 1993c.

Matson RS, Rampal J, Pentoney SLJ, et al: Biopolymer synthesis on polypropylene supports: Oligonucleotide arrays, *Anal Biochem* 224:110, 1995.

Maxam AM, Gilbert W: A new method for sequencing DNA, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 74:560, 1977.

Moch H, Schraml P, Bubendorf L, et al: High-throughput tissue microarray analysis to evaluate genes uncovered by cDNA microarray screening in renal cell carcinoma, *Am J Pathol* 154:981, 1999.

Moggio L, Romanelli A, Gambari R, et al: Alternate PNA-DNA chimeras (PNA-DNA)(n): Synthesis, binding properties and biological activity, *Biopolymers* 88:815–822, 2007.

Moos PJ, Raetz EA, Carlson MA, et al: Identification of gene expression profiles that segregate patients with childhood leukemia, *Clin Cancer Res* 8:3118, 2002.

Mootha VK, Lindgren CM, Eriksson KF, et al: PGC-1alpha-responsive genes involved in oxidative phosphorylation are coordinately downregulated in human diabetes, *Nat Genet* 34:267, 2003.

Nambiar S, Mirmohammadsadegh A, Bar A, et al: Applications of array technology: Melanoma research and diagnosis, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 4:549, 2004.

Nickerson DA, Kaiser RJ, Lappin S, et al: Automated DNA diagnostics using an ELISA-based oligonucleotide ligation assay, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 87:8923, 1990.

Nikiforov TT, Rendle RB, Goelet P, et al: Genetic Bit Analysis: A solid phase method for typing single nucleotide polymorphisms, *Nucl Acids Res* 22:4167, 1994.

Packeisen J, Buerger H, Krech R, et al: Tissue microarrays: A new approach for quality control in immunohistochemistry, *J Clin Pathol* 55:613, 2002.

Parinov S, Barsky V, Yershov G, et al: DNA sequencing by hybridization to microchip octa- and decanucleotides extended by stacked pentanucleotides, *Nucl Acids Res* 24:2998, 1996.

Parmigiana G, Garret ES, Irizarry RA, et al, editors: *The analysis of gene expression data: Methods and software*, New York, 2003, Springer-Verlag.

Pasinetti GM: Use of cDNA microarray in the search for molecular markers involved in the onset of Alzheimer's disease dementia, *J Neurosci Res* 65:471, 2001.

Pastinen T, Kurg A, Metspalu A, et al: Minisequencing: A specific tool for DNA analysis and diagnostics on oligonucleotide arrays, *Genome Res* 7:606, 1997.

Pastinen T, Perola M, Niini P, et al: Array-based multiplex analysis of candidate genes reveals two independent and additive genetic risk factors for myocardial infarction in the Finnish population, *Hum Mol Genet* 7:1453, 1998.

Pease AC, Solas D, Sullivan EJ, et al: Light-generated oligonucleotide arrays for rapid DNA sequence analysis, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 91:5022, 1994.

Pellagatti A, Esoof N, Watkins F, et al: Gene expression profiling in the myelodysplastic syndromes using cDNA microarray technology, *Br J Haematol* 125:576, 2004.

Penland SK, Keku TO, Torrice C, et al: RNA expression analysis of formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tumors, *Lab Invest* 87:383–391, 2007.

Perez-Olmeda M, Rodriguez-Rosado R, Gomez-Cano M, et al: Usefulness of genotypic analysis of resistance to nucleoside analogues in the clinical setting, *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 18:448, 1999.

Pettus JA, Cowley BC, Maxwell T, et al: Multiple abnormalities detected by dye reversal genomic microarrays in prostate cancer: A much greater sensitivity than conventional cytogenetics, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 154: 110, 2004.

Pietu G, Alibert O, Guichard V, et al: Novel gene transcripts preferentially expressed in human muscles revealed by quantitative hybridization of a high density cDNA array, *Genome Res* 6:492, 1996.

Pirrung MC, Read JL, Fodor SPA, et al: Large scale photolithographic solid phase synthesis of polypeptides and receptor binding screening thereof. Sep 1, 1992; Patent US51438542. Available on line at: http://www.freepatentsonline.com/5143854.html.

Platts AE, Dix DJ, Krawetz SA: Considerations when using array technologies for male factor assessment. In Carrell DT, editor: *The genetics of male factor infertility*, Totowa N.J., 2006, Humana Press, pp 37–54.

Potti A, Mukherjee S, Petersen R, et al: A genomic strategy to refine prognosis in early-stage non-small-cell lung cancer, *N Engl J Med* 355:570–580, 2006.

Pozhitkov AE, Tautz D, Noble PA: Oligonucleotide microarrays: Widely applied—poorly understood, *Brief Funct Genomic Proteomic* 6:141–148, 2007.

Race E, Gilbert SM, Sheldon JG, et al: Correlation of response to treatment and HIV genotypic changes during phase III trials with saquinavir and reverse transcriptase inhibitor combination therapy, *AIDS* 12:1465, 1998.

Rajeevan MS, Vernon SD, Taysavang N, et al: Validation of array-based gene expression profiles by real-time (kinetic) RT-PCR, *J Mol Diagn* 3:26, 2001.

Rosen DG, Huang X, Deavers MT, et al: Validation of tissue microarray technology in ovarian carcinoma, *Mod Pathol* 17:790, 2004.

Roth SB, Jalava J, Ruuskanen O, et al: Use of an oligonucleotide array for laboratory diagnosis of bacteria responsible for acute upper respiratory infections, *J Clin Microbiol* 42:4268, 2004.

Rouse R, Hardiman G: Microarray technology—An intellectual property retrospective, *Pharmacogenomics* 4:623–632, 2003.

Saidi SA, Holland CM, Kreil DP, et al: Independent component analysis of microarray data in the study of endometrial cancer, *Oncogene* 23:6677, 2004.

Sanger F, Nicklen S, Coulson AR: DNA sequencing with chain-terminating inhibitors, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 74:5463, 1977.

Schena M, Heller RA, Theriault TP, et al: Microarrays: Biotechnology's discovery platform for functional genomics, *Trends Biotechnol* 16:301, 1998.

Schena M, Shalon D, Davis RW, et al: Quantitative monitoring of gene expression patterns with a complementary DNA microarray, *Science* 270:467–470, 1995.

Schena M, Shalon D, Heller R, et al: Parallel human genome analysis: Microarray-based expression monitoring of 1000 genes, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 93:10614, 1996.

Schmid EL, Tairi AP, Hovius R, et al: Screening ligands for membrane protein receptors by total internal reflection fluorescence: The 5-HT3 serotonin receptor, *Anal Chem* 70:1331, 1998.

Shalon D, Smith SJ, Brown PO: A DNA microarray system for analyzing complex DNA samples using two-color fluorescent probe hybridization, *Genome Res* 6:639, 1996.

Shaw PC, Wong KL, Chan AW, et al: Patent applications for using DNA technologies to authenticate medicinal herbal material, *Chin Med* 4:21, 2009.

Shchepinov MS, Case-Green SC, Southern EM: Steric factors influencing hybridisation of nucleic acids to oligonucleotide arrays, *Nucl Acids Res* 25:1155, 1997.

Shivarov V, Bullinger L: Expression profiling of leukemia patients: Key lessons and future directions, *Exp Hematol* 42:651–660, 2014.

Simon S: STATS—Steve's attempt to teach statistics: Normalization for microarray data. 2005. Available on line at: http://www.cmh.edu/stats/model/datamining/arrayNormalization.htm.

Sosnowski RG, Tu E, Butler WF, et al: Rapid determination of single base mismatch mutations in DNA hybrids by direct electric field control, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 94:1119, 1997.

Sotiriou C, Powles TJ, Dowsett M, et al: Gene expression profiles derived from fine needle aspiration correlate with response to systemic chemotherapy in breast cancer, *Breast Cancer Res* 4:R3, 2002.

Southern EM: Detection of specific sequences among DNA fragments separated by gel electrophoresis, *J Mol Biol* 98:503, 1975.

Southern EM: High-density gridding: Techniques and applications, *Curr Opin Biotechnol* 7:85, 1996a.

Southern EM: DNA chips: Analysing sequence by hybridization to oligonucleotides on a large scale, *Trends Genet* 12:110, 1996b.

Southern EM, Case-Green SC, Elder JK, et al: Arrays of complementary oligonucleotides for analysing the hybridisation behaviour of nucleic acids, *Nucl Acids Res* 22:1368, 1994.

Southern EM, Maskos U, Elder JK: Analyzing and comparing nucleic acid sequences by hybridization to arrays of oligonucleotides: Evaluation using experimental models, *Genomics* 13:1008, 1992.

Southern EM, Mir KU, Shchepinov MS: Molecular interactions on microarrays, *Nat Genet* 21:5, 1999.

Sreekumar R, Halvatsiotis P, Schimke JC, et al: Gene expression profile in skeletal muscle of type 2 diabetes and the effect of insulin treatment, *Diabetes* 51:1913, 2002.

Stankiewicz P, Lupski JR: Structural variation in the human genome and its role in disease, *Annu Rev Med* 61:437–455, 2010.

Stimpson DI, Cooley PW, Knepper SM, et al: Parallel production of oligonucleotide arrays using membranes and reagent jet printing, *Biotechniques* 25:886, 1998.

Stimpson DI, Gordon J: The utility of optical waveguide DNA array hybridization and melting for rapid resolution of mismatches, and for detection of minor mutant components in the presence of a majority of wild type sequence: Statistical model and supporting data, *Genet Anal* 13:73, 1996.

Strezoska Z, Paunesku T, Radosavljevic D, et al: DNA sequencing by hybridization: 100 bases read by a non-gel-based method, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 88:10089, 1991.

Striebel HM, Birch-Hirschfeld E, Egerer R, et al: Virus diagnostics on microarrays, *Curr Pharm Biotechnol* 4:401, 2003.

Sun ZH, Zheng WL, Zhang B, et al: Detection of hepatitis D virus by cDNA microarray method, *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 3:423, 2004.

Syvanen AC: From gels to chips: "Minisequencing" primer extension for analysis of point mutations and single nucleotide polymorphisms, *Hum Mutat* 13:1, 1999.

Takahashi N, Hashida H, Zhao N, et al: High-density cDNA filter analysis of the expression profiles of the genes preferentially expressed in human brain, *Gene* 164:219, 1995.

Thellin O, Zorzi W, Lakaye B, et al: Housekeeping genes as internal standards: Use and limits, *J Biotechnol* 75:291, 1999.
Walter M, Bonin M, Pullman RS, et al: Expression profiling in peripheral blood reveals signature for penetrance in DYT1 dystonia, *Neurobiol Dis* 2010 Jan 4. [Epub ahead of print].
Wang I-M, Stepaniants S, Boie Y, et al: Gene expression profiling in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and lung cancer, *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 177:402–411, 2008.
Waring JF, Jolly RA, Ciurlionis R, et al: Clustering of hepatotoxins based on mechanism of toxicity using gene expression profiles, *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 175: 28, 2001.
Wei Y, Xu F, Li P: Technology-driven and evidence-based genomic analysis for integrated pediatric and prenatal genetics evaluation, *J Genet Genomics* 40:1–14, 2013.
Weiler J, Gausepohl H, Hauser N, et al: Hybridisation based DNA screening on peptide nucleic acid (PNA) oligomer arrays, *Nucl Acids Res* 25:2792, 1997.
Wetmur JG: DNA probes: Applications of the principles of nucleic acid hybridization, *Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol* 26:227, 1991.
Whitney LW, Becker KG, Tresser NJ, et al: Analysis of gene expression in multiple sclerosis lesions using cDNA microarrays, *Ann Neurol* 46:425, 1999.
Wilson CA, Dering J: Recent translational research: Microarray expression profiling of breast cancer-beyond classification and prognostic markers?, *Breast Cancer Res* 6:192, 2004.
Woski SA, Fidanza J, McGall G, et al: Enhanced high density oligonucleotide array-based sequence analysis using modified nucleoside triphosphates, *Nucl Acids Res* 26:4975, 1998.
Yang YH, Dudoit S, Luu P, et al: Normalization for cDNA microarray data: A robust composite method addressing single and multiple slide systematic variation, *Nucl Acids Res* 30:e15, 2002.
Yang GF, Li XM, Xie D: Overexpression of clusterin in ovarian cancer is correlated with impaired survival, *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 19:1342–1346, 2009.
Yauk CL, Berndt ML, Williams A, et al: Comprehensive comparison of six microarray technologies, *Nucleic Acids Res* 32:e124, 2004.
Yauk C, Berndt L, Williams A, et al: Automation of cDNA microarray hybridization and washing yields improved data quality, *J Biochem Biophys Methods* 64: 69–75, 2005.
Yershov G, Barsky V, Belgovskiy A, et al: DNA analysis and diagnostics on oligonucleotide microchips, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 93:4913, 1996.
Zhang Y, Szustakowski J, Schinke M: Bioinformatics analysis of microarray data, *Methods Mol Biol* 573:259–284, 2009.

CHAPTER 69

APPLICATIONS OF CYTOGENETICS IN MODERN PATHOLOGY

Constance K. Stein

DEFINITIONS, 1337

CYTOGENETICS, 1338
Chromosomes, 1338
Chromosome Abnormalities, 1344

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS, 1350
Constitutional Cytogenics, 1350
Cancer Genetics, 1352
Cytogenetic Disorders, 1353
Other Cytogenetic Phenomena, 1358

SUMMARY, 1358

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1359

KEY POINTS

- Identification of chromosomal abnormalities often correlates to disease and phenotypic abnormalities and thus will aid in clinical diagnosis and treatment.
- Identification of a cytogenetically abnormal clone in a cancer can provide information on diagnosis, prognosis, treatment, and disease progression.
- Standard morphology and a specific banding pattern have been established for all human chromosomes. A variety of different technologies, including karyotype analysis, fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), microarray analysis, and DNA sequencing, are used to uniquely identify chromosomes and determine if anomalies exist.
- The two basic categories of cytogenetic abnormality are numerical and structural.
- Many syndromes have been specifically linked to particular chromosomal anomalies—for example, trisomy 21 in Down syndrome; 45,X in Turner syndrome; and deletion of 22q11.2 in velocardiofacial syndrome.
- Cytogenetic abnormalities may be either de novo or inherited. Detection may occur at any stage of a person's life from prenatal to adulthood.
- Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), a targeted assay that combines technologies from both cytogenetics and molecular genetics, can provide important diagnostic information about specific genes.
- Cytogenetic analysis can be used in nearly every medical specialty and is an important element in clinical laboratory medicine.
- Microarray analysis and DNA sequencing have identified new genetic syndromes. These technologies will be key to optimizing genetic testing in the future.

Genetics is broadly defined as the scientific study of heredity, but in clinical laboratory medicine, interest is focused on two subspecialties of this field: human genetics, the study of heredity in man, and medical genetics, the study of human genetic variation of medical significance. Medical genetics can be further subdivided into five groups, two primarily clinical fields—clinical genetics and genetic counseling—and three laboratory sciences—cytogenetics, molecular genetics, and biochemical genetics.

Groundbreaking discoveries in the field of medicine can be attributed to genetics. Research and the development of new techniques in molecular genetics and cytogenetics have identified new genes and mutations directly related to disease. Knowing the underlying cause of a disease aids in diagnosis, provides new options for therapy, and allows the possibility of curing some genetic diseases in the future. This chapter focuses on cytogenetics; discussion of molecular diagnostics is found in Chapter 71.

DEFINITIONS

As in all areas of medicine, genetics relies on the proper use of specific terms for communication. The following definitions provide a basic vocabulary for this field:

Gene: a sequence of nucleotides that represents a functional unit of inheritance; a region of DNA that codes for a product, either RNA or protein.

Chromosome: a highly ordered structure composed of DNA and proteins that carries the genetic information. In humans, there are 46 chromosomes ordered in pairs.

Autosome: all chromosomes other than the X and Y chromosomes, which are designated the *sex chromosomes*.

Homologous chromosomes or homologs: sister chromosomes, the members of a pair of chromosomes in which one is inherited from the mother and the other from the father.

Locus: the position of a gene on a chromosome.

Allele: an alternative form of a gene occupying the same locus. An allele may be the result of a mutation. There is a maximum of two alleles per diploid chromosome complement (one allele per chromosome), but multiple alleles may exist within a population.

Mutation: a permanent heritable change in the sequence of genomic DNA. This may manifest at both the molecular and cytogenetic levels. Not all mutations are negative events. Many are benign (e.g., blue eye color), and some have positive effects (e.g., sickle cell trait in countries with a significant risk of malaria). Individuals with a *constitutional mutation* (i.e., a mutation present in every cell of the body) may pass that mutation on to their progeny by germline transmission. In some cases, notably cancer, an *acquired mutation* may arise in a single somatic cell, which then divides mitotically, giving rise to a new clone of cells. The mutation will be limited to this clone and will not be transmitted to progeny of the individual. In rare instances of *gonadal mosaicism*, a de novo acquired mutation may arise in the gonads, resulting in a mixed population of normal and mutant gametes. Progeny receiving the new mutation may display a phenotype not present in either parent.

Karyotype: the chromosome constitution of an individual.

Karyogram: a figure showing the paired chromosomes from a cell arrayed in a standard sequence.

Diploid: the presence of two copies of each unique chromosome per cell. In humans, the chromosomes occur in pairs and the diploid (2*N*) number is 46.

Haploid: one copy of each unique chromosome. In humans, the gametes are haploid ($N = 23$).

Homozygous: both alleles at a locus are the same. (In the ABO system, an AA complement represents homozygosity.)

Heterozygous: the two alleles at a locus are different. (In the ABO system, an AO complement represents heterozygosity.)

Hemizygous: the presence of only one chromosome or chromosome segment rather than the usual two—for example, males with a single X chromosome.

Genotype: the genetic constitution of an individual or organism (i.e., what alleles are present). (In the ABO system, AA, AO, BB, BO, AB, and OO are genotypes.)

Phenotype: the appearance of an individual that results from the interaction of environment and genotype. (In the ABO system, A, B, and O blood types represent the phenotypic expression of the alleles for a given individual.)

Dominant allele: an allele that is expressed when present in only a single dose (i.e., it "dominates" over the other allele present). (In the ABO system, A is dominant over O such that an AO genotype results in an A blood type phenotype. Similarly, the presence of pigment (T) is dominant to the absence of pigment (t) (i.e., albinism), such that Tt results in pigmentation.)

Recessive allele: in a diploid organism, an allele that is only expressed when homozygous. (In the ABO system, the O blood group is only seen with a OO genotype; O is recessive to A and B. Similarly, t is recessive to T, and an albino phenotype only occurs with a tt genotype.)

Codominant alleles: in a diploid organism, alleles that show no dominance or recessivity to each other, but when present together, they are both fully expressed. (In the ABO system, A and B are codominant such that an AB genotype expresses both A and B antigens.)

Independent assortment: random assortment of chromosomes (paternal and maternal) in the gametes; 50:50 chance of inheriting a given chromosome from one parent.

Linkage: the presence of two or more genes on the same chromosome that tend to be inherited together.

Crossing over: the physical exchange of genetic material between homologous chromosomes.

Recombination: the generation of new allelic combinations on chromosomes, usually by crossing over.

Mitosis: somatic cell division in which the DNA replicates and is evenly distributed to two equal daughter cells.

Meiosis: cell division in the gonads that produces the gametes. A single DNA replication is followed by two cell divisions that reduce the total DNA content of a cell from 2N to N. Recombination occurs to increase genetic diversity within a population.

Nondisjunction: failure of chromosomes or chromatids to separate to opposite poles in cell division. Usually results in one too many or one too few chromosomes in a cell.

CYTOGENETICS

Cytogenetics is defined as the science that combines the methods and findings of cytology and genetics, allowing the investigation of heredity at the cellular level. This involves careful evaluation of the chromosomes, structures composed of double-stranded DNA complexed with histone and nonhistone proteins. Chromosomes were first observed in tumor cells by Walther Fleming in 1882, only 16 years after Mendel established genetics as a new field of science. Thus cytogenetics is one of the oldest fields of genetics. Just after the turn of the century, the importance of the sex chromosomes was established, and in 1959, cytogenetic studies were first used in clinical laboratory studies. The ability to detect changes in chromosome structure and directly correlate them to disease and phenotypic anomalies in individuals proved a major advancement in clinical diagnosis. Over the years, the number and types of studies have grown, and many of the tests performed have become the gold standard for diagnosis. As more and more genes are being identified and linked to particular diseases, molecular testing, including direct mutation analysis, microarray, and sequencing, are becoming increasingly prevalent (see Chapters 68 and 71). However, cytogenetics continues to be the most cost-effective and straightforward test to detect chromosomal numerical and structural rearrangements. Consequently, clinical applications for cytogenetic analysis can be found in all age groups and genetic specialties, ranging from prenatal diagnosis to cancer evaluation.

CHROMOSOMES

In order to recognize abnormalities, it is important to first understand what makes up a "normal" chromosome set. The human chromosome complement includes 46 chromosomes ordered in 23 pairs (Fig. 69-1). One member of each pair is inherited from an individual's mother and the other comes from the father. Twenty-two pairs are known as *autosomes* and appear as homologs of each other (i.e., they are indistinguishable from each other). The twenty-third pair includes the sex chromosomes, which are homologous in a female, who has two X chromosomes, and are nonhomologous (structurally different) in a male, with one X and one Y chromosome (see Fig. 69-1). Genes are encoded in the DNA and are arrayed along the length of the chromosomes. During the cell cycle, the absolute lengths of the chromosomes vary, with the most condensed form reached in metaphase. This is the point when chromosomes can most easily be observed, so metaphase chromosomes are the basis for most cytogenetic studies. Complete evaluation of a set of chromosomes is known as *karyoytpe analysis* and an ordered image of the chromosomes from a cell is called a *karyogram*.

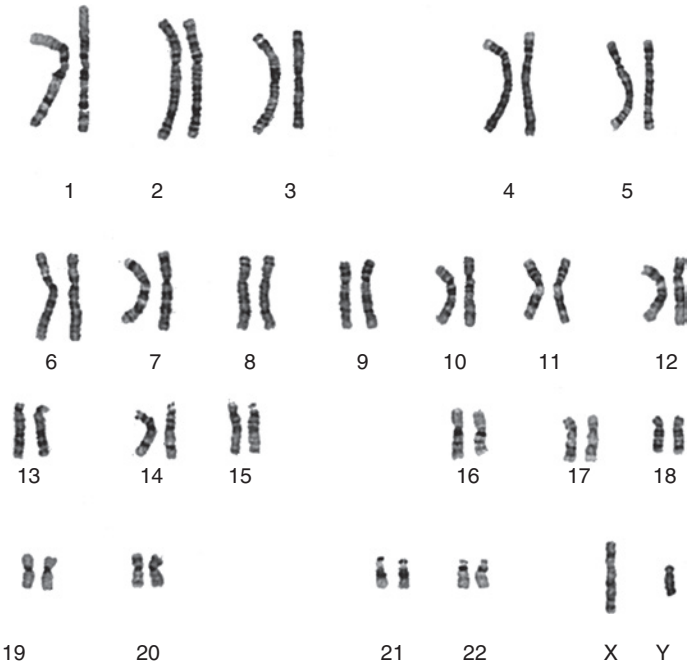


Figure 69-1 Karyogram of male human chromosome complement, with 46 total chromosomes ordered in pairs. Note the nonhomologous pair of sex chromosomes with one X and one Y chromosome *(lower right)*.

Chromosome Structure

A single metaphase chromosome is composed of two DNA double helices associated with proteins. Each double helix is termed a *chromatid*, and the two chromatids are held together by an as yet unreplicated region of DNA known as the *centromere*, or primary constriction. In addition to its function in cell division, the centromere acts as a landmark and divides the chromosome into two distinct regions known as *arms* (Fig. 69-2, *A*). The shorter of the two arms is designated the *p arm*, and the longer arm is known as the *q arm*. When the centromere is approximately equidistant from both ends, the chromosome is said to be metacentric, but if it is closer to one end than the other, the chromosome is submetacentric (Fig. 69-2, *B*). Five pairs of acrocentric chromosomes have modified short arms with stalks containing only multiple copies of rRNA genes that are capped by a modified telomere termed a *satellite* (see Fig. 69-2, *A*).

The end of a chromosome is the *telomere*. These regions are known to be composed of tandemly repeated DNA with the sequence $(TTAGGG)_n$ that functions to stabilize the chromosomes. The mechanics of DNA replication are such that not all of the telomere DNA can be replicated at each division, so there is a shortening of the telomeres over time. It has been postulated that total loss of the telomeres leads to an increase in chromosomal aberrations that may, in part, be responsible for carcinogenesis and the human aging process (Harley et al, 1990; Wright & Shay, 1992; De Lange, 1998; Raynaud et al, 2008).

Cell Culture

To obtain metaphase cells for a chromosome analysis, cells from a patient must be cultured in vitro. The average human cell divides once every 24 hours, so only about 1% of the cell population is dividing at any given time. However, some cells, such as lymphocytes in a normal healthy individual, do not divide at all. Special culture techniques have therefore been developed to stimulate the cells to divide and increase the yield of metaphase cells.

Specimens

Virtually any viable, nucleated cell sample can be used for cytogenetic analysis. However, certain types of cells are easier to obtain and culture and are therefore favored for chromosomal preparations. For routine

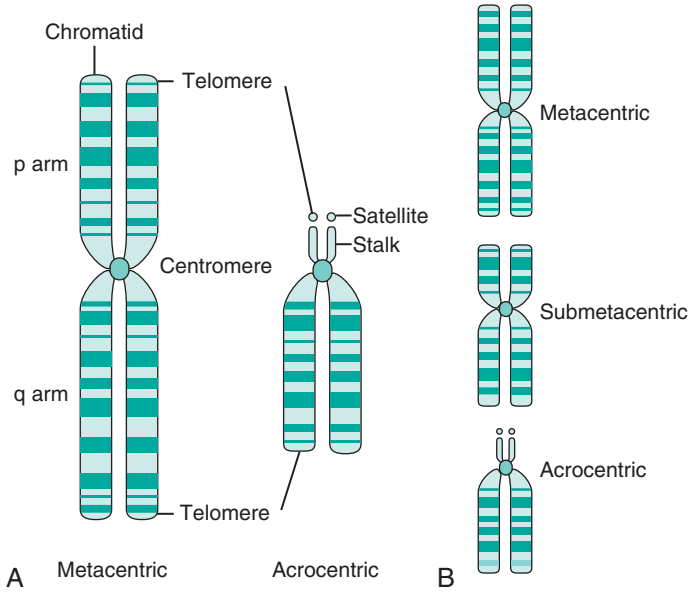


Figure 69-2 **Chromosome structure. A,** Schematic of metaphase chromosome anatomy showing major landmarks. Each chromosome is composed of two chromatids held together by the centromere. The telomere is the end structure of the chromosome. A typical metacentric form is contrasted with an acrocentric having a modified short arm structure composed of stalks and satellites. In all cases, the shorter, or p, arm is oriented up and the longer, or q, arm is oriented down. **B,** The relative position of the centromere can vary, resulting in metacentric (centromere near the middle), submetacentric (centromere closer to one end), and acrocentric (modified short arm) chromosomes.

Figure 69-3 **Metaphase chromosome spread.** Chromosomes from a single cell as seen on a microscope slide.

cytogenetic studies of adults and children, heparinized peripheral blood is the preferred specimen. Obtaining a sample via standard phlebotomy is usually easy to arrange and relatively painless for the patient. In hematologic disorders, the best results are obtained from bone marrow samples, because this is the origin of the disease. Fibroblast cultures from skin biopsies or skin punches provide an adequate source of metaphase cells. Tissues such as liver, kidney, lung, and muscle are not routinely used because of the invasive nature of acquiring such specimens; however, these tissues can be useful to evaluate a fetal loss or an autopsy. Products-of-conception samples may contain a mix of maternal and fetal tissue and so require extra care in establishing a culture (De Martinville et al, 1984).

The most common specimen for prenatal analysis is amniotic fluid collected by amniocentesis. Under ultrasound guidance, the physician passes a needle through the mother's abdomen and uterus into the amniotic sac. This is typically done between 16 and 18 weeks of gestation, at which time 20 to 30 mL of amniotic fluid (fetal urine) can be withdrawn without endangering the fetus. Cells present in the sample are derived from the fetus and provide a source of material for cytogenetic, molecular genetic, and biochemical assays. The fluid itself contains alpha fetoprotein (AFP), as well as other proteins and enzymes, and forms the substrate for other prenatal assays. The risk of fetal loss due to amniocentesis is approximately 0.2% to 0.3%.

Another prenatal procedure is chorionic villus sampling, which provides tissue from the developing placenta (chorionic villi) (Blakemore, 1988; Rhoads et al, 1989). The transabdominal or transvaginal procedure is performed at 10 to 14 weeks' gestation and has a risk of fetal loss of approximately 1%. Because no amniotic fluid is collected, no AFP or related testing can be done, although standard cytogenetic, biochemical, and molecular analyses are possible.

Cordocentesis, or percutaneous umbilical blood sampling (PUBS), results in a fetal blood specimen that can be used for rapid karyotyping or molecular studies. This procedure is done at later gestational ages (≥20 weeks) and carries a higher risk of fetal loss (2% to 5%).

All clinical samples for cytogenetic analysis must be collected in a sterile manner. The presence of bacteria or fungi severely compromises the study because prokaryotic cells usually outcompete and overgrow any human cells that are present. To maximize the number of viable cells, specimens should be transported to the laboratory as soon as possible after collection. Blood, bone marrow, amniotic fluid, and chorionic villi should be maintained at room temperature, whereas solid tissue is transported on wet ice. The difference in temperature of transport is due to the native conditions of the sample. Blood, bone marrow, and amniotic fluid cells exist as individual cells in a fluid substrate, and the integrity of the sample will not be compromised as long as its temperature is maintained close to body temperature. However, collection of tissues such as skin requires cells to be excised from the body, leaving broken and dying cells at the periphery of the sample. The resultant release of lysosomal enzymes facilitates degradation of the dead cells, but the enzymes will also attack and destroy adjacent living cells. If the temperature is dropped to near 4° C, enzyme activity will be inhibited, and the viability of the sample is maintained.

Cell Culture Technique

Depending on the cell type, either a suspension (floating) or monolayer (fixed to a surface) culture technique may be employed. Blood and bone marrow cells are grown in suspension, so cells from the sample can be aliquoted directly into an appropriate culture medium. Bone marrow is typically cultured for 24 to 48 hours, whereas lymphocytes require 3 to 4 days in culture for maximum yield. Furthermore, because lymphocytes do not normally divide in culture, they must be induced using a mitogen, usually phytohemagglutinin. The resultant metaphase cells can then be collected by the use of a mitotic inhibitor, such as colcemid. Amniotic fluid cells, chorionic villi, and solid tissue are all grown as a monolayer in situ. Tissue and chorionic villi are first disaggregated using a mild collagenase treatment, and the individual cells are then seeded onto glass coverslips and covered with culture medium. In an amniotic fluid sample, the cells must first be separated from the fluid by centrifugation before being plated in dishes and allowed to form in situ colonies. Typical culture times are 5 to 7 days for chorionic villi and amniocytes and up to 2 weeks for solid tissue culture.

Once maximum growth has been achieved, all cell types are harvested using similar techniques. The cells are swelled hypotonically (to the point that the cell membrane is stretched but not broken) and are then fixed, typically using a methanol:acetic acid fixative. Gentle blowing on the coverslip containing the fixed cells from in situ cultures results in the rupture of the cell membrane and a spreading of the metaphase chromosomes. For suspension cultures, the fixed cells must be dropped on to a clean microscope slide, which mechanically breaks the membranes and leaves the chromosomes separated slightly from each other but in a discrete region occupied by a single cell (Fig. 69-3). After air drying, the slides are suitable for staining. In some cases, artificial aging of the cells at 65° C for 30 to 60 minutes improves the quality of the staining. Although most laboratories still perform these steps manually, an automated robotic harvester has been developed that can process large numbers of cultures quite efficiently.

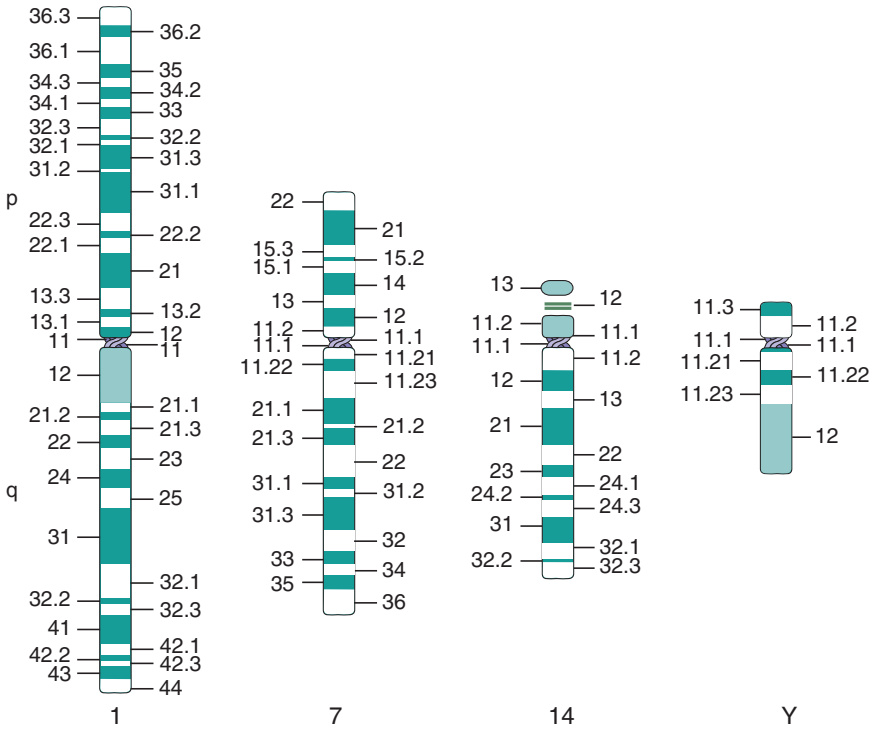


Figure 69-4 Examples of ideograms for chromosomes 1, 7, 14, and Y showing the expected pattern of alternating light and dark bands.

Staining

Chromosomes are routinely stained using Giemsa or Wright's stain, positively charged dyes that bind to the negatively charged DNA molecule. Mild trypsinization of the chromosomes before staining apparently weakens the DNA–protein interactions, yielding a defined pattern of alternating light and dark regions after the stain is applied. This is called the *banding pattern* (G-banding for Giemsa banding) (Yunis & Sanchez, 1973; Burkholder & Weaver, 1977; Holmquist et al, 1982). Each pair of chromosomes has a unique band pattern that is schematically represented as an ideogram (ISCN, 2013) (Fig. 69-4), and this is used to identify each chromosome and the chromosomal subregions.

Although standard G-banding is adequate for most situations, additional information about chromosome structure can be obtained with other special staining technologies. The most common special stains include Q-banding, C-banding, and R-banding. *Q-banding*, or quinacrine fluorescence staining, was originally used in routine chromosome analysis (Comings et al, 1975). However, because the fluorescence is transient, it has been replaced by G-banding, which allows a permanently stained preparation (Sumner et al, 1973). The current major application of Q-banding is for rapid identification of the Y chromosome. The distal end of the long arm of the Y chromosome is composed of heterochromatin and is the most brightly fluorescent region in a human metaphase (Fig. 69-5, *A*). In cases of ambiguous genitalia, a quick Q-banded preparation can usually answer the question of the presence or absence of a Y chromosome in the patient. *C-banding*, constitutive or centromere banding, is used to evaluate constitutive heterochromatin or to determine whether a chromosome has two centromeres (dicentric). Normally, a centromere appears as a single dark spot on an overall pale-staining chromosome (Holmquist, 1979). In the case of a dicentric chromosome, the presence of two dark regions clearly identifies the two centromeres (Fig. 69-5, *B*). *R-banding*, or reverse banding, results in chromosomes with the same banding pattern as that seen in G-banding, but the light and dark bands are reversed, hence the name. Because the telomeres of the chromosomes tend to be small, light-staining bands, a deletion may not be easily detected using standard G-banding. In R-banding, however, the telomeres should appear as dark bands, and their absence as the result of a deletion is more obvious.

Karyotype Analysis

To perform a cytogenetic (karyotype) analysis, it is essential to be able to rapidly and accurately identify each chromosome and determine when chromosome abnormalities are present. The first step is to count the number of chromosomes present in the cell being evaluated. The number of active centromeres defines the total number of chromosomes and will total 46 in a normal human diploid cell. Too many or too few chromosomes indicate a potential numerical abnormality. In vitro culture can result in culture artifacts, so no single cell is used to define an individual's chromosome complement. A typical clinical study requires analysis of 15 to 20 cells. Single cells with abnormalities are considered artifacts. Three or more cells with the same chromosome loss or two or more cells with the same additional chromosome define a true abnormality. In cases of mosaicism or for other special situations, 10 to 30 additional cells may be evaluated.

Individual chromosomes are identified based on the overall size of each chromosome, the position of its centromere, and the banding pattern. Any variation in chromosome structure should be detected at this time. In most circumstances, routine G-banding of metaphase chromosomes is sufficient for clinical diagnostic purposes. However, some disorders are associated with very small deletions of chromosomal material that may not be resolved at this level, so high-resolution analysis is used. Special culture conditions are employed, and the cells are harvested at prometaphase, a slightly earlier stage of cell division. At this point in the cell cycle, the chromosomes are less condensed and physically longer, making the presence of small abnormalities easier to detect. Please note that even at high resolution, the ability to detect very small chromosome abnormalities is limited. A duplication or deletion of about 3 MB is the smallest that can be seen using conventional karyotype analysis.

The analysis is performed by a technologist viewing the cells at the microscope, and once the study is complete, a determination is made as to whether the chromosome complement is normal or abnormal. For documentation, representative metaphase cells are captured, and karyograms (illustrations of the chromosomes of a given cell; see Fig. 69-1) are prepared. The homologous pairs are arrayed from large to small, with special placement for the pair of sex chromosomes. By convention, the shorter arm, the p arm, is oriented up, and the longer q arm is oriented down.

Computer-Assisted Imaging

To capture the images, cytogenetics laboratories now use computer-assisted imaging. A CCD (charge-coupled device) video camera is used in combination with specially designed software to capture an image of a metaphase cell, which is digitized and displayed on the computer monitor. The image can be modified by lightening, darkening, or changing the

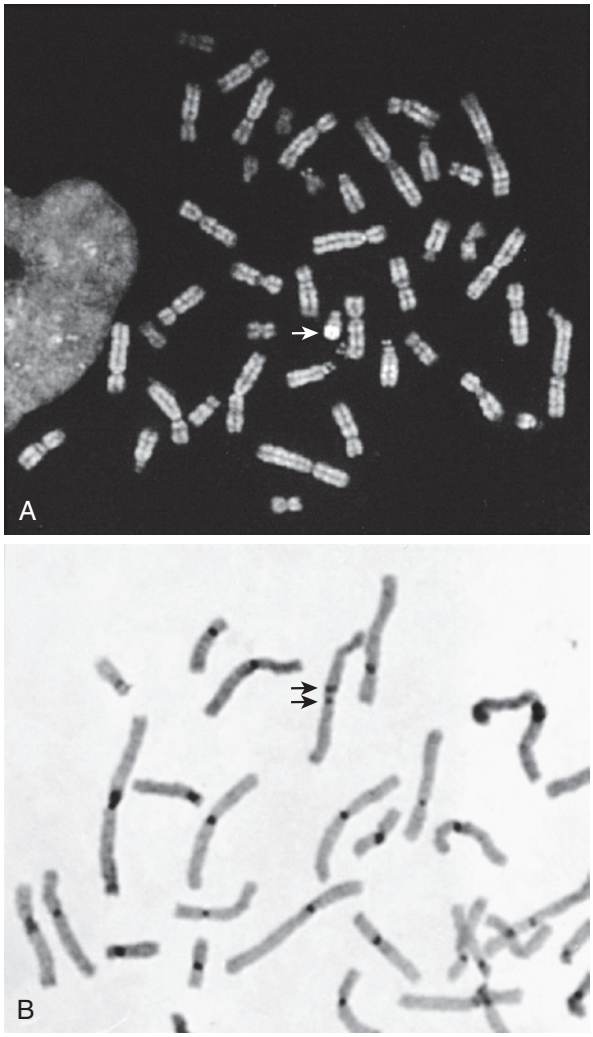


Figure 69-5 **A,** Q-banded metaphase showing bright fluorescence of the Y chromosome *(arrow)*. **B,** C-banded chromosomes showing the dark staining centromeres. A dicentric chromosome was detected with two dark bands (*arrows*).

contrast, and a variety of manipulations of the chromosomes are possible, including straightening and importing chromosomes from other fields. A karyogram can then be generated using a pattern-recognition subroutine that will automatically identify the chromosomes and place them in their proper places on a karyogram form. Depending on the software and the quality of the image, the accuracy of this process can vary from 10% to 85%. After the computer has taken its "best guess," a trained cytogenetic technologist must make the appropriate corrections, and the final version of the karyogram can be printed out by a high-resolution printer and then archived. A routine karyogram from capture to printing should take a trained technologist on average 15 to 20 minutes.

Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization

FISH, a combination of molecular and cytogenetic technologies, has expanded the ability to investigate chromosome anomalies. This technique requires a molecular probe (i.e., a fragment of DNA) that is labeled with a fluorescent dye. To create a probe, a target DNA of interest is chosen, the relevant DNA is isolated, and a single stranded copy of that DNA is labeled with a fluorescent dye. This probe can be hybridized to denatured metaphase or interphase cells and should bind to the homologous region of the chromosome from whence it was derived. The presence or absence of the signal can be seen using a fluorescence microscope (Ledbetter & Cavenee, 1989).

In clinical applications of FISH, the most common goal is to determine whether a gene, a specific mutation, or a particular chromosomal rearrangement is present, so the molecular probes used must be well characterized and specific to the locus in question. There are three basic types of probes. *Chromosome painting* probes are actually a cocktail of many unique DNA fragments from along the entire length of a chromosome, so that, following hybridization, the entire chromosome fluoresces (Fig. 69-6, *A*). *Repeat sequence* probes are usually used in chromosome enumeration (i.e., to detect the gain or loss of specific chromosomes) (Lichter et al, 1990). Chromosome-specific pericentromeric and subtelomeric probes are typically used for this purpose (Figs. 69-6, *C* and *D*). A *unique sequence* probe is usually isolated from cloned DNA of a disease-causing gene or a fragment of DNA of known location associated with a particular gene. This type of probe is used to identify the presence or absence of a gene, gene region, or chromosomal rearrangement of interest (Cherif et al, 1989; Lindsay et al, 1993). *Subtelomere* probes are a subset of this category, and chromosome-specific subtelomere probes have been used to characterize cryptic subtelomeric deletions or rearrangements that have been associated with unexplained mental retardation (Fig. 69-6, *B*) (Flint et al, 1995; Flint & Knight, 2003; National Institutes of Health and Institute of Molecular Medicine Collaboration, 1996; Rosenberg et al, 2001; Irons, 2003). Although accurate and useful, the subtelomere FISH assay has now been largely replaced by chromosome microarray studies.

Technique

FISH can be performed on either metaphase or interphase cells. For metaphase FISH, cells are cultured and harvested as for a routine karyotype analysis, but no culture is required for interphase FISH. Fixed cells are collected, and slides are made as described for karyotyping. The DNA on the slides is then denatured, and a fluorescently labeled single-stranded molecular probe is allowed to hybridize to the chromosomal DNA using an annealing temperature that favors hybridization of homologous regions of DNA (Fig. 69-7, *A*). After an appropriate period of hybridization, excess probe is washed away and the nonhybridized DNA is counterstained with another fluorochrome to allow visualization of the entire chromosome complement. A fluorescent microscope with light from a 100-watt mercury bulb in combination with appropriate sets of exciter filters allows evaluation of the cells. Due to the optical limitations of the glass filters, a maximum of three colors can be visualized on a typical fluorescent microscope. For documentation, images are captured using a computer-assisted system.

One of the most critical elements in FISH is the selection of a specific probe or probes that will help to answer a clinical question. For example, one of the most useful clinical applications of FISH is the detection of microdeletions too small to be seen using classical cytogenetics (Fig. 69-7, *B* to *D*). The gene must be known, and the probe used must be homologous to the critical region of the gene that is usually deleted. Hybridization with the probe should result in a fluorescent signal only at the target locus. If a signal is present, DNA complementary to the probe is present, so there is no deletion (see Fig. 69-7, *B*). However, the absence of signal indicates that a deletion exists (i.e., there is no DNA sequence present on the chromosome that is complementary to the probe, so no hybridization can occur) (see Fig. 69-7, *D*). A control probe to a different region of the chromosome being tested is usually used as a hybridization control (see Fig. 69-7, *C*). Therefore, when evaluating a disease-related probe, an unaffected individual should have two signals per cell for each autosomal gene: one signal for each chromosome of the pair (Fig. 69-8, *A*). An affected individual with a deletion should have a single signal per cell, showing one normal and one deleted chromosome (Fig. 69-8, *B*). For both affected and unaffected individuals, the control probe should show two signals per cell in all cells that are scored. In a metaphase cell, the chromosomes may be short and condensed, with each chromatid individually visible, resulting in a discrete FISH signal on each chromatid. In these cells, there may appear to be two signals per chromosome, for a total of four signals, but in actual scoring, only complete chromosomes are considered, so a signal on one or both chromatids would be counted as just one positive signal.

One of the problems with this detection system is that the lack of signal is the positive indication of a deletion. Technical failure of hybridization may also result in absence of a signal. To eliminate this as a source of error, a minimum of 20 cells must be evaluated, and all cells must agree in signal count. If mosaicism is suspected, additional cells may be surveyed. In addition, unique sequence probes are currently used in combination with a second probe—a control probe—that is localized to a different locus on the same arm of the target chromosome (see Fig. 69-7, *C*). The two probes are usually labeled with fluorochromes of different colors. In all cells evaluated, two clear control signals must be seen, and then the corresponding signals for the disease locus can be recorded. This provides a hybridization control as well as a marker for the chromosome of interest (see Fig. 69-7, *D*). If a dual-color system is used, results may be obtained in interphase as well as metaphase cells.

Chromosome painting probes are most useful in identifying complex rearrangements or marker chromosomes. If an individual has an abnormal

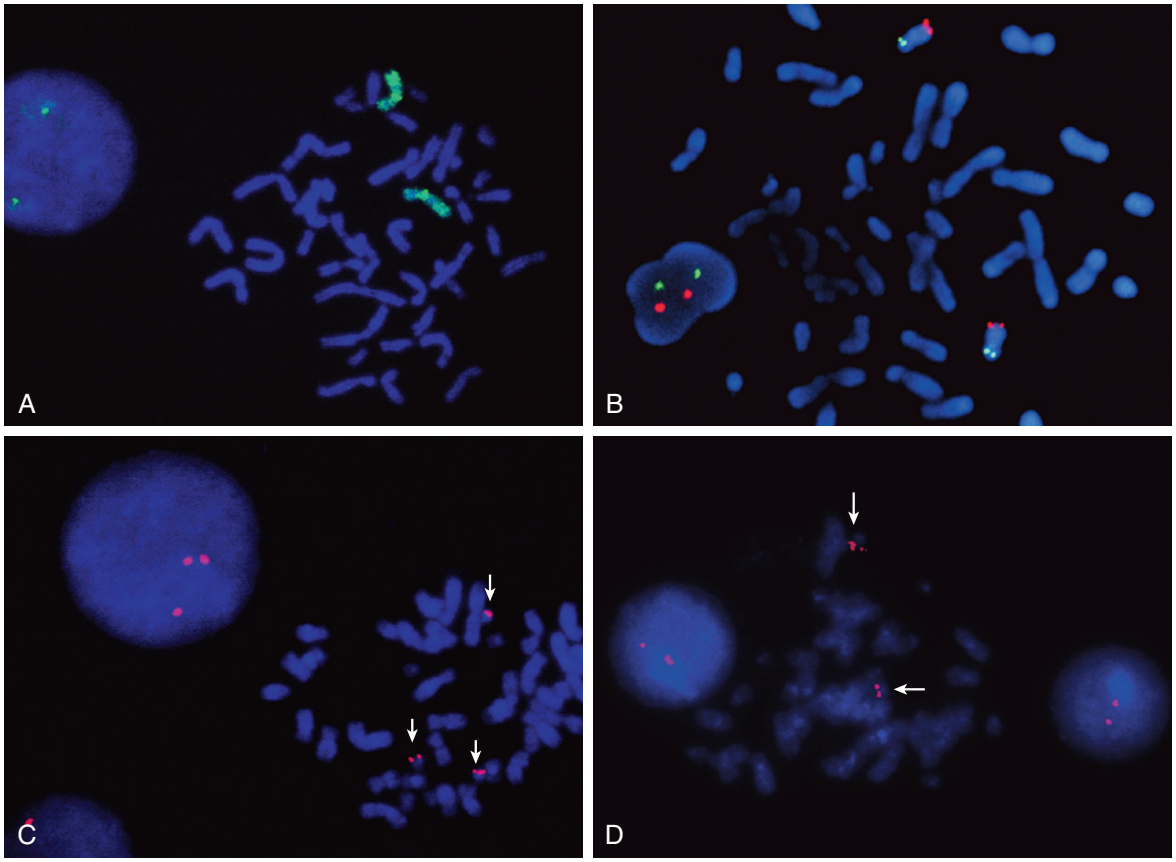


Figure 69-6 **Fluorescence in situ hybridization. A,** Whole chromosome paint probe highlighting the two X chromosomes in a female cell. **B,** Chromosomes showing hybridization with subtelomere probes. The p arm subtelomere is indicated by the green signals, and the q arm subtelomere is indicated by the red signals. Paired red and green signals are seen in the interphase nucleus to the *left*. **C** and **D,** Repeat sequence centromere probe for chromosome 21. **C,** Trisomy 21 seen at *left* in an interphase nucleus and at *right* in a metaphase (*arrows*). **D,** Normal complement of two copies of chromosome 21 (*arrows*) seen in interphase (*left* and *right*) and in a metaphase (*center*).

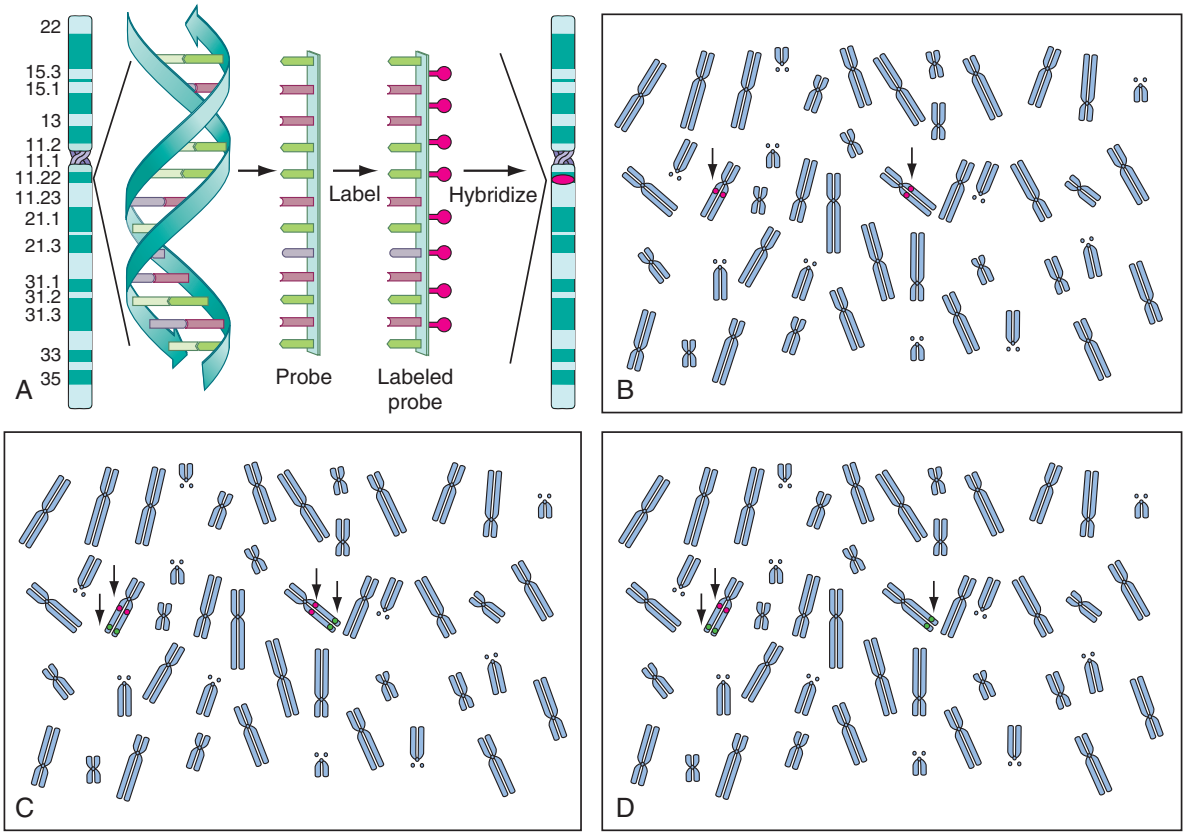


Figure 69-7 **A,** Schematic of fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) technology. DNA derived from a known gene is rendered single stranded, labeled with a fluorescent tag, and then hybridized back to the chromosomes of a metaphase cell. **B** to **D,** Depiction of a metaphase cell with 46 chromosomes that has been processed using FISH technology. The labeled probes hybridized to targets are indicated with *arrows*. **B,** Dual signals indicating hybridization to both alleles of target gene. **C,** Target gene indicated by *red* signal and a control probe indicated in *green*. Complete hybridization to all alleles. **D,** Hybridization of both controls (*green*) but presence of only a single target gene, indicating deletion of one allele.

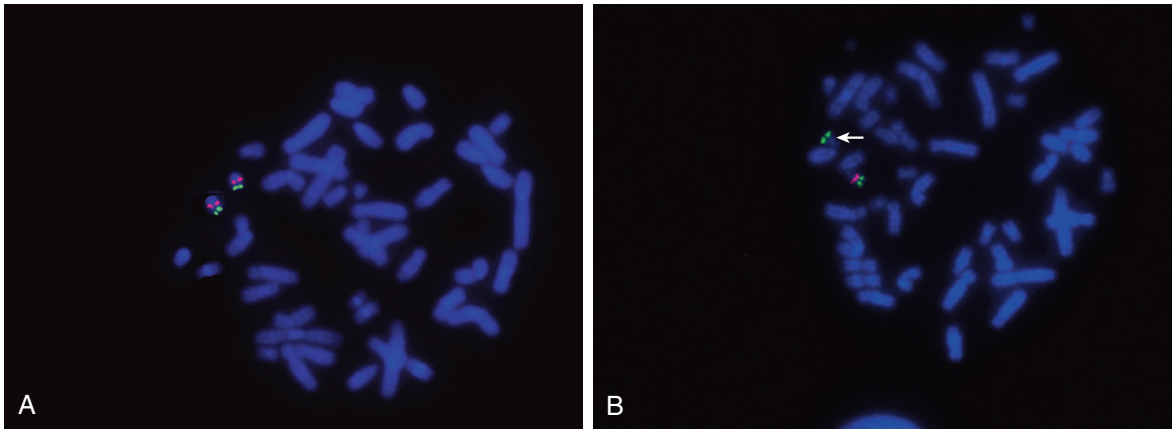


Figure 69-8 **Fluorescence in situ hybridization detection of a microdeletion of chromosome 22 associated with velocardiofacial syndrome. A,** An individual with no deletion showing the presence of one *red* (gene locus) and one *green* (control locus) signal for each chromosome 22. **B,** Patient with a deletion seen as a chromosome with only a single *green* (control) signal. The homologous chromosome 22 is "normal" with one *red* and one *green* signal.

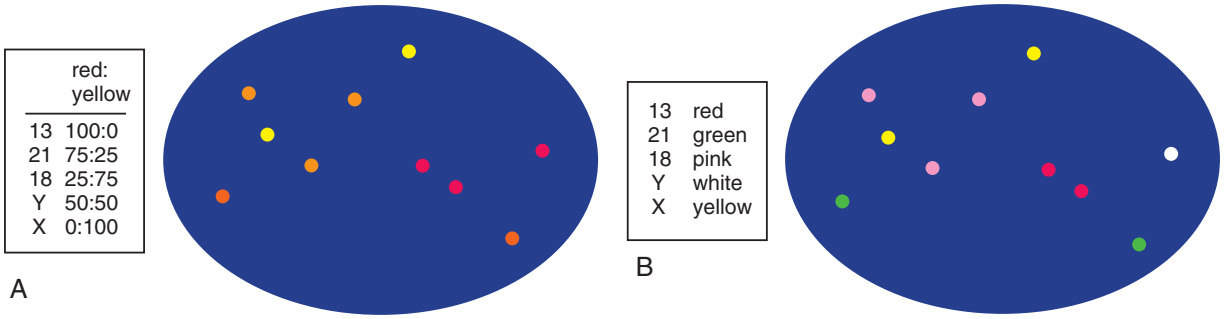


Figure 69-9 **Multicolor fluorescence in situ hybridization. A,** Diagram of the staining pattern for five probes (chromosomes 13, 18, 21, X, and Y) in an interphase cell. Table at the left shows relative proportions of the red and yellow fluorochromes used for each probe. **B,** The same cell depicted in **A,** now showing the computer-derived artificial color assignments (key shown in box to left). This cell can now be interpreted as having two copies each for chromosomes 13, 21, and X; three copies of chromosome 18; and one Y chromosome.

chromosome with extra material of unknown origin, it may be possible to use chromosome painting to identify the source of the extra DNA. This may help in either diagnosis or prognosis of the individual. For example, in the case of a patient with only one identifiable X chromosome and a small, unidentified marker chromosome, it will be important to determine if the origin of the marker is an X or a Y chromosome. This can be accomplished using chromosome paints for the X and Y chromosomes labeled with different fluorochromes.

FISH is a targeted assay. The probes will only provide information about the locus from which they are derived. Thus when interpreting results, it is critical to know which probe was used. When using metaphase cells, the necessary data can usually be obtained from viewing about 20 cells. A larger sample of interphase cells (200-500) can yield statistically significant data about the frequencies of disease clones.

Multicolor Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization

Another advantage of FISH is the ability to hybridize multiple probes to a single slide to obtain a better understanding of chromosome rearrangements (Schrock et al, 1996; Speicher et al, 1996). For most fluorescent microscopes, the maximum number of FISH probe colors is three (one target sequence, one control sequence, and one counterstain). If more than three colors are needed, a computer-assisted imaging system is required. This is because a fluorescent image is the result of the light from the mercury bulb passing through an exciter filter, hitting the fluorochrome on the slide, and transmitting an image of the appropriate color to the eyepiece for viewing. Each fluorochrome requires its own filter, so for each additional color desired, the light must pass through additional thicknesses of glass. The optical properties of glass and light limit the total number of viewable colors to three. However, with a computer-assisted system, detection of multiple colors becomes possible. The computer does not actually "see" more colors, but it can detect subtle differences in shades better than the human eye. In a relatively simple example, two fluorochromes are used and mixed in varying proportions to give a range of colors. In the example in Figure 69-9, *A*, a red fluorochrome is mixed with a yellow fluorochrome, generating intermediate colors from red to yellow. Eight signals are seen, but as viewed through the microscope, it is impossible to be absolutely sure which signal corresponds to a particular chromosome. Although difficult to distinguish by the human eye, the computer can register each color as a different shade of gray, and then the software assigns a unique color to that shade for display on the computer monitor. Figure 69-9, *B*, shows the final multicolor version using many different colors now easily distinguishable but very different from the original presentation (see Fig. 69-9, *A*). Using the key to the left, the following chromosomes are detected: two each for chromosomes 13, 21, and X; three chromosomes 18; and one Y chromosome. This cell is therefore trisomic for chromosome 18 with an XXY sex chromosome complement. This is an example from prenatal genetic diagnosis (PGD). In PGD, a single blastomere is removed from an embryo at the 8 cell stage. With one cell, limited testing is possible, but using a multicolor FISH approach, it is possible to do a single hybridization that will detect common abnormalities such as aneuploidies for chromosomes 13, 18, 21, and the sex chromosomes. In cancer studies, combinations of fluorochromes have been developed that allow detection of each of the 24 different chromosomes, followed by a unique color assignment by the computer (Reid et al, 1992a, 1992b; Divane et al, 1994).

Microarray Technology

FISH greatly increased the detection rate of chromosomal abnormalities, but some individuals who present with findings suggestive of a chromosome defect have an apparently normal karyotype or FISH assay. To obtain even more detailed information on the chromosomes of these problematic patients, use of microarray analysis has proven to be very valuable in genetic diagnosis. In 2010, a consensus paper was published that supported

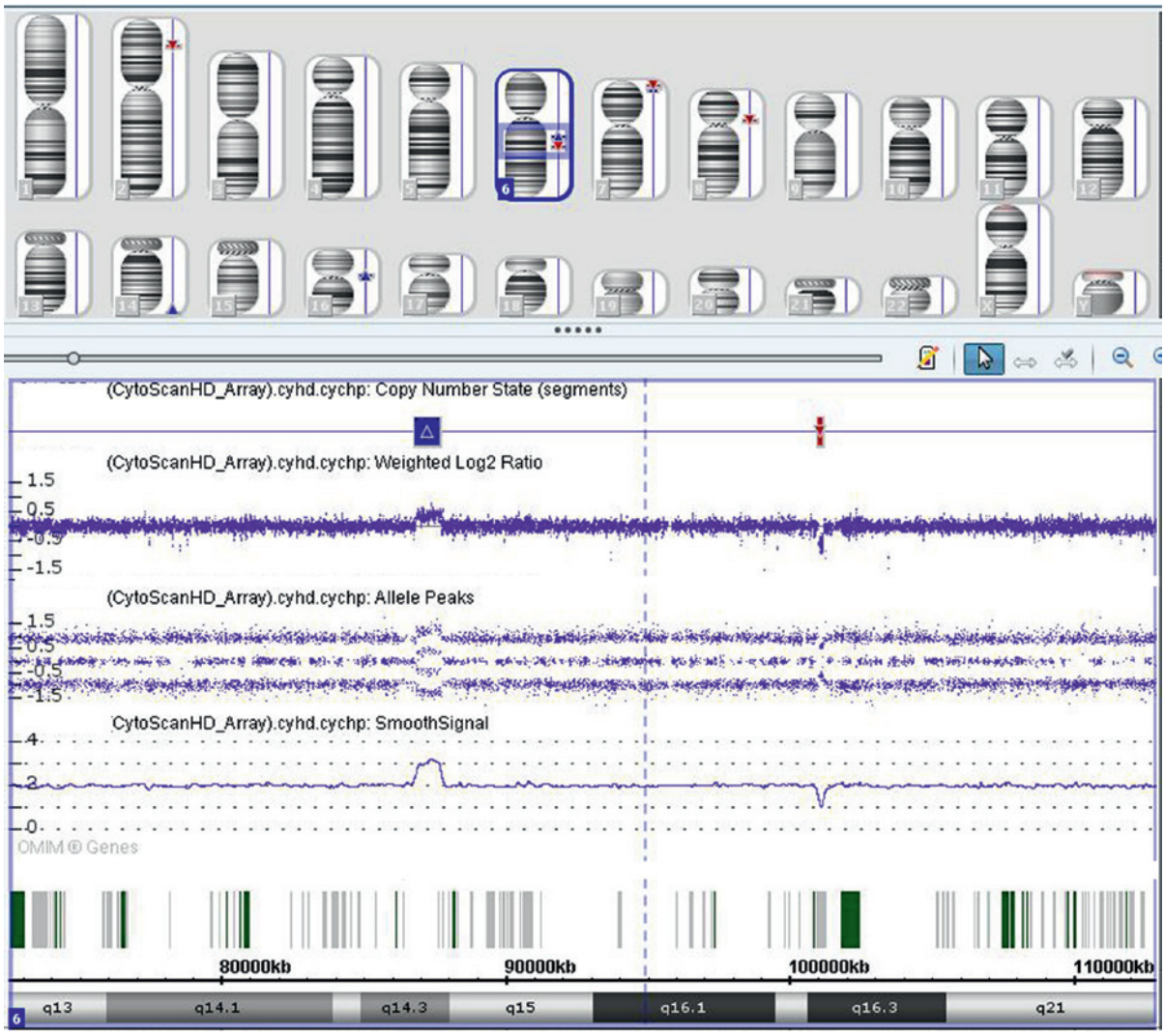


Figure 69-10 Example of data from a microarray analysis. The upper panel shows the set of chromosomes from which chromosome 6 was chosen for examination in detail. The bands for that chromosome are showed horizontally at the bottom. In this case, the proximal long arm of chromosome 6 shows two anomalies: a duplication and a deletion. The duplication is identified by the blue box just below the chromosome panel, and the red bar denotes the smaller deletion. These are confirmed by the thick line at the top (weighted log2 ratio), series of three midweight lines in the middle (allele peaks), and the single line below that (smooth signal). For the duplication, the smooth signal deflects upward, showing three copies in that region and four copies for the allele peaks. For the deletion, the smooth signal deflects downward, indicating the presence of a single copy at that locus. These data were collected using the Affymetrix CytoScanHD system.

chromosome microarray analysis as a "first-tier clinical diagnostic test for individuals with developmental disabilities or congenital anomalies" (Miller et al, 2010). This was quickly followed by additional publications showing the relevance of microarray for the detection of genetic abnormalities in both prenatal and oncology cases (Kolquist et al, 2011; Morrissette et al, 2011; Shaffer et al, 2012; Wapner et al, 2012).

A cytogenetic microarray is a genome-wide screening test to detect copy number variations (CNVs) in the DNA sequence. (See Chapter 68 for a discussion of the technology behind microarray analysis.) Current applications utilize either an oligonucleotide array or a single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) array. Oligonucleotide arrays generally target known disease genes but add in background sequences, for an overall coverage of the genome with probes spaced 50 to 100 KB. SNP arrays provide significantly more detailed coverage with probes on average every 100 to 1000 base pairs. When performed correctly, a microarray assay will detect deletions, duplications, aneuploidies, and unbalanced translocations with a gain or loss of sequences (Fig. 69-10). SNP arrays can also identify methylation patterns and so are useful in evaluating cases of uniparental disomy and identity by descent (IBD; consanguinity, incest, inbreeding). Using microarray analysis has allowed the identification of genomic lesions too small or too cryptic to be detected by other types of assays, leading to a diagnosis for many patients for whom the cause of their anomalies had previously been unknown (Pickering et al, 2008; Saam et al, 2008). In addition, many new genetic syndromes have been recognized and added to the known catalog of genetic disorders.

However, as with all technologies, microarray is not a perfect solution for all situations. Microarrays will not detect balanced chromosome rearrangements, including translocations and inversions. Some CNVs found will be polymorphic variants for which the clinical significance is unknown. Thus it may not be possible to state for certain that the anomaly found is related to the patient's clinical problem. To collect as much data as possible and to share the information among practicing geneticists, international databases have been set up, and clinical laboratories performing microarray analyses are encouraged to report their findings. These searchable databases will aid in better interpretation of CNVs.

CHROMOSOME ABNORMALITIES

Clinical cytogenetic testing is an integral part of clinical medicine. Finding a particular chromosome anomaly may be directly associated with a disease diagnosis, or it might explain a physical problem or phenotypic abnormality in the patient. It is therefore critical to determine whether an affected individual has a chromosome complement that differs from the standard pattern of 23 pairs of chromosomes with known morphology. There are two basic categories of cytogenetically detectable variation: numerical and structural change.

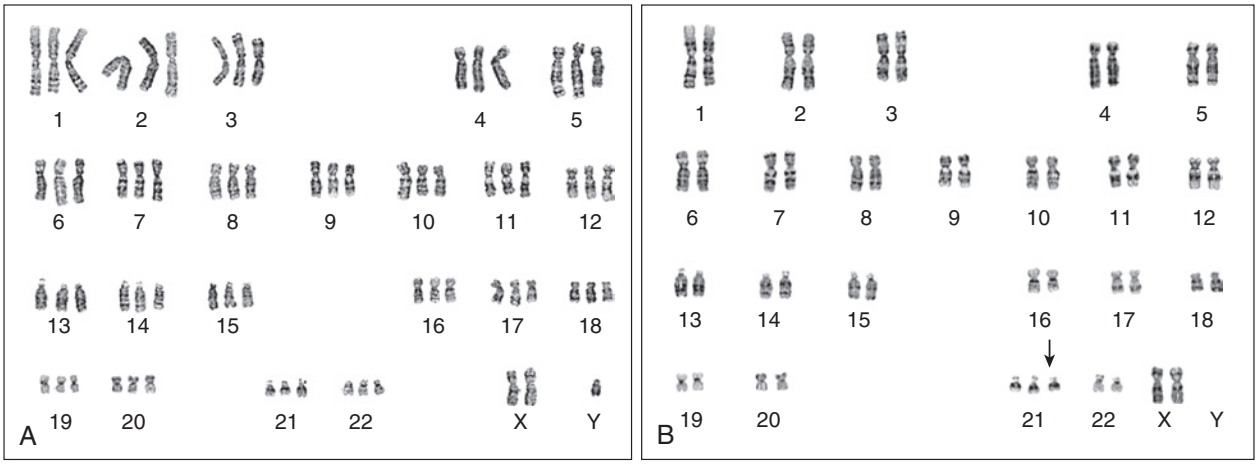


Figure 69-11 **Numerical chromosome abnormalities. A,** Triploid (3N) chromosome complement with three copies of each chromosome (69,XXY). **B,** Trisomy 21 (47,XX,+21) with one extra chromosome 21 (*arrow*).

Numerical Abnormalities

In humans and other mammals, the chromosomes occur in pairs. Of the 46 human chromosomes per cell, there are only 24 uniquely different chromosomes. A set of 23 comprises the haploid (*N*) number of chromosomes, which is the number of chromosomes in a gamete. At fertilization, two haploid complements join to form a zygote with 46 chromosomes, the diploid (2*N*) complement. Errors in division can give rise to chromosome complements that have more or less than 46 chromosomes. Exact multiples of the haploid set of chromosomes is called *euploidy*. Gain or loss of one or a few chromosomes is known as *aneuploidy*.

Euploidy

Diploidy, the normal state of human cells, is a form of euploidy. Abnormal euploidies include triploidy (3*N* = 69 chromosomes) and tetraploidy (4*N* = 92 chromosomes), but in humans, these are not compatible with life and are detected primarily in neoplasia or spontaneous abortus tissues. Triploidy (Fig. 69-11, *A*) may be due to the failure in gametogenesis of one of the meiotic divisions, giving rise to a 2*N* gamete that, when combined with a haploid gamete from the other parent, produces a triploid zygote. Alternatively, a 3*N* complement may be derived from dispermy, the fertilization of a haploid egg by two sperm, and this generally results in a nonviable partial hydatidiform mole. Tetraploidy, on the other hand, is usually a postmeiotic event and presents as a duplication of a diploid complement (XXXX or XXYY), probably due to failure of an early mitotic cleavage division in the zygote. Triploidy and tetraploidy seen in neoplasia usually result from a somatic division error.

Aneuploidy

More common are nondisjunctional errors resulting in aneuploidy. Here, a single pair of chromosomes fails to disjoin properly in division, giving rise to one extra chromosome or one missing chromosome per cell. Occasionally, more than one pair of chromosomes may be involved, but these cases are extremely rare in normal somatic tissues. Nondisjunction errors may occur in either meiosis or mitosis. Early mitotic nondisjunction in a zygote may result in an individual with the aberrant chromosome complement in all cells of the body, but a latter division error usually produces a *mosaic*, an individual with two cell lines that differ only by a single chromosome. Mitotic division errors in neoplasia can lead to aneuploidy for multiple chromosomes.

In normal meiosis, one DNA replication is followed by two cell divisions, resulting in four haploid (*N*) gametes (one copy of each chromosome) (Fig. 69-12, *A*). The first meiotic division is the reduction division, in which the total number of chromosomes per cell is reduced by half. The second meiotic division is a simple mitotic type of division with a separation of the centromeres and distribution of the chromosomes to daughter cells. Meiotic errors may result in gametes with either an extra or missing chromosome (Angell et al, 1994). A nondisjunction error in the first meiotic division (Fig. 69-12, *B*) leads to two gametes that are disomic for one chromosome and two gametes that are missing that chromosome (nullosomic). When fertilized, the former will give a trisomic conception for the nondisjoined chromosome (for example, trisomy 21 in Fig. 69-11, *B*), and the latter will result in a monosomy. Similarly, Figure 69-12, *C*, shows an error in the second meiotic division, resulting in two normal haploid gametes, one disomic gamete, and one nullosomic gamete.

Trisomy or monosomy may occur for any chromosome, but most of these occurrences are incompatible with life and will terminate spontaneously. Trisomy 16, for example, is the most commonly detected trisomy in spontaneous abortus tissue but is not reported in liveborn individuals. Liveborn autosomal trisomies include chromosomes 13, 18, and 21. Infrequently, patients with a mosaic chromosome complement for trisomies 8, 9, or 22 are identified. Sex chromosome trisomies are viable and well documented (see later). The only viable monosomy is of the X chromosome (45,X). Examples of clinically significant aneuploidies are discussed later in this chapter.

Because trisomies and monosomies are largely incompatible with life, it had been assumed that these would always result in fetal wastage. However, molecular analyses have shown that a small fraction of these aneuploid conceptions are "rescued" and go on to produce liveborn children. In the case of a monosomy, the rescue is accomplished by duplication of the single existing chromosome, resulting in a chromosome complement with *uniparental isodisomy* for that chromosome (two copies of the same chromosome inherited from one parent) (Fig. 69-13, *right*) (Ledbetter & Engel, 1995). This is exemplified by several reported cases in the literature in which a child affected with cystic fibrosis was shown to be homozygous for the ΔF508 mutation, although molecular tests on both parents revealed that only one was a carrier of ΔF508 (Spence et al, 1988; Voss et al, 1989). The interpretation is that the conception was a nonviable monosomy 7 rescued by duplication of the existing chromosome 7 that happened to be carrying the mutation for cystic fibrosis. A similar situation is possible in the case of a trisomy. Again, most trisomies are nonviable, but if one of the three chromosomes is lost, a disomy for that chromosome pair is reinstated (Fig. 69-13, *left*). In a set of three chromosomes, loss of a single chromosome results in a complement with one maternal and one paternal chromosome (*biparental heterodisomy*) two out of three times. One-third of the time, the two remaining chromosomes are from a single parent (i.e., uniparental disomy). In this situation, it makes a difference in which meiotic division the error occurred. A first-division nondisjunction results in heterodisomy, which is two homologous but heterozygous chromosomes (one grandmaternal and one grandpaternal); however, a second division error results in duplicate copies of a single chromosome: isodisomy (see Fig. 69-12, *B* and *C*, and Fig. 69-14).

In the past, it was thought that having two chromosomes per pair was sufficient, but it has been shown that in some cases, it is essential for the pairs to consist of one maternal and one paternal chromosome. This issue, including the problems of uniparental versus biparental disomy and isodisomy versus heterodisomy, is of major importance in understanding issues of *imprinting*, a topic discussed in detail in Chapter 71 (Nicholls et al, 1998; Hall, 1990; Cassidy et al, 1992; Petersen et al, 1992; Lobo, 2008).

Structural Chromosome Abnormalities

Chromosomes are not static structures but undergo recombination in both meiosis and mitosis. This is a natural process that is critical in generating variation in the species so a highly developed regulatory system is in place to prevent error from occurring. Nevertheless, errors do occur, sometimes

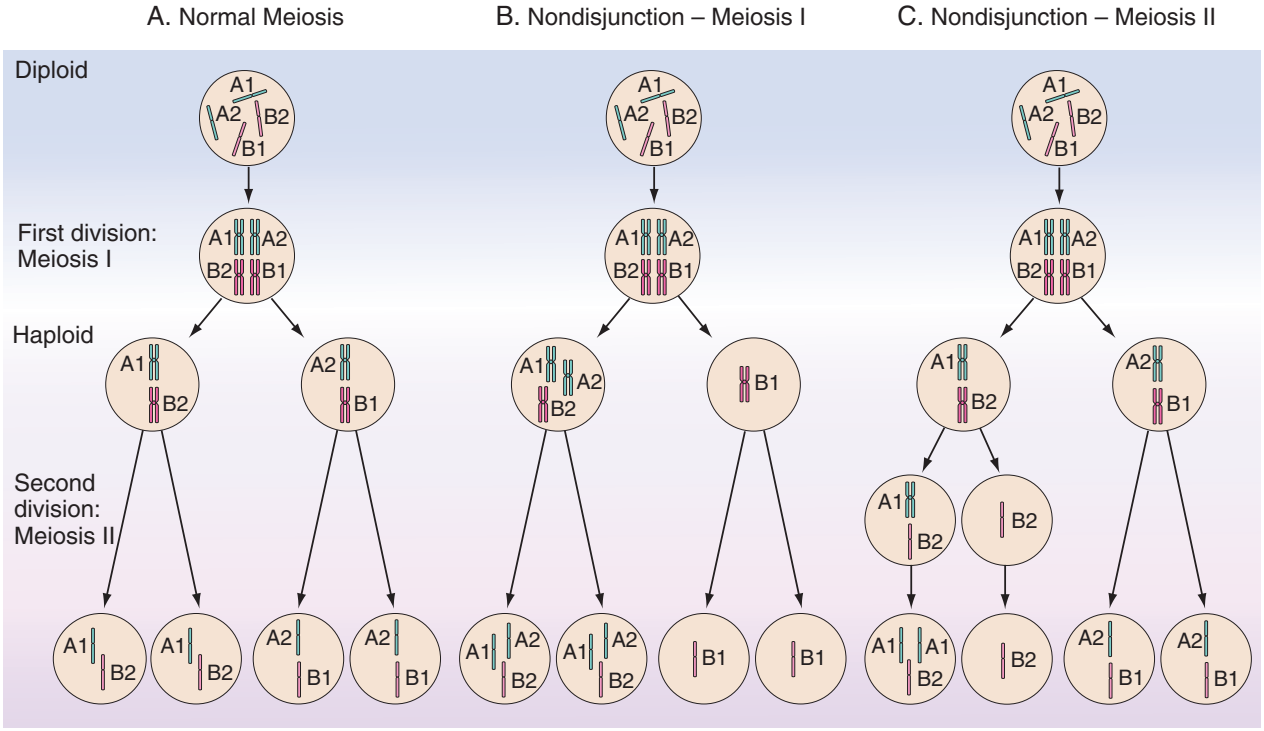


Figure 69-12 **Meiosis and meiotic nondisjunction errors, resulting in aneuploid gametes. A,** Normal meiosis generating four gametes with a haploid chromosome set. **B,** Nondisjunction in meiosis I, leading to an extra copy of chromosome A (heterodisomy) in two gametes (*left*) but the lack of any A chromosome (nullosomy) in the remaining two gametes (*right*). **C,** Nondisjunction in meiosis II results in two gametes with a normal chromosome complement (*right*), one gamete missing an A chromosome (*left center*), and one gamete with an extra duplicated chromosome (two copies of A1), resulting in isodisomy for chromosome A1 (*left*).

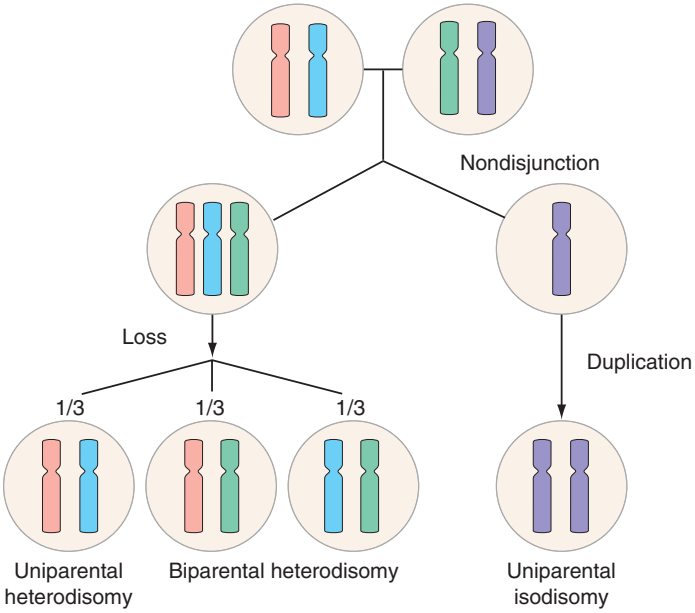


Figure 69-13 **Generation of uniparental disomy from nondisjunction errors.** On the *left,* heterodisomy resulting from reduction of a trisomy to a disomy is illustrated. On the *right,* isodisomy as the result of monosomy rescue (duplication of a single existing chromosome) is seen.

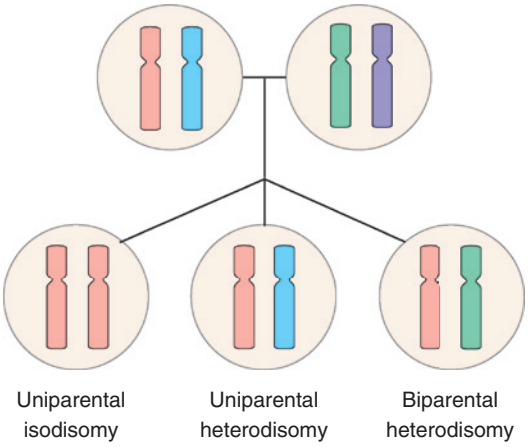


Figure 69-14 **Isodisomy versus heterodisomy.** The expected conformation of a cell is biparental heterodisomy (*right*)—that is, one chromosome from each parent. Division errors can result in an aberrant distribution of parental chromosomes such that two copies of one chromosome from one parent (uniparental isodisomy) (*left*) or two different chromosomes from the same parent (uniparental heterodisomy) (*center*) occur.

resulting in chromosome rearrangements that change the structure of one or more chromosomes. Such abnormalities are quite varied and are often patient specific. Rearrangements may be *balanced*, if all the chromosomal material is present and functional but simply arranged in a different conformation, or *unbalanced*, if there is loss and/or duplication of some chromosomal material. Constitutional balanced rearrangements are usually clinically benign and tend to be stably transmitted, but they may increase the risk of errors in meiosis, resulting in chromosomal imbalances in fetuses or liveborn children. Unbalanced chromosome complements are generally associated with an abnormal clinical phenotype that often includes developmental delay and mental retardation. In cancer, chromosome instability may give rise to apparently balanced and unbalanced rearrangements. These anomalies may be an indirect or direct cause of the disease if important structural genes are damaged, duplicated, or inactivated by the rearrangement.

A *deletion* is the loss of a part of a chromosome that leads to partial monosomy of the chromosome involved (Fig. 69-15, *B*). Deletions vary in size from quite large to very small and may be *terminal*, which is loss of a portion of one end of the chromosome, or *interstitial*, which is loss of an internal piece of chromosome. Chromosome breakage, unequal crossing

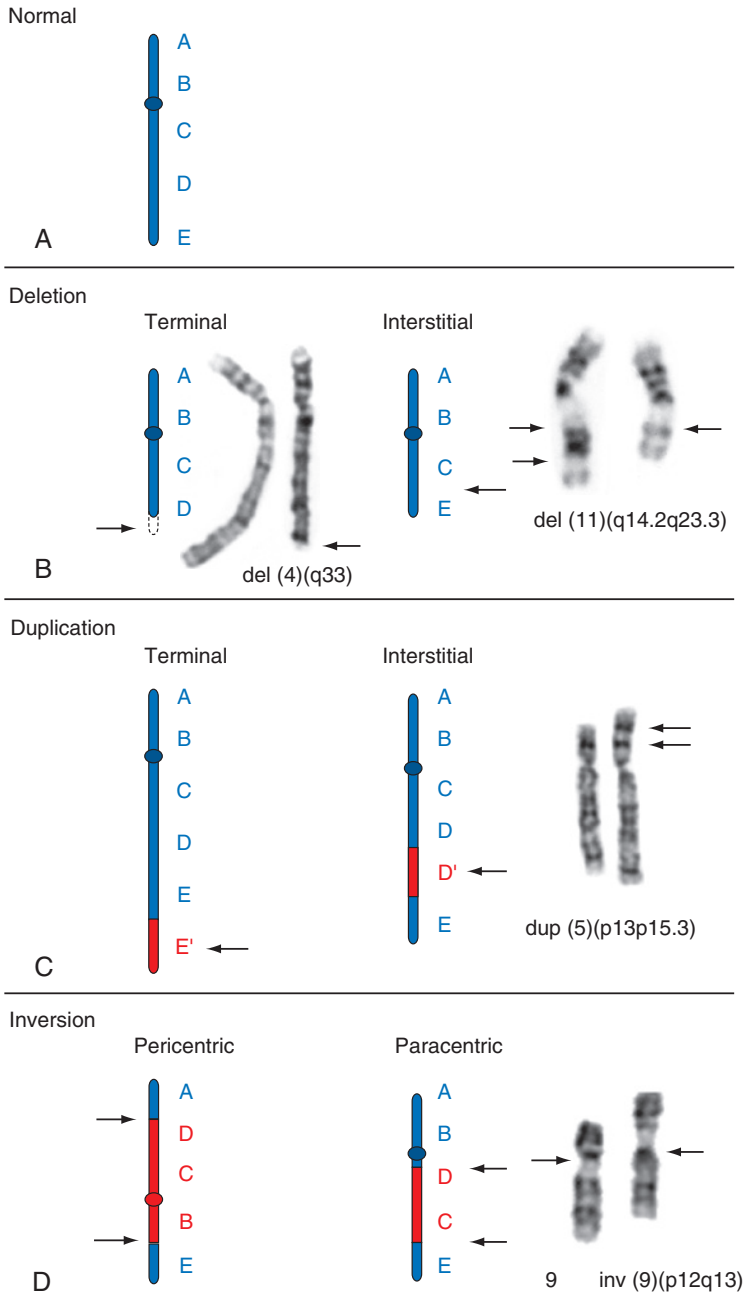


Figure 69-15 **Schematic representations of different structural chromosome anomalies described in the text associated with examples of each anomaly. A,** The normal configuration of a generalized chromosome, where A to E represent different gene loci, and the centromere is represented by a dot located between the B and C loci. **B,** Deletion: Chromosome deletion showing terminal (loss of E locus) and interstitial (loss of D locus) configurations. Examples: Terminal deletion of the long arm of chromosome 4 and an interstitial deletion of the long arm of chromosome 11. **C,** Duplication: Chromosome duplication showing terminal (gain of E′) and interstitial (gain of D′) configurations. Example: Terminal duplication of the short arm of chromosome 5 (*double arrows* indicate duplicated band). **D,** Inversion: Chromosome inversion showing pericentric and paracentric forms. Example: Pericentric inversion of chromosome 9 (*arrows* indicate centromeres).

over, or nondisjunction errors involving chromosome rearrangements may result in a deletion. In general, larger deletions result in more severe clinical abnormalities because of the greater number of gene loci that are missing.

A *duplication* is the presence of an additional copy of a chromosome segment and leads to partial trisomy for that chromosome (Fig. 69-15, *C*). Duplications may be *terminal* or *interstitial* and are generated by the same mechanisms as deletions. In fact, many duplications have been shown to be the reciprocal product of a deletion event (i.e., DNA sequences lost on one chromosome may be transferred to the homolog as a duplication) (see Fig. 69-25). As is true of deletions, the larger the duplicated piece of chromosome, the greater the genomic imbalance, and the more severe the clinical abnormalities tend to be. With the advent of microarray testing, the frequency of detectable duplications in clinically abnormal patients has increased significantly.

An *inversion* is a reversal of a chromosomal segment with respect to the normal gene arrangement and requires a minimum of two breaks in one chromosome (Fig. 69-15, *D*). Inversions are classified as either *paracentric*, where the two breaks occur on the same side of the centromere (i.e., in the same arm), or *pericentric*, where the breaks occur on opposite sides of the centromere and the inversion involves both arms (Fig. 69-15, *D*, and Fig. 69-16, *A*). The majority of inversions are balanced, but if the chromosome breaks within a gene and disrupts normal production of a required gene product, clinical abnormalities may be detected. During reproduction, there is an increased risk of meiotic error for inversion carriers who may exhibit infertility or early spontaneous fetal loss due to unbalanced chromosome products.

For a paracentric inversion carrier, meiosis begins with the pairing of the homologous chromosomes and loci, forming a structure known as an *inversion loop* (Fig. 69-16, *B*). If no recombination occurs within the loop,

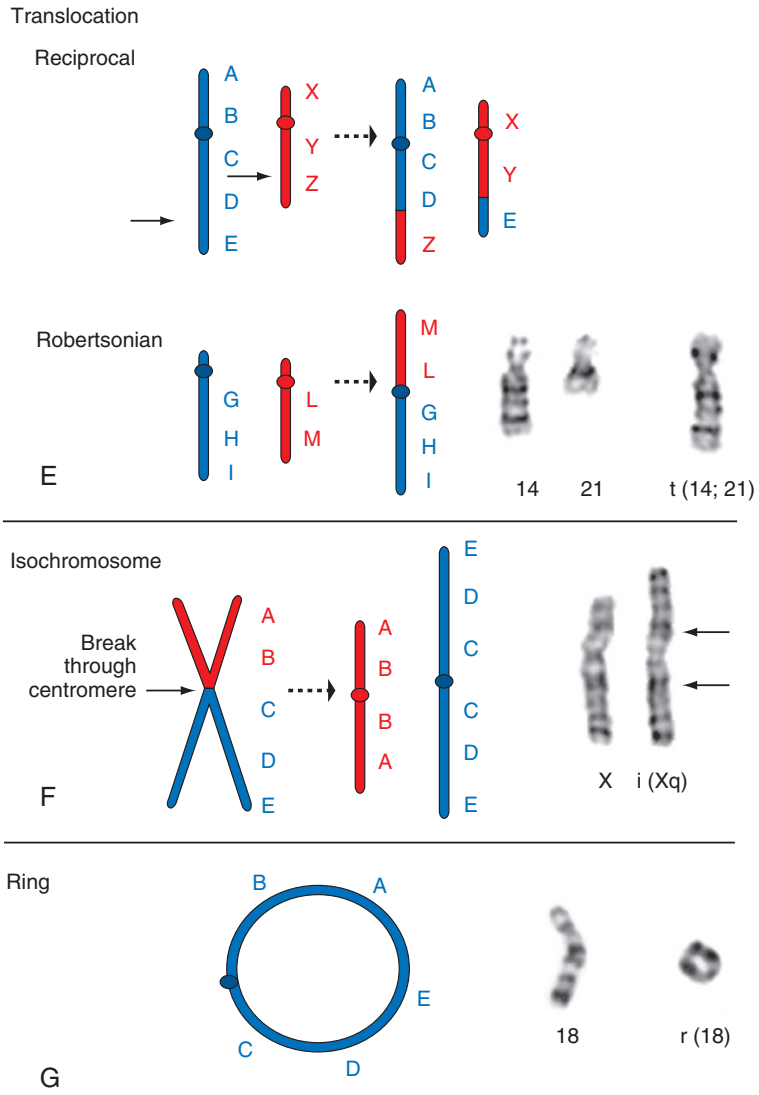


Figure 69-15, cont'd **E,** Translocation: Reciprocal translocation, where the E and Z loci exchange places. Below is a Robertsonian translocation shown by the fusion of two acrocentric chromosomes at the centromere. Example: Chromosomes 14 and 21 followed by the 14;21 Robertsonian translocation. **F,** Isochromosome: Results from a misdivision of the centromere, generating inverted duplications of the long and short arms of the original chromosome. Example: Isochromosome of the long arm of the X chromosome. **G,** Ring chromosome. Example: Chromosome 18 and ring 18.

the chromosomes separate, producing normal gametes. However, crossing over within the inversion loop can lead to acentric and dicentric chromosomes that are nonviable, unbalanced meiotic products. Thus there is an apparent suppression of recombination because the only viable gametes produced are from nonrecombined chromosomes (see Fig. 69-16, *B*). For pericentric inversions, if recombination occurs within the inversion loop, gametes with a chromosome duplication and/or deletion may be derived. In general, larger pericentric inversions result in smaller duplications/deficiencies and increase the likelihood that a child will be liveborn with a chromosome imbalance and phenotypic abnormalities. Once an inversion carrier has been identified, prenatal diagnosis can be used to assess the chromosomes for each future conception.

Translocations are rearrangements involving two or more nonhomologous chromosomes. Each chromosome breaks once, and the pieces exchange places, establishing two (or more) derivative chromosomes (Fig. 69-15, *E*). As with inversions, a majority of translocations are balanced, and only when one or more important structural genes are disrupted does the translocation have clinical ramifications.

The primary danger of a balanced translocation is that carriers are at increased risk for chromosomally abnormal liveborn children. In the first meiotic division, translocated chromosomes assume a cross-shaped structure in order for all alleles to pair properly (Fig. 69-17). At anaphase, the alternate chromosomes must segregate together to generate balanced gametes. Up to one third of the time, the chromosomes will not segregate in this manner and the resulting gametes will be unbalanced. The most common errors are termed adjacent-1 and adjacent-2 segregation. Although both of these patterns result in duplication/deficiency of chromosomal material in the gametes, adjacent-2 is more deleterious because it is characterized by the unnatural occurrence of homologous centromeres in a single cell. Viability of a fetus receiving an unbalanced gamete is dependent on the chromosomes and genes involved in the translocation and the size of the duplication and/or deletion. Chromosomes may also follow a 3:1 segregation pattern (see Fig. 69-17, *right*), in which three chromosomes separate to one cell, with the remaining chromosome in the second cell. This results in gross imbalances of chromosomal material and is usually lethal in utero. Once a translocation carrier has been identified, prenatal diagnosis for future pregnancies is possible.

Robertsonian translocations are a variation of the classic translocation. They occur only between two acrocentric chromosomes and appear to be a fusion of the long arms at the centromere, with the resulting loss of both short arms (see Fig. 69-15, *E*). An individual who is a Robertsonian translocation carrier has a chromosome count of 45 because two chromosomes have functionally become one and share one centromere. Loss of the acrocentric short arms is not deleterious, because multiple copies of the rRNA genes present there are also located on the remaining acrocentric chromosomes. However, Robertsonian translocation carriers are at

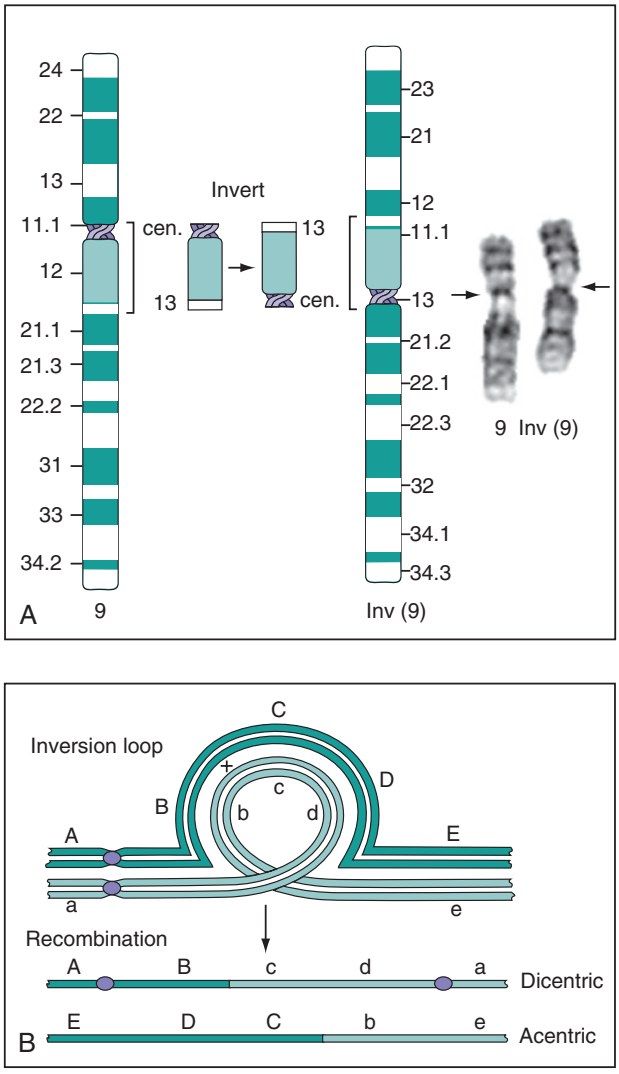


Figure 69-16 **Chromosome inversion. A,** Diagram of a pericentric inversion of chromosome 9 using ideograms to illustrate the mechanism of inversion. Banded chromosomes demonstrating this inversion are shown to the *right*. **B,** Inversion loop showing the pairing of homologs in meiosis for one normal chromosome (*dark green*) and one with a paracentric inversion (*light green*). If recombination occurs at the point indicated by the X in the loop, recombinant chromosomes would be generated as shown at the bottom. In the case of a paracentric inversion, the recombined chromosomes produced would be either dicentric or acentric.

increased risk for meiotic nondisjunction errors, resulting in children who are trisomic for one of the rearranged chromosomes. The most common example of this is an individual with a Robertsonian translocation involving chromosomes 13 and 14 who has liveborn children with trisomy 13 (Fig. 69-18). The affected child will have 46 chromosomes, including two free copies of chromosomes 13 plus the Robertsonian translocation that includes the third chromosome 13. Another common rearrangement is a Robertsonian 14;21 translocation (see Fig. 69-15, *E*), which could give rise to trisomy 21 progeny.

Although the most common Robertsonian translocations occur between nonhomologous acrocentric chromosomes, it is possible to have such a rearrangement between homologous chromosomes. For example, an individual with a Robertsonian 21;21 translocation would have a total of 45 chromosomes, including the translocation in which the two 21s are joined at the centromere. This type of rearrangement is virtually always de novo, because carriers of the abnormality are unlikely to have normal progeny. Possible gametes include a cell with the Robertsonian translocation (two copies of chromosome 21), which, if fertilized, will give rise to a Down syndrome child, or a cell with no copies of chromosome 21, which, if fertilized, will result in a monosomy 21, which is not compatible with life.

An *isochromosome* results from misdivision of the centromere during cell division, generating two copies of one chromosome arm but missing the other arm (Fig. 69-15, *F*). This mechanism can result in two derivative chromosomes: one with an inverted duplication of the short arm and one with an inverted duplication of the long arm. If both derivative chromosomes are retained in the cell, it would be trisomic for that chromosome, a condition that is usually lethal. In a living individual, therefore, it is most common that one of the two derivative chromosomes is lost, resulting in a carrier who is trisomic for only one duplicated arm and monosomic for the other arm. The best-known example is the isochromosome of the long arm of the X. A patient with Turner syndrome (see later under Sex Chromosome Aneuploidies) may have one intact X chromosome and one isochromosome Xq (trisomy for the long arm but a monosomy for the short arm of the X). Because two functional copies of the X short arm are required for normal female development, this chromosome arrangement results in abnormal development. Acrocentric chromosomes may also form isochromosomes (inverted duplication of the long arm), but the resulting homozygosity of all loci present could lead to expression of recessive disorders that would otherwise not have been evident.

A *ring chromosome* occurs when both telomeres of a chromosome are lost and the remaining portion of the chromosome circularizes to reestablish chromosome stability (Fig. 69-15, *G*). Unfortunately, these constructs are usually unstable because replication can result in interlinked circles that lead to chromosome breakage and loss when the homologs attempt to separate at anaphase. Under certain circumstances, however, rings can be stably transmitted in cell lines. This usually occurs when the ring contains genetic material that is essential for normal cell function.

A *marker* chromosome is a chromosome with a centromere that is stably transmitted to daughter cells but cannot be clearly identified because it is either too small or the banding pattern is too ambiguous. In a constitutional karyotype, a marker is often a benign finding, though it could represent a partial trisomy and thus result in an abnormal clinical phenotype. In cancer, marker chromosomes may be generated as a result of chromosome instability.

Conclusions

Chromosome abnormalities, either numerical or structural, that result in an unbalanced chromosome complement are usually associated with some type of abnormal clinical finding, and the size of the imbalance tends to be proportional to the severity of the problem. Most individuals with a constitutional chromosome abnormality have only a single chromosome defect. However, there are rare instances in which one person may have two or more chromosomal errors. Acquired chromosome abnormalities (seen in cancer cells) may be more complex and may have multiple numerical and structural changes in a single cell line.

Nomenclature

With such a broad range of chromosome variation, it was necessary to develop a system of classification that would allow each individual's chromosome complement to be succinctly described and understood worldwide. The first cytogenetic nomenclature provided a framework, and the "language" has been evolving ever since. Currently, the International System of Cytogenetic Nomenclature is recognized as the standard (ISCN, 2013).

The nomenclature describing a chromosome complement can be broken down into three basic parts: the total number of chromosomes, the sex chromosome complement, and any chromosome abnormalities. These units are listed in order, separated by commas. So an apparently normal female would be coded as 46,XX, and a male would be 46,XY. If two or more cell lines are present, they are listed sequentially, separated by a slash, with a normal diploid clone, if present, always listed last (45,X/46,XX). Other clones are ordered by size, with the largest clone placed first. The number of cells in each clone is indicated by a number enclosed in brackets (45,X[15]/47,XXX[3]/46,XX[12]). For numerical anomalies, the total number of chromosomes would be increased or decreased to indicate the overall change, and the specific chromosome gained or lost would be noted at the end. For example, trisomy 13 in a female would be written as 47,XX,+13, and monosomy 8 in a male would be written 45,XY,–8. However, for a sex chromosome variation that is known to be constitutional, it is not necessary to use a + or – sign, because the change in chromosome complement can be noted directly. Monosomy X becomes 45,X, and gain of a sex chromosome would be 47,XXY, 47,XXX, or 47,XYY. On the other hand, if the sex chromosome change is acquired, as in some cancer cell lines, a + or – indicating this would be required (e.g., 45,X,–Y for a male whose Y chromosome has been lost as a result of his disease).

Balanced structural changes in the chromosomes usually do not affect the total number of chromosomes present but should be noted at the end

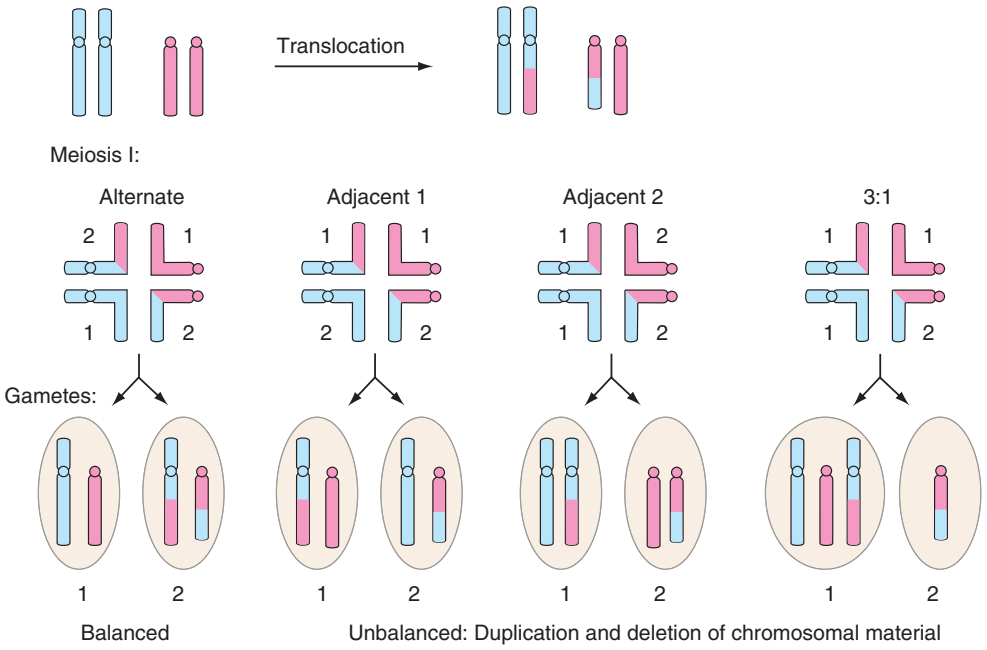


Figure 69-17 Chromosome translocation. Generation of gametes from a hypothetical translocation in meiosis is diagrammed. The chromosomes pair in a cross-shaped configuration in meiosis I. Alternate segregation will result in balanced gametes. Adjacent 1, adjacent 2, or 3:1 segregation will produce unbalanced gametes, which may give rise to an abnormal liveborn child. (Only one of several possible 3:1 segregations is shown.)

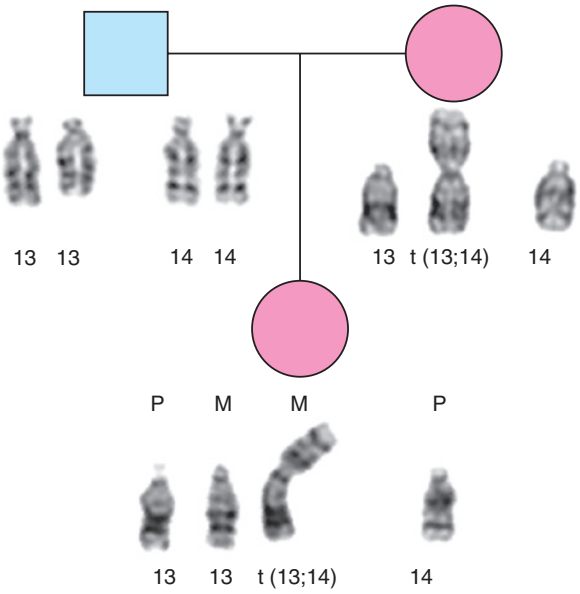


Figure 69-18 Pedigree and banded chromosomes showing inheritance of a Robertsonian translocation of chromosomes 13 and 14. The mother carries the 13;14 translocation in a balanced form, but a meiotic error results in the transmission of both the Robertsonian translocation chromosome and the chromosome 13 from the mother to the child. The child has trisomy 13 and the Robertsonian translocation. Note: The second copy of chromosome 14 is not missing, but it is present as part of the Robertsonian rearrangement. *M,* Maternal chromosomes; *P,* paternal chromosomes.

of the nomenclature to clarify the status of the rearranged chromosomes. In order to streamline the nomenclature, a series of abbreviations for the common structural anomalies has been generated that shortens the overall nomenclature (Table 69-1). A structural abnormality is indicated by the abbreviation of the abnormality, followed by the chromosome involved and breakpoints on the chromosome. For rearrangements in which two chromosomes are involved, a first set of parentheses gives the chromosomes (lowest numbered or sex chromosome first), followed by the breakpoints of the rearrangement in the same relative order—that is, t(4;9)(q21.2;p22) is a translocation between chromosomes 4 and 9 with breakpoints 4q21.2 and 9p22.

Examples include the following:

Deletion:	46,XX,del(4)(p15)	Terminal deletion of the short arm of 4 at band 15
Duplication:	46,XX,dup(11)(q13q23)	Interstitial duplication of the long arm of 11 involving the region from q13 to q23
Translocation:	46,XY,t(4;9)(q21.2;p22)	Translocation between 4q21.2 and 9p22
Inversion:	46,XY,inv(9)(p11q21.1)	Pericentric inversion in 9 between bands p11 and q21.1

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS

CONSTITUTIONAL CYTOGENICS

Cytogenetic abnormalities may be found in apparently normal individuals, patients with phenotypic anomalies and/or a diagnosed genetic disorder, and individuals with other diseases such as cancer. Diagnosis may occur at any stage of life. When the same set of features is seen in several unrelated individuals, it may be possible to establish a syndrome. The characteristics associated with a syndrome are assumed to have a common basis, which can often be shown to be a specific chromosome abnormality. However, although a syndrome is defined by a certain set of characters, not all affected individuals have all of the known abnormalities, so there is variability in phenotype within a population of affected individuals.

Prenatal

Studies have shown that 1 in 13 conceptuses has a chromosomal abnormality, but, of these, only 6 in 1000 are liveborn, indicating that most errors are biologically recognized and eliminated. For example, of all 45,X conceptions, 95% will spontaneously terminate. Similar frequencies of termination are recorded for the liveborn trisomies (90% of trisomy 13 conceptions, 80% of trisomy 18 conceptions, and 65% of trisomy 21 conceptions terminate). On average, 15% of all recognized pregnancies end in a spontaneous fetal loss, with 80% of these occurring in the first trimester. Of all spontaneous abortions, 60% are chromosomally abnormal (Table 69-2), and of these, 52% are autosomal trisomies. The most common trisomy seen in abortus material is trisomy 16, but the most frequent class of chromosome error in spontaneous losses is 45,X.

There is a direct correlation between advanced maternal age and births with chromosomal abnormalities. Population studies have shown that women older than age 35 years have an increased risk for a chromosomally

abnormal conception (Hassold & Chiu, 1985), with the most common abnormality being Down syndrome (trisomy 21) (see Fig. 69-11, *B*, and Fig. 69-19). This becomes important in a society in which women are delaying childbearing until later in life, and prenatal diagnosis has become a major area of clinical cytogenetic study. In addition to screening for an age-related risk, other common reasons for referral include a family history of or previous child with a chromosome abnormality, abnormal levels of alpha fetoprotein (AFP) in a screening test, or an abnormality detected by ultrasound.

The most common chromosome abnormalities detected in prenatal testing are the liveborn trisomies and the sex chromosome aneuploidies. Because these are usually the result of a meiotic nondisjunction error, there is a very low risk of recurrence. Occasionally, a child with a balanced or unbalanced structural chromosome abnormality will be identified. In these circumstances, karyotype analysis for both biologic parents is used to differentiate between an inherited rearrangement and a de novo anomaly in the child. For example, a child with an inherited balanced translocation has a less than 1% risk that the chromosome rearrangement will pose any problem. However, if the apparently balanced translocation seen in the fetus is not detected in either biologic parent, it must have arisen de novo in the child, and there is a 5% to 10% risk of related impairment for the infant. Unfortunately, finding an *unbalanced* translocation in a fetus, regardless of the carrier status of the parents, is a serious situation and almost always results in some type of genetic defect for the child. Follow-up to determine whether one of the parents is a balanced translocation carrier will provide information about recurrence risk for future pregnancies.

In addition to karyotype analysis, FISH studies may be used to identify chromosomal abnormalities in prenatal samples. FISH to detect the common aneuploidies (chromosomes 13, 18, 21, X, and Y) has been a primary tool in prenatal diagnosis for many years, and in 1997, the FDA cleared one version of this assay for general use (Aneuvysion by Abbott Molecular, Des Plaines, Ill.). In addition, certain ultrasound findings may suggest particular genetic syndromes, such as cardiac abnormalities associated with velocardiofacial syndrome (VCFS; see Fig 69-8), and FISH may be used to confirm or rule out the diagnosis.

Since 2012, FISH for aneuploidy detection has largely been replaced by a new assay known as noninvasive prenatal screening (NIPS). It is noninvasive because the study is performed on a sample of the mother's blood collected at 10 to 22 weeks' gestation (Wright & Burton, 2009). From this, cell-free placental DNA (cfpDNA: free-floating DNA, not the DNA in cells) is isolated. About 10% to 15% of the total DNA is placental/fetal in origin, and the remainder is maternal DNA. DNA sequencing is then used to identify each individual fragment of cfpDNA, determine the chromosome of origin, and tally the total number of fragments per chromosome. The algorithms that have been developed establish the expected frequencies of fragments from each chromosome for each contributor (maternal and fetal DNAs). Any increase or decrease in the total expected value for a particular chromosome would suggest an aneuploidy in the fetus. This is not a diagnostic study. It is a screening test that provides a risk estimate for a chromosomal abnormality. For example, detection of trisomies 18 and 21 are highly significant, being approximately 99% accurate, with only a 0.2% false-positive rate, but detection of trisomy 13 is more problematic and, depending on the assay, can be only 72% accurate with a 1% false-positive rate (Chiu et al, 2011; Norton et al, 2012). Therefore, any abnormal findings must be confirmed by an appropriate diagnostic test such as karyotype analysis and/or FISH, which is performed on amniotic fluid following amniocentesis.

TABLE 69-1
Common Abbreviations for Chromosome Abnormalities

Abbreviation	Meaning
cen	Centromere
del	Deletion
dup	Duplication
ins	Insertion
inv	Inversion
i	Isochromosome
mar	Marker
r	Ring
rob	Robertsonian translocation
t	Translocation

TABLE 69-2
Chromosome Abnormalities in Spontaneous Fetal Losses and in Liveborn Infants

Abnormality	Chromosome	Spontaneous Fetal Losses (%)	Incidence in Live Births
45,X		18.0	1/4000
Triploidy		17.0	1/60000
Tetraploid		6.0	0
Trisomy	16	16.4	0
	22	5.7	0
	21	4.7	1/830
	15	4.2	0
	14	3.7	0
	18	3.0	1/7500
	13	2.0	1/5000
	Other	12.3	1/10000
Unbalanced rearrangement		3.0	1/2000
Balanced rearrangement		4.0	3/1000

Data from Hook & Hamerton, 1977; Jacobs et al, 1992; Nussbaum et al, 2007; Turnpenny & Ellard, 2011.

Postnatal

Approximately 0.6% of newborns have a chromosome abnormality. If an infant presents with signs or symptoms of a defined syndrome, karyotype

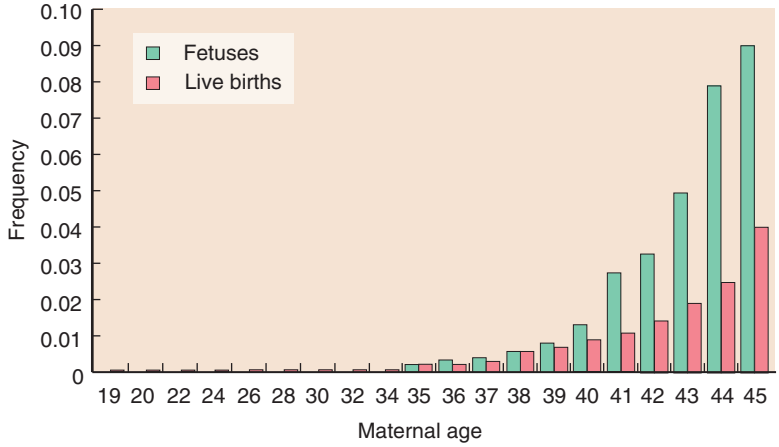


Figure 69-19 **Increased risk of a Down syndrome conception with increased maternal age.** The number of live births is lower at older ages due to the intervention of prenatal diagnosis followed by termination of abnormal pregnancies.

and/or FISH analysis may confirm a diagnosis. If the newborn has clinical anomalies unrelated to a specific disorder, karyotype or microarray analysis may provide information on a chromosome abnormality related to the clinical findings. Ambiguous genitalia may be related to an abnormal sex chromosome complement, but if the chromosomes are shown to be normal, the physician knows that another cause for the patient's abnormality must be sought. If the child dies shortly after birth, cytogenetic analysis may provide information critical in understanding the demise, and these data should be correlated with autopsy results to substantiate a diagnosis. If a chromosome abnormality is found in the child, testing of both biological parents should be considered to determine if the anomaly was inherited.

Childhood and Adult

A common misconception about genetic disorders is that because they are inherited, the diagnosis will be obvious at birth. In fact, the full clinical presentation of many disorders takes time to develop and may not be fully expressed until later in life. Consequently, some of the most difficult diagnostic problems occur in children and adults. In addition to considering the full range of cytogenetic possibilities, molecular and biochemical options must also be taken into account.

CANCER GENETICS

Another area of medicine in which cytogenetics is increasingly important is oncology (Heim & Mitelman, 2009). Although most solid tumors are difficult to culture and analyze cytogenetically, excellent clinical data exist for leukemias and lymphomas, including specific chromosome rearrangements that are directly associated with tumorigenesis (Table 69-3) (Block, 1999) (see also Chapter 75). The majority of these studies are performed on bone marrow or peripheral blood. Karyotype findings were originally used primarily as confirmation of a clinical diagnosis, but the role of genetics in patient management changed dramatically in 2001 when the World Health Organization (WHO) published a revised classification for leukemias and lymphomas (Swerdlow et al, 2008). The data collected had shown a direct correlation between disease causing mutations, the presence of specific chromosomal abnormalities, and response to therapy. Thus in the revised classification system, the importance of the genetic findings, either cytogenetic or molecular, became a key element for final diagnosis in most hematologic disorders. Cytogenetics had suddenly been pushed to the forefront of testing for oncology patients.

In addition to diagnosis, karyotype analysis can provide other valuable information regarding a cancer patient's disease. In general, prognosis and severity of disease are directly correlated to the number and type of chromosome abnormalities seen. Furthermore, once a chromosome abnormality has been detected, the progress of the disease can be monitored. If treatment is successful, most chromosome abnormalities are no longer evident in the bone marrow, and as long as the karyotype appears to be "normal," the patient is said to be in cytogenetic remission. However, if the treatment does not eliminate the aberrant cell line completely, remission may be merely an interlude in which the disease-causing cells are suppressed to such low levels that they are not detectable by routine analysis. Then at relapse, the same chromosome anomalies will reappear and may be accompanied by additional abnormalities and/or more complex cell lines, findings consistent with disease progression. An increase in complexity over time is known as *karyotype evolution*.

FISH has become a valuable tool in clinical oncology studies, with many probes commercially available (Cremer et al, 1988; Anastasi, 1991; Abbott Molecular, Inc. [www.abbottmolecular.com]; Cytocell, Ltd. [www.cytocell.com]). Studies can be done on either interphase or metaphase cells, with the choice resting on the type of data desired. Using interphase cells is often preferred because it provides a much larger sample that can be quickly assayed, giving results with a higher level of statistical significance (Werner et al, 1997).

For translocations, combination FISH probes have been developed that hybridize to the opposite sides of the translocation breakpoints. There are two common strategies employed to detect a translocation. Splitting of the signals may occur if the translocation separates two probes, generating two different-colored signals in place of the original single-color signal. Alternatively, fusion may occur if the translocation results in relocation of the probes, bringing two different probes into proximity and generating a two-color fusion that creates a new color.

A primary example of the FISH fusion technology is the 9;22 translocation in leukemia. This rearrangement is characterized by a translocation between the *ABL1* proto-oncogene on chromosome 9 (9q34.1) and the *BCR* gene on chromosome 22 (22q11.2) (Fig. 69-20, *A*), which produces a disease-associated chimeric gene on the derivative chromosome 22, also known as the *Philadelphia chromosome* (Ph′) (see also Chapter 76). The translocation is seen in chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), acute myeloid leukemia (AML), and acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) (see Table 69-3). Cytogenetically, the translocation appears to be the same in all diseases, but at the molecular level, it can be separated into two classes: the major breakpoint (*M-BCR*) rearrangement that results in a chimeric protein of 210 kD (most common in CML), and the minor breakpoint (*m-BCR*) rearrangement that results in a chimeric protein of 190 kD (seen in some adults and about 50% of childhood ALL). A FISH assay has been engineered to detect both rearrangements (Abbott Molecular). A pair of probes is used: red, which is localized to the *ABL1* locus on chromosome 9, and green, which is located at the *BCR* locus (chromosome 22) encompassing the m-BCR breakpoint but proximal to the M-BCR breakpoint. When no translocation is present, two green signals (detecting each *ABL1* allele) and two red signals (detecting each *BCR* allele) should be present in each cell (Fig. 69-20, *B* and *C*). When the M-BCR rearrangement occurs, the translocation breaks chromosome 22 distal to the probe recognition site such that the entire green signal remains on chromosome 22. On chromosome 9, the translocation splits the red *ABL1* signal such that a small red signal is left on the derivative chromosome 9 and the remainder of the red signal moves to chromosome 22. This brings one green and one red signal adjacent to each other on the derivative chromosome 22 (Ph′), and, with the resolution of the light microscope, the two signals merge, giving a single yellow fusion signal. Therefore, a cell with an M-BCR translocation will have four signals: one green (chromosome 22), one large red (chromosome 9), one small red (the rearranged chromosome 9), and one yellow fusion signal detecting the Ph′ chromosome (Fig. 69-20, *B* and *D*). The m-BCR rearrangement is slightly different. Chromosome 22 is broken within the green probe recognition site, such that one portion of the green signal will stay on chromosome 22, but the distal section will move to the derivative chromosome 9. The red probe site on chromosome 9 is split as described earlier, with one portion remaining on chromosome 9 and the distal section moving to chromosome 22. This reciprocal translocation thus results in two yellow fusion signals (derivative 9 is red fused to green, and derivative 22 is green fused to red). The net result of the m-BCR FISH assay is four probe signals: one green (chromosome 22), one red (chromosome 9), and two yellow fusion signals detecting the 9;22 translocation (Figs. 69-20, *B* and *E*). Being able to determine which of the two rearrangements is present in a patient sample is the key to making the correct diagnosis and leads to the most appropriate treatment methodology for the individual. Other FISH detection assays using other disease gene–specific probes can be designed to evaluate for a wide array of different cancer-related chromosome rearrangements.

In addition, chromosomal aneuploidies in cancer cells can be easily detected—for example, use of a chromosome 12–specific centromere probe to screen an interphase cell population for trisomy 12 cells indicative of CLL; use of a chromosome 7 probe to detect monosomy 7 in myelodysplastic syndrome and AML; and use of a chromosome 8 probe to identify trisomy 8 in both chronic and acute disorders. The use of different-colored X and Y probes in evaluating the success of a bone marrow transplant when the donor and recipient are of opposite sexes has also been highly successful. Following transplantation, a male who has received female donor cells should have an XX complement. Failure of the engraftment may be signaled by the presence of a high frequency of XY cells. The FISH can be repeated at regular intervals to monitor the progress and provide an early warning if the patient's leukemic cell population begins to proliferate.

Initially, clinicians were concerned about apparently discrepant results from karyotype analysis and FISH on the same patient sample. For example, by karyotype, a patient with CML may show all cells with a t(9;22), but only 30% of cells will be positive for the translocation by interphase FISH. These data are actually consistent. Karyotype can only be performed on dividing cells, and because cancer cells tend to divide frequently, a karyotype analysis could show 100% leukemic cells. FISH, on the other hand, detects all nucleated cells, but not all cells in a bone marrow sample are necessarily from the same clone because an affected individual usually has both a disease and a normal cell population. Interphase FISH can quantify the relative numbers of normal and disease cells, thus providing a more accurate estimate of disease involvement within the total population. This can be used advantageously to monitor a patient's response to treatment. Testing sequential samples over time can show a reduction in the disease cell population, and relapse will be reflected by a rise in the leukemic cell population. Thus it is important to perform both karyotype analysis and FISH on a diagnosis specimen. The karyotype will define the chromosomal abnormalities present, and the FISH will establish the baseline frequency of the leukemic clone(s). These data can then be used as a reference point for all future testing for the patient.

TABLE 69-3

Common Cytogenetic Rearrangements in Leukemia and Lymphoma

Disorder	Chromosome Rearrangement(s)	Genes Involved	FAB Classification (If Different)
Chronic Myeloproliferative Disease			
Chronic myelogenous leukemia	t(9;22)(q34.1;q11.2)	*BCR;ABL1*	
Chronic myelogenous leukemia (accelerated or blast phase)	+8, i(17q), +19, +Ph'		
Polycythemia vera	+8, +9, del(20q), del(13q)		
Chronic idiopathic myelofibrosis	+8, –7 del(7q), del(11q), del(13q), del(20q)		
Essential thrombocythemia	+8, del(13q)		
Myelodysplastic Syndromes			
Myelodysplastic syndrome with isolated del(5q)	del(5)(q13q33), del(5)(q22q33)		5q- syndrome
Chronic myelomonocytic leukemia	–7, del(7q),+8, abnormalities of 12p		
Refractory anemia, refractory anemia with ringed sideroblasts, refractory anemia with excess blasts	–5, del(5q), –7, del(7q), +8, del(20q)		
Acute Myeloid Leukemia (AML) with Recurrent Cytogenetic Abnormalities			
AML with t(8;21)	t(8;21)(q22;q22)	*RUNX1; RUNX1T1*	AML-M2
AML with inversion or translocation 16	inv(16)(p12q22), t(16;16)(p13;q22)	*CBFβ; MYH11*	AML-M4Eo
Acute promyelocytic leukemia	t(15;17)(q22;q12)	*PML; RARα*	AML-M3
AML with 11q23 (*MLL*) abnormalities	t(9;11)(p21;q23), t(11;19)(q23;p13.1), t(11;19)(q23;p13.3),	*AF9; MLL* *MLL; ENL*	AML-M5
AML with multilineage dysplasia	–5, del(5q), –7, del(7q), +8, del(11q), del(20q), +21, translocations involving 3q21 and 3q26, t(9;22)(q34.1;q11.2)		*AML-M1, AML-M6*
Precursor B-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma	t(1;19)(q23;p13.3) t(9;22)(q34;q11.2) 11q23 rearrangements, including: t(1;11)(p32;q23) t(4;11)(q21;q23) t(11;19)(q23;p13) t(12;21)(p13q22) Hyperdiploidy (modal number 50-56)	*PBX1; TCF3* *ABL1; BCR* *MLL* *AF1P; MLL* *AF4; MLL* *MLL; ENL* *ETV6; RUNX1*	ALL-L1/L2
Precursor T-lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma	Rearrangements at 14q11.2, 7q35, and 7p14-15 del(9p) Translocations at 1p32	T-cell receptor loci *CDKN2A* *TAL1*	ALL-L1/L2
Mature B Cell Neoplasms			
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic leukemia	+12, del13q, del11q23-24, 14q+, del17p13		
Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma/Waldenström's macroglobulinemia	t(9;14)(p13;q32)	*PAX5; IGH*	
Multiple myeloma	t(11;14)(q13;q32)	*CCND1;IGH*	
Marginal zone B cell lymphoma (MALT)	t(11;18)(q21;q21), +3	*BIRC3;MALT1*	
Follicular lymphoma, Diffuse large B cell lymphoma	t(14;18)(q32;q21), +7, +18, t(18;22)(q21;q11.2), del(6q), del/t(3)(q27)	*IGH; BCL2 BCL2;IGL* *BCL6*	
Mantle cell lymphoma	t(11;14)(q13;q32)	*CCND1; IGH*	
Burkitt's lymphoma	(8;14)(q24;q32) t(2;8) (p12;q24) t(8;22)(q24;q11.2)	*MYC; IGH* *IGK; MYC* *MYC; IGL*	

Multicolor FISH has also been used to evaluate leukemic cell lines, and the data have suggested that cancer cells actually undergo a significantly greater degree of chromosome rearrangement than was previously appreciated (Veldman et al, 1997). Microarray analysis is now being employed to better understand the complexity of disease clones and aid in the diagnosis of different neoplasia (Kolquist et al, 2011; Morrissette & Bagg, 2011).

CYTOGENETIC DISORDERS

Chromosomal Aneuploidy Syndromes

Autosomal Aneuploidies

The most common cause of mental retardation is trisomy 21, or Down syndrome. This disorder has a birth incidence of 1 in 700 and is characterized by hypotonia, flat facies, slanted palpebral fissures, small ears, protruding tongue, transverse palmar crease, heart defects, hypogonadism, and probable infertility. Down syndrome individuals also have in increased susceptibility to infectious diseases and increased risks for cancer and early onset Alzheimer disease. Approximately 92.5% of all Down syndrome individuals have 47 chromosomes, including three copies of chromosome 21 resulting from a nondisjunction error in parental meiosis. Just under 3% of patients tend to express a milder phenotype and have been shown to be mosaics with two cell lines (47,XX,+21/46,XX or 47,XY,+21/46,XY), and about 5% of Down syndrome patients have only 46 chromosomes, because the extra 21 is part of a Robertsonian or other translocation. A child with a translocation is often indicative of the presence of a translocation carrier parent, so in these cases, karyotype analysis of both parents is appropriate to determine whether the couple is at increased risk of having additional Down syndrome children in future pregnancies. Although it is most common for a Down syndrome patient to have three complete copies of chromosome 21, molecular studies of individuals with chromosome 21 rearrangements have clearly shown that it is only necessary to have three copies of the region of chromosome 21 encompassing bands 21q22.12 to 21q22.3, the Down syndrome–critical region (Fig. 69-21) (Korenberg et al, 1990; Delabar et al, 1993).

The other two liveborn trisomies are trisomy 13 and trisomy 18. *Trisomy 13*, or Patau syndrome, with a birth incidence of 1 in 4000 to 1 in 10,000, is characterized by a small head, cleft lip and/or cleft palate,

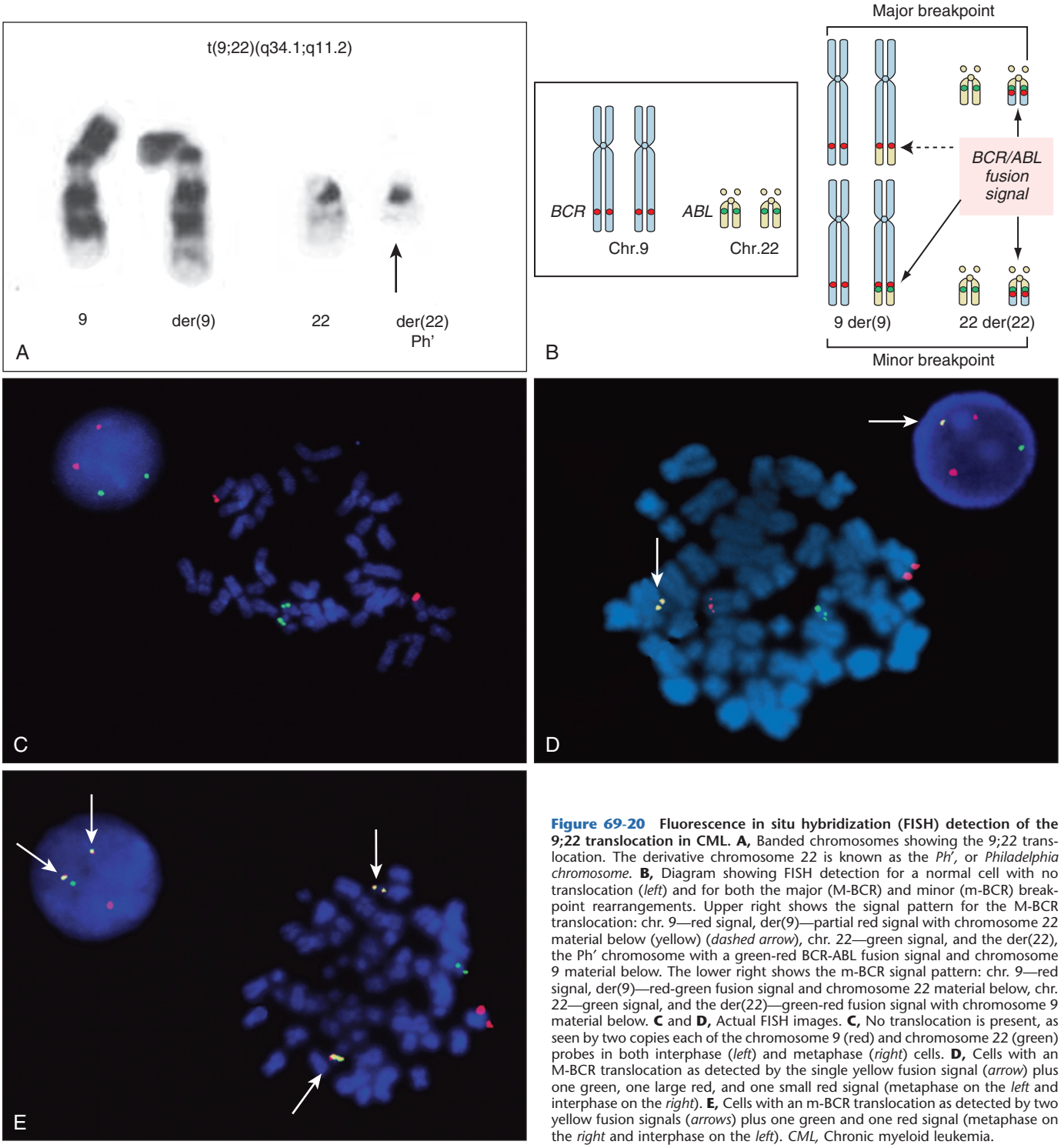


Figure 69-20 **Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) detection of the 9;22 translocation in CML. A,** Banded chromosomes showing the 9;22 translocation. The derivative chromosome 22 is known as the *Ph'*, or *Philadelphia chromosome*. **B,** Diagram showing FISH detection for a normal cell with no translocation (*left*) and for both the major (M-BCR) and minor (m-BCR) breakpoint rearrangements. Upper right shows the signal pattern for the M-BCR translocation: chr. 9—red signal, der(9)—partial red signal with chromosome 22 material below (yellow) (*dashed arrow*), chr. 22—green signal, and the der(22), the Ph' chromosome with a green-red BCR-ABL fusion signal and chromosome 9 material below. The lower right shows the m-BCR signal pattern: chr. 9—red signal, der(9)—red-green fusion signal and chromosome 22 material below, chr. 22—green signal, and the der(22)—green-red fusion signal with chromosome 9 material below. **C** and **D,** Actual FISH images. **C,** No translocation is present, as seen by two copies each of the chromosome 9 (red) and chromosome 22 (green) probes in both interphase (*left*) and metaphase (*right*) cells. **D,** Cells with an M-BCR translocation as detected by the single yellow fusion signal (*arrow*) plus one green, one large red, and one small red signal (metaphase on the *left* and interphase on the *right*). **E,** Cells with an m-BCR translocation as detected by two yellow fusion signals (*arrows*) plus one green and one red signal (metaphase on the *right* and interphase on the *left*). *CML,* Chronic myeloid leukemia.

cyclopia, transverse palmar crease, polydactyly of the hands and/or feet, prominent heel, ventricular septal defect, and punched-out scalp. *Trisomy 18*, or Edwards syndrome (Fig. 69-22, *A*), is seen in approximately 1 in 8000 newborns, with features including a low birthweight, small mouth and jaw, ventricular septal defect, hypoplasia of the muscles, a prominent occiput, low-set malformed ears, rocker-bottom feet, and crossed fingers.

Despite its often severe clinical consequences, Down syndrome is usually manageable, and patients live into the second or third decade of life. Trisomy 13 and trisomy 18 are considerably less compatible with life, and patients usually die within the first month of life. If an individual survives the first year, the outlook is bleak, because patients do not learn to talk, walk, or care for themselves. Because of this, counseling for prenatally diagnosed cases of trisomy 13 and 18 includes the option of termination of pregnancy.

Sex Chromosome Aneuploidies

Sex chromosome aneuploidies are relatively common (overall frequency of 1 in 500 births) and are phenotypically milder than autosomal aneuploidies because of the effect of X inactivation and the limited number of genes present on the Y chromosome. Four disorders, including three trisomies and one monosomy, account for a majority of cases. All are the result of nondisjunction errors in meiosis, and, except for XYY, which is exclusively paternal, the other disorders may result from either maternal or paternal error.

The aberrant karyotypes of individuals with three X chromosomes (47,XXX females) or with one X and two Y chromosomes (47,XYY males) often go undetected throughout life. The birth incidence is relatively high—1 in 1000, but other than being somewhat taller than average, there are no striking features that would indicate a chromosomal abnormality.

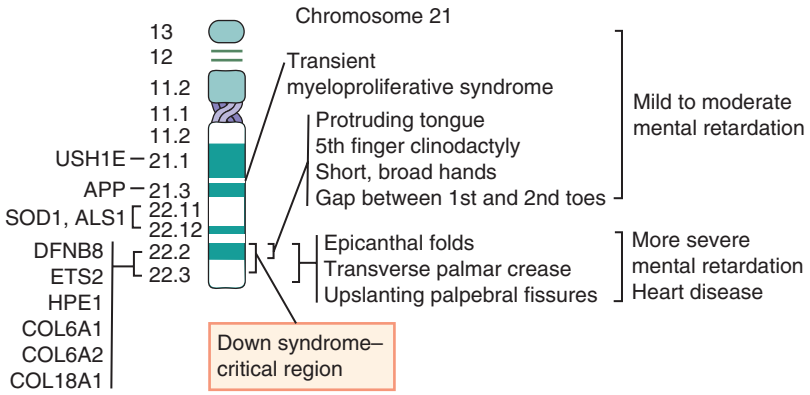


Figure 69-21 Map of chromosome 21 showing the Down syndrome–critical region and relative positions of loci associated with various clinical features to the right. On the left, other mapped loci are shown. *ALS1*, Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis; *APP,* amyloid β-precursor protein (associated with Alzheimer disease); *COL6A1/COL6A2/COL18A1,* collagen genes; *DFNB8*, deafness 8; *ETS2,* oncogene ETS-2; *HPE1,* alobar holoprosencephaly-1; *SOD1,* superoxide dismutase-1; *USH1E,* Usher syndrome. (Data from Korenberg et al, 1990; Delabar et al, 1993; OMIM, website.)

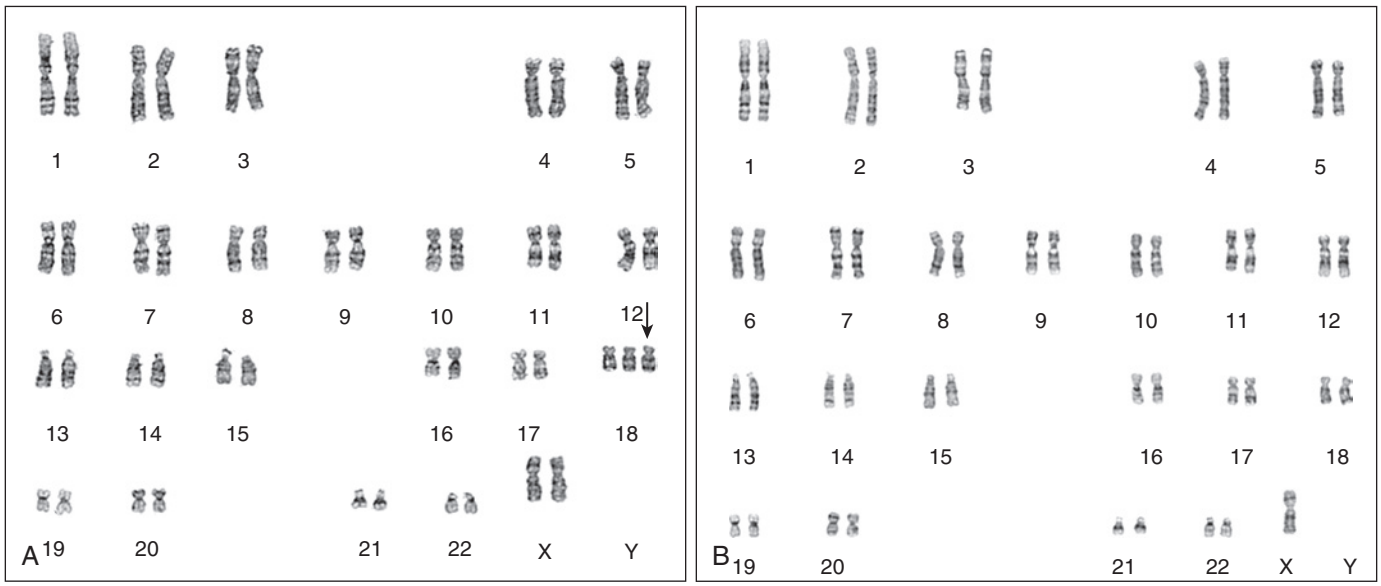


Figure 69-22 Karyotypes from numerical chromosome syndromes. A, Edwards syndrome (trisomy 18): 47,XX,+18. **B,** Turner syndrome (monosomy X): 45,X.

Some individuals have generalized learning difficulties and so may be identified by school screening programs. XXX females and XYY males may also be identified during infertility testing, though the cytogenetic abnormality is not usually related to the reason for referral. XYY males do have an increased risk of behavioral problems, and early studies suggested that they also had criminal tendencies because there was a higher than expected incidence of XYY in inmates of penal institutions (Jacobs et al, 1968; Price & Jacobs, 1970). However, subsequent work has shown that (1) the conclusions of the original study were biased because of a sampling error, (2) criminality is most probably due to a combination of multiple causes, and (3) XYY males are no more prone to criminal behavior than any other male (Witkin et al, 1976; Pitcher, 1982; Theilgaard, 1984).

Klinefelter syndrome (47,XXY) males tend to be tall and thin with relatively long legs, although early in life these findings seldom set them apart from their peers. Some individuals are identified in school because of their learning difficulties, but the most common reason for referral is postpubertal hypogonadism, female-like breast development, and infertility due to small testicles, hyalinized testicular tubules, and azoospermia. A milder form of Klinefelter syndrome with the potential for fertility due to normal testicular development is seen in individuals with a mosaic chromosome complement, including a 46,XY cell line (47,XXY/46,XY). The relative proportion of XY and XXY cells during sex determination in the early zygote and in the testes is the key for fertility. An excess of XXY cells will push the individual toward a true Klinefelter presentation, whereas higher numbers of XY cells should moderate the phenotype and increase the likelihood of fertility.

The most commonly recognized sex chromosome aneuploidy presenting with a female phenotype is 45,X: *Turner syndrome* (Fig. 69-22, *B*). This is also the only human viable liveborn monosomy. In sex determination, normal female development is dependent on the presence of two active X chromosomes. The critical region for female differentiation has been narrowed to a region of the short arm of the X just proximal to the centromere. If that region is missing or inactive, an individual with Turner syndrome will result. About half of all Turner syndrome patients have the classic 45,X chromosome complement, and the single X chromosome is usually maternal in origin, indicating that a paternal meiotic nondisjunction is the most common source of error. In addition to 45,X, more complex karyotypes are also possible (Table 69-4) (Palmer & Reichmann, 1976). The greatest concern is for individuals who possess a complete or partial Y chromosome in at least one cell line, because these patients are at increased risk for gonadoblastoma.

The phenotype for Turner syndrome is highly variable. Affected individuals are typically short (<150 cm), with gonadal dysgenesis and learning difficulties. Other common features include webbed neck resulting from cystic hygroma in utero, low posterior hairline, heart and renal anomalies, cubitus valgus (increased carrying angle of the elbow), and shield chest. At birth, patients may present with edema of the hands and feet. Turner syndrome patients are usually of normal intelligence, although some individuals do have learning disabilities. Furthermore, although infertility used to be accepted as the standard in Turner syndrome, it is now known that some patients, usually those with mosaic karyotypes, can reproduce successfully. Furthermore, the reproductive problem is primarily related to

TABLE 69-4
Distribution of Different Chromosome Complements That Give Rise to Turner Syndrome

Occurrence (%)	Chromosome Anomaly
50	45,X
20	46,X,i(Xq)
15	X chromosome deletions or rings, or the presence of a Y chromosome
10	Mosaics: 45,X/46,XX; 45,X/46,XY

nonfunctioning ovaries. Because the uterus is capable of normal function, using donor egg technologies, a Turner syndrome patient can complete a full pregnancy and deliver a normal child. Due to the variability of phenotypes, prenatal counseling for a couple with an identified Turner syndrome fetus is extremely difficult. In general, however, most liveborn Turner syndrome patients can live productive lives, and mildly affected individuals may not know that they are affected with the disorder until puberty.

Other Sex Chromosome Abnormalities

Sex determination in humans is the result of a complex biochemical pathway involving the interaction of proteins produced by genes present on the autosomes and the X and Y chromosomes. The default sex in humans is female, so in the absence of any male-determining stimuli, a female individual will develop. The primary trigger for male development is a gene located on the short arm of the Y chromosome designated *TDF*, the testes determining factor, which is located in the sex-determining region of the Y chromosome (*SRY*) (Fig. 69-23).

The protein produced by *TDF* initiates the male developmental pathway. A number of disorders associated with mutations in different genes within this pathway have been identified and can result in ambiguous genitalia or genotype/phenotype mismatch (phenotypic male with an XX sex chromosome complement or a phenotypic female with an XY complement).

An XX male can usually be attributed to one of two causes. The more common of the two is virilization of a female fetus as a result of the autosomal recessive disorder congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH). The defect in CAH is the lack of the enzyme 21-hydroxylase. Without this enzyme, the normal biosynthetic pathway is blocked, and androgens accumulate in the body. Excessive levels of male hormones in the female circulation may result in a male-appearing infant despite a female chromosome complement. Furthermore, because androgens are capable of crossing the placenta, a normal female fetus may develop ambiguous genitalia due to exposure to excess hormones from a CAH-affected mother.

A phenotypic male with an XX sex chromosome complement may also result from a cryptic translocation between the X and Y chromosomes. The distal ends of the short arms of the X and Y chromosomes are homologous and comprise what is termed the *pseudoautosomal regions* (see Fig. 69-23). This is the primary site of X and Y chromosome pairing during meiosis, and recombination may occur between X and Y alleles. Rarely, a recombination event outside the boundaries of the pseudoautosomal region takes place, resulting in the transfer of unique Y loci, including *SRY*, to the tip of the X chromosome. The amount of chromosome material involved in such an exchange is extremely small and cannot be cytogenetically detected. In a male with such a balanced translocation, there would be no clinical abnormalities, because the genes are all present, although in alternate locations. However, if this male transmits his rearranged X chromosome to an offspring who has received an X from the mother, the resultant child will have an apparent XX chromosome complement but a phenotype that is male or Klinefelter male due to the presence of the TDF protein that triggers the male developmental pathway.

The reciprocal of the aforementioned translocation may result in a Turner female with an apparent XY complement. If the rearranged Y chromosome is transmitted to a child, the male developmental pathway will not be initiated in that individual because there is no *TDF*/*SRY*, and sex determination will default to female. Unfortunately, these individuals also lack two intact copies of the proximal X short arm, and this will prevent normal female development, giving rise to a Turner syndrome individual. This situation is quite rare. The more common finding for an XY female is androgen insensitivity, also known as *testicular feminization*. In these individuals, the Y chromosome is intact, and *TDF* is present and

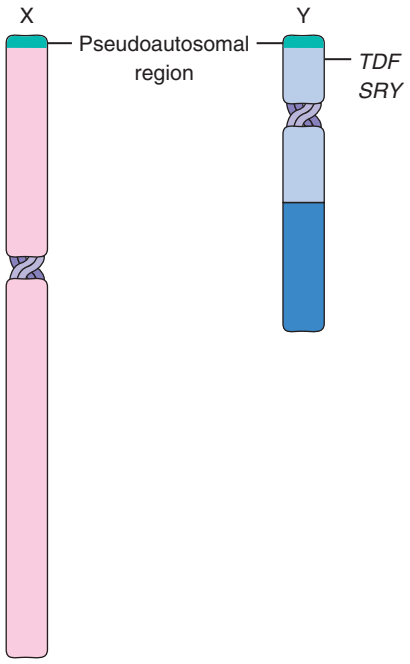


Figure 69-23 Diagram of relative locations of TDF, SRY, and the pseudoautosomal regions of the X and Y chromosomes. *TDF,* Testes determining factor; *SRY,* sex-determining region of the Y chromosome.

functional. The problem is a mutation of the androgen receptor gene located on the long arm of the X chromosome (Xq21.3) that results in no androgen receptor protein being produced. The TDF protein will initiate male development, but the pathway will be blocked at the point where the androgen receptor protein is required to form a complex between testosterone and dihydrotestosterone. Without this critical step, further male differentiation is not possible, and the phenotype will default back to female. However, these individuals are infertile because of the lack of any functional internal genitalia, and they commonly present with a blind vagina and testes in the abdomen or inguinal canal.

Structural Chromosome Anomalies

A reasonable number of syndromes directly related to a structural chromosome abnormality have been described. Most of these are quite rare. The following is a discussion of some of the more common syndromes (see also Jones & Jones, 2013). The abnormalities can be detected by karyotype analysis, FISH, or microarray analysis.

Wolf-Hirschhorn syndrome, also known as *4p– syndrome*, is due to a terminal deletion of the short arm of chromosome 4, del(4)(p16). Clinical findings include microcephaly, micrognathia, hypotonia, epicanthal folds, and developmental delay. The characteristic facial appearance has been likened to a Greek warrior's helmet because of the arched eyebrows and long nose. Individuals with this disorder require special education and are at increased risk of seizures.

Cri-du-chat, or 5p– syndrome, del(5)(p15), is characterized by a distinctive high-pitched, cat-like cry in infancy. Other features include low birthweight and subsequent slow growth, hypotonia, microcephaly, hypertelorism, epicanthal folds, cardiac anomalies, and mental retardation. Affected children have delayed development and may reach the cognitive and social level of a 5- or 6-year-old.

Microdeletion Syndromes and Contiguous Gene Syndromes

By definition, a *microdeletion* is a very small deletion, usually only a fraction of a single chromosome band. Cytogenetic microdeletions can be confused with molecular deletions, so it is important to recognize that although cytogenetic microdeletions are small, they are significantly larger (>500 kb) than the typical molecular deletion (1 base pair [bp] to several hundred bp), which can only be resolved by molecular technology (see Chapter 71). Although some chromosome microdeletions are large enough to identify by karyotype analysis, most will require FISH or microarray analysis for detection. Although originally thought to be deletions within single genes,

TABLE 69-5

Microdeletion and Contiguous Gene Syndromes

Disorder	Location	Genes	Clinical Findings
Angelman syndrome	15q11.2	*UBE3A*	Severe MR, developmental delay, large mouth, prognathia, ataxia, seizures, DiGeorge syndrome
DiGeorge syndrome	22q11.2, 10p	*DGS1, DGS2*	Characteristic facies, cleft palate, heart defect, hypoplasia of the thymus and parathyroids, severe hypocalcemia, seizures
Ichthyosis	Xp22.32	*STS*	Scaly skin, short stature, hypogonadism, MR
Kallmann syndrome	Xp22.3	*KAL1*	Hypogonadism, inability to smell
Langer-Giedion syndrome	8q24.11-q24.13	*TRPSI* *EXT1*	Craniofacial dysmorphism, skeletal abnormalities, mild to severe mental deficiency
Lissencephaly	17p13.3	*LIS1*	Smooth brain, profound retardation, seizures
Miller-Dieker syndrome	17p13.3	*LIS1* and others	Lissencephaly, microcephaly, high forehead, small nose, micrognathia, low-set ears
Prader-Willi syndrome	15q11.2	*SNRPN* *NDN* and others	Hypotonia at birth, almond-shaped eyes, moderate to severe MR, absent sense of satiation leading to overeating, small hands and feet, hypogonadism
Retinoblastoma	13q14.1-q14.2	*RB1*	Tumors of the retinoblast cells of the eye
Rubinstein-Taybi syndrome	16p13.3	*CREBBP*	Beaked nose, prominent columella, hypoplastic maxilla, downslanted palpebral fissures, broad thumbs and first toes, MR, speech delay
Smith-Magenis syndrome	17p11.2	*RAI1*	Brachycephaly, midface hypoplasia, broad nasal bridge, prominent jaw, short broad hands, hyperactivity, delayed speech, self-destructive behavior, MR
Velocardiofacial syndrome	22q11.2	*TBX1* and others	Palatal defects, hypoplastic alae nasi with long nose, learning disability, congenital heart disease
WAGR	11p13.3	*WT1, PAX6*	Wilms tumor, aniridia, genitourinary defects, and mental retardation
Williams syndrome	7q11.2	*ELN*	Low IQ, hypersensitivity to sound, blue eyes with stellate pattern in the iris, prominent lips, hoarse voice, supravalvular aortic stenosis or other cardiac defect, hypercalcemia, premature aging of the skin

MR, Mental retardation.

it has now been shown that certain syndromes are actually due to deletions that encompass portions of several adjacent, unrelated genes. The clinical presentation may therefore be a combination of features due to the absence of several different gene products. The size of the deletion and number of genes affected may vary, such that the phenotype expressed may differ significantly between individuals. Collectively, these are called *contiguous gene syndromes*. Included in this group are many of the microdeletion syndromes (Table 69-5), as well as the larger, classic deletion syndromes such as Wolf-Hirschhorn and cri-du-chat.

Miller-Dieker syndrome clearly illustrates the overlap between microdeletion and contiguous gene syndromes. The disorder has been associated with a microdeletion of the distal short arm of chromosome 17 (17p13.3), and the cardinal clinical features are lissencephaly (smooth brain) and craniofacial anomalies. Isolated lissencephaly has also been recognized as an independent entity, so Miller-Dieker syndrome is a more complex presentation that couples the brain defect with characteristic facial features. Molecular analysis has shown there are at least two genes involved in Miller-Dieker syndrome, so it is a true contiguous gene syndrome resulting from a microdeletion. A smaller deletion of the *LIS1* gene only would result in isolated lissencephaly (Ledbetter et al, 1992).

Prader-Willi syndrome and *Angelman syndrome* are the best-known microdeletion syndromes. The same interstitial deletion of the proximal long arm of chromosome 15, del(15)(q11.2q11.2), can be found in both disorders, but the clinical presentations are significantly different. Prader-Willi patients are small and hypotonic at birth but change within the first year of life and begin to gain weight rapidly. If not placed on a controlled diet, they can become quite obese through overeating. Other characteristics include small hands and feet, hypogonadism, and a bad temper. Although they are developmentally delayed, most do well in special education classes. Because of their temper and difficulty in controlling their diet, Prader-Willi patients may be placed in special group homes that provide the proper environment. Angelman syndrome patients, on the other hand, are severely mentally handicapped. Although they are friendly, they usually cannot carry on a normal conversation, and discourse is often punctuated by bursts of inappropriate laughter. The disorder is also characterized by hyperactivity, short stature, microcephaly, seizures, and ataxia.

By routine or high-resolution cytogenetic analysis, the 15q deletion can be detected in about 60% of Prader-Willi individuals but only 10% to 20% of Angelman syndrome patients. Use of FISH has provided a much better diagnostic tool, and for both syndromes, deletions can now be established in 80% to 85% of cases. Although it was accepted that not all deletions would be visible at the cytogenetic level, it was considered odd that FISH was unable to detect a deletion in 100% of cases. This, in addition to the fact that Prader-Willi syndrome and Angelman syndrome appear to share the same deletion but have such entirely different phenotypes, suggested that there might be another cause for the disorders. It is now known that Prader-Willi syndrome and Angelman syndrome are examples of genetic imprinting and that the mutational processes resulting in the diseases are much more complex than a simple deletion of DNA (Nicholls et al, 1989; Robinson et al, 1991) (see Chapter 71 for a discussion of imprinting and molecular detection of imprinted genes).

Williams syndrome has been associated with a deletion of the elastin gene (*ELN*) on the proximal long arm of chromosome 7 (7q11.23). The disorder is characterized by cardiac abnormalities, hypertension, hoarse voice, premature aging of the skin, and behavioral anomalies. Because elastin is known to be an important protein lending elasticity to tissues such as the heart, blood vessels, skin, and vocal cords, its absence explains many of the physical anomalies associated with this syndrome. The behavioral problems, however, could not be attributed to the lack of elastin, and further investigations have shown that Williams syndrome is actually a contiguous gene syndrome and that the variability of the phenotype is related to the number of adjacent genes deleted in combination with *ELN*.

A very-well-characterized contiguous gene syndrome is located on the short arm of chromosome 11 (11p13) and is known as *WAGR* (*W*ilms tumor, *a*niridia, *g*enitourinary defects, and mental *r*etardation). Except for the genitourinary defects, which appear to be due to a variant mutation in the Wilms tumor locus, each of the other three anomalies has been associated with a particular gene, and these are arranged in tandem on the short arm of chromosome 11 (Fig. 69-24). The phenotype of an affected individual will vary, depending on the size of the deletion. Statistically, about one in three children diagnosed with aniridia will also develop Wilms tumor. Conversely, only 1 in 50 Wilms patients has aniridia. With larger deletions, mental retardation and genitourinary defects may also be seen.

Velocardiofacial syndrome is possibly the most common microdeletion syndrome in humans, but it is often not recognized because it has a broad spectrum of clinical features and a presentation that can be mild. The disorder is usually diagnosed in the newborn period because of feeding difficulties, cardiac defects, and characteristic facial dysmorphologies. Learning disabilities, short stature, and conductive hearing loss are noted

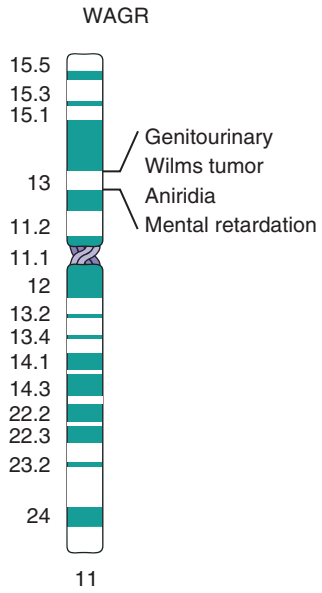


Figure 69-24 **Diagram of the contiguous gene syndrome WAGR showing relative positions of the different genes on the short arm of chromosome 11.** *WAGR, W*ilms tumor, *a*niridia, *g*enitourinary defects, and mental *r*etardation.

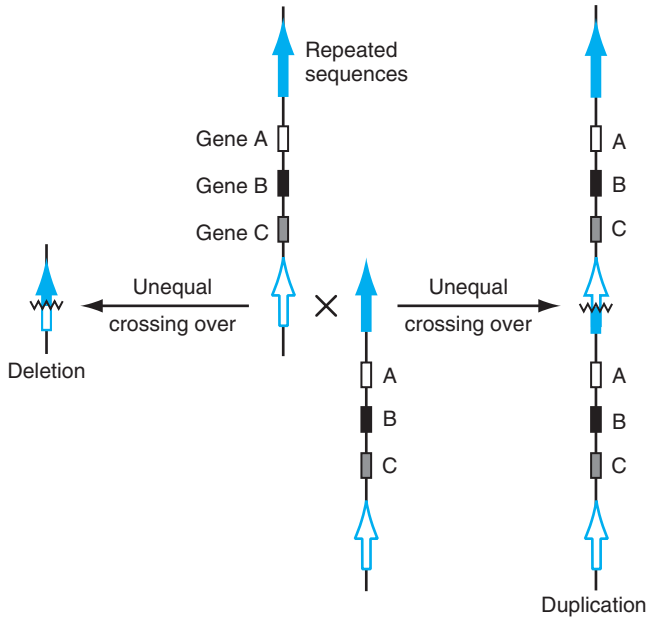


Figure 69-25 **Diagram of the possible outcomes of mispairing and recombination at the velocardiofacial syndrome locus on chromosome 22 (22q11.2).** Two chromosomes that have mispaired by association of repeat sequences are seen in the middle of the figure. Recombination may or may not occur. If it does occur, one outcome is a deletion (seen on the *left*) resulting from the complete loss of both gene sequences from both original chromosomes (indicated as genes A–C). The reciprocal event would be a tandem repeat of both gene sequences, one derived from each of the original chromosomes (seen on the *right*).

as the individual ages. Interestingly, 10% to 15% of patients will have a much more mildly affected parent with the same deletion. The 1.5- to 3-Mb deletion on the proximal long arm of chromosome 22 (22q11.2q11.2) is thought to be due to recombination errors between direct repeats that flank the common deletion region. The similarity in the repeats can result in slippage and mispairing between the chromosomes (Fig. 69-25). If recombination occurs between the misaligned chromosomes, two recombinant products are possible: a chromosome missing the region associated with a diagnosis of velocardiofacial syndrome, or a chromosome with a duplication of the 1.5- to 3-Mb region, which is associated with the microduplication 22q11.2 syndrome that has a completely different clinical presentation (McDermid & Morrow, 2002).

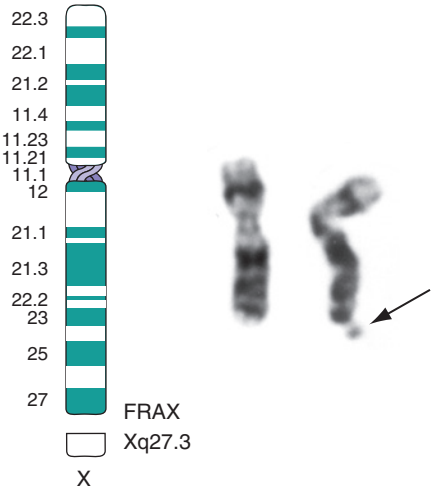


Figure 69-26 **Fragile X.** Ideogram of the fragile X (*left*) and a representative pair of G-banded chromosomes showing the fragile X on the *right*.

A similar mechanism resulting in the classic Williams syndrome deletion has also been reported (Bayes et al, 2003). Recombination following mispairing of the chromosomes is a recognized mutation strategy that explains deletion and duplication formation in a variety of other diseases.

OTHER CYTOGENETIC PHENOMENA

Fragile X Syndrome

Fragile X syndrome is the second leading cause of mental retardation and is the primary cause of inherited mental retardation. The disorder was first described by Herbert Lubs in 1969, when he noted the correlation between retardation and a "marker X" in affected family members (Lubs, 1969). The marker X has subsequently become known as the *fragile X*, characterized by a break or gap in the structure of the X chromosome that can be detected cytogenetically (Fig. 69-26) by culturing cells in the appropriate induction medium. However, not all affected individuals express the fragile X cytogenetically, so clinical diagnosis was significantly improved when the fragile X gene (*FMR1*) was cloned in 1991 and the causative mutation was identified as an amplification of a trinucleotide repeat sequence. This mutation is detectable at the molecular level, so cytogenetic analysis has been replaced by direct mutation analysis for fragile X syndrome (Rousseau et al, 1991; Verkerk et al, 1991) (see Chapter 71).

Breakage Syndromes

Chromosomal breakage syndromes (Table 69-6) are a set of autosomal recessive disorders that were originally grouped together because of the common finding of chromosome instability or fragility (Arlett & Lehmann, 1978). Consequently, cytogenetic testing was possible as an aid in diagnosis. Molecular studies have shown an additional commonality among the disorders in that the primary mutation in each is a defect in a DNA repair gene. This helped explain the other features of the syndromes, because inability to repair the DNA can lead to chromosome breakage or increased recombination, and widespread mutation and defects in DNA sequences that can lead to cancer.

SUMMARY

Cytogenetics is one of the oldest clinical laboratory sciences still in active use. It has grown and changed over time, keeping pace with the changes in the field of genetics. FISH and microarray technology have bridged the gap between cytogenetics and molecular diagnostics such that the two areas provide complementary information in many cases. Although cytogenetics is no longer the only clinical assay that can provide a quick overview of the entire human genome, karyotype analysis continues to be a clinically important tool in assessing numerical and structural chromosome anomalies and is still the gold standard for diagnosis of many neoplasia and inherited disorders.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

TABLE 69-6

Chromosome Breakage Syndromes

Disorder	Clinical Features	Gene Locus	Cytogenetic Manifestation	Type of Cancer	DNA Repair Defect	Miscellaneous
Fanconi anemia	Pancytopenia, prenatal or postnatal growth retardation, hypoplastic or missing thumbs, possible arm deformation, brownish pigmentation of skin	1. Group A: 16q24.3 2. Group C: 9q22.3 3. Group D: -3p22-p26 4. Group E—6p21-p22 5. Groups B, F, H unmapped	Increased chromosome breakage detected by treatment with mitomycin C and diepoxybutane	Increased risk of AML, and progressive bone marrow failure		Current therapy: Bone marrow transplantation
Bloom syndrome	Growth retardation, butterfly rash on face, possible malignancy	15q26.1	Increased SCE in response to UV light or BrdU incorporation		Abnormal DNA ligase I activity	High frequency in Ashkenazi Jewish population: 1/110 carrier frequency
Ataxia telangiectasia	Ataxia with degeneration of central nervous system, telangiectasia on face, deficiency in cellular immunity, degenerative, growth retardation	11q22.3	Increased spontaneous breakage, increased rings, triradials, and translocations, particularly with 7 and 14, induced with bleomycin or ionizing radiation	Various leukemias and solid tumors		
Xeroderma pigmentosum	Sensitivity to sun, neurologic abnormalities, ataxia and spasticity	Incidence: 1 in 250,000 1. A: 9q22.3 2. C: 653p25 3. D: 19q13.2-q13.3 4. E: 11p11–p12 5. F: 16p13.1-13.2, 16p13.13-p13.3 6. G: 13q33	Increase in SCE and chromosome rearrangement in response to UV light	Increased incidence of skin cancer	1. Lack of excision of thymine dimers 2. Postreplication repair defect	
Cockayne syndrome	Dwarfism, premature aging, microcephaly, neurologic deficit, pigmentary degeneration, deafness, sensitivity to sunlight, MR	Chr. 5	UV sensitivity	Increased incidence of skin cancer	Possible DNA ligase deficiency or defect of transcription coupled repair	

AML, Acute myeloid leukemia; *MR,* mental retardation; *SCE,* sister chromatid exchange; *UV,* ultraviolet.

PART 8

SELECTED REFERENCES

Abbott Molecular. http://www.abbottmolecular.com/us/home.html.
Developer and manufacturer of FISH probes. The website provides information on the probes available and the biology behind the detection assay.

Block AW: Cancer cytogenetics. In Gersen S, Keagle M, editors: *The principles of clinical cytogenetics*, Totowa, N.J., 1999, Humana Press, p 345.
An excellent reference covering cytogenetic aspects of oncology. Figures and tables are invaluable aids in interpreting patient results.

Heim S, Mitelman F: *Cancer cytogenetics*, ed 3, Hoboken, NJ, 2009, Wiley-Liss.
This is an excellent source of information covering all aspects of cancer genetics. It includes molecular, cytogenetic, and clinical aspects of all known leukemias, lymphomas, and solid tumors.

ISCN 2013: Shaffer L, McGowan-Jordan J, Schmid M, editors: *An international system for human cytogenetic nomenclature*, Basel, 2013, S Karger.
This reference provides the standard ideograms, the accepted cytogenetic nomenclature and how it is to be applied, and examples of usage of terminology.

Nussbaum RL, McInnes RR, Willard HF: *Thompson and Thompson—Genetics in medicine*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2007, WB Saunders.
Excellent textbook covering all aspects of medical genetics. It provides a basic introduction to the field, followed by detailed descriptions of subspecialties, including cytogenetics, molecular genetics, cancer genetics, immunogenetics, prenatal genetics, and genetic counseling.

OMIM (Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man). http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Omim/.
The best source of information on genes related to diseases. Each entry includes data on the discovery of the gene, cytogenetic and molecular aspects of the disorder, possible genetic testing, related diseases, and references to the scientific literature.

Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, et al: *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, Lyon, 2008, IARC Press.
This text is an important guide, providing the pathology (i.e., descriptions and findings) associated with leukemias and lymphomas. It includes the current WHO classification for hematological disorders.

FURTHER READING

Borgaonkar D: *Chromosomal variation in man: A catalog of chromosomal variants and anomalies*, ed 5, New York, 1989, Wiley-Liss.

De Grouchy J, Turleau C: *Clinical atlas of human chromosomes*, ed 2, New York, 1984, John Wiley & Sons.

Gelehrter T, Collins FC, Ginsburg D: *Principles of medical genetics*, ed 2, Baltimore, 1998, Williams & Wilkins.

McKusick V: *Mendelian inheritance in man: A catalog of human genes and genetic disorders*, ed 12, Baltimore, 1998, Johns Hopkins Press.

Mitelman F: *Catalog of chromosome aberrations in cancer*, ed 5, New York, 1994, Wiley-Liss.

Rooney DE, Czepulkowski BH: *Human cytogenetics—a practical approach*, Oxford, 1992, IRL Press.

Verma R, Babu A: *Human chromosomes—Principles and techniques*, ed 2, New York, 1995, McGraw-Hill.

REFERENCES

Anastasi J: Interphase cytogenetic analysis in the diagnosis and study of neoplastic disorders, *Am J Clin Pathol* 95(Suppl 1):S22–S28, 1991.

Angell RR, Xian J, Deith J, et al: First meiotic division abnormalities in human oocytes: Mechanism of trisomy formation, *Cytogenet Cell Genet* 65:194–202, 1994.

Arlett CF, Lehmann AR: Human disorders showing increased sensitivity to the induction of genetic damage, *Ann Rev Genet* 12:95–115, 1978.

Bayes M, Magano LF, Rivera N, et al: Mutation mechanisms of Williams-Beuren syndrome deletions, *Am J Hum Genet* 73:131–151, 2003.

Blakemore KJ: Prenatal diagnosis by chorionic villus sampling, *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am* 15:179–213, 1988.

Burkholder GC, Weaver MG: DNA–protein interactions and chromosome banding, *Exp Cell Res* 110:251–262, 1977.

Cassidy SB, Lai L-W, Erickson RP, et al: Trisomy 15 with loss of the paternal 15 as a cause of Prader-Willi syndrome due to maternal disomy, *Am J Hum Genet* 51:701–708, 1992.

Cherif D, Bernard O, Berger R: Detection of single-copy genes by nonisotopic in situ hybridization on human chromosomes, *Hum Genet* 81:358–362, 1989.

Chiu RWK, Akolekar R, Zheng YWL, et al: Non-invasive prenatal assessment of trisomy 21 by multiplexed materal plasma DNA sequencing: Large-scale validity study, *BMJ* 342:c7401, 2011.

Comings DE, Kovacs BW, Avelino E, et al: Mechanism of chromosome banding. V. Quinacrine banding, *Chromosoma* 50:111–145, 1975.

Cremer T, Lichter P, Borden J, et al: Detection of chromosome aberrations in metaphase and interphase tumor cells by in situ hybridization using chromosome-specific library probes, *Hum Genet* 80:235–246, 1988.

Delabar J-M, Theophile D, Rahmani Z, et al: Molecular mapping of the twenty-four features of Down syndrome on chromosome 21, *Eur J Hum Genet* 1:114–124, 1993.

De Lange T: Telomeres and senescence: Ending the debate, *Science* 279:334–335, 1998.

De Martinville B, Blakemore KJ, Mahoney MJ, et al: DNA analysis of first-trimester chorionic villous biopsies: Test for maternal contamination, *Am J Hum Genet* 36:1357–1368, 1984.

Divane A, Carter NP, Spathas DH, et al: Rapid prenatal diagnosis of aneuploidy from uncluttered amniotic fluid cells using five-colour fluorescence in situ hybridization, *Prenat Diagn* 14:1056–1069, 1994.

Flint J, Knight S: The use of telomere probes to investigate submicroscopic rearrangements associated with mental retardation, *Curr Opin Genet Devel* 13:310–316, 2003.

Flint J, Wilke AOM, Buckle VJ, et al: The detection of subtelomeric chromosomal rearrangements in idiopathic mental retardation, *Nat Genet* 9:132–139, 1995.

Hall JG: Genomic imprinting: Review and relevance to human diseases, *Am J Hum Genet* 46:857–873, 1990.

Harley CB, Futcher AB, Greider CW: Telomeres shorten during ageing of human fibroblasts, *Nature* 345:458–460, 1990.

Hassold T, Chiu D: Maternal age-specific rates of numerical chromosome abnormalities with special reference to trisomy, *Hum Genet* 70:11–17, 1985.

Holmquist G: The mechanism of C-banding: Depurination and beta-elimination, *Chromosoma* 72:203–224, 1979.

Holmquist G, Gray M, Porter T, et al: Characterization of Giemsa dark- and light-band DNA, *Cell* 31:121–129, 1982.

Hook EB, Hamerton JL: The frequency of chromosome abnormalities detected in consecutive newborn studies—differences between studies—results by sex and by severity of phenotypic involvement. In Hook EB, Porter IH, editors: *Population cytogenetics*. New York State Department of Health, Birth Defects Institute Symposium 1975, New York, 1977, Academic Press, p 63.

Irons M: Use of subtelomeric fluorescence in situ hybridization in cytogenetic diagnosis, *Curr Opin Pediatr* 15:594–597, 2003.

Jacobs PA, Browne C, Gregson N, et al: Estimates of the frequency of chromosome abnormalities detectable in unselected newborns using moderate levels of banding, *J Med Genet* 29:103–108, 1992.

Jacobs PA, Price WH, Court Brown WM: Chromosome studies on men in a maximum security hospital, *Ann Hum Genet* 31:339–358, 1968.

Jones KL, Jones MC, editors: *Smith's recognizable patterns of human malformation*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, WB Saunders.

Kolquist KA, Schultz RA, Furrow A, et al: Microarray-based comparative genomic hybridization of cancer targets reveals novel, recurrent genetic aberrations in the myelodysplastic syndromes, *Canc Genet* 204:603–628, 2011.

Korenberg JR, Kawashima H, Pulst S-M, et al: Molecular definition of a region of chromosome 21 that causes features of the Down syndrome phenotype, *Am J Hum Genet* 47:236–246, 1990.

Ledbetter DH, Cavenee WK: Molecular cytogenetics: Interface of cytogenetics and monogenic disorders. In *The metabolic basis of inherited disease*, ed 6, New York, 1989, McGraw-Hill, pp 343–371.

Ledbetter DH, Engel E: Uniparental disomy in humans: Development of an imprinting map and its implications for prenatal diagnosis, *Hum Mol Genet* 4:1757–1764, 1995.

Ledbetter SA, Kuwano A, Dobyns WB, et al: Microdeletions of chromosome 17p13 as a cause of isolated lissencephaly, *Am J Hum Genet* 50:182–189, 1992.

Lichter P, Jauch A, Cremer T, et al: Detection of Down syndrome by in situ hybridization with chromosome 21 specific DNA probes. In Patterson D, editor: *Molecular genetics of chromosome 21 and Down syndrome*, New York, 1990, Wiley-Liss.

Lindsay EA, Halford S, Wadey R, et al: Molecular cytogenetic characterization of the DiGeorge syndrome region using fluorescence in situ hybridization, *Genomics* 17:403–407, 1993.

Lobo I: Genomic imprinting and patterns of disease inheritance, *Nature Education* 1:66, 2008.

Lubs HA: A marker X chromosome, *Am J Hum Genet* 31:231–244, 1969.

McDermid HE, Morrow BE: Genomic disorders on 22q11, *Am J Hum Genet* 70:1077–1088, 2002.

Miller DT, Adam MP, Aradhya S, et al: Consensus statement: Chromosomal microarray is a first-tier clinical diagnostic test for individuals with developmental disabilities or congenital anomalies, *Am J Hum Genet* 86:749–764, 2010.

Morrissette JJD, Bagg A: Acute myeloid leukemia: Conventional cytogenetics, FISH, and molecule-centric methodologies, *Clin Lab Med* 31:659–686, 2011.

National Institutes of Health and Institute of Molecular Medicine Collaboration: A complete set of human telomeric probes and their clinical application, *Nat Genet* 14:86–89, 1996.

Nicholls RD, Knoll JHM, Butler MG, et al: Genetic imprinting suggested by maternal heterodisomy in non-deletion Prader-Willi syndrome, *Nature* 342:281–285, 1989.

Nicholls RD, Saitoh S, Horsthemke B: Imprinting in Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes, *Trends Genet* 14:194–198, 1998.

Norton ME, Brar H, Weiss J, et al: Non-invasive chromosomal evaluation (NICE) study: Results of a multicenter prospective cohort study for detection of fetal trisomy 21 and trisomy 18, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 207:1.e1–1.e8, 2012.

Palmer CG, Reichmann A: Chromosomal and clinical findings in 110 females with Turner syndrome, *Hum Genet* 35:35–49, 1976.

Petersen MB, Bartsch O, Adelsberger PA, et al: Uniparental isodisomy due to duplication of chromosome 21 occurring in somatic cells monosomic for chromosome 21, *Genomics* 13:269–274, 1992.

Pickering DL, Eudy JD, Olney AH, et al: Array-based comparative genomic hybridization analysis of 1176 consecutive clinical genetics investigations, *Genet Med* 10:262–266, 2008.

Pitcher DR: Chromosome and violence, *Practitioner* 226:497–501, 1982.

Price WH, Jacobs PA: The 47,XXY male with special reference to behavior, *Semin Psychol* 2:30–39, 1970.

Raynaud CM, Sabatier L, Philipot O, et al: Telomere length, telomeric proteins and genomic instability during the multistep carcinogenic process, *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 66:99–117, 2008.

Reid T, Baldini A, Rand TC, et al: Simultaneous visualization of seven different DNA probes by in situ hybridization using combinatorial fluorescence and digital imaging microscopy, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 89:1388–1392, 1992a.

Reid T, Landes G, Dackowski W, et al: Multicolor fluorescence in situ hybridization for the simultaneous detection of probe sets for chromosomes 13, 18, 21, X and Y in uncultured amniotic fluid cells, *Hum Mol Genet* 1:307–313, 1992b.

Rhoads GG, Jackson LG, Sachlesselman SE, et al: The safety and efficacy of chorionic villus sampling for early prenatal diagnosis of cytogenetic abnormalities, *N Engl J Med* 320:609–617, 1989.

Robinson WP, Bottani A, Yagang X, et al: Molecular, cytogenetic and clinical investigations of Prader-Willi syndrome patients, *Am J Hum Genet* 49:1219–1234, 1991.

Rosenberg MJ, Killoran C, Dziadzio L, et al: Scanning for telomeric deletions and duplications and uniparental disomy using genetic markers in 120 children with malformations, *Hum Genet* 109:311–318, 2001.

Rousseau F, Heitz D, Biancalana V, et al: Direct diagnosis by DNA analysis of the fragile X syndrome of mental retardation, *N Engl J Med* 325:1673–1681, 1991.

Saam J, Gudgeon J, Aston E, et al: How physicians use array comparative genomic hybridization results to guide patient management in children with developmental delay, *Gen Med* 10:181–186, 2008.

Schrock E, du Manoir S, Veldman T, et al: Multicolor spectral karyotyping of human chromosomes, *Science* 273:494–497, 1996.

Shaffer LG, Dabell MP, Fisher AJ, et al: Experience with microarray-based comparative genomic hybridization for prenatal diagnosis in over 5000 pregnancies, *Prenat Diagn* 32:976–985, 2012.

Speicher MR, Ballard SG, Ward DC: Karyotyping human chromosomes by combinatorial multi-fluor FISH, *Nat Genet* 12:368–375, 1996.

Spence EJ, Perciaccante RG, Greig GM, et al: Uniparental disomy as a mechanism for human genetic disease, *Am J Hum Genet* 42:217–226, 1988.

Sumner AT, Evans HJ, Buckland RA: Mechanisms involved in the banding of chromosome with quinacrine and Giemsa I. The effects of fixation in methanol–acetic acid, *Exp Cell Res* 81:214–222, 1973.

Theilgaard A: A psychological study of the personalities of XYY- and XXY-men, *Acta Psychiatr Scand Suppl* 315:1–133, 1984.

Turnpenny P, Ellard S: *Emery's elements of medical genetics*, ed 14, Edinburgh, 2011, Churchill Livingstone.

Veldman T, Vignon C, Schrock E, et al: Hidden chromosome abnormalities in haematological malignancies detected by multicolour spectral karyotyping, *Nat Genet* 15:406–410, 1997.

Verkerk AJMH, Pieretti M, Sutcliffe JS, et al: Identification of a gene (FMR-1) containing a CGG repeat coincident with a breakpoint cluster region exhibiting length variation in fragile X syndrome, *Cell* 65:905–914, 1991.

Voss R, Ben-Simon E, Avital A, et al: Isodisomy of chromosome 7 in a patient with cystic fibrosis: Could uniparental disomy be common in humans?, *Am J Hum Genet* 45:373–380, 1989.

Wapner RJ, Martin CL, Levy B, et al: Chromosomal microarray versus karyotyping for prenatal diagnosis, *N Engl J Med* 367(23):2175–2184, 2012.

Werner M, Ewig M, Nasarek A. Value of fluorescence in situ hybridization for detecting the *bcr/abl* gene fusion in interphase cells of routine bone marrow specimens, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 6:282–287, 1997.

Witkin HA, Mednick SA, Schulsinger F, et al: Criminality in XYY and XXY men, *Science* 193:547–555, 1976.

Wright CF, Burton H: The use of cell-free fetal nucleic acids in maternal blood for non-invasive prenatal diagnosis, *Hum Reprod Update* 15:139–151, 2009.

Wright WE, Shay JW: Telomere positional effects and the regulation of cellular senescence, *Trends Genet* 8:193–197, 1992.

Yunis JJ, Sanchez O: G-banding and chromosome structure, *Chromosoma* 44:15–23, 1973.

CHAPTER 70

ESTABLISHING A MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS LABORATORY

Michael Weindel, Martin H. Bluth

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS LABORATORIES, 1361
Infectious Disease, 1361
Cancer, 1361

REGULATION AND REGULATORY AGENCIES, 1362
Clinical Laboratory Improvement Acts of 1988 and 2003, 1362
Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act, 1362
Food and Drug Administration, 1362

LABORATORY DESIGN AND REQUIREMENTS, 1363
Laboratory Design, 1364
Practices to Aid in Contamination Control, 1364

EQUIPMENT, 1365

PERSONNEL, 1365
Laboratory Director, 1365
Technical Supervisor, 1365
Medical Technologists and Molecular Biology Technicians, 1365
Certification of Personnel in Molecular Diagnostics, 1366

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT, 1366
Reimbursement for Molecular Diagnostics Tests, 1366
Patent Issues, 1367

LABORATORY INFORMATION SYSTEM, 1367

TEST MANAGEMENT, 1368
Menu/Selection, 1368
Methods, 1368
Clinical Test Formats, 1368
Automated Platforms for Molecular Testing, 1369

QUALITY ASSURANCE AND QUALITY CONTROL OF THE TESTING PROCESS, 1369
Quality Assurance, 1369
Assay Design and Development, 1370
New Test Verification/Validation, 1371
Analytical Verification, 1371
Clinical Verification, 1375
Quality Control of the Testing Process, 1375
Quality Control of Equipment, 1375

CONCLUSION, 1376

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1376

KEY POINTS

- Automation may be utilized to accommodate increased volume of molecular testing for infectious diseases.
- Molecular testing in cancer is used for diagnostics, prognostics, and therapeutic decision making.
- Molecular testing for inherited disorders must take into account the potential impact on both the patient and family members.
- Laboratories performing testing on human specimens for the purposes of diagnosis, prevention, or treatment of diseases are subject to federal regulation imposed by the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act of 1988 (CLIA '88) and amendments of 2003.
- The Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act of 2008, also referred to as *GINA,* is a federal law that prohibits discrimination in health coverage and employment based on genetic information.
- *Analyte-specific reagent (ASR)* is a term devised by the FDA applicable to reagent(s) that may be components(s) of an LDT or IVD assay.
- The high potential sensitivity of molecular testing, especially related to methodologies involving amplification, demands strict control of airflow, movement of personnel, and physical separation of laboratory spaces devoted to pre- and post-amplification.
- Laboratory directors, technical supervisors, and molecular technologists of a CLIA-approved laboratory must meet qualifications per CLIA and other regulations as applicable.
- Reimbursement for molecular diagnostic tests is a process undergoing change as the process of determining coverage, coding, and payment adapts to emerging technologies.
- The Supreme Court has determined that naturally occurring DNA is not patent eligible.
- Emerging genomic technologies with associated bioinformatics pipelines are placing increasing demands on laboratory information systems.
- The menu of molecular pathology laboratories may vary significantly and is determined by three principal factors: clinical requirements and usefulness, laboratory competency, and test costs.
- Quality assurance programs should monitor all phases of testing to include preanalytical, analytical, and postanalytical phases. The details will depend on the assay but may include monitoring of turnaround time, proficiency testing, equipment performance, and personnel continuing education.
- Assay design and development includes assessment of clinical validity, verification of assay performance, validation, and assessment of both analytical and clinical performance characteristics.
- Quality control programs should include all phases of analytical testing to cover performance monitoring of reagents and instruments.

During the past decade, a vast amount of knowledge has been gained regarding genes, gene products, and their role in human disease. This knowledge has allowed us to better understand many disease processes and to start defining diseases and disease processes in terms of their molecular pathogenesis. Molecular diagnostics testing is a relatively recent specialty of laboratory medicine and is still in a state of flux at many levels, such as the choice of test, technology, automation, and reimbursement. The scope of molecular testing has expanded rapidly since its introduction in the late 1980s. This has led to the development of new clinical molecular assays for use in diagnosis, prognosis, selection of therapeutic modalities, and monitoring of disease. The technologies that constitute molecular diagnostics—such as first-generation amplification, next-generation DNA sequencing, deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) probes, fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), second-generation biochips and microfluidics, next-generation signal detection, biosensors, and molecular labels—are influencing the discovery of therapeutic molecules, the screening and diagnosis

of patients, and the optimization of drug therapy. In the past few years, this rapidly evolving field has seen several fascinating developments. There are many applications of this technology to different areas of the clinical laboratory. Whereas testing for inherited genetic diseases, cancer, viral load, and infectious diseases continues to predominate, the impact of pharmacogenomics on molecular diagnostics continues to evolve and impact diagnostics and prognostics of disease. The operation of a clinical molecular pathology laboratory requires integration of expertise in medical, scientific, and clinical molecular pathology; resources, including facilities, equipment, and personnel; and skills in organization, administration, management, and communication.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS LABORATORIES

Whereas all molecular diagnostic tests share the use of nucleic acid technology, the different clinical applications may require different management considerations.

INFECTIOUS DISEASE

As molecular techniques have become more accepted, more and more microorganisms are detected or characterized by molecular methods, which in many cases have become the standard of practice, especially for microorganisms that are difficult to culture or when subsequent culture is needed to identify drug resistance. As volume of testing has grown, there has arisen a need for automation of different steps of testing as well as the need for standardized kits. We have seen a surge of different automation platforms. Automated platforms perform nucleic acid extraction from different types of specimens, automated liquid handling systems set up reactions, and real-time technology monitors and quantifies nucleic acids as they are being amplified. In addition, quantitative molecular methods have become standard of practice in monitoring response to therapy, especially in patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B virus (HBV), and hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections. The need for confidentiality for patients undergoing HIV testing has prompted specific federal and state regulations to ensure the protection of patients and their families. In addition, each state might have a list of different organisms that, if detected, must be reported to the state health department.

CANCER

Molecular methods are currently used for hematopoietic neoplasms as well as for solid tumors. The nucleic acid changes, either of DNA or ribonucleic acid (RNA), are present only in the affected populations of cells and are not part of the genetic makeup of the individual. Current technologies, such as real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR), next-generation DNA sequencing, and microarray analysis, have provided greater diagnostic sensitivity and specificity for diagnostic testing, prognosis, treatment selection, monitoring response to therapy, and detection of minimal residual disease. In addition, the exquisite sensitivity of these molecular methods has allowed the testing of very small amounts of nucleic acid from a wide range of sample types. Formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tissue can provide good quality and quantity of DNA and RNA from processed tissues; however, very specific protocols either for DNA or RNA extraction must be followed. In contrast to inherited genetic testing that needs to be done once per lifetime, molecular oncology tests often are performed repeatedly (e.g., for initial diagnosis and during and after treatment for monitoring response to therapy). Molecular methods that identify rearrangements or mutations that cause specific tumor types may also be used to assess minimal residual disease. Molecular test results should be interpreted in the context of other laboratory testing, such as histopathology, flow cytometry, and clinical findings. The detection of a specific mutation in the tumor cells may also be used to determine the appropriate course of therapy. This is the case for metastatic colon cancer. A number of studies have shown that antiepidermal growth factor receptor *(EGFR)* monoclonal antibodies are effective treatments for metastatic colorectal cancer, but only in patients with wild-type oncogene *KRAS*. The anti-*EGFR* monoclonal antibodies panitumumab and cetuximab are approved in the United States for treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer refractory to chemotherapy but are not recommended for use in patients with mutations in *KRAS* codon 12 or 13. Similarly, panitumumab is approved for the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer only in patients with wild-type *KRAS* in Europe and Canada. It is clear that *KRAS* mutational analysis has become an important aspect of disease management in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.

Laboratory issues specific for hematopoietic neoplasms and solid tumor testing include the need for fresh or frozen tissue for RNA-based testing, the use of microdissection to reduce nonmalignant cell population in the specimens, and the need to work with small tissue specimens such as needle biopsies.

Inherited Disorders

All diseases have a genetic contribution, whether it is a specific genetic disease or an increased likelihood for developing a medical condition. Genetic disorders are primarily the result of a germline mutation or a mutation present in every cell of an individual. For this reason, genetic testing has far-reaching implications, because it could affect family members that might have inherited the same mutation. Molecular genetic testing is currently used for diagnosis, carrier status evaluation, and prenatal and presymptomatic DNA testing. Diagnostic testing is usually performed on affected individuals for establishing or confirming a clinical diagnosis.

Carrier testing is performed in an asymptomatic healthy individual to identify whether the individual is a carrier for an autosomal or X-linked recessive condition and whether the individual is at risk for having an affected child. This application can be used for individuals with a family history of a genetic disorder or for population screening, such as in screening for cystic fibrosis (CF). Carrier testing can be done first by testing an affected family member to identify the specific mutation present in the family. Once a specific mutation is identified, family members can be tested for that particular mutation, thus improving the accuracy of the risk assessment for the individuals in that family with a negative test result. In contrast, population screening focuses on the most common or prevalent mutation, most of the time with different rate of detection for different ethnic populations. Prenatal testing is performed to identify a fetus with a genetic disease or condition. Prenatal testing analyzes fetal cells obtained by amniocentesis or by chorionic villus sampling. Emerging genomic technologies such as noninvasive prenatal testing (NIPT) are capable of detecting abnormalities in fetal DNA from maternal blood samples (Daley et al, 2014). This type of testing is usually initiated because family history or maternal factors suggest it. In addition, some laboratories offer preimplantation genetic testing in the setting of in vitro fertilization for couples with a family history of a specific genetic disease. Presymptomatic testing is used primarily for the identification of adult onset of a genetic condition that will occur later in life, such as Huntington disease. Presymptomatic testing is the most problematic and challenging type of testing in terms of its psychological effect on the individual and hence requires extensive protocols for pregenetic and postgenetic testing counseling.

Several other issues are of critical relevance. Genetic testing requires special attention to informed consent, appropriateness, and urgency. There are no federal regulations regarding the process of informed consent, but a number of states have specific laws that govern the process of informed consent. Each laboratory director should evaluate state laws to determine what the regulations stipulate. Many laboratories require documentation of informed consent before performing the genetic test. Informed consent can be documented by several means such as requesting the actual signed informed consent or a copy of it, or by the physician or health care provider confirming on the requisition that the informed consent was obtained and is documented in the patient's chart. Until required documentation of informed consent is obtained, the laboratory can stabilize the patient specimen and extract and store the nucleic acid. The laboratory can start the testing once the required documentation is received. In addition to documentation of informed consent, the laboratory should review clinical indications for testing and determine whether the test is appropriate for a specific patient. Despite the tremendous advances in the understanding of the human genome, the full benefit of genetic testing for a particular patient is not always clear. Testing may be warranted, even if the results are inconclusive or preventive strategies or treatments are not available. Genetic information raises critical ethical, legal, and social issues for both the individual being tested as well as for family members. Special attention should be given to genetic testing in minors. For example, should carrier testing of minors be deferred until the minor is an adult? Similarly, a request for testing of an asymptomatic individual for a dominant disease should include arrangements for adequate genetic counseling. In addition, the laboratory should understand and communicate to health care providers the sensitivity and limitations of the test performed so that patients can be counseled appropriately as to the expectations of the testing and the significance of the testing results.

Genetic testing results often require interpretation using complex risk-assessment calculations. Health care professionals must correctly interpret

laboratory test results in the context of the particular patient and be able to convey the test results and interpretation to the patients and family members. Communication of genetic test results to patients and families can be complex and time-consuming. Clinicians trained in medical genetics as well as genetic counselors are well equipped to communicate the complex and involved information. Benefits of this approach have been well documented in the literature. Misinterpretation of negative genetic test results by inadequately trained physicians may result in inappropriately suggesting that patients discontinue recommended aggressive surveillance for the genetic condition. For these reasons, most genetic testing should be ordered through health care providers trained in genetics to ensure that the benefits and risks of testing have been explained to the patient during the informed consent process.

REGULATION AND REGULATORY AGENCIES

CLINICAL LABORATORY IMPROVEMENT ACTS OF 1988 AND 2003

Laboratories performing clinical testing must comply with numerous regulations. Laboratories performing testing on human specimens for the purposes of diagnosis, prevention, or treatment of diseases are subject to federal regulation imposed by the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act of 1988 (CLIA '88). CLIA '88 set standards designed to improve quality in laboratory practices and expanded federal oversight to almost every clinical laboratory in the United States. Laboratories performing research are not subject to CLIA '88 unless the research laboratory reports specific results to the individuals tested, their families, and/or the treating physician, even when there is a disclaimer in the final report that states that the test results should be used for research purposes only and/or there is no charge for the test. CLIA '88 describes specific standards in all areas of the testing process, personnel training, proficiency testing (PT), quality control (QC), and quality assurance (QA). The federal regulation establishes a registry, sanctions, and enforcement procedures to ensure that the standards defined in the federal regulation are maintained. The regulations for implementing CLIA '88 were developed by the Department of Health and Human Services through the Public Health Service. At that time, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) was assigned to categorize analytes and supervise implementation of standards. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) was assigned to review and guarantee the safety and effectiveness of tests, and the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS), formerly known as Health Care Finance Administration, was to collect fees, issue permits, survey laboratories, and initiate sanctions when necessary. Under CLIA '88, tests are categorized as *waived*, *provider-performed microscopy*, *moderate complexity*, and *high complexity*. Tests are placed into moderate and high-complexity testing categories on the basis of a numerical scoring system. The scoring system takes into account the following factors: knowledge required for performing the test, training and expertise, availability of calibrators, QC, PT, operational characteristics, degree of interpretation, and judgment, among others. In 2003, new extensively revised CLIA regulations were published and nicknamed *CLIA '03*. The changes include major reorganization and consolidation of the regulations by passing requirements on the flow of a patient sample through the laboratory and updating the requirements to accommodate new technologies.

All laboratories performing clinical testing must seek CLIA certification. Molecular diagnostic laboratories are considered high-complexity laboratories and as such must comply with CLIA requirements for high-complexity laboratory testing. Some of these requirements include qualifications of personnel performing and overseeing the testing process procedure manual specifications, method verifications of performance specifications, PT, QA, patient test management, and inspection. The CLIA, however, does not provide specific guidelines for molecular testing, and therefore each molecular diagnostics laboratory is responsible for the development of a test management program according to the CLIA. Recently, the CDC published a *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report* "Best practices for molecular genetic testing for heritable diseases and conditions," which provides detailed recommendations regarding good laboratory practices for ensuring the quality of molecular genetic testing for heritable conditions. The recommended practices address the total testing process including preanalytical, analytical, and postanalytical, laboratory responsibilities regarding authorized persons, confidentiality of patient information, personnel competency, considerations before introducing a new test, and the quality management system approach to molecular genetic testing. The report can be found at www.cdc.gov.

Molecular diagnostic tests are considered high-complexity testing, and as such laboratories performing this testing must seek certification from the CMS. CLIA regulations allow the CMS to approve nonprofit professional organizations that have laboratory testing and inspection standards equivalent to or more stringent than the CLIA to inspect clinical laboratories in place of a CLIA inspection. The two major organizations providing CLIA inspections are The Joint Commission, which accredits more than 80% of U.S. health care organizations, and the Laboratory Accreditation Program of the College of American Pathologists (LAP-CAP). Most laboratories performing molecular diagnostic testing are CLIA '88 accredited through the LAP-CAP program. When a test site meets the accreditation agency's requirements, as assessed by inspection, the laboratory meets CLIA requirements and receives a CLIA certificate of accreditation. CAP introduced a molecular pathology checklist in 1993, and it has been updated yearly since then. All laboratories must follow the laboratory general checklist and the specific laboratory checklist. In addition, the molecular pathology checklist is a great resource when developing a molecular diagnostics laboratory, particularly for the development of QC, QA programs, specimen requisition, and reporting.

GENETIC INFORMATION NONDISCRIMINATION ACT

The Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act of 2008, also referred to as *GINA*, is a federal law that prohibits discrimination in health coverage and employment based on genetic information. The law has two titles: Title I relates to health insurance coverage, and Title II relates to employment. GINA took effect in November 2009 and prohibits group and individual health insurers from using a person's genetic information in determining eligibility or premiums; it also prohibits an insurer from requesting or requiring that a person undergo a genetic test. In addition, GINA prohibits employers from using a person's genetic information to make employment decisions such as hiring, firing, job assignments, or any other terms of employment, and it prohibits employers from requesting, requiring, or purchasing genetic information about persons or their family members. GINA does not prevent health care providers from recommending genetic tests to their patients; does not mandate coverage for any particular test or treatment; does not prohibit medical underwriting based on current health status; does not cover life, disability, or long-term-care insurance; and does not apply to members of the military.

One key term used in GINA is *genetic information*, which includes information about a person's genetic tests (including genetic tests done as part of a research study), genetic tests of a person's family (up to and including fourth-degree relatives), any manifestation of a disease or disorder in a family member, and participation of a person or family member in research that includes genetic testing, counseling, or education. GINA defines *genetic tests* as tests that assess genotypes, mutations, or chromosomal changes. Examples of protected tests are tests for *BRCA1/BRCA2* (breast cancer) or *HNPCC* (colon cancer) mutations, classifications of genetic properties of an existing tumor to help determine therapy, tests for Huntington's disease mutations, and carrier screening for disorders such as CF, sickle cell anemia, spinal muscular atrophy, and fragile X syndrome. On the other hand, routine tests such as complete blood counts, cholesterol tests, and liver function tests are not protected under GINA.

Although GINA protects patient information from misuse by insurers, employers, and other administrative agencies, it is important to recognize the stigma test results can have on the patient. Unlike other general laboratory analytes that are accepted in the lay public as routine testing (e.g., cholesterol) for disease stratification or management, carrying a gene often carries an ominous forecast because of the erroneous interpretation that carrying the gene equals manifesting the disease. Genetic counseling is essential for patients to understand what it means to be a "carrier." The issues relating to disease penetrance, allelic variability, polymorphisms, and confounding factors associated with a given gene must be related to the physician-patient-counselor unit toward appropriate interpretation. Otherwise the psychological well-being of the patient can be drastically affected. Examples of such stigmata include being labeled a genetic carrier for Tay-Sachs, CF, and *BRCA1/BRCA2*, which could affect the patient's decisions pertaining to marriage, family planning, surgical options, and social acceptance.

FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA), as part of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, is involved in the regulation of medical device manufacturers under the Federal Food, Drug,

and Cosmetic (FD&C) Act. Congress enacted the Medical Device Amendments (MDA) in 1976, which amended the FD&C Act to include regulatory oversight over in vitro diagnostic devices (IVDs). The FDA has exercised enforcement discretion regarding laboratory-developed tests (LDTs). Enforcement of LDTs has been through the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS) via the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA). Lately the FDA has expressed interest in relaxing the enforcement discretion over LDTs that was elaborated in draft form on October 2014 as the Framework for Regulatory Oversight of Laboratory Developed Tests (LDTs). As of this writing, the draft aims to treat LDTs as medical devices, and will determine level of oversight based on risk to the patient. The draft is currently going through a public hearing process. Several organizations, including the Association for Molecular Pathology (AMP), have provided guidance emphasizing the importance of the laboratory professional and the importance of recognizing the need for changes to the existing system of regulating LDTs to take into account the rapid changes in the field, especially in genomics.

Analyte-Specific Reagents

The term *analyte-specific reagent* (ASR) was devised by the FDA for reagents used in clinical testing that confer specificity for detection of the target analyte. The FDA defines ASRs as "antibodies, monoclonal and polyclonal, specific receptors, proteins, ligands, nucleic acid sequences, and similar reagents which through specific binding or chemical reaction with substances in a specimen are intended for use in a diagnostic application for identification and quantification of an individual chemical substance or ligand in biological specimens." Primers and probes developed specifically to detect a certain DNA or RNA target used in any laboratory-developed assay are often considered ASRs. Under this definition, ASRs are neither diagnostic tests, nor are they combinations of reagents, controls, disposable labware, or instrumentation provided for the performance of diagnostic tests. Rather, an ASR is a single (albeit key) component, such as a probe or primer pair, in any diagnostic test manufactured anywhere in the world, including in clinical laboratories, in vitro diagnostic (IVD) device manufacturing institutions, and forensic or research laboratories. However, ASRs are only subject to regulation as medical devices when they are purchased by clinical laboratories for use in a laboratory-developed test (LDT) or certain IVD tests. As of November 1998, clinical laboratories using laboratory-developed assays that contain ASRs must comply with the FDA's final rule on ASRs published in the *Federal Register*. As part of this final rule, laboratories are required to include a very specific disclaimer in the reports, stating, "This test was developed and its performance characteristics determined by (laboratory name). It has not been cleared by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration." But at the same time, the FDA has allowed laboratories to add in the report that ASRs do not require FDA approval, that the test using the particular ASR can be used for clinical purposes, and that the laboratory is certified under CLIA '88 to perform high-complexity testing.

In addition to the definition of ASRs, the FDA proposed a set of controls and restrictions to be applied to their use to ensure their quality and consistency and to clarify that laboratories that develop their own assays are responsible for the performance of the test. Interestingly, these controls apply not only to the laboratory developing their own assays that use ASRs, but also to the manufacturers of these reagents. Laboratories are required to meet CLIA '88 high-complexity certification requirements and to determine the performance characteristics of the laboratory-developed assay following CLIA '88 regulations. Manufacturers of ASRs are required to register with the FDA, to follow good manufacturing practices, and to restrict the sale of this type of reagent to laboratories certified under the CLIA for high-complexity testing. Manufacturers are also responsible for reporting to the FDA any adverse events as a result of failure in the manufacturing process.

To control the use of ASRs, the FDA imposed a comprehensive set of restrictions. For example, ASRs may only be sold to (1) diagnostic device manufacturers; (2) clinical laboratories that are CLIA certified to perform high-complexity testing under 42 CFR Part 493, or clinical laboratories regulated under the Veterans Health Administration Directive 1106; or (3) organizations that use the reagents to make tests for forensic, academic, research, and other nonclinical (nonmedical) uses. In addition, ASRs may be sold only for use in LDTs that are ordered on a prescription basis.

In Vitro Multivariate Index Assay or IVDMIA Draft Guidance

IVD multivariate index assays (IVDMIAs) are considered a subset of LDTs that combine multiple variables (e.g., gender, age, weight, clinical laboratory results) using an interpretation function (e.g., algorithm) to generate a patient-specific result (e.g., score, risk level, classification) for the purpose of diagnosing, treating, or mitigating a disease. In addition, it provides a result whose derivation is nontransparent and cannot be independently derived or verified by the end user. These types of tests are developed based on observed correlations between multivariate data and clinical outcome, such that the clinical validity of the claims is not transparent to patients, laboratorians, and clinicians who order these tests Additionally, IVDMIAs frequently have a high-risk intended use. The FDA is concerned that patients are relying upon IVDMIAs with high-risk intended uses to make critical health care decisions when the FDA has not ensured that the IVDMIA has been clinically validated and the health care practitioners are unable to clinically validate the test themselves. The second point of the definition will likely attract the most attention and may be revisited over time as new information becomes available. Although individual genetic and proteomic markers have diagnostic and prognostic relevance, the aggregate results obtained for multiple markers should in theory increase the diagnostic, prognostic, or theranostic power over that obtained from the results of one or just a few markers. IVDMIAs offer the treating physician a synthesis of multiple results in a simplified form. In this age of mushrooming information, those making treatment decisions eagerly seek simplification and distillation of important facts that are needed to best treat patients. The first draft of the FDA's IVDMIA guidance was issued on September 7, 2006, but after much criticism and comments, the FDA issued a revised draft on July 26, 2007. One of the main criticisms of the first draft was the definition of an IVDMIA. Determining whether a result is "nontransparent" or "cannot be independently derived or verified" will be challenged by industry. The FDA provided examples of what it perceived to be an IVDMIA, but there will almost certainly be controversy over whether a particular test falls inside or outside the FDA's IVDMIA definition. The new guidelines include a more detailed definition of what the agency considers an IVDMIA and exclude terms *test system* and *algorithm* that were criticized for being too ambiguous in the first version. Additionally, the guidelines clarify the agency's risk-based approach, provide a transition period to test developers during which the agency will exercise enforcement discretion over certain requirements, and include provisions for orphan-disease testing. With this draft guidance document, the FDA seeks to identify IVDMIAs as a discrete category of device and to clarify that, even when offered as LDTs, IVDMIAs must meet premarket and postmarket device requirements under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and FDA regulations, including premarket review requirements in the case of most Class II and III devices. Devices that the agency would not consider IVDMIAs include tests that interpret multiple variables but that health care providers could otherwise interpret themselves. Examples of products that the FDA identified as being outside the scope of the draft guidance were devices that determine genotype and chromosomal copy number, conduct common clinical calculations, store clinical information, and calculate common, public demographic risk. The current version of the guidelines highlights the FDA's risk-based approach and the increased risks associated with IVDMIAs compared with other laboratory-developed tests.

LABORATORY DESIGN AND REQUIREMENTS

The power of molecular diagnostics is derived from the exquisite sensitivity and specificity when using nucleic acid as the analyte. The high sensitivity is derived from in vitro amplification of specific nucleic acid target sequences present in a patient's specimen. In vitro amplification creates millions or billions of copies of the target sequence and thus enables detection of as little as a single target molecule in the patient specimen. At the same time, however, this high sensitivity poses major challenges for the use of this technology in the clinical laboratory. Thus one of the major advantages of this technology is also one of its major limitations. Opening and closing the microcentrifuge tubes containing amplified product can aerosolize microdroplets that can carry 10 to 100 copies of the amplified target sequence. These microdroplets can subsequently be deposited on bench tops, instruments, furniture, floor, dust, hair, exposed skin, or virtually any surface. Another important source of contamination is the target nucleic acid itself. Sample handling procedures must always protect against cross-contamination of patient specimens. Another source of contamination by nucleic acid that is sometimes overlooked occurs from processing patient samples in an environment in which the target nucleic acid has been amplified biologically either by cloning or by culturing of the cell or microorganism. Thus it is necessary to carefully design the molecular diagnostics laboratory to ensure sufficient and adequate space for

personnel and equipment but also to minimize the potential problem of specimen contamination with natural nucleic acid or template and/or nucleic acid from in vitro amplification (amplicon).

LABORATORY DESIGN

Laboratory space should be designed to minimize the risk for contamination and maximize workflow. Barrier containment through the use of physically separate work areas for reagent preparation, specimen accessioning, nucleic acid extraction, and analysis of the amplified material is highly desirable. An ideal laboratory is composed of three completely independent rooms or areas. Two of these rooms are considered clean rooms in that all tasks and duties before in vitro amplification are performed in these laboratories. These rooms are called *preamplification rooms*. The third room is considered a dirty room because it is dedicated for in vitro amplification and analysis of the amplified material. This room is called a *postamplification room*. The air handling systems for each of these rooms should be completely independent. If this is not possible, it is highly recommended that the preamplification laboratories be located closest to the source of air in reference to both laboratories. The preamplification laboratories should be under positive air pressure, which impedes the entrance of any airborne contaminant into the preamplification laboratory when the door is opened. In addition, the postamplification laboratory should be under negative air pressure to impede anything from coming out of this laboratory and contaminating the surrounding environment. Construction of an anteroom into each laboratory is an inexpensive way of creating differential pressure for the laboratory. A positive pressurized anteroom for a preamplification laboratory can be created by use of a fan in the ceiling of the anteroom that draws air from inside the laboratory and blows it into the anteroom. This positively pressurized anteroom serves much the same purpose as having the entire laboratory under positive pressure. Similarly, an anteroom for the postamplification room can be easily made into a negatively pressurized room by having the fan draw air out of the anteroom and blow it into the laboratory. This anteroom should contain a seal around the door separating the anteroom from the laboratory to avoid air within the laboratory going back into the anteroom. It is important to emphasize that the door leading into the anteroom from the outside and the door to the inside of the laboratories should never be opened at the same time. An additional safety feature is to add sticky mats at the entrance of each anteroom or laboratory. The size of the anteroom is determined by what activities will be carried out in it. In addition, if disposable dedicated laboratory coats, hats, and booties are used, space is needed for storing these items.

Different activities are carried out in each of the three rooms/areas. In vitro amplification is never carried out in the two preamplification laboratories. One of these rooms is dedicated to reagent preparation and the other for specimen accessioning, specimen preparation, and reaction setup. If there is limited space, the two preamplification rooms can be combined into one laboratory. The use of dead air boxes for reagent preparation and reaction setup is highly recommended, and is more critical when both laboratories are combined. Dead air boxes provide a tightly controlled environment where reagent and reaction preparation can be carried out. It is important to situate this area in a section of the laboratory with low traffic. No genomic or plasmid DNA, RNA, or patient specimens should be introduced into the dead air box where reagent preparation takes place. This dead air box should be furnished with an ultraviolet (UV) light connected to a timer. The surface areas of the dead air boxes should be treated with UV light, and then wiped with freshly made 10% sodium hypochlorite solution and finally with 75% ethanol solution before and after working in this area. These areas should contain dedicated equipment and instrumentation (e.g., pipetters, vortex, tips, tubes) that are not shared with any other area. Dedicated laboratory wear and gloves should be put on before starting work in this environment.

The second clean room or area within the preamplification laboratory is where specimen accessioning, specimen processing, and addition of nucleic acid to the appropriate reaction tube is carried out. This area should be furnished with at least one environmental biosafety cabinet for specimen processing and nucleic acid extraction in addition to dedicated laboratory equipment that is solely used for this purpose. Another completely separate environmental biosafety cabinet should be available if any tissue culture is carried out in this laboratory, and separate laboratory equipment should be dedicated for this function. Also, if organic nucleic acid extractions are used in the laboratory, a chemical safety cabinet for handling of the phenol and chloroform steps during the extraction procedure should be available. If both DNA and RNA extraction are carried out in the same preamplification laboratory, one should perform these procedures in separate areas of the laboratory and have dedicated instruments, pipettes, and filtered tips for each procedure. When space is a major issue and it is not possible to dedicate two completely separate areas, extraction of DNA and RNA should be performed at different times or on different days after thoroughly cleaning the areas before working. As described earlier, all areas should be wiped with a solution of daily-prepared 10% sodium hypochlorite and with a solution of 75% ethanol.

The postamplification laboratory is where in vitro amplification and analysis of nucleic acid is carried out. Instruments used in this laboratory should not be shared with the preamplification areas. If thermocyclers are used for in vitro amplification of nucleic acid, they should be placed in this laboratory. If thermocyclers are placed in the preamplification laboratory, under no circumstances can reaction tubes be opened after amplification in this room. In addition, thermocyclers should be plugged into dedicated power lines with their own circuit breaker to avoid any fluctuation in electricity that could affect their performance. Normally this laboratory requires more space than the preamplification laboratory because instrumentation for analysis of amplified product tends to be more extensive than that required for reagent preparation and nucleic acid extraction. Gel electrophoresis, for example, frequently uses significant open bench space. A darkroom with a dedicated automatic film processor and a freezer is highly recommended. It is, however, preferable to place the darkroom outside the postamplification laboratory so as to have access without having to go into the postamplification laboratory.

Real-time technology can simultaneously perform in vitro amplification with detection of amplified product. This allows detection and quantitation of specific nucleic acid sequences without further manipulation or opening of test tubes, and dramatically reduces the risk for amplicon contamination. For assays developed and performed using these types of instruments, the risk for amplicon contamination will be significantly reduced. However, at this juncture, molecular diagnostic laboratories must continue to rely on standard "open" platforms for many tests, particularly those developed in house using analyte-specific reagents. Furthermore, with the advent of next-generation DNA sequencing (see Chapters 66 and 76), certain steps, depending on the platform, may generate a large number and diversity of amplicons. For these assays, the risk for amplicon contamination still remains a significant issue that must be addressed through laboratory design and practices that minimize this risk.

PRACTICES TO AID IN CONTAMINATION CONTROL

The introduction of simple practices in the daily routine can aid in the control of amplicon and target contamination. Unidirectional workflow must be strictly followed whereby personnel perform tasks in the clean rooms first, and only after completing their tasks in that room do they move on to the postamplification room. No personnel that have worked in the postamplification laboratory should return to the preamplification area before showering and changing clothes. Use of disposable laboratory coats, booties, and hats is recommended. If cloth lab coats are used, there should be dedicated lab coats for each laboratory and they should be kept inside each laboratory and not worn in the office space. Use of different-colored lab coats for each area is one way to remind personnel of the strict workflow. Control of workflow of housekeeping personnel is likewise important. The safest approach is to have laboratory staff perform some of the housekeeping duties by bagging the trash from each laboratory and placing it outside the laboratory for pickup by housekeeping staff. If this is done, housekeeping personnel must be instructed to remove trash first from the preamplification room, then the office space, and finally the postamplification room.

Protection of countertops with absorbent, plastic-backed paper is not recommended because paper can collect dust and with it amplified material if not changed often. If used, this type of paper should be discarded immediately after each use. The use of bleach appears to be the most generally accepted method for decontaminating surfaces. Decontamination of countertops, laboratory equipment, and furniture should be performed by wiping with a freshly made solution of 10% bleach and then with a 75% ethanol solution or even water to dilute the bleach that could corrode the surfaces. All pipette tips should contain a hydrophobic filter to prevent contamination of the tip of the pipetter with template or amplified material. Evaluation of the effectiveness of the hydrophobic barrier can be assessed by setting the pipette beyond its upper limit and drawing fluid from a colored solution into the disposable pipette tip that contains the hydrophobic barrier. If the tip of the pipette becomes stained by the fluid, then the barrier is inadequate. In this manner, routine QC measures such as mean volume and associated coefficient of variation to determine

accuracy of pipette draws are frequently instituted to detect faulty pipetters, which can affect results. After use, disposable pipette tips should be placed into zipper-lock bags, making sure that the bags are completely sealed before discarding them. Gloves should be changed periodically or as soon as any contamination is suspected.

Another approach to preventing amplicon contamination is to chemically treat the unwanted amplicon so that it will not support amplification, even if accidentally added to another sample. The most widely used means of destroying amplicons is through the use of UV irradiation. UV treatment of DNA induces cross-linking of the two strands of DNA by forming thymidine dimers. This cross-linked DNA can no longer serve as an effective template. One disadvantage of UV treatment is that it is most effective in sequences of more than 700 nucleotides in length. In most clinical assays, the length of the amplicon is less than 700 base pairs. A chemical means of inactivating or sterilizing amplicon is through the use of deoxyuridine triphosphate instead of deoxythymidine triphosphate during the amplification procedure. In this procedure, deoxyuridine monophosphate is incorporated into the amplicon instead of thymidine monophosphate. After amplification, this uracil-containing amplicon can be destroyed by treating the sample with uracil-*N*-glycosylase (UNG). The uracil-containing amplicon is the substrate for UNG, whereas the thymine-containing template is not. The UNG removes uracil residues from the amplicon, still leaving an intact phosphodiester backbone on the amplicon. During the first denaturation step of the amplification procedure, the phosphodiester bonds break at the sites where the uracil residues are located. The fragmented amplicon is no longer able to act as a template. Use of deoxyuracyl triphosphate and UNG are effective in controlling contamination if the uracil-containing amplicon does not exceed 10^6 to 10^7 copies per reaction. Isopsoralens have also been used with some success. After amplification, exposure to long-wave UV light produces adducts between the isopsoralens and the cytosines present in the amplified material, rendering them ineffective templates for amplification.

Transfer of paper such as written procedures or notes regarding specific samples between laboratories and office is also a concern. This should be reduced as much as possible, especially for paperwork used in the postamplification laboratory. It is highly recommended that a computer network be put in place in the laboratory with a number of computer terminals throughout the different laboratories and office areas in order to reduce or eliminate the movement of paper throughout the laboratory and back into the office area. It is important that the network server be backed up daily.

EQUIPMENT

Laboratory equipment necessary for successfully conducting current typical molecular diagnostics tests can include instrumentation not generally found in the typical clinical laboratory. Even where there is overlap in the type of equipment that is used, it is important that the molecular diagnostics laboratory contain its own equipment for purposes of contamination control. Some of the specialized equipment, depending on the scope of the testing menu, includes automatic DNA sequencers, real-time thermocyclers, capillary electrophoresis instruments, and high-performance liquid chromatography. These specialized instruments are expensive, which can make implementation of tests that require them difficult. More recently, a new tactic for acquisition of instrumentation through reagent rental agreements has become possible through some of the manufacturers of in vitro diagnostic tests and analyte specific reagents. This funding mechanism has been in use for many years in other areas of the clinical laboratory but is new for molecular diagnostics.

PERSONNEL

Laboratories performing molecular diagnostics testing are classified as high-complexity testing laboratories under CLIA '88, which imposes specific personnel standards for education and training. These tests are more complex than standard laboratory tests, and many are developed in-house. As new technology is introduced, these assays are constantly being modified to improve specificity, sensitivity, turnaround time (TAT), and workflow.

LABORATORY DIRECTOR

According to CLIA '88, directors of high-complexity testing laboratories must be either a doctor of medicine (MD) or doctor of osteopathy (DO) with training in clinical or anatomic pathology; an MD or DO with 2 years of experience directing or supervising a high-complexity testing laboratory; or hold an earned doctorate degree in one of the biologic sciences and be certified and continue to be certified by a board approved by the Department of Health and Human Services.

The responsibilities of the laboratory director are test selection, implementation, and resolution of technical difficulties. The laboratory director is also responsible for developing laboratory programs for analytical and clinical validation of new molecular tests and development of management guidelines and practices that ensure reliable performance of clinical testing. In addition, the laboratory director must also be responsible for the development, implementation, and review of the laboratory quality-assurance and quality-control programs.

TECHNICAL SUPERVISOR

According to CLIA '88, a technical supervisor must be either an MD or DO with 1 year of experience in a high-complexity testing laboratory; have a master's degree with 2 years of experience; or have a bachelor's degree with 4 years of experience. However, the CLIA '88 guidelines do not specify the technical supervisor qualifications for a high-complexity **molecular genetics/pathology laboratory**. According to the CAP Molecular Checklist (04.21.14), MOL.49650: "The section director/technical supervisor of the molecular pathology laboratory is a pathologist, board-certified physician in a specialty other than pathology, or doctoral scientist in a chemical, physical, or biologic science, with specialized training and/or appropriate experience in molecular pathology." The CDC MMWR: "Good Laboratory Practices for Molecular Genetic Testing for Heritable Diseases and Conditions" additionally recommends 4 years of experience in genetics, 2 of which are in the specialty of heritable disease and conditions. As such, maintaining attention to changes in guidelines remains prudent.

MEDICAL TECHNOLOGISTS AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY TECHNICIANS

Medical technologists and molecular biology technicians are responsible for tasks and duties necessary for the daily operation of the laboratory testing agenda. These individuals are responsible for specimen accessioning and processing, performing daily testing, maintaining appropriate testing and QC records, adhering to written procedures and QC policies, identifying problems, and documenting equipment maintenance. Recordkeeping for laboratory procedures is complicated because assays that are developed in-house are constantly being modified to improve the testing process. In addition, some laboratory instruments are used solely for molecular diagnostic testing, and there is little clinical laboratory experience with them. It is important for the technical staff, particularly the senior technical staff, to have a high sense of professional commitment and to display constant interest and effort in improving their education and training. It is also important for the staff to acquire as many advanced laboratory skills as possible and to be cross-trained in most or all of the different tests used in the laboratory. It is crucial for the technical personnel to fully understand the scientific basics of the methodology and the clinical applications and implications of the different molecular tests.

The advent of genomic technologies to include next-generation DNA sequencing and microarrays has led to the importance of personnel dedicated to data analysis and management. Bioinformaticians are scientists typically with an advance degree (MS or PhD) in an area that combines molecular biology with computer science. These individuals typically interface with R&D and clinical personnel for assay development and clinical implementation (see Chapter 68).

Involvement of residents, fellows, and graduate students can contribute significantly to the success of a molecular diagnostics laboratory. The value of these individuals comes from their high level of professional commitment and their insight into the clinical utility of individual tests. If such individuals are provided time to work in the molecular diagnostics laboratory, they are frequently able to rapidly develop and validate a new molecular assay. In return, these individuals gain expertise in an area of laboratory medicine that is rapidly growing, and this may provide them with an advantage when seeking future employment. As part of their training in molecular diagnostics, it is important for residents, fellows, and graduate students to gain experience in each of the different areas of testing, including infectious disease, genetic disease, and cancer. Training should include basic principles in molecular biology; hands-on experience in optimizing, validating, and performing molecular diagnostic testing; test result interpretation; and preparation of reports for review. Laboratory directors should also familiarize trainees with the different issues involved in laboratory management.

CERTIFICATION OF PERSONNEL IN MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS

Certification of doctoral-level personnel working in molecular diagnostic laboratories can follow several different routes depending on the type of doctoral degree as well as other training experience. The American Board of Pathology (ABP) and the American Board of Medical Genetics (ABMG) offer a joint subspecialty certification in Molecular Genetic Pathology (MGP). The ABP and the ABMG are members of the American Board of Medical Specialties, which is the parent organization for boards that provide certification in pathology, pediatrics, internal medicine, surgery, and other medical specialties. Certification consists of required training in an accredited program followed by a subspecialty examination. Candidates for this certification in MGP must hold an MD or DO degree, have primary certification in either pathology or genetics by their respective boards, have a valid unrestricted license to practice medicine or osteopathy in the United States, and have completed 1 year of training in an Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME)–accredited program. There are at least 31 MGP programs that have received full accreditation by the ACGME. Additional programs will likely seek accreditation in the future. Standards for training in molecular genetic pathology have been published by the different organizations involved in certification. Central to this effort is the use of competency-based education, which involves specific learning objectives around the curriculum. Fellows need to demonstrate performance at the level of a new practitioner in six general competencies: patient care, medical knowledge, practice-based learning and improvement, interpersonal and communication skills, professionalism, and system-based practice as provided by the Association for Molecular Pathology and other professional bodies. The candidate must present a logbook of 150 clinical molecular cases. The examination is offered every other year.

Another avenue open to individuals with either an MD or PhD is provided by the ABMG and is intended for individuals who provide services in medical genetics. The ABMG offers certification in clinical genetics, medical genetics, clinical cytogenetics, clinical biochemical genetics, and clinical molecular genetics. Only the requirements for certification in clinical molecular genetics are discussed here. In addition to possessing the appropriate doctoral degree, the candidate for clinical molecular genetics must complete 2 years of training in a fully accredited program. The candidate must present a logbook of 150 clinical molecular cases and method competency list signed by the laboratory director with half of the time of the training spent at the bench. The examination is offered every 3 years.

In addition, the American Board of Clinical Chemistry (ABCC) has offered certification in molecular diagnostics since June 2000. The ABCC is an independent, not-for-profit corporation that certifies doctoral-level professionals in clinical and toxicologic chemistry. The ABCC certification in molecular diagnostics requires the applicant to possess an MD or a doctoral degree or equivalent in biochemistry, molecular biology, or other natural sciences. The applicant must demonstrate 5 years of full-time diverse professional experience in clinical molecular diagnostics or at least 2 years of full-time diverse experience in clinical molecular diagnostics, and must document primary certification in one of the following boards: ABCC, American Board of Medical Microbiology, American Board of Pathology, American Board of Medical Laboratory Immunology, American Board of Bioanalysis, or the American Board of Histocompatibility and Immunogenetics. Applicants must meet education and experience requirements in addition to holding three letters of recommendation to attest to the familiarity with the applicant's professional expertise and length of experience in the field. The examination is offered once a year. The American Board of Bioanalysis also offers a certification for High Complexity Clinical Laboratory Director in Molecular Diagnostics (http://www.aab.org/aab/Certifications_Qualifications.asp).

Subspecialty certification in molecular diagnostics is also offered to nondoctoral-level individuals including medical technologists and molecular biology technicians through the American Society of Clinical Pathology (ASCP) Board of Certification. The ASCP Board of Certification was the result of the unification of the National Credentialing Agency and the ASCP Board of Registry. The ASCP Board of Certification is an administratively independent certification agency that prepares relevant standards and develops procedures that ensure the competence of nonphysician medical laboratory personnel. Medical technologists and molecular biology technicians become certified as technologists in molecular biology. There are four routes for eligibility:

1. ASCP certified as a technologist (MT, MLS, CG, CT, HTL, BB, C, H, I, or M) or specialist (SBB, SC, SCT, SH, SI, SM, or SV) and a baccalaureate degree from a regionally accredited college or university.
2. Baccalaureate degree from a regionally accredited college/university, including courses in biologic science, chemistry, and mathematics and successful completion of a National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences–approved baccalaureate diagnostics molecular science program within the last 5 years.
3. Baccalaureate degree in biologic or chemical sciences from a regionally accredited college/university and 12 months of acceptable clinical laboratory experience in molecular diagnostics in a CLIA-regulated accredited clinical laboratory in the past 5 years.
4. Graduate-level degree (master's or doctorate) in chemistry, biology, immunology, microbiology, allied health, clinical laboratory sciences, or an appropriate related field from a regionally accredited college/university and 6 months of acceptable clinical laboratory experience in molecular diagnostics in a CLIA-regulated accredited clinical laboratory within the last 5 years.

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

REIMBURSEMENT FOR MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS TESTS

Reimbursement for laboratory tests is a complex process that can be broken down into three phases—coverage, coding, and payment. Coverage decisions are usually determined by each of the different health care plans. In the United States, health insurance coverage is provided by public programs such as Medicare and Medicaid or by private health plans purchased individually or through one's employer. In general, the scope of coverage provided by a health plan is outlined in broad benefits categories; decisions about specific services are made on a case-by-case basis during claims processing. Health plans may develop formal coverage policies that describe whether a particular service is covered and the conditions under which it will be covered. Medical directors, the federal and state governments, medical policy advisory committees, employers, and unions are among some of the entities involved in making coverage decisions. Medical necessity is the primary criterion used by health plans when making coverage decisions, although the definition of medical necessity is subject to different interpretations. Another criterion is that the service must have approval from the appropriate government regulatory body. Thirdly, scientific evidence must permit conclusions concerning the effect of the technology on health outcomes.

Billing for molecular diagnostic testing follows the same procedure as any other laboratory tests. Generally, Current Procedural Terminology (CPT) codes (to document the procedure) and International Classification of Disease diagnostic codes (to document the medical condition that makes the procedure necessary) are required by the billing process to convey what services or procedures were performed and why. Beyond this, the reimbursement process is usually institution-specific and relies on computerized and manual billing procedures. It is important to determine in advance the requirements regarding documentation and computer access needed in order to generate a bill.

The CPT codes for molecular pathology (MoPath) recently underwent significant changes, which took effect in January 2013. Further changes were made in 2014 and 2015. The new MoPath codes are divided into two general categories referred to as *tier 1* and *tier 2*. These codes are paid under the Medical Clinical Laboratory Fee Schedule. Tier 1 codes represent the most common single-analyte tests. Tier 2 codes represent less common tests and are organized into 9 levels based on the complexity of the assay and interpretive component. The tier 1 and 2 codes do not include molecular microbiology, for which a growing list of pathogen-specific codes are predominantly used. Codes for histo leukocyte antigen (HLA) typing are listed separately. For tests not included in tier 1 or 2, the unlisted code 81479 is to be used. A new subsection was added: multianalyte assays with algorithmic analyses (MAAAs), referring to procedures that incorporate results from different assay types. Later an additional subsection was added to cover genomic services and other molecular multianalyte assays. Furthermore the CMS created Healthcare Common Procedures Coding System (HCPCS) code G0452-26 for interpretation and reporting by a physician reimbursed through Medicare under the Physician Fee Schedule.

The tier 1 and tier 2 codes incorporate all of the technical components of the assays, for example; cell lysis and nucleic acid extraction, amplification, and detection. These codes do not include procedures prior to extraction such as microdissection. The codes cover procedures used to detect

TABLE 70-1
Examples of CPT Code Billing for Molecular Tests

Test	CPT Code	Procedure
Tier 1		
APC	81201	Full gene sequence
EGFR	81235	Gene analysis, common variants (e.g., exon 19 LREA region, L858R, T790M, G719A, G719S, L861Q)
Factor 2 (prothrombin)	81240	Gene analysis, 20210 G>A variant
JAK2	81270	p.Val617Phe (V716F) variant
Tier 2		
Level 1	81400	Identification of a single germline variant (e.g., SNP) Factor 2, 1199 G>A variant *SMN1*, exon 7 deletion
Level 2	81401	2-10 SNPs, 1 methylated variant or 1 somatic variant or detection of a triplet repeat disorder *ABL,* T315I variant *VWF* common variants (T791M, R816W, R854Q)
Level 9	81408	Analysis of >50 exons in a single gene by DNA sequence analysis *ATM* full gene sequence

ABL, c-abl oncogene 1, receptor tyrosine kinase; *APC,* adenomatous polyposis coli; *ATM,* ataxia telangiectasia mutated; *CPT,* Current Procedural Terminology; *EGFR,* epidermal growth factor receptor; *JAK2,* janus kinase 2; *SMN1,* survival of motor neuron 1; *SNP,* single-nucleotide polymorphism; *VWF,* von Willebrand factor; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *RT-PCR,* reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction.

germline or somatic variants. Where guidance is available, the genes and variants are described in accordance with the Human Genome Organization (HUGO) and the Human Genome Variation Society (HGVS). Examples of tier 1 and tier 2 codes are given in Table 70-1. The tier 1 codes are designated based on specific genes. Tier 2 codes are designated based on 9 levels of complexity. Several genes/targets are associated with each level. The levels of complexity range from single germline variant for level 1 to analysis of >50 exons in a single gene by DNA sequence analysis at level 9. The recently added Genomic Sequencing Procedures and Other Molecular Multianalyte Assays cover procedures that simultaneously analyze multiple genes or genetic regions using technologies such as next-generation DNA sequencing. This includes whole exome and genome analysis as well as germine and somatic variant detection. Cytogenomic microarray analysis and multianalyte analysis with algorithms are covered with a different set of codes.

Reimbursement levels for individual tests are set by third-party payers and may bear little relationship to the actual cost of performing the test. Some third-party payers may reimburse at high levels, but others may follow laboratory fee schedules based on the Medicare Clinical Laboratory Fee Schedule or Physician Fee Schedule for the specific CPT codes. FDA approval is not required for billing for these tests, and a disclaimer for those non–FDA-cleared tests to reflect this issue should be added to the final report (see later). Some third-party payers will deny reimbursement for tests bearing such disclaimers because they believe that the cost of performing such testing should be borne by research grants even though the performance characteristics and clinical utility of the test have been validated by the clinical laboratory.

PATENT ISSUES

Patents can cover a specific method of testing for an analyte, any method of testing for an analyte, or a mutation-gene-disease association in general. The vast majority of the in vitro amplification procedures are patented processes, and a license agreement for the use of these procedures must be obtained or the laboratory using the procedure is liable for patent infringement. Traditionally, licensure is obtained for a particular procedure by purchasing an FDA-approved set of reagents sold by a manufacturer who holds the patent to the amplification process. The number of FDA-approved/cleared tests is limited and does not cover all molecular tests currently performed in molecular diagnostics laboratories. Thus a laboratory using a particular patented process must first negotiate a license agreement with the patent holder. Importantly, depending on the complexity of the institution seeking the agreement and the complexity of the agreement, it may take from 3 months to 1 year to obtain a license to perform and bill the procedure for clinical purposes.

Similar consideration must be given to developing assays for specific genes and/or disorders. The Supreme Court provided granularity to the gene patent discussion in the landmark ruling on June 13, 2013, in the case Association for Molecular Pathology et al vs Myriad Genetics, Inc., et al. The Supreme Court held that "A naturally occurring DNA segment is a product of nature, and not patent eligible merely because it has been isolated, but cDNA is patent eligible because it is not naturally occurring." The *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes, mutations that are implicated in hereditary breast and ovarian cancer, were the subjects of the ruling. However, it was made clear that the ruling applies to all human genes. It was emphasized that the ruling does not apply to synthetic or non-naturally occurring DNA. Therefore, it is important to consider disease or gene-specific patents prior to assay development. The terms and conditions offered by the patent holder vary greatly. Internet resources provided by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (http://www.uspto.gov) allow laboratories to perform searches on granted or pending patents in the United States.

LABORATORY INFORMATION SYSTEM

Clinical laboratories have been among the first hospital departments to actively exploit computers and software for reporting results and for managing internal work processes and quality. Most pathology laboratories now require a computerized laboratory information system (LIS) to handle the large volume of data that is both received and reported. These systems support all aspects of the contemporary clinical and specialty laboratory, helping technologists manage the quality and integrity of test samples (preanalytical), all aspects of the testing and results review process (analytical phase), and the reporting of finalized results, interpretations, and diagnosis (postanalytical phase). LISs have evolved beyond departmental workload functions and today often include advanced features, such as laboratory-specific medical records, direct clinician access via secure web connections, full-blown billing modules, and sophisticated interface engines for routing orders and results to external systems. The recent explosion of molecular diagnostic methods has expanded molecular and gene-based diagnostic testing into routine laboratory testing, forcing vendors and users to either adapt existing LIS functions to new modes of testing or to develop completely new subsystems.

To date, a number of commercial LIS vendors offer genetic testing modules, and several niche suppliers have emerged. The data management aspect of genomic/proteomic laboratory testing is one of the most active areas of pathology informatics research. This will have significant impact on future laboratory information systems and electronic medical record designs and will be used as genetic data become a core part of the patient's medical record. The LIS must be flexible enough to handle the demands posed by the new laboratory tests and technologies. In particular, the quantity of specimens and type of testing involved in genetic testing pose a significant challenge for an LIS. Molecular diagnostics and genetic testing requirements include increased data storage requirements, ability to manage reporting of genetic changes such as rearrangements and other abnormalities associated with malignant disease and hereditary genetic abnormalities, and ability to access patient records that contain personal gene databank and family tree information. Decision support, specimen tracking, and automation of QC and QA documentation features also must accommodate the demands of genetic testing. Extension of data management to genetic findings requires an LIS to standardize information and support genomics-based inference. Current vocabularies can be insufficient to describe the findings generated by some new molecular tests. Vocabularies such as the Clinical Bioinformatics Ontology developed by Cerner Corporation have been designed for clinical molecular diagnostics and cytogenetics. In order for LISs to handle the nature and volume of genomic tests, current discrepancies between how genetic mutations are described in the literature and how they are described in the Internet databases must be resolved. Laboratory processes in molecular diagnostics are currently highly complex and have proven difficult to standardize and automate. Contributors to this complexity include the wide variety of tissue sample types that can be tested, the numerous steps involved in material preparation, frequent implementation of novel technical platforms leading to variable and unpredictable assay performance, and complex posttesting analysis methods. Another component of the complexity, especially in molecular oncology, is that a variety of tumor samples

are required for different order sets, including multistep and reflex testing. One of the unique workflow requirements of the molecular diagnostics laboratory is the need to document significant amounts of nonclinical information generated during the processing of a sample (e.g., during DNA or RNA isolation or PCR analysis). With the advent of genomic technologies, the burden of such information has increased, which has led the CAP to address wet bench as well as bioinformatics documentation in the latest checklists for next-generation DNA sequencing. An additional requirement is the ability to offer significant flexibility in reordering or canceling tests and procedures in response to poor-quality specimens or other procedural failures.

TEST MANAGEMENT

MENU/SELECTION

As with any other clinical laboratory, the primary goal of the molecular diagnostics laboratory is to provide reliable and timely test results deemed necessary by the medical community for patient care. Appropriate selection of tests to include on the laboratory's test menu is critical for the success of the molecular diagnostics laboratory. Several key considerations are important in test selection. Clinical needs, as well as advances in basic and translational research, often prompt the development of new molecular tests. Prior discussions with the intended users to determine their level of interest and understanding are extremely helpful during the test selection.

Any new test should provide a less expensive or more effective avenue for diagnosis and/or management of the patient. It is important to base test selection not only on cost but also on how the new test could impact overall patient care and management. Even though adding an expensive new test for a particular clinical condition may seem at first to increase the cost of patient management, in the long run the new test may result in more cost-effective and efficient patient management. For example, HIV-1 viral load testing monitors disease progression and effectiveness of drug therapy in infected individuals. Many patients infected with HIV-1 are currently treated with a combination of different drugs, which includes protease inhibitors and nonnucleoside and nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. These drugs are expensive, and the virus may become resistant to them. Thus, even though addition of HIV-1 viral load testing adds cost to managing HIV-1–infected patients, the test provides a means for rapidly and accurately determining the effectiveness of the expensive drug treatment regimens. In this regard, molecular diagnostics is poised to greatly impact the emergence of pharmacogenomics and personalized medicine toward individual therapy (see Chapter 72).

A molecular test may be more cost-effective than an existing laboratory test and may be introduced to replace that existing test. Even if the direct cost of the molecular test is more than the direct cost of the test being replaced, increased sensitivity, increased specificity, or reduced TAT may result in significant overall savings in patient management. For example, in a case of presumptive *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection during the period of time when this diagnosis cannot be ruled out, the patients are placed on treatment with potentially liver-toxic drugs or placed in isolation. The standard laboratory test of directly observing an acid-fast stain of the patient's sputum for the presence of *M. tuberculosis* is fast, but lacks sensitivity. Culture is extremely sensitive, but could take up to 6 weeks for a result. A molecular test that allows for a more rapid diagnosis with a high degree of sensitivity and specificity would allow discontinuation of drug therapy or isolation for those patients without the disease.

Identifying molecular tests that would be potentially useful at the medical center is a responsibility of the medical and technical directors. Clinicians and pathologists can be a valuable source for identifying the testing needs for the medical center, but it is important for the laboratory director to establish where there is a need for improvement. Clinicians who learn of a new test that seems interesting may request that the molecular laboratory make the test available, regardless of whether that test has been analytically or clinically validated. Each laboratory should have a formal, systematic process to develop a strategic menu. The menu of molecular pathology laboratories may vary significantly and is determined by three principal factors: clinical requirements and usefulness, laboratory competency, and test costs. When considering which tests to add to a laboratory menu, matching of the technical capabilities of the laboratory with real-world clinical needs in terms of test volume, TAT, and associated costs should be realistic. Introduction of any new test should include a clinical trial period that allows for evaluation of the clinical utility of the test and may provide a useful marketing opportunity. If carefully designed, this approach allows the laboratory to directly work with the end user of the test and provides an avenue for end users to understand the clinical utility of the test and its limitations. It is important to clearly define metrics that can be evaluated at the end of the clinical trial to justify implementation of the test.

METHODS

Once a particular analyte has been identified for testing by molecular means, it is important to consider the various approaches that may be available. The technologies available for molecular diagnostics testing are considerably more complex than in other areas of the clinical laboratory. Adding to the challenge is the rapid rate of technological change.

In conventional sections of the clinical laboratory, the platforms available for performing a test are usually inclusive from primary sample handling to result. In contrast, the molecular diagnostics laboratory is usually required to piece together several disparate methods to achieve the same result. In fact, few manufacturers of molecular assays have considered the equally important issues of sample procurement and nucleic acid extraction, which is often necessary for each representative sample type. The successful integration plan would address the combination of procedures needed for the advancement of samples through these front-end requirements. One exercise that will aid in the development of a strategic test menu is the categorization of proposed tests into groups defined by the basic genetics of the diseases for which the tests are designed. In general, only a few types of testing methodologies exist for detection of nucleic acid sequences, detection of a particular mutation or single nucleotide polymorphism, or quantitative analysis of a specific sequence. The goal is to implement the strategic test menu onto one or two technical platforms. Consider several ancillary questions to determine whether it is possible to use fewer technologies:

- Do the selected platforms accommodate the full spectrum of sample types used for the tests on the laboratory's menu?
- Is it more important to address the volume of tests or the complexity of the analytic results?
- Are the platforms flexible enough to handle test offerings that may be added to the laboratory's test menu?
- Does the laboratory really need quantitative or real-time technologies?

Having fewer platforms will facilitate using information technology to extract more value from those systems. For example, some analytes may be analyzed using Southern blot hybridization, in vitro nucleic acid amplification, cytogenetics, or FISH. Before selecting a particular method, it is important to consider the clinical condition and the advantages and disadvantages of each methodology for managing a particular clinical condition.

CLINICAL TEST FORMATS

There are two basic types of assay formats. One type is developed and sold commercially by IVD manufacturers, and the other is developed in house by each laboratory (i.e., LDTs). In the first category, complete kits are developed to provide quality-controlled reagents to perform an entire molecular test for a determined clinical condition (e.g., kits to monitor patients with HIV-1 infection through quantification of plasma HIV-1 RNA). These kits usually include all the reagents necessary for nucleic acid isolation, amplification, and detection or quantitation. These complete assay kits include information about sensitivity, specificity, and test limitations for the particular clinical condition. They may be labeled by the manufacturer as *FDA-approved*, *FDA-cleared*, *for research use only*, or *for investigational use only*.

There is also a significant demand for assays for which there are no commercially available kits. Thus clinical laboratories must frequently develop their own assays to accommodate the local demands. LDTs are fully established and validated by the laboratory that performs them. They are also referred to as "home-brew" tests. Usually these assays use a combination of reagents that are purchased separately from a variety of manufacturers. Each laboratory determines the performance characteristics of the assay for a specific clinical condition and a particular patient population. There are a number of commercially available kits that are developed by a manufacturer to provide quality-controlled reagents to perform a particular step in molecular testing. For example, there are a variety of commercially available kits for nucleic acid extraction, amplification including controls, and detection systems. The laboratory may develop a particular molecular test by combining two or more kits from the same or even different manufacturers. The analytical and clinical validation of the entire testing process is the responsibility of each laboratory.

AUTOMATED PLATFORMS FOR MOLECULAR TESTING

In recent years, the development and introduction of automated platforms for molecular diagnostics testing has become more common. Automated devices that consume less time, handle small volumes, and in theory allow for better precision have replaced many manual molecular diagnostic procedures. Many of these platforms have been developed by different manufacturers to provide automation for a single step or several steps of the testing process. The evolution of molecular diagnostics automation has occurred in stages. In this chapter, devices are grouped according to function.

Single-function automated instruments have been in use for some time in the molecular diagnostics laboratory. The typical example of a single-function automated instrument is a thermocycler, because it provides automated amplification of nucleic acid by performing all steps necessary for the amplification of nucleic acids. Nucleic acid extractors are another early example of single-function devices that convert a six-step procedure into a single-step process. These early nucleic acid extractors were based on phenol/chloroform extraction and mimicked the corresponding manually performed method by using nearly the same reagents and protocols. These and other single-step automated instruments, including robots for reagent preparation and aliquoting, and automatic DNA sequencers, have been widely incorporated into molecular diagnostics laboratories. The use of magnetic beads has dramatically changed how laboratories process and isolate nucleic samples from patient specimens. Molecular diagnostics laboratories are rapidly embracing these automatic nucleic acid extractors because this specific step in the testing process is one of the most labor-intensive of the entire testing process. These devices provide higher-throughput capabilities, greater precision, and reduced personnel demands.

Recently, automated instruments that perform more than a single function have been developed and introduced into molecular diagnostics laboratories. The Roche Molecular Systems COBAS Ampliprep/COBAS TaqMan analyzer is an example of one such automated platform. This instrument contains an automatic extractor module, reaction setup, and real-time PCR that allows the processing of patient specimens—nucleic acid extraction, amplification, and quantitation—in a single instrument. Real-time PCR technology simultaneously acquires the amplification signal, permitting qualitative and quantitative analysis of the PCR reaction as it occurs, thereby eliminating the need for postamplification processing for detection and quantitation of target sequence. This feature allows a dramatic reduction of the TAT for molecular diagnostic tests from days to hours. The throughput of these devices is greatly enhanced, and molecular diagnostics laboratories now use them routinely for much of their diagnostic testing.

The greater availability of these automated devices poses many opportunities for clinical laboratories. One core issue in this decision is cost. Whereas the cost of manually performing molecular testing is substantial, the cost of acquiring automated instruments to perform these steps/tests can also be significant. Laboratories must wisely evaluate the cost/benefit of these automated devices in relation to the anticipated revenue. A number of manufacturers have started offering reagent rental programs for many of these automated platforms. Laboratories must carefully compare the cost of performing the test manually to the cost of automation.

QUALITY ASSURANCE AND QUALITY CONTROL OF THE TESTING PROCESS

QUALITY ASSURANCE

Every molecular diagnostics laboratory should develop a comprehensive written QA program. The objective of the QA program is to systematically monitor and evaluate the quality and appropriateness of the test results. The QA program includes aspects of clinical testing that do not directly bear on the analytical accuracy of the test result and thus are generally not part of the QC program for clinical testing. Some of these parameters are regular review of TATs, normal and abnormal results, specimen rejection criteria, the log of rejected specimens, and other indicators of test quality. The QA program should address every aspect of the testing process—preanalytical, analytical, and postanalytical. The program must include written policies and documentation for education and training of personnel, continuing medical education, PT, internal and external inspections, including documentation of corrective actions for deficiencies cited, QC programs for the clinical testing, equipment performance, and safety. Establishment of molecular diagnostic tests, particularly amplification assays, requires many considerations at every stage, including reagent preparation, specimen collection, specimen aliquoting, and performance of the actual assay. A number of considerations apply to all molecular assays and are important to guarantee reliable results. The amount of QA and QC performed for any molecular assay depends on the type of test.

As part of the preanalytical phase, special attention should be given to specimen collection, transport, and storage, because specimen handling often affects the results. Test results that could influence treatment decisions should reflect the patient status and not specimen mishandling.

Key components of any QA program are PT and alternative assessment (AA). PT and AA performance reflects the accuracy of the laboratory's testing process and can also serve as an educational activity for the laboratory staff. The laboratory's testing performance on unknown challenge specimens is compared to an external standard. The external standard is generally the mean of values obtained by other laboratories using the same test method, but it may be assigned by a reference method or some other procedure. Laboratories engage in PT two or three times a year. PT programs are available from a number of vendors, including CAP. There are special requirements for CLIA-regulated analytes, in that CMS must approve the PT program. However, none of the analytes usually tested for in a molecular diagnostics laboratory is CLIA regulated. The laboratory must have a QA plan that establishes the accuracy and reliability of the testing at least twice per year. AA is a twice-yearly assessment of the laboratory's testing performance when PT is not available. Examples of AA are split-sample testing between two or more laboratories that share test results with all participants, repeat testing on previously analyzed specimens whose earlier results were blinded to the laboratory technical staff, and testing by a different method. Ongoing monitoring of PT allows the laboratory to assess and monitor the quality of its test results and identify testing problems that may not surface with other quality-control activities. Such information enables the laboratory to take preventive action and avoid future unacceptable results or inaccuracies in patient testing. Likewise, the investigation of unacceptable results can identify clerical errors, methodologic problems, equipment problems, technical problems, problems with the PT material, and problems with test interpretation. The PT provider provides individual laboratories with unknown "challenge" specimens for testing. Quantitative tests are usually expected to perform within 2 standard deviations of the mean or within a specified percentage deviation from the mean to be considered acceptable. Acceptable performance criteria may vary by analyte. In general, qualitative tests should agree with the response provided by 80% of peer laboratories or 80% of reference laboratories. Performance on a mailing is considered "satisfactory" when at least 80% of a laboratory's responses to challenges in a single mailing are acceptable. However, for many molecular tests there are only two shipments per year and three challenges per shipment, so the criteria may be different. When a PT survey is developed for a new analyte or new testing method/technology, the entire survey may be considered educational and not graded for 1 or more years, ensuring field validation. At a minimum, the CLIA requires laboratories to review and evaluate the results obtained on PT. For any unsatisfactory testing event, the CLIA also requires laboratories to document and retain their remedial actions for 2 years. The documentation is reviewed during the onsite laboratory inspection. Failure to perform AA, document results, review results, or take corrective action for an unacceptable performance leads to a deficiency citation upon laboratory inspection.

Well-characterized reference materials are fundamental to laboratory QA programs, including both external assessment by PT and internal QA activities such as QC and test development/validation. PT program vendors usually solicit large hospital centers or commercial vendors to obtain blood and tissue specimens from affected patients to support the PT programs. These materials must be validated before use. For some genetic tests, including many disorders in the CAP PT surveys, sufficient and appropriate material is not publicly available. For example, until recently, genomic DNA materials for allele repeat lengths representing important phenotypic classes and diagnostic cutoffs for fragile X were not publicly available. The absence of such materials for routine QC, PT, and test development may have accounted for the differences in laboratory performance in some recent CAP PT fragile X surveys. The CDC, in partnership with the genetics community, has established the Genetic Testing Reference Materials (GeT-RM) Coordination Program. Its goal is to improve the supply of publicly available and well-characterized genomic DNA that can be used as reference materials for PT, QC, test development/validation, and research studies. The GeT-RM program has recently characterized 57 cell lines to be used as reference materials for disorders such as fragile X syndrome, Huntington disease, and disorders on the Ashkenazi

TABLE 70-2
Conducting the Clinical Testing Process

Activity Type	Considerations
Reagent preparation	1. Perform in cleanest environment. 2. Store working stock solutions in single-use aliquots. 3. Quality control each new set of reagents before use in clinical testing; use low copy number sample for sensitivity evaluation. 4. Preparation of master mixes reduces variability and errors.
Specimen collection	1. Establish acceptable tolerance limits for each specimen type to be tested (e.g., storage temperature, transport time, anticoagulant). 2. Distribute protocols for proper specimen handling to all potential users. 3. Capture clinical and analytical information on requisition.
Specimen processing	1. Specimen must be received and stored in preamplification (clean) laboratory. 2. Develop guidelines to ensure against specimen mixup and to preserve integrity of target sequence.
Analysis of specimen	
a. Extraction procedure	1. Evaluate extraction procedures for presence of inhibitors and factors that decrease yield of target. 2. Internal control added to the sample at the time of extraction to determine false-negative reactions due to inhibitors or determine this rate by some other means. If an internal control is not to be evaluated with each patient sample, then the rate of false-negative reactions should be stated on the report in a disclaimer in case of negative results.
b. Assay setup, amplification, and detection	1. Optimize concentration of primers, magnesium chloride ($MgCl_2$), deoxynucleotide triphosphates (dNTPs); volume; cycling conditions, and detection system. 2. Develop guidelines to minimize possibility of contamination by template nucleic acid or amplicon (see sections on quality control). 3. Control specimens must be processed in the same manner as patient specimens. 4. Develop guidelines to set up assay to avoid cross-contamination of specimens and controls.
Interpretation and report	1. Develop guidelines for interpretation and report. 2. Interpretation should be performed by at least two individuals independently. 3. Develop guidelines for report distribution.

Jewish panel (e.g., Bloom syndrome, Canavan disease, Fanconi anemia, familial dysautonomia, Gaucher disease, mucolipidosis IV, Neimann Pick disease, and Tay-Sachs disease). These materials are or will soon be publicly available from Coriell Cell Repositories, which houses several National Institutes of Health (NIH)–funded collections of essential research reagents. A characterization study of 14 DNA materials with important mutations causing CF is currently underway in six collaborating clinical laboratories. Additionally, the GeT-RM program is characterizing a panel of DNA specimens with identifiable gene mutations for confirmatory testing in disorders included in state newborn screening panels. This includes disorders such as congenital adrenal hyperplasia, medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency, maple syrup urine disease, CF, and galactosemia. Additional materials are in development for gene mutations found in Gaucher disease, Tay-Sachs disease, and Canavan disorders. Development of materials will soon be initiated for other disorders, including inherited breast cancer (caused by *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* mutations), alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency, and type 2 multiple endocrine neoplasia. To date, the GeT-RM program has focused its efforts on DNA-based testing for inherited genetic disorders. Other areas of genetics, including molecular oncology, molecular infectious disease testing, and biochemical genetic testing, however, are also facing a paucity of reference and PT materials. To address these needs, the GeT-RM program, together with the genetics community, professional organizations, and other governmental agencies outside the CDC, is trying to assess what reference materials are currently available for laboratory QA programs and is beginning to formulate plans for collecting and characterizing materials where shortages exist.

Next-generation DNA sequencing (NGS) has introduced additional components to QA and QC. Measures must be developed to monitor each run through the sequencing platform, the specifics of which are dependent on the platform. The measures should assess for failures at the level of sample preparation as well as at key steps during a sequencing run. Sample identity tracking through the process is especially important with the advent of molecular barcoding of patient samples. Furthermore, a quality management program needs to be developed to cover both wet-bench work and bioinformatic/data analyses pipelines. Bioinformatic pipelines need to have strict version control and validation.

As with any laboratory test, a well–thought-out and well-written laboratory procedure is a key factor for the reproducibility of the assay. It is one of the most important aids during hands-on training of new personnel or for procedures that are not performed very often. The clinical laboratory technical procedure manual should be written according to specific guidelines of the CLSI. Performance of nucleic acid–based methods usually requires specific setup and/or workflow.

ASSAY DESIGN AND DEVELOPMENT

A well-thought-out process for assay design and development is critical to ensure the success of a new test development and implementation. Once specific analytes, assay techniques, and specimen types have been identified, the assay design and development can begin. Table 70-2 describes the different steps of the testing process that need to be taken into consideration when designing an LDT. The first task is to optimize each step of the analytical process, which includes nucleic acid extraction, target amplification, detection, quantification, and result interpretation. Several review and research articles provide detailed descriptions of the key parameters that may influence the performance of different in vitro nucleic acid methodologies, including standard PCR, both uniplex or multiplex (McNeil, 2015). After optimization of the assay, it is necessary to evaluate and document preanalytical variables that might have an impact on the performance characteristics of the assay. Common preanalytical variables are specimen type, transport, storage and handling, as well as interfering substances such us lipids, hemoglobin, and bilirubin.

Establishment of molecular diagnostics tests, particularly amplification assays, requires development of controls for each step of the testing process, including reagent preparation, specimen collection, specimen aliquoting, and performing the actual assay. A careful selection of control reagents is vital for the correct interpretation of test results. Several types of controls are used throughout the execution of an assay to ensure appropriate performance. For qualitative tests, negative and positive controls are required by CLIA ’88 regulations and must be processed in every clinical test run. Failure to obtain the correct result for any of the controls invalidates the entire test and requires retesting of all samples. Whenever possible, positive and negative control reagents should closely resemble a patient specimen. Furthermore, a positive control should represent a clinically relevant level of the nucleic acid target sequence in a background of negative nucleic acid target sequence. The negative control should contain “background” nucleic acid sequences expected to be present in the patient’s sample. In addition to the negative and positive controls, a blank control should be included with every assay, which contains all the components of the reaction mixture except nucleic acid. In addition to these controls, in some instances it is imperative to include an internal control to check for the presence of inhibitors in the individual patient samples. If this latter control is not used, then when a negative result is obtained, it is not clear whether the absence of amplicon is due to the absence of the target sequence in the patient specimen or to the presence of substances that inhibited the amplification reaction. To avoid this situation, amplification of an internal positive control sequence is recommended. The internal

positive control can be an endogenous nucleic acid sequence that is unrelated to the target sequence of the clinical assay but is constitutively present in the sample. Alternatively, it may represent a sequence that is spiked into the clinical sample at some step in the testing process. The former endogenous internal positive control generally requires a separate set of primers and may require a separate reaction. The spiked control is generally a sequence that shares the same primer sequence that is used for the clinical target and is usually amplified in the same reaction tube as the clinical sample. As is the case with the external clinical positive control, the internal control should be used at a concentration that is relevant to the clinical testing process. The internal positive controls are also valuable to assess the presence of amplifiable nucleic acid and the absence of inhibitors, as well as to assess that the amplification and detection reactions are performed according to the specifications.

The use of a series of positive controls at different concentrations of target sequence can be helpful in monitoring the assay for changes in sensitivity over time. In addition, inclusion of a positive control where the concentration of target sequence is below the detection threshold of the assay can be useful for detecting low levels of amplicon.

A common approach to developing internal controls is to create synthetic materials, such as in vitro synthesized plasmids, that can be spiked into the specimen before testing. The most common internal controls are synthetic segments of nucleic acid that use the same primer sequence as the target sequence. A sequence internal to the primer's binding site that is unique to the internal control allows separate detection and quantitation from the target. In addition, this internal control can be used for internal calibration. An internal calibrator contains a determined amount of this modified target that can be added directly to a clinical specimen and undergoes the same manipulation as the target of the patient specimen. One caveat for internal controls is that they must have the same or a very similar efficiency of amplification. Moreover, when the internal control fails to be detected, it is not possible to determine whether an inhibitor is present or there is an amplification problem. It is important to use a low amount of the internal control to avoid competition with the target of the patient specimen. When detecting and/or quantifying RNA from tissue or cells, amplification of a housekeeping gene (e.g., *GAPDH*, *β-actin*) can be used as an internal control. Most housekeeping genes are highly abundant and might not be the most appropriate internal control. RNA from a gene with the same approximate abundance as the target sequence should be used.

Special consideration must be given for assay development specific to NGS. Test development should ideally lead to optimization of the entire workflow to include assay conditions, depth of coverage, sample pooling, if applicable, and data analysis/bioinformatics. Special considerations with respect to cytogenomic microarrays include establishing metrics and criteria for determination of a copy number variation (CNV). This will depend on clinical intended use, manufacturer recommendations, and platform capabilities.

NEW TEST VERIFICATION/VALIDATION

As with any other area of the clinical laboratory, the introduction of a new test requires proper validation. There are major differences between the implementation of an FDA-approved test and one that is not. CLIA '88 provides specific guidance for validation of these assays. Laboratories implementing FDA-approved tests must verify and document the performance characteristics of the test for the indications for use in populations similar to those in which the manufacturer has established performance. Implementation of in-house–developed assays requires a more involved process, with extensive documentation on test performance and QC programs that ensure reproducible performance of the test. Table 70-3 provides a list of guidelines and standards for molecular diagnostics testing that can be used as references during assay development and verification. Table 70-4 describes the different aspects of documentation that would be useful to capture during the validation process.

Verification of a new test is a complex process that can be divided into two phases: analytic and clinical verification. Analytic verification provides information about the analytic performance of the test. Clinical verification provides information about the clinical utility of the test with regard to the intended use. Determination of the intended use provides information about the appropriate settings, including disease states and populations for which the test can be useful. In this text, the phrase *intended use* refers to the DNA or RNA target that a molecular assay detects or quantifies, whereas *indications for use* refers to the clinical syndrome/condition for which the assay can be used for diagnosis, management, or monitoring of disease.

For NGS the entire process needs to be validated to include: sample type(s), nucleic acid extraction, library preparation, target enrichment, sequencing, and bioinformatics. If applicable, orthogonal methods for confirmation of NGS results should be part of the validation process. If samples are to be pooled, then the process of pooling must be validated to ensure preservation of patient identity. Assessment of analytical sensitivity and specificity, accuracy, and precision should be performed for each class of variant (i.e., single-nucleotide variations, indels, homopolymers, copy number variants, and structural variants). The validation process may need to account for regions of homology to target of interest (e.g., pseudogenes to include effect on accuracy). Limit of detection studies may be important if testing samples containing heterogeneous genotypes (e.g., tumor/normal and mitochondrial samples). Components of the NGS bioinformatics pipeline to address include but are not limited to: reference genome/sequence; raw data generation at instrument, alignment to reference sequence, and variant calling. Variant calling metrics include but are not limited to: minimum depth of coverage, base/variant quality scores, and allele read percentage. A procedure for interpreting and reporting sequencing variants to include incidental findings, if applicable, is needed. Additionally, a data storage policy/procedure should be incorporated into the validation process. The policy should include type of file(s) to retain and time of file retention. The policy should take into consideration local, state, and national requirements as well as HIPAA laws.

Considerations specific for cytogenomic microarrays will depend on platform, clinical intent, and constitutional versus somatic analysis. For platforms designed for SNP analysis, it is important to determine allelic differentiation potential. Absence of heterozygosity (AOH) can be detected with SNP genotyping and can indicate potential areas of interest that warrant further testing. The validation process should specify the potential of the platform to detect AOH to include copy-neutral AOH. The validation process must also define the ability of the platform to detect mosaicism. For platforms used for prenatal specimens, the validation must differentially account for cultured amniocytes and chorionic villus sampling cells and uncultured (direct) amniocytes and villi. Prenatal validation must also take into account the need to perform maternal cell contamination (MCC) studies unless contamination can be excluded by other means. The indications for confirmatory testing and/or testing for mechanisms leading to CNV need to be determined. When working with somatic/cancer tissue, special considerations include accounting for tumor versus normal tissue and accounting for differences in DNA quality from different sample types.

ANALYTICAL VERIFICATION

Before a new or improved test is introduced, careful evaluation of the performance characteristics of the assay under laboratory conditions needs to be done. The analytical verification process provides information regarding the performance of the assay but also can provide practical information needed for daily operation of the test. Historically, analytical validation programs have been challenging because of the lack of standards and reference materials for many nucleic acid targets. This shortfall has impacted the laboratory's ability to determine assay sensitivity and accuracy. Table 70-5 lists suppliers of commercially available reference materials that can be used during analytical verification and as a source of QC material.

As part of the analytical verification, laboratories must determine the assay's analytical sensitivity, analytical specificity, accuracy, and precision. For quantitative assays, information regarding the linear dynamic range or reportable range determines when a measurement or change in the quantity of the analyte is clinically relevant or due to inherent test error. A number of national and international organizations are taking steps to develop standard reference materials. The National Institute of Standards and Technology developed one of the first nucleic acid standard reference materials for human identity testing. More recently, the World Health Organization (WHO) introduced a standard reference material for HIV, HCV, and HBV that has been used for verification of nucleic acid tests for screening of blood and blood products. Reference panels calibrated to WHO standard reference material are commercially available (SeraCare Life Sciences, Milford, Mass.).

When standardized reference materials are not available, laboratories must rely on alternatives to validate tests. Laboratories can develop their own reference materials for analytical validation and monitoring daily performance of the assay. These reference materials may be available in-house or from an outside source such as a collaborating laboratory, government agency (CDC, FDA, NIH), or commercial supplier (SeraCare

TABLE 70-3

Guidelines and Standards for Molecular Diagnostic Testing

Organization	Guideline or Standard
Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI), www.clsi.org	MM1-A2 Molecular Diagnostic Methods for Genetic Diseases MM2-A2 Immunoglobulin and T-Cell Receptor Gene Rearrangement Assays MM3-A2 Molecular Diagnostic Methods for Infectious Diseases MM-5 A Nucleic Acid Amplification Assays for Molecular Hematology MM-6 A2 Quantitative Molecular Diagnostics for Infectious Diseases MM-7 A2 Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization Methods for Medical Genetics MM-9 A2 Nucleic Acid Sequencing Methods in Diagnostic Laboratory Medicine MM-10-A Genotyping for Infectious Diseases: Identification and Characterization; Approved Guideline MM-11-A Molecular Methods for Bacterial Strain Typing; Approved Guideline MM-12-A Diagnostic Nucleic Acid Microarrays; Approved Guideline MM-13-A Collection, Transport, Preparation, and Storage of Specimens for Molecular Methods; Approved Guideline MM-14 A2 Proficiency Testing for Molecular Methods MM-16-A Use of External RNA Controls in Gene Expression Assays; Approved Guideline MM-17-A Verification and Validation of Multiplex Nucleic Acid Assays; Approved Guideline MM-18-A Interpretive Criteria for Identification of Bacteria and Fungi by DNA Target Sequencing; Approved Guideline
American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics, www.ACMG.net	Technical standards and guidelines for reproductive screening in the Ashkenazi Jewish population, *Genet Med* 10:57–72, 2008. American College of Medicine and Genomics technical standards and guidelines: microarray analysis for chromosomal abnormalities in neoplastic disorders, *Genet Med* 15:484–494, 2013. ACMG standard and guidelines for constitutional cytogenomic microarray analysis, including postnatal and prenatal applications: revision 2013, *Genet Med* 15:901–909, 2013. Population based cystic fibrosis carrier screening, *Genet Med* 3:149-154, 2001. CFTR mutation testing, 2008; update to 2001, e-publication ACMG standards and guidelines for documenting consanguinity as an incidental finding of genomic testing, *Genet Med* 15:150–152, 2013. Venoust thromboembolism (factor V Leiden and prothrombin 20210 G>A) testing, *Genet Med* 7:444–453, 2005. ACMG standards and guidelines for fragile X testing: a revision to the disease-specific supplements to the standards and guidelines for clinical genetic laboratories of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics, *Genet Med* 15:575–586, 2013. Technical standards and guidelines for Huntington disease testing, 2014 revision, *Genet Med* 16:12, 2014 (online only). ACMG technical standards and guidelines for genetic testing for inherited colorectal cancer (Lynch syndrome, familial adenomatous polyposis, and MYH-associated polyposis), *Genet Med* 16:101–116, 2014. ACMG clinical laboratory standards for next-generation DNA sequencing, *Genet Med* 15:9:733–747, 2013. American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics recommendations for the design and performance expectations for clinical genomic copy number microarrays intended for use in the postnatal setting for the detection of constitutional abnormalities, *Genet Med* 13:676–679, 2011. American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics standards and guidelines for interpretation and reporting of postnatal constitutional copy number variants, *Genet Med* 13:680–685, 2011. Standards and Guidelines for the interpretation of sequencing variants: a joint consensus recommendation from the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics and the Association of Molecular Pathology. ACMG and AMP, 2015; published ahead of print. ACMG recommendations for standards for interpretation and reporting of sequence variations revisions 2007, *Genet Med* 8:294–300, 2007. Technical standards and guidelines for spinal muscular atrophy testing, *Genet Med* 13:686–694, 2011. Laboratory guideline for Turner syndrome, *Genet Med* 12:52–55, 2010. Turner syndrome corrigendum, *Genet Med* 14:281, 2012. A practice guideline from the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics and the National Society of Genetic Counselors: referral indications for cancer predisposition assessment, *Genet Med* 17:70–87, 2015. ACMG position statement on prenatal/preconception expanded carrier screening, *Genet Med* 15:482–483, 2013. Carrier screening for spinal muscular atrophy, *Genet Med* 10:840–842, 2008. Carrier screening in individuals of Ashkenazi Jewish descent, *Genet Med* 10:1:54–56, 2008. Cystic fibrosis population carrier screening: 2004 revision of American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics Mutation Panel, *Genet Med* 6:5:387–391, 2004. American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics consensus statement on factor V Leiden mutation testing, *Genet Med* 3:139–148, 2001. Fragile X syndrome: diagnostic and carrier testing, *Genet Med* 7:584–587, 2005. American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics guideline for the clinical evaluation and etiologic diagnosis of hearing loss, *Genet Med* 16:347–355, 2014. Evaluation of the adolescent or adult with some features of Marfan syndrome, *Genet Med* 14:171–177, 2012. Clinical genetic evaluation in identifying the etiology of the autism spectrum disorders: 2013 guideline revisions, *Genet Med* 15:399–407, 2013. Array-based technology and recommendations for utilization in medical genetic practice for detection of chromosomal abnormalities, *Genet Med* 12:742–745, 2010. American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics statement on diagnostic testing for uniparental disomy, 2006; e-publication. FISH2: technical and clinical assessment of FISH: an ACMG/ASHG position statement. I: Technical Consideration, *Genet Med* 2:356–361, 2000. Clinical utility of genetic and genomic services: a position statement of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics. 2015. ACMG policy statement: updated recommendations regarding analysis and reporting of secondary findings in clinical genome-scale sequencing, *Genet Med* 17:68–69, 2015. American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics recommendations for the design and performance expectations for clinical genomic copy number microarrays intended for use in the postnatal setting for detection of constitutional abnormalities, *Genet Med* 13:676–679, 2010. Statement on noninvasive prenatal screening for fetal aneuploidy, *Genet Med* 15:5:395–398, 2013.

TABLE 70-3

Guidelines and Standards for Molecular Diagnostic Testing—cont'd

Organization	Guideline or Standard
Food and Drug Administration, www.fda.gov	Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—In Vitro Diagnostic 2009 H1N1 Tests for Use in the 2009 H1N1 Emergency Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Cardiac Allograft Gene Expression Profiling Test Systems Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Testing for Detection and Differentiation of Influenza A Virus Subtypes Using Multiplex Assays Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Testing for Human Metapneumovirus (hMPV) Using Nucleic Acid Assays Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Respiratory Viral Panel Multiplex Nucleic Acid Assay Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Establishing the Performance Characteristics of In-Vitro Diagnostic Devices for the Detection or Detection and Differentiation of Human Papillomaviruses Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Nucleic Acid Amplification Assay for the Detection of Enterovirus RNA Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Commercially Distributed Analyte Specific Reagents (ASRs): Frequently Asked Questions Draft Guidance for Industry, Clinical Laboratories, and FDA Staff—In Vitro Diagnostic Multivariate Index Assays Framework for Regulatory Oversight of Laboratory Developed Tests (LDTs)—Draft Guidance Guidance on Pharmacogenetic Tests and Genetic Tests for Heritable Markers Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Gene Expression Profiling Test System for Breast Cancer Prognosis Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Quality Control Material for Cystic Fibrosis Nucleic Acid Assays Informed Consent for In Vitro Diagnostic Device Studies Using Leftover Human Specimens That Are Not Individually Identifiable Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: CFTR Gene Mutation Detection Systems Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: RNA Preanalytical Systems (RNA Collection, Stabilization, and Purification Systems for RT-PCR used in Molecular Diagnostic Testing) Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Format for Traditional and Abbreviated 510(k)s Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff—Class II Special Controls Guidance Document—Automated Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization (FISH) Enumeration Systems Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Instrumentation for Clinical Multiplex Test Systems—Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff Class II Special Controls Guidance Document: Drug Metabolizing Enzyme Genotyping System—Guidance for Industry and FDA Staff Guidance for Industry in the Manufacture and Clinical Evaluation of In Vitro Tests to Detect In Vitro Nucleic Acid Sequences of Human Immunodeficiency Viruses Types 1 and 2
Association for Molecular Pathology, www.amp.org	Recommendations for In-House Development and Operation of Molecular Diagnostic Tests Laboratory practice guidelines for detecting and reporting JAK2 and MPL mutations in myeloproliferative neoplasms: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 15:733–744, 2013. The role of MGMT testing in clinical practice: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 15:539–555, 2013. Molecular testing guideline for selection of lung cancer patients for EGFR and ALK tyrosine kinase inhibitors: guideline from the College of American Pathologists, International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer, and Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 15:415–453, 2013. Certification in molecular pathology in the United States: an update from the Association for Molecular Pathology Training and Education Committee, *J Mol Diagn* 14:541–549, 2012. Opportunities and challenges associated with clinical diagnostic genome sequencing: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 14:525–540, 2012. Relevance, pathogenesis, and testing algorithm for mismatch repair–defective colorectal carcinomas: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 14:91–103, 2012. AMP position statement on population carrier screening for spinal muscular atrophy, *J Mol Diagn* 13:3–6, 2011. Laboratory guidelines for detection, interpretation and reporting of maternal cell contamination (MCC) in prenatal analyses: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 13:7–11, 2011. CpG methylation analysis—current status of clinical assays and potential applications in molecular diagnostics: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 11:266–278, 2009. Multi-site PCR-based CMV viral load assessment-assays demonstrate linearity and precision, but lack numeric standardization: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 11:87–92, 2009. Laboratory practice guidelines for detecting and reporting BCR-ABL drug resistance mutations in chronic myelogenous leukemia and acute lymphoblastic leukemia: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 11:4–11, 2009. Consensus characterization of 16 *FMR1* reference materials: a consortium study, *J Mol Diagn* 10:2–12, 2008. Inter-laboratory comparison of chronic myeloid leukemia minimal residual disease monitoring: summary and recommendations, *J Mol Diagn* 9:421–430, 2007. Guidance for fluorescence in situ hybridization testing in hematologic disorders, *J Mol Diagn* 9:134–143, 2007. Standard mutation nomenclature in molecular diagnostics: practical and educational challenges, *J Mol Diagn* 9:1–6, 2007. FDA proposal for classification of "analyte-specific reagents," *J Mol Diagn* 1:153–154, 1996.

ABMG, American Board of Medical Genetics; *ACMG,* American College of Medical Genetics; *ABL,* Abelson murine leukemia viral oncogene; *ABGC,* American Board of Genetic Counseling; *ALK,* anaplastic lymphoma receptor tyrosine kinase; *ASHG,* American Society of Human Genetics; *AMP,* Association for Molecular Pathology; *BCR,* breakpoint cluster region; *CFTR,* cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator; *CMV,* cytomegalovirus; *EGFR,* epidermal growth factor receptor; *FDA,* U.S. Food and Drug Administration; *FMR1,* fragile X mental retardation 1; *JAK2,* Janus-kinase 2; *MGMT,* methylguanine-DNA methyltransferase; *MPL,* myeloproliferative leukemia virus oncogene; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid; *RT-PCR,* reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction.

TABLE 70-4
Documentation Checklist for Assay Validation

Test name	Name of the test including technology used—Be sure that the name identifies the particular organism and/or disease/condition to be tested.
Intended use	What the test measures and for what purpose—Identify the particular microorganism and parameters tested, and indicate the use of the test (e.g., diagnosis, prognosis, monitoring response to treatment, guiding therapy).
Indications for use	Provide clinical conditions—Use reference standard definitions as found in Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man (OMIM), www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim.
Method category	Identify methodology used for the test.
Testing procedure	Information with regard to specimen types, specimen handling and transport procedures, nucleic acid isolation and storage, description of the test procedure, data reports, expected results, and technical interpretation of results—All these parameters should be included in policies and procedures for the particular test.
Test results	Examples of results
Analytical verification	Analytical sensitivity, specificity, precision, dynamic range, cross-reactivity, interfering substances
Quality control and quality assurance	Delineate QC and QA program—Identify informal proficiency program if no Department of Health and Human Services–approved program exists.
Assay limitations	Clearly explain and/or discuss potential limitations of the assay.
Clinical data	Primary objective of the study, clinical condition evaluated, patient population, demographics, and sample size estimate
Clinical verification	Clinical sensitivity, specificity, and positive and negative predictive value
Reporting of test results	Clinical interpretation
Clinical utility	Potential clinical benefit to patient

TABLE 70-5
Commercial Sources of Control and Reference Materials

Company	Available Material
Seracare (www.seracare.com)	Quantitative and qualitative controls, external run controls, qualification, verification and performance panels for HCV, HIV, HBV, external run controls for CMV, HSV, EBV, HPV, *Chlamydia trachomatis, Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* CFTR, MTHFR.
Advanced Biotechnology (www.abionline.com.)	Control DNA, virus and cell lines (HIV, HTLV, EBV, CMV, HSV, VZV, HCV, SIV, rubella). Native and recombinant products, purified viruses, antigens, proteins, and antibodies
Life Technologies—AcroMetrix (www.lifetechnologies.com)	External run controls, secondary reference controls; verification panels for HIV, HCV, and HBV; HIV genotyping. Controls for NGS assays for oncology markers (Oncology HotSpot Control)
National Institute for Biological Standards and Controls (www.nibsc.org)	Evaluation/statistics service, working reagents for HIV-1 RNA, HCV, HBV, HAV, Parvovirus B19
American Type Culture Collection (www.attc.org)	Bacteria, bacteriophages, cell lines, hybridomas, filamentous fungi and yeast, tissue cultures, viruses
Corriel Repository (http://ccr.coriell.org)	Provide essential reagents to the scientific community by establishing, verifying, maintaining, and distributing cell cultures and DNA derived from cell cultures with mutations in different clinically relevant genes
Maine Molecular (www.mmqci.com)	Control product to monitor the analytical performance of extraction, amplification, and detection of test systems used in qualitative measurement of factor II (prothrombin) and factor V genes for the mutations factor II G20210A and factor V Leiden (G1691A), *CFTR* gene, cytochrome P450 2C9 (CYP2C9), cytochrome P450 4F2 (CYP4F2), and vitamin K epoxide reductase complex, subunit 1 (VKORC1)

CFTR, Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator; *CMV,* cytomegalovirus; *DNA,* deoxyribonucleic acid; *EBV,* Epstein-Barr virus; *HAV,* hepatitis A virus; *HBV,* hepatitis B virus; *HCV,* hepatitis C virus; *HIV,* human immunodeficiency virus; *HTLV,* human T-lymphotropic virus; *MTHFR,* methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase; *NGS,* next-generation DNA sequencing; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid; *VZV,* varicella-zoster virus; *SIV,* simian immunodeficiency virus.

Life Sciences; AcroMetrix Thermo-Fisher Scientific). Examples are intact virus particles, bacteria that naturally contain the target in their genome, cell lines that contain a specific genetic change, plasmids, and intracellular RNA or DNA. When it is difficult to obtain a natural analytical reference material, laboratories develop synthetic reference materials. These synthetic reference materials may be in the form of single- or double-stranded DNA or RNA that is manufactured in vitro and that can be accurately quantified by several physical and/or biochemical methods. Examples are synthesized DNA in the form of oligonucleotides, single-stranded DNA produced by cloning recombinant phage, double-stranded DNA produced by cloning into vectors such as plasmids, or a DNA fragment produced by a chemical or physical method from a larger DNA molecule followed by purification. Synthetic RNA reference materials can be generated by in vitro transcription of DNA templates.

Test validation requires verifying the new test results with those of another independently established method. Alternatively, the laboratory can split samples for a comparison study with another laboratory that performs a similar molecular test.

The evaluation of the precision of an assay is necessary to be able to determine what constitutes a biologic change in the analyte versus expected analytical variability of the laboratory measurement. Evaluation of the precision should take into account the entire testing process—nucleic acid extraction, amplification, detection, and quantitation. Precision studies should be carried out using test material or reference material that is similar to or closely resembling the intended patient specimen. Such material may be obtained by serial dilution of a target-positive specimen to below the limits of detection. If a characterized patient specimen is not available, then reference material may be created by mixing a cell line or purified virus microorganism into a pool of the patient specimens known to be negative for the specific analyte. These materials could be used for daily monitoring of the assay's performance as well. Daily QC for qualitative assays should include at least a single positive reference control with a concentration close to the limit of detection. Daily QC for quantitative methods should include at least two concentrations that span the linear dynamic range of the assay and, when possible, include the values used for clinical decision making.

Determination of the accuracy of molecular methods has been challenging because molecular methods have proven to be more sensitive than a large number of well-established methods, even criterion standard (gold standard) methods. Generally, when evaluating a new test, the results

obtained should be compared with the results obtained from an established test that is considered a criterion standard method. In the absence of a criterion standard, a laboratory could purchase reference material to be used for the analytical verification.

Determination of the linearity of a quantitative assay may be performed by testing at least four different levels of the analyte. Again, test material could be prepared by spiking the analyte into a negative patient sample or by performing serial dilution of a patient specimen known to contain a very high level of the analyte. The analytical sensitivity represents the ability of a test to obtain a positive result in concordance with positive results obtained by a reference method. For quantitative molecular methods, the lowest amount that the method can detect might be different from the lower limit of quantification for a particular nucleic acid or microorganism. The lower limit of quantification is the lowest amount of a nucleic acid sequence that can be detected with acceptable precision. Analytical sensitivity could be determined by performing serial dilutions of an appropriate number of samples containing different concentration of the analyte. Analytical specificity is the ability of an analytical method to detect and/or quantify what the analyte is intended to measure. One aspect of specificity that can easily be measured is the lack of cross-reactivity with closely related nucleic acid sequences or organisms. In addition, for infectious disease testing, it is important to determine lack of cross-reactivity with nucleic acid from organisms present in the normal flora or that would normally be present in a patient specimen.

It is also important to determine interfering substances that might affect the ability of a test to detect and/or quantitate the analyte of interest. The source of the interfering substance could be endogenous or exogenous. Exogenous interfering substances include drugs, parenteral nutrition, or anticoagulants. Some anticoagulants (e.g., heparin) may interfere with the amplification process. Endogenous interfering substances (e.g., lipids, bilirubin) could be the result of pathologic conditions. There are several approaches for detecting interfering substances. One can add target nucleic acid (e.g., purified nucleic acid, cells, or microorganisms) to specimens that contain various interfering substances. One can also add the specific nucleic acid target to specimens from patients with various conditions (e.g., jaundice) or who are receiving specific drug treatment.

Appropriate specimen handling, including specimen collection and transport conditions, is critical to the testing process to ensure specimen integrity. Inappropriate specimen handling could result in nucleic acid degradation, which can lead to falsely negative detection or inaccurate quantitation of nucleic acid. This is critical for assays that detect and/or measure eukaryote RNA and viral RNA. The best specimen type and quantity should be determined because molecular tests are applied to a variety of specimen types. Appropriate selection of specimen type will depend on multiple factors, including the clinical condition being studied and the type of nucleic acid required for the test. The format of the molecular assay being developed could greatly affect the amount of specimen required. Tests that require samples to be run in duplicate will require more specimen than those run in singleton. Specimen transport and storage should be evaluated for every assay and type of nucleic acid. Specimen transport and storage conditions could vary significantly between specimen type, analyte (RNA vs. DNA), cells, and microorganism and must be determined by each laboratory. There are special requirements for specimen transport and storage for RNA, because it is highly susceptible to degradation by ubiquitous enzymes. Transport and storage conditions can vary greatly from storage at room temperature to having to centrifuge samples, remove plasma or serum, and store at –80°C until tested.

CLINICAL VERIFICATION

Laboratory methods provide information for managing patients and addressing relevant clinical questions. The usefulness of a method depends on both the analytical performance and the clinical characteristics of the test (clinical sensitivity, specificity, and predictive value). The clinical significance of a test should be defined in terms of the disease or syndrome that is the subject of the test. These include disease prevalence, possible outcome, and cost to the patient and others for incorrect information (false-positive or false-negative results). Validation of clinical utility of an assay is a complex process that possesses many challenges. *Clinical utility* is referred to here as the indications for use. For example, the assay is intended to quantify a nucleic acid (analyte), but is indicated for certain clinical conditions or scenarios.

The first step of the analytical verification is to formulate a clinical question and to identify the target population to which the test will be applied. There are three parts in the definition of a clinical question: (1) characterize the subject population, (2) define the clinical management decision, and (3) identify the role of the test in clinical decision making. When the clinical use of each test is being considered, it is assumed that the test's analytical performance characteristics are well understood. Known analytical limitations (e.g., reportable range for quantifying, precision for nonclinical samples) should be taken into consideration when determining the clinical use for each particular assay. Clinical verification requires evaluation of the clinical sensitivity of the test by evaluating an appropriate number of samples from patients known to have the disease or condition. The population and type of sample should be fully described because the results for a test in a given population using a specified sample type may not be suitable for another population, or even for another sample type within the same population. It is important to define the purpose (i.e., what is the test measuring) and indications (i.e., what are the clinical circumstances in which the test will be useful) before starting the clinical verification. For example, indication for use of an assay could be diagnosis, screening in a population, confirming results from another assay, resolution of disease, or prognosis. Clinical specificity can be determined by analyzing samples from patients diagnosed with a different disease that is in the differential diagnosis and that might be confused with the indicated disease. In addition, specimens from healthy donors can be appropriate for determining the clinical specificity of the test. The other parameters that need to be determined are the positive and negative predictive values, as well as a predictive value of the test over the course of disease or therapy. Furthermore, in order to determine the clinical utility of a new LDT, variables that could affect results and their interpretation should also be considered. For example, for infectious disease, some of these variables could be microbial host interactions, microbial dynamics, variants and mutations, or replicative fitness of the microbial agent.

Data generated during the clinical verification of each assay should be gathered and kept organized to satisfy the requirements of the different regulatory bodies. Within the documentation, the laboratory should have available a list of indications for which the assay has been verified (see Table 70-4).

QUALITY CONTROL OF THE TESTING PROCESS

It is extremely important to implement a QC program for LDTs for validating the strength, purity, and performance of every critical reagent of the testing process. Every critical reagent should be tested before being approved for clinical testing. Tolerance limits should be established for every critical reagent. When possible, the tolerance limits should be established using a quantitative measurement to avoid subjective evaluation of the quality of the critical reagent.

QUALITY CONTROL OF EQUIPMENT

All equipment used in the molecular diagnostics laboratory must have written maintenance procedures and calibration checks. As with any other clinical laboratory equipment, tolerance limits for acceptable performance and calibration checks for all laboratory equipment used during the testing process should be clearly defined and monitored in a regular fashion to assure continued production of accurate and reliable test results. When performance or calibration checks fall outside the tolerance limit defined for any particular instrument, the latter should be immediately taken out of service for repair. After repair the equipment should be calibrated before being placed back in use. As part of the QA program developed by each laboratory, documentation of all maintenance, performance checks, calibration, or repair for each piece of equipment should be maintained and kept according to the laboratory policy of document retention.

Thermocyclers are a crucial item to any molecular diagnostics laboratory. Any change in the performance of thermocyclers has direct impact in the sensitivity and precision of the assay performed in that piece of equipment. Maintenance, calibration, and QC performance of all instruments should follow manufacturer's recommendations. Briefly, as part of the performance monitoring for thermocyclers, determination and documentation of the cycling time, verification of the setpoint error, and any error messages should be recorded. Cycling times between different runs should not differ more than a couple of minutes. Fluctuations in the cycling times are a warning sign that the thermocycler needs to be adjusted and restored to its original condition. In addition, it is recommended that the chiller, heater, and block temperature uniformity tests be performed according to the manufacturer's recommendations. The block temperature uniformity check can be accomplished by using a thermocoupler with a temperature probe.

Another important equipment item that is used daily in a molecular diagnostics laboratory is the pipetter. Pipetters are used for almost every step of the testing procedure. Special emphasis should be placed on the maintenance of the pipetters because they could be a major source of error. All other pieces of equipment should be maintained according to the manufacturer's recommendations. When possible, calibration of the equipment should be performed using certified standards or reference materials.

CONCLUSION

It is clear that the molecular diagnostics laboratory provides valuable contributions to patient care. Ongoing issues of test specificity, sensitivity, quality, interpretation, limitations, instrument performance, consumables, intellectual property, patient confidentiality, and reimbursement will continue to mature in the development of this discipline. One concern is the emergence of direct-to-consumer marketing of over-the-counter test kits and fee-for-service enterprises that provide reports to customers that predict the "risk" for carrying or getting a disease or diseases based on DNA typing (e.g., cheek swab). These reports can confuse the patient and his or her physician as well as institute undue alarm and stigma. Such testing should include careful interpretation and genetic counseling. Future developments in this field will undoubtedly continue to provide opportunities for improving diagnostic and prognostic information as we realize the promises of personalized medicine and more effective patient management.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Good laboratory practices for molecular genetic testing for heritable diseases and conditions, *MMWR* 58(RR06): 1–29, 2009.

This report provides detailed good laboratory practices to those laboratories offering molecular genetic testing.

College of American Pathologists Commission on Laboratory Accreditation. Molecular pathology checklist; 2014.

The College of American Pathologists provides a specific checklist for molecular pathology testing for those laboratories choosing to undergo CLIA surveys by CAP.

Ledbetter DH, Faucett WA: Issues in genetic testing for ultra-rare diseases: background and introduction, *Genet Med* 10:309–313, 2008.

This review provides insight into specific consideration regarding genetic testing of inherited disorders.

Rehm HL, Bale SJ, Bayrak-Toydemir P, et al: ACMG clinical laboratory standards for next-generation DNA sequencing, *Genet Med* 15:733–747, 2013. Available at: www.acmg.net/docs/ACMG_Lab_Standards_Next_Generation_Sequencing_Sept2013.pdf.

This report provides detailed good laboratory practices specific to next-generation DNA sequencing.

Secretary's Advisory Committee on Genetics, Health, and Society: *U.S. system of oversight of genetic testing: a response to the charge of the secretary of Health and Human Services*, Bethesda, Md., 2008, Department of Health and Human Services. Available at: http://osp.od.nih.gov/sites/default/files/SACGHS_oversight_report.pdf.

This report provides a comprehensive overview of the regulatory landscape regarding analytical, clinical validity, and clinical utility of genetic testing in the United States.

Supreme Court of the United States, Slip Opinion, Association For Molecular Pathology Et Al. v. Myriad Genetics, Inc, et al, Decided June 13, 2013. Available at: http://www.supremecourt.gov/opinions/12pdf/12-398_1b7d.pdf.

This Slip Opinion from the Supreme Court provides an overview of the ruling on gene patents.

REFERENCES

American College of Medical Genetics: *ACMG standards and guidelines for clinical genetic laboratories*, Bethesda, MD, 2008, American College of Medical Genetics. Available at: https://www.acmg.net/ACMG/Publications/Laboratory_Standards___Guidelines/ACMG/Publications/Laboratory_Standards___Guidelines.aspx?hkey=8d2a38c5-97f9-4c3e-9f41-38ee683bcc84.

American College of Obstetrics and Gynecology Committee on Genetics: ACOG committee opinion. Number 298, August 2004. Prenatal and preconceptional carrier screening for genetic diseases in individuals of Eastern European Jewish descent, *Obstet Gynecol* 104:425–428, 2004.

American Medical Association. Current Procedural Terminology – CPT 2015.

Association for Molecular Pathology statement: Recommendations for in-house development and operation of molecular diagnostic tests, *Am J Clin Pathol* 111:449–463, 1999.

Bachner P, Hamlin W: Federal regulation of clinical and the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988, part II, *Clin Lab Med* 13:987–994, 1993.

Burke W, Psaty BM: Personalized medicine in the era of genomics, *JAMA* 298:1682–1684, 2007.

Carter MA: Ethical aspects of genetic testing, *Biol Res Nurs* 3:24–32, 2001.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Current CLIA regulations (including all changes through January 24, 2004). Available at: www.cdc.gov/ophss/csels/dipss/CLIA.html.

Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services. Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA): Proficiency testing; 2008. Available at: http://www.cms.gov/Regulations-and-Guidance/Legislation/CLIA/Proficiency_Testing_Providers.html.

Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services: *Proficiency testing providers*, Baltimore, Md., 2008, Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services. Available at: www.cms.hhs.gov/clia/14_proficiency_testing_providers.asp.

Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. 42 C.F.R. Part 493: Medicare, Medicaid, and CLIA programs; laboratory requirements relating to quality systems and certain personnel qualifications. Final rule; 2003: 3640-3714.

Cooley LD, Lebo M, Li MM, et al: American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics technical standards and guidelines: microarray analysis for chromosome abnormalities in neoplastic disorders, *Genet Med* 15:484–494, 2013. Available at: https://www.acmg.net/docs/Microarray_for_chromosome_abnormalities_in_neoplastic_disease_GIM_June_2.pdf.

Daley R, Hill M, Chitty LS: Non-invasive prenatal diagnosis: progress and potential, *Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed* 99:F426–F430, 2014.

Dequeker E, Ramsden S, Grody WW, et al: Quality control in molecular genetic testing, *Nat Rev Genet* 2:717–723, 2001.

Food and Drug Administration Modernization Act. Public Law 105-15, 111 Statute 2296, 1997.

Forman MS, Valsamakis A: Comparison of automated and manual nucleic acid extraction methods for detection of enterovirus RNA, *J Clin Microbiol* 41:3532–3536, 2003.

Germer JJ, Harmsen WS, Mandrekar JN, et al: Evaluation of the COBAS TaqMan HCV test with automated sample processing using the MagNA pure LC instrument, *J Clin Microbiol* 43:293–298, 2005.

Grody WW: Quest for controls in molecular genetics, *J Mol Diagn* 5:209–211, 2003.

Hirschhorn K, Fleisher LD, Godmilow L, et al: Duty to re-contact, *Genet Med* 1:171–172, 1999.

Kaul K, Leonard DGB, Gonzalez A, et al: Oversight of genetic testing: an update, *J Mol Diagn* 3:85–91, 2001.

Kessler HH, Clarici AM, Stelzl E, et al: Fully automated detection of hepatitis C virus RNA in serum and whole-blood samples, *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 9:1385–1388, 2002.

Killeen AA, Leung WC, Payne D, et al: Certification in molecular pathology in the United States (Training and Education Committee, The Association for Molecular Pathology). Training and Education Committee, The Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 4:181–184, 2002.

Manning M, Hudgins L: Array-based technology and recommendations for utilization in medical genetics practice for detection of chromosomal abnormalities, *Genet Med* 12:742–745, 2010. Available at: https://www.acmg.net/StaticContent/PPG/CMA_2010.pdf.

McGovern MM, Benach MO, Wallenstein S, et al: Quality assurance in molecular genetic testing laboratories, *JAMA* 281:835–840, 1999.

McGovern MM, Elles R, Beretta I, et al: Report of an international survey of molecular genetic testing laboratories, *Community Genet* 10:123–131, 2007.

McNeil C: Regulating laboratory-developed tests: devil will be in details, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 107:2015. pii: djv113.

Medical Device Amendments of 1976. Public Law 94-295, 90 Statute 539, 1976.

Medical devices: classification/reclassification; restricted devices; analyte specific reagents, *Fed Regist* 62:62243–62260, 1997.

Mulcahy GM: The integration of molecular diagnostic methods into the clinical laboratory, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 29:43–54, 1999.

National Institutes of Health: *National Cancer Institute best practices for biospecimen resources*, Bethesda, Md., 2007, National Institutes of Health. Available at: http://biospecimens.cancer.gov/global/pdfs/nci_best_practices_060507.pdf.

National Newborn Screening and Genetics Resource Center. Available at: http://genes-r-us.uthscsa.edu.

Neumaier M, Braun A, Wagener C: Fundamentals of quality assessment of molecular amplification methods in clinical diagnostics. International Federation of Clinical Chemistry Scientific Division Committee on Molecular Biology Techniques, *Clin Chem* 44:12–26, 1998.

Niesters HG: Clinical virology in real time, *J Clin Virol* 25(Suppl 3):3–12, 2000.

Niesters HG: Quantitation of viral load using real-time amplification techniques, *Methods* 25:419–429, 2001.

Prence EM: A practical guide for the validation of genetic tests, *Genet Test* 3:201–205, 1999.

Richards S, Aziz N, Bale S, et al: Standards and guidelines for the interpretation of sequence variants: a joint consensus recommendation of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics and the Association for Molecular Pathology, *Genet Med* 17:424–425, 2015. Available at: www.acmg.net/docs/Standards_Guidelines_for_the_Interpretation_of_Sequence_Variants.pdf. advanced online publication March 5.

Richards CS, Grody WW: Alternative approaches to proficiency testing in molecular genetics, *Clin Chem* 49:717–718, 2003.

Safe Medical Device Act of 1990. Public Law 101-629, 104 Statute 4523, 1990.

Schwartz MK: Genetic testing and the clinical laboratory improvement amendments of 1988: present and future, *Clin Chem* 45:739–745, 1999.

Schrijver I, Aziz N, Farkas DH, et al: Opportunities and challenges associated with clinical diagnostic genome sequencing: a report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 14:525–540, 2012.

South ST, Lee C, Lamb AN, et al: ACMG Standards and Guidelines for constitutional cytogenomic microarray analysis, including postnatal and prenatal applications: revision 2013, *Genet Med* 15(11):901–909, 2013. Available at: https://www.acmg.net/docs/ACMG_Lab_Standards_and_Guidelines_CMA_Revision_2013_GIM_112013.pdf.

Spector EB, Grody WW, Matteson CJ, et al: Technical standards and guidelines: venous thromboembolism (factor V Leiden and prothrombin 20210G>A testing): a disease-specific supplement to the standards and guidelines for clinical genetics laboratories, *Genet Med* 7:444–453, 2005.

Stemmer C, Beau-Faller M, Pencreac'h E, et al: Use of magnetic beads for plasma cell-free DNA extraction: toward automation of plasma DNA analysis for molecular diagnostics, *Clin Chem* 49:1953–1955, 2003.

Swanson PE: Labels, disclaimers, and rules (oh my!). Analyte-specific reagents and practice of immunohistochemistry, *Am J Clin Pathol* 111:445–448, 1999.

ten Bosch JR, Grody WW: Keeping up with the next generation: massively parallel sequencing in clinical diagnostics, *J Mol Diagn* 10:484–492, 2008.

The Food and Drug Administration. Workshops and Conferences. Ultra high throughput sequencing for clinical diagnostic applications—approaches to assess analytical validity, June 23, 2011. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/NewsEvents/WorkshopsConferences/ucm255327.htm.

Vernet G: Molecular diagnostics in virology, *J Clin Virol* 31:239–247, 2004.

CHAPTER 71

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS OF GENETIC DISEASES

Wayne W. Grody

CHOICE OF TECHNIQUES, 1378

CHOICE OF APPLICATIONS, 1379

SPECIAL CONCEPTS UNIQUE TO MOLECULAR GENETIC DISORDERS, 1381

Molecular Heterogeneity, 1381
Variable Penetrance and Expressivity, 1381
Uniparental Disomy, 1381
Imprinting, 1381
Anticipation, 1381
Epigenetic Influences and Nonmendelian Inheritance, 1382
Allele Frequencies and Mass Population Screening, 1382
Predictive Genetic Testing, 1382

SPECIFIC DISEASE EXAMPLES, 1382

Cystic Fibrosis, 1382
Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy, 1383
Sickle Cell Anemia and Other Hemoglobinopathies, 1384
Hereditary Thrombophilias, 1384
Trinucleotide Repeat Expansion Disorders, 1385
Prader-Willi and Angelman Syndromes, 1388
Familial Cancers, 1388
Hemochromatosis, 1391
Spinal Muscular Atrophy, 1392
Mitochondrial DNA Disorders, 1392
Other Targets of Molecular Genetic Testing and Screening, 1392

THE NEW FRONTIER OF DIAGNOSTIC MOLECULAR GENETICS: GENOME-LEVEL DNA SEQUENCING, 1393

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1394

KEY POINTS

- Molecular testing for inherited disorders may be the most rapidly growing area of molecular pathology, owing to the plethora of disease genes discovered through the Human Genome Project and subsequent studies.
- The mutations for single-gene disorders, whether dominant or recessive, can be detected by a variety of molecular diagnostic techniques, either specific to the mutation in question, if it is known, or by comprehensive gene sequencing or mutation scanning approaches if the mutation is not known.
- Certain disorders, such as cystic fibrosis, have sufficiently high mutation carrier frequencies that they have become targets for large-scale population screening programs.
- Late-onset dominant disorders, such as Huntington disease and familial cancers, are appropriate targets of presymptomatic testing, provided sufficient attention is paid to the associated genetic counseling and ethical concerns.
- The advent of massively parallel ("next-generation") DNA sequencing promises to revolutionize the field, with whole-exome or whole-genome sequencing tending to replace or supplement single-gene testing.
- Ethical issues raised by each of these applications involve genetic privacy, informed consent, pregnancy termination, potential stigmatization, and theoretical risk for insurance discrimination.

Probably the fastest-growing and perhaps the most controversial area of molecular pathology, diagnostic molecular genetics holds promise of becoming the most powerful diagnostic and screening tool of the 21st century. With the rapidly accelerating pace of identification of new disease genes after completion of the Human Genome Project and the recognition that virtually all diseases, including neoplastic and even infectious ones, have some genetic component, the clinical utility of this subspecialty can only continue to expand. Moreover, its unique capability to diagnose disease both prenatally and presymptomatically should confer on it a primary role in preventive medicine, a focus of increasing urgency in the present era of medical care cost containment. Even beyond that, diagnostic molecular genetics leads naturally into therapeutic molecular genetics, because essentially the same normal gene sequences used to detect molecular genetic defects by deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) hybridization could theoretically be used to correct such defects by gene replacement therapy. Whereas the pace of advances in the latter activity has remained frustratingly slow, it is safe to say that it will become an important therapeutic modality during this century. When that happens, it will become even further intertwined with the activities of the molecular diagnostics laboratory, which will have the responsibility of confirming proper insertion and monitoring appropriate expression of the replacement gene.

Yet such progress does not come unencumbered by appreciable obstacles. Aside from the considerable technical sophistication and complexity of these procedures, they are inextricably bound up with a number of thorny ethical dilemmas. Dissecting a patient's most fundamental constitutional makeup, and the inborn errors therein, raises problematic questions about genetic discrimination, stigmatization, ethnic differences, privacy, informed consent, and confidentiality. Since at the molecular genetic level everything becomes a preexisting condition, the very definition of insurability may need to be revised, and instances of insurance and employment discrimination as a result of genetic testing, although rare (Hall & Rich, 2000), have been reported (Billings et al, 1992). It is reassuring that in the United States, where privately insured health care is most vulnerable to such abuses, we now have federal legislation, the Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act, prohibiting discrimination in health insurance and employment based on genetic test results, although certain limitations still remain (Baruch & Hudson, 2008). Furthermore, discovery of any such heritable mutations in an individual has profound implications far beyond the immediate patient who requested the DNA test (the *proband*), extending to all the other members of that person's family, none of whom may have consented to exploring or revealing this type of information. Indeed, with the almost unlimited power of DNA testing afforded by amplification techniques such as the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and high-throughput genomic analysis technologies (see Chapters 67 and 78), it becomes quite easy to perform genetic analysis without the patient's consent or even knowledge, because the testing can be done on minute portions of tissue or fluid samples obtained for other unrelated purposes. Prenatal diagnosis—and, by extension, preconception genetic carrier screening of couples—becomes caught up in the passionate ethical and religious debates over abortion. And gene therapy, despite general consensus that it should be directed only at somatic rather than germline cellular targets (and even this notion is beginning to change), raises the specter of eugenics among those who do not have to remember back all that far to times when such notions were not only accepted but actively espoused.

Much of diagnostic molecular genetics involves the assessment of risk for occurrence or recurrence of a disorder in an individual or family. For

reasons described more fully later in this chapter, the test results obtained are often expressed not in terms of a numerical concentration or as a yes/no answer, but rather as a probability, which sometimes is derived by multifactorial Bayesian analysis (Ojino & Wilson, 2004a). The accurate and meaningful conveyance of such complex uncertainties to patients and even referring physicians can be quite difficult and time-consuming. For this reason, and owing to the serious ethical implications of these tests as described previously, this area of laboratory medicine, perhaps more than most others, requires very close communication between the laboratory and the referring clinician or genetic counselor. In fact, some of these tests, particularly the emotionally charged predictive ones, should only be ordered through a medical geneticist or genetic counselor, because these are the specialists who are best qualified to assess the appropriateness of the test and explain the results to the patient. Some large academic and commercial reference laboratories specializing in this type of testing even employ their own genetic counselors on staff as a further safeguard to ensure appropriate use and communication with primary care physicians who may not be well-versed in these matters.

CHOICE OF TECHNIQUES

With so many genetic disease genes, loci, and mutational mechanisms known, diagnostic molecular genetics must take advantage of the entire spectrum of modern molecular biological techniques available. These include, among others (see Chapters 66 to 69):

- PCR
- Southern blotting
- Allele-specific probe hybridization
- DNA sequencing (Sanger method)
- Real-time PCR
- Nucleic acid microarrays
- Invader assay
- Amplification refractory mutation system (ARMS)
- Oligonucleotide ligation assay (OLA)
- Multiplex ligation-dependent probe amplification (MLPA)
- Mutation scanning methods, such as denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE)
- Single-strand conformation polymorphism (SSCP)
- Mass spectrometry
- Massively parallel (next-generation) DNA sequencing (NGS)

The choice of which technique to use in a particular case will depend, to a large extent, on two factors: (1) the present knowledge of the gene(s) associated with the disease in question and (2) its degree of molecular heterogeneity. The first criterion roughly divides all genetic diseases into two categories: those for which the causative gene has been isolated and those for which it has not. Those in the first category can often be approached by direct gene/mutation analysis; those in the latter can only be approached by linkage analysis using polymorphic DNA markers nearby on the same chromosome, as long as the disease has been mapped to that rather crude level. The second concept, heterogeneity, refers to the number of different genes, or the variety of mutations within a single gene, that can cause the same disease. The greater the heterogeneity, the more difficult, labor-intensive, and expensive the DNA test becomes (and the more complex the results reporting and genetic counseling). In other disorders, one or more mutations may be of sufficient high frequency in particular racial/ethnic populations that screening for those few, while ignoring the many rarer mutations reported, can provide a test of sufficient yield to justify the targeted approach.

To make such tests practical and of reasonable cost, a number of *multiplexing strategies* for simultaneous mutation detection have been devised. All of these involve some compromise as to overall test sensitivity. Indeed, the field of molecular genetic testing tolerates, by necessity, a number of screening tests with clinical sensitivities noticeably below those that would be considered acceptable in other areas of the clinical laboratory. The decision of just how low the acceptable sensitivity cutoff should be often comes down to public health considerations. Most geneticists have reasoned that, at least for screening tests, the potential public health benefits of offering an inexpensive and technically feasible test of admittedly suboptimal sensitivity outweigh the arguments for withholding it, as long as sufficient education and counseling are provided to patients so that they understand the residual risk inherent in a negative test result. It is important to keep in mind that this discussion is about clinical sensitivity, not analytical sensitivity. It is assumed that the test is capable of detecting a given mutation whenever it is present; it is just that many rarer mutations will not be targeted by the assay, so that some proportion of carriers will be "missed"—a sort of "clinical false-negative" (Palomaki et al, 2004).

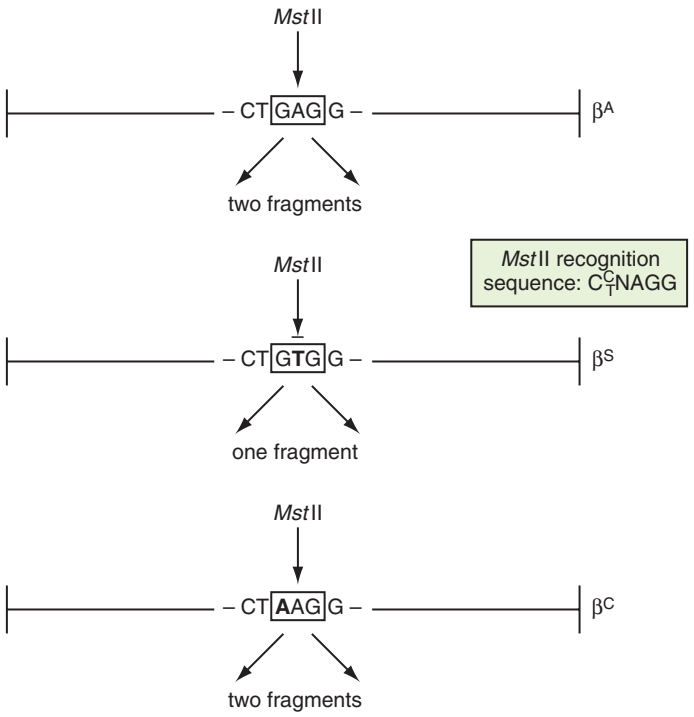


Figure 71-1 Schematic example of detection of a point mutation by differential cleavage with a restriction enzyme. In this case, the sickle cell mutation, substitution of T for A in codon 6 of the β-globin gene destroys an *Mst*II cleavage site so that digestion of a polymerase chain reaction product from the region will produce two DNA fragments in normals but only one fragment in HbS homozygotes. Mutation of the first nucleotide in this codon, found in hemoglobin C disease, does not destroy the *Mst*II site (because the enzyme can accommodate any nucleotide in this position) and thus cannot be detected by this method.

Direct mutation tests were simplified immeasurably by the advent of PCR in the mid-1980s. Through the judicious choice of primers, this technique allows the laboratory to hone in on the precise mutation of interest, or a "hot spot" within a gene containing several possible mutation sites, using minute amounts of starting material. Once the region containing the suspected mutation is amplified, it can be analyzed by gel or capillary electrophoresis, sequencing, or DNA probe hybridization. For a deletion or insertion that would be expected to alter the length of the amplicon, accurate molecular sizing of the PCR products by electrophoresis will be sufficient. Alternatively, if the deletion or point mutation disrupts (or creates) a restriction endonuclease cleavage site, it can be detected by electrophoretic analysis of PCR products digested with that enzyme (Fig. 71-1). Another option is to hybridize the PCR products with allele-specific oligonucleotide (ASO) probes, short DNA fragments that are precisely complementary to either the normal or mutant target sequence. As discussed in Chapter 68, if the hybridization, usually in a dot- or line-blot format, is performed under sufficiently stringent conditions, target DNA containing the mutation will hybridize only with the mutant probe, and vice versa for wild-type target DNA. Several mutation hot spots in a gene can be amplified together by multiplex PCR. As a variation on this approach, any number of allelic probes can be spread out on a solid support for subsequent hybridization with the specimen DNA (or amplicons) in the form of a microarray or in suspension on microbeads. Lastly, a number of commercial reagents and instruments are available that detect point mutations by differential probe/quencher hybridization or by capillary electrophoresis and other sophisticated techniques, as described in Chapters 68 and 78.

To screen a disease gene for unknown mutations that may lie anywhere within it, several *mutation scanning* techniques that cast a wider net are available. SSCP, DGGE, denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography, and other variations of the same principle can theoretically detect point mutations anywhere within a gene by virtue of the altered topology that the substituted nucleotides induce in single-stranded or mismatched double-stranded DNA. These approaches obviate the need for separate and specific ASO probes for every possible mutation, although they can only be performed on limited PCR-amplified stretches of the gene (usually single exons or parts of exons) at one time and they are not 100% sensitive. The protein truncation test detects mutations causing premature

termination of the gene's polypeptide product; it requires an involved *in vitro* transcription/translation approach and will only pick up "stop" (nonsense) mutations (and some frameshifts and splicing variants) while overlooking common single-nucleotide substitutions (missense mutations). The only technique that should be 100% sensitive in detecting all possible point mutations, at least in theory, is complete DNA sequencing of the gene, although even it will miss mutations that lie outside the usual coding region targets (e.g., in introns, promoters, or enhancer regions). Now that DNA sequencing has become so much more robust and less expensive in recent years, the various mutation-scanning and protein truncation approaches are used less than in the past.

Disorders caused by expansion of a trinucleotide repeat can be diagnosed by Southern blot or PCR, in either case by observing a larger-than-normal target DNA fragment. Disorders caused by large deletions may be diagnosed by Southern blot by observing loss or decrease in size of a target fragment, or by PCR, through loss of a product normally amplified from that site or appearance of a new "junction" fragment, or by MLPA. It should be noted that a weakness of the newer next-generation DNA sequencing techniques is their inability to identify either repeat expansions or sizeable deletions (except for deletions on the X chromosome in a male).

For those disorders with too many unknown mutations, or an unknown gene, predictive diagnosis by *linkage analysis* is possible in certain families. Because the analysis requires comparative testing of other affected and unaffected siblings and parents, not every family will be accessible or informative using this approach. Also required is knowledge of closely linked, preferably flanking or even intragenic polymorphic DNA markers that can be observed to cosegregate consistently with either the normal or disease phenotype within the family. Traditionally, the markers used have been restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLPs) detected by Southern blot. But in more recent years, microsatellite polymorphisms—tandem oligonucleotide sequences of variable repeat length—that are detectable by PCR and gel or capillary electrophoresis have become favored because of their abundance throughout the genome, the multiallelic nature of their polymorphisms, and the relative ease of the testing method. Very large genes, such as those for neurofibromatosis and Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD), will usually have intragenic microsatellites that can be accessed, minimizing the chances of recombination between the mutation and the marker. But even here, the advent of next-generation sequencing has allowed for the direct detection of mutations in most cases, without the need to resort to linkage analysis.

Linkage techniques are less favored than the direct mutation detection approach because of the need to test multiple family members and because meiotic recombination between the gene and the marker can disrupt the apparent phase of linkage between parent and offspring, leading to false-positive or false-negative interpretation of results. For each centimorgan of map distance between the two loci, 1% recombination can be expected (1 cM = 1 million base pairs [bp]). For example, in Figure 71-2 the fetus is predicted to be affected, having inherited the same upper RFLP fragment as the previously affected son. But if the polymorphic restriction endonuclease site being tested is 5cM away from the disease gene, one can only conclude that the fetus is at 95% risk of being affected. However, with the completion of the Human Genome Project providing us with the full genomic sequence, which is saturated with polymorphic markers (both short tandem repeats and single-nucleotide polymorphisms), there is no longer any need to rely on a linked marker that is so far away from the disease gene.

Although this chapter is primarily concerned with molecular testing for single-gene Mendelian disorders, it would be remiss not to acknowledge the newer techniques now available for *whole-genome analysis*. This can be done using either high-density oligonucleotide microarray platforms or so-called *massively parallel* or "*next-generation*" *DNA sequencing*. The former was the first to enter routine use in clinical genetics, in the form of array comparative genomic hybridization, now usually called *chromosomal microarray* (CMA). This technique employs a high number (500,000 to more than 1,000,000) DNA probes on the array, chosen so that their complementary genomic sequences span the entire genome at regular intervals. Total genomic DNA from the patient is compared by hybridization to the array against what a "normal" total genomic control sample would produce (i.e., no pathologic gains or losses of hybridization signal). If the patient's DNA contains a deletion on a certain chromosome, this will be indicated by a decrease or absence of hybridization signal to the probes spanning that region (Fig. 71-3). Conversely, if the patient's DNA contains a duplication (insertion) of a chromosomal region, an excess of hybridization signal will be seen for that region. The resolution for detecting these *copy number variants* (CNVs) is much finer than can be achieved by classic karyotype analysis under the light microscope, and is continually improving as ever greater numbers of probes, at ever diminishing base-pair intervals, are added to the arrays. And it is far more cost-effective and comprehensive than the previous alternative of running many different fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) probes in series. As such, it has rapidly become a predominant technique for detecting deletions/duplications in patients with congenital problems that do not readily suggest a particular known genetic syndrome, including those with nonspecific physical malformations/dysmorphisms, developmental delay, and/or autism, and in fact is now considered standard of practice for these indications instead of ordering a karyotype (Manning et al, 2010; Miller et al, 2010). However, it does have some limitations. First, because all it does is examine differences in hybridization intensity across the total genomic DNA, balanced translocations and inversions with no gain or loss of genetic material will not be detected. Second, all human genomes contain a great many CNVs that are nonpathologic. Some of these are well-known polymorphisms and thus can be discounted as etiologic if observed in a patient; but many others are not yet known or studied extensively, producing the challenging "CNV of uncertain clinical significance." Aside from using intuition based on the particular genes encompassed by the deletion or insertion, testing of the parents may also be helpful. If a normal parent carries the same deletion, it is less likely to be pathologic (though there are exceptions).

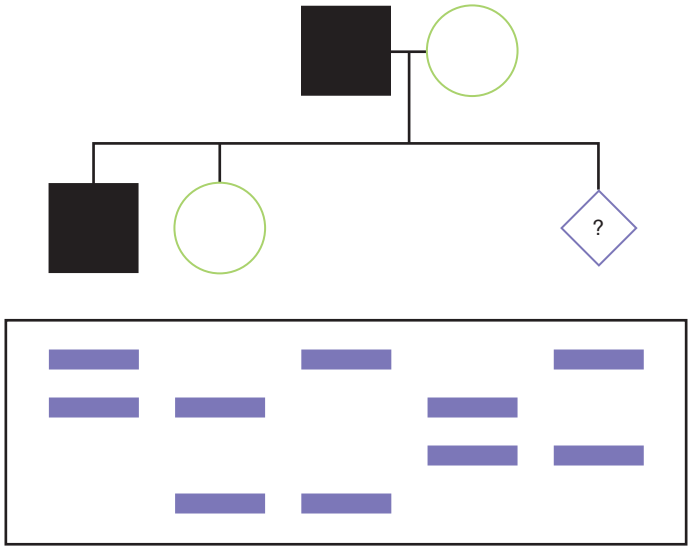


Figure 71-2 Example of restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis for prenatal diagnosis of an autosomal dominant disorder. In this Southern blot, the upper band from the father is the one that cosegregates with the disease phenotype, as seen in the affected son. Because the fetus (indicated by the *?*) has also inherited this band, it is predicted to be affected. The precise risk depends on the map distance between the disease gene and the restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) marker.

The ultimate gold standard for identifying all possible mutations would of course be whole-genome sequencing. It took 13 years to completely sequence the consensus human genome under the Human Genome Project using conventional Sanger sequencing platforms (see Chapter 78). Now we have a new generation of automated DNA sequencers based on radically different chemistries, involving single-molecule sequencing of millions of short fragments of the patient's genome in parallel, which are then assembled into the full genome by the analytic and bioinformatic software. These instruments are capable of sequencing billions of bases per day at relatively reasonable cost (a few thousand dollars at time of this writing), at last putting the whole human genome in reach for routine analysis. At present, the major clinical application of this technology in genetics is for the diagnosis of syndromic-appearing conditions for which standard single-gene and other clinical laboratory tests have been unrevealing (see later for a detailed description of this process). Of course, it is also being applied to oncology, with next-generation sequencing of tumor DNA to detect so-called *druggable* somatic mutations (see Chapter 73).

CHOICE OF APPLICATIONS

To some extent, the choice of technique will also depend on the application or clinical indication. In medical genetics, these applications fall into five

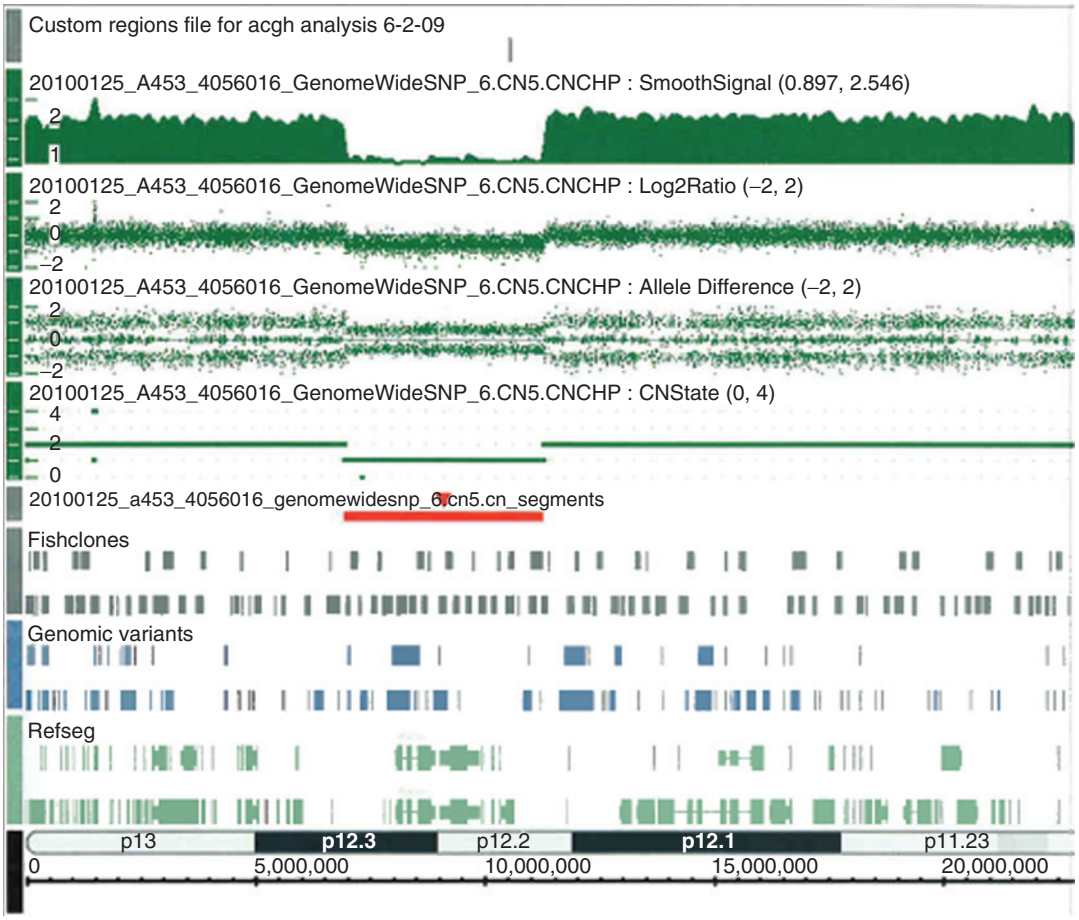


Figure 71-3 Example of a typical deletion result by array comparative hybridization. The gap in hybridization signal demarcated by the red line indicates a 4.329 Mb hemizygous deletion on chromosome 20p12.2-12.3 (6975661 to 11304543 bp). This deletion encompasses multiple genes, including *JAG1*, the gene implicated in Alagille syndrome, which was the clinical diagnosis in the tested patient. (Courtesy of Dr. Xinmin Li.)

major areas: carrier screening, newborn screening, diagnostic testing, presymptomatic DNA testing, and prenatal testing.

Carrier screening is the term applied to detection of recessive mutations in healthy individuals for purposes of genetic counseling and family planning. This application is further subdivided into screening of those individuals with a family history of the disorder and population-based screening of large numbers of individuals who have negative family history but who may be at risk for the disorder because of its prevalence within their ethnic group or in the population at large. In either case, the ultimate purpose is to identify couples at risk (i.e., both the man and the woman are heterozygous for mutations within the gene) who would then have a 25% chance of having an affected child with each pregnancy. But the testing strategies chosen for the two groups will differ. A person whose sibling has the disorder is at much higher risk of being a carrier than someone in the general population. That person may therefore warrant more aggressive testing (e.g., screening for a greater number of mutations or possibly linkage analysis or even complete gene sequencing) than would be cost-effective for a member of the general population. On the other hand, access to the affected sibling's DNA may allow prior identification of the familial mutation, which would render subsequent testing of other family members much easier and straightforward. Population-based screening, in contrast, typically strives to keep the testing procedure as rapid and inexpensive as possible, focusing on perhaps a few of the more prevalent mutations, sacrificing clinical test sensitivity for cost-effectiveness and expediency. And with a negative family history, there are no affected family members to make either single-site mutation testing or linkage analysis an option.

Like population-based carrier screening, *newborn screening* aims to identify relatively prevalent (as genetic diseases go) inherited defects in otherwise asymptomatic individuals. Indeed, the most important disease targets, such as phenylketonuria, galactosemia, sickle cell disease, and cystic fibrosis (CF), are likewise autosomal recessive disorders. In the case of newborn screening, however, the goal is to ascertain affected babies early in life so that treatment (dietary or pharmaceutical) can be initiated before irreversible damage occurs. Currently, molecular genetic methods in this setting are employed mainly as a backup for confirmation of positive results ascertained by less expensive and more comprehensive biochemical or enzymatic methods, but this situation could reverse itself as molecular methods become increasingly cost-effective, high-throughput, and comprehensive. As next-generation sequencing becomes less and less costly, it is not such a stretch to predict that all newborns may someday undergo a full-genome analysis as their initial screen.

Diagnostic genetic testing is, by definition, performed on a symptomatic individual. Because the single-gene DNA tests are absolutely disease-specific and the diseases themselves quite rare, these procedures do not cast a wide enough net to be used for extensive differential diagnosis; the symptoms must be sufficiently suggestive of the disorder in question to justify ordering the test. Also, one must weigh the DNA test against more traditional methods with regard to cost, convenience, and utility. For example, hemoglobin (Hb) electrophoresis may be more convenient and comprehensive for sorting out a suspected hemoglobinopathy than the specific DNA test for the sickle cell disease mutation alone. On the other hand, molecular testing may be more advantageous for early or atypical clinical presentations. For example, molecular testing for CF mutations can be performed in the newborn period when traditional sweat chloride analysis is either inconvenient or unreliable. In such cases, it is also important to determine that the mutation spectrum of the test represents the appropriate demographic. If not, a "negative" test may not be truly accurate. DNA tests also have the advantage of working well postmortem, when classic biochemical analytes can no longer be assessed.

Presymptomatic DNA testing is applied primarily to late-onset dominant disorders, in which the offspring of an affected parent are aware that they are at 50% risk for having inherited the disease gene and desire to know their status before its clinical onset to make informed reproductive, employment, and lifestyle decisions or to initiate surveillance or preventive interventions. The prototypic disorders in this group are Huntington

disease and the heritable cancer syndromes, although such diseases as neurofibromatosis, Marfan syndrome, adult polycystic kidney disease, and tuberous sclerosis are also relevant. From a psychosocial and ethical standpoint, this sort of testing has been the most problematic of any in diagnostic molecular genetics, with the risk for severe adverse consequences of results reporting, including suicide. Because of this, established testing protocols include stipulations for proper informed consent, concurrent clinical assessment, extensive pretest and posttest genetic counseling, and psychosocial support (Huntington's Disease Society of America, 1989; American College of Medical Genetics, 1999).

Finally, there is the clinical application most distinctive to medical genetics: *prenatal testing*, or the detection of genetic disease in the fetus. With a few exceptions (e.g., hydrops fetalis in homozygous β-thalassemia, thanatophoric dwarfism, and type I osteogenesis imperfecta), most Mendelian disorders, especially inborn errors of metabolism, are not expressed either visibly (by ultrasound) or biochemically in the fetus, so predictive diagnosis can only be made at the DNA level. Even for those disorders that might be detected biochemically, DNA often proves to be a far more accessible substrate, from an obstetric point of view, than the affected protein products or metabolic substrates. Whereas molecular analysis can be performed on minute amounts of amniotic fluid or chorionic villus samples collected by routine methods, even if obtained for other purposes, unless the protein product is expressed in fibroblasts (and thus amniocytes), biochemical analysis will require invasive biopsy of deep fetal tissues or fetal blood sampling. For example, assay of phenylalanine hydroxylase activity to diagnose phenylketonuria would require fetal liver biopsy, and quantitation of dystrophin to diagnose DMD would require fetal muscle biopsy.

The primary objective in prenatal diagnosis is the identification of an affected fetus in a timely manner so that a practical option of pregnancy termination can be offered to the couple. Even though some may argue an advantage for obtaining prenatal diagnosis so that therapy can be instituted promptly at birth, or for psychological reassurance of a couple if the fetus is found to be unaffected, it may be difficult to justify the risk (albeit low) for miscarriage from amniocentesis and chorionic villus sampling performed for these other purposes. For an affected fetus, unless one intends to initiate therapy in utero, provisional treatment at birth while awaiting confirmatory neonatal testing is perfectly acceptable.

Although prenatal genetic counseling is always nondirective, with moral and/or religious objections to abortion respected, both the clinician and the DNA testing laboratory have a legitimate right and, indeed, responsibility to question the appropriateness of a prenatal test request, with its attendant risk and expense, from a couple for whom termination is not an option (the same would apply to requests coming too late in pregnancy for termination to be performed). It is because of these problems that invasive prenatal testing is not offered as a general population screening tool in women with no family history or known carrier status for the disorder in question. The power of PCR to enable single-cell genetic analysis has opened the way for preimplantation diagnosis, usually approached by performing in vitro fertilization and microdissection of a single blastomere from the early embryo. This strategy, initially applied to selected cases at risk for CF (Handyside et al, 1992) and other disorders, could potentially be offered to any at-risk couple for whom abortion is not an option, although it is not without its own ethical (and economic) considerations. Recently it has begun to be used to diagnose adult-onset diseases such as familial breast/ovarian cancer (*BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes), which, because they are late-onset, incompletely penetrant, and potentially treatable, would otherwise raise uncomfortable objections to traditional amniocentesis and pregnancy termination (Sagi et al, 2009).

Despite all these medical and moral dilemmas, when performed in appropriate circumstances, prenatal molecular genetic testing can offer at-risk couples, many of whom have already suffered the trauma of at least one affected child, one of the most valuable and life-changing services in all of clinical medicine.

SPECIAL CONCEPTS UNIQUE TO MOLECULAR GENETIC DISORDERS

Whereas the DNA analysis techniques discussed in this chapter for diagnosis of genetic disease are generally the same as those used for molecular diagnosis of cancer or infectious diseases, their application in the former has revealed a number of unusual phenomena that one must keep in mind when dealing with particular hereditary disorders. Some of these phenomena were known since Mendel's time but can now be understood mechanistically at the DNA level; others have emerged much more recently as unexpected byproducts of the molecular dissection of specific disease genes.

MOLECULAR HETEROGENEITY

Few genetic disorders are associated with a single mutation consistently identified in all affected cases (e.g., the missense mutation in codon 6 of the *β-globin* gene causing sickle cell disease). The vast majority of genetic disorders can be caused by more than one—sometimes hundreds or thousands—of different mutations within the disease gene (e.g., the *CFTR* gene of cystic fibrosis), and sometimes even by more than one gene (e.g., the *TSC1* and *TSC2* genes of tuberous sclerosis or the *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes of familial breast/ovarian cancer). Obviously, identifying the causative mutations in such disorders is technically much more difficult or sometimes impossible. A corollary of such molecular heterogeneity is that not all of the mutations will produce equally severe disease: some may cause only mild forms or related syndromes with little resemblance to the classic phenotype (e.g., isolated absence of the vas deferens caused by certain mutations in the *CFTR* gene, or either multiple endocrine neoplasia or Hirschsprung disease caused by different mutations in the *RET* gene). All of this variability adds greatly to the complexity of genetic counseling and genetic testing.

VARIABLE PENETRANCE AND EXPRESSIVITY

Penetrance refers to the proportion of individuals who, having inherited a mutant disease gene, will actually display the disease phenotype. Usually applied to dominant disorders, it can produce the striking appearance of generation-skipping in disease pedigrees. This can complicate both molecular diagnostics and genetic counseling, because it may not be clear whether the propositus inherited the disease from a parent or instead represents a new mutation in the family. It is a feature of such relatively common genetic disorders as Marfan syndrome and neurofibromatosis.

Variable expressivity refers to the appearance of different signs and symptoms of a disorder in individuals inheriting the same mutation(s). Like penetrance, it is probably a reflection of differential gene effects within dissimilar genetic backgrounds (in other words, the modulation of phenotypic expression by other nonallelic or *modifier* genes). It, too, makes ascertainment and counseling difficult, and raises ethical issues in considering abortion for diseases of variable and unpredictable severity.

UNIPARENTAL DISOMY

This unusual cause of a recessive single-gene disorder was first discovered in a CF patient, only one of whose parents was a carrier (Spence et al, 1988). By DNA haplotyping using polymorphic markers, it was shown that the patient had inherited two copies of the carrier parent's chromosome 7 containing the mutant *CFTR* gene and no chromosome 7 from the other parent. The phenomenon has since been observed in other cases of CF and diseases involving other chromosomes as well. For some diseases, such as Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes (see later discussion), the incidence of uniparental disomy approaches that of classic mutation mechanisms in the molecular pathogenesis, justifying routine testing for this phenomenon.

IMPRINTING

Imprinting refers to the differential expression of a gene in an offspring, depending on whether it was inherited from the mother or the father, or sometimes on other epigenetic influences. Some genes are only expressed or, conversely, turned off, when they pass through the oocyte lineage, and others only when they pass through the spermatocyte line. If an individual inherits the normal allele through the nonexpressing parental line, it cannot counteract a recessive mutation inherited from the other parent. In at least some cases, the molecular mechanism appears to be differential methylation of chromosome regions and regulatory elements. This is the basis for both the deletional and uniparental disomy cases of Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes (Gurrieri & Accadia, 2009).

ANTICIPATION

Anticipation refers to a progressive increase in severity and/or decrease in age of onset of a genetic disorder in subsequent generations of a family. It is typically associated with the trinucleotide repeat disorders, such as myotonic dystrophy and Huntington disease, in which the increasing severity can be correlated with further expansion of the repeat region. In the

former disease, especially severe cases with childhood or infantile onset have been born to affected mothers, while in the latter disease the phenomenon occurs solely with paternal transmission, invoking a parent-of-origin effect similar to imprinting (Koshy & Zoghbi, 1997). It is for these reasons that accurate molecular sizing of trinucleotide repeat lengths is so important for diagnosis, prognosis, and genetic counseling in these disorders.

EPIGENETIC INFLUENCES AND NONMENDELIAN INHERITANCE

Epigenetic changes are heritable but potentially reversible changes in gene expression that do not represent a change in the sequence of the cell's genomic DNA. The most striking examples of epigenetic inheritance are genomic imprinting (discussed previously) and mammalian X-chromosome inactivation, both involving transcriptional silencing of genes by methylation of cytosines at CpG dinucleotides. The methylation status of DNA is maintained following DNA replication by methylases, which act on hemimethylated double-stranded DNA to methylate the newly synthesized DNA strand as well. The process is perpetuated indefinitely in succeeding cell divisions. We now know that de novo methylation of CpG doublets can occur in the promoters of some tumor suppressor genes, silencing these genes and in essence constituting one or both of the "hits" in a tumor suppressor gene that leads to tumor development (Jacinto & Esteller, 2007).

Another category of epigenetic inheritance that is less clearly understood involves the property of some proteins to influence the conformation of newly synthesized or assembled proteins in a self-perpetuating manner. The most notable examples in mammals are the prion diseases, responsible for scrapie and bovine spongiform encephalopathy in animals and kuru and Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease in humans. The disease-producing prion protein, which may result from a coding sequence mutation in familial cases, is folded into an abnormal conformation and exerts an effect on newly synthesized prions in such a way that it perpetuates and proliferates the conformational abnormality that produces disease (Cobb & Surewicz, 2009).

ALLELE FREQUENCIES AND MASS POPULATION SCREENING

Reference has already been made to the application of carrier screening for recessive mutations on a population-wide basis. To justify, from a public health standpoint, the effort and expenditure required to perform a DNA test on thousands or millions of people, the incidence of the disease must be sufficiently high, either in the whole population or in the particular racial or ethnic groups being targeted for screening. For any autosomal recessive disease of appreciable incidence, the law of Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium predicts that the carrier frequency will be a good deal higher than the prevalence of affected individuals. In addition, the candidate disease target must be sufficiently severe and/or amenable to some medical intervention upon identification. Several disorders appear to fit these criteria. Mutations associated with hereditary hemochromatosis and activated protein C resistance (factor V Leiden) are found in 5% to 10% of the Caucasian population, while the carrier frequency of the sickle cell mutation approaches 10% in the African American population. Unfortunately, controversies over disease penetrance in the first two and complex socioeconomic issues in the third have limited the application of these genes to screening (Grody, 2003; Imperatore et al, 2003). Screening for thalassemia in Mediterranean and Asian populations, and for a panel of recessive disorders such as Tay-Sachs disease and Gaucher disease in the Ashkenazi-Jewish population, is similarly justified by allele frequencies in the target group. CF mutations, while of lower frequency, potentially place such a large majority of North American couples at risk that they have been chosen as the first target for general molecular genetic population screening in the United States (see later discussion). Other disease targets proposed for large-scale screening include spinal muscular atrophy, fragile X syndrome, and hereditary hearing loss. This migration of molecular genetic screening out of the realm of rare or esoteric diseases and into the setting of common traits will have a profound effect on preventive medicine and public health, and will continue to drive new developments in DNA test automation in the coming years.

PREDICTIVE GENETIC TESTING

Unique among molecular pathology tests, and indeed among clinical laboratory tests in general, molecular genetic tests possess the ability to predict future disease in individuals with no signs or symptoms of the disorder at the time of testing. This predictive ability exceeds that imparted to such tests as human immunodeficiency virus antibody screening in individuals with no symptoms of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or cholesterol levels as a risk factor for future atherosclerosis. For those tests, one could argue that the serologic, microbiologic, or biochemical signs of the disorder are already present, even if the patient does not yet experience any symptoms. Molecular genetic testing, in contrast, enables prediction of future disease even in the absence of *any* biochemical or physiologic abnormalities: Huntington disease can be predicted decades before there is any brain degeneration, and breast cancer risk years or decades before even a single breast epithelial cell has turned malignant. The potential psychosocial impact of revealing such information to a healthy individual cannot be overemphasized. For that reason, predictive or presymptomatic genetic testing must be accompanied by pretest and posttest genetic counseling and psychiatric support, as already mentioned. Furthermore, such tests should be restricted to those who truly have an actionable need for them, in the sense that a positive DNA test will prompt some sort of early surveillance or preventive interventions or, at the very least, some indicated lifestyle or life-planning changes. Because it is difficult to imagine such conditions existing in the case of a child tested for an unpreventable adult-onset disease, there is a strong convention in the field that healthy children younger than 18 years of age should not be offered predictive genetic tests for adult-onset disorders unless there is a demonstrated preventive intervention that needs to be acted upon in childhood, so as to avoid potential stigmatization, discrimination, or adverse psychosocial effects of genetic information that is of no medical use to the child (Holtzman et al, 1997).

SPECIFIC DISEASE EXAMPLES

CYSTIC FIBROSIS

Because of its high carrier frequency in North America and northern Europe, its serious clinical nature, its straightforward Mendelian (autosomal recessive) inheritance pattern, and its well-studied yet complex gene, CF has emerged as the paradigmatic disorder for large-scale molecular genetic screening. Within its scope can be found the full panoply of applicable molecular genetic techniques and the full spectrum of scientific and ethical dilemmas arising from the clinical variability of the disease, the extreme molecular heterogeneity of the causative mutations, and the advent of novel treatments, including mutation-specific targeting drugs (Amaral, 2015) and eventually gene replacement therapy. With a carrier frequency as high as 1 in 29 in Caucasians of northern European ancestry (and progressively less in southern Europeans, Hispanics, African Americans, and Asians), there was ample motivation to screen the general population in order to identify couples at 1-in-4 risk for having an affected child with each pregnancy. But because carriers are asymptomatic and have normal sweat chloride levels, this screening could only be done after isolation of the gene in 1989 (Kerem et al, 1989; Riordan et al, 1989). Even though the gene had been mapped to chromosome 7 some years earlier, allowing for prenatal diagnosis by linkage analysis in informative families, screening and testing in others, especially those with no family history of the disorder, could only be considered once the gene was cloned and the mutations identified.

Even with that laudable accomplishment, however, the history of DNA testing for CF has been fraught with challenges and controversies. The gene is more than 250,000 bp long and encodes a large ion channel protein called the *cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR)* (Collins, 1992). Most notably, the spectrum of mutations observed is remarkably heterogeneous. Whereas a three-nucleotide deletion of phenylalanine codon 508 (designated ΔF508 or F508del) accounts for about 70% of the mutations in non-Hispanic Caucasians (and less in other ethnic/racial groups), more than 1900 additional mutations have so far been reported. Most of these are so rare that it is neither feasible nor cost-effective to include them in testing panels; only about seven (in addition to ΔF508) account for more than 1% each of CF mutations in most Caucasian populations (Tsui, 1992) (Table 71-1). The sensitivity of carrier screening with mutation panels of between six and 25 alleles ranges from a high of 97% in Ashkenazi Jews (Abeliovich et al, 1992) to 75% to 90% in non–Ashkenazi North American Caucasians, about 60% in Hispanic Americans, 50% in African Americans, and less than 10% in Asians (Ober et al, 1992; Grebe et al, 1994; Macek et al, 1997). Such variable and suboptimal sensitivity in an ethnically heterogeneous population like that of the United States, and the difficulties involved in counseling patients as to the residual carrier risk of negative test results, made population-based carrier screening for CF mutations a controversial subject (Grody, 1999). After much debate and several pilot screening studies, a consensus conference recommended that

TABLE 71-1

Recommended Core Mutation Panel for General Population Cystic Fibrosis Carrier Screening

ΔF508	ΔI507	G542X	G551D	W1282X	N1303K
R553X	621+1G>T	R117H	1717–1G>A	A455E	R560T
R1162X	G85E	R334W	R347P	711+1G>T	1898+1G>A
2184delA	1078delT*	3849+	2789+5G>A	3659delC	I148T*
10kbC>T3120+1G>A					

Panel recommended by the American College of Medical Genetics (Grody et al, 2001a).
*Mutations subsequently removed from the panel (Watson et al, 2004).

screening be offered to all pregnant couples and those planning pregnancy (NIH Consensus Statement Online, 1997). A steering committee representing the American College of Medical Genetics (ACMG), the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG), and the National Human Genome Research Institute decided on a core screening panel of the 25 most prevalent mutations in the general mixed population (Grody et al, 2001a). The same group produced accompanying educational materials providing guidance to obstetricians on how the screening test should be offered, patient education brochures, and tables for determining the residual risk in those whose test results are negative.

With the launch of these guidelines in 2001, *CFTR* mutation analysis instantly became the highest-volume molecular genetic test and one of the highest in all of molecular diagnostics. Given such a market, reagent and instrumentation vendors soon came forward with a variety of assays and platforms, which have now largely replaced the in-house methods previously employed by individual laboratories. The commercial methods, which incorporate at least the core panel of 25 mutations (revised downward to 23 in 2004 by Watson and colleagues), and sometimes more, include ASO probes on paper strips, ARMS, OLA, Invader assay, microbead arrays, microarray chips and, most recently, next-generation sequencing (Richards & Grody, 2004; Grosu et al, 2014). In addition, complete gene sequencing is offered by a few laboratories (Strom et al, 2003), although it is too expensive for general carrier screening and is used primarily to assist in diagnosis of atypical CF cases or to identify parental mutations in affected offspring to enable prenatal diagnosis in future pregnancies.

Even years after launch, the CF carrier screening program continues to prove challenging for both the referring obstetricians and the genetic testing laboratories. Questions remain about uptake, proper communication of results, the utility of offering extended mutation panels (especially for those couples who test positive-negative in the initial screen), and even which mutations should be included in the core panel. The panel has already been modified once, after early data from national screening indicated that one of the mutations (1078delT) was more rare than previously thought, and another one (I148T) was not a mutation at all but a benign variant (polymorphism); both of these have since been dropped (Watson et al, 2004). And at the other extreme, driven largely by marketing considerations, laboratories have been compelled to offer ever-larger mutation screening panels, and concern has been raised regarding the clinical significance of some of the added mutations (Grody et al, 2007). One large series has shown that the core mutation panel is indeed adequate for identifying the vast majority of carriers, with no additional mutations recurring in sufficient numbers to justify their incorporation into an expanded panel (Strom et al, 2011).

Another problem with genetic counseling for CF is the variable clinical severity of the disorder and the inconsistency of genotype–phenotype correlations. Beyond the finding that ΔF508 homozygotes tend to have pancreatic insufficiency, there is little about disease severity or complications that can be predicted reliably from knowing an affected individual's two mutations (Moskowitz et al, 2008). Even homozygotes for ΔF508, considered the prototypical severe mutation, can show a wide range in their degree of pulmonary compromise (Burke et al, 1992). Conversely, there are mutations that cause pulmonary disease yet maintain normal sweat chloride levels (Highsmith et al, 1994), and there are mutations and polymorphisms (e.g., R117H coupled with certain lengths of an intronic polythymidine tract) that do not cause CF at all but rather male infertility due to congenital absence of the vas deferens (Anguiano et al, 1992; Gervais et al, 1993). Taken together with the ever-increasing median lifespan of CF patients and the eventual advent of effective gene replacement therapies, these factors render genetic counseling and reproductive decision-making for the disorder difficult.

Cystic fibrosis is one of the targets of universal newborn screening in most states, along with a large panel of metabolic disorders (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2008). Protocols vary by state, but in most cases begin with a biochemical screen for immunoreactive trypsinogen, followed by (in positive specimens) molecular testing for anywhere from one to more than 30 mutations. It is important to remember that the mutation panels chosen for newborn screening are up to the individual states and are not tied in any way to the ACMG/ACOG panel developed for population carrier screening. Likewise, mutations tested in the course of diagnostic workup of a symptomatic patient are also flexible (in the sense that they have never been defined by professional guidelines) and may range from just a few ethnic-specific mutations to complete gene sequencing.

Cystic fibrosis is one of the first genetic diseases for which specific mutation-targeted therapies have come to market. These drugs, which are designed to circumvent the biochemical or posttranslational process defect caused by the mutation(s), are collectively called *CFTR modulators* (Derichs, 2013), and they represent an elegant example of "personalized medicine," in that the treatment is tailored to the patient's specific personal mutation(s). For this reason, the precise identification of a patient's mutations becomes even more important. While still in their infancy, as these approaches expand to encompass a wider array of mutations, they will undoubtedly influence couples' attitudes toward prenatal carrier screening and testing, as they begin to see CF as a more treatable disease (Massie et al, 2014).

DUCHENNE MUSCULAR DYSTROPHY

This X-linked progressive myopathy was the first disorder whose causative gene was isolated by the process of positional cloning (Rowland, 1988). Before that discovery, the only tests that could be offered to at-risk families were detection of some female carriers by the finding of elevated serum creatine phosphokinase levels, followed by prenatal sex determination with the option to terminate a male fetus (even though 50% of these pregnancies would be normal). Genetic counseling was rendered even more problematic because about one third of cases of DMD arise from new mutations.

Even after its discovery, translation to clinical application was not easy because the gene, dubbed *dystrophin*, proved to be the largest yet discovered, spanning 2.4 million bp and composed of 79 exons (Ahn & Kunkel, 1993). Use of full-length or partial cDNA probes to detect the variety of deletions accounting for two-thirds of cases was labor-intensive and time-consuming (Darras et al, 1988; Prior, 1991). It was only with the advent of multiplex PCR, described in Chapter 67, that a system was developed for rapid and inexpensive identification of more than 98% of dystrophin deletions and their localization to specific exons of the gene (Beggs et al, 1990; Multicenter Study Group, 1992). In this system, a deletion is identified by absence of one or more of the multiple expected amplicons on ethidium bromide–stained electrophoresis gels or capillary electrophoresis instruments (because a target gene deletion will abolish the hybridization site[s] of one or more primers, causing PCR failure) (Fig. 71-4). Such fine-structure mapping combined with sequencing has also revealed important insights into the molecular pathogenesis of DMD and the milder allelic variant, Becker muscular dystrophy (BMD). Both are most often caused by large dystrophin deletions, but those in BMD typically preserve the correct reading frame in the resulting processed transcript, whereas deletions in DMD more often produce frameshift mutations and a more truncated protein product (Monaco et al, 1988).

The remaining one third of patients with DMD and 15% of patients with BMD in whom no deletion is detected usually have point mutations or microdeletions/insertions. Because the gene is so large, until recently it was not an easy matter to identify these lesions directly, although gene

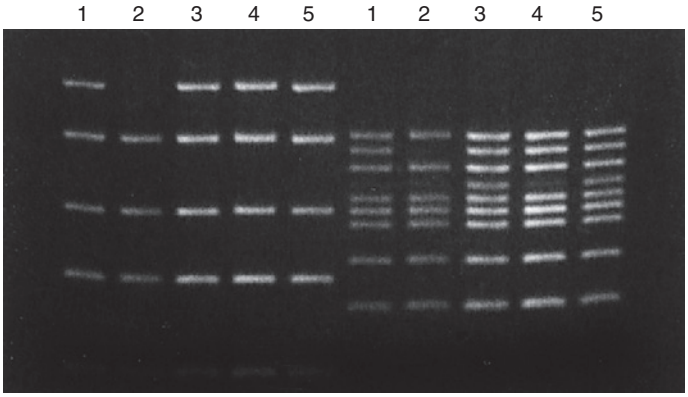


Figure 71-4 Multiplex polymerase chain reaction (PCR) analysis for dystrophin gene deletions in Duchenne muscular dystrophy. DNA samples from five patients were amplified simultaneously with five primer pairs (left half of gel) and nine primer pairs (right half of gel), and the products were analyzed by polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. Absence of an expected PCR product band is indicative of a deletion. Patient 2 lacks the top band in the five-plex and the second-from-top band in the nine-plex; these correspond to deletions in exons 50 and 48, respectively, in the dystrophin gene. (Band 4 in the nine-plex is light but present in all of the samples.) (Courtesy of Dr Kathryn E. Kronquist.)

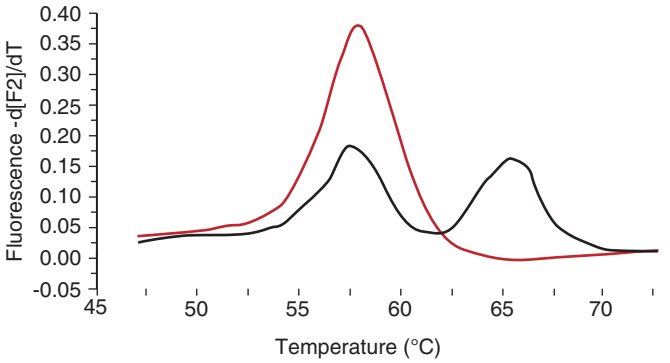


Figure 71-5 Detection of the factor V Leiden mutation by real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and melting curve analysis. Mismatch of the amplified mutant allele lowers the melting temperature when hybridized with a wild-type DNA probe. The black line indicates the melting curve profile for an R506Q heterozygote, whereas the red curve represents a homozygous mutant sample.

scanning by conformational analysis (SSCP, DGGE) followed by sequencing has been used effectively (Prior et al, 1995; Torella et al, 2010). If that method failed, one had to revert to linkage analysis. Now, however, full-gene sequencing, even of this large locus, has become feasible using next-generation sequencing (Nallamilli et al, 2014). Alternatively, studies at the protein level can be performed by observing decreased or absent dystrophin in DMD, and dystrophin of abnormal molecular weight in BMD, by Western blot or immunohistochemistry of muscle biopsy tissue (Hoffman et al, 1988). This procedure has serious limitations for prenatal diagnosis, for which a fetal muscle biopsy would be required, but it can be used for proband diagnosis. Thus, the molecular diagnosis of DMD has come full circle: from identification of the gene without knowing the protein product ("reverse genetics") to identification and diagnostic use of the protein product from knowing the gene. This sort of evolution can be expected in the laboratory diagnosis of many genetic diseases, because functional studies of a gene product are by definition more comprehensive than attempting to track down countless individual mutations at the DNA level. That is a major goal of the nascent field of "proteomics."

SICKLE CELL ANEMIA AND OTHER HEMOGLOBINOPATHIES

Given the long history of study of the protein product, diagnosis of molecular defects in the genes encoding the globin polypeptides did not come about through techniques of reverse genetics; rather, these genes were cloned by classic methods, using antiglobin antibodies for polysome precipitation to isolate the relevant messenger ribonucleic acids (mRNAs). As such, Hb mutations, and the one causing sickle cell anemia in particular, were among the very first to be diagnosed at the DNA level. The sickle cell point mutation in codon 6 of the β-globin gene lies within (and thus destroys) a restriction endonuclease cleavage site (for *Mst*II, *Mnl*I or *Dde*I), providing a rapid method of detection using either Southern blot or restriction enzyme digestion of β-globin PCR products (Hatcher et al, 1992) (see Fig. 71-1). Alternatively, the HbS and HbA sequences can be distinguished by dot blot using allele-specific oligonucleotide probes complementary to either the normal or mutant sequence (Conner et al, 1983). More recently, higher-throughput techniques have come to predominate, such as real-time PCR and melting curve analysis (Traeger-Synodinos et al, 2008). These DNA-based techniques can be used for diagnosis, carrier screening, or prenatal diagnosis on amniocytes, in the latter case obviating the need for invasive fetal blood sampling and classic Hb electrophoresis. In addition, as more states initiate newborn screening programs for sickle cell disease, even if done by biochemical methods, the DNA test becomes important for backup confirmation of positives and ambiguous screening results, as in compound heterozygous states involving HbS and a thalassemia mutation (Hoppe, 2013). Several studies have shown that these DNA tests can be done on the same filter-paper blood spots collected for the initial newborn screening (McCabe & McCabe, 2004). A different mutation in codon 6, causing HbC disease, does not abolish the *Mst*II restriction endonuclease recognition sequence (because it occurs at a flexible nucleotide position for the enzyme) and so must be distinguished by ASO probes (Maggio et al, 1993).

The thalassemias involve both qualitative and quantitative alterations in one or more globin chains with hundreds of sequence variants known, and their diagnosis at the molecular level is correspondingly more complex than that of sickle cell anemia. α-Thalassemia is more straightforward, because it is usually caused by deletion of either or both of the two contiguous α genes on one or the other or both chromosomes 16. This can be detected by Southern blot or quantitative PCR, allowing differentiation of the silent carrier state (one α gene missing) from very severe hydrops fetalis (all four genes missing) and the two intermediate states (Zhou et al, 2013). Molecular diagnosis of β-thalassemia is more complicated because of the wide variety of promoter, termination, deletion, splice site, and frameshift mutations that have been documented. However, within each at-risk population (Mediterranean, Asian, African), a limited subset of mutations (usually 10 or less) accounts for the majority of cases and carriers. Therefore testing with a panel of mutation-specific probes/primers, along the lines of CF screening, is reasonable (Naja et al, 2004; Patrinos et al, 2005). In addition, the β-globin gene is not that large, so sequencing or gene scanning can also be employed.

HEREDITARY THROMBOPHILIAS

CF is not the only disorder with sufficiently high mutation frequency to prompt consideration for population screening using molecular methods. Several other disease genes have revealed carrier frequencies several times higher than that for CF. Included in this group are genes involved in the anticoagulant system, which, as discussed in Part 5, keeps the clotting cascade in check. The most notable such allele is the factor V Leiden mutation, a single nucleotide change causing an amino acid substitution (R506Q) in the clotting factor V protein, rendering it resistant to cleavage by activated protein C (Bertina et al, 1994). The allele is carried in 5% to 7% of the Caucasian population and is responsible for more than 90% of clinical activated protein C (APC) resistance, resulting in a tendency toward idiopathic venous thromboembolism (Ridker et al, 1997a). It produces a relative risk for thrombosis of about 7-fold in the heterozygous state and about 80-fold in the homozygous state. It is also associated with pregnancy complications such as recurrent miscarriage. Testing for the mutation is straightforward because, like the sickle cell mutation, it destroys a restriction endonuclease cleavage site, and automated methods for higher throughput have been developed, such as real-time PCR (Louis et al, 2004) (Fig. 71-5) and the Invader assay, which relies on signal amplification by fluorescent resonance energy transfer and a cleavase enzyme (Ryan et al, 1999), as described in Chapter 67.

As for CF, however, there are controversies over which patients should be offered screening. Despite the dramatically increased relative risk, the absolute risk conferred by this mutation is rather low, with a lifetime penetrance for thrombotic symptoms of about 10%. Most carriers therefore would not be candidates for anticoagulant therapy, with its risks for hemorrhage and stroke, and so it is uncertain whether such screening would alter patient management in a meaningful way. Some have proposed screening individuals with environmental risk factors known to act synergistically with the factor V Leiden risk, such as women on oral contraceptives. Yet here too it could be argued that obligating such women with positive test results to turn to less effective methods of birth control might

TABLE 71-2

Disorders Characterized by Unstable Expansions of DNA Trinucleotide Repeats

Disorder	Chromosome Location	Normal Alleles, Intermediate Alleles	Expanded Alleles	Anticipation	Transmission Sex Bias	Position of Repeat	Gene Product
Fragile Site/Mental Retardation Associated with CGG or GCC Expansion (X-Linked)							
Fragile X syndrome (CGG), FRAXA	Xq27	6-54 55-200	>200	Yes	Maternal, premutation	5′-UTR	FMRP
Fragile X syndrome (GCC), FRAXE	Xq28	6-35	>200			5′-UTR	FMR-2
Diseases Associated with CAG Repeat Expansion (Autosomal Dominant Except for X-Linked Kennedy's Disease)							
Spinobulbar muscular atrophy (Kennedy's disease)	Xq11-12	11-33	36-62		Coding	Androgen receptor	
Huntington disease	4p16	6-35 36-39	40-250	Marked in juvenile cases	Paternal, early onset	Coding	Huntingtin
Dentatorubral-pallidoluysian atrophy	12p13	3-35	49-85	Yes	Paternal	Coding	Atrophin
Spinocerebellar ataxia 1	6p23	6-35	40-88	Marked in juvenile cases	Paternal, early onset	Coding	Ataxin 1
Spinocerebellar ataxia 2	12q24	16-31	36-64	Yes	Paternal	Coding	Ataxin 2
Spinocerebellar ataxia 3 (Machado-Joseph disease)	l4q24-q31	12-41	55-84	Yes	Paternal	Coding	Ataxin 3
Spinocerebellar ataxia 6	19p13	6-17	21-30	Yes	Paternal	Coding	CACNA1A
Spinocerebellar ataxia 7	3p21-pl2	7-17	37->200	Yes	Paternal	Coding	Ataxia-7
Spinocerebellar ataxia 12	5q31-q33	7-28	66-78	Yes	Paternal	5′-UTR	PPP2R2B
Spinocerebellar ataxia 17	6p27	25-42	45-63	Yes	Paternal	Coding	TBP
Diseases Associated with CTG Expansion (Autosomal Dominant)							
Myotonic dystrophy	19q13	5-35	50->200	Yes	Maternal congenital form	3′-UTR	Myotonin protein kinase
Spinocerebellar ataxia 8	13q21	16-92	110-250	Yes	Maternal	Noncoding	
Disease Associated with GAA Expansion (Autosomal Recessive)							
Friedreich ataxia	9q13	6-36	200->900	No		Intron	Frataxin

cause more harm than good, increasing the pregnancy rate with its own attendant complications, some of which are thrombotic in nature (Kupferminc et al, 1999). At present, most requests received by molecular genetics laboratories for factor V Leiden testing are on patients who have already experienced an otherwise unexplained thromboembolic event, and two professional consensus statements, by the ACMG and the College of American Pathologists (CAP), have designated this as the primary unequivocal indication for testing (Grody et al, 2001b; Press et al, 2002).

Along with factor V Leiden, there are other inherited mutations of high allele frequency that confer thrombotic risk (also discussed in Part 5). The prothrombin 20210A variant, a single nucleotide change in the 3′ gene, results in increased circulating prothrombin levels and a phenotype similar to that of factor V Leiden; it is present in 1% to 2% of the general population (Poort et al, 1996). The 677C→T variant of methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase, an enzyme involved in the folate cycle of homocysteine metabolism, is carried by 30% to 40% of the general population and is associated with elevated plasma homocysteine levels and theoretical risk for vascular (including coronary artery) thrombosis. Indications for this test are even more nebulous, because not everyone with the variant has hyperhomocysteinemia, and not all hyperhomocysteinemia is caused by this variant. Thus, biochemical measurement of plasma homocysteine levels may be a more effective screening method. Also, folate fortification of foods may make the genetic factor less relevant by broadly reducing homocysteine levels in the population. And recent studies have even called into question whether there is any relationship at all between homocysteine levels and thrombotic risk (Ducros et al, 2009). Even so, the mutations for each of these factors can act synergistically with one another, so patients carrying two or even three of these defects, including also the rarer deficiencies of protein S and C, are at substantially increased risk (Koeleman et al, 1994; Ridker et al, 1997b). DNA tests for several of these thrombophilia mutations can be multiplexed in a single assay (Louis et al, 2004).

TRINUCLEOTIDE REPEAT EXPANSION DISORDERS

An important class of disease-causing mutations was revealed in 1991 with the discovery that X-linked spinal and bulbar muscular atrophy (Kennedy's disease, SBMA) and fragile X syndrome (FRAXA) are associated with amplification of unstable trinucleotide repeat sequences in the androgen receptor *(AR)* and *FMR1* (fragile X mental retardation) genes, respectively. Since that time, similar disease-producing mutations have been associated with a number of additional neurologic and muscle disorders (Table 71-2), and in the process have provided a molecular classification of the spinocerebellar ataxias. The affected gene in each of these disorders normally contains a repeated sequence of 3 bp, for example, $(CGG)_n$ in the *FMR1* gene, where n is variable but normally limited in its range. In the disease state, however, the size of the triplet repeat is expanded outside the normal range, sometimes only slightly and in other instances markedly. The mechanisms by which these expanded repeat sequences produce disease are various, and include gene silencing and toxic gain-of-function by mutant proteins.

Fragile XA and Fragile XE Syndromes

FRAXA is the most common single-gene defect causing moderate to severe mental retardation. Affected males with this X-linked disorder typically also exhibit dysmorphic features including large ears, a long face, prominent jaw, and macroorchidism. Approximately 1 in 2500 females are heterozygous carriers of the FRAXA mutation, and one third of these may show evidence of mental impairment or learning disability in the absence of the classic dysmorphism seen in affected males.

As explained in Chapter 69, the cytogenetic hallmark of FRAXA is a fragile site on the X chromosome at Xq27.3, resulting from a failure of normal chromatin condensation during mitosis. Although the inheritance pattern of the disease is clearly X-linked, it does not correspond in a straightforward manner to either a recessive or dominant pattern of gene expression. Before the molecular mechanism was elucidated, the most puzzling feature had been the presence of phenotypically normal men (transmitting males) who are obligate carriers of the genetic abnormality. These men are sons of proven FRAXA carriers, they pass the carrier state to all of their daughters, and their daughters in turn transmit the fully expressed disease to a high proportion of their sons.

The discovery in 1991 of the genetic abnormality that causes FRAXA immediately explained its unusual pattern of inheritance (Fu et al, 1991).

The 5′-untranslated region of the *FMR1* gene at chromosome Xq27.3 carries a $(CGG)_n$ triplet repeat of variable size. In normal individuals, *n* ranges up to about 54, but in individuals with clinically apparent FRAXA, *n* is greater than 200 (referred to as a *full mutation*). Both men and women who carry an X chromosome where *n* is between 55 and about 200 to 230 (referred to as a *premutation*) do not show signs of classic fragile X syndrome, but are at risk for passing an allele of even larger size to their children. This is because of the instability of the premutation alleles and their tendency to increase in size during the meiotic cell divisions that produce the male and female gametes. Alleles of normal size are not unstable and generally pass unchanged, although there is now recognized a so-called *gray area* of repeats between 46 and 54 that has a low risk for slight expansion into the premutation range (Kronquist et al, 2008). Thus, it appears that there is a pool of small premutation (and gray area) alleles in the population, possibly of ancient origin, that is at risk for undergoing further expansion with each passage through another generation. As the premutation allele increases in size, the likelihood that it will expand further in the next generation increases, ranging from very low likelihood for repeats in the 60s to almost 100% for repeats above 100 (Nolin et al, 2003). In addition, interruptions of the CGG repeat by one or more AGG units serves to stabilize the permutation and inhibit its expansion into the full mutation range (Nolin et al, 2015), though testing for this requires DNA sequencing rather than simple sizing of the repeat length, and is not offered routinely by molecular diagnostics laboratories. Curiously, expansion to a full mutation occurs only in female meiosis, never in males, which corresponds to the observation that the daughters of normal transmitting males are always phenotypically normal. Figure 71-6, *B* illustrates a family with FRAXA: a premutation allele is transmitted from the first to the second generation, and then expands to a full mutation in the third generation.

The mechanism by which the expanded triplet repeat in the 5′ noncoding region of the *FMR1* gene produces the FRAXA phenotype is under active investigation. As the size of the repeat expands, there is progressive methylation of the regulatory region of the *FMR1* gene and decreased expression of the FMR-1 protein. This RNA-binding protein is widely expressed in the developing brain and in other tissues. Its loss of expression in FRAXA presumably disturbs normal brain development and leads to mental retardation. Rare patients with typical fragile X syndrome do not have triplet repeat expansion or gene hypermethylation but do have inactivating point mutations or deletions leading to loss of FMR1 protein expression. Conversely, rare phenotypically normal or high-functioning males with full *FMR1* gene repeat expansions and cytogenetically visible fragile sites, but with no gene hypermethylation and normal FMR1 protein expression, have been described (Hagerman et al, 1994; Smeets et al, 1995). These findings all support the hypothesis that it is lack of FMR1 protein expression, usually caused by hypermethylation-related downregulation of gene transcription, which is responsible for the disease phenotype.

Because the premutation is not methylated and the phenomenon of "normal" transmitting males was widely observed, it was long assumed that these alleles had no direct phenotypic effect. It was therefore quite surprising when more recent studies documented cases of premature ovarian failure and an unusual tremor-ataxia-dementia syndrome in female and male premutation carriers, respectively. The penetrance appears to be about 20% for the former (Sherman, 2000) and as high as 75% for the latter (Jacquemont et al, 2004), although it is difficult to accurately define such numbers in the absence of molecular screening of normal populations. The molecular mechanism may be related to premutation *FMR1* mRNAs being translated less efficiently and/or interfering with translation of the normal allele or other interacting genes. These revelations have made genetic counseling for fragile X syndrome even more complicated. They also raise additional concerns regarding the ethical merits of population screening for fragile X premutations or routine testing of pregnant women, which appears to be increasing despite the absence of professional guidelines to do so (Grody, 2011). Babies born to women who have undergone testing may be identified with a potentially devastating adult-onset disease for which no known preventive intervention is possible, something that is not done for predictive genetic testing of other late-onset disorders in children for the reasons discussed in the "Predictive Genetic Testing" section earlier in the chapter.

Rare families with X-linked mental retardation and a cytogenetically demonstrable fragile site at chromosome Xq27 to 28, but no hypermethylation or expansion of the $(CGG)_n$ repeat in *FMR1*, led to the discovery of a second, more distal fragile site at Xq28 associated with hypermethylation and expansion of a $(GCC)_n$ repeat (FRAXE). Most affected males show only mild mental impairment without the dysmorphic features of FRAXA; this plus the extreme rarity of the condition have called into question the indications for testing and screening (Brown, 1996), and in practice the test is seldom ordered.

Neurodegenerative Disorders: Huntington Disease, X-linked Spinal and Bulbar Muscular Atrophy, Spinocerebellar Ataxias, and Dentatorubral-Pallidoluysian Atrophy

Huntington disease, X-linked spinal and bulbar muscular atrophy (SBMA), the spinocerebellar ataxias, and dentatorubral-pallidoluysian atrophy (DRPLA) are autosomal dominant or X-linked (SBMA) diseases characterized by selective neuronal degeneration in the central nervous system. In each of these disorders, there is expansion of a $(CAG)_n$ trinucleotide repeat in the coding region of the respective gene that produces abnormal elongation of a polyglutamine tract. The resultant abnormal protein produces intranuclear neuronal inclusions. It is postulated that the expanded polyglutamine sequences in each of these proteins leads to alterations in their folding and binding characteristics and a gain in function that is toxic to neurons in a selective manner, causing apoptosis (Everett & Wood, 2004). Intranuclear neuronal inclusions, produced by these abnormal proteins, have been demonstrated in several of these disorders.

In common with the other triplet repeat disorders, the expanded repeats in the neurodegenerative disorders are unstable and tend to increase in size in subsequent generations. There is a positive, but not absolute, correlation between increasing repeat size, early disease onset, and clinical severity. In contrast to fragile X and myotonic dystrophy, where the most dramatic increases in repeat size occur in maternal meioses, paternal transmission produces the largest expansions in the exonic repeat neurodegenerative disorders. Consequently, juvenile-onset cases of Huntington disease, DRPLA, and the spinocerebellar ataxias are typically transmitted by an affected father.

Molecular diagnosis of these disorders is used for either diagnostic or, because they are late-onset, predictive purposes. Because they have no treatment, the emotions involved in the testing and fear of a positive result are considerable.

Myotonic Dystrophy

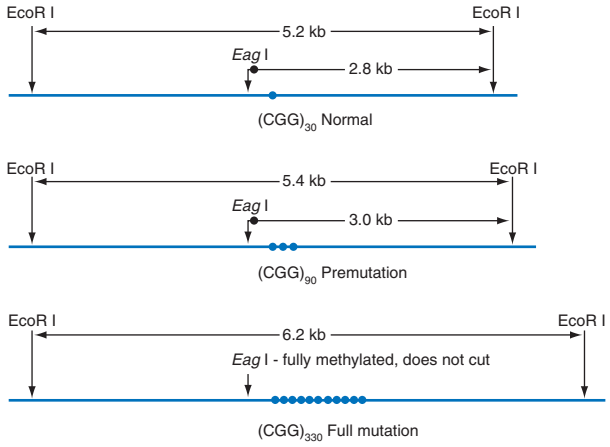
Myotonic dystrophy is an autosomal dominant, multisystem disorder with a wide range of clinical expression. In late childhood or early adulthood, the most typical patients develop progressive myotonia and weakness and atrophy of the muscles of the distal extremities and face. Cataracts, cardiac conduction defects, and testicular atrophy are also common. However, the disease may be so mild as to consist solely of cataracts developing in old age or so severe as to present at birth with marked muscle degeneration and mental retardation proceeding to early death. Sometimes the full spectrum of the disease can be observed in the same family, occurring in a pattern that clearly reflects the phenomenon of anticipation. As noted, anticipation is present in virtually all of the trinucleotide repeat disorders, but it is most striking in myotonic dystrophy, in which the clinical phenotype can progress from cataracts to severe congenital disease in three generations.

Myotonic dystrophy is caused by expansion of a $(CTG)_n$ repeat in the 3′ untranslated region of the myotonin protein kinase gene on chromosome 19q13.3 (Fu et al, 1992; Mahadevan et al, 1992). In normal individuals, this repeat ranges in size from 5 to 35 and is genetically stable. CTG repeats greater than 50 are genetically unstable and prone to expansion as they are passed to subsequent generations. In the range of 50 to 100, these repeats are often asymptomatic or produce minimal symptoms. When more than 100 repeats are present, the typical myotonic dystrophy phenotype is likely. Although there is a general correlation between repeat length and clinical severity, the size of the repeat is not a reliable prognostic indicator in the individual case. The extreme expansions to 1000 to 2000 repeats seen in congenital myotonic dystrophy occur only with female transmission of the unstable repeat; thus congenital myotonic dystrophy is always inherited from an affected mother.

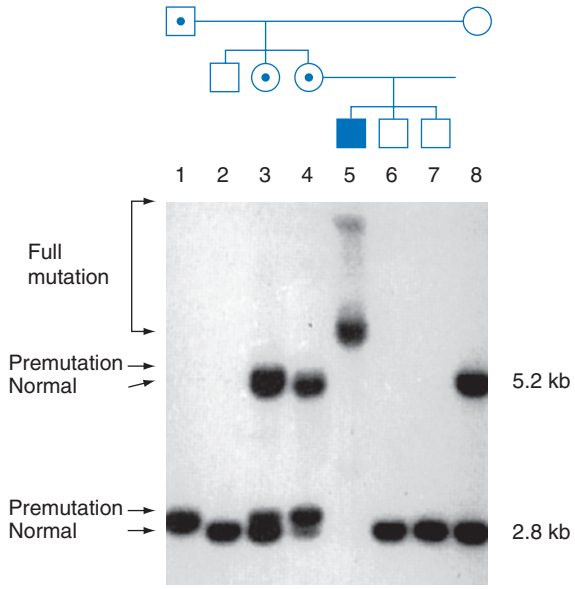
The mechanism by which the expanded trinucleotide repeat in the myotonin protein kinase gene produces the myotonic dystrophy phenotype is not known. Because the repeat is not located in the coding region of the gene, it is possible that protein expression is altered or that RNA processing interactions are perturbed.

Friedreich Ataxia

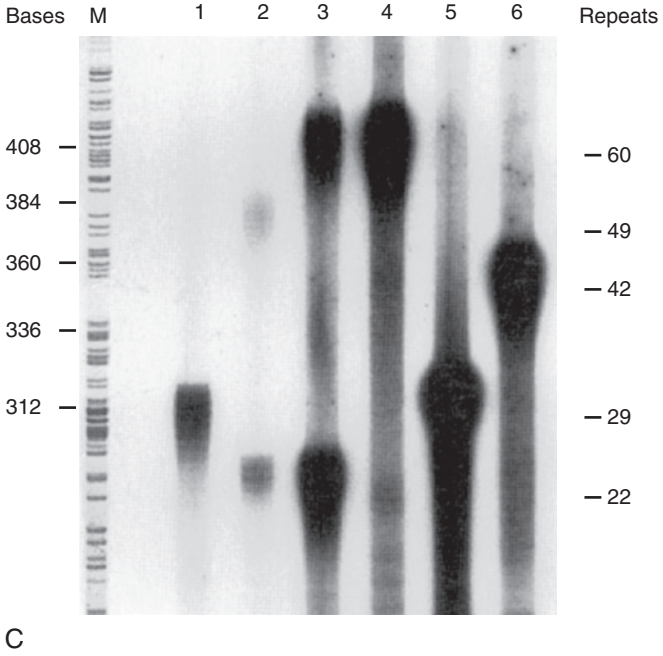
Friedreich ataxia is the most common of the hereditary ataxias, with an incidence of 2 per 100,000. Unlike all the other trinucleotide repeat



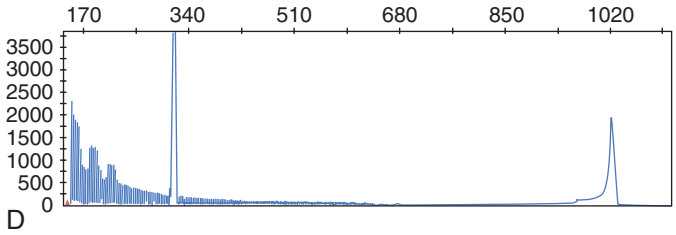
A



B



C



D

Figure 71-6 **Detection of the (CGG)$_n$ repeat expansion in fragile X syndrome. A,** Diagram of normal, premutation, and full-mutation alleles at the FRAXA locus. When expansion of the repeat to a full mutation occurs, the *Eag* I restriction enzyme site becomes methylated and does not cut with the enzyme. **B,** Family of a patient *(darkened square)* with fragile X syndrome. A Southern blot of *Eco*RI/*Eag* I-digested DNA from each individual in the pedigree was examined with a labeled DNA probe that hybridizes 3′ to the repeat. The three individuals on the right of the figure are normal (open squares and circles). Note that the two males each have a single 2.8-kb band, while the female has both a 2.8- and a 5.2-kb band. This is the expected result. The 5.2-kb band in the female is from the normal inactive (therefore methylated) X chromosome in each of her cells. Because the DNA on this chromosome is methylated, it is not cut by *Eag*I. The 2.8-kb band, however, is from the normal unmethylated active X chromosome (*Eag*I will cut the DNA in this case) in the female and in the males. The affected male has a greatly enlarged band. This is a consequence of marked expansion of the trinucleotide repeat as well as methylation of the *Eag*I restriction enzyme site. The three individuals marked by bold dots are carriers of premutation alleles. In the females, the distinction between normal and expanded alleles is seen most clearly in DNA from their active (unmethylated) X chromosomes. Here, there are distinct bands of 2.8 and 3 kb. Higher in the gel the resolution is not as good, and the 5.2- and 5.4-kb alleles are barely separated. Note that in this peripheral blood sample from the mother of the affected patient, X chromosome inactivation is skewed with respect to the repeat expansion: a greater proportion of normal X chromosomes in this cell population have randomly been inactivated compared to the X chromosomes carrying the premutation allele. **C,** Sizing of trinucleotide repeats by gel electrophoresis following amplification of the locus by the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Lanes 1 through 6 represent six different individuals; lane M contains a size marker. The PCR products were labeled by incorporation of 32P-dCTP during the amplification reaction, and the dried gel was exposed to x-ray film. Heterozygous females show two alleles; males and homozygous females show single alleles. The multiple bands produced with each allele are due to "slippage" of the DNA polymerase during the PCR reaction; the most intense band is taken as representative of the actual size of the allele. **D,** Successful PCR amplification of both the normal (left peak, 30 CGG repeats) and full-mutation (right peak) alleles in a female heterozygote, using reagents from Asuragen, Austin, Texas). (**C,** Courtesy of Dr. Anne Maddalena; **D,** courtesy of Dr. Joshua Deignan.)

disorders, Friedreich ataxia is inherited as an autosomal recessive disease and shows no evidence of anticipation. The expanded $(GAA)_n$ repeat is located in the first intron of the *FRDA* gene and reduces the expression of frataxin, a mitochondrial-targeted protein, probably through some interference with transcription or RNA processing. Frataxin is involved in mitochondrial respiration, iron balance, and response to oxidative stress. Some 97% of mutant *FRDA* alleles are due to $(GAA)_n$ expansions; the remaining alleles are due to other inactivating mutations, including point mutations (Lodi et al, 1999).

Laboratory Testing for Trinucleotide Repeat Disorders

Depending on the length of the repeat segment, expansions of trinucleotide repeats are readily demonstrated by either Southern blot or PCR. PCR, followed by sizing of the products on an electrophoretic gel or capillary, is generally preferred for most of these disorders because of its speed, simplicity, and ability to resolve alleles differing in size by just one repeat unit. This is of particular importance when it is necessary to differentiate stable alleles at the upper size limit from small premutation or disease-causing alleles. For example, it is critically important to distinguish a 40-repeat from a 39-repeat in Huntington disease because of the dramatically different clinical implications and the psychosocial impact of a positive result. PCR is also the method of choice for accurate sizing of FRAXA premutation alleles, which is necessary for graded risk counseling of female carriers. However, where triplet expansions are very large, as in fully expressed FRAXA or myotonic dystrophy, it may not be possible to amplify the greatly expanded DNA segment by PCR; in this case, Southern blotting has traditionally been required. Southern blotting is also helpful in determining the methylation status of FRAXA full mutations, through the use of methylation-sensitive restriction endonucleases, and in assuring that a large Huntington disease or FRAXA allele has not been missed in a patient who appears homozygous normal by PCR. Similarly, it more reliably identifies mosaic males whose cells show a mixture of premutation and full mutation alleles. More recently, however, methods for analyzing large premutations and even the full mutation of *FMR1* by PCR alone have entered routine practice, supported by the availability of commercial reagents (Hantash et al, 2010). Figure 71-6 illustrates the use of both Southern blotting and PCR to detect full FRAXA mutations and FRAXA premutation alleles.

PRADER-WILLI AND ANGELMAN SYNDROMES

Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes, whose genes lie at approximately the same locus on chromosome 15, are almost always discussed together, even though they are caused by two different genes and have almost nothing in common phenotypically. Prader-Willi syndrome is characterized by obesity, mental retardation, hypoplastic genitalia, and dysmorphic features, while Angelman syndrome exhibits ataxia, puppet-like facies, mental retardation, paroxysmal laughter, and seizures. What they do share, remarkably, is a powerful imprinting mechanism determining disease expression. Both disorders are almost always sporadic. Prader-Willi syndrome, whose gene is not yet known, is most often caused by a deletion at 15q12 in the paternally inherited chromosome only; this is pathologic because only the paternal *PWS* gene is expressed. The opposite is true for Angelman syndrome, which most often is caused by deletion of a known gene *(UBE3A)* exclusively on the maternally inherited chromosome, which is the only allele normally expressed (Knoll et al, 1989; Matsuura et al, 1997). Alternatively, Prader-Willi syndrome can be caused by uniparental disomy for the maternal chromosome 15, which carries only the nonexpressing copy of the gene; likewise, Angelman syndrome can be caused by uniparental disomy for the paternal chromosome 15. These phenomena can be detected by FISH, discussed in Chapter 69, chromosome haplotyping with microsatellite markers, or Southern blotting with methylation-sensitive restriction enzymes that can distinguish the methylated maternal critical region from the unmethylated paternal critical region. A differential PCR scheme that amplifies either the methylated or unmethylated allele of the nearby *SNRPN* gene within the critical region, based on resistance of methylated cytosines to chemical modification by sodium bisulfite (Kosaki et al, 1997), is also available (Fig. 71-7). Neither the Southern blot nor the PCR method will distinguish between the deletional or uniparental disomy mechanisms, nor will they detect cases (more frequent in Angelman syndrome) due to point mutations within the causative gene. These methods also will not distinguish rare cases of Angelman syndrome or Prader-Willi syndrome due to primary imprinting defects (resulting from aberrant methylation caused by a mutation in the chromosome 15 imprinting center) (Burger et al, 1997), which would have a much higher recurrence risk.

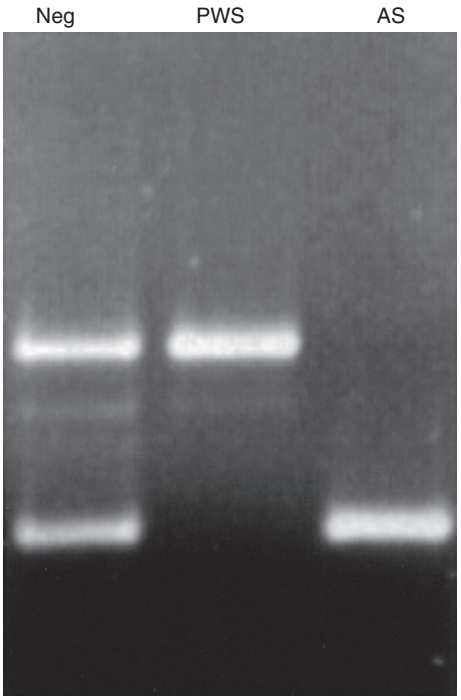


Figure 71-7 Polymerase chain reaction–based electrophoretic analysis of methylation patterns in Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes using the sodium bisulfite method of Kosaki and colleagues (1997). In Prader-Willi syndrome, only the methylated maternal allele (upper band) is present, due to either deletion of the paternal allele or uniparental disomy for the maternal allele. In Angelman syndrome, only the unmethylated paternal allele (lower band) is present, due to either deletion of the maternal allele or uniparental disomy for the paternal allele. Similar analysis can also be done by Southern blot using methylation-sensitive restriction enzymes.

FAMILIAL CANCERS

All cancers are genetic disorders at the cellular level, caused by mutations in genes that control cell proliferation and differentiation. These genes may be divided broadly into two groups: those that promote proliferation *(proto-oncogenes* or, simply, *oncogenes)* and those that restrain cell growth *(tumor suppressor genes)*. Both sets of genes are discussed in Chapter 77. Most often, mutations in these genes occur in somatic cells, usually requiring cumulative alterations over many cell cycles in several oncogenes or tumor suppressor genes before a cancer develops. However, in some individuals the initial mutation in this progression may be a germline lesion, inherited from a parent and present in every cell of that individual's body.

Heritable cancer-causing mutations have been found most often in tumor suppressor genes, including several groups of genes that encode proteins with DNA repair functions, but have also been found in a few oncogenes (Table 71-3). The inherited mutation should be viewed as the initiating event in tumor development, not in itself sufficient to cause cancer but merely the first step in a series of mutations that ultimately lead to uncontrolled cell growth, analogous to the first somatic mutation that initiates tumor development in a sporadic cancer. It is likely that most of the heritable mutations that contribute to cancer development have not been identified, because they are by themselves not highly penetrant and require the interaction of other genetic and environmental factors to initiate tumor development—a complex situation that is difficult to unravel. However, a number of highly penetrant genes have been identified that are major initiators of tumor development in what are recognizable heritable cancer syndromes (see Table 71-3).

Compared with their sporadic counterparts, hereditary cancers often develop at an earlier age, are more often multifocal, and appear bilaterally in paired organs. Noting these distinguishing features in sporadic retinoblastoma and familial retinoblastoma, Knudson postulated that at least two mutational events are necessary to produce a tumor (Knudson, 1971). In the case of a sporadic tumor, two independent mutational events in the same cell are necessary to initiate tumor development, whereas in the case of a hereditary tumor, the first mutation is already present at birth in every cell of the body, making it more likely that a second mutational event will occur at an earlier age and often in more than one cell. Knudson's two-hit hypothesis is an important concept that has guided many studies of the

TABLE 71-3
Hereditary Cancer Syndromes

Disorder (OMIM Entry)	Associated Tumors	Population Incidence	Gene	Chromosome Location
Tumor Suppressor Genes (Autosomal Dominant Mode of Inheritance)				
Basal cell nevus (Gorlin) syndrome (109400)	Basal cell carcinoma, medulloblastoma	1/40,000	*PTCH*	9q22
Cowden syndrome (158350)	Breast, thyroid carcinoma	1/200,000	*PTEN*	10q23
Familial adenomatous polyposis (175100)	Colorectal, duodenal carcinoma	1/10,000	*APC*	5q21
Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome (113705, 600185)	Breast, ovarian, pancreatic, prostate carcinoma	1/300-1/500	*BRCA1* *BRCA2*	17q21 13q12
Hereditary diffuse gastric carcinoma (137215)	Gastric carcinoma	Rare	*CDH1*	16q22
Hereditary leiomyomatosis and renal cell carcinoma (150800, 605839)	Cutaneous and uterine leiomyomas, papillary renal cell carcinoma	Rare	*FH*	1q42
Hereditary melanoma (600160, 606719)	Melanoma, pancreatic carcinoma	Unknown	*CDKN2A* *CDK4*	9p21 12q14.1
Hereditary paraganglioma (602690, 185470, 602413)	Paraganglioma, pheochromocytoma	Rare	*SDHD* *SDHB* *SDHC* *SDHAF2*	11q23 1p35-36 1q21 11q12.2
Juvenile polyposis syndrome (174900)	Gastrointestinal cancer	1/10,000	*SMAD4* *BMPR1A*	18q21 10q22
Li-Fraumeni syndrome (151623)	Sarcomas, breast carcinoma, leukemia, brain tumors	Rare	*p53*	17p13
Multiple endocrine neoplasia, type 1 (MEN1) (131100)	Pancreatic islet cell, pituitary, parathyroid tumors	1/100,000	*MEN1*	11q13
Neurofibromatosis, type 1 (162200)	Neurofibroma/sarcoma, pheochromocytoma	1/3000	*NF1*	17q11
Neurofibromatosis, type 2 (101000)	Acoustic neuroma, meningioma	1/40,000	*NF2*	22q12
Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (175200)	Gastrointestinal tumors	1/200,000	*STK11*	19p13
Retinoblastoma, hereditary (180200)	Retinoblastoma, osteosarcoma	1/20,000	*RB1*	13q14
Von Hippel-Lindau disease (193300)	Hemangioblastoma, renal cell carcinoma, pheochromocytoma	1/40,000	*VHL*	3p25
Oncogenes (Autosomal Dominant Mode of Inheritance)				
Hereditary melanoma (123829)	Melanoma	Rare	*CDK4*	12q13
Multiple endocrine neoplasia, type 2A and type 2B (171400, 162300)	Medullary thyroid carcinoma, pheochromocytoma, parathyroid hyperplasia/adenoma; multiple mucosal neuromas (type 2B)	1/30,000	*RET*	10q12
Hereditary papillary renal carcinoma (605074)	Papillary renal carcinoma	Rare	*MET*	7q31
DNA Repair Genes (Autosomal Dominant Mode of Inheritance)				
Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (Lynch syndrome) (114500)	Colorectal, endometrial, ovarian carcinoma	1/400-1/700	*MSH2* *MLH1* *MSH6* *PMS2*	2p16 3p21 2p16 7p22
DNA Repair Genes (Autosomal Recessive Mode of Inheritance)				
Ataxia telangiectasia (208900)	Lymphomas, others	1/40,000-1/100,000	*ATM*	11q22
Bloom syndrome (210900)	Various	Rare	*BLM*	15p26
Fanconi anemia (607139, 300515, 227645, 605724, 227646, 600901, 603467, 602956)	Acute myelogenous leukemia, others	1/100,000	*FANCA-G*	Various
MYH-associated polyposis (608456)	Colorectal carcinoma, duodenal polyposis	1/10,000	*MYH*	1p34
Xeroderma pigmentosum (278700, 133510, 278720, 278730, 278740, 133520, 133530, 603968)	Cutaneous basal carcinoma and squamous carcinoma	Rare	*XPA-G, POLH*	Various

Data from various sources, including Garber JE, Offit K: Hereditary cancer predisposition syndromes, *J Clin Oncol* 23:276–292, 2005.
OMIM, Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man.

genetic basis of cancer. Elucidation of the heritable mutations in the hereditary cancer syndromes has been enormously informative, not only in understanding these rare disorders but also in understanding the fundamental changes responsible for common sporadic malignancies.

In the following discussion, some fundamental concepts of hereditary cancer syndromes are explained in the context of *retinoblastoma*, a disorder caused by a tumor suppressor gene, and *multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2*, a disorder caused by an oncogene. This is followed by descriptions of hereditary breast-ovarian cancer (HBOC) and hereditary colorectal cancer, the most common hereditary cancer syndromes, for which more than 1 million individuals in the United States are at risk. Table 71-3 lists these disorders and a number of other hereditary cancer syndromes. The section ends with a discussion of current approaches to genetic testing for these disorders.

Tumor Suppressor Genes: Retinoblastoma as a Paradigm

Although familial cancer syndromes due to mutations in tumor suppressor genes follow a dominant pattern of inheritance, at the cellular level the

changes often appear recessive, because tumorigenesis is initiated (in most cases) only when both copies of the tumor suppressor gene are inactivated. Loss of the normal gene inherited from the unaffected parent may occur as the result of a second novel pathogenic mutation, by large-scale deletion (appearing in certain molecular assays as loss-of-heterozygosity), by replacement with a duplicated copy of the mutant gene inherited from the affected parent by genetic mechanisms such as chromosomal nondisjunction or mitotic recombination, or by gene silencing due to hypermethylation. These events occur in retinoblastoma, a tumor of the retina caused by functional loss of both copies of the *RB1* gene, which encodes the RB protein that is involved in cell cycle and transcriptional regulation. In sporadic cases, both of these mutational events occur somatically and a solitary, sporadic tumor develops. But in the hereditary cases, the first *RB1* mutation is present in the germline of the affected child, having been inherited from a similarly affected parent or occurring as a new mutation during gametogenesis. When this is the case, the likelihood that the remaining normal *RB1* gene will undergo mutation in at least one retinal precursor cell is greater than 90%. As Knudson observed, in most patients with familial disease, the tumors are bilateral and multifocal (Knudson, 1971), implying that several cells have sustained additional *RB1* mutations. It is not known if *RB1* mutations alone are sufficient for tumorigenesis, but they certainly appear to be the initiating or key event.

Familial retinoblastoma has served as a model in guiding important cancer research. This has led to the discovery of a large number of tumor suppressor genes that are key determinants of the pathogenesis of several hereditary cancer syndromes, including HBOC and hereditary colorectal cancer. These same tumor suppressor genes are also critical to the development of many common sporadic cancers.

Oncogenes: Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia Type 2 as a Paradigm

There are just a few familial cancer syndromes that are known to be caused by a heritable mutation in an oncogene (see Table 71-3). Of these, multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2A (MEN2A) and its variants, familial medullary thyroid carcinoma (FMTC) and multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2B (MEN2B), are best known. Single, activating mutations in just one allele of the proto-oncogene *RET* are sufficient to initiate tumorigenesis in these disorders (Eng, 1999).

All three of these syndromes are characterized by hyperplasia of thyroid C cells and medullary thyroid carcinoma. In families afflicted with MEN2A, pheochromocytomas and/or parathyroid adenomas or parathyroid hyperplasia are also present. MEN2B is further characterized by the presence of multiple mucosal neuromas of the lips, mouth, and gastrointestinal tract, a marfanoid habitus, a particularly aggressive clinical course, and a high proportion of affected individuals due to new *RET* mutations.

RET is a signaling molecule with extracellular receptor and intracellular tyrosine kinase domains. With few exceptions, the known FMTC and MEN2A mutations are single-base substitutions in one of five codons in the extracellular domain, in each case producing substitution of a cystine by another amino acid. More than 95% of cases of MEN2B exhibit the same mutation, a single-base substitution producing a missense mutation in the tyrosine kinase domain.

Hereditary Breast-Ovarian Cancer

HBOC affects more individuals than any other hereditary cancer syndrome. It is caused by germline mutations in *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*, autosomal tumor suppressor genes with roles in DNA repair, transcription regulation, and cell cycle control. The combined carrier prevalence of abnormal variants of these two genes in the general U.S. population is estimated to be 1/500 to 1/300. Three founder mutations in the Ashkenazi-Jewish population are responsible for increasing the prevalence tenfold (1/40) in this ethnic group. HBOC accounts for 5% to 10% of female breast cancer cases and 12% of ovarian cancer cases. Whereas the lifetime risks to women of developing breast or ovarian cancer in the general population are 11% and 1%, respectively, the risk to mutation carriers is 56% to 87% for breast cancer (the risk of a second, contralateral cancer approaches 60%) and 23% to 45% for ovarian cancer. Other cancers, especially breast cancer in men, pancreatic cancer, colon cancer, and prostate cancer, are more prevalent as well, though not to the same extent as female breast and ovarian cancer. Characteristically, tumors occur at an earlier age than their sporadic counterparts, with average age of diagnosis of breast cancer in the 40s compared to the average age of diagnosis of sporadic breast cancer in the mid-60s. Development of breast cancer at an early age is one of the strongest predictors of the presence of HBOC.

BRCA1 and *BRCA2* are both large genes, encoding proteins of 1863 amino acids and 3418 amino acids, respectively. Disease-causing mutations, mostly frameshift or nonsense mutations that cause protein truncation, are distributed widely across both genes. Many thousands of unique deleterious mutations and variants have been identified. Although the presence of founder mutations permits a targeted approach to mutation identification in Ashkenazi Jews (with just two common mutations in *BRCA1* and one in *BRCA2*), whole-gene sequencing is required for mutation detection in the heterogeneous general U.S. population at large. This approach has a high yield of detecting mutations (as long as they exist within the coding regions of the genes) but, analogous to the caveat about CMA testing discussed earlier, also reveals novel missense variants of undetermined clinical significance, which then have to be dealt with. Also, some HBOC patients have large deletions in one of the genes rather than a point mutation, and detection of these requires an alternate approach such as Southern blot or MLPA (Palma et al, 2008).

Genetic testing for *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* mutations in high-risk patients and family members is now a high-profile service in clinical genetics and oncology practice. Effective cancer-prevention strategies for mutation carriers (increased surveillance, chemoprevention, prophylactic surgery) have markedly reduced the incidence of ovarian cancer and primary and secondary breast cancers (Nelson et al, 2014). Individuals at high risk can be identified by their personal history of ovarian or early-onset breast cancer in women or breast cancer in men, and/or by a family history of these cancers in either the paternal or maternal lineages (National Comprehensive Cancer Network, 2005). Because HBOC is an autosomal dominant disorder, first-degree relatives of mutation carriers have a 50% risk of carrying the same mutation. Once the familial mutation is known, testing of at-risk relatives no longer requires whole-gene sequencing but rather can be targeted to the particular nucleotide, saving significant time and expense. With next-generation DNA sequencing now enabling the analysis of increasing numbers of genes, laboratories have begun to offer gene panels for HBOC, adding loci such as *CHEK2*, *CDH1*, *PTEN*, and others in addition to *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* (Aloraifi et al, 2015).

The Hereditary Colorectal Cancer Syndromes

Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC, or Lynch syndrome), as its name implies, is a hereditary colorectal cancer syndrome that is not associated with an abundance of adenomatous polyps. In contrast, familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) and MYH-associated polyposis (MAP) are hereditary disorders in which variable and sometimes large numbers of adenomatous polyps may be present. This useful, if imperfect, clinical distinction is an important guide to the evaluation of individuals who are at risk for these disorders.

Hereditary Nonpolyposis Colorectal Cancer

HNPCC is the second most common hereditary cancer syndrome, affecting almost as many individuals as are affected by HBOC. However, because it is almost equally penetrant in both sexes, its public health impact is equivalent to that of HBOC. Notably, and often unrecognized, endometrial cancer is a prominent part of the syndrome, with more affected women developing endometrial cancer than colorectal cancer. HNPCC accounts for 3% to 5% of all colorectal cancers and 2% to 3% of all endometrial cancers. The disease is caused by germline mutations in any of at least five DNA mismatch repair genes (*MSH2*, *MLH1*, *MSH6*, *PMS2*, and *PMS1)*, each contributing roughly 50%, 40%, 10%, <1%, and <1%, respectively, to the overall incidence of the disorder. The combined carrier prevalence of abnormal variants of *MSH2* and *MSH1*, which account for approximately 90% of HNPCC, is estimated to be between 1/700 and 1/400. Colorectal cancer in HNPCC is characterized by early age of onset (average 44 years, compared to 72 years for sporadic colorectal cancer), locations predominantly on the right side of the colon, and frequent occurrence as multiple primary tumors simultaneously or over a period of time (synchronous or metachronous). The lifetime risk to male and female mutation carriers of developing colorectal cancer is approximately 80% (compared with a 2% lifetime general population risk), while the lifetime risk of endometrial cancer is 40% to 60% (compared with a 1.5% lifetime general population risk). The lifetime risk for gastric cancer (13%) and ovarian cancer (12%) is also increased (compared with 1% for the general population).

A number of guidelines for identifying individuals at risk for HNPCC have been described that use a combination of personal and family history of cancer (e.g., the Amsterdam Criteria and Bethesda Guidelines, which have gone through several revisions) (Lipton et al, 2004). In practice, one need not hold dogmatically to these schemes, because a detailed personal and family history will usually suggest which patients are at risk, and

overadherence to the traditional criteria will result in missing a proportion of Lynch syndrome families (Moreira et al, 2012). Early-onset colorectal cancer and/or endometrial cancer are the strongest predictors of the disorder, particularly when they are seen together in an individual or family, are accompanied by other tumors associated with the disease, and occur in more than one generation of the family.

Another predictor of HNPCC in an affected patient is the presence of microsatellite instability (MSI) in the DNA of that individual's colorectal cancer. The term describes an alteration in the length of short tandem repeat DNA sequences (microsatellites) in the tumor due to mismatch repair errors during DNA replication. Microsatellite instability is highly sensitive but not entirely specific in identifying a colorectal tumor as due to HNPCC, because about 15% of sporadic colon cancers will also demonstrate MSI. The DNA mismatch repair genes are moderately large genes, with *MSH2* encoding a protein of 935 amino acids and *MLH1* encoding a protein of 757 amino acids. Although there are a few mutations that have a high relative prevalence in some populations due to founder effects, the vast majority are distributed widely across both genes. Most mutations are frameshift or nonsense mutations that cause loss of gene expression due to RNA instability, protein instability or protein truncation. In addition, large deletions of single or multiple exons account for approximately one third of the mutations present in *MSH2* and for a smaller fraction of the mutations in *MLH1*.

Genetic testing for *MSH2* and *MLH1* mutations in high-risk patients and family members has moved into clinical practice in a manner similar to that which has occurred for *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* testing for HBOC. For those individuals who are identified as carrying deleterious mutations, complete colonoscopy, beginning at an early age and at regular intervals, is very effective at identifying premalignant adenomatous polyps (the term *HNPCC* should not be taken to imply that there are no polyps involved in the syndrome), while endometrial biopsy and transvaginal ultrasound may identify early endometrial cancer. If colorectal cancer does develop, subtotal colectomy may be considered as an alternative to segmental resection because of the high rate of synchronous and metachronous tumors in patients with HNPCC. Prophylactic hysterectomy–bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy may be considered in women who have completed their families. As in all autosomal dominant disorders, first-degree family members of mutation carriers have a 50% risk of also carrying that same mutation, and their testing becomes relatively straightforward.

Familial Adenomatous Polyposis and Attenuated Familial Adenomatous Polyposis

Familial adenomatous polyposis is a hereditary colorectal cancer syndrome that can present with a striking phenotype in the colon—multifocal colorectal cancer in a background of thousands of adenomatous polyps. It is now recognized that the FAP phenotype is diverse and the number of colonic polyps can vary markedly. Accordingly, *classic* FAP is now diagnosed when an individual develops at least 100 adenomatous polyps over his or her lifetime, whereas *attenuated* FAP (AFAP) is the term applied to a patient whose lifetime polyp burden is in the range of 20 to 100 polyps. The distinction is entirely clinical, because both disorders are caused by germline mutations in the *APC* (adenomatous polyposis coli) gene, a tumor suppressor gene with several important cellular functions and a likely initiator of sporadic colorectal cancer development as well. Germline *APC* mutations are carried by 1/10,000 to 1/5000 individuals; most of these mutations have been inherited from a similarly affected parent, but 20% to 30% are de novo mutations. Accordingly, FAP or AFAP cannot be ruled out because of an absence of a positive family history, which is particularly important to keep in mind when assessing a patient with a low polyp burden.

Early-onset colorectal cancer (average 39 years of age for FAP and approximately 50 years of age for AFAP) requires early diagnosis and close clinical monitoring for individuals determined to be at risk by family history and/or genetic testing. Screening sigmoidoscopies should be started at 10 years of age and prophylactic colectomy performed when polyps have developed. For individuals at risk for the less florid AFAP, screening may begin later in the teens, but colonoscopy is advised because polyps preferentially develop in the right side of the colon. Colectomy is performed when the polyp burden is no longer manageable by polypectomy. Upper gastrointestinal surveillance is also indicated because gastric and small bowel polyps also develop. This is particularly important in the duodenum, especially in the periampullary region, where the lifetime risk for progression to cancer is 5% to 12%.

Patients with FAP and AFAP are also at higher risk for a number of other cancers (gastric, pancreatic, biliary tract, thyroid) and frequently have other clinical findings: desmoid tumors, osteomas, dental abnormalities, epidermoid cysts, and congenital hypertrophy of the retinal pigmented epithelium (CHRPE). Of these, desmoid tumors, affecting approximately 10% of patients with FAP, are the most important. These clonal proliferations of myofibroblasts form in the abdominal wall or the abdominal cavity and are locally invasive, compress abdominal organs, and may cause serious morbidity and mortality.

APC is a large gene, encoding a protein of 2843 amino acids. Most disease-causing mutations are frameshift or nonsense variants producing protein truncation. These mutations are distributed widely along the gene, requiring full-gene sequencing unless the familial mutation is already known. Some genotype-phenotype correlations are possible: mutations that produce extraintestinal features tend to map to particular regions of the gene, while those that are associated with AFAP cluster in the 5′- and 3′-most regions of the gene.

MYH-*Associated Polyposis*

MYH-associated polyposis is an autosomal recessive hereditary cancer syndrome caused by mutations in the human homolog of the bacterial *mutY* gene, *MYH* (Wang et al, 2004). The clinical phenotype is very similar to that of AFAP or the less florid variants of FAP: that is, a polyp burden in the tens to hundreds, not thousands. As with FAP/AFAP, patients are at risk for duodenal polyposis, and some have been reported to have extraintestinal manifestations such as CHRPE and osteomas as well. Because of the autosomal recessive nature of this disorder, MAP families typically show no evidence of vertical transmission of the disease, as would be true for the autosomal dominant FAP/AFAP, but might include affected siblings. It is estimated that the carrier frequency for mutant *MYH* alleles is approximately 2%, which implies a 1/10,000 frequency of biallelic (affected) individuals. This is very similar to the number of patients who have FAP/AFAP. The close similarity of the MAP and FAP/AFAP phenotypes, and the fact that as many as 30% of individuals with FAP have no evidence of vertical transmission in the family because they carry de novo *APC* mutations, can make differential diagnosis difficult, especially when the polyp burden is not large. In many cases, it is necessary to perform mutation analysis for both *APC* and *MYH* to arrive at a diagnosis.

Laboratory Testing for Familial Cancer Mutations

DNA analysis for heritable, cancer-predisposing mutations has enormous potential for disease prevention and early treatment. If a very high proportion of the cancer-causing mutations in a particular gene or ethnic group are known, and these mutations are relatively few in number, direct analysis for these mutations may be simple and inexpensive. Fortunately, this may sometimes be the case with an oncogene, because activation of the gene can only be achieved in a limited number of ways. As mentioned earlier, the spectrum of mutations in *RET* that are responsible for MEN2 is quite small, with just a handful of well-defined mutations accounting for more than 95% of the total.

If, on the other hand, the gene is large, and cancer-causing mutations are numerous and widely dispersed (which is commonly the case with tumor suppressor genes, because they can be inactivated in many different ways), then mutation analysis must of necessity be less targeted and be capable of screening large stretches of DNA. In that case, direct DNA sequencing must be used. In addition, whole-exon deletions or duplications, or even whole-gene deletions, which are not detectable by sequencing, may constitute a significant percentage of the deleterious mutations in a particular gene. In this case, techniques that are capable of assessing gene dosage, such as Southern blotting, some variation of quantitative PCR, MLPA, or a hybridization platform that is capable of measuring sequence dosage in a comparative way, must be used. Fig. 71-8 illustrates the DNA sequence tracing of the Ashkenazi-Jewish founder mutation 185delAG in *BRCA1*, which is an example of a common ethnic-specific mutation in an otherwise mutationally heterogeneous tumor suppressor gene.

HEMOCHROMATOSIS

Hereditary hemochromatosis, first recognized in its full clinical expression as the triad of cirrhosis, diabetes mellitus, and bronzing of the skin, was originally thought to be a rare disorder of iron overload affecting about 1 in 5000 or fewer Caucasians. However, when genetic studies linked the disease-causing gene to the HLA locus on chromosome 6, and biochemical tests of iron overload (principally transferrin saturation) were utilized, it was recognized that the underlying genetic predisposition to iron overload was extremely common. Indeed, hereditary hemochromatosis is now recognized as an autosomal recessive disorder with a carrier frequency as high as 1 in 8 in people of northern European descent, making it the most

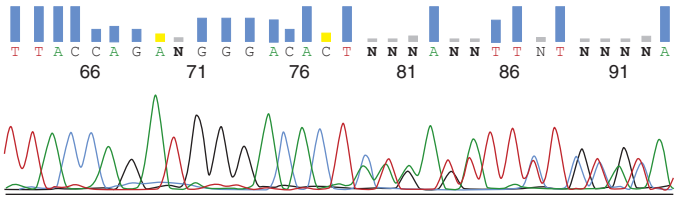


Figure 71-8 Detection of the Ashkenazi Jewish founder mutation 185delAG in the *BRCA1* gene by DNA sequencing. Because familial breast-ovarian cancer is a dominant disorder, the mutation is heterozygous, and because it results in the deletion of two nucleotides from one of the alleles, the sequence profile is "out of frame" from the mutation site onward (starting at nucleotide 79 in this particular readout). This causes overlapping of different nucleotides between the two alleles, which the automated sequencer has trouble identifying (hence the frequent notation "N" for the nucleotide calls).

common genetic disorder in the U.S. Caucasian population. The incidence of at-risk homozygotes is 1 in 250, but only a fraction of these accumulate sufficient excess iron to produce the tissue injury associated with the classic disorder.

Our understanding of hereditary hemochromatosis entered a new era with the identification of the *HFE* gene (initially called *HLA-H*) within the major histocompatibility locus on chromosome 6 (Feder et al, 1996). The HFE protein, although it is a major histocompatibility complex class I–like molecule, does not bind and present endogenous peptides and is not thought to have an immunologic function. Rather, as discussed in Chapter 50, evidence indicates that the HFE protein interacts with the transferrin receptor and modulates enteric absorption of dietary iron (Waheed et al, 1999). Mutations in *HFE* impair this regulatory function, leading to excess iron absorption and storage in tissues.

As noted in Chapter 50, a single missense mutation in *HFE*, C282Y, which results in a tyrosine substitution for cystine at amino acid 282 in the HFE protein, is present in the homozygous state in 80% to 90% of Caucasians with hemochromatosis. An additional small percentage of patients with hemochromatosis are compound heterozygotes, carrying one chromosome with a C282Y mutation and another with an H63D mutation. H63D is a common variant, with a carrier frequency of approximately 20%, and its association with iron overload is very low (1% to 2%) in the compound heterozygous state and probably even lower when homozygous (Gochee et al, 2002). Over the years since its discovery, the penetrance of the C282Y homozygous state has also been questioned, and may be appreciably lower than the 80% earlier quoted, perhaps as low as 10% or even 1% (Beutler et al, 2002; Pietrangelo, 2004). For this reason, population screening for these mutations in individuals with no clinical or biochemical signs of hemochromatosis has not been recommended. Similar to what was discussed for factor V Leiden earlier, the DNA test is best reserved for differential diagnosis in patients already exhibiting the clinical disorder or elevated transferrin saturation detected on biochemical screening. The C282Y and H63D mutations are single-nucleotide substitutions and may be analyzed easily by a variety of PCR, real-time PCR, microarray, microplate, or sequencing methods. There are a number of other genes involved in iron metabolism, such as hepcidin, ferroportin, and hemojuvelin, but mutations in these genes are not common enough to justify widespread testing at present (Babitt & Lin, 2011).

SPINAL MUSCULAR ATROPHY

Spinal muscular atrophy is an autosomal recessive motor neuron disorder characterized by proximal muscle weakness and wasting. The most severe form, type I (also called Werdnig-Hoffmann disease), presents with hypotonia in infancy and early childhood death due to respiratory failure. Intermediate and atypical forms are also described. The disease is caused by mutations in the *SMN1* gene on chromosome 5q13. With a carrier frequency of 1 in 50, spinal muscular atrophy is one of the more common lethal recessive disorders, approaching the incidence of CF.

The majority (95%) of affected patients exhibit loss of the *SMN1* gene, either through complete gene deletion or through a gene conversion event involving sequences in the adjacent *SMN2* gene, which differs by a single nucleotide in exon 7. The *SMN2* gene is believed to be nonessential because both alleles are absent in 5% to 10% of normal individuals, yet is partially protective as demonstrated by the finding of higher *SMN2* copy number in patients with less severe forms of the disease (Mailman et al, 2002). The presence of this closely homologous pseudogene has necessitated the development of meticulously designed allele-specific PCR/restriction endonuclease assays to determine homozygous deletion of *SMN1* in the presence of *SMN2* (Prior, 2010). Identification of carriers, based on *SMN1* gene dosage analysis, is even more challenging and requires the use of quantitative or real-time PCR methods (Ojino & Wilson, 2004b); this problem, along with questions about genotype-phenotype correlation, have led to some controversy over whether SMA should be a target of general population carrier screening along the lines of CF (Prior, 2008; ACOG, 2009). The small percentage of patients not showing loss or conversion of both *SMN1* genes usually carry a small intragenic mutation in one allele, of which a large number have been reported. These can be detected by sequencing or by multiplex allele-specific PCR assays (Mailman et al, 2002).

MITOCHONDRIAL DNA DISORDERS

In addition to the 6 billion bp of DNA that comprise the human nuclear diploid genome, vital genetic information is also encoded in DNA molecules carried by the mitochondria in the cytoplasm. These 16,500-bp, double-stranded circular DNA molecules are present in 2 to 10 copies in each of the up to several hundred mitochondria of the cell. Mitochondrial DNA codes for 13 of the proteins of the respiratory chain and adenosine triphosphate (ATP) synthase, 22 transfer RNAs required for their translation, and two ribosomal RNAs. Mitochondrial DNA is self-replicating and is transmitted strictly by maternal inheritance, because the mitochondria of a spermatozoon are not incorporated into the zygote upon fertilization of an ovum.

Disease-causing abnormalities of mitochondrial DNA may result from several different mechanisms (Ruiz-Pesini et al, 2007). Single large deletions (and, rarely, duplications) that apparently occur sporadically in oogenesis are typical of Kearns-Sayre syndrome, a myopathy characterized principally by progressive external ophthalmoplegia and pigmentary retinopathy. A wide range of disorders are characterized by multiple small deletions and show typical Mendelian autosomal dominant or autosomal recessive patterns of inheritance, because they are due to defects in nuclear genes important for mitochondrial DNA replication. Most distinctive from a genetic point of view are the disorders that follow a pattern of strict maternal inheritance, never showing transmission from an affected male and passing from an affected female equally to her sons and daughters. These diseases are most often due to point mutations in one of the genes encoding a transfer RNA (e.g., myoclonic epilepsy with ragged red fibers [MERRF] and mitochondrial myopathy, encephalopathy, lactic acidosis, and strokelike episodes [MELAS]) or a mitochondrial protein (e.g., Leber hereditary optic neuropathy [LHON]). In addition to the inherited encephalomyopathies, there is growing evidence that tissue-specific accumulations of somatic mitochondrial mutations may contribute to the development of many common late-onset degenerative disorders, and perhaps to aging itself.

Often the clinical presentation will guide the choice of mutation panel testing in a stepwise fashion, because particular mutations are associated with each of the major syndromes (e.g., missense mutations G11778A, T14484C, and G3460A with LHON). If these tests are negative, one can proceed to a second-tier panel or to complete mtDNA sequencing. The situation is complicated by the finding that some mutations are found in more than one syndrome and by the phenomenon of heteroplasmy—the occurrence of different proportions of mutant and normal mitochondria in different tissues. For this latter reason, mitochondrial DNA testing may require biopsy of the involved tissue (e.g., muscle) because the mutation may not be represented highly enough in blood to be detectable. Recently, the advent of next-generation sequencing has circumvented some of these challenges, in that it allows sequencing of the complete mtDNA genome in a short time while also detecting minor populations of mutant mitochondria, even outside the affected tissue (Dames et al, 2015).

OTHER TARGETS OF MOLECULAR GENETIC TESTING AND SCREENING

The specific disease examples covered in this chapter are among those tested most widely by clinical molecular genetics laboratories, a market that is reflected by their inclusion in the CAP/ACMG proficiency testing programs. This in turn has been dictated largely by their mutation carrier frequency or disease prevalence in the general population, and by their clinical severity. As described earlier, if the carrier frequency of a recessive mutation is sufficiently high in the target population, general screening may be justified. For these and other disorders, the application of the test to differential diagnosis, prenatal diagnosis, or presymptomatic diagnosis may also be of value. With more than 20,000 genetic diseases catalogued, there are obviously many others that could be considered; currently there

are over 4000 different molecular genetic disease tests available as listed in the useful online database GeneTests (*www.genetests.org*) (GeneTests, 2015). Many of these are esoteric and offered by only one or a few laboratories. Tests for extremely rare, or *orphan*, genetic diseases may only be available in the research laboratory that cloned the gene or studies the disease from a mechanistic level. This has led to problems because such laboratories, although performing a vital service to the small number of families at risk, are not Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA)-certified and on legal grounds should not be releasing test results for medical management. A number of solutions have been proposed, such as modifying certain CLIA requirements for such settings, partnering of the research laboratory with a clinical laboratory in their own institution, or establishing a network of dedicated orphan disease laboratories (Grody & Richards, 2008).

Some disorders that are rare in the general population are sufficiently prevalent in a particular racial or ethnic group to justify limited population screening. For example, many laboratories offer an Ashkenazi-Jewish carrier screening panel to include any or all of the following autosomal recessive diseases, which have carrier frequencies ranging from 1/100 to 1/15: Tay-Sachs disease, Gaucher disease, Canavan disease, CF, familial dysautonomia, Niemann-Pick disease A, Fanconi anemia C, Bloom syndrome, and connexin-26–related hearing loss. Screening of just the first four of these diseases has a positive yield of 1 in 6 in this population (Eng et al, 1997).

Beyond the impetus of providing service to a particular indigenous patient population, the choice of molecular genetic test menu from the large and ever-expanding universe of known disease genes will depend on both intellectual and economic factors (Amos & Grody, 2004). Development of a molecular genetic test may be spurred by a clinical colleague's interest in a particular disease and accrual of a stable of patients and at-risk relatives. A molecular test may be needed as backup to a biochemical test done at the same institution, as for hemoglobinopathies or α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, or for statewide expanded newborn screening by tandem mass spectrometry (CDC, 2008). Of course, a strong motivator is the availability of robust, commercially available platforms and reagents for performing the test, and this in turn will be driven by the potential market the vendors perceive for the disease in question. Naturally, carrier screening tests will always be of higher throughput than diagnostic tests, which explains the proliferation of commercial reagents and instruments for CF mutation detection that followed the ACMG/ACOG screening recommendations. Of course, any new test being considered, whether commercially sold or laboratory-developed, must first be shown to have clinical utility and analytic validity.

THE NEW FRONTIER OF DIAGNOSTIC MOLECULAR GENETICS: GENOME-LEVEL DNA SEQUENCING

Any chapter on molecular genetic testing in a contemporary textbook would be highly remiss if sufficient attention were not paid to the impact of next-generation DNA sequencing (NGS) on the approach to molecular diagnosis of patients with novel, rare, or unclear phenotypic presentations. Indeed, this remarkable advance in sequencing speed, cost-efficiency, and throughput probably represents the most dramatic sea change in the molecular testing landscape since the advent of PCR in the mid-1980s. The combination of these new instrumentation platforms with our now-complete knowledge of the human genome sequence is proving to be a tool of incredible power, at last opening the gateway to true "personalized medicine," especially in the areas of genetics and oncology. NGS or *massively parallel* DNA sequencing goes well beyond the specific targeting of a single region of a single gene that is characteristic of Sanger sequencing. Instead, the entire genome is targeted for sequencing, using a series of defined steps (Fig. 71-9). First, the genomic DNA isolated from the patient is sheared into hundreds of millions of short (usually 50 to 100 bp) fragments. These are then linked to adapters (Fig. 71-10) that provide universal primer sites for sequencing, "bar-coding" (for accurate cataloguing of every fragment by the computer analysis software), and attachment to a solid substrate (either a microarray-like surface or microbeads). The aggregate of all the fragments with their adapters is called the *library*. Most clinical NGS laboratories also include an intermediate step of exon-capture (using exonic probes on some type of solid support) so that only the coding regions of the genome (equal to about 1.5% of the total genome content) are sequenced; this test is then designated *exome* (rather than *genome*) sequencing. The rationale behind it is that the coding regions (about 230,000 exons in total for about 23,000 genes) likely account for most of

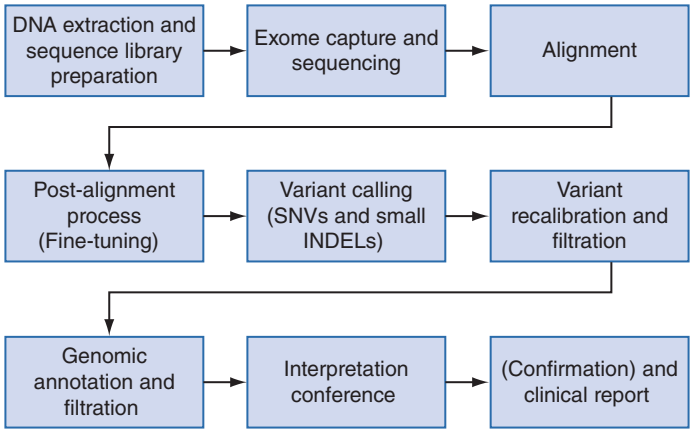


Figure 71-9 Workflow for clinical exome sequencing, from DNA isolation to final interpretation and reporting. (Courtesy of Dr. Hane Lee.)

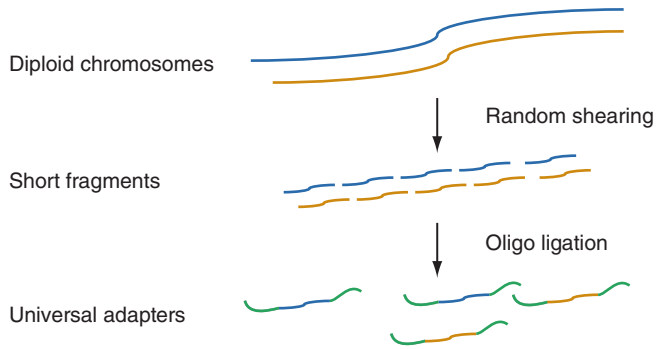


Figure 71-10 Shearing of genomic DNA into small fragments, followed by adapter ligation, the first steps in library preparation for next-generation sequencing. (Courtesy of Dr. Sam Strom.)

the sites of mutations causing Mendelian disorders; also, the extensive degree of population variation in the non-exonic regions is so high and poorly characterized that interpreting them becomes an almost insurmountable challenge. Nevertheless, most experts predict that whole-genome sequencing will eventually replace exome sequencing as the standard procedure.

The technical details of the actual sequencing process vary by manufacturer of the instruments, but most of those in current use take "snapshots" of repeated sequencing cycles, adding one nucleotide at a time, with each of the four nucleotides identified by a certain fluorescent color or other chemical method (Fig. 71-11). Each fragment in the library is sequenced many times in both directions (so-called *paired-end* sequencing), typically 10× to 100×, but potentially even more, hence the name *massively parallel*. The greater the number of these "reads," the more accurate will be the sequence output, since individual reactions may have random errors, but these will be statistically ignored if enough consensus reads are present.

After all the sequencing is completed, the computer software must *align* each of the read fragments to the reference human genome sequence, in order to be confident of which gene/exon it came from and whether or not it contains any sequence variants that do not agree with the reference sequence. The latter process is the *variant calling* step. Next, each variant is examined for its potential biologic/clinical significance (the *annotation* step), and then these are *filtered* according to predetermined software criteria in order to reduce the huge number of sequence variants (20,000 to 30,000 for each exome, 3 to 4 million for each genome) down to a more manageable number. Typical parameters used to eliminate variants from consideration are "synonymous" nucleotide substitutions (which do not alter the amino acid encoded by the codon), known benign polymorphisms in the population, and heterozygous variants for disorders that are known to be recessive. It must be admitted that some aspects of the filtering step are somewhat arbitrary, but there is simply no way for anyone to evaluate so many variants manually.

Once the variants are filtered down to a few tens or hundreds of potentially pathogenic changes, the challenge of *interpretation* begins. This may be the most difficult aspect of exome/genome sequencing and requires

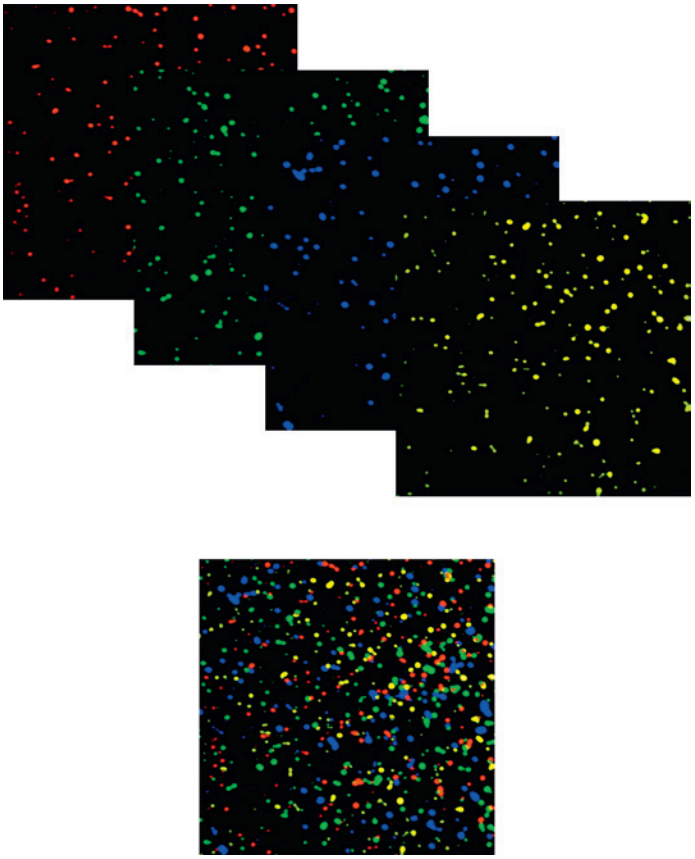


Figure 71-11 Examples of cluster arrays, the raw data from next-generation DNA sequencing. Shown are snapshots of nucleotide addition signals for each of the four bases independently, and mixed together as read by the instrument. (Courtesy of Dr. Sam Strom.)

extraordinarily sophisticated and broad expertise. Most centers employ a multidisciplinary group, including laboratory directors, geneticists, bioinformaticists, and clinicians, to discuss and come to conclusions about which variants to report and whether to designate them as *pathogenic*, *likely pathogenic*, or *unknown* (usually called a *variant of uncertain significance [VUS]*). Guidelines have been promulgated by the ACMG and other groups to assist in the clinical interpretation of novel sequence variants (Richards et al, 2015).

In the few short years of its existence, clinical exome sequencing has already delivered on its promise in the form of high diagnostic yields (most centers reporting 25% to 50% [Lee et al, 2014]), cost savings by ending the "diagnostic odyssey" that many patients with rare disorders endure, and discovery of new disease genes. But it has also uncovered a significant ethical challenge in the form of "incidental" or "off-target" findings. These are pathogenic mutations identified in the course of sequencing that are unrelated to the clinical indication for performing the test, but are potentially life-threatening or "actionable" (e.g., incidental identification of a *BRCA1* mutation in a 4-year-old child undergoing exome sequencing because of autism). Debate has raged between those who feel all such actionable findings should be mandatorily reported in both adults and children, and those who feel the patient (or parent) should have the ability to "opt out" of receiving such findings. The ACMG has come up with a list of about 25 diseases which are felt to be of sufficiently high penetrance, severity, and actionability that routine reporting of mutations found incidentally should be considered (Green et al, 2013). While subject to criticism or modification, the list is a helpful start and may lay the groundwork for what sort of findings should be reported in healthy people who desire exome sequencing to assess their risk for disease. Similar considerations will apply to noninvasive prenatal testing, made possible by massively parallel sequencing of free fetal DNA in the pregnant mother's blood. Although applied at present mainly to the detection of aneuploidies (Gregg et al, 2014), it is theoretically possible to assess all genes in the fetal genome by this method (Lo, 2013), which will inevitably bring with it all the thousands of VUSs and occasional off-target mutations.

One way to avoid confronting off-target mutations is to limit the sequencing to genes already known to be associated with the patient's phenotype. Quite a few genetic conditions are caused by families of genes, with difficulty distinguishing the various subtypes based on clinical presentation alone; examples include cardiomyopathies, hearing loss, and the other conditions listed in Box 71-1. Such conditions may be caused by anywhere from 10 to 100 or more different genes, and NGS now allows for the efficient sequencing of such large amounts of DNA. But unfortunately, experience has shown that as many as half of the patients with these disorders will be missed using existing gene panels (Lee et al, 2014), simply because the panels cannot keep up with all the newly discovered or candidate (or thus far unknown) genes associated with the condition. For that reason, exome sequencing is beginning to supersede the use of gene panels.

The applications presented in this chapter are all single-gene defects, because that is all our current knowledge and technology can handle. In the future, it is hoped that molecular genetic testing will also be applied to the most common chronic diseases of medicine, which are all polygenic: atherosclerosis, diabetes mellitus, hypertension, and schizophrenia. Since these conditions are likely caused by a great many genes (in addition to environmental factors), with each one contributing perhaps only incrementally to overall risk, NGS will have to be used to address all of them at once. It is toward this end that a tremendous effort is being expended to identify single-nucleotide polymorphisms and other variants within candidate genes that may in aggregate produce quantitative trait effects on homeostasis, vascular tone, lipid metabolism, and so on. It is hoped that the discovery of these determinants will enable population risk screening programs followed by targeted therapies and preventive interventions. In this way, molecular genetic testing will be the central modality behind an ever-greater proportion of medical practice in the 21st century, and virtually every patient, whether healthy or ill, will feel its impact.

BOX 71-1

Conditions Tested Using NGS of Gene Panels

Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
Dilated cardiomyopathy
Hereditary arrhythmias (channelopathies)
Retinitis pigmentosa
Albinism
Mental retardation
DNA repair defects
Skeletal dysplasias
Disorders of sexual development
Hearing loss

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

GeneTests. https://www.genetests.org.
This useful Internet site provides scholarly and up-to-date reviews of the genetics and clinical aspects of the major hereditary disorders, as well as a worldwide searchable laboratory directory listing the locations where specific testing for each disease can be obtained.

Green RC, Berg JS, Grody WW, et al, American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics: ACMG recommendations for reporting of incidental findings in clinical exome and genome sequencing, *Genet Med* 15:565–574, 2013.
This publication presents the guidelines developed by the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics for which conditions should be reported when mutations are discovered "incidentally" in the course of exome or genome sequencing.

Grody WW, Cutting G, Klinger K, et al: Laboratory standards and guidelines for population-based cystic fibrosis carrier screening, *Genet Med* 3:149–154, 2001.
This article presents the recommendations from the American College of Medical Genetics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists for implementation of nationwide cystic fibrosis population carrier screening using a core panel of 25 CFTR mutations.

Lee H, Deignan JL, Dorrani N, et al: Clinical exome sequencing for genetic identification of rare Mendelian disorders, *JAMA* 312:1880–1887, 2014.
One of numerous publications demonstrating the high diagnostic yield of genome-level DNA sequencing for patients with rare or undiagnosed disorders.

Lo YM: Noninvasive fetal whole-genome sequencing from maternal plasma: feasibility studies and future directions, *Clin Chem* 59:601–603, 2013.

This paper demonstrates that NGS can be used for noninvasive prenatal testing not only to identify chromosomal aneuploidies but also single-gene defects.

Miller DT, Adam MP, Aradhya S, et al: Consensus statement: chromosomal microarray is a first-tier clinical diagnostic test for individuals with developmental disabilities or congenital anomalies, *Am J Hum Genet* 86:749–764, 2010.

This expert guideline was the first to recommend chromosomal microarray in place of standard karyotype for identification of deletions and duplications in the workup of patients with developmental delay, autism, or congenital malformations.

Richards S, Aziz N, Bale S, et al: Standards and guidelines for the interpretation of sequence variants: a joint consensus recommendation of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics and the Association for Molecular Pathology, *Genet Med* 17:405–423, 2015.

The consensus guideline provides a detailed approach for assessing the pathogenicity of DNA sequence variants identified by either traditional testing or genome-level sequencing.

REFERENCES

Abeliovich D, Lavon IP, Lerer I, et al: Screening for five mutations detects 97% of cystic fibrosis (CF) chromosomes and predicts a carrier frequency of 1:29 in the Jewish Ashkenazi population, *Am J Hum Genet* 51: 951–956, 1992.

ACOG Committee on Genetics: ACOG committee opinion No. 432: spinal muscular atrophy, *Obstet Gynecol* 113:1194–1196, 2009.

Ahn AH, Kunkel LM: The structural and functional diversity of dystrophin, *Nat Genet* 3:283–291, 1993.

Aloraifi F, Boland MR, Green AJ, et al: Gene analysis techniques and susceptibility gene discovery in non-BRCA1/BRCA2 familial breast cancer, *Surg Oncol* 24:100–109, 2015.

Amaral MD: Novel personalized therapies for cystic fibrosis: treating the basic defect in all patients, *J Intern Med* 277:155–166, 2015.

American College of Medical Genetics: *Genetic susceptibility to breast and ovarian cancer: assessment, counseling and testing guidelines—executive summary*, Albany, N.Y., 1999, American College of Medical Genetics and New York State Department of Health.

Amos J, Grody WW: Development and integration of molecular genetic tests into clinical practice: the US experience, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 4:465–477, 2004.

Anguiano A, Oates RD, Amos JA, et al: Congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens: a primarily genital form of cystic fibrosis, *JAMA* 267:1794–1797, 1992.

Babitt JL, Lin HY: The molecular pathogenesis of hereditary hemochromatosis, *Semin Liver Dis* 31:280–292, 2011.

Baruch S, Hudson K: Civilian and military genetics: nondiscrimination policy in a post-GINA world, *Am J Hum Genet* 83:435–444, 2008.

Beggs AH, Koenig M, Boyce FM, et al: Detection of 98% of DMD/BMD gene deletions by polymerase chain reaction, *Hum Genet* 86:45–48, 1990.

Bertina RM, Koeleman BPC, Koster T, et al: Mutations in blood coagulation factor V associated with resistance to activated protein C, *Nature* 343:1535–1536, 1994.

Beutler E, Felitti VJ, Koziol JA, et al: Penetrance of 845G-A (C282Y) HFE hereditary haemochromatosis mutation in the USA, *Lancet* 359:211–218, 2002.

Billings PR, Kohn MA, de Cuervas M, et al: Discrimination as a consequence of genetic testing, *Am J Hum Genet* 50:476–482, 1992.

Brown WT: The FRAXE syndrome: is it time for routine screening? *Am J Hum Genet* 58:903–905, 1996.

Burger J, Buiting K, Dittrich B, et al: Different mechanisms and recurrence risks of imprinting defects in Angelman syndrome, *Am J Hum Genet* 61:88–93, 1997.

Burke W, Aitken ML, Chen S-H, et al: Variable severity of pulmonary disease in adults with identical cystic fibrosis mutations, *Chest* 102:506–509, 1992.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): Impact of expanded newborn screening—United States, 2006, *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 57:1012–1015, 2008.

Cobb NJ, Surewicz WK: Prion diseases and their biochemical mechanisms, *Biochemistry* 48:2574–2585, 2009.

Collins FS: Cystic fibrosis: molecular biology and therapeutic implications, *Science* 256:774–780, 1992.

Conner BJ, Reyes AA, Morin C, et al: Detection of sickle beta-globin allele by hybridization with synthetic oligonucleotides, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 80: 278–282, 1983.

Dames S, Eilbeck K, Mao R: A high-throughput next-generation sequencing assay for the mitochondrial genome, *Methods Mol Biol* 1264:77–88, 2015.

Darras BT, Koenig M, Kunkel LM, et al: Direct method for prenatal diagnosis and carrier detection in Duchenne/Becker muscular dystrophy using the entire dystrophin cDNA, *Am J Med Genet* 29:713–726, 1988.

Derichs N: Targeting a genetic defect: Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator modulators in cystic fibrosis, *Eur Respir Rev* 22:58–65, 2013.

Ducros V, Barro C, Yver J, et al: Should plasma homocysteine be used as a biomarker of venous thromboembolism? A case-control study, *Clin Appl Thromb Hemost* 15:517–522, 2009.

Eng C: RET proto-oncogene in the development of human cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 17:380–393, 1999.

Eng CM, Schechter C, Robinowitz J, et al: Prenatal genetic carrier testing using triple disease screening, *JAMA* 278:1268–1272, 1997.

Everett CM, Wood NW: Trinucleotide repeats and neurodegenerative disease, *Brain* 127:2385–2405, 2004.

Feder JN, Gnirke A, Thomas W, et al: A novel MHC class I-like gene is mutated in patients with hereditary haemochromatosis, *Nat Genet* 13:399–408, 1996.

Fu Y-H, Kuhl DPA, Pizzuti A, et al: Variation of the CGG repeat at the fragile X site results in genetic instability: resolution of the Sherman paradox, *Cell* 67:1047–1058, 1991.

Fu Y-H, Pizzuti A, Fenwick RG, et al: An unstable triplet repeat in a gene related to myotonic muscular dystrophy, *Science* 255:1256–1258, 1992.

Garber JE, Offit K: Hereditary cancer predisposition syndromes, *J Clin Oncol* 23:276–292, 2005.

GeneTests. https://www.genetests.org. Accessed May 16, 2015.

Gervais R, Dumur V, Rigot J-M, et al: High frequency of the R117H cystic fibrosis mutation in patients with congenital absence of the vas deferens (letter), *N Engl J Med* 328:446–447, 1993.

Gochee PA, Powell LW, Cullen DJ, et al: A population-based study of the biochemical and clinical expression of the H63D hemochromatosis mutation, *Gastroenterology* 122:646–651, 2002.

Grebe TA, Seltzer WK, DeMarchi J, et al: Genetic analysis of Hispanic individuals with cystic fibrosis, *Am J Hum Genet* 54:443–446, 1994.

Green RC, Berg JS, Grody WW, et al, American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics: ACMG recommendations for reporting of incidental findings in clinical exome and genome sequencing, *Genet Med* 15:565–574, 2013.

Gregg AR, Van den Veyver IB, Gross SJ, et al: Noninvasive prenatal screening by next-generation sequencing, *Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet* 15:327–347, 2014.

Grody WW: Cystic fibrosis: molecular diagnosis, population screening, and public policy, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 123:1041–1046, 1999.

Grody WW: Molecular genetic risk screening, *Annu Rev Med* 54:473–490, 2003.

Grody WW: Expanded carrier screening and the law of unintended consequences: from cystic fibrosis to fragile X, *Genet Med* 13:996–997, 2011.

Grody WW, Cutting G, Klinger K, et al: Laboratory standards and guidelines for population-based cystic fibrosis carrier screening, *Genet Med* 3:149–154, 2001a.

Grody WW, Griffin JH, Taylor AK, et al: American College of Medical Genetics consensus statement on factor V Leiden mutation testing, *Genet Med* 3:139–148, 2001b.

Grody WW, Cutting GR, Watson MS: The cystic fibrosis mutation "arms race": when less is more, *Genet Med* 9:739–744, 2007.

Grody WW, Richards CS: New quality assurance standards for rare disease testing, *Genet Med* 10:320–324, 2008.

Grosu DS, Hague L, Chelliserry M, et al: Clinical investigational studies for validation of a next-generation sequencing in vitro diagnostic device for cystic fibrosis testing, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 14:605–622, 2014.

Gurrieri F, Accadia M: Genetic imprinting: the paradigm of Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes, *Endocr Dev* 14:20–28, 2009.

Hagerman RJ, Hull CE, Safanda JF, et al: High functioning fragile X males: demonstration of an unmethylated fully expanded FMR-1 mutation associated with protein expression, *Am J Med Genet* 51:298–308, 1994.

Hall MA, Rich SS: Laws restricting health insurers—use of genetic information: impact on genetic discrimination, *Am J Hum Genet* 66:293–307, 2000.

Handyside AH, Lesko JG, Tarin JJ, et al: Birth of a normal girl after in vitro fertilization and preimplantation diagnostic testing for cystic fibrosis, *N Engl J Med* 327:905–909, 1992.

Hantash FM, Goos DG, Tsao D, et al: Qualitative assessment of FMR1 (CGG)n triplet repeat status in normal, intermediate, premutation, full mutation, and mosaic carriers in both sexes: Implications for fragile X syndrome carrier and newborn screening, *Genet Med* 12:162–173, 2010.

Hatcher SL, Trang QT, Robb KM, et al: Prenatal diagnosis by enzymatic amplification and restriction endonuclease digestion for detection of haemoglobins A, S and C, *Mol Cell Probes* 6:343–348, 1992.

Highsmith WE, Burch LH, Zhou Z, et al: A novel mutation in the cystic fibrosis gene in patients with pulmonary disease but normal sweat chloride concentrations, *N Engl J Med* 331:974–980, 1994.

Hoffman EP, Fischbeck KH, Brown RH, et al: Characterization of dystrophin in muscle-biopsy specimens from patients with Duchenne's or Becker's muscular dystrophy, *N Engl J Med* 318:1363–1368, 1988.

Holtzman N, Murphy P, Watson M, et al: Predictive genetic testing: from basic research to clinical practice, *Science* 278:602–605, 1997.

Hoppe CC: Prenatal and newborn screening for hemoglobinopathies, *Int J Lab Hematol* 35:297–305, 2013.

Huntington's Disease Society of America: *Guidelines for predictive testing for Huntington's disease*, New York, 1989, Author.

Imperatore G, Pinsky LE, Motulsky A, et al: Hereditary hemochromatosis: perspectives of public health, medical genetics, and primary care, *Genet Med* 5:1–8, 2003.

Jacinto FV, Esteller M: Mutator pathways unleashed by epigenetic silencing in human cancer, *Mutagenesis* 22:247–253, 2007.

Jacquemont S, Hagerman R, Leehey MA, et al: Penetrance of the fragile X-associated tremor/ataxia syndrome in a premutation carrier population, *JAMA* 291:460–469, 2004.

Kerem B-S, Rommens JM, Buchanan JA, et al: Identification of the cystic fibrosis gene: genetic analysis, *Science* 245:1073–1080, 1989.

Knoll JHM, Nicholls RD, Magenis RE, et al: Angelman and Prader-Willi syndromes share a common chromosome 15 deletion but differ in parental origin of the deletion, *Am J Med Genet* 32:285–290, 1989.

Knudson AG: Mutation and cancer: statistical study of retinoblastoma, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 68:820–823, 1971.

Koeleman BPC, Reitsma PH, Allaart CF, et al: Activated protein C resistance as an additional risk factor for thrombosis in protein C-deficient families, *Blood* 84: 1031–1035, 1994.

Kosaki K, McGinniss MJ, Veraksa AN, et al: Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes: diagnosis with a bisulfite-treated methylation-specific PCR method, *Am J Med Genet* 73:308–313, 1997.

Koshy BT, Zoghbi HY: The CAG/polyglutamine tract diseases: gene products and molecular pathogenesis, *Brain Pathol* 7:927–942, 1997.

Kronquist KE, Sherman SL, Spector EB: Clinical significance of tri-nucleotide repeats in fragile X testing: a clarification of American College of Medical Genetics guidelines, *Genet Med* 10:845–847, 2008.

Kupferminc MJ, Eldor A, Steinman N, et al: Increased frequency of genetic thrombophilia in women with complications of pregnancy, *N Engl J Med* 340:9–13, 1999.

Lee H, Deignan JL, Dorrani N, et al: Clinical exome sequencing for genetic identification of rare Mendelian disorders, *JAMA* 312:1880–1887, 2014.

Lipton LR, Johnson V, Cummings C, et al: Refining the Amsterdam Criteria and Bethesda Guidelines: testing algorithms for the prediction of mismatch repair mutation status in the familial cancer clinic, *J Clin Oncol* 22:4934–4943, 2004.

Lo YM: Noninvasive fetal whole-genome sequencing from maternal plasma: feasibility studies and future directions, *Clin Chem* 59:601–603, 2013.

Lodi R, Cooper JM, Bradley JL, et al: Deficit of in vivo mitochondrial ATP production in patients with Friedreich ataxia, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 96:11492–11495, 1999.

Louis M, Dekairelle AA, Gala JL: Rapid and combined genotyping of factor V, prothrombin and methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase single nucleotide polymorphisms using minor groove binding DNA oligonucleotides (MGB probes) and real-time polymerase chain reaction, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 42:1364–1369, 2004.

Macek M, Mackova A, Hamosh A, et al: Identification of common cystic fibrosis mutations in African-Americans with cystic fibrosis increases the detection rate to 75%, *Am J Hum Genet* 60:1122–1127, 1997.

Maggio A, Gianbona A, Cai SP, et al: Rapid and simultaneous typing of hemoglobin S, hemoglobin C, and seven Mediterranean beta-thalassemia mutations by covalent reverse dot blot analysis: application to prenatal diagnosis in Sicily, *Blood* 81:239–242, 1993.

Mahadevan M, Tsilfidis C, Sabourin L, et al: Myotonic dystrophy mutation: an unstable CTG repeat in the

3′ untranslated region of the gene, *Science* 255:1253–1255, 1992.
Mailman MD, Heinz JW, Papp AC, et al: Molecular analysis of spinal muscular atrophy and modification of the phenotype by SMN2, *Genet Med* 4:20–26, 2002.
Manning M, Hudgins L, ACMG Professional Practice and Guidelines Committee: Array-based technology and recommendations for utilization in medical genetics practice for detection of chromosomal abnormalities, *Genet Med* 12:742–745, 2010.
Massie J, Castellani C, Grody WW: Carrier screening for cystic fibrosis in the new era of medications that restore CFTR function, *Lancet* 383:923–925, 2014.
Matsuura T, Sutcliffe JS, Fang P, et al: De novo truncating mutations in E6-AP ubiquitin-protein ligase gene (UBE3A) in Angelman syndrome, *Nat Genet* 15:74–77, 1997.
McCabe LL, McCabe ERB: Genetic screening: carriers and affected individuals, *Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet* 5:57–69, 2004.
Miller DT, Adam MP, Aradhya S, et al: Consensus statement: chromosomal microarray is a first-tier clinical diagnostic test for individuals with developmental disabilities or congenital anomalies, *Am J Hum Genet* 86:749–764, 2010.
Monaco AP, Bertelson CJ, Liechti-Gallati S, et al: An explanation for the phenotypic differences between patients bearing partial deletions of the DMD locus, *Genomics* 2:90–95, 1988.
Moreira L, Balaguer F, Lindor N, et al, EPICOLON Consortium: Identification of Lynch syndrome among patients with colorectal cancer, *JAMA* 308:1555–1565, 2012.
Moskowitz SM, Chmiel JF, Sternen DL, et al: Clinical practice and genetic counseling for cystic fibrosis and CFTR-related disorders, *Genet Med* 10:851–868, 2008.
Multicenter Study Group: Diagnosis of Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophies by polymerase chain reaction: a multicenter study, *JAMA* 267:2609–2615, 1992.
Naja RP, Kaspar H, Shbaklo H, et al: Accurate and rapid prenatal diagnosis of the most frequent East Mediterranean beta-thalassemia mutations, *Am J Hematol* 75:220–224, 2004.
Nallamilli BR, Ankala A, Hegde M: Molecular diagnosis of Duchenne muscular dystrophy, *Curr Protoc Hum Genet* 83:9–25, 2014.
National Comprehensive Cancer Network: Genetic/familial high-risk assessment: breast and ovarian. Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology—v.1, 2005. Available at: http://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/PDF/genetics_screening.pdf.
NIH Consensus Statement Online: Genetic testing for cystic fibrosis, 1997. Available at: http://text.nlm.nih.gov/nih/cdc/www/106txt.html.
Nelson HD, Pappas M, Zakher B, et al: Risk assessment, genetic counseling, and genetic testing for BRCA-related cancer in women: a systematic review to update the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendation, *Ann Intern Med* 160:255–266, 2014.
Nolin SL, Brown WT, Glicksman A, et al: Expansion of the fragile X CGG repeat in females with premutation or intermediate alleles, *Am J Hum Genet* 72:454–464, 2003.
Nolin SL, Glicksman A, Ersalesi N, et al: Fragile X full mutation expansions are inhibited by one or more AGG interruptions in premutation carriers, *Genet Med* 17:358–364, 2015.
Ober C, Lester LA, Mott C, et al: Ethnic heterogeneity and cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator (CFTR) mutation frequencies in Chicago-area CF families, *Am J Hum Genet* 51:1344–1348, 1992.
Ojino S, Wilson RB: Bayesian analysis and risk assessment in genetic counseling and testing, *J Mol Diagn* 6:1–9, 2004a.
Ojino S, Wilson RB: Spinal muscular atrophy: molecular genetics and diagnostics, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 4:15–29, 2004b.
Palma MD, Domchek SM, Stopfer J, et al: The relative contribution of point mutations and genomic rearrangements in BRCA1 and BRCA2 in high-risk breast cancer families, *Cancer Res* 68:7006–7014, 2008.
Palomaki GE, FitzSimmons SC, Haddow JE: Clinical sensitivity of prenatal screening for cystic fibrosis via CFTR carrier testing in a United States panethnic population, *Genet Med* 6:405–414, 2004.
Patrinos GP, Kollia P, Papadakis MN: Molecular diagnosis of inherited disorders: lessons from hemoglobinopathies, *Hum Mutat* 26:399–412, 2005.
Pietrangelo A: Hereditary hemochromatosis—a new look at an old disease, *N Engl J Med* 350:2383–2397, 2004.
Poort SR, Rosendaal FR, Reitsma PH, et al: A common genetic variation in the 3′-untranslated region of the prothrombin gene is associated with elevated plasma prothrombin levels and an increase in venous thrombosis, *Blood* 88:3698–3703, 1996.
Press RD, Bauer KA, Kujovich JL, et al: Clinical utility of factor V Leiden (R506Q) testing for the diagnosis and management of thromboembolic disorders, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 126:1304–1318, 2002.
Prior TW: Genetic analysis of the Duchenne muscular dystrophy gene, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 115:984–990, 1991.
Prior TW: Professional Practice and Guidelines Committee. Carrier screening for spinal muscular atrophy, *Genet Med* 10:840–842, 2008.
Prior TW: Perspectives and diagnostic considerations in spinal muscular atrophy, *Genet Med* 12:145–152, 2010.
Prior TW, Bartolo C, Pearl DK, et al: Spectrum of small mutations in the dystrophin coding region, *Am J Hum Genet* 57:22–23, 1995.
Richards S, Aziz N, Bale S, et al: Standards and guidelines for the interpretation of sequence variants: a joint consensus recommendation of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics and the Association for Molecular Pathology, *Genet Med* 17:405–423, 2015.
Richards CS, Grody WW: Prenatal screening for cystic fibrosis: past, present and future, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 4:49–62, 2004.
Ridker PM, Hennekens CH, Selhub J, et al: Interrelation of hyperhomocyst(e)inemia, factor V Leiden, and risk of future venous thromboembolism, *Circulation* 95:1777–1782, 1997b.
Ridker PM, Miletich JP, Hennekens CH, et al: Ethnic distribution of factor V Leiden in 4047 men and women: implications for venous thromboembolism screening, *JAMA* 227:1305–1307, 1997a.
Riordan JR, Rommens JM, Kerem B-S, et al: Identification of the cystic fibrosis gene: cloning and characterization of complementary DNA, *Science* 245:1066–1073, 1989.
Rowland LP: Dystrophin: a triumph of reverse genetics and the end of the beginning (editorial), *N Engl J Med* 318:1392–1394, 1988.
Ruiz-Pesini E, Lott MT, Procaccio V, et al: An enhanced MITOMAP with a global mtDNA mutational phylogeny, *Nucleic Acids Res* 35:D823–D828, 2007.
Ryan D, Nuccie B, Arvan D: Non-PCR-dependent detection of the factor V Leiden mutation from genomic DNA using a homogeneous invader microtiter plate assay, *Mol Diagn* 4:135–144, 1999.
Sagi M, Weinberg N, Eilat A, et al: Preimplantation genetic diagnosis for BRCA1/2—a novel clinical experience, *Prenat Diagn* 29:508–513, 2009.
Smeets HJM, Smits APT, Verheij CE, et al: Normal phenotype in two brothers with a full FMR1 mutation, *Hum Mol Genet* 4:2103–2108, 1995.
Sherman SL: Premature ovarian failure in the fragile X syndrome, *Am J Med Genet* 97:189–194, 2000.
Spence JE, Perciaccante RG, Greig GM, et al: Uniparental disomy as a mechanism for human genetic disease, *Am J Hum Genet* 42:217–226, 1988.
Strom CM, Crossley B, Buller-Buerkle A, et al: Cystic fibrosis testing 8 years on: lessons learned from carrier screening and sequencing analysis, *Genet Med* 13:166–172, 2011.
Strom CM, Huang D, Chen C, et al: Extensive sequencing of the cystic fibrosis regulator gene: assay validation and unexpected benefits of developing a comprehensive test, *Genet Med* 5:9–14, 2003.
Torella A, Trimarco A, Blanco Fdel V, et al: One hundred twenty-one dystrophin point mutations detected from stored DNA samples by combinatorial denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography, *J Mol Diagn* 12:65–73, 2010.
Traeger-Synodinos J, Vrettou C, Kanavakis E: Rapid detection of fetal mendelian disorders: thalassemia and sickle cell syndromes, *Methods Mol Biol* 444:133–145, 2008.
Tsui L-C: The spectrum of cystic fibrosis mutations, *Trends Genet* 8:393–398, 1992.
Waheed A, Parkkila S, Saarnio J, et al: Association of HFE protein with transferrin receptor in crypt enterocytes of human duodenum, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 96:1579–1584, 1999.
Wang L, Baudhuin LM, Boardman LA, et al: MYH mutations in patients with attenuated and classical polyposis and with young onset colorectal cancer without polyps, *Gastroenterology* 127:9–16, 2004.
Watson MS, Cutting GR, Desnick RJ, et al: Cystic fibrosis couple carrier screening: 2004 revision of ACMG's mutation panel, *Genet Med* 6:387–391, 2004.
Zhou W, Wang G, Zhao X, et al: A multiplex qPCR gene dosage assay for rapid genotyping and large-scale population screening for deletional α-thalassemia, *J Mol Diagn* 15:642–651, 2013.

CHAPTER 72

IDENTITY ANALYSIS: USE OF DNA ANALYSIS IN PARENTAGE, FORENSIC, AND MISSING PERSONS TESTING

*Rhonda K. Roby**

HISTORICAL BACKGROUND, 1396

ADVANTAGES OF DNA, 1397

GENETIC MARKERS, 1397

SAMPLES AND SPECIMEN COLLECTION, 1397

DNA EXTRACTION AND QUANTIFICATION, 1398

TEST METHODS AND MARKER SYSTEMS, 1398
Short Tandem Repeats, 1398
X and Y Chromosome Markers, 1400
Mitochondrial DNA Sequencing, 1400
Other Systems, 1400

ANALYSIS AND USE OF TEST DATA, 1401
DNA in the Crime Laboratory, 1401
DNA in the Pathology Laboratory, 1401

EXCLUSION OF PARENTAGE, 1401
Probability of Exclusion, 1402
Combined Probability of Exclusion, 1403

INCLUSION OF PARENTAGE, 1403
Paternity Index Calculation, 1403
Likelihood of Parentage, 1404
Estimating Parentage with an Absent Parent, 1404
Reconstruction of Families, 1405

SOFTWARE SYSTEMS, 1405

QUALITY ASSURANCE STANDARDS, 1405

CONCLUSION, 1405

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1406

KEY POINTS

- Standardized marker systems with known allelic polymorphisms are used in testing panels. Alleles with short tandem repeats form the basis of commercially available kits.
- Forensic testing requires documentation of all steps taken during collection, extraction, and testing so results can withstand legal challenges.
- Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) can be obtained from any sample that contains cellular material. The stability of DNA allows it to withstand harsh environmental conditions and long postmortem intervals.
- Care must be taken to maintain the integrity of DNA evidence and to avoid contact or exposure of the evidence to any conditions that may contaminate and/or further degrade the original stain/evidence.
- Mitochondrial DNA can be extracted from bone and teeth after hundreds and even thousands of years because it is small and present at hundreds to thousands of copies per cell. Mitochondrial DNA is maternally inherited and can be useful for identifying remains.
- DNA is used in identification of remains and can be used to link a suspect to a crime, to exculpate falsely accused suspects, to recognize serial crimes, and to distinguish copycat crimes, or to aid in accident reconstruction (e.g., to determine who was driving a car by the identification of the bloodstains on the driver's side of the windshield).
- Pathology laboratories can use DNA testing to resolve specimen mix-ups such as when samples are inadvertently switched or pathologic material floats onto a histologic or cytologic slide.
- Standards and quality assurance guidelines for identity testing laboratories have been developed by the American Association of Blood Banks (for parentage testing), the U.S. Department of Justice Federal Bureau of Investigation's Working Groups, the Forensic Science Standards Board, and the International Society for Forensic Standards (for forensic testing).

In parentage testing, samples obtained from multiple individuals are compared for inherited similarities; most often in forensic DNA testing, crime scene samples are evaluated for an exact match with a suspect. In the identification of human remains and missing persons, both comparisons of inherited similarities and direct match comparisons are used.

A frequently quoted early reference to disputed parentage appears in the Bible (1 Kings 3:16 to 27), in which Solomon makes a decision about the maternity of a disputed child by threatening to use his sword to provide each claimant with a portion of the child. When paternity is in dispute, the arbiter of truth often is faced with the dilemma similar to that faced by Solomon: lack of witnesses to the event and the likelihood that the principals might not know or tell the truth. Similarly, short of eyewitnesses or confession, identifying a person at a crime scene is difficult to accomplish, and most evidence merely suggests a suspect linkage. The availability of biologic evidence, such as DNA, provides information that can lead to clear resolution of disputed facts.

HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

The discovery of the ABO blood group system by Landsteiner in 1900 (Landsteiner, 1901) and the recognition that these measurable characteristics followed the genetic rules described by Gregor Mendel (Mendel, 1866) provided objective laboratory evidence that could be used by courts to aid in deciding when a person had been falsely accused of paternity. In the United States, laws addressing the use of genetic markers for proving non-paternity were enacted in 1935 (Schatkin, 1952). In the ensuing years, knowledge about useful genetic marker systems increased dramatically. By 1976, joint guidelines developed by an American Medical Association–American Bar Association committee recommended seven systems for routine blood group investigations in cases of disputed parentage: ABO,

*The author would like to acknowledge Victor Weedn, MD, JD, and Herbert Polesky, MD, for material from chapters in a previous editions, as well as contributions by Arthur Eisenberg, PhD, and Shubhra Nandi.

Rh, MNSs, Kell, Duffy, Kidd, and HLA (Miale et al, 1976). Other genetic systems such as polymorphic serum proteins and red cell enzymes were also recognized as useful. Many of these same genetic markers were used to match crime scene evidence with suspects or victims; however, today, DNA testing is used almost exclusively.

In 1980, Botstein and colleagues described DNA restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) (Botstein et al, 1980). Sir Alec Jeffreys is credited with the first report in the scientific literature to suggest that DNA typing might be useful for forensic identification, and coined the term *DNA fingerprint* in his *Nature* article in 1985 (Jeffreys et al, 1985a, 1985b). Commercial laboratories began using DNA testing for parentage and criminalistic casework in 1986, and government crime laboratories began using DNA testing in 1989 (Weedn & Roby, 1993). Today, several hundred laboratories worldwide use DNA testing for the criminal justice system. In 1990, when the first edition of *Standards for Parentage Testing Laboratories* (American Association of Blood Banks [AABB], 1990) was published, specific requirements for RFLP testing were included along with the *classic systems* (red blood cell surface antigens, human leukocyte antigens, red cell enzymes, and serum protein genetic markers). DNA testing has replaced traditional serologic techniques. The forensic DNA testing community has endured many iterations of DNA methods and technologies, and has standardized its testing with a set of core short tandem repeat (STR) loci as the current mainstay of testing in order to build its international offender databases. The original 13 Combined DNA Index System (CODIS) core loci have recently been expanded to include 7 additional loci for a total of 20 CODIS core loci. The core set of loci were expanded to reduce the number of adventitious matches, increase international capability, and increase the power of discrimination for criminal and missing persons cases (Hares, 2015, 2012a, 2012b). This core set of loci is supplemented by other DNA testing, gender analysis (Amelogenin), Y chromosome markers, and mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) sequencing. Capillary electrophoresis is the main instrument platform with fluorescence detection.

These same technologies are used to identify victims of war or mass disasters (Budowle et al, 2005), whether the disaster is natural, man-made, or industrial, and in cases of wildlife forensics. DNA testing is also used for accident reconstruction, in medical cases of sample mix-ups, and in animal husbandry. DNA technology is here to stay; newer technologies will be adopted that offer higher powers of discrimination, lower costs, enhanced sensitivity, increased efficiency, and even information on the physical traits (e.g., eye color, hair color) and ancestry origin of the remains or biologic material left at a crime scene. As these newer technologies evolve and are validated, so will the field of forensic science.

ADVANTAGES OF DNA

DNA permits the direct identification of the individual source; it is personal and manifests biologic variation. The human genome is approximately 99.9% the same between individuals; it is the 0.1% difference of the human genome that forensic scientists interrogate to individually identify stains, remains recovered from accidents and mass disasters, and biologic relatives. DNA is useful as an identity marker because it is (1) present throughout all cells of the body (except mature red blood cells); (2) the same in all cells of the body; (3) the same throughout life from the time of conception; and (4) different in all individuals. There are exceptions to the previously mentioned points, in order: (1) DNA is not recovered from mature red blood cells; (2) haploid sex gametes have half of the DNA material as compared to the other cells in the body; (3) progenitor stem cell transplantation can result in the presence of the donor's DNA rather than the recipient's inherited DNA; and (4) identical twins have the same DNA. DNA tests have a sensitivity that is far superior to the previously mentioned traditional serologic markers. With the use of polymerase chain reaction (PCR)–based testing, DNA results can be obtained from minute samples and even invisible trace DNA deposits. DNA is a robust molecule resistant to strong acids, alkalis, detergents, and environmental factors (Kobilinsky, 1992). The typing information from DNA is found within the sequence of nucleotides. Consequently, DNA testing is more successfully performed than serology tests on specimens that are older and that have been exposed to greater environmental insults.

Much of the casework for crime laboratories in the United States is from sexual assaults. Vaginal swabs contain bacteria and female epithelial cells as well as the male sperm. DNA from sperm can be separated from non-sperm DNA by a differential lysis procedure because of the protective capsule of spermatozoa (see the "DNA Extraction and Quantification" section later in the chapter). This allows for individualization of the source of the semen without the confounding data of the non-semen evidence. DNA targets are also generally human- or primate-specific, so the presence of bacterial DNA is of no consequence.

Additionally, other advantages to DNA testing include Y chromosome testing where a mixture of a female and a male can reveal only the male's DNA type from his Y chromosome. This testing technique is extremely useful in the presence of mixed DNA when predominantly female DNA is present in the sample.

GENETIC MARKERS

Multiple genetic systems are used for parentage and identity testing. Ideally, the system should have multiple alleles distributed in the population so that there is a high power of exclusion and the least common phenotype has a frequency that can be determined reliably. All markers in the system should be expressed (no null alleles) as codominant, mutation rates should be known, and phenotypes should be stable under usual storage conditions. Methods for detecting the markers should be reliable, reproducible, and feasible for a large number of laboratories. The genetics of the system must be known and follow established inheritance patterns (Mendelian laws). The system should be independent of other markers routinely tested. If the system is intended for calculating estimates of paternity or identity, the gene frequencies in various populations must be established (Budowle et al, 2001).

The DNA from every human (except identical twins) is unique, because of the presence of polymorphisms, which are differences in the DNA between individuals. However, the vast preponderance of the DNA sequence is identical between individuals. On average, only 1 in 1300 nucleotide bases differs between individuals. Nonetheless, this amounts to an average of 3 million bases that differ between any two individuals and accounts for the tremendous genetic variation among individuals. Although the diversity in the coding regions of DNA (genes) is significant, the noncoding regions of DNA also provide for a great deal of diversity.

Length-based polymorphisms are found in repetitive DNA. More than 90% of the human genome is composed of noncoding, or "junk," DNA, of which approximately 20% to 30% is composed of repetitive regions. Many of the repetitive regions vary in the number of core repeats between individuals—so-called *variable number of tandem repeat (VNTR)* loci. DNA fragments containing VNTRs vary in length and are thus useful for analysis. Dinucleotide repeats are most common, but larger core repeats are more useful for forensic purposes since interpretation is much easier than dinucleotide repeats. RFLP, amplified DNA fragment length polymorphisms, and STRs are examples of fragment length-based analytic techniques. Sequence polymorphisms exist within the DNA sequence of similarly sized DNA fragments. Sequence polymorphisms consist of differences in one or more bases in the DNA sequence at a particular location in the genome. Sequence variations can manifest as regions of alternative alleles or base substitutions, additions, or deletions. Most sequence polymorphisms are mere point mutations within repetitive and nonrepetitive regions and are known as single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs). SNPs, sequence-specific oligonucleotides, and mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) tests are examples of sequence-based tests as well as the introduction of next-generation sequencing for forensic genomics. Identity testing has not yet adopted the power of the more than 2 million SNPs in the human genome, but this is clearly on the forefront of the technology.

SAMPLES AND SPECIMEN COLLECTION

Samples such as buccal swabs, bloodstains on filter paper, and fresh whole blood are most frequently used for parentage testing and building databases. For forensic evidence recovered from a crime scene, emergency department, or autopsy, identifying the proper sample and specimen collection are extremely important. In order to visualize the biologic fluids and stains, oftentimes chemicals and/or alternate light sources are used. Blood spatter pattern analysis is also employed to help the investigator interpret and intelligently collect specimens from large pools of blood and bloodstains. When a biologic fluid has been deposited on a surface or an item that cannot be collected, the fluid should be sampled with a clean sterile swab. For large items where the biologic fluid is dry, the sterile swab should be moistened with sterile distilled water, the evidence wiped with the swab, and allowed to air dry prior to packaging. For collection of DNA from bitemarks on bodies, a double swab technique (Sweet et al, 1997) that involves rubbing the bitemark area with a wet swab followed by a dry swab is often used. Control swabs are also collected from an unstained area adjacent to the fluid stain. These items (e.g., blood on clothing, collection swab) should be collected one item at a time, packaged separately, and clearly labeled.

Even though mature red blood cells are devoid of DNA (both nuclear and mitochondrial), ample DNA is present from circulating white blood cells for testing. Despite inhibition of the PCR reaction by heme, blood is a good source of DNA for PCR testing because the inhibitory activity of heme can easily be diluted and removed. Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) and citrate phosphate dextrose (CPD) are often the anticoagulants used and requested for DNA testing. Heparin-anticoagulated blood is not recommended for DNA testing.

In postmortem settings, sources of DNA other than blood are preferred if there is significant putrefaction. Virtually any tissue may be successfully used for DNA typing purposes. Some tissues that may be intuitively thought to be better sources of DNA because they are more densely cellular and would contain higher concentrations of DNA, are in fact, less optimal because of higher rates of postmortem degradation (Kobilinsky, 1992). Among soft tissues, the DNA recovered from liver tissue degrades quickly due to the presence of autolytic enzymes, whereas brain tissue is a relatively good source in the intermediate postmortem period. Bone and teeth are stable sources of postmortem tissue DNA. Informative DNA is routinely obtained from skeletal remains that are decades old. Generally, the greater the body decomposition and the longer the postmortem period, the greater the degradation of the DNA from cadaveric tissues.

Great care should be taken to prevent contamination of the specimen and stains by other sources of DNA. Specimens should be collected using gloves and pristine instruments. When possible, nonexposed tissue should be collected by an incisional biopsy technique. The specimens should be kept cold or preferably frozen (although repeated freezing and thawing is destructive of large DNA fragments). Desiccation, even simple air-drying, may be an adequate method of storage of some DNA specimens (e.g., bloodstains and bone). Tissues in formalin are not optimal; however, results are usually obtained with PCR-based DNA testing techniques. No tissues or biologic fluids should be discarded as inadequate without first attempting DNA testing.

DNA in most specimens will undergo progressive random fragmentation or degradation, reducing the high molecular weight DNA to lower molecular weight DNA (Kobilinsky, 1992). As time progresses, high molecular weight DNA can become degraded even after a short time from fresh tissues and fluids. Likewise, high molecular weight DNA may be obtained for years after a fresh sample has been frozen or desiccated. Residual smaller DNA fragments may persist despite considerable degradation. Because of its high copy number (hundreds to tens of thousands of copies per cell), mtDNA often survives when no nuclear DNA is recovered. Consequently, mtDNA testing is routinely used to identify old skeletal remains (Ivanov et al, 1996; Nűnéz et al, 2011).

Rapid DNA degradation or damage may occur under certain conditions (Parsons & Weedn, 1997). Chemical hydrolysis of DNA is normally quite slow. Tests have shown that mixing DNA with detergents, oil, gasoline, and other adulterants does not alter the DNA result. However, metal ions may catalyze oxidative hydrolysis. Ultraviolet radiation is known to cause thymidine dimerization, and fragmentation of ancient DNA sequences is primarily due to depurination that creates abasic sites leading to DNA breaks.

Results from testing these items of evidence are often used in legal proceedings. Thus, all aspects of the procedures should be well documented since they may be subject to legal challenges by one of the parties. It is important to ensure documentation of the identification of the tested individuals, the collection of the evidence, and the labeling of samples. Although many parentage disputes are civil actions, some jurisdictions require documents showing the chain of custody of samples similar to those used in criminal matters. AABB-accredited laboratories are required to obtain a history of any recent transfusion (in the preceding 3 months) or a hematopoietic stem cell transplant. A photographic identification and appropriate informed consent must also accompany each sample. The consent for a minor should be from an individual with legal rights to the custody of the child. Likewise, the forensic sample must be properly collected, packaged, sealed, and stored and demonstrate evidence of proper chain of custody documentation.

DNA EXTRACTION AND QUANTIFICATION

The first and most critical step for evidence is the extraction of DNA from blood, biologic stains, or other biologic sources. DNA from a bloodstain, a vaginal swabbing, or other source must be isolated from other cell components and environmental contaminants. Numerous DNA extraction methods are used in both the parentage and forensic laboratories. The classic organic chloroform/phenol extraction with ethanol precipitation, although not automated, is an efficient and reliable method that separates proteins and other cellular materials from the DNA molecules. Solid-phase column extraction methods (e.g., Qiagen columns) and magnetic resin particles are used for DNA extraction, particularly in conjunction with automated techniques. The column extraction and magnetic particle methods yield DNA that is highly purified for forensic samples. Contaminants such as those found in cigarette butts and certain dyes may be removed. Silicon beads are another excellent method to purify DNA when inhibitors need to be removed. Many laboratories eliminate the extraction step altogether, mostly on reference samples, by performing PCR directly from a punch of a bloodstained item or a buccal collector.

As mentioned earlier, vaginal swabs require special conditions for extraction using a differential lysis procedure because of the need to separate the male DNA in sperm from the female DNA in epithelial cells (Crouse et al, 1993). The female fraction (the vaginal epithelial cells) is separated by standard extraction procedures. The male fraction (spermatozoa) is then extracted by centrifugation or simple pipetting and breaking the disulfide bridges of the protective capsule of spermatozoa with a dithiothreitol solution. Sensitive PCR-based systems often exhibit female source DNA in the male fraction, producing mixed DNA profiles.

Once the samples are extracted, quantification is performed. The forensic standards require quantification of forensic evidence, when possible. When performing quantification and knowing the amount of DNA in a sample, amplification is usually more successful. Too little or too much DNA in a PCR-based assay results in non-optimal amplification, which can produce poor results. In addition, having *a priori* information on the total human male DNA and a qualitative assessment of the total human DNA is extremely useful in determining which assays to perform in the downstream analysis. Today, real-time quantitative PCR is multiplexed to simultaneously obtain quantitative and qualitative assessment of total human and human male DNA in a single assay. In addition, real-time quantitative PCR can be used to quantitate mitochondrial DNA (Sprouse et al, 2014). Real-time quantitative PCR techniques provide for a more sensitive and objective assay (Green et al, 2005). Early quantification methods that are not as sensitive include absorbance at 260 nm using a spectrophotometer; agarose gel electrophoresis and visualization with an intercalating dye such as ethidium bromide; and DNA bound on a nylon membrane and hybridized with a human-specific probe (Walsh et al, 1992).

TEST METHODS AND MARKER SYSTEMS

SHORT TANDEM REPEATS

Loci consisting of repeat units of three to seven nucleotides occur throughout the genome (Weber & May, 1989). Alleles at these STR loci are defined by the number of repeat units in the PCR-amplified product. The basic PCR techniques employed are discussed in Chapter 67. Extracted sample DNA is added to a PCR reaction mix containing *Thermus aquaticus* (Taq) polymerase, a specific forward and reverse primer for each locus tested, deoxynucleoside triphosphates, magnesium, a buffer solution, and bovine serum albumin. The PCR reaction mixture is amplified in a thermal cycler using carefully defined parameters to maximize detection of the alleles. Several primers with different fluorescent labels are used in a multiplex reaction to detect alleles at several loci in a single amplification. The PCR products, which vary in length, are separated by capillary electrophoresis. Detection is performed using a laser to excite the labeled fluorophore that has been incorporated in the primer. The loci in the multiplex reaction differ by size and color (Fig. 72-1). Sizing is accomplished by mixing a size standard with each sample injected in the capillary and using sizing software algorithms; phenotyping of each peak is achieved by comparing the peaks in the sample to an allelic ladder accounting for most alleles for each locus and using sophisticated genotyping software algorithms for allele calls that adjust for minor variations in electrophoresis for each injection (Fig. 72-2).

The most commonly used markers in forensic and parentage laboratories in the United States are the 13 STR loci (CSF1PO, D3S1358, D5S818, D7S820, D8S1179, D13S317, D16S539, D18S51, D21S11, FGA, TH01, TPOX, VWA) that have been standardized for use in obtaining genetic profiles of individuals who have been convicted of various criminal offenses. These were identified by a consortium of scientists sponsored by the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) for use in CODIS. Today, CODIS laboratories are preparing to implement seven additional loci (D1S1656, D2S441, D2S1338, D10S124, D12S391, D19S433, and D22S1045) (Hares, 2015). The STR marker systems have discrete alleles and are not as polymorphic as the RFLP marker systems. An STR locus may have three or four common alleles (frequencies of 0.15 to 0.25) and several rare

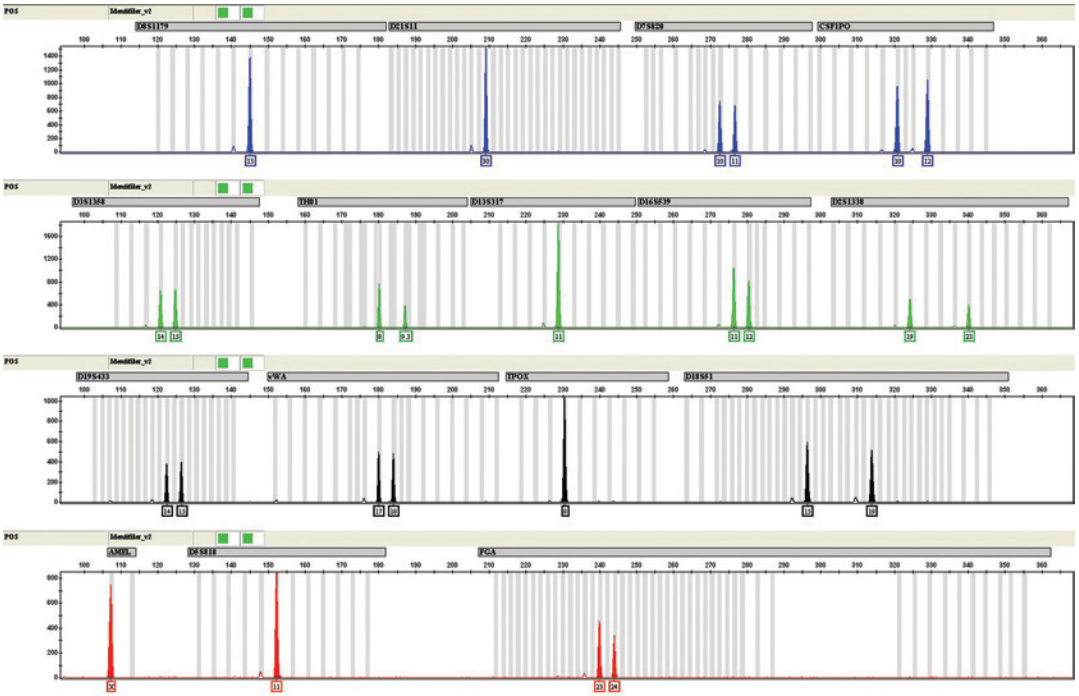


Figure 72-1 The results of the kit-included positive control 9947A amplified with the AmpFLSTR Identifiler PCR Amplification Kit (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, Calif.) (Collins et al, 2004) and electrophoresed on the ABI PRISM 3130*xl* Genetic Analyzer (Applied Biosystems) and typed with GeneMapper *ID* Software v. 3.1.2 (Applied Biosystems). The results for the 15 autosomal STR loci and Amelogenin, a sexing marker, are visualized. This image displays the phenotype of the positive control amplified in this multiplex. The locus name is shown in the gray bar above the peaks; the allele call(s) for each locus is just below the highlighted peak.

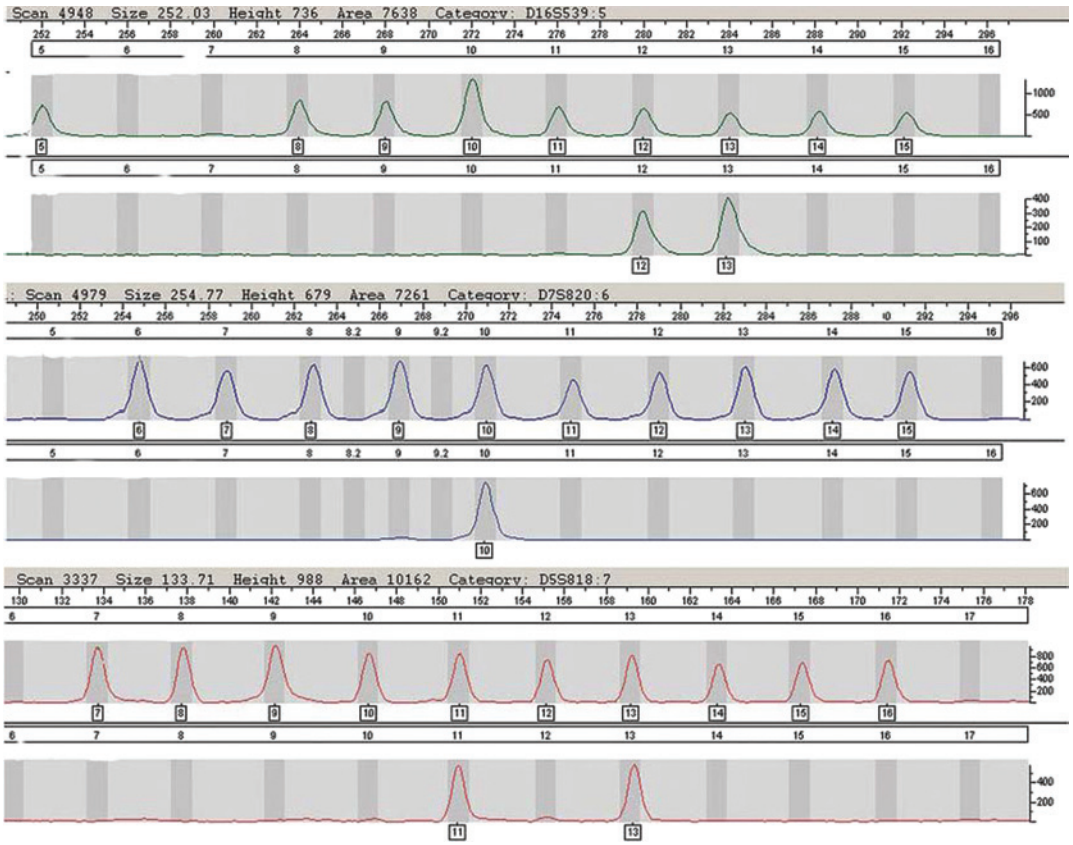


Figure 72-2 The results of a sample electrophoresed on the ABI PRISM 3100 Genetic Analyzer (Applied Biosystems) and amplified with the AmpFLSTR Identifiler PCR Amplification Kit. The ladders and accompanying results for three loci, D16S539 (alleles 12, 13), D7S820 (allele 10), and D5S818 (alleles 11, 13), are visualized in these images. The images demonstrate excellent resolution in the electrophoresis.

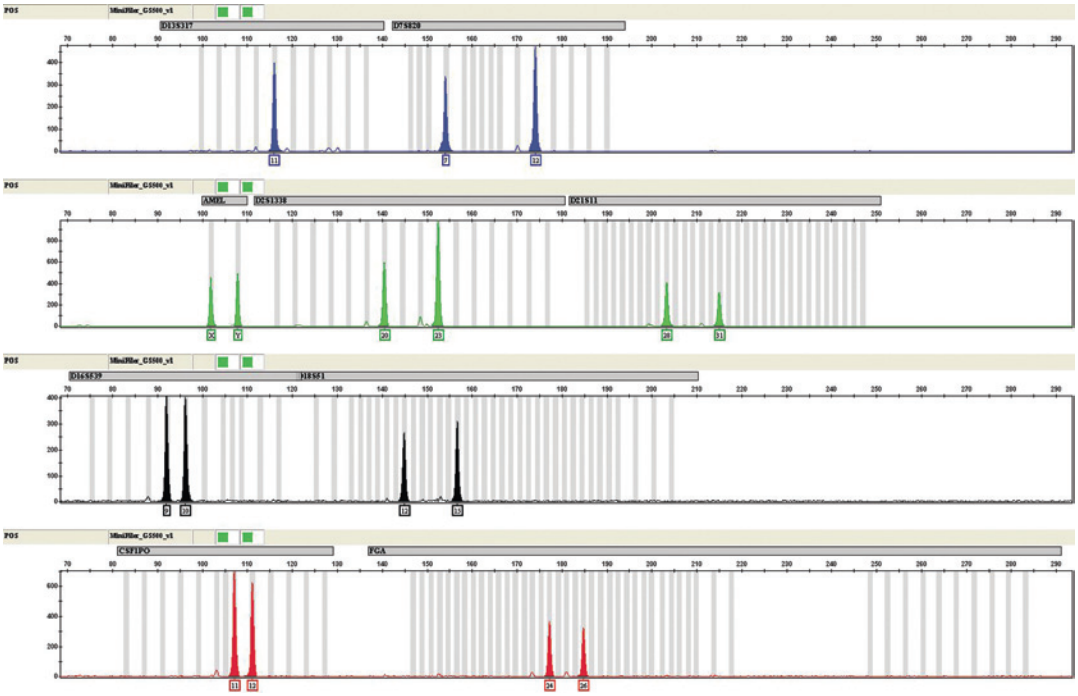


Figure 72-3 The results of the kit-included positive control 007 amplified with the AmpFLSTR MinFiler PCR Amplification Kit (Applied Biosystems) (Mulero et al, 2008), electrophoresed on the ABI PRISM 3130*xl* Genetic Analyzer, and typed with GeneMapper *ID* Software v. 3.1.2. The results for the 8 STR loci are visualized. The locus name is shown in the gray bar above the peaks; the allele call for each locus is just below the highlighted peak. The loci in this kit are smaller (the size of the peaks can be measured on the *x*-axis) than the corresponding loci in the AmpFLSTR Identifiler PCR Amplification Kit (see Fig 72-1).

alleles (frequencies of <0.01). Thus, in order to obtain a high cumulative probability of exclusion (CPE) and combined paternity index (PI), it is usually necessary to test at least six or more STR loci. In a series of 50 paternity cases tested in parallel by both RFLP and nine STR loci, Alford and colleagues reported (Alford et al, 1994) that both methods excluded the same 13 alleged fathers (based on two or more loci). The likelihood of paternity for the 37 non-excluded men based on the STR systems was more than 99% in 36 cases. When 13 CODIS STR loci are obtained, the average random match probability is rarer than 1 in 1 trillion among unrelated individuals (Chakraborty et al, 1999).

MiniSTRs are autosomal STRs in multiplex kits where the primers have been moved closer to the tandem repeat to achieve a smaller amplicon product size. Typically, fewer markers are included in the miniSTR kits compared with standard kits (Figs. 72-3 and 72-4). Those samples that are severely degraded may produce a miniSTR result when the standard kits fail (Mulero et al, 2008). Furthermore, the miniSTRs are useful in recovering alleles where allele dropout has occurred and reduced sensitivity is observed from multiplexes with larger amplicons (Butler et al, 2003).

X AND Y CHROMOSOME MARKERS

Sex determination is now commonly performed using the Amelogenin locus (see Fig. 72-1). The primer for this locus amplifies an X-specific band (Xp22.1 to 22.3) and a Y-specific band. This locus is coamplified and coanalyzed with many multiplexed STR systems. Sex determination marks a departure from all other routine identity markers, in that it provides specific phenotypic information about the source individual. It may also be important in the investigation of potential suspects as well as in the categorization of specimens as originating from a victim or suspect.

Although polymorphic Y chromosome markers (see Fig. 72-3) are not used for sex determination, they are extremely useful in the typing of casework when there is a mixture of a male and female and a mixture of males. For example, an excellent use of Y-STRs is sexual assault evidence that displays a mixture of both the female epithelial cell DNA and male sperm DNA. When the quantity of male DNA is much less than the female DNA, Y-STRs are excellent in obtaining a profile of the male subject with no interference from the female subject since Y-STR results are only obtained from males. They also are used to characterize the paternal lineage in human remains identifications. The characterization of the Thomas Jefferson family lineage was accomplished using Y chromosome markers (Foster et al, 1998), an example of a historical and genealogic study. Data from extensive Y-STR typings have shown that certain haplotypes are indicative of ethnic origin and can be used for human migration and evolutionary studies. A haplotype is generated from Y-STRs versus a phenotype in autosomal STRs; haplotypes do not afford the same level of discrimination as autosomal STR profiles.

MITOCHONDRIAL DNA SEQUENCING

Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) sequencing is most applicable when extremely small quantities of sample DNA are present or when the DNA is extremely degraded, such as in shed hairs (which have virtually no detectable nuclear DNA) and skeletal remains (Butler & Levin, 1998; Holland & Parsons, 1999). Hundreds to thousands of copies of mtDNA are present within a single cell with only one copy of nuclear DNA. Accordingly, an mtDNA profile can often be obtained when a nuclear DNA profile cannot. Further, mtDNA testing is used when distant relatives are used as references to compare to a sample. A single distant relative in the maternal line may be used as a reference when reference samples are limited, because nuclear DNA testing generally requires multiple close relatives.

Mitochondrial DNA is composed of a circular piece of DNA 16,569 base pairs (bp) in length. Because no significant regions of repetitive DNA exist in mtDNA, only sequence differences are reported. The region of mtDNA that is analyzed for human identification is the noncoding displacement loop (D-loop), also known as the *control region*. This locus spans approximately 1100 bp and contains two hypervariable regions. At present, direct sequencing is the method used to obtain mtDNA results.

Mitochondria are maternally inherited, so mtDNA has no paternal contribution. Unlike nuclear DNA, which is present in pairs of chromosomes, generally only a single mtDNA sequence is present in the cell (homoplasmic) and consequently no genetic recombination occurs. An exact mtDNA sequence match can be traced through the maternal lineage of a family for many generations. However, the discriminatory power of mtDNA sequencing is limited—on the order of one in a few thousand. This testing is expensive and time-consuming.

OTHER SYSTEMS

Methods to detect SNPs are used to determine a single base change in a sequence at a specific location. Because of the limited variability at these

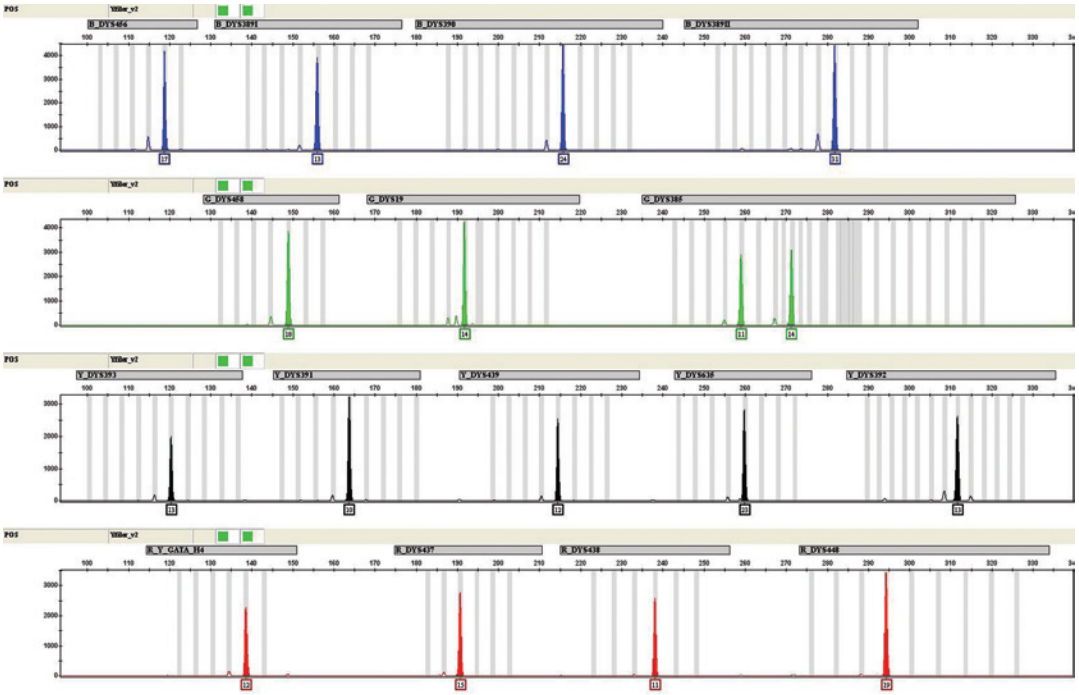


Figure 72-4 The results of the kit-included positive control 9948 amplified with the AmpFLSTR Yfiler PCR Amplification Kit (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, Calif.) (Mulero et al, 2006), electrophoresed on the ABI PRISM 3130*xl* Genetic Analyzer, and typed with GeneMapper *ID* Software v. 3.1.2. The results for the 17 Y-STR loci are visualized. This image displays the phenotype of the positive control amplified in this mega-multiplex. The locus name is shown in the *gray bar* above the peaks; the allele call for each locus is just below the highlighted peak.

loci, as many as 70 SNPs need to be tested to get the same level of information about relatedness, power of discrimination, and mixture resolution as provided by a multiplex of several STR loci. There are millions of SNPs in an individual. SNPs could be very powerful for identity testing. SNPs may provide information when traditional STRs may not because they can be designed to amplify smaller amplicons. In addition, specific SNPs may be used to provide information regarding the physical traits of an individual, and they can be designed to predict ethnic origin (Wollstein & Lao, 2015).

Next-generation sequencing (NGS) technology (see Chapter 78) was introduced to genetic research applications over 10 years ago. Today, whole-genome sequencing is being conducted at a greater rate and reduced cost than was imagined at the time of sequencing of the first human genome (Venter et al, 2001). As the technology, instrumentation, and quality of the sequence improves with NGS, its application to forensic sciences is being realized. SNPs can be detected, STRs can be measured with precision not available with size-based capillary electrophoresis, and other applications such as molecular autopsies can be performed. Illumina, Inc. (San Diego, Calif.) has introduced an NGS system, the ForenSeq DNA Signature Prep Kit used in conjunction with the MiSeq FGx Forensic Genomics System to evaluate STRs (autosomal, Y-STRs, and X-STRs) and 173 SNPs. Included in these SNPs are phenotypic-informative SNPs for eye color and hair color and ancestry-informative SNPs.

ANALYSIS AND USE OF TEST DATA

DNA IN THE CRIME LABORATORY

DNA evidence is routinely admitted into court. In the United States, a large percentage of criminal DNA tests involves sexual assault, and a significant proportion involves homicide. Approximately one third of DNA tests exonerate wrongfully accused suspects (Fig. 72-5), one fourth are inconclusive, and somewhat less than half result in a match of the suspect to a crime. Only a fraction of the cases in which DNA evidence is tested are actually litigated, because most cases result in a plea bargain. In the criminalistics context, DNA can be used to link a suspect to a crime, to exculpate falsely accused suspects, to recognize serial crimes and to distinguish copycat crimes, or to aid in accident reconstruction (e.g., to determine who was driving a car by the identification of the bloodstains on the driver's side of the windshield). In addition to the use of DNA for associative evidence at scenes of crimes, DNA is used in the identification of human remains.

DNA IN THE PATHOLOGY LABORATORY

DNA identity tests can be used to resolve specimen mix-ups (Weedn, 1993), such as when samples are inadvertently switched or pathologic material floats onto a histologic or cytologic slide. A small fragment of cancerous tissue ("floater") on a glass microscope slide can be determined to be from someone other than the patient (Table 72-1). DNA testing may be used to confirm or refute mislabeling of biopsy specimens. In addition, urine drug tests that have been challenged on the basis of alleged sample switching may be resolved by DNA testing (Weedn et al, 1996).

STR markers are also used to evaluate engraftment of marrow after transplantation (Scharf et al, 1995). When the donor is related to the recipient, testing of multiple markers may be required to find an informative locus since related people share many alleles.

EXCLUSION OF PARENTAGE

The primary goal of genetic marker testing in cases of disputed parentage is to identify the biologic parent of a given child. Although this cannot be done with absolute certainty, genetic marker tests can provide objective evidence of non-parentage. By using multiple genetic systems, it is possible to exclude most (>99%), but not all, non-parents.

In systems that follow the rules of Mendelian genetics, exclusions are identified by finding exceptions to the expected inheritance pattern. Interpretation of test results when paternity is in question usually depends on assuming that the sample defined as maternal is from the child's biologic mother. The child's and mother's phenotypes should be compared to determine whether results are consistent with expected inheritance patterns. An allele present in the child but not in the mother is referred to as the *obligatory paternal gene* (OG), or the obligatory paternal allele. If both alleles in the child and mother are identical, then there are alternative (two) possibilities for the paternal gene.

If the tested man does not have the possibility of passing the OG and the marker for the gene is absent in the presumed mother, the exclusion observed is termed *direct exclusion* (Table 72-2). An exclusion at a single locus is not considered enough evidence to establish non-paternity (AABB, 2013) due to the mutation rate observed in DNA testing. A direct exclusion

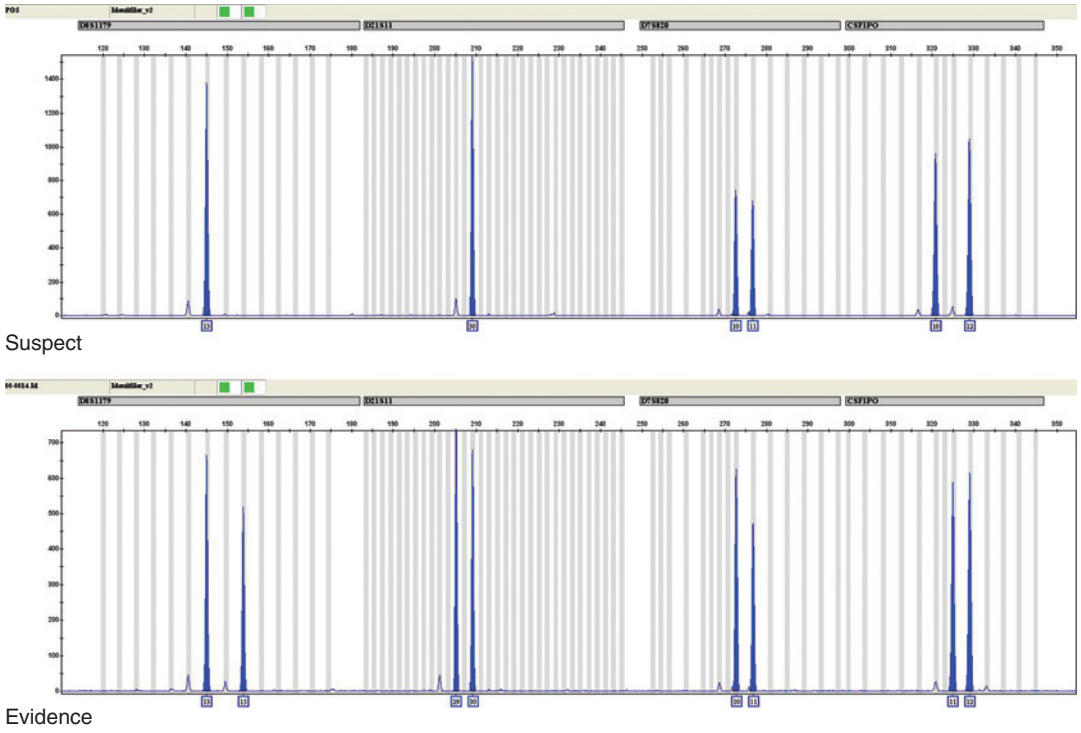


Figure 72-5 Exclusion of suspect when compared to crime scene evidence. The profile for the evidence at D8S1179, D21S11, and CSF1PO is clearly different from the suspect's profile. The evidence could not have been contributed by the suspect.

TABLE 72-1
Identification of a Possible "Floater"

STR Locus	Floater	Tissue Block	Patient Sample	Frequency of Patient's Phenotype
CSF1PO	10, 12	10, 12	10, 12	0.191
D3S1358	15, 16	16, 17	16, 17	0.099
D5S818	11	11, 12	11, 12	0.024
D7S820	9, 11	11	11	0.0529
D8S1179	13	12, 14	12, 14	0.0976
D13S317	11	11	11	0.0798
D16S539	9, 11	11, 12	11, 12	0.1764
D18S51	14, 15	14, 15	14, 15	0.0477
D21S11	30	28, 31.2	28, 31.2	0.0341

Shaded results indicate the DNA results from the floater are different than the DNA from the patient and the tissue block. The chance that the tissue block has the same genetic markers as the patient compared to a random Caucasian individual is greater than 1.86×10^{10}.

TABLE 72-2
Exclusion of Parentage: Phenotype (Genotype)

Type of Exclusion	Child	Mother	Tested Man	Obligatory Gene(s)
Direct	AB (ab)	A (aa, a?)	C (cc, c?)	b
	AC (ac)	AB (ab)	AD (ad)	c
	AB (ab)	C (cc, c?)	AC (ac)	b (maternal)
Two-haplotype	A (aa, a?)	A (aa, a?)	BC (bc)	a or ?
	A (aa, a?)	AB (aa, ab)	BC (bc)	a or ?
	AB (ab)	AB (ab)	CD (cd)	a or b
	AB (ab)	Not available	CD (cd)	a or b
Indirect*	A (aa, a?)	A (aa, a?)	B (bb, b?)	a or ?
	B (bb, b?)	AB (ab)	A (aa, a?)	b or ?
	B (bb, b?)	C (cc, c?)	AB (ab)	b or ? (maternal)
	B (bb, b?)	Not available	A (aa, a?)	b or ?

Examples of direct, two-haplotype, and indirect exclusions of the tested man. The capital letters represent the phenotype, and the small letters in parentheses represent the possible genotype. The question mark (?) represents a possible null, or silent, allele.
*Mutation must be considered.

also occurs when the child or the tested male is heterozygous (two alleles present) and the two markers are absent in the other person. This type of direct exclusion sometimes is referred to as a *two-haplotype exclusion*. When only the child and one alleged parent are available for testing, if the tested individual or child has two haplotypes, neither of which is in the other, it is possible to establish non-parentage.

Absence of an expected genetic marker in a child when the parent in question appears to be homozygous (one allele present) for the gene is called an *indirect exclusion*. This is sometimes also known as *reverse homozygosity*. One indirect exclusion is not sufficient evidence to conclude that the tested individual is not the parent. Interpretation of reverse homozygosity as an indirect exclusion presumes that the tested subjects both have two identical alleles at the locus. In PCR testing of STRs, this absence of an expected allele may occur if there is a binding site mutation (Harrison et al, 2004; Leibelt et al, 2003) in one of the tested individuals, or it is possible that a rare null allele (or other undetected allele) or mutation is present in the child as well as the parent in question. The finding of indirect exclusions in at least two independent systems usually is sufficient evidence to reach a conclusion of non-paternity.

PROBABILITY OF EXCLUSION

Before testing, it is possible to provide an estimate of the average chance that testing will prove non-parentage if the accused is not the parent. This is referred to as the *probability of exclusion (PE)*, and is defined as the probability of excluding a random individual from the population given the alleles of the child and the mother; the genetic information of the tested man is not considered. For each genetic system, an average PE can be calculated based on the gene frequencies (p and q) for the alleles in the system. Weiner reported the general equation for a two-allele system

(Wiener et al, 1930). When a system has multiple alleles, more complex formulas are required (Walker, 1978). A highly polymorphic system has a greater power of exclusion than a system with only a few alleles or one that has one or two common alleles and many rare alleles.

COMBINED PROBABILITY OF EXCLUSION

The individual probability of exclusion (PE) is calculated for each of the genetic systems (for each locus) analyzed. The overall combined probability of exclusion (CPE), or the probability of excluding a falsely accused man in a given case, can be calculated by using the following formula:

$$CPE = 1 - [(1 - PE_1) \times (1 - PE_2) \times (1 - PE_3) \times \ldots \times (1 - PE_N)]$$

where PE is the probability of exclusion for each system used. As shown in Figure 72-6, as more and more systems are used, fewer and fewer individuals are excluded by each additional test. With an appropriately selected battery of DNA marker systems, a CPE of 0.995 or greater is easily achieved.

INCLUSION OF PARENTAGE

If, after testing multiple independent systems, the parent in dispute is not excluded (Fig. 72-7), then an estimate of the possibility that the tested person could be the biologic parent should be calculated. If the tested male is not excluded, it always can be argued that the amount of testing was inadequate, that evidence for exclusion will be found by testing another genetic system, or that the true parent is a close relative of the tested man. This line of reasoning could be correct only if the tested male has been falsely accused. In addition to the average probability of exclusion described previously, it also is possible to calculate the frequency with which a random male will not be excluded based on a mother-child pair exhibiting the observed phenotypes (Salmon, 1983). This value is related to the actual probability of exclusion for the tests performed.

In providing estimates of inclusion of paternity, appropriate gene frequency tables are used. In general, this means that a population of random persons of the same race has been phenotyped, that the size of the sample is large enough to provide gene frequencies with minimum errors of estimation for the alleles in the system, and that the tested male and biologic father are from the same population. When multiple systems have been tested, the differences observed in gene frequencies in populations from various geographic locations become unimportant in calculations of the likelihood of paternity (Hummel & Claussen, 1981). When the tested male is of mixed racial background or from a population for which there are inadequate frequency tables, it may be impossible to provide a precise estimate of paternity. However, when multiple systems with a high power of exclusion have been used and the PI value using a reference population is high, there is a minimal chance that frequencies from a more-defined population will have a significant effect on the conclusion of parentage. In these situations, comparisons with frequencies for several defined racial groups may also be helpful.

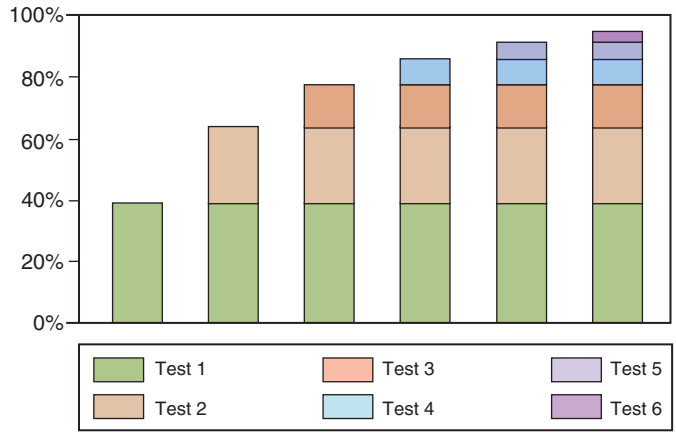


Figure 72-6 Combined probability of exclusion (each added test; PE = 0.4). The percentage of the population excluded by each additional test becomes smaller and smaller. The overall exclusion probability of the six tests is 95.3%. If a seventh test with PE = 0.5 was performed, only an additional 2.4% of the population would be excluded ([1 − 0.953] × 0.5 = 0.0235).

PATERNITY INDEX CALCULATION

In cases in which a trio has been tested, a general approach referred to as the *comparison of sperm method* is usually applied (Walker, 1978). This calculation compares the chance (x) that a sperm from a male of the phenotype of the tested male could have fertilized the ovum of the presumed mother to the chance (y) that a sperm from an untested male in the random population could have produced the child. Likelihood ratios (x/y) are calculated for each independent genetic system by comparing the tested male to the frequencies for the obligatory gene or alternate paternal genetic contribution in the random population of the same race of the tested male. These values are then multiplied to derive the PI, which reflects the genetic odds in favor of paternity, given the phenotypes of the trio. Table 72-3 displays the formulas for calculating the indexes with various phenotype combinations. Table 72-4 is an example using these formulas to determine the possible father of a fetus in a possible rape case. In this example, Tested Man 2 is clearly excluded as the biologic father of this fetus.

PI values in cases where no exclusion is observed can have a numeric value greater than zero to a number approaching infinity. The current

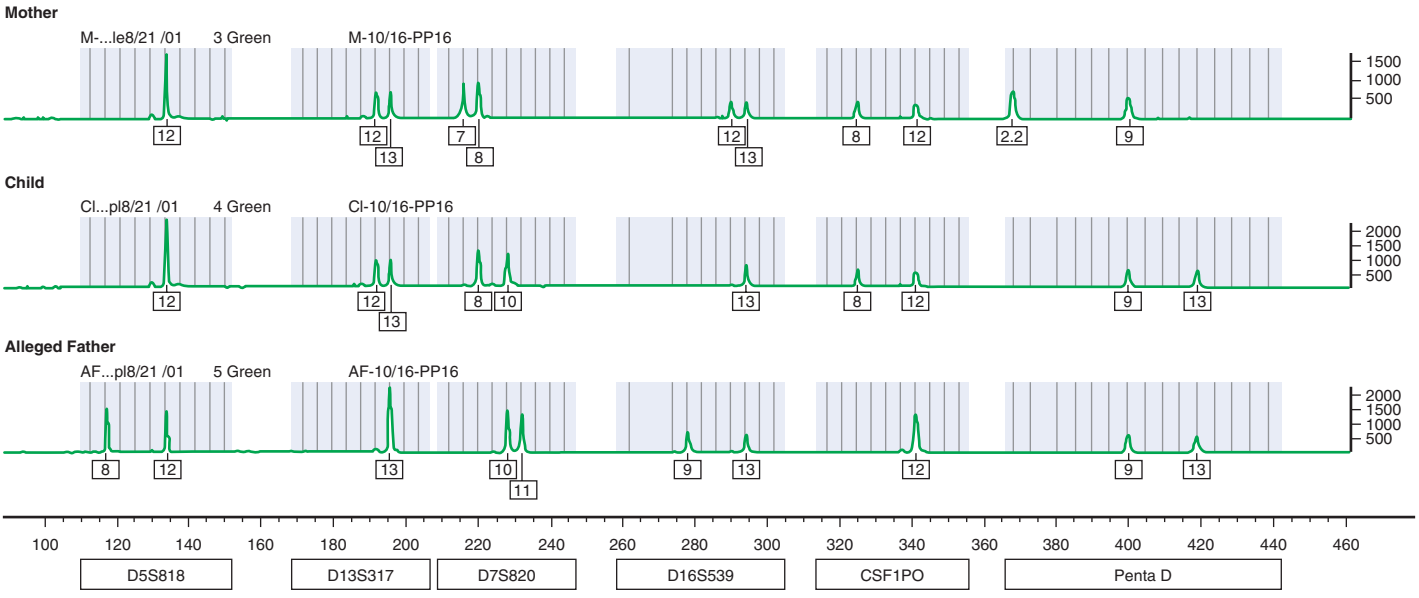


Figure 72-7 Example of family analysis using short tandem repeats testing. Note the alleles shared between the mother *(top panel)* and the child *(middle panel)*. The alleles from the tested man *(bottom panel)* also match the child. The tested man is not excluded as the biologic father of this child.

TABLE 72-3
Calculation of the System* Likelihood Ratio (Paternity Index)

Mother	Child	Obligatory Gene(s)	Tested Man	X	Y	Formula for Y Frequency	X/Y
A	A	a	A	1	0.25	p	4
A	A	a	AB	0.5	0.25	p	2
A	AB	b	B	1	0.4	q	2.5
A	AB	b	AB	0.5	0.4	q	1.25
AB	AB	a or b	A	1	0.65	p + q	1.54
AB	AB	a or b	B	1	0.65	p + q	1.54
AB	AB	a or b	AB	1	0.65	p + q	1.54
AB	AC	c	AC	0.5	0.3	r	1.67
BC	BC	b or c	BC	1	0.7	q + r	1.43
AC	AD	d	BD	0.5	0.05	s	10

X, Chance that tested male is the biologic father; *Y,* chance that an untested male in the random population is the biologic father; *X/Y,* likelihood ratio.
*Hypothetical locus with four codominant alleles a, b, c, and d.

TABLE 72-4
Determining Parentage from Fetal Tissue

STR Locus	Fetal Tissue*	Mother	Tested Man 1 (TM 1)	Tested Man 2 (TM 2)	Paternity Index TM 1	Paternity Index TM 2
CSF1PO	10	10	10	10, 12	3.74	1.87
D3S1358	15, 16	15	16	14	4.49	0†
D5S818	11, 12, 13	12, 13	10, 11	10	1.27	0†
D7S820	8, 9	8, 9	8, 9	10, 11	3.31	0†
D8S1179	11, 15	11, 15	12, 15	11, 15	2.60	5.19
D13S317	10, 12, 13	12, 13	10	11, 12	14.81	0†
D16S539	9, 13	13	9, 12	9, 14	4.65	4.65
D18S51	12, 17	12	12, 17	17	4.76	9.52
D21S11	31	31	31	31	18.18	18.18
vWA31/A	16, 17, 18	16, 18	14, 17	14, 18	2.0	0†
				CPI	2.19×10^6	0†

STR, Short tandem repeat.
*Fetal tissue sample is contaminated with maternal tissue; mixture present.
†Tested man excluded at that locus.

AABB Standards (2013) require that, to determine parentage, the testing should result in a PI of at least 100. This means that the odds (likelihood ratio) for the tested man being the father are 99 to 1.

LIKELIHOOD OF PARENTAGE

Another useful estimate, the likelihood of parentage, combines the genetic testing with assumptions about prior events. Essen-Möller (1938) described this calculation based on Bayes' theorem (Box 72-1). The estimate uses the PI to summarize the genetic information and *p* (a value for the prior probability) to account for the following assumptions:

1. The tested man was not sterile.
2. The tested man had access during the conceptive period.
3. The tested man is not a close (first-degree) relative of the father.
4. Other possible fathers are from a population with similar gene frequencies.

If a *p* of 0.5 is used, this assigns an equal prior chance to the tested man and one untested man. Using this value, the likelihood of paternity *(W)* is equal to $\frac{PI}{(PI+1)}$. Other values for the prior probability can be used in this calculation, but they introduce a bias against the tested man if greater than 0.5, and against the mother if less than 0.5.

The mathematical values obtained from the calculation of the PI or likelihood have special significance because in many jurisdictions the reported value may change the legal standing of the parties. For example, the Minnesota Statute Section 257.55 (Parentage Act, 2004) shifts the burden of disproving paternity to the man if the testing indicates a greater than 99% likelihood that he is the father.

BOX 72-1
Formula for the Likelihood of Parentage (W)

Bayes' theorem is used to combine *p* with PI:

$$W = \frac{(p)(PI)}{[(p)(PI)+(1-p)]}$$

where *p* = prior probability of nongenetic events, and PI (paternity index) = summary of testing results.

ESTIMATING PARENTAGE WITH AN ABSENT PARENT

If one of the parents is unavailable for testing, it is still possible to provide an estimate of parentage. The most common situation is one in which a sample is available from the child and alleged father, but not the mother. In this situation, the child must share at least one gene at each locus with the tested man. Formulas (Table 72-5) to estimate the paternity index and likelihood of paternity are similar to those used when a trio is tested (see Table 72-3) except that the estimates must include an adjustment for the frequency of the allele passed by the absent mother (Brenner, 1993). The calculation is more complicated if the missing mother and untested man are of different races (Traver, 1996). If the tested man or child has two alleles at a locus, neither of which is present in the other tested individual, then the tested man is excluded. If reverse homozygosity is present in the child and tested man, this also suggests non-paternity.

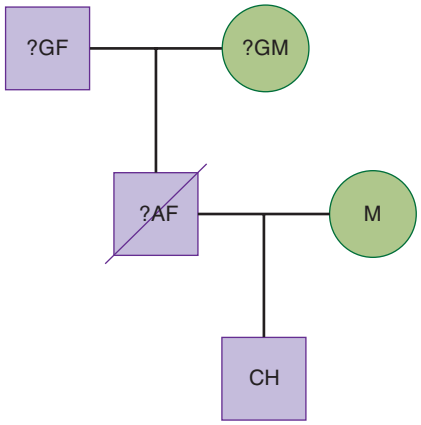
TABLE 72-5
Calculation of the System* Likelihood Ratio (Parentage Index) When Only One Parent Is Tested

Child	Tested Parent	Parental Gene(s) in Child	Obligatory Gene(s) in Other Parent	Formula to Calculate System Ratio
A	A	a	a	1/p
A	AB	a	a	1/2p
A	BC		a	Exclusion
AB	B	b	a or b	1/2q
AB	AB	a or b	a or b	(p+q)/4pq
AC	AB	a	a or c	1/4p
BC	A		b or c	Exclusion
AD	BD	d	a or d	1/4s

*Hypothetical locus with four alleles A, B, C, and D (frequency of genes a = p, b = q, c = r, and d = s).

RECONSTRUCTION OF FAMILIES

Many situations occur in which it is important to establish a relationship between individuals. This happens when individuals are trying to gain status as an immigrant or discover whether they share a parent, or when there is a question related to inheritance. DNA testing can be informative in identifying parents of fetal material found in a dumpster or products of conception in rape cases. Reconstruction is also very important when trying to identify bodies or body parts following a mass disaster. Because only a parent and child will share at least one allele at each locus, relatives may have systems in which they do not share any alleles. Formulas taking into account that alleles may be shared by descent are used to estimate the closeness of the relationship of two individuals (Wenk et al, 1986). Full siblings have a 0.25 chance of not sharing an allele in a system, whereas half siblings, aunts, or uncles have a 0.5 chance. In cases in which the alleged father is deceased, his probable phenotype can be reconstructed if testing is performed with his biologic parents (Mayr, 1983). The child and putative grandparents must share the obligatory paternal genes in all systems. A PI can be calculated using a frequency for *x* that takes into account the chance that the deceased could pass the allele (Fig. 72-8). Reconstructions can also be conducted by using data from multiple presumed relatives as shown in Figure 72-9.



System	Child	Mother	OG	?GF	?GM*	Possible phenotypes of ?AF	Formula to calculate system index
CSF1PO	10,12	9,12	*10*	10,13	10,11	10;10,11; 10,13; 11,13	0.5/*p*
D3S1358	14,15	14,17	*15*	15,16	16,17	15,16; 15,17; 16,17;16	0.25/*p*
D7S820	10,11	10,11	*10* or *11*	8,9	11	8,11; 9,11	0.5/*p*+*q*
D16S539	9,12	9,13	*12*	10,12	12	10,12;12	0.75/*p*
TPOX	8	8, 11	*8*	8	8	8	1/*p*
vWA31/A	18	18	*18*	18	18	18	1/*p*

Figure 72-8 Family testing to establish paternity. Interpretation assumes that the deceased ?AF is the child of the persons tested (?GF, ?GM) and p and q are the frequencies of the obligatory paternal gene(s). In this case, the presumed parents of the deceased alleged father were tested to reconstruct his probable phenotype. In each of the systems tested, the obligatory paternal gene (OG) is present in one of the child's presumed grandparents. Note: For D7S820, either allele in the child could be the maternal obligatory gene. The combined paternity index and likelihood of paternity are obtained by multiplying the values for the individual systems.

SOFTWARE SYSTEMS

Software systems are used in both the forensic and parentage laboratories. These software systems include expert systems programs that display rule firings, or flags, when specific laboratory-defined thresholds have not been met. Currently, expert systems are used by laboratories for the review of single-source reference standard samples. In addition, some forensic laboratories use mixture deconvolution software tools to assist the forensic analyst in the review of mixed data as is often observed with sexual assault evidence. Identity testing laboratories worldwide have implemented sophisticated software programs to perform kinship analyses. Laboratory Information Management Systems (LIMS), are also used to assist a laboratory in managing its casework.

QUALITY ASSURANCE STANDARDS

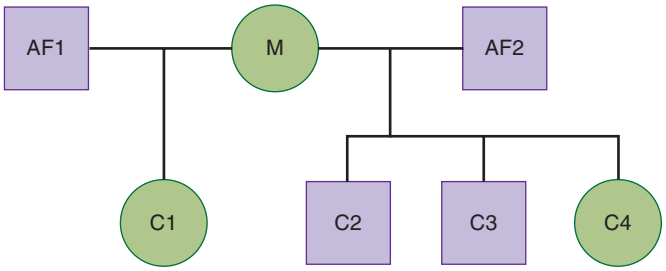
Laboratories that perform forensic (parentage and criminalistic) DNA testing must follow appropriate standards, obtain accreditation, and participate in proficiency testing programs. The possibility of significant judicial scrutiny of every step of the procedures and practices used from collection of samples to reporting of results is to be expected. Challenges to the validation of the methods, the source of the databases used in statistical reports, and the qualification of the personnel are not uncommon. There is general agreement as to proper laboratory procedures that should be used in DNA testing and, although the DNA typing methods are not specifically standardized, procedures are remarkably uniform.

The FBI's Technical Working Group on DNA Analysis Methods, now known as the Scientific Working Group on DNA Analysis Methods, promulgated early guidelines for DNA analytic procedures that became de facto standards (Technical Working Group, 1989, 1995). These standards were modified by the FBI's DNA Advisory Board and adopted by the FBI Director pursuant to the DNA Identification Act, a component of the Crime Bill passed in 1994. These standards apply to crime laboratories that submit DNA results to the FBI's National DNA Index System or that accept certain federal grants. The American Society of Crime Laboratory Directors–Laboratory Accreditation Board has an accreditation program for crime laboratories. The American Board of Criminalists certifies criminalists and has a subspecialty category for DNA analysts. Analysts who work on casework samples must have college credit (or equivalent) in genetics, biochemistry, and molecular biology and 1 year of forensic biology experience. Each of these standards calls for proficiency testing by each analyst twice a year.

The AABB began developing standards and accrediting parentage testing laboratories in 1984. The 11th edition, *Standards for Relationship Testing Laboratories*, was published in 2013 (AABB, 2013). All aspects of parentage testing from laboratory organization to process control and improvement are covered. The Standards include requirements for documents and records, report content, and interpretation of results. Laboratories are required to participate in graded proficiency testing.

CONCLUSION

Scientific evidence that will aid in resolving cases of disputed parentage, questions of relatedness, and identity can be obtained from testing multiple DNA systems. Current technology provides test results that exclude more than 99.9% of falsely accused individuals in parentage and criminal cases. It is not possible to prove paternity or guilt by laboratory tests. The



System	AF1	AF2	Child 1	Child 2	Child 3	Child 4
CSF1PO	10, 11	11, 12	10, **14**	12, **14**	**9,** 12	11, **14**
D3S1358	15, 17	15, 17	**14, 17**	**17**	**14,** 16	**14,** 15
D5S818	13, 14	11, 12	**10,** 14	**10, 12**	**12**	**12**
D7S820	8, 9	10, 13	8, **11**	10, **11**	10, **14**	13, **14**
D13S317	11, 12	8, 10	12, **14**	8, **10**	10, **14**	**10**
D16S539	12, 15	9, 12	**8,** 15	**8,** 11	11, **13**	9, **13**
vWA31/A	14, 20	16, 17	**15,** 20	**15,** 17	16,**18**	17, **18**
TH01	8, 9	6, 9	8, **9.3**	6, **9.3**	8, **9.3**	9, **9.3**
TPOX	8, 11	8, 10	**8**	**8, 12**	**8, 12**	**8**
Amelogenin	Male	Male	Female	Male	Male	Female
DYS390	23	23		23	23	
DYS391	10	11		11	11	

Figure 72-9 Family study—presumed mother (M) is deceased. All four children in this family study could have the same mother. The probable maternal allele in each system is shown in bold. Note: In some systems, either marker could be maternal in one of the children (D3S1358 in child 1). Alleged father 1 (AF1) shares an allele with child 1 in all systems and is excluded as the possible father of children 2, 3, and 4 in several systems. AF2 is excluded as the father of child 1 in every system except D3S1358 and TPOX. AF2 is also excluded as the father of child 3 in two systems (D3S1358 and TH01). The finding of a possible match in nine of 11 systems, including two Y-STRs, suggests that the true father of child 3 might be a relative of AF2, or two mutations have occurred.

mathematical estimates derived from genetic marker tests when no exclusion is found or there is a match between sample and suspect are a significant source of data that can be used to establish parentage or guilt.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

American Association of Blood Banks: *Standards for relationship testing laboratories*, ed 11, Arlington, Va, 2013, AABB.

The AABB periodically provides standards for accredited parentage testing laboratories that include key elements of QA/QC, testing, reporting, and validation requirements. With each edition of Standards, a companion Guidance for Standards is published that has detailed explanations of the requirements, and appendices with useful tables and formulas.

Budowle B, Shea B, Niezgoda S, et al: CODIS STR loci data from 41 sample populations, *J Forensic Sci* 46:453–489, 2001.

A reference for the frequency data used to calculate parentage results as well as population frequencies for the chance that a matching sample is from a random individual. Several manufacturers also have websites with frequency tables based on results from their reagents.

Butler JM, Reeder DJ: Short Tandem Repeat DNA Internet DataBase. Available at: http://www.cstl.nist.gov/strbase/.

This website, supported by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) has updated information on STR loci including new variants. It also contains links to other useful sites.

DNA Advisory Board: Quality assurance standards for forensic DNA testing laboratories (approved July 1998). Forensic Sci Comm 2000; 2. Available at: https://www.fbi.gov/about-us/lab/forensic-science-communications/fsc/july2000/codis2a.htm.

Basic QA/QC requirements for forensic testing laboratories.

National Research Council: *The evaluation of forensic DNA evidence*, Washington, DC, 1996, National Academy of Sciences.

This monograph is a comprehensive evaluation of testing and statistical evaluation of data intended for use in legal proceedings.

Walker RH: Probability in the analysis of paternity test results. In Silver H, editor: *Paternity testing*, Washington, DC, 1978, American Association of Blood Banks, pp 69–135.

The proceedings of the Airlie Conference contains numerous papers dealing with methods of calculating data from paternity testing using the classical systems. Though pre-DNA testing, the principles apply to STR systems.

REFERENCES

Alford RL, Hammond HA, Coto I, et al: Rapid and efficient resolution of parentage by amplification of short tandem repeats, *Am J Hum Genet* 55:190–195, 1994.

American Association of Blood Banks: *Standards for parentage testing laboratories*, Arlington, Va., 1990, AABB.

Botstein D, White RL, Skolnick M, et al: Construction of a genetic linkage map in man using restriction fragment polymorphisms, *Am J Hum Genet* 32:314–331, 1980.

Brenner CH: A note on paternity computation in cases lacking a mother, *Transfusion* 33:51–54, 1993.

Budowle B, Bieber FR, Eisenberg AJ: Forensic aspects of mass disasters: Strategic considerations for DNA-based human identifications, *Legal Med* 7:230–243, 2005.

Butler JM, Levin BC: Forensic applications of mitochondrial DNA, *Trends Biotechnol* 16:158–162, 1998.

Butler JM, Shen Y, McCord BR: The development of reduced size STR amplicons as tools for analysis of degraded DNA, *J Forensic Sci* 48:1054–1064, 2003.

Chakraborty R, Stivers DN, Su B, et al: The utility of short tandem repeat loci beyond human identification: implications for development of new DNA typing systems, *Electrophoresis* 20:1682–1696, 1999.

Collins P, Hennessy L, Leibelt C, et al: Developmental validation of a single-tube amplification of the 13 CODIS STR loci, D2S1338, D19S433 and Amelogenin: the AmpFLSTR Identifiler PCR Amplification Kit, *J Forensic Sci* 49:1265–1277, 2004.

Crouse CA, Ban JD, D'Alessio JK: Extraction of DNA from forensic-type sexual assault specimens using simple, rapid sonication procedures, *Biotechniques* 15:641–646, 1993.

Essen-Möller E: Die Beweiskraft der Ähnlichkeit in Vaterschaftsnachweis: theoretische Grundlagen, *Mitt Anthrop Ges (Wien)* 68:9–53, 1938.

Foster EA, Jobling MA, Taylor PG, et al: Jefferson fathered slave's last child, *Nature* 396:27–28, 1998. Also see Nature 396:13–14, 1998.

Green RL, Roinestad IC, Boland C, et al: Developmental validation of the quantifiler real-time PCR kits for the quantification of human nuclear DNA samples, *J Forensic Sci* 50:809–825, 2005.

Hares DR: Expanding the CODIS core loci in the United States, *Forensic Sci Int Genet* 6:e52–e54, 2012a.

Hares DR: Addendum to expanding the CODIS core loci in the United States, *Forensic Sci Int Genet* 6:e135, 2012b.

Hares DR: Selection and implementation of expanded CODIS core loci in the United States, *Forensic Sci Int Genet* 17:33–34, 2015.

Harrison C, Allen R, Eisenberg A, et al: Phenotype versus genotype reporting for DNA polymorphisms, *Prog Forensic Genet* 10:526–528, 2004.

Holland MM, Parsons TJ: Mitochondrial DNA sequence analysis—validation and use for forensic casework, *Forensic Sci Rev* 11:21–50, 1999.

Hummel K, Claussen M: Exclusion efficiency and biostatistical value of conventional blood group systems in European and non-European populations; suitability of Central European tables from non-German speaking populations. In Hummel K, Gerchow J, editors: *Biomathematical evidence of paternity*, Berlin, 1981, Springer-Verlag, pp 97–108.

Ivanov P, Wadhams M, Roby R, et al: Mitochondrial DNA sequence heteroplasmy in the Grand Duke of Russia Georgij Romanov establishes the authenticity of the remains of Tsar Nicholas II, *Nat Genet* 12:417–420, 1996.

Jeffreys AJ, Wilson V, Thein SL: Hypervariable "minisatellite" regions in human DNA, *Nature* 314:67–73, 1985a.

Jeffreys AJ, Wilson V, Thein SL: Individual specific "fingerprints" of human DNA, *Nature* 316:76–79, 1985b.

Kobilinsky L: Recovery and stability of DNA in samples of forensic science significance, *Forensic Sci Rev* 4:67–87, 1992.

Landsteiner K: Über Agglutinationserscheinungen normalen menschlichen Blutes, *Wien Klin Wochenschr* 14:1132–1134, 1901.

Leibelt C, Budowle B, Collins P, et al: Identification of a D8S1179 primer binding site mutation and the validation of a primer designed to recover null alleles, *Forensic Sci Int* 133:220–227, 2003.

Mayr WR: Paternity testing with unavailable putative father or mother. In Walker RH, editor: *Inclusion probabilities in parentage testing*, Arlington, Va., 1983, American Association of Blood Banks, pp 373–379.

Mendel G: Versuche über Pflanzen-Hybriden, *Verhandlung Nat Forsch Verein Brunn* 4:3–47, 1866.

Miale JB, Jennings ER, Rettberg WAH, et al: Joint AMA-ABA guidelines: present status of serologic testing in problems of disputed parentage, *Family Law Q* 10:247–285, 1976.

Mulero JJ, Chang CW, Calandro LM, et al: Development and validation of the AmpFLSTR Yfiler PCR Amplificaiton Kit: a male specific, single amplification 17 Y-STR multiplex system, *J Forensic Sci* 51:64–75, 2006.

Mulero JJ, Chang CW, Lagacá RE, et al: Development and validation of the AmpFLSTR MiniFiler PCR Amplification Kit: a miniSTR multiplex for the analysis of degraded and/or PCR inhibited DNA, *J Forensic Sci* 53:838–852, 2008.

Núnéz C, Sosa C, Baeta M, et al: Genetic analysis of 7 medieval skeletons from the Aragonese Pyrenees, *Croat Med J* 52:336–343, 2011.

Parentage Act. Minnesota Statutes 2004, 257.55 Presumption of paternity.

Parsons TJ, Weedn VW: Preservation and recovery of DNA in postmortem specimens and trace samples. In Haglund WD, Sorg MH, editors: *Forensic taphonomy: the postmortem fate of human remains*, Boca Raton, Fla., 1997, CRC Press.

Salmon D: The random man not excluded expression in paternity testing. In Walker RH, editor: *Inclusion probabilities in parentage testing*, Arlington, Va., 1983, American Association of Blood Banks, pp 281–292.

Scharf SJ, Smith AG, Hansen JA, et al: Quantitative determination of bone marrow transplant engraftment using fluorescent polymerase chain reaction primers for human identity markers, *Blood* 85:1954–1963, 1995.

Schatkin SB: *Disputed paternity proceedings*, ed 3, Albany, NY, 1952, Banks & Co, pp 233–234.

Sprouse M, Kavlick M, Phillips N, et al: Internal validation of a real-time quantitative polymerase chain reaction assay for human mitochondrial DNA, *J Forensic Sci* 59:1049–1056, 2014.

Sweet D, Lorente M, Lorente JA, et al: An improved method to recover saliva from human skin: the double swab method, *J Forensic Sci* 42:320–322, 1997.

Technical Working Group on DNA Analysis Methods: Guidelines for a quality assurance program for DNA restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis, *Crime Lab Dig* 17:40–59, 1989.

Technical Working Group on DNA Analysis Methods: Guidelines for a quality assurance program for DNA Analysis, *Crime Lab Dig* 22:21–43, 1995.

Traver M: Paternity calculations: special situations. In *Statistics workshop*, Madison, Wisc, 1996, Promega Corporation.

Venter JC, Adams MD, Myers EW, et al: The sequence of the human genome, *Science* 291:1304–1351, 2001.

Walsh PS, Varlaro J, Reynolds R: A rapid chemiluminescent method for quantitation of human DNA, *Nucleic Acids Res* 20:5061–5065, 1992.

Weber JL, May PE: Abundant class of human DNA polymorphisms which can be typed using the polymerase chain reaction, *Am J Hum Genet* 44:388–396, 1989.

Weedn VW: Where did this come from? Identification of sample mix-ups by DNA testing, *Am J Clin Pathol* 100:592–593, 1993.

Weedn VW, Lee DA, Roby RK, et al: DNA analysis. In Wong SHY, Sunshine I, editors: *Handbook of analytical therapeutic drug monitoring and toxicology*, Boca Raton, Fla., 1996, CRC Press, pp 35–50.

Weedn VW, Roby RK: Forensic DNA testing, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 117:486–491, 1993.

Wenk RE, Traver M, Chiafari FA: Determination of sibship in any two persons, *Transfusion* 36:259–262, 1986.

Wiener AS, Lederer M, Polayes SH: Studies in isohemagglutination. IV: On the chances of proving nonpaternity: with special reference to blood groups, *J Immunol* 19:259–282, 1930.

Wollstein A, Lao O: Detecting individual ancestry in the human genome, *Investig Genet* 6:7, 2015.

CHAPTER 73

PHARMACOGENOMICS AND PERSONALIZED MEDICINE

Jing Li, Martin H. Bluth

OVERVIEW, 1407

BASIC CONCEPTS, 1407

DRUG-METABOLIZING ENZYME PHARMACOGENOMICS, 1408
Phase I Enzymes, 1408
Phase II Enzymes, 1410

DRUG TRANSPORTER PHARMACOGENOMICS, 1413
ATP-Binding Cassette (ABC) Transporters, 1414
Solute Carrier Transporters, 1416

DRUG TARGET PHARMACOGENOMICS, 1418
DNA Repair Genes, 1418
Thymidylate Synthase, 1418
Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor, 1419

HUMAN LEUKOCYTE ANTIGEN PHARMACOGENOMICS, 1423

PHARMACOGENOMICS IN CANCER CHEMOTHERAPY, 1424
5-Fluorouracil, 1424
Irinotecan, 1425
Tamoxifen, 1426

PHARMACOGENOMICS IN OTHER DISEASES, 1428
Diabetes, 1428
Human Immunodeficiency Virus, 1428
Osteoporosis, 1429
Psychiatric and Cognitive Disorders, 1429
Epigenomics, 1429

CONCLUSION, 1430

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1430

KEY POINTS

- High throughput array technologies such as genomics and proteomics have provided unprecedented ability to personalize output of biomarkers implicated in select disease states.
- Pharmacogenomics, through utilization of novel technologies, can detect unique polymorphisms to serve as diagnostic and/or prognostic biomarkers, which relate to an individual or group response to particular therapies.
- Elucidation of unique or personal responses can tailor therapy to the individual, thereby maximizing drug choice, dose, and effect.
- Interpretation of pharmacogenomic responses can be discretionary in that many genotypic and phenotypic variables are often involved

OVERVIEW

Pharmacogenomics is the study of how genetic variations influence individual response to drugs, in terms of efficacy and risk for adverse drug reactions. This relatively new field combines pharmacology (the study of drugs and their uses, effects, and mode of action) and genomics (the study of genes and their functions) to develop effective, safe medications and doses that are tailored to a person's genetic makeup. Genetic variations influencing individual response to drugs can be generally grouped into germ-line genetic polymorphisms and somatic mutations as occur in tumor tissues. Germ-line genetic polymorphisms in genes encoding drug-metabolizing enzymes, transporters, drug targets, and more recently human leukocyte antigens (HLAs) have been associated with interindividual differences in the pharmacokinetics, efficacy, and adverse drug reactions of many drugs. Somatic mutations in tumor tissues, such as mutations in epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), are important determinants of the response or toxicity of targeted cancer therapy. The knowledge of how inherited differences in genes affect the body's response to medications will allow the development of personalized medicine that will provide greater efficacy and safety in drug development and therapy. This chapter summarizes recent important findings on pharmacogenomics of drug-metabolizing enzymes, transporters, drug targets (including germ-line genetic polymorphisms and somatic mutations), and HLAs, and discusses their implications in the development of personalized medicine to treat a wide range of health problems.

BASIC CONCEPTS

The concept of a relationship between a substance and its effect on genes, rudimentary pharmacogenetics, has been present since the early 1900s. Dr. Archibald Garrod described that genetic variations could cause adverse biologic reactions when chemical substances were ingested (Garrod, 1902). Garrod's work on alcaptonuria constituted the first proof of Mendelian genetics in humans. As a result of these studies, he advanced the hypothesis that genetically determined differences in biochemical processes could affect outcome after drug administration (Mancinelli et al, 2000). The idea of *pharmacogenomics*, also referred to as *toxogenomics*, is considered to have matured from *pharmacogenetics*, a discipline comprising genetics, pharmacology, and biochemistry, as a fusion of pharmacogenetics and genomics. Whereas pharmacogenetics classically investigates the hereditary impacts upon the action of drugs, pharmacogenomics extends pharmacogenetics to include the multifactorial drug responses caused by many genetic alterations plus environmental factors (Kalow, 2008). The recognition of these complex interactions and the advance of genetics into genomics via high-throughput analysis of gene interrogation algorithms have given rise to the application of this science as a means of personalizing drug effects to a group or individual. The term *personalized medicine* has been coined toward the promise of making therapy safer and more effective, and by giving drugs that fit a person's genes.

The events following a drug administration can be divided into two phases: *pharmacokinetic* and *pharmacodynamic* phases. The pharmacokinetic phase relates a dosage regimen to the drug concentration achieved with time; pharmacokinetics concerns the drug absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion. The pharmacodynamic phase relates the drug concentration to the magnitude of the desired or adverse effects produced with time; pharmacodynamics concerns drug target interaction, downstream signaling events, and pharmacologic response. Each drug, after it enters the body, interacts with numerous proteins, including carrier proteins, transporters, metabolizing enzymes, and target receptors. These protein interactions determine the drug pharmacokinetics (i.e., absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion) and pharmacodynamics (i.e., target site of action and pharmacologic effects). As a result, the overall response to a drug is determined by the interplay of multiple genes that are involved in the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic pathways of a drug (Fig. 73-1). The topics that follow summarize recent findings with regard to the impact of genetic variations of drug-metabolizing enzymes, transporters, drug targets, and HLAs, on drug pharmacokinetics, efficacy, and risk for adverse drug reactions.

DRUG-METABOLIZING ENZYME PHARMACOGENOMICS

Drug-metabolizing enzymes are proteins that catalyze the biochemical modifications of xenobiotics (e.g., drugs) and endogenous chemicals (e.g., hormones, neurotransmitters). Drug metabolism can result in the activation (toxication) or deactivation (detoxication) of the chemical. Even though both occur, the majority of metabolites of most drugs are deactivation products. Broadly, drug-metabolizing enzymes are divided into two categories: phase I (functionalizing) enzymes that introduce or remove functional groups in a substrate through oxidation, reduction, or hydrolysis; and phase II (conjugating) enzymes that transfer moieties from a cofactor to a substrate. Essentially all of the major human metabolizing enzymes exhibit genetic polymorphisms at the genomic level, and many of these enzymes have clinically relevant genetic polymorphisms (Fig. 73-2). A gene is considered to be polymorphic when the frequency of a variant allele in a specific population is at least 1%.

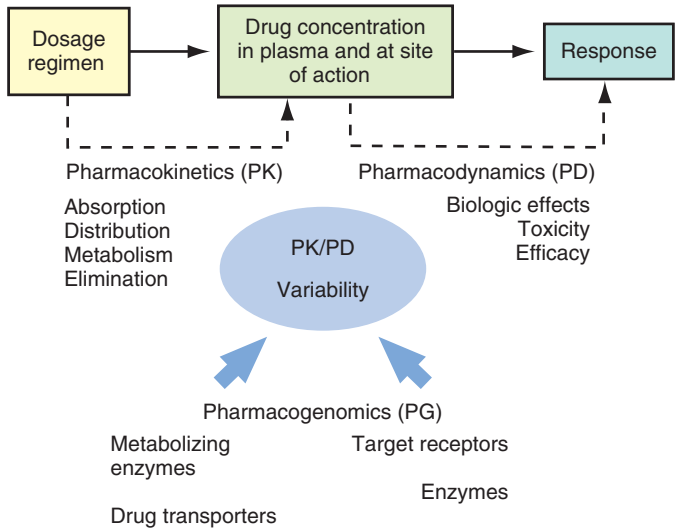


Figure 73-1 Schematic illustration of interactions between pharmacokinetics (PK), pharmacodynamics (PD), and pharmacogenomics. The PK relates a dosage regimen to drug concentration–time course in the body, and the PD relates the drug concentration to the magnitude of the desired or adverse effects produced. Genetic variations in the genes involved in drug disposition (e.g., drug-metabolizing enzymes, transporter genes) and drug action (e.g., target receptors, enzymes) contribute to the interindividual PK/PD variability.

PHASE I ENZYMES

Phase I metabolizing enzymes include those involved in oxidation (e.g., cytochrome P450 [CYP], alcohol dehydrogenase, aldehyde dehydrogenase, dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase, monoamine oxidase, and flavin-containing monooxygenase), reduction (e.g., nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate [NADPH]-cytochrome P450 reductase and reduced cytochrome P450), and hydrolysis (e.g., epoxide hydrolase, esterases, and amidases).

The most important phase I enzymes that exhibit clinical relevant genetic polymorphisms are in the CYP superfamily, which represents the most important system responsible for catalyzing the oxidation of a large number of endogenous and exogenous compounds including drugs, toxins, and carcinogens. In this superfamily, 57 genes and 58 pseudogenes have been identified, which are divided into 18 families and 43 subfamilies (http://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/geneFamily/cyp). Among them, three CYP subfamilies—*CYP1*, *CYP2*, and *CYP3*—are the main ones contributing to the oxidative metabolism of more than 90% of clinically used drugs.

The human *CYP* genes are highly polymorphic. The polymorphisms within the *CYP* genes, which include gene deletions, missense mutations, deleterious mutations creating splicing defects or premature stop codon, and gene duplications, can result in abolished, reduced, normal, or enhanced enzyme activity. Based on the level of CYP enzyme activity, patients can be classified into four phenotypes: poor metabolizer (abolished activity), intermediate metabolizer (reduced activity), extensive metabolizer (normal activity), and ultrarapid metabolizer (enhanced activity). Poor metabolizers may have higher concentrations of a drug that is inactivated by that enzyme pathway, thereby requiring a lower dose to avoid adverse reactions; whereas ultrarapid metabolizers may require a higher dose to achieve effective therapeutic drug concentrations. The opposite pattern of reactions occur in response to a prodrug that requires metabolic activation to exert its pharmacologic effect. A prodrug may have little therapeutic effect in poor metabolizers while producing toxic levels of active form in ultrarapid metabolizers.

A growing body of evidence suggests that genetic polymorphisms within the *CYP* genes have significant impact on drug disposition and/or response. The common functional polymorphisms in the major human *CYP* genes and their clinical relevance are summarized in Table 73-1.

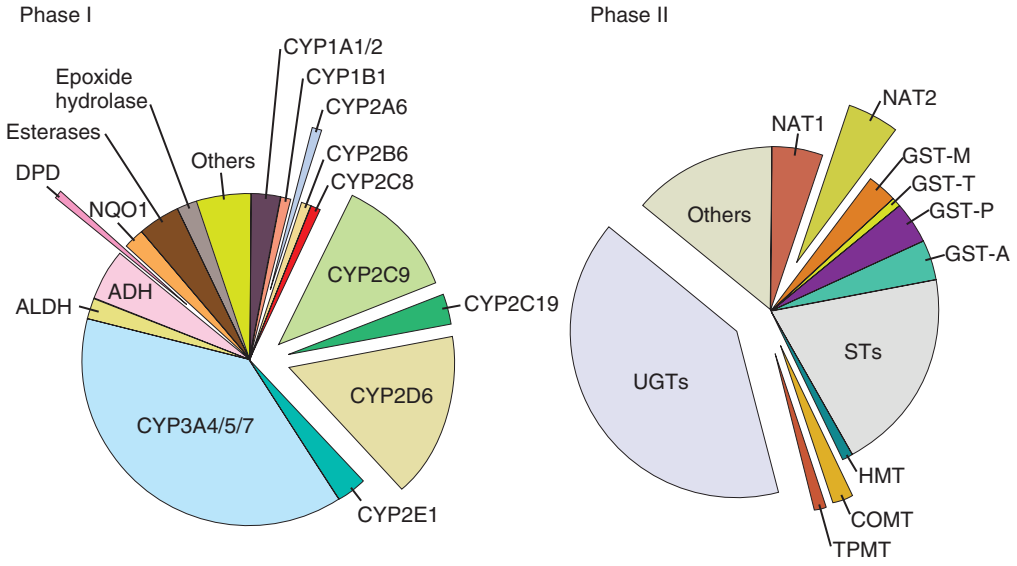


Figure 73-2 Phase I and II drug-metabolizing enzymes that exhibit common genetic polymorphisms. The percentage of phase I and phase II metabolism of drugs that each enzyme contributes is estimated by the relative size of each section of the corresponding chart; those enzyme polymorphisms that have already been associated with changes in drug effects are separated from the corresponding pie charts. *ADH*, Alcohol dehydrogenase; *ALDH*, aldehyde dehydrogenase; *CYP*, cytochrome P450; *DPD*, dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase; *NQO1*, NAD(P)H dehydrogenase, quinone 1; *COMT*, catechol *O*-methyltransferase; *GST*, glutathione *S*-transferase; *HMT*, histamine methyltransferase; *NAT*, *N*-acetyltransferase; *STs*, sulfotransferases; *TPMT*, thiopurine methyltransferase; *UGTs*, uridine 5′-triphosphate glucuronosyltransferases. (Adapted from Evans WE, Relling MV: Pharmacogenomics: translating functional genomics into rational therapeutics, *Science* 286:487–491, 1999.)

TABLE 73-1

Most Common Naturally Occurring Functional Polymorphisms in the Major Human Cytochrome P450 Genes: Allele Frequency, Functional Effect, and Highlights of Clinical Relevance

Common Allelic Variants	Polymorphism/ Substitution	ALLELE FREQUENCY (%)*			Functional Effect†	Highlights of Clinical Relevance‡
		Ca	As	Af		
CYP1A1						Mainly expressed in extrahepatic tissues.
CYP1A1*2A	3698T>C(MspI)	6.6-19	33-54	22-28	↑Inducibility	CYP1A1, 1A2, and 1B1 play an important role in the bioactivation of a variety of carcinogens.
CYP1A1*2B	I462V; 3698T>C(MspI)	–	–	–	↑Inducibility	↑Lung cancer risk generally associated with highly inducible or active CYP1A1 polymorphisms such as CYP1A1*2C.
CYP1A1*2C	I462V	2.2-8.9	28-31	0-2.7	↑Activity	CYP1A1 genotypes also associated with risk for breast, prostate, and ovarian cancers that are possibly related to estrogen activation.
CYP1A1*3	3204T>C	0	0	7.6-14	Normal	
CYP1A1*4	T461N	2.0-5.7	–	–	Normal	
CYP1A2						CYP1A2 accounts for ~13% of total hepatic CYP content.
CYP1A2*1C	–3860G>A				↓Inducibility	High inducible *1F genotype associated with ↑clearance of CYP1A2 substrates (e.g., caffeine) after smoking or omeprazole treatment.
CYP1A2*1F	–163C>A	33	68		↑Inducibility	*1K associated with ↓in vivo caffeine metabolism.
CYP1A2*1K	Haplotype (–63C>A, –739T>G, –729C>T)	0.5			↓Inducibility ↓Activity	CYP1A2 genotypes are associated with cancer risk.
CYP2A6						CYP2A6 accounts for 1% to 10% of total hepatic CYPs.
CYP2A6*1X2	Gene duplication	1.7		0.4 <1	↑Activity ↓Activity	The frequency of CYP2A6 alleles has marked ethnic differences. CYP2A6*4 accounts for the majority of PMs in Asians.
CYP2A6*2	L160H	1-3	7-22	15-20	Abolished activity	Because nicotine is converted to cotinine by CYP2A6, a high expression/activity of CYP2A6 is proposed to increase the susceptibility to nicotine addiction and the risk for tobacco-related cancers. Therefore, CYP2A6 genetic variation could play a role in nicotine addiction and tobacco-related cancer risks.
CYP2A6*4	Gene deletion	0.5-1				
CYP2B6						CYP2B6 is mainly expressed in the liver, accounting for 6% of total CYPs.
CYP2B6*4	K262R	5			↑Activity	The anticancer drug cyclophosphamide (CPA) is bioactivated by CYP2B6. CYP2B6 polymorphisms would likely affect the PK and/or PD of CPA. For example, CYP2B6*6 carriers exhibited ↑CPA clearance and CPA 4-hydroxylation activity.
CYP2B6*5	R487C	11-14	1		↓Expression	CYP2B6 polymorphisms may affect the PK and therapeutic outcome of anti-HIV agents such as efavirenz and nevirapine. For example, the CYP2B6 Q172H variant is associated with ↑plasma concentrations of efavirenz and nevirapine.
CYP2B6*6	Q172H; K262R	16-26	16		↑Activity	
CYP2B6*7	Q172H; K262R; R487C	13	0		↑Activity	
CYP2C8						CYP2C8 accounts for ~7% of total hepatic CYP contents.
CYP2C8*2	I269F	0.4	0	18	↓Activity	CYP2C8*3 is associated with ↓clearance of both R- and S-ibuprofen.
CYP2C8*3	R139K; K399R	13		2	↓Activity	
CYP2C8*4	I264M	7.5			↓Activity	
CYP2C9						CYP2C9 accounts for ~20% of total hepatic CYP contents.
CYP2C9*2	R144C	13-22	0	3	↓Activity	CYP2C9*2 and *3 have been shown to affect the oral clearance of at least 17 different CYP2C9 substrate drugs (e.g., S-warfarin, celecoxib, ibuprofen, and phenytoin).
CYP2C9*3	I359L	3-16	3	1.3	↓Activity	
CYP2C9*5	D360E	0	2	0	↓Activity	
CYP2C19						The PM phenotype of CYP2C19 occurs in 12% to 23% of the Asian population, 1% to 6% of Caucasians, and 1% to 7.5% of black Africans.
CYP2C19*2	Splicing defect; I331V	15	30	17	Abolished activity	Polymorphisms in the *CYP2C19* gene are known to affect the PK and/or response of several classes of drugs, including proton pump inhibitors (e.g., omeprazole) and barbiturates.
CYP2C19*3	W212X; I331V	0.04	5	0.4	Abolished activity	
CYP2C19*17	I331V	18	4		↑Transcription	
CYP2D6						CYP2D6 accounts for ~2% of total hepatic CYP contents. However, it is involved in the metabolism of ~25% of all drugs in clinical use.
CYP2D6*3	Frameshift	1-2	<1		Abolished activity (PM)	Unlike other CYPs, CYP2D6 is not inducible, and thus genetic polymorphisms are largely responsible for the variation in enzyme expression and activity.
CYP2D6*4	Splicing defect	20-25	1	6-7	Abolished activity (PM)	CYP2D6 genotypes exhibit large interethnic differences: low frequency of PM in Asian (~1%) and African (0% to 5%) populations, compared to Caucasians (5% to 14%).
CYP2D6*5	Gene deletion	4-6	4-6	4-6	Abolished activity (PM)	The CYP2D6 genotype is of great importance for the PK and response of many drugs, including tricyclic antidepressants, antiarrhythmics, neuroleptics, analgesics, antiemetics, and anticancer drugs.
CYP2D6*10	P34S; S486T	<2	50	3-9	↓Activity (IM)	
CYP2D6*17	T107I; R296C; S486T	<1		20-34	↓Activity (IM)	
CYP2D6*41	R296C; splicing defect; S486T	1.3	2	5.8	↓Activity (IM)	
CYP2D6*1×N, N≥2	Gene duplication				↑Activity (UM)	
CYP2D6*2×N, N≥2	Gene duplication				↑Activity (UM)	

Continued

TABLE 73-1

Most Common Naturally Occurring Functional Polymorphisms in the Major Human Cytochrome P450 Genes: Allele Frequency, Functional Effect, and Highlights of Clinical Relevance—cont'd

Common Allelic Variants	Polymorphism/ Substitution	ALLELE FREQUENCY (%)* Ca	As	Af	Functional Effect†	Highlights of Clinical Relevance‡
CYP3A4						CYP3A4 has the highest abundance in the human liver (~40%) and metabolizes over 50% of all currently used drugs.
CYP3A4*1B	5′ flanking region	2-9	0	35-67	Altered expression	Genetic polymorphisms in CYP3A4 appear to be more prevalent in Caucasians than in Asians.
CYP3A4*2	S222P	2.7-4.5	0	0	Substrate-dependent altered activity	There is no consensus on a direct functional or clinical association of CYP3A4 polymorphism. CYP3A4 polymorphism may have minor or moderate clinical relevance.
CYP3A4*3	M445T	1.1			↓Activity	
CYP3A4*17	F189S	2.1			↓Activity	
CYP3A4*18	L293P	0		1	↑Activity	
CYP3A5						The clinical relevance of the CYP3A5 polymorphism is demonstrated by the fact that the PK of the immunosuppressive drug tacrolimus is associated with the CYP3A5 genotype.
CYP3A5*3	Splicing defect	90	75	50	Abolished activity	
CYP3A5*6	Splicing defect	0	0	7.5	Severely ↓activity	
CYP3A5*7	346 frameshift	0	0	8	Severely ↓activity	
CYP3A7						CYP3A7 is a predominantly fetal enzyme.
CYP3A7*1C	Promoter	3	28	6	↑Expression	The in vivo functional effect of CYP3A7 polymorphism is demonstrated by the fact that carriers of the CYP3A7*1C allele had a significantly decreased endogenous level of dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate, a specific substrate of CYP3A7.
CYP3A7*2	T409R	8		62	↑Activity	

Af, African; *As,* Asian; *Ca,* Caucasian; ↑ indicates increased; ↓ indicates decreased.
*Allele frequency data are obtained from Xie et al., 2001; Bradford, 2002; Mizutani, 2003; Solus et al., 2004; Roy et al., 2005; Suarez-Kurtz, 2005; Sistonen et al., 2007.
†Functional effect data are obtained from the Human Cytochrome P450 (CYP) Allele Nomenclature Committee website (http://www.cypalleles.ki.se/).
‡Comprehensive reviews were written by Ingelman-Sundberg, 2004; Bozina et al., 2009; Zhou et al., 2009.

Comprehensive reviews on the pharmacogenetics/genomics of CYPs have been published (Ingelman-Sundberg, 2004; Andersson et al, 2005; van Schaik, 2005; Rodriguez-Antona & Ingelman-Sundberg, 2006; Zhou et al, 2009). Notably, the most pharmacologically and clinically relevant polymorphisms are found in *CYP2D6*, *CYP2C9*, and *CYP2C19*. Of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved drug labels referring to human genomic biomarkers, 62% pertain to polymorphisms in the CYP enzymes, with CYP2D6 (35%), CYP2C19 (17%), and CYP2C9 (7%) being the most common (Frueh et al, 2008). For a review, see Li & Bluth, 2011.

Unlike other CYPs, CYP2D6 is not inducible. Therefore, variations in the enzyme expression and activity are largely attributable to the genetic polymorphisms. The *CYP2D6* gene is highly polymorphic with more than 63 functional variants identified to date (http://www.cypalleles.ki.se). These alleles result in abolished, decreased, normal, or ultrarapid CYP2D6 enzyme activity. The most important null alleles are *CYP2D6*4* (splicing defect) and *CYP2D6*5* (gene deletion); the common alleles with severely reduced enzyme activity are represented by *CYP2D6*10*, **17*, and **41*; ultrarapid enzyme activity is derived from duplication or multiduplications of active *CYP2D6* genes (e.g., *CYP2D6*1* × N [N ≥2]) (see Table 73-1). The distributions of *CYP2D6* alleles exhibit notable interethnic differences. The nonfunctional allele *CYP2D6*4* is prevalent in Caucasians (allelic frequency, ~25%); the reduced function allele *CYP2D6*10* is common in Asians (allelic frequency, ~40%); and *CYP2D6*17* is common in Africans (allelic frequency, ~34%) (Bradford, 2002). As a result, CYP2D6 poor metabolizers, mainly derived from null allele *CYP2D6*4*, have a high frequency in Caucasians (5% to 14%) compared with Africans (0% to 5%) and Asians (0% to 1%). In contrast, CYP2D6 ultrarapid metabolizers due to gene duplication or multiduplications have a high frequency in Saudi Arabians (20%) and black Ethiopians (29%) compared with Caucasians (1% to 10%) (Bradford, 2002). The interethnic difference in the *CYP2D6* genotypes may contribute to the interethnic variation in the disposition and response of substrate drugs. Although it accounts for ~2% of total hepatic CYP contents, CYP2D6 is involved in the metabolism of ~25% of all drugs in clinical use. *CYP2D6* genotype is of great importance to the pharmacokinetics and response of many drugs, including tricyclic antidepressants, antiarrhythmics, neuroleptics, analgesics, antiemetics, and anticancer drugs (for a review, see Zhou et al, 2009). A representative example is the implication of CYP2D6 phenotypes to the pharmacokinetics and clinical efficacy of tamoxifen, a prodrug requiring metabolic activation primarily mediated by CYP2D6. The pharmacogenetics of tamoxifen is discussed in detail later.

The human *CYP2C9* and *CYP2C19* genes are highly homologous at the nucleotide level. The most common nonsynonymous *CYP2C9* polymorphisms, *CYP2C9*2* and *CYP2C9*3*, result in the enzyme with differing affinity or intrinsic clearance for different substrates. While *CYP2C9*2* effect appears to be more substrate-specific, *CYP2C9*3* variant exhibits reduced catalytic activity toward the majority of CYP2C9 substrates. The clinical importance of *CYP2C9* polymorphisms is exemplified by the CYP2C9 genotype-guided dosing of an oral anticoagulant warfarin. The patients carrying either *CYP2C9*2* or *CYP2C9*3* require significantly smaller daily dose of warfarin to maintain desired therapeutic effects while avoiding severe toxicity, compared with patients carrying the wild-type *CYP2C9* (Higashi et al, 2002). For *CYP2C19*, a splice site mutation in exon 4 *(CYP2C19*2)* and a premature stop codon in exon 4 *(CYP2C19*3)* represent the two most predominant null alleles. It is estimated that by genotyping for *CYP2C19*2* and **3*, ~84%, ~100%, and >90% of poor CYP2C19 metabolizers could be detected in Caucasians, Asians, and Africans, respectively. CYP2C19 poor metabolizers are found in 12% to 23% of Asians, 1% to 6% of Caucasians, and 1% to 7.5% of Africans. *CYP2C19* genotypes are clinically relevant to the pharmacokinetics and response of several classes of drugs, including proton pump inhibitors (e.g., omeprazole) and barbiturates (for a review, see Zhou et al, 2009).

PHASE II ENZYMES

The most important phase II enzymes that exhibit functional and clinical relevant genetic polymorphisms are uridine diphosphate glucuronosyltransferase (UGT), sulfotransferase (SULT), glutathione S-transferases (GST), *N*-acetyltransferase (NAT), and thiopurine methyltransferase (TPMT) (see Fig. 73-2). Table 73-2 summarizes common functional polymorphisms in these phase II enzymes and highlights their clinical significance.

Uridine Diphosphate Glucuronosyltransferases

The human UGT superfamily is a group of conjugating enzymes that catalyze the transfer of the glucuronic acid group of uridine diphosphoglucuronic acid to the functional group (e.g., hydroxyl, carboxyl, amino, sulfur) of a specific substrate (Guillemette, 2003). UGTs are membrane-bound enzymes localized in the endoplasmic reticulum of liver and many

other extrahepatic tissues. Seventeen human *UGT* genes have been identified and are classified into two subfamilies (*UGT1* and *UGT2*). Glucuronidation increases the polarity of the substrates and facilitates their excretion in bile or urine. Genetic polymorphisms have been identified for almost all the UGT family members. These genetic variations may alter the function or expression of the enzyme, and consequently modify the glucuronidation capacity of the enzyme toward a given drug, carcinogen, or endogenous compounds. There is evidence that genetic variations in the *UGT* genes contribute to differential susceptibility to diseases (e.g., cancer) and influence the pharmacokinetics and clinical outcome of substrate drugs (for reviews, see Guillemette, 2003; Nagar & Remmel, 2006). A representative example is that the *UGT1A1* low promoter activity alleles (i.e., *UGT1A1*28*) are associated with decreased glucuronidation of SN-38 (an active metabolite of irinotecan), which leads to increased risk for irinotecan-induced toxicity. The pharmacogenetics of irinotecan is discussed in detail later. The most common functional polymorphisms in the major UGT enzymes and their clinical relevance are summarized in Table 73-2 (for comprehensive reviews, see Guillemette, 2003; Nagar & Remmel, 2006).

TABLE 73-2

Most Common Naturally Occurring Functional Polymorphisms in Major Human Phase II Drug-Metabolizing Enzymes: Allele Frequency, Functional Effect, and Highlights of Clinical Relevance

Allelic Variants	Polymorphism/ Substitution	ALLELE FREQUENCY (%) Ca	As	Af	Functional Effect	Highlights of Clinical Relevance
UGT1A1*						UGT1A1 low promoter activity alleles (e.g., UGT1A1*28) are significantly associated with ↓glucuronidation of SN-38 (the active metabolite of irinotecan), thereby resulting in ↑risk for irinotecan-induced toxicity.
UGT1A1*6	G71R	0	13-23	–	↓Activity	Genetic variations in UGT1A1 may modify susceptibility to steroid-related cancers including breast, ovarian, endometrial, and prostate cancers.
UGT1A1*28	(TA)6>(TA)7 in promoter	2-9-40	13-16	36-43	↓Expression	
UGT1A1*33	(TA)6>(TA)5 in promoter	0-0.7	0	3-8	↑Expression	
UGT1A1*34	(TA)6>(TA)8 in promoter	0-0.7	0	0.9-7	↓Expression	
UGT1A6*						UGT1A6 catalyzes the glucuronidation of aspirin and acetaminophen.
UGT1A6*2	T181A, R184S	30	23		↓Activity	"Low activity" UGT1A6 variants, leading to increased salicylate levels in aspirin users, are associated with a lower risk for colon cancer.
UGT1A6*3	R184S	1-2	1.6		Unknown	
UGT1A6*4	T181A	2.4			Unknown	
UGT1A7*						
UGT1A7*2	N129K, R131K	24-34	15	39	Similar activity	UGT1A7 is an important extrahepatic UGT that inactivates a variety of carcinogens.
UGT1A7*3	N129K, R131K, W208R	23-36	26	23	↓Activity	Low-activity UGT1A7 variants increase the risk of developing tobacco-related cancers, specifically orolaryngeal cancer.
UGT1A7*4	W208R	1-1.7	0	1	↓Activity	
UGT2B7*						UGT2B7 is of major significance for the glucuronidation of a number of clinically important drugs (e.g., morphinan derivatives, epiribicin, and zidovudine).
UGT2B7*2	H268Y	49-54	27		Similar or decreased activity	Further studies are needed to elucidate the clinical impact of the UGT2B7 polymorphism.
UGT2B15*						UGT2B15 is the most efficient UGT2B involved in the inactivation of steroid hormones, mainly androgens.
UGT2B15*2	D85Y	52-55	36-49	39	↑Activity	UGT2B15 polymorphisms have a potential role in a modified risk for prostate cancer.
SULT1A1†						SULT1A1 is the most highly expressed hepatic SULT.
SULT1A1*2	R213H	25-36	4.5-17	27-29	↓Activity and ↓thermal stability	SULT1A1 plays an important role in the sulfation of the metabolites of tamoxifen, 4-hydroxy-tamoxifen, and endoxifen. SULT1A1*2 is associated with decreased survival of breast cancer patients treated with tamoxifen.
SULT1A1*3	M223V	1.2	0.6	23	Similar activity	
GST‡						
GSTA1*B	Promoter point mutation (T-631G, T-567G, C-69T, G-52A)	40		41	↓Expression	GSTA1 is involved in glutathione conjugation of the active metabolites of cyclophosphamide (CPA). GSTA1*B allele is associated with higher survival rate of breast cancer patients treated with CPA-containing chemotherapy.
GSTM1*0	Gene deletion	42-58		27-41	Abolished activity	The GSTM null genotype is associated with an increased risk for lung, colon, and bladder cancer. AML patients carrying GSTM*0 appear to have a better response to Adriamycin and cyclophosphamide treatment.
GSTP1*B	I105V	6-40		54	↓Activity	The GSTP1*B allele is associated with lower clearance of etoposide and reduced risk for relapse in childhood ALL patients. The GSTP1*B allele is associated with increased survival rate in patients with advanced colorectal cancer or breast cancer.
GSTT1*0	Gene deletion	2-42			Abolished activity	The GSTT1 deletion is associated with reduced risk for relapse in childhood ALL patients. The GSTT1 deletion is a poor prognostic factor for survival in adult ALL.

Continued

TABLE 73-2

Most Common Naturally Occurring Functional Polymorphisms in Major Human Phase II Drug-Metabolizing Enzymes: Allele Frequency, Functional Effect, and Highlights of Clinical Relevance—cont'd

Allelic Variants	Polymorphism/ Substitution	ALLELE FREQUENCY (%) Ca	As	Af	Functional Effect	Highlights of Clinical Relevance
NAT[§]						NAT1*14 and *17 are associated with slow acetylator phenotype.
NAT1*4	Wild-type				Normal	NAT2*5, *6, *7, *10, *14, and *19 lead to slow acetylator phenotype.
NAT1*14	R187Q	1.3-3.7			↓Activity	NAT2 slow acetylator phenotype is associated with increased susceptibility to hydralazine- and isoniazid-induced toxicity.
NAT1*14	R187Stop				↓Activity	NAT2 slow acetylator phenotype is associated with increased risk for bladder cancer.
NAT1*17	R64W				↓Activity	
NAT1*19	R33Stop				↓Activity	
NAT1*22	D251V				↓Activity	
NAT2*4	Wild-type				Normal	
NAT2*5	I114T				↓Activity	
NAT2*6	R197Q				↓Activity	
NAT2*7	G286E				↓Activity	
NAT2*10	E167K				↓Activity	
NAT2*14	R64Q				↓Activity	
NAT2*17	Q145P				↓Activity	
NAT2*19	R64W				↓Activity	
TPMT[¶]						TPMT is involved in the methylation reaction of mercaptopurine, an anticancer drug used in the treatment of childhood ALL.
TPMT*2	A80P	0-0.5	0	0-0.4	↓Activity	The TPMT genotype correlated well with in vivo enzyme activity and is clearly associated with a risk for mercaptopurine-induced toxicity. Patients with poor or intermediate TPMT activity may tolerate only one tenth to half of the average mercaptopurine dose.
TPMT*3A	A154Y, Y240C	0-0.6	0-1	0-0.8	Abolished activity	
TPMT*3B	Y240C	–	0	–	9-fold ↓Activity	
TPMT*3C	A154Y	0.2-3.3	0-0.2	2.4-7.6	1.4-fold ↓Activity	

Af, African; *ALL,* acute lymphoblastic leukemia; *AML,* acute myeloid leukemia; *As,* Asian; *Ca,* Caucasian; *GST,* glutathione S-transferases; *NAT,* N-acetyltransferase; *SULT,* sulfotransferase; *TPMT,* thiopurine methyltransferase; *UGT,* uridine diphosphate glucuronosyltransferase; ↑ indicates increased; ↓ indicates decreased.
*Data on *UGT* SNP allele frequencies, function effect, and clinical relevance are summarized from Guillemette, 2003; Nagar & Remmel, 2006.
†Data on *SULT1A1* SNP allele frequencies, function effect, and clinical relevance are summarized from Glatt & Meinl, 2004; Nowell & Falany, 2006.
‡Data on *GST* SNP allele frequencies, function effect, and clinical relevance are summarized from McIlwain et al, 2006; Lo & Ali-Osman, 2007.
§Data on *NAT* SNP allele frequencies, function effect, and clinical relevance are summarized from Hein, 2002; Agundez, 2008; Sim et al, 2008.
¶Data on *TPMT* SNP allele frequencies, function effects, and clinical relevance are summarized from Hamdy et al, 2003; Zhou, 2006.

Sulfotransferases

Cytosolic SULTs are phase II enzymes that catalyze the transfer of the sulfonyl group from the cofactor 3′-phosphoadenosine 5′-phosphosulfate to the nucleophilic sites of a variety of substrates including hormones and xenobiotics. Sulfo conjugation of xenobiotics leads to formation of polar, excretable products as well as reactive, potentially mutagenic and carcinogenic metabolites (Glatt & Meinl, 2004). Eleven SULT proteins encoded by 10 genes have been identified in humans. They differ in substrate specificity and tissue distribution. Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) have been identified in most of the human *SULT* genes. Functional SNPs in *SULTs*, which result in altered enzymatic activity, have the potential to influence therapeutic response and modify cancer susceptibility (see Table 73-2) (see reviews in Glatt & Meinl, 2004; Nowell & Falany, 2006). A most commonly occurring SNP, *SULT1A1*2* (Arg213His), exhibits reduced enzymatic activity and thermal stability.

Glutathione S-Transferases

The superfamily of human GST catalyzes the conjugation of glutathione (GSH) to a large variety of endogenous metabolites and xenobiotics including alkylating and free radical–generating anticancer drugs (Lo & Ali-Osman, 2007). Human GSTs are categorized into three main families: cytosolic/nuclear, mitochondrial, and microsomal GSTs. The cytosolic GSTs are further divided into seven classes: alpha, mu, omega, pi, sigma, theta, and zeta. Besides their enzymatic function, GSTs also possess non-enzymatic functions, in which they act as regulators of cell signaling and posttranslational modification pathway in response to stress, growth factors, and deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) damage, and in cell proliferation, cell death, and other processes that ultimately lead to tumor growth and drug resistance. These multiple functionalities establish the importance of GSTs as determinants of cancer susceptibility and prognosis, as well as therapeutic response (see reviews in McIlwain et al, 2006; Lo & Ali-Osman, 2007). Most human GSTs have SNPs, and, less frequently, deletions. GST polymorphisms have been linked to cancer incidence, treatment outcome, and prognosis (Table 73-3) (for comprehensive reviews, see McIlwain et al, 2006; Lo & Ali-Osman, 2007).

N-Acetyltransferase

The human NATs catalyze the transfer of an acetyl group from acetylcoenzyme A to arylamines, arylhydroxylamines, and arylhydrazines (Blum et al, 1990). The two human NAT genes, *NAT1* and *NAT2*, carry functional polymorphisms that influence the enzyme activity. Based on the level of NAT activity, patients can be classified into two phenotypes: fast acetylator (wild-type NAT acetylation activity) and slow acetylator (reduced NAT enzyme activity). For example, polymorphisms or haplotypes in *NAT1* (e.g., *NAT1*14*, **15*, **17*, **19*, and **22*) and *NAT2* (e.g., *NAT2*5*, **6*, **7*, **10*, **14*, and **17*) lead to slow acetylation phenotype (see Table 73-3) (for a review, see Sim et al, 2008). A comprehensive list of the NAT1/2 alleles is presented on the website http://louisville.edu/medschool/pharmacology/NAT.htlm. NAT2 plays an important role in the activation and/or deactivation of a large and diverse number of aromatic amine and hydrazine drugs used in clinic, and therefore the *NAT2* genotype is particularly relevant to the response to these drugs. One representative example is the association of the NAT2 slow-acetylator phenotype with increased risk for an antituberculosis drug (isoniazid)-induced hepatitis (Huang et al, 2002). In addition, because NAT1 and NAT2 catalyze the bioactivation (via *O*-acetylation) of aromatic and heterocyclic amine carcinogens, genetic variations in *NAT1/2* genes may modify the cancer risk related to exposure to these carcinogens (Hein, 2002). For instance, the NAT2 slow-acetylator phenotype has been linked to a higher risk for bladder cancer, particularly in cigarette smokers (Cartwright et al, 1982; Garcia-Closas et al, 2005).

Thiopurine *S*-Methyltransferase

TPMT is best known for its key role in the metabolism of the thiopurine drugs (e.g., 6-mercaptopurine, azathiopurine, and 6-thioguanine) by catalyzing the *S*-methylation of thiopurine drugs via *S*-adenosyl-L-methionine as the *S*-methyl donor. These drugs are clinically used to treat cancers or

TABLE 73-3

Pharmacologically Most Important Efflux and Uptake Drug Transporters, Tissue Distribution, and Representative Substrate Drugs*

Gene	Protein	Tissue Distribution	Polarity	Representative Drug Substrates
ABC Transporters				
ABCB1	MDR1 (P-gp)	Liver, intestine, kidney, blood-brain barrier, lymphocytes, placenta	AP	Anthracyclines, taxanes, vinca alkaloids, imatinib, etoposide, levofloxacin, erythromycin, cyclosporine, tacrolimus, digoxin, quinidine, verapamil, diltiazem, ritonavir, saquinavir, talinolol, phenytoin, cimetidine, simvastatin, morphine, hydrocortisone
ABCC1	MRP1 (GS-X)	Ubiquitous	BL	Anthracyclines, vinca alkaloids, irinotecan, SN-38, methotrexate, camptothecins, saquinavir, ritonavir, difloxacin, drug-glucuronate/-glutathione/-sulfate conjugates
ABCC2	MRP2 (cMOAT)	Liver, kidney, intestine	AP	Anthracyclines, vinca alkaloids, methotrexate, camptothecins, rifampin, pravastatin, and drug-glucuronate/-glutathione/-sulfate conjugates
ABCG2	BCRP	Liver, intestine, placenta, breast	AP	Anthracyclines, irinotecan, SN38, SN38G, imatinib, tamoxifen
SLC Transporters				
OATP Family				
SLC21A3	OATP1A2 (OATP-A)	Ubiquitous, with highest expression in brain and testis	BL	Rosuvastatin, methotrexate, ouabain, D-penicillamine
SLC21A6	OATP1B1 (OATP-C)	Liver	BL	Statin, pravastatin, fexofenadine, repaglinide, rosuvastatin, ouabain, D-penicillamine, rifampin
SLC21A8	OATP1B3 (OATP8)	Liver	BL	Digoxin, rifampin, ouabain, methotrexate, D-penicillamine, rosuvastatin, cyclosporine
SLC21A9	OATP2B1 (OATP-B)	Ubiquitous	BL	Benzylpenicillin, rosuvastatin
OCT Family				
SLC22A1	OCT1	Liver	BL	Metformin, cisplatin, oxaliplatin, imatinib, procainamide, citalopram, cimetidine, quinidine, verapamil, acyclovir
SLC22A2	OCT2	Kidney	BL	Metformin, cisplatin, oxaliplatin, imatinib, procainamide, citalopram, cimetidine, quinidine, amantadine
SLC22A3	OCT3	Brain, liver, kidney, heart, muscle, placenta, and blood vessels	BL	Cimetidine, agmatine, adefovir, catecholamines
OAT Family				
SLC22A6	OAT1	Kidney, brain	BL	Methotrexate, salicylate, antiviral agents (e.g., acyclovir)
SLC22A7	OAT2	Liver, kidney,	BL	Methotrexate, salicylate, tetracyclines
SLC22A8	OAT3	Kidney, brain, muscle	BL	Methotrexate, antiviral agents (e.g., acyclovir), cimetidine, pravastatin, salicylate
SLC22A11	OAT4	Kidney, placenta	AP	Methotrexate, cimetidine, salicylate, tetracyclines

AP, Apical; *BCRP,* breast cancer resistance protein; *BL,* basolateral; *GS-X,* glutathione S-conjugate pump; *MDR1,* multidrug resistance 1; *MOAT,* multispecific organic anion transporter; *MRP,* multidrug resistance-related protein; *OAT,* organic anion transporter; *OATP,* organic anion transporting peptides; *OCT,* organic cation transporter; *P-gp,* P-glycoprotein.

*Comprehensive information on tissue distribution, substrates, and other transporter-related information can be found at www.tp-search.jp, http://www.bioparadigms.org/slc/menu.asp, and http://nutrigene.4t.com/humanabc.htm.

as immunosuppressants. The *TPMT* gene exhibits significant genetic polymorphisms across all ethnic groups studied, with 18 *TMPT* alleles identified to date. The three main *TPMT* alleles, namely *TMPT*2* (reduced activity), **3A* (abolished activity), and **3C* (reduced activity), account for 80% to 95% of the intermediate and poor metabolizers (see Table 73-3) (for a review, see Zhou, 2006). Patients who inherit defective *TPMT* alleles or *TPMT* deficiency (i.e., two nonfunctional alleles) are at significantly increased risk for thiopurine-induced toxicity (e.g., myelosuppression). Indeed, patients with absent TMPT activity (~0.3% prevalence) or low activity (~10% prevalence) may tolerate only 5% to 50% of the average mercaptopurine dose. Clinical diagnostic tests are now available for the detection of the SNPs in the human *TPMT* gene that lead to decreased or abolished enzyme activity. *TPMT* variant pharmacogenetic testing is recommended before treating patients with azathiopurine, mercaptopurine, and thioguanine.

DRUG-TRANSPORTER PHARMACOGENOMICS

In addition to drug-metabolizing enzymes, uptake and efflux transporters that facilitate the movement of drugs into and out of cells are important determinants of drug disposition and response. Broadly, drug transporters are classified into two families: efflux transporters of the adenosine-5′-triphosphate (ATP)-binding cassette (ABC) family and uptake transporters of the solute carrier (SLC) family. In the ABC transporter family, 49 genes have been identified and classified into seven subfamilies from ABCA through ABCG based on the sequence homology (http://nutrigene.4t.com/humanabc.htm). The ABC transporters are responsible for transport of diverse substrates out of cells using ATP as an energy source. Among these, *ABCB1*, *ABCC1/2*, and *ABCG2* have been well characterized for their roles in drug disposition and response. In the SLC family, 360 genes have been identified and classified into 46 subfamilies (http://www.bioparadigms.org/slc/menu.asp). Of particular relevance to drug disposition are organic anion–transporting polypeptides (OATPs), organic cation transporters (OCTs), and organic anion transporters (OATs).

The pharmacologically most important ABC transporters (including ABCB1, ABCC1/2, and ABCG2) and SLC transporters (including OATP, OCT, and OAT families), their tissue distributions, and representative drug substrates are summarized in Table 73-3. These transporters play a crucial role in the intestinal absorption, biliary excretion, renal excretion, and tissue/cellular penetration of a wide variety of therapeutic drugs, and therefore they are important determinants of drug exposure in the system and at the site of action (Fig. 73-3). Genetic polymorphisms in transporter genes may influence the expression, subcellular localization, substrate specificity, and intrinsic transport activity of transporter proteins, and consequently may influence the disposition and response of substrate drugs. The sections that follow highlight the functional and clinical significance of the most commonly naturally occurring genetic polymorphisms within the pharmacologically most important ABC and SLC transporters. A comprehensive list of genetic variants in the ABC and SLC transporters and related information are available in Pharmacogenetics Research network databases at http://www.pharmGKB.org.

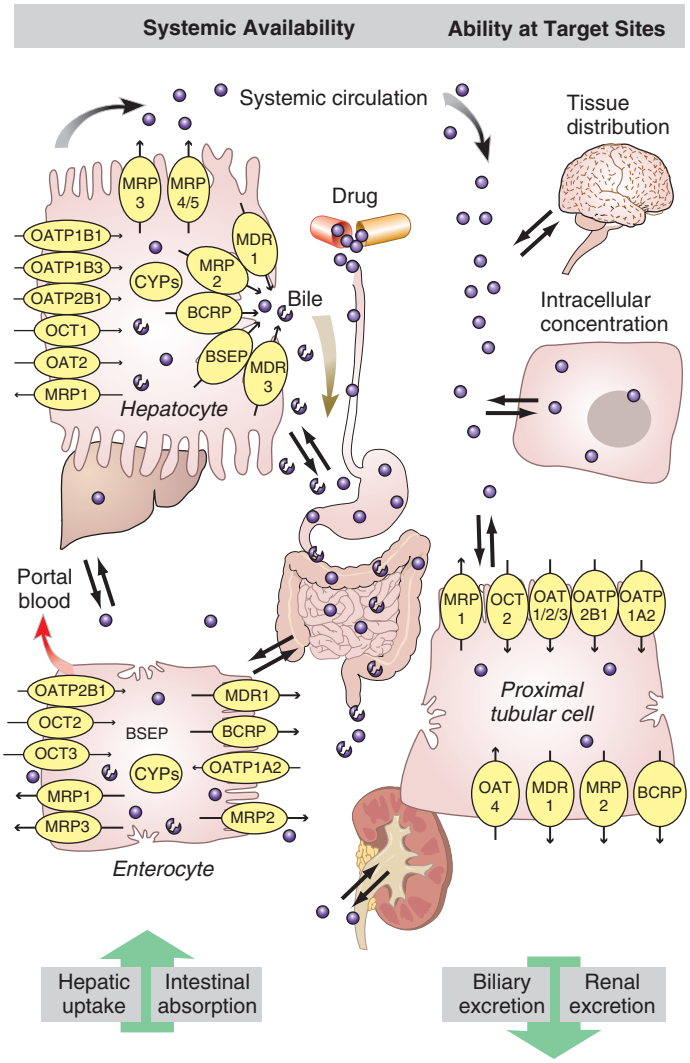


Figure 73-3 Schematic representation of drug uptake and efflux transporters as determinants of drug disposition. (Modified from Kerb R: Implications of genetic polymorphisms in drug transporters for pharmacotherapy, *Cancer Lett* 234:4–33, 2006.)

ATP-BINDING CASSETTE (ABC) TRANSPORTERS

ABCB1

The *ABCB1* gene, also named as the multidrug resistance 1 *(MDR1)* gene, encodes a polypeptide (P-glycoprotein) that has two halves, each containing six hydrophobic transmembrane domains and an ATP-binding domain. ABCB1 is expressed in the intestinal epithelium, canalicular membrane of hepatocyte, brush border of the renal tubule, pancreatic ductile cell, trophoblast of placenta, capillary endothelial cells of brain and testes, and peripheral blood lymphocytes (see Table 73-3). ABCB1, located on the apical or luminal surface of the epithelial cells, functions as an efflux transporter in restricting intestinal absorption, facilitating hepatobiliary excretion and renal excretion, and protecting the brain and fetus from xenobiotics (see Fig. 73-3). In addition, ABCB1 overexpression in cancer cells is implicated in multidrug resistance to chemotherapeutic agents (Gottesman et al, 2002). ABCB1 transports a broad spectrum of structurally and functionally diverse drugs, including anticancer agents, antibiotics, immunosuppressants, cardiac drugs, calcium channel antagonists, and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease inhibitors (see Table 73-3). Notably, there is a large overlap in substrate specificity and tissue distribution for ABCB1 and CYP3A4/5 (Wacher et al, 1995).

More than 50 SNPs have been identified in the human *ABCB1* coding region. The most common SNPs are the synonymous *1236C>T* and *3435C>T* and the nonsynonymous *2677G>T* (Ala899Ser). The allele frequencies of these three SNPs vary in different ethnic populations (Table 73-4). The *3435C>T* SNP has strong linkage disequilibrium with other SNPs in the *ABCB1* gene, creating common haplotypes consisting of *3435C>T* combined with *2677G>T* and/or *1236C>T*.

Given the important role of ABCB1 in drug absorption and disposition, genetic polymorphisms in the *ABCB1* gene may influence the outcome of pharmacotherapy. The first investigation of the functional and clinical effect of *ABCB1* polymorphism was reported in 2000 for a silent SNP *3435C>T*, which was associated with decreased duodenal expression of ABCB1 and increased digoxin plasma concentration after oral administration in humans (Hoffmeyer et al, 2000). In the past decade, a number of preclinical and clinical studies have been conducted investigating association of the ABCB1 genotype with its tissue expression and function, as well as with the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of a wide variety of substrate drugs (see Table 73-4) (for a review, see Ieiri et al, 2004). However, data reported on the functional and clinical impact of ABCB1 polymorphisms are often inconsistent (for reviews, see Ieiri et al, 2004; Marzolini et al, 2004a; Pauli-Magnus & Kroetz, 2004; Sakaeda, 2005; and Kerb, 2006). The discrepancy could be due to the lack of standardized methodology and assays among different studies. In addition, a particular SNP may often result in a very subtle functional outcome. It has been shown that the 3435C>T SNP affects the timing of cotranslational folding and insertion of ABCB1 into the membrane, thereby altering substrate specificity (Kimchi-Sarfaty et al, 2007). Interestingly, the *1236C>T-2677G>T-3435C>T* haplotype did not result in a change in substrate transport per se but influenced the inhibition of transport by a small subset of modulators (Kimchi-Sarfaty et al, 2007). Furthermore, conflicting results could be attributable to confounding factors from other transporters or metabolizing enzymes given the multiple disposition pathway of the substrate drug. For example, the commonly used in vivo ABCB1 probe drugs (e.g., digoxin, fexofenadine, and talinolol) are the dual substrates for both ABCB1 and OATP transporters; cyclosporine is not only transported by ABCB1 but also metabolized by CYP3A4. Thus, the impact of *ABCB1* polymorphisms on the pharmacokinetics of these substrate drugs could be obscured by the activity of OATP or CYP3A4. Hence, a systemic analysis of polymorphisms in multiple genes known or suspected to contribute to drug disposition and response will be essential to better understand the genetic impact on pharmacotherapy. In addition, the ABCB1 has multiple polymorphisms, some of which are in linkage disequilibrium, and therefore a haplotype approach would allow a more accurate prediction of clinical phenotypes.

ABCC1 and ABCC2

ABCC1/2, also called *multidrug resistance-related proteins*, play an essential role in transport and excretion of organic anions including physiologic metabolites, carcinogens, and drugs. They also contribute to multidrug resistance to chemotherapeutic agents (Hinoshita et al, 2000). ABCC1 and ABCC2 have overlapping substrate specificities, typically glutathione, glucuronate, and sulfate conjugated and unconjugated drugs, including many anticancer agents (e.g., vincristine and doxorubicin), HIV protease inhibitors (e.g., ritonavir and saquinavir), and antibiotics (e.g., difloxacin and grepafloxacin) (see Table 73-3). Both ABCC1 and ABCC2 require cotransport of reduced glutathione to transport some of their substrates (Rothnie et al, 2006). ABCC1 is located in basolateral membranes of polarized cells, whereas ABCC2 is located in the apical domain. While ABCC1 is ubiquitously expressed, ABCC2 is mainly expressed in the liver, renal proximal tubules, intestine, and brain (see Table 73-3).

The human *ABCC1* gene appears to be a conserved gene because many of the naturally occurring genetic variants in *ABCC1* are relatively rare. Of the identified SNPs in the noncoding and coding region of *ABCC1*, 16 are known to result in amino acid changes, and some of them exhibit functional effects on either expression or function of the protein (see Table 73-4) (for a review, see Gradhand & Kim, 2008). However, data regarding the impact of *ABCC1* polymorphisms on in vivo physiology, clinical drug resistance, or toxicity are rather limited. Notably, one study has identified significant associations of *ABCC1 2012G>T* (Gly671Val) and a haplotype of *ABCC2* with anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity among patients with non-Hodgkin lymphoma treated with doxorubicin (Wojnowski et al, 2005).

Mutations in the *ABCC2* gene have been initially identified in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, a relatively rare recessive disorder characterized by conjugated hyperbilirubinemia resulting from loss of expression and function of ABCC2 in the liver (see Chapter 21). However, the impact of this loss of hepatic ABCC2-mediated transport on the pharmacokinetics of substrate drugs in humans remains to be determined. Among more commonly occurring *ABCC2* SNPs, the most widely studied is *1249G>A* (Val417Ile). The effect of this SNP on ABCC2 expression is different depending on the tissue examined. For example, *1249G>A* was associated with lower *ABCC2* mRNA and protein levels in preterm placenta, but not in duodenum and liver (Meyer zu Schwabedissen et al, 2005; Meier et al,

TABLE 73-4

Most Common Functional Polymorphisms in Human *ABCB1*, *ABCC1/2*, and *ABCG2*: Allele Frequency and Functional Effects

Allele Variants	Polymorphism/ Substitution	ALLELE FREQUENCY (%)*			Functional Effects
		Ca	As	Af	
ABCB1					
1236C>T	Silent	34-42	60-72	15-21	Affects cotranslational folding in nearby amino acids that are essential for ATP-binding and ATP hydrolysis (Fung & Gottesman, 2009)
2677G>T/A	A893S/T	38-47/1-10	32-62/3-22	15/ND	Affects ABCB1 expression or function, but data are inconsistent (Marzolini et al, 2004a)
3435C>T	Silent	48-59	37-66	10-27	Affects cotranslational folding in nearby amino acids, thereby altering substrate specificity (Kimchi-Sarfaty et al, 2007)
ABCB1*13	1236C>T/2677G>T/3435C>T haplotype	23-42	28-56	4.5-8.7	Affects the inhibition of ABCB1 by a small subset of modulators (Kimchi-Sarfaty et al, 2007)
ABCC1					
128G>C	C43S		1		Reduced plasma membrane localization, ↓vincristine resistance in transfected cells (Leslie et al, 2003)
1299G>T	R433S	1.4			Changes in transport and resistance (Conrad et al, 2002)
2012G>T	G671V	2.8			Associated with anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity (Wojnowski et al, 2005)
ABCC2					
1271A>G	R412G				DJS; ↓ in methotrexate elimination (Hulot et al, 2005)
1249G>A	V417I	22-26	13-19	14	Changes in ABCC2 expression and localization (Vogelgesang et al, 2004; Merino et al, 2005; Meyer zu Schwabedissen et al, 2005)
3563T>A	V1188E	4-7	1		Associated with anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity (Wojnowski et al, 2005)
4544G>A	C1515Y	4-9			Associated with anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity (Wojnowski et al, 2005)
ABCG2					
34G>A	V12M	2-10	15-18	4-6	Changes in transport and resistance (Mizuarai et al, 2004; Tamura et al, 2007)
376C>T	Q126stop	0	0.9-1.7	0	Loss of transport activity (Tamura et al, 2006)
421C>A	Q141K	9-14	27-35	1-5	Affects the ATP-binding domain, thereby leading to reduced transport activity (Mizuarai et al, 2004; Tamura et al, 2007)
ABCB1					
1236C>T	Silent	34-42	60-72	15-21	Affects cotranslational folding in nearby amino acids that are essential for ATP binding and ATP hydrolysis (Fung & Gottesman, 2009)
2677G>T/A	A893S/T	38-47/1-10	32-62/3-22	15/ND	Affects ABCB1 expression or function, but data are inconsistent (Marzolini et al, 2004a)
3435C>T	Silent	48-59	37-66	10-27	Affects cotranslational folding in nearby amino acids, thereby altering substrate specificity (Kimchi-Sarfaty et al, 2007)
*ABCB1*13*	1236C>T/2677G>T/3435C>T haplotype	23-42	28-56	4.5-8.7	Affects the inhibition of ABCB1 by a small subset of modulators (Kimchi-Sarfaty et al, 2007)
ABCC1					
128G>C	C43S		1		Reduced plasma membrane localization, ↓vincristine resistance in transfected cells (Leslie et al, 2003)
1299G>T	R433S	1.4			Changes in transport and resistance (Conrad et al, 2002)
2012G>T	G671V	2.8			Associated with anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity (Wojnowski et al, 2005)
ABCC2					
1271A>G	R412G				Dubin-Johnson syndrome; ↓ in methotrexate elimination (Hulot et al, 2005)
1249G>A	V417I	22-26	13-19	14	Changes in ABCC2 expression and localization (Vogelgesang et al, 2004; Merino et al, 2005; Meyer zu Schwabedissen et al, 2005)
3563T>A	V1188E	4-7	1		Associated with anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity (Wojnowski et al, 2005)
4544G>A	C1515Y	4-9			Associated with anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity (Wojnowski et al, 2005)
ABCG2					
*2*34G>A	V12M	2-10	15-18	4-6	Changes in transport and resistance (Mizuarai et al, 2004; Tamura et al, 2007)
376C>T	Q126stop	0	0.9-1.7	0	Loss of transport activity (Tamura et al, 2006)
421C>A	Q141K	9-14	27-35	1-5	Affects the ATP-binding domain, thereby leading to reduced transport activity (Mizuarai et al, 2004; Tamura et al, 2007)

Af, African; *As,* Asian; *ATP,* adenosine-5′-triphosphate; *Ca,* Caucasian; ↑ indicates increased; ↓ indicates decreased.
*Data of allele frequencies are obtained from Marzolini C, Paus E, Buclin T, Kim RB: Polymorphisms in human MDR1 (P-glycoprotein): recent advances and clinical relevance, *Clinical Pharmacol Ther* 75:13–33, 2004; Gradhand U, Kim RB: Pharmacogenomics of MRP transporters (ABCC1-5) and BCRP (ABCG2), *Drug Metab Rev* 40:317–354, 2008.

2006). Of note, a possible association of *1249G>A* variant with tenofovir-induced renal proximal tubulopathy has been demonstrated, suggesting this SNP may influence renal excretion of some ABCC2 substrates (Izzedine et al, 2006). In addition, *1249G>A* has been associated with the change of ABCC2 localization in neuroepithelial tumors (Vogelgesang et al, 2004). A number of other nonsynonymous and synonymous SNPs have been studied for their potential functional influence on ABCC2 expression and transport activity (see Table 73-4). *ABCC2* SNPs appear to have varying effects on different organs or substrates, or between in vitro and in vivo studies (for a review, see Gradhand & Kim, 2008).

ABCG2

The ABCG2 (also known as BCRP) protein is an ATP-binding cassette (ABC) half-transporter that bears six transmembrane domains and one ATP-binding domain. The protein actively extrudes a wide variety of chemically unrelated hydrophobic or partially hydrophobic compounds from the cells, including cytotoxic compounds (e.g., mitoxantrone, topotecan, SN-38, flavopiridol, and methotrexate), fluorescent dyes (e.g., Hoechst 33342), and toxic compounds found in normal food (e.g., pheophorbide A) (see Table 73-3). ABCG2 is expressed in the canalicular membrane of hepatocytes; in the epithelia of small intestine, colon, placenta, lung, kidney, adrenal glands, and sweat glands; as well as in the endothelia of the central nerve system vasculature. It is responsible for host detoxification and protection against potentially toxic xenobiotics (Jonker et al, 2000, 2002; Krishnamurthy & Schuetz, 2005). ABCG2 transporter–mediated efflux can confer drug resistance and also modulate drug absorption and disposition (Burger & Nooter, 2004; Hirano et al, 2005; Kondo et al, 2005; Merino et al, 2005; Sparreboom et al, 2005).

More than 80 polymorphisms in the *ABCG2* gene have been identified in different ethnic populations (Iida et al, 2002; Imai et al, 2002; Zamber et al, 2003; Ishikawa et al, 2005). Several naturally occurring SNPs in ABCG2 have been found to affect the function and/or expression of its encoded protein (Imai et al, 2002; Mitomo et al, 2003; Kobayashi et al, 2005; Lepper et al, 2005), and therefore, may alter the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of substrate drugs. In particular, a functional SNP in exon 5 of the *ABCG2* gene, in which a C→A nucleotide transition at position 421 (*ABCG2* 421C>A), results in a nonsynonymous variant protein with a glutamine-to-lysine amino acid substitution in codon 141 (Q141K) (Imai et al, 2002). The *ABCG2* 421C>A variant has been associated with low ABCG2 expression levels and altered substrate specificity (Imai et al, 2002), and also been shown to modify the pharmacokinetics of substrate drugs such as diflomotecan and topotecan (Sparreboom et al, 2004, 2005). The clinical relevance of this polymorphism was further exemplified by more recent findings that cancer patients carrying the *ABCG2 421A* allele, who were treated with the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) tyrosine kinase inhibitor gefitinib, tended to have a greater drug systemic accumulation at the steady-state and higher incidence of gefitinib-induced diarrhea, as compared to patients carrying the wild-type *ABCG2* (Cusatis et al, 2006; Li et al, 2007b).

SOLUTE CARRIER TRANSPORTERS

Organic Anion Transporting Polypeptides

OATPs are membrane influx transporters that facilitate cellular uptake of a wide range of endogenous compounds (e.g., bile salts, hormones, and steroid conjugates) and clinically important drugs (e.g., HMG-CoA-reductase inhibitors, cardiac glycosides, anticancer agents, and antibiotics) (see Table 73-3). Of the 11 human OATP transporters, OATP1A2, OATP1B1, OATP1B3, and OATP2B1 are best characterized for their roles in drug pharmacokinetics. OATP1A2, expressed on the luminal membrane of small-intestinal enterocytes and at the blood-brain barrier, facilitates the intestinal absorption and brain penetration of its substrates. OATP1B1, OATP1B3, and OATP2B1, mainly expressed on the sinusoidal membrane of hepatocytes, facilitate the hepatic uptake of their substrate drugs for metabolism and biliary excretion (Niemi, 2007).

A number of SNPs and other genetic variations have been identified in the *SLCO1B1* gene (encoding OATP1B1), and their allele frequencies vary markedly across different populations (Table 73-5) (for a review, see Meyer zu Schwabedissen & Kim, 2009). Several *SLCO1B1* SNPs and haplotypes have been associated with impaired transport activity in vitro toward different substrates (Tirona et al, 2001; Kameyama et al, 2005; Nozawa et al, 2005). These functionally impaired OATP1B1 variants may limit the uptake of the substrate drugs into the hepatocytes, thereby resulting in decreased biliary excretion or hepatic metabolism and, consequently, increased systemic exposure. For instance, a common variant, *521T>C*, has been associated with increased systemic exposure to OATP1B1 substrate drugs, including repaglinide and statins (e.g., pravastatin) (Niemi et al, 2005, 2006) in humans. Genome-wide association studies have identified a noncoding SNP, rs4363657, which is in nearly complete linkage disequilibrium with the *SLCO1B1 521T>C*, to be a strong predictive marker for simvastatin-induced myopathy (Link et al, 2008). *OATP1B1*15* (a haplotype of *388A>G* and *512T>C*) has been linked to increased systemic exposure to pravastatin (Nishizato et al, 2003) and SN-38 (Xiang et al, 2006; Han et al, 2008). *OATP1B1*17* (a haplotype of *–11187G>A*, *388A>G*, and *512T>C*) has been associated with a better pharmacodynamic effect of pravastatin on cholesterol synthesis.

Several nonsynonymous polymorphisms have been identified in the *SLCO1A2* gene (encoding OATP1A2), and some of them demonstrate

TABLE 73-5

Most Common, Naturally Occurring Nonsynonymous SNPs in Genes Encoding Human OATP, OCT, and OAT Transporters: Allele Frequency and Functional Effects

Allele Variant	Polymorphism/ Substitution	ALLELE FREQUENCY (%)*			Functional Effect†
		Ca	As	Af	
OATP					
SLCO1A2 (OATP1A2)					
38T>C	I3T	11.1	0	2.1	↑Transport activity
516A>C	E172D	5.3	0	2.1	↓Transport activity
833A	N278del	0	0	0.6	↓Transport activity
SLCO1B1 (OATP1B1)					
217T>C	F73L	2	0	0	↓Transport activity
388A>G	N130D	30	54	74	↓Transport activity
463C>A	P155T	16	0	2	No alteration
521T>C	V174A	14	0.7	2	↓Transport activity
1463G>C	G488A	0		9	↓Transport activity
2000A>G	E667G	2		34	↓Transport activity
SLCO1B3 (OATP1B3)					
334T>G	S112A	74			Unknown
699G>A	M233I	71			Unknown
1564G>T	G522C	1.9			Affect localization and ↓transport activity
SLCO2B1 (OATP2B1)					
1457C>T	S486F	1.2	30.9		↓Transport activity

TABLE 73-5

Most Common, Naturally Occurring Nonsynonymous SNPs in Genes Encoding Human OATP, OCT, and OAT Transporters: Allele Frequency and Functional Effects—cont'd

Allele Variant	Polymorphism/ Substitution	ALLELE FREQUENCY (%)*			Functional Effect†
		Ca	As	Af	
OCT					
SLC22A1 (OCT1)					
41C>T	S14F	0	0	3.1	↓Transport of metformin but ↑transport of MPP
480C>G	G160L	0.65	8.6-13	0.5	No alteration
1022C>T	P341L	0	16	8.2	↓Transport of MPP but not metformin
1201G>A	G401S	1.1	0	0.7	↓Transport activity
1222A>G	M408V	60	74-81	74	No alteration
1256delATG	M420del	18	0	2.9	↓Transport of metformin but not MPP
1393G>A	G465R	4	0	0	↓Transport activity
SLC22A2 (OCT2)					
596C>T	T199I	0	1	0	↓Transport activity
602C>T	T201M	0	1.3-2	0	↓Transport activity
808G>T	A270S	16	14-17	11	↓Transport activity
1198C>T	R400C	0	0	1.5	↓Transport activity
1294A>C	K432Q	0	0	1	↓Transport activity
OAT					
SLC22A6 (OAT1)					
20T>C	L7P	1	<1	1	
149G>A	R50H	1	1	1	↑Transport activity
1361G>A	R454Q	0	0	<1	↓Transport activity
SLC22A7 (OAT2)					
329C>T	T110I	1	1	1	Unknown
571G>A	V192I	1	1	1	Unknown
1520G>A	G507D	1	1	1	Unknown
SLC22A8 (OAT3)					
523A>G	I175V	1	1	1	Unknown
829C>T	R277W				↓Transport activity
SLC22A11 (OAT4)					
37G>A	V13M	1	1	1	Unknown
142C>T	R48Ter	1	1	1	Unknown
185C>G	T62R	1	1	1	Unknown
463G>A	V155M	1	1	1	Unknown
732C>T	A244V	1	1	1	Unknown
832G>A	E278K	1	1	1	Unknown
1015G>A	V339M	1	1	1	Unknown
1175C>T	T392I	1	1	1	Unknown

Af, African; *As,* Asian; *Ca,* Caucasian; *MPP,* 1-methyl-4-phenylpyridinium; *OAT,* organic anion transporter; *OATP,* organic anion transporting polypeptides; *OCT,* organic cation transporter; *SNPs,* single nucleotide polymorphisms; ↑ indicates increased; ↓ indicates decreased.

*Allele frequency data are obtained from Xu G, Bhatnagar V, Wen G, et al: Analyses of coding region polymorphisms in apical and basolateral human organic anion transporter (OAT) genes [OAT1 (NKT), OAT2, OAT3, OAT4, URAT (RST)], *Kidney Int* 68:1491–1499, 2005; Kerb R: Implications of genetic polymorphisms in drug transporters for pharmacotherapy, *Cancer Lett* 234:4–33, 2006; Konig J, Seithel A, Gradhand U, et al: Pharmacogenomics of human OATP transporters, *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol* 372:432–443, 2006; Choi MK, Song IS: Organic cation transporters and their pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic consequences, *Drug Metab Pharmacokinet* 23:243–253, 2008.

†Functional effect data are summarized from Marzolini C, Tirona RG, Kim RB: Pharmacogenomics of the OATP and OAT families, *Pharmacogenomics* 5:273–282, 2004b; Zhou F, You G: Molecular insights into the structure-function relationship of organic anion transporters (OATs), *Pharm Res* 24:28–36, 2007; Choi MK, Song IS: Organic cation transporters and their pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic consequences, *Drug Metab Pharmacokinet* 23:243–253, 2008; Zair ZM, Eloranta JJ, Stieger B, et al: Pharmacogenetics of OATP (SLC21/SLCO), OAT and OCT (SLC22) and PEPT (SLC15) transporters in the intestine, liver and kidney, *Pharmacogenomics* 9:597–624, 2008; Franke RM, Scherkenbach LA, Sparreboom A: Pharmacogenetics of the organic anion transporting polypeptide 1A2, *Pharmacogenomics* 10:339–344, 2009.

decreased in vitro transport activity toward OATP1A2 substrates (see Table 73-5) (for a review, see Franke et al, 2009). However, the impact of these functional SNPs on the pharmacokinetics and clinical outcome of therapeutic drug use remains poorly explored and understood. For OATP1B3 and OATP2B1, there are few data on the clinical relevance of *SLCO1B3* and *SLCO2B1* polymorphisms, although some genetic variations within these two genes have been associated with altered in vitro transport activity of the protein (see Table 73-5) (Nozawa et al, 2002; Letschert et al, 2004).

Organic Cation Transporters (OCTs)

The OCTs belong to the solute carrier SLC22A family that mediate intracellular uptake of a broad range of structurally diverse small organic cations (molecular weight <400). Three isoforms, OCT1, OCT2, and OCT3, with partially overlapping substrate spectrum, are identified in humans (see Table 73-3). OCT1 is primarily expressed in the sinusoidal membrane of hepatocytes; OCT2 is predominantly expressed in the basolateral membrane of kidney proximal tubules; and OCT3 is expressed in many tissues including placenta, heart, liver, and skeletal muscle (see Table 73-3). The expression of OCTs was also detected in cancer cell lines and tumor tissue samples (Hayer-Zillgen et al, 2002; Zhang et al, 2006).

A number of nonsynonymous SNPs have been identified in the *SLC22A1*gene (encoding OCT1) and *SLC22A2* (encoding OCT2) from different ethnic groups, and some of them have demonstrated altered (mostly impaired) transport function in vitro (see Table 73-5) (Choi & Song, 2008). By contrary, several synonymous SNPs have been identified

in the *SLC22A3* gene (encoding OCT3); however, their functional impact remains to be determined. Functional polymorphisms in *OCT* genes could influence the clinical pharmacokinetics and response of substrate drugs, as exemplified by metformin, a drug used as a primary therapy for type 2 diabetes mellitus.

Metformin is not metabolized and is excreted unchanged in the urine. Active tubular secretion in the kidney is the principal route of metformin elimination in humans (Pentikainen et al, 1979). The uptake of metformin from circulation into renal epithelial cells is primarily facilitated by OCT2, which is expressed predominantly at the basolateral membrane in the renal tubules. Renal excretion of metformin from the tubule cell to the lumen is mediated through MATE1 (*SLC47A1*) and MATE2-K *(SLC47A2)*, which are expressed in the apical membrane of the renal proximal tubule cells. OCT1 is also expressed on the apical and subapical domain side of both the proximal and distal tubules in kidney and may play important roles in metformin reabsorption in kidney tubules (Tzvetkov et al, 2009). Studies in humans suggest that genetic variants in OCT1 and OCT2 modulate the renal clearance and pharmacokinetics of metformin. Low-function OCT1 variants R61C, G401S, M420del, and G465R have been associated with significantly higher renal clearance of metformin (Tzvetkov et al, 2009). Genetic variants of *OCT2* [c.596C > T, c.602C> T, and c.808G > T (rs316019)] were associated with an increase in metformin systemic exposure and a decrease in renal clearance, compared with the reference genotype, in healthy Chinese participants (Choi & Song, 2008; Wang et al, 2008). In addition, OCT1, expressed on the basolateral membrane of hepatocytes, plays a key role in mediating the hepatic uptake of metformin. Low-activity OCT1 alleles, including R61C (rs12208357), G401S (rs34130495), 420del (rs142448543 or rs34305973 or rs35191146), and G465R (rs34059508), have been associated with decreased hepatic uptake and, consequently, diminished pharmacodynamic effect of metformin in the liver (i.e., glucose-lowering effect) (Shu et al, 2007; Christensen et al, 2011). However, no validated genetic factors are currently available for the prediction of metformin pharmacokinetics or response. In light of multiple transporters and target proteins involved in the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic pathway of metformin, investigation of gene-gene and gene-environment interactions may provide a better understanding of the interindividual variability in metformin pharmacokinetics and response.

Organic Anion Transporters (OATs)

The OATs belong to the SLC22 family of solute carriers that mediate cellular uptake of a broad range of structurally diverse small hydrophilic organic anions. OAT substrates include many clinically important anionic drugs, such as β-lactam antibiotics, diuretics, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, nucleoside/nucleotide antiviral drugs, and anticancer agents (see Table 73-3). There are at least six OAT members (OAT1-6). OAT1-3 localize to the basolateral membrane of the renal proximal tubule mediating the uptake of drug substrates from blood into the proximal tubule cells, and OAT4 localizes to the apical side of the renal proximal tubule functioning in the secretion of drug substrates into urine. Together, these transporters are responsible for the movement of drug substrates from the blood to the urine. Genetic variations in the genes encoding OATs may modify the renal clearance of substrate drugs. A number of polymorphisms have been reported in the coding region and 5′ regulatory region of the human *SLC22A6* (encoding OAT1), *SLC22A7* (encoding OAT2), *SLC22A8* (encoding OAT3), and *SLC22A11* gene (encoding OAT4) (see Table 73-5). Some of these polymorphisms lead to altered transporter activity in vitro (Xu et al, 2005; Bhatnagar et al, 2006). Notably, the coding region polymorphisms in these genes are rare (~1%), whereas the regulatory region polymorphisms of these genes, particularly *SLC22A8* (OAT3), may be important in accounting for variation in the renal clearance of substrate drugs (Bhatnagar et al, 2006). The functional and clinical relevance of these coding and regulatory region polymorphisms remains especially unexplored and understood.

DRUG TARGET PHARMACOGENOMICS

DNA REPAIR GENES

DNA repair is crucial to an organism's ability to maintain its genome integrity and function. Multiple DNA repair pathways exist to cope with a broad range of different DNA lesions or adducts induced by DNA damaging agents or radiation. Major DNA repair pathways include: direct repair of alkyl adducts by methylguanine methyl transferase, repair of base damage and single-strand breaks by base excision repair, repair of bulky DNA adducts by nucleotide excision repair, repair of double-strand breaks by homologous recombination and nonhomologous end-joining repair, and repair of mismatches and insertion/deletion loops by DNA mismatch repair (Fig. 73-4).

Chemotherapy and radiotherapy are designed to induce DNA damage, thus causing cell cycle arrest and cell death. The efficacy of DNA damage–based cancer therapy can be compromised by DNA repair mechanisms that operate in cancer cells to recognize and rectify DNA damage. On the other hand, DNA repair activity may affect normal tissue tolerance to DNA damaging agents or radiation. Inefficient DNA repair in normal cells would be expected to result in inefficient removal of damaged DNA and thus lead to accumulation of DNA damage within normal tissues and increased normal tissue toxicity.

At least 130 human genes have been identified in DNA repair pathways (Wood et al, 2001). Key genes associated with human DNA repair are listed in Figure 73-4. Among these, apurinic endonuclease 1 (APEX1); x-ray repair cross-complementing group 1 (XRCC1); excision repair cross-complementing enzyme group 1 (ERCC1); excision repair cross-complementing rodent repair group 2 (ERCC2); breast cancer 1, early onset (BRCA1); and x-ray repair cross-complementing protein 3 (XRCC3) are the most widely reported DNA repair genes for which genetic polymorphisms have been associated with the therapeutic response (efficacy or toxicity) to chemotherapy or radiotherapy (Table 73-6) (for a review, see Gossage & Madhusudan, 2007).

Genetic variations within the DNA repair genes may modify the activities of DNA repair pathways within both cancer cells and normal cells, thereby influencing therapeutic resistance and normal tissue tolerance to chemotherapy and radiotherapy (see Table 73-6). Specifically, low-function variants that cause insufficient DNA repair may enhance the cytotoxic effect in cancer cells, but reduce normal cell tolerance. However, data reported on the functional and clinical impact of genetic variants of DNA repair genes are not always consistent and are even contradictory in some instances (for a review, see Gossage & Madhusudan, 2007). The discrepancies could be due to: (1) heterogeneity in study settings (e.g., different tumor types or stages, different treatment regimens, or different patient populations); (2) the presence of other untested SNPs that confound the data interpretation; and (3) small sample size. Large prospective clinical trials are needed to systematically assess the combined impact of multiple polymorphisms involved in several relevant DNA repair pathways on treatment outcome.

THYMIDYLATE SYNTHASE

Thymidylate synthase (TS) catalyzes the conversion of deoxyuridylate (dUMP) and 5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate to deoxythymidine monophosphate (dTMP) and 7,8-dihydrofolate. This reaction is the sole de novo biosynthesis of thymine in DNA. In light of the essential role of TS in DNA synthesis, inhibition of TS by drugs such as 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) and capecitabine (orally bioavailable 5-FU prodrug) represents an efficacious treatment for a variety of human cancers (Danenberg, 1977). 5-FU is the mainstay of therapeutic regimens for treating colorectal cancer and other human malignancies. However, there is a large interindividual variability in the clinical outcome (efficacy and toxicity) of 5-FU–based chemotherapy.

Solid evidence suggests that intratumoral TS expression (either mRNA or protein) is inversely associated with clinical benefit from 5-FU–based chemotherapy regimens (Johnston et al, 1995; Leichman et al, 1997; Aschele et al, 1999; Salonga et al, 2000). In particular, a recent meta-analysis involving 887 patients with metastatic colorectal cancer and 2610 patients with localized colorectal cancer suggests that patients with tumors expressing high levels of TS have poorer overall survival compared with those with tumors expressing low levels of TS (Popat et al, 2004).

TS expression can be modulated by three functionally significant germline polymorphisms in the 5′ and 3′ untranslated regions (5′UTR and 3′UTR) of the *TS* gene. These include a polymorphic tandem repeat of a 28–base pair (bp) sequence that is present in either duplicate (2R) or in triplicate (3R) in the *TS* promoter enhancer region (TSER 2R>3R polymorphism), a SNP (G>C) in the second repeat when three repeats are present (TSER 3R G>C SNP), and a 6-bp deletion in the 3′UTR of the *TS* gene (*TS* 1494del6bp) (Fig. 73-5). The 28-bp TSER tandem repeats contain elements that bind upstream stimulating factor and therefore act to enhance transcriptional activity of the *TS* gene. It has been shown that patients with metastatic colorectal cancer homozygous for the triple repeat (TSER 3R/3R) exhibit significantly higher intratumoral *TS* gene expression (Kawakami et al, 1999; Pullarkat et al, 2001). On the contrary, the presence of a G>C SNP within the second repeat of the 3R allele leads to decreased transcriptional activity by abolishing the binding of upstream stimulating factor within the repeat (Mandola et al, 2003). The 6-bp

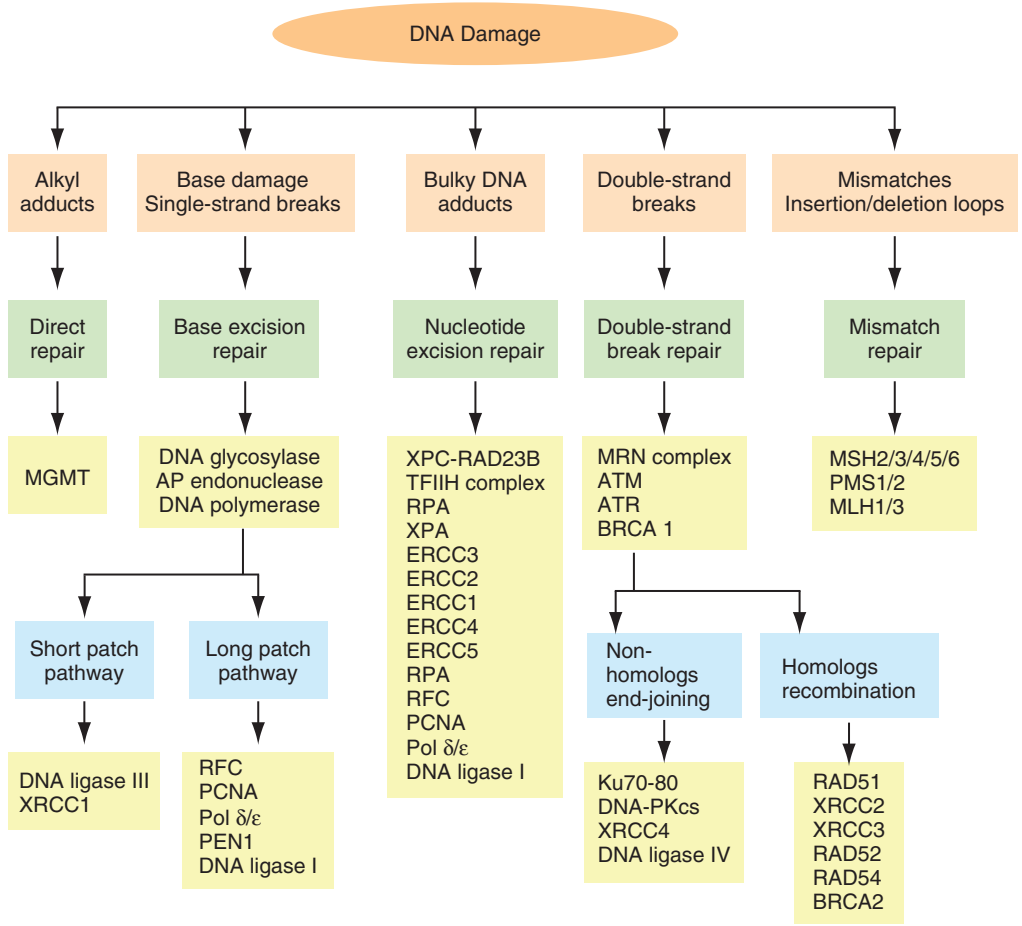


Figure 73-4 **Key players in mammalian DNA repair pathway.** *AP,* Apurinic/apyrimidinic; *ATM,* ataxia telangiectasia mutated; *ATR,* ataxia telangiectasia and RAD3 related; *BRCA1/2,* breast cancer 1 and 2, early-onset gene; *DNA-PKcs,* DNA-dependent protein kinase catalytic subunit; *ERCC1/2/3/4/5,* excision repair cross-complementing group genes; *FEN1,* flap structure-specific endonuclease 1; *Ku70-80,* Ku antigen, 70 and 80 KDa subunits (XRCC6 and XRCC5); *MSH2/3/4/5/6,* mutS homolog genes; *PCNA,* proliferating cell nuclear antigen; *PMS1/2,* postmeiotic segregation increased 1 and 2; *Pol δ/ε,* DNA polymerase delta/epsilon; *RAD23B/51/52/54,* homologs of *S. cerevisiae* RAD (recombination protein) genes; *RFC,* replication factor C; *RPA,* replication protein A; *TFIIH,* transcription factor IIH; *XPA,* xeroderma pigmentosum complementation group A gene; *XRCC1/2/3/4,* X-ray repair, cross-complementing genes. (Modified from Gossage L, Madhusudan S: Cancer pharmacogenomics: role of DNA repair genetic polymorphisms in individualizing cancer therapy, *Mol Diagn Ther* 11:361–380, 2007.)

deletion in the 3′UTR of the *TS* gene is linked to decreased TS mRNA stability and a lower intratumoral TS mRNA level in patients (Mandola et al, 2004). Of note, the allele frequencies of these polymorphisms vary among different ethnic populations (Table 73-7).

Genetic polymorphisms of the *TS* gene are not only the prognostic factor for disease-free survival and overall survival, but also the predictor of clinical benefit from 5-FU–based chemotherapy (for a review, see Lurje et al, 2009). In spite of inconsistent findings from heterogeneous studies, most studies have consistently agreed that colorectal cancer patients carrying high-expression *TS* alleles (i.e., TSER-2R/3G, –3C/3G, –3G/3G, 3′-UTR +6bp/+6bp) generally have a poorer prognosis and worse clinical outcome to 5-FU–based chemotherapy, as compared with those carrying low-expression *TS* alleles (i.e., TSER-2R/2R, –2R/3C, –3C/3C, 3′-UTR +6bp/-6bp, -6bp/-bp) (for a review, see Lurje et al, 2009).

EPIDERMAL GROWTH FACTOR RECEPTOR

EGFR activation plays a key role in cell proliferation and tumor growth, with effects on tumor cell motility, adhesion, invasion, survival, and angiogenesis (Woodburn, 1999; Raymond et al, 2000). EGFR is a transmembrane cell surface receptor tyrosine kinase that is found in the majority of epithelial tissues. Upon binding of the extracellular ligand (e.g., epidermal growth factor or transforming growth factor-α), the EGFR dimerizes, either homodimerizing with another EGFR or heterodimerizing with other members of the human EGFR family, leading to the activation of cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase (TK) activity (see Figures 75-1 and 75-2). The activation of receptor TK leads to the autophosphorylation of the intracellular domain of EGFR, resulting in the activation of downstream signaling pathways (e.g., Ras/mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway and the PI3K/Akt pathway and Janus-activated kinase signal transducers and activator of transcription) that are involved in tumor growth and metastasis. Receptor dimerization and signal transduction pathways are discussed further in Chapter 75. The reversible EGFR TK inhibitors, such as gefitinib and erlotinib, target the adenosine-5′-triphosphate (ATP) cleft within the EGFR-TK to prevent autophosphorylation of the receptor, thus inhibiting tumor growth and metastasis (Anderson et al, 2001; Ciardiello et al, 2001). Treatment with gefitinib or erlotinib results in dramatic clinical response in approximately 10% to 30% of patients with non–small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC) depending on ethnic origin, sex, and smoking history (Fukuoka et al, 2003; Kris et al, 2003; Shepherd et al, 2005; Thatcher et al, 2005). It is clear that specific types of somatic mutations of the *EGFR* gene confer sensitivity or resistance to EGFR TK inhibitors (for reviews, see Kumar et al, 2008; Gazdar, 2009).

Somatic *EGFR*–activating mutations are found in the first four exons (18 to 21) of the TK domain (Fig. 73-6) (Lynch et al, 2004; Paez et al, 2004; Pao et al, 2004). These mutations fall into three broad classes. Class I mutations are in-frame deletions in exon 19 that almost always include amino acid residues leucine-747 to glutamic acid-749 (ΔLRE) and account for approximately 44% of all EGFR TK–activating mutations. Class II mutations are single nucleotide substitutions that cause an amino acid alteration. The most prevalent single-point mutation is L858R (an arginine changed to leucine at codon 858) in exon 21, accounting for about 41% of all EGFR TK–activating mutations; other class II mutations include G719 (a glycine changed to serine, alanine, or cysteine) in exon

TABLE 73-6

Most Widely Reported DNA Repair Gene Polymorphisms That Have Demonstrated Associations with the Response (Efficacy and Toxicity) to Chemotherapy or Radiotherapy

DNA Repair Pathway/Gene	Gene Functions	SNP(s)	Association with Efficacy	Association with Toxicity
Base Excision Repair (BER)				
Apurinic endonuclease 1 *(APEX1)*	APEX1 is a critical protein involved in BER that hydrolyzes the phosphodiester backbone immediately 5′ to an apurinic/apyrimidinic (AP) site following removal of the damage base by a DNA glycosylase.	Asp148Glu (most common SNP of APEX1)	↓Overall survival for 148Glu/Glu homozygotes in pancreatic cancer (Cx/RT/Both) (Li et al, 2007a)	↓Risk for acute skin reactions for 148Glu allele in normal-weight breast cancer patients (adjuvant RT) (Chang-Claude et al, 2005)
X-ray repair cross-complementing group 1 *(XRCC1)*	XRCC1 interacts with DNA ligase III, polymerase beta, and poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase, and seals the remaining nick in DNA after DNA Pol β performs its one-nucleotide gap-filling reaction. XRCC1 is involved in the efficient repair of DNA single-strand breaks.	Arg194Trp	↑Response rate for 194Trp variants in advanced NSCLC (platinum Cx) (Wang et al, 2004) ↑Survival for 194Trp/Trp homozygotes in pancreatic cancer (Cx/RT/Both) (Li et al, 2007a)	↑Risk for hematologic toxicity for 194Arg/Arg homozygotes in NSCLC (gemcitabine and docetaxel Cx) (Petty et al, 2007) ↑Risk for early/late adverse reaction for 194Trp allele in breast cancer (adjuvant RT) (Moullan et al, 2003) ↓Risk for late reactions for 194Trp allele in cervical or endometrial cancer (RT) (De Ruyck et al, 2005)
		Arg399Gln	↑Response rate and ↑survival for 399Arg/Arg homozygotes in mCRC (FOLFOX), advanced NSCLC (platinum Cx), and esophageal (platinum Cx, RT, and surgery) (Stoehlmacher et al, 2001; Gurubhagavatula et al, 2004; Wu et al, 2006) ↓Breast cancer–free survival and progression-free survival for Gln399 variant allele in metastatic breast cancer (high-dose Cx and stem-cell transplantation) (Bewick et al, 2006)	↓Risk for acute skin reactions for 399Glu allele in normal-weight breast cancer patients (adjuvant RT) (Chang-Claude et al, 2005) ↑Risk for late skin toxicity for 399Arg/Arg homozygotes in breast cancer (adjuvant RT) (Andreassen et al, 2003)
Nucleotide Excision Repair *(NER)*				
Excision repair cross-complementing rodent repair group 2 *(ERCC2)*	ERCC2 is an ATP-dependent 5′-3′ DNA helicase, and a component of the core-TFIIH basal transcription factor. It is involved in NER by opening DNA in the 5′ to 3′ direction around the damage.	Asp312Asn	↓Survival for 312Asn variant allele in advanced NSCLC (platinum) (Gurubhagavatula et al, 2004) No association with response in advanced NSCLC (platinum) (Camps et al, 2003)	
		Lys751Gln	751Lys/Lys homozygotes more likely to relapse in stage 3 and 4 gastric cancer (surgery and chemoradiation) (Zarate et al, 2006) ↑Response rate and median survival for 751Lys/Lys homozygotes in mCRC (FOLFOX) (Park et al, 2001) ↑Disease-free and 1-year survival for 751Lys/Lys homozygotes in AML (Cx) (Allan et al, 2004) No association with response in advanced NSCLC (platinum Cx) (de las Penas et al, 2006)	ERCC2 genotype/haplotype associated with GI, GU, and liver toxicities in AML (daunorubicin and cytosine arabinoside Cx) (Kuptsova et al, 2007) ↓Risk for neutropenia for 751Gln/Gln homozygotes in NSCLC (gemcitabine and docetaxel Cx) (Petty et al, 2007)
Excision repair cross-complementing enzyme group 1 *(ERCC1)*	ERCC1 is a two-domained, noncatalytic protein that associates with ERCC4 (XPF) endonuclease to form an ERCC1-XPF heterodimer, whose role is to cleave DNA 5′ to the lesion. ERCC1-XPF is the last factor to join the mammalian NER incision complex and is also known to be involved in recombinational DNA repair and in the repair of interstrand cross-links.	19007T>C	↑Response rate or ↑survival for 19007C/C homozygotes for advanced NSCLC (platinum or cisplatin/docetaxel Cx) and mCRC (FOLFOX) (Isla et al, 2004; Ryu et al, 2004; Park et al, 2003) ↑Prognosis for 19007T/T homozygotes for CRC (adjuvant FU based) (Moreno et al, 2006) ↓Risk for platinum resistance in 19007T/C and T/T genotypes for ovarian cancer (Kang et al, 2006)	
		8092C>A	↑Survival in 8092C/C homozygotes for NSCLC (platinum Cx) (Zhou et al, 2004)	↑Risk for GI toxicity for 8092A allele in NSCLC (platinum Cx) (Suk et al, 2005) ↓Risk for metabolic toxicity for 8092C/A heterozygotes and ↓risk for lung toxicity for 8092A/A homozygotes in AML (daunorubicin and cytosine arabinoside Cx) (Kuptsova et al, 2007)

TABLE 73-6

Most Widely Reported DNA Repair Gene Polymorphisms That Have Demonstrated Associations with the Response (Efficacy and Toxicity) to Chemotherapy or Radiotherapy—cont'd

DNA Repair Pathway/Gene	Gene Functions	SNP(s)	Association with Efficacy	Association with Toxicity
Double-Strand Break (DSB) Repair				
Breast cancer 1, early onset *(BRCA1)*	BRCA1 is a nuclear phosphoprotein that plays a role in maintaining genomic stability, and it also acts as a tumor suppressor. BRCA1 is associated with other tumor suppressors, DNA damage sensors, and signal transducers to form a large multi-subunit protein complex known as the *BRCA1-associated genome surveillance complex (BASC).* It plays a role in transcription, DNA repair of double-stranded breaks, and recombination.	BRCA1 mutations	↑Clinical and pathologic complete response for BRCA1 mutation in breast cancer (anthracycline-based Cx) (Chappuis et al, 2002) ↑Response rate for BRCA heterozygotes in ovarian cancer (platinum-based Cx) (Cass et al, 2003)	
X-ray repair cross-complementing protein 3 *(XRCC3)*	XRCC3 participates in homologous recombination to maintain chromosome stability and repair DNA damage. It is involved in DSB repair, and functionally complements Chinese hamster irs1SF, a repair-deficient mutant that exhibits hypersensitivity to a number of different DNA-damaging agents.	Thr241Met	↑Time to treatment failure for 241Met variant genotype in multiple myeloma (autologous bone marrow transplantation) (Vangsted et al, 2007) ↑Survival for 241Met/Met homozygotes in advanced NSCLC (platinum Cx) (de las Penas et al, 2006) ↓Survival for 241Met variant genotype in breast cancer (high-dose Cx and stem-cell transplantation) (Bewick et al, 2006) No association in advanced gastric cancer (platinum Cx) (Ruzzo et al, 2006)	↓Risk for 214Met variant in AML (daunorubicin and cytosine arabinoside Cx) (Kuptsova et al, 2007) ↑Risk for late skin toxicity for 241Thr/Thr homozygotes in breast cancer (adjuvant RT) (Andreassen et al, 2003)

Af, African; *AML,* acute myeloid leukemia; *As,* Asian; *Ca,* Caucasian; *CRC,* colorectal cancer; *Cx,* chemotherapy; *FOLFOX,* fluorouracil/oxaliplatin chemotherapy; *FU,* fluorouracil; *GI,* gastrointestinal; *GU,* genitourinary; *mCRC,* metastatic colorectal cancer; *NSCLC,* non–small-cell lung cancer; *RT,* radiotherapy; *SNPs,* single nucleotide polymorphisms; ↑ indicates increased; ↓ indicates decreased.

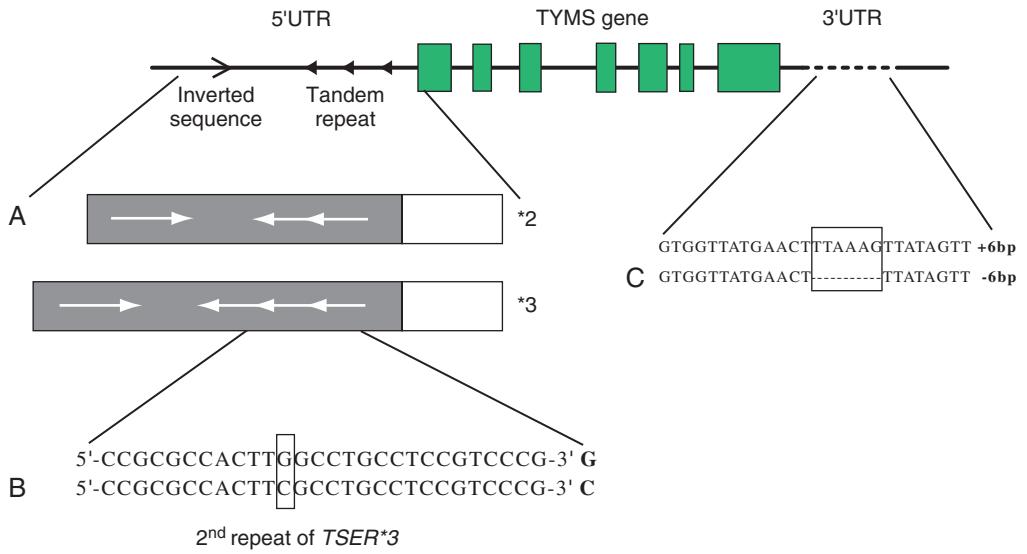


Figure 73-5 Three functional genetic polymorphisms in the 5′ and 3′ untranslated regions (5′UTR and 3′UTR) of the thymidylate synthase *(TS)* gene, including the following: **A,** a polymorphic tandem repeat of a 28-bp sequence that is present in either duplicate (2R) or in triplicate (3R) in the TS promoter enhancer region (TSER 2R>3R polymorphism); **B,** a G to C SNP within the second repeat when three repeats are present (TSER 3R G>C SNP); **C,** a 6-bp deletion in the 3′UTR of the *TS* gene (TS 1494del6bp). (Adapted from Marsh S: Thymidylate synthase pharmacogenetics, *Invest New Drugs* 23:533–537, 2005.)

TABLE 73-7
Functional Polymorphisms of the Thymidylate Synthase (TS) Gene

Polymorphism	ALLELE FREQUENCY* Ca	As	Af	Functional Effect*
TSER 2R>3R repeat	52-69	62-82	52	↑TS mRNA for 3R allele
TSER 3R G>C SNP	56	37	28	↓Transcriptional activity of TS for C allele
TS 1494del6b	27-29			↓Stability of TS mRNA for –6bp deletion

Af, African; *As,* Asian; *Ca,* Caucasian; *mRNA,* messenger ribonucleic acid; *TSER,* TS promoter enhancer region; ↑ indicates increased; ↓ indicates decreased.
*Summarized from Marsh S: Thymidylate synthase pharmacogenetics, *Invest New Drugs* 23:533–537, 2005; Lurje G, Manegold PC, Ning Y, et al: Thymidylate synthase gene variations: predictive and prognostic markers, *Mol Cancer Ther* 8:1000–1007, 2009.

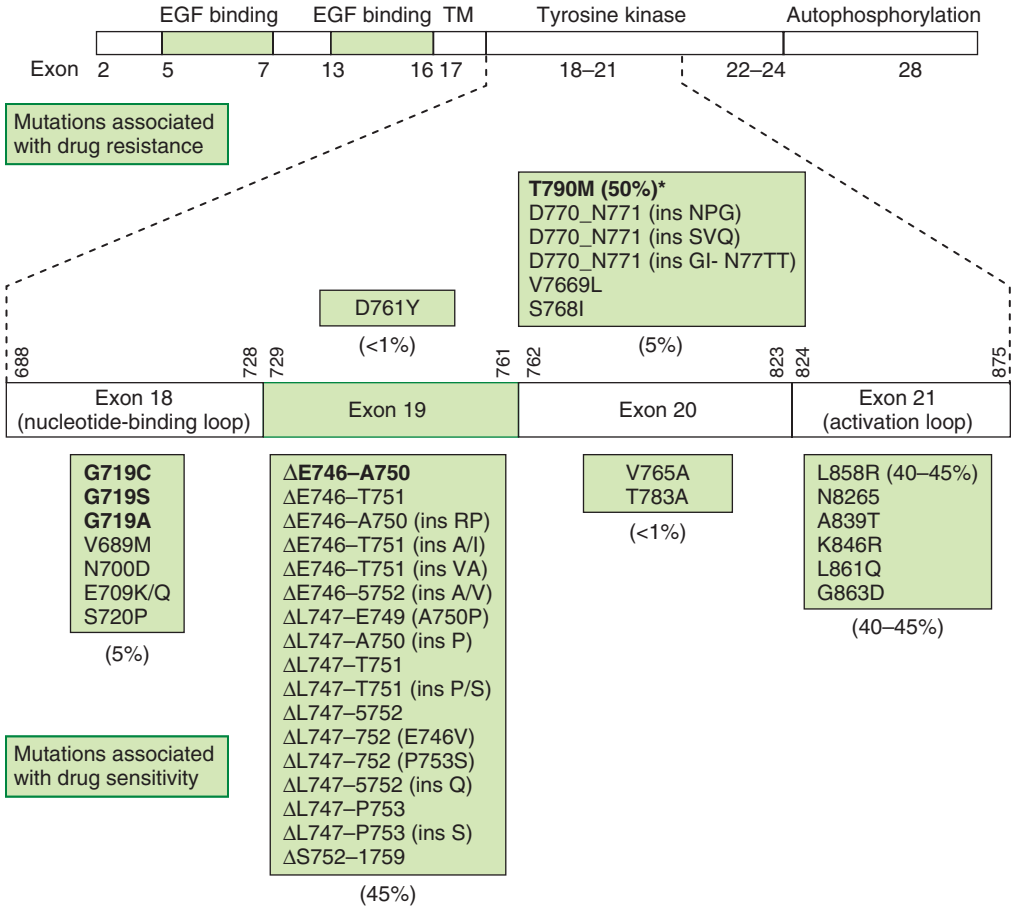


Figure 73-6 Schematic presentation of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) tyrosine kinase (TK) domain mutations as important determinants of sensitivity or resistance to EGFR TK inhibitors. The most prevalent activating EGFR kinase domain mutations in non–small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC) include in-frame deletions in exon 19 (accounting for 45% of EGFR mutations), an L858R substitution in exon 21 (accounting for 40% to 45% of EGFR mutations), nucleotide substitutions in exon 18 (e.g., G719C or G719S) (5%), and in-frame insertions in exon 20 (<1%). The most noteworthy clinically relevant mutations associated with resistance to EGFR TK inhibitors include T790M in exon 20, and D761Y, a T790M-like secondary mutation in exon 19. The main mutations in each class are shown in bold type. (Adapted from Sharma SV, Bell DW, Settleman J, et al: Epidermal growth factor receptor mutations in lung cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 7:169–181, 2007.)

18 (4% of all EGFR TK–activating mutations) and other missense mutations. Class III mutations are in-frame duplications and/or insertions in exon 20, accounting for about 5% of EGFR TK–activating mutations. Overall, the frequency of EGFR TK–activating mutations is 5% to 20%, depending on the population studied. EGFR TK–activating mutations are significantly more common in East Asians, women, never smokers, and patients with adenocarcinoma (Janne & Johnson, 2006). This mirrors the clinically defined subsets of patients who were most likely to respond to EGFR TK inhibitors. The NSCLC patients whose tumors present with EGFR TK–activating mutations show better overall response, longer progression-free survival, and overall survival after chronic gefitinib or erlotinib treatment, as compared to those without these activating mutations (Gazdar, 2009).

It is noted that acquired resistance occurs in virtually all NSCLC tumors that initially respond to EGFR TK inhibitors. The emergence of acquired resistance is conferred by a second point mutation in the TK domain. The most noteworthy, clinically relevant mutation in exon 20 is T790M, which is detected in 50% of cases as a second site mutation associated with acquired gefitinib and erlotinib resistance (Sharma et al, 2007). It is proposed that the T790M mutation affects the gatekeeper residue in the catalytic domain of the TK that weakens the interaction of the inhibitor with its target (Blencke et al, 2004). In addition, D761Y, a T790M-like secondary mutation in exon 19 of EGFR (at the border of exon 19 and exon 20), was also reported to be associated with resistance to gefitinib and erlotinib in NSCLC cells that contain the L858R-EGFR mutation (Balak et al, 2006).

In summary, somatic mutations in the EGFR kinase domain are important determinants of sensitivity and resistance to EGFR TK inhibitors. EGFR mutation testing is commercially available, and current research is directed at introducing a genetic assessment of the EGFR mutational status into routine clinical practice for personalized therapy of NSCLC patients.

HUMAN LEUKOCYTE ANTIGEN PHARMACOGENOMICS

The human leukocyte antigen (HLA) system is the locus of genes that reside on chromosome 6 and encode cell-surface antigen-presenting proteins responsible for regulation of the immune system in humans. The HLA genes belong to the family of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) genes. The physiologic role of HLA is to present an antigen to the T cell receptor, thereby initiating the T cell–mediated immune response (Rudolph et al, 2006). MHC class I molecules (HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-C) are responsible for presenting peptides/antigens from inside the cell to killer T cells (also called *CD8-positive* or *cytotoxic T cells*). MHC class II molecules (HLA-DP, HLA-DQ, and HLA-DR) present antigens from outside of the cell to T-helper cells (referred to as *CD4-positive T cells*).

The HLA system has been a major focus for Type B adverse drug reactions (ADRs), which accounts for ~15% of ADRs and are referred to as unpredictable, dose-independent, idiosyncratic, drug-induced hypersensitivity reactions. Type B reactions could be severe cutaneous adverse reactions including Stevens-Johnson syndrome (SJS) and toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN), drug-induced hypersensitivity syndrome (referred to as *drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms*), or single-organ drug hypersensitivity syndrome (e.g., drug-induced liver injury, pancreatitis, and tubulointerstitial nephritis). Solid evidence indicates that drug-induced hypersensitivity reactions are mediated by adaptive immunity, which involves HLA-restricted drug presentation, activation, and clonal expansion of T cells.

Several models have been proposed to explain how small molecular synthetic compounds trigger T cell activation, thus eliciting drug-induced hypersensitivity reactions. These include the *hapten model*, *p-i model* (direct pharmacologic interaction of a drug with immune receptors), and *altered repertoire model* (Pavlos et al, 2012). According to the hapten model, small molecular, chemically reactive drugs or metabolites act as haptens that covalently bind to endogenous proteins, which then undergo cellular processing to produce haptenated peptides (novel MHC ligands). These peptides are then presented on HLA molecules and subsequently activate antigen-specific T cells. Reexposure of sensitized individuals will result in proliferation of memory T cells and an inflammatory response within 24 to 72 hours. A representative example is penicillin derivatives that bind covalently to the lysine residue of serum albumin, eliciting penicillin allergy (Padovan et al, 1997). On the contrary, the p-i model proposed that small molecular drugs are capable of activating T cell immune response by direct binding to the T cell receptor or via the formation of HLA-drug complexes without the requirement for a specific peptide ligand. This model is exemplified by carbamazepine that interacts directly with HLA-B*15:02 to elicit cytotoxic T cell activation without formation of drug-modified peptide (Wei et al, 2012). The altered repertoire model proposes that steric complementarity and noncovalent interactions between the drug molecule and the HLA antigen-binding cleft, which modify the shape and chemistry of the antigen-binding cleft, lead to an altered repertoire of self-peptide presented to T cells thus resulting in an immune response to an alloreactive T cell response. Recent evidence suggests that the altered repertoire model is a mechanism underlying abacavir-induced hypersensitivity syndrome (Illing et al, 2012; Norcross et al, 2012; Ostrov et al, 2012), and it is also one important mechanism involved in the pathogenesis of carbamazepine-induced severe cutaneous adverse reactions (Ko et al, 2011; Illing et al, 2012; Wei et al, 2012).

In the past decade, both candidate gene and genome-wide association (GWA) studies on drug-induced hypersensitivity reactions have provided strong evidence for the link of particular HLA genetic alleles to susceptibility. To date, the best characterized HLA-associated drug-induced hypersensitivity reactions are for abacavir, carbamazepine, nevirapine, and allopurinol.

Abacavir, a potent nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor, is widely used for the treatment of HIV-1 infection. Abacavir hypersensitivity syndrome, which is characterized by skin rash, fever, gastrointestinal symptoms, and internal organ involvement, occurs in appropriately 5% to 8% of patients who begin therapy with the drug (Cutrell et al, 2004). Though it may be relatively mild initially and alleviated by withdrawal of the drug, a subsequent rechallenging can result in more severe symptoms, which are potentially fatal (Shapiro et al, 2001). In 2002, two groups independently reported a strong association between a HLA Class I allele, *HLA-B*57:01*, and abacavir hypersensitivity syndrome in Australian and British populations (Hetherington et al, 2002; Mallal et al, 2002). Notably, abacavir hypersensitivity occurs at a high frequency in Caucasians and at a low frequency in Asian and African-American populations. This is consistent with the highest prevalence of *HLA-B*57:01* in Caucasians (5% to 8%) compared to Asians and African Americans (2.4%) (Cao et al, 2001). The association between *HLA-B*57:01* and abacavir hypersensitivity was further confirmed in a randomized, double-blind controlled study enrolling ~2000 patients, which demonstrated the 100% negative-predictive value of *HLA-B*57:01* for abacavir hypersensitivity syndrome (Mallal et al, 2008). These studies provided strong evidence for the clinical utility of a *HLA-B*57:01* screening test to prevent abacavir hypersensitivity syndrome. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) guidelines now recommend *HLA-B*57:01* genetic screening prior to initiation of abacavir treatment. The screening significantly reduces the incidence of abacavir hypersensitivity syndrome and is cost-effective (Hughes et al, 2004; Mallal et al, 2008; Schackman et al, 2008).

Carbamezepine (CBZ), an aromatic amine anticonvulsant, is used for the treatment of epilepsy and other seizure disorders. CBZ-related drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms (DRESS), which usually occurs 2 to 8 weeks after the initiation of the drug, presents as fever, rash, internal organ involvement, and lymphadenopathy. In addition, approximately 10% of patients develop mild-to-moderate cutaneous adverse drug reactions without internal organ involvement or fever, which is referred to as *maculopapular eruption*. CBZ-induced severe cutaneous adverse reactions (i.e., SJS and TEN) occur with an incidence rate of ~0.2/10,000 in the United States and ~5.9/10,000 in Taiwan (China). Several HLA alleles have been associated with CBZ hypersensitivity in distinct ethnic groups, with the two most frequently observed being *HLA-B*15:02* and *HLA-B*31:01*. *HLA-B*15:02* is strongly associated with CBZ-induced SJS/TEN in Chinese and other Southeast Asian populations (including Thai, Malaysian, Indian, Vietnamese, and Cambodian) (Chung et al, 2004; Mehta et al, 2009; Tassaneeyakul et al, 2010; Then et al, 2011; Kulkantrakorn et al, 2012). However, the *HLA-B*15:02* allele has not been observed in cases of CBZ-induced SJS/TEN in Japanese and Korean populations or non-Asian descendants in Europe or North America (Lonjou et al, 2006). This could be explained by the extremely low frequency of the *HLA-B*15:02* allele in Europeans or Northeast Asians (e.g., Japanese and Korean). Based on the strong evidence for the association of *HLA-B*15:02* with CBZ-induced SJS/TEN, the U.S. FDA recommends genetic screening of *HLA-B*15:02* prior to initiating CBZ in patients with Asian ancestry, particularly for those of Southeast Asian ancestry. In contrast to the *HLA-B*15:02* allele, the *HLA-B*31:01* allele is presented at a relatively high prevalence in different ethnic populations, specifically, 7% in Chinese, 7% to 12% in Japanese, 5% in Koreans, and 2% to 5% in Europeans. The *HLA-B*31:01* allele has been identified as the important genetic determinant for all types of CBZ-induced hypersensitivity reactions including drug-induced hypersensitivity syndrome, maculopapular eruption, and SJS/TEN across different ethnic populations (e.g., Chinese, Japanese, Koreans, and Europeans) (Hung et al, 2006; Kim et al, 2011; McCormack et al, 2011; Ozeki et al, 2011; Genin et al, 2014).

Allopurinol, a xanthine oxidase inhibitor, has been used for decades to lower serum urate levels in patients with gout. Allopurinol-induced SJS/TEN occurs in 0.1% to 0.4% of patients receiving the drug (Hetherington et al, 2002). A strong association between the *HLA-B*58:01* allele and allopurinol-induced SJS/TEN was first identified in the Chinese population (Chan and Tan, 1989; Hung et al, 2005). This association was later confirmed in other Asian ethnic groups including Japanese, Thai, and Koreans (Dainichi et al, 2007; Kaniwa et al, 2008; Tassaneeyakul et al, 2009; Kang et al, 2011). A recent meta-analysis of association between *HLA-B*58:01* and allopurinol-induced SJS/TEN from all studies suggests that allopurinol-induced SJS/TEN is significantly associated with *HLA-B*58:01* in studies including Asian and non-Asian populations and subgroup analysis for Asian and non-Asian populations (Somkrua et al, 2011). Notably, the association between *HLA-B*58:01* and allopurinol-induced SJS/TEN is weaker in Caucasians than in Asians, which could be explained by the lower allele frequency of *HLA-B*58:01* in Caucasians (<6%) as compared to Asians (~15%) as well as other yet unknown risk factors in this population. In addition to SJS/TEN, allopurinol also causes a mild cutaneous adverse reaction, maculopapular eruption, with an incidence rate of 2% to 3% (Hetherington et al, 2002). A strong association between *HLA-B*58:01* and allopurinol-induced maculopapular eruption has been found in the Chinese population (Cao et al, 2012). Based on the

strong association of the *HLA-B*58:01* allele with allopurinol hypersensitivity reactions, the American College of Rheumatology's new guidelines on gout recommend genetic testing for *HLA-B*58:01* before initiating allopurinol treatment, especially in patients with Asian ancestry (Khanna et al, 2012).

Nevirapine (NVP) is a non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor that is used in combination with other drugs for the treatment of HIV infection. NVP-related hypersensitivity reactions, characterized by a combination of rash, fever, and/or hepatitis, occur in ~5% of patients initiating NVP treatment within the first 6 weeks and become more severe with NVP rechallenge (Pollard et al, 1998; Gangar et al, 2000). NVP hypersensitivity reactions have been associated with different class I and class II HLA alleles across different populations. Associations appear to be population- and phenotype-specific. The class II *HLA-DRB1*01:01* allele has been associated with NVP-induced hepatic and cutaneous reaction in Caucasian populations (Martin et al, 2005; Vitezica et al, 2008; Yuan et al, 2011). The class I *HLA-B*35:05* and *HLA-Cw*04* alleles have been associated with NVP-induced cutaneous reactions in African-American and Chinese populations, and these alleles are also associated with NVP-induced rash in Thai populations (Chantarangsu et al, 2009; Likanonsakul et al, 2009; Yuan et al, 2011; Gao et al, 2012). The *HLA-Cw8-HLA-DRB1:01:01* haplotype has been linked to NVP hypersensitivity reactions in Sardinians (Littera et al, 2006), and the *HLA-Cw8* association has also been noted in the Japanese (Gatanaga et al, 2007). In addition to HLA alleles involved in the immune response to NVP, genes outside of the MHC have been identified as additional risk factors for NVP-induced hypersensitivity reactions. For example, in African Americans, the risk for cutaneous reactions was found to be highest for individuals carrying both *HLA-Cw*04* and *CYP2B6 516TT* alleles (Yuan et al, 2011). CYP2B6 is a main isozyme responsible for the metabolism of NVP. The *CYP2B6 516TT* allele is associated with decreased CYP2B6 expression and activity and thus results in higher NVP systemic concentrations (Mahungu et al, 2009). Therefore, genes involved in immunologic and metabolic pathways, and their varying allele frequencies in different ethnic populations, will all have an impact on the susceptibility to NVP-induced hypersensitivity reactions in a phenotype- and population-specific manner.

In summary, considerable progress has been made in understanding the HLA genotype as a genetic risk factor for immunologically mediated, idiosyncratic adverse drug reactions. Clinical translation of HLA genotyping into routine care to prevent a specific drug-related hypersensitivity has occurred in the cases of *HLA-B*57:01* and abacavir hypersensitivity as well as *HLA-B*15:02* and carbamazepine hypersensitivity.

PHARMACOGENOMICS IN CANCER CHEMOTHERAPY

5-FLUOROURACIL

Since its introduction more than 50 years ago (Heidelberger et al, 1957), 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) has remained the most frequently prescribed anticancer drug for the treatment of malignancies of the gastrointestinal tract including colorectal and gastric cancer. 5-FU, a fluoropyrimidine analogue, is a prodrug that undergoes multiple metabolic pathways that lead to activation and pharmacodynamic actions of the drug or detoxification and elimination of the drug (Fig. 73-7).

The main mechanism of 5-FU activation is conversion to fluorodeoxyuridine monophosphate (FdUMP) which inhibits the enzyme thymidylate synthase (TS), an important part of the folate-homocysteine cycle and purine and pyrimidine synthesis. The conversion of 5-FU to FdUMP can occur via three pathways: oratate phosphoribosyltransferase (OPRT) (pathway 1), uridine phosphorylase (pathway 2), and thymidine phosphorylase (TP) (pathway 3) (see Fig. 73-7) (Omura, 2003). Enzyme expression or activity in these pathways could influence activation and pharmacodynamic actions of 5-FU. High expression of OPRT (at mRNA or protein level) has been associated with better clinical response to 5-FU–based chemotherapy in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (Ichikawa et al, 2003). In addition, genetic polymorphisms in the *OPRT* gene could modify OPRT enzyme activity and, consequently, impact the clinical outcome. For example, copresence of the *OPRT* Gly213Ala variant and *TS* 2R/2R genotype has been related to a higher incidence of grade 3/4 5-FU–induced neutropenia and diarrhea (Ichikawa et al, 2006).

On the other hand, the rate-limiting step of 5-FU catabolism and detoxification is dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase (DPD) conversion of 5-FU to dihydrofluorouracil (FUH_2) that is then converted to fluoro-beta-alanine (FBAL) by dihydropyrimidinase (DHP) (see Fig. 73-7). Deficiency in enzymes in this pathway can result in severe and even fatal 5-FU toxicity. DPD expression has been linked to the tolerance and response to 5-FU–based chemotherapy. Specifically, low expression or absence of DPD leads to the accumulation of 5-FU and, consequently, increased risk for severe toxicities, whereas high expression or activity of DPD is associated with poor response to 5-FU (Salonga et al, 2000; Soong et al, 2008). Approximately 3% to 5% of patients are partially or completely deficient in DPD enzyme activity (Lu et al, 1993). These patients are likely to experience severe to lethal toxicities when receiving 5-FU–based chemotherapy.

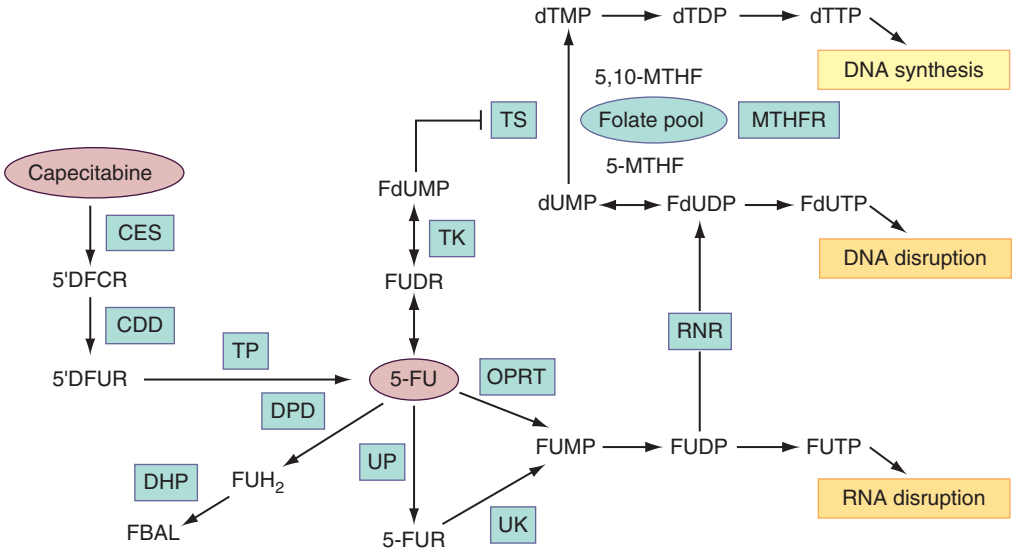


Figure 73-7 Schematic illustration of pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic pathways that affect 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) efficacy. Genetic polymorphisms within the genes that are involved in 5-FU metabolic activation (e.g., *OPRT*), detoxification (e.g., *DPD*), and target interaction (e.g., *TS*) are important determinants of the efficacy and safety of 5-FU treatment. *5'DFCR,* 5'deoxy-5-fluorocytidine; *5'DFUR,* 3'deoxy-5-fluorouridine; *5-FUR,* 5-fluorouridine; *CDD,* cytosine deaminase; *CES,* carboxylesterase; *DHP,* dihydropyrimidinase; *DPD,* dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase; *FBAL,* fluoro-b-alanine; *FUH2,* dihydro-5-fluorouracil; *MTHFR,* methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase; *OPRT,* orotate phosphoribosyltransferase; *RNR,* ribonucleotide reductase; *TK,* thymidine kinase; *TP,* thymidine phosphorylase; *TS,* thymidylate synthase; *UK,* uridine-cytidine kinase 2; *UP,* uridine phosphorylase 1. (Adapted from Walther A, Johnstone E, Swanton C, et al: Genetic prognostic and predictive markers in colorectal cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 9:489–499, 2009.)

Genetic aberrations in the *DPD* gene, including exon skipping, deletion, and missense mutation, can result in a DPD-deficiency phenotype. Several variants in *DPD* have been associated with toxicity, including IVS14 + 1G>A, 2846A>T, 1679T>G, and 85T>C (Morel et al, 2006). In particular, the exon 14–skipping mutation IVS14 + 1G>A, a G-to-A point mutation within the 5′-splicing site of intron 14, results in a mutant DPD that lacks amino acids 581 to 635 and, consequently, loses catalytic activity. The allele frequency of this mutation was 0.91% in a Dutch Caucasian population (Vreken et al, 1996). Patients heterozygous for the IVS14 + 1G>A allele have ~50% of the normal activity of DPD and are likely to experience severe 5-FU–induced toxicities, while patients homozygous for this mutated allele are completely deficient for DPD activity and may experience life-threatening or fatal 5-FU toxicities (Wei et al, 1996; Van Kuilenburg et al, 1997). In addition, variants in *DHP* have also been shown to influence 5-FU toxicity. A rare variant, *DHP* 833G>A (Gly278Asp) in exon 5, was shown to be the determining variant of severe toxicity in a Dutch patient receiving 5-FU (van Kuilenburg et al, 2003).

In addition to genes involved in 5-FU pharmacokinetic pathways, genetic polymorphisms in genes involved in pharmacodynamic actions of 5-FU also impact the clinical outcome of 5-FU treatment. In particular, variants in the *TS* gene have been linked to TS expression and response to fluorouracil chemotherapy (see detailed discussion earlier). In spite of contradictory findings from heterogeneous studies, most studies generally support the notion that colorectal cancer patients with a high TS-expression genotype appear to have poor prognosis and worse response to 5-FU–based chemotherapy, but possibly less severe toxicities, compared with those with a low TS-expression genotype (for a review, see Lurje et al, 2009). A recent study of copy number variation in *TS* in colorectal tumor samples showed that high copy numbers were associated with disease relapse and death (Jensen et al, 2008), indicating that simple genotyping may not provide the whole picture. In addition, there have been some publications implicating variants in the methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR), DNA repair enzymes, and cell cycle pathways in the pharmacogenomics of fluoropyrimidines (Huang et al, 2008; Ruzzo et al, 2008; De Mattia & Toffoli, 2009).

In summary, several of the candidate genes in 5-FU metabolic activation (e.g., OPRT), detoxification (e.g., DPD), and target interaction (e.g., TS) have been shown to influence clinical outcomes. However, because of contradictory findings from heterogeneous studies, a definitive prognostic or predictive testing strategy has not been developed for clinical use. In light of many genes involved in the complex pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic pathway of 5-FU, a pathway-based multivariant approach may prove the most effective for predicting fluoropyrimidine drug response.

IRINOTECAN

The topoisomerase I inhibitor irinotecan is a water-soluble, semisynthetic derivative of camptothecin, a plant alkaloid isolated from *Camptotheca acuminata* (family *Nyssaceae*). It is widely used in the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer, either in combination with 5-FU in the first-line treatment setting or as monotherapy in the second-line setting (Saltz et al, 2000). Irinotecan acts as a prodrug and undergoes complex metabolic pathways in humans (Fig. 73-8). Specifically, irinotecan is metabolized by human carboxylesterase 1 and 2 (hCE1 and hCE2) to 7-ethyl-10-hydroxycamptothecin (SN-38) that targets topoisomerase I, inhibiting DNA replication in cancer cells and leading to cell death. SN-38 also contributes to the dose-limiting toxicities, including myelotoxicity, neutropenia, and, most prominently, diarrhea. SN-38 is then glucuronized to SN-38 glucuronic acid (SN-38G) and detoxified in the liver by UGT1A1 (Slatter et al, 1997). SN-38G is released by biliary excretion into the intestines for elimination, where bacterial beta-glucoronidases can reverse the reaction and transform inactive SN-38G back into the active SN-38, leading to severe delayed diarrhea. Simultaneously, irinotecan undergoes CYP3A-mediated oxidation to form the inactive metabolites 7-ethyl-10-(4-N-(5-aminopentanoic acid)-1-piperidino) carbonyloxycamptothecin (APC) and 7-ethyl-10-(4-amino-1-piperidino) carbonyloxycamptothecin (NPC); the latter can be further metabolized by hCE1 and hCE2 to SN-38 (Rivory et al, 1996; Dodds et al, 1998). In addition, uptake and efflux transporters, including OATP1B1, ABCB1, ABCC1/2, and ABCG2, are involved in the hepatic uptake and biliary excretion of irinotecan, SN-38, and SN-38G (see Fig. 73-8) (Schellens et al, 2000; Luo et al, 2002).

Irinotecan exhibits substantial interindividual variability in its pharmacokinetics, efficacy, and toxicity profiles in cancer patients (Mathijssen et al, 2001). This variability is attributable, for a large part, to genetic variations in the genes encoding metabolizing enzymes and transporters involved in irinotecan disposition.

The UGT1A family is responsible for conjugation of the active SN-38 to inactive SN-38G. The UGT1A1*28 (rs8175347) allele is characterized by the presence of 7 dinucleotide repeats in the TATA sequence of the *UGT1A1* promoter, as opposed to the UGT1A1*1 allele with 6 repeats. *UGT1A1*28* results in decreased enzyme expression and activity and, consequently, reduced SN-38 glucuronidation and detoxification. Thus, patients homozygous or heterozygous for the UGT1A1*28 allele commonly have greater susceptibility to dose-limiting severe neutropenia and diarrhea (Iyer et al, 2002; Tukey et al, 2002; Innocenti et al, 2004). UGT1A1*28 is prevalent in the Caucasian and African-American populations with frequencies of 0.26 to 0.31 and 0.42 to 0.56, respectively. Conversely, the frequency of this allele in the East Asian populations is only 0.09 to 0.16, while the UGT1A1*6 (rs4148323) variant has a frequency of 0.23 in the Korean and Chinese populations. Like UGT1A1*28, the UGT1A1*6 allele causes decreased enzyme activity (Premawardhena et al, 2003). Patients homozygous for UGT1A1*6 allele are at great risk for grade 4 neutropenia (Han et al, 2006). Additionally, two promoter variants (i.e., *UGT1A1 –3263T>G* and *–3156G>A*), which are in strong linkage disequilibrium with *UGT1A1*28* in Caucasians while less apparent in African Americans and Asians, have been associated with higher incidence of irinotecan-induced grade 4 neutropenia and diarrhea (Innocenti et al, 2004; Kitagawa et al, 2005).

In addition, genetic polymorphisms in the UGT1A7 and UGT1A9 genes contribute to interpatient toxicity differences (Carlini et al, 2005). *UGT1A7 is located in the intestine and is responsible for detoxifying SN-38.* Patients homozygous for the UGT1A7*2 display higher enzyme activity as compared to the *UGT1A7*3* and UGT1A7*1 allele carriers. By contrast, patients with UGT1A7*3 and UGT1A7*4 haplotypes display less activity and impaired SN-38 conjugation. *UGT1A9, expressed in the liver, is the principal enzyme catalyzing the glucuronidation of SN-38 to inactive SN-38G.* Patients homozygous for UGT1A9*1 are at higher risk for more severe diarrhea than patients carrying UGT1A9*9 or UGT1A9*22 (rs3832043). UGT1A9*22 is found predominantly in Eastern Asian populations, and leads to higher enzyme expression and glucuronidation rates.

Besides UGT1A1, associations between genetic polymorphisms within the genes encoding the drug transporters (*ABCB1, ABCC1, ABCG2,* and *OATP*) and irinotecan pharmacokinetics or toxicity have been reported, even though the data are limited (for a review, see de Jong et al, 2006). ABCB1 is involved in facilitating the biliary excretion of irinotecan and SN-38. The *ABCB1* 3435C>T variant was related to higher irinotecan plasma concentration in Chinese (Zhou et al, 2005), and *ABCB1* 1236C>T resulted in higher systemic exposure to irinotecan and SN-38 in Caucasians (Mathijssen et al, 2003). Nevertheless, the true clinical relevance of single *ABCB1* SNP to irinotecan treatment remains to be elucidated. *ABCC2* plays a key role in facilitating secretion of irinotecan and its metabolites (SN-38 and SN-38G) from hepatocytes to the intestine. The ABCC2*2 haplotype is beneficial in that it is associated with lower incidence of irinotecan-induced diarrhea, while the ABCC2 3972 C>T (rs3740066) variant results in higher systemic exposure to irinotecan and its metabolites and higher risk for grade 3 diarrhea (Kim, 2002). ABCG2 is found in the intestine and colon and actively transports irinotecan and SN-38. The ABCG2 *34G>A* (rs2231137) variant has a diminished efflux activity, thus resulting in prolonged exposure of SN-38 to the intestines. Patients with at least one ABCG2 34A allele have a greater risk for grade 3 diarrhea as compared to the G allele carriers (Han et al, 2007). OATP1B1 is an important uptake transporter facilitating the uptake of SN-38 from blood circulation to hepatocytes. Genetic polymorphisms in the *OATP1B1* gene, such as 521T>C, –11187G>A, 388A>G, and the *OATP1B1*15* haplotype, have been associated with a lower clearance and higher systemic exposure of SN-38 and irinotecan (Xiang et al, 2006; Han et al, 2008).

In addition to the pharmacogenetic influence of genes involved in irinotecan pharmacokinetics, polymorphisms in genes encoding drug targets such as topoisomerase I (TOP1) and downstream effectors leading to DNA repair or cell death may influence patient outcomes to irinotecan treatment. A study involving 107 advanced colorectal cancer patients showed that *TOP1* and *TDP1* haplotype tagging SNPs (htSNPs) were related to grade 3/4 neutropenia and response, respectively, and a DNA repair gene *XRCC1* haplotype was associated with response (Hoskins et al, 2008).

In summary, *UGT1A1*28* is associated with greater susceptibility to irinotecan-induced gastrointestinal and hematologic toxicity. It is recommended that the initial dose of irinotecan is reduced for patients homozygous for the *UGT1A1*28* allele. The true clinical significance of genetic variations within other genes involved in the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of irinotecan with respect to clinical outcome remains to be confirmed.

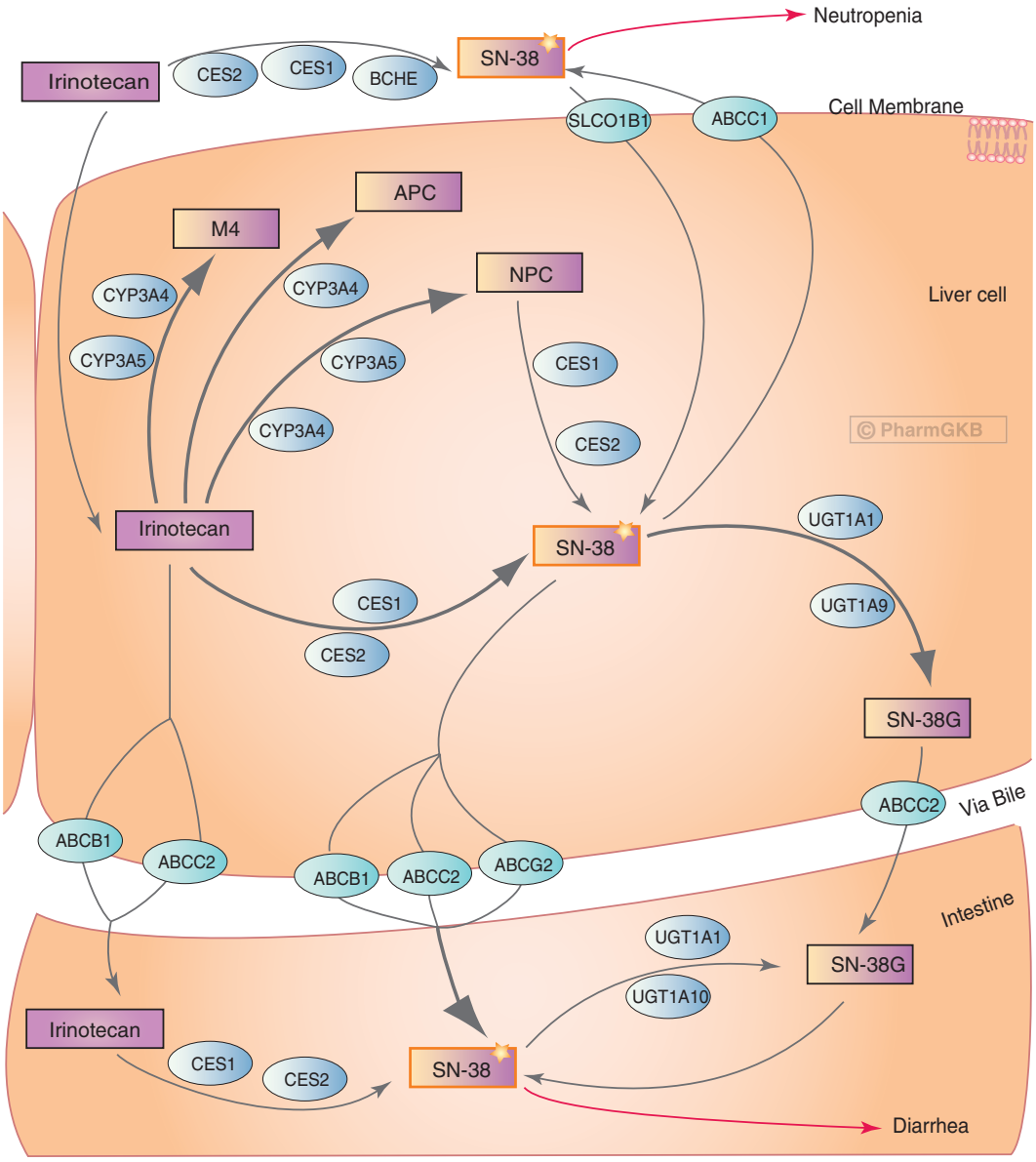


Figure 73-8 Schematic illustration of irinotecan pharmacokinetic pathway. Irinotecan is activated to 7-ethyl-10-hydroxycamptothecin (SN-38) by human carboxylesterase 1 and 2 (hCE1 and hCE2), and SN-38 is subsequently detoxified by UGT1A1 to a β-glucuronide derivative, SN-38G. In addition, irinotecan undergoes CYP3A4-mediated oxidation to form the inactive metabolites 7-ethyl-10-(4-*N*-(5-aminopentanoic acid)-1-peperidino) carbonyloxycamptothecin (APC) and 7-ethyl-10-(4-amino-1-peperidino) carbonyloxycamptothecin (NPC), and NPC also undergoes a subsequent conversion by hCE2 to SN-38. Irinotecan and its metabolites (i.e., SN-38 and SN-38G) are also transported by the ABC transporters including ABCB1, ABCC1/2, or ABCG2 or the organic anion transporting polypeptide 1B1 (OATP1B1). (Adapted from PharmGKB [https://www.pharmgkb.org/pathway/PA2001], with permission.)

TAMOXIFEN

Tamoxifen, a selective estrogen receptor (ER) modulator, is a standard endocrine therapy for the treatment and prevention of ER-positive breast cancer. ER-positive breast cancers are often dependent on estrogen for growth. Selective ER modulators bind to the ligand-binding domain of an ER and block the binding of estrogen. This prevents conformational changes of the ER that it requires for its association with coactivators, thus blocking transcriptional activation functions of the ER and subsequently reducing or eliminating estrogen-driven proliferation of ER-positive tumors.

Tamoxifen can be considered a *pro-drug*, which requires metabolic activation to exert its pharmacologic activity. Tamoxifen is extensively metabolized by hepatic phase I enzymes (including CYP3A4, CYP3A5, CYP2C9, CYP2C19, CYP1A2, CYP2B6, and CYP2D6, as well as flavin-containing monooxygenase 1 and 3) and phase II enzymes (including SULTs and UGTs) (Fig. 73-9) (Dehal & Kupfer, 1997; Desta et al, 2004; Parte & Kupfer, 2005). Tamoxifen metabolism mostly occurs via two pathways, 4-hydroxylation (catalyzed primarily by CYP2D6) and N-demethylation (catalyzed primarily by CYP3A4/5), which contribute approximately 7% and 92% of tamoxifen metabolism, respectively (Desta et al, 2004; Della-Morte et al, 2004). 4-hydroxy-tamoxifen and N-desmethyltamoxifen are further metabolized, mainly by CYP3A4 and CYP2D6, respectively, to form the very potent secondary metabolite, endoxifen (Desta et al, 2004). Endoxifen and 4-hydroxytamoxifen show much greater affinity for the estrogen receptor than tamoxifen. While 4-hydroxytamoxifen and endoxifen have similar potencies in terms of anti-estrogenic activity (Desta et al, 2004; Crewe et al, 2002), endoxifen plasma concentration in those receiving tamoxifen therapy is, on average, over ten-fold higher than that of 4-hydroxytamoxifen with large interpatient variability (Stearns et al, 2003), suggesting endoxifen is the predominant and crucial active metabolite responsible for the in vivo pharmacologic activity of tamoxifen.

Given the key role of CYP2D6 in catalyzing the hydroxylation of N-desmethyltamoxifen to endoxifen, genetic variations on *CYP2D6* may have a direct impact on endoxifen concentration and consequently therapeutic benefit of tamoxifen. As mentioned earlier, *CYP2D6* functional

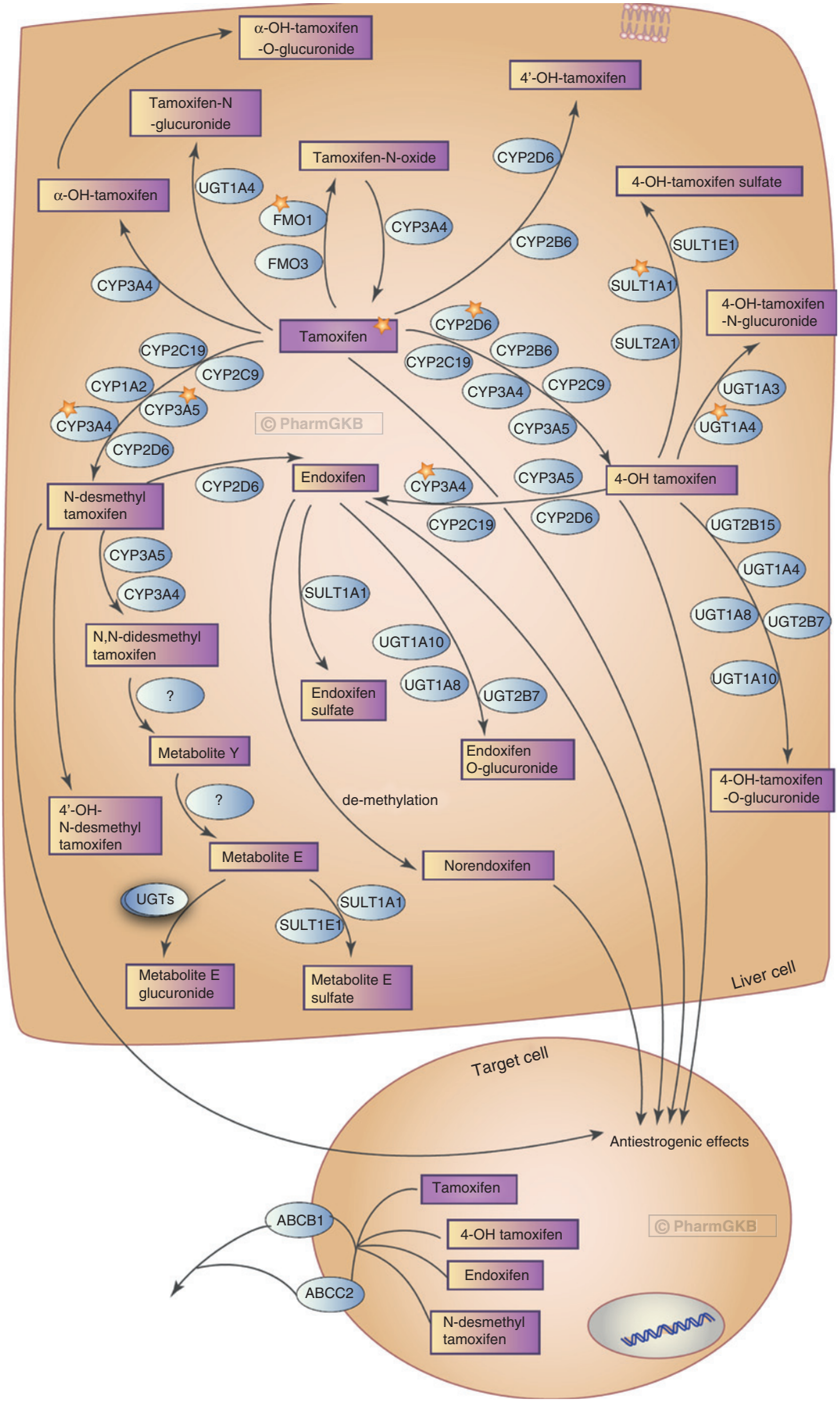


Figure 73-9 **Schematic illustration of tamoxifen pharmacokinetic pathway.** Tamoxifen is extensively metabolized by hepatic phase I enzymes, including CYP3A4, CYP3A5, CYP2C9, CYP2C19, CYP1A2, CYP2B6, CYP2D6, and flavin-containing monooxygenase (FMO) 1 and 3, as well as phase II enzymes (including SULTs and UGTs). Tamoxifen metabolism mostly occurs via two pathways, 4-hydroxylation (catalyzed primarily by CYP2D6) and *N*-demethylation (catalyzed primarily by CYP3A4/5), and both are further metabolized to form the very potent secondary metabolite, endoxifen. (Adapted from PharmGKB [https://www.pharmgkb.org/pathway/PA145011119], with permission.)

alleles result in abolished, decreased, normal, or ultrarapid enzyme activity (see Table 73-1). As a result, patients can be classified as four phenotypes: poor metabolizer (PM) (abolished activity), intermediate metabolizer (IM) (reduced activity), extensive metabolizer (EM) (normal activity), and ultrarapid metabolizer (UM) (enhanced activity).

During the past decades, a number of published studies have examined the association between CYP2D6 genotype or phenotype and tamoxifen treatment outcome. There is still much debate about the clinical relevance of CYP2D6 status (Brauch et al, 2013; Province et al, 2014). Some studies suggest that, compared to those with normal enzyme activity, CYP2D6 PMs have worse clinical outcome after tamoxifen treatment or higher incidence of breast cancer when tamoxifen is used as a preventive agent (Hoskins et al, 2009; Higgins & Stearns, 2010; Goetz et al, 2005; Bonanni et al, 2006; Borges et al, 2006; Lim et al, 2007; Wegman et al, 2007; Schroth et al, 2009). These studies support a role for the *CYP2D6* genotype in the activation of tamoxifen and likelihood of therapeutic benefit from testing for the *CYP2D6* genotype. On the contrary, some studies report contradictory evidence (Nowell et al, 2005; Wegman et al, 2005; Wegman et al, 2007). In particular, two large studies have recently been published providing evidence against this association and asserting that CYP2D6 genotyping prior to treatment serves no clinical benefit (Rae et al, 2012; Regan et al, 2012).

A number of factors could contribute to the difficulty of reaching consensus in regard to CYP2D6 genotype as a predictor for tamoxifen response. First, the *CYP2D6* genotype or phenotype is misclassified. For example, copy number is not always assessed, which may cause a misclassification of metabolizer status. CYP2D6 also has pseudogenes that alter enzymatic activity and are hard to detect (Skierka et al, 2012). Second, environmental factors, such as menopausal status or potential drug interactions with CYP2D6 inhibitors, are not always considered, but can cause a big change in phenotype (Brauch et al, 2013). Third, besides CYP2D6, genetic variations in other metabolizing enzymes also contribute to the interindividual variability in tamoxifen pharmacokinetics.

The CYP2C19*17 higher-functioning variant has been associated with better responses to treatment, lower adverse reactions, and increased disease-free survival (Schroth et al, 2007; Gjerde et al, 2010). In addition, variants of phase I enzymes have also been associated with tamoxifen treatment outcome. Interestingly, the lower-functioning allele, SULT1A1*2, is associated with worse clinical outcome as compared to the higher-functioning allele SULT1A1*1 (Nowell et al, 2002). One possible explanation for this observation is that sulfation of tamoxifen metabolites (4-hydroxy-tamoxifen and endoxifen) by SULT1A1 forms highly reactive products, leading to DNA adducts (Dasaradhi & Shibutani, 1997; Davis et al, 1998), and, therefore, individuals with a low-activity *SULT1A1* genotype have poor clinical outcome. Variants in UGT2B15, known for metabolizing steroids as well as xenobiotics, have also been shown to affect survival and disease recurrence after tamoxifen treatment. UGT2B15*2, the higher-functioning variant, has been associated with decreased overall survival and increased disease recurrence (Nowell et al, 2005). This association is much stronger when both SULT1A1 and UGT2B15 genotypes are evaluated together (Nowell et al, 2005). In addition to metabolizing enzymes, genetic variations within the target genes (*ESR1* and *ESR2)* have been associated with altered susceptibility to tamoxifen-induced hot flashes and hormone-resistance (Zhang et al, 1997; Jin et al, 2008).

In conclusion, tamoxifen is generally considered as a prodrug that undergoes complex metabolism by multiple phase I and phase II enzymes. Given the key role of CYP2D6 in the metabolic activation of tamoxifen, genetic variations on *CYP2D6* may have significant impact on tamoxifen clinical outcome. However, because of the lack of concordant data, mandatory *CYP2D6* genotype testing to guide the selection and dose of tamoxifen is premature. In the design of future studies, it will be crucial to (1) examine network effects across variants in all pathway genes, (2) include study cohorts with clearly defined and tightly controlled phenotypes (menopausal status, indication, dose and duration, cotreatments, outcomes, and follow-up), and (3) have strict genotype/metabolizer status groupings.

PHARMACOGENOMICS IN OTHER DISEASES

DIABETES

Pharmacogenomic investigations of diabetes mellitus have yielded variations in genomic loci containing common variants with translational consequences of altering disease susceptibility risk, clinical course, and response to standard therapy. This is becoming increasingly important in light of the prospective increased prevalence of type 2 diabetes (T2D) to over 300 million cases in 2025 (Jiang, 2008; Zimmet et al, 2001). To this end, polymorphisms in genes related to beta cell function, glucose tolerance, insulin uptake, and other aspects of glucose metabolism are being actively investigated toward effective drug design and personalized responses. One of the many classes of antidiabetic agents are the glitazones (e.g., Thiazolidinedione [TZD]), which can be prescribed alone or in combination with sulphonylurea, metformin, or insulin. TZD pharmacologically acts by agonizing the nuclear peroxisome proliferator–activated receptor gamma (PPAR-γ) to form heterodimers with the retinoid X receptors (RXR), which binds the PPAR-response elements and regulates target gene transcription. Pro12Ala, polymorphism in the PPAR-γ2, has a frequency of roughly 12% to 15% in the general population, making it the most common PPAR-γ variant. A meta-analysis showed that the Ala12 allele displayed a protective effect with regard to developing T2D, reducing the risk in carriers by 19% (Ludovico et al, 2007). Although one study demonstrated that patients with the Pro12Al genotype receiving rosiglitazone for 12 weeks were significantly better when compared with patients with the homozygous Pro12 (PPAR-γ2) genotype (86.7% and 43.7%, respectively) (Kang et al, 2005), other studies have been inconsistent (Bluher et al, 2003). Recently, TZDs including pioglitazone, rosiglitazone, and troglitazone have shown pleiotropic effects in reducing vascular risk factors and atherosclerosis. Of note, however, troglitazone was removed from the market due to its hepatotoxicity, and rosiglitazone and pioglitazone both have particular warnings due to being associated with heart diseases. It is thought that specific genetic variations in genes involved in the pathways regulated by TDZs can pose variability in treatment with these drugs (Della-Morte et al, 2014). Polymorphisms in genes associated with glidazone (TZD) toxicity include CYP2C19, CYP2D6, CYP2C8, CYP2C9, and CYP3A4 (Aquilante, 2007); however, the strengths of these relationships vary. Avery and colleagues (2009) and others (Holstein & Biel, 2009; Pearson, 2009; Pawlyk et al, 2014) have reviewed other polymorphisms related to patient responses to antidiabetic agents such as sulphonylurea (tolbutamide [Orinase], glipizide [Glucotrol], glibenclamide [Glyburide], and glimepiride [Amaryl]), biguanides (Metformin), and meglitinides (nateglinide [Starlix] and rapeglinide [Prandin]. Furthermore, genetic variations of several membrane transporters, including SLC22A1/2 and SLC47A1/2 genes, are implicated in the highly variable glycemic response to metformin, and cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzymes are implicated in variation of sulphonylurea and meglitinide metabolism (Semiz et al, 2013).

HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) has become increasingly difficult to treat due to the mutational nature of the virus (Wolinski et al, 1996). Toward this end, degenerate pathways common to HIV mutants and strains have been targets of drug design such as highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), which represents a combination of substances directed against various steps in the viral life cycle. Pharmacogenomic approaches are providing additional information toward devising therapies to decrease morbidity and mortality associated with HIV infections. Earlier studies by Liu and colleagues (1996) described resistance to HIV-1 infection in cells, obtained from multiply exposed individuals. Those studies found that such patients were homozygously defective for CC-CKR5 and therefore resistant to infection. Polymorphisms in the cytochrome P450 system, which is involved in drug clearance, have also been shown to be of value. The CYP3A4*20 null allele contains a premature stop codon yielding a truncated protein. Subjects of this genotype might be susceptible to side effects during drug therapy with substrates or inhibitors of CYP3A4, and this may have pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic application to antiretroviral drug design (Lakhman et al, 2009; Westlind-Johnsson et al, 2006). Adverse effects to antiviral medications have also been linked to polymorphisms. The HLA-DRB1*0101 haplotype may determine the susceptibility to nevirapine (NPV) hypersensitivity and the 3434T allele at the *MDR1* gene is associated with a decreased risk for NPV-induced hepatotoxicity. Genetic polymorphisms in the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) haplotypes HLD HLA-B*5701, HLA-DR7, and/or HLA-DQ3 have been correlated with susceptibility to abacavir (ABC) allergic reactions. The presence of a TA insertion into the UGT1A1 promoter (Gilbert syndrome) has been associated with increased occurrence of hyperbilirubinemia of atazanavir (ATZ) and indinavir (IDV). Polymorphisms in the *APOC3* gene have been associated with antiretroviral-induced hyperlipidemia; and polymorphisms at the serine protease kinase inhibitor Kazal-1 (SPINK-1) that encodes a trypsin inhibitor in the cytoplasm of pancreatic acinar cells and the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) have been associated with some treatment regimens. Furthermore, many of these responses differ

with respect to race (for a review, see Clarke & Mousa, 2009). Polymorphisms in specific alleles can also vary among populations. Variations in CYP2B6, CYP2A6, and UGT2B7 alleles in African populations have been reported to have an effect on the metabolism of HIV-1 inhibitors efavirenz and nevirapine (Čolić et al, 2015), and the CYP2B6 c.983T>C polymorphism has been reported to be associated with nevirapine-induced hypersensitivities including Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis in Malawian and Ugandan HIV populations (Carr et al, 2014).

OSTEOPOROSIS

Osteoporosis is an increasingly common disorder found in older adult patients often resulting from decreased bone mineral density (BMD) with subsequent enhanced bone fragility collectively leading to an increased incidence of fracture. Genetic susceptibility and hormonal and environmental factors are thought to influence bone mass and, as such, polymorphisms and their reciprocal effects on therapeutic interventions are actively sought to design the most efficient medications. The *VDR* gene codes for the vitamin D receptor, which is the target for the active form of vitamin D, 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D_3 [$1,25(OH)_2D_3$]. Polymorphisms in the *VDR* gene can affect stability and expression of the mRNA. Restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) and linkage disequilibrium analysis have highlighted polymorphisms in the *VRD* gene (TaqI, ApaI, BsmI, and FokI), some of which have been correlated with increased bone mineral density measurements in certain patients taking antiresorptive drugs, alendronate, or raloxifen as hormone replacement therapy (Massart et al, 2008) and that these responses were allele-specific (Nguyen et al, 2008). Bone density regulation, by hormones such as estrogens, are also subject to the effects of genetic polymorphisms and allelic variation. Studies on the estrogen receptors, ERα and ERβ, which are coded for by *ESR1* and *ESR2* genes, respectively, have shown that women with a particular polymorphism (Xba1) had greater spine and hip BMD and that genetic variations of ESR1 relate to bone structure and strength (Ferrari, 2008). The *CYP19* gene codes for an enzyme (aromatase) that catalyzes the conversion of androstenedione to estrone and testosterone to estradiol. Mutations in this gene have been found to correlate with decreased BMD. In addition, enzymes involved in the biogenesis of estrone and estradiol have attracted attention as well as polymorphisms in the regulatory region of the type I collagen gene, *COLIA1*, affecting the binding site for the transcription factor specificity protein 1 (Sp1) (Thijssen, 2006). Other novel genes associated with osteoporosis-related pathways and their relationship to therapeutic intervention have also been reported (Marini & Brandi, 2014; Riancho & Hernández, 2012).

PSYCHIATRIC AND COGNITIVE DISORDERS

Medications prescribed for psychiatric disorders are often administered on a trial-and-error basis (Lin et al, 2006). Furthermore, although depression and other disorders have been linked to certain genetic predispositions, the multifactorial nature of this disease class is wanting for better understanding of causal relationships. Accordingly, clinical correlation studies employing methods such as SNP and linkage studies to facilitate efficiency of antidepressants/antipsychotics with genetic variants have been described (Hamilton, 2015; Lin & Chen, 2008). As an example, the brain-derived neurotrophic factor *(BDNF)* gene encodes a protein of the nerve growth factor family that regulates synaptic plasticity and connectivity in the brain. A variation of this gene, which codes for a methionine (Met) substitution for valine (Val) at codon 66 (Val66Met), is associated with alterations in brain anatomy and memory (Chen et al, 2006). Patients with depressive disorder with polymorphisms in this gene have been shown to respond more efficiently to antidepressants such as citalopram, milnacipran, and fluvoxamine in select populations (Choi et al, 2006; Yoshida et al, 2007). Furthermore, BDNF stimulates the release of acetylcholine (ACH). Alzheimer's disease (AD) is associated with defective ACH, and recent data demonstrate decreased expression of BDNF and its receptor, *trk B*, in AD patients. As such, agents that serve to upregulate BNDF and/or *trk B* expression are being investigated with respect to genetic polymorphisms and responses to select drug classes (Fumagalli et al, 2006). Similarly in bipolar disorders, genetic factors and polymorphisms have been attributed to efficient response to drugs such as lithium and clozapine. These include variations in serotonin transporter genes (SERTPR) and responses to selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) among others (Mansour et al, 2002). Furthermore, Glubb and colleagues (2010) examined whether a SNP (rs11042725) in the promoter of the adrenomedullin gene *(Adm)* was associated with mood disorders or selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) antidepressant response. They found that the only significant result was an association of the C/C genotype with a lower likelihood of response to paroxetine (Glubb et al, 2010). Other genes involved in affective disorders that correlate with selective treatment include variants at the tryptophan hydroxylase gene, 5-HT2a receptor, G-protein beta3 and inositol polyphosphate 1-phosphatase, among others (Serretti et al, 2002). Furthermore, altered activity of drug-metabolizing enzymes such as CYP2C19, TPMT, and CYP2D6 are becoming important with regard to drug dosing, as they can affect steady-state drug levels and effectiveness requiring significant dose reductions in patients who possess the "poor metabolizer" phenotype (Hamilton, 2015). Attention to polymorphisms such as genetic variations of the *CYP450* genotype (CYP2D6, CYP2C9, and CYP2C19) among other variables (substrate drugs and doses, coprescribed inhibitors and inducers, and patient age) have been proposed due to reports of associated akathisia/serotonin toxicity, homicidal or violent behavior, or other deleterious side effects, after taking antidepressant medications (Lucire & Crotty, 2011). These concerns prompted the FDA to issue "black box" warnings on certain medications to alert physicians to determine if their patient carried a specific polymorphism prior to prescribing pharmaceutical agents to avoid such negative side effects (http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/ScienceResearch/ResearchAreas/Pharmacogenetics/ucm083378.htm).

EPIGENOMICS

The term epigenetics (*epi-* [Greek: over; above] *-genetics*) refers to changes that occur outside the scope of a gene's DNA sequence. Rather, these changes result in phenotypic (appearance) or genotypic expression modulation caused by mechanisms other than changes in the underlying DNA sequence (Russo et al, 1996). Examples of epigenetic phenomena include DNA methylation status, histone coding, single nucleotide polymorphisms, copy number variants, and chromatin remodeling, which can affect transcription and subsequent translation of a given gene irrespective of its sequence. As such, epigenetics can be used to describe any aspect other than DNA sequence that influences the development of an organism. *Epigenomics* can be considered an extension of this concept to convey overall epigenetic state of a cell across the entire genome. As such, data by Zhang and colleagues (2008) challenge the notion that a drug response is influenced by many different genetic and nongenetic factors and the extent to which each factor contributes to variation in response is not yet fully understood (Fig. 73-10). These concerns make the development of diagnostic tests that could predict an individual's response to a particular drug rather difficult. Profiling the variation in DNA methylation can provide new insights into the regulation of gene expression as well as the mechanisms of individual drug response at a new level of complexity. To this end, the National Institutes of Health has published a roadmap to better

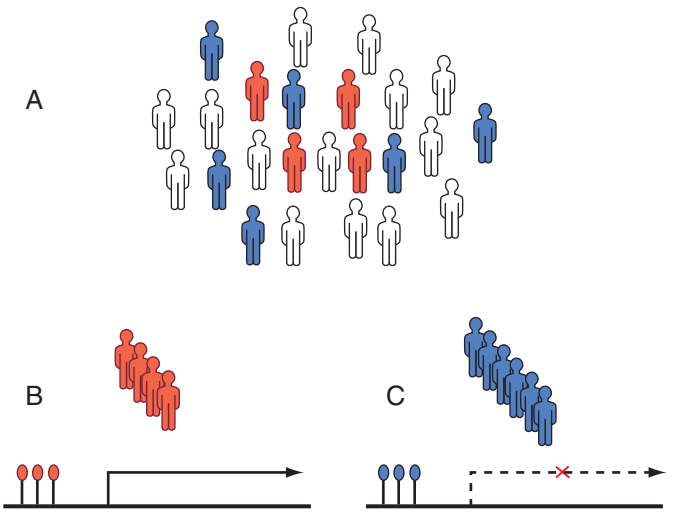


Figure 73-10 **DNA methylation status can affect variation in gene expression and drug response. A,** For a particular drug response–related gene, there could be people with different epigenetic signatures within a population. *Orange,* sensitive people; *blue,* nonrespondent people; *white,* all others. **B,** Sensitive people have an epigenetic signature that causes overexpression of the gene. **C,** In contrast, nonrespondent people have an epigenetic signature that inhibits gene expression. (From Zhang W, Huang RS, Dolan E: Integrating epigenomics into pharmacogenomic studies, *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 1:7–14, 2008, with permission.)

understand the relationship of epigenomics to the clinical marketplace (http://nihroadmap.nih.gov/epigenomics/initiatives.asp). Their proposition is to study a variety of human cell types, including human embryonic stem cells, differentiating cells, selected differentiated cell lines representative of human disease, and select human primary cells that are relevant to complex human disease. Epigenomes derived from these studies will serve as a reference and resource to identify potential therapeutic targets, enhance understanding of disease mechanisms, provide additional insights to genetic susceptibility of disease, pursue therapeutic opportunities in stem cell–based and tissue-regeneration strategies, and to understand normal differentiation, development, and aging/senescence. The initiative is intended to elucidate fundamental epigenomic changes or mechanisms underlying specific diseases; conditions of development or aging; or response to exposures (physical, chemical, behavioral, and social factors).

To this end, epigenomics hold potential to shed light on mental disorders (cognitive decline, Alzheimer's disease, and schizophrenia) (Bennett et al, 2015; Yu et al, 2015; Gomase & Tagore, 2008); drug dependence (Coller et al, 2009); diabetes (Berná et al, 2014; Maier & Olek, 2002); prostate cancer (Gu et al, 2015); and autoimmune (Jeffries & Sawalha, 2015) and respiratory diseases (Bowman et al, 2009), among others. As an example with respect to drug dependence, the mu opioid receptor has a clear involvement in mediating the analgesic and rewarding effects of endogenous and exogenous opioids (Glatt et al, 2007). The most frequently studied of these receptors is the *OPRM1* variant—a single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) A118G (recently renamed *304A/G10*) in exon 1 that causes an Asn40Asp substitution at a putative glycosylation site in the extracellular domain and occurs at an allelic frequency of between 10% and 40% depending on ethnicity, and epigenetic studies have elucidated potential differences among ethnicities that may have a role in personalizing drug development. As such, it is important to note that although meta-analyses of such studies may not yield conclusive differences (Coller et al, 2009), there may be differences in gender or in certain ethnicities (Gelernter et al, 1999; Hoehe et al, 2000; Kapur et al, 2007) that may not be apparent when combined with other studies.

CONCLUSION

It is clear that the field of pharmacogenomics has heralded a new way of thinking about the relationship of a disease to the individual and the individual's response to a disease state encompassing the spectrum of disease pathophysiology, diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment. As such, the methodologies employed such as single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP), restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP), loss of heterozygosity (LOH), genome wide association studies (GWASs), and hybridization array–based profiling (see also Chapter 68), among others, are as important as the study design, patient demographics, characterization, stratification, comorbidities, and data interpretation. Nonetheless, pharmacogenomics provides a unique approach toward investigating, appreciating, and therapeutically serving the individual patient. Continued investigation and adaptation of pharmacogenomics in clinical medicine should likely provide mankind with improved risk-versus-benefit ratios with respect to therapeutic efficacy versus side-effect profiles and effective reevaluation of drug design toward the generation of novel and specific therapies for disease.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Choi MK, Song IS: Organic cation transporters and their pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic consequences, *Drug Metab Pharmacokinet* 23:243–253, 2008.

This review provides an update of our current knowledge on organic cation transporters in terms of their roles in drug pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics.

Gossage L, Madhusudan S: Cancer pharmacogenomics: role of DNA repair genetic polymorphisms in individualizing cancer therapy, *Mol Diagn Ther* 11:361–380, 2007.

This review provides an overview on DNA repair pathways and the influence of DNA repair genetic polymorphisms on the clinical outcome (efficacy and toxicity) of DNA-damaging agents and radiotherapy.

Gradhand U, Kim RB: Pharmacogenomics of MRP transporters (ABCC1-5) and BCRP (ABCG2), *Drug Metab Rev* 40:317–354, 2008.

This review provides an overview on ABCC1-5 and ABCG2 transporters with regard to the functional and clinical relevance of their genetic polymorphisms.

Kumar A, Petri ET, Halmos B, et al: Structure and clinical relevance of the epidermal growth factor receptor in human cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 26:1742–1751, 2008.

This article provides a comprehensive review on the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) with regard to its structure, implication in cancer treatment, and genetic mutations as the determinant of sensitivity or resistance to small-molecule EGFR inhibitors.

Zhang W, Huang RS, Dolan E: Integrating epigenomics into pharmacogenomic studies, *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 1:7–14, 2008.

This review provides an overview of the effect and relationship of epigenomics—genetic and nongenetic factors—and how they may contribute to pharmacogenomic influence and clinical outcomes.

Zhou SF, Liu JP, Chowbay B: Polymorphism of human cytochrome P450 enzymes and its clinical impact, *Drug Metab Rev* 41:89–95, 2009.

This article provides a comprehensive review on human CYP enzymes with regard to their distribution, substrates, genetic polymorphisms, and clinical relevance.

REFERENCES

Agundez JA: Polymorphisms of human N-acetyltransferases and cancer risk, *Curr Drug Metab* 9:520–531, 2008.

Allan JM, Smith AG, Wheatley K, et al: Genetic variation in XPD predicts treatment outcome and risk of acute myeloid leukemia following chemotherapy, *Blood* 104:3872–3877, 2004.

Anderson NG, Ahmad T, Chan K, et al: ZD1839 (Iressa), a novel epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) tyrosine kinase inhibitor, potently inhibits the growth of EGFR-positive cancer cell lines with or without erbB2 overexpression, *Int J Cancer* 94:774–782, 2001.

Andersson T, Flockhart DA, Goldstein DB, et al: Drug-metabolizing enzymes: evidence for clinical utility of pharmacogenomic tests, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 78:559–581, 2005.

Andreassen CN, Alsner J, Overgaard M, et al: Prediction of normal tissue radiosensitivity from polymorphisms in candidate genes, *Radiother Oncol* 69:127–135, 2003.

Aquilante CL: Pharmacogenetics of thiazolidinedione therapy, *Pharmacogenomics* 8:917–931, 2007.

Aschele C, Debernardis D, Casazza S, et al: Immunohistochemical quantitation of thymidylate synthase expression in colorectal cancer metastases predicts for clinical outcome to fluorouracil-based chemotherapy, *J Clin Oncol* 17:1760–1770, 1999.

Avery P, Mousa SS, Mousa SA: Pharmacogenomics in type II diabetes mellitus management: Steps toward personalized medicine, *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 2:79–91, 2009.

Balak MN, Gong Y, Riely GJ, et al: Novel D761Y and common secondary T790M mutations in epidermal growth factor receptor-mutant lung adenocarcinomas with acquired resistance to kinase inhibitors, *Clin Cancer Res* 12:6494–6501, 2006.

Bennett DA, Yu L, Yang J, et al: Epigenomics of Alzheimer's disease, *Transl Res* 165:200–220, 2015.

Berná G, Oliveras-López MJ, Jurado-Ruíz E, et al: Nutrigenetics and nutrigenomics insights into diabetes etiopathogenesis, *Nutrients* 6:5338–5369, 2014.

Bewick MA, Conlon MS, Lafrenie RM: Polymorphisms in XRCC1, XRCC3, and CCND1 and survival after treatment for metastatic breast cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 24:5645–5651, 2006.

Bhatnagar V, Xu G, Hamilton BA, et al: Analyses of 5' regulatory region polymorphisms in human SLC22A6 (OAT1) and SLC22A8 (OAT3), *J Hum Genet* 51:575–580, 2006.

Blencke S, Zech B, Engkvist O, et al: Characterization of a conserved structural determinant controlling protein kinase sensitivity to selective inhibitors, *Chem Biol* 11:691–701, 2004.

Bluher M, Lubben G, Paschke R: Analysis of the relationship between the Pro12Ala variant in the PPAR-gamma2 gene and the response rate to therapy with pioglitazone in patients with type 2 diabetes, *Diabetes Care* 26:825–831, 2003.

Blum M, Grant DM, McBride W, et al: Human arylamine N-acetyltransferase genes: isolation, chromosomal localization, and functional expression, *DNA Cell Biol* 9:193–203, 1990.

Bonanni B, Macis D, Maisonneuve P, et al: Polymorphism in the CYP2D6 tamoxifen-metabolizing gene influences clinical effect but not hot flashes: data from the Italian Tamoxifen Trial, *J Clin Oncol* 24:3708–3709; author reply 3709, 2006.

Borges S, Desta Z, Li L, et al: Quantitative effect of CYP2D6 genotype and inhibitors on tamoxifen metabolism: implication for optimization of breast cancer treatment, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 80:61–74, 2006.

Bowman RV, Wright CM, Davidson MR, et al: Epigenomic targets for the treatment of respiratory disease, *Expert Opin Ther Targets* 13:625–640, 2009.

Bozina N, Bradamante V, Lovric M: Genetic polymorphism of metabolic enzymes P450 (CYP) as a susceptibility factor for drug response, toxicity, and cancer risk, *Arh Hig Rada Toksikol* 60:217–242, 2009.

Bradford LD: CYP2D6 allele frequency in European Caucasians, Asians, Africans and their descendants, *Pharmacogenomics* 3:229–243, 2002.

Brauch H, Schroth W, Goetz MP, et al: Tamoxifen use in postmenopausal breast cancer: CYP2D6 matters, *J Clin Oncol* 31:176–180, 2013.

Burger H, Nooter K: Pharmacokinetic resistance to imatinib mesylate: role of the ABC drug pumps ABCG2 (BCRP) and ABCB1 (MDR1) in the oral bioavailability of imatinib, *Cell Cycle* 3:1502–1505, 2004.

Camps C, Sarries C, Roig B, et al: Assessment of nucleotide excision repair XPD polymorphisms in the peripheral blood of gemcitabine/cisplatin-treated advanced non-small-cell lung cancer patients, *Clin Lung Cancer* 4:237–241, 2003.

Cao K, Hollenbach J, Shi X, et al: Analysis of the frequencies of HLA-A, B, and C alleles and haplotypes in the five major ethnic groups of the United States reveals high levels of diversity in these loci and contrasting distribution patterns in these populations, *Hum Immunol* 62:1009–1030, 2001.

Cao ZH, Wei ZY, Zhu QY, et al: HLA-B*58:01 allele is associated with augmented risk for both mild and severe cutaneous adverse reactions induced by allopurinol in Han Chinese, *Pharmacogenomics* 13:1193–1201, 2012.

Carlini LE, Meropol NJ, Bever J, et al: UGT1A7 and UGT1A9 polymorphisms predict response and toxicity in colorectal cancer patients treated with capecitabine/irinotecan, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:1226–1236, 2005.

Carr DF, Chaponda M, Cornejo Castro EM, et al: CYP2B6 c.983T T>C polymorphism is associated with nevirapine hypersensitivity in Malawian and Ugandan HIV populations, *J Antimicrob Chemother* 69:3329–3334, 2014.

Cartwright RA, Glashan RW, Rogers HJ, et al: Role of N-acetyltransferase phenotypes in bladder carcinogenesis: a pharmacogenetic epidemiological approach to bladder cancer, *Lancet* 2:842–845, 1982.

Cass I, Baldwin RL, Varkey T, et al: Improved survival in women with BRCA-associated ovarian carcinoma, *Cancer* 97:2187–2195, 2003.

Chan SH, Tan T: HLA and allopurinol drug eruption, *Dermatologica* 179:32–33, 1989.

Chang-Claude J, Popanda O, Tan XL, et al: Association between polymorphisms in the DNA repair genes, XRCC1, APE1, and XPD and acute side effects of radiotherapy in breast cancer patients, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:4802–4809, 2005.

Chantarangsu S, Mushiroda T, Mahasirimongkol S, et al: HLA-B*3505 allele is a strong predictor for nevirapine-induced skin adverse drug reactions in HIV-infected Thai patients, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 19:139–146, 2009.

Chappuis PO, Goffin J, Wong N, et al: A significant response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in BRCA1/2 related breast cancer, *J Med Genet* 39:608–610, 2002.

Chen ZY, Jing D, Bath KG, et al: Genetic variant BDNF (Val66Met) polymorphism alters anxiety-related behavior, *Science* 314:140–143, 2006.

Choi MJ, Kang RH, Lim SW, et al: Brain-derived neurotrophic factor gene polymorphism (Val66Met) and citalopram response in major depressive disorder, *Brain Res* 1118:176–182, 2006.

Choi MK, Song IS: Organic cation transporters and their pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic consequences, *Drug Metab Pharmacokinet* 23:243–253, 2008.

Christensen MM, Brasch-Andersen C, Green H, et al: The pharmacogenetics of metformin and its impact on plasma metformin steady-state levels and glycosylated hemoglobin A1c, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 21: 837–850, 2011.

Chung WH, Hung SI, Hong HS, et al: Medical genetics: a marker for Stevens-Johnson syndrome, *Nature* 428:486, 2004.

Ciardiello F, Caputo R, Bianco R, et al: Inhibition of growth factor production and angiogenesis in human cancer cells by ZD1839 (Iressa), a selective epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor, *Clin Cancer Res* 7:1459–1465, 2001.

Clarke H, Mousa SA: The implications of pharmacogenomics in the treatment of HIV-1-infected patients of African descent, *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 2:93–99, 2009.

Čolić A, Alessandrini M, Pepper MS: Pharmacogenetics of CYP2B6, CYP2A6 and UGT2B7 in HIV treatment in African populations: focus on efavirenz and nevirapine, *Drug Metab Rev* 47:111–123, 2015.

Coller JK, Beardsley J, Bignold J, et al: Lack of association between the A118G polymorphism of the mu opioid receptor gene (OPRM1) and opioid dependence: A meta-analysis, *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 2:9–19, 2009.

Conrad S, Kauffmann HM, Ito K, et al: A naturally occurring mutation in MRP1 results in a selective decrease in organic anion transport and in increased doxorubicin resistance, *Pharmacogenetics* 12:321–330, 2002.

Crewe HK, Notley LM, Wunsch RM, et al: Metabolism of tamoxifen by recombinant human cytochrome P450 enzymes: formation of the 4-hydroxy, 4'-hydroxy and N-desmethyl metabolites and isomerization of trans-4-hydroxytamoxifen, *Drug Metab Dispos* 30:869–874, 2002.

Cusatis G, Gregorc V, Li J, et al: Pharmacogenetics of ABCG2 and adverse reactions to gefitinib, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 98:1739–1742, 2006.

Cutrell AG, Hernandez JE, Fleming JW, et al: Updated clinical risk factor analysis of suspected hypersensitivity reactions to abacavir, *Ann Pharmacother* 38:2171–2172, 2004.

Dainichi T, Uchi H, Moroi Y, et al: Stevens-Johnson syndrome, drug-induced hypersensitivity syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis caused by allopurinol in patients with a common HLA allele: what causes the diversity?, *Dermatology* 215:86–88, 2007.

Danenberg PV: Thymidylate synthetase—a target enzyme in cancer chemotherapy, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 473:73–92, 1977.

Dasaradhi L, Shibutani S: Identification of tamoxifen-DNA adducts formed by alpha-sulfate tamoxifen and alpha-acetoxytamoxifen, *Chem Res Toxicol* 10:189–196, 1997.

Davis W, Venitt S, Phillips DH: The metabolic activation of tamoxifen and alpha-hydroxytamoxifen to DNA-binding species in rat hepatocytes proceeds via sulphation, *Carcinogenesis* 19:861–866, 1998.

de Jong FA, de Jonge MJ, Verweij J, et al: Role of pharmacogenetics in irinotecan therapy, *Cancer Lett* 234:90–106, 2006.

de las Penas R, Sanchez-Ronco M, Alberola V, et al: Polymorphisms in DNA repair genes modulate survival in cisplatin/gemcitabine-treated non-small-cell lung cancer patients, *Ann Oncol* 17:668–675, 2006.

De Mattia E, Toffoli G: C677T and A1298C MTHFR polymorphisms, a challenge for antifolate and fluoropyrimidine-based therapy personalisation, *Eur J Cancer* 45:1333–1351, 2009.

De Ruyck K, Van Eijkeren M, Claes K, et al: Radiation-induced damage to normal tissues after radiotherapy in patients treated for gynecologic tumors: association with single nucleotide polymorphisms in XRCC1, XRCC3, and OGG1 genes and in vitro chromosomal radiosensitivity in lymphocytes, *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 62:1140–1149, 2005.

Dehal SS, Kupfer D: CYP2D6 catalyzes tamoxifen 4-hydroxylation in human liver, *Cancer Res* 57:3402–3406, 1997.

Della-Morte D, Palmirotta R, Rehni AK, et al: Pharmacogenomics and pharmacogenetics of thiazolidinediones: role in diabetes and cardiovascular risk factors, *Pharmacogenomics* 15:2063–2082, 2014.

Desta Z, Ward BA, Soukhova NV, et al: Comprehensive evaluation of tamoxifen sequential biotransformation by the human cytochrome P450 system in vitro: prominent roles for CYP3A and CYP2D6, *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 310:1062–1075, 2004.

Dodds HM, Haaz MC, Riou JF, et al: Identification of a new metabolite of CPT-11 (irinotecan): pharmacological properties and activation to SN-38, *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 286:578–583, 1998.

Ferrari S: Human genetics of osteoporosis, *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab* 22:723–735, 2008.

Franke RM, Scherkenbach LA, Sparreboom A: Pharmacogenetics of the organic anion transporting polypeptide 1A2, *Pharmacogenomics* 10:339–344, 2009.

Frueh FW, Amur S, Mummaneni P, et al: Pharmacogenomic biomarker information in drug labels approved by the United States food and drug administration: prevalence of related drug use, *Pharmacotherapy* 28: 992–998, 2008.

Fukuoka M, Yano S, Giaccone G, et al: Multi-institutional randomized phase II trial of gefitinib for previously treated patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (The IDEAL 1 Trial) [corrected], *J Clin Oncol* 21:2237–2246, 2003.

Fumagalli F, Racagni G, Riva MA: The expanding role of BDNF: a therapeutic target for Alzheimer's disease?, *Pharmacogenomics J* 6:8–15, 2006.

Fung KL, Gottesman MM: A synonymous polymorphism in a common MDR1 (ABCB1) haplotype shapes protein function, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1794: 860–871, 2009.

Gangar M, Arias G, O'Brien JG, et al: Frequency of cutaneous reactions on rechallenge with nevirapine and delavirdine, *Ann Pharmacother* 34:839–842, 2000.

Gao S, Gui XE, Liang K, et al: HLA-dependent hypersensitivity reaction to nevirapine in Chinese Han HIV-infected patients, *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 28:540–543, 2012.

Garcia-Closas M, Malats N, Silverman D, et al: NAT2 slow acetylation, GSTM1 null genotype, and risk of bladder cancer: results from the Spanish Bladder Cancer Study and meta-analyses, *Lancet* 366:649–659, 2005.

Garrod AE: The incidence of alcaptonuria: a study in chemical individuality, *Lancet* ii:1616–1620, 1902.

Gatanaga H, Yazaki H, Tanuma J, et al: HLA-Cw8 primarily associated with hypersensitivity to nevirapine, *AIDS* 21:264–265, 2007.

Gazdar AF: Activating and resistance mutations of EGFR in non-small-cell lung cancer: role in clinical response to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors, *Oncogene* 28(Suppl 1):S24–S31, 2009.

Gelernter J, Kranzler H, Cubells J: Genetics of two mu opioid receptor gene (OPRM1) exon 1 polymorphisms: population studies, and allele frequencies in alcohol- and drug-dependent subjects, *Mol Psychiatry* 4:476–483, 1999.

Genin E, Chen DP, Hung SI, et al: HLA-A*31:01 and different types of carbamazepine-induced severe cutaneous adverse reactions: an international study and meta-analysis, *Pharmacogenomics J* 14:281–288, 2014.

Gjerde J, Geisler J, Lundgren S, et al: Associations between tamoxifen, estrogens, and FSH serum levels during steady state tamoxifen treatment of postmenopausal women with breast cancer, *BMC Cancer* 10:313, 2010.

Glatt H, Meinl W: Pharmacogenetics of soluble sulfotransferases (SULTs), *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol* 369:55–68, 2004.

Glatt SJ, Bousman C, Wang RS, et al: Evaluation of OPRM1 variants in heroin dependence by family-based association testing and meta analysis, *Drug Alcohol Depend* 90:159–165, 2007.

Glubb DM, McHugh PC, Deng X, et al: Association of a functional polymorphism in the adrenomedullin gene (ADM) with response to paroxetine, *Pharmacogenomics J* 10:126–133, 2010.

Gomase VS, Tagore S: Epigenomics, *Curr Drug Metab* 9:232–237, 2008.

Goetz MP, Rae JM, Suman VJ, et al: Pharmacogenetics of tamoxifen biotransformation is associated with clinical outcomes of efficacy and hot flashes, *J Clin Oncol* 23:9312–9318, 2005.

Gossage L, Madhusudan S: Cancer pharmacogenomics: role of DNA repair genetic polymorphisms in individualizing cancer therapy, *Mol Diagn Ther* 11:361–380, 2007.

Gottesman MM, Fojo T, Bates SE: Multidrug resistance in cancer: role of ATP-dependent transporters, *Nat Rev Cancer* 2:48–58, 2002.

Gradhand U, Kim RB: Pharmacogenomics of MRP transporters (ABCC1-5) and BCRP (ABCG2), *Drug Metab Rev* 40:317–354, 2008.

Gu L, Frommel SC, Oakes CC, et al: BAZ2A (TIP5) is involved in epigenetic alterations in prostate cancer and its overexpression predicts disease recurrence, *Nat Genet* 47:22–30, 2015.

Guillemette C: Pharmacogenomics of human UDP-glucuronosyltransferase enzymes, *Pharmacogenomics J* 3:136–158, 2003.

Gurubhagavatula S, Liu G, Park S, et al: XPD and XRCC1 genetic polymorphisms are prognostic factors in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer patients treated with platinum chemotherapy, *J Clin Oncol* 22: 2594–2601, 2004.

Hamdy SI, Hiratsuka M, Narahara K, et al: Genotype and allele frequencies of TPMT, NAT2, GST, SULT1A1 and MDR-1 in the Egyptian population, *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 55:560–569, 2003.

Hamilton SP: The promise of psychiatric pharmacogenomics, *Biol Psychiatry* 77:29–35, 2015.

Han JY, Lim HS, Shin ES, et al: Comprehensive analysis of UGT1A polymorphisms predictive for pharmacokinetics and treatment outcome in patients with non-small-cell lung cancer treated with irinotecan and cisplatin, *J Clin Oncol* 24:2237–2244, 2006.

Han JY, Lim HS, Shin ES, et al: Influence of the organic anion-transporting polypeptide 1B1 (OATP1B1) polymorphisms on irinotecan-pharmacokinetics and clinical outcome of patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer, *Lung Cancer* 59:69–75, 2008.

Han JY, Lim HS, Yoo YK, et al: Associations of ABCB1, ABCC2, and ABCG2 polymorphisms with irinotecan-pharmacokinetics and clinical outcome in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer, *Cancer* 110: 138–147, 2007.

Hayer-Zillgen M, Bruss M, Bonisch H: Expression and pharmacological profile of the human organic cation transporters hOCT1, hOCT2 and hOCT3, *Br J Pharmacol* 136:829–836, 2002.

Heidelberger C, Chaudhuri NK, Danneberg P, et al: Fluorinated pyrimidines, a new class of tumour-inhibitory compounds, *Nature* 179:663–666, 1957.

Hein DW: Molecular genetics and function of NAT1 and NAT2: role in aromatic amine metabolism and carcinogenesis, *Mutat Res* 506-507:65–77, 2002.

Hetherington S, Hughes AR, Mosteller M, et al: Genetic variations in HLA-B region and hypersensitivity reactions to abacavir, *Lancet* 359:1121–1122, 2002.

Higashi MK, Veenstra DL, Kondo LM, et al: Association between CYP2C9 genetic variants and anticoagulation-related outcomes during warfarin therapy, *JAMA* 287:1690–1698, 2002.

Higgins MJ, Stearns V: CYP2D6 polymorphisms and tamoxifen metabolism: clinical relevance, *Curr Oncol Rep* 12:7–15, 2010.

Hinoshita E, Uchiumi T, Taguchi K, et al: Increased expression of an ATP-binding cassette superfamily transporter, multidrug resistance protein 2, in human colorectal carcinomas, *Clin Cancer Res* 6:2401–2407, 2000.

Hirano M, Maeda K, Matsushima S, et al: Involvement of BCRP (ABCG2) in the biliary excretion of pitavastatin, *Mol Pharmacol* 68:800–807, 2005.

Hoehe MR, Kopke K, Wendel B, et al: Sequence variability and candidate gene analysis in complex disease: association of mu opioid receptor gene variation with substance dependence, *Hum Mol Genet* 9:2895–2908, 2000.

Hoffmeyer S, Burk O, von Richter O, et al: Functional polymorphisms of the human multidrug-resistance gene: multiple sequence variations and correlation of one allele with P-glycoprotein expression and activity in vivo, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 97:3473–3478, 2000.

Holstein A, Beil W: Oral antidiabetic drug metabolism: pharmacogenomics and drug interactions, *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol* 5:225–241, 2009.

Hoskins JM, Carey LA, McLeod HL: CYP2D6 and tamoxifen: DNA matters in breast cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 9:576–586, 2009.

Hoskins JM, Marcuello E, Altes A, et al: Irinotecan pharmacogenetics: influence of pharmacodynamic genes, *Clin Cancer Res* 14:1788–1796, 2008.

Huang YS, Chern HD, Su WJ, et al: Polymorphism of the N-acetyltransferase 2 gene as a susceptibility risk factor for antituberculosis drug-induced hepatitis, *Hepatology* 35:883–889, 2002.

Huang ZH, Hua D, Li LH, et al: Prognostic role of p53 codon 72 polymorphism in gastric cancer patients treated with fluorouracil-based adjuvant chemotherapy, *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 134:1129–1134, 2008.

Hughes DA, Vilar FJ, Ward CC, et al: Cost-effectiveness analysis of HLA B*5701 genotyping in preventing abacavir hypersensitivity, *Pharmacogenetics* 14:335–342, 2004.

Hulot JS, Villard E, Maguy A, et al: A mutation in the drug transporter gene ABCC2 associated with impaired methotrexate elimination, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 15:277–285, 2005.

Hung SI, Chung WH, Jee SH, et al: Genetic susceptibility to carbamazepine-induced cutaneous adverse drug reactions, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 16:297–306, 2006.

Hung SI, Chung WH, Liou LB, et al: HLA-B*5801 allele as a genetic marker for severe cutaneous adverse reactions caused by allopurinol, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 102:4134–4139, 2005.

Ichikawa W, Takahashi T, Suto K, et al: Orotate phosphoribosyltransferase gene polymorphism predicts toxicity in patients treated with bolus 5-fluorouracil regimen, *Clin Cancer Res* 12:3928–3934, 2006.

Ichikawa W, Uetake H, Shirota Y, et al: Both gene expression for orotate phosphoribosyltransferase and its ratio to dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase influence outcome following fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy for metastatic colorectal cancer, *Br J Cancer* 89:1486–1492, 2003.

Ieiri I, Takane H, Otsubo K: The MDR1 (ABCB1) gene polymorphism and its clinical implications, *Clin Pharmacokinet* 43:553–576, 2004.

Iida A, Saito S, Sekine A, et al: Catalog of 605 single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) among 13 genes encoding human ATP-binding cassette transporters: ABCA4, ABCA7, ABCA8, ABCD1, ABCD3, ABCD4, ABCE1, ABCF1, ABCG1, ABCG2, ABCG4, ABCG5, and ABCG8, *J Hum Genet* 47:285–310, 2002.

Illing PT, Vivian JP, Dudek NL, et al: Immune self-reactivity triggered by drug-modified HLA-peptide repertoire, *Nature* 486:554–558, 2012.

Imai Y, Nakane M, Kage K, et al: C421A polymorphism in the human breast cancer resistance protein gene is associated with low expression of Q141K protein and low-level drug resistance, *Mol Cancer Ther* 1:611–616, 2002.

Ingelman-Sundberg M: Pharmacogenetics of cytochrome P450 and its applications in drug therapy: the past, present and future, *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 25:193–200, 2004.

Innocenti F, Undevia SD, Iyer L, et al: Genetic variants in the UDP-glucuronosyltransferase 1A1 gene predict the risk of severe neutropenia of irinotecan, *J Clin Oncol* 22:1382–1388, 2004.

Ishikawa T, Tamura A, Saito H, et al: Pharmacogenomics of the human ABC transporter ABCG2: from functional evaluation to drug molecular design, *Naturwissenschaften* 92:451–463, 2005.

Isla D, Sarries C, Rosell R, et al: Single nucleotide polymorphisms and outcome in docetaxel-cisplatin-treated advanced non-small-cell lung cancer, *Ann Oncol* 15:1194–1203, 2004.

Iyer L, Das S, Janisch L, et al: UGT1A1*28 polymorphism as a determinant of irinotecan disposition and toxicity, *Pharmacogenomics J* 2:43–47, 2002.

Izzedine H, Hulot JS, Villard E, et al: Association between ABCC2 gene haplotypes and tenofovir-induced proximal tubulopathy, *J Infect Dis* 194:1481–1491, 2006.

Janne PA, Johnson BE: Effect of epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase domain mutations on the outcome of patients with non-small cell lung cancer treated with epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors, *Clin Cancer Res* 12:4416s–4420s, 2006.

Jeffries MA, Sawalha AH: Autoimmune disease in the epigenetic era: how has epigenetics changed our understanding of disease and how can we expect the field to evolve?, *Expert Rev Clin Immunol* 11:45–58, 2015.

Jensen SA, Vainer B, Witton CJ, et al: Prognostic significance of numeric aberrations of genes for thymidylate synthase, thymidine phosphorylase and dihydrofolate reductase in colorectal cancer, *Acta Oncol* 47:1054–1061, 2008.

Jiang WJ: Sirtuins: novel targets for metabolic disease in drug development, *Biochem Biophy Res Commun* 373:341–344, 2008.

Jin Y, Hayes DF, Li L, et al: Estrogen receptor genotypes influence hot flash prevalence and composite score before and after tamoxifen therapy, *J Clin Oncol* 26:5849–5854, 2008.

Johnston PG, Lenz HJ, Leichman CG, et al: Thymidylate synthase gene and protein expression correlate and are associated with response to 5-fluorouracil in human colorectal and gastric tumors, *Cancer Res* 55:1407–1412, 1995.

Jonker JW, Buitelaar M, Wagenaar E, et al: The breast cancer resistance protein protects against a major chlorophyll-derived dietary phototoxin and protoporphyria, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 99:15649–15654, 2002.

Jonker JW, Smit JW, Brinkhuis RF, et al: Role of breast cancer resistance protein in the bioavailability and fetal penetration of topotecan, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 92:1651–1656, 2000.

Kalow W: Pharmacogenomics: historical perspective and current status. In Innocenti F, editor: *Methods in molecular biology, vol. 311: pharmacogenomics: methods and protocols*, Totowa, NJ, 2008, Humana Press, pp 3–15.

Kameyama Y, Yamashita K, Kobayashi K, et al: Functional characterization of SLCO1B1 (OATP-C) variants, SLCO1B1*5, SLCO1B1*15 and SLCO1B1*15 +C1007G, by using transient expression systems of HeLa and HEK293 cells, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 15: 513–522, 2005.

Kang HR, Jee YK, Kim YS, et al: Positive and negative associations of HLA class I alleles with allopurinol-induced SCARs in Koreans, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 21:303–307, 2011.
Kang S, Ju W, Kim JW, et al: Association between excision repair cross-complementation group 1 polymorphism and clinical outcome of platinum-based chemotherapy in patients with epithelial ovarian cancer, *Exp Mol Med* 38:320–324, 2006.
Kang ES, Park SY, Kim HJ, et al: Effects of Pro12Ala polymorphism of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma2 gene on rosiglitazone response in type 2 diabetes, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 78:202–208, 2005.
Kaniwa N, Saito Y, Aihara M, et al: HLA-B locus in Japanese patients with anti-epileptics and allopurinol-related Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis, *Pharmacogenomics* 9:1617–1622, 2008.
Kapur S, Sharad S, Singh RA, et al: A118G polymorphism in mu opioid receptor gene (OPRM1): association with opiate addiction in subjects of Indian origin, *J Integr Neurosci* 6:511–522, 2007.
Kawakami K, Omura K, Kanehira E, et al: Polymorphic tandem repeats in the thymidylate synthase gene is associated with its protein expression in human gastrointestinal cancers, *Anticancer Res* 19:3249–3252, 1999.
Kerb R: Implications of genetic polymorphisms in drug transporters for pharmacotherapy, *Cancer Lett* 234:4–33, 2006.
Khanna D, Khanna PP, Fitzgerald JD, et al: American College of Rheumatology guidelines for management of gout. Part 2: therapy and antiinflammatory prophylaxis of acute gouty arthritis, *Arthritis Care Res* 64:1447–1461, 2012.
Kim RB: MDR1 single nucleotide polymorphisms: multiplicity of haplotypes and functional consequences, *Pharmacogenetics* 12:425–427, 2002.
Kim SH, Lee KW, Song WJ, et al: Carbamazepine-induced severe cutaneous adverse reactions and HLA genotypes in Koreans, *Epilepsy Res* 97:190–197, 2011.
Kimchi-Sarfaty C, Oh JM, Kim IW, et al: A "silent" polymorphism in the MDR1 gene changes substrate specificity, *Science* 315:525–528, 2007.
Kitagawa C, Ando M, Ando Y, et al: Genetic polymorphism in the phenobarbital-responsive enhancer module of the UDP-glucuronosyltransferase 1A1 gene and irinotecan toxicity, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 15:35–41, 2005.
Ko TM, Chung WH, Wei CY, et al: Shared and restricted T-cell receptor use is crucial for carbamazepine-induced Stevens-Johnson syndrome, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 128:1266–1276.e11, 2011.
Kobayashi D, Ieiri I, Hirota T, et al: Functional assessment of ABCG2 (BCRP) gene polymorphisms to protein expression in human placenta, *Drug Metab Dispos* 33:94–101, 2005.
Kondo C, Onuki R, Kusuhara H, et al: Lack of improvement of oral absorption of ME3277 by prodrug formation is ascribed to the intestinal efflux mediated by breast cancer resistant protein (BCRP/ABCG2), *Pharm Res* 22:613–618, 2005.
Konig J, Seithel A, Gradhand U, et al: Pharmacogenomics of human OATP transporters, *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol* 372:432–443, 2006.
Kris MG, Natale RB, Herbst RS, et al: Efficacy of gefitinib, an inhibitor of the epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase, in symptomatic patients with non-small cell lung cancer: a randomized trial, *JAMA* 290:2149–2158, 2003.
Krishnamurthy P, Schuetz JD: Role of ABCG2/BCRP in biology and medicine, *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 46:381–410, 2005.
Kulkantrakorn K, Tassaneeyakul W, Tiamkao S, et al: HLA-B*1502 strongly predicts carbamazepine-induced Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis in Thai patients with neuropathic pain, *Pain Pract* 12:202–208, 2012.
Kumar A, Petri ET, Halmos B, et al: Structure and clinical relevance of the epidermal growth factor receptor in human cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 26:1742–1751, 2008.
Kuptsova N, Kopecky KJ, Godwin J, et al: Polymorphisms in DNA repair genes and therapeutic outcomes of AML patients from SWOG clinical trials, *Blood* 109:3936–3944, 2007.
Lakhman SS, Ma Q, Morse GD: Pharmacogenomics of CYP3A: considerations for HIV treatment, *Pharmacogenomics* 10:1323–1339, 2009.
Leichman CG, Lenz HJ, Leichman L, et al: Quantitation of intratumoral thymidylate synthase expression predicts for disseminated colorectal cancer response and resistance to protracted-infusion fluorouracil and weekly leucovorin, *J Clin Oncol* 15:3223–3229, 1997.
Lepper ER, Nooter K, Verweij J, et al: Mechanisms of resistance to anticancer drugs: the role of the polymorphic ABC transporters ABCB1 and ABCG2, *Pharmacogenomics* 6:115–138, 2005.
Leslie EM, Letourneau IJ, Deeley RG, et al: Functional and structural consequences of cysteine substitutions in the NH2 proximal region of the human multidrug resistance protein 1 (MRP1/ABCC1), *Biochemistry* 42:5214–5224, 2003.
Letschert K, Keppler D, Konig J: Mutations in the SLCO1B3 gene affecting the substrate specificity of the hepatocellular uptake transporter OATP1B3 (OATP8), *Pharmacogenetics* 14:441–452, 2004.
Li D, Li Y, Jiao L, et al: Effects of base excision repair gene polymorphisms on pancreatic cancer survival, *Int J Cancer* 120:1748–1754, 2007a.
Li J, Bluth MH: Pharmacogenomics of drug metabolizing enzymes and transporters: implications for cancer therapy, *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 4:11–33, 2011.
Li J, Cusatis G, Brahmer J, et al: Association of variant ABCG2 and the pharmacokinetics of epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors in cancer patients, *Cancer Biol Ther* 6:432–438, 2007b.
Likanonsakul S, Rattanatham T, Feangvad S, et al: HLA-Cw*04 allele associated with nevirapine-induced rash in HIV-infected Thai patients, *AIDS Res Ther* 6:22, 2009.
Lim HS, Ju Lee H, Seok Lee K, et al: Clinical implications of CYP2D6 genotypes predictive of tamoxifen pharmacokinetics in metastatic breast cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 25:3837–3845, 2007.
Lin E, Hwang Y, Tzeng CM: A case study of the utility of the HapMap database for pharmacogenomic haplotype analysis in the Taiwanese population, *Mol Diagn Ther* 10:367–370, 2006.
Lin E, Chen PS: Pharmacogenomics with antidepressants in the STAR*D study, *Pharmacogenomics* 9:935–946, 2008.
Link E, Parish S, Armitage J, et al: SLCO1B1 variants and statin-induced myopathy–a genomewide study, *N Engl J Med* 359:789–799, 2008.
Littera R, Carcassi C, Masala A, et al: HLA-dependent hypersensitivity to nevirapine in Sardinian HIV patients, *AIDS* 20:1621–1626, 2006.
Liu R, Paxton WA, Choe S, et al: Homozygous defect in HIV-1 coreceptor accounts for resistance of some multiply-exposed individuals to HIV-1 infection, *Cell* 86:367–377, 1996.
Lo HW, Ali-Osman F: Genetic polymorphism and function of glutathione S-transferases in tumor drug resistance, *Curr Opin Pharmacol* 7:367–374, 2007.
Lonjou C, Thomas L, Borot N, et al: A marker for Stevens-Johnson syndrome ... : Ethnicity matters, *Pharmacogenomics J* 6:265–268, 2006.
Lu Z, Zhang R, Diasio RB: Dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase activity in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells and liver: population characteristics, newly identified deficient patients, and clinical implication in 5-fluorouracil chemotherapy, *Cancer Res* 53:5433–5438, 1993.
Lucire Y, Crotty C: Antidepressant-induced akathisia-related homicides associated with diminishing mutations in metabolizing genes of the CYP450 family, *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 4:65–81, 2011.
Ludovico O, Pellegrini F, Di Paola R, et al: Heterogeneous effect of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma2 Ala12 variant on type 2 diabetes risk, *Obesity (Silver Spring)* 15:1076–1081, 2007.
Luo FR, Paranjpe PV, Guo A, et al: Intestinal transport of irinotecan in Caco-2 cells and MDCK II cells over-expressing efflux transporters Pgp, cMOAT, and MRP1, *Drug Metab Dispos* 30:763–770, 2002.
Lurje G, Manegold PC, Ning Y, et al: Thymidylate synthase gene variations: predictive and prognostic markers, *Mol Cancer Ther* 8:1000–1007, 2009.
Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R, et al: Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib, *N Engl J Med* 350:2129–2139, 2004.
Mahungu T, Smith C, Turner F, et al: Cytochrome P450 2B6 516G–>T is associated with plasma concentrations of nevirapine at both 200 mg twice daily and 400 mg once daily in an ethnically diverse population, *HIV Med* 10:310–317, 2009.
Maier S, Olek A: Diabetes: a candidate disease for efficient DNA methylation profiling, *J Nutr* 132:2440S–2443S, 2002.
Mallal S, Nolan D, Witt C, et al: Association between presence of HLA-B*5701, HLA-DR7, and HLA-DQ3 and hypersensitivity to HIV-1 reverse-transcriptase inhibitor abacavir, *Lancet* 359:727–732, 2002.
Mallal S, Phillips E, Carosi G, et al: HLA-B*5701 screening for hypersensitivity to abacavir, *N Engl J Med* 358:568–579, 2008.
Mancinelli L, Cronin M, Sadée W: Pharmacogenomics: The promise of personalized medicine, *AAPS PharmSci* 2:E4, 2000.
Mandola MV, Stoehlmacher J, Muller-Weeks S, et al: A novel single nucleotide polymorphism within the 5' tandem repeat polymorphism of the thymidylate synthase gene abolishes USF-1 binding and alters transcriptional activity, *Cancer Res* 63:2898–2904, 2003.
Mandola MV, Stoehlmacher J, Zhang W, et al: A 6 bp polymorphism in the thymidylate synthase gene causes message instability and is associated with decreased intratumoral TS mRNA levels, *Pharmacogenetics* 14:319–327, 2004.
Mansour HA, Alda M, Nimgaonkar VL: Pharmacogenetics of bipolar disorder, *Curr Psychiatry Rep* 4:117–123, 2002.
Marini F, Brandi ML: Pharmacogenetics of osteoporosis, *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab* 28:783–793, 2014.
Marsh S: Thymidylate synthase pharmacogenetics, *Invest New Drugs* 23:533–537, 2005.
Martin AM, Nolan D, James I, et al: Predisposition to nevirapine hypersensitivity associated with HLA-DRB1*0101 and abrogated by low CD4 T-cell counts, *AIDS* 19:97–99, 2005.
Marzolini C, Paus E, Buclin T, et al: Polymorphisms in human MDR1 (P-glycoprotein): recent advances and clinical relevance, *Clinical Pharmacol Ther* 75:13–33, 2004a.
Marzolini C, Tirona RG, Kim RB: Pharmacogenomics of the OATP and OAT families, *Pharmacogenomics* 5:273–282, 2004b.
Massart F, Marcucci G, Brandi ML: Pharmacogenetics of bone treatments: the VDR and ERalpha gene story, *Pharmacogenomics* 9:733–746, 2008.
Mathijssen RH, Marsh S, Karlsson MO, et al: Irinotecan pathway genotype analysis to predict pharmacokinetics, *Clin Cancer Res* 9:3246–3253, 2003.
Mathijssen RH, van Alphen RJ, Verweij J, et al: Clinical pharmacokinetics and metabolism of irinotecan (CPT-11), *Clin Cancer Res* 7:2182–2194, 2001.
McCormack M, Alfirevic A, Bourgeois S, et al: HLA-A*3101 and carbamazepine-induced hypersensitivity reactions in Europeans, *N Engl J Med* 364:1134–1143, 2011.
McIlwain CC, Townsend DM, Tew KD: Glutathione S-transferase polymorphisms: cancer incidence and therapy, *Oncogene* 25:1639–1648, 2006.
Mehta TY, Prajapati LM, Mittal B, et al: Association of HLA-B*1502 allele and carbamazepine-induced Stevens-Johnson syndrome among Indians, *Indian J Dermatol Venereol Leprol* 75:579–582, 2009.
Meier Y, Pauli-Magnus C, Zanger UM, et al: Interindividual variability of canalicular ATP-binding-cassette (ABC)-transporter expression in human liver, *Hepatology* 44:62–74, 2006.
Merino G, Jonker JW, Wagenaar E, et al: The breast cancer resistance protein (BCRP/ABCG2) affects pharmacokinetics, hepatobiliary excretion, and milk secretion of the antibiotic nitrofurantoin, *Mol Pharmacol* 67:1758–1764, 2005.
Meyer zu Schwabedissen HE, Jedlitschky G, Gratz M, et al: Variable expression of MRP2 (ABCC2) in human placenta: influence of gestational age and cellular differentiation, *Drug Metab Dispos* 33:896–904, 2005.
Meyer zu Schwabedissen HE, Kim RB: Hepatic OATP1B transporters and nuclear receptors PXR and CAR: interplay, regulation of drug disposition genes, and single nucleotide polymorphisms, *Mol Pharm* 6:1644–1661, 2009.
Mitomo H, Kato R, Ito A, et al: A functional study on polymorphism of the ATP-binding cassette transporter ABCG2: critical role of arginine-482 in methotrexate transport, *Biochem J* 373:767–774, 2003.
Mizuarai S, Aozasa N, Kotani H: Single nucleotide polymorphisms result in impaired membrane localization and reduced ATPase activity in multidrug transporter ABCG2, *Int J Cancer* 109:238–246, 2004.
Mizutani T: PM frequencies of major CYPs in Asians and Caucasians, *Drug Metab Rev* 35:99–106, 2003.
Morel A, Boisdron-Celle M, Fey L, et al: Clinical relevance of different dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase

gene single nucleotide polymorphisms on 5-fluorouracil tolerance, *Mol Cancer Ther* 5:2895–2904, 2006.
Moreno V, Gemignani F, Landi S, et al: Polymorphisms in genes of nucleotide and base excision repair: risk and prognosis of colorectal cancer, *Clin Cancer Res* 12:2101–2108, 2006.
Moullan N, Cox DG, Angele S, et al: Polymorphisms in the DNA repair gene XRCC1, breast cancer risk, and response to radiotherapy, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 12:1168–1174, 2003.
Nagar S, Remmel RP: Uridine diphosphoglucuronosyltransferase pharmacogenetics and cancer, *Oncogene* 25:1659–1672, 2006.
Nguyen TV, Center JR, Eisman JA: Pharmacogenetics of osteoporosis and the prospect of individualized prognosis and individualized therapy, *Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes* 15:481–488, 2008.
Niemi M: Role of OATP transporters in the disposition of drugs, *Pharmacogenomics* 8:787–802, 2007.
Niemi M, Backman JT, Kajosaari LI, et al: Polymorphic organic anion transporting polypeptide 1B1 is a major determinant of repaglinide pharmacokinetics, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 77:468–478, 2005.
Niemi M, Pasanen MK, Neuvonen PJ: SLCO1B1 polymorphism and sex affect the pharmacokinetics of pravastatin but not fluvastatin, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 80:356–366, 2006.
Nishizato Y, Ieiri I, Suzuki H, et al: Polymorphisms of OATP-C (SLC21A6) and OAT3 (SLC22A8) genes: consequences for pravastatin pharmacokinetics, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 73:554–565, 2003.
Norcross MA, Luo S, Lu L, et al: Abacavir induces loading of novel self-peptides into HLA-B*57: 01: an autoimmune model for HLA-associated drug hypersensitivity, *AIDS* 26:F21–F29, 2012.
Nowell S, Falany C: Pharmacogenetics of human cytosolic sulfotransferases, *Oncogene* 25:1673–1678, 2006.
Nowell S, Sweeney C, Winters M, et al: Association between sulfotransferase 1A1 genotype and survival of breast cancer patients receiving tamoxifen therapy, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 94:1635–1640, 2002.
Nowell SA, Ahn J, Rae JM, et al: Association of genetic variation in tamoxifen-metabolizing enzymes with overall survival and recurrence of disease in breast cancer patients, *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 91:249–258, 2005.
Nozawa T, Minami H, Sugiura S, et al: Role of organic anion transporter OATP1B1 (OATP-C) in hepatic uptake of irinotecan and its active metabolite, 7-ethyl-10-hydroxycamptothecin: in vitro evidence and effect of single nucleotide polymorphisms, *Drug Metab Dispos* 33:434–439, 2005.
Nozawa T, Nakajima M, Tamai I, et al: Genetic polymorphisms of human organic anion transporters OATP-C (SLC21A6) and OATP-B (SLC21A9): allele frequencies in the Japanese population and functional analysis, *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 302:804–813, 2002.
Omura K: Clinical implications of dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase (DPD) activity in 5-FU-based chemotherapy: mutations in the DPD gene, and DPD inhibitory fluoropyrimidines, *Int J Clin Oncol* 8:132–138, 2003.
Ostrov DA, Grant BJ, Pompeu YA, et al: Drug hypersensitivity caused by alteration of the MHC-presented self-peptide repertoire, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 109:9959–9964, 2012.
Ozeki T, Mushiroda T, Yowang A, et al: Genome-wide association study identifies HLA-A*3101 allele as a genetic risk factor for carbamazepine-induced cutaneous adverse drug reactions in Japanese population, *Hum Mol Genet* 20:1034–1041, 2011.
Padovan E, Bauer T, Tongio MM, et al: Penicilloyl peptides are recognized as T cell antigenic determinants in penicillin allergy, *Eur J Immunol* 27:1303–1307, 1997.
Paez JG, Janne PA, Lee JC, et al: EGFR mutations in lung cancer: correlation with clinical response to gefitinib therapy, *Science* 304:1497–1500, 2004.
Pao W, Miller V, Zakowski M, et al: EGF receptor gene mutations are common in lung cancers from "never smokers" and are associated with sensitivity of tumors to gefitinib and erlotinib, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 101:13306–13311, 2004.
Park DJ, Stoehlmacher J, Zhang W, et al: A Xeroderma pigmentosum group D gene polymorphism predicts clinical outcome to platinum-based chemotherapy in patients with advanced colorectal cancer, *Cancer Res* 61:8654–8658, 2001.
Park DJ, Zhang W, Stoehlmacher J, et al: ERCC1 gene polymorphism as a predictor for clinical outcome in advanced colorectal cancer patients treated with platinum-based chemotherapy, *Clin Adv Hematol Oncol* 1:162–166, 2003.
Parte P, Kupfer D: Oxidation of tamoxifen by human flavin-containing monooxygenase (FMO) 1 and FMO3 to tamoxifen-N-oxide and its novel reduction back to tamoxifen by human cytochromes P450 and hemoglobin, *Drug Metab Dispos* 33:1446–1452, 2005.
Pauli-Magnus C, Kroetz DL: Functional implications of genetic polymorphisms in the multidrug resistance gene MDR1 (ABCB1), *Pharm Res* 21:904–913, 2004.
Pavlos R, Mallal S, Phillips E: HLA and pharmacogenetics of drug hypersensitivity, *Pharmacogenomics* 13: 1285–1306, 2012.
Pawlyk AC, Giacomini KM, McKeon C, et al: Metformin pharmacogenomics: current status and future directions, *Diabetes* 63:2590–2599, 2014.
Pearson ER: Pharmacogenetics and future strategies in treating hyperglycaemia in diabetes, *Front Biosci* 14: 4348–4362, 2009.
Pentikainen PJ, Neuvonen PJ, Penttila A: Pharmacokinetics of metformin after intravenous and oral administration to man, *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 16:195–202, 1979.
Petty WJ, Knight SN, Mosley L, et al: A pharmacogenomic study of docetaxel and gemcitabine for the initial treatment of advanced non-small cell lung cancer, *J Thorac Oncol* 2:197–202, 2007.
Pollard RB, Robinson P, Dransfield K: Safety profile of nevirapine, a nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus infection, *Clin Ther* 20:1071–1092, 1998.
Popat S, Matakidou A, Houlston RS: Thymidylate synthase expression and prognosis in colorectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *J Clin Oncol* 22: 529–536, 2004.
Premawardhena A, Fisher CA, Liu YT, et al: The global distribution of length polymorphisms of the promoters of the glucuronosyltransferase 1 gene (UGT1A1): hematologic and evolutionary implications, *Blood Cells Mol Dis* 31:98–101, 2003.
Province MA, Goetz MP, Brauch H, et al: CYP2D6 genotype and adjuvant tamoxifen: meta-analysis of heterogeneous study populations, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 95:216–227, 2014.
Pullarkat ST, Stoehlmacher J, Ghaderi V, et al: Thymidylate synthase gene polymorphism determines response and toxicity of 5-FU chemotherapy, *Pharmacogenomics J* 1:65–70, 2001.
Rae JM, Drury S, Hayes DF, et al: CYP2D6 and UGT2B7 genotype and risk of recurrence in tamoxifen-treated breast cancer patients, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 104:452–460, 2012.
Raymond E, Faivre S, Armand JP: Epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase as a target for anticancer therapy, *Drugs* 60(Suppl 1):15–23; discussion 41-42, 2000.
Regan MM, Leyland-Jones B, Bouzyk M, et al: CYP2D6 genotype and tamoxifen response in postmenopausal women with endocrine-responsive breast cancer: the breast international group 1-98 trial, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 104:441–451, 2012.
Riancho JA, Hernández JL: Pharmacogenomics of osteoporosis: a pathway approach, *Pharmacogenomics* 13:815–829, 2012.
Rivory LP, Riou JF, Haaz MC, et al: Identification and properties of a major plasma metabolite of irinotecan (CPT-11) isolated from the plasma of patients, *Cancer Res* 56:3689–3694, 1996.
Rodriguez-Antona C, Ingelman-Sundberg M: Cytochrome P450 pharmacogenetics and cancer, *Oncogene* 25:1679–1691, 2006.
Rothnie A, Callaghan R, Deeley RG, et al: Role of GSH in estrone sulfate binding and translocation by the multidrug resistance protein 1 (MRP1/ABCC1), *J Biol Chem* 281:13906–13914, 2006.
Roy JN, Lajoie J, Zijenah LS, et al: CYP3A5 genetic polymorphisms in different ethnic populations, *Drug Metab Dispos* 33:884–887, 2005.
Rudolph MG, Stanfield RL, Wilson IA: How TCRs bind MHCs, peptides, and coreceptors, *Ann Rev Immunol* 24:419–466, 2006.
Russo VEA, Martienssen RA, Riggs AD: *Epigenetic mechanisms of gene regulation*, Plainview, N.Y., 1996, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press.
Ruzzo A, Graziano F, Kawakami K, et al: Pharmacogenetic profiling and clinical outcome of patients with advanced gastric cancer treated with palliative chemotherapy, *J Clin Oncol* 24:1883–1891, 2006.
Ruzzo A, Graziano F, Loupakis F, et al: Pharmacogenetic profiling in patients with advanced colorectal cancer treated with first-line FOLFIRI chemotherapy, *Pharmacogenomics J* 8:278–288, 2008.
Ryu JS, Hong YC, Han HS, et al: Association between polymorphisms of ERCC1 and XPD and survival in non-small-cell lung cancer patients treated with cisplatin combination chemotherapy, *Lung Cancer* 44: 311–316, 2004.
Sakaeda T: MDR1 genotype-related pharmacokinetics: fact or fiction?, *Drug Metab Pharmacokinet* 20:391–414, 2005.
Salonga D, Danenberg KD, Johnson M, et al: Colorectal tumors responding to 5-fluorouracil have low gene expression levels of dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase, thymidylate synthase, and thymidine phosphorylase, *Clin Cancer Res* 6:1322–1327, 2000.
Saltz LB, Cox JV, Blanke C, et al: Irinotecan plus fluorouracil and leucovorin for metastatic colorectal cancer. Irinotecan Study Group, *N Engl J Med* 343: 905–914, 2000.
Schackman BR, Scott CA, Walensky RP, et al: The cost-effectiveness of HLA-B*5701 genetic screening to guide initial antiretroviral therapy for HIV, *AIDS* 22: 2025–2033, 2008.
Schellens JH, Maliepaard M, Scheper RJ, et al: Transport of topoisomerase I inhibitors by the breast cancer resistance protein. Potential clinical implications, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 922:188–194, 2000.
Schroth W, Antoniadou L, Fritz P, et al: Breast cancer treatment outcome with adjuvant tamoxifen relative to patient CYP2D6 and CYP2C19 genotypes, *J Clin Oncol* 25:5187–5193, 2007.
Schroth W, Goetz MP, Hamann U, et al: Association between CYP2D6 polymorphisms and outcomes among women with early stage breast cancer treated with tamoxifen, *JAMA* 302:1429–1436, 2009.
Semiz S, Dujic T, Causevic A: Pharmacogenetics and personalized treatment of type 2 diabetes, *Biochem Med* 23:154–171, 2013.
Serretti A, Lilli R, Smeraldi E: Pharmacogenetics in affective disorders, *Eur J Pharmacol* 438:117–128, 2002.
Shapiro M, Ward KM, Stern JJ: A near-fatal hypersensitivity reaction to abacavir: case report and literature review, *AIDS Read* 11:222–226, 2001.
Sharma SV, Bell DW, Settleman J, et al: Epidermal growth factor receptor mutations in lung cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 7:169–181, 2007.
Shepherd FA, Rodrigues Pereira J, Ciuleanu T, et al: Erlotinib in previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer, *N Engl J Med* 353:123–132, 2005.
Shu Y, Sheardown SA, Brown C, et al: Effect of genetic variation in the organic cation transporter 1 (OCT1) on metformin action, *J Clin Invest* 117:1422–1431, 2007.
Sim E, Lack N, Wang CJ, et al: Arylamine N-acetyltransferases: structural and functional implications of polymorphisms, *Toxicology* 254:170–183, 2008.
Sistonen J, Sajantila A, Lao O, et al: CYP2D6 worldwide genetic variation shows high frequency of altered activity variants and no continental structure, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 17:93–101, 2007.
Skierka JM, Walker DL, Peterson SE, et al: CYP2D6*11 and challenges in clinical genotyping of the highly polymorphic CYP2D6 gene, *Pharmacogenomics* 13:951–954, 2012.
Slatter JG, Su P, Sams JP, et al: Bioactivation of the anticancer agent CPT-11 to SN-38 by human hepatic microsomal carboxylesterases and the in vitro assessment of potential drug interactions, *Drug Metab Dispos* 25:1157–1164, 1997.
Solus JF, Arietta BJ, Harris JR, et al: Genetic variation in eleven phase I drug metabolism genes in an ethnically diverse population, *Pharmacogenomics* 5:895–931, 2004.
Somkrua R, Eickman EE, Saokaew S, et al: Association of HLA-B*5801 allele and allopurinol-induced Stevens Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis: a systematic review and meta-analysis, *BMC Med Genet* 12:118, 2011.
Song IS, Shin HJ, Shim EJ, et al: Genetic variants of the organic cation transporter 2 influence the disposition of metformin, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 84:559–562, 2008.
Soong R, Shah N, Salto-Tellez M, et al: Prognostic significance of thymidylate synthase, dihydropyrimidine

dehydrogenase and thymidine phosphorylase protein expression in colorectal cancer patients treated with or without 5-fluorouracil-based chemotherapy, *Ann Oncol* 19:915–919, 2008.
Sparreboom A, Gelderblom H, Marsh S, et al: Diflomotecan pharmacokinetics in relation to ABCG2 421C>A genotype, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 76:38–44, 2004.
Sparreboom A, Loos WJ, Burger H, et al: Effect of ABCG2 genotype on the oral bioavailability of topotecan, *Cancer Biol Ther* 4:650–658, 2005.
Stearns V, Johnson MD, Rae JM, et al: Active tamoxifen metabolite plasma concentrations after coadministration of tamoxifen and the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor paroxetine, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 95:1758–1764, 2003.
Stoehlmacher J, Ghaderi V, Iobal S, et al: A polymorphism of the XRCC1 gene predicts for response to platinum based treatment in advanced colorectal cancer, *Anticancer Res* 21:3075–3079, 2001.
Suarez-Kurtz G: Pharmacogenomics in admixed populations, *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 26:196–201, 2005.
Suk R, Gurubhagavatula S, Park S, et al: Polymorphisms in ERCC1 and grade 3 or 4 toxicity in non-small cell lung cancer patients, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:1534–1538, 2005.
Tamura A, Wakabayashi K, Onishi Y, et al: Re-evaluation and functional classification of non-synonymous single nucleotide polymorphisms of the human ATP-binding cassette transporter ABCG2, *Cancer Sci* 98: 231–239, 2007.
Tamura A, Watanabe M, Saito H, et al: Functional validation of the genetic polymorphisms of human ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter ABCG2: identification of alleles that are defective in porphyrin transport, *Mol Pharmacol* 70:287–296, 2006.
Tassaneeyakul W, Jantararoungtong T, Chen P, et al: Strong association between HLA-B*5801 and allopurinol-induced Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis in a Thai population, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 19:704–709, 2009.
Tassaneeyakul W, Tiamkao S, Jantararoungtong T, et al: Association between HLA-B*1502 and carbamazepine-induced severe cutaneous adverse drug reactions in a Thai population, *Epilepsia* 51:926–930, 2010.
Thatcher N, Chang A, Parikh P, et al: Gefitinib plus best supportive care in previously treated patients with refractory advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomised, placebo-controlled, multicentre study (Iressa Survival Evaluation in Lung Cancer), *Lancet* 366:1527–1537, 2005.
Then SM, Rani ZZ, Raymond AA, et al: Frequency of the HLA-B*1502 allele contributing to carbamazepine-induced hypersensitivity reactions in a cohort of Malaysian epilepsy patients, *Asian Pac J Allergy Immunol* 29:290–293, 2011.
Thijssen JH: Gene polymorphisms involved in the regulation of bone quality, *Gynecol Endocrinol* 22:131–139, 2006.
Tirona RG, Leake BF, Merino G, et al: Polymorphisms in OATP-C: identification of multiple allelic variants associated with altered transport activity among European- and African-Americans, *J Biol Chem* 276:35669–35675, 2001.
Tukey RH, Strassburg CP, Mackenzie PI: Pharmacogenomics of human UDP-glucuronosyltransferases and irinotecan toxicity, *Mol Pharmacol* 62:446–450, 2002.
Tzvetkov MV, Vormfelde SV, Balen D, et al: The effects of genetic polymorphisms in the organic cation transporters OCT1, OCT2, and OCT3 on the renal clearance of metformin, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 86:299–306, 2009.
van Kuilenburg AB, Meinsma R, Zonnenberg BA, et al: Dihydropyrimidinase deficiency and severe 5-fluorouracil toxicity, *Clin Cancer Res* 9:4363–4367, 2003.
Van Kuilenburg AB, Vreken P, Beex LV, et al: Heterozygosity for a point mutation in an invariant splice donor site of dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase and severe 5-fluorouracil related toxicity, *Eur J Cancer* 33:2258–2264, 1997.
van Schaik RH: Cancer treatment and pharmacogenetics of cytochrome P450 enzymes, *Invest New Drugs* 23:513–522, 2005.
Vangsted A, Gimsing P, Klausen TW, et al: Polymorphisms in the genes ERCC2, XRCC3 and CD3EAP influence treatment outcome in multiple myeloma patients undergoing autologous bone marrow transplantation, *Int J Cancer* 120:1036–1045, 2007.
Vitezica ZG, Milpied B, Lonjou C, et al: HLA-DRB1*01 associated with cutaneous hypersensitivity induced by nevirapine and efavirenz, *AIDS* 22:540–541, 2008.
Vogelgesang S, Kunert-Keil C, Cascorbi I, et al: Expression of multidrug transporters in dysembryoplastic neuroepithelial tumors causing intractable epilepsy, *Clin Neuropathol* 23:223–231, 2004.
Vreken P, Van Kuilenburg AB, Meinsma R, et al: A point mutation in an invariant splice donor site leads to exon skipping in two unrelated Dutch patients with dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase deficiency, *J Inherit Metab Dis* 19:645–654, 1996.
Wacher VJ, Wu CY, Benet LZ: Overlapping substrate specificities and tissue distribution of cytochrome P450 3A and P-glycoprotein: implications for drug delivery and activity in cancer chemotherapy, *Mol Carcinog* 13:129–134, 1995.
Wang ZH, Miao XP, Tan W, et al: Single nucleotide polymorphisms in XRCC1 and clinical response to platin-based chemotherapy in advanced non-small cell lung cancer, *Ai Zheng* 23:865–868, 2004.
Wang ZJ, Yin OQ, Tomlinson B, et al: OCT2 polymorphisms and in-vivo renal functional consequence: studies with metformin and cimetidine, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 8:637–645, 2008.
Wegman P, Elingarami S, Carstensen J, et al: Genetic variants of CYP3A5, CYP2D6, SULT1A1, UGT2B15 and tamoxifen response in postmenopausal patients with breast cancer, *Breast Cancer Res* 9:R7, 2007.
Wegman P, Vainikka L, Stal O, et al: Genotype of metabolic enzymes and the benefit of tamoxifen in postmenopausal breast cancer patients, *Breast Cancer Res* 7:R284–R290, 2005.
Wei CY, Chung WH, Huang HW, et al: Direct interaction between HLA-B and carbamazepine activates T cells in patients with Stevens-Johnson syndrome, *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 129:1562–1569, e1565, 2012.
Wei X, McLeod HL, McMurrough J, et al: Molecular basis of the human dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase deficiency and 5-fluorouracil toxicity, *J Clin Invest* 98:610–615, 1996.
Westlind-Johnsson A, Hermann R, Huennemeyer A, et al: Identification and characterization of CYP3A4*20, a novel rare CYP3A4 allele without functional activity, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 79:339–349, 2006.
Wojnowski L, Kulle B, Schirmer M, et al: NAD(P)H oxidase and multidrug resistance protein genetic polymorphisms are associated with doxorubicin-induced cardiotoxicity, *Circulation* 112:3754–3762, 2005.
Wolinski SM, Korber BTM, Neumann AU, et al: Adaptive evolution of human immunodeficiency virus-type 1 during the natural course of infection, *Science* 272: 537–542, 1996.
Wood RD, Mitchell M, Sgouros J, et al: Human DNA repair genes, *Science* 291:1284–1289, 2001.
Woodburn JR: The epidermal growth factor receptor and its inhibition in cancer therapy, *Pharmacol Ther* 82:241–250, 1999.
Wu X, Gu J, Wu TT, et al: Genetic variations in radiation and chemotherapy drug action pathways predict clinical outcomes in esophageal cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 24:3789–3798, 2006.
Xiang X, Jada SR, Li HH, et al: Pharmacogenetics of SLCO1B1 gene and the impact of *1b and *15 haplotypes on irinotecan disposition in Asian cancer patients, *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 16:683–691, 2006.
Xie HG, Kim RB, Wood AJ, et al: Molecular basis of ethnic differences in drug disposition and response, *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 41:815–850, 2001.
Xu G, Bhatnagar V, Wen G, et al: Analyses of coding region polymorphisms in apical and basolateral human organic anion transporter (OAT) genes [OAT1 (NKT), OAT2, OAT3, OAT4, URAT (RST), *Kidney Int* 68:1491–1499, 2005.
Yoshida K, Higuchi H, Kamata M, et al: The G196A polymorphism of the brain-derived neurotrophic factor gene and the antidepressant effect of milnacipran and fluvoxamine, *J Psychopharmacol* 21:650–656, 2007.
Yu L, Chibnik LB, Srivastava GP, et al: Association of brain DNA methylation in SORL1, ABCA7, HLA-DRB5, SLC24A4, and BIN1 with pathological diagnosis of Alzheimer disease, *JAMA Neurol* 72:15–24, 2015.
Yuan J, Guo S, Hall D, et al: Toxicogenomics of nevirapine-associated cutaneous and hepatic adverse events among populations of African, Asian, and European descent, *AIDS* 25:1271–1280, 2011.
Zair ZM, Eloranta JJ, Stieger B, et al: Pharmacogenetics of OATP (SLC21/SLCO), OAT and OCT (SLC22) and PEPT (SLC15) transporters in the intestine, liver and kidney, *Pharmacogenomics* 9:597–624, 2008.
Zamber CP, Lamba JK, Yasuda K, et al: Natural allelic variants of breast cancer resistance protein (BCRP) and their relationship to BCRP expression in human intestine, *Pharmacogenetics* 13:19–28, 2003.
Zarate RN, Arias F, Bandres E, et al: Xeroderma pigmentosum group D 751 polymorphism as a predictive factor in resected gastric cancer treated with chemoradiotherapy, *World J Gastroenterol* 12:6032–6036, 2006.
Zhang QX, Borg A, Wolf DM, et al: An estrogen receptor mutant with strong hormone-independent activity from a metastatic breast cancer, *Cancer Res* 57:1244–1249, 1997.
Zhang S, Lovejoy KS, Shima JE, et al: Organic cation transporters are determinants of oxaliplatin cytotoxicity, *Cancer Res* 66:8847–8857, 2006.
Zhang W, Huang RS, Dolan E: Integrating epigenomics into pharmacogenomic studies, *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 1:7–14, 2008.
Zhou F, You G: Molecular insights into the structure-function relationship of organic anion transporters OATs, *Pharm Res* 24:28–36, 2007.
Zhou Q, Sparreboom A, Tan EH, et al: Pharmacogenetic profiling across the irinotecan pathway in Asian patients with cancer, *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 59:415–424, 2005.
Zhou S: Clinical pharmacogenomics of thiopurine S-methyltransferase, *Curr Clin Pharmacol* 1:119–128, 2006.
Zhou SF, Liu JP, Chowbay B: Polymorphism of human cytochrome P450 enzymes and its clinical impact, *Drug Metab Rev* 41:89–295, 2009.
Zhou W, Gurubhagavatula S, Liu G, et al: Excision repair cross-complementation group 1 polymorphism predicts overall survival in advanced non-small cell lung cancer patients treated with platinum-based chemotherapy, *Clin Cancer Res* 10:4939–4943, 2004.
Zimmet P, Alberti KG, Shaw J: Global and societal implications of the diabetes epidemic, *Nature* 414: 782–787, 2001.

PART 9

Molecular Pathology

EDITED BY

Matthew R. Pincus
Martin H. Bluth
Richard A. McPherson
Wilbur B. Bowne

CHAPTER 74

DIAGNOSIS AND MANAGEMENT OF CANCER USING SEROLOGIC AND OTHER BODY FLUID MARKERS

Shilpa Jain, Matthew R. Pincus, Martin H. Bluth, Richard A. McPherson, Wilbur B. Bowne, Peng Lee

SERUM MARKERS AS AN EFFECTIVE TOOL FOR DIAGNOSIS AND MONITORING OF CANCER, 1433

FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF TUMOR MARKERS, 1433
Oncoproteins Are Markers for Cell Proliferation, 1434
Tumor Suppressors/Cell Differentiation, 1434
Adhesion Molecules and Metastasis, 1434
Monoclonal Antibody–Defined Tumor Markers, 1434
Other Markers, 1434

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS, 1435
Screening, 1435
Diagnosis, 1435
Prognosis: Recurrence, Metastasis, and Survival, 1435
Monitoring Treatment Response, 1436

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ORDERING TUMOR MARKER TESTS, 1436

INDIVIDUAL TUMOR MARKERS, 1438
α-Fetoprotein, 1438
Angiogenic Factors, 1438
β_2-Microglobulin, 1438
Serum Free Light Chain Determinations, 1439
Carcinoembryonic Antigen, 1440
CA 15-3 and CA 27.29, 1440
CA 19-9, CA 50, and CA 19-5, 1440
CA 125, 1441
CA 72-4, 1441
Calcitonin, 1441
Chromogranin A, 1441
Cytokeratin 19 Fragment, 1441
Human Chorionic Gonadotropin, 1441
HER2/*neu* (c-*erb*B-2) Oncoprotein, 1442
p53, 1442
Parathyroid Hormone–Related Peptide, 1442
Serum Markers for Prostate Cancer, 1442

CIRCULATING TUMOR CELLS IN PERIPHERAL BLOOD, 1444

CIRCULATING NUCLEIC ACIDS IN PERIPHERAL BLOOD, 1445
Cell-Free Nucleic Acid Testing in Cancer, 1445
Gene Arrays Detecting Oncoprotein Abnormalities, 1446
Circulating microRNA, 1446
Gene Mutations, 1446
Microsatellite Alterations, 1446
Promoter Hypermethylation, 1446
Cell DNA Testing for Cancer Using Fluorescence in Situ Hybridization, 1447

MARKERS IN OTHER BODY FLUIDS, 1447
Urine Markers for Prostate Cancer, 1447
Urine Metabolic Test for Adenomatous Polyps of Colon, 1448
Fecal Occult Blood Testing and Mutant Protein Markers in Stool, 1448

CONCLUSIONS, 1448

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1449

KEY POINTS

- This chapter discusses the use of proteins, whose serum levels are often elevated in patients with malignancies, in the diagnosis and management of cancer.
- Many of these are so-called oncofetal antigens—that is, proteins that are expressed in fetal tissue during development but are not normally found in the tissues of adults. These include α-fetoprotein and carcinoembryonic antigen, whose serum levels are frequently elevated in hepatocellular and colon cancers, respectively.
- Other proteins, such as CA 19-9, CA 125, and CA 15-3, are expressed in epithelial cells and are also often present in the sera of patients with pancreatic, ovarian, and breast cancers, respectively.
- Because these "tumor marker" proteins are not tissue-specific and can also be expressed in diseases other than cancer, their sensitivities and specificities are not sufficiently high that they can be used as cancer-screening proteins. Their use is predominantly in following patients who are being treated for known malignancies.
- The exception to this is prostate-specific antigen (PSA), a chymotrypsin-like enzyme that is expressed almost exclusively in prostate tissue and is elevated in the sera of most patients with prostate cancer. Elevated serum PSA levels therefore have a high sensitivity for diagnosing prostate cancer. Because PSA is also elevated in other prostate diseases, such as benign prostatic hyperplasia, it has a lower specificity but nonetheless can still be used very effectively to screen patients for this disease.
- New developments in the field of early tumor detection using serum markers are also introduced in this chapter. These include use of mitogenic proteins, such as HER2/Neu, known to function as signal transduction proteins whose levels are elevated in many types of cancers; detection of genes encoding these proteins in body fluids; and proteomic approaches involving patterns of expression of multiple proteins that typify specific cancers. These specific approaches are also discussed in depth in Chapter 75.
- The identification of a circulating tumor cell (CTC) as a biomarker is a fast-growing area of research. This chapter updates the recent advance on CTC that is or will be applied in clinical application for diagnostic and prognostic values.
- Another area of growing research and translation to clinical application in cancer biomarkers is circulating nucleic acid, including the levels as well as mutation and methylation status.

Despite the advancement of multidisciplinary treatment modalities, cancer mortality has not been significantly reduced for the past 50 years. In contrast, dramatic decreases in mortality due to cardiovascular and infectious disease have been achieved. Studies have shown that early detection of cancer can lead to superior long-term survival. Thus there is an urgent need to search for cancer biomarkers with high sensitivity and specificity to allow for early cancer detection, effective treatment, and decreased mortality. Therefore, much effort has been devoted to the discovery, characterization, and clinical application of tumor markers to detect the presence of cancer at an early stage. As a result, increasing numbers of biomolecules, mainly specific proteins and some specific ribonucleic acids (RNAs) and deoxyribonucleic acids (DNAs), have been identified and employed as markers potentially for screening purposes and also for prognostic purposes in the daily clinical management of cancer patients. These markers can further be used not only to classify cancers but also to monitor response to neoadjuvant therapy. For example, estrogen receptor (ER), progesterone receptor (PR), and HER2/*neu* oncogene protein are used in the diagnosis and management of breast cancer patients using surgical specimens. ER has been shown to be a prognostic marker for breast cancer and a predictive marker for hormonal treatment (Jensen & Jordan, 2003). HER2/*neu* amplification and overexpression were shown to be associated with poor prognosis and to be a predictor for therapeutic response in breast cancer (Wilmanns et al, 2004). PR has been shown to be associated with a good prognosis in ovarian cancer (Munstedt et al, 2000; Lee et al, 2005).

Among these markers are a number of tumor markers present in circulating body fluids, including blood. Broadly, body fluid tumor biomarkers (principally serum and urine) are divided into three categories: tumor-associated proteins such as the oncofetal antigens, which seem to be expressed in many cancers but have also been found to be present in other nonneoplastic conditions; oncoproteins, which are involved in the regulation of cell cycle and become overexpressed or mutated almost exclusively in neoplastic conditions; and recently discovered patterns of protein expression in serum that appear to be unique to specific types of cancer (i.e., proteomics). This chapter emphasizes the use of the first two classes of tumor marker. Chapter 75 discusses oncoproteins and the use of multiple protein profiles on body fluids, or proteomics, as biomarkers for early tumor detection.

SERUM MARKERS AS AN EFFECTIVE TOOL FOR DIAGNOSIS AND MONITORING OF CANCER

Ideally, a tumor marker should become elevated in the serum only of patients with a malignant tumor and should not be elevated in the serum of disease-free individuals or of individuals with nonmalignant diseases such as inflammatory or infectious diseases. Also, a tumor marker protein should become elevated in the serum of cancer patients at an early stage, thereby enabling early tumor detection and the initiation of appropriate therapy. Although no one tumor marker has been found to meet all these characteristics, progress toward the discovery of such markers is continuously being made.

In fact, studies show that one or more cancer biomarkers, including DNA, protein, or tumor cells, are almost always present in the serum of patients with cancer. These findings provide the rational basis for early detection of cancer using serum samples. Any circulating cell products, including DNA, RNA (including microRNA), proteins (enzymes, serum proteins, metabolites, receptors, carcinoembryonic proteins, oncoprotein, and proteins encoded by suppressor genes), and tumor cells, can be used as tumor markers if they are associated with events related to tumor formation and/or growth (Fig. 74-1). Such events include malignant transformation, proliferation, dedifferentiation, and metastasis. The blood levels of serum tumor markers are determined by tumor proliferation, tumor volume, proteolytic activities in the tumor cell, and release from necrotic tumor cells. The recent improvement of instrumentation, especially in consolidation of specialized testing instruments as immunoassay analyzers to a more general chemistry analyzer, facilitated the analysis of a wide range of analytes with the same degree of accuracy, specificity, and precision. The improved sensitivities of the assays made serologic tests far superior to other clinical examinations based on physical methods. An additional advantage of serum testing over tissue-based methods is the noninvasive nature, more accurate quantification, and lack of interobserver difference as opposed to tissue-based methods. Because of these benefits, serum markers are frequently used to screen for, diagnose, and predict the behavior of many cancers.

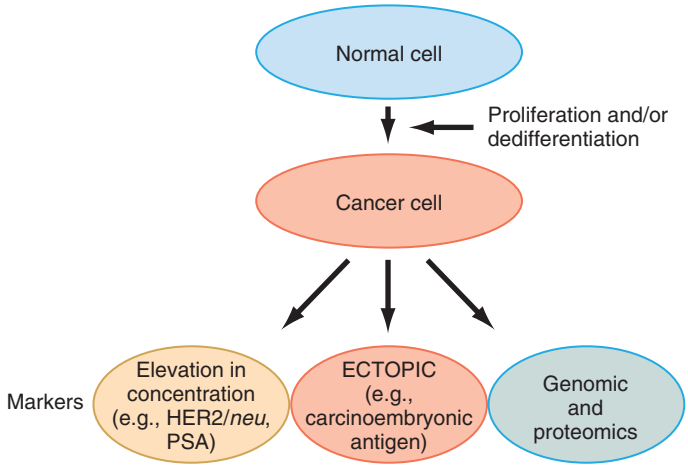


Figure 74-1 Different types of serum tumor markers are used to detect cancer. HER2 and prostate-specific antigen (PSA) reflect increased cellular proliferation. Carcinoembryonic antigen represents the dedifferentiation process of cancer. Current genomic and proteomics focus on collective changes in malignant cells.

The clinical value of any given tumor marker will depend on its specificity and sensitivity, as well as its intended clinical use. For example, PSA can be used in the screening of prostate cancer, resulting in early detection and treatment. Serum HER2/*neu* is used as a marker of prognosis and monitoring therapy for breast cancer. The difference in their usefulness is due to their difference in tissue specificity and cancer sensitivity: PSA is organ-specific but not cancer-specific, whereas HER2/*neu* is cancer-specific but not tissue-specific and is found to be increased in breast cancers, as well as lung and other epithelial cell tumors. The use of tumor markers as prognostic and risk factors has gained more popularity in recent years. Measurement of the level of risk factors has been found to be valuable in the assessment of the aggressiveness of a tumor and is helpful in selecting treatment strategies. The utility of tumor markers is adjunctive to medical and surgical management of malignancies, serving to help detect recurrences as well as predict prognosis.

FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF TUMOR MARKERS

To learn how to identify, select, and utilize tumor markers for the diagnosis of cancer and the management of cancer patients, it is essential to be familiar with the function of each individual or group of cancer serum markers. This chapter emphasizes the role of three specific classes of tumor markers that are commonly used in the diagnosis of human malignancies: oncofetal antigens, such as α-fetoprotein (AFP) and carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), which are normally expressed during fetal development but do not occur normally in the tissues or sera of children and adults; proteins occurring in epithelial cells that become elevated in tissue and serum in adenosquamous and squamous cell carcinomas, such as the CA 19-9, CA 125, and CA 15-3 proteins; and polypeptide hormones, such as the β chain of human chorionic gonadotropin (β hCG), and specific enzymes, such as the placental isoform of alkaline phosphatase (ALP), that become elevated in the serum of patients with specific tumors. These latter two tumor markers are frequently elevated in the sera of patients with germ cell tumors. Additionally, hormone-like proteins are found in the sera of patients with different cancers, such as parathyroid hormone–like protein that induces hypercalcemia as part of the so-called paraneoplastic syndrome in such cancers as renal cell carcinomas.

Most of these proteins have been discovered on the basis of their having been observed in the sera of cohorts of patients with specific types of cancer. However, many of them are also found in the sera of patients with nonmalignant (e.g., inflammatory) conditions. In addition, they may not occur in significant numbers of patients in whom these cancers have been diagnosed. Thus the sensitivities and specificities of these tumor marker proteins are often low, resulting in their not being useful for screening purposes. On the other hand, all of these proteins are quite useful for *monitoring* specific cancers. For example, CEA is often elevated in the sera of patients with colon cancer. Thus if CEA serum levels are found to be elevated in patients who have had a colon cancer resected, this is evidence of tumor recurrence. As discussed later, the one exception is PSA, a

chymotrypsin-like enzyme that occurs almost uniquely in the prostate gland and has proved exceptionally useful in screening for prostate cancer and in monitoring patients who are being treated for this disease.

Standard assays for all of these proteins are now well developed and have received approval from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use in the monitoring of treatment of known cancers but not, except for PSA, for screening for human cancers. Investigations are currently focused on searching for proteins that are expressed only in cancer cells (see Chapter 75). This chapter summarizes some of the more recently discovered proteins that are almost always expressed in cancerous but less commonly in noncancerous diseases and are promising for screening for the occurrence of cancer and for monitoring therapy.

ONCOPROTEINS ARE MARKERS FOR CELL PROLIFERATION

Oncoproteins are proteins that are directly or indirectly involved in the control of mitosis and are altered such that they continuously signal the cell to divide. These proteins either lie on signal transduction pathways carrying mitogenic signals from growth factors at the cell membrane to the nucleus or are involved in the regulation of transcription, activating the genes ultimately causing cell growth and mitosis (see Chapter 75). For example, as discussed in Chapter 75, HER2/*neu* is a transmembrane receptor with an extracellular domain (ECD), a transmembrane domain, and an intracytoplasmic domain containing a tyrosine kinase. Upon binding of extracellular growth factors, the intracellular kinase becomes activated, causing dimerization of the receptor and interaction with a cytosolic adapter protein, Grb-2, to relay the message next to a guanine nucleotide exchange factor, SOS. SOS, in turn, binds to the critically important protein Ras-p21 (Barbacid, 1987). Oncogenic c-Myc is an example of a different type of oncogene transcriptional factor, which functions via the activation of its target genes, inducing synthesis of mitogenic proteins.

Often these proteins can be detected in the serum of patients with abnormal cell growth (i.e., cancer or precancerous states). Extensive testing for the presence of oncoproteins has revealed that many oncoproteins are detected in the serum and/or other body fluids of cancer patients. A detailed discussion of each oncoprotein is found in Chapter 75.

TUMOR SUPPRESSORS/CELL DIFFERENTIATION

Separate from oncogenes but equally important is a group of suppressor genes. Proteins encoded by suppressor genes are responsible for suppressing cell growth, either causing cell growth arrest in cell cycle or apoptosis. Frequently, these suppressor genes undergo deletions or mutations, resulting in the production of inactive gene products. Among the tumor suppressor genes, the antioncogene protein p53 has been widely investigated and best characterized for its role in various cancers. It is involved in apoptosis, cell cycle arrest, cell senescence, and DNA damage response. Deletions or mutations of the p53 gene greatly predispose cells to malignant transformation. p53 mutations have been identified in nearly 50% of human malignancies (Soussi & Beroud, 2001). Molecular assays are available to detect mutations in the serum DNA of tumor suppressor genes. In addition, antibodies against the abnormal tumor suppressor proteins can be used as a biomarker for cancer.

Molecular methods such as PCR-SSCP (polymerase chain reaction single strand conformation polymorphism) and DHPLC (denaturing high-performance liquid chromatography) have been described to detect serum p53 mutations in cancer. More significantly, antibodies against the abnormal tumor suppressor p53 proteins have been detected in the serum of cancer patients (Soussi, 2000). Interestingly, the presence of p53 antibodies is correlated with the p53 mutation (Guinee et al, 1995; Hammel et al, 1999). In breast cancer, several studies indicated that the presence of p53 Ab in the serum correlated with increased proliferation antigen (Ki-67) and lack of ER expression, indicating that it may serve as a breast cancer prognostic marker (Schlichtholz et al, 1992; Sangrajrang et al, 2003).

The discovery of two breast cancer susceptibility genes (or tumor-suppressor genes), *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*, has generated tremendous interest. Studies suggest that mutations in *BRCA1* are responsible for approximately half of all cases of inherited breast cancer (Easton et al, 1993; Miki et al, 1994; Wooster et al, 1994). In addition, carriers of *BRCA1* mutations are also at an increased risk for ovarian, colon, and prostate cancer (Futreal et al, 1994). *BRCA2*, the second susceptibility gene for breast cancer, is thought to account for approximately 70% of cases of inherited breast cancer that are not due to *BRCA1* mutations and is associated with an increased risk of breast cancer in men.

The suppressor genes and their products are potentially useful as tumor markers for the screening and identification of families or high-risk individuals. Development of immunoassays to measure both *BRCA1*- and *BRCA2*-encoded proteins are under development and may be useful for the identification of high-risk individuals and their families.

ADHESION MOLECULES AND METASTASIS

Tumor metastases involve several major steps (Liotta, 1987). First, the tumor cells have to penetrate their adjacent surroundings, after which they invade vascular or lymphatic vessels. The tumor cells are then carried to distant sites, until they are lodged in the venous or capillary beds of a distant organ. In this new environment, these tumor cells must again penetrate the vascular walls in order to grow at the distant site. Cell adhesion molecules, including integrins, selectins, cadherins, and cell adhesion molecules of immunoglobulin gene families, regulate many steps of the metastatic process. The changes in their levels of expression reflect the malignant behavior of cancer cells. For example, increased serum levels of E-selectin, intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM), and vascular cell adhesion molecule (VCAM) are increased, in particular, in late-stage breast cancer patients (O'Hanlon et al, 2002; Sheen-Chen et al, 2004). Elevated serum VCAM level may be used to predict a shorter survival. Another study indicated that postchemotherapeutic levels of serum E-selectin and ICAM are associated with a response to treatment of patients with Hodgkin disease (Syrigos et al, 2004). Furthermore, increased E-selectin, ICAM-1, and VCAM are suggested to be a prognostic factor for survival in patients with gastric cancer (Alexiou et al, 2003). Therefore, the appearance of these cell adhesion molecules in blood circulation might indicate the risk or occurrence of metastases or a poor prognosis.

MONOCLONAL ANTIBODY–DEFINED TUMOR MARKERS

The development of hybridoma technology has greatly impacted the identification of tumor markers (Milstein & Cuello, 1983). Rather than dealing with a whole molecule of known protein structure, it is now possible to focus on only a small surface area, an epitope or antigenic determinant using monoclonal antibodies. It is no longer necessary to purify the antigen for the preparation of polyclonal antibodies in animals. The complete characterization and identification of the molecule carrying the epitope is also no longer needed. A hybridoma can be prepared by injecting a mouse with an enriched fraction of the tumor cell membrane or the whole tumor cell. Hybridomas producing the monoclonal antibodies of interest are selected through the subsequent screening procedure. Once a hybridoma is established, there will be an unlimited and consistent supply of monoclonal antibody (MAb) for various uses.

By combining the MAbs with the solid-phase sandwich test design, new assays have been developed that have eliminated many problems associated with polyclonal assays, involving poor reproducibility, lot-to-lot variations, poor specificity, and nonspecific cross-reactivity (Diamond et al, 1981). It also reduces the differences between different kits and widens the linear concentration range for the assay. Whenever a MAb is available, its use is recommended. To achieve higher test sensitivity, the use of a combination of multiple MAbs has been found to improve the affinity between solid-phase-absorbed-multiple MAbs and the soluble antigen.

Tests for the MAb-defined tumor markers have been demonstrated to have a higher sensitivity and specificity than those using polyclonal antibodies. For example, CA 19-9, CA 125, and CA 15-3 are much more sensitive and specific than CEA for pancreatic, ovarian, and breast carcinomas, respectively. These markers are recommended to replace the polyclonal CEA test for the diagnosis and management of patients with the above-mentioned carcinomas. Various tumor markers derived from different tumors also share many tumor-associated epitopes. For example, CA 19-9, CA 15-3, and CA 125 are expressed by almost all carcinomas in varying degrees. In addition to the sharing of any given epitope by more than one carcinoma, it is also possible for a single molecule to express more than one epitope (Yu et al, 1991). For example, it is likely that CA 15-3 and CA 125 are expressed by the same mucin molecule.

OTHER MARKERS

Many hormones (e.g., hCG, epinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin), serum proteins, enzymes (lactate dehydrogenase, ALP), and their metabolites, such as the metabolites of the neuroendocrine hormones (e.g., vanillylmandelic acid, homovanillic acid, and 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid), may become elevated in tumors because of the high proliferation rate of tumor

cells. Their serum levels rise to even higher levels when a benign tumor becomes malignant and metastasizes. Benign and nonmalignant diseases may also involve elevated levels of markers, so these markers are not suitable for screening or for cancer diagnosis because of the large numbers of false-positive results that would be generated. These markers are more appropriately used for monitoring patient response during treatment.

One exception relates to the enzyme alkaline phosphatase (ALP) discussed in Chapter 20. There are multiple isozymes of this enzyme, one of which is the placental isozyme placental ALP (PLAP). This form becomes elevated in the serum of patients who have germ cell tumors. One particular use of PLAP is in the serum or, more effectively, in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of patients with a mass in the pineal region with a differential diagnosis of germ cell tumor versus pinealoma. If PLAP is elevated in the CSF of a patient with a mass in the pineal area, a diagnosis of germ cell tumor can be made. As it happens, radiation therapy is curative, obviating the need for surgery.

The enzymatic activities of various tissue-specific glycosyltransferases are altered in tumor cells. Some of the elevated glycosyltransferases have been used as tumor markers. The sugar sequence and composition of the carbohydrate moiety of many serum glycoproteins, including blood group substances and mucins, such as CA 19-9, are tumor markers resulting from altered glycosyltransferase activity. The AFP isolated from patients with primary hepatocellular carcinoma has an additional fucose compared with the AFP from benign liver disease, an example of altered fucosyltransferase in hepatocellular carcinoma cells (Wu, 1990).

Ectopic proteins are often expressed in cancer. Carcinoembryonic proteins, which are detectable in both fetal and tumor tissues but not in normal adult tissues, usually lack any known physiologic function and have blood concentrations at nanogram-per-milliliter levels. Therefore, measurements of carcinoembryonic proteins in the circulation must rely on immunoassays. The specificity and sensitivity associated with these proteins, although not 100%, are much higher than those of enzymes and metabolites that have been used as tumor markers in the past. The serum concentration of these carcinoembryonic proteins not only correlates well with tumor activity but can also be used to predict prognosis. However, carcinoembryonic proteins in general are not suitable for screening because the polyclonal antibodies directed against these proteins often cross-react with other, normal proteins, and these carcinoembryonic proteins do not appear sufficiently early in the blood from cancer patients to detect the tumors at early stages. However, they have been used as adjunct tests for cancer diagnosis and are extremely useful for monitoring the success of treatment and for detecting recurrence.

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS

The serum tumor markers are currently used for screening, diagnosing, and predicting prognosis and treatment response. Use of tests for screening of disease, even those with high sensitivity and specificity, should be confined as much as possible to populations at risk for the disease. This is because the positive predictive value depends on the prevalence of the disease. Because most of the tumor markers described in this chapter are expressed both in neoplastic and benign conditions, their use is confined to following possible tumor recurrence in patients being treated for specific types of tumor.

SCREENING

The recommendation of screening for prostate cancer by the measurement of serum PSA in combination with a digital rectal examination (DRE) in men older than age 50 years is due to the high tissue specificity of PSA (Wu, 1994) and the high prevalence of prostate cancer. Combination of the PSA test and DRE provides the least costly approach to the early detection of prostate cancer (Littrup et al, 1993). PSA screening is especially recommended for African American men because the incidence of prostate cancer for African Americans is nearly twice that of the general population, and the death rate is up to three times higher. Screening permits the treatment of organ-confined, potentially curable prostate cancer discovered in men with a life expectancy of longer than 10 years.

Although not approved for screening for hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States, AFP has been used to screen for primary hepatocellular carcinoma in China because of the high incidence of liver cancer in that country. The diagnosis of ovarian cancer has traditionally relied on imaging and discovery at surgery (e.g., exploratory laparotomy). However, in most cases, at the time of detection, the tumor has advanced to a stage at which the possibility of cure is low. The feasibility of screening for ovarian cancer in women by measuring serum CA 125 is being investigated.

DIAGNOSIS

Several approaches have been suggested recently to improve the diagnostic yield of many tumor markers. The use of multiple markers is one approach that has received wide acceptance. As is also noted in Chapter 74, specific patterns of multiple tumor markers seem to be associated with individual malignant diseases. Another approach to improving both the specificity and sensitivity of tumor markers, as in the case of a serum PSA test, involves the measurement of the velocity (the rate of increase in PSA concentration over time) and the density (e.g., by dividing the serum PSA concentration by the volume of the prostate gland, determined by transrectal ultrasound) (Benson et al, 1992). These efforts aim at a better discrimination between benign and malignant states. For example, a mildly elevated serum PSA level associated with a small prostate gland may indicate cancer, whereas the same PSA value in a patient with a large gland may indicate benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH).

PROGNOSIS: RECURRENCE, METASTASIS, AND SURVIVAL

The assessment of tumor aggressiveness and the prognosis for the outcome of a cancer patient has received much attention in recent years. The knowledge of tumor aggressiveness helps in the development of a proper therapy for the patient. For example, the detection of tumor markers, highly associated with malignancy and metastases, will suggest a more rigorous and systemic treatment. Monitoring tumor markers for the detection of recurrence following the surgical removal of the tumor is the second most useful application of tumor markers. It is well known that the appearance of most of the circulating tumor markers has a lead time of several months (3-6 months) before the stage at which many of the physical procedures could be used for the detection of cancer. The specificity of tumor markers does not present a problem for this application. The ease of drawing blood and the sensitivity of tumor marker tests make this noninvasive monitoring process now widely accepted.

Most tumor markers become increasingly elevated when the tumor metastasizes. Very few tumor markers have a clear-cut boundary between benign and malignant stages. Proteins that reflect the risk factors associated with the process of tumor metastases, such as proteases and adhesion molecules, are usually better markers for predicting prognosis. However, most of these markers are still measured in tumor tissues and tissue lysates. The finding of the ECD of c-*erb*B-2 protein in the serum of cancer patients (Fig. 74-2) and the correlation of the serum ECD with the levels of other serum tumor markers are encouraging. Another area of intensive study is to explore the use of serum marker surrogates in the prediction of cancer patient survival.

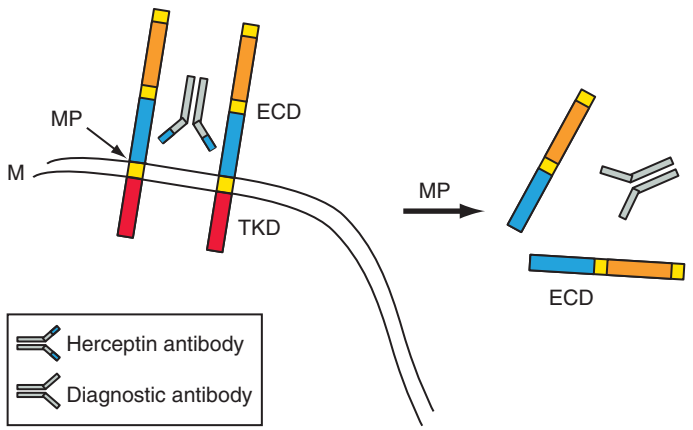


Figure 74-2 HER2/*neu* monoclonal antibodies are used both therapeutically and diagnostically in breast cancer. Humanized HER2 monoclonal antibody trastuzumab (Herceptin), shown with a *dark blue* complementarity determining region (CDR), reacts with a specific region of HER2 epitope *(dark blue)*, causes the death of malignant breast cells, and is often effective in the treatment of breast cancer. On the other hand, different monoclonal antibodies, which do not cross-react with the trastuzumab determinant, recognize the extracellular domain (ECD) (*orange-colored* domain in the figure) of HER2/*neu* in serum after it is cleaved off this growth factor receptor by metalloprotease. Because trastuzumab and diagnostic monoclonal antibodies recognize different epitopes of HER2, there is no interference in detecting serum levels of HER2 in trastuzumab-treated patients. *M*, Cell membrane; *MP*, metalloprotease; *TKD*, tyrosine kinase domain.

MONITORING TREATMENT RESPONSE

One of the most useful applications of tumor markers involves monitoring the course of the disease, especially during treatment. The serum level of tumor markers reflects the success of surgery or the efficacy of chemotherapy. Detecting elevated levels of a tumor marker after surgery would indicate incomplete removal of the tumor, recurrence, or the presence of metastases. The measurement of serum tumor markers during chemotherapy also gives an indication of the effectiveness of the antitumor drug used and a guide for the selection of the most effective drug for each individual case.

TABLE 74-1
Monoclonal-Antibody–Defined Tumor Markers

Tumor Marker	Major Malignant Disease
CA 125	Ovarian carcinoma
CA 19-9	Pancreatic carcinoma
CA 15-3	Breast carcinoma
CA 72-4	Gastric carcinoma
HER2/*neu*	Breast carcinoma

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ORDERING TUMOR MARKER TESTS

When ordering tumor markers as an adjunct diagnostic test for managing cancer patients, the following recommendations should be kept in mind in order to avoid misinterpretation of the test results:

1. Never rely on the result of a single test. Because of low specificity associated with most tumor markers, it is difficult to differentiate between malignant and benign diseases on the basis of a single test result. Most tumor marker elevations found in nonmalignant diseases may be transient, whereas with cancer, the level often either remains elevated or rises continuously. Ordering serial testing can help detect falsely elevated levels due to transient elevation. For example, elevated serum AFP can be detected in patients with either primary hepatocellular carcinoma or benign liver disease. However, on a subsequent testing 2 weeks later, the serum AFP will remain elevated in patients with cancer, whereas in patients with benign conditions, the serum AFP may return to normal levels.
2. When ordering serial testing, be certain to order every test from the same laboratory using the same assay kit. Each different commercial kit may generate different results even though all are designed for the same tumor marker. Ordering from the same laboratory also ensures a more consistent performance. It is important to ensure that any change observed during the monitoring process is due to a change of tumor volume or other tumor activities and not to laboratory variability.
3. Be certain that the tumor marker selected for monitoring recurrence was elevated in the patient before surgery. Because none of the tumor markers are 100% sensitive to the detection of any particular cancer, it is important to be certain that the tumor marker ordered to detect recurrence was elevated before surgery. Otherwise, multiple markers should be measured before the surgery in order to select the tumor marker showing the highest elevation as the marker for monitoring the disease activity. Multiple markers may be used to monitor the therapeutic effects for increased sensitivity.
4. Consider the half-life of the tumor marker when interpreting the test result. Before surgery, estimate the time required for the level to decline to the normal or, in the case of PSA, to an undetectable level, based on the known half-life of the tumor marker. It is important that the success of surgical removal of a tumor as determined by tumor marker concentrations is not assessed earlier than 2 weeks postoperatively. If possible, it is preferable to wait one whole month to allow the preexisting tumor marker in the serum adequate time to decline to lower levels. For example, the half-life of serum PSA is approximately 3 to 4 days. Therefore, it takes 30 days for a serum PSA at 50 ng/mL to drop to an undetectable level following successful surgery.
5. Consider how the tumor marker is removed from or metabolized in the blood circulation. Elevated serum tumor markers are frequently detected in patients with renal or liver disease, depending on whether the tumor marker is removed through the kidney or metabolized by the liver. For example, serum CEA is often elevated in patients with liver disease because the impaired liver fails to remove CEA efficiently from the blood circulation, whereas an elevated serum β_2-microglobulin (β_2M) has been frequently found in patients with renal failure in which even the small β_2M molecule has difficulty passing through the glomerular membrane in a normal fashion.
6. Consider ordering multiple markers to improve both the sensitivity and the specificity for diagnosis. Tumors are made of heterogeneous types of cells. Some may still be normal, while others may be heterogeneous tumor cells as a result of different sequences of multiple mutations. Each type of cell may express a single marker, such as those shown in Table 74-1, or a number of characteristic tumor markers. The same marker may also be produced by different types of cells. Some cells may never produce any unique marker. Certain types of cancer are heterogeneous in their cellular composition. Consequently, more than one tumor marker may be required to provide a high sensitivity of detection. The heterogeneity in cell composition and the percentage of cell distribution of each tumor explains why a number of tumor markers may be required to reach a high (>90%) detection sensitivity and the reason that the sensitivity of an individual marker differs among cancer patients. Multiple tumor markers associated with individual malignant diseases are listed in Table 74-2; the appearance of individual tumor markers in various malignancies is listed in Table 74-3. This explains why none of the tumor markers presently employed are 100% sensitive and specific and why the use of multiple markers will improve the sensitivity of detection. However, a unique pattern of multiple markers may be identified with tumors derived from the same tissues. Therefore, ordering multiple tumor markers may also improve the test specificity. For example, a specific pattern seems to be associated with colon, breast, ovarian, and pancreatic carcinomas when all four MAb-defined tumor markers—CEA, CA 19-9, CA 15-3, and CA 125—are measured simultaneously. This information is clinically important, because more than 60% of diagnosed human cancers are epithelial-cell-derived carcinomas (Wu, 1989). Multiple markers were used to develop a more specific screening strategy for ovarian cancer. The use of CA 15-3 and CA 72-4 in combination with CA 125 can increase the apparent specificity of the CA 125 assay for distinguishing malignant from benign ovarian disease (Bast et al, 1991). Another example is the combination of CEA, CA 19-9, and CA 72-4. Use of this combination improves the diagnostic accuracy of gastrointestinal cancers (Carpelan-Holmstrom et al, 2002). During the selection of multiple tumor markers, only markers that are complementary to one another should be selected. Many tumor markers, which run parallel to one another when correlated with tumor activities, should not be selected for this purpose.
7. Be aware of the presence of ectopic tumor markers. The expression of tumor markers is under genetic regulation. For benign tumors, there are often proteins produced by the tumor that are cell-specific and are related to normal cell products at an elevated concentration (see Fig. 74-1). However, if a benign tumor becomes malignant, synthesis of these cell-specific proteins may no longer occur in the malignant cells. Conversely, proteins that are normally found at an early fetal stage and not in normal cells or in benign tumors of these cells may become constitutively expressed in the malignant cells. This is the reason that carcinoembryonic proteins and ectopic tumor markers are usually expressed in malignant cancers, often at advanced stages. Thus, often, the appearance of ectopic tumor markers is associated with poor prognosis or metastasis. For example, elevated serum concentrations of AFP may be detected in patients with cancers of the gastrointestinal tract involving metastases even though the liver function tests are normal. Table 74-4 lists some of the known ectopic markers and their associated malignant diseases.

   One should be aware of the recent guidelines on gastrointestinal and breast cancer marker use published by the American Society of Clinical Oncology (Smith et al, 1999). They recommend monthly breast self-examination, annual mammography of the preserved and contralateral breast, and a careful history and physical examination every 3 to 6 months for 3 years, then every 6 to 12 months for 2 years, and annually thereafter. They do not recommend the use of tumor markers (e.g., CEA, CA 15-3, and CA 27.29) for screening, nor do they recommended routine bone scans, chest radiographs, hematologic blood counts, liver ultrasonograms, or computed tomography for screening. The American College of Physicians has also published clinical guidelines concerning the early detection of prostate cancer. They emphasize the importance of both screening PSA and performing DRE for the early detection of prostate cancer. Even though DRE is not as sensitive as PSA screening, it can detect cancer that would otherwise be missed by PSA measurement (Coley et al, 1997a; 1997b).

TABLE 74-2

Serologic Tumor Markers Associated with Individual Malignant Diseases

Malignant Disease	Major Marker	Other Markers
Neuronal Tumors		
Brain tumor	Desmosterol	Polyamines
Neuroblastoma	VMA	HVA, NSE, cystathionine, ferritin, metanephrines
Head and Neck Tumors		
Squamous cell carcinoma	CYFRA 21-1	
Endocrine System		
Pituitary tumors	Growth hormone	IGF-I
Adrenal pituitary tumors	Cortisol	Free catecholamines, DHEA, 17-ketosteroids, prolactin
Cushing syndrome	ACTH	Endorphin, lipotropin
Hypercalcemia of malignancy	PTH-related peptide	
Endocrine pancreatic tumors:	Pancreatic polypeptide:	Chromogranin AC-peptide, IGF-I binding protein I
Gastrinoma	Gastrin	
Glucagonoma	Glucagon	
Insulinoma	Insulin	
Medullary carcinoma of thyroid	Calcitonin	NSE
Microadenomas (pituitary)	Prolactin	
Multiple endocrine neoplasias	Chromogranin A	
Papillary and follicular thyroid cancer	Thyroglobulin	
Parathyroid tumors	PTH-intact	
Zollinger-Ellison syndrome	Gastrin	
Pheochromocytoma	Metanephrine	Chromogranin A, plasma catecholamines
Pituitary tumors	Free β hCG	FSH, LH, prolactin, TSH
Bone and Skeletal Muscle System		
Osteosarcomas	Alkaline phosphatase	
Breast Cancer		
Breast cancer	HER2/*neu*, CA 15-3	CYFRA 21-1, CEA, calcitonin
Pulmonary System		
Bronchogenic carcinoma	Prolactin	
Lung cancer (NSC)	CYFRA 21-1, NSE	ACTH, CK-BB, calcitonin, CA 72-4, CEA, AFP, ferritin, LASA-P, TPA
Carcinoid tumors	Histamine, ADH, bradykinin	
Oat cell cancer	ACTH, ADH, CEA, CK-BB, NSE, bombesin, calcitonin	
Gastrointestinal System		
Colorectal cancer	CEA	CA 19-5, CA 19-9, CA 72-4, NSE
Gastric carcinoma	CA 72-4	CA 19-9, CA 50, CEA, ferritin, CK-BB, hCG, LASA-P, pepsinogen II
Hepatocellular carcinoma	AFP	CEA, ferritin, ALP, TPA, γ-glutamyltranspeptidase (GGT)
Pancreatic carcinoma	CA 19-9	CA 19-5, CA 50, CA 72-4, CEA, CK-BB, ADH, ALP
Vipoma (pancreas)	VIP	
Genitourinary System		
Bladder cancer	T-antigen, urokinase inhibitor, TPA, cytokeratins	Glycosaminoglycans, uroplakins
Nonseminomatous testicular tumor	AFP	hCG
Prostate carcinoma	PSA	PAP, racemase
Renal cell carcinoma	Renin, erythropoietin, IL-4, PGA	
Testicular cancer	hCG	PLAP, Oct3/4
Gynecological Tumors		
Cervical cancer	SCC	CA 125, CEA, TPA
Ovarian carcinoma	CA 125	UGF, inhibin, AFP, amylase isoenzyme, CEA, CK-BB, hCG
Choriocarcinoma	hCG	
Placental tumors	hCG	Free α hCG, CA 15-3, PTH, NSE, prolactin
Uterine cancer	SCC	
Teratoblastoma	AFP	hCG, ferritin

Continued

TABLE 74-2
Serologic Tumor Markers Associated with Individual Malignant Diseases—cont'd

Malignant Disease	Major Marker	Other Markers
Hematology Malignancies and Lymphomas		
B cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia	TdT	Serum β_2M, LASA-P
B cell malignancies	β_2M	
Chronic myelogenous leukemia	TdT	
Hairy cell leukemia	IL-2 receptor	
Hodgkin disease	LASA-P, ferritin	
Leukemia	TdT	ALP, β_2M, ferritin, LD, myelin basic protein, adenosine deaminase, PNP
Lymphoma	β_2M	TdT, Ki-67, LASA-P
Multiple myeloma	Ig heavy and light chain	Bence-Jones protein, β_2M, IgA
Waldenström's disease	IgM	β_2M
Melanoma		
Melanoma antigen	Melanoma-associated LASA-P, L-dopa	C-reactive protein
Endoreticular System		
Spleen tumors	Ferritin	
Other		
Sarcoma	β_2M	

ACTH, Adrenocorticotropic hormone; *ADH*, antidiuretic hormone; *AFP*, α-fetoprotein; *ALP*, alkaline phosphatase; *β_2M*, β_2-microglobulin; *CEA*, carcinoembryonic antigen; *CK-BB*, brain isozyme of creatine phosphokinase; *CYFRA 21-1*, cytokeratin subunit 19; *DHEA*, dihydroepiandrosterone; *FSH*, follicle-stimulating hormone; *hCG*, human chorionic gonadotropin; *HVA*, homovanillic acid; *Ig*, immunoglobulin; *IGF*, insulin-like growth factor; *IL*, interleukin; *ki67*, cell proliferation marker; *LASA-P*, lipid-associated sialic acid in plasma; *LD*, lactate dehydrogenase; *LH*, luteinizing hormone; *NSC*, nonsmall cell; *NSE*, neuron-specific enolase; *Oct3/4*, transcription factor in stem cells and germ cells required for pluripotency; *PAP*, prostate acid phosphatase; *PGA*, prostaglandin A; *PLAP*, placental alkaline phosphatase; *PNP*, purine nucleotide phosphorylase; *PTH*, parathyroid hormone; *SCC*, squamous cell carcinoma; *TdT*, terminal deoxynucleotide transferase; *TPA*, tissue plasminogen activator; *TSH*, thyroid-stimulating hormone; *UGF*, uterine growth factor; *VIP*, vasoactive intestinal polypeptide; *VMA*, vanillylmandelic acid.

8. Heterophilic antibody. The use of MAbs in immunoassays and the increasing clinical application of mouse MAbs for targeted imaging and immunotherapy create a new problem. Treated individuals apparently produce heterophilic antibodies against murine antibodies that interfere with many of the immunoassays for tumor markers (Nahm & Hoffmann, 1990) although this is not a common encounter. The interference by the heterophilic antibodies in human sera can either increase or decrease the results of an immunoassay. These antibodies react in a way similar to antigens in terms of binding to both solid-phase-associated and signal-labeled antibodies. These heterophilic antibodies may bind to a site other than the analyte-binding site, cross-linking the signal antibody with the capture antibody, and thus generating a false assay response. As many as 15% to 40% of individuals may have one or more heterophilic antibodies. The standard approach for reducing heterophilic antibody interference is to include excess mouse sera or nonspecific mouse immunoglobulins in the immunoassay.

INDIVIDUAL TUMOR MARKERS

α-FETOPROTEIN

AFP is a major fetal serum protein and is also one of the major carcinoembryonic proteins. AFP resembles albumin in many physical and chemical properties. In the fetus, AFP is synthesized by the yolk sac and fetal hepatocytes and, to a lesser extent, by the fetal gastrointestinal tract and kidneys. Elevated AFP can be found in patients with primary hepatocellular carcinoma and yolk sac–derived germ cell tumors (mainly endodermal sinus tumor) and is the most useful serum marker for these cancers (Lamerz, 1997). However, AFP is also transiently elevated during pregnancy and in many benign liver diseases. Because of the high prevalence of liver cancer in China and other countries in Southeast Asia, AFP testing has been used successfully in screening for hepatocellular carcinoma in that region of the world. Tests for both AFP and hCG are helpful in reducing clinical staging errors in patients with some testicular tumors and aid in the differential diagnosis of various germ cell tumors. Because an increase of fucosylation of AFP (hence the lentil lectin reactivity of serum AFP) has been found in primary hepatocellular carcinoma, the determination of lentil lectin reactivity of serum AFP was found helpful not only to differentiate between primary hepatocellular carcinoma and benign liver diseases but also to provide an early signal indicating that hepatocellular carcinoma may begin to develop in patients with liver disease. Although the necessity for routine AFP screening needs further study, one study indicates that combined screening with AFP and ultrasonography results in increased sensitivity from 75% to near 100% in detecting hepatocellular carcinoma (hCC) of patients with hepatitis B and C (Izzo et al, 1998; Gebo et al, 2002). Finally, AFP is currently offered for prenatal screening for neural tube defects and, in conjunction with free β hCG and unconjugated estriol, for Down syndrome (Cuckle, 2000; Yamamoto et al, 2001).

ANGIOGENIC FACTORS

Angiogenesis is the formation of blood vessels in situ, involving the orderly migration, proliferation, and differentiation of vascular cells. Blood vessel formation is also important in the pathogenesis of rapid growth and metastasis of solid tumors. Several angiogenic factors have been identified, including acidic and basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), described in Chapter 74; angiogenin; and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) (Folkman & Shing, 1992). Both angiogenic and antiangiogenic factors have been found in the serum of patients with malignant disease (Morelli et al, 1998). Serum levels of bFGF and VEGF reflect their expression in individual tumors (Poon et al, 2003; Granato et al, 2004). The significance of elevated serum VEGF in cancer patients has been evaluated in several studies including breast, ovarian, hepatocellular, colorectal, and renal cell carcinomas and soft tissue sarcoma. Elevated serum VEGF values in ovarian cancer patients were correlated with cancer differentiation, metastasis, and, more significantly, shorter average survival time (Alvarez Secord et al, 2004; Harlozinska et al, 2004; Li et al, 2004). Furthermore, elevated serum VEGF has been associated with shorter survival in renal cell carcinoma (Ljungberg et al, 2003) and colon carcinoma (De Vita et al, 2004).

β_2-MICROGLOBULIN

β_2M is the constant light chain of the human histocompatibility locus antigen expressed on the surface of most nucleated cells. The molecular weight of β_2M is only 11.8 kDa. β_2M is shed into the extracellular fluid and is elevated not only in solid tumors but also in lymphoproliferative diseases (including B cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, and, importantly, multiple myeloma) (Wu et al, 1986). Serum concentration of β_2M correlates with lymphocyte activity, making β_2M a good marker for lymphoid malignancies of the B cell line. It has been used

TABLE 74-3

Malignant Disease Associated with Individual Serologic Tumor Markers

	ASSOCIATED MALIGNANT DISEASE	
Tumor Marker	**Major Disease**	**Minor Disease**
α-Fetoprotein	Primary hepatocellular carcinoma	Teratoblastomas of the ovary and testes
β hCG	Pituitary tumors	
β_2-Microglobulin	B cell neoplasias	Multiple myeloma, B cell lymphoma, B cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia, and reticulum cell sarcoma; Waldenström's macroglobulinemia
β hCG	Choriocarcinoma	Testicular cancers (nonseminomatous), trophoblastic tumors
Bence-Jones protein	Multiple myeloma	
Bombesin	Oat-cell cancer	
C-reactive protein	Melanoma	
CA 15-3	Breast cancer	Various carcinomas
CA 19-9	Pancreatic and gastric carcinoma	Various carcinomas
CA 72-4	Gastric carcinoma	Various carcinomas
CA 125	Ovarian carcinoma	Various carcinomas
CA 549	Breast cancer	
CA M26	Breast cancer	
Calcitonin	Medullary carcinoma	Cancer of the thyroid, liver cancer, renal cancer
Carcinoembryonic antigen	Colorectal carcinoma	Various carcinomas
c-*erb*B-2 oncoprotein	Breast carcinoma	Various carcinomas
Chromogranin A	Pheochromocytoma, neuroblastoma	Multiple endocrine neoplasias, small cell lung cancer, carcinoid tumors
CYFRA 21-1	Squamous cell carcinoma of the lung	
DHEA	Adrenal/pituitary cancer	
Ferritin	Acute myelocytic leukemia	Hodgkin lymphoma, neuroblastoma and various carcinomas, teratoblastoma
Galactosyltransferase	Ovarian cancer	
Galactosyltransferase isoenzyme II	Pancreatic cancer	
Gastrin	Gastrinoma	Zollinger-Ellison syndrome
Her2/*neu*	See c-*erb*B-2 oncoprotein	
Human chorionic gonadotropin	Choriocarcinoma	Gastric, ovarian, and breast carcinoma, trophoblastic or germ cell tumors, testicular cancer
Hyaluronic acid	Mesothelioma	
Immunoglobulin A	Multiple myeloma	
Insulin-like growth factor-I	Pituitary cancer	Insulinoma
Interleukin-2 receptor	Leukemia	
Immunoglobulins	Multiple myeloma	Mediterranean lymphoma, Waldenström's macroglobulinemia, malignant lymphoma
Inhibin	Granulosa-cell tumors	
17-ketosteroids	Adrenal/pituitary cancer	

β hCG, β chain of human chorionic gonadotropin; *CYFRA 21-1,* cytokeratin subunit 19; *DHEA,* dihydroepiandrosterone; *hCG,* human chorionic gonadotropin.

TABLE 74-4

Ectopic Tumor Markers

Marker	**Tumor**
α-Fetoprotein	Gastrointestinal, renal, bladder, and ovarian carcinoma
Calcitonin	Endocrine tumors (islet cell, carcinoid, medullary thyroid, pheochromocytoma); lung, breast, and ovary carcinoma
Chromogranin A	Endocrine tumors (islet cell, carcinoid, medullary thyroid, pheochromocytoma), prostate cancer
Free α hCG	Colorectal carcinoma and pancreatic endocrine tumors
hCG	Gastric and pancreatic carcinoma, hepatoma, ovarian carcinoma, germ cell tumor of testis
PTH	Renal cell carcinoma; breast; squamous cell carcinoma; bladder and ovarian carcinomas
Thyroglobulin	Differentiated thyroid carcinoma

hCG, Human chorionic gonadotropin; *PTH,* parathyroid hormone.

as an indicator of the patient's response to treatment (Haferlach & Loffler, 1997). CSF levels of β_2M are useful for detecting metastases in the central nervous system. It is reported that serum β_2M level is elevated in 75% of patients with multiple myeloma (Kyle et al, 2003) and is useful in following the efficacy of the treatment of this disease, although currently serum free light chain (FLC) assay has been found to be more effective in following this disease (see later).

SERUM FREE LIGHT CHAIN DETERMINATIONS

In Chapter 19 on specific serum proteins, the use of serum protein electrophoresis was discussed as an important method for detecting monoclonal gammopathies. These are conditions in which single clones of B cells or plasma cells proliferate and overproduce a specific monoclonal immunoglobulin. These are detected as monoclonal spikes in the Ig region of the electrophoretigram. Immunofixation reveals the type of immunoglobulin that is being overexpressed. Monoclonal gammopathies involving IgG and IgA result in the condition of multiple myeloma, a cancer of B or plasma cells in which the proliferation of these cells causes lytic lesions in bone marrow, causing pathologic fractures and resulting in hypercalcemia and elevations of serum alkaline phosphatase (see Chapter 20). Monoclonal gammopathies involving IgM give rise to Waldenström's macroglobulinemia, also a cancer of B or plasma cells in which high levels of IgM are expressed in serum. IgM immunoglobulins are Ig pentamers with 10 antigen binding sites and are therefore very large proteins. These monoclonal proteins are highly hygroscopic, giving rise to the so-called hyperviscosity syndrome where the relative viscosity of blood is much higher than that for blood from normal individuals, reaching as high as five times that of normal viscosity. This can lead to sludging of blood in capillaries, with resulting infarcts of tissues. In addition, monoclonal gammopathies occur that do not involve malignant transformation of B or plasma cells

but involve overproduction of the monoclonal antibodies and light chains. Most of these conditions are referred to as MGUS or monoclonal gammopathy of uncertain significance. However, some of these conditions result in polymerization of the monoclonal light chains that are deposited in multiple different tissues, a condition called primary, or AL, amyloidosis. Irrespective of the specific condition, it is vital to diagnose and to follow these conditions in a quantitative manner.

All immunoglobulins involve the association of two heavy with two light chains, which are of the kappa or lambda types. Light chains are encoded on genes on chromosome 2 and are present in excess of heavy chains. In most monoclonal gammopathies, light chains are produced in substantial excess of heavy chains and are themselves monoclonal—that is, they have a single unique amino acid sequence. Light chains have constant, variable and hypervariable domains, the latter forming the complementarity-determining domain involved in antigen recognition. Each chain type has sequences that are type-specific. Parts of these sequences are "buried" when the light chains are complexed with their counterpart heavy chains. Mono- and polyclonal antibodies have been developed that recognize each chain type uniquely and will bind to each only if the light chain is not bound to the heavy chain. This allows quantitation of free kappa and lambda light chains in serum.

The reference range for serum kappa light chains is 0.33 to 1.94 mg/dL and for lambda light chains, it is 0.57 to 2.63 mg/dL. Values of one or the other light chain that substantially exceed the upper reference range, while the level of the counterpart chain either remains in the reference range or is slightly elevated, suggest a monoclonal gammopathy. Another way of quantitating free light chains (FLCs) is to measure the ratio of kappa to lambda chain levels. The reference range for the kappa/lambda ratio is 0.57 to 2.63. Values below 0.57 suggest a lambda gammopathy, while values that exceed 2.63 suggest a kappa light chain gammopathy.

Serum FLC determinations are currently the most sensitive method for following the course of treatment of specific monoclonal gammopathies and have replaced serum protein electrophoresis and immunofixation and beta-microglobulin levels for this purpose. They are also excellent predictors of the prognosis for patients being treated for these conditions and for patients with MGUS (Rajkumar et al, 2005).

In a recent study (Kim et al, 2014), it was found that serum FLC assays had sensitivities of 64% to 72%, depending on the assay, and 93% to 100% specificities. The reference method was immunofixation. The limitations of the serum FLC assay in diagnosing monoclonal gammopathy were very low levels of monoclonal protein, chronic kidney disease, polyclonal gammopathy, biclonal gammopathy, and IgM gammopathy. However, the high values for the sensitivity and specificity are encouraging findings that suggest that FLC assays will become useful in detecting B and plasma cell tumors at an early stage.

CARCINOEMBRYONIC ANTIGEN

CEA is a glycoprotein with a molecular weight of approximately 200 kDa. It is the first of the so-called carcinoembryonic proteins and was discovered by Gold and Freedman in 1965. CEA is still the most widely used tumor marker for gastrointestinal cancer, but most CEA assays have replaced polyclonal with monoclonal anti-CEA antibodies.

CEA was originally thought to be a specific marker for colorectal cancer, but it turned out to be a nonspecific marker on further studies. CEA levels can be elevated in breast, lung, and liver cancers, among others. CEA studies demonstrated that tumor markers could be used to follow patients during therapy and to detect recurrence after successful surgery. The association between highly elevated serum tumor marker concentration and metastases and poor prognosis was also discovered through CEA studies. Elevated CEA levels before resection of colon cancer may suggest a worse prognosis. Declining levels during therapy suggest response to therapy, whereas increasing levels suggest disease progression. However, clinical decisions regarding management of disease cannot be based on CEA levels alone (Mitchell, 1998). As the liver metabolizes CEA, liver damage can impair CEA clearance and lead to increased levels in the blood circulation. Increased CEA concentrations have been observed in some patients following radiation treatment and chemotherapy. It was recommended that CEA should form part of the American Joint Committee on Cancer staging system (Compton et al, 2000). CEA can be used as a marker for monitoring colorectal cancer (Bast et al, 2001). However, a low positive predictive value for diagnosis in asymptomatic patients limits its widespread use in screening.

Other genetic tumor markers are being used with increased frequency. For example, transforming growth factor–α, fibroblast growth factor, and Ras oncoprotein are all increased in colorectal cancer and decreased after surgical resection. More recently, mutations of DNA mismatch repair genes (e.g., *hMSH2*, *hMLH1*, and *hMSH6*) are shown to be associated with hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. Further clinical studies to correlate the serum levels of expression and mutation in these genes might yield a better diagnostic/prognostic tool.

CA 15-3 AND CA 27.29

These antigens correspond to sequences of mucins called polymorphic epithelial mucins (PEMs), which are often overexpressed on the cell surfaces of malignant glandular cells such as those occurring in breast cancer, and increasing amounts are shed into the circulation, where they can be detected, making them useful as tumor markers. The polypeptide core of PEM contains a 69-amino acid cytoplasmic domain and a much larger ECD, consisting of 20 amino acid tandem repeats that vary among individuals, and different alleles of the human *MUC1* gene may code for between 25 and 100 or more tandem repeats. A large part of the molecule is carbohydrate, and the degree of glycosylation is variable, making PEM very heterogeneous in structure (Klee & Schreiber, 2004).

The CA 15-3 determinant is identified by two distinct monoclonal antibodies. The assay uses a solid-phase conjugated MAb—MAb 115D8—to capture the MAM-6 antigen in human plasma and a labeled MAb DF3 as detecting antibody. MAb 115D8 was prepared against human defatted milk fat globule, and MAb DF3 was prepared against the breast carcinoma cell line MCF-7. The CA 15-3 antigen is present in a variety of adenocarcinomas, including breast, colon, lung, ovary, and pancreas.

CA 15-3 is a more sensitive and specific marker for monitoring the clinical course of patients with metastatic breast cancer (Canizares et al, 2001). CA 15-3 levels increase with higher stages of breast cancer stage (Bast et al, 2001). In addition, CA 15-3 can be used to predict adverse outcomes in breast cancer patients (Gion et al, 2002; Kumpulainen et al, 2002; Duffy et al, 2004). However, the relative low sensitivity (23%) and specificity (69%) (Chan & Sell, 2001) in detecting breast cancer have limited its use. CA 15-3 can also be elevated in chronic hepatitis, liver cirrhosis, sarcoidosis, tuberculosis, and systemic lupus erythematosus, and in patients who smoke (Tondini et al, 1988). CA 27.29, another mucin marker MUC1-associated antigen, is a slightly more sensitive breast cancer marker than CA 15.3. The FDA has approved both CA 15-3 and CA 27.29 for monitoring therapy of advanced or recurrent breast cancer. Patients with ovarian carcinoma have significantly elevated MUC1 serum concentrations as compared to those with benign ovarian diseases with high variability. Results from immunohistochemistry indicate that mucin-1 has a prognostic relevance in ovarian carcinomas when evaluating the expression by VU4H5 antibody (Engelstaedter et al, 2012).

CA 19-9, CA 50, AND CA 19-5

CA 19-9 is the first tumor marker of a group of newer epitopes, including CA 125, CA 15-3, and CEA, defined by monoclonal antibodies. These new monoclonal kits detect more newly discovered epitopes and were designed to replace polyclonal CEA measurements for various carcinomas. The assay for CA 19-9 measures a carbohydrate antigenic determinant expressed on a high molecular weight mucin. CA 19-9 is an epitope, defined as sialylated lacto-*N*-fucopentose II, recognized by the MAb 1116NS-199. The molecule, carrying the CA 19-9 epitope, appears as mucin in the sera of cancer patients but as a ganglioside in tumor cells. CA 19-9 is also related to Lewis blood group substances. Only serum antigen from cancer patients belonging to the Le (a^-b^+) or Le (a^+b^-) blood group will be CA 19-9-positive. In addition to CA 19-9, CA 19-5 and CA50 have also been defined by monoclonal antibodies that are only slightly different from CA 19-9. CA 19-9 can be elevated in patients with colorectal cancer, gastric cancer, and pancreatic cancer. The epitope related to CA 50 is very similar to that of CA 19-9 but lacks a fucose residue, the same epitope found in Lewis-negative Le (a^-b^-) individuals. Serum CA 19-9 concentrations not only are frequently highly elevated in both gastric and pancreatic carcinomas but also are useful for monitoring the success of therapy and for detecting recurrence in these cancer patients. However, it has been reported that CA 19-9 and CA 50 complement each other in pancreatic and other carcinomas: Their simultaneous use may improve the sensitivity in detecting these malignant diseases. CA 19-9 is the most widely studied and the only FDA-approved biomarker for pancreatic ductal carcinoma (Winter et al, 2013). Elevated perioperative serum CA 19-9 levels are independent predictors of poor survival in patients with resectable cholangiocarcinoma (Kondo et al, 2014). CA 19-5 is detected by mouse MAb CC3C-195 and reacts with both Le^a and sialyl-Le^a epitopes. CC3C-195 binds with high affinity to the sialylated Le^a blood

group antigen but exhibits a lower affinity to the nonsialylated form. Elevated serum levels of CA 50 and CA 19-5 can also be found in patients with colon, pancreatic, and hepatocellular carcinomas. False-positive findings may occur in patients with benign liver disease and may be due to cholestasis in these patients (Wu & Carlisle, 1992).

CA 125

CA 125 is another antigenic determinant defined by a MAb and is also associated with a high molecular weight (>200 kDa) mucin-like glycoprotein. CA 125 is expressed by more than 80% of nonmucinous epithelial ovarian carcinomas and is found in most serous, endometrioid, and clear cell carcinomas of the ovary (Jacobs & Bast, 1989). However, patients undergoing chemotherapy may show a false decline of CA 125 antigen and a negative result does not always rule out tumor recurrence. CA 125 is also used clinically for follow-up on uterine tumors (>60% are elevated) and benign tumors, including endometriosis. Recent studies showed greatly improved sensitivity of serum CA 125 in combination with other markers using proteomics techniques (discussed in detail in succeeding chapters) (Jacobs & Menon, 2004; Lu et al, 2004; Zhang et al, 2004). Studies for the application of serum CA 125 in other cancerous (e.g., non-Hodgkin lymphoma, lung cancer) and nonmalignant (e.g., liver cirrhosis) diseases have been performed (Ando et al, 2003; Xiao & Liu, 2003; Zidan et al, 2004) and showed increased levels of CA 125 in the sera of these patients.

Recently, human epididymis protein 4 (HE4) has been studied to improve the sensitivity and specificity of ovarian cancer diagnosis. HE4 is primarily expressed in the reproductive and respiratory tracts (Bingle et al, 2002; Galgano et al, 2006) and is overexpressed in epithelial ovarian cancer (Schummer et al, 1999). The HE4 gene product is an *N*-glycosylated protein, which is secreted into the extracellular environment and can be detected in the bloodstream of patients with ovarian cancer (Moore et al, 2008). HE4 was found to be elevated in more than half of ovarian tumors that do not express CA 125 (Moore et al, 2008). This finding prompted the development of a dual marker algorithm that combined HE4 and CA 125 with the pre- and postmenopausal statuses of the patient, known as Risk of Ovarian Malignancy Algorithm (ROMA) (Moore et al, 2009). ROMA has been shown in several studies to better predict the presence of a malignant ovarian mass than other markers, with high sensitivity and specificity (Moore et al, 2009).

CA 72-4

The CA 72-4 assay detects a mucin-like human adenocarcinoma-associated antigen—TAG-72—which is a high molecular weight (>10^6 kDa) mucin-like complex molecule. Because the TAG-72 can be detected in both fetal epithelia and sera from patients with various carcinomas, it is also considered to be a carcinoembryonic protein. However, only moderately elevated serum CA 72-4 are found in most carcinomas. Currently, CA 72-4 is considered to be a useful marker for the management of patients with gastric and colorectal carcinoma. CA 72-4 has been proposed as a specific marker for tumor occurrence of resectable gastric cancer (Marrelli et al, 2001) and a prognostic marker for survival (Gaspar et al, 2001). CA 72-4 has been reported to be an independent prognostic marker for survival in colorectal cancer (Louhimo et al, 2002) in multivariate analysis together with β hCG and CEA.

CALCITONIN

Calcitonin is one of the circulating peptide hormones that may become elevated in patients with increased bone turnover rate associated with skeletal metastases. Calcitonin can be ectopically elevated in bronchogenic carcinomas and is also elevated in medullary carcinoma of the thyroid (see Table 74-4). Serum procalcitonin, having comparable diagnostic accuracy, has great potential to replace serum calcitonin as a new standard of care in the management of medullary carcinoma of the thyroid because it does not need to be kept cool on ice or frozen and is easier to manage at the community level (Machens et al, 2014).

CHROMOGRANIN A

Chromogranin A is a major soluble protein of the chromaffin granule. Chromogranin A and catecholamines are released from the adrenal medulla upon stimulation of the splanchnic nerve. However, chromogranin A is not confined to chromaffin cells of the adrenal medulla and sympathetic neurons. It is also present in various neuroendocrine organs. Elevated serum chromogranin A levels can be detected in pheochromocytoma (Giovanella & Ceriani, 2002), medullary carcinoma of the thyroid, and small cell lung carcinoma (Ma et al, 2003). Interestingly, increased serum chromogranin A levels are detected in epithelial cancers with neuroendocrine differentiation, including prostate, breast, ovary, pancreas, and colon (Wu et al, 2000).

Prostate cancer with neuroendocrine differentiation has been an active area of study. Higher levels of serum chromogranin A are associated with poorly differentiated prostate cancer (Isshiki et al, 2002). It is also increased after androgen blockade therapy and systemic radionucleotide therapy (Ferrero-Pous et al, 2001) for prostate cancer. Furthermore, an association between increased chromogranin A and prostate cancer metastasis has been observed (Tarle et al, 2002). Intermittent androgen deprivation therapy can reduce the levels of chromogranin A, and thus the neuroendocrine differentiation of prostate cancer (Sciarra et al, 2003). Chromogranin A is not only a reliable serum diagnostic biomarker for pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors but also can predict overall survival and treatment response, especially in Asian patients (Chou et al, 2014).

CYTOKERATIN 19 FRAGMENT

Cytokeratin 19 fragment (CYFRA 21-1) is a fragment of the cytokeratin 19 intermediate filament found in the serum. It is a subunit of a cytokeratin intermediate filament expressed in simple epithelia and their malignant counterparts. Studies of elevated serum CYFRA 21-1 have concentrated on breast cancer and squamous cell carcinoma of the lung. CYFRA 21-1 was reported to have a sensitivity of 60%, 64.2%, and 89% for the detection of stage IV breast cancer, recurrence, and metastasis, respectively. Probability of survival for primary cancer patients, recurrence after surgery, and response after chemotherapy were correlated with elevated preoperative serum CYFRA 21-1 in breast cancer patients (Nakata et al, 2000; 2004). CYFRA 21-1 was also shown to reflect the tumor mass in multiple studies with correlation to tumor stage, survival, predictive role in surgical treatment for early-stage disease, and chemotherapy for advanced-stage non–small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). In one study of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (SCC), increased postradiotherapeutic or chemotherapeutic CYFRA 21-1 has been explored as an early indicator for distant metastasis (Kuropkat et al, 2002). CYFRA 21-1 is not increased in patients with nonneoplastic lung disease, including pneumoconiosis and obstructive airway disease (Schneider et al, 2003).

HUMAN CHORIONIC GONADOTROPIN

Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), a member of the glycoprotein hormone family, is synthesized and secreted by trophoblast cells of the placenta and is a heterodimeric hormone composed of noncovalently linked α and β subunits internally linked by disulfide bonds. The current assays using monoclonal antibodies are available to detect intact hCG, "nicked" hCG, or hCGn (which is partially degraded hCG that is missing peptide bonds between amino acids 44 and 45 or 47 and 48); hCG α subunit; hCG β subunit; and hCG β core (residual hCG β, residues 6-40 joined by disulfide bond to hCG β, residues 55-92) (Berger et al, 2002; Birken et al, 2003). Both malignant and nonmalignant trophoblast cells synthesize and secrete not only the biologically active α and β dimer but also the uncombined (or free) α and β subunits. In addition to the intact dimer, a free β subunit of hCG has been detected in the serum of women during early pregnancy and in patients with malignant tumors (see Chapter 25).

Measurement of the free β subunit is useful for the detection of recurrence or metastasis for choriocarcinoma when the intact hCG may remain normal. Analysis of serum hCG subunits is especially useful for managing patients with germ cell tumors (Von Eyben, 2003). However, elevated hCG can be found in trophoblastic tumors, choriocarcinoma, and testicular tumors. More than 60% of patients with nonseminomatous germ cell tumors and 10% to 30% with seminomas have elevated free β hCG.

Seminomatous testicular cancer contains both intact hCG and β hCG or free α subunits in equal amounts. Therefore, only one assay is needed for monitoring these patients. On the other hand, only hCG or β hCG subunits may be found in patients with nonseminomatous cancers. The measurement of both free subunits and intact hCG will increase the test sensitivity for these patients with nonseminomatous cancers.

Ectopic free β hCG production occurs in approximately 30% of patients with other cancers, including urothelial cancer, but only the free β hCG and its respective breakdown product, β core, have been detected in these clinical samples. Ectopic α hCG is a marker of malignancy in pancreatic endocrine tumors (Ma et al, 2003). Recent efforts in preparation of the new World Health Organization reference reagent for hCG

(HCG, hCG-α, and hCG-β) and its related molecules may decrease the nonspecific reaction and increased accuracy of clinical hCG testing (Bristow et al, 2005).

HER2/*neu* (c-*erb*B-2) ONCOPROTEIN

The HER2/*neu* (c-*erb*B-2) oncogene is a 185-kDa transmembrane protein of the tyrosine kinase receptor family and is discussed extensively in Chapter 75. It shows structural and functional homology with the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) containing intracellular, transmembrane, and ECDs (see Fig. 74-2). HER2/*neu* has been found to be elevated in the sera of patients with a number of different epithelial cell cancers, including breast cancer (Mori et al, 1990; Leitzel et al, 1992; Ali et al, 2002; Tsigris et al, 2002a, 2002b). In patients with breast cancer, serum HER2/*neu* is very important as a prognostic and predictive marker. At the time of initial diagnosis, serum HER2/*neu* is elevated in only 5% to 10% of breast cancer patients. Increased serum HER2/*neu* before adjuvant therapy has been shown to be associated with increased tumor size, tumor grade, and positive lymph nodes. The serum HER2/*neu* test is indicated for follow-up and monitoring of patients with metastatic breast cancer whose initial serum HER2/*neu* level is greater than 15 ng/mL. Schippinger and colleagues (2004) reported that a decrease of elevated serum HER2/*neu* to levels below 15 ng/mL and levels continuously 15 ng/mL or less during the course of disease correlated significantly with longer survival. The serum HER2 level as assessed by the chemiluminescence immunoassay method is the most sensitive marker of HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer compared with the CEA and CA 15-3 levels (Kan et al, 2009). Prechemotherapy and postchemotherapy HER2/*neu* levels could serve as a prognostic marker for disease-free survival and overall survival (Hayes et al, 2001; Saghatchian et al, 2004). In addition, serum HER2/*neu* levels correlate with response to chemotherapy, including chemo- and hormonal-, as well as Herceptin (trastuzumab) treatment; higher levels predict incomplete response, while low levels suggest longer or complete treatment responses (Colomer et al, 2000; Harris et al, 2001; Lipton et al, 2002; Bethune-Volters et al, 2004; Luftner et al, 2004).

Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) measures the levels of the circulating c-*erb*B-2, referred to as p105 or serum HER2, constituting the ectodomain (see Fig. 74-2). Three FDA-approved ELISA tests for serum circulating HER2 using monoclonal antibodies are available: one for microtiter plate assay—Oncogene Science/Siemens—and two for automated instrument—Bayer Immuno 1 HER2/neu assay (Siemens) and ADVIA Centaur HER2/neu immunoassay (Siemens). The ADVIA Centaur HER2/neu immunoassay kit is similar to the Bayer/Siemens Immuno 1 HER2/neu kit in indication for use, format, performance characteristics, and results. The ADVIA differs mainly in the signal system, which is chemiluminogenic, instead of the ALP-catalyzed color reaction in the Siemens/ADVIA Immuno 1 assay. More important, there is no interference with the serum HER2/*neu* test by heterophile antibodies and, more significantly, the therapeutic MAb trastuzumab, because different antigen epitopes are targeted (see Fig. 74-2).

HER2/*neu* is also overexpressed and/or amplified in oral squamous cell carcinoma (Chen et al, 2007), NSCLC (Papila et al, 2009), gastric cancer (Tsigris et al, 2002b), colorectal cancer (Tsigris et al, 2002a), urothelial carcinoma (Hussain et al, 2007), prostate cancer (Kehinde et al, 2008), and ovarian cancers in association with advanced stage and poor prognosis, so it can be used as a therapeutic target in these cancers (Agus et al, 2000). Recently, serum levels of HER2 extracellular domain are highly correlated with tissue HER2 status in metastatic gastric cancer, and this assay can be considered as a potential alternative for tissue HER2 status (Peng et al, 2014).

p53

p53 (see Chapter 75) is a 53-kDa nuclear phosphoprotein and a negative regulator of cell growth. It functions as a tumor suppressor by inducing the expression of gene products that are responsible for inhibiting or arresting cell growth and proliferation. The ability of p53 protein to regulate transcription of its target genes is based on its sequence-specific DNA binding activity and the presence of a domain that can activate transcription when attached to the DNA-binding domain of p53 target protein. It is the DNA-binding domain that appears to be sensitive to disruption by mutation, and most lesions associated with human cancers occur within this domain. The encoding gene for p53 has been found to be mutated in about half of almost all types of cancer arising from a wide spectrum of tissues. Because of its short half-life (20 minutes), the wild-type p53 protein in the blood circulation is not detectable (Malkin et al, 1990; Harris & Hollstein, 1993). However, current molecular techniques such as PCR/SSCP (detailed in Part 8) can detect serum p53 gene mutations. The presence of p53 antibody in serum facilitated the detection of abnormal p53 serologically. Significantly, the presence of p53 antibody in serum is associated with the expression of p53 mutations and positively correlates with the degree of cancer malignancy (discussed in Chapter 75).

PARATHYROID HORMONE–RELATED PEPTIDE

Plasma concentrations of parathyroid hormone–related peptide (PTH-RP) are elevated in the majority of patients with cancer-associated hypercalcemia. PTH-RP is secreted by tumors associated with hypercalcemia. The circulatory forms of PTH-RP in these patients include both a large amino terminal peptide and a carboxyl terminal peptide with close sequence homology to parathyrin (PTH). The mechanism by which PTH-RP induces hypercalcemia involves binding and activating receptors that also bind PTH. Measuring the concentrations of PTH-RP may be useful in the differential diagnosis of hypercalcemia related to malignancy and associated either with primary hyperparathyroidism, sarcoidosis, vitamin D toxicity, or various malignancies (including squamous cell, renal, bladder, and ovarian carcinomas). Patients with impaired renal function but without hypercalcemia or cancer may have increased plasma concentrations of PTH-RP (Burtis et al, 1990).

SERUM MARKERS FOR PROSTATE CANCER

Serum Prostate-Specific Antigen

PSA is a member of the kallikrein family of serine proteases that is synthesized uniquely in the epithelial cells of the prostate gland. Its expression in these cells is regulated by the androgen receptor. Because of its high degree of tissue specificity, it is perhaps the most widely used tumor marker discovered thus far. The normal reference range is 0 to 4 ng/mL. The cancer sensitivity and tissue specificity of PSA make it the most useful tumor marker available for the screening and management of prostate cancer. Lack of cancer specificity in distinguishing prostate cancer and nonmalignant prostate lesions is the main drawback with PSA. Benign conditions such as BPH, acute prostatitis, and infarction can also be correlated with elevated serum PSA levels.

PSA serves as an excellent cancer marker in prostate cancer screening, diagnosis, prediction of cancer risk, and recurrence. Since its discovery in prostate cancer serum in 1980 (Papsidero et al, 1980), PSA has been subjected to intensive research and clinical usage in the screening, detection, and monitoring of prostate cancer. PSA and its various forms are used to guide clinical decisions for further tissue biopsy diagnosis, resulting in increased prostate cancer detection, especially in young men. Use of PSA in prostate cancer detection has also resulted in a reduction in the number of prostate cancers discovered only at late stages in which metastases occurred, from about 30% of all newly diagnosed cases to about 10% of all such cases (Cooperberg et al, 2004). Annual PSA screening is recommended by both the American Urological Association and the American Cancer Society for all men over the age of 50. The American Urological Association (AUA) issued new guidelines here during its 104th annual meeting (Greene et al, 2009). The new guidelines have lowered the age for beginning prostate-specific antigen (PSA) screening to 40 years for relatively healthy, well-informed men who want to be tested. In addition, because of its tissue specificity, the PSA assay is particularly useful for monitoring the success of surgical prostatectomy. Complete removal of the prostate should result in an undetectable PSA level, while incomplete resection of the gland (not persistent disease) might result in measurable levels of PSA. However, it should remain unchanged on extended follow-up. Any increase in measurable PSA after a successful radical prostatectomy would indicate prostate cancer recurrence or metastasis. A transient and modest increase of PSA may occur during radiation therapy, which should not be misinterpreted as disease progression.

Multiple studies suggest that diagnosis is made in more than 80% (in some studies, >90%—e.g., DeSoto-LaPaix et al, 2003) of patients with prostate cancer from serum PSA levels that are greater than 4 ng/mL. Because BPH and acute prostatitis also induce elevated serum PSA levels, approximately half of patients with PSA values greater than 4 ng/mL are not found to have prostate cancer on biopsy, even at significantly elevated levels (i.e., >10 ng/mL). These studies therefore suggest that PSA has a sensitivity of a minimum of 80% and a specificity of around 50%. However, it has also been found that about 20% of initially negative biopsies, when repeated over a 3-year period, become positive (DeSoto-LaPaix et al, 2003). Thus the specificity of PSA may be higher, assuming that the biopsies missed a malignant lesion and that a new malignancy did not occur

over the 3-year time period, leading to the current practice of saturation biopsy.

On the other hand, the cutoff value of 4 ng/mL does not sufficiently distinguish patients with and without prostate cancer, including more aggressive cancers (Schröder et al, 2000; Horninger et al, 2002; Punglia et al, 2003; Thompson et al, 2004). In a review of the Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial, 2950 men who never had a PSA level greater than 4 ng/mL or an abnormal DRE had a final PSA determination and underwent a prostate biopsy after being in the study for 7 years (Thompson et al, 2004). There was a 15.2% (n = 449) biopsy-proven prevalence of prostate cancer in men with PSA levels no greater than 4 ng/mL. High-grade prostate cancer (defined as a Gleason score ≥7) was seen in 15.8% (n = 71) of these men. Size of the tumor was not reported. In the placebo arm of the Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial, there was no cutpoint of PSA with simultaneous high sensitivity and high specificity for detection of prostate cancer in healthy men, but rather a continuum of prostate cancer risk at all values of PSA (Thompson et al, 2005). These studies appear to confirm the results of other studies that the sensitivity of PSA, using the 4 ng/mL cutoff, in diagnosing prostate cancer is on the order of 80% to 85%. The finding that using a cutoff of 4 ng/mL for PSA to diagnose this disease results in 15.2% false-negative results in the patient population subjected to biopsies is compatible with this conclusion (i.e., 84.2% of patients with prostate cancer had serum PSA levels greater than 4 ng/mL).

The issue of using lower cutoffs for serum PSA to identify more patients with prostate cancer has been further explored (Punglia et al, 2003), especially in view of the development of more sensitive assays for PSA, now commercially available in PSA test kits, that are capable of detecting serum PSA less than 0.1 ng/mL. Based on considerations from a Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial, European guidelines were issued in 2008 recommending a PSA cutoff value of 2.5 ng/mL or, alternatively, a PSA velocity of 0.6 ng/mL per year as a biopsy indication (Heidenreich et al, 2008).

In addition to the issue of cutoffs for PSA in the diagnosis of prostate cancer, the issue of the efficacy of diagnosis of this disease has been raised as it has been for a number of other cancers, including breast cancer. The question is whether early diagnosis of prostate cancer saves patients' lives. To address this question, a major study by the European Randomized Study of Screening for Prostate Cancer (ERSPC) was carried out over approximately the past decade, involving 182,000 men between the ages of 50 and 74 in seven European countries who were randomly assigned to a group that was offered PSA screening at an average of once every 4 years or to a control group that was treated according to current practice standards and was not subjected to the regular screening procedure. Most participating centers in this study used a lower PSA cutoff value as an indicator of abnormality than the usual 4 ng/mL (i.e., 3 ng/mL versus 4 ng/mL). Prostate cancer was detected in 8.2% of the men in the screening group, while 4.8% was detected in the control group. The absolute death risk difference between the control group and the screening group was 0.71 patient per 1000 patients, implying that 1410 patients must be screened in order to prevent one death from prostate cancer. Overall, this study found that screening resulted in a lower death rate from prostate cancer by 20% (Schröder et al, 2008; 2009). The study concluded that this significant reduction in the number of deaths from prostate cancer was accompanied by a high risk of overdiagnosis, which, nonetheless, seems to be a small price to pay for the significant number of lives saved.

Contrary to the results of this investigation, another study by the Prostate, Lung, Colorectal, and Ovarian Cancer Screening Trial on patients assigned to be screened, with PSA and DRE, and control groups found that whereas 20% more prostate cancer was diagnosed in the screened group than in the control group, the death rate among both groups was the same (Grubb et al, 2008). The conclusion was that screening for prostate cancer does not save lives but subjects patients to unnecessary procedures that do not affect outcome. However, it was recognized that increasing the length of the study might show differences in death rates between the two groups. Possibly also the lower cutoff value of 3 ng/mL used in many of the centers in the ERSPC study identified more patients with significant disease.

Methods to Improve the Performance of Serum PSA Measurement for the Early Detection of Prostate Cancer

Several approaches have been developed to increase the sensitivity and specificity of PSA in detecting prostate cancer. First, as noted previously, use of serum PSA in combination with either DRE or transrectal ultrasound of the prostate results in increases in both sensitivity and specificity (Catalona et al, 1991; Brawer et al, 1992). In addition, the PSA fractions (i.e., free and bound) have been used to increase the sensitivity and specificity of elevated serum PSA in the diagnosis of prostate cancer.

Free PSA, Complex PSA, and Percentage of Free PSA

PSA is capable of complexing with various endogenous protease inhibitors, including alpha 1-antichymotrypsin (ACT), α2-macroglobulin (to which it binds covalently), and α-protease inhibitor (API). These stable forms are collectively known as complexed PSA (cPSA). Serum PSA exists in the serum largely (up to 90% of total PSA) (Vessella & Lange, 1997) in the form of a PSA-ACT (PSA–α1-antichymotrypsin) complex (Christensson et al, 1993), which is readily detectable by most immunoassays, whereas complexes with α2-macroglobulin escape detection by commercial PSA. The noncomplexed forms, known as free PSA (fPSA), are unreactive with plasma protease inhibitors. In prostate cancer, there is generally an increase in the serum concentration of complexed PSA and a corresponding decrease in unbound or free PSA (Parsons et al, 2004). On the other hand, the relative amount of free PSA is higher in BPH than in prostate cancer. Thus immunoassays have been developed that quantify either cPSA or fPSA. The epitopes exposed by fPSA but not by cPSA enabled the development of these assays specifically measuring fPSA or cPSA as complements to the conventional PSA assay, which measures total PSA (tPSA) (Lilja et al, 1991; Stenman et al, 1991). Based on these assays, it has been found that measuring complex PSA with ACT (PSA-ACT) directly eliminates many technical problems associated with PSA assays and improves the differentiation of BPH from prostate cancer (Wu, 1994; Wu & Liu, 1998), thereby increasing test specificity (Parsons et al, 2004). The specificity of PSA has been enhanced by using molecular forms of PSA and fPSA, such as percent free PSA (% fPSA), proPSA, intact PSA, or benign prostatic hyperplasia–associated PSA, and/or new serum markers (Stephan et al, 2009).

Conversely, measurement of fPSA and the calculation of percentage of fPSA (%fPSA = [fPSA/tPSA] × 100), which has an inverse relationship with prostate cancer risk (Polascik et al, 1999), have been used to help to differentiate BPH from prostate cancer, also increasing test specificity and reducing unnecessary biopsies for BPH patients. More important, the free PSA ratio improves the specificity for prostate cancer detection in men with PSA between 4 and 10 ng/mL, also reducing unnecessary biopsies. In addition, fPSA may be useful as a prostate cancer morbidity predictor (Polascik et al, 1999; Ito et al, 2003). Some studies also showed that %fPSA can be used to predict prostate cancer in patients with PSA less than 4 ng/mL (Djavan et al, 1999; Horninger et al, 2002). One caveat is that fPSA is subject to quick degradation at 4° C or above. The recommended time interval from sample collection and assay should be less than 3 hours, and the sample should be stored and shipped at –70° C (Woodrum et al, 1996). Overall, prostate cancer is associated with elevated complexed PSA and low %fPSA (<6%) (Catalona et al, 1995), and higher ratios of free PSA (>23%) are usually associated with BPH.

The Bayer complexed PSA assay, which measures both PSA-ACT and PSA-API, was initially proposed as a single assay alternative to the free and tPSA assays (Brawer et al, 1998; Mitchell et al, 2001). However, only the ratio of complex PSA to total PSA can reach equivalent results compared with %fPSA (Lein et al, 2003; Roddam et al, 2005).

fPSA has recently been shown to exist in at least three molecular forms: proPSA (Mikolajczyk et al, 1997), BPSA (Mikolajczyk et al, 2000), and inactive "intact" PSA (iPSA). Recently, the FDA approved the Dimension FPSA (free PSA) Flex (Dade Behring, Newark, Del.) and AxSYM (Abbott, North Chicago, Ill.) Free Prostate Specific Antigen tests, which are typically performed along with a total prostate specific antigen (tPSA) test and a DRE and helps to determine whether a prostate biopsy is needed to rule out the risk (in percent) of cancer in men 50 years or older with a total PSA of 4 to 10 ng/mL. The smaller the percent fPSA, the more likely the patient is to have prostate cancer.

In 2007, the FDA gave approval to a new test, Immulite 1000/2000 Free PSA assay (Siemens, Tarrytown, N.Y.), a third-generation PSA assay based on the solid phase sequential chemiluminescent immunometric method for the quantitative measurement of fPSA that is used in conjunction with tPSA. The routine sample preparation and refrigerated (2°–8° C) storage of samples for 24 hours or frozen storage at –70° C is acceptable for the measurement of fPSA.

Principles of Measurement. There are several different assays for free and complexed PSA, one of which is summarized in Figure 74-3. When PSA is bound, certain antigenic determinants are "buried" by the protein to which it binds (mainly, ACT). These are exposed on fPSA, so antibodies to the buried determinants of complexed PSA will detect only fPSA. On the other hand, there are determinants that are exposed on both free and complexed PSA and can be detected by antibodies to these determinants, allowing for determination of total PSA. Finally, antibodies to the buried PSA determinant are available that also block the common exposed

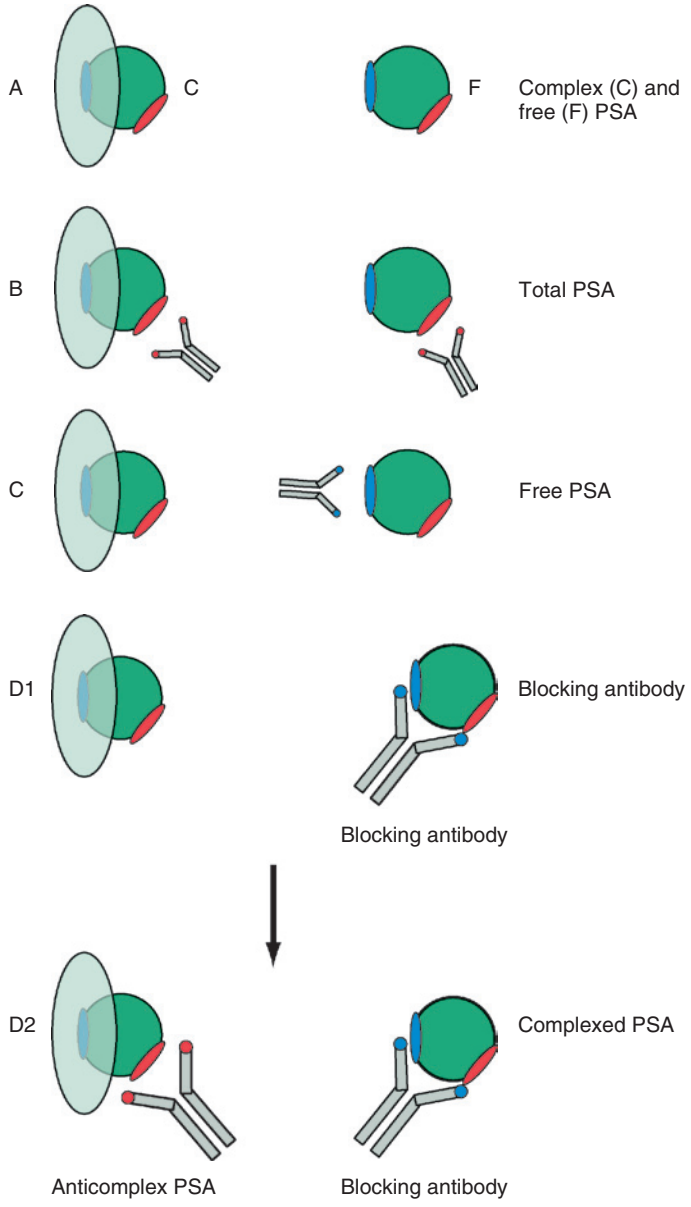


Figure 74-3 Three different assays for prostate-specific antigen (PSA). A, PSA is shown to exist in the free (F) or complexed (C) states. Some of its antigenic determinants (blue in the figure) are buried in the complexed state. These are exposed in the free state. On the other hand, as shown in **B,** there are common determinants (red in the figure) that are exposed in both complexed and free PSA. Antibodies to these common determinants will detect total PSA (free + complexed). Because the blue determinants are exposed only in free PSA, as shown in **C,** antibodies to these determinants will detect only free PSA. Finally, as shown in **D1,** antibodies have been developed against the blue determinant of free PSA that also block the red determinant. Thus antibodies to the red determinant, which is common to both free and complexed PSA, will react only with complexed PSA, as shown in **D2**. This is the basis for the Siemens/Bayer assay for complexed PSA.

determinant. These antibodies react only with free PSA by binding to the buried determinant but also block the exposed common site. Now, in the presence of this blocking antibody, another antibody is added that reacts only with the common exposed determinant. The only available common exposed determinants are on complexed PSA. Thus this double antibody approach, using a blocking antibody and a detection antibody, quantifies the level of complexed PSA.

proPSA and Prostate Health Index

proPSA, which contains a seven amino acid pro leader peptide, is a molecular form of free PSA (fPSA) and is more likely to be associated with prostate cancer. Truncated forms of proPSA also exist in serum, which contain five, four, or two more amino acids than PSA. The proPSA (p2PSA) form has been identified as the most prevalent form in tumor extracts, which suggests a role for these molecular forms of PSA for the early detection of prostate cancer and for possibly identifying aggressive prostate cancer (Hori et al, 2013; Lazzeri et al, 2013, 2014; Loeb et al, 2013; Scattoni et al, 2013; Heidegger et al, 2014). The prostate health index (phi) developed by Beckman Coulter, Inc., in partnership with the NCI Early Detection Research Network was approved by the FDA in 2012. This new test is actually a mathematical formula of three biomarkers: (p2PSA/fPSA) × PSA1/2. Using this calculation, the clinician will be able to see each individual result, as well as make a potentially better-informed recommendation to the patient. The intended use of phi is to distinguish prostate cancer from benign prostatic conditions in men aged 50 years and older with a total serum PSA between 4 and 10 ng/ml and in whom the digital rectal examination is not suspicious for cancer (Sokoll et al, 2010). Two recent studies published by Lazzeri and colleagues (2013; 2014) demonstrated that the use of p2PSA and phi significantly improved the predictive accuracy for detection of prostate cancer. In the first study of about 650 men from five European centers, patients had PSA levels between 2 and 10 ng/mL. The researchers demonstrated that p2PSA and phi improved the detection of prostate cancer with a Gleason score of greater than or equal to 7 diseases compared with PSA and fPSA. In the second study, in a small cohort of about 150 men with a positive family history of prostate cancer, phi significantly outperformed tPSA and %fPSA (AUCs 0.73, 0.55, and 0.60, respectively) for the detection of aggressive prostate cancer.

PSA Doubling Time, Velocity, and Density

Cancer is a growth process, and it seems reasonable to suppose that the rate of change of a tumor marker would be a more sensitive marker of disease aggressiveness than an absolute level, so the concept of PSA doubling time and PSA velocity came forward in the last decade. The time (in months) required for the PSA value to double is known as the *PSA doubling time*. It has been shown that the PSA doubling time can predict recurrence after radical prostatectomy in androgen-independent prostate cancer patients (Lee, 2003; Loberg et al, 2003).

The rate of PSA increase over time—PSA velocity, or PSAV (Carter et al, 1992)—is the PSA difference divided by the number of years, typically given as nanograms per milliliter per year. It has been shown that a PSA velocity of 0.75 ng/year or greater is a strong predictor of cancer with a specificity of 95% (Carter et al, 1992). More recently, it has been shown that PSA velocity may be useful in predicting prostate cancer risk when PSA levels are between 2 and 4 ng/mL (Fang et al, 2002). This is especially useful in predicting the risk of cancer and guiding the necessity of prostate biopsy in patients with low/normal PSA value (2-4 ng/mL). In a recent study (Moul et al, 2007), it has been suggested that by analogy with serum PSA levels, which are age-dependent, PSA velocity should be age-adjusted. They noted that biopsy-guideline threshold levels (PSA ≥4 ng/mL, or PSAV ≥0.75 ng/mL per year) underestimated the cancer risk in men aged 50 to 59 years and should therefore be decreased to 2 ng/mL and 0.40 ng/mL per year, respectively. A sharp rise in the PSA level increases suspicion of a fast-growing cancer, but another important confounder is prostatitis. Thus a repeat PSA measurement following a trial of antibiotics is a reasonable option. A 2006 study found that men who had a PSA velocity greater than 0.35 ng/mL per year had a higher relative risk of dying of prostate cancer than men who had a PSA velocity of less than 0.35 ng/mL per year (Carter et al, 2006). The National Comprehensive Cancer Center Network (www.nccn.org) 2007 guidelines for prostate cancer detection include a recommendation that men with a PSA velocity greater than 0.35 ng/mL per year should consider biopsy, even if their PSA level is low. This is a notable finding because prostate cancer causes significant mortality, although a large number of prostate cancer patients die of other causes. Whereas these studies demonstrate a method of identifying aggressive forms of prostate cancer, randomized larger cohort studies are needed to validate these observations. Preoperative PSA velocity is not a good parameter for prostate cancer grade, stage, or recurrence (Freedland et al, 2001). PSA density is a measure of the ratio of total PSA to prostate gland volume as measured by transurethral ultrasonography. PSA densities of greater than 0.15 indicate an increased probability of prostate cancer rather than BPH (Polascik et al, 1999).

PSA is still a gold standard biomarker for prostate cancer. It can be made even more useful diagnostically both by employing it in conjunction with other methods such as DRE and by quantifying its fractions (complexed and free) or various molecular markers in the urine.

CIRCULATING TUMOR CELLS IN PERIPHERAL BLOOD

Hematogenous spread of cancer cells is the main venue for cancer metastases (Eccles & Welch, 2007). Thus the detection of these disseminating

primary cancer cells in peripheral blood cannot only act as a tool for monitoring early metastases, but it also can predict the prognosis and the treatment outcome of novel therapies.

The major obstacle in successful detection of CTCs is their paucity in peripheral blood, approximately one or fewer CTC cells in 10^5 to 10^6 peripheral blood mononuclear cells. Thus various enrichment techniques are used to capture the circulating tumor cells based on cell size. These include membrane microfilter devices or micro-electro mechanical systems, isolation by the size of the epithelial tumor, cell density (density-gradient centrifugation), and specific antibodies to the cell surface proteins based on the use of immunomagnetic beads technique (see Chapter 44) and flow-assisted cell sorting (see Chapter 34). The enriched CTC can further be characterized by additional detection techniques. The two main approaches for the detection of CTCs are immunologic assays using monoclonal antibodies directed against specific proteins with the use of fluorescence microscopy and flow cytometry and by measuring tissue-specific transcripts by using PCR-based molecular assays (e.g., RT-PCR and methylated DNA PCR) (Molnar et al, 2003). The Cellsearch (Johnson & Johnson) system, the first FDA-approved test based on the immunologic approach, has gained considerable attention because it allows both standardized automated immunomagnetic enrichment using antibodies targeting epithelial cell adhesion molecules (EpCam) and subsequent labeling of CTCs with fluorescent antibodies specific for epithelial cells (cytokeratins 8, 18, and 19) and leukocytes (CD45) (Cristofanilli et al, 2004; Eccles & Welch, 2007; Riethdorf et al, 2007; Pantel & Riethdorf, 2009). This system can provide clinically useful information on the prognosis of patients with metastatic breast, colon, and prostate cancer (Moreno et al, 2005; Cohen et al, 2006; Hayes et al, 2006) and has the potential to evaluate CTCs in pharmacodynamic studies that test new targeted therapies (Moreno et al, 2005; de Bono et al, 2007). Recently, a microfluidics microchip technology has been developed that uses a silicon microchip containing thousands of microspots staining with anti-EpCAM (CTC-chip). In this technique, microfluidics are used to pneumatically push whole blood over the surface of the CTC-chip, and then EpCAM-positive CTCs are captured and confirmed as CTC via fluorescence microscopy (Nagrath et al, 2007; Uhr, 2007). CTC chips identified high numbers of cytokeratin-positive CTCs in nearly all tested patients with lung, prostate, pancreatic, breast, and colon cancer, including those without metastatic disease. Surprisingly, patients with localized prostate cancer had more CTCs than patients with overt metastasis. Future studies are required to test whether these cells are viable CTCs with tumor-specific genomic characteristics (Uhr, 2007).

The amount of EpCAM on tumor cells varies widely based on tumor type (Thurm et al, 2003). Therefore, alternative devices based on fiber optic array scanning technology, an ultra-speed automated digital microscopy with laser printing techniques, has been developed to circumvent the rare-cell detection problem (He et al, 2007). By this method, laser-printing optics has been used to excite 300,000 cells per second, which have been decorated by fluorescent dye–conjugated antibodies directly on the slide. Another completely different antibody-based approach is the EPISPOT assay to detect proteins released by CTCs. Using the EPISPOT method, only viable, protein-excreting cells are detected. Nevertheless, the clinical utility of all of these new approaches needs to be validated in large-scale studies in cancer patients (Alix-Panabières et al, 2007a; 2007b).

As summarized, various clinical studies have provided evidence for an association between the presence of CTCs detected at the time of tumor resection and postoperative metastatic relapse in patients with cancers of the breast, prostate, lung, and gastrointestinal tract. The present research data strongly support that CTCs are indicators for cancer progression into metastatic disease and can be used to adjust treatment modality. A recent study indicates that CTC detection predicts the prognosis in clinically relevant subgroups of early-stage breast cancer patients (Ignatiadis et al, 2007). Recently, the first comprehensive meta-analysis of published literature on the prognostic relevance of CTC in patients with early-stage and metastatic breast cancer (MBC) clearly indicated that the detection of CTC is a reliable prognostic factor (Zhang et al, 2012). Keeping this in mind, the American Joint Committee on Cancer has proposed a new category, M0(i+), for TNM staging in breast cancer defined as "no clinical or radiographic evidence of distant metastases, but deposits of molecularly or microscopically detected tumor cells (no larger than 0.2 mm) in blood, bone marrow, or other nonregional nodal tissue in a patient without symptoms or signs of metastases." Despite the general belief that only invasive cancers are assumed to shed isolated tumor cells into the bloodstream and infiltrate lymph nodes, latest studies indicated that tumor cell dissemination may occur before stromal invasion—that is, in the DCIS stage. The reason for this is that these cells have already started to disseminate from preinvasive mammary lesions or represent the earliest step of microinvasion in a preinvasive lesion (Banys et al, 2012; Sanger et al, 2011). The clinical relevance of these cells has to be further evaluated.

Moreover, in other tumor entities such as gastrointestinal cancer, a disease in which overt bone marrow metastases are rare, CTC analyses have generated prognostic information and might therefore become helpful indicators of early systemic tumor cell spread to other distant organs such as lung or liver. A recent systematic review and metaanalysis based on data from 12 studies representing 1329 patients showed that the detection of CTC in peripheral blood of patients with resectable colorectal liver metastases or widespread metastatic colorectal cancer is associated with disease progression and poor survival (Groot et al, 2013). Gazzaniga and colleagues (2013) recently came to the conclusion that CTC detection might help in the selection of high-risk stage II CRC patient candidates for adjuvant chemotherapy, after enumerating CTC with the FDA-cleared CellSearch system. They detected CTC in 22% of patients with a significant correlation with regional lymph node involvement and stage of disease.

Resel and colleagues (2012) analyzed the correlation among CTC and PSA levels, Gleason score, and TNM stage in patients with metastatic hormone-sensitive prostate cancer and reported that the CTC count in peripheral blood could provide a method for correctly staging prostate cancer and for assessing the prognosis of metastatic hormone-sensitive cancer. Monitoring of bone marrow and peripheral blood during and after systemic adjuvant therapy for CTCs might provide unique information for the clinical management of the individual cancer patient and allow an early change in therapy years before the appearance of overt metastasis signals incurability. Further research on the molecular characterization of CTC will provide important information for the identification of therapeutic targets and understanding resistance to therapies. Although large-scale clinical data are still lacking with regard to how molecular characterization of CTCs could be used as a clinical decision-making tool, this type of analysis holds tremendous promise for improved stratification of patients and/or the prospective development of tailored, targeted therapy.

CIRCULATING NUCLEIC ACIDS IN PERIPHERAL BLOOD

CELL-FREE NUCLEIC ACID TESTING IN CANCER

Protein tumor markers and histopathologic staging have been the cornerstones of diagnosis and prognosis of malignancy. Over the past decade, the discovery of cell-free nucleic acids in serum, plasma, urine, or other body fluids has promoted investigation of oncogenes encoding oncoproteins as a means to detect malignancy in a variety of cancers with potentially greater sensitivity (Schmidt et al, 2004), including melanoma (Kopreski et al, 1999; Board et al, 2009), lung (Fleischhacker, 2001; Schmidt et al, 2004; He et al, 2009; Ulivi & Silvestrini, 2013), stomach (Park et al, 2009), colon (Silva et al, 2002; Mansour, 2014), breast (Chen et al, 2000; Gal et al, 2001; Joosse et al, 2014), prostate (Goessl et al, 2000, 2002a, 2002b; Sita-Lumsden et al, 2013), ovary (Hickey et al, 1999), EBV-positive lymphomas (Lechowicz et al, 2002; Lei et al, 2002), leukemia (Schwarz et al, 2009), intracranial neoplasms (Rhodes et al, 1994), and bladder (Goessl et al, 2000, 2002a, 2002b; Utting et al, 2002; Guo et al, 2009).

The basic concept is that tumor-derived nucleic acid can be detected in cell-free sources, such as serum, plasma, urine, lavage fluid, and so on, using amplification methods such as RT-PCR or other detection methods (Goldshtein et al, 2009; Lou et al, 2015). Normally, DNA is isolated from tissue through standard procedures using phenol chloroform extraction, followed by ethanol precipitation. However, DNA can also be obtained directly from serum, plasma, or other body fluids by centrifugation, separating it from cells and platelets. It has been posited that cell-free nucleic acids actually serve an active biologic role in tumor progression by host cell oncogenesis (García-Olmo & García-Olmo, 2013). Recent data suggest that nucleic acids obtained from apoptotic versus cancer cells, preanalytic variables, and intertumor versus intratumor burden can further differ in size, integrity, and tumor subclone representation, which may affect clinical utility as biomarkers (El Messaoudi et al, 2013; Marzese et al, 2013; Yu et al, 2014; Devonshire et al, 2014). In addition to detection of gene levels (including miRNA), the methodology of cell-free nucleic acid–based detection includes detection of microRNA, gene mutations, microsatellite alterations, and promoter hypermethylation.

GENE ARRAYS DETECTING ONCOPROTEIN ABNORMALITIES

Circulating DNA from mutated oncogenes can be readily detected in the serum of cancer patients (Sorenson et al, 1994; de Kok et al, 1997), and that use of PCR methodology has successfully identified p21ras in the stool of patients with colorectal cancer, altered p53 in the urine of patients with bladder cancer (Sidransky et al, 1991), and ras, neu/HER2, and PDGF in the bile of patients with biliary tract cancer (Su et al, 2001). Given the existence now of microchips that contain entire genomes that can be hybridized with the total RNA of cells to detect different levels of gene expression, studies using such chips on which different oncogenes are present may be effective in detecting expression of specific oncogenes present in body fluids from patients with different cancers.

It has been shown that these types of studies are feasible in a study on the tissue of 20 squamous cell esophageal carcinomas (Arai et al, 2003). A total of 57 oncogenes were present on the array and included many of the oncogenes discussed here, including FGF, erb-B2 (HER2/*neu*), and myc. In 9 of the 20 specimens, expression of eight oncogenes, including erb-B2 and myc, was two to four times higher than in normal, control tissue. Comparison of these results with those obtained using conventional hybridization methods revealed that, frequently, this gene amplification was found not to be due to an increase in copy number. As noted above, the p53 gene is frequently overexpressed and/or mutated in squamous cell carcinomas of the esophagus and in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Unfortunately, p53 was not included on this array. In addition, this study did not include hybridization assays for mutant genes.

Nonetheless, these studies illustrate that oncogenes are frequently overexpressed in human cancers and can be detected on gene arrays. The earlier PCR studies on body fluids illustrate that gene amplification and mutation can also be readily detected in these body fluids. Therefore, gene arrays containing large numbers of different oncogenes, allowing for rapid assays, appear to hold great promise in tumor detection on body fluids.

CIRCULATING microRNA

miRNA constructs consist of small noncoding RNA molecules (of approximately 19 to 25 nucleotides) and are found in most biologic entities. They have been shown to function as regulators of gene expression via post-transcriptional effects and in RNA silencing. Cell-free miRNAs are highly stable in body fluids. Recent data suggest that cancer cells also secrete unique cell-free miRNAs into the extracellular environment and to cancer progression. They are thought to enter body fluids via mechanisms including passive release from broken, injured, and dead cells; active secretion through microvesicles; and/or active secretion via a microvesicle-free protein-dependent route (Javidi et al, 2014). Several miRNAs with oncogenic potential have been demonstrated to be upregulated in cancers, and miRNAs with a tumor-suppressive effect are downregulated in malignancies. Translating the application of miRNAs in clinical context has been enhanced by the applicability of several novel high-throughput multiplex technologies on a wide variety of patient samples, including blood, serum, tissues (fresh and formalin-fixed paraffin embedded), and cerebrospinal fluid (Sethi et al, 2013).

miRNA biomarkers can be used for disease diagnosis, prognosis, surveillance during treatment, and follow-up, and they hold much promise toward use in targeted therapies, including miR-27, a regulation of MET, EGFR (lung cancer), miR-215 (osteosarcoma), miR-205BP/S3 (melanoma), and miR-34a (hepatocellular carcinoma). Some miRNAs appear to possess global oncogenic potential in many tissues, including but not limited to miR-21, miR-155, and miR-17-92 (Sethi et al, 2013; Yang et al, 2013), and they appear to have prognostic relevance.

GENE MUTATIONS

These normally involve nucleic acid sequencing and can detect single base changes in genomic or mitochondrial DNA (gDNA and mtDNA, respectively). mtDNA can have 20 to 200 copies of DNA compared with 2 copies of gDNA. Mutated mtDNA was detected in 100% of patients with prostate cancer (Jeronimo et al, 2001a), whereas others have reported a lower mtDNA detection rate in patients with colorectal cancer (Anker et al, 1997; Hibi et al, 2001). Tumor and plasma DNA of 25 patients with breast or small cell lung cancer were analyzed for the presence of p53 gene mutations. Six patients had detectable mutations in their tissue, and three of these six had mutations detected in their plasma (Silva et al, 1999). Furthermore, although gene mutations have been detected in tissue obtained from malignant and healthy patients, the same is not true for plasma. Mutations detected in plasma are very specific for malignancy (Johnson & Lo, 2002). To this end, recent studies that analyzed plasma DNA of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) for p53 codon 249 by restriction fragment length polymorphism demonstrated that 6 of 79 samples (7.6%) from the HCC patients had amplifiable plasma DNA, whereas none of the 73 samples with amplifiable plasma DNA from the controls had this mutation (Igetei et al, 2008). In addition to detection, recent studies have demonstrated the utility of cell-free DNA (cfDNA) as a means to monitor efficacy of therapy. Spindler and colleagues (2014) showed that plasma levels of mutated cfDNA, encoding KRAS and BRAF, could be used to monitor patients during treatment with cetuximab and irinotecan. Others have reported that cfDNA analysis for the BRAF V600E mutation showed 100% specificity and sensitivity, whereas seven KRAS point mutations exhibited 98% specificity and 92% sensitivity, with a concordance value of 96%, using a PCR-based method of detection (Thierry et al, 2014).

MICROSATELLITE ALTERATIONS

These are polymorphic repetitive nucleic acid sequences, varying from 2 to 6 base pairs, that form variable stretches of DNA that appear as loss of heterozygosity (LOH) and are detectable by microsatellite analysis using PCR. A panel of four to six appropriate markers to detect these microsatellites can be used to profile tumors. Loss of heterozygosity requires at least 20% of tumor DNA within normal DNA. Microsatellite instability refers to detection of additional PCR products and requires a ratio of tumor to normal DNA of greater than 0.5% (Goessl et al, 2000, 2002a, 2002b). Microsatellite alterations performed on cell-free bronchial lavage specimens from lung cancer patients revealed tumor-associated genes in 47% if DNA was used as the source material (n = 30) and in 100% if RNA was used (n = 25) (Schmidt et al, 2004). In addition, four microsatellite loci were detected in the sera of 17 of 34 breast cancer patients; loss of heterozygosity at various loci was observed in 16 patients, and microsatellite instability was detected in 1 patient (Schwarzenbach et al, 2002). However, no correlation was found between circulating tumor DNA and the level of tumor-associated protein marker CA 15-3 (Schwarzenbach et al, 2004). Plasma loss of heterozygosity has also been found in patients with recurrent bladder cancer, for which it appears to be a reliable marker (Dominguez et al, 2002). Furthermore, microsatellite alterations were detected in plasma DNA obtained from patients with malignant melanoma (Nakamoto et al, 2008) where metastasis or recurrence was confirmed in 3 out of 17 patients (17.6%); all of them were found to have LOH at four microsatellite markers, further encouraging the use of such loci markers as a screening tool.

PROMOTER HYPERMETHYLATION

Methylation of CpG islands, located in the promoter region of many genes, is associated with their transcriptional inactivation. Thus aberrant hypermethylation of key tumor suppressor genes can permit expression of otherwise quiescent oncogenes. Promoter hypermethylation can be detected by methylation-specific PCR (MSP), and the reduced protein expression can be determined by immunohistochemistry. MSP requires a ratio of tumor to normal DNA of 0.1% to 0.001% (Goessl et al, 2000, 2002a, 2002b; Bearzatto et al, 2002). Another method, quantitative methylation analysis of minute DNA amounts after whole bisulfitome amplification, (qMAMBA) allows quantitative and sensitive detection of DNA methylation in minute amounts of DNA present in body fluids (Vaissière et al, 2009). Aberrant methylation of at least one of four tumor suppressor genes was detected in tissue biopsies from 15 of 22 patients (68%) with non–small cell lung cancer. Of the 15 patients with positive non–small cell lung cancer, 11 (73%) also had abnormal methylated DNA in their serum samples (Esteller et al, 1999). In addition, 17 of 27 bladder cancer patients (63%) displayed alterations in tumor suppressor genes in cell- and serum-derived DNA (Dominguez et al, 2002).

Interpretation of results obtained from cell-free testing warrants caution because results may vary, depending on the detection method (promoter hypermethylation, gene rearrangements, microsatellite alterations, PCR, RT-PCR), the sample tested (Lee et al, 2001), and the nucleic acid source used (RNA, DNA) (Fleischhacker, 2001; Garcia et al, 2001; Johnson & Lo, 2002; Schmidt et al, 2004). Nonetheless, this remains a promising new modality for early cancer detection (Chan & Lo, 2002; Lechowicz et al, 2002; Board et al, 2009; Goldshtein et al, 2009).

CELL DNA TESTING FOR CANCER USING FLUORESCENCE IN SITU HYBRIDIZATION

This technique is described in Chapter 69 on cytogenetics. In brief, DNA oligonucleotide probes containing sequences known to occur uniquely on specific chromosomes are incubated with cells concentrated from body fluids, including blood and urine. These probes are so constructed that they hybridize either to specific normally occurring DNA sequences on specific chromosomes or to known abnormally occurring spliced chromosomal sequences (usually the result of translocations). The latter often produce either overexpressed mitogenic proteins or mutated constitutively activated mitogenic proteins. This methodology has potential application to many disease states, including malignancies (Goldshtein et al, 2009).

An example of the application of this technique is in the diagnosis of bladder cancer for which a recent test, the Vysis-Abbott Urovision detection system, has been developed and has been FDA-approved. A critical and common chromosomal lesion in this disease is the 9p21 homozygous deletion, perhaps the most constant genetic finding in bladder cancer. This results in deletion of a tumor suppressor gene that codes for the p16 antioncogene protein, again resulting in loss of control of mitotic rate (Halling, 2003).

An oligonucleotide probe, labeled with a gold fluorescent dye, has been developed to a sequence of 9p21. In addition, several other oligonucleotide probes have been prepared, linked to other colored fluorescent dyes, that hybridize to specific sequences in the centromeres of other "control" chromosomes. A mixture of these probes is incubated with cells obtained from the urinary sediments of patients and subjected to fluorescence microscopy. If the cells are normal, duplicate colored spots, from diploid normal chromosomes, appear in these cells.

On the other hand, absence of one or both yellow spots for chromosome 9p21 but the presence of duplicate fluorescent spots for the control probes is a strong indication of 9p21 deletion and the presence of urothelial (most probably, bladder) cancer. It should be noted that this hybridization procedure is also capable of detecting malignant aneuploid bladder epithelial cells (with multiple copies of chromosomes) directly.

This method has a sensitivity of 36% for grade 1 cancers, 76% for grade 2, and almost 100% for grade 3 cancers, and an overall specificity of 97 (Halling, 2002; 2003). It therefore has great potential in detecting bladder cancer, especially if it is combined with probes for other genetic lesions known to occur in this disease, as discussed in the bladder cancer markers section earlier. In addition, multiple probes for known chromosomal lesions in a variety of lymphomas and leukemias have been prepared and are promising for the detection of these diseases in body fluids and tissue.

MARKERS IN OTHER BODY FLUIDS

URINE MARKERS FOR PROSTATE CANCER

Numerous promising prostate cancer biomarkers have recently been identified. These markers have allowed exploring a new diagnostic approach based on the identification of cancer cells or shed material in the urine obtained after digital examination of the prostate (Fradet, 2009; Ploussard & de la Taille, 2010).

Urine Prostate Cancer Antigen 3

Prostate cancer antigen 3 (PCA3) is a prostate-specific gene that is an average of 66 times overexpressed in prostate cancer cells compared with normal prostate cells (de Kok et al, 2002). Assays were developed to measure the relative amount of PCA3 RNA over PSA RNA using quantitative reverse transcription-PCR or direct RNA amplification (Hessels et al, 2003; Fradet et al, 2004). A commercially available test by GeneProbe Inc. (San Diego), referred to as the *Aptima PCA3 assay*, is based on the principle of target capture followed by transcription-mediated amplification and uses calibrators to quantify the PCA3 and PSA RNA copy number to provide a PCA3 score (ratio of PCA3 RNA/PSA RNA) (Groskopf et al, 2006). In a large European prospective multicenter study, this test clearly demonstrated a greater probability of a positive repeat biopsy with increasing PCA3 scores (Haese et al, 2008). Indeed, the proportion of patients with positive biopsy went from as low as 10% to as high as 70% in a linear fashion with the increasing PCA3 score. Moreover, using a PCA3 score cutoff of 35 provided similar results in men with serum PSA of 4 or less, 4 to 10, or more than 10 ng/mL, with sensitivities of 50% to 61% and specificity of 71% to 80% (Hoque et al, 2005). Furthermore, compared to PSA, PCA3 has the advantage that it is independent of prostate volume (Hoque et al, 2005), is correlated with tumor volume (Nakanishi et al, 2008; Whitman et al, 2008), and may even predict extracapsular tumor extension (Roupret et al, 2007).

The Progensa PCA3 assay is an in vitro nucleic acid amplification test. The assay measures the concentration of prostate cancer gene 3 (PCA3) and PSA RNA molecules and calculates the ratio of PCA3 RNA molecules to PSA RNA molecules (PCA3 score) in postdigital rectal examination (DRE) urine specimens. Gen-Probe, Inc. obtained FDA approval in 2012 with the intended use for men who have a suspicion of PCa based on PSA level and/or DRE and/or one or more negative biopsy results. A PCA3 score less than 25 is associated with a decreased likelihood of PCa (Vlaeminck-Guillem et al, 2010; Auprich et al, 2011; Crawford et al, 2012). Seven of the studies used the currently available FDA-approved test kit (Progensa). AUC values ranged from 0.66 to 0.75. Sensitivity ranged from 53 to 69%, with specificity ranging from 71 to 83%. For patients who had a previous negative biopsy, sensitivity averaged 52.6% and specificity averaged 71.6%, which gives a PPV of about 40% and a NPV of about 80%. The overall accuracy is about 66%. Overall, PCA3 appears promising, and the specimen for PCA3 analysis is easily obtained after DRE.

Urine TMPRSS2:ERG and Mi-Prostate Score

A remarkable discovery of a family of new genes resulting from the fusion between the androgen-regulated transmembrane serine protease gene (TMPRSS2) with gene members of the E26 transformation-specific (ETS) family of oncogenes was made using a new biostatistical method called *cancer outlier profile analysis* (Kumar-Sinha et al, 2008). The TMPRSS2-E26 transformation specific-related gene (ERG) fusion transcripts have been identified in 40% to 80% of prostate cancers (see Chapter 76). More recently, TMPRSS2 has been found to be an androgen- and estrogen-regulated gene and is more commonly associated with a Gleason score greater than 7 (41% versus 12%) and more prostate cancer–related deaths and/or metastatic disease development (53% vs. 23%) (Demichelis et al, 2007; Bhavsar et al, 2013; Falzarano & Magi-Galluzzi, 2013; Truong et al, 2013). The TMPRSS2-ERG (or T2-ERG) fusion has a low sensitivity of 37% but a high specificity of 93%, which gives a PPV of 94% after a DRE. Even though the specificity is high, most prostate cancer tumors have multiple foci, which make T2-ERG more heterogeneous. One way to overcome this heterogeneity is to combine T2-ERG with other markers (Cornu et al, 2013; Salami et al, 2013; Leyten et al, 2014). Several studies have investigated the association of T2-ERG with the aggressiveness of prostate cancer. In one study, among 1180 men who were treated by a radical prostatectomy, T2-ERG was found in 49% of the cases (Leyten et al, 2014). A significant correlation with high stage tumor ($p < 0.01$) was found, but there was little correlation with Gleason score ($p = 0.58$), lethality ($p = 0.99$), and biochemical reoccurrence ($p = 0.60$). Earlier studies found correlations with higher Gleason score ($p = 0.01$) and lethality ($p < 0.01$) in a smaller group of men (n = 111) who were diagnosed with low-grade prostate cancer. In another study, T2-ERG was highly expressed in patients with T3-T4, Gleason score greater than or equal to 7 disease ($p = 0.003$ and $p < 0.01$, respectively).

The Mi-Prostate Score (University of Michigan Health System) combines the urine tests for PCA3 from Progensa, T2-ERG, and serum PSA levels to produce a risk assessment of prostate cancer that potentially indicates the likelihood of aggressive cancer. This test has been validated on approximately 2000 urine specimens (Cornu et al, 2013; Salami et al, 2013; Leyten et al, 2014).

Prostarix

Prostarix is an LDT performed by the CLIA lab at Metabolon, Inc. and offered through Boswick Laboratories. The test is to aid clinicians in the decision for initial or repeat prostate biopsy in men with negative DRE and modestly elevated PSA levels. The Prostarix DRE urine test is based on a proprietary metabolic signature of four metabolites determined by liquid chromatography–mass spectrometry (LC-MS) on the pellet obtained from a centrifuged urine specimen. Similar to the PCA3 test, the urine needs to be collected immediately after a vigorous DRE (Saylor et al, 2012; Jung et al, 2013; McDunn et al, 2013). McDunn and colleagues (2013) analyzed over 500 prostate tissue samples (331 prostate tumors and 178 cancer-free). Through the use of gas chromatography–mass spectrometry and LC-MS/MS, the study was able to find significantly different metabolite profiles between tissue that contained prostate cancer and tissue that was cancer-free. The profile improved prediction of organ confinement (AUC from 0.53 to 0.62) and 5-year recurrence (AUC from 0.53 to 0.64).

Urine Hypermethylated Glutathione *S*-Transferase pi 1 Gene

DNA hypermethylation has been demonstrated to be one of the most common molecular alterations in prostate cancer, with more than 90% of cancers with hypermethylated promoters in one or more genes (Jeronimo et al, 2001b; Woodson et al, 2004; Yegnasubramanian et al, 2004; Bastian et al, 2005). In 2001, Cairns and colleagues used a DNA-based test to detect the hypermethylation of the glutathione *S*-transferase pi 1 (GSTP1) gene in urinary sediments after prostatic massage and found an overall sensitivity of 73% and a specificity of 98% in a small cohort of patients (Cairns et al, 2001). Several groups have evaluated the usefulness of gene hypermethylation as a biomarker by testing for its presence in freely voided urine after prostatic massage, in ejaculates, in directly sampled prostatic secretions, and in serum (Goessl et al, 2000; Gonzalgo et al, 2003, 2004; Gonzalgo et al, 2004; Hoque et al, 2005; Roupret et al, 2007). Recently, a study by Woodson and colleagues (2008) concluded that the methylation of GSTP1 in urine specimens had 75% sensitivity and 98% specificity for prostate cancer. GSTP1 methylation in the biopsy had 88% specificity and 91% sensitivity. Also, an observation of a higher frequency of GSTP1 methylation in the urine of men with stage III versus stage II disease (100% vs. 20%; $p = 0.05$) suggests increased frequency of hypermethylation with increased stage. This study and other initial studies suggest that GSTP1 methylation and other genes in urine may not have much impact on increasing the sensitivity of PSA screening but may improve the specificity of PSA and help distinguish men with prostate cancer from those with BPH.

URINE METABOLIC TEST FOR ADENOMATOUS POLYPS OF COLON

A new urine spot test was recently studied based on metabolic technology that can distinguish patients with colon adenomatous polyps from those without polyps. This test has superior accuracy to fecal-based tests. The top 10 metabolites that separated the normal participants from those participants with colonic adenomatous polyps were butyrate, serine, methanol, β-alanine, π-methylhistidine, 3-hydroxybutyrate, asparagine, trigonelline, 3-hydroxyphenylacetate, and histidine (Wang et al, 2014).

FECAL OCCULT BLOOD TESTING AND MUTANT PROTEIN MARKERS IN STOOL

Perhaps the most familiar test to screen for cancer in patients is the fecal occult blood test, which is performed in the physician's office on stool samples obtained from a DRE. It is performed routinely on most patients as part of annual checkups. In the hospital outpatient setting, it is more common to have the patient obtain a stool sample for testing after a bowel movement. If blood is present in the stool, it may be due to a colonic tumor, so further workup, such as a colonoscopy, is strongly recommended. The actual test for occult blood is based on the ability of the heme moiety of hemoglobin to catalyze the oxidation of the colorless compound guaiaconic acid (hence the name *guaiac test*) in the presence of H_2O_2 to a highly conjugated, blue-colored quinone. Usually, the guaiaconic acid is impregnated on a strip or solid support, and the stool specimen is placed on a discrete section of the strip. In this nonspecific test, blood in stool can be caused by a number of nonmalignant causes such as hemorrhoids, colitis, diverticulitis, and local trauma to the perianal area, diminishing the specificity of this test. False-positive results for this test are also caused by exogenous factors such as the presence of meat fibers from meat ingestion or of bismuth, which is present in antacid preparations such as Pepto-Bismol. In addition, the ability of this method to detect the presence of colon cancer depends on such factors as whether and to what extent a cancer hemorrhages, its location (the closer to the rectum, the greater the likelihood of detection), and its pattern of growth (e.g., exophytic tumors are more likely to be detected than nonexophytic ones). The sensitivity of the fecal occult blood test is between 15% and 30%. It is much less effective than colonoscopy, the definitive mode of colon cancer detection. However, it offers the advantage of being noninvasive, although with "virtual colonoscopy" based on computed tomography scanning of the colon, this advantage is diminished.

As a result, efforts have been made to devise new noninvasive tests on stool specimens that have higher sensitivity and specificity than fecal occult blood tests. As discussed in Chapter 75, several mutant genes that code for proteins that are involved with control of the cell cycle have been strongly implicated as vitally important causative factors of colon cancer. These include mutant *ras* (of the Kirsten or K-variety), mutant p53, the adenomatous polyposis coli *(APC)* gene, and the gene product BAT-26, associated with microsatellite instability. All of these mutant genes are oncogenes in colon cancer. Standardized reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) techniques, discussed in Chapter 66, are available to detect mutations in any or all of these proteins. In addition, "long" DNA, thought to result from disordered apoptosis of cancer cells in colon cancer, has also been found to occur in a number of colon cancers. If sufficient numbers of cancer cells from a colon cancer are sloughed off into the lumen, one or more of the mutant genes (and/or long DNA) can be discovered, allowing for the noninvasive detection of colon cancer.

Using this approach, a cooperative study involving the Colorectal Cancer Study Group was conducted in which more than 5000 patients were entered and more than 2000 were completely evaluated for colon cancer using fecal occult blood testing, multioncogene testing on stool, and colonoscopy (Imperiale et al, 2004). All of the patients were 50 years of age or older (mean, 69.5 years). The results showed that the genetic RT-PCR–based methodology results in significantly higher rates of detection than fecal occult blood testing. Overall, the rate of detection of adenocarcinoma was 51.6% for the genetic screening but 12.9% for fecal occult blood screening. Interestingly, advanced adenomas were detected in 15.1% of cases in the genetic screening and 10.7% in the fecal occult blood screening. Because this condition may be regarded as a precursor for frank malignancy, both methods seem to have similar rates of early detection. On the other hand, the rate of detection of TNM stage I colon cancer by genetic screen was 53.3%, while that for fecal occult blood screening was 6.7%, suggesting that genetic screening is substantially more effective in detecting true colon cancer in its early stages. Surprisingly, both tests were found to have similar apparent false-positivity rates in conditions of minor polyps (7.6% vs. 4.8% for genetic and occult blood tests, respectively) and the condition of no polyps found on colonoscopy (5.6% vs. 4.8% for genetic and occult blood tests, respectively). Although this study has certain drawbacks, such as too few patients with cancers and advanced adenomas with high-grade dysplasia, skewing of the age of the population to 65 years of age and older, and lack of information as to appropriate testing intervals for the genetic approach, these results are encouraging and warrant further systematic studies using this approach.

M2 is an isomer of the enzyme pyruvate kinase (M2-PK) that has an important role in glycolysis. M2-PK can be isolated in stool. Most studies looking at a possible role for CRC screening have been performed in patients with known cancers or an increased risk for CRC. These studies suggest a sensitivity of about 80% for the detection of CRC (Tonus et al, 2012). The sensitivity for advanced adenomas is lower, with 22% reported in one prospective study (Haug et al, 2008). Due to the lack of a large study in the asymptomatic population, the exact efficacy of this test for CRC is currently unknown.

CONCLUSIONS

In summary, a molecule, a protein, or a nucleic acid could be used as a tumor marker as long as its changing concentration reflects tumor cell activity. The assessment of clinical utility for an individual tumor marker is based on its sensitivity and specificity. There has been a clear trend toward improving the test specificity and sensitivity by ordering multiple tumor markers. However, controversy exists concerning which and how many tumor markers should be included in a panel for individual malignant diseases. Several new tumor markers, discussed in Chapter 75, are now on the horizon. These tumor markers consist of oncoproteins, suppressor proteins, adhesion molecules, cyclins, and angiogenic factors. They mainly differ from currently used tumor markers in their association with specific known metabolic pathways or physiologic reactions. Most tumor markers employed currently for patient management are not associated with any known specific biological reaction. Conceivably, measuring these new tumor markers will provide information on more specific defects, which will help in the design of better treatments. The best example is the successful use of Herceptin (a humanized MAb against the ectodomain of the c-*erb*B-2 receptor) for metastatic breast cancer patients.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Djavan B, Zlotta A, Kratzik C, et al: PSA, PSA density, PSA density of transition zone, free/total PSA ratio, and PSA velocity for early detection of prostate cancer in men with serum PSA 2.5 to 4.0 ng/mL, *Urology* 54:517–522, 1999.

The usage of PSA has changed the management of prostate cancer patients. This article points out the dilemma of using current PSA cutoff values and summarizes various PAS parameters to increase the specificity of PSA.

Lipton A, Ali SM, Leitzel K, et al: Elevated serum Her-2/neu level predicts decreased response to hormone therapy in metastatic breast cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 20:1467–1472, 2002.

*Provides evidence that serum HER2/*neu *may be useful in the prognosis of and monitoring the treatment of breast cancer patients.*

Rouprêt M, Hupertan V, Yates DR, et al: Molecular detection of localized prostate cancer using quantitative methylation-specific PCR on urinary cells obtained following prostate massage, *Clin Cancer Res* 13:1720–1725, 2007.

Serves as an example and a summary of the identification of biomarkers using current serum proteomics technology and how it will be the trend for future biomarkers.

Saghatchian M, Guepratte S, Hacene K, et al: Serum HER-2 extracellular domain: Relationship with clinicobiological presentation and prognostic value before and after primary treatment in 701 breast cancer patients, *Int J Biol Markers* 19:14–22, 2004.

*Provides evidence that serum HER2/*neu *may be useful in the prognosis and monitoring of the treatment of breast cancer patients.*

Zhang Z, Bast RC Jr, Yu Y, et al: Three biomarkers identified from serum proteomic analysis for the detection of early stage ovarian cancer, *Cancer Res* 64: 5882–5890, 2004.

Serves as an example and summary of the identification of biomarkers using current serum proteomics technology and how it will be the trend for future biomarkers.

REFERENCES

Agus DB, Bunn PA Jr, Franklin W, et al: HER-2/neu as a therapeutic target in non–small cell lung cancer, prostate cancer, and ovarian cancer, *Semin Oncol* 27(Suppl 11):53–63, 2000.

Alexiou D, Karayiannakis AJ, Syrigos KN, et al: Clinical significance of serum levels of E-selectin, intercellular adhesion molecule-1, and vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 in gastric cancer patients, *Am J Gastroenterol* 98:478–485, 2003.

Ali SM, Leitzel K, Chinchilli VM, et al: Relationship of serum HER-2/neu and serum CA 15-3 in patients with metastatic breast cancer, *Clin Chem* 48:1314–1320, 2002.

Alix-Panabières C, Müller V, Pantel K: Current status in human breast cancer micrometastasis, *Curr Opin Oncol* 19:558–563, 2007a.

Alix-Panabières C, Vendrell JP, Pellé O, et al: Detection and characterization of putative metastatic precursor cells in cancer patients, *Clin Chem* 53:537–539, 2007b.

Alvarez Secord A, Sayer R, Snyder SA, et al: The relationship between serum vascular endothelial growth factor, persistent disease, and survival at second-look laparotomy in ovarian cancer, *Gynecol Oncol* 94:74–79, 2004.

Ando S, Kimura H, Iwai N, et al: Positive reactions for both Cyfra21-1 and CA125 indicate worst prognosis in non–small cell lung cancer, *Anticancer Res* 23:2869–2874, 2003.

Anker P, Lefort F, Vasioukhin V, et al: K-ras mutations are found in DNA extracted from the plasma of patients with colorectal cancer, *Gastroenterology* 112: 1114–1120, 1997.

Arai H, Ueno T, Tangoku A, et al: Detection of amplified oncogenes by genome DNA microarrays in human primary esophageal squamous cell carcinoma: comparison with conventional comparative genomic hybridization analysis, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 146:16–21, 2003.

Auprich M, Bjartell A, Chun FK-H, et al: Contemporary role of prostate cancer antigen 3 in the management of prostate cancer, *Eur Urol* 60:1045–1054, 2011.

Banys M, Gruber I, Krawczyk N, et al: Hematogenous and lymphatic tumor cell dissemination may be detected in patients diagnosed with ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast, *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 131:801–808, 2012.

Barbacid M: *ras* genes, *Annu Rev Biochem* 56:779–827, 1987.

Bast RC Jr, Knauf S, Epenetos A, et al: Coordinate elevation of serum markers in ovarian cancer but not in benign disease, *Cancer* 68:1758–1763, 1991.

Bast RC Jr, Ravdin P, Hayes DF, et al: 2000 update of recommendations for the use of tumor markers in breast and colorectal cancer: Clinical practice guidelines of the American Society of Clinical Oncology, *J Clin Oncol* 19:1865–1878, 2001.

Bastian PJ, Ellinger J, Wellmann A, et al: Diagnostic and prognostic information in prostate cancer with the help of a small set of hypermethylated gene loci, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:4097–4106, 2005.

Bearzatto A, Conte D, Frattini M, et al: $p16^{INK4A}$ hypermethylation detected by fluorescent methylation-specific PCR in plasmas from non–small cell lung cancer, *Clin Cancer Res* 8:3782–3787, 2002.

Benson MC, Whang IS, Pantuck A, et al: Prostate specific antigen density: A means of distinguishing benign prostatic hypertrophy and prostate cancer, *J Urol* 147:815–816, 1992.

Berger P, Sturgeon C, Bidart JM, et al: The ISOBM TD-7 Workshop on hCG and related molecules. Towards user-oriented standardization of pregnancy and tumor diagnosis: Assignment of epitopes to the three-dimensional structure of diagnostically and commercially relevant monoclonal antibodies directed against human chorionic gonadotropin and derivatives, *Tumour Biol* 23:1–38, 2002.

Bethune-Volters A, Labroquere M, Guepratte S, et al: Longitudinal changes in serum HER-2/neu oncoprotein levels in trastuzumab-treated metastatic breast cancer patients, *Anticancer Res* 24:1083–1089, 2004.

Bhavsar T, McCue P, Birbe R: Molecular diagnosis of prostate cancer: Are we up to age?, *Semin Oncol* 40: 259–275, 2013.

Bingle L, Singleton V, Bingle CD: The putative ovarian tumor marker gene HE4 (WFDC2) is expressed in normal tissues and undergoes complex alternative splicing to yield multiple protein isoforms, *Oncogene* 21:2768–2773, 2002.

Birken S, Yershova O, Myers RV, et al: Analysis of human choriogonadotropin core 2 o-glycan isoforms, *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 204:21–30, 2003.

Board RE, Ellison G, Orr MC, et al: Detection of BRAF mutations in the tumour and serum of patients enrolled in the AZD6244 (ARRY-142886) advanced melanoma phase II study, *Br J Cancer* 101:1724–1730, 2009.

Brawer MK, Chetner MP, Beatie J, et al: Screening for prostatic carcinoma with prostate specific antigen, *J Urol* 147:841–845, 1992.

Brawer MK, Meyer GE, Letran JL, et al: Measurement of complexed PSA improves specificity for early detection of prostate cancer, *Urology* 52:372–378, 1998.

Bristow A, Berger P, Bidart JM, et al: Establishment, value assignment, and characterization of new WHO reference reagents for six molecular forms of human chorionic gonadotropin, *Clin Chem* 51:177–182, 2005.

Burtis WJ, Brady TG, Orloff JJ, et al: Immunochemical characterization of circulating parathyroid hormone-related protein in patients with humoral hypercalcemia of cancer, *N Engl J Med* 322:1106–1112, 1990.

Cairns P, Esteller M, Herman JG, et al: Molecular detection of prostate cancer in urine by GSTP1 hypermethylation, *Clin Cancer Res* 7:2727–2730, 2001.

Canizares F, Sola J, Perez M, et al: Preoperative values of CA 15-3 and CEA as prognostic factors in breast cancer: A multivariate analysis, *Tumour Biol* 22:273–281, 2001.

Carpelan-Holmstrom M, Louhimo J, Stenman UH, et al: CEA, CA 19-9 and CA 72-4 improve the diagnostic accuracy in gastrointestinal cancers, *Anticancer Res* 22:2311–2316, 2002.

Carter HB, Ferrucci L, Kettermann A, et al: Detection of life-threatening prostate cancer with prostate-specific antigen velocity during a window of curability, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 98:1521–1527, 2006.

Carter HB, Pearson JD, Metter EJ, et al: Longitudinal evaluation of prostate-specific antigen levels in men with and without prostate disease, *JAMA* 267:2215–2220, 1992.

Catalona WJ, Smith DS, Ratliff TL, et al: Measurement of prostate-specific antigen in serum as a screening test for prostate cancer, *N Engl J Med* 324:1156–1161, 1991.

Catalona WJ, Smith DS, Wolfert RL, et al: Evaluation of percentage of free serum prostate-specific antigen to improve specificity of prostate cancer screening, *JAMA* 274:1214–1220, 1995.

Chan DW, Sell S: *Tumor markers*, Philadelphia, 2001, WB Saunders.

Chan KC, Lo YM: Circulating nucleic acids as a tumor marker, *Histol Histopathol* 17:937–943, 2002.

Chen XQ, Bonnefoi H, Pelte MF, et al: Telomerase RNA as a detection marker in the serum of breast cancer patients, *Clin Cancer Res* 6:3823–3826, 2000.

Chen CH, Tsai TL, Yang YS, et al: Studies of the serum HER-2/neu and squamous cell carcinoma-related antigen expression in patients with oral squamous cell carcinoma, *J Oral Pathol Med* 36:83–87, 2007.

Chou WC, Chen JS, Hung YS, et al: Plasma chromogranin A levels predict survival and tumor response in patients with advanced gastroenteropancreatic neuroendocrine tumors, *Anticancer Res* 34(10):5661–5669, 2014.

Christensson A, Bjork T, Nilsson O, et al: Serum prostate specific antigen complexed to alpha 1-antichymotrypsin as an indicator of prostate cancer, *J Urol* 150:100–105, 1993.

Cohen SJ, Alpaugh RK, Gross S, et al: Isolation and characterization of circulating tumor cells in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer, *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 6:125–132, 2006.

Coley CM, Barry MJ, Fleming C, et al: Early detection of prostate cancer. Part II: Estimating the risks, benefits, and costs. American College of Physicians, *Ann Intern Med* 126:468–479, 1997a.

Coley CM, Barry MJ, Fleming C, et al: Early detection of prostate cancer. Part I: Prior probability and effectiveness of tests. American College of Physicians, *Ann Intern Med* 126:394–406, 1997b.

Colomer R, Montero S, Lluch A, et al: Circulating HER2 extracellular domain and resistance to chemotherapy in advanced breast cancer, *Clin Cancer Res* 6:2356–2362, 2000.

Compton C, Fenoglio-Preiser CM, Pettigrew N, et al: American Joint Committee on Cancer Prognostic Factors Consensus Conference: Colorectal Working Group, *Cancer* 88:1739–1757, 2000.

Cooperberg MR, Broering JM, Litwin MS, et al: The contemporary management of prostate cancer in the United States: Lessons from the cancer of the prostate strategic urologic research endeavor (CapSURE), a national disease registry, *J Urol* 171:1393–1401, 2004.

Cornu JN, Cancel-Tassin G, Egrot C, et al: Urine TMPRSS2:ERG fusion transcript integrated with PCA3 score, genotyping, and biological features are correlated to the results of prostatic biopsies in men at risk of prostate cancer, *Prostate* 73:242–249, 2013.

Crawford ED, Rove KO, Trabulsi EJ, et al: Diagnostic performance of PCA3 to detect prostate cancer in men with increased prostate specific antigen: A prospective study of 1962 cases, *J Urol* 188:1726–1731, 2012.

Cristofanilli M, Budd GT, Ellis MJ, et al: Circulating tumor cells, disease progression, and survival in metastatic breast cancer, *N Engl J Med* 351:781–791, 2004.

Crocitto LE, Korns D, Kretzner L, et al: Prostate cancer molecular markers GSTP1 and hTERT in expressed prostatic secretions as predictors of biopsy results, *Urology* 64:821–825, 2004.

Cuckle H: Biochemical screening for Down syndrome, *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 92:97–101, 2000.

de Bono JS, Attard G, Adjei A, et al: Potential applications for circulating tumor cells expressing the insulin-like growth factor-I receptor, *Clin Cancer Res* 13: 3611–3616, 2007.

de Kok JB, van Solinge WW, Ruers TJ, et al: Detection of tumor DNA in serum of colorectal cancer patients, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 57:601–604, 1997.

de Kok JB, Verhaegh GW, Roelofs RW, et al: DD3 (PCA3)—A very sensitive and specific marker to detect prostate tumors, *Cancer Res* 62:2695–2698, 2002.

Demichelis F, Fall K, Perner S, et al: TMPRSS2:ERG gene fusion associated with lethal prostate cancer in a watchful waiting cohort, *Oncogene* 26:4596–4599, 2007.

DeSoto-LaPaix F, Bluth MH, Rong Y, et al: Detecting prostate cancer: How useful is prostate specific antigen testing?, *Fed Pract* 20:84–90, 2003.

De Vita F, Orditura M, Lieto E, et al: Elevated perioperative serum vascular endothelial growth factor levels in patients with colon carcinoma, *Cancer* 100:270–278, 2004.

Devonshire AS, Whale AS, Gutteridge A, et al: Towards standardisation of cell-free DNA measurement in plasma: Controls for extraction efficiency, fragment size bias and quantification, *Anal Bioanal Chem* 406: 6499–6512, 2014.

Diamond BA, Yelton DE, Scharff MD, et al: Monoclonal antibodies—A new technique for producing serologic reagents, *N Engl J Med* 304:1344–1349, 1981.

Dominguez G, Carballido J, Silva J, et al: p14ARF promoter hypermethylation in plasma DNA as an indicator of disease recurrence in bladder cancer patients, *Clin Cancer Res* 8:980–985, 2002.

Duffy MJ, Duggan C, Keane R, et al: High preoperative CA 15-3 concentrations predict adverse outcome in node-negative and node-positive breast cancer: Study of 600 patients with histologically confirmed breast cancer, *Clin Chem* 50:559–563, 2004.

Easton DF, Bishop DT, Ford D, et al: Genetic linkage analysis in familial breast and ovarian cancer: Results from 214 families. The Breast Cancer Linkage Consortium, *Am J Hum Genet* 52:678–701, 1993.

Eccles SA, Welch DR: Metastasis: Recent discoveries and novel treatment strategies, *Lancet* 369:1742–1757, 2007.

El Messaoudi S, Rolet F, Mouliere F, et al: Circulating cell free DNA: Preanalytical considerations, *Clin Chim Acta* 424:222–230, 2013.

Engelstaedter V, Heublein S, Schumacher AL, et al: Mucin-1 and its relation to grade, stage and survival in ovarian carcinoma patients, *BMC Cancer* 12:600–608, 2012.

Esteller M, Sanchez-Cespedes M, Rosell R, et al: Detection of aberrant promoter hypermethylation of tumor suppressor genes in serum DNA from non–small cell lung cancer patients, *Cancer Res* 59:67–70, 1999.

Falzarano SM, Magi-Galluzzi C: ERG protein expression as a biomarker of prostate cancer, *Biomarkers Med* 7:851–865, 2013.

Fang J, Metter EJ, Landis P, et al: PSA velocity for assessing prostate cancer risk in men with PSA levels between 2.0 and 4.0 ng/mL, *Urology* 59:889–893, 2002.

Ferrero-Pous M, Hersant AM, Pecking A, et al: Serum chromogranin-A in advanced prostate cancer, *BJU Int* 88:790–796, 2001.

Fleischhacker M: The 2nd International Symposium on Circulating Nucleic Acids in Plasma and Serum (CNAPS-2), Hong Kong, February 20-21, 2001, *Eur J Med Res* 6:364–368, 2001.

Folkman J, Shing Y: Angiogenesis, *J Biol Chem* 267: 10931–10934, 1992.

Fradet Y: Biomarkers in prostate cancer diagnosis and prognosis: Beyond prostate-specific antigen, *Curr Opin Urol* 19:243–246, 2009.

Fradet Y, Saad F, Aprikian A, et al: uPM3, a new molecular urine test for the detection of prostate cancer, *Urology* 64:311–316, 2004.

Freedland SJ, Dorey F, Aronson WJ: Preoperative PSA velocity and doubling time do not predict adverse pathologic features or biochemical recurrence after radical prostatectomy, *Urology* 57:476–480, 2001.

Futreal PA, Liu Q, Shattuck-Eidens D, et al: BRCA1 mutations in primary breast and ovarian carcinomas, *Science* 266:120–122, 1994.

Gal S, Fidler C, Lo YM, et al: Detection of mammaglobin mRNA in the plasma of breast cancer patients, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 945:192–194, 2001.

Galgano MT, Hampton GM, Frierson HF Jr: Comprehensive analysis of HE4 expression in normal and malignant human tissues, *Mod Pathol* 19:847–853, 2006.

Garcia JM, Silva JM, Domiguez G, et al: Heterogeneous tumour clones as an explanation of discordance between plasma DNA and tumor DNA alterations, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 31:300, 2001.

García-Olmo DC, García-Olmo D: Biological role of cell-free nucleic acids in cancer: The theory of genometastasis, *Crit Rev Oncog* 18:153–161, 2013.

Gaspar MJ, Arribas I, Coca MC, et al: Prognostic value of carcinoembryonic antigen, CA 19-9 and CA 72-4 in gastric carcinoma, *Tumour Biol* 22:318–322, 2001.

Gazzaniga P, Gianni W, Raimondi C, et al: Circulating tumor cells in high-risk nonmetastatic colorectal cancer, *Tumour Biol* 34:2507–2509, 2013.

Gebo KA, Chander G, Jenckes MW, et al: Screening tests for hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic hepatitis C: A systematic review, *Hepatology* 36(Suppl 1):S84–S92, 2002.

Gion M, Boracchi P, Dittadi R, et al: Prognostic role of serum CA15.3 in 362 node-negative breast cancers. An old player for a new game, *Eur J Cancer* 38:1181–1188, 2002.

Giovanella L, Ceriani L: Serum chromogranin-alpha immunoradiometric assay in the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma, *Int J Biol Markers* 17:130–134, 2002.

Goessl C, Krause H, Müller M, et al: Fluorescent methylation-specific polymerase chain reaction for DNA-based detection of prostate cancer in bodily fluids, *Cancer Res* 60:5941–5945, 2000.

Goessl C, Muller M, Heicappell R, et al: DNA-based detection of prostate cancer in blood, urine, and ejaculates, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 945:51–58, 2002a.

Goessl C, Muller M, Straub B, et al: DNA alterations in body fluids as molecular tumor markers for urological malignancies, *Eur Urol* 41:668, 2002b.

Gold P, Freedman SO: Specific carcinoembryonic antigens of the human digestive system, *J Exp Med* 122:467–481, 1965.

Goldshtein H, Hausmann MJ, Douvdevani A: A rapid direct fluorescent assay for cell-free DNA quantification in biological fluids, *Ann Clin Biochem* 46:488–494, 2009.

Gonzalgo ML, Nakayama M, Lee SM, et al: Detection of GSTP1 methylation in prostatic secretions using combinatorial MSP analysis, *Urology* 63:414–418, 2004.

Gonzalgo ML, Pavlovich CP, Lee SM, et al: Prostate cancer detection by GSTP1 methylation analysis of post biopsy urine specimens, *Clin Cancer Res* 9:2673–2677, 2003.

Granato AM, Nanni O, Falcini F, et al: Basic fibroblast growth factor and vascular endothelial growth factor serum levels in breast cancer patients and healthy women: Useful as diagnostic tools?, *Breast Cancer Res* 6:R38–R45, 2004.

Greene KL, Albertsen PC, Babaian RJ, et al: Prostate specific antigen best practice statement: 2009 update, *J Urol* 182:2232–2241, 2009.

Groot KB, Rahbari NN, Buchler MW, et al: Circulating tumor cells and prognosis of patients with resectable colorectal liver metastases or widespread metastatic colorectal cancer: A metaanalysis, *Ann Surg Oncol* 20(7):2156–2165, 2013.

Groskopf J, Aubin SM, Deras IL, et al: APTIMA PCA3 molecular urine test: Development of a method to aid in the diagnosis of prostate cancer, *Clin Chem* 52:1089–1095, 2006.

Grubb RL 3rd, Pinsky PF, Greenlee RT, et al: Prostate cancer screening in the Prostate, Lung, Colorectal and Ovarian Cancer Screening Trial: Update on findings from the initial four rounds of screening in a randomized trial, *BJU Int* 102:1524–1530, 2008.

Guinee DG Jr, Travis WD, Trivers GE, et al: Gender comparisons in human lung cancer: Analysis of p53 mutations, anti-p53 serum antibodies and C-erbB-2 expression, *Carcinogenesis* 16:993–1002, 1995.

Guo B, Luo C, Xun C, et al: Quantitative detection of cytokeratin 20 mRNA in urine samples as diagnostic tools for bladder cancer by real-time PCR, *Exp Oncol* 31:43–47, 2009.

Haese A, de la Taille A, van Poppel H, et al: Clinical utility of the PCA3 urine assay in European men scheduled for repeat biopsy, *Eur Urol* 54:1081–1088, 2008.

Haferlach T, Loffler H: Prognostic factors in multiple myeloma: Practicability for clinical practice and future perspectives, *Leukemia* 11(Suppl 5):S5–S9, 1997.

Halling KC: Vysis UroVysion for the detection of urothelial carcinoma, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 3:507–519, 2003. Erratum in *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 4:266, 2004.

Hammel P, Leroy-Viard K, Chaumette MT, et al: Correlations between p53-protein accumulation, serum antibodies and gene mutation in colorectal cancer, *Int J Cancer* 81:712–718, 1999.

Harlozinska A, Sedlaczek P, Kulpa J, et al: Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) concentration in sera and tumor effusions from patients with ovarian carcinoma, *Anticancer Res* 24:1149–1157, 2004.

Harris CC, Hollstein M: Clinical implications of the p53 tumor-suppressor gene, *N Engl J Med* 329:1318–1327, 1993.

Harris LN, Liotcheva V, Broadwater G, et al: Comparison of methods of measuring HER-2 in metastatic breast cancer patients treated with high-dose chemotherapy, *J Clin Oncol* 19:1698–1706, 2001.

Haug U, Hundt S, Brenner H: Sensitivity and specificity of faecal tumour M2 pyruvate kinase for detection of colorectal adenomas in a large screening study, *Br J Cancer* 99:133–135, 2008.

Hayes DF, Cristofanilli M, Budd GT, et al: Circulating tumor cells at each follow-up time point during therapy of metastatic breast cancer patients predict progression-free and overall survival, *Clin Cancer Res* 12:4218–4224, 2006.

Hayes DF, Yamauchi H, Broadwater G, et al: Circulating HER-2/erbB-2/c-neu (HER-2) extracellular domain as a prognostic factor in patients with metastatic breast cancer: Cancer and Leukemia Group B Study 8662, *Clin Cancer Res* 7:2703–2711, 2001.

He C, Liu M, Zhou C, et al: Detection of epidermal growth factor receptor mutations in plasma by mutant-enriched PCR assay for prediction of the response to gefitinib in patients with non–small-cell lung cancer, *Int J Cancer* 125:2393–2399, 2009.

He W, Wang H, Hartmann LC, et al: In vivo quantitation of rare circulating tumor cells by multiphoton intravital flow cytometry, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 104:11760–11765, 2007.

Heidegger I, Klocker H, Steiner E, et al: [–2]proPSA is an early marker for prostate cancer aggressiveness, *Prostate Cancer and Prostatic Disease* 17:70–74, 2014.

Heidenreich A, Aus G, Bolla M, et al: European Association of Urology. EAU guidelines on prostate cancer, *Eur Urol* 53:68–80, 2008.

Hessels D, Klein Gunnewiek JM, van Oort I, et al: DD3(PCA3)-based molecular urine analysis for the diagnosis of prostate cancer, *Eur Urol* 44:8–15, 2003.

Hibi K, Nakayama H, Yamazaki T, et al: Detection of mitochondrial DNA alterations in primary tumors and corresponding serum of colorectal cancer patients, *Int J Cancer* 94:429, 2001.

Hickey KP, Boyle KP, Jepps HM, et al: Molecular detection of tumour DNA in serum and peritoneal fluid from ovarian cancer patients, *Br J Cancer* 80:1803, 1999.

Hoque MO, Topaloglu O, Begum S, et al: Quantitative methylation-specific polymerase chain reaction gene patterns in urine sediment distinguish prostate cancer patients from control subjects, *J Clin Oncol* 23:6569–6575, 2005.

Hori S, Blanchet JS, McLoughlin J: From prostate-specific antigen (PSA) to precursor PSA (proPSA) isoforms: A review of the emerging role of proPSAs in the detection and management of early prostate cancer, *BJU Int* 112:717–728, 2013.

Horninger W, Cheli CD, Babaian RJ, et al: Complexed prostate-specific antigen for early detection of prostate cancer in men with serum prostate-specific antigen levels of 2 to 4 nanograms per milliliter, *Urology* 60(Suppl 1):31–35, 2002.

Hussain MH, MacVicar GR, Petrylak DP, et al: National Cancer Institute. Trastuzumab, paclitaxel, carboplatin, and gemcitabine in advanced human epidermal growth factor receptor-2/neu-positive urothelial carcinoma: Results of a multicenter phase II National Cancer Institute trial, *J Clin Oncol* 25:2218–2224, 2007.

Igetei R, Otegbayo JA, Ndububa DA, et al: Detection of p53 codon 249 mutation in Nigerian patients with hepatocellular carcinoma using a novel evaluation of cell-free DNA, *Ann Hepatol* 7:339–344, 2008.

Ignatiadis M, Xenidis N, Perraki M, et al: Different prognostic value of cytokeratin-1 mRNA positive circulating tumor cells according to estrogen receptor and HER2 status in early-stage breast cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 25:5194–5202, 2007.

Imperiale TF, Ransohoff DF, Itzkowitz SH, et al; Colorectal Cancer Study Group: Fecal DNA versus fecal occult blood for colorectal-cancer screening in an average-risk population, *N Engl J Med* 351:2704–2714, 2004.

Isshiki S, Akakura K, Komiya A, et al: Chromogranin-A concentration as a serum marker to predict prognosis after endocrine therapy for prostate cancer, *J Urol* 167:512–515, 2002.

Ito K, Yamamoto T, Ohi M, et al: Free/total PSA ratio is a powerful predictor of future prostate cancer morbidity in men with initial PSA levels of 4.1 to 10.0 ng/mL, *Urology* 61:760–764, 2003.

Izzo F, Cremona F, Ruffolo F, et al: Outcome of 67 patients with hepatocellular cancer detected during screening of 1125 patients with chronic hepatitis, *Ann Surg* 227:513–518, 1998.

Jacobs I, Bast RC Jr: The CA 125 tumour-associated antigen: A review of the literature, *Hum Reprod* 4:1–12, 1989.

Jacobs IJ, Menon U: Progress and challenges in screening for early detection of ovarian cancer, *Mol Cell Proteomics* 3:355–366, 2004.

Javidi MA, Ahmadi AH, Bakhshinejad B, et al: Cell-free microRNAs as cancer biomarkers: The odyssey of miRNAs through body fluids, *Med Oncol* 31:295, 2014.

Jensen EV, Jordan VC: The estrogen receptor: A model for molecular medicine, *Clin Cancer Res* 9:1980–1989, 2003.

Jeronimo C, Nomoto S, Caballero OL, et al: Mitochondrial mutations in early stage prostate cancer and bodily fluids, *Oncogene* 20:5195, 2001a.

Jeronimo C, Usadel H, Henrique R, et al: Quantitation of GSTP1 methylation in non-neoplastic prostatic tissue and organ-confined prostate adenocarcinoma, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 93:1747–1752, 2001b.

Johnson PJ, Lo YM: Plasma nucleic acids in the diagnosis and management of malignant disease, *Clin Chem* 48:1186, 2002.

Joosse SA, Müller V, Steinbach B, et al: Circulating cell-free cancer-testis MAGE-A RNA, BORIS RNA, let-7b and miR-202 in the blood of patients with breast cancer and benign breast diseases, *Br J Cancer* 111:909–917, 2014.

Jung K, Reszka R, Kamlage B, et al: Tissue metabolite profiling identifies differentiating and prognostic biomarkers for prostate carcinoma, *Int J Cancer* 133:2914–2924, 2013.

Kan N, Yoshikawa S: Serum HER-2 determination using a centauer HER-2/neu kit (CLIA method) in metastatic breast cancer, *Gan to Kagaku Ryoho* 36:779–783, 2009.

Kehinde EO, Maghrebi MA, Anim JT: The importance of determining the aggressiveness of prostate cancer using serum and tissue molecular markers, *Can J Urol* 15:3967–3974, 2008.

Kim H-S, Kim HS, Sin K-S, et al: Clinical comparisons of two free light chain assays to immunofixation electrophoresis for detecting monoclonal gammopathy, *BioMed Research International* 2014:1–7, 2014.
Klee GG, Schreiber WE: MUC1 gene-derived glycoprotein assays for monitoring breast cancer (CA 15-3, CA 27.29, BR): Are they measuring the same antigen?, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 128:1131–1135, 2004.
Kondo N, Murakami Y, Uemura K, et al: Elevated perioperative serum CA 19-9 levels are independent predictors of poor survival in patients with resectable cholangiocarcinoma, *J Surg Oncol* 110(4):422–429, 2014.
Kopreski MS, Benko FA, Kwak LW, et al: Detection of tumor messenger RNA in the serum of patients with malignant melanoma, *Clin Cancer Res* 5:1961, 1999.
Kumar-Sinha C, Tomlins SA, Chinnaiyan AM: Recurrent gene fusions in prostate cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 8:497–511, 2008.
Kumpulainen EJ, Keskikuru RJ, Johansson RT: Serum tumor marker CA 15.3 and stage are the two most powerful predictors of survival in primary breast cancer, *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 76:95–102, 2002.
Kuropkat C, Lippert BM, Werner JA: Follow-up with serum Cyfra 21-1 in patients with squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck, *Oncology* 63:280–285, 2002.
Kyle RA, Gertz MA, Witzig TE, et al: Review of 1027 patients with newly diagnosed multiple myeloma, *Mayo Clin Proc* 78:21–33, 2003.
Lamerz R: AFP isoforms and their clinical significance (overview), *Anticancer Res* 17:2927–2930, 1997.
Lazzeri M, Abrate A, Lughezzani G, et al: Relationship of chronic histologic prostatic inflammation in biopsy specimens with serum isoform [–2]proPSA (p2PSA), %p2PSA, and prostate health index in men with a total prostate-specific antigen of 4 to 10 ng/mL and normal digital rectal examination, *Urology* 38:606–612, 2014.
Lazzeri M, Haese A, Abrate A, et al: Clinical performance of serum prostate specific antigen isoform [–2] proPSA (p2PSA) and its derivatives %p2PSA and the prostate health index (phi) in men with a family history of prostate cancer: Results from a multicenter European study, the PROMEtheuS project, *BJU Int* 112:313–321, 2013.
Lechowicz MJ, Lin L, Ambinder RF: Epstein-Barr virus DNA in body fluids, *Curr Opin Oncol* 14:533, 2002.
Lee D: Prostate-specific antigen doubling time predicts disease progression and survival, *Clin Prostate Cancer* 1:208–211, 2003.
Lee TH, Montalvo L, Chrebtow V, et al: Quantitation of genomic DNA in plasma and serum samples: Higher concentrations of genomic DNA found in serum than in plasma, *Transfusion* 41:276, 2001.
Lee P, Rosen DG, Zhu C, et al: Expression of progesterone receptor is a favorable prognostic marker in ovarian cancer, *Gynecol Oncol* 96:671–677, 2005.
Lei KI, Chan LY, Chan WY, et al: Diagnostic and prognostic implications of circulating cell-free Epstein-Barr virus DNA in natural killer/T-cell lymphoma, *Clin Cancer Res* 8:29, 2002.
Lein M, Kwiatkowski M, Semjonow A, et al: A multicenter clinical trial on the use of complexed prostate specific antigen in low prostate specific antigen concentrations, *J Urol* 170:1175–1179, 2003.
Leitzel K, Teramoto Y, Sampson E, et al: Elevated soluble c-erbB-2 antigen levels in the serum and effusions of a proportion of breast cancer patients, *J Clin Oncol* 10:1436–1443, 1992.
Leyten GH, Hessels D, Jannick SA, et al: Prospective multicentre evaluation of PCA3 and TMPRSS2:ERG gene fusions as diagnostic and prognostic urinary biomarkers for prostate cancer, *Eur Urol* 65:534–542, 2014.
Li L, Wang L, Zhang W, et al: Correlation of serum VEGF levels with clinical stage, therapy efficacy, tumor metastasis and patient survival in ovarian cancer, *Anticancer Res* 24:1973–1979, 2004.
Lilja H, Christensson A, Dahlén U, et al: Prostate-specific antigen in serum occurs predominantly in complex with alpha 1-antichymotrypsin, *Clin Chem* 37:1618–1625, 1991.
Liotta LA: Biochemical mechanisms of tumor invasion and metastases, *Clin Physiol Biochem* 5:190–199, 1987.
Littrup PJ, Goodman AC, Mettlin CJ: The benefit and cost of prostate cancer early detection. The Investigators of the American Cancer Society–National Prostate Cancer Detection Project, *CA Cancer J Clin* 43: 134–149, 1993.
Ljungberg B, Jacobsen J, Haggstrom-Rudolfssson S, et al: Tumour vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) mRNA in relation to serum VEGF protein levels and tumour progression in human renal cell carcinoma, *Urol Res* 31:335–340, 2003.
Loberg RD, Fielhauer JR, Pienta BA, et al: Prostate-specific antigen doubling time and survival in patients with advanced metastatic prostate cancer, *Urology* 62(Suppl 1):128–133, 2003.
Loeb S, Sokoll L, Broyles DL, et al: Prospective multicenter evaluation of the Beckman Coulter prostate health index using WHO calibration, *J Uro* 189:1702–1706, 2013.
Lou X, Hou Y, Liang D, et al: A novel Alu-based real-time PCR method for the quantitative detection of plasma circulating cell-free DNA: Sensitivity and specificity for the diagnosis of myocardial infarction, *Int J Mol Med* 35:72–80, 2015.
Louhimo J, Carpelan-Holmstrom M, Alfthan H, et al: Serum HCG beta, CA 72-4 and CEA are independent prognostic factors in colorectal cancer, *Int J Cancer* 101:545–548, 2002.
Lu KH, Patterson AP, Wang L, et al: Selection of potential markers for epithelial ovarian cancer with gene expression arrays and recursive descent partition analysis, *Clin Cancer Res* 10:3291–3300, 2004.
Luftner D, Henschke P, Flath B, et al: Serum HER-2/neu as a prediction and monitoring parameter in a phase II study with weekly paclitaxel in metastatic breast cancer, *Anticancer Res* 24:895–906, 2004.
Ma PC, Blaszkowsky L, Bharti A, et al: Circulating tumor cells and serum tumor biomarkers in small cell lung cancer, *Anticancer Res* 23:49–62, 2003.
Machens A, Lorenz K, Dralle H: Utility of serum procalcitonin for screening and risk Machens stratification of medullary thyroid cancer, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 99(8):2986–2994, 2014.
Malkin D, Li FP, Strong LC, et al: Germ line p53 mutations in a familial syndrome of breast cancer, sarcomas, and other neoplasms, *Science* 250:1233–1238, 1990.
Mansour H: Cell-free nucleic acids as noninvasive biomarkers for colorectal cancer detection, *Front Genet* 5:182, 2014.
Marrelli D, Pinto E, De Stefano A, et al: Clinical utility of CEA, CA 19-9, and CA 72-4 in the follow-up of patients with resectable gastric cancer, *Am J Surg* 181:16–19, 2001.
Marzese DM, Hirose H, Hoon DS: Diagnostic and prognostic value of circulating tumor-related DNA in cancer patients, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 13:827–844, 2013.
McDunn JE, Li Z, Adam KP, et al: Metabolomic signatures of aggressive prostate cancer, *Prostate* 73:1547–1560, 2013.
Miki Y, Swensen J, Shattuck-Eidens D, et al: A strong candidate for the breast and ovarian cancer susceptibility gene BRCA1, *Science* 266:66–71, 1994.
Mikolajczyk SD, Grauer LS, Millar LS, et al: A precursor form of PSA (pPSA) is a component of the free PSA in prostate cancer serum, *Urology* 50:710–714, 1997.
Mikolajczyk SD, Millar LS, Wang TJ, et al: "BPSA," a specific molecular form of free prostate-specific antigen, is found predominantly in the transition zone of patients with nodular benign prostatic hyperplasia, *Urology* 55:41–45, 2000.
Milstein C, Cuello AC: Hybrid hybridomas and their use in immunohistochemistry, *Nature* 305:537–540, 1983.
Mitchell EP: Role of carcinoembryonic antigen in the management of advanced colorectal cancer, *Semin Oncol* 25(Suppl 11):12–20, 1998.
Mitchell ID, Croal BL, Dickie A, et al: A prospective study to evaluate the role of complexed prostate specific antigen and free/total prostate specific antigen ratio for the diagnosis of prostate cancer, *J Urol* 165:1549–1553, 2001.
Molnar B, Sipos F, Galamb O, et al: Molecular detection of circulating cancer cells. Role in diagnosis, prognosis and follow-up of colon cancer patients, *Dig Dis* 21:320–325, 2003.
Moore RG, Brown AK, Miller MC, et al: The use of multiple novel tumor biomarkers for the detection of ovarian carcinoma in patients with a pelvic mass, *Gynecol Oncol* 108:402–408, 2008.
Moore RG, McMeekin DS, Brown AK, et al: A novel multiple marker bioassay utilizing HE4 and CA125 for the prediction of ovarian cancer in patients with a pelvic mass, *Gynecol Oncol* 112:40–46, 2009.
Morelli D, Lazzerini D, Cazzaniga S, et al: Evaluation of the balance between angiogenic and antiangiogenic circulating factors in patients with breast and gastrointestinal cancers, *Clin Cancer Res* 4:1221–1225, 1998.
Moreno JG, Miller MC, Gross S, et al: Circulating tumor cells predict survival in patients with metastatic prostate cancer, *Urology* 65:713–718, 2005.
Mori S, Mori Y, Mukaiyama T, et al: In vitro and in vivo release of soluble erbB-2 protein from human carcinoma cells, *Jpn J Cancer Res* 81:489–494, 1990.
Moul JW, Sun L, Hotaling JM, et al: Age adjusted prostate specific antigen and prostate specific antigen velocity cut points in prostate cancer screening, *J Urol* 177:499–503, 2007.
Munstedt K, Steen J, Knauf AG, et al: Steroid hormone receptors and long-term survival in invasive ovarian cancer, *Cancer* 89:1783–1791, 2000.
Nagrath S, Sequist LV, Maheswaran S, et al: Isolation of rare circulating tumour cells in cancer patients by microchip technology, *Nature* 450:1235–1239, 2007.
Nahm MH, Hoffmann JW: Heteroantibody: Phantom of the immunoassay, *Clin Chem* 36:829, 1990.
Nakamoto D, Yamamoto N, Takagi R, et al: Detection of microsatellite alterations in plasma DNA of malignant mucosal melanoma using whole genome amplification, *Bull Tokyo Dent Coll* 49:77–87, 2008.
Nakanishi H, Groskopf J, Fritsche HA, et al: PCA3 molecular urine assay correlates with prostate cancer tumor volume: Implication in selecting candidates for active surveillance, *J Urol* 179:1804–1809, 2008.
Nakata B, Ogawa Y, Ishikawa T, et al: Serum CYFRA 21-1 is one of the most reliable tumor markers for breast carcinoma, *Cancer* 89:1285–1290, 2000.
Nakata B, Takashima T, Ogawa Y, et al: Serum CYFRA 21-1 (cytokeratin-19 fragments) is a useful tumour marker for detecting disease relapse and assessing treatment efficacy in breast cancer, *Br J Cancer* 91:873–878, 2004.
O'Hanlon DM, Fitzsimons H, Lynch J, et al: Soluble adhesion molecules (E-selectin, ICAM-1 and VCAM-1) in breast carcinoma, *Eur J Cancer* 38:2252–2257, 2002.
Pantel K, Riethdorf S: Pathology: Are circulating tumor cells predictive of overall survival?, *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 6:190–191, 2009.
Papila C, Uzun H, Balci H, et al: Clinical significance and prognostic value of serum sHER-2/neu levels in patients with solid tumors, *Med Oncol* 26:151–156, 2009.
Papsidero LD, Wang MC, Valenzuela LA, et al: A prostate antigen in sera of prostatic cancer patients, *Cancer Res* 40:2428–2432, 1980.
Park KU, Lee HE, Park do J, et al: MYC quantitation in cell-free plasma DNA by real-time PCR for gastric cancer diagnosis, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 47:530–536, 2009.
Parsons JK, Brawer MK, Cheli CD, et al: Complexed prostate specific antigen (PSA) reduces unnecessary prostate biopsies in the 2.6 to 4.0 ng/mL range of total PSA, *BJU Int* 94:47–50, 2004.
Peng Z, Liu Y, Li Y, et al: Serum HER2 extracellular domain as a potential alternative for tissue HER2 status in metastatic gastric cancer patients, *Biomark Med* 8(5):663–670, 2014.
Ploussard G, de la Taille A: Urine biomarkers in prostate cancer, *Nat Rev Urol* 7:101–109, 2010.
Polascik TJ, Oesterling JE, Partin AW: Prostate specific antigen: a decade of discovery—What we have learned and where we are going, *J Urol* 162:293–306, 1999.
Poon RT, Lau CP, Cheung ST, et al: Quantitative correlation of serum levels and tumor expression of vascular endothelial growth factor in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma, *Cancer Res* 63:3121–3126, 2003.
Punglia RS, D'Amico AV, Catalona WJ, et al: Effect of verification bias on screening for prostate cancer by measurement of prostate-specific antigen, *N Engl J Med* 349:335–342, 2003.
Rajkumar SV, Kyle RA, Therneau TM, et al: Serum free light chain ratio is an independent risk factor for progression in monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance, *Blood* 106:812–817, 2005.
Resel FL, San Jose ML, Galante RI, et al: Prognostic significance of circulating tumor cell count in patients with metastatic hormone-sensitive prostate cancer, *Urology* 80:1328–1332, 2012.

Rhodes CH, Honsinger C, Sorenson GD: Detection of tumor-derived DNA in cerebrospinal fluid, *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 53:364, 1994.

Riethdorf S, Fritsche H, Müller V, et al: Detection of circulating tumor cells in peripheral blood of patients with metastatic breast cancer: A validation study of the CellSearch system, *Clin Cancer Res* 13:920–928, 2007.

Roddam AW, Duffy MJ, Hamdy FC, et al: Use of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) isoforms for the detection of prostate cancer in men with a PSA level of 2-10 ng/mL: Systematic review and meta-analysis, *Eur Urol* 48:386–399, 2005.

Roupret M, Hupertan V, Yates DR, et al: Molecular detection of localized prostate cancer using quantitative methylation-specific PCR on urinary cells obtained following prostate massage, *Clin Cancer Res* 13:1720–1725, 2007.

Salami SS, Schmidt F, Laxman B, et al: Combining urinary detection of TMPRSS2:ERG and PCA3 with serum PSA to predict diagnosis of prostate cancer, *Urol Oncol* 31:566–571, 2013.

Sanger N, Effenberger KE, Riethdorf S, et al: Disseminated tumor cells in the bone marrow of patients with ductal carcinoma in situ, *Int J Cancer* 129:2522–2526, 2011.

Sangrajrang S, Arpornwirat W, Cheirsilpa A, et al: Serum p53 antibodies in correlation to other biological parameters of breast cancer, *Cancer Detect Prev* 27:182–186, 2003.

Saylor PJ, Karoly ED, Smith MR: Prospective study of changes in the metabolomics profiles of men during their first three months of androgen deprivation therapy for prostate cancer, *Clin Cancer Res* 18:3677–3685, 2012.

Scattoni V, Lazzeri M, Lughezzani G, et al: Head to head comparison of prostate health index and urinary PCA3 for predicting cancer at initial or repeat biopsy, *J Urol* 190:496–501, 2013.

Schippinger W, Regitnig P, Bauernhofer T, et al: The course of serum HER-2/neu levels as an independent prognostic factor for survival in metastatic breast cancer, *Oncol Rep* 11:1331–1336, 2004.

Schlichtholz B, Legros Y, Gillet D, et al: The immune response to p53 in breast cancer patients is directed against immunodominant epitopes unrelated to the mutational hot spot, *Cancer Res* 52:6380–6384, 1992.

Schmidt B, Carstensen T, Engel E, et al: Detection of cell-free nucleic acids in bronchial lavage fluid supernatants from patients with lung cancer, *Eur J Cancer* 40:452, 2004.

Schneider J, Philipp M, Velcovsky HG, et al: Progastrin-releasing peptide (ProGRP), neuron specific enolase (NSE), carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), and cytokeratin 19-fragments (CYFRA 21-1) in patients with lung cancer in comparison to other lung diseases, *Anticancer Res* 23:885–893, 2003.

Schröder FH, Carter HB, Wolters T, et al: Early detection of prostate cancer in 2007. Part 1: PSA and PSA kinetics, *Eur Urol* 53:468–477, 2008.

Schröder FH, Hugosson J, Roobol MJ, et al: Screening and prostate-cancer mortality in a randomized European study, *N Engl J Med* 360:1320–1328, 2009.

Schröder FH, van der Cruijsen-Koeter I, de Koning HJ, et al: Prostate cancer detection at low prostate specific antigen, *J Urol* 163:806–812, 2000.

Schummer M, Ng WV, Bumgarner RE, et al: Comparative hybridization of an array of 21,500 ovarian cDNAs for the discovery of genes overexpressed in ovarian carcinomas, *Gene* 238:375–378, 1999.

Schwarz AK, Stanulla M, Cario G, et al: Quantification of free total plasma DNA and minimal residual disease detection in the plasma of children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Ann Hematol* 88:897–905, 2009.

Schwarzenbach H, Muller V, Stahmann N, et al: Detection and characterization of circulating microsatellite DNA in blood of patients with breast cancer, *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1022:25, 2002.

Sciarra A, Monti S, Gentile V, et al: Variation in chromogranin A serum levels during intermittent versus continuous androgen deprivation therapy for prostate adenocarcinoma, *Prostate* 55:168–179, 2003.

Sethi S, Ali S, Kong D, et al: Clinical implication of microRNAs in molecular pathology, *Clin Lab Med* 33:773–786, 2013.

Sheen-Chen SM, Eng HL, Huang CC, et al: Serum levels of soluble E-selectin in women with breast cancer, *Br J Surg* 91:1578–1581, 2004.

Sidransky D, Von Eschenbach A, Tsai YC, et al: Identification of p53 gene mutations in bladder cancers and urine samples, *Science* 252:706–709, 1991.

Silva JM, Gonzalez R, Dominguez G, et al: TP53 gene mutations in plasma DNA of cancer patients, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 24:160, 1999.

Silva JM, Rodriguez R, Garcia JM, et al: Detection of epithelial tumour RNA in the plasma of colon cancer patients is associated with advanced stages and circulating tumour cells, *Gut* 50:530, 2002.

Sita-Lumsden A, Fletcher CE, Dart DA, et al: Circulating nucleic acids as biomarkers of prostate cancer, *Biomark Med* 7:867–877, 2013.

Smith TJ, Davidson NE, Schapira DV, et al: American Society of Clinical Oncology 1998 update of recommended breast cancer surveillance guidelines, *J Clin Oncol* 17:1080–1082, 1999.

Sokoll LJ, Sanda MG, Feng Z, et al: A prospective, multicenter, National Cancer Institute Early Detection Research Network study of [–2]proPSA: Improving prostate cancer detection and correlating with cancer aggressiveness, *Cancer Epidemol Biomarkers Prev* 19:1193–1200, 2010.

Sorenson GD, Pribish DM, Valone FH, et al: Soluble normal and mutated DNA sequences from single-copy genes in human blood, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 3:67, 1994.

Soussi T: p53 Antibodies in the sera of patients with various types of cancer: A review, *Cancer Res* 60:1777–1778, 2000.

Soussi T, Beroud C: Assessing TP53 status in human tumours to evaluate clinical outcome, *Nat Rev Cancer* 1:233–240, 2001.

Spindler KL, Pallisgaard N, Andersen RF, et al: Changes in mutational status during third-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer—Results of consecutive measurement of cell free DNA, KRAS and BRAF in the plasma, *Int J Cancer* 135:2215–2222, 2014.

Stenman UH, Leinonen J, Alfthan H, et al: A complex between prostate-specific antigen and alpha 1-antichymotrypsin is the major form of prostate-specific antigen in serum of patients with prostatic cancer: Assay of the complex improves clinical sensitivity for cancer, *Cancer Res* 51:222–226, 1991.

Stephan C, Rittenhouse H, Cammann H, et al: New markers and multivariate models for prostate cancer detection, *Anticancer Res* 29:2589–2600, 2009.

Su WC, Shiesh SC, Liu HS, et al: Expression of oncogene products HER2/Neu and Ras and fibrosis-related growth factors bFGF, TGF-beta, and PDGF in bile from biliary malignancies and inflammatory disorders, *Dig Dis Sci* 46:1387–1392, 2001.

Syrigos KN, Salgami E, Karayiannakis AJ, et al: Prognostic significance of soluble adhesion molecules in Hodgkin's disease, *Anticancer Res* 24:1243–1247, 2004.

Tarle M, Ahel MZ, Kovacic K: Acquired neuroendocrine-positivity during maximal androgen blockade in prostate cancer patients, *Anticancer Res* 22:2525–2529, 2002.

Thierry AR, Mouliere F, El Messaoudi S, et al: Clinical validation of the detection of KRAS and BRAF mutations from circulating tumor DNA, *Nat Med* 20:430–435, 2014.

Thompson IM, Ankerst DP, Chi C, et al: Operating characteristics of prostate-specific antigen in men with an initial PSA level of 3.0 ng/mL or lower, *JAMA* 294:66–70, 2005.

Thompson IM, Pauler DK, Goodman PJ, et al: Prevalence of prostate cancer among men with a prostate-specific antigen level < or = 4.0 ng per milliliter, *N Engl J Med* 350:2239–2246, 2004.

Thurm H, Ebel S, Kentenich C, et al: Rare expression of epithelial cell adhesion molecule on residual micrometastatic breast cancer cells after adjuvant chemotherapy, *Clin Cancer Res* 9:2598–2604, 2003.

Tondini C, Hayes DF, Gelman R, et al: Comparison of CA15-3 and carcinoembryonic antigen in monitoring the clinical course of patients with metastatic breast cancer, *Cancer Res* 48:4107–4112, 1988.

Tonus C, Sellinger M, Koss K, et al: Faecal pyruvate kinase isoenzyme type M2 for colorectal cancer screening: A meta-analysis, *World J Gastroenterol* 18:4004–4011, 2012.

Truong M, Yang B, Jarrad DF: Toward the detection of prostate cancer in urine: A critical analysis, *J Urol* 189:422–429, 2013.

Tsigris C, Karayiannakis AJ, Syrigos KN, et al: Clinical significance of soluble c-erbB-2 levels in the serum and urine of patients with gastric cancer, *Anticancer Res* 22:3061–3065, 2002a.

Tsigris C, Karayiannakis AJ, Zbar A, et al: Clinical significance of serum and urinary c-erbB-2 levels in colorectal cancer, *Cancer Lett* 184:215–222, 2002b.

Uhr JW: Cancer diagnostics: One-stop shop, *Nature* 450:1168–1169, 2007.

Ulivi P, Silvestrini R: Role of quantitative and qualitative characteristics of free circulating DNA in the management of patients with non–small cell lung cancer, *Cell Oncol* 36:439–448, 2013.

Utting M, Werner W, Dahse R, et al: Microsatellite analysis of free tumor DNA in urine, serum, and plasma of patients: A minimally invasive method for the detection of bladder cancer, *Clin Cancer Res* 8:35, 2002.

Vaissière T, Cuenin C, Paliwal A, et al: Quantitative analysis of DNA methylation after whole bisulfitome amplification of a minute amount of DNA from body fluids, *Epigenetics* 4:221–230, 2009.

Vessella RL, Lange PH: Issues in the assessment of prostate-specific antigen immunoassays: An update, *Urol Clin North Am* 24:261–268, 1997.

Vlaeminck-Guillem V, Ruffion A, André J, et al: Urinary prostate cancer 3 test: Toward the age of reason?, *Urology* 75:447–453, 2010.

Von Eyben FE: Laboratory markers and germ cell tumors, *Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci* 40:377–427, 2003.

Wang H, Tso V, Wong C, et al: Development and validation of a highly sensitive urine-based test to identify patients with colonic adenomatous polyps, *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 5(3):e54, 2014.

Whitman EJ, Groskopf J, Ali A, et al: PCA3 score before radical prostatectomy predicts extracapsular extension and tumor volume, *J Urol* 180:1975–1978, 2008.

Wilmanns C, Grossmann J, Steinhauer S, et al: Soluble serum E-cadherin as a marker of tumour progression in colorectal cancer patients, *Clin Exp Metastasis* 21:75–78, 2004.

Winter JM, Yeo CJ, Brody JR: Diagnostic, prognostic, and predictive biomarkers in pancreatic cancer, *J Surg Oncol* 107(1):15–22, 2013.

Woodrum D, French C, Shamel LB: Stability of free prostate-specific antigen in serum samples under a variety of sample collection and sample storage conditions, *Urology* 48(Suppl):33–39, 1996.

Woodson K, Hanson J, Tangrea J: A survey of gene-specific methylation in human prostate cancer among black and white men, *Cancer Lett* 205:181–188, 2004.

Woodson K, O'Reilly KJ, Hanson JC, et al: The usefulness of the detection of GSTP1 methylation in urine as a biomarker in the diagnosis of prostate cancer, *J Urol* 179:508–511, 2008.

Wooster R, Neuhausen SL, Mangion J, et al: Localization of a breast cancer susceptibility gene, BRCA2, to chromosome 13q12–13, *Science* 265:2088–2090, 1994.

Wu JT: Expression of monoclonal antibody-defined tumor markers in four carcinomas, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 19:17–26, 1989.

Wu JT: Serum alpha-fetoprotein and its lectin reactivity in liver diseases: A review, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 20:98–105, 1990.

Wu JT: Assay for prostate specific antigen (PSA): Problems and possible solutions, *J Clin Lab Anal* 8:51–62, 1994.

Wu JT, Carlisle P: Low frequency and low level of elevation of serum CA 72-4 in human carcinomas in comparison with established tumor markers, *J Clin Lab Anal* 6:59–64, 1992.

Wu JT, Clayton F, Myers S, et al: A simple radial immunodiffusion method for assay of β2-microglobulin in serum, *Clin Chem* 32:2070–2073, 1986.

Wu JT, Erickson AJ, Tsao KC, et al: Elevated serum chromogranin A is detectable in patients with carcinomas at advanced disease stages, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 30:175–178, 2000.

Wu JT, Liu GH: Advantages of replacing the total PSA assay with the assay for PSA-alpha 1-antichymotrypsin complex for the screening and management of prostate cancer, *J Clin Lab Anal* 12:32–40, 1998.

Xiao WB, Liu YL: Elevation of serum and ascites cancer antigen 125 levels in patients with liver cirrhosis, *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 18:1315–1316, 2003.

Yamamoto H, Lambert-Messerlian GM, Silver HM, et al: Maternal serum levels of type I and type III procollagen peptides in preeclamptic pregnancy, *J Matern Fetal Med* 10:40–43, 2001.

Yang M, Shen H, Qiu C, et al: High expression of miR-21 and miR-155 predicts recurrence and unfavourable survival in non–small cell lung cancer, *Eur J Cancer* 49:604–615, 2013.

Yegnasubramanian S, Kowalski J, Gonzalgo ML, et al: Hypermethylation of CpG islands in primary and metastatic human prostate cancer, *Cancer Res* 64:1975–1986, 2004.

Yu J, Gu G, Ju S: Recent advances in clinical applications of circulating cell-free DNA integrity, *Lab Med* 45:6–12, 2014.
Yu YH, Schlossman DM, Harrison CL, et al: Coexpression of different antigenic markers on moieties that bear CA 125 determinants, *Cancer Res* 51:468–475, 1991.
Zhang L, Riethdorf S, Wu G, et al: Meta-analysis of the prognostic value of circulating tumor cells in breast cancer, *Clin Cancer Res* 18:5701–5710, 2012.
Zidan J, Hussein O, Basher W, et al: Serum CA125: A tumor marker for monitoring response to treatment and follow-up in patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Oncologist* 9:417–421, 2004.

CHAPTER 75

ONCOPROTEINS AND EARLY TUMOR DETECTION

Matthew R. Pincus, Paul W. Brandt-Rauf, Martin H. Bluth, Elizabeth Gleeson, Mohammad F. Shaikh, Wilbur B. Bowne, Charles LaDoulis

OVERVIEW, 1450
Cell Biology and Mitogenesis, 1450
Signal Transduction Pathways, 1451

ONCOPROTEINS IN TUMOR DETECTION, 1451
Growth Factors, 1452
Growth Factor Receptors, 1454
G-Proteins, 1456
Cytosolic Mitogenic Kinases, 1457
Nuclear Oncoproteins, 1457

USE OF MULTIPLE ONCOPROTEIN MARKERS IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF CANCER, 1460
Multiple Oncoprotein Assay in Patients at Risk for Tumor Development in Patients with Pneumoconiosis, 1460
Oncoprotein Arrays Likewise Hold Promise in Detecting Antioncoprotein Antibodies in Sera, 1460

PROTEOMIC APPROACHES TO EARLY DETECTION OF CANCER IN SERUM, 1460
Application of the Proteomic Approach to the Diagnosis of Cancers, 1461
Protein Arrays for Specific Types of Cancer, 1461
Diagnostic Efficacy of Serum Oncoproteins, 1461
Origins of Malignancies, 1463
Tumor Size and Oncoprotein Levels, 1463

EVALUATION AND CONCLUSIONS, 1463

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1463

KEY POINTS

- As a result of the vast progress that has been made very recently in sequencing the entire human genome and in illuminating pathways that are involved in tumorigenesis, it has become clear that the malfunctioning of mutant proteins is the central cause of human cancers.
- These proteins—growth factors, growth factor receptors, G-proteins such as ras-p21, the mitogen-activated protein kinases, and nuclear proteins such as Myc, Fos, Jun, and p53—are critical in signal transduction pathways in which proliferation signals from growth factors at the cell membrane are transduced to the nucleus and stimulate cell division.
- The mutations in these proteins result in amino acid substitutions or deletions that cause them to be permanently activated. Mutations in regulatory domains of the genes encoding these proteins can result in protein overexpression, which can also result in continuous mitogenic signaling.
- These proteins and antibodies to them can be used to detect the presence of cancers in patients at early stages—and even to predict their future occurrence.
- Although mutated signal transduction proteins are involved in many different human cancers, it appears that there are patterns of expression of mutated proteins that typify specific cancers.

OVERVIEW

As a result of the vast progress that has been made recently in sequencing the entire human genome and in illuminating pathways that are involved in tumorigenesis, it has become clear that the malfunctioning of mutant proteins is the central cause of human cancers. This has given rise to a whole new field of proteomics—that is, detection of these aberrant proteins in the blood and other body fluids of patients. This chapter explains these new approaches and emphasizes that many of these aberrant proteins are actually involved in the transmission of proliferation signals on signal transduction pathways, prominent examples of which are discussed. This chapter explains signal transduction pathways in cell proliferation; illustrates how different mutant proteins on these pathways can cause abnormal, continuous proliferation signaling, leading to cell transformation; demonstrates how these proteins and antibodies to them can be used to detect the presence—and even to predict the future occurrence—of cancers in patients; and shows how new proteins that are strongly associated with different types of cancers have been discovered and can be used to detect these cancers at early stages.

CELL BIOLOGY AND MITOGENESIS

Control of the process of cell division in eukaryotic cells, especially in the higher forms of life, is vital to the processes of cell proliferation and differentiation. The fine balance between these two processes is regulated by numerous proteins that interact in the cell to ensure that this balance is maintained. Virtually all these proteins, many of which are critical in regulating the cell cycle, are encoded by oncogenes. Mutations in oncogenes can result in the production of proteins that become either permanently activated in stimulating cell growth and proliferation (e.g., the ras gene–encoded p21 protein). There can also be silencing or attenuation of genes and their products that inhibit cell proliferation (e.g., the p53 protein), otherwise known as tumor suppressor genes. Both events give rise to malignant tumor cells.

Knowledge not only of the existence of these oncogenes and their encoded oncoproteins but also of the mechanisms by which they exert their effects has resulted in a new series of highly sensitive assays for both mutated oncogenes and their encoded mutant proteins. Assays using amplification methods such as real-time polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) for mutated oncogenes are discussed extensively in Part 8 and are further discussed in this chapter. However, the main focus of this chapter is how the detection of oncogenic *proteins*, or *oncoproteins*, that occur in the serum of patients with malignant tumors enables the diagnosis of malignancy to be made, often at an early stage of tumor development. Because the finding of elevated levels of any of these oncoproteins or mutated forms of these proteins in human serum indicates the likely presence of a malignant tumor, these proteins are also referred to in this chapter as *tumor markers*. Additionally, in view of the enormous strides that have been made in PCR and other molecular technology, allowing the detection of very few copies of aberrant DNA, we also discuss in this chapter recently developed new detection methods for oncogenic DNA present in the sera and other body fluids of patients with cancer, further allowing early tumor detection.

Oncogenesis, the process by which normal cells become malignant, involves multiple steps that can be broadly classified into tumor initiation and tumor promotion. Mitogenesis itself is a multistep process that commences at the cell membrane as a result of the activation of a growth factor receptor, which then activates other membrane and cytosolic proteins and second-messenger molecules that transduce the mitogenic "signal" to the nucleus. The pathway in which this orderly progression of activation of successive proteins, mostly kinases, occurs from the cell membrane to the nucleus is referred to as a *signal transduction pathway.*

SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION PATHWAYS

A number of the steps on the signal transduction pathway that are involved in the transduction of the growth factor–initiated signal to the nucleus have become elucidated, but many of the steps that are involved are still not fully understood. One well-established pathway, for the ras-oncogene-induced mitogenic signaling pathway, is summarized in Figure 75-1. This figure shows that when a growth factor receptor is activated by its growth factor, such as epidermal growth factor (EGF), HER2/*neu*, or insulin, the receptor, in turn, activates several intermediary proteins (Grb-2 and SOS, in Fig. 75-1) that activate the all-important G-protein (i.e., guanosine triphosphate [GTP]–binding protein), ras-p21. This membrane-bound 21-kDa protein, containing 189 amino acids, is activated when the SOS protein induces it to bind GTP in place of guanosine diphosphate (GDP). In its activated (GTP-bound) state, ras-p21 directly activates Raf (Moodie et al, 1993; Stokoe et al, 1994), which in turn induces a sequential protein kinase cascade beginning with the kinase MEK (formerly called MAP kinase kinase) and mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase encoded by the ERK gene, as shown in Figure 75-1.

MAP kinase directly activates nuclear transcription factors, one of these being Fos. This important protein forms a heterodimeric complex with another nuclear transcription factor, Jun, which is directly activated by Jun kinase (JNK). The Fos–Jun complex, also called AP1, binds to specific regions of genomic DNA, inducing the transcription of mitogenic proteins such as the cyclins. Transcription of these proteins is blocked by the anti-oncogene p53 protein (see Fig. 75-1), which further induces the transcription of antimitotic proteins such as Bax and caspases that are critical to the process apoptosis.

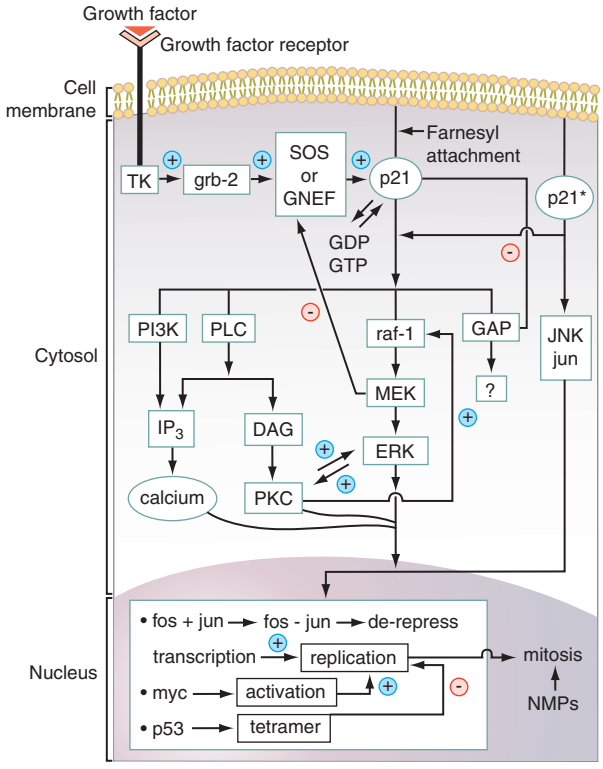


Figure 75-1 Scheme of some of the known components of the ras signal transduction pathway beginning *(top, left)* when a growth factor binds to its cell receptor. The remainder of events is explained in the text. *DAG,* Diacylglycerol; *GAP,* GTPase-activating protein, which promotes hydrolysis of GTP to GDP bound to p21; *grb-2,* the adaptor protein that concurrently binds p21 and the guanine nucleotide exchange protein or factor, SOS; *PI3K,* phosphoinositol-3-hydroxy kinase, an enzyme that induces synthesis of IP3 and is involved in many aspects of mitogenic signal transduction; *IP3,* inositol triphosphate; *MAP-2 kinase,* mitogen-activated protein kinase or microtubule-associated protein kinase-2 (ERK in the figure, also called MAP-2K); *myc, fos,* and *jun,* nuclear oncogenes that code for nuclear proteins; *NMP,* nuclear matrix proteins; *PKC,* protein kinase C; *PLC,* phospholipase C; *Raf-1,* the oncogene-encoded p74 protein, which functions as a kinase that phosphorylates another kinase of molecular mass 43 kDa, called MAP-2 kinase kinase, MEK (as in the figure, or MAP-KK; ras-p21 protein, ras-p21, defined in the text).

Figure 75-1 also illustrates that in normal mitogenic signal transduction, antiproliferative proteins, also called antioncogene proteins—that is, products of tumor suppressor genes, such as p53—become activated and downregulate mitogenic events. If these proteins become mutated at critical positions in their polypeptide chains, they become inactivated, allowing mitogenic events to occur with less inhibition and regulation. Numerous other antioncogene proteins occur, including p16, mutations that have been implicated as a major causative factor of bladder cancer; Rb (retinoblastoma antioncogene protein); and APC (adenomatosis polyposis coli) protein, mutations of which have been implicated in causing familial adenomatous polyposis and colon cancer.

A central feature of the signal transduction events summarized in Figure 75-1 is that the activation cascades are ordered and are under tight regulatory control. Thus, for example, whereas SOS activates ras-p21, GTPase-activating protein induces hydrolysis of GTP bound to Ras-p21, causing its inactivation (see Fig. 75-1). Activated MEK downregulates SOS, diminishing GDP/GTP exchange by Ras-p21 (Holt et al, 1996).

If one or more proteins on pathways such as the one shown in Figure 75-1 become mutated so they cannot be downregulated, continuous mitogenic signaling becomes possible, leading ultimately to neoplasia. The more such mutations occur, the more likely it is that the cell will undergo malignant transformation. Thus progressive lesions in a mitogenic pathway or in more than one mitogenic pathway may correspond to the multiple steps in carcinogenesis. This model has been employed in the explanation for the pathogenesis of colorectal cancer (Vogelstein et al, 1988) and pancreatic cancer (Hruben et al, 2001).

These considerations have critically important practical consequences for both the diagnosis and treatment of cancer. In colon cancer, overexpression of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFr) can occur, resulting in continuous mitogenic signaling. In addition, as a second occurrence, the ras gene encoding the ras-p21 protein can become mutated, resulting in expression of oncogenic ras-p21 and also resulting in continuous mitogenic signaling. Note in Figure 75-1 that ras occurs downstream of the growth factor receptor (EGFr in this case). If elevated levels of EGFr are found in the serum and/or tissue of a patient with colorectal cancer, an effective therapy is to treat the patient with anti-EGFr agents such as monoclonal antibodies (e.g., cetuximab and panitumumab). Unfortunately, treatment with EGFr inhibitors has no effect on oncogenic ras-p21 signaling. Therefore, it is necessary, prior to treatment, to ascertain whether oncogenic ras-p21 is present (Normanno et al, 2009). If it is not present, EGFr inhibitor administration is effective. If oncogenic ras-p21 is present, however, this treatment cannot be employed.

Table 75-1 summarizes the mechanisms by which each type of signal transduction element has been found to induce cell transformation, beginning with growth factors, progressing to growth factor receptors, then to G proteins and the kinase cascades, and finally to nuclear proteins. These mechanisms are discussed in more detail in each section of this chapter devoted to these different signal transduction proteins.

ONCOPROTEINS IN TUMOR DETECTION

Detection of mutated signal transduction proteins or high levels of the wild-type proteins in serum or body fluids is strongly suggestive of neoplasia. Therefore, many assays for different oncoproteins are now available commercially in kit form, including enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) assays for the growth factors, transforming growth factor (TGF)-α and β and fibroblast growth factor (FGF); the growth factor receptor proteins EGFr and HER2/*neu*, Ras-p21; and the nuclear proteins p53, Myc, and NMP22 from such companies as Oncogene Science (Cambridge, Mass.), now a division of Siemens; Triton Bioscience (Alameda, Calif.), a

TABLE 75-1
Mechanisms for Induction of Carcinogenesis by Mitogenic Pathway Elements

Pathway Element	Mechanism of Action
1. Growth factors	a. Overproduction by cell into surroundings b. Interaction of growth factors with high-affinity receptors
2. Growth factor receptors	a. Overexpression leading to high concentration of dimers b. Loss of extracellular domain resulting in permanent dimerization of growth factor receptor and continuous signaling c. Amino acid substitutions in transmembrane domain, leading to permanent dimerization
3. Cytosolic proteins	a. Overexpression of normal G-proteins and protein kinases b. Amino acid substitutions that permanently change conformation to activated form c. Mutations that remove regulatory domains of kinases
4. Nuclear oncoproteins	a. Overexpression of transcription and replication proteins b. Mutations in antioncogene proteins that inactivate them c. Mutations that remove regulatory domains

TABLE 75-2
Summary of Some Important Oncogenes and Their Protein Products†

Oncogene	Protein Product	Function
1. erbB*	EGF receptor	Binds to EGF; dimerizes; activates tyrosine kinases in signal transduction. Works through ras.
2. erbB-2*	GF receptor	Very similar to EGF receptor. Works through ras.
3. sis*	β-chain of PDGF	Growth factor receptor. May work through ras.
4. src	Tyrosine kinase	Transduces signal through ras.
5. ras*	p21 proteins; H-, K-, and N-forms	G-proteins; bind to cell membrane and transduce signals through second messengers and Raf, GAP (?), JNK, PKC, and PLC.
6. rap-1A	Anti-ras oncogene; in ras family	Blocks ras action in cells.
7. raf*	74-kDa protein	Phosphorylates MAP kinase kinase (MEK), which then phosphorylates MAP kinase.
8. erk-1 and erk-2*	MAP kinase family 43-kDa proteins	Involved in cytoskeletal rearrangements and nuclear signaling.
9. myc*	62/64-kDa nuclear protein	Turns on transcription factors involved in replication.
10. jun	Nuclear protein	Forms complex with fos.
11. fos	Nuclear protein	Forms complex with jun. fos–jun complex activates transcription factors.
12. p53*	53-kDa nuclear antioncogene protein	Forms tetramers, then binds DNA segments to block transcription and replication.
13. NMP22*	236-kDa nuclear matrix protein	Involved in mitotic spindle formation.

EGF, Epidermal growth factor; *GAP*, GTPase-activating protein; *GF*, growth factor; *MAP* kinase, mitogen-activated protein kinase; *NMP22*, nuclear matrix protein 22; *PKC*, protein kinase C; *PLC*, phospholipase C. The names of the oncogenes are commonly used and relate to the sources from which they were originally discovered. For example, *ras* is an abbreviation for rat sarcoma viral oncogene.
*Oncogene-encoded proteins for which assays have been performed on human serum. Serum assay kits are commercially available.
†Only a few of the many (more than 50) oncogenes are listed in this table. The ones that are listed here encode proteins for which assays have been developed or are closely related to these proteins. No growth factors except PDGF are included in this table.

division of Berlex; and Matritech (Newton, Mass.), now a member of Inverness Medical Innovations, Inc. A number of studies also employ the technique of western blotting or immunoblotting, as described elsewhere in this book.

Numerous studies have documented alterations in oncogene, oncoprotein, or growth factor expression in terms of messenger RNA (mRNA) or protein in tumor tissue compared with normal tissue (Pimentel, 1989; Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Pincus & Friedman, 2003). Several studies have examined oncoprotein or growth factor expression in biologic fluids such as urine or effusions and demonstrated the feasibility of using these peptides and proteins as markers for the presence of neoplasia (Niman et al, 1985; Yeh & Yeh, 1989). Succeeding studies have confirmed these initial findings, resulting in the clinical use of these markers to detect the presence of neoplasia.

Recent studies have now revealed that oncogenes themselves can be detected in the body fluids of patients with different types of cancer. With the advent of microarray techniques for both gene expression and protein detection (see Chapter 67), it is now possible to assay for the presence of multiple oncogenes and oncoproteins in the body fluids, especially serum, of cancer patients. A new, parallel approach for cancer screening has been developed, called *proteomics*, in which serum samples are subjected to mass spectroscopy and pattern analysis to detect the patterns of expression of proteins that are unique to the blood of cancer patients. This type of analysis has recently resulted in the identification of not only oncoproteins but also other proteins that are expressed at abnormally elevated or abnormally low levels in specific types of cancer. In fact, these techniques are being applied to other body-derived fluids to find similar oncoproteins. For example, research on urine biomarkers for breast cancer remains investigational but promising (Beretov et al, 2014).

This chapter focuses on the identification of different oncoproteins and growth factors, as well as their respective genes, in the serum, plasma, or urine in patients with cancer or who are at risk for the development of cancer. It also focuses on expression of other proteins that occur at abnormally elevated or low levels in specific types of cancer. Table 75-2 summarizes some of the many (>50) known oncogenes and their functions in the cell. Those for which commercial serum assays are available are labeled with an asterisk.

GROWTH FACTORS

Because various growth factors are believed to play a role in influencing cellular proliferation during tumorigenesis and because growth factors are actively secreted into the extracellular environment, they are attractive targets for detection in blood during cancer development. Several studies have demonstrated differences in blood levels of growth factors in cancer patients and noncancer controls.

Transforming Growth Factors α and β

TGF-α is a polypeptide with 50 amino acids that binds to the EGF receptor, which dimerizes upon binding to TGF-α or to EGF. TGF-β is a family of proteins labeled β_1 to β_5. TGF-β_1 is a homodimer of two 12-kDa subunits linked together by disulfide bonds. Even though TGF-β has been found to be elaborated by many different types of human malignant tumors, elevated serum levels of this growth factor have been found predominantly in cancers of the liver (Jeng et al, 2014) and bladder (see later). Interestingly, TGF-β has been found to inhibit mitosis in specific cell lines in culture, such as mink bronchial epithelial cells. It is not clear how TGF-β is triggered to act as a tumor suppressor versus tumor promotor. The pathway for tumor promotion has been somewhat elucidated. TGF-β binds to the inhibitor of DNA binding 1 (ID1), a transcriptional regulator resulting in decreased levels of E-cadherin (Pickup et al, 2013), thereby diminishing the number of tight junctions between cells and causing loss of contact inhibition. This growth factor also has been implicated in the interconversions of epithelial cells into mesenchymal cells and vice versa. These interconversions (called EMT, or epithelial cell to mesenchymal cell transformation, and MET, the reverse process) are thought to be steps involved in tumorigenesis (Polyak & Weinberg, 2009).

TGF-β activity, which is determined using this technique, has been found to be markedly elevated in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma

(HCC) but not in age-matched controls (Shirai et al, 1992). In the sera of patients who have undergone surgical resection of these tumors, the activity of TGF-β is barely detectable, suggesting that the tumor was the source of the elevated levels of growth factor in serum. Interestingly, in many patients with HCC, TGF-β has been found to be elevated in urine (Tsai et al, 1997). In this regard, in a study on the development of HCC in patients with hepatitis C (see Chapter 21), TGF-β_1 was found to be elevated in the sera of patients with hepatitis C and hepatitis C–induced fibrosis and cirrhosis but was not elevated in the sera of patients in whom HCC subsequently developed, resulting from the antecedent disease. Thus TGF-β_1 may be an early marker for HCC, but lower levels may be required for progression of disease (Ali et al, 2004). However, in other studies, TGF-β_1 was found to be elevated in small (<3 cm) HCC far more frequently than α-fetoprotein (AFP), the classic marker for HCC (see Chapter 73; Song et al, 2002). Using a cutoff of 800 pg/mL for TGF-β_1 and 200 pg/mL for AFP, where the specificities of both markers were 95% (i.e., few false-positive results), the sensitivity of TGF-β_1 was 68% versus only 24% for AFP. Thus TGF-β_1 may be a reliable marker for small HCC. The same conclusion has been reached in a study of HCC in which the sera of 23% of patients with this disease were positive for TGF-β_1 but not for AFP (Sacco et al, 2000).

TGF-β_1 has also been found to be elevated in metastatic prostate cancer (Adler et al, 1999). Levels of TGF-β have also been associated with extraprostatic extension of the tumor. Serum levels TGF-β together with levels of interleukin-6 soluble receptor (IL-6) can be used to predict progression of the disease after surgery (Kattan et al, 2003).

Use of an ELISA with a monoclonal antibody directed against TGF-β_2 has revealed that TGF-β_2 is elevated in a high proportion of patients with invasive bladder cancer but not in patients with noninvasive bladder cancers or in cancer-free patients (Klocker et al, 1994; Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Pincus & Friedman, 2003). Recently, a new tumor marker for bladder cancer that appears to be more accurate in diagnosing both noninvasive and invasive bladder cancer is the nuclear matrix protein NMP22, detected in urine.

Thus serum assays for TGF-β are highly useful in diagnosing and following HCC. They are less useful in the diagnosis of carcinoma of the bladder, although for invasive bladder cancer this growth factor has high sensitivity and specificity.

TGF-α has been found to be elevated in a large number of patients with epithelial cell tumors (Katoh et al, 1990; Chakrabarty et al, 1994), predominantly breast (almost 100%), lung, stomach, colon, liver, and ovarian. It has been found to be elevated frequently in the sera of patients with gastric carcinoma (Choi et al, 1999). In contrast, normal individuals have very low serum levels. With respect to liver, TGF-α has been found to be elevated in the sera of patients with HCC but not in patients with cirrhosis. The elevated levels were reduced in patients who had been treated for HCC (Tomiya & Fujiwara, 1996).

Recent studies confirm that TGF-α is an effective predictor of the occurrence of malignancies at an early stage. For example, in 36 patients who had a history of asbestosis and subsequently developed a cancer, mainly adenocarcinoma or squamous cell carcinoma of the lung, more than one-third were found to be seropositive for TGF-α. Blood samples from all of these patients were collected and then banked at the time of the diagnosis of asbestosis and before the diagnosis of malignancy. Significantly, all but one of these seropositive patients were found to have elevated TGF-α levels in their banked blood (Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998).

TGF-α thus appears to be an excellent marker for the presence of malignancy. Unlike the case for TGF-β, these elevations are not tumor-specific. Nonetheless, it is clear that TGF-α is extremely useful in screening patients for the presence of malignant solid tissue tumors.

Platelet-Derived Growth Factor

Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), a protein of molecular mass 28 kDa, exists as a dimer of A and B chains, as the A–A, A–B, or B–B dimer forms. Either chain can be glycosylated, increasing the molecular mass to 30 kDa. This growth factor, originally isolated from platelets, binds to a transmembrane growth factor receptor. The B chain is encoded by the sis oncogene. It has been found to be a potent mitogen in lymphoid, myeloid, and fibroblastic cell lines. Overexpression of PDGF has been found in both lung and pleural tumors. It has also been examined in the blood of cancer patients. Overall, this growth factor has been found to be significantly elevated in more than 15% of patients with carcinomas, sarcomas, and lymphomas but not at all in normal individuals. In patients with breast cancer, there is an excellent correlation between the stage of the cancer and the serum level of the growth factor (Ariad et al, 1991). Higher levels predict shorter survivals. In addition, PDGF-B (Sis) in breast tissue appears to correlate with increased cellular proliferation as its expression increases with both nonmalignant and malignant states and decreases after menopause. In malignancy, PDGF-B does not correlate with p53 expression, estrogen/progesterone status, or tumor grade (Coltrera et al, 1995). Levels of PDGF-A and PDGF-B were found to be elevated highest in ovarian cancer patients compared to normal, benign, and borderline patients (Madsen et al, 2012). The role of PDGF-B as a marker in colorectal cancer is less clear (Lindmark et al, 1993). Serum PDGF-A levels in patients with cholangiocarcinoma were 1.4-fold higher than in normal controls ($p = 0.014$) (Boonjaraspinyo et al, 2012).

PDGF-receptor A (PDGFRA) mutations have also been implicated in the pathogenesis of gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Most recent genetic analysis reveals that exon 18 is the commonest site of these mutations, although exon 12 can be involved as well (Ahmad et al, 2015).

As discussed later, both oncoproteins and antibodies to oncoproteins can be elevated in the sera of patients with cancer. Anti-PDGF antibody (PDGF-Ab) in serum has been found to be potentially diagnostic for pleural mesothelioma in patients with histories of exposure to asbestos. The serum levels of PDGF-Ab correlate positively with severity of the disease and show a significant negative correlation with survival—that is, higher levels correlate with shorter survival times (Filiberti et al, 2005).

Basic Fibroblast Growth Factor

Basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) is a protein containing 155 amino acids. It is a growth factor for mesenchymal cells but has also been found to have relatively high concentrations in the central nervous system (CNS). Interestingly, bFGF has been found to be present in high concentrations in the sera of patients with epithelial cell tumors. Prominent among these tumors is renal cell carcinoma. More than 50% of patients with this disease have markedly elevated serum levels of bFGF (Fujimoto et al, 1991; Ii et al, 1993), as determined either by ELISA or by enhanced chemiluminescent assays. This growth factor is also elevated in the sera of more than 50% of patients with CNS tumors, 90% of patients with lung cancers (Ii et al, 1993), and more than 60% of patients with lymphomas (Kurobe et al, 1993). It is not elevated, however, in the sera of large populations of normal (control) individuals.

In colorectal cancer patients with tumors 30 mm or smaller, serum bFGF levels were 7.65 ± 1.11 pg/mL, whereas those with tumors greater than 30 mm had bFGF levels of 8.53 ± 3.22 pg/mL. Although these are small differences, it has been found that serum bFGF levels could be used to predict tumor size in colorectal cancer (Jibiki et al, 2014).

Elevated serum levels of bFGF have been found to be a good prognostic factor in patients with non–small cell carcinomas of the lung (Brattstrom et al, 1998). Thus TGF-α and TGF-β, PDGF, and bFGF all appear to be elevated in the sera of a significant number of patients with epithelial cell tumors but are not completely tumor specific. TGF-α has some specificity for breast cancer, and TGF-β for HCC. bFGF is elevated in a variety of malignancies, including nonepithelial cell tumors, such as CNS tumors and lymphomas. PDGF shows little specificity for tumor type, but high levels in serum indicate the presence of malignancy.

Given the development of protein/antibody and gene arrays, it is possible to assay the sera and other body fluids of cohorts of patients who are at risk for developing cancer due to such factors as occupational exposure for multiple oncogene proteins concurrently. Discovery of the elevation of and/or the presence of oncogenic mutations in one or more of these proteins in a patient's serum or other body fluid identifies the patient as either having a cancer or developing one in the near future. Recently, serial levels of both TGF-β and PDGF were determined by ELISA (see Chapter 44) on a cohort of workers with long-term exposure to asbestos. PDGF, but not TGF-β, was found to predict both the development of non–small cell carcinoma of the lung and (1) the radiographically determined severity of the disease and (2) the levels of PDGF correlating with severity of cancer and with fibrosis of the lung, which may be a predisposing factor (Li et al, 2009). These studies parallel the results of other studies, such as the study with TGF-α described earlier, in which the sera of patients with occupational and/or environmental risks have been found to be positive for one or more oncogene proteins prior to appearance of a cancer.

Epidermal Growth Factor and Hepatocyte Growth Factor

EGF has been found to be elevated in the serum of some patients with stomach cancer (Pawlikowski et al, 1989) and cancer of the tongue (Bhatavdekar et al, 1993) but unchanged or decreased in other cancers (Nedvidkova et al, 1992). Elevated serum levels of hepatocyte growth factor have been reported in HCC. However, this growth factor appears to be

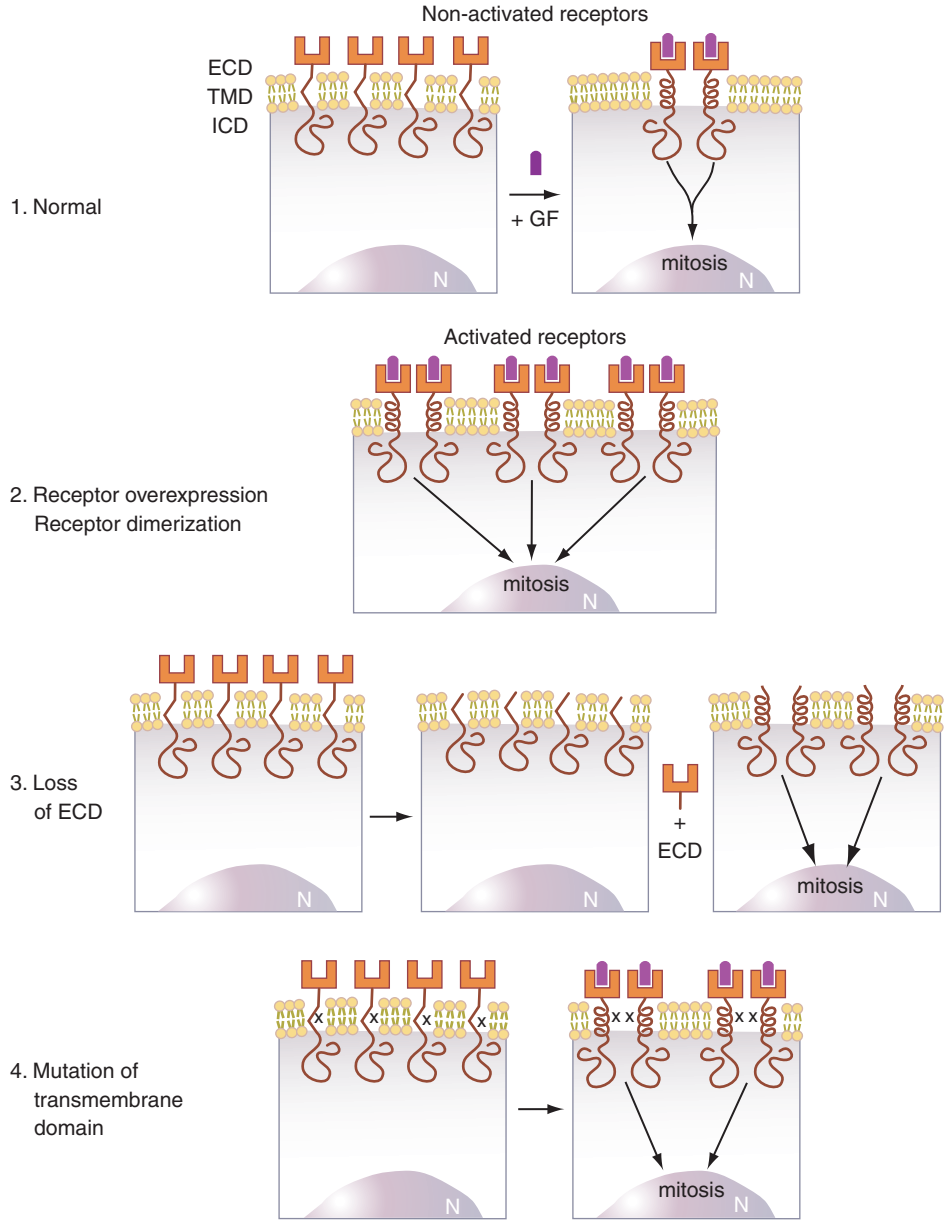


Figure 75-2 Mechanisms for continuous mitogenic signaling by growth factor receptors. Scheme 1 shows that these receptors have three domains: an extracellular, growth factor-binding domain (ECD); a transmembrane domain (TMD); and an intracytoplasmic domain (ICD). A growth factor, GF, binds to the receptor, causing it to dimerize, setting in motion a cascade of intracellular events that are transduced to the nucleus (N) described in Figure 75-1. There are three known ways in which continuous cell signaling by the growth factor receptor can occur, resulting in malignant transformation of cells. Scheme 2 depicts the first of these: overexpression of the receptor that results in many activation processes and continuous signaling to the nucleus. Scheme 3 shows the second mechanism wherein the ECD is either absent or cleaved off by intracellular proteases, leading to spontaneous dimerization. Scheme 4 shows the third mechanism, in which a mutation in the growth factor receptor gene results in an amino acid substitution (X in the figure) in the transmembrane domain leading to formation of α helices that associate (Brandt-Rauf et al, 1990), resulting in spontaneous dimerization that can occur in the absence or presence of the ligand.

unique in that elevated levels also occur in nonmalignant liver diseases (Hioki et al, 1993), diminishing its utility as a tumor marker.

GROWTH FACTOR RECEPTORS

Normally, growth factors bind to their growth factor receptors, generally inducing the receptors to dimerize, an event that activates the receptor. At the growth factor receptor level, there are several mechanisms by which uncontrolled mitogenesis may be initiated. These are summarized in Figure 75-2. For both the EGF receptor and the *neu* (HER)–encoded p185 growth factor receptor protein, strongly associated with breast cancer (Slamon et al, 1989; Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Pincus & Friedman, 2003), receptor dimerization results in activation of tyrosine kinases involved in the phosphorylation of proteins that initiate the transduction of the mitogenic signal to the nucleus. Three pathologic mechanisms can cause abnormally prolonged receptor dimerization that results in continuous mitogenic signaling. These are loss of the extracellular binding domain (ECD), mutations in the transmembrane domain that promote dimerization (Brandt-Rauf et al, 1990; Pincus & Friedman, 2003), and overexpression of the receptor.

Transmembrane growth factor receptors encoded by the erbB family of oncogenes (i.e., erbB, which encodes the EGF receptor, also called EGFr, and HER2/*neu* [erbB-2]) are particularly attractive targets for detection in blood during cancer development because it has been found that in human cancers induced by these receptors the mechanism appears to be proteolysis of the extracellular receptor-binding domain (see Fig. 75-2, third illustration). The liberated extracellular domains, termed *ECD*, then enter the circulation and can be readily detected in serum using conventional immunoassay techniques (Brandt-Rauf et al, 1994a, 1994b; Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Pincus & Friedman, 2003).

Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor

Overexpression of and/or oncogenic amino acid substitutions in the amino acid sequence of EGFr and in the closely related HER2/*neu* receptor are the primary causes of a large number of human epithelial cell tumors. These include colon, breast, lung, and ovarian cancers (Baron et al, 2009). This observation has been extended to CNS tumors, in particular, glioblastoma multiforme (Quaranta et al, 2007). As discussed earlier, serum EGFr is not only important for diagnostic purposes but also suggests a therapeutic strategy—that is, administration of EGFr inhibitors, the efficacy of which can be monitored by assaying for serum EGFr.

A particularly important use of serum EGFr is in following patients with known histories of exposure to environmental agents known to cause specific tumors. Elevations of circulating levels of the ECD of this growth factor receptor have been studied in patients with asbestosis (Brandt-Rauf et al, 1992), which is known to predispose to malignancies. It has been found that patients with ECD serum levels of 636 fmol/mL or higher either have an asbestos-associated malignancy (carcinoma of the lung or mesothelioma) or subsequently develop such a malignancy. Large numbers of normal individuals have been found to have much lower serum ECD levels. Thus EGFr appears to be an excellent marker for asbestos-induced tumors. These results are also of interest because they suggest that the primary effect of asbestos as a carcinogen is to cause mutations in the EGFr gene (Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998).

As discussed, many colon cancers are treated with EGFr inhibitors. An important indication of efficacy of treatment is to measure circulating levels of EGFr. It was recently found that baseline levels of serum EGFr were strong predictors of outcome, higher values predicting better responses to treatment with EGFr inhibitors than lower values (Zampino et al, 2008).

Of considerable interest is the recent finding that serum levels of EGFr can detect the presence of prostate cancer (Milanese et al, 2009). Use of EGFr in detection of prostate cancer was motivated by the finding that overexpression of EGFr or critical amino acid substitutions in the amino acid sequence of prostate EGFr are strongly associated with prostate cancer. It was found that, using a cutoff value of 67.9 ng/mL for serum EGFr, the sensitivity and specificity of serum EGFr was 93.3% and 98%, respectively. In this study it was further found that the best serodiagnostic marker for spread of prostate cancer beyond the prostate (e.g., into the seminal vesicle) was urokinase-type plasminogen activator receptor. These results suggest that both biomarkers may offer a new approach to diagnosis and monitoring of prostate cancer.

HER2/*neu* Receptor

This protein is discussed in Chapter 73 as a marker for breast cancer and a number of other cancers. Here we consider its potential as a marker for different stages of this cancer and for other human epithelial neoplasms. Current American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) guidelines recommend evaluating HER2/*neu* status of all primary tumors, primarily to guide therapy if trastuzumab is a suitable agent (Harris et al, 2007). Because of the documented strong association between breast cancer and mutations in the HER2/*neu* gene, many studies have examined the p185 erbB2 ECD in the blood of cancer patients, particularly breast cancer. In prior studies on *neu* oncogene-induced overexpression of the p185 protein (Slamon et al, 1989), it was found that the level of expression of the *neu* oncogene in breast cancer biopsy tissue correlated with the extent of the tumor and was the best prognostic indicator of survival rates, exceeding even the extent of lymph node involvement as a prognostic indicator.

Results on quantitation of p185 ECD in the serum of patients with breast cancer parallel those of the prior genetic results. Between 25% and 50% of patients with stage III or IV breast cancer have been found to have markedly elevated levels of p185 ECD in their sera (40- to 190-fold higher than in the sera of normal control individuals) (Mori et al, 1990; Carney et al, 1991; Kath et al, 1993). For patients from whom tumor biopsy material is available, there is an excellent correlation between serum ECD levels and tissue level of expression (Breuer, 1993, 1994; Ludovini et al, 2008). There is also an excellent correlation between levels of serum ECD and recurrent disease (Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998).

ECD levels in serum have also been found to be an excellent prognostic indicator for breast cancer (Molina et al, 1996). Recently, in a study of patients with stage I to III breast cancer, it was found that presurgical serum ECD level was an independent prognosticator of disease-free survival in early breast cancer (Ludovini et al, 2008). This is an important finding because it identifies patients with early breast cancer with complete apparent surgical removal who are at significant risk for recurrence. In a recent study, ECD levels were elevated in the sera of 44% of HER2-positive and, perhaps more important, in 15.8% of HER2-negative breast cancer patients who developed recurrence, suggesting that HER2 status may change with disease progression (Kim et al, 2014).

Because serum levels of p185 ECD correlate with tumor load and stage, detection of incipient breast cancer using serum levels of p185 ECD is less effective for these patients. Overall, the rate of detection of stages I and II breast cancers using serum levels of ECD, based on conventional ELISA techniques, ranges from 10% to 15%. However, use of a sensitive ELISA assay for p185 ECD in breast cancer patients resulted in discovery of carcinoma in situ in 43% of patients with this disease (Breuer et al, 1993). This latter result indicates that the use of more sensitive assays for p185 ECD identifies a significant increase in the number of patients with carcinoma in situ (i.e., at an early stage of development).

*HER2/*neu *Detects Pulmonary Neoplasms*

p185 ECD is also elevated in a high percentage of patients with pulmonary cancers. HER2 expression has been detected in about a quarter of specimens of non-small cell lung cancers (NSCLC) (Bellezza et al, 2013). More tellingly, a recent meta-analysis of 40 studies comprising over 6000 patients revealed that HER2 overexpression was associated with a poor prognosis in patients with lung cancer (Liu et al, 2011).

Elevated serum levels of EGFr in early tumor detection have been employed to screen patients with known predisposition, such as pneumoconioses, for developing these cancers. In 70% of patients with pneumoconioses, elevated serum p185 ECD levels have been found prior to the onset of frank malignancy. In almost 100% of patients with this predisposing factor who have cancer of the lung, serum p185 ECD is markedly elevated (Brandt-Rauf et al, 1994a). Clearly, this protein is a highly sensitive marker for pulmonary cancers. In contrast, no elevations of p185 ECD have been found in the sera of large numbers of normal individuals (Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Pincus & Friedman, 2003).

*HER2/*neu *in the Detection of Hepatocellular Carcinomas*

It was noted previously that TGF-β is a good marker for HCC. There are now strong indications that p185 ECD is also a sensitive marker for this disease. Serum p185 ECD has been found to be elevated in almost 100% of East Asian people who have known risk factors for developing this disease (Luo et al, 1993; Yu, 1994a, 1994b). However, tissue expression of c-erbB-2 in biopsies derived from patients with HCC and adenoma showed neither overexpression nor amplification by FISH or immunohistochemistry (Vlasoff et al, 2002). Furthermore, no such elevations have been observed in normal individuals of similar age and race or in those with exposure to risk factors for this disease but who did not subsequently develop cancer.

By looking at a subset of HCC patients, however, HER2/*neu* IHC may be more instructive. It has been observed that HER2/*neu* upregulation in response to hepatitis B infection, specifically the hepatitis B x antigen (HBxAg), is an important mediator of hepatocyte proliferation and ultimately of malignant transformation to hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatitis B patients with liver specimens that stain strongly for HER2/*neu* develop HCC and have poorer survival. HER2/*neu* may be a sentinel of malignant transformation in this subset of patients (Liu et al, 2009).

p185erbB-2 ECD in Other Tumors

Elevated serum erbB-2 ECD levels have now been found to occur in patients with colorectal, pancreatic, prostatic, hepatic, and ovarian cancers (Wu et al, 1993) at lower frequencies of detection (15% to 20%) and were also found to be significantly higher in patients with nasopharyngeal carcinoma (Yazici et al, 2001). Excellent correlations between serum levels and tissue levels have been found in many of these cases. Serum p185erbB-2 ECD levels correlate well with the stage of oral cavity squamous cell carcinoma, as well as the response to therapy (Chen et al, 2004). These levels do not correlate with tumor size, nodal status, or metastases. There is a direct correlation between serum levels of p185 ECD and tumor size for premalignant adenomas of the colon (Brandt-Rauf et al, 1994b). Because colonic neoplasia usually progresses through well-defined steps from adenoma to carcinoma with the malignant potential of adenomas increasing with size, serum erbB-2 ECD levels may be useful in monitoring this progression. Gene amplification and protein overexpression of c-erbB-2 were also found in adenocarcinoma derived from Barrett esophagus (Geddert et al, 2002). In addition, pretreatment serum ECD has been found to be a reliable prognosticator of recurrence of metastatic prostate cancer and significantly more reliable than tissue p185 (Tambo et al, 2009).

E-Cadherin

E-cadherin, a cell-adhesion transmembrane protein, has been found to be responsible for mesenchymal-to-epithelial transitions (METs) and epithelial-to-mesenchymal transitions (EMTs), activities that stabilize tumors in their local environment. One of the major proteins involved in this interconversion is β-catenin that is transported across the nuclear membrane and stabilizes transcription of mRNA that encodes EMT-promoting factors. However, E-cadherin binds to β-catenin, inhibiting its ability to enter the nucleus. Downregulation of E-cadherin results in decreased binding of β-catenin, allowing increased entry of β-catenin to the nucleus, where it activates EMT. Less certain is the mechanism of METs, likely due to upregulation of E-cadherin and binding of β-catenin, reducing EMT (Polyak & Weinberg, 2009).Thus E-cadherin is a negative regulator of EMT and cell transformation.

However, E-cadherin is cleaved intracellularly to so-called soluble E-cadherin or sE-cad that is released from cells. This form of E-cadherin has been found to break cell-cell junctions in murine mammary tumor cells, suggesting that sE-cad reduces contact inhibition of cell growth that can lead to uncontrolled proliferation. sE-cad has been detected in the serum of cancer patients

Elevated levels of sE-cad have been detected in bladder, colorectal, NSCCL, ovarian, prostate, skin, esophageal, gastric, and hepatocellular cancers (Katayama et al, 1994; Grabowska & Day, 2012). The appearance of these cell adhesion molecules in blood circulation can indicate more than the mere presence of neoplasm and can be seen as a marker of metastases or poor prognosis. Indeed, elevated levels of sE-cad have been shown to be valid prognostic markers for gastric cancer and correlated well with late-stage colorectal cancer (Chan, 2006; Weiss et al, 2011). Most recently, it was found useful as a marker of preoperative chemotherapy response for breast cancer (Hofmann et al, 2013). In this study, levels of sE-cad were significantly reduced in patients with pathological complete response (pCR) compared to those without pCR, and the decreases in the sE-cad levels were significantly different between these two groups. This may have great potential in identifying patients with breast cancer. The caveat to using this marker is that it is also found to be elevated in diseases causing inflammatory states, such as diabetes and HIV (Katayama et al, 1994; Grabowska & Day, 2012).

Metalloproteases in Pancreatic Cancer

Matrix metalloproteases (MMPs) constitute a class of many enzymes responsible for cleavage of the ECD of E-cadherin (Grabowska & Day, 2012). Their levels in serum have also been shown to be upregulated in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) patients' sera, specifically MMP-1, -3, -7, -9, -10, and -12, compared to normal control patients' sera. MMP-7 and -12 had specificities and sensitivities greater than 90%. MMP-2, however, was significantly downregulated in PDAC patients' sera (Kahlert et al, 2014). Another useful test is urinary MMP-2 (uMMP-2) and urinary tissue inhibitor of metalloprotease (TIMP-1). These markers were elevated to significantly higher levels in the urine of patients with pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors (pNETs) and PDACs than in the urine of normal controls (Roy et al, 2014).

G-PROTEINS

ras-p21 Protein

As for growth factor receptors, signaling proteins that occur downstream of the growth factor receptors become oncogenic primarily from overexpression and amino acid substitutions at critical positions in their polypeptide chains. Less commonly, for some proteins, like Raf (see Fig. 75-1 and Table 75-2), loss of regulatory domains may also lead to oncogenesis. Amino acid substitutions in signal transducing proteins cause these proteins to undergo conformational changes that result in their becoming permanently activated to stimulate cell division (Pincus et al, 1992; 2000; 2007; Pincus, 2004).

This mechanism has been well documented for the ras-oncogene-encoded p21 protein, for which substitutions of most amino acids for glycine 12 or glutamine 61 result in an oncogenic protein. Many p21 proteins with such substitutions have been cloned and directly microinjected into normal cells in culture such as NIH 3T3 cells (Barbacid, 1987). The cells undergo malignant transformation that lasts until the added mutant protein is metabolized and cleared from the cells. Oncogenic mutant forms of the ras gene and of its encoded p21 protein have been found in approximately one of three common human epithelial cell tumors, in more than 90% of human pancreatic tumors, and 75% of human colon cancers (Forester et al, 1987; Almoguera et al, 1988).

One of the consequences of amino acid substitutions in p21 and presumably in other signal transducing proteins is the abnormal activation of alternate, unregulated signal transduction pathways. Oncogenic ras-p21 protein (p21 in Fig. 75-1) has been found to interact directly with Jun, the nuclear transcription factor, and its activating kinase, Jun kinase (JNK). This binding process results in the direct activation of these nuclear transcription-inducing proteins, thereby bypassing the normal cellular controls. This bypass or short-circuit pathway is shown on the right side of Figure 75-1 for p21 (Adler et al, 1995; Amar et al, 1997; Pincus et al, 2007). In addition, oncogenic ras-p21 protein requires activation of protein kinase C as a downstream event on its signal transduction pathway (Pincus et al, 1992), as illustrated in Figure 75-1.

As noted previously, the ras-oncogene-encoded p21 proteins are 21-kDa membrane-associated G proteins that have been implicated in the growth signal transduction process from the cell membrane to cytoplasmic kinases. Qualitative (i.e., point mutations) and quantitative (i.e., overexpression) changes in p21 have been identified as contributing to human carcinogenesis (Barbacid, 1987). By undefined mechanisms, p21 proteins gain access to the extracellular environment. Thus increased amounts of p21 or point-mutated forms of p21 can be detected by immunoblotting with monoclonal antibodies in the supernatant of cells in culture known to overexpress p21 or to express mutant p21, respectively (Brandt-Rauf, 1991; Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Pincus & Friedman, 2003).

Similarly, mice with tumors that overexpress p21 or express mutant p21 are found by immunoblotting to have increased amounts of p21 or mutant forms of p21 in their serum, respectively (Hamer et al, 1991). These results suggest that the detection of increased p21 or mutant p21 in blood is possible in humans.

Because of its central role in mitogenic signal transduction, overexpressed and/or mutated p21 protein might be expected to be present in a wide variety of human tumors. Indeed, elevated serum p21 has been identified in the serum of up to 68% of patients with many different cancers, including breast, prostate, colon, lung, and liver cancer. On the other hand, only a small percentage of normal individuals have been found to have detectable serum levels (Weissfeld et al, 1994). A high incidence of the occurrence of the oncogenic form of the K-ras gene has been found in human pancreatic and colonic cancers. New assays based on reverse-transcriptase (RT)-PCR have detected the ras oncogene in the stool of a high percentage of patients with colonic cancer (Pincus, 2004).

ras-p21 in Lung and Colon Cancer

Similarly encouraging results have been obtained using the sputum of patients with lung cancer. Parallel results have now been obtained using the ELISA for the p21 protein using the serum of patients with lung and colonic carcinoma. Elevated levels (five times more than controls) of serum ras-p21 have been found in up to 83% of lung cancer patients, whereas only low levels were found in the sera of normal individuals (Brandt-Rauf, 1991; Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998). A recent meta-analysis of 41 trials comprising nearly 7000 patients found that K-RAS mutations were associated with poorer outcomes in patients with NSCLC (Meng et al, 2013).

In addition, studies have been carried out in which PCR for K-ras mutant genes with base changes at codons 12 and 13 has been performed concurrently on tumor tissue and serum from patients with different stages of colorectal cancer (De Kok et al, 1997). Changes at codon 13, in particular, had a significant negative impact on Dukes classification, lymph node status, and high S-phase fraction (Bazan et al, 2002). In more than 90% of the patients with specific mutant ras genes found in tumor tissue, the same mutated ras gene was discovered in their sera, regardless of the stage of the tumor.

In the previous discussion of the HER2/*neu*-oncogene-encoded p185 protein, it was noted that elevations of the serum levels of this protein were found in patients with pneumoconioses who then progressed to develop frank malignancies. A parallel study has been performed on patients with pneumoconioses in which assays were carried out for ras-p21 in their sera. For patients with this predisposing condition, 39% were found by western blotting to have elevated serum levels of the ras-p21 protein. Almost all of these patients developed a malignant lung tumor subsequent to the observed elevations of the p21 protein. Thus, like p185 ECD, elevated serum p21 is a biomarker of early malignant disease in patients with a known predisposition. An obvious study that is yet to be performed is to assay the sera of these patients for both HER2/*neu* and ras-p21 to increase the sensitivity of the assays.

The aforementioned studies are concerned with detecting elevated serum levels of p21 in serum as an indicator of malignancy. As noted previously, a major mechanism for oncogenesis induced by the ras-p21 protein is amino acid substitutions in its sequence that result in its permanent

activation. Identification of mutant ras genes by PCR and direct sequencing of DNA isolated from the serum or plasma of three patients with pancreatic cancer has been described (Sorenson et al, 1994), but, until recently, the direct detection of mutant p21 protein had not been reported in human blood (De Kok et al, 1997). Now, however, oncogenic amino acid substitutions in the p21 protein can be identified through the use of monoclonal antibodies that recognize specific oncogenic amino acid substitutions, including at positions 12, 13, 59, and 61. Use of these antibodies on the sera of patients with known risk factors for cancer appears to offer much promise for early tumor detection.

ras-p21 in Angiosarcoma

Mutated p21 has been found in the serum of patients with a known history of exposure to the carcinogen, vinyl chloride. This chemical has been shown to predispose individuals to developing angiosarcomas (Brandt-Rauf & Pincus, 1998; Brandt-Rauf et al, 2012). Tissue studies of these angiosarcomas reveal that a mutant ras gene that codes for aspartic acid in place of the normally occurring glycine at position 13 in the polypeptide chain is present in the tumor cells. A monoclonal antibody that recognizes the Asp13 form of the p21 protein has been obtained (Oncogene Science/Siemens). This mutant p21 protein has been identified in the sera of 80% of patients with vinyl chloride–induced angiosarcoma of the liver but not in normal individuals (DeVivo et al, 1994). There is a direct correlation, moreover, between the degree of exposure of patients to vinyl chloride and the probability of discovering the oncogenic form of the protein in their sera.

ras-p21 in Pancreatic Cancer

There has been a well-defined association of oncogenic k-ras-p21 with pancreatic cancer. K-ras mutations are present in 90% of all pancreatic adenocarcinomas (Almoguera et al, 1988) and are also found frequently in early precursor lesions, even in low-grade pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PanIN 1A) lesions (Morris et al, 2010; Kanda et al, 2012). Studies have focused on employing assays for the ras oncogene itself in the sera of patients with this disease. A recent study on patients with pancreatic cancer and a control group of patients with pancreatitis used RT-PCR to detect mutant ras DNA in the sera of these patients in combination with a serum assay for CA 19-9, a marker for pancreatic cancer, as discussed in Chapter 73 (Däbritz et al, 2009). Using DNA amplification techniques to detect oncogenes in serum is discussed later. In this study, no patients with pancreatitis were found to have oncogenic ras genes in their sera, whereas 36% of patients with pancreatic cancer were found to have detectable serum levels of this oncogene. Overall, using both markers, 91% of the patients with pancreatic cancer were found to have either elevated levels of CA 19-9 or oncogenic ras-p21 or both. Of these, 35% were found to have detectable oncogenic ras but nonelevated or only moderately elevated CA 19-9. Using restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP)-PCR on serum samples from patients with pancreatic cancer before and after chemoradiation therapy (CRT), it was found that in patients whose post-CRT sera were negative for oncogenic ras had significantly more favorable survivals (Olsen et al, 2009).

CYTOSOLIC MITOGENIC KINASES

Raf

As shown in Figure 75-1 and Table 75-2, Raf is a 74-kDa protein that is a critical target of ras-p21. It directly activates MEK, which in turn activates MAPK (ERK) (see Fig. 75-1 and Table 75-2). It is involved in cell growth, proliferation, apoptosis, and differentiation. There are several different isoforms of Raf, such as Raf A and Raf B, which may differ in their exact cellular functions. More than 30 mutations of the B-raf gene associated with human cancers have been identified (Wan et al, 2004). Western blot analysis showed that activated Raf was overexpressed in tissues obtained from cirrhosis and HCC patients (91.2% and 100%, respectively) (Hwang et al, 2004). B-raf mutations have also been found in colon cancer, although less frequently than K-ras (Monstein et al, 2004). However, Raf is found minimally to not at all in tissues from patients with bladder or endometrial carcinoma (Mutch et al, 2004; Stoehr et al, 2004). In contrast, mutant Raf (V600E) has been found to occur frequently in melanomas, although the same mutant Raf has also been found in a majority of benign nevi (Wellbrock et al, 2004). Ninety percent of the mutations result in substitution of glutamic acid for the normally occurring valine at position 600. Antibodies to B-raf V600E have been used in the diagnosis of some hematological malignancies, particularly hairy cell leukemia. IHC with this mutation-specific antibody has a sensitivity and specificity of 88% and 97%, respectively (Uppal et al, 2015). These results suggest that this antibody may be useful in detecting the mutant Raf protein in serum. Because Raf is immediately downstream of ras-p21 on the ras signal transduction pathway (see Fig. 75-1), oncogenic mutations in Raf might also be expected to diminish the efficacy of anti-EGFr agents in cancers, especially colorectal cancers. This has been found to be the case for metastatic colon cancer (Di Nicolantonio et al, 2008).

NUCLEAR ONCOPROTEINS

As noted previously, two important nuclear proteins that appear to play critical roles in the regulation of cell growth and division are the tumor suppressor gene protein, p53, and the p62/75 protein encoded by the c-myc oncogene for which serum assays have been developed. Furthermore, nuclear skeletal or matrix proteins are the targets of signal transducing kinases such as MAP kinase, as indicated in Figure 75-1.

p53 and c-myc Proteins

The protein p53 is known to function as a homotetramer and, in this form, binds to specific sequences of DNA to suppress the mitotic process. In addition, activation of p53 in transformed cells results in apoptosis via activation of proapoptotic proteins such as Bax and caspases. Thus p53 is an antioncogene protein. Mutations can occur in p53 that inactivate it. This inactivation can itself be oncogenic because the vital control that this protein exerts over mitogenesis is removed. Among the inactivating mutations are deletions of the whole gene, as has been found in a number of colon cancers, and mutations in the gene resulting in amino acid substitutions in the encoded p53 protein. These substitutions cause conformational changes in the protein that result in its inability to perform its antioncogenic function in the cell (Brandt-Rauf et al, 1996).

Many different point mutations in p53 have been identified in human tumors (Soussi et al, 1994). These mutations cause a loss of the normal growth-inhibitory function of p53, and at the same time, some of these mutations result in p53 proteins with considerably increased half-lives so that the mutant proteins accumulate in the transformed cells (Soussi et al, 1994).

The c-myc oncoprotein is activated to cause cell transformation by overexpression, so it, too, accumulates in transformed cells (Field & Spandidos, 1990). Thus for both p53 and p62/75 myc, increased levels of the proteins can be detected in transformed cells and human tumors (Field & Spandidos, 1990; Soussi et al, 1994). This overexpression apparently results in leakage of the proteins into the extracellular environment. Not only can these proteins therefore be detected in serum and other body fluids, but these normally sequestered proteins are recognized as foreign, so some cancer patients develop antibodies to p53 or p62/75 myc. As a result, increased concentrations of p53 or p62/75, or of antibodies to these proteins, in blood are excellent markers for tumor detection for following treatment efficacy and prognosis.

Detection of Malignancies by Assaying for p53 Protein

Hepatocellular Carcinoma. Increased levels of mutant p53 in serum by ELISA (>0.3 ng/mL, the upper limit of 100 normals) have been found in 20% of patients with HCC and 30% of patients with cirrhosis, a group known to be at increased risk for the development of HCC (Virji et al, 1992). Because patients with cirrhosis have high levels of p53 in their sera and a known risk factor for developing HCC, the elevated p53 levels may be an early indicator of tumorigenesis.

From a meta-analysis in 2012 (Liu et al, 2012), elevated mutant p53 levels in serum from HCC patients were associated with higher rates of recurrence and lower rates of overall survival than in patients whose sera were found not to have elevated mutant p53 levels. This indicates that mutant p53 levels can also be a prognostic indicator (Liu et al, 2012).

Breast and Lung Cancers. There have been few studies on p53 as a tumor marker in the sera of patients with breast and lung cancers. Elevated serum mutant p53 levels determined by ELISA have been reported in 8% of breast cancer patients, with levels decreasing following surgical resection of the tumors (Rosanelli et al, 1993), indicating that the tumors were the source of the elevated p53. Elevations of p53 protein have not been observed in the sera of any normal individuals. Levels of p53 are elevated in lower stages of invasive ductal carcinoma when compared to higher stages—that is, the sera of 63% of patients with stage I, 71% with stage II, and 53% with stage III cancers have elevated levels of p53. This finding suggests that serum levels of p53 can be used for early detection of breast cancer (Balogh et al, 2010).

For lung cancer, elevated serum mutant p53 levels determined by ELISA and immunoblotting have been found in up to 34% of lung cancer patients but not in normal individuals (Fontanini et al, 1994). For

these patients, immunohistochemical staining of subsequently obtained biopsy tissue showed elevated p53 levels, correlating with the serum findings.

Colon Cancer. An important mechanism believed to be operative in the development of colonic carcinoma is the deletion of the normal p53 gene or mutation of the gene leading to a nonfunctional antioncogenic protein. Elevated serum mutant p53 determined by ELISA has been found in about 1 in 5 patients with colon carcinomas and in approximately 1 in 10 patients with colonic adenomas. Normal individuals were found to be negative for serum p53 protein. These results show relatively low sensitivity of this marker for colon cancer, possibly because deletion of the p53 gene occurred in a high percentage of the tumors studied.

Bladder Cancer. Studies on the urine of patients with bladder cancer using PCR for p53 on shed cells in urine samples found that the p53 gene was mutated in a high proportion of these patients (Sidransky et al, 1991), supporting the use of p53 in screening for this disease in a completely noninvasive manner. As discussed later, p53, together with several other promising markers, may result in a set of tests that have a high positive predictive value.

Leukemia. Detection of soluble p53 in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia (B-CLL) can predict stage and progression of disease. In a recent study, 197 patients with B-CLL had plasma p53 levels measured. Using the cutoff of 3.5 U/mL, significant differences were seen in levels of patients with Rai staging levels of low, intermediate, and high, with higher p53 levels correlating with higher stage. Likewise, this cutoff was significant for predicting progression of disease. Significantly, it was found that, using the above cutoff, progression-free survival at 9 years was 67% for patients with serum values less than this cutoff, while it was only 5% for patients whose serum values were greater than this cutoff. In addition, overall survival at 11 years of patients with B-CLL whose serum values for soluble p53 were less than the cutoff was 97%, while it was only 15% for patients whose serum values were greater than the cutoff ($p < 0.0001$) (Del Principe et al, 2004).

Circulating Anti-p53 Antibodies in Tumor Detection

Serum antibodies against p53 have been reported to be a frequent occurrence in patients with several types of cancer. Production of antibodies to p53 and other oncoproteins has been attributed to their accumulation in necrotic cells and their subsequent release into the circulation, where they are recognized as foreign (Pincus & Friedman, 2003). There is another cause for the development of antibodies to oncogenic p53. Like oncogenic ras-p21, mutant p53 proteins, containing single amino acid substitutions at critical positions in the polypeptide chain, themselves become oncogenic. These amino acid substitutions induce major changes in the conformation of the p53 protein (Brandt-Rauf et al, 1996; Adler et al, 1998). Among these changes is the exposure of specific antigenic determinants that are not normally exposed (Pincus & Friedman, 2003; Pincus et al, 2007). If the protein diffuses into the circulation, antibodies against these determinants often develop. In a systematic review, it was found that patients with circulating p53 antibodies were more likely to have cancer than patients with no circulating antibodies to p53 (odds ratio 6:1) (Zhang et al, 2014).

Negative Regulator of p53, S100, as a Tumor Marker for Malignant Melanoma. S100 is a low molecular weight calcium-binding protein, expressed in a wide variety of cells from the neural crest lineage and is comprised of two subunits, α and β. Calcium-bound S100 binds wild-type p53, disrupting its tumor suppressive role by breaking up the p53 tetramer (Baudier et al, 1992). The form that is found in melanoma is the αβ dimer. Serum levels of the β subunit are associated with a variety of brain and inflammatory processes; with brain diseases excluded, an elevated S100 β level is specific to malignant melanoma, especially metastases to skeletal muscle and liver. It is found to have low sensitivity but high prognostic value. S100 β correlates with disease severity, tumor mass, and progression and regression of the disease in response to therapy (Al-Shaer et al, 2010).

S100 is superseded among melanoma tumor markers only by lactate dehydrogenase (LDH). Although not strictly an oncoprotein, this biologic surrogate has great clinical utility. Elevated serum LDH levels have long been associated with poor prognosis in late-stage malignant melanoma and have been included in the AJCC staging guidelines (Gogas et al, 2009). Furthermore, LDH levels can stratify melanoma patients based on susceptibility to specific agents (Kelderman et al, 2014).

Antibodies to p53 Are Present in the Sera of Many Patients with Epithelial Cell Tumors and Lymphomas. In several major studies (including a large study of 1392 cancer patients), elevated serum levels of anti-p53 antibodies were found in patients with ovarian and colon cancers (15%); lung cancers, including small cell tumors (up to 25%); and breast cancers, including intraductal carcinoma (up to 15%). Normal individuals did not have elevated serum levels of these antibodies (Angelopoulou et al, 1994). In a significant number of patients who have been followed for the presence of anti-p53 antibodies in their sera, the appearance of these antibodies has been found to precede the occurrence of malignant tumors. Anti-p53 antibodies are also found to occur in more than 20% of patients with bladder cancer (mostly at more advanced stages), as well as a high proportion of patients with pancreatic and hepatocellular carcinomas and in childhood lymphomas.

In a more recent study of 569 cancer patients compared to 879 normal controls, 15% of the cancer patients tested positive for anti-p53 antibodies, whereas 1% of the normal patients tested positive. Four percent of cancer patients tested positive for p53 protein in serum compared to 0.34% in the normal controls. The sensitivity and specificity of anti-p53 antibodies in detecting cancer were 15% and 99%, respectively, while serum p53 was found to be 4% and 100%, respectively (Wu et al, 2010). As noted above, certain specific cancers such as ductal breast carcinomas result in elevated levels of serum p53 at significantly higher rates.

Anti-p53 in Ovarian Cancer. Further studies on the expression of anti-p53 antibodies in the sera of patients with ovarian cancer have been performed (Tsai-Turton et al, 2009). Patients with type 2 ovarian cancer, a more aggressive form of this cancer, were found to have anti-p53 antibodies in their sera, whereas no patients with less aggressive type 1 cancers were found to have these antibodies in their sera. All of these patients with anti-p53 in their sera were found to have mutant forms of p53 in their cancers; those who did not have mutant p53 in their tumors were not found to have anti-p53 antibodies in their sera, suggesting that mutant p53 is required to provoke this immune response. In all of these seropositive patients, extensive assays for cytokines revealed that interleukin (IL)-4 and -12 were consistently elevated in serum, whereas IL-8 was consistently decreased.

Anti-p53 in Hepatocellular Carcinoma. Continuing follow-up studies on anti-p53 antibodies in patients with different cancers reveal that up to half of the patients with HCC, regardless of the size, have markedly elevated serum levels of anti-p53 (Ryder et al, 1996). These elevated levels correlate with the known elevation of p53 in the sera of patients with this type of cancer.

Sensitivity and specificity of anti-p53 antibodies in detecting HCC are 91.5% and 84.6%, respectively. When correlated with alpha-fetoprotein (AFP, an HCC tumor marker), r^2 (r is the correlation coefficient) values are 0.70 and 0.88 for nonviral and viral-associated HCC, respectively (El Azm et al, 2013).

Anti-p53 in Oral and Esophageal Cancers. Anti-p53 antibodies have likewise been found in the sera of patients with oral lesions, and many of these patients were found to have premalignant lesions (Kaur et al, 1997), indicating that anti-p53 antibodies are markers for early detection of oral cancer. Anti-p53 has also been found to be elevated in more than 50% of patients with esophageal squamous cell carcinoma (Shimada et al, 1998), indicating that anti-p53 may be a very useful one in the diagnosis of this disease. In a meta-analysis, the combined diagnostic odds ratio of serum anti-p53 antibodies in detecting esophageal cancer was 9.65 (95% CI: 7.04-13.22) (Zhang, 2012).

Anti-p53 in Lung Cancers. In a prospective study of patients with carcinoma of the lung, serum anti-p53 levels were found in 100% of patients with large cell carcinoma, 28% with adenocarcinomas, 55% with squamous cell carcinomas, and 71% with small cell carcinomas (Segawa et al, 1998). These results demonstrate that elevated serum anti-p53 levels are tumor type–specific for carcinoma of the lung, showing high positivity rates for large and small cell lung carcinomas.

Anti-p53 Predicts Cancer Occurrence in Patients with Asbestos Exposure. A retrospective study (Li et al, 2004) of 103 patients with a known prolonged exposure to asbestos whose serum was banked between the years 1980 and 1988 has been performed. These patients were all followed until the end of 2001. Assays for anti-p53 antibodies were performed on the banked sera. It was found that of 49 patients who developed cancer, 13 (26.5%) had significantly elevated levels of anti-p53 antibodies in their sera, although 4 of the 54 (7.4%) individuals who did not develop cancer were found to have these antibodies. In all four cases, the antibody levels were found initially to be marginally greater than the cutoff for positivity, but for all 4, subsequent banked serum samples were found to be antibody-negative.

In contrast, in all 13 cancer patients for whom multiple samples were available, all samples were positive for these antibodies. Statistical analysis of these results showed that the presence of anti-p53 antibodies is an independent predictor of cancer occurrence and that survival in anti-p53–

antibody-free patients is significantly greater than in anti-p53–antibody-positive patients.

Anti-p53 in Colorectal Cancer. Serum anti-p53 antibodies have been found to be reliable indicators of postoperative recurrence of colorectal cancer (Tang et al, 2009). In patients whose preoperative anti-p53 titers were elevated, elevated postoperative serum anti-p53 antibody titers were found to be better indicators of tumor recurrence than serum elevation of carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), the classic serum marker for colorectal cancer, as discussed in Chapter 73. In a recent systematic review, sensitivity of detecting colorectal cancer increases (to 51%) when using both as markers as opposed to anti-p53 (17%) or CEA (42%) alone (Suppiah et al, 2013).

myc Oncogene–Encoded Protein in Tumor Detection

The myc gene codes for a protein of molecular mass of 75 kDa that functions as a transcription factor. When activated, it derepresses expression of other genes that encode proteins involved in replication. This oncogene is overexpressed in a number of tumors, including Burkitt's lymphoma, where the myc gene on chromosome 8 is translocated to a long terminal repeat–like region of an immunoglobulin-coding region of chromosome 14. Long terminal repeat regions allow constitutive expression of genes that are adjacent to them.

c-myc–related proteins and antibodies to the c-myc protein, such as p53 and antibodies to it, have been identified in the serum of cancer patients. Detection of this 62/75-kDa protein is hampered by its short half-life in serum. However, it is possible to detect a specific c-myc–related p40 protein in the serum of these patients, using immunoblotting. The highest frequencies of occurrence of myc protein in human serum have been found to occur in breast (about 20%) and colon cancers. Treatment of both types of cancer results in marked diminution in the serum levels of this protein. Recurrences result in elevated levels; c-myc protein is therefore useful in following the course of malignant tumors. It has not been detected in the sera of normal individuals.

Serum Anti–c-myc Protein Antibodies in Tumor Detection in Breast Cancer, Ovarian Cancer, Leukemias, and Lymphomas

High serum levels of anti–c-myc antibodies have been found in the sera of patients with colorectal cancer (55% to 65%) and in the sera of patients with both myeloid leukemias and Burkitt's lymphoma. Lower occurrences of elevated antibodies have been reported in patients with breast cancers (around 10%) and ovarian cancers (10%). Anti–c-myc antibodies have not been found in the sera of normal individuals.

In a study of serum from 546 cancer patients, elevated anti–c-myc antibodies were found in 12% of patients. In HCC, 25% displayed elevated anti–c-myc antibodies; in breast cancer, 19%, esophageal cancer, 12%; and gastric cancer, 15% (Megliorino et al, 2005).

Combined Oncogene Marker Proteins for Detection of Colorectal Cancer

As discussed later, since the development of gene, mRNA, and protein arrays, it is possible to screen for multiple oncogene proteins at the same time. Clinical guidelines, however, do not currently recommend routine testing of multiple oncogenes (Locker et al, 2006). The only tumor marker with ASCO endorsement is CEA, for staging and treatment purposes, as well as to monitor response to therapy. Recently, a study was performed in which the peripheral blood leukocytes of patients with colorectal cancer at all stages and of a control group were assayed for overexpression of ras-p21, myc, and p53 proteins. All of the patients with colorectal cancer were found to have marked overexpression of all three oncoproteins compared with the control group (Csontos et al, 2008). This study is significant both because three oncoproteins were overexpressed consistently in this disease and because it involves the novel use of leukocytes, rather than serum, to assay for oncoprotein expression, pointing to a new diagnostic approach.

Nuclear Matrix Proteins and Detection of Bladder Cancer

Important targets of oncogene-encoded proteins are nuclear matrix proteins (NMPs) (see Fig. 75-1), also referred to as *nuclear skeletal proteins*, and nuclear mitotic apparatus proteins. These 236-kDa proteins are vital for correct mitotic spindle formation. They contain a globular head and tail separated by a central rod-like α-helical core domain consisting of heptad repeat sequences. These proteins vary by cell type, stage of differentiation, and cell cycle. Crucially, a number of tumor-associated NMPs has been identified, each specific for one of five tumor types (bladder, prostate, breast, colon, and bone). The best studied is one strongly associated with transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder, NMP22, which functions as a nuclear mitotic apparatus protein, involved with chromosomal separation during mitosis (Hughes & Cohen, 1999). The amount of this protein in malignant transitional epithelial cells is 10 to 20 times that in normal cells.

NMP-22 Is an Excellent Biomarker for Bladder and Urothelial Cancers

Antibodies that are specific for this NMP have been developed and are now used in a commercial ELISA on urine (Matritech/Berlex, Newton, Mass.). Because malignant urothelial cells in patients with bladder cancer are frequently exfoliated into the urine of these patients, this protein from the lysed cancer cells can be detected at elevated levels. Multiple studies of patients who have bladder cancers of a variety of different stages reveal that the sensitivity is close to 90% in malignant, invasive cancer and 75% in carcinoma in situ. The latter result is highly encouraging, because this stage is the earliest detectable one. For malignant papillary, noninvasive carcinoma, the sensitivity is 62%. The overall specificity for this marker ranges from around 73% to as high as 90%, depending on the specific study.

Comparison of the sensitivity of NMP22 ELISA with that of cytology reveals that the two methods are about 83% sensitive for invasive carcinoma, but for grade I transitional cell carcinoma, NMP22 is 61% sensitive, whereas cytology is only 17% sensitive (Landman et al, 1998). For grades II and III cancers, the NMP22 ELISA is more sensitive at 78% and 93% than cytology at 50% and 87%, respectively (Landman et al, 1998).

More recently, studies have compared overall sensitivity and specificity of NMP-22 with the sensitivity and specificity of urine cytology in screening for urothelial cancer of all types and stages. One prospective study of 103 patients found that NMP-22 and cytology gave approximately the same sensitivities and specificities—that is, 69% sensitivity and 76% specificity for NMP-2, and 75% sensitivity and 73% specificity for urine cytology (Hautmann et al, 2007). On the other hand, another large study of 93 patients with bladder cancer, 42 patients with benign urothelial conditions, and 50 normal volunteers found that NMP-22 had a sensitivity of 78% and a specificity of 73%, whereas cytology had a sensitivity of 24% and a specificity of 97% (Tsui et al, 2007). In a study for recurrent bladder cancer in a large cohort of patients, it was found that the sensitivity (85.7%), specificity (77.5%), positive predictive value (70.6%), and negative predictive value (89.6%) of NMP-22 alone were almost the same when combined with urine cytologic findings, presumably because the sensitivity of NMP-22 is higher than that for urine cytology (Gupta et al, 2009). These findings again suggest that NMP-22 is more effective overall in screening for bladder cancer than urine cytology.

NMP-22 testing has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), both for screening for the presence of bladder cancer and for the follow-up of bladder cancer in patients who have been treated for this disease. With respect to the latter use of this method, clinical studies have been performed in which the NMP22 ELISA was performed on the urine of patients who have been treated for transitional cell carcinoma, 20 to 60 days following treatment, who were then subjected to cystoscopy 2 to 6 months following treatment. Using a cutoff of 10 U/mL, 86% of patients with negative (<10 U/mL) NMP22 values were found to have negative cystoscopic results, and 71% of patients with values greater than 10 U/mL were found to have positive cystoscopic findings. These results, combined with those of other studies, suggest that this methodology may obviate the necessity for performing cystoscopy on many patients who are being followed for tumor recurrence (Miyanaga et al, 1997).

NMP-22 can be used to monitor the recurrence or bladder cancer after resection. However, because recurrent tumors are smaller than initial tumors, cutoff values should be altered in these cases because the sensitivity of this test increases from 19% to 49% when the cutoff value is reduced to 5.0 U/mL (Miyanaga et al, 2003).

Bladder Tumor Antigen

Several other biomarkers for bladder cancer are also being used to aid in the diagnosis and follow-up of this disease. Prominent among these is the so-called bladder tumor antigen, which measures a human complement H protein that is produced by malignant but not by normal transitional epithelial cells. This marker has a somewhat lower sensitivity than that for NMP-22 (Tsui et al, 2007) and also has a lower specificity due to false-positive results from trauma to the urothelial tract. However, use of NMP-22 together with bladder tumor antigen and a number of other markers, including urokinase-type plasminogen activator, can improve the overall sensitivity of bladder cancer detection (Shariat et al, 2003). It

should be further noted that other tests on urine, such as those for mutant or absent p53, discussed previously, and for homozygous deletion of the 9p21 chromosome, discussed later, also have high diagnostic yields. Because these tests are relatively simple to perform, it is conceivable that they can be placed on a chip that will allow for simultaneous evaluations. A positive result on one or more test would suggest the occurrence of bladder cancer.

Minichromosome Maintenance Proteins

Minichromosome maintenance proteins (MCM2-7) are present in nuclei of cells during replication, and all six proteins are required for replication. They form a heterohexamer at the end of metaphase and are downregulated when cells are senescent. They have been found in serum and body fluids of patients with cancer. In bladder cancer, MCM5 in urine detected cancer with high sensitivity and specificity. The areas under the ROC curves for MCM5 and NMP22 were 0.75 and 0.72, respectively. When used in combination, they detected 100% of muscle-invading cancers, 46% of grade 1, 64% of grade 2, and 96% of grade 3 tumors (Kelly et al, 2012).

In patients with biliary strictures, biliary asparates are routinely checked for pancreaticobiliary malignancy. Using immunofluorometric assay for MCM5 in the aspirates yielded a sensitivity and specificity of 66% and 94%, respectively, compared to 20% and 100% for brush cytology (Ayaru et al, 2008).

In detection of HCC, MCM6 protein assay had a sensitivity of 67% and a specificity of 89.9%. In AFP-negative patients, MCM6 protein combined with assays for MCM6 mRNA could detect 76.9% of HCC. When combined with AFP, MCM6 as a tumor marker increased detection of small HCC from 71.4% to 85.7% (Zheng et al, 2014).

USE OF MULTIPLE ONCOPROTEIN MARKERS IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF CANCER

Early detection of cancer using oncoproteins has been enhanced by two new developments: use of oncoprotein and oncogene arrays (i.e., use of multiple oncoproteins and multiple oncogenes), and proteomics (i.e., identification of differential protein expression in the sera and body fluids of patients with specific cancers compared with expression in the sera and body fluids of control groups). The proteomic approach has been further modified to include the identification of major proteins whose levels are expressed at high or low levels reproducibly in the sera or body fluids of patients with specific cancers but not in those of patients with benign disease or of normal individuals.

MULTIPLE ONCOPROTEIN ASSAY IN PATIENTS AT RISK FOR TUMOR DEVELOPMENT IN PATIENTS WITH PNEUMOCONIOSIS

In a prospective study, 46 patients with a history of exposure to carcinogens and with attendant pneumoconiosis participated in a study in which their sera were assayed for elevated levels of five oncoproteins: ras-p21, Fes, Myb, PDGF, and Int-1. Eighteen of these patients were found to have cancer, including 13 with lung cancer or mesothelioma, at the time the assays were performed. Of these 18 patients, 13 were found to have markedly elevated levels of at least one of the five oncoproteins for which the assays were performed. Eight of these patients were found to have elevations of at least two of these proteins. Another seven patients were found to have elevations of at least two of these oncoproteins but were not found to have cancer. Although some of these latter patients were lost to follow-up, long-term follow-up revealed the subsequent development of cancer in all of the remaining patients. More important, several of the patients with only one elevated marker were found to have elevations of different tumor markers in their serum, emphasizing the importance of assaying for as many different oncoproteins as possible (Qin & Tang, 2002).

ONCOPROTEIN ARRAYS LIKEWISE HOLD PROMISE IN DETECTING ANTIONCOPROTEIN ANTIBODIES IN SERA

Based on the findings that many patients with cancers are found to have antibodies to a variety of oncoproteins, such as p53 and Myc, studies have been performed to detect one or more such antibodies in patients' sera. In one such study, a miniarray of up to seven full-length recombinant oncoproteins was prepared and included such oncoproteins as Myc and p53.

This array was employed to detect antibodies in sera from 527 patients with six different types of cancer (Zhang et al, 2003). The antibody frequency to any one oncoprotein was on the order of 15% to 20%, but inclusion of all seven oncoproteins resulted in detection of up to 68%. Furthermore, distinct patterns of antibody expression were found for patients with breast, lung, and prostate cancer, whereas no discrete patterns were found for patients with gastric, colorectal, or hepatocellular carcinomas. These encouraging results can be enhanced by the inclusion of more oncoproteins. Given the results regarding detection of single oncoproteins, it would seem even more effective to construct arrays with the antibodies to the large number of known oncoproteins in cancer patients to assay for the presence of increased levels of these and/or mutated forms.

PROTEOMIC APPROACHES TO EARLY DETECTION OF CANCER IN SERUM

The aforementioned approaches to tumor detection are based on using known oncoproteins that are expressed in uncontrolled cell proliferation. Alternatively, other approaches, mainly the so-called proteomic approach, described extensively in Chapter 77, have been developed over the past several years to search for the expression of multiple proteins (hence the term *proteomic*) that occur uniquely in human cancers and not in normal and nonmalignant cells. These proteins are then used to detect tumors at an early stage. These techniques involve two-dimensional polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis on protein extracts, from tissue and serum, which are first labeled with different fluorochromes (Wulfkuhle et al, 2003). The resulting gels from cancer patients are compared with those from normal subjects to detect differences in fluorescent labeling. Bands that differ are eluted and subjected to mass spectrometry to determine molecular weight and fragmentation patterns.

An offshoot of this approach is the *phosphoproteomic* analysis of tumor samples. Given the new paradigm in oncologic therapeutic practice that relies on small kinase inhibitors and monoclonal antibodies, this phosphoproteomic approach aims to clarify the phosphorylation status of key biomarkers identified in the proteome. The main platforms are planar and bead array, reverse phase protein microarray, phosphor-specific flow cytometry, and automated quantitative analysis (AQUA) (Pierobon et al, 2014). As an illustration of the great potential of this approach, a recent study of breast cancer investigated over 8000 phosphorylation sites on nearly 3500 proteins, identifying 133 phosphopeptides that were differentially expressed between high- and low-risk recurrence groups. Fifteen of these were successfully quantified using advanced highly selective mass spectrometry techniques, such as selective reaction monitoring. Further investigation is necessary, but preliminary results suggest that the phosphoproteomic approach is well suited to identify and validate more biomarkers and oncoproteins based on their phosphorylation status (Shi et al, 2012).

Ultimately, mass spectroscopy, the principles of which are described in Chapters 4, 23, and 77, can be used to obtain sequence information on these proteins. Using this technique, the RS/DI-1 protein that regulates protein–RNA interactions has been identified as a circulating protein in the sera of breast cancer patients but not in normal individuals. Likewise, the protein PGP9.5 has been found to occur in the sera of patients with lung cancer (Wulfkuhle et al, 2003).

This approach has therefore shown promise in identifying unique markers for different types of cancer. However, it requires high concentrations of proteins to enable detection on the two-dimensional gels and is quite time-consuming. Nonetheless, it is a powerful method for the discovery of proteins that are unique to specific types of tumor.

Another, more direct and more sensitive, approach has been designed that enables detection of cancer in the serum of affected patients. In this method the sera of patients is directly applied to a chip, which allows for the partial separation of the proteins in the sample. The chip is then subjected to surface-enhanced laser desorption ionization time of flight (SELDI-TOF) mass spectrometry, as described in Chapters 4 and 77. This produces a complex pattern of protein and protein ion fragments with different mass-to-charge ratios (Wulfkuhle et al, 2003).

The patterns for the sera of patients with cancer are compared with those from normal individuals using computer pattern-recognition algorithms (some of them based on neural network theory) that can distinguish cancer patterns from normal ones. More important, the normal sera provide a "training set" of patterns that define the normal pattern, while a second set of sera from known cancer patients define the cancer training set (Wulfkuhle et al, 2003). The idea of profiling patients with different tumor types is consistent with the earlier discussion, in which it was noted

that certain patterns of antioncoprotein antibody occurrence in serum appear to characterize specific cancers.

APPLICATION OF THE PROTEOMIC APPROACH TO THE DIAGNOSIS OF CANCERS

Ovarian Cancer

The proteomic pattern-recognition approach was applied to 25 patients with ovarian cancers at all stages and a group of unaffected individuals. The sera were analyzed in a blind study. The method resulted in detecting 100% of the patients with ovarian cancer, including 18 who had stage I (early) disease. All the sera from the unaffected patients were identified as being negative for ovarian cancer (Wulfkuhle et al, 2003). On the other hand, the sera from patients with other types of cancer could not be classified by the algorithm, suggesting that ovarian cancer has a unique protein "profile."

Prostate Cancer

Similar results have been obtained now for patients with breast and prostate cancers. In one study, using an algorithm that incorporated a decision tree classification system, the method had a sensitivity of 83% and a specificity of 97% in distinguishing sera from patients with prostate cancer from sera from patients with noncancerous conditions like benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH) or with no disease. The sensitivity could be raised to 100% by incorporation of a more robust algorithm (Wulfkuhle et al, 2003).

As noted in Chapter 73, prostate specific antigen (PSA) is the marker used in the diagnosis of prostate cancer; the upper limit of normal for PSA is taken to be 4 ng/mL but the 4- to 10-ng/mL range encompasses many false-positive results. Therefore, this method was applied to patients with serum PSA levels of 4 to 10 ng/mL. The method could accurately predict the occurrence of cancer in 95% of patients with PSA values in this range and could detect 70% (107 of 153) of patients with benign disease in the PSA range greater than 4 ng/mL (Wulfkuhle et al, 2003).

Proteomics Show Promise in Early Tumor Detection

The proteomic approach thus appears to be highly promising. Drawbacks include the absence of identity of many of the proteins in the training sets. In the case of prostate cancer detection, different groups who have analyzed the sera of prostate cancer patients and unaffected individuals have obtained different diagnostic protein patterns, none of which contained PSA (Diamandis, 2003). Yet, PSA is known to be elevated in more than 90% of patients with prostate cancer. Further questions have been raised as to whether important protein molecules such as PSA are present in sufficiently high concentration in a serum sample to be detected by the method and whether the actual patterns really characterize prostate tissue. With identification of the proteins in the training sets, these questions should be resolved.

PROTEIN ARRAYS FOR SPECIFIC TYPES OF CANCER

Proteomic approaches have been modified so as to identify specific critical proteins whose serum levels reliably increase or decrease in specific cancers. Arrays containing these proteins are then employed to screen patients for the presence of specific cancers as we now describe.

Squamous Cell Carcinomas of the Head and Neck

To identify proteins that, as a group, are expressed in oral squamous cell carcinomas (OSCC), human OSCCs were xenotransplanted into mice. Protein expression in the sera of these mice was compared with that in control sera of nontransplanted mice (Bijian et al, 2009). It was possible to identify a number of proteins whose expressions exhibited major differences between the two groups. Large increases in expression in the sera of mice transplanted with the OSCCs included EGFr, cytokeratins, a G-protein–coupled receptor, Rab11 GTPase, and several other proteins. Arrays containing antibodies to these proteins are being used to screen for this disease.

In a modification of the proteomic method, a large expression array consisting of multiple oncoproteins, cytokines, chemokines, and tumor markers, such as those discussed in Chapter 73, was used to select the best diagnostic combination of these for head and neck cancers (Linkov et al, 2007). These cancers can be diagnosed with a sensitivity of 84.5% and a specificity of 98% if the following combination of biomarkers was used: EGF, EGFr, IL-8, tissue plasminogen activator inhibitor-1, AFP, matrix metalloproteinase-2, matrix metalloproteinase-3, IFN-α, IFN-γ, IFN-inducible protein-10, regulated on activation, normal T cell expressed and secreted (RANTES) protein, macrophage inflammatory protein-1α, IL-7, IL-17, IL-1 receptor-α, IL-2 receptor, granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, mesothelin, insulin-like growth factor binding protein 1, E-selectin, cytokeratin-19, vascular cell adhesion molecule, and cancer antigen-125. Using this array on a group of patients with known cancers of the head and neck and a group without this disease, 92% of the patients were correctly diagnosed with this disease.

Breast Cancer

Using a similar approach for breast cancer detection, the sera from 4500 patients with different cancer types, including nonmetastatic breast cancer, were screened using 50 different protein markers, of which 35 were selected (Kim et al, 2009). When compared with controls, EGF, soluble CD40-ligand, and pro-apolipoprotein A1 were all found to be increased in breast cancer patients, while high molecular weight kininogen, apolipoprotein A1, soluble vascular cell adhesion molecule-1, plasminogen activator inhibitor-1, vitamin D binding protein, and fibronectin were decreased in the cancer group. Diagnostic accuracy using these proteins was approximately 90%, indicating that the breast cancer array has promise in early detection of this disease.

Lung Cancer

Proteomic methodology has been applied to the sera of a large cohort of patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the lung and a control group (Dowling et al, 2007). To increase the diagnostic sensitivity of the method, all sera were immunodepleted of all major common serum proteins, such as albumin, and were then subjected to high-resolution 2-D electrophoresis and mass spectroscopy. It has been found that a set of proteins—apolipoprotein A-IV precursor, chain F; human complement component C3c; haptoglobin; serum amyloid A protein precursor; and Ras-related protein Rab-7b—is reproducibly elevated. In addition, another set of proteins—α-2-HS glycoprotein, hemopexin precursor, pro-apolipoprotein, antithrombin III, and SP40—were reproducibly decreased. This resulting lung cancer array appears to be very useful in screening for this disease.

DIAGNOSTIC EFFICACY OF SERUM ONCOPROTEINS

The results of assays for the different oncoproteins discussed earlier in serum and urine (NMP-22), on several thousand patients, are summarized in Figure 75-3 for different tumor types. The figure shows three-dimensional graphs of tumor type (*y*-axis), tumor marker (*x*-axis), and percentage of cases of each tumor type successfully detected by each marker. The results for each marker are given as a specifically colored three-dimensional bar graph. From Figure 75-3, it is clear that of the proteins studied thus far, positivity rates (sensitivities) vary from less than 30% (myc oncoprotein sensitivity is 8% in breast cancer) to more than 80% (e.g., ras in angiosarcoma). However, all of the control groups (given adjacent to each tumor type, with an "N" in parentheses) show very low positivity rates and are, in most instances, 0. Therefore, whereas the sensitivities of oncoprotein markers vary, *their specificities are exceptionally high*, in the 95% to 100% range; in other words, there are very few false-positive results. Therefore, if a mutated or overexpressed oncoprotein is detected in the serum or other body fluid of a patient, there is a high probability that the patient has some form of malignancy. Also, the sensitivities and specificities of oncoproteins in diagnosing cancer exceed those of the oncofetal antigens, such as CEA or AFP (see Chapter 73).

How Specific Is Oncoprotein Expression for Different Cancer Types?

Interestingly, although the oncoproteins studied are from signal transduction pathways that are involved in many different types of cells, there seems to be some specificity of expression of particular oncoproteins for certain types of cancer. For example, the growth factor TGF-α is elevated in a large proportion of colorectal, brain, and ovarian cancers, whereas TGF-β is elevated in hepatocellular, lung, and bladder cancers. The p185 ECD (neu) protein is elevated in the sera of many patients with breast (at more advanced stages) carcinomas (see Fig. 75-3, *B*). Ras-p21 protein is elevated in colorectal and hepatocellular carcinomas and angiosarcomas of the liver and lung cancers. p53 is elevated in colorectal and lung cancers and is elevated uniquely in oropharyngeal cancers, although, as discussed earlier, protein arrays designed for diagnosis of these cancers are now available. In addition, it is elevated in a high proportion of lymphomas. Anti-Myc antibody is elevated in many colon cancers and, interestingly, in a high

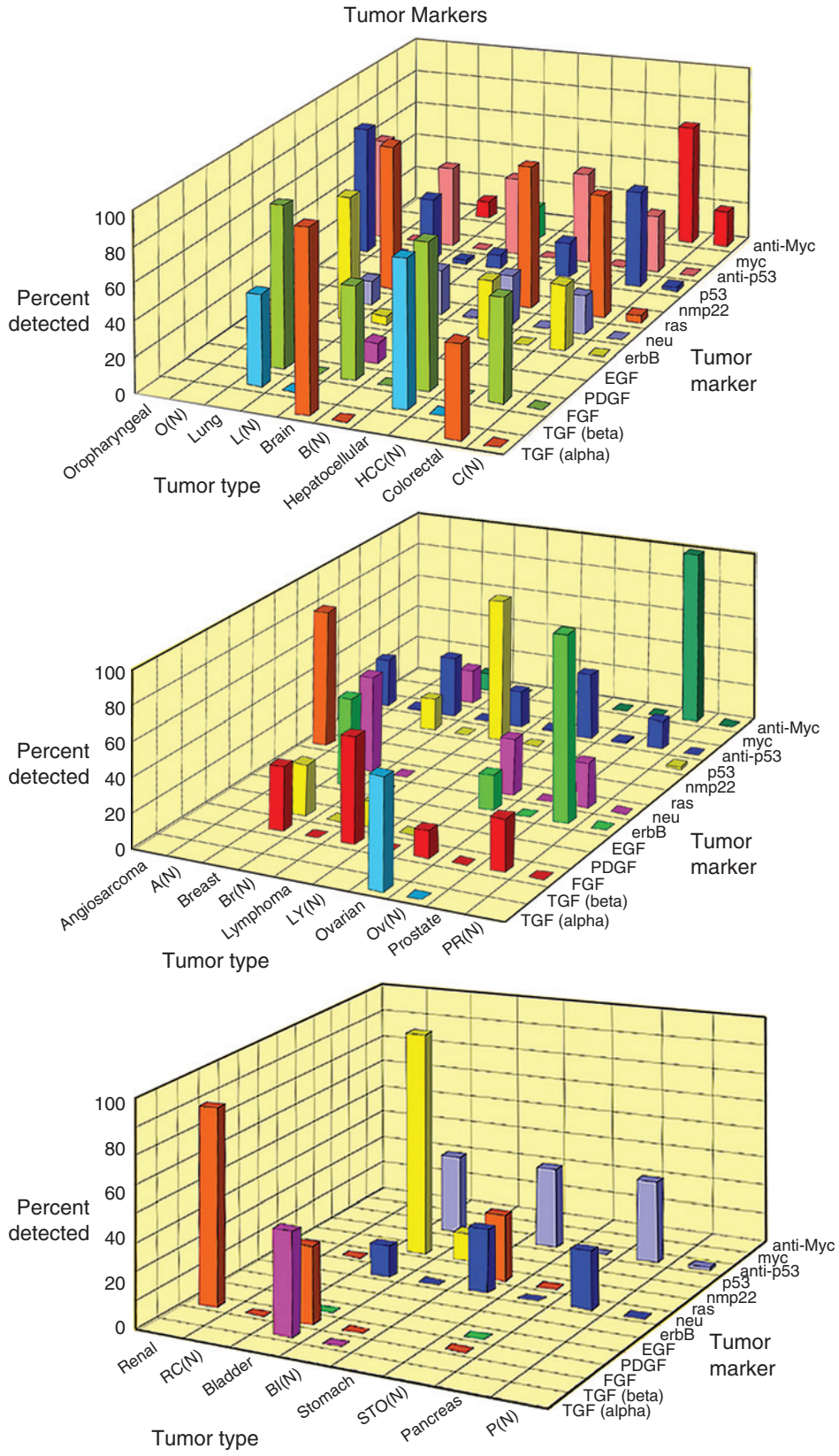


Figure 75-3 Summary of results of serum assays for different components of mitogenic signaling pathways. These are three-dimensional plots of tumor type on the *x*-axis, pathway component on the *y*-axis, and the percentage detected or the frequency of finding each of the pathway components elevated in the serum of patients with each tumor type on the perpendicular *z*-axis. Next to the results for each tumor type, the results for control groups are labeled as "N" for "normals"—that is, age- and sex-matched controls who were tumor-free. The controls for patients with each tumor type are abbreviated with a single letter (with "N" in parentheses) for each tumor type, such as "B" for brain. *anti-Myc,* Antibody to the Myc protein; *anti-p53,* anti-p53 antibody; *EGF,* epidermal growth factor; *erbB,* epidermal growth factor (EGF) receptor; *FGF,* fibroblast growth factor; *myc,* a nuclear oncogene that encodes the Myc protein; *Neu,* p185 protein that is similar to the erbB protein and is also called erbB-2 and HER2; *NMP-22,* nuclear matrix protein number 22; *p53,* an antioncogene protein *PDGF,* platelet-derived growth factor; *Ras,* p21 protein; *TGF-α,* transforming growth factor-α; *TGF-β,* transforming growth factor-β.

proportion of prostate cancers. This last finding suggests the need for further investigation. For example, elevated serum anti-Myc may aid in the definitive diagnosis of prostate cancer in patients with elevated serum PSA. In view of the recent findings that the ECD of EGFr is elevated in 93% of patients with prostate cancer in one series (Milanese et al, 2009), this oncoprotein may likewise enable definitive diagnosis of prostate cancer.

Sensitivities of Oncoprotein Expression

As noted earlier, the sensitivities of oncoproteins in diagnosing specific cancers vary. Because of the multistep nature of carcinogenesis, there are many potential oncoproteins that may become abnormal. In some types of cancers, pathways may be activated that are not activated in other types of cancers. This phenomenon occurs even within one type of cancer. For example, ras and neu are elevated in the sera of patients with lung cancer but not elevated in patients with lymphomas because different signal transduction proteins are involved in these two different types of cancers. Also, ras and neu do not detect all lung cancers because these cancers differ with respect to affected signal transduction proteins among themselves, and some of them do not involve these two signal transduction proteins.

Therefore, the next step in using these oncoprotein markers in the early diagnosis of cancer is to assay for multiple markers in a given patient's serum, because discovery of at least one aberrant component of the signal transduction pathway is much more likely. If at least one positive result is found, the patient can be followed for signs of the development of a tumor.

As discussed previously, progress has been made in this area. Protein and gene arrays for multiple oncoproteins and oncogenes have been constructed and have succeeded in increasing the rate of positive diagnoses for cancer in patients. Furthermore, the advent of the proteomic/pattern recognition approach to cancer detection is proving to be successful in studies in which it has been thus far tested—that is, in the diagnosis of ovarian, prostate, and breast cancers. Combination of these two methods would result in high diagnostic yields; use of both would be feasible in that each can be performed rapidly.

ORIGINS OF MALIGNANCIES

Figure 75-3 indicates that discovery of an elevated level of an oncoprotein in the serum of a patient does not generally give conclusive information as to the source of the malignancy. For example, although ras-p21 has been found to be elevated with some specificity in colon, lung, and angiosarcomas of the liver, and HER2/*neu* (c-erbB-2) p185 ECD has been found to be elevated in colon, lung, and breast cancers, elevation of one of these oncoproteins in a patient's serum would not allow identification of exactly the tissue of origin of a malignancy. Because the signal transduction pathways in most cells are remarkably similar to one another, an increase in any oncoprotein can signify malignancy in a number of different cell types. On the other hand, using the proteomic approach, serum protein patterns on SELDI-TOF mass spectrometry are uniquely characteristic of specific tumors so that this approach can identify the tissue of origin of the tumor.

Additionally, many studies on the correlations between the presence of tumors and serum levels of oncoproteins remain to be performed. For example, there are no published data on the occurrence of detectable forms of mutant ras-p21 protein in the serum of patients with pancreatic carcinoma with control groups consisting of age- and sex-matched control individuals and with groups containing patients with pancreatitis but no tumors. This is a vitally needed study, because more than 90% of pancreatic cancers express oncogenic ras-p21 (Almoguera et al, 1988).

One manner of using serum oncoproteins could be to detect specific tumors at an early stage in tumor progression in populations known to be at risk for developing these cancers. These would include patients with a history of occupational exposure to carcinogens or mutagens, as seen from the example of patients with a history of vinyl chloride exposure associated with angiosarcoma of the liver. In addition, patients can be followed who have been exposed chronically to asbestos and silica and who have consequent pneumoconioses associated with lung cancer and mesothelioma. Both conditions are associated with elevated serum levels of ras-p21 protein and/or mutant forms of this protein. Patients with pneumoconioses can also be followed with serum levels of p185neu.

TUMOR SIZE AND ONCOPROTEIN LEVELS

Currently, there is little information on the minimum size of a tumor that gives rise to serum elevations of oncoproteins. However, there are indications that small lesions may give rise to significant levels of certain oncoproteins.

First, in a significant number of patients with known cancer risks, oncoproteins were discovered in their sera before the development of detectable cancer. Thus in patients with asbestosis, the ECD of the p185erbB protein became elevated *before* lung tumors were diagnosed. Overexpression of the p185 ECD occurred in a number of patients before the diagnosis of breast cancer. East Asian patients who had high serum levels of p185 ECD went on to develop HCC. Patients with pneumoconioses were found to have elevated levels of p185 ECD and/or ras-p21 protein and subsequently developed lung carcinomas. Mutant (Asp 13-) p21 protein was discovered in the serum of a very high percentage of patients with vinyl chloride exposure who subsequently developed angiosarcoma. Anti-p53 antibodies were found in the sera of individuals who subsequently developed angiosarcomas or lung cancers. For viral-associated HCC, anti-p53 antibodies were significantly correlated with tumor size and tumor number (El Azm, 2013). All these studies suggest that malignant lesions that are undetectable by conventional techniques may be detected by measuring the serum levels of oncoproteins or antibodies to oncoproteins, especially in patients with known exposures or risk factors for cancer.

Second, carcinomas in situ are known to cause elevated levels of oncoproteins in serum, as evidenced by elevated serum levels of p185neu protein in incipient breast cancer and NMP-22 in carcinoma in situ of the bladder. These findings suggest that serum oncoprotein levels are effective in detecting the presence of small tumors in individuals at an early stage.

It also seems clear that as the stage progresses, the tumors elaborate higher levels of oncoproteins so that there appears to be a good correlation, at least in some patients, between serum levels of marker oncoproteins and tumor size and/or level of expression of the marker in the tumor tissue itself. In this regard, some small adenomas (<1 cm) have been found to give rise to elevated levels of p185 ECD or ras-p21 in these patients' sera. For both ras-p21 protein and p185erbB ECD, there is an excellent correlation between serum level of these markers and the pretreatment and posttreatment clinical status of the patient. Nonetheless, substantially more correlation studies between tumor size and serum level of oncoproteins remain to be performed. One confounding factor may be that a small tumor may produce large amounts of the marker, whereas larger tumors may produce smaller amounts due to such factors as changes in the oncogenic lesions, affecting which oncoproteins are mutated and/or are overexpressed.

EVALUATION AND CONCLUSIONS

Well-defined pathways for mitogenic signal transduction exist between the membrane and the nucleus of cells. These pathways consist mainly of proteins, mutations in or overexpression of which can give rise to uncontrolled mitogenic signaling and cancer. More recently, based on proteomic approaches, other proteins are being discovered that characteristically are either overexpressed or expressed at much lower levels in the sera of patients with specific types of cancers compared with the levels found in the sera of control groups.

Despite the foregoing caveats in interpretations of elevations of serum levels of oncoproteins or the detection of abnormal forms of these proteins in serum and the need for further correlation studies to be performed, assays for the presence of oncoproteins in serum show exceptional promise for detection of malignant tumors at an early stage and for monitoring their progression, response to therapy, remission, and recurrence.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Brandt-Rauf PW, Pincus MR: Molecular markers of carcinogenesis, *Pharmacol Ther* 77:135–148, 1998.
This is a review of the relevant oncoproteins that have proved to be markers for early tumor detection or that show great promise as biomarkers for early cancer detection.

Pincus MR, Friedman FK: Oncoproteins in the detection of human malignancies, *Mol Diagn* 1:23–38, 2003.
This is a review of oncoproteins as markers for early tumor detection, with an emphasis on oncoproteins as elements of signal transduction pathways.

Segawa Y, Kageyama M, Suzuki S, et al: Measurement and evaluation of serum anti-p53 antibody levels in patients with lung cancer at its initial presentation: A prospective study, *Br J Cancer* 78:667–672, 1998.

This is a valuable study on the use of anti-p53 antibodies as a means for detecting lung cancers.

Slamon DJ, Godolphin W, Jones LA, et al: Studies on the HER-2/neu proto-oncogene in human breast and ovarian cancer, *Science* 244:707–712, 1989.

This landmark paper established Her2/neu as an important factor in breast cancer causation and its use as a prognostic factor for disease progression.

Wulfkuhle JD, Liotta LA, Petricoin EF: Proteomic applications for the early detection of cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 3:267–275, 2003.

This clearly written review of different proteomic approaches in detecting cancer in blood samples explains the bases for these approaches that enable a good understanding of each method.

Zhang JY, Casiano CA, Peng XX, et al: Enhancement of antibody detection in cancer using panel of recombinant tumor-associated antigens, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 12:136–143, 2003.

This important paper shows that using panels of oncoproteins on blood and body fluids is more effective than using single oncoproteins alone in detecting cancer.

REFERENCES

Adler HL, McCurdy MA, Kattan MW, et al: Elevated levels of circulating interleukin-6 and transforming growth factor-beta1 in patients with metastatic prostatic carcinoma, *J Urol* 161:182–187, 1999.

Adler V, Pincus MR, Brandt-Rauf PW, et al: Complexes of ras-p21 with jun-N-kinase and c-jun proteins, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 92:10585–10589, 1995.

Adler V, Pincus MR, Minamoto T, et al: Conformation-dependent phosphorylation of p53, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 94:1686–1691, 1998.

Ahmad F, Lad P, Bhatia S, et al: Molecular spectrum of c-KIT and PDGFRA gene mutations in gastrointestinal stromal tumor: Determination of frequency, distribution pattern and identification of novel mutations in Indian patients, *Med Oncol* 32(1):424, 2015.

Ali MA, Koura BA, el Mashad N, et al: The Bcl-2 and TGF-beta1 levels in patients with chronic hepatitis C, liver cirrhosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma, *Egypt J Immunol* 11:83–90, 2004.

Almoguera C, Shibata D, Forrester K, et al: Most human carcinomas of the endocrine pancreas contain mutant c-K-ras genes, *Cell* 53:549–554, 1988.

Al-Shaer M, Gollapud D, Papgeorgio C: Melanoma biomarkers: Vox clamantis in deserto, *Oncol Lett* 1(3): 399–405, 2010.

Amar S, Glozman A, Chung DL, et al: Selective inhibition of oncogenic ras-p21 in vivo by agents that block its interaction with jun-N-kinase (JNK) and jun proteins: Implications for the design of selective chemotherapeutic agents, *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 41: 79–85, 1997.

Angelopoulou K, Diamandis EP, Sutherland DJ, et al: Prevalence of serum antibodies against the p53 tumor suppressor gene protein in various cancers, *Int J Cancer* 58:480–487, 1994.

Ariad S, Seymour L, Bezwoda WR: Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) in plasma of breast cancer patients: Correlation with stage and rate of progression, *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 20:11–17, 1991.

Ayaru L, Stoeber K, Webster GJ, et al: Diagnosis of pancreaticobiliary malignancy by detection of mini-chromosome maintenance protein 5 in bile aspirates, *Br J Cancer* 98(9):1548–1554, 2008. doi: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604342.

Balogh GA, Mailo D, Nardi H, et al: Serological levels of mutated p53 protein are highly detected at early stages in breast cancer patients, *Experimental and Therapeutic Medicine* 1(2):357–361, 2010. doi: 10.3892/etm_00000056.

Barbacid M: Ras genes, *Ann Rev Biochem* 56:779–827, 1987.

Baron AT, Wilken JA, Haggstrom DE, et al: Clinical implementation of soluble EGFR (sEGFR) as a theragnostic serum biomarker of breast, lung and ovarian cancer, *IDrugs* 12:302–308, 2009.

Baudier J, Delphin C, Grunwald D, et al: Characterization of the tumor suppressor protein p53 as a protein kinase C substrate and a S100b-binding protein, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 89:11627–11631, 1992.

Bazan V, Migliavacca M, Zanna I, et al: Specific codon 13 K-ras mutations are predictive of clinical outcome in colorectal cancer patients, whereas codon 12 K-ras mutations are associated with mucinous histotype, *Ann Oncol* 13(9):1438–1446, 2002.

Bellezza G, Del Sordo R, Colella R, et al: Co-expression of receptors of the HER family correlates with clinical outcome in nonsmall cell lung cancer (NSCLC), *Virchows Arch* 463(5):663–667, 2013. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24013863.

Beretov J, Wasinger VJ, Graham PH, et al: Proteomics for breast cancer urine biomarkers, *Adv Clin Chem* 63:123–167, 2014. http://www-ncbi-nlm-nih-gov.ezproxy2.library.drexel.edu/pubmed/24783353.

Bhatavdekar JM, Patel DD, Vora HH, et al: Circulating markers and growth factors as prognosticators in men with advanced tongue cancer, *Tumour Biol* 14:55–58, 1993.

Bijian K, Mlynarek AM, Balys RL, et al: Serum proteomic approach for the identification of serum biomarkers contributed by oral squamous cell carcinoma and host tissue microenvironment, *J Proteome Res* 8:2173–2185, 2009.

Boonjaraspinyo S, Boonmars T, Wu Z, et al: Platelet-derived growth factor may be a potential diagnostic and prognostic marker for cholangiocarcinoma, *Tumour Biol* 33(5):1785–1802, 2012. doi: 10.1007/s13277-012-0438-8.

Brandt-Rauf PW: Oncogene proteins as biomarkers in the molecular epidemiology of occupational carcinogenesis: The example of the ras oncogene-encoded p21 protein, *Int Arch Occup Environ Health* 63:1–8, 1991.

Brandt-Rauf PW, Chen JM, Marion M-J, et al: Conformational effects in the p53 protein of mutations induced during chemical carcinogenesis: Molecular dynamic and immunologic analyses, *J Protein Chem* 15:367–375, 1996.

Brandt-Rauf PW, Li Y, Long C, et al: Plastics and carcinogenesis: The example of vinyl chloride, *J Carcinog* 11:5, 2012.

Brandt-Rauf PW, Luo JC, Carney WP, et al: The detection of increased amounts of the extracellular domain of the c-erbB-2 oncoprotein in serum during pulmonary carcinogenesis in humans, *Int J Cancer* 56:383–386, 1994a.

Brandt-Rauf PW, Pincus MR, Carney WP: The c-erbB-2 protein in oncogenesis: Molecular structure to molecular epidemiology, *Crit Rev Oncog* 5:313–329, 1994b.

Brandt-Rauf PW, Rackovsky S, Pincus MR: Correlation of the transmembrane domain of the neu oncogene-encoded p185 protein with its function, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 87:8660–8675, 1990.

Brandt-Rauf PW, Smith S, Hemminki K, et al: Serum oncoproteins and growth factors in asbestosis and silicosis patients, *Int J Cancer* 50:881–885, 1992.

Brattstrom D, Bergvist M, Larsson A, et al: Basic fibroblast growth factor and vascular endothelial growth factor in sera from non–small cell lung cancer patients, *Anticancer Res* 18:1123–1127, 1998.

Breuer B, DeVivo I, Luo JC, et al: erbB-2 and myc oncoproteins in sera and tumors of breast cancer patients, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 3:63–66, 1994.

Breuer B, Luo JC, DeVivo I, et al: Detection of elevated c-erbB-2 oncoprotein in the serum and tissue in breast cancer, *Med Sci Res* 21:383–384, 1993.

Carney WP, Hamer PJ, Petit D, et al: Detection and quantitation of the human neu oncoprotein, *Tumor Marker Oncol* 6:53, 1991.

Chakrabarty S, Huang S, Moskal TL, et al: Elevated serum levels of transforming growth factor-alpha in breast cancer patients, *Cancer Lett* 79:157–160, 1994.

Chan AO: E cadherin in gastric cancer, *World J Gastroenterol* 12(2):199–203, 2006.

Chen CH, Lin YS, Lin CC, et al: Elevated serum levels of a c-erbB-2 oncogene product in oral squamous cell carcinoma patients, *J Oral Pathol Med* 33(10):589–594, 2004.

Choi JH, Kim HC, Lim HY, et al: Detection of transforming growth factor-alpha in the serum of gastric carcinoma patients, *Oncology* 57:236–241, 1999.

Coltrera MD, Wang J, Porter PL, et al: Expression of platelet-derived growth factor B-chain and the platelet-derived growth factor receptor beta subunit in human breast tissue and breast carcinoma, *Cancer Res* 55:2703–2708, 1995.

Csontos Z, Nádasi E, Csejtey A, et al: Oncogene and tumor suppressor gene expression changes in the peripheral blood leukocytes of patients with colorectal cancer, *Tumori* 94:79–82, 2008.

Däbritz J, Preston R, Hänfler J, et al: Follow-up study of K-ras mutations in the plasma of patients with pancreatic cancer: Correlation with clinical features and carbohydrate antigen 19-9, *Pancreas* 38:534–541, 2009.

De Kok JB, van Solinge WW, Ruers TJ, et al: Detection of tumor DNA in serum of colorectal cancer patients, *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 57:601–604, 1997.

Del Principe MI, Del Poeta G, Venditti A, et al: Clinical significance of soluble p53 protein in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Haematologica* 89(12):1468–1475, 2004.

DeVivo I, Marion MJ, Smith SJ, et al: Mutant c-Ki-ras p21 protein in chemical carcinogenesis in humans exposed to vinyl chloride, *Cancer Causes Control* 5:273–278, 1994.

Diamandis EP: Point: Proteomic patterns in biological fluids—Do they represent the future of cancer diagnostics?, *Clin Chem* 49:1272–1275, 2003.

Di Nicolantonio F, Martini M, Molinari F, et al: Wild-type BRAF is required for response to panitumumab or cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 26:5705–5712, 2008.

Dowling P, O'Driscoll L, Meleady P, et al: 2-D difference gel electrophoresis of the lung squamous cell carcinoma versus normal sera demonstrates consistent alterations in the levels of ten specific proteins, *Electrophoresis* 28:4302–4310, 2007.

El Azm ARA, Yousef M, Salah R, et al: Serum anti-P53 antibodies and alpha-fetoprotein in patients with non-B non-C hepatocellular carcinoma, *SpringerPlus* 2(1):69, 2013. doi: 10.1186/2193-1801-2-69.

Field JK, Spandidos DA: The role of ras and myc oncogenes in human solid tumours and their relevance in diagnosis, *Anticancer Res* 10:1–22, 1990.

Filiberti R, Marroni P, Neri M, et al: Serum PDGF-AB in pleural mesothelioma, *Tumor Biol* 25:221–226, 2005.

Fontanini G, Fiore L, Bigini D, et al: Levels of p53 antigen in serum of non–small lung cancer patients correlate with positive p53 immunohistochemistry on tumor sections, tumor necrosis and nodal involvement, *Int J Oncol* 5:553, 1994.

Forester K, Almoguera C, Han K, et al: Detection of high incidence of K-ras oncogenes during human colon tumorigenesis, *Nature* 327:298–303, 1987.

Fujimoto K, Ichimori Y, Kakizoe T, et al: Increased serum levels of basic fibroblast growth factor in patients with renal cell carcinoma, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 180:386–392, 1991.

Geddert H, Zerioub M, Wolter M, et al: Gene amplification and protein overexpression of c-erb-b2 in Barrett carcinoma and its precursor lesions, *Am J Clin Pathol* 118:60–66, 2002.

Goessl C, Muller M, Heicappell R, et al: DNA-based detection of prostate cancer in blood, urine, and ejaculates, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 945:51–58, 2001.

Goessl C, Muller M, Straub B, et al: DNA alterations in body fluids as molecular tumor markers for urological malignancies, *Eur Urol* 41:668–676, 2002.

Gogas H, Eggermont AM, Hauschild A, et al: Biomarkers in melanoma, *Ann Oncol* 20(Suppl 6):vi8–vi13, 2009.

Grabowska MM, Day ML: Soluble E-cadherin: More than a symptom of disease, *Frontiers in Bioscience (Landmark Edition)* 17:1948–1964, 2012.

Gupta NP, Sharma N, Kumar R: Nuclear matrix protein 22 as adjunct to urine cytology and cystoscopy in follow-up of superficial TCC of urinary bladder, *Urology* 73:592–596, 2009.

Hamer PJ, LaVecchio J, Ng S, et al: Activated Val-12 ras p21 in cell culture fluids and mouse plasma, *Oncogene* 6:1609–1615, 1991.

Harris L, Fritsche H, Mennel R, et al: American Society of Clinical Oncology 2007 update of recommendations for the use of tumor markers in breast cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 25(33):5287–5312, 2007.

Hautmann S, Eggers J, Meyhoff H, et al: Tumor markers for bladder cancer: Up-to-date study by the Kiel Tumor Bank, *Urologe A* 46:1508–1513, 2007.

Hioki O, Watanabe A, Minemura M, et al: Clinical significance of serum hepatocyte growth factor levels in liver diseases, *J Med* 24:35–46, 1993.

Hofmann G, Balic M, Dandachi N, et al: The predictive value of serum soluble E-cadherin levels in breast cancer patients undergoing preoperative systemic chemotherapy, *Clin Biochem* 46(15):1585–1589, 2013. doi: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2013.06.010.

Holt KH, Kasson BG, Pessin JE: Insulin stimulation of MEK-dependent but ERK-independent SOS protein kinase, *Mol Cell Biol* 16:577–583, 1996.

Hruben, et al: Pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia: A new nomenclature and classification system for pancreatic duct lesions, *Am J Surg Pathol* 25(5):579–586, 2001.

Hughes JH, Cohen MB: Nuclear matrix proteins and their potential applications to diagnostic pathology, *Am J Clin Pathol* 111:267–274, 1999.

Hwang YH, Choi JY, Kim S, et al: Over-expression of c-raf-1 proto-oncogene in liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma, *Hepatol Res* 29:113–121, 2004.

Ii M, Yoshida H, Aramaki Y, et al: Improved enzyme immunoassay for human basic fibroblast growth factor using a new enhanced chemiluminescence system, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 193:540–545, 1993.

Jeng JE, Tsai MF, Tsai HR, et al: Urinary transforming growth factor α and serum α-fetoprotein as tumor markers of hepatocellular carcinoma, *Tumour Biol* 3689-3698:2014. doi: 10.1007/s13277-013-1488-2. [Epub 2013 Dec 30].

Jibiki N, Saito N, Kameoka S, et al: Clinical significance of fibroblast growth factor (FGF) expression in colorectal cancer, *Int Surg* 99(5):493–499, 2014. doi: 10.9738/INTSURG-D-14-00044.1.

Kahlert C, Fiala M, Musso G, et al (2014). Prognostic impact of a compartment-specific angiogenic marker profile in patients with pancreatic cancer. Oncotarget.

Kanda M, Matthei H, Wu J, et al: Presence of somatic mutations in most early-stage pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia, *Gastroenterology* 142:730–733, e9, 2012.

Katayama M, Hirai S, Kamihagi K, et al: Soluble E-cadherin fragments increased in circulation of cancer patients, *Br J Cancer* 69(3):580–585, 1994.

Kath R, Hoffken K, Otte C, et al: The neu-oncogene product in serum and tissue of patients with breast carcinoma, *Ann Oncol* 14:585–590, 1993.

Katoh M, Inagaki H, Kurosawa-Ohsawa K, et al: Detection of transforming growth factor alpha in human urine and plasma, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 167:1065–1072, 1990.

Kattan MW, Shariat SF, Andrews B, et al: The addition of interleukin-6 soluble receptor and transforming growth factor beta1 improves a preoperative nomogram for predicting biochemical progression in patients with clinically localized prostate cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 21(19):3573–3579, 2003. doi: 10.1200/JCO.2003.12.037.

Kaur J, Srivastava A, Ralhan R: Serum p53 antibodies in patients with oral lesions: Correlation with p53/HSP70 complexes, *Int J Cancer* 74:609–613, 1997.

Kelderman S, Heemskerk B, van Tinteren H, et al: Lactate dehydrogenase as a selection criterion for ipilimumab treatment in metastatic melanoma, *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 63(5):449–458, 2014.

Kelly JD, Dudderidge TJ, Wollenschlaeger A, et al: Bladder cancer diagnosis and identification of clinically significant disease by combined urinary detection of Mcm5 and nuclear matrix protein 22, *PLoS ONE* 7(7):e40305, 2012. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0040305.

Kim H-A, Lee JK, Kim E-K, et al: Serum human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 levels as a real-time marker for tumor burden in breast cancer patients, *J Surg Oncol* 109(5):421–425, 2014.

Kim BK, Lee JW, Park PJ, et al: The multiplex bead array approach to identifying serum biomarkers associated with breast cancer, *Breast Cancer Res* 11:R22, 2009.

Klocker EI, Stenzl A, Cronauer MV, et al: Quantitative determination of transforming growth factor-alpha in serum and urine in patients with bladder cancer and its expression in malignant and non-malignant primary epithelial cells, *Proc Am Assoc Cancer Res* 35:A261, 1994.

Kurobe M, Takei Y, Ezawa H, et al: Increased level of basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) in sera of patients with malignant tumors, *Horm Metab Res* 25:395–396, 1993.

Landman J, Chang Y, Kavaler E, et al: Sensitivity and specificity of NMP-22, telomerase and BTA in the detection of human bladder cancer, *Urology* 52:398–402, 1998.

Li Y, Karjalainen A, Koskinen H, et al: p53 autoantibodies predict subsequent development of cancer, *Int J Cancer* 114:157–160, 2004.

Li Y, Karjalainen A, Koskinen H, et al: Serum growth factors in asbestosis patients, *Biomarkers* 14:61–66, 2009.

Lindmark G, Sundberg C, Glimelius B, et al: Stromal expression of platelet-derived growth factor beta-receptor and platelet-derived growth factor B-chain in colorectal cancer, *Lab Invest* 69:682–689, 1993.

Linkov F, Lisovich A, Yurkovetsky Z, et al: Early detection of head and neck cancer: Development of a novel screening tool using multiplexed immunobead-based biomarker profiling, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 16:102–107, 2007.

Liu L, Ahiekpor A, Li L, et al: Increased expression of ErbB-2 in liver is associated with hepatitis B x antigen and shorter survival in patients with liver cancer, *Int J Cancer* 125(8):1894–1901, 2009.

Liu J, Ma Q, Zhang M, et al: Alterations of TP53 are associated with a poor outcome for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: Evidence from a systematic review and meta-analysis, *Eur J Cancer* 48(15):2328–2338, 2012. PMCID: PMC3395767.

Liu L, Shao X, Gao W, et al: The role of human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 as a prognostic factor in lung cancer, *J Thorac Oncol* 5:1922–1932, 2011.

Locker GY, Hamilton S, Harris J, et al: ASCO 2006 update of recommendations for the use of tumor markers in gastrointestinal cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 24(33):5313–5327, 2006.

Ludovini V, Gori S, Colozza M, et al: Evaluation of serum HER2 extracellular domain in early breast cancer patients: Correlation with clinicopathological parameters and survival, *Ann Oncol* 19:883–890, 2008.

Luo JC, Yu MW, Chen CJ, et al: Serum c-erbB-2 oncopeptide in hepatocellular carcinogenesis, *Med Sci Res* 21:305, 1993.

Madsen CV, Steffensen KD, Olsen DA, et al: Serum platelet-derived growth factor and fibroblast growth factor in patients with benign and malignant ovarian tumors, *Anticancer Res* 32(9):3817–3825, 2012.

Megliorino R, Shi F-D, Peng X-X, et al: Autoimmune response to anti-apoptotic protein survivin and its association with antibodies to p53 and c-myc in cancer detection, *Cancer Detect Prev* 29(3):241–248, 2005. doi: 10.1016/j.cdp.2005.03.002.

Meng D, Yuan M, Li X, et al: Prognostic value of K-RAS mutations in patients with non–small cell lung cancer: A systematic review with meta-analysis, *Lung Cancer* 81(1):1–10, 2013.

Milanese G, Dellabella M, Fazioli F, et al: Increased urokinase-type plasminogen activator receptor and epidermal growth factor receptor in serum of patients with prostate cancer, *J Urol* 181:1393–1400, 2009.

Miyanaga N, Akaza H, Ishikawa S, et al: Clinical evaluation of nuclear matrix protein 22 (NMP22) in urine as a novel marker for urothelial cancer, *Eur Urol* 31:163–168, 1997.

Miyanaga N, Akaza H, Tsukamoto S, et al: Usefulness of urinary NMP22 to detect tumor recurrence of superficial bladder cancer after transurethral resection, *Int J Clin Oncol* 8:369–373, 2003.

Molina R, Jo J, Filella X, et al: C-erb-B oncoprotein in the sera and tissue of patients with breast cancer: Utility in prognosis, *Anticancer Res* 16:2295–2300, 1996.

Monstein HJ, Fransen K, Dimberg J, et al: K-ras and B-raf gene mutations are not associated with gastrin- and CCK2-receptor mRNA expression in human colorectal tumour tissues, *Eur J Clin Invest* 34:100–106, 2004.

Moodie SA, Willumsen BM, Weber MJ, et al: Complexes of Ras-GTP with Raf-1 and mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase, *Science* 260:1658–1661, 1993.

Mori S, Mori Y, Mukaiyama T, et al: In vitro and in vivo release of soluble erbB-2 protein from human carcinoma cells, *Jpn J Cancer Res* 81:489–494, 1990.

Morris JP, Wang SC, Hebrok M, et al: KRAS, Hedgehog, Wnt and the twisted developmental biology of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma, *Nat Rev Cancer* 10:683–695, 2010.

Mutch DG, Powell MA, Mallon MA, et al: RAS/RAF mutation and defective DNA mismatch repair in endometrial cancers, *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 190:935–942, 2004.

Nedvidkova J, Nemec J, Stolba P, et al: Epidermal growth factor (EGF) in serum of patients with differentiated carcinoma of thyroids, *Neoplasma* 39:11–14, 1992.

Niman HL, Thompson AM, Yu A, et al: Anti-peptide antibodies detect oncogene-related proteins in urine, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 82:7924–7928, 1985.

Normanno N, Tejpar S, Morgillo F, et al: Implications for KRAS status and EGFR-targeted therapies in metastatic CRC, *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 6:519–527, 2009.

Olsen CC, Schefter TE, Chen H, et al: Results of a phase I trial of 12 patients with locally advanced pancreatic carcinoma combining gefitinib, paclitaxel, and 3-dimensional conformal radiation: Report of toxicity and evaluation of circulating K-ras as a potential biomarker of response to therapy, *Am J Clin Oncol* 32:115–121, 2009.

Pawlikowski M, Cicslak D, Stepien H, et al: Elevated blood serum levels of epidermal growth factor in some patients with gastric cancer, *Endokrynol Pol* 40:149–153, 1989.

Pickup M, Novitskiy S, Moses HL: The roles of TGFβ in the tumour Pickup microenvironment, *Nat Rev Cancer* 13(11):788–799, 2013. doi: 10.1038/nrc3603.

Pierobon M, Wulfkuhle J, Liotta L, et al: Application of molecular technologies for phosphoproteomic analysis of clinical samples, *Oncogene* 34:805–814, 2015.

Pimentel E: *Oncogenes*, 2nd ed, Boca Raton, Fla, 1989, CRC Press.

Pincus MR: Development of new anti-cancer peptides from conformational energy analysis of the oncogenic Ras-p21 protein and its complexes with target proteins, *Front Biosci* 9:3486–3509, 2004.

Pincus MR, Brandt-Rauf PW, Michl J, et al: ras-p21-induced cell transformation: Unique signal transduction pathways and implications for the design of new chemotherapeutic agents, *Cancer Invest* 18:39–50, 2000.

Pincus MR, Chung D, Dykes DC, et al: Pathways for activation of the ras-oncogene-encoded p21 protein, *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 22:323–342, 1992.

Pincus MR, Michl J, Bowne W, et al: Anti-cancer peptides from the ras-p21 and p53 proteins: research advances in cancer. In Mohan RM, editor: *Research advances in cancer*, Kerala, India, 2007, Global Research Network Publishers, pp 65–90.

Polyak K, Weinberg RA: Transitions between epithelial and mesenchymal states: Acquisition of malignant and stem cell traits, *Nat Rev Cancer* 9(4):265–273, 2009. doi: 10.1038/nrc2620.

Qin LX, Tang ZY: The prognostic molecular markers in hepatocellular carcinoma, *World J Gastroenterol* 8:385–392, 2002.

Quaranta M, Divella R, Daniele A, et al: Epidermal growth factor receptor serum levels and prognostic value in malignant gliomas, *Tumori* 93:275–280, 2007.

Rosanelli GP, Wirnsberger GH, Purstner P, et al: DNA flow cytometry and immunohistochemical demonstration of mutant p53 protein versus TPS and mutant p53 protein serum levels in human breast cancer, *Proc Am Assoc Cancer Res* 34:A1353, 1993.

Roy R, Zurakowski D, Wischhusen J, et al: Urinary TIMP-1 and MMP-2 levels detect the presence of pancreatic malignancies, *Br J Cancer* 111(9):1772–1779, 2014. doi: 10.1038/bjc.2014.462.

Ryder SD, Rizzi PM, Volkmann M, et al: Use of a specific ELISA for the detection of antibodies directed against p53 protein in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma, *J Clin Pathol* 4:295–299, 1996.

Sacco R, Leuci D, Tortorella C, et al: Transforming growth factor beta1 and soluble Fas serum levels in hepatocellular carcinoma, *Cytokine* 12:811–814, 2000.

Shariat SF, Casella R, Monoski MA, et al: The addition of urinary urokinase-type plasminogen activator to urinary nuclear matrix protein 22 and cytology improve the detection of bladder cancer, *J Urol* 170:2244–2247, 2003.

Shi T, Fillmore TL, Sun X, et al: Antibody-free, targeted mass-spectrometric approach for quantification of proteins at low picogram per milliliter levels in human plasma/serum, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 109:15395–15400, 2012.

Shimada H, Nakajima K, Ochiai T, et al: Detection of serum p53 antibodies in patients with esophageal squamous cell carcinoma: Correlation with clinicopathological features and tumor markers, *Oncol Rep* 5:871–874, 1998.

Shirai Y, Kawata S, Ito N, et al: Elevated levels of plasma transforming growth factor-beta in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma, *Jpn J Cancer Res* 83:676–679, 1992.

Sidransky D, Von Eschenbach A, Tsai YC, et al: Identification of p53 gene mutation in bladder cancers and urine samples, *Science* 252:706–709, 1991.

Song BC, Chung YH, Kim JA, et al: Transforming growth factor-beta1 as a useful serologic marker of small hepatocellular carcinoma, *Cancer* 94:175–180, 2002.

Sorenson GD, Pribish DM, Valone FH, et al: Soluble normal and mutated DNA sequences from single-copy genes in human blood, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 3:67–71, 1994.

Soussi T, Legros Y, Lubin R, et al: Multifactorial analysis of p53 alteration in human cancer: A review, *Int J Cancer* 57:1–9, 1994.

Stoehr R, Brinkmann A, Filbeck T, et al: No evidence for mutation of B-RAF in urothelial carcinomas of the bladder and upper urinary tract, *Oncol Rep* 11:137–141, 2004.

Stokoe D, MacDonald SG, Cadwallader K, et al: Activation of Raf as a result of recruitment to the plasma membrane, *Science* 275:1463–1467, 1994.

Suppiah A, Greenman J: Clinical utility of anti-p53 autoantibody: Systematic review and focus on colorectal cancer, *World J Gastroenterol* 19(29):4651–4670, 2013. PMCID: PMC3732838.

Tambo M, Higashihara E, Terado Y, et al: Comparison of serum HER2/neu with immunohistochemical HER2/neu expression for the prediction of

biochemical progression in metastatic prostate cancer, *Int J Urol* 16:369–374, 2009.
Tang R, Yeh CY, Wang JY, et al: Serum p53 antibody as tumor marker for follow-up of colorectal cancer after curative resection, *Ann Surg Oncol* 16:2516–2523, 2009.
Tomiya T, Fujiwara K: Serum transforming growth factor-alpha level as a marker of hepatocellular carcinoma complicating cirrhosis, *Cancer* 77:1056–1060, 1996.
Tsai JF, Jeng JE, Chuang LY, et al: Urinary transforming growth factor-beta 1 in relation to serum alpha-fetoprotein in hepatocellular carcinoma, *Scand J Gastroenterol* 32:254–260, 1997.
Tsai-Turton M, Santillan A, Lu D, et al: p53 autoantibodies, cytokine levels and ovarian carcinogenesis, *Gynecol Oncol* 114:12–17, 2009.
Tsui KH, Chen SM, Wang TM, et al: Comparisons of voided urine cytology, nuclear matrix protein-22 and bladder tumor associated antigen tests for bladder cancer of geriatric male patients in Taiwan, China, *Asian J Androl* 9:711–715, 2007.
Uppal G, Ly V, Wang ZX, et al: The utility of BRAF V600E mutation-specific antibody VE1 for the diagnosis of hairy cell leukemia, *Am J Clin Pathol* 143(1): 120–125, 2015.
Virji MA, Rosendale B, Piper M, et al: Circulating levels of a mutant p53 protein in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma, *Proc Am Assoc Cancer Res* 33:A1508, 1992.
Vlasoff DM, Baschinsky DY, De Young BR, et al: C-erb B2 (Her2/neu) is neither overexpressed nor amplified in hepatic neoplasms, *Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol* 10:237–241, 2002.
Vogelstein B, Fearon ER, Hamilton SR, et al: Genetic alterations during colorectal-tumor development, *N Engl J Med* 319(9):525–532, 1988.
Wan PT, Garnett MJ, Roe SM, et al: Mechanism of activation of the RAF-ERK signaling pathway by oncogenic mutations of B-RAF, *Cell* 116:855–867, 2004.
Weiss JV, et al: Soluble E-cadherin as a serum biomarker candidate: Elevated levels in patients with late-stage colorectal carcinoma and FAP, *Int J Cancer* 128(6): 1384–1392, 2011.
Weissfeld JL, Larsen RD, Niman HL, et al: Evaluation of oncogene-related proteins in serum, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 3:57–62, 1994.
Wellbrock C, Ogilvie L, Hedley D, et al: V599EB-RAF is an oncogene in melanocytes, *Cancer Res* 75:2338–2342, 2004.
Wu JT, Astill ME, Zhang P: Detection of the extracellular domain of c-erbB-2 oncoprotein in sera from patients with various carcinomas: Correlation with tumor markers, *J Clin Lab Anal* 7:31–40, 1993.
Wu M, Mao C, Chen Q, et al: Serum p53 protein and anti-p53 antibodies are associated with increased cancer risk: A case-control study of 569 patients and 879 healthy controls, *Mol Biol Rep* 37(1):339–343, 2010. doi: 10.1007/s11033-009-9744-7.
Yazici H, Altun M, Hafiz G, et al: Serum and tissue c-erb B2, bcl-2, and mutant p53 oncoprotein levels in nasopharyngeal cancer, *Cancer Invest* 19:773–778, 2001.
Yeh J, Yeh JC: Transforming growth factor-alpha and human cancer, *Biomed Pharmacother* 43:651–659, 1989.
Yu MW, Chen CJ, Luo JC, et al: Correlations of chronic hepatitis B virus infection and cigarette smoking with elevated expression of neu oncoprotein in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma, *Cancer Res* 54:5106–5110, 1994a.
Yu MW, Luo JC, Brandt-Rauf PW, et al: Correlations of chronic hepatitis B virus infection and cigarette smoking with elevated expression of the neu oncoprotein in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma, *Proc Am Assoc Cancer Res* 35:A1754, 1994b.
Zampino MG, Magni E, Santoro L, et al: Epidermal growth factor receptor serum (sEGFR) level may predict response in patients with EGFR-positive advanced colorectal cancer treated with gefitinib?, *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 63:139–148, 2008.
Zhang J, Xu Z, Yu L, et al: Assessment of the potential diagnostic value of serum p53 antibody for cancer: A meta-analysis, *PLoS ONE* 9(6):e99255, 2014. PMCID: PMC4049633.
Zhang J, Xv Z, Wu X, et al: Potential diagnostic value of serum p53 antibody for detecting esophageal cancer: a meta-analysis, *PLoS ONE* 7:e52896, 2012.
Zheng T, Chen M, Han S, et al: Plasma minichromosome maintenance complex component 6 is a novel biomarker for hepatocellular carcinoma patients, *Hepatol Res* 44(13):1347–1356, 2014. doi: 10.1111/hepr.12303.

CHAPTER 76

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS OF HEMATOPOIETIC NEOPLASMS

Ali Gabali, Martin H. Bluth

ROLE OF CLINICAL MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS IN HEMATOLOGIC CANCERS, 1465

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS OF LEUKEMIAS, 1466

Gene Fusion Concept in Leukemia and the Basis for Reverse-Transcription Polymerase Chain Reaction Analysis, 1466

Acute Myeloid Leukemias, 1467

Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma—B and T Cell Lineage, 1473

Molecular Diagnosis of Myeloproliferative Neoplasms, 1477

NEOPLASTIC DISORDERS ASSOCIATED WITH EOSINOPHILIA, 1480

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS OF NON-HODGKIN LYMPHOMAS, 1481

Rationale for Molecular Genetic Analysis in the Lymphoid Disorders, 1481

Antigen Receptor Gene Rearrangements for Clonality Determination, 1481

Molecular Detection and Significance of Common Lymphoma-Associated Chromosomal Translocations, 1484

EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES IMPACTING MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS AND PROGNOSIS PREDICTION IN HEMATOLYMPHOID NEOPLASIA, 1489

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1491

KEY POINTS

- Overview of the role of molecular investigations in the diagnosis, classification, prognosis, and monitoring of hematolymphoid disorders.
- Detailed summary of the major genetic abnormalities and molecular diagnosis of the acute leukemias and chronic myeloproliferative neoplasms.
- Applications and detailed discussion of molecular minimal residual disease monitoring in chronic myeloid leukemia and acute promyelocytic leukemia in the era of targeted therapeutic options.
- Concept of risk-adapted therapy for optimized management of childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemias.
- Molecular pathologic origins of childhood leukemias.
- Description of antigen receptor gene rearrangements and application of molecular clonality assays to identify monoclonal lymphoid proliferations.
- Detailed summary of the major genetic abnormalities and molecular diagnosis of the non-Hodgkin lymphomas and chronic lymphoid leukemias.
- New research and technology developments that will impact molecular diagnosis and prognosis of hematolymphoid cancers.

ROLE OF CLINICAL MOLECULAR DIAGNOSTICS IN HEMATOLOGIC CANCERS

The diagnosis of hematolymphoid neoplasms continues to undergo a dramatic transformation with the advent and application of new technologies. Whereas traditional morphologic (light microscopic) evaluation of glass slides still occupies the centerpiece of pathologic diagnosis, the judicious application of ancillary methods, such as special cytochemistry, immunohistochemistry, flow cytometry, cytogenetics (including fluorescence in situ hybridization [FISH]), and molecular genetics, has allowed for much-improved diagnostic reproducibility and refinement. The 2008 update of the World Health Organization (WHO) classification of hematopoietic and lymphoid neoplasms (Swerdlow et al, 2008) incorporates genetic abnormalities and clinical information in refining the diagnostic criteria of hematolymphoid neoplasms, including previously described and provisional diseases. The relative ease of sampling sites such as the lymph nodes and bone marrow, as well as the provision of easily disaggregated viable cell samples for analysis, has driven this paradigm of diagnostic evaluation. The nature of the hematolymphoid system is also conducive to relatively easy monitoring of disease status following therapy, which represents another important facet in the management of patients with these illnesses.

Given this plethora of diagnostic tools, what role does molecular genetic evaluation or molecular diagnostics play? There are perhaps four major scenarios in which molecular diagnostic analysis of a hematolymphoid proliferation is important. First, molecular investigation can establish a diagnosis in situations wherein morphologic details and results of other lab tests are inconclusive for malignancy. The presence of specific genetic abnormalities, or the demonstration of tumor genetic "homogeneity" of a cell population (e.g., by cell receptor gene rearrangement studies) can establish the presence of a clonal pathologic process. Second, molecular methods are used to subclassify disease entities. To this end, the current WHO classification of hematologic neoplasms includes molecular characterization as a defining feature of many leukemias and lymphomas (Swerdlow et al, 2008; Vardiman et al, 2009). Next, specific genetic anomalies in hematolymphoid malignancies have important prognostic value, which in turn can influence the initial treatment of certain tumors to produce an optimal clinical outcome. Finally, being potentially of high sensitivity, molecular techniques can be used to assess patients after the onset of therapy by monitoring for the presence and extent of minimal residual disease (MRD). Table 76-1 summarizes some of the key instances in which molecular diagnostic evaluation is sought in hematopathology practice. As the synergy between expanding basic biologic information and rapidly progressing technology continues unabated, the future holds promise for many additional applications of molecular diagnostics in the pathology laboratory, including the prediction of disease susceptibility, severity, or treatment response based on polygenic factors; pharmacogenomic profiling of patients to determine drug sensitivity and toxicity profiles; and the assessment of individual responses to increasingly "targeted" therapies.

This chapter focuses on the background, clinical rationale, and fundamental technical considerations underlying the molecular diagnostic evaluation and monitoring of hematopoietic and lymphoid tumors. Because the

large majority of these laboratory assays are polymerase chain reaction (PCR) based, the emphasis is accordingly placed on methods concerning either DNA or RNA (i.e., reverse-transcription) PCR techniques. Of note, it is apparent that the detection of tumor-specific genetic abnormalities can be achieved by different analytic means—for example, cytogenetics, FISH, or PCR. Although at first glance these various methods may seem redundant, these laboratory techniques should be considered complementary and the choice of methodology is determined by a number of factors, including knowledge of the detection rates, analytic sensitivity, and limitations of various techniques; understanding of the disease pathobiology; the level of interpretive experience and expertise with these procedures; the type of sample; and the phase of the disease under investigation. Table 76-2 indicates comparative analytic sensitivities of the principal modalities used to detect hematolymphoid tumor-related genetic abnormalities.

The increasingly universal need for molecular genetic evaluation of hematolymphoid cancers has initiated earnest attempts to address and achieve better interlaboratory standardization, and such efforts can be expected to continue to improve the benchmarks of sensitivity and specificity in this field. Nonetheless, in the application and interpretation of molecular diagnostic tests, one caveat that cannot be emphasized enough is that the results of these investigations must never be considered in isolation but rather in conjunction with the clinical presentation, morphologic, and additional laboratory data concerning the individual patient. Regardless of the remarkable specificity and sensitivity of molecular markers, the evident complexity of hematolymphoid neoplasia mandates such a fully integrated approach in order to diminish the possibility of diagnostic error.

TABLE 76-1
Applications of Molecular Diagnostics in Hematologic and Lymphoid Neoplasia

Indication	Examples
Diagnosis and subclassification	*JAK2* mutations in myeloproliferative neoplasms *CCND1-IGH@* abnormality in mantle cell lymphoma *PML-RARA* abnormality in APL *FLT3, NPM1,* and *CEPBA* mutations in normal karyotype AML
Determination of tumor clonality	Assessment of abnormal B and T cell lymphoid proliferations
Prognosis and/or therapeutic monitoring	Quantitative PCR monitoring of *BCR-ABL1* mRNA in CML patients on tyrosine kinase inhibitor therapy (e.g., imatinib) Quantitative PCR monitoring of *PML-RARα* mRNA in APL Multiparameter cytogenetic and molecular assessment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia Relapse risk prediction in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemias Outcome prediction of diffuse large B cell lymphoma subtypes by gene expression profiling

ALL, Acute lymphoblastic leukemias; *APL,* acute promyelocytic leukemia; *CML,* chronic myeloid leukemia; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS OF LEUKEMIAS

GENE FUSION CONCEPT IN LEUKEMIA AND THE BASIS FOR REVERSE-TRANSCRIPTION POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION ANALYSIS

The leukemias are hematologic cancers with a diverse pathogenesis and pathobiology. However, a significant proportion of these tumors are characterized by nonrandom, balanced (usually) chromosomal translocations, resulting in the formation of fusion or chimeric genes. In general, although two such fusions are created in this abnormal event (i.e., one on each reciprocal translocated chromosome), typically only one of these derivative loci gives rise to a leukemogenic "hybrid" gene. At the molecular level, the intronic breakpoint and fusion sites in the involved genes are highly variable among patients with the same type of leukemia, although there may be evidence of clustered breakpoint "hotspots" in certain types of leukemia-related rearranging genes. Despite the variability in breakpoint sites in both of the involved genes, a consistent feature of the leukemic gene fusions is the production of a chimeric messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) molecule. This abnormal fusion transcript is further translated to a fusion protein, presumed to be operative in disrupting many cellular pathways involved in regulating normal proliferative capacity, differentiation, and survival in immature (i.e., precursor) marrow stem or progenitor cells.

Although the formation of a translocation fusion gene, such as the well-known *BCR-ABL1* abnormality, is known to be necessary for disease production, results from animal models have suggested that, at least for some types of leukemia, this may not be a sufficient event, requiring secondary incompletely characterized genetic insults as well. This concept has been formalized into a general scheme in which leukemogenic abnormalities are considered to be class I or class II, depending, respectively, on whether they provide a proliferative advantage or disturb the complex processes of hematopoietic differentiation and maturation. In this

TABLE 76-2
Relative Sensitivities of Major Techniques Used to Detect Leukemia or Lymphoma-Associated Abnormalities

Method	Analytic Sensitivity (%)*	Notes
Cytogenetics	5	Global genomic assessment Requires fresh, sterile cells Detects numerical and structural chromosome aberrations Difficult or impossible to detect alterations in DNA below band resolution
FISH	1-5	Targeted assessment of relatively large genomic abnormalities Technically straightforward and rapid; can frequently be performed on interphase nuclei Applicable to a variety of tissue sources Requires rigorous quality standards to avoid false-positive results at low levels of the abnormality in question
SBH	5-10	Targeted assessment for structural abnormalities in genomic DNA Technically laborious and time-intensive Requires samples with well-preserved high molecular weight DNA (e.g., fresh or frozen cells)
PCR	10^{-2}-10^{-4}	Targeted assessment of small genomic or mRNA abnormalities Detection of unique chimeric fusion gene mRNA species is highly sensitive Technically straightforward and rapid but may require post-PCR detection procedures Applicable to a broad range of sample types, including fixed paraffin-embedded tissues Can be optimized for high sensitivity, minimal residual disease monitoring (real-time quantitative PCR), or other specialized applications such as allele-specific discrimination
DNA sequencing (Sanger method)	20-30	Targeted assessment of single nucleotide or small base alterations in template (DNA or RNA) sequences Typically performed on PCR-amplified products Modifications or special methods (e.g., pyrosequencing) can improve sensitivity to 5%

DNA, Deoxyribonucleic acid; *FISH,* fluorescence in situ hybridization; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *RNA,* ribonucleic acid; *SBH,* Southern blot hybridization.
*Generally attainable with the indicated molecular methods, although several technical or biologic factors may influence the lower limits of detection.

conceptualization, the development of leukemia becomes more likely when both class I and class II derangements cooperate to alter the fate of the cell (Ishikawa et al, 2009). In the molecular hematopathology laboratory, most leukemia-related assays are directed toward chimeric gene fusions identification that generally fall into the class II category. However, testing for class I mutations (e.g., *FLT3* internal tandem duplication) has more recently become integral to more comprehensive evaluations. The challenge for the molecular hematopathology laboratory is thus to incorporate an adequate spectrum of assays directed to the detection of both class I and class II category genetic abnormalities, according to the (ever-changing) understanding of disease molecular pathogenesis.

One practical aspect of the chimeric gene concept is that regardless of the variable location of the genomic (DNA-level) breakpoints in a given translocation gene fusion, the presence of this abnormality can be confirmed by detecting the corresponding invariant chimeric mRNA species. In the molecular diagnostic laboratory, we can thus utilize the reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) method to first convert the fusion mRNA transcript to its complementary deoxyribonucleic acid (cDNA) and then amplify this specific molecule. The ability to perform RT-PCR analysis obviates the difficulties imposed by the often very large flanking regions of intronic DNA surrounding the genomic breakpoint-fusion loci, which would normally not be amenable to amplification by standard DNA-based PCR approaches. Furthermore, the presence of such an aberrant mRNA species is highly specific for the disease, in that it should not theoretically be present in normal cells. Table 76-3 lists the major leukemia-associated translocations along with their resultant fusion gene and mRNA products. Two related concepts are important in the further understanding of chimeric genes and transcripts. *Breakpoint heterogeneity* refers to the presence of two (or more) common breakpoint loci in a particular gene, which can be targeted by the translocation event. In some examples, different breakpoint sites may be correlated with a presenting disease phenotype or particular clinical features (e.g., the *BCR-ABL1* fusion in chronic myeloid leukemia [CML] versus acute lymphoblastic leukemia [ALL]), but this is not always the case. Second, alternative exon splicing of a single chimeric transcript may occur, such that additional, related mRNA products may be observed during PCR amplification of the principal target (e.g., the *PML-RARA* fusion in acute promyelocytic leukemia). RT-PCR–based assays require fresh bone marrow aspirate or blood cells, although cryopreserved tissue or cells can also be used effectively for RNA isolation (Gabert et al, 2003). RNA extraction and RT-PCR from paraffin tissue block samples have also been successfully described; however, fixed cellular material is often subjected to degradation or the presence of PCR inhibitors, and consequently a higher PCR detection failure rate. Finally, given the highly sensitive nature of PCR amplification, these laboratory assays must be carefully controlled to avoid false-positive contamination artifacts. The following sections describe the molecular genetic and diagnostic features of the most common, prognostically important leukemic diseases.

ACUTE MYELOID LEUKEMIAS

The importance of tumor genetic markers is reflected in the present WHO classification (Swerdlow et al, 2008), in which acute myeloid leukemias (AMLs) are increasingly defined by their characteristic genetic abnormalities in relation to immunophenotypic features, prognosis, and clinical outcome. The identification of specific genetic markers can thus establish a definitive AML subclassification, provide important prognostic information, guide therapeutic intervention, and reveal insights into tumor biology (Patel et al, 2012).

AML can be broadly classified as being of relatively "favorable," "intermediate," or "poor" prognosis type, based on the type of balanced translocation, degree of tumor cytogenetic complexity, or the nature of specific tumor genetic markers. For example, extensive numerical and structural karyotypic abnormalities, or the presence of "myelodysplasia-background" genetic findings (e.g., abnormalities of chromosomes 5 or 7), are indicative of very aggressive subtypes of AML. Several nonrandom recurring chromosomal translocations characterize another significant subset of AML and can be detected by PCR-based molecular diagnostic techniques. These translocations usually occur without additional cytogenetic findings and often show distinct genotype-phenotype correlations, and many are associated with relatively favorable outcome. In particular, the t(15;17), t(8;21), and inv(16) or related t(16;16) translocations together account for

TABLE 76-3
Common Leukemia-Associated Translocations and Gene Mutations in Myeloid Neoplasms

Genetic Abnormality	Disease Associations	Basic Molecular Pathogenesis	Diagnostic Detection*
t(9;22)/*BCR-ABL1*	Chronic myeloid leukemia (100%) Ph+ adult acute lymphoblastic leukemia (20% to 25%) Ph+ pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia (3%)	Chimeric fusion protein with deregulation of Abl tyrosine kinase; effects on cell proliferation, apoptosis, adhesion	RT-PCR; FISH
JAK2 V617F mutations	Polycythemia vera (>95%); primary myelofibrosis (75%); essential thrombocytosis (50%)	Aberrant activation of cell signaling tyrosine kinase; activation of JAK-STAT pathway	DNA PCR
t(15;17)/*PML-RARA*	Acute promyelocytic leukemia (100%)	Chimeric fusion protein; interference with myeloid maturation and differentiation	RT-PCR; FISH
t(8;21)/*RUNX1-RUNX1T1*	AML (10%)	Chimeric fusion protein affecting the CBF transcriptional pathway	RT-PCR; FISH
inv(16) or t(16;16)/*CBFB-MYH11*	Acute myelomonocytic leukemia with abnormal eosinophils (AMML-Eo)		
FLT3 mutations	AML with normal karyotype (20% to 25%)	ITD or point mutation resulting in constitutive activity of *FLT3* tyrosine kinase and cell proliferation	DNA PCR
NPM1 mutations	AML with normal karyotype (50%)	Complex effects of mutated *NPM1* nuclear/cytoplasmic transport protein	DNA PCR
KIT mutations	Systemic mastocytosis	Aberrant activation of receptor for hematopoietic stem cell factor	DNA PCR
PDGFRA, PDFRB, and *FGFR1* translocations	Myeloid and lymphoid neoplasms with eosinophilia	Deregulation of growth factor receptor tyrosine kinases	FISH > RT-PCR
t(12;21)/*ETV6-RUNX1*	Childhood B-precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia (20%)	Chimeric fusion protein; disruption of CBF transcriptional pathway	RT-PCR; FISH
11q23/*MLL* translocations	Childhood (mainly infant) B-lineage ALL (5%) Adult de novo AML, usually monocytic (subset of cases) Subset of secondary AML (after DNA topoisomerase II agent exposure)	Chimeric *MLL* fusion proteins; disruption of *MLL*-mediated regulation of normal hematopoiesis	FISH; RT-PCR

ALL, Acute lymphoblastic leukemia; *AML,* acute myeloid leukemia; *CBF,* core binding factor; *DNA,* deoxyribonucleic acid; *FISH,* fluorescence in situ hybridization; *ITD,* internal tandem duplication; *MLL,* mixed lineage leukemia; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *RT-PCR,* reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction.
*PCR includes use of specialized methods (e.g., allele-specific PCR or real-time quantitative platforms) and appropriate postamplification detection techniques (e.g., gel/capillary electrophoresis, melting analysis, sequencing).

approximately 25% to 30% of de novo AML in both adults and children. In addition to these three, the current WHO classification recognizes four additional rare, recurrent cytogenetically defined subtypes of AML: t(9;11) *MLLT3-MLL*, t(6;9) *DEK-NUP214*, inv(3) *RPN1-EVI1*, and t(1;22) *RBM15-MKL1* (Swerdlow et al, 2008; Lugthart et al, 2010; Ramchandren et al, 2013).

Historically, consideration of numerical and structural karyotypic abnormalities tended to dominate the discussion of AML subcategorization, because relatively little was known about "cytogenetically normal" cases. In addition, characteristic gene mutations have been recognized that appear to carry important etiologic and prognostic information in the latter group of AML. These alterations include mutations of *CEBPA*, *NPM1*, and *FLT3*. Whereas the relevance of these mutations is most pronounced in cases of AML with normal karyotype, some of these genetic changes (e.g., *FLT3* mutation) may also accompany cases with characteristic translocations, such as the t(15;17), or other cytogenetic abnormalities. Thus, whereas AML with *NPM1* and *CEBPA* mutations have been designated as *provisional entities* in the 2008 WHO classification, *FLT3* alterations, by virtue of their relatively ubiquitous distribution in AML generally, remain an aid to prognostication but not to specific disease subclassification (Marcucci et al, 2005; Swerdlow et al, 2008; Green et al, 2010; Balusu et al, 2011; Parmar et al, 2011; Patel et al, 2012; Man et al, 2012).

This section focuses on the common AML-related molecular genetic abnormalities that are currently considered to be the most clinically relevant due to frequency of occurrence and impact on therapy or prognosis. The major abnormalities in AML are summarized in Table 76-3.

Acute Promyelocytic Leukemia: t(15;17)(q22;q21)/*PML-RARA* Abnormality

Acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL), or AML-M3 (according to the previous French-American-British [FAB] classification of AML) accounts for 5% to 10% of de novo AML. Patients typically present with symptoms from peripheral blood cytopenias (e.g., anemia, absolute neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia) and have a high propensity for life-threatening coagulopathy. Morphologically, APL consists of a proliferation of hypergranular promyelocytes and myeloblasts; however, a microgranular variant form is also frequently encountered (Mantadakis et al, 2008). Immunophenotypically, the cells are characterized by a lack of CD34 and HLA-DR. APL is genetically defined by the presence of the t(15;17)(q22;q12-21) abnormality, resulting in the fusion of the retinoic acid receptor-α gene, *RARα* (also called *RARA*) [17(q21)] with the *PML* gene [15(q22)] to form a *PML-RARA* chimeric gene on the derivative chromosome 15q (Grignani et al, 1994; Jurcic et al, 2007).

The RARA gene product is a subunit of a heterodimeric nuclear receptor for the naturally occurring ligand retinoic acid, or vitamin A. The retinoid nuclear receptor pathway is functional in many aspects of normal cell proliferation and differentiation (Chambon, 1996; Collins, 2008; Mark et al, 2009). *PML* encodes a DNA-binding zinc finger protein and associates with several other proteins in a macromolecular complex, forming discrete nuclear bodies (Dyck et al, 1994; Weis et al, 1994; Reineke & Kao, 2009). This interesting protein appears to have multiple possible cellular functions, including transcriptional regulation, apoptosis, and possibly immune surveillance (Quignon et al, 1998; Wang et al, 1998; Grimwade, 1999; Zhong et al, 2000; Borden & Culjkovic, 2009; Reinecke & Kao, 2009; Gabali, 2013). The hybrid *PML-RARα* protein is clearly involved in disrupting numerous intracellular processes, primarily resulting in a lack of terminal differentiation of neoplastic myeloid precursors beyond the promyelocytic stage. Nonetheless, the significance of APL as a "therapeutic paradigm" for leukemia resides in the ability of pharmacologic doses of *all trans* retinoic acid (atRA) to induce leukemic cell differentiation in vivo. When used in combination with cytotoxic chemotherapy, the synergistic effects of atRA induce complete remission in 90% to 98% of patients and prolonged remission in more than 80% of patients (Tallman et al, 1997; 2002; Clavio et al, 2009; Licht, 2009; Sanz et al, 2009; Patel et al, 2012). This remarkable finding has intensified efforts to identify other avenues for "cytodifferentiative" therapy in AML. Even though the effect of atRA would seem superficially related to the interaction with the RARα moiety in the abnormal *PML-RARα* protein, further investigations have unraveled the basic molecular mechanisms underlying the success of this agent. The normal retinoic acid receptor, when not bound to its retinoic acid ligand, associates with histone deacetylase (HDAC) in a nuclear protein corepressor complex (Guidez et al, 1998; Melnick & Licht, 1999; Lefebvre, 2001; Wei, 2004). This interaction reduces the accessibility of chromatin to transcription factors (and thus locus-specific transcriptional activity), yet is reversible in normal marrow cells upon exposure to physiologic concentrations of retinoic acid. The *PML-RARα* oncoprotein stabilizes and enhances the state of transcriptional repression by this multiprotein complex; however, therapeutic doses of atRA appear to overcome this abnormal condition and relieve the cellular differentiation block (Melnick & Licht, 1999; Hormaeche & Licht, 2007; Collins, 2008; Licht, 2009). Whereas some evidence suggests that the *PML-RARα* oncoprotein may also disrupt the normal proapoptotic functions of PML, thus potentiating transformation via pathways involving both partners in the translocation (*PML-RARA* and *RARA-PML*), the direct contribution of altered PML to leukemogenesis remains controversial (Strudwick & Borden, 2002; Collins, 2008; Brown et al, 2009). Functional haploinsufficiency of one remaining normal *PML* gene may also be important in the pathobiology of APL.

The molecular anatomy of the *PML-RARA* fusion gene and mRNA products in APL is summarized diagrammatically in Figure 76-1, *A*. The *PML* gene exhibits breakpoint heterogeneity in that one of three possible break sites can be encountered in any given patient, involving either intron 3 or intron 6, or occurring within exon 6 (Grignani et al, 1994; Gallagher et al, 1995; Reiter et al, 2003). In contrast, the *RARA* breakpoints are uniformly distributed in intron 2 of the gene. Thus one of three possible *PML-RARα* chimeric mRNAs can result from this genetic fusion: PML exon 6/RARα exon 3 (long (L)-form, or BCR 1), PML exon 3/RARα exon 3 (short (S)-form, or BCR 3) and PML exon 6Δ/RARα exon 3 (variable [V]-form, or BCR 2). The V-form transcript is unique in that the *PML* break occurs within exon 6 and a variable proportion of this exon is retained, although additional nucleotides may be added or deleted (Gallagher et al, 1995; Reiter et al, 2003). Notably, an in-frame fusion mRNA is produced in each case of APL, underscoring the critical requirement for the *PML-RARα* protein in leukemogenesis. The L-form (BCR 1) and S-form (BCR 3) *PML-RARα* fusions are most commonly found in APL (~45% to 50% of cases each), whereas the V-form (BCR 2) is only rarely encountered (~5% of APL). The strategy for RT-PCR amplification of these *PML-RARα* transcripts is depicted in Figure 76-1, *B*, as is a representative diagnostic PCR assay (Fig. 76-1, *C*). Of note, the L-form (BCR 1) and V-form (BCR 2) type transcripts show alternative splicing out of exons 5 and 6, producing three major amplified products when a PML exon 3 primer is employed.

The clinical relevance in detecting the *PML-RARα* fusion abnormality in cases of suspected APL is evident from the efficacy of administering specific therapy (atRA plus anthracycline-based chemotherapy for induction and consolidation) with a high possibility of long-term remission and survival. To this end, despite the tight correlation between the t(15;17)/*PML-RARA* and APL morphology, it is recognized that other rare APL-like myeloid leukemias do occur. These morphologic mimics harbor alternative translocations involving the *RARA* gene with fusion partner genes other than *PML*. Examples of these variants include the t(11;17)/*ZBTB16(PLZF)-RARA*, t(11;17)/*NUMA1-RARA*, t(5;17)/*NPM1-RARA*, and the t(17;17) *STAT5B-RARA* acute myeloid leukemias (Melnick & Licht, 1999; Grimwade et al, 2000; Sainty et al, 2000; Zelent et al, 2001; Redner, 2002, Balusu et al, 2011). Notably, *ZBTB16(PLZF)-RARA* and *STAT5B-RARA* positive leukemias in particular are not responsive to the differentiating effects of atRA and are associated with less favorable outcome (Jansen & Löwenberg, 2001; Redner, 2002). Molecular assays specific for the common *PML-RARα* fusion will not detect these variant transcripts. Other morphologic AML subtypes characterized by increased promyelocytes are similarly atRA unresponsive and also require distinction from true *PML-RARA* positive APL. Several studies have assessed the possible clinical significance of the *PML-RARα* transcript type in APL patients. Both the S-form (BCR 3) and rare V-form (BCR 2) *PML-RARα* fusions have been associated with adverse features such as higher presentation white blood cell count, poor atRA response, and possibly shorter remission duration (Vahdat et al, 1994; Gallagher et al, 1995; 1997; Jurcic et al, 2001; Gupta et al, 2004; Patel et al, 2012); however, the independent prognostic value of molecular subclassification in APL has not been definitively established.

Finally, the *PML-RARα* transcript serves as a valuable molecular disease marker to follow therapeutic response (Fig. 76-1, *D*). Patients with APL treated with combination chemotherapy and atRA have a relatively favorable prognosis, yet disease relapses occur frequently. The use of qualitative RT-PCR methods to detect the *PML-RARα* fusion mRNA (with a typical sensitivity of 10^{-3} to 10^{-4}) was initially found to be a very powerful tool for predicting relapse risk in individual patients (Jurcic et al, 2001; Grimwade & Lo Coco, 2002; Lo Coco et al, 2002). The timing, or phase of disease therapy, is an important consideration in this leukemia. Patients evaluated for *PML-RARα* at the end of induction are often found to be positive, and the predictive value at this time point is not significant. By the end of consolidation therapy, however, PCR positivity is strongly predictive of relapse in patients who have apparently achieved clinical

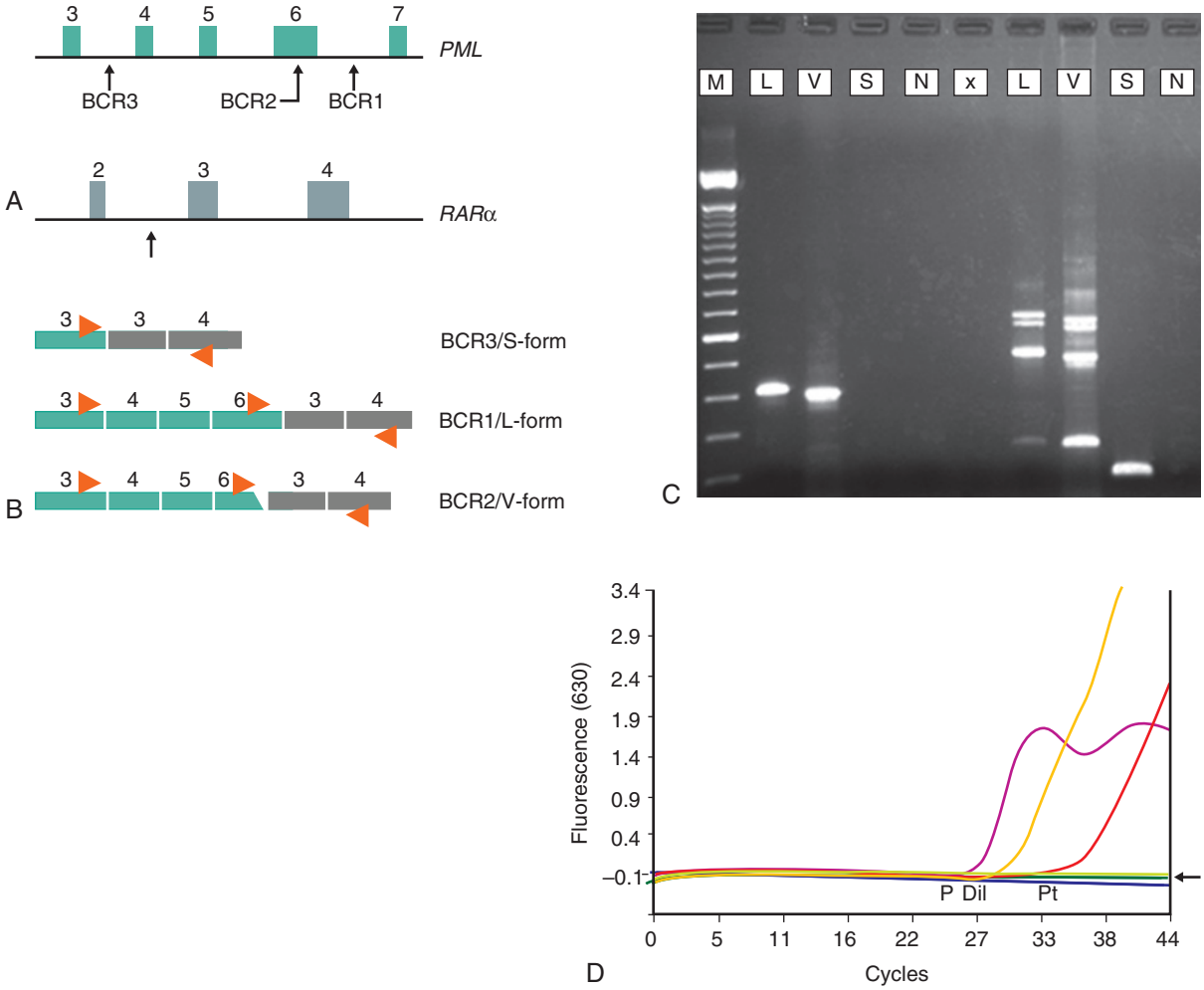


Figure 76-1 **t(15;17)/*PML-RARA* abnormality in acute promyelocytic leukemia. A,** Partial genomic configurations of *PML* and *RARA* genes. Vertical black arrows indicate the three breakpoint sites in the *PML* gene (BCR1, BCR2, BCR3) and the intron 2 breakpoint region in the *RARA* gene. Note that the BCR2 breakpoint occurs within exon 6 of the *PML* gene. **B,** Representations of various *PML-RARα* mRNA transcripts derived from each of the three breakpoint-fusion events. The three transcripts are respectively named according to the length of the chimeric species: long (L)-form for BCR1, short (S)-form for BCR3, and variable (V)-form for BCR2. The BCR2/V-form fusion contains only a portion of PML exon 6, although extra nucleotides may be added or deleted at the junction to maintain an intact *PML-RARα* reading frame. Orange arrows indicate the relative positions of PCR primers to detect these chimeric transcripts by RT-PCR technique. **C,** Representative results from a qualitative RT-PCR analysis to detect the *PML-RARα* abnormality. The gel bands on the left side (up to the empty lane x) indicate PCR products for L-form/BCR1 and V-form/BCR2 detected with primers situated in PML exon 6 and RARα exon 4. Because exon 6 is not present in the S-form/BCR3 transcript, no PCR product is generated, as shown in the corresponding lane. Gel bands to the right of empty lane x show results obtained with a PML exon 3 primer and the same RARα primer. In this case, a more complex banding pattern is seen for L-form/BCR1 and V-form/BCR2 products due to alternative splicing out of PML exon 5 and exons 5 and 6 (the middle and lower PCR product bands in these lanes). The S-form/BCR3 fusion is readily detected with this primer set. Note that for the rare V-form/BCR2-type *PML-RARα*, the PCR products are slightly smaller than the L-form/BCR1 species, due to the absence of some of PML exon 6. **D,** Example of RQ-PCR to monitor for the *PML-RARα* transcript following therapy. The *PML-RARα* transcript abundance is normalized to a control transcript amplification (not shown) for each sample. Short arrow indicates negative and no template controls. The most informative testing interval occurs at the end of consolidation therapy when PCR positive results are associated with a high risk for leukemic relapse. *Dil,* Dilute positive control; *L,* long form/BCR1; *M,* molecular size marker (100 bp); *N,* no template control; *P,* positive control; *Pt,* patient sample; *RQ-PCR,* real-time quantitative PCR methods; *RT-PCR,* reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction; *S,* S-form/BCR3; *V,* V-form/BCR2; *x,* empty lane.

complete remission, in that nearly all such patients will progress to hematologic relapse within months. In contrast, a single PCR-negative measurement at this time point is not necessarily predictive of favorable outcome, in that a significant number of such patients may also suffer relapse. This has led to recommendations for more frequent posttherapy monitoring using sensitive and precise real-time quantitative PCR methods (RQ-PCR). To this end, several APL study groups have reported results of serial *PML-RARα* monitoring using RQ-PCR techniques, and these efforts have shown a benefit for detecting low-level molecular disease and its value in predicting relapse risk (Grimwade & Lo Coco, 2002; Gallagher et al, 2003; Grimwade et al, 2009; 2010; Borthakur et al, 2011). Furthermore, several studies have validated the concept of "salvaging" or retreating patients with molecular residual disease, with good clinical outcomes. Given an array of additional treatment options for APL, including highly effective second-line intervention with arsenic trioxide (As2O3) and autologous or allogeneic stem cell transplantation, molecular residual disease assessment thus forms an integral aspect of the management of all APL patients (Santamaria et al, 2007; Kohno et al, 2008; Lo Coco et al, 2008; Grimwade et al, 2009; Paschka et al, 2012; Patel et al, 2012). Although no formal guidelines have been firmly established for RQ-PCR monitoring of *PML-RARα* in APL, proposed common sampling time points for assessment include the end of induction, the end of consolidation, and then every 2 to 3 months for the first year after therapy, because this is the window during which most relapses occur. Bone marrow aspirate samples are preferred for MRD assessment, in that the peripheral blood is less sensitive for transcript detection following treatment onset.

Core Binding Factor–Related Acute Myeloid Leukemias: t(8;21)(q22;q22)/RUNX1-RUNX1T1 and Inv(16)(p13q22) or t(16;16)(p13;q22)/CBFB-MYH11 Abnormalities

Acute myeloid leukemias with the t(8;21)(q22;q22) and inv(16)(p13q22) or related t(16;16)(p13;q22) cytogenetic abnormalities together account for approximately 11% to 18% of de novo cases (Schnittger et al, 2007; Cheng et al, 2009). Core binding factor (CBF)–related AML cases are roughly evenly distributed between those with the t(8;21) and cases with inv(16)/t(16;16) (Dombret et al, 2009). Whereas the t(8;21) is generally associated with AML showing maturation (FAB type AML-M2), the inv(16) and t(16;16) are highly correlated with acute myelomonocytic leukemia with abnormal eosinophils (FAB type AML-M4Eo) (Le Beau et al, 1983; Cheng et al 2009). Clinically, these genetically defined AML subtypes are responsive to chemotherapy (especially high-dose cytarabine regimens) and are considered to be prognostically favorable compared with AML in general (Appelbaum et al, 2006; Dombret et al, 2009; Paschka et al, 2012; Patel et al, 2012).

Although different respective leukemia phenotypes derive from these translocations, a remarkable and common pathobiologic feature of both the t(8;21) and inv(16) or t(16;16) leukemias is disruption of the CBF transcriptional regulatory pathway (Speck et al, 1999; Paschka, 2008). CBF is a heterodimeric transcription factor that consists of a DNA binding α-subunit (CBFα) and a peptide-interacting β-subunit (CBFβ), which acts to stabilize CBFα at sites of DNA interaction (Fig. 76-2). In normal cells, CBF acts at "core" enhancer sequences in a number of genes required for proper myeloid and lymphoid cell differentiation and/or maturation. The binding of CBF facilitates the access of other transcription factor complexes to these chromatin sites, in part through increased acetylation of DNA-bound histone proteins by histone acetyltransferases (Lorsbach & Downing, 2001; Yamagata et al, 2005). In human acute myeloid leukemias with the t(8;21), the *RUNX1* gene (formerly designated *AML1*, or *CBFA2*) encoding an isoform of CBFα is joined to a putative transcription factor, *RUNX1T1* (formerly *ETO*, or *MTG8*) to form the *RUNX1-RUNX1T1* fusion (Downing, 1999; Peterson et al, 2007; Patel et al, 2012). In the case of the inv(16) or t(16;16), the gene producing CBFβ (i.e., *CBFB*) is juxtaposed to a smooth muscle myosin heavy chain gene *MYH11* to form the hybrid *CBFB-MYH11* (Liu et al, 1995; Mrózek et al, 2008; Pratcorona et al, 2012). In either case, profound disruption of the normal cellular differentiation program is thought to be central to the causation of acute leukemia. The prominence of CBF pathway alterations in leukemogenesis is additionally emphasized by the finding of *RUNX1* gene translocations in several other types of leukemia and myelodysplasia (see Fig. 76-2), including the t(12;21)/*ETV6-RUNX1* abnormality, the most common single genetic abnormality in pediatric ALL.

From a mechanistic viewpoint, the RUNX1-RUNX1T1 leukemic fusion protein is thought to act in a dominant negative manner to normal RUNX1 (i.e., CBFα) by recruiting or stabilizing elements of transcriptional repression, including histone deacetylase complexes, at critical DNA sites (Lorsbach & Downing, 2001; Yamagata et al, 2005). Normal gene expression patterns are also disrupted by the altered affinity of the abnormal fusion protein for specific core enhancer sequences, including an increased propensity to bind sites with such sequences in duplicate

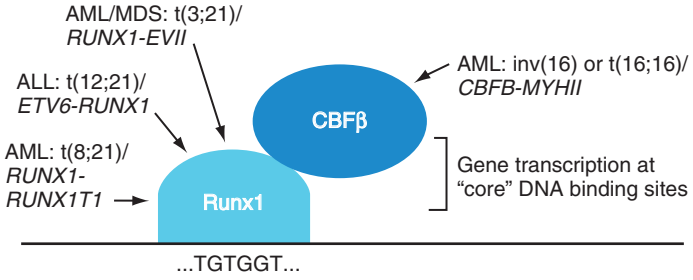


Figure 76-2 Disruption of the CBF transcriptional pathway in leukemogenesis. This schematic illustrates the central role of the core binding factor transcriptional pathway in leukemogenesis. Both components of the heterodimeric CBF are targeted for disruption in a variety of acute lymphoblastic and myeloblastic leukemias. Of these, the t(8;21)/*RUNX1-RUNX1T1* and inv(16) or t(16;16)/*CBFB-MYH11* account for nearly 20% of de novo AML cases, whereas the t(12;21)/*ETV6-RUNX1* is found in 20% of pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemias. (Alternative gene nomenclature: *RUNX1 = AML1 = CBFA2; RUNX1T1 = ETO = MTG8; ETV6 = TEL*). *AML*, Acute myeloid leukemia; *CBF*, core binding factor.

(Okumura et al, 2008). CBFβ-MYH11 chimeric protein sequesters normal CBFα protein in the cytosol, thereby abrogating heterodimeric CBF assembly in the nucleus, but may also create an abnormally repressive transcriptional complex in a manner analogous to that of *RUNX1-RUNX1T1* (Shigesada et al, 2004; Pratcorona et al, 2012). In either case, the resultant inhibition of transcription at key genes alters the genetic program for normal proliferation and differentiation in hematolymphoid stem or progenitor cells.

In keeping with the concept outlined previously that an individual genetic aberrancy is of itself not likely sufficient for carcinogenesis, transgenic mice engineered to conditionally express a *RUNX1-RUNX1T1* oncogene develop acute myeloid leukemia only on subsequent exposure to a promoting mutagen (Lorsbach & Downing, 2001; Peterson et al, 2007; Müller et al, 2008). In CBF leukemias, the pathognomonic translocations create a block in cellular differentiation (class II mutations), but affected cells often acquire secondary class I mutations that endow them with enhanced proliferative capacity. Indeed, there is a particularly strong association in CBF leukemias with secondary mutations to the gene encoding the c-KIT tyrosine kinase (stem cell factor receptor), a potent regulator of cell growth. Up to half of CBF leukemias carry *KIT* mutations; in contrast, approximately 5% of all AML cases show such mutations (Müller et al, 2008). Many of these *KIT* mutations involve the D816 "hot-spot" amino acid (that is also affected in systemic mastocytosis), but mutations have been described in other exons as well. The presence of *KIT* mutations in CBF leukemias has been associated with increased relapse risk and, in some studies, poorer overall survival, although the latter finding remains somewhat controversial at present (Cairoli et al, 2006; Paschka et al, 2006; Mrózek et al, 2008; Müller et al, 2008; Faderl et al, 2011). To date, the routine clinical utility of *KIT* mutation testing in CBF leukemias currently awaits validation by larger trials. Notably, deregulation of c-KIT expression as a consequence of *KIT* mutations in these leukemias may present a rational therapeutic target, given that the 5-year-survival for CBF leukemia patients, albeit better than for AML in general, does not substantially surpass 50%.

The molecular rearrangements underlying the *RUNX1-RUNX1T1* fusion are such that the breakpoint-fusion sites invariably involve the same limited set of intron regions in both genes, resulting in a consistent in-frame RUNX1-RUNX1T1 mRNA molecule in each patient with this type of AML, although some degree of variant transcripts derived from alternative splicing and differential promoter usage can also be seen (Zhang et al, 2002; Lafiura et al, 2007; Pratcorona et al, 2012). In contrast, standard RT-PCR detection of the CBFβ-MYH11 chimeric transcript is complicated by the potential for marked breakpoint heterogeneity, mainly in the *MYH11* gene, as well as by rare alternate breakage sites described in *CBFB*. In all, more than 10 CBFB-MYH11 fusion transcript forms have been identified to date (Liu et al, 1995; Viswanatha et al, 1998; Kadkol et al, 2004; Schnittger et al, 2007). Despite this complexity, the *CBFB-MYH11* gene fusion can be readily detected by RT-PCR, because approximately 90% of these tumors harbor the so-called "type A" chimeric mRNA, characterized by fusion of *CBFB* nucleotide 495 to *MYH11* nucleotide 1921 to form a transcript of relatively short length (Schnittger et al, 2007). More comprehensive PCR strategies have also emerged to detect the majority of the other rare *CBFB-MYH11* fusion types, each of which account for the remainder of cases of inv(16) or t(16;16) AML (Kadkol et al, 2004). RT-PCR analysis for the *CBFB-MYH11* abnormality is often advantageous, in that standard cytogenetic interpretation may be uninformative in some cases (Merchant et al, 2004; Monma et al, 2007). In this context, it is possible, although unlikely, that a case with a true non–type A *CBFB-MYH11* fusion could be negative by both conventional cytogenetic and molecular analysis, if karyotyping fails to detect a cryptic translocation and RT-PCR technique targets only the type A transcript; this possibility underscores the general importance of maintaining awareness of the limitations of a specific molecular assay, as well as the central role that morphologic assessment must play even in the molecular era. Nevertheless, given the generally more favorable clinical outcome for both of these AML subtypes, molecular diagnosis can play a significant role both in initial identification and disease monitoring following treatment (Pratcorona et al, 2012).

Acute Myeloid Leukemia with Other Translocations

AML with 11q23/MLL

In AML the presence of rearranged *MLL* gene is considered an unfavorable prognostic indicator and is observed in AML, B-ALL (further discussed below), and myelodysplastic syndrome. The translocated *MLL* gene is reported in de novo AML, around 3% to 4%, as well as in therapy-related acute myeloid leukemia (t-AML). Numerous partners have been

reported to partner with the *MLL* gene, but in around 80% of cases, the partner will include t(4;11)(q21;q23)/*AF4-MLL*, t(9;11)(q21;q23)/*MLLT3-MLL*, or t(11;19)(q23;p13)/*MLLT1-MLL*. The latter two *MLL* gene partners are also the most common balanced translocation involving the *MLL* gene in t-AML, particularly in patients with a previous, relatively short history of receiving topoisomerase II inhibitor therapy. The most common breakpoints reported in the translocated *MLL* gene are present between exon 5 and 11 of the gene. Some of the translocations/insertions can be too small and cryptic, thus limiting their detectability by conventional karyotyping. FISH analysis, using break-apart probes, is widely used to detect *MLL* abnormalities and can detect gene amplification or mutant *MLL* when the partner is unknown. RT-PCR is the most sensitive approach for detecting specific subtypes of *MLL* rearrangements when the partner gene is known (Ramchandren et al, 2013).

AML with t(6;9)(p23;q34)/DEK-NUP214

Acute myeloid leukemia with t(6;9)(p23;q34)/DEKNUP214 is a distinctive entity in the current WHO 2008 classification of hematopoietic malignancies and is identified in around 1% to 2% of acute myeloid leukemia. Characteristically, these AML cases are seen in children and younger adults and are associated with significant multilineage dysplasia, absolute basophilia in bone marrow, and/or peripheral blood, and the myeloblasts may express terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) protein. The presence of this translocation in AML is considered a poor prognostic indicator and tends to be accompanied by *FLT3*-ITD mutation. Detection of such translocations can be easily achieved by RT-PCR because the breakpoints in both genes are constant (Ramchandren et al, 2013).

AML with inv(3)(q21q26.2) or t(3;3)(q21;q26.2)/RPN1-EVI1

Recurring inv(3)(q21q26.2) or t(3;3)(q21;q26.2) is observed primarily in around 1% to 2% of acute myeloid leukemia and results in the formation of RPN1-EVI1 gene transcript that impairs cellular proliferation and differentiation. Around 10% to 20% of the patients with this translocation have peripheral thrombocytosis and dysplastic changes involving granulocytic and megakaryocytic series. This type of leukemia may be preceded by a myelodysplastic picture with or without chromosomal abnormalities, more commonly involving chromosome 7 than chromosome 5. Therefore, the presence of this translocation is critical for diagnosing this condition. However, t(1;3)(p36.3;q21.1), t(3;21)(q26.2;q22.1), t(2;3)(p15;q26.2), and t(3;12)(q26.2;p13) are excluded because they are more associated with myelodysplastic syndrome. The gene transcript can be detected by RT-PCR as well as by FISH analysis (Ramchandren et al, 2013).

AML (Megakaryoblastic) with t(1;22)(p13;q13)/RBM15-MKL1

This entity of AML is reported in around 1% of de novo AML. The classification of this AML is strict in that it occurs in non–Down syndrome and children younger than age 3. The translocation results in the formation of RBM15-MKL1 fusion transcript that causes defects in megakaryoblastic proliferation and differentiation. The bone marrow demonstrates increased megakaryoblast positive for CD41 and CD61, with increased bone marrow fibrosis. This AML is associated with poor outcome, and most patients present with hepatosplenomegaly. The t(1;22) can be detected by conventional cytogenetic or FISH analysis. However, some laboratories are using RT-PCR to identify the chimeric mRNA (Ramchandren et al, 2013).

Acute Myeloid Leukemias with FLT3, NPM1, *and* CEBPA *Gene Mutations*

The current WHO classification of AML has been broadened to include additional entities characterized by specific gene mutations (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Chief among these with regard to diagnostic and clinical significance are alterations of *FLT3*, *NPM1*, and *CEBPA*. These gene mutations involve relatively small-scale modifications to the specific DNA sequences, including short insertions, deletions, or single base pair changes, and therefore cannot be detected by conventional cytogenetic or FISH techniques. AML with gene mutations usually are characterized by the presence of a normal tumor karyotype and are discussed here in this context; however, similar mutations can also accompany AML with recurrent translocations or other cytogenetic abnormalities. Notably, the characteristic "genotype-phenotype" correlations among morphologic, clinical, and genetic findings observed in AML with recurrent translocations are not as obviously encountered in AML with *FLT3*, *NPM1*, or *CEBPA* gene mutations. Among the group of AML with gene mutations, *FLT3* is an adverse prognostic factor, whereas *NPM1* and *CEBPA* mutations indicate an outcome somewhat better than for AML in general (Dufour et al, 2012). Complicating this scenario is the fact that a significant subset of normal karyotype AML may harbor two or more gene mutations, producing variable effects on tumor prognosis (Grossman et al, 2011). Most significantly, *FLT3* and *NPM1* mutations may occur together, in which case the relative outcome benefit of the *NPM1* mutation is abrogated by the coexisting *FLT3* mutation. Furthermore, if these mutations are detected in the setting of cytogenetic abnormalities, or in other infrequent combinations, the prognostic significance is less clearly established. Whereas testing for *FLT3*, *NPM1*, and *CEBPA* gene mutations is currently indicated in cytogenetically normal AML cases, molecular genetic assays for these mutations should ideally not be considered in isolation. As noted earlier, *FLT3* mutation was not designated as a specific subtype of AML in the 2008 WHO classification, and cases of AML with mutated *NPM1* or *CEBPA* remain only provisional diagnostic entities at present (Green et al, 2010; Taskesen et al, 2011; Balusu et al, 2011).

FLT3 *Mutations in Acute Myeloid Leukemia*

Expression of the *FLT3* gene (Fms-like tyrosine kinase 3; also known as *FLK2* and *STK1*) produces a membrane-spanning signal transduction protein of the receptor tyrosine kinase (RTK) type III family, whose members also include the platelet-derived growth factor receptor (PDGFR) genes and the *KIT* gene (Agnes et al, 1994; Small, 2008; Fischer et al, 2010). *FLT3* receptor-ligand interactions are important for the maintenance and propagation of early progenitor cells in normal myeloid and lymphoid hematopoiesis. Not surprisingly, the wild type receptor protein is also expressed in the majority of AML and B-lineage ALLs, emphasizing its role in the survival and proliferation of immature hematopoietic cells (Gilliland & Griffin, 2002; Stirewalt & Radich, 2003). *FLT3* mutations in AML most frequently take the form of internal tandem duplications (*FLT3*-ITD) of part of the coding region for the juxtamembrane portion of this tyrosine kinase, producing an abnormal, constitutively active *FLT3* protein. All ITDs preserve an intact reading frame, despite the introduction of additional nucleotides, consistent with abnormal activation of a largely functional protein. A second type of activating lesion involves point mutation of *FLT3* at amino acid sites D835 or I836 in the "activation loop" domain of the protein, *FLT3*-TDK (Yamamoto et al, 2001; Bacher et al, 2008). The constitutively active *FLT3* tyrosine kinase initiates increased activity within its downstream signaling cascade, which in turn provides a pro-proliferative stimulus to the myeloid cell (Kontzias et al, 2012). Thus *FLT3* belongs to the "class I" group of AML-related genetic abnormalities. These *FLT3* gene mutations are together estimated to occur in 20% to 40% of adult AML (as well as a smaller number of pediatric AML, therapy-related AML, and myelodysplasias), and appear to be distributed among all morphologic subtypes. *FLT3* mutations are consequently one of the most common recurrent abnormal genetic findings encountered in AML (Pozdnyakova et al, 2008). *FLT3*-ITD mutations are most frequently observed in several cytogenetic settings, including t(15;17) *PML-RARA*, t(6;9) *DEK-NUP214*–associated AML, and in many cytogenetically normal cases; this suggests a key role for this genetic aberration in the pathophysiology of these subsets of AML (Schnittger et al, 2002; Thiede et al, 2002; Green et al, 2010).

In general, the presence of *FLT3* gene mutations in AML has been associated with poor prognosis, and the prognostic impact of *FLT3* mutations is particularly well established in cytogenetically normal cases (Kottaridis et al, 2001; Zwaan et al, 2003; Schlenk et al, 2008; also reviewed in Stirewalt & Radich, 2003). More refined prognostic information appears to be derived from an assessment of the "gene dosage," or ratio of *FLT3*-ITD relative to wild type allele (*FLT3*-ITD : WT), with higher ratios correlated with poorer clinical outcome (Thiede et al, 2002; Baldus et al, 2006; Meshinchi et al, 2006; Green et al, 2010). Elevated *FLT3*-ITD : WT ratios could possibly arise from gene amplification of the ITD allele, biallelic mutations, or from the presence of a more prevalent subclone of leukemic cells with the *FLT3*-ITD (Stirewalt & Radich, 2003). However, some caveats remain notable regarding *FLT3* mutations. Although the prognostic impact of *FLT3*-ITD mutations is well established, the influence of *FLT3*-TKD mutations remains controversial (Fröhling et al, 2002; Moreno et al, 2003; Yanada et al, 2005; Mead et al, 2007). Recent data suggest that *FLT3*-TKD mutations have no effect on prognosis in AML overall but may have differential effects on outcomes (i.e., better or worse) in particular subgroups of AML (Bacher et al, 2008). AML with *FLT3*-ITD and *FLT3*-TKD mutations also have distinct gene expression profiles, suggesting that these two mutations, although within the same gene, may act in biologically and perhaps prognostically dissimilar ways (Neben et al, 2005). The value of additional screening for *FLT3*-TKD mutations in the molecular hematopathology laboratory therefore awaits a clearer understanding of the clinical significance of this molecular target. Second, the role of cooperating *FLT3* mutations in APL is well recognized and has

been associated with proliferative features, such as leukocytosis (Callens et al, 2005); however, APL patients with *FLT3* mutations do not have a significantly different outcome than those without, and mutation analysis is thus not routinely recommended in the setting of APL.

In contrast to the situation for translocation fusion genes with chimeric mRNA transcripts, *FLT3*-ITD can be detected by PCR amplification of genomic DNA. Amplification of exons 14 and 15 of *FLT3* can identify the ITD, because these are variably larger in fragment size than expected for this region in the wild type gene. The presence of an ITD is typically established by PCR product sizing—for example, using capillary electrophoresis of fluorescent PCR amplicons. Different molecular approaches are employed to detect TKD mutations, including DNA PCR followed by amplicon digestion with informative restriction endonucleases, direct sequencing, or other sequence-specific methods.

NPM1 *Mutations in Acute Myeloid Leukemia*

NPM1, which encodes the protein nucleophosmin, is mutated in 50% to 60% of AML with a normal karyotype (Falini et al, 2005; Balusu et al, 2011; Falini et al, 2013). Many of these leukemias are characterized by a lack of CD34 antigen expression and features of monocytic differentiation. *NPM1* is also the partner gene in the translocation characteristic of an unrelated hematologic malignancy—anaplastic large cell lymphoma (ALCL)—suggesting its broader importance in fundamental hematopoietic signaling pathways. Normal cellular nucleophosmin is largely present within the nucleolus, but the protein operates as a "shuttle," escorting proteins, particularly ribosomal subunits, between the nucleus and the cytoplasm (Yun et al, 2003; Yu et al, 2006). Nucleophosmin also participates in cell cycle regulation by virtue of its ability to activate, via both direct and indirect mechanisms, p53 and other proteins involved in cell cycle control (Falini et al, 2007; Balusu et al, 2011; Falini et al, 2011; 2013). Yet another task of this multifaceted protein is the control of centrosome duplication before mitosis (Tsou & Stearns, 2006), and experimental depletion of *NPM1* results in improper chromosome alignment, abnormal centrosomes, and disorganization of mitotic spindles (Amin et al, 2008). *NPM1* mutations in AML involve small insertions of variable length and sequence in a specific region of the gene, at 5q35, producing a frameshift that alters the amino acid sequence at the C-terminus of the protein. This portion of nucleophosmin carries a nuclear localization signal (NLS) important for its nuclear retention. The altered protein, lacking the NLS and incorporating instead a nuclear export signal, is aberrantly retained in the cytoplasm (Chen et al, 2006; Balusu et al, 2011). The exact mechanisms by which cytoplasmic nucleophosmin contributes to leukemogenesis remain unclear, but the loss of the usual intranuclear interactions between nucleophosmin and cell cycle control proteins and tumor suppressor proteins (e.g., p19Arf) is hypothesized to play an important role in transformation (Falini et al, 2007). The presence of mutated *NPM1* is significantly associated with a relatively good prognosis in normal karyotype AML, but only in the absence of *FLT3* (Schlenk et al, 2008). However, nearly 40% of *NPM1* mutated AML cases harbor a concomitant *FLT3* mutation, and these patients have an inferior prognosis, essentially similar to AML with *FLT3* mutations alone (Baldus et al, 2007).

Although the cytoplasmic localization of nucleophosmin in *NPM1*-mutated AML cases presents a potentially attractive target for simple detection via immunohistochemistry, such a technique may be insufficient for accurate prognostication based on the lack of quantitative standards and the problem of tumor heterogeneity (Konoplev et al, 2009). Therefore, molecular analysis is the preferred method for identifying *NPM1* mutations. More than 25 mutations (all heterozygous) have been identified affecting exon 12 (Konoplev et al, 2009). The most common mutation, labeled type A, is seen in up to 80% of *NPM1* positive cases and involves the insertion of the tetranucleotide sequence TCTG at positions 956 to 959 of the gene (Falini et al, 2007; Balusu et al, 2011). Because these *NPM1* exon 12 mutations change the length of the DNA sequence relative to wild type and that *NPM1* mutation is stable over the course of the disease, standard PCR amplification of the genomic region paired with fluorescent product size analysis by capillary electrophoresis suffices to detect the change. A distinct advantage of this strategy is that the same method can be applied to the detection of *FLT3*-ITD mutations, simplifying the technical approach to these genetic abnormalities; as indicated, *NPM1* analysis should always be performed in conjunction with *FLT3* testing to provide accurate prognostic information (Didier et al, 2008; Falini et al, 2011; Dolnik et al, 2012).

CEBPA *Mutations in Acute Myeloid Leukemia*

Acute myeloid leukemias with mutations of the CCAAT/enhancer binding protein α (also called *CEBPA*) gene, at 19q13.1, represent a third distinct group of tumors that are included in the 2008 WHO AML classification. *CEBPA* encodes a transcription factor essential to granulocytic differentiation, such that the production of mature granulocytes does not occur in its absence (Koschmieder et al, 2009). Corollary functions of normal *CEPBA* protein include transcriptional repression of genes involved in nonhematopoietic programs and the promotion of cell cycle arrest as a component of terminal differentiation. Although mutations of *CEPBA* are thought to promote leukemogenesis by blocking granulocytic differentiation and proliferation control, the exact pathogenetic mechanisms remain to be elucidated. Notably, some families with an inherited predisposition to the development of AML carry germline *CEBPA* mutations (Renneville et al, 2009a, 2009b; Dufour et al, 2012). Approximately 15% to 20% of cytogenetically normal cases of AML carry the *CEBPA* mutation (Baldus et al, 2007; Taskesen et al, 2011). In this setting, *CEBPA* mutations are associated with a relatively favorable prognosis (Fröhling et al, 2004; Bienz et al, 2005; Schlenk et al, 2008). Although the significance of *CEBPA* mutations in other types of AML is not completely clear, data suggest that the beneficial prognostic effect of *CEBPA* mutations applies only in cases with normal karyotype and without *FLT3*-ITD mutation (Renneville et al, 2009a, 2009b; Grossman et al, 2011). Paradoxically, though, coexisting *FLT3*-TKD mutations in particular may not affect the positive impact of mutated *CEBPA* (Bacher et al, 2008; Taskesen et al, 2011). Furthermore, studies suggest that the improved outcome in *CEBPA* mutation-positive AML appears to be limited only to those cases carrying biallelic mutations (Dufour et al, 2012). AML with single *CEBPA* allele mutation may have more risk for *FLT3*-ITD mutation (Wouters et al, 2009b; Green et al, 2010; Taskesen et al, 2011).

Prototypical *CEBPA* mutations are found widely separated within both N- and C-terminal regions of the gene, in contrast to the more clustered localization of mutations in *FLT3* and *NPM1*. The N-terminal mutations prevent translation of the full-length p42 isoform, but an alternative start site downstream from the mutated N-terminal site permits continued production of a shorter p30 isoform (Wouters et al, 2009b; Dufour et al, 2012). In contrast, C-terminal mutations are in frame and are thought to impair protein function. Other mutations have been described throughout the intervening region. Consequently, molecular detection strategies must be capable of detecting many mutations over a potentially wide area. Direct sequencing of RT-PCR amplified *CEBPA* mRNA, both with and without initial screening via high-resolution melting curve analysis, has been successfully employed in this regard (Ahn et al, 2009; Rázga et al, 2009; Taskesen et al, 2011; Dufour et al, 2012).

Other Gene Mutations in Acute Myeloid Leukemias

Mutations involving many other genes, including *WT1* (see below), *MLL*, *TET2*, *JAK2*, *IDH1/IDH2*, *EZH2*, *PLK1*, *NRAS*, and *KRAS*, have been associated with prognostic or biologic importance in AML. In addition, abnormal gene expression patterns of *BAALC*, *ERG*, and *MN1* have also been tied to prognosis (Baldus et al, 2007; Ernst et al, 2010; Dang et al, 2010; Abbas et al, 2010; Hart et al, 2011; Chotirat et al, 2012; Ernst et al, 2012; Weissman et al, 2012; Benetatos et al, 2013). As this list continues to expand, a major challenge for the diagnostician and clinician will be in the rational interpretation of potentially many interacting genetic factors in order to determine appropriate risk stratification and therapy options for individual AML patients. As suggested from the inherent complexity of simultaneously assessing the three relatively common mutations considered previously (*FLT3*, *NPM1*, and *CEBPA*), the impact of multiple cooperating genetic events requires sophisticated bioinformatics analyses applied to well-designed and sufficiently powered clinical studies. Basically, these mutations are detected by PCR amplification and mutational analysis by sequencing and by comparison of these sequences with the published unmutated sequence (Ramchandren et al, 2013). The optimal strategy for evaluation of gene mutations in AML will thus continue to evolve as additional clinical data emerge (Hatzimichael et al, 2013).

WT1 Mutations in Acute Myeloid Leukemias

Wilms' Tumor 1 gene (WT1) is a zinc finger transcription factor, located at 11p13 allele, which is expressed normally by hematopoietic stem cells and embryonic kidney cells. Wild type WT1 is suggested to have tumor suppressing properties, and various gene mutations are identified in different malignancies, including those of hematopoietic origin. WT1 mutations are reported in about 10% to 14% of AML, and most mutations are located in exons 7 and 9 at the "hot spot" Cys-His zinc finger domains. Mutated WT1 in AML with normal cytogenetics is associated with poor prognosis and high rate of induction failure, particularly when accompanied by other mutations such as *FLT-3* or *cKIT*. WT1 mutations may disappear after achieving complete remission; however, it has been shown that,

in relapse, cases that acquired new or additional mutations may develop (Hou et al, 2010; Chou et al, 2010, Duncan et al, 2012). WT1 mutations are detected by using allele-specific PCR, followed by sequencing analysis for the presence of mutations.

ACUTE LYMPHOBLASTIC LEUKEMIA/ LYMPHOMA—B AND T CELL LINEAGE

B Cell Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma (Precursor B Cell Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia, B-ALL)

Significant biologic and clinical differences exist between adult and childhood onset ALLs. Comparatively little is known about the pathogenesis of adult ALL, which overall is associated with a relatively unfavorable outcome. As such, cytogenetic and molecular genetic anomalies in adult ALL are incompletely characterized, with the exception of the very poor prognosis t(9;22)/*BCR-ABL1* (i.e., Ph+ ALL). Beyond detection of the *BCR-ABL1* gene fusion, molecular diagnosis is currently of limited utility in the management of adult ALL. In marked contrast, the molecular diagnostic evaluation of pediatric ALL is of substantial value in the stratification of patients to "risk-adapted" treatment strategies. Over the past 20 years, the improvement in therapeutic regimens for these children, coupled with a more profound understanding of ALL tumor biology, has resulted in cure rates of 80% or better overall (Pui et al, 2004; O'Leary et al, 2008; Pui et al, 2008; Vrooman & Silverman, 2009). In turn, this has led to the concept of tailoring therapy to defined subsets of patients based on a combination of presenting clinical and biologic features, including early treatment response and tumor genetics. The aim in childhood ALL has thus evolved to balance the highest probability of long-term remission with the lowest chance of therapy-related adverse events. Although clinical features (e.g., age, degree of leukocytosis, CNS involvement) are initially used to separate "standard-risk" from "high-risk" individuals, tumor genetics are also an integral component of the initial (i.e., pretreatment) evaluation of childhood ALL patients. Broadly, both numerical and structural chromosomal abnormalities are considered in this process (Table 76-4). In the former instance, "high hyperdiploidy," or tumor aneuploidy with a chromosome number in excess of 52, has been associated with more favorable treatment response and outcome, particularly when certain chromosomal trisomies (e.g., +4, +10, +17) are present (Harris et al, 1992; Heerema et al, 2000; Moorman et al, 2003; Sutcliffe et al, 2005; Schultz et al, 2007). Conversely, tumor hypodiploidy, especially less than 44 chromosomes, is associated with a very high frequency of treatment failure (Heerema et al, 1999; Nachman et al, 2007; Schultz et al, 2007). Among the structural rearrangements, four chromosomal translocations account for approximately one-third of pediatric ALL cases, each with prognostic importance: the t(9;22)/*BCR-ABL1*, t(1;19)/*TCF3-PBX1*, t(12;21)/*ETV6-RUNX1*, and rearrangements involving the 11q23/*MLL* locus (Bartolo & Viswanatha, 2000; Harrison, 2001; Pui et al, 2004; Armstrong & Look, 2005). In general, numerical and structural alterations are mutually exclusive in any given case of childhood ALL; however, occasionally, these findings can coexist. Although not dealt with formally in this section, the detection of minimal residual disease at certain posttherapeutic time points (e.g., end-of-induction) has also emerged as a highly important component of outcome prediction in childhood ALL (Cave et al, 1998; Van Dongen et al, 1998; Nyvold et al, 2002; Campana, 2008; Flohr et al, 2008; Campana, 2009).

TABLE 76-4
Risk Stratification/Outcome Prediction in Childhood B-Lineage Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia*

Abnormality	Prognostic Significance	Notes
High hyperdiploidy (>52 chromosomes)	Favorable	Hyperdiploid tumors with particular trisomic chromosomes (e.g., +4, +10, +17) associated with very favorable outcome
t(12;21)/*ETV6-RUNX1*	Favorable	Very favorable outcome, but appreciable incidence of late relapses
t(1;19)/*TCF3-PBX1*	Intermediate	Intensive therapy results in good outcome
t(9;22)/*BCR-ABL1*	Unfavorable	Very high risk for relapse/ refractory disease
11q23/*MLL* gene rearrangements	Unfavorable	Very high risk for infant ALL; also considered high risk factor for older children
Hypodiploidy (<44 chromosomes)	Unfavorable	Very high risk for relapse/ refractory disease
High level molecular MRD at end-induction therapy	Unfavorable	Very high risk of relapse in patients with MRD above 10^{-2} to 10^{-3}, detected by molecular or flow cytometric methods

ALL, Acute lymphoblastic leukemia; *MRD,* minimal residual disease.
*Tumor genetic features and early MRD are considered in conjunction with clinical and laboratory findings, including age, presenting blast count, and evidence of extramedullary disease. These risk factors therefore modify and refine traditional parameters for predicting therapeutic response.

Major Translocation Fusion Gene Abnormalities in B Cell ALL

The t(9;22)(q34;q11.2)/*1BCR-ABL1* is found in approximately 3% to 4% of childhood B-lineage ALL, but it occurs in 20% to 25% of adult B-ALL (Armstrong & Look, 2005). Typically, these patients present with markedly elevated lymphoblast counts and other adverse clinical features. Of the two common break-fusion events associated with the *BCR-ABL1* fusion gene, the majority of cases of pediatric B-ALL (80% to 90%) have *BCR* breakpoints situated in the minor breakpoint cluster region (m-BCR), with production of an e1-a2 type chimeric *BCR-ABL1* mRNA (p190). The e1-a2 mRNA type is also found in many adult *BCR-ABL1* positive B-ALL, but approximately one-third of adult cases alternatively demonstrate e13-a2 or e14-a2 transcripts, characteristic of major breakpoint cluster region (M-BCR) disruption in the *BCR* gene (p210). The structure and molecular diagnostic aspects of the *BCR-ABL1* gene fusion are presented in greater detail in the subsequent section on CML. The presence of the *BCR-ABL1* in childhood ALL is an independently poor prognostic factor, placing these patients among the very highest at risk for primary treatment failure and relapse (Fletcher et al, 1991; Gaynon et al, 1997; Jones & Saha, 2005; Yanada et al, 2009). The majority of *BCR-ABL1* positive ALL patients are candidates for more aggressive therapy, including early allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. The introduction of the tyrosine kinase inhibitor imatinib mesylate may offer additional therapeutic benefit in the treatment of this disease; in adult Ph+ALL, imatinib in combination with conventional chemotherapy results in a very high (95%) rate of initial complete remission, although durable responses are often difficult to maintain (Jones & Saha, 2005; Gökbuget & Hoelzer, 2009; Ribera et al, 2009; Vrooman & Silverman, 2009; Yanada et al, 2009; reviewed in Gruber et al, 2009; Shabbir & Stuart, 2010). Studies of the efficacy of imatinib in childhood Ph+ ALL are promising (Jones & Saha, 2005; Vrooman & Silverman, 2009), so in 2013, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the use of imatinib to treat children newly diagnosed with Ph+ALL. Molecular analysis of the *BCR-ABL1* transcript by the RT-PCR technique is critical for predicting risk in childhood ALL, as well as providing a marker for residual disease monitoring. Deletion of *IKZF1*, which codes for the transcription factor Ikaros, has been identified as a genetic change present in many cases of *BCR-ABL1* ALL (Mullighan et al, 2008; 2009; Iacobucci et al, 2009; Martinelli et al, 2009), and Ikaros alterations appear to be an important cooperative lesion in this subclass of ALL, strongly influencing the aggressive behavior of *BCR-ABL1* ALL (Martinelli et al, 2009; Mullighan et al, 2009).

B-ALL characterized by the t(1;19)(q23;p13.3) abnormality are uncommon, accounting for less than 5% of pediatric cases and only rare occurrences in adults (Armstrong & Look, 2005). This translocation is strongly associated with "pre-B" immunophenotypic features, typified by the presence of cytoplasmic IgM production in the tumor cells. Following its initial recognition in childhood ALL, the t(1;19) was associated with poor outcome. However, it has become apparent that more intensive treatment protocols largely negate the adverse effects of this genotype, resulting in stable remissions for most of these individuals. Recognition of this translocation is thus required for appropriate therapy (Schultz et al, 2007). The t(1;19) most frequently occurs as an unbalanced form of translocation (with resultant loss of some genetic material) and produces the chimeric *TCF3* (formerly *E2A)-PBX1* gene fusion, although balanced translocations with the same fusion product also occur (Hunger et al, 1991; Paulsson et al,

2007). The *TCF3* gene encodes a series of basic helix-loop-helix transcription factors, which are involved in myocyte and B-lymphocyte development. *PBX1* is a DNA-binding transcription factor that is not normally expressed in lymphoid cells. The fusion *TCF3-PBX1* protein replaces the DNA binding and protein dimerization motifs of TCF3 with the DNA binding region of *PBX1*, predisposing the progenitor B cell to neoplastic proliferation. The location of genomic breakpoints within *TCF3* and *PBX1* introns is consistent in essentially all cases, resulting in the formation of a single *TCF3-PBX1* transcript (Hunger et al, 1991; Wiemels et al, 2002a), with only few reported variants (Paulsson et al, 2007). This fusion mRNA is readily amenable to RT-PCR detection and can also serve as a disease-specific marker for sensitive detection in the bone marrow. Of note, rare cytogenetically detectable ALL cases with t(1;19) lack the *TCF3-PBX1* fusion and appear to be associated with an inferior clinical outcome (Privitera et al, 1992; Prima & Hunger, 2007); these variant t(1;19)(6q23;p13.3) translocations instead create reciprocal oncogenic fusion proteins, *DAZAP1/MEF2D* and *MEF2D/DAZAP1* (Prima & Hunger, 2007).

Overall, 20% to 25% of pediatric ALL patients are characterized by the presence of the t(12;21)(p13;q22) abnormality, establishing this lesion as the most common recurrent translocation in this patient group (Armstrong & Look, 2005). This genetic finding is essentially absent among adults with B-ALL. The t(12;21) is cytogenetically cryptic in almost all cases (Karrman et al, 2006), instead often being suggested by an apparent deletion of the short arm of one chromosome 12. Although patients with t(12;21) ALL are found distributed among different clinical risk groups, in general these individuals are between the ages of 2 and 7 and have diploid karyotype tumors (Rubnitz et al, 1997a; Forestier & Schmiegelow, 2006; Forestier et al, 2007). The t(12;21) results in the joining of the 12p locus *ETV6* gene (also known as *TEL*) with the *RUNX1* (or *AML1*, *CBFA2*) gene on 21q to form the chimeric gene fusion *ETV6-RUNX1* on the derivative chromosome 12 (Romana et al, 1995; Zelent et al, 2004). Pediatric patients with *ETV6-RUNX1* positive ALL have a favorable outcome, with excellent disease-free remissions approaching 80% (similar to the aforementioned high-hyperdiploid group with specific chromosomal trisomies) (Shurtleff et al, 1995; Borkhardt et al, 1997; Rubnitz et al, 1997a; 1997b; Forestier et al, 2008). However, reports of a substantial late relapse rate among some *ETV6-RUNX1* ALL patients have refocused attention on more clearly defining the risk characteristics of this group, even though many such relapsed patients remain responsive to "salvage therapy" protocols (Harbott et al, 1997; Seeger et al, 1998; Ford et al, 2001; Forestier et al, 2008). The molecular pathology of *ETV6-RUNX1* ALL is related to disruption of normal CBF activity, leading to enhanced transcriptional repression of many target genes, as similarly discussed for the *RUNX1-RUNX1T1* abnormality in AML (Fig. 76-3) (Zelent et al, 2004). In almost 90% of *ETV6-RUNX1* ALL cases, the remaining *ETV6* allele is partially or completely deleted in a variable proportion of tumor cells, suggesting that this event may be an important secondary event for leukemogenic transformation, through complete loss of normal ETV6 function (Raynaud et al, 1996; Tsuzuki et al, 2007; Wiemels et al, 2008). At the DNA level, *ETV6* and *RUNX1* breaksites in ALL occur most often in the same genomic regions of *ETV6* intron 5 and *RUNX1* intron 1 (Romana et al, 1995; Von Goessel et al, 2009), with evidence of some propensity for breakpoint clustering. A second minor variant with breakpoints situated in *RUNX1* intron 2 is also described. The in-frame transcribed ETV6-RUNX1 mRNA thus encompasses a novel region joining *ETV6* exon 5 to *RUNX1* exon 2 (most cases) or *ETV6* exon 5 to *RUNX1* exon 3 (fewer cases) (Nakao et al, 1996a; Von Goessel et al, 2009). Additional complexity is present in this gene fusion owing to alternative splicing out of *RUNX1* exons 2 and/or 3, with the possibility of detecting up to four *ETV6-RUNX1* amplified transcript forms by RT-PCR in any given case. Molecular (RT-PCR) or FISH detection of the *ETV6-RUNX1* is frequently employed in pediatric ALL, given the inability to diagnose the t(12;21) by standard cytogenetics because of its cryptic nature. The chimeric mRNA further represents a highly specific molecular marker for residual disease assessment.

Translocations involving the "mixed lineage leukemia" (*MLL*) gene located on chromosome 11q23 are observed in 5% to 9% of pediatric ALL cases overall and are disproportionately represented in infants younger than 1 year of age (Kaneko et al, 1986; Bartolo & Viswanatha, 2000; Armstrong & Look, 2005; Silverman, 2007; Chowdhury & Brady, 2008; Ramchandren et al, 2013). The presence of *MLL* gene translocations is associated with a poor outcome for these very young children and is considered an adverse finding in older children as well, particularly in the setting of a poor prednisone response (Pui et al, 2003; Chowdhury & Brady, 2008). Infant *MLL*-positive leukemias are of B-lineage, lack CD10 positivity, and demonstrate aberrant expression of some myeloid-associated markers, particularly CD13 and CD33 (Chen et al, 1993; Burmeister et al, 2009). Clinically, these patients have high initial leukocyte counts, organomegaly, and a tendency for involvement of the central nervous system. Translocations involving 11q23/*MLL* also occur in de novo AML and secondary (therapy-related) AML, and in either case are characterized by monocytic morphologic features (i.e., FAB AML-M4 or M5 types). In de novo adult AML, *MLL* gene rearrangements, specifically the t(9;11) *MLLT3-MLL* abnormality, may not represent a high-risk tumor genotype. In contrast, secondary AML arises in subsets of both pediatric and adult patients who have had prior dose-intensive chemotherapy with DNA topoisomerase II inhibitors (e.g., epipodophyllotoxins and anthracyclines); these tumors occur abruptly within a few months to years after exposure and have a very aggressive treatment-resistant course (Godley & Larson, 2008).

The pathobiology underlying *MLL* gene translocations in these different types of de novo and secondary acute lymphoid and myeloid leukemias is becoming better understood. The *MLL* protein is a large (~430 kD) DNA binding protein, which is characterized by several functional domains, indicating its role as a multifunctional transcriptional factor with histone methyltransferase activity (Hess, 2004; Li et al, 2005; Krivtsov et al, 2007; Wang et al, 2009). *MLL* is known to regulate several *HOX* (homeobox) genes involved in the coordination of proper skeletal development during mammalian embryogenesis (Yu et al, 1995; Soshnikova & Duboule, 2008). Several *HOX* genes also appear to be central to the development and maintenance of myeloid and lymphoid progenitor cells, thus establishing a tight link for *MLL* in the genetic control of normal hematopoiesis as well (Hess, 2004; Ernst et al, 2004a; 2004b; McGonigle et al, 2008). *MLL* gene translocations produce an altered functional form of the protein; in each instance, the N-terminal "A-T hook" DNA binding motif of *MLL* is retained in the chimeric protein, typically with fusion to a portion of another transcription factor (Waring & Cleary, 1997; Chowdhury & Brady, 2008; Ramchandren et al, 2013). Accumulating data indicate that abnormal expression of *MLL* fusion proteins can constitutively deregulate certain *HOX* genes, leading to hematopoietic progenitor cell immortalization and predisposition to leukemogenesis (Armstrong et al, 2003; Hess, 2004; Ono et al, 2009). Indeed, studies using chromatin immunoprecipitation to identify portions of the genome bound by *MLL* have further detected its presence at numerous promoter regions, suggesting a more global role for *MLL* in transcriptional regulation.

Some additional key biologic insights have emerged from the structural analysis of *MLL* gene breakpoints in different subsets of leukemias. The majority of de novo AML with *MLL* translocations have breaksites situated 5′ in the *MLL* breakpoint cluster region, whereas the preponderance of secondary AML occur in a more distal (3′) segment of this locus (Stissel-Broeker et al, 1996; Zhang et al, 2006). Infant ALL cases strikingly also tend to associate with the 3′ genomic region, suggesting a commonality in pathogenesis with secondary AML. This 3′ "hotspot" area contains a strong consensus binding site for DNA topoisomerase II, as well as an adjacent "scaffold attachment region," which is highly susceptible to cleavage by endonucleases. Although the presence of the topoisomerase II site presents an attractive explanation for the basis of developing secondary AML (e.g., via double strand break induction by topoisomerase II inhibitors and subsequent *MLL* translocation rearrangements), the hypersensitive 3′ scaffold site of the gene has received further attention, because it too appears to be particularly prone to double-strand breaks in experimental models (Stissel-Broeker et al, 1996). The latter *MLL* region is in fact selectively targeted for cleavage during cell death in response to diverse apoptogenic stimuli (e.g., following cellular stress or DNA damage) (Betti et al, 2001; 2003; 2005; Sim & Liu, 2001; Greaves & Wiemels, 2003a). These investigations imply that exposure to agents that can induce this site-specific *MLL* breakage potentially set the stage for *MLL* gene fusions, leading to the very aggressive forms of leukemia observed in infants and after distinct types of chemotherapy. In turn, because the causal etiology is already identified for secondary AML with *MLL* translocations, current studies in infant ALL seek to discover possible exogenous or naturally occurring transplacental factors that may predispose developing fetal hematopoietic stem cells to *MLL* gene breakage and illegitimate recombination (Spector et al, 2005; Pombo-de-Oliveira & Koifman, 2006).

The *MLL* gene is involved in translocation events with more than 60 known partner genes (Liu et al, 2009); however, the t(4;11)(q21;q23)/*MLL-AF4* abnormality is the most frequently encountered in infant ALL (75% of cases). *MLL* gene locus breakpoints are distributed over an 8.3-kb region of DNA encompassing exons 5 to 11 (Chowdhury & Brady, 2008). This marked breakpoint heterogeneity may also occur in the translocated gene (e.g., *AF4*), resulting in the possibility of several *MLL* hybrid gene products, typically one of which is expressed in any given patient with this

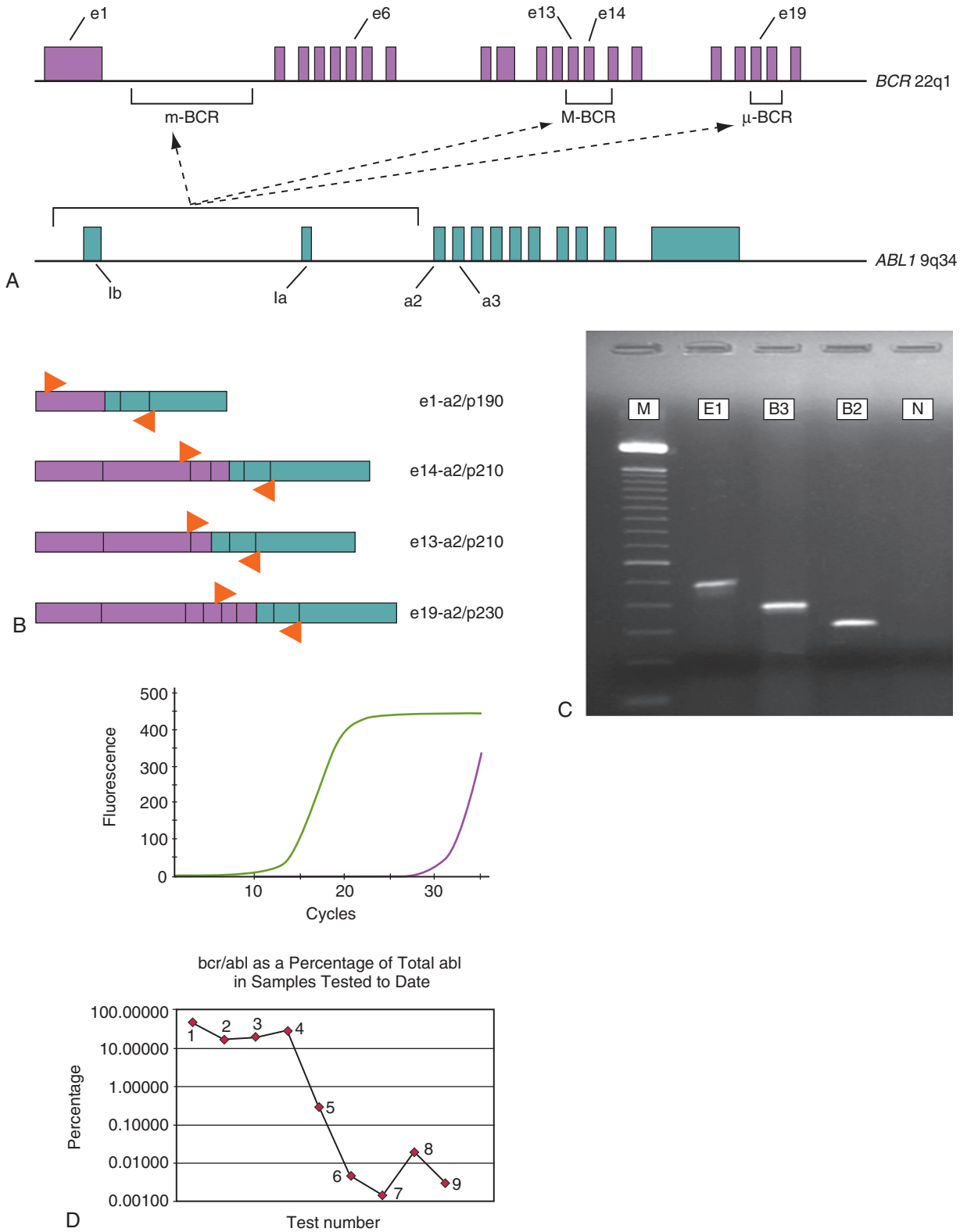


Figure 76-3 **t(9;22)/*BCR-ABL1* abnormality in chronic myeloid leukemia and Ph+ acute lymphoblastic leukemia. A,** The partial genomic organization of the *BCR* and *ABL1* genes (not to scale). Three major breakpoint regions are recognized in the *BCR* gene: the minor breakpoint cluster region (m-BCR), the major breakpoint cluster region (M-BCR), and the μ-BCR. The M-BCR is involved in essentially all cases of CML and approximately one-third of de novo adult Ph+ acute lymphoblastic leukemias (Ph+ ALL). A small percentage of childhood Ph+ ALL may have BCR breakpoints at this site as well. The m-BCR is typically associated with the vast majority of pediatric Ph+ ALL and most adult Ph+ ALL. Breakpoints at the μ-BCR have been associated with rare cases of CML with essentially complete neutrophilic maturation. For the *ABL1* gene, breakpoints are distributed throughout a large region 5′ of exon 2 (a2) encompassing the first exon region. **B,** The principal *BCR-ABL1* chimeric transcripts arising from these various translocation fusion gene breakpoints. The exon-exon fusions are indicated for these transcripts, and the corresponding chimeric protein product sizes are shown in kilodaltons (e.g., e1-a2/p190). The orange arrows indicate relative positions of PCR primers to detect these various forms in RT-PCR assays. **C,** Typical RT-PCR gel electrophoresis results for detection of the m-BCR and M-BCR transcripts. **D,** Example of RQ-PCR monitoring of *BCR-ABL1* mRNA in a CML patient being treated with imatinib mesylate. The upper section displays the RQ-PCR amplification traces for *BCR-ABL1 (purple)* and ABL1 control *(green).* The quantity of *BCR-ABL1* is expressed as a normalized ratio of *BCR-ABL1*/ABL1. The lower section indicates a time course of quantitative *BCR-ABL1* level measurements over several months for this patient. A therapeutic level of less than 0.1% *BCR-ABL1*/ABL1 in CML is compatible with an excellent outcome and very low relapse risk. *CML,* Chronic myeloid leukemia; *E1,* e1-a2 product; *E13,* e13-a2 product; *E14,* e14-a2 product; *M,* molecular size marker (100 bp); *N,* no template control; *RQ-PCR,* real-time quantitative polymerase chain reaction; *RT-PCR,* reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction.

leukemia. RT-PCR method can be used to identify individual *MLL* fusion gene transcripts, such as the *MLL-AF4* chimeric mRNA; however, the combination of multiple rearranging gene partners in these leukemias and the potential for substantial genomic breakpoint variability requires comprehensive and technically challenging laboratory approaches, such as multiplex PCR assays or, in the research setting, techniques such as long-distance inverse PCR (Pallisgaard et al, 1998; Andersson et al, 2001; Meyer & Marschalek, 2009; Meyer et al, 2009). *MLL* gene locus rearrangements have also been successfully detected by Southern blot analysis, although the FISH technique now provides a rapid and highly efficacious alternative for this purpose (Cuthbert et al, 2000; Cavazzini et al, 2006). FISH analysis can provide very rapid confirmation of *MLL* gene breakage, implying a translocation event, but it cannot give information regarding the particular translocation present. Thus RT-PCR, even with the limitations described, can serve a useful purpose in the diagnosis and monitoring of these leukemias, especially because the fusion gene type can be specifically and more sensitively identified in contrast to other analytic methods. Furthermore, mutation due to partial tandem duplication involving the *MLL* gene (*MLL*-PTD) is only detected by RT-PCR.

Prenatal Origins of Childhood Leukemias

Major advances continue to be made in understanding the molecular basis of the pediatric acute leukemias. These efforts now span the realms of basic science, translational and clinical research, and, increasingly, population-based methods. Studies of concordant ALL occurring in monozygotic twins first demonstrated that the leukemias arising in each paired affected individual were genetically identical based on molecular analysis of the genomic breakpoint sequences of involved *MLL*, *ETV6-RUNX1*, or clonotypic immunoglobulin or T cell receptor gene rearrangements (summarized in Greaves et al, 2003b; Taub & Ge, 2004). Notably, the propensity to develop concordant leukemias is variable for different leukemic subtypes in twin studies, approaching 100% for *MLL* translocation ALL and only 10% for *ETV6-RUNX1* ALL. These findings suggest a variable transformation potential for these different gene fusions in vivo, raising the issues of both the nature and timing of secondary genetic insults. The results of these investigations have been corroborated using similar experimental techniques to "backtrack" leukemia-specific DNA abnormalities to archived neonatal blood samples of individual (nontwin) children of different ages, with genetically defined subtypes of ALL or AML (Gale et al, 1997; Wiemels et al, 1999; Fasching et al, 2000; Yagi et al, 2000; Wiemels et al, 2002a; Greaves & Wiemels, 2003a; Greaves et al, 2003b; Taub & Ge, 2004; Ross, 2008). Together, these data strongly suggest that many pediatric ALL (and some AML) have origins in utero; that is, prenatal acquisition of potentially leukemogenic translocation events, or other genetic abnormalities, can occur during the time of active fetal hematopoiesis, but in most cases, additional, later-occurring genetic alterations in susceptible individuals are required in order to produce overt leukemia. The rapid evolution of *MLL*-associated ALL versus the longer latency (i.e., older age at onset) of *ETV6-RUNX1* ALL indicates that both the biologic effects of the primary (predisposing) genetic lesion, as well as the timing and type of promoting insult(s) are complex, although within defined subtypes of leukemia, it may now be possible to better elucidate the molecular pathways resulting in tumorigenesis. Not all types of pediatric ALL, however, can be traced back to a prenatal clonal cell origin. The retrospective neonatal blood data for the t(1;19)/*TCF3-PBX1* ALL subgroup instead support the concept that the majority of these patients develop this genetic aberration in the postnatal period (Wiemels et al, 2002a).

Prospective RT-PCR and FISH screening of blood samples from healthy newborn children have subsequently revealed a detection frequency of 1% for the *ETV6-RUNX1* abnormality and 0.2% for the *RUNX1-RUNX1T1* fusion transcript, markedly higher than the incidence of either of these leukemia subtypes in childhood (Mori et al, 2002; Olsen et al, 2006). These data demonstrate that the occurrence of at least some chromosomal translocation fusion genes is a common event in utero; however, the presence of such an abnormality is clearly insufficient to cause overt leukemia in the vast majority of individuals. Although the translocation-type acute leukemias are karyotypically characterized in most instances by an apparent "single genetic anomaly," it is becoming evident that these tumors also conform to the "two-hit" hypothesis of Knudson proposed for solid tissue cancers (Knudson, 1992; Schindler et al, 2009; Ramchandren et al, 2013), as discussed in further detail in Chapter 75. In this concept, the initiating translocation event must be stable enough in a long-lived progenitor hematopoietic cell to confer some advantage in survival or proliferation; the acquisition of one or more subsequent genotoxic events in a susceptible individual would then lead to complete malignant transformation. The fate of such silent "translocation-positive" cells is thus an important parameter, not only for understanding disease pathogenesis but also in a practical setting for the appropriate interpretation of molecular diagnostic assays in the context of detecting minimal residual disease.

Intriguingly, studies using genome-wide association have identified certain low-penetrance germline variants of *IKZF1* (as well as other genes) that may increase susceptibility to the development of childhood ALL (Papaemmanuil et al, 2009). Even though much research remains directed at the basic molecular and cell biology of childhood acute leukemias, molecular epidemiologic methods will play an increasing role in identifying the interplay between environmental factors and host genetic polymorphisms, which underlie the predisposition to this disease in some individuals (Clavel et al, 2005; Spector et al, 2005; Lafiura et al, 2007; reviewed in Pui et al, 2008). Indeed, the relatively brief period of potential environmental exposure in utero may lend itself to the detection of specific risk factors in a manner impossible for adult-onset leukemias (Kim et al, 2006; Ross, 2008); mitigation strategies to decrease the risk of childhood leukemia is thus a goal of these efforts.

BCR-ABL1–Like B-Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia

BCR-ABL1-like (or Philadelphia-like) B-ALL is defined as a subtype of B-ALL that lacks the *BCR–ABL1* fusion protein and gene transcript yet has a gene-expression profile similar to that of patients with *BCR-ABL1* positive B-ALL. *BCR-ABL1*–like B-ALL accounts for around for 10% to 15% of childhood B-ALL and around 27% of young adult B-ALL (Den Boer et al, 2009). The disease is associated with poor prognosis in both young adults and children and has no distinctive characteristic morphological features or defining immunophenotypic profile. The majority of cases fall within the B-ALL, NOS, and hypodiploid categories, and a small subset of them may have a complex karyotype. However, both *BCR-ABL1* positive B-ALL and *BCR-ABL1*–like B-ALL share a similar gene-expressing profile that causes activation of the tyrosine kinase signaling pathway (in ~90% of cases), including the presence of the *IKZF1* gene mutation that encodes the early lymphoid transcription factor IKAROS (Mullighan et al, 2009). Around 50% of *BCR-ABL1* positive B-ALL and *BCR-ABL1*–like B-ALL show CRLF2 gene upregulation due to rearrangements of *IGH* (*IGH-CRLF2*/ 14q32;Xp22.3) or short segment deletion within the *CRLF2* gene, resulting in the formation of *P2RY8-CRLF2* fusion protein (Roberts et al, 2014). *JAK1* and *JAK2* mutations resulting in *JAK-STAT* signaling pathway activation are seen in around 50% of B-ALL cases with *CRLF2* gene alterations. Other common gene mutations shared by both diseases include mutations in *ABL1*, *ABL2*, *CSF1R*, *EPOR*, *NTRK3*, *PDGFRB*, *PTK2B*, *TSLP*, *TYK2*, *FLT3*, *IL7R*, and *SH2B3* genes (Roberts et al, 2014). Molecular advances that shed light on the molecular pathogenesis of *BCR-ABL1*–like B-ALL provided the impetus for different ongoing clinical trials assessing whether adding TKI therapy may improve the survival of patients with this type of leukemia, which shows a high rate of relapse with conventional therapy.

T Cell Lymphoblastic Leukemia/Lymphoma

In contrast to the relatively well-understood pathobiology of B lineage ALL, the genetic underpinnings of T cell lymphoblastic neoplasms (T-ALL) have historically remained obscure. This may be partially explained by the relative rarity of T-ALL in comparison to B-ALL, with the former accounting for 15% and 25% of pediatric and adult cases of overall lymphoblastic leukemias, respectively (Chiaretti & Foà, 2009). However, molecular genetic techniques have uncovered a surprisingly diverse set of abnormalities seen recurrently in T-ALL. These studies have begun to elucidate what have been previously unknown leukemogenic mechanisms, although currently these investigational findings have not been definitively linked with relevant clinical or prognostic subgroups of patients or with applications to minimal residual disease detection (Baldus et al, 2009; Mansour et al, 2009). Translocations involving the T cell receptor genes are identified in up to 35% of T-ALL, juxtaposing TCR regions with a wide array of partner genes that often code for transcription factors, including *HOX11*, *HOX11L2*, *HOXA*, and *TAL1* (Chiaretti & Foà, 2009; Zhang et al, 2012; Larmonie et al, 2013). The *TAL1* oncogene is also frequently (25% of cases) fused to its neighbor *SIL* following a cryptic interstitial deletion at 1p32 (Van der Burg et al, 2002; Zhang et al, 2012). More than 50% of cases of T-ALL have activating mutations in *NOTCH1*, which encodes a transmembrane receptor important in the regulation of physiologic T cell development. In a manner analogous to the role played by *FLT3* in some cases of AML, mutations in *NOTCH1* create a constitutively active receptor promoting unchecked downstream signaling, resulting in altered expression of target genes, including the oncogene *MYC* (Pui

et al, 2008). In some cases, missense mutations in *FBXW7*, a negative regulator of *NOTCH1*, can achieve the same pathogenic effect (Park et al, 2009; Pui, 2009). Abnormal tyrosine kinase activity is also found in subsets of T-ALL. The *NUP214(CAN)-ABL1* gene fusion, which is often found in amplified extrachromosomal episomes formed from 9q34, is identified in 6% of cases (Graux et al, 2004; Zhang et al, 2012). *JAK1* mutations are detectable in 18% of T-ALL and may be associated with an inferior prognosis (Flex et al, 2008).

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS OF MYELOPROLIFERATIVE NEOPLASMS

Chronic Myelogenous Leukemia with t(9;22)(q34;q11)/*BCR-ABL1* Positive

Chronic myelogenous (or myeloid) leukemia (CML) is a clonal marrow stem cell disease resulting predominantly from excessive proliferation of granulocytic cells at all stages of maturation. The natural course of CML is typified by a protracted chronic phase, often for several years, followed by a rapid transformation to an aggressive acute myeloid or lymphoid blast crisis with fatal outcome. The decades-long investigation and treatment of this disorder have led from the association of a karyotypic abnormality with disease phenotype to the unraveling of its molecular genetic pathogenesis and, currently, to the widespread use of a highly effective targeted pharmacologic therapy in the form of imatinib mesylate (Gleevec, Novartis) (Faderl et al, 1999; Goldman & Melo, 2003; Pavlovsky et al, 2009; Widemann et al, 2011; Ramchandren et al, 2013). CML is characterized by the presence of the t(9;22)(q34;q11.2) chromosomal translocation, initially observed as an abnormal 22q- called the *Philadelphia chromosome* (Ph) (Nowell & Hungerford, 1960; Rowley, 1973). This translocation leads to juxtaposition of the *ABL1* (Abelson murine leukemia viral oncogene homolog 1) tyrosine kinase gene (9q34) with the *BCR* gene (22q11.2) on the derivative chromosome 22q, formation of the *BCR-ABL1* fusion gene and mRNA, and production of a chimeric *BCR-ABL1* protein (Melo, 1996; Deininger et al, 2000). As noted, the t(9;22)/*BCR-ABL1* is not pathognomonic of CML, in that it also occurs in 20% to 25% of adult and approximately 3% of pediatric B-ALLs (i.e., Ph+ ALL), in both instances associated with highly aggressive disease behavior.

Despite the notably long history of research involving *BCR-ABL1* (the Philadelphia chromosome was the first such translocation associated with a neoplasm), the detailed pathogenesis of CML remains to be fully elucidated. ABL1 is normally a highly regulated tyrosine kinase that participates in diverse cellular processes pertaining to actin organization, cellular differentiation, apoptosis, and T cell receptor signaling. The function of the normal BCR gene product is incompletely understood; it contains several functional domains, including a serine/threonine kinase, and has been shown to participate in vascular intimal signaling in response to injury and inflammation (Alexis et al, 2009; Ramchandren et al, 2013). In general, the abnormal genetic fusion disrupts the localization and regulated activity of the ABL1 tyrosine kinase, producing complex effects on cellular signal transduction pathways, proliferation, apoptosis control, and cell adhesion (Deininger et al, 2000; Quintás-Cardama & Cortes, 2009; Widemann et al, 2011). The reciprocal *ABL1-BCR* fusion gene, long regarded as an inconsequential by-product of the creation of the *BCR-ABL1* fusion, may also have some independent effects of cellular proliferation (Zheng et al, 2009) as it encodes p96 and p40 fusion proteins. In vivo topographic studies of the *BCR* and *ABL1* genes in cycling normal hematopoietic progenitor cells, as well as the surprising demonstration of very low levels of *BCR-ABL1* transcripts in the blood of many healthy subjects, suggest that the t(9;22) may occur relatively frequently in normal human bone marrow cells (Brassesco, 2008). The complex interplay of host response to these abnormal genetic rearrangements and the acquisition of other initiating or potentiating genetic lesions leading to the overt development of CML (or Ph+ ALL) are yet to be determined. Definitive treatment for patients with CML is achieved only by allogeneic bone marrow or stem cell transplantation, although the frontline management of CML has now been significantly altered with the advent of imatinib and other second generation and similar tyrosine kinase inhibitors, such that the disease may now be controlled over long periods of time, although not eliminated (Druker et al, 2001; O'Brien et al, 2003; Pavlovsky et al, 2009; Widemann et al, 2011).

At the DNA level, the *BCR-ABL1* gene fusion exhibits features of breakpoint heterogeneity with three main recognized breakpoint loci in the *BCR* gene, as well as some alternative splice transcript variation (see Fig. 76-3, *A* and *B*) (Melo, 1996; Deininger et al, 2000; Foroni et al, 2009). In virtually all cases of CML, the *BCR* gene breakpoints are situated in the so-called major breakpoint cluster region, or M-BCR. These breaksites occur in a relatively small 5.8-kb genomic region spanning *BCR* exons e12 to e16 (also known as exons b1 to b5), specifically between the e13 and e14, or the e14 and e15 exons. In contrast, the breakpoints in the *ABL1* gene are distributed over a very large region of intronic DNA 5′ to exon a2. In CML, therefore, two types of *BCR-ABL1* fusion mRNA transcripts can arise from M-BCR locus gene fusions—namely, the e13-a2 or e14-a2 forms. These two products encode a novel protein of 210 kD (p210). Whereas most cases of CML harbor either an e13-a2 or e14-a2 transcript type, occasional tumors may demonstrate alternative splicing of the latter form to produce both transcripts simultaneously; this occurrence may be attributable to a polymorphism in *BCR* that affects splicing efficiency. In the pre-imatinib era, the type of M-BCR locus *BCR-ABL1* fusion in CML was considered to hold no clinical or prognostic significance; however, data suggest the possibility of differential imatinib sensitivity based on the transcript type, requiring further investigation (Lucas et al, 2009). A second common breakpoint locus is present in the *BCR* gene, designated as the minor breakpoint cluster region, or m-BCR. Translocations involving this locus result in the formation of an e1-a2 *BCR-ABL1* fusion transcript, encoding a 190-kD *BCR-ABL1* protein (p190). The e1-a2 type *BCR-ABL1* is highly characteristic of Ph+ B-ALL. However, the subdivision of M-BCR and m-BCR fusions as CML-associated and ALL-associated is not so straightforward, despite these general correlations between *BCR-ABL1* breakpoint fusion location and disease phenotype. Whereas the vast majority of pediatric Ph+ B-ALL cases are of e1-a2 (m-BCR) type, approximately 30% to 40% of adult Ph+ B-ALL patients demonstrate e14-a2 or e13-a2 (M-BCR) BCR-ABL fusions. In the latter situation, distinction of true de novo Ph+ B-ALL from CML in lymphoid blast crisis is important. In addition, it is well known that a significant proportion of classic CML with the expected e14-a2 or e13-a2 transcript types will also demonstrate concurrent low abundance e1-a2 mRNA due to a minimal degree of alternative splicing of the longer M-BCR–derived transcript (Saglio et al, 1996; Van Rhee et al, 1996). Potentially more confusing is the finding of rare Ph+ chronic leukemias with the e1-a2 fusion (p190) that manifest a predominantly monocytic phenotype (rather than the typical myeloid cell predominance of CML). These foregoing observations underscore the pathobiologic variability associated with *BCR-ABL1* expression in different myeloid and lymphoid progenitor cells. The third cluster region for *BCR-ABL1* gene fusions has been called the μ-BCR and results in formation of an e19-a2 transcript. This fusion transcript is predicted to result in translation of a 230-kD-size protein (p230), and this type of *BCR-ABL1* event has been associated with a myeloproliferative neoplasm showing exuberant neutrophilia. Historically, these cases have been labeled as *chronic neutrophilic leukemias*, but the current view considers these rare e19-a2 fusion-positive presentations to be bona fide cases of CML (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Rarely occurring CML and Ph+ B-ALL cases involving the use of alternate, adjacent BCR or ABL exons have been encountered, generating e13-a3, e1-a3, or e6-a2 transcript forms (Melo, 1996; Deininger et al, 2000; Foroni et al, 2009).

Figure 76-3, *B*, indicates the placement of oligonucleotide PCR primers to specifically amplify the M-BCR (e14-a2, e13-a2), m-BCR (e1-a2), and μ-BCR (e19-a2) fusion transcripts following reverse transcription of total mRNA; these molecular assays can be designed to be either qualitative or quantitative in nature. Qualitative assays for *BCR-ABL1* detection may rely on gel electrophoresis sizing of PCR products, as shown in Figure 76-3, *C*, often with a post-PCR confirmatory assay, such as Southern blot hybridization using a junction-specific labeled oligonucleotide probe or related methods. Given the importance of long-term monitoring of *BCR-ABL1* transcript levels in CML patients (discussed later), many labs also perform RQ-PCR. In one such assay strategy, reverse transcribed *BCR-ABL1* transcript abundance is determined relative to a concurrently generated standard curve, and the results are reported as a normalized ratio of *BCR-ABL1* copies to the copies of a similarly measured normally expressed mRNA (often the normal BCR or ABL1 transcript itself) to correct for variable cellular abundance and RNA quality in different samples (see Fig. 76-3) (Foroni et al, 2009). Although PCR-based methods are highly sensitive, FISH analysis may have some additional utility for identifying concurrent large genomic deletions occurring on the derivative 9q or 22q chromosomes, which have been associated with inferior outcome in this subgroup of CML patients (Sinclair et al, 2000; Lee et al, 2006; Vaz de Campos et al, 2007; Ramchandren et al, 2013); however, the impact of these additional findings may be relatively less important in the era of imatinib therapy (Kim et al, 2008).

Molecular detection of these abnormal *BCR-ABL1* mRNA chimeric transcripts is clearly valuable for establishing a diagnosis of CML and Ph+ B-ALL. For example, even though approximately 98% of CML cases are *BCR-ABL1* positive, a small number of morphologic mimickers will lack

this genetic abnormality. These leukemic disorders fall into an ill-defined subset including atypical CML, chronic myelomonocytic leukemia, or other chronic myeloproliferative or myelodysplastic disorders, and therapeutic options and outcome for such patients will be different than for true CML. Conversely, atypical myeloproliferative presentations of CML are not infrequently encountered, and the demonstration of *BCR-ABL1* in these situations is critical for correct diagnosis and management. Similarly, detection of the *BCR-ABL1* abnormality in adult and pediatric ALL identifies these subsets of patients who are at high risk for conventional chemotherapy failure and may benefit from more intensive treatment regimens.

Molecular diagnostic evaluation for *BCR-ABL1* is also important for delineating the specific *BCR-ABL1* fusion mRNA type for subsequent molecular MRD monitoring following allogeneic stem cell transplantation (ASCT), chemoimmunotherapy (e.g., with Ara-C and interferon-α [IFN-α] therapy), or therapy with tyrosine kinase inhibitors, or TKIs (e.g., imatinib mesylate). For example, the quantitative level of *BCR-ABL1* transcript in ASCT patients in the early posttransplant period has been strongly correlated with risk of relapse (Olavarria et al, 2001; Faderl et al, 2004). Other data similarly suggested more refined outcome prediction in PCR-positive patients who are further out from transplantation, using RQ-PCR technique (Radich et al, 2001). RQ-PCR for *BCR-ABL1* has also proven worthwhile in evaluating treatment response to IFN-α, despite the observation that molecular remissions with this agent are very uncommon. However, the largest impact on RQ-PCR monitoring of *BCR-ABL1* in CML has come with the widespread use of targeted therapy with TKIs (e.g., imatinib and related drugs). For CML patients on TKI agents, therapeutic responses are evaluated in a highly coordinated manner using clinical (i.e., hematologic), cytogenetic, and molecular MRD criteria. Single-agent imatinib (previously called STI-571) was shown to be highly effective in inducing complete hematologic and cytogenetic responses in the majority of treated CML patients within 12 months (Hughes et al, 2003; Hughes & Branford, 2009). These data were reported in the landmark International Randomized Study of Interferon and STI-571 (IRIS) clinical trial (Hochhaus et al, 2008; 2009).

More important, data derived from these and other studies have demonstrated that the kinetics of *BCR-ABL1* reduction is strongly related to progression-free survival. While criteria are continually being refined, several critical thresholds have been defined that indicate optimal response to imatinib. The vast majority of CML patients will achieve complete hematologic remission within 3 months. Subsequently, favorable response to TKI therapy is indicated by the attainment of a complete cytogenetic response (CCyR, defined by the absence of Ph metaphases by cytogenetic analysis), followed by a major molecular response (MMR). The MMR level has been defined by the IRIS group as 3-log reduction from a baseline *BCR-ABL1* level, equivalent to a 0.1% normalized BCR-ABL transcript ratio (i.e., *BCR-ABL1*/ABL1). A significant challenge for molecular hematopathology laboratories lies in the development of standardized RQ-PCR assays for *BCR-ABL1* that can meet the requirements of technical sensitivity and reproducibility for reporting patient results on this international scale (IS). Patients who achieve MMR within a 12- to 18-month window following TKI therapy initiation have an excellent long-term prognosis and a very low relapse risk (see Fig. 76-3, *D*) (Hughes & Branford, 2009; Widemann et al, 2011). A subset of individuals may also continue to deepen their molecular response and eventually become PCR negative. Similarly, the combination of bone marrow cytogenetics and peripheral blood RQ-PCR for *BCR-ABL1* levels can also be predictive of treatment failure and increased relapse risk. Patients who do not achieve a major cytogenetic response (<35% Ph metaphases) or remain above 10% normalized *BCR-ABL1* transcript level at 6 months, or those failing to become cytogenetically negative (CCyR) for the t(9;22) with *BCR-ABL1*/ABL1 greater than 1% at 12 months, are at significantly higher risk of disease progression. These time points have been incorporated into a benchmark strategy by the European LeukemiaNet for monitoring suboptimal responses to TKI therapy in CML patients (Baccarani et al, 2013).

Although more than 80% of CML patients on imatinib will be alive and without adverse events at 6 years (Hochhaus et al, 2008; 2009; Hughes & Branford, 2009), a significant subgroup will manifest resistance to imatinib. Imatinib treatment failures are typically identified by loss of a previously attained CCyR, loss of MMR, or suboptimal responses at time points as described earlier. Although resistance to TKI therapy is complex, about 50% of CML patients develop point mutations in the ABL1 kinase domain of the chimeric *BCR-ABL1* gene that confer variable degrees of nonresponsiveness to imatinib or second-generation agents. Interestingly, such mutations may be naturally selected in the presence of these drugs, such that cells harboring the *ABL1* kinase domain mutations (KDM) gain a survival advantage and expand under the continued pressure of the pharmacologic therapy. Abnormal activity of activation-induced cytidine deaminase (AID), an enzyme important in the somatic hypermutation process in germinal center B cells, may be important in the acquisition of *ABL1* KDM in CML patients (Klemm et al, 2009). For patients being monitored by RQ-PCR, an increase in normalized *BCR-ABL1* transcript level of 0.5 to 1 log demonstrated in at least two consecutive samples is often indicative of the presence of an acquired *ABL1* KDM. The precise quantitative level of change is somewhat controversial, and other investigators have suggested an increase of only 2.6-fold as optimal for detection of a KDM when using a highly optimized RQ-PCR assay (Press et al, 2009). *ABL1* mutations can occur anywhere in the kinase domain, but they tend to preferentially involve critical amino acids in several regions corresponding to the phosphorylation loop (P-loop), activation loop (A-loop), and drug contact sites. Notably, P-loop and some direct contact site mutations are associated with high-level resistance to imatinib. Examples of common P-loop alterations include Q252H, Y253F/H, E255K/V, and G250E. Nonetheless, a significant number of imatinib resistance mutants can be overcome by increasing the dosage of imatinib or by switching to a second-generation TKI, such as dasatinib, nilotinib, or bosutinib. Most problematic of all is the contact site mutation T315I, which is relatively frequently encountered and exhibits marked in vivo and clinical resistance to imatinib and all other currently approved second-generation TKI drugs (Quintás-Cardama & Cortes, 2008). Molecular diagnostic evaluation for *ABL1* KDM is therefore an increasingly integral part of assessment for a subset of CML patients (Jones et al, 2009). Most commonly, *ABL1* KDM are detected by direct sequencing of the amplified region of ABL1 from the *BCR-ABL1* transcript. This approach is relatively insensitive technically, but it is successful at mRNA levels of *BCR-ABL1*/ABL1 at or above the MMR, where acquired drug resistance is likely to be encountered. The scope of ABL1 KDM analysis has progressed to allow predictions of response to the various TKI agents in clinical use, thus giving the managing physician a rational approach to selecting alternative TKI drugs if mutation-based resistance to one agent has developed in a given patient (Branford et al, 2009; Widemann et al, 2011). Efforts to refine this type of real-time therapeutic efficacy assessment will continue as newer TKI or related small molecule kinase inhibitors enter the clinical arena. In this regard, overcoming the particularly adverse effects of the pan-resistant T315I is a major goal. Finally, it should be noted that low-level mutations can be identified using very sensitive targeted molecular techniques in chronic phase CML patients who are otherwise initially responsive to imatinib. The predictive value of such small subclonal populations is not well understood, and currently there is no rationale for "early" mutation detection in CML patients starting treatment with imatinib; however, the importance of detecting small mutated clones may increase as more data emerge (Quintás-Cardama et al, 2008).

Ph-Negative Myeloproliferative Neoplasms: Polycythemia Vera, Essential Thrombocythemia, and Primary Myelofibrosis—*JAK2*, *MPL* Gene, and CALR Mutations

The non-CML, or Ph-negative myeloproliferative neoplasms (MPN), include polycythemia vera (PV), essential thrombocythemia (ET), and primary myelofibrosis (PMF). These diseases are individually characterized by a defined set of clinical, laboratory, and morphologic features, yet show striking overlap in several aspects. Until recently, relatively little was understood about the molecular pathogenesis of the Ph-negative MPN; however, this situation has improved substantially with the discovery of mutations involving the *JAK2* (Janus kinase 2) gene, encoding a tyrosine kinase central to ligand-induced cell signaling in hematopoietic progenitor cells. In 2005, four research groups independently described a novel single point mutation abnormality in *JAK2*, occurring in classically defined chronic MPN exclusive of CML (Baxter et al, 2005; James et al, 2005; Kralovics et al, 2005; Levine et al, 2005; Ramchandren et al, 2013). This mutation produces a V617F amino acid substitution (phenylalanine for valine) and constitutively activates the *JAK2* tyrosine kinase. These studies and others have subsequently identified the *JAK2* V617F in 95% of PV, 75% of PMF, and 50% of ET. *JAK2* mutation is rarely detected in other MPN (e.g., chronic neutrophilic leukemia), myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), and MDS/MPN cases. *JAK2* is one member of a family of structurally related tyrosine kinases containing a tyrosine kinase domain and an adjacent "pseudokinase" domain, the latter functioning to inhibit and thus autoregulate activity of the true kinase domain (Ihle & Gilliland, 2007); this juxtaposition of activation and autoregulatory regions thus accounts for the designation of this class of genes after the two-faced Roman god Janus (Fig. 76-4). In normal cellular function, JAK proteins function to

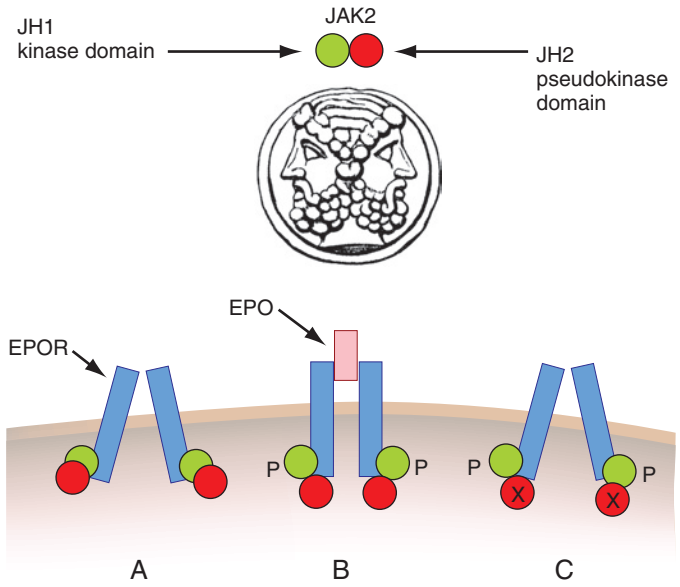


Figure 76-4 Role of *JAK2* mutations in myeloproliferative neoplasms, *BCR-ABL1* (Ph) negative. The Janus kinase 2 (*JAK2*) "two-headed" protein is illustrated by two circles, corresponding to the JH1 tyrosine kinase domain *(green)* and the inhibitory JH2 pseudokinase domain *(red)*. **A,** *JAK2* has bound to the erythropoietin receptor (EPOR). In the absence of ligand binding, the JH2 domain prevents activation of the JH1 domain. **B,** The ligand erythropoietin has bound to the receptor, inducing conformational changes that permit activation of the JH1 tyrosine kinase domain. **C,** The *JAK2* V617F mutation (indicated by "X") prevents proper interaction between the JH2 and JH1 domains, thus allowing tyrosine kinase activity at extremely low concentrations of ligand, or even in the absence of ligand binding. (Adapted from Klipp E, Liebermeister W: Mathematical modeling of intracellular signaling pathways, *BMC Neurosci* 7(Suppl 1):10, 2006; Bennett M, Stroncek DF: Recent advances in the bcr-abl negative chronic myeloproliferative diseases, *J Transl Med* 4:41, 2006.)

initiate cellular signaling pathways between specific cell surface receptors lacking catalytic activity via interactions with STAT proteins (signal transducers and activators of transcription); activated STAT proteins translocate to the nucleus and differentially regulate target genes in response to the corresponding initial cell surface signal (Pfeifer et al, 2008). Of note, the V617F mutation so consistently identified in these entities affects the inhibitory pseudokinase domain of the protein, resulting in unchecked ligand-independent tyrosine kinase activity of *JAK2* and an increased propensity for cellular proliferation (Ihle & Gilliland, 2007). *JAK2* in particular associates with the cell surface erythropoietin receptor (EPO-R) and becomes activated by the binding of EPO, thus accounting in part for the significance of the V617F mutation in the pathogenesis of PV.

The variability of disease phenotypes among the different Ph-negative MPN that otherwise share the presence of a single common gene mutation remains incompletely understood, but several hypotheses have been advanced to explain the apparent centrality of the *JAK2* V617F mutation in the three major MPN subtypes (James, 2008). First, the nature of the hematopoietic progenitor cell in which the *JAK2* mutation occurs may result in specific patterns of disease. For example, a V617F mutation arising in cells fully or partially committed to erythroid or megakaryocytic differentiation might be expected to induce phenotypic features in the progeny of the transformed cells consistent with PV or an ET type processes, respectively. Second, the amount of mutated, activated protein that is produced seems to have some bearing on disease phenotype. Patients with PV and a subset of those with PMF are more likely to be homozygous for the V617F mutation and consequently have a higher mutated "allele burden" than do patients with ET. Interestingly, homozygous mutation status is selected for by the process of uniparental disomy (copy-neutral loss of heterozygosity), usually through mitotic duplication of the mutated *JAK2* allele (Kralovics et al, 2002; Vannucchi et al, 2008). Third, the larger genetic background in which the mutation occurs may to some degree influence the expression of the disease. For example, the introduction of the V617F mutation into different strains of mice yields consistently different disease phenotypes (James, 2008), and some evidence suggests that polymorphisms in such genes as *JAK2* and *EPOR* are associated with certain MPNs but not with others (Pardanani et al, 2008). Furthermore, despite the major advance represented by the discovery of *JAK2* V617F mutations in MPN, this genetic lesion is clearly not present in all cases, and as a corollary, many presentations of MPN (especially ET and some PMF) are not associated with deregulation of this gene. This has led to the suggestion that the *JAK2* mutation may be a relatively late event in transformation (Kralovics et al, 2006, Nussenzveig et al, 2007; Ramchandren et al, 2013), with earlier mutations in other unknown genes perhaps setting the stage for the development of a specific MPN and the *JAK2* mutation providing only the final element necessary for growth factor-independent proliferation. Nevertheless, the advent of small molecule *JAK2* inhibitors for clinical use indicates the importance of this target in both disease biology and management.

Whereas constitutive *JAK2* activation is clearly important in the MPN, this relationship is most consistent in PV. It now appears that the small number (approximately 5%) of patients with PV who lack the *JAK2* V617F mutation instead harbor different mutations in *JAK2*, most commonly involving exon 12 (Scott et al, 2007; Pietra et al, 2008). Patients with PV with *JAK2* exon 12 mutations do not show the same propensity to thrombocytosis as those with *JAK2* V617F mutations, but otherwise the disease appears clinically similar, despite the alternate localization of the mutation (Kilpivaara & Levine, 2008). Finally, in addition to *JAK2* mutations, other genetic abnormalities are also biologically and diagnostically important in this setting. Mutations in the *MPL* gene have been identified in a subset (<10%) of *JAK2*-negative cases of ET and PMF (Pikman et al, 2006; Tefferi, 2008; Beer et al, 2008). *MPL* encodes the cell surface receptor for thrombopoietin, and activating mutations thus induce aberrant constitutive signaling effects, as observed similarly for mutated *JAK2*. The changes in *MPL* involve several possible amino acid substitutions (W to L, K, or S), all occurring at codon 515.

Although it is apparent that *JAK2* and *MPL* mutations are in general neither necessary nor sufficient for the diagnosis of Ph-negative MPN, the detection of either one can establish the presence of a clonal myeloid neoplasm and help distinguish potentially overlapping reactive conditions in which cytoses figure prominently. The presence of *JAK2* V617F gene mutations in MPN can be detected by a variety of methods, including allele-specific PCR (also referred to as *amplification refractory mutation system*, or ARMS PCR), melting curve analysis of PCR products, allele-specific fluorescent probe hybridization, pyrosequencing, restriction enzymatic digestion of PCR amplicons, and direct sequencing of PCR-amplified DNA. The latter two methods may be of limited analytic sensitivity for detecting small percentages of *JAK2* mutated cells in a given case. The recommended analytic sensitivity of a *JAK2* V617F assay has been proposed as less than or equal to 1% (Wang et al, 2008; Ramchandren et al, 2013). Some studies have shown that small numbers of randomly tested healthy individuals, when analyzed with techniques of this or much higher technical sensitivity, will demonstrate the presence of a low-level *JAK2* mutation (Xu et al, 2007). The significance of this finding is not certain, although it is likely analogous to the detection of leukemia-associated translocations at low levels in apparently healthy individuals. More significantly, *JAK2* V617F mutations are also detectable in some subtypes of myelodysplastic syndrome, in myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative neoplasms (e.g., chronic myelomonocytic leukemia), and in rare cases of lymphoma and acute leukemia. Thus a positive *JAK2* V617F result must always be correlated with clinical and complete pathologic data; conversely, the detection of this mutation in a patient with clinical and/or morphologic features of a classic myeloproliferative neoplasm may be interpreted as essentially confirmatory of such a process. In order to expand the scope of molecular analysis in MPN, an increasing number of laboratories are complementing *JAK2* V617F assays with additional lab-developed tests to detect mutations in *MPL* or *JAK2* exon 12. *MPL* analysis may be performed using allele-specific PCR, allele-specific fluorescent probe hybridization, or direct sequencing of PCR products (Pancrazzi et al, 2008; Daly et al, 2009). In contrast, *JAK2* exon 12 presents a relatively large genomic area across which mutations may be scattered. Screening techniques, including high-resolution melting curve analysis, may be used to triage specimens and distinguish those that are apparently wild type from those deserving of additional scrutiny via direct sequencing (Jones et al, 2008; Rapado et al, 2009).

JAK2 and MPL mutations are negative in a subset of Ph-negative MPN that ultimately share the same natural progression to secondary myelofibrosis and acute myeloid leukemia as in JAK2 and MPL mutation-positive MPN. This suggests the presence of a second subset of gene mutations that may elicit MPN or are involved in its clonal evolution and disease progression. In 2013, using whole gene sequencing, two study groups independently identified defining somatic mutation in the CALR gene that encodes the highly conserved endoplasmic reticulum protein, calreticulin (Nangalia et al, 2013; Klampfl et al, 2013). Around 19 mutation variants are reported in the CALR gene, all of which affect exon 9 and cause a

frame shift mutation that forms a novel mutant calreticulin protein without the classic KDEL endoplasmic reticulum signal. However, there are significant changes in the subcellular localization of the mutant protein, compared with the wild type, in which the mutant calreticulin protein was observed in the endoplasmic reticulum without increased cell-surface or Golgi accumulation (Nangalia et al, 2013).

The CALR mutation is predominantly detected in cases of myeloproliferative neoplasms with non-mutated JAK2 and MPL genes. Patients with PMF harbor more mutation burden than in ET, with a reported incidence of detection around 67% to 88% respectively, thus making CALR mutations the second most common mutations in MPN. In comparison to *JAK2*- and MPL-positive *MPN*, CALR mutation are reported to be more common in male patients that clinically have lower levels of hemoglobin and higher platelet numbers. Klampfl and colleagues (2013) reported that patients with a mutated CALR gene showed a lower risk of thrombosis and longer overall survival than patients with a mutated *JAK2*, However, there was no significant difference in overall survival and disease progression from *JAK2*- and MPL-positive MPN in the other study (Nangalia et al, 2013). Identification of CALR gene mutations may provide an important tool in diagnostically challenged cases of *JAK2*- and MPL-negative *MPN*, however, its effect on therapeutic decisions is still under investigation (Rotunno et al, 2014; Tefferi et al, 2014; Passamonti et al, 2014).

Chronic Neutrophilic Leukemia and Atypical Chronic Myeloid Leukemia with CSF3R Gene Mutation

Chronic neutrophilic leukemia (CNL) is an uncommon, slowly progressive subtype of Ph-negative MPN characterized by persistent nonreactive peripheral neutrophilia and associated with bone marrow–based myeloid hyperplasia and hepatosplenomegaly. Patients' survival is variable, and the disease may rarely progress to myelodysplastic syndrome or acute myeloid leukemia. On the other hand, atypical chromic myeloid leukemia (aCML) is classified under the category of myeloproliferative/myelodysplastic neoplasm (MDS/MPN) and is characterized by myeloid proliferation with associated dysplasia (Swerdlow et al, 2008). In comparison to CNL, aCML is a more aggressive disease, with a survival rate of around 15% to 40%, and half of patients with aCML progress to acute myeloid leukemia. There are no defining cytogenetic abnormalities in CNL and aCML, and most cases show non-specific cytogenetic findings. However, JAK2 mutations have been reported in some aCML cases but not CNL cases, which may indicate the clonal nature of the disease. The CSF3R gene encodes the colony-stimulating factor 3 protein that is essential for proliferation, differentiation, and survival of neutrophils and myeloid cells, and earlier studies have linked the CSF3R gene mutation in patients with congenital neutropenia and acute leukemic transformation (Dong et al, 1995; Germeshausen et al, 2007). The mutated CSF3R protein (T618I) lacks the ability to be internalized and shows impaired signaling through both JAK-STAT and SRC tyrosine kinase pathways (Futami et al, 2011). With the recent advances in gene sequencing, CSF3R gene mutations at exons 14 and 17 were reported to be a common event (59%) in patients with CNL and aCML which may play a role in the molecular pathogenesis of these diseases (Maxson et al, 2013; Gotlib et al, 2013). It is promising that patients with CNL carrying the CSF3R mutation showed clinical improvement after the administration of the JAK2 inhibitor (Maxson et al, 2013).

Mastocytosis and the KIT D816V Gene Mutation

Clinical and pathologic manifestations of neoplastic mast cell proliferations are diverse, resulting in a relatively complex system of classification (Swerdlow et al, 2008). In general, mast cell neoplasms can be considered in two main clinical categories: cutaneous mastocytosis exhibiting predominantly localized involvement of the skin and systemic mastocytosis with widespread involvement of the bone marrow and other organs and elevations of mast cell–derived serum tryptase (Horny, 2009; Ramchandren et al, 2013). Mutations in the tyrosine kinase gene *KIT*, particularly the common codon D816V abnormality, are strongly but not invariably associated with mastocytosis. *KIT* is the cell membrane–associated receptor for stem cell factor, an extracellular ligand important in promoting the proliferative activities essential to stem cell regeneration and the expansion of hematopoietic progeny. *KIT* is also expressed on melanocytes, germ cells, and gastrointestinal pacemaker cells (Metcalfe, 2008). Activating *KIT* mutations obviate the normally regulated ligand-receptor mechanism and produce growth factor–independent cell proliferation. Although *KIT* mutations are often detected in mastocytosis, they are not 100% sensitive or specific for this diagnosis. The detection rate is also highly dependent on the assay method used. As many as 30% of cases of systemic mastocytosis may appear to lack the D816V mutation when using moderately sensitive assays on unfractionated bone marrow cells, but the detection rate increases to approximately 95% using higher-sensitivity detection methods such as nested PCR and/or enrichment of mast cells via cell sorting or microdissection (Akin, 2006). The proportion of D816V-negative cases is higher in cutaneous mastocytosis, most likely because of the small sample size (Lanternier et al, 2008). More important, *KIT* mutations are not specific for mastocytosis, in that they are detectable in some cases of CBF acute leukemias (as discussed earlier), gastrointestinal stromal tumors, and a subset of melanomas (Orfao et al, 2007). The genomic distribution of *KIT* mutations is variable in these different tumors. Nevertheless, detection of a *KIT* D816V mutation fulfills one of four "minor" diagnostic criteria for systemic mastocytosis and is thus often helpful in definitively supporting a diagnosis suspected on clinical, morphologic, or immunophenotypic grounds.

The exon 17 situated D816V is the most common *KIT* mutation in mastocytosis, present in more than 90% of positive cases; this consistency presents an attractive target for molecular diagnostic methodologies amenable to the interrogation of specific sequence changes, including restriction fragment length polymorphism-based analysis, allele-specific PCR, and pyrosequencing. Notably, despite the optimism for using imatinib mesylate for more broad-spectrum tyrosine kinase inhibition outside the setting of BCR-ABL–positive neoplasms, the D816V mutation is not responsive to this drug (Vega-Ruiz et al, 2009). Molecular analysis of *KIT* mutations occurring at other locations in the gene (e.g., in many cases of cutaneous mastocytosis, or in non–mast cell malignancies) requires a more comprehensive approach involving post-PCR sequencing of several exon regions.

NEOPLASTIC DISORDERS ASSOCIATED WITH EOSINOPHILIA

The trend to molecular classification of hematologic malignancies is further illustrated by the creation, in the 2008 WHO classification, of a new subcategory of hematopoietic neoplasms defined almost exclusively on molecular grounds. *Myeloid and lymphoid neoplasms with eosinophilia (MLNE) and abnormalities of PDGFRA, PDGFRB, or FGFR1* encompasses a heterogeneous group of both myeloid and lymphoid lineage, previously existing as separate entities largely defined by morphologic, clinical, and certain cytogenetic features (Swerdlow et al, 2008). A unifying feature of these neoplasms is the deregulated activity of specific tyrosine kinase growth factor receptors by aberrant gene rearrangements and a tumor phenotype characterized in part by the production of excess eosinophils and eosinophilic precursors. Hence, these tumors were first broadly and imprecisely classified under *chronic eosinophilic leukemia/idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome (CEL/IHES)*; however, the lineage-specific or underlying neoplastic expansion varies according to the now better understood genetically defined disease subsets. Although laboratory testing for these genetic abnormalities is accomplished mainly by FISH and/or conventional karyotypic analysis, a short précis of this new entity is included here because it represents a good example of the reconfiguration of hematologic malignancies based on molecular characterization.

Rearrangement of the platelet-derived growth factor receptor α (*PDGFRA*) gene is diagnostic of a hematologic malignancy typically characterized by the clonal expansion of eosinophils (i.e., CEL) but may in some cases present with additional findings of AML or T-ALL. The presence of a *PDGFRA* rearrangement thus defines this diagnostic entity at the molecular level, regardless of the cellular component heterogeneity. The most common *PDGFRA* rearrangement is a karyotypically cryptic interstitial deletion at 4q12 that juxtaposes *PDGFRA* with an adjacent gene, *FIP1L1*. The resultant expression of a *FIP1L1-PDGFRA* fusion protein disrupts the autoinhibitory domain of *PDGFRA* and leads to its constitutive tyrosine kinase activity (Stover et al, 2006). An intervening gene called *CHIC2* is deleted in the 4q12 rearrangement; thus assessment of the *CHIC2* locus by the FISH technique serves as an effective method to identify the chromosomal microdeletion and establish the presence of a *PDGFRA* rearrangement (Pardanani et al, 2003; Fink et al, 2009; Ramchandren et al, 2013). Of note, a subset of CEL with *PDGFRA* rearrangements also exhibits abnormal mast cell expansions in the bone marrow, but the *KIT* D816V abnormality is not present in these cases. The overlapping nature of neoplastic myeloid cellular proliferations therefore underscores the comprehensive molecular approach to subclassification of these diseases. Most significantly, patients with *PDGFRA*-positive CEL are remarkably sensitive to treatment with even low doses of imatinib, again emphasizing the potential of molecularly targeted therapy (Pardanani et al, 2003). Myeloid neoplasms with platelet-derived growth factor receptor β (*PDGFRB*) gene rearrangements are conceptually similar. These neoplasms are typically characterized morphologically as chronic myelomonocytic leukemias with

eosinophilia, although variant presentations are recognized. A karyotypic abnormality t(5;12)(q33;p13) is commonly associated with the deregulation of *PDGFRB* via creation of a chimeric *ETV6(TEL)-PDGFRB* fusion gene and protein; however, several other translocation partners with *PDGFRB* have also been described. Alterations of the *PDGFRB* locus can be detected by FISH analysis, although some cases are FISH negative in the face of a submicroscopic *ETV6-PDGFRB* gene fusion, indicating that comprehensive detection requires a combination of PCR-based and molecular cytogenetic approaches. *PDGFRB* rearranged neoplasms are also expected to benefit from treatment with imatinib (David et al, 2007). In contrast to MLNE with rearrangements of *PDGFRA* or *PDGFRB*, patients with tumors overexpressing fibroblast growth factor receptor-1 (*FGFR1*) differ in certain key respects. First, the translocated gene encodes a tyrosine kinase receptor involved in a different cell signaling pathway. Second, these cases are particularly associated with presentations of lymphoblastic (e.g., T-ALL) or mixed phenotype acute leukemias, as well as often prominent neoplastic eosinophilia. And finally, an effective tyrosine kinase inhibitor therapy has yet to be established in the setting of *FGFR1* rearrangement. Cytogenetic and FISH analyses can be used to diagnose the presence of *FGFR1* gene rearrangements.

MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS OF NON-HODGKIN LYMPHOMAS

RATIONALE FOR MOLECULAR GENETIC ANALYSIS IN THE LYMPHOID DISORDERS

The non-Hodgkin lymphomas (NHLs) and chronic lymphoid leukemias encompass relatively common adult malignancies, and the incidence of these diseases is increasing (Chiu & Weisenburger, 2003; Liu et al, 2003; Fisher & Fisher, 2004). A central paradigm in the diagnosis of lymphoma is the demonstration of monoclonality, which is highly correlated with the malignant state. In many instances, a monoclonal lymphoid proliferation can be suggested or established with the aid of immunophenotypic studies—for example, by demonstrating light chain restriction in the case of B cell neoplasms or aberrant antigen expression in the setting of atypical T cell expansions. However, there are several instances in which the foregoing analyses may be insufficient and the determination of clonality in a lymphoid population remains a key diagnostic issue. In these situations, which may include samples with uninformative phenotypic features, small tissue biopsies, or partially degraded specimens and paraffin-embedded tissues, the molecular assessment of antigen receptor gene rearrangements is extremely valuable. Standard molecular clonality detection methods are often employed to resolve the definitive diagnosis of lymphoid neoplasms with features potentially mimicking benign hyperplasias (e.g., follicular lymphomas or extranodal marginal zone B cell lymphomas), to assign cell lineage in undifferentiated hematopoietic tumors (i.e., B vs. T cell), and to aid in the diagnosis of neoplastic T cell lymphoproliferations.

Along with characteristic light microscopic tumor cell features and immunophenotypic cell marker profiling (e.g., by flow cytometry and immunohistochemistry), the identification of recurrent, nonrandom tumor genetic abnormalities (most commonly produced by chromosomal translocation events) has also fundamentally refined the subclassification of the NHLs. Indeed, cytogenetic and molecular genetic data of this type now form an integral part of the 2008 WHO lymphoma classification (Swerdlow et al, 2008). The following sections detail the molecular approaches to the determination of B and T cell clonality and the detection and significance of common recurrent lymphoma translocations. More recent advancements, including research applications of microarray gene expression profiling and array-based genomics studies, have begun to further alter the landscape of subclassification and prognostication in the lymphomas, and, as such, these efforts will translate into novel molecular targets (Andrulis et al, 2012; Balatti et al, 2012; 2013) and even technical platforms for future diagnostic applications. The major implications of these newer developments will also be briefly presented in reference to specific types of NHL.

ANTIGEN RECEPTOR GENE REARRANGEMENTS FOR CLONALITY DETERMINATION

Mechanism of Antigen Receptor Gene Rearrangements

The antigen receptor genes are rearranged early in the development of B and T lymphocytes in the bone marrow and thymus, respectively. The process of DNA rearrangement, or genetic recombination, essentially involves the splicing and fusion of one of numerous *v*ariable (V) gene segments with a *j*oining (J) exon. At some loci, notably the immunoglobulin heavy chain and T cell receptor β genes, an additional diversity (D) segment is interposed between V and J segments. The assembled V-J or V-D-J segment is subsequently joined with the *c*onstant (C) region of the antigen receptor gene to produce an intact coding sequence capable of translation to a functional antigen receptor protein (Fig. 76-5, *A* and *B*) (Macintyre & Delbesse, 1999; Bassing et al, 2002). Immune cells incapable of producing functional receptor proteins undergo deletion by apoptosis. For immature B cells, the immunoglobulin heavy chain gene (*IGH@*) on chromosome 14(q32) is the first to undergo this segmental rearrangement, followed in turn by the κ light chain gene (*IGK@*) on 2(p12). If the latter attempt is nonproductive at both alleles, the λ locus (*IGL@*) on 22(q11) is selected in order to generate the final tetrameric immunoglobulin molecule. For T cells, the T cell receptor δ (*TRD@*) [14(q11)] and γ (*TRG@*) [7(p15)] loci initiate this process in the thymus; however, many of these gene rearrangements fail to produce a functional heterodimeric receptor protein. Thus rearrangement continues essentially simultaneously at the T cell receptor α (*TRA@*) and β (*TRB@*) loci, located on chromosomes 14(q11) and 7(q34), respectively, generating a Tαβ receptor in the large majority (>90%) of T cells. As an important point related to molecular analysis (discussed later), nearly all mature Tαβ cells still retain a γ (*TRG@*) locus gene rearrangement (Rawlings et al, 2012).

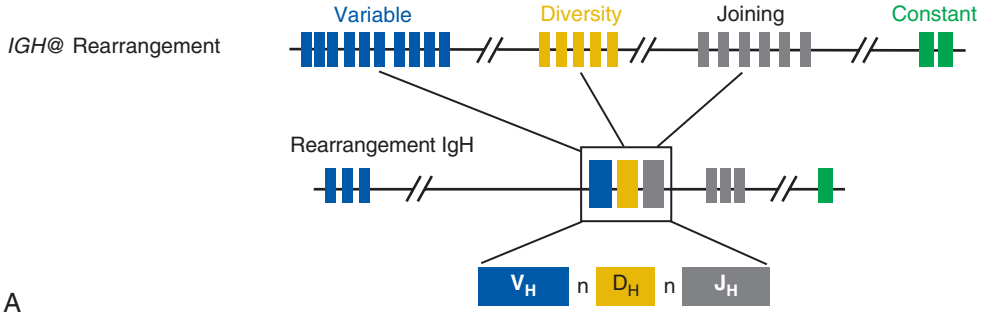
Enormous diversity exists among the immunoglobulin and T cell receptors, arising in part from the potential for genetic recombination between numerous V-, (D-), and J-gene segments at these loci. In addition, the activity of the enzyme terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) adds nontemplated ("N") nucleic acid bases at the junctions of the rearranged gene segments in immature B and T cells, further increasing sequence diversity (see Fig. 76-5, *A* and *B*). As a result of the largely random nature of this process, individual B and T lymphocytes harbor specific gene rearrangement sequences and express correspondingly unique antigen receptor immune proteins on their cell surfaces. In a polyclonal lymphoid expansion, therefore, a highly variable distribution of antigen receptor gene rearrangements is generally found, whereas a monoclonal population is characterized by a single identical gene rearrangement in each progeny cell. This concept is exploited by both Southern blot hybridization (SBH) analysis and PCR technique to distinguish polyclonal ("benign") from monoclonal ("malignant") lymphocytic proliferations.

Techniques to Detect Antigen Receptor Gene Rearrangements: Southern Blot Hybridization

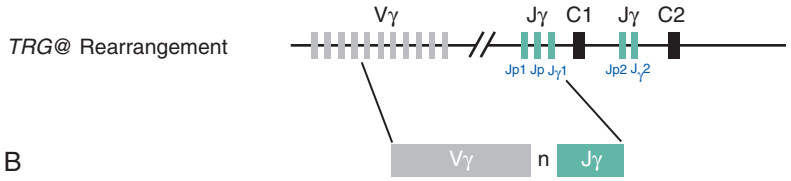
Genomic SBH technique can be considered a relatively "large-scale" molecular approach, involving restriction endonuclease enzyme digestions of a high molecular weight DNA sample, followed by fragment separation, immobilization on a nylon or nitrocellulose membrane, and specific radioisotope (or nonisotopic) labeled probe detection of one or more relatively large target DNA fragments (Cossman et al, 1988; Beishuizen et al, 1993; Langerak et al, 1999; Macintyre & Delbesse, 1999; Medeiros & Carr, 1999; Arber, 2000). A schematic summary and example of genomic SBH as applied to the diagnosis of lymphoma is shown in Figure 76-5, *C* and *D*. The principle of the test is to collect large amounts of DNA material from the tissue of interest, digest it using specific restriction enzymes, and then look for a specific clonal, non-germline pattern. A positive control, usually a cell line, and a negative control, such as water or buffer, are also used to compare the results. The digested DNA is run on a gel to separate DNA fragments and then transferred to nitrocellulose membrane. The DNA fragments are visualized by probe hybridization linked to a radioactive material, chromogenic dye, or fluorescent dye. For the reasons listed in Table 76-5, Southern blot analysis is often replaced by the PCR assay. One great advantage of Southern blot over PCR is the low false-positive and false-negative results caused by under digestion and by the presence of polymorphic restriction sites.

Advantages and Shortcomings of Southern Blot Hybridization and Polymerase Chain Reaction for Lymphoid Clonality Assessment

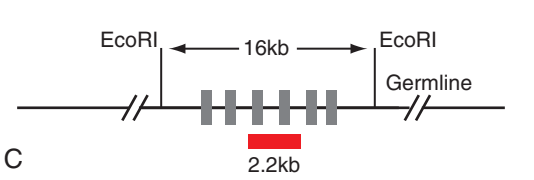
The decision to use PCR versus SBH requires knowledge of several factors, such as tissue source, type of lymphoproliferative disorder being investigated, sensitivity of the respective assays, and false-positive and false-negative rates. The advantages and disadvantages of the respective techniques are summarized in Table 76-5. In general, PCR technique has gained wide popularity for clonality determination, principally due to its relative ease of performance and rapidity. SBH method is, in contrast, labor intensive and costly; it may involve the use of radioactive probes and


IGH@ Rearrangement
Variable
Diversity
Joining
Constant
Rearrangement IgH
VH
n
DH
n
JH

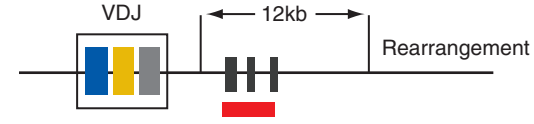
A

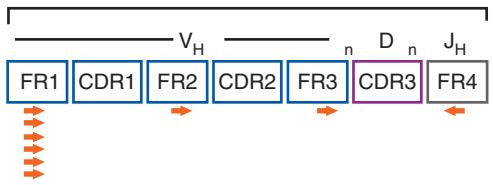

TRG@ Rearrangement
Vγ
Jγ
C1
Jγ
C2
Jp1 Jp Jγ1
Jp2 Jγ2
Vγ
n
Jγ

B

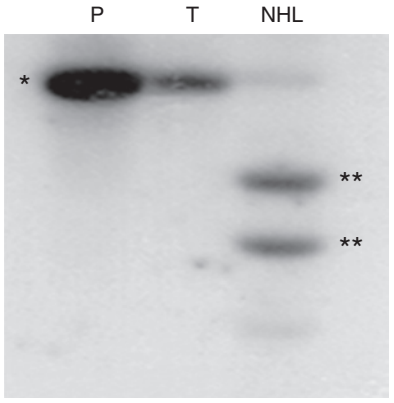

EcoRI
16kb
EcoRI
Germline
2.2kb

C

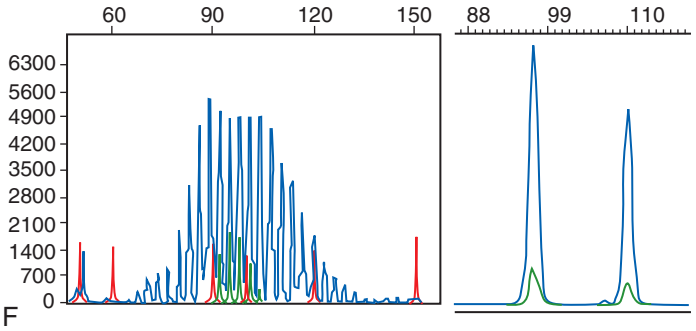

VDJ
12kb
Rearrangement


VH
n
D
n
JH
FR1
CDR1
FR2
CDR2
FR3
CDR3
FR4

E


P
T
NHL
*
**
**

D


60
90
120
150
88
99
110
6300
5600
4900
4200
3500
2800
2100
1400
700
0

F

Figure 76-5 Immunoglobulin and T cell receptor gene rearrangements: concept and application of Southern blot hybridization (SBH) and polymerase chain reaction techniques for clonality determination in lymphoid populations. A, Schematic demonstration of the basic process of somatic rearrangement of the immunoglobulin heavy chain (*IGH@*) locus at chromosome 14q32 occurring early in developing B cells. Selection and rearrangement of *IGH@* diversity (D_H) and joining (J_H) gene segments first occur over a large region of intervening DNA, followed by the recruitment of a variable region (V_H) exon to complete a VDJ coding cassette. Substantial diversity is generated at the nucleotide level because of the recombination potential of the many V, D, and J segments, as well as by the activity of the enzyme terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT), which inserts a random number of "nontemplated" (n) nucleotides at the rearranged junctions. The T cell receptor gamma gene (*TRG@*) located at chromosome 7p15, depicted in panel **B,** shares similar structural and rearrangement features, with the exception that there are no D-segments. The *TRG@* gene is less complex, having only 11 functional Vγ segments capable of functional rearrangements, although there are two J-segment loci (Jp and Jγ) and two constant regions. **C,** Schematic of the J-region of the immunoglobulin heavy chain gene (*IGH@*) locus on chromosome 14q32. J_H exons are shown as boxes. The intact, or germline, J_H region is flanked by EcoRI restriction endonuclease sites, which, upon DNA digestion, will render a fragment of approximately 16 kilobases (kb) in size. This large DNA fragment can be detected by SBH using a cloned or PCR-generated radioisotope-labeled probe (in this case, a 2.2-kb genomic fragment is depicted as the probe). In contrast, when the J_H region is altered by the somatic gene rearrangement process in a B cell, a change in restriction enzyme sites is introduced, such that digestion produces a DNA fragment of altered size from the expected germline size. In the diagram, this is shown as a new 12 kb J_H fragment. In a monoclonal B cell population, all B cells will harbor the same rearrangement, and this can be detected by SBH technique as a new band distinct from the germline location. **D,** Typical results of SBH for detection of *IGH@* locus gene rearrangements. Lanes "P" and "T" indicate placental and tonsil DNA samples digested with EcoRI and analyzed by SBH, indicating the presence of germline (16-kb) bands only *(single asterisk)*. The lane "NHL" is a B cell lymphoma sample showing clonally rearranged bands that clearly differ in size from the germline configuration. The presence of two new bands in the NHL sample *(double asterisks)* is indicative of biallelic *IGH@* locus rearrangements. **E,** The "micro-locus" features of a rearranged *IGH@* gene, showing the joined VDJ exon coding region. The V_H segment encodes much of the variable component of the immunoglobulin heavy chain. Three framework regions (FRI-III) are identified in the V-segment, as well as two complementary determining regions (CDRI and II). The third and most variable region of nucleotide sequence is comprised of the junction between V-, D-, and J-segments, along with inserted nontemplated (n) nucleotides (mediated by the enzyme TdT); this region is termed *CDRIII* and represents a highly unique nucleotide sequence in each B cell. The presence of shared sequence homology among many of the V-region segments in the antigen receptor gene loci, along with the highly homologous nature of the J-segments, permits the detection of most gene rearrangements occurring in B or T cell lymphocytes by PCR methods employing flanking "consensus" oligonucleotide primers. This concept is depicted by the orange arrows. The use of multiple primer sets covering the region of interest and targeting of different antigen receptor loci increase the chance of detecting even rare immunoglobulin or T cell gene rearrangements in a lymphoid population. **F,** Typical results of *IGH@* PCR using fluorescently labeled consensus primers and analysis by capillary electrophoresis. In a polyclonal B cell population, a range of VDJ rearrangement sizes exists, delimited both by the nature of V-, D-, and J-segments used and the finite number of inserted n-nucleotides. This fragment size range is normally distributed, as shown in the left panel. In contrast, a monoclonal B cell population is characterized by a single (or dual, if biallelic) rearrangement(s), as demonstrated in the right panel.

TABLE 76-5

Southern Blot Hybridization versus Polymerase Chain Reaction Method for Lymphoid Clonality Analysis

	Advantages	Disadvantages
Southern blot	Essentially no false-negative results Can detect nature of uncommon rearrangements (e.g., partial D-J) Can detect presence of oligoclonal gene rearrangement patterns	Cost, labor, technical difficulty Time-intensive (requires 1 to 2 weeks) Possible use of radionuclide labeled probes Requirement for high molecular weight DNA Large amount of DNA required (5 µg per enzymatic digestion) Limited analytic sensitivity (can detect 5% to 10% of a monoclonal population in background cells)
PCR	Rapid (24 to 48 hours), inexpensive, technically straightforward Use of DNA from many sources, including fixed, paraffin-embedded tissues Requires minimal DNA (0.5 to 1 µg per reaction) Sensitive (nominally 1% to 5%, can be augmented) Can combine different PCR locus strategies to increase clonality detection rate	False-positive risk (contamination, skewed T cell gene rearrangements) False-negative risk (detection rate not 100%) May miss oligoclonal populations Analytic sensitivity can be adversely affected by presence of polyclonal lymphocyte background when using consensus primers

DNA, Deoxyribonucleic acid; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction.

requires approximately 1 to 2 weeks to complete. Further disadvantages of SBH include the requirement for fresh or frozen tissue of good quality (for high molecular weight DNA) and a relatively low sensitivity, in the range of 5% to 10%. PCR is advantageous in that the turnaround time is within 2 to 3 days, it is cheaper, and it requires far less starting DNA quantity (e.g., 0.5-1 µg) compared with SBH. Moreover, PCR can be performed from fresh samples or fixed paraffinized tissue sources, although certain fixatives (e.g., B5), or substances commonly used in lymph node or bone marrow processing, may inhibit the PCR. Clonality assessment by PCR has a nominal sensitivity of 1% to 5%, although a prominent polyclonal B or T cell background can significantly reduce the ability of the technique to detect a coexistent monoclonal lymphocyte population.

Although PCR methods seemingly offer advantages relative to SBH, the technique is occasionally subject to false-negative assay results, because it is not possible to design consensus-type primers to capture all possible antigen receptor gene rearrangements; the issue of somatic hypermutation in B cells is one example, although this can be largely overcome with multiple primer strategies and inclusion of the *IGK@* locus. More significantly, the problem of false positivity is a risk encountered not uncommonly in interpretation of T cell gene rearrangements by PCR. This situation is most aptly seen at the *TRG@* locus, which, as a result of limited overall V- and J-gene segment recombination potential, can lead to aspecific ("pseudoclonal") amplification products in prominent reactive T cell proliferations. Skewed T cell populations can be encountered in several situations, including autoimmune disorders, after allogeneic organ transplantation, or as a consequence of normal aging. Therefore, diagnostic interpretation of T cell clonality studies by PCR is occasionally more problematic, with the propensity for encountering "equivocal" results. Furthermore, the presence of "promiscuous" locus rearrangements (e.g., *TRG* rearrangements in B cells and vice versa) is well described, particularly in cases of lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, indicating that lineage specificity for antigen receptor gene rearrangements is not strictly followed in some lymphoid neoplasias (Szczepanski et al, 2002; Larmonie et al, 2013).

To summarize, PCR and SBH are complementary techniques for the determination of clonality in B and T cell lymphoid proliferations. The current status of PCR-based methods provides a rapid and effective alternative to SBH for interrogating both B and T cell loci, although the detection rate for optimized PCR assays is slightly less than 100%, and conversely, the risk of false-positive results (especially involving T cell receptor gene rearrangements) requires vigilance. It is clear that PCR analysis of antigen receptor gene rearrangements must always be interpreted alongside clinical and relevant pathologic or other laboratory data. Improvements to PCR-based methodology, including expansive coverage of multiple antigen receptor loci, have largely led to the replacement of SBH for lymphoid clonality determination; however, some diagnostic laboratories still retain expertise in SBH practice in order to resolve difficult cases. Finally, PCR analysis provides an additional benefit accruing from its analytic sensitivity under certain circumstances. Because clonal antigen receptor gene rearrangements in individual lymphoid neoplasms are unique, these DNA markers can also be used for highly sensitive (e.g., 10^{-3} to 10^{-5}) and specific detection of MRD in blood or bone marrow following therapy (Szczepanski et al, 2002; Van der Velden et al, 2003; Szczepanski, 2007; Van der Velden et al, 2007). As a primary example, quantitative MRD levels at the end of induction therapy have been shown to be strongly related to event-free and overall survival in childhood lymphoblastic leukemias (Cave et al, 1998; Van Dongen et al, 1998;

Nyvold et al, 2002; Campana, 2008; 2009; Flohr et al, 2008; Ramchandren et al, 2013). These data are now being employed in conjunction with other tumor-associated molecular genetic features (as described previously) to augment individual risk assessment and treatment options for these patients.

MOLECULAR DETECTION AND SIGNIFICANCE OF COMMON LYMPHOMA-ASSOCIATED CHROMOSOMAL TRANSLOCATIONS

Our growing understanding of NHL biology has been substantially furthered by the identification of recurrent chromosomal translocations associated with particular neoplasms (Table 76-6) (Vega & Medeiros, 2003). Identification of these genetic abnormalities is not only highly useful for diagnosis, but it also often provides prognostic information or a specific tumor marker for residual disease detection. In general, chromosome translocations are more prevalent in B cell NHLs and result in the fusion of two genetic loci, most commonly involving the *IGH@* locus. In this pathogenetic process, a normally highly regulated proto-oncogene becomes constitutively activated by juxtaposition to the immunoglobulin gene, leading to marked oncoprotein overexpression, as typified by the *MYC-IGH@* gene fusion in Burkitt lymphoma (BL) and some large B cell lymphomas. In a minority of examples, a chimeric fusion gene is produced and expressed as a hybrid mRNA and protein; this situation is found in ALCL of T cell lineage, characterized by the t(2;5)/*NPM1-ALK* abnormality. In either case, interference with normal lymphoid cell growth, homeostasis, or cell death (i.e., apoptosis) is thought to play a central role in lymphomagenesis (Morris et al, 1995; Hernandez et al, 1999; Takeuchi et al, 2011; Chung et al, 2012). Lymphoma-associated translocation events are thought in many tumors to be linked to aberrant consequences of the recombinase activating gene (RAG) and DNA breakage-repair enzyme systems that are active during the time of normal antigen receptor gene rearrangement or through germinal center processes like somatic hypermutation (SHM) and class switch recombination, which also require the enzyme AID (Pasqualucci et al, 2008). The exact mechanisms underlying translocation events in leukemias and lymphomas are incompletely understood but may involve nonrandom spatial proximity of genes during cell cycling, fragile sites such as single-stranded intermediates of DNA prone to breakage and recombination, and other factors (Roix et al, 2003; Raghavan et al, 2004; Schwartz & Murray, 2011). Whereas most acute leukemia-associated translocations are best identified by the presence of their fusion corresponding chimeric mRNA species, gene fusion abnormalities in the lymphomas require a different molecular diagnostic strategy. A proportion of lymphoma-associated translocations can be detected by PCR methods using genomic DNA because of substantial breakpoint clustering in both partner genes; however, many are not amenable to PCR detection due to large regions of genomic breakpoint heterogeneity and additional analyses, such as FISH or immunohistochemistry (to detect overexpressed proteins), playing vital roles in the specific diagnosis and subclassification of the NHLs. New investigative techniques evaluating global gene expression or regulation are providing a more comprehensive, though complicated, picture of the pathways of genetic deregulation in NHLs, with and without recurrent translocations (see later). These next-generation platforms have already begun to further influence the subclassification and prognostication of lymphoid neoplasms; disease-specific examples are briefly discussed here.

t(14;18)/BCL2-IGH@ Abnormality in Follicular and Diffuse Large B Cell Lymphomas

The t(14;18)(q21;q32) abnormality is a common translocation encountered in B-lineage lymphomas. At the molecular level, this translocation results in the juxtaposition of the *BCL2* gene with the J-region of the immunoglobulin heavy chain locus (*IGH@*). As a consequence, the *BCL2* gene on 18q21 is brought under the control of the highly active *IGH@* enhancer element on the derivative 14q32, leading to marked overexpression of *BCL2* protein. The *BCL2* gene product is a prototypic antiapoptotic protein capable of abrogating the process of programmed cell death in cells exposed to genotoxic or metabolic stress. As such, *BCL2* overexpression can protect neoplastic cells from a variety of otherwise lethal cytotoxic events and promote a milieu favoring acquisition of additional progression-related genetic abnormalities (Cory & Adams, 2002; Reed, 2008; Green et al, 2013). *BCL2* gene rearrangements are present in 85% to 90% of follicular lymphomas, approximately 20% to 25% of diffuse large B cell lymphomas (DLBCL), and rarely in other B cell lymphoproliferative disorders. The partial genomic structure of the *BCL2* gene locus is illustrated in Figure 76-6. The largest proportion (50% to 65%) of break-fusion sites in the *BCL2* gene occurs in a tightly clustered area of approximately 150 bp in the 3′ noncoding segment of exon 3 known as the major breakpoint region (MBR). Additional loosely clustered breakpoint regions in *BCL2* have been described, including the minor cluster (mcr), intermediate cluster (icr), and areas 3′ of the MBR and 5′ of the mcr (Akasaka et al, 1998; Albinger-Hegyi et al, 2002; Caro et al, 2012).

BCL2 gene rearrangements involving the MBR can be readily detected by PCR methods using genomic DNA and consensus primers situated near the MBR and in the *IGH@*-J_H region (Aster & Longtine, 2002; Hsi et al, 2002; Iqbal et al, 2004; Gu et al, 2008; Lam et al, 2008). Other *BCL2* breaksite areas are more difficult to target by PCR because of heterogeneity in distribution; some investigators have described the use of specialized long-distance DNA PCR techniques (requiring the use of high molecular weight DNA template), or RQ-PCR with multiple primer sets to extend

TABLE 76-6
Lymphoma-Associated Translocations and Resultant Gene Rearrangements

Genetic Abnormality	Disease Associations	Basic Molecular Pathogenesis	Diagnostic Detection*
t(14;18)/*BCL2-IGH@*	90% of FL 20% to 30% of DLBCL	Overexpression of antiapoptotic *BCL2* protein in FL; not clear for DLBCL	FISH > PCR
t(11;14)/*CCND1-IGH@*	100% of mantle cell lymphoma	Overexpression of G1-phase cell cycle protein cyclin D1	FISH ≫ PCR
3q27/*BCL6*	30% of DLBCL	Disruption of normal *BCL6* regulation of germinal center B cell maturation	FISH
t(8;14)/*MYC-IGH@* and variant *MYC* translocations	100% of BL; 5% to 10% of DLBCL; rare cases of high-grade B cell lymphoma with concurrent *BCL2* or *BCL6* rearrangements	Overexpression of potent early response mitogenic transcriptional factor *MYC*	FISH
t(11;18)/*API2-MALT1* t(14;18)/*MALT1-IGH@* t(1;14)/*BCL10-IGH@* t(3;14)/*FOXP1-IGH@*	Extranodal marginal zone lymphomas (~20% to 30%)	Upregulation of NFκB signal transduction pathway activity	FISH; RT-PCR (for *API2-MALT1* mRNA)
t(2;5)/*NPM1-ALK* and variant *ALK* translocations	T cell anaplastic large cell lymphoma (~80% to 90%); rare cases of *ALK*-positive large B cell lymphoma	Constitutive activation and abnormal localization of *ALK* tyrosine kinase	FISH (all variants); RT-PCR (for *NPM1-ALK* mRNA)
14q32/*TCL1A*	T cell prolymphocytic leukemia (T-PLL)	Overexpression of transcription factor	FISH

BL, Burkitt lymphoma; *DLBCL,* diffuse large B cell lymphoma; *FISH,* fluorescence in situ hybridization; *FL,* follicular lymphoma; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *RT-PCR,* reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction.
*Detection by molecular techniques indicated; specific diagnosis can also be established in some tumors by detecting specific protein overexpression (e.g., cyclin D1 in mantle cell lymphoma, *ALK* in anaplastic large T cell lymphoma). PCR includes the use of appropriate postamplification detection techniques (e.g., gel/capillary electrophoresis, melting analysis, and sequencing).

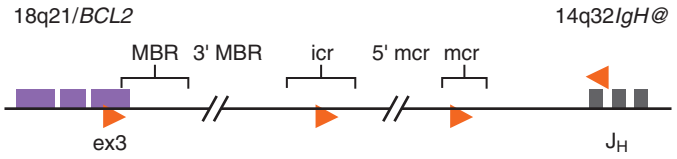


Figure 76-6 The t(14;18)/*BCL2-IGH@* abnormality in non-Hodgkin lymphomas. The *BCL2* gene is rearranged by translocation to the *IGH@* locus in most follicular lymphomas and a subset of large B cell lymphomas. Most genomic breakpoints are relatively tightly clustered in the 3′ aspect of the noncoding third exon of the *BCL2* gene, in a region termed the *major breakpoint region* (MBR). Up to four additional *BCL2* breakpoint clusters have been described: the minor cluster region (mcr), the intermediate cluster region (icr), and two areas near distal and proximal to the MBR and mcr, respectively (i.e., 3′ MBR and 5′ mcr). For the *IGH@* gene, breakpoints occur within the J_H segment region. Because of the clustered nature of breakpoints and the relatively short intervening distances between *BCL2* and J_H in the rearranged configuration, consensus *BCL2* and J_H PCR primers (*orange arrows*) can be used to detect many *BCL2-IGH@* gene fusions arising from the t(14;18)(q21;q32). Nevertheless, the widespread distribution of breakpoints in *BCL2* precludes the identification of a significant number of rearrangements by PCR, such that fluorescence in situ hybridization analysis has emerged as the method of choice for detection. A closely related t(14;18) variant occurs in low-grade extranodal marginal zone B cell ("MALT") lymphomas resulting in a *MALT1-IGH@* gene fusion. Even though they are karyotypically identical, FISH probe analyses can readily distinguish this entity from the *BCL2-IGH@* abnormality.

coverage for detecting *BCL2* rearrangements (Akasaka et al, 1998; Albinger-Hegyi et al, 2002; Weinberg et al, 2007; Green et al, 2013). Ultimately, though, these expanded PCR approaches do not achieve complete detection sensitivity, particularly when compared with highly reliable FISH analysis using *BCL2* and *IGH@* dual-color locus-specific probes (Vega & Medeiros, 2003; Einerson et al, 2005; Lam et al, 2008). FISH is a versatile approach and can be performed on nuclei extracted from fresh or paraffin-embedded tissues. A number of molecular diagnostic laboratories nonetheless continue to offer *BCL2-IGH@* translocation detection by PCR technique, although knowledge of the clinical assay (i.e., detection) sensitivity is important when interpreting these results.

The identification of *BCL2* gene rearrangements in neoplastic lymphoid proliferations is very useful in several clinical contexts, including diagnosis and disease subclassification. Cases of atypical or florid but benign follicular hyperplasia can be histologically and phenotypically difficult to differentiate from follicular lymphoma, and in this situation, the presence of clonal immunoglobulin gene rearrangements and/or the *BCL2-IGH@* abnormality definitively establishes the latter diagnosis. Furthermore, identification of the *BCL2-IGH@* fusion can be used to specifically distinguish low-grade follicular lymphomas from other small B cell lymphomas with potentially overlapping morphologic patterns, such as mantle cell or marginal zone types. As a footnote, the presence of *BCL2* gene rearrangements is relatively specific for follicular lymphoma and is almost always correlated with *BCL2* protein overexpression. Conversely, it is important to realize that many B cell lymphomas and lymphoid leukemias are also associated with deregulated *BCL2* protein expression in the absence of structural *BCL2* gene translocations (e.g., via gene amplification or possibly epigenetic mechanisms), indicating that the protein expression itself cannot be used for specific lymphoma subtyping (Green et al, 2013). As noted, a small proportion of follicular lymphomas lack the t(14;18)/*BCL2-IGH@*. Some of these *BCL2*-rearrangement negative follicular lymphomas demonstrate higher cytologic grade (e.g., grade 3B) and are associated with translocations involving the *BCL6* proto-oncogene (Katzenberger et al, 2004; Gu et al, 2009; Cheung et al, 2010; Green et al, 2013). No significant survival differences have been observed between "*BCL2*-positive" and "*BCL2*-negative" follicular lymphomas, but high-resolution genomics and gene expression profiling studies have suggested distinct molecular pathways for these entities (Leich et al, 2009).

Among DLBCL, the presence of the t(14;18)/*BCL2-IGH@* has been associated with a "germinal center" phenotype. While increasing evidence supports the concept that germinal center type DLBCL has a relatively favorable clinical outcome, the prognostic value of the (14;18) itself in DLBCL remains controversial (Gascoyne et al, 1997; Barrans et al, 2003; Caro et al, 2012).

Rearrangements or genomic gains at the *BCL2* locus have been more recently associated with adverse prognosis in some cases of DLBCL with a "nongerminal center" phenotype (Obermann et al, 2009a; Pasqualucci et al, 2011; Morin et al, 2013). More significantly, as discussed later, the presence of the *BCL2-IGH@* in conjunction with *MYC* gene alterations identifies a subgroup of very aggressive B cell lymphomas (Compagno et al, 2009; Witzig et al, 2011; Chung et al, 2012; Yang et al, 2012; Morin et al, 2013; Zhang et al, 2013; Benetatos et al, 2014).

t(11;14)/CCND1-IGH@ Abnormality in Mantle Cell Lymphoma

The t(11;14)(q13;q32) is essentially pathognomonic for the diagnosis of mantle cell lymphoma (MCL), when considering the differential diagnosis of small B cell neoplasms. This abnormality is also detected in a subset of multiple myelomas (Chapman et al, 2011; Egan et al, 2012). Although previously thought to be present in some cases of B cell prolymphocytic leukemia, splenic marginal zone lymphoma (also referred to as splenic lymphoma with "villous lymphocytes"), and chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), critical reappraisal of the clinical and pathologic spectrum of MCL has led to the conclusion that these occurrences are in fact atypical presentations of MCL (Salido et al, 2010). The t(11;14) places a genomic region on 11q13 called *BCL1* in proximity to the J_H region of the *IGH@* gene (Hartmann et al, 2010). The gene encoding cyclin D1 (*CCND1*) is located telomeric to the majority of *BCL1* breaksites but nonetheless is the consistent target of transcriptional deregulation by the *IGH@* as a result of the translocation. Cyclin D1 is an early G_1-phase cell cycle protein normally required for the activity of cyclin-dependent kinases 4 and 6 (cdk4, cdk6); these holoenzyme complexes promote progression through the G_1/S transition of the cell cycle in proliferating cells principally through phosphorylation of the retinoblastoma protein (Sherr, 2000). Cyclin D1 (in contrast to other related proteins cyclins D2 and D3) is not expressed by normal B cells. Oncogenic overexpression of the D1-type cyclin is thus thought to play a key role in the pathogenesis of MCL and is supported by the overall "proliferative" transcriptional signature in MCL cells as identified by more recent gene expression profiling studies (Rosenwald et al, 2003; Bertoni et al, 2004; Pedro Jares, 2008; Hartmann et al, 2010). This propensity to a proliferative and antiapoptotic tumor phenotype underlies the relatively poor prognosis of MCL, among other "small B-lymphocyte" neoplasms.

Identification of the t(11;14) or *CCND1* genetic rearrangements in MCL is variable, depending on the methodology employed. The *BCL1* breakpoint region encompasses a large area of 11q13. Approximately one-half of *BCL1* locus breakpoints occur over a small, well-defined site, referred to as the major translocation cluster region (MTC) (Williams et al, 1991; 1993a; Chibbar et al, 1998). The MTC is located nearly 120 kilobases (kb) centromeric of the *CCND1* gene. Other breakpoints have been defined by Southern blot analyses and are either more distal to the MTC or are located in the immediate 5′ region of the *CCND1* (Williams et al, 1991; 1993a; 1993b). SBH methods using probes targeting the MTC and other genomic regions were historically described to detect *BCL1* alterations in up to 70% of MCL cases; however, the technical complexity, as well as the lack of commonly available genomic probes for the multiple *BCL1* regions, renders SBH impractical for routine diagnostic purposes. The DNA-based PCR technique has been successfully used to identify the subset of *BCL1-IGH@* fusions involving the MTC region, accounting for an overall translocation detection rate of approximately 40% (Pinyol et al, 1996; Chibbar et al, 1998; Hartmann et al, 2010; Green et al, 2013). It is thus evident that the large and widely distributed breakpoint region encompassed by the *BCL1* locus presents substantial difficulties for these molecular diagnostic approaches. To this end, FISH assays have subsequently emerged as the method of choice for resolving t(11;14)/*CCND1-IGH@* genomic abnormalities in MCL, capable of detecting essentially 100% of rearrangements (Remstein et al, 2000b; Belaud-Rotureau et al, 2002). Some investigators have also described using RQ-PCR evaluation of cyclin D1 mRNA levels to assist in the diagnosis of MCL, although this is not notably more advantageous over genomic FISH (Elenitoba-Johnson et al, 2002; Thomazy et al, 2002; Jones et al, 2004). Finally, cyclin D1 protein overexpression can be readily detected by immunohistochemical technique in fixed, paraffin-embedded tissues, providing an additional rapid, widely applicable and complementary method in the diagnosis of MCL (Belaud-Rotureau et al, 2002). Immunohistochemical detection can occasionally be complicated by the finding of acquired cyclin D1 expression in other B cell neoplasms, in the absence of the *CCND1-IGH@* gene fusion; examples include a subset of hairy cell leukemia and rare cases of chronic lymphocytic leukemia and large B cell lymphoma (Dietrich et al, 2012). In this regard, correlation with clinical presentation, morphology, and immunophenotypic profile is critical, and molecular or FISH studies for the genomic t(11;14)/*CCND1-IGH@* remain an important diagnostic adjunct.

Data derived from gene expression studies of MCL also identified rare cases of morphologically and phenotypically classical MCL that

nonetheless lack the t(11;14) and cyclin D1 overexpression (Rosenwald et al, 2003; Ramchandren et al, 2013). Transcriptional profiling studies reveal similar features in these lymphomas to those found in cyclin D1–positive MCL (Fu et al, 2005). At least some of these uncommon types of MCL have been associated with translocations involving the *CCND2* or *CCND3* genes, or overexpression of D2 or D3 type cyclins (Wlodarska et al, 2008; Hartmann et al, 2010). Identification of SOX11 protein by immunohistochemistry may be helpful in such cases (Mozos et al, 2009).

MALT1, BCL10, and FOXP1 Gene Abnormalities in Extranodal Marginal Zone B Cell Lymphomas

Extranodal marginal zone B cell lymphomas (EN-MZL), also referred to as mucosa associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphomas, are uncommon and biologically unusual lymphoid tumors. In addition to neoplastic growth in many diverse extranodal tissue sites (e.g., stomach, lung, salivary gland, thyroid), these tumors are often characterized by the presence of predisposing infectious or autoimmune conditions and a preceding or coexistent reactive lymphoid component. Gastric EN-MZL is a prototypic example: A significant subset of these lymphomas arises in the presence of *Helicobacter pylori* infection, which appears to play a key role in early disease pathogenesis (Zucca et al, 2000; Isaacson & Du, 2004; Kiel et al, 2012). In addition to underlying conditions, several recurrent genetic abnormalities have been associated with, or in some cases are defining of, EN-MZL. A proportion of these lymphomas may have a normal karyotype or minimal numerical chromosomal changes (e.g., trisomies of 3 or 18); however, specific translocation abnormalities have recently been identified among subsets of EN-MZL, with variable frequency and tissue site distributions (Du, 2007). The t(11;18)(q21;q21)/*API2-MALT1* abnormality was the first to be described and is characterized by fusion of an inhibitor-of-apoptosis gene (*API2*, or *IAP2*) to a gene encoding a paracaspase-like protein (*MALT1*, previously *MLT1*) (Dierlamm et al, 1999; Rosenwald et al, 1999; Baens et al, 2000; Kalla et al, 2000; Motegi et al, 2000; Remstein et al, 2000a; Yonezumi et al, 2001; Ye et al, 2003a; 2003b; Rossi et al, 2011, 2012b). *API2-MALT1* positive tumors have a predilection for gastric and lung sites, with infrequent occurrences elsewhere. A second translocation event occurring in EN-MZL is characterized by the t(14;18)(q21;q32)-derived *MALT1-IGH@* gene fusion (Murga Penas et al, 2003; Sanchez-Izquierdo et al, 2003; Streubel et al, 2003; 2004; Remstein et al, 2004; Ye et al, 2005). Notably, the *MALT1* gene is situated slightly centromeric to the *BCL2* locus on chromosome 18q, and as such these two t(14;18)-associated gene fusions are indistinguishable by standard cytogenetics, requiring instead FISH analysis for accurate diagnosis. *MALT1-IGH@* positive lymphomas are distributed in orbital, parotid, lung, and cutaneous sites and are very uncommonly encountered in the stomach. Other rare translocations described sporadically in EN-MZL are the t(1;14)(p22;q32)/*BCL10-IGH@* and t(3;14)(p14.1;q32)/*FOXP1-IGH@* abnormalities (Wotherspoon et al, 1990; Willis et al, 1999; Streubel et al, 2005). Significantly, some of the reported tissue site distributions for *API2-MALT1* and *MALT1-IGH@* in EN-MZL may be reflective of other factors, such as geographic differences, recurrences of MALT lymphomas in organs distinct from the primary presentation, or other pathogenic influences (Remstein et al, 2006; Kiel et al, 2012). Despite the apparent complexity of translocation genotypes and tissue distribution, a fundamental pathogenesis links these events in the development of EN-MZL. Through overexpression of either *MALT1* or *BCL10* proteins, or by expression of an abnormally active chimeric *MALT1* moiety (i.e., as a result of the *API2-MALT1* gene fusion), constitutive activation of the NF-κB signal transduction pathway is induced, leading to profoundly altered effects on cell growth, immunity, and apoptosis regulation (Isaacson & Du, 2004; Du, 2007). The centrality of the NF-κB pathway also suggests attractive targets for the development of small molecule inhibitor therapies. Results from gene expression profiling studies continue to add to our understanding of pathway deregulation in MALT lymphomas (Chng et al, 2009).

Detection of these translocation events is generally best accomplished by FISH techniques (Remstein et al, 2006). RT-PCR analysis for the *API2-MALT1* transcript has been described and represents an alternative method for detecting the t(11;18) (Zhang et al, 2006); however, owing to substantial breakpoint heterogeneity in both genes, comprehensive primers are necessary and sufficient, good-quality RNA is required, the latter often being a limiting factor in small tissue or paraffin-embedded biopsies. The diagnosis of a MALT lymphoma may not necessarily require additional investigations to detect these specific translocations. Conversely, in some situations, the detection of EN-MZL–related translocations by FISH methods can be very useful to establish the diagnosis of lymphoma in morphologically difficult cases with intermixed reactive or hyperplastic features or to differentiate a true MALT lymphoma from another subtype of low-grade B cell lymphoma. More specifically, detection of the *API2-MALT1* lesion in gastric EN-MZL is potentially important for therapeutic management. Broad-spectrum antibiotic eradication of *H. pylori* can induce tumor regression in a significant subset of translocation-negative gastric EN-MZL, whereas the presence of the *API2-MALT1* gene fusion implies a distinct pathogenesis that is refractory to this nonchemotherapeutic option (Liu et al, 2001; 2002).

Standard PCR analysis for immunoglobulin gene rearrangements is frequently pursued at diagnosis in EN-MZL to confirm the presence of a monoclonal B cell process. The use of PCR for assessing minimal residual disease following therapy can be more problematic. The significance of detecting clonal B cells using the PCR technique in posttreatment biopsies from patients with gastric EN-MZL has been controversial, with some reports suggesting prolonged persistence of monoclonality after histologic eradication of lymphoma, and others paradoxically showing the presence of clonotypic B cell populations in benign gastric lymphoid proliferations (Bertoni et al, 2002; Wundisch et al, 2003; Kiel et al, 2012). Whereas many of these studies have employed PCR techniques with differing sensitivities, it appears that the decrease in PCR-detected clonotypic B cells generally lags behind the histologic normalization of gastric tissue in successfully treated patients. These findings suggest caution in the interpretation of molecular clonality investigations and careful correlation with morphologic findings in this clinical setting.

Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia/Small Lymphocytic Lymphoma: Molecular and Cytogenetic Prognostic Markers

Chronic lymphocytic leukemia and its nodal manifestation small lymphocytic lymphoma (CLL/SLL) is overall an indolent form of B cell lymphoproliferative disorder, often not requiring early therapeutic intervention. Yet, advances in the last decade have defined more distinct prognostic subgroups independent of clinical staging, in turn identifying those patients at risk for early progressive disease and adverse outcome (Seiler et al, 2006; Zent et al, 2006; Hamblin, 2007; Moreno & Montserrat, 2008, Byrd et al, 2013). This area of malignant hematology is illustrative of the convergence of phenotypic, cytogenetic, and molecular genetic tumor features in order to produce a more sophisticated approach to outcome prediction for these patients. Well-known phenotypic adverse factors include high expression of cell surface CD38 antigen and the overexpression of the signaling kinase ZAP-70. Several recurrent cytogenetic anomalies have been identified in CLL/SLL, none of which are disease-specific. These abnormalities include deletions of chromosome 13 or 13q; deletions of 11q; deletions of 17p; and trisomy 12. The cytogenetic changes are most reliably identified by targeted DNA probes using FISH technique. The presence of isolated 13q- has been associated with relatively favorable outcome (Foa et al, 2013). In contrast, 11q- and 17p- confer a more aggressive disease course with early requirement for chemotherapy. In the latter two situations, minimally deleted regions of these chromosomal loci include the *ATM* and *TP53* genes, respectively. In most cases of CLL with loss of 17p, the remaining allele shows mutation of *TP53*, indicating biallelic loss of tumor suppressor p53 expression (Dicker et al, 2009; Fabris et al, 2008; Del Giudice et al, 2012; Domenech et al, 2012). Although 17p- CLL cases account for 10% or less of all patients, these individuals suffer a disproportionate share of disease complications and furthermore are refractory to commonly used purine nucleoside analog chemotherapeutic agents. A major advance in CLL/SLL biology also occurred with the identification of tumors with SHM of the *IGH@* V-region. Previously, CLL/SLL was considered to be a malignant counterpart of "naive" or pregerminal center B cells; the discovery of SHM involving the immunoglobulin genes indicates that these tumor cells have experienced antigenic stimulation in a germinal center environment and are functionally more related to memory type B cells. Prognostically, a significant difference in clinical outcome has been shown for CLL/SLL patients with mutated (defined as >2% nucleotide deviation from germline DNA sequence) versus unmutated *IGH@* V-region status (Hamblin et al, 1999; Oscier et al, 2002; Tobin & Rosenquist, 2005; Del Giudice et al, 2012). Mutational analysis of *IGH@* V-region alleles is currently performed in molecular hematopathology laboratories and though technically involved, this process has been greatly facilitated by the development of comprehensive antigen receptor gene databases (e.g., ImmunoGenetics; http://imgt.cines.fr). These various predictive genetic and phenotypic parameters can obviously coexist in any given case of CLL/SLL, resulting in a complex set of (often) conflicting data for an individual patient (Domenech et al,

2012; Foa et al, 2013). One exception is the presence of the 17p- alteration, for which FISH and molecular screening of *TP53* mutations (e.g., by PCR and sequencing) appear very important to identify these high-risk CLL/SLL patients who may benefit from alternative and earlier treatment interventions (Zenz et al, 2008; Rossi et al, 2009; Byrd et al, 2013; Foa et al, 2013).

Diffuse Large B Cell Lymphomas: Role of *BCL6* and *MYC* Gene Abnormalities and Classification Based on Gene Expression Profiling

The diffuse large B cell lymphomas (DLBCL) are characterized by moderate cytologic variability but a relatively pronounced range of clinical outcome and biologic heterogeneity. Although nearly 50% of patients with de novo DLBCL are clinically "cured" of disease in the era of chemoimmunotherapy (e.g., "CHOP" + rituximab, or R-CHOP), prognostic factors to recognize those individuals with excellent versus poor outcome have not been easily identified. Cytogenetic studies of DLBCL have revealed a range of findings, including normal karyotype, complex karyotype, and the presence of recurrent gene rearrangement abnormalities. Among the last, translocations involving the *BCL2*, *BCL6*, and *MYC* genes are the most frequent or clinically important. Cytogenetic aberrations of chromosome 3q27 and the *BCL6* gene have been characterized in approximately 20% to 40% of DLBCL and a smaller proportion of follicular lymphomas. In contrast to most other lymphoma-associated translocations, gene fusions with *BCL6* can involve a large number of partner genes, many of which are unrelated to the antigen receptor genes (Chen et al, 1998; Ohno, 2004; 2006; Shi et al, 2012). However, a subset of cases will harbor the t(3;14)(q27;q32) abnormality, joining the *BCL6* gene to the *IGH@* locus, while others may involve the immunoglobulin light chain gene loci. In addition, 60% to 70% of DLBCL demonstrate acquired somatic mutations in the 5′ noncoding regulatory region of *BCL6*, with or without accompanying translocation events (Davis et al, 2010).

BCL6 is expressed by normal germinal center lymphocytes (centroblasts and centrocytes), and this gene product is in fact vital for the formation of the normal germinal center reaction, for T cell–dependent antibody responses, and for control of Th2-type cytokine-induced inflammatory responses (Dent et al, 1997; Ye et al, 1997; Polo et al, 2004). The *BCL6* transcriptional program has been shown to be active in repressing proto-oncogene expression in normal B cells, but it is deregulated in large B cell lymphoma cells (Ci et al, 2009). *BCL6* has also been shown to functionally downregulate the p53 and ATR tumor suppressor proteins (Phan et al, 2004; Jardin et al, 2007; Ranuncolo et al, 2007; Caro et al, 2012); in this capacity, *BCL6* functions to protect normal germinal center B cells from apoptotic signaling induced by physiologic DNA double-strand breakage during the somatic hypermutation process, supporting affinity maturation of immunoglobulins. As a consequence of this environment, some normal germinal center–experienced B cells acquire somatic mutations in the 5′ noncoding region of the *BCL6* gene process (Shen et al, 1998); however, the 5′ *BCL6* mutations found in DLBCL are often distributed differentially to mutations in normal B cells, implying that the regions targeted in lymphoma have pathologic effects on gene regulation (Pasqualucci et al, 2003; Jardin & Sahota, 2005; Saito et al, 2007; Compagno et al, 2009). More important, *BCL6* protein is not expressed in normal pregerminal center (naive) B cells, and it is rapidly downregulated in B cells exiting the germinal center, conferring some relative specificity of this marker for the normal germinal center environment. Accordingly, the presence of *BCL6* protein expression is observed in many large B cell lymphomas, most follicular lymphomas, and BLs, but not in other B cell lymphoma subtypes (Cattoretti et al, 1995; Onizuka et al, 1995; Pittaluga et al, 1996; Falini et al, 1997).

The detection of *BCL6* gene rearrangements is most sensitively accomplished by the FISH technique. The selection of probes is important, in that *BCL6* breaksites include both a major breakpoint region (MBR) and an alternate breakpoint region (ABR) (Iqbal et al, 2007). The clinical significance of *BCL6* gene alterations in DLBCL, whether present as translocation rearrangement events or somatic 5′ regulatory mutations, is still not clearly defined. Some studies have implied an adverse prognosis for large B cell lymphomas with *BCL6* gene rearrangements, perhaps pertaining more to tumors with nonimmunoglobulin gene translocations (Akasaka et al, 2000; Barrans et al, 2002), whereas other investigations have shown either opposite findings or no convincing prognostic effects (Jerkeman et al, 2002). The effect of *BCL6* translocations in nodal DLBCL may also be associated with other adverse tumor biologic factors (Shustik et al, 2009). Primary central nervous system DLBCL with *BCL6* structural changes do appear to have a significantly worse outcome (Cady et al, 2008). As noted earlier, *BCL6* alterations may also be related to the pathogenesis of a distinct subset of high-grade follicular lymphomas, in the absence of the t(14;18)/*BCL2*-IgH (Katzenberger et al, 2004; Gu et al, 2009; Cheung et al, 2010). Abnormalities of *BCL6* have also been described in high-grade B cell lymphomas with concurrent *MYC* gene abnormalities (see later), in posttransplant large B cell lymphomas, and in some of the aggressive lymphomas arising in the setting of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). Although the exact molecular mechanisms predisposing to the development of large B cell lymphomas continue to be defined, it is evident that deregulation of *BCL6* creates a cellular environment conducive to additional lymphomagenic genetic derangements.

The *MYC* gene on 8q24 is rearranged in approximately 5% to 10% of DLBCL, representing translocations to the *IGH@*, immunoglobulin light chain, or nonimmunoglobulin gene loci. *MYC* is a potent cellular growth factor and classic proto-oncogene. A more detailed molecular description of *MYC* gene translocation events and function is presented in the later discussion on BL. Several large clinical studies have shown that unselected de novo DLBCL patients with *MYC* gene rearrangements have a significantly worse overall outcome (Klapper et al, 2008; Obermann et al, 2009b; Savage et al, 2009; Chung et al, 2012). Because no distinctive phenotypic or presenting clinical features can reliably identify *MYC* rearrangements in morphologically typical DLBCL cases, some investigators have suggested routine diagnostic assessment of the *MYC* locus by FISH analysis, despite its relatively low prevalence. Patients with so-called double-hit genetics (e.g., *MYC* plus concurrent *BCL2* or *BCL6* rearrangements) have very aggressive disease but are often characterized by variant cytomorphology akin to BL rather than the usual type of centroblastic features and so are considered separately (see the following discussion on BL).

Recent years have witnessed a paradigm shift in the classification of DLBCL based on gene expression signatures. One landmark publication using microarray-based analysis of global tumor mRNA expression revealed two major DLBCL subgroups designated as *germinal center-like B cell* (GCB) and *activated B cell like* (ABC) (Alizadeh et al, 2000; Rosenwald et al, 2002; Calado et al, 2010). Strikingly, GCB-classified patients had a much superior survival outcome relative to ABC-type patients (summarized in de Leval & Hasserjian, 2009). The validity of this approach has been confirmed by other studies, including evaluation of smaller gene sets characteristic of either GCB- or ABC-type tumors (Lossos et al, 2004; Davis et al, 2010). For example, a subset of overexpressed genes, including *BCL6*, *LMO2*, *HGAL*, and *CD10*, are strongly related to GCB phenotype, whereas *MUM1/IRF4*, *CD44*, *XBP1*, and several others are preferentially seen in ABC DLBCL. Certain cytogenetic features also appear to segregate between these subtypes, such that the t(14;18)/*BCL2-IGH@* is identified among GCB tumors, and, interestingly, *BCL6* gene translocations are more prevalent in ABC lymphomas. The latter findings suggest that *BCL6* protein overexpression is important in the pathogenesis of GCB DLBCL, but structural rearrangements of the *BCL6* gene are reflective of a different pathogenesis and adverse features, as seen in ABC DLBCL. Most intriguingly, ABC tumors consistently demonstrate deregulation of the NF-κB pathway via abnormalities in upstream pathway proteins such as CARD11, BCL10, and MALT1; selective targeting of this pathway holds therapeutic promise for better managing these relatively refractory cases of DLBCL (Compagno et al, 2009). Currently, determination of GCB versus ABC DLBCL types using microarray-scale gene expression methods remains outside the realm of routine clinical molecular diagnostics, although promising technologic developments may make this approach more feasible in smaller and more targeted platforms. Attempts to reproduce this classification using immunohistochemistry have not been rigorously successful because of a lack of strict gene expression level-to-protein correlations, overlapping expression patterns in many DLBCL for some protein markers, and the lack of reproducible standards for a nonquantitative technique. Finally, it should be noted that gene expression studies by other groups have revealed different functional subsets of DLBCL (Shipp et al, 2002; Monti et al, 2005; Davis et al, 2010), and a challenge for the development of a new biologic and clinically relevant classification in this disease will require a thorough understanding of these large and complex datasets.

MYC Gene Translocations in Burkitt Lymphomas and "High-Grade" B Cell Lymphomas, Unclassifiable

Genetic alterations of the *MYC* locus, situated on chromosome 8q24, are classically associated with BL; however, this gene is also implicated in the pathogenesis of several other aggressive lymphoid tumors, including high-grade (secondary) transformations of indolent lymphomas, HIV/

AIDS-associated lymphomas, and monomorphic B cell posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorders. Most commonly, the *MYC* gene is translocated to the *IGH@* locus as a result of the t(8;14)(q24;q32) abnormality. In other instances, *MYC* may be brought adjacent to the *IGK* [2(p12)] or *IGL* [22(q11)] light chain genes. In each case, *MYC* is placed under the strong transcriptional influence of an immunoglobulin enhancer element, leading to overexpression of the gene. *MYC* (or cMyc) is normally a highly regulated transcription factor involved in coordinating early cell cycle and DNA replication nuclear responses to mitogenic signaling pathways. *MYC* translocation and deregulation in lymphoma thus leads to transactivation of multiple cognate target genes, ultimately driving uncontrolled cell proliferation, in a permissive cellular context (Hecht & Aster, 2000). The simultaneous abrogation of proapoptotic mechanisms is synergistic with rapid Myc-induced transformation (Beverly & Varmus, 2009; Dominguez-Sola & Dalla-Favera, 2012). The molecular anatomy of *MYC* region breakpoints has been well studied in BL with the t(8;14) (Hecht & Aster, 2000; Blum et al, 2004). In so-called endemic BL, which is strongly associated with chronic Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) infection, *MYC* breaksites occur far upstream of the gene and primarily involve the *IGH@* J_H region. In contrast, sporadic-type BL demonstrate *MYC* breaks that are situated closer to the 5′ region of the gene and are typically associated with fusion to the *IGH@* isotype switch regions, located upstream of the respective constant region (C-) exons. The enzyme AID is critical to the process of class switch recombination and SHM in normal germinal center B cells, and *MYC-IGH@* translocation breaks in BL have been shown to be AID-dependent (Robbiani et al, 2008; Chung et al, 2012; Benetatos et al, 2014). Sporadic BL is far less frequently associated with EBV (20% of cases). These data suggest that translocation events involving *MYC* in these epidemiologic BL variants may occur at slightly different stages of maturation in a developing B cell; clinically, however, these differences appear to be insignificant.

In routine practice, the diagnosis of BL can usually be established with a high degree of probability using a combination of clinical, morphologic, and targeted immunohistochemical studies (Braziel et al, 2001). Definitive diagnosis, however, requires detection of a *MYC* gene rearrangement. *MYC* translocations cannot be identified by standard PCR approaches due to the pronounced breakpoint heterogeneity in the *MYC* gene; FISH or karyotype analysis thus currently remains the best option for identifying these abnormalities. FISH strategies can include initial targeting of the *MYC* gene locus using a break-apart probe strategy, followed by locus-specific probes to identify *MYC-IGH@* fusions. Novel probes to detect translocations with the immunoglobulin light chain genes have also been described (Einerson et al, 2006; Dominguez-Sola & Dalla-Favera, 2012).

An uncommon type of lymphoid tumor with cytomorphologic features reminiscent, but atypical, of BL has been described with highly aggressive clinical behavior (Haralambieva et al, 2005; McClure et al, 2005). Notably, these B cell lymphomas are often associated with *MYC* gene rearrangements, as well coexisting translocations involving the *BCL2* or *BCL6* genes. These lesions have been termed *double-hit* lymphomas and are presently classified as "B cell lymphomas, unclassifiable, with features intermediate between diffuse large B cell lymphoma and Burkitt lymphoma" in the 2008 WHO classification of lymphomas. This group of B cell lymphomas is considered heterogeneous and includes de novo double-hit cases, transformed follicular lymphomas with both *BCL2* and secondary *MYC* rearrangements, and *MYC*-negative cases with complex karyotype (Dominguez-Sola & Dalla-Favera, 2012; Richter et al, 2012). Recognition of these high-grade B cell lymphomas by morphologic and molecular genetic criteria is important given the inadequate response to DLBCL therapy (Nakamura et al, 2002). In this regard, FISH studies to identify double-hit genetic abnormalities of *MYC* and *BCL2* or *BCL6* are often pursued (Love et al, 2012).

MYD88 Mutation in Non-Hodgkin B Cell Lymphoma

The field of hematopathology has benefited significantly from the ability of gene sequencing to identify new information on recurrent gene mutations involved in the pathogenesis of lymphoid neoplasm, and it may be useful for diagnostic purposes. The significance of utilizing such information in clinical diagnosis is evident in lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma (LPL), which is an indolent type of B cell lymphoma and clinically is manifested as lymphadenopathy and concomitant cytopenias (e.g., anemia, absolute neutropenia or thrombocytopenia), predominantly due to bone marrow involvement. IgM-secreting LPL with any degree of bone marrow involvement defines LPL as Waldenström macroglobulinemia (WM), which has a more aggressive clinical course and is associated with cryoglobulinemia, neuropathy, and symptomatic hyperviscosity (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Therefore, reaching an accurate diagnosis of LPL/WM is important for patient management and prognosis. However, marginal zone lymphoma (MZL) with plasmacytic differentiation, an indolent disease, may be associated with IgM secretion, and its histologic and immunophenotypic findings may be indistinguishable from those of LPL/WM. Nevertheless, our knowledge in identifying the myeloid differentiation primary response gene 88 (MYD88) (L265P) mutation in more than 90% of WM cases and 7% of MZL cases (Treon et al, 2012) provides a solid method for differentiating the two entities from each other and for reaching accurate diagnosis.

ALK Gene Abnormalities in Anaplastic Large Cell Lymphomas

ALCL is a unique subtype of peripheral T cell NHL that may present as a primary cutaneous disease or, more commonly, as a systemic form involving lymph nodes, visceral organs, and skin. A phenotypic hallmark in nearly all cases of ALCL is strong uniform expression of the CD30 (Ki-1) antigen, an activation marker and member of the tumor necrosis factor family. Although classic ALCL tumors are known to be of T cell lineage, some examples fail to express lineage-associated T cell markers ("null" cell phenotype), but these cases can usually be confirmed as being of T cell origin based on T cell receptor gene clonality studies. A major subset of ALCL is characterized by translocations involving the *a*naplastic *l*ymphoma *k*inase (*ALK*) gene located on chromosome 2p23. *ALK* encodes a novel tyrosine kinase that is not normally expressed in lymphoid cells. Approximately 90% of *ALK*-rearranged ALCL harbor the t(2;5)(p23;q35) abnormality, leading to a fusion of the *ALK* gene with the *NPM1* gene (Stein et al, 2000; Bedwell et al, 2011). The *NPM1* gene is also mutated in many normal karyotype acute myeloid leukemias as described previously. As a result of the *NPM1-ALK* gene fusion, the tyrosine kinase activity and intracellular location of *ALK* become deregulated, contributing to lymphomagenesis through increased target protein phosphorylation and signal transduction (Falini, 2001; Chiarle et al, 2008). Unlike the more typical gene overexpression consequences of most lymphoma-associated translocations, the *NPM1-ALK* fusion differs in that a chimeric mRNA and protein are produced, although overproduction of the normally silent *ALK* gene in a T-lymphocyte appears to be the principal mechanism involved in malignant transformation. Investigative efforts have shown that *ALK* deregulation can involve downregulation of T cell–associated antigens, NF-κB target gene activation, functional inactivation of normal p53 tumor suppression, and immunosuppressive effects mediated through STAT3 signaling (Cui et al, 2009; Eckerle et al, 2009; Wasik et al, 2009; Bedwell et al, 2011; Cheng et al, 2012). In addition to *NPM1-ALK*, several less common variant genetic rearrangements of *ALK* are also described in this type of lymphoma, including the t(1;2)(q25;p23)*/TPM3-ALK*, t(2;3)(p23;q35)*/TFG-ALK*, and inv(2)(p23q35)*/ATIC-ALK* abnormalities, all giving rise to *ALK* gene deregulation (Swerdlow et al, 2008; Ferreri et al, 2012). More important, the abnormal cellular sublocalization of constitutive *ALK* kinase activity is mediated by the fusion partner protein moiety. Thus *NPM1-ALK* oncoproteins are situated in both a nuclear and cytosolic pattern, whereas *TPM3-ALK* products show diffuse cytoplasmic distribution, in accordance with the usual site of the *TPM3* gene product, tropomyosin-3. Several clinical studies have demonstrated a relatively favorable prognosis for *ALK*-positive ALCL, regardless of the actual translocation present. *ALK*-positive ALCL are more prevalently seen in younger patients (e.g., less than 50 years) and in the pediatric population. In contrast, another group of T cell lymphomas sharing the same morphologic features and expression of CD30 antigen do not have *ALK* gene rearrangements or deregulation of *ALK* protein expression. These *ALK*-negative tumors also appear to differ in global gene expression profiles, indicating distinct pathways of malignant transformation. Most significantly, *ALK*-negative ALCL are associated with more aggressive disease behavior typical of peripheral T cell lymphoma unspecified, justifying the recognition of the *ALK*-positive subtype by molecular or immunophenotypic methods (Falini et al, 1999a; Gascoyne et al, 1999; Savage et al, 2008; de Leval & Hasserjian, 2009; Fornari et al, 2009; Tabbo et al, 2012; Ramchandren et al, 2013). In addition to distinguishing the two major systemic subtypes of ALCL, the presence of an *ALK* gene rearrangement can help in the differential diagnosis between ALCL and Hodgkin lymphoma and rare cases of phenotypically indeterminate large cell lymphoma. An unusual and rare complication of silicone breast prostheses is the development of implantation-site ALCL in some patients, which are also *ALK* negative (De Jong et al, 2008; Ferreri et al, 2012). Of note, the primary cutaneous type of ALCL is not associated with *ALK* gene abnormalities or aberrant *ALK* expression and has a very favorable outcome.

Genomic breakpoints in cases of t(2;5)-positive ALCL lie consistently within the same intron regions in both *NPM1* and *ALK* genes, resulting in the generation of a single, unique *NPM1-ALK* chimeric mRNA. As a result, RT-PCR technique can be used to detect the fusion transcript with high specificity and sensitivity (Ladanyi et al, 1994; Lamant et al, 1996; Weiss et al, 1995; Wellmann et al, 1995; Yee et al, 1996; Bedwell et al, 2011). In addition, long-distance DNA PCR has also been successfully employed to identify the genomic *NPM1-ALK* abnormality (Ladanyi & Cavalchire, 1996; Sarris et al, 1998; Cheng et al, 2012). The latter approach requires high molecular weight DNA but obviates the need for RNA isolation and reverse transcription. FISH methodology is nevertheless the most widely employed diagnostic modality to detect *ALK* gene rearrangements (Schwartz & Murray, 2011). Essentially all translocation-associated alterations can be detected using a break-apart probe method directed to the *ALK* locus; elucidation of the specific translocation gene partner is not required because of its limited clinical value. As with other gene overexpression phenomena in the NHLs, *ALK*-positive ALCL can also be readily diagnosed using monoclonal antibodies against the *ALK* portion of the oncoprotein. The immunohistochemical cellular localization of abnormal *ALK*, as suggested previously, also correlates to some extent with the type of translocation event, reflecting the effects of the fusion partner segment (Falini et al, 1999b; Stein et al, 2000; Ferreri et al, 2012; Benetatos et al, 2014).

To complete the discussion of *ALK*-positive lymphomas, several reports have recently documented the presence of the t(2;17)(p23;q23)/*CLTC-ALK* or *NPM1-ALK* gene fusions in very rare and unusual occurrences of IgA heavy chain–positive diffuse large B cell lymphoma with plasmablastic features (De Paepe et al, 2003; Gascoyne et al, 2003; Ramchandren et al, 2013). These tumors are also recognized by the presence of plasmacytic cell markers but lack of CD20 expression and CD30 negativity (compared with T cell ALCL). The *CLTC* gene encodes clathrin, and the chimeric CLTC-*ALK* protein has a unique cellular distribution of granular membrane positivity, corresponding to localization to clathrin-coated pits. *ALK*-positive large B cell lymphomas are associated with a particularly poor outcome (Laurent et al, 2009; Ferreri et al, 2012).

TCL1A Gene Abnormalities in T Cell Prolymphocytic Leukemia

T cell prolymphocytic leukemia (T-PLL) is a mature T cell leukemia most often characterized by expression of CD4, although phenotypic variants are well known. T-PLL is often suspected by cytology and immunophenotype, but it can share overlapping features with other T cell neoplasms showing blood and bone marrow involvement. T-PLL cases are, however, definitively diagnosed by the presence of a *TCL1A* gene rearrangement (Pekarsky et al, 2001; Krishnan et al, 2006; Dearden, 2012). *TCL1A* is a transcription factor that is not completely understood but is expressed in a subset of normal B cells but not normal mature T cells. As a result of *TCL1A* rearrangement in a candidate T-lymphocyte, the gene becomes aberrantly active, leading to the pathogenesis of T-PLL. Rearrangements of *TCL1A* are not identified in other major subgroups of peripheral T cell lymphoma. The *TCL1A* gene is situated on chromosome 14q32, and in 80% of T-PLL cases are juxtaposed with the *TRA* gene locus, either through an inversion [inv14(q11q32)] or reciprocal translocation event [t(14;14)(q11;32)]. A small number of T-PLL will have alternate translocations t(X;14)(q28;q11) or t(X;7)(q28;q35) involving a fusion of the *TCL1A*-related gene, *MTCP1*, to either the *TRA* or *TRB* gene loci, respectively (De Schouwer et al, 2000; Gaudio et al, 2013; Hsi et al, 2014). The diagnosis of T-PLL is thus greatly facilitated and confirmed by FISH analysis for *TCL1A* rearrangements or chromosome studies for *MTCP1*-related translocations. TCL1 expression is also present in blastic plasmacytoid dendritic cell neoplasm (BPDCN). In tissue sections, *TCL1A* immunohistochemistry can be used to identify the overexpressed protein in suspected cases of T-PLL and BPDCN (Gaudio et al, 2013).

The Implication of Next Gene Sequencing (NGS) in Hematolymphoid Lesions

The basic methodology used in NGS in most research and clinical laboratories includes an initial step of template preparation, followed by nucleotide sequencing, imaging, and finally data analysis. This methodology is shared by most NGS platforms and has gone through a revolution in development to provide high-throughput sequencing with high accuracy at low cost. Several NGS platforms with different pros and cons are now available in the market and have made sequencing accessible to more commercial and hospital-based clinical laboratories. As discussed above, the ability of NGS to provide high-throughput information on the gene map of various cancers has provided a new opportunity in identifying the genetic bases involved in the pathogenesis of these lesions. Likewise, the implication of NGS in different entities of hematolymphoid neoplasms, including T and B acute lymphoblastic leukemias (Neumann et al, 2012; Gutierrez et al, 2010; Coustan-Smith et al, 2009; Den Boer et al, 2009; Mullighan et al, 2009; Mullighan, 2012; Roberts et al, 2014), Hodgkin lymphoma (Steidl et al, 2011), chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma (Rossi et al, 2012a, Rossi et al, 2013; Ramsay et al, 2013) , mantle cell lymphoma (Kridel et al, 2012; Meissner et al, 2013), hairy cell leukemia (Tiacci et al, 2011; Arcaini et al, 2012), follicular lymphoma (Morin et al, 2010), lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma/Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia (Treon et al, 2012), marginal zone lymphomas (Kiel et al, 2012), different subtypes of diffuse large B cell lymphoma (Pasqualucci, 2013; Zhang et al, 2013; Morin et al, 2010; Morin et al, 2013), Burkitt lymphoma (Love et al, 2012; Richter et al, 2012), B-cell lymphoma unclassifiable with features intermediate between BL and DLBCL (Gebauer et al, 2015), peripheral T cell lymphoma (Weng et al, 2004) and plasma cell myeloma (Chapman et al, 2011), have delineated the molecular heterogeneity of these lymphoid neoplasms that can explain their distinctive clinical outcomes. Although comprehensive discussion of NGS-detected mutation in hematolymphoid neoplasm is beyond the scope of this chapter, Table 76-7 provide a brief summary of some of the associated mutations that can be detected by NGS and affect their significance in disease pathogenesis and clinical outcomes.

EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES IMPACTING MOLECULAR DIAGNOSIS AND PROGNOSIS PREDICTION IN HEMATOLYMPHOID NEOPLASIA

The practice of hematopathology remains integrally tied to the rapid pace of development in molecular genetics. Advancements in molecular discovery and application have transformed the diagnosis and management of hematolymphoid neoplasms, and, in turn, these same diseases have provided fertile and easily accessible biologic material for the advancement of the technologies themselves. Several new molecular applications are currently poised to enter clinical practice, an event that may have effects as profound as the advent of the polymerase chain reaction. As always with platform shifts and paradigmatic change, the clinical molecular diagnostic laboratory will need to be flexible when adopting these developments, while maintaining its primary focus on the high standards of quality, reproducibility, and cost effectiveness.

Chief among these promising new techniques is what has been called "deep sequencing," "high-throughput sequencing," and "next-generation sequencing" (Tucker et al, 2009; Hsi et al, 2014). Although there are several such sequencing platforms that vary in technical approach, many of them share the same general approach: Multiple copies of large genomic targets are fragmented at random into short segments, which are then randomly immobilized and simultaneously sequenced. This apparently disjointed data can be reorganized by sophisticated computer software programs, using the principle that each randomly generated fragment of the sequence will share some degree of overlap with many other fragments from the same genomic region (Flicek & Birney, 2009, Dearden, 2012; Ramchandren et al, 2013). This technology, an offshoot of the human genome project, has been called "massively parallel sequencing," and it is capable of generating hundreds of megabases of sequence data per day. Entire genomes can be sequenced in this manner, but for the purposes of molecular hematopathology in the near term, genes of diagnostic importance can be either preselected by hybridizing the genomic DNA to complementary capture probes or enriched using other techniques. The technology can also be applied to other species of ribonucleic acid, including messenger RNA and microRNA, yielding large-scale analysis of the transcriptome and "miRnome," respectively. When coupled with techniques such as chromatin immunoprecipitation and bisulfite treatment, next-generation sequencing can analyze protein-gene interactions and methylation patterns on a genome-wide scale. Thus, instead of assaying for mutations or changes in a handful of genes (e.g., *NPM1*, *CEBPA*, and *FLT3* in AML), the diagnostician of the near future may be able to screen cases for mutations or other alterations involving any of dozens to many hundreds of genes. As complex as the computer algorithms at the heart of next-generation sequencing are, they pale in comparison to the bioinformatic and interpretive challenges presented by this comparative avalanche of data (ten Bosch & Grody, 2008). Therefore, routine clinical laboratory applications of high-throughput sequencing will first require

TABLE 76-7
Summary of Selected Genetic Mutations That Can Be Detected by NGS and Their Significance

Hematolymphoid Neoplasm	Associated Gene Mutation(s)	Comments
CLL/SLL	NOTCH1, SF3B1, ATM, POT1, BIRC3, MYD88, and TLR2	NOTCH1 is associated with a refractory disease
MCL	ATM, CCND1, TP53, BIRC3, TLR2, WHSC1, MLL2, MEF2B, NOTCH1 and NOTCH2	NOTCH1 and NOTCH2 mutations are associated with more aggressive disease with a dismal prognosis
FL	EZH2, CREBBP, TNFSF14 and MLL2	CREBBP mutation is reported predominantly in grade 1-2, whereas MLL2 and TNFSF14 mutations are noted in grade 3 and may indicate disease progression
HCL	BRAF	This activating mutation (V600E) is detected in majority of cases, thus indicating a driving force in the disease and a potential response to the BRAF inhibitor Vemurafenib (also known as PLX4032)
LPL/WM	MYD88	This mutation (L265P) is seen in majority of LPL, around half of WM cases, and rarely in MZL and PCM, thus almost confirming the diagnosis of LPL in diagnostically difficult cases
MZL	NOTCH2	Seen in 25% of cases of splenic-MZL and associated with poor prognosis
DLBCL	CD79B, CARD11, MYD88, CREBBP, EP300, EZH2, MEF2B, MLL2/3, and CIITA	Activated B cell–like (ABC) DLBCL subtype is associated with mutations in CD79B, CARD11 and MYD88 genes, whereas germinal center (GC) B cell–like DLBCL subtype is associated with mutation involving histone modifier genes (CREBBP, EP300, EZH2, MEF2B, MLL2/3); CIITA rearrangements is seen in around 38% of PMBCL
BL	TCF3, ID3, GNA13, RET, PIK3R1, ARID1A, SMARCA4 and CCND3	TCF3 and ID3 gene mutations are detected in around 70% and 34% with BL, respectively; ID3 mutation is rarely seen in MYC-negative lymphomas
BL/DLBCL	TP53	Seen more in MYC+/BCL2+ lymphomas than MYC+/BCL6+ lymphomas
HL	CIITA rearrangements	Detected in around 15% of cases
PTCL-NOS	TNFAIP3, APC, CHD8, CELSR2, NOTCH1, FBXW7, EP300, CREBBP, MLL2, KDM6A, TET2, DNMT3A, TP53, ATM, RB1, CUL9, and RKDC	The presence of such complex mutations may indicate the heterogeneity of PTCL-NOS
B-ALL	CRLF2, JAK1/2, ABL1, ABL2, EPOR, and PDGFRB	Rearrangements CRLF2, JAK1 or JAK2, and kinase genes (ABL1, ABL2, EPOR, PDGFRB) are defining recurrent abnormalities in BCR-ABL1–like B-ALL
	NF1, PTPN11, NRAS, KRAS, IKZF2, TP53, NT5C2, CREBBP, and PAX5	Common in hypodiploid and relapsed B-ALL (NT5C2, CREBBP); PAX5 gene (G180S) mutation is seen in the autosomal-dominant familial B-ALL
T-ALL	PHF6, CNOT3, RPL5/10, GATA3, RUNX1, ETV6, EZH2, and SETD2	PHF6 is more seen in adult T-ALL than pediatric T-ALL
PCM	NRAS, KRAS, TP53, CCND1, DIS3, and BRAF	The same activating mutation in the BRAF gene (G469A) is also seen in melanoma with potential response to Vemurafenib (PLX4032)

B-ALL, B acute lymphoblastic leukemias; *BL,* Burkitt lymphoma; *BL/DLBCL,* B-cell lymphoma unclassifiable with features intermediate between BL and DLBCL; *CLL/SLL,* chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma; *DLBCL,* diffuse large B cell lymphoma; *FL,* follicular lymphoma; *HCL,* hairy cell leukemia; *HL,* Hodgkin lymphoma; *LPL/WM,* lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma/Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia; *MCL,* mantle cell lymphoma; *MZL,* marginal zone lymphomas; *PCM,* plasma cell myeloma; *PMBCL,* primary mediastinal B cell lymphoma; *PTCL-NOS,* peripheral T cell lymphoma not otherwise specified; *T-ALL,* T acute lymphoblastic leukemias.

many clinical correlative studies to identify valid associations between large sets of potential nucleic acid biomarkers and parameters such as disease predisposition, prognosis, or therapeutic efficacy (McPherson, 2009; Gaudio et al, 2013). In this regard, it is worth bearing in mind that the state-of-the-art 2008 WHO classification struggles to document all facets of even the few genes of currently recognized significance in AML (Swerdlow et al, 2008). Close collaboration among the diagnostic, clinical, bioinformatic, and basic research communities will be necessary in the coming years to employ this powerful new technology in a rational manner tied to improved patient outcomes.

A similarly groundbreaking advance in diagnostic capability will likely arise from the growing convergence of molecular diagnostics and cytogenetics, as demonstrated by array comparative genomic hybridization (aCGH) and the genotyping of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) via microarray. These techniques permit genome-wide analysis on a scale of resolution intermediate between the base pair level of molecular diagnostics and the gross overview afforded by conventional cytogenetics and even FISH methods. aCGH is performed by fragmenting and labeling sample and control genomic DNA with different fluorescent colors, then competitively hybridizing a mixture of the labeled fragments to a microarray containing millions of oligonucleotide probes in a predetermined arrangement. The ratio of sample to control fluorescence for each probe location conveys information about the "copy number" of the sample relative to the control at that locus. An alternative strategy to gain knowledge of copy number takes advantage of the existence of SNPs, locations in DNA at which a significant proportion of randomly selected individuals will differ in their genetic sequence by a single base change. SNP arrays hybridize labeled genomic DNA from the sample to microarrays spotted with pairs of probes designed to preferentially bind sequences containing one or the other version of the SNP. The total fluorescent intensity arising from both probes of a given pair yields the copy number at that location, while the relative intensity of one probe to the other reflects the individual's genotype (heterozygous or homozygous) at the SNP. This genotype information can be used to detect uniparental disomy or copy number neutral loss of heterozygosity (UPD/CN-LOH), situations in which the expected two copies of each sequence are present but each copy is identical throughout a region of DNA, indicating in neoplasms, a duplication of a segmental genomic abnormality; aCGH does not detect this UPD/CN-LOH, which is an important mechanism of tumor suppressor silencing in tumorigenesis. Already these technologies have revolutionized clinical genetic testing for inherited dysmorphology syndromes and developmental delay, in addition to documenting a previously unsuspected degree of human genetic diversity (Redon et al, 2006; Edelmann et al, 2009; Zhang et al, 2009). Among hematolymphoid neoplasms, CLL has thus far received the most attention from investigators using these techniques (Gunn et al, 2008; Higgins et al, 2008; Patel et al, 2008; Sargent et al, 2009).

In contrast to next-generation sequencing and molecular karyotyping, gene expression profiling (GEP) by microarray is a technique that has by now compiled a lengthy track record as a tool for biomedical research. Although microarray analysis is not as yet routinely used in the clinical laboratory, it is a powerful technology from which a number of clinically important observations have been made in acute leukemias and lymphomas (Levene et al, 2003; Hubank, 2004; Winter et al, 2007; Wouters et al, 2009a). Microarrays contain oligonucleotide or cDNA targets on a "chip" surface. These targets represent a large component of the expressed

genome or the entire genome and are designed to specifically represent the mRNA levels of genes in parallel from a single sample. Detailed overviews of the various options available for array-based expression analyses, as well as their techniques related to their analysis and interpretation, are discussed elsewhere in this book. Studies on hematopoietic neoplasms have provided insights into "class prediction" (prediction of a tumor type based on specific gene expression profiles of selected informative genes) as well as "class discovery" (discovery of new subentities within tumor groups formerly regarded as a homogenous entity). Class discovery is not solely limited to identification of new subtypes of leukemia, for instance, but includes definition of prognostically differing groups, which are anticipated to influence therapeutic strategies. The application of GEP to diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL) has been described earlier and is one example of class discovery (Dybkaer et al, 2004; Ramchandren et al, 2013). Similar studies in follicular lymphoma have revealed two multigene expression signatures, allowing separation of patients into subsets independent of currently available clinical prognostic variables (Dave et al, 2004). Most intriguingly, the length of survival among these follicular lymphoma patients correlated with the molecular profile of the nonmalignant tumor infiltrating immune cells, revealing the contribution of host background to neoplastic growth. Gene expression microarray studies of CLL were also important to uncover the expression of the *ZAP-70* gene as a strong surrogate marker of adverse outcome (Rosenwald et al, 2001). The protein level of *ZAP-70*, as assessed by flow cytometry, has since become an accepted prognostic marker in CLL, despite the technical problems inherent in performing this assay. As microarray technology matures and becomes more cost effective, it is apparent that variations of this methodology will have application in the clinical laboratory.

The future for diagnostic hematopathology therefore appears challenging, yet exciting, in this new era of genome-wide analysis and targeted therapies, with the goal of optimizing individual care for patients and realizing the potential of "personalized medicine."

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Baccarani M, Deininger MW, Rosti G, et al: European LeukemiaNet recommendations for the management of chronic myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 122:872–884, 2013.

Recent update of molecular monitoring and therapy guidelines in patients with CML. Also, specific recommendations are made for patients in the accelerated and blastic phases and for allogeneic stem cell transplantation.

Baldus CD, Mrózek K, Marcucci G, et al: Clinical outcome of de novo acute myeloid leukaemia patients with normal cytogenetics is affected by molecular genetic alterations: A concise review, *Br J Haematol* 137(5):387–400, 2007.

Good review of molecular genetics and clinical significance of normal karyptype AML.

Breen KA, Grimwade D, Hunt BJ: The pathogenesis and management of the coagulopathy of acute promyelocytic leukaemia, *Br J Haematol* 156:24–36, 2012.

Excellent reviw describing the underlying possible mechanisms of coagulopathy in APL patients.

de Leval L, Hasserjian RP: Diffuse large B-cell lymphomas and Burkitt lymphoma, *Hematol Oncol Clin N Am* 23:791–827, 2009.

Excellent review of aggressive lymphomas.

Dohner H, Estey EH, Amadori S, et al: Diagnosis and management of acute myeloid leukemia in adults: Recommendations from an international expert panel, on behalf of the European LeukemiaNet, *Blood* 115: 453–474, 2010.

Excellent review that emphasizes the new standardized reporting system for correlation of cytogenetic and molecular genetic data with clinical data in acute myeloid leukemia.

Downing JR, Wilson RK, Zhang J, et al: The Pediatric Cancer Genome Project, *Nat Genet* 44:619–622, 2012.

An over view of the international effort to identify somatic mutations that drive pediatric cancers through global cancer genome sequencing.

Grimwade D, Jovanovic JV, Hills RK, et al: Prospective minimal residual disease monitoring to predict relapse of acute promyelocytic leukemia and to direct pre-emptive arsenic trioxide therapy, *J Clin Oncol* 27(22): 3650–3658, 2009.

This study shows compelling data for PCR monitoring of minimal residual disease in acute promyelocytic leukemia and illustrates the successful use of therapeutic intervention for molecular relapse.

Hochhaus A, Druker B, Sawyers C, et al: Favorable long-term follow-up results over 6 years for response, survival, and safety with imatinib mesylate therapy in chronic-phase chronic myeloid leukemia after failure of interferon-α treatment 10.1182/blood-2007-07-103523, *Blood* 111:1039–1043, 2008.

Results of a large study showing durable efficacy of imatinib in the treatment of chronic phase CML.

Ishikawa Y, Kiyoi H, Tsujimura A, et al: Comprehensive analysis of cooperative gene mutations between class I and class II in de novo acute myeloid leukemia, *Eur J Haematol* 83(2):90–98, 2009.

Overview of the cooperative nature of gene mutations in the pathogenesis of acute myeloid leukemia.

Jones D, Kamel-Reid S, Bahler D, et al: Laboratory practice guidelines for detecting and reporting BCR-ABL drug resistance mutations in chronic myelogenous leukemia and acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A report of the Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 11:4–11, 2009.

Useful consensus document for the laboratory detection of BCR-ABL1 drug resistance mutations.

Kantarjian HM, Larson RA, Cortes JE, et al: Current practices in the management of chronic myeloid leukemia, *Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk* 13:48–54, 2013.

Update on the current theme of CML therapy.

Langerak AW, Groenen PJTA, Bruggemann M, et al: EuroClonality/BIOMED-2 guidelines for interpretation and reporting of Ig/TCR clonality testing in suspected lymphoproliferations, *Leukemia* 26:2159–2171, 2012.

Updated review of PCR-based approaches for determination of B and T cell clonality in lymphoid proliferations.

Loghavi S, Zuo Z, Ravandi F, et al: Clinical features of de novo acute myeloid leukemia with concurrent DNMT3A, FLT3, and NPM1 mutations, *J Hematol Oncol* 7:74, 2014.

Excellent review of AML with the referred mutations.

Malcovati L, Hellström-Lindberg E, Bowen D, et al: Diagnosis and treatment of primary myelodysplastic syndromes in adults: Recommendations from the European LeukemiaNet, *Blood* 122:2943–2964, 2013.

Excellent review of myelodysplastic syndrome and therapy consideration.

Pui CH, Mullighan CG, Evans WE, et al: Pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia: Where are we going and how do we get there? *Blood* 120:1165–1174, 2012.

Excellent review and update on prognostic factors in the management of pediatric ALL.

Ramchandren R, Jazaerly T, Gabali AM: Molecular diagnosis of hematopoietic neoplasms, *Clin Lab Med* 33:817–833, 2013.

Reviews the role of molecular testing in hematologic malignancy management and discusses the utility, advantages, and disadvantages of molecular tests.

Solh M, Yohe S, Weisdorf D, et al: Core-binding factor acute myeloid leukemia: Heterogeneity, monitoring, and therapy, *Am J Hematol* 89:1121–1131, 2014.

Updated and comprehensive review of core binding factor acute myeloid leukemia, with emphasis on the histopathologic, genetic, molecular, and clinical heterogeneity.

Van Dongen JJM, Langerak AW, Bruggemann M, et al: Design and standardization of PCR primers and protocols for detection of clonal immunoglobulin and T-cell receptor gene recombinations in suspect lymphoproliferations: Report of the BIOMED-2 Concerted Action BMH4-CT98-3936, *Leukemia* 17: 2257–2317, 2003.

Landmark publication detailing very comprehensive assessment of PCR-based techniques versus Southern blot methods to detect clonal B and T cell populations in lymphoid proliferations.

REFERENCES

Abbas S, Lugthart S, Kavelaars FG, et al: Acquired mutations in the genes encoding IDH1 and IDH2 both are recurrent aberrations in acute myeloid leukemia: Prevalence and prognostic value, *Blood* 116:2122–2126, 2010.

Adachi M, Tefferi A, Greipp PR, et al: Preferential linkage of BCL-2 to immunoglobulin light chain gene in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *J Exp Med* 171:559, 1990.

Agnes F, Shamoon B, Dina C, et al: Genomic structure of the downstream part of the human FLT3 gene: Exon/intron structure conservation among genes encoding receptor tyrosine kinases (RTK) of subclass III, *Gene* 145:283–288, 1994.

Ahn JY, Seo K, Weinberg O, et al: A comparison of two methods for screening CEBPA mutations in patients with acute myeloid leukemia, *J Mol Diagn* 11(4):319–323, 2009. [Epub 2009 Jun 12].

Akasaka T, Akasaka H, Yonetani N, et al: Refinement of the BCL2/immunoglobulin heavy chain fusion gene in t(14;18) (q32;q21) by polymerase chain reaction amplification for long targets, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 21:17–29, 1998.

Akasaka T, Ueda C, Kurata M, et al: Nonimmunoglobulin (non-Ig)/BCL6 gene fusion in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma results in worse prognosis than Ig/BCL6, *Blood* 96:2907–2909, 2000.

Akin C: Molecular diagnosis of mast cell disorders: A paper from the 2005 William Beaumont Hospital Symposium on Molecular Pathology, *J Mol Diagn* 8(4):412–419, 2006.

Albinger-Hegyi A, Hochreutener B, Abdou M-T, et al: High frequency of t(14;18)-translocation breakpoints outside of major breakpoint and minor cluster regions in follicular lymphomas. Improved polymerase chain reaction protocols for their detection, *Am J Pathol* 160:823–832, 2002.

Alexis JD, Wang N, Che W, et al: Bcr kinase activation by angiotensin ii inhibits peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ transcriptional activity in vascular smooth muscle cells, *Circ Res* 104:69–78, 2009.

Alizadeh AA, Eisen MB, Davis RE, et al: Distinct types of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma identified by gene expression profiling, *Nature* 403:503–511, 2000.

Amin MA, Matsunaga S, Uchiyama S, et al: Nucleophosmin is required for chromosome congression, proper mitotic spindle formation, and kinetochore-microtubule attachment in HeLa cells, *FEBS Lett* 582(27):3839–3844, 2008. [Epub 2008 Oct 23].

Andersson A, Hoglund M, Johansson B, et al: Paired multiplex reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (PMRT-PCR) analysis as a rapid and accurate diagnostic tool for the detection of MLL fusion genes in hematologic malignancies, *Leukemia* 15:1293–1300, 2001.

Andrae J, Gallini R, Betsholtz C: Role of platelet-derived growth factors in physiology and medicine, *Genes Dev* 22:1276–1312, 2008.

Andrulis M, Penzel R, Weichert W, et al: Application of a BRAF V600E mutation-specific antibody for the diagnosis of hairy cell leukemia, *Am J Surg Pathol* 36(12):1796–1800, 2012.

Annunziata CM, Davis RE, Demchenko Y, et al: Frequent engagement of the classical and alternative NF-kappaB pathways by diverse genetic abnormalities in multiple myeloma, *Cancer Cell* 12(2):115–130, 2007.

Appelbaum FR, Kopecky KJ, Tallman MS, et al: The clinical spectrum of adult acute myeloid leukaemia associated with core binding factor translocations, *Br J Haematol* 135(2):165–173, 2006. [Epub 2006 Aug 25].

Arber DA: Molecular diagnosis approach to non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *J Mol Diag* 2:178–190, 2000.

Arcaini L, Zibellini S, Boveri E, et al: The BRAF V600E mutation in hairy cell leukemia and other mature B-cell neoplasms, *Blood* 119:188–191, 2012.

Archambault V, Carmena M: Polo-like kinase-activating kinases: Aurora A, Aurora B and what else? *Cell Cycle* 11:1490–1495, 2012.

Armstrong SA, Golub TR, Korsmeyer SJ: MLL-rearranged leukemias: Insights from gene expression profiling, *Sem Hematol* 40:268–273, 2003.

Armstrong SA, Look AT: Molecular genetics of acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *J Clin Oncol* 23(26):6306–6315, 2005.

Aster JC, Longtine JA: Detection of BCL2 rearrangements in follicular lymphoma, *Am J Pathol* 160:759–763, 2002.

Bacher U, Haferlach C, Kern W, et al: Prognostic relevance of FLT3-TKD mutations in AML: The combination matters—An analysis of 3082 patients, *Blood* 111(5):2527–2537, 2008.

Baens M, Maes B, Steyls A, et al: The product of the t(11;18), an API2-MLT fusion, marks nearly half of gastric MALT type lymphomas without large cell proliferation, *Am J Pathol* 156:1433–1439, 2000.

Bain BJ: Relationship between idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome, eosinophilic leukemia, and systemic mastocytosis, *Am J Hematol* 77:82–85, 2004.

Balatti V, Bottoni A, Palamarchuk A, et al: NOTCH1 mutations in CLL associated with trisomy 12, *Blood* 119(2):329–331, 2012.

Balatti V, Lerner S, Rizzotto L, et al: Trisomy 12 CLLs progress through NOTCH1 mutations, *Leukemia* 27(3):740–743, 2013.

Baldus CD, Thibaut J, Goekbuget N, et al: Prognostic implications of NOTCH1 and FBXW7 mutations in adult acute T-lymphoblastic leukemia, *Haematologica* 94(10):1383–1390, 2009.

Baldus CD, Thiede C, Soucek S, et al: BAALC expression and FLT3 internal tandem duplication mutations in acute myeloid leukemia patients with normal cytogenetics: Prognostic implications, *J Clin Oncol* 24(5):790–797, 2006.

Balusu R, Fiskus W, Rao R, et al: Targeting levels or oligomerization of nucleophosmin 1 induces differentiation and loss of survival of human AML cells with mutant NPM1, *Blood* 118:3096–3106, 2011.

Barrans SL, Evans PAS, O'Connor SJM, et al: The t(14;18) is associated with germinal center-derived diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and is a strong predictor of outcome, *Clin Cancer Res* 9:2133–2139, 2003.

Barrans SL, O'Connor SJ, Evans PA, et al: Rearrangement of the BCL6 locus at 3q27 is an independent poor prognostic factor in nodal diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Br J Haematol* 117:322–332, 2002.

Bartolo C, Viswanatha DS: Molecular diagnosis in pediatric acute leukemias, *Clin Lab Med* 20:139–182, 2000.

Bassing CH, Swat W, Alt FW: The mechanism and regulation of chromosomal V(D)J recombination, *Cell* 109:S45–S55, 2002.

Baxter EJ, Scott LM, Campbell PJ, et al: Acquired mutation of the tyrosine kinase JAK2 in human myeloproliferative disorders, *Lancet* 365:1054–1061, 2005.

Bea S, Valdes-Mas R, Navarro A, et al: Landscape of somatic mutations and clonal evolution in mantle cell lymphoma, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 110(45):18250–18255, 2013.

Beaubier NT, Hart AT, Bartolo C, et al: Comparison of capillary electrophoresis and polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis for the evaluation of T and B cell clonality by polymerase chain reaction, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 9:121–131, 2000.

Bedwell C, Rowe D, Moulton D, et al: Cytogenetically complex SEC31A-ALK fusions are recurrent in ALK-positive large B-cell lymphomas, *Haematologica* 96:343–346, 2011.

Beer PA, Campbell PJ, Scott LM, et al: MPL mutations in myeloproliferative disorders: Analysis of the PT-1 cohort, *Blood* 112:141–149, 2008.

Beishuizen A, Verhoeven M-AJ, Mol EJ, et al: Detection of immunoglobulin heavy-chain gene rearrangements by Southern blot analysis: Recommendations for optimal results, *Leukemia* 7:2045–2053, 1993.

Belaud-Rotureau MA, Parrens M, Dubus P, et al: A comparative analysis of FISH, RT-PCR, PCR, and immunohistochemistry for the diagnosis of mantle cell lymphomas, *Mod Pathol* 15:517–525, 2002.

Benetatos L, Vartholomatos G, Hatzimichael E: Polycomb group proteins and MYC: The cancer connection, *Cell Mol Life Sci* 71:257–269, 2014.

Benetatos L, Voulgaris E, Vartholomatos G, et al: Non-coding RNAs and EZH2 interactions in cancer: Long and short tales from the transcriptome, *Int J Cancer* 133(2):267–274, 2013.

Bertoni F, Conconi A, Capella C, et al: Molecular follow-up in gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphomas: early analysis of the LY03 cooperative trial, *Blood* 99:2541–2544, 2002.

Bertoni F, Zucca E, Cotter FE: Molecular basis of mantle cell lymphoma, *Br J Haematol* 124:130–140, 2004.

Betsholz C: Role of platelet-derived growth factors in mouse development, *Int J Dev Biol* 39:817–825, 1995.

Betti CJ, Villalobos MJ, Diaz MO, et al: Apoptotic triggers initiate translocations within the MLL gene involving the nonhomologous end joining repair system, *Cancer Res* 61:4550–4555, 2001.

Betti CJ, Villalobos MJ, Diaz MO, et al: Apoptopic stimuli initiate MLL-AF9 translocations that are transcribed in cells capable of division, *Cancer Res* 63:1377–1381, 2003.

Betti CJ, Villalobos MJ, Jiang Q, et al: Cleavage of the MLL gene by activators of apoptosis is independent of topoisomerase II activity, *Leukemia* 19(12):2289–2295, 2005.

Beverly LJ, Varmus HE: MYC-induced myeloid leukemogenesis is accelerated by all six members of the antiapoptotic BCL family, *Oncogene* 28(9):1274–1279, 2009. [Epub 2009 Jan 12].

Bienz M, Ludwig M, Leibundgut EO, et al: Risk assessment in patients with acute myeloid leukemia and a normal karyotype, *Clin Cancer Res* 11(4):1416–1424, 2005.

Blum KA, Lozanski G, Byrd JC: Adult Burkitt leukemia and lymphoma, *Blood* 104:3009–3020, 2004.

Borden KL, Culjkovic B: Perspectives in PML: a unifying framework for PML function, *Front Biosci* 14:497–509, 2009.

Borkhardt A, Cazzaniga G, Viehmann S, et al: Incidence and clinical relevance of TEL/AML1 fusion genes in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia enrolled in German and Italian multicenter therapy trials, *Blood* 90:571, 1997.

Borthakur G, Kantarjian H, Ravandi F, et al: Phase I study of sorafenib in patients with refractory or relapsed acute leukemias, *Haematologica* 96:62–68, 2011.

Branford S, Melo JV, Hughes TP: Selecting optimal second-line tyrosine kinase inhibitor therapy for chronic myeloid leukemia patients after imatinib failure: Does the BCR-ABL mutation status really matter? *Blood* 114:5426–5435, 2009.

Branford S, Rudzki Z, Parkinson I, et al: Real-time quantitative PCR analysis can be used as a primary screen to identify patients with CML treated with imatinib who have BCR-ABL kinase domain mutations, *Blood* 104:2926–2932, 2004.

Brassesco MS: Leukemia/lymphoma-associated gene fusions in normal individuals, *Genet Mol Res* 7(3):782–790, 2008.

Braziel RM, Arber DA, Slovak ML, et al: The Burkitt-like lymphomas: A Southwest Oncology Group study delineating phenotypic, genotypic, and clinical features, *Blood* 97:3713–3720, 2001.

Brown NJ, Ramalho M, Pedersen EW, et al: PML nuclear bodies in the pathogenesis of acute promyelocytic leukemia: Active players or innocent bystanders? *Front Biosci* 14:1684–1707, 2009.

Bruggemann M, White H, Gaulard P, et al: Powerful strategy for polymerase chain reaction-based clonality assessment in T-cell malignancies: Report of the BIOMED-2 Concerted Action BHM4 CT98-3936, *Leukemia* 21:215–221, 2007.

Burmeister T, Meyer C, Schwartz S, et al: The MLL recombinome of adult CD10-negative B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia: Results from the GMALL study group, *Blood* 113(17):4011–4015, 2009.

Byrd JC, Furman RR, Coutre SE, et al: Targeting BTK with ibrutinib in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 369(1):32–42, 2013.

Cady FM, O'Neill BP, Law ME, et al: Del(6)(q22) and BCL6 rearrangements in primary CNS lymphoma are indicators of an aggressive clinical course, *J Clin Oncol* 26:4814–4819, 2008.

Cairoli R, Beghini A, Grillo G, et al: Prognostic impact of c-KIT mutations in core binding factor leukemias: An Italian retrospective study, *Blood* 107(9):3463–3468, 2006.

Calado DP, Zhang B, Srinivasan L, et al: Constitutive canonical NF-kappaB activation cooperates with disruption of BLIMP1 in the pathogenesis of activated B cell-like diffuse large cell lymphoma, *Cancer Cell* 18(6):580–589, 2010.

Callens C, Chevret S, Cayuela JM, et al: Prognostic implication of FLT3 and Ras gene mutations in patients with acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL): A retrospective study from the European APL Group, *Leukemia* 19(7):1153–1160, 2005.

Campana D: Status of minimal residual disease testing in childhood haematological malignancies, *Br J Haematol* 143:481–489, 2008.

Campana D: Role of minimal residual disease monitoring in adult and pediatric acute lymphoblastic

leukemia, *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am* 23:1083–1098, 2009.
Campo E, Raffeld M, Jaffe E: Mantle-cell lymphoma, *Semin Hematol* 36:115–127, 1999.
Caro P, Kishan AU, Norberg E, et al: Metabolic signatures uncover distinct targets in molecular subsets of diffuse large B cell lymphoma, *Cancer Cell* 22(4):547–560, 2012.
Cattoretti G, Chang CC, Cechova K, et al: BCL-6 protein is expressed in germinal-center B cells, *Blood* 86:45–53, 1995.
Cavazzini F, Bardi A, Tammiso E, et al: Validation of an interphase fluorescence in situ hybridization approach for the detection of MLL gene rearrangements and of the MLL/AF9 fusion in acute myeloid leukemia, *Haematologica* 91(3):381–385, 2006.
Cave H, Van der Werf ten Bosch J, Suciu S, et al: Clinical significance of minimal residual disease in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 339:591–598, 1998.
Chambon P: A decade of molecular biology of retinoic acid receptors, *FASEB J* 10:940–954, 1996.
Chapman MA, Lawrence MS, Keats JJ, et al: Initial genome sequencing and analysis of multiple myeloma, *Nature* 471(7339):467–472, 2011.
Chasseriau J, Rivet J, Bilan F, et al: Characterization of the different BCR-ABL transcripts with a single multiplex RT-PCR, *J Mol Diag* 6:343–347, 2004.
Chen W, Iida S, Louie DC, et al: Heterologous promoters fused to BCL6 by chromosomal translocations affecting band 3q27 cause its deregulated expression during B-cell differentiation, *Blood* 91:603–607, 1998.
Chen W, Rassidakis GZ, Medeiros LJ: Nucleophosmin gene mutations in acute myeloid leukemia, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 130(11):1687–1692, 2006.
Chen C-S, Sorensen PHB, Domer PH, et al: Molecular rearrangements on chromosome 11q23 predominant in infant acute lymphoblastic leukemia and are associated with specific biologic variables and poor outcome, *Blood* 81:2386, 1993.
Cheng M, Quail MR, Gingrich DE, et al: CEP-28122: A highly potent and selective orally active inhibitor of anaplastic lymphoma kinase with antitumor activity in experimental models of human cancers, *Mol Cancer Ther* 11:67–69, 2012.
Cheng Y, Wang Y, Wang H, et al: Cytogenetic profile of de novo acute myeloid leukemia: A study based on 1432 patients in a single institution of China, *Leukemia* 23(10):1801–1806, 2009.
Cheung KJ, Johnson NA, Affleck JG, et al: Acquired TNFRSF14 mutations in follicular lymphoma are associated with worse prognosis, *Cancer Res* 70(22): 9166–9174, 2010.
Chiaretti S, Foà R: T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Haematologica* 94(2):160–162, 2009.
Chiarle R, Voena C, Ambrogio C, et al: The anaplastic lymphoma kinase in the pathogenesis of cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 8:11–23, 2008.
Chibbar R, Leung K, McCormick S, et al: bcl-1 gene rearrangements in mantle cell lymphoma: A comprehensive analysis of 118 cases, including B-5 fixed tissue, by polymerase chain reaction and Southern transfer analysis, *Mod Pathol* 11:1089–1097, 1998.
Chiu BC, Weisenburger DD: An update of the epidemiology of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Clin Lymphoma* 4:161–168, 2003.
Chng WJ, Remstein ED, Fonseca R, et al: Gene expression profiling of pulmonary mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma identifies new biologic insights with potential diagnostic and therapeutic applications, *Blood* 113:635–645, 2009.
Choppa PC, Gomez J, Vall HG, et al: A novel method for the detection, quantitation, and breakpoint cluster region determination of t(15;17) fusion transcripts using a one-step real-time multiplex RT-PCR, *Am J Clin Pathol* 119:137–144, 2003.
Chotirat S, Thongnoppakhun W, Promsuwicha O, et al: Molecular alterations of isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 and 2 (IDH1 and IDH2) metabolic genes and additional genetic mutations in newly diagnosed acute myeloid leukemia patients, *J Hematol Oncol* 5:5, 2012.
Chou WC, Hou HA, Chen CY, et al: Distinct clinical and biologic characteristics in adult acute myeloid leukemia bearing the isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 mutation, *Blood* 115:2749–2754, 2010.
Chowdhury T, Brady HJ: Insights from clinical studies into the role of the MLL gene in infant and childhood leukemia, *Blood Cells Mol Dis* 40(2):192–199, 2008.
Chung EY, Psathas JN, Yu D, et al: CD19 is a major B cell receptor-independent activator of MYC-driven B-lymphomagenesis, *J Clin Invest* 122(6):2257–2266, 2012.
Ci W, Polo JM, Cerchietti L, et al: The BCL6 transcriptional program features repression of multiple oncogenes in primary B cells and is deregulated in DLBCL, *Blood* 113:5536–5548, 2009.
Clavel J, Bellec S, Rebouissou S, et al: Childhood leukaemia, polymorphisms of metabolism enzyme genes, and interactions with maternal tobacco, coffee and alcohol consumption during pregnancy, *Eur J Cancer Prev* 14(6):531–540, 2005.
Clavio M, Ghiso A, Ghiggi C, et al: Seventeen years of experience with ATRA-based therapy for acute promyelocytic leukaemia: Long-term follow-up of patients treated at S. Martino Hospital, Genoa, *Oncol Rep* 21(4):1045–1052, 2009.
Collins SJ: Retinoic acid receptors, hematopoiesis and leukemogenesis, *Curr Opin Hematol* 15(4):346–351, 2008.
Compagno M, Lim WK, Grunn A, et al: Mutations of multiple genes cause deregulation of NF-kappaB in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Nature* 459(7247):717–721, 2009.
Cools J, DeAngelo DJ, Gotlib J, et al: A tyrosine kinase created by fusion of the PDGFRA and FIP1L1 genes as a therapeutic target of imatinib in idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome, *New Engl J Med* 348:1201–1214, 2003.
Cory S, Adams JM: The Bcl2 family: Regulators of the cellular life-or-death switch, *Nat Rev Cancer* 2:647–656, 2002.
Cossman J, Uppenkamp M, Sundeen J, et al: Molecular genetics and the diagnosis of lymphoma, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 112:117–127, 1988.
Coustan-Smith E, Mullighan CG, Onciu M, et al: Early T-cell precursor leukaemia: a subtype of very high-risk acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, *Lancet Oncol* 10:147–156, 2009.
Cui YX, Kerby A, McDuff FK, et al: NPM-ALK inhibits the p53 tumor suppressor pathway in an MDM2 and JNK-dependent manner, *Blood* 113:5217–5227, 2009.
Curtis C, Dang R, Gardembas M, et al: Durable responses to imatinib in patients with PDGFRB fusion gene-positive and BCR-ABL-negative chronic myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood* 109(1):61–64, 2007.
Cuthbert G, Thompson K, Breese G, et al: Sensitivity of FISH in detection of MLL gene rearrangements, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 29:180–185, 2000.
Daly S, Conneally E, Langabeer SE: Identification of MPL W515L/K mutations in patients with primary myelofibrosis and essential thrombocythaemia by allele-specific polymerase chain reaction, *Acta Haematol* 121(4):221–222, 2009.
Dang L, White DW, Gross S, et al: Cancer-associated IDH1 mutations produce 2-hydroxyglutarate, *Nature* 465:966, 2010.
Dave SS, Wright G, Tan B, et al: Prediction of survival in follicular lymphoma based on molecular features of tumor-infiltrating immune cells, *N Engl J Med* 351: 2159–2169, 2004.
David M, Cross NCP, Burgstaller S, et al: Durable responses to imatinib in patients with PDGFRB fusion gene-positive and BCR-ABL-negative chronic myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood* 109:61–64, 2007.
Davis RE, Ngo VN, Lenz G, et al: Chronic active B-cell-receptor signalling in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Nature* 463(7277):88–92, 2010.
Dearden C: How I treat prolymphocytic leukemia, *Blood* 120:538–551, 2012.
De Boer CJ, Schuuring E, Dreef E, et al: Cyclin D1 protein analysis in the diagnosis of mantle cell lymphoma, *Blood* 86:2715–2723, 1995.
De Boer CJ, Van Krieken JM, Schuuring E, et al: Bcl-1/cyclin D1 in malignant lymphoma, *Ann Oncol* 8(Suppl 2):S109–S117, 1997.
Deininger MW, Goldman JM, Melo JV: The molecular biology of chronic myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 96:3343–3356, 2000.
De Jong D, Vasmel WL, de Boer JP, et al: Anaplastic large-cell lymphoma in women with breast implants, *JAMA* 300:2030–2035, 2008.
De Leval L, Gaulard P: Pathobiology and molecular profiling of peripheral T-cell lymphomas, *Hematology* 2008:272–279, 2008.
Del Giudice I, Rossi D, Chiaretti S, et al: NOTCH1 mutations in +12 chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) confer an unfavorable prognosis, induce a distinctive transcriptional profiling and refine the intermediate prognosis of +12 CLL, *Haematologica* 97(3): 437–441, 2012.
Den Boer ML, van Slegtenhorst M, De Menezes RX, et al: A subtype of childhood acute lymphoblastic leukaemia with poor treatment outcome: a genome-wide classification study, *Lancet Oncol* 10:125–134, 2009.
Dent AL, Shaffer AL, Yu X, et al: Control of inflammation, cytokine expression, and germinal center formation by BCL-6, *Science* 276:589, 1997.
De Paepe P, Baens M, Van Krieken H, et al: ALK activation by the CLTC-ALK fusion is a recurrent event in large B-cell lymphoma, *Blood* 102:2638–2641, 2003.
De Schouwer PJ, Dyer MJ, Brito-Babapulle VB, et al: T-cell prolymphocytic leukaemia: Antigen receptor gene rearrangement and a novel mode of MTCP1 B1 activation, *Br J Haematol* 110:831–838, 2000.
Dicker F, Herholz H, Schnittger S, et al: The detection of TP53 mutations in chronic lymphocytic leukemia independently predicts rapid disease progression and is highly correlated with a complex aberrant karyotype, *Leukemia* 23:117–124, 2009.
Didier C, Cavelier C, Quaranta M, et al: Evaluation of polo-like kinase 1 inhibition on the G2/M checkpoint in acute myelocytic leukaemia, *Eur J Pharmacol* 591: 102–105, 2008.
Dierlamm J, Baens M, Wlodarska I, et al: The apoptosis inhibitor gene API2 and a novel 18q gene, MLT, are recurrently rearranged in the t(11;18)(q21;q21) associated with mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphomas, *Blood* 93:3601–3609, 1999.
Dietrich S, Glimm H, Andrulis M, et al: BRAF inhibition in refractory hairy-cell leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 366(21):2038–2040, 2012.
Di Lisio L, Martinez N, Montes-Moreno S, et al: The role of mirnas in the pathogenesis and diagnosis of B-cell lymphomas, *Blood* 120(9):1782–1790, 2012.
Dolnik A, Engelmann JC, Scharfenberger-Schmeer M, et al: Commonly altered genomic regions in acute myeloid leukemia are enriched for somatic mutations involved in chromatin remodeling and splicing, *Blood* 120:e83–e92, 2012.
Dombret H, Preudhomme C, Boissel N: Core binding factor acute myeloid leukemia (CBF-AML): is high-dose Ara-C (HDAC) consolidation as effective as you think? *Curr Opin Hematol* 16(2):92–97, 2009.
Domenech E, Gomez-Lopez G, Gzlez-Pena D, et al: New mutations in chronic lymphocytic leukemia identified by target enrichment and deep sequencing, *PLoS ONE* 7(6):e38158, 2012.
Dominguez-Sola D, Dalla-Favera R: Burkitt lymphoma: Much more than MYC, *Cancer Cell* 22(2):141–142, 2012.
Dong F, Brynes RK, Tidow N, et al: Mutations in the gene for the granulocyte colony-stimulating–factor receptor in patients with acute myeloid leukemia preceded by severe congenital neutropenia, *N Engl J Med* 333:487–493, 1995.
Downing JR: The AML1-ETO chimaeric transcription factor in acute myeloid leukaemia: Biology and clinical significance, *Br J Haematol* 106:296–308, 1999.
Druker BJ, Talpaz M, Resta DJ, et al: Efficacy and safety of a specific inhibitor of the BCR-ABL tyrosine kinase in chronic myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 344:1031–1037, 2001.
Du MQ: MALT lymphoma: Recent advances in aetiology and molecular genetics, *J Clin Exp Hematop* 47: 31–42, 2007.
Dufour A, Schneider F, Hoster E, et al: Monoallelic CEBPA mutations in normal karyotype acute myeloid leukemia: Independent favorable prognostic factor within NPM1 mutated patients, *Ann Hematol* 91: 1051–1063, 2012.
Duncan CG, Barwick BG, Jin G, et al: A heterozygous IDH1R132H/WT mutation induces genomewide alterations in DNA methylation, *Genome Res* 22:2339–2355, 2012.
Dybkaer K, Iqbal J, Zhou G, et al: Molecular diagnosis and outcome prediction in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and other subtypes of lymphoma, *Clin Lymphoma* 5:19–28, 2004.
Dyck J, Maul GG, Miller WH, et al: A novel macromolecular structure is a target of the promyelocytic-retinoic acid receptor oncoprotein, *Cell* 76:333–343, 1994.
Dyer MJS, Zani BJ, Lu WZ, et al: BCL2 translocations in leukemia of mature B cells, *Blood* 83:3682–3688, 1994.
Eckerle S, Brune V, Doring C, et al: Gene expression profiling of isolated tumour cells from anaplastic large cell lymphomas: insights into its cellular origin,

pathogenesis and relation to Hodgkin lymphoma, *Leukemia* 23(11):2129–2138, 2009. [Epub 2009 Aug 6].
Edelmann L, Hirschhorn K: Clinical utility of array CGH for the detection of chromosomal imbalances associated with mental retardation and multiple congenital anomalies, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1151:157–166, 2009.
Egan JB, Shi CX, Tembe W, et al: Whole-genome sequencing of multiple myeloma from diagnosis to plasma cell leukemia reveals genomic initiating events, evolution, and clonal tides, *Blood* 120(5):1060–1066, 2012.
Einerson RR, Kurtin PJ, Dayharsh GA, et al: FISH is superior to PCR in detecting t(14;18)(q32;q21)-IgH/bcl-2 in follicular lymphoma using paraffin-embedded tissue samples, *Am J Clin Pathol* 124:421–429, 2005.
Einerson RR, Law ME, Blair HE, et al: Novel FISH probes designed to detect IGK-MYC and IGL-MYC rearrangements in B-cell lineage malignancy identify a new breakpoint cluster region designated BVR2, *Leukemia* 20:1790–1799, 2006.
Elenitoba-Johnson KSJ, Bohling SD, Jenson SD, et al: Fluorescence PCR quantification of cyclin D1 expression, *J Mol Diagn* 4(2):90–96, 2002.
Ernst T, Chase AJ, Score J, et al: Inactivating mutations of the histone methyltransferase gene EZH2 in myeloid disorders, *Nat Genet* 42:722–726, 2010.
Ernst P, Fisher JK, Avery W, et al: Definitive hematopoiesis requires the mixed-lineage leukemia gene, *Dev Cell* 6:437–443, 2004a.
Ernst P, Mabon M, Davidson AJ, et al: An Mll-dependent Hox program drives hematopoietic expansion, *Curr Biol* 14:2063–2069, 2004b.
Ernst T, Pflug A, Rinke J, et al: A somatic EZH2 mutation in childhood acute myeloid leukemia, *Leukemia* 26:1701–1703, 2012.
Evans PA, Pott C, Groenen PJ, et al: Significantly improved PCR-based clonality testing in B-cell malignancies by use of multiple immunoglobulin gene targets. Report of the BIOMED-2 Concerted Action BHM4-CT98-3936, *Leukemia* 21:207–214, 2007.
Fabris S, Mosca L, Todoerti K, et al: Molecular and transcriptional characterization of 17p loss in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 47:781–793, 2008.
Faderl S, Bueso-Ramos C, Liu Z, et al: Kit inhibitor APcK110 extends survival in an AML xenograft mouse model, *Invest New Drugs* 29:1094–1097, 2011.
Faderl S, Hochhaus A, Hughes T: Monitoring of minimal residual disease in chronic myeloid leukemia, *Hematol Oncol Clin N Am* 18:657–670, 2004.
Faderl S, Talpaz M, Estrov Z, et al: The biology of chronic myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 341:164–172, 1999.
Falini B: Anaplastic large cell lymphoma: Pathological, molecular and clinical features, *Br J Haematol* 114: 741–760, 2001.
Falini B, Fizzotti M, Pileri S, et al: Bcl-6 protein expression in normal and neoplastic lymphoid tissue, *Ann Oncol* 8(Suppl 2):S101–S104, 1997.
Falini B, Gionfriddo I, Cecchetti F, et al: Acute myeloid leukemia with mutated nucleophosmin (NPM1): any hope for a targeted therapy? *Blood Rev* 25:247–254, 2011.
Falini B, Mecucci C, Tiacci E, et al: Cytoplasmic nucleophosmin in acute myelogenous leukemia with a normal karyotype, *N Engl J Med* 352(3):254–266, 2005.
Falini B, Mecucci C, Tiacci E, et al: Mutations and targeted therapies in AML 41, *Am J Blood Res* 3(1):29–51, 2013.
Falini B, Nicoletti I, Martelli MF, et al: Acute myeloid leukemia carrying cytoplasmic/mutated nucleophosmin (NPMc+ AML): biologic and clinical features, *Blood* 109(3):874–885, 2007.
Falini B, Pileri S, Zinzani PL, et al: ALK+ lymphoma: Clinico-pathological findings and outcome, *Blood* 93:2697–2706, 1999a.
Falini B, Pulford K, Pucciarini A, et al: Lymphomas expressing ALK fusion protein(s) other than NPM-ALK, *Blood* 10:3509–3515, 1999b.
Fasching K, Panzer S, Haas OA, et al: Presences of clone-specific antigen receptor gene rearrangements at birth indicates an in utero origin of diverse types of early childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 95:2722–2724, 2000.
Fathi AT, Chabner BA: FLT3 inhibition as therapy in acute myeloid leukemia: A record of trials and tribulations, *Oncologist* 16:1162–1174, 2011.
Ferreri AJ, Govi S, Pileri SA, et al: Anaplastic large cell lymphoma, ALK-positive, *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 83: 293–302, 2012.
Fink SR, Belomgie KJ, Paternoster SF, et al: Validation of a new three-color fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) method to detect CHIC2 deletion, FIP1L1/PDGFRA fusion and PDGFRA translocations, *Leuk Res* 33:843–846, 2009.
Fisher SG, Fisher RI: The epidemiology of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Oncogene* 23:6524–6534, 2004.
Fischer T, Stone RM, Deangelo DJ, et al: Phase IIB trial of oral Midostaurin (PKC412), the FMS-like tyrosine kinase 3 receptor (FLT3) and multi-targeted kinase inhibitor, in patients with acute myeloid leukemia and high-risk myelodysplastic syndrome with either wild-type or mutated FLT3, *J Clin Oncol* 28:4339–4345, 2010.
Fletcher JA, Lynch EA, Kimball VM, et al: Translocation (9;22) is associated with extremely poor prognosis in intensively treated children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 77:435, 1991.
Flex E, Petrangeli V, Stella L, et al: Somatically acquired JAK1 mutations in adult acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *J Exp Med* 205(4):751–758, 2008.
Flicek P, Birney E: Sense from sequence reads: Methods for alignment and assembly, *Nat Methods* 6(Suppl 11):S6–S12, 2009.
Flohr T, Schrauder A, Cazzaniga G, et al: Minimal residual disease-directed risk stratification using real-time quantitative PCR analysis of immunoglobulin and T-cell receptor gene rearrangements in the international multicenter trial AIEOP-BFM ALL 2000 for childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Leukemia* 22:771–782, 2008.
Foa R, Del Giudice I, Guarini A, et al: Clinical implications of the molecular genetics of chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Haematologica* 98(5):675–685, 2013.
Ford AM, Fasching K, Panzer-Grümayer ER, et al: Origins of "late" relapse in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia with TEL-AML1 fusion genes, *Blood* 98:558–564, 2001.
Forestier E, Andersen MK, Autio K, et al: Cytogenetic patterns in ETV6/RUNX1-positive pediatric B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A Nordic series of 245 cases and review of the literature, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 46(5):440–450, 2007.
Forestier E, Heyman M, Andersen MK, et al: Outcome of ETV6/RUNX1-positive childhood acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in the NOPHO-ALL-1992 protocol: Frequent late relapses but good overall survival, *Br J Haematol* 140(6):665–672, 2008. [Epub 2008 Feb 1].
Forestier E, Schmiegelow K: The incidence peaks of the childhood acute leukemias reflect specific cytogenetic aberrations, *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 28(8):486–495, 2006.
Fornari A, Piva R, Chiarle R, et al: Anaplastic large cell lymphoma: One or more entities among T-cell lymphoma? *Hematol Oncol* 27(4):161–170, 2009.
Foroni L, Gerrard G, Nna E, et al: Technical aspects and clinical applications of measuring BCR-ABL1 transcripts number in chronic myeloid leukemia, *Am J Hematol* 84:517–522, 2009.
Fröhling S, Schlenk RF, Breitruck J, et al: Prognostic significance of activating FLT3 mutations in younger adults (16 to 60 years) with acute myeloid leukemia and normal cytogenetics: A study of the AML Study Group Ulm, *Blood* 100:4372–4380, 2002.
Fröhling S, Schlenk RF, Stolze I, et al: CEBPA mutations in younger adults with acute myeloid leukemia and normal cytogenetics: Prognostic relevance and analysis of cooperating mutations, *J Clin Oncol* 22(4):624–633, 2004.
Fu K, Weisenburger DD, Greiner TC, et al: Cyclin D1-negative mantle cell lymphoma: A clinicopathologic study based on gene expression profiling, *Blood* 106:4315–4321, 2005.
Futami M, Zhu QS, Whichard ZL, et al: G-CSF receptor activation of the Src kinase Lyn is mediated by Gab2 recruitment of the Shp2 phosphatase, *Blood* 118:1077–1086, 2011.
Gabert J, Beillard E, Van der Velden VH, et al: Standardization and quality control studies of "real-time" quantitative reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction of fusion gene transcripts for residual disease detection in leukemia—A Europe Against Cancer program, *Leukemia* 17:2318–2357, 2003.
Gale KB, Ford AM, Repp R, et al: Backtracking leukemia to birth: Identification of clonotypic gene fusion sequences in neonatal blood spots, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 94:13950–13954, 1997.
Gallagher RE, Li Y-P, Rao S, et al: Characterization of acute promyelocytic leukemia cases with PML-RARα break/fusion sites in PML exon 6: Identification of a subgroup with decreased in vitro responsiveness to all-trans retinoic acid, *Blood* 86:1540, 1995.
Gallagher RE, Willman CL, Slack JL, et al: Association of PML-RARα type with pretreatment hematologic characteristics but not treatment outcome in acute promyelocytic leukemia: An intergroup molecular study, *Blood* 90:1656–1663, 1997.
Gallagher RE, Yeap BY, Bi W, et al: Quantiative real-time RT-PCR analysis of PML-RARα mRNA in acute promyelocytic leukemia: Assessment of prognostic significance in adult patients from intergroup protocol 0129, *Blood* 101:2521–2528, 2003.
Gascoyne RD, Adomat SA, Krajewski S, et al: Prognostic significance of Bcl-2 protein expression and Bcl-2 gene rearrangement in diffuse aggressive non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Blood* 90:244–251, 1997.
Gascoyne RD, Aoun P, Wu D, et al: Prognostic significance of anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) protein expression in adults with anaplastic large cell lymphoma, *Blood* 93:3913–3921, 1999.
Gascoyne RD, Lamant L, Martin-Subero JI, et al: ALK-positive diffuse large B-cell lymphoma is associated with Clathrin-ALK rearrangements: Report of 6 cases, *Blood* 102:2568–2573, 2003.
Gaudio E, Paduano F, Ngankeu A, et al: Heat shock protein 70 regulates Tcl1 expression in leukemia and lymphomas, *Blood* 121(2):351–359, 2013.
Gaynon PS, Crotty ML, Sather HN, et al: Expression of BCR-ABL, E2A-PBX1 and MLL-AF4 fusion transcripts in newly diagnosed children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A Children's Cancer Group initiative, *Leuk Lymphoma* 26:57, 1997.
Gebauer N, Bernard V, Gebauer W, et al: TP53 mutations are frequent events in double-hit B-cell lymphomas with MYC and BCL2 but not MYC and BCL6 translocations, *Leuk Lymphoma* 56:179–185, 2015.
Germeshausen M, Ballmaier M, Welte K: Incidence of CSF3R mutations in severe congenital neutropenia and relevance for leukemogenesis: results of a long-term survey, *Blood* 109:93–99, 2007.
Gilliland DG, Griffin JD: The roles of FLT3 in hematopoiesis and leukemia, *Blood* 100:1532–1542, 2002.
Godley LA, Larson RA: Therapy-related myeloid leukemia, *Semin Oncol* 35(4):418–429, 2008.
Gökbuget N, Hoelzer D: Treatment of adult acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Semin Hematol* 46(1):64–75, 2009.
Goldman JM, Melo JV: Chronic myeloid leukemia—Advances in biology and new approaches to treatment, *N Engl J Med* 349:1451–1464, 2003.
Gotlib J, Cools J, Malone IIIJM, et al: The FIP1L1-PDGFRα fusion tyrosine kinase in hypereosinophilic syndrome and chronic eosinophilic leukemia: implications for diagnosis, classification, and management, *Blood* 103:2879–2891, 2004.
Gotlib J, Maxson JE, George TI, et al: The new genetics of chronic neutrophilic leukemia and atypical CML: implications for diagnosis and treatment, *Blood* 122:1707–1711, 2013.
Graux C, Cools J, Melotte C, et al: Fusion of NUP214 to ABL1 on amplified episomes in T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Nat Genet* 36:1084–1089, 2004.
Greaves MF, Maia AT, Wiemels JL, et al: Leukemia in twins: Lessons in natural history, *Blood* 102:2321–2333, 2003a.
Greaves MF, Wiemels J: Origins of chromosome translocations in childhood leukemia, *Nature Rev Cancer* 3:1–11, 2003b.
Green CL, Evans CM, Hills RK, et al: The prognostic significance of IDH1 mutations in younger adult patients with acute myeloid leukemia is dependent on FLT3-ITD status, *Blood* 116:2779–2782, 2010.
Green MR, Gentles AJ, Nair RV, et al: Hierarchy in somatic mutations arising during genomic evolution and progression of follicular lymphoma, *Blood* 121(9): 1604–1611, 2013.
Green CL, Koo KK, Hills RK, et al: Prognostic significance of CEBPA mutations in a large cohort of younger adult patients with acute myeloid leukemia: impact of double CEBPA mutations and the interaction with FLT3 and NPM1 mutations, *J Clin Oncol* 28:2739–2747, 2010.
Greiner TC, Rubocki RJ: Effectiveness of capillary electrophoresis using fluorescent-labeled primers in

detecting T-cell receptor γ gene rearrangements, *J Mol Diagn* 4:137–143, 2002.
Grignani F, Fagioli M, Alcalay M, et al: Acute promyelocytic leukemia: From genetics to treatment, *Blood* 83:10–25, 1994.
Grimwade D: The pathogenesis of acute promyelocytic leukaemia: Evaluation of the role of molecular diagnosis and monitoring in the management of the disease, *Br J Haematol* 106:591–613, 1999.
Grimwade D, Biondi A, Mozziconacci M, et al: Characterization of acute promyelocytic leukemia cases lacking the classic t(15;17): results of the European Working Party, *Blood* 96:1297–1308, 2000.
Grimwade D, Hills RK, Moorman AV, et al: Refinement of cytogenetic classification in acute myeloid leukemia: Determination of prognostic significance of rare recurring chromosomal abnormalities among 5876 younger adult patients treated in the United Kingdom Medical Research Council trials, *Blood* 116:354–365, 2010.
Grimwade D, Lo Coco F: Acute promyelocytic leukemia: A model for the role of molecular diagnosis and residual disease monitoring in directing treatment approach in acute myeloid leukemia, *Leukemia* 16: 1959–1973, 2002.
Grisolano JL, O'Neal J, Cain J, et al: An activated receptor tyrosine kinase, TEL/PDGFbetaR, cooperates with AML1/ETO to induce acute myeloid leukemia in mice, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100(16):9506–9511, 2003. [Epub 2003 Jul 24].
Grossmann V, Tiacci E, Holmes AB, et al: Whole-exome sequencing identifies somatic mutations of BCOR in acute myeloid leukemia with normal karyotype, *Blood* 118:6153–6163, 2011.
Gruber F, Mustjoki S, Porkka K: Impact of tyrosine kinase inhibitors on patient outcomes in Philadelphia chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, *Br J Haematol* 145(5):581–597, 2009.
Gu K, Chan WC, Hawley RC: Practical detection of t(14;18)(IgH/BCL2) in follicular lymphoma, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 132:1355–1361, 2008.
Gu K, Fu K, Jain S, et al: t(14;18)-negative follicular lymphomas are associated with a high frequency of BCL6 rearrangement at the alternative breakpoint region, *Mod Pathol* 22:1251–1257, 2009.
Guidez F, Ivins S, Zhu J, et al: Reduced retinoic acid-sensitivities of nuclear receptor corepressor binding to PML- and PLZF-RARα underlie molecular pathogenesis and treatment of acute promyelocytic leukemia, *Blood* 91:2634–2642, 1998.
Gunn SR, Mohammed MS, Gorre ME, et al: Whole-genome scanning by array comparative genomic hybridization as a clinical tool for risk assessment in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *J Mol Diagn* 10(5):442–451, 2008.
Gupta V, Yib QL, Brandwein J, et al: Clinico-biological features and prognostic significance of PML/RARalpha isoforms in adult patients with acute promyelocytic leukemia treated with all trans retinoic acid (ATRA) and chemotherapy, *Leuk Lymphoma* 45(3):469–480, 2004.
Gutierrez A, Dahlberg SE, Neuberg DS, et al: Absence of biallelic TCRgamma deletion predicts early treatment failure in pediatric T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *J Clin Oncol* 28:3816–3823, 2010.
Hamblin TJ: Prognostic markers in chronic lymphocytic leukaemia, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 20:455–468, 2007.
Hamblin TJ, Davis Z, Gardiner A, et al: Unmutated Ig V(H) genes are associated with a more aggressive form of chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Blood* 94:1848–1854, 1999.
Haralambieva E, Boerma EJ, Van Imhoff GW, et al: Clinical, immunophenotypic, and genetic analysis of adult lymphomas with morphologic features of Burkitt lymphoma, *Am J Surg Pathol* 29:1086–1094, 2005.
Harbott J, Viehmann S, Borkhardt A, et al: Incidence of TEL/AML1 fusion gene analyzed consecutively in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia in relapse, *Blood* 90:4933–4937, 1997.
Harris MB, Shuster JJ, Carroll A, et al: Trisomy of leukemic cell chromosomes 4 and 10 identifies children with B-progenitor cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia with a very low risk of treatment failure: A Pediatric Oncology Group study, *Blood* 79:3316–3324, 1992.
Harrison CJ: The detection and significance of chromosomal abnormalities in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, *Blood Rev* 15:49–59, 2001.
Hart S, Goh KC, Novotny-Diermayr V, et al: Pacritinib (SB1518)—A JAK2/FLT3 inhibitor for the treatment of acute myeloid leukemia, *Blood Cancer J* 1:e44, 2011.
Hartmann EM, Campo E, Wright G, et al: Pathway discovery in mantle cell lymphoma by integrated analysis of high-resolution gene expression and copy number profiling, *Blood* 116(6):953–961, 2010.
Hatzimichael E, Georgiou G, Benetatos L, et al: Gene mutations and molecularly targeted therapies in acute myeloid leukemia, *Am J Blood Res* 3:29–51, 2013.
Hecht JL, Aster JC: Molecular biology of Burkitt's lymphoma, *J Clin Oncol* 18:3707–3721, 2000.
Heerema NA, Nachman JB, Sather HN, et al: Hypodiploidy with less then 45 chromosomes confers adverse risk in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukaemia: A report from the Children's Cancer Group, *Blood* 94:4036–4046, 1999.
Heerema NA, Sather HN, Sensel MG, et al: Prognostic impact of trisomies 10, 17 and 5 among children with acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and high hyperdiploidy (>50 chromosomes), *J Clin Oncol* 18:1876–1887, 2000.
Hernandez L, Pinyol M, Hernandez S, et al: TRK-fused gene (TFG) is a new partner of ALK in anaplastic large cell lymphoma producing two structurally different TFG-ALK translocations, *Blood* 94:3265–3268, 1999.
Hess JL: MLL: A histone methyltransferase disrupted in leukemia, *Trends Mol Med* 10:500–507, 2004.
Higgins RA, Gunn SR, Robetorye RS: Clinical application of array-based comparative genomic hybridization for the identification of prognostically important genetic alterations in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Mol Diagn Ther* 12(5):271–280, 2008.
Hochhaus A, O'Brien SG, Guilhot F, et al: Six-year follow-up of patients receiving imatinib for the first-line treatment of chronic myeloid leukemia, *Leukemia* 23:1054–1061, 2009.
Hormaeche I, Licht JD: Chromatin modulation by oncogenic transcription factors: New complexity, new therapeutic targets, *Cancer Cell* 11(6):475–478, 2007.
Horny HP: Mastocytosis: An unusual clonal disorder of bone marrow-derived hematopoietic progenitor cells, *Am J Clin Pathol* 132(3):438–447, 2009.
Hou HA, Huang TC, Lin LI, et al: WT1 mutation in 470 adult patients with acute myeloid leukemia: Stability during disease evolution and implication of its incorporation into a survival scoring system, *Blood* 115(25):5222–5231, 2010.
Hsi AC, Robirds DH, Luo J, et al: T-cell prolymphocytic leukemia frequently shows cutaneous involvement and is associated with gains of MYC, loss of ATM, and TCL1A rearrangement, *Am J Surg Pathol* 38(11):1468–1483, 2014.
Hsi ED, Tubbs RR, Lovell MA, et al: Detection of bcl-2/JH translocation by polymerase chain reaction: A summary of the experience of the Molecular Oncology Survey of the College of American Pathologists, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 126:902–908, 2002.
Hubank M: Gene expression profiling and its application in studies of haematological malignancy, *Br J Haematol* 124:577–594, 2004.
Hughes TP, Branford S: Monitoring disease response to tyrosine kinase inhibitor therapy in CML, *Hematology* 2009:477–487, 2009.
Hughes TP, Kaeda J, Branford S, et al: Frequency of major molecular responses to imatinib or interferon alfa plus cytarabine in newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 349:1423–1432, 2003.
Hunger SP, Galili N, Carroll AJ, et al: The t(1;19)(q23;p13) result in consistent fusion of E2A and PBX1 coding sequences in acute lymphoblastic leukemias, *Blood* 77:687–693, 1991.
Iacobucci I, Storlazzi CT, Cilloni D, et al: Identification and molecular characterization of recurrent genomic deletions on 7p12 in the IKZF1 gene in a large cohort of BCR-ABL1-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia patients: On behalf of Gruppo Italiano Malattie Ematologiche dell'Adulto Acute Leukemia Working Party (GIMEMA AL WP), *Blood* 114(10):2159–2167, 2009.
Ihle JN, Gilliland DG: Jak2: Normal function and role in hematopoietic disorders, *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 17(1):8–14, 2007.
Iqbal J, Greiner TC, Patel K, et al: Distinctive patterns of BCL6 molecular alterations and their functional consequences in different subgroups of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Leukemia* 21:2332–2343, 2007.
Iqbal S, Jenner MJR, Summers KE, et al: Reliable detection of clonal IgH/Bcl2 MBR rearrangement in follicular lymphoma: Methodology and clinical significance, *Br J Hematol* 124:325–328, 2004.
Isaacson PG, Du M-Q: MALT lymphoma: From morphology to molecules, *Nature Rev Cancer* 4:644–653, 2004.
Jaffe ES, Harris N, Stein H, et al: *Pathology & genetics: Tumours of the haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues. World Health Organization Classification of Tumours*, Lyon, France, 2001, IARC Press.
James C: The JAK2V617F mutation in polycythemia vera and other myeloproliferative disorders: One mutation for three diseases? *Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program* 69–75, 2008.
James C, Ugo V, Le Couedic JP, et al: A unique clonal JAK2 mutation leading to constitutive signalling causes polycythaemia vera, *Nature* 434:1144–1148, 2005.
Jansen JH, Löwenberg B: Acute promyelocytic leukemia with a PLZF-RARalpha fusion protein, *Semin Hematol* 38(1):37–41, 2001.
Jardin F, Ruminy P, Bastard C, et al: The BCL6 proto-oncogene: A leading role during germinal center development and lymphomagenesis, *Pathol Biol (Paris)* 55:73–83, 2007.
Jardin F, Sahota SS: Targeted somatic mutation of the BCL6 proto-oncogene and its impact on lymphomagenesis, *Hematology* 10:115–129, 2005.
Jerkeman M, Aman P, Cavallin-Stahl E, et al: Prognostic implications of BCL6 rearrangement in uniformly treated patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma—A Nordic Lymphoma Group study, *Int J Oncol* 20: 161–165, 2002.
Jones AV, Cross NC, White HE, et al: Rapid identification of JAK2 exon 12 mutations using high-resolution melting analysis, *Haematologica* 93(10):1560–1564, 2008.
Jones CD, Darnell KH, Warnke RA, et al: CyclinD1/CyclinD3 ratio by real-time PCR improves specificity for the diagnosis of mantle cell lymphoma, *J Mol Diagn* 6:84–89, 2004.
Jones LK, Saha V: Philadelphia positive acute lymphoblastic leukaemia of childhood, *Br J Haematol* 130(4): 489–500, 2005.
Jurcic JG, Nimer SD, Scheinberg DA, et al: Prognostic significance of minimal residual disease detection and PML/RAR-α isoform type: Long-term follow-up in acute promyelocytic leukemia, *Blood* 98:2651–2656, 2001.
Jurcic JG, Soignet SL, Maslak AP: Diagnosis and treatment of acute promyelocytic leukemia, *Curr Oncol Rep* 9(5):337–344, 2007.
Kadkol S, Bruno A, Dodge C, et al: Comprehensive analysis of CBFβ-MYH11 fusion transcripts in acute myeloid leukemia by RT-PCR analysis, *J Mol Diag* 6:22–27, 2004.
Kalla J, Stilgenbauer S, Schaffner C, et al: Heterogeneity of the API2-MALT1 gene rearrangement in MALT-type lymphoma, *Leukemia* 14:1967–1974, 2000.
Kaneko Y, Maseki N, Takasaki N, et al: Clinical and hematologic characteristics in acute leukemia with 11q23 translocations, *Blood* 67:484–491, 1986.
Karrman K, Forestier E, Andersen MK, et al: High incidence of the ETV6/RUNX1 fusion gene in paediatric precursor B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukaemias with trisomy 21 as the sole cytogenetic change: A Nordic series of cases diagnosed 1989–2005, *Br J Haematol* 135(3):352–354, 2006.
Katzenberger T, Ott G, Klein T, et al: Cytogenetic alterations affecting BCL6 are predominantly found in follicular lymphomas grade 3B with a diffuse large B-cell component, *Am J Pathol* 165:481–490, 2004.
Kiel MJ, Velusamy T, Betz BL, et al: Whole-genome sequencing identifies recurrent somatic NOTCH2 mutations in splenic marginal zone lymphoma, *J Exp Med* 209(9):1553–1565, 2012.
Kilpivaara O, Levine RL: JAK2 and MPL mutations in myeloproliferative neoplasms: Discovery and science, *Leukemia* 22(10):1813–1817, 2008.
Kim AS, Eastmond DA, Preston RJ: Childhood acute lymphocytic leukemia and perspectives on risk assessment of early-life stage exposures, *Mutat Res* 613(2–3):138–160, 2006.
Kim DH, Popradi G, Sriharsha L, et al: No significance of derivative chromosome 9 deletion on the clearance kinetics of BCR/ABL fusion transcripts, cytogenetic or molecular response, loss of response, or treatment failure to imatinib mesylate therapy for chronic myeloid leukemia, *Cancer* 113(4):772–781, 2008.
Klampfl T, Gisslinger H, Harutyunyan AS, et al: Somatic mutations of calreticulin in myeloproliferative neoplasms, *N Engl J Med* 369:2379–2390, 2013.

Klapper W, Stoecklein H, Zeynalova S, et al: Structural aberrations affecting the MYC locus indicate a poor prognosis independent of clinical risk factors in diffuse large B-cell lymphomas treated within randomized trials of the German High-Grade Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma Study Group (DSHNHL), *Leukemia* 22:2226–2229, 2008.

Klemm L, Duy C, Iacobucci I, et al: The B cell mutator AID promotes B lymphoid blast crisis and drug resistance in chronic myeloid leukemia, *Cancer Cell* 16(3):232–245, 2009.

Knudson AG: Stem cell regulation, tissue ontogeny, and oncogenic events, *Semin Cancer Biol* 3:99–106, 1992.

Kohno A, Morishita Y, Iida H, et al: Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for acute promyelocytic leukemia in second or third complete remission: A retrospective analysis in the Nagoya Blood and Marrow Transplantation Group, *Int J Hematol* 87(2):210–216, 2008.

Konoplev S, Huang X, Drabkin HA, et al: Cytoplasmic localization of nucleophosmin in bone marrow blasts of acute myeloid leukemia patients is not completely concordant with NPM1 mutation and is not predictive of prognosis, *Cancer* 115(20):4737–4744, 2009.

Kontzias A, Kotlyar A, Laurence A, et al: A new class of kinase inhibitors in cancer and autoimmune disease, *Curr Opin Pharmacol* 12:464–470, 2012.

Koschmieder S, Halmos B, Levantini E, et al: Dysregulation of the C/EBPalpha differentiation pathway in human cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 27(4):619–628, 2009.

Kottaridis PD, Gale RE, Frew ME, et al: The presence of a FLT3 internal tandem duplication in patients with acute myeloid leukemia (AML) adds important prognostic information to cytogenetic risk group and response to the first cycle of chemotherapy: Analysis of 854 patients from the United Kingdom Medical Research Council AML 10 and 12 trials, *Blood* 98(6): 1752–1759, 2001.

Kralovics R, Guan Y, Prchal JT: Acquired uniparental disomy of chromosome 9p is a frequent stem cell defect in polycythemia vera, *Exp Hematol* 30(3):229–236, 2002.

Kralovics R, Passamonti F, Buser AS, et al: A gain-of-function mutation of JAK2 in myeloproliferative disorders, *N Engl J Med* 352:1779–1790, 2005.

Kralovics R, Teo SS, Li S, et al: Acquisition of the V617F mutation of JAK2 is a late genetic event in a subset of patients with myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood* 108(4):1377–1380, 2006.

Kridel R, Meissner B, Rogic S, et al: Whole transcriptome sequencing reveals recurrent NOTCH1 mutations in mantle cell lymphoma, *Blood* 119:1963–1971, 2012.

Krishnan B, Matutes E, Dearden C: Prolymphocytic leukemias, *Semin Oncol* 33:257–263, 2006.

Krivtsov AV, Armstrong SA: MLL translocations, histone modifications and leukaemia stem-cell development, *Nat Rev Cancer* 7(11):823–833, 2007.

Ladanyi M, Cavalchire G: Detection of the NPM-ALK genomic rearrangement of Ki-1 lymphoma and isolation of the involved NPM and ALK introns, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 5:154–158, 1996.

Ladanyi M, Cavalchire G, Morris SW, et al: Reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction for the Ki-1 anaplastic large cell lymphoma-associated t(2;5) translocation in Hodgkin's disease, *Am J Pathol* 145:1296–1300, 1994.

Ladanyi M, Wang S: Detection of rearrangements of the BCL2 major breakpoint region in follicular lymphomas. Correlation of polymerase chain reaction results with Southern blot analysis, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 1:31–35, 1992.

Lafiura KM, Bielawski DM, Posecion NC Jr, et al: Association between prenatal pesticide exposures and the generation of leukemia-associated T(8;21), *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 49(5):624–628, 2007.

Lam LT, Wright G, Davis RE, et al: Cooperative signaling through the signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 and nuclear factor-κ B pathways in subtypes of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Blood* 111(7):3701–3713, 2008.

Lamant L, Meggetto F, Saati TA, et al: High incidence of the t(2;5)(23;q35) translocation in anaplastic large cell lymphoma and its lack of detection in Hodgkin's disease. Comparison of cytogenetic analysis, reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction, and P-80 immunostaining, *Blood* 87:284–291, 1996.

Langerak AW, Walvers-Tettero ILM, Van Dongen JJM: Detection of T cell receptor beta (TCRB) gene rearrangement patterns in T cell malignancies by Southern blot analysis, *Leukemia* 13:965–974, 1999.

Lanternier F, Cohen-Akenine A, Palmerini F, et al: Phenotypic and genotypic characteristics of mastocytosis according to the age of onset, *PLoS ONE* 3(4):e1906, 2008.

Larmonie NS, Dik WA, Meijerink JP, et al: Breakpoint sites disclose the role of the V(D)J recombination machinery in the formation of T-cell receptor (TCR) and non-TCR associated aberrations in T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Haematologica* 98:1173–1184, 2013.

Laurent C, Do C, Gascoyne RD, et al: Anaplastic lymphoma kinase-positive diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: A rare clinicopathologic entity with poor prognosis, *J Clin Oncol* 27:4211–4216, 2009.

Lawnicki LC, Rubocki RJ, Chan WC, et al: The distribution of gene segments in T-cell receptor gamma gene rearrangements demonstrates the need for multiple primer sets, *J Mol Diagn* 5:82–87, 2003.

Le Beau MM, Larson RA, Bitter MA, et al: Association of an inversion of chromosome 16 with abnormal marrow eosinophils in acute myelomonocytic leukemia. A unique cytogenetic-clinicopathological association, *N Engl J Med* 309:630–636, 1983.

Lee YK, Kim YR, Min HC, et al: Deletion of any part of the BCR or ABL gene on the derivative chromosome 9 is a poor prognostic marker in chronic myelogenous leukemia, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 166(1):65–73, 2006.

Lefebvre P: Molecular basis for designing selective modulators of retinoic acid receptor transcriptional activities, *Curr Drug Targets Immune Endocr Metabol Disord* 1(2):153–164, 2001.

Leich E, Salaverria I, Bea S, et al: Follicular lymphomas with and without translocation t(14;18) differ in gene expression profiles and genetic alterations, *Blood* 114: 826–834, 2009.

Levene AP, Morgan GJ, Davies FE: The use of genetic microarray analysis to classify and predict prognosis in haematological malignancies, *Clin Lab Haem* 25: 209–220, 2003.

Levine RL, Wadleigh M, Cools J, et al: Activating mutation in the tyrosine kinase JAK2 in polycythemia vera, essential thrombocythemia, and myeloid metaplasia with myelofibrosis, *Cancer Cell* 7:387–397, 2005.

Li Z-Y, Liu D-P, Liang C-C: New insight into the molecular mechanisms of MLL-associated leukemia, *Leukemia* 19:183–190, 2005.

Licht JD: Acute promyelocytic leukemia—Weapons of mass differentiation, *NEJM* 360:928–930, 2009.

Limon JJ, Fruman DA: Akt and mTOR in B cell activation and differentiation, *Front Immunol* 3:228, 2012.

Liu H, Bench AJ, Bacon CM, et al: A practical strategy for the routine use of BIOMED-2 PCR assays for detection of B- and T-cell clonality in diagnostic haematopathology, *Br J Haematol* 138:31–43, 2007.

Liu H, Cheng EH, Hsieh JJ: MLL fusions: Pathways to leukemia, *Cancer Biol Ther* 8(13):1204–1211, 2009.

Liu PP, Hajra A, Wijmenga C, et al: Molecular pathogenesis of the chromosome 16 inversion in the M4Eo subtype of acute myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 9:2289–2302, 1995.

Liu J, Johnson RM, Traweek ST: Rearrangement of the BCL-2 gene in follicular lymphoma: Detection by PCR in both fresh and fixed tissue samples, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 2:241–247, 1993.

Liu H, Ruskon-Fourmestraux A, Lavergne-Slove A, et al: Resistance of t(11;18) positive gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma to Helicobacter pylori eradication therapy, *Lancet* 357:39–40, 2001.

Liu S, Semenciw R, Mao Y: Increasing incidence of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma in Canada, 1970–1996: Age-period-cohort analysis, *Hematol Oncol* 21:57–66, 2003.

Liu H, Ye H, Ruskone-Fourmestraux A, et al: t(11;18) is a marker for all stage gastric MALT lymphomas that will not respond to H. pylori eradication, *Gastroenterology* 122:1286–1294, 2002.

Lo Coco F, De Santis S, Esposito A, et al: Molecular monitoring of hematologic malignancies: Current and future issues, *Sem Hematol* 39(Suppl 1):14–17, 2002.

Lo Coco F, Ammatuna E, Montesinos P, et al: Acute promyelocytic leukemia: Recent advances in diagnosis and management, *Semin Oncol* 35(4):401–409, 2008.

Lorsbach RB, Downing JR: The role of the AML1 transcription factor in leukemogenesis, *Int J Hematol* 74:258–265, 2001.

Lossos IS, Czerwinski DK, Alizadeh AA, et al: Prediction of survival in diffuse large-B-cell lymphoma based on the expression of six genes, *N Engl J Med* 350:1828–1837, 2004.

Love C, Sun Z, Jima D, et al: The genetic landscape of mutations in Burkitt lymphoma, *Nat Genet* 44(12): 1321–1325, 2012.

Lucas CM, Harris RJ, Giannoudis A, et al: Chronic myeloid leukemia patients with the e13a2 BCR-ABL fusion transcript have inferior responses to imatinib compared to patients with the e14a2 transcript, *Haematologica* 94(10):1362–1367, 2009.

Lugthart S, Groschel S, Beverloo HB, et al: Clinical, molecular, and prognostic significance of WHO type inv(3)(q21q26.2)/t(3;3)(q21;q26.2) and various other 3q abnormalities in acute myeloid leukemia, *J Clin Oncol* 28:3890–3898, 2010.

Macintyre EA, Delbesse E: Molecular approaches to the diagnosis and evaluation of lymphoid malignancies, *Sem Hematol* 36:373–389, 1999.

Man CH, Fung TK, Ho C, et al: Sorafenib treatment of FLT3-ITD(+) acute myeloid leukemia: Favorable initial outcome and mechanisms of subsequent nonresponsiveness associated with the emergence of a D835 mutation, *Blood* 119:5133–5143, 2012.

Mansour MR, Sulis ML, Duke V, et al: Prognostic implications of NOTCH1 and FBXW7 mutations in adults with T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia treated on the MRC UKALLXII/ECOG E2993 protocol, *J Clin Oncol* 27(26):4352–4356, 2009.

Mantadakis E, Samonis G, Kalmanti M: A comprehensive review of acute promyelocytic leukemia in children, *Acta Haematol* 119(2):73–82, 2008.

Marcucci G, Mrózek K, Bloomfield CD: Molecular heterogeneity and prognostic biomarkers in adults with acute myeloid leukemia and normal cytogenetics, *Curr Opin Hematol* 12:68–75, 2005.

Mark M, Ghyselinck NB, Chambon P: Function of retinoic acid receptors during embryonic development, *Nucl Recept Signal* 7:e002, 2009.

Martinelli G, Iacobucci I, Storlazzi CT, et al: IKZF1 (Ikaros) deletions in BCR-ABL1-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia are associated with short disease-free survival and high rate of cumulative incidence of relapse: A GIMEMA AL WP Report, *J Clin Oncol* 2009.

Maxson J, Gotlib J, Pollyea D, et al: Oncogenic CSF3R mutations in chronic neutrophilic leukemia and atypical CML, *N Engl J Med* 368:1781–1790, 2013.

McClure RF, Kaur P, Pagel E, et al: Validation of immunoglobulin gene rearrangement detection by PCR using commercially available BIOMED-2 primers, *Leukemia* 20:176–179, 2006.

McClure RF, Remstein ED, Macon WR, et al: Adult B-cell lymphomas with burkitt-like morphology are phenotypically and genotypically heterogeneous with aggressive clinical behavior, *Am J Surg Pathol* 29: 1652–1660, 2005.

McGonigle GJ, Lappin TR, Thompson A: Grappling with the HOX network in hematopoiesis and leukemia, *Front Biosci* 13:4297–4308, 2008.

McPherson JD: Next-generation gap, *Nat Methods* 6(Suppl 11):S2–S5, 2009.

Mead AJ, Linch DC, Hills RK, et al: FLT3 tyrosine kinase domain mutations are biologically distinct from and have a significantly more favorable prognosis than FLT3 internal tandem duplications in patients with acute myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 110:1262–1270, 2007.

Medeiros LJ, Carr J: Overview of the role of molecular methods in the diagnosis of malignant lymphomas, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 123:1189–1207, 1999.

Meissner B, Kridel R, Lim RS, et al: The E3 ubiquitin ligase UBR5 is recurrently mutated in mantle cell lymphoma, *Blood* 121:3161–3164, 2013.

Melnick A, Licht JD: Deconstructing a disease: RARα, its fusion partners, and their roles in the pathogenesis of acute promyelocytic leukemia, *Blood* 93:3167–3215, 1999.

Melo JV: The diversity of BCR-ABL fusion proteins and their relationship to leukemia phenotype, *Blood* 88: 2375–2384, 1996.

Merchant SH, Haines S, Hall B, et al: Fluorescence in-situ hybridization identifies cryptic t(16;16)(p13;q22) masked by del(q22) in a case of AML-M4Eo, *J Mol Diagn* 6:271–274, 2004.

Meshinchi S, Alonzo TA, Stirewalt DL, et al: Clinical implications of FLT3 mutations in pediatric AML, *Blood* 108(12):3654–3661, 2006.

Metcalfe DD: Mast cells and mastocytosis, *Blood* 112(4):946–956, 2008.

Meyer C, Kowarz E, Hofmann J, et al: New insights to the MLL recombinome of acute leukemias, *Leukemia* 23(8):1490–1499, 2009.

Meyer C, Marschalek R: LDI-PCR: Identification of known and unknown gene fusions of the human MLL gene, *Methods Mol Biol* 538:71–83, 2009.

Migliazza A, Martinotti S, Chen W, et al: Frequent somatic hypermutation of the 5′ noncoding region of the BCL6 gene in B-cell lymphoma, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 92:12520–12524, 1995.

Monma F, Nishii K, Shiga J, et al: Detection of the CBFB/MYH11 fusion gene in de novo acute myeloid leukemia (AML): A single-institution study of 224 Japanese AML patients, *Leuk Res* 31(4):471–476, 2007.

Monti S, Savage KJ, Kutok JL, et al: Molecular profiling of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma identifies robust subtypes including one characterized by host inflammatory response, *Blood* 105:1851–1861, 2005.

Moorman AV, Richards SM, Martineau M, et al: Outcome heterogeneity in childhood high-hyperdiploid acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 102:2756–2762, 2003.

Moreno I, Martin G, Bolufer P, et al: Incidence and prognostic value of FLT3 internal tandem duplication and D835 mutations in acute myeloid leukemia, *Haematologica* 88:19–24, 2003.

Moreno C, Montserrat E: New prognostic markers in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Blood Rev* 22:211–219, 2008.

Mori H, Colman SM, Xiao Z, et al: Chromosome translocations and covert leukemic clones are generated during normal fetal development, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 99:8242–8247, 2002.

Morin RD, Johnson NA, Severson TM, et al: Somatic mutations altering EZH2 (Tyr641) in follicular and diffuse large B-cell lymphomas of germinal-center origin, *Nat Genet* 42:181–185, 2010.

Morin RD, Mungall K, Pleasance E, et al: Mutational and structural analysis of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma using whole-genome sequencing, *Blood* 122(7): 1256–1265, 2013.

Morris SW, Kirstein MN, Valentine MB, et al: Fusion of a kinase gene, ALK, to a nucleolar protein gene, NPM, in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Science* 267:316–317, 1995.

Motegi M, Yonezumi M, Suzuki H, et al: API2-MALT1 chimeric transcripts involved in mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue type lymphoma predict heterogeneous products, *Am J Pathol* 156:807–812, 2000.

Mozos A, Royo C, Hartmann E, et al: SOX11 expression is highly specific for mantle cell lymphoma and identifies the cyclin D1-negative subtype, *Haematologica* 94:1555–1562, 2009.

Mrózek K, Marcucci G, Paschka P, et al: Advances in molecular genetics and treatment of core-binding factor acute myeloid leukemia, *Curr Opin Oncol* 20(6): 711–718, 2008.

Müller AM, Duque J, Shizuru JA, et al: Complementing mutations in core binding factor leukemias: From mouse models to clinical applications, *Oncogene* 27(44):5759–5773, 2008.

Mullighan CG: Molecular genetics of B-precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *J Clin Invest* 122:3407–3415, 2012.

Mullighan CG, Miller CB, Radtke I, et al: BCR-ABL1 lymphoblastic leukaemia is characterized by the deletion of Ikaros, *Nature* 453(7191):110–114, 2008.

Mullighan CG, Su X, Zhang J, et al: Deletion of IKZF1 and prognosis in acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 360(5):470–480, 2009.

Murga Penas EM, Hinz K, Roser K, et al: Translocations t(11;18)(q21;q21) and t(14;18)(q32;q21) are the main chromosomal abnormalities involving MLT/MALT1 in MALT lymphomas, *Leukemia* 17:2225–2229, 2003.

Nachman JB, Heerema NA, Sather H, et al: Outcome of treatment in children with hypodiploid acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 110(4):1112–1115, 2007.

Nakamura N, Nakamine H, Tamaru J, et al: The distinction between Burkitt lymphoma and diffuse large B-Cell lymphoma with c-myc rearrangement, *Mod Pathol* 15:771–776, 2002.

Nakao M, Yokota S, Horiike S, et al: Detection and quantification of TEL/AML1 fusion transcripts by polymerase chain reaction in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Leukemia* 10:1463, 1996a.

Nakao M, Yokota S, Iwai T, et al: Internal tandem duplication of the flt3 gene found in acute myeloid leukemia, *Leukemia* 10:1911–1918, 1996b.

Nangalia J, Massie CE, Baxter EJ, et al: Somatic CALR mutations in myeloproliferative neoplasms with nonmutated JAK2, *N Engl J Med* 369:2391–2405, 2013.

Neben K, Schnittger S, Brors B, et al: Distinct gene expression patterns associated with FLT3- and NRAS-activating mutations in acute myeloid leukemia with normal karyotype, *Oncogene* 24:1580–1588, 2005.

Neumann M, Heesch S, Gokbuget N, et al: Clinical and molecular characterization of early T-cell precursor leukemia: a high-risk subgroup in adult T-ALL with a high frequency of FLT3 mutations, *Blood Cancer J* 2:e55, 2012.

Nowell PC, Hungerford DA: A minute chromosome in human chronic granulocytic leukemia, *Science* 132: 1497, 1960.

Nussenzveig RH, Swierczek SI, Jelinek J, et al: Polycythemia vera is not initiated by JAK2V617F mutation, *Exp Hematol* 35:32.e31–32.e39, 2007.

Nyvold C, Madsen HO, Ryder LP, et al: Precise quantification of minimal residual disease at day 29 allows identification of children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia and an excellent outcome, *Blood* 99:1253–1258, 2002.

Obermann EC, Csato M, Dirnhofer S, et al: BCL2 gene aberration as an IPI-independent marker for poor outcome in non-germinal-centre diffuse large B cell lymphoma, *J Clin Pathol* 62:903–907, 2009a.

Obermann EC, Csato M, Dirnhofer S, et al: A. Aberrations of the MYC gene in unselected cases of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma are rare and unpredictable by morphological or immunohistochemical assessment, *J Clin Pathol* 62:754–756, 2009b.

O'Brien SG, Guilhot F, Larson RA, et al: Imatinib compared with interferon and low-dose cytarabine for newly diagnosed chronic-phase chonic myeloid leukemia, *N Eng J Med* 348:994–1004, 2003.

Ohno H: Pathogenetic and clinical implications of non-immunoglobulin: BCL6 translocations in B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *J Clin Exp Hematop* 46:43–53, 2006.

Ohno H: Pathogenetic role of BCL6 translocation in B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Histol Histopathol* 19:637–650, 2004.

Okumura AJ, Peterson LF, Okumura F, et al: t(8;21)(q22;q22) fusion proteins preferentially bind to duplicated AML1/RUNX1 DNA-binding sequences to differentially regulate gene expression, *Blood* 112: 1392–1401, 2008.

Olavarria E, Kanfer E, Szydlo R, et al: Early detection of BCR-ABL transcripts by quantitative reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction predicts outcome after allogeneic stem cell transplantation for chronic myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 97:1560–1565, 2001.

O'Leary M, Krailo M, Anderson JR, et al: Progress in childhood cancer: 50 years of research collaboration—A report from the Children's Oncology Group, *Semin Oncol* 35(5):484–493, 2008.

Olsen M, Madsen HO, Hjalgrim H, et al: Preleukemic TEL-AML1-positive clones at cell level of 10(-3) to 10(-4) do not persist into adulthood, *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 28(11):734–740, 2006.

Onizuka T, Moriyama M, Yamochi T, et al: BCL-6 gene product, a 92- to 98-kD nuclear phosphoprotein, is highly expressed in germinal center B cells and their neoplastic counterparts, *Blood* 86:28–37, 1995.

Orfao A, Garcia-Montero AC, Sanchez L, et al: Recent advances in the understanding of mastocytosis: The role of KIT mutations, *Br J Haematol* 138:12–30, 2007.

Ono R, Kumagai H, Nakajima H, et al: Mixed-lineage-leukemia (MLL) fusion protein collaborates with Ras to induce acute leukemia through aberrant Hox expression and Raf activation, *Leukemia* 23(12):2197–2209, 2009.

Oscier DG, Gardiner AC, Mould SJ, et al: Multivariate analysis of prognostic factors in CLL: Clinical stage, IGVH gene mutational status, and loss or mutation of the p53 gene are independent prognostic factors, *Blood* 100:1177–1184, 2002.

Ou J, Vergilio JA, Bagg A: Molecular diagnosis and monitoring in the clinical management of patients with chronic myelogenous leukemia treated with tyrosine kinase inhibitors, *Am J Hematol* 83(4):296–302, 2008.

Pallisgaard N, Hokland P, Riishoj DC, et al: Multiplex reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction for simultaneous screening of 29 translocations and chromosomal aberrations in acute leukemia, *Blood* 92:574–588, 1998.

Pancrazzi A, Guglielmelli P, Ponziani V, et al: A sensitive detection method for MPLW515L or MPLW515K mutation in chronic myeloproliferative disorders with locked nucleic acid-modified probes and real-time polymerase chain reaction, *J Mol Diagn* 10(5):435–441, 2008.

Papaemmanuil E, Hosking FJ, Vijayakrishnan J, et al: Loci on 7p12.2, 10q21.2 and 14q11.2 are associated with risk of childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Nat Genet* 41(9):1006–1010, 2009.

Pardanani A, Brockman SR, Paternoster SF, et al: FIP1L1-PDGFRA fusion: Prevalence and clinicopathologic correlates in 89 consecutive patients with moderate to severe eosinophilia, *Blood* 104:3038–3045, 2004.

Pardanani A, Fridley BL, Lasho TL, et al: Host genetic variation contributes to phenotypic diversity in myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood* 111(5):2785–2789, 2008.

Pardanani A, Ketterling RP, Brockman SR, et al: CHIC2 deletion, a surrogate for FIP1L1-PDGFRA fusion, occurs in systemic mastocytosis associated with eosinophilia and predicts response to imatinib therapy, *Blood* 102:3093–3096, 2003.

Park MJ, Taki T, Oda M, et al: FBXW7 and NOTCH1 mutations in childhood T cell acute lymphoblastic leukaemia and T cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma, *Br J Haematol* 145(2):198–206, 2009.

Parmar A, Marz S, Rushton S, et al: Stromal niche cells protect early leukemic FLT3-ITD+ progenitor cells against first-generation FLT3 tyrosine kinase inhibitors, *Cancer Res* 71:4696–4706, 2011.

Paschka P: Core binding factor acute myeloid leukemia, *Semin Oncol* 35(4):410–417, 2008.

Paschka P, Du J, Schlenk RF, et al: Secondary genetic lesions in acute myeloid leukemia with inv(16) or t(16;16): A study of the German-Austrian AML Study Group (AMLSG), *Blood* 121:170–177, 2012.

Paschka P, Marcucci G, Ruppert AS, et al: Adverse prognostic significance of KIT mutations in adult acute myeloid leukemia with inv(16) and t(8;21): A Cancer and Leukemia Group B Study, *J Clin Oncol* 24(24): 3904–3911, 2006.

Pasqualucci L: The genetic basis of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Curr Opin Hematol* 20:336–344, 2013.

Pasqualucci L, Bhagat G, Jankvoic M, et al: AID is required for germinal center-derived lymphomagenesis, *Nat Genetics* 40:108–112, 2008.

Pasqualucci L, Migliazza A, Basso K, et al: Mutations of the BCL6 proto-oncogene disrupt its negative autoregulation in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Blood* 101:2914–2923, 2003.

Pasqualucci L, Trifonov V, Fabbri G, et al: Analysis of the coding genome of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Nat Genet* 43(9):830–837, 2011.

Passamonti F, Caramazza D, Maffioli M, et al: JAK inhibitor in CALR-mutant myelofibrosis, *N Engl J Med* 370:1168–1169, 2014.

Patel JP, Gonen M, Figueroa ME, et al: Prognostic relevance of integrated genetic profiling in acute myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 366:1079–1089, 2012.

Patel A, Kang SH, Lennon PA, et al: Validation of a targeted DNA microarray for the clinical evaluation of recurrent abnormalities in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Am J Hematol* 83(7):540–546, 2008.

Paulsson K, Jonson T, Ora I, et al: Characterisation of genomic translocation breakpoints and identification of an alternative TCF3/PBX1 fusion transcript in t(1;19)(q23;p13)-positive acute lymphoblastic leukaemias, *Br J Haematol* 138(2):196–201, 2007.

Pavlovsky C, Kantarjian H, Cortes JE: First-line therapy for chronic myeloid leukemia: Past, present, and future, *Am J Hematol* 84(5):287–293, 2009.

Pedro Jares EC: Advances in the understanding of mantle cell lymphoma, *British J Hematol* 142:149–165, 2008.

Pekarsky Y, Hallas C, Croce CM: The role of TCL1 in human T-cell leukemia, *Oncogene* 20:5638–5643, 2001.

Peterson LF, Boyapati A, Ahn EY, et al: Acute myeloid leukemia with the 8q22;21q22 translocation: Secondary mutational events and alternative t(8;21) transcripts, *Blood* 110(3):799–805, 2007.

Pfeifer AC, Timmer J, Klingmüller U: Systems biology of JAK/STAT signalling, *Essays Biochem* 45:109–120, 2008.

Phan RT, Dalla-Favera R: The BCL6 proto-oncogene suppresses p53 expression in germinal center B cells, *Nature* 432:635–639, 2004.

Pietra D, Li S, Brisci A, et al: Somatic mutations of JAK2 exon 12 in patients with JAK2 (V617F)-negative myeloproliferative disorders, *Blood* 111(3):1686–1689, 2008. [Epub 2007 Nov 5].

Pikman Y, Lee BH, Mercher T, et al: MPLW515L is a novel somatic activating mutation in myelofibrosis with myeloid metaplasia, *PLoS Med* 3:e270, 2006.
Pinyol M, Campo E, Nadal A: Detection of the bcl-1 rearrangement at the major translocation cluster in frozen and paraffin-embedded tissues of mantle cell lymphomas by polymerase chain reaction, *Am J Clin Pathol* 105:532–537, 1996.
Pittaluga S, Ayoubi TAY, Wlodarska I, et al: BCL-6 expression in reactive lymphoid tissue and in B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, *J Pathol* 179:145–150, 1996.
Poetsch M, Weber-Matthison K, Plendl JJ, et al: Detection of the t(14;18) chromosomal translocation by interphase cytogenetics with yeast-artificial-chromosome probes in follicular lymphoma and nonneoplastic lymphoproliferation, *J Clin Oncol* 1996(14):963–969, 1996.
Polo JM, Dell'oso T, Ranuncolo SM, et al: Specific peptide interference reveals BCL6 transcriptional and oncogenic mechanisms in B-cell lymphoma cells, *Nat Med* 10:1329–1335, 2004.
Pombo-de-Oliveira MS, Koifman S: Infant acute leukemia and maternal exposures during pregnancy, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 15(12):2336–2341, 2006.
Pozdnyakova O, Miron PM, Tang G, et al: Cytogenetic abnormalities in a series of 1,029 patients with primary myelodysplastic syndromes: A report from the US with a focus on some undefined single chromosomal abnormalities, *Cancer* 113:3331–3340, 2008.
Pratcorona M, Abbas S, Sanders MA, et al: Acquired mutations in ASXL1 in acute myeloid leukemia: prevalence and prognostic value, *Haematologica* 97:388–392, 2012.
Press RD, Willis SG, Laudadio J, et al: Determining the rise in BCR-ABL RNA that optimally predicts a kinase domain mutation in patients with chronic myeloid leukemia on imatinib, *Blood* 114(13):2598–2605, 2009.
Prima V, Hunger SP: Cooperative transformation by MEF2D/DAZAP1 and DAZAP1/MEF2D fusion proteins generated by the variant t(1;19) in acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Leukemia* 21(12):2470–2475, 2007.
Privitera E, Kamps MP, Hayashi Y, et al: Different molecular consequences of the 1;19 chomosomal translocation in childhood B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 79:1781–1788, 1992.
Pui CH: T cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia: NOTCHing the way toward a better treatment outcome, *Cancer Cell* 15(2):85–87, 2009.
Pui C-H, Chessels JM, Camitta B, et al: Clinical heterogeneity in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia with 11q23 rearrangements, *Leukemia* 17:700–706, 2003.
Pui C-H, Relling MV, Downing JD: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 350:1535–1548, 2004.
Pui CH, Robison LL, Look AT: Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, *Lancet* 371(9617):1030–1043, 2008.
Quignon F, De Bels F, Koken M, et al: PML induces a novel caspase-independent death process, *Nat Genet* 20:259–265, 1998.
Quintás-Cardama A, Cortes J: Therapeutic options against BCR-ABL1 T315I-positive chronic myelogenous leukemia, *Clin Cancer Res* 14(14):4392–4399, 2008.
Quintás-Cardama A, Cortes J: Molecular biology of bcr-abl1-positive chronic myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 113(8):1619–1630, 2009.
Quintás-Cardama A, Gibbons DL, Kantarjian H, et al: Sequencing of subcloned PCR products facilitates earlier detection of BCR-ABL1(T315I) and other mutants compared to direct sequencing of the ABL1 kinase domain, *Leukemia* 22(4):885–888, 2008.
Radich JP, Gooley T, Bryant E, et al: The significance of bcr-abl molecular detection in chronic myeloid leukemia patients "late," 18 months or more after transplantation, *Blood* 98:1701–1707, 2001.
Raghavan SC, Swanson PC, Wu X, et al: A non-B-DNA structure at the Bcl-2 major breakpoint region is cleaved by the RAG complex, *Nature* 428:88–93, 2004.
Ramsay AJ, Rodríguez D, Villamor N, et al: Frequent somatic mutations in components of the RNA processing machinery in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Leukemia* 27:1600–1603, 2013.
Ranuncolo SM, Polo JM, Dierov J, et al: Bcl-6 mediates the germinal center B cell phenotype and lymphomagenesis through transcriptional repression of the DNA-damage sensor ATR, *Nat Immunol* 8:705–714, 2007.
Rapado I, Grande S, Albizua E, et al: High resolution melting analysis for JAK2 Exon 14 and Exon 12 mutations: A diagnostic tool for myeloproliferative neoplasms, *J Mol Diagn* 11(2):155–161, 2009.
Rawlings DJ, Schwartz MA, Jackson SW, et al: Integration of B cell responses through Toll-like receptors and antigen receptors, *Nat Rev Immunol* 12(4):282–294, 2012.
Raynaud SD, Cave H, Baens M, et al: The 12;21 translocation involving TEL and deletion of the other TEL allele: Two frequently associated alterations found in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 87:2891–2899, 1996.
Rázga F, Dvoráková D, Jurcek T, et al: CEBPA gene mutational status: A complete screening using high-resolution melt curve analysis, *Mol Diagn Ther* 13(3):195–200, 2009.
Redner RL: Variations on a theme: The alternate translocations in APL, *Leukemia* 16(10):1927–1932, 2002.
Redon R, Ishikawa S, Fitch KR, et al: Global variation in copy number in the human genome, *Nature* 444(7118):444–454, 2006.
Reed JC: Bcl-2-family proteins and hematologic malignancies: History and future prospects, *Blood* 111:3322–3330, 2008.
Reineke EL, Kao HY: Targeting promyelocytic leukemia protein: A means to regulating PML nuclear bodies, *Int J Biol Sci* 5(4):366–376, 2009.
Reiter A, Saussele S, Grimwade D, et al: Genomic anatomy of the specific reciprocal translocation t(15;17) in acute promyelocytic leukemia, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 36(2):175–188, 2003.
Remstein ED, Dogan A, Einerson RR, et al: The incidence and anatomic site specificity of chromosomal translocations in primary extranodal marginal zone B-cell lymphoma of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT lymphoma) in North America, *Am J Surg Pathol* 30:1546–1553, 2006.
Remstein ED, James CD, Kurtin PJ: Incidence and subtype specificity of API2-MALT1 fusion translocations in extranodal, nodal, and splenic marginal zone lymphomas, *Am J Pathol* 156:1183–1188, 2000a.
Remstein ED, Kurtin PJ, Buno I, et al: Diagnostic utility of fluorescence in situ hybridization in mantle-cell lymphoma, *Br J Haematol* 110:856–862, 2000b.
Remstein ED, Kurtin PJ, Einerson RR, et al: Primary pulmonary MALT lymphomas show frequent and heterogeneous cytogenetic abnormalities, including aneuplolidy and translocations involving API2 and MALT1 and IGH and MALT1, *Leukemia* 18:156–160, 2004.
Renneville A, Boissel N, Gachard N, et al: The favorable impact of CEBPA mutations in patients with acute myeloid leukemia is only observed in the absence of associated cytogenetic abnormalities and FLT3 internal duplication, *Blood* 113(21):5090–5093, 2009a.
Renneville A, Mialou V, Philippe N, et al: Another pedigree with familial acute myeloid leukemia and germline CEBPA mutation, *Leukemia* 23(4):804–806, 2009b.
Ribera JM, Oriol A, González M, et al: Concurrent intensive chemotherapy and imatinib before and after stem cell transplantation in newly diagnosed Philadelphia chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Final results of the CSTIBES02 trial, *Haematologica* 2009.
Richter J, Schlesner M, Hoffmann S, et al: Recurrent mutation of the ID3 gene in Burkitt lymphoma identified by integrated genome, exome and transcriptome sequencing, *Nat Genet* 44(12):1316–1320, 2012.
Robbiani DF, Bothmer A, Callen E, et al: AID is required for the chromosomal breaks in c-myc that lead to c-myc/IgH translocations, *Cell* 135:1028–1038, 2008.
Roberts KG, Li Y, Payne-Turner D, et al: Targetable kinase-activating lesions in Ph-like acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 371:1005–1015, 2014.
Roix JJ, McQueen PG, Munson PJ, et al: Spatial proximity of translocation-prone gene loci in human lymphomas, *Nat Genet* 34:287–291, 2003.
Romana SP, Mauchauffe M, Le Coniat M, et al: The t(12;21) of acute lymphoblastic leukemia results in a TEL-AML1 gene fusion, *Blood* 85:3662–3670, 1995.
Rosenwald A, Alizadeh AA, Widhopf G, et al: Relation of gene expression phenotype to immunoglobulin mutation genotype in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *J Exp Med* 194:1639–1647, 2001.
Rosenwald A, Ott G, Stilgenbauer S, et al: Exclusive detection of the t(11;18)(q21;q21) in extranodal marginal zone B cell lymphomas (MZBL) of MALT type in contrast to other MZBL and extranodal large B cell lymphomas, *Am J Pathol* 155:1817–1821, 1999.
Rosenwald A, Wright G, Chan WC, et al: The use of molecular profiling to predict survival after chemotherapy for diffuse large-B-cell lymphoma, *N Engl J Med* 346:1937–1947, 2002.
Rosenwald A, Wright G, Wiestner A, et al: The proliferation gene expression signature is a quantitative integrator of oncogenic events that predicts survival in mantle cell lymphoma, *Cancer Cell* 3:185–3197, 2003.
Ross JA: Environmental and genetic susceptibility to MLL-defined infant leukemia, *J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr* 39:83–86, 2008.
Rossi D, Cerri M, Deambrogi C, et al: The prognostic value of TP53 mutations in chronic lymphocytic leukemia is independent of Del17p13: Implications for overall survival and chemorefractoriness, *Clin Cancer Res* 15:995–1004, 2009.
Rossi D, Deaglio S, Dominguez-Sola D, et al: Alteration of BIRC3 and multiple other NF-kappaB pathway genes in splenic marginal zone lymphoma, *Blood* 118(18):4930–4934, 2011.
Rossi D, Rasi S, Fabbri G, et al: Mutations of NOTCH1 are an independent predictor of survival in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Blood* 119:521–529, 2012a.
Rossi D, Trifonov V, Fangazio M, et al: The coding genome of splenic marginal zone lymphoma: Activation of NOTCH2 and other pathways regulating marginal zone development, *J Exp Med* 209(9):1537–1551, 2012b.
Rossi D, Rasi S, Spina V, et al: Integrated mutational and cytogenetic analysis identifies new prognostic subgroups in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Blood* 121:1403–1412, 2013.
Rotunno G, Mannarelli C, Guglielmelli P, et al: Impact of calreticulin mutations on clinical and hematological phenotype and outcome in essential thrombocythemia, *Blood* 123:1552–1555, 2014.
Rowley JD: A new consistent chromosomal abnormality in chronic myelogenous leukaemia identified by quinacrine fluorescence and Giemsa staining, *Nature* 243:290–293, 1973.
Rubnitz JE, Downing JR, Pui CH, et al: TEL gene rearrangement in acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A new genetic marker with prognostic significance, *J Clin Oncol* 15:1150–1157, 1997a.
Rubnitz JE, Behm FG, Pui CH, et al: Genetic studies of childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia with emphasis on p16, MLL, and ETV6 gene abnormalities: results of St Jude Total Therapy Study XII, *Leukemia* 11:1201–1206, 1997b.
Saglio G, Pane F, Gottardi E, et al: Consistent amounts of acute leukemia-associated P190BCR/ABL transcripts are expressed by chronic myelogenous leukemia patients at diagnosis, *Blood* 87:1075–1080, 1996.
Sainty D, Liso V, Cantu-Rajnoldi A, et al: A new morphological classification system for acute promyelocytic leukemia distinguishes cases with underlying PLZF-RARA rearrangements, *Blood* 96:1287–1296, 2000.
Saito M, Gao J, Basso K, et al: A signaling pathway mediating downregulation of BCL6 in germinal center B cells is blocked by BCL6 gene alterations in B cell lymphoma, *Cancer Cell* 12:280–292, 2007.
Salido M, Baro C, Oscier D, et al: Cytogenetic aberrations and their prognostic value in a series of 330 splenic marginal zone B-cell lymphomas: A multicenter study of the Splenic B-Cell Lymphoma Group, *Blood* 116(9):1479–1488, 2010.
Samaha H, Dumontel C, Ketterer N, et al: Mantle cell lymphoma: A retrospective study of 121 cases, *Leukemia* 12:1281–1287, 1998.
Sanchez-Izquierdo D, Buchonnet G, Siebert R, et al: MALT1 is deregulated by both chromosomal translocation and amplification in B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma, *Blood* 101:4539–4546, 2003.
Santamaria C, Chillon MC, Fernandez C, et al: Using quantification of the PML-RARα transcript to stratify the risk of relapse in patients with acute promyelocytic leukemia, *Haematologica* 92:315–322, 2007.
Sanz MA, Grimwade D, Tallman MS, et al: Management of acute promyelocytic leukemia: Recommendations from an expert panel on behalf of the European LeukemiaNet, *Blood* 113(9):1875–1891, 2009.
Sargent R, Jones D, Abruzzo LV, et al: Customized oligonucleotide array-based comparative genomic

hybridization as a clinical assay for genomic profiling of chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *J Mol Diagn* 11(1): 25–34, 2009.
Sarris AH, Luthra R, Cabanillas F, et al: Genomic DNA amplification and the detection of t(2;5)(p23;q35) in lymphoid neoplasms, *Leuk Lymphoma* 29:507–514, 1998.
Saueracker EA, Kay PH, Spagnolo DV: Distinguishing between monoclonal rearrangements and allelic forms of the immunoglobulin lambda light chain constant region genes: Significance in the diagnosis of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 1:109–117, 1992.
Savage KJ, Harris NL, Vose JM, et al: ALK- anaplastic large-cell lymphoma is clinically and immunophenotypically different from both ALK+ ALCL and peripheral T-cell lymphoma, not otherwise specified: report from the International Peripheral T-Cell Lymphoma Project, *Blood* 111:5496–5504, 2008.
Savage KJ, Johnson NA, Ben-Neriah S, et al: MYC gene rearrangements are associated with a poor prognosis in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma patients treated with R-CHOP chemotherapy, *Blood* 114(17):3533–3537, 2009. [Epub 2009 Aug 24].
Schindler JW, Van Buren D, Foudi A, et al: TEL-AML1 corrupts hematopoietic stem cells to persist in the bone marrow and initiate leukemia, *Cell Stem Cell* 5(1):43–53, 2009.
Schlenk RF, Döhner K, Kneba M, et al: Gene mutations and response to treatment with all-trans retinoic acid in elderly patients with acute myeloid leukemia. Results from the AMLSG Trial AML HD98B, *Haematologica* 94(1):54–60, 2009.
Schlenk RF, Döhner K, Krauter J, et al: Mutations and treatment outcome in cytogenetically normal acute myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 358(18):1909–1918, 2008.
Schnittger S, Bacher U, Haferlach C, et al: Rare CBFB-MYH11 fusion transcripts in AML with inv(16)/t(16;16) are associated with therapy-related AML M4eo, atypical cytomorphology, atypical immunophenotype, atypical additional chromosomal rearrangements and low white blood cell count: a study on 162 patients, *Leukemia* 21(4):725–731, 2007.
Schnittger S, Schoch C, Dugas M, et al: Analysis of FLT3 length mutations in 1003 patients with acute myeloid leukemia: Correlation to cytogenetics, FAB subtype, and prognosis in the AMLCG study and usefulness as a marker for the detection of minimal residual disease, *Blood* 100:59–66, 2002.
Schultz KR, Pullen DJ, Sather HN, et al: Risk- and response-based classification of childhood B-precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A combined analysis of prognostic markers from the Pediatric Oncology Group (POG) and Children's Cancer Group (CCG), *Blood* 109(3):926–935, 2007.
Schwartz PA, Murray BW: Protein kinase biochemistry and drug discovery, *Bioorg Chem* 39:192–210, 2011.
Scott LM, Tong W, Levine RL, et al: JAK2 Exon 12 mutations in polycythemia vera and idiopathic erythrocytosis, *N Engl J Med* 356:459–468, 2007.
Seeger K, Adams HP, Buchwald D, et al: TEL-AML1 fusion transcript in relapsed childhood actue lymphoblastic leukemia. The Berlin-Frankfurt-Munster Study Group, *Blood* 91:1716–1722, 1998.
Seiler T, Dohner H, Stilgenbauer S: Risk stratification in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Semin Oncol* 33:186–194, 2006.
Shabbir M, Stuart R: Lestaurtinib, a multitargeted tyrosine kinase inhibitor: From bench to bedside, *Expert Opin Investig Drugs* 19:427–436, 2010.
Shen HM, Peters A, Baron B, et al: Mutation of BCL-6 gene in normal B cells by the process of somatic hypermutation of Ig genes, *Science* 280:1750, 1998.
Sherr CJ: The Pezcoller lecture: cancer cell cycles revisited, *Cancer Res* 60:3689–3695, 2000.
Shi JQ, Lasky K, Shinde V, et al: MLN0905, a small-molecule plk1 inhibitor, induces antitumor responses in human models of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Mol Cancer Ther* 11:2045–2053, 2012.
Shigesada K, Van de Sluis B, Liu PP: Mechanism of leukemogenesis by the inv(16) chimeric gene CBFB//PEBP2B-MHY11, *Oncogene* 23:4297–4307, 2004.
Shipp MA, Ross KN, Tamayo P, et al: Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma outcome prediction by gene-expression profiling and supervised machine learning, *Nat Med* 8:68–74, 2002.
Shurtleff SA, Buijs A, Behm FG, et al: TEL/AML1 fusion resulting from a cryptic t(12;21) is the most common genetic lesion in pediatric ALL and defines a subgroup of patients with an excellent prognosis, *Leukemia* 9:1985, 1995.
Shustik J, Han G, Farinha P, et al: Outcome correlations of BCL6 rearrangement in diffuse large B cell lymphoma treated with CHOP or R-CHOP, *Haematologica* 2009. doi: 10.3324/haematol.2009.007203. Epub.
Silverman LB: Acute lymphoblastic leukemia in infancy, *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 49(Suppl 7):1070–1073, 2007.
Sim SP, Liu LF: Nucleolytic cleavage region during apoptosis, *J Biol Chem* 276:31590–31595, 2001.
Sinclair PB, Nacheva EP, Leversha N, et al: Large deletions at the t(9;22) breakpoint are common and may identify a poor-prognosis subgroup of patients with chronic myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 95:738–744, 2000.
Small D: Targeting FLT3 for the treatment of leukemia, *Semin Hematol* 45(3 Suppl 2):S17–S21, 2008.
Snuderl M, Kolman OK, Chen Y-B, et al: B-cell lymphomas with concurrent IGH-BCL2 and MYC rearrangements are aggressive neoplasms with clinical and pathologic features distinct from Burkitt lymphoma and diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Am J Surg Pathol* 34(3):327–340, 2010.
Soshnikova N, Duboule D: Epigenetic regulation of Hox gene activation: The waltz of methyls, *Bioessays* 30(3):199–202, 2008.
Soverini S, Colarossi S, Gnani A, et al: Contribution of ABL kinase domain mutations to imatinib resistance in different subsets of Philadelphia-positive patients: By the GIMEMA Working Party on Chronic Myeloid Leukemia, *Clin Cancer Res* 12(24):7374–7379, 2006.
Speck NA, Stacy T, Wang Q, et al: Core-binding factor: A central player in hematopoiesis and leukemia, *Cancer Res* 59(Suppl):1789s–1793s, 1999.
Spector LG, Xie Y, Robison LL, et al: Maternal diet and infant leukemia: The DNA topoisomerase II inhibitor hypothesis—A report from the children's oncology group, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 14(3):651–655, 2005.
Steidl C, Shah SP, Woolcock BW, et al: MHC class II transactivator CIITA is a recurrent gene fusion partner in lymphoid cancers, *Nature* 471:377–381, 2011.
Stein H, Foss H-D, Dürkopp H, et al: CD30+ anaplastic large cell lymphoma: A review of its histopathologic, genetic and clinical features, *Blood* 96:3681–3695, 2000.
Stirewalt DL, Radich JP: The role of FLT3 in haematopoietic malignancies, *Nature Rev Cancer* 3:650–665, 2003.
Stissel-Broeker PL, Super HG, Thirman MJ, et al: Distribution of 11q23 breakpoints within the MLL breakpoints cluster region in de novo acute leukemia and in treatment-related acute myeloid leukemia: Correlation with a scaffold attachment regions and topoisomerase II consensus binding sites, *Blood* 87: 1912, 1996.
Stover EH, Chen J, Folens C, et al: Activation of FIP1L1-PDGFRalpha requires disruption of the juxtamembrane domain of PDGFRalpha and is FIP1L1-independent, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 103(21): 8078–8083, 2006.
Streubel B, Lamprecht A, Dierlamm J, et al: T(14;18)(q32;q21) involving IGH and MALT1 is a frequent chromosomal aberration in MALT lymphoma, *Blood* 101:2335–2339, 2003.
Streubel B, Simonitsch-Klupp I, Mullauer L, et al: Variable frequencies of MALT lymphoma-associated genetic aberrations in MALT lymphomas of different sites, *Leukemia* 18:1722–1726, 2004.
Streubel B, Vinatzer U, Lamprecht A, et al: T(3;14)(p14.1;q32) involving IGH and FOXP1 is a novel recurrent chromosomal aberration in MALT lymphoma, *Leukemia* 19:652–658, 2005.
Strudwick S, Borden KL: Finding a role for PML in APL pathogenesis: A critical assessment of potential PML activities, *Leukemia* 16(10):1906–1917, 2002.
Sutcliffe MJ, Shuster JJ, Sather HN, et al: High concordance from independent studies by the Children's Cancer Group (CCG) and Pediatric Oncology Group (POG) associating favorable prognosis with combined trisomies 4, 10, and 17 in children with NCI Standard-Risk B-precursor Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia: A Children's Oncology Group (COG) initiative, *Leukemia* 19(5):734–740, 2005.
Swerdlow SH, Campo E, Harris NL, et al: *WHO classification of tumours of hematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, Lyon, France, 2008, IARC Press.
Szczepanski T: Why and how to quantify minimal residual disease in acute lymphoblastic leukemia? *Leukemia* 21:622–626, 2007.
Szczepanski T, Flohr T, Van der Velden VH, et al: Molecular monitoring of residual disease using antigen receptor genes in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, *Best Pract Res Clin Haematol* 15:37–57, 2002.
Tabbó F, Barreca A, Piva R, et al; European T-Cell Lymphoma Study Group: ALK signaling and target therapy in anaplastic large cell lymphoma, *Front Oncol* 2:41, 2012.
Takeuchi K, Soda M, Togashi Y, et al: Identification of a novel fusion, SQSTM1-ALK, in ALK-positive large B-cell lymphoma, *Haematologica* 96:464–467, 2011.
Tallman MS, Andersen JW, Schiffer CA, et al: All-trans-retinoic acid in acute promyelocytic leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 337:1021–1028, 1997.
Tallman MS, Nabhan C, Feusner JH, et al: Acute promyelocytic leukemia: Evolving therapeutic strategies, *Blood* 99:759–767, 2002.
Taskesen E, Bullinger L, Corbacioglu A, et al: Prognostic impact, concurrent genetic mutations, and gene expression features of AML with CEBPA mutations in a cohort of 1182 cytogenetically normal AML patients: Further evidence for CEBPA double mutant AML as a distinctive disease entity, *Blood* 117:2469–2475, 2011.
Taub JW, Ge Y: The prenatal origin of childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Leuk Lymphoma* 45(1):19–25, 2004.
Tefferi A: JAK and MPL mutations in myeloid malignancies, *Leuk Lymphoma* 49(3):388–397, 2008.
Tefferi A, Guglielmelli P, Larson DR, et al: Long-term survival and blast transformation in molecularly annotated essential thrombocythemia, polycythemia vera, and myelofibrosis, *Blood* 124:2507–2513, 2014.
ten Bosch JR, Grody WW: Keeping up with the next generation: massively parallel sequencing in clinical diagnostics, *J Mol Diagn* 10(6):484–492, 2008.
Thiede C, Steudel C, Mohr B, et al: Analysis of FLT3-activating mutations in 979 patients with acute myelogenous leukemia: Association with FAB subtypes and identification of subgroups with poor prognosis, *Blood* 99:4326–4335, 2002.
Thomazy VA, Luthra R, Uthman MO, et al: Determination of cyclin D1 and CD20 mRNA levels by real-time quantitative RT-PCR from archival tissue sections of mantle cell lymphoma and other non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, *J Mol Diagn* 4:201–208, 2002.
Tiacci E, Trifonov V, Schiavoni G, et al: BRAF mutations in hairy-cell leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 364:2305–2315, 2011.
Tobin G, Rosenquist R: Prognostic usage of V(H) gene mutation status and its surrogate markers and the role of antigen selection in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Med Oncol* 22:217–228, 2005.
Treon SP, Xu L, Yang G, et al: MYD88 L265P somatic mutation in Waldenström macroglobulinemia, *N Engl J Med* 367:826–833, 2012.
Tsou MF, Stearns T: Controlling centrosome number: Licenses and blocks, *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 18(1):74–78, 2006.
Tsuzuki S, Karnan S, Horibe K, et al: Genetic abnormalities involved in t(12;21) TEL-AML1 acute lymphoblastic leukemia: Analysis by means of array-based comparative genomic hybridization, *Cancer Sci* 98(5): 698–706, 2007.
Tucker T, Marra M, Friedman JM: Massively parallel sequencing: The next big thing in genetic medicine, *Am J Hum Genet* 85(2):142–154, 2009.
Vahdat L, Maslak P, Miller WH Jr, et al: Early mortality and the retinoic acid syndrome in acute promyelocytic leukemia: Impact of leukocytosis, low-dose chemotherapy, PMN/RARα isoform, and CD13 expression in patients treated with all-trans retinoic acid, *Blood* 84:3843, 1994.
Van der Burg M, Smit B, Brinkhof B, et al: A single split-signal FISH probe set allows detection of TAL1 translocations as well as SIL-TAL1 fusion genes in a single test, *Leukemia* 16(4):755–761, 2002.
Van der Velden VH, Cazzaniga G, Schrauder A, et al: Analysis of minimal residual disease by Ig/TCR gene rearrangements: Guidelines for interpretation of real-time quantitative PCR data, *Leukemia* 21:604–611, 2007.

Van der Velden VHJ, Hochhaus A, Cazzaniga G, et al: Detection of minimal residual disease in hematologic malignancies by real-time quantitative PCR: Principles, approaches, and laboratory aspects, *Leukemia* 17:1013–1034, 2003.
Van Dongen JJM, Seriu T, Panzer-Grumayer ER, et al: Prognostic value of minimal residual disease in acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in childhood, *Lancet* 352: 1731–1738, 1998.
Van Krieken JH, Langerak AW, Macintyre EA, et al: Improved reliability of lymphoma diagnostics via PCR-based clonality testing: Report of the BIOMED-2 Concerted Action BHM4-CT98-3936, *Leukemia* 21:201–206, 2007.
Vannucchi AM, Antonioli E, Guglielmelli P, et al: Clinical correlates of JAK2V617F presence or allele burden in myeloproliferative neoplasms: A critical reappraisal, *Leukemia* 22(7):1299–1307, 2008.
Van Rhee F, Hochhaus A, Lin F, et al: p190 BCR-ABL mRNA is expressed at low levels in p210-positive chronic myeloid and acute lymphoblastic leukemias, *Blood* 87:5213–5217, 1996.
Vardiman JW, Thiele J, Arber DA, et al: The 2008 revision of the World Health Organization (WHO) classification of myeloid neoplasms and acute leukemia: Rationale and important changes, *Blood* 114:937–951, 2009.
Vaz de Campos MG, Montesano FT, et al: Clinical implications of der(9q) deletions detected through dual-fusion fluorescence in situ hybridization in patients with chronic myeloid leukemia, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 178(1):49–56, 2007.
Vega F, Medeiros J: Chromosomal translocations involved in non-Hodgkin lymphomas, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 127:1148–1160, 2003.
Vega-Ruiz A, Cortes JE, Sever M, et al: Phase II study of imatinib mesylate as therapy for patients with systemic mastocytosis, *Leuk Res* 33(11):1481–1484, 2009. [Epub 2009 Feb 3].
Vendôme J, Letard S, Martin F, et al: Molecular modeling of wild-type and D816V c-Kit inhibition based on ATP-competitive binding of ellipticine derivatives to tyrosine kinases, *J Med Chem* 48(20):6194–6201, 2005.
Viswanatha DS, Chen IM, Liu PP, et al: Characterization and use of an antibody detecting the CBFB/SMMHC fusion protein in inv 16/t(16;16)-associated acute myeloid leukemias, *Blood* 91:1882–1890, 1998.
Von Goessel H, Jacobs U, Semper S, et al: Cluster analysis of genomic ETV6-RUNX1 (TEL-AML1) fusion sites in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Leuk Res* 33(8):1082–1088, 2009.
Vrooman LM, Silverman LB: Childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia: Update on prognostic factors, *Curr Opin Pediatr* 21(1):1–8, 2009.
Wang P, Lin C, Smith ER, et al: Global analysis of H3K4 methylation defines MLL family member targets and points to a role for MLL1-mediated H3K4 methylation in the regulation of transcriptional initiation by RNA polymerase II, *Mol Cell Biol* 29(22):6074–6085, 2009.
Wang ZG, Ruggero D, Ronchetti S, et al: Pml is essential for multiple apoptotic pathways, *Nat Genet* 20: 266–272, 1998.
Wang YL, Vandris K, Jones A, et al: JAK2 Mutations are present in all cases of polycythemia vera, *Leukemia* 22(6):1289, 2008.
Waring PM, Cleary ML: Disruption of a homolog of trithorax by 11q23 translocations: Leukemogenic and transcriptional implications, *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 220:1, 1997.
Wasik MA, Zhang Q, Marzec M, et al: Anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK)-induced malignancies: Novel mechanisms of cell transformation and potential therapeutic approaches, *Semin Oncol* 36:S27–S35, 2009.
Wei LN: Retinoids and receptor interacting protein 140 (RIP140) in gene regulation, *Curr Med Chem* 11(12):1527–1532, 2004.
Weinberg OK, Ai WZ, Mariappan MR, et al: "Minor" BCL2 breakpoints in follicular lymphoma: Frequency and correlation with grade and disease presentation in 236 cases, *J Mol Diagn* 9:530–537, 2007.
Weis K, Rambaud S, Lavau C, et al: Retinoic acid regulates aberrant nuclear localization of PML-RARα in acute promyelocytic leukaemia cells, *Cell* 76:345–356, 1994.
Weisenburger DD, Armitage JO: Mantle cell lymphoma—An entity comes of age, *Blood* 87:4483–4494, 1999.
Weiss LM, Lopategui JR, Sun LH, et al: Absence of the t(2;5) in Hodgkin's disease, *Blood* 85:2845–2847, 1995.
Weissmann S, Alpermann T, Grossmann V, et al: Landscape of TET2 mutations in acute myeloid leukemia, *Leukemia* 26:934–942, 2012.
Wellmann A, Otsuki T, Vogelbruch M, et al: Analysis of the t(2;5)(p23;q35) translocation by reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction in CD30+ anaplastic large-cell lymphomas, in other non-Hodgkin's lymphomas of T-cell phenotype, and in Hodgkin's disease, *Blood* 86:2321–2328, 1995.
Weng AP, Ferrando AA, Lee W, et al: Activating mutations of NOTCH1 in human T cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Science* 306:269–271, 2004.
Widemann BC, Arceci RJ, Jayaprakash N, et al: Phase 1 trial and pharmacokinetic study of the farnesyl transferase inhibitor tipifarnib in children and adolescents with refractory leukemias: A report from the Children's Oncology Group, *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 56:226–233, 2011.
Wiemels JL, Cazzaniga G, Daniotti M, et al: Prenatal origin of acute lymphoblastic leukaemia in children, *Lancet* 354:1499–1503, 1999.
Wiemels JL, Hofmann J, Kang M, et al: Chromosome 12p deletions in TEL-AML1 childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia are associated with retrotransposon elements and occur postnatally, *Cancer Res* 68(23):9935–9944, 2008.
Wiemels JL, Leonard B, Wang Y, et al: Site-specific translocation and evidence of post-natal origin of the t(1;19) E2A-PBX1 translocation in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 99:15101–15106, 2002a.
Wiemels JL, Xiao Z, Buffler PA, et al: In utero origin of t(8;21) AML1-ETO translocations in childhood acute myeloid leukemia, *Blood* 99:3801–3805, 2002b.
Williams ME, Meeker TC, Swerdlow SH: Rearrangement of the chromosome 11 bcl-1 locus in centrocytic lymphoma: Analysis with multiple breakpoint probes, *Blood* 78:493–498, 1991.
Williams ME, Swerdlow SH, Meeker TC: Chromosome t(11;14)(q13;q32) breakpoints in centrocytic lymphoma are highly localized at the bcl-1 major translocation cluster, *Leukemia* 7:1437–1440, 1993a.
Williams ME, Swerdlow SH, Rosenberg CL, et al: Chromosome 11 translocation breakpoints at the PRAD1/cyclin D1 gene locus in centrocytic lymphoma, *Leukemia* 7:241–245, 1993b.
Willis TG, Jadayel DM, Ju MQ, et al: Bcl10 is involved in t(1;14)(p22;q32) of MALT B-cell lymphoma and mutated in multiple tumor types, *Cell* 96:35–45, 1999.
Winter SS, Jiang Z, Khawaja HM, et al: Identification of genomic classifiers that distinguish induction failure in T-lineage acute lymphoblastic leukemia: A Children's Oncology Group Study, *Blood* 110:1429–1438, 2007.
Witzig TE, Reeder CB, LaPlant BR, et al: A phase II trial of the oral mTOR inhibitor everolimus in relapsed aggressive lymphoma, *Leukemia* 25(2):341–347, 2011.
Wlodarska I, Dierickx D, Vanhentenrijk V, et al: Translocations targeting CCND2, CCND3, and MYCN do occur in t(11;14)-negative mantle cell lymphomas, *Blood* 111:5683–5690, 2008.
Wotherspoon AC, Soosay GN, Diss TC, et al: Low-grade primary B-cell lymphoma of the lung. An immunohistochemical, molecular, and cytogenetic study of a single case, *Am J Clin Pathol* 94:655–660, 1990.
Wouters BJ, Lowenberg B, Delwel R: A decade of genome-wide gene expression profiling in acute myeloid leukemia: Flashback and prospects, *Blood* 113:291–298, 2009a.
Wouters BJ, Lowenberg B, Erpelinck-Verschueren CAJ, et al: Double CEBPA mutations, but not single CEBPA mutations, define a subgroup of acute myeloid leukemia with a distinctive gene expression profile that is uniquely associated with a favorable outcome, *Blood* 113:3088–3091, 2009b.
Wundisch T, Neubauer A, Stolte M, et al: B-cell monoclonality is associated with lymphoid follicles in gastritis, *Am J Surg Pathol* 27:882–887, 2003.
Xu X, Zhang Q, Luo J, et al: JAK2(V617F): Prevalence in a large Chinese hospital population, *Blood* 109(1):339–342, 2007.
Yagi T, Hibi S, Tabata Y, et al: Detection of clonotypic IGH and TCR rearrangements in the neonatal blood spots of infants and children with B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Blood* 96:264–268, 2000.
Yamagata T, Maki K, Mitani K: Runx1/AML1 in normal and abnormal hematopoiesis, *Int J Hematol* 82(1):1–8, 2005.
Yamamoto Y, Kiyoi H, Nakano Y, et al: Activating mutation of D835 within the activation loop of FLT3 in human hematologic malignancies, *Blood* 97:2434–2439, 2001.
Yanada M, Matsuo K, Suzuki T, et al: Prognostic significance of FLT3 internal tandem duplication and tyrosine kinase domain mutations for acute myeloid leukemia: A meta-analysis, *Leukemia* 19:1345–1349, 2005.
Yanada M, Ohno R, Naoe T: Recent advances in the treatment of Philadelphia chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Int J Hematol* 89(1):3–13, 2009.
Yang Y, Shaffer AL 3rd, Emre NC, et al: Exploiting synthetic lethality for the therapy of ABC diffuse large B cell lymphoma, *Cancer Cell* 21(6):723–737, 2012.
Ye BH, Cattoretti G, Shen Q, et al: The BCL-6 proto-oncogene controls germinal-centre formation and Th2-type inflammation, *Nat Genet* 16:161, 1997.
Ye H, Gong L, Liu H, et al: MALT lymphoma with t(14;18)(q32;q21)/IGH-MALT1 is characterized by strong cytoplasmic MALT1 and BCL10 expression, *J Pathol* 205:293–301, 2005.
Ye H, Liu H, Attygalle A, et al: Variable frequencies of t(11;18)(q21;q21) in MALT lymphomas of different sites: Significant association with CagA strains of H pylori in gastric MALT lymphomas, *Blood* 102:1012–1018, 2003a.
Ye H, Liu H, Raderer M, et al: High incidence of t(11;18)(q21;q21) in Helicobacter pylori-negative gastric MALT lymphomas, *Blood* 101:2547–2550, 2003b.
Yee HT, Ponzoni M, Merson A, et al: Molecular characterization of the (2;5)(p23;q35) translocation in anaplastic large cell lymphoma (Ki-1) and Hodgkin's disease, *Blood* 87:1081–1088, 1996.
Yonezumi M, Suzuki R, Suzuki H, et al: Detection of AP12-MALT1 chimaeric gene in extranodal and nodal marginal zone B-cell lymphoma by reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and genomic long and accurate PCR analyses, *Br J Haematol* 115:588–594, 2001.
Yu BD, Hell JL, Horning SE, et al: Altered Hox expression and segmental identity in MLL-mutant mice, *Nature* 378:505, 1995.
Yu Y, Maggi LB Jr, Brady SN, et al: Nucleophosmin is essential for ribosomal protein L5 nuclear export, *Mol Cell Biol* 26(10):3798–3809, 2006.
Yun JP, Chew EC, Liew CT, et al: Nucleophosmin/B23 is a proliferate shuttle protein associated with nuclear matrix, *J Cell Biochem* 90(6):1140–1148, 2003.
Zelent A, Greaves M, Enver T: Role of the TEL-AML1 fusion gene in the molecular pathogenesis of childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Oncogene* 23:4275–4283, 2004.
Zelent A, Guidez F, Melnick A, et al: Translocations of the RARalpha gene in acute promyelocytic leukemia, *Oncogene* 20(49):7186–7203, 2001.
Zent CS, Call TG, Hogan WJ, et al: Update on risk-stratified management for chronic lymphocytic leukemia, *Leuk Lymphoma* 47:1738–1746, 2006.
Zenz T, Krober A, Scherer K, et al: Monoallelic TP53 inactivation is associated with poor prognosis in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: Results from a detailed genetic characterization with long-term follow-up, *Blood* 112:3322–3329, 2008.
Zhang J, Ding L, Holmfeldt L, et al: The genetic basis of early T-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, *Nature* 481:157–163, 2012.
Zhang W, Garces J, Dong HY: Detection of the t(11;18) API2/MALT1 translocation associated with gastric MALT lymphoma in routine formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded small endoscopic biopsy specimens by robust real-time RT-PCR, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126:931–940, 2006.
Zhang J, Grubor V, Love CL, et al: Genetic heterogeneity of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 110(4):1398–1403, 2013.
Zhang F, Gu W, Hurles ME, et al: Copy number variation in human health, disease, and evolution, *Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet* 10:451–481, 2009.
Zhang Y, Strissel P, Strick R, et al: Genomic DNA breakpoints in AML1/RUNX1 and ETO cluster with topoisomerase II DNA cleavage and DNase I

hypersensitive sites in t(8;21) leukemia, *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 99:3070–3075, 2002.

Zheng X, Oancea C, Henschler R, et al: Reciprocal t(9;22) ABL/BCR fusion proteins: Leukemogenic potential and effects on B cell commitment, *PLoS ONE* 4(10):e7661, 2009.

Zhong S, Salomoni P, Pandofi PP: The transcriptional role of PML and the nuclear body, *Nature Cell Biol* 2:E85–E90, 2000.

Zucca E, Bertoni F, Roggero E, et al: The gastric marginal zone B-cell lymphoma of MALT type, *Blood* 96:410–419, 2000.

Zwaan CM, Meshinchi S, Radich JP, et al: FLT3 internal tandem duplication in 234 children with acute myeloid leukemia: prognostic significance and relation to cellular drug resistance, *Blood* 102:2387–2394, 2003.

CHAPTER 77

MOLECULAR GENETIC PATHOLOGY OF SOLID TUMORS

Shilpa Jain, David Y. Zhang, Ruliang Xu, Matthew R. Pincus, Peng Lee

MOLECULAR GENETIC PATHOLOGY OF SPECIFIC SOLID TUMORS BY MAJOR ORGAN, 1493
Brain Tumor, 1493
Breast Cancer, 1496
Thyroid Cancer, 1499
Lung Cancer, 1500
Hepatocellular Carcinoma, 1501
Gastric Cancer, 1503
Colorectal Cancer, 1504
Pancreatic Cancer (Non-neuroendocrine Tumor), 1506
Kidney Tumor, 1507
Bladder Cancer, 1509
Prostate Cancer, 1510
Cervical Cancer, 1510
Endometrial Cancer, 1511
Ovarian Cancer, 1511
Melanoma, 1512
MOLECULAR GENETIC PATHOLOGY OF SARCOMA, 1513
Sarcomas with Fusion Genes, 1513
Sarcomas with Oncogenic Mutations, 1515
Sarcomas with Variable Other Specific Pattern, 1515
Sarcomas with Variable Complex Genetic Alterations with No Specific Pattern, 1515
MOLECULAR GENETIC PATHOLOGY OF MULTIPLE ENDOCRINE NEOPLASIA, 1515
CANCERS OF UNKNOWN ORIGIN, 1517
miRNA IN CANCER, 1518
CLINICAL APPLICATION OF NEXT-GENERATION SEQUENCING, 1518
SELECTED REFERENCES, 1519

KEY POINTS

- Solid tissue (mainly epithelial cell) tumors are mainly caused by genetic lesions of three types: deletion or inactivation of tumor suppressor genes, mutation in or overexpression of oncogenes (i.e., genes encoding proteins that are vital in control of the cell cycle), and hypermethylation of the promoter regions.
- These genetic lesions can be detected using the techniques described in Part 8 of this textbook involving real-time polymerase chain reaction, fluorescence in situ hybridization, immunohistochemistry, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, and so on.
- Detection of genetic lesions in solid tissue tumors is of great value for the diagnosis of specific types, for classification of the tumor, and for determining prognosis for a patient with a specific type of cancer. A common mutation in several of these cancers is overexpression of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Discovery of this lesion allows for implementation of anti-EGFR therapy. However, because ras-p21 is a downstream target of EGFR, and because it is commonly mutated in many human cancers, it is necessary to test for oncogenic mutations in the *ras* gene. If these are found, the efficacy of anti-EGFR agents is diminished.
- Less commonly, oncogenic mutations can be found in downstream targets of *ras-p21,* such as BRAF, which makes treatment with anti-EGFR agents less effective.
- Many solid-tissue tumors express the same oncogenes, such as *BRAF,* in melanoma and thyroid cancer, but other cancers have genetic lesions that appear to be specific for that type of cancer, such as RET in medullary thyroid carcinoma.
- Although not formally classified as solid-tissue tumors, sarcomas often behave in a manner identical to that of solid-tissue tumors. These cancers have been found to be caused by reciprocal translocations resulting in oncogenic fusion transcripts (accounting for 15% to 20% of cases) and by specific oncogenic mutations (e.g., *KIT* and *PDGFRA* mutations in gastrointestinal stromal tumors). Both types of genetic alterations are often specific to certain types of sarcomas.
- Because the genetic alterations or changes that underlie many familial types of cancers are known, it is possible to screen for these in the children and close relatives of patients known to have a form of familial cancer, so as to detect the presence of these cancers as rapidly as possible.
- Next-generation sequencing (NGS) is currently widely used in the selection of pathway-based therapy and prediction of treatment resistance of many types of cancer.

Cancer is largely a genetically encoded disease. Recent research on cancer molecular genetics, epigenetics, and genomics, as well as their application, has vastly changed the practice of cancer diagnosis, classification, prognosis, and treatment. Application of molecular genetics to solid tumors is a major milestone in diagnostic pathology. The molecular diagnosis was initially introduced for accurate diagnosis of solid tumors, based on the unique genetics. Now the utility of molecular diagnosis is far beyond its original intention, and it is no longer just an adjunct method. It has become an indispensable tool that is widely used to predict clinical outcome, including disease prognosis, selection of optimal therapeutic regimens, and anticipation in response to treatment. It has not only revolutionized the concept and practice of diagnostic pathology for solid tumors, it has also become the basis for personalized medicine.

The principles and method in molecular diagnostics of solid tumors are similar to those used in other fields of molecular diagnosis. Techniques commonly used in cancer molecular pathology include detection or identification of specific sequences of genes (DNA and/or its transcribed RNA) or gene product (protein) alterations. They include amplification-based techniques (i.e., polymerase chain reaction [PCR], RT-PCR, branched DNA testing), hybridization methods (i.e., in situ hybridization, or fluorescence in situ hybridization [FISH]), microarray-based approaches (i.e., comparative genomic hybridization [CGH], DNA, RNA, microRNA microarray), and sequencing. PCR and FISH are among the most commonly used methods, whereas array-based techniques have a promising future, but have not been used widely in clinical settings to this point. Each method is described in Part 8 of this textbook.

Tissue sources of diagnostic materials of molecular pathology for solid tumor include paraffin-embedded tissue, fresh tissue, and cytologic specimens. Fresh tissue is a preferred choice for preservation of DNA, RNA, or protein. In most cases, only fresh tissue is usable in array-based methods; however, it is usually not readily available or accessible. Thus, paraffin-embedded tissue is used most commonly because of its availability and ease of access; it also allows use of the corresponding hematoxylin and eosin–stained slides for morphologic study. However, exposure of nucleic acid to formalin is associated with the major inherent problems of increased nucleic acid fragmentation and low integrity of DNA, RNA, and protein. Tissue fixation in formalin for longer than 24 hours will likely reduce the yield of high molecular weight nucleic acid. Thus, longer formalin fixation, paraffin embedding, and long storage at room temperatures can lead to false-negative results. A second problem is impurity of tumor cells, which usually are mixed with normal cells and stromal cells. Relatively pure tumor cells can be achieved by employing microdissection that isolates the tumor cells, even a single tumor cell, by a manual or instrument-assisted method. Cytologic specimens, including cells from fine-needle aspiration (FNA), urine, and blood, and swabs for molecular pathology, are used most

often to assist in accurate diagnosis of superficial solid tumor, such as human epidermal growth factor receptor (*Her*)-*2/neu (ERBB2)* for breast cancer, human papillomavirus (HPV) testing for cervical cancer, and UroVysion (Abbott Laboratories, Abbott Park, Ill.) for bladder cancer.

Molecular diagnoses of solid tumors rely on our understanding of the molecular mechanism involved in carcinogenesis of solid tumors. Genetic alterations can be inherited or can result from carcinogenesis, as described in Chapter 75. In several tumors, polygenic mutations occur, but often in these cases, some unique or specific genetic alterations lead to carcinogenesis. Those genetic or epigenetic components mainly belong to the following:

1. Tumor suppressor genes (TSGs) (e.g., *Rb*, *SMAD*, adenomatous polyposis coli *[APC]*).
2. Oncogenes (e.g., *EWS*, *cKIT*, *Her2/neu*, *KRAS*, *BRAF*).
3. Promoter regions with methylation/inactivation activity.

Application of molecular diagnosis of solid tumors has been used clinically as follows:

1. **Assistance in disease diagnosis and classification:** For example, small "blue cell" tumors encompassing Ewing's sarcoma, lymphoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, and so forth, can be diagnosed by identification of specifically altered genes (e.g., Ewing's sarcoma–specific gene translocations). In cervical cancer, detection of HPV assists in the diagnosis of neoplastic change on cervical biopsies or smears. Moreover, in the future, DNA microarray of the tumor may detect gene signatures.
2. **Determination of prognosis:** With better understanding of the molecular genetics of solid tumors, a greater number of prognostic markers can be identified. Thus detection of those markers in some cases has become a routine practice. For example, detection of overexpression/amplification of *Her2/neu* in breast cancer and 1p19q deletion in brain tumor has been used to predict prognosis or clinical outcome.
3. **Determination of therapeutic options:** Many drugs have been developed to target certain genes and gene products (i.e., proteins) and related pathways. Examples include tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) and monoclonal antibodies to EGFRs in lung and colon cancer. Moreover, only certain groups of patients with unique genetic profiles can respond to these treatments. Thus, providing the right management not only will increase the chances for cure, but also will improve patient quality of life by avoiding unnecessary side effects.
4. **Combination of the above:** In most cases, detection of molecular markers may provide both diagnostic and prognostic information such as c*KIT* mutations and chromosomal abnormalities detected by UroVysion, and amplification of *Her2/neu*.

This chapter focuses on the clinical application of molecular pathology in cancer diagnosis, prognosis, and predicting treatment response in common solid tumors. The major genetic findings in each tumor type are summarized in Table 77-1.

MOLECULAR GENETIC PATHOLOGY OF SPECIFIC SOLID TUMORS BY MAJOR ORGAN

BRAIN TUMOR

Primary central nervous system (CNS) gliomas, originating exclusively from brain cells such as astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, and ependymal cells, account for only about 1.35% of all cancers, but rank second among the causes of death from neurologic disease. Glioblastomas are the most common primary CNS tumor and are categorized as World Health Organization (WHO) grades I to IV, based on histologic characteristics. With the advent of new treatment modalities, the use of microscopic examination alone is insufficient for the histologic classification and grading of gliomas.

Glioblastoma Multiforme

Glioblastoma multiforme (GBM) consists of anaplastic malignant astrocytic tumors characterized by predominant microvascular and endothelial proliferation. The current standard of care for GBM is surgical resection, followed by radiation therapy. However, the association of specific molecular genetics not only assists in diagnosis and prognosis but also leads to the development of new adjuvant chemotherapy (e.g., temozolomide) (Stupp et al, 2005). Glioblastomas (WHO grade IV) may develop de novo (primary glioblastomas) or through progression from low-grade astrocytomas (secondary glioblastomas). The two types show similar histologic features; however, they differ in terms of molecular alterations, with primary glioblastomas showing activation of the EGFR pathway, whereas secondary glioblastomas are more commonly associated with *TP53* mutations. Thus, the molecular genetics of these tumors demonstrates that they are distinct diseases and therefore may exhibit different prognoses and responsiveness to therapy (Ohgaki & Kleihues, 2007). Tyrosine kinase inhibitors, such as erlotinib and gefitinib, may offer a therapeutic option for primary tumors in which EGFR signaling is upregulated (Ohgaki & Kleihues, 2007).

Recent comprehensive genetic screens of GBM (Parsons et al, 2008) have confirmed that genetic loss is scattered across the entire genome, affecting numerous chromosomes. **Loss of heterozygosity (LOH) on chromosome 10 is the most frequent genetic loss in GBM,** occurring in 60% to 80% of cases. Allelic losses on 1p and 7q have also been seen in GBM, but at lower frequencies. Loss of 1p occurs in 6% to 20% of GBMs, and in combination with 19q loss may indicate a better prognosis and improved responsiveness to therapy; however, the combined loss of 1p/19q is a rare event in GBM (Kanu et al, 2009).

Gains in gene expression have also been demonstrated in GBM in the form of duplication of entire chromosomes, intrachromosomal amplification of specific alleles, or extrachromosomal amplification (often in the form of double minutes) and activating mutations. Many genes have been shown to be amplified in glioma; these include *EGFR*, *CDK4*, *SAS*, *MDM2*, *GLI*, *PDGFRA*, *MYC*, *N-MYC*, *MYCL1*, *MET*, *GADD153*, and *cKIT*. The most commonly amplified genes in glioblastoma are *EGFR* on chromosome 7 (in approximately 40% of cases), *CDK4*, and *SAS* (in approximately 15%).

Other molecular mechanisms of gliomagenesis include loss of the DNA repair enzyme, O(6)-methyl guanine DNA methyltransferase (MGMT), which specifically removes pro-mutagenic alkyl groups from the O6-position of guanine in DNA (Kanu et al, 2009). Expression of MGMT protects normal cells from carcinogens; however, it can also protect cancer cells from chemotherapeutic alkylating agents. This has been implicated as an important mechanism of drug resistance because it reduces the cytotoxicity of alkylating chemotherapeutic agents. Loss of MGMT expression may be caused by methylation of promoter CpG islands, which have been detected in 75% of secondary GBMs—much more frequently than in primary GBMs (36%). Immunohistochemical staining for MGMT does not offer a reliable way to stratify GBM (Kanu et al, 2009), and PCR assay is therefore necessary. *TP53* is one of the more commonly studied TSGs in GBM. Loss of normal *TP53* function due to mutation occurs more frequently in secondary GBM. Thus, the major molecular targets of glioblastomas are EGFR, TP53, 10q LOH, and deletion of the *MGMT* gene. These can be detected using RT-PCR, methylation-specific PCR, and FISH. The main clinical applications are related to prognosis and treatment response. These findings are summarized in Table 77-1 and, in greater detail, in Table 77-2.

Oligodendroglioma

Oligodendroglioma is an infiltrating glioma of the cerebral cortex diagnostically characterized by a triad of uniformly round to ovoid nuclei, perinuclear halos, and an even distribution of cells, together with a delicate chicken wire–type of vasculature. However, in a significant number of these lesions, the microscopic morphology is not so clear-cut, and distinction from other diffuse glial lesions may be difficult. Combined loss of 1p and 19q (Fig. 77-1, *A* to *C*) is typical in oligodendroglioma (Aldape et al, 2007), and loss of 19q occurs in astrocytoma and mixed oligoastrocytoma (Aldape et al, 2007). The incidence of 1p/19q loss varies from 50% to 80% in oligodendroglioma in different studies, and it is 1% to 10% in other gliomas, which indicates its utility in differentiating the diagnosis. Recent studies suggest that the combined loss of 1p/19q may follow a (1; 19)(q10; p10) translocation, with subsequent loss of the derivative chromosome der(1;19)(q10; p10) (Aldape et al, 2007). Identification of 1p/19q loss is associated with two unique features of tumor biology with clinical indications: first, they grow slowly, even those that are anaplastic in nature; second, they correlate with better prognosis and response to chemotherapy (Kuo et al, 2009). In terms of treatment response, initial studies suggested that 1p/19q loss is a marker of response to PCV (procarbazine, lomustine/CCNU, and vincristine) or temozolomide chemotherapy (Kuo et al, 2009). Thus, the 1p/19q status has become an important part of diagnosis, prognosis, and predicted therapeutic response of oligodendrogliomas. In addition to 1p/19q alteration, LOH mutations in *p53* and *p16* may be associated with poor survival or tumor progression (Kuo et al, 2009).

Nearly all 1p/19q codeleted oligodendrogliomas are also mutated on isocitrate dehydrogenases (IDH), IDH1 or IDH2 (Labussiere et al, 2010). Recently IDH1 has been found to be mutated in a vast majority of astrocytic, oligodendroglial, and oligoastrocytic gliomas (WHO grades II to

TABLE 77-1

Most Common Genetic Alterations in Solid-Tissue Tumors

Tumor Type	Major Molecular Target(s)*	Main Method(s) of Detection	Clinical Application(s)
Solid-Tissue Tumors			
Glioblastoma	*EGFR, TP53,* 10q, MGMT, mutations in *TP53* and *PTEN, P16INK4a* deletions	RT-PCR, methylation-specific PCR, FISH	Prognosis, treatment response
Oligodendroglioma	1p and 19q deletions, *EGFR, TP53*	FISH, RT-PCR, LOH	Diagnosis, prognosis, treatment response
Sporadic, nonhereditary breast cancer	*Her2/neu*, multiplex genes	FISH, IHC, RT-PCR, Oncotype, MammaPrint	Molecular classification, prognosis, treatment response
Hereditary breast cancer	*BRCA1, BRCA2, EGFR*	High-throughput sequencing, multiplex PCR, genetic counseling	Diagnosis, genetic counseling
Papillary thyroid cancer	*BRAF, RET, PTC1, PTC3*	FISH, RT-PCR, direct sequencing	Diagnosis, prognosis, therapeutic option
Follicular thyroid cancer	*PAX8-PPARγ*	IHC, FISH, RT-PCR	Diagnosis, prognosis
Medullary thyroid carcinoma	*RET*	Sequencing, PCR	Diagnosis, screening, surveillance
Non–small cell cancers of the lung	*EGFR, RAS*	PCR, sequencing, FISH	Prognosis, treatment response
Liver (hepatocellular)	*EEGFR, VEGFR,* glypican-3, *p53*, β-catenin, microRNA (miR-122a), multiple genes	FISH, PCR, sequencing, microarray	Diagnosis, prognosis, targeted therapy
Gastric cancer, intestinal type	*p73* mutations, *MSI* (*MLH1* and *MSH2*), LOH/mutations of *APC* genes, and Her2/neu	FISH, PCR, IHC	Diagnosis, prognosis
Gastric cancer, diffuse type	*CDH1*	FISH, PCR, IHC	Diagnosis, prognosis
Colon cancer	1. Mutated oncogenes: mainly *EGFR, KRAS, BRAF,* and *PI3K.* 2. Mutated or deleted antioncogenes: *p53, APC, TGFBRI, SMAD2, SMAD4* 3. Microsatellite instability (MSI) genes and CpG island methylator (CIMP) genes	FISH, PCR, microarray, methylation-specific PCR, sequencing, array technology	Diagnosis, prognosis
Pancreatic cancer	Most pancreatic cancers: *KRAS* mutations Inactivating mutation or deletion or methylation of genes encoding *TP53, SMAD4, p16/CDKN2A* miRNAs (miR-196a, 217, 221, 376a, and 301)	PCR, sequencing PCR, methylation-specific PCR RT-PCR	Diagnosis Diagnosis (rarely), prognosis Diagnosis, prognosis
Renal cell carcinoma (RCC)	Chromosome 3p deletion, von Hippel–Lindau *(VHL)* gene deletion; hypoxia-inducible factor *(HIF)* overexpression	Sequencing, FISH (for VHL)	Diagnosis
Translocation-associated RCC	t(X;17)(p11.2;q25); *ASPL-TFE3* and *PRCC-TFE3* fusion genes	RT-PCR, FISH, IHC for the C-terminal domain of nuclear TFE3	Diagnosis, classification
RCC, clear cell	1. Carbonic anhydrase IX 2. Genes of immune response and proangiogenesis 3. Proximal nephron markers: megalin, cubilin, adipophilin	Gene expression arrays, IHC	Diagnosis, prognosis, classification
RCC, papillary	1. Proximal nephron marker α-methylacyl-coA racemase	Gene expression arrays, IHC	Diagnosis, prognosis, classification
RCC, chromophobe	1. Abundant mitochondria 2. Distal nephron markers: β-defensin, parvalbumin, chloride channel Kb, claudin 7 and 8, and EGF	Gene expression arrays, IHC	Diagnosis, prognosis, classification
RCC, oncocytoma	1. Abundant mitochondria 2. Distal nephron markers: β-defensin, parvalbumin, chloride channel Kb, claudin 7 and 8, EGF	Gene expression arrays, IHC	Diagnosis, prognosis, classification
Bladder cancer	Aneuploidy of chromosomes 3, 7, and 17 and/or deletion of the 9p21 (encoding p16); *NMP 22*	FISH	Diagnosis
Prostate cancer	*TMPRSS2* (*21q22.3)* to transcripts of the ETS family member genes: overexpression of ETS proteins (e.g., ERG, ETV1, ETV4, ETV5)	FISH, ELISA, RT-PCR, gene expression arrays	Diagnosis, classification
Cervical cancer	HPV-6 and -18	Hybrid capture DNA assay, RT-PCR, Southern blot, dot blot	Diagnosis, follow-up of abnormal PAP smears
Ovarian Cancer			
Low-grade serous	*KRAS, BRAF*	PCR, Southern blot	Diagnosis, classification
High-grade serous	*p53* deletion/mutation; Wnt/β-catenin or PI3K/PTEN signaling pathway defects	PCR, Southern blot	Diagnosis, classification
Mucinous	*KRAS, BRAF*	PCR, Southern blot	Diagnosis, classification
Clear cell	*PI3K/PTEN* mutations	PCR, Southern blot	Diagnosis, classification
Endometrioid	Mutations of *CTNNB1* (β-catenin)	PCR, Southern blot	Diagnosis, classification
Melanoma	*CDKN2A, p14,* and *p16* inactivation; *NRAS* (G12V) and *BRAF* oncogenic mutations (V600E)	PCR, sequencing	Diagnosis, classification, therapy

TABLE 77-1

Most Common Genetic Alterations in Solid-Tissue Tumors—cont'd

Tumor Type	Major Molecular Target(s)*	Main Method(s) of Detection	Clinical Application(s)
Sarcoma			
Sarcoma with fusion genes involving the *TET* gene: Ewing's sarcoma	t(11;22)(q24;q12) translocation; fusion of *EWSR1* and an *ETS* family gene, mainly *FLI1*	RT-PCR, FISH, Southern blot	Diagnosis Prognosis
Sarcoma with fusion genes involving receptor tyrosine kinase: congenital fibrosarcoma	t(12;15)(p13;q25) translocation, resulting in fusion of *ETS* gene, *ETV6* with neurotropin receptor (that has tyrosine kinase activity), *NTRK3* gene	RT-PCR, FISH, Southern blot	Diagnosis
Sarcoma with fusion genes involving chromatin remodeling: synovial sarcoma (SS)	t(X;18)(p11.2;q11.2) translocation resulting in fusion of *SS18(SYT)* gene with one of the *SSX* genes on the X chromosome, creating *SS18-SSX1, SS18-SSX2,* or *SS18-SSX4* chimeric genes Downstream targets of above fusion proteins: *CCND1* (cyclin D1) and *TLE1* that encodes a transcriptional corepressor	FISH, RT-PCR IHC	Diagnosis, classification Diagnosis
Sarcoma with fusion genes involving growth factors: dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans (DFSP) and giant cell fibroblastoma (GCF)	t(17;22)(q11;q13.1) translocation resulting in fusion of the *COL1A1* gene on chromosome 17 with the *PDGFB* gene on chromosome 22, leading to *PDGFRB* overexpression	RT-PCR	Diagnosis, classification
Sarcoma with other types of fusion genes: alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma (ARMS)	t(2;13)(q35:q14) translocation that results in fusion of *PAX3* with *FOXO1A*	FISH	Diagnosis
Sarcoma with oncogenic mutations: gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST)	*cKIT/PDGFRA*	PCR, sequencing, Southern blot	Diagnosis
Sarcoma with no consistent genetic lesions: leiomyosarcoma (LMS)	Loss of 1p12-pter, 2p, 13q14-q21 (targeting the Rb pathway), 10q (targeting *PTEN*), 16q. Gains of 17p, 8q, and 5p14 pter. Activation of the PI3K-AKT pathway and mTOR	FISH	Diagnosis
Syndromatic Cancers			
Familial adenomatous polyposis syndrome	Adenomatous polyposis coli *(APC)* (long arm of chromosome 5) or MutY human homologue *(MYH)* gene involved in repair of oxidative damage to DNA	PCR, sequencing, Southern blot	Diagnosis
Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC): Lynch syndrome	Microsatellite instability (MSI) in mismatch repair *(MMR)* genes, including *MLH1, MSH2, MSH6, MLH3,* and *PMS2*	IHC, PCR, sequencing	Diagnosis, classification, genetic counseling
Familial juvenile polyposis syndrome	Germline mutations of *SMAD4, BMPR1A,* and *ENG*; also, mutations in kinase, *BMPR1A* (bone morphogenetic protein receptor type IA), on chromosome 10q22.3. Involvement of TGF-β signal transduction pathway	PCR, sequencing	Diagnosis, classification
Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (PJS): melanotic mucocutaneous hyperpigmentation and GI hamartomas, which occur anywhere from the stomach to the anus; multiple polyps in small bowel	*STK11/LKB1* gene	PCR, sequencing	Diagnosis, classification
Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN)			
MEN type 1: tumors in the parathyroid glands; the stomach, pancreas, and intestinal tract; anterior pituitary gland; endocrine pancreas; and duodenum, and by the presence of other nonendocrine tumors such as hemangioma, ependymoma, and leiomyoma, often at a young age	MEN 1 tumor suppressor gene, *MEN 1*	PCR	Diagnosis, classification
MEN type 2: medullary thyroid carcinoma (MTC) and associated pheochromocytoma and hyperparathyroidism	*RET* (chromosome 10q11.2) (encoding a tyrosine kinase) mutations	PCR, sequencing	Diagnosis, classification

Continued

TABLE 77-1
Most Common Genetic Alterations in Solid-Tissue Tumors—cont'd

Tumor Type	Major Molecular Target(s)*	Main Method(s) of Detection	Clinical Application(s)
von Hippel–Lindau syndrome (VHL): neoplasia syndrome characterized by hemangioblastomas in the central nervous system and retina, pheochromocytomas, renal cysts and clear cell renal cell carcinoma, pancreatic cysts and islet cell tumors, endolymphatic sac tumors, and papillary cystadenomas of the epididymis and broad ligament	*VHL* tumor suppressor gene (three exons) on chromosome 3p25. Encodes VHL protein, critical in regulating hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF-α and -β)	PCR, sequencing	Diagnosis, classification
Familial paraganglioma syndromes	Mutation of three genes encoding subunits of mitochondrial succinate dehydrogenase (SDH complex): *SDHB* at 1p36.1 (PGL4), *SDHC* at 1q21 (PGL3), and *SDHD* at 11q23 (PGL1)	PCR	Diagnosis, classification
Cowden syndrome (CS); breast, thyroid, and endometrial cancers and other benign conditions, including multiple hamartomas in the colon, lipomas, fibromas	*PTEN* mutations	PCR	Diagnosis, classification
Li-Fraumeni syndrome; soft-tissue sarcomas, breast cancer, osteosarcoma, brain tumors, childhood leukemias, and adrenocortical carcinoma	*p53* gene mutations	PCR, IHC	Diagnosis, classification
Neurofibromatosis 1 (NF1); neurofibroma and, less commonly, gliomas and other abnormalities (learning disability, vasculopathy, and bony abnormalities)	*NF1*, located on chromosome 17q11.2; diminished GTPase activating (GAP) activity activating the ras signal transduction pathway	FISH, direct sequencing, long-range PCR with Southern blot analysis, and/or cytogenetic analysis	Diagnosis, classification
Neurofibromatosis (NF2) and schwannomatosis. NF2 involves schwannomas, meningiomas, and ependymomas	*NF2* gene (chromosome 22)	Sequencing, mutation scanning, duplication/deletion testing, PCR, quantitative PCR, microarray, comparative genomic hybridization, or combination	Diagnosis, classification

ELISA, Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; *FISH,* fluorescent in situ hybridization; *IHC,* immunohistochemistry; *LOH,* loss of heterozygosity; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *RT-PCR,* real-time PCR.
*Full names and functions of molecular targets (i.e., oncogenes and oncoproteins) listed in the second column may be found in the corresponding sections of this chapter describing these targets and the corresponding references.

TABLE 77-2
Common Genetic Alterations in Glioblastoma Multiforme

	Primary GBM	Secondary GBM
LOH 10q	70%	63%
EGFR amplification	36%	8%
P16INK4a deletion	31%	19%
TP53 mutation	28%	65%
PTEN mutation	25%	4%

Data from Ohgaki H, Kleihues P: Genetic pathways to primary and secondary glioblastoma, *Am J Pathol* 170:1445–1453, 2007.
EGFR, Epidermal growth factor receptor; *GBM,* glioblastoma multiforme; *LOH,* loss of heterozygosity; *PTEN,* phosphate and tensin homologue deleted on chromosome 10.

III), as well as in secondary glioblastomas (WHO grade IV). However, IDH1 mutation is very rare in primary glioblastoma and is not involved in pilocytic astrocytomas. IDH1 and IDH2 are homologous, $NADP^+$-dependent cytoplasmic and mitochondrial enzymes, respectively. The role of these enzymes is the conversion of isocitrate to α-ketoglutarate with the simultaneous reduction of $NADP^+$ to NADPH. The most common mutation is a heterozygous point mutation with substitution of arginine by histidine at residue 132 (R132H), located in the substrate-binding site. This IDH1-R132 mutation has a reported frequency of 50% to 93% (Parsons et al, 2008; Yan et al, 2009). IDH2 gene mutations affecting the amino acid R172 are much less common than the IDH1 isoform, 3% to 5%, yet have been identified in a small subset of gliomas that lack the typical IDH1 mutation with predominance in oligodendrogliomas (Yan et al, 2009). *IDH1* and *IDH2* genes appear to behave dominantly and are mutually exclusive. *IDH1* mutation has been shown to be a strong, independent positive prognostic biomarker in diffuse gliomas, glioblastomas, as well as in oligodendroglioma (Sanson et al, 2009). *IDH* mutation was also identified as a marker for response to temozolomide in low-grade gliomas (Houillier et al, 2010).

Rhabdoid Tumor

Rhabdoid tumors are highly malignant (WHO grade IV) embryonal CNS tumors of infants and very young children showing rhabdoid features. Similar to renal and other extrarenal rhabdoid tumors, over 90% of atypical teratoid/**rhabdoid** tumor (AT/RT) demonstrate loss of all or part of chromosome 22, particularly involving 22q11.2. The INI1 (hSNF5/SMARCB1/BAF47), a putative suppressor gene, is mapped to the 22q11.2 region. *INI1* deletions and/or mutation have been detected in the majority of AT/RT cases. Nearly all AT/RTs demonstrate absence of the nuclear immunohistochemical expression of INII/BAF47 protein. FISH for monosomy 22, 22q and deletion or the *INI1* gene are commonly utilized as adjunct molecular studies in the diagnosis of AT/RTs and other pediatric embryonal tumors (Wei et al, 2014).

BREAST CANCER

Breast cancer is the most common cancer in women and the second most common cause of cancer death in women in the United States. Until

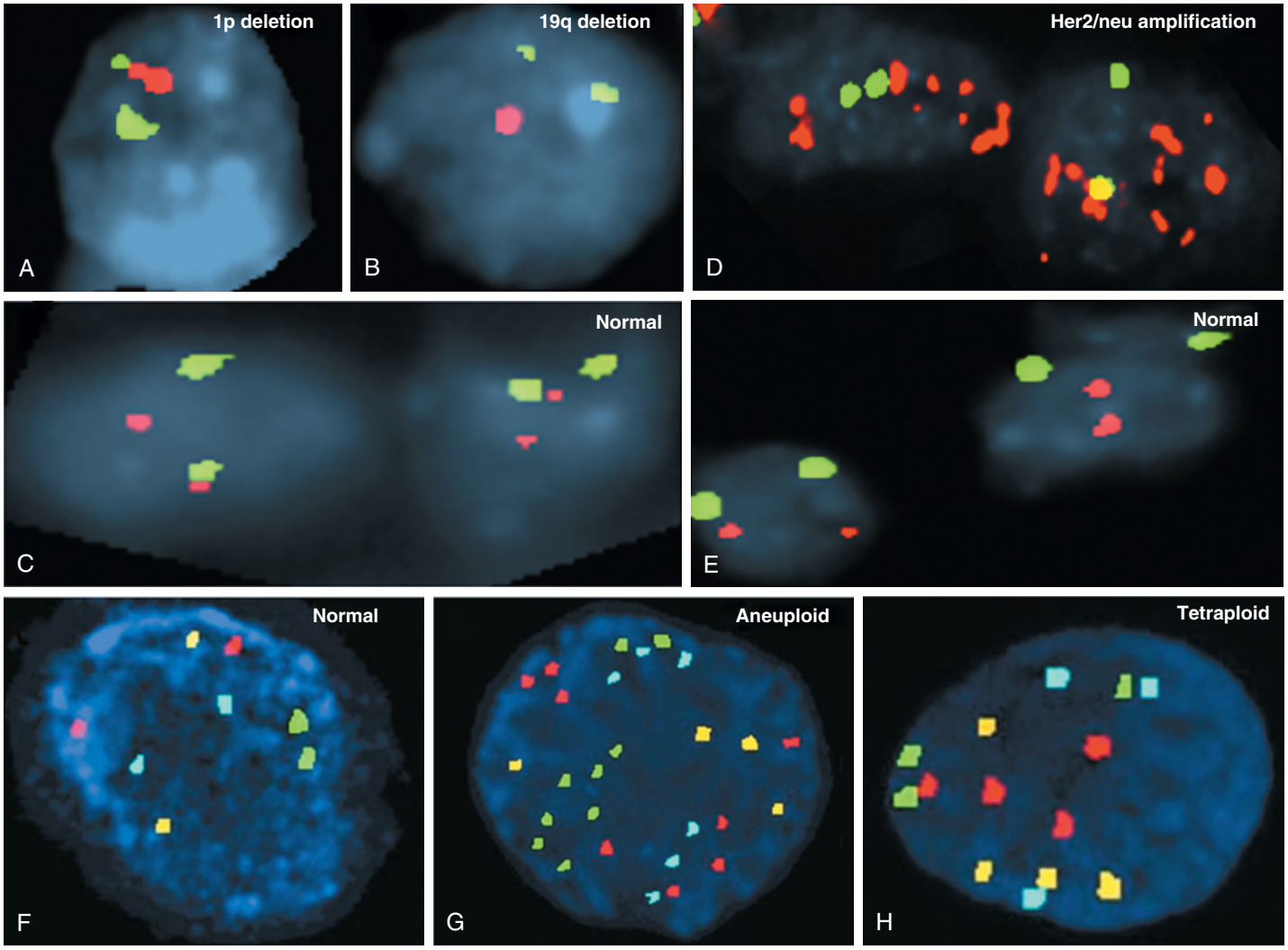


Figure 77-1 Examples of fluorescence in situ hybridization in cancer diagnosis. Oligodendroglioma with **A,** 1p and **B,** 19q deletions compared with **C,** normal cells. Green color in *A,* 1q probe; red color in *A,* 1p probe; green color in *B,* 19p probe; red color in *B,* 19q probe. **D,** Her2/neu amplification compared with **E,** normal cells. Green color: CEP17 probe. Red color: Her2/neu probe. UroVysion showing **F,** normal; **G,** aneuploid; and **H,** tetraploid cells. Aqua color: chromosome 17. Yellow (gold) color: 9p21 locus. Red color: chromosome 3. Green color: chromosome 7.

recently, breast cancer was characterized according to tumor type (ductal vs. lobular carcinoma), histologic grade (I to III), steroid hormone receptors (ER and PR), and *Her2/neu* status (positive vs. negative), along with metastasis to lymph nodes and distant organs, for its prognosis and treatment. Gene expression profiling has recently been introduced as a potentially useful adjunct for the management of recently diagnosed breast cancer.

Sporadic, Nonhereditary Breast Cancer

Various genetic, epigenetic, and genomic changes have been associated with breast cancer. Traditionally, estrogen receptor (ER) and progesterone receptor (PR) status is used as a prognostic and predictive marker for breast cancer. *Her2/neu* (detailed in Chapter 75) status has been added in the past decade as a breast cancer prognostic and predictive marker. The FISH method has been used primarily to determine the copy number of the *Her2/neu* gene (see Fig. 77-1, *D* and *E*) for the purpose of selecting Her2-targeted therapies such as trastuzumab and lapatinib in both adjuvant and neoadjuvant settings. Enumeration of 20 interphase nuclei from tumor cells on a given case is reported as the ratio of average *Her2/neu* copy number to that of chromosome enumeration probe 17 for centromere, CEP17. Specimens with amplification showed a *Her2/neu*:CEP17 signal ratio ≥2.0 as abnormal, and a ratio <2.0 as normal. A three-color FISH assay has been commercialized recently for assessment of standalone prognosis in ER-positive and ER-negative stage I breast cancers (Ross, 2009). In addition, HercepTest (Dako Corp, Carpinteria, Calif.), an immunohistochemistry (IHC) for *Her2/neu* using a polyclonal antibody, was the first U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved test; subsequently, Pathway (Ventana Medical Systems, Tucson, Ariz.) produced a monoclonal antibody (CB11) for *Her2/neu* for the same response indication that has also been FDA-approved and is used in combination with FISH (Fig. 77-2). IHC is widely used to measure prognostic factors, including ER, PR, Her2/neu, and the proliferation marker, Ki-67, and to predict response to hormonal and Her2-targeted therapies (Ross, 2009).

Concerns associated with IHC-based assays for multiple markers include the nonlinear nature of IHC staining, the different subcellular localization of different markers, and the impact of different slide-scoring thresholds for different antibodies. The introduction of whole-genome profiling technologies has greatly expanded our knowledge of the genomic pathways associated with the development and progression of breast cancer (Bao & Davidson, 2008). These research results have led to the development of several commercialized tests with multigenes/proteins as prognostic and predictive tools for clinical application using IHC, FISH, RT-PCR, and genomic microarray technologies with integrated bioinformatic/statistical algorithms designed to calculate disease recurrence and patient survival (Ross et al, 2008).

Molecular classification of breast cancer has been proposed, based on gene expression profiling, to include luminal-like, normal-like, Her2-positive, and basal-like subtypes of invasive breast cancer (Ross et al, 2008). It is important to note that all of the luminal groups of breast cancers are ER positive, and nearly two thirds of them are of low or intermediate histologic grade, whereas 95% of all (Ross, 2009) basal-like cancers are ER negative, and 91% of these tumors are of high grade (Bao & Davidson, 2008). Studies of clinical outcomes based on molecular subtypes have shown that luminal A is more sensitive to antiestrogen than is luminal B.

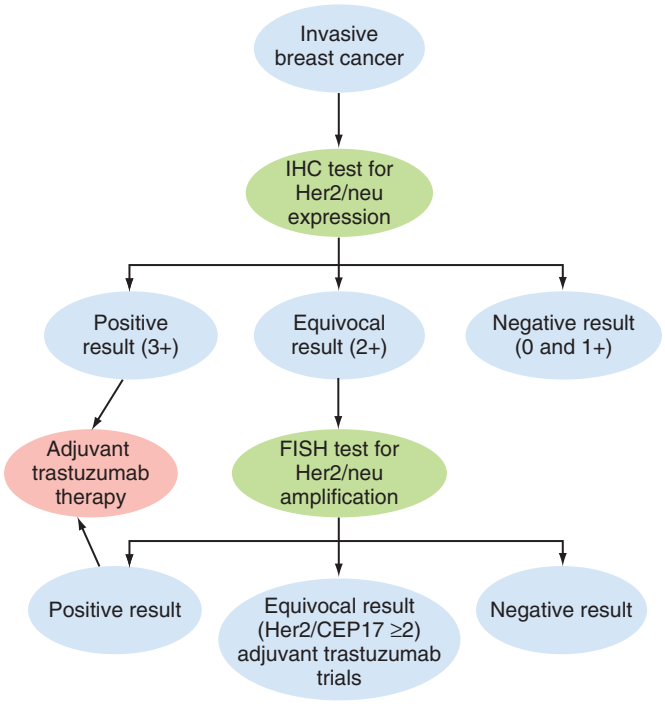


Figure 77-2 Algorithm using Her2/neu status in diagnosis and treatment of breast cancer.

Her2-positive responds to trastuzumab, an anti–Her2 antibody, whereas basal is more aggressive (but is especially sensitive to anthracycline-based neoadjuvant chemotherapy) than are the luminal breast cancers (Ross, 2009). Basal-like and Her2-positive subgroups are associated with the highest rates of pathologic complete response to neoadjuvant multiagent chemotherapy (Ross, 2009).

Several commercially available assays have been developed to predict the risk for recurrence. Recently NanoString's Prosigna Breast Cancer Prognostic Gene Signature Assay is developed based on the PAM50 gene expression signature. The PAM50 gene signature measures the expression levels of 50 genes in a surgically resected breast cancer sample to classify a tumor as one of four intrinsic subtypes (Luminal A, Luminal B, HER2-enriched, and Basal-like. This test outputs a risk of recurrence (ROR) score, in these intrinsic subtypes. Prosigna uses multiplexed gene-specific fluorescently labeled probe pairs to measure gene expression in frozen or formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissues with equivalent ease and efficiency (Nielsen et al, 2014). Clinical trials demonstrated its utility in prognostic information of distant recurrence in hormone receptor–positive, postmenopausal breast cancer patients treated with endocrine therapy (Dowsett et al, 2013) and in node-positive patients (Gnant et al, 2014). Other two gene microarray-based clinical tests are the OncotypeDx and MammaPrint assays (Fig. 77-3) (Kato, 2009; Oakman et al, 2009). Oncotype Dx (Genomic Health, Inc., Redwood City, Calif.) is a 21-gene multiplex prognostic and predictive RT-PCR assay performed on primary FFPE breast cancer samples. The original 16 informative genes (Paik et al, 2004) that calculate the recurrence score (RS) were discovered on archived FFPE samples by transcriptional profiling and then were converted to the FFPE RT-PCR assay (Ross et al, 2008). OncotypeDx determines the 10-year risk for disease recurrence in patients with ER-positive, lymph node–negative tumors by using a continuous variable algorithm and assigning a tripartite RS (17, low risk; 18 to 30, intermediate risk; >30, high risk). Of the multiple pathways assessed by this assay, the proliferation and ER pathways are the most influential in RS calculation, followed by the Her2 pathway. High relative levels of ER mRNA and low levels of Ki-67 proliferation gene mRNA have a low RS. Low levels of ER mRNA and high levels of Ki-67 mRNA have a high RS. The other 14 informative mRNA levels play their greatest roles in determining the RS in tumors with intermediate ER and Ki-67 mRNA levels. It should also be noted that OncotypeDx is best suited for detecting breast cancers with a low potential for recurrence. The MammaPrint assay (Agendia BV, Amsterdam, The Netherlands) was the first fully commercialized microarray-based multigene assay for breast cancer. This test is currently designed as a pure prognostic assay, has received 510(k) clearance from the FDA, and is

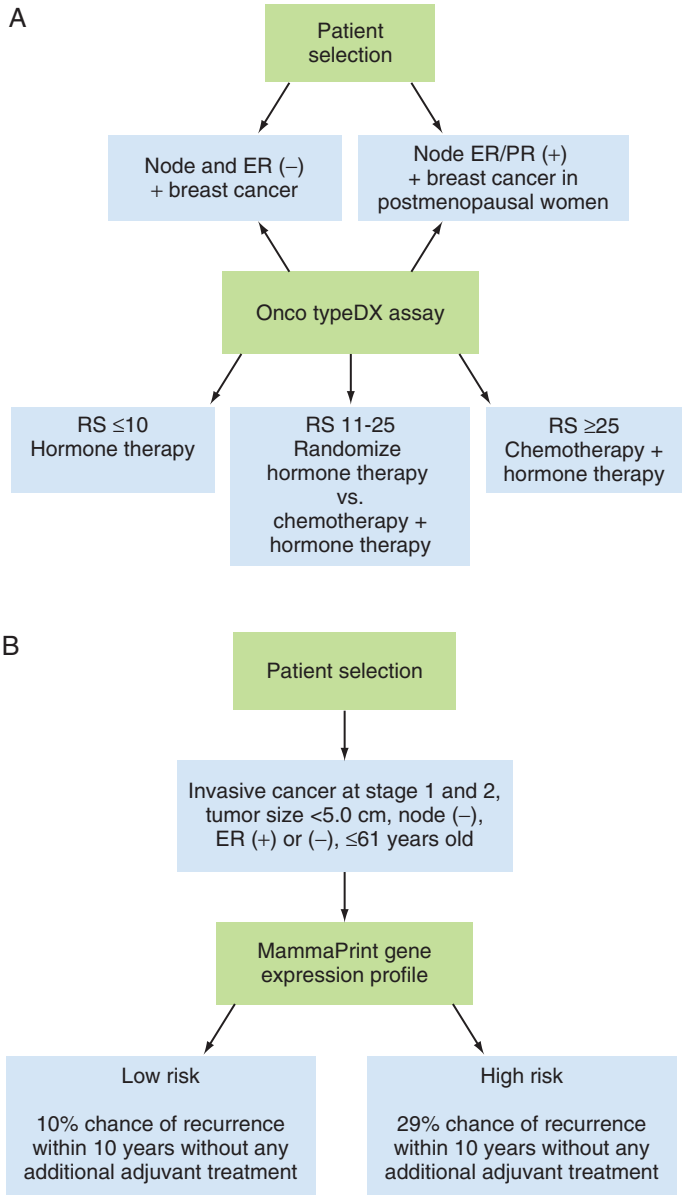


Figure 77-3 Algorithm of *A,* OncotypeDx and *B,* MammaPrint assays in breast cancer management.

offered as a prognostic test for lymph node–negative breast cancer in women younger than 61 years of age with an ER-positive or ER-negative tumor. This test was also the first assay to be approved by the FDA's new in vitro diagnostic multivariate index assay classification. Unlike OncotypeDx, this test cannot currently be performed on FFPE tissues but requires fresh-frozen tumor samples or tissues collected into an RNA preservative solution. The 70 genes that make up the MammaPrint assay are focused primarily on proliferation; additional genes are associated with invasion, metastasis, stromal integrity, and angiogenesis. Of note, the OncotypeDx and MammaPrint assays have only one individual gene in common—the *SCUBE2* gene, which is a member of the ER pathway. Unlike the OncotypeDx test, which features a continuous RS result, the MammaPrint test uses a dichotomous "high risk versus low risk" result format. The MammaPrint test does not include ER, PR, or Her2 in the 70-gene microarray.

Multigene testing procedures such as disease classifiers and prognostic and predictive markers have been introduced with the use of slide-based methods (e.g., IHC, FISH) or molecular platform–based methods such as quantitative multiplex PCR and genomic array profiling. Morphologically based mRNA extraction performed with the use of tissue macrodissection or microdissection is recommended for analysis, as it is highly enriched for invasive carcinoma and is not diluted with cells from benign tissues and

in situ carcinoma areas (Ross et al, 2008). The heterogeneous expression of important mRNAs, such as ER, Her2, and Ki-67, often reflected in the varying histologic grades seen in larger tumors, can influence the predictive accuracy of transcriptional profiling measurements. One caveat is that, although the number of genes that can be simultaneously assessed by multiplex qRT-PCR is significantly greater than that for IHC, multiplex qRT-PCR requires a more complex statistical evaluation of the gene expression profiles. Nevertheless, the RT-PCR technique has been used to predict overall prognosis and response to both hormonal and cytotoxic therapies.

Hereditary Breast Cancer

Hereditary breast cancer (HBC) accounts for approximately 10% of all breast cancers. Positive family history is the strongest risk factor, as it is present in about 20% of breast cancer cases. Population-based studies indicate that 15% of familial risk can be attributed to *BRCA* gene mutations, and that a further 10% involve *TP53*, phosphate and tensin homologue *(PTEN)*, *ATM*, and *CHEK2;* the rest may be explained by a polygenic model. A significant number of HBC-prone families are characterized by the more common hereditary breast-ovarian cancer syndrome. The *BRCA* genes operate as TSGs, and germline mutations affecting one allele of *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* confer susceptibility to breast and ovarian cancers. The cumulative risk for developing breast cancer by 70 years of age approaches 50% to 70% in *BRCA1*-mutation carriers, and ovarian cancer, 30% to 40% (Venkitaraman, 2009). For *BRCA2*-mutation carriers, the risk is 40% to 50% for breast cancer and 10% to 15% for ovarian cancer. However, individuals who carry *BRCA2* mutations also have an increased risk for other cancers, including those of the male breast (≈seventy-five–fold relative risk), pancreas (fourfold to eightfold), and prostate (twofold to fourfold) (Venkitaraman, 2009). The spontaneous instability of chromosome structure and number is a hallmark of *BRCA*-deficient cells and arises from the distinct cellular functions performed by the BRCA1 and BRCA2 proteins in DNA repair and mitotic control. Since the discovery of *BRCA* genes and the development of methods for mutation screening, identification of *BRCA*-mutation carriers during the clinical management of familial cancer cases has become widespread. Gene expression profiling has revealed that tumors from patients who are *BRCA1*-mutated segregate within the basal subgroup of breast cancers (Venkitaraman, 2009) of the five different molecular groups, as discussed earlier. Tumors from *BRCA1*-mutation carriers are likely to stain positive for basal cytokeratins 5/6 and 14, and to exhibit negative estrogen receptor staining. These breast carcinomas also commonly stain for EGFR. *BRCA1*-associated tumors are commonly of high grade and are *p53*-mutated. They have a tendency to occur in younger women and carry a poor prognosis (Venkitaraman, 2009).

THYROID CANCER

Thyroid cancer is the most common endocrine neoplastic condition. The two most frequent types of thyroid malignancy derived from follicular cells are papillary and follicular carcinomas, which constitute approximately 80% and 15%, respectively, of all thyroid cancers. These follicular cell–derived tumors are well differentiated, in contrast to poorly differentiated and anaplastic carcinomas, which constitute about 2% of cases. Another malignancy in thyroid is medullary carcinoma, which originates from parafollicular C cells and accounts for approximately 3% of cases. Several genetic alterations in various thyroid tumors have been well documented, including translocations and point mutations. The genetic alteration in thyroid cancer involves *RET, BRAF, RAS*, and *PAX8*.

Papillary Thyroid Carcinoma

RET/PTC rearrangement and point mutations of *RAF* (in particular, the *BRAF* form) and *RAS* genes are found in more than 70% of cases of papillary thyroid carcinoma (PTC) (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008), and these mutations are mutually exclusive.

The *RET/PTC* gene rearrangement is another prominent genetic alteration that plays a role in the pathogenesis of up to 20% of sporadic PTCs (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). The *RET* gene, located on chromosome 10q11.2, encodes the tyrosine kinase receptor consisting of an extracellular ligand-binding domain for the glial-derived neurotrophic factor family of growth factors, a cysteine-rich region, a transmembrane domain, and an intracellular tyrosine kinase domain. *RET* is highly expressed in parafollicular C cells and at very low levels in thyroid follicular cells (Nikiforov, 2008). *RET/PTC* rearrangements are a very early event in thyroid cancer development; this would explain their high prevalence in occult or microscopic PTC. Twelve forms of *RET/PTC* rearrangements have been reported to date, linking the 3′ portion of the *RET* gene with the 5′ portion of various different genes of the PTC family (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008), the two most common of which are *PTC1 (H4)* and *PTC3 (ELE1, ARA70, NCOR4)*, which account for up to 70% and 30% of rearrangements in sporadic PTC, respectively (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). In particular, *RET/PTC* rearrangements are more frequent in individuals exposed to ionizing radiation (50% to 80%) (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008), with the exception of *ELKS-RET* (ELKS is a polypeptide sequence that is rich in glutamic acid [E], leucine [L], lysine [K], and serine [S] and *HOOK3RET* fusion (HOOK3 encodes the protein Hook homolog 3). *RET/PTC* rearrangements are also more frequent in children (40% to 70%) (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008) as compared with the general population (15% to 30%). Papillary carcinomas with *RET/PTC* gene rearrangements typically present in younger individuals and exhibit a high rate of lymph node metastasis with classical papillary histology and lower stage at presentation, particularly in cases harboring *RET/PTC1* (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). In tumors arising after radiation exposure, *RET/PTC1* was found to be associated with classic papillary histology, whereas the *RET/PTC3* type was more common among solid variants (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008).

Activated RET kinase has been explored as a target of therapy using TKIs such as ZD6474 (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). The distribution of *RET/PTC* rearrangements within each tumor may vary from involving almost all neoplastic cells (clonal *RET/PTC*) to being detected only in a small fraction of tumor cells (nonclonal *RET/PTC*) (Nikiforov, 2008). This heterogeneity is a potential problem in RET receptor–targeted therapy.

Human *HRAS*, *KRAS*, and *NRAS* genes encode the ras-p21 proteins, which are highly conserved in sequence from yeast to humans and are strongly homologous in amino acid sequence to one another. As described in Chapter 75, the ras-p21 protein is a G-protein, that is, a GTP-binding protein that is activated when GTP binds in place of GDP. The exchange is promoted by the SOS or GNEF (guanine nucleotide exchange factor) that, in turn is activated when a tyrosine kinase–containing receptor binds to its growth factor. The activated tyrosine kinase binds to the growth factor receptor–bound (grb) adapter protein that binds simultaneously to SOS-GNEF, activating it to bind to ras-p21 thereby promoting GTP-GDP exchange. To be active, ras-p21 must bind to the inner cell membrane in a covalent link between a farnesyl moiety in the membrane and the thio group of Cys 186. In its active form, ras-p21 binds directly to raf, thereby activating the raf-MEK-MAP kinase (or ERK) pathway as described in Chapter 75. Simultaneously, it activates phosphatidylinositol-3-hydroxy kinase (PI3K) that activates AKT. Point mutations involving several specific sites (codons 12, 13, and 61) in *NRAS* and *HRAS* are more common in thyroid cancer. They are found in 10% to 20% of cases of papillary carcinoma, 40% to 50% of follicular carcinomas, and 20% to 40% of poorly differentiated and anaplastic carcinomas. Among papillary carcinomas, virtually all tumors that harbor a RAS mutation grow, forming neoplastic follicles and no papillary structures and are, therefore, diagnosed as the follicular variant of papillary carcinoma (Zhu et al, 2003).

RAS mutations are also found in 20% to 40% of benign follicular adenomas (Motoi et al, 2000). The finding of this mutation in benign adenomas as well as in follicular-patterned carcinomas suggests that RAS-positive follicular adenomas may serve as a precursor for RAS-positive follicular carcinomas and the follicular variant of papillary carcinomas. Furthermore, RAS mutations may predispose well-differentiated cancers to dedifferentiation, resulting in anaplastic tumors. With regard to the rare but important cribriform morular variant of papillary carcinoma, nuclear β-catenin accumulation is essentially a defining feature that is diagnostically invaluable.

RAF, as noted earlier (see Chapter 75), is a direct target of ras-p21. The *BRAF* gene mutation is the most common known genetic alteration in papillary carcinoma and is found in approximately 45% of these tumors (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). A majority of mutations involve T1799A transversion mutation in exon 15 of the gene, which causes amino acid change from valine to glutamine at amino acid residue 600 (V600E), leading to constitutive activation of BRAF kinase, subsequent phosphorylation of MEK and ERK protein kinases (see Chapter 75), and downstream effectors of the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway, as is summarized in Chapter 75 (see Fig. 75-1). Other mechanisms of *BRAF* activation, although rare, include K601E point mutation, small in-frame insertions or deletions surrounding codon 600, and *AKAP9-BRAF* rearrangement, which is more commonly associated with radiation exposure papillary carcinoma. *BRAF V600E* mutation is highly prevalent in papillary carcinoma with classical histology and in the tall cell variant while tumors that harbor the K601E BRAF mutation typically have the follicular variant of papillary carcinoma histology (Nikiforov & Nikiforova, 2011). The *BRAF V600E* mutation has been correlated with aggressive features such

as extrathyroid extension, advanced tumor stage at presentation, recurrence, and lymph node involvement and/or distant spread (Xing et al, 2005). This mutation also occurs in 20% to 40% of poorly differentiated thyroid carcinomas and 30% to 40% of anaplastic thyroid carcinomas. Many of these carcinomas also reveal areas of well-differentiated papillary cancer, and BRAF V600E is present in both tumor components, which suggests that this mutation is an early event that predisposes the tumor to dedifferentiation (Nikiforova, 2011). Cancers with these mutations have decreased ability to trap radioiodine and lead to treatment failure and more aggressive behavior (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008).

Detection of the *BRAF* mutation can be achieved by direct sequencing, colorimetric mutation detection assay based on shifted terminal assay (Xing et al, 2004), real-time PCR, and allele-specific SYBR green PCR on an FNA sample, which is virtually diagnostic of papillary carcinoma. The *BRAF* mutation represents an attractive therapeutic target for papillary carcinoma with the advent of various BRAF inhibitors (e.g., BAY43-9006) (Wan et al, 2004; Wilhelm et al, 2004).

Activated RET kinase has been explored as a target of therapy using TKIs such as ZD6474 (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). The distribution of *RET/PTC* rearrangements within each tumor may vary from involving almost all neoplastic cells (clonal *RET/PTC*) to being detected only in a small fraction of tumor cells (nonclonal *RET/PTC*) (Nikiforov, 2008). This heterogeneity is a potential problem in RET receptor–targeted therapy.

Other point mutations involving several specific sites (codons 12, 13, and 61) in NRAS, HRAS, and KRAS genes are found in 10% to 20% of cases of papillary carcinoma. These mutations are almost always found in the follicular variant of papillary carcinoma (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008).

Follicular Carcinoma

Most of the frequent genetic alterations in follicular carcinoma are *RAS* point mutations and *PAX8-PPARγ* rearrangements, altering the PI3K/AKT signal pathway. Several studies have reported the utility of molecular testing in diagnosing this type of thyroid cancer preoperatively on FNA specimens.

A *RAS* mutation is found in 40% to 50% of conventional follicular carcinomas and in 20% to 40% of adenomas. It is interesting to note that the most common *ras* mutations, instead of occurring at codon 12, as in most other cancers, occur at codon 61 for *NRAS* and *HRAS* (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). These mutations are associated with tumor dedifferentiation, a less favorable prognosis, and metastasis to bone (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). Furthermore, RAS mutations are potentially transformative as indicated by a 20% to 40% prevalence in poorly differentiated and undifferentiated carcinoma.

The *PAX8-PPARγ* gene rearrangement is a result of the translocation t(2;3)(q13;p25). It leads to a fusion between the *PAX8* gene, which encodes a thyroid-specific paired domain transcription factor, and the *PPARγ* gene. It occurs in 35% of conventional follicular carcinomas and has a lower prevalence in oncocytic (Hürthle cell) carcinomas (Nikiforova & Nikiforov, 2008). This translocation may also be seen in up to 13% of follicular adenomas and approximately 5% of follicular variants of papillary carcinoma. Tumors harboring *PAX8-PPARγ* rearrangements tend to present in a younger age group, are smaller, and exhibit solid or nested patterns and more frequent vascular invasion. This rearrangement results in overexpression of the PPARγ protein that is detectable on IHC (Nikiforova et al, 2003). This molecular overlap between follicular adenoma, follicular carcinoma, and follicular variant of papillary thyroid carcinoma thus likely reflects a biologic continuum.

Medullary Carcinoma

Medullary carcinoma of the thyroid (MTC) is a sporadic malignancy in a majority of cases (75%), with the remainder spanning three familial syndromes, including multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN 2A and MEN 2B) and familial MTC (FMTC). In MTC, *RET* is activated by point mutations, in contrast to its activation by chromosomal rearrangement in PTC. In sporadic medullary carcinomas, somatic mutations of *RET* are found in 20% to 80% of cases without a germ-line mutation. Germ-line mutations in *RET* are found in almost all patients with familial forms of medullary carcinoma; this correlates with the aggressiveness of MTC. However, it must also be noted that sporadic tumors may also harbor RET mutations (30% to 66%). Sporadic tumors may also harbor *HRAS* or *KRAS* mutations as well (up to 25%).

LUNG CANCER

Lung cancer remains the most common cause of cancer-related death among men and women worldwide. Epithelial tumors of the lung are of four principal types: squamous cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, large cell carcinoma, and small cell carcinoma. Clinically, the most important distinction is noted between small cell carcinoma and the others, which can be grouped together as non–small cell carcinoma. Small cell cancers respond to chemotherapy, whereas non–small cell carcinomas (NSCLCs) are removed surgically if possible. Recently recognized specific molecular alterations in different histologic subtypes of NSCLC has led to the need for more precise delineation of NSCLC subtypes by the pathologist.

EGFR mutations have been identified in many human cancers like lung, breast, head and neck, colorectal, pancreatic, bladder cancers, glioma, squamous cell carcinoma, Wilms' tumor, and certain NSCLCs (adenocarcinoma). EGFR is a *membranous oncoprotein* that induces cell proliferation upon activation. Binding of a ligand to a receptor activates its tyrosine kinase activity, which phosphorylates several substrates on a number of signal transduction pathways, leading to DNA synthesis and expression of oncogenes such as *fos* and *jun* and finally cell growth (see Chapter 75). Increased EGFR signaling can be the result of *EGFR* gene amplification, protein overexpression, or specific activation mutations in the *EGFR* gene, as described in detail in Chapter 75.

It has been shown that a subset of patients with NSCLC (10% to 40%) (Coate et al, 2009) have specific activating mutations in the *EGFR* gene (Fig. 77-4) that are associated with increased sensitivity to TKIs, such as gefitinib (Iressa) or erlotinib (Tarceva), targeting EGFR in lung cancer. Common activating *EGFR* mutations occur most often in exons 18 to 21 and cluster in two major hot spots. The prototype mutation *L858R* in exon 21 (40% of *EGFR* mutations) encoding the tyrosine kinase domain and small in-frame deletions in exon 19 (>50%) are reportedly most often constituting up to 90%, and are associated with responses to EGFR TKI therapy. Mutations in exons 18 and 20 account for the remaining 10% of *EGFR* mutations in NSCLC (Sholl et al, 2009). Recent guidelines suggest that routine EGFR assays for EGFR exon 19 deletions should be designed to detect not just the common 15-bp and 18-bp deletions, but also the less common 9-, 12-, 24-, and 27-bp deletions, as well as the uncommon 15-bp and 18-bp insertions. EGFR exon 18 should be analyzed for E709 and G719 mutations; exon 20 for S768I, T790M, and insertions; and exon 21 for L858R, T854, and L861Q mutations. Clinical EGFR mutation testing should be able to detect all individual mutations that have been reported with a frequency of at least 1% of EGFR-mutated lung adenocarcinomas (Lindeman et al, 2013). Studies have reported that *EGFR* gene mutations are more common among females, Asians, and nonsmokers with adenocarcinoma; these are the same groups that have the highest response rates to TKIs (Sequist & Lynch, 2008). However, recent guidelines (Lindeman et al, 2013) suggest that EGFR molecular testing should be done in all patients with lung adenocarcinoma.

Immunohistochemistry for total EGFR and EGFR copy number analysis (i.e., FISH or chromogenic in situ hybridization) are not recommended for selection of EGFR TKI therapy according to recent guidelines. Recent studies have demonstrated that in patients with *EGFR* mutations, the EGFR locus is often concurrently amplified.

ALK gene chromosomal rearrangement is found in another ~5% of lung adenocarcinomas, most commonly in the form of an intrachromosomal inversion leading to the EML4-ALK fusion product associated with ALK protein overexpression. This mutation is present more frequently in lung adenocarcinomas from younger patients with either no or only light smoking history (Kwak et al, 2010; Shaw et al, 2009); however, recent guidelines suggest that ALK molecular testing should be done in all patients with lung adenocarcinoma. Some studies have reported associations with solid, mucinous cribriform and/or signet ring histology (Yoshida et al, 2011; Shaw et al, 2009). The translocation is infrequent in pure squamous cell carcinoma, but has been reported in adeno squamous carcinoma (Chaft et al, 2012). Patients with this tumor type are responsive to therapy with the multitargeted tyrosine kinase inhibitor, crizotinib (Takeuchi et al, 2012). Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) using break-apart probes is currently considered the gold standard for detection of ALK rearrangements (Febbo et al, 2011). Polysomy (multiple copies) at the ALK locus is common in lung adenocarcinoma and, when present, confirms that FISH has been performed in a tumor cell population. ALK immunohistochemistry, if carefully validated, may be considered as a screening methodology to select specimens for ALK FISH testing (Lindeman et al, 2013). Current evidence suggests that it does not, however, predict response/resistance to targeted therapies. RT-PCR is not recommended as an alternative to FISH for selecting patients for ALK inhibitor therapy (Lindeman et al, 2013).

Recent recommendations for EGFR and ALK testings are as follows: EGFR and ALK testing is not recommended in lung cancers that lack any adenocarcinoma component, such as "pure" squamous cell carcinomas,

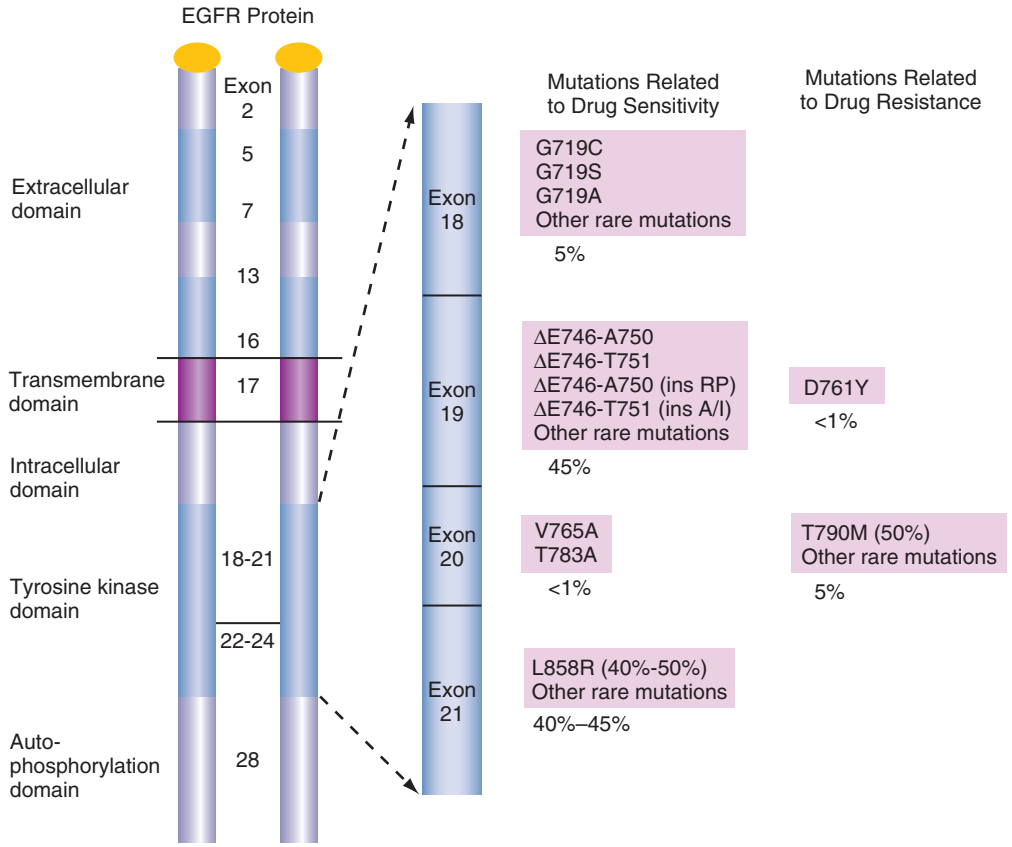


Figure 77-4 **Clinically significant mutations of epidermal growth factor receptor mutation in cancer.**

"pure" small cell carcinomas, or large cell carcinomas lacking any immunohistochemical (IHC) evidence of adenocarcinoma differentiation. EGFR and ALK testing are the most important uses of the diagnostic sample after a diagnosis of adenocarcinoma is established. If specimens are insufficient for molecular testing, patients may need to undergo another invasive diagnostic procedure before they can be treated. EGFR and ALK results should be available within 2 weeks (10 working days) of receiving the specimen in the testing laboratory (Lindeman et al, 2013).

Lung adenocarcinomas contain a number of other less common alterations that may lead to treatment with targeted inhibitors but have not yet been studied in large controlled trials nor emerged as a standard of care. These include chromosomal rearrangements involving *ROS1* (~2% of lung adenocarcinomas; may respond to treatment with crizotinib) and *RET* (~2% of lung adenocarcinomas) (Takeuchi et al, 2012), increased copies of *MET* (Engelman et al, 2007), and sequence-altering mutations in *ERBB2*, *BRAF*, and *PIK3CA* (Cardarella et al, 2012).

Mutations in *KRAS*, frequently in codons 12 and 13, have been reported in up to 30% of cases of lung adenocarcinoma (Coate et al, 2009). These mutations are usually found in cancers of smokers and are more common in adenocarcinoma (30% to 50%) than in NSCLC (15% to 20%). Conversely, oncogenic mutations in the *KRAS* gene were reportedly associated with resistance to EGFR-TKIs in metastatic colorectal cancer. Thus testing for KRAS mutations as a negative predictor of response to EGFR TKI has become part of molecular diagnostic algorithms for lung adenocarcinoma in many centers. However, more recent data suggest that EGFR wild-type tumors have less favorable outcomes if they are treated with EGFR TKI than if they are treated with conventional platinum-based chemotherapy. Therefore, KRAS mutation testing is not recommended as a sole determinant of anti-EGFR TKI therapy (Lindeman et al, 2013).

HEPATOCELLULAR CARCINOMA

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the sixth most common malignancy and the third most common cause of cancer death worldwide. Major risk factors include chronic viral infection (hepatitis B virus [HBV] and hepatitis C virus [HCV]), alcoholic/nonalcoholic liver disease, environmental carcinogens (e.g., aflatoxin B1), and inherited genetic disorders (e.g., Wilson's disease, hemochromatosis, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency, tyrosinemia) (McGlynn & London, 2005; Parkin et al, 2005; Clark, 2006; Motola-Kuba et al, 2006). The development of HCC is a multistep process, comprising hyperplastic change, dysplasia, early HCC, and well-developed HCC in the setting of chronic hepatitis or cirrhosis (Takayama et al, 1990; Theise et al, 2002), or in a small percentage of patients without cirrhosis.

The genomic abnormality of HCC is heterogeneous, largely as the result of various molecular mechanisms of carcinogenesis related to different causes and multifactorial processes (Jain et al, 2010a). HCV-related HCC has an exclusive gain at 10q, and loss of 4q and 16q and gain of 11q are seen preferentially in HBV-positive cases (Kusano et al, 1999; Nishida et al, 2003). Most HCCs are aneuploid and harbor multiple different chromosomal abnormalities, including nonrandom, recurrent DNA copy number losses on multiple chromosomal arms 1p, 4p, 5q, 6q, 8p, 9p, 13q, 16p, 16q, and 17p, and gains on 1q, 6p, 8q, and 17q, detected by conventional cytogenetic studies and CGH. Chromosome 1q is the most common aberration in several geographic locations (Guan et al, 2001; Chang et al, 2002; Terracciano & Tornillo, 2003). Frequently deleted chromosome regions by LOH in HCCs contain many TSGs, including *p53*, *Rb*, *p16*, *PTEN*, and *DLC1*, and oncogenes such as insulin-like growth factor-2 receptor *IGF2R* (Hsia et al, 1994; Edamoto et al, 2003; Matsuda et al, 2003). LOH at chromosome 1p usually is seen in early, small, or well-differentiated HCC (Kuroki et al, 1995), whereas LOH at chromosomes 16p and 17p is more frequently associated with aggressiveness of HCC, including advanced stage and poor prognosis (Tamura et al, 1997). By CGH, abnormalities in chromosomes 8p, 17p, and 19p are associated with metastasis of HCC (Zhang et al, 2003).

Dysregulation of the major signal transduction pathways is found in all HCCs, but differs with various associated causes. Abnormal activities of Wnt/β-catenin, hedgehog, transforming growth factor (TGF)-β, ras-p21 and MEK/ERK, IGF, and *PTEN* signaling pathways, as well as apoptosis, *p53*, *Rb*, and microsatellite stability, are commonly found in HCCs, irrespective of etiology, reflecting common pathogenetic mechanisms (e.g., chronic liver injury, cirrhosis) (Edamoto et al, 2003; Zucman-Rossi et al, 2006; Aravalli et al, 2008). However, HCC resulting from different causes may predominantly affect certain pathways. HCV-associated HCC shows significant abnormality in both Wnt/β-catenin and MAPK pathways (Bai et al, 2003; Colnot et al, 2004). Dysfunction of Wnt/β-catenin, *p53*, *pRb*, and MAPK (Budhu et al, 2006) and cytokine signaling are more commonly seen HBV-related HCCs (Azechi et al, 2001; Bai et al, 2003; Colnot et al, 2004; Yoshida et al, 2006). Tumors associated with alcoholism have more

frequent alterations in the Rb1 and p53 pathways than those caused by HCV infection (Marchio et al, 2000). The "aflatoxin-associated" codon 249 mutation of *p53* is identified only in samples from areas with high aflatoxin content (Asia and Africa) (Kirk et al, 2000; Huang et al, 2003).

Molecular approaches have been advocated to classify and predict clinical outcome and facilitate target molecular therapies using gene expression microarray and single-nucleotide polymorphism arrays (Boyault et al, 2007; Katoh et al, 2007; Chiang et al, 2008; Hoshida et al, 2008). Using global gene expression profiling, analyses of 91 human HCCs employing DNA microarrays containing 21,329 unique genes could subclassify HCC into two distinctive groups: (1) low survival subclass (class A, overall survival time 30.3 ± 8.02 months), which show strong cell proliferation and antiapoptosis gene expression signatures (such as *PCNA* and cell-cycle regulators such as *CDK4*, *CCNB1*, *CCNA2*, and *CKS2*), as well as genes involving ubiquitination and sumoylation; and (2) high survival subclass (class B, overall survival time 83.7 ± 0.3 months) without the above expression signature (Lee et al, 2004a). Similarly, whole genomic array CGH analysis of 87 HCCs revealed two groups of tumors (clusters A and B) based on differences in chromosomal alteration profiles. Cluster A showed significant association with clinical features, such as HBV infection, higher serum α-fetoprotein levels, and a higher incidence of intrahepatic metastasis, along with shorter overall patient survival and poor clinical outcome (Katoh et al, 2007). Gene expression profiles could also subclassify patients with HCC into different survival groups on the basis of paraffin-embedded surrounding nontumoral liver tissue, not tumor tissue (Hoshida et al, 2008). A genome-wide transcriptomic analysis of 60 HCC tumors found a 16-gene signature to classify HCC tumors into six robust subgroups of HCC, labeled G1 to G6. Each group has unique clinical and genetic characteristics that are based on chromosome stability status: chromosome unstable (groups G1 to G3) and chromosome stable (groups G4 to G5). Because each group of tumors has specific pathways of activation (i.e., protein kinase B [AKT or PKB] in G1 to G2 and Wnt pathways in G5 to G6), this molecular classification not only provides prognostic information, but also helps in the development of targeted therapies for HCC (Boyault et al, 2007).

Current treatment modalities usually are not effective because patients with HCC generally are diagnosed at an advanced stage. Treatment effects are also influenced by significant clinical and genetic heterogeneity among HCCs associated with different causes. Therefore, standard treatments may not work for all HCCs. Molecular target therapies specific for a group of HCCs with similar genetics recently have been introduced. The target therapy aims to inactivate the activated oncogene and recover the tumor's suppressor and/or repair genes and other genes or molecules related to the development of HCC, thereby correcting abnormal genes or their functions, as well as biologic behavior. Many candidate genome-based drug targets have been discovered recently by microarray technology, promoter arrays for whole-genome epigenetic aberration analysis, chromatin immunoprecipitation-on-chip analysis, and high-throughput sequencing systems. Examples of target genes or molecules include VGFR, EGFR, *DDEFL*, *VANGL1*, *WDRPUH*, *Ephrin-A1*, *glypican-3*, number gain 7q, PFTAIRE protein kinase 1 and paternally expressed 10, and miR-122a (Yagyu et al, 2002; Okabe et al, 2003, 2004; Zender & Kubicka, 2008). Moreover, some reagents or drugs that work against these candidate target genes or molecules such as monoclonal antibodies, small molecules, and antisense have been in phase II and III clinical trials for therapeutic use; many have been shown to be effective. Sorafenib, an oral multikinase inhibitor of the vascular endothelial growth factor receptor, and Ras kinase have been approved by the FDA as molecularly targeted anticancer agents (Midorikawa et al, 2010; Thomas, 2009). Some of the other agents targeting similar genes are being tested in preclinical and clinical trials for HCC. These include EGFR inhibitors (anti-EGFR, gefitinib, and erlotinib), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), vascularization inhibitors (anti-angiogenesis, sorafenib, bevacizumab), and multikinase targets in patients who are unresectable or have metastatic HCCs (Huynh et al, 2009).

Recently Glypican-3 (GPC3) was considered a relatively specific HCC biomarker, being undetectable in hepatic paracarcinomatous and cirrhotic tissues (Zhang et al, 2012b). GPC3 was first proposed as a potential marker for hepatocellular carcinoma in 1997 (Hsu et al, 1997). It is a family member of heparan sulfate proteoglycan–containing membrane proteins. It anchors to the cytoplasmic membrane via a glycosyl-phosphatidyl-inositol linkage. GPC3 can regulate, in a positive or negative manner, the activities of many growth factors depending on the cellular context (Filmus et al, 2008). It is interesting to note that more than 80% of HCCs overexpress GPC3 (Shirakawa et al, 2009a); additionally, GCP3 is also an interesting therapeutic target for HCC (Filmus et al, 2008). In this regard, a humanized monoclonal antibody against GPC3 has been recently developed (Zhu et al, 2013), and it is under evaluation in a clinical trial phase II in patients with advanced or metastatic HCC. GPC3 has been also proposed as a marker of HCC progression as it promotes cell growth by stimulating the Wnt signal transduction pathway. In a multivariate analysis on patients affected by HCC of different etiology, GPC3 was found to be a predictor of poor prognosis (Shirakawa et al, 2009b); however, in another study, the correlation was found only for HCC developed in HCV-positive patients (Yorita et al, 2011). Importantly, a high level of GPC3 in tissue was found to be an independent risk factor for a shorter postoperative disease-free survival, recurrence, and for a decreased overall survival (Fu et al, 2013).

Hepatic Adenomas

Hepatic adenoma is an uncommon, benign, hepatic neoplasm that typically occurs in women of childbearing age, often with a history of long-term use of oral contraceptive drugs. Molecular studies have revealed that hepatic adenomas involve unique molecular pathways that are distinct from hepatocellular carcinoma. In 2006, the French Bordeaux collaborative group proposed a molecular-pathologic classification for HA (Rebouissou et al, 2007). The classification divides HA into four groups, primarily based on the molecular characteristics, as determined by immunohistochemical markers and their correlation with histologic features. These four subtypes are (1) HAs with inactivating mutations of hepatocyte nuclear factor 1a (HNF1A; HA-H), (2) HAs with activating mutations of β-catenin gene (HA-B), (3) HAs without mutations of the *HNF1A* or *β-catenin* genes and with inflammatory features (HA-I), and (4) unclassified HAs that have no specific gene mutations or unique morphologic features (HA-U) (Zucman-Rossi et al, 2006).

TCF1 (also known as *HNF1A*) is a tumor suppressor gene involved in liver tumorigenesis. It is located on the long arm of chromosome 12. It encodes transcription factor HNF1, which, in the liver, is implicated in hepatocyte differentiation and is required for expression of certain liver-specific genes, including albumin, b-fibrinogen, and α_1-antitrypsin (Rebouissou et al, 2007). The French Bordeaux group showed that HAs with biallelic inactivating mutations in the TCF1 *(HNF1A)* gene constituted a homogenous, morphologically distinct, group that comprise 35% to 40% of all HAs, and classified the group as *HNF1A-mutated hepatic adenomas (HA-H)*. In most of this subtype of HAs (about 85%), mutations are somatic in origin; however, in a few cases, one mutation is somatic, and the other is germ-line in origin. Furthermore, heterozygous germ-line mutations in the *TCF1* gene have been associated with occurrence of a rare autosomal dominant condition (MODY3), which presents in early adulthood (usually younger than 25 years of age). *HNF1A* mutation increases lipogenesis by promotion of fatty acid synthesis and downregulation of liver-type fatty acid–binding protein 1 (L-FABP), leading to diffuse intralesional steatosis (Rebouissou et al, 2007).

The β-Cateningene *(CTNNB1)* is a component gene of the Wnt/β-catenin pathway, which is important in hepatocellular development and physiology. In normal hepatocytes, activation of the β-catenin gene is transient, followed by rapid degradation of the β-catenin protein, which is facilitated by a set of genes, including *axins*, glycogen S-kinase 3 *(GSK3)*, and adenomatosis polyposis coli *(APC)*. Decreased degradation, sustained activation, and nuclear accumulation of β-catenin protein could be due to either a mutation of the β-catenin gene or mutations in the *axin*, *APC*, or *GSK3* genes. Activating β-catenin mutation is reported in 15% to 19% of HA cases (Rebouissou et al, 2008). *β-catenin* mutations have also been seen in 20% to 34% of well-differentiated HCCs (Bioulac-Sage et al, 2010). The HA-B subtype is more frequently associated with malignant transformation (Bioulac-Sage et al, 2010).

Some hepatic adenomas show sustained activation of interleukin 6 (IL-6) receptor signaling because of somatic gain-of-function mutations of the IL-6 signal transducer gene *(IL6ST)*, which encodes glycoprotein-130 (gp130); gp130 is a component of the IL-6 receptor (Rebouissou et al, 2009). This activation of IL-6 promotes the signal transducer and activation of the transcription 3 (STAT3) signaling pathway and induces an acute-phase inflammatory response within neoplastic hepatocytes. This is manifested as overexpression of acute-phase reactants, such as Serum Amyloid A and C-reactive protein (CRP), and inflammatory cell infiltration of the tumor. Such HAs are referred to as inflammatory HA (HA-I) and comprise 30% to 35% of all HAs (Bioulac-Sage et al, 2010). Somatic mutations of the *IL6ST* gene are seen in about 60% of the HA-I subtype. About 10% of HA-I cases show coexistent β-Catenin mutations. Historically, the HA-I subtype was referred to as *telangiectatic focal nodular hyperplasia* and was thought to belong to the focal nodular hyperplasia (FNH) family. In certain studies, the telangiectatic focal nodular hyperplasias are monoclonal neoplasms that are morphologically and biologically closer to

HAs and included within the subgroup HA-I in the new classification scheme (Paradis et al, 2004; Bioulac-Sage et al, 2005). This classification is clinically relevant because it identifies a subset of HAs, specifically HA-B, with increased potential for malignant transformation (Farges & Dokmak, 2010). Furthermore, it helps in identifying cases for which genetic counseling is recommended, in the subset of patients with hepatic adenomatosis that shows a steatotic morphology that resembles HNF1A-mutated adenomas. This familial form of hepatic adenomatosis involves germ-line mutations of *HNF1A* and is associated with maturity-onset diabetes mellitus of youth, type 3 (MODY3) and hence the rationale for genetic counseling is to search for germ-line mutations of *HNF1A* in the family. Recent reclassification of telangiectatic FNH as inflammatory hepatic adenoma, based on molecular genetics and proteomic profiling, has added to the morphologic and molecular heterogeneity of HAs (Bioulac-Sage et al, 2005).

GASTRIC CANCER

Gastric cancer (GC) is the fourth most common cancer and is second only to lung cancer as the leading cause of cancer-related death worldwide (Ferlay et al, 2004). A majority of GCs are adenocarcinomas, historically classified into two major groups by Lauren's classification: intestinal type with glandular pattern, and diffuse or poorly differentiated type with a signet ring cell morphology in some cases (Lauren, 1965). These two types of GCs have a distinct molecular basis of carcinogenesis, and clinical and genetic characteristics. The main causes of the intestinal type include dietary habits, environmental factors, and *Helicobacter pylori* infection (Kelley & Duggan, 2003). Gastric cancer risk is also associated with hereditary tumor syndromes such as hereditary diffuse-type gastric cancer syndrome, hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), Li-Fraumeni syndrome, and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (i.e., familial adenomatous polyposis [FAP] and juvenile polyposis) (Traverso et al, 2002; Napieralski et al, 2005).

The development of intestinal-type GC is a multistep process that proceeds from gastritis (chronic or atrophic) and related changes (e.g., pernicious anemia) to intestinal metaplasia, dysplasia, and eventually carcinoma (Oberhuber & Stolte, 2000; Kelley & Duggan, 2003). These processes are accompanied by a series of genetic alterations. The inactivation mutation of the TSG *p53* (see Chapter 75) occurs in an early stage of carcinogenesis (i.e., intestinal metaplasia [38%] and dysplasia [58%]), and is also seen in 38% to 71% of GCs (Joypaul et al, 1993; Shiao et al, 1994; Xiangming et al, 2000). Mutation in *p73*, a member of the *p53* family, is indicated in the development of GC associated with *H. pylori* infection in mouse mode. A high-level of microsatellite instability (MSI-H) is frequently seen in intestinal-type GC, largely caused by hypermethylation of the promoter regions of mismatch repair genes (most commonly, *MLH1* and *MSH2*) or gene mutations (in a small percentage of GCs) (Lee et al, 2004b; Gu et al, 2009; Seo et al, 2009). The CpG island methylator phenotype, originally found in colorectal cancer, has been detected in 24% to 47% of GCs (Toyota et al, 1999; Oue et al, 2003; Lee et al, 2004b). LOH or mutation of *APC* genes may occur in up to 60% of intestinal-type GC and in approximately 25% of the precursors—adenomas (Horii et al, 1992; Nakatsuru et al, 1992, 1993). LOH at the *bcl-2* locus and amplification of cyclin D1 and E are also associated with intestinal-type GC tumors (Ayhan et al, 1994; Muller et al, 1999). The oncogene product *Her2/neu* is frequently amplified in intestinal-type GC (Wang et al, 2002). In contrast to the diffuse cell type, *E-cadherin* gene *(CDH1)* mutations are infrequently present in intestinal-type GC (Machado et al, 2001; Mingchao et al, 2001).

The molecular pathogenesis of diffuse-type GC is less clear. *H. pylori* infection seems not to be related to the diffuse type of GC, according to epidemiologic studies. It can be part of a hereditary gastric cancer predisposition syndrome (Guilford et al, 1998). The unique molecular abnormality of diffuse-type GC distinct from intestinal-type GC is deficiency in cell-cell adhesion caused by loss or downregulation of the *E-cadherin* gene *(CDH1)* as a result of genetic or epigenetic alterations. The abnormality in *CDH1* can be found in the early stages of diffuse GC development. Decreased *CDH1* expression is detected in 50% of diffuse-type GCs, and more than 70% of those somatic *CDH1* mutations consist of complete or partial deletion of exons (Berx et al, 1998; Napieralski et al, 2005). The unique molecular genetics of GC might be useful for diagnosis in that *CDH1* mutations can be detected by polymerase chain reaction on paraffin-embedded tissue. Detection of the germ-line mutation in *CDH1* may help in identification of carriers of asymptomatic mutations involved in the GC family syndrome, and may offer an opportunity for prophylactic total gastrectomy in patients carrying the *CDH1* mutation (Fitzgerald & Caldas, 2002). Other frequently altered genes or gene products in diffuse-type GC include the met proto-oncogene, encoding the hepatocyte growth factor receptor, and the SC-1 antigen, an apoptosis receptor (Kuniyasu et al, 1992; Vollmers et al, 1998a, 1998b).

Currently, the most valuable predictive and prognostic factor for GC is clinical staging independent of cancer type, but it does not reflect the heterogeneity of tumor biology. Molecular biomarkers have been investigated as alternatives or supplements to the current system and have shown very promising results in predicting prognosis and therapeutic response. For example, MSI-H is usually associated with intestinal-type GC, commonly seen in the distal stomach or antrum, and is associated with less frequent local lymph node metastasis. However, whether patients with MSI-H GC have more favorable long-term survival than those with MSH-L (novel tumor bands with one marker)/microsatellite stable (MSS) (no novel tumor bands), GC remains controversial (Hayden et al, 1997; Wirtz et al, 1998). Expression in tumor tissue of caudal-type homeobox transcription factor 2 *(CDX2)*, in combination with normal *E-cadherin* and nonexpression of the transmembrane protein mucin 1 *(MUC1)*, is a favorable prognostic factor for patients with GC (Tanaka et al, 2003; Fondevila et al, 2004).

Abnormal gene profiling on *RBP4*, *OCT2*, *IGF2*, *PFN2*, *KIAA1093*, and *PCOLCW* and overexpression of three genes in the primary tumor (*BIK*, *Aurora kinase B*, and *eIF5A2*) are related to node metastasis (Hippo et al, 2002; Marchet et al, 2007). Matrix metalloproteinase-1 (MMP-1)-overexpressing GCs have a worse prognosis in terms of tumor invasion and metastasis than MMP-negative tumors (Noel et al, 2008). *VEGF* overexpression enhances tumor angiogenesis and thus is associated with lymph node metastasis, hepatic metastasis, and shorter survival time. As with breast cancer (see earlier), amplification/overexpression of the *Her2/neu* oncogene has been shown to be a potential independent unfavorable prognostic factor (Allgayer et al, 2000; Park et al, 2006). Overexpression of *EGFR* and β-catenin appears also to herald decreased survival and a less favorable prognosis (Jonjic et al, 1997; Zhou et al, 2002; Gamboa-Dominguez et al, 2004). In addition, mutation or abnormal expression of *p53* may predict a reduced cumulative survival and is associated with lymph node metastasis and lower chemosensitivity (Fondevila et al, 2004; Pinto-de-Sousa et al, 2004; Oh et al, 2008).

An alternative system, proposed by the World Health Organization, divides gastric cancer into papillary, tubular, mucinous (colloid), and poorly cohesive carcinomas (Lauwers et al, 2010). These classification systems have little clinical utility, making the development of robust classifiers that can guide patient therapy an urgent priority. Recently, The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) project proposed a molecular classification dividing gastric cancer into four subtypes: first were tumors positive for Epstein-Barr virus, which display recurrent PI3KCA mutations, extreme DNA hypermethylation, and amplification of JAK2, CD274 (also known as PD-L1) and PDCD1LG2 (also known as PD-L2); EBV-CIMP; CDKN2A silencing; and immune cell signaling. Second were microsatellite unstable tumors, which show elevated mutation rates, including mutations of genes encoding targetable oncogenic signaling proteins. Third were genomically stable tumors, which are enriched in the diffuse histologic variant and have mutations of *RHOA* or fusions involving RHO-family GTPase-activating proteins, CLDN18-ARHGAP fusion, or mutation in the cell adhesion gene CDH1. Fourth were tumors with chromosomal instability, which show intestinal histology, TP53 mutation, RTK-RAS activation, marked aneuploidy, and focal amplification of receptor tyrosine kinases (Bass et al, 2014). Importantly, these molecular subtypes showed distinct salient genomic features, providing a guide to targeted agents that should be evaluated in clinical trials for distinct populations of gastric cancer patients. Through existing testing for MSI and EBV and the use of emerging genomic assays that query focused gene sets for mutations and amplifications, the classification system developed through this study can be applied to new gastric cancer cases.

The ToGA trial, an international multicenter Phase III clinical study involving 24 countries globally, has shown that the anti-HER2/neu humanized monoclonal antibody trastuzumab (Herceptin) is effective in prolonging survival in patients with HER2/neu-positive adenocarcinoma of the stomach and the gastroesophageal junction (Bang et al, 2010). Molecular therapy targeting HER2/neu is now approved for patients with inoperable locally advanced, recurrent, or metastatic adenocarcinoma of the stomach or esophagogastric junction if the tumor shows unequivocal HER2/neu overexpression by IHC (score 3+) or amplification by FISH or CISH. Therefore, HER2 testing in gastric carcinoma is warranted for determination of treatment eligibility.

Treatment of GC, especially late-stage tumor, usually requires a multidisciplinary approach that includes chemotherapy in combination with surgical resection. Molecular markers for predicting therapeutic response have been studied, and several of them have been shown to be potentially useful clinically. These are discussed at length in Chapter 73.

COLORECTAL CANCER

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is the third most common malignancy worldwide (Ferlay et al, 2004). Prognostication of newly diagnosed CRC predominantly relies on stage or anatomic extent of disease based on the International Union Against Cancer and the American Joint Committee on Cancer staging classifications. However, CRC should be regarded as a heterogeneous, multipathway disease—an observation substantiated by the fact that histologically identical tumors may have neither similar prognosis nor similar response to therapy (Umar et al, 2004). Mutations and/or epigenetic alterations in TSGs (e.g., *APC*, *DCC*, *SMAD-2*, *SMAD-4*, *p53*) and oncogenes (e.g., *KRAS*, *p53*) are molecular determinants during the development of sporadic colorectal cancer, which was first summarized in the adenoma-carcinoma sequence described by Vogelstein and colleagues (Fearon & Vogelstein, 1990). Based on genetic background, sporadic CRCs can be subclassified into two major types: (1) chromosomal unstable and (2) microsatellite unstable, and an additional group with CpG island methylator phenotypes. Various genetic syndromes are known to predispose to colorectal carcinoma and to have specific inherited gene defects. These molecular markers are currently being investigated as a means of improving the identification of patients likely to have poor clinical outcomes, and therefore possibly benefiting from adjuvant treatment (Eschrich et al, 2005; Ghadimi et al, 2005; Liang et al, 2009).

EGFR, a receptor tyrosine kinase, overexpression is detected in up to 80% of colorectal cancers (Messa et al, 1998). Tumors with a high level of EGFR expression usually have a poor prognosis (Ghadimi et al, 2005; Liang et al, 2009). These data have led to the clinical use of EGFR blockade in the treatment of colorectal cancers with anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies such as cetuximab or panitumumab (see Chapter 75). Cetuximab is a mouse-human hybrid monoclonal antibody approved by the FDA in 2004 as second-line treatment of colorectal cancer. Panitumumab is a fully human immunoglobulin G_2 monoclonal antibody approved by the FDA in 2007 as third-line monoclonal antibody therapy of refractory colorectal cancer. Both drugs are expensive and have significant side effects. Thus, it is imperative to use a biomarker to predicate the therapeutic response. However, use of EGFR as a biomarker to predict response to EGFR monoclonal antibodies has had limited success. Only detection of increased EGFR copy number by FISH has predictive value (Liang et al, 2009), and it has been proven that EGFR expression levels detected by IHC are not so useful. In contrast to *EGFR* mutation in lung cancer, *EGFR* mutation in CRC is a rare event that occurs in fewer than 1% of cases (Plesec & Hunt, 2009). Current studies are focused on finding the downstream effectors of the EGFR pathway that may serve as biomarkers for predicting the effectiveness of anti-EGFR therapy.

As summarized earlier in this chapter and in Chapter 75, Ras-p21 proteins are guanosine triphosphate (GTP)-coupled proteins that are important in many receptor tyrosine kinases that utilize signaling on the Ras/Raf/Erk/Map kinase signal transduction pathway. Mutations that result in single amino acid substitutions at critical positions in the amino acid sequence of this protein, such as Gly 12, Gly 13, and Gln 61, occur in the Ras protein and cause its constitutive activation. This leads to a series of oncogenic events that activate downstream signaling pathways, promoting tumor initiation and tumor growth and progression, including local invasion, angiogenesis, metastasis, and even immune response (Rowinsky et al, 1999; Smakman et al, 2005).

The *KRAS* mutation occurs in at least 35% to 45% of cases of CRC and, in some series, in up to 75% of cases. Mutations of this gene occur almost exclusively in three hot spots (codons 12, 13, and 61) and rarely in others, including codon 146 (Ogino et al, 2005; Smakman et al, 2005). Because KRAS is the downstream effector of EGFR and is frequently mutated in CRC, the mutation status of *KRAS* has become an important predictive marker for the effectiveness of cetuximab or panitumumab on metastatic CRCs. The American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) has recommended that patients with diagnosed metastatic colon cancer who are candidates for anti-EGFR therapy should be tested for *KRAS* mutations in a Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA)-accredited laboratory. If negative for *KRAS* mutations, these patients are deemed suitable for treatment with anti-EGFR antibody (cetuximab or panitumumab) therapy. This recommendation is based on the results of phase II and III clinical trials. Retrospective subset analyses of these trial data suggest that patients who have *KRAS* mutations detected in codon 12 or 13 do not benefit from this therapy. This was further confirmed by five randomized, controlled trials of cetuximab or panitumumab response in relation to *KRAS* mutational status (no mutation [wild type] and mutated [abnormal]) and another five single-arm retrospective studies undertaken to evaluate tumor response according to *KRAS* mutational status.

According to the College of American Pathologist (CAP) Perspectives on Emerging Technology (POET) guideline published in 2009, acceptable samples for *KRAS* mutation include fresh, frozen, and FFPE tissues. Acceptable assay types are RT-PCR and direct sequencing analysis; however, other methods such as pyrosequencing or microarray (chip)-based tests have also been developed (Pajkos et al, 2000; Ogino et al, 2005). As of the time of this writing, no type of *KRAS* testing has been approved by the FDA. Although recommended testing is limited to codons 12 and 13 of exon 2, which make up the vast majority of cases with *KRAS* mutations, many laboratories and commercial kits also include testing for other mutations, such as for codons 61 and 146.

BRAF is an immediate downstream effector of *RAS* in the Ras/Raf/Map kinase pathway (see Fig. 77-1). Mutation of *BRAF* has been identified in approximately 10% of CRCs (Di Nicolantonio et al, 2008). A vast majority of the point mutations are V600E, a mutational hot spot at nucleotide 1796 within exon 15, accounting for a T:A transversion mutation and a valine-to-glutamic acid substitution. All point mutations occur within the kinase domain of B-Raf protein, leading to constitutive activation of B-raf kinase (Davies et al, 2002). The *BRAF* mutation is almost mutually exclusive with *KRAS* mutations. Unlike the *KRAS* mutation, *BRAF* mutations frequently occur in female patients older than 75 years of age with proximal lesions. These tumors exhibit MSI with higher frequency (Barault et al, 2008) than those in other patients with colon cancer, which appear to be due to epigenetic effects involving hypermethylation of the promoter regions of mismatch repair genes. This finding is of help in differentiating between sporadic MSI-H tumors with somatic mutations in the V600E hot spot in BRAF than Lynch-associated cancers with MLH1 or MSH2 mutations.

BRAF mutations in tumors have been characteristically associated with a worse survival than in those without mutations and with resistance to treatment with anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies, cetuximab, or panitumumab for metastatic CRCs. Currently, molecular testing for *BRAF* mutation V600E has been performed in many clinical laboratories as a therapeutic indicator for anti-EGFR treatment, in combination with *KRAS* mutation analysis (Siena et al, 2009).

PI3KCA is a membrane lipid kinase that phosphorylates the 3-hydroxyl group of phosphatidylinositol. This critical enzyme, which binds directly to ras-p21 protein, can be activated by EGFR-mediated signaling, in parallel with the K-ras/B-raf/MAP kinase pathway. Activation of PI3KCA counteracts PTEN, an antioncogene protein, and promotes AKT1 phosphorylation, stimulating cell proliferation, survival, and angiogenesis in cooperation with other pathways. The *PIK3CA* (phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate 3-kinase, catalytic subunit alpha) gene is mutated in about 20% of CRCs (Sartore-Bianchi et al, 2009). The mutation of *PIK3CA* usually occurs in the hot spots in exon 9 (E542K, E545K) and exon 20 (H1047R), both of which are oncogenic in CRC cellular models. Unlike the *BRAF* mutation, *PIK3CA* and *KRAS* mutations may coexist. In addition to their association with poor prognosis (i.e., local recurrence and increased mortality of CRCS), *PIK3CA* mutations can independently predict resistance to anti-EGFR therapy with panitumumab or cetuximab for metastatic CRCs (Ogino et al, 2009a; Sartore-Bianchi et al, 2009; Siena et al, 2009). Testing for combinations of the *PIK3CA/PTEN* and *KRAS* mutations can detect up to 70% of patients who are unlikely to respond to anti-EGFR therapy, although more validation is required for clinical practice (Siena et al, 2009).

Loss of PTEN has been found to co-occur with *KRAS*, *BRAF*, and *PIK3CA* mutations (Laurent-Puig et al, 2009; Frattini et al, 2007; Loupakis et al, 2009; Sartore-Bianchi et al, 2009a). The recorded frequency of loss of PTEN expression varies from 19% to 36%, with some studies reporting an effect on response rate and survival, whereas others found an effect only on progression-free or overall survival. Moreover, data on the loss of PTEN expression are not concordant in primary and metastatic tissues (Loupakis et al, 2009). It has been suggested that loss of PTEN expression, as determined by immunohistochemistry, is associated with lack of benefit from cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer. (Laurent-Puig et al, 2009; Frattini et al, 2007; Loupakis et al, 2009; Sartore-Bianchi et al, 2009b).

The *APC* gene, a tumor necrosis factor-stimulated gene (TSG), encodes a 2843-amino acid protein and is located on chromosome 5q21-22, regulating Wnt/β-catenin signaling (Phelps et al, 2009). Mutations of this gene can be point mutations or small deletions or insertions. The latter cause frameshifts that generate stop codons. Germ-line mutations of this gene are responsible for FAP, whereas somatic mutations occur in the majority of sporadic CRCs. Somatic mutations of this gene may initiate and promote carcinogenesis of sporadic CRCs, and can be found in early neoplastic stages, even in dysplastic cryptic foci (Varesco, 2004; Phelps

et al, 2009; Sweeney et al, 2009). CRCs with *APC* mutation usually are those with chromosomal instability or MSS (Luceri et al, 2002). The *APC* gene can serve as a biomarker for early detection, or as a risk factor for familial polyposis syndrome. Detection methods include various types of PCR, LOH, and others (Varesco, 2004). Screening for *APC* mutations may detect patients with relatively early CRC by purified DNA from routinely collected stool samples (Traverso et al, 2002).

p53 or TP53 is a tumor suppressor that regulates the cell cycle and is involved in apoptosis and DNA repair. This protein is discussed at length in Chapters 74 and 75. It is located on the short arm of chromosome 17 (17p13.1) (Isobe et al, 1986). Mutation or homozygous deletion of *TP53* is found in 40% to 50% of CRCs. Loss of wild-type *p53* activity is thought to be a major predictor of failure to respond to radiotherapy and chemotherapy in various human cancers, including CRCs, and predicts lower survival (Weller et al, 1998; Zlobec & Lugli, 2008). Although *TP53* mutation analysis has shown promising prognostic value, the American Society of Clinical Oncology Tumor Markers Expert Panel does not currently recommend its use in routine practice.

TGFBR1, *SMAD2*, and *SMAD4* are proteins involved in the transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) signaling pathway (see Chapter 75). SMAD proteins are the principal components mediating the TGF-β signaling pathway, which negatively regulates the growth of epithelial cells (Kouvidou et al, 2006). It has been found that germ-line allele-specific expression (ASE) of the gene encoding the TGF-β type I receptor (TGFBR1) occurs in 10% to 20% of CRCs in both familial (dominantly inherited and segregated) and sporadic forms (Valle et al, 2008). The presence of multiple-mutated TGF-β has been linked with poor prognosis in a subset of CRC patients. Approximately 50% to 60% of CRCs have been found to harbor *SMAD4* mutations (Woodford-Richens et al, 2001), but, in contrast, only a few have been found to have *SMAD2* mutations. Both *SMAD2* and *SMAD4* are mapped to chromosome 18q21 (Woodford-Richens et al, 2001; Miyaki & Kuroki, 2003). Most mutations of *SMAD2* and *SMAD4* occur in their so-called *MH2 domain*. Inactivation of the *SMAD4* gene through germ-line mutation and loss of the unaffected wild-type allele are responsible for familial juvenile polyposis, whereas inactivation of the *SMAD4* gene through homozygous deletion or intragenic mutation occurs frequently in CRC and pancreatic cancer. *SMAD4* mutation occurs at a later stage of colorectal carcinogenesis and is an indicator of advanced phenotypes. Loss or low levels of *SMAD4* expression in CRCs are found to be associated with poor prognosis following surgery and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU)-based adjuvant therapy; however, the predictive value of *SMAD4* mutation/inactivation is controversial (Miyaki & Kuroki, 2003; Alhopuro et al, 2005). Chromosomal loss at 18q encompassing both *SMAD2* and *SMAD4* has been reported in up to 70% of CRCs (Alhopuro et al, 2005). Patients with locally advanced stage II or stage III disease appear to demonstrate a significantly poorer prognosis with loss of 18q (Popat & Houlston, 2005).

MSI is involved in approximately 75% to 85% of CRCs, characterized by aneuploidy, allelic losses, amplifications, translocations, and mutations of *APC*, *KRAS*, and *TP53* (Jones et al, 2008). Although the prognosis of patients with MSI CRC is stage and grade dependent, tumors with identical morphologic features display considerable heterogeneity in terms of clinical outcome. The remaining 15% to 20% of CRCs have MSI-H characterized by inactivation of mismatch repair *(MMR)* genes (Umar et al, 2004), as discussed in Chapter 75. Sporadic *MSI-H* cases have been shown to arise predominantly through promoter hypermethylation and silencing of the *hMLH1* gene, in contrast to a hereditary form of *MSI-H* CRC, HNPCC, which typically shows germ-line mutations in one of the DNA *MMR* genes (Weisenberger et al, 2006). Tumors with *MSI-H* tend to be more proximally located, poorly differentiated, and of mucinous histologic type, and to show considerable lymphocytic infiltration; they have been linked with *TGFBRII* and *BRAF* mutations (Zlobec & Lugli, 2008). Patients with colon cancers demonstrating MSI-H have a stage-independent improved survival compared with patients with MSS tumors in most, although not all studies, but they do not benefit from treatment with 5-FU in randomized adjuvant therapy trials (Ribic et al, 2003). In stage II patients, when the tumor is MSI-H, no additional treatment is necessary, because based upon trial, further chemotherapy or radiation treatment will not be beneficial and can potentially be harmful for this group of patients.

The *CpG island methylator phenotype (CIMP$^+$)*, or simultaneous hypermethylation of the promoter regions of a number of TSGs, is one of the principal mechanisms of colorectal carcinogenesis, independent of chromosomal instability or MSI. CIMP$^+$ is found in approximately 20% of patients with CRCs. These patients usually are female and of more advanced age with a history of cigarette smoking. These cancers occur predominantly in the proximal colon and are associated with MSI, wild-type *TP53*, *BRAF* mutation, and β-catenin activation (Grady, 2007; Ogino et al, 2009b). The association between CIMP status and prognosis is controversial, however, and later studies suggest that the occurrence of CIMP appears to be an independent predictor of a low colon cancer–specific mortality and survival advantage and a high responsive rate to 5-FU–based treatment (Iacopetta et al, 2008; Ogino et al, 2009b). Additional studies including randomized clinical trials are required to confirm the value of CIMP$^+$ and associated molecular features for the prediction of clinical outcomes of CRCs.

Hereditary Colonic Cancer Syndrome

Approximately 5% to 10% of CRCs are hereditary, predominantly in a form of autosomal dominant transmission. Genetic polyposis syndrome accounts for less than 0.5% of all CRCs, whereas nonpolyposis forms of hereditary CRC are seen in a much higher percentage in overall hereditary CRCs (Lynch & de la Chapelle, 2003; Kievit et al, 2004). Following are the brief introduction for the genetics of common hereditary colonic cancer syndromes.

Familial Adenomatous Polyposis Syndrome

FAP is a rare disease that is characterized by numerous colorectal polyps (usually more than 100) (Winawer et al, 2003). Diagnosis of FAP is based on clinical and endoscopic findings. Classic FAP is an autosomal dominant inheritable disease, with nearly 100% penetrance. It is mainly attributable to the mutation/deletion of the *APC* gene, located at the long arm of chromosome 5. So far, more than 500 different germ-line *APC* mutations have been identified in FAP families (Varesco, 2004). About one third of patients are found to harbor de novo mutations. However, 5% to 30% of FAP patients show no *APC* mutations on current genetic testing. Among those patients with *APC*-negative FAP, biallelic mutations in a different gene, the *MutY human homologue (MYH)* gene, may be found. The *MYH* gene encodes a member of the base excision repair pathway that is involved in repairing oxidative damage to DNA. Those APC-negative FAP patients may have a family history compatible with recessive inheritance (Sieber et al, 2003; Varesco, 2004), indicating that this may be a different disease. Genetic testing may be helpful in screening and diagnosis of atypical FAP cases and in the management of affected patients. PCR-based methods have been developed to detect *APC* germ-line mutations (Varesco, 2004).

Hereditary Nonpolyposis Colorectal Cancer (Lynch Syndrome)

Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC) is an autosomal dominant genetic condition, characterized by high predisposition to CRC and other cancers outside of the colorectum, including the genitourinary and female reproduction systems, the upper gastrointestinal tract, the hepatobiliary tract, brain, and skin. Approximately 3% of all diagnosed cases of CRC belong to HNPCC, which makes it the most common hereditary CRC-predisposing syndrome (Lynch & de la Chapelle, 2003; Lynch et al, 2009). It has been found to have lifetime risks of approximately 80% for CRC and 40% to 60% for endometrial disease. Colorectal cancer develops in younger patients (average 45 years of age), and two thirds of these cancers occur in the proximal colon. Histologically, HNPCC is not associated with a large number of colorectal polyps as seen in FAP; rather, it forms a large nonpolypoid malignant lesion. Compared with sporadic CRC of equivalent staging, patients with HNPCC may have a better response to chemotherapy and better clinical outcomes (Lynch et al, 2009).

The molecular basis for the development of HNPCC is due to MSI, which is a consequence of inherited or germ-line mutations of DNA *MMR* genes. Among the nine *MMR* genes discovered, mutations in *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *MSH6*, *MLH3*, and *PMS2* are associated with the development of HNPCC (Peltomaki, 2005). The significance of mutations in two other *MMR* genes, *TGFBR2* and *PMS1*, is less clear (Table 77-3). Among those identifiable mutations associated with HNPCC, 90% occur in *MLH1* or *MSH2* (Chung & Rustgi, 2003), 7% to 10% in *MSH6*, and 1% to 2% in *PMS2* or *MLH3* (Lawes et al, 2005). Most germ-line mutations in *MSH2* lead to complete loss of gene expression, and usually are accompanied by loss of expression of *MSH6*. CRC with *MLH1* mutation is frequently caused by missense mutations. Mutations of *MMR* genes cause abnormal mismatch repair function, failing to correct a larger number of insertions and deletions, eventually leading to frameshift within the microsatellites or MSI (Jacob & Praz, 2002; de Vos et al, 2005). However, approximately 50% of all HNPCCs have no identifiable mutations in *MMR* genes according to current methods of detection (Umar et al, 2004).

TABLE 77-3
Molecular Genetics of Hereditary Nonpolyposis Colorectal Cancer

MMR Gene	OMIM Name	Chromosomal Locus	% of HNPCC with Mutation
MLH1	HNPCC2	3p21	50
MSH2	HNPCC1	2p16	40
MSH6	HNPCC5	2p15	≈7-10
PMS2	HNPCC4	7p22	1-2
MLH3	HNPCC7	14q24.3	1
PMS1a	HNPCC3	7p22	Unclear
TGFBR2	HNPCC6	3p22	Case report

HNPCC, Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer; *MMR,* mismatch repair; *OMIM,* Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man (database).

Two rare but distinct variants of HNPCC are known: 1) Muir-Torre syndrome, resulting from mutations in the *MSH2* gene and showing coexisting sebaceous skin tumors with small and large intestinal, gastric, kidney, endometrial, and ovarian cancer (Lynch et al, 2009); and 2) Turcot's syndrome, resulting from mutations in the *MLH1* and *PMS2* genes and showing coexistent glioblastoma with colorectal CRCs (Abdel-Rahman & Peltomaki, 2004).

The diagnosis of HNPCC is based mainly on clinical information and familial history. Genetic testing has been introduced for diagnostic purposes. A testing kit for germ-line mutations is commercially available for blood samples. *MMR* dysfunction can be analyzed by immunohistochemistry on paraffin-embedded tissues. PCR and sequencing are methods commonly used to detect MSI. According to the Bethesda Guidelines, five microsatellite markers are to be tested. Of these, three are dinucleotide repeats, and two mononucleotide repeats. MSI-H is defined as LOH in two or more of five markers in tumor tissue compared with a normal tissue control. However, although it is a sensitive test, MSI testing is not specific for HNPCC, as HNPCC can be MSI-low and MSI-stable in some cases, and sporadic CRCs may also show MSI-H. Thus, genetic testing may be useful only after patients at risk for HNPCC are identified by the Amsterdam or Bethesda clinical criteria (Abdel-Rahman & Peltomaki, 2004; Umar et al, 2004; Lynch et al, 2009).

Familial Juvenile Polyposis Syndrome

Familial juvenile polyposis syndrome (JPS) is a rare disorder inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion in at least 30% of patients. The incidence of JPS is approximately 1 per 100,000 births, and it is the most common of the hamartomatous syndromes (Schreibman et al, 2005).

Germ-line mutations of *SMAD4*, *BMPR1A*, and *ENG* have all been described in patients with JPS. *SMAD4* is located on chromosome 18q21.1 and usually is found to be mutated in approximately 15% of cases of JPS (Mishra et al, 2006). *BMPR1A* (bone morphogenetic protein receptor type 1A), located on chromosome 10q22.3, is a serine threonine kinase that is a mediator of the bone morphogenetic protein intracellular signaling pathway (Zbuk & Eng, 2007). It has been identified as mutated in about 25% of affected patients with JPS. Both genes mentioned previously encode proteins that are involved in the TGF-β signaling pathway, which is an important modulator of many cellular processes (e.g., cell growth, apoptosis, growth arrest) (Zhou et al, 2003).

The lifetime risk for CRC is about 70%, and the risk for pancreatic, gastric, and duodenal carcinoma is increased in these patients (Gatalica & Torlakovic, 2008). Molecular screening of individuals at risk within a JPS family for a known genetic mutation would allow clinicians to make the diagnosis at an earlier age, and would lead to closer endoscopic screening and follow-up. Individuals without the mutation would need less frequent endoscopic screening and perhaps endoscopy only after 50 years of age, as is provided in the normal population. Therefore, genetic testing can help to define the recommended interval for screening and surveillance; it is hoped that it will help to prevent malignancy by early polypectomy and heightened surveillance (Mishra et al, 2006).

Peutz-Jeghers Syndrome

Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (PJS) is an autosomal dominant hamartomatous polyposis syndrome characterized by melanotic mucocutaneous hyperpigmentation and gastrointestinal hamartomas, which occur anywhere from the stomach to the anus, with a prevalence of approximately 1 in 200,000. Polyps usually are fewer than 20 in number and are most prevalent in the small intestine (Bourke et al, 2006). The only identifiable germ-line mutation causing PJS is seen in the *STK11* (also known as *LKB1*) gene. PJS patients have increased risk for esophageal, gastrointestinal, and pancreatic cancer, and the risk for these cancers markedly increases with age. By 65 years of age, the risk for CRC is about 39% (Gatalica & Torlakovic, 2008). In women with PJS, the risk for breast cancer is also reported to be substantially increased. PJS patients need to be educated as to the resources available for genetic testing, which can be very helpful, although the diagnosis can be made clinically in most cases when the family history is positive. A positive *LKB1* mutation test will confirm that individuals need careful screening and follow-up, and a negative test will allow individuals to be spared of unnecessary screening procedures (Schreibman et al, 2005).

Serrated Polyposis Syndrome (Formerly Known as Hyperplastic Polyposis Syndrome)

Serrated polyposis syndrome usually presents in the sixth decade with approximately 100 hyperplastic or serrated polyps or sessile adenomas identified on colonscopy. The presence of more than five large hyperplastic polyps proximal to the sigmoid colon is one indication that this syndrome might affect the patient. The inheritance pattern in a study was compatible with an autosomal recessive mode of transmission (Young & Jass, 2006). Depending on the studies, the risk for developing colon cancer ranges from 37% to 69%. Up to 70% of colonic neoplasms in serrated polyposis syndrome have a *BRAF* mutation. By comparison, the *BRAF* mutation is extremely rare in Lynch syndrome and is found in only 15% of unselected colorectal carcinomas. Another molecular trait of patients with the serrated polyposis syndrome is the presence of numerous sites of DNA methylation, including methylation of MLH1, in the polyps and in carcinomas.

MYH Polyposis and Inherited Colon Cancer Due to MYH Inactivation

This syndrome was discovered when a family with multiple adenomas and colon cancer had no germ-line mutation of APC, but instead a germ-line mutation in a gene located on the short arm of chromosome 1, called *MUTYH glycosylase* (now referred to as *MYH*). The normal function of the gene is to repair DNA damage occurring as a result of oxidation; in particular, oxidative damage caused by an oxidized form of guanine, which acts as a mutagen. The repair performed by MYH consists of removing adenine when it inappropriately pairs with the oxidized form of guanine, or guanine itself. If not repaired by MYH, oxidized guanine is recognized as thymine during DNA replication and, therefore, aberrantly pairs with adenine. The function of the wild-type MYH-encoded protein is to recognize this mispaired adenine and excise the mispair. When MYH is mutated, this repair function is lost and C:G to T:A transversion persists, and may involve several important genes, such as KRAS, which is often mutated in this condition. Most *MYH* mutations are located at Y165C and G382D, and are found in up to 2% of the general population. Unlike FAP, MYH polyposis has an autosomal recessive mode of transmission. Patients with heterozygous *MYH* mutations in their germ-line DNA have a 1.3-fold increased risk for developing colorectal cancer, compared to a 177-fold increase in subjects with bi-allelic mutations. Colorectal cancers associated with germ-line biallelic *MYH* mutations are more likely to be low grade as compared to sporadic carcinomas, or in cancers found in carriers of monoallelic MYH mutations (O'Shea et al, 2008). Hyperplastic and serrated polyps are present in MYH-associated polyposis and, characteristically they contain G:C to T:A transversions in the *KRAS* gene (Boparai et al, 2008). Although inconsistent, it was found that the presence of multiple hyperplastic polyps in the context of adenomatous polyposis is an indication that the polyposis could be due to an *MYH* genetic alteration (Jass, 2008).

MYH-associated polyposis is associated with extracolonic manifestations, with duodenal adenomas or carcinomas found in up to 17% of patients (Vogt et al, 2009). Also, ovarian, bladder, and skin cancers are found at higher frequency, compared to sporadic colorectal cancer cases. Molecular methods, such as PCR followed by denaturing high-pressure liquid chromatography (dHPLC), are required to test germ-line DNA (Croitoru et al, 2007).

PANCREATIC CANCER (NON-NEUROENDOCRINE TUMOR)

Pancreatic cancer is one of the lead causes of cancer-related death worldwide (Parkin et al, 2001) and ranks as the fourth most common cause of

cancer death in the United States (Jemal et al, 2008). Most pancreatic cancer is of exocrine origin, and most cases involve invasive ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) and its variants (Hruban & Fukushima, 2007; Ranganathan et al, 2009). Other nonendocrine, nonductal carcinomas such as acinic cell carcinoma, solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm, and pancreatoblastoma are uncommon (Hruban & Adsay, 2009). It should be noted, however, that the actual cell of origin of certain pancreatic carcinomas is not known, and much debate continues regarding this issue.

Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma is the result of accumulation of inherited (germ-line) or acquired (somatic or epigenetic) gene mutations, or both, including oncogenes such as, most prominently, mutated (Val-for-Gly 12) *K-RAS*-p21; TSGs such as *p53*, *p16*, and *SMAD4;* and genome maintenance genes such as *BRCA2*, telomerase, and MSI (Su & Kern, 2000; Ranganathan et al, 2009). Oncogenic ras-p21 protein has been identified in more than 90% of human pancreatic cancers and therefore is considered a major causative factor in this disease (see Chapter 75).

The genetic alterations that have been observed in pancreatic cancer may be reflected by chromosome gain, loss, or copy number changes. PDACs frequently have loss of chromosomes 18, 17, 6, 21, 22, Y, 10, 4, 15p, 14p 5, 13p, 9p, 21p, and 17p (Johansson et al, 1992; Ranganathan et al, 2009). Among them, allelic loss of chromosome 18 is the most common event, and about one third of pancreatic carcinomas have a consensus region of homozygous deletion at 18q21 (Hahn et al, 1996a). More specific genetic alterations or mutations have been identified by many studies using different molecular approaches. One study by Jones and colleagues (2008) identified more than 1500 somatic mutations affecting 1007 genes in pancreatic cancers. Activation of *KRAS* (95%), inactivation of *p16/CDKN2A* (75% to 80% mutation and 15% hypermethylation), *TP53* (80%), and inactivation of *SMAD4* (95%) are the most frequent and well-known gene mutations (Hruban et al, 1993; Caldas et al, 1994; Redston et al, 1994; Hahn et al, 1996b; Jones et al, 2008). Activating point mutation of *KRAS* occurs commonly in codon 12 and much less frequently in codons 13 and 61. Germ-line mutations in *BRCA2*, a predisposing factor to pancreatic cancer, are frequently detected in the Ashkenazi Jewish population (Ranganathan et al, 2009). Inactivation of genes by hypermethylation is also important in the development of pancreatic cancer. Aberrant methylation has been identified in the promoter regions of *p16/CDKN2A*, *APC*, *TSLC/IGSF4*, *SOCS-1*, *cyclin D2*, *RASSF1A*, *WWOX*, *RUNX3*, *CDH13*, *DUSP6*, *HHIP*, and *SLC5A8*, and in pancreatic cancer and precancerous lesions (Sato et al, 2002; Ranganathan et al, 2009). Those gene mutations or genetic alterations may affect one or more signaling pathways and MSI. As stated earlier, the most commonly affected signaling pathways include the EGFR/RAS/MAPK pathway and, in addition, the PI3K/AKT pathway, VEGF, the WNT/β-catenin pathway, and TGF-β signaling (Buchholz & Gress, 2009; Hruban & Adsay, 2009). MicroRNAs are also associated with pancreatic carcinogenesis. miR-216, miR-196a, miR-217, and miR-210 were identified specifically for or were frequently associated with PDAC (Bloomston et al, 2007; Szafranska et al, 2007; Hoimes et al, 2009).

Precancerous lesions including pancreatic intraductal neoplasia (PanIN) and intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasms (IPMNs) may also have *KRAS*, *TP53*, *SMAD4*, and *p16/CDKN2A* mutations, as seen in PDACs (Hruban & Adsay, 2009; Ranganathan et al, 2009). However, intestinal-type IPMNs, a precursor to invasive colloid carcinomas, always have intact *SMAD4/DPC4* and harbor *PI3KCA* mutations in 10% of cases; this usually does not occur in PDACs (Hruban & Adsay, 2009; Ranganathan et al, 2009).

Pancreatic cancer other than PDACs shows different molecular genetics. The major genetic alteration of medullary carcinoma is characterized by MSI (Hruban & Adsay, 2009). Colloid carcinoma frequently shows CDX2/MUC2 expression (Hruban & Adsay, 2009). Undifferentiated carcinoma may have loss of E-cadherin. Acinar carcinomas are, on the basis of some studies, thought not to have activation of *KRAS* and inactivation of *TP53*, *p16/CDKN2A*, or *SMAD4*, as seen in PDACs, but may have loss of chromosome 11p and *APC/β-catenin* gene mutations in some cases (Hoorens et al, 1993; Abraham et al, 2002; Hruban & Adsay, 2009). On the other hand, nontransformed pancreatic acinar cells in culture are readily and stably transformed into malignant pancreatic cancer cells by transfection of oncogenic *K-ras* or by exposure to carcinogens present in cigarette smoke, a known major risk factor for developing this disease. A common finding in these transformed acinar cells is oncogenic ras-p21.

Solid-pseudopapillary neoplasms commonly have abnormal expression of β-catenin (Hruban & Adsay, 2009). The most common genetic abnormality in pancreatoblastomas is loss of one copy of the short arm of chromosome 11 near the *WT-2* locus (11p15.5) (Abraham et al, 2001; Kerr et al, 2002). Those genetic differences may dictate their different morphology and clinical/biological behaviors in different types of pancreatic exocrine carcinomas.

A vast majority of pancreatic cancers are sporadic; however, familial forms have also been reported. Familial pancreatic cancers most often are associated with many genetic cancer syndromes, including hereditary breast and ovarian cancer syndrome, Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, HNPCC syndrome, FAP, familial pancreatic cancer, and hereditary pancreatitis (associated with mutations of *PRSS1* and *SPINK1*) (see respective sections later in the chapter).

The molecular changes noted in pancreatic cancer, as described previously, may serve as diagnostic markers. Detection of mutations of *KRAS*, telomerase *(hTERT)*, and others has been used or proposed for the diagnosis of pancreatic carcinoma, which can be potentially applied in surgically resected pancreatic specimens and pancreatic fluid samples (Seki et al, 2001; Mishra et al, 2006), although the usefulness of these techniques requires further evaluation (Fry et al, 2008). The levels of *hTERT* expression could differentiate PDACs from adenoma and pancreatitis (Nakashima et al, 2009). Although deletion/inactivation of *SMAD4* is also a relatively highly frequent event in pancreatic cancer, it is not specific. Thus, its utility in molecular diagnosis requires further evaluation (Hruban & Adsay, 2009; Ranganathan et al, 2009). Aberrant methylation of certain genes may also have diagnostic utility (Matsubayashi et al, 2006; Ranganathan et al, 2009). Yan and colleagues showed that a panel of molecular markers (methylated *p16*, *p53* mutations, and *KRAS* mutations) could stratify patients in high-risk groups from negligible risk to greater than 50% probability of an early cancer (Yan et al, 2005). In addition, the expression pattern of a group of 112 miRNAs could correctly distinguish pancreatic cancer tissue from adjacent normal and benign tissues, including pancreatitis. Three of the top differentially expressed miRNAs (miR-221, -376a, and -301) were specifically localized to pancreatic carcinoma, but not to the stroma or to normal acini or ducts (Lee et al, 2007; Liang et al, 2009). Other potentially useful diagnostic markers for pancreatic cancers include miR-217 and miR-196a (Szafranska et al, 2007).

Amplification of *KRAS2* and *CMYC* and loss of *TP53* genes are found to be correlated with tumor grade and survival (Ranganathan et al, 2009). Alterations of *p16* and *hTERT* may also be a prognostic indicator of pancreatic cancer, which conferred a worse outcome by univariate and multivariate analysis (Kumari et al, 2009). Giovannetti found that patients with high levels of human equilibrative nucleoside transporter-1 (hENT1) mRNA had significantly longer overall survival than patients with a low level of hENT1 expression, suggesting that hENT1 levels may be a predictor of survival (Giovannetti et al, 2006; Liang et al, 2009). Iacobuzio-Donahue found that *SMAD4/DPC4* loss is usually associated with death related to multiple metastases, whereas patients found to have intact *SMAD4* genes are more likely to have localized disease, although many of these cancers are also fatal (Hruban & Adsay, 2009; Iacobuzio-Donahue et al, 2009). The presence of microRNAs, miR-21, and miR-196a-2 has been found to be a significant predictor of poor survival (Bloomston et al, 2007; Dillhoff et al, 2008). *BRCA2* gene mutation, seen in 7% of PDACs and in more cases of familial disease, is a predicting marker for responsiveness to poly-(adenosine diphosphate [ADP]-ribose) polymerase-1 (PARP) inhibitors and to DNA cross-linking agents such as mitomycin C (Helleday et al, 2005; van der Heijden et al, 2005; McCabe et al, 2006). RedPath Integrated Pathology recently developed the PathFinderTG pancreas molecular test, which is intended to be used adjunctively when a definitive pathologic diagnosis cannot be made, because of inadequate specimen or equivocal histologic or cytologic findings. This test uses loss of heterozygosity markers, oncogene mutations, and DNA content abnormalities to stratify patients according to their risk for progression to cancer. The sample can be taken from pancreatobiliary fluid/ERCP, a brush, pancreatic masses, or pancreatic tissue. Similarly, the PathFinderTG Biliary on Biliary brush/supernatants uses oncogene mutations and loss of heterozygosity markers to identify whether patients with biliary strictures have a malignant neoplasm or benign reactive disease.

KIDNEY TUMOR

Based on the 2012 consensus conference of the International Society of Urological Pathology, there are several kidney tumors with defined genetic alterations proposed (Srigley et al, 2013).

Clear Cell Renal Cell Carcinoma (RCC)

Clear cell RCC, the most common subtype of renal cancer (50% to 70%), is characterized by an encapsulated solid mass with alveolar or acinar arrangement of clear polygonal cells. Chromosome 3p deletion is seen in

70% to 90% of cases (Crossey et al, 1994; Lonser et al, 2003), and TSG von Hippel–Lindau (VHL) located on 3p25 is consistently inactivated in 100% of familial renal cancer syndromes and 57% of sporadic cases (Gnarra et al, 1994). The VHL protein regulates expression of the transcription factor, hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF), implicated in tumor growth and angiogenesis. VHL syndrome–associated clear cell carcinoma is caused by a germ-line mutation at birth in one copy of the *VHL* gene, and a second hit can result from deletion, nonsense mutations, allelic loss, or hypermethylation of the VHL promoter region. Loss of both *VHL* genes leads to tumorigenesis.

Papillary RCC

Papillary RCC is the second most common type of renal carcinoma, constituting 10% to 15% of renal cancers, and can be morphologically classified into 2 types (Kovacs et al, 1989). Type I is characterized architecturally by fibrovascular papillae lined by a single layer of cuboidal neoplastic cells with small, uniform, oval nuclei with inconspicuous nucleoli (Fuhrman nuclear grades I to II) and a pale basophilic cytoplasm. In contrast, type II papillary carcinomas are composed of fibrovascular papillae lined by a pseudostratified layer of larger neoplastic cells that have large pleomorphic nuclei with prominent nucleoli (Fuhrman nuclear grades II to III) and an abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm. Papillary carcinomas containing histologic features of both types are occasionally encountered. Because of the difficulty in classifying these tumors with mixed features, clinical studies examining the survival of patients with these carcinomas often do not distinguish between types I and II (Delahunt et al, 2013). It has been suggested that type II papillary RCC is associated with a more aggressive behavior, usually presenting at higher stage, and carries worse survival than type I papillary RCC (Mejean et al, 2003; Pignot et al, 2007). Conventionally, the most common chromosomal abnormality of papillary RCC involves trisomies of chromosomes 7 and 17 and loss of chromosome Y. Additionally, loss of 9q correlated with reduced survival in these tumors. By comparative genomic hybridization analyses, it was found that full-length gains of chromosomes 7 and 17 are more frequently detected in type I papillary RCC than in type II tumors (Jiang et al, 1998).

Inherited forms of type 1 and 2 tumors are described for conditions known as *hereditary papillary renal cell* and as *hereditary leiomyomatosis and RCC (HLRCC)*, respectively. While germ-line met proto-oncogene (MET) and fumarate hydratase (FH) mutations are the hallmark of these syndromes, these genetic abnormalities are not frequently observed in sporadic forms of these malignancies (Schmidt et al, 1997; Kiuru et al, 2002).

Chromophobe Tumors

Chromophobe tumors commonly have widespread copy number alterations seen at chromosomes 1, 2, 6, 10, 13, and 17 (Tan et al, 2010). Patients with the hereditary RCC syndrome (Birt-Hogg-Dubé [BHD] syndrome) exhibit chromophobe histology in 30% of tumors (Pavlovich et al, 2002). While mutations in the folliculin (FLCN) gene are associated with this hereditary syndrome (Nickerson et al, 2002), this genetic abnormality is rarely found in sporadic non-BHD cases of chromophobe RCC (Nagy et al, 2004).

Micropthalmia Transcription Factor (MiT) Family Translocation Renal Cell Carcinoma

A class of tumors called *translocation renal tumors* involves somatic translocations of transcription factors that are members of the MiT family. Transcription factors binding to IGHM enhancer 3 (TFE3) and transcription factor EB (TFEB) located on chromosomes Xp11 and 6p21, respectively, have diverse tissue-specific functions and are included in this category. At least five recurrent translocations of TFE3 are known to occur. TFEB translocations are less common, with only 30 confirmed cases reported in the literature (Green et al, 2013). Translocation leads to high levels of expression of TFE3 or TFEB fusion protein(s) with increased nuclear localization (Weterman et al, 2000; Tsuda et al, 2007), subsequently activating their target genes.

TFE3 and TFEB translocation renal tumors appear to be more common in women. Additionally, cytotoxic chemotherapy during childhood is a suspected risk factor for developing these lesions (Argani et al, 2006). In fact, translocation tumors are one of the most common renal malignancies in adolescents and young adults, accounting for approximately one third of cases (Bruder et al, 2004). Similar to other rare subtypes of RCC, translocation tumors exhibit extremely aggressive clinical behavior and are associated with early nodal involvement (Geller et al, 2008).

Xp11 Translocation or TFE 3-Associated RCC

Renal cell carcinoma with Xp11 translocation is a recently recognized entity with unique morphology and genetic characteristics. The most common translocations associated with these tumors are t(X;17)(p11.2;q25), the same cytogenetic abnormality (with identical breakpoints) observed in alveolar soft part sarcomas, which gives rise to the *ASPL-TFE3* fusion gene, and t(X;1)(p11.2;q21), which results in the *PRCC-TFE3* fusion gene.

In this entity, translocation fuses the *TFE3* transcription factor gene at Xp11.2 to *ASPL*, a novel gene at 17q25, or 1q21, which results in the fusion protein ASPL-TFE3 or PRCC-TFE3, respectively (Tomlinson et al, 1991; Meloni et al, 1992, 1993; Hernandez-Marti et al, 1995; Sidhar et al, 1996; Carcao et al, 1998; Heimann et al, 1998; Argani et al, 2001; Heimann et al, 2001; Ladanyi et al, 2001; Argani et al, 2002; Argani & Ladanyi, 2003a). Both the *ASPL-TFE3* and *PRCC-TFE3* fusion genes encode chimeric gene products that retain the ability of the TFE3 protein to migrate to the nucleus and participate in transcriptional activation of target genes (Weterman et al, 2000; Skalsky et al, 2001). Originally described to affect the pediatric age group and now recognized in both pediatric and adult populations, the age at diagnosis for Xp11 renal tumor ranges from 17 months to 78 years of age (Argani et al, 2001, 2006, 2007). It is interesting to note that pediatric tumors show no particular sex preference, whereas adult tumors demonstrate a strong female predilection (Argani et al, 2002, 2007).

Grossly, the tumors resemble clear cell RCCs (Argani et al, 2001). The histopathologic appearance is that of papillary carcinoma (Argani & Ladanyi, 2003b). ASPL-TFE3 renal carcinomas are characterized by voluminous, clear to eosinophilic cytoplasm of the cells, discrete cell borders, vesicular nuclear chromatin, and prominent nucleoli (Argani et al, 2001). Psammoma bodies are constant and sometimes extensive, often arising within characteristic hyaline nodules. In contrast, PRCC-TFE3 renal carcinomas generally feature less abundant cytoplasm, fewer psammoma bodies, fewer hyaline nodules, and a more nested, compact architecture (Argani et al, 2002). Renal carcinomas with Xp11.2-associated translocations characteristically underexpress cytokeratin, epithelial membrane, and vimentin antigen by immunohistochemistry. The tumors, however, consistently label for the RCC marker antigen and CD10, similar to conventional renal carcinomas. The most distinctive immunohistochemical feature of these tumors is the nuclear pattern for the TFE3 protein using an antibody to the C-terminal portion of TFE3, which is retained in the gene fusions (Argani & Ladanyi, 2003a)—a common feature in all Xp11.2-associated carcinomas and ASPS, and not in other adult-type renal carcinomas (Argani & Ladanyi, 2003a).

(6;11) Translocation TFEB-Associated RCC

A lesser well-known member of the translocation RCC family are tumors characterized by the t(6;11)(p21;q12), which results in an *Alpha-TFEB* gene fusion. This neoplasm typically demonstrates distinctive biphasic morphology, comprising larger and smaller epithelioid cells, with the latter often clustered around basement membrane material; however, the full spectrum of the morphologic appearances of the t(6;11) RCC is not known. Cases without the small cell component and instead dominated by sclerosis, clear cells, or papillary architecture have been reported. The t(6;11) RCC differs from most conventional RCCs in that they consistently express melanocytic IHC markers such as HMB-45 and Melan-A but are either negative or only focally positive for epithelial markers such as cytokeratins. Nuclear labeling for TFEB protein by IHC is a sensitive and specific assay for these neoplasms (Argani et al, 2005). However, IHC is highly fixation dependent and has proven to be particularly difficult for this protein. Recently, a break-apart FISH assay for *TFEB* gene fusions has been developed for archival material and has allowed expansion of the clinical and morphologic spectrum of the t(6;11) RCC (Argani et al, 2012).

Succinate Dehydrogenase B (SDHB) Mutation–Associated RCC

Renal carcinomas have been reported with germ-line SDHB mutations that are associated with pheochromocytoma/paraganglioma syndrome type 4 (PGL4) (Gill et al, 2011). This syndrome is characterized by a predilection to pheochromocytoma, paraganglioma, so-called type 2 gastrointestinal stromal tumors (similar to those frequently seen in children and in association with Carney syndrome), and an estimated approximate 14% lifetime risk for renal neoplasia. Fewer than 10 cases of RCC associated with germ-line *SDHB* mutations have been reported. Most have

affected young adults, with most having an indolent course on limited follow-up. Morphologically, these neoplasms are most usually unencapsulated and composed of compact nests of eosinophilic polygonal cells, with entrapped renal tubules at the periphery. The cells may have vacuolated cytoplasm or distinctive pale eosinophilic cytoplasmic inclusions, which correspond to giant mitochondria by ultrastructural examination. Loss of the SDHB protein by IHC is reported to be a sensitive and specific marker for these neoplasms.

ALK Translocation RCC

Two cases of RCC harboring a t(2;10)(p23;q22) translocation resulting in a fusion of the gene for the cytoskeletal protein vinculin (VCL) with the anaplastic lymphoma kinase *(ALK)* gene have been reported. Both cases occurred in young patients (6 and 16 years of age) with sickle cell trait (raising the differential diagnosis of renal medullary carcinoma [RMC]) and demonstrated distinctive morphology characterized by polygonal to spindle cells with abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm and frequent intracytoplasmic lumina. Although the case numbers are small, the findings suggest that VCL-ALK RCC have distinctive clinical and pathologic features. A recent study from Japan identified two further RCCs in adults (36 and 53 years of age) associated with ALK fusions involving partner genes (TPM3, EML4) other than VCL (Sugawara et al, 2012). Interestingly, neither of these cases was associated with sickle cell trait, and morphology (papillary and unclassified) was different from that reported for the VCL-ALK fusion. The Mayo Clinic Group recently reported two additional ALK-positive cases (fusion partner not determined) in adults, both of which demonstrated clear cells and papillary architecture and behaved aggressively (Sukov et al, 2012).

Hereditary Renal Cell Carcinoma Syndromes

Nearly 5% of patients with renal malignancy may harbor hereditary RCC syndromes. Hybrid oncocytic tumors (HOT) containing both chromophobe and oncocytoma histologic components are now recognized as a distinct class of malignancy (Srigley et al, 2013). Patients with BHD have a germ-line alteration in the *FLCN* gene, and 50% of tumors that form in these individuals have HOT components (Pavlovich et al, 2002). The majority of BHD associated hybrid tumors are small (median size, 2.2 cm) and appear to exhibit indolent clinical behavior (Pavlovich et al, 2002). Sporadic hybrid tumors that are not associated with BHD also have been described. Similar to BHD tumors, they also appear to have a fairly indolent disease course (Petersson et al, 2010).

HLRCC is another recently recognized hereditary syndrome that markedly raises the risk in afflicted patients for developing RCC. This syndrome is characterized by a germ-line mutation in the *FH* gene, and is associated with uterine and cutaneous leiomyomas, adrenal nodules, and an aggressive form of papillary kidney cancer (Tomlinson et al, 2002). These tumors are generally large (median size, 7.8 cm) and present with distant metastases in about 50% of cases (Grubb et al, 2007). Although patients with HLRCC generally harbor tumors with papillary type 2 characteristics, other morphologic subtypes have been described. Merino and colleagues described the presence of a large nucleus containing a prominent orangophilic nucleolus surrounded by a clear perinucleolar halo as the hallmark characteristic of HLRCC renal tumor (Merino et al, 2007).

Gene Expression Profiling by Affymetrix in RCC

Genome-wide gene expression studies have demonstrated distinct molecular signatures for distinct variants of RCC, including clear cell RCC, papillary RCC, chromophobe RCC, oncocytoma, and angiomyolipoma using Affymetrix oligonucleotide microarrays (Affymetrix Inc., Santa Clara, Calif.) (Schuetz et al, 2005). Clear cell RCC showed increased expression in genes of the immune response and in angiogenesis genes, related to rich tumor vascularity, whereas chromophobe RCCs and oncocytomas overexpress energy pathway genes, correlated with abundant mitochondria in chromophobe RCC and oncocytoma (Moch et al, 1996). Another study demonstrated that clear cell RCC overexpressed the proximal nephron markers megalin and cubilin; papillary RCC strongly overexpressed the proximal nephron marker α-methylacyl coenzyme A (CoA) racemase; and chromophobe RCC and oncocytoma overexpressed the distal nephron markers β-defensin-1, parvalbumin, chloride channel Kb, claudin-7, claudin-8, and epidermal growth factor (Young et al, 2008). These results of Affymetrix profiling lead to molecular classification of renal tumors (Tickoo et al, 2000; Higgins et al, 2003). They also have proved useful in prognosis and therapeutic selection by discovery of novel immunohistochemical markers (Yao et al, 2005; Rohan et al, 2006; Cifola et al, 2008).

Several RCC biomarkers have been verified as potential prognostic markers using immunohistochemistry. For example, adipophilin, which was discovered as a clear cell RCC biomarker using gene expression microarrays, was subsequently associated with favorable outcome by immunohistochemistry (Yao et al, 2005). Many genes overexpressed in RCC are therapeutically significant. Angiogenesis genes are overexpressed in clear cell RCC, likely related to VHL and HIF1A dysregulation, both of which result in activation of multiple angiogenic tyrosine kinase molecules (e.g., vascular endothelial growth factor [VEGF], platelet-derived growth factor [PDGF]). Tyrosine kinase inhibitors (e.g., sunitinib, sorafenib) proved to have a significant role in metastatic RCC. Angiogenic and immune response regulators both increase expression of carbonic anhydrase IX, which is the target of G250 monoclonal antibody therapy for RCC. Affymetrix profiling may be used in the near future in personalized medicine for tumor classification and prognosis.

BLADDER CANCER

Bladder cancer is the second most common malignancy affecting the urinary system. Urothelial carcinoma (i.e., transitional cell carcinoma) is the most common form of bladder cancer, accounting for about 90% of cases. Remaining forms include squamous cell carcinoma (about 5%), most commonly provoked by *Schistosoma hematobium*, adenocarcinoma, and small cell carcinoma. Serum and urine markers used for early detection of bladder cancer, including genetic tests for *p16* tumor suppressor gene deletion (UroVysion, Abbott Laboratories, Abbott Park, Ill.), NMP22, and others, are discussed in Chapter 75.

For diagnosis of bladder cancer, invasive urethrocystoscopy and urinary cytology with low sensitivity for low-grade cancer have generated interest in other noninvasive and more sensitive diagnostic tools. The diagnosis of urothelial carcinoma (UC) is further compounded by the need for accurate pathologic staging, with one of the most critical challenges arising in identification of muscularis propria (detrusor muscle) invasion, which ultimately drives patient management. About 25% of patients with bladder cancer have advanced disease (muscle-invasive or metastatic disease) at presentation and are candidates for systemic chemotherapy. On the basis of the pivotal importance of diagnosing and staging bladder cancer, numerous recent studies have examined novel markers to aid diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment. Molecular and genetic changes in UC of the bladder can be broadly classified into three interrelated processes: 1) chromosomal alteration, triggering the initial carcinogenic event; 2) cancer cell proliferation, caused by loss of cell cycle regulation and derangements in normal apoptotic turnover; and 3) metastasis, in which the initial tumor spreads and brings into play processes such as angiogenesis and loss of cell adhesions (Quek et al, 2003).

Recent work has focused on molecular changes that occur in noninvasive low-grade papillary UCs, which only rarely progress to muscle-invasive disease (Holmang et al, 1999; Holmang et al, 2001). Activating mutations in the *HRAS* oncogene, discussed previously in Chapter 75, are one of the best characterized alterations in this population and have been associated with progression from urothelial hyperplasia to low-grade noninvasive papillary carcinoma (Spruck et al, 1994; Fitzgerald et al, 1995). Activating mutations in fibroblast growth factor receptor-3 (FGFR3), a tyrosine kinase receptor, have been documented in 70% to 80% of noninvasive low-grade papillary UCs, in contrast to only approximately 20% of invasive carcinomas (Billerey et al, 2001; van Rhijn et al, 2001). High-grade tumors with FGFR3 mutation have unique histologic features characterized by a bulky, exophytic component with branching papillary architecture as well as irregular nuclei with a koilocytotic appearance, which can facilitate the identification of this subset of tumors (Al-Ahmadie et al, 2011). High-grade papillary UC and flat carcinoma in situ (CIS) share common molecular alterations with invasive UC, the most commonly studied of which include *TP53* and *RB* gene mutations. Invasive UCs commonly demonstrate immunoreactivity for cytokeratins 7 and 20, p63, and high molecular weight cytokeratins such as CK903. Benign urothelial tissue, however, demonstrates at least focal reactivity for these immunomarkers, including CK7 expression within the urothelial mucosa, CK20 expression in the umbrella cell layer, and p63 nuclear expression in the basal and parabasal cell layers.

Genetic studies of flat (and papillary) urothelial hyperplasia in patients with papillary low-grade UC showed frequent genetic alterations in chromosome 9, whereas chromosomal changes more specifically associated with aggressive bladder cancer (loss of 17p, 2q, 4, 11p) were uncommon (Obermann et al, 2003). With the FISH technique, chromosomal anomalies can be detected in exfoliated bladder cells from the patient's voided urine. A currently commercially available test, the UroVysion Bladder Cancer Kit (UroVysion, Abbott Laboratories, Abbott Park, Ill.) (Fig. 77-1, *F* to *H*) is intended to detect aneuploidy for chromosomes 3, 7, and 17,

and loss of the 9p21 locus, encoding the p16 tumor suppressor protein, using FISH. The indication for UroVysion includes hematuria and monitoring for tumor recurrence in patients previously diagnosed with urothelial carcinoma. A minimum of 25 morphologically abnormal cells should be analyzed. The abnormal profile for chromosomes 3, 7, and 17 and the 9p21 locus includes aneuploidy of chromosomes 3 (red color), 7 (green color), and 17 (aqua color) and/or deletion of the 9p21 (yellow/gold) locus. Criteria for abnormal results include 4 aneuploid cells, 12 cells with deletion of the 9p21 locus, or 10 cells with a tetraploid or near-tetraploid profile.

Genetic changes can precede appearance of the lesions. Positive results include UC of renal pelvis, ureter, urethra, and urinary bladder (Halling & Kipp, 2008). Negative UroVysion results could occur with a positive diagnosis of UC by cytopathology or biopsy because certain UCs do not have the cytogenetic change of UroVysion. However, many of these cancers can be detected using the marker NMP22 in voided urine specimens, as described in Chapter 75.

PROSTATE CANCER

Prostate cancer is the most common noncutaneous cancer among males. Almost all cancers of the prostate are adenocarcinomas that occur in more than one site (multifocal) in more than 85% of cases. Adenocarcinomas of the prostate are graded according to the Gleason grading system to predict their prognosis and overall aggressiveness. The most common biomarker in serum that is used in diagnosing prostate cancer is prostate-specific antigen (PSA), as was discussed in detail in Chapter 74. This chapter focuses on new genetic markers in tissue that are diagnostic for this condition.

It has been shown that approximately 50% (Hermans et al, 2006; Perner et al, 2006; Soller et al, 2006; Nam et al, 2007; Rajput et al, 2007) of prostate cancers harbor a recurrent chromosomal rearrangement, resulting in the fusion of androgen-regulated *TMPRSS2* *(21q22.3)* to the erythroblastosis virus E26 transforming sequence (ETS) family of transcription factors. The latter is a group of genes that encode transcription factors. *TMPRSS2* is regulated by androgen (Afar et al, 2001) and estrogen (Setlur et al, 2008). Fusion leads to overexpression of the ETS family of genes (Petrovics et al, 2005), including *ERG (21q22.2)*, *ETV1 (7q21.2)*, or *ETV4 (17q21)* (Tomlins et al, 2005; Cerveira et al, 2006; Perner et al, 2006; Wang et al, 2006; Yoshimoto et al, 2006; Clark et al, 2007). In about two thirds of cases resulting in the fusion protein, fusion is the result of genomic deletion (Liu et al, 2006; Perner et al, 2006) of the intervening DNA sequence, but fusion may also occur by a more complex rearrangement, such as a translocation (Tomlins et al, 2005; Hermans et al, 2006). The most common variant is fusion between the 5′-untranslated region of *TMPRSS2* and the 3′ region of *ERG* (Perner et al, 2006; Mehra et al, 2007a; Tu et al, 2007). However, more than 20 other fusion variants have now been described (involving more than 10 different genes [e.g., *ETV1*, *ETV4*, *ETV5*]).

Histologic features are reportedly associated with the presence of gene fusion: the presence of blue-tinged mucin, a cribriform growth pattern, macronucleoli, intraductal tumor spread, and signet ring cell features. These features are also associated with an aggressive clinical course of prostate cancer, but neither Gleason grade nor stage was found to correlate with presence of the fusion gene (Perner et al, 2006; Nam et al, 2007; Rajput et al, 2007; Tu et al, 2007). Results to date have been inconsistent, but most studies suggest that presence of the fusion protein is not correlated with other markers of risk. Thus, the clinical significance of the presence of the *TMPRSS2:ERG* gene fusion product for prostate cancer presentation and progression is not fully understood, but studies to date suggest that this may be a biomarker of risk.

The *Myc* oncogene is located at 8q24 and is found amplified and highly expressed in primary and metastatic prostate cancer, with C-Myc levels increasing with tumor progression (Jenkins et al, 1997; Bubendorf et al, 1999; Sato et al, 2006). As shown in Figure 75-3, *B*, antibodies to C-MYC have been detected in the sera of patients with prostate cancer but not in normal controls. C-Myc expression correlated strongly with higher histopathologic grade, Gleason score, earlier disease progression, aggressive disease, and earlier prostate cancer–related death (Cher et al, 1996). Several important Myc target genes have been identified that regulate numerous pathways involved in prostate cancer progression and metastasis. Myc overexpression has been correlated with downregulation of FOXP3, an X-linked tumor suppressor gene. FOXP3 binds to the promoter region of Myc and represses its transcription and hence loss of FOXP3-increased Myc expression (Wang et al, 2009a). Higher C-Myc mRNA levels significantly correlated with positive surgical margins upon prostatectomy, higher Gleason score, and pathologic stage (Hawksworth et al, 2010). C-Myc amplification and overexpression was a predictor of biochemical recurrence (Fromont et al, 2013). c-Myc elevation confers resistance to PI3K inhibitors (Liu et al, 2011) and overrides the mTOR dependence of prostate lesions arising from constitutive AKT activation (Zafarana et al, 2012). C-Myc levels in prostate cancer have been quantified via FISH, RT-PCR, and microarray (Jenkins et al, 1997; Bubendorf et al, 1999; Sato et al, 2006; Hawksworth et al, 2010).

The PTEN genetic alterations, including mutation, deletion, and rearrangement, are present in prostate cancer. PTEN loss correlates with high Gleason score and advanced stage (McMenamin et al, 1999). Its loss results in a hyperactive PI3K/Akt pathway that further promotes cancer progression (Vivanco & Sawyers, 2002). Heterozygous and homozygous deletions have been identified in a subset of primary prostate cancer, and their prognostic value is indicated in clinical studies (Yoshimoto et al, 2006). PTEN loss is also associated with resistance to PI3K pathway inhibitors and treatment failure (Ilic et al, 2011). Of note, allelic loss of PTEN and gain of c-Myc coexisted in 3% human PCa, suggesting innate resistance to PI3K inhibitors in this subtype.

Recently, few laboratory-developed tests (LDT) were introduced that have not been approved by the FDA but are offered under a laboratory's CLIA certificate. The LDT is required to demonstrate certain analytical performances. However, the validation is much more limited as compared with the requirements for regulatory approval. The major concern is the variability of such validation studies from laboratory to laboratory. Caution should be exercised in judging the acceptance of some of these tests.

Oncotype DX (Genomic Health Inc., Redwood City, Calif.) is an LDT that was developed to test small (1-mm) fixed paraffin–embedded tissue samples obtained by needle biopsy. The assay measures the expression of 12 cancer-related genes that represent four different biologic pathways (the androgen pathway [AZGP1, KLK2, SRD5A2, and RAM13C]; cellular organization [FLNC, GSN, TPM2, and GSTM2]; proliferation pathway [TPX2]; and stromal response [BGN, COL1A1, and SFRP4]) and five reference genes (used to normalize and control preanalytic and analytic variability), which are algorithmically combined to calculate the Genomic Prostate Score (GPS) (Knezevic et al, 2013). Together with NCCN risk criteria, GPS improves risk discrimination of prostate cancer into very low, low, and modified intermediate risk in order to help clinicians select appropriate candidates for active surveillance.

Prolaris (Myriad Genetics, Inc., Salt Lake City, Utah) offers a molecular test that directly measures tumor cell growth characteristics to stratify disease risk of progression. By testing formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tissue obtained by biopsy or prostatectomy, Myriad tests 46 different gene expressions, which include 31 cell-cycle progression (CCP) genes and 15 housekeeper genes that were selected because of correlation with proliferation of prostate cancer (Cuzick et al, 2012; Freedland et al, 2013). It was found that low expression is associated with a low risk for disease progression, whereas high expression is more indicative of higher risk for disease progression, suggesting either close monitoring or additional therapy for the latter group of patients.

CERVICAL CANCER

Cervical carcinoma is the second most prevalent cancer in women worldwide (Parkin et al, 2001). The primary cause of cervical cancer is human papillomavirus (HPV) infection. HPV infection initiates and promotes the development of cervical neoplasia from the precancerous lesion, cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) I or low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (LSIL), to in situ cancer III or high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL) and invasive cancer (Kisseljov et al, 2008; Herrington et al, 2009). Other cellular or environmental factors, such as genetic and immune disorders, hormonal contraception, high parity, tobacco smoking, coinfection with other microorganisms (e.g., HIV), and dietary deficiencies, are also implicated in the cervical carcinogenesis. These factors are important for the progression from cervical HPV infection to cervical intraepithelial lesions and cancer (Munoz et al, 2006).

HPVs are double-stranded circular DNA viruses that contain seven early *(E1* to *E7)* and two late *(L1* to *L2)* genes necessary for viral replication. Among them, two genes (*E6* and *E7*) play a pivotal role in the initiation of cervical carcinogenesis and maintain the transformed phenotype (Mantovani & Banks, 2001; Munger et al, 2001). The E7 protein binds to the retinoblastoma TSG product pRB, preferably the underphosphorylated or "active" form of *pRB.* HPV E6 proteins can also associate with the p53 tumor suppressor protein. Inactivation of pRB and p53 by the HPV oncoproteins E7 and E6 likely represents major steps in cervical carcinogenesis. HPV may also be integrated with the human genome, which is

important in the progression of HPV-associated neoplasia. This integration may cause upregulation of HPV E6 and E7 expression and other genetic abnormalities, including telomerase activation and chromosomal alterations leading to the development of high-grade intraepithelial and invasive squamous carcinoma. In addition, HPV infection can induce many epigenetic changes, including methylation of the promoter of TSGs involved in cell proliferation and differentiation (Kisseljov et al, 2008; Gupta et al, 2010; Herrington et al, 2009).

Although more than 100 HPV types have been identified, studies show that HPV-16 and, to a lesser extent, HPV-18 play a dominant role in cervical carcinogenesis and are jointly responsible for 70% of the world's cervical cancer cases. Based on their capability for tumorigenicity, HPVs are classified into high- and low-risk groups (Table 77-4), with high-risk HPV types causing high-grade cervical intraepithelial lesions (CIN2/3 or HSIL), and with low-risk HPV types leading to low-grade cervical intraepithelial lesions (CIN1 or LSIL) (Kisseljov et al, 2008; Herrington et al, 2009).

Because a strong causative association has been observed between HPV infection and cervical cancer, identification of HPVs in tissue or cytologic specimens has become a routine practice, not only for screening purposes, but also for the diagnosis of cervical cancer and for follow-up of abnormal changes detected by a cervical Pap smear. The combination of HPV testing and Pap smear evaluation has significantly improved the sensitivity and specificity of the diagnosis of precancerous lesions and cancer (Cuzick et al, 2008). Among various platforms for HPV infection detection, the Digene Hybrid Capture (Digene Corporation, Gaithersberg, Md.) is an in vitro, solution hybridization, signal-amplified test used to detect HPV DNA targets. First introduced by Digene in 1995, it was designed to detect 14 HPV types, including the high-risk types HPV 16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 45, 51, 52, and 56; and the low-risk types HPV 6, 11, 42, 43, and 44. The Hybrid Capture test is performed on the residual liquid portion of the patient's Pap smear specimen, such as the thin preparation containing HPV DNA. This reacted viral DNA is combined with viral-specific RNA probes, creating hybrids. These RNA:DNA hybrids are then combined onto a solid phase coat, with subsequent capture by universal antibodies that are specific for that particular RNA:DNA nucleic acid hybrid. In turn, the RNA:DNA antibody is detected by a signaling antibody conjugated to alkaline phosphatase, resulting in chemiluminescence, which, when amplified, can be measured in relative light units (RLUs). The second generation of the hybrid capture assay, Hybrid Capture 2, replaces the tubes with microtiter plates to improve performance and suitability for automation. It is the first FDA-approved form of HPV testing for high-risk groups for HPV.

The Cobas HPV test (Roche Molecular Diagnostics, Inc., Indianapolis, Ind.) was FDA approved in 2011. These tests can individually report on HPV-16 and HPV-18 subtypes within a pool of an additional 12 high-risk subtypes. For the first time, this test platform enabled stratification of women into those infected with HPV-16/18 versus those infected with high-risk groups other than HPV-16/18 without the need for a secondary test. The importance of identifying these subtypes is also evidenced in the 2012 revised guidelines for the prevention and early detection of cervical cancer (Saslow et al, 2012).

The Aptima HPV assay (Hologic Inc., Marlborough, Mass.), stands apart from the other tests in that it targets the detection of E6/E7 mRNA, which is associated with integration of the virus into the host cell genome and malignant transformation (Morris, 2005). It therefore probes the most clinically relevant infections. While Gen-Probe does offer two Aptima tests, the latter allowing detection of either pooled high-risk virions or HPV-16/18/45 versus HPV-18 and HPV-45, this assay is unable to distinguish between HPV-18 and HPV-45 subtypes, which does not meet the revised screening guidelines.

The FDA approved two other HPV tests in 2009, both of which utilize an isothermal enzymatic DNA amplification process with a fluorescent readout used with ThinPrep samples (Hologic Inc.). One of these tests, the Cervista HPV HR (Hologic Inc.), is designed to identify 14 high-risk types of HPV. These include the 13 types detected by the Hybrid Capture 2 HPV DNA assay (16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 51, 52, and 56, as well as 58, 59, and 68) and HPV 66. The other test, Cervista HPV 16/18, is designed to specifically detect HPV-16 and HPV-18. Other technologies are also used by some laboratories, including PCR, DNA microarray, dot blot, Southern blot, and genotyping such as TaqMan PCR genotyping assay, GenProbe (GenProbe Inc., San Diego), and APTIMA1 HPV assay (Aptima Inc., Woburn, Mass.).

TABLE 77-4
Oncogenicity of HPV

Oncogenicity	HPV Types
High-risk HPV types	16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 52, 56, 58, 59, 67, 68
Low-risk HPV types	6, 11, 40, 42, 43, 44, 54, 61, 70, 72, 74, 81, 83, 84
Probable high-risk types	26, 51, 53, 56, 66, 69, 82

HPV, Human papillomavirus.

p16 (CDKN2A or *MTS1)* is located at 9p21.3 and belongs to a group of tumor suppressor genes that includes *p15INK4b*, *p21waf1*, and *p27KIP1*, all of which negatively regulate the G1 phase of the cell cycle (Serrano et al, 1993). Specifically, p16 binds the cyclin-dependent protein kinases CDK4 and CDK6, inhibiting their interactions with cyclin D1. As a result, pRb phosphorylation is inhibited and the E2F transcription factors are sequestered, blocking G1 to S phase progression. p16 expression loss allows cells to escape G1 arrest (Cobrinik et al, 1992). The HPV E7 oncoprotein binds pRb causing E2F release, resulting in G1 to S progression despite high p16 expression (Mantovani & Banks, 2001; Munger et al, 2001; Khleif et al, 1996). Thus high p16 expression is a sensitive marker for HPV E7 protein expression. Cuschieri and Wentzensen (2008) reviewed 9 studies, including 2178 cases, and found that 7% of nondysplastic, 54% of CIN1 cases, 86% of CIN2 cases, and 96% of CIN3 and invasive cancers showed diffuse p16 expression, demonstrating high specificity and sensitivity of p16 staining as a measure of HPV infection. As with Ki-67, p16 staining is not entirely specific for a neoplastic process or HPV infection. For example, benign cervical tubal metaplasia shows p16 positivity (Horree et al, 2007).

ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

Endometrial cancer is a common gynecologic malignancy in Western countries and is fourth in incidence after breast, lung, and colon cancer. The incidence of endometrial cancer has increased by 21% since 2008, and the mortality rate per 100,000 cases has increased by ≥100% over the last 2 decades and by 8% since 2008 (Sorosky, 2012). The molecular genetics of endometrial cancer vary with clinical characteristics (type I or II), tissue differentiation, and histologic type. Endometrioid adenocarcinoma, a type I endometrial cancer, exhibits rates of *K-Ras* and *p53* mutations of 26% and 17%, respectively, whereas in serous adenocarcinoma, a type II endometrial cancer, these rates are 2% and 93%, respectively (Lax et al, 2000). Similarly, in clear cell adenocarcinoma, a particular histologic type of endometrial cancer, the levels of estrogen receptor (ER), progesterone receptor (PR), and Ki-67 are similar to those in serous adenocarcinoma while p53 is significantly lower, whereas ER and PR are significantly lower, Ki-67 is significantly higher, and p53 tends to be higher compared to endometrioid adenocarcinoma (Lax et al, 1998). Thus, the patterns of genetic mutations and the developmental mechanisms may vary among histologic type.

Approximately 5% of endometrioid carcinomas are associated with Lynch syndrome, which can either be endometrium or extrauterine endometrial tissues, the latter usually associated with endometriosis. A large percentage of these tumors have mutations in the ARID1A protein, an ATPase-containing protein that is involved with destabilizing histone-DNA complexes and allowing transcription, especially at A-T–rich regions of DNA. Assays for this protein, which are associated with nonserous endometrial tumors (Wiegand et al, 2010), could provide the basis for another molecular test allowing distinction between these tumors and the less aggressive endometrioid and clear cell tumors.

OVARIAN CANCER

Ovarian cancer is one of the most common gynecologic malignancies and is the fifth leading cause of cancer mortality in women in the United States (Jemal et al, 2009). Ovarian epithelial cancers are classified on the basis of morphology, depending upon invasiveness (tumor grade) and type of differentiation (e.g., serous, mucinous, endometrioid, clear cell, and transitional type).

Studies on the molecular pathology of ovarian cancer show that each of the four major histopathologic types of ovarian carcinoma is characterized by rather distinctive, although not necessarily unique, genetic abnormalities. For example, *TP53* gene mutations are extremely common in high-grade serous carcinomas, while low-grade serous, and mucinous adenocarcinomas have a high prevalence of *KRAS* and *B-RAF* mutations (75% in primary mucinous adenocarcinomas) (Cho & Shih, 2009).

Mutations of *CTNNB1*, the gene encoding β-catenin and PTEN, are common in endometrioid adenocarcinoma but are rare in serous, mucinous, and clear cell carcinomas. Mutations of *PIK3CA*, which encodes the catalytic subunit of PI3K (phosphoinositide 3-kinase), are observed most frequently in clear cell carcinomas. In addition, genetic differences exist within a given type of ovarian cancer.

Molecular subgroups of endometrioid adenocarcinomas correlate with tumor grade, stage of disease, and clinical outcome. Serous carcinomas can be subdivided into low-grade serous carcinoma (LGSC) and high-grade serous carcinoma (HGSC).

Histologic Subtypes of Serous Carcinoma

LGSC, also called International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) stage I, is defined as malignancy of one (Ia) or both (Ib) ovaries. These carcinomas characteristically have *KRAS* or *BRAF* mutations, but lack *TP53* mutations (Gilks & Prat, 2009). *KRAS* or *BRAF* mutations lead to constitutive activation of the MAPK (mitogen-activated protein kinase) signaling pathway. Low-grade tumors have also been found to contain mutations that deregulate the canonical Wnt/β-catenin and PI3K/PTEN signaling pathways and typically lack *TP53* mutations (Cho & Shih, 2009).

On the other hand, HGSCs are characterized by high-grade nuclei, have short latent precursor lesions, and have rapid tumor progression into invasive carcinoma. HGSCs are often identified in advanced stage and have a high prevalence (50% to 70%) of *TP53* gene mutations (Wen et al, 1999), but unlike in LGSC, *KRAS* and *BRAF* mutations are rare. Most HGSC cancers further lack Wnt/β-catenin or PI3K/PTEN signaling pathway defects (Kolasa et al, 2006), which are common in the LGSC cancers. Moreover, it is important to note that most HGSCs have genetic and somatic alterations of *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* (germ-line or somatic mutation or promoter methylation and loss of expression) (Kobel et al, 2008). These changes occur early during oncogenesis and result in loss of ability to repair DNA double-strand breaks, which, in turn, leads to chromosomal instability.

Molecular Classification of Ovarian Cancer

Molecular studies led to the proposal of a new model for classifying ovarian carcinomas, in which surface epithelial tumors can be divided into two broad categories designated type I and type II, based on their pattern of tumor progression and molecular genetic changes (Landen et al, 2008; Levanon et al, 2008). Type I tumors include low-grade endometrioid carcinoma, mucinous carcinoma, and a subset of clear cell carcinomas that develop in a stepwise fashion from well-recognized precursors, in most cases, borderline tumors, which generally are large and often are confined to the ovary at diagnosis. In contrast, type II tumors are of high grade and almost always have spread beyond the ovaries at presentation; these include high-grade serous carcinoma, undifferentiated carcinoma, some clear cell carcinomas, and malignant mixed Müllerian tumor. Type I and type II tumors also differ in their molecular profiles. Type I tumors often harbor somatic mutations of genes encoding protein kinases, including *KRAS*, *BRAF*, *PIK3CA*, and *ERB-2 (Her2/neu)*, and other signaling molecules, including CTNNB1 and PTEN. In contrast, type II tumors generally lack these mutations but are characterized by a high frequency of *TP53* mutations, which are rare in type I tumors. Chromosomal instability levels, as reflected by genome-wide changes in DNA copy number, are much higher in type II tumors than in type I tumors (Mayr et al, 2006).

Clear Cell Ovarian Carcinoma

Mutations in *KRAS*, *BRAF*, and *TP53* are present in some clear cell carcinomas, but their frequency is generally low. Mutations predicted to deregulate PI3K/PTEN signaling are more common in clear cell carcinomas, with *PIK3CA* mutations reported in 20% to 25%, and *PTEN* mutations in 8% of tumors (Cho & Shih, 2009).

BRCA1 and *BRCA2* in Ovarian Cancer

These genes encode proteins that are required for DNA double-strand break repair by homologous recombination. Cells lacking *BRCA1*- or *BRCA2*-dependent DNA repair tend to develop chromosomal rearrangements and genomic instability. Inheritance of DNA repair defects involving *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* contributes to as many as 10% to 15% of ovarian cancers (Lancaster et al, 1996). The lifetime risk for developing ovarian cancer in mutation carriers varies with the genetic defect (for *BRCA1*, 30% to 60%, and for *BRCA2*, 15% to 30%). *BRCA*-related familial ovarian cancers are more frequently multifocal and progress faster. Carcinomas arising in patients with germ-line *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* mutations are almost invariably of the high-grade serous type discussed previously. Fortunately, however, ovarian cancers that contain mutations affecting *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* are more sensitive to DNA damage induced by chemotherapeutic agents such as platinum drugs and PARP inhibitors because they are less able to repair the DNA damage caused by these agents. Thus, these drugs are particularly effective in the presence of defects in homologous recombination repair, and clinical trials with these agents are underway in ovarian cancer patients with inherited *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* mutations (Yap et al, 2009).

Although *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes have been thought to be mutated only rarely in sporadic ovarian cancers, somatic mutations have recently been documented in approximately 10% of nonfamilial cases, particularly in high-grade serous epithelial ovarian cancers, and expression of *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* can be silenced by methylation in additional cancers. This contributes to their sensitivity to platinum-containing therapies in HGSC. PARP inhibitors might also find broader clinical application in these sporadic cancers, in which these pathways are also defective. Thus, in some regions, all patients presenting with an HGSC are referred for genetic counseling and screening for *BRCA* mutations (Risch et al, 2001).

MELANOMA

Malignant melanoma is an aggressive tumor that originates from pigment-producing melanocytes, mainly in skin. About 80% of melanomas are diagnosed early and can be cured by surgical excision (Gray-Schopfer et al, 2007). However, metastatic melanomas are refractory to current chemotherapy or radiotherapy and have a very poor prognosis, with a median survival of 6 months (Miller & Mihm, 2006). A majority (90%) of melanoma cases are sporadic, and 10% are familial melanomas, also known as *dysplastic nevus syndrome*. Four melanoma-predisposing genes have been identified in familial melanoma based on the discovery of germ-line mutations in multiple-case families; three are high penetrance, and one is low penetrance. The best characterized high-penetrance gene is cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A. It is located on chromosome 9p21 and encodes two distinct melanoma-predisposing genes: *p16* (discussed in the "Bladder Cancer" section earlier in the chapter) and *p14* (Mehra et al, 2007b). The protein product of *p16* is INK4a, and the protein product of *p14* is ARF. Twenty-five percent to 40% of familial melanoma cases harbor an inactivating mutation in *CDKN2A* (Miller & Mihm, 2006; Gray-Schopfer et al, 2007). Cyclin-dependent kinase 4 *(CDK4)*, located on 12q14, is the third high-penetrance melanoma susceptibility gene (Zuo et al, 1996). Finally, melanocortin-1 receptor *(MC1R)* is a low-penetrance gene implicated in melanomagenesis.

The RAS/RAF/MEK/ERK signaling pathway has emerged as a major player in the induction and maintenance of sporadic melanoma. Among *RAS* family members, mutations in *NRAS* occur most frequently in melanocytes, with rates approaching 56% in congenital nevi (Demunter et al, 2001; Miller & Mihm, 2006), 33% in primary melanomas, and 26% in metastatic melanomas (Garnett et al, 2005).

However, as in papillary thyroid carcinoma and in some forms of colorectal cancer, the most important signaling molecule in melanoma downstream of RAS is BRAF. *BRAF* somatic missense mutations are found in 66% of malignant melanomas, of which 80% involve a single base substitution of valine by glutamic acid at position 600 (V600E). Most of these mutations activate BRAF kinase activity from 1.5- to 700-fold, although a small number actually are inactivating mutations. However, even these inactive mutants can stimulate cellular signaling through the MEK-ERK pathway because they activate the related family member *C-RAF* (Garnett et al, 2005).

It is interesting to note that genetic alterations in *NRAS* and *BRAF* rarely coexist in melanoma (Zuo et al, 1996; Tsao et al, 2004; Miller & Mihm, 2006), suggesting that mutant *BRAF* or *NRAS* alone is able to activate the pathway. Recent studies have revealed deregulation of PI3K signaling in a high proportion of melanomas. Indeed, in about 45% of melanomas, *PTEN* is deleted and the downstream *AKT* gene is amplified (Zhou et al, 2003; Stahl et al, 2004). Additionally, RAS binds and activates PI3K, thereby activating the AKT pathway and preventing apoptosis (Sekulic et al, 2008). These data suggest that loss of *PTEN* and oncogenic activation of RAS are equivalent (Zhou et al, 2003).

The high mutation rate of *BRAF* in melanoma makes it an attractive therapeutic target. Investigators have focused much attention on agents that specifically target BRAF, such as sorafenib, as well as on molecules that function both upstream and downstream of BRAF. A nonspecific inhibitor of BRAF, sorafenib is not effective as a single agent in advanced-stage melanoma patients (Sekulic et al, 2008). Of interest downstream of BRAF is the direct inhibition of ERK and MEK. Although no mutations have been documented in either molecule, inhibition of MEK has proved effective in the presence of a mutated *BRAF* (Sekulic et al, 2008). Several

MEK inhibitors are currently in clinical trials. Upstream of BRAF, RAS is an attractive target for inhibition. Farnesyltransferase inhibitors (FTIs) interfere with posttranslational processing of RAS, and thereby inhibit the downstream effects of RAS.

MOLECULAR GENETIC PATHOLOGY OF SARCOMA

Sarcomas are malignant neoplasms arising in connective tissue, fat, muscle, blood vessels, deep skin tissues, nerves, bones, and cartilage. These types of cancers often are not considered classical "solid tissue tumors," although often their biologic behavior is similar to that of the types of solid tissue tumors discussed previously. However, because major advances have been made in the area of the molecular biology of sarcomas, and because these advances have illuminated the nature of specific genetic lesions that cause cell transformation, we describe them in this section. This section is meant to show the principles that have been discovered in sarcomatous cell transformation and is not meant to be a detailed discussion of specific genetic lesions in each of the myriad different sarcomas that have been described. Rather, we present specific examples of each type of genetic lesion that has been discovered. The reader is referred to other texts that describe the genetic lesions in each sarcoma type.

Many sarcomas harbor specific translocations or other characteristic genetic defects that aid in the diagnosis of each tumor type and, in some cases, impart prognostic or predictive information influencing clinical management (Jain et al, 2010b). Recent molecular cytogenetic analysis has demonstrated that the sarcomas can be divided into two main categories:

1. Sarcomas with specific genetic alterations. These can be subclassified further into sarcomas that harbor reciprocal translocations resulting in oncogenic fusion transcripts (accounting for 15% to 20% of cases [e.g., SS18-SSX in synovial sarcoma]) and sarcomas that harbor specific oncogenic mutations (e.g., *KIT* and *PDGFRA* mutations in gastrointestinal stromal tumors) (Hirota et al, 1998; Miettinen & Lasota, 2006).
2. Sarcomas displaying multiple complex karyotypic abnormalities with no specific pattern, including malignant fibrous histiocytoma (MFH) and leiomyosarcoma (LMS).

SARCOMAS WITH FUSION GENES

Fusion Genes Involving *TET* Genes

Nearly half of the fusion proteins believed to participate in initiation and development of sarcoma contain a portion of the so-called *TET* gene family products, including *EWSR1*, *TLS/FUS*, and *TAFII68*. TET family proteins contain a characteristic 87–amino acid RNA recognition motif that is thought to be implicated in protein-RNA binding and to participate in transcription and RNA metabolism.

Ewing's Sarcoma/Primitive Peripheral Neuroectodermal Tumor

This is a prime example of a fusion gene–induced sarcoma. The tumor itself is a small blue cell tumor that primarily affects long bones or the vertebral area in young adults and children. Histologically characterized by sheets of small round cells that may form Homer-Wright rosettes. Ewing's sarcoma family tumors (ESFTs) can be subclassified into Ewing's sarcomas or primitive peripheral neuroectodermal tumor (PNET), the latter showing evidence of neuroendocrine differentiation immunohistochemically (Olsen et al, 2006). However, the distinction between them is no longer considered critical for clinical management, as prognosis and therapy are similar.

ESFTs characteristically harbor a recurring t(11;22)(q24;q12) that juxtaposes the *FLI1* and *EWSR1* genes to encode a chimeric RNA and protein. About 10% of Ewing family tumors have an alternate translocation involving the *EWSR1* gene, implying that disruption of *EWSR1* is the critical molecular event underlying tumorigenesis. Except for *FUS-ERG*, all fusion transcripts identified so far in ESFTs consist of *EWSR1* and an ETS family transcription factor, including *FLI1*, *ERG*, *ETV1*, *ETV4*, and *FEV* genes (de Alava & Gerald, 2000). Approximately 85% to 90% of ESFTs are associated with the *EWSR1-FLI1* fusion gene, 9% to 14% with the *EWR1-ERG* gene, and the remaining 1% to 5% with other rare variants (de Alava & Gerald, 2000).

Karyotype is the analytic method used for the initial workup of a suspected Ewing family tumor because the characteristic t(11;22) is evident in approximately 90% of these tumors. However, in a case of strong suspicion of Ewing's sarcoma/PNET with normal karyotype, FISH should be considered as an additional test for the genetic defects. FISH, using a break-apart probe targeting the *EWSR1* gene, is an excellent method to identify or exclude a *EWSR1* gene rearrangement. FISH may be carried out on metaphase cells (requiring fresh tissue) or on interphase cells (feasible on a wide variety of sample types, including fine-needle aspirates, touch preparations, smears, or paraffin-embedded tissue) (Kilpatrick et al, 2006). An advantage unique to RT-PCR is its ability to define which of two prognostically relevant transcript structures is present: type 1 fusion transcripts *(EWSR1-FLI1)* are not transcribed as actively and carry a good prognosis compared with alternative fusions. Another advantage of RT-PCR is its ability to detect minimal residual disease after therapy (Vermeulen et al, 2006). Immunohistochemical analyses of *CD99* and *FLI1* reveal overexpression in most Ewing's/PNET tumors harboring a t(11;22) translocation (Hameed, 2007).

Clear Cell Sarcoma

Clear cell sarcoma is a malignant neoplasm with melanocytic differentiation. Tumors generally occur in young adults, without significant sex predilection, and are typically found in the deep tissues of the extremities. Tumors are characterized by reciprocal t(12;22)(q13;q13) translocations (Reeves et al, 1992). This leads to the formation of an EWSR1-ATF1 fusion product (Zucman et al, 1993; Speleman et al, 1997; Hiraga et al, 1997). Exons 7, 8, and 10 of EWSR1 have been reported to fuse with exon 4 or 5 of ATF1. More recently, EWSR1-CREB1 fusion products have been described in clear cell sarcomas arising in both the soft tissues and gastrointestinal locations (Hisaoka et al, 2008; Antonescu et al, 2006; Wang et al, 2009b). RT-PCR remains an excellent means of diagnosing this tumor (Wang et al, 2009b; Coindre et al, 2006). Given the presence of multiple fusion partners, FISH with a break-apart EWSR1 probe is convenient. The fusion type does not appear to be associated with outcome (Coindre et al, 2006).

Extraskeletal Myxoid Chondrosarcoma

Extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma typically occurs in bone of adults without a consistent sex predisposition. Tumors are aggressive, with a high rate of metastasis on presentation and follow-up, in addition to frequent local recurrence. Histologically, small and round spindle shaped cells are arranged in chains, nests, or filigree-like, with a lobular pattern within a chondromyxoid stroma, but lack actual hyaline cartilage. Cytogenetic analysis has revealed a t(9;22)(q22;q12) in a majority of cases (Turc-Carel et al, 1988). This involves rearrangement of NR4A3 with EWSR1. As a result, FISH, using a commercially available EWSR1 break-apart probe, is a useful diagnostic marker (Wang et al, 2008), in addition to RT-PCR. There are, however, additional fusion products that do not involve EWSR1. For example, t(9;17)(q22;q11) (Bjerkehagen et al, 1999) and t(9;15)(q22;q21) (Sjogren et al, 2000) translocations were subsequently described. Secondary structural abnormalities are a common feature on cytogenetic analysis. The latter tumors respectively partner NR4A3 with TAF15 and TCF12 (Panagopoulos et al, 2002; Sjogren et al, 2000). There are commercially available NR4A3 break-apart probes that help broaden the sensitivity of FISH for this diagnosis.

Atypical Lipomatous Tumor, Well-Differentiated and Dedifferentiated Liposarcoma

Liposarcoma is the most common type of soft-tissue sarcoma. It typically occurs in middle-aged adults and affects males and females equally. Atypical lipomatous tumor (ALT) and well-differentiated liposarcoma (WD-LPS) are synonymous, with the former term employed for extremity-based lesions. Histologically, tumors are composed of sheets of adipocytes of variable size and shape with scattered lipoblasts. Dedifferentiated liposarcoma (DD-LPS) more frequently occurs in the retroperitoneum and mediastinum. Histologically they are characterized by spindle cells with a storiform pattern and a greater degree of pleomorphism, mitotic activity, and necrosis. This heralds a more aggressive tumor with the potential for metastatic spread. Some cytogenetic findings in WD-LPS and DD-LPS are similar. Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) and comparative genomic hybridization (CGH) consistently show amplification in the q14 to q15 regions containing the *MDM2* gene, in both these lesions. Amplification of this region results in increased cell proliferation and decreased apoptosis (Coindre et al, 2010). Immunohistochemistry is available but it is less sensitive and specific than FISH. FISH for MDM2 amplification is now routinely used to facilitate the diagnosis of WD-LPS/DD-LPS, as over 90% of these tumors will show this alteration (Sirvent et al, 2007; Weaver et al, 2010). Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-based techniques have also been shown to be diagnostically useful (Weaver et al, 2010; Shimada et al, 2006).

Myxoid/Round Cell Liposarcoma

Myxoid/round cell liposarcoma represents approximately 15% to 20% of liposarcomas, which more commonly occur in the deep soft tissues of the extremities in young males (Moreau et al, 2012). Over 90% of cases contain a recurrent t(12;16) (q13;p11) translocation involving DDIT3 (formerly CHOP) and TLS (formerly FUS) (Lopez-Gines et al, 1989). Less commonly, cytogenetics reveal a t(12;22) (q13;q12) translocation, whereby DDIT3 is partnered with EWSR1 (Mrozek et al, 1997). Diagnosis of myxoid/round cell is usually confirmed by FISH for TLS (and EWS when presented with a negative TLS result and classic histomorphology); alternatively, a DDIT3 break-apart probe can be used to cover both forms of rearrangements (Narendra et al, 2011). TLS has several common variable breakpoints fusing exons 5, 7, and 8, with exon 2 of DDIT3; this leads to three basic transcript types: type I (7-2), type 2 (5-2), and type 3 (8-2), which do not appear to have prognostic significance (Bridge et al, 2001).

Low-Grade Fibromyxoid Sarcoma

Low-grade fibromyxoid sarcoma (LGFMS) and hyalinizing spindle cell tumor with giant rosettes fall on a histologic continuum. These malignant fibroblastic tumors are rare and frequently characterized by a long clinical history prior to presentation and late metastases. They predominate in young adults (from 2 to 70 years of age) (Billings et al, 2005) and are frequently located in the trunk and extremities (Evans, 2011). The majority of cases of LGFMS are characterized by a t(7;16)(q32–34;p11) translocation derived from fusion of FUS and CREB3L2, with a minority exhibiting a t(11;16)(p11;p11) translocation that results in the pairing of FUS and CREB3L1. Recently, two cases exhibiting fusion of EWSR1 and CREB3L1 were described (Lau et al, 2013). Both FISH and RT-PCR are useful diagnostic techniques for identifying this translocation. Given the possibility of multiple different fusion products, the use of commercially available EWSR1 and FUS break-apart probes represents a convenient means of diagnostic confirmation. The different fusion products do not appear to be associated with morphologic or immunohisto chemical differences; at present there is insufficient information to know if the fusion product is associated with differences in clinical behavior (Lau et al, 2013).

Hemangioma of Bone

Benign vascular neoplasms usually ocurr throughout the body, in any age group, without any sex predilection. Despite their high prevalence, not much is known about their pathophysiology. Recently, a t(18;22)(q23;q12) translocation bridging the *EWSR1-NFATC1* genes was identified in a case of hemangioma of bone (Arbajian et al, 2013). The prevalence of this translocation in other vascular lesions remains to be determined. NFATC1 is a member of the NFAT transcription factor family, which has a pleiotropic effect on cells; EWSR1-NFATC1 chimeras have rarely been reported in Ewing Family of Tumors (Arbajian et al, 2013).

Fusion Genes Involving Receptor Tyrosine Kinase Genes

Congenital fibrosarcoma (CFS) is a low-grade pediatric soft-tissue sarcoma, principally arising in the extremities, generally in the first year of life. Recently, CFSs were shown to contain a novel t(12;15)(p13;q25) translocation, resulting in *ETV6-NTR*K3 gene fusion. *ETV6* is a member of the ETS family of transcription factors containing a basic helix-loop-helix (bHLH) dimerization domain, which was originally found at the breakpoint in translocations in leukemia and myeloproliferative syndromes. NTRK3 is the cell surface receptor for neurotropin 3 expressed primarily in the CNS. The ETV6-NTRK3 fusion protein forms a homodimer or heterodimer with wild-type NTRK3, which displays receptor tyrosine kinase (RTK) activity and undergoes autophosphorylation at tyrosine residues (Knezevich et al, 1998). Cytogenetic t(12;15) translocations may not be identified in several cases (CMN4, CFS1, and CFS5), but RT-PCR and FISH analyses revealed ETV6-region rearrangements in those same cases. Detection of *ETV6-NTRK3* fusion transcripts in most CFSs using RT-PCR methods with archival, formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tissues, therefore, is a useful diagnostic adjunct.

Sarcoma with Fusion Genes Involving Chromatin Remodeling Genes

Synovial sarcomas (SSs) often arise deep in the soft tissue near a joint in the extremity of a young adult patient. Most SSs are characterized by t(X;18)(p11.2;q11.2), resulting in a fusion between the *SS18(SYT)* gene on chromosome 18 and one of the *SSX* genes on the X chromosome, creating *SS18-SSX1*, *SS18-SSX2*, or *SS18-SSX4* chimeric genes (Skytting et al, 1999; Nishio et al, 2001, 2002a, 2002b, 2005; Kanemitsu et al, 2007). Two common histologic and genetic variants of synovial sarcoma are known: a monophasic variant comprising vimentin-expressing spindle cells usually carrying *SS18-SSX2* translocation, and a biphasic variant that consists of a mixture of vimentin-expressing spindle cells and keratin-expressing glandular epithelial cells harboring the *SS18-SSX1* or *SS18-SSX2* translocation (Ladanyi et al, 2002). The biphasic variant may resemble adenocarcinoma or more typically carcinosarcoma and carries a worse prognosis, at least in early-stage patients. Karyotype is helpful when it is positive, but negative results could reflect failure of the tumor cells to divide sufficiently in culture, or other mechanisms of false-negative results. FISH using an SS18 break-apart probe is helpful for demonstrating t(X;18), but it cannot distinguish which partner gene is involved for prognostic purposes. RNA from frozen or paraffin-embedded tissue is suitable for RT-PCR to detect and to distinguish the two common translocation variants (Sieber et al, 2003). From a mechanistic standpoint, the translocation creates a chimeric gene encoding a fusion protein that redirects the transcription factor function of SS18. Relevant downstream targets include *CCND1* (cyclin D1), which enhances cell cycle progression. *TLE1* encodes a transcriptional corepressor that is overexpressed in synovial sarcomas. Gene and tissue microarray studies have identified TLE1 as an excellent biomarker for distinguishing synovial sarcoma from other soft-tissue malignancies on immunohistochemistry (Jagdis et al, 2009).

Sarcoma with Fusion Genes Involving Growth Factors

Dermatofibrosarcoma protuberance (DFSP) is a rare skin tumor of low-grade malignancy that shows local recurrence. The reciprocal chromosomal translocation t(17;22)(q11;q13.1) or a supernumerary ring chromosome derived from t(17;22) is found in this type of tumor, which results in fusion of the *COL1A1* gene on chromosome 17 with the *PDGFB* gene on chromosome 22 (Simon et al, 1997). Because the point of fusion is highly specific for *PDGFB* but is spread over almost the entire locus for *COL1A1*, the role of the *COL1A1* gene may be simply to upregulate the expression of the platelet-derived growth factor receptor (PDGFR). Imatinib mesylate is an inhibitor of tyrosine kinases, including PDGFR, and has shown a dramatic response to treatment in adults. The use of other PDGFR inhibitors such as sunitinib and sorafenib has recently commenced in patients with metastatic DFSP (McArthur, 2006).

Giant cell fibroblastoma (GCF) represents the juvenile form of DFSP, which shows local recurrence. Although histologically different, these two diseases share several features, including CD34 positivity and, most important, the genetic alteration t(17;22)(q11;q13.1), involving the *COL1A1* gene as found in DFSP (Simon et al, 1997).

Sarcoma with Other Types of Fusion Genes

Rhabdomyosarcoma (RMS), a malignant tumor of skeletal muscle cells, is the most common soft-tissue sarcoma in children and young adults, often arising from extremities, paranasal sinus, or retroperitoneum. The main histologic subtypes are alveolar (ARMS) (20%), embryonal (ERMS) (60%), and pleomorphic (PRMS); survival rates for these subtypes vary from <25% to >95%, respectively (Breneman et al, 2003). Histologically, striated muscle differentiation is noted with concomitant expression of vimentin, muscle-specific actin, desmin, myogenin, and MyoD1.

In ARMS, 70% of cases harbor the translocation t(2;13)(q35:q14), which fuses the 5′ end of *PAX3* with the 3′ end of the *FOXO1A* gene. A further 10% of ARMS cases are associated with fusion of *PAX*7 to the *FOXO1A* gene. The remaining 20% of ARMS cases do not have these fusion genes detectable by routine RT-PCR and constitute cases with very low expression of a fusion gene or a rare variant fusion gene, or with no detectable fusion gene. FISH using a break-apart probe identifies rearrangement of the *FOXO1A* gene (Matsumura et al, 2008; Mehra et al, 2008). The karyotype typically reveals t(2;13)(q35;q14) *PAX3-FOXO1A* or t(1;13)(p36;q14) *PAX7-FOXO1A*, with the latter being less common but imparting a better prognosis (Davicioni et al, 2006). It should be noted that ARMS tend to have a poor prognosis overall, especially when presenting with disseminated disease, so genetic testing may be moot in stage IV patients. Testing is most useful when the histologic features are not classic (e.g., mixed alveolar and embryonal patterns).

Epithelioid Hemangioendothelioma

Epithelioid hemangioendothelioma is a malignant vascular neoplasm that can occur at essentially any age, but that predominates in the second decade. Recurrent t(1;3)(p36.3;q25) translocation was identified in epithelioid hemangioendothelioma (Mendlick et al, 2001), which results in a

WWTR1-CAMTA1 gene fusion (Errani et al, 2011; Tanas et al, 2011). This involves fusion of exon 3 or 4 of *WWTR1* with exon 8 or 9 of *CAMTA1* (Errani et al, 2011, 2012; Tanas et al, 2011). Both break-apart FISH and RT-PCR are effective diagnostic tools for detecting the fusion. Interestingly, recently a subset of epithelioid hemangioma showing an atypical morphology was discovered to contain a YAP-TFE3 fusion partner (Antonescu et al, 2013). Parenthetically, these tumors are readily identified using immunohistochemistry for TFE3, which is diffusely and strongly positive.

SARCOMAS WITH ONCOGENIC MUTATIONS

KIT and *PDGFRA* in Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor

Gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST) is the most common mesenchymal tumor in the gastrointestinal tract. Activating mutations of the *cKIT* gene were found in 75% to 80% of cases and of *PDGFRA* in 5% to 10%; cases with no mutation in either of these are extremely rare. The cKIT protein, which encodes a TKR for stem cell/PDGFR, comprises a long extracellular domain, a transmembrane segment, and an intracellular domain. In all cases, mutated receptors transmit growth signals in a ligand-independent manner, inducing dysregulated cell proliferation, as described in Chapter 75. Mutations generally occur in exon 11, encoding the intracellular receptor domain, but can also occur in exons 9 and (rarely) 13, and 1 in GIST. Mutations in *cKIT* and *PDGFRA* are mutually exclusive. Detection of overexpression or mutation of *cKIT/PDGFRA* has become a standard diagnostic tool for GIST. Drugs targeting the activating tyrosine kinase, such as imatinib mesylate (Glivec/Gleevec), have been used successfully to treat patients with metastatic GIST showing the previously described mutations. D816V point mutations in *cKIT* exon 17 are responsible for resistance to targeted therapy drugs such as imatinib mesylate (Miettinen & Lasota, 2006).

GISTs that are negative for both *KIT* and *PDGFRA* mutations have been referred to as *wild-type GISTs*. It is now becoming clear that many of these carry mutations in one of the succinate dehydrogenase *(SDH)* genes and are now known as *SDH-deficient GISTs* (Janeway et al, 2011). SDH mutations are relatively common, particularly in the stomach, accounting for 5% to 10% of all gastric GISTs (Miettinen et al, 2011). SDH-deficient GISTs are characterized by a distinct multinodular and plexiform growth pattern and are almost always epithelioid in morphology (Miettinen et al, 2011). This pattern was previously observed in children (known as *pediatric-type* GIST) and in patients with Carney triad. Unlike conventional GISTs, the behavior of SDH-deficient GISTs cannot be predicted based on size and mitotic activity. In addition, tumors are often multifocal, tend to metastasize to lymph nodes, and despite resistance to imatinib therapy, have an indolent clinical course (Janeway et al, 2009). These SDH-deficient GISTs may occur as part of Carney triad or Carney-Stratakis syndrome that are characterized by multifocal GISTs, paraganglioma, and pheochromocytoma, or they can occur sporadically as a result of germ-line mutation in one of the SDH subunits.

SARCOMAS WITH VARIABLE OTHER SPECIFIC PATTERN

Nodular Fasciitis

Nodular fasciitis is a common and benign soft-tissue tumor that can occur at any age, but is most common in young adults. It typically manifests in the subcutis of upper limbs and head and neck region. Historically, nodular fasciitis was thought to be a reactive lesion, perhaps instigated by trauma. Recently, it was found that most cases are characterized by rearrangement of USP6 (ubiquitin-specific peptidase 6). In approximately 90% of cases, there is fusion with MYH9 (myosin heavy chain 9, non-muscle) (Erickson-Johnson et al, 2011; Swanson et al, 2012; Amary et al, 2013). Both FISH- and PCR-based assays have proved useful as diagnostic markers for nodular fasciitis. The translocation leads to overexpression of USP6, a protein shown to be involved in proliferation, inflammation, and cell signaling (Erickson-Johnson et al, 2011).

Inflammatory Myofibroblastic Tumor

Inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor (IMT) is a neoplasm showing (myo) fibroblastic differentiation. This tumor spans a broad demographic, ranging from prenatal to older adults, and is not restricted by anatomic location. Roughly 10% to 30% of cases are associated with fever and weight loss along with a number of hematologic findings. Approximately half of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors contain rearrangement of the 2p23 region corresponding to the *ALK* gene (Griffin et al, 1999). Molecular diagnostic confirmation is becoming imperative given the emergence of targeted therapies based on inhibition of ALK tyrosine kinase (Butrynski et al, 2010). Numerous fusion partners have been reported, including TPM3 and TPM4 (Lawrence et al, 2000), CLTC, RANBP2 (Ma et al, 2003), ATIC (Debiec-Rychter et al, 2003), CARS (Debelenko et al, 2003), SEC31L1 (Panagopoulos et al, 2006), and PPFIBP (Takeuchi et al, 2011), with new fusion partners continually being identified. The mechanism of tumorigenesis in cases without ALK rearrangement remains to be explained. Given the large percentage of ALK-negative cases, it should be emphasized that the diagnosis frequently rests on morphologic and immune-histochemical criteria. Some fusion products have been reported to be associated with a worse prognosis, such as RANBP2-ALK (Marino-Enriquez et al, 2011). Interestingly, at least some of these cases are associated with an epithelioid morphology; in addition, rather than showing the typical cytoplasmic pattern of ALK expression, they may be a perinuclear or nuclear membrane decoration (Marino-Enriquez et al, 2011). Other molecular changes have been described in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, including p53 mutations and MDM2 amplification (Yamamoto et al, 2003). The various fusion partners are reported to share an N-terminal oligomerization motif that leads to ALK kinase catalytic activation (Ma et al, 2003).

Aneurysmal Bone Cyst

Aneurysmal bone cyst may arise de novo, or secondary to another underlying lesion such as giant cell tumor of bone. It is most common in the first 2 decades and most frequently involves the metaphysis of long bones and the spine.

Recurrent clonal karyotypic abnormalities have been reported in primary aneurysmal bone cyst, including a t(16;17)(q22;p13) translocation (Panoutsakopoulos et al, 1999; Sciot et al, 2000), which involves production of a CDH11-USP6 fusion product (Oliveira et al, 2004); other reported translocations include t(1;17)(p34.1–34.3;p13), t(3;17) (q21;p13), t(5;17)(q33;p13), t(9;17)(q22;p11 to 12), t(11;16)(q13;q22 to 23), t(17;17) (q12;p13), and t(6;13)(q15;q34) translocations (Dal Cin et al, 2000; Nielsen et al, 2002; Oliveira et al, 2005; Mentzel et al, 2012). Based on the fact that most translocations involve USP6, and a varied number of fusion partners, break-apart FISH for USP6 would be the most diagnostically helpful.

SARCOMAS WITH VARIABLE COMPLEX GENETIC ALTERATIONS WITH NO SPECIFIC PATTERN

Tumors in this group are characterized by pleomorphic/spindle cell morphology, including MFH, LMS, and malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumor (MPNST). Chromosomal breakpoints in these tumors are widely scattered, with no predilection for any of the recurrent breakpoints and no losses to any of the morphologic subtypes. A prime example of this type of sarcoma is LMS, a malignant tumor of smooth muscle.

Leiomyosarcomas are adult soft-tissue sarcomas that show varying degrees of smooth muscle differentiation and can develop anywhere in the body. LMSs usually show complex karyotypic alterations in the form of gains, losses, and amplifications in chromosomes. Some gains and losses of chromosomal material tend to correlate with poor outcome, large tumor size, and metastatic dissemination, and include loss of 1p12-pter, loss of 2p, loss of 13q14-q21 (targeting the Rb pathway), loss of 10q (targeting PTEN), and loss of 16q, as well as gains of 17p, 8q, and 5p14 pter. Activation of the *PI3K-AKT* pathway through different mechanisms (e.g., activation of insulin-like growth factor receptor [IGFR]; inactivation of PTEN, a negative regulator of *PI3K-AKT*) also plays a crucial role in the development and maintenance of LMS. This activation leads to the concomitant activation of downstream effectors such as mTOR (target of rapamycin protein; discussed in Chapter 23, see Fig. 23-15) and its targets (e.g., β-catenin, pS6, p4E-BP), as well as to stabilization of a particularly important promitotic protein, HDM-2 (human double minute-binding protein). Clinical trials have shown that analogs of rapamycin such as everolimus (RAD001), an mTOR inhibitor, have some efficacy in patients with LMS. It is known that the more differentiated retroperitoneal LMSs tend to behave more aggressively as a result of amplification/overexpression of myocardin. This protein is a transcriptional cofactor for regulating smooth muscle differentiation, and its inactivation is associated with less differentiated histology. Myocardin might constitute a promising therapeutic target.

MOLECULAR GENETIC PATHOLOGY OF MULTIPLE ENDOCRINE NEOPLASIA

Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) syndromes consist of a group of benign and malignant tumors in the pituitary gland, thyroid gland,

parathyroid glands, adrenal glands, endocrine pancreas, paraganglia, or nonendocrine organs. Currently, the well-recognized MEN syndrome includes type 1 MEN and type 2 MEN. Some hereditary diseases are not classic for, but should be included in, the MEN syndromes, such as VHL syndrome, familial paraganglioma syndromes, Cowden syndrome, Carney complex, hyperparathyroidism jaw tumor syndrome, and other uncommon conditions (Callender et al, 2008).

Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1, also known as *Wermer syndrome*, is characterized by tumors in the parathyroid glands, stomach, pancreas and intestinal tract, anterior pituitary gland, endocrine pancreas, and duodenum, and by the presence of other, nonendocrine tumors such as hemangioma, ependymoma, and leiomyoma, often at a young age (Callender et al, 2008; Dreijerink et al, 2009). The syndrome is caused by inactivating germ-line mutations of the MEN 1 TSG, *MEN1*, encoding a gene product that is involved in the regulation of gene transcription, DNA replication and repair, and chromatin modification (Dreijerink et al, 2009). Approximately 10% of patients are the first affected person in their family, or the index patient. By 50 years of age, approximately 80% of patients with mutations in the *MEN1* TSG will have the disease, and 90% to 95% of these patients will have abnormal biochemical screening results (Trump et al, 1996; Chandrasekharappa & Teh, 2001; Callender et al, 2008). Genetic testing is complicated, as it may detect hundreds of disease-causing mutations (e.g., *MEN1*), as well as polymorphisms. It may potentially identify those with early asymptomatic hyperparathyroidism, allowing for early nonsurgical intervention to avoid invasive surgery (Chew, 2009).

Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2 is characterized by strong penetrance of the MTC and associated pheochromocytoma and hyperparathyroidism. It can be further categorized into MEN 2A, MEN 2B, and FMTC, based on the risk for pheochromocytoma or hyperparathyroidism, and the presence or absence of characteristic physical features (Callender et al, 2008; Raue et al, 2009). MEN 2 is caused by germ-line activating mutations of the *RET* proto-oncogene due to missense mutations, predominantly in exons 10, 11, or 13 to 16, and rarely in exons 5 and 8 (Da Silva et al, 2003; Dvorakova et al, 2005). *RET* is located on chromosome 10q11.2 and encodes a TKR that appears to transduce growth and differentiation signals in several developing tissues, including those derived from the neural crest. Constitutive activation of *RET* leads to uncontrolled cell growth and survival. Genetic testing for germ-line *RET* mutations is available for a definitive diagnosis of MEN 2 in patients who have an equivocal presentation or family history.

Close genotype-phenotype correlations have been noted in MEN 2. Certain specific *RET* mutations (genotype) are associated with age at onset, aggressiveness of MTC, and the presence or absence of other endocrine neoplasms (phenotype) (Eng et al, 1996; Yip et al, 2003). MEN 2A, the most common subtype, has a detectable *RET* mutation in at least 95% of patients (Mulligan et al, 1994; Schuffenecker et al, 1994). Among those mutations, codon 634 (exon 11) and codons 609, 611, 618, and 620 are found to be mutated in 85% of patients with MEN 2A and in 10% to 15% of patients with MEN 2B. MEN 2B, the rarest subtype of MEN 2, has *RET* mutations in codon 918 (exon 16) in more than 95% of patients, and rarely in codon 883 of exon 15 (A883F in the encoded protein) (Mulligan et al, 1995; Gimm et al, 1997). Patients with FMTC who develop only MTC with its germ-line mutations have these mutations from exons 13 to 15 of *RET* (Brauckhoff et al, 2002). Based on the mutation sites and numbers, MEN 2 can be stratified into three different levels of risk for MTC development (Brandi et al, 2001; Frank-Raue et al, 2006): high-risk group with mutations (codons 609, 768, 790, 791, 804, and 891), higher-risk group with mutations (codons 611, 618, 620, and 634), and highest-risk group with mutations (codons 883 and 918). Genetic testing may help to determine appropriate treatment options for individual patients, including prophylactic thyroidectomy, as well as the extent of surgery.

von Hippel–Lindau syndrome is an autosomal dominant inheritable neoplasia syndrome characterized by hemangioblastomas in the CNS and retina, pheochromocytomas, renal cysts and clear cell RCC, pancreatic cysts and islet cell tumors, endolymphatic sac tumors, and papillary cystadenomas of the epididymis and broad ligament (Maher et al, 1991). It has a strong penetrance, and more than 90% of affected individuals have the disease by 65 years of age. As discussed in the earlier section on renal tumors, VHL disease is caused by inactivating germ-line mutations of the VHL TSG, which contains three exons and is located on chromosome 3p25. VHL is critical in the process of regulating HIF-α and -β, which participate in the cell's response to hypoxia, as discussed earlier. Similar to MEN 2, a clear relationship has been noted between the type of genetic mutation of *VHL* (the genotype) and the pattern of tumors that developed in that particular family (the phenotype) (Crossey et al, 1994; Maher et al, 1996; Webster et al, 1998). The syndrome is associated with an increased risk for a variety of tumors in an allele-specific manner. Genetic testing is available for definite diagnosis of VHL syndrome in patients with equivocal disease and apparently sporadic *VHL*-related disease (Stolle et al, 1998).

Familial paraganglioma syndromes are inherited in an autosomal dominant manner and are characterized by multiple head and neck, thoracic, and abdominal paragangliomas and/or pheochromocytomas. Four familial paraganglioma syndromes have been described: PGL 1, PGL 2, PGL 3, and PGL 4 (Callender et al, 2008; Myssiorek et al, 2008). Most familial cases of paraganglioma have been found to be associated with the mutation of three genes encoding subunits of the mitochondrial II/succinate dehydrogenase (SDH) complex: *SDHB* at 1p36.1 (PGL4), *SDHC* at 1q21 (PGL3), and *SDHD* at 11q23 (PGL1) (most common) by linkage and candidate gene studies (Myssiorek et al, 2008). Individuals with *SDHB* mutation usually have paragangliomas in the abdomen and less frequently in the head and neck, the chest, and the adrenal gland, and are associated with an increased risk for malignancy. Individuals with *SDHD* mutation develop paragangliomas most often in the head and neck (Neumann et al, 2004; Benn et al, 2006). *SDHD* mutation is usually associated with low risk for malignancy of paragangliomas (Neumann et al, 2004; Dreijerink et al, 2009). Individuals with *SDHC* mutations are rare, and paragangliomas usually present in the head and neck, with a benign course (Schiavi et al, 2005).

The genetic screening method is very useful for predicting risk for malignancy, because so far the biologic behavior of all neuroendocrine tumors cannot be determined by conventional histologic examination alone. Genetic screening for the three genes previously discussed has been offered for familial paraganglioma (Oosterwijk et al, 1996). This test can identify individuals with mutations, allowing earlier detection and earlier intervention.

Cowden syndrome is a rare autosomal dominant, cancer-predisposing condition characterized by increased risk for breast, thyroid, and endometrial cancers and other benign conditions, including multiple hamartomas in the colon, lipomas, and fibromas (Callender et al, 2008; Hobert & Eng, 2009). It is caused by germ-line mutations in the *TSG phosphate and tensin homologue deleted on chromosome 10. PTEN* encodes a tumor suppressor promoting G1 cell-cycle arrest or apoptosis by downregulating *PI3K* and *AKT* and, concurrently, the raf-MEK-ERK pathway (Waite & Eng, 2002; Hobert & Eng, 2009).

Genetic testing for this condition is commercially available to identify mutations and/or deletions within *PTEN* (Marsh et al, 1998; Zhou et al, 2003). Approximately 85% of patients with Cowden syndrome have an identifiable *PTEN* mutation or deletion (Marsh et al, 1998; Eng, 2003; Zhou et al, 2003). This method includes multiplex ligation–dependent probe amplification (the preferred method), Southern blotting, monochromosomal hybrid analysis, real-time polymerase chain reaction, and semiquantitative multiplex PCR. Promoter analysis is also used for genetic testing in the research setting. Identification of *PTEN* mutations not only can confirm the clinical diagnosis, but also can help in prenatal diagnosis and prediction of mutations in affected families (Callender et al, 2008; Hobert & Eng, 2009).

Li-Fraumeni syndrome is a rare autosomal dominant disorder characterized by increased risk for soft-tissue sarcoma, breast cancer, and osteosarcoma, as well as brain tumor, childhood leukemia, and adrenocortical carcinoma (Moule et al, 2006; Callender et al, 2008).

Most individuals or families with Li-Fraumeni syndrome have the germ-line mutation in the TSG encoding the p53 protein on chromosome 17p13.1. Unlike other TSGs, such as *RB* and *p16*, germ-line mutations in only one copy of *p53* can result in cancer development (Yoon et al, 2002). Most *p53* germ-line mutations are missense mutations, and only 10% are due to deletions (Olivier et al, 2003). A few cases of Li-Fraumeni syndrome and Li-Fraumeni–like syndrome show mutations in another TSG, *CHEK2*, without *p53* mutation (Bell et al, 1999).

Certain genotypes of *p53* mutations have prognostic significance. Cancers harboring missense *p53* mutations are associated with more aggressive behavior; these mutations therefore suggest poorer prognoses. Missense mutations within the DNA binding region of the *p53* gene are more likely predisposed to early onset of breast cancer and brain tumor, whereas mutations outside the DNA binding region are more commonly seen in adrenocortical carcinoma. Mutations leading to a *p53* null phenotype are associated with earlier onset of brain tumor (Olivier et al, 2003).

Genetic testing for a mutation of *p53* in a patient with Li-Fraumeni or Li-Fraumeni–like syndrome can confirm the clinical diagnosis and screen family members at risk. However, it should also be noted that inactivating

p53 mutations and homozygous deletions of this gene are observed in a significant number of other types of cancer, including colon, breast, and bladder cancers.

Neurofibromatoses are a group of genetically distinct disorders with predisposition to induce nerve sheath tumor. They include neurofibromatosis 1 (NF1), neurofibromatosis 2 (NF2), and schwannomatosis.

Neurofibromatosis 1 (also referred to as *von Recklinghausen's disease*), the most common type, is an autosomal dominant multisystem disorder with 100% penetrance and variable expression. It predisposes to the development of benign and malignant tumors, typically neurofibroma, and less commonly glioma and other abnormalities (learning disability, vasculopathy, and bony abnormalities) (Arun & Gutmann, 2004; Boyd et al, 2009). Patients with this condition often are observed to have multiple tumors and café-au-lait spots on their body surfaces.

NF1 results from a mutation in the *NF1* gene, *NF1*, located on chromosome 17q11.2, and encodes for the large protein, neurofibromin. Of major importance, neurofibromin contains at least one domain that has GTPase-activating (GAP) activity with the ras-p21 protein. As discussed in Chapter 75, wild-type ras-p21 is activated by exchanging guanosine diphosphate for GTP. GAP inactivates wild-type ras-p21 by promoting the hydrolysis of ras-p21–bound GTP. Mutations in *NF1* result in loss of function of neurofibromin, leading to increased Ras activity, particularly in neurocutaneous tissues, as well as to increase proliferation and tumorigenesis (Boyd et al, 2009). The mutations are near evenly split between the sporadic and the inherited. Types of mutations of *NF1* include complete gene deletions, insertions, stop codons, splicing mutations, amino acid substitutions, and chromosomal rearrangements (Messiaen et al, 2000).

Molecular testing for *NF1* is clinically available. Because of the large gene size and lack of hot spots of *NF1* mutations, comprehensive screening approaches have been established to detect all or most mutations and may detect 95% of *NF1* mutations (Messiaen et al, 2000). These approaches include the optimized protein truncation test (an in vitro coupled transcription/translation synthesis assay designed as a tool to detect mutations that lead to premature translational termination), FISH, direct sequencing, RT-PCR with Southern blot analysis, and/or cytogenetic analysis (Messiaen et al, 2000; Boyd et al, 2009).

Molecular testing of *NF1* mutations is used mainly for definitive diagnosis in suspicious cases, and for prenatal or preimplantation genetic diagnosis. However, it is not indicated for the routine clinical care of patients with NF1. Because of the lack of genotype-phenotype correlations, genetic testing, although useful for confirming the diagnosis of NF1, does not predict disease severity or outcome.

Neurofibromatosis 2 is also a dominantly inherited tumor predisposition syndrome characterized by the development of multiple schwannomas, meningiomas, and ependymomas. Most patients present with hearing loss due to inevitable development of schwannomas affecting both vestibulocochlear (eighth) nerves (Evans, 2009a, 2009b).

NF2 is caused by mutations in the *NF2* gene on chromosome 22. More than 50% of patients have new mutations, and about one third are mosaic for the underlying disease. Germ-line mutations are most frequently truncating mutations (nonsense and frameshifts) that are associated with the most severe disease. However, single and multiple exon deletions may cause mild disease. Most mutations in *NF2* found on sequence analysis are pathogenic. Some missense mutations or in-frame deletions may be harmless (Evans, 2009b). Diagnosis of NF2 is based on clinical criteria; molecular genetic testing for *NF2* mutations can confirm the diagnosis because *NF2* is the only gene known to be associated with this disease. Methods of genetic testing for NF2 include sequence analysis, mutation scanning, duplication/deletion testing, RT-PCR, real-time PCR, array comparative genomic hybridization, and combinations of these. Large deletions encompassing *NF2*, ring chromosome 22, and translocation disrupting *NF2* can be detected by cytogenetic analysis, and smaller deletions can be identified by FISH. Molecular testing may also be used for appropriate surveillance, earlier detection, and early intervention of disease among relatives at risk (Evans, 2009a, 2009b).

Schwannomatosis is a recently recognized third major form of NF, characterized by multiple nonvestibular schwannomas in the absence of meningiomas, intraspinal ependymomas, and other clinical signs of NF2. Schwannomatosis and NF2 are clinically and molecularly distinct (MacCollin et al, 2003), but their phenotypes frequently overlap. In contrast to patients with NF2, multiple tumors from the same individual with schwannomatosis do not share a constitutional mutation (Jacoby et al, 1997; Kaufman et al, 2003). Schwannomatosis-derived schwannomas have been shown to have truncating mutations of the *NF2* gene (Jacoby et al, 1997). Commercially available *NF2* mutational analysis does not help differentiate between schwannomatosis and NF2 (MacCollin et al, 1994; Moyhuddin et al, 2003). Definitive diagnosis of schwannomatosis and its distinction from NF2 await identification of the schwannomatosis locus or gene.

CANCERS OF UNKNOWN ORIGIN

Cancer of unknown primary (CUP) is defined by the presence of cytologically or histologically proven metastases, for which no primary tumor can be identified despite standardized and extensive diagnostic workup. It constitutes approximately 4% of all malignancies, of which 80% are adenocarcinoma (50% well to moderately differentiated and 30% poorly differentiated), 15% are squamous cell carcinoma, and 5% are undifferentiated neoplasm on light microscopy (Horlings et al, 2008). Accordingly, failure to identify the primary tumor theoretically incurs the risk for failure to administer appropriate systemic combination chemotherapy, as well as targeted molecular therapy. Although the metastatic pattern in these patients is often atypical, no direct evidence indicates that molecular genetic abnormalities in these tumors differ from those seen in metastatic cancers of known primary site. With expansion of tissue-specific targeted therapy, it is believed that patient prognosis can be better predicted when the primary site of metastatic tumors is assigned.

This has increased the need for identification of the tissue of origin, which further makes the immunohistochemical analysis a crucial component of clinical workup. However, the current success rate of the diagnostic workup, including clinical, radiologic, and extensive pathologic methods, varies between 20% and 30% (Horlings et al, 2008). Therefore, new methods are required to increase diagnostic accuracy.

The development of molecular technology that allows gene expression profiling of tumors provides an opportunity for improved diagnosis of patients with CUP. Quantitative reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) is a technique that allows gene expression profiling of FFPE tissue specimens, and therefore is a potential diagnostic tool with broad applicability. These techniques have enabled researchers to develop expression profiles unique to a wide variety of well-characterized primary cancers. The accuracy of diagnosis of primary site obtained by comparing these known unique signatures with those from unknown primary cancers is 80% to 90%. This is based on the finding that metastatic cancers retain at least the basic genetic signature found in their respective primary cancers. Gene expression profiling has also shown important potential diagnostic and therapeutic implications in CUP. The CUP colon cancer profile can be identified, and patients appear to respond well to current regimens for metastatic CRC (Varadhachary et al, 2008). Expression profiling of certain genes (e.g., *Her/2neu*, *RAS*, *EGFR*, *VEGF*, *COX-2*, *cKIT*) for CUP will benefit patients by revealing therapies that can be used to target these molecules (Pentheroudakis et al, 2007).

To date, several gene expression–based tests have demonstrated an increase in overall accuracy for the primary site of origin to 78% to 88% (Horlings et al, 2008). Ramaswamy and colleagues (2001) demonstrated 78% classification accuracy in classifying 10 carcinomas and 4 noncarcinoma types by using oligonucleotide microarray gene expression analysis, whereas Tothill and colleagues (2005) achieved 89% accuracy with 12 carcinomas and 1 noncarcinoma after reducing the gene classifier from thousands to 79 genes by converting microarray gene expression to RT-qPCR (Tothill et al, 2005). Ma and colleagues (2006) used data from a 22,000-gene microarray and devised a 92-gene RT-PCR assay that classified 119 tumors of unknown origin to 32 primary site/histologic types with 87% accuracy. A molecular assay (CUP assay) was developed (Veridex, La Jolla, Calif.) that evaluates the expression of 10 tissue type–specific gene markers using quantitative RT-PCR technology and is designed to detect tumors originating from six specific sites: lung (HUMPB, TTF1, DSG3), breast (MGB, PDEF), colon (CDH17), ovary (WT1), pancreas (PSCA, F5), and prostate (PSA) (Varadhachary et al, 2008). Another diagnostic gene expression–based classifier (CupPrint, Agendia, Amsterdam, The Netherlands) was developed using 495 genes to classify 48 tumor types. Similar to these, a gene expression–based breast cancer prognosis assay (Genomic Health OncotypeDx Breast Cancer Assay, Redwood City, Calif; MammaPrint, Amsterdam, The Netherlands) has been one of the few gene panels to achieve FDA approval. The FDA has also cleared the Pathwork tissue-of-origin test, developed by Pathwork Diagnostics (Redwood City, Calif.). This is a gene expression microarray-based test of 2029 genes that quantifies the molecular similarity of tumor specimens, improving the identification of primary sites from 60% by IHC alone (Anderson & Weiss, 2010) to 80%, though the test is limited to only 15 tumor types (Pillai et al, 2011).

Although a microarray-based gene expression profiling test will not obviate the need for thorough clinical investigation, it may facilitate more

focused testing, which would result in reduced cost, lower patient morbidity, and improved outcome.

miRNA IN CANCER

MicroRNA (miRNA) are small, noncoding endogenous single-stranded RNAs comprising only 19 to 25 nucleotides in length but on average about 22 nucleotides in length. First described in 1993, these molecules are actively involved in the regulation of multiple physiologic and pathologic procedures in humans, animals, and plants. Recent studies have also demonstrated their key roles in the pathogenetic evolution, progression, and metastasis of carcinomas. miRNA expression profiling has been recently evaluated as a reliable diagnostic biomarker for differentiating between normal and tumor specimens. In addition to distinguishing normal from cancerous tissues, molecular markers can also be used to determine the tissue of origin in tumors of unknown primary (Lu et al, 2005). The miRNA expression enhances (oncogenic miRNA) or reduces (tumor suppressor) tumor growth as the tumor progresses and was found to be associated with drug resistance (Ali et al, 2010). Although some miRNAs are tumor-specific (Liang et al, 2007), miR-21 has proved to be the global oncogenic miRNA in many solid tumors (Gall et al, 2013; Hermansen et al, 2013; Si et al, 2013; Sicard et al, 2013; Tang et al, 2013; Yang et al, 2013). The miRNAs with oncogenic potential include miR-155, miR-17-92, and miR-217, but it is not limited to these alone. The level of expression of miR-155 is upregulated in various carcinomas (Yang et al, 2013, Zhang et al, 2012a). However, they are specifically significant in pancreatic cancers, where they have prognostic relevance (Zhang et al, 2012a). They can be used for early diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis.

Similarly, the miRNA let-7 family and miR-200 family is frequently downregulated in many types of cancer, suggesting their role as a general tumor suppressor (Bhutia et al, 2013). Low levels of let-7 miRNA49 have been shown to indicate poorer prognosis with shorter postoperative survival in human lung cancer (Xia et al, 2010). The tumor suppressor miR-34 is directly transactivated and induced by p53 signaling in the inhibition of human pancreatic cancer tumor-initiating cells (Vogt et al, 2011). The miR409-3p, miR-7, and miR93 panel can be used for early detection of colorectal cancer (Wang et al, 2015). Low expression of miR-34b and miR-129-3p are associated with a poor clinical outcome of gastric cancer patients, and hypermethylation of miR-129-2 and miR-34b CpG islands had a tendency to show poor clinicopathologic features.

CLINICAL APPLICATION OF NEXT-GENERATION SEQUENCING

Next-generation sequencing (NGS) has been applied to whole-genome sequencing (WGS), whole-exome sequencing (WES), and RNA profiling (RNA-Seq). High-throughput sequencing (i.e., NGS) technologies parallelize the sequencing process of millions of reactions, producing thousands or millions of sequences concurrently (Metzker, 2010). A fundamental process of NGS is that clonally amplified DNA templates, or single DNA molecules, are sequenced in a massively parallel fashion in a flow cell (Fig. 77-5). As a result, the cost of DNA sequencing is significantly reduced to the point that it can routinely be applied in clinical settings.

Currently several platforms of NGS are available including Pacific Bio (single-molecular real-time sequencing), Ion Torrent (ion semiconductor), Illumina (sequencing by synthesis), 454 (pyrosequencing), SOLiD (sequencing by ligation). The two most commonly used NGS platforms in clinical laboratories are Ion Torrent PGM (Personal Genetic Machine) (Life Technology) and Illumina MiSeq, as both offer significant advantages such as read length (100 to 200 bp), accuracy (>98%), reads per run (up to 80 million), time per run (2 hours to 24 hours), cost per million bases (<$1), cost of equipment (<$100,000), and low concentration of DNA (especially FFPE).

Ion Torrent PGM sequencing is based on using standard sequencing chemistry with a semiconductor-based detection system (Mardis, 2013). This method of sequencing is based on the detection of hydrogen ions (H^+) that are released during DNA synthesis. By combining the speed and scalability of semiconductor technology with a system of measuring pH fluctuations produced during DNA synthesis in real-time, the Ion Torrent is able to directly turn genetic information into digital data. A variety of chips are available from 10 Mb to greater than 1 Gb, allowing highly accurate sequence data to be generated for 16 samples per run in less than 2 hours. With a raw accuracy rate 99.5% and a detection sensitivity of around 5%, the Ion Torrent is a suitable platform for single-nucleotide variant (SNV) detection and mutational analysis. The Ion AmpliSeq Cancer Hotspot Panel v2 uses a single pool of primers to perform multiplex PCR for preparation of amplicon libraries from genomic "hot spot" regions that are frequently mutated in human cancer genes (Singh et al, 2013). It includes 207 amplicon and 2800 COSMIC point mutations and small indels in 50 oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes. It is compatible with FFPE samples and uses only 10 ng of DNA.

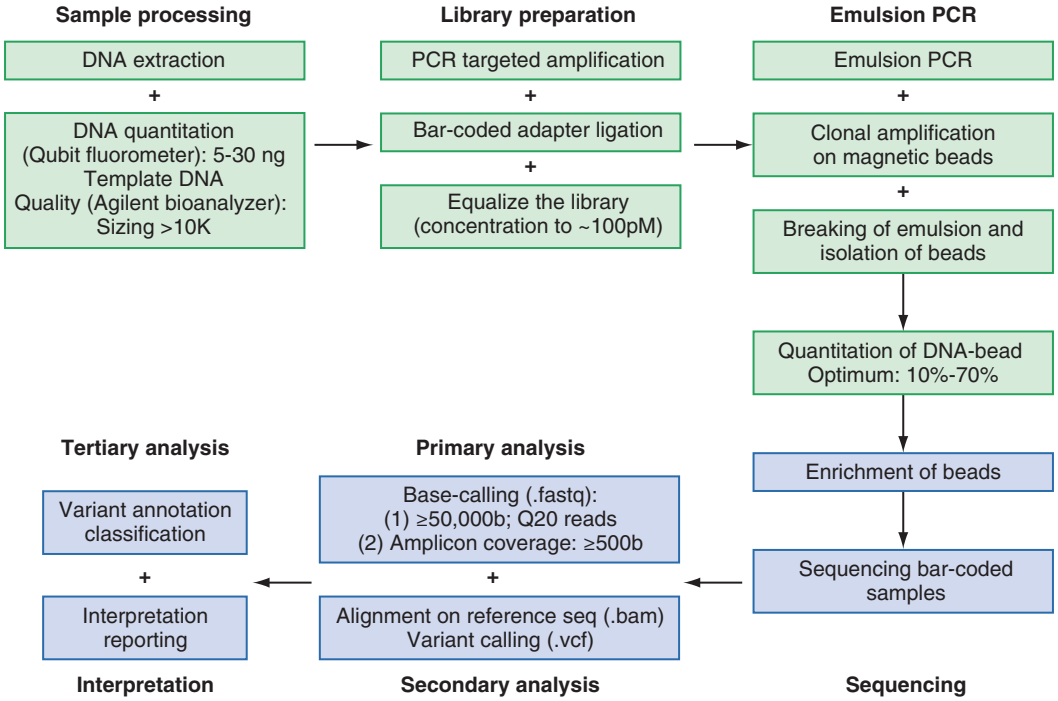


Figure 77-5 Work flow and data analysis of targeted sequencing by next-generation sequencing platforms for clinical applications.

The Illumina MiSeq platform is a reversible terminator-based sequencing by synthesis chemistry (Mardis et al, 2013). MiSeq is a bench-top sequencer and delivers a high sequencing output and a fast data-generation rate. It is able to process larger numbers of samples and to decode larger and more complex genomes. The fluorescence generated during the DNA synthesis is captured digitally by image. The TruSeq Amplicon cancer panel developed by Illumina on the MiSeq platform is a single-tube multiplex PCR. It includes 212 amplicons from 48 cancer-related genes to detect point mutations and small indels. It is compatible with FFPE samples and runs 96 samples at one time. The disadvantage is that it takes a longer time (>48 hours) to generate sequencing data than Ion Torrent PGM.

Since NGS produces millions of reads, analysis of the data requires strong bioinformatics support (Meldrum et al, 2011). NGS data analysis can be divided into several processes: base calling, read alignment, variant calling, and variant annotation (see Fig. 77-5). Base calling is the identification of the specific nucleotide present at each position in a single sequencing read. Read alignment involves correctly positioning short DNA sequence reads (often 50 to 200 base pairs) along the genome in reference sequences. Variant calling is the detection of the DNA variants in the sequence analyzed as compared with a reference sequence. The accuracy of identifying variants greatly depends on the depth of sequence coverage, and increased coverage improves correct variant calling. Because some regions may have low sequence coverage or are difficult to sequence, it is important to visually examine the sequence alignment to resolve an ambiguous call or false call. Variant annotation adds information about each variant detected. For example, annotation pipelines will determine whether a variant is within or near a gene, where the variant is located within that gene (e.g., untranslated region, exon, intron), and whether the variant causes a change in an amino acid within the encoded protein. This process is facilitated by comparing with available databases (i.e., COMICS) and its potential impact on protein function. Finally the potential pathogenic variants have to be interpreted with correlation of clinical information (e.g., tumor types, pathology features) to determine their clinical significance.

NGS has been adopted in clinical diagnostic laboratories for genetic diagnosis and cancer stratification (Meldrum et al, 2011). Genetic changes in cancer genome serve as biomarkers for cancer diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment guidance (i.e., companion diagnosis) (Gonzalez de Castro et al, 2013). The utility of these markers has generally been demonstrated by randomized, controlled trials that select patients with the marker, and report significant improvements in outcomes compared among those with or without biomarkers or those with targeted therapy or with standard therapy. The National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) guidelines as well as many insurance companies have accepted testing genetic markers as the standard of care for cancer patients. It is expected that the diagnosis and treatment of many, if not all, cancers requires understanding the genomic landscape, with an increased understanding of the cancer genome and the development of new target-specific drugs.

Application of NGS in cancer genome testing faces several challenges. Cancer is considered a genetic disorder in which somatic mutations alter the critical signaling pathways leading to uncontrolled proliferation, invasion, and metastasis. These genetic changes range from a single nucleotide change, to structural chromosomal changes (insertions, deletions, rearrangements), to variations in copy number. However, only a small number of these changes are clinically significant in influencing the diagnosis, prognosis, and therapy. These critical changes are often confused with germ-line changes and high-frequency bystander mutations (>90% frequency). Therefore, it is critical to filter out these noncritical mutations. Clinical interpretation of these genetic changes requires understanding not only the function of these alterations but also documentation of the clinical importance, such as response to treatment, either clinically or experimentally. Another challenge is tumor sample selection. Cancer cells are heterogeneous; therefore, small sampling of a large tumor may miss the critical but low-level mutations. Furthermore, background non-neoplastic cells may interfere with the detection of mutations harbored in a small number of tumor cells. This is especially true for small biopsy or fine-needle aspiration samples. The criteria of acceptable samples are based on the assay sensitivity (usually 5%) and coverage (usually >500×). In general, >10% tumor content or >1000 tumor cells for targeted sequencing are required. For all these reasons, molecular pathologists play a very important role in the entire process of NGS, including sample selection, quality control of NGS data, and final interpretation in the context of clinical relevance. It is anticipated that future molecular tumor boards will consist of a group of experts including pathologists, geneticists, experts in bioinformatics, oncologists, and so on, to jointly determine the result interpretation and patient management.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Aldape K, Burger PC, et al: Clinicopathologic aspects of 1p/19q loss and the diagnosis of oligodendroglioma, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 131:242–251, 2007.

Detection of 1p/19q loss greatly improved the ability to accurately diagnose oligodendrogliomas, in particular distinguishing it from other brain tumors, such as astrocytoma and mixed oligoastrocytoma as well as to predict prognosis.

El-Zammar OA, Zhang S, et al: Comparison of FISH, PCR, and immunohistochemistry in assessing EGFR status in lung adenocarcinoma and correlation with clinicopathologic features, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 18:133–137, 2009.

Amplification and activation mutation of EGFR is associated with a number of cancers including lung cancer. This article compares various methods used in identifying the altered copy number, mutation, and protein expression levels in lung cancer.

Halling KC, Kipp BR: Bladder cancer detection using FISH (UroVysion assay), *Adv Anat Pathol* 15:279–286, 2008.

UroVysion is developed and FDA approved to assist in the detection of chromosomal abnormality for bladder cancer in urine specimens. This article discusses its utility in bladder cancer detection and treatment follow-up.

Kato K: Algorithm for in vitro diagnostic multivariate index assay, *Breast Cancer* 16:248–251, 2009.

This article reviews the current knowledge for the marker development and their application in breast cancer including precurrence prediction with Oncotype, a 21-gene panel, and Mammaprint, a 70-gene-microarray test, in women who have invasive breast cancer.

Oakman C, Bessi S, et al: Recent advances in systemic therapy: new diagnostics and biological predictors of outcome in early breast cancer, *Breast Cancer Res* 11:205, 2009.

This article reviews the current knowledge for the marker development and their application in breast cancer including precurrence prediction with Oncotype, a 21-gene panel, and Mammaprint, a 70-gene-microarray test, in women who have invasive breast cancer.

REFERENCES

Abdel-Rahman WM, Peltomaki P: Molecular basis and diagnostics of hereditary colorectal cancers, *Ann Med* 36:379–388, 2004.

Abraham SC, Wu TT, et al: Distinctive molecular genetic alterations in sporadic and familial adenomatous polyposis-associated pancreatoblastomas: frequent alterations in the APC/beta-catenin pathway and chromosome 11p, *Am J Pathol* 159:1619–1627, 2001.

Abraham SC, Wu TT, et al: Genetic and immunohistochemical analysis of pancreatic acinar cell carcinoma: frequent allelic loss on chromosome 11p and alterations in the APC/beta-catenin pathway, *Am J Pathol* 160:953–962, 2002.

Afar DE, Vivanco I, et al: Catalytic cleavage of the androgen-regulated TMPRSS2 protease results in its secretion by prostate and prostate cancer epithelia, *Cancer Res* 61:1686–1692, 2001.

Al-Ahmadie HA, Iyer G, et al: Somatic mutation of fibroblast growth factor receptor-3 (FGFR3) defines a distinct morphological subtype of high-grade urothelial carcinoma, *J Pathol* 224:270–279, 2011.

Alhopuro P, Alazzouzi H, et al: SMAD4 levels and response to 5-fluorouracil in colorectal cancer, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:6311–6316, 2005.

Ali S, Ahmad A, et al: Gemcitabine sensitivity can be induced in pancreatic cancer cells through modulation of miR-200 and miR-21 expression by curcumin or its analogue CDF, *Cancer Res* 70:3606–3617, 2010.

Allgayer H, Babic R, et al: c-erbB-2 is of independent prognostic relevance in gastric cancer and is associated with the expression of tumor-associated protease systems, *J Clin Oncol* 18:2201–2209, 2000.

Amary MF, Ye H, et al: Detection of USP6 gene rearrangement in nodular fasciitis: an important diagnostic tool, *Virchows Arch* 463:97–98, 2013.

Anderson GG, Weiss LM: Determining tissue of origin for metastatic cancers: meta-analysis and literature review of immunohistochemistry performance, *Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol* 18:3–8, 2010.

Antonescu CR, Le Loarer F, et al: Novel YAP1-TFE3 fusion defines a distinct subset of epithelioid hemangioendothelioma, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 52:775–784, 2013.

Antonescu CR, Nafa K, et al: EWS-CREB1: a recurrent variant fusion in clear cell sarcoma—association with gastrointestinal location and absence of melanocytic differentiation, *Clin Cancer Res* 12:5356–5362, 2006.

Aravalli RN, Steer CJ, et al: Molecular mechanisms of hepatocellular carcinoma, *Hepatology* 48:2047–2063, 2008.

Arbajian E, Magnusson L, et al: A benign vascular tumor with a new fusion gene: EWSR1-NFATC1 in hemangioma of the bone, *Am J Surg Pathol* 37:613–616, 2013.

Argani P, Antonescu CR, et al: Primary renal neoplasms with the ASPL-TFE3 gene fusion of alveolar soft part sarcoma: a distinctive tumor entity previously included among renal cell carcinomas of children and adolescents, *Am J Pathol* 159:179–192, 2001.

Argani P, Antonescu CR, et al: PRCC-TFE3 renal carcinomas: morphologic, immunohistochemical, ultrastructural, and molecular analysis of an entity associated with the t(X;1)(p11.2;q21), *Am J Surg Pathol* 26:1553–1566, 2002.

Argani P, Ladanyi M: Recent advances in pediatric renal neoplasia, *Adv Anat Pathol* 10:243–260, 2003a.

Argani P, Ladanyi M: Distinctive neoplasms characterised by specific chromosomal translocations comprise a significant proportion of paediatric renal cell carcinomas, *Pathology* 35:492–498, 2003b.

Argani P, Lae M, et al: Renal carcinomas with the t(6;11)(p21;q12). Clinicopathologic features and demonstration of the specific Alpha-TFEB gene fusion by immunohistochemistry, RT-PCR, and DNA-PCR, *Am J Surg Pathol* 29:230–240, 2005.

Argani P, Lae M, et al: Translocation carcinomas of the kidney after chemotherapy in childhood, *J Clin Oncol* 24:1529–1534, 2006.

Argani P, Olgac S, et al: Xp11 translocation renal cell carcinoma in adults: expanded clinical, pathologic, and genetic spectrum, *Am J Surg Pathol* 31:1149–1160, 2007.

Argani P, Yonescu R, et al: Molecular confirmation of the t(6;11)(p21;q12) renal cell carcinomas in archival paraffin embedded material using a break-apart TFEB FISH assay expands its clinicopathologic spectrum, *Am J Surg Pathol* 36:1516–1526, 2012.

Arun D, Gutmann DH: Recent advances in neurofibromatosis type 1, *Curr Opin Neurol* 17:101–105, 2004.

Ayhan A, Yasui W, et al: Loss of heterozygosity at the bcl-2 gene locus and expression of bcl-2 in human gastric and colorectal carcinomas, *Jpn J Cancer Res* 85:584–591, 1994.

Azechi H, Nishida N, et al: Disruption of the p16/cyclin D1/retinoblastoma protein pathway in the majority of human hepatocellular carcinomas, *Oncology* 60:346–354, 2001.

Bai F, Nakanishi Y, et al: Codon 64 of K-ras gene mutation pattern in hepatocellular carcinomas induced by bleomycin and 1-nitropyrene in A/J mice, *Teratog Carcinog Mutagen* (Suppl 1):161–170, 2003.

Bang YJ, Van Cutsem E, et al: Trastuzumab in combination with chemotherapy versus chemotherapy alone for treatment of HER2-positive advanced gastric or gastro-oesophageal junction cancer (ToGA): a phase 3, open-label, randomised controlled trial, *Lancet* 376:687–697, 2010.

Bao T, Davidson NE: Gene expression profiling of breast cancer, *Adv Surg* 42:249–260, 2008.

Barault L, Veyrie N, et al: Mutations in the RAS-MAPK, PIK (phosphatidylinositol-3-OH kinase) signaling network correlate with poor survival in a population-based series of colon cancers, *Int J Cancer* 122:2255–2259, 2008.

Bass AJ, Thorsson V, et al: Comprehensive molecular characterization of gastric adenocarcinoma, *Nature* 513:202–209, 2014.

Bell DW, Varley JM, et al: Heterozygous germ line hCHK2 mutations in Li-Fraumeni syndrome, *Science* 286:2528–2531, 1999.

Benn DE, Gimenez-Roqueplo AP, et al: Clinical presentation and penetrance of pheochromocytoma/paraganglioma syndromes, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 91:827–836, 2006.

Berx G, Becker KF, et al: Mutations of the human E-cadherin (CDH1) gene, *Hum Mutat* 12:226–237, 1998.

Bhutia YD, Hung SW, et al: Differential processing of let-7a precursors influences RRM2 expression and chemosensitivity in pancreatic cancer: role of LIN-28 and SET oncoprotein, *PLoS ONE* 8:e53436, 2013.

Billerey C, Chopin D, et al: Frequent FGFR3 mutations in papillary non-invasive bladder (pTa) tumors, *Am J Pathol* 158:1955–1959, 2001.

Billings SD, Giblen G, et al: Superficial low-grade fibromyxoid sarcoma (Evans tumor): a clinicopathologic analysis of 19 cases with a unique observation in the pediatric population, *Am J Surg Pathol* 29:204–210, 2005.

Bioulac-Sage P, Balabaud C, et al: Subtype classification of hepatic adenoma, *Dig Surg* 27:39–45, 2010.

Bioulac-Sage P, Rebouissou S, et al: Clinical, morphologic, and molecular features defining so called telangiectatic focal nodular hyperplasias of the liver, *Gastroenterology* 128:1211–1218, 2005.

Bjerkehagen B, Dietrich C, et al: Extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma: multimodal diagnosis and identification of a new cytogenetic subgroup characterized by t(9;17) (q22;q11), *Virchows Arch* 435:524–530, 1999.

Bloomston M, Frankel WL, et al: MicroRNA expression patterns to differentiate pancreatic adenocarcinoma from normal pancreas and chronic pancreatitis, *JAMA* 297:1901–1908, 2007.

Boparai KS, Dekker E, et al: Hyperplastic polyps and sessile serrated adenomas as a phenotypic expression of MYH-associated polyposis, *Gastroenterology* 135: 2014–2018, 2008.

Bourke B, Broderick A, et al: Peutz-Jeghers syndrome and management recommendations, *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 4:1550; author reply 1550, 2006.

Boyault S, Rickman DS, et al: Transcriptome classification of HCC is related to gene alterations and to new therapeutic targets, *Hepatology* 45:42–52, 2007.

Boyd KP, Korf BR, et al: Neurofibromatosis type 1, *J Am Acad Dermatol* 61:1–14; quiz 15-16, 2009.

Brandi ML, Gagel RF, et al: Guidelines for diagnosis and therapy of MEN type 1 and type 2, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 86:5658–5671, 2001.

Brauckhoff M, Gimm O, et al: Papillary thyroid carcinoma in patients with RET proto-oncogene germline mutation, *Thyroid* 12:557–561, 2002.

Breneman JC, Lyden E, et al: Prognostic factors and clinical outcomes in children and adolescents with metastatic rhabdomyosarcoma—a report from the Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study IV, *J Clin Oncol* 21:78–84, 2003.

Bridge JA, Kanamori M, et al: Fusion of the ALK gene to the clathrin heavy chain gene, CLTC, in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, *Am J Pathol* 159:411–415, 2001.

Bruder E, Passera O, et al: Morphologic and molecular characterization of renal cell carcinoma in children and young adults, *Am J Surg Pathol* 28:1117–1132, 2004.

Bubendorf L, Kononen J, et al: Survey of gene amplifications during prostate cancer progression by high-throughput fluorescence in situ hybridization on tissue microarrays, *Cancer Res* 59:803–806, 1999.

Buchholz M, Gress TM: Molecular changes in pancreatic cancer, *Expert Rev Anticancer Ther* 9:1487–1497, 2009.

Budhu A, Forgues M, et al: Prediction of venous metastases, recurrence, and prognosis in hepatocellular carcinoma based on a unique immune response signature of the liver microenvironment, *Cancer Cell* 10:99–111, 2006.

Butrynski JE, D'Adamo DR, et al: Crizotinib in ALK-rearranged inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, *N Engl J Med* 363:1727–1733, 2010.

Caldas C, Hahn SA, et al: Frequent somatic mutations and homozygous deletions of the p16 (MTS1) gene in pancreatic adenocarcinoma, *Nat Genet* 8:27–32, 1994.

Callender GG, Rich TA, et al: Multiple endocrine neoplasia syndromes, *Surg Clin North Am* 88:863–895, viii, 2008.

Carcao MD, Taylor GP, et al: Renal-cell carcinoma in children: a different disorder from its adult counterpart? *Med Pediatr Oncol* 31:153–158, 1998.

Cardarella S, Ortiz TM, et al: The introduction of systematic genomic testing for patients with non-small-cell lung cancer, *J Thorac Oncol* 7:1767–1774, 2012.

Cerveira N, Ribeiro FR, et al: TMPRSS2-ERG gene fusion causing ERG overexpression precedes chromosome copy number changes in prostate carcinomas and paired HGPIN lesions, *Neoplasia* 8:826–832, 2006.

Chaft JE, Rekhtman N, et al: ALK- rearranged lung cancer: adenosquamous lung cancer masquerading as pure squamous carcinoma, *J Thorac Oncol* 7:768–769, 2012.

Chandrasekharappa SC, Teh BT: Clinical and molecular aspects of multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1, *Front Horm Res* 28:50–80, 2001.

Chang J, Kim NG, et al: Assessment of chromosomal losses and gains in hepatocellular carcinoma, *Cancer Lett* 182:193–202, 2002.

Cher ML, Bova GS, et al: Genetic alterations in untreated metastases and androgen-independent prostate cancer detected by comparative genomic hybridization and allelotyping, *Cancer Res* 56:3091–3102, 1996.

Chew SL: Use of mutation analysis in endocrine neoplasia syndromes, *Clin Med* 9:362–363, 2009.

Chiang DY, Villanueva A, et al: Focal gains of VEGFA and molecular classification of hepatocellular carcinoma, *Cancer Res* 68:6779–6788, 2008.

Cho KR, Shih IeM: Ovarian cancer, *Annu Rev Pathol* 4:287–313, 2009.

Chung DC, Rustgi AK: The hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer syndrome: genetics and clinical implications, *Ann Intern Med* 138:560–570, 2003.

Cifola I, Spinelli R, et al: Genome-wide screening of copy number alterations and LOH events in renal cell carcinomas and integration with gene expression profile, *Mol Cancer* 7:6, 2008.

Clark JM: The epidemiology of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in adults, *J Clin Gastroenterol* 40(Suppl 1):S5–S10, 2006.

Clark J, Merson S, et al: Diversity of TMPRSS2-ERG fusion transcripts in the human prostate, *Oncogene* 26:2667–2673, 2007.

Coate LE, John T, et al: Molecular predictive and prognostic markers in non-small-cell lung cancer, *Lancet Oncol* 10:1001–1010, 2009.

Cobrinik D, Dowdy SF, et al: The retinoblastoma protein and the regulation of cell cycling, *Trends Biochem Sci* 17:312–315, 1992.

Coindre JM, Hostein I, et al: Diagnosis of clear cell sarcoma by real-time reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction analysis of paraffin embedded tissues: clinicopathologic and molecular analysis of 44 patients from the French sarcoma group, *Cancer* 107:1055–1064, 2006.

Coindre JM, Pedeutour F, et al: Well-differentiated and dedifferentiated liposarcomas, *Virchows Arch* 456:167–179, 2010.

Colnot S, Decaens T, et al: Liver-targeted disruption of Apc in mice activates beta-catenin signaling and leads to hepatocellular carcinomas, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 101:17216–17221, 2004.

Croitoru ME, Cleary SP, et al: Germline MYH mutations in a clinic-based series of Canadian multiple colorectal adenoma patients, *J Surg Oncol* 95:499–506, 2007.

Crossey PA, Richards FM, et al: Identification of intragenic mutations in the von Hippel-Lindau disease tumor suppressor gene and correlation with disease phenotype, *Hum Mol Genet* 3:1303–1308, 1994.

Cuschieri K, Wentzensen N: Human papillomavirus mRNA and p16 detection as biomarkers for the improved diagnosis of cervical neoplasia, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 17:2536–2545, 2008.

Cuzick J, Arbyn M, et al: Overview of human papillomavirus-based and other novel options for cervical cancer screening in developed and developing countries, *Vaccine* 26(Suppl 10):K29–K41, 2008.

Cuzick J, Berney DM, et al: Prognostic value of cell cycle progression signature for a prostate cancer death in a conservatively managed needle biopsy cohort, *Br J Cancer* 106:1095–1099, 2012.

Da Silva AM, Maciel RM, et al: A novel germ-line point mutation in RET exon 8 (Gly(533)Cys) in a large kindred with familial medullary thyroid carcinoma, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:5438–5443, 2003.

Dal Cin P, Kozakewich HP, et al: Variant translocations involving 16q22 and 17p13 in solid variant and extraosseous forms of aneurysmal bone cyst, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 28:233–234, 2000.

Davicioni E, Finckenstein FG, et al: Identification of a PAX-FKHR gene expression signature that defines molecular classes and determines the prognosis of alveolar rhabdomyosarcomas, *Cancer Res* 66:6936–6946, 2006.

Davies H, Bignell GR, et al: Mutations of the BRAF gene in human cancer, *Nature* 417:949–954, 2002.

de Alava E, Gerald WL: Molecular biology of the Ewing's sarcoma/primitive neuroectodermal tumor family, *J Clin Oncol* 18:204–213, 2000.

de Vos M, Hayward B, et al: Phenotype associated with recessively inherited mutations in DNA mismatch repair (MMR) genes, *Biochem Soc Trans* 33(Pt 4):718–720, 2005.

Debelenko LV, Arthur DC, et al: Identification of CARS-ALK fusion in primary and metastatic lesions of an inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, *Lab Invest* 83:1255–1265, 2003.

Debiec-Rychter M, Marynen P, et al: ALK-ATIC fusion in urinary bladder inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 38:187–190, 2003.

Delahunt B, Cheville JC, Martignoni G, et al: The International Society of Urological Pathology (ISUP) grading system for renal cell carcinoma and other prognostic parameters, *Am J Surg Pathol* 37:e33–e47, 2013.

Demunter A, Stas M, et al: Analysis of N- and K-ras mutations in the distinctive tumor progression phases of melanoma, *J Invest Dermatol* 117:1483–1489, 2001.

Di Nicolantonio F, Martini M, et al: Wild-type BRAF is required for response to panitumumab or cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 26:5705–5712, 2008.

Dillhoff M, Liu J, et al: MicroRNA-21 is overexpressed in pancreatic cancer and a potential predictor of survival, *J Gastrointest Surg* 12:2171–2176, 2008.

Dowsett M, Sestak I, et al: Comparison of PAM50 Risk of Recurrence Score with Oncotype DX and IHC4 for predicting risk of distant recurrence after endocrine therapy, *J Clin Oncol* 31:2783–2790, 2013.

Dreijerink KM, Lips CJ, et al: Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1: a chromatin writer's block, *J Intern Med* 266:53–59, 2009.

Dvorakova S, Vaclavikova E, et al: Exon 5 of the RET proto-oncogene: a newly detected risk exon for familial medullary thyroid carcinoma, a novel germ-line mutation Gly321Arg, *J Endocrinol Invest* 28:905–909, 2005.

Edamoto Y, Hara A, et al: Alterations of RB1, p53 and Wnt pathways in hepatocellular carcinomas associated with hepatitis C, hepatitis B and alcoholic liver cirrhosis, *Int J Cancer* 106:334–341, 2003.

Eng C: PTEN: one gene, many syndromes, *Hum Mutat* 22:183–198, 2003.

Eng C, Clayton D, et al: The relationship between specific RET proto-oncogene mutations and disease phenotype in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2. International RET mutation consortium analysis, *JAMA* 276:1575–1579, 1996.

Engelman JA, Zejnullahu K, et al: MET amplification leads to gefitinib resistance in lung cancer by activating ERBB3 signaling, *Science* 316:1039–1043, 2007.

Erickson-Johnson MR, Chou MM, et al: Nodular fasciitis: a novel model of transient neoplasia induced by MYH9-USP6 gene fusion, *Lab Invest* 91:1427–1433, 2011.

Errani C, Sung YS, et al: Monoclonality of multifocal epithelioid hemangioendothelioma of the liver by analysis of WWTR1-CAMTA1 breakpoints, *Cancer Genet* 205:12–17, 2012.

Errani C, Zhang L, et al: A novel WWTR1-CAMTA1 gene fusion is a consistent abnormality in epithelioid hemangioendothelioma of different anatomic sites, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 50:644–653, 2011.

Eschrich S, Yang I, et al: Molecular staging for survival prediction of colorectal cancer patients, *J Clin Oncol* 23:3526–3535, 2005.

Evans DG: Neurofibromatosis 2 [Bilateral acoustic neurofibromatosis, central neurofibromatosis, NF2, neurofibromatosis type II], *Genet Med* 11:599–610, 2009a.

Evans DG: Neurofibromatosis type 2 (NF2): a clinical and molecular review, *Orphanet J Rare Dis* 4:16, 2009b.

Evans HL: Low-grade fibromyxoid sarcoma: a clinicopathologic study of 33 cases with long-term follow-up, *Am J Surg Pathol* 35:1450–1462, 2011.

Farges O, Dokmak S: Malignant transformation of liver adenoma: an analysis of the literature, *Dig Surg* 27:32–38, 2010.

Fearon ER, Vogelstein B: A genetic model for colorectal tumorigenesis, *Cell* 61:759–767, 1990.

Febbo PG, Ladanyi M, et al: NCCN Task Force report: evaluating the clinical utility of tumor markers in oncology, *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 9(Suppl 5):S1–S32, 2011.

Ferlay JBF, Pisani P, Parkin DM: *GLOBOCAN 2002: Cancer Incidence, Mortality and Prevalence Worldwide*, IARC CancerBase, no. 5, version 2.0, Lyon, France, 2004, IARC Press.

Filmus J, Capurro M, et al: Glypicans, *Genome Biol* 9:224, 2008.

Fitzgerald RC, Caldas C: E-cadherin mutations and hereditary gastric cancer: prevention by resection? *Dig Dis* 20:23–31, 2002.

Fitzgerald JM, Ramchurren N, et al: Identification of H-ras mutations in urine sediments complements cytology in the detection of bladder tumors, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 87:129–133, 1995.

Fondevila C, Metges JP, et al: p53 and VEGF expression are independent predictors of tumor recurrence and survival following curative resection of gastric cancer, *Br J Cancer* 90:206–215, 2004.

Frank-Raue K, Buhr H, et al: Long-term outcome in 46 gene carriers of hereditary medullary thyroid carcinoma after prophylactic thyroidectomy: impact of individual RET genotype, *Eur J Endocrinol* 155:229–236, 2006.

Frattini M, Saletti P, et al: PTEN loss of expression predicts cetuximab efficacy in metastatic colorectal cancer patients, *Br J Cancer* 97:1139–1145, 2007.

Freedland SJ, Gerber L, et al: Prognostic utility of cell cycle progression score in men with prostate cancer after primary external beam radiation therapy, *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 86:848–853, 2013.

Fromont G, Godet J, et al: 8q24 amplification is associated with Myc expression and prostate cancer progression and is an independent predictor of recurrence after radical prostatectomy, *Hum Pathol* 44:1617–1623, 2013.

Fry LC, Monkemuller K, et al: Molecular markers of pancreatic cancer: development and clinical relevance, *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 393:883–890, 2008.

Fu SJ, Qi CY, et al: Glypican-3 is a potential prognostic biomarker for hepatocellular carcinoma after curative resection, *Surgery* 154:536–544, 2013.

Gall TM, Frampton AE, et al: Blood-based miRNAs as noninvasive diagnostic and surrogative biomarkers in colorectal cancer, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 13:141–145, 2013.

Gamboa-Dominguez A, Dominguez-Fonseca C, et al: Epidermal growth factor receptor expression correlates with poor survival in gastric adenocarcinoma from Mexican patients: a multivariate analysis using a standardized immunohistochemical detection system, *Mod Pathol* 17:579–587, 2004.

Garnett MJ, Rana S, et al: Wild-type and mutant B-RAF activate C-RAF through distinct mechanisms involving heterodimerization, *Mol Cell* 20:963–969, 2005.

Gatalica Z, Torlakovic E: Pathology of the hereditary colorectal carcinoma, *Fam Cancer* 7:15–26, 2008.

Geller JI, Argani P, et al: Translocation renal cell carcinoma: lack of negative impact due to lymph node spread, *Cancer* 112:1607–1616, 2008.

Ghadimi BM, Grade M, et al: Effectiveness of gene expression profiling for response prediction of rectal adenocarcinomas to preoperative chemoradiotherapy, *J Clin Oncol* 23:1826–1838, 2005.

Gilks CB, Prat J: Ovarian carcinoma pathology and genetics: recent advances, *Hum Pathol* 40:1213–1223, 2009.

Gill AJ, Pachter NS, Chou A: Renal tumors associated with germline SDHB mutation show distinctive morphology, *Am J Surg Pathol* 35:1578–1585, 2011.

Gimm O, Marsh DJ, et al: Germline dinucleotide mutation in codon 883 of the RET proto-oncogene in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2B without codon 918 mutation, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 82:3902–3904, 1997.

Giovannetti E, Del Tacca M, et al: Transcription analysis of human equilibrative nucleoside transporter-1 predicts survival in pancreas cancer patients treated with gemcitabine, *Cancer Res* 66:3928–3935, 2006.

Gnant M, Filipits M, et al: Predicting distant recurrence in receptor-positive breast cancer patients with limited clinicopathological risk: using the PAM50 Risk of Recurrence score in 1478 postmenopausal patients of the ABCSG-8 trial treated with adjuvant endocrine therapy alone, *Ann Oncol* 25:339–345, 2014.

Gnarra JR, Tory K, et al: Mutations of the VHL tumor suppressor gene in renal carcinoma, *Nat Genet* 7:85–90, 1994.

Gonzalez de Castro D, Clarke PA, et al: Personalized cancer medicine: molecular diagnostics, predictive biomarkers, and drug resistance, *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 93:252–259, 2013.

Grady WM: CIMP and colon cancer gets more complicated, *Gut* 56:1498–1500, 2007.

Gray-Schopfer V, Wellbrock C, et al: Melanoma biology and new targeted therapy, *Nature* 445:851–857, 2007.

Green WM, Yonescu R, et al: Utilization of a TFE3 break-apart FISH assay in a renal tumor consultation service, *Am J Surg Pathol* 37:1150–1163, 2013.

Griffin CA, Hawkins AL, et al: Recurrent involvement of 2p23 in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors, *Cancer Res* 59:2776–2780, 1999.

Grubb RL 3rd, Franks ME, Toro J, et al: Hereditary leiomyomatosis and renal cell cancer: a syndrome associated with an aggressive form of inherited renal cancer, *J Urol* 177:2074–2079, discussion 2079-2080, 2007.

Gu M, Kim D, et al: Analysis of microsatellite instability, protein expression and methylation status of hMLH1 and hMSH2 genes in gastric carcinomas, *Hepatogastroenterology* 56:899–904, 2009.

Guan XY, Fang Y, et al: Recurrent chromosome alterations in hepatocellular carcinoma detected by comparative genomic hybridization, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 30:110, 2001.

Guilford P, Hopkins J, et al: E-cadherin germline mutations in familial gastric cancer, *Nature* 392:402–405, 1998.

Gupta N, Srinivasan R, Rajwanshi A: Functional biomarkers in cervical precancer: An overview, *Diagn Cytopathol* 38:618–623, 2010.

Hahn SA, Hoque AT, et al: Homozygous deletion map at 18q21.1 in pancreatic cancer, *Cancer Res* 56:490–494, 1996a.

Hahn SA, Schutte M, et al: DPC4, a candidate tumor suppressor gene at human chromosome 18q21.1, *Science* 271:350–353, 1996b.

Hameed M: Small round cell tumors of bone, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 131:192–204, 2007.

Hawksworth D, Ravindranath L, et al: Overexpression of C-MYC oncogene in prostate cancer predicts biochemical recurrence, *Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis* 13:311–315, 2010.

Hayden JD, Cawkwell L, et al: Prognostic significance of microsatellite instability in patients with gastric carcinoma, *Eur J Cancer* 33:2342–2346, 1997.

Heimann P, Devalck C, et al: Alveolar soft-part sarcoma: further evidence by FISH for the involvement of chromosome band 17q25, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 23:194–197, 1998.

Heimann P, Housni HEl, et al: Fusion of a novel gene, RCC17, to the TFE3 gene in t(X;17)(p11.2;q25.3)-bearing papillary renal cell carcinomas, *Cancer Res* 61:4130–4135, 2001.

Helleday T, Bryant HE, et al: Poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP-1) in homologous recombination and as a target for cancer therapy, *Cell Cycle* 4:1176–1178, 2005.
Hermans KG, van Marion R, et al: TMPRSS2:ERG fusion by translocation or interstitial deletion is highly relevant in androgen-dependent prostate cancer, but is bypassed in late-stage androgen receptor-negative prostate cancer, *Cancer Res* 66:10658–10663, 2006.
Hermansen SK, Dahlrot RH, et al: MiR-21 expression in the tumor cell compartment holds unfavorable prognostic value in gliomas, *J Neurooncol* 111:71–81, 2013.
Hernandez-Marti MJ, Orellana-Alonso C, et al: Renal adenocarcinoma in an 8-year-old child, with a t(X;17)(p11.2;q25), *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 83:82–83, 1995.
Herrington CS: Recent advances in molecular gynaecological pathology, *Histopathology* 55:243–249, 2009.
Higgins JP, Shinghal R, et al: Gene expression patterns in renal cell carcinoma assessed by complementary DNA microarray, *Am J Pathol* 162:925–932, 2003.
Hippo Y, Taniguchi H, et al: Global gene expression analysis of gastric cancer by oligonucleotide microarrays, *Cancer Res* 62:233–240, 2002.
Hiraga H, Nojima T, et al: Establishment of a new continuous clear cell sarcoma cell line. Morphological and cytogenetic characterization and detection of chimaeric EWS/ATF-1 transcripts, *Virchows Arch* 431:45–51, 1997.
Hirota S, Isozaki K, et al: Gain-of-function mutations of c-kit in human gastrointestinal stromal tumors, *Science* 279:577–580, 1998.
Hisaoka M, Ishida T, et al: Clear cell sarcoma of soft tissue: a clinicopathologic, immunohistochemical, and molecular analysis of 33 cases, *Am J Surg Pathol* 32: 452–460, 2008.
Hobert JA, Eng C: PTEN hamartoma tumor syndrome: an overview, *Genet Med* 11:687–694, 2009.
Hoimes CJ, Moyer MT, Saif MW: Biomarkers for early detection and screening in pancreatic cancer. Highlights from the 45th ASCO annual meeting. Orlando, FL, USA. May 29-June 2, 2009, *JOP* 10:352–356, 2009.
Holmang S, Andius P, et al: Stage progression in Ta papillary urothelial tumors: relationship to grade, immunohistochemical expression of tumor markers, mitotic frequency and DNA ploidy, *J Urol* 165:1124–1128, discussion 1128–1130, 2001.
Holmang S, Hedelin H, et al: Recurrence and progression in low grade papillary urothelial tumors, *J Urol* 162:702–707, 1999.
Hoorens A, Lemoine NR, et al: Pancreatic acinar cell carcinoma. An analysis of cell lineage markers, p53 expression, and Ki-ras mutation, *Am J Pathol* 143:685–698, 1993.
Horii A, Nakatsuru S, et al: The APC gene, responsible for familial adenomatous polyposis, is mutated in human gastric cancer, *Cancer Res* 52:3231–3233, 1992.
Horlings HM, van Laar RK, et al: Gene expression profiling to identify the histogenetic origin of metastatic adenocarcinomas of unknown primary, *J Clin Oncol* 26:4435–4441, 2008.
Horree N, Heintz AP, et al: p16 is consistently expressed in endometrial tubal metaplasia, *Cell Oncol* 29:37–45, 2007.
Hoshida Y, Villanueva A, et al: Gene expression in fixed tissues and outcome in hepatocellular carcinoma, *N Engl J Med* 359:1995–2004, 2008.
Houillier C, Wang X, et al: IDH1 or IDH2 mutations predict longer survival and response to temozolomide in low-grade gliomas, *Neurology* 75:1560–1566, 2010.
Hruban RH, Adsay NV: Molecular classification of neoplasms of the pancreas, *Hum Pathol* 40:612–623, 2009.
Hruban RH, Fukushima N: Pancreatic adenocarcinoma: update on the surgical pathology of carcinomas of ductal origin and PanINs, *Mod Pathol* 20:S61–S70, 2007.
Hruban RH, van Mansfeld AD, et al: K-ras oncogene activation in adenocarcinoma of the human pancreas. A study of 82 carcinomas using a combination of mutant-enriched polymerase chain reaction analysis and allele-specific oligonucleotide hybridization, *Am J Pathol* 143:545–554, 1993.
Hsia CC, Di Bisceglie AM, et al: RB tumor suppressor gene expression in hepatocellular carcinomas from patients infected with the hepatitis B virus, *J Med Virol* 44:67–73, 1994.
Hsu HC, Cheng W, et al: Cloning and expression of a developmentally regulated transcript MXR7 in hepatocelullar carcinoma: biological significance and temporospatial distribution, *Cancer Res* 57:5179–5184, 1997.
Huang XH, Sun LH, et al: Codon 249 mutation in exon 7 of p53 gene in plasma DNA: maybe a new early diagnostic marker of hepatocellular carcinoma in Qidong risk area, China, *World J Gastroenterol* 9:692–695, 2003.
Huynh H, Ngo VC, et al: Sunitinib (SUTENT, SU11248) suppresses tumor growth and induces apoptosis in xenograft models of human hepatocellular carcinoma, *Curr Cancer Drug Targets* 9:738–747, 2009.
Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Fu B, et al: DPC4 gene status of the primary carcinoma correlates with patterns of failure in patients with pancreatic cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 27:1806–1813, 2009.
Iacopetta B, Kawakami K, et al: Predicting clinical outcome of 5-fluorouracil-based chemotherapy for colon cancer patients: is the CpG island methylator phenotype the 5-fluorouracil-responsive subgroup? *Int J Clin Oncol* 13:498–503, 2008.
Ilic N, Utermark T, et al: PI3K-targeted therapy can be evaded by gene amplification along the MYC-eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4E (eIF4E) axis, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 108:E699–E708, 2011.
Isobe M, Emanuel BS, et al: Localization of gene for human p53 tumor antigen to band 17p13, *Nature* 320: 84–85, 1986.
Jacob S, Praz F: DNA mismatch repair defects: role in colorectal carcinogenesis, *Biochimie* 84:27–47, 2002.
Jacoby LB, Jones D, et al: Molecular analysis of the NF2 tumor-suppressor gene in schwannomatosis, *Am J Hum Genet* 61:1293–1302, 1997.
Jagdis A, Rubin BP, et al: Prospective evaluation of TLE1 as a diagnostic immunohistochemical marker in synovial sarcoma, *Am J Surg Pathol* 33:1743–1751, 2009.
Jain S, Lee P, et al: Molecular genetics of hepatocellular neoplasia, *Am J Transl Res* 2:105–118, 2010a.
Jain S, Xu R, et al: Molecular classification of soft tissue sarcomas and its clinical applications, *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 3:416–428, 2010b.
Janeway KA, Albritton KH, et al: Sunitinib treatment in pediatric patients with advanced GIST following failure of imatinib, *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 52:767–771, 2009.
Janeway KA, Kim SY, et al: Defects in succinate dehydrogenase in gastrointestinal stromal tumors lacking KIT and PDGFRA mutations, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 108:314–318, 2011.
Jass JR: Colorectal polyposes: from phenotype to diagnosis, *Pathol Res Pract* 204:431–447, 2008.
Jemal A, Siegel R, et al: Cancer statistics, 2008, *CA Cancer J Clin* 58:71–96, 2008.
Jemal A, Siegel R, et al: Cancer statistics, 2009, *CA Cancer J Clin* 59:225–249, 2009.
Jenkins RB, Qian J, et al: Detection of c-myc oncogene amplification and chromosomal anomalies in metastatic prostatic carcinoma by fluorescence in situ hybridization, *Cancer Res* 57:524–531, 1997.
Jiang F, Richter J, et al: Chromosomal imbalances in papillary renal cell carcinoma: genetic differences between histological subtypes, *Am J Pathol* 153:1467–1473, 1998.
Johansson B, Bardi G, et al: Nonrandom chromosomal rearrangements in pancreatic carcinomas, *Cancer* 69: 1674–1681, 1992.
Jones S, Zhang X, et al: Core signaling pathways in human pancreatic cancers revealed by global genomic analyses, *Science* 321:1801–1806, 2008.
Jonjic N, Kovac K, et al: Epidermal growth factor-receptor expression correlates with tumor cell proliferation and prognosis in gastric cancer, *Anticancer Res* 17:3883–3888, 1997.
Joypaul BV, Newman EL, et al: Expression of p53 protein in normal, dysplastic, and malignant gastric mucosa: an immunohistochemical study, *J Pathol* 170: 279–283, 1993.
Kanemitsu S, Hisaoka M, et al: Molecular detection of SS18-SSX fusion gene transcripts by cRNA in situ hybridization in synovial sarcoma using formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded tumor tissue specimens, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 16:9–17, 2007.
Kanu OO, Mehta A, et al: Glioblastoma multiforme: a review of therapeutic targets, *Expert Opin Ther Targets* 13:701–718, 2009.
Katoh H, Ojima H, et al: Genetically distinct and clinically relevant classification of hepatocellular carcinoma: putative therapeutic targets, *Gastroenterology* 133:1475–1486, 2007.
Kaufman DL, Heinrich BS, et al: Somatic instability of the NF2 gene in schwannomatosis, *Arch Neurol* 60:1317–1320, 2003.
Kelley JR, Duggan JM: Gastric cancer epidemiology and risk factors, *J Clin Epidemiol* 56:1–9, 2003.
Kerr NJ, Chun YH, et al: Pancreatoblastoma is associated with chromosome 11p loss of heterozygosity and IGF2 overexpression, *Med Pediatr Oncol* 39:52–54, 2002.
Khleif SN, DeGregori J, et al: Inhibition of cyclin D-CDK4/CDK6 activity is associated with an E2F-mediated induction of cyclin kinase inhibitor activity, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 93:4350–4354, 1996.
Kievit W, de Bruin JH, et al: Current clinical selection strategies for identification of hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer families are inadequate: a meta-analysis, *Clin Genet* 65:308–316, 2004.
Kilpatrick SE, Bergman S, et al: The usefulness of cytogenetic analysis in fine needle aspirates for the histologic subtyping of sarcomas, *Mod Pathol* 19:815–819, 2006.
Kirk GD, Camus-Randon AM, et al: Ser-249 p53 mutations in plasma DNA of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma from The Gambia, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 92: 148–153, 2000.
Kisseljov F, Sakharova O, et al: Cellular and molecular biological aspects of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, *Int Rev Cell Mol Biol* 271:35–95, 2008.
Kiuru M, Lehtonen R, et al: Few FH mutations in sporadic counterparts of tumor types observed in hereditary leiomyomatosis and renal cell cancer families, *Cancer Res* 62:4554–4557, 2002.
Knezevic D, Goddard AD, et al: Analytical validation of the Oncotype DX prostate cancer assay—a clinical RT-PCR assay optimized for prostate needle biopsies, *BMC Genomics* 14:690–702, 2013.
Knezevich SR, McFadden DE, et al: A novel ETV6-NTRK3 gene fusion in congenital fibrosarcoma, *Nat Genet* 18:184–187, 1998.
Kobel M, Huntsman D, Gilks CB: Critical molecular abnormalities in high-grade serous carcinoma of the ovary, *Expert Rev Mol Med* 10:e22, 2008.
Kolasa IK, Rembiszewska A, et al: PTEN mutation, expression and LOH at its locus in ovarian carcinomas. Relation to TP53, K-RAS and BRCA1 mutations, *Gynecol Oncol* 103:692–697, 2006.
Kouvidou C, Latoufis C, et al: Expression of Smad4 and TGF-beta2 in colorectal carcinoma, *Anticancer Res* 26:2901–2907, 2006.
Kovacs G, Wilkens L, Papp T: Differentiation between papillary and nonpapillary renal cell carcinomas by DNA analysis, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 81:527–530, 1989.
Kumari A, Srinivasan R, et al: Positive regulation of human telomerase reverse transcriptase gene expression and telomerase activity by DNA methylation in pancreatic cancer, *Ann Surg Oncol* 16:1051–1059, 2009.
Kuniyasu H, Yasui W, et al: Frequent amplification of the c-met gene in scirrhous type stomach cancer, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 189:227–232, 1992.
Kuo LT, Kuo KT, et al: Correlation among pathology, genetic and epigenetic profiles, and clinical outcome in oligodendroglial tumors, *Int J Cancer* 124:2872–2879, 2009.
Kuroki T, Fujiwara Y, et al: Accumulation of genetic changes during development and progression of hepatocellular carcinoma: loss of heterozygosity of chromosome arm 1p occurs at an early stage of hepatocarcinogenesis, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 13:163–167, 1995.
Kusano N, Shiraishi K, et al: Genetic aberrations detected by comparative genomic hybridization in hepatocellular carcinomas: their relationship to clinicopathological features, *Hepatology* 29:1858–1862, 1999.
Kwak EL, Bang YJ, et al: Anaplastic lymphoma kinase inhibition in non-small-cell lung cancer, *N Engl J Med* 363:1693–1703, 2010.
Labussiere M, Idbaih A, et al: All the 1p19q codeleted gliomas are mutated on IDH1 or IDH2, *Neurology* 74:1886–1890, 2010.
Ladanyi M, Antonescu CR, et al: Impact of SYT-SSX fusion type on the clinical behavior of synovial sarcoma: a multi-institutional retrospective study of 243 patients, *Cancer Res* 62:135–140, 2002.
Ladanyi M, Lui MY, et al: The der(X;17)(p11;q25) of human alveolar soft part sarcoma fuses the TFE3 transcription factor gene to ASPL, a novel gene at 17q25, *Oncogene* 20:48–57, 2001.
Lancaster JM, Wooster R, Mangion J, et al: BRCA2 mutations in primary breast and ovarian cancers, *Nat Genet* 13:238–240, 1996.

Landen CN Jr, Birrer MJ, et al: Early events in the pathogenesis of epithelial ovarian cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 26:995–1005, 2008.

Lau PP, Lui PC, et al: EWSR1-CREB3L1 gene fusion: a novel alternative molecular aberration of low-grade fibromyxoid sarcoma, *Am J Surg Pathol* 37:734–738, 2013.

Lauren P: The two histological main types of gastric carcinoma: diffuse and so-called intestinal-type carcinoma. an attempt at a histo-clinical classification, *Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand* 64:31–49, 1965.

Laurent-Puig P, Cayre A, et al: Analysis of PTEN, BRAF, and EGFR status in determining benefit from cetuximab therapy in wild-type KRAS metastatic colon cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 27:5924–5930, 2009.

Lauwers YG, Franceschi S, Carneiro F, et al: WHO classification of tumors of the stomach. WHO classification of tumors of digestive system, Lyon, 2010, IARC, pp 46–47.

Lawes DA, Pearson T, et al: The role of MLH1, MSH2 and MSH6 in the development of multiple colorectal cancers, *Br J Cancer* 93:472–477, 2005.

Lawrence B, Perez-Atayde A, et al: TPM3-ALK and TPM4-ALK oncogenes in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors, *Am J Pathol* 157:377–384, 2000.

Lax SF, Kendall B, et al: The frequency of p53, K-ras mutations, and microsatellite instability differs in uterine endometrioid and serous carcinoma: evidence of distinct molecular genetic pathways, *Cancer* 88:814–824, 2000.

Lax SF, Pizer ES, et al: Clear cell carcinoma of the endometrium is characterized by a distinctive profile of p53, Ki-67, estrogen, and progesterone receptor expression, *Hum Pathol* 29:551–558, 1998.

Lee JS, Chu IS, et al: Classification and prediction of survival in hepatocellular carcinoma by gene expression profiling, *Hepatology* 40:667–676, 2004a.

Lee EJ, Gusev Y, et al: Expression profiling identifies microRNA signature in pancreatic cancer, *Int J Cancer* 120:1046–1054, 2007.

Lee JH, Park SJ, et al: Frequent CpG island methylation in precursor lesions and early gastric adenocarcinomas, *Oncogene* 23:4646–4654, 2004b.

Levanon K, Crum C, Drapkin R: New insights into the pathogenesis of serous ovarian cancer and its clinical impact, *J Clin Oncol* 26:5284–5293, 2008.

Liang JJ, Kimchi ET, et al: Diagnostic and prognostic biomarkers in pancreatic carcinoma, *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2:1–10, 2009.

Liang Y, Ridzon D, et al: Characterization of microRNA expression profiles in normal human tissues, *BMC Genomics* 8:166, 2007.

Lindeman NI, Cagle PT, et al: Molecular testing guideline for selection of lung cancer patients for EGFR and ALK tyrosine kinase inhibitors: guideline from the College of American Pathologists, International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer, and Association for Molecular Pathology, *J Thorac Oncol* 8:823–859, 2013.

Liu W, Chang B, et al: Comprehensive assessment of DNA copy number alterations in human prostate cancers using Affymetrix 100K SNP mapping array, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 45:1018–1032, 2006.

Liu P, Cheng H, et al: Oncogenic PIK3CA-driven mammary tumors frequently recur via PI3K pathway-dependent and PI3K pathway independent mechanisms, *Nat Med* 17:1116–1120, 2011.

Lonser RR, Glenn GM, et al: von Hippel-Lindau disease, *Lancet* 361:2059–2067, 2003.

Lopez-Gines C, Navarro S, et al: Malignant myxoid liposarcoma: an immunohistochemical, electron-microscopical and cytogenetical analysis, *Appl Pathol* 7:285–293, 1989.

Loupakis F, Pollina L, et al: PTEN expression and KRAS mutations on primary tumors and metastases in the prediction of benefit from cetuximab plus irinotecan for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 27:2622–2629, 2009.

Lu J, Getz G, et al: MicroRNA expression profiles classify human cancers, *Nature* 435:834–838, 2005.

Luceri C, De Filippo C, et al: Microsatellite instability in a population of sporadic colorectal cancers: correlation between genetic and pathological profiles, *Dig Liver Dis* 34:553–559, 2002.

Lynch HT, de la Chapelle A: Hereditary colorectal cancer, *N Engl J Med* 348:919–932, 2003.

Lynch HT, Lynch PM, et al: Review of the Lynch syndrome: history, molecular genetics, screening, differential diagnosis, and medicolegal ramifications, *Clin Genet* 76:1–18, 2009.

Ma Z, Hill DA, et al: Fusion of ALK to the Ran-binding protein 2 (RANBP2) gene in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 37:98–105, 2003.

Ma XJ, Patel R, et al: Molecular classification of human cancers using a 92-gene real-time quantitative polymerase chain reaction assay, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 130:465–473, 2006.

MacCollin M, Ramesh V, et al: Mutational analysis of patients with neurofibromatosis 2, *Am J Hum Genet* 55:314–320, 1994.

MacCollin M, Willett C, et al: Familial schwannomatosis: exclusion of the NF2 locus as the germline event, *Neurology* 60:1968–1974, 2003.

Machado JC, Oliveira C, et al: E-cadherin gene (CDH1) promoter methylation as the second hit in sporadic diffuse gastric carcinoma, *Oncogene* 20:1525–1528, 2001.

Maher ER, Iselius L, et al: Von Hippel-Lindau disease: a genetic study, *J Med Genet* 28:443–447, 1991.

Maher ER, Webster AR, et al: Phenotypic expression in von Hippel-Lindau disease: correlations with germline VHL gene mutations, *J Med Genet* 33:328–332, 1996.

Mantovani F, Banks L: The human papillomavirus E6 protein and its contribution to malignant progression, *Oncogene* 20:7874–7887, 2001.

Marchet A, Mocellin S, et al: Gene expression profile of primary gastric cancer: towards the prediction of lymph node status, *Ann Surg Oncol* 14:1058–1064, 2007.

Marchio A, Pineau P, et al: Distinct chromosomal abnormality pattern in primary liver cancer of non-B, non-C patients, *Oncogene* 19:3733–3738, 2000.

Mardis ER: Next-generation sequencing platforms, *Annu Rev Anal Chem* 6:287–303, 2013.

Marino-Enriquez A, Wang WL, et al: Epithelioid inflammatory myofibroblastic sarcoma: an aggressive intra-abdominal variant of inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor with nuclear membrane or perinuclear ALK, *Am J Surg Pathol* 35:135–144, 2011.

Marsh DJ, Coulon V, et al: Mutation spectrum and genotype-phenotype analyses in Cowden disease and Bannayan-Zonana syndrome, two hamartoma syndromes with germline PTEN mutation, *Hum Mol Genet* 7:507–515, 1998.

Matsubayashi H, Canto M, et al: DNA methylation alterations in the pancreatic juice of patients with suspected pancreatic disease, *Cancer Res* 66:1208–1217, 2006.

Matsuda Y, Ichida T, et al: Loss of p16 contributes to p27 sequestration by cyclin D-cyclin-dependent kinase 4 complexes and poor prognosis in hepatocellular carcinoma, *Clin Cancer Res* 9:3389–3396, 2003.

Matsumura T, Yamaguchi T, et al: Advantage of FISH analysis using FKHR probes for an adjunct to diagnosis of rhabdomyosarcomas, *Virchows Arch* 452:251–258, 2008.

Mayr D, Kanitz V, et al: Analysis of gene amplification and prognostic markers in ovarian cancer using comparative genomic hybridization for microarrays and immunohistochemical analysis for tissue microarrays, *Am J Clin Pathol* 126:101–109, 2006.

McArthur GA: Dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans: a surgical disease with a molecular savior, *Curr Opin Oncol* 18:341–346, 2006.

McCabe N, Turner NC, et al: Deficiency in the repair of DNA damage by homologous recombination and sensitivity to poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibition, *Cancer Res* 66:8109–8115, 2006.

McGlynn KA, London WT: Epidemiology and natural history of hepatocellular carcinoma, *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 19:3–23, 2005.

McMenamin ME, Soung P, et al: Loss of PTEN expression in paraffin embedded primary prostate cancer correlates with high Gleason score and advanced stage, *Cancer Res* 59:4291–4296, 1999.

Mehra R, Han B, et al: Heterogeneity of TMPRSS2 gene rearrangements in multifocal prostate adenocarcinoma: molecular evidence for an independent group of diseases, *Cancer Res* 67:7991–7995, 2007a.

Mehra R, Tomlins SA, et al: Comprehensive assessment of TMPRSS2 and ETS family gene aberrations in clinically localized prostate cancer, *Mod Pathol* 20: 538–544, 2007b.

Mehra S, de la Roza G, et al: Detection of FOXO1 (FKHR) gene break-apart by fluorescence in situ hybridization in formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded alveolar rhabdomyosarcomas and its clinicopathologic correlation, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 17:14–20, 2008.

Mejean A, Hopirtean V, et al: Prognostic factors for the survival of patients with papillary renal cell carcinoma: meaning of histological typing and multifocality, *J Urol* 170:764–767, 2003.

Meldrum C, Doyle MA, et al: Next-generation sequencing for cancer diagnostics: a practical perspective, *Clin Biochem Rev* 32:177–195, 2011.

Meloni AM, Dobbs RM, et al: Translocation (X;1) in papillary renal cell carcinoma. A new cytogenetic subtype, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 65:1–6, 1993.

Meloni AM, Sandberg AA, et al: Translocation (X;1) (p11.2;q21). A subtype of renal adenocarcinomas, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 63:100–101, 1992.

Mendlick MR, Nelson M, et al: Translocation t(1;3) (p36.3;q25) is a nonrandom aberration in epithelioid hemangioendothelioma, *Am J Surg Pathol* 25:684–687, 2001.

Mentzel T, Schildhaus HU, et al: Postradiation cutaneous angiosarcoma after treatment of breast carcinoma is characterized by MYC amplification in contrast to atypical vascular lesions after radiotherapy and control cases: clinicopathological, immunohistochemical and molecular analysis of 66 cases, *Mod Pathol* 25:75–85, 2012.

Merino MJ, Torres-Cabala C, et al: The morphologic spectrum of kidney tumors in hereditary leiomyomatosis and renal cell carcinoma (HLRCC) syndrome, *Am J Surg Pathol* 31:1578–1585, 2007.

Messa C, Russo F, et al: EGF, TGF-alpha, and EGF-R in human colorectal adenocarcinoma, *Acta Oncol* 37: 285–289, 1998.

Messiaen LM, Callens T, et al: Exhaustive mutation analysis of the NF1 gene allows identification of 95% of mutations and reveals a high frequency of unusual splicing defects, *Hum Mutat* 15:541–555, 2000.

Metzker ML: Sequencing technologies—the next generation, *Nat Rev Genet* 11:31–46, 2010.

Midorikawa Y, Sugiyama Y, Aburatani H: Molecular targets for liver cancer therapy: From screening of target genes to clinical trials, *Hepatol Res* 40:49–60, 2010.

Miettinen M, Lasota J: Gastrointestinal stromal tumors: review on morphology, molecular pathology, prognosis, and differential diagnosis, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 130:1466–1478, 2006.

Miettinen M, Wang ZF, et al: Succinate dehydrogenase-deficient GISTs: a clinicopathologic, immunohistochemical, and molecular genetic study of 66 gastric GISTs with predilection to young age, *Am J Surg Pathol* 35:1712–1721, 2011.

Miller AJ, Mihm MC Jr: Melanoma, *N Engl J Med* 355: 51–65, 2006.

Mingchao, Devereux TR, et al: Loss of E-cadherin expression in gastric intestinal metaplasia and later stage p53 altered expression in gastric carcinogenesis, *Exp Toxicol Pathol* 53:237–246, 2001.

Mishra G, Zhao Y, et al: Determination of qualitative telomerase activity as an adjunct to the diagnosis of pancreatic adenocarcinoma by EUS-guided fine-needle aspiration, *Gastrointest Endosc* 63:648–654, 2006.

Miyaki M, Kuroki T: Role of Smad4 (DPC4) inactivation in human cancer, *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 306:799–804, 2003.

Moch H, Presti JC Jr, et al: Genetic aberrations detected by comparative genomic hybridization are associated with clinical outcome in renal cell carcinoma, *Cancer Res* 56:27–30, 1996.

Motoi N, Sakamoto A, Yamochi T, et al: Role of ras mutation in the progression of thyroid carcinoma of follicular epithelial origin, *Pathol Res Pract* 196:1–7, 2000.

Moreau LC, Turcotte R, et al: Myxoid\round cell liposarcoma (MRCLS) revisited: an analysis of 418 primarily managed cases, *Ann Surg Oncol* 19:1081–1088, 2012.

Morris BJ: Cervical human papillomavirus screening by PCR: advantages of targeting the E6/E7 region, *Clin Chem Lab Med* 43:1171–1177, 2005.

Motola-Kuba D, Zamora-Valdes D, et al: Hepatocellular carcinoma. An overview, *Ann Hepatol* 5:16–24, 2006.

Moule RN, Jhavar SG, et al: Genotype phenotype correlation in Li-Fraumeni syndrome kindreds and its implications for management, *Fam Cancer* 5:129–133, 2006.

Moyhuddin A, Baser ME, et al: Somatic mosaicism in neurofibromatosis 2: prevalence and risk of disease transmission to offspring, *J Med Genet* 40:459–463, 2003.

Mrozek K, Szumigala J, et al: Round cell liposarcoma with the insertion (12;16)(q13;p11.2p13), *Am J Clin Pathol* 108:35–39, 1997.
Muller W, Noguchi T, et al: Expression of cell-cycle regulatory proteins cyclin D1, cyclin E, and their inhibitor p21 WAF1/CIP1 in gastric cancer, *J Pathol* 189:186–193, 1999.
Mulligan LM, Eng C, et al: Specific mutations of the RET proto-oncogene are related to disease phenotype in MEN 2A and FMTC, *Nat Genet* 6:70–74, 1994.
Mulligan LM, Marsh DJ, et al: Genotype-phenotype correlation in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2: report of the International RET Mutation Consortium, *J Intern Med* 238:343–346, 1995.
Munger K, et al: Biological activities and molecular targets of the human papillomavirus E7 oncoprotein, *Oncogene* 20:7888–7898, 2001.
Munoz N, et al: Chapter 1: HPV in the etiology of human cancer, *Vaccine* 24(Suppl 3):1–10, 2006.
Myssiorek D, Ferlito A, et al: Screening for familial paragangliomas, *Oral Oncol* 44:532–537, 2008.
Nagy A, Zoubakov D, et al: Lack of mutation of the folliculin gene in sporadic chromophobe renal cell carcinoma and renal oncocytoma, *Int J Cancer* 109: 472–475, 2004.
Nakashima A, Murakami Y, et al: Usefulness of human telomerase reverse transcriptase in pancreatic juice as a biomarker of pancreatic malignancy, *Pancreas* 38:527–533, 2009.
Nakatsuru S, Yanagisawa A, et al: Somatic mutation of the APC gene in gastric cancer: frequent mutations in very well differentiated adenocarcinoma and signet-ring cell carcinoma, *Hum Mol Genet* 1:559–563, 1992.
Nakatsuru S, Yanagisawa A, et al: Somatic mutations of the APC gene in precancerous lesion of the stomach, *Hum Mol Genet* 2:1463–1465, 1993.
Nam RK, Sugar L, et al: Expression of the TMPRSS2:ERG fusion gene predicts cancer recurrence after surgery for localised prostate cancer, *Br J Cancer* 97:1690–1695, 2007.
Napieralski R, Ott K, et al: Combined GADD45A and thymidine phosphorylase expression levels predict response and survival of neoadjuvant-treated gastric cancer patients, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:3025–3031, 2005.
Narendra S, Valente A, et al: DDIT3 gene break-apart as a molecular marker for diagnosis of myxoid liposarcoma—assay validation and clinical experience, *Diagn Mol Pathol* 20:218–224, 2011.
Neumann HP, Pawlu C, et al: Distinct clinical features of paraganglioma syndromes associated with SDHB and SDHD gene mutations, *JAMA* 292:943–951, 2004.
Nickerson ML, Warren MB, et al: Mutations in a novel gene lead to kidney tumors, lung wall defects, and benign tumors of the hair follicle in patients with the Birt-Hogg-Dube syndrome, *Cancer Cell* 2:157–164, 2002.
Nielsen GP, Fletcher CD, et al: Soft tissue aneurysmal bone cyst: a clinicopathologic study of five cases, *Am J Surg Pathol* 26:64–69, 2002.
Nielsen T, Wallden B, et al: Analytical validation of the PAM50-based Prosigna Breast Cancer Prognostic Gene Signature Assay and nCounter Analysis System using formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded breast tumor specimens, *BMC Cancer* 14:177, 2014.
Nikiforov YE: Thyroid carcinoma: molecular pathways and therapeutic targets, *Mod Pathol* 21(Suppl 2):S37–S43, 2008.
Nikiforova MN, Lynch RA, et al: RAS point mutations and PAX8-PPAR gamma rearrangement in thyroid tumors: evidence for distinct molecular pathways in thyroid follicular carcinoma, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:2318–2326, 2003.
Nikiforov YE, Nikiforova MN: Molecular genetics and diagnosis of thyroid cancer, *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 7:569–580, 2011.
Nikiforova MN, Nikiforov YE: Molecular genetics of thyroid cancer: implications for diagnosis, treatment and prognosis, *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 8:83–95, 2008.
Nishida N, Nishimura T, et al: Chromosomal instability and human hepatocarcinogenesis, *Histol Histopathol* 18:897–909, 2003.
Nishio J, Iwasaki H, et al: Identification of syt-ssx fusion transcripts in both epithelial and spindle cell components of biphasic synovial sarcoma in small tissue samples isolated by membrane-based laser microdissection, *Virchows Arch* 439:152–157, 2001.
Nishio J, Iwasaki H, et al: Establishment of a new human synovial sarcoma cell line, FU-SY-1, that expresses c-Met receptor and its ligand hepatocyte growth factor, *Int J Oncol* 21:17–23, 2002a.
Nishio J, Iwasaki H, et al: Synovial sarcoma with a secondary chromosome change dert(17;22)(q12;q12), *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 137:23–28, 2002b.
Nishio J, Iwasaki H, et al: Identification of a ring chromosome with spectral karyotyping in a pleural synovial sarcoma, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 160:174–178, 2005.
Noel A, Jost M, et al: Matrix metalloproteinases at cancer tumor-host interface, *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 19: 52–60, 2008.
Oberhuber G, Stolte M: Gastric polyps: an update of their pathology and biological significance, *Virchows Arch* 437:581–590, 2000.
Obermann EC, Junker K, et al: Frequent genetic alterations in flat urothelial hyperplasias and concomitant papillary bladder cancer as detected by CGH, LOH, and FISH analyses, *J Pathol* 199:50–57, 2003.
Ogino S, Kawasaki T, et al: Sensitive sequencing method for KRAS mutation detection by Pyrosequencing, *J Mol Diagn* 7:413–421, 2005.
Ogino S, Nosho K, et al: CpG island methylator phenotype, microsatellite instability, BRAF mutation and clinical outcome in colon cancer, *Gut* 58:90–96, 2009a.
Ogino S, Nosho K, et al: PIK3CA mutation is associated with poor prognosis among patients with curatively resected colon cancer, *J Clin Oncol* 27:1477–1484, 2009b.
Oh SY, Kwon HC, et al: Clinicopathologic significance of HIF-1alpha, p53, and VEGF expression and preoperative serum VEGF level in gastric cancer, *BMC Cancer* 8:123, 2008.
Ohgaki H, Kleihues P: Genetic pathways to primary and secondary glioblastoma, *Am J Pathol* 170:1445–1453, 2007.
Okabe H, Furukawa Y, et al: Isolation of development and differentiation enhancing factor-like 1 (DDEFL1) as a drug target for hepatocellular carcinomas, *Int J Oncol* 24:43–48, 2004.
Okabe H, Satoh S, et al: Involvement of PEG10 in human hepatocellular carcinogenesis through interaction with SIAH1, *Cancer Res* 63:3043–3048, 2003.
Oliveira AM, Hsi BL, et al: USP6 (Tre2) fusion oncogenes in aneurysmal bone cyst, *Cancer Res* 64:1920–1923, 2004.
Oliveira AM, Perez-Atayde AR, et al: Aneurysmal bone cyst variant translocations upregulate USP6 transcription by promoter swapping with the ZNF9, COL1A1, TRAP150, and OMD genes, *Oncogene* 24:3419–3426, 2005.
Olivier M, Goldgar DE, et al: Li-Fraumeni and related syndromes: correlation between tumor type, family structure, and TP53 genotype, *Cancer Res* 63:6643–6650, 2003.
Olsen SH, Thomas DG, et al: Cluster analysis of immunohistochemical profiles in synovial sarcoma, malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumor, and Ewing sarcoma, *Mod Pathol* 19:659–668, 2006.
Oosterwijk JC, Jansen JC, et al: First experiences with genetic counselling based on predictive DNA diagnosis in hereditary glomus tumors (paragangliomas), *J Med Genet* 33:379–383, 1996.
O'Shea AM, Cleary SP, et al: Pathological features of colorectal carcinomas in MYH-associated polyposis, *Histopathology* 53:184–194, 2008.
Oue N, Oshimo Y, et al: DNA methylation of multiple genes in gastric carcinoma: association with histological type and CpG island methylator phenotype, *Cancer Sci* 94:901–905, 2003.
Paik S, Shak S, et al: A multigene assay to predict recurrence of tamoxifen-treated, node-negative breast cancer, *N Engl J Med* 351:2817–2826, 2004.
Pajkos G, Kiss I, et al: The prognostic value of the presence of mutations at the codons 12, 13, 61 of K-ras oncogene in colorectal cancer, *Anticancer Res* 20:1695–1701, 2000.
Panagopoulos I, Mertens F, et al: Molecular genetic characterization of the EWS/CHN and RBP56/CHN fusion genes in extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 35:340–352, 2002.
Panagopoulos I, Nilsson T, et al: Fusion of the SEC31L1 and ALK genes in an inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, *Int J Cancer* 118:1181–1186, 2006.
Panoutsakopoulos G, Pandis N, et al: Recurrent t(16;17)(q22;p13) in aneurysmal bone cysts, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 26:265–266, 1999.
Paradis V, Benzekri A, et al: Telangiectatic focal nodular hyperplasia: a variant of hepatic adenoma, *Gastroenterology* 126:1323–1329, 2004.
Park DI, Yun JW, et al: HER-2/neu amplification is an independent prognostic factor in gastric cancer, *Dig Dis Sci* 51:1371–1379, 2006.
Parkin DM, Bray F, et al: Estimating the world cancer burden: Globocan 2000, *Int J Cancer* 94:153–156, 2001.
Parkin DM, Bray F, et al: Global cancer statistics, 2002, *CA Cancer J Clin* 55:74–108, 2005.
Parsons DW, Jones S, et al: An integrated genomic analysis of human glioblastoma multiforme, *Science* 321:1807–1812, 2008.
Pavlovich CP, Walther MM, et al: Renal tumors in the Birt-Hogg-Dube syndrome, *Am J Surg Pathol* 26: 1542–1552, 2002.
Peltomaki P: Lynch syndrome genes, *Fam Cancer* 4:227–232, 2005.
Pentheroudakis G, Briasoulis E, et al: Cancer of unknown primary site: missing primary or missing biology? *Oncologist* 12:418–425, 2007.
Perner S, Demichelis F, et al: TMPRSS2:ERG fusion-associated deletions provide insight into the heterogeneity of prostate cancer, *Cancer Res* 66:8337–8341, 2006.
Petersson F, Gatalica Z, et al: Sporadic hybrid oncocytic/chromophobe tumor of the kidney: a clinicopathologic, histomorphologic, immunohistochemical, ultrastructural, and molecular cytogenetic study of 14 cases, *Virchows Arch* 456:355–365, 2010.
Petrovics G, Liu A, et al: Frequent overexpression of ETS-related gene-1 (ERG1) in prostate cancer transcriptome, *Oncogene* 24:3847–3852, 2005.
Phelps RA, Broadbent TJ, et al: New perspectives on APC control of cell fate and proliferation in colorectal cancer, *Cell Cycle* 8:2549–2556, 2009.
Pignot G, Elie C, et al: Survival analysis of 130 patients with papillary renal cell carcinoma: prognostic utility of type 1 and type 2 subclassification, *Urology* 69:230–235, 2007.
Pillai R, Deeter R, et al: Validation and reproducibility of a microarray-based gene expression test for tumor identification in formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded specimens, *J Mol Diagn* 13:48–56, 2011.
Pinto-de-Sousa J, Silva F, et al: Clinicopathological significance and survival influence of p53 protein expression in gastric carcinoma, *Histopathology* 44:323–331, 2004.
Plesec TP, Hunt JL: KRAS mutation testing in colorectal cancer, *Adv Anat Pathol* 16:196–203, 2009.
Popat S, Houlston RS: A systematic review and meta-analysis of the relationship between chromosome 18q genotype, DCC status and colorectal cancer prognosis, *Eur J Cancer* 41:2060–2070, 2005.
Quek ML, Quinn DI, et al: Molecular prognostication in bladder cancer—a current perspective, *Eur J Cancer* 39:1501–1510, 2003.
Rajput AB, Miller MA, et al: Frequency of the TMPRSS2:ERG gene fusion is increased in moderate to poorly differentiated prostate cancers, *J Clin Pathol* 60:1238–1243, 2007.
Ramaswamy S, Tamayo P, et al: Multiclass cancer diagnosis using tumor gene expression signatures, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 98:15149–15154, 2001.
Ranganathan P, Harsha HC, et al: Molecular alterations in exocrine neoplasms of the pancreas, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 133:405–412, 2009.
Raue F, Frank-Raue K: Genotype-phenotype relationship in multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2. Implications for clinical management, *Hormones (Athens)* 8:23–28, 2009.
Rebouissou S, Amessou M, et al: Frequent in-frame somatic deletions activate gp130 in inflammatory hepatocellular tumors, *Nature* 457:200–204, 2009.
Rebouissou S, Bioulac-Sage P, et al: Molecular pathogenesis of focal nodular hyperplasia and hepatocellular adenoma, *J Hepatol* 48:163–170, 2008.
Rebouissou S, Imbeaud S, et al: HNF1 alpha inactivation promotes lipogenesis in human hepatic adenoma independently of SREBP-1 and carbohydrate-response element-binding protein (ChREBP) activation, *J Biol Chem* 282:14437–14446, 2007.
Redston MS, Caldas C, et al: p53 mutations in pancreatic carcinoma and evidence of common involvement of homocopolymer tracts in DNA microdeletions, *Cancer Res* 54:3025–3033, 1994.
Reeves BR, Fletcher CD, et al: Translocation t(12;22)(q13;q13) is a nonrandom rearrangement in clear cell sarcoma, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 64:101–103, 1992.
Ribic CM, Sargent DJ, Moore MJ, et al: Tumor microsatellite-instability status as a predictor of benefit from fluorouracil-based adjuvant chemotherapy for colon cancer, *N Engl J Med* 349:247–257, 2003.

Risch HA, McLaughlin JR, Cole DE, et al: Prevalence and penetrance of germline BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations in a population series of 649 women with ovarian cancer, *Am J Hum Genet* 68:700–710, 2001.

Rohan S, Tu JJ, et al: Gene expression profiling separates chromophobe renal cell carcinoma from oncocytoma and identifies vesicular transport and cell junction proteins as differentially expressed genes, *Clin Cancer Res* 12:6937–6945, 2006.

Ross JS: Multigene classifiers, prognostic factors, and predictors of breast cancer clinical outcome, *Adv Anat Pathol* 16:204–215, 2009.

Ross JS, Hatzis C, et al: Commercialized multigene predictors of clinical outcome for breast cancer, *Oncologist* 13:477–493, 2008.

Rowinsky EK, Windle JJ, et al: Ras protein farnesyltransferase: A strategic target for anticancer therapeutic development, *J Clin Oncol* 17:3631–3652, 1999.

Sanson M, Marie Y, et al: Isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 codon 132 mutation is an important prognostic biomarker in gliomas, *J Clin Oncol* 27:4150–4154, 2009.

Sartore-Bianchi A, Di Nicolantonio F, et al: Multideterminants analysis of molecular alterations for predicting clinical benefit to EGFR-targeted monoclonal antibodies in colorectal cancer, *PLoS ONE* 4:e7287, 2009b.

Sartore-Bianchi A, Martini M, et al: PIK3CA mutations in colorectal cancer are associated with clinical resistance to EGFR-targeted monoclonal antibodies, *Cancer Res* 69:1851–1857, 2009a.

Saslow D, Solomon D, et al: American Cancer Society, American Society for Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology, and American Society for Clinical Pathology screening guidelines for the prevention and early detection of cervical cancer, *Am J Clin Pathol* 137:516–542, 2012.

Sato H, Minei S, et al: Fluorescence in situ hybridization analysis of c-myc amplification in stage TNM prostate cancer in Japanese patients, *Int J Urol* 13:761–766, 2006.

Sato N, Ueki T, et al: Aberrant methylation of CpG islands in intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms of the pancreas, *Gastroenterology* 123:365–372, 2002.

Schiavi F, Boedeker CC, et al: Predictors and prevalence of paraganglioma syndrome associated with mutations of the SDHC gene, *JAMA* 294:2057–2063, 2005.

Schmidt L, Duh FM, et al: Germline and somatic mutations in the tyrosine kinase domain of the MET proto-oncogene in papillary renal carcinomas, *Nat Genet* 16:68–73, 1997.

Schreibman IR, Baker M, et al: The hamartomatous polyposis syndromes: a clinical and molecular review, *Am J Gastroenterol* 100:476–490, 2005.

Schuetz AN, Yin-Goen Q, et al: Molecular classification of renal tumors by gene expression profiling, *J Mol Diagn* 7:206–218, 2005.

Schuffenecker I, Billaud M, et al: RET proto-oncogene mutations in French MEN 2A and FMTC families, *Hum Mol Genet* 3:1939–1943, 1994.

Sciot R, Dorfman H, et al: Cytogenetic-morphologic correlations in aneurysmal bone cyst, giant cell tumor of bone and combined lesions. A report from the CHAMP study group, *Mod Pathol* 13:1206–1210, 2000.

Seki K, Suda T, et al: Diagnosis of pancreatic adenocarcinoma by detection of human telomerase reverse transcriptase messenger RNA in pancreatic juice with sample qualification, *Clin Cancer Res* 7:1976–1981, 2001.

Sekulic A, Haluska P Jr, et al: Malignant melanoma in the 21st century: the emerging molecular landscape, *Mayo Clin Proc* 83:825–846, 2008.

Seo HM, Chang YS, et al: Clinicopathologic characteristics and outcomes of gastric cancers with the MSI-H phenotype, *J Surg Oncol* 99:143–147, 2009.

Sequist LV, Lynch TJ: EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors in lung cancer: an evolving story, *Annu Rev Med* 59:429–442, 2008.

Serrano M, Hannon GJ, et al: A new regulatory motif in cell cycle control causing specific inhibition of cycling D/CDK4, *Nature* 366:704–707, 1993.

Setlur SR, Mertz KD, et al: Estrogen-dependent signaling in a molecularly distinct subclass of aggressive prostate cancer, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 100:815–825, 2008.

Shaw AT, Yeap BY, et al: Clinical features and outcome of patients with non-small-cell lung cancer who harbor EML4-ALK, *J Clin Oncol* 27:4247–4253, 2009.

Shiao YH, Rugge M, et al: p53 alteration in gastric precancerous lesions, *Am J Pathol* 144:511–517, 1994.

Shimada S, Ishizawa T, et al: The value of MDM2 and CDK4 amplification levels using real-time polymerase chain reaction for the differential diagnosis of liposarcomas and their histologic mimickers, *Hum Pathol* 37:1123–1129, 2006.

Shirakawa H, Kuronuma T, et al: Glypican-3 is a useful diagnostic marker for a component of hepatocellular carcinoma in human liver cancer, *Int J Oncol* 34:649–656, 2009a.

Shirakawa H, Suzuki H, et al: Glypican-3 expression is correlated with poor prognosis in hepatocellular carcinoma, *Cancer Sci* 100:1403–1407, 2009b.

Sholl LM, Yeap BY, et al: Lung adenocarcinoma with EGFR amplification has distinct clinicopathologic and molecular features in never-smokers, *Cancer Res* 69:8341–8348, 2009.

Si H, Sun X, et al: Circulating microRNA-92a and microRNA-21 as novel minimally invasive biomarkers for primary breast cancer, *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 139:223–229, 2013.

Sicard F, Gayral M, et al: Targeting miR-21 for the therapy of pancreatic cancer, *Mol Ther* 21:986–994, 2013.

Sidhar SK, Clark J, et al: The t(X;1)(p11.2;q21.2) translocation in papillary renal cell carcinoma fuses a novel gene PRCC to the TFE3 transcription factor gene, *Hum Mol Genet* 5:1333–1338, 1996.

Sieber OM, Lipton L, et al: Multiple colorectal adenomas, classic adenomatous polyposis, and germ-line mutations in MYH, *N Engl J Med* 348:791–799, 2003.

Siena S, Sartore-Bianchi A, et al: Biomarkers predicting clinical outcome of epidermal growth factor receptor-targeted therapy in metastatic colorectal cancer, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 101:1308–1324, 2009.

Simon MP, Pedeutour F, et al: Deregulation of the platelet-derived growth factor B-chain gene via fusion with collagen gene COL1A1 in dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans and giant-cell fibroblastoma, *Nat Genet* 15:95–98, 1997.

Singh RR, Patel KP, et al: Clinical validation of a next-generation sequencing screen for mutational hotspots in 46 cancer-related genes, *J Mol Diagn* 15:607–622, 2013.

Sirvent N, Coindre JM, et al: Detection of MDM2-CDK4 amplification by fluorescence in situ hybridization in 200 paraffin-embedded tumor samples: utility in diagnosing adipocytic lesions and comparison with immunohistochemistry and real-time PCR, *Am J Surg Pathol* 31:1476–1489, 2007.

Sjogren H, Wedell B, et al: Fusion of the NH2-terminal domain of the basic helix-loop-helix protein TCF12 to TEC in extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma with translocation t(9;15)(q22;q21), *Cancer Res* 60:6832–6835, 2000.

Skalsky YM, Ajuh PM, et al: PRCC, the commonest TFE3 fusion partner in papillary renal carcinoma is associated with pre-mRNA splicing factors, *Oncogene* 20:178–187, 2001.

Skytting B, Nilsson G, et al: A novel fusion gene, SYT-SSX4, in synovial sarcoma, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 91:974–975, 1999.

Smakman N, Borel Rinkes IH, et al: Control of colorectal metastasis formation by K-Ras, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1756:103–114, 2005.

Soller MJ, Isaksson M, et al: Confirmation of the high frequency of the TMPRSS2/ERG fusion gene in prostate cancer, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 45:717–719, 2006.

Sorosky JI: Endometrial cancer, *Obstet Gynecol* 120:383–397, 2012.

Speleman F, Delattre O, et al: Malignant melanoma of the soft parts (clear-cell sarcoma): confirmation of EWS and ATF-1 gene fusion caused by a t(12;22) translocation, *Mod Pathol* 10:496–499, 1997.

Spruck CH 3rd, Ohneseit PF, et al: Two molecular pathways to transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder, *Cancer Res* 54:784–788, 1994.

Srigley JR, Delahunt B, et al: The International Society of Urological Pathology (ISUP) Vancouver classification of renal neoplasia, *Am J Surg Pathol* 37:1469–1489, 2013.

Stahl JM, Sharma A, et al: Deregulated Akt3 activity promotes development of malignant melanoma, *Cancer Res* 64:7002–7010, 2004.

Stolle C, Glenn G, et al: Improved detection of germline mutations in the von Hippel-Lindau disease tumor suppressor gene, *Hum Mutat* 12:417–423, 1998.

Stupp R, Mason WP, et al: Radiotherapy plus concomitant and adjuvant temozolomide for glioblastoma, *N Engl J Med* 352:987–996, 2005.

Su GH, Kern SE: Molecular genetics of ductal pancreatic neoplasia, *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 16:419–425, 2000.

Sugawara E, Togashi Y, et al: Identification of anaplastic lymphoma kinase fusions in renal cancer, *Cancer* 118:4427–4436, 2012.

Sukov WR, Hodge JC, et al: ALK alterations in adult renal cell carcinoma: frequency, clinicopathologic features and outcome in a large series of consecutively treated patients, *Mod Pathol* 25:1516–1525, 2012.

Swanson DB, Cohen E, et al: MYH9-USP6 fusion transcript in nodular fasciitis: an institutional review, *Mod Pathol* 25:20A, 2012.

Sweeney C, Boucher KM, et al: Oncogenetic tree model of somatic mutations and DNA methylation in colon tumors, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 48:1–9, 2009.

Szafranska AE, Davison TS, et al: MicroRNA expression alterations are linked to tumorigenesis and non-neoplastic processes in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma, *Oncogene* 26:4442–4452, 2007.

Takayama T, Makuuchi M, et al: Malignant transformation of adenomatous hyperplasia to hepatocellular carcinoma, *Lancet* 336:1150–1153, 1990.

Takeuchi K, Soda M, et al: Pulmonary inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor expressing a novel fusion, PPFIBP1-ALK: reappraisal of anti-ALK immunohistochemistry as a tool for novel ALK fusion identification, *Clin Cancer Res* 17:3341–3348, 2011.

Takeuchi K, Soda M, et al: RET, ROS1 and ALK fusions in lung cancer, *Nat Med* 18:378–381, 2012.

Tamura S, Nakamori S, et al: Association of cumulative allelic losses with tumor aggressiveness in hepatocellular carcinoma, *J Hepatol* 27:669–676, 1997.

Tan MH, Wong CF, et al: Genomic expression and single-nucleotide polymorphism profiling discriminates chromophobe renal cell carcinoma and oncocytoma, *BMC Cancer* 10:196, 2010.

Tanaka M, Kitajima Y, et al: Combined evaluation of mucin antigen and E-cadherin expression may help select patients with gastric cancer suitable for minimally invasive therapy, *Br J Surg* 90:95–101, 2003.

Tanas MR, Sboner A, et al: Identification of a disease-defining gene fusion in epithelioid hemangioendothelioma, *Sci Transl Med* 3:98ra82, 2011.

Tang D, Shen Y, et al: Identification of plasma microRNAs as novel noninvasive biomarkers for early detection of lung cancer, *Eur J Cancer Prev* 22:540–548, 2013.

Terracciano L, Tornillo L: Cytogenetic alterations in liver cell tumors as detected by comparative genomic hybridization, *Pathologica* 95:71–82, 2003.

Theise ND, Park YN, et al: Dysplastic nodules and hepatocarcinogenesis, *Clin Liver Dis* 6:497–512, 2002.

Thomas M: Molecular targeted therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma, *J Gastroenterol* 44(Suppl 19):136–141, 2009.

Tickoo SK, Lee MW, et al: Ultrastructural observations on mitochondria and microvesicles in renal oncocytoma, chromophobe renal cell carcinoma, and eosinophilic variant of conventional (clear cell) renal cell carcinoma, *Am J Surg Pathol* 24:1247–1256, 2000.

Tomlins SA, Rhodes DR, et al: Recurrent fusion of TMPRSS2 and ETS transcription factor genes in prostate cancer, *Science* 310:644–648, 2005.

Tomlinson IP, Alam NA, et al: Germline mutations in FH predispose to dominantly inherited uterine fibroids, skin leiomyomata and papillary renal cell cancer, *Nat Genet* 30:406–410, 2002.

Tomlinson GE, Nisen PD, et al: Cytogenetics of a renal cell carcinoma in a 17-month-old child. Evidence for Xp11.2 as a recurring breakpoint, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 57:11–17, 1991.

Tothill RW, Kowalczyk A, et al: An expression-based site of origin diagnostic method designed for clinical application to cancer of unknown origin, *Cancer Res* 65:4031–4040, 2005.

Toyota M, Ahuja N, et al: Aberrant methylation in gastric cancer associated with the CpG island methylator phenotype, *Cancer Res* 59:5438–5442, 1999.

Traverso G, Shuber A, et al: Detection of APC mutations in fecal DNA from patients with colorectal tumors, *N Engl J Med* 346:311–320, 2002.

Trump D, Farren B, et al: Clinical studies of multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN1), *QJM* 89:653–669, 1996.

Tsao H, Goel V, et al: Genetic interaction between NRAS and BRAF mutations and PTEN/MMAC1 inactivation in melanoma, *J Invest Dermatol* 122:337–341, 2004.

Tsuda M, Davis IJ, et al: TFE3 fusions activate MET signaling by transcriptional up-regulation, defining another class of tumors as candidates for therapeutic MET inhibition, *Cancer Res* 67:919–929, 2007.
Tu JJ, Rohan S, et al: Gene fusions between TMPRSS2 and ETS family genes in prostate cancer: frequency and transcript variant analysis by RT-PCR and FISH on paraffin-embedded tissues, *Mod Pathol* 20:921–928, 2007.
Turc-Carel C, Dal Cin P, et al: Recurrent breakpoints at 9q31 and 22q12.2 in extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma, *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 30:145–150, 1988.
Umar A, Boland CR, et al: Revised Bethesda Guidelines for hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (Lynch syndrome) and microsatellite instability, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 96:261–268, 2004.
Valle L, Serena-Acedo T, et al: Germline allele-specific expression of TGFBR1 confers an increased risk of colorectal cancer, *Science* 321:1361–1365, 2008.
van der Heijden MS, Brody JR, et al: In vivo therapeutic responses contingent on Fanconi anemia/BRCA2 status of the tumor, *Clin Cancer Res* 11:7508–7515, 2005.
van Rhijn BW, Lurkin I, et al: The fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 (FGFR3) mutation is a strong indicator of superficial bladder cancer with low recurrence rate, *Cancer Res* 61:1265–1268, 2001.
Varadhachary GR, Talantov D, et al: Molecular profiling of carcinoma of unknown primary and correlation with clinical evaluation, *J Clin Oncol* 26:4442–4448, 2008.
Varesco L: Familial adenomatous polyposis: genetics and epidemiology, *Tech Coloproctol* 8(Suppl 2):S305–S308, 2004.
Venkitaraman AR: Linking the cellular functions of BRCA genes to cancer pathogenesis and treatment, *Annu Rev Pathol* 4:461–487, 2009.
Vermeulen J, Ballet S, et al: Incidence and prognostic value of tumor cells detected by RT-PCR in peripheral blood stem cell collections from patients with Ewing tumor, *Br J Cancer* 95:1326–1333, 2006.
Vivanco I, Sawyers CL: The phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase AKT pathway in human cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 2:489–501, 2002.
Vogt S, Jones N, et al: Expanded extracolonic tumor spectrum in MUTYH-associated polyposis, *Gastroenterology* 137:1976–1985, e1–e10, 2009.
Vogt M, Munding J, et al: Frequent concomitant inactivation of miR-34a and miR-34b/c by CpG methylation in colorectal, pancreatic, mammary, ovarian, urothelial, and renal cell carcinomas and soft tissue sarcomas, *Virchows Arch* 458:313–322, 2011.
Vollmers HP, Hensel F, et al: Tumor-specific apoptosis induced by the human monoclonal antibody SC-1: a new therapeutical approach for stomach cancer, *Oncol Rep* 5:35–40, 1998a.
Vollmers HP, Zimmermann U, et al: Adjuvant therapy for gastric adenocarcinoma with the apoptosis-inducing human monoclonal antibody SC-1: first clinical and histopathological results, *Oncol Rep* 5:549–552, 1998b.
Waite KA, Eng C: Protean PTEN: form and function, *Am J Hum Genet* 70:829–844, 2002.
Wan PT, Garnett MJ, et al: Mechanism of activation of the RAF-ERK signaling pathway by oncogenic mutations of B-RAF, *Cell* 116:855–867, 2004.
Wang J, Cai Y, et al: Expression of variant TMPRSS2/ERG fusion messenger RNAs is associated with aggressive prostate cancer, *Cancer Res* 66:8347–8351, 2006.
Wang L, Liu R, et al: Somatic single hits inactivate the X-linked tumor suppressor FOXP3 in the prostate, *Cancer Cell* 16:336–346, 2009a.
Wang WL, Mayordomo E, et al: Fluorescence in situ hybridization is a useful ancillary diagnostic tool for extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma, *Mod Pathol* 21:1303–1310, 2008.
Wang WL, Mayordomo E, et al: Detection and characterization of EWSR1/ATF1 and EWSR1/CREB1 chimeric transcripts in clear cell sarcoma (melanoma of soft parts), *Mod Pathol* 22:1201–1209, 2009b.
Wang YL, Sheu BS, et al: Overexpression of c-erb-B2 proteins in tumor and non-tumor parts of gastric adenocarcinoma—emphasis on its relation to *H. pylori* infection and clinicohistological characteristics, *Hepatogastroenterology* 49:1172–1176, 2002.
Wang S, Xiang J, et al: A plasma microRNA panel for early detection of colorectal cancer, *Int J Cancer* 136:152–161, 2015.
Weaver J, Rao P, et al: Can MDM2 analytical tests performed on core needle biopsy be relied upon to diagnose well-differentiated liposarcoma? *Mod Pathol* 23:1301–1306, 2010.
Webster AR, Richards FM, et al: An analysis of phenotypic variation in the familial cancer syndrome von Hippel-Lindau disease: evidence for modifier effects, *Am J Hum Genet* 63:1025–1035, 1998.
Wei D, Goldfarb D, et al: SNF5/INI1 deficiency redefines chromatin remodeling complex composition during tumor development, *Mol Cancer Res* 12:1574–1585, 2014.
Weisenberger DJ, Siegmund KD, et al: CpG island methylator phenotype underlies sporadic microsatellite instability and is tightly associated with BRAF mutation in colorectal cancer, *Nat Genet* 38:787–793, 2006.
Weller M, Rieger J, et al: Predicting chemoresistance in human malignant glioma cells: the role of molecular genetic analyses, *Int J Cancer* 79:640–644, 1998.
Wen WH, Reles A, et al: p53 mutations and expression in ovarian cancers: correlation with overall survival, *Int J Gynecol Pathol* 18:29–41, 1999.
Weterman MJ, van Groningen JJ, et al: Nuclear localization and transactivating capacities of the papillary renal cell carcinoma-associated TFE3 and PRCC (fusion) proteins, *Oncogene* 19:69–74, 2000.
Wiegand KC, Shah SP, et al: ARID1A mutations in endometriosis-associated ovarian carcinomas, *N Engl J Med* 363:1532–1543, 2010.
Wilhelm SM, Carter C, et al: BAY 43–9006 exhibits broad spectrum oral antitumor activity and targets the RAF/MEK/ERK pathway and receptor tyrosine kinases involved in tumor progression and angiogenesis, *Cancer Res* 64:7099–7109, 2004.
Winawer S, Fletcher R, et al: Colorectal cancer screening and surveillance: clinical guidelines and rationale—Update based on new evidence, *Gastroenterology* 124:544–560, 2003.
Wirtz HC, Muller W, et al: Prognostic value and clinicopathological profile of microsatellite instability in gastric cancer, *Clin Cancer Res* 4:1749–1754, 1998.
Woodford-Richens KL, Rowan AJ, et al: SMAD4 mutations in colorectal cancer probably occur before chromosomal instability, but after divergence of the microsatellite instability pathway, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 98:9719–9723, 2001.
Xiangming C, Hokita S, et al: p21 expression is a prognostic factor in patients with p53-negative gastric cancer, *Cancer Lett* 148:181–188, 2000.
Xing M, Tufano RP, et al: Detection of BRAF mutation on fine needle aspiration biopsy specimens: a new diagnostic tool for papillary thyroid cancer, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 89:2867–2872, 2004.
Xing M, Westra WH, et al: BRAF mutation predicts a poorer clinical prognosis for papillary thyroid cancer, *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 90:6373–6379, 2005.
Xia XM, Jin WY, et al: Clinical significance and the correlation of expression between Let-7 and K-ras in non-small cell lung cancer, *Oncol Lett* 1:1045–1047, 2010.
Yagyu R, Hamamoto R, et al: Isolation and characterization of a novel human gene, VANGL1, as a therapeutic target for hepatocellular carcinoma, *Int J Oncol* 20:1173–1178, 2002.
Yamamoto H, Oda Y, et al: p53 mutation and MDM2 amplification in inflammatory myofibroblastic tumors, *Histopathology* 42:431–439, 2003.
Yan L, McFaul C, et al: Molecular analysis to detect pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma in high-risk groups, *Gastroenterology* 128:2124–2130, 2005.
Yan H, Parsons DW, et al: IDH1 and IDH2 mutations in gliomas, *N Engl J Med* 360:765–773, 2009.
Yang M, Shen H, et al: High expression of miR-21 and miR-155 predicts recurrence and unfavourable survival in non-small cell lung cancer, *Eur J Cancer* 49:604–615, 2013.
Yao M, Tabuchi H, et al: Gene expression analysis of renal carcinoma: adipose differentiation-related protein as a potential diagnostic and prognostic biomarker for clear-cell renal carcinoma, *J Pathol* 205:377–387, 2005.
Yap TA, Carden CP, et al: Beyond chemotherapy: targeted therapies in ovarian cancer, *Nat Rev Cancer* 9:167–181, 2009.
Yip L, Cote GJ, et al: Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2: evaluation of the genotype-phenotype relationship, *Arch Surg* 138:409–416; discussion 416, 2003.
Yoon H, Liyanarachchi S, et al: Gene expression profiling of isogenic cells with different TP53 gene dosage reveals numerous genes that are affected by TP53 dosage and identifies CSPG2 as a direct target of p53, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 99:15632–15637, 2002.
Yorita K, Takahashi N, et al: Prognostic significance of circumferential cell surface immunoreactivity of glypican-3 in hepatocellular carcinoma, *Liver Int* 31:120–131, 2011.
Yoshida T, Hisamoto T, et al: Spreds, inhibitors of the Ras/ERK signal transduction, are dysregulated in human hepatocellular carcinoma and linked to the malignant phenotype of tumors, *Oncogene* 25:6056–6066, 2006.
Yoshida A, Tsuta K, et al: Comprehensive histologic analysis of ALK-rearranged lung carcinomas, *Am J Surg Pathol* 35:1226–1234, 2011.
Yoshimoto M, Joshua AM, et al: Three-color FISH analysis of TMPRSS2/ERG fusions in prostate cancer indicates that genomic microdeletion of chromosome 21 is associated with rearrangement, *Neoplasia* 8:465–469, 2006.
Young J, Jass JR: The case for a genetic predisposition to serrated neoplasia in the colorectum: hypothesis and review of the literature, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 15:1778–1784, 2006.
Young AN, Master VA, et al: Renal epithelial neoplasms: diagnostic applications of gene expression profiling, *Adv Anat Pathol* 15:28–38, 2008.
Zafarana G, Ishkanian AS, et al: Copy number alterations of c-MYC and PTEN are prognostic factors for relapse after prostate cancer radiotherapy, *Cancer* 118:4053–4062, 2012.
Zbuk KM, Eng C: Hamartomatous polyposis syndromes, *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 4:492–502, 2007.
Zender L, Kubicka S: Molecular pathogenesis and targeted therapy of hepatocellular carcinoma, *Onkologie* 31:550–555, 2008.
Zhang L, Liu H, et al: Glypican-3 as a potential differential diagnosis marker for hepatocellular carcinoma: a tissue microarray-based study, *Acta Histochem* 114:547–552, 2012b.
Zhang LH, Qin LX, et al: Allelic imbalance regions on chromosomes 8p, 17p and 19p related to metastasis of hepatocellular carcinoma: comparison between matched primary and metastatic lesions in 22 patients by genome-wide microsatellite analysis, *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 129:279–286, 2003.
Zhang Y, Roccaro AM, et al: LNA-mediated anti-miR-155 silencing in low-grade B-cell lymphomas, *Blood* 120:1678–1686, 2012a.
Zhou XP, Waite KA, et al: Germline PTEN promoter mutations and deletions in Cowden/Bannayan-Riley-Ruvalcaba syndrome result in aberrant PTEN protein and dysregulation of the phosphoinositol-3-kinase/Akt pathway, *Am J Hum Genet* 73:404–411, 2003.
Zhou YN, Xu CP, et al: Expression of E-cadherin and beta-catenin in gastric carcinoma and its correlation with the clinicopathological features and patient survival, *World J Gastroenterol* 8:987–993, 2002.
Zhu AX, Gold PJ, et al: First-in-man phase I study of GC33, a novel recombinant humanized antibody against glypican-3, in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma, *Clin Cancer Res* 19:920–928, 2013.
Zhu Z, Gandhi M, et al: Molecular profile and clinical-pathologic features of the follicular variant of papillary thyroid carcinoma. An unusually high prevalence of ras mutations, *Am J Clin Pathol* 120:71–77, 2003.
Zlobec I, Lugli A: Prognostic and predictive factors in colorectal cancer, *J Clin Pathol* 61:561–569, 2008.
Zucman J, Delattre O, et al: EWS and ATF-1 gene fusion induced by t(12;22) translocation in malignant melanoma of soft parts, *Nat Genet* 4:341–345, 1993.
Zucman-Rossi J, Jeannot E, et al: Genotype-phenotype correlation in hepatocellular adenoma: new classification and relationship with HCC, *Hepatology* 43:515–524, 2006.
Zuo L, Weger J, et al: Germline mutations in the p16INK4a binding domain of CDK4 in familial melanoma, *Nat Genet* 12:97–99, 1996.

CHAPTER 78

HIGH-THROUGHPUT GENOMIC AND PROTEOMIC TECHNOLOGIES IN THE POSTGENOMIC ERA

Martin H. Bluth

OVERVIEW, 1520

THE HUMAN GENOME PROJECT, 1521
Public Sequencing Effort (Hierarchical Shotgun Sequencing), 1521
Private Sequencing Effort (Whole-Genome Shotgun Sequencing), 1522
Finishing the Sequence of the Human Genome, 1522

HIGH-THROUGHPUT TECHNOLOGIES, 1522
Genomic, 1522
Proteomic, 1528

MOLECULAR MARKERS FOR THE DIAGNOSIS OF HUMAN NEOPLASIA, 1528
Genomic, 1528
Proteomic, 1529

DIAGNOSTIC CANCER APPLICATIONS, 1529
Small, Round Blue Cell Tumors, 1529
Barrett's Esophagus, 1530
Thyroid Carcinoma, 1530
Adenocarcinoma, 1531
Pancreatic Cancer, 1531
Other Cancers, 1531

PROGNOSTIC MOLECULAR MARKERS OF DISEASE, 1531
Genomic, 1531
Integrating Genomics and Proteomics, 1533

PITFALLS OF MOLECULAR MARKERS FOR BOTH PROGNOSTICS AND DIAGNOSTICS, 1533
Microarray Data Sets, 1533
"Overfitting" the Predictor, 1533
The "Bystander" Effect, 1534
Limitations of Proteomic Techniques, 1534

CONCLUSION AND FUTURE CHALLENGES, 1534

SELECTED REFERENCES, 1534

KEY POINTS

- Completion of the human genome project has provided scientists with a detailed map of the human genome and predicted coding regions that have facilitated the emergence of high-throughput genomic and proteomic technologies.
- A number of mature platforms exist for high-throughput profiling of gene expression in human tissue, including serial analysis of gene expression (SAGE), DNA microarrays, and real competitive polymerase chain reaction.
- Proteomic technologies, including mass spectrometry and protein arrays, have begun to explore the dynamic and complex protein composition of healthy and diseased human tissue.
- DNA microarray and SAGE technologies have identified diagnostic gene-expression signatures for a number of hematologic and solid malignancies that are often difficult to distinguish using traditional histologic analysis.
- Prognostic gene and protein expression profiles have been identified in a large number of cancer settings, including lymphoma, lung cancer, breast cancer, and acute myeloid leukemia, among others.
- Validation in large clinical trials, standardization of techniques and controls, and inclusion of analytic standards are needed before widespread clinical implementation of these technologies can be achieved.

OVERVIEW

With the complete sequence of human and other genomes recently elucidated, we have witnessed an explosion of information and high-throughput tools that are profoundly altering biomedical research and the culture of science. This revolution, which began in the mid-1980s, emerged from developments in three areas: 1) molecular biology, most notably, breakthroughs in rapid DNA sequencing; 2) information technology, in particular, the ability to store and analyze unprecedented quantities of data; and, most important, 3) progress in human genetics, especially the identification of thousands of single-gene human disorders. The convergence of these technological and scientific advances raises promise for the rapid identification of disease-related genes, leading to improved diagnostic tests and more effective therapies.

Detailed maps of human and other genomes provide the information needed to chart a course toward understanding and treating many diseases, but this course remains a long and difficult one. Although progress will come most readily for disorders following Mendelian patterns of inheritance, even these disorders will pose significant difficulties. For example, although the biology and genetics of sickle cell anemia have been reasonably well understood for more than half a century—a single valine replaces glutamic acid at position 6 in the β-hemoglobin chain—effective treatment has been slow to develop. The penetrance of genetic diseases thought to be due to single mutations often relies on more complex interactions between the mutation and a variety of concurrent gene polymorphisms, such as those seen in the genes encoding surface proteins on postcapillary venule endothelial cells, which, in part, account for sickle cell disease severity.

Many common diseases, in particular, cardiovascular disease, mental illness, and almost all cancers, stem from multigenic causes. In addition, these diseases invariably have strong environmental components, presenting a substantial challenge to the development of effective and economical diagnostic and prognostic tests. Even in the absence of a confounding environmental influence, linking the quantifiable phenotype of a disease to a set of distinct alleles is a complex undertaking. Further complicating matters, many disorders do not have sharply defined, quantifiable phenotypes.

In a chapter filled with information on promising technologies, we make these sobering remarks to emphasize that greater understanding never guarantees cures or therapies. However, greater understanding does aid the development of rational strategies to detect and control disease. The reference genome allows us to rapidly characterize polymorphisms

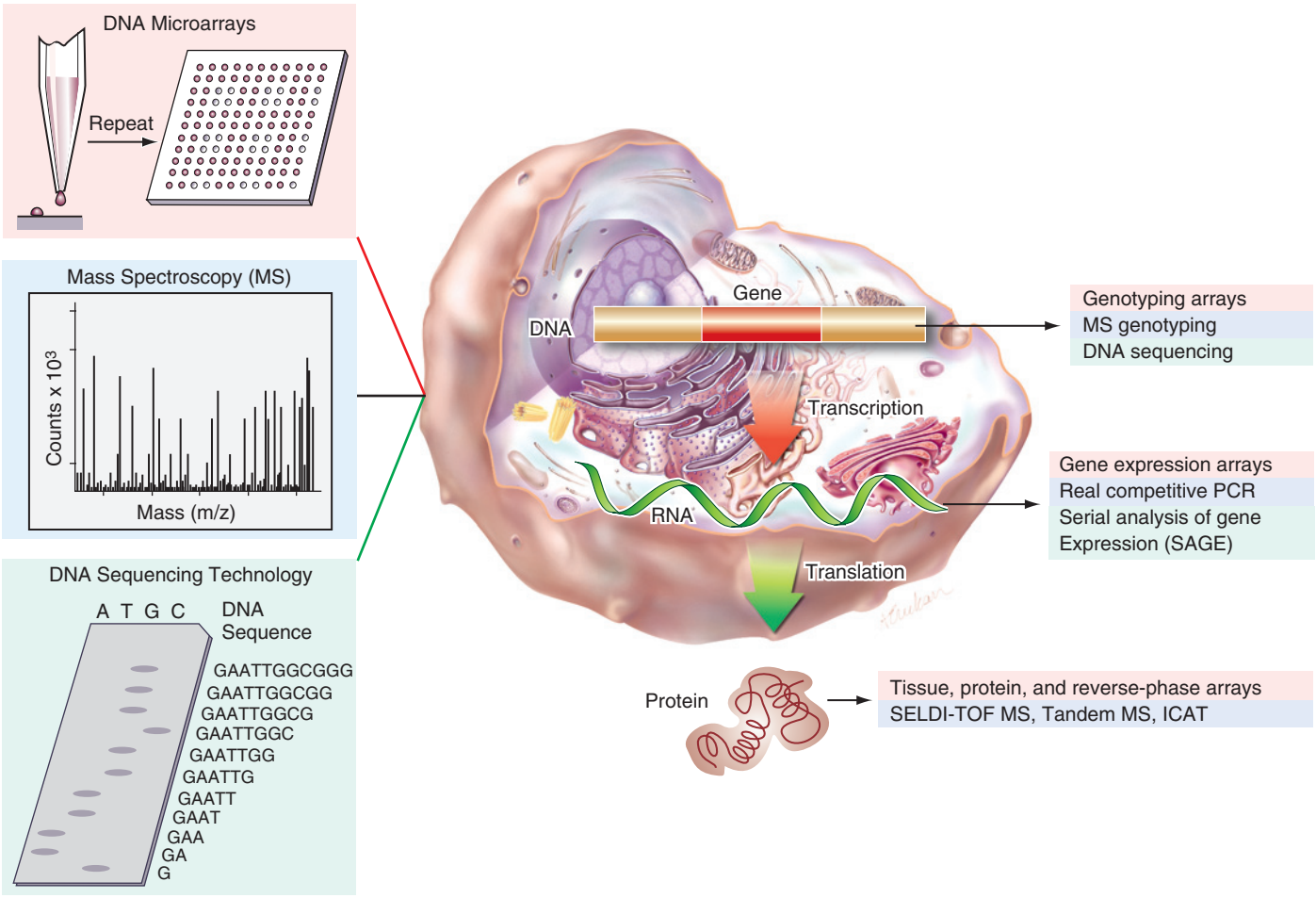


Figure 78-1 High-throughput platforms and the central dogma of biology. The three major technologies responsible for rapid analysis of biological systems include mass spectrometry, sequencing, and microarrays. Examples of each technology have been listed as applied to each broad stage of biological information, that is, DNA, RNA, and protein. *ICAT,* Isotope-coded affinity tags; *MS,* mass spectroscopy; *SELDI-TOF-MS,* surface-enhanced laser desorption ionization, time-of-flight mass spectroscopy. (Adapted with permission from Kufe DW, Holland JF: *Cancer medicine,* ed 6, Hamilton, Ontario, 2003, BC Decker; Wilson J, Hunt T: *Molecular biology of the cell,* ed 4, New York, 2003, Garland Science; Brown TA: *Genomes,* ed 2, New York, 2002, John Wiley & Sons.)

across the human population; it also enables molecular fingerprinting technologies that permit identification of the precursors and consequences of normal and pathologic changes in gene and protein expression. We can feel confident that the power of genomic technologies is well beyond anything previously available, and that it will make possible during the next several decades a host of new diagnostics and therapeutics for cancer and other common diseases, profoundly altering the practice of medicine. As discussed in Chapter 73, genomic technologies have already made an impact in the area of pharmacogenomics, in which drug protocols are being designed from the cytochrome P450 genetic profiles of patients, allowing for maximally effective therapeutic regimens for each patient.

This chapter focuses on several high-throughput genomic and proteomic technologies that have the potential to influence disease classification and prognostication (Fig. 78-1). These molecular tools have affected virtually all forms of human pathology; however, given the public health implications and the preponderance of recent publications in the field, we will concentrate on diagnostic and prognostic applications related to cancer, although we will mention other salient disease states where applicable. After presenting a brief overview of the human genome project and resultant high-throughput technologies, we will discuss examples of applications in the setting of several hematologic and solid malignancies. The scope of the chapter has been constrained to focus on high-throughput technologies; therefore, this chapter does not represent a comprehensive overview of all technologies being used in clinical genomic and proteomic studies. In addition, among the technologies presented, some are highlighted in greater detail because of their widespread use. As more data are produced using these technologies, strategies combining data sets may become powerful approaches to developing accurate clinical tools. Along with measuring gene and protein expression levels, understanding human genetic variation in DNA will be important in elucidating disease markers and mechanisms. A discussion of high-throughput genotyping technologies to assay single-nucleotide polymorphisms is, however, beyond the scope of this chapter (for reviews, see Syvanen, 2001; Ding & Jin, 2009).

THE HUMAN GENOME PROJECT

PUBLIC SEQUENCING EFFORT (HIERARCHICAL SHOTGUN SEQUENCING)

Sequencing of the human genome was a 15-year, $3 billion project, initiated in 1990 as a joint effort between the U.S. Department of Energy and the National Institutes of Health (Collins et al, 2003). From the time of the project's inception through 1995, genetic and physical maps of human and mouse genomes were constructed, and yeast and worm genomes were sequenced. These initial projects, coupled with advances in sequencing technology and sequence data analysis, outlined cost-effective strategies and techniques, while demonstrating the feasibility of sequencing the human genome. In March 1999, the effort to sequence the human genome commenced in earnest, and sequencing was set to be completed in two phases: the first phase would include completion of a draft sequence, and the second would be a finishing phase for resolution of misassembled regions and filling in of sequence gaps. By June 2000, centers involved in the project were producing raw sequence data at a rate of about 1000 nucleotides per second, 24 hours a day, 7 days a week (Lander et al, 2001).

The first phase of the Human Genome Project, a collaborative endeavor of 20 groups in six countries, was completed and published in February 2001 in the journal *Nature* (Genome International Sequencing Consortium, 2001; Lander et al, 2001). The draft sequence covered about 96% of the euchromatic part (gene-rich) of the human genome and 94% of the

entire genome, with an average of fourfold coverage (i.e., each base sequenced an average of four times). The International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium employed a sequencing strategy referred to as *hierarchical shotgun sequencing* (also known as *map-based*, *bacterial artificial chromosome (BAC)-based*, or *clone-by-clone sequencing*) (Olson, 2001). Genomic DNA obtained from volunteers from a variety of racial and ethnic backgrounds was partially digested with restriction endonucleases. Fragments of 1 to 2 Mb in length were cloned into BACs. Eight DNA libraries containing overlapping insert clones were created, representing 65-fold coverage of the genome (each base is represented on average 65 times, as seen on examination of all eight libraries).

BACs containing fragments of the human genome are inserted into bacteria and are replicated as the bacteria grow and divide. Each BAC clone is completely digested with a restriction enzyme to produce a unique pattern of DNA fragments, known as a *fingerprint*. The fingerprints from different BAC clones can be compared to allow selection of a set of overlapping BAC clones that cover a portion of the genome (a large region of the genome covered by overlapping clones is called a *contig*). Contigs can be positioned along the chromosome by using known markers from previously constructed genetic and physical maps of the human genome. Selected BAC clones are sheared into smaller overlapping fragments, subcloned, and sequenced. Subcloning is necessary because each sequencing reaction can reliably read only about 500 base pairs (bp). The sequence of the BAC clone can be reconstructed from the set of sequences obtained from the subclones, and BAC fingerprints guide the assembly of several BAC clones into contigs.

Draft sequences were required to obtain an average of fourfold coverage with 99% accuracy as determined by software (i.e., PHRED, PHRAP; CodonCode Corporation, Dedham, Mass.) that assigns base quality scores and assembles sequences according to the scores. Throughout the duration of the project, sequences longer than 2 kb were required to be deposited in public databases within 24 hours (data are available from the Genome Browser of the University of California at Santa Cruz, www.genome.ucsc.edu; the GenBank of the National Center for Biotechnology Information, http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/genbank/; and Ensembl of the European Bioinformatics Institute and the Sanger Centre, www.ensembl.org). Assembly of the draft sequence was a three-part process that involved filtering the sequence data to eliminate bacterial and mitochondrial sequences, constructing a layout of clones along the genome, and merging overlapping clones to produce a draft sequence.

The hierarchical shotgun sequencing approach was chosen by the public consortium for several reasons. Dividing the work among sequencing centers was straightforward with the use of clones. Also, the assembly of clones to produce a draft sequence probably would enhance accuracy because approximately 46% of the human genome comprises repeat sequences and exhibits widespread individual sequence variation. In addition, this approach could address cloning bias, and underrepresented sequences could be targeted for sequencing.

PRIVATE SEQUENCING EFFORT (WHOLE-GENOME SHOTGUN SEQUENCING)

In 1998, a private company, Celera Genomics (Alameda, Calif.), led by Craig Venter, announced its intention of sequencing the human genome in 3 years using a different approach, known as *whole-genome shotgun sequencing*. Celera's draft of the human genome sequence was reported in the February 2001 issue of *Science* (Venter et al, 2001). Celera generated 14.8 billion bp of DNA sequence in 9 months to produce a 2.91 billion–bp consensus sequence of the euchromatic part of the human genome with an average of fivefold coverage. The company used genomic DNA obtained from three females and two males of the following ethnogeographic groups: African American, Asian-Chinese, Hispanic-Mexican, and Caucasian. A total of 16 different DNA libraries were constructed with three different insert sizes: 2 kb, 10 kb, and 50 kb. Both ends of the insert from clones chosen at random were sequenced to produce "mate pair" sequencing reads. The average distance between mate pairs was known because the range of insert sizes for a clone taken from a particular library could be characterized by calculating the distance between mate pairs in previously sequenced stretches of the genome. Celera generated a set of 27.26 million reads with an average length of 543 bp.

Celera combined its sequence data with all data from the publicly funded efforts available up to September 2000 in GenBank and pursued two different assembly strategies. The whole-genome assembly strategy involved "shredding" the publicly funded sequences into small fragments, combining these fragments with Celera's reads, identifying overlapping sequences, and joining them to produce long, continuous consensus sequences. These contigs were ordered, and gaps between contigs were quantified using information obtained from the mate pair reads. A variant of the process described previously, known as *compartmentalized shotgun assembly*, yielded slightly better results because sequences were first clustered, based on mapping information, to a region of the chromosome, before the process already described was performed.

Analyses of draft sequences performed by the two groups yielded similar results. Some genes were derived from bacteria or transposable elements, and large segmental duplications were apparent throughout the genome. The distribution of genes, CpG islands, recombination sites, and repeats was found to be highly variable across the genome. Widespread genetic variation was apparent, and about 2.1 million single-nucleotide polymorphisms—1 per 1250 bp—were discovered. One of the most surprising results revealed by completion of the draft sequence was the estimate that the genome contained about 30,000 protein-coding genes, considerably fewer than the 100,000 or more that had been postulated. The number is only one-third greater than that of the worm; however, probably a much larger number of different proteins were noted because of alternative splicing (Claverie, 2001). Scientists used many gene-prediction methods to arrive at the gene estimate of 30,000. Gene-prediction algorithms predict the location of unknown genes in the genome using sequence characteristics learned from known genes, including codon and nucleotide composition within coding regions and conserved sequences at exon/intron boundaries and within promoter regions. The human genome sequence has a low signal-to-noise ratio because the coding regions represent only about 3% of the genome; therefore, algorithms produce a large number of false-positives. Most algorithms, however, use two other important sources of information: similarity to known human proteins and expressed transcripts, and homology to proteins and sequences characterized in other organisms. (For a review of gene prediction algorithms, see Mathe et al, 2002.)

FINISHING THE SEQUENCE OF THE HUMAN GENOME

In October 2004, in the journal *Nature*, the International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium published an article entitled, "Finishing the Euchromatic Sequence of the Human Genome" (International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium, 2004). This article reported that the draft sequence was missing about 10% of the euchromatic portion of the genome, contained about 150,000 gaps, and had many sequence segments that had not been assigned an order or orientation. The current sequence contains 2.35 billion nucleotides, covers about 99% of the genome, and has only 341 gaps (with an error rate of 1 mistake every 100,000 bases). The sequence revision predicts between 20,000 and 25,000 protein-coding genes; this discrepancy in number is due to differences in gene prediction algorithms. The newly published sequence reveals that segmental duplications cover about 5.3% of the euchromatic portion, providing insight into the evolution of the human genome and aiding the study of diseases caused by deletions and rearrangements of these regions (e.g., DiGeorge syndrome) (Stankiewicz & Lupski, 2002). This latest sequence also makes it possible to trace the birth and death of genes—genes recently born as a result of gene duplication and genes lost as a result of mutation.

Sequencing of the human genome is a monumental achievement that "holds an extraordinary trove of information about human development, physiology, medicine, and evolution" (Lander et al, 2001). It has provided the infrastructure for sequencing other genomes and for understanding the structure and complexity of human genetic variation. This detailed map of the human genome and predicted coding regions has facilitated the emergence of several high-throughput technologies, through which scientists have begun to explore the complete set of gene and protein expressions in healthy and diseased human tissue. These technologies promise to revolutionize the classification of human disease and to usher in an era of individualized molecular medicine.

HIGH-THROUGHPUT TECHNOLOGIES

GENOMIC

An intimate understanding of cellular machinery represents the first step toward unraveling the complexity of human disease. Important insights into the function of a gene can be deduced by determining the cell type and conditions under which a gene is expressed, and by quantifying the level of message transcribed. A technique commonly used to assay the level of expression of a single gene (represented by messenger RNA [mRNA]) across a few different conditions is a Northern blot. This "gene-by-gene"

approach began to change in the early 1990s as a result of the success of the Human Genome Project and various technological advances that enabled the development of high-throughput gene-expression analyses whereby several genes could be assayed simultaneously. Three different genomic high-throughput technologies are discussed here. SAGE (Velculescu et al, 1995) and DNA microarrays (Schena et al, 1995; Lockhart et al, 1996) were both developed in the 1990s and are currently in widespread use; real competitive polymerase chain reaction (PCR) using matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectroscopy (MALDI-TOF-MS) was first published in 2003 (Ding & Cantor, 2003). The basic principles underlying DNA microarrays are discussed in Chapter 68; those underlying real competitive PCR are discussed in Chapter 67.

Depending on the experimental design, samples are obtained from cell cultures or surgical tissues, and total RNA is isolated. Techniques such as laser capture microdissection (Emmert-Buck et al, 1996) are often used before RNA isolation to obtain a homogeneous population of cells from tissue specimens. After total RNA or mRNA is obtained and is reverse transcribed to make complementary DNA (cDNA), each technology uses a different protocol to rapidly measure the transcript levels of the genes in each sample. The principles of each method, as well as corresponding advantages and disadvantages, are outlined in the following sections.

Serial Analysis of Gene Expression

SAGE measures the expression level of genes in a sample by isolating and sequencing several thousand short 10- to 14-bp tags isolated from cDNA. Two important pieces of information can be deduced from the output: the sequences of the tags usually allow identification of their corresponding genes, and the number of times a particular tag is sequenced is a measure of transcript abundance. The ability to uniquely identify a transcript using as short a sequence as 9 bp resides in the probability of defining this sequence from others. Such a sequence can distinguish 262,144 transcripts (4^9)—a number greater than current estimates of the number of transcripts in the human genome (Velculescu et al, 1995; Pennisi, 2000).

The SAGE protocol involves isolating RNA from a sample of interest. RNA is converted to double-stranded cDNA using a biotinylated oligo primer for first-strand synthesis. SAGE then uses two types of restriction enzymes. The first one, called an *anchoring enzyme*, recognizes a specific 4-bp sequence (e.g., NlaIII). Any 4-bp–recognizing enzyme may be used because, on average, enzymes cleave every 256 bp (4^4). The anchoring enzyme leaves a short, overhanging, single-stranded piece of DNA at the 5′ end of the site of cleavage. The biotinylated fragment, which represents the 3′ end of the gene, then is bound to streptavidin beads, capturing only digested cDNA fragments that contain a portion of the poly(A+) tail. Captured fragments are purified and are randomly split equally into two pools. The second enzyme, called the *tagging enzyme*, behaves differently and cleaves DNA 14 to 15 bp immediately 3′ of its recognition sequence (e.g., BsmFI). The recognition sequence for the tagging enzyme is engineered into the sequence of linkers described in the following section.

After the purified fragments are split into two pools, two different oligonucleotide linkers, each containing a different PCR primer sequence (for purposes of discussion, the linkers will be labeled A and B)—the tagging enzyme recognition sequence and a single-stranded DNA overhang that is part of the anchoring enzyme recognition sequence—are designed and synthesized. Linker A is ligated to the 5′ ends of cDNA fragments in one pool, and linker B is ligated to the 5′ ends of cDNA fragments in the other pool. Ligation proceeds by means of base pairing between complementary single-stranded overhanging DNA ends on both cDNA fragments and linkers, creating an intact anchoring enzyme recognition sequence. The cDNA fragments in each pool are then cut with the tagging enzyme, resulting in a new fragment that contains the linker plus a short, 10-bp region of cDNA, known as a *tag* (the remaining cDNA fragment and the poly[A+] portion of the tail are removed). The two pools of cDNA fragments are ligated together, creating ditags (the new sequences are as follows: linker A–tag–tag–linker B). Ditags are amplified by PCR using primers designed on the basis of sequences in linkers A and B.

Creation of the ditags is important for several reasons. First, ditags can be amplified by PCR for subsequent cloning steps. Second, each tag within a ditag is linked tail to tail and is flanked by anchoring enzyme–recognition sequences, providing important orientation information used to identify the genes corresponding to each tag. Finally, even if tags are highly abundant, the probability of creating identical ditags is extremely low. As a result, the occurrence of identical ditags indicates PCR bias, and these ditags are excluded from the final analysis to ensure accurate quantification of transcript abundance (Velculescu et al, 1995; Yamamoto et al, 2001).

After amplification, the anchoring enzyme is used to cleave the linkers from the ditags. Ditags from different reactions are ligated together end to end to form strings of 10 to 50 tags. The concatenated strings of ditags are cloned into plasmids and are sequenced. Typically, about 50,000 tags are sequenced for each sample of interest, using a high-throughput sequencer. (For additional details on the method, see the review by Madden et al, 2000.) The absolute expression levels of genes in the sample are quantified by counting the number of sequenced tags that corresponds with each gene. Figure 78-2 provides a visual scheme of the procedure.

SAGE technology has continued to mature, and technologies have been used to refine this technology toward its application, including an increase in sequencing efficiency (deepSAGE), improved tag-to-transcript mapping of SAGE tags (longSAGE), and reduction of the amount of required input RNA (microSAGE). The expansion of SAGE application from solely transcriptosome-based analysis to genomic analysis has given rise to Serial Analysis of Chromatin Occupancy, which identifies genomic signature tags that pinpoint transcription factor–binding sites. Because of the advent of microSAGE, small amounts of material obtained from needle biopsies and from specific cell types (obtained via fluorescence-activated cell sorting or laser microdissection) are sufficient to allow characterization of global gene expression (Datson, 2008).

The Cancer Genome Anatomy Project of the National Cancer Institute has chosen SAGE technology to sequence more than 5 million tags across more than 100 different human cell types. Data are stored in a public database known as SAGEmap (Lal et al, 1999; Lash et al, 2000), and several tools such as SAGE Genie (Boon et al, 2002) are available for reliably assigning tags to genes and for performing data analysis and visualization. Additional information and details can be obtained at http://cgap.nci.nih.gov/SAGE or http://www.sagenet.org.

SAGE differs from microarray in that the former employs a sequence-based sampling technique that is not contingent on hybridization and does not require well-defined known genes or sequences. Through this approach, novel genes or gene variants can be elucidated. Furthermore, SAGE provides better gene quantification because it directly counts the number of gene transcripts and is less subject to background "noise" of the microarray; however, it is more expensive. Modifications of SAGE, such as longSAGE, utilize different restriction endonucleases as the tagging enzyme that cuts 17 bp 3′ from the anchoring site, generating a tag with a uniqueness probability of >99% and providing the ability to tag a greater proportion of the unannotated genome. Other modifications that require minimal quantities of mRNA for library construction (SAGE-Lite and Micro-SAGE) have also been described (Datson et al, 1999; Patino et al, 2002).

Microarray

DNA microarrays are orderly arrays of spots, each composed of DNA representing a single gene and immobilized onto a solid support such as a glass slide, as described in Chapter 68. DNA microarrays take advantage of Watson-Crick base pairing; therefore, only strands of DNA that are complementary will hybridize and produce a signal that can be used as a measure of gene expression. Production and use of microarrays requires several steps, including creation of probes, array fabrication, target hybridization, fluorescence scanning, and image processing to produce a numeric readout of gene expression. Throughout this chapter, a *probe* will refer to a nucleic acid sequence that is attached to a solid support, and the *target* will be a complementary free sequence of nucleic acids measured for its abundance with the use of microarrays. A detailed description regarding the fabrication of cDNA and oligonucleotide arrays, along with how the RNA is prepared and hybridized to these platforms, is found in Chapter 68.

DNA microarray experiments can produce millions of data points; this requires a suite of data-processing steps to select relevant genes. Although no standard protocol is available, the following steps usually are included in analysis of a DNA microarray experiment (Fig. 78-3). Image files are converted to numeric values that are normalized and summarized using a software program (both free and commercially available programs such as Affymetrix [Affymetrix Inc., Santa Clara, Calif.] and Agilent [Agilent Technologies, Wilmington, Del.], among others, may be used) (Li & Wong, 2001; Irizarry et al, 2003); poor-quality arrays are removed from the analysis; genes that are not accurately detected by the array and genes that show little variation across samples are filtered out; and a variety of computational and statistical analyses are performed. Exploratory data analyses, including classification and identification of differentially expressed genes, can be divided into two categories: *supervised* and *unsupervised* methods. Supervised methods, such as class-prediction algorithms, use predefined groups of samples (referred to as the *training set*) to identify genes that can distinguish between groups to accurately classify unknown samples

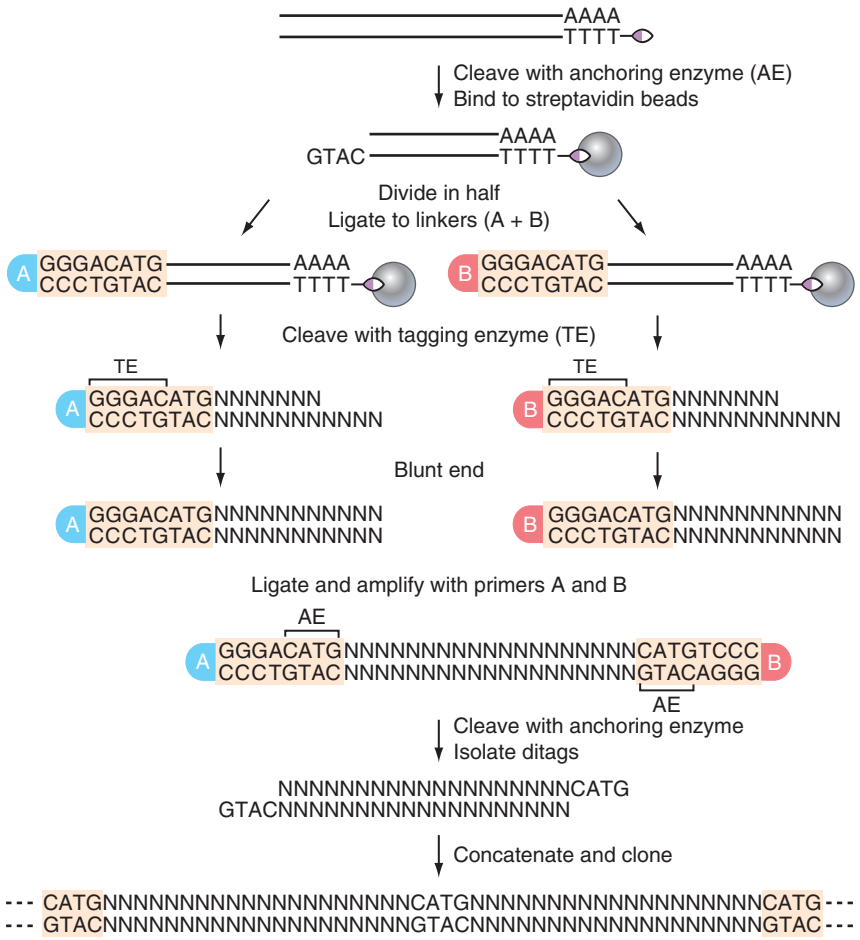


Figure 78-2 Serial analysis of gene expression (SAGE) is a technique that measures the expression levels of genes in a sample of interest. RNA is isolated from the sample, complementary DNA (cDNA) is synthesized, and several thousand short base pair (bp) tags are isolated. SAGE uses two types of restriction enzyme: one, called the *anchoring enzyme* (i.e., NlaIII), recognizes a specific 4-bp sequence and cleaves DNA every 256 bp, immediately 5′ of the sequence tag. The second enzyme, called the *tagging enzyme* (i.e., BsmFI), behaves differently and cleaves DNA 14 to 15 bp immediately 3′ of its recognition sequence. First, cDNA fragments are cut with the anchoring enzyme, captured using streptavidin-biotin affinity chromatography, purified, and split into two pools—A and B. Second, two different linkers (A and B) are ligated to the 5′ ends of the cDNA fragments in their respective pools. The cDNA fragments in each pool are then cut with the tagging enzyme, resulting in a new fragment that contains the linker plus a short 10-bp region of the cDNA, known as a *tag*. The two pools of cDNA fragments are ligated together, creating ditags, which are amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) using primers designed on the basis of sequences in linkers A and B. After amplification, the anchoring enzyme is used to cleave the linkers off the ends of the ditags. Ditags from different reactions are ligated together to form strings of 10 to 50 tags. The concatenated strings of ditags are cloned into plasmids and sequenced. Sequences of the tags are used to identify the corresponding genes and represent a measure of transcript abundance. (Adapted with permission from Yamamoto M, Wakatsuki T, Hada A, et al: Use of serial analysis of gene expression [SAGE] technology, *J Immunol Methods* 250:45–66, 2001.)

(referred to as the *test set*). A large number of supervised class-prediction algorithms have been applied to microarray data, including linear or quadratic discriminant analysis (Dudoit, 2002), k-nearest neighbors (Simon & Lam, 2004), weighted voting (Golub et al, 1999), artificial neural networks (Khan et al, 2001), support vector machines (Brown et al, 2000), and shrunken centroids (Tibshirani et al, 2002). Supervised algorithms such as significance analysis of microarrays (SAM) (Tusher et al, 2001), as well as parametric and nonparametric statistical tests between groups of samples, can be used to identify differentially expressed genes. Unsupervised methods, also known as *class-discovery methods*, can be used to find previously unknown classes, such as novel cancer subtypes, within a dataset. Various clustering techniques, such as hierarchal clustering (Eisen et al, 1998) and self-organizing maps, are commonly used class-discovery algorithms (for a general review, see Kaminski & Friedman, 2002; for a cDNA array analysis review, see Leung & Cavalieri, 2003; and for an oligonucleotide array analysis review, see Tumor Analysis Best Practices Working Group, 2004).

The Gene Expression Omnibus database (GEO; available at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo) is a central repository for high-throughput gene-expression data, through which a wide range of microarray data from published experiments is publicly available. All microarray data deposited in GEO adhere to the Minimum Information About a Microarray Experiment guidelines established to provide basic information about experimental designs, samples, and types of technology used. In addition to GEO, a wide range of bioinformatics tools is available for microarray data analysis (Quackenbush, 2001; Zhang et al, 2009). No standards for analyzing microarray data have been established, and various methods can often produce different results (for a discussion, see Tumor Analysis Best Practices Working Group, 2004). Validation studies with larger sample sizes or using a different technology are usually necessary to confirm significant findings.

Real Competitive Polymerase Chain Reaction

Real competitive PCR combines conventional competitive PCR techniques with single base extension and MALDI-TOF-MS to measure gene-expression levels. The principles of mass spectroscopy are discussed in Chapters 4 and 23, and the use of mass spectroscopy in proteomics in cancer detection is discussed in Chapter 75. The use of MALDI-TOF-MS in high-throughput genomic studies is a recent innovation that is capable of absolute gene quantification with extremely high sensitivity and produces results consistent with real-time PCR and DNA microarrays. The basic principles underlying real-time PCR are discussed in Chapter 67.

Analogous to real-time PCR, use of this technique requires previous knowledge of the sequences of the genes of interest. Through this approach (Figs. 78-4 and 78-5), total RNA from a sample is reverse-transcribed using random hexamers or gene-specific primers. An 80- to 100-bp region

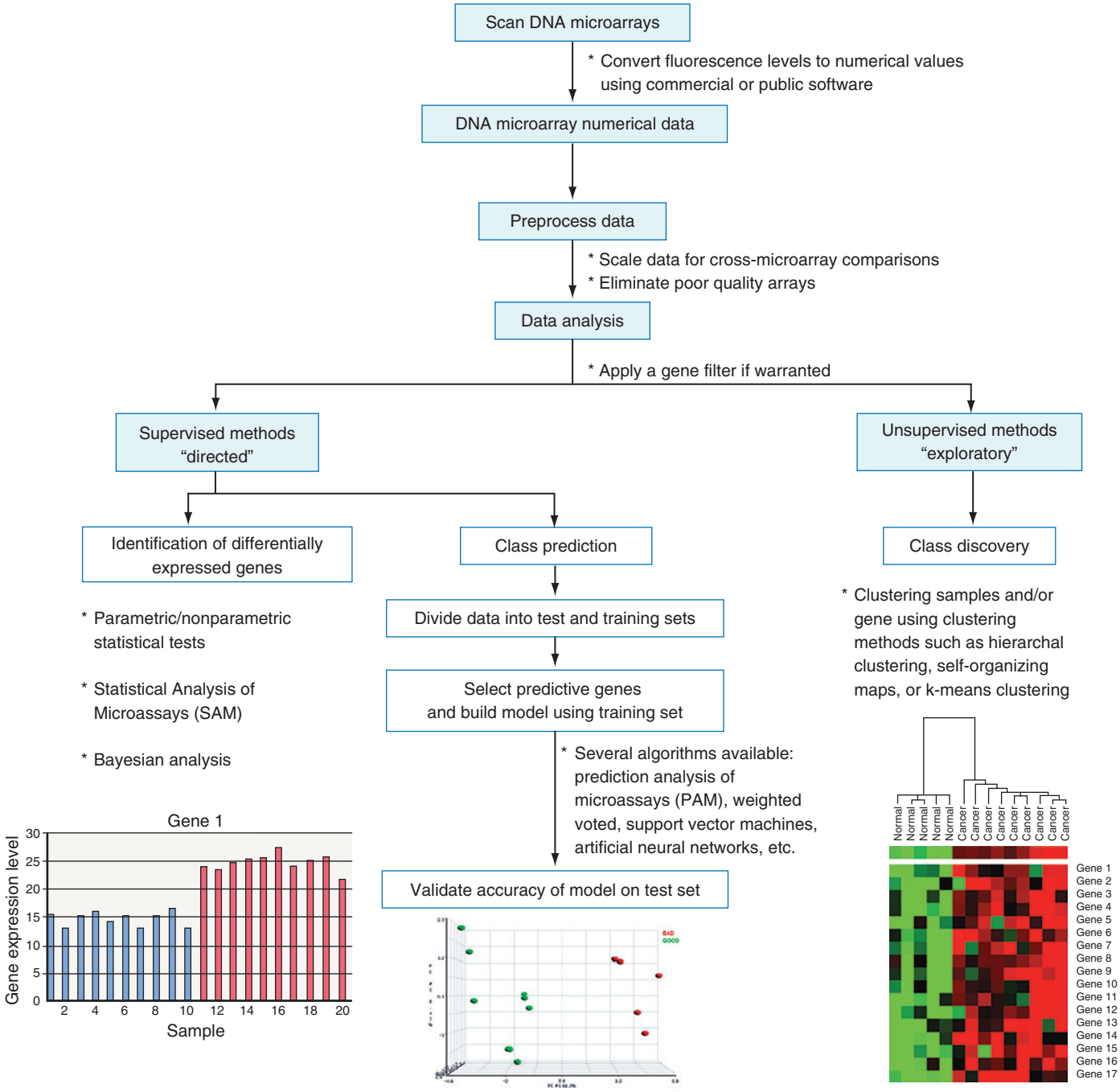


Figure 78-3 Analysis of DNA microarray data. The schematic diagram outlines the various steps required in the analysis of DNA microarray data. Image files are converted to numeric values; normalized, poor-quality arrays are removed from the analysis; and genes that are not accurately detected by the array and genes that show little variation across samples are filtered out. Downstream computational and statistical analysis of the data can be divided into two categories: supervised and unsupervised methods. Supervised methods, such as *class prediction algorithms,* use predefined groups of samples to identify genes that can distinguish between groups and can accurately classify unknown samples. Unsupervised methods, also known as *class discovery methods,* try to find previously unknown classes, such as novel cancer subtypes, within a data set.

is selected from the gene of interest, and primers are designed to amplify this region in a PCR reaction. A known concentration of an 80- to 100-bp DNA oligonucleotide of the same length and sequence, except for a single point mutation (known as the *competitor*), is added to the PCR reaction for amplification with the gene of interest. The competitor and the gene of interest will be amplified with the same kinetics because their sequences are almost identical; as a result, the concentration of the gene of interest can be calculated on the basis of the amount of competitor present in the PCR reaction. A series of PCR reactions are performed with different concentrations of the oligonucleotide competitor to accurately titrate the final concentration of the candidate gene. Next, each PCR reaction is subjected to a base extension reaction. A short base extension primer (approximately 23 nucleotides long) is designed to anneal to both 80-bp amplified PCR products adjacent to the site of the single point mutation. A base extension reaction is then carried out with three dideoxydinucleotide-triphosphates and one deoxynucleotide-triphosphate to produce two extension products that differ in their terminal nucleotide. As a result of this one-nucleotide difference, MALDI-TOF-MS is able to identify and quantify the two products on the basis of their different molecular weights. The throughput of the assay can be increased by a technique known as *multiplexing*, whereby several genes are quantified in a single PCR and primer extension reaction using unique primers, competitors, and extension oligonucleotides for each gene.

This system, initially developed for high-throughput genotyping, was adapted for gene-expression analysis in 2003 (Ding & Cantor, 2003) and was marketed by a California-based company (Sequenom, Inc., San Diego);

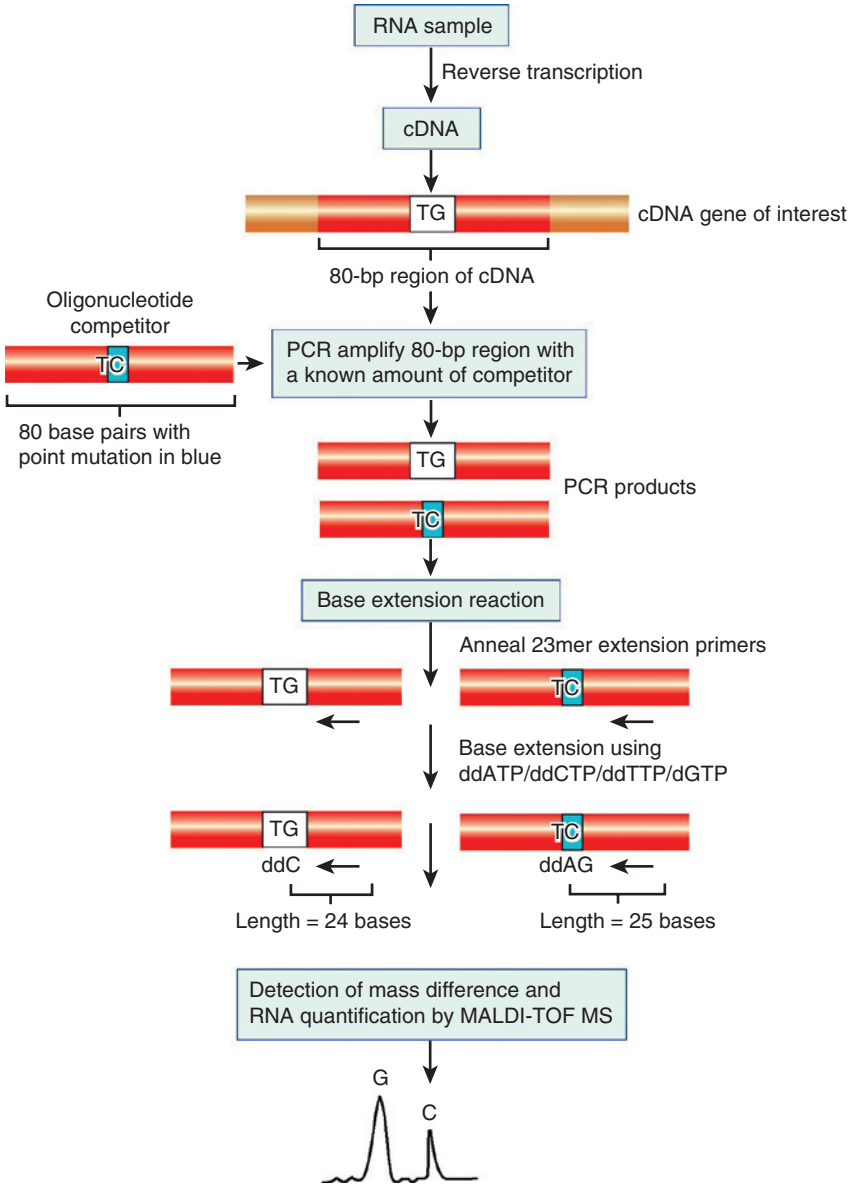


Figure 78-4 Real competitive polymerase chain reaction (PCR) coupled with matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectroscopy (MALDI-TOF-MS) is a technique used to measure the transcript abundance of a gene in a sample of interest. RNA is isolated, complementary DNA (cDNA) is synthesized from a sample, and a region (≈80 bp) of the gene of interest is selected for PCR amplification. A known concentration of an oligonucleotide competitor of the same length and sequence except for a single point mutation is added to the PCR reaction for amplification. A short base extension primer (≈23 bp) is designed to anneal to both amplified products adjacent to the site of the single point mutation. A base extension reaction is then carried out with three dideoxydinucleotide-triphosphates (ddNTPs) and one deoxynucleotide-triphosphate (dNTP) to produce two extension products that differ in their length by one base. As a result of this difference of one nucleotide, MALDI-TOF-MS is able to identify and quantify the two products on the basis of their different molecular weights. (Adapted with permission from Ding C, Cantor CR: A high-throughput gene expression analysis technique using competitive PCR and matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight MS, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100:3059–3064, 2003.)

thus public data and analysis resources are in the process of development. Applications of the technique include measurement of expression levels for three genes in RNA isolated from buccal mucosal cells obtained from smokers versus nonsmokers (Spira et al, 2004), measurement of allele-specific expression of *ABCD1*, a gene involved in X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy (Ding et al, 2004), as well as for the detection of infectious diseases (Arbefeville et al, 2014; McIver et al, 2014). Variations of this methodology, such as phage display-mediated immunopolymerase chain reaction (PD-IPCR) and competitive quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction (cqPCR) have also been applied to the food industry to detect toxins (Liu et al, 2014) and allergens (Holzhauser et al, 2014), respectively.

The three genomic high-throughput technologies highlighted previously use very different techniques to measure the abundance of gene transcripts; each technique has a unique set of advantages and disadvantages. A brief overview comparing the three different platforms can be found in Table 78-1. The major limitation of SAGE is that it requires many laborious PCR and sequencing reactions per sample and thus is high-throughput in terms of genes, not samples. Another drawback of SAGE is that it requires a large amount of starting RNA. However, as noted earlier, several modifications have been made to the protocol, and a new technique known as microSAGE requires only 1 to 5 ng of poly(A+) RNA (Datson, 2008). Advantages of the technology include that it is not based on prior sequence information, and that it is capable of discovering novel transcripts. The output from SAGE consists of sequence data that allow direct transcript identification with the use of public sequence databases.

DNA microarrays, on the other hand, are higher-throughput than SAGE in terms of genes and samples. DNA microarrays are practical for studies assaying clinical samples for which high throughput of samples is required and only small amounts of starting RNA can be obtained. The gene-expression levels obtained from DNA microarrays are only relative transcript levels (in contrast to absolute levels with SAGE) that are

TABLE 78-1
Comparison of High-Throughput Genomic Technologies

	SAGE	DNA Microarray	Real Competitive PCR
Equipment needed	Sequencer	Arrayer (cDNA only), array scanner	Nanodispenser, MALDI-TOF-MS
Throughput			
Genes	Medium, ≈2000-20,000 tags/day, depending on sequencer	Highest, ≈40,000/array	Medium, ≈100/day
Samples	Low, ≈1/week	Medium, ≈10-20/day	High, ≈100/day
Cost	$1500-$2500/sample if between 50,000 and 100,000 tags are sequenced	$500-$1000/chip	$1-$2/gene/sample
Amount of starting material required	500-1000 µg total RNA/sample	1-15 µg total RNA/sample, as little as 10-100 ng total RNA/sample can be used with a modified protocol	5 ng total RNA/gene/sample
Gene sequences need to be known a priori	No	Yes	Yes
Absolute gene quantification	Yes	No	Yes

cDNA, Complementary DNA; *MALDI-TOF-MS,* matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectroscopy; *PCR,* polymerase chain reaction; *SAGE,* serial analysis of gene expression.

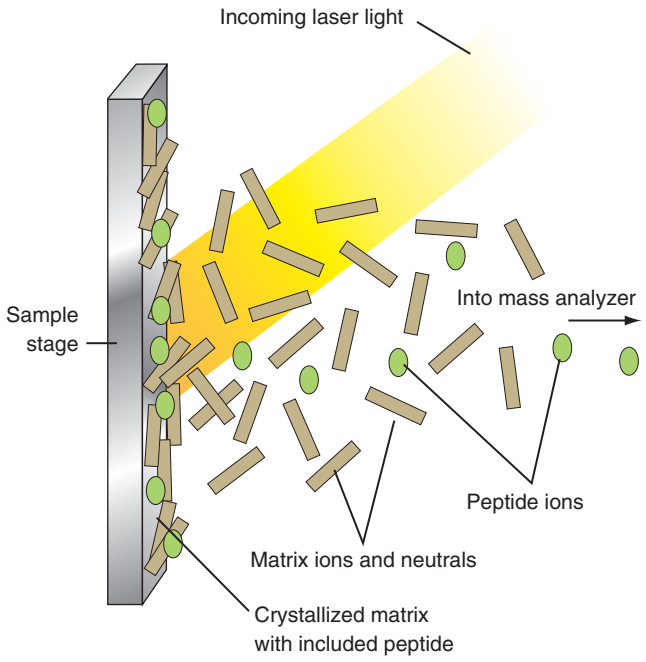


Figure 78-5 Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectroscopy (MALDI-TOF-MS). A laser pulse provides energy for the matrix solution to ionize peptides and oligonucleotides, which travel downstream to the mass analyzer. (Redrawn from Kintner M, Sherman NE: *Protein sequencing and identification using tandem mass spectrometry,* New York, 2000, John Wiley & Sons.)

dependent on probe selection, consequently making cross-platform comparisons difficult.

Finally, with the use of real competitive PCR, it is difficult to assay several thousand genes, because each gene requires the design of specific primers for the PCR and base extension reactions. Once the assay has been designed, however, the technique can be high-throughput in terms of samples. As a result, real competitive PCR probably will not be used as a discovery platform in the way that SAGE and DNA microarrays are used; rather, it will serve as a validation tool and a potential clinical tool for assaying relatively small numbers of genes across large numbers of individual samples. Continuously evolving ultra high–throughput genomic technologies offered by various vendors (Illumina/Solexa, San Diego, Calif.; ABI/SOLiD, Foster City, Calif.; 454/Roche, Branford, Conn.; and Helicos, Cambridge, Mass.) will likely be able to provide even greater throughput at reduced cost.

Multiplex PCR

Multiplex PCR (mpPCR) consists of multiple primer sets within a single PCR mixture to produce amplicons of differing sizes that specifically identify different DNA sequences. Primer sets are designed so that their annealing temperatures are optimized to work correctly within a single reaction. The resultant amplicons are different enough in size to form distinct bands when visualized by gel electrophoresis. By its original design, this assay is typically efficient for elucidating the presence and relative concentrations of from 2 to 20 distinct messages and is limited by the resolution capacity of electophoretic gel separation (for a review, see Bluth & Bluth, 2013).

xTAG Technology

xTAG technology (Luminex Corp, Austin, Tex.) is a next-generation form of multiplexing that overcomes the resolution limits of mpPCR by combining the methods of multiplex amplification with particle-based flow cytometry. Like mpPCR, multiple reactions can be carried out in a single reaction; however, because of the added flow component, many more tests can be run and resolved at the same time.

Using a viral panel as an example, after obtaining a biologic sample, the mRNA is reverse transcribed to cDNA. The cDNA is then amplified using a panel of primers that can specifically amplify many different pathologic/pathogenic nucleic acid sequences at the same time. Each pathogen-specific primer used is tagged with a unique oligonucleotide sequence (called the tag) as well as a fluorophore. After the multiplex amplification step is completed, the reaction is mixed with microscopic beads that are internally tagged with varying amounts of fluorescent molecules at the time of production. Each different type of bead is also labeled with a unique oligonucleotide sequence that is complementary to the unique tag on the pathogen-specific primer (called the *anti-tag*). If both the tag and the anti-tag are present, then hybridization occurs, binding the fluorophore-labeled amplicon to its appropriate fluorophore-labeled bead. The beads are then processed and placed in a special flow-enabled luminometer equipped with two lasers for reading. The first laser identifies the bead based on its internal dye content, and the second laser detects how much, if any, tagged amplicon is bound to its surface.

This technology allows for the resolution of 100 or more tests from one sample at one time in one tube. It is adaptable to perform tests on nucleic acids, peptides, and proteins in a variety of sample matrixes (for a review, see Bluth & Bluth, 2013).

High-Resolution Melting Analysis

High-resolution melting analysis (HRM) is a technique for fast, high-throughput post-PCR analysis of genetic mutations or variance in nucleic acid sequences. It enables researchers to detect and categorize genetic mutations rapidly (e.g., SNPs), identify new genetic variants without sequencing (gene scanning), or determine the genetic variation in a population (e.g., viral diversity) before sequencing.

The first step of the HRM protocol is the amplification of the region of interest, using standard PCR techniques, in the presence of a specialized

dsDNA binding dye (e.g., SYBR Green). This specialized dye is highly fluorescent when bound to dsDNA and poorly fluorescent in the unbound state. This change allows the user to monitor the DNA amplification during PCR (as in real-time or quantitative PCR). After completion of the PCR step, a high-resolution melt curve is produced by increasing the temperature of the PCR product, typically in increments of 0.008 to 0.2° C, thereby gradually denaturing an amplified DNA target. Because SYBR Green is only fluorescent when bound to dsDNA, fluorescence decreases as duplex DNA is denatured, which produces a characteristic melting profile; this is termed *melting analysis*. The melting profile depends on the length, GC content, sequence, and heterozygosity of the amplified target. When set up correctly, HRM is sensitive enough to allow the detection of a single base change between otherwise identical nucleotide sequences (for a review, see Bluth & Bluth, 2013).

PROTEOMIC

Current proteomic technology offers a variety of promising high-throughput approaches to the investigation of cellular biology. As one moves from the slowly changing, relatively static genome to RNA transcription, and ultimately to protein translation and additional downstream modifications, the information becomes increasingly more dynamic. An estimated 30,000 genes (Lander et al, 2001) are present in the human genome and are translated into more than 1 million proteins (Anderson & Anderson, 2002); the complexity of this system belies simple global analysis (Oh et al, 2004). Inability to amplify proteins often necessitates working with small quantities of biological samples. In addition, the range of protein concentrations, spanning several log units, can obscure signals of clinical utility.

Mass Spectrometry

Mass spectrometry (MS) is the tool used most often to investigate the protein composition of complex biological samples. (The principles of mass spectroscopy are discussed in Chapters 4 and 23, and the use of MS for detection of cancer-related proteins is discussed in Chapter 75.) Before the discoveries that made MS protein analysis feasible, protein identification depended on more labor-intensive techniques such as Edman sequencing or antibody-based assays. The major obstacle to high-throughput protein analysis using MS has been the technical difficulty of ionizing proteins. The innovations of John Fenn, working with electrospray ionization, and of Koichi Tanaka, who developed laser desorption ionization, opened the door to the field of proteomics. For their contributions to the field, both scientists shared half of the 2002 Nobel Prize in Chemistry. Electrospray ionization creates small, charged droplets of protein in solution. As the droplets move toward a vacuum chamber, the liquid evaporates, leaving behind a charged protein moiety. In laser desorption, a protein is placed in a chemical solution (called a *matrix*) in which high-energy electron beams are focused on the protein, resulting in its ionization. Once ionized, the mass-to-charge (m/z) ratio can be determined by migration of the protein in an electrical field.

Additional analytic problems arise from the elaborate structure of proteins and from the sheer abundance seen in most biological samples. With its secondary, tertiary, and quaternary structures, as well as its posttranslational modifications, protein structure is much more complex and is less predictable than that of DNA or RNA. Advances in protein analysis have allowed more rapid identification; however, many of these methods are subject to variation because of the context in which the protein is found, in particular, its shape and the protein environment in which it is analyzed. Separation remains an important step in reducing complex biological specimens into more manageable samples. Most of proteomic experiments rely on separation of constituent proteins over a two-dimensional gel, a time- and labor-intensive method that slows the discovery process and requires relatively large amounts of starting sample. Other techniques used to improve the resolution of data include proteomic analysis of whole-cell lysate, usually separated by high-pressure liquid chromatography, and multidimensional liquid chromatography.

Although the quantity of a peptide in a sample can increase the amplitude of the m/z spike seen on MS, other factors such as propensity of a peptide to ionize or surrounding ions at the time of measurement can also affect amplitude, making it difficult to comparatively quantify similar samples from different experimental conditions. The use of isotope-coded affinity tags allows quantitative comparison of samples. The tag consists of a biotin marker and a link, which contains eight hydrogens or eight deuteriums. To compare the amount of a single protein present in two different samples, one would label one sample with a light marker, the other with a heavy marker. This is done before MS analysis is performed, which would then show a series of paired peaks for individual peptide fragments, with heavy tag samples having an m/z 8 units greater than light tag samples. One can then compare the relative amplitude of the two samples.

Multidimensional protein identification technology allows identification of proteins in a digested sample. Protein fragments are introduced through high-pressure liquid chromatography into a tandem mass spectrometer. The m/z ratio for each peptide is measured in the first MS chamber, after which the peptide is fragmented. By comparing the relative weights of these fragments, one can determine the amino acid responsible for the change, in effect, sequencing the peptide. Measured peptide sequences are then matched to predicted fragments of known proteins, generating the identity of a large number of proteins from a complex biological sample.

Protein Arrays

Tissue microarrays produce a compact arrangement of sections from frozen or paraffin-embedded tissue, combining samples onto a single platform. Before the sampling advances described by Kononen and colleagues in 1998, the number of sections that could be arranged in parallel limited the simultaneous investigation of multiple tissue sections. Currently, a tissue microarray can hold up to 1000 samples, which can be tagged and labeled via in situ hybridization or immunohistochemical assay (Kononen et al, 1998; Russo et al, 2003). Such large-scale parallel inquiry may provide a more rapid means of answering questions about the biological mechanisms involved in progression from normal tissue to neoplasia (Kononen et al, 1998), or the pathways related to variable prognoses among tumors of similar histology (Bubendorf et al, 1999), providing a ready means of validating results from other genomic or proteomic experiments (Chen et al, 2003), as well as tumor classification (Djidja et al, 2010).

Paweletz and colleagues pioneered the development of reverse-phase protein microarrays. Rather than spotting small sections of tissue, these slides hold arrays of whole-cell lysate from a specific cellular portion of tissue (Paweletz et al, 2001). Under the microscope, scientists can "hand pick" those cells of interest, capturing them with a small, focused laser that binds cells to an overlying transfer film.

In contrast to arrays containing tissue or cells of interest, other arrays can hold material designed to bind proteins from a sample applied to the surface of the array. Antibodies, DNA, RNA, and ribosomes—any substance with an affinity for a protein—can be used as a probe on the surface of the array. Manufacturing of these slides uses spotting technology similar to that described for oligonucleotide arrays (see earlier in the chapter).

Secretome

A subset of the proteome includes the secretome characterized as proteins that are secreted externally by the cells (Mukherjee & Mani, 2013). Such secretory proteins are important for maintaining cell-cell communication and proliferation. Secretory proteins include growth factors, enzymes, and hormones, as well as stimulating and inhibiting growth factors, among others. They often operate in a transmembrane manner, where amino and carboxyl termini facilitate key signals and enzyme/cleavage instructions via the endoplasmic reticulum and golgi apparatus. Various methods have been employed to assess the secretome including but not limited to microarray, mass spectrometry, nucleic acid sequencing, SAGE, as well as antibody- and bead-based arrays (Mukherjee & Mani, 2013). Understanding of the human secretome has demonstrated promise toward the identification of novel biomarkers in malignancy, including lung, breast, and colorectal carcinoma (Schaaij-Visser et al, 2013), as well as facilitating a better understanding of stem cell regeneration for application to cardiovascular, neurodegenerative, and genitourinary diseases (Tran & Damaser, 2015).

MOLECULAR MARKERS FOR THE DIAGNOSIS OF HUMAN NEOPLASIA

GENOMIC

One clinically relevant application of genomic high-throughput technologies is the identification of diagnostic molecular markers for human diseases such as cancer. Histologic analysis complemented by immunohistochemistry, electron microscopy, and molecular analysis of chromosomal abnormalities is frequently used to classify cancers. Definitive diagnoses can be difficult to determine but are important because they often influence patient treatment, response, and prognosis. The first paper to use DNA microarrays in clinical samples to develop gene-expression profiles

for cancer classification was published in 1999 by Golub and colleagues (Golub et al, 1999). Since that time, DNA microarrays have been used extensively across a wide range of malignant and normal tissue specimens in an attempt to develop diagnostic and prognostic tests.

As mentioned in Chapter 76, a pioneering study has been performed using DNA microarrays to distinguish acute myeloid leukemia (AML) from acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL). In this study, Affymetrix GeneChips containing approximately 6800 human genes were employed to measure gene expression of bone marrow mononuclear cells obtained from patients with either of these diseases (Golub et al, 1999). In this study, the choice of acute leukemia, a hematologic malignancy, was important for several reasons. Previous DNA microarray experiments had obtained reproducible results on cell lines; however, clinical specimens introduce additional noise that may obscure differences. Mononuclear cells reduce noise because they are a relatively homogeneous cancer cell population, in contrast to biopsies of solid tumors that exhibit varying quantities of surrounding stromal cells. In addition, distinction between acute leukemia subtypes is difficult with existing techniques, and the discovery of additional molecular markers would enhance the accuracy of diagnosis, ultimately influencing the choice of a therapeutic regimen.

To explore whether differences in gene expression could be detected between 27 ALL and 11 AML samples in this study, a method called *neighborhood analysis* was used. This method ranks genes whose expression patterns across patients are highly correlated with the class of the sample (ALL or AML). A gene that is expressed at high levels across all patients but at low levels in AML patients, for example, would be highly ranked. Significance, or how likely the correlation is by chance, was assessed by randomly assigning class labels to each of the samples and repeating the analysis. Approximately 1100 genes were significantly correlated with class labels, and the top 50 genes were subsequently used in a weighted-vote class prediction algorithm that predicts the class of unknown samples. Each of these 50 genes casts a vote indicating the class of the new sample. Each gene's "vote"—AML or ALL—was determined by calculating whether the expression value for the gene in the unknown sample was closer to the mean expression value for the gene across all or all AML patients. Votes were then weighted according to the strength of the correlation between gene-expression levels and class vector. The votes for each class were summed, and the unknown sample was assigned to the class with the larger total vote. An additional metric, known as *prediction strength*, can be calculated to determine the margin of victory. (For additional details, see Reich et al, 2004.) The accuracy of this prediction method was evaluated by "leave-one-out" cross-validation, wherein one of the 38 samples is withheld, the analysis is repeated, and the class of the left-out sample is predicted. Using this approach, this study found that 36 of the 38 samples were classified correctly, and 2 were classified as uncertain on cross-validation. The predictor was tested on an independent set of 34 additional samples and was correctly classified in 29 of the 34 samples. The committee of 50 genes contained known markers of lymphoid versus myeloid cell lineage, as well as genes related to carcinogenesis.

In addition to identifying markers capable of distinguishing AML and ALL, Golub and colleagues used an unsupervised clustering method known as *self-organizing maps (SOMs)* to evaluate whether the two subtypes of leukemia could be found within the gene-expression data without prior knowledge of the two leukemia classes. SOM group samples were divided into a user-defined number of clusters based on gene-expression pattern similarities. Two-cluster SOMs produced one cluster containing 24 of the 25 ALL samples and another cluster with 10 of the 13 AML samples. A four-cluster SOM was capable of distinguishing among T-lineage ALL, B-lineage ALL, and AML. The success of this initial experiment and its exciting implications, as well as improvements in DNA microarray technology, analysis, and availability, have resulted in an exponential increase in the number of clinical studies using microarrays. Additional information can be found in Chapter 76.

PROTEOMIC

In Chapter 75, an intriguing approach to the early detection of several different types of cancer based on patterns of protein expression, called *proteomics*, is discussed as showing great potential. This approach does not search for specific known proteins but rather searches for differences in patterns of protein expression (the identity of many of these proteins is unknown) based on the use of MS. We will discuss this approach further here to illustrate the power of high-throughput postgenomic methods in cancer detection. As noted, this approach does not identify the proteins involved but instead relies on the varying amplitudes of several different m/z ratios present across samples (Fig. 78-6). Given the more favorable prognosis seen with malignancies diagnosed at earlier stages, a great deal of interest has been expressed in using proteomic tools to search for diagnostic markers in readily available biological samples such as blood, urine, or saliva.

Patients with ovarian cancer frequently suffer a worse prognosis than those with other malignancies, in part because of the advanced stage of disease at diagnosis. In an attempt to develop a screening test for high-risk women, Liotta and colleagues used an MS-based platform to analyze serum samples of patients with ovarian cancer compared with controls and found that their model was able to distinguish between sera of women with and without ovarian cancer with a remarkably high degree of accuracy (Petricoin et al, 2002).

Their method utilizes SELDI-TOF-MS: surface-enhanced laser desorption ionization (SELDI) coupled with a mass spectrometer that measures the time of flight of ionized proteins from laser to detector. Serum samples are placed on a chip with embedded weak cations, which provide the "surface enhancement" of SELDI. Excess serum is washed off, and proteins bound to weak cations remain on the chip, where they are combined with a matrix solution and ionized when exposed to a laser.

Each serum sample results in approximately 15,000 m/z values of varying amplitude. The bioinformatic tools used to parse through such a complicated data set rely on class prediction based on a genetic algorithm. Class prediction involves a "training" set of known cancer and noncancer samples. The genetic algorithm selects a panel of m/z values and tests its ability to differentiate between cancer and control. The "genetics" of a genetic algorithm represents a biological analogy describing repeated mixing and matching of the most successful m/z values, allowing "survival of the fittest" values in successive generations of testing, ultimately producing the most discriminatory panels, which are then tested on a "masked" group of patients and controls (i.e., the condition of each patient is withheld before the test result is obtained).

Although the panel used in this study resulted in a test with 100% sensitivity and 95% specificity, validation in a more realistic clinical setting remains to be done. The idea of studying a group of markers in parallel would seem appropriate, given the complexity of tumor biology and its interaction with the host. The absence of protein identification with this technique constrains the test. It is not clear whether the values included represent participants in tumor biology shed into the bloodstream or nonspecific markers of inflammation. With 15,000 data points to choose from in each serum sample, the risk of overfitting any model so that it would have little clinical utility in a practical setting is significant. In addition, array-based assessments may not correlate with classical diagnostic approaches (immunohistochemistry) or with survival (Dahl Steffensen et al, 2010) and may differ depending on the choice of specimen interrogated (Sanchez-Carbayo, 2010).

DIAGNOSTIC CANCER APPLICATIONS

SMALL, ROUND BLUE CELL TUMORS

Another cancer that is difficult to accurately diagnose using a variety of histologic and specialized molecular analyses is small, round blue cell tumor (SRBT) of childhood (see Chapter 77), which includes neuroblastoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, and the Ewing family of tumors (EWS). Ewing's sarcomas are discussed in Chapter 77, where we noted that the most common characteristic finding is the t(11;22) translocation, which juxtaposes the *FLI1* and *EWSR1* genes, giving rise to chimeric *(EWSR1-FLI1)* mRNAs and protein.

Khan and colleagues were among the first to identify molecular markers predictive of SRBT subtypes (Khan et al, 2001). Predictive genes were chosen using artificial neural networks (ANNs), which are pattern-recognition computer programs modeled after the neural structure and behavior of the human brain. Similar to the human brain, ANNs are capable of learning from experience. A neuron can accept many inputs but has only one output, and, in an analogous manner, artificial neurons output a signal based on several inputs. ANNs consist of several connected artificial neurons that can recognize patterns in training data through optimization of several parameters (weights assigned to the links between neurons) to accurately predict the tumor type of unknown samples.

Khan and colleagues used a cDNA microarray containing 6567 genes to measure the gene expression of 63 samples, which included both tumor biopsies (13 EWS and 10 rhabdomyosarcoma) and cell lines (10 EWS, 10 rhabdomyosarcoma, 12 neuroblastoma, and 8 Burkitt lymphoma, a subset of non-Hodgkin lymphoma). Using a filtered set of 2308 genes, the 63 samples representing four SRBT diagnostic categories were used to train linear ANN models. A total of 96 probes corresponding to 93 genes were

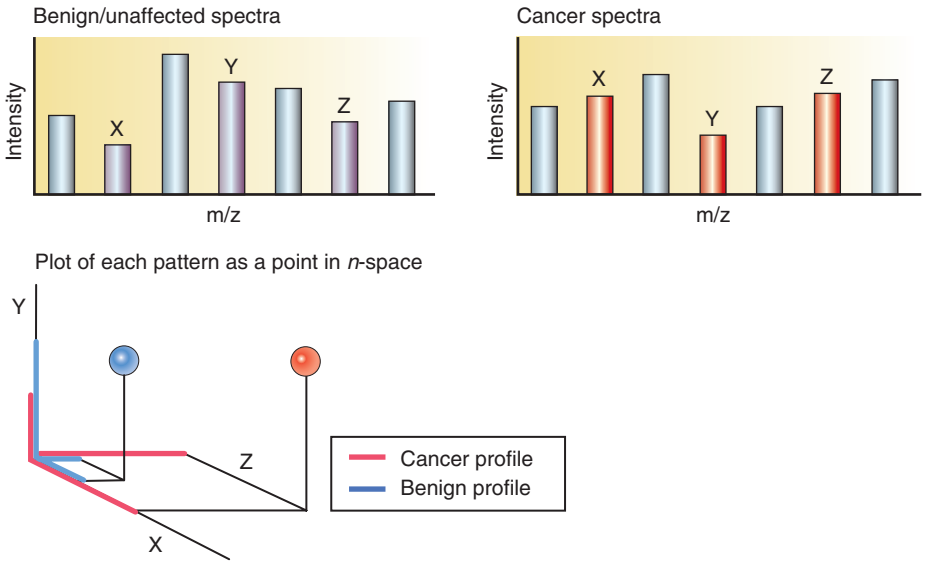


Figure 78-6 **Proteomic pattern diagnostics.** Pattern analysis identifies m/z ratios with the "most fit" combination of proteins for distinguishing between clinical states of interest. (Redrawn from Petricoin EF, Zoon KC, Kohn EC, et al: Clinical proteomics: translating benchside promise into bedside reality, *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 1:683–695, 2002.)

selected on the basis of ANN models because they minimized the misclassification error rate to 0%. The algorithm was validated on a test set of 25 samples that consisted of a mixture of cell lines, tumor biopsies, and five non-SRBTs. In all, 17 SRBT test samples were classified correctly, and the remaining three SRBTs, along with the five non-SRBTs, could not be assigned a subtype. It is interesting to note that even though only data from neuroblastoma cell lines were used in the training set, the model accurately predicted neuroblastoma tumor biopsy specimens in the test set. Results suggest that the use of cell lines may be beneficial in reducing noise created by stromal contamination of tumor specimens.

Many of the 96 predictive genes reported in the study just discussed were expressed at high levels in one, two, or three of the four diagnostic categories. One marker, MIC2, is currently used to diagnose EWS, although this is not so specific as the *(EWSR1-FLI1)* fusion genes and their products. Also, MIC2 was highly expressed in EWS and in some rhabdomyosarcomas, suggesting that the marker may lack specificity when used alone. Another molecular marker, FGFR4, a tyrosine kinase receptor related to myogenesis and upregulated only in rhabdomyosarcoma samples, was investigated by immunostaining across a variety of tissues. FGFR4 was found to be upregulated in some other cancers and normal tissues, providing clues to its potential biological importance, while reducing its potential as a specific molecular marker. This finding illustrates that a compendium of genes, instead of a single molecular marker, may increase diagnostic sensitivity and specificity. This complements the conclusions of Chapter 75 on oncoproteins in tumor diagnosis: arrays of oncoproteins are more effective than individual oncoproteins in early tumor detection.

BARRETT'S ESOPHAGUS

In addition to these studies, several other DNA microarray and SAGE experiments have been conducted to develop diagnostic tests for human cancers that are difficult to classify using conventional histologic methods. Barrett's esophagus, in which the lining of the esophagus is replaced with a metaplastic columnar lining, is a condition associated with gastroesophageal reflux disease that can lead to the development of squamous cell carcinoma or adenocarcinoma. Esophageal cancer is usually difficult to detect at an early stage and has a high mortality rate. Hierarchical clustering and ANNs were used to discover gene-expression profiles measured by cDNA microarrays that could distinguish between esophageal cancer and Barrett's metaplasia specimens (Selaru et al, 2002; Xu et al, 2002). The expression levels of a small subset of predictor genes were quantified with Taqman quantitative reverse-transcriptase (RT)-PCR (Applied Biosystems, Inc., Carlsbad, Calif.) in 39 patients with Barrett's metaplasia or esophageal cancer to assess their clinical usefulness (Brabender et al, 2004). Other studies have demonstrated the utility of micro-RNA expression in prognosticating patients with Barrett's esophagitis (Mathe et al, 2009). In those studies, miR-21, miR-223, miR-192, and miR-194 expression was elevated, whereas miR-203 expression was reduced, in cancerous compared with noncancerous tissue obtained from the same patient (tissue pairs), and reduced levels of miR-375 were strongly correlated with worse prognosis in Barrett's patients. Collectively, these studies illustrate the potential of array-based interrogation toward diagnostic and prognostic application.

THYROID CARCINOMA

In Chapter 77, we discuss the most common genetic lesions that have been found in thyroid carcinomas. About half of follicular thyroid carcinomas contain oncogenic *ras*, and many also express the *PAX8-PPARγ* fusion gene and its products. A high percentage of papillary thyroid carcinomas express mutant *BRAF* and *RET/PTC* gene rearrangements. Medullary thyroid carcinomas express mutant forms of *RET* (as opposed to fusion gene products).

Distinguishing Follicular Thyroid Carcinoma from Adenoma

New diagnostic molecular markers are needed to distinguish between follicular-patterned thyroid lesions as to whether they are benign or malignant. Papillary thyroid carcinoma is usually diagnosed with fine-needle aspiration (FNA) after detection of a thyroid nodule and can be further characterized by its expression of the markers noted previously and in Chapter 77; however, FNA cannot differentiate between follicular thyroid adenoma (FTA) and follicular thyroid carcinoma (FTC); a more invasive surgical biopsy is usually warranted. Cerutti and colleagues have attempted to develop a preoperative diagnostic test by constructing and analyzing three SAGE libraries using an FTA, an FTC, and a normal thyroid specimen (Cerutti et al, 2004). More than 360,000 tags were sequenced among the three libraries, and 305 genes were significantly differentially expressed between the three groups. A subset of these genes was chosen for validation with RT-PCR on independent samples that included 10 FTAs, 13 FTCs, and 8 patient-matched normal thyroid tissues. RT-PCR was performed on a subset of the 305 genes: 12 of the most highly expressed genes in FTC and 5 of the most highly expressed genes in FTA/normal thyroid were chosen for validation with RT-PCR. Four genes (*DDIT3*, *ARG2*, *ITM1*, and *C1orf24*) validated the SAGE results and were able to predict 19 of the 23 samples correctly on leave-one-out cross-validation. In addition, immunohistochemistry was performed on 32 FTA and 27 FTC paraffin-embedded tissues using antibodies against two of the four genes, *DDIT3* and *ARG2*. *DDIT3* and *ARG2* showed staining for FTCs and negative staining for ARG2 in most samples, suggesting that these markers might improve the preoperative diagnosis of thyroid nodules. Thus these four genes, in addition to expression of oncogenic *ras*, are promising for use in the diagnosis of FTC.

ADENOCARCINOMA

Histologic identification of the primary tumor site in patients presenting with metastatic adenocarcinoma can also be difficult. SAGE data sets suggest that primary and metastatic adenocarcinomas cluster together according to their site of origin. A variety of RNA quantification methods, including DNA microarrays and SAGE, as well as the literature, were used to select tumor- and site-specific molecular markers (Dennis et al, 2002). Buckhaults and colleagues analyzed a set of 11 SAGE libraries of ovarian, breast, pancreatic, and colon adenocarcinomas to select five genes that could discriminate among these carcinomas of different tissue origins (Buckhaults et al, 2003). A class prediction algorithm, known as a *two-dimensional gene-expression–based classification map*, was able to correctly classify tissue origin in 81% of 62 independent samples of ovarian, breast, pancreatic, and colorectal carcinomas based on RT-PCR data from the five genes. A related study, aimed at identifying molecular markers of metastasis in primary tumors, compared gene-expression profiles of unpaired primary adenocarcinomas and metastatic nodules from different individuals across a broad spectrum of tumor types. A total of 128 genes were identified whose expression patterns could distinguish primary from metastatic adenocarcinoma (Ramaswamy et al, 2003). Ramaswamy and colleagues demonstrated that a subset of the 128 genes was associated with metastasis in independent data sets from primary lung, breast, and prostate adenocarcinomas, as well as from medulloblastomas and large B-cell lymphomas. These findings challenge the hypothesis that metastatic potential arises in a few cells in the primary tumor, and suggest that the ability to metastasize is preexistent in the primary tumor. If this is correct, gene-expression patterns in primary tumors could potentially predict future risks for distant metastasis.

PANCREATIC CANCER

In Chapters 75 and 77, it was noted that more than 90% of pancreatic cancers express the oncogenic k-*ras* gene and its ras-p21 protein product. Other common genetic lesions include aberrant methylations of a series of genes, including *p16/CDKN2A*, *APC*, *TSLC/IGSF4*, *SOCS-1*, *cyclin D2*, *RASSF1A*, *WWOX*, *RUNX3*, *CDH13*, *DUSP6*, *HHIP*, and *SLC5A8*. In addition, mutations in *SMAD4*, *PI3K*, and *p53* genes have been found in these cancers.

Microarray, semiquantitative PCR, and SAGE methods have been further applied to identify differentially expressed genes in pancreatic cancer (Iacobuzio-Donahue et al, 2002; Hustinx et al, 2004; Watanabe et al, 2005). Such prostate stem cell antigens as mesothelin and osteopontin were identified as overexpressed in pancreatic carcinoma, the latter of which demonstrated a sensitivity of 80% and a specificity of 97% for pancreatic cancer (Koopmann et al, 2004). Nonogaki and colleagues developed a three-dimensional microarray technology to assess RNA from endoscopic ultrasound-guided FNA (EUS-FNA) samples obtained from patients with pancreatic cancer (Nonogaki et al, 2010). They found that CDK2A, CD44, S100A4, and MUC1 were differentially expressed between cancer and noncancer groups subsequent to two orders of hierarchical clustering analysis. Furthermore, cDNA microarray analysis identified that the secreted protein acidic and rich in cysteine *(SPARC)* gene (also known as *osteonectin*, or *BM-40*) and its ligand *(SPARCL1)* are overexpressed in pancreatic cancer tissues, but not in their noncancerous counterparts (Jinawath et al, 2004). Specific SPARC protein antigens are now being evaluated as candidates for immunotherapy for pancreatic and other cancers (Inoue et al, 2010). These genes may therefore be important in the diagnosis of pancreatic carcinoma.

OTHER CANCERS

High-throughput genomic technologies have been used to aid in disease diagnosis and identification of novel disease subtypes in a variety of other diseases, including bladder carcinoma (Dyrskjot et al, 2003) (see Chapter 75), central nervous system embryonal tumor (Pomeroy et al, 2002), ovarian cancer (Sawiris et al, 2002; Tinelli et al, 2009), breast cancer (Perou et al, 2000; Porter et al, 2001, 2003a; Vera-Ramirez et al, 2010), lung cancer (Bhattacharjee et al, 2001; Ocak et al, 2009), hepatocellular carcinoma (Zender et al, 2010), and colorectal cancer (Buckhaults et al, 2001). The use of high-throughput genomic technologies to develop disease diagnostics is an inherently difficult problem because predictive genes identified by a training set are based on histopathologic diagnoses. The histologic methods used for classification of certain cancers, however, may be imperfect, making it difficult to assess the true accuracy of the molecular markers. In addition, it is difficult to verify the existence of novel disease subtypes found in DNA microarray experiments if no complementary histologic evidence is available. In the future, pathologists probably will use high-throughput genomic technology to facilitate accurate diagnosis in difficult cases. A majority of studies using genomic high-throughput methods have chosen, therefore, to focus on identifying gene-expression profiles predictive of disease prognosis, given the limited number of histologic or clinical indicators of disease outcome (see later in the chapter).

Application of proteomics in the search for a clinically useful biomarker has been reported in patients with breast (Kuerer et al, 2002), prostate (Ornstein et al, 2004), colorectal (Zhou et al, 2010), and lung cancers (Chen et al, 2003), among others (Djidja et al, 2010). When these techniques of detection and analysis are applied to prostate cancer, preliminary data from men with an indeterminate elevation of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) suggest that an *ion signature* is present (see Chapter 75) that distinguishes between men with prostate cancer and those with benign prostatic hyperplasia with 100% sensitivity and 67% specificity (Ornstein et al, 2004).

Because the serum represents a particularly complicated specimen for two-dimensional polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (2D-PAGE)–based proteomic analysis, other specimens in proximity to the tissue in question may be more readily available and simpler to work with. Nipple aspirate fluid is easily obtained and, in the case of unilateral disease, allows for a simple paired sample from the unaffected breast. Kuerer and colleagues used 2D-PAGE in an initial descriptive study comparing protein expression in the nipple aspirate from both breasts in patients with unilateral breast cancer and a healthy volunteer (Kuerer et al, 2002). Their results showed highly concordant protein electrophoresis patterns when nipple aspirate fluid was compared from each breast in the control subject, as opposed to samples obtained from patients with breast cancer, which exhibited a larger number of proteins unique to the affected breast compared with the unaffected breast in the same patient. This finding suggests that localized breast malignancy significantly alters protein expression in nipple aspirate fluid, raising the possibility of a diagnostic marker pattern.

PROGNOSTIC MOLECULAR MARKERS OF DISEASE

GENOMIC

Patients diagnosed with the same type of cancer and treated using similar protocols often respond differently and have varying survival rates. Several clinical and histologic variables such as age, serum protein levels, and stage or grade of tumor can be used to assess a patient's prognosis with variable accuracy. Many studies have utilized genomic high-throughput technologies, especially DNA microarrays, as described at length in Chapter 68, to identify gene-expression signatures that predict patient survival or relapse rates. Instead of comparing two different disease states, as detailed earlier in the technologies section, the experimental design for the development of molecular prognostic indicators usually attempts to stratify a particular cancer into subtypes according to outcome, using unsupervised or supervised computational approaches (see Fig. 78-3). The marker associated with poor prognosis may provide clues about the biological mechanisms underlying resistance to chemotherapeutics and may aid in the identification of new drug targets.

Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma (see also Chapter 76)

Identifying molecular markers that predict patient survival involves distinguishing subtle differences between specimens; as previously noted in the technologies section, many studies have been conducted on hematologic malignancies in which a homogeneous population of cells can be isolated easily. Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), the most common adult lymphoid neoplasm, accounts for 30% to 40% of all non-Hodgkin lymphomas. DLBCLs commonly contain *BCL6* gene fusions, as discussed in Chapter 76. Response to chemotherapy is highly variable, and less than half of treated patients achieve long-term remission. Currently, the International Prognostic Index (IPI) is used to approximate the outcome of patients diagnosed with DLBCL based on several clinical factors such as serum lactate dehydrogenase and stage.

As noted in Chapter 76, a paradigm shift has occurred in the classification of DLBCLs based on the use of gene arrays. Here we discuss this approach further. Alizadeh and colleagues constructed a specialized cDNA microarray, known as the *lymphochip*, which included 17,856 probes chosen from germinal center B-cells, DLBCLs, and other lymphoma cDNA libraries (Alizadeh et al, 2000). In all, 128 lymphochips were used to assay 96 normal and malignant samples from leukemia and lymphoma cell lines and from patients with DLBCL, follicular lymphoma, and chronic

lymphocytic leukemia. Hierarchical clustering of the microarrays revealed three subgroups of DLBCL samples based on genes related to proliferation: T cells, lymph node biology, and germinal center B cells. DLBCLs are thought to arise at different stages of B-cell differentiation, and hierarchical clustering of just DLBCL samples across the genes related to germinal center B cells separated the sample into two distinct clusters: germinal center B cell–like DLBCLs and activated B cell–like DLBCLs, as discussed in Chapter 76. The two subtypes were shown to have statistically different overall survival (72% of germinal cell B cell–like DLBCL subjects were alive after 5 years in comparison with 16% of activated B cell–like DLBCL subjects), and the two classes could be used to further stratify patients identified as low risk by the IPI. This study was one of the first to relate tumor subtypes identified by global gene-expression profiling to patient outcome. Use of the DNA microarray in diagnosing this condition and further subtyping it into the germinal center B cell–like group and the activated B cell–like group is discussed in Chapter 76.

A follow-up study by Shipp and colleagues tested whether a gene-expression profile could be identified, without prior discovery of subtypes, which predicted survival in DLBCL patients (Shipp et al, 2002). Affymetrix HuGeneFL microarrays containing approximately 6800 probes were used to measure global gene-expression profiles across 58 patients with DLBCL (32 patients with cured disease, 26 patients with refractory/fatal disease). The weighted vote class prediction algorithm with cross-validation was used to identify a gene-expression signature of 13 genes capable of distinguishing between patients with cured disease and those with fatal disease. The prediction model was also able to stratify patients into good and poor prognosis groups within categories defined by the IPI. As additional validation, results of the current study were compared with previous findings reported by Alizadeh's group. The studies used microarray platforms that interrogated two different but overlapping sets of genes. Genes used to distinguish the two subtypes of DLBCL in the Alizadeh study that were also present on the HuGeneFL microarray separated the 58 DLBCLs into two groups, but the groups did not correlate with overall survival rates. However, of 13 predictive genes identified by Shipp and colleagues, 3 were present on the lymphochip and correlated with survival across patients in the Alizadeh study.

In a related study, Rosenwald and colleagues used the lymphochip to study 240 patients with untreated DLBCL who subsequently received anthracycline-based chemotherapy (Rosenwald et al, 2002). Using a training set of 160 samples, gene-expression levels were correlated with survival times using the Cox proportional hazards model. A total of 670 genes had expression patterns that were significantly correlated with prognosis, and these genes were clustered to identify sets of genes with similar expression patterns. Highly correlated genes were involved in similar biological processes, and four sets of correlated genes related to proliferation, major histocompatibility complex class II, lymph node biology, and germinal center B cells were used to develop a class prediction model. The gene-expression levels of genes within each set were averaged, and these composite values were used to build a multivariate prediction model. The model was capable of assigning each sample in the test set a score related to the risk for succumbing to the disease. Scores assigned by the model to the entire set of samples were stratified into quartiles, with a 5-year survival of 73% in the first group compared with 15% in the fourth group.

Follicular Lymphoma

A similar survival prediction model was used to predict the prognosis of patients with follicular lymphoma, a cancer similarly arising from germinal-center B cells (Dave et al, 2004). Treatment may involve chemotherapy, immunologic therapy, or hematopoietic stem cell transplantation; however, no consensus has been reached as to which regimen is superior, and outcome is highly variable. Tumor biopsies from 191 patients with follicular lymphoma were divided into training and test sets. With use of the Cox proportional hazards model to correlate genes with survival, two highly correlated sets of genes were chosen to build a multivariate predictive model. The set associated with a favorable prognosis contained genes highly expressed in T-cells and macrophages, whereas the set associated with poor prognosis contained genes expressed in macrophages and dendritic cells. In additional experiments on biopsy specimens separated into malignant and nonmalignant fractions, two sets of gene signatures culled from the initial 10-set gene signature patterns were highly predictive of survival. These findings support the notion that immune-related responses by way of gene signatures reflect biological characteristics that may predict length of survival.

The lymphoma studies already discussed demonstrate that microarrays may be successful in accurately predicting patient prognosis and may complement currently used methods such as the IPI. Results imply that biopsies obtained at the time of diagnosis can be used to predict prognosis and could influence treatment decisions. As noted earlier, however, disagreement between studies has resulted from several factors, including the DNA microarray platform used, patient population, differences in treatment regimens, sample size, the variable quality of long-term follow-up data, and choice of prediction methods (see the "Pitfalls of Molecular Markers for Both Prognostics and Diagnostics" section later in the chapter). The follicular lymphoma study also shows the importance of the tumor microenvironment—something that is not typically explored in DNA microarray studies.

Acute Myeloid Leukemia

In Chapter 76, patterns of oncogene expression in different phenotypes of AML that are currently used for therapeutic and prognostic purposes are discussed. Certain patterns of expression of these oncogenes suggest not only possible effective therapeutic regimens but also prognosis. For example, oncogenes found frequently in promyelocytic leukemia include the retinoic acid receptor-alpha (PML-RARα) fusion genes, whose presence suggests a favorable prognosis and indicates that treatment with all-*trans* retinoic acid (aTR) will be of therapeutic benefit. However, the presence of *RAR* fusion genes with other, non-PML genes, including *ZBTB16(PLZF)-RARA*, t(11;17)*/NUMA1-RARA*, t(5;17)*/NPM1-RARA*, and t(17;17)*STAT5B-RARA*, is a strong indicator that aTR will not be so effective, and that the prognosis is not favorable. In addition, core-binding domain fusion genes such as *RUNX1-RUNX1T1* and *CBFβ-MYH11* are expressed in other AMLs (such as myelomonocytic leukemia) and correlate with specific chromosomal abnormalities. The presence of these fusion genes suggests susceptibility of the tumor to high-dose cytarabine regimens and often indicates a favorable prognosis. On the other hand, the presence of the *FLT3* oncogene alone or together with these other fusion genes suggests a less-favorable prognosis, despite the suggested chemotherapeutic regimen. Additional aspects of gene mutations that affect therapeutic responses can be found in Chapter 73.

Overall, the presence of specific fusion genes in AML does not always reflect the molecular heterogeneity of the disease because the presence or absence of other fusion oncogenes or mutations in proto-oncogenes may not be detected, and other genes, not thus far identified, may also be involved in the cell transformation process. To attempt to identify which genes may be involved in cell transformation in AML and to detect patterns of gene expression in AML that correlate with prognosis and suggest effective therapies, several studies using gene-expression microarrays from patients with AML have been carried out. Despite potential problems with this type of approach, discussed in the preceding section, two studies published in the *New England Journal of Medicine* identified gene-expression profiles that can be used as prognostic indicators in AML (Bullinger et al, 2004; Valk et al, 2004).

Bullinger's group used cDNA microarrays (≈39,000 probes) to obtain global gene-expression profiles for 116 patients with AML, and Valk's group used Affymetrix human U133A microarrays (≈22,000 probes) to assay 285 patients with AML. Unsupervised hierarchical clustering in both studies revealed clusters that correlated with cytogenetic and molecular abnormalities present in the tumors. Using the Cox proportional hazards model implemented in SAM software (Tusher et al, 2001), Bullinger and colleagues identified gene-expression patterns that correlated with survival. K-means clustering was used to divide the training samples into two groups, representing good and bad outcomes, based on genes selected by SAM. The prediction analysis of microarrays (PAM) algorithm was used to develop an outcome predictor using 133 genes based on the two identified groups in the training set. PAM was applied to the test samples and was able to separate them into two groups that differed significantly in terms of survival times. In this study, it was found that expression of so-called "forkhead" genes such as the forkhead box *O1A* gene (*FOXO1A*, also known as *FKHR*) in AML is associated with a favorable prognosis. On the other hand, expression of such genes as *MAP7*, *GUCY1A3*, *TCF4*, and *MSI* prognosticates a less-favorable prognosis. Overexpression of genes involved in homeobox regulation such as *HOXB2*, *HOXB5*, *PBX3*, *HOXA*, and *HOXA10* has occurred in multiple different phenotypic AMLs, suggesting their importance in leukemogenesis. Expression of mutant or overexpressed *FLT3* was associated with a poor outcome, as discussed in Chapter 76 (Bullinger et al, 2004).

Valk's group used similar methods to identify genes that could classify samples into disease subgroups previously identified by clustering analysis. These subgroups were associated with cytogenetic and molecular abnormalities, as well as with patient prognosis (Valk et al, 2004). Both studies demonstrated the usefulness of global gene-expression analysis in dissecting the heterogeneity that exists within tumors of the same type. The high

degree of overlapping results between these two studies shows the potential that microarray technology has to distinguish between subtle tumor subtypes and to add prognostic information to current clinical practice.

Breast Cancer

Although similar prognostic biomarker studies have been carried out in prostate cancer (Dhanasekaran et al, 2001), lung adenocarcinoma (Beer et al, 2002), and multiple myeloma (Tian et al, 2003), identification of prognostic biomarkers in breast cancer best demonstrates how successful high-throughput genomic studies can translate into important clinical tools. In Chapter 77, we discuss how the use of gene arrays has been successful in enabling prognosis and treatment of different breast cancers. The most important markers for these purposes are estrogen receptor (ER), progesterone receptor (PR), the proliferation marker protein, Ki67, and the *HER2/neu* oncogene.

Additional prognostic molecular markers were identified from gene-expression studies using primary breast cancer biopsies from patients younger than 55 years of age with sporadic node-negative disease that did and did not develop metastases within 5 years. The predictive power of these molecular markers was deemed to be greater than that of other clinical and histologic factors such as tumor grade, size, angioinvasion, or ER status (van't Veer et al, 2002). Similar studies on breast cancer were subsequently conducted (van de Vijver et al, 2002; Huang et al, 2003; Sotiriou et al, 2003), and a recent paper describes the development of a predictive model that uses gene-expression, clinical, and histologic data to more accurately estimate prognosis (Pittman et al, 2004).

One bottleneck to performing DNA microarray studies is the dearth of snap-frozen tissues obtained from patients with long-term follow-up. Snap-freezing tissue preserves the integrity of the RNA and is ideal for DNA microarray experiments; however, most tissue banks and clinical trials have collected paraffin-embedded tissue. Paraffin-embedded tissue contains partially degraded RNA that usually is insufficient to allow high-quality DNA microarray results (although advances in this area are ongoing; Drury et al, 2010). Technologies such as real competitive PCR and real-time PCR are being used to measure gene-expression levels in these tissues, but the amount of RNA obtained from tissue blocks often limits assays to a few hundred genes. Using RT-PCR, Paik and colleagues studied 21 genes (16 cancer-related and 5 reference genes for normalization) chosen from the breast cancer DNA microarray studies outlined previously. Samples included 675 paraffin-embedded tissue blocks obtained from patients enrolled in the National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project B-14 trials (Paik et al, 2004). All tissue blocks were obtained from tamoxifen-treated patients who had node-negative, ER-positive primary breast cancer. Expression levels of the 16 cancer-related genes were used to calculate a score representing the risk for cancer recurrence at a distant site. Patients were stratified into low-, intermediate-, and high-risk groups based on the recurrence score. The recurrence score provided significant predictive information beyond tumor grade, age, and tumor size. The simplified 21-gene assay can be translated easily into a clinical prognostic test designed to help physicians decide which tamoxifen-treated, node-negative, ER-positive breast cancer patients should receive additional chemotherapy.

Prognostic molecular markers for breast cancer have been identified using SAGE technology. SAGE, unlike DNA microarrays, cannot be used to assay hundreds of clinical samples; however, it is not restricted to known genes, nor is it limited by the selection of probes on a microarray. SAGE is capable of identifying novel transcripts that have not been described previously, possibly because of their tissue-specific expression (an advantage in developing therapeutics). Two studies using SAGE libraries obtained from normal tissue, as well as from ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS), invasive, and metastatic breast tumors, were used to identify transcripts that changed between disease states (Porter et al, 2001, 2003a). Several DCIS or invasive/metastatic "specific" genes were assayed by mRNA in situ hybridization using 18 frozen DCIS and invasive breast cancer samples, and by immunohistochemistry using 769 DCIS, invasive, and metastatic breast tumor samples. S100A7, a member of the S100 family of calcium-binding proteins, was preferentially expressed in DCIS (with highest levels restricted to high-grade comedo DCIS) versus normal or invasive/metastatic tumors. Although S100A7 is expressed less strongly in invasive tumors, its levels are higher in ER-negative, poorly differentiated, lymph node–positive tumors, suggesting that its expression in DCIS may be a useful prognostic indicator. In a follow-up study, Porter and colleagues further characterized dermcidin, identified in previous studies as preferentially expressed in invasive and metastatic tumors. Dermcidin is a 110 amino acid–containing protein that is expressed mainly in sweat glands and the pons of the brain (Porter et al, 2003b) and is proteolyzed to a 47 amino acid–containing peptide. The marker was expressed in a subset of invasive tumors by immunohistochemistry, and its expression correlated with larger tumor size and the presence of metastatic lymph nodes. In a subset of cases, higher expression levels were attributable to gene amplification at the gene locus on chromosome 12. Dermcidin was shown to enhance cell growth and survival and may be a promising prognostic indicator of overall and distant metastatic-free survival.

INTEGRATING GENOMICS AND PROTEOMICS

The development of high-throughput technology allows one not only to look at how multiple genes or proteins might predict a clinical feature of interest, but also to study overlap in transcriptional activity and protein translation. Chen and colleagues looked at the ability of genetic profiling and protein translation in lung adenocarcinoma to predict survival (Chen et al, 2003). After filtering low-abundance genes, they found approximately 5000 genes consistently expressed across a cohort of 86 adenocarcinoma samples and 10 normal tissue samples. Hierarchical clustering and leave-one-out cross-validation generated a list of the 50 genes that were most effective in dividing patients into high- and low-risk groups for mortality over several years of follow-up. Of particular interest was the observation that stage I patients, those most likely to experience a surgical cure of their disease, could also be divided into high- and low-risk groups, potentially identifying a novel group that would benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy.

A total of 76 tumor samples underwent both microarray and proteomic analysis. In the examples of genes found along with their corresponding protein products, correlation peaked at 0.39. Although statistically significant, the low degree of correlation underlines the point that the oversimplified model of transcription and translation is in reality a much more elaborate system of translational regulation, glycosylation, phosphorylation, and additional downstream modifications. As the authors conclude, many of the transcripts probably do not correlate well with their protein counterparts as a result of this continued posttranslational development. Extension of their investigation to include genomics and proteomics uncovered a significant cohort of genes and proteins involved in the glycolytic pathway and upregulated among patients with a high risk for mortality, suggesting that this integration of genomics and proteomics has particular value in shedding light on the molecular pathogenesis of disease states.

PITFALLS OF MOLECULAR MARKERS FOR BOTH PROGNOSTICS AND DIAGNOSTICS

MICROARRAY DATA SETS

Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma studies conducted by Alizadeh and Shipp (2000) identified subsets of genes that specified two subtypes of DLBCL patients who differed in terms of survival. Shipp and colleagues also identified two subtypes of DLBCL patients; however, these types did not correlate with survival. The example presented earlier illustrates one of many DNA microarray studies in which little or no overlap of results is evident. Several potential causes seen in the experimental design and analysis of DNA microarray results may account for the widespread discrepancies (Simon et al, 2003). Two different studies performed using similar tissue samples may involve slightly different patient populations and sample sizes. Tissue heterogeneity is also a problem. Biopsies obtained from different locations have varying numbers of normal cells contaminating the tumor samples. Additionally, no "standard" is used for preprocessing and analyzing microarray data. New computational approaches are continually emerging, and two groups analyzing the same data set will often produce disparate gene lists. Finally, methods used to compare data sets generated using different DNA microarray platforms are currently being developed, and similar studies with nonoverlapping results may have employed inadequate methods of comparison.

"OVERFITTING" THE PREDICTOR

Traditionally, clinical studies aim to associate a handful of variables across several hundred patients, whereas DNA microarray studies contain thousands of variables (gene-expression levels) across relatively small numbers of patients (typically, 20 to 200 patients). Many class prediction algorithms yield accurate results for samples in the study from which they were derived, but when they are applied to an independent patient sample, performance drops significantly—a phenomenon known as *overfitting* (Ransohoff, 2004). Results of DNA microarray studies therefore are most robust when the data are divided into a training set and a test or validation

set (Ntzani & Ioannidis, 2003). In addition to the need for independent sample validation, it is important for investigators to validate gene-expression levels using different technology. To realize the true promise of these technologies, it is critical to develop methods that combine several gene-expression studies to identify markers that are consistently correlated with disease class or outcome, and then to validate these markers using different technology and a different cohort of patients.

THE "BYSTANDER" EFFECT

Miklos and Maleszka compared DNA microarray studies measuring prefrontal cortex gene expression in patients with and without schizophrenia versus nonmicroarray studies that included genetic, RNA, and protein measurements obtained through a variety of approaches (Miklos & Maleszka, 2004). Little overlap was noted between DNA microarray and nonmicroarray experiments. One reason for this may be that genes identified using DNA microarray studies are "bystander," that is, not involved in the pathogenesis of the disease state. Genes identified by genetic linkage studies are usually causally related to a disease; however, expression levels of these genes may remain constant because the genetic alteration affects only mRNA splicing or posttranscriptional regulation. Also, DNA microarray technologies may not be sensitive enough to accurately measure gene-expression changes in genes expressed at low levels.

Despite the suggested cautions, DNA microarray studies in the recent literature have begun to explore the biological significance and therapeutic potential of promising genes in greater depth using in vitro and in vivo models. For example, using DNA microarrays, Tian and colleagues (2003) identified a gene, *DKK1*, which was differentially expressed in multiple myeloma patients with and without focal bone lesions. Patients with bone lesions expressed higher levels of *DKK1* RNA and protein. *DKK1* is involved in bone formation through the Wnt signaling pathway, and marrow plasma from patients with bone lesions was shown to block osteoblast differentiation in vitro, indicating a causal role in disease progression and a potential therapeutic target. Another study, using cDNA microarrays to study liver samples from patients with hepatitis B–positive hepatocellular carcinomas with and without intrahepatic metastases, found that paired primary and metastatic tumors had similar gene-expression patterns (Ye et al, 2003). Many differentially expressed genes, however, were identified between primary carcinomas that did and did not metastasize. Osteopontin, a glycoslyated phosphoprotein that acts as a cytokine, was overexpressed in primary tumors with metastasis. Additional experimental studies showed that cellular invasiveness was reduced in hepatoma-derived cell lines treated with neutralizing osteopontin antibody. In addition, nude mice injected with hepatocellular carcinoma cells had a reduced incidence of metastasis when treated with osteopontin-specific antibody.

LIMITATIONS OF PROTEOMIC TECHNIQUES

Proteomic studies suffer from problems similar to those outlined previously for DNA microarrays, including tissue heterogeneity, overfitting of predictive models, and identification of causative disease proteins. Specific criticism of proteomic techniques for the diagnosis of cancer focuses largely on the SELDI-TOF-MS technique. Diamandis (2004a, 2004b), the most widely published critic of this approach, has outlined several shortcomings of the technology. Although several papers have published impressive diagnostic yields using a panel of mass spectra, or "ion signatures," few positive identifications of proteins responsible for those peaks have occurred. Some of the proteins identified have been studied previously as tumor markers but were dismissed as acute phase reactants. The absence of more positive protein identification limits the interpretation of published results, which potentially record differences attributable to something other than the underlying cancer, such as generalized inflammation.

The narrow dynamic detection range of MS technology also limits proteomic studies. In the case of serum samples, minimal preprocessing generally occurs prior to MS analysis; this involves surface enhancement attained through incubation on a weakly cationic protein chip—a nonspecific process that would likely bind only to the most abundant proteins in the sample, failing to detect potentially informative low-abundance proteins. One would likely not expect the proteins shed from a malignancy such as prostate cancer to be the most abundant proteins in a serum sample. By some estimates, SELDI-TOF-MS could not detect proteins at less than 1 μg/dL—a concentration many times higher than that of most known tumor markers (Diamandis, 2003).

CONCLUSION AND FUTURE CHALLENGES

The recent completion of the Human Genome Project and advances within the biotechnology sector offer unprecedented opportunities for identification of biomarkers associated with cancer and other pathologies. Genome sequence data combined with high-throughput biomarker discovery will facilitate the correlation of genetic variation with disease diagnosis and biological outcomes. The emerging fields of functional genomics and functional proteomics offer the opportunity to translate these advances into a full comprehension of the pathophysiology of cancer and other complex multigenic diseases.

High-throughput genomic and proteomic technologies have the potential to transform clinical practice and are likely to lead to the supplementation or replacement of traditional diagnostic and prognostic biomarkers. Many of the studies detailed in this chapter have demonstrated the utility of gene-expression profiles for the classification of tumors into distinct, clinically relevant subtypes and for the prediction of clinical outcomes. In addition, emerging proteomics platforms have just begun to add another layer of molecular information to the study of human disease. These technologies should lead to a new era of individualized molecular medicine, whereby all patients will be treated on the basis of genetic changes in their tumors and their own genetic makeup, resulting in more effective and less toxic therapy.

These high-throughput platforms offer the promise of influencing the practice of medicine. However, a number of obstacles to widespread clinical implementation of these technologies remain. Genomic and proteomic biomarkers are an emerging class of laboratory tests that present special implementation challenges for the clinical laboratory, including analytic, bioinformatics, and bioethical issues. Considerable efforts are required to provide the necessary clinical laboratory infrastructure for standard high-throughput analyzers capable of detecting genomic and proteomic alterations within a variety of biological samples and within various high-performance computing and advanced data-management capabilities. Significant improvements in analytic tools are needed, as are efforts to standardize techniques, controls, and reference standards. The application of such information to medical diagnosis and treatment will require considerable changes in the training of physicians. The most pressing need, however, is for extensive independent validation of the profiles described in the previous sections using large, statistically powered data sets. Inclusion of genomic- and proteomic-based molecular profiling techniques into clinical trial protocols will be needed to realize the potential of this technology to improve diagnosis and to tailor treatment of human disease.

REFERENCES

Access the complete reference list online at ExpertConsult.com.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Alizadeh AA, Eisen MB, Davis RE, et al: Distinct types of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma identified by gene expression profiling, *Nature* 403:503–511, 2000.

This study analyzed diffuse large B-cell lymphoma patient samples using DNA microarrays and was one of the first to relate tumor subtypes identified by global gene-expression profiling to patient outcome.

Bluth MJ, Bluth MH: Molecular pathology techniques, *Clin Lab Med* 33:753–772, 2013.

This is a comprehensive review of commonly utilized molecular pathology techniques employed in the clinical laboratory for elucidating disease pathophysiology in addition to diagnosis, prognosis, and therapeutic monitoring for patient management.

Chen G, Gharib TG, Wang H, et al: Protein profiles associated with survival in lung adenocarcinoma, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100:13537–13542, 2003.

This study analyzed resected lung tumors that underwent both DNA microarray and proteomic analysis, and reported that gene and protein expression levels were mostly poorly correlated. However, integration of the two techniques revealed components of the glycolysis pathway associated with poor patient survival.

Golub TR, Slonim DK, Tamayo P, et al: Molecular classification of cancer: class discovery and class prediction by gene expression monitoring, *Science* 286: 531–537, 1999.

This article describes the first use of DNA microarrays to assay the gene expression of thousands of genes in clinical samples (human acute leukemias) to identify new cancer classes and to predict the class of unknown samples.

Lander ES, Linton LM, Birren B, et al: Initial sequencing and analysis of the human genome, *Nature* 409:860–921, 2001.

A thorough presentation of the history of the human genome project, the method used by the public consortium, the quality of the draft sequence, and the biological insights revealed by initial analyses.

Petricoin EF, Ardekani AM, Hitt BA, et al: Use of proteomic patterns in serum to identify ovarian cancer, *Lancet* 359:572–577, 2002.

This article describes how a mass spectrometry–based platform is used to analyze proteins present in serum samples of patients with and without ovarian cancer to develop a model capable of accurately distinguishing between the two disease states.

REFERENCES

Arbefeville S, Levi MH, Ferrieri P: Development of a multiplex real-time PCR assay for the detection of Bordetella pertussis and Bordetella parapertussis in a single tube reaction, *J Microbiol Methods* 97:15–19, 2014.

Anderson NL, Anderson NG: The human plasma proteome: history, character, and diagnostic prospects, *Mol Cell Proteomics* 1:845–867, 2002.

Beer DG, Kardia SL, Huang CC, et al: Gene-expression profiles predict survival of patients with lung adenocarcinoma, *Nat Med* 8:816–824, 2002.

Bhattacharjee A, Richards WG, Staunton J, et al: Classification of human lung carcinomas by mRNA expression profiling reveals distinct adenocarcinoma subclasses, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 98:13790–13795, 2001.

Boon K, Osorio EC, Greenhut SF, et al: An anatomy of normal and malignant gene expression, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 99:11287–11292, 2002.

Brabender J, Marjoram P, Salonga D, et al: A multigene expression panel for the molecular diagnosis of Barrett's esophagus and Barrett's adenocarcinoma of the esophagus, *Oncogene* 23:4780–4788, 2004.

Brown MP, Grundy WN, Lin D, et al: Knowledge-based analysis of microarray gene expression data by using support vector machines, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 97:262–267, 2000.

Bubendorf L, Kolmer M, Kononen J, et al: Hormone therapy failure in human prostate cancer: analysis by complementary DNA and tissue microarrays, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 91:1758–1764, 1999.

Buckhaults P, Rago C, St Croix B, et al: Secreted and cell surface genes expressed in benign and malignant colorectal tumors, *Cancer Res* 61:6996–7001, 2001.

Buckhaults P, Zhang Z, Chen YC, et al: Identifying tumor origin using a gene expression–based classification map, *Cancer Res* 63:4144–4149, 2003.

Bullinger L, Dohner K, Bair E, et al: Use of gene-expression profiling to identify prognostic subclasses in adult acute myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 350: 1605–1616, 2004.

Cerutti JM, Delcelo R, Amadei MJ, et al: A preoperative diagnostic test that distinguishes benign from malignant thyroid carcinoma based on gene expression, *J Clin Invest* 113:1234–1242, 2004.

Claverie JM: Gene number: what if there are only 30000 human genes?, *Science* 291:1255–1257, 2001.

Collins FS, Morgan M, Patrinos A: The Human Genome Project: lessons from large-scale biology, *Science* 300:286–290, 2003.

Dahl Steffensen K, Waldstrom M, Kolby Christensen R, et al: Lack of relationship between TIMP-1 tumour cell immunoreactivity, treatment efficacy and prognosis in patients with advanced epithelial ovarian cancer, *BMC Cancer* 10:185, 2010.

Datson NA: Scaling down SAGE: from miniSAGE to microSAGE, *Curr Pharm Biotechnol* 9:351–361, 2008.

Datson NA, van der Perk-de Jong J, van den Berg MP, et al: MicroSAGE: a modified procedure for serial analysis of gene expression in limited amounts of tissue, *Nucleic Acids Res* 27:1300–1307, 1999.

Dave SS, Wright G, Tan B, et al: Prediction of survival in follicular lymphoma based on molecular features of tumor-infiltrating immune cells, *N Engl J Med* 351: 2159–2169, 2004.

Dennis JL, Vass JK, Wit EC, et al: Identification from public data of molecular markers of adenocarcinoma characteristic of the site of origin, *Cancer Res* 62:5999–6005, 2002.

Dhanasekaran SM, Barrette TR, Ghosh D, et al: Delineation of prognostic biomarkers in prostate cancer, *Nature* 412:822–826, 2001.

Diamandis EP: Analysis of serum proteomic patterns for early cancer diagnosis: drawing attention to potential problems, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 96:353–356, 2004a.

Diamandis EP: Mass spectrometry as a diagnostic and a cancer biomarker discovery tool: opportunities and potential limitations, *Mol Cell Proteomics* 3:367–378, 2004b.

Diamandis EP: Point: proteomic patterns in biological fluids: do they represent the future of cancer diagnostics?, *Clin Chem* 49:1272–1275, 2003.

Ding C, Cantor CR: A high-throughput gene expression analysis technique using competitive PCR and matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight MS, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100:3059–3064, 2003.

Ding C, Jin S: High-throughput methods for SNP genotyping, *Methods Mol Biol* 578:245–254, 2009.

Ding C, Maier E, Roscher AA, et al: Simultaneous quantitative and allele-specific expression analysis with real competitive PCR, *BMC Genet* 5:8, 2004.

Djidja MC, Claude E, Snel MF, et al: Novel molecular tumour classification using MALDI-mass spectrometry imaging of tissue micro-array, *Anal Bioanal Chem* 397:587–601, 2010.

Drury S, Salter J, Baehner FL, et al: Feasibility of using tissue microarray cores of paraffin-embedded breast cancer tissue for measurement of gene expression: a proof-of-concept study, *J Clin Pathol* 63:513–517, 2010.

Dudoit S: FJST: comparison of discrimination methods for the classification of tumors using gene expression data, *J Am Statistical Assoc* 97:77–87, 2002.

Dyrskjot L, Thykjaer T, Kruhoffer M, et al: Identifying distinct classes of bladder carcinoma using microarrays, *Nat Genet* 33:90–96, 2003.

Eisen MB, Spellman PT, Brown PO, et al: Cluster analysis and display of genome-wide expression patterns, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 95:14863–14868, 1998.

Emmert-Buck MR, Bonner RF, Smith PD, et al: Laser capture microdissection, *Science* 274:998–1001, 1996.

Genome International Sequencing Consortium: initial sequencing and analysis of the human genome, *Nature* 409:860–921, 2001.

Holzhauser T, Kleiner K, Janise A, et al: Matrix-normalised quantification of species by threshold-calibrated competitive real-time PCR: allergenic peanut in food as one example, *Food Chem* 163:68–76, 2014.

Huang E, Cheng SH, Dressman H, et al: Gene expression predictors of breast cancer outcomes, *Lancet* 361:1590–1596, 2003.

Hustinx SR, Cao D, Maitra A, et al: Differentially expressed genes in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas identified through serial analysis of gene expression, *Cancer Biol Ther* 3:1254–1261, 2004.

Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Maitra A, Shen-Ong GL, et al: Discovery of novel tumor markers of pancreatic cancer using global gene expression technology, *Am J Pathol* 160:1239–1249, 2002.

Inoue M, Senju S, Hirata S, et al: Identification of SPARC as a candidate target antigen for immunotherapy of various cancers, *Int J Cancer* 127:1393–1403, 2010.

International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium: Finishing the euchromatic sequence of the human genome, *Nature* 431:931–945, 2004.

Irizarry RA, Bolstad BM, Collin F, et al: Summaries of Affymetrix GeneChip probe level data, *Nucleic Acids Res* 31:e15, 2003.

Jinawath N, Furukawa Y, Hasegawa S, et al: Comparison of gene expression profiles between diffuse- and intestinal-type gastric cancers using a genome-wide cDNA microarray, *Oncogene* 23:6830–6844, 2004.

Kaminski N, Friedman N: Practical approaches to analyzing results of microarray experiments, *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* 27:125–132, 2002.

Khan J, Wei JS, Ringner M, et al: Classification and diagnostic prediction of cancers using gene expression profiling and artificial neural networks, *Nat Med* 7: 673–679, 2001.

Kononen J, Bubendorf L, Kallioniemi A, et al: Tissue microarrays for high-throughput molecular profiling of tumor specimens, *Nat Med* 4:844–847, 1998.

Koopmann J, Fedarko NS, Jain A, et al: Evaluation of osteopontin as biomarker for pancreatic adenocarcinoma, *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 13:487–491, 2004.

Kuerer HM, Goldknopf IL, Fritsche H, et al: Identification of distinct protein expression patterns in bilateral matched pair breast ductal fluid specimens from women with unilateral invasive breast carcinoma: high-throughput biomarker discovery, *Cancer* 95: 2276–2282, 2002.

Lal A, Lash AE, Altschul SF, et al: A public database for gene expression in human cancers, *Cancer Res* 59:5403–5407, 1999.

Lash AE, Tolstoshev CM, Wagner L, et al: SAGEmap: a public gene expression resource, *Genome Res* 10:1051–1060, 2000.

Leung YF, Cavalieri D: Fundamentals of cDNA microarray data analysis, *Trends Genet* 19:649–659, 2003.

Li C, Wong WH: Model-based analysis of oligonucleotide arrays: expression index computation and outlier detection, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 98:31–36, 2001.

Liu X, Xu Y, Xiong YH, et al: VHH phage-based competitive real-time immuno-polymerase chain reaction for ultrasensitive detection of ochratoxin A in cereal, *Anal Chem* 86:7471–7477, 2014.

Lockhart DJ, Dong H, Byrne MC, et al: Expression monitoring by hybridization to high-density oligonucleotide arrays, *Nat Biotechnol* 14:1675–1680, 1996.

Madden SL, Wang CJ, Landes G: Serial analysis of gene expression: from gene discovery to target identification, *Drug Discov Today* 5:415–425, 2000.

Mathe C, Sagot MF, Schiex T, et al: Current methods of gene prediction, their strengths and weaknesses, *Nucleic Acids Res* 30:4103–4117, 2002.

Mathe EA, Nguyen GH, Bowman ED, et al: MicroRNA expression in squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma of the esophagus: associations with survival, *Clin Cancer Res* 15:6192–6200, 2009.

McIver CJ, Bell SM, Er N: Development of an internal amplification control system for a real-time PCR assay for detection of Neisseria meningitidis in CSF and EDTA blood, *Pathology* 46:344–347, 2014.

Miklos GL, Maleszka R: Microarray reality checks in the context of a complex disease, *Nat Biotechnol* 22:615–621, 2004.

Mukherjee P, Mani S: Methodologies to decipher the cell secretome, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1834:2226–2232, 2013.

Nonogaki K, Itoh A, Kawashima H, et al: A preliminary result of three-dimensional microarray technology to gene analysis with endoscopic ultrasound-guided fine-needle aspiration specimens and pancreatic juices, *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 29:36, 2010.

Ntzani EE, Ioannidis JP: Predictive ability of DNA microarrays for cancer outcomes and correlates: an empirical assessment, *Lancet* 362:1439–1444, 2003.

Ocak S, Sos ML, Thomas RK, et al: High-throughput molecular analysis in lung cancer: insights into biology and potential clinical applications, *Eur Respir J* 34: 489–506, 2009.

Oh P, Li Y, Yu J, et al: Subtractive proteomic mapping of the endothelial surface in lung and solid tumours for tissue-specific therapy, *Nature* 429:629–635, 2004.

Olson MV: The maps: clone by clone by clone, *Nature* 409:816–818, 2001.

Ornstein DK, Rayford W, Fusaro VA, et al: Serum proteomic profiling can discriminate prostate cancer from benign prostates in men with total prostate specific antigen levels between 2.5 and 15.0 ng/ml, *J Urol* 172: 1302–1305, 2004.

Paik S, Shak S, Tang G, et al: A multigene assay to predict recurrence of tamoxifen-treated, node-negative breast cancer, *N Engl J Med* 351:2817–2826, 2004.

Patino WD, Mian OY, Hwang PM: Serial analysis of gene expression: technical considerations and applications to cardiovascular biology, *Circ Res* 91:565–569, 2002.

Paweletz CP, Charboneau L, Bichsel VE, et al: Reverse phase protein microarrays which capture disease progression show activation of pro-survival pathways at the cancer invasion front, *Oncogene* 20:1981–1989, 2001.

Pennisi E: And the gene number is …?, *Science* 288:1146–1147, 2000.

Perou CM, Sorlie T, Eisen MB, et al: Molecular portraits of human breast tumours, *Nature* 406:747–752, 2000.

Pittman J, Huang E, Dressman H, et al: Integrated modeling of clinical and gene expression information for personalized prediction of disease outcomes, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 101:8431–8436, 2004.

Pomeroy SL, Tamayo P, Gaasenbeek M, et al: Prediction of central nervous system embryonal tumour outcome based on gene expression, *Nature* 415:436–442, 2002.

Porter D, Lahti-Domenici J, Keshaviah A, et al: Molecular markers in ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast, *Mol Cancer Res* 1:362–375, 2003a.

Porter D, Weremowicz S, Chin K, et al: A neural survival factor is a candidate oncogene in breast cancer, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100:10931–10936, 2003b.

Porter DA, Krop IE, Nasser S, et al: A SAGE (serial analysis of gene expression) view of breast tumor progression, *Cancer Res* 61:5697–5702, 2001.

Quackenbush J: Computational analysis of microarray data, *Nat Rev Genet* 2:418–427, 2001.

Ramaswamy S, Ross KN, Lander ES, et al: A molecular signature of metastasis in primary solid tumors, *Nat Genet* 33:49–54, 2003.

Ransohoff DF: Rules of evidence for cancer molecular-marker discovery and validation, *Nat Rev Cancer* 4:309–314, 2004.

Reich M, Ohm K, Angelo M, et al: GeneCluster 2.0: an advanced toolset for bioarray analysis, *Bioinformatics* 20:1797–1798, 2004.

Rosenwald A, Wright G, Chan WC, et al: The use of molecular profiling to predict survival after chemotherapy for diffuse large-B-cell lymphoma, *N Engl J Med* 346:1937–1947, 2002.

Russo G, Zegar C, Giordano A: Advantages and limitations of microarray technology in human cancer, *Oncogene* 22:6497–6507, 2003.

Sanchez-Carbayo M: Antibody array-based technologies for cancer protein profiling and functional proteomic analyses using serum and tissue specimens, *Tumour Biol* 31:103–112, 2010.

Sawiris GP, Sherman-Baust CA, Becker KG, et al: Development of a highly specialized cDNA array for the study and diagnosis of epithelial ovarian cancer, *Cancer Res* 62:2923–2928, 2002.

Schena M, Shalon D, Davis RW, et al: Quantitative monitoring of gene expression patterns with a complementary DNA microarray, *Science* 270:467–470, 1995.

Selaru FM, Zou T, Xu Y, et al: Global gene expression profiling in Barrett's esophagus and esophageal cancer: a comparative analysis using cDNA microarrays, *Oncogene* 21:475–478, 2002.

Schaaij-Visser TB, de Wit M, Lam SW, et al: The cancer secretome, current status and opportunities in the lung, breast and colorectal cancer context, *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1834:2242–2258, 2013.

Shipp MA, Ross KN, Tamayo P, et al: Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma outcome prediction by gene-expression profiling and supervised machine learning, *Nat Med* 8:68–74, 2002.

Simon R, Lam AP: *BRB ArrayTools*, *version 3.5*, Bethesda, Md., 2004, National Cancer Institute, Biometrics Research Branch.

Simon R, Radmacher MD, Dobbin K, et al: Pitfalls in the use of DNA microarray data for diagnostic and prognostic classification, *J Natl Cancer Inst* 95:14–18, 2003.

Sotiriou C, Neo SY, McShane LM, et al: Breast cancer classification and prognosis based on gene expression profiles from a population-based study, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100:10393–10398, 2003.

Spira A, Beane J, Schembri F, et al: Noninvasive method for obtaining RNA from buccal mucosa epithelial cells for gene expression profiling, *Biotechniques* 36:484–487, 2004.

Stankiewicz P, Lupski JR: Genome architecture, rearrangements and genomic disorders, *Trends Genet* 18: 74–82, 2002.

Syvanen AC: Accessing genetic variation: genotyping single nucleotide polymorphisms, *Nat Rev Genet* 2: 930–942, 2001.

Tian E, Zhan F, Walker R, et al: The role of the Wnt-signaling antagonist DKK1 in the development of osteolytic lesions in multiple myeloma, *N Engl J Med* 349:2483–2494, 2003.

Tibshirani R, Hastie T, Narasimhan B, et al: Diagnosis of multiple cancer types by shrunken centroids of gene expression, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 99:6567–6572, 2002.

Tinelli A, Vergara D, Martignago R, et al: An outlook on ovarian cancer and borderline ovarian tumors: focus on genomic and proteomic findings, *Curr Genomics* 10:240–249, 2009.

Tumor Analysis Best Practices Working Group: Expression profiling—best practices for data generation and interpretation in clinical trials, *Nat Rev Genet* 5:229–237, 2004.

Tran C, Damaser MS: Stem cells as drug delivery methods: Application of stem cell secretome for regeneration, *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 82-83:1–11, 2015.

Tusher VG, Tibshirani R, Chu G: Significance analysis of microarrays applied to the ionizing radiation response, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 98:5116–5121, 2001.

Valk PJ, Verhaak RG, Beijen MA, et al: Prognostically useful gene-expression profiles in acute myeloid leukemia, *N Engl J Med* 350:1617–1628, 2004.

Van de Vijver MJ, He YD, van't Veer LJ, et al: A gene-expression signature as a predictor of survival in breast cancer, *N Engl J Med* 347:1999–2009, 2002.

van't Veer LJ, Dai H, van de Vijver MJ, et al: Gene expression profiling predicts clinical outcome of breast cancer, *Nature* 415:530–536, 2002.

Velculescu VE, Zhang L, Vogelstein B, et al: Serial analysis of gene expression, *Science* 270:484–487, 1995.

Venter JC, Adams MD, Myers EW, et al: The sequence of the human genome, *Science* 291:1304–1351, 2001.

Vera-Ramirez L, Sanchez-Rovira P, Ramirez-Tortosa CL, et al: Gene-expression profiles, tumor microenvironment, and cancer stem cells in breast cancer: latest advances towards an integrated approach, *Cancer Treat Rev* 36:477–484, 2010.

Watanabe H, Okada G, Ohtsubo K, et al: Expression of mesothelin mRNA in pure pancreatic juice from patients with pancreatic carcinoma, intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm of the pancreas, and chronic pancreatitis, *Pancreas* 30:349–354, 2005.

Xu Y, Selaru FM, Yin J, et al: Artificial neural networks and gene filtering distinguish between global gene expression profiles of Barrett's esophagus and esophageal cancer, *Cancer Res* 62:3493–3497, 2002.

Yamamoto M, Wakatsuki T, Hada A, et al: Use of serial analysis of gene expression (SAGE) technology, *J Immunol Methods* 250:45–66, 2001.

Ye QH, Qin LX, Forgues M, et al: Predicting hepatitis B virus–positive metastatic hepatocellular carcinomas using gene expression profiling and supervised machine learning, *Nat Med* 9:416–423, 2003.

Zender L, Villanueva A, Tovar V, et al: Cancer gene discovery in hepatocellular carcinoma, *J Hepatol* 52: 921–929, 2010.

Zhang Y, Szustakowski J, Schinke M: Bioinformatics analysis of microarray data, *Methods Mol Biol* 573:259–284, 2009.

Zhou J, Belov L, Huang PY, et al: Surface antigen profiling of colorectal cancer using antibody microarrays with fluorescence multiplexing, *J Immunol Methods* 355:40–51, 2010.

APPENDIX 1

PHYSIOLOGIC SOLUTIONS, BUFFERS, ACID-BASE INDICATORS, STANDARD REFERENCE MATERIALS, AND TEMPERATURE CONVERSIONS

PHYSIOLOGIC SOLUTIONS

A physiologic solution is one that contains various salts in concentrations that closely approximate the composition of fluids in the human body. The simplest of these is physiologic saline, which has the same osmotic pressure as the blood. There are more elaborate solutions, for example, to maintain tissues in a metabolically active state for longer periods of time. Table A1-1 lists formulas of some solutions that are isotonic with respect to blood.

BUFFERS*

Buffers have the ability to resist changes in pH. Buffers usually consist of a weak acid and its salt or a weak base and its salt. The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation is useful in calculating the acid (or base) to salt ratio required to establish a desired pH from a buffer system:

$$pH = pK + \log[salt]/[acid] \quad \textbf{(Eq. A1-1)}$$

EXAMPLE 1

If the pH of a 0.1M acetate buffer is known to be 4.90, calculate the concentration of acetic acid and sodium acetate in the buffer (pK for acetic acid = 4.76).

Substituting values of pH and pK in Equation A1-1:

$$\log[acetate]/[acetic\ acid] = 4.90 - 4.76 = 0.14$$
$$[acetate]/[acetic\ acid] = 1.38$$
$$[acetate] = 1.38[acetic\ acid]$$

Because the total buffer/L concentrations is 0.1M,

$$[acetate] + [acetic\ acid] = 0.1\ M \quad \textbf{(Eq. A1-2)}$$

Substituting the value of acetate in Equation A1-2:

$$1.38[acetic\ acid] + [acetic\ acid] = 0.1\ M$$

Hence,

$$[acetic\ acid] = 0.042\ M$$
$$[acetic\ acid] = 2.52\ g/L$$
$$[acetate] = 0.058\ M$$
$$= 4.76\ g/L$$

EXAMPLE 2

If 648 mL of 0.025 molar diethylbarbituric acid and 10 mL of 0.5 molar sodium diethylbarbiturate are mixed and diluted to 1 L, calculate the pH of the solution (pK for diethylbarbituric acid = 7.98 and molar concentration = moles/liter).

The following relationship exists between molarity and volume of a solution:

$$M1V1 = M2V2 \quad \textbf{(Eq. A1-3)}$$

where, M1 = molarity of the initial solution, V1 = volume of the initial solution, M2 = molarity of the final solution, V2 = volume of the final solution.

Use Equation A1-3 to calculate changes in salt and acid concentrations after dilution to 1L:

$$[Sodium\ diethylbarbiturate] = 0.025 \times 0.648$$
$$= 0.0162\ mol/L$$
$$[Diethylbarbituric\ acid] = 0.5 \times 0.01$$
$$= 0.005\ mol/L$$

Calculate pH of the solution using Equation A1-1:

$$pH = 7.98 - \log(0.0162/0.005)$$
$$= 7.98 - \log 3.24$$
$$= 7.98 - 0.51$$
$$= 7.47$$

The maximum buffering capacity is at the pK value of the weak acid or base. For instance, for acetic acid with a pH value of 4.76, more acid is required to change the pH of an acetate buffer from 4.76 to 4.66 than from 4.20 to 4.10. Efficient buffering capacity covers a pH range of about 1 unit on either side of the pK value of the weak acid or base. For acetic acid, this would be from about pH 3.8 to 5.8.

SORENSEN'S PHOSPHATE BUFFERS

These buffer solutions are generally useful, because the range of the mixtures is from pH 5 to 8.

Prepare 0.1 molar solutions of monobasic potassium phosphate (13.6 g/L) and dibasic sodium phosphate (14.2 g/L). Mix solutions in the ratio indicated in Table A1-2 to obtain the buffer of desired pH.

TRIS(HYDROXYMETHYL)AMINOMETHANE BUFFER*

Tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane buffer can be used for a pH range between 7.0 and 9.0, but its best buffer capacity is between 7.5 and 8.5. It is practically ineffective below pH 7.0 and above pH 9.0. One advantage of the buffer is its excellent stability. The buffer can be prepared by weighing the desired amount of tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane, dissolving it in water, and adjusting the pH to the desired value with HCl. For example, if 100 mL of 0.05 M buffer is desired, place 0.6057 g of tris(hydroxymethyl) aminomethane into a 100-mL volumetric flask. This is dissolved in approximately 50 mL of distilled water. Add 0.1N HCl, as indicated in Table A1-3, and fill up to the mark with distilled water. The table shows the pH values obtained when 0.6057 g of tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane dissolved in water is mixed with the indicated amounts of 0.1N HCl and diluted to 100 mL.

ACID-BASE INDICATORS†

An acid-base indicator is a weak acid or a weak base, the undissociated form of which has a color and constitution other than the iogenic form.

*For a comprehensive discussion, including preparation of buffer solutions of a definite ionic strength, consult Bates RG: *Determination of pH—theory and practice*, ed 2, New York, 1973, John Wiley and Sons.

*If buffers of a higher molarity are desired, the 0.1N HCl may have to be replaced by 1.0N HCl.

†Based on Dean JA, editor: *Handbook of chemistry*, revised ed 13, New York, 1985, McGraw-Hill.

TABLE A1-1
Physiologic Solutions

	Saline	Locke's Solution	Ringer's Solution	Tyrode's Solution
Sodium chloride	0.85 g	0.9 g	0.7 g	0.8 g
Calcium chloride		0.024 g	0.0026 g	0.02 g
Potassium chloride		0.042 g	0.035 g	0.02 g
Sodium bicarbonate		0.01–0.03 g		0.1 g
D-Glucose		0.01–0.25 g		0.1 g
Magnesium chloride				0.01 g
Monosodium phosphate				0.005 g
Distilled water	100 mL	100 mL	100 mL	100 mL

TABLE A1-2
Sorensen's Table of Buffer Mixtures

Na_2HPO_4 Solution (mL)	KH_2PO_4 Solution (mL)	pH
0.25	9.75	5.288
0.5	9.5	5.589
1.0	9.0	5.906
2.0	8.0	6.239
3.0	7.0	6.468
4.0	6.0	6.643
5.0	5.0	6.813
6.0	4.0	6.979
7.0	3.0	7.168
8.0	2.0	7.381
9.0	1.0	7.731
9.5	0.5	8.043

TABLE A1-3
Tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane Buffer

mL 0.1N HCl Added	Resulting pH at 23°C	Resulting pH at 37°C
5.0	9.10	8.95
7.5	8.92	8.78
10.0	8.74	8.60
12.5	8.62	8.48
15.0	8.50	8.37
17.5	8.40	8.27
20.0	8.32	8.18
22.5	8.23	8.10
25.0	8.14	8.00
27.5	8.05	7.90
30.0	7.96	7.82
32.5	7.87	7.73
35.0	7.77	7.63
37.5	7.66	7.52
40.0	7.54	7.40
42.5	7.36	7.22
45.0	7.20	7.05

Color change takes place over a certain narrow range of hydrogen ion concentrations. This range is called the *color change interval* and is expressed in terms of pH (the negative logarithm of the hydrogen ion concentration). A great number of substances show indicator properties, although relatively few of them are practically applied for neutralization reactions and pH determinations. Commonly used acid-base indicators are listed in Table A1-4. In general, weak acids should be titrated in the presence of indicators that change in slightly alkaline solutions. Weak bases should be titrated in the presence of indicators that change in slightly acid solutions. Commonly used acids and alkalis are listed in Table A1-5.

The availability of precision pH meters allows titration to a selected end point (pH) and may replace use of indicators for several applications.

TABLE A1-4
Acid-Base Indicators

Indicator	pH Range	Quantity of Indicator per 10 mL	Color Acid	Alkaline
Thymol blue (A)*†	1.2–2.8	1–2 drops 0.1% solution in aqueous	Red	Yellow
Methyl orange (B)	3.1–4.4	1 drop 0.1% solution in aqueous	Red	Orange
Bromphenol blue (A)†	3.0–4.6	1 drop 0.1% solution in aqueous	Yellow	Blue-violet
Bromcresol green (A)†	4.0–5.6	1 drop 0.1% solution in aqueous	Yellow	Blue
Methyl red (A)†	4.4–6.2	1 drop 0.1% solution in aqueous.	Red	Yellow
Bromcresol purple (A)†	5.2–6.8	1 drop 0.1% solution in aqueous	Yellow	Purple
Bromthymol blue (A)†	6.2–7.6	1 drop 0.1% solution in aqueous	Yellow	Blue
Phenol red (A)†	6.4–8.0	1 drop 0.1% solution in aqueous	Yellow	Red
Neutral red (B)	6.8–8.0	1 drop 0.1% solution in 70% alcohol	Red	Yellow
Thymol blue (A)†‡	8.0–9.6	1–5 drops 0.1% solution in aqueous	Yellow	Blue
Phenolphthalein (A)	8.0–10.0	1–5 drops 0.1% solution in 70% alcohol	Colorless	Red
Thymolphthalein (A)	9.4–10.6	1 drop 0.1% solution in 90% alcohol	Colorless	Blue

(A), Acid; *(B)*, base.
*For the acid range.
†Sodium salt.
‡For the alkaline range.

STANDARD REFERENCE MATERIALS

Standard reference materials (SRM) are available for many substances with defined identities and concentrations in solutions or as other materials such as thermometers or optical filters with specified transmission wavelengths (Table A1-6). SRMs are used as standards or controls against which assays may be calibrated with high certainty of accuracy in both identity and concentration of the substance or other property.

TEMPERATURE CONVERSION

Temperature is expressed in either Fahrenheit (F) or centigrade (C) scale according to the convention of the country, editorial policy of journals, and local practices. The simple relationship between these two temperature scales is:

Temperature in degrees Fahrenheit
= 1.8 × temperature in degrees centigrade + 32

Often it is more convenient to look up corresponding values for these two temperature scales in a list of values (Table A1-7). A unique value occurs at –40° where the two scales intersect and the values coincide (i.e., –40° F = –40° C).

TABLE A1-5

Commonly Used Acids and Alkalis*

Solution	Molecular Weight	Specific Gravity†	g/L†	Molarity†	Normality†	Approximate Number of mL Required to Make 1000 mL of 1 N Solution
Concentrated HCl	36.46	1.19	440	12	12	83
Concentrated H_2SO_4	98.08	1.84	1730	18	36	28
Concentrated HNO_3	63.02	1.42	990	16	16	64
Concentrated lactic acid	90.08	1.21	1030	11	11	87
Glacial acetic acid	60.08	1.06	1060	17.5	17.5	57
Concentrated NH_4OH	35.05	0.90	250	15	15	67

*Commercially available.
†Figures may vary slightly according to the lot or manufacturer.

TABLE A1-6

Standard Reference Materials for Clinical Measurements

SRM #	SRM Type	Stoichiometric Purity Mass Fraction in %	Certified Use	Unit Size (g)
40h	Sodium oxalate	99.972	Reductometric standard	60
83d	Arsenic trioxide	99.9926	Reductometric standard	60
84k	Potassium hydrogen phthalate	99.9911	Acidimetric standard	60
136e	Potassium dichromate	99.984	Oximetric standard	60
350a	Benzoic acid	99.9958	Acidimetric standard	30
723c	Tris(hydroxymethyl) aminomethane	99.901	Acidimetric standard	50
911b	Cholesterol	99.8	Identity and purity	2.0
912a	Urea	99.9	Identity and purity	25
913	Uric acid	99.7	Identity and purity	10
914a	Creatinine	99.7	Identity and purity	10
915a	Calcium carbonate	99.9	Identity and purity	20
916a	Bilirubin	98.3	Identity and purity	0.1
917a	D-Glucose (dextrose)	99.7	Identity and purity	25
918a	Potassium chloride	99.9817	Identity and purity	30
919a	Sodium chloride	99.89	Identity and purity	30
930e	Glass filters, transmittance		Wavelength range (440–635 nm)	3 filters
931f	Liquid filters, absorbance		Wavelength range (302–678 nm)	Ampules
934	Clinical laboratory thermometers (0, 25, 30, 37)		Temperature	One each
937	Iron metal	99.90		50
955b	Lead in blood			Set of 4 ampules

SRM, Standard reference materials.

TABLE A1-7

Temperature Conversions

Centigrade (°)	Fahrenheit (°)	Centigrade (°)	Fahrenheit (°)
110	230	38	100.4
100	212	37.5	99.5
95	203	37	98.6
90	194	36.5	97.7
85	185	36	96.8
80	176	35.5	95.9
75	167	35	95
70	158	34	93.2
65	149	33	91.4
60	140	32	89.6
55	131	31	87.8
50	122	30	86
45	113	25	77
44	111.2	20	68
43	109.4	15	59
42	107.6	10	50
41	105.8	+5	41
40.5	104.9	0	32
40	104	–5	23
39.5	103.1	–10	14
39	102.2	–15	+5
38.5	101.3	–20	–4

1°F = –17.2°C.
1°C = 33.8°F.
To convert Fahrenheit into centigrade, subtract 32 and multiply by 0.555.
To convert centigrade to Fahrenheit, multiply by 1.8 and add 32.

SELECTED REFERENCES

Dean JA, editor: *Handbook of chemistry*, ed 13, New York, 1985, McGraw-Hill.

Fasman GD, editor: *Handbook of biochemistry and molecular biology*, ed 3, Cleveland, 1976, CRC Press.

Meinke WW: Standard reference materials for clinical measurements, *Anal Chem* 43:28A, 1971.

The Merck index: an encyclopedia of chemicals and drugs, ed 12, Whitehouse Station, N.J., 1996, Merck and Co.

APPENDIX 2

DESIRABLE WEIGHTS, BODY SURFACE AREA, AND BODY MASS INDEX

TABLE A2-1

Comparison of the Weight-for-Height Tables from Actuarial Data: Non–Age-Corrected Metropolitan Life Insurance Company and Age-Specific Gerontology Research Center Recommendations

HEIGHT		METROPOLITAN 1983 WEIGHTS* (25–59 YEARS)		GERONTOLOGY RESEARCH CENTER* (AGE-SPECIFIC WEIGHT RANGE FOR MEN AND WOMEN)				
ft	**in**	**Men**	**Women**	**20–29 Years**	**30–39 Years**	**40–49 Years**	**50–59 Years**	**60–79 Years**
4	10		100–131	84–111	92–119	99–127	107–135	115–142
4	11		101–134	87–115	95–123	103–131	111–139	119–147
5	0		103–137	90–119	98–127	106–135	114–143	123–152
5	1	123–145	105–140	93–123	101–131	110–140	118–148	127–157
5	2	125–148	108–144	96–127	105–136	113–144	122–153	131–163
5	3	127–151	111–148	99–131	108–140	117–149	126–158	135–168
5	4	129–155	114–152	102–135	112–145	121–154	130–163	140–173
5	5	131–159	117–156	106–140	115–149	125–159	134–168	144–179
5	6	133–163	120–160	109–144	119–154	129–164	138–174	148–184
5	7	135–167	123–164	112–148	122–159	133–169	143–179	153–190
5	8	137–171	126–167	116–153	126–163	137–174	147–184	158–196
5	9	139–175	129–170	119–157	130–168	141–179	151–190	162–201
5	10	141–179	132–173	122–162	134–173	145–184	156–195	167–207
5	11	144–183	135–176	126–167	137–178	149–190	160–201	172–213
6	0	147–187		129–171	141–183	153–195	165–207	177–219
6	1	150–192		133–176	145–188	157–200	169–213	182–225
6	2	153–197		137–181	149–194	162–206	174–219	187–232
6	3	157–202		141–186	153–199	166–212	179–225	192–238
6	4			144–191	157–205	171–218	184–231	197–244

From Andres R: Mortality and obesity: the rationale for age-specific height–weight tables. In Hazzard WR, Bierman EL, Blass JP, et al, editors: *Principles of geriatric medicine and gerontology,* ed 3, New York, 1994, McGraw-Hill, p 847, with permission.

*Values in this table are for height without shoes and weight without clothes. The Metropolitan Life Insurance Company (1983 Metropolitan height and weight tables, *Stat Bull Metropol Life Ins Co* 64[Jan–Jun]:2, 1983) presented a table for nude heights and weights (Table 4) as well as a table for heights and weights clothed (Table 1).

TABLE A2-2

Body Mass Index Table

To use the following table, find the appropriate height in the left-hand column. Move across to a given weight. The number at the top of the column is the body mass index at the height and weight. Pounds are rounded off.

BMI		19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35
		Body Weight (lb)																
Height (in)	58	91	96	100	105	110	115	119	124	129	134	138	143	148	153	158	162	167
	59	94	99	104	109	114	119	124	128	133	138	143	148	153	158	163	168	173
	60	97	102	107	112	118	123	128	133	138	143	148	153	158	163	168	174	179
	61	100	106	111	116	122	127	132	137	143	148	153	158	164	169	174	180	185
	62	104	109	115	120	126	131	136	142	147	153	158	164	169	175	180	186	191
	63	107	113	118	124	130	135	141	146	152	158	163	169	175	180	186	191	197
	64	110	116	122	128	134	140	145	151	157	163	169	174	180	186	192	197	204
	65	114	120	126	132	138	144	150	156	162	168	174	180	186	192	198	204	210
	66	118	124	130	136	142	148	155	161	167	173	179	186	192	198	204	210	216
	67	121	127	134	140	146	153	159	166	172	178	185	191	198	204	211	217	223
	68	125	131	138	144	151	158	164	171	177	184	190	197	203	210	216	223	230
	69	128	135	142	149	155	162	169	176	182	189	196	203	209	216	223	230	236
	70	132	139	146	153	160	167	174	181	188	195	202	209	216	222	229	236	243
	71	136	143	150	157	165	172	179	186	193	200	208	215	222	229	236	243	250
	72	140	147	154	162	169	177	184	191	199	206	213	221	228	235	242	250	258
	73	144	151	159	166	174	182	189	197	204	212	219	227	235	242	250	257	265
	74	148	155	163	171	179	186	194	202	210	218	225	233	241	249	256	264	272
	75	152	160	168	176	184	192	200	208	216	224	232	240	248	256	264	272	279
	76	156	164	172	180	189	197	205	213	221	230	238	246	254	263	271	279	287
BMI		**36**	**37**	**38**	**39**	**40**	**41**	**42**	**43**	**44**	**45**	**46**	**47**	**48**	**49**	**50**	**51**	**52**
		Body Weight (lb)																
Height (in)	58	172	177	181	186	191	196	201	205	210	215	220	224	229	234	239	244	248
	59	178	183	188	193	198	203	208	212	217	222	227	232	237	242	247	252	257
	60	184	189	194	199	204	209	215	220	225	230	235	240	245	250	255	261	266
	61	190	195	201	206	211	217	222	227	232	238	243	248	254	259	264	269	275
	62	196	202	207	213	218	224	229	235	240	246	251	256	262	267	273	278	284
	63	203	208	214	220	225	231	237	242	248	254	259	265	270	278	282	287	293
	64	209	215	221	227	232	238	244	250	256	262	267	273	279	285	291	296	302
	65	216	222	228	234	240	246	252	258	264	270	276	282	288	294	300	306	312
	66	223	229	235	241	247	253	260	266	272	278	284	291	297	303	309	315	322
	67	230	236	242	249	255	261	268	274	280	287	293	299	306	312	319	325	331
	68	236	243	249	256	262	269	276	282	289	295	302	308	315	322	328	335	341
	69	243	250	257	263	270	277	284	291	297	304	311	318	324	331	338	345	351
	70	250	257	264	271	278	285	292	299	306	313	320	327	334	341	348	355	362
	71	257	265	272	279	286	293	301	308	315	322	329	338	343	351	358	365	372
	72	265	272	279	287	294	302	309	316	324	331	338	346	353	361	368	375	383
	73	272	280	288	295	302	310	318	325	333	340	348	355	363	371	378	386	393
	74	280	287	295	303	311	319	326	334	342	350	358	365	373	381	389	396	404
	75	287	295	303	311	319	327	335	343	351	359	367	375	383	391	399	407	415
	76	295	304	312	320	328	336	344	353	361	369	377	385	394	402	410	418	426

Source: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/obesity/bmi_tbl.htm.

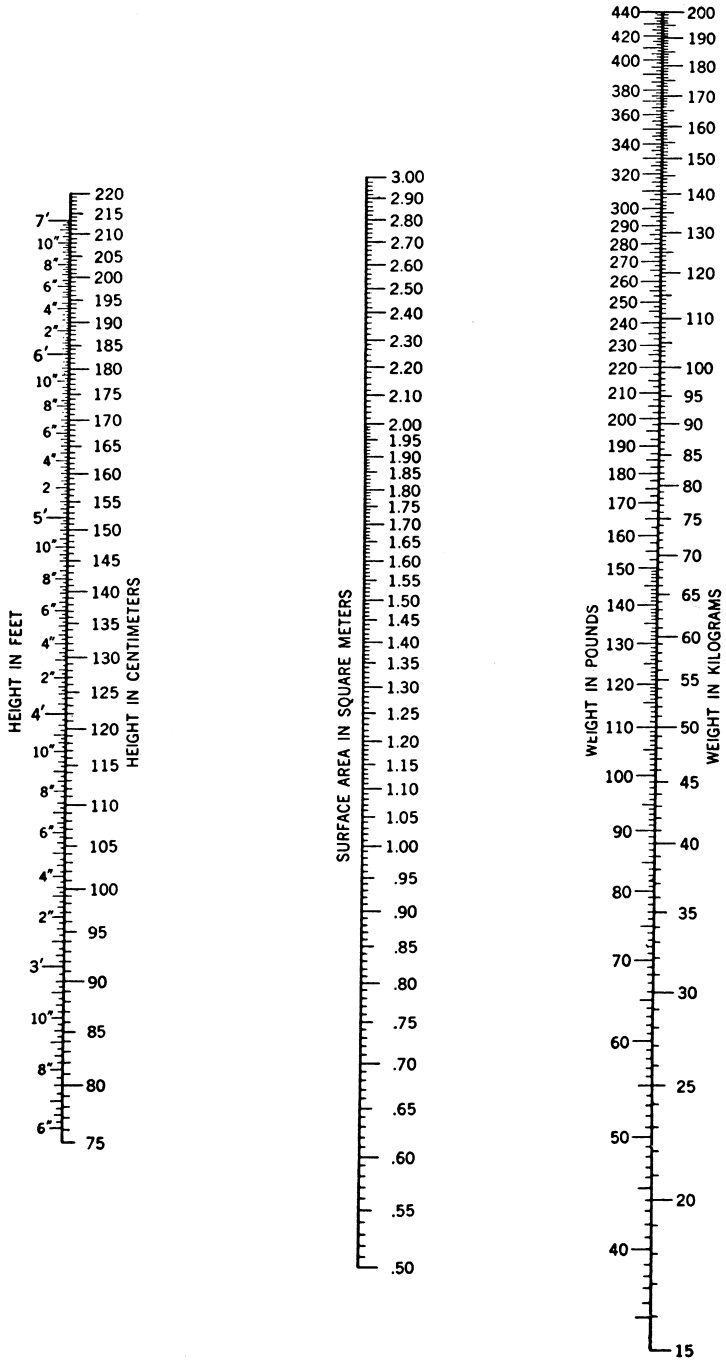


Figure A2-1 **Nomogram for the determination of body surface area of children and adults.** (From Boothby WM, Sandiford RB: Nomographic charts for the calculation of the metabolic rate by the gasometer method, *Boston Med Surg J* 185:337, 1921, with permission.)

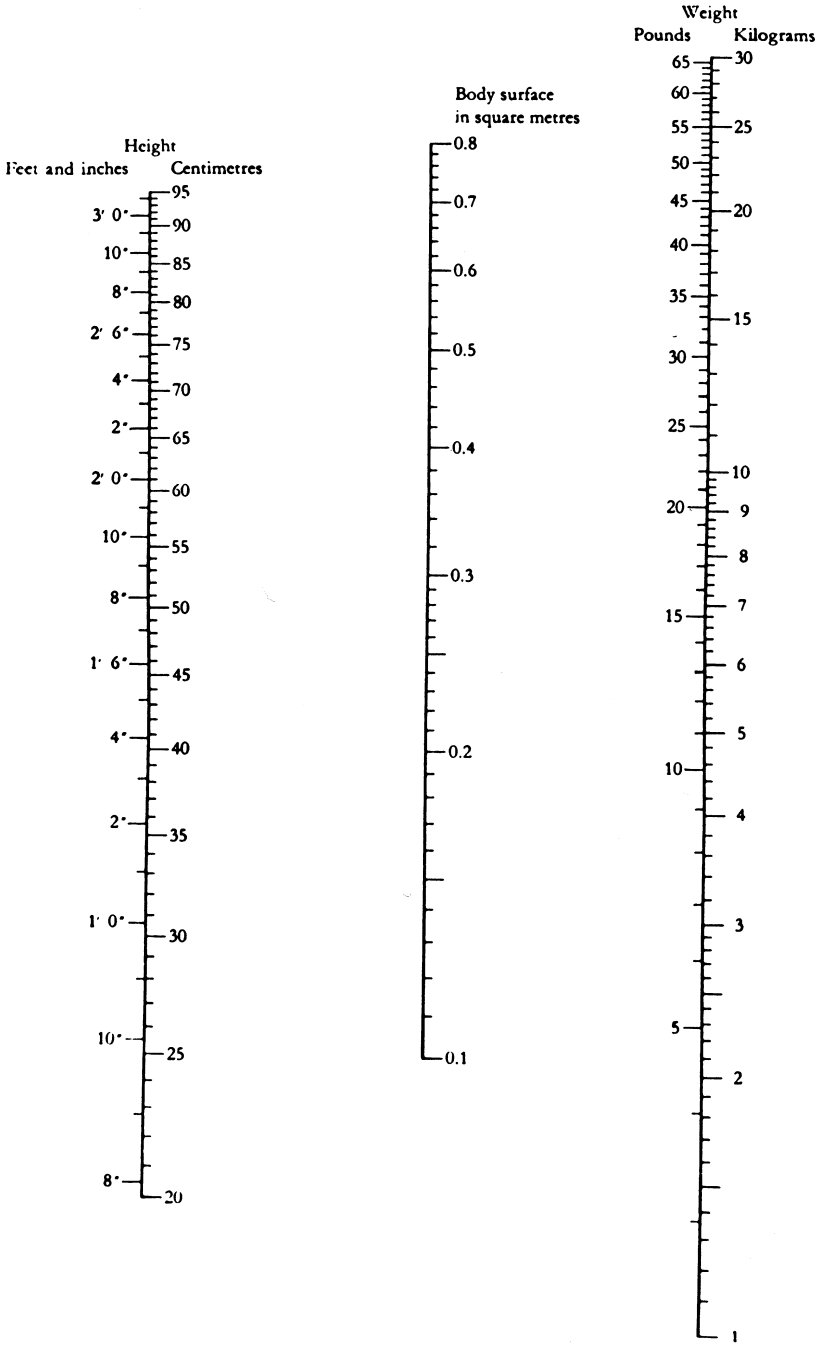


Figure A2-2 **Nomogram for the determination of body surface area of children.** (From DuBois EF: *Basal metabolism in health and disease,* Philadelphia, 1936, Lea & Febiger.)

The formula for calculating BMI is:

$$\text{BMI} = \text{Weight (kg)}/\text{Height (m}^2\text{)}$$

or

$$\text{BMI} = 703 \times \text{Weight (lb)}/\text{Height (in}^2\text{)}$$

The interpretation of BMI (kg/m^2) with risk for type 2 diabetes in adults 20 years old and older varies according to populations as follows:

White European Populations	Asian Populations	Interpretation
<18.5	<18.5	Underweight
18.5–24.9	18.5-23	Normal; increasing but acceptable risk
25–29.9	23-27.5	Overweight; increased risk
30 or higher	27.5 or higher	Obese; high risk

From Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: *About BMI for adults.* http://www.cdc.gov/healthyweight/assessing/bmi/adult_bmi/index.html.
Assessing body mass index and waist circumference thresholds for intervening to prevent ill health and premature death among adults for black, Asian, and other minority ethnic groups in the UK, NICE (National Institute for Health and Care Excellence) guidelines [PH46], July 2013. www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ph46/chapter/recommendations.

APPENDIX 3

APPROXIMATIONS OF TOTAL BLOOD VOLUME

When estimating a patient's total blood volume (TBV), a commonly used approximation is 70 mL of TBV per kilogram body weight. While useful in many patients, in others, particularly children and overweight or thin adults, this figure offers only a poor approximation of actual TBV. In these patients, other methods of estimation of TBV are more appropriate.

ADULTS

The COBE Spectra uses the Nadler and Allen formula to calculate approximate TBV for patients (COBE Spectra Apheresis System Operator's Manual, 1997). This formula uses patient height, weight, and sex to calculate TBV. Specifically, the formula is:

Males: $TBV\ (mL) = 604 + [367 \times height^3\ (m)] + [32.2 \times weight\ (kg)]$
Females: $TBV\ (mL) = 183 + [356 \times height^3\ (m)] + [33.1 \times weight\ (kg)]$

TBV can also be approximated using the patient's calculated body surface area (Shoemaker, 1989):

Males: $TBV = 2740\ mL/m^2$
Females: $TBV = 2370\ mL/m^2$

Another relatively simple approximation uses Gilcher's so-called "rule of fives," reproduced here, as an estimate of blood volume, which is more tailored to the individual patient than the 70 mL/kg rule (Gilcher, 1996).

	Fat	Thin	Normal	Muscular
Males	60	65	70	75
Females	55	60	65	70

CHILDREN

The Nadler and Allen calculation can be particularly inaccurate in children, especially prepubertal boys, in whom it has been recommended that the female gender be entered to improve the estimation (Kim, 2000). The following values for TBV per kilogram body weight can be used (Oski, 1993):

Premature infants	89–105 mL/kg
Term newborns	82–86 mL/kg
Infants and preschoolers	73–82 mL/kg

SELECTED REFERENCES

COBE Spectra Apheresis System operator's manual, Lakewood, Colo., 1997, Gambro BCT, p 1.

Gilcher RO: Apheresis: principles and practices. In Rossi EC, Simon TL, Moss GS, et al, editors: *Principles of transfusion medicine*, ed 2, Baltimore, 1996, Williams & Wilkins, p 542.

Kim HC: Therapeutic pediatric apheresis, *J Clin Apheresis* 15:129-157, 2000.

Oski FA: The erythrocyte and its disorders. In Nathan DG, Oski FA, editors: *Hematology of infancy and childhood*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1993, WB Saunders, p 28.

Shoemaker WC: Fluids and electrolytes in the acutely ill adult. In Shoemaker WC, Ayres S, Grenvik A, et al, editors: *Textbook of critical care*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 1989, WB Saunders, p 1130.

APPENDIX

4 PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

1 Group IA	2 IIA	New notation → / Previous IUPAC form → / CAS version →								13 IIIB IIIA	14 IVB IVA	15 VB VA	16 VIB VIA	17 VIIB VIIA	18 VIIIA	Shell
1 +1 H −1 1.00794 1															**2 0 He 4.0020602 2**	K
3 +1 Li 6.941 2-1	**4 +1 Be 9.012182 2-2**									**5 +3 B 10.811 2-3**	**6 +2 C +4 −4 12.011 2-4**	**7 +1 +2 +3 +4 +5 −1 −2 −3 N 14.00674 2-5**	**8 −2 O 15.9994 2-6**	**9 −1 F 18.998403 2**	**10 0 Ne 20.1797 2-8**	K-L
11 +1 Na 22.989768 2-8-1	**12 +2 Mg 24.3050 2-8-2**	**3 IIIA IIIB**	**4 IVA IVB**	**5 VA VB**	**6 VIA VIB**	**7 VIIA VIIB**	**8**	**9 VIIIA VIII**	**10**	**13 +3 Al 26.981539 2-8-3**	**14 +2 Si +4 −4 28.0855 2-8-4**	**15 +3 P +5 −3 30.97362 2-8-5**	**16 +3 S +5 −2 32.066 2-8-6**	**17 +1 Cl +5 +7 −1 35.4527 2-8-7**	**18 0 Ar 39.948 2-8-8**	K-L-M
19 +1 K 39.0983 -8-8-1	**20 +2 Ca 40.078 -8-8-2**	**21 +3 Sc 44.955910 -8-9-2**	**22 +2 Ti +3 +4 47.88 -8-10-2**	**23 +2 V +3 +4 +5 50.9415 -8-11-2**	**24 +2 Cr +3 +6 51.9961 -8-13-1**	**25 +2 Mn +3 +4 +7 54.93085 -8-13-2**	**26 +2 Fe +3 55.847 -8-14-2**	**27 +2 Co +3 58.93320 -8-15-2**	**28 +2 Ni +3 58.6934 -8-16-2**	**29 +1 Ni +2 63.546 -8-18-1**	**30 +2 Zn 65.39 -8-18-2**	**31 +3 Ga 69.723 -8-18-3**	**32 +2 Ge +4 72.61 -8-18-4**	**33 +2 As +5 −3 74.92159 -8-18-5**	**34 +4 Se +6 −2 78.96 -8-18-6**	**35 +1 Br +5 −1 79.904 -8-18-7**	**36 0 Kr 83.80 -8-18-8**	-L-M-N
37 +1 Rb 85.4678 -18-8-1	**38 +2 Sr 87-62 -18-8-2**	**39 +3 Y 88-90585 -18-9-2**	**40 +4 Zr 91.224 -18-10-2**	**41 +3 Nb +5 92.90638 -18-10-2**	**42 +6 Mo 95.94 -18-13-1**	**43 +4 Tc +6 +7 (98) -18-13-2**	**44 +3 Ru 101.07 -18-15-1**	**45 +3 Rh 102.90550 -18-16-1**	**46 +2 Pd +4 106.42 -18-18-0**	**47 +1 Ag 107.8682 -18-18-1**	**48 +2 Cd 112.411 -18-18-2**	**49 +3 In 114.818 -18-18-3**	**50 +2 Sn +4 118.710 -18-18-4**	**51 +3 Sb +5 −3 121.757 -18-18-5**	**52 +4 Te +6 −2 127.60 -18-18-6**	**53 +1 I +5 +7 −1 126.90447 -18-18-7**	**54 0 Xe 131.29 -18-18-8**	-M-N-O
55 +1 Cs 132.90543 -18-8-1	**56 +2 Ba 137.327 -18-8-2**	**57*+3 La 139.9055 -18-9-2**	**72 +4 Hf 178.49 -32-10-2**	**73 +5 Ta 180.9479 -32-11-2**	**74 +6 W 183.84 -32-12-2**	**75 +4 Re +6 +7 186.207 -32-13-2**	**76 +3 Os +4 190.23 -32-14-2**	**77 +3 Ir +4 192.22 -32-15-2**	**78 +2 Pt +4 195.08 -32-16-2**	**79 +1 Au +3 196.96654 -32-18-1**	**80 +1 Hg +2 200.59 -32-18-2**	**81 +1 Tl +3 204.3833 -32-18-3**	**82 +2 Pb +4 207.2 -32-18-4**	**83 +3 Bi +5 208.98037 -32-18-5**	**84 +2 Po +4 (209) -32-18-6**	**85 At (210) -32-18-7**	**86 0 Rn (222) -32-18-8**	-N-O-P
87 +1 Fr (223) -18-8-1	**88 +2 Ra 226.025 -18-8-2**	**89** Ac +3 227.08 -18-9-2**	**104 Rf +4 (261) -32-10-2**	**105 Db (262) -32-11-2**	**106 Se (266) -32-12-2**	**107 Bh (264) -32-13-2**	**108 Hs (267) -32-14-2**	**109 Mt (268) -32-15-2**	**110 Ds (271) -32-17-2**	**111 Rg (272) -32-18-1**	**112 Cn (285) -32-18-2**	**113 Uut (284) -32-18-3**	**114 Fl (289) -32-18-4**	**115 Uup (288) -32-18-5**	**116 Lv (292) -32-18-6**	**117 Uus (295) -32-18-7**	**118 Uuo (294) -32-18-8**	O P Q

*Lathanides	**58 +3 Ce +4 140.115 -19-9-2**	**59 +3 Pr 140.90765 -21-8-2**	**60 +3 Nd 144.24 -22-8-2**	**61 +3 Pm (145) -23-8-2**	**62 +2 Sm +3 150.36 -24-8-2**	**63 +2 Eu +3 151.965 -25-8-2**	**64 +3 Gd 157.25 -25-9-2**	**65 +3 Tb 158.92534 -27-8-2**	**66 +3 Dy 162.50 -28-8-2**	**67 +3 Ho 164.93032 -29-8-2**	**68 +3 Er 167.26 -30-8-2**	**69 +3 Tm 168.93421 -32-8-2**	**70 +2 Yb +3 173.04 -32-8-2**	**71 +3 Lu 174.967 -32-9-2**	N O P
**Actinides	**90 +4 Th 232.0381 -18-10-2**	**91 +5 Pa +4 231.03588 -20-9-2**	**92 +3 U +4 +5 +6 238.0289 -21-9-2**	**93 +3 Np +4 +5 +6 237.048 -22-9-2**	**94 +3 Pu +4 +5 +6 (244) -24-8-2**	**95 +3 Am +4 +5 +6 (243) -25-8-2**	**96 +3 Cm (247) -25-9-2**	**97 +3 Bk +4 (247) -27-8-2**	**98 +3 Cf (251) -28-8-2**	**99 +3 Es (252) -29-8-2**	**100 +3 Fm (257) -30-8-2**	**101 +2 Md +3 (258) -31-8-2**	**102 +2 No +3 (259) -32-8-2**	**103 +3 Lr (260) -32-9-2**	O P Q

KEY TO CHART

Atomic number → **50** +2 ← Oxidation state
Symbol → **Sn** +4
1989 Atomic weight → 118.71
18 18 4 ← Electron configuration

Modified from Lide DR, Frederikse HPR: *CRC handbook of chemistry and physics 1993–1994,* ed 74, Boca Raton, Fla., 1993, CRC Press. The new International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) format numbers the groups from 1 to 18. The previous IUPAC numbering system and the system used by Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) are also shown. For radioactive elements that do not occur in nature, the mass number of the most stable isotope is given in parentheses.

REFERENCES

Chemical and Engineering News. 63:27, 1985.

Chemical and Engineering News: It's elemental: the periodic table—introduction, National Chemistry Week. October:19–24, 2009. http://pubs.acs.org/cen/80th/elements.html.

Leigh GJ, editor: *Nomenclature of inorganic chemistry*, Oxford, 1990, Blackwell Scientific.

Los Alamos National Laboratory: Periodic table of elements: LANL. periodic.lanl.gov/index.shtml. 2015.

The periodic table of videos, University of Nottingham. http://www.periodicvideos.com.

Professor Martyn Poliakoff and chemistry staff from the University of Nottingham have produced "The Periodic Table of Videos" as entertaining and educational discussions and laboratory demonstrations of chemical properties of each of the elements.

SI UNITS

APPENDIX 5

The International System of Units (French: *Système International d'Unités*, SI) consists of seven dimensionally independent base units, which are listed in Table A5-1, along with the symbols to be used to denote these units. Table A5-2 lists a number of derived units of the SI that are used in the clinical laboratory. There are two kinds of derived units: (1) coherent units, which are derived directly from the base units without the use of conversion factors, and (2) noncoherent units, which are constructed from the base units and contain a numerical factor to make the numbers more convenient to use. The prefixes to denote fractions or multiples of base and derived SI units are given in Table A5-3. A complete description of the SI and its application in medicine may be found in the World Health Organization publication The SI for the Health Professions (World Health Organization, 1977). See Tietz (1995) for a comprehensive list of quantities and their internationally recommended SI units.

The reference intervals used in this presentation should be considered typical values to illustrate principles of analysis; however, they are not intended to be used for interpretation of laboratory results for specific patients which should be evaluated according to reference ranges established by the laboratory performing those measurements. In making the conversion to recommended SI units (Tables A5-4 through A5-13), the following guidelines were followed:

1. All reference intervals have been converted to SI units except in cases in which the measurements are not quantitative.
2. Chemical names have not been changed; for example, urea is retained instead of changing to carbamide.
3. Factors are those published by the American National Metric Council (Lundberg et al, 1986; Beeler, 1987; Young, 1987), based on the Metric Commission of Canada (1981) factors.
4. Factors are calculated to the base unit for volume of 1 L.
5. The order of magnitude of the factors is calculated to make the values in SI units convenient numbers, that is, with prefixes, a number not greater than 1000 or smaller than 0.001.
6. The number in recommended SI units is equal to the number in conventional units times the factor.
7. For compounds for which relative molecular masses are not definitely known (e.g., proteins), reference intervals are converted to mass amounts per liter.
8. For mixtures of indeterminate composition (e.g., phospholipids), reference intervals are converted to mass amounts per liter or are based on a given standard, for example, DHEA for 17-ketosteroids.
9. Quantities of a relative nature that are usually expressed as percentages, for example, fractions of LD isoenzymes, are given as fractions.
10. Enzyme units are given as the international unit per liter (U/L). Although the coherent SI unit for catalytic activity (including enzymes), the katal, has been defined as the number of moles of substrate converted per second under defined conditions, its adoption is limited.
11. The pH scale is retained for measurement of hydrogen ion concentrations.
12. It is recommended that the unit millimeters of mercury (mm Hg) be retained for pressure (Pco_2, Po_2) at the present time.
13. Percentages are expressed as fractions in the SI, where a fraction is a dimensionless quantity given by the number of defined particles constituting a specified component divided by the total number of defined particles in the system.

TABLE A5-1
SI Base Units

Quantity	Name	Symbol
Length	meter	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Time	second	s
Electric current	ampere	A
Thermodynamic temperature	kelvin	K
Luminous intensity	candela	cd
Amount of substance	mole	mol

TABLE A5-2
SI Derived Units

Quantity	Unit Name	Unit Symbol
Area	square meter*	m^2
Volume	cubic meter*	m^3
	liter†	$L = dm^3$‡
Concentration		
Mass	kilogram/liter†	kg/L
Substance	mole/liter†	mol/L
Molality	mole/kilogram	mol/kg
Density	kilogram/liter†	kg/L
Mass fraction	kilogram/kilogram	kg/kg
Mole fraction	mole/mole	mol/mol
Number concentration	number/liter	L^{-1}
Temperature	degree celsius*	°C = °K − 273.15
Pressure	pascal*	$Pa = kgm/m^2$
Frequency	hertz*	Hz = 1 cycle/s
Clearance	liter/second†	L/s
Electrical potential	volt*	$V = kgm^2/s^3$
Energy	joule*	$J = kgm^2/s^2$

*Derived coherent unit.
†Derived noncoherent unit.
‡Both "L" and "l" are symbols for the liter.

TABLE A5-3
Prefixes

Prefix	Prefix Symbol	Factor
exa	E	10^{18}
peta	P	10^{15}
tera	T	10^{12}
giga	G	10^{9}
mega	M	10^{6}
kilo	k	10^{3}
hecto	h	10^{2}
deca	da	10^{1}
deci	d	10^{-1}
centi	c	10^{-2}
milli	m	10^{-3}
micro	μ	10^{-6}
nano	n	10^{-9}
pico	p	10^{-12}
femto	f	10^{-15}
atto	a	10^{-18}
zepto	z	10^{-21}
yocto	y	10^{-24}

TABLE A5-4

Whole Blood, Serum, and Plasma Chemistry

Component	System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	Factor*	Recommended SI Units†
Acetoacetic acid				
Qualitative	Serum	Negative	—	Negative
Quantitative	Serum	0.2–1 mg/dL	97.95	20–100 µmol/L
Acetone				
Qualitative	Serum	Negative	—	Negative
Quantitative	Serum	0.3–2 mg/dL	172.95	20–340 µmol/L
Albumin				
Qualitative	Serum	3.2–4.5 g/dL (salt fractionation) 3.2–5.6 g/dL (electrophoresis) 3.8–5 g/dL (eye binding)	10	32–45 g/L 32–56 g/L 38–50 g/L
Alcohol, ethyl	Serum or whole blood	Negative–but presented as mg/dL	0.2171	Negative–but presented as mmol/L
Aldolase	Serum			
	Adults	3–8 Sibley-Lehninger U/dL at 37°C	7.4	22–59 mU/L at 37°C
	Children	Approximately 2× adult levels	—	Approximately 2× adult levels
	Newborn	Approximately 4× adult levels	—	Approximately 4× adult levels
α-Amino acid nitrogen	Serum	3.6–7 mg/dL	0.7139	2.6–5 mmol/L
δ-Aminolevulinic acid	Serum	0.01–0.03 mg/dL	76.26	0.8–2.3 µmol/L
Ammonia	Plasma	20–120 µg/dL (diffusion) 40–80 µg/dL (enzymatic method) 12–48 µg/dL (resin method)	0.5872	12–70 µmol/L 23–47 µmol/L 7–28 µmol/L
Amylase	Serum	16–120 Somogyi units/dL	1.85	30–220 U/L
Argininosuccinate lyase	Serum	0–4 U/dL	10	0–40 U/L
Arsenic‡	Whole blood	<7 µg/dL	0.05055	<0.4 µmol/L
Ascorbic acid (vitamin C)	Plasma	0.6–1.6 mg/dL	56.78	34–91 µmol/L
	Whole blood	0.7–2 mg/dL		40–114 µmol/L
Barbiturates	Serum, plasma, or whole blood	Negative	—	Negative
Base excess	Whole blood			
	Male	–3.3 to +1.2 mEq/L	1	–3.3 to +1.2 mmol/L
	Female	–2.4 to +2.3 mEq/L		–2.4 to +2.3 mmol/L
Base, total	Serum	145–160 mEq/L	1	145–160 mmol/L
Bicarbonate	Plasma	21–28 mmol/L	1	21–28 mmol/L
Bile acids	Serum	0.3–3 mg/dL	10	3–30 mg/L
Bilirubin				
Direct (conjugated)	Serum	<0.3 mg/dL	17.10	<5 µmol/L
Indirect (unconjugated)	Serum	0.1–1 mg/dL		2–17 µmol/L
Total	Serum	0.1–1.2 mg/dL		2–21 µmol/L
Newborns total	Serum	1–12 mg/dL		17–205 µol/L
Blood gases (see Chapter 14)				
pH	Whole blood	7.38–7.44 (arterial) 7.36–7.41 (venous)	1	7.38–7.44 7.36–7.41
PCO_2	Whole blood	35–40 mm Hg (arterial) 40–45 mm Hg (venous)	0.1333	4.7–5.3 kPa 5.3–6 kPa
PO_2	Whole blood	95–100 mm Hg (arterial)	0.1333	12.7–13.3 kPa
Bromide	Serum	<5 mg/dL	0.125	<0.63 mmol/L
Calcium				
Ionized	Serum	4–4.8 mg/dL 2–2.4 mEq/L 30–58% of total	0.2500 0.5000 0.01	1–1.2 mmol/L 0.30–1.58 of total
Total	Serum	9.2–11.0 mg/dL 4.6–5.5 mEq/L	0.2500 0.5000	2.30–2.74 mmol/L
Carbon dioxide (CO_2 content)	Whole blood (arterial)	19–24 mmol/L	1	19–24 mmol/L
	Plasma or serum (arterial)	21–28 mmol/L		21–28 mmol/L
Carbon dioxide	Whole blood (venous)	22–26 mmol/L	1	22–26 mmol/L
	Plasma or serum (venous)	24–30 mmol/L		24–30 mmol/L
CO_2 combining power	Plasma or serum (venous)	24–30 mmol/L	1	24–30 mmol/L
CO_2 partial pressure (PCO_2)	Whole blood (arterial)	35–40 mm Hg	0.1333	4.7–5.3 kPa
Whole blood (venous)	40–45 mm Hg			5.3–6 kPa
Carbonic acid (H_2CO_3)	Whole blood (arterial)	1.05–1.45 mmol/L	1	1.05–1.45 mmol/L
	Whole blood (venous)	1.15–1.50 mmol/L		1.15–1.50 mmol/L
	Plasma (venous)	1.02–1.38 mmol/L		1.02–1.38 mmol/L

TABLE A5-4

Whole Blood, Serum, and Plasma Chemistry—cont'd

Component	System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	**Factor***	**Recommended SI Units†**
Carboxyhemoglobin (carbon monoxide hemoglobin)	Whole blood suburban Nonsmokers	<1.5% saturation of hemoglobin	0.01	Fraction hemoglobin saturated: <0.015
	Smokers	1.5%–5% saturation		0.015–0.050
	Heavy smokers	5%–9% saturation		0.050–0.090
Carotene, β	Serum	40–200 µg/dL	0.01863	0.7–3.7 µmol/L
Ceruloplasmin	Serum	23–50 mg/dL	10	230–500 mg/L
Chloride	Serum	95–103 mEq/L	1	95–103 mmol/L
Cholesterol				
Total (see Chapter 17)	Serum	150–250 mg/dL (varies with diet, sex, and age)	0.02586	3.88–6.47 mmol/L
Esters	Serum	65%–75% of total cholesterol	0.01	Fraction of total cholesterol: 0.65–0.75
Cholinesterase (pseudocholinesterase)	Erythrocytes	0.65–1.3 pH units	1	0.65–1.3 units[§]
	Plasma	0.5–1.3 pH units 8–18 U/L at 37°C	1	0.5–1.3 units
Citrate	Serum or plasma	1.7–3 mg/dL	52.05	88–156 µmol/L
Copper	Serum, plasma			
	Male	70–140 µg/dL	0.1574	11–22 µmol/L
	Female	80–155 µg/dL		13–24 µmol/L
Cortisol	Plasma			
	8 AM–10 AM	5–23 µg/dL	27.59	138–635 nmol/L
	4 PM–6 PM	3–13 µg/dL		83–359 nmol/L
Creatine	Serum or plasma			
	Male	0.1–0.4 mg/dL	76.25	8–31 µmol/L
	Female	0.2–0.7 mg/dL		15–53 µmol/L
Creatine kinase (CK)	Serum			
	Male	55–170 U/L at 37°C	1	55–170 U/L at 37°C
	Female	30–135 U/L at 37°C	1	30–135 U/L at 37°C
Creatinine (see Chapter 14)	Serum or plasma	0.6–1.2 mg/dL (adult) 0.3–0.6 mg/dL (children <2 yr)	88.40	53–106 µmol/L 27–53 µmol/L
Creatinine clearance (endogenous) (see Chapter 14)	Serum or plasma and urine			
	Male	107–139 mL/min	0.01667	1.78–2.32 mL/sec
	Female	87–107 mL/min		1.45–1.78 mL/sec
Cryoglobulins	Serum	Negative	—	Negative
Electrophoresis, protein	Serum			
Albumin		52%–65% of total protein	0.01	Fraction of total protein: 0.52–0.65
α-1		2.5%–5% of total protein	0.01	0.025–0.05
α-2		7%–13% of total protein	0.01	0.07–0.13
β		8%–14% of total protein	0.1	0.08–0.14
γ		12%–22% of total protein	0.01	0.12–0.22
	Serum	Concentration		
Albumin		3.2–5.6 g/dL	10	32–56 g/L
α-1		0.1–0.4 g/dL		1–4 g/L
α-2		0.4–1.2 g/dL		4–12 g/L
β		0.5–1.1 g/dL		5–11 g/L
γ		0.5–1.6 g/dL		5–16 g/L
Fats, neutral (see Triglycerides)				
Fatty acids				
Total (free and esterified)	Serum	9–15 mmol/L	1	9–15 mmol/L
Free (nonesterified)	Plasma	300–480 µEq/L	1	300–480 µmol/L
Ferritin	Serum			
	Male	15–200 ng/mL	1	15–200 µg/L
	Female	12–150 ng/mL	1	15–150 µg/L
Fibrinogen	Plasma	200–400 mg/dL	0.01	2–4 g/L
Fluoride	Whole blood	<0.05 mg/dL	0.5263	<0.027 mmol/L
Folate	Serum			11–57 nmol/L
		≥3.5 ng/mL (radioassay)	2.266	>5 nmol/L
	Erythrocytes	166–640 ng/mL (bioassay)		376–1450 nmol/L
		>140 ng/mL (radioassay)		>317 nmol/L
Galactose	Whole blood			
	Adults	None	—	None
	Children	<20 mg/dL	0.05551	<1.11 mmol/L
Gamma globulin	Serum	0.5–1.6 g/dL	10	5–16 g/L

Continued

TABLE A5-4

Whole Blood, Serum, and Plasma Chemistry—cont'd

Component	System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	**Factor***	**Recommended SI Units†**
Globulins, total	Serum	2.3–3.5 g/dL	10	23–35 g/L
Glucose, fasting	Serum or plasma	70–110 mg/dL	0.05551	3.9–6.1 mmol/L
	Whole blood	60–100 mg/dL		3.3–5.6 mmol/L
Glucose tolerance	Serum or plasma			
Oral	Fasting	70–110 mg/dL	0.05551	3.9–6.1 mmol/L
	30 min	30–60 mg/dL above fasting		1.7–3.3 mmol/L above fasting
	60 min	20–50 mg/dL above fasting		1.1–2.8 mmol/L above fasting
	120 min	5–15 mg/dL above fasting		0.3–0.8 mmol/L above fasting
	180 min	Fasting level or below	—	Fasting level or below
Intravenous	Serum or plasma			
	Fasting	70–110 mg/dL	0.05551	3.9–6.1 mmol/L
	5 min	Maximum of 250 mg/dL		Maximum of 13.9 mmol/L
	60 min	Significant decrease	—	Significant decrease
	120 min	Below 120 mg/dL	0.05551	Below 6.7 mmol/L
	180 min	Fasting level	—	Fasting level
Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD)	Erythrocytes	250–5000 units/10^6 cells	1	250–5000 µunits/cell
		1200–2000 mU/mL packed erythrocytes	1	1200–2000 U/L packed erythrocytes
γ-Glutamyltransferase	Serum	5–40 U/L	1	5–40 U/L at 37°C
Glutathione	Whole blood	24–37 mg/dL	0.03254	0.78–1.20 mmol/L
Growth hormone	Serum	<10 ng/mL	1	<10 µg/L
Guanase	Serum	<3 nmol/mL/min	1	<3 U/L at 37°C
Haptoglobin	Serum	60–270 mg/dL	0.01	0.6–2.7 g/L
Hemoglobin	Serum or plasma			
	Qualitative	Negative	—	Negative
	Quantitative	0.5–5 mg/dL	10	5–50 mg/L
	Whole blood			
	Female	12–16 g/dL	10	120–160 g/L
	Male	13.5–18 g/dL		135–180 g/L
α-Hydroxybutyrate dehydrogenase	Serum	140–350 U/mL	1	140–350 kU/L
17-Hydroxycorticosteroids	Plasma			
	Male	7–19 µg/dL	25.59¶	193–524 mmol/L
	Female	9–21 µg/dL		248–579 mmol/L
	After 24 USP units of ACTH intramuscularly	35–55 µg/dL		966–1517 nmol/L
Immunoglobulins	Serum			
IgG		800–1801 mg/dL	0.01	8–18 g/L
IgA		113–563 mg/dL		1.1–5.6 g/L
IgM		54–222 mg/dL		0.5–2.2 g/L
IgD		0.5–3 mg/dL	10	5–30 mg/L
IgE		0.01–0.04 mg/dL		0.1–0.4 mg/L
Insulin	Plasma bioassay	11–240 µU/mL	7.175‖	79–1722 pmol/L
	Radioimmunoassay	4–24 µU/mL		29–172 pmol/L
Insulin tolerance (0.1 unit/kg)	Serum			
	Fasting	Glucose of 70–110 mg/dL	0.05551	Glucose of 3.9–6.1 mmol/L
	30 min	Fall to 50% of fasting level	0.01	Fall to 0.5 of fasting level
	90 min	Fasting level	—	Fasting level
Iron, total	Serum	60–150 µg/dL	0.1791	10.7–26.9 µmol/L
Iron-binding capacity	Serum	250–400 µg/dL	0.1791	44.8–71.6 µmol/L
Iron saturation	Serum	20–55%	0.01	Fraction of total iron-binding capacity: 0.20–0.55
Isocitric dehydrogenase	Serum	50–240 U/mL at 25°C (Wolfson-Williams Ashman units)	0.0166	0.83–4.18 U/L at 25°C
Ketone bodies	Serum	Negative	—	Negative
17-Ketosteroids	Plasma	25–125 µg/dL	34.67**	866–4334 nmol/L
Lactic acid (as lactate)	Whole blood			
	Venous	5–20 mg/dL	0.1110	0.6–2.2 mmol/L
	Arterial	3–7 mg/dL		0.3–0.8 mmol/L
Lactate dehydrogenase (LD)	Serum	(lactate → pyruvate) 80–120 units at 30°C	0.48	38–62 U/L at 30°C
		(pyruvate → lactate) 185–640 units at 30°C	0.48	90–310 U/L at 30°C
		(lactate → pyruvate) 100–190 U/L at 37°C	1	100–190 U/L at 37°C
Lactate dehydrogenase isoenzymes	Serum			Fraction of total LD

TABLE A5-4

Whole Blood, Serum, and Plasma Chemistry—cont'd

Component	System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	**Factor***	**Recommended SI Units†**
LD_1 (anode)		17%–27%	0.01	0.17–0.27
LD_2		27%–37%		0.27–0.37
LD_3		18%–25%		0.18–0.25
LD_4		3%–8%		0.03–0.08
LD_5 (cathode)		0%–5%		0.00–0.05
Lactate dehydrogenase (heat stable)	Serum	30%–60% of total	0.01	Fraction of total LD: 0.30–0.6
Lactose tolerance	Serum	Serum glucose changes similar to glucose tolerance test	—	Serum glucose changes similar to glucose tolerance test
Lead	Whole blood	<50 µg/dL	0.04826	<2.41 µmol/L
Leucine aminopeptidase (LAP)	Serum			
	Male	80–200 U/mL (Goldbarg–Rutenberg)	0.24	19.2–48 U/L
	Female	75–185 U/mL (Goldbarg–Rutenberg)		18–44.4 U/L
Lipase	Serum	0–1.5 U/mL (Cherry–Crandall)	278	0–417 U/L
		14–280 mU/mL	1	14–280 U/L
Lipids, total	Serum	400–800 mg/dL	0.01	4–8 g/L
Cholesterol (see Chapter 17)		150–250 mg/dL	0.02586	3.88–6.47 mmol/L
Triglycerides (see Chapter 17)		10–90 mg/dL	0.01129††	0.11–2.15 mmol/L
Phospholipids		150–380 mg/dL	0.01	1.50–3.80 g/L
Fatty acids (free)		9–15 mmol/L	1	9–15 mmol/L
Phospholipid phosphorus		8–11 mg/dL	0.3229	2.58–3.55 mmol/L
Lithium	Serum	Negative	—	Negative
Therapeutic interval		0.5–1.4 mEq/L	1	0.5–1.4 mmol/L
Long-acting thyroid-stimulating hormone (LATS)	Serum	None detected	—	None detected
Luteinizing hormone (LH)	Serum			
	Male	6–30 mU/mL	1	6–30 U/L
	Female	Midcycle peak: 3× baseline value	—	Midcycle peak: 3× baseline value
		Premenopausal <30 mU/mL	1	Premenopausal <30 U/L
		Postmenopausal >35 mU/mL		Postmenopausal >35 U/L
Macroglobulins, total	Serum	70–430 mg/dL	0.01	0.7–4.3 g/L
Magnesium	Serum	1.3–2.1 mEq/L	0.5000	0.65–1.05 mmol/L
		1.8–3 mg/dL	0.4114	0.74–1.23 mmol/L
Methemoglobin	Whole blood	<0.24 g/dL	10	<2.4 g/L
		<1% of total hemoglobin	0.01	Fraction of total hemoglobin <0.01
Mucoprotein	Serum	80–200 mg/dL	0.01	0.8–2 g/L
Muramidase	Serum	4–13 mg/L	1	4–13 mg/L
Myoglobin	Serum	<90 µg/L	1	<90 µg/L
Nonprotein nitrogen (NPN)	Serum or plasma	20–35 mg/dL	0.7139	14.3–25 mmol/L
	Whole blood	25–50 mg/dL		17.8–35.7 mmol/L
5′-Nucleotidase	Serum	0–1.6 units at 37°C	1	0–1.6 units at 37°C
Ornithine carbamyl transferase	Serum	8–20 mU/mL at 37°C	1	8–20 U/L at 37°C
Osmolality	Serum	280–295 mOsm/kg	1	280–295 mmol/kg
Oxygen (see Chapter 14)				
Pressure (PO_2)	Whole blood (arterial)	95–100 mmHg	0.1333	2.7–13.3 kPa
Content	Whole blood (arterial)	15–23 volume	0.01	Volume fraction: 0.15–0.23
Saturation	Whole blood (arterial)	94–100%	0.01	Fraction saturated: 0.94–1
pH	Whole blood (arterial)	7.38–7.44	1	7.38–7.44
	Whole blood (venous)	7.36–7.41		7.36–7.41
	Serum or plasma (venous)	7.35–7.45		7.35–7.45
Phenylalanine	Serum			
	Adults	<3 mg/dL	60.54	<182 µmol/L
	Newborns (term)	1.2–3.5 mg/dL		73–212 µmol/L
Phosphatase				
Acid phosphatase	Serum	0.13–0.63 U/L at 37°C (*p*-nitrophenylphosphate)	16.67	2.2–10.5 U/L at 37°C
Alkaline phosphatase	Serum	20–130 U/L at 37°C (*p*-nitrophenylphosphate in AMP buffer)	1	20–130 U/L at 37°C
Phospholipid phosphorus (see Lipids, total)				

Continued

TABLE A5-4

Whole Blood, Serum, and Plasma Chemistry—cont'd

Component	System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	Factor*	Recommended SI Units†
Phospholipids (see Lipids, total)	Serum			
Phosphorus, inorganic	Adults	2.3–4.7 mg/dL	0.3229	0.74–1.52 mmol/L
	Children	4–7 mg/dL		1.29–2.26 mmol/L
Potassium	Plasma	3.8–5 mEq/L	1	3.8–5 mmol/L
Prolactin	Serum			
	Female	1–25 ng/mL	1	1–25 µg/L
	Male	1–20 ng/mL		1–20 µg/L
Proteins (see Chapter 19)	Serum			
Total		6–7.8 g/dL	10	60–78 g/L
Albumin		3.2–4.5 g/dL		32–45 g/L
Globulin		2.3–3.5 g/dL		23–35 g/L
Protein fractionation, see Electrophoresis				
Protoporphyrin	Erythrocytes	15–50 mg/dL	0.01777	0.27–0.89 µmol/L
Pyruvate	Whole blood	0.3–0.9 mg/dL	113.6	34–102 µmol/L
Salicylates	Serum	Negative	—	Negative
Therapeutic interval		15–30 mg/dL	0.07240	1.08–2.17 mmol/L
Sodium	Plasma	136–142 mEq/L	1	136–142 mmol/L
Sulfate, inorganic	Serum	0.2–1.3 mEq/L	0.5	0.10–0.65 mmol/L
		0.9–6 in mg/dL as SO_4^{-2}	0.1042	0.09–0.63 mmol/L as SO_4^{-2}
Sulfhemoglobin	Whole blood	Negative	—	Negative
Sulfonamides	Serum or whole blood	Negative	—	Negative
Testosterone	Serum or plasma			
	Male	300–1200 ng/dL	0.03467	10.4–41.6 nmol/L
	Female	30–95 ng/dL		1–3.3 mmol/L
Thiocyanate	Serum	Negative	—	Negative
Thyroid hormone tests (see Chapter 24)	Serum			
Thyroxine, total (T4)		5.5–12.5 µg/dL	12.87	71–161 nmol/L
Thyroxine, free (FT4)		0.9–2.3 ng/dL	12.87	12–30 pmol/L
T3 resin uptake		25–38 relative % uptake	0.01	Relative uptake fraction: 0.25–0.38
Thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG)	Serum	10–26 µg/dL	10	100–260 µg/L
Thyrotropin (TSH)	Serum	0.5–5 µU/mL	1	0.5–5 µU/L
Triiodothyronine (T3)		80–200 mg/dL	0.0154	1.23–3 of nmol/L
Transferases				
Aspartate amino transferase (AST or SGOT)	Serum	8–33 U/L at 37°C	1	8–33 U/L at 37°C
Alanine amino transferase (ALT or SGPT)	Serum	4–36 U/L at 37°C	1	4–36 U/L at 37°C
γ Glutamyl transferase (GGT)		5–40 U/L at 37°C	1	5–40 U/L at 37°C
Triglycerides (see Chapter 17)	Serum	10–190 mg/dL	0.01129††	0.11–2.15 mmol/L
Troponin I	Serum	<2 mg/mL		0–0.6 µg/L
				0–0.1 µg/L
Urea nitrogen	Serum	8–23 mg/dL	0.357	2.9–8.2 mmol/L
Urea clearance	Serum and urine			
Maximum clearance		64–99 mL/min	0.01667	1.07–1.65 L/s
Standard clearance		41–65 mL/min, or more than 75% of normal clearance		0.68–1.08 L/s or more than 0.75 of normal clearance
Uric acid	Serum			
	Male	4–8.5 mg/dL	0.05948	0.24–0.51 mmol/L
	Female	2.7–7.3 mg/dL		0.16–0.43 mmol/L
Vitamin A	Serum	15–60 µg/dL	0.03491	0.52–2.09 µmol/L
Vitamin A tolerance	Serum	15–60 µg/dL	0.03491	0.52–2.09 µmol/L
	Fasting 3 hr or 6 hr after 5000 units vitamin A/kg	200–600 µg/dL	0.03491	6.98–20.95 µmol/L
	24 hr	Fasting values or slightly above	—	Fasting values or slightly above
Vitamin B_{12}	Serum	160–950 pg/mL	0.7378	118–701 pmol/L
Unsaturated vitamin B_{12}-binding capacity	Serum	1000–2000 pg/mL	0.7378	738–1475 pmol/L
Vitamin C	Plasma	0.6–1.6 mg/dL	56.78	34–91 µmol/L

TABLE A5-4

Whole Blood, Serum, and Plasma Chemistry—cont'd

Component	System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	**Factor***	**Recommended SI Units†**
Xylose absorption	Serum normal in malabsorption	25–40 mg/dL 1–2 hr Maximum ≈10 mg/dL Dose: adult 25 g D-xylose; children 0.5 g D-xylose/kg	0.06661	1.67–2.66 mmol/L 1–2 h Maximum ≈0.67 mmol/L
Zinc	Serum	50–150 µg/dL	0.1530	7.7–23 µmol/L

*Factor = number factor (note that units are not presented).
†Value in SI units = value in conventional units × factor.
‡Usually not measured in blood (preferred specimen is urine, hair, or nails except in acute cases, when gastric contents are used).
§Unit based on hydrogen ion concentration.
¶As cortisol.
‖1 International unit of insulin corresponds to 0.04167 mg of the 4th International Standard (a mixture of 52% beef insulin and 48% pig insulin).
**As DHEA.
††As triolein.

TABLE A5-5

Urine

Component	Type of Urine System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	**Factor***	**Recommended SI Units†**
Acetoacetic acid	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Acetone	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Addis count	12 hr collection	WBC and epithelial cells: 1,800,000/12 hr	1	1.8×10^6 /12 hr
		RBC 500,000/12 hr	1	0.5×10^6 /12 hr
		Hyaline casts: <5000/12 hr	1	$<5 \times 10^3$ /12 hr
Albumin				
Qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Quantitative	24 hr	15–150 mg/day	0.001	0.015–0.150 g/day
Aldosterone	24 hr	2–26 µg/day	2.774	6–72 nmol/day
Alkapton bodies	Random	Negative	—	Negative
α-Amino acid nitrogen	24 hr	100–290 mg/day	0.07139	7.1–20.7 mmol/day
δ-Aminolevulinic acid	Random			
	Adults	0.1–0.6 mg/dL	76.26	8–46 µmol/L
	Children	<0.5 mg/dL		<38 µmol/L
	24 hr	1.5–7.5 mg/day	7.626	11–57 µmol/day
Ammonia nitrogen	24 hr	20–70 mEq/day	1	20–70 mmol/day
		500–1200 mg/day	0.07139	35.6–85.7 mmol/day
Amylase	2 hr	35–260 Somogyi units/hr	0.1850	6.5–48.1 U/hr
Arsenic	24 hr	<50 µg/L	0.01335	<0.67 µmol/L
Ascorbic acid	Random	1–7 mg/dL	56.78	57–397 µmol/L
	24 hr	>50 mg/day	5.678	>284 µmol/day
Bence Jones protein	Negative	—	Negative	
Beryllium	24 hr	<0.05 µg/day	111	<5.55 nmol/day
Bilirubin, qualitative	Negative	—	Negative	
Blood, occult	Negative	—	Negative	
Borate	24 hr	<2 mg/L	16.44	<32 µmol/L
Calcium				
Qualitative (Sulkowitch)	Random	1 + turbidity	1	1 + turbidity
Quantitative	24 hr			
	Average diet	100–240 mg/day	0.02495	2.5–6 mmol/day
	Low-calcium diet	<150 mg/day		<3.7 mmol/day
	High-calcium diet	240–300 mg/day		6–7.5 mmol/day
Catecholamines	Random	<14 µg/dL	59.11*	<828 nmol/L
	24 hr	<100 µg/day (varies with activity)	5.911*	<591 nmol/day
Epinephrine		<10 ng/day	5.458	<55 nmol/day
Norepinephrine		<100 ng/day	5.911	<591 nmol/day
Total free catecholamines		4–126 µg/day	5.911*	24–745 nmol/day
Total metanephrines		0.1–1.6 mg/day	5.458†	0.5–8.7 µmol/day
Chloride	24 hr	140–250 mEq/day	1	140–250 nmol/day
Concentration test (Fishberg)	Random—after fluid restriction			

Continued

TABLE A5-5
Urine—cont'd

Component	Type of Urine System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	**Factor***	**Recommended SI Units†**
Specific gravity		>1.025	1	>1.025
Osmolality		>850 mOsm/kg	1	>850 mmol/kg
Copper	24 hr	<50 µg/day	0.01574	<0.8 µmol/day
Coproporphyrin	Random			
	Adult	3–20 µg/dL	15.27	46–305 nmol/L
	24 hr			
	Adult	50–160 µg/day	1.527	76–244 nmol/day
	Children	<80 µg/day		<122 nmol/day
Creatine	24 hr			
	Male	<40 mg/day	7.625	<305 µmol/day
	Female	<100 mg/day		<763 µmol/day
		Higher in children and during pregnancy	—	Higher in children and during pregnancy
Creatinine	24 hr			
	Male	20–26 mg/kg/day	8.840	177–230 µmol/kg/day
		1–2 g/day	8.840	8.8–17.7 mmol/day
	Female	14–22 mg/kg/day	8.840	124–195 µmol/kg/day
		0.8–1.8 g/day	8.840	7.1–15.9 mmol/day
Cystine, qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Cystine and cysteine	24 hr	10–100 mg/day	4.161‡	42–416 µmol/day
Dehydroepiandrosterone	24 hr			
	Male	0.2–2 mg/day	3.467	0.7–6.9 µmol/day
	Female	0.2–1.8 mg/day		0.7–6.2 µmol/day
Diacetic acid	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Epinephrine	24 hr	<20 µg/day	5.458	<109 nmol/day
Estrogens, total	24 hr			
	Male	5–18 µg/day	3.468§	17–62 nmol/day
	Female			
	Ovulation	28–100 µg/day	3.468	97–347 nmol/day
	Luteal peak	22–80 µg/day		76–364 nmol/day
	At menses	4–25 µg/day		14–87 nmol/day
	Pregnancy	Up to 45,000 µg/day	0.003468	Up to 156 µmol/day
	Postmenopausal	Up to 10 µg/day	3.468	Up to 35 nmol/day
Estrogens, fractionated	24 hr, nonpregnant, midcycle			
Estrone (E1)	—	2–25 µg/day	3.699	7–93 nmol/day
Estradiol (E2)	—	<10 µg/day	3.671	<37 nmol/day
Estriol (E3)	—	2–30 µg/day	3.468	7–104 nmol/day
Etiocholanolone	24 hr			
	Male	1.4–5 mg/day	3.443	4.8–17.2 µmol/day
	Female	0.8–4 mg/day		2.8–13.8 µmol/day
Fat, qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
FIGLU (*N*-formiminoglutamic acid)	24 hr	<3 mg/day	5.740	<7.2 µmol/day
	After 15 g of l-histidine	4 mg/8 hr		23 µmol/8 hr
Fluoride	24 hr	<1 mg/day	52.63	<53 µmol/day
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	24 hr			
	Adult	4–25 U/L	1	4–25 U/L
	Prepubertal	4–30 U/L	1	4–30 U/L
	Postmenopausal	40–50 U/L	1	40–50 U/L
	Midcycle	2 × baseline	1	2 × baseline
Fructose	24 hr	30–65 mg/day	0.005551	0.17–0.36 mmol/day
Glucose, qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Glucose, quantitative	24 hr			
Copper-reducing substances		0.5–1.5 g/day	1	0.5–1.5 g/day
Total sugars		Average 250 mg/day	1	Average 250 mg/day
Glucose		Average 130 mg/day	0.005551	Average 0.72 mmol/day
Gonadotropins, pituitary (FSH and LH)	24 hr	10–50 U/L	1	10–50 U/day
11-Hydroxyandrosterone	24 hr			
	Male	0.1–0.8 mg/day	3.263	0.3–2.6 µmol/day
	Female	<0.5 mg/day		<1.6 µmol/day
11-Hydroxyetiocholanolone	24 hr			
	Male	0.2–0.6 mg/day	3.26	0.7–2 µmol/day
	Female	0.1–1.1 mg/day		0.3–3.63 µmol/day

TABLE A5-5
Urine—cont'd

Component	Type of Urine System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	Factor*	Recommended SI Units†
11-Ketoandrosterone	24 hr			
	Male	0.2–1 mg/day	3.274	0.7–3.3 µmol/day
	Female	0.2–0.8 mg/day		0.7–2.6 µmol/day
11-Ketoetiocholanolone	24 hr			
	Male	0.2–1 mg/day	3.274	0.7–3.3 µmol/day
	Female	0.2–0.8 mg/day		0.7–2.6 µmol/day
Lactose	24 hr	14–40 mg/day	2.291	41–117 µmol/day
Lead	24 hr	<100 µg/day	0.004826	<0.48 µmol/day
Magnesium	24 hr	6–8.5 mEq/day	0.5000	3–4.3 mmol/day
Melanin, qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Mucin	24 hr	100–150 mg/day	1	100–150 mg/day
Muramidase (lysozyme)	24 hr	1.3–36 mg/day	1	1.3–36 mg/day
Myoglobin	24 hr	14–40 mg/day	2.291	41–117 µmol/day
Qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Quantitative	24 hr	<4 mg/L	1	<4 mg/L
Osmolality	Random	500–800 mOsm/kg water	1	500–800 mmol/kg
Pentoses	24 hr	2–5 mg/kg/day	1	2–5 mg/kg/day
pH	Random	4.6–8	1	4.6–8
Phenolsulfonphthalein (PSP)	Urine timed after 6 mg PSP IV			Fraction dye excreted:
	15 min	20%–50% dye excreted	0.01	0.20–0.50
	30 min	16%–24% dye excreted		0.16–0.24
	60 min	9%–17% dye excreted		0.09–0.17
	120 min	3%–10% dye excreted		0.03–0.10
Phenylpyruvic acid, qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Phosphorus	Random	0.9–1.3 g/day	32.29	29–42 mmol/day
Porphobilinogen				
Qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Quantitative	24 hr	<1 mg/day	4.420	<4.4 µmol/day
Potassium	24 hr	40–80 mEq/day	1	40–80 mmol/day
Pregnancy tests	Concentrated morning specimen	Positive in normal pregnancies or with tumors producing chorionic gonadotropin	—	Positive in normal pregnancies or with tumors producing chorionic gonadotropin
Pregnanediol	24 hr			
	Male	<1.5 mg/day	3.120	<4.7 µmol/day
	Female	1–8 mg/day	3.120	3–25 µmol/day
	Peak	1 week after ovulation	—	1 week after ovulation
	Pregnancy	<50 mg/day	3.120	<156 µmol/day
	Children	Negative	—	Negative
Pregnanetriol	24 hr			
	Male	0.4–2.4 mg/day	2.972	1.2–7 µmol/day
	Female	0.5–2 mg/day		1.5–5.9 µmol/day
	Children	Up to 1 mg/day		Up to 3 µmol/day
Protein, qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
	24 hr	40–150 mg/day	1	40–150 mg/day
Reducing substances, total	24 hr	0.5–1.5 mg/day	1	0.5–1.5 mg/day
Sodium	24 hr	75–200 mEq/day	1	75–200 mmol/day
Solids, total	24 hr	55–70 g/day	1	55–70 g/day
		Decreases with age to 30 g/day	—	Decreases with age to 30 g/day
Specific gravity	Random			Relative density (U 20°C/water 20°C):
		1.016–1.022 (normal fluid intake)	1	1.016–1.022 (normal fluid intake)
		1.001–1.035 (range)		1.001–1.035 (range)
Sugars (excluding glucose)	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Titratable acidity	24 hr	20–50 mEq/day	1	20–50 mmol/day
Urea nitrogen	24 hr	6–17 g/day	35.70	214–607 mmol/day
Uric acid	24 hr	250–750 mg/day	0.005948	1.5–4.5 mmol/day
Urobilinogen	2 hr	0.3–1 Ehrlich units	1	0.3–1 U
	24 hr	0.05–2.5 mg/day or	1.693	0.1–4.2 µmol/day
		0.5–4 Ehrlich units/day	1	0.5–4 U/day
Uropepsin	Random	15–45 units/hr (Anson)	7.37	111–332 U/hr
	24 hr	1500–5000 units/day (Anson)		11–37 kU/hr

Continued

TABLE A5-5
Urine—cont'd

Component	Type of Urine System	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
		Conventional Units	Factor*	Recommended SI Units†
Uroporphyrins				
Qualitative	Random	Negative	—	Negative
Quantitative	24 hr	10–30 µg/day	1.204	12–36 nmol/day
Vanillylmandelic acid (VMA)	24 hr	1.5–7.5 mg/day	5.046	7.6–37.9 µmol/day
Volume, total	24 hr	600–1600 mL/day	0.001	0.6–1.6 L/day
Zinc	24 hr	0.15–1.2 mg/day	15.30	2.3–18.4 µmol/day

*As norepinephrine.
†As normetanephrine.
‡Based on cystine.
§Based on estriol.

TABLE A5-6
Synovial Fluid

Component	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
	Conventional Units	Factor	Recommended SI Units
Blood-serum-synovial fluid glucose difference	<10 mg/dL	0.05551	<0.56 mmol/L
Differential cell count	Granulocytes <25% of nucleated cells	0.01	Granulocyte number fraction: <0.25 of nucleated cells
Fibrin clot	Absent	—	Absent
Mucin clot	Abundant	—	Abundant
Nucleated cell count	<200 cells/µL	10^6	$<200 \times 10^6$ cells/L
Viscosity	High	—	High
Volume	<3.5 mL	0.001	<0.0035 L

TABLE A5-7
Seminal Fluid

Component	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
	Conventional Units	Factor	Recommended SI Units
Liquefaction	Within 20 min		Within 20 min
Sperm morphology	>70% normal, mature spermatozoa	0.01	Number fraction: >0.70 normal, mature spermatozoa
Sperm motility	>60%	0.01	Number fraction: >0.60
pH	>7 (average 7.7)	1	>7 (average 7.7)
Sperm count	$60–150 \times 10^6$/mL	10^3	$60–150 \times 10^9$/L
Volume	1.5–5 mL	0.001	0.0015–0.005 L

TABLE A5-8
Gastric Fluid

Component	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
	Conventional Units	Factor	Recommended SI Units
Fasting residual volume	20–100 mL	0.001	0.02–0.10 L
pH	<2	1	<2
Basal acid output (BAO)*	0–6 mEq/hr	1	0–6 mmol/hr
Maximum acid output (MAO) (after histamine stimulation)	5–40 mEq/hr	1	5–40 mmol/hr
BAO/MAO ratio	<0.4	1	<0.4

*Varies between male and female and ages.

TABLE A5-9

Hematology

Component	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS				
	Conventional Units		**Factor**	**Recommended SI Units**	
Red cell volume					
Male	20–36 mL/kg body weight		0.001	0.020–0.036 L/kg body weight	
Female	19–32 mL/kg body weight			0.019–0.032 L/kg body weight	
Plasma volume					
Male	25–43 mL/kg body weight		0.001	0.025–0.043 L/kg body weight	
Female	28–45 mL/kg body weight			0.028–0.045 L/kg body weight	
Coagulation and hemostatic tests					
Bleeding time	Depends on location and orientation of cut and on particular device, typically 2–8 min				
Activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT)	Depends on activator and phospholipid reagents used, typically 25–35 s				
Antithrombin IIII					
Immunologic	20–30 mg/dL		10	200–300 mg/L	
Functional	80–120 U/dL		10	800–1200 U/L	
Clot lysis time					
Euglobulin factor	1.5–4 hr at 37°C				
Whole blood	None by 24 hr at 37°C				
Clot retraction	Complete by 4 hr at 37°C				
Coagulation factors	0.50–1.50 μ/mL		1000	500–1500 U/L	
Factor XIII (screening test)	Clot insoluble in 5 mol/L urea at 24 hr				
Fibrinogen	200–400 mg/dL		0.01	2–4 g/L	
Fibrin(ogen) degradation products					
Serum FDP	<10 μg/mL		1	<10 mg/L	
Plasma D-dimers	<200 ng/mL		1	<200 μg/L	
Plasminogen					
Immunologic	10–20 mg/dL		10	100–200 mg/L	
Functional	80–120 U/dL		10	800–1200 U/L	
Protein C	0.7–1.4 μ/mL		10	700–1400 U/L	
Protein S (total)	0.7–1.4 μ/mL		10	700–1400 U/L	
Prothrombin time	Depends on thromboplastin reagent used, typically 10–13 s				
Thrombin time	Depends on concentration of thrombin reagent used, typically 17–25 s				
von Willebrand factor					
Immunologic	50–150 U/dL		10	500–1500 U/L	
Ristocetin cofactor activity	50–150 U/dL			500–1500 U/L	
Complete blood count (CBC)					
Hematocrit				Volume fraction:	
Male	41.5%–50.4%		0.01	0.415–0.504	
Female	35.9%–44.6%			0.359–0.446	
Hemoglobin					
Male	14–17.5 g/dL		10	140–175 g/L	
Female	12.3–15.3 g/dL			123–153 g/L	
Red cell count					
Male	$4.5–5.9 \times 10^6/\mu L$		10^6	$4.5–5.9 \times 10^{12}/L$	
Female	$4.5–5.1 \times 10^6/\mu L$			$4.1–5.1 \times 10^{12}/L$	
White cell count	$4.4–11 \times 10^3/\mu L$		10^6	$4.4–11.3 \times 10^9/L$	
Erythrocyte indices					
Mean corpuscular volume (MCV)	80–96 μm^3		1	80–96 fL	
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH)	27.5–33.2 pg		1	27.5–33.2 pg	
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC)	33.4%–35.5%		0.01	Concentration fraction: 0.334–0.355	
White blood cell differential (adult)	Mean %	Range of absolute counts		Mean number fraction*	Range of absolute counts
Segmented neutrophils	56	1800–7800/μL	10^6	0.56	$1.8–7.8 \times 10^9/L$
Bands	3	0–700/μL		0.03	$0–0.70 \times 10^9/L$
Eosinophils	2.7	0–450/μL		0.027	$0–0.45 \times 10^9/L$
Basophils	0.3	0–200/μL		0.003	$0–0.20 \times 10^9/L$
Lymphocytes	34	1000–4800/μL		0.34	$1.0–4.8 \times 10^9/L$
Monocytes	4	0–800/μL		0.04	$0–0.80 \times 10^9/L$

Continued

TABLE A5-9

Hematology—cont'd

Component	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS						
	Conventional Units			**Factor**	**Recommended SI Units**		
Hemoglobin A2	1.5%–3.5% of total hemoglobin			0.01	Mass fraction: 0.015–0.035 of total hemoglobin		
Hemoglobin F	<2%			0.01	Mass fraction: <0.02		
Osmotic fragility		% Lysis				Lysed Fraction	
	% (w/v) NaCl	Fresh	24 hr at 37°C	% NaCl – 171 % Lysis – 0.01	NaCl mmol/L	Fresh	24 hr at 37°C
	0.2	—	95–100		34.2	—	0.95–1
	0.3	97–100	85–100		51.3	0.97–1.00	0.85–1
	0.35	90–99	75–100		59.8	0.90–0.99	0.75–1
	0.4	50–95	65–100		68.4	0.50–0.95	0.65–1
	0.45	5–45	55–95		77.0	0.05–0.45	0.55–0.95
	0.5	0.6	40–85		85.5	0–0.06	0.40–0.85
	0.55	—	15–70		94.1	0	0.15–0.70
	0.6	—	0–40		102.6	—	0–0.40
	0.65	—	0–10		111.2	—	0–0.10
	0.7	—	0–5		119.7	—	0–0.05
	0.75	—	95–100		128.3	—	0
Platelet count	150,000–450,000/µL			10^6	150–450×10^9/L		
Reticulocyte count	0.5%–1.5% 25,000–75,000 cells/µL			0.01 10^6	Number fraction: 0.005–0.015 25–75×10^9/L		
Sedimentation rate (ESR) (Westergren)							
Men younger than 50 yr	<15 mm/hr						
Men 50–85 yr	<20 mm/hr						
Men older than 85 yr	<30 mm/hr						
Women younger than 50 yr	<20 mm/hr						
Women 50–85 yr	<30 mm/hr						
Women older than 85 yr	<42 mm/hr						
Viscosity	1.4–1.8 times water			1	1.4–1.8 times water		
Zeta sedimentation ratio	41%–54%			0.01	Fraction: 0.41–0.54		

*All percentages are multiplied by 0.01 to give fraction.

TABLE A5-10

Amniotic Fluid

Component	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
	Conventional Units	**Factor**	**Recommended SI Units**
Appearance			
Early gestation	Clear	—	Clear
Term	Clear or slightly opalescent	—	Clear or slightly opalescent
Albumin			
Early gestation	0.39 g/dL	10	3.9 g/L
Term	0.19 g/dL		1.9 g/L
Bilirubin			
Early gestation	<0.075 mg/dL	17.10	<1.3 µmol/L
Term	<0.025 mg/dL		<0.41 µmol/L
Chloride			
Early gestation	Approximately equal to serum chloride	—	Approximately equal to serum chloride
Term	Generally 1–3 mEq/L lower than serum chloride	1	Generally 1–3 mmol/L lower than serum chloride
Creatinine			
Early gestation	0.8–1.1 mg/dL	88.40	71–97 µmol/L
Term	1.8–4 mg/dL (generally >2 mg/dL)		159–354 µmol/L (generally >177 µmol/L)
Estriol			
Early gestation	<10 µg/dL	3.468	<347 nmol/L
Term	<60 µg/dL		>2081 nmol/L
Lecithin: sphingomyelin			
Early (immature)	<1:1	1	<1:1

TABLE A5-10
Amniotic Fluid—cont'd

Component	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
	Conventional Units	**Factor**	**Recommended SI Units**
Term (mature)	>2:1		>2:1
Osmolality			
Early gestation	Approximately equal to serum osmolality	—	Approximately equal to serum osmolality
Term	230–270 mOsm/kg	1	230–270 mmol/kg
P_{CO_2}			
Early gestation	33–55 mm Hg	0.1333	4.4–7.3 kPa
Term	42–55 mm Hg (increases toward term)		5.6–7.3 kPa (increases toward term)
pH			
Early gestation	7.12–7.38	1	7.12–7.38
Term	6.91–7.43 (decreases toward term)		6.91–7.43
Protein, total			
Early gestation	0.60 ± 0.24 g/dL	10	60 ± 2.4 g/L
Term	0.26 ± 0.19 g/dL		2.6 ± 1.9 g/L
Sodium			
Early gestation	Approximately equal to serum sodium	—	Approximately equal to serum sodium
Term	7–10 mEq/L lower than serum sodium	1	7–10 mmol/L lower than serum sodium
Staining, cytologic			
Oil Red O			
Early gestation	Stained fraction: <10%	0.01	Stained fraction: <0.1
Term	Stained fraction: >50%		>0.5
Nile blue sulfate			
Early gestation	Stained fraction: 0	0.01	Stained fraction: <0.0
Term	Stained fraction: >20%		>0.2
Urea			
Early gestation	18 ± 5.9 mg/dL	0.1665	3.00 ± 0.98 mmol/L
Term	30.3 ± 11.4 mg/dL		5.04 ± 1.90 mmol/L
Uric acid			
Early gestation	3.72 ± 0.96 mg/dL	59.48	221 ± 57 μmol/L
Term	9.90 ± 2.23 mg/dL		589 ± 133 μmol/L
Volume			
Early gestation	450–1200 mL	0.001	0.45–1.2 L
Term	500–1400 mL (increases toward term)		0.5–1.4 L (increases toward term)

TABLE A5-11
Cerebrospinal Fluid

Component	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS		
	Conventional Units	**Factor**	**Recommended SI Units**
Albumin	<10–30 mg/dL	10	100–300 mg/L
Cell count	<5 cells/μL	10^6	<5 × 10^6/L
Glucose	40–80 mg/dL	0.05551	2.8–4.4 mmol/L
Lactate dehydrogenase (LD)	Approximately 10% of serum level	—	Activity fraction: approximately 0.1 of serum level
Proteins	12–60 mg/dL	10	120–600 mg/L
Protein electrophoresis			Fraction:
Prealbumin	2%–7%	0.01	0.2–0.07
Albumin	56%–76%		0.56–0.76
α-1 Globulin	2%–7%		0.02–0.07
α-2 Globulin	4%–12%		0.04–0.12
β Globulin	8%–18%		0.08–0.18
γ Globulin	3%–12%		0.03–0.12
Xanthochromia	Negative	—	Negative

TABLE A5-12
Miscellaneous

Component	Specimen	TYPICAL REFERENCE INTERVALS Conventional Units	Factor	Recommended SI Units
Bile, qualitative	Random stool	Negative in adults Positive in children	— —	Negative in adults Positive in children
Chloride	Sweat	4–60 mEq/L	1	4–60 mmol/L
Clearances	Serum and urine (timed)			
	Creatinine, endogenous	115 ± 20 mL/min	0.01667	1.92 ± 0.33 mL/s
	Diodrast	600–720 mL/min		10–12 mL/s
	Inulin	100–150 mL/min		1.67–2.50 mL/s
	PAH	600–750 mL/min		10–12.50 mL/s
Diagnex blue (tubeless gastric analysis)	Urine	Free acid present	—	Free acid present
Fat	Stool, 72 hr			
	Total fat	<5 g/24 hr	1	<5 g/day
		10%–25% of dry matter	0.01	Mass fraction: 0.1–0.25 of dry matter
	Neutral fat	1%–5% of dry matter		0.01–0.05 of dry matter
	Free fatty acids	5%–13% of dry matter		0.05–0.13 of dry matter
	Combined fatty acids	5%–15% of dry matter		0.05–0.15 of dry matter
Nitrogen, total	Stool, 24 hr	10% of intake		Mass fraction: 0.1 of intake
		1–2 g/24 hr	71.39	71–143 mmol/day
Sodium	Sweat	10–80 mEq/L	1	10–80 mmol/L
Trypsin activity	Random, fresh stool	Positive (2+ to 4+)	—	Positive (2+ to 4+)
Thyroid iodine-131 uptake		7.5%–25% in 6 hr	0.01	Fraction uptake: 0.075–0.25 in 6 hr
Urobilinogen				
Qualitative	Random stool	Positive	—	Positive
Quantitative	Stool, 24 hr	40–200 mg/24 hr 80–280 Ehrlich units/24 hr	1.693	68–339 µmol/day

TABLE A5-13
Selected Pediatric Reference Values

Parameter	Value	
S-Acid phosphatase		
Newborn	7.4–19.4 U/L	
2–13 yr	6.4–15.2 U/L	
S-Aldolase		
Newborn	to 4× adult value	
Child	to 2× adult value	
S-Alkaline phosphatase		
Newborn	40–300 U/L	
Child	60–270 U/L	
S-α-fetoprotein		
Newborn	Up to 150 mg/L or higher	
1–2 yr	Up to 87 mg/L	
S-Amylase		
Newborn	Little, if any, amylase activity	
1 yr	Adult values	
S-Aspartate aminotransferase		
Newborn	16–74 U/L	
1–3 yr	6–30 U/L	
S-Bilirubin, newborn	Preterm	Full-term
24 hr	17–103 µmol/L (10–60 mg/L)	34–103 µmol/L (20–60 mg/L)
48 hr	17–103 µmol/L (10–60 mg/L)	103–120 µmol/L (60–70 mg/L)
3–5 day	171–257 µmol/L (100–150 mg/L)	68–205 µmol/L (40–120 mg/L)
S-Calcium		
Preterm, first week	1.50–2.50 mmol/L (60–100 mg/L)	
Full-term, first week	1.75–3 mmol/L (70–120 mg/L)	
1–2 yr	2.50–3 mmol/L (100–120 mg/L)	
2–16 yr	2.25–2.87 mmol/L (90–115 mg/L)	
U-Catecholamines	Norepinephrine:	Epinephrine:
1 yr	30–90 nmol/day (5.4–15.9 µg/day)	1–23 nmol/day (0.1–4.3 µg/day)
1–5 yr	50–180 nmol/day (8.1–30.8 µg/day)	4–50 nmol/day (0.8–9.1 µg/day)
6–15 yr	110–420 nmol/day (19–71.1 µg/day)	7–339 nmol/day (1.3–10.5 µg/day)
>15 yr	200–510 nmol/day (34.4–87 µg/day)	19–72 nmol/day (3.5–13.2 µg/day)

TABLE A5-13
Selected Pediatric Reference Values—cont'd

Parameter	Value
U-Chloride (varies with chloride intake)	
Infant	1.7–8.5 mmol/day
Child	17–34 mmol/day
S-Cholesterol	
Cord blood	1.2–2.5 mmol/L (460–980 mg/L)
1–2 yr	1.8–4.9 mmol/L (700–1900 mg/L)
2–16 yr	3.5–6.5 mmol/L (1350–2500 mg/L)
U-Cortisol (free)	
4 mo–10 yr	6–74 nmol/day (2–27 µg/day)
11–20 yr	2–152 nmol/day (0.7–55 µg/day)
S-Creatine kinase	
Newborn	3× adult values
3 wk–3 mo	1.5× adult values
>1 yr	Adult values
S-Creatinine	Upper reference value:
Up to 5 yr	44 µmol/L (5 mg/L)
Up to 6 yr	53 µmol/L (6 mg/L)
Up to 7 yr	62 µmol/L (7 mg/L)
Up to 8 yr	71 µmol/L (8 mg/L)
Up to 9 yr	80 µmol/L (9 mg/L)
Up to 10 yr	88 µmol/L (10 mg/L)
>10 yr	106 µmol/L (12 mg/L)
S-Estradiol	
0–2 yr	0–26 pmol/L (0–7 pg/mL)
2–4 yr	0–26 pmol/L (0–7 pg/mL)
4–6 yr	0–51 pmol/L (0–14 pg/mL)
6–8 yr	0–37 pmol/L (0–10 pg/mL)
8–10 yr	0–367 pmol/L (0–100 pg/mL)
10–12 yr	0–367 pmol/L (0–100 pg/mL)
12–14 yr	0–367 pmol/L (0–100 pg/mL)
14–16 yr	26–385 pmol/L (7–105 pg/mL)
16–26 yr	26–1175 pmol/L (7–320 pg/mL)
Fecal fat	
Preterm newborn	Up to 0.40 excreted
Full-term newborn	Up to 0.20 excreted
3 mo–1 yr	Up to 0.15 excreted
1 yr	Up to 0.085 excreted
P-Nonesterified fatty acids	
Newborn	0–1845 mmol/L
4 mo–10 yr	300–1100 mmol/L
S-Glucose	
Preterm newborn	1.1–3.6 mmol/L (200–656 mg/L)
Full–term newborn	1.1–6.1 mmol/L (200–1100 mg/L)
Child	3.3–5.8 mmol/L (600–1050 mg/L)
S-γ-Glutamyltransferase	
Premature newborn	56–233 U/L
Newborn–3 wk	10–103 U/L
3 wk–3 mo	4–111 U/L
1–5 yr	2–23 U/L
6–15 yr	2–23 U/L
16 yr–adult	2–35 U/L
S-Haptoglobin	
Newborn	Detectable haptoglobin in only 0.1–0.2
≥1 yr	Adult values
S-Immunoglobulin G	
0–5 wk	7500–15,000 mg/L
6 mo	1500–7000 mg/L
1 yr	1400–10,300 mg/L
5 yr	3700–15,000 mg/L
10 yr	4400–15,500 mg/L
S-Immunoglobulin A	
0–5 wk	None
6 mo	200–1300 mg/L
1 yr	200–1300 mg/L
5 yr	300–2000 mg/L
10 yr	500–2300 mg/L
0–5 wk	None

Continued

TABLE A5-13
Selected Pediatric Reference Values—cont'd

Parameter	Value	
S-Immunoglobulin M		
0–5 wk	<200 mg/L	
6 mo	300–600 mg/L	
1 yr	300–1600 mg/L	
5 yr	200–2200 mg/L	
10 yr	300–1700 mg/L	
Inulin clearance		
<1 mo	29–88 mL/min per 1.73 m^2 of body surface	
1–6 mo	40–112 mL/min per 1.73 m^2 of body surface	
6–12 mo	62–121 mL/min per 1.73 m^2 of body surface	
>1 yr	78–164 mL/min per 1.73 m^2 of body surface	
U-17-Ketosteroids*		
0–3 day	0–0.2 µmol/day (0–0.5 mg/day)	
1–3 yr	<7.0 µmol/day (<2.0 mg/day)	
3–6 yr	2–10 µmol/day (0.5–3.0 mg/day)	
6–9 yr	3–14 µmol/day (0.8–4.0 mg/day)	
	Male	Female
10–12 yr	2–21 µmol/day (0.7–6.0 mg/day)	2–17 µmol/day (0.7–5.0 mg/day)
Adolescent	10–52 µmol/day (3–15 mg/day)	10–42 µmol/day (3–12 mg/day)
S-Lactate dehydrogenase		
1–3 day	Up to 2× → adult values	
S-Phosphorus (inorganic)		
Preterm newborn	1.81–2.58 mmol/L (56.0–80.0 mg/L)	
6–10 day	1.97–3.78 mmol/L (61–117 mg/L)	
4 mo	1.55–2.62 mmol/L (48–81 mg/L)	
1 yr	1.26–1.94 mmol/L (39–60 mg/L)	
2–16 yr	0.84–1.61 mmol/L (26–50 mg/L)	
S-Potassium		
Preterm newborn	4.5–7.2 mmol/L	
Full-term newborn	5.0–7.7 mmol/L	
2 day–2 wk	4.0–6.4 mmol/L	
2 wk–3 mo	4.0–6.2 mmol/L	
3 mo–1 yr	3.7–5.6 mmol/L	
1–16 yr	3.6–5.2 mmol/L	
S-Testosterone	Male	Female
0–2 yr	0.14–1.28 nmol/L (0–0.4 ng/mL)	0.24–0.62 nmol/L (0.1–0.2 ng/mL)
2–4 yr	0.17–5.55 nmol/L (0–1.6 ng/mL)	0.24–0.69 nmol/L (0.1–0.2 ng/mL)
4–6 yr	0.28–1.39 nmol/L (0.1–0.4 ng/mL)	0.35–0.69 nmol/L (0.1–0.2 ng/mL)
6–8 yr	0.21–9.72 nmol/L (0.1–2.8 ng/mL)	0.52–1.04 nmol/L (0.1–0.3 ng/mL)
8–10 yr	0.31–1.74 nmol/L (0.1–0.5 ng/mL)	0.69–1.39 nmol/L (0.2–0.4 ng/mL)
10–12 yr	0.29–10.06 nmol/L (0.1–2.9 ng/mL)	0.69–1.74 nmol/L (0.2–0.5 ng/mL)
12–14 yr	0.17–26.37 nmol/L (0–7.6 ng/mL)	1.04–2.43 nmol/L (0.3–0.7 ng/mL)
14–16 yr	3.12–19.43 nmol/L (0.9–5.6 ng/mL)	1.21–3.30 nmol/L (0.3–1.0 ng/mL)
16–18 yr	9.02–25.33 nmol/L (2.6–7.3 ng/mL)	1.39–3.30 nmol/L (0.4–1.0 ng/mL)
18–20 yr	13.88–24.98 nmol/L (4.0–7.2 ng/mL)	1.39–3.30 nmol/L (0.4–1.0 ng/mL)
20–25 yr	11.80–38.86 nmol/L (3.4–11.2 ng/mL)	1.39–3.30 nmol/L (0.4–1.0 ng/mL)
S-Thyroxine		
1–3 day	142–296 nmol/L (11.0–23.0 µg/dL)	
1 wk–1 mo	116–232 nmol/L (9.0–18.0 µg/dL)	
1–4 mo	97–212 nmol/L (7.5–16.5 µg/dL)	
4–12 mo	71–187 nmol/L (5.5–14.5 µg/dL)	
1–6 yr	71–174 nmol/L (5.5–13.5 µg/dL)	
6–10 yr	64–161 nmol/L (5.0–12.5 µg/dL)	

Information based on Meites S, editor: *Pediatric clinical chemistry*, Washington, DC, 1977, American Association for Clinical Chemistry.
P, Plasma; *S,* serum; *U,* urine.
*As DHEA.

REFERENCES

Beeler MF: SI units and the AJCP, *Am J Clin Pathol* 87: 140, 1987.

Lundberg GD, Iverson C, Radulescu G: Now read this: the SI units are here, *JAMA* 255:2329, 1986.

Metric Commission of Canada: *The SI manual in healthcare*, Ottawa, 1981, Sector 9.10 Health and Welfare, Metric Commission of Canada.

Tietz NW, editor: *Clinical guide to laboratory tests*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1995, WB Saunders.

World Health Organization: *The SI for the health professions*, Geneva, 1977, WHO.

Young DS: Implementation of SI units for clinical laboratory data: style specifications and conversion tables, *Ann Intern Med* 106:114, 1987.

APPENDIX 6

COMMON CHIMERIC GENES IDENTIFIED IN HUMAN MALIGNANCIES

Peng Lee, Naif Z. Abraham Jr., Matthew R. Pincus

Tables A6-1 and A6-2 give well-known examples of common recurrent translocations identified in a number of malignancies. Table A6-1 correlates the specific translocation and genes involved with the respective malignancy. For example, in chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), the typical chromosomal translocation present is t(9;22)(q34q11), where typically the long arms of chromosome 22 and 9 are involved in a reciprocal translocation or genetic fusion. The bcr gene is located on chromosome 22q11, whereas the abl oncogene resides on chromosome 9q34. This translocation produces an abnormal bcr/abl fusion gene. This gene, in turn, is transcribed into an abnormal bcr/abl fusion mRNA, which in turn is translated into the leukemia-producing bcr/abl protein molecule. This fusion protein possesses an abnormally increased tyrosine kinase activity that is involved in malignant transformation of hematopoietic cells to produce CML.

Table A6-2 indicates the genes and their chromosomal locations, their apparent protein product, and the abbreviation or nomenclature used in the research and medical literature to identify them. For example, in transformation to CML, key genes involved are bcr and abl, where the nomenclature *bcr* stands for "breakpoint cluster region" and *abl* refers to the human homologue of the oncogene of the Abelson murine leukemia virus or v-abl.

These tables and their "explanations" of the gene nomenclature are intended to help clarify to the student of molecular and clinical pathology the function and/or particular research history of these genes and protein products. All information in these tables is derived from references listed.

TABLE A6-1

Common Recurrent Chromosome Changes with Common Chimeric Genes and Protein Fusions Identified in Malignancies

Malignancy	Translocation, Genes/Proteins Involved
Hematopoietic malignancies	
Chronic myelogenous leukemia	t(9;22)(q34q11), BCR/ABL
Acute myeloid leukemia	t(8;21)(q22;q22), AML1/ETO
Acute promyelocytic leukemia	t(15;17)(q22;q12), PML/RAR α
AML with abnormal eosinophils	t(16;16)(p13;q22) or inv(16)(p13q22), CBFb/MYH11
Burkitt lymphoma	t(8;14)(q24;q32), c-MYC/Ig heavy chain locus
Precursor B ALL/lymphoma	t(9;22)(q34;q11.2), BCR/ABL
	t(4;11)(q21;q23), AF4/MLL
	t(1;19)(q23;p13.3), PBX/E2A
	t(12;21)(p13;q22), TEL/AML1
Mantle cell lymphoma	t(11;14)(q13;q32), Ig heavy chain locus/BCL1
Follicular lymphoma	t(14;18)(q32;q21), BCL2 rearranged
MALT lymphoma	t(11;18)(q21;q21), API2/MLT
Anaplastic large cell lymphoma	t(2;5)(p23;q35), ALK/NPM
T cell prolymphocytic leukemia	t(14;14)(q11;q32), TCR α/TCL1
	inv14q(q11;q32), TCR α/TCL1
Mesenchymal malignancies	
Alveolar soft part sarcoma	t(X;17)(p11;q25), ASPL/TFE3
Alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma	t(2;13)(q35;q14), PAX3/FKHR
	t(1;13)(q36;q14), *PAX7-FOXO1A*
Congenital fibrosarcoma	t(12;15)(p13;q25), ETV6/NTRK3
Clear cell sarcoma	t(12;22)(q13;q12), *EWSR1-ATF1*
	t(2;22)(q33;q12), *EWSR1-CREB1*
Dermatofibrosarcoma protuberans	t(17;22)(q22;q13), COLIA1/PDGFB
Desmoplastic small round cell tumor	t(11;22)(p13q;12), EWS/WT1
	t(21;22)(q22;q12), *EWSR1-ERG**
Ewing's sarcoma/peripheral primitive neuroectodermal tumor	t(11;22)(q24;q12), EWS/FLI1
Extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma	t(9;22)(q22;q12), EWS/TEC
Malignant melanoma of soft parts/clear cell sarcoma	t(12;22)(q13;q12), EWS/ATF1
Myxoid/round cell liposarcoma	t(12;16)(q13;p11), TLS/CHOP
Synovial sarcoma	t(X;18)(p11.23;q11), SYT/SSX1
	t(X;18)(p11;q11), *SS18-SSX2*

Continued

TABLE A6-1

Common Recurrent Chromosome Changes with Common Chimeric Genes and Protein Fusions Identified in Malignancies—cont'd

Malignancy	Translocation, Genes/Proteins Involved
Carcinomas	
Renal cell carcinoma, papillary type	t(X;1)(p11;q21), TFE3/PRCC t(X;1)(p11;p34), TFE3/PSF
Papillary carcinoma of thyroid	2 protooncogenes identified in some cancers: RET and NTRK1 fused to the amino-terminus of different gene products
Prostate cancer	Deletion of TMPRSS2 with fusion to ETS family proteins including: TMPRSS2/ERG TMPRSS2/ETV1 TMPRSS2/ETV4
Follicular carcinoma of thyroid	T(2;3)(q13;p25), PAX8-PPARγ

Sources: Alberti et al, 2003; Barone et al, 1994; Beckmann et al, 1990; Bernard et al, 1996; Bongarzone & Pierotti 2003; Bursen et al, 2004; Cooper, 2002; Deng et al, 1993; DiMartino & Cleary, 1999; Ernst et al, 2002; Hart & Foroni, 2002; Hisaoka et al, 2004; Jaffe et al, 2001; Kundu et al, 2002; Labelle et al, 1995; Lasota, 2003; Lerman et al, 1983; Mathur et al, 2003; Oikawa & Yamada, 2003; Patton et al, 1993; Pekarsky et al, 2001a, 2001b; Pierotti, 2001; Pierotti et al, 1995; Ponder, 2002; Pulford et al, 1997; Ro & Roncari, 1991; Rosenwald et al, 2004; Santoro et al, 1995, 2004; Schaefer et al, 2004; Sidhar et al, 1996; Soulez et al, 1999; Takahashi & Cooper, 1987; Takahashi et al, 1985; Thayer & Singer, 1983; Thompson, 2004; Tong et al, 1986; Whitman et al, 2001; Yonezumi et al, 2001.

TABLE A6-2

Genes and Proteins Involved in Malignancies

Hematopoietic Malignancies	
BCR	Breakpoint cluster region gene, codes for a putative serine/threonine kinase, maps to chromosome 22q11
ABL	Human homologue of the oncogene of the Abelson murine leukemia virus, or v-abl, codes for a non-receptor tyrosine kinase, maps to chromosome 9q34
AML1	Acute myelogenous leukemia-1 gene, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 21q22; also known as core binding factor α 2 or CBF α 2, RUNX1, PEBP2 α B
ETO	Eight-twenty-one gene, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 21q22
PML	Promyelocytic leukemia gene, codes for a nuclear factor which may influence transcription, maps to chromosome 15q22
RAR α	Retinoic acid receptor α gene, codes for a ligand-dependent nuclear retinoic acid receptor with transcription factor activity, maps to chromosome 17q21
CBF β	Core binding factor β, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 16q22; also known as PEBP2B or polyoma enhancer binding protein
MYH11	Myosin heavy chain 11 gene, codes for smooth muscle myosin heavy chain, maps to chromosome 16p13
c-MYC	Cellular homologue of the v-myc oncogene from the avian myelocytomatosis retrovirus, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 8q24
Ig heavy chain locus	Codes for the principal constituent (i.e., the heavy or H chain) of the immunoglobulin molecule and determines the class (IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, IgM) of the molecule, maps to chromosome 14q32
AF4	ALL-1 fused gene on chromosome 4, codes for a putative transcription factor, maps to chromosome 4q21; also known as FEL
MLL	Mixed lineage leukemia or myeloid/lymphoid leukemia gene, codes for a transcriptional regulator, maps to chromosome 11q23; also known as HRX and ALL-1
PBX1	Pre-B cell leukemic homeobox 1 gene, codes for a transcriptional activator, maps to chromosome 1q23
E2A	Enhancer binding A gene (encoding two proteins that bind to the kappa E2 site in the enhancer region of the kappa light chain gene), codes for a transcription factor required in B cell development, maps to chromosome 19p13.3
TEL	Translocated ETS (E26-transformation specific) leukemia gene, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 12p13; also known as ETV6
BCL1	B cell leukemia/lymphoma 1 gene, codes for a growth factor sensor protein involved in regulation of cell cycle division, maps to chromosome 11q13; also known as PRAD1/CCND1 or cyclin D1
BCL2	B cell leukemia/lymphoma 2 gene, codes for BCL-2 protein which inhibits apoptosis (programmed cell death), maps to chromosome 18q21.3
API2	Apoptosis inhibitor 2 gene, codes for an inhibitor of apoptosis, maps to chromosome 11q21; also known as c-IAP2, HIAP1, MIHC
MLT	MALT (mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue) lymphoma-associated translocation, codes for protein of unknown function, maps to chromosome 18q21
ALK	Anaplastic lymphoma kinase gene, codes for a receptor tyrosine kinase (expressed in neural tissue), maps to chromosome 2p23
NPM	Nucleophosmin (a nonribosomal nucleolar phosphoprotein involved in transporting ribosomal components between the nucleus and the cytoplasm for ribosomal assembly), coded by the NPM gene, maps to chromosome 5q35
TCR	T cell antigen receptor, a T cell membrane/surface receptor for antigen, composed of polypeptide chains from the α/δ (chromosome 14q11), β (chromosome 7q34), and/or γ (chromosome 7p) gene sets
TCL1	T cell leukemia/lymphoma 1 gene, codes for a protein of unknown function, but may be involved in lymphoid cell proliferation and/or survival, maps to chromosome 14q32.1

TABLE A6-2
Genes and Proteins Involved in Malignancies—cont'd

Mesenchymal Malignancies	
ASPL	Alveolar soft part sarcoma locus, function unknown, maps to chromosome 17q25
c-Kit	Mast/stem cell growth factor receptor gene encodes a tyrosine-protein kinase, maps to chromosome 4q11-q12
TFE3	Gene codes for a transcription factor which binds to the IgH intronic enhancer muE3 DNA region, maps to chromosome Xp11.2
PAX3	Paired box transcription factor 3 gene, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 2q35
FKHR	Forkhead-related gene, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 13q14; also known as FOXO1A
ETV6	Ets variant 6 gene, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 12p13; also known as TEL
NTRK3	Neurotrophin transmembrane receptor tyrosine kinase 3 gene, codes for a receptor that induces the release of neurotrophins, maps to chromosome 15q25; also known as TRKC or transmembrane receptor tyrosine kinase C
COL1A1	Collagen type 1 α 1 chain gene, codes for an extracellular matrix protein, maps to chromosome 17q22
PDGFB	Platelet-derived growth factor β chain gene, codes for a growth factor or mitogen, maps to chromosome 22q13; a human homologue of v-sis (simian sarcoma virus) oncogene
EWS	Ewing sarcoma gene, a putative nuclear RNA binding protein, maps to chromosome 22q12
WT1	Wilms' tumor protein 1 gene, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 11p13
FLI1	Freund's leukemia integration site 1 gene and an ETS family gene, codes for a transcriptional regulator protein, maps to chromosome 11q
TEC	Translocated in extraskeletal chondrosarcoma, codes for a steroid nuclear receptor/transcription factor thought to be involved in control of cellular proliferation and apoptosis, maps to chromosome 9q22; also known as CHN (chondrosarcoma), NOR1 (neuron derived orphan receptor 1)—a receptor is termed an orphan when its ligand has not been isolated
ATF1	Activating transcription factor 1 gene, codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 12q13
TLS	Translocated in liposarcoma gene, a putative nuclear RNA binding protein, maps to chromosome 16p11; also known as FUS or fusion
CHOP	C/EBP homologous protein—where C/EBP refers to CCAAT/enhancer-binding protein—codes for a transcription factor, maps to chromosome 12q13; also known as GADD153, DDIT3
SYT	Synovial sarcoma translocation gene, a putative transcriptional activator, maps to chromosome 18q11
SSX1	Synovial sarcoma X chromosome breakpoint gene 1, a putative transcriptional repressor/DNA binding factor, maps to chromosome Xp11
Carcinomas	
BRCA1/BRCA2	Breast and ovarian cancer susceptibility proteins, BRCA1 maps to chromosome 17q21 and BRCA2 maps to chromosome 13q12.3
BRAF	B-Raf proto-oncogene encoding serine/threonine-protein kinase, maps to chromosome 7q34
EGFR	Epidermal growth factor receptor encodes transmembrane tyrosine-protein kinase, maps to chromosome 7p12
HER2/neu	Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2, maps to chromosome 17q11.2-q12
TFE3	Gene codes for a transcription factor which binds to the IgH intronic enhancer muE3 DNA region, maps to chromosome Xp11.2
PRCC	Papillary renal cell carcinoma gene, a ubiquitously expressed nuclear protein, maps to chromosome 1q21.2
PSF	PTB-associated splicing factor gene where PTB = polypyrimidine tract-binding protein, codes for a ubiquitously expressed, putative multifunctional, nuclear protein possibly involved in transcription, maps to chromosome 1p34
RAS	Rat sarcoma oncogene encodes ras p21 protein (protein of molecular mass 21 kD), a membrane-bound G-protein that is the target of different activated growth factor receptors. Mutations that cause amino acid substitutions at critical positions, such as Val-for-Gly 12, are oncogenic. There are three major ras types: Harvey (Ha), Kirsten (K) and N.K-ras with the Val-for Gly 12 substitution has been found in over 90 percent of pancreatic cancers and over 50 percent of colon cancers and occurs in about 1 in every three common solid tissue tumors. K-ras maps to chromosome 12p12.1
RET	Rearranged during transfection, codes for a tyrosine kinase receptor, maps to chromosome 10q11
NTRK1	Neurotrophin transmembrane receptor tyrosine kinase 1 gene, codes for a tyrosine kinase receptor for nerve growth factor, maps to chromosome 1q21-22; also known as TRKA or transmembrane receptor tyrosine kinase A

Sources: Alberti et al, 2003; Barone et al, 1994; Beckmann et al, 1990; Bernard et al, 1996; Bongarzone & Pierotti 2003; Bursen et al, 2004; Cooper, 2002; Deng et al, 1993; DiMartino & Cleary, 1999; Ernst et al, 2002; Hart & Foroni, 2002; Hisaoka et al, 2004; Jaffe et al, 2001; Kundu et al, 2002; Labelle et al, 1995; Lasota, 2003; Lerman et al, 1983; Mathur et al, 2003; Oikawa & Yamada, 2003; Patton et al, 1993; Pekarsky et al, 2001a, 2001b; Pierotti, 2001; Pierotti et al, 1995; Ponder, 2002; Pulford et al, 1997; Ro & Roncari, 1991; Rosenwald et al, 2004; Santoro et al, 1995, 2004; Schaefer et al, 2004; Sidhar et al, 1996; Soulez et al, 1999; Takahashi & Cooper, 1987; Takahashi et al, 1985; Thayer & Singer, 1983; Thompson, 2004; Tong et al, 1986; Whitman et al, 2001; Yonezumi et al, 2001.

REFERENCES

Alberti L, Carniti C, Miranda C, et al: RET and NTRK1 proto-oncogenes in human diseases, *J Cell Physiol* 195:168–186, 2003.

Barone MV, Crozat A, Tabaee A, et al: CHOP (GADD153) and its oncogenic variant, TLS-CHOP, have opposing effects on the induction of G1/S arrest, *Genes Dev* 8:453–464, 1994.

Beckmann H, Su LK, Kadesch T: TFE3: a helix-loophelix protein that activates transcription through the immunoglobulin enhancer muE3 motif, *Genes Dev* 4:167–179, 1990.

Bernard OA, Romana SP, Poirel H, et al: Molecular cytogenetics of t(12;21)(p13;q22), *Leuk Lymphoma* 23:459–465, 1996.

Bongarzone I, Pierotti MA: The molecular basis of thyroid epithelial tumorigenesis, *Tumori* 89:514–516, 2003.

Bursen A, Moritz S, Gaussmann A, et al: Interaction of AF4 wild-type and AF4-MLL fusion protein with SIAH proteins: Indication for t(4;11) pathobiology?, *Oncogene* 23:6237–6249, 2004.

Cooper CS, editor: *Translocations in solid tumors*, Georgetown, Tex., 2002, Landes Bioscience.

Deng Z, Liu P, Marlton P, et al: Smooth muscle myosin heavy chain locus (MYH11) maps to 16p13.13-p13.12 and establishes a new region of conserved synteny between human 16p and mouse 16, *Genomics* 18:156–159, 1993.

DiMartino JF, Cleary ML: MLL rearrangements in haematological malignancies: lessons from clinical and biological studies, *Br J Haematol* 106:614–626, 1999.

Ernst P, Wang J, Korsmeyer SJ: The role of MLL in hematopoiesis and leukemia, *Curr Opin Hematol* 9:282–287, 2002.

Hart SM, Foroni L: Core binding factor genes and human leukemia, *Haematologica* 87:1307–1323, 2002.

Hisaoka M, Ishida T, Imamura T, et al: TFG is a novel fusion partner of NOR1 in extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma, *Genes Chromosomes Cancer* 40:325–328, 2004.

Jaffe ES, Harris NL, Stein H, editors: *WHO classification of tumours: Pathology and genetics of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*, Lyon, France, 2001, IARC Press.

Kundu M, Chen A, Anderson S, et al: Role of Cbfb in hematopoiesis and perturbations resulting from expression of the leukemogenic fusion gene Cbfb-MYH11, *Blood* 100:2449–2456, 2002.

Labelle Y, Zucman J, Stenman G, et al: Oncogenic conversion of a novel orphan nuclear receptor by chromosome translocation, *Hum Mol Genet* 4:2219–2226, 1995.

Lasota J: Genetics of soft tissue tumors. In Miettinen M, editor: *Diagnostic soft tissue pathology*, New York, 2003, Churchill Livingstone, pp 99–142.

Lerman MI, Thayer RE, Singer MF: Kpn I family of long interspersed repeated DNA sequences in

primates: polymorphism of family members and evidence for transcription, *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 80:3966–3970, 1983.

Mathur M, Das S, Samuels HH: PSF-TFE3 oncoprotein in papillary renal cell carcinoma inactivates TFE3 and p53 through cytoplasmic sequestration, *Oncogene* 22: 5031–5044, 2003.

Oikawa T, Yamada T: Molecular biology of the Ets family of transcription factors, *Gene* 303:11–34, 2003.

Patton JG, Porro EB, Galceran J, et al: Cloning and characterization of PSF, a novel pre-mRNA splicing factor, *Genes Dev* 7:393–406, 1993.

Pekarsky Y, Hallas C, Croce CM: Molecular basis of mature T-cell leukemia, *JAMA* 286:2308–2314, 2001a.

Pekarsky Y, Hallas C, Croce CM: The role of TCL1 in human T-cell leukemia, *Oncogene* 20:5638–5643, 2001b.

Pierotti MA: Chromosomal rearrangements in thyroid carcinomas: a recombination or death dilemma, *Cancer Lett* 166:1–7, 2001.

Pierotti MA, Bongarzone I, Borrello MG, et al: Rearrangements of TRK proto-oncogene in papillary thyroid carcinomas, *J Endocrinol Invest* 18:130–133, 1995.

Ponder BAJ: Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2. In Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW, editors: *The genetic basis of human cancer*, ed 2, New York, 2002, McGraw-Hill, pp 501–513.

Pulford K, Lamant L, Morris SW, et al: Detection of anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) and nucleolar protein nucleophosmin (NPM)-ALK proteins in normal and neoplastic cells with the monoclonal antibody ALK1, *Blood* 89:1394–1404, 1997.

Ro HS, Roncari DAK: The C/EBP-binding region and adjacent sites regulate expression of the adipose P2 gene in human preadipocytes, *Mol Cell Biol* 11:2303–2306, 1991.

Rosenwald A, Staudt LM, Duyster JG, et al: Molecular aspects of non-Hodgkin lymphomagenesis. In Greer JP, Foerster J, Lukens JN, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 11, Philadelphia, 2004, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, pp 2325–2361.

Santoro M, Grieco M, Melillo RM, et al: Molecular defects in thyroid carcinomas: role of the RET oncogene in thyroid neoplastic transformation, *Eur J Endocrinol* 133:513–522, 1995.

Santoro M, Melillo RM, Carlomagno F, et al: RET: normal and abnormal functions, *Endocrinology* 145:5448–5451, 2004.

Schaefer KL, Brachwitz K, Wai DH, et al: Expression profiling of t(12;22) positive clear cell sarcoma of soft tissue cell lines reveals characteristic up-regulation of potential new marker genes including ERBB3, *Cancer Res* 64:3395–3405, 2004.

Sidhar SK, Clark J, Gill S, et al: The t(X;1)(p11.2;q21.2) translocation in papillary renal cell carcinoma fuses a novel gene PRCC to the TFE3 transcription factor gene, *Hum Mol Genet* 5:1333–1338, 1996.

Soulez M, Saurin AJ, Freemont PS, et al: SSX and the synovial-sarcoma-specfic chimaeric protein SYT-SSX co-localize with the human polycomb group complex, *Oncogene* 18:2739–2746, 1999.

Takahashi M, Cooper GM: Ret transforming gene encodes a fusion protein homologous to tyrosine kinases, *Mol Cell Biol* 7:1378–1385, 1987.

Takahashi M, Ritz J, Cooper GM: Activation of a novel human transforming gene, ret, by DNA rearrangement, *Cell* 42:581–588, 1985.

Thayer RE, Singer MF: Interruption of an α-satellite array by a short member of the KpnI family of interspersed, highly repeated monkey DNA sequences, *Mol Cell Biol* 3:967–973, 1983.

Thompson MA, et al: Molecular genetics of acute leukemia. In Greer JP, Foerster J, Lukens JN, editors: *Wintrobe's clinical hematology*, ed 11, Philadelphia, 2004, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, pp 2045–2062.

Tong BD, Levine SE, Jaye M, et al: Isolation and sequencing of a cDNA clone homologous to the v-sis oncogene from human endothelial cells, *Mol Cell Biol* 6:3018–3022, 1986.

Whitman SP, Strout MP, Marcucci G, et al: The partial nontandem duplication of the MLL (ALL1) gene is a novel rearrangement that generates three distinct fusion transcripts in B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, *Cancer Res* 61:59–63, 2001.

Yonezumi M, Suzuki R, Suzuki H, et al: Detection of API2-MALT1 chimaeric gene in extranodal and nodal marginal zone B-cell lymphoma by reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and genomic long and accurate PCR analyses, *Br J Haematol* 115:588–594, 2001.

DISEASE/ORGAN PANELS

APPENDIX 7

Anemia
CBC with indices, reticulocyte count, and microscopic examination
Microcytic: *Iron studies*, ferritin, ESR
Normocytic: ESR, *hemolysis profile*
Macrocytic: B_{12}, folate, TSH

Arterial Blood Gas
pH
P_aCO_2
O_2 saturation
P_aO_2
CO_2 content
$P_{A-a}O_2$

Arthritis
ESR (sedimentation rate)
Uric acid
ANA (anti-nuclear antibody)
C-reactive protein
Rheumatoid factor
Cyclic citrullinated peptide antibody

Bone/Joint
Albumin
Calcium
Phosphorus
Osteocalcin
Protein, total
Uric acid
Alkaline phosphatase
25-OH Vitamin D

Cardiac Injury
Creatine kinase (CK)
CK-MB
Cardiac troponin-I or troponin-T

Coagulation Screening
Prothrombin time
Thrombin time
Partial thromboplastin time
Platelet count
Platelet function test
Fibrinogen

Collagen Disease/SLE
ESR
C-reactive protein
C_3
C_4
ANCA (antibody neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody)
ANA
Anti-DNA

Coma
Basic Metabolic Panel
Toxicology screen
Salicylate
Ammonia
Anion gap
Arterial blood gas profile
Alcohol
Lactic acid
Calcium (total and ionized)
Serum osmolality

Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation (DIC)
Platelet count
Thrombin time
Fibrinogen
D-dimers
Prothrombin time
Partial thromboplastin time
CBC with examination of blood film

Diabetes Mellitus Management
Basic Metabolic Panel
Hemoglobin A1c
Anion gap
Lipid profile

Electrolyte/Fluid Management
Basic Metabolic Panel
Plasma and urine osmolality
Creatinine clearance
Free water clearance
Anion gap

Enteral/Parenteral Nutrition Management
Basic Metabolic Panel
Magnesium
Albumin
Total protein
Alkaline phosphatase
Phosphorus
Triglycerides
Prealbumin
CBC

General Health
CBC
Comprehensive Metabolic Panel
Lipid Panel
Uric acid
TSH

Hemolysis
CBC
Bilirubin
Haptoglobin
Free hemoglobin (plasma and urine)
Lactate dehydrogenase (LD)
Direct Antiglobulin Test
Reticulocyte count

Hepatitis Serology, Chronic Carrier
Hepatitis Be Ab
Hepatitis Be Ag
Hepatitis B surface Ag
Hepatitis C Ab

Human Immunodeficiency Virus
HIV 1 and 2 Ab (EIA) with Western blot confirmation
HIV viral load
HIV genotype
CBC with CD4 and CD8 lymphocyte subsets

Hypertension
Basic Metabolic Panel
Urinary free cortisol
Renin
Thyroid Screening
Urinary metanephrines
Urinalysis

Iron/Hemochromatosis
Serum iron
TIBC (total iron-binding capacity)
% Saturation
Ferritin
Alanine amino transferase (ALT)

Hepatic Function
Albumin
Prothrombin time
Bilirubin (total and direct)
GGT
Protein, total
Alanine amino transferase (ALT)
Aspartate amino transferase (AST)
Alkaline phosphatase
5'-Nucleotidase

Newborn Screening
Argininosuccinic acidemia (ASA)
Beta-ketothiolase deficiency (βKT)
Biotinidase deficiency (BIOT)
Carnitine uptake defect (CUD)
Citrullinemia (CIT)
Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH)
Congenital hypothyroidism (CH)
Cystic fibrosis (CF)
Galactosemia (GALT)
Glutaric acidemia type I (GA I)
Hemoglobin sickle/beta-thalassemia (Hb S/βTh)
Hemoglobin sickle/C disease (Hb S/C)
Homocystinuria (HCY)
Isovaleric acidemia (IVA)
Long chain hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency (LCHAD)
Maple syrup urine disease (MSUD)
Medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency (MCAD)
Methylmalonic acidemia (mutase deficiency) (MUT)
Methylmalonic acidemia (Cbl A,B)
Multiple carboxylase deficiency (MCD)
Phenylketonuria (PKU)
Propionic acidemia (PROP)
Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)
Sickle cell anemia (Hb SS disease) (Hb SS)

Tyrosinemia type I (TYR I)
Trifunctional protein deficiency (TFP)
Very long–chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency (VLCAD)
3-Hydroxy 3-methyl glutaric aciduria (HMG)
3-Methylcrotonyl-CoA carboxylase deficiency (3MCC)
Newborn testing for secondary target conditions varies by state

Pancreatic
Amylase
Calcium (total and ionized)
Triglycerides
Lipase
Glucose

Parathyroid
Albumin
Alkaline phosphatase
Magnesium
Creatinine
PTH (whole molecule, amino terminal)
Protein, total
Calcium (total and ionized)
Phosphorus
Urinary calcium

Prenatal Screening
CBC
BUN
Uric acid
ABO and Rh typing
Urinalysis
Toxoplasmosis Ab
CMV Ab
Hepatitis B surface Ag
HIV antibody
Cervical Pap smear
Cervical culture/amplification for GC, Chlamydia, group B Streptococci
Glucose
Creatinine
Free T4
Erythrocyte antibody screen
Urine culture
Rubella titer
Syphilis serology (RPR)
Herpes simplex I & II Ab
Selected genetic testing according to population

Renal
Basic Metabolic Panel
Magnesium
Albumin
24-Hour urine protein
Creatinine clearance
Phosphorus
Protein, total
24-Hour creatinine
CBC

Thyroid Screening
Thyroxine (free T4)
TSH (third or fourth generation)

Toxicology Screening (Urine)
Amphetamines
Benzodiazepines
Marijuana metabolites
Methaqualone
Phencyclidine
Barbiturates
Cocaine metabolites
Methadone
Opiate metabolites
Propoxyphene

Test name in italics refers to a panel of that name.

AMA DESIGNATED DISEASE/ORGAN PANELS

CPT 80048 Basic Metabolic Panel
Calcium
Carbon Dioxide
Chloride
Creatinine
Glucose
Potassium
Sodium
Urea Nitrogen (BUN)

CPT 80076 Hepatic Function Panel
Albumin
Alkaline Phosphatase
Alanine Amino Transferase (ALT)
Aspartate Amino Transferase (AST)
Direct Bilirubin
Total Bilirubin
Total Protein

CPT 80069 Renal Function Panel
Albumin
Calcium
Carbon Dioxide
Chloride
Creatinine
Glucose
Phosphorus
Potassium
Sodium
Urea Nitrogen (BUN)

CPT 80053 Comprehensive Metabolic Panel
Albumin
Alkaline Phosphatase
Alanine Amino Transferase (ALT)
Aspartate Amino Transferase (AST)
Calcium
Carbon Dioxide
Chloride
Creatinine
Glucose
Potassium
Sodium
Total Bilirubin
Total Protein
Urea Nitrogen (BUN)

CPT 80074 Acute Hepatitis Panel
Hepatitis A Antibody, IgM
Hepatitis B Core Antibody, IgM
Hepatitis B Surface Antigen
Hepatitis C Antibody
Consider testing for hepatitis E based on travel history

CPT 80051 Electrolyte Panel
Carbon Dioxide
Chloride
Potassium
Sodium

CPT 80061 Lipid Panel
Triglycerides
HDL-Cholesterol, Direct
Total Cholesterol
LDL-Cholesterol, Calculated

REFERENCES

Current procedural terminology: standard edition, Chicago, 2015, American Medical Association.

Department of Practice Parameters: *Principles of practice parameters*, Chicago, 1995, American Medical Association, pp 1–18.

Glenn GC, Altshuler CH, Gambino R, et al: Practice parameter on laboratory panel testing for screening and case finding in asymptomatic adults, *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 120:929–941, 1996.

Henry JB, Howantiz PJ: Organ panels and the relationship of the laboratory to the physician. In AMA Council on Scientific Affairs: *Laboratory tests in medical practice*, Chicago, 1980, AMA.

National Newborn Screening and Genetics Resource Center (NNSGRC): National newborn screening status report through the University of Texas at Austin, updated online periodically at http://genes-r-us.uthscsa.edu/%3Cfront%3E.

INDEX

A
A antigen, 685
Abacavir, 1423
ABCB1 transporters, 1413*t*, 1414, 1415*t*
ABCC1 and ABCC2 transporters, 1413*t*, 1414-1416, 1415*t*
ABCG2 transporter, 1416
Abetalipoproteinemia, 242, 316
ABL1 kinase domain mutations (KDM), 1478
Abnormal cells, agents hemolytic to, 594
Abnormal hemoglobin syndromes, 579-581
Abnormal laboratory values, interpreting and correlating, 84
Abnormal localization of immature precursors (ALIP), 625
Abnormalities, of proteins, patterns of, 264-266, 265*f*-266*f*
ABO and H blood group systems, 684-686, 684*f*, 685*t*
  biochemistry of, 685
  null and weak phenotypes of, 684-685
ABO antibodies, 686
ABO gene locus, 685
ABO grouping, in compatibility testing, 721-722
  discrepancies in, 721-722, 721*t*
  of donors, 721
  of recipients, 721
Abscesses, specimens from, 1298
Absolute polycythemia, 601
Absorbance check, 40
Absorption spectroscopy, 33
Abuse
  drugs of, 330
  laxative, 317
Acanthamoeba keratitis, 1252
Accuracy, 40
  of analysis, 110
  in analytic bias, imprecision and, in quality control, 113
  predictive value and, 78, 78*t*
  testing for, weights for, 55
Accuracy-based proficiency testing programs, 127-129
AccuVein, blood collection and, 24
Acetaminophen, 350
Acetylcholine acylhydrolase, 285
Acetylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.7) and butyrylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.8), 285-286
  abnormal results of, causes of, 285-286
  biochemistry and physiology of, 285
  measurement of, 285
  reference ranges and preanalytic variation of, 285
N-Acetyltransferase, 1412
Acid and base, definition of, 181
Acid elution slide test, for F cells, 578
α_1-Acid glycoprotein, 263
Acid phosphatase (EC 3.1.3.2), 281-282
  abnormal results of, causes of, 282
  biochemistry and physiology of, 281
  measurement of, 282
  reference ranges and preanalytic variation of, 282
Acid-base balance
  evaluation of, 162-187
  whole body, 181-182
Acid-base disorders, 181-187
  acid and base, definition of, 181
  bicarbonate and CO_2 buffer system, 181
  metabolic acidosis, 182-184, 183*b*
  metabolic alkalosis, 185, 185*b*
  mixed, 186-187, 186*b*
  respiratory acidosis, 185-186, 185*b*
  respiratory alkalosis, 186, 186*b*
  serum anion gap, 184-185, 184*f*, 185*b*
  whole-body acid-base balance, 181-182
Acid-base disturbances, and hemapheresis, 778-780
Acinetobacter, 1136
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1136
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1136
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1136
Acquired coagulation disorders, 809-811
Acquired coagulation protein inhibitors, lupus anticoagulant and, 810-811
Acquired combined hyperlipidemia, 241
Acquired extrinsic hemolysis, 594-599
  chemical agents, 594
  immune hemolytic anemias, 596-599, 596*t*
  infectious agents, 595-596
  physical agents, 594-595
Acquired hypercoagulable states, 839-841
Acquired immunity, complement and, 935-936
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 615, 1093-1097, 1094*f*-1096*f*
  etiology of, 615
  hematologic features of, 615
Acquired pure red cell aplasia, 572
Acquired storage pool disease, 827-828
Acquired von Willebrand syndrome (AVWS), 831-832
Acridinium esters, used as labels, 880, 880*f*
ACTH. *see* Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)
Activated complex, 269*f*
Activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT), 800-801, 845, 845*f*
  normal, and PT, 809
  fibrinolysis, hereditary hemorrhagic disorders of, 809
  FVII deficiency, 809
  FXIII deficiency, 809
  prolonged, and PT, 807-809
  combined deficiency of vitamin K-dependent clotting factors, 808-809
  disorders of fibrinogen, 807-808
  factor XI, 807
  FII deficiency, 808
  FV and FVIII, combined deficiency of, 808
  FV deficiency, 808
  FX deficiency, 808
  FXII, prekallikrein, and high molecular weight kininogen, 807
Activated protein C resistance and factor V_{Leiden}, 838, 838*f*
Activation energy barrier, 269*f*
Active site, 268
Acute basophilic leukemia, 632
Acute biliary obstruction, 96
Acute coronary syndrome (ACS), 244-245
  diagnosis of, 247, 248*f*
Acute fulminant hepatic failure, 96
Acute hemolytic reactions, to transfusion, 746
Acute infectious lymphocytosis (AIL), 612
Acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, and therapeutic plasma exchange, 773-774
Acute intermittent porphyria (AIP), 602-604
Acute kidney injury (AKI)
  biomarkers of, 172-174
  classification for, 173*t*
  fatty acid-binding protein, 173-174
  interleukin-18, 173
  kidney injury molecule-1, 173
  neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin, 173
  rifle criteria for, 173*t*
Acute leukemia, 89, 664-666
  of ambiguous lineage, 633, 633*b*
  diagnosis and classification of, 664-665, 665*t*, 666*f*-668*f*, 671*f*-672*f*
  mixed phenotype
  B/myeloid, NOS, 633
  NOS-other rare types, 633
  with t(9;22)(q34;q11.2); BCR-ABL1, 633
  with t(v;11q23); MLL rearranged, 633
  T/myeloid, NOS, 633
  and myelodysplastic syndromes, 827
  myelogenous, predisposition to, with familial platelet disorder, 825
  natural killer cell lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 633
  prognostic factors of, 665, 666*t*
  with recurrent genetic abnormalities, 627-629
  with balanced translocations/inversions, 627-629, 628*f*-629*f*
  with gene mutations, 629
  residual disease monitoring in, 666
  therapeutic targets of, 665-666
  undifferentiated, 633
Acute lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, B and T cell lineage, 1473-1477
  B cell ALL, major translocation fusion gene abnormalities in, 1473-1476, 1475*f*
  B cell lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 1473, 1473*t*
  BCR-ABL1-like B-acute lymphoblastic leukemia, 1476
  childhood leukemias, prenatal origins of, 1476
  T cell lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 1476-1477
Acute megakaryoblastic leukemia, 632, 632*f*
Acute monoblastic and acute monocytic leukemia, 631, 631*f*
Acute monocytic leukemia, 631
Acute myeloblastic leukemia
  with maturation, 630, 630*f*
  minimally differentiated, 630, 630*f*
  without maturation, 630, 630*f*
Acute myeloid leukemia, 626-633, 626*b*, 626*t*
  with balanced translocations/inversions, 627-629
  acute promyelocytic leukemia with t(15;17)(q22l;q12), PML/RARA variants, 628, 628*f*
  AML with (t5;21)(q22;q22), RUNX1-RUNX1T1, 627, 628*f*
  AML with inv(3)(q21q26.2)or t(3;3)(q21;q23.2) RPN1-EVI1, 629
  AML with inv(16)(p13q22) or t(16:16)(p13.1;q22), CFβ/MYH11, 628, 628*f*
  AML with t(6;9)(p23;q34); DEK-NUP214, 628-629
Acute myeloid leukemia *(Continued)*
  AML with t(9;11)(p22;q23); MLLT3-MLL, 628, 629*f*
  AML (megakaryoblastic) with t(1;22)(p13;q13); RMB15-MKL1, 629
  with gene mutations, 629
  AML with *CEBPA* mutation, 629
  AML with FLT3 mutation, 629
  AML with *NPM1* mutation, 629
  with myelodysplasia-related changes, 629, 629*f*
  not otherwise specified, 627*t*, 630-633
Acute myeloid leukemias, 1467-1473, 1467*t*
  with 11q23/*MLL*, 1470-1471
  acute promyelocytic leukemia, 1469*f*
  acute promyelocytic leukemia: t(15;17)(q22;q21)/*PML-RARA* abnormality in, 1468-1469, 1469*f*
  CEBPA mutations in, 1472
  core binding factor-related acute myeloid leukemias: t(8;21)(q22;q22)/*RUNX1-RUNX1T1* and inv(16)(p13q22) or t(16;16)(p13;q22)/*CBFB-MYH11* abnormalities in, 1470, 1470*f*
  FLT3 mutations in, 1471-1472
  with inv(3)(q21q26.2) or t(3;3)(q21;q26.2)/*RPN1-EVI1*, 1471
  NPM1 mutations in, 1472
  other gene mutations in, 1472-1473
  with t(6;9)(p23;q34)/*DEK-NUP214*, 1471
  with t(1;22)(p13;q13)/*RBM15-MKL1*, 1471
  WT1 mutations in, 1472-1473
Acute myelomonocytic leukemia, 630, 631*f*, 670*f*
Acute pancreatitis, 307-310, 308*t*
Acute panmyelosis, with myelofibrosis, 632, 632*f*
Acute phase reactants, 264
Acute posthemorrhagic anemia, 573
Acute promyelocytic leukemia, 669*f*
Acute pulmonary infection, *Histoplasma* in, 1215
Acute renal failure, causes of
  postrenal, 445
  prerenal, 445
ADAMTS-13 testing, 833
Adaptive immunity, 891
Addison disease, autoimmune, 1053
  treatment of, 1053
Additives, blood collection and, 24-25
Adenomatous polyps, of colon, urine metabolic test for, 1448
Adenosine deaminase, 490
Adenovirus, 1073*t*, 1082-1083
Adequate intake (AI), 416, 422
Adhesion molecules, and metastasis, 1434
Adoptive cell transfer, 791
Adrenal cortex, hormones of, 381-394
  adrenal cortical enzyme deficiencies, congenital disorders of, 383-387, 384*t*, 385*f*
  cortisol and glucocorticoids, 387-394
  mineralocorticoid axis, 382-383, 383*t*
Adrenal cortical enzyme deficiencies, congenital disorders of, 383-387, 384*t*, 385*f*
  aldosterone synthetase deficiency, 387
  congenital lipoid adrenal hyperplasia, 386-387, 390*f*
  11-β-hydroxylase deficiency, 384-386, 387*f*
  17-hydroxylase deficiency, 386, 389*f*
  21-hydroxylase deficiency, 383-384, 386*f*

Pages followed by *b*, *t*, or *f* refer to boxes, tables, or figures, respectively.

Adrenal cortical enzyme deficiencies, congenital disorders of *(Continued)*
3-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase deficiency, 386, 388*f*
Adrenal function, 98-99, 99*t*, 379-395
adrenal cortex, hormones of, 381-394
adrenal medulla, hormones of, 379-381, 379*f*
Adrenal glands, 379
Adrenal insufficiency, 394-395
tests for, 394-395
Adrenal medulla, hormones of, 379-381, 379*f*
neuroblastoma, 381
pheochromocytoma, 379-381, 380*b*, 380*t*-381*t*, 382*f*
Adrenocortical autoimmunity, 1053
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)
laboratory measurement of, 388-389
stimulation test, 394
Adsorption (liquid-solid) chromatography, 49
Adult, cytogenetics in, 1351-1352
Adult T cell leukemia-lymphoma, 649-650, 650*f*
Advanced beneficiary notice (ABN), 144
Aerial mycelium, 1199
Aerobic actinomycetes, 1128-1129
Aerococcus, *Gemella* and, 1123
Aeromonas, 1137-1138
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1138
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1138
laboratory diagnosis of, 1138
Affinity
of antibody, 915
chromatography, 49, 256
maturation, 915
Affymetrix, gene expression profiling by, in RCC, 1509
African tick bite, 1105
Agammaglobulinemia, 316, 920
Age, as physiologic factor, 21
Agglutination, 405, 816
Aggregatibacter, 1141
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1141
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1141
laboratory diagnosis of, 1141
Aggressive NK cell leukemia, 649, 649*f*
Agranulocytosis, 607-608
Air embolus, and hemapheresis, 781
AKI. *see* Acute kidney injury (AKI)
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT), aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and, 296, 436, 436*f*
Alarms, and flags, 73-74
Albright's hereditary osteodystrophy. *see* Pseudohypoparathyroidism (PHP)
Albumin, 258-259, 258*f*-259*f*, 293-294, 429-430, 429*f*
calcium and, 93
IgG measurements and, 487-488
ischemia modified, 247
as replacement fluid, 771
total protein and, 429-430
Alcoholic hepatitis, 302
Alcohols, glycols and, 357
Alder-Reilly anomaly, 609-610, 609*f*
Aldosterone. *see also* Renin-aldosterone axis
concentration, and abnormalities in potassium metabolism, 175
deficit of, 90-91, 91*t*
measurements of, 398, 398*t*
Aldosterone synthetase deficiency, 387
Alimentary hypoglycemia, 216
ALK gene
abnormalities, in anaplastic large cell lymphomas, 1488-1489
chromosomal rearrangement of, in lung cancer, 1500
in renal cell carcinoma, 1509
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP), 201, 282-283, 296, 437, 437*f*
abnormal results of, causes of, 283
biochemistry and physiology of, 282
measurement of, 283
reference ranges and preanalytic variation of, 282-283, 283*t*
Alkaptonuria, 478
methods for, 478
Alkylating agents, mutagenic effects of, 629
All trans retinoic acid (atRA), 1468
Alleles
definition of, 1337
frequencies, and mass population screening, 1382
Allen test, modified, 27*b*
Allergen component families, 1063*t*
Allergen molecules, protein component families, molecular structures and cross-reactivity, 1062-1063, 1063*t*
Allergen-specific IgE antibodies, measurement of, 1065
Allergic, anaphylactoid, and anaphylactic reactions, to hemapheresis, 780
Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA), 1065
Allergic diseases, 1057-1070
allergen molecules, protein component families, molecular structures and cross-reactivity, 1062-1063, 1063*t*
laboratory testing for, 1062-1070
component-resolved diagnostics and testing, by microarray methods, 1069-1070
immediate hypersensitivity reactions, mediators of, 1070
measurement of allergen-specific IgE antibodies, 1065
measurement of IgE, analytic methods and reference ranges, 1063-1064, 1064*t*
pathogenesis of, 1058-1062
atopy and allergic phenotype, genetic influences and candidate genes, 1058-1059, 1059*t*
immediate hypersensitivity, mechanisms of, 1058
immediate hypersensitivity reactions, cells and mediators of, 1061-1062, 1061*f*
immunoglobulin E, 1060-1061, 1060*f*, 1060*t*
molecular and cellular interactions, regulation of IgE synthesis, 1059-1060, 1059*f*, 1064*t*
rationale for, 1062
in vivo test techniques, skin tests and end-organ challenge tests, 1063
Allergic march, 1065
Allergic phenotype, genetic influence and candidate genes, 1058-1059, 1059*t*
Allergic reactions, to transfusion, 745
severe (anaphylactic), 745
Allergic rhinitis, 1067
Allergies, 861
Alloantibodies and autoantibodies, blood group, 681-682
Allogeneic hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation, 971-972
Allogenic versus autologous hematopoietic progenitor cell harvest, 758
Alloimmune hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN), 597-598
Allopurinol, 1423-1424
Alpha-2-antiplasmin deficiency, acquired, 809
Altered repertoire model, 1423
Alternative hypothesis (H_{alt}), 105
Alternative pathway, 932
Amebae
Blastocystis hominis and, 1253-1257, 1254*f*
Entamoeba histolytica, 1253-1254
nonpathogenic amebae, 1254-1255, 1256*f*, 1256*t*-1257*t*
opportunistic free-living, 1251-1252, 1252*f*
American Association of Tissue Banks (AATB), 783-784
American Board of Clinical Chemistry (ABCC), 1366
American Board of Medical Genetics (ABMG), 1366
American Board of Pathology (ABP), 1366
American Society of Clinical Pathology (ASCP) Board of Certification, 1366
Amino transferase, 436
Aminoacidurias, 478-479
Aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases (ARS), 1005-1006
Aminoglycosides, 1162
Aminolevulinic acid dehydratase deficiency porphyria (ADP), 604
Aminotransferases (transaminases), 295-296
Amiodarone, 343
Ammonia, 292, 432, 433*f*
amines, amino acids and, 491
Ammonium biurate, 470, 470*f*
Amorphous phosphates, 469, 470*f*
Amorphous urates, 467
AmpC enzymes, 1165
AmpC test, 1166*f*
Amperometry, 46
Amphetamines, 336-337
acute toxicity of, 336-337
chronic usage, 337
clinical symptoms of, 336
"designer", 337
detection of, 337
treatment of, 337
Ampicillin (high dosage), 471, 471*f*
Amplification
methods of, for nucleic acid analysis, 1313
preparation, for DNA, 966
Amplification refractory mutation system, 1479
Amplitude, of sine wave, 34
Amylase, 307-308, 437, 437*f*-438*f*
β-Amyloid protein 42 and τ protein, 489
Amyloidosis, 320
primary, 641
Anaerobic bacteria, 1147-1152
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1151-1152
definitions and characteristics of, 1147
laboratory diagnosis of, 1149*t*, 1150-1151, 1151*f*
pathogenesis and virulence factors of, 1147-1148, 1148*t*-1150*t*
Analbuminemia, 258
Analgesic, and antiinflammatory drugs, 347-350, 348*f*
Analogs, codeine and, 335-336
Analysis
of accuracy, 110
of clinical laboratory automation, 60-65
data, 103
discrete, 107-108, 107*t*
general analytic methods and issues for, 53-59
of aqueous solution, 58-59
of chemicals, 53-54
of heating blocks, dry-bath incubators, and ovens, 57
of laboratory glassware and plasticware, 55-56
of mass, measurement of, 54-55
of mixing, 57-58
of thermometry, 56-57
of volumetric laboratoryware, 56
of water, 54
of water baths, 57
instrumentation, principles of, 33-59
capillary electrophoresis in, 52-53, 52*f*
chromatography in, 47*f*
conductance in, 46
electrochemistry in, 44-46
electrophoresis and densitometry in, 46-47
flow cytometry in, 44
impedance in, 46
isoelectric focusing in, 47, 47*f*
mass spectrometry in, 49-51
molecular luminescence spectroscopy (fluorometry) in, 42-43
nephelometry and turbidimetry in, 43
nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy in, 53, 53*f*
osmometry in, 43-44
reflectometry in, 41-42
refractometry in, 43
scintillation counter in, 51-52
spectrophotometry in, 33-41, 34*f*
involving multiple variables, 110
precision of, 110-111
of sensitivity, 111
of specificity, 111
of specimens, additional, 74
statistical, resources for, 111
Analysis of covariance (ANCOVA), 110
Analysis of variance (ANOVA), 102, 109-110, 109*f*
multiple, 110
two-way, 110
Analyte assays and common interferences, chemical basis for, 428-440
analyte concentrations, enzymes as reagents for, 432-439
enzymes, assays for, 436-439
ion-selective electrodes, 428-429, 431*f*
spectrophotometric determinations, 429-432
Analyte concentrations
enzyme reactions determined by, 432-436
enzymes as reagents for, 432-439
NADH and NADPH as quantitative indicators, 432, 432*f*
rate versus end-point methods, 432
Analytes
quantitation of, 429-432
serum, 302-303
Analyte-specific reagents, 1363
Analytic bias and imprecision, of quality control, 112-113, 113*f*
Analytic correctness, of results, assessment of, 73-74
Analytic immune studies, 903-904, 903*b*-904*b*
Analytic sensitivity, 111
Analytic specificity, 111
Analytic system, flow of immunoassay in, 883-884, 883*f*
Analytic techniques
for calcitonin, 194
for calcium, 189-190
for intraoperative PTH, 193
for magnesium, 192
for parathyroid hormone, 192
for parathyroid hormone-related peptide, 193
for phosphatonins, 195
for phosphorus, 191
for vitamin D and metabolites, 194-195
Analytical verification, of testing process, 1371-1375, 1374*t*
Anaphylactic reaction, to hemapheresis, 780
Anaphylactoid reaction, to hemapheresis, 780
Anaphylatoxins, 932-933
Anaplasma, infections caused by organisms of, 1107-1109
Anaplastic large cell lymphoma, 653, 653*f*
ALK gene abnormalities in, 1488-1489
ANCA, for primary sclerosing cholangitis, 297
ANCA-associated small vessel vasculitis, 1022-1026, 1023*f*, 1025*f*
clinical laboratory testing of, 1025-1026
definition and epidemiology of, 1022-1026
diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1026
etiology and pathogenesis of, 1024-1025
pathology of, 1023-1024, 1024*f*
ANCOVA. *see* Analysis of covariance (ANCOVA)
Ancylostoma duodenale, 1265-1266, 1265*f*
Anderson's disease. *see* Chylomicron retention disease
Anemias, 85-90, 559-600. *see also* Aplastic anemia; Iron deficiency anemia
associated with bone marrow infiltration, 569
in B lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 634
blood loss, 573
of chronic disease, 568
common types of, 85*t*
congenital dyserythropoietic, 572-573
in endocrine disease, 569
general manifestations of, 559, 560*t*
hemolysis, 594-599
hemolytic, 86-87
immune, 596-599, 596*t*
microangiopathic, 87
hypochromic, 599-600
impaired production
iron deficiency anemia, 559-563
megaloblastic anemia, 563-568
other, 568-573

Anemias *(Continued)*
laboratory investigations of, 599-600
in liver disease, 568-569
macrocytic, 88, 599
microcytic, 85-86, 599-600, 600*b*
normochromic, 600
normocytic, 86, 600
hyperproliferative, 86-87
hypoproliferative, 87-88
pernicious, 1042, 1042*f*
posthemorrhagic
acute, 573
chronic, 573
refractory, 572, 625
with ring sideroblasts, 625
of renal failure, 88
of renal insufficiency, 568
sickle cell, 767-768, 767*b*
sideroblastic, 572
thalassemias, 586-591
Anergy, 903
Aneuploidy, 1345, 1346*f*
Aneurysmal bone cyst, 1515
Angelman syndrome, 1357, 1388, 1388*f*
Angina pectoris, 244-245
Angiogenesis, 1438
Angiogenic factors, 1438
Angioimmunoblastic T cell lymphoma, 652, 652*f*
Angiomatosis, bacillary, 1110
Angiosarcoma, ras-p21 protein in, 1457
Angiostrongyliasis, 1273
Angiostrongylus cantonensis, 1273
Angiostrongylus costaricensis, 1273
Angiotensin-converting enzyme, 283-285
abnormal results of, causes of, 284-285
biochemistry and physiology of, 283-284, 284*f*
inhibitors, 780
design of, 284
measurement of, 284
reference ranges and preanalytic variation of, 284
Angiotensinogen, 283-284
Anion gap, 93-94
Anion-exchange chromatography, 256
Anisakis spp., 1274
Ankylosing spondylitis, 979
Annexin A5, 839
Anodic stripping voltammetry, 46
ANOVA. *see* Analysis of variance (ANOVA)
Anthrax, 150-152, 153*t*
as bioterrorism agent, 152*t*
Anti-A,B, 686
Anti-asialoglycoprotein receptor autoantibodies, 1044
Antiasthmatics, 347, 347*f*
Anti-basement membrane antibody disease, and therapeutic plasma exchange, 776
Antibiotic-associated diarrhea, 314-315, 315*t*
Antibiotics, and neutrophilia, 607
Antibodies
anticarbamylated protein, 1005
anti-α-Fodrin, 999
antikeratin, 1004
anti-Ki/SL, 996
anti-Ku, 996
antimitochondrial, 1044
for primary biliary cirrhosis, 297
antinucleosome, 997-998
anti-SS-A/Ro
and Anti-SS-B/La, 999
clinical subsets of systemic lupus erythematosus associated with, 996
catalytic, new, with predetermined enzyme activity, 279-280, 281*f*
clinically important, 1055*t*-1056*t*
detection techniques, 970-971
diversity of, genetic basis of, 916-917, 917*t*
drug binding to, 326
monoclonal, 863
to native DNA or double-stranded DNA, 995
to nuclear protein NA14, 999-1000
to nucleolar antigen fibrillarin (U3-snoRNP), 1003
to P ribosomal proteins, 996
to PM/Scl, 1003
Antibodies *(Continued)*
polyclonal, 863
production of, 987
novel immunogens for assessment of, 990
by recombinant technology, 863
removal of, for antigen typing, 729-730
to RNA polymerases, 1001
to SCL-70, 1001
to Sm and nuclear ribonucleoprotein, 995-996
structural properties of, 913-916
targeting nucleolar organizing region, 1003
titering of, 661
to topoisomerase I, 1001
Antibody adsorption, 727, 729*f*
Antibody detection, 722-726
protocols of, 722-723
for column agglutination technologies, 722-723, 723*f*
for solid-phase adherence tests, 723, 723*f*
for tube tests, 722
reagent red blood cells in, 722, 722*f*
Antibody elution, 729, 730*t*
Antibody identification, 723-725
crossmatching in, 725-726
antiglobulin, 725-726
and compatibility testing in emergencies, 726
electronic, 725, 725*b*
immediate spin serologic, 725
preoperative protocols for, 726
interpreting the results of, 723-725, 723*t*-724*t*, 724*f*
prenatal, postnatal, and infant testing in, 726
special techniques for, 726-731, 727*t*-728*t*
serum antibody titration as, 727-729
serum procedures to eliminate antibody reactivity as, 727
special red cell procedures as, 729-731
Antibody molecule, 913-915, 914*f*, 915*t*
Antibody-antigen interaction, 915-916, 915*f*
Antibody-based techniques, for measuring enzymes, 275-276
Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) assay, 906*f*
Anticarbamylated protein antibodies, 1005
α_1-Antichymotrypsin (AAC), 263-264
Anticipation, 1381-1382
Anticitrullinated peptides, 1005
Anticoagulants, blood collection and, 24-25
Anticoagulation protein systems, 798-799, 799*f*
Anticodon, 1306
Anticonvulsants, 343-346, 344*f*
Antidepressants, 352-354
therapeutic levels and metabolism of, 354
tricyclic, 352-353, 353*f*
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 367-370
metabolism, 178-181
Anti-factor Xa assays, 846
Anti-α-Fodrin antibody, 999
Antigen expression
abnormal patterns of
acute leukemia, 664-665, 665*t*-666*t*, 666*f*-668*f*, 671*f*-672*f*
in hematopoietic neoplasia, 663-664
myelodysplastic syndromes and myeloproliferative disorders, 676-677, 679*f*
paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, 677, 679*f*
plasma cell neoplasms, 676, 678*f*
lymphoma, 666-676, 672*f*-678*f*
normal patterns of, 663-677, 664*f*-666*f*
Antigen-antibody reaction
general characteristics of, 862-863
kinetics of, 863
Antigenic assays, complement levels by, 942
Antigenic fragments, class I and II molecules relating to, 964
Antigen-induced activation, of T lymphocytes, 892
Antigen-presenting cells, 857, 858*f*
Antigens
and antibodies, erythrocyte, 683-714, 683*t*-684*t*
Antigens *(Continued)*
carcinoembryonic, 491
characteristics of, 863
density of, 681, 681*t*, 900
detection of, 1074, 1237-1239, 1238*t*
histocompatibility, 858
red cell, destruction of, 729, 729*t*
typing, removal of antibody from red cells for, 729-730
Antigen-specific stimulation, signal transduction following, 892
Antiglobulin crossmatch, 725-726
Anti-glomerular basement membrane disease, 1026-1027, 1027*f*
clinical laboratory testing of, 1027
definition and epidemiology of, 1026
diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1027
etiology and pathogenesis of, 1026-1027
pathology of, 1026
Anti-glomerular basement membrane glomerulonephritis, 1049, 1049*f*
Antigram, 722, 722*f*
Antihistone antibodies, drug-induced lupus erythematosus and, 997
Antihuman globulin test, 716-719, 717*f*, 718*t*
quality control of, 718-719, 719*t*
reagents and procedures for, 716-718
choosing of, 718
monospecific reagents in, 718
polyspecific reagents in, 717-718
sensitivity of, 719
Anti-I and anti-i antibodies, 713
Anti-idiotype antibody-based immunoassay, 881-882
Antiinflammatory and analgesic drugs, 347-350, 348*f*
Antikeratin antibody, 1004
Anti-Ki/SL antibodies, 996
Anti-Ku antibodies, 996
Anti-liver cytosol type 1 autoantibodies, 1044
Anti-liver-kidney microsomal type 1 autoantibodies, 1043-1044
Antimetatype antibody-based immunoassay, 882
Antimicrobial agents, in vitro testing of, 1153-1170
antibiotic selection for reporting of, 1168-1169
resistance phenotypes and, 1161-1168
antimicrobial susceptibility cumulative reports for, 1169
molecular-based testing for, 1158-1160
bactericidal, 1169-1170
definitions of, 1153-1155
susceptibility testing indications for, 1160-1161
inhibitory methods of, 1155-1158
Antimicrobial susceptibility
of *Acinetobacter*, 1136
of *Aeromonas*, 1138
of *Aggregatibacter*, 1141
of anaerobic bacteria, 1151-1152
of *Bacillus*, 1127
of *Bordetella*, 1144
of *Brucella*, 1144-1145
of *Burkholderia*, 1136
of *Calymmatobacterium granulomatis*, 1146-1147
of *Campylobacter*, 1139
of *Cardiobacterium hominis*, 1141
of *Corynebacterium*, *Arcanobacterium*, 1124
cumulative reports for, 1169
of *Eikenella*, 1142
of *Enterobacteriaceae*, 1132-1134
of *Erysipelothrix*, 1125
of *Francisella tularensis*, 1145-1146
of *Gardnerella*, 1146
of *Haemophilus*, 1140-1141
of *Helicobacter*, 1139
of *Kingella*, 1142
of *Legionella*, 1143
of *Listeria*, 1125
molecular-based testing for, 1158-1160
of *Neisseria*, 1130
of *Nocardia*, 1128
of *Pasteurella*, 1145
of *Plesiomonas*, 1134
of *Pseudomonas*, 1135
Antimicrobial susceptibility *(Continued)*
of *Staphylococcus*, 1118-1119
of *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*, 1136
of *Streptobacillus*, 1147
of *Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus*, 1122-1123
of *Vibrio*, 1137
Antimitochondrial antibodies, 1044
for primary biliary cirrhosis, 297
Antimuscarinic type 3 receptor (M3R) autoantibodies, 999
Anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies, 1044
Antinuclear autoantibodies, 1043
Antinucleosome antibodies, 997-998
Antioncoprotein antibodies, in sera, detection of, 1460
Antiperinuclear factor, 1005
Antiphospholipid antibodies, in systemic lupus erythematosus, 997
Antiphospholipid syndrome, and lupus anticoagulant, 839-840, 840*b*
Antiplatelet therapy, 851-853
aspirin, 851-852
P2Y12 inhibitors, 852-853, 852*f*, 852*t*
Anti-RA33, 1005
Anti-smooth muscle autoantibodies, 1043
Anti-soluble liver antigen/liver-pancreas autoantibodies, 1044
Antithrombin, 799, 835-837, 836*f*
Antithrombin-dependent parenteral anticoagulants, 845-849
fondaparinux, 846
heparin
low molecular weight, 846, 846*t*
unfractionated, 845*f*
heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, 846-849, 847*f*-849*f*, 847*t*
unfractionated heparin, 845-846, 845*f*
Antithrombin III (AT3), 264
Antithrombotic therapy, 842-853
antiplatelet therapy, 851-853
aspirin, 851-852
P2Y12 inhibitors, 852-853, 852*f*, 852*t*
antithrombin-dependent parenteral anticoagulants, 845-849
fondaparinux, 846
heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, 846-849, 847*f*-849*f*, 847*t*
low molecular weight heparin, 846, 846*t*
unfractionated heparin, 845-846, 845*f*
target-specific anticoagulants, 849-851
oral agents, 849-851, 850*f*, 850*t*-851*t*
parenteral agents, 849
vitamin K antagonists, 842-845, 843*f*, 844*t*
α_1-Antitrypsin, 259-260, 294
Ants, 1278
Aortic valve replacement, 786
APC gene, 1504-1505
Apheresis, 736-737
Apheresis platelets, benefits of, 753, 753*b*
Apixaban, 851
Aplastic anemia, 87, 569-571
associated with other disease, 570-571
chemical or physical agents associated with, 570
clinical features of, 569
etiology of, 569
idiopathic acquired, 570
inherited, 571
management of, 570
pathogenesis of, 569
prognosis of, 569-570
ApoA-I deficiency, and ApoC-III deficiency, 243
ApoA-I variants, 243
ApoA-V, 241
ApoC-II deficiency, 241
ApoC-III deficiency, ApoA-I deficiency and, 243
ApoC-III excess, 241
Apoenzyme reactivation immunoassay, 875, 877*f*
Apolipoproteins, 221, 225, 225*t*-226*t*
analysis of, 235
Aptima HPV assay, 1511
Aqueous solution, 58-59
acids, alkalis, and pH in, 59
buffer solution in, 59

Aqueous solution *(Continued)*
dilutions in, 58, 58*b*
millimoles in, 58
molal in, 58, 58*b*
molarity in, 58, 58*b*
normality in, 58, 58*b*
Arachidonic acid, abnormalities in metabolism of, and platelet signaling pathway, 825
Arachnids, 1279-1280
Arcanobacterium, *Corynebacterium* and, 1123-1124, 1123*f*
Argasid ticks, 1183, 1184*f*
Argatroban, 849
Arginine vasopressin/antidiuretic hormone, 367-370
Array comparative genomic hybridization (aCGH), 1490
Arsenic, 357-358
Arterial oxygen unsaturation, 601
Arterial puncture, 27
procedure, 28*b*
Arthritis, rheumatoid, 980, 1004-1005, 1004*f*
Arthropods, medically important, 1276-1281, 1276*t*
arachnids as, 1279-1280, 1279*f*
mites, 1280, 1280*f*
scorpions, 1279
spiders, 1279-1280
ticks, 1280
biological characteristics of, 1276
centipedes as, 1281
crustaceans as, 1281
insects as, 1277-1278, 1277*f*
bedbugs and kissing bugs, 1278
bees, wasps and ants, 1278
beetles, 1278
cockroaches, 1278
fleas, 1278
flies, mosquitoes and midges, 1278
moths and butterflies, 1278
sucking lice, 1277-1278
laboratory approaches to identification of, 1277
mechanisms of injury of, 1276-1277
blood loss as, 1276
direct tissue invasion as, 1276
envenomation as, 1276
hypersensitivity reactions as, 1276
infectious agents as, transmission of, 1276
psychological manifestations as, 1276-1277
vesication as, 1276
millipedes as, 1281
pentastomids as, 1281
Artifacts, 529-531
Asbestos exposure, cancer occurrence in, anti-p53 in, 1458-1459
Ascariasis, 1264
Ascaris lumbricoides, 1264
Ascorbate (vitamin C), 420-421
Ascorbate cyanide test, 593
Ascorbic acid, 458
methods for detecting, 458
reagent strip, 458
Aseptate, 1199
Aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and alanine aminotransferase (ALT), assays for, 296, 436, 436*f*
Aspergillosis
hyaline fungi as cause of, 1225-1228
pathology of, 1226-1227, 1226*f*
Aspirate and biopsy section, preparation of, 534
histologic sections of, 534
special studies of, 534
Aspirin, 349-350, 349*f*, 851-852
and platelet function, 828
Assay
for ammonia, 292
design and development, for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1370-1371, 1370*t*
procedures for, 247
Assay systems, instrument automation and modulation of, 883-885
analytic system, flow of immunoassay in, 883-884, 883*f*
Assay systems, instrument automation and modulation of *(Continued)*
heterogeneous immunoassay systems, 883
high throughput fully automated, 884-885, 884*t*
instrumentation and key points for, 884
homogeneous assay systems, 883
remote maintenance of, 885
Assisted reproductive technology (ART), 408
Asymptomatic (smoldering) myeloma, 641
Atherosclerosis, 244-245. *see also* Cardiac injury, atherosclerosis, thrombotic disease
Atomic weights (amu and Da), 50, 50*b*
ATP-binding cassette transporters, 1414-1416
Attenuated familial adenomatous polyposis, 1391
Atypical chemokine receptors, 949-950, 950*t*
Atypical chronic myeloid leukemia
BCR-ABL1 negative, 623-624
with *CSF3R* gene mutation, 1480
Atypical lipomatous tumor, 1513
Auditing operations, issues to, 12*t*
Auer rods, 627, 627*f*
Autoadsorption, 732
Autoantibodies, 971
alloantibodies and, 681-682
anti-Mi-2, 1007
anti-liver cytosol type 1, 1044
anti-liver-kidney microsomal type 1, 1043-1044
antimuscarinic type 3 receptor, 999
antinuclear, 1043
anti-smooth muscle, 1043
clinically important, 1055*t*-1056*t*
drug-dependent, 734
nonimmunologic adsorption of serum proteins in, 734
reactivity of, with drug-coated cells, 734
reactivity of, with uncoated cells, 734
drug-independent, 734
glutamic acid decarboxylase, 1051
3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase, 1007
indirect immunofluorescence in HEp-2 cells, 1008-1009, 1009*b*, 1010*f*-1012*f*, 1013*t*
induction by drugs of, 598
insulin, 1051, 1051*f*
insulinoma-2-associated, 1051
insulinomimetic, 1052
MDA5 (CADM-140), 1007
MJ/NXP2, 1007
myositis-associated, 1007
to nuclear and intracellular antigens, detection methods of, 1009*t*
other, 1044
as predictors of disease, 1036-1037
profile of, in systemic lupus erythematosus, 996*t*
signal recognition particle, 1007
small ubiquitin-like modifier activating enzyme (SAE), 1007
techniques used to detect, 1008-1015
thyroglobulin, 1052-1053
thyroid gland relating to, 376
thyroperoxidase, 1052, 1052*f*
TIF1-γ/TIF1-α (p155/140), 1007
zinc transporter-8, 1051
Autoantigens
centromere protein, 1001
Th/To, 1001-1003
Autoanti-P, 733
Autohemolysis test, 575
Autoimmune diseases, organ-specific, 1032-1056, 1034*b*
application of testing to, 860
autoantibodies, as predictors of disease, 1036-1037
autoimmunity versus, definition of, 1032-1033, 1033*f*
classification of, 1034
cutaneous, 1037-1041, 1037*b*, 1037*t*
dermatitis herpetiformis, 1041, 1041*f*
epidermolysis bullosa acquisita, 1040-1041, 1040*f*
linear IgA dermatosis, 1040
Autoimmune diseases, organ-specific *(Continued)*
paraneoplastic pemphigus, 1039
systemic lupus erythematosus, 1049
vasculitis, 1041
gastrointestinal, 1042-1047
celiac disease, 1042-1043
hepatic and hepatobiliary, 1043-1046
inflammatory bowel disease, 1043
pancreatitis, 1046-1047
pernicious anemia, 1042, 1042*f*
glomerular, 1047-1050
glomerulonephritides, 1048-1050
glomerulopathies, 1047-1048
immunoendocrinopathies, 1050-1054
Addison disease, 1053
carbohydrate metabolism, 1050-1052
laboratory tests for evaluating, 1034-1035, 1035*f*
of muscle, 1054-1055
of nervous system, 1054-1055
Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome, 1054
multiple sclerosis, 1054
myasthenia gravis, 1054
paraneoplastic neurologic syndromes, 1054
polymyositis, 1055
Stiff-Person syndrome, 1054-1055
of neuromuscular junction, 1054-1055
of ovary, 1053-1054
recent advances in diagnostic technologies, 1036
serum autoantibody levels in, interpretation of, 1035-1036
pemphigoid, 1039-1040
pemphigus, 1037-1039
therapeutics for, 861
thyroid gland, 1052-1053
Autoimmune hemolytic anemia (AIHA), 596-597, 596*t*
associated with cold antibody, 597
associated with warm and cold antibodies, 597
associated with warm antibody, 596-597
cold, 732-733, 732*t*
cold agglutinin disease and, 732-733
paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria and, 733
etiology and pathophysiology of, 596
investigation of, 731-733
warm, 731-732
serologic characteristics of, 731
serologic testing beyond the DAT of, 731-732
Autoimmune hepatitis, 1044, 1045*f*, 1046*t*
prognostic relevance of autoantibodies in, 1044
Autoimmune hypoglycemia, 1052
Autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome, 615
Autoimmune markers, 297-298
ANCA, for primary sclerosing cholangitis, 297
antimitochondrial antibody, for primary biliary cirrhosis, 297
serum, for hepatitis, 298
Autoimmune myelofibrosis, 608
Autoimmune thyroid disease (AITD), treatment of, 1053
Autoimmune-related hypoglycemia, 215-216
Autoimmunity, 1033, 1033*f*
adrenocortical, 1053
autoimmune diseases *versus*, definition of, 1032-1033, 1033*f*
Autologous cells, separation of transfused red cells from, 730-731
Autologous donation, 737
Autologous versus allogenic hematopoietic progenitor cell harvest, 758
Automated chemistry analyzer, core components of, 62-63
Automated delivery, 61
Automated differential leukocyte counting, 520
Automated reticulocyte counting, 521
Automated slide stainer, 522
Automated specimen inspection, 62
Automated specimen processing, 61
Automated system, selection of, 1157
Autosomal aneuploidies, 1353-1354, 1355*f*
Autosomal dominant hypercholesterolemia, 240
Autosomal recessive hypercholesterolemia, 241
Autosome, definition of, 1337
Avidin, 421

B

B antigen, 685
B cell ALL, major translocation fusion gene abnormalities in, 1473-1476, 1475*f*
B cell antibodies, 971
B cell development: bone marrow, 554, 554*t*, 555*f*
B cell lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 1473, 1473*t*
B cell lymphoma, unclassifiable, 647
with features intermediate between DLBCL and Burkitt lymphoma, 647, 647*f*
with features intermediate between DLBCL and classical Hodgkin lymphoma, 647
B cell prolymphocytic leukemia, 637, 637*f*
B cell responses, in cellular immunity, 894, 894*f*
B lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 634-635, 634*f*
clinical features of, 634
cytogenetics of, 634
with hyperdiploidy, 635
with hypodiploidy, 635
marrow in, 634
not otherwise specified, 635
precursor T lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoblastic lymphoma, 635, 635*f*
with t(1;19)(q23;p13.3); E2A-PBX1, 635
with t(5;14)(q31;q32); IL3-IGH, 635
with t(12;21)(p12;q22); TEL-AML1 (ETV6-RUNX1), 634
with t(v;11q23); MLL rearranged, 634
with t(9;22)(q34;q11.2);BCR-ABL1, 634
B lymphocytes, 857
Babesia species, 1248, 1249*f*
Babesiosis, 749-750, 1248, 1249*f*
Bacillary angiomatosis, 1110
Bacillary peliosis, 1110
Bacilli. *see* Medical bacteriology
Bacillus, 1126-1128, 1126*f*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1127
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1126
laboratory diagnosis of, 1126-1127, 1127*f*
prevention of, 1127
Bacillus anthracis, 150-151, 153*t*
Bacteremia, blood specimen timing for, 1286
Bacteria, 472, 472*f*. *see also* Medical bacteriology
rarely encountered, 1287
Bacterial contamination, of blood components, 746-747
Bacterial culture, from CSF, sample processing of, 1288
Bacterial meningitis, 491-492, 491*f*
Bacterial pathogens, in feces, 1296-1297
Bactericidal testing, 1169-1170
Bacteriology. *see* Medical bacteriology
Bairnsdale ulcer, 1190
Balance sheet, 145
Balances
specifications for, 55
types of, 54-55
Balantidium coli, 1260
Banding pattern, 1340
Bandpass, 37
Bannwarth syndrome, 1180
Barbiturates, sedative-hypnotics, 338
Bare lymphocyte syndrome, 963
Barrier layer cell, 39
Bartonella, infections caused by organisms of, 1104*t*, 1110-1111
Bartter's syndrome, 91, 91*t*
Basal hormone measurements, 394
Basic fibroblast growth factor, 1453
Basophilia, 611, 611*b*, 612*f*
Basophilic stippling, 525-526, 525*f*

Basophils, 528-529, 528*f*
  mast cells and, 551-552, 857
    distribution and kinetics of, 552
    function of, 552, 552*b*
    morphology of, 551, 551*f*
Bassen-Kornzweig syndrome. *see* Abetalipoproteinemia
Bayes theorem, 78-79, 79*t*
BCL1 gene, 1485
BCL2 gene, 1484, 1485*f*
BCL6 and *MYC* gene abnormalities and classification, based on gene expression profiling, 1487
BCL10 gene abnormalities in, 1486
BCR-ABL1 fusion gene, 1473, 1475*f*
  in chronic myelogenous leukemia, 1477-1478
BCR-ABL1-like B-acute lymphoblastic leukemia, 1476
BD Vacutainer, 28
Bedbugs, 1277*f*, 1278
Beer-Lambert law, 35-36, 36*b*, 36*f*
Beer's Law, 429
Bees, 1278
Beetles, 1278
Bence Jones proteinuria, 449
Benchmarking and productivity measures, 145-146, 146*t*
Benzodiazepines, 337
Bernard-Soulier syndrome (BSS), 822-823
Beta quantification, 233
Beta trace protein, 171
Beta-2 microglobulin, 171
Bicarbonate and CO_2 buffer system, 181
Bicarbonate ions (HCO^{3-}), 432-433, 433*f*
Bile salts, tests for, 293
Biliary obstruction, 291
Bilineal acute leukemia, 633, 664-665
Bilirubin, 289-292, 430, 430*f*, 506
  casts, 466-467
  conjugated, elevated serum levels of, 291-292
    biliary obstruction, 291
    Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 291
  derangements of, 291-292
  laboratory tests for, 292
  metabolic functions of, 289-292
  methemoglobin and, 490
  normal bilirubin metabolism, 289-291, 290*f*
  unconjugated, elevated serum levels of, 291
    Gilbert's syndrome and Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 291
    hemolysis, 291
  in urine, 456-457, 456*t*
Binding specificity, 268
Biochemical and clinical correlations, of cirrhosis, 303-304
Biochemical identification, 1208-1209, 1208*t*
Biochemical markers
  of bone metabolism, 188-204
  of bone remodeling, 200-201
Biochemistry
  nucleic acid, 1303-1308
  and physiology
    of acetylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.7) and butyrylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.8), 285
    of acid phosphatase (EC 3.1.3.2), 281
    of alkaline phosphatase (EC 3.1.3.1), 282
    of angiotensin-converting enzyme (EC 3.4.15.1), 283-284
    of lactate dehydrogenase (EC 1.1.1.27), 286, 286*t*
Biocompatibility, complement relating to, 940
Bioinformatics, 134-135, 1333-1334, 1334*f*
Bio-intact PTH, 193
Biological agents/diseases, 150-157, 150*t*-152*t*
Biological hazards, clinical laboratory and, 8-9
Biological variation, in blood sampling and storage, 229, 229*t*
Biology
  cell, mitogenesis and, 1450-1451
  normal platelet, 812-814
  of von Willebrand factor, 829-830, 829*f*
Biomarkers, of acute kidney injury, 172-174, 173*t*
BIOMIC System, 1155-1156
Biopsy section, preparation of, 534, 538
  histologic sections of, 534
  special studies of, 534
Bioterrorism, 149-157
  biological agents/diseases, 150-157, 150*t*-152*t*
  level A laboratory, role of, 150, 150*b*
  overview in, 149
  rickettsiae, as agents of, 1106
Biotin, 421
Biphenotypic acute leukemia, 664-665
Bisalbuminemia, 258, 258*f*
Biuret method, 257
Bivalirudin, 849
Black Death. *see* Plague
Black-top tubes, anticoagulants and additives, 24, 25*t*
Bladder cancer, 1509-1510
  nuclear matrix proteins in, 1459-1460
  p53 protein in, 1458
Bladder tumor antigen, 1459-1460
Blast phase, 618
Blastic plasmacytoid dendritic cell neoplasm, 633
Blastocystis hominis, 1253-1257, 1254*f*, 1258*f*-1259*f*
Blastomycosis, pathology of, 1217, 1217*f*
Bleeding time, 814-816
Blood
  banking of, complement system and, 682-683
  and bone marrow, examination of
    blood film examination, 521-533
    bone marrow examination, 533-538
    hematology principles and procedures, 510-521
  collection of, tubes for, inhibitory compounds in, 275
  culture systems of, 1286-1287
    automated, 1286-1287
    manual, 1286
  enzymes in, lifetime of, 270-271
  fecal occult testing of, 320-321
  hemoglobin, hemosiderin, and myoglobin, in urine, 453-456
  lead in, 359-360
  loss, as mechanism of injury, 1276
  manual cell counts of, 514-519
  for medical parasitology, examination of, 1233-1234
    concentration techniques in, 1234
    thick and thin blood films, 1233-1234
  megakaryocytes in, 553-554, 554*f*
  in newborn feces, 321
  peripheral, 536
  sampling and storage of, 229-230
  specimen of, for diagnosis of infectious diseases, 1285-1287
    bacteremia and fungemia, timing for detection of, 1286
    bacteria in, rarely encountered, 1287
    blood culture systems from, 1286-1287
    collection of, 1285
    microorganisms in, recovery of, 1286
    parasites in, detection of, 1287
    positive cultures in, detection and notification of, 1287
    specimen draws, 1286
    viruses in, detection of, 1287
    volume of, 1286
  stains of, 521-522
  thick and thin blood films, for medical parasitology, examination of
    slides for, preparation of, 1233-1234
    smears, examination of, 1234
    staining of, 1234
  and tissue protozoa, for medical parasitology, 1240-1252
Blood banking, 735
Blood cell distribution width, red, 86
Blood collection
  overview of, 24-27
  techniques, 27-28
  and transfusion medicine, 735-737, 736*t*, 737*b*
  tubes for, inhibitory compounds in, 275
Blood component therapy, 741-744
  cryoprecipitate transfusion, 743-744, 744*b*
  plasma transfusion, 743, 743*b*
  platelet transfusion, 742-743, 743*b*
  red cell transfusion, 741-742, 741*b*
Blood components
  bacterial contamination of, 746-747
  manufacture of, 737-739
    cryoprecipitated antihemophilic factor, 738
    leukocyte components, 738
    leukocyte-reduced blood components, 738
    pathogen reduction in, 739
    plasma, 737-738
    platelet concentrates, 738
    red blood cells, 737
    special components, 738-739
  selection of, 739-740, 739*t*
    platelets, 739-740
    red blood cells, 739
Blood establishments, 735
Blood film
  examination of, 521-533
    erythrocytes, 522-527, 522*f*
    leukocytes on peripheral blood smear examination, 517*t*, 527-531
    making and staining of, 521-522
    platelets on peripheral blood smear examination, 531, 532*f*
    of wet preparations, 521
  Spinner method of, 521
Blood gas abnormalities, 93-94, 93*t*
Blood group alloantibodies and autoantibodies, 681-682
Blood group antibodies, blood group alloantibodies and autoantibodies, 681-682
Blood group antigens, 321, 680-681
  antigen, density, 681, 681*t*
  chemical characteristics of, 681
  immunogenicity of, 681, 681*t*
Blood loss anemia, 573
Blood storage, and preservation, 26
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN), 92, 435-436, 436*f*
Bloody CSF, differential diagnosis of, 483
Blue stain, excessive, 522
Bocaviruses, 1083
Body fluid(s)
  chemical measurements in, 508
  composition of, 164-165
    extracellular, 164, 164*t*
    intracellular, 164-165, 164*t*
  osmolality of, 163-166
    plasma, measurement of, 165-166
    specific gravity and, 166
  specimens of, 1288-1289
  urine and, 28-30
  volume of, 163-166, 164*b*
    measurement of, 163
Bone
  hemangioma of, 1514
  infection of, *Cryptococcus* in, 1212-1213
Bone allografts, 785
Bone banking, 785
Bone formation markers, 201
Bone marrow
  aspirate and biopsy section, preparation of, 534
  B cell development relating to, 554, 554*t*, 555*f*
  examination of, 533-538
  grafts relating to, 788
  infiltration of, anemia associated with, 569
  natural killer cell relating to, 556
  staining marrow preparation, 534-536
  study, indications for, 533-534
Bone metabolism, biochemical markers of, 188-204
  bone remodeling, biochemical markers of, 200-201
  metabolic bone disease, 201-204
  mineral and bone metabolism, 188-195, 189*f*
Bone remodeling, biochemical markers of, 200-201
Bone resorption markers, 200-201
Bordetella, 1143-1144
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1144
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1143
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1143-1144
  prevention of, 1144
Bordetella pertussis, 612
Borrelia, 1179-1184
Botulinum toxins, 155, 155*t*
Botulism, as bioterrorism agent, 152*t*
Bound/fixed separation and washing systems, 884
Boutonneuse fever, 1105
BRAF gene mutation, 1499-1500
  in colorectal cancer, 1504
  in melanoma, 1512-1513
Brain tumor, 1493-1496
Branched DNA, 1325*f*, 1326
BRCA1, in ovarian cancer, 1512
BRCA2, in ovarian cancer, 1512
Breakage syndromes, 1358, 1359*t*
Breakeven point, 147
Breakpoint cluster region (bcr), 1308
Breakpoint heterogeneity, 1467
Breakpoints, 1154
Breast cancer, 1496-1499
  anti-c-myc protein in, 1459
  hereditary, 1499
  p53 protein in, 1457-1458
  protein arrays for, 1461
  sporadic, nonhereditary, 1497-1499, 1498*f*
Breast-ovarian cancer, hereditary, 1390
Breath testing, 507
Bright-field microscopy, 460
  supravital stain reagents for, 460
    procedure of, 460
Broad casts, 467
Broken cells, 529-530, 530*f*
Bromcresol green (BCG), 257
Bronchiolitis, RSV and, 1076*t*, 1081, 1082*f*
Bronchoscopy specimens, 1292-1293, 1293*f*
Broth macrodilution method, 1155
Broth microdilution method, 1155
Brucella species, 153-154, 153*t*, 1144-1145
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1144-1145
  as bioterrorism agent, 152*t*
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1144
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1144
Brucellosis, 153-154, 153*t*
Brugia malayi, 1272-1273, 1272*f*
Bubonic plague, 153
Budding, 1199
Budgeting, 144, 144*t*
Buffer zone, 1154
Bullae, specimens of, 1297
Bullous lupus erythematosus, 1040
Bullous pemphigoid, 1039-1040, 1039*f*
BUN. *see* Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)
Buprenorphine, 336
Burkholderia, 1136
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1136
  clinical significance and pathogenesis of, 1136
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1136
Burkitt lymphoma, 646-647, 646*f*-647*f*
  and "high-grade" B cell lymphomas, unclassifiable, *MYC* gene translocations in, 1487-1488
"Burning feet syndrome", 421
Buruli ulcer, 1190
Busulfan, 355
Butterflies, 1278
Butyrylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.8). *see* Acetylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.7) and butyrylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.8)

C

C1 esterase inhibitor, 264
C1-inhibitor and factor H, functional assay of, 942
C2, *C4*, *CFB* genes
  disease associations with, 976
  and typing, 975
C3: complement activation pathways, central molecule of, 930-931, 931*f*
C3 glomerulopathy, 1048-1049
CA 15-3 and CA 27.29, 1440
CA 19-9, CA 50 and CA 19-5, 1440-1441
CA 72-4, 1441

CA 125, 1441
Cabot rings, 526
Cachexia, 420
Calcitonin, 193-194, 378-379, 379*t*, 1441
Calcium, 188-190, 430
  albumin and, 93
  analytic techniques for, 189-190
  determinations, ion-selective electrodes for, 430-431
  levels, abnormal, 198*f*
  metabolism, altered states of, 199*t*
  mobilization, defects in, and platelet signaling pathways, 825
  phosphate and, 92-93
  physiology of, 188-189
  reference interval for, 190
  total and ionized, 190
Calcium carbonate, 470
Calcium homeostasis, 189, 190*f*
Calcium oxalates, 469, 469*f*-470*f*
Calcium stones, hypercalciuria and, 476-477
Calcofluor white stain, for examination, 1206-1207, 1206*f*, 1207*b*
Calculi, 474-477
Calibration
  issues in quality control, 113-114, 113*f*
  for measurement of mass, 55
  of pipet, 56
  of thermometer, 57
  traceability of, to a reference system and commutability considerations, 114
  verification of, 113-114
  of volumetric glassware, 56
Calibrator, new lot of, verifying method performance of, 123
CALR mutations, 1478-1480
Calymmatobacterium granulomatis
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1146-1147
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1146
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1146
Campylobacter, 1138-1139, 1138*f*
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1139
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1138
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1138
Canalicular injury, enzyme relating to, 296-297
Cancer
  cell-free nucleic acid testing, in, 1445
  chemotherapy for, pharmacogenomics in, 1424-1428
    5-fluorouracil, 1424-1425, 1424*f*
    irinotecan, 1425, 1426*f*
    tamoxifen, 1426-1428, 1427*f*
  colorectal, hereditary syndromes of, 1390-1391
  detection of, molecular pathology's application to, 1301
  diagnosis of, multiple oncoprotein markers for, 1460
  familial, 1388-1391, 1389*t*, 1392*f*
  genetics of, 1352-1353, 1353*t*, 1354*f*
  and immune response, 901
  immunotherapy, use of dendritic cells in, 790-791
  in molecular diagnostics laboratories, 1361-1362
  prostate
    serum markers for, 1442-1444
    urine markers for, 1447-1448
  of unknown primary, 1517-1518
"Candidatus *Neoehrlichia mikurensis*", human infections caused by, 1108
Candidiasis, 1211-1215
Cannabis. *see* Marijuana (Cannabis)
Capillaria hepatica, 1274
Capillaria philippinensis, 1263
Capillariasis, 1274
Capillary electrophoresis, 52-53, 52*f*, 256, 578, 579*f*-580*f*
Capital acquisition methods, 147-148, 147*t*
Capital budget, 144
Capital project, evaluating of, 146-147, 146*t*
Capnocytophaga, 1146
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1146, 1146*f*
Captopril, 284
Carbamates, 360
Carbamazepine (Tegretol), 346, 346*t*, 1423
Carbamylation, 1005
Carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* (CRE), 1159
Carbapenems, 1167-1168
Carbohydrate metabolism
  autoimmune disorders of, 1050-1052
  inborn errors of, 216-219, 217*t*-218*t*
    fructose metabolism in, defects in, 218-219
    galactose metabolism in, defects in, 218
Carbohydrates, 205-220
  diabetes mellitus and, 209-214, 209*t*, 211*b*
  endocrine pancreas and, functions of, 206-208
  glucose measurements and, 208-209, 208*f*
  hypoglycemia and, 214-216, 214*b*
  lactic acidosis and, 219-220, 220*b*
Carbon monoxide (CO), 356
Carbon-13-urea breath test, 507
Carbonic anhydrase III, 247
Carboxyhemoglobin, 511
Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), 491, 1440
Carcinogens, environmental, 355-356
Carcinoid syndrome, 320
Cardiac function tests, 96-97
Cardiac glycosides, 342
Cardiac injury, atherosclerosis, thrombotic disease, 244-252
  background of, 244-246, 245*b*, 245*t*
  congestive heart failure, markers of, 250-252
  coronary risk, markers of, 248-250
  myocardial damage, markers of, 246-248
    assay procedures, 247
    cardiac troponin, 246-247
    clinical protocols, 247-248
    historical development, 246
  other conditions associated with, 252
  overview in, 244, 245*b*
Cardiac natriuretic peptides, 250-252, 251*f*
Cardiac troponin, 246-247
Cardiac valves, 786
Cardiac valvular disease and prostheses, 594-595
Cardiobacterium hominis, 1141
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1141
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1141
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1141
Cardiotropics, 341-343, 341*f*
Cardiovascular diseases, 940
Carrier
  screening, 1380
  testing, 1361
Carryover, 884
Cartilage oligomeric matrix protein (COMP), 799
Cartwright blood group system, 704
  biochemistry of, 704, 705*f*
  biological role of, 704
  molecular biology of, 704
Cascade hypothesis, 800
Cash flows, statement of, 145
Cast matrix, 464
Casts, 463-467, 464*b*
  broad, 467
  cellular, 465-466
  inclusion, 466
  pigmented, 466-467
Cat scratch disease, 1110
Catalysis, 267
  enzyme, molecular basis of, 268-269, 269*f*
Catalytic antibodies, new, with predetermined enzyme activity, 279-280, 281*f*
Catalytic efficiency, 278-280
  high rate enhancements in, 278-279
  high rates of reactions in, 278
  transition state theory in drug design for, 279-280, 279*f*
β-Catenin gene *(CTNNB1)*, 1502
Cation-exchange chromatography, 256
Cation-exchange high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), 578, 579*f*-580*f*
CBF transcriptional regulatory pathway, 1470, 1470*f*
CBFB-MYH11 gene fusion, 1470, 1470*f*
C/c antigen, 693-694
CCHF. *see* Crimean Congo hemorrhagic fever (CCHF)
CCND1 gene, 1485
CD4, expression of, 673-674
CD10, expression of, 673
CD20, 674
CD34 antigen, 788
CD59 antibodies, 714
CD59 blood group system, 714
  biochemistry and molecular biology of, 714
CD147 antibodies, 711
cDNA microarrays, 1331
CEBPA mutations, in acute myeloid leukemia, 1472
Cefoxitin dilution, 1162
Celiac disease, 317-318, 317*t*, 979
Cell adhesion molecules, 950-952
Cell culture, 1102
Cell cycle, 899*f*
Cell DNA testing, for cancer, using fluorescence in situ hybridization, 1447
Cell lysis syndrome, 288
Cell surface markers, additional, 990
Cell-associated regulatory proteins, 934
Cell-free nucleic acid testing, in cancer, 1445
Cells
  abnormal, formed elements and, 472
  biology of, mitogenesis and, 1450-1451
  culture of, of chromosomes, 1338-1339, 1339*f*
  distribution of, 536, 537*t*
  and mediators, of immediate hypersensitivity reactions, 1061*f*
  proliferation of, oncoproteins for, 1434
  rare or abnormal types of, 536-538, 538*f*
Cellular casts, 465-466
Cellular detection, of class II molecules, 967-968
Cellular immune defects, infections associated with, 984*f*
Cellular immune system, laboratory evaluation of, 890-912
  cellular immunity, flow and image cytometry in evaluation of, 894-897
  cellular immunology, general principles of, 891-894
    B cell responses, in cellular immunity, 894, 894*f*
    lymphocyte activation and proliferation, 891-892
    signal transduction, following antigen-specific stimulation, 892
    T cell recognition, activation, and signal transduction, 892, 893*f*
    T cell responses, 892-894
  gating and data analysis, 897-900
    DNA analysis, 898-900
    immunophenotypic analysis, 897-898
    quantitative flow cytometry, 900
  granulocyte and monocyte function, 907-910
  lymphocyte function, 904-907
  quality control and quality assurance, 910-911
Cellular immune system, testing of
  clinical interpretation of, 901
  methodologic approach to, 901-904
  significance of, 900, 900*b*
  stages of
    analytic immune studies, 903-904, 903*b*-904*b*
    confirming, 903, 903*b*
    screening, 902-903, 902*b*, 902*f*
Cellular immunity, 859-860
  B cell responses in, 894, 894*f*
  flow and image cytometry, 894-897
Cellular immunology
  DNA studies relating to, 900
  general principles of, 891-894
Cellular maturation, abnormal, types of, 622, 622*f*
Center for International Blood and Marrow Transplant Research (CIBMTR), 787
Centipedes, 1281
Central molecule, of complement activation pathways, 930-931, 931*f*
Central nervous system, infection of, *Cryptococcus* in, 1213
Central or class III region, genes in, 974-976, 974*f*
Central tendency, 103-104
Central venous access devices (CVADs), 28
Centrifugation phase, of specimen processing, 31
Centromere protein autoantigens, 1001
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 29-30, 481-493
  bloody, differential diagnosis of, 483
  chemical analysis of, 486-491, 487*t*
    proteins, 486-490, 489*t*
  collection of, specimen, opening pressure and, 481-482
  examination for
    gross, 482-483
    microbiological, 491-493, 492*t*
    microscopic, 483-486
  indications and recommended tests for, 482, 482*b*
  oligoclonal immunoglobulin bands in, 925-926, 926*f*
  specimen, 1288-1289, 1288*t*
    bacterial and fungal culture from, sample processing for, 1288
    collection and transport of, 1288, 1288*t*
    diagnostic tests for, 1288-1289, 1289*f*
    viral and parasite infections in, diagnosis of, 1289
Cerebrovascular accident, 252
Certification, for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1366
Ceruloplasmin, 262-263
Cervical cancer, 1510-1511, 1511*t*
Cervista HPV HR, 1511
Cestodes, 1266-1268, 1274-1275
  coenurosis, 1275, 1275*f*
  cysticercosis, 1274, 1275*f*
  Diphyllobothrium spp., 1268
  Dipylidium caninum, 1268, 1268*f*
  hydatidosis, 1274-1275
  Hymenolepis diminuta, 1268
  Hymenolepis nana, 1267-1268
  sparganosis, 1275, 1275*f*
  Taenia saginata, 1267, 1267*f*-1268*f*
  Taenia solium, 1267, 1268*f*, 1274
Cetuximab, 1068
CFU. *see* Colony-forming units (CFU)
Chain of custody, 150, 330
α-Chain variants, 585-586
β-Chain variants, 584-585
Charge-transfer devices, 40
Check cells, 719
Check-Points assays, 1159
Chédiak-Higashi syndrome, 610, 610*f*
Chemical agents
  acquired, extrinsic hemolysis relating to, 594
  weaponization and delivery of, 158-159
Chemical analysis
  of CSF, 486-491, 487*t*
  of pericardial fluid, 503
  of peritoneal fluid, 505-506
  of pleural fluid, 500-501
  of synovial fluid, 497, 497*t*
Chemical basis, for analyte assays and common interferences, 428-440
Chemical hazard(s)
  clinical laboratory and, 9-10
  communications plan, 10*b*
Chemical measurements, in body fluids, 508
Chemical precipitation, selective, 233
Chemical screening, of urinalysis, 446-460, 447*b*
  acid urine, 447
  alkaline urine, 447
  methods of, 447
    pH electrode, 447
    reagent strip, 447
    urine, titratable acidity of, 447
  normal pH, 447
  tests for, 458-460
  urine, protein in, 447-450
  urine pH, 447
Chemical terrorism, 157-159
  history and background of, 157-159
    categories of, 159, 159*t*
    Geneva Protocol, 158

Chemical terrorism *(Continued)*
1972 Convention on Prohibition of Biological and Chemical Weapons, 158
weaponization and delivery, 158-159
level A laboratory, role of, 159
Chemical weapons, categories of, 159, 159*t*
Chemicals, 53-54
Chemiluminescence, 42-43
Chemiluminescent enzyme immunoassay, 873-874, 875*f*
Chemiluminescent immunoassay, 880-881
acridinium esters as labels used for, 880, 880*f*
background of, 880
electrochemiluminescent, 880-881
Chemistry
conjugation, 864, 864*f*-865*f*
point-of-care testing in, 68-69
serum, 477
Chemistry analyzer, automated, core components of, 62-63
Chemistry automation, continuum of, 63-64
Chemistry tube analysis, 13*t*
Chemokine, 948-950, 949*t*
atypical receptors, 949-950, 950*t*
receptor homologues, 950
Chemokine-based therapeutics, clinically useful, 948-949, 951*t*
Chemotherapeutic agents, 354-355
Chemotherapy, cancer, pharmacogenomics in, 1424-1428
5-fluorouracil, 1424-1425, 1424*f*
irinotecan, 1425, 1426*f*
tamoxifen, 1426-1428, 1427*f*
Chido/Rodgers antibodies, 708
Chido/Rodgers blood group system, 707-708, 708*t*
biochemistry/molecular biology of, 707-708
biological role of, 708
Child-Turcotte-Pugh score, 303
Childhood
cytogenetics in, 1351-1352
EBV-positive T cell lymphoproliferative disorders of, 649
hypoglycemia in, 216
leukemias in, prenatal origins of, 1476
myelodysplastic syndromes of, 626
Children, high cholesterol in, 237, 237*t*
Chilomastix mesnili, 1259
Chimeric antigen receptors, 791
Chi-square test, 107-108, 108*t*
Chlamydia psittaci, 1101
Chlamydia trachomatis, 1100-1101
detection of, 1102*t*
LGV, 1102-1103
non-LGV, 1101-1102
Chlamydial infections, 1099-1103, 1100*t*
laboratory diagnosis of, 1101-1103
replication of, 1099-1100
structure of, 1099
treatment of, 1103
Chlamydophila, 1101
Chlamydophila pneumoniae, 1103
Chlamydophila psittaci, 1103
Chloroma, 616
Chlorosis, 616
Cholecalciferol. *see* Vitamin D
Cholesterol, 230, 433-434, 433*f*, 506
HDL, 434, 434*f*
high
in children, 237, 237*t*
with high LDL-C, 237-241
with high triglycerides, 241-242
LDL, 434, 434*f*
lipoprotein, estimation of, 232-234
low total, and triglyceride, 242
normal, high triglycerides with, 241
quinoneimine strategy, 433-434, 433*f*
testing and management of, guidelines for, 235-237, 235*t*, 236*b*
tests for, 292
Cholesterol 7-alpha-hydroxylase deficiency, 242
Cholesteryl ester transfer protein gene defects, 243
Chopper, in double-beam spectrophotometer, 41
Chromatin remodeling genes, fusion genes involving, 1514
Chromatographic techniques, for drug detection, in serum and urine, 326-330
high-performance liquid chromatography, 327, 329*f*
reliability of, 327
specific drugs, identification of, 327, 328*f*
thin-layer chromatography, 326-327, 326*f*
toxi-lab procedures, 327
Chromatography, 47-49, 47*f*
gas, 48-49, 48*f*, 327-329, 329*f*-330*f*
liquid, 49, 49*f*, 327, 329*f*
thin-layer, 326-327, 326*f*
Chromium (Cr), 424
Chromoblastomycosis, 1222-1223, 1223*f*
Chromogenic test, 1156
Chromogranin A, 1441
Chromophobe tumors, 1508
Chromosomal aneuploidy syndromes, 1353-1356
Chromosomal microarray, 1379
Chromosomes. *see also* Cytogenetics, in modern pathology, applications of
definition of, 1337
Chronic discoid lupus, and other cutaneous variants, 997, 998*f*
Chronic eosinophilic leukemia, 620
Chronic eosinophilic leukemia/idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome (CEL/IHES), 1480
Chronic familial neutropenia, 608
Chronic fatigue syndrome, 1085
Chronic granulomatous disease, 610
Chronic idiopathic myelofibrosis (CIM), 619, 619*f*
Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, and therapeutic plasma exchange, 774
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia, 89
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma (CLL/SLL), 635-637, 637*f*
molecular and cytogenetic prognostic markers for, 1486-1487
Chronic lymphocytosis/persistent polyclonal B cell lymphocytosis, 612
Chronic lymphoproliferative disorders, of NK cells, 649
Chronic myelogenous leukemia, 89, 617-618, 1477-1478
clinical features of, 617
course of, 618
laboratory features of, 617-618
blood in, 617-618
cytogenetic abnormalities in, 618
marrow in, 618
neutrophil alkaline phosphatase in, 618
Chronic myeloid leukemia, 677
Chronic myeloid myelofibrosis, 677
Chronic myelomonocytic leukemia, 622-623, 624*f*
Chronic myeloproliferative disease, 617-626, 617*t*
unclassifiable, 620
Chronic neutrophilic leukemia, 618, 1477
with *CSF3R* gene mutation, 1480
Chronic pancreatitis, 310
Chronic passive congestion, 302
Chronic posthemorrhagic anemia, 573
Chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis, 1215
Chronic Q fever, 1109-1110
Chylomicron retention disease, 242
Chylomicrons, 223
Chyluria, 445
CI. *see* Confidence interval (CI)
Ciliates, 1260
Balantidium coli, 1260
Cimetidine-enhanced creatinine clearance, 169
Circulating anti-p53 antibodies, in tumor detection, 1458-1459
Circulating nucleic acids, in peripheral blood, 1445-1447
Circulating tumor cells, in peripheral blood, 1444-1445
Cirrhosis, 96, 302-304
biochemical and clinical correlations of, 303-304
Cirrhosis *(Continued)*
diagnosing and following cirrhosis, fibrosis, and necroinflammation of liver, using serum analytes, 302-303
primary biliary, antimitochondrial antibody for, 297
Citrate, effect on blood tests, 26*t*
Class I and class II alleles, DNA-based typing of, 965-967
Class I and class II molecules
antigenic fragments bound by, 964
MHC and, 990
serologic detection of, 967
cross-reactivity, 967
HLA typing sera trays, 967
lymphocyte microcytotoxicity assay, 967
lymphocyte preparation, 967
Class I genes
expression, regulation of, 960-961
organization of, 960
other, 961-962
HLA-E, 961
HLA-F, 961-962
HLA-G, 961
Class I molecules—HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C subregions, 958-962
Class II genes
expression, regulation of, 963
linkage disequilibrium, 963
organization of, 962-963, 962*f*
other, 963
Class II molecules
cellular detection of, 967-968
HLA-DR, HLA-DQ, HLA-DP subregions, 962-963
class II genes, other, 963
function of, 963
structure of, 962
Classic trachoma, 1100
Classic treponemal disease, 1172-1175
Classical Hodgkin lymphoma, 654-655
Classical pathway, 931-932
Clear cell ovarian carcinoma, 1512
Clear cell renal cell carcinoma, 1507-1508
Clear cell sarcoma, 1513
Clearance, concept of, 167-168
conversion of clearance in L/week to mL/min, 168
formulas for the calculation of, 168
Cleavase/invader technology, 1324, 1325*f*
CLIA. *see* Clinical Laboratory Improvement Acts of 1988 and 2003
Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI), 1154
Clinical chemistry, abnormalities in, 90-99
blood gas, 93-94, 93*t*
cardiac function tests, 96-97
diabetes mellitus, 95
electrolyte, 90-92, 90*f*
endocrine function testing, 97-99, 98*t*
glucose, 94-95, 94*f*
inflammatory conditions, markers for, 97
liver function tests, 95-96, 95*t*
pancreatic function tests, 97
renal disease, 92-93
skeletal muscle function, 97
Clinical coagulation testing, assays used in, 801
Clinical disease, array technology in, 1335
Clinical enzymology, 267-288
catalytic efficiency and, 278-280
enzymes in
inhibition of, 276-278, 276*f*-277*f*, 278*t*
kinetics of, 271-276
properties of, 267-271
specific, 280-288, 281*t*
Clinical laboratory
array technology in, 1335
general concepts of, 2-10
hazard(s)
biological, 8-9
chemical, 9-10, 10*b*
ergonomic, 10
prevention strategies in, 10*t*
hemostasis, 800-804, 800*t*
human resource management, 5
laboratory design and service models, 5-6, 6*b*
leadership and management, 2-5, 3*t*
management responsibilities, 3*b*
Clinical laboratory *(Continued)*
quality systems management, 3-5
Lean, 5
Quality System Essentials, 5, 5*b*
six sigma, 4, 5*t*
traditional versus TQM thinking, 4*t*
regulation, accreditation, and legislation, 6-7
CLIA categories, 7*b*
governmental agencies, laboratory-related, 8*t*
laboratory regulations, 7*t*
nongovernmental organizations, laboratory-related, 9*t*
record and specimen retention, guidelines for, 9*t*
states, requiring laboratory personnel licensure, 7*b*
safety, 7-10
strategic planning, 3
marketing program issues, 4*t*
strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats (SWOT) analysis, for new hospital outreach program, 3*b*
Clinical laboratory automation
analysis of, 60-65
analytic steps in, 62*b*
evolution of, 60-61, 61*b*
in other sections of the lab, 64
planning for, 64-65, 65*b*, 65*t*
preanalytic and postanalytic, 61-62
emerging technologies in, 62
steps of, 61*b*
Clinical Laboratory Improvement Acts of 1988 and 2003, 6, 66-67, 1362
categories, 7*b*
certificates, types of, 67*b*
Clinical laboratory informatics, 130-136
bioinformatics, 134-135
concepts and technology of, 130-132
for databases, 132, 132*f*
for hardware and software, 130-131
for networks and security, 131, 131*f*, 131*t*
education in, 136
future of, 136
information flow, 133-134, 134*t*, 135*f*
information systems, 132-133, 132*t*-133*t*
issues regarding implementation of, 135-136, 136*f*
Clinical laboratory testing, rheumatoid vasculitis and, 1030
Clinical practice guidelines, 82-83, 82*b*-83*b*
Clinical protocols, 247-248
Clinical significance, of results, assessment of, 74-75
Clinical signs and symptoms, of immunodeficiency disorders, 983-984, 984*f*
Clinical test formats, for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1368
Clinical use, of calcitonin, 194
Clinical verification, of testing process, 1375
Clinical viral infectious syndromes, 1076-1097
Clinicopathological correlations, clinical cases with, 99-101
Clonality determination, antigen receptor gene rearrangements for, 1481-1484
mechanism of, 1481, 1482*f*-1483*f*
polymerase chain reaction for, 1481-1484, 1483*t*
southern blot hybridization for, 1481-1484, 1483*t*
Cloned enzyme donor immunoassay, 877-878, 878*f*
Clonorchis sinensis, 1269*f*, 1270
Closed reagent systems, 62
Clot formation, and heparin, 846
Clot retraction, 816
Clotting factors, 294
CLSI. *see* Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI)
c-myc proteins, 1457-1459
Coagulation, fibrinolysis and, 794-811, 795*f*
clinical laboratory hemostasis, 800-804, 800*t*
clinical coagulation testing, assays used in, 801

Coagulation, fibrinolysis and *(Continued)*
coagulation disorders, practical approach to, 801-804
coagulation disorders, screening tests for, 800-801, 801*f*-802*f*, 803*t*
physiologic hemostasis, clinical assays versus, 800
hereditary coagulation protein defects, 804-809
factor VIII or factor IX, deficiency of, 804-806, 804*t*
of other coagulation factors, 806-809, 807*t*
physiologic hemostasis, 795-800
anticoagulation protein systems, 798-799
coagulation protein system, 796-797
endothelium, platelets and, 795-796
fibrin and fibrinolytic system, formation of, 797-798, 797*f*-798*f*
hemostatic system, hypothesis for initiation of, 799-800
Coagulation disorders, 89-90
acquired coagulation disorders, 809-811
acquired coagulation protein inhibitors and lupus anticoagulant, 810-811
liver disease, 810
massive transfusion, 810
thrombotic disorders and disseminated intravascular coagulation, 809-810, 810*t*
vitamin K deficiency, 810
hematologic disorders and, pregnancy with, 415
practical approach to, 801-804
screening tests for, 800-801, 801*f*-802*f*
differential diagnosis of, 803*t*
Coagulation factors
deficiency of, 89
elevation of levels of, 838
Coagulation proteins
characterization of, 796, 796*t*, 797*f*
system of, 796-797
Coagulopathy, and hemapheresis, 781
Cobalamin (vitamin B_{12}), 420
defective absorption of, 565
defective production of, 564
deficiency of, 564
detecting cause of deficiency, 566
diagnosis of deficiency, 565-566
inadequate intake of, 564
lack of availability of, 565
metabolism of, 564
Cobalt (Co), 424
Cobas HPV test, 1511
Cocaine, 334-335
benzoate ester moiety of, 279-280, 281*f*
metabolism of, 334-335
Cocci. *see* Medical bacteriology
Coccidia, 1260-1262
Cryptosporidium spp., 1261-1262
Cyclospora cayetanensis, 1262
Cystoisospora belli, 1261, 1261*f*
Sarcocystis spp., 1261
Cockroaches, 1278
Codeine, analogs and, 335-336
Codominant alleles, definition of, 1338
Codons, 1306
Coefficient of variation (CV), 102, 104
Coenurosis, 1275, 1275*f*
Cofactors, of enzymes, 269-270, 270*b*, 270*t*
Cognitive disorders, pharmacogenomics in, 1429
Coincidence, 660
Cold agglutinin disease, 597, 732-733
Collection, of specimen, 1076*t*, 1078, 1083
Collection-associated variables, interference with, 22, 22*f*, 22*t*
Colon, adenomatous polyps of, urine metabolic test for, 1448
Colon cancer
inherited, due to *MYH* inactivation, 1506
p53 protein in, 1458
ras-p21 protein in, 1456-1457
Colonic cancer syndrome, hereditary, 1505
Colony-forming assays, 788
Colony-forming units (CFU), 1168
Colorectal cancer, 1504-1506
anti-p53 in, 1459
combined oncogene marker proteins in, 1459
hereditary nonpolyposis, 1505-1506, 1506*t*
hereditary syndromes of, 1390-1391
Colorimeter, 40
Colorimetric enzyme immunoassay, 873
Colton antibodies, 707
Colton blood group system, 706-707
biochemistry, 706-707, 707*f*
biological role of, 707
molecular biology of, 707
Column agglutination technologies, 722-723, 723*f*
Column separations, 256
Commercial automated instrument systems, 1157-1158, 1165
Common cutaneous infections, 1090-1091, 1090*t*
Common lymphoma-associated chromosomal translocations, molecular detection and significance of, 1484-1489, 1484*t*
Communication standards, for information systems, 133, 133*f*
Comparative statistics, 105-107
Compatibility testing, 719-722, 720*t*
ABO grouping in, 721-722
discrepancies in, 721-722, 721*t*
of donors, 721
of recipients, 721
documentation and record keeping of, 720-721
check of previous records in, 721
general considerations in, 720-721
in emergencies, 726
Rh typing in, 722
of donors, 722
of recipients, 722
specimen requirements of, 719-720
age of sample as, 720
appearance as, 720
recipient sample identification as, 719-720
sample storage as, 720
type of sample as, 720
Compensation, 660, 662*f*
Complement, 262, 858, 860-861
acquired immunity and, 935-936
action regulation of, 933-934, 933*t*-934*t*
activity of, in disease, 937-938, 937*t*-938*t*
assays of, 941-942
biosynthesis relating to, 935
clinically useful inhibitors, 940-941
in disease states, 938-940
evaluation of, 988-989
genetics and, 935, 935*t*
levels of, by antigenic assays, 942
receptors, 934-935, 934*t*
role of, in erythrocyte destruction, 682-683
system of
blood banking and, 682-683
structure and function of, 929-936
Complement, cytokines, adhesion molecules, 929-943
complement, assays of, 941-942
alternative pathway, functional evaluation of, 942
C1-inhibitor and factor H, functional assay of, 942
classical pathway, functional evaluation of, 941-942, 941*t*
complement levels, by antigenic assays, 942
general principles of, 941
complement, in disease states, 938-940
biocompatibility, 940
cardiovascular diseases, 940
hereditary angioedema, 938
infectious diseases, 938-939
organ transplantation, 940, 940*f*
rheumatologic disease, 938
complement activity, in disease, assessment of, 937-938, 937*t*-938*t*
dermatologic diseases, 939
hematologic diseases, 939
neurologic diseases, 939-940
Complement, cytokines, adhesion molecules *(Continued)*
ophthalmologic diseases, 939
renal diseases, 939
complement inhibitors, clinically useful, 940-941
complement system, structure and function of, 929-936
alternative pathway, 932
anaphylatoxins, 932-933
C3: complement activation pathways, central molecule of, 930-931, 931*f*
classical pathway, 931-932
complement action, regulation of, 933-934, 933*t*-934*t*
complement and acquired immunity, 935-936
complement biosynthesis, 935
complement genetics, 935
complement receptors, 934-935, 934*t*
mannan-binding lectin pathway, 932
nomenclature, 929-930, 930*f*
terminal complement components, 932
genetic complement deficiencies, 936-937, 936*t*-937*t*
perspectives and, 942
Complementary base pairing, conditions for, 1311
Complex prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 1443-1444, 1444*f*
Compliance, for point-of-care testing and physician office laboratories, 68
Complotypes, 976, 976*t*
Component-resolved diagnostics, and testing by microarray methods, 1069-1070
Compound heterozygosities, with Hb S, 584
Compound Rh antigens, 693-694
Computer cross-match, 740
Computer-assisted ANA IIF technology, 1009
Computer-assisted imaging, of chromosomes, 1340-1341
Concentration and activity, of enzymes, 268, 268*f*
Conditioning therapy for renal transplantation, and therapeutic plasma exchange, 777
Conductance, 46
Confidence interval (CI), 102
Confirmatory bilirubin tests, 456-457
Congenital adrenal hyperplasia, due to 21-hydroxylase deficiency, 979
Congenital afibrinogenemia, 262
Congenital and perinatal viral infections, 1085-1088, 1086*t*
Congenital defects, 568
Congenital dyserythropoietic anemias (CDAs), 572-573
Congenital erythropoietic porphyria (CEP), 604
Congenital fibrosarcoma (CFS), 1514
Congenital hyperinsulinism, 216
Congenital hypoplastic anemia, 571-572
Congenital lipoid adrenal hyperplasia (lipoid CAH), 386-387, 390*f*
Congenital red cell aplasia, 571-572
Congestive heart failure
diagnosis of, 97
markers of, 250-252
Conjugation chemistry, 864, 864*f*-865*f*
Conjunctival specimens, 1290
Conjunctivitis, 1076*t*
Connective tissue disease, mixed, 1008
Consolidation, optimizing performance and, 17-18
Contact system, 796
Contaminants, and artifacts, 472-473, 473*f*
Contamination
bacterial, of blood components, 746-747
control of, in molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1364-1365
Contiguous gene syndromes, 1356-1358, 1357*t*, 1358*f*
Continuous quality improvement (CQI), 4
Continuum source, 36
Contracted cells, 530
Conversion of clearance in L/week to mL/min, 168
Cooley's anemia, 587-588
Cooley's trait, 588-589
Coomassie brilliant blue dye, 257
Coombs control cells, 719
Coombs test, 716
Copeptin, 247
Copper, 424-425
biochemistry of, 424
dietary sources of, 425
genetic diseases and, 425
metabolism of, 425
testing of, 425
Copper reduction tests, 451-452, 452*t*
chemistry of, 452
five-drop method of, 452
precautions of, 452
procedure of, 452
two-drop method of, 452
Copy number variants (CNVs), 1379
Cordocentesis, 1339
Core binding factor leukemia, 627
Cornea, 786
Corneal graft, 786
Corneal specimens, 1290
Coronary angiography, 245
Coronary heart disease (CHD), 244-245
risk factors for, 245, 245*b*, 248-249
Coronary risk, markers of, 248-250
Coronavirus, 1073*t*, 1083
Corpus luteum, 403
Corrected count increment, 743, 743*b*
Corticosteroid-binding globulin (CBG), 400
Corticotropin-releasing hormone test, 395
Cortisol, glucocorticoids and, 387-394
ACTH, laboratory measurement of, 388-389
hypercortisolism: Cushing's syndrome, 391
plasma corticotropin-releasing hormone, 389
salivary cortisol, 390-391
serum cortisol measurements, 389-390
urinary free cortisol measurements, 391
Corynebacterium, *Arcanobacterium* and, 1123-1124, 1123*f*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1124
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1123
laboratory diagnosis of, 1123-1124, 1124*t*
prevention of, 1124
Costs, defining and identifying of, 137-139, 138*f*, 138*t*, 140*t*
Coulomb, 46
Coulometry, 46
Coumadin, 89
Counting chamber, leukocyte counts and, 516
Coupled enzymatic reactions, 273-274
Cover glass method, of staining, 521
Cowden syndrome, 1516
Coxiella, 1104*t*
Coxiella burnetii, infections caused by, 1109-1110
CpG island methylator phenotype ($CIMP^+$), 1505
Crack, 334
CRE. *see* Carbapenem-resistant *Enterobacteriaceae* (CRE)
C-reactive protein (CRP), 249-250, 249*b*, 263, 489, 501
Creatine kinase (CK), 246, 438, 438*f*, 490
isoforms of, 247
Creatine phosphokinase, 287-288
Creatinine, 92, 431, 431*f*
clearance of
as an estimate of GFR, formulas for, 169-170
cimetidine-enhanced, 169
as a measure of renal function, 168-170
measurement of, 169
ratio of, in serum, 171
serum, effect of drugs on, 169
urea and, 506
Cri-du-chat, 1356
Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 291
Crimean Congo hemorrhagic fever (CCHF), 157, 157*t*
Criterion-based job description, human resource management and, 5
Critical values, 74
Crohn's disease (CD), 1043

Cromer antibodies, 709-710
Cromer blood group system, 709-710
  biological role of, 710
    biochemistry of, 709
    molecular biology of, 709
    null/weak phenotypes of, 709
Crossing over, definition of, 1338
Cross-linked telopeptides, 201
Cross-match, 740
Crossmatching, 725-726
  antiglobulin, 725-726
  electronic, 725, 725*b*
  immediate spin serologic, 725
  preoperative protocols for, 726
Croup, 1081-1082
Crush preparations, 534
Crustaceans, 1281
Cryoglobulinemia, and therapeutic plasma exchange, 776
Cryoglobulinemic vasculitis, 1027-1028, 1028*f*
  clinical laboratory testing of, 1028
  definition and epidemiology of, 1027
  diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1028
  etiology and pathogenesis of, 1028
  pathology of, 1027-1028
Cryoglobulins, 922
  testing, 925, 925*f*
Cryoprecipitate transfusion, 743-744, 744*b*
Cryoprecipitated antihemophilic factor, 738
Cryoprecipitate-reduced plasma, 738
Cryopreservation, 784-785
  of hematopoietic grafts, 790, 790*t*
Cryptococcosis, yeast as cause of, 1211-1215
Cryptococcus, 1212-1213
Cryptosporidium spp., 1261-1262
Crystal casts, 466
Crystal examination, for synovial fluid, 495-497, 496*f*
Crystal scintillation, 51-52
Crystalline phosphates, 469-470, 470*f*
Crystalline urates, 467, 467*f*
Crystalline uric acid, 467-469, 469*f*
Crystals, 467-472, 468*t*
  in abnormal urine, 470-472
  in normal acid urine, 467-469
  in normal alkaline urine, 469-470
CSF. *see* Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)
CSF3R gene mutation, 1480
CTNNB1 gene, 1502
Culture
  cell, 1074, 1075*t*, 1102
    isolation of, for herpes simplex virus, 1078-1079, 1078*f*
    viral growth in, 1082*f*
  isolation in, 1207
    blood cultures for, 1207
    inoculation and incubation for, 1207
    media selection for, 1207
  methods, for mycobacteria diagnosis, 1193-1194, 1194*t*
  mixed lymphocyte, 905, 906*f*
  techniques, for specimen processing, 1115, 1116*t*
Cumulative sum (CUSUM), 119
CUSUM. *see* Cumulative sum (CUSUM)
Cutaneous anthrax, 151
Cutaneous autoimmune diseases, 1037-1041, 1037*b*, 1037*t*
Cutaneous disease, 1211
Cutaneous infection
  Aspergillus in, 1226
  Malassezia in, 1213
Cutaneous leishmaniasis, 1250
Cutaneous T cell lymphoma, as indication for extracorporeal photopheresis, 768-769, 768*b*, 769*t*
Cutaneous ulcers, specimens from, 1297-1298
Cuvets. *see* Sample containers (cuvets)
CV. *see* Coefficient of variation (CV)
CVA collection technique, 28
Cyanide, 356
Cycle threshold (C_T), 1319
Cyclic enzyme instability, 275
Cyclic neutropenia, 607-608
Cyclin D1, 1485
Cyclospora cayetanensis, 1262
Cyclosporine, 351
CYP genes, 1408
CYP2C9 gene, 1410
CYP2C19 gene, 1410
CYP2D6 gene, 1410
Cystatin C, 170
Cystic fibrosis (CF), 306-307, 1382-1383, 1383*t*
Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR), 1382-1383
Cysticercosis, 1274, 1275*f*
Cystine, 470, 471*f*
  stones, 477
Cystinuria, 479
  methods of, 479
  procedure of, 479
Cystoisospora belli, 1261, 1261*f*
Cytochemistry, 519-520
Cytogenetic disorders, 1353-1358
Cytogenetic microarray, 1344
Cytogenetic phenomena, 1358
Cytogenetic prognostic markers, 1486-1487
Cytogenetics, in modern pathology, applications of, 1337-1359
  chromosome abnormalities, 1344-1350
    nomenclature for, 1349-1350, 1351*t*
    numerical, 1345, 1345*f*
    structural, 1345-1349, 1347*f*-1350*f*
  chromosomes, 1338-1344, 1338*f*
    cell culture of, 1338-1339, 1339*f*
    computer-assisted imaging of, 1340-1341
    fluorescence in situ hybridization of, 1341-1343, 1342*f*-1343*f*
    karyotype analysis of, 1340-1341
    microarray technology on, 1343-1344, 1344*f*
    staining of, 1340, 1340*f*-1341*f*
    structure of, 1338, 1339*f*
  clinical, 1350-1358
    cancer genetics, 1352-1353, 1353*t*, 1354*f*
    in childhood and adult, 1351-1352
    cytogenetic disorders, 1353-1358
    cytogenetic phenomena, 1358
    postnatal, 1351-1352
    prenatal, 1350-1351, 1351*f*, 1351*t*
Cytokeratin 19 fragment, 1441
Cytokine receptors, 989-990
Cytokine-based therapeutics, clinically useful, 946-948
Cytokines, 858, 860-861, 944-954
  assays, 946
  cell adhesion molecules, 950-952, 952*t*
  chemokine and chemokine receptor family, 948-950, 949*t*
  in disease states, 946
  family, 944
  grouped by receptor class, 945*t*
  leukocyte extravasation, 952-953, 953*f*
  perspectives, 954
  receptors, 944-946, 989-990
  by type and function, 945*t*
Cytomegalovirus, 614, 749, 1073*t*, 1086-1087, 1086*t*
Cytopenia, refractory
  with multilineage dysplasia, 625
  with unilineage dysplasia, 625
Cytoskeletal linking proteins, defects in, 825
Cytosolic mitogenic kinases, 1457
Cytotoxic T cell (CTL) assays, 906-907, 906*f*
Cytotoxic T cell lymphoma, aggressive, epidermotropic, primary cutaneous CD8-positive, 652
Cytotoxicity assays, 905-907, 906*f*
  cytotoxic T cell, 906-907, 906*f*
  microlymphocytotoxicity, 907, 909*f*
  natural killer cell-mediated cytotoxicity, 907

D

D antigen, 693-695
  C/c, E/e, and compound Rh antigens, 693-694
  G antigen, 694
  partial, 693
  Rh-negative phenotype and, 693
  RHAG alloantigens, 694
  Rh_{mod} phenotype, 695
  Rh_{null} phenotype, 694-695
D antigen *(Continued)*
  weak, 693
  weak and deletion C/c and E/e phenotypes, 694
"D" test, 1163*f*
Dabigatran etexilate, 850, 850*f*
Darkfield microscopy, 1175, 1175*f*
Darvon. *see* Propoxyphene (Darvon)
Data
  acquisition of, 663
  analysis of, 103, 897-900
Data collection techniques, 11-14
  interviews, 14
  sample and test mapping, 11-12
  task mapping, 14
  tube analysis, 12
  workstation analysis, 12-14
Data processing and real-time monitoring, in automated chemistry analyzer, 63
Databases, concepts and technology for, 132, 132*f*
Decontamination agents, in clinical laboratory, 10*b*
Degenerate code, 1306
Degenerative changes, of blood, 530
Degrees of freedom (df), 102-103
Dehydration, 91, 91*t*
DEK-NUP214, in acute myeloid leukemia, 1471
Delayed hemolytic reactions, to transfusions, 746
Deletion, 1346-1347
Deletional pancellular hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin, 589
Delivery, automated, 61
Delta check, 74, 123-124, 124*t*
Demargination, 606-607
Dematiaceous fungi, mycoses caused by, 1222-1224
  chromoblastomycosis, 1222-1223, 1223*f*
  clinical diseases of, 1222-1224
  mycetoma, 1222, 1222*f*-1223*f*
  phaeohyphomycosis, 1223-1224
  sick building syndrome, 1224
Dendritic cell neoplasms, 656-658, 657*f*
Dendritic cell sarcoma
  follicular, 658
  interdigitating, 658
  not otherwise specified, 658
Dendritic cells, use of, in cancer immunotherapy, 790-791
Dendroaspis angusticeps, 250
Densitometry, electrophoresis and, 46-47
Density, PSA, 1444
Dentatorubral-pallidoluysian atrophy, 1386
Deoxypyridinoline. *see* Pyridinium cross-links
Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), 1303
  analysis of, 578, 898-900
    cellular immunology, DNA studies relating to, 900
    general aspects of, 898, 899*f*
    sample preparation of, 898-900
  branched, 1325*f*, 1326
  in crime laboratory, 1401, 1402*f*
  or double-stranded DNA, antibodies relating to, 995-996
  in pathology laboratory, 1401, 1402*t*
  preparation and amplification of, 966
  sequencing of, for nucleic acid analysis, 1313, 1314*f*
Deoxyuridine suppression test, 565-566
Depakene. *see* Valproic acid (Depakene)
Depression and mania, therapeutic drug monitoring for, 352-354
Derangements, of bilirubin metabolism, 291-292
Dermatitis herpetiformis, 1041, 1041*f*
Dermatofibrosarcoma protuberance (DFSP), 1514
Dermatologic diseases, 939
Dermatomyositis, 1005-1007, 1006*t*
Dermatophytoses, 1220-1222
  clinical diseases of, 1220
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1220-1222, 1220*f*-1222*f*
  risk factors for, 1220
Des-γ-carboxy prothrombin (DCP), 294-295
1-Desamino-8D-arginine vasopressin (DDAVP), 826
Descriptive statistics, 103-105
"Designer" amphetamines, 337
Detection
  in automated chemistry analyzer, 63
  hybridization and image analysis, 1332-1333, 1332*f*-1333*f*
Diabetes
  gestational, 413
    diagnosis of, 209-210, 210*t*
  glycemic control for, measures of, 212-213, 212*t*
  insipidus, 91, 91*t*, 368-370, 368*t*, 369*b*, 369*f*
  ketone testing for, 213-214
  mellitus, 95, 209-214, 209*t*, 211*b*, 450-451
    type 1, 980, 1050-1052, 1050*t*
  pharmacogenomics in, 1428
  type 1, 210-211, 210*t*
  type 2, 210*t*, 211-212
Diabetic dyslipidemia, 241
Diabetic hyperosmolar state, 91, 91*t*
Diabetic ketonuria, 453
Diagnostic accuracy, of laboratory results, 75-78
Diagnostic genetic testing, 1380
Diagnostic molecular pathology, 1300-1301
Diagnostic peritoneal lavage, 504, 504*b*
Diagnostic techniques, for mycotic diseases, 1204-1211
Dialysis, peritoneal, 504
Diamond-Blackfan anemia (DBA), 571-572
Diarrhea, 312-315, 313*t*
  antibiotic-associated, 314-315, 315*t*
  causes of, 314
  disaccharidase deficiency, 312-313
  drug-induced, 314
  gut peptides in, 314
  HIV-related, 315
  lactose tolerance test, 314
  vasoactive intestinal peptide, 314
Diazo tablet method, 456-457
  procedure of, 457
DIC. *see* Disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC)
Diego antibodies, 704
Diego blood group system, 703-704
  biochemistry of, 703-704, 703*f*
  biological role of, 704
  molecular biology of, 704
Dientamoeba fragilis, 1257
Diet, as physiologic factor, 21
Dietary Reference Intakes (DRI), 416, 422
Differential cell count, for CSF, 483-486, 484*f*-486*f*, 484*t*, 485*b*
Differential leukocyte count
  and cytology, 499-500, 500*b*, 500*f*
  sources of error in, 531, 531*t*
  for synovial fluid, 495, 495*f*
Diffuse large B cell lymphoma, 1487
  NOS, 644-645, 644*f*
Diffusion-controlled limit, 278
Digene Hybrid Capture, 1511
Digital image processing, 520-521
Digital polymerase chain reaction, 1321
Digitoxin, 342
Digoxin, 342, 342*t*
Dilantin. *see* Phenytoin (Dilantin)
Diluting fluid, leukocyte counts and, 516
Dilution testing, 1155
Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), 790
Dimorphic fungi, mycoses caused by, 1215-1220, 1215*f*
Dimorphism, 1204
Diphyllobothrium spp., 1268
Diploid, definition of, 1337
Dipylidium caninum, 1268, 1268*f*
Direct agglutinins, 715
Direct antiglobulin (Coombs') test, 600
Direct antiglobulin test (DAT), 718, 718*t*
  in investigation of autoimmune hemolytic anemia, 731
  positive, and hemolytic anemia induced by medication, 733-734, 733*t*
    stimulation of red cell autoantibody production in, 734
Direct complement-dependent cytotoxicity, 970
Direct costs, 137

Direct examination, of mycotic diseases, 1206-1207
calcofluor white stain for, 1206-1207, 1206*f*, 1207*b*
Giemsa stain for, 1206
Gram stain for, 1206
histopathologic stains for, 1206
immunohistochemical stains for, 1207
India ink preparation for, 1206, 1206*f*
wet preparation for, 1206, 1206*b*
Wright stain for, 1206
Direct films, 534
Direct fluorescent antibody (DFA) tests, 1102
Direct LDL-C measurement, 233-234
Direct mutation tests, 1378
Direct tissue invasion, 1276
Direct wet mount, for medical parasitology, 1235
Disaccharidase deficiency, 312-313
Discrete data, analyzing, 107-108, 107*t*
Disease
cytokines in, 946
diagnosis of, 922-927
laboratory evaluation of, 1313-1314
pathogenesis of, 920-922
prevalence of, predictive value and, 77-78, 77*t*-78*t*
prevention and therapy of, 927-928
redefining, 1301
Disease associations
of MHC, 977-980
monogenic, 978-979, 978*t*
of polygenic diseases, 979-980, 979*t*
Disk diffusion, 1155-1156, 1156*f*
Disk induction, 1163*f*
Dispersion, 104-105, 104*f*
Disseminated histoplasmosis, 1216
Disseminated infection, *Aspergillus* in, 1226
Disseminated intravascular coagulopathy (DIC), 87, 100-101
Disseminated viral infection, 1076*t*
Distillation, 54
Disulfide knot, 262
Diuresis, 179, 179*b*
osmotic, 445
Diuretics, 90
Diurnal variation
as physiologic factor, 20-21
tests affected by, 21*t*
DNA analysis, for identity testing, 1396-1406
advantages of, 1397
extraction and quantification in, 1398
genetic markers for, 1397
historical background of, 1396-1397
parentage in
combined probability of exclusion of, 1403, 1403*f*
estimating of, with absent parent, 1404, 1405*t*
exclusion of, 1401-1403, 1402*t*
families in, reconstruction of, 1405, 1405*f*-1406*f*
inclusion of, 1403-1405, 1403*f*
likelihood of, 1404, 1404*b*
paternity index calculation in, 1403-1404, 1404*t*
probability of exclusion of, 1402-1403
quality assurance standards for, 1405
samples and specimen collection for, 1397-1398
software systems for, 1405
test data in, analysis and use of, 1401
DNA in crime laboratory, 1401, 1402*f*
DNA in pathology laboratory, 1401, 1402*t*
test methods and marker systems for, 1398-1401
mitochondrial DNA sequencing as, 1400
other systems, 1400-1401
short tandem repeats as, 1398-1400, 1399*f*-1401*f*
X and Y chromosome markers as, 1400
DNA repair genes, 1418, 1419*f*, 1420*t*-1421*t*
DNA sequencing, genome-level, 1393-1394, 1393*f*-1394*f*, 1394*b*
DNA-based allele designations, 965
DNA-based typing
of class I and class II alleles, 965-967
resolution of, 967
Döhle inclusion bodies, 608
Dombrock antibodies, 706
Dombrock blood group system, 706
biochemistry of, 706
biological role of, 706
molecular biology of, 706
null/weak phenotypes of, 706, 706*t*
Dominant allele, definition of, 1338
Donath-Landsteiner (DL) antibody, 733
Donor
concerns, of hematopoietic progenitor cell, 761
haploidentical, 788
screening of, 784, 784*b*
Donor cytapheresis, 753-761
Donor erythrocytapheresis, 756-757
Donor leukocytapheresis, 754-756
Donor lymphocyte infusion, 738
Donor plasmapheresis, 761
Donor plateletapheresis, 753-754
Donor/patient complications, common to all hemapheresis procedures, 777-781, 778*t*
Donor-specific crossmatch, 971
selection of recipient serum samples for, 971
Dot hybridization, 1312
Double reciprocal plot. *see* Lineweaver-Burk plot
Double-beam spectrophotometer, 41, 41*f*
Doubling time, PSA, 1444
Down syndrome, 411-412, 411*f*
myeloid proliferations related to, 633
blastic plasmacytoid dendritic cell neoplasm, 633
myeloid leukemia associated with, 633
transient abnormal myelopoiesis, 633
DP subregion, 963
DQ subregion, 963, 963*f*
DR subregion, 962, 962*f*
Dracunculiasis, 1273
Dracunculus medinensis, 1273
Drug(s). *see also* Therapeutic drug monitoring
of abuse, 330
binding, to antibodies, 326
design, transition state theory in, 279-280, 279*f*
effects of, 23
metabolism relating to, 293
reaction, with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms, 1423
Drug target pharmacogenomics, 1418-1423
Drug-transporter pharmacogenomics, 1413-1418, 1414*f*
Drug-independent autoantibodies, 734
Drug-induced diarrhea, 314
Drug-induced hypoglycemia, 214-215
Drug-induced immune hemolytic anemia (DIIHA), 598-599, 734
Drug-induced immune thrombocytopenia (DITP), 820-821
Drug-induced lupus erythematosus, antihistone antibodies, 997
Drug-metabolizing enzyme pharmacogenomics, 1408-1413, 1408*f*
Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 291
Duchenne muscular dystrophy, 1383-1384, 1384*f*
Duffy antibodies, 701
Duffy antigen, 949-950
Duffy blood group system, 700-702, 701*t*
biochemistry of, 700-701, 701*f*
biological role of, 701-702
molecular biology of, 701
Duplication, 1347
Dutcher bodies, 639
Dysbetalipoproteinemia, 242
Dyserythropoiesis, 622, 622*f*
Dysfibrinogenemia, 262, 839
Dysgranulopoiesis, 622, 623*f*
Dyslipidemia
diabetic, 241
study methods for, 234-235
Dyslipoproteinemia. *see* Lipids
Dysmegakaryocytopoiesis, 622, 624*f*
Dysmorphic erythrocytes, 461, 461*f*
Dysmyelopoietic syndromes, 622
Dysplasia
multilineage, with refractory cytopenia, 625
unilineage, with refractory cytopenia, 625
Dysplastic nevus syndrome, 1512
Dysproteinemias, 827
D-zone approximation test, 1163

E

E domain, 262
E26 transformation specific-related gene (ERG), 1447
Eaton-Lambert myasthenic syndrome, 1054
Ebola viral disease (EVD), 1097
EBV-positive DLBCL of the elderly, 645
EBV-positive T cell lymphoproliferative disorders of childhood, 649
E-cadherin, 1456
E-cadherin gene, 1503
Echinococcus species, 1274-1275
Eclampsia, 595
Ectopic tumor markers, 1436
Edoxaban, 851
Education, in clinical laboratory informatics, 136
E/e antigen, 693-694
EGFR mutations
colorectal cancer and, 1504
lung cancer and, 1500
Egg studies, for enteric parasites, 1236
Ehrlichia, infections caused by organisms of, 1104*t*, 1107-1109
Ehrlichia canis Ehrlichiosis, human, 1108
Ehrlichia ewingii, human infection with, 1108
Ehrlichia muris-like infections, 1108
Ehrlichiosis
human *Ehrlichia canis*, 1108
human monocytotropic, 1108
Eikenella, 1141-1142
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1142
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1141
laboratory diagnosis of, 1141
Electrical impedance, of instrument technology, 519, 519*f*
Electrochemiluminescent immunoassay, 880-881
Electrochemistry, 44-46
Electrolyte(s)
abnormalities of, 90-92, 90*f*
hyperkalemia, 92
hypernatremia, 91, 91*t*
hypokalemia, 91-92
hyponatremia, 90-91, 91*t*
pseudohyponatremia, 91
acid-base balance and, 491
and acid-base disturbances, and hemapheresis, 778-780
renal function, water, and acid-base balance, evaluation of, 162-187
Electromagnetic radiation (EMR), 33, 35*f*
energy of, 34, 35*b*
Electron multiplier, 50-51
Electronic balances, 55
Electronic crossmatching, 725, 725*b*
Electro-osmosis, 255
Electrophoresis, 254-255, 255*f*
capillary, 52-53, 52*f*
and densitometry, 46-47
Electrophoretic methods, 232
Electrophoretic separation, 1309, 1309*f*
Electrophoretic techniques, of albumin and IgG measurements, 488
Elevated white blood cell (WBC)
chronic lymphocytic leukemia relating to, 89
chronic myelogenous leukemia relating to, 89
infection relating to, 88
leukemoid reaction relating to, 88-89
Elevation of coagulation factor levels, 838
Elution, 732
antibody, 729, 730*t*
Embolization, 252
Embryonic and fetal hematopoiesis, 542
Embryonic hemoglobins, 577
EMR. *see* Electromagnetic radiation (EMR)
Encephalitis, 1076*t*, 1086*f*, 1088-1090, 1089*f*, 1090*t*
Endemic syphilis, 1175
Endocervical specimens, 1294-1295
Endocrine disease, anemia in, 569
Endocrine function
evaluation of, 362-399
adrenal, 379-395
pituitary, 362-370, 363*b*, 363*f*
renin-aldosterone axis, 395-399, 395*f*-396*f*
thyroid, 370-379, 372*f*
testing, 97-99
adrenal function, 98-99, 99*t*
thyroid function, 97-98, 98*t*
Endocrine pancreas, functions of, 206-208
Endocytosis, assays of, 908-909
Endogenous anticoagulant pathways, 834-835, 835*f*
Endogenous erythroid colonies (EECs), 618
Endogenous hyperinsulinism, 215
Endogenous substances, GFR with, 168
Endometrial cancer, 1511
Endosmosis, 255
Endothelial cells, 530-531
Endothelium, platelets and, 795-796
End-point quantitative polymerase chain reaction, 1318-1319
End-product inhibition, 276
Energy, of electromagnetic radiation, 34, 35*b*, 35*f*
Entamoeba histolytica, 1253-1254
diagnosis of, 1254, 1255*f*
epidemiology of, 1254
Enteric parasites, 1236
egg studies for, 1236
nematode culture and recovery techniques for, 1236
objects resembling, 1236-1237, 1237*t*
pinworms, cellulose tape technique for, 1236
Enteritis, 1076*t*
Enterobacteriaceae, 1131-1134, 1131*f*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1132-1134
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1131-1132, 1131*f*
laboratory diagnosis of, 1132, 1133*t*-1134*t*
Enterobius vermicularis, 1263, 1264*f*
Enterococcus, 1119-1123, 1119*f*, 1119*t*
Enteropathy-associated T cell lymphoma, 650, 650*f*
Enterovirus, 1073*t*, 1086*t*, 1087-1088
Envenomation, 1276
Environmental carcinogens, 355-356
Environmental concerns, for best weighing accuracy, 55
Enzymatic activity and intracellular killing, assays of, 909-910, 910*f*
Enzymatic methods, 230-231
Enzyme activity, 273
coupled enzymatic reactions and, 273-274
factors affecting, 274-275
inhibitors and interferences, 275
pH, 274
salt and protein concentrations, 274-275
temperature, 274
measuring, 273-274
plasma, factors affecting, 270
predetermined, new catalytic antibodies with, 279-280, 281*f*
spectrophotometric assays and, 273
Enzyme assays
caveats in, 275
competing reactions, 275
cyclic enzyme instability, 275
enzyme inhibitors and, presence, 275
inhibitory compounds, in blood collection tubes, 275
K_M-type mutations, 275
thermal instability, 275
time-dependent inactivation, 275
unstable enzymes, protease degradation of, 275
under nonsaturating conditions, 274
Enzyme inhibitory homogeneous immunoassay, 875-877, 877*f*

Enzyme kinetics: total enzyme concentrations, in serum and other body fluids, 271-276
enzyme activity, factors affecting, 274-275
enzyme assays in, caveats in, 275
measuring enzymes in, antibody-based techniques for, 275-276
Michaelis-Menten equation in, 271-274
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 1009, 1014
for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, 847-848, 849*f*
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent spot (ELISPOT) assay, 908*f*
Enzyme-multiplied immunoassay technique, 874-875, 876*f*
Enzymes, 490-491, 497, 501, 503, 505
assays for, 436-439
canalicular injury relating to, 296-297
ALP, 296
cellular locations of, 295, 295*f*
drug-metabolizing, pharmacogenomics, 1408-1413, 1408*f*
immunoassay for, 872-878
background and classification of, 872, 872*t*, 873*b*
heterogeneous, 872-874, 873*t*, 874*f*
homogeneous, 874-878, 875*t*
inhibition of, 276-278, 276*f*-277*f*, 278*t*
competitive, 276
noncompetitive, simple and mixed, 277
uncompetitive, 277
inhibitors of, presence of, 275
lipolytic, and other proteins, 225, 227*t*
as markers, 321
measurement, for metabolic defects, 989
measuring, antibody-based techniques for, 275-276
nucleic acid-associated, 1305, 1305*f*, 1305*t*
plasma levels relating to, 295-297
properties of, 267-271
catalysis, 267-269, 269*f*
cofactors, 269-270, 270*b*, 270*t*
concentration and activity of, 268, 268*f*
isoenzymes, 269, 270*t*
lifetime of, in blood, factors affecting, 270-271
nomenclature of, 269, 269*t*
plasma enzyme activities in, factors affecting, 270
specificity of, 268
as reagents, for analyte concentrations, 432-439
release of, mechanisms of, 295-296
specific, 280-288, 281*t*
acetylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.7), and butyrylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.8), 285-286
acid phosphatase (EC 3.1.3.2), 281-282
alkaline phosphatase (EC 3.1.3.1), 282-283
angiotensin-converting enzyme (EC 3.4.15.1), 283-285
lactate dehydrogenase (EC 1.1.1.27), 286-287
5'-nucleotidase (EC 3.1.3.5), 287
Enzymology. *see* Clinical enzymology
Eosinophil precursors, morphology of, 550-551, 550*f*, 551*b*
Eosinophilia, 611, 611*b*, 611*f*
myeloid and lymphoid neoplasms with, 621-622
neoplastic disorders associated with, 1480-1481
Eosinophilic leukemia, chronic, 620
Eosinophilic leukemoid reactions, 616
Eosinophils, 462, 462*f*, 528, 528*f*, 550-551
distribution and kinetics of, 551
function of, 551
and neutrophils, 857
Epidermal growth factor, 1453-1454
Epidermal growth factor receptor, 1419-1423, 1422*f*, 1455
Epidermolysis bullosa acquisita, 1040-1041, 1040*f*
Epigenetic influences, and nonmendelian inheritance, 1382
Epigenetics, gene regulation and, 1307
Epigenomics, pharmacogenomics in, 1429-1430, 1429*f*
Epithelial cells, 462-463
renal tubular, 463, 463*f*
squamous, 462-463, 462*f*
transitional (urothelial), 462-463, 463*f*
tumors of, antibodies to p53 in, 1458
Epithelioid hemangioendothelioma, 1514-1515
Epsilometer, 1155, 1155*f*
Epstein-Barr virus, 1073*t*
EQC. *see* Equivalent Quality Control (EQC)
Equipment
for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1365, 1375-1376
in specimen processing, 31
Equivalent Quality Control (EQC), 116
Ergonomic hazards, clinical laboratory and, 10
Errors
in preanalysis, 20, 21*t*
quality systems management and, 3-4
Erysipelothrix, 1125-1126
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1125
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1125
laboratory diagnosis of, 1125, 1125*t*
prevention of, 1126
Erythema migrans, 1180
Erythroblastosis fetalis, 412-413, 412*f*
Erythrocytapheresis
benefits of, 756, 756*b*
donor
concerns of, 757
selection of, 757
product requirements, 756-757
Erythrocyte(s), 461, 522-527, 522*f*
in blood, effective survival measurement of, 547
color content of, 522-523
destruction of, 546
role of complement in, 682-683
effective production measurement of, 547, 547*t*
indices of, 513-514
manual counts of, 514
semiautomated methods of, 514
or hemoglobin
total destruction measurement of, 547
total production measurement of, 547
physiologic variation in, 514-515, 515*f*, 515*t*
and plasma volume, measurement of, 601-602
shape of, 524-525, 524*f*-525*f*
size of, 523-524
structure of, 525-526
survival studies relating to, 573, 574*f*
Erythrocyte antigens and antibodies, 683-714, 683*t*-684*t*
Erythrocyte (red blood cell) casts, 465, 465*f*
Erythrocyte lysis, 663
Erythrocyte production, 542-546
hemoglobin
structure and function of, 546, 546*f*, 548*f*
synthesis of, 544
megaloblastic maturation, 544
normoblastic maturation, 542-544, 542*f*-543*f*
regulation of, 544, 544*f*
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), 531-533
alternative methods and technologies to measure, 533
application of, 533
methods of, 532-533
modified Westergren method, 532
sources of error, 532-533
Westergren method, 532
plasma factors in, 532
red cell factors in, 532
stages in, 532
Erythrocyte volume, 601
Erythrocytic disorders, 559-605
anemias, 559-600
polycythemia, 600-602
Erythrokinetics, 546-547
erythrocytes
in blood, effective survival measurement of, 547
Erythrokinetics *(Continued)*
effective production measurement of, 547, 547*t*
erythrocytes or hemoglobin
total destruction measurement of, 547
total production measurement of, 547
Erythroleukemia, 631, 631*f*
Erythropoiesis, transitory arrest of, 571
Erythropoietic protoporphyria (EPP), 604
Erythropoietin production, inappropriate, 601
Esophageal cancer, anti-p53 in, 1458
Essential fructosuria, 218
Essential thrombocythemia, 620, 620*f*, 1478-1480, 1479*f*
clinical features of, 620
diagnosis of, 620
genetics of, 620
laboratory features of, 620
blood in, 620
marrow in, 620
Estimated average requirement (EAR), 416, 422
Estimating risk factors, in cholesterol testing, 237
Estradiol, 402
Estrone, 400
E-test strip, 1155, 1155*f*, 1165*f*
Ethanol, 357, 357*t*
Ethnic variation, of MHC, 958, 959*f*
Ethosuximide (Zarontin), 345-346
Ethylene glycol, 357
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), 24-25
effect on blood tests, 26*t*
ETV6-RUNX1 ALL, 1474
in childhood leukemias, 1476
EUCAST. *see* European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST)
Euploidy, 1345, 1345*f*
European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST), 1154
Eustrongylides spp., 1274
EVD. *see* Ebola viral disease (EVD)
Event, in flow cytometry, 44
Evidence-based medicine, 81-82, 81*f*
Ewing's sarcoma, primitive peripheral neuroectodermal tumor in, 1513
EWMA. *see* Exponentially weighted moving averages (EWMA)
Exercise, as physiologic factor, 20
Exertional angina, 244-245
Exhaled breath condensate (EBC), 507
Exhaled nitric oxide (NO), 507
Exogenous substances, GFR with, 168
Expert systems, 1155
Exponentially weighted moving averages (EWMA), 119
Expressivity, variable penetrance and, 1381
Extended haplotypes, 976-977, 977*f*, 977*t*-978*t*
Extended-spectrum β-lactamases (ESBLs), 1164
Extensive liver disease, 303
Extracellular volume, regulation of, 166-167, 167*f*
water and electrolyte balance, nonrenal control of, 167
Extracorporeal photopheresis, 768-769
indications for, 768-769, 768*b*, 769*t*
procedure for, 769
Extraction
in molecular diagnostics, 23
and quantification, of DNA, 1398
Extranodal marginal zone B cell lymphoma *MALT1*, *BCL10* and *FOXP1* gene abnormalities in, 1486
of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue, 642, 642*f*
Extranodal NK/T cell lymphoma, nasal type, 650, 650*f*
Extraosseous plasmacytoma, 641
Extraskeletal myxoid chondrosarcoma, 1513
Extravascular hemolysis, 682-683, 682*f*, 683*t*
Eye, specimens from, 1290
conjunctival, 1290
corneal, 1290

F

FACS. *see* Fluorescence-activated cell sorter
Factor VIII or factor IX, deficiency of, 804-806, 804*t*
evaluation of carriers of, 805
treatment of, 805-806
complications of, 806, 806*f*
Factor V_{Leiden}, 838, 838*f*
Falling drop method, 446
Familial adenomatous polyposis, 1391
Familial adenomatous polyposis syndrome, 1505
Familial cancers, 1388-1391, 1389*t*, 1392*f*
Familial combined hyperlipidemia (type 2B), 241
Familial defective ApoB, 240
Familial hypercholesterolemia, 238-240, 240*f*
Familial hypertriglyceridemia, 241
Familial hypoalphalipoproteinemia, 242-243
Familial juvenile polyposis syndrome (JPS), 1506
Familial paraganglioma syndromes, 1516
Familial platelet disorder, with disposition to acute myelogenous leukemia, 825
Familial polycythemia, 601
Fanconi's anemia (FA), 571, 607
Faraday, in coulometry, 46
Fasciola hepatica, 1269-1270, 1269*f*
Fascioliasis, 1269-1270, 1269*f*
Fasciolopsis buski, 1269, 1269*f*
Fasting, 229
Fat, 322
Fat-soluble vitamins, 421-422
Fatty acid-binding protein (FABP), 173-174
Fatty casts, 466, 467*f*
Febrile nonhemolytic reactions, to transfusion, 745
Fecal elastase, 316
Fecal occult blood testing (FOBT), 320-321
and mutant protein markers, in stool, 1448
Fecal specimens, for medical parasitology, examination of, 1234-1237
collection, handling, and preservation of, 1234-1235, 1235*t*
concentration techniques in, 1235
direct wet mount of, 1235
enteric parasites, 1236
iron hematoxylin stain for, 1236
macroscopic, 1235
microscopic, 1235-1236
microsporidia in, stains for, 1236
modified acid-fast stains for, 1236
permanent stains for, 1235-1236
Wheatley's trichrome stain for, 1236
Feces
newborn, blood in, 321
specimens from, 1295-1297
bacterial pathogens in, 1296-1297
parasites in, 1297
viruses in, 1296
Felty's syndrome (FS), 608
Female reproduction, regulation of, 402-403, 402*f*-403*f*, 406-408, 407*f*
Fentanyl, 336
Fetal hematopoiesis, 542
Fetal hemoglobin, hereditary persistence of, 589-590
Fetal lung maturity, 413
Fetal status, intrapartum assessment of, 414
α-fetoprotein (AFP), 297, 1438
Fever
Boutonneuse, 1105
Crimean Congo hemorrhagic, 157, 157*t*
Oroya, 1111
Q, 1109-1110
relapsing, 1183-1184, 1184*f*
spotted
flea-borne, 1105
Rocky Mountain, 1103-1105
trench, 1111
Fibrin and fibrinolytic system, formation of, 797-798, 797*f*-798*f*
Fibrinogen, 262, 262*f*
disorders of, 807-808
Fibrinolysis, hereditary hemorrhagic disorders of, 809
Fibrinolytic system and fibrin, formation of, 797-798, 797*f*-798*f*

Fibronectin, 489, 505-506
Fibrosing mediastinitis, 1215
FII deficiency, 808
Filaria, 1271-1273
Filters, 37-39, 37*f*
Financial calculations, interpretation of, 147
Financial lease, 148
Financial management, 137-148
  capital acquisition methods, 147-148, 147*t*
  capital project, evaluating, 146-147, 146*t*
    breakeven point, 147
    financial calculations, interpretation of, 147
    internal rate of return, 147
    net present value, 147
    payback period, 147
    return on investment, 147
  costs, defining and identifying of, 137-139, 138*f*, 138*t*, 140*t*
  industry overview of, 137
  of molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1366-1367
  patent issues in, 1367
  payers and reimbursement, 139-141
    government payers, 141
    private insurance, 139
  performance and monitoring of, 144-146
    benchmarking and productivity measures, 145-146, 146*t*
    budgeting, 144, 144*t*
    financial reporting and statements, 145, 145*t*
    variance analysis, 145
  reimbursement coding systems, 141-144
    accurate coding, 142, 143*t*
    Medicare reimbursement, 142-144, 144*t*
  revenue, 139, 141*t*
Financial reporting and statements, 145, 145*t*
Finger or heel skin puncture, 27-28
Fisher's exact method, 723-724, 724*t*
F2-isoprostanes, 490
Fixed costs, 137-138
Flagellates, 1257-1260, 1260*t*
  Chilomastix mesnili, 1259
  Dientamoeba fragilis, 1257
  Giardia lamblia, 1257-1259
  Pentatrichomonas hominis, 1259
  Trichomonas vaginalis, 1259-1260
Flags
  alarms and, 73-74
  for problem specimens, 74
  for problematic results, 74
  for specimens that require additional analysis, 74
Flame ionization detectors (FIDs), 48-49
Flea-borne spotted fever, 1105
Fleas, 1277*f*, 1278
FLI1, 825-826
Flies, 1277*f*, 1278
"Floating β" lipoprotein. *see* β-VLDL ("floating β" lipoprotein)
Floret cells, 649
Flow cytometer, 895-897
  colors, applications and fluorochromes relating to, 896-897, 896*t*, 897*f*
  flow cell, 895-896
  fluidics, 895-896
  immunophenotypic lymphocyte subset analysis, 897*f*
  light source and signal processing of, 895, 895*f*
  structural components and function of, 895*f*
Flow cytometric analysis, 896*t*
  polymorphonuclear leukocyte, 910*f*
Flow cytometric evaluation, of hematopoietic neoplasia, 659-679
Flow cytometric immunoassay, 887-888
Flow cytometry, 44, 45*f*, 659
  detection of F cells by, 578
  quantitative, 900
  use of, for platelet function evaluation, 816, 818*f*
FLT3 mutations, in acute myeloid leukemia, 1471-1472
Fluid delivery type, and sampling, 884
Fluid-phase regulators, 933-934
Fluorescence, 42
Fluorescence assays, time-resolved, 42
Fluorescence excitation transfer immunoassay, 880
Fluorescence in situ hybridization, 1341-1343, 1342*f*-1343*f*
  cell DNA testing for cancer using, 1447
Fluorescence microscopy, 1175
Fluorescence polarization assay, 879-880, 879*f*
Fluorescence polarization immunoassay (FPIA), 326
Fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) probes, 1319
Fluorescence-activated cell sorter, 44, 45*f*
Fluorescent enzyme immunoassay, 873
Fluorescent immunoassay, 878-880
  background and classification, 878
  fluorescence excitation transfer, 880
  fluorescence polarization assay, 879-880, 879*f*
  fluorescent protection immunoassay, 880
  fluoroimmunometric method, 878-879
  heterogeneous, 878
  homogeneous, 879
  radial partition immunofluorometric, 879
  time-resolved fluoroimmunoassay, 879
Fluorescent protection immunoassay, 880
Fluorescent spot test, 593-594
Fluoride (Fl), 425
  effect on blood tests, 26*t*
Fluorochromes, 660, 896-897, 896*t*, 897*f*
  emission spectra of, 661*f*
  tandem, 660, 661*f*
Fluoroimmunometric method, 878-879
Fluorometers, components of, 42-43, 42*f*
Fluorometry. *see* Molecular luminescence spectroscopy (fluorometry)
Fluoroquinolone, 1113
5-Fluorouracil, 1424-1425, 1424*f*
Folate, 421
  defective absorption of, 566-567
  evolution of laboratory abnormalities in, 566
  inadequate intake of, 566
  inadequate utilization of, 567
  increased requirement for, 567
Folate deficiency, diagnosis of, 567
Folate-cobalamin relationship, 566
Folic acid
  deficiency of, 566-567
  metabolism of, 566
  prevention of, 410
Folin-Ciocalteu reagent, 257
Follicular and diffuse large B cell lymphomas, t(14;18)/*BCL2-IGH*in, 1484-1485, 1485*f*
Follicular carcinoma, 1500
Follicular dendritic cell sarcoma/tumor, 658
Follicular lymphoma, 642-643, 642*f*-643*f*, 643*t*
Fondaparinux, 846
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 1362-1363
  on CLIA waiver, 66-67
FORS blood group system, 688-690
Forsmann antigen, 689
4T system, 847, 847*t*
FOXP1 gene abnormalities in, 1486
Fractional excretion (FE), 172
Fractional reabsorption (FR), 172
Fragile X syndrome, 1358, 1358*f*
Fragile XA and fragile XE syndromes, 1385-1386, 1387*f*
Francisella tularensis, 154, 154*t*, 1145-1146
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1145-1146
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1145
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1145
Fredrickson Classification, 237, 238*t*
Free prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 1443-1444, 1444*f*
Free thyroxine, 375
Free water clearance, negative free water clearance and, 172
Freezing-point osmometer, 44
Freezing-point osmometry, principle of, 44
French-American-British Cooperative Group, 626
Frequency, of sine wave, 34
Fresh frozen plasma (FFP), 761
  as replacement fluid, 771
Friedewald calculation, 233
Friedreich ataxia, 1386-1388
Frontal electrophoresis, 254
Fructosamine. *see* Glycosylated albumin
Fructose
  intolerance, hereditary, 218
  metabolism in, defects in, 218-219
  in urine, 451-452
Fructose-1,6-biphosphatase deficiency, 218-219
Fulminant hepatic failure, 304-305
Functional tests, for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, 848
Fungal colony, 1199, 1201*f*
Fungal culture, from CSF, sample processing of, 1288
Fungal meningitis, 493
Fungal pigment, 1200
Fungemia, blood specimen timing for, 1286
Fungi, 472, 472*f*-473*f*
  imperfect, 1199
Fusariosis, hyaline fungi as cause of, 1225-1228
Fusion genes
  chromatin remodeling genes in, 1514
  involving growth factors, 1514
  involving receptor tyrosine kinase genes, 1514
  involving *TET* genes, 1513
  other types of, sarcoma with, 1514
  sarcomas with, 1513-1515
FV deficiency, 808
  and FVII, combined, 808
FVII deficiency, 809
FVIIa-TF complex, 795, 795*f*
FVIII (antihemophilic factor), 796
  and FV, combined deficiency of, 808
FX deficiency, 808
FXII autoactivation, 796

G

G antigen, 694
Galactokinase deficiency, 218
Galactose, in urine, 451-452
Galactose metabolism, defects in, 218
Galactose-alpha-1,3-galactose epitope, 1068
Galactosemia with uridyl transferase deficiency, 218
Gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT), 438, 439*f*
Gardnerella, 1146
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1146
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1146
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1146
Gas chromatography, 48-49, 48*f*
  with infrared spectroscopy, 330
Gas chromatography-mass spectroscopy, 327-329, 329*f*-330*f*
Gastrectomy, megaloblastic anemia and, 565
Gastric cancer, 1503
Gastrinoma, 319
Gastrointestinal anthrax, 151
Gastrointestinal bleeding, 320-321
Gastrointestinal candidiasis, 1211
Gastrointestinal disorders, laboratory diagnosis of, 306-323
  diarrhea and malabsorption, 312-315
  macroscopic examination for, 322
  microscopic examination for, 322
  peptic ulceration, 310-311
  stool collection for, 321-322
  Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 311-312
Gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST), 1515
Gastrointestinal tumors, 318-320
  neuroendocrine, 318-320
  pancreatic adenocarcinoma, 318, 319*t*
  pancreatic tumors and, markers for, 321
    blood group antigens, 321
    enzymes, 321
    genetic, 321
    hormones, 321
    protein, 321
    tumor suppressor genes, 321
GATA-1, mutations in, 825
Gatifloxacin, 215
Gating and data analysis, 897-900
Gaussian distribution, 104, 104*f*
  definition of, 103
Gc-globulin, 263
Gel filtration, 256
Gelatin particle agglutination, 868, 870*f*
Gelatinous transformation, 608
Gemella, *Aerococcus* and, 1123
Gender, as physiologic factor, 21
Gene arrays, detecting oncoprotein abnormalities, 1446
Gene expression profiling
  by microarray, 1490-1491
  in RCC, 1509
  role of *BCL6* and *MYC* gene abnormalities and classification based on, 1487
Gene fusion concept and basis, for reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction analysis, 1466-1467, 1467*t*
Gene mutations, 1446
  in acute myeloid leukemias, 1472-1473
Genes
  and allergic phenotype, 1059*t*
  in central or class III region, 974-976, 974*f*
  definition of, 1337
  and phenotype frequencies, 980
  regulation of
    epigenetics and, 1307
    small RNA and, 1307, 1307*f*
  tumor suppressor, 321
Genetic abnormalities, recurrent, acute leukemia with, 627-629
  balanced translocations/inversions, 627-629
    acute promyelocytic leukemia with t(15;17)(q22l;q12), PML/RARA variants, 628, 628*f*
    AML with (t5;21)(q22;q22), RUNX1-RUNX1T1, 627, 628*f*
    AML with inv(3)(q21q26.2)or t(3;3)(q21;q23.2) RPN1-EVI1, 629
    AML with inv(16)(p13q22) or t(16:16)(p13.1;q22), CFβ/MYH11, 628, 628*f*
    AML with t(6;9)(p23;q34); DEK-NUP214, 628-629
    AML with t(9;11)(p22;q23); MLLT3-MLL, 628, 629*f*
    AML (megakaryoblastic) with t(1;22)(p13;q13); RMB15-MKL1, 629
  with gene mutations, 629
    AML with *CEBPA* mutation, 629
    AML with FLT3 mutation, 629
    AML with *NPM1* mutation, 629
Genetic basis
  of antibody diversity, 916-917, 917*t*
  of transplantation, 968, 968*f*-969*f*
Genetic complement deficiencies, 936-937, 936*t*-937*t*
Genetic diseases, molecular diagnosis of, 1377-1395
  applications for, 1379-1381
  new frontier of, 1393-1394, 1393*f*-1394*f*, 1394*b*
  special concepts in, 1381-1382
    allele frequencies and mass population screening, 1382
    anticipation, 1381-1382
    epigenetic influences and nonmendelian inheritance, 1382
    imprinting, 1381
    molecular heterogeneity, 1381
    predictive genetic testing, 1382
    uniparental disomy, 1381
    variable penetrance and expressivity, 1381
  specific examples of, 1382-1393
    cystic fibrosis, 1382-1383, 1383*t*
    Duchenne muscular dystrophy, 1383-1384, 1384*f*
    familial cancers, 1388-1391, 1389*t*, 1392*f*
    hemochromatosis, 1391-1392
    hereditary thrombophilias, 1384-1385, 1384*f*
    mitochondrial DNA disorders, 1392
    Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes, 1388, 1388*f*

Genetic diseases, molecular diagnosis of *(Continued)*
sickle cell anemia, hemoglobinopathies and, 1384
spinal muscular atrophy, 1392
trinucleotide repeat expansion disorders, 1385-1388, 1385*t*
techniques for, 1378-1379, 1378*f*-1380*f*
Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act, 1362
Genetic markers, 321, 980-981, 1397
Genetic polymorphism, 980
Genetics
complement, 936-937, 936*t*-937*t*
of major histocompatibility complex (MHC), 956-958
basic, 956, 956*f*
ethnic variation, 958, 959*f*
inheritance, 958
linkage disequilibrium, 958
MHC, composition of, 957, 957*t*, 958*f*
MHC genes, localization of, 958
Geneva Protocol, 158
Genital mycoplasmas, 1112-1113
Genital tract, specimens from, 1294-1295
endocervical and urethral specimens, 1294-1295
ulcers, 1295
vaginal secretions, 1294, 1294*f*
vesicles, 1295, 1295*f*
Genital tract infections, 405
Genome-level DNA sequencing, 1393-1394, 1393*f*-1394*f*, 1394*b*
Genotype, definition of, 1337
Genus *Aspergillus*, 1225-1227
aspergillosis, pathology of, 1226-1227, 1226*f*
clinical diseases of, 1226
cutaneous infection, 1226
disseminated infection, 1226
ocular infections, 1226
otic infections, 1226
primary pulmonary infection, 1226
sinus infection, 1226
laboratory diagnosis of, 1227, 1227*f*
risk factors for, 1226
Genus *Blastomyces*, 1217
blastomycosis, pathology of, 1217, 1217*f*
clinical diseases of, 1217
laboratory identification of, 1217, 1217*f*-1218*f*
risk factors for, 1217
Genus *Candida*, 1211-1212
clinical diseases of, 1211
cutaneous disease as, 1211
gastrointestinal candidiasis as, 1211
invasive candidiasis as, 1211
oral candidiasis as, 1211
urinary tract infection as, 1211
vaginal candidiasis as, 1211
laboratory diagnosis for, 1212, 1212*f*
pathology of, 1211-1212
risk factors for, 1211
Genus *Coccidioides*, 1217-1219
clinical diseases of, 1218
laboratory diagnosis of, 1218-1219
pathology of, 1218, 1218*f*
risk factors for, 1218
Genus *Cryptococcus*, 1212-1213
clinical disease of, 1212-1213
bone and joint infection, 1212-1213
central nervous system infection, 1213
in respiratory tract, 1212
in skin lesions, 1212
laboratory diagnosis of, 1213, 1213*f*
pathology of, 1213
risk factors for, 1212
Genus *Fusarium*, 1227-1228, 1228*f*
Genus *Histoplasma*, 1215-1217
clinical diseases of, 1215-1216
acute pulmonary infection, 1215
chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis, 1215
disseminated histoplasmosis, 1216
granulomatous and fibrosing mediastinitis, 1215
laboratory diagnosis of, 1216-1217, 1216*f*
pathology of, 1216, 1216*f*
risk factors for, 1215
Genus *Malassezia*, 1213-1214
clinical diseases of, 1213-1214
cutaneous infection, 1213
systemic infection, 1213-1214
infection from, pathology of, 1214, 1214*f*
laboratory diagnosis for, 1214, 1214*f*
risk factors for, 1213
Genus *Scedosporium*, 1228, 1228*f*
Genus *Sporothrix*, 1219-1220
clinical diseases of, 1219
laboratory diagnosis of, 1219-1220, 1220*f*
risk factors for, 1219
sporotrichosis, pathology of, 1219
Geometric mean, 104
Gerbich antibodies, 709
Gerbich blood group system, 708-709, 708*t*, 709*f*
biochemistry of, 709
biological role of, 709
molecular biology of, 709
null/weak phenotypes, 708-709
Gestational diabetes, 413
diagnosis of, 209-210, 210*t*
GFI1B, 826
Giant cell arteritis, 1019-1020, 1019*f*
clinical laboratory testing of, 1019-1020
definition and epidemiology of, 1019-1020
diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1020
etiology and pathogenesis of, 1019
pathology of, 1019
Giant cell fibroblastoma (GCF), 1514
Giardia lamblia, 1257-1259
Giemsa stain, 1206
GIL antibodies, 714
GIL blood group system, 713-714
biochemistry of, 713
biological role of, 714
molecular biology of, 713-714
Gilbert's syndrome, 291
GINA. *see* Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act
Glanzmann thrombasthenia, 823
Glassware, and plasticware, for laboratory, 55-56
Glioblastoma multiforme, 1493, 1496*t*
GLOB blood group system, 688-690
Global hemostasis assays, 804
Globin gene clusters, 577, 578*f*
Globin synthesis, 544
Glomerular autoimmune diseases, 1047-1050
Glomerular filtration rate (GFR)
creatinine clearance as an estimate of, 169-170
measurement of, 168-171
beta-2 microglobulin, 171
beta trace protein, 171
cystatin C, 170-171
with endogenous substances, 168
with exogenous substances, 168
tryptophan glycoconjugate, 171
renal plasma flow, filtration fraction and, 171-172
Glomerulonephritides, 1048-1050
Glomerulonephritis
lupus, 1049-1050
membranoproliferative, 1048
pauci-immune, 1049
postinfectious, 1049
and therapeutic plasma exchange, 776-777
Glomerulopathies, 1047-1048
Glucagon, 207
Glucagonoma, 319-320
Glucose, 434-435, 434*f*, 490, 497, 500-501, 503, 505
abnormalities, 94-95, 94*f*
interstitial, 209
measurements for, 208-209, 208*f*
and other sugars, in urine, 450-453
Glucose oxidase, 208, 208*f*
Glutamic acid decarboxylase autoantibodies, 1051
γ-Glutamyl transferase, 296-297
Glutathione S-transferases, 1412, 1413*t*
Glycemic control, measures of, 212-213, 212*t*
Glycogen phosphorylase, 247
Glycogenoses
hepatic, 216-218, 217*t*-218*t*
muscle, 216-218, 219*t*
Glycols, 357
Glycolytic enzyme deficiencies, 594
Glycopeptide resistance in enterococci, 1163
Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors, 853
Glycosuria, causes of, 451
Glycosylated albumin, 258
Glycosylated hemoglobin (GHb), 212, 212*f*, 213*t*, 577-578
Glypican-3 (GPC3), 1502
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), 402
Government payers, 141
GP130 gene, 1502-1503
G-proteins, 1456-1457
defects in, and platelet signaling pathways, 824-825
Graft-versus-host disease, 747-748, 748*b*, 748*f*
as indication for extracorporeal photopheresis, 768-769, 768*b*
Gram stain, 1206
specimen processing relating to, 1114-1115, 1115*f*
Gram-negative bacilli, miscellaneous, 1142-1147
Gram-negative bacteria
bacilli, 1131-1134
cocci, 1129-1131
HACEK, 1141-1142
nonfermentative bacilli, 1134-1141
Gram-positive cocci, 1116-1123
Gram-positive rods, 1123-1129
Granular casts, 466, 466*f*
Granule stores, deficiency of, 823-824
δ-storage pool, 823-824
Granules, of platelets, and secretion, disorders of, 823-824
Granulocyte and monocyte function, 907-910
Granulocyte collection procedure, 755
Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF), 788
Granulocyte donor
concerns of, 755-756, 756*t*
selection of, 755
stimulation of, 755
Granulocyte product requirements, 755
Granulocyte transfusions, 754-755
Granulocytes, 738
Granulocytic and monocytic disorders, 606-612
leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD) diseases as, 610-611
neutropenia, 607-608, 607*b*
neutrophilia, 606-607, 607*b*, 607*f*
neutrophils
functional disorders of, 610
morphologic alterations in, 608-610, 609*b*
Granulocytotropic anaplasmosis, human, 1108
Granulomatous amebic meningoencephalitis (GAE), 1252
Granulomatous mediastinitis, 1215
Gray platelet syndrome (GPS), 824
Gray-top tubes, anticoagulants and, 25, 25*t*
Gross/physical examination, of urine, 443-446
appearance of, 443-445, 444*t*
clarity (character), 444-445
color, 443-444, 444*t*
blue, green, or blue-green, 444
dark brown or black, 444
orange-red or orange-brown, 444
red, 443
yellow-brown or green-brown, 444
odor, 445
volume, 445
Ground state, 269*f*
Group O, 686
Growth
factors of, 541-542
rate of, 1207
temperature, 1207
Growth factor receptors, 1454-1456, 1454*f*
Growth factors, 1452-1454
fusion genes involving, 1514
Growth hormone (GH), 365-367, 366*f*
deficiency of, 365
excess of, 365-367
Guanidinosuccinic acid, 827
Guinea worms, 1273
Gut peptides, in diarrhea, 314

H

H antigen, 685
HACEK bacteria, 1141-1142
Haemophilus, 1139-1141, 1139*f*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1140-1141
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1139, 1140*f*
laboratory diagnosis of, 1139-1140, 1140*t*, 1141*f*
Hair and nails, 507
Hairy cell leukemia, 638-639, 638*f*, 670
variant, 639, 639*f*
Hansen's disease, 1190
Haploid, definition of, 1337
Hapten model, 1423
Haptoglobin, 260, 261*f*
Hardware and software, concepts and technology for, 130-131
Hb A_2 quantitation, 578
Hb C/β^+-thalassemia, 585
Hb C/β^0-thalassemia, 585
Hb C disease, 585, 585*f*
Hb C trait (β6 glu→lys), 584
Hb concentration, measurement of, 511-512
Hb D Los Angeles (Punjab) (β121 glu→gln), 585
Hb E (β 26 glu→lys), 585
Hb E trait (Hb AE), 585
Hb E/β-thalassemia, 585
Hb G Philadelphia (α 68asn→lys), 585-586
Hb Kenya, 589
Hb S/O Arab, 584
Hb SS/α-thalassemia, 584, 585*t*
Hb S/β-thalassemia, 584
hCG, early pregnancy and, 408-410
HDL-C values, determining, 232-233
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA), 7
Heart failure (HF), 246
Heart fatty acid binding protein, 247
Heat, hemolysis and, 594
Heat instability test, 586
Heat-shock protein 70 genes, 975
α Heavy chain disease, 640
γ Heavy chain disease, 640
μ Heavy chain disease, 640
Heavy chain diseases, 640
Heavy proteinuria, 448
Heavy-light chain immunoassay (HLC), 916*f*, 924-925
Heinz bodies, 593, 593*f*
Helicase-dependent amplification (HDA), 1324
Helicobacter, 1139
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1139
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1139
laboratory diagnosis of, 1139
Hemagglutination, 715-716, 715*f*, 866-868, 868*f*-869*f*
inhibition of, 727, 728*t*
reactions, grading of, 715, 716*t*, 717*f*
specific, factors affecting, 715, 716*t*
Hemangioendothelioma, epithelioid, 1514-1515
Hemangioma, of bone, 1514
Hemapheresis, 751-782
donor cytapheresis, 753-761
donor erythrocytapheresis, 756-757
donor leukocytapheresis, 754-756
donor platelet apheresis, 753
hematopoietic progenitor cell collection, by apheresis, 757-761
multicomponent apheresis donation, 757, 757*b*
donor plasmapheresis, 761
plasma donor concerns, 761
plasma donor selection, 761
plasma products, 761
donor/patient complications common to procedures, 777-781, 778*t*
air embolus as, 781

Hemapheresis *(Continued)*
allergic, anaphylactoid, and anaphylactic reactions, to hemapheresis, 780
angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, 780
electrolyte and acid-base disturbances, 778-780
hydroxyethyl starch and coagulopathy as, 781
hydroxyethyl starch and other side effects, 781
hydroxyethyl starch and renal dysfunction in, 781
hypovolemia and vasovagal reactions, 780-781
introduction to, 751-753
basic principles of, 752-753, 752*f*
definitions of, 751
therapeutic, indications for, 761-777, 762*t*-765*t*
therapeutic plasma exchange, 769-777, 770*f*, 770*t*, 771*b*
Hematocrit, 512-513
gross examination of, 513
micromethod measurement of, 513
centrifugation, 513
equipment, 513
interpretation of results, 513
other errors, 513
procedure, 513
sample, 513
Hematogones, 664
Hematologic and coagulation disorders, pregnancy with, 415
Hematologic cancers, clinical molecular diagnostics in, role of, 1465-1466
Hematologic cells, ex vivo manipulation of, 790
Hematologic diseases, 939
Hematology
analyzers, 519-520
laboratory automation for, 64, 64*f*
point-of-care testing in, 68
principles and procedures of, for blood and bone marrow examination, 510-521
profile of, abnormalities in, 85-90
anemias, 85-88, 85*t*
coagulation disorders, 89-90
quantitative white blood cell (WBC) abnormalities, 88-89
Hematolymphoid lesions, implication of next gene sequencing in, 1489, 1490*t*
Hematolymphoid neoplasia, diagnosis and prognosis of, 1489-1491
Hematopoiesis, 540-558
basophils and mast cells, 551-552
embryonic and fetal, 542
eosinophils, 550-551
erythrocyte
destruction of, 546
production of, 542-546
erythrokinetics, 546-547
hematopoietic tissues, 542
lymphocytes, 554-557
megakaryocytes, 553-554
monocytes and macrophages, 552-553
neutrophils, 547-550
postnatal, 542
stem cells, 540-542
Hematopoietic grafts
conditioning regimens for recipients of, 789
cryopreservation of, 790, 790*t*
sources of, 787-789, 787*t*
bone marrow as, 788
peripheral blood progenitor cells, 788-789
umbilical cord blood as, 789
Hematopoietic growth factors, 541-542
Hematopoietic neoplasms
eosinophilia, neoplastic disorders associated with, 1480-1481
flow cytometric evaluation of, 659-679
interpretive considerations of, 663-677
technical considerations of, 659-663
hematolymphoid neoplasia, diagnosis and prognosis of, 1489-1491
leukemias, 1466-1480
Hematopoietic neoplasms *(Continued)*
acute lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, B and T cell lineage, 1473-1477
acute myeloid, 1467-1473, 1467*t*
acute promyelocytic, 1469*f*
childhood, prenatal origins of, 1476
core binding factor-related acute myeloid leukemias: t(8;21)(q22;q22)/*RUNX1-RUNX1T1* and inv(16)(p13q22) or t(16;16)(p13;q22)/*CBFB-MYH11* abnormalities in, 1470*f*
gene fusion concept and basis for reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction analysis in, 1466-1467, 1467*t*
molecular diagnosis of, 1465-1491, 1466*t*
myeloproliferative neoplasms, 1477-1478
non-Hodgkin lymphomas, 1481-1489
clonality determination in, antigen receptor gene rearrangements for, 1481-1484
common lymphoma-associated chromosomal translocations in, molecular detection and significance of, 1484-1489, 1484*t*
lymphoid disorders, molecular genetic analysis in, 1481
MYD88 mutation in, 1488
overview of, 616-617
Hematopoietic progenitor cell banking, 787-791, 787*b*, 787*t*
ex vivo manipulation of hematologic cells in, 790
hematopoietic grafts
conditioning regimens for recipients of, 789-790
cryopreservation of, 790, 790*t*
sources of, 787-789, 787*t*
reinfusion of progenitor cell products in, 790
T-cell depletion in, 790
Hematopoietic progenitor cells (HPCs), 540-541, 541*b*, 541*f*, 738
autologous versus allogenic harvest of, 758
collection of
by apheresis, 757-761
benefits of, 757-758
procedure of, 760-761, 760*t*
donor concerns of, 761
dose of, 758, 758*t*
mobilization of, 758-760, 758*t*, 759*f*, 760*b*
Hematopoietic stem cells, 540-541, 541*b*, 541*f*
Hematopoietic tissues, 542
embryonic and fetal hematopoiesis, 542
postnatal hematopoiesis, 542
Hematopoietic transplantation, indications for, 787*b*
Hematuria, 453-454
Heme synthesis, 544, 545*f*
Hemiglobin, 510-511
Hemiglobincyanide method
of measurement, 511-512
principle of, 511, 512*f*, 512*t*
reagent of, 511-512
Hemizygous, definition of, 1337
Hemochromatosis, 307, 1391-1392
Hemoflagellates, 1248-1251, 1250*f*
Leishmania, 1250-1251
Toxoplasma gondii, 1251
Trypanosoma, 1248-1250
Hemoglobin, 510-512
abnormal syndromes of, 579-581
content of, 522, 523*f*
degradation of, 546
derivatives of, 510-511
destruction of, 573-575
blood film of, 574
bone marrow in, 574-575
disorders of
hemolysis relating to, 577-586
screening and prenatal diagnosis of, 591
electrophoresis and isoelectric focusing relating to, 578, 580*f*-583*f*
fetal, hereditary persistence of, 589-590
function and stability of, disorders of, 586
Hemoglobin *(Continued)*
Hb concentration, measurement of, 511-512
hemosiderin, myoglobin, blood, and, in urine, 453-456
mean cell, 513
normal, 577-578, 577*f*
reticulocyte content of, 562
spectrophotometric identification of, 512
structural variants of, 578-579, 580*t*, 582*t*
structure and function of, 546, 546*f*, 548*f*
synthesis of, 544
total destruction measurement of, 547
total production measurement of, 547
Hemoglobin A ($\alpha 2\beta 2$), 577
Hemoglobin A_2 ($\alpha_2\delta_2$), 577-578
Hemoglobin Bart's hydrops fetalis, 590
Hemoglobin (blood) casts, 466, 467*f*
Hemoglobin constant spring ($\alpha CS\alpha/$), 591
Hemoglobin E disease, 585
Hemoglobin F ($\alpha 2\gamma 2$), 577
Hemoglobin H, preparation of, 590, 591*f*
Hemoglobin H disease, 590, 590*f*
Hemoglobin SC disease, 584
Hemoglobin SD disease, 584
Hemoglobinometry, errors in, 512
in equipment, 512
in method, 512
in sample, 512
Hemoglobinopathies
sickle cell anemia and, 1384
thalassemias and, laboratory investigation of, 578
Hemoglobinuria, 454, 454*t*, 576-577
paroxysmal nocturnal, 677, 679*f*
Hemolysis, 86, 291
anemia relating to
acquired, extrinsic, 594-599
general, 573-575
hemoglobin disorders, 577-586
membrane disorders, 575-577
metabolic disorders, 591-594
collection-associated variables and, 22
extravascular, 682-683, 682*f*, 683*t*
intravascular, 682
nonimmune, 748
and potassium, 22*f*
Hemolytic anemia, 86-87
autoimmune
cold, 732-733, 732*t*
investigation of, 731-733
warm, 731-732
immune, drug-induced, 734
induced by medication, and positive direct antiglobulin tests, 733-734, 733*t*
stimulation of red cell autoantibody production in, 734
photosensitivity plus, 604
Hemolytic-uremic syndrome (HUS), 595
Hemopexin, 263
Hemophagocytic syndromes, 656-657, 657*f*
Hemosiderin
casts, 466
detection of, in urine, 455-456, 456*f*
dry procedure, 455
procedure, 456
reagents, 456
wet procedure, 456
myoglobin, blood, hemoglobin, in urine, 453-456, 455*f*
Hemostatic system, hypothesis for initiation of, 799-800
Henoch-Schönlein purpura, 1028-1029, 1029*f*
Heparin
as anticoagulant, 24-25
effect on blood tests, 26*t*
low molecular weight, 846, 846*t*
resistance to, 846
unfractionated, 845-846, 845*f*
Heparin-induced extracorporeal low-density lipoprotein precipitation (HELP), 773
Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, 846-849, 847*f*-849*f*, 847*t*
Hepatic adenomas, 1502-1503
Hepatic adenomas with inflammatory features (HA-I), 1502-1503
Hepatic autoantibodies, 1043-1044
Hepatic autoimmunity, 1043-1046
Hepatic glycogenoses, 216-218, 217*t*-218*t*
Hepatic lipase deficiency, 242
Hepatitis, 302, 749. *see also* Viral-induced hepatitis, testing for
A, 298, 298*f*
A virus, 1092, 1096*t*
acute injuries and, 95-96
alcoholic, 302
B, 298-299, 299*f*, 300*t*
B virus, 1086*t*, 1087-1088, 1092-1093, 1096*t*
C, 299-301, 300*t*
C virus, 1028, 1093, 1096*t*
chronic, 302
D, 301
E, 301
E virus, 1092, 1096*t*
G, 301
serum for, 298
Hepatitis C (HCV)-induced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), 301
Hepatobiliary autoimmunity, 1043-1046
Hepatocellular carcinomas, 1501-1503
anti-p53 in, 1458
HER2/*neu* receptor and, 1455
p53 protein in, 1457
Hepatocyte growth factor, 1453-1454
Hepatolenticular degeneration. *see* Wilson's disease
Hepatosplenic T cell lymphoma, 650, 651*f*
HER2/*neu* (c-*erb*B-2) oncoprotein, 1442
HER2/*neu* receptor, 1455
Hereditary angioedema, 264, 938
Hereditary breast-ovarian cancer, 1390
Hereditary coagulation protein defects, 804-809
factor VIII or factor IX, deficiency of, 804-806, 804*t*
of other coagulation factors, 806-809, 807*t*
Hereditary colonic cancer syndrome, 1505
Hereditary colorectal cancer syndromes, 1390-1391
Hereditary coproporphyria (HCP), 604
Hereditary elliptocytosis (HE), 576
common, 576
Hereditary fructose intolerance, 218
Hereditary hemochromatosis (HH), 307
HFE gene and, 978-979
Hereditary leiomyomatosis and RCC (HLRCC), 1508
Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer, 1390-1391, 1505-1506, 1506*t*
Hereditary papillary renal cell carcinoma, 1508
Hereditary pyropoikilocytosis (HPP), 576
Hereditary renal cell carcinoma syndromes, 1509
Hereditary sideroblastic anemias, 572
Hereditary spherocytosis, 575
Hereditary stomatocytosis, 576
Hereditary thrombophilias, 1384-1385, 1384*f*
Heroin, 335
Herpes simplex virus, 1073*t*, 1086*t*, 1087
cell culture isolation of, 1078-1079, 1078*f*
direct detection of, 1079
nucleic acid-based detection of, 1079
traditional tube and shell vial cultures, 1078*f*
Herpetic mucocutaneous infections, 1077-1079
Heterocellular hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin, 589-590
Heterogeneity, of parathyroid hormone, 192
Heterogeneous enzyme immunoassays, 872-874, 873*t*, 874*f*
chemiluminescent, 873-874, 875*f*
colorimetric, 873
fluorescent, 873
Heterogeneous fluorescent immunoassay, 878
Heterogeneous immunoassay systems, 883
high throughput fully automated, 884-885, 884*t*
instrumentation and key points for, 884
Heterologous interpolation, 1065
Heterophile-negative infectious mononucleosis, 1085
Heterophilic antibody, 1438
Heterophyes, 1269

Heterozygous, definition of, 1337
Heterozygous β-thalassemia, 588-589, 589*f*
HFE gene, hereditary hemochromatosis and, 978-979
High cholesterol
  in children, 237, 237*t*
  with high LDL-C, 237-241
  with high triglycerides, 241-242
High oxygen affinity hemoglobinopathy, 601
  hemoglobins associated with, 586
High sensitivity, versus high specificity, need for, 77
High specificity, versus high sensitivity, need for, 77
High throughput fully automated heterogeneous immunoassay systems, 884*t*
High triglycerides
  high cholesterol with, 241-242
  with normal cholesterol, 241
High-density lipoproteins, 224
High-grade serous carcinoma (HGSC), 1512
High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), 49, 49*f*
Hinge region, 914
Histamine, 1061
Histiocytic and dendritic cell neoplasms, 656-658, 657*f*
Histocompatibility antigens, 858
Histopathologic stains, 1206
HITECH Act, 7
HIV. *see* Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
HLA-A subregion, 958-962
HLA-B subregion, 958-962
HLA-C subregion, 958-962
HLA-DP subregion, 962-963
HLA-DQ subregion, 962-963
HLA-DR subregion, 962-963
HLA-E genes, 961
HLA-F genes, 961-962
HLA-G genes, 961
HLA matching, 969-970
HLA nomenclature, 964-965
HLA polymorphisms, identification techniques of, 965-968
HLA testing, 860
HLA typing, 972
  sera trays, 967
HLA-specific antibody detection in recipient serum, 970
HLC. *see* Heavy-light chain immunoassay (HLC)
HNF1A gene, 1502
HNF1A-mutated hepatic adenomas (HA-H), 1502
Hodgkin lymphoma, 653-656, 653*f*, 654*t*
  classical, 654-655
    unclassifiable B cell lymphoma with features intermediate between DLBCL and, 647
Hoesch test, 459-460
Holoenzyme, 269-270
Homeostasis
  calcium, 189, 190*f*
  magnesium, 191
  phosphorus, 190-191
  volume, defective hormonal regulation of, 445
Homocysteine, 249-250, 250*f*
Homocysteine assays, 565
Homocystinuria, 479
Homogeneous assay systems, 883
Homogeneous enzyme immunoassay, 874-878, 875*t*
  apoenzyme-reactivation immunoassay, 875, 877*f*
  background of, 874
  cloned enzyme donor, 877-878, 878*f*
  enzyme inhibitory homogenous, 875-877, 877*f*
  enzyme-multiplied immunoassay technique, 874-875, 876*f*
  substrate-labeled fluorescent, 875, 876*f*
Homogeneous fluorescent immunoassay, 879
Homologous chromosomes, definition of, 1337
Homologs, definition of, 1337
Homozygous, definition of, 1337
Homozygous β-thalassemia, 587-588, 588*f*
"Hook effect", 915-916
Hookworm, 1265-1266, 1265*f*-1266*f*
Hormones. *see also* Antidiuretic hormone (ADH); Pituitary gland; Thyroid gland
  of adrenal cortex, 381-394
  of adrenal medulla, 379-381, 379*f*
  analysis of, male reproduction relating to, 406, 406*f*
  deficiencies, hypoglycemia and, 215
  as markers, 321
  plasma corticotropin-releasing, 389
  regulating mineral metabolism, 192-195
  synthesis and metabolism, of thyroid gland, 372-373, 373*t*
Hospitals, in point-of-care testing program, 70-71
Howell-Jolly bodies, 526, 526*f*
HOX genes, 1474
hTERT, 1507
"HTLA" antibodies, 728
Human antimouse antibodies (HAMAs), immunoassays and, 22-23
Human chorionic gonadotropin, 1441-1442
Human *Ehrlichia canis* ehrlichiosis, 1108
Human equilibrative nucleoside transporter-1 (hENT1), 1507
Human genome, 1304
Human granulocytotropic anaplasmosis, 1108
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 493, 749, 1086*t*
  diarrhea relating to, 315
  infection, syphilis and, 1174
  lymphomas associated with, 656
  parvovirus, enterovirus, and hepatitis B virus, 1087-1088
  pharmacogenomics in, 1428-1429
  protease inhibitors, in treating HIV-AIDS, 279, 279*f*-280*f*
  type 1 (HIV-1), 613
Human immunoglobulins
  physical properties of, 917*t*
  properties of, 918*t*
Human infection with *Ehrlichia ewingii*, 1108
Human leukocyte antigen (HLA) complex, 858
  pharmacogenomics, 1423-1424
Human metapneumovirus, 1073*t*
Human monocytotropic ehrlichiosis, 1108
Human papillomavirus (HPV), 1097
  infection, in cervical cancer, 1510, 1511*t*
Human placental lactogen (HPL), 403
Human resource management, clinical laboratory and, 5
Human T cell lymphotropic virus, 749
Human T lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1), 613
Humoral factors, of immune system, 857-858
Humoral hypercalcemia of malignancy (HHM), 197
Humoral immunity, 859-860
Huntington disease, 1386
Hyaline, 1200
Hyaline casts, 464
Hyaline fungi, aspergillosis, fusariosis and other mycoses caused by, 1225-1228
Hyaline molds, septate, 1228
Hybrid capture, 1331-1332
Hybrid capture assays, 1326, 1326*f*
Hybrid oncocytic tumors (HOT), 1509
Hybridization, nucleic acid, 1309, 1309*f*
Hybridization array technologies, 1328-1336
  applications of, 1335-1336
    in clinical disease, 1335
    in clinical laboratory, 1335
    limitations of, 1335-1336
  bioinformatics in, 1333-1334, 1334*f*
  cDNA microarrays in, 1331
  detection and image analysis in, 1332-1333, 1332*f*-1333*f*
  hybrid capture in, 1331-1332
  intellectual property issues in, 1334-1335
  macroarrays in, 1329
  microarray fabrication in, 1329-1330
Hybridization array technologies *(Continued)*
  delivery technologies for, 1329-1330
  in situ synthesis for, 1330, 1330*f*
  microarray substrates in, 1329
  microarrays in, 1329
  oligonucleotide microarrays in, 1330-1331
  reverse line-blot hybridization in, 1332
  sequencing arrays in, 1331
Hybridization assays, 1309-1311
  complementary base pairing in, conditions for, 1311
  formats for, 1311-1313
    dot or linear array hybridization as, 1312
    liquid or solution phase hybridization as, 1311-1312
    microarray hybridization as, 1312
    in situ hybridization as, 1312-1313
    solid-support hybridization as, 1312
    Southern and Northern hybridizations as, 1312
  hybrids in, detection of, 1311, 1311*f*
  probe in, 1310-1311, 1310*f*
  sample of, 1311
Hybrids, detection of, 1311, 1311*f*
Hydatidosis, 1274-1275
Hydrodynamic focusing, 44
Hydrophobic chromatography, 256
3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase, 1007
Hydroxyethyl starch (HES)
  and coagulopathy, and hemapheresis, 781
  and other side effects, in hemapheresis, 781
  and renal dysfunction, and hemapheresis, 781
  as replacement fluid, 771
5-Hydroxyindoleacetic acid, 458-459
  screening test of, 458-459
11-β-Hydroxylase deficiency, 384-386, 387*f*
17-Hydroxylase deficiency, 386, 389*f*
21-Hydroxylase deficiency, 383-384, 386*f*
  congenital adrenal hyperplasia relating to, 979
  diagnosis of, 383-384
3-β-Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase deficiency, 386, 388*f*
Hymenolepiasis, 1267-1268
Hymenolepis diminuta, 1268
Hymenolepis nana, 1267-1268
Hyper-IgM syndrome, 986
Hyperaldosteronism, 91, 91*t*
Hypercalcemia, 195-197
  causes of, 93, 196*b*
Hypercalciuria, calcium stones and, 476-477
Hypercarbia, as a cause of hypoxia, 94, 94*f*
Hypercholesterolemia
  autosomal dominant, 240
  autosomal recessive, 241
  familial, 238-240, 240*f*
  polygenic (nonfamilial), 237
Hyperchylomicronemia. *see* Lipoprotein lipase deficiency
Hypercortisolism: Cushing's syndrome, 391
  pseudo-Cushing's syndrome, 394
  tests for, 391-394
    confirmatory tests for, 393
    for defining cause of, 393-394, 393*t*
    screening for, 391-393, 392*f*
    in special populations, 393
Hyperdiploidy, with B lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 635
Hyperglycemia, on serum Na^+, effect of, 165-166
Hyperhomocysteinemia, 841
Hyperimmunoglobulinemia, 920-921
Hyperinsulinism
  congenital, 216
  endogenous, 215
Hyperkalemia, 92
  cause and pathogenesis of, 176-177, 177*b*
  differential diagnosis of, 177-178
Hyperleukocytosis, 766
Hyperlipidemia
  combined
    acquired, 241
    familial, 241
  phenotypes, classical, 224*t*
Hyperlipoproteinemia type 1. *see* Lipoprotein lipase deficiency
Hypermagnesemia, 199
Hypermethylation, promoter, 1446
Hypernatremia, 91, 91*t*
  causes and pathogenesis of, 181, 181*b*
Hyperoxaluria, 477
Hyperphosphatemia, 199, 199*b*
Hyperplastic polyposis syndrome, 1506
Hyperproliferative normocytic anemias, 85*t*, 86-87
Hypersensitive aplastic anemias, 570
Hypersensitivity reactions, 861, 1276
Hypertension, renin and, 396-398, 396*b*-397*b*
Hypertriglyceridemia, 237
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 246
Hyperuricuria, 477
Hyperviscosity syndrome, and therapeutic plasma exchange, 775-776
Hypervitaminosis D, 421
Hyphae, yeasts and, structure of, 1199, 1201*f*-1202*f*
Hypobetalipoproteinemia, 242
Hypocalcemia, 197-198
  causes of, 92, 198*b*
Hypochromic anemias, 599-600
Hypocomplementemic urticarial vasculitis, 1029-1030
  clinical laboratory testing of, 1030
  definition and epidemiology of, 1029
  diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1030
  etiology and pathogenesis of, 1030
  pathology of, 1030
Hypodiploidy, B lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma with, 635
Hypofibrinolytic mechanisms, 839
Hypoglobulinemia, 920
Hypoglycemia, 95, 214-216, 214*b*
  alimentary, 216
  autoimmune, 215-216, 1052
  congenital hyperinsulinism and, 216
  drug-induced, 214-215
  endogenous hyperinsulinism and, 215
  hormone deficiencies and, 215
  in infancy and childhood, 216
  non-beta cell tumors and, 215
  severe medical illnesses and, 215
Hypokalemia, 91-92
  cause and pathogenesis of, 175-176, 175*b*
  differential diagnosis of, 176
Hypomagnesemia, 199
  causes of, 200*b*
Hyponatremia, 90-91, 91*t*
  causes and pathogenesis of, 180-181, 180*b*
Hypoparathyroidism, 197
Hypophosphatemia, 199, 199*b*
Hypoproliferative normocytic anemias, 85*t*, 87-88
Hypotensive reactions, to transfusion, 748
Hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis, 373-376
Hypotonic cell lysis, 731
Hypovolemia and vasovagal reactions, to hemapheresis, 780-781
Hypoxia
  hypercarbia as a cause of, 94, 94*f*
  increased erythropoietin production due to, 601

I

I blood group system, 712-713
  biochemistry of, 713
  biological role of, 713
  molecular biology of, 713, 713*f*
  null phenotype of, 712
Idiopathic acquired aplastic anemia, 570
  blood in, 570
  bone marrow in, 570, 570*f*
  erythrokinetics in, 570
Idiopathic hypereosinophilic syndrome (HES), 611, 611*f*, 613*b*, 620
IgA
  nephropathy, 1048
  pemphigus, 1039
IgA vasculitis (Henoch-Schönlein purpura), 1028-1029, 1029*f*
  clinical laboratory testing of, 1029
  definition and epidemiology of, 1028
  diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1029

IgA vasculitis (Henoch-Schönlein purpura) *(Continued)*
etiology and pathogenesis of, 1029
pathology of, 1028-1029
IgE
measurement of, analytic methods and reference ranges, 1063-1064, 1064*t*
synthesis of, regulation of, 1059-1060, 1059*f*, 1064*t*
IgE antibodies
allergen-specific, measurement of, 1065
measurement of, 1065-1069, 1066*f*-1067*f*, 1066*t*
clinical applications of, 1064-1065, 1064*t*
IgG, 1075*t*
measurements of, albumin and, 487-488
subclasses of, 987
IgM, 1075*t*
Illumina MiSeq platform, 1519
Image analysis, in array technologies, 1332-1333, 1332*f*-1333*f*
Imaging
of chromosomes, computer-assisted, 1340-1341
radiologic, 986-987
Immediate hypersensitivity
mechanisms of, 1058
reactions to
cells and mediators of, 1061-1062, 1061*f*
tests for mediators of, 1070
Immediate spin serologic crossmatch, 725
Immune cell function, 893*f*
Immune glomerular diseases, pathologic features of, 1048*t*
Immune hemolytic anemias, 596-599, 596*t*
Immune response
age and, 901
cancer and, 901
malnutrition and, 901
Immune system, evaluation of, 984-992, 985*f*-986*f*
first-level investigations, 984-987
clinical history, physical examination, and initial blood count, 984-985
immunoglobulins, 985-986
pulmonary function, 987
radiologic imaging, 986-987
second-level investigations, 987-989
antibody production, 987
complement evaluation, 988-989
IgG subclasses, 987
polymorphonuclear killing assays, 988
T cell functional assessment, 988
T cell immunity, 987
third-level investigations, 989-992
antibody production, novel immunogens for assessment of, 990
cell surface markers, additional, 990
cytokines and cytokine receptors, 989-990
metabolic defects, enzyme measurements for, 989
molecular genetics and prenatal diagnosis, 990-992, 991*t*
natural killer cell assays, 989
phagocyte analyses, additional, 989
Immune system and immunologic disorders, overview of, 856-861
histocompatibility antigens, 858
humoral factors, 857-858
complement, 858
cytokines, 858
immunoglobulins, 857-858
immunologic assessment, laboratory applications of, 859-860, 859*b*
immunologic injury, mechanism of, 859
immunology, therapeutics in, 860-861, 861*b*
lymphoid cells, 856-857
antigen-presenting cells, 857, 858*f*
B lymphocytes, 857
natural killer cells, 857
T lymphocytes, 856-857
nonlymphoid cells, 857
basophils and mast cells, 857
neutrophils and eosinophils, 857
Immune thrombocytopenias, 819-821, 820*t*
drug-induced, 820-821
Immunity, 890
Immunoassays, and immunochemistry, 862-889
in analytic system, flow of, 883-884, 883*f*
antibodies, characteristics of, 863
antigen-antibody reaction
general characteristics of, 862-863
kinetics of, 863
antigens, characteristics of, 863
assay systems, instrumentation and modulation of, 883-885
chemiluminescent immunoassay, 880-881
classes of, 863-864, 864*t*
conjugation chemistry, 864, 864*f*-865*f*
enzyme, 872-878
fluorescent, 878-880
interference with, 22-23
noncompetitive immunoassay, for small molecules, 881-882
particle, 866-870
particle agglutination, principle of, 865*t*, 866-868, 866*f*-867*f*
particle-counting, 868
point-of-care testing, devices for, 885-887, 886*t*
precipitin and nephelometric immunoassays, 865-866
background and principles of, 865-866
principles of, overview of, 863-865
radioimmunoassay, 870-872
assay principles and methods, 870-872, 871*f*-872*f*
background, 870, 870*f*, 870*t*
sensitive immunoassay, using specimen-pretreatment methods, 882-883
simultaneous multiple immunoassays, 887-888
single molecule detection, 888
solid phase of, 864-865, 865*f*
Immunoblotting, 1009, 1009*t*, 1014*f*
Immunochemical methods, of drug detection, 324-326, 325*f*
Immunochromatographic devices, 885-886, 885*f*-886*f*
Immunocompromised host, parasitic infections and, 1281, 1281*t*-1282*t*
Immunodeficiency disorders, 983-992, 984*f*
clinical signs and symptoms, 983-984, 984*f*
immune system, evaluation of, 984-992, 985*f*-986*f*
novel approaches for treatment of, 992
patterns of, 985*f*
Immunodeficiency-associated lymphoproliferative disorders, 656, 656*b*
Immunodiagnostic methods, for medical parasitology, 1237-1239
Immunodominant structures, 681
Immunoendocrinopathies, 1050-1054
Immunofixation, 923, 924*f*
Immunoglobulin free light chain analysis, 923
Immunoglobulin function and humoral immunity, laboratory evaluation of, 913-928
antibodies, structural properties of, 913-916
antibody-antigen interaction, 915-916, 915*f*
antibody molecule, 913-915, 914*f*, 915*t*
antibody diversity, genetic basis of, 916-917, 917*t*
immunoglobulins
clinical significance of, 920-928
general properties of, 917-920
Immunoglobulin heavy chain locus *(IGH*, 1484, 1485*f*
Immunoglobulins, 857-858, 985-986
A, 917*t*, 918-920, 919*f*
clinical significance of, 920-928
D, 915*t*, 920
E, 920, 1060-1061, 1060*f*, 1060*t*
G, 914*f*, 917*t*, 918, 919*t*
general properties of, 917-920
human, 917*t*-918*t*
M, 917-918, 917*t*-918*t*
nonimmunologic adsorption of, to red cell membrane, 598-599
variants, 917*t*
Immunohematology, 680-734
basic concepts of, 680-683
blood group alloantibodies and autoantibodies, 681-682
blood group antigens, 680-681
complement system, blood banking and, 682-683
blood group systems
ABO and H, 684-686, 684*f*, 685*t*
Cartwright, 704, 705*f*
CD59, 714
Chido/Rodgers, 707-708, 708*t*
Colton, 706-707, 707*f*
Cromer, 709-710, 710*t*
Diego, 703-704, 703*f*
Dombrock, 706, 706*t*
Duffy, 700-702, 701*f*, 701*t*
Gerbich, 708-709, 708*t*, 709*f*
GIL, 713-714
I, 712-713, 713*f*
Indian, 710-711
JMH, 712
JR, 714
KELL and KX, 697-699, 697*t*
Kidd, 702-703, 702*f*, 702*t*
Knops, 710, 711*t*
Lan, 714
Lewis, 699-700, 699*t*, 700*f*
Lutheran, 695-697, 696*f*, 696*t*
LW, 707
MNSs, 686-688, 687*f*, 687*t*-688*t*
OK, 711-712
P1PK, GLOB and FORS, 688-690, 689*t*, 690*f*
RAPH, 712
RH and RHAG, 690-695, 691*t*-692*t*, 693*f*-694*f*
Scianna, 705, 705*t*
Vel, 714
XG blood group system, 704-705
erythrocyte antigens and antibodies, 683-714, 683*t*-684*t*
positive direct antiglobulin tests and hemolytic anemia, induced by medication, 733-734
tests and procedures for, 715-733
antibody detection, 722-726, 723*f*
antibody identification, 723-725, 723*t*-724*t*, 724*f*
antihuman globulin test, 716-719, 717*f*, 718*t*
autoimmune hemolytic anemia, investigation of, 731-733
compatibility testing, 719-722, 720*t*-721*t*
hemagglutination, basic principles, 715-716, 715*f*, 716*t*, 717*f*
special antibody identification techniques in, 726-731, 727*t*-728*t*
Immunohistochemical microscopy, 1176
Immunohistochemical stains, 1207
Immunologic assessment, laboratory applications of, 859-860, 859*b*
Immunologic diseases, 571
Immunologic injury, mechanism of, 859
Immunologic studies
of pericardial fluid, 503
of pleural fluid, 501-502
of synovial fluid, 497
Immunologic tests, for male reproduction, regulation of, 405
Immunologic thrombocytopenia purpura (ITP), 820*t*
Immunology, therapeutics in, 860-861, 861*b*
Immunophenotypic analysis, 897-898
Immunophenotyping lymphocyte subpopulations, 904*b*
Immunosignature, 859
Immunosuppressives, 350-352, 350*f*
Impedance, 46
Imperfect fungi, 1199
Implementation
of clinical laboratory informatics, issues regarding, 135-136, 136*f*
of quality control procedures, 115-121
Imprinting, 1381
Imprints, 534
In situ hybridization, 1312-1313
In situ synthesis, for microarray fabrication, 1330, 1330*f*
In vitro antibiotic susceptibility testing (AST), 1153-1154
In vitro fertilization (IVF), 786
In vitro multivariate index assay draft guidance, 1363
In vitro testing, of antimicrobial agents, 1153-1170
Inclusion casts, 466
Income statement, 145
Incretin, 207
Incubation
conditions, for susceptibility testing, 1157
mixing and, in automated chemistry analyzer, 63
Independent assortment, definition of, 1338
Indeterminate leprosy, 1191
India ink preparation, for examination, 1206, 1206*f*
Indian antibodies, 711
Indian blood group system, 710-711
biochemistry of, 711
biological role of, 711
molecular biology of, 711
null/weak phenotypes, 711
Indirect agglutinins, 715
Indirect antiglobulin test (IAT), 718, 718*t*
Indirect cross-match techniques, 970-971
Indirect immunofluorescence in HEp-2 cells, 1008-1009, 1009*b*, 1010*f*-1012*f*, 1013*t*
Indirect immunofluorescence microscopy, 1038*f*
Individualized Quality Control Plan (IQCP), 116
Induced fit, of substrate binding, 268, 268*f*
Industry overview, of financial management, 137
Infancy and childhood, hypoglycemia in, 216
Infection(s)
aplastic anemia and, 570-571
Bartonella, 1104*t*
Ehrlichia muris-like, 1108
elevated WBC due to, 88
pregnancy with, 414-415
ureaplasmal, 1111-1113
Infectious agents
acquired, extrinsic hemolysis relating to, 595-596
transmission of, 1276
Infectious diseases, 938-939
in molecular diagnostics laboratories, 1361
Infectious mononucleosis
diagnosis of, 1084-1085
Epstein-Barr virus infection and, 613-614, 613*f*
clinical features of, 614
complications of, 614
course of, 614
differential diagnosis for, 614
etiology and pathophysiology of, 613-614
hematologic features of, 614
serologic findings, in immunocompromised patients, 614
and related infections, 1084-1085, 1085*t*
Inflammation, DLBCL associated with, 645
Inflammatory bowel disease, 318, 318*t*, 1043
Inflammatory conditions, markers for, 97
Inflammatory myofibroblastic tumor, 1515
Influenza, 1073*t*, 1081, 1082*f*
Influenza pneumonia, 1076*t*
Information
flow, 133-134, 134*t*, 135*f*
for patient registration/identification, 133-134
for performing tests, 134
for releasing results, 134
for reporting results, 134
for sample collection and labeling, 134
for test orders, 134
systems of, 132-133, 132*t*-133*t*
communication standards for, 133, 133*f*
legal requirements for, 132-133
Infrared spectroscopy, gas chromatography with, 330
Inhalation anthrax, 151
Inheritance, 958
Inherited aplastic anemia, 571

Inherited disorders, in molecular diagnostics laboratories, 1361-1362
Inherited metabolic disease, urinary screening for, 478-479
Inhibitory methods, for susceptibility testing, 1155-1158
Inoculum, susceptibility testing, 1157
Insects, 1277-1278
Instrument audit, workstation analysis and, 13*b*
Instrument technology, 519-521
  automated reticulocyte counting, 521
  cytochemistry, 519-520
  electrical impedance of, 519, 519*f*
  error, sources of, 518*t*, 520
  light scattering, 519, 520*f*
  radiofrequency conductivity, 519
  reporting/flagging, 520, 520*f*, 520*t*
Instrumentation, 659-660, 660*f*
  principles of, 33-53
Insulin, 206-207, 206*f*
Insulin autoantibodies (IAA), 1051, 1051*f*
Insulin resistance, type B, 1052
Insulinoma, 319
Insulinoma-2-associated autoantibodies, 1051
Insulinomimetic autoantibodies, 1052
Insurance, private, 139
Integration, optimizing performance and, 18
Integrins, 950-952, 952*t*
Intercept Blood System (IBS), 739
Interference filter, 38*f*
Interferences, 429. *see also* Analyte assays and common interferences, chemical basis for
  common, of precollection variables, 21-22
    in vitro, collection-associated variables, 22, 22*f*, 22*t*
    in vivo, tobacco smoking, 21-22
  drugs, effects of, 23
  immunoassays, 22-23
  molecular diagnostics, 23
  specimen matrix effects, 23
Interfering substances, 230-231
Interferon-γ, 501, 503
Interleukin-8, 506
Interleukin-18 (IL-18), 173
Intermediate-density lipoproteins, 224
Internal rate of return (IRR), 147
International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference, 1017*b*, 1018*t*
International normalized ratio (INR), 842-843
  and prothrombin time, 801
International units, 273
Interstitial deletion, 1346-1347
Interstitial glucose, 209
Interstitial keratitis, of cornea, 420
Inter-α-trypsin inhibitor (IATI), 264
Interval scale, 102
Interviews, data collection techniques and, 14
Intestinal helminths, 1262-1271, 1263*f*
Intestinal protozoa, in medical parasitology, 1252-1262, 1253*f*
Intracellular antigens, methods for detection of autoantibodies to, 1009*t*
Intracellular killing, assays of, 909-910, 910*f*
Intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasms (IPMNs), 1507
Intraoperative PTH, 193
Intrapartum assessment, of fetal status, 414
Intravascular hemolysis, 682
Intravascular large B cell lymphoma, 646
Invasive candidiasis, 1211
Inversion, 1347, 1349*f*
Investment, return on, 147
Iodine (I), 425
Ion detector, 50-51
Ion source unit, 50
Ion Torrent PGM sequencing, 1518
Ion-trap mass spectrometer, 50
Ion-exchange chromatography, 49, 256
Ionized (free) calcium, reference interval for, 190
Ionized (free) magnesium, 192
Ionizing radiation, aplastic anemia and, 570
Ion-photon conversion detector, 50-51
Ions, bicarbonate, 432-433, 433*f*
Ion-selective electrodes, 45, 428-429, 431*f*
  for calcium determinations, 430-431
IQCP. *see* Individualized Quality Control Plan (IQCP)
Irinotecan, 1425, 1426*f*
Iron, 358-359, 425-426, 431, 431*f*. *see also* Serum iron
  intoxication relating to, 359
  Perls' test for, 534-536
Iron deficiency anemia (IDA), 560-563
  clinical features of, 561
  differential diagnosis of, 562-563
  iron metabolism, 559-560, 560*f*
  laboratory features of, 561-562
    blood, 561, 561*f*
    erythrocyte porphyrins, 562
    hepcidin level, 562
    marrow, 561-562, 561*f*-562*f*
    reticulocyte hemoglobin content, 562
    serum ferritin, 562
    serum iron, 562
    serum (total) iron-binding capacity, 562
    serum transferrin receptor-to-serum ferritin ratio, 562
    serum transferrin receptors, 562
    TIBC, percent saturation of, 562
  management of, 563
Iron hematoxylin stain, 1236
Iron-binding capacity, 86, 359, 431, 431*f*
Iron-refractory iron deficiency anemia (IRIDA), 563
IRR. *see* Internal rate of return (IRR)
Irradiation, of blood components, 738-739
Ischemia modified albumin, 247
Islet autoantibody testing, 1052*t*
Islet cell cytoplasmic autoantibodies (ICA), 1050*f*
  testing, 1035*f*
Isochromosome, 1349
Isoelectric focusing, 47, 47*f*
Isoenzymes, 269, 270*t*
Isoforms, 269
Isolated HDL-C
  high, 243
  low, 242-243
Isolated neutropenia, 608
Isolation
  neurovisceral symptoms in, 602-604
  photosensitivity in, 604
Isopropanol precipitation test, 586

J

J (joining) chain, 917
JAK2 mutations, 1478-1480, 1479*f*
JAK2 V617F mutation, 1479
JMH antibodies, 712
JMH blood group system, 712
  biochemistry of, 712
  biological role of, 712
  molecular biology of, 712
  variant and null phenotypes of, 712
Joint, infection of, *Cryptococcus* in, 1212-1213
Jr antibodies, 714
JR blood group system, 714
  biochemistry of, 714
  molecular biology of, 714
Juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia, 624
Juvenile polyposis syndrome (JPS), familial, 1506

K

k_2 and K_M, knowledge of, 272, 272*f*
Karyogram, definition of, 1337
Karyotype
  analysis, of chromosomes, 1340-1341
  definition of, 1337
Kawasaki disease, 1021-1022, 1022*f*
  clinical laboratory testing of, 1022
  definition and epidemiology of, 1021
  diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1022
  etiology and pathogenesis of, 1021-1022
  pathology of, 1021
KELL and KX blood group systems, 697-699, 697*t*
  biochemistry of, 697-698, 698*f*
  biological role of, 698-699
  molecular biology of, 698
  null and weak phenotypes of, 697
Kell antibodies, 698
Ketoacidosis, 183-184
Ketone testing, 213-214
Ketones
  tests for, 453
  in urine, 452-453
Ketonuria
  diabetic, 453
  nondiabetic, 453
Kidd antibodies, 702-703
Kidd blood group system, 702-703
  biochemistry of, 702, 702*f*
  biological role of, 703
  molecular biology of, 702-703
  null phenotypes of, 702, 702*t*
Kidney injury molecule-1 (KIM-1), 173
Kidney tumor, 1507-1509
Kindlin-3 deficiency, 825
Kinetics, of antigen-antibody reaction, 863
Kingella, 1142
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1142
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1142
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1142
Kininogen, high molecular weight, 807
Kinins and kinin-generating system, 942
Kirby-Bauer test, 1155
Kissing bugs, 1277*f*, 1278
KIT mutations, 629
  in CBF leukemias, 1470
  in gastrointestinal stromal tumor, 1515
Kjeldahl technique, 256
Klebsiella pneumoniae carbapenemase (KPC) enzymes, 1166
Kleihauer-Betke test, 726
Klinefelter syndrome, 1355
Knops antibodies, 710
Knops blood group system, 710, 711*t*
  biochemistry of, 710
  biological role of, 710
Kostmann's syndrome, 607
KRAS gene, mutations in
  in colorectal cancer, 1504
  in lung cancer, 1501

L

Laboratory. *see also* Clinical laboratory
  design and service models, 5-6, 1364
  designations of, 150
  director of, 1365
  glassware and plasticware for, 55-56
  hazard prevention strategies, 10*t*
  medical parasitology methods of, 1233-1240
  mercury-free, 55-56
  performance, optimizing, 17-19, 19*t*
  regulations and their significance, 7*t*
  safety of, 1204
  technology
    breakthrough, 16*b*
    role of, 16-17
    understanding of, 16-17
  testing process, 12*f*
  workflow
    analysis, 14-16
    data collection techniques and, 11-14
    metric examples, 18*t*
    and performance, 11-19
    understanding of, 11-16
Laboratory Compliance Program, clinical laboratory and, 6-7
Laboratory directorship, in point-of-care testing and physician office laboratories, 67-68
Laboratory information system (LIS), 1367-1368
Laboratory physical design considerations, 6*b*
Laboratory results
  interpretation of, 75-81
  interpreting, 84-101
    abnormal laboratory values, 84
    clinical cases with clinicopathological correlations, 99-101
    clinical chemistry, abnormalities in, 90-99, 90*f*
    hematology profile, abnormalities in, 85-90
  variability of, 75, 76*t*
Laboratory statistics, 102-111
  analyzing data
    discrete, 107-108
    preparation, 103
  comparative, 105-107
  definitions for, 102-103
  descriptive, 103-105
  method validation and process control for, 110-111
  resources for, 111
  trend evaluation and correlative, 108-110
  variables, 103
Laboratory testing, national coverage determinations for, 142*t*
Laboratory-developed tests (LDT), for prostate cancer, 1510
Laboratory-related governmental agencies, 8*t*
Laboratory-related nongovernmental organizations, 9*t*
β-Lactam antibiotics, 1164
  and platelet function, 829
β–Lactamase
  direct tests for, 1156
  in *Enterobacteriaceae*, 1164*t*
Lactate, 435, 435*f*, 490, 501, 506
Lactate dehydrogenase (LD), 246, 286-287, 296, 438, 490-491
  abnormal results of, causes of, 287
  biochemistry and physiology of, 286, 286*t*
  measurement of, 286-287
  reference ranges and preanalytic variation of, 286
Lactic acid dehydrogenase, 269
Lactic acidosis, 183, 183*b*, 219-220, 220*b*, 453
  methods of, 453
  nitroprusside tablet test for, 453
  reagent strip for, 453
D-lactic acidosis, 183
Lactose, in urine, 451-452
Lactose tolerance test, 314
Lagging strand, 1305-1306
Lan antibodies, 714
Lan blood group system, 714
  biochemistry and molecular biology, 714
Langerhans histiocytosis, 657-658, 658*f*
Large B cell lymphoma, arising in HHV8-associated multicentric Castleman's disease, 646
Large granular lymphocyte leukemia, 648-649, 649*f*
Large granular lymphoproliferative disorder, 674
Large vessel vasculitis, 1017-1020, 1018*f*, 1018*t*
  giant cell arteritis, 1019-1020
  Takayasu arteritis, 1018-1019
Larva migrans, 1274
Laser source, 37
Lasers, 43
Latex agglutination, 868
Latex turbidimetric assay, 868
Law enforcement issues, 150
Laxative abuse, 317
LBRF. *see* Louse-borne relapsing fever (LBRF)
LDL-C measurement, 233
Lead, 359-360
  in blood, 359-360
Leader
  leadership and management, 2
  manager traits, 3*t*
Leadership, 2-5
Leading strand, 1305-1306
Lean
  optimizing performance and, 18
  quality systems management and, 4-5
Lecithin: cholesterol acyltransferase (LCAT) deficiency, 243
Lectin reagents, red blood cell typing with, 730, 730*t*
Leflunomide (LFM), 352
Left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF), 246
Legal requirements, for information systems, 132-133

Legionella, 1142-1143, 1142*f*
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1143
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1142, 1142*f*
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1142-1143, 1142*f*
Leiomyosarcomas, 1515
Leishmania, 1250-1251
  cutaneous, 1250
  diagnosis of, 1251
  mucocutaneous, 1250
  visceral, 1250
Leishmaniasis, 1250
Lepirudin, 849
Lepore hemoglobins, 589
Lepromas, 1191
Lepromatous leprosy, 1191
Leprosy, 1190
Leptospira, 1178
  clinical manifestations of, 1178
  epidemiology of, 1178
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1178
  pathology and pathogenesis of, 1178
  treatment of, 1178
Lesion(s), 92
  of skin, *Cryptococcus* in, 1212
  space-occupying, 96, 304
Leucine, 471, 471*f*
Leukemias
  anti-c-myc protein in, 1459
  molecular diagnosis of, 1466-1480
    acute lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, B and T cell lineage, 1473-1477
    acute myeloid, 1467-1473, 1467*t*
    acute promyelocytic, 1469*f*
    childhood, prenatal origins of, 1476
    core binding factor-related acute myeloid leukemias: t(8;21)(q22;q22)/*RUNX1-RUNX1T1* and inv(16)(p13q22) or t(16;16)(p13;q22)/*CBFB-MYH11* abnormalities in, 1470*f*
    gene fusion concept and basis for reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction analysis in, 1466-1467, 1467*t*
  p53 protein in, 1458
Leukemoid reactions, 616
  and congenital neutrophilia, 616
  elevated WBC due to, 88-89
  eosinophilic, 616
  leukoerythroblastosis and, 616
  lymphocytic, 616
  neutrophilic, 616
Leukocyte(s), 322, 461-463, 606
  components of, 738
  manual count of, 515-516
    due to equipment, 516
    due to nature of sample, 516
    hemocytometer method, 515-516
    inherent or field errors, 516
    nucleated red blood cells, 516
    operator's errors, 516
    procedure, 516, 516*f*
    reference value, 516
    sources of error, 516
    specimen collection, 515
  on peripheral blood smear examination, 517*t*, 527-531
  physiologic variation in, 516, 517*t*
Leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD), 825
  diseases, 610-611
Leukocyte (WBC) casts, 465, 465*f*
Leukocyte esterase, 458
  methods of detecting, 458
    reagent strip, 458
Leukocyte extravasation, 952-953, 953*f*
Leukocyte-reduced blood components, 738
Leukocytic disorders, 606-658
  leukocytes, 606
  neoplastic disorders, primarily involving leukocytes, 616-658
  nonneoplastic, 606-616
    granulocytic and monocytic, 606-612
    leukemoid reactions, 616
    lymphocytic and plasmacytic, 612-616
Leukocytosis, due to acute leukemias, 89
Leukoerythroblastic reaction, 527, 527*f*, 527*t*
Leukoerythroblastosis, 616
Leukopenia, Gram-negative sepsis as a cause of, 89
Level A laboratory, role of
  with bioterrorism, 150
    laboratory designations, 150
    law enforcement issues, 150
    safety issues, 150, 150*b*
  with chemical terrorism, 159
  with nuclear terrorism, 160
Levey-Jennings plot, 114, 115*f*, 120*f*
Lewis antibodies, 699-700
Lewis blood group system, 699-700, 699*t*
  biochemistry of, 699, 700*f*
  biological role of, 700
  molecular biology of, 699
Lidocaine, 343
Lifetime, of enzymes, in blood, 270-271
Li-Fraumeni syndrome, 1516
Light blue-top tubes, anticoagulants and additives, 24, 25*t*
Light scattering, 519, 520*f*
Likelihood ratio, 79-80, 79*t*
Line immunoassays, 1014
Line source, 36
Linear array hybridization, 1312
Linear IgA dermatosis, 1040
Linear regression, 108, 108*f*
  definition of, 103
Linearity, 40
Lineweaver-Burk plot, 272, 272*f*
Linkage
  analysis, 1379
  definition of, 1338
  disequilibrium, of class II genes, 963
Lipase, 308-309, 438-439, 439*f*
Lipids, 221, 497, 501, 503
  dyslipoproteinemia and, 221-243
    cholesterol testing and management in, guidelines for, 235-237, 235*t*, 236*b*
    lipoproteins, apolipoproteins, and related proteins in, 223-225
    overview of, 221-223, 222*f*-223*f*, 222*t*, 224*t*
  and lipoprotein measurement, 228-235
  lipoproteins, and disease, 237-243, 238*t*, 239*f*-240*f*
  in renal tubular epithelial cells, 463, 463*f*-464*f*
  tests for, 292-293
  transport of, and lipoprotein metabolism, 225-228, 228*f*
Lipiduria, 445
Lipolytic enzymes, and other proteins, 225, 227*t*
β-Lipoprotein, 260
Lipoprotein lipase deficiency, 241
Lipoproteins, 221, 224-225
  apolipoproteins, and related proteins in, 223-225
  chemical composition of, 222*t*
  classification of, 223*f*
  detection of, 234
  high-density, 224
  intermediate-density, 224
  lipids, and disease, 237-243, 238*t*, 239*f*-240*f*
  and lipoprotein cholesterol, estimation of, 232-234
  low-density, 223-224
  LpX, 225
  major, 223-224
  metabolism of, 223*f*
    important proteins in, 225
  minor and abnormal, 224-225
  modified, 235
  particle number, measurement of, 234
  physicochemical characteristics of, 222*t*
  structure of, 222*f*
  subclasses, measurement of, 234
  very-low-density, 223
Liposarcoma, well-differentiated and dedifferentiated, 1513
Liquid chromatography, 49, 49*f*
Liquid chromatography-mass spectroscopy, 329-330
Liquid or solution phase hybridization, 1311-1312
Liquid scintillation, 52
LIS. *see* Laboratory information system (LIS)
Listeria, 1124-1125, 1124*f*
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1125
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1124-1125
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1125, 1125*t*
Lithium, 352
Liver
  fibrosis of, 302-303
  metabolism in, 341
  necroinflammation of, 302-303
  synthetic functions of, 293-295
Liver disease, 566, 810
  anemia in, 568-569
Liver function, evaluation of, 289-305
  diseases, diagnosis of, 301-305
    chronic passive congestion, 302
    fulminant hepatic failure, 304-305
    hepatitis, 302
    posthepatic biliary obstruction, 304
    space-occupying lesions, 304
  injury, tests of, 295-301
    autoimmune markers, 297-298
    plasma enzyme levels, 295-297
    viral-induced hepatitis, testing for, 298-301
  normal, 289-295
    metabolic functions of, 289-293
    synthetic functions of, 293-295
  prothrombin and INR used in, 294
  tests, 95-96, 95*t*
Loa loa, 1272*f*, 1273
Load balancing, test menu and, 14
"Lock-and-key" appearance, antigen-antibody, 916
Lock-and-key fit, 268, 268*f*
Locus, definition of, 1337
LOD score method, 981
Löffler's syndrome, 611
Long-QT syndrome, 246
Loop-mediated amplification (LAMP), 1323-1324
Louse-borne relapsing fever (LBRF), 1183
Louse-borne typhus, murine typhus and, 1105-1106
Low molecular weight heparin, 846, 846*t*
Low oxygen affinity, hemoglobins associated with, 586
Low total cholesterol, and triglyceride, 242
Low white cell counts, 89
Low-density lipoproteins, 223-224
  selective removal of, 772-773, 773*b*
Low-grade fibromyxoid sarcoma, 1514
Low-grade serous carcinoma (LGSC), 1512
Lowry assay, 257
LpX lipoprotein, 225
L-Thyroxine, uses of, 378
Luciferase immunoprecipitation system (LIPS), 1036
Lumbar punctures (LPs), cerebrospinal fluid and, 29-30
Luminescence, 42
Lung, acute injury of, transfusion-related, 747
Lung cancer, 1500-1501, 1501*f*
  anti-p53 in, 1458
  p53 protein in, 1457-1458
  protein arrays for, 1461
  ras-p21 protein in, 1456-1457
Lupus anticoagulant
  and acquired coagulation protein inhibitors and, 810-811
  and antiphospholipid syndrome, 839-840, 840*b*
Lupus glomerulonephritis, 1049-1050
"Lupus-like" syndromes and diseases, 994, 995*f*
Lutheran antibodies, 696
Lutheran blood group system, 695-697
  biochemistry of, 695, 696*f*
  biological role of, 696-697
  molecular biology of, 696
  null/weak phenotypes, 695, 696*t*
LW antibodies, 707
LW blood group system, 707
  biochemistry of, 707
  biological role of, 707
  molecular biology of, 707
Lyme disease, 1179-1183
  clinical manifestations of, 1180-1181, 1181*f*
Lyme disease *(Continued)*
  culture of, 1181-1182
  epidemiology and pathogenesis of, 1179-1180, 1179*f*-1180*f*
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1181
  molecular tests for, 1183
  serologic tests for, 1182-1183, 1182*f*
  treatment and prevention of, 1183
  xenodiagnosis of, 1182
Lyme-like disease, 1179-1183
  clinical manifestations of, 1180-1181, 1181*f*
  culture of, 1181-1182
  epidemiology and pathogenesis of, 1179-1180, 1179*f*-1180*f*
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1181
  molecular tests for, 1183
  serologic tests for, 1182-1183, 1182*f*
  treatment and prevention of, 1183
  xenodiagnosis of, 1182
Lymphadenopathy, nonneoplastic causes of, 615
Lymphocyte(s), 462, 529, 529*f*-530*f*
  activation and proliferation, 891-892
  activation of, biochemical pathways of, 891
  depletion of, 654-655, 655*f*
  donor-specific cross-match, 970
  function of
    laboratory evaluation of, 904-907
    and physiology of, 556-557, 557*f*
  hematopoiesis, 554-557
  in normal individuals, 612
  preparation of, 967
  primary lymphoid tissue, 554-556
  secondary lymphoid tissue, 556
Lymphocyte microcytotoxicity assay, 967
Lymphocyte stimulation assay, principle of, 904*f*
Lymphocyte transformation
  assays, 904-905
    lymphocyte transformation, principles of, 904
    mitogen-induced blastogenesis, 904-905, 904*f*
    mixed lymphocyte culture, 905, 906*f*
  principles of, 904
Lymphocytic and plasmacytic disorders, 612-616
  lymphocytes, in normal individuals, 612
  lymphocytopenia, 615, 615*b*
  lymphocytosis, 612-615, 612*b*
Lymphocytic leukemoid reactions, 616
Lymphocytopenia, 615, 615*b*
Lymphocytosis, 612-615, 612*b*
  associated with viral infection, 612
  chronic/persistent polyclonal B cell, 612
  monoclonal B cell, 635
Lymphoepithelial lesions, 642, 642*f*
Lymphoid cells, 856-857
Lymphoid disorders, molecular genetic analysis in, 1481
Lymphoid neoplasms
  with eosinophilia, 621-622
  precursor, 634-635
Lymphoid tissue, 554-556
  mucosa-associated, extranodal marginal zone B-cell lymphoma of, 642, 642*f*
Lymphoma(s), 666-676, 672*f*
  anti-c-myc protein in, 1459
  diagnosis and classification of, 666-674, 673*f*-678*f*
  minimal residual disease detection in, 674-676
  prognostic factors of, 674
  therapeutic targets of, 674
  tumors of, antibodies to p53 in, 1458
Lymphomatoid granulomatosis, 645, 645*f*
Lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma, 639-640, 639*f*
Lymphoproliferative disorders
  immunodeficiency-associated, 656, 656*b*
  of NK cells, chronic, 649
  posttransplant, 656, 656*f*
  primary cutaneous CD30-positive T cell, 652, 652*f*
Lymphoproliferative syndrome, autoimmune, 615
Lymphotoxin α and β genes, tumor necrosis factor and, 974-975

Lynch syndrome, 1505-1506
Lysergic acid diethylamide (lysergide), 339
Lysozyme, 491

M
M. tuberculosis infection, latent, testing for, 1191
M hemoglobins, 586
Macroamylasemia, 308, 308*t*
Macroangiopathic hemolytic anemia, 594-595
Macroarrays, 1329
Macrocytic anemia, 85*t*, 88, 599
Macrocytosis, with normoblastic marrow, 563
Macroenzymes, 270
α_2-Macroglobulin, 260, 489
β_2-Macroglobulin, 489
Macrolide, 1113
Macropapular cutaneous mastocytosis (MPCM), 621
Macrophages, monocytes and, 552-553
Macroscopic examination, for gastrointestinal and pancreatic disorders, 322
Maculopapular eruption, 1423
Magnesium, 191-192, 432, 432*f*
  homeostasis, 191
Magnetic biosensor assay, 886-887
Magnetic force restoration balance, 54-55
Magnetic sector mass spectrometer, 50
Major histocompatibility complex, disease and, 973-982
  central or class III region, genes in, 974-976, 974*f*
    C2, *C4*, *CFB* genes and typing, 975
    complotypes, 976, 976*t*
    heat-shock protein 70 genes, 975
    tumor necrosis factor and lymphotoxin α and β genes, 974-975
  disease associations of, 977-980
    of MHC monogenic, 978-979, 978*t*
    polygenic diseases, 979-980, 979*t*
  DNA sequence of, overview of, 973-974
  extended haplotypes, 976-977, 977*f*, 977*t*-978*t*
  genetic markers and, 980-981
    association, strength of, 980-981, 981*t*
    gene and phenotype frequencies, 980
    genetic polymorphism, 980
    LOD score method, 981
    mode of inheritance, 981
Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) of man
  class I and II molecules, antigenic fragments bound by, 964
  class I molecules—HLA-A, HLA-B, HLA-C subregions, 958-962
    class I gene expression, regulation of, 960-961
    class I genes, organization of, 960
    class I genes, other, 961-962
    function of, 961
    structure of, 959-960, 960*f*
  class II molecules—HLA-DR, HLA-DQ, HLA-DP subregions, 962-963
    class II gene expression, regulation of, 963
    class II genes, linkage disequilibrium of, 963
    class II genes, organization of, 962-963, 962*f*
    class II genes, other, 963
    class II genes, structure of, 962
    function of, 963
  genetics of, 956-958
  HLA nomenclature, 964-965
    DNA-based allele designations, 965
    serologic and cellular specificities, 964-965
  HLA polymorphisms, identification techniques of, 965-968
    class I and class II molecules, serologic detection of, 967
    class II molecules, cellular detection of, 967-968
    DNA-based typing, of class I and class II alleles, 965-967
  human leukocyte antigen (HLA) as, 955-972, 956*f*, 957*t*
Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) of man *(Continued)*
  minor histocompatibility molecules, 964
  molecules, foreign, recognition of, 964
  tandem repeats and single nucleotide polymorphisms in, 964
  tissue/organ transplantation, 968-972, 968*t*
    allogeneic hematopoietic progenitor cell transplantation, 971-972
    genetic basis of, 968, 968*f*-969*f*
    histocompatibility matching, 969-971
    nonrenal, 971
    renal, 971
Malabsorption syndromes, 315-318, 565
  abetalipoproteinemia, 316
  agammaglobulinemia, 316
  celiac disease, 317-318, 317*t*
  inflammatory bowel disease, 318, 318*t*
  laxative abuse, 317
  steatorrhea, tests for, 316
  tests for, 316-317
  Whipple's disease, 318
Malaria, 749, 1240-1248
  as clinical disease, 1241-1247
  diagnosis of, 1243*f*-1246*f*, 1247-1248, 1247*t*
  epidemiology of, 1241
  life cycle of, 1241, 1242*f*-1246*f*
Malarial stippling, 526
Malassezia infection, pathology of, 1214, 1214*f*
MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry, 1210
Male reproduction, regulation of, 402, 402*f*, 404-406
  accessory glands and, 405
  hormone analysis of, 406, 406*f*
  image analysis of, 405-406
  immunologic tests of, 405
  semen analysis of, 404-405
    examination in, 405
    sample collection in, 404-405
Malignancies, origins of, 1462*f*, 1463
Malignancy-associated hypercalcemia, 197, 199*t*
MALT1 gene abnormalities in, 1486
MammaPrint assay, 1498, 1498*f*
Management, 2-5
  responsibilities, 3*b*
Managers, leadership and management, 2
Managing utilization, optimizing performance and, 18
Manganese (Mn), 426
Mania, depression and, therapeutic drug monitoring for, 352-354
Mannan-binding lectin pathway, 932
MANOVA. *see* Multiple analysis of variance (MANOVA)
Mansonella spp., 1272*f*, 1273
Mantle cell lymphoma, 644, 644*f*
  t(11;14)/*CCND1-IGH*in, 1485-1486
Manual blood cell counts, 514-519
MAO inhibitors, 354
Maple syrup urine disease, 479
  methods for, 479
  procedure of, 479
Mapping
  sample, 11-12, 13*f*
  task, 14, 15*f*
  test, 11-12, 13*f*
Marijuana (Cannabis), 338-339
Marker chromosome, 1349
Markers
  autoimmune, 297-298
  biochemical
    of bone metabolism, 188-204
    of bone remodeling, 200-201
  in body fluids, 1447-1448
  bone formation, 201
  bone resorption, 200-201
  cell surface, 990
  enzymes as, 321
  for gastrointestinal and pancreatic tumors, 321
  genetic, 321, 980-981, 1397
  hormones as, 321
  molecular and cytogenetic prognostic, 1486-1487
  monoclonal-antibody-defined tumor, 1434
  multiple oncoproteins, 1460
Markers *(Continued)*
  mutant protein, 1448
  tumor, 491, 506
  urine, 1447-1448
  X and Y chromosome, 1400
Marketing program, issues to, 4*t*
Marrow
  cellularity of, 536, 536*f*
  examination of, 536-538
  films of, 534
  indications for study of, 533-534
  interpretation of, 538
Mass, measurement of, 54-55
Mass population screening, and allele frequencies, 1382
Mass spectrometer analyzer unit, 50, 52*f*
Mass spectrometry, 49-51
Mass/charge ratio, 50, 50*b*
Massive transfusion, 744, 810
Massively parallel sequencing, 1489-1490
Mast cell leukemia, 621
Mast cells
  and basophils, 857
  basophils and, 551-552
Mastocytosis, 621, 621*f*
  and *KIT* D816V gene mutation, 1480
Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI), 50, 51*f*
Matrix Assisted Laser Desorption Ionization Time-of-Flight Mass Spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS), 1160
Maturation, 536, 537*f*
  acute myeloblastic leukemia with, 630, 630*f*
  acute myeloblastic leukemia without, 630, 630*f*
  arrest, 608
  cellular, abnormal, 622, 622*f*
  megaloblastic, 544
  normoblastic, 542-544, 542*f*-543*f*
Mature B cell neoplasms, 635-647, 636*t*
Mature T cell and natural killer cell neoplasms, 647-653, 648*t*
Maximal velocity, 272
May-Hegglin anomaly, 608-609, 609*f*
MCB. *see* Monoclonal band (MCB)
McLeod syndrome, 698-699
MDA5 (CADM-140), autoantibodies, 1007
Mean, 103
Mean cell hemoglobin, 513
  concentration of, 513-514
Mean cell volume, 513
Mean platelet volume (MPV), 814
Measurements, reliability of, in cholesterol testing, 235, 236*t*
Meat fiber, 322
Meconium, 507
Media, susceptibility testing, 1156-1157
Median, 103
Medical bacteriology, 1114-1152
  medically important bacteria, 1116-1152
    anaerobic bacteria, 1147-1152
    Gram-negative bacteria-bacilli, 1131-1134
    Gram-negative bacteria-cocci, 1129-1131
    Gram-negative bacteria-HACEK, 1141-1142
    Gram-negative bacteria-nonfermentative bacilli, 1134-1141
    Gram-positive cocci of, 1116-1123
    Gram-positive rods, 1123-1129
    miscellaneous Gram-negative bacilli, 1142-1147
  specimen processing, 1114-1115
    culture techniques of, 1115, 1116*t*
    Gram stain of, 1114-1115, 1115*f*
Medical centers, in point-of-care testing program, 70-71
Medical decision making, 73-83
  analytic correctness, of results, assessment of, 73-74
  clinical significance, of results, assessment of, 74-75
  evidence-based medicine, 81-82, 81*f*
  laboratory results, interpretation of, 75-81
    Bayes theorem in, 78-79, 79*t*
    diagnostic accuracy in, 75-78
    likelihood ratio in, 79-80, 79*t*
    positivity criterion in, 80-81, 81*t*
Medical decision making *(Continued)*
    receiver operator characteristic curves in, 80, 80*f*
  systematic reviews of clinical effectiveness research and clinical practice guidelines, 82-83, 83*b*
Medical parasitology, 1231-1283, 1232*t*-1233*t*
  arthropods in, medically important, 1276-1281, 1276*t*
  blood and tissue protozoa in, 1240-1252
    babesiosis, 1248, 1249*f*
    hemoflagellates, 1248-1251, 1250*f*
    malaria, 1240-1248
    opportunistic free-living amebae, 1251-1252, 1252*f*
  immunodiagnostic methods for, 1237-1239
  intestinal and urogenital protozoa in, 1252-1262, 1253*f*
    amebae and *Blastocystis hominis*, 1253-1257, 1254*f*
    ciliates, 1260
    coccidia, 1260-1262
    flagellates, 1257-1260, 1260*t*
    microsporidia, 1262
  intestinal helminths in, 1262-1271
    cestodes, 1266-1268
    nematodes, 1262-1266
    trematodes, 1268-1271
  laboratory methods for, 1233-1240
    blood, examination of, 1233-1234
    fecal specimens, examination of, 1234-1237
    urogenital and other specimens, examination of, 1237
  molecular diagnostic methods for, 1239-1240, 1240*t*
  parasite classification and taxonomy in, 1232-1233
  parasite culture techniques for, 1237
  parasitic infections in, immunocompromised host and, 1281, 1281*t*-1282*t*
  quality assurance, quality improvement and safety for, 1240
  tissue helminths in, 1271-1276
    cestodes, 1274-1275
    nematodes, 1271-1274
    trematodes, 1275-1276
Medical technologists, 1365
Medically important bacteria, 1116-1152
Medicare, 141
  inpatients in, 142
  outpatients in, 142, 144*t*
  reimbursement of, 142-144
Medicine
  evidence-based, 81-82, 81*f*
  pathology and, molecular diagnostics on practice of, 1301
    data analysis in, 1301
    molecular biology used in disease treatment in, 1301
    in redefining disease, 1301
  personalized, pharmacogenomics and, 1407-1430
  transfusion, 735-750
Medium vessel vasculitis, 1018*f*, 1020-1022, 1020*t*
  Kawasaki disease, 1021-1022, 1022*f*
  polyarteritis nodosa, 1020-1021
Medullary carcinoma, 1500
Megakaryocytes, 553-554
  distribution and kinetics of, 554
  function of, 554
  morphology of, 553, 553*f*
Megaloblastic anemia, 563-564
  acute, 567
  blood relating to, 563-564, 563*f*
  cobalamin
    defective production of, 564
    deficiency of, 564
    inadequate intake of, 564
    metabolism of, 564
  erythrokinetics, 564
  folic acid deficiency, 566-567
  folic acid metabolism, 566
  macrocytosis, with normoblastic marrow, 563
  marrow relating to, 563-564, 563*f*

Megaloblastic anemia *(Continued)*
pernicious anemia, 564-566
therapy for, 567
Megaloblastic marrow, 599
Megaloblastic maturation, 544
Meiosis, definition of, 1338
Melanin, 459
Melanoma, 1512-1513
malignant, p53 protein in, 1458
MELD score, 294, 303
Melting, 1304
Melting point, 1304
Membrane
disorders of, hemolysis relating to, 575-577
permeability of, assays of, 910
premature rupture of, 414
Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, 1048
Membranous nephropathy (MN), 1047-1048
Meningitis, 1076*t*
Meningoencephalitis, granulomatous amebic, 1252
Menu/selection, for test management, 1368
MER2 antibodies, 712
Mercury, 358
MERS-CoV. *see* Middle Eastern Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV)
Metabolic acidosis, 182-184
classification of, 182, 183*b*
D-lactic, 183
ketoacidosis, 183-184
lactic, 183, 183*b*
organic, 183
renal, 182-183
Metabolic alkalosis, 185, 185*b*
Metabolic bone disease, 201-204
Metabolic defects, enzyme measurements for, 989
Metabolic disorders, hemolysis relating to, 591-594
erythrocyte metabolism, 591, 592*f*
glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, 591-594, 593*b*
Metabolic functions, of liver, 289-293
bilirubin, 289-292
drug metabolism, 293
lipids, 292-293
other metabolic tests, 292-293
Metabolic syndrome, 235-236
Metabolic tests, 292-293
ammonia, 292
Metabolism
antidiuretic hormone, 178-181
of calcitonin, 193-194
of cobalamin, 564
of folic acid, 566
iron, 559-560
of lipoproteins, 223*f*
important proteins in, 225
in liver, 341
mineral
disorders of, 195-199, 198*t*-199*t*
hormones regulating, 192-195
therapeutic levels and, of antidepressants, 354
of thyroid gland, 372-373, 373*t*
of vitamin D and metabolites, 194
Metagonimus, 1269
Metalloproteases, in pancreatic cancer, 1456
Metapneumovirus, 1082
Metastasis, adhesion molecules and, 1434
Metformin, 1418
Methadone, 336
Methanol, 357
Methaqualone (Quaalude), 338
Methemoglobin, bilirubin and, 490
Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 1158
Method validations, 71
Methotrexate, 354-355, 355*t*
Methylmalonic acid, 565
MHC monogenic disease association, 978-979, 978*t*
congenital adrenal hyperplasia, due to 21-hydroxylase deficiency, 979
hereditary hemochromatosis, HFE gene and, 978-979
Mi-2/NuRD complex, 1006-1007
MIC. *see* Minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC)
Michaelis constant, 271
Michaelis-Menten equation
derivation of, 271
for determination of total enzyme concentration, 271-274
enzyme activity in, 273
enzyme assays and, under nonsaturating conditions, 274
enzymes, inhibition of
competitive, 276-277
noncompetitive, simple and mixed, 277-278
uncompetitive, 277
k_2 and K_M in, 272, 272*f*
K_M in, a word about, 272-273
Lineweaver-Burk plot and, 272, 272*f*
measuring enzyme activity in, 273-274
saturation, initial rate at, 272
Microalbuminuria, 449
Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, 86-87, 595
Microarray hybridization, 1312
Microarray technology, 1343-1344, 1344*f*
Microarrays, 1329
fabrication for, 1329-1330
methods of, component-resolved diagnostics and testing by, 1069-1070
oligonucleotide, 1330-1331
substrates, 1329
Microbial stains, 1191-1193, 1192*f*-1193*f*, 1193*t*
Microbiological examination
for CSF, 491-493, 492*t*
bacterial meningitis, 491-492, 491*f*
fungal meningitis, 493
human immunodeficiency virus, 493
primary amebic meningoencephalitis, 493
spirochetal meningitis, 492
tuberculous meningitis, 493
viral meningitis, 492-493
for synovial fluid, 497-498
Microbiology
laboratory automation for, 64
point-of-care testing in, 69
Microchannel assay, compact disk used for, 888
Microcytic anemia, 85-86, 85*t*, 599-600, 600*b*
Microdeletion syndromes, and contiguous gene syndromes, 1356-1358, 1357*t*, 1358*f*
β_2-microglobulin, 1438-1439
Microlymphocytotoxicity assay, 907, 909*f*
Micronutrients, 416
Microorganisms, recovery of, 1286
Microphthalmia transcription factor (MiT) family, translocation renal cell carcinoma, 1508
Micropipets, 56
MicroRNA, circulating, 1446
Microsatellite alterations, 1446
Microsatellite instability, high (MSI-H), 1503
in colorectal cancer, 1505
Microsatellite stable (MSS), 1503
Microscan, 1157, 1162
Microscopic components, of urine sediment, 461-473
Microscopic examination
for CSF, 483-486
for gastrointestinal and pancreatic disorders, 322
for synovial fluid, 494-497
Microscopy, 460, 1175, 1175*f*
Microsporidia, 1262
in medical parasitology, 1252-1262
stains for, 1236
Microspot assay, 887
Middle Eastern Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV), 1083
Middleware, 63
Midges, 1278
Milk-alkali syndrome, 197
Miller-Dieker syndrome, 1357
Millipedes, 1281
Mineral metabolism
and bone metabolism, 188-195, 189*f*
disorders of, 195-199, 198*t*-199*t*
hormones regulating, 192-195
Mineralocorticoid axis, 382-383, 383*t*
Minichromosome maintenance proteins, 1460
Minimal proteinuria, 449
Minimal residual disease, 1314
Minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC), 1154
by broth microdilution, 1154*f*
Minor groove binder, 1320
Mi-Prostate Score, 1447
miRNA, in cancer, 1518
Missense mutations, 1308
Mites, 1279*f*-1280*f*, 1280
Mitochondrial DNA
disorders of, 1392
sequencing of, 1400
Mitogen-induced blastogenesis, 904-905, 904*f*
Mitogenesis, cell biology and, 1450-1451
Mitosis, definition of, 1338
Mixed acid-base disorders, 186-187, 186*b*
Mixed cellular casts, 465-466, 466*f*
Mixed cellularity, 654, 655*f*
Mixed connective tissue disease, 1008
Mixed lymphocyte culture, 905, 906*f*
Mixed-type AIHA, 733
Mixing, 57-58
and incubation, in automated chemistry analyzer, 63
MLL gene, 1470-1471, 1474
in childhood leukemias, 1476
MMR genes, in colorectal cancer, 1505
MNS blood group system, 686-688
alleles of, 688*t*
biochemistry of, 686-687, 687*f*
biological role of, 688
molecular biology of, 687-688
null phenotypes of, 686, 687*t*
MNSs antibodies, 688
anti-M and anti-N, 688
anti-S, -s, and -U, 688
Mobile robots, for automated delivery, 61
Mode, 103
Mode of inheritance
based on population studies, 981
based on sibling pairs, 981
Moderate proteinuria, 448-449
Modified Hodge Test (MHT), 1166, 1166*f*
Molar absorptivity, 36
Mold, 1199
morphology, 1208
Molecular allergy diagnosis, and testing by microarray methods, 1069
Molecular and cellular interactions, regulation of IgE synthesis, 1059-1060, 1059*f*, 1064*t*
Molecular and cytogenic prognostic markers, 1486-1487
Molecular basis, for enzyme catalysis, 268-269, 269*f*
Molecular biology
in disease treatment, 1301
technicians for, 1365
Molecular composition and structure, 1303-1305, 1304*f*-1305*f*, 1305*t*
Molecular defects, of thalassemias, 587, 587*f*
Molecular detection methods, 1084
Molecular diagnosis, 1313-1314. *see also* Genetic diseases, molecular diagnosis of
Molecular diagnostics, 23
basic principles and techniques of, 1303-1315
nucleic acid analyses in, 1308-1313
nucleic acid biochemistry and biology in, 1303-1308
disease in, laboratory evaluation of, 1313-1314
beyond diagnosis in, 1314
molecular diagnosis in, 1313-1314
for medical parasitology, methods for, 1239-1240, 1240*t*
tests for, reimbursement for, 1366-1367, 1367*t*
Molecular diagnostics laboratory, establishing of, 1360-1376
design and requirements for, 1363-1365
contamination control in, 1364-1365
laboratory design, 1364
equipment for, 1365
quality control of, 1375-1376
financial management of, 1366-1367
molecular diagnostic tests in, reimbursement for, 1366-1367, 1367*t*
patent issues in, 1367
laboratory information system in, 1367-1368
personnel for, 1365-1366
certification of, 1366
laboratory director, 1365
medical technologists and molecular biology technicians, 1365
technical supervisor, 1365
regulation and regulatory agencies in, 1362-1363
Clinical Laboratory Improvement Acts of 1988 and 2003, 1362
Food and Drug Administration, 1362-1363
Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act, 1362
special considerations for, 1361-1362
cancer in, 1361-1362
infectious disease in, 1361
inherited disorders in, 1361-1362
test management for, 1368-1369
clinical test formats in, 1368
menu/selection in, 1368
methods in, 1368
molecular testing in, automated platforms for, 1369
testing process in, 1369-1376
analytical verification of, 1371-1375, 1374*t*
assay design and development of, 1370-1371, 1370*t*
clinical verification of, 1375
new test verification/validation of, 1371, 1372*t*-1374*t*
quality assurance of, 1369-1370
quality control of, 1375
Molecular genetic analysis, in lymphoid disorders, 1481
Molecular genetics, prenatal diagnosis and, 990-992, 991*t*
Molecular heterogeneity, 1381
Molecular identification, 1209-1210, 1209*t*
Molecular luminescence spectroscopy (fluorometry), 42-43
Molecular major histocompatibility complex (MHC), 891
Molecular pathology, introduction to, 1300-1302
application of, to cancer detection, 1301
caveats to, 1302
diagnostic, discussion of, 1300-1301
implications of, on practice of pathology and medicine, 1301
data analysis relating to, 1301
molecular biology used in disease treatment, 1301
in redefining disease, 1301
molecular biology revolution's impact on, 1300
quality assurance in, 1302
Molecular testing
automated platforms for, 1369
for *Borrelia*, 1183
Molecular typing, 731
Molecular-based testing, for antimicrobial susceptibility, 1158-1160
Molybdenum (Mo), 426
Monoclonal antibodies, 863
Monoclonal B cell lymphocytosis, 635, 667
Monoclonal band (MCB), 922*f*
detection of, 926, 927*f*
Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS), 640, 640*b*, 921-922
Monoclonal immunoglobulin deposition diseases, 641-642
monoclonal light and heavy chain deposition diseases, 641

Monoclonal immunoglobulin deposition diseases *(Continued)*
osteosclerotic myeloma as, 642
primary amyloidosis as, 641
Monoclonal immunoglobulins (Ig), 921-922, 922*b*, 924*f*
Monoclonal light and heavy chain deposition diseases, 641
Monoclonal-antibody-defined tumor markers, 1434, 1436*t*
Monocytes, 529, 529*f*
granulocytes and, function, 907-910
and macrophages, 552-553
distribution and kinetics of, 553
function of, 553
morphology of, 552, 552*f*, 553*b*
Monocytopenia, 612
Monocytosis, 611, 612*b*
Mononuclear leukocytes, 462
Monospecific reagent, for antihuman globulin test, 718
Moraxella catarrhalis, 1130*t*, 1131, 1131*f*
Morphologic identification, 1207-1208
Morphology
of basophils and mast cells, 551, 551*f*
of eosinophil precursors, 550-551, 550*f*, 551*b*
of megakaryocytes, 553, 553*f*
mold, 1208
of monocytes and macrophages, 552, 552*f*, 553*b*
of neutrophil precursors, 547-548, 549*f*, 550*b*
of yeast, 1207-1208, 1208*b*, 1208*f*
Mosquitoes, 1278
Moths, 1278
Moving boundary, 254
MPL gene mutations, 1478-1480
MRSA. *see* Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)
MTBC. *see Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex (MTBC)
Mucin clot test, 497
Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 1250
Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue, extranodal marginal zone B cell lymphoma of, 642, 642*f*
Mucous membrane pemphigoid (MMP), 1040
Mucus, 322
Muir-Torre syndrome, 1506
Multianalyte microarray immunoassay, 887, 887*f*
Multicolor fluorescence in situ hybridization, 1343, 1343*f*
Multicomponent apheresis donation, 757, 757*b*
Multidrug resistance-related proteins, 1414
Multiple analysis of variance (MANOVA), 110
Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2, as paradigm, 1390
Multiple myeloma, 927
Multiple oncoprotein assays, 1460
Multiple oncoprotein markers, for cancer diagnosis, 1460
Multiple sclerosis, 1054
Multiple-tube mixers, 57-58
Multiplex bead-based assays, 1014-1015
Multiplex polymerase chain reaction, 1317-1318, 1318*f*
Murine typhus, louse-borne typhus and, 1105-1106
Muscle glycogenoses, 216-218, 219*t*
Musculoskeletal tissues, 785-786
Mutation, definition of, 1337
Mutation scanning techniques, 1378-1379
Myasthenia gravis, 1054
and therapeutic plasma exchange, 774
MYC gene abnormalities, 1487
Myc oncogene, in prostate cancer, 1510
myc oncogene-encoded protein, in tumor detection, 1459
Mycelium, 1199
Mycetoma, 1222, 1222*f*-1223*f*
Mycobacteria, 1187-1197
identification tests for, 1194-1195
laboratory diagnosis for, 1191-1196
culture methods in, 1193-1194, 1194*t*
microbial stains in, 1191-1193, 1192*f*-1193*f*, 1193*t*
specimens in, 1191, 1192*f*, 1192*t*
Mycobacteria *(Continued)*
M. tuberculosis infection, latent, testing for, 1191
Mycobacterium leprae, 1190-1191
Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex, 1187-1188, 1196
nontuberculous, 1188-1191
classification of, 1188*t*
Mycobacterium avium complex as, 1189, 1196
Mycobacterium genavense as, 1189
Mycobacterium haemophilum as, 1190
Mycobacterium kansasii as, 1189
Mycobacterium marinum as, 1189-1190
Mycobacterium ulcerans as, 1190
Mycobacterium xenopi as, 1189
prevention of, 1196
rapidly growing, 1190
susceptibility testing of, 1195-1196, 1195*t*
treatment of, 1196, 1196*t*
Mycobacterium avium complex, 1189, 1196
Mycobacterium genavense, 1189
Mycobacterium haemophilum, 1190
Mycobacterium kansasii, 1189
Mycobacterium leprae, 1190-1191
Mycobacterium marinum, 1189-1190
Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex (MTBC), 1158, 1187-1188, 1196
Mycobacterium ulcerans, 1190
Mycobacterium xenopi, 1189
Mycophenolate mofetil, 351-352
Mycoplasma pneumoniae, 1111-1112
Mycoplasmal infections, 1111-1113
genital, 1112
laboratory diagnosis of, 1112-1113
treatment of, 1113
Mycoplasmas, genital, 1112-1113
Mycoses
dematiaceous fungi as cause of, 1222-1224
dimorphic fungi as cause of, 1215-1220, 1215*f*
hyaline fungi as cause of, 1225-1228
Mycosis fungoides, Sézary syndrome and, 651, 651*f*-652*f*, 673-674
Mycotic diseases, 1198-1230
dematiaceous fungi, mycoses caused by, 1222-1224
dermatophytoses, 1220-1222
clinical diseases of, 1220
laboratory diagnosis of, 1220-1222, 1220*f*-1222*f*
risk factors for, 1220
diagnostic techniques for, 1204-1211
biochemical identification as, 1208-1209, 1208*t*
culture as, isolation in, 1207
direct examination as, 1206-1207
growth rate in, 1207
growth temperature in, 1207
laboratory safety in, 1204
MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry as, 1210
molecular identification as, 1209-1210, 1209*t*
morphologic identification as, 1207-1208
serologic identification as, 1209
specimen collection and transport in, 1204-1205, 1205*t*
susceptibility testing as, 1210-1211
dimorphic fungi as caused of, 1215-1220, 1215*f*
hyaline fungi, aspergillosis, fusariosis and other mycoses caused by, 1225-1228
nomenclature, taxonomy, fungal morphology of, 1199-1204, 1200*t*-1201*t*
dimorphism in, 1204
fungal colony in, 1199, 1201*f*
fungal pigment in, 1200
reproductive structures in, 1200-1204, 1202*f*-1204*f*, 1203*t*
yeasts and hyphae in, structure of, 1199, 1201*f*-1202*f*
Pneumocystis pneumonia, 1228-1230
clinical diseases of, 1229
laboratory diagnosis of, 1229-1230, 1229*f*
Mycotic diseases *(Continued)*
pathology of, 1229, 1229*f*
risk factors for, 1229
prototheocosis, 1230, 1230*f*
yeast, candidiasis, cryptococcosis, other infections as cause of, 1211-1215
zygomycosis, 1224-1225
clinical diseases of, 1224
laboratory diagnosis of, 1224-1225, 1225*f*
pathology of, 1224, 1225*t*
risk factors for, 1224
Mycotoxins, 360
MYD88 mutation, in non-Hodgkin B cell lymphoma, 1488
Myelin basic protein (MBP), 489
Myelodysplasia-related changes, acute myeloid leukemia with, 629, 629*f*
Myelodysplastic and myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative neoplasms, 622-624
genetics and epigenetics of, 622
and types of abnormal cellular maturation, 622, 622*f*
Myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative disease, unclassifiable, 624-625
refractory anemia with ring sideroblasts associated with marked thrombocytosis, 624-625
Myelodysplastic/myeloproliferative neoplasms, 622-624
Myelodysplastic syndromes, 87-88, 625-626, 625*t*
and acute leukemia, 827
childhood, 626
with isolated del (5q), 625
myeloproliferative disorders and, 676-677, 679*f*
refractory anemia, 625
with excess blasts, 625
with ring sideroblasts, 625
refractory cytopenia
with multilineage dysplasia, 625
with unilineage dysplasia, 625
refractory neutropenia, 625
refractory thrombocytopenia, 625
unclassified, 625-626
Myelofibrosis
with acute panmyelosis, 632, 632*f*
autoimmune, 608
primary, 619-620, 1478-1480, 1479*f*
biology of, 619
course of, 620
Myeloid and lymphoid neoplasms, with eosinophilia and abnormalities of PDGFRA, PDGFRB, or FGFR1, 621-622
Myeloid and lymphoid neoplasms with eosinophilia (MLNE), 1480
Myeloid leukemia, associated with Down syndrome, 633
Myeloid neoplasms, therapy related, 629-630
Myeloid proliferations, Down syndrome related to, 633
blastic plasmacytoid dendritic cell neoplasm, 633
myeloid leukemia associated with, 633
transient abnormal myelopoiesis, 633
Myeloid sarcoma, 632-633, 633*f*
Myelokathexis, 610
Myeloma
asymptomatic (smoldering), 641
kidney, 641
nonsecretory, 641
Myelophthisic anemia, 569
Myeloproliferative disease, chronic, unclassifiable, 620
Myeloproliferative disorders
chronic, 617-626, 617*t*
myelodysplastic syndromes and, 676-677, 679*f*
Myeloproliferative neoplasms, 826-827, 1477-1480
chronic myelogenous leukemia, *BCR-ABL1* positive, 1477-1478
mastocytosis and *KIT* D816V gene mutation, 1480
Ph-negative: polycythemia vera, essential thrombocythemia and primary
Myeloproliferative neoplasms *(Continued)*
myelofibrosis-*JAK2*, *MPL* gene and *CALR* mutations, 1478-1480, 1479*f*
unclassifiable, 621
MYH gene, 1505
MYH polyposis, due to *MYH* inactivation, 1506
MYH9-related macrothrombocytopenia, 817-819
MYH-associated polyposis, 1391
Myocardial damage, markers of, 246-248
Myocardial infarction (MI), 244-245
and acute coronary syndrome, diagnosis of, 96-97
Myofibroblastic tumor, inflammatory, 1515
Myoglobin, 247
blood, hemoglobin, hemosiderin, in urine, 453-456
casts, 466
qualitative test for, 455
Myoglobinuria, 454-455, 455*t*
Myositis-associated autoantibodies, 1007
Myotonic dystrophy, 1386
Mysoline. *see* Primidone (Mysoline)
Myxoid/round cell liposarcoma, 1514

N

NAAT. *see* Nucleic acid amplification testing (NAAT)
Nanophyetus salmincola, 1269
NanoString's Prosigna Breast Cancer Prognostic Gene Signature Assay, 1498
Narcolepsy, 979
Nasopharyngeal specimens, 1290-1291
National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program (NGSP), 212
Natural killer cell lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 633
Natural killer cell-mediated cytotoxicity, 907
Natural killer cells, 857
assays, 989
bone marrow relating to, 556
and mature T cell neoplasms, 647-653, 648*t*
Necator americanus, 1265-1266, 1265*f*
Neisseria, 1129-1131, 1129*f*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1130
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1129
laboratory diagnosis of, 1129-1130, 1130*t*
prevention of, 1130-1131
Nematodes, 1262-1266, 1271-1274
Ancylostoma duodenale, 1265-1266, 1265*f*
Angiostrongylus cantonensis and *Angiostrongylus costaricensis*, 1273
Anisakis, *Pseudoterranova* and *Eustrongylides* spp., 1274
Ascaris lumbricoides, 1264
Brugia malayi, 1272-1273, 1272*f*
Capillaria hepatica, 1274
Capillaria philippinensis, 1263
culture and recovery techniques for, 1236
Dracunculus medinensis, 1273
Enterobius vermicularis, 1263, 1264*f*
filaria, 1271-1273
hookworms, 1265-1266, 1265*f*-1266*f*
Larva migrans, 1274
Loa loa, 1272*f*, 1273
Mansonella spp., 1272*f*, 1273
Necator americanus, 1265-1266, 1265*f*
Onchocerca volvulus, 1272*f*, 1273
Strongyloides stercoralis, 1266, 1266*f*
Trichinella spiralis, 1273-1274
Trichostrongylus spp., 1264-1265
Trichuris trichiura, 1263
Wuchereria bancrofti, 1272, 1272*f*
Zoonotic filariae, 1273
Neoantigen formation, 598, 598*t*
Neoehrlichia, 1104*t*
Neonatal and pediatric transfusion, 744-745, 744*b*
Neonatal hypothyroidism, screening for, 376-377
Neoplasms, 601
Neoplastic disorders, primarily involving leukocytes, 616-658
acute myeloid leukemia, 626-633, 626*b*, 626*t*
chronic myeloproliferative disorders, 617-626, 617*t*

Neoplastic disorders, primarily involving leukocytes *(Continued)*
hematopoietic neoplasms, overview of, 616-617
histiocytic and dendritic cell neoplasms, 656-658, 657*f*
Hodgkin lymphoma, 653-656, 653*f*
immunodeficiency-associated lymphoproliferative disorders, 656, 656*b*
mature B cell neoplasms, 635-647, 636*t*
mature T cell and natural killer cell neoplasms, 647-653, 648*t*
precursor lymphoid neoplasms, 634-635
Neorickettsia, 1104*t*
Nephelometer, 43
Nephelometric immunoassays, 866
Nephelometry, 257
and turbidimetry, 43, 43*f*
Nervous system, autoimmune diseases of, 1054-1055
Nested polymerase chain reaction, 1317
Net acid excretion, 182
Net acid production, 182
Net present value (NPV), 147
Networks and security, concepts and technology for, 131, 131*f*, 131*t*
Neural tube defects (NTDs), 410-411
folic acid prevention of, 410
screening for, 410-411, 411*f*
Neuroblastoma, 381
Neurodegenerative disorders, 1386
Neuroendocrine tumors, 318-320
Neurofibromatoses, 1517
Neurofibromatosis 1, 1517
Neurofibromatosis 2, 1517
Neuroleptics, antipsychotic major tranquilizers, 354
Neurologic diseases, 939-940
Neutropenia, 607-608, 607*b*
chronic familial, 608
cyclic, 607-608
of hypersplenism, 608
isolated, 608
refractory, 625
transient, 608
Neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin (NGAL), 173
Neutrophil precursors, morphology of, 547-548, 549*f*, 550*b*
Neutrophilia, 606-607, 607*f*
congenital, 616
determinants of, 607
mechanisms of, 606-607
Neutrophilic activation, assays of, 907-908
Neutrophilic leukemias, chronic, 1477
Neutrophilic leukemoid reactions, 616, 616*f*
Neutrophils, 461-462, 462*f*, 527-528, 528*f*, 537*f*, 547-550
distribution and kinetics of, 550
and eosinophils, 857
function of, 550
functional disorders of, 610
morphologic alterations in, 608-610, 609*b*
Nevirapine, 1424
New catalytic antibodies, with predetermined enzyme activity, 279-280, 281*f*
New test verification/validation, 1371, 1372*t*-1374*t*
Newborn feces, blood in, 321
Newborn screening, 1380
Next gene sequencing (NGS), implication of, in hematolymphoid lesions, 1489, 1490*t*
Next-generation sequencing, 1075*t*, 1379
clinical application of, 1518-1519, 1518*f*
Niacin (nicotinic acid), 420
Nicking endonuclease amplification, 1324
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH), 432, 432*f*
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH), 432, 432*f*
Nicotinic acid. *see* Niacin (nicotinic acid)
1972 Convention on Prohibition of Biological and Chemical Weapons, 158
Ninhydrin, 257
Nitric oxide, 799
Nitrite, 457-458
methods of detecting, 458
reagent strip, 458
Nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction assay, 910*f*
Nitroprusside tablet test, 453
procedure of, 453
Nocardia, 1127, 1127*f*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1128
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1127
laboratory diagnosis of, 1127-1128, 1128*t*
Nodal marginal zone lymphoma, 642, 642*f*
Nodular fasciitis, 1515
Nodular lymphocyte predominant HL, 655
Nodular lymphocyte-rich classical HL, 655-656
Nodular sclerosis, 654, 654*f*-655*f*
Nomenclature, 929-930, 930*f*
of enzymes, 269, 269*t*
taxonomy, fungal morphology and, of mycotic diseases, 1199-1204, 1200*t*-1201*t*
dimorphism in, 1204
fungal colony in, 1199, 1201*f*
fungal pigment in, 1200
reproductive structures in, 1200-1204, 1202*f*-1204*f*, 1203*t*
yeasts and hyphae in, structure of, 1199, 1201*f*-1202*f*
Nominal scale, 102
Nominal wavelength, 37
Non-beta cell tumors, hypoglycemia and, 215
Noncompetitive immunoassay, for small molecules, 881-882
anti-idiotype antibody-based immunoassay, 881-882
antimetatype antibody-based immunoassay, 882
background of, 881, 881*f*
open-sandwich, 882
Nondeletional pancellular hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin, 589
Nondiabetic ketonuria, 453
Nondisjunction, definition of, 1338
Non-Hodgkin lymphomas, 1481-1489
Nonimmune hemolysis, 748
Non-islet cell tumor hypoglycemia (NICTH), 215
Nonlymphoid cells, 857
Nonmegaloblastic marrow, 599
Nonmendelian inheritance, and epigenetic influences, 1382
Nonneoplastic disorders, 606-616
Non-neuroendocrine tumor, 1506-1507
Non-organ-specific autoimmune diseases, 1034*b*
Nonparametric measures, 105, 105*f*-106*f*
Nonparametric test, 107
Nonpathogenic amebae, 1254-1255, 1256*f*, 1256*t*-1257*t*
Nonrenal organ transplantation, 971
Nonsaturating conditions, enzyme assays under, 274
Nonsecretory myeloma, 641
Nonseptate fungi, 1199
Non-small cell carcinomas (NSCLCs), of lung, 1500
Nonstandard specimens, test billing for, 508
Nonsusceptible category, antibacterial, 1154
Nonthyroidal illness, 377
Nontreponemal serologic tests, 1176, 1176*f*, 1176*t*
Nontuberculous mycobacteria, 1188-1191
classification of, 1188*t*
Mycobacterium avium complex as, 1189, 1196
Mycobacterium genavense as, 1189
Mycobacterium haemophilum as, 1190
Mycobacterium kansasii as, 1189
Mycobacterium marinum as, 1189-1190
Mycobacterium ulcerans as, 1190
Mycobacterium xenopi as, 1189
Normal cells, agents hemolytic to, 594
Normal hemoglobins, 577-578, 577*f*
Normal platelet biology, 812-814
Normoblastic marrow, macrocytosis with, 563
Normoblastic maturation, 542-544, 542*f*-543*f*
Normochromic anemias, 600
Normocytic anemia, 85*t*, 86, 600
Northern hybridizations, 1312
NPM1 mutations, in acute myeloid leukemia, 1472
NPM1-ALK gene fusion, 1488
NPV. *see* Net present value (NPV)
Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy, 53, 53*f*
Nuclear methods, for detection of autoantibodies to, 1009*t*
Nuclear oncoproteins, 1457-1460
Nuclear protein NA14, antibodies to, 999-1000
Nuclear terrorism, 159-160
Nucleated red cells, 526-527, 526*f*-527*f*
significance of, 527
Nuclei, radial segmentation of, 531
Nucleic acid amplification, 1102
technology, polymerase chain reaction and, 1316-1327
Nucleic acid amplification testing (NAAT), 1074-1076, 1075*t*
Nucleic acid analyses, 1308-1313
amplification methods for, 1313
DNA sequencing for, 1313, 1314*f*
electrophoretic separation in, 1309, 1309*f*
hybridization assays in, 1309-1311
nucleic acid hybridization in, 1309, 1309*f*
polymorphism detection assays for, 1313, 1313*f*
Nucleic acid biochemistry and biology, 1303-1308
DNA in
mutations of, 1308, 1308*t*
repair of, mechanisms of, 1307-1308, 1308*t*
replication of, 1305-1306
to RNA, transcription of, 1306
molecular composition and structure in, 1303-1305, 1304*f*-1305*f*, 1305*t*
nucleic acid-associated enzymes in, 1305, 1305*f*, 1305*t*
posttranscriptional modification in, 1306
RNA to protein in, translation of, 1306
transcriptional control in, 1306-1307, 1307*f*
Nucleic acid hybridization, 1309, 1309*f*
Nucleic acid sequencing, 966-967
Nucleic acid-associated enzymes, 1305, 1305*f*, 1305*t*
Nucleic acid-based detection, of herpes simplex virus, 1079
Nucleolar antigen fibrillarin, antibodies to, 1003
Nucleolar organizing region, antibodies targeting, 1003
Nucleoprotein synthesis, defects of, 567-568
5'-Nucleotidase (EC 3.1.3.5), 287
NucliSENS EasyQ KPC assay, 1159
Null hypothesis (H_o), 103
Numerical chromosome abnormalities, 1345, 1345*f*
Nutritional folate deficiency, 566

O

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 9-10, 24-26
Ocular infections, *Aspergillus* in, 1226
OK blood group system, 711-712
biochemistry and molecular biology of, 711
biological role of, 711-712
Oligoclonal immunoglobulin bands in cerebrospinal fluid, 925-926, 926*f*, 928*f*
in serum, 926-927
Oligodendroglioma, 1493-1496, 1497*f*
Oligonucleotide microarrays, 1330-1331
Onchocerca volvulus, 1272*f*, 1273
Oncogenes, 1390
Oncogenic mutations, sarcomas with, 1515
Oncoprotein abnormalities, gene arrays detecting, 1446
Oncoprotein expression
sensitivities of, 1463
specificity of, 1461-1463
Oncoproteins, 1450-1464
for cell proliferation, 1434
in detecting antioncoprotein antibodies in sera, 1460
detection of cancer in serum, proteomic approaches to, 1460-1463
application of, 1461
efficacy of, 1461-1463, 1462*f*
origin of malignancies in, 1463
specific types of cancer, protein arrays for, 1461
tumor size and oncoprotein levels in, 1463
evaluation and conclusions of, 1463
multiple markers of, for cancer diagnosis, 1460
overview of, 1450-1451
cell biology and mitogenesis in, 1450-1451
signal transduction pathways in, 1451, 1451*f*, 1452*t*
in patients at risk for tumor development and pneumoconiosis, 1460
in tumor detection, 1451-1460, 1452*t*
cytosolic mitogenic kinases, 1457
G-proteins, 1456-1457
growth factor receptors, 1454-1456, 1454*f*
growth factors, 1452-1454
nuclear oncoproteins, 1457-1460
Oncotype Dx
in breast cancer, 1498, 1498*f*
in prostate cancer, 1510
"One-cell-one-immunoglobulin", 920
Oocyte, 403
Open reagent systems, 62
Open-sandwich immunoassay, 882
Operating costs, 138
Operating lease, 148
Ophthalmologic diseases, 939
Opiates, 335-336
Opisthorchis viverrini, 1270
Opsonization, assays of, 910
Oral allergy syndrome (OAS), 1063
Oral cancer, anti-p53 in, 1458
Oral candidiasis, 1211
Oral glucose tolerance tests, 209
Order of draw
catheter lines, 28*b*
tube and syringe, 24*b*
Ordinal scale, 102
Organ transplantation, 940, 940*f*
Organic acidosis, 183
Organic acids, 497
Organic anion transporter, 1413*t*, 1416*t*-1417*t*, 1418
Organic anion transporting peptides, 1413*t*, 1416-1417, 1416*t*-1417*t*
Organic cation transporter, 1413*t*, 1416*t*-1417*t*, 1417-1418
Organophosphates, and carbamates, 360
Orientia tsutsugamushi, as cause of scrub typhus, 1104*t*, 1107
Origin, in genome, 1305-1306
Orosomucoid. *see* α_1-Acid glycoprotein
Oroya fever, 1111
Osmolal gap, 357
Osmolality, 445-446. *see also* Plasma
of body fluid, 163-166
methods of, 446
plasma, measurement of, 165-166
specific gravity and, 166
Osmometer, freezing-point, 44
Osmometry, 43-44
Osmotic diuresis, 179, 445
Osmotic fragility test, 575, 575*f*
Osteitis fibrosa cystica
hyperthyroidism and, 196, 196*f*
renal osteodystrophy and, 203
Osteocalcin, 201
Osteomalacia
in renal osteodystrophy, 203, 203*f*
and rickets, 202-203
Osteopenia, 201
Osteoporosis, 201-202, 202*b*, 202*f*
pharmacogenomics in, 1429
Osteosclerotic myeloma, 642
Otic infections, *Aspergillus* in, 1226

Ovarian cancer, 1511-1512
anti-c-myc protein in, 1459
anti-p53 in, 1458
proteomic approach to, 1461
Ovary, autoimmune diseases of, 1053-1054
Overall hemostasis potential, 804
Overflow proteinuria, 449
Overhydration, 90
Overlap syndromes, 1046
concept of, 1007
computer-assisted ANA IIF technology, 1009
immunoblotting of, 1014, 1014*f*
line immunoassays, 1014
multiplex bead-based assays, 1014-1015
Overnight metyrapone test, 394-395
Oxalate, effect on blood tests, 26*t*
Oxycodone, 336
Oxygenation, 94
Oxytocin, 367

P

P blood group antibodies, 689-690
alloanti-P, 690
anti-P_1, 689-690
anti-PP_1P^k, 690
auto-anti-P (Donath-Landsteiner), 690
P1PK blood group system, 688-690, 689*t*
biochemistry of, 689, 690*f*
biological role of, 690
molecular biology of, 689
null/weak phenotypes of, 689
P2Y12 inhibitors, 852-853, 852*f*, 852*t*
p16, in cervical cancer, 1511
p53 gene, 1442, 1505
proteins, 1457-1459
p185erbB-2 ECD, in other tumors, 1455
Paget's disease, 203-204
PAM50 gene signature, 1498
Pancreas
autoimmune diseases of, 1046-1047
endocrine, functions of, 206-208
inflammatory diseases of, 307-310
acute pancreatitis, 307-310, 308*t*
in systemic disease, 306-307
cystic fibrosis, 306-307
hemochromatosis, 307
Pancreatic adenocarcinoma, 318, 319*t*
Pancreatic cancer, 1506-1507
ras-p21 protein in, 1457
Pancreatic disorders, laboratory diagnosis of, 306-323
inflammatory diseases, 307-310
acute pancreatitis, 307-310, 308*t*
macroamylasemia, 308, 308*t*
macroscopic examination for, 322
microscopic examination for, 322
stool collection for, 321-322
in systemic disease, 306-307
cystic fibrosis, 306-307
hemochromatosis, 307
Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma, 1507
Pancreatic function tests, 97
Pancreatic intraductal neoplasia (PanIN), 1507
Pancreatitis
acute, complications of, 310
autoimmune, 1046-1047
chronic, 310
Panel design, 661-662, 663*t*
Pantothenic acid, 421
Papillary renal cell carcinoma, 1508
Papillary thyroid carcinoma, 1499-1500
Paracentesis, 504
Paragonimiasis, 1270
Paragonimus spp., 1269*f*, 1270
Parainfluenza, 1073*t*
Parametric statistics, 103
Paraneoplastic neurologic syndromes, 1054
Paraneoplastic pemphigus, 1039
Parasites, 472
classification and taxonomy of, 1232-1233
culture techniques, for medical parasitology, 1237
detection of, in blood specimen, 1287
from feces, 1297
infections of, diagnosis of, 1289
Parasitic infections, immunocompromised host and, 1281, 1281*t*-1282*t*
Parasitologic examination, 1289
Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 192-193
vitamin D and, 98, 99*t*
Parathyroid hormone-related peptide, 193, 1442
Parietal cell autoantibodies (PCA), 1042
gastric, 1042*f*
Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria, 597, 733
Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), 571, 576-577, 677, 679*f*
laboratory diagnosis of, 576-577
Partial D antigen, 693
Particle agglutination, principle of, 865*t*, 866-868, 866*f*-867*f*
Particle immunoassay, 866-870
Particle-counting immunoassays, 868
Partition (liquid-liquid) chromatography, 49
Parturition, 403-404
Parvovirus, 1086*t*, 1087-1088
Parvovirus B-19, 749
Passive congestion, 96
Pasteurella, 1145
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1145
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1145
laboratory diagnosis of, 1145
Patent issues, in financial management, 1367
Paternity index calculation, 1403-1404, 1404*t*
Pathogen
reduction, 739
yeast and yeastlike, 1214-1215, 1214*f*
Pathology
laboratory of, DNA in, 1401, 1402*t*
molecular diagnostics on practice of, 1301
data analysis in, 1301
molecular biology used in disease treatment in, 1301
in redefining disease, 1301
Patient(s)
data
delta check for, 123-124, 124*t*
in quality control procedures, 123-125
for statistical quality control, 124-125, 125*f*
verifying consistency of, in method, 124, 124*f*
inpatients, Medicare, 142
outpatients, Medicare, 142, 144, 144*t*
registration/identification, information flow for, 133-134
risk of harm to, quality control samples and, 116
Patient/donor complications, common to all hemapheresis procedures, 777-781, 778*t*
Pauci-immune glomerulonephritis, 1049
Pautrier's abscesses, 651
PAX8-PPARγ gene rearrangement, 1500
Payback period, 147
Payers, reimbursement and, 139-141
PBP. *see* Penicillin binding protein (PBP)
pCO_2 electrode, 46
PCR. *see* Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)
PDGFRA, in gastrointestinal stromal tumor, 1515
Pediatric nodal marginal zone lymphoma, 642
Pediatric transfusion, 744-745, 744*b*
Peer group grading, 125, 126*f*
Pelger-Huët anomaly, 610, 610*f*
Peliosis, bacillary, 1110
Pellagra, 420
Pemphigoid, 1039-1040
Pemphigoid gestationis (PG), 1040
Pemphigus, 1037-1039
Pemphigus foliaceus, 1038-1039
Pemphigus vulgaris, 1038, 1038*f*
Penicillin, allergens derived from, 1069*f*
Penicillin binding protein (PBP), 1158
Pentastomids, 1281
Pentatrichomonas hominis, 1259
Pentose, in urine, 451-452
Pepsin, pepsinogen and, 311-312
Peptic ulceration, 310-311
Peptides
cardiac natriuretic, 250-252, 251*f*
parathyroid hormone-related, 193
procollagen type I N-terminal and C-terminal, 201
Percutaneous umbilical blood sampling (PUBS), 1339
Performance
and monitoring, of financial management, 144-146
optimizing, 17-19, 19*t*
Performing tests, information flow for, 134
Pericardial fluid, 30, 502-503, 502*b*
chemical analysis of, 503
collection of, 502
examination of
gross, 502
microbiological, 503
microscopic, 502-503
exudates and transudates, 502
immunologic studies of, 503
Perinatal viral infections, 1085-1088, 1086*t*
Period, of sine wave, 34
Peripheral blood, 536
circulating nucleic acids in, 1445-1447
circulating tumor cells in, 1444-1445
Peripheral blood progenitor cells, 788-789
Peripheral blood smear examination
leukocytes on, 517*t*, 527-531
platelets on, 531, 532*f*
review of, 522
Peripheral T/NK cell lymphoma, unspecified, 652-653, 653*f*
Peritoneal dialysis, 504
Peritoneal fluid, 30, 503-506
chemical analysis of, 505-506
collection of, 504
examination of
gross, 504-505
microbiological, 506
microscopic, 505, 505*f*
tests for, 504, 504*b*
transudates and exudates, 503-504, 503*b*
Peritoneal washings, 504
Perls' test, for iron, 534-536
interpretation of, 534, 535*f*
procedure of, 534
sections of, 534-536
Pernicious anemia (PA), 564-566, 1042, 1042*f*
in children, 565
clinical features of, 564
gastric findings of, 564-565
immune abnormalities of, 565
Personnel, for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1365-1366
Pertussis, 612
Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (PJS), 1506
PFA-100/200, 816
pH, 501, 503, 506
pH electrode, 45-46
Phaeohyphomycosis, 1223-1224
Phagocyte analyses, additional, 989
Phagocytosis and endocytosis, assays of, 908-909
Pharmacogenomics, personalized medicine and, 1407-1430
basic concepts of, 1407, 1408*f*
in cancer chemotherapy, 1424-1428
5-fluorouracil, 1424-1425, 1424*f*
irinotecan, 1425, 1426*f*
tamoxifen, 1426-1428, 1427*f*
drug target pharmacogenomics, 1418-1423
DNA repair genes in, 1418, 1419*f*, 1420*t*-1421*t*
epidermal growth factor receptor in, 1419-1423, 1422*f*
thymidylate synthase in, 1418-1419, 1421*f*, 1422*t*
drug-metabolizing enzyme pharmacogenomics, 1408-1413, 1408*f*
phase I enzymes, 1408-1410, 1408*f*, 1409*t*-1410*t*
phase II enzymes, 1408*f*, 1410-1413, 1411*t*-1412*t*
drug-transporter pharmacogenomics, 1413-1418, 1414*f*
ABCB1 transporters, 1414, 1415*t*
ABCC1 and ABCC2 transporters, 1414-1416, 1415*t*
ABCG2 transporters, 1416
OATPs, 1416-1417, 1416*t*-1417*t*
Pharmacogenomics, personalized medicine and *(Continued)*
OATs, 1418
OCTs, 1417-1418
human leukocyte antigen pharmacogenomics, 1423-1424
in other diseases, 1428-1430
diabetes, 1428
epigenomics, 1429-1430, 1429*f*
human immunodeficiency virus, 1428-1429
osteoporosis, 1429
psychiatric and cognitive disorders, 1429
Pharmacokinetics, 339-341, 339*f*
liver, metabolism in, 341
volume of distribution, 340-341
Phase I enzymes, 1408-1410, 1408*f*, 1409*t*-1410*t*
Phase II enzymes, 1408*f*, 1410-1413, 1411*t*-1412*t*
Phase-contrast microscopy, 461, 461*f*
Phencyclidine, 337-338
Phenobarbital, 343-345, 344*f*, 345*t*
Phenotype
definition of, 1338
frequencies, genes and, 980
Phenylketonuria, 478
methods for, 478
Phenytoin (Dilantin), 345, 345*t*
Pheochromocytoma, 379-381, 380*b*, 380*t*-381*t*, 382*f*
additional follow-up testing of, 381, 382*f*
testing procedures of, 381
Phe-Psi residue, 279, 280*f*
Phi bodies, 627
Philadelphia (Ph') chromosome, 618, 1477
Ph-negative myeloproliferative neoplasms, 1478-1480, 1479*f*
Phoenix system, 1157
Phosphate, 432
calcium and, 92-93
Phosphatonins, 195
Phospholipase C, defects in activation of, and platelet signaling pathways, 825
Phospholipids, 231-232, 813, 814*t*, 815*f*
Phosphorescence, 42
Phosphorus, 190-191
Phosphorus homeostasis, 190-191
Photodetectors, 39-40
Photodiode arrays, 40, 40*f*
Photolithographic synthesis, 1330*f*
Photometers, 40
Photometric accuracy, 40
Photometric instruments, types of, 40-41
Photomultiplier tubes (PMTs), 39, 39*f*
Photosensitivity, neurovisceral symptoms plus, 604
Photovoltaic cell, 39
Physical agents
acquired, extrinsic hemolysis relating to, 594-595
aplastic anemia associated with, 570
Physician office laboratories. *see* Point-of-care testing (POCT), and physician office laboratories
Physician offices, in point-of-care testing program, 70
Physiologic factors
of precollection variables, 20-21
tests affected by diurnal variation, posture, and stress, 21*t*
Physiologic hemostasis, 795-800
clinical assays versus, 800
Physiologic protein assemblies, 796-797
Physiologic role
of calcitonin, 194
of vitamin D and metabolites, 194
Physiologic variables, of thyroid function, 377, 377*f*
Physiologic variation
in erythrocyte, 514-515, 515*f*, 515*t*
in leukocyte, 516, 517*t*
in platelet, 519
Physiology
of bio-intact PTH, 193
of calcitonin, 193-194
of calcium, 188-189
of magnesium, 191-192
of parathyroid hormone, 192

Physiology *(Continued)*
of parathyroid hormone-related peptide, 193
of phosphorus, 190-191
of vitamin D and metabolites, 194
Phytomenadione. *see* Vitamin K
PI3KCA, 1504
Pigment, in renal tubular epithelial cells, 463
Pigmented casts, 466-467
Pink stain, excessive, 522
Pink-top tubes, anticoagulants and additives, 24, 25*t*
Pinta, 1175
Pinworms
cellulose tape technique for, 1236
infection, 1263, 1264*f*
Piperazines, 337
Pipets, 56
Pituitary function, 362-370, 363*b*, 363*f*
growth hormone, 365-367, 366*f*
posterior pituitary hormones, 367-370
prolactin, 363-365, 364*b*
tumors, 362-363, 364*t*
Pituitary gland, 362
Placenta, 403
Plague, 152-153, 153*t*
as bioterrorism agent, 152*t*
Planar configuration, 279
Plasma, 737-738
donor of, 761
enzyme activities of, factors affecting, 270
enzyme levels of, 295-297
factors relating to, in erythrocyte sedimentation rate, 532
flow of, glomerular filtration rate (GFR), and filtration fraction (FF), 171-172
osmolality, measurement of, 165-166
hyperglycemia, serum Na^+ and, 165-166
specific gravity and, 166, 446
tonicity, 166
versus serum, 229-230
transfusion of, 743, 743*b*
volume of, erythrocyte and, measurement of, 601-602
Plasma aldosterone concentration, in potassium metabolism, 175
Plasma cell leukemia, 641, 641*f*
Plasma cell myeloma, 640-641, 640*b*, 641*f*
clinical variants of, 641
asymptomatic (smoldering) myeloma, 641
extraosseous plasmacytoma as, 641
plasma cell leukemia as, 641, 641*f*
solitary plasmacytoma of bone as, 641
Plasma cell neoplasms, 640-641, 640*b*, 676, 678*f*
Plasma corticotropin-releasing hormone, 389
Plasma homocysteine assay, 567
Plasma lipids, estimation of, 230-232
Plasma products, 761
Plasma proteins, 257-264, 257*t*
acute phase reactants and, 264
components of
major, 257-262
minor, 262-263
protease inhibitors in, 263-264
Plasma pyridoxal 5-phosphate (PLP), 420
Plasma renin activity, in potassium metabolism, 175
Plasma volume, 602, 602*t*
Plasmablastic lymphoma, 646
Plasmacytoma, extraosseous, 641
Plasmacytosis, 615-616, 616*b*
Plasmodium species, 1240-1248
Plasticware, for laboratory, 55-56
Platelet disorders
acquired, 826-829
acquired storage pool disease, 827-828
acute leukemias and myelodysplastic syndromes, 827
in antiplatelet antibodies and platelet function, 828
from drugs that inhibit platelet function, 828-829, 828*b*
dysproteinemias, 827
myeloproliferative neoplasms, 826-827
uremia, 827
of adhesion, 822-823
Platelet disorders *(Continued)*
of aggregation, 823
familial, with predisposition to acute myelogenous leukemia, 825
of granules, and secretion, 823-824
inherited, 821-826, 822*b*, 822*f*
evaluation of patients with suspected, 826
of procoagulant activities, 825
relative frequencies of, 826
of secretion and signaling pathways, 824-825
therapy of, 826
laboratory evaluation of, 814-816
flow cytometry used in, 816, 818*f*
initial, 814
studies of platelet function in, 814-816
of secretion and signaling pathways, 824-825
and arachidonic acid metabolism, abnormalities of, 825
defects in G-proteins and their activation in, 824-825
defects in phospholipase C activation, calcium mobilization, and protein phosphorylation in, 825
defects in receptors and, 824
and thromboxane synthesis, abnormalities of, 825
and von Willebrand disease, 812-833
inherited platelet defects, relative frequencies of, 826
laboratory evaluation of, 814-816
and normal platelet biology, 812-814
Platelet membrane glycoproteins, and phospholipids, 813, 814*t*, 815*f*
Platelet product requirements, 753
Platelet transfusions, 826
Plateletapheresis, therapeutic, 765-766
Plateletapheresis donor
concerns of, 754
selection of, 753-754, 753*t*
Platelet-derived growth factor, 1453
Platelet-derived growth factor receptor α *(PDGFRA)* gene, 1480-1481
Platelets, 472
activation and signaling events of, 813-814, 815*f*
activation mechanisms of, and platelets, in hemostasis, 813-814, 815*f*
aggregation of, and secretion studies, 816, 817*f*
apheresis, benefits of, 753, 753*b*
coagulant activity of, 814
concentrates of, 738
counts of, 516-519, 517*f*
calculation of, 518
diluent solution in, 517
falsely elevated counts, 518
falsely low counts, 518
hemocytometer method of, 517-518
procedure of, 517-518
sources of error, 518
specimen of, 517
dysfunction of, transcription factor mutations associated with, 825-826
endothelium and, 795-796
function of
and antiplatelet antibodies, 828
bleeding time measures of, 89
drugs that inhibit, 828-829, 828*b*
in hemostasis, platelet activation mechanisms and, 813-814, 815*f*
on peripheral blood smear examination, 531, 532*f*
physiologic variation in, 519
refractoriness, 740
reticulated, 518-519
selection of, 739-740
structure of, 812-813, 813*f*
transfusion of, 742-743, 743*b*
Plerixafor, 948-949
Plesiomonas, 1134
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1134
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1134
laboratory diagnosis of, 1134
Pleural fluid, 30, 498-502
chemical analysis of, 500-501
collection of, specimen, 498
Pleural fluid *(Continued)*
examination of
gross, 499, 499*t*
microbiological, 502
immunologic studies of, 501-502
microscopic examination of, 499-500
cell counts, 499
differential leukocyte count and cytology, 499-500, 500*b*, 500*f*
tests for, 498-499, 498*t*, 499*b*
transudates and exudates, 498, 498*b*
PML-RARA gene, 1468, 1469*f*
PML-RARα protein, 1468
PMTs. *see* Photomultiplier tubes (PMTs)
Pneumatic tube(s)
for automated delivery, 61
transport, of specimens, 16
Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia, 287
Pneumocystis pneumonia, 1228-1230
Pneumonic plague, 153
pO_2 gas-sensing electrode, 46
Point-of-care testing (POCT), 66, 68*t*
advantages and disadvantages of, 69, 69*b*
committee and management team, 70-71
selection of appropriate testing devices and method of, 71
selection of appropriate tests of, 71
definition of, 66
devices, 885-887, 886*t*
background of, 885
immunochromatographic devices, 885-886, 885*f*-886*f*
magnetic biosensor assay, 886-887
software features, 70*t*
examples of, 68*t*
interfaces in, 70*f*
laboratory design and service models, 5-6
and physician office laboratories, 66-72
compliance for, 68
connectivity and data management in, 69-70, 70*f*
laboratory directorship in, 67-68
regulatory requirements for, 66-67
program
implementation of, 70-71
maintenance of, 72
types of, 68-69
Poisoning, acute, toxins and, 355-360
Polarized microscopy, 461
Policies, on point-of-care testing program, 71
Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE), 255
Polyanion precipitation methods, 232
Polyarteritis nodosa, 1020-1021, 1020*f*-1021*f*
clinical laboratory testing of, 1021
definition and epidemiology of, 1020
diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1021
etiology and pathogenesis of, 1021
pathology of, 1020-1021, 1020*f*
Polychromatophilia, 523, 523*f*
Polyclonal antibodies, 863
Polyclonal hyperimmunoglobulinemias, 921*t*
Polyclonal immunoglobulins, 921
Polycythemia, 600-602, 600*b*
absolute, 601
erythrocyte and plasma volume, measurement of, 601-602
hemoglobins associated with, 586
relative, 601
Polycythemia vera, 601, 618-619, 1478-1480, 1479*f*
clinical features of, 618
laboratory features of, 618
blood in, 618
marrow in, 618, 619*f*
Polygenic diseases, with MHC associations, 979-980, 979*t*
ankylosing spondylitis, 979
celiac disease, 979
narcolepsy, 979
rheumatoid arthritis, 980
Type 1 diabetes, 980
Polygenic (nonfamilial) hypercholesterolemia, 237
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 503, 1316-1321, 1317*f*
digital, 1321
end-point quantitative, 1318-1319
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) *(Continued)*
for lymphoid clonality analysis, 1481-1484, 1483*t*
multiplex, 1317-1318, 1318*f*
nested, 1317
nucleic acid amplification technology and, 1316-1327
probe amplification methods in, 1324, 1325*f*
signal amplification methods in, 1324-1326, 1325*f*-1326*f*
target amplification methods in, 1316-1324, 1317*f*, 1322*f*-1323*f*
rapid-cycle, 1321
real-time, 1319-1321, 1319*f*-1320*f*
reverse-transcriptase, 1316-1317
Polymorphism
genetic, 980
HLA, identification techniques of, 965-968
sequence-specific conformational, 966
single nucleotide, 964
Polymorphism detection assays, for nucleic acid analysis, 1313, 1313*f*
Polymorphonuclear killing assays, 988
Polymyositis, 1055
dermatomyositis and, 1005-1007, 1006*t*
Polyspecific reagents, for antihuman globulin test, 717-718
Polyuria, 179-180
Pooled human γ-globulin, 927
Porphobilinogen tests, 457
Porphyria cutanea tarda (PCT), 604
Porphyrias, 602-605
analytic techniques of, 605
approach to, 602, 603*t*-604*t*
physiology of, 602, 603*f*
Porphyrins, 459-460
fluorescence screening procedure for, 460
methods of, 459-460
Positive cultures, detection and notification of, in blood specimen, 1287
Positivity criterion, 80-81, 81*t*
Postamplification room, 1364
Postanalytic processing, 61-62
Posterior pituitary hormones, 367-370
arginine vasopressin/antidiuretic hormone, 367-370
diabetes insipidus relating to, 368-370, 368*t*, 369*b*, 369*f*
oxytocin, 367
SIADH, 370, 370*b*, 370*t*, 371*f*
Posthepatic biliary obstruction, 304
Postinfectious glomerulonephritis, 1049
Postnatal cytogenetics, 1351-1352
Postnatal hematopoiesis, 542
Postsample filters, 38-39
Posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorders, 656, 656*f*
Postural proteinuria, 448
Posture
in blood sampling and storage, 229
as physiologic factor, 21
tests affected by, 21*t*
Potassium
collection-associated variables and, 22
disorders of, 174-178
hyperkalemia
causes and pathogenesis of, 176-177, 177*b*
differential diagnosis of, 177-178
hypokalemia
causes and pathogenesis of, 175-176, 175*b*
differential diagnosis of, 176
metabolism, abnormalities in, 175
plasma aldosterone concentration, 175
plasma renin activity, 175
renal excretion, control of, 174-175, 175*f*
transcellular flux, control of, 174, 174*f*
Potassium hydroxide (KOH), preparation of, 1206*b*
Potentiometry, 44-46
Power function graphs, in quality control, 119, 119*f*
Prader-Willi syndrome, 1357, 1388, 1388*f*
Prealbumin, 257-258
Preamplification rooms, 1364

Preanalysis, 20-32
  blood collection
    overview, 24-27
    techniques, 27-28
  errors, 21*t*
  precollection variables, 20-23
  specimen
    collection, 23-24
    processing, 31
    transport, 30-31
  urine and other body fluids, collection of, 28-30
Precentrifugation phase, of specimen processing, 31
Precipitation, 255-256
Precipitin and nephelometric immunoassays, 865-866
  background and principles of, 865-866
Precision, of analysis, 110-111
Precollection variables, 20-23
  common interferences, 21-22
  physiologic factors, 20-21
Precursor lymphoid neoplasms, 634-635
Prediction of T1DM, 1051-1052
Predictive genetic testing, 1382
Predictive value
  and accuracy, 78, 78*t*
  and prevalence of disease, 77-78, 77*t*-78*t*
Preeclampsia, 413-414, 595
Pregnancy. *see* Reproductive function, pregnancy and
Prekallikrein, 796, 807
Preleukemias, 622
Premature rupture of membranes, 414
Prenatal cytogenetics, 1350-1351, 1351*f*, 1351*t*
Prenatal testing, 1381
Prenatal/neonatal viral infection, 1076*t*
Prerenal disease, 92
Presample filters, 37
Presymptomatic DNA testing, 1380-1381
Preterm labor, 414
Pretransfusion testing, 740
Prevalence of disease, predictive value and, 77-78, 77*t*-78*t*
Primary amebic meningoencephalitis, 493
Primary amyloidosis, 641
Primary biliary cirrhosis, 1044-1045, 1046*f*
  antimitochondrial antibody for, 297
Primary cutaneous CD4-positive small-medium T cell lymphoma, 652
Primary cutaneous CD8-positive aggressive epidermotropic cytotoxic T cell lymphoma, 652
Primary cutaneous CD30-positive T cell lymphoproliferative disorder, 652, 652*f*
Primary cutaneous DLBCL, leg type, 645
Primary cutaneous γδ T cell lymphoma, 652
Primary DLBCL, of the CNS, 645
Primary effusion lymphoma, 646
Primary hyperaldosteronism, 397
  differentiating causes of, 397-398, 398*t*
Primary hyperparathyroidism (PHPT), 195-196, 199*t*
Primary lymphoid tissue, 554-556
Primary mediastinal (thymic) large B cell lymphoma, 646, 646*f*
Primary myelofibrosis, 619-620
  biology of, 619
  course of, 620
Primary osteoporosis, 202
Primary pulmonary infection, *Aspergillus* in, 1226
Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC), 1045-1046, 1047*f*
  ANCA, 297
Primidone (Mysoline), 345
Primitive peripheral neuroectodermal tumor, 1513
Prion, 750
Private insurance, 139
Probe, hybridization assays and, 1310-1311, 1310*f*
Probe amplification methods, 1324
Procainamide (Pronestyl), 342-343, 342*t*
Procedures, on point-of-care testing program, 71
Processing mode, test menu and, 14
Procollagen type I N-terminal and C-terminal peptides, 201
Productivity measures, 145-146, 146*t*
Proficiency testing (PT), 125-129
  materials, noncommutability of, 125, 126*f*
  programs for, accuracy-based, 127-129
  results of
    interpretation of, 126-127, 126*f*, 127*b*
    limitations in, 127
    reporting, 124*f*, 126
Progenitors, hematopoietic stem cells and, 540-541, 541*b*, 541*f*
Prognostic molecular markers, 1486-1487
Proinsulin, 206-207, 206*f*
Prolactin, 363-365, 364*b*
Prolaris, in prostate cancer, 1510
Proliferating cell nuclear antigen multiprotein complex, 997
Promonocyte, 623, 624*f*
Promoter hypermethylation, 1446
Promyelocytic hyperplasia, 608
Pronestyl. *see* Procainamide (Pronestyl)
Propagation, velocity of, 34, 34*b*
Propoxyphene (Darvon), 338
Propranolol, 343
proPSA, 1444
Prostacyclins, 799
Prostarix, 1447
Prostate cancer, 1510
  proteomic approach to, 1461
  serum markers for, 1442-1444
  urine markers for, 1447-1448
Prostate Health Index, 1444
Prosthetic groups, 269-270
Protease degradation, of unstable enzymes, 275
Protease inhibitors, 263-264
Protein(s), 486-490, 497, 500, 503, 505
  β-amyloid protein 42 and τ protein, 489
  anticarbamylated antibodies, 1005
  beta trace, 171
  C, 837
  c-myc, p53 and, 1457-1459
  C/protein S system, 798-799
  C-reactive, 249-250, 249*b*
  defects in phosphorylation of, and platelet signaling pathways, 825
  fatty acid-binding, 173-174
  markers of, 321, 1448
  myelin basic, 489
  nuclear matrix, 1459-1460
  P ribosomal, antibodies to, 996
  regulatory, cell-associated, 934
  RNA to, translation of, 1306
  S, 834, 837-838
  and salt concentrations, affecting enzyme activity, 274-275
  specific, 253-266
    abnormalities of, patterns of, 264-266, 265*f*-266*f*
    detection and quantitation of, 256-257
    plasma, 257-264, 257*t*
    separation of, techniques for, 254-256
    structure of, 253-254
  synthesis of, 293-295
  total, albumin and, 429-430
  urine in, 447-450
Protein 14-3-3, 489
Protein arrays, 1461
Protein C pathway, 834, 835*f*
Proteinuria
  Bence Jones, 449
  heavy, 448
  methods for, 449-450
  minimal, 449
  moderate, 448-449
  in older adults, 448
  overflow, 449
  postural, 448
  qualitative categories of, 449
    glomerular pattern, 449
    tubular pattern, 449
  quantification, 448-449
  screening for, 449*t*
    Bence Jones determination methods, 450
    microalbuminuria determination methods, 450
    quantitative protein determinations and confirmatory methods, 450
    reagent strip, 449-450
    sulfosalicylic acid method, 450
Proteomics, 1460-1463
Prothrombin (PT) and INR, liver function relating to, 294
Prothrombin g20210a, 838
Prothrombin time, 801, 802*f*, 842
Prototheca, 1230, 1230*f*
Provider-performed microscopy procedures (PPMP), 66-67, 67*b*
Pseudo-Cushing's syndrome, 394
Pseudocyanosis, 586
Pseudohyphae, 1199
Pseudohypoparathyroidism (PHP), 197-198
Pseudomonas, 1134-1135, 1135*f*
  antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1135
  clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1135
  laboratory diagnosis of, 1135, 1135*f*, 1135*t*
Pseudoneutropenia, 608
Pseudo-Pelger-Huët anomaly, 610
"Pseudophagocytosis", 531
Pseudoterranova spp., 1274
Psychiatric and cognitive disorders, pharmacogenomics in, 1429
Psychological manifestations, in mechanism of injury, 1276-1277
PT. *see* Proficiency testing (PT)
PTEN, 1504
  in prostate cancer, 1510
Pulmonary function, 987
Pulmonary histoplasmosis, chronic, 1215
Pulmonary infection
  acute, *Histoplasma* in, 1215
  primary, *Aspergillus* in, 1226
Pulmonary neoplasms, HER2/*neu* receptor and, 1455
Pure erythroid leukemia, 631
Pure red cell aplasia, 571-572
Purification, of water, 54
Pus, 322
Pustules, specimens of, 1297
Pyogenic bacteria, and neutrophilia, 607
Pyridinium cross-links, 200
Pyridinoline. *see* Pyridinium cross-links
Pyridoxine (vitamin B_6), 420
Pyrimidine-5'-nucleotidase deficiency, 594
Pyruvate kinase (PK) deficiency, 593-594

Q

Q Fever, 1109-1110
QC. *see* Quality control (QC)
Quaalude. *see* Methaqualone (Quaalude)
Quadrupole mass spectrometer, 50
Quality assurance
  program, 72
  quality improvement and safety, for medical parasitology, 1240
  in spectrophotometry, 40
  standards of, for DNA analysis, 1405
  of testing process, 1369-1370
Quality control (QC), 112-129
  analytic bias and imprecision, 112-113, 113*f*
  calibration issues in, 113-114, 113*f*
  calibrator, new lot of, verifying method performance following, 123
  data, reviewing, 121
  materials for
    limitations of, 115
    selection of, 115
  measurement problem with, corrective action for, 120-121, 121*f*, 121*t*
  in measurement procedure, for intended medical use, 118-119, 118*f*, 118*t*-119*t*
  for molecular diagnostics laboratory equipment, 1375-1376
  plan, individualized, 116
  procedures for, 114-115, 115*f*
    implementing, 115-121
    using patient data in, 123-125
  proficiency testing, 125-129
  and quality assurance, of cellular immune system, 910-911
  quality management and, 128*t*, 129
  results of, rules to evaluate, 119-120, 119*f*-120*f*, 120*t*
  samples of
    event-based, 116
    frequency to, 115-116
Quality control (QC) *(Continued)*
    harm to a patient, risk of, 116
    stability of, 116
  statistical, 124-125, 125*f*
  target value and standard deviation, establishing, 116-117, 117*t*, 118*f*
  of testing process, 1369-1376
  verifying, evaluation parameters following a reagent lot change, 122-123, 122*f*-123*f*
Quality management (QM)
  quality control and, 128*t*, 129
  traditional versus TQM thinking, 4*t*
Quality System Essentials, quality systems management and, 5, 5*b*
Quality systems management, clinical laboratory and, 3-5
Quantification, of DNA, 1398
Quantile normalization, 1333
Quantitative assay
  of glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, 593
  of pyruvate kinase deficiency, 594
Quantitative counts, 461
Quantitative flow cytometry, 900
Quantitative platelet disorders, 816-821
Quantitative white blood cell abnormalities, 88-89
Quaternary structure, 254
Quebec platelet syndrome, 824
Quinidine, 343

R

Radial partition immunofluorometric assay, 879
Radiant energy sources, 36-37
Radiation, scattering of, 34-35
Radioallergosorbent test (RAST), 1065
Radiofrequency conductivity, 519
Radio-frequency identification, 62
Radiographic media (meglumine diatrizoate), 471, 472*f*
Radioimmunoassay, 870-872
  assay principles and methods, 870-872, 871*f*-872*f*
  background, 870, 870*f*, 870*t*
Radiologic examination, of urine, 478
Radiologic imaging, 986-987
Raf, 1457
Raman scattering, 35
Random access analyzer, 60
Rapamycin (Sirolimus), 351
RAPH blood group system, 712
  biochemistry of, 712
  biological role of, 712
  molecular biology of, 712
  null phenotypes of, 712
Rapid-cycle polymerase chain reaction, 1321
RARA gene, 1468
Rare calculi, 477
RAS mutations, 1499
ras-p21 protein, 1456-1457
Rayleigh scattering, 35
RBC sensitization, 715
RBM15-MKL1 fusion transcript, 1471
RDW. *see* Red cell distribution width (RDW)
Reaction coordinate, 269*f*
Reaction cuvette, 884
Reaction specificity, 268
Reading frame, of protein, 1306
Reagent handling, in automated chemistry analyzer, 62
Reagent lot change, verifying quality control evaluation parameters following, 122-123, 122*f*-123*f*
Reagent red blood cells, 722, 722*f*
Reagent strip, 446-447, 449-451, 453, 455-458
Reagents, 660-661, 661*f*-662*f*
  enzymes as, for analyte concentrations, 432-439
Real-time polymerase chain reaction, 1319-1321, 1319*f*-1320*f*
Receiver operator characteristic curves, 80, 80*f*
Receptor tyrosine kinase genes, 1514
Recessive allele, definition of, 1338
Recipient sample identification, 719-720

Recombinant technology, antibody production by, 863
Recombination, definition of, 1338
Recommended dietary allowance (RDA), 416, 422
Record and specimen retention, guidelines for, 9*t*
Red blood cells, 737
  frozen, 738
  selection of, 739
  typing of, with lectin reagents, 730, 730*t*
Red cell antigens, destruction of, 729, 729*t*
Red cell autoantibody, stimulation of production of, 734
  drug-dependent autoantibodies, 734
  drug-independent autoantibodies in, 734
  drug-induced immune hemolytic anemia (DIIHA), 734
Red cell distribution width (RDW), 86
Red cell exchange, 767-768
Red cell folate, serum and, 567, 567*t*
Red cell grouping, 721
Red cell membrane, adsorption of drug to, 598
Red cell transfusion, 741-742, 741*b*
Red-top tube, anticoagulants and, 25, 25*t*
Reference electrodes, 44
Reference interval(s)
  for calcitonin, 194
  for calcium, 190
  definition of, 74
  for magnesium, 192
  for parathyroid hormone, 193
  for parathyroid hormone-related peptide, 193
  for phosphatonins, 195
  for phosphorus, 191
  for vitamin D and metabolites, 195
Reference method, 522
Reference ranges, 74-75, 110
  determination of, 75
  factors that influence, 75
  laboratory results in, variability of, 75
Reflectometers, 41-42, 42*f*
Reflectometry, 41-42
Refractive index, 256
Refractometer, 446
  procedure of, 446
Refractometry, 43
Refractoriness, of platelets, 740
Refractory anemia(s), 568, 572, 625
  with excess blasts, 625
  with ring sideroblasts, 572, 625
  with ring sideroblasts associated with marked thrombocytosis, 624-625
Refractory cytopenia
  with multilineage dysplasia, 625
  with unilineage dysplasia, 625
Refractory neutropenia, 625
Refractory thrombocytopenia, 625
Regulation
  accreditation, and legislation, 6-7
  and regulatory agencies, for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1362-1363
Regulatory agencies, for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1362-1363
Regulatory requirements, for point-of-care testing and physician office laboratories, 66-67
Reimbursement
  coding systems for, 141-144
    accurate coding, 142, 143*t*
  Medicare, 142-144, 144*t*
  for molecular diagnostics tests, 1366-1367, 1367*t*
  payers and, 139-141
Relapsing fever, 1183-1184, 1184*f*
Relative polycythemia, 601
Relative quantity value, 1321
Releasing results, information flow for, 134
Renal acidosis, 182-183
Renal and postrenal disease, 92
Renal cell carcinoma, 1507-1508
Renal diseases, 939
Renal disorders, 601
Renal excretion, of potassium, control of, 174-175, 175*f*
Renal failure
  anemia of, 88
  index of, 172
Renal function, measurement of, 167-172
  clearance, concept of, 167-168
    conversion of clearance in L/week to mL/min, 168
    formulas for the calculation of, 168
  creatinine as, 168-170
  fractional excretion (FE), 172
  fractional reabsorption (FR), 172
  free water clearance and negative free water clearance, 172
  glomerular filtration rate (GFR), 168-171
    renal plasma flow (RPF), and filtration fraction (FF), 171-172
  renal failure index (RFI), 172
  urea as, 170
  urea clearance and urea/creatinine ratio in serum, 171
Renal function, water, electrolytes, and acid-base balance, evaluation of, 162-187
  body fluid, volume and osmolality of, 163-166, 164*b*
    composition of, 164-165, 164*t*
    measurement of, 163
    plasma, measurement of, 165-166
  extracellular volume, regulation of, 166-167, 167*f*
    water and electrolyte balance, nonrenal control of, 167
Renal osteodystrophy, 203, 203*f*
  osteomalacia in, 203*f*
  secondary hyperparathyroidism and, 196-197, 197*f*
Renal parenchymal disease, 445
Renal plasma flow, glomerular filtration rate, filtration fraction and, 171-172
Renal salt/water absorption, defective, 445
Renal transplantation, 971
  conditioning therapy for, and therapeutic plasma exchange, 777
Renal tubular epithelial cells, 463, 463*f*
  casts, 465, 466*f*
  lipids in, 463, 463*f*-464*f*
  pigment in, 463
Renin
  hypertension and, 396-398, 396*b*-397*b*
  measurements of, 398-399
Renin-aldosterone axis, 395-399, 395*f*-396*f*
  aldosterone measurements, 398, 398*t*
  renin, 396-399, 396*b*-397*b*
Renin-angiotensin system, 284*f*
Reporting/flagging, of instrument technology, 520, 520*f*, 520*t*
Reporting results, information flow for, 134
Reproductive function, pregnancy and, 400-415
  aplastic anemia and, 571
  laboratory evaluation of, 404-415, 404*t*, 409*f*, 409*t*
    assisted reproductive technology, 408
    Down syndrome, 411-412, 411*f*
    erythroblastosis fetalis, 412-413, 412*f*
    for female, 406-408, 407*f*
    fetal lung maturity, 413
    gestational diabetes, 413
    hCG and early pregnancy, 408-410
    with hematologic and coagulation disorders, 415
    with infection, 414-415
    intrapartum assessment, of fetal status, 414
    for male, 404-406
    neural tube defects, 410-411, 411*f*
    preeclampsia, 413-414
    premature rupture of membranes, 414
    preterm labor, 414
  normal physiology of, 400-404
    female reproduction, regulation of, 402-403, 402*f*-403*f*
    male reproduction, regulation of, 402, 402*f*
    pregnancy, 403-404, 403*f*
    sex steroids, 400-402, 401*f*
Reproductive structures, of mycotic diseases, 1200-1204, 1202*f*-1204*f*, 1203*t*
Reproductive tissue, 786-787
Request for proposal (RFP), for laboratory automation, 64, 65*t*
Resistance phenotypes, antibiotic selection and, 1161-1168
Respiratory acidosis, 185-186, 185*b*
Respiratory alkalosis, 186, 186*b*
Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), 1073*t*
  bronchiolitis and, 1081, 1082*f*
Respiratory tract
  cryptococcal infection of, 1212
  specimens from, 1290-1293
Respiratory viruses, 1080*f*
RET/PTC gene rearrangement, 1499
Reticulated platelets, 518-519
Reticulocyte count, 514, 547, 547*t*
  principle of, 514
    controls, 514
    interpretation, 514
    procedure, 514
    reagent, 514
    reference values, 514
    sources of variation, 514
Reticulocyte hemoglobin content, 562
Reticulocyte production index
  greater than two, 600
  less than two, 600
Retinoblastoma, 1389-1390
Retinol. *see* Vitamin A
Retrovirus-associated diseases and conditions, 613
Return on investment (ROI), 147
Revenue, 139, 141*t*
Reverse line-blot hybridization, 1332
Reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction, 1316-1317
  analysis, gene fusion concept and basis for, 1466-1467, 1467*t*
Reverse triiodothyronine, 375
RH and RHAG blood group systems, 690-695
  biochemistry of, 691-693, 693*f*
  biological role of, 695
  molecular biology of, 693, 694*f*
  theories of Rh inheritance and classification system, 691, 691*t*-692*t*
Rh antibodies, 695
Rh typing, in compatibility testing, 722
  of donors, 722
  of recipients, 722
Rhabdoid tumor, 1496
Rhabdomyolysis, 288
Rhabdomyosarcoma (RMS), 1514
RHAG alloantigens, 694
Rheumatoid arthritis, 980, 1003-1005, 1004*f*
Rheumatoid factor, 1003-1004
Rheumatoid vasculitis, 1030-1031
  definition and epidemiology of, 1030
  diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1030-1031
  etiology and pathogenesis of, 1030
  pathology of, 1030
Rheumatologic disease, 938
Rhinoviruses (HRV), 1073*t*, 1083
Rh_{mod} phenotype, 695
Rh-negative phenotype, and D-antigen, 693
Rh_{null} phenotype, 694-695
Riboflavin (vitamin B_2), 420
Ribonuclease, 269
Ribonucleic acid (RNA), 1304-1305
  DNA to, transcription of, 1306
  to protein, translation of, 1306
  small, gene regulation and, 1307, 1307*f*
Rickets, 202-203
Rickettsia
  as agents of bioterrorism, 1106
  organisms of, 1103-1107
Rickettsial infections, 1103-1111, 1104*t*
  Rickettsia, organisms of, 1103-1107, 1104*t*
Rickettsialpox, 1105
Ring chromosome, 1349
Ring sideroblasts
  with refractory anemia, 625
  with refractory anemia, marked thrombocytosis associated with, 624-625
Risk factors, estimating, in cholesterol testing, 237
Ristocetin cofactor assay, 830
Rivaroxaban, 851
RNA polymerases, antibodies to, 1001
Robertsonian translocations, 1348-1349, 1350*f*
Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1103-1105
"Rogue testing", 68
ROI. *see* Return on investment (ROI)
Romanowsky's stain, 534
Rosette test, 726
Rouleaux formation, 526, 526*f*
Round cell liposarcoma, 1514
RPN1-EVI1 gene transcript, 1471
Rubella, 1086*t*, 1087, 1091
RUNX1/CBFA2, mutations in, 825
RUNX1 gene, 1470
RUNX1-RUNX1T1 fusion, 1470, 1470*f*
  in childhood leukemias, 1476
RUNX1T1 gene, 1470

S

Safety
  in clinical laboratory, 7-10
  issues, 150, 150*b*
Salary costs, 138
Saline, as replacement fluid, 771
Saliva, 507
Salivary cortisol, 390-391
Salt, and protein concentrations, affecting enzyme activity, 274-275
Sample collection and labeling, information flow for, 134
Sample containers (cuvets), 39
Sample mapping, data collection techniques and, 11-12, 13*f*
Sample transfer, between tubes, 25
Samples and specimen collection, for DNA analysis, 1397-1398
Sampling
  in automated chemistry analyzer, 62
  and storage, of blood, 229-230
Saphenous vein allografts, 786
Sarcocystis spp., 1261
Sarcoma(s), 1513-1515
  dendritic cell
    follicular, 658
    interdigitating, 658
    not otherwise specified, 658
  Ewing's sarcoma, 1513
  with fusion genes, 1513-1515
  myeloid, 632-633, 633*f*
  with oncogenic mutations, 1515
  with variable complex genetic alterations with no specific pattern, 1515
  with variable other specific pattern, 1515
Saturation, initial rate at, 272
SC. *see* Secretory component (SC)
Scattering, of radiation, 34-35
Schistosoma haematobium, 1271, 1271*f*
Schistosoma intercalatum, 1271
Schistosoma japonicum, 1271, 1271*f*
Schistosoma mansoni, 1271, 1271*f*
Schistosoma mekongi, 1271
Schistosoma spp., 1270-1271
Schistosomiasis, 1270-1271
Schwannomatosis, 1517
Scianna antibodies, 705
  biological role of, 705
Scianna blood group system, 705, 705*t*
  biochemistry of, 705
  molecular biology f, 705
Scintillation counter, 51-52
Sclerotic bodies, 1199
Scorpion probes, 1320
Scorpions, 1279, 1279*f*
Scott syndrome, 825
Scrub typhus, *Orientia tsutsugamushi* as cause of, 1107
SD. *see* Standard deviation (SD)
SDD. *see* Susceptible dose dependent (SDD)
SDI. *see* Standard deviation index (SDI)
Secondary hyperparathyroidism, 196-197, 199*t*
Secondary lymphoid tissue, 556
Secondary osteoporosis, 202
Secondary (drug- or toxin-induced) sideroblastic anemia, 572
Secondary structure, 254
Secretion
  of parathyroid hormone, 192
  studies of, and platelet aggregation, 816, 817*f*
Secretory component (SC), 918-920
Security, networks and, concepts and technology for, 131, 131*f*, 131*t*
Selected engineered therapeutic agents, 946*t*-947*t*

Selectins, 952
Selective chemical precipitation, 233
Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 353-354
  and platelet function, 828
Selenium (Se), 426
SEM. *see* Structural equation modeling (SEM)
Semen analysis, male reproduction relating to, 404-405
  examination in, 405
  sample collection in, 404-405
Semiconservative replication, 1305-1306
Seminiferous tubules, of testis, 402
Sensitive immunoassay, using specimen-pretreatment methods, 882-883
  background of, 882
  highly sensitive, for viral antigen using, 882-883, 882*f*
Sensitivity
  high, versus high specificity, need for, 77
  and specificity, of diagnostic accuracy, 75-77, 77*t*
Septate, 1199
Sequence-specific conformational polymorphism or heteroduplex analysis, 966
Sequence-specific oligonucleotide hybridization, 966, 966*f*
Sequence-specific priming, 966
Sequencing arrays, 1331
Serologic and cellular specificities, 964-965
Serologic detection, of class I and class II molecules, 967
Serologic diagnosis, 1079
  for medical parasitology, 1239, 1239*t*
Serologic findings, in immunocompromised patients, 614
Serologic identification, 1209
Serologic markers, for cancer diagnosis and management, 1432-1449
  circulating nucleic acids, in peripheral blood, 1445-1447
    cell DNA testing for cancer, using fluorescence in situ hybridization, 1447
    cell-free nucleic acid testing in cancer, 1445
    circulating microRNA, 1446
    gene arrays detecting oncoprotein abnormalities, 1446
    gene mutations, 1446
    microsatellite alterations, 1446
    promoter hypermethylation, 1446
  circulating tumor cells, in peripheral blood, 1444-1445
  clinical applications of, 1435-1436
    diagnosis, 1435
    prognosis: recurrence, metastasis and survival, 1435, 1435*f*
    screening, 1435
    treatment response, monitoring of, 1436
  conclusions in, 1448
  as effective tool, 1433, 1433*f*
  fecal occult blood testing and mutant protein markers, in stool, 1448
  functional classification of, 1433-1435
    adhesion molecules and metastasis as, 1434
    monoclonal-antibody-defined tumor markers, 1434, 1436*t*
    oncoproteins, for cell proliferation, 1434
    other, 1434-1435
    tumor suppressors/cell differentiation, 1434
  individual, 1438-1444
    angiogenic factors in, 1438
    CA 15-3 and CA 27.29, 1440
    CA 19-9, CA 50 and CA 19-5, 1440-1441
    CA 72-4, 1441
    CA 125, 1441
    calcitonin in, 1441
    carcinoembryonic antigen in, 1440
    chromogranin A in, 1441
    cytokeratin 19 fragment in, 1441
    α-fetoprotein in, 1438
Serologic markers, for cancer diagnosis and management *(Continued)*
    HER2/*neu* (c-*erb*B-2) oncoprotein in, 1442
    human chorionic gonadotropin in, 1441-1442
    β_2-microglobulin in, 1438-1439
    p53 in, 1442
    parathyroid hormone-related peptide in, 1442
    serum free light chain determinations in, 1439-1440
    serum markers, for prostate cancer in, 1442-1444
  recommendations for ordering of, 1436-1438, 1436*t*-1439*t*
Serologic tests
  for *Borrelia*, 1182-1183, 1182*f*
  for *Treponema*, 1176, 1176*f*, 1176*t*
Serous carcinoma, histologic subtypes of, 1512
Serous fat atrophy, 608
Serrated polyposis syndrome, 1506
Serum
  body fluids and, total enzyme concentrations in, 271-276
  elevated levels of, for bilirubin, 291
  for hepatitis, 298
  HLA-specific antibody detection in recipient, 970
  immunoglobulin E (IgE), 1064*t*
  Na^+, effect of hyperglycemia on, 165-166
  oligoclonal immunoglobulin bands in, 926-927, 928*f*
  plasma versus, 229-230
  red cell folate and, 567, 567*t*
  screening of, 970
  total, measurement of, 1064-1065
  urea clearance and urea/creatinine ratio in, 171
  and urine, drug detection in, 324-330
Serum analytes, 302-303
Serum anion gap (AG), 184-185, 184*f*, 185*b*
Serum autoantibody levels in, interpretation of, 1035-1036
Serum bactericidal titer, 1169-1170
Serum chemistry, 477
Serum cobalamin assay, 565
Serum concentration, lysis of erythrocytes and, 22*t*
Serum cortisol measurements, 389-390
Serum ferritin levels, 86
Serum free light chain determinations, 1439-1440
Serum grouping, 721
Serum immunoglobulin levels, 920-921
Serum iron
  assays for, 359
  use of, 86
Serum kappa light chains, 1440
Serum markers, for prostate cancer, 1442-1444
Serum prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 1442-1444, 1444*f*
Serum protein
  α-1-antitrypsin, 294
  ceruloplasmin, 294
  DCP, 294-295
  determining levels of, 293
  electrophoresis, 922*f*
Serum transferrin receptor-to-serum ferritin ratio, 562
Serum transferrin receptors, 562
Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (SARS-CoV), 1083
Severe allergic (anaphylactic) reactions, to transfusion, 745
Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), 860
Severe medical illnesses, hypoglycemia and, 215
Sex chromosome abnormalities, 1356, 1356*f*
Sex chromosome aneuploidies, 1354-1356, 1356*t*
Sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG), 400
Sex steroids, 400-402, 401*f*
Sézary syndrome, mycosis fungoides and, 651, 651*f*-652*f*
Shell vial culture, 1075*t*
Shewhart plot. *see* Levey-Jennings plot
Shiga toxin-related hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS), 832-833, 833*t*
Short tandem repeats, 1398-1400, 1399*f*-1401*f*
SIADH. *see* Syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIADH) secretion
Sick building syndrome, 1224
Sickle cell anemia, 767-768, 767*b*
  hemoglobinopathies and, 1384
Sickle cell disease (Hb SS), 582-584
  complications of, 582-583
  diagnosis of, 584, 584*f*
Sickle cell trait (Hb AS), 581-582
Sickle solubility test, 578
Sickling disorders, 581-585
Sickling test-metabisulfite slide test, 578, 584*f*
Sideroblastic anemia, 572
Siderophilin. *see* Transferrin
Sigma metric, in measurement procedure, 118
Signal amplification methods, 1324-1326
Signal processors, and readout, in spectrophotometer, 40
Signal recognition particle, 1007
Signal transduction
  following antigen-specific stimulation, 892
  pathways, 1451, 1451*f*, 1452*t*
  recognition, activation, and, of T cell, 892, 893*f*
Significance level, 103
Silent carrier α-thalassemia, 591
Simultaneous multiple immunoassays, 887-888
  flow cytometric, 887-888
  microchannel assay, using compact discs, 888
  multianalyte microarray immunoassay, 887, 887*f*
Single molecule detection, 888
  background of, 888
  ELISA, 888
  single-fluorescent immunoassay, 888
Single nucleotide polymorphism, 964
Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) arrays, 1490
Single-tube mixers, 57
Single-chain urokinase plasminogen activator (ScuPA), 797
Single-fluorescent immunoassay, 888
Single-molecule ELISA, 888
Sinus infection, *Aspergillus* in, 1226
Sirolimus. *see* Rapamycin (Sirolimus)
Sitosterolemia, 240
Six Sigma
  optimizing performance and, 18
  quality systems management and, 4, 5*t*
Size-exclusion chromatography, 49
Sjögren's syndrome (SS), 998-999, 999*b*, 999*t*, 1000*f*
Skin
  banking of, 785
  lesions of, *Cryptococcus* in, 1212
  puncture technique, 28*b*
  subcutaneous lesions and, specimens of, 1297-1298
Skin testing
  anergy, 903*b*
  confirming stage, 903
Slides, preparation of, 1233-1234
SMAD proteins, 1505
SMAD2 gene, 1505
SMAD4 gene, 1505
Small RNA, gene regulation and, 1307, 1307*f*
Small ubiquitin-like modifier activating enzyme (SAE), 1007
Small vessel vasculitis, 1018*f*, 1022-1031, 1022*t*, 1026*t*
  ANCA-associated small vessel vasculitis, 1022-1026, 1023*f*, 1025*f*
  anti-glomerular basement membrane disease, 1026-1027, 1027*f*
  cryoglobulinemic, 1027-1028, 1028*f*
  hypocomplementemic urticarial, 1029-1030
  IGA (Henoch-Schönlein purpura), 1028-1029, 1029*f*
  rheumatoid, 1030-1031
Smallpox, 155-156, 156*t*
  as bioterrorism agent, 152*t*
Smell brain, 330
Snorting, 334
Software, hardware and, concepts and technology for, 130-131
Software systems, for DNA analysis, 1405
Solid organ rejection, as indication for extracorporeal photopheresis, 768-769
Solid-phase adherence tests, 723, 723*f*
Solid-pseudopapillary neoplasms, 1507
Solid-support hybridization, 1312
Solid tumors, molecular genetic pathology of, 1492-1519, 1494*t*-1496*t*
  cancers, of unknown origin, 1517-1518
  clinical application of next-generation sequencing, 1518-1519, 1518*f*
  by major organ, 1493-1513
    bladder cancer, 1509-1510
    brain tumor, 1493-1496
    breast cancer, 1496-1499
    cervical cancer, 1510-1511, 1511*t*
    colorectal cancer, 1504-1506
    endometrial cancer, 1511
    gastric cancer, 1503
    hepatocellular carcinoma, 1501-1503
    kidney tumor, 1507-1509
    lung cancer, 1500-1501, 1501*f*
    melanoma, 1512-1513
    ovarian cancer, 1511-1512
    pancreatic cancer, 1506-1507
    prostate cancer, 1510
    thyroid cancer, 1499-1500
  miRNA in cancer, 1518
  multiple endocrine neoplasia, 1515-1517
  sarcoma, 1513-1515
    Ewing's sarcoma, 1513
    with fusion genes, 1513-1515
    with oncogenic mutations, 1515
    with variable complex genetic alterations with no specific pattern, 1515
    with variable other specific pattern, 1515
Solitary plasmacytoma of bone, 641
Solute carrier transporters, 1416-1418
Solvent exclusion effect, 23
Somatostatin, 207-208
Somatostatinoma, 320
Southeast Asian ovalocytosis, 576
Southern blot hybridization, 1481-1484, 1483*t*
Southern hybridizations, 1312
Space-occupying lesions, 96, 304
"Spacer oligonucleotide typing", 1332
Sparganosis, 1275, 1275*f*
Special urine collection techniques, 29
Specific granule deficiency (SGD), 610
Specific gravity
  osmolality and, 445-446
    methods of, 446
  plasma osmolality and, 166
Specificity, high, versus high sensitivity, need for, 77
Specimen(s)
  additional analysis required of, 74
  alternative, 507-508
  chromosome, 1338-1339
  collection of, 23-24, 1076*t*, 1078, 1083
    for DNA analysis, 1397-1398
    and opening pressure, for CSF, 481-482
    for pleural fluid, 498
    for synovial fluid, 494
    and transport of, for mycotic diseases, 1204-1205, 1205*t*
  considerations, for glucose measurements, 208
  handling of, and sample preparation, 663
  inspection of, automated, 62
  matrix effects, 23
  for mycobacterial infection diagnosis, 1191, 1192*f*, 1192*t*
  nonstandard, test billing for, 508
  problem, flags for, 74
  processing of, 31, 1114-1115
    automated, 61
    culture techniques of, 1115, 1116*t*
    Gram stain of, 1114-1115, 1115*f*
  rejection, reasons for, 24*b*
  transport, 30-31

Specimen(s) *(Continued)*
urine, evaluation of, 443
urogenital, for medical parasitology, 1237
Specimen, for diagnosis of infectious diseases, collection and handling of, 1284-1298
from blood, 1285-1287
from body fluids, 1288-1289
from eye, 1290
conjunctival, 1290
corneal, 1290
from feces, 1295-1297
general principles of, 1284-1285
on collection, 1284-1285
on referral testing, 1285
on standard precautions, 1285
on timing, 1284
on transport, 1285
on unacceptable specimens, 1285
on volume, 1284
from genital tract, 1294-1295
from respiratory tract, 1290-1293
bronchoscopy, 1292-1293, 1293*f*
nasopharyngeal, 1290-1291
sputum and tracheal aspirates, 1291-1292, 1292*f*
throat, 1291
from skin and subcutaneous lesions, 1297-1298
cutaneous ulcers, 1297-1298
vesicles, bullae, pustules, 1297
from tissues, 1289-1290
urinary tract, 1293-1294
collection and transport for, 1293
processing for, 1293-1294, 1294*f*
from wound infections and abscesses, 1298
Spectral bandwidth, 37
Spectrometer, 40
Spectrophotofluorometers, components of, 42-43
Spectrophotometer, components of, 36-40, 36*f*
filters in, 37-39, 37*f*
photodetectors in, 39-40
radiant energy sources of, 36-37
sample containers (cuvets) in, 39
signal processors and readout in, 40
wavelength selectors in, 37
Spectrophotometric assays, 273
Spectrophotometric determinations, 429-432
analytes, quantitation of, 429-432
Beer's Law, 429
end-point versus rate method, 429
interferences, 429
Spectrophotometric identification, of hemoglobins, 512
Spectrophotometry, 33-41, 34*f*
Beer-Lambert law in, 35-36, 36*b*, 36*f*
energy of EMR, 34, 35*b*, 35*f*
quality assurance in, 40
radiation, scattering of, 34-35
velocity, of propagation, 34, 34*b*
Spectroscope, 40
Spherocytic hereditary elliptocytosis, 576
Spherule, 1199
Spiders, 1279-1280
Spinal muscular atrophy, 1392
Spinner method, of blood film, 521
Spinocerebellar ataxias, 1386
Spirochetal meningitis, 492
Spirochete infections, 1171-1186
Borrelia, 1179-1184
Leptospira, 1178
spirochetosis, agents of, 1184-1185
Treponema, 1171-1178
Spirochetosis, agents of, 1184-1185
epidemiology and clinical manifestations of, 1185
laboratory diagnosis of, 1185
pathology and pathogenesis of, 1185, 1185*f*
treatment of, 1185
Spirometra species, 1275, 1275*f*
Splenic B cell lymphoma/leukemia, unclassifiable, 639
splenic diffuse red pulp small B-cell lymphoma, 639, 639*f*
Splenic diffuse red pulp small B-cell lymphoma, 639, 639*f*
Splenic marginal zone lymphoma, 637-638, 638*f*
Sporotrichosis, pathology of, 1219
SPSS. *see* Statistical Package for the Social Sciences (SPSS)
Sputum aspirates, 1291-1292, 1292*f*
Squamous cell carcinomas, of head and neck, 1461
Squamous epithelial cells, 462, 462*f*
Staining, 1234
for blood film examination, 521-522
of chromosomes, 1340, 1340*f*-1341*f*
cover glass method, 521
marrow preparations, 534-536
problems, 522
procedure of, 522
wedge method, 521
Stains
of blood, 521-522
Gram, specimen processing relating to, 1114-1115, 1115*f*
microbial, 1191-1193, 1192*f*-1193*f*, 1193*t*
Romanowsky's, 534
Wright's, 521-522
Standard deviation (SD), 103
in quality control, 112-113, 122-123
Standard deviation index (SDI), 103-104
Standard error
of the mean, 104-105
of regression, 108
Standardization, optimizing performance and, 18
Standing plasma test, 234
Staphylococcus, 1116-1119, 1117*f*, 1117*t*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1118-1119
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1117-1118
laboratory diagnosis of, 1118
States, requiring laboratory personnel licensure, 7*b*
StatisPro™, 109, 109*f*
Statistical analysis, resources for, 111
Statistical Package for the Social Sciences (SPSS), 111
Statistical power, 103
Statistical quality control, 114, 124-125, 125*f*
Steatorrhea, tests for, 316
Stem cells, 540-542
hematopoietic, and progenitors, 540-541, 541*b*, 541*f*
hematopoietic growth factors, 541-542
Stenotrophomonas maltophilia, 1136
Steroidal cell autoantibodies (SCA), 1053*f*
Stiff-Person syndrome, 1054-1055
Stone analysis, 478
Stone formers, laboratory tests for, 477-478
Stool
collection of, for gastrointestinal and pancreatic disorders, 321-322
fecal occult blood testing and mutant protein markers in, 1448
Storage, of blood, 230
Strand-displacement amplification (SDA), 1322-1323, 1323*f*
Strategic planning, in clinical laboratory, 3
Stray light, 40
Strength, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats (SWOT) analysis, 3
for new hospital outreach program, 3*b*
Streptobacillus, 1147, 1147*f*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1147
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1147
laboratory diagnosis of, 1147
prevention and control of, 1147
Streptococcus and *enterococcus*, 1119-1123, 1119*f*, 1119*t*
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1122-1123
clinical manifestations of, 1120-1121
laboratory diagnosis of, 1121-1122, 1121*f*-1122*f*, 1122*t*
Stress
as physiologic factor, 21
tests affected by, 21*t*
Stroke, 252
Strongyloides stercoralis, 1266, 1266*f*
Strongyloidiasis, 1266
Structural chromosome abnormalities, 1345-1349, 1347*f*-1350*f*
Structural chromosome anomalies, 1356
Structural equation modeling (SEM), 110
Structural hemoglobin variants, 578-579, 580*t*, 582*t*
Structure
of chromosomes, 1338, 1339*f*
of proteins, 253-254
Student t-test, 103, 105-107, 107*f*
sample size, 107
significance, 105-107
Subcutaneous lesions, specimens of, 1297-1298
Subcutaneous panniculitis-like T cell lymphoma, 650-651, 651*f*
Substrate, 267
Substrate-labeled fluorescent immunoassay, 875, 876*f*
Succinate dehydrogenase B (SDHB) mutation-associated renal cell carcinoma, 1508-1509
Sucking lice, 1277-1278, 1277*f*
Sucrose, in urine, 451-452
Sucrose hemolysis tests, 576
Sugars, tests for, 452
Sulfhemoglobin (SHb), 511, 511*f*
Sulfonamide (sulfadiazine) crystals, 471, 471*f*
Sulfotransferases, 1411*t*-1412*t*, 1412
Surface-bound proenzymes, 796
Surface-enhanced laser desorption ionization (SELDI), 50, 51*f*
Susceptibility testing
for β-lactamase, 1156
commercial automated instrument systems, 1157-1158
indications for, 1160-1161
inhibitory methods of, 1155-1158
for mycobacteria, 1195-1196, 1195*t*
for mycotic diseases, 1210-1211
S. pneumoniae, 1162
technical considerations in, 1156-1157
incubation conditions, 1157
inoculum, 1157
testing media, 1156-1157
Susceptible dose dependent (SDD), 1154
Sweat chloride, 307
Swiss-type hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin, 589-590
Syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIADH) secretion, 90, 91*t*, 370, 370*b*, 370*t*, 371*f*
Synovial fluid, 30, 493-498, 493*t*
chemical analysis of, 497, 497*t*
collection of, 494
differential leukocyte count for, 495, 495*f*
examination for
crystal, 495-497, 496*f*
gross, 494
microbiological, 497-498
microscopic, 494-497
immunologic studies of, 497
recommended tests for, 494, 494*b*
total cell count for, 494-495
Synovial sarcomas, 1514
Synthesis
globin, 544
heme, 544, 545*f*
of hemoglobin, 544
metabolism and
of calcitonin, 193-194
of thyroid, 372-373, 373*t*
of vitamin D and metabolites, 194
nucleoprotein, defects of, 567-568
of parathyroid hormone, 192
protein, 293-295
Synthetic functions, of liver, 293-295
protein synthesis, 293-295
Synthetic inhibitors, 568
Syphilis, 1172-1174, 1172*f*
clinical manifestations of, 1173-1174, 1174*f*
endemic, 1175
epidemiology, 1172, 1172*f*
pathogenesis and pathology of, 1172-1173, 1173*f*
serologic tests for, 1176*t*
Sysmex XN-9000™, for hematology automation, 64, 64*f*
Systematic reviews, 82, 82*b*-83*b*
Systemic disease, pancreas relating to, 306-307
Systemic infection, *Malassezia* in, 1213-1214
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), 1049
antibodies to SS-A/Ro and SS-B/La, 996
antiphospholipid antibodies in, 997
autoantibody profile in, 994-997, 1013*t*
chronic discoid lupus and other cutaneous variants, 997, 998*f*
classification criteria for, 995*b*
clinical subsets of, associated with antibodies to SS-A/Ro, 996
diagnostic criteria for, 994, 1013*t*
drug-induced, antihistone antibodies, 997
etiologic factors in, 994
"lupus-like" syndromes and diseases of, 994, 995*f*
and neutropenia, 608
Systemic mastocytosis, 621
Systemic rheumatic diseases
autoantibodies
to nuclear and intracellular antigens, detection methods of, 1009*t*
in systemic rheumatic diseases, profiles of, 1008, 1008*b*
clinical and laboratory evaluation of, 993-1015
concept of overlap syndromes, 1007
introduction and classification of, 993-994, 994*b*
polymyositis, dermatomyositis and, 1005-1007, 1006*t*
rheumatoid arthritis, 1003-1005, 1003*t*, 1004*f*
scleroderma, 1001*t*, 1002*f*
Sjögren's syndrome, 998-999, 999*t*, 1000*f*
systemic lupus erythematosus and related lupus-like disorders, 994-998
systemic sclerosis, 1000-1003, 1002*f*
Systemic sclerosis, 1000-1003, 1002*f*

T

T cell
depletion of, 790
development of, thymus relating to, 556, 556*t*
functional assessment of, 988
immunity of, 987
recognition, activation, and signal transduction of, 892, 893*f*
responses of, 892-894
T cell/histiocyte-rich large B cell lymphoma, 645, 645*f*
T cell lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoma, 1476-1477
T cell proliferations, 667
T cell prolymphocytic leukemia, *TCL1A* gene abnormalities in, 1489
T lymphoblastic leukemia/lymphoblastic lymphoma, precursor, 635, 635*f*
genetics of, 635
morphology of, 635
T lymphocytes, 856-857
antigen-induced activation of, 892
Tacrolimus (FK-506), 351
Taenia multiceps, 1275, 1275*f*
Taenia saginata, 1267, 1267*f*-1268*f*
Taenia serialis, 1275, 1275*f*
Taenia solium, 611, 1267, 1268*f*, 1274
Taeniasis, 1267, 1267*f*-1268*f*
Takayasu arteritis, 1018-1019
clinical laboratory testing of, 1019
definition and epidemiology of, 1018
diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of, 1019
etiology and pathogenesis of, 1018-1019
pathology of, 1018
Tamoxifen, 1426-1428, 1427*f*
Tangier disease, 243
Target amplification methods, 1316-1324
Target imbalance, 1183
Target-specific anticoagulants, 849-851
oral agents, 849-851, 850*f*, 850*t*-851*t*
parenteral agents, 849
Targeting cell surface receptors, treatment by, 990
Task mapping, data collection techniques and, 14, 15*f*

TBRF. *see* Tick-borne relapsing fever (TBRF)
T-cell receptor excision circle (TREC) screening, 992*f*
TCF1 gene, 1502
TCF3-PBX1 gene fusion, 1473-1474
TCL1A gene abnormalities, 1489
TCO. *see* Total cost of ownership (TCO)
Technical considerations in susceptibility testing, 1156-1157
Technical supervisor, for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1365
Technology
  breakthrough, 16*b*
  role of, 16-17
  understanding of, 16-17
Tegretol. *see* Carbamazepine (Tegretol)
Telangiectatic focal nodular hyperplasia, 1502-1503
Telescoped sediment, 467
Telopeptides, cross-linked, 201
Terminal complement components, 932
Terminal deletion, 1346-1347
Ternary complexes, formation of, 598, 598*t*
Terrorism, 149-160
  bioterrorism, 149-157
  chemical, 157-159
  nuclear, 159-160
Tertiary hyperparathyroidism, 196-197, 199*t*
Tertiary structure, 254
Test
  data from, analysis and use of, in DNA analysis, 1401
  demand, instrument capacity and, 16*f*
  management of, for molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1368-1369
  mapping, data collection techniques and, 11-12, 13*f*
  menu, workstation analysis and, 14
  methods of, and marker systems, for DNA analysis, 1398-1401
Test cutoff, altering of, 77
Test methods, 1102
Test order(s)
  information flow for, 134
  specimen collection and, 23
Testing process
  laboratory, 11, 12*f*
  quality assurance and quality control of, in molecular diagnostics laboratory, 1369-1376
TET genes, fusion genes with, 1513
Tetracycline, 1113
Tetrahedral intermediate, of peptide bond, 279, 279*f*
Tetraspanin, 712
TFE 3-associated renal cell carcinoma, 1508
TFEB-associated renal cell carcinoma, 1508
TGFBR1 gene, 1505
Th/To autoantigen, 1001-1003
$\delta\beta^{+}$-Thalassemia, 589
$\delta\beta^{0}$-Thalassemia, 589
Thalassemia major, 587-588
Thalassemia minor, 588-589
α-Thalassemia trait, 590-591
β-Thalassemia trait, 588-589, 589*f*
  with normal Hb A_2, 589
Thalassemias, 578, 586-591
  fetal hemoglobin, hereditary persistence of, 589-590
  molecular defects of, 587, 587*f*
  α-thalassemias, 590-591
  β-thalassemias, 587-588, 588*t*
α-Thalassemias, 590-591
β-Thalassemias, 587-588, 588*t*
α-Thalassemias syndromes, 590-591, 590*t*
The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA), 1503
Theophylline, 347, 348*t*
Therapeutic cytapheresis, 765-769
Therapeutic drug monitoring, 324-361. *see also* Toxicology, therapeutic drug monitoring and
  antiasthmatics, 347, 347*f*
  anticonvulsants, 343-346, 344*f*
  antiinflammatory and analgesic, 347-350, 348*f*
  cardiotropics, 341-343, 341*f*
  chemotherapeutic agents, 354-355
  immunosuppressives, 350-352, 350*f*
  for mania and depression, 352-354
Therapeutic drug monitoring *(Continued)*
  neuroleptics, antipsychotic major tranquilizers, 354
  pharmacokinetics, 339-341, 339*f*
Therapeutic hemapheresis, indications for, 761-777, 762*t*
Therapeutic leukocytapheresis, 766-767
  indications for, 766-767
Therapeutic levels and metabolism, of antidepressants, 354
Therapeutic plasma exchange, 769-777, 770*f*, 770*t*
  efficacy of removal in, 770-771
  indications for, 773-777
    conditioning therapy for renal transplantation as, 777
    hematologic disorders as, 774-776
    myeloma with acute renal failure as, 776
    nephrologic disorders as, 776-777
    neurologic disorders as, 773-774
  mechanisms of action of, 769-770
  patient concerns in, 771-772, 771*b*
  procedures for selective removal of plasma components in, 772-773
    low-density lipoproteins, 772-773, 773*b*
  replacement fluids in, 771
Therapeutic plateletapheresis, 765-766
Therapeutic thrombocytapheresis, indications for, 766
Therapeutic trial, of cobalamin deficiency, 565
Thermal instability, 275
Thermistors, 57
Thermocouple, 57
Thermometers, types of, 56-57
Thermometry, 56-57
Thin-layer chromatography, 326-327, 326*f*
Thiol reagents, 727
Thiopurine S-methyltransferase, 1412-1413
Thirst, regulation of, ADH release and, 178
Throat specimens, 1291
Thrombin generation, 804
Thrombin time, 801, 802*f*, 842
Thrombin-activated fibrinolytic inhibitor (TAFI), 835
Thrombocytopenia, 816-821, 818*t*
  in chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma, 637
  congenital
    autosomal dominant, 817-819
    autosomal recessive, 819
    congenital, 817-819, 819*t*
    sex-linked inherited, 819
  heparin-induced, 846-849, 847*f*-849*f*, 847*t*
  immune, 819-821
    drug-induced, 820-821
  refractory, 625
Thrombocytosis, 765-766, 765*t*, 766*b*, 821, 821*b*, 821*t*
  marked, refractory anemia with ring sideroblasts associated with, 624-625
Thrombomodulin, defects in, 840-841
Thrombophilic proteins or factors, 835-839, 836*t*
Thrombospondin-5, 799
Thrombotic disease. *see* Cardiac injury, atherosclerosis, thrombotic disease
Thrombotic disorders and disseminated intravascular coagulation, 809-810, 810*t*
Thrombotic microangiopathy, 595
  and therapeutic plasma exchange, 774-775
Thrombotic risk, laboratory approach to, 834-841
  acquired hypercoagulable states, 839-841
    antiphospholipid syndrome and lupus anticoagulant, 839-840, 840*b*
    hyperhomocysteinemia, 841
  dysfibrinogenemia, 839
  endogenous anticoagulant pathways, 834-835, 835*f*
  hypofibrinolytic mechanisms, 839
  laboratory evaluation of, general aspects of, 841
  thrombophilic proteins or factors, 835-839, 836*t*
    activated protein C resistance and factor V_{Leiden}, 838, 838*f*
    annexin A5, 839
    antithrombin, 835-837, 836*f*
Thrombotic risk, laboratory approach to *(Continued)*
    elevation of coagulation factor levels, 838
    protein C, 837
    protein S, 837-838
    prothrombin g20210a, 838
    tissue factor pathway inhibitor, 838-839
Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), 595, 832-833, 832*f*, 833*t*
Thromboxane synthesis, abnormalities in, and platelet signaling pathway, 825
Thymic presence, 903
Thymidylate synthase, 1418-1419, 1421*f*, 1422*t*
Thymoma, 571
Thyroglobulin, 375-376
Thyroglobulin autoantibodies, 1052-1053
Thyroid
  autoantibodies relating to, 376
  cancer, 1499-1500
  diseases of, 378, 1052-1053
  function, 97-98, 98*t*, 370-379, 372*f*
    calcitonin and, 378-379, 379*t*
    hormone synthesis and metabolism, 372-373, 373*t*
    hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis, 373-376
    L-thyroxine, uses of, 378
    neonatal hypothyroidism, screening for, 376-377
    nonthyroidal illness, 377
    physiologic variables of, 377, 377*f*
    tests, medications and, 377-378
    thyroid disease, screening for, 378
    thyroid illness and, 378
    urinary iodine measurement, 376, 376*t*
  function of, tests of, medications and, 377-378
  illness of, 378
Thyroid gland, 370
  autoimmune, 1052-1053
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 373-374, 374*t*
Thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins (TSIs), 1035*f*, 1053
Thyroperoxidase autoantibodies, 1052, 1052*f*
Thyrotropin-binding inhibitor immunoglobulins, 1053
Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH), 373
Thyroxine, 374-375, 374*f*, 374*t*
  free, 375
Thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG), 376, 376*t*
Thyroxine-binding prealbumin (TBPA), 257
Tick bite, African, 1105
Tick-borne relapsing fever (TBRF), 1183
Ticks, 1279*f*, 1280
Time, of specimen collection, 23-24
Time-of-flight (TOF), 50
Time-resolved fluoroimmunoassay, 879
Tissue bank activities, 783-785, 784*b*
Tissue banking, and progenitor cells, 783-791, 784*b*
  and adoptive cell transfer/chimeric antigen receptors, 791
  and cardiac valves, 786
  and cornea, 786
  ex vivo manipulation of hematologic cells in, 790
  hematopoietic progenitor cell banking, 787-791, 787*b*, 787*t*
  and musculoskeletal tissues, 785-786
  reinfusion of progenitor cell products and, 790
  and reproductive tissue, 786-787
  and skin banking, 785
  and tissue, sources of, 783
  and tissue bank activities, 783-785, 784*b*
    cryopreservation, 784-785
    donor screening in, 784, 784*b*
  and use of dendritic cells, in cancer immunotherapy, 790-791
Tissue factor pathway inhibitor, 799, 838-839
Tissue helminths, 1271-1276
Tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), 797
Tissue/organ transplantation, 968-972, 968*t*
Tissues
  aspirates of, 507
  lymphoid, 554-556
  musculoskeletal, 785-786
  sources of, 783
  specimens from, 1289-1290
Tobacco smoking, interference with, 21-22
Tocopherol. *see* Vitamin E (tocopherol)
ToGA trial, 1503
Tolerable upper intake level (UL), 416, 422
Tonicity, 166
Top-loading balances, 55
Total activity unit, 272
Total and ionized calcium, 190
Total cell count
  for CSF, 483
  for synovial fluid, 494-495
Total cost of ownership (TCO), 139
Total iron-binding capacity, 431, 431*f*
Total laboratory automation, 61, 63-64, 63*b*
Total magnesium, 192
Total protein, 430, 430*f*, 486-487, 487*t*
  methods of, 487
  reference values of, 486-487, 487*b*
Total quality management (TQM), 4, 4*t*
Tourniquet, posture and, 21
Toxic aplastic anemias, 570
Toxic granulation, 608, 609*f*
Toxicity, vitamins and, 419
Toxicology, therapeutic drug monitoring and, 324-361
  drugs of abuse, 330-339
    amphetamines, 336-337
    barbiturates, sedative-hypnotics, 338
    benzodiazepines, 337
    cocaine, 334-335
    codeine and analogs, 335-336
    extent of use of, 334
    fentanyl, 336
    lysergic acid diethylamide (lysergide), 339
    marijuana, 338-339
    mechanisms of action, 330-334, 331*f*-333*f*
    methadone, 336
    methaqualone, 338
    opiates, 335-336
    phencyclidine, 337-338
    piperazines, 337
    propoxyphene, 338
    tryptamines, 337
  serum and urine, drug detection in, 324-330
    chromatographic techniques for, 326-330
    drug binding, to antibodies, 326
    drugs of abuse, screening for, 330
    gas chromatography, with infrared spectroscopy, 330
    gas chromatography-mass spectroscopy, 327-329, 329*f*-330*f*
    immunochemical methods of, 324-326, 325*f*
    liquid chromatography-mass spectroscopy, 329-330
  toxins and acute poisoning, 355-360
Toxi-lab procedures, 327
Toxins
  and acute poisoning, 355-360
  botulinum, 155, 155*t*
Toxoplasma gondii, 614, 1251
Toxoplasmosis, 614-615, 615*f*
TP53 gene, 1505
T-prolymphocytic leukemia, 647-648
TQM. *see* Total quality management (TQM)
Trace elements, vitamins and, 422-427, 422*t*-424*t*
Tracheal aspirates, 1291-1292, 1292*f*
Trachoma, classic, 1100
Training and competency, oversight of, 71
Transcellular flux, of potassium, control of, 174, 174*f*
Transcription factor mutations, platelet dysfunction associated with, 825-826
Transcriptional control, 1306-1307, 1307*f*
Transcription-based amplification, 1321-1322, 1322*f*
Transcriptomics, 859

Transducers
multichannel photon, 40
silicon diode, 39, 39*f*
Transfer RNAs (tRNAs), 1306
Transferrin, 260-262, 262*f*
and CSF leakage, 489-490
Transforming growth factors α and β, 1452-1453
Transfused red cells, separation of autologous cells from, 730-731
Transfusion
administration of, 740-745
blood component therapy, 741-744
neonatal and pediatric transfusion, 744-745, 744*b*
granulocyte, 754-755
massive, 744, 810
medicine, 735-750
background of, 735
and blood collection, 735-737, 736*t*, 737*b*
blood component manufacture and, 737
blood components, selection of, 739-740, 739*t*
pretransfusion testing, 740
of plasma, 743, 743*b*
of platelets, 742-743, 743*b*
reactions to, 745-750
acute hemolytic, 746
allergic, 745
bacterial contamination, of blood components, 746-747
delayed hemolytic, 746
febrile nonhemolytic, 745
graft-versus-host disease, 747-748, 748*b*, 748*f*
hypotensive, 748
nonimmune hemolysis as, 748
severe allergic (anaphylactic), 745
transfusion-related acute lung injury, 747
transfusion-related circulatory overload, 747
transfusion-transmitted disease, 748-750, 749*t*
Transfusion-related acute lung injury, 747
Transfusion-related circulatory overload, 747
Transfusion-transmitted disease, 748-750, 749*t*
Transient abnormal myelopoiesis, 633
Transient aplastic crises, 571
Transient erythroblastopenia of childhood (TEC), 571
Transient neutropenia, 608
Transition state, 268-269
theory, in drug design, 279-280, 279*f*
catalytic antibodies, new, with predetermined enzyme activity, 279-280, 281*f*
HIV protease inhibitors, in treating HIV-AIDS, 279, 279*f*-280*f*
Transitional (urothelial) epithelial cells, 462-463, 463*f*
Translocation renal cell carcinoma, 1508
Translocations, 1308, 1348, 1350*f*
Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies, 750
Transplantation
and ABO antibodies, 686
nonrenal organ, 971
organ, 940, 940*f*
renal, 971
tissue/organ, 968-972, 968*t*
Transthyretin (TTR), 257
Transudates and exudates, 498, 498*b*, 502-504, 503*b*
Traumatic hemolysis, 594-595
Trematodes, 1268-1271, 1275-1276
Clonorchis sinensis and *Opisthorchis viverrini*, 1269*f*, 1270
Fasciola hepatica, 1269-1270, 1269*f*
Fasciolopsis buski, 1269, 1269*f*
Heterophyes and *Metagonimus*, 1269
Nanophyetus salmincola, 1269
Paragonimus spp., 1269*f*, 1270
Schistosoma spp., 1270-1271
Trench fever, 1111
Treponema, 1171-1178
classic treponemal disease, 1172-1175
other diseases of, 1177-1178
treponematoses, laboratory diagnosis of, 1175-1177
treponematoses, treatment of, 1177
Treponemal serologic test, 1176-1177, 1176*t*
Treponematoses
laboratory diagnosis of, 1175-1177
treatment of, 1177
Trichinella spiralis, 611, 1273-1274
Trichinellosis, 1273-1274
Trichinosis, 1273-1274
Trichomonas vaginalis, 1259-1260
Trichostrongylus spp., 1264-1265
Trichuris trichiura, 1263
Tricyclic antidepressants, 352-353, 353*f*
toxicity of, 353
treatment of, 353
Triglyceride blanks, 231
Triglycerides, 231, 435, 435*f*. *see also* High triglycerides
Triiodothyronine, 375
reverse, 375
Trinucleotide repeat expansion disorders, 1385-1388, 1385*t*
Troponin, cardiac, 246-247
Trueness, in analytic bias, imprecision and, in quality control, 113
Truth table, 75, 75*f*-76*f*, 77*t*
Trypanosoma, 1248-1250
Trypanosoma cruzi, 750
Trypsinogen, 309-310, 310*t*
Tryptamines, 337
Tryptase, 1062
Tryptase-positive round cell infiltrates (TROCI), 621
Tryptophan glycoconjugate, 171
Tryptophan-rich prealbumin, 258
Tube analysis, 12
chemistry, 13*t*
Tube labor, 12
Tube reactions, 715-716, 717*f*
Tuberculostearic acid (TSA), 501, 506
Tuberculous meningitis, 493
Tularemia, 154-155, 154*t*
as bioterrorism agent, 152*t*
Tumor cells, 472
Tumor marker tests, recommendations for ordering, 1436-1438, 1436*t*-1439*t*
Tumor necrosis factor, lymphotoxin α and β genes and, 974-975
Tumor suppressor genes, 321, 1389-1390
Tumor suppressors/cell differentiation, 1434
Tumorigenic viruses, 1097*t*
Tumors
detection of
circulating anti-p53 antibodies in, 1458-1459
myc oncogene-encoded protein in, 1459
proteomics in, 1461
markers for, 491, 501, 506
non-beta cell, 215
of pituitary gland, 362-363, 364*t*
primitive peripheral neuroectodermal, 1513
Turbidimetric methods, 257
Turbidimetry, 43, 43*f*
Turcot's syndrome, 1506
Turner syndrome, 1355, 1356*t*
Two-dimensional electrophoresis (2-DE), 255
Two-way analysis of variance (two-way ANOVA), 110
Tyndall effect, 35
Type 1 diabetes, 210-211, 210*t*, 980
Type 2 diabetes, 210*t*, 211-212
Type and screen-only protocol, 726
Type B insulin resistance, 1052
Type I error, 103
Type II error, 103
Tyrosine, 470-471, 471*f*
Tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI), for chronic myelogenous leukemia, 618
Tyrosinuria, 478-479
methods for, 479

U

Ulcerative colitis (UC), 1043
Ulcers, 1295
Ultracentrifugation methods, 232
Umbilical cord blood, 789
Undifferentiated acute leukemia, 633
Unequal-arm substitution balances, 54
Unfractionated heparin, 845-846, 845*f*
Uniparental disomy, 1381
Unstable angina (UA), 244-245
Unstable enzymes, protease degradation of, 275
Unstable hemoglobins, 586
Urea, 435-436, 436*f*
clearance and urea/creatinine ratio in serum, 171
as measure of renal function, 170
Ureaplasmal infections, 1111-1113
Uremia, 827
Urethral specimens, 1294-1295
Uric acid, 436, 436*f*, 497
Uridine diphosphate galactose-4-epimerase deficiency, 218
Uridine diphosphate glucuronosyltransferases, 1410-1411, 1411*t*-1412*t*
Urinalysis
components of, 443-473
chemical screening, 446-460, 447*b*
gross/physical examination of, 443-446
specimen evaluation of, 443
methods for, 473-474
automated, 474, 474*f*, 476*f*
basic (routine), 473-474, 475*t*
Urinary calcium, reference interval for, 190
Urinary calculi, 474-477
Urinary formiminoglutamic acid (FIGLU), 567
Urinary free cortisol measurements, 391
method of, 391
Urinary iodine measurement, 376, 376*t*
Urinary screening, for inherited metabolic diseases, 478-479
Urinary tract, specimens from, 1293-1294, 1294*f*
Urinary tract infection, 457-458, 1211
Urine, 28-29
basic examination of, 442-480, 443*t*
bilirubin in, 456-457, 456*t*
blood, hemoglobin, hemosiderin, and myoglobin in, 453-456
changes in, with delayed testing, 29*t*
collection preservatives, 30*t*
concentration and dilution of, 178-179, 178*f*
examinations of, 477
formation of, 442-443
fructose in, 451-452
galactose in, 451-452
glucose and other sugars in, 450-453
ketones in, 452-453
lactose in, 451-452
pentose in, 451-452
protein in, 447-450
sediment in
examination of, 460-473
microscopic components of, 461-473
serum and, drug detection in, 324-330
special testing and monitoring techniques for, 474-479
storage and preservation of, 29
sucrose in, 451-452
testing modalities of, 479
urobilinogen in, 457
Urine hypermethylated glutathione S-transferase pi 1 gene, 1448
Urine markers, for prostate cancer, 1447-1448
Urine metabolic test, for adenomatous polyps of colon, 1448
Urine prostate cancer antigen 3, 1447
Urine TMPRSS2, 1447
Urine volume
decreases in, 445
increases in, 445
Urinometer, 446
procedure of, 446
Urobilinogen, in urine, 457
Urogenital protozoa, in medical parasitology, 1252-1262
Urogenital specimens, examination of, for medical parasitology, 1237
Urothelial cancer, NMP-22, 1459
Urticaria pigmentosa (UP), 621
U.S. Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act (CLIA), 114, 116

V

Vacuolation, 531
Vacuum phototubes, 39
Vaginal candidiasis, 1211
Vaginal secretions, 1294, 1294*f*
Valproic acid (Depakene), 346
VanC gene, 1163
Vancomycin susceptibility testing of *S. aureus*, 1163
Vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE), 1163
Variable complex genetic alterations, with no specific pattern, sarcomas with, 1515
Variable costs, 137-138
Variable penetrance, and expressivity, 1381
Variables, 102-103
Variance analysis, 102, 109-110, 109*f*, 145
Varicella zoster, 1073*t*
Variegate porphyria (VP), 604
Vasculitis, 1016-1031, 1041
diagnostic classification of, 1016-1017
large vessel, 1017-1020, 1018*f*, 1018*t*
medium vessel, 1020-1022, 1020*t*
putative pathogenic mechanisms for, 1017*b*
small vessel, 1022-1031, 1026*t*
Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), in diarrhea, 314
Vasovagal reactions, to hemapheresis, 780-781
Vegetative mycelium, 1199
Vel antibodies, 714
Vel blood group system, 714
biochemistry and molecular biology of, 714
Velocardiofacial syndrome, 1357-1358
Velocity
of propagation, 34, 34*b*
PSA, 1444
Venezuelan equine encephalitis (VEE), 156-157, 156*t*
as bioterrorism agent, 152*t*
Venous puncture technique, 27*b*
Venous versus capillary samples, 229
Verapamil, 343
Verigene Gram-Positive Blood Culture Nucleic Acid Test, 1159
Verruga Peruana, 1111
Very late activation antigens (VLAs), 950
Very-low-density lipoproteins, 223
Vesication, 1276
Vesicles
from genital tract, 1295, 1295*f*
from skin, 1297
Vesicular rash, 1076*t*
Vibrio, 1136-1137
antimicrobial susceptibility of, 1137
clinical manifestations and pathogenesis of, 1136-1137
laboratory diagnosis of, 1137, 1137*t*
VIPoma, 320
Viral exanthems and common cutaneous infections, 1090-1091, 1090*t*
Viral gastroenteritis, 1091-1092
Viral growth, 1082*f*
Viral hemorrhagic fever (VHF)
as bioterrorism agent, 152*t*
means of transmission, 157*t*
Viral hepatitis, 1092-1093
Viral inclusion cells, 472
Viral infections, 1072-1098, 1074*f*
clinical viral infectious syndromes, 1076-1097
acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 1093-1097, 1094*f*-1096*f*
congenital and perinatal viral infections, 1085-1088, 1086*t*
emerging infections, 1097
herpetic mucocutaneous infections, 1077-1079
pediatric and adult viral respiratory syndromes, 1079-1084
viral exanthems and common cutaneous infections, 1090-1091, 1090*t*
viral gastroenteritis, 1091-1092
viral hepatitis, 1092-1093

Viral infections *(Continued)*
viral meningitis and encephalitis, 1086*f*, 1088-1090, 1089*f*, 1090*t*
virus-associated neoplasia, 1097
introduction to, 1072-1076, 1073*t*, 1074*f*, 1075*t*
antigen detection, 1074
cell culture, 1074
nucleic acid amplification testing, 1074-1076
specimen collection, 1076*t*, 1083
viral serology, 1076
virus antigen assays, 1083
laboratory methods for diagnosis of, 1077*f*
syndromes, clinical, 1076-1097
Viral meningitis, 492-493
encephalitis and, 1086*f*, 1088-1090, 1089*f*, 1090*t*
Viral respiratory syndromes, pediatric and adult, 1079-1084, 1079*f*
Viral serology, 1076
Viral transport medium (VTM), 1074
Viral-induced hepatitis, testing for, 298-301
hepatitis A, 298, 298*f*
hepatitis B, 298-299, 299*f*, 300*t*
hepatitis C, 299-301, 300*t*
hepatitis D, 301
hepatitis E, 301
hepatitis G, 301
Viridans streptococci, 1163
Virus antigen assays, 1083
Virus isolation, 1084
Virus-associated neoplasia, 1097
Viruses
detection of, in blood specimen, 1287
in feces, 1296
infections of, diagnosis of, 1289
Visceral leishmaniasis, 1250
Vitamin A, 421
prealbumin and, 257
Vitamin B_1. *see* Thiamine pyrophosphate (TPP) (vitamin B_1)
Vitamin B_2. *see* Riboflavin (vitamin B_2)
Vitamin B_6. *see* Pyridoxine (vitamin B_6)
Vitamin B_{12}. *see* Cobalamin (vitamin B_{12})
Vitamin C. *see* Ascorbate (vitamin C)
Vitamin D, 98, 99*t*, 421-422
deficiency, 203
intoxication, 197
and metabolites, 194-195
synthesis, pathways of, 195*f*
Vitamin E (tocopherol), 422
Vitamin K, 422
deficiency of, 810
Vitamin K antagonists, 842-845, 843*f*, 844*t*
Vitamin K-dependent clotting factors, combined deficiency of, 808-809
Vitamins, 417*t*-419*t*, 418-422
fat-soluble, 421-422
trace elements and, 422-427, 422*t*-424*t*
water-soluble, 419-421
Vitek System, 1157
Vitronectin, 934
β-VLDL ("floating β" lipoprotein), 225
detection of, 234
VLDL-C/plasma triglyceride ratio, 235
Voltammetry, 46
Volume
of blood specimen, 1286
homeostasis, defective hormonal regulation of, 445
Volumetric flasks, 56
Volumetric laboratoryware, 56
von Hippel-Lindau syndrome, 1516
von Recklinghausen's disease, 1517
von Willebrand disease, 805, 830-831, 832*t*
and platelet disorders, 812-833
qualitative abnormalities of, 831
platelet type, 831
type 2A, 831
type 2B, 831
type 2M, 831
type 2N (Normandy), 831
type 1: partial quantitative abnormality, 830-831, 830*f*
type 3: severe quantitative abnormality, 831
and von Willebrand factor, 829-833
biology of, 829-830, 829*f*
laboratory tests for, 830
von Willebrand factor
biology of, 829-830, 829*f*
laboratory tests for, 830
and von Willebrand disease, 829-833
von Willebrand syndrome, acquired, 831-832
VRE. *see* Vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE)
VTM. *see* Viral transport medium (VTM)

W
Waived testing, 66-67, 67*t*
Waldenström's macroglobulinemia (WM), 640
Warfarin, 842
control of, 845
drug and supplement interactions with, 844*b*
half-life of, 843-844
therapeutic index of, 844-845
true genetic resistance to, 844
Warm autoimmune hemolytic anemia, 731-732
serologic characteristics of, 731
serologic testing beyond the DAT of, 731-732
Washing, of RBCs and PCs, 738
Wash-through tablet method, 457
procedure of, 457
Wasps, 1278
Water, 54
baths of, 57
diuresis, 179-180, 179*b*
purification of, 54
purity of
monitoring, 54
types of, 54
renal function, electrolytes, and acid-base balance, evaluation of, 162-187
sodium, and diuretic hormone metabolism, disorders of, 178-181
hypernatremia, causes and pathogenesis of, 181, 181*b*
hyponatremia, causes and pathogenesis of, 180-181, 180*b*
polyuria, 179-180, 179*b*
thirst, regulation of, ADH release and, 178
urine concentration and dilution, 178-179, 178*f*
Water-soluble vitamins, 419-421
Watson-Schwartz test, 459, 459*f*
Wavelength, 34
accuracy, 40
selectors, 37
units for, 34*b*
Waxy casts, 464, 464*f*-465*f*
Weak ABO subtype, 686
Weak D antigen, 693
Weaponization and delivery, of chemical agents, 158-159
Wedge method, of staining, 521
Weights, handling, for testing accuracy, 55
Wermer syndrome, 1516
West Nile virus, 749
Wet preparation
blood film examination of, 521
for examination, 1206, 1206*b*
Wheatley's trichrome stain, 1236
WHIM (warts, hypogammaglobulinemia, infection, and myelokathexis) syndrome, 610
Whipple's disease, 318
"Whipple's triad," for hypoglycemic disorders, 214
Whipworm, 1263
White blood cell (WBC), abnormalities in, 88-89
Whole blood glucose, 208-209
Whole-body acid-base balance, 181-182
Whole-genome analysis, 1379
Wilcoxon signed-ranks test, 107
Williams syndrome, 1357
Wilms' tumor 1 gene *(WT1)* mutations, in acute myeloid leukemias, 1472-1473
Wilson's disease, 263
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, 825
Wolf-Hirschhorn syndrome, 1356
Workcell, 63
Workflow
analysis, 14-16
metric examples, 18*t*
modeling, 15-16
software models, interrelated variables simulated by, 16*b*
understanding of, 11-16
Workstation, 63
Workstation analysis, 12-14
instrument audit and, 13-14
test menu and, 14
Wound infections, specimens from, 1298
Wright's stain, 521-522, 1206
WT1 mutations, in acute myeloid leukemias, 1472-1473
Wuchereria bancrofti, 1272, 1272*f*

X
X and Y chromosome markers, 1400
Xanthochromia, 482-483, 483*t*
XG blood group system, 704-705
biochemistry and molecular biology of, 704-705
Xg^a antibodies, 705
X-linked agammaglobulinemia (XLA), and neutropenia, 608
X-linked porphyria (XLP), 604
X-linked spinal and bulbar muscular atrophy, 1386
Xp11 translocation, renal cell carcinoma with, 1508
Xylose absorption test, 316-317

Y
Y chromosome markers, 1400
Yaws, 1174-1175
Yeast
candidiasis, cryptococcosis and other infections caused by, 1211-1215
and hyphae, structure of, 1199, 1201*f*-1202*f*
morphology of, 1207-1208, 1208*b*, 1208*f*
and yeastlike pathogens, 1214-1215, 1214*f*
Yersinia pestis, 152-153, 153*t*

Z
Zarontin. *see* Ethosuximide (Zarontin)
Zero-based budget, 144
Zinc (Zn), 426-427
deficiency of, 426-427
dietary sources of, 426
metabolism of, 426
testing of, 427
Zinc transporter-8 autoantibodies, 1051
Zollinger-Ellison (ZE) syndrome, 196, 311-312
Zonal electrophoresis, 254
Zoonotic filariae, 1273
Zygomycosis, 1224-1225

This page intentionally left blank

GUIDELINES FOR ORDERING BLOOD FOR ELECTIVE SURGERY

ALSO REFERRED TO AS MAXIMUM SURGICAL BLOOD ORDER SCHEDULE (MSBOS)

These guidelines present a range in numbers of units of blood to be ordered as practiced at three different institutions: University Hospital State University of New York Upstate Medical Center at Syracuse, New York; Virginia Commonwealth University Medical Center, Richmond, Virginia; and University of Michigan Hospitals, Ann Arbor, Michigan. Each institution should set its own guidelines for ordering blood products to take into account varying medical needs and practices in collaboration with the hospital medical and surgical staff.

KEY:
0 = no testing required
T&S = type and screen
1-6 = number of units crossmatched
AO = as ordered
* = varies with purpose

CARDIOPULMONARY/ CARDIOTHORACIC

A-V canal repair 3
Angioplasty ..... T&S
Aortic or ventricular aneurysm repair 4
Aortic dissection/repair 6
Aortic valve replacement ..... 2 to 3
Atrial septal defect repair 2
Atrial septectomy 2
Blalock-Taussig shunt 1
Bidirectional Glenn's shunt 2
CABG (coronary vein graft)
Off pump ..... T&S
On pump 2
Coarctation repair 2
Esophagogastrectomy 3
Esophageal hernia/hiatal ..... T&S
Esophagoscopy ..... T&S
Fontan's procedure ..... 3 to 4
Great vessel switch 3
Lobectomy ..... T&S
Mediastinoscopy ..... T&S
Mitral commissurotomy 2
Mitral valvuloplasty 2
Mitral valve annuloplasty 2
Mitral valve replacement 2
Mustard procedure 2
Open lung biopsy ..... T&S
Pacemaker insertion ..... T&S
Patent ductus arteriosus ligation ..... T&S
Pericardectomy 2
Pericardial window ..... T&S
Pneumonectomy ..... T&S
Pulmonary valve replacement 2
Pulmonary valvulotomy 2
Redo and repair 6
Septectomy 2
Sternal wire removal 0
Tetralogy of Fallot 2
Thoracotomy/lobectomy ..... T&S
Thoracoscopy ..... T&S
Transposition repair 2
Ventricular septal defect repair 2
Wedge resection ..... T&S

GENERAL SURGERY

Abdominoperineal resection ..... T&S
Amputations ..... T&S
Appendectomy 0
Bronchoscopy ..... T&S
Catheter insertion/removal 0
Cholecystojejunostomy ..... T&S
Cholecystectomy 0
Colon resection ..... T&S
Colostomy closure/takedown ..... T&S
Debridement (wound, burn) ..... AO
Denver peritoneal shunt insertion ..... T&S
Denver shunt revision ..... T&S
Dressing change 0
Exploratory laparotomy ..... T&S to 2
Gastric bypass ..... T&S
Gastrostomy tube insertion ..... 0 or T&S
Hemicolectomy ..... T&S
Hemorrhoidectomy 0
Hepatic lobectomy 4
Hernia repair, inguinal 0
Ileostomy ..... T&S
Iliac profunda bypass 2
Jejunostomy tube placement 0
Lumpectomy, breast mass 0
Mastectomy, simple 0
Mastectomy, modified radical 0
Mastectomy, radical ..... T&S
Mediastinoscopy 0
Myotomy (pyloric) 0
Parotidectomy 0
Pilonidal cyst 0
Portocaval shunt ..... 4 to 6
Pseudoaneurysm repair ..... 4 to 6
Rib resection 0
Sigmoidectomy ..... T&S
Sigmoidoscopy 0
Small bowel resection ..... T&S
Splenectomy ..... T&S to 2
Sympathectomy ..... T&S
Thyroidectomy 0
Total colon resection ..... T&S
Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS) ..... T&S
Vagotomy 0
Vein stripping ..... T&S
Whipple's procedure ..... 2 to 4

GYNECOLOGY

Anterior-posterior repair 0
Cone biopsy (CO_2 laser) 0
Dilation and curettage (D&C) ..... 0 to 2
Ectopic pregnancy ..... T&S
Endometrium ablation 0
Examine under anesthesia (EUA) 0
Exploratory laparotomy ..... T&S to 2
Exenteration procedure 4
Hysterectomy, total abdominal ..... T&S
Hysteroscopy 0
Laparoscopy 0
Laser vaporization 0
Neosalpingostomy 0
Oophorectomy 0
Ovarian wedge resection 0
Salpingo-oophorectomy 0
Uterine suspension 0
Tubal ligation 0
Tuboplasty 0
Vaginectomy ..... T&S to 2
Vulvectomy ..... T&S to 2

NEUROSURGERY

Aneurysm clipping 2
Biopsy (cervical/brain) ..... T&S
Burr hole ..... T&S
Carpal tunnel release ..... 0 or T&S
Cervical decompression
1-2 level 0
>2 level ..... T&S
Cervical discectomy ..... T&S
Cordotomy ..... T&S
Cordectomy 1
Craniectomy 2
Cranioplasty ..... T&S
Craniotomy 2
Endarterectomy, carotid ..... T&S
Hypophysectomy ..... T&S to 1
Laminectomy
1-2 level 0
>2 level ..... T&S
Lobectomy 2
Neuroma removal ..... T&S
Nerve repair ..... T&S
Pituitary tumor resection 1
Spinal fusion ..... T&S
Stereotactic brain biopsy ..... T&S
Stereotactic hematoma ..... T&S
Ulnar nerve transplant 0
Ventricular-peritoneal shunt insertion ..... 0 or T&S

ORTHOPEDICS

Acromioplasty 0
Amputation ..... T&S
Arthroscopy 0
Arthroplasty 0
Arthrotomy 0
Biopsy, excisional 0
Bipolar transfer ..... T&S
Carpal tunnel release 0
Closed reduction 0
Debridement ..... AO
Decompression laminectomy
1-2 level 0
>2 level ..... T&S
Diskectomy ..... T&S
Fractures 0
*Fusions, other ..... T&S to 2
Hardware removal 0
Hip revision ..... T&S to 2
Hip screw and nailing ..... T&S to 2
Lumbar laminectomy .....
1-2 level 0
>2 level ..... T&S
Meniscectomy 0

Nerve transposition 0
Neuroma excision 0
Open reduction . . . . . .
Femur, pelvis, acetabulum . . . . . T&S to 2
Hand, foot 0
Radius, humerus, elbow . . . . . 0 or T&S
Osteotomy 0
Posterior rod fusion 2
Prosthesis removal 0
Releases 0
Revascularization and exploration . . . . . T&S
Rodding (Grosse and Kempf) . . . . . T&S
Rotator cuff repair . . . . . T&S
Shoulder replacement . . . . . T&S
Shoulder repair 0
Spinal fusions . . . . . 2 to 4
Tendon repair 0
Total elbow 0
Total hip . . . . . T&S
Total knee . . . . . T&S

OTORHINOLARYNGOLOGY/ HEAD AND NECK SURGERY

Antrotomy 0
Atticoantrotomy 0
Bronchoscopy 0
Caldwell-Luc . . . . . 0 or T&S
Cochlear implant 0
Composite resection 4
Craniofacial resection . . . . . T&S
Dissecting laryngoscopy 0
Endoscopy 0
Esophageal reconstruction . . . . . T&S
Esophagoscopy 0
Ethmoid artery ligation 4
Ethmoidectomy . . . . . T&S
Excisional biopsy 0
Frontal sinus exploration . . . . . T&S
Glossectomy . . . . . T&S
Labyrinthectomy 0
Laryngectomy . . . . . T&S
Laryngoscopy 0
Mandibulectomy . . . . . T&S
Mastoidectomy 0
Maxillary fixation . . . . . T&S
Maxillectomy . . . . . T&S
Myringotomy 0
Nasopharyngoscopy 0
Neck dissection . . . . . T&S
Neurectomy . . . . . 0 or T&S
Panendoscopy 0
Parotidectomy 0
Plate removal 0
Septoplasty . . . . . 0 or T&S
Septorhinoplasty . . . . . 0 or T&S
Sphenoethmoidectomy . . . . . T&S
Sphenoidectomy . . . . . T&S
Stapedectomy 0
Thyroidectomy 0
Tonsillectomy 0
Tracheoscopy 0
Tracheostomy tube insertion 0
Tracheotomy . . . . . T&S
Tympanomastoidectomy . . . . . 0 or T&S
Tympanoplasty 0

PLASTIC SURGERY

Millard's repair . . . . . T&S
Orbitotomy . . . . . T&S
Reduction mammoplasty 0
Septorhinoplasty 0

RENAL TRANSPLANTATION

Arteriovenous fistula 0
Donor nephrectomy . . . . . T&S
Pancreas transplant 4
Renal artery-vein patch 3
Renal transplant . . . . . T&S to 2
Vascular catheter insertion/removal (Tenckhoff) . . . . . T&S

UROLOGY

Adrenalectomy 2
Bladder resection . . . . . T&S
Circumcision 0
Cystectomy
Simple 0
Radical 2
Cystoscopy 0
Cystotomy 0
Fulguration, bleeding bladder . . . . . T&S
Hydrocelectomy 0
Ileal conduit 1
Lithotomy, ureteral . . . . . T&S
Lithotripsy, shock wave 0
Meatotomy . . . . . T&S
Needle biopsy of prostate 0
Nephrectomy, donor . . . . . T&S
Nephrectomy, radical . . . . . T&S
Nephrolithotripsy 1
Nephrostomy . . . . . T&S
Orchiopexy 0
Orchiectomy 0
Penectomy 2
Penile prosthesis insertion 0
Prostatectomy . . . . . T&S
Pyelolithotomy . . . . . T&S
Reimplantation of ureter . . . . . T&S
Stamey's procedure . . . . . 0 or T&S
Transurethral resection of the prostate 0
Ureterectomy 0
Ureterolithotomy . . . . . T&S
Ureteroscopy 0
Urethral fistula excision . . . . . T&S
Vasectomy 0
Vasovasostomy 0

VASCULAR SURGERY

Abdominal aortic surgery 4
Aneurysm repair 2
Aortoiliac bypass 2
Arteriofemoral bypass 2
Arteriovenous fistula 0
Carotid endarterectomy . . . . . T&S
Catheter insertion/removal 0
Femoral bypass . . . . . T&S
Iliac profunda bypass 2
Renal artery repair 3
Splenorenal artery bypass . . . . . T&S

REFERENCES

Boral LI, Henry JB: The type and screen: a safe alternative and supplement in selected surgical procedures, *Transfusion* 17:163, 1977.

British Committee for Standards in Haematology, Blood Transfusion Task Force: Guidelines for implementation of a maximum surgical blood order schedule, *Clin Lab Haematol* 12:321, 1990.

Friedman BA: A blood ordering strategy for hospital blood banks derived from a computer simulation, *Am J Clin Pathol* 78:154, 1982.

Friedman BA: The maximum surgical blood order schedule and surgical blood use in the United States, *Transfusion* 16:380, 1976.

Henry JB, Mintz PD: Waste not, want not—improved blood utilization through realistic hemotherapy guidelines, *Qual Rev Bull* 3:7, 1977.

Henry JB, Mintz PD, Webb W: Optimal blood ordering for elective surgery, *JAMA* 237:451, 1977.

Mintz PD, Henry JB, Boral LI: The type and antibody screen. In Myhre BH, editor: *Clinics in laboratory medicine: symposium on blood banking and hemotherapy*, Philadelphia, 1982, WB Saunders.

Mintz PD, Lauenstein K, Hume J, et al: Expected hemotherapy in elective surgery: a follow-up, *JAMA* 239:623, 1978.

Mintz PD, Nordine RB, Henry JB, et al: Expected hemotherapy in elective surgery, *NY State J Med* 76: 532, 1976.

Rouault C, Gruenhagen J: Reorganization of blood ordering practices, *Transfusion* 18:448, 1978.

Saxena S, Shulman IA, editors: *The transfusion committee: putting patient safety first*, Bethesda, Md, 2006, AABB.